TABLE OF CONTENTS

MATHEMATICS 1
- REAL NUMBERS AND THEIR OPERATIONS • ALGEBRA • GEOMETRY
- TRIGONOMETRY: SOLUTION OF TRIANGLES • MATRICES
- CALCULUS • STATISTICAL ANALYSIS OF MANUFACTURING DATA
- ENGINEERING ECONOMICS

MECHANICS AND STRENGTH OF MATERIALS 154
- MECHANICS • VELOCITY, ACCELERATION, WORK, AND ENERGY
- STRENGTH OF MATERIALS • RIGID BODY PARAMETERS • BEAMS
- COLUMNS • PLATES, SHELLS, AND CYLINDERS • SHAFTS
- SPRINGS • DISC SPRINGS

PROPERTIES, TREATMENT, AND TESTING OF MATERIALS 365
- THE ELEMENTS, HEAT, MASS, AND WEIGHT • PROPERTIES OF WOOD, CERAMICS, PLASTICS, METALS • STANDARD STEELS
- TOOL STEELS • HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING
- NONFERROUS ALLOYS • CORROSION • PLASTICS

DIMENSIONING, GAGING, AND MEASURING 618
- DRAFTING PRACTICES • ALLOWANCES AND TOLERANCES FOR FITS • MEASURING, INSTRUMENTS, AND INSPECTION METHODS
- MICROMETER, VERNIER AND DIAL CALIPERS • SURFACE TEXTURE

TOOLING AND TOOLMAKING 829
- CUTTING TOOLS • CEMENTED CARBIDES • MILLING CUTTERS
- REAMERS • TWIST DRILLS AND COUNTERBORES • TAPS
- STANDARD TAPERS • ARBORS, CHUCKS, AND SPINDLES
- BROACHES AND BROACHING • FILES AND BURS • KNURLS AND KNURLING • TOOL WEAR AND SHARPENING

MACHINING OPERATIONS 1073
- CUTTING SPEEDS AND FEEDS • SPEEDS AND FEEDS TABLES
- ESTIMATING SPEEDS AND MACHINING POWER • MICROMACHINING
- MACHINING ECONOMETRICS • SCREW MACHINES, BAND SAWS, CUTTING FLUIDS • MACHINING NONFERROUS METALS AND NONMETALLIC MATERIALS • GRINDING FEEDS AND SPEEDS • GRINDING AND OTHER ABRASIVE PROCESSES • NONTRADITIONAL MACHINING AND CUTTING
- CNC NUMERICAL CONTROL PROGRAMMING

MANUFACTURING PROCESSES 1397
- SHEET METAL WORKING AND PRESSES • ELECTRICAL DISCHARGE MACHINING • METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION
- POWDER METALLURGY • SOLDERING AND BRAZING • WELDING
- FINISHING OPERATIONS

Each section has a detailed Table of Contents located on the page indicated.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FASTENERS 1649
• TORQUE AND TENSION IN FASTENERS • INCH THREADED FASTENERS • METRIC THREADED FASTENERS • HELICAL COIL SCREW THREAD INSERTS • BRITISH FASTENERS • MACHINE SCREWS AND NUTS • CAP AND SET SCREWS • SELF-THREADING SCREWS • T-SLOTS, BOLTS, AND NUTS • RIVETS AND RIVETED JOINTS • PINS AND STUDS • RETAINING RINGS • WING NUTS, WING SCREWS, AND THUMB SCREWS • NAILS, SPIKES, AND WOOD SCREWS

THREADS AND THREADING 1936
• SCREW THREAD SYSTEMS • UNIFIED SCREW THREADS • CALCULATING THREAD DIMENSIONS • METRIC SCREW THREADS • ACME SCREW THREADS • BUTTRESS THREADS • WHITWORTH THREADS • PIPE AND HOSE THREADS • OTHER THREADS • MEASURING SCREW THREADS • TAPPING AND THREAD CUTTING • THREAD ROLLING • THREAD GRINDING • THREAD MILLING

GEARS, SPLINES, AND CAMS 2201
• GEARS AND GEARING • HYPOID AND BEVEL GEARING • WORM GEARING • HELICAL GEARING • OTHER GEAR TYPES • CHECKING GEAR SIZES • GEAR MATERIALS • SPLINES AND SERRATIONS • CAMS AND CAM DESIGN

MACHINE ELEMENTS 2389
• PLAIN BEARINGS • BALL, ROLLER, AND NEEDLE BEARINGS • LUBRICATION • COUPLINGS, CLUTCHES, BRAKES • KEYS AND KEYSEATS • FLEXIBLE BELTS AND SHEAVES • TRANSMISSION CHAINS • BALL AND ACME LEADSCREWS • ELECTRIC MOTORS • ADHESIVES AND SEALANTS • O-RINGS • ROLLED STEEL, WIRE, SHEET METAL, WIRE ROPE • SHAFT ALIGNMENT • FLUID POWER

MEASURING UNITS 2826
• SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS • MEASURING UNITS • US SYSTEM AND METRIC SYSTEM CONVERSIONS

INDEX 2876

Each section has a detailed Table of Contents located on the page indicated.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

REAL NUMBERS AND THEIR OPERATIONS

3 Real Numbers
3 Properties of Real Numbers
3 Integers (Signed Numbers)
4 Order of Operations
5 Fractions and Mixed Numbers
6 Adding and Subtracting
7 Multiplying
8 Dividing
8 Decimal Numbers
9 Ratio and Proportion
10 Percentage
11 Powers and Roots
11 Properties of Exponents
12 Scientific Notation
13 Factorial Notation
13 Permutation
13 Combination
13 Prime Factorization of Numbers

ALGEBRA

24 Definitions
24 Evaluating Algebraic Expressions
24 Combining Like Terms
25 Solving an Equation for an Unknown
26 Rearrangement and Transposition of Terms in Formulas
27 Algebraic Operations
27 Properties of Monomials and Exponents
27 Properties of Radicals
28 Polynomials
28 Operations on Polynomials
29 Factoring Polynomials
31 Equation Solving
31 System of Linear Equations
32 Second-Degree (Quadratic) Equation
34 Completing the Square
34 Using the Quadratic Formula
34 Cubic Equation
35 Functions
35 Graphs of Functions
36 Logarithms
36 Meaning
36 Properties
37 Common

ALGEBRA

(Continued)

37 Natural
38 Using Calculators to Solve Logarithms
38 Solving an Equation Using Logarithms
39 Arithmetic Sequence
39 Geometric Sequence

GEOMETRY

42 Analytic Geometry
42 Rectangular Coordinate System
42 Slope of a Line
43 Lines and Line Segments
44 Equation Forms of a Line
49 Circle
51 Ellipse
54 Four-Arc Oval Approximating an Ellipse
55 Sphere
57 Parabola
58 Hyperbola
59 Complex Numbers
59 Imaginary Number
59 Forms of a Complex Number
61 Pure Geometry
61 Propositions of Geometry
66 Geometric Constructions
71 Area and Volume
71 Prismoidal Formula
71 Pappus-Guldinus Rules
72 Finding Area of a Surface of Revolution
72 Area of Irregular Plane Figure
73 Areas Enclosed by Cycloidal Curves
73 Contents of Cylindrical Tanks at Different Levels
75 Dimensions of Plane Figures
81 Polygons
83 Segments of a Circle
84 Segments of a Circle for Radius = 1
86 Diameters of Circles and Sides of Squares of Equal Area
87 Diagonals of Squares and Hexagons
88 Volumes of Solids

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TRIGONOMETRY: SOLUTION OF TRIANGLES

94 Terminology
94 Degree and Radian Angle Measure
94 Trigonometric Ratios of Essential Angles
95 Functions of Angles
95 Right Triangle Ratios
96 Law of Sines
96 Law of Cosines
96 Trigonometric Identities
98 Solution of Right Triangles
99 Solution and Examples of Right Triangles
100 Solution and Examples of Oblique Triangles
102 Rapid Solution of Triangles
103 Conversion Tables of Angular Measure
105 Trigonometric Functions
106 Trigonometry Tables
111 Using a Calculator to Find Trigonometric Function Values
111 Versed Sine and Cosine
111 Sevolute Functions
111 Involute Functions
116 Spherical Trigonometry
116 Right-Angle Spherical Trigonometry
118 Oblique Spherical Trigonometry
120 Compound Angles
122 Interpolation

MATRICES

124 Matrix Operations
124 Addition and Subtraction
124 Multiplication
125 Transpose
125 Determinant of a Square Matrix
125 Minors and Cofactors
126 Adjoint of a Matrix
126 Singularity and Rank
126 Inverse
127 Solving a System of Equations

CALCULUS

130 Derivatives
130 Formulas
131 Rules
131 Integrals (Antiderivatives)
132 Integral Rules
132 Newton's Method for Solving Equations
133 Formulas for Differential and Integral Calculus
135 Series Representation of a Function

STATISTICAL ANALYSIS OF MANUFACTURING DATA

136 Statistics Theory in Brief
136 Probability
137 Normal Distribution Analysis
139 Applying Statistics
139 Minimum Number of Test or Data Points
139 Comparing Products with Respect to Average Performance

ENGINEERING ECONOMICS

143 Interest
143 Variables
144 Simple Interest
144 Compound Interest
144 Determining Principal, Rate, or Time
145 Nominal versus Effective Interest Rates
146 Cash Flow and Equivalence
146 Present Value and Discount
146 Annuities
147 Sinking Funds
147 Cash Flow Diagrams
149 Depreciation
149 Straight Line
149 Sum of the Years Digits
149 Double Declining Balance
149 Statutory Depreciation
150 Evaluating Alternative Investments
150 Net Present Value
151 Capitalized Cost
152 Equivalent Uniform Annual Cost
153 Rate of Return
153 Benefit-Cost Ratio
153 Payback Period

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

REAL NUMBERS AND THEIR OPERATIONS

Real Numbers

Most mathematical computation is performed in the *real number system*. The universal set of the "reals" includes the subsets: *naturals, whole numbers, integers, rationals,* and *irrationals*. The naturals (also called *counting numbers*): {1, 2, 3, . . .} are included in the whole numbers: {0, 1, 2, 3, . . .}, which are included in the integers (or signed whole numbers): {. . . ,–2, –1, 0, 1, 2, . . .}. And all of these subsets are included in the rationals.

Rational numbers, including integers, can be written in fraction form. Since all fractions can be divided numerator by denominator, their decimal form either terminates or repeats. Examples of rational numbers: $-4/1, 3/5 = 0.6, 1/3 = 0.333\ldots$.

The only set in the real numbers larger than the naturals that does not contain any of the other sets is the irrationals. These are *not* expressible as ratios. An irrational number's decimal representation does not terminate and it has no pattern of repetition. Examples of irrational numbers are roots that cannot be simplified, such as $\sqrt{6}$ and $\sqrt[3]{70}$, as well as quantities like π and the natural log base e. The entire real number set is the union of the rationals and the irrationals.

Properties of Real Numbers.—Though often obvious and followed almost automatically, the properties of real numbers are critical to mathematical reasoning. These properties justify various steps in solving algebraic problems, such as those in this Handbook. Equivalence properties (symmetry, reflexivity, transitivity) and operational properties of numbers are summarized here.

Equivalence Properties: The properties of equivalence relations are the basis of equation solving.

Reflexive: $a = a$.

Symmetric: If $a = b$, then $b = a$.

Transitive: If $a = b$ and $b = c$, then $a = c$.

Substitution: If $a = b$, then a may be replaced by b in any equation or expression.

Operational Properties: These concern addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division, as summarized in the table below.

Property	*Addition*	*Multiplication*
Commutative:	$a + b = b + a$	$a \times b = b \times a$
Associative:	$(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$	$(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$
Identity:	$a + 0 = 0 + a = a$	$1 \times a = a \times 1 = a$
Inverse:	$a + (-a) = 0$	$a \times 1/a = 1$
Other Properties:		
Distributive of multiplication over addition:	$a \times (b + c) = (a \times b) + (a \times c)$	$(a + b) \times c = (a \times c) + (b \times c)$
Zero property of multiplication:	If $a \times b = 0$, then either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$	
Zero property of division:	If $a/b = 0$, then $a = 0$ ($b \neq 0$)	

Integers (Signed Numbers).—Positive whole numbers extend to the right of zero on the number line. Negative whole numbers extend to the left of zero. Together with zero, these make up the *integers* (sometimes called *signed numbers*): {. . . ,–2, –1, 0, 1, 2, . . .}.

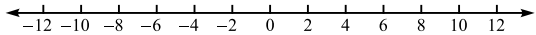
The sciences (as well as economics and other fields) deal with negative as well as nonnegative quantities. Temperature is an obvious example; so is land altitude, which can be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

above, at, or below sea level. Angles can be negative, too, as explained in *TRIGONOMETRY*. Calculators facilitate computation that involves integers (signed numbers). Knowing the rules of integer operations prevents errors that might occur when a calculator is used.

Absolute Value: A number's absolute value, sometimes called its *magnitude*, is the number's distance from zero on the number line. Whether a number is positive or negative, its absolute value is positive. For example, the absolute value of both 5 and –5 is 5. The absolute value of n is notated $|n|$; thus, $|5| = 5$ and $|-5| = 5$. Absolute value helps explain the rules of signed number addition and subtraction.

Real Number Line: The real number line is generally shown with only the integers marked off (though all numbers are included). A number line is useful for conveying how signed numbers are added or subtracted.



Operations on Signed Numbers: The following rules of operations apply to rational and irrational numbers as well. For simplicity, only integers are given as examples.

Addition and Subtraction: Adding a negative number is equivalent to subtracting its absolute value. When a larger number is subtracted from a smaller number, the result is negative. The rules for adding and subtracting integers are illustrated with an example using four values: 7, 11, –7, and –11. The following examples illustrate the rules:

Examples, Addition	*Examples, Subtraction*
$7 + 11 = 18$	$7 - 11 = -4$
$7 + (-11) = 7 - 11 = -4$	$7 - (-11) = 7 + 11 = 18$
$(-7) + 11 = 11 + (-7) = 11 - 7 = 4$	$(-7) - (-11) = (-7) + 11 = 11 + (-7) = 11 - 7 = 4$
$(-7) + (-11) = -18$	$-7 - 11 = -18$

Multiplication and Division: Multiplication or division of numbers with the same sign results in a positive answer. Opposite signed numbers result in negative answers when multiplied or divided. The following examples illustrate the rules:

Examples, Multiplication	*Examples, Division*
$5 \times 2 = 10$	$12 \div 3 = 4$
$5 \times (-2) = -10$	$(-12) \div 3 = -4$
$(-5) \times 2 = -10$	$(12) \div (-3) = -4$
$(-5) \times (-2) = 10$	$(-12) \div (-3) = 4$

Order of Operations.—Mathematical operations are performed on numbers in a particular order, commonly referred to as PEMDAS, which stands for "**P**arentheses, **E**xponents, **M**ultiplication, **D**ivision, **A**ddition, **S**ubtraction." First, when there are no parentheses or other grouping symbols, multiplication and division are done before addition and subtraction. Then, proceeding from left to right, the addition and subtraction are done in the order they appear. For example:

$$100 - 26 + 7 \times 2 - 100 \div 4 = 100 - 26 + 14 - 25 = 74 + 14 - 25 = 88 - 25 = 63$$

Parentheses ( ) and brackets [ ]—called *grouping symbols*—indicate if addition and subtraction are to occur before multiplication and division. The operations are performed from the innermost to the outermost grouping symbols. For example:

$$[6 \times (15 - 7)] \div 2 = [6 \times 8] \div 2 = 48 \div 2 = 24$$

Exponents are a multiplication operation, but unless parentheses or brackets are present, exponents are applied before multiplication. For example:

$$4 \times 9^2 = 4 \times 81 = 324$$

Also, when parentheses are present next to a multiplication, the × can be omitted:

$$5(8 - 3) = 5(5) = 25$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As explained in *Fractions*, the horizontal line in a fraction implies division. The top number (called the *numerator*) is divided by the bottom number (called the *denominator*). For example,

$$\frac{50}{10} = 50 \div 10 = 5$$

In formulas, the multiplication sign (×) may be omitted (when letters—called variables—are multiplied) or replaced by parentheses, which serve the same purpose.

$$A \times B = AB, \qquad 6 \times 4 = (6)(4), \qquad 8 \times a = 8a$$

A multiplication dot (·) is also sometimes used.

Fractions

Rational numbers can be written as *common fractions* or as *decimal fractions*. Common fractions are written as $\frac{a}{b}$ or a/b, where a (the numerator) and b (the denominator) are integers (but b cannot be 0, since division by zero is not defined). The denominator represents the number of equal parts that a whole quantity is broken into. The numerator is the number of these parts under consideration. For example, $\frac{2}{5}$ indicates the whole of something is broken into 5 equal parts, and 2 of these parts are being considered. Any integer is a fraction with a denominator of 1. For example, $\frac{6}{1} = 6$.

The implied operation in a fraction is division. Thus, $\frac{a}{b}$ means $a \div b$.

Multiple: A multiple of a number n is the result of multiplying n by positive integer $1, 2, 3, \ldots$ Thus, the multiples of 3 are $3, 6, 9, 12, \ldots$ The *least common multiple* (LCM) of two or more numbers is the smallest multiple the numbers have in common. In the example below, the first few multiples of 6 and 20 are shown, with the LCM indicated in bold:

6: 6, 12, 18, 24, 30, 36, 42, 48, 54, **60**, 66, ...
20: 20, 40, **60**, 80, ...

Thus, 60 is the LCM of 6 and 20.

Factor: An integer a is a factor of n if there is no remainder when n is divided by a. That is, if the result of $n \div a$ is an integer. For example, 3 is a factor of 12 because $^{12}/_{3} = 4$. The greatest common factor (GCF) of two or more numbers is the largest of their common factors. Thus, the common factors of 12 and 18 are 2, 3, and 6; 6 is the GCF.

Unit Fraction: A fraction having the same numerator and denominator is the unit fraction, 1 (or "one whole"). For example, $^{2}/_{2}$, $^{4}/_{4}$, $^{8}/_{8}$, $^{16}/_{16}$, $^{32}/_{32}$, and $^{64}/_{64}$ all equal 1.

Proper Fraction: A fraction whose numerator is less than its denominator. $^{1}/_{4}$, $^{1}/_{2}$, and $^{47}/_{64}$ are examples of proper fractions. The value of any proper fraction is less than 1.

Improper Fraction: A fraction whose numerator is greater than its denominator. $^{3}/_{2}$, $^{5}/_{4}$, and $^{-17}/_{8}$ are examples of improper fractions. The absolute value of any improper fraction is greater than 1.

Reducible Fraction: A reducible fraction is a common fraction in which numerator and denominator have a common factor and so can be reduced to lowest terms by dividing both numerator and denominator by this common factor. For example, in the fraction $^{12}/_{18}$, the numerator and denominator have a GCF of 6. Thus, $^{12}/_{18}$ reduces to $^{2}/_{3}$ by dividing each part of the fraction by 6. A fraction such as $^{16}/_{21}$ cannot be reduced, since 16 and 21 do not have a common factor.

Mixed Number: A mixed number is a combination of a whole number and a proper fraction. The implied operation between them is addition. For example, $4\frac{2}{9}$ means $4 + \frac{2}{9}$. A mixed number is converted to an improper fraction by multiplying the whole number part with the denominator and adding the numerator to obtain the numerator of the final fraction; the denominator remains the same.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples:

$$5\frac{2}{3} = 5 + \frac{2}{3} = \frac{15}{3} + \frac{2}{3} = \frac{17}{3} \qquad 9\frac{1}{2} = 9 + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{18}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{19}{2}$$

To convert mixed numbers to improper fractions, multiply the whole number by the denominator and add the numerator to obtain the new numerator. The denominator remains the same. For example,

$$2\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2 \times 2 + 1}{2} = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$3\frac{7}{16} = \frac{3 \times 16 + 7}{16} = \frac{55}{16}$$

An improper fraction is converted to its mixed number form by dividing the numerator by denominator and placing the remainder over the denominator. Sometimes the fraction part can be reduced, as the second example shows.

$$\frac{17}{8} = 17 \div 8 = 2\frac{1}{8}$$

$$\frac{26}{16} = 26 \div 16 = 1\frac{10}{16} = 1\frac{5}{8}$$

Equivalent Fractions: A fraction raised to its equivalent form ("higher terms") by multiplying numerator and denominator by the same number (that is, by multiplying by a form of 1). For example, $1/4 \times 4/4 = 4/16$ and $3/8 \times 4/4 = 12/32$.

Any integer n can be expressed as a fraction with a chosen denominator value of m by simply writing n as $n/1$ and multiplying by m/m.

Example: To express 4 as an equivalent fraction with a denominator of 16, write $4/1 \times 16/16 = 64/16$

Reciprocal: The *reciprocal* of any number a other than 0 is $1/a$. (0 has no reciprocal, since 1/0 is undefined.) The reciprocal also is called the *multiplicative inverse*, since $a \times 1/a = 1$. For example, the reciprocal of 8 is $1/8$; the reciprocal of $4/7$ is $7/4$.

Least Common Denominator: Fractions cannot be added or subtracted without a common denominator. For example, $\frac{2}{5} + \frac{1}{5} = \frac{2+1}{5} = \frac{3}{5}$, a simple computation, since the denominator in the answer is the same denominator seen in the fractions. In general, $\frac{a}{c} + \frac{b}{c} = \frac{a+b}{c}$. But fractions with different denominators cannot be added or subtracted until they are converted to *equivalent forms* that have common denominators. This is done by raising the fractions to higher terms (as explained previously). While any common multiple serves as a common denominator, it is preferable to use the *least common multiple* (LCM) of the denominator, referred to as the *least common denominator* (LCD). For example, 36 is the LCD of $\frac{2}{9}$ and $\frac{5}{6}$, since the LCM of 9 and 6 is 36. Raising each fraction to its equivalent form having a denominator of 36 is shown:

$$\frac{2}{9} \times \frac{4}{4} = \frac{8}{36} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{6}{6} = \frac{30}{36}$$

Example: In the case of $\frac{9}{11}$ and $\frac{7}{10}$ the LCD is the product of the denominators, $11 \times 10 = 110$. Raising each fraction to its equivalent form is shown:

$$\frac{9}{11} \times \frac{10}{10} = \frac{90}{110} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{7}{10} \times \frac{11}{11} = \frac{77}{110}$$

Adding and Subtracting Fractions and Mixed Numbers

To Add or Subtract Common Fractions: 1) Convert each fraction to terms of the least common denominator; 2) add or subtract numerators; 3) if answer is an improper fraction, change it to a mixed number; and 4) reduce fraction part if necessary.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example, Addition of Common Fractions

$$\begin{array}{rlrcr} \frac{1}{4} & \text{LCD} = 16 & \frac{1}{4}\times\frac{4}{4} & = & \frac{4}{16} \\ \frac{3}{16} & & \frac{3}{16}\times\frac{1}{1} & = & \frac{3}{16} \\ +\frac{7}{8} & & +\frac{7}{8}\times\frac{2}{2} & = & +\frac{14}{16} \\ & & & & \frac{21}{16} \end{array}$$

Example, Subtraction of Common Fractions

$$\begin{array}{rlrcr} \frac{15}{16} & \text{LCD} = 48 & \frac{15}{16}\times\frac{3}{3} & = & \frac{45}{48} \\ -\frac{7}{12} & & -\frac{7}{12}\times\frac{4}{4} & = & -\frac{28}{48} \\ & & & & \frac{17}{48} \end{array}$$

To Add Mixed Numbers: Two methods for adding mixed numbers are shown below the explanations.

First method: 1) Raise fraction parts to the higher terms of the LCD; 2) add whole number parts and fraction parts separately; 3) if result has an improper fraction, convert it to a mixed number and add the whole number parts.

Second method: 1) Convert mixed numbers to improper fractions; 2) raise resulting fractions to the higher terms of the LCD; 3) add fractions as usual and convert back to a mixed number; reduce, if needed.

Examples, Addition of Mixed Numbers

Method 1

$$\begin{array}{rlrcr} 2\frac{1}{2} & & 2\frac{1}{2}\times\frac{16}{16} & = & 2\frac{16}{32} \\ 4\frac{1}{4} & \rightarrow & 4\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{8}{8} & = & 4\frac{8}{32} \\ +1\frac{15}{32} & & +1\frac{15}{32}\times\frac{1}{1} & = & +1\frac{15}{32} \\ & & & & 7\frac{39}{32} = 7+1\frac{7}{32} = 8\frac{7}{32} \end{array}$$

Method 2

$$\begin{array}{rlrcr} 2\frac{1}{2} & & \frac{5}{2} = \frac{5}{2}\times\frac{16}{16} & = & \frac{80}{32} \\ 4\frac{1}{4} & \rightarrow & \frac{17}{4} = \frac{17}{4}\times\frac{8}{8} & = & \frac{136}{32} \\ +1\frac{15}{32} & & +\frac{47}{32} = \frac{47}{32}\times\frac{1}{1} & = & +\frac{47}{32} \\ & & & & \frac{263}{32} = 8\frac{7}{32} \end{array}$$

To Subtract Mixed Numbers: The methods are similar to those for adding, except the fraction part may need to "borrow" from the whole number. The examples show the details.

1) Convert fraction parts to equivalent fractions with LCD; 2) subtract whole number and fraction parts separately, *unless* the first fraction's numerator is *smaller* than the second. In that case, proceed as shown in the second and third examples below, borrowing 1 in the form of a fraction and then subtracting.

Examples, Subtraction of Mixed Numbers

Example 1

$$\begin{array}{r} 12\frac{4}{5} \\ -4\frac{1}{5} \\ \hline 8\frac{3}{5} \end{array}$$

Example 2

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 43\frac{14}{15} & = & 43\frac{14}{15} \\ -19\frac{3}{5} & = & -19\frac{9}{15} \\ & & 24\frac{5}{15} = 24\frac{1}{3} \end{array}$$

Example 3

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 20 & = & 19+1 = 19\frac{2}{2} \\ -7\frac{1}{2} & = & -7\frac{1}{2} = -7\frac{1}{2} \\ & & 12\frac{1}{2} \end{array}$$

Example 4

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 8\frac{2}{9} & = & 7+1\frac{2}{9} = 7\frac{11}{9} \\ -1\frac{4}{9} & = & -1\frac{4}{9} = -1\frac{4}{9} \\ & & 6\frac{7}{9} \end{array}$$

Multiplying Fractions and Mixed Numbers

To Multiply Common Fractions: 1) Multiply numerators; 2) multiply denominators; and 3) convert improper fractions to mixed numbers, if necessary.

To Multiply Mixed Numbers: 1) Convert mixed numbers to improper fractions; 2) multiply numerators; 3) multiply denominators; and 4) convert improper fractions to mixed numbers, if necessary.

Examples, Multiplication of Fractions

$$\frac{2}{3}\times\frac{8}{15} = \frac{2\times8}{3\times15} = \frac{16}{45} \qquad 4\frac{2}{5}\times1\frac{1}{3} = \frac{22}{5}\times\frac{4}{3} = \frac{22\times4}{5\times3} = \frac{88}{15}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dividing Fractions and Mixed Numbers

To Divide Common Fractions: 1) Take the reciprocal of the dividing fraction; 2) multiply the numerators and denominators; and 3) convert improper fractions to mixed numbers, if necessary.

To Divide Mixed Numbers: 1) Convert the mixed numbers to improper fractions; 2) take the reciprocal of the dividing fraction; 3) multiply numerators and denominators; and 4) convert improper fractions to mixed numbers, if necessary.

Examples, Division of Fractions

$$\frac{2}{7} \div \frac{5}{21} = \frac{2}{7} \times \frac{21}{5} = \frac{2\times 21}{7\times 5} = \frac{42}{35} = \frac{6}{5} \qquad 3\tfrac{1}{3} \div 2\tfrac{4}{5} = \frac{10}{3} \div \frac{14}{5} = \frac{10}{3} \times \frac{5}{14} = \frac{50}{42} = \frac{25}{21}$$

Decimal Numbers.—Decimal fractions are fractional parts of a whole whose implied denominators are multiples of 10. A decimal fraction of 0.1 has a value of 1/10, 0.01 has a value of 1/100, 0.001 has a value of 1/1000, and so on. Thus, the value of the digit in the first place right of the decimal point is expressed in tenths, a digit two places to the right is expressed in hundredths, a digit three places to the right is expressed in thousandths, and so on. Because the denominator is implied, the number to the right of the decimal point indicates the numerator of the decimal fraction. For example, 0.125 is equivalent to 125/1000.

In industry, most decimal fractions are expressed in terms of thousandths rather than tenths or hundredths. For example, a decimal fraction of 0.2 is written as 0.200 and read as "200 thousandths" rather than "2 tenths"; a value of 0.75 is written as 0.750, and read as "750 thousandths" rather than "75 hundredths." In the case of four place decimals, the values are expressed in terms of ten-thousandths. So a value of 0.1875 is read as "1875 ten-thousandths."

Just as a mixed number is the sum of a whole number and a fraction, a decimal number greater than 1 has a whole and a decimal part. For example, $10.125 = 10\frac{125}{1000}$, which is read as "10 and 125 thousandths."

Adding or Subtracting Decimal Numbers: To add or subtract decimal numbers, align the decimal points and add or subtract the digits as usual. The decimal point in the answer is aligned with the decimal points in the numbers added or subtracted.

Examples, Adding Decimal Fractions

0.125	1.750
1.0625	0.875
2.50	0.125
+ 0.1875	+ 2.0005
3.8750	4.7505

Examples, Subtracting Decimal Fractions

1.750	2.625
–0.250	–1.125
1.500	1.500

Multiplying Decimal Numbers: In setting up decimal multiplication, the decimal points do not have to be aligned. Long multiplication is done as usual, but the decimal point in the answer is placed so that the number of digits on its right is the same as the total number of digits on the right of the numbers multiplied.

Examples, Decimal Number Multiplication

24.035	three decimal places	6.002	three decimal places
× 0.08	two decimal places	× 41.3	one decimal place
1.92280	five decimal places	18006	
		60020	
		+ 2400800	
		247.8826	four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dividing Decimal Numbers: There are several types of decimal division problems: (1) a whole number divided by a decimal number; (2) a decimal number divided by a whole number; and (3) a decimal number divided by a decimal number. For all situations, if the divisor is a decimal, its decimal point must first be moved right to make it a whole number, and the dividend's decimal likewise moved, before the operation is performed. Examples of each type are: $18 \div 0.3 = 180 \div 3 = 60$; $1.8 \div 3 = 0.6$; $1.8 \div 0.003 = 1800 \div 3 = 600$.

Ratio and Proportion.— A *ratio* of quantities a to b is written a:b or as a fraction a/b. For example, the ratio of 12 to 3 is written 12:3 or 12/3. Ratios, like fractions, can be reduced: 12:3 is 4:1. The *inverse* (or reciprocal) ratio of a:b is b:a. Thus, the inverse ratio of 12:3 is 3:12.

When two or more ratios are multiplied, the ratio obtained is a called a *compound ratio*. The compound ratio of a:b, c:d, and e:f is the ratio ace:bdf. For example, the compound ratio of 8:2, 9:3, and 10:5 is $8 \times 9 \times 10$: $2 \times 3 \times 5$, or 720:30.

An equality of ratios, $a/b = c/d$, is called a *proportion*, which can be written as a:b::c:d, read as "a is to b as c is to d." Thus, 6:3::10:5 because 6/3 and 10/5 both reduce to 2/1 or 2. In a proportion a:b::c:d, the first and last terms (which can be variables or numbers) are called the *extremes*, and the second and third are the *means*.

Note that if $a/b = c/d$, then the rules of algebra show that $ad = bc$. Thus, the proportion a:b::c:d is equivalent to $a \times d = b \times c$. So the proportion 6:3::10:5 is equivalent to $6 \times 5 = 3 \times 10$.

Often, some part of a proportion is an unknown. For example, in the proportion 2:3::n:4 (2 is to 3 as n is to 4), n is found by setting up a proportion. According to the basic rules of algebra, 2:3::n:4 means $(2)(4) = 3n$, and hence, $8 = 3n$, so $n = 8/3$. A full discussion of the rules for solving equations can be found in *ALGEBRA*.

If the second and third terms in a proportion are the same, that term is the *mean proportional* of the other two. Thus, in the proportion 8:4::4:2, 4 is the mean proportional of 8 and 2. The mean proportional of any two numbers may be found by multiplying them and extracting the square root of the product. Thus, the mean proportional of 3 and 12 is 6, because $3 \times 12 = 36$, which is 6^2.

Example 1, Involving Proportion: If it takes 18 days to assemble 4 lathes, how many days would it take to assemble 14 lathes?

Solution: Let x be the number of days to be found. The proportion is written 4:18 :: 14:x, where x is the number of days to be found. Setting this up as an equation and solving:

$$\frac{4}{18} = \frac{14}{x}$$

$$x = \frac{18 \times 14}{4} = 63 \text{ days}$$

Example 2, Involving Direct (Simple) Proportion: 10 linear meters (32.81 feet) of bar stock are required as blanks for 100 clamping bolts. What total length x of stock, in meters and feet, is required for 912 bolts?

Solution: The setup to solve the proportional meters-to-bolts problem comes from the way this proportion is read: "10 meters is to 100 bolts as how many meters is to 912 bolts." It is solved accordingly:

$$10 : 100 :: x : 912, \text{ that is, } \frac{10}{100} = \frac{x}{912} \qquad \text{Solving for } x\text{: } x = \frac{10 \times 912}{100} = \frac{9120}{100} = 91.2 \text{ meters}$$

Likewise, the setup to solve the feet-to-bolts problem comes from reading it as: "32.81 feet is to 100 bolts as how many feet is to 912 bolts." Thus:

$$32.81 : 100 :: x : 912, \text{ that is, } \frac{32.81}{100} = \frac{x}{912} \qquad \text{Solving for } x\text{: } x = \frac{32.81 \times 912}{100} = \frac{29{,}922.72}{100} = 299.2 \text{ feet}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Inverse Proportion: Quantities with an inversely proportional relationship behave in such a way that as one increases the other decreases. For example, a factory employing 270 workers completes a given number of automotive components weekly, the number of working hours being 44 per week. If the hours are reduced, then more workers will be required to do the same amount of work. How many employees would be required for the same production if the working hours were reduced to 40 per week?

The hours per week is inversely proportional to the number of workers; fewer hours per worker means more workers are required. Letting x be the number of workers needed when time is reduced, the inverse proportion is written:

$$270 : x \;::\; 40 : 44$$

Thus

$$\frac{270}{x} = \frac{40}{44} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x = \frac{270 \times 44}{40} = 297 \text{ workers}$$

Problems Involving Both Direct and Inverse Proportions: If two groups of data are related by both direct (simple) and inverse proportions among the various quantities, a simple mathematical relation may be used to solve the problem as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Product of all directly proportional items in first group}}{\text{Product of all inversely proportional items in first group}} = \frac{\text{Product of all directly proportional items in second group}}{\text{Product of all inversely proportional items in second group}}$$

Example: If a worker capable of turning 65 studs in a 10-hour day is paid $13.50 per hour, how much per hour should a worker be paid who turns 72 studs in a 9-hour day if compensated in the same proportion as the first worker?

Solution: The first group of data in this problem consists of the number of hours worked, the hourly wage of the first worker, and the number of studs produced per day; the second group contains similar data for the second worker, except the hourly wage is unknown, so it is indicated by x.

The labor cost per stud, as may be seen, is directly proportional to the number of hours worked and the hourly wage. These quantities, therefore, are used in the numerators of the fractions in the formula. The labor cost per stud is inversely proportional to the number of studs produced per day. (The greater the number of studs produced in a given time the less the cost per stud.) The numbers of studs per day, therefore, are placed in the denominators of the fractions in the formula. Thus,

$$\frac{(10)(13.50)}{65} = \frac{9x}{72}$$

$$x = \frac{(10)(13.50)(72)}{(65)(9)} = \$16.62 \text{ per hour}$$

Percentage.—A percentage is a ratio expressed as a part of 100. For example, if out of 100 manufactured parts, 12 do not pass inspection, then 12 percent (12 of the 100) are rejected. The symbol % indicates percentage.

The percent of gain (or loss) with respect to a base (original) quantity is found by dividing the amount of gain (or loss) by the base quantity and multiplying the quotient by 100. For example, if a quantity of steel is bought for $2000 and sold for $2500, the profit is $500/2000 \times 100$, or 25 percent of the invested amount.

Example: Out of a total output of 280 castings a day, 30 castings are, on average, rejected. What is the percentage of bad castings?

$$\frac{30}{280} \times 100 = 10.71 \text{ percent}$$

Percent Change: Any increase or decrease in some measured quantity can be expressed as a *percent change* using the formula: $\dfrac{\text{final} - \text{original amount}}{\text{original}} \times 100 = \text{percent change}$. If in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

previous example, production increased from 280 to 300, then the percent change would be: $\frac{\text{final} - \text{original amount}}{\text{original}} \times 100 = \frac{300 - 280}{280} \times 100 = \frac{20}{280} \times 100 = 7.14\%$.

The denominator is always the original amount. Percent change also can be negative. If production decreased from 280 to 245, the percent change would be: $\frac{245 - 280}{280} \times 100 = \frac{-35}{280} \times 100 = -12.5\%$.

Powers and Roots

Powers: The *square* or *second power* of a number (or quantity) is the product of that number multiplied by itself. Thus, the square of 9 is 9×9. The square of a number is indicated by the *exponent*^{2}, thus: $9^2 = 9 \times 9 = 81$.

The *cube* or *third power* of a number n is the product $n \times n \times n$, or n^3. Thus, the cube of 4 is $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$, and is written 4^3.

In general, the nth power of a is written a^n, where a is the *base* and n is the *exponent*.

Roots: The *square root* of a given number is the positive number which, when multiplied by itself, will produce the given number. The square root of 16 (written $\sqrt{16}$) is 4 because $4 \times 4 = 16$. The other root of 16 is –4, but the use of the square root symbol indicates the positive (principal) square root only.

Similarly, the *cube root* of a given number is the number which, when used as a factor three times, will produce the given number. Thus, the cube root of 64 (written $\sqrt[3]{64}$) is 4 because $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$.

In general, the nth root of a is written as $\sqrt[n]{a}$ or $a^{1/n}$.

Properties of Exponents

$a^n a^m = a^{n+m}$ $\quad \frac{a^n}{a^m} = a^{(n-m)}$ $\quad (a^m)^n = a^{mn}$ $\quad (ab)^m = a^m b^m$

$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^n = \frac{a^n}{b^n}$ $\quad a^{m/n} = (a^{1/n})^m$ or $(a^m)^{1/n}$ $\quad a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$ $\quad \frac{1}{a^{-n}} = a^n$

$a^0 = 1 \ (a \neq 0)$ $\quad a^{1/n} = \sqrt[n]{a}$ $\quad a^{m/n} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m = \left(\sqrt[n]{a^m}\right)$ unless $a < 0$, and m and n are both even

Examples:

$3^1 3^2 = 3^{1+2} = 3^3 = 27$ $\quad (x)(x^3) = x^{(1+3)} = x^4$

$\frac{5^4}{5^2} = 5^{4-2} = 5^2 = 25$ $\quad \frac{x^9}{x^6} = x^{(9-6)} = x^3$

$(2^4)^2 = 2^{(4)(2)} = 2^8 = 256$ $\quad (x^3)^3 = x^{(3)(3)} = x^9$

$(9x)^2 = 9^2 x^2 = 81x^2$ $\quad (ab^4)^2 = a^2 b^8$

$32^{3/5} = (32^{1/5})^3 = (\sqrt[5]{32})^3 = 2^3 = 8$ $\quad 4^{-3} = \frac{1}{4^3} = \frac{1}{64}$

$\frac{1}{2^{-5}} = 2^5 = 32$ $\quad 9x^0 = 9(1) = 9$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Using logarithms can greatly facilitate the process of raising a number to a power or extracting its root. As shown in *Logarithms* on page 36, this is especially true if the power is not an integer. For example, the square root of 137.1 can only be found with a degree of accuracy through logarithms, a scientific calculator, or Taylor series polynomials.

Scientific Notation.—Calculations involving both large and small magnitude numbers are facilitated by *scientific notation*. In this system, a number is expressed by two factors: (1) an integer from 1 to 9, possibly followed by a decimal, and (2) a power of 10. Large numbers in standard form are converted to scientific notation as shown in the following examples:

$$50{,}000 = 5 \times 10^4 \qquad 273.15 = 2.7315 \times 10^2$$

In the example, 50,000 becomes 5×10^4 because the positive exponent on 10 is the number of places to the right that the decimal point moves so that the first factor falls between 1 and 10. Numbers less than 1 are converted to scientific notation as shown in the following examples:

$$0.840 = 8.40 \times 10^{-1} \qquad 0.0000001 = 1 \times 10^{-7}$$

The negative exponent shows the number of places to the left that the decimal point moves, so that the first factor falls between 1 and 10.

Science and engineering quantities—which are often quite large or small—lend themselves to representation in scientific notation. For instance, *Avogadro's number*, which is the number of particles in one mole of a substance, is 6.024×10^{23}. The metric (SI) pressure unit of 1 pascal (Pa) is equivalent to 0.00000986923 atmosphere (atm) or 0.0001450377 pound/square inch (psi). In scientific notation, these figures are 9.86923×10^{-6} atm and 1.450377×10^{-4} psi, respectively.

Engineering notation is a version of scientific notation in which the exponent of 10 is always a multiple of 3. (See *MEASURING UNITS* on page 2827 for a table of this system.)

Multiplication in Scientific Notation: The procedure is as follows:

1) Multiply the first factors of the numbers to obtain the first factor of the product.

2) Add the exponents of the factors of 10 to obtain the product's factor of 10. Thus:

$$(4.31 \times 10^{-2}) \times (9.01 \times 10) = (4.31 \times 9.01) \times 10^{-2+1} = 38.8331 \times 10^{-1}$$

$$(5.98 \times 10^4) \times (4.37 \times 10^3) = (5.98 \times 4.37) \times 10^{4+3} = 26.1326 \times 10^7$$

3) Write the final in conventional scientific notation, as explained in the previous section. So, for the two examples:

$38.8331 \times 10^{-1} = 3.88331 \times 10^0 = 3.88331$, because $10^0 = 1$, and $26.1326 \times 10^7 = 2.61326 \times 10^8$.

When multiplying several numbers written in this notation, the procedure is the same. Thus, $(4.02 \times 10^{-3}) \times (3.987 \times 10) \times (4.863 \times 10^5) = (4.02 \times 3.987 \times 4.863) \times 10^{(-3+1+5)} = 77.94 \times 10^3 = 7.79 \times 10^4$, rounding off the first factor to two decimal places.

Division in Scientific Notation: The procedure is as follows:

1) Divide the first factor of the dividend (the first number) by the first factor of the divisor (the second number) to get the first factor of the quotient.

2) Subtract the exponents of the factors of 10 to obtain the product's factor of 10:

$$(4.31 \times 10^{-2}) \div (9.0125 \times 10) =$$

$$(4.31 \div 9.0125) \times (10^{-2-1}) = 0.4782 \times 10^{-3} = 4.782 \times 10^{-4}$$

It can be seen that this system of notation is helpful where several numbers of different magnitudes are to be multiplied and divided.

Example: Find the solution of $\dfrac{250 \times 4698 \times 0.00039}{43678 \times 0.002 \times 0.0147}$

Solution: Changing all these numbers to powers of 10 notation and performing the operations indicated:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\frac{(2.5\times10^{2})\times(4.698\times10^{3})\times(3.9\times10^{-4})}{(4.3678\times10^{4})\times(2\times10^{-3})\times(1.47\times10^{-2})}$$

$$= \frac{(2.5\times4.698\times3.9)(10^{2+3-4})}{(4.3678\times2\times1.47)(10^{4-3-2})} = \frac{45.8055\times10}{12.8413\times10^{-1}}$$

$$= 3.5670\times10^{1-(-1)} = 3.5670\times10^{2} = 356.70 \text{ (rounded)}$$

Factorial Notation.—A factorial is a mathematical shortcut denoted by the symbol **!** following a number (for example, 3! is "three factorial"). *n*! is found by multiplying together all the positive integers less than or equal to the factorial number *n*. Zero factorial (0!) is defined as 1. For example: $3! = 1\times2\times3 = 6$; $4! = 1\times2\times3\times4 = 24$; $7! = 1\times2\times3\times4\times5\times6\times7 = 5040$; etc. Factorial notation is used in certain areas, including probability and analysis. The following two topics (permutations and combinations) relate to probability and statistics.

Permutation.—A permutation is an arrangement of objects of a set into a sequence or order. In mathematics, the number of arrangements of *n* objects is given by *n*!. For example, 4 objects can be arranged 4! ways, that is, $4\times3\times2\times1 = 24$ ways. The number of ways *r* objects can be arranged (that is, ordered) from a set of *n* is given by the *permutation* formula ${}_nP_r = \dfrac{n!}{(n-r)!}$

Example: How many ways can the letters X, Y, and Z be arranged?

Solution: Three objects ($r = 3$) out of a set of 3 ($n = 3$) are being arranged. The numbers of possible arrangements for the three letters are $3!/(3-3)! = (3\times2\times1)/1 = 6$. Listing them is not difficult, since there are so few: XYZ, XZY, YXZ, YZX, ZXY, ZYX.

Example: There are 10 people participating in a foot race. How many arrangements of first, second, and third place winners are there?

Solution: Here *r* is 3 and *n* is 10. The number of possible arrangements of winners are:

$${}_{10}P_3 = \frac{10!}{(10-3)!} = \frac{10!}{7!} = 10\times9\times8 = 720$$

Combination.—This is the number of ways *r* objects can be chosen from *n* in a way that order does not matter. It is expressed as "*n* choose *r*." There are fewer combinations than permutations of *r* objects out of *n*, since it does not matter in what order the three objects are chosen. So in a combination, choosing ABC is the same as choosing ACB or BAC and so on. The formula is ${}_nC_r = \dfrac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$

Example: How many possible sets of 6 numbers can be picked with no regard for order from the numbers 1 to 52?

Solution: Here *r* is 6 and *n* is 52. So the possible number of combinations is:

$${}_{52}C_6 = \frac{52!}{(52-6)!6!} = \frac{52!}{46!6!} = \frac{52\times51\times50\times49\times48\times47}{1\times2\times3\times4\times5\times6} = 20{,}358{,}520$$

Prime Factorization of Numbers.—Tables of prime numbers and factors of numbers are particularly useful for calculations involving change-gear ratios for compound gearing, dividing heads, gear-generating machines, and mechanical designs having gear trains.

Definition: p is a *factor* of a number *n* if the division *n*/*p* leaves no remainder. Thus, any number *n* has factors of itself and 1, because $n/n = 1$ and $n/1 = n$. Other factors of a number are found as follows:

2 is a factor of any even number. Thus, $28 = 2\times14$, and $210 = 2\times105$.

3 is a factor of any number where the sum of its digits is divisible by 3. Thus, 3 is a factor of 1869, because $1+8+6+9 = 24$, and $24\div3 = 8$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4 is a factor of any number in which the last two digits are a number divisible by 4. Thus, 1844 has a factor 4, because 44 ÷ 4 = 11. 761 does not have a factor of 4, since 61 is not divisible by 4.

5 is a factor of any number that has a ones digit that is either 0 or 5.

A *prime number* is one that has no factors except itself and 1. Thus, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, etc. are prime numbers. 2 is the only even prime number. A factor which itself is a prime number is called a *prime factor*. All numbers can be expressed as a product of their prime factors.

It can be determined if 7 is a factor of a number according to this process: Remove the last digit from the number, double it, and subtract it from the remaining number. If the result is divisible by 7 (e.g., 14, 7, 0, –7, etc.), then the number is divisible by 7.

The *prime factorization* of a number is done by expressing the number as a product of its primes. For example, the prime factors of 20 are 2 and 5; the prime factorization is 2 × 2 × 5 = 20.

The *Prime Number and Factor Table*, starting on page 15, give the smallest prime factor of all odd numbers from 1 to 9600, and can be used for finding all the factors for numbers up to this odd number. Where no factor is given for a number in the table, the letter **P** indicates that the number is a prime number. The last page of the tables lists prime numbers from 9551 through 18691; it can be used to identify unfactorable numbers in that range.

Example 1: Find the factors of 833. Use the table on page 15 as illustrated below.

Solution: The table on page 15 indicates that 7 is the smallest prime factor of 833, shown at the row-column intersection for 833. This leaves another factor, because 833 ÷ 7 = 119.

From To	0 100	100 200	200 300	300 400	400 500	500 600	600 700	700 800	**800** 900	900 1000	1000 1100	1100 1200
33	3	7	P	3	P	13	3	P	**7**	3	P	11

It also shows that 7 is a prime factor of 119, leaving a factor 119 ÷ 7 = 17.

From To	0 100	100 200	200 300	300 400	400 500	500 600	600 700	700 800	800 900	900 1000	1000 1100	1100 1200
19	P	7	3	11	P	3	P	P	3	P	P	3

P indicates that 17 is a prime number and no other prime factors of 833 exist.

From To	0 100	100 200	200 300	300 400	400 500	500 600	600 700	700 800	800 900	900 1000	1000 1100	1100 1200
17	**P**	3	7	P	3	11	P	3	19	7	3	P

Hence, the prime factorization of 833 is 7 × 7 × 17.

Example 2: A set of four gears is required in a mechanical design to provide an overall gear ratio of 4104 ÷ 1200. Furthermore, no gear in the set is to have more than 120 teeth or less than 24 teeth. Determine the tooth numbers.

Solution: The prime factorization of 4104 is determined to be 2 × 2 × 2 × 3 × 3 × 57 = 4104. The prime factorization of 1200 is determined to be 2 × 2 × 2 × 2 × 5 × 5 × 3 = 1200. Therefore, $\frac{4104}{1200} = \frac{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 57}{2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5 \times 3} = \frac{72 \times 57}{24 \times 50}$. Each resulting factor represents the number of teeth that fulfill the requirement. If the factors had been combined differently, say, to give $\frac{72 \times 57}{16 \times 75}$, then the 16-tooth gear in the denominator would not satisfy the requirement of having no less than 24 teeth.

Example 3: Factor 25,078 into two numbers, neither of which is larger than 200.

Solution: The smallest factor of 25,078 is obviously 2, leaving 25,078 ÷ 2 = 12,539 to be factored further. However, from the last table, *Prime Numbers from 9551 to 18691*, on page 23, it is seen that 12,539 is a prime number; therefore, no other factors exist. So the factorization named is not possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 1 to 1199

From To	0 100	100 200	200 300	300 400	400 500	500 600	600 700	700 800	800 900	900 1000	1000 1100	1100 1200
1	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	7	3
2	**P**	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	**P**	**P**	7	3	13	**P**	3	19	11	3	17	**P**
5	**P**	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	19	3
9	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	11
13	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	23	3	11	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	19	7	3	**P**
19	**P**	7	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
21	3	11	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	19
23	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	13	3	**P**
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	17	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	7
29	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	23	17	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
31	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	7	**P**	3
33	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	11
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	19	3	7	11	3	**P**	17	3
39	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	17
41	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	29	**P**	3	7
43	**P**	11	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	7	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	31
49	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	7	3	13	**P**	3
51	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	19	3	**P**	23	3	**P**	**P**
53	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	13
59	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	19
61	**P**	7	3	19	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	31	**P**	3
63	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	13	3	**P**	11	3
69	3	13	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	7
71	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	11	3	13	**P**	3	**P**
73	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	29	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	7	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11
79	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	19	3	11	13	3
81	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	7	3	11	**P**	3	23	**P**
83	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	11	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
89	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	19	13	3	7	23	3	29
91	7	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3
93	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	13	19	3	**P**	**P**
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	17	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
99	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	29	3	7	11

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 1201 to 2399

From To	1200 1300	1300 1400	1400 1500	1500 1600	1600 1700	1700 1800	1800 1900	1900 2000	2000 2100	2100 2200	2200 2300	2300 2400
1	**P**	**P**	3	19	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	31	3
3	3	**P**	23	3	7	13	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	7
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	17	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	7	**P**	3
9	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	7	3	47	**P**
11	7	3	17	**P**	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
13	**P**	13	3	17	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	**P**	3	13	37	3	17	23	3	**P**	29	3	7
19	23	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	17	19	3	13	7	3
21	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	43	3	**P**	11
23	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	11	3	23
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	41	**P**	3	17	13
29	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	7	31	3	**P**	**P**	3	17
31	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	23	3
33	3	31	**P**	3	23	**P**	3	**P**	19	3	7	**P**
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	7	3	29	**P**	3	11	13	3	**P**	**P**	3
39	3	13	**P**	3	11	37	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
41	17	3	11	23	3	**P**	7	3	13	**P**	3	**P**
43	11	17	3	**P**	31	3	19	29	3	**P**	**P**	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	29	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	19	3	**P**
49	**P**	19	3	**P**	17	3	43	**P**	3	7	13	3
51	3	7	**P**	3	13	17	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**
53	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	**P**	3	13
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	23	31	3	**P**	7	3	19	11	3	37	**P**
59	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	29	17	3	7
61	13	**P**	3	7	11	3	**P**	37	3	**P**	7	3
63	3	29	7	3	**P**	41	3	13	**P**	3	31	17
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	11	**P**	3
69	3	37	13	3	**P**	29	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	23
71	31	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	19	13	3	**P**
73	19	**P**	3	11	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	41	**P**	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	**P**	3	7	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	31	7	3	**P**
79	**P**	7	3	**P**	23	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	43	3
81	3	**P**	**P**	3	41	13	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
83	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	37	3	**P**
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	19	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7
89	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**
91	**P**	13	3	37	19	3	31	11	3	7	29	3
93	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	13	**P**	3
99	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	**P**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 2401 to 3599

From To	2400 2500	2500 2600	2600 2700	2700 2800	2800 2900	2900 3000	3000 3100	3100 3200	3200 3300	3300 3400	3400 3500	3500 3600
1	7	41	3	37	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	19	3
3	3	**P**	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	29	**P**	3	41	31
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	29	23	3	**P**	7	3	31	13	3	**P**	**P**	3
9	3	13	**P**	3	53	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	11
11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	41	**P**	3	13	7	3	**P**
13	19	7	3	**P**	29	3	23	11	3	**P**	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	31	3	**P**
19	41	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	13	3
21	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	23	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	7
23	**P**	3	43	7	3	37	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	13
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	7	37	3	11	**P**	3	53	7	3	23	**P**
29	7	3	11	**P**	3	29	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
31	11	**P**	3	**P**	19	3	7	31	3	**P**	47	3
33	3	17	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	13	53	3	**P**	**P**
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	43	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	47	7	3
39	3	**P**	7	3	17	**P**	3	43	41	3	19	**P**
41	**P**	3	19	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	7	13	3	**P**
43	7	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	17	7	3	**P**	11	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	**P**	3	**P**	41	3	7	11	3	17	**P**	3	**P**
49	31	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	47	3	17	**P**	3
51	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	13	3	23	**P**	3	7	53
53	11	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	43	3	**P**	7	3	11
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
59	**P**	3	**P**	31	3	11	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
61	23	13	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	**P**	3
63	3	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	7
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	**P**	17	3	**P**	47	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3
69	3	7	17	3	19	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	43
71	7	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	37	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
73	**P**	31	3	47	13	3	7	19	3	**P**	23	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	17	3	29	11	3	7
79	37	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	31	7	3
81	3	29	7	3	43	11	3	**P**	17	3	59	**P**
83	13	3	**P**	11	3	19	**P**	3	7	17	3	**P**
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	19	3	11	17
89	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	37
91	47	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
93	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	41	3	31	37	3	7	**P**
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	11	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	19	23	3	43	13	3
99	3	23	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	59

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 3601 to 4799

From To	3600 3700	3700 3800	3800 3900	3900 4000	4000 4100	4100 4200	4200 4300	4300 4400	4400 4500	4500 4600	4600 4700	4700 4800
1	13	**P**	3	47	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	7	43	3
3	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	13	7	3	**P**	**P**
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	59	3	**P**	17	3
9	3	**P**	13	3	19	7	3	31	**P**	3	11	17
11	23	3	37	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	13	3	7
13	**P**	47	3	7	**P**	3	11	19	3	**P**	7	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	23	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	53
19	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	31	3
21	3	61	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
23	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	41	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	**P**	43	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	19	3	7	29
29	19	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	43	7	3	**P**
31	**P**	7	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	61	3	23	11	3
33	3	**P**	**P**	3	37	**P**	3	7	11	3	41	**P**
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	37	3	31	11	3	19	**P**	3	13	**P**	3
39	3	**P**	11	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	23	3	**P**	7
41	11	3	23	7	3	41	**P**	3	**P**	19	3	11
43	**P**	19	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	43	3	7	**P**	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	31	3	**P**	**P**	3	47
49	41	23	3	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
51	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	19	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
53	13	3	**P**	59	3	**P**	**P**	3	61	29	3	7
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	13	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	67
59	**P**	3	17	37	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	47	3	**P**
61	7	**P**	3	17	31	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	59	3
63	3	53	**P**	3	17	23	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	11
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	19	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	17	11	3	**P**	13	3
69	3	**P**	53	3	13	11	3	17	41	3	7	19
71	**P**	3	7	11	3	43	**P**	3	17	7	3	13
73	**P**	7	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	**P**	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	**P**	3	**P**	41	3	**P**	7	3	11	23	3	17
79	13	**P**	3	23	**P**	3	11	29	3	19	**P**	3
81	3	19	**P**	3	7	37	3	13	**P**	3	31	7
83	29	3	11	7	3	47	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	7	13	3	61	53	3	41	7	3	43	**P**
89	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	59	**P**	3	67	13	3	**P**
91	**P**	17	3	13	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
93	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	7	3	23	**P**	3	13	**P**
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	**P**	**P**	3	7	17	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3
99	3	29	7	3	**P**	13	3	53	11	3	37	**P**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 4801 to 5999

From To	4800 4900	4900 5000	5000 5100	5100 5200	5200 5300	5300 5400	5400 5500	5500 5600	5600 5700	5700 5800	5800 5900	5900 6000
1	**P**	13	3	**P**	7	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
3	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	7	**P**
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	11	7	3	**P**	41	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	**P**	3
9	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	71	3	37	19
11	17	3	**P**	19	3	47	7	3	31	**P**	3	23
13	**P**	17	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	37	3	29	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	**P**	3	29	7	3	13	**P**	3	41	**P**	3	61
19	61	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	11	3
21	3	7	**P**	3	23	17	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	31
23	7	3	**P**	47	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	59	3	**P**
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	13	11	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	17	3	**P**	**P**
29	11	3	47	23	3	73	61	3	13	17	3	7
31	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	7	3
33	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	43	3	19	17
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	7	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	13	3
39	3	11	**P**	3	13	19	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
41	47	3	71	53	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	13
43	29	**P**	3	37	7	3	**P**	23	3	**P**	**P**	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	37	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	7	3	19
49	13	7	3	19	29	3	**P**	31	3	**P**	**P**	3
51	3	**P**	**P**	3	59	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11
53	23	3	31	**P**	3	53	7	3	**P**	11	3	**P**
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	**P**	13	3	7	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7
59	43	3	**P**	7	3	23	53	3	**P**	13	3	59
61	**P**	11	3	13	**P**	3	43	67	3	7	**P**	3
63	3	7	61	3	19	31	3	**P**	7	3	11	67
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	31	**P**	3	**P**	23	3	7	19	3	73	**P**	3
69	3	**P**	37	3	11	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	47
71	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	41	**P**	3	53	29	3	7
73	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	23	7	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	**P**	3	**P**	31	3	19	**P**	3	7	53	3	43
79	7	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3
81	3	17	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	**P**	**P**
83	19	3	13	71	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	31
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	37	11	3	7	**P**
89	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	17	11	3	**P**	7	3	53
91	67	7	3	29	11	3	17	**P**	3	**P**	43	3
93	3	**P**	11	3	67	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	71	13
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	59	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	29	3	11	**P**	3
99	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	11	41	3	17	7

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 6001 to 7199

From To	6000 6100	6100 6200	6200 6300	6300 6400	6400 6500	6500 6600	6600 6700	6700 6800	6800 6900	6900 7000	7000 7100	7100 7200
1	17	**P**	3	**P**	37	3	7	**P**	3	67	**P**	3
3	3	17	**P**	3	19	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	47	**P**
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	**P**	31	3	7	43	3	**P**	19	3	**P**	7	3
9	3	41	7	3	13	23	3	**P**	11	3	43	**P**
11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	11	3	7	**P**	3	13
13	7	**P**	3	59	11	3	17	7	3	31	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	13	3	17	**P**	3	11
19	13	29	3	71	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	**P**	3
21	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	19	3	7	**P**
23	19	3	7	**P**	3	11	37	3	**P**	7	3	17
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	11	13	3	**P**	61	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
29	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	13	3	**P**
31	37	**P**	3	13	59	3	19	53	3	29	79	3
33	3	**P**	23	3	7	47	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	7
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	17	3	**P**	41	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	31	3
39	3	7	17	3	47	13	3	23	7	3	**P**	11
41	7	3	79	17	3	31	29	3	**P**	11	3	37
43	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	7	11	3	53	**P**	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	17	3	41	**P**	3	7
49	23	11	3	7	**P**	3	61	17	3	**P**	7	3
51	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	43	13	3	11	**P**
53	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	17	3	23
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	47	**P**	3	11	79	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	17
59	73	3	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	19	**P**	3	**P**
61	11	61	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	23	3
63	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	13
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	**P**	7	3	**P**	29	3	59	67	3	**P**	37	3
69	3	31	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	67
71	13	3	**P**	23	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	71
73	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	19	11	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	59	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	11	3	13	**P**	3	**P**
79	**P**	37	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3
81	3	7	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	73	43
83	7	3	61	13	3	29	41	3	**P**	**P**	3	11
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	23	**P**	3	13	7	3	11	71	3	19	**P**
89	**P**	3	19	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	83	29	3	7
91	**P**	41	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3
93	3	11	7	3	43	19	3	**P**	61	3	41	**P**
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	7	**P**	3	**P**	73	3	37	7	3	**P**	47	3
99	3	**P**	**P**	3	67	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	31	23

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 7201 to 8399

From To	7200 7300	7300 7400	7400 7500	7500 7600	7600 7700	7700 7800	7800 7900	7900 8000	8000 8100	8100 8200	8200 8300	8300 8400
1	19	7	3	13	11	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	59	3
3	3	67	11	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	53	3	13	19
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	37	**P**	3	11	29	3
9	3	**P**	31	3	7	13	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	7
11	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	11	73	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
13	**P**	71	3	11	23	3	13	41	3	7	43	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**
19	**P**	13	3	73	19	3	7	**P**	3	23	**P**	3
21	3	**P**	41	3	**P**	7	3	89	13	3	**P**	53
23	31	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	71	**P**	3	7
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	17	7	3	29	**P**	3	**P**	23	3	19	11
29	**P**	3	17	**P**	3	59	**P**	3	7	11	3	**P**
31	7	**P**	3	17	13	3	41	7	3	47	**P**	3
33	3	**P**	**P**	3	17	11	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	13
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	17	**P**	3	79	**P**	3
39	3	41	43	3	**P**	71	3	17	**P**	3	7	31
41	13	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	7	3	19
43	**P**	7	3	19	**P**	3	11	13	3	17	**P**	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	61	7	3	13	**P**	3	17
49	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	47	**P**	3	29	73	3
51	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	23	3	**P**	83	3	37	7
53	**P**	3	29	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	31	3	**P**
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	7	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	73	7	3	23	61
59	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	41	3	13
61	53	17	3	**P**	47	3	7	19	3	**P**	11	3
63	3	37	17	3	79	7	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	**P**
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	13	53	3	7	11	3	**P**	31	3	**P**	7	3
69	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	17	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
71	11	3	31	67	3	19	17	3	7	**P**	3	11
73	7	73	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	11	**P**	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	41	13	3	**P**
79	29	47	3	11	7	3	**P**	79	3	**P**	17	3
81	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	31	3	23	**P**	3	7	17
83	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	43	**P**	3	59	7	3	83
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	83	**P**	3	**P**	13	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
89	37	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	19	3	**P**
91	23	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	61	3	**P**	**P**	3
93	3	**P**	59	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	**P**	13	3	71	43	3	53	11	3	7	**P**	3
99	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	19	7	3	43	37

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Number and Factor Table for 8401 to 9599

From To	8400 8500	8500 8600	8600 8700	8700 8800	8800 8900	8900 9000	9000 9100	9100 9200	9200 9300	9300 9400	9400 9500	9500 9600
1	31	**P**	3	7	13	3	**P**	19	3	71	7	3
3	3	11	7	3	**P**	29	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	13
5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
7	7	47	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	41	23	3
9	3	67	**P**	3	23	59	3	**P**	**P**	3	97	37
11	13	3	79	31	3	7	**P**	3	61	**P**	3	**P**
13	47	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	13	3	67	**P**	3
15	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
17	19	3	7	23	3	37	71	3	13	7	3	31
19	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	29	11	3	**P**	**P**	3
21	3	**P**	37	3	**P**	11	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
23	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	7	3	23	**P**	3	89
25	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
27	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	79	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	7
29	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	19	3	13
31	**P**	19	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	23	3	7	**P**	3
33	3	7	89	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**
35	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
37	11	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3
39	3	**P**	53	3	**P**	7	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	**P**
41	23	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7
43	**P**	**P**	3	7	37	3	**P**	41	3	**P**	7	3
45	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
47	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	23	83	3	7	13	3	**P**
49	7	83	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	11	3
51	3	17	41	3	53	**P**	3	**P**	11	3	13	**P**
53	79	3	17	**P**	3	7	11	3	19	47	3	41
55	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
57	3	43	11	3	17	13	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	19
59	11	3	7	19	3	17	**P**	3	47	7	3	11
61	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	13	**P**	3	11	**P**	3
63	3	**P**	**P**	3	**P**	**P**	3	7	59	3	**P**	73
65	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
67	**P**	13	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	89	3	17	**P**	3
69	3	11	**P**	3	7	**P**	3	53	13	3	17	7
71	43	3	13	7	3	**P**	47	3	73	**P**	3	17
73	37	**P**	3	31	19	3	43	**P**	3	7	**P**	3
75	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5
77	7	3	**P**	67	3	47	29	3	**P**	**P**	3	61
79	61	23	3	**P**	13	3	7	67	3	83	**P**	3
81	3	**P**	**P**	3	83	7	3	**P**	**P**	3	19	11
83	17	3	19	**P**	3	13	31	3	**P**	11	3	7
85	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3
87	3	31	7	3	**P**	11	3	**P**	37	3	53	**P**
89	13	3	**P**	11	3	89	61	3	7	41	3	43
91	7	11	3	59	17	3	**P**	7	3	**P**	**P**	3
93	3	13	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	29	**P**	3	11	53
95	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5	5	3	5
97	29	**P**	3	19	7	3	11	17	3	**P**	**P**	3
99	3	**P**	**P**	3	11	**P**	3	**P**	17	3	7	29

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Prime Numbers from 9551 to 18691

9551	10181	10853	11497	12157	12763	13417	14071	14747	15361	16001	16693	17387	18043
9587	10193	10859	11503	12161	12781	13421	14081	14753	15373	16007	16699	17389	18047
9601	10211	10861	11519	12163	12791	13441	14083	14759	15377	16033	16703	17393	18049
9613	10223	10867	11527	12197	12799	13451	14087	14767	15383	16057	16729	17401	18059
9619	10243	10883	11549	12203	12809	13457	14107	14771	15391	16061	16741	17417	18061
9623	10247	10889	11551	12211	12821	13463	14143	14779	15401	16063	16747	17419	18077
9629	10253	10891	11579	12227	12823	13469	14149	14783	15413	16067	16759	17431	18089
9631	10259	10903	11587	12239	12829	13477	14153	14797	15427	16069	16763	17443	18097
9643	10267	10909	11593	12241	12841	13487	14159	14813	15439	16073	16787	17449	18119
9649	10271	10937	11597	12251	12853	13499	14173	14821	15443	16087	16811	17467	18121
9661	10273	10939	11617	12253	12889	13513	14177	14827	15451	16091	16823	17471	18127
9677	10289	10949	11621	12263	12893	13523	14197	14831	15461	16097	16829	17477	18131
9679	10301	10957	11633	12269	12899	13537	14207	14843	15467	16103	16831	17483	18133
9689	10303	10973	11657	12277	12907	13553	14221	14851	15473	16111	16843	17489	18143
9697	10313	10979	11677	12281	12911	13567	14243	14867	15493	16127	16871	17491	18149
9719	10321	10987	11681	12289	12917	13577	14249	14869	15497	16139	16879	17497	18169
9721	10331	10993	11689	12301	12919	13591	14251	14879	15511	16141	16883	17509	18181
9733	10333	11003	11699	12323	12923	13597	14281	14887	15527	16183	16889	17519	18191
9739	10337	11027	11701	12329	12941	13613	14293	14891	15541	16187	16901	17539	18199
9743	10343	11047	11717	12343	12953	13619	14303	14897	15551	16189	16903	17551	18211
9749	10357	11057	11719	12347	12959	13627	14321	14923	15559	16193	16921	17569	18217
9767	10369	11059	11731	12373	12967	13633	14323	14929	15569	16217	16927	17573	18223
9769	10391	11069	11743	12377	12973	13649	14327	14939	15581	16223	16931	17579	18229
9781	10399	11071	11777	12379	12979	13669	14341	14947	15583	16229	16937	17581	18233
9787	10427	11083	11779	12391	12983	13679	14347	14951	15601	16231	16943	17597	18251
9791	10429	11087	11783	12401	13001	13681	14369	14957	15607	16249	16963	17599	18253
9803	10433	11093	11789	12409	13003	13687	14387	14969	15619	16253	16979	17609	18257
9811	10453	11113	11801	12413	13007	13691	14389	14983	15629	16267	16981	17623	18269
9817	10457	11117	11807	12421	13009	13693	14401	15013	15641	16273	16987	17627	18287
9829	10459	11119	11813	12433	13033	13697	14407	15017	15643	16301	16993	17657	18289
9833	10463	11131	11821	12437	13037	13709	14411	15031	15647	16319	17011	17659	18301
9839	10477	11149	11827	12451	13043	13711	14419	15053	15649	16333	17021	17669	18307
9851	10487	11159	11831	12457	13049	13721	14423	15061	15661	16339	17027	17681	18311
9857	10499	11161	11833	12473	13063	13723	14431	15073	15667	16349	17029	17683	18313
9859	10501	11171	11839	12479	13093	13729	14437	15077	15671	16361	17033	17707	18329
9871	10513	11173	11863	12487	13099	13751	14447	15083	15679	16363	17041	17713	18341
9883	10529	11177	11867	12491	13103	13757	14449	15091	15683	16369	17047	17729	18353
9887	10531	11197	11887	12497	13109	13759	14461	15101	15727	16381	17053	17737	18367
9901	10559	11213	11897	12503	13121	13763	14479	15107	15731	16411	17077	17747	18371
9907	10567	11239	11903	12511	13127	13781	14489	15121	15733	16417	17093	17749	18379
9923	10589	11243	11909	12517	13147	13789	14503	15131	15737	16421	17099	17761	18397
9929	10597	11251	11923	12527	13151	13799	14519	15137	15739	16427	17107	17783	18401
9931	10601	11257	11927	12539	13159	13807	14533	15139	15749	16433	17117	17789	18413
9941	10607	11261	11933	12541	13163	13829	14537	15149	15761	16447	17123	17791	18427
9949	10613	11273	11939	12547	13171	13831	14543	15161	15767	16451	17137	17807	18433
9967	10627	11279	11941	12553	13177	13841	14549	15173	15773	16453	17159	17827	18439
9973	10631	11287	11953	12569	13183	13859	14551	15187	15787	16477	17167	17837	18443
10007	10639	11299	11959	12577	13187	13873	14557	15193	15791	16481	17183	17839	18451
10009	10651	11311	11969	12583	13217	13877	14561	15199	15797	16487	17189	17851	18457
10037	10657	11317	11971	12589	13219	13879	14563	15217	15803	16493	17191	17863	18461
10039	10663	11321	11981	12601	13229	13883	14591	15227	15809	16519	17203	17881	18481
10061	10667	11329	11987	12611	13241	13901	14593	15233	15817	16529	17207	17891	18493
10067	10687	11351	12007	12613	13249	13903	14621	15241	15823	16547	17209	17903	18503
10069	10691	11353	12011	12619	13259	13907	14627	15259	15859	16553	17231	17909	18517
10079	10709	11369	12037	12637	13267	13913	14629	15263	15877	16561	17239	17911	18521
10091	10711	11383	12041	12641	13291	13921	14633	15269	15881	16567	17257	17921	18523
10093	10723	11393	12043	12647	13297	13931	14639	15271	15887	16573	17291	17923	18539
10099	10729	11399	12049	12653	13309	13933	14653	15277	15889	16603	17293	17929	18541
10103	10733	11411	12071	12659	13313	13963	14657	15287	15901	16607	17299	17939	18553
10111	10739	11423	12073	12671	13327	13967	14669	15289	15907	16619	17317	17957	18583
10133	10753	11437	12097	12689	13331	13997	14683	15299	15913	16631	17321	17959	18587
10139	10771	11443	12101	12697	13337	13999	14699	15307	15919	16633	17327	17971	18593
10141	10781	11447	12107	12703	13339	14009	14713	15313	15923	16649	17333	17977	18617
10151	10789	11467	12109	12713	13367	14011	14717	15319	15937	16651	17341	17981	18637
10159	10799	11471	12113	12721	13381	14029	14723	15329	15959	16657	17351	17987	18661
10163	10831	11483	12119	12739	13397	14033	14731	15331	15971	16661	17359	17989	18671
10169	10837	11489	12143	12743	13399	14051	14737	15349	15973	16673	17377	18013	18679
10177	10847	11491	12149	12757	13411	14057	14741	15359	15991	16691	17383	18041	18691

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ALGEBRA

In engineering, manufacturing, and industrial applications, physical laws govern the behavior of all quantities. Algebraic formulas (equations) are the models for these laws. They usually consist of algebraic expressions, the most common being polynomials, rational expressions, and radicals. Most of the formulas used in this Handbook contain one or more of these. This section gives a foundation for understanding the algebra indispensable to solving equations.

Definitions.—The vocabulary of algebra extends to all mathematics. The essential definitions are given here.

Operation: Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, root-taking, raising to a power, taking a logarithm.

Inverse Operation: An operation that reverses another operation. Addition and subtraction are inverse operations, as are multiplication and division. Taking the *n*th root is the inverse of raising a number to a power. Finding an antilogarithm is the inverse of finding a logarithm.

Constant: A known quantity, either a number standing alone or a letter that is assumed to be given or known in an application. In $5x + 14$, 14 is the constant. Usually, the letters a, b, and c are used to represent constants, as in the linear equation $ax + by = c$. Note: e and π are commonly seen constants.

Variable: An unknown quantity, represented by a letter such as n, x, y, x, t. Note: e and π are not variables.

Exponent: The power to which a variable or number is raised.

Monomial: A single variable or number or a product of numbers and variables. Examples: $5, x, -4y^2, 12xy^2z^3$. Exponents in monomials are whole numbers, 0, 1, 2, 3, . . . , so $x^{-1} = 1/x$ and $x^{1/2} = \sqrt{x}$ are not monomials.

Coefficient: The numerical factor in a term. Examples (in bold): $\mathbf{5}x, \mathbf{16}n, \mathbf{-2}r$. The coefficient of a variable standing alone is understood to be 1, for example, $x = 1x$; the coefficient of $-x$ is -1.

Term: Monomials are terms, but so are expressions that are not monomials: $1/x$, $\sqrt{x}$, $8x^{1/3}$, $\log x$, and so on.

Like Terms: This usually refers to monomials with the same variable and exponent, and having any real number coefficients, such as x and $7x$; $2n^2$ and $n^2/4$; $2rst/5$ and $14rst$, and so on. Any constant a can be written as ax^0, so all constants are like terms. But $x^{1/2}$ and $4x^{1/2}$ also are like terms.

Expression: Numbers and variables with *operators* (addition: +, multiplication: × or ·, $\sqrt{\ }$ etc.).

Equation: Two expressions set equal to one another with the equal sign = .

Examples: $5x = x^2 - 6$; $\sqrt{3x} = 14$. Solving equations for the unknown is the foundation of algebra.

Inequality: Two expressions set against one another by $>, <, \geq, \leq$, or $\neq$.

Evaluating Algebraic Expressions.—An expression is *evaluated* by substituting given values of the variable. For example, $x^2 - 2x + 7$ evaluated at $x = -3$ is $(-3)^2 - 2(-3) + 7 = 9 + 6 + 7 = 22$.

Another example, $\sqrt{1 - x^2}$ evaluated at $x = \frac{1}{3}$ is $\sqrt{1 - (\frac{1}{3})^2} = \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{9}} = \sqrt{\frac{8}{9}}$.

Combining Like Terms.—Like terms are added and subtracted by combining their coefficients and leaving the rest of the term as is. For example:

$$3x + x - 7x = -3x \qquad 2n^2 + \frac{n^2}{4} - n^2 = \frac{5n^2}{4} \qquad 2rst - 14rst + rst = -11rst$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solving an Equation for an Unknown.— Solving an equation for an unknown (say, x) requires isolating x from the other terms. This is accomplished by applying techniques of *inverse operations*, *combining like terms*, and *factoring*, as explained throughout ALGEBRA, GEOMETRY, and TRIGONOMETRY.

The simplest equations contain only one or two variables, such as linear equations and other polynomials in two dimensions. Others may contain many variables, such as formulas in physics and engineering. A *formula* is an equation that determines a physical quantity based on other known quantities. An example is area of a rectangle, $A = lw$, where l is length and w is width in like units. Another is horsepower transmitted by belting, $P = SVW/33{,}000$, where S, V, and W are, respectively, working stress of the belt, belt velocity, and belt width, all in appropriate units.

The following examples give an overview of equation solving with general terms A, B, C, and D. The same processes apply for solving polynomial and other algebraic equations for an unknown.

Solving by Adding or Subtracting:

Given: $B - C = A - D$

To solve for A: $B - C + D = A$, that is, $A = B - C + D$

To solve for B: $B = A - D + C$

To solve for C: $B = A - D + C \rightarrow B - A + D = C$, that is, $C = B - A + D$

To solve for D: $B - C + D = A \rightarrow D = A - B + C$

In the last two, C and D are moved first so they do not have a minus sign before them in the answer. But *keeping in mind that subtracting a term is the same as adding its negative* (see Integers on page 3), another way to solve for C or D is given below. The subtraction "minus C" is treated as "negative C." Then, multiplying through by –1, all signs change but equality is maintained, leaving C:

Solve for C: $B - C = A - D \rightarrow -C = A - D - B \rightarrow (-1)(-C) = (-1)(A - D - B) \rightarrow C = -A + D + B$

Solve for D: $B - C = A - D \rightarrow B - C - A = -D \rightarrow (-1)(B - C - A) = (-1)(-D) \rightarrow -B + C + A = D$, or $D = A - B + C$

Changing the sign of each term by multiplying through by –1 is a common technique.

Solving by Multiplying or Dividing: A variable that is a factor or a divisor within a term is isolated using division (*multiplying by the reciprocal*) or multiplication (*cross-multiplying*).

Example: In the equation $\frac{AB}{C} = D$, each variable is isolated using multiplication.

To isolate A, multiply each side by the reciprocal of $\frac{B}{C}$:

$$\frac{C}{B} \times \frac{AB}{C} = \frac{C}{B} \times D \rightarrow A = \frac{C}{B} \times \frac{D}{1} = \frac{CD}{B}, \text{ so } A = \frac{CD}{B}$$

To isolate B, multiply each side by the reciprocal of $\frac{A}{C}$:

$$\frac{C}{A} \times \frac{AB}{C} = \frac{C}{A} \times D \rightarrow B = \frac{C}{A} \times \frac{D}{1} = \frac{CD}{A}, \text{ so } B = \frac{CD}{A}$$

To isolate C, multiply each side by C: $C \times \frac{AB}{C} = C \times D \rightarrow AB = CD$

Then divide by D (multiply by the reciprocal of D):

$$\frac{AB}{1} \times \frac{1}{D} = \frac{CD}{1} \times \frac{1}{D} \rightarrow \frac{AB}{D} = C, \quad \text{so } C = \frac{AB}{D}$$

Equations with more complexity require more steps to solve for an unknown.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples:

Solve $\frac{A+B}{C} = D$ for A:

Multiply both sides by C	$\frac{A+B}{C} \cdot C = D \cdot C \rightarrow A + B = DC$	
Subtract B from both sides	$A + B - B = DC - B \rightarrow A = DC - B$ or $CD - B$	

Solve $\frac{A+B}{C} = B - D$ for D:

Add D to both sides	$\frac{A+B}{C} + D = B$	
Subtract $\frac{A+B}{C}$ from both sides	$D = B - \frac{A+B}{C}$	

Solve $\frac{A+B}{C} = B - A$ for A:

Add A to both sides	$\frac{A+B}{C} + A = B$	
Multiply both sides by C	$C\left(\frac{A+B}{C} + A\right) = CB$	
Distribute C	$A + B + CA = CB$	Like terms A and CA are isolated from B
Subtract B from both sides	$A + CA = CB - B$	Since A and CA cannot be combined, A must be factored out
Factor out A	$A(1 + C) = CB - B$	
Divide both sides by $1 + C$	$A = \frac{CB-B}{1+C}$	

Solving an equation for an unknown is the basic technique for working with formulas.

Rearrangement and Transposition of Terms in Formulas

A *formula* is a rule for a calculation expressed by using letters and signs, instead of writing out the rule in words. By this means, it is possible to condense, in a small space, the essentials of long and cumbersome rules.

As an example, the formula for horsepower transmitted by belting may be written

$$P = SVW/33000$$

where P = horsepower transmitted; S = working stress of belt per inch of width in pounds; V = velocity of belt in feet per minute; W = width of belt in inches; and, 33,000 = a constant that is part of the formula for horsepower with units of hp/(lb-in^2/min).

If the working stress S, velocity V, and width W are known, horsepower can be found directly from this formula by inserting the given values. For example, if $S = 33$, $V = 600$, and $W = 5$. Then,

$$P = 33 \times 600 \times 5/33000 = 3 \text{ hp}$$

Assume that horsepower P, stress S, and velocity V are known, and that the width of belt W is to be found. The formula must then be rearranged so that the symbol W will be alone on one side of the equation. This is accomplished by isolating W by moving the other variables and the number to the other side of the equation:

$$\text{From } P = \frac{SVW}{33,000}, \text{ multiply both sides by 33,000:} \quad 33,000P = SVW$$

$$\text{Divide both sides by } SV: \quad \frac{33,000P}{SV} = W, \text{ or } W = \frac{33,000P}{SV}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Algebraic Operations

Algebraic operations rely on the symbols and properties of real numbers, reviewed below from *ARITHMETIC* and used throughout this section. Key skills include exponent use (for both powers and roots), polynomial operations, and solving equations for a variable (unknown). The same skills carry over to areas of geometry, trigonometry, and calculus, where a strong foundation in algebra is essential.

Properties of Monomials and Exponents

$$\underbrace{a+\cdots+a}_{(n\text{ terms})}=na \qquad a+0=a \qquad a+(-a)=0 \qquad a\times b=ab$$

$$\underbrace{a\times a\times\cdots\times a}_{(n\text{ factors})}=a^n \qquad a^n a^m=a^{(n+m)} \qquad \frac{a^n}{a^m}=a^{(n-m)} \qquad (a^m)^n=a^{mn}$$

$$a^{m/n}=(a^{1/n})^m \qquad a^{-n}=\frac{1}{a^n} \qquad \frac{1}{a^{-n}}=a^n \qquad a^0=1 \ (\text{for } a\neq 0)$$

Examples:

$$a+a=2a \qquad -3a-a=-4a \qquad 4a\times 3a=12aa=12a^2$$

$$a^2a^3=a^{2+3}=a^5 \qquad (a^2)^3=a^{2\times 3}=a^6$$

$$a^{-3}=\frac{1}{a^3}=\left(\frac{1}{a}\right)^3 \qquad (ab)^2=a^2b^2 \qquad \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^3=\frac{a^3}{b^3} \qquad \frac{a^4}{a^3}=a^{4-3}=a$$

Properties of Radicals

$$\sqrt{a}\times\sqrt{a}=a \qquad \sqrt{a}\times\sqrt{b}=\sqrt{ab} \qquad \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}}=\sqrt{\frac{a}{b}}$$

$$(\sqrt[n]{a})^n=a \qquad \sqrt[n]{a^m}=(\sqrt[n]{a})^m=a^{m/n}, \text{ unless } a<0, m \text{ and } n \text{ are both even}$$

$$\sqrt[n]{\frac{1}{a}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt[n]{a}}=a^{-1/n} \qquad (\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{b})^2=(\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{b})(\sqrt{a}+\sqrt{b})=a+2\sqrt{ab}+b$$

Examples:

$$\sqrt[3]{a}\times\sqrt[3]{a}\times\sqrt[3]{a}=(\sqrt[3]{a})^3=a \qquad \sqrt[3]{ab}=\sqrt[3]{a}\times\sqrt[3]{b} \qquad \sqrt[3]{\frac{a}{b}}=\frac{\sqrt[3]{a}}{\sqrt[3]{b}}$$

$$\sqrt[3]{a^2}=(\sqrt[3]{a})^2=a^{2/3} \qquad \sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{a}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{a}}=\frac{1}{a^{1/3}}=a^{-1/3} \qquad \sqrt[4]{\sqrt[3]{a}}=\sqrt[4\times 3]{a}=\sqrt[3]{\sqrt[4]{a}} \qquad (a^{1/4})^{1/3}$$

$$\sqrt{x}+9\sqrt{x}-4\sqrt{x}=(1+9-4)\sqrt{x}=6\sqrt{x} \qquad \sqrt{x^2}=x \qquad \sqrt{x^3}=\sqrt{x^2x}=\sqrt{x^2}\sqrt{x}=x\sqrt{x}$$

$$\sqrt{100x}=\sqrt{100}\sqrt{x}=10\sqrt{x} \qquad \sqrt[5]{x^3}=\left(\sqrt[5]{x}\right)^3=x^{5/3} \qquad \sqrt{20x^3}=\sqrt{4.5.x^2.x}=\sqrt{4x^2}\sqrt{5x}=2x\sqrt{5x}$$

$$4\sqrt{5x}\left(\sqrt{x}+3x\right)=\sqrt{5x\cdot x}+12x\sqrt{5x}=4\sqrt{5x^2}+12x\sqrt{5x}=4x\sqrt{5}+12x\sqrt{5x}$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{36}{x^4}}=\frac{\sqrt{36}}{\sqrt{x^4}}=\frac{6}{x^2} \qquad \sqrt{x+1} \text{ cannot be simplified}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

Polynomials

Polynomials in a single variable are expressions of the form $a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_{n-2}x^{n-2} + \cdots + a_1 x^1 + a_0$, where *n is a non-negative integer*, and the coefficients $a_n, a_{n-1}, \ldots, a_0$ are real numbers (the subscripts are simply labels that correspond to the variables (x^n, $x^{n-1}, \ldots$). *n* is the *degree* (or *order*) of the polynomial; a_n is the *leading coefficient*; a_0 is the *constant coefficient*. A *first-degree polynomial* has $n = 1$; a *second-degree* polynomial has $n = 2$, and so on.

Example: $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{6}$ is degree 1, $a_1 = \frac{1}{3}$ is the leading coefficient, $a_0 = \frac{1}{6}$ is the constant coefficient.

Example: $4x^2 - 7$ is degree 2, $a_2 = 4$ is the leading coefficient, $a_0 = -7$ is the constant coefficient.

Example: $x^3 + 5x^2 - x + \frac{1}{3}$ is degree 3, and the coefficients are $a_3 = 1, a_2 = 5, a_1 = -1$, and $a_0 = \frac{1}{3}$.

A *monomial* is a single-term polynomial. For example, $8x^5$ is degree 5 with coefficient 8. A constant is a polynomial, by the definition. Its degree is 0. For example, 19 is a 0-degree polynomial, since it can be written as $19x^0$. A *binomial* is a polynomial with two terms, such as $x + 9$ and $5 - x^2$. A *trinomial* has three terms, such as, $x^2 + x - 6$.

Finally, second-degree polynomials are called *quadratic* polynomials. They are important because they model so many processes in engineering and other technical and scientific fields.

Operations on Polynomials.—Polynomials can be added, subtracted, or multiplied ("expanded"), with the result being another polynomial. If polynomials are divided, the result is a *rational expression*. Polynomials also may be *factored*. That is, they may be written as a product of lower-degree polynomials.

Combining (Adding and Subtracting) Polynomials: Two or more polynomials are added by combining like terms. For example:

$$\left(x^4 + 6x^3 - 3x^2 - 5x - 11\right) + \left(x^3 - 12x^2 + x + 28\right) = x^4 + 7x^3 - 15x^2 - 4x + 17$$

Multiplying (Expanding) Polynomials: Taking the product of two or more polynomials relies on the distributive property of multiplication over addition (or subtraction): $a(b + c) = ab + ac$, where the rules of exponents are followed (see *Properties of Monomials and Exponents* on page 27).

Examples of simple distributive case:

$$2x\left(8x^4 + 3x^2 - 6\right) = 2 \cdot 8x^{1+4} + 2 \cdot 3x^{1+2} - 2 \cdot 6x = 16x^5 + 6x^3 - 12x$$

Note: This technique also is used for multiplying other algebraic expressions, such as radical (root) and rational expressions. Such terms are not polynomials, since their exponents are other than non-negative integers.

Examples of Distributive Property for Root and Rational Expressions:

$$2x^{1/2}\left(7x + 3\right) = 14x^{1/2+1} + 6x^{1/2} = 14x^{3/2} + 6x^{1/2}$$

$$\frac{1}{x}\left(x^3 - 7x^2 + 3x\right) = x^{-1+3} - 7x^{-1+2} + 3x^{-1+1} = x^2 - 7x^1 + 3x^0 = x^2 - 7x + 3$$

"FOIL" is a version of the distributive property in which two binomials are multiplied. FOIL stands for **F**irst **O**uter **I**nner **L**ast, the order in which terms are multiplied. The first is *ac*; outer is *ad*, inner is *bc*, and last is *bd*.

FOIL multiplication: $(a + b)(c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples:

$(x-6)(x+1) = x\cdot x + x\cdot 1 - 6\cdot x - 6\cdot 1 = x^2 + 1x - 6x - 6 = x^2 - 5x - 6$

$(3x^2+2x)(4x^3-5) = 3x^2\cdot 4x^3 - 5\cdot 3x^2 + 2x\cdot 4x^3 + 2x\cdot(-5) = 12x^5 - 15x^2 + 8x^4 - 10x$

$(x-1)(x+1) = x\cdot x + x\cdot 1 - 1\cdot x - 1\cdot 1 = x^2 + 1x - 1x - 1 = x^2 - 1$ (the middle terms drop out)

$(x+1)^2 = (x+1)(x+1) = x^2 + x + x + 1 = x^2 + 2x + 1$

In the first and third examples, the products of the outer and inner terms are like terms, so they are combined. The third example is a *special product* (in this case, the difference of squares). The fourth is an example of raising a polynomial to an exponent.

Raising a Polynomial to an Exponent: Consider first $(a+b)^2$, which is $(a+b)(a+b)$, and this expands by FOIL to $a^2 + ab + ab + b^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$. In general, an expansion like $(a+b)^2, (a-b)^2, (a+b)^3, (a-b)^3$ is called a *binomial expansion*, $(a+b)^n$. For example:

$$(a+b)^n = \underbrace{(a+b)(a+b)(a+b)\cdots(a+b)}_{n \text{ factors}}$$

Caution: A common but *serious* mistake is distributing the exponent to each term in the parentheses:

$$(a+b)^2 = (a+b)(a+b) = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \quad NOT \quad a^2 + b^2$$

Factoring Polynomials.—The result of two or more polynomials being multiplied is a higher-degree polynomial. *Factoring a polynomial* breaks it into its lesser-degree factors. This section explains how to factor a polynomial, a skill needed for solving equations and graphing functions (see *Graphs of Functions* on page 35). The categories are: dividing by a *common factor* (i.e., distributive property in reverse); factoring by *reverse FOIL* (with leading coefficient of 1 and otherwise); factoring *special products*.

Common Factors: Each term is divided by the *greatest common factor* (GCF) and written as shown: $ab + ac = a(b+c)$

Examples of GCF factoring:

$6x^3 + 2x^2 - 10x = 2x(3x^2 + x - 5)$ GCF

$mn + m^2n - mn^2 = mn(1 + m - n)$ GCF

$-7abc - 21bc^2 + 4bc = -bc(7a + 21c - 4)$ GCF

Note: The variable in the GCF is the one with the lowest exponent in common to all terms. If two terms have a GCF, but the others do not, then that factor cannot be pulled out. And, if the leading coefficient is negative (third example), it is customary to factor out –1 in the GCF redundant. This is so the expression in parentheses has a positive leading coefficient, which makes it easier to factor further.

Reverse FOIL of Form $x^2 + bx + c$: The basic technique is demonstrated for a second-degree trinomial with a leading coefficient of 1. The task is to factor $x^2 + bx + c$ as $(x + \square)(x + \square)$, using only integers $\{\ldots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$ in the boxes.

Example: Consider $x^2 + 4x + 3$. To factor it as $(x + \square)(x + \square)$, the integers must have a product of +3 (the last term of $x^2 + 4x + 3$) and a sum of +4 (the middle term). 1 and 3 are correct, as verified by FOIL:

$$x^2 + 4x + 3 = (x+1)(x+3).$$

As long as the leading coefficient is 1, reverse FOIL works. If one or both operations in the trinomial are negative, the process is the same, but some trial and error may be needed, as shown in the examples below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Three similar trinomials, only two are factorable:

$x^2 + 2x - 3 = (x + 3)(x - 1)$, since $(3)(-1) = -3$ and $3 + -1 = 2$

$x^2 - 2x - 3 = (x - 3)(x + 1)$, since $(-3)(1) = -3$ and $-3 + 1 = -2$

$x^2 - 2x + 3$ Does not factor over the real numbers, since no two integers have a product of $+3$ and a sum of -2

Examples: Factoring by reverse FOIL, along with the explanation:

$x^2 - 8x - 20 = (x - 10)(x + 2)$ The two integers whose product is –20 and whose sum is –8 are –10 and 2.

$x^2 - 21x + 20 = (x - 20)(x - 1)$ The two integers whose product is 20 and whose sum is –21 are –20 and –1.

Reverse *FOIL for polynomials of Form* $ax^2 + bx + c$: If the leading coefficient is other than 1, reverse FOIL works, but a different tactic is needed. Sometimes called "magic factoring," the procedure is shown in this example:

$$3x^2 + 13x + 12, \quad a = 3, b = 13, c = 12$$

Step 1: $ac = (3)(12) = 36$

Step 2: Write all factor pairs of $ac = 36$: 1,36; 2,18; 3,12; 4,9; 6,6

Step 3: Choose the factor pair whose sum is $b = 13$: 4, 9

Step 4: Rewrite polynomial with middle term $13x$ as $4x + 9x$: $3x^2 + 4x + 9x + 12$

Step 5: Group first two terms and second two terms in parentheses: $(3x^2 + 4x) + (9x + 12)$

Step 6: Take the common factor out of each group: $x(3x + 4) + 3(3x + 4)$

Step 7: Take the common *binomial* factor out of each large term: $(3x + 4)(x + 3)$ Correct factorization

Step 8: Check the factorization found: $3x^2 + 9x + 4x + 12 = 3x^2 + 13x + 12$

Special Products: Certain binomials are factored according to formulas, which can be checked by multiplying. The *difference of squares* is perhaps the most important because it comes up so often in applications, as do many quadratic (second-degree) polynomials. It comes from multiplying the *conjugate pair* of binomials, $(a + b)$ with $(a - b)$ to get $a^2 - b^2$.

Difference of squares: $a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$

Difference of cubes: $a^3 - b^3 = (a - b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$

Sum of cubes: $a^3 + b^3 = (a + b)(a^2 - ab + b^2)$

Square of a sum: $(a + b)^2 = (a + b)(a + b) = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$

Difference of a sum: $(a - b)^2 = (a - b)(a - b) = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$

Note: *The sum of squares* $a^2 + b^2$ *is not a factorable binomial over the set of real numbers*. However, it is factorable over the set of complex numbers (see *Complex Numbers* on page 59).

Examples: Several special product factorizations are shown:

Difference of squares: $a^2 - b^2$	Differerence of cubes: $a^3 - b^3$	Sum of cubes: $a^3 + b^3$
$x^2 - 81 = (x + 9)(x - 9)$	$x^3 - 1 = (x - 1)(x^2 + x + 1)$	$x^3 + 1 = (x + 1)(x^2 - x + 1)$
$100 - 49x^2 = (10 + 7x)(10 - 7x)$	$8 - x^3 = (2 - x)(4 + 2x + x^2)$	$27 + x^3 = (3 + x)(9 - 3x + x^2)$

Factorization of all other cases is done using the *quadratic formula*, as shown in the next section.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Equation Solving

An equation is a statement of equality between two expressions, such as one monomial set equal to another, like $5x = 105$. The unknown, or variable, is frequently designated by x. Other unknowns (if any) are designated by letters also usually selected from the end of the alphabet: y, z, u, t, etc.

Equations, like expressions, have a degree. A *first-degree* equation is one in which the variable is raised to the first power, as in $3x = 9$. A *second-degree* equation, also called a *quadratic* equation, is one in which the highest power of the variable is two; for example, $x^2 + 3x = 10$.

Solving a first-degree equation requires isolating the unknown. In the example below, x is the unknown variable. To get x alone (to isolate x), constants are combined on one side of the equation and variable terms are combined on the other. The steps are:

Given:	$10x - 14 = 8 - 2x$
Add $2x$ to both sides:	$10x - 14 + 2x = 8 - 2x + 2x$
	$12x - 14 = 8$
Add 14 to both sides:	$12x - 14 + 14 = 8 + 14$
	$12x = 22$
Divide by 12 (multiply by 1/12):	$12x/12 = 22/12$
Simplify:	$x = 22/12 = 11/6$

Any answer can be checked by substituting it into the original equation to see that it satisfies it.

Solving a System of Linear Equations.—More involved than solving a single-variable equation is the process of solving a *system* of linear equations. A simple linear system represents two lines in the plane that behave in one of three ways: they *intersect at one point*, in which case they have a *unique solution*, (x, y); they intersect everywhere—that is, they are *collinear*—so all points (x, y) of one line satisfy the other; or they are *parallel* and thus intersect nowhere, hence, there is no solution.

The methods for solving a system of linear equations are *substitution* and *elimination*, as shown next.

Substitution: In this method, one of the variables is expressed in terms of the other variable by isolating it. This expression is then substituted into the second equation, converting it to a single-variable equation. It is solved for this variable, and the solution is substituted back into the either of the original two equations to find the value of the other variable.

Example (Unique Solution): Find the ordered pair (x, y) that satisfies the system of equations:

$$2x + y = 7$$
$$x - 2y = -4$$

First, solve either equation for one variable in terms of the other. Say, solve the second equation for x:

$$x = 2y - 4$$

Then, substitute this expression for x into the first equation and solve it for y:

$$2(2y - 4) + y = 7 \quad \rightarrow \quad 4y - 8 + y = 7 \quad \rightarrow \quad 5y = 15 \quad \rightarrow \quad y = 3$$

Finally, substitute $y = 3$ into the second equation: $x = 2(3) - 4 = 6 - 4 = 2$. The solution (that is, the point at which the lines intersect) is $(2, 3)$.

Example (Infinite Solutions): Find the ordered pair (x, y) that satisfies the system of equations:

$$7x - y = 3$$
$$14x - 2y = 6$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The first equation is rearranged to $y = 7x - 3$. Substituting into the second equation yields: $14x - 2(7x - 3) = 6 \rightarrow 14x - 14x + 6 = 6 \rightarrow 6 = 6$.

If a system results in $a = a$, then the lines are the same, or collinear. All of the points on either line are solutions to (points on) the other line. The indication that lines are collinear is that one is a multiple of the other, term by term.

Example (No Solution): Parallel lines have the same slope, and so they have no point of intersection. This is seen in the substitution of one equation's variable into the other equation, giving a false statement, such as $1 = 3$. An example is the system $y = -x + 4$ and $y = -x - 1$. Substitution of the first into the second gives $-x + 4 = -x - 1$, or $4 = -1$. This clearly is not true, hence the system has no solution.

A final way to find the solution to a linear system is to put the coefficients of the equations into the following formulas and to solve for x and y, as follows:

$$a_1x + b_1y = c_1$$
$$a_2x + b_2y = c_2$$

Then,

$$x = \frac{c_1b_2 - c_2b_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1} \qquad y = \frac{a_1c_2 - a_2c_1}{a_1b_2 - a_2b_1}$$

Example:

$$3x + 4y = 17$$
$$5x - 2y = 11$$
$$x = \frac{(17)(-2) - (11)(4)}{(3)(-2) - (5)(4)} = \frac{-34 - 44}{-6 - 20} = \frac{-78}{-26} = 3$$

The value of y can now be most easily found by inserting the value of x in one of the equations:

$$(5)(3) - 2y = 11, \qquad 2y = 15 - 11 = 4, \qquad y = 2$$

Checking the solution by putting these values into the original system shows that (3, 2) is the solution of this linear system.

Solving a Second-Degree (Quadratic) Equation.—A second-degree equation is also called a *quadratic equation*. To *solve* a second-degree equation is to find the x values (or points) at which the parabola intersects the x-axis. These are the *roots* or *zeros* of the parabola.

There are several ways to solve a quadratic equation for its roots. If an equation can be factored, then each factor is set equal to zero and the solution is thus found. This is according to the *zero property of multiplication*, which states that if $AB = 0$, then either $A = 0$ or $B = 0$.

If the equation is not readily or obviously factored (or even if it is), the *quadratic formula* can be used to find the roots, as explained in the next section, *Using the Quadratic Formula*.

The simplest quadratic equation has the form $x^2 = c$, where c is a constant. Solving this entails simply taking the square root of both sides:

$x^2 = c$, therefore, $x = \sqrt{c}$ and $-\sqrt{c}$. For example, $x^2 = 36$ has two solutions, $x = 6$ and $x = -6$. If the quadratic has the form, like $ax^2 = c$, the solution is also straightforward, $x^2 = a/c$, and so $x = \pm\sqrt{a/c}$.

Note: The square root of a number as it stands alone is understood to be its positive root; that is, the square root of 9 is 3. But *in an equation* the solution includes both positive and negative roots. This makes sense because the equation represents a parabola, which can intersect the x-axis in two places, its two roots. The other two possibilities occur when the parabola (a quadratic function) intersects the x-axis once (touches it) or does not intersect it. All three possibilities are revealed in solutions to the quadratic equation.

Designating the roots of a quadratic equation (or any polynomial) by r, $x^2 = c$ can be regarded as $x^2 = r^2$, so $x = r$ and $-r$, the roots of the parabola. Another way to rewrite $x^2 = r^2$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is $x^2 - r^2 = 0$, and then factor as the difference of squares (see *Polynomials* on page 28): $(x + r)(x - r) = 0$, hence, $x = -r$ and r.

Verifying this to be the factorization of the difference of squares is simply a matter of applying the distributive property of multiplication over addition to each term:

$$(x + r)(x - r) = xx - xr + xr - rr = x^2 - r^2$$

As previously explained, this process is called expanding by FOIL, for the **F**irst, **O**uter, **I**nner, and **L**ast terms of each binomial, which are multiplied in that order to get the product. From the zero property of multiplication,

$$(x + r)(x - r) = 0 \quad \text{implies} \quad x + r = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad x - r = 0, \text{thus } x = -r \quad \text{or} \quad x = r.$$

If a quadratic cannot be factored as a difference of squares, then factorization is approached as shown in *Factoring Polynomials* on page 29. Given a quadratic equation in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, first obtain the product ac from the coefficients a and c; then determine two numbers whose product is ac and whose sum is b.

Example: Find the solution to $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$ by factoring.

In this example, $a = 1, b = -5, c = 6$ and $ac = (1)(6) = 6$. The factors of 6 whose sum is –5 are –2 and –3. The equation is factored as $x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 2)(x - 3) = 0$. Then by the zero property of multiplication, the roots of the equation are $x = 2$ and $x = 3$. The parabola intersects the x-axis at these two values of x.

A more difficult example has a leading coefficient of x other than 1.

Example: Factor $8x^2 + 22x + 5 = 0$ and find the values of x that satisfy the equation.

Solution: Here, $a = 8, b = 22$, and $c = 5$. Therefore, $ac = 8 \times 5 = 40$, and ac is positive, so we are looking for two factors of ac, namely f_1 and f_2, such that $f_1 + f_2 = 22$.

The possible combinations of numbers with product of 40 are 20 and 2, 8 and 5, 4 and 10, and 40 and 1. The requirements that satisfy a sum of 22 are 20 and 2, since $20 \times 2 = 40$ and $20 + 2 = 22$. Hence:

$$\begin{aligned} 8x^2 + 22x + 5 &= 0 \\ 8x^2 + 20x + 2x + 5 &= 0 \\ 4x(2x + 5) + 1(2x + 5) &= 0 \\ (2x + 5)(4x + 1) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

On the second line, the common factor of $4x$ in the first two terms is factored out, so the common binomial factor of $2x + 5$ is then apparent, to be factored out of the larger terms. Checking the answer is a matter of simply remultiplying the factors to produce the original expression.

Because the product of the two factors equals zero, each of the factors also equals zero. Thus, $2x + 5 = 0$ and $4x + 1 = 0$. Rearranging and solving, $x = -5/2$ or $x = -1/4$.

Example: Factor $8x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$ and find the solutions of the equation.

Solution: Here $a = 8, b = 3, c = -5$, and $ac = 8 \times (-5) = -40$. The required numbers must have a product of –40 and a sum of 3.

As in the previous example, the possible combinations are 20 and –2, –20 and 2, –8 and 5, 8 and –5, 40 and –1, and –40 and 1. Only 8 and –5 satisfy the requirements because $8 \times (-5) = -40$, and $8 + (-5) = 3$. Notice that $3x$ in the first line is thus written as $8x - 5x$ in the second line, making it possible to rearrange and simplify the expression.

$$\begin{aligned} 8x^2 + 3x - 5 &= 0 \\ 8x^2 + 8x - 5x - 5 &= 0 \\ 8x(x + 1) - 5(x + 1) &= 0 \\ (x + 1)(8x - 5) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Solving, for $x + 1 = 0, x = -1$; and, for $8x - 5 = 0, x = 5/8$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solving by Completing the Square.—An equation of the form $x^2 + bx + c = 0$ can be turned into the square of a sum. The steps are:

- Move constant to the right side of the equal sign: $x^2 + bx = -c$
- Add $(b/2)^2$ to both sides: $x^2 + bx + (b/2)^2 = -c + (b/2)^2$
- Note the left side is the square of a sum, that is: $(x + b/2)^2$
- The right is a new constant, call it d: $-c + (b/2)^2 = d$
- The equation is thus converted to: $(x + b/2)^2 = d$
- Take the positive and negative square root of both sides: $x + \frac{b}{2} = \pm\sqrt{d}$
- Solve for x: $x = -\frac{b}{2} \pm \sqrt{d}$

Example: Complete the square to solve $x^2 + 4x - 3 = 0$.

- $x^2 + 4x = 3$
- $x^2 + 4x + (4/2)^2 = 3 + (4/2)^2$, that is, $x^2 + 4x + 4 = 3 + 4$
- Left side: $x^2 + 4x + 4 = (x + 2)^2$
- Right side: $3 + 4 = 7$
- So, $(x + 2)^2 = 7$
- $x + 2 = \pm\sqrt{7}$
- $x = -2 \pm \sqrt{7}$

Completing the square is more involved if the leading coefficient a is not 1. Then it is preferable to use the *quadratic formula*, which can be used for any value of a in a quadratic equation.

Using the Quadratic Formula.—The method of completing the square leads to the quadratic formula for finding the roots of equations with the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Example: In the equation, $x^2 + 6x + 5 = 0$, $a = 1$, $b = 6$, and $c = 5$.

$$x = \frac{-6 \pm \sqrt{6^2 - (4)(1)(5)}}{(2)(1)} = \frac{(-6) + 4}{2} = -1 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{(-6) - 4}{2} = -5$$

Example: A right triangle has a hypotenuse of 5 cm and one leg that is 1 cm longer than the other; find the lengths of the two legs.

Let x be the length of one leg and $x + 1$ be the length of the other; then by Pythagorean theorem (see page 62), $x^2 + (x + 1)^2 = 5^2$. Expanding this and setting all terms equal to zero gives $x^2 + x - 12 = 0$. Now referring to the basic formula, $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, here, $a = 1$, $b = 1$, and $c = -12$. Substituting these values into the quadratic formula:

$$x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 - (4)(1)(-12)}}{(2)(1)} = \frac{(-1) + 7}{2} = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{(-1) - 7}{2} = -4$$

Since only the positive value, 3, makes sense in this case, the lengths of the two sides are $x = 3$ cm and $x + 1 = 4$ cm.

Solving a Cubic Equation.—Just as quadratic equations may be simple to solve if they are of the form $x^2 = c$, a cubic equation of the form $x^3 = c$ also is simple to solve. But, the given equation has the form: $x^3 + ax + b = 0$ then one of the real roots is:

$$x = \left(-\frac{b}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{a^3}{27} + \frac{b^2}{4}}\right)^{1/3} + \left(-\frac{b}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{a^3}{27} + \frac{b^2}{4}}\right)^{1/3}$$

The equation $x^3 + px^2 + qx + r = 0$ may be rewritten in the form ${x_1}^3 + a{x_1} + b = 0$ by substituting $x_1 - \frac{p}{3}$ for x in the given equation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Functions

Functions are understood through both equations and graphs. Graphs are drawn on the (x, y)-coordinate system (or rectangular coordinate system), which is described fully in *Analytic Geometry* section of *GEOMETRY* starting on page 42.

A *function* consists of two sets (generally called X and Y) of numbers and a *rule* that assigns (or sends) each element (usually, a real number) x in X to a *unique* element (another real number) y in Y. "y is a function of x" is commonly expressed as $y = f(x)$. Countless physical processes are represented by functions. For example, displacement, s, is a function of time, t, so it is represented as $s(t)$. Velocity also is a function of time, $v(t)$.

The set X is called the *domain* of a function, which is the set of all real number values for which a function is *defined*. When the function acts on these numbers, the result is another real number y.

As an example, $y = f(x) = 2x + 5$ is a linear function whose domain is the set of all real numbers, since when 5 is added to the product of 2 and any real number x, the result is always a real number y. Lines are first-degree polynomials; in fact, the domain of *any* polynomial is the set of reals (see *Polynomials* on page 28).

Two more examples: $f(x) = 1/x$ is not defined at $x = 0$, since 1/0 is not a number, so its domain is the set of all real numbers except 0. Since negative numbers do not have square roots in the reals, the domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ is the set of non-negative real numbers.

In $y = f(x)$, x is called the *input* to the function. The y value resulting from x is the *output*, or *function value*. Since y depends on x, it is the *dependent variable*; x is the *independent variable*.

Interval Notation: Domain is often expressed in *interval notation*, indicating the portion of the number line that contains a function's valid input values. The interval notation for set of all reals is $(-\infty, \infty)$; for non-negative numbers, it is $[0, \infty)$; for positive numbers, it is $(0, \infty)$; and for all real numbers except 0, it is $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$. The domain of a polynomial is therefore $(-\infty, \infty)$; the domain of $f(x) = 1/x$ is $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$; and the domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ is $[0, \infty)$.

Graphs of Functions.—The *graph* of a function is drawn through the points (x, y) on the rectangular coordinate system (see page 42) so that the curve satisfies the equation $y = f(x)$. A graph depicts the relationship between x and y. The graph of a function will always pass the *vertical line test*, by which any vertical line intersects the graph at most once. Thus, any line other than a vertical line is expressible in function form, $f(x) = mx + b$, where the slope is m and the y-intercept is b. (The several *forms* of linear equations are explained in *Equation Forms of a Line* on page 44.) A parabola is represented by a polynomial function of the form $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$. All polynomials pass the vertical line test (Fig. 1a).

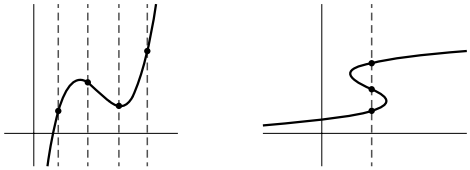


Fig. 1. (a) Passes Vertical Line Test—Represents a Function;
(b) Fails the Test—Does Not Represent a Function.

Sketches of Basic Functions: Sketches of basic functions and domain interval notation are shown in Fig. 2. It is obvious that each function passes the vertical line test.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

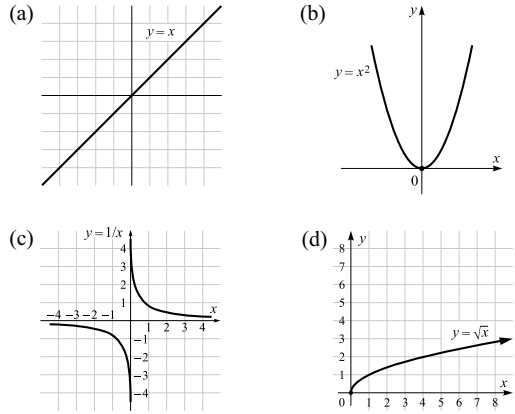


Fig. 2. (a) $f(x) = x, D_f = (-\infty, \infty)$; (b) $f(x) = x^2, D_f = (-\infty, \infty)$; (c) $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, D_f = [0, \infty)$; (d) $f(x) = 1/x, D_f = (-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$.

Logarithms

Logarithms are of value in many engineering and shop calculations because they make it possible to solve cumbersome and difficult problems that otherwise would require more complex mathematical methods. Because of this, "logs" (for short) have long been used to facilitate and shorten calculations involving multiplication, division, the extraction of roots, and obtaining powers of numbers. Since the advent of hand-held calculators, however, logarithms are rarely used to do these basic operations. The *Guide* and *Logarithms* in the *ADDITIONAL MATERIAL* on *Machinery's Handbook 31 CD*in the *Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition* include explanations and examples of how the log tables are used for computation.

Log properties and principles are still necessary in many areas. Logarithmic growth and its inverse, exponential growth (and decay), are essential to investigating processes in technical fields and science, in general. The main principles and properties of logarithms are covered here, along with representative examples. In most cases, a calculator is used to arrive at the answers.

Meaning of Logarithm.—The logarithm of a given number is the exponent to which a stated base must be raised to produce the given number. A formulaic definition of logarithm is:

$$\log_b x = y \qquad \text{means} \qquad b^y = x$$

which is read, "The logarithm of x in base b is y; that is, b raised to the y power equals x." y is the logarithm and x is the *antilogarithm* ("antilog"). Base b is always greater than 1. The antilog must be positive, since a positive number b raised to any power cannot give zero or a negative number. Some examples:

$\log_2 8 = y$	means $2^y = 8$,	so $y = 3$
$\log_b 100 = 2$	means $b^2 = 100$,	so $b = 10$
$\log_3 x = -1$	means $3^{-1} = x$,	so $x = 1/3$

Properties of Logarithms.—The definition along with exponent rules covered previously lead to the *properties of logarithms*, given here with examples. When no base is shown, base 10 is implied. (See *Common Logarithms* on page 37.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Property	*Example*
$\log_b 1 = 0$	$\log_3 1 = 0$
$\log_b b = 1$	$\log_8 8 = 1$
$\log_b (xy) = \log_b x + \log_b y$	$\log(2y) = \log 2 + \log y$
$\log_b \left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_b x - \log_b y$	$\log\left(\frac{100}{3}\right) = \log 100 - \log 3$
$\log_b x^r = r \log_b x$	$\log_2 x^3 = 3 \log_2 x$
$\log_b b^r = r$	$\log_5 5^{11} = 11$

Common Logarithms.—There are two standard systems of logarithms: *common* (base 10) and *natural* (base e, explained below). In general, $\log_{10} x$ is written simply as $\log x$. For example, $\log 100 = 2$ because $10^2 = 100$.

Examples: $\log 15 = 1.176$, since $10^{1.176} \approx 15$
$\log 250 = 2.397$, since $10^{2.397} \approx 250$
$\log 4000 = 3.602$, since $10^{3.602} \approx 4000$

The log values seen here can be found by using either log tables or a scientific calculator. Because most logarithms are irrational numbers, the values given in any example and in the tables are approximations, rounded to several decimal places. When a calculator is used, the answer should be rounded to four or five decimal places.

The whole number part of a logarithm is called the *characteristic*; the decimal portion is called the *mantissa*. In the examples above, the characteristics are 1, 2, and 3, respectively, which correspond to the power of 10 of the antilog when it is written in scientific notation:

$$\log 15 = \log (1.5 \times 10^{\mathbf{1}}) = \log 1.5 + \log 10^{\mathbf{1}} = 0.176 + \mathbf{1} \approx 1.176$$
$$\log 250 = \log (2.5 \times 10^{\mathbf{2}}) = \log 2.5 + \log 10^{\mathbf{2}} = 0.397 + \mathbf{2} \approx 2.397$$
$$\log 4000 = \log (4.0 \times 10^{\mathbf{3}}) = \log 4.0 + \log 10^{\mathbf{3}} = 0.602 + \mathbf{3} \approx 3.602$$

The property $\log(ab) = \log a + \log b$ has been applied; the "log b" portion (characteristic) is quickly determined, as it is simply the power of 10 (bold). The "log a" portion (mantissa) is read from the log table, which gives logs of numbers from 1 to 10 up to a certain number of decimal places. If the log of a number less than 1 is to be found, again, the antilog is represented in scientific notation to get to the answer, only now the characteristic is negative, so a subtraction is involved. For example:

$$\log 0.63 = \log(6.3 \times 10^{\mathbf{-1}}) = (\log 6.3) + \log(\mathbf{-1}) = 0.799 + (\mathbf{-1}) \approx -0.201$$

Natural Logarithms.—In certain formulas and in some branches of mathematical analysis, use is made of the *natural* logarithm. The base of this system is given as e, which is the symbol for the irrational number that is approximately equal to 2.7182818284. (Recall that an irrational number cannot be represented by a repeating or terminating decimal.) e is the base of exponential growth phenomena such as populations and compound interest, among others. Though e was first conceptualized by John Napier (who developed logarithmic calculation) and developed further by Jacob Bernoulli, the use of e credits eighteenth-century Swiss mathematician Leonhard Euler (pronounced "oiler"), who developed mathematical analysis, in part, through his discovery of the so-called Euler identity, $e^{i\pi} = -1$.

It is conventional to write $\log_e x$ as "ln x"; hence:

$$\ln x = y \text{ means } \log_e x = y, \text{ that is, } x = e^y$$

So, for example, $\ln e = 1$, since $e^1 = e$; $\ln 1 = 0$, since $e^0 = 1$; $\ln e^3 = 3 \ln e = 3 \cdot 1 = 3$. And, the process of finding logarithm values in base e is the same as in base 10.

Example: To represent ln 0.239 as a sum of natural logs: $\ln(2.39 \times 10^{-1}) = \ln 2.39 + \ln 10^{-1} = \ln 2.39 + (-1)\ln 10$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Logarithms in any base can be converted to another base by the formula: $\log_b x = \dfrac{\log_a x}{\log_a b}$

Logarithms of bases other than 10 and *e* were often converted to these bases, since the values were easy to look up on the common or natural log tables. The formula also can convert between the two most-often used bases:

Base *e* to base 10: $\ln x = \dfrac{\log x}{\log e} \approx \dfrac{\log x}{0.4343}$ so $\log x \approx 0.4343 \ln x$

Base 10 to base *e* : $\log x = \dfrac{\ln x}{\ln 10} \approx \dfrac{\ln x}{2.3026}$ so $\ln x \approx 2.3026 \log \boldsymbol{x}$

Example: Convert ln 4 to log 4 using the conversion, $\log x \approx 0.4343 \ln x$:

$$\log 4 \approx 0.4343 \ln 4 \approx (0.4343)(1.3863) \approx 0.60207$$

Example: Express $\log_2 9$ in terms of the natural logarithm:

$$\log_2 9 = \frac{\log_e 9}{\log_e 2} = \frac{\ln 9}{\ln 2} \approx 3.170$$

Using Calculators to Solve Logarithms.—To find a common logarithm on a scientific calculator (hand-held or online), the **log** key is used. To find a natural logarithm the **ln** key is used. Depending on the calculator used, either the number is entered before the log key is pressed, or log is entered before the number. The correct sequence can be seen if an error message results. For example, log 6 is found by this sequence on the typical scientific calculator:

Example: To find log 6, press in sequence, 6 log to get display

0.77815125038 . . .

To find the common antilog of a given number, the **10x** key is used. The find the natural antilog, the **ex** key is used. This kind of problem is often asked as $\ln x = 4$, meaning $e^4 = x$, so one must know the definition of $\log_b x = y$ to get the answer by calculator.

Example: To find x in $\ln x = 4$, press in sequence, 4 ex get the display

54.5980015003 . . .

On calculators without the **10x** and **ex** keys, the **xy** key enables, substituting 10 or *e* (2.718281 . . .) for *x* and the logarithm of the number sought for *y*. On some calculators, while the **log** and **ln** keys are used to find common and natural logarithms, the same keys in combination with the **INV**, or inverse, key are used to find the number corresponding to a given logarithm.

Solving an Equation Using Logarithms.—Solving exponential and logarithmic equations is possible because of the following properties of logs and exponents, which are true for *any* base:

If $x = y$, and $x, y > 0$, then $\log x = \log y$. If $x = y$, then $a^x = a^y$ for $a > 0$, $a \neq 1$.

Both statements are true in the other direction, too:

If $\log x = \log y$, then $x = y$. If $a^x = a^y$ then $x = y$.

Example 1: Find the square root of 754.

Solution: Let $x = \sqrt{754}$. Then $\log x = \log \sqrt{754} = \log 754^{1/2} = \dfrac{1}{2} \log 754 \approx \dfrac{2.8774}{2} \approx 1.4387.$

So, $\log x \approx 1.4387$, hence, $x = 10^{1.4387} \approx 27.460$. That is, $\sqrt{754} \approx 27.460$.

Example 2: Solve $4^x = 7^{x-3}$ for x.

Solution: $4^x = 7^{x-3} \underset{\text{property}}{\overset{\text{apply}}{\longrightarrow}} \log 4^x = \log 7^{x-3} \longrightarrow x \log 4 = (x-3)(\log 7)$

$$\underset{\text{on the right}}{\overset{\text{distribute}}{\longrightarrow}} x \log 4 = x \log 7 - 3 \log 7 \underset{\text{calculator}}{\overset{\text{by}}{\longrightarrow}} 0.6021x = 0.8451x - 3(0.8451)$$

$$\underset{\text{with algebra}}{\overset{\text{proceed}}{\longrightarrow}} 3(0.8451) = \mathbf{0}.8451x - 0.6021x \longrightarrow 2.5353 = 0.243x, \quad \text{so } x \approx 10.433$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The technique of taking the log (either common, natural, or other) of both sides of an equation is used often to solve for unknown exponents, as happens with compounding of interest (see *ENGINEERING ECONOMICS* on page 143).

Arithmetic Sequence

An arithmetic sequence (also called an arithmetic progression) is a sequence of numbers in which each term differs from the preceding one by a fixed amount, called the *common difference*, *d*. Thus, 1, 3, 5, 7, etc. is an arithmetic sequence where the difference *d* is 2. Here, the consecutive terms of the sequence are increasing by 2. In the sequence 13, 10, 7, 4, etc., the difference is –3, and the sequence is decreasing. In any arithmetic progression (or portion of one):

a = first term of the sequence, also called the a_1 term
l = last term considered, also called a_n for the nth term
n = number of terms
d = common difference
S_n = sum of n terms

The formula for the last term is $l = a + (n-1)d$, or $a_n = a_1 + (n-1)d$. The sum of an arithmetic sequence with n terms is $S_n = \dfrac{n(a+l)}{2}$ or $\dfrac{n(a_1 + a_n)}{2}$.

In these formulas, d is positive when the progression is increasing and negative when it is decreasing. When any three of the preceding five quantities are given, the other two can be found by the formulas in the table *Arithmetic Sequence Formulas* on page 40. Often, however, the desired quantity can be determined by working with the information given.

Example 1: In a given arithmetic progression, the first term is 5 and the last term 40, and the difference between terms is 7. To find the sum of the progression, first the number of terms has to be found. This is done by considering the difference between the first and last: 40 – 5 = 35. Dividing this by the difference between terms gives the number of intervals between the terms: 35 ÷ 7 = 5. Finally, adding 1 gives the number of terms in the sequence: $n = 5 + 1 = 6$. The sum of the sequence is:

$$S = \frac{n}{2}(a + l) = \frac{6}{2}(5 + 40) = 3(45) = 135$$

Geometric Sequence

A geometric sequence or progression is a sequence of numbers in which each term is derived by multiplying the preceding term by a constant multiplier called the *ratio*. When this ratio is greater than 1, the progression is increasing; when less than 1, it is decreasing. Thus, the sequence 2, 6, 18, 54, etc. is an increasing geometric sequence with a ratio of 3, and the sequence 24, 12, 6, etc. is a decreasing sequence with a ratio of 1/2.

In any geometric progression (or part of progression):

a = first term of the sequence
l = last (or nth) term of the sequence
n = number of terms
r = ratio of the progression
S_n = sum of n terms

The general formulas for the nth term: $l = ar^{n-1}$ and $S = \dfrac{rl - a}{r - 1}$

When any three of the preceding five quantities are given, the other two can be found by the formulas in the table *Geometric Sequence Formulas* on page 41. Geometric progressions are used for finding the successive speeds in machine tool drives, and in interest calculations.

Example 2: The lowest speed of a lathe is 20 rpm. The highest speed is 225 rpm. There are 18 speeds. Find the ratio between successive speeds.

$$\text{Ratio } r = \sqrt[n-1]{\frac{l}{a}} = \sqrt[17]{\frac{225}{20}} = \sqrt[17]{11.25} = 1.153$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Arithmetic Sequence Formulas

To Find	Given			Use Formula
a	d	l	n	$a = l - (n-1)d$
	d	n	S	$a = \frac{S}{n} - \frac{n-1}{2} \times d$
	d	l	S	$a = \frac{d}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{(2l+d)^2 - 8dS}$
	l	n	S	$a = \frac{2S}{n} - l$
d	a	l	n	$d = \frac{l-a}{n-1}$
	a	n	S	$d = \frac{2S - 2an}{n(n-1)}$
	a	l	S	$d = \frac{l^2 - a^2}{2S - l - a}$
	l	n	S	$d = \frac{2nl - 2S}{n(n-1)}$
l	a	d	n	$l = a + (n-1)d$
	a	d	S	$l = -\frac{d}{2} \pm \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{8dS + (2a-d)^2}$
	a	n	S	$l = \frac{2S}{n} - a$
	d	n	S	$l = \frac{S}{n} + \frac{n-1}{2} \times d$
n	a	d	l	$n = 1 + \frac{l-a}{d}$
	a	d	S	$n = \frac{d - 2a}{2d} \pm \frac{1}{2d}\sqrt{8dS + (2a-d)^2}$
	a	l	S	$n = \frac{2S}{a+l}$
	d	l	S	$n = \frac{2l+d}{2d} \pm \frac{1}{2d}\sqrt{(2l+d)^2 - 8dS}$
S	a	d	n	$S = \frac{n}{2}[2a + (n-1)d]$
	a	d	l	$S = \frac{a+l}{2} + \frac{l^2 - a^2}{2d} = \frac{a+l}{2d}(l + d - a)$
	a	l	n	$S_n = \frac{n(a+l)}{2}$
	d	l	n	$S = \frac{n}{2}[2l - (n-1)d]$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Geometric Sequence Formulas

To Find	Given			Use Formula
a	l	n	r	$a = \dfrac{l}{r^{n-1}}$
	n	r	S	$a = \dfrac{(r-1)S}{r^n - 1}$
	l	r	S	$a = lr - (r-1)S$
	l	n	S	$a(S-a)^{n-1} = l(S-l)^{n-1}$
l	a	n	r	$l = ar^{n-1}$
	a	r	S	$l = \dfrac{1}{r}[a + (r-1)S]$
	a	n	S	$l(S-l)^{n-1} = a(S-a)^{n-1}$
	n	r	S	$l = \dfrac{S(r-1)r^{n-1}}{r^n - 1}$
n	a	l	r	$n = \dfrac{\log l - \log a}{\log r} + 1$
	a	r	S	$n = \dfrac{\log[a + (r-1)S] - \log a}{\log r}$
	a	l	S	$n = \dfrac{\log l - \log a}{\log(S-a) - \log(S-l)} + 1$
	l	r	S	$n = \dfrac{\log l - \log[lr - (r-1)S]}{\log r} + 1$
r	a	l	n	$r = \sqrt[n-1]{\dfrac{l}{n}}$
	a	n	S	$r^n = \dfrac{Sr}{a} + \dfrac{a-S}{a}$
	a	l	S	$r = \dfrac{S-a}{S-l}$
	l	n	S	$r^n = \dfrac{Sr^{n-1}}{S-l} - \dfrac{l}{S-l}$
S	a	n	r	$S = \dfrac{a(r^n - 1)}{r-1}$
	a	l	r	$S = \dfrac{lr - a}{r-1}$
	a	l	n	$S = \dfrac{\sqrt[n-1]{l^n} - \sqrt[n-1]{a^n}}{\sqrt[n-1]{l} - \sqrt[n-1]{a}}$
	l	n	r	$S = \dfrac{l(r^n - 1)}{(r-1)r^{n-1}}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

GEOMETRY

Geometry is the branch of mathematics that studies the features of two- and three-dimensional figures. (The word "geometry" means "measure of the earth.") This branch can be separated into *pure geometry* and *analytic geometry*. Pure geometry is concerned with the propositions of shape, size, and relative position of figures, as well as their constructions. Analytic geometry studies geometry using the coordinate system, relying heavily on algebraic principles. The results of geometry apply to many areas of industry.

The first part of this section, addressing analytic geometry, may be considered a continuation of the material in *ALGEBRA*, which begins on page 24. The rest of the section focuses on pure geometry, particularly the formulas for figure dimensions and figure construction; these are based on the concepts introduced by the Greek mathematician Euclid, in the fourth century BCE. Included are examples showing how measures of diameter, perimeter, area, surface area, volume, angle, and more are determined. In the case of angle measure, use of trigonometry is often necessary. Explanations of trigonometric relations are found in the next section, *TRIGONOMETRY*, beginning on page 94.

Analytic Geometry

Analytic geometry uses algebra to model geometric objects, such as points, lines, and circles, on the rectangular coordinate system.

Rectangular Coordinate System.—The *rectangular coordinate system* (also called the *xy-plane* or the *Cartesian plane*) is a grid formed by intersecting two real number lines at right angles (Fig. 1a). The horizontal x-axis (labeled X) intersects the vertical y-axis (labeled Y) at the point (0, 0), the *origin*. Any point P on the plane can be so identified by its x-coordinate and its y-coordinate in the *ordered pair* (x, y).

The four quadrants formed by the x- and y-axes are numbered counterclockwise (see Fig. 1a). In Quadrant 1, both x and y coordinates are positive; in Quadrant 2, the x is negative and y is positive; in Quadrant 3, both coordinates are negative; and in Quadrant 4, the x-coordinate is positive and the y negative. Several representative points are pictured in Fig. 1b.

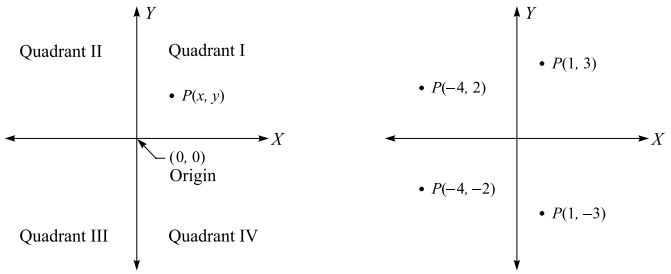


Fig. 1. (a) Rectangular Coordinate System; (b) Examples of Points in Each Quadrant.

The rectangular coordinate system is used to illustrate ideas in algebra, analytic geometry, and trigonometry.

Slope of a Line.—The *slope* of the line passing through any two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) in the plane is given by $m = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$, where Δ represents difference. Fig. 2a shows a line with a positive slope, Fig. 2b a line with a negative slope. A horizontal line (Fig. 2c)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

has a no slope, since $\Delta y = 0$. Hence, $m = 0/\Delta x = 0$. Between any two points on a vertical line, $\Delta x = 0$ (Fig. 2d). So, $m = \Delta y/0$, which is undefined.

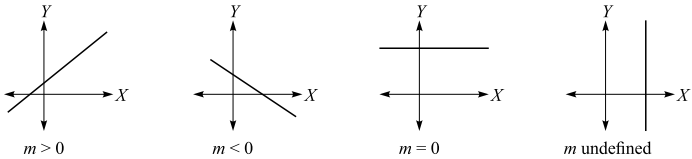


Fig. 2. Lines with (a) Positive Slope, $m > 0$; (b) Negative Slope, $m < 0$; (c) No Slope, $m = 0$; (d) Undefined Slope.

Lines and Line Segments.—A *line* in the plane is the shortest path between two known points, extending indefinitely in both directions. "Line AB" is notated $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$. A *line segment* is the portion of the line between A and B. The line segment AB is notated $\overline{AB}$; its *length* is indicated without the bar, as AB. The distinction between the actual line and its length is helpful to keep in mind when referring to the formulas for distance, midpoint, and the other concepts in this section.

Distance Between Two Points: The distance d between two points A and B is the length of the line segment connecting them. The formula comes from the Pythagorean theorem, which says that the sum of the squares of the leg measures is the square of the hypotenuse. As labeled in Fig. 3, the legs are lengths $x_2 - x_1$ and $y_2 - y_1$, and the hypotenuse is the distance d between these points. Its formula is:

$$d(A, B) = AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$$

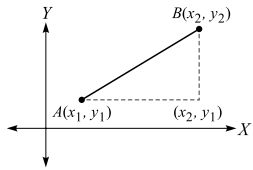


Fig. 3. Distance between points A and B.

The order in which x and y are subtracted actually does not matter, since the squared difference is the same.

Example 1: Find AB, the distance between points $A(4, 5)$ and $B(7, 8)$.

Solution: The length of line segment AB is:

$$d = \sqrt{(7-4)^2 + (8-5)^2} = \sqrt{3^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{18} = 3\sqrt{2}$$

Midpoint of a Line Segment: The midpoint $M(x, y)$ of line segment AB is found by the coordinate formulas (Fig. 4a):

$$x = \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}$$

Internal Division of a Line Segment: Point P divides line segment AB (Fig. 4b) in the ratio $m{:}n$. That is, P is such a point that $AP{:}PB$ as $m{:}n$. Then, the coordinates of P are given by:

$$x = \frac{mx_1 + nx_2}{m + n} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \frac{my_1 + ny_2}{m + n}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If the desired point is the *midpoint* of AB, then $m = n = 1$, and the coordinates of P are:

$$x = \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}$$

Example 2: Find the coordinates of a point P that divides the line segment defined by $A(0,0)$ and $B(8,6)$ at a ratio of 5:3.

Solution: $x = \dfrac{5\times 0 + 3\times 8}{5+3} = \dfrac{24}{8} = 3 \qquad y = \dfrac{(5)(0) + (3)(6)}{5+3} = \dfrac{18}{8} = 2.25$

External Division of a Line Segment: If the line segment AB is extended to point Q (Fig. 4c), and Q is such a point that $AQ{:}QB$ as $m{:}n$, then the coordinates of Q are given by:

$$x = \frac{mx_1 - nx_2}{m-n} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \frac{my_1 - ny_2}{m-n}$$

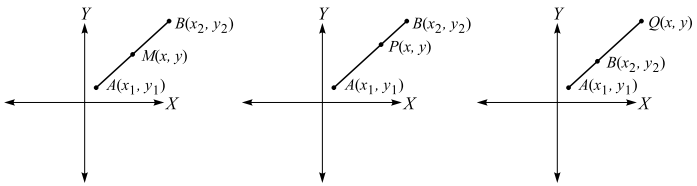


Fig. 4. Divisions of Line Segment AB:
(a) Midpoint M; (b) Internal Division Point P; (c) External Division Point Q.

Equation Forms of a Line.—Given any two known points, a linear equation can be expressed in either *point-slope* or *slope-intercept* form.

Point-Slope Form: Consider that $m = \dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ for any two points (x, y) on a line. If the known point (x_2, y_2) is replaced with an arbitrary (not specified) point (x, y), the slope becomes $m = \dfrac{y - y_1}{x - x_1}$, which rearranges to $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$. This is the *point-slope form* of the line. If $x_1 = y_1 = 0$ (that is, the line passes through the origin $(0,0)$), then the equation becomes $y - 0 = m(x - 0)$, or $y = mx$. For any line, the y-intercept is the point of intersection of the line with the y-axis, and the x-intercept is the point of intersection of the line with the x-axis. Thus, the points $(0, y_1)$ and $(x_1, 0)$ are the y- and x-intercepts, respectively.

Suppose $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ intersects the x-axis at point $A(a, 0)$ and the y-axis at point $B(0, b)$; then $m = \dfrac{0-b}{a-0} = \dfrac{-b}{a}$. Substitution of either $(a, 0)$ or $(0, b)$ into the formula and rearranging terms gives the equation for $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$: $y - 0 = -\dfrac{b}{a}(x - a) \rightarrow ay = -bx + ab \rightarrow ay + bx = ab \rightarrow \dfrac{y}{b} + \dfrac{x}{a} = 1$.

Generally, two points are known, and from these, m is determined. Then, either of the points are substituted into the point-slope form along with the slope to get the equation of the line.

Example 3: Find the equation of the line that passes through (4, 1) and (–2, 5). So, $m = \dfrac{1-5}{4-(-2)} = \dfrac{-4}{6} = \dfrac{-2}{3}$.

Substituting this value for m and the point (4, 1) for (x_1, y_1) into the point-slope form gives $y - 1 = -\dfrac{2}{3}(x - 4)$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Point-Point Form: Substituting $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ into the point-slope form and rearranging terms gives $y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}(x - x_1)$, the *point-point form*.

Slope-Intercept Form: Another often-used form is $y = mx + b$, where m is the slope and b is the y-intercept. (That is, when $x = 0$, then $y = m(0) + b = b$.) If the previous example is rearranged and solved for y, then the *slope-intercept form* is arrived at: $y = -\frac{2}{3}(x - 4) + 1 = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{8}{3} + 1 = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{11}{3}$.

Standard Form of a Line: In vector representations (see *Complex Numbers* on page 59), lines usually take the standard form, $Ax + By = C$, where A, B, C. For example, $7x - 3y = 4$ is a line in standard form, with $A = 7, B = -3$, and $C = 4$.

Example 4: What is the standard form equation of a line AB between points $A(4, 5)$ and $B(7, 8)$?

Solution: Using the point-point form of the line, where $(4,5)$ is (x_1, y_1) and $(7,8)$ is (x_2, y_2),

$$y - y_1 = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{x_1 - x_2}(x - x_1)$$

$$y - 5 = \frac{5 - 8}{4 - 7}(x - 4)$$

$$y - 5 = x - 4$$

$$x - y = -1$$

Example 5: Find the slope-intercept equation of a line passing through the points $(3, 2)$ and $(5, 6)$. The y-intercept is the intersection point of the line with the y-axis.

Solution: First, find the slope:

$$m = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{6 - 2}{5 - 3} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$$

The slope-intercept form of the line is $y = 2x + b$, and the value of the constant b can be determined by substituting the coordinates of a point on the line into the general form. Using the coordinates of the point $(3, 2)$ gives $2 = (2)(3) + b$ and rearranging, $b = 2 - 6 = -4$. As a check, using another point on the line, $(5, 6)$, yields the same result, $y = 6 = (2)(5) + b$ and $b = 6 - 10 = -4$.

The equation of the line, therefore, is $y = 2x - 4$, indicating that line $y = 2x - 4$ intersects the y-axis at point $(0,-4)$, the y-intercept.

Example 6: Use the point-slope form to find the equation of the line passing through the point $(3, 2)$ and having a slope of 2.

$$y - 2 = 2(x - 3)$$
$$y = 2x - 6 + 2$$
$$y = 2x - 4$$

The slope of this line is positive and crosses the y-axis at the y-intercept, point $(0,-4)$.

Parallel Lines: The two lines, l_1 and l_2, are parallel if they have the same slope, that is, if $m_1 = m_2$.

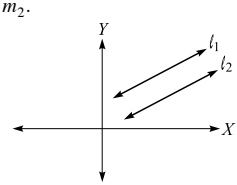
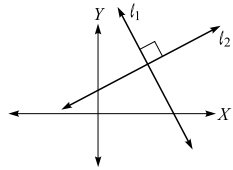


Fig. 5. (a) Parallel lines, l_1 and l_2.



(b) Perpendicular lines, l_1 and l_2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Perpendicular Lines: The two lines, l_1 and l_2, are perpendicular if the product of their slopes is -1, that is, if $m_1 m_2 = -1$, since $m_1 = -1/m_2$. (The slopes are negative reciprocals of one another.)

Example 7: (a) Find the equation of the line that passes through the point (3, 4) and is parallel to line $2x - 3y = 16$. (b) Find the equation of the line perpendicular to the given line and through the same point.

Solution (a): Line $2x - 3y = 16$ in slope-intercept form is $y = {}^2/_3 x - {}^{16}/_3$, so the equation of a line passing through (3,4) is $y - 4 = m(x - 3)$.

Parallel lines have equal slope. Thus, from the point-slope form, $y - 4 = {}^2/_3(x - 3)$ is parallel to line $2x - 3y = -6$ and passes through point (3,4).

Solution (b): As illustrated in part (*a*), line $2x - 3y = -6$ has a slope of ${}^2/_3$. The product of the slopes of perpendicular lines is -1, thus the slope m of a line passing through point (3,4) and perpendicular to $2x - 3y = -6$ must satisfy the following:

$$m = \frac{-1}{m_1} = \frac{-1}{{}^2/_3} = -\frac{3}{2}$$

The equation of a line passing through point (3,4) and perpendicular to the line $2x - 3y = 16$ is $y - 4 = {}^{-3}/_2(x - 3)$, which rewritten is $3x + 2y = 17$.

Angle Between Two Lines: For two non-perpendicular lines with slopes m_1 and m_2, the angle θ between the two lines is found by first applying trigonometric equation:

$$\tan\theta = \left|\frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2}\right|$$

The discussion of how the angle is determined by this relation is found in *TRIGONOMETRY*, which begins on page 94.

Example 8: Find the angle between the lines: $2x - y = 4$ and $3x + 4y = 12$.

Solution: Rearranging each to be in the slope-intercept form shows the slopes are 2 and $-{}^3/_4$, respectively. The angle between two lines is given by

$$\tan\theta = \left|\frac{m_1 - m_2}{1 + m_1 m_2}\right| = \left|\frac{2 - \left(-\frac{3}{4}\right)}{1 + 2\left(-\frac{3}{4}\right)}\right| = \left|\frac{2 + \frac{3}{4}}{1 - \frac{6}{4}}\right| = \left|\frac{\frac{8+3}{4}}{\frac{4-6}{4}}\right| = \left|\frac{11}{-2}\right| = \frac{11}{2}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{11}{2}\right) = 79.70°, \text{ by trigonometry.}$$

Distance Between a Point and a Line: The distance between a point (x_1, y_1) and a line given in the standard form $Ax + By + C = 0$ is

$$d = \frac{|Ax_1 + By_1 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}}$$

Example 9: Find the distance between the point (4,6) and the line $2x + 3y - 9 = 0$.

Solution: Using the formula:

$$d = \frac{|Ax_1 + By_1 + C|}{\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}} = \frac{|2 \times 4 + 3 \times 6 - 9|}{\sqrt{2^2 + 3^2}} = \frac{|8 + 18 - 9|}{\sqrt{4 + 9}} = \frac{17}{\sqrt{13}}$$

Changing Coordinate Systems.— For simplicity it may be assumed that the origin in the Cartesian coordinate system coincides with the pole on a polar coordinate system and its x-axis with the polar horizontal axis. Then, if point P has polar coordinates of (r, θ) and Cartesian coordinates of (x, y), by trigonometry $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

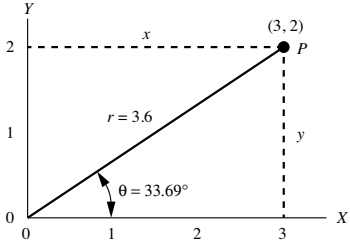
Furthermore, by the Pythagorean theorem and trigonometry, $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$. See *TRIGONOMETRY* on page 94 for a discussion of the related principles of trigonometry.

Example 1: Convert the Cartesian coordinate (3, 2) into polar coordinates.

$$r = \sqrt{3^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{9 + 4} = \sqrt{13} \approx 3.6 \qquad \theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = 33.69°$$

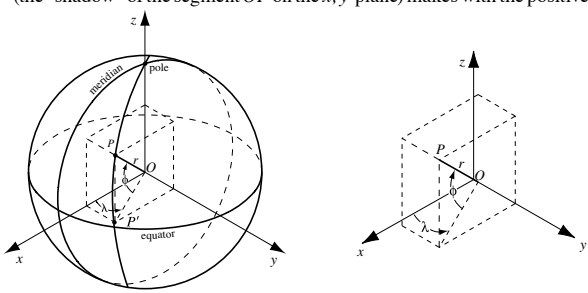
Therefore the point is located approximately 3.6 units from the origin at an angle of about 33.69°. Thus, (3.6, 33.69°) is the polar form of the Cartesian point (3, 2).

Graphically, the polar and Cartesian coordinates are related in the following figure:



Example 2: Convert the polar form (5, 608°) to Cartesian coordinates. First note that this point lies 5 units from the origin at an angle of 608°. As explained on page 105, in *Trigonometric Functions*, this locates the point in Quadrant IV. By trigonometry, $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$. Then, $x = 5\cos(608°) = -1.873$ and $y = 5\sin(608°) = -4.636$. Therefore, the Cartesian point equivalent is (−1.873, −4.636). This point lies in the fourth quadrant, where both coordinates are negative.

Spherical Coordinates.—It is convenient in certain problems, for example, those concerned with spherical surfaces and therefore three-dimensional, to introduce spherical coordinates. In three-dimensional space, as the figure on the right shows, the x,y-plane is like a floor in a room, and the third dimension is given by the z-axis, which is where the walls of the room meet. An arbitrary point P in this space is described by three rectangular coordinates (x,y,z), converted to the following *spherical coordinates*: the distance r between point P and the origin O, the angle ϕ that OP' makes with the x,y-plane, and the angle λ that the projection OP' (the "shadow" of the segment OP on the x,y-plane) makes with the positive x-axis.



The rectangular coordinates of a point in space can therefore be calculated from the spherical coordinates, and vice versa, by use of the formulas in the following table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Relationship Between Spherical and Rectangular Coordinates

Spherical to Rectangular	Rectangular to Spherical
$x = r\cos\phi\cos\lambda$ $y = r\cos\phi\sin\lambda$ $z = r\sin\phi$	$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$ $\phi = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$ for $x^2 + y^2 \neq 0$ $\lambda = \tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{y}{x}\right)$ for $x > 0, y > 0$ $\lambda = \pi + \tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{y}{x}\right)$ for $x < 0$ $\lambda = 2\pi + \tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{y}{x}\right)$ for $x > 0, y < 0$

Example 3: Find the spherical coordinates of the point $P(3, -4, -12)$.

$$r = \sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2 + (-12)^2} = 13$$

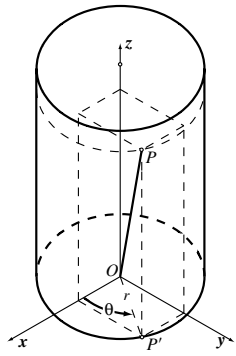
$$\phi = \tan^{-1}\frac{-12}{\sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2}} = \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{12}{5}\right) = -67.38°$$

$$\lambda = 360° + \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{4}{3}\right) = 360° - 53.13° = 306.87°$$

The spherical coordinates of P are therefore $r = 13, \phi = -67.38°$, and $\lambda = 306.87°$.

Cylindrical Coordinates: For problems in which points lie on the surface of a cylinder it is convenient to use cylindrical coordinates. The cylindrical coordinates r, θ, z of P coincide with the polar coordinates of the point P' in the x, y-plane and the rectangular z-coordinate of P. Formulas for θ hold only if $x^2 + y^2 \neq 0$; θ is undetermined if $x = y = 0$.

Cylindrical to Rectangular	Rectangular to Cylindrical
$x = r\cos\theta$ $y = r\sin\theta$ $z = z$	$r = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{1}$ $\cos\theta = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$ $\sin\theta = \dfrac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$ $z = z$



Example 4: Given the cylindrical coordinates of a point P, $r = 3, \theta = -30°, z = 51$, find the rectangular coordinates. Using the above formulas $x = 3\cos(-30°) = 3\cos(30°) = 2.598$; $y = 3\sin(-30°) = -3\sin(30°) = -1.5$; and $z = 51$. Therefore, the rectangular coordinates of point P are $x = 2.598, y = -1.5$, and $z = 51$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

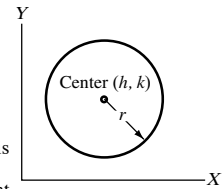
Circle.—A circle is the set of points equidistant from a given point in the plane. Another name for this set of points is *locus*, which is a curve formed by all the points satisfying a particular equation. The general form for the equation of a circle is $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$, where $-g$ and $-f$ are the coordinates of the center and the radius is $r = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}$.

The standard form of a circle (center-radius form) is

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$$

where r = length of the radius and point (h, k) is the center.

When the center of circle is at point (0, 0), the equation reduces to $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ or $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$



Example 1: Point (4, 6) lies on a circle whose center (h, k) is at point (−2, 3). Find the circle's equation.

Solution: The radius is the distance from the center point (−2, 3) to point (4, 6), found using the method of Example 1 on page 43.

$$r = \sqrt{[4 - (-2)]^2 + (6 - 3)^2} = \sqrt{6^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{45}$$

Using the form $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$ and substituting $h = -2, k = 3$, and $r^2 = 45$:

$$(x + 2)^2 + (y - 3)^2 = x^2 + 4x + 4 + y^2 - 6y + 9 = 45$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 6y - 32 = 0$$

Additional Formulas: Listed below are additional formulas for determining the geometry of plane circles and arcs. Although trigonometry and circular measure are related, they deal with angles in entirely different ways. In each of these formulas, the entered measure of the angles are in degrees, and the formulas convert them to radian measure (see page 94, in *TRIGONOMETRY*).

$C = \pi D = 2\pi R$

Radius $R = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$

Diameter D = diameter of circle $= 2R = \dfrac{C}{\pi}$

Area $A = \pi R^2$

$X = \sqrt{R^2 - Y^2}$

$Y = \sqrt{R^2 - X^2}$

Area of complement sector M

$= R^2 - \dfrac{\pi R^2}{4} = 0.2146R^2$

I = distance to section T

H = height of section T

Q = chord length for segment S

P = chord length for segment section T

$T + S$ = area of segment $= R^2 \sin^{-1}\left(\dfrac{P}{2R}\right) - \dfrac{IP}{2}$

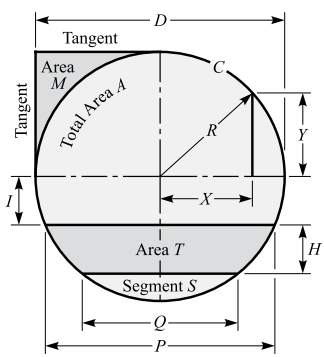


Fig. 6a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Central angle ϕ, in degrees $= \frac{L}{R} \cdot \frac{\pi}{180}$

Arc length $L = R\phi \cdot \frac{\pi}{180}$

Radius $R = \frac{L}{\phi} \cdot \frac{\pi}{180} = \frac{2K}{L} = \frac{E^2 + 4F^2}{8F}$

Area of sector $K = \phi R^2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{360} = \frac{RL}{2}$

Area of segment $S = \frac{RL}{2} - \frac{E(R-F)}{2}$

Chord length $E = 2\sqrt{F(2R-F)} = D \sin\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)$

Depth $F = R - \frac{\sqrt{4R^2 - E^2}}{2} = R\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right)$

$\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{E/2}{R-F}$

$\sin\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{E}{2R}$

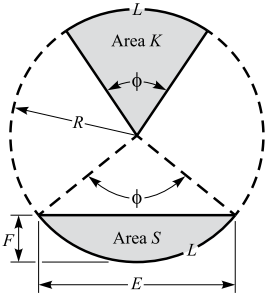


Fig. 6b.

Annulus

R_1 = radius of outer circle

R_2 = radius of inner circle

Area of annulus $W = \pi\left(R_1^2 - R_2^2\right)$

Area of annulus segment $U = \frac{\phi}{360}\pi\left(R_1^2 - R_2^2\right)$

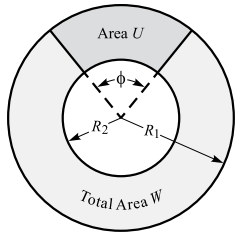


Fig. 6c.

Example 2: Find the area of a sector of a circle having a central angle of 30° and a radius of 7 cm.

Solution: Referring to Fig. 6b, $K = \left(\frac{\phi^\circ}{360}\right)\pi \times R^2 = \left(\frac{30}{360}\right)\pi \times 7^2 = 12.83 \text{ cm}^2$

Example 3: Find the chord length E of a circular segment (Fig. 6b) with a depth of 2 cm at the center that is formed in a circle whose radius 12 cm.

Solution: The chord length is

$$E = 2\sqrt{F(2R-F)} = 2\sqrt{2[(2)(12)-2]} = 2\sqrt{44}$$
$$= 4\sqrt{11} = 13.27 \text{ cm}$$

Example 4: Find the area S of the segment in Example 3.

Solution: First determine angle ϕ, then find arc length L of the segment, and then solve for area S, as follows:

$$\tan\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{E/2}{R-F} = \frac{13.27/2}{12-2} = 0.6635, \quad \frac{\phi}{2} = \tan^{-1}0.6635 = 33.56°, \quad \phi = 67.13°$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$L = R\phi \times \frac{\pi}{180} = 12 \times 67.13° \times \frac{\pi}{180} = 14.06 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{Area } S = \frac{RL}{2} - \frac{E(R-F)}{2} = \frac{12(14.06)}{2} - \frac{13.27(10)}{2} = 84.36 - 66.35 = 18.01 \text{ cm}^2$$

Another way to find angle ϕ is divide the chord length by twice the radius to obtain

$$\sin\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) = \frac{\text{chord length}}{2R} = \frac{E}{2R} = 0.5529, \quad \frac{\phi}{2} = \sin^{-1} 0.5529 = 33.5662°, \quad \phi = 67.13°$$

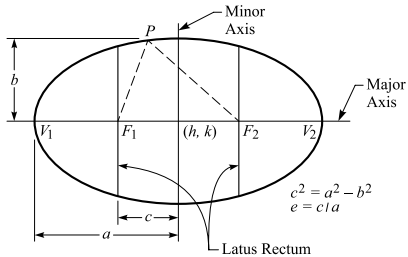
Ellipse.—As a circle is the locus of points equidistant from a single point in the plane, an *ellipse* is the set of points whose location is established by *two* points in the plane. Referring to the figure, these two points are the *foci*, F_1 and F_2, which lie on the longer of the two diameters of the ellipse. The longer diameter a is the major axis; the shorter b is the minor axis. The sum of the distances from the foci to any point P on the ellipse is constant. That is $PF_1 + PF_2 = 2a$.

The latus rectum is the chord through the focus and perpendicular to the major axis. V_1 and V_2, are the vertices.

Like the circle, there is a general form and a standard form of the equation of an ellipse. The general form is:

$$Ax^2 + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0\Big|_{AC>0} \text{ and } A \neq C$$

The constant F in this equation is not related to the foci, which are not numbers, but labels for points.



Ellipse

If (h,k) is the center, the standard equation of an ellipse is $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$.

The eccentricity e of the ellipse is given by $e = c/a$, where $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$. This is *not* the same e as the exponential base, which is a constant. Rather, eccentricity varies with the figure. $e = \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a} = \frac{c}{a}$ is a measure of the elongation of the ellipse and is always less than 1. The distance between the two foci is $2c = 2\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$. The aspect ratio of the ellipse is a/b. The equation of an ellipse centered at $(h,k) = (0,0)$ with foci at $(\pm c, 0)$ is $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$, and the ellipse is symmetric about both coordinate axes. Its x-intercepts are $(\pm a, 0)$ and y-intercepts are $(0, \pm b)$. The line segment joining $(0, b)$ and $(0, -b)$ is called the minor axis. The major vertices of the ellipse are $(\pm a, 0)$, and the line segment joining vertices V_1 and V_2 is the major axis of the ellipse.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 1: Determine the values of h, k, a, b, c, and e of the following ellipse:

$$3x^2 + 5y^2 - 12x + 30y + 42 = 0$$

Solution: Rearrange the ellipse equation into the standard form as follows, using the method of completing the square (see page 34):

$$3x^2 + 5y^2 - 12x + 30y + 42 = 3x^2 - 12x + 5y^2 + 30y + 42 = 0$$

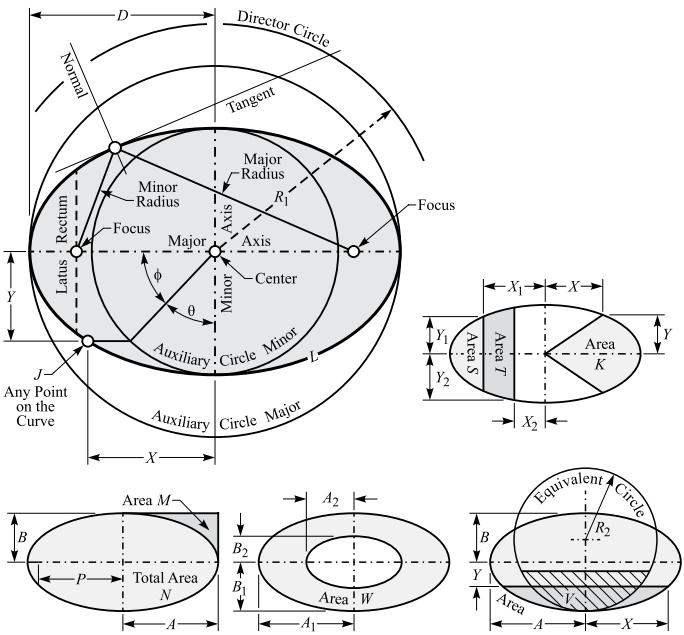
$$3(x^2 - 4x + 2^2) + 5(y^2 + 6y + 3^2) = 15$$

$$\frac{3(x-2)^2}{15} + \frac{5(y+3)^2}{15} = \frac{(x-2)^2}{(\sqrt{5})^2} + \frac{(y+3)^2}{(\sqrt{3})^2} = 1$$

Comparing to the form $\dfrac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ and solving for c and e gives:

$$h = 2, \quad k = -3, \quad a = \sqrt{5}, \quad b = \sqrt{3}, \quad c = \sqrt{2}, \quad e = \sqrt{\frac{2}{5}}$$

Additional Formulas: An ellipse can be represented "parametrically" by the equations $x = a\cos\theta$ and $y = b\sin\theta$, where x and y are the rectangular coordinates of any point on the ellipse, and the parameter θ is the angle at the center measured from the x-axis counterclockwise. The following figures correspond to the formulas below them for other measurements of the ellipse.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Length, Point, and Angle Calculations

R_1 = radius of director circle = $\sqrt{A^2 + B^2}$, A = major radius = $\sqrt{B^2 + P^2}$

R_2 = radius of equivalent circle = $\sqrt{AB}$, B = minor radius = $\sqrt{A^2 - P^2}$

P = center to focus distance = $\sqrt{A^2 - B^2}$, $\frac{2B^2}{A}$ = distance, origin to latus rectum

J = any point (X, Y) on curve where $X = A\sin\theta = A\cos\phi$, and $Y = B\cos\theta = B\sin\phi$

ϕ = angle with major axis = $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{Y}{B}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X}{A}\right)$, θ = angle with minor axis = $90° - \phi$

L = total perimeter (approximate) = $A\left[1.2\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)^2 + 1.1\left(\frac{B}{A}\right) + 4\right]$

L = perimeter (sections) = $\left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)2\phi\sqrt{AB}$

Area Calculations

N = total surface area of ellipse = πAB

W = area between outer and inner ellipse = $\pi(A_1B_1 - A_2B_2)$

M = area of complement section $M = AB - \frac{\pi AB}{4}$

S = area of segment $S = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_1}{A}\right) - X_1Y_1$, where the angle that results from the inverse cosine is in radian measure

$T+S$ = combined area of segment S + area $T = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_2}{A}\right) - X_2Y_2$, where the angle that results from the inverse cosine is in radian measure

V = area of segment $V = (R_2)^2\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{X}{A}\right) - XY$, where the angle that results from the inverse sine is in radian measure

K = area of sector $K = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X}{A}\right)$, where the angle that results from the inverse cosine is in radian measure

Example 2: Find area of sector K and complement area M, given the major radius of ellipse is 10 cm, minor radius of ellipse is 7 cm, dimension $X = 8.2266$ cm.

Solution: Sectional area K:

$$\text{Area } K = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_1}{A}\right) = 10 \times 7 \times \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{8.2266}{10}\right) = 70 \times 0.6047 \text{ rad} = 42.33 \text{ cm}^2$$

Solution: Complement area M:

$$\text{Area } M = AB - \frac{\pi AB}{4} = 10 \times 7 - \frac{\pi \times 10 \times 7}{4} = 15.0221 \text{ cm}^2$$

Example 3: Find the area of elliptical segments S, $T + S$, provided that major radius A of ellipse is 10 cm, minor radius B of ellipse is 7 cm, dimension $X_1 = 8.2266$ cm, dimension $Y_1 = 4.4717$ cm, and dimension $X_2 = 6.0041$ cm.

Solution: Segment area S is found:

$$S = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_1}{A}\right) - X_1Y_1 = 10 \times 7 \times \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{8.2266}{10}\right) - 8.2266 \times 4.4717 = 5.5437 \text{ cm}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution: Segment area $T + S$:

$$\phi = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_2}{A}\right) = 1.51072 \text{ rad}, \quad Y_2 = B\sin\phi = 7\sin(1.51072 \text{ rad}) = 10.57504$$

$$T + S = AB\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{X_2}{A}\right) - X_2Y_2 = 10 \times 7 \times 0.9268 - (6.0041 \times 5.5978)$$

$$= 64.876 - 33.6097 = 31.266 \text{ cm}^2$$

Example 4: Find the area of elliptical segment V if major radius of ellipse is 4 inches, minor radius is 3 inches, dimension $X = 2.3688$ inches, dimension $Y = 2.4231$ inches.

Solution: Segment area V:

$$R_2 = \sqrt{AB}, \quad (R_2)^2 = AB = 3 \times 4 = 12$$

$$V = (R_2)^2\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{X}{A}\right) - XY = 12\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{2.3688}{4}\right) - (2.3688 \times 2.4231)$$

$$= 7.6054 - 5.7398 = 1.8656 \text{ in}^2$$

Four-Arc Oval Approximating an Ellipse*.—The method of constructing an approximate ellipse by circular arcs, described on page 69, fails when the ratio of the major to minor diameter is 4 or greater. Additionally, it is reported that the method always produces a somewhat larger minor axis than intended. The method described below presents an alternative.

An oval that approximates an ellipse, illustrated in Fig. 7, can be constructed from the following equations:

$$r = \frac{B^2}{2A}\left(\frac{A}{B}\right)^{0.38} \tag{1}$$

where A and B are dimensions of the major and minor axis, respectively, and r is the radius of the curve at the long ends.

The radius R and its location are found from Equations (2) and (3):

$$X = \frac{\frac{A^2}{4} - Ar + Br - \frac{B^2}{4}}{B - 2r} \tag{2}$$

$$R = \frac{B}{2} + X \tag{3}$$

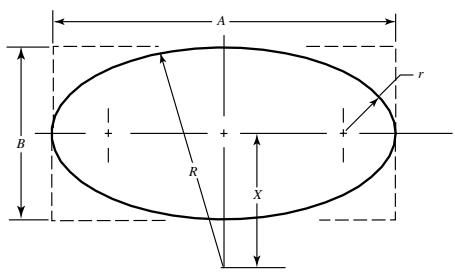


Fig. 7. Four-Arc Oval Ellipse

To make an oval thinner or fatter than what is given, select a smaller or larger radius r is chosen than that calculated by Equation (1), and then X and R are found using Equations (2) and (3).

* *Four-Arc Oval* material contributed by Manfred K. Brueckner

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sphere.—A sphere is the locus of points equidistant from a given point (the sphere's center) in three-dimensional space. Similar to the circle, the standard form for the equation of a sphere of radius R and centered at point (h,k,l) is:

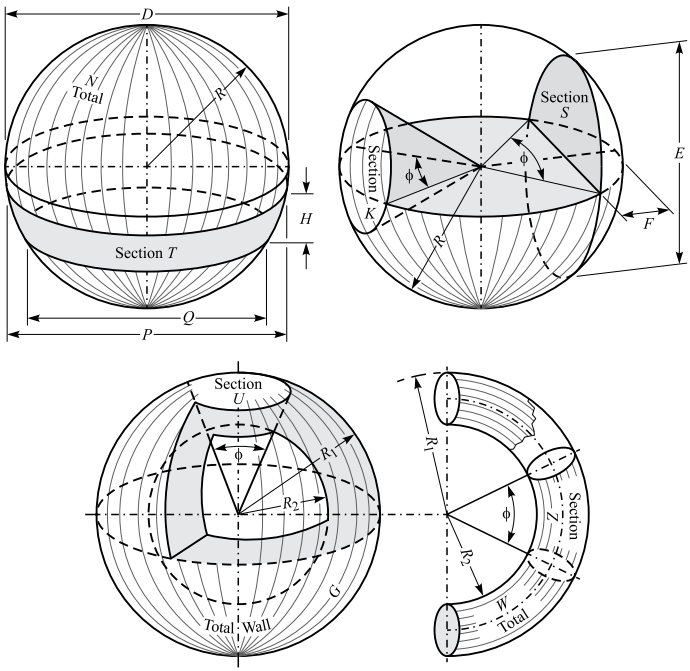
$$(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 + (z-l)^2 = R^2$$

The general form for the equation of a sphere can be written as follows, where $A \neq 0$:

$$Ax^2 + Ay^2 + Az^2 + Bx + Cy + Dz + E = 0$$

The general and standard forms of the sphere equations are related as follows:

$$h = \frac{-B}{2A} \qquad k = \frac{-C}{2A} \qquad l = \frac{-D}{2A} \qquad R = \sqrt{\frac{B^2 + C^2 + D^2}{4A^2} - \frac{E}{A}}$$



R = radius of sphere
D = diameter of sphere
N_s = total surface area of sphere
N_v = total volume of sphere
R_1 = radius of outer sphere
R_2 = radius of inner sphere
$G_a, K_a, S_a, T_a, U_a, W_a, Z_a$ = sectional surface areas
$G_v, K_v, S_v, T_v, U_v, W_v, Z_v$ = sectional volumes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Spherical Radius

To Find	Formula	To Find	Formula
Radius of sphere from volume N_v	$R_N = \sqrt[3]{\frac{3N_v}{4\pi}}$	Radius of section T	$R_T = \sqrt{\left(\frac{P^2 - Q^2 - 4H^2}{8H}\right)^2 + \frac{P^2}{4}}$

Formulas for Spherical Areas and Volumes

Section	Area Formula	Volume Formula
Entire sphere	$N_a = 4\pi R^2$	$N_v = \left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)D^3 = \frac{4\pi}{3}R^3$
Section G	$G_a = 4\pi R_1^2 + 4\pi R_2^2$	$G_v = \frac{4\pi}{3}(R_1^3 - R_2^3)$
Section K	$K_a = 2\pi R^2\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right)$	$K_v = \frac{2\pi R^2 F}{3}$
Section S	$S_a = \pi\left(F^2 + \frac{E^2}{4}\right)$	$S_v = \pi F\left(\frac{E^2}{8} + \frac{F^2}{6}\right)$
Section T	$T_a = 2\pi RH$	$T_v = H\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\left(H^2 + \frac{3Q^2}{4} + \frac{3P^2}{4}\right)$
Section U	$U_a = 2\pi(R_1^2 + R_2^2)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right)$	$U_v = 2\pi(R_1^3 - R_2^3)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right)$
Section W	$W_a = 4\pi^2 R_1 R_2$	$W_v = 2\pi^2 R_1 R_2^2$
Section Z	$Z_a = (4\pi^2 R_1 R_2)\frac{\phi}{360}$	$Z_v = (2\pi^2 R_1 R_2^2)\left(\frac{\phi}{360}\right)$

Example 1: Find the inside and outside surface area G_a and volume G_v of wall G, provided that R_1 is 12.5 cm and R_2 is 10.0 cm.

Solution: Sectional area G_a and sectional volume G_v:

$$G_a = 4\pi R_1^2 + 4\pi R_2^2 = 4\pi(12.5)^2 + 4\pi(10)^2 = 3220.13 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$G_v = \frac{4\pi}{3}(R_1^3 - R_2^3) = \frac{4\pi}{3}(12.5^3 - 10^3) = 3992.44 \text{ cm}^3$$

Example 2: Find the surface area K_a and volume K_v of section K of a sphere of radius 15.0 cm, if included angle $\phi = 90°$ and depth $F = 5.0$ cm.

Solution: Sectional area K_a and sectional volume K_v:

$$K_a = 2\pi R^2\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right) = 2\pi(15^2)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{90°}{2}\right)\right) = 414.07 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$K_v = \frac{2\pi R^2 F}{3} = \frac{2\pi(15)^2(5)}{3} = 2356.19 \text{ cm}^3$$

Example 3: Find the outside surface area S_a and sectional volume S_v of section S of a sphere if $E = 20.0$ cm and $F = 5.0$ cm.

Solution: Sectional area S_a and sectional volume S_v:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$S_a = \pi\left(F^2 + \frac{E^2}{4}\right) = \pi\left(5^2 + \frac{20^2}{4}\right) = 392.70 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$S_v = \pi F\left(\frac{E^2}{8} + \frac{F^2}{6}\right) = \pi \times 5\left(\frac{20^2}{8} + \frac{5^2}{6}\right) = 850.85 \text{ cm}^3$$

Example 4: Find the outside and inside surface area U_a and volume U_v of section U of a sphere if $R_1 = 5.0$ inches, $R_2 = 4.0$ inches, and included angle $\phi = 30°$.

Solution: Sectional area U_a and sectional volume U_v:

$$U_a = 2\pi(R_1^2 + R_2^2)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right) = 2\pi(5^2 + 4^2)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{30°}{2}\right)\right) = 8.78 \text{ in}^2$$

$$U_v = 2\pi(R_1^3 - R_2^3)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\right) = 2\pi(5^3 - 4^3)\left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{30°}{2}\right)\right) = 13.06 \text{ in}^3$$

Example 5: Find the total surface area W_a and volume W_v of ring W, if $R_1 = 5.0$ inches and $R_2 = 4.0$ inches.

Solution: Sectional area W_a and sectional volume W_v:

$$W_a = 4\pi^2 R_1 R_2 = 4\pi^2 \times 5 \times 4 = 789.57 \text{ in}^2$$

$$W_v = 2\pi^2 R_1 R_2^2 = 2\pi^2 \times 5 \times 4^2 = 1579.14 \text{ in}^3$$

Parabola.—A parabola is the set of all points P in the plane that are equidistant from a focus F and a line called the directrix. The parts of the parabola are labeled in the figure below.

The general equation of a parabola horizontal axis is given by $(y-k)^2 = 4p(x-h)$, where the vertex is located at point (h, k), the focus F at point $(h+p, k)$, and the directrix is the line x-axis at $x = h-p$. The latus rectum is the vertical line segment through the focus; its endpoints are on the parabola. Hence, it lies on the line $x = h+p$. The length of the latus rectum is four times the absolute value of the x-coordinate of the focus, hence $|4(h+p)|$.

Example: Determine the focus, directrix, parabolic axis, vertex, and length of the latus rectum of the parabola

$$4y^2 - 8x - 12y + 1 = 0$$

Solution: Rewrite the equation in the general form of a parabolic equation (see *Solving by Completing the Square* on page 34).

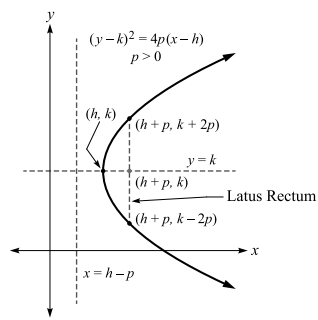
$$4y^2 - 8x - 12y + 1 = 0$$

$$4y^2 - 12y = 8x - 1$$

$$y^2 - 3y = 2x - \frac{1}{4}$$

$$y^2 - 3y\frac{3}{2} + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = 2x - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{9}{4}$$

$$\left(y - \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 = 2(x+1)$$



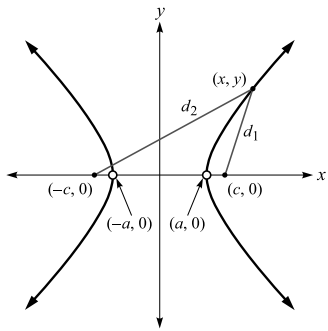
Parabola

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

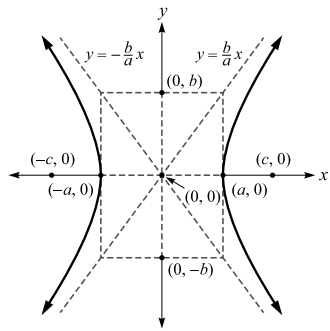
Thus, $k = 3/2$, $h = -1$ and $p = 1/2$. Focus F is located at point $(h + p, k) = (1/2, 3/2)$; the directrix is located at $x = h - p = -1 - 1/2 = -3/2$; the parabolic axis is the horizontal line $y = 3/2$; the vertex $V(h, k)$ is located at point $(-1, 3/2)$; and the latus rectum lies on the line $x = h + p = -1/2$. Its length is $4|-1/2| = 4(1/2) = 2$.

Hyperbola.—Referring to the figure on the left, below, a hyperbola is the set of all points such that $|d_1 - d_2|$ is constant. That is, the difference between the distances from any point (x, y) to the *foci*, marked $F_1(-c, 0)$ and $F_2(c, 0)$ does not change. The distance between the *vertices*, $V_1(-a, 0)$ and $V_2(a, 0)$ (the turning points of the hyperbola) is $2a$. Therefore, $|d_1 - d_2| = 2a$ for any two points on the hyperbola.

The figure on the right shows more detail. The slopes of the asymptotes (lines of approach) relate to the transverse and conjugate axis lengths, $2a$ and $2b$. The center of a hyperbola is the point of intersection of the asymptotes. In the figure, the center is shown as the origin, (0, 0). The standard form of the hyperbola, as derived from the foci with center at the origin, is $\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$. For any center (h, k), the equation is $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$.



Hyperbola 1



Hyperbola 2

The general form of the hyperbola is given by $Ax^2 + By^2 + Cx + Dy + E = 0$, where $AB < 0$ and $AB \neq 0$.

Also, the eccentricity of a hyperbola, $e = \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{a}$, is always less than 1.

The distance $2c$ between the two foci is given by the relation: $2c = 2\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$.

Example: Determine the values of h, k, a, b, c, and e of the hyperbola general form:

$$9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36x + 8y - 4 = 0$$

Solution: Convert the hyperbola equation into the standard form (see *Solving by Completing the Square* on page 34):

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36x + 8y - 4 = (9x^2 - 36x) - (4y^2 - 8y) = 4$$

$$9(x^2 - 4x + 4) - 4(y^2 - 2y + 1) = 36$$

$$\frac{9(x-2)^2}{36} - \frac{4(y-1)^2}{36} = \frac{(x-2)^2}{2^2} - \frac{(y-1)^2}{3^2} = 1$$

Comparing the results above with the form $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ and calculating eccentricity from $e = \frac{\sqrt{a^2+b^2}}{a}$ and distance c from $c = \sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ gives

$$h = 2, \quad k = 1, \quad a = 2, \quad b = 3, \quad c = \sqrt{13}, \quad e = \frac{\sqrt{13}}{2}$$

Complex Numbers

Imaginary Number.—The square root of a negative number cannot be expressed with real numbers, since any negative number multiplied by itself is positive. But technical mathematics often relies on computation involving the square root of –1. For this, *imaginary number i* is defined as follows:

$$i = \sqrt{-1}, \text{ so } \left(\sqrt{-1}\right)^2 = -1$$

Imaginary numbers are not real numbers; they belong to the set of *complex numbers*.

An example of an equation that cannot be solved with real numbers is $x^2 + 1 = 0$. Rearranging gives $x^2 = -1$, and taking the square root of both sides gives $x = \pm\sqrt{-1} = \pm i$. (Note: The letter *j* is also used to represent the imaginary number $\sqrt{-1}$.)

Forms of a Complex Number.—Complex numbers can be expressed in several forms, all of which are based on the complex coordinate system, as seen in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2.

Operations on complex numbers: Complex numbers are added and subtracted much like real numbers, but with real parts added to real parts and imaginary to imaginary:

$$(a+bi)+(c+di)=(a+c)+(bi+di)=(a+c)+(b+d)i$$

$$(a+bi)-(c+di)=(a-c)+(bi-di)=(a-c)+(b-d)i$$

where coefficients $a, b, c,$ and d are real numbers.

Example 1: $(3+4i)+(2-i)=(3+2)+(4i-i)=5+3i$

Complex numbers are multiplied as binomials are, by FOIL:

$$(a+bi)(c+di)=ac+adi+bci+bdi^2=ac+(ad+bc)i+bd(-1)=ac+(ad+bc)i-bd$$

Example 2: $(1+2i)(5-7i)=5-7i+10i-14i^2=5+3i-(14)(-1)=5+3i+14=19+3i$

Standard (rectangular) form of a complex number: A complex number z has a real part and an imaginary part. Its standard form is $z = a + bi$, where a is the real part and bi the imaginary part. Fig. 1 shows how the complex plane is similar to the real plane (see page 42 in *Analytic Geometry*), except here only the horizontal axis, x, is real, whereas the vertical axis, yi, is imaginary. Fig. 2 shows examples of complex numbers in rectangular form.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

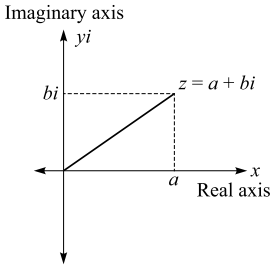


Fig. 1. Complex coordinate system

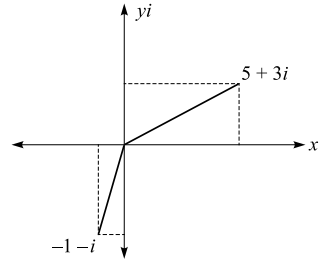


Fig. 2. Examples of standard (rectangular) form, $z = a + bi$

$z = 5 + 3i$ lies in the first quadrant, with a and b both positive; $z = -1 - i$ is in the third quadrant. Complex numbers can be converted from the standard form to any of three *vector forms*: polar, trigonometric, and exponential.

Polar form of a complex number: Vectors are objects that have both magnitude (r) and direction (θ). Vectors are essential in electrical engineering and other fields for representing many processes such as alternating current and voltage. They are represented graphically by an arrow, as seen in Fig. 3.

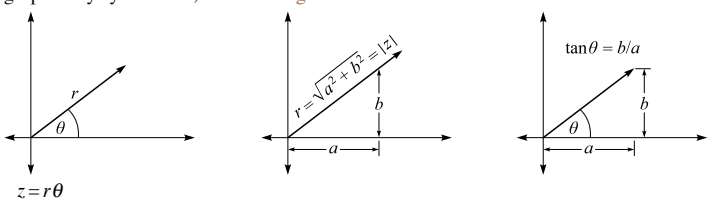


Fig. 3. (a) Polar form of a complex number;
(b) Magnitude $r = |z|$ relationship to a and b; (c) Angle θ to a, b.

The *polar form* of a complex number is $z = r\theta$. z is a vector in the sense of its magnitude (length) r and direction angle θ from the horizontal (Fig. 3a). By Pythagorean theorem, $r^2 = a^2 + b^2$; thus, magnitude $r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, which is called the *modulus*, is denoted $|z|$. From trigonometry, $\tan\theta = b/a$; hence, $\theta = \tan^{-1}(b/a)$.

Trigonometric form of a complex number: Another form that shows the directional nature of complex numbers is the trigonometric form of z. From trigonometry, $\cos\theta = a/r$ and $\sin\theta = b/r$; hence,

$$a = r\cos\theta, \quad b = r\sin\theta, \quad \text{so}, a + bi = r\cos\theta + ir\sin\theta = r(a\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$$

Exponential form of a complex number: Recall that the number e is the base of the natural logarithm (see page 37). A complex number is represented in exponential form through Euler's formulas, which are used widely in electrical engineering applications:

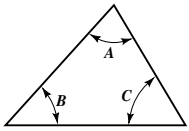
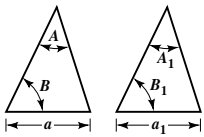
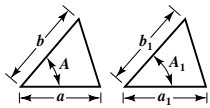
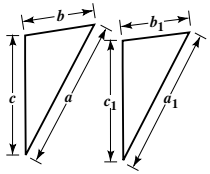
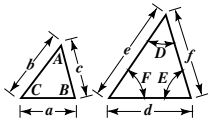
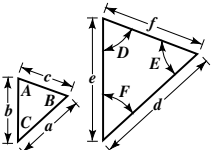
$$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta, \qquad \cos\theta = \frac{e^{i\theta} + e^{-i\theta}}{2}, \qquad \sin\theta = \frac{e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}}{2i}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pure Geometry

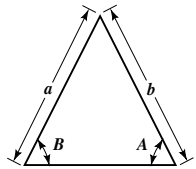
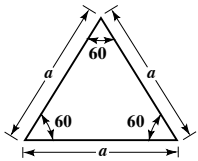
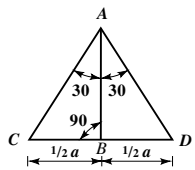
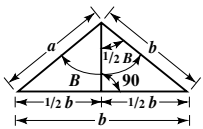
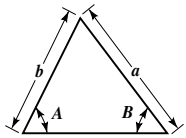
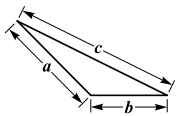
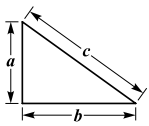
The labels that identify the parts of a figure (angle A, radius r, diameter d, and so on) are used in the formulas to indicate the *measure* of that feature. By definition, if any two geometric features A and B have equal measure, they are said to be *congruent*. So, if the measure of A equals the measure of B, then $A \cong cB$. Polygons are congruent if they have the same shape and size, that is, if one can be superimposed on the other point for point. Triangles are congruent if any of the propositions for triangle congruence hold, as summarized below.

Table 1a. Propositions of Geometry

	A *triangle* is a three-sided polygon. It is, in fact, the polygon with the least number of sides. The sides of a triangle meet at its *vertices* (singular *vertex*). The sum of the measures of all three angles of a triangle is 180 degrees. Hence, if the measures of any two angles are known, the third angle measure can always be found. $A + B + C = 180°$ $\quad A = 180° - (B + C)$ $B = 180° - (A + C)$ $\quad C = 180° - (A + B)$
	*AAS Proposition:* If two angles and the non-included side of one triangle are congruent to the corresponding (similarly located) angles and sides of another triangle, the triangles are congruent. Hence, if $a = a_1$, $A = A_1$, and $B = B_1$, the other corresponding side and angle are equal in measure, and thus the triangles are congruent.
	*SAS Proposition:* If two sides and the included angle (the angle between the sides) of one triangle are congruent (equal in measure) to the corresponding (similarly located) sides and angle of another triangle, then the triangles are congruent. Hence, in the figure, if $a = a_1$, $b = b_1$, and $A = A_1$, then the remaining side and angles also are equal in measure, and thus the triangles are congruent.
	*SSS Proposition:* If all three sides of one triangle are congruent (equal in measure) to all three sides of another triangle, then the triangles are congruent. If the three sides in one triangle are equal in measure to the three sides of another triangle, then the angles in the two triangles are equal in measure. If $a = a_1$, $b = b_1$, and $c = c_1$, then the corresponding angles are also equal in measure, and thus the triangles are congruent.
	If the three sides of a triangle are proportional to corresponding sides of another triangle, then the triangles are *similar*, and the angles in the one are congruent (equal in measure) to the angles in the other. Hence, if $a/d = b/e = c/f$ then $A = D$, $B = E$, $C = F$
	*Similar triangles* are ones whose corresponding angles are congruent. If this is true then the corresponding sides are proportional. If the angles of one triangle are congruent (equal in measure) to the angles of another triangle, then the triangles are similar and their corresponding sides are proportional. Hence, if $A = D$, $B = E$, and $C = F$ then $a/d = b/e = c/f$

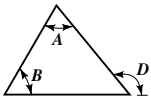
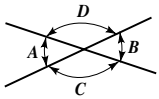
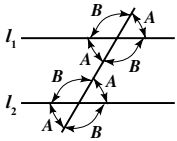
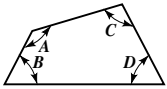
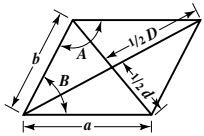
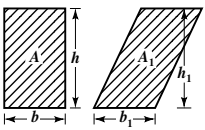
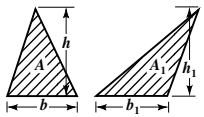
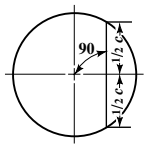
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Propositions of Geometry

	In an *isosceles triangle*, two sides *a, b* are congruent, hence the two angles opposite them (the base angles) are congruent. An equilateral (equiangular) triangle is also an isosceles triangle.
	In an *equilateral (equiangular) triangle*, all three sides (angles) are congruent. Since the sum of angle measures in any triangle is 180 degrees, then each angle in an equilateral (equiangular) triangle measures 60 degrees.
	A line in an equilateral triangle that bisects any of the angles (that is, divides it into two 30-degree angles), also bisects the side opposite the bisected angle and is perpendicular (at right angles) to it. Thus, if line *AB* bisects angle *CAD*, it also bisects line *CD* into two equal parts and is perpendicular to it.
	If a line in an isosceles triangle drawn from the vertex where the two congruent sides meet in such a way that is bisects the third side (or base), then it also bisects the angle at the vertex from which it is drawn.
	In every triangle, the greatest angle is opposite the longest side. And, the longest side is opposite the greatest angle. Thus, if *a* is longer than *b*, then the measure of angle *A* is greater than that of angle *B*. And, if angle *A* measure is greater than *B*, then side *a* is longer than side *b*.
	According to the *triangle inequality*, for any triangle, the sum of the lengths of any two sides must be greater than or equal to the length of the remaining side. Thus, $a + b \geq c$.
	The *Pythagorean theorem* states that in a right-angle triangle, the square of the *hypotenuse*, that is, the side opposite the right angle, is equal to the sum of the squares on the two sides that form the right angle. These sides are the *legs* of the right triangle. Thus, $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$

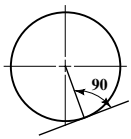
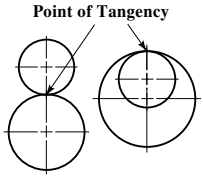
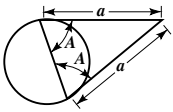
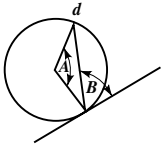
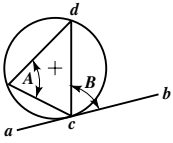
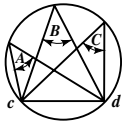
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1c. Propositions of Geometry

	In the figure, angle D is an *exterior angle*. The measure of an exterior angle is equal to the sum of the measures of the non-adjacent interior angles. Thus, $A + B = D$
	Intersecting lines form congruent *vertical angles*, that is, the angles opposite one another. In the figure, A and B are vertical angles and therefore congruent, and C and D are vertical angles and therefore congruent. That is, $A \cong B$ $C \cong D$
	Corresponding angles formed when parallel lines are intersected by another line (a *transversal*) have equal measure (are congruent). Lines l_1 and l_2 are intersected by s transversal, so all angles A are congruent, and all angles B are congruent.
	A quadrilateral is a four-sided polygon. In any quadrilateral, the sum of the measures of the interior angles is 360 degrees. Thus, $A + B + C + D = 360$ degrees
	A parallelogram is a quadrilateral in which each pair of opposite sides is parallel and thus congruent. Opposite angles are also congruent. Each diagonal divides the parallelogram into congruent triangles, and the diagonals bisect each other. In the figure, diagonal D bisects diagonal d at their midpoints.
	A rectangle is a parallelogram in which all four angles are right angles. In the figure, the rectangle's *base* is marked b; its *height* is marked h; the parallelogram's base is marked b_1, and its height is marked h_1. The area of a parallelogram is $A = bh$. If two parallelograms have a corresponding base and height of equal measure, their areas are equal. Thus, if $b = b_1$ and h and h_1, then area A = area A_1.
	Triangles having equal base and equal height have equal area. Thus, if $b = b_1$ and h and h_1, then area A = area A_1.
	If a diameter of a circle is perpendicular (at right angles) to a chord, then it bisects the chord, dividing it into two equal parts. In the figure, the chord has length c, so its parts have length $c/2$.

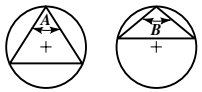
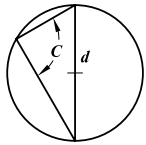
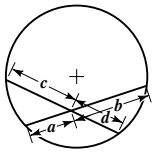
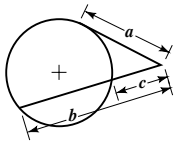
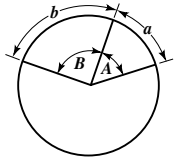
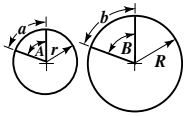
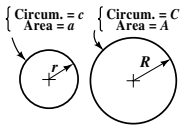
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1d. Propositions of Geometry

	A line tangent to a circle lies perpendicular (at right angles) to a radius drawn to meet it at the point of tangency.
	The figure shows two ways that circles can be tangent. A line drawn through the center of each circle (the diameter) will pass through the point of tangency.
	Two tangents drawn from a single point outside a circle will be equal in length (*a*), and the angles they make with the chord that connects the points of tangency (*A*) will be equal in measure. The figure shows this congruency.
	The angle formed by a tangent and a chord drawn from the point of tangency measures one-half the central angle subtended by that chord. That is, $B = A/2$
	The angle formed by a tangent and a chord drawn from the point of tangency has measure equal to the inscribed angle subtended by the chord. That is, $B = A$.
	All inscribed angles subtended by the same chord in a circle are congruent (equal in measure). In the figure, *A*, *B*, and *C* are subtended by chord *cd*, and so are equal in measure.
	Referring to the figure, inscribed angle *A* and central angle *B* are subtended by the same arc. The measure of inscribed *A* is half the measure of central angle *B*. In the figure, $A = B/2$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

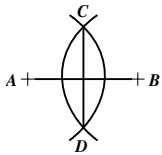
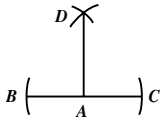
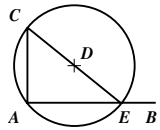
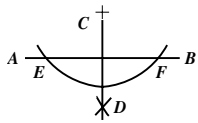
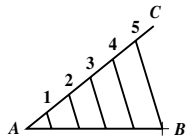
Table 1e. Propositions of Geometry

	A *major arc* of a circle is one that measures more than half the circumference of the circle. A *minor arc* measures less than half the circumference of the circle. In the figure, angle *A* is subtended by a minor arc, so it is an acute angle (it measures less than 90 degrees). Angle *B* is subtended by a major arc, so it is an obtuse angle (it measures more than 90 degrees).
	An angle subtended by a circle's diameter is a right angle; the arc described by the diameter is a semicircle. Referring to the figure, right angle *A* is subtended by diameter *d*. Angle $C = 90°$
	In the figure, the product of line segment lengths formed by intersecting chords in a circle are equal. Thus: $ab = cd$
	When two lines are drawn from a point outside a circle, one tangent and one through the circle intersecting it at two points, the line segment lengths are such that the square of the tangent segment is equal to the product of the segments formed by the other line. Thus: $a^2 = bc$
	Arc lengths of a circle are proportional to the corresponding central angle measures. Thus: $A:B = a:b$
	The lengths of circular arcs having the same central angle are proportional to the lengths of the radii. Thus, if $A = B$, then $a/b = r/R$
	The ratio of the circumferences of two circles is proportional to the ratio of their radii. $c:C :: r:R$ so $c/C = r/R$ The ratio of the areas of two circles is proportional to the ratio of the squares of their radii. $a:A :: r^2:R^2$ so $a/A = r^2/R^2$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

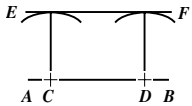
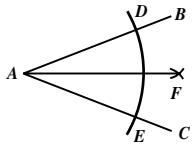
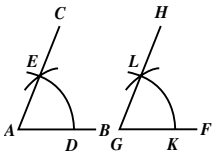
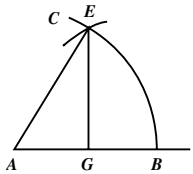
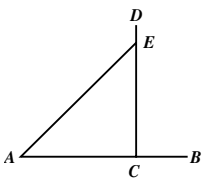
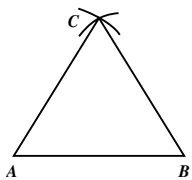
The geometric constructions below are produced with a compass, protractor, and straight edge. The compass point marks the "centers" in the constructions that follow. The techniques described also apply for electronic drafting programs. As the section progresses, some constructions rely on previous ones.

Table 2a. Geometric Constructions

	To bisect a line segment (divide it into two equal parts): With the ends *A* and *B* as centers and a radius greater than one-half the line segment, use the compass to draw circular arcs. Through intersections *C* and *D*, use the straight edge draw line *CD*. This line bisects *AB* and is also perpendicular to *AB*.
	To draw a perpendicular to a line from a point *A* on that line: With *A* as the center and with any radius, use the compass to draw circular arcs intersecting the given line at *B* and *C*. Then, with *B* and *C* as centers and a radius longer than *AB*, draw circular arcs intersecting at *D*. With the straight edge, draw line *DA*. This line is perpendicular to *BC*.
	To draw a perpendicular line from a point *A* to *C* at the end of line *AB*: Draw line *AB*, and then with any point *D* not on *AB* as center, use the compass to draw a circle intersecting *AB* at *E*. Draw a line through *E* and *D* intersecting the circle at *C*; then join *AC*. This line is the required perpendicular.
	To draw a perpendicular to a line *AB* from a point *C* at a distance from it: With *C* as center, use the compass to draw an arc intersecting the given line at *E* and *F*. With *E* and *F* as centers, draw circular arcs with a radius longer than one-half the distance between *E* and *F*. These arcs intersect at *D*. Line *CD*, drawn with the straight edge, is the required perpendicular.
	To divide a line segment *AB* into a number of equal parts: Assume line segment *AB* is to be divided into five smaller segments of equal measure. Draw line *AC* at an acute angle with *AB*. Mark off on *AC* five parts of equal measure, any convenient length. With the straight edge, draw the segment *B*-5 and then draw lines parallel to *B*-5 through the other division points on *AC*. The points where these lines intersect *AB* are the required division points.

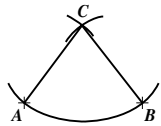
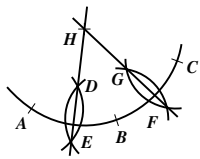
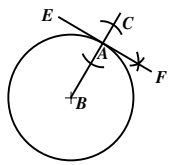
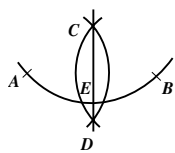
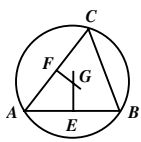
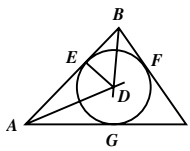
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Geometric Constructions

	To draw a line parallel to a given line *AB*, at a given distance from it: Using the compass, with any points *C* and *D* on *AB* as centers, draw with the compass circular arcs with the given distance as radius. Line *EF*, drawn with the straight edge to be tangent to (that is, touch without intersecting) the circular arcs, is the required parallel line.
	To bisect an angle *BAC*: With *A* as a center and any radius, use the compass to draw arc *DE*. With *D* and *E* as centers and a radius greater than one-half *DE*, use the compass to draw circular arcs intersecting at *F*. Line *AF*, drawn with the straight edge, divides the angle into two equal parts.
	To draw an angle upon a line *AB* equal to a given angle *FGH*: With point *G* as a center and with any radius, draw arc *KL*. With *A* as a center and with the same radius, draw arc *DE*. Make arc *DE* equal in length to *KL* and draw *AC* through *E*. Angle *BAC* then is equal in length to angle *FGH*.
	To lay out a 60-degree angle: With *A* as a center and any radius *AB*, draw an arc *BC*. With point *B* as a center and *AB* as a radius, draw an arc intersecting at *E* the arc just drawn. *EAB* is a 60-degree angle. A 30-degree angle may be obtained either by bisecting a 60-degree angle or by drawing a line *EG* perpendicular to *AB*. Angle *AEG* is then 30 degrees.
	To draw a 45-degree angle: From point *A* on line *AB*, set off a distance *AC*. With a straight edge, draw perpendicular *DC* and set off a distance *CE* equal to *AC*. Draw *AE*. Angle *EAC* is a 45-degree angle.
	To draw an equilateral triangle, with the length of the sides equal to *AB*: Draw *AB* with straight edge. With *A* and *B* as centers and *AB* as radius, use the compass to draw circular arcs intersecting at *C*. With the straight edge, draw *AC* and *BC*. Then *ABC* is an equilateral triangle.

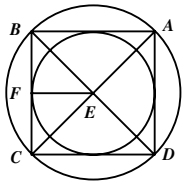
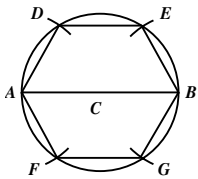
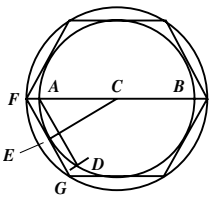
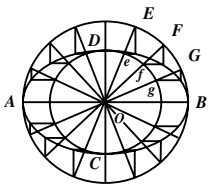
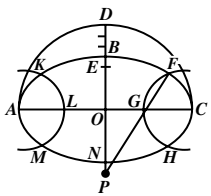
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. Geometric Constructions

	To draw a circular arc with a given radius through two given points *A* and *B*: With *A* and *B* as centers, with the compass draw two circular arcs with the given radius intersecting at *C*. With *C* as center and the same radius, draw a circular arc through *A* and *B*.
	To locate the center of an arc of a circle: Select three points on the periphery of the circle, as *A*, *B*, and *C*. With each of these points as a center and setting the same radius with the compass, draw arcs intersecting each other. Through the points of intersection, draw lines *DE* and *GF*. Point *H*, where these lines intersect, is the center of the circle.
	To draw a tangent to a circle through a given point on the circumference: Through a chosen point of tangency *A* on a circle with center *B*, draw radius *BC*. At point *A*, draw a line *EF* at right angles to *BC*. This line is the required tangent.
	To divide a circular arc *AB* into two equal parts: With *A* and *B* as centers, and a radius larger than half the distance between *A* and *B*, with the compass draw circular arcs intersecting at *C* and *D*. Line *CD* divides arc *AB* into two equal parts at *E*.
	To circumscribe a circle about a triangle *ABC*: Bisect the sides *AB* and *AC*, and from the midpoints *E* and *F* draw lines at right angles to the sides. These lines intersect at *G*. With *G* as a center and *GA* as a radius, draw circle *ABC*.
	To inscribe a circle in a triangle *ABC*: Bisect two of the angles, *A* and *B*, by lines intersecting at *D*. From *D*, draw a line *DE* perpendicular to one of the sides, and with *DE* as a radius, use the compass to draw circle *EFG*.

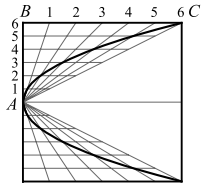
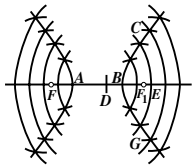
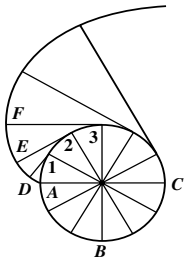
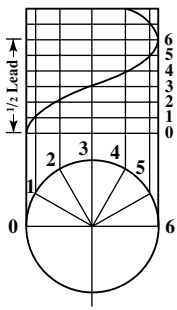
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2d. Geometric Constructions

	To circumscribe a circle about a square and to inscribe a circle in a square *ABCD*: Draw the square's diagonals *AC* and *BD* with the straight edge. The centers of both the circumscribed and inscribed circles are located at the point *E*, where the two diagonals of the square intersect. The radius of the circumscribed circle is *AE*, and of the inscribed circle, *EF*.
	To inscribe a hexagon in a circle with center *C*: Draw diameter *AB*. With *A* and *B* as centers and with the circle's radius as radius, describe circular arcs intersecting the given circle at *D*, *E*, *F*, and *G*. Draw chords *AD*, *DE*, etc., forming the required hexagon *ABCDEFG*.
	To circumscribe a hexagon about a circle with center *C*: Draw the circle's diameter *AB*, and with *A* as center and the radius of the circle as radius, cut the circumference of the given circle at *D*. Draw chord *AD* and bisect it with radius *CE*. Through *E*, draw *FG* parallel to *AD* and intersecting diameter *AB* at *F*. With *C* as center and *CF* as radius, draw a circle. Within this circle, inscribe the hexagon as in the preceding problem. This is the circumscribed hexagon about the first circle.
	To describe an ellipse with the given axes *AB* and *CD*: Describe circles with *O* as center and *AB* and *CD* as diameters. From a number of points, *E*, *F*, *G*, etc., on the outer circle, draw radii intersecting the inner circle at *e*, *f*, and *g*. From *E*, *F*, and *G*, draw lines perpendicular to *AB*, and from *e*, *f*, and *g*, draw line segments parallel to *AB*. The intersections of these perpendicular and parallel lines are points on the curve of the ellipse.
	To construct an approximate ellipse by circular arcs: Let *AC* be the major axis and *BN* the minor. With the compass, draw semicircle *ADC* with *O* as center. Divide *BD* into three equal parts and set off *BE* equal to one of these parts. With *A* and *C* as centers and *OE* as radius, describe circular arcs *KLM* and *FGH*; with *G* and *L* as centers, and with the same radius, describe arcs *FCH* and *KAM*. Through *F* and *G*, draw line *FP*, and with *P* as center draw arc *FBK*. Arc *HNM* is drawn in the same manner.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2e. Geometric Constructions

	To construct a parabola: Divide line segment *AB* into a number of equal parts and divide *BC* into the same number of parts. From the division points on *AB*, draw horizontal lines. From the division points on *BC*, draw lines to point *A*. The points of intersection of the lines drawn from points numbered alike are points on the parabola.
	To construct a hyperbola: From focus *F*, lay off a distance *FD* to be the transverse axis, or the distance *AB* between the two branches of the curve. With *F* as center and any distance *FE* greater than *FB* as a radius, describe a circular arc. Then with F_1 as center and *DE* as radius, describe arcs intersecting at *C* and *G* the arc just described. *C* and *G* are points on the hyperbola. Any number of points can be found in a similar manner; when a sufficient number of points are found, draw a smooth curve through them.
	To construct an involute: Divide the circumference of the base circle *ABC* into a number of equal parts. Through the division points 1, 2, 3, etc., draw tangents to the circle and make the lengths *D*-1, *E*-2, *F*-3, etc., of these tangents equal to the actual length of the arcs *A*-1, *A*-2, *A*-3, etc. Connect the ends of these tangents with a smooth curve.
	To construct a helix: Divide half the circumference of the cylinder on the surface of which the helix is to be described into a number of equal parts. Divide half the lead of the helix into the same number of equal parts. From the division points on the circle representing the cylinder, draw vertical lines using the straight edge, and from the division points on the lead, draw horizontal lines as shown. The intersections between lines numbered alike are points on the helix. Connect these points with a smooth curve.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Area and Volume

The Prismoidal Formula.—A *right prism* is a three-dimensional figure composed of (two-dimensional) polygons that form the faces of the prism. The end faces are the bases, the other faces are the sides. The prismoidal formula is a general formula by which the volume of any prism, pyramid, or frustum of a pyramid may be found.

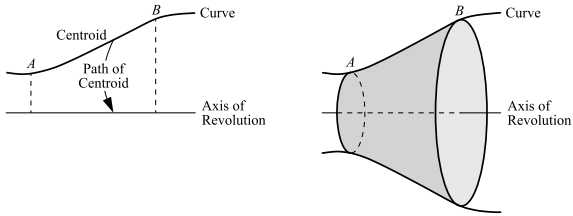
$A_1, A_2 =$ end areas of the body

$A_m =$ area of faces between the two end surfaces

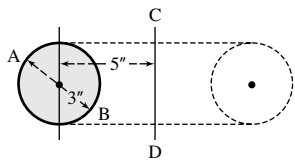
$h =$ height of body

Then, volume of the body is calculated as $V = \frac{h}{6}(A_1 + 4A_m + A_2)$.

Pappus-Guldinus Rules.—A *surface of revolution* is generated when a curve is revolved about an external axis. (The curve must lie wholly on one side of the axis of revolution and in the same plane.) The mathematics for finding the curve's length and the length of the path of the centroid involves calculus. Some surface areas and volumes of solids of revolution can then be determined by the rules of the *Pappus-Guldinus theorems*. The area of the resulting surface is equal to the product of the length of the generating curve and the distance traveled by the curve's center of gravity, or *centroid* (see figure below).



The volume of a solid body formed by the revolution of a surface *FGHJ* about axis *KL* equals the product of the surface area and the length of the path of its center of gravity about axis *KL*.



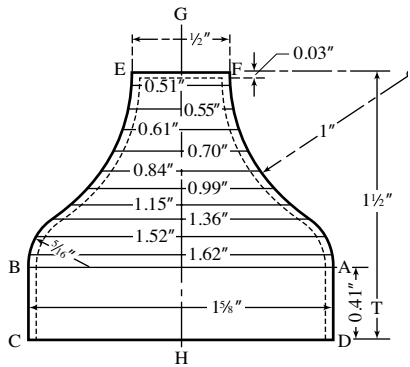
Example: By means of the Pappus-Guldinus rules, the area and volume of a cylindrical ring, or torus, may be found. A torus is formed when a circle is rotated about an axis. The center of gravity of the circle is its center. Hence, with the dimensions given in the illustration, the length of the path of the center of gravity of the circle it travels is the circumference $2\pi r = 2 \times 3.1416 \times 5 = 31.416$ inches. Multiplying this path length by the circumference of the circle, which is $3.1416 \times 3 = 9.4248$ inches, gives $31.416 \times 9.4248 = 296.089$ square inches. This is the surface area of the torus.

The volume of the torus equals the area of the circle, $\frac{\pi d^2}{4} = 0.7854 \times 9 = 7.0686$ square inches, multiplied by the path length of the center of gravity, which is 31.416, as before; hence,

$$\text{Volume} = 7.0686 \times 31.416 = 222.067 \text{ cubic inches}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Approximate Method for Finding the Area of a Surface of Revolution.—The illustration below is an example of the approximate method based on Guldinus rule for finding the surface area of a symmetrical body. In the illustration, the dimensions in common fractions are the known dimensions; those in decimals are found by actual measurements on a figure drawn to scale.



The surface area is found as follows: First, the entire form is separated into such areas as are cylindrical, conical, or spherical, since their surface areas can be found by exact formulas. In the illustration, the three-dimensional portion marked in the plane by *ABCD* is a cylinder, the area of the surface of which can be easily found. The top area *EF* is simply a circular area and can thus be computed separately. The remainder of the surface generated by rotating line *AF* about the axis *GH* is found by the approximate method. From point *A*, equal distances are set off on line *AF*. In the illustration, each division indicated is $\frac{1}{8}$ inch long. From the central or middle point of each of these parts a line is drawn at right angles to the axis of rotation *GH*, the length of these lines or diameters (the length of each is given in decimals) is measured, all these lengths are added together and the sum is multiplied by the length of one division set off on line *AF* (in this case, $\frac{1}{8}$ inch), and this product is multiplied by π to give the approximate area of the surface of revolution.

In setting off divisions $\frac{1}{8}$ inch long along line *AF*, the last division does not reach all the way to point *F*, but only to a point 0.03 inch below it. The part 0.03 inch high at the top of the cup can be considered as a cylinder of $\frac{1}{2}$-inch diameter and 0.03-inch height, the area of the cylindrical surface of which is easily computed. By adding the various surfaces together, the total surface of the cup is found as follows:

Cylinder, $1\frac{5}{8}$ in. diameter, 0.41 in. height	2.093 in^2
Circle, $\frac{1}{2}$ in. diameter	0.196 in^2
Cylinder, $\frac{1}{2}$ in. diameter, 0.03 in. height	0.047 in^2
Irregular surface	3.868 in^2
Total	6.204 in^2

Area of Irregular Plane Figure.—One of the most useful and accurate methods for determining the approximate area of a plane figure or irregular outline is known as *Simpson's rule*. In applying Simpson's rule to find an area, the work is done in four steps:

1) The area is divided into an *even* number *N* of parallel strips of equal width *W*; for example, in the accompanying diagram, the area has been divided into 8 strips of equal width.

2) The sides of the strips are labeled V_0, V_1, V_2, etc., up to V_N.

3) These heights $V_0, V_1, V_2, \ldots, V_N$ are measured.

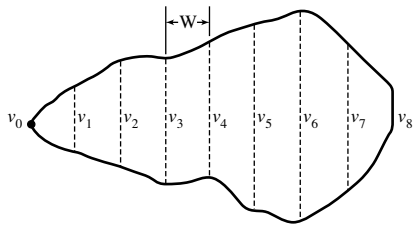
4) The values V_0, V_1, etc. are substituted in the following formula to find the area *A* of the figure:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$A = \frac{W}{3}[(V_0 + V_N) + 4(V_1 + V_3 + \cdots + V_{N-1}) + 2(V_2 + V_4 + \cdots + V_{N-2})]$$

Example: The area of the accompanying figure was divided into 8 strips on a full-size drawing and the following data obtained. Calculate the area using Simpson's rule.

$W = 1$ cm
$V_0 = 0$ cm
$V_1 = 1.91$ cm
$V_2 = 3.18$ cm
$V_3 = 3.81$ cm
$V_4 = 4.13$ cm
$V_5 = 5.27$ cm
$V_6 = 6.35$ cm
$V_7 = 4.45$ cm
$V_8 = 1.27$ cm



Substituting the given data in the Simpson's formula,

$$A = \frac{1}{3}[(0 + 1.27) + 4(1.91 + 3.81 + 5.27 + 4.45) + 2(3.18 + 4.13 + 6.35)]$$

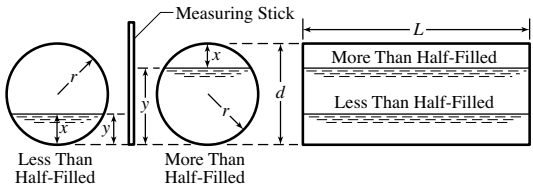
$$= \frac{1}{3}[1.27 + 4(15.44) + 2(13.66)] = 30.12 \text{ cm}^2$$

In applying Simpson's rule, it should be noted that the larger the number of strips into which the area is divided the more accurate the results obtained.

Areas Enclosed by Cycloidal Curves.—The area between a cycloid and the line upon which the generating circle rolls equals three times the area of the generating circle (see diagram, page 79). The areas between epicycloidal and hypocycloidal curves and the "fixed circle" upon which the generating circle is rolled may be determined by the following formulas, in which a = radius of the fixed circle upon which the generating circle rolls, b = radius of the generating circle, A = the area for the epicycloidal curve, and A_1 = the area for the hypocycloidal curve.

$$A = \frac{\pi b^2(3a + 2b)}{a} \qquad A_1 = \frac{\pi b^2(3a - 2b)}{a}$$

Contents of Cylindrical Tanks at Different Levels.—In conjunction with the table *Segments of Circles for Radius = 1* starting on page 84, the following relations can give a close approximation of the liquid contents, at any level, in a cylindrical tank.



A long measuring rule calibrated in length units or a plain stick can be used for measuring contents at a particular level. In turn, the rule or stick can be graduated to serve as a volume gauge for the tank in question. The requirements are that the tank must have a circular cross section; the dimensions of the tank must be known; the gauge rod has to be inserted vertically through the top center of the tank so that it rests precisely in the center at the bottom of the tank; and the calculations must be done using consistent metric *or* US customary (also called *English*) units. The formulas and parameters are:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$K = Cr^2L$ = tank constant (the same for any given tank) (1)

$V_T = \pi K$, for a tank that is completely full (2)

$V_s = KA$ (3)

$V = V_s$, for a tank that is less than half full (4)

$V = V_T - V_s = V_T - KA$, for a tank that is more than half full (5)

where: C = liquid volume conversion factor; the exact value depends on the length and liquid volume units used during measurement: 0.00433 US gal/in^3; 7.48 US gal/ft^3; 0.00360 UK gal/in^3; 6.23 UK gal/ft^3; 0.001 liter/cm^3; or 1000 liters/m^3

V_T = total volume of liquid tank can hold

V_s = volume formed by segment of circle having depth x in the given tank (see diagram)

V = volume of liquid at particular level in tank

L = length of tank; r = radius of tank (= ½ diameter)

A = segment area of a corresponding unit circle taken from the table starting on page 84.

y = actual depth of contents in tank as shown on a gauge rod or stick

x = depth of the segment of a circle to be considered in given tank. As can be seen in the diagram, both x and y are the actual depth of contents when the tank is less than half full, but x is the depth of the void $(d - y)$ above the contents when the tank is more than half full. In the discussion of the unit circle, page 84, $r = 1$, and so the height of a segment of a corresponding unit circle is x/r.

Example: A tank is 20 feet long and 6 feet in diameter. Convert a long stick graduated in inches into a gauge graduated at two points, 1000 and 3000 US gallons.

Solution: $L = 20 \times 12 = 240$ in. $r = {}^6/_2 \times 12 = 36$ in.

From Formula (1): $K = 0.00433 \times 36^2 \times 240 = 1346.80$

From Formula (2): $V_T = 3.1416 \times 1347 = 4231.7$ US gal.

The 72-inch mark from the bottom on the inch-stick can be graduated for the rounded full volume of 4230 and the halfway point 36 in. for 4230⁄2 or 2115. It can be seen that the 1000-gal mark would be below the halfway mark. From Formulas (3) and (4):

$A_{1000} = \dfrac{1000}{1347} = 0.7424$; from the table starting on page 84, h can be interpolated as 0.5724; and $x = y = 36 \times 0.5724 = 20.61$. If the desired level of accuracy permits, interpolation can be omitted by choosing h directly from the table on page 84 for the value of A nearest that calculated above.

Therefore, the 1000-gal mark is graduated $20\frac{5}{8}$ in. from bottom of rod.

It can be seen that the 3000 mark would be above the halfway mark. Therefore, the circular segment considered is the cross section of the void space at the top of the tank. From Formulas (3) and (5):

$$A_{3000} = \frac{4230 - 3000}{1347} = 0.9131, \quad h = 0.6648, \quad x = 36 \times 0.6648 = 23.93 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, the 3000-gal mark is 72.00 – 23.93 = 48.07, or at the $48\frac{1}{16}$-in. mark from the bottom.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

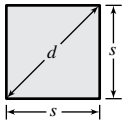
Dimensions of Plane Figures

The following pages contain diagrams of plane figures, along with formulas for finding their dimensions. Illustrations are labeled with the variables given in the formulas. Formulas for one dimension are derived from another by rearranging terms or substituting the formula for one dimension with another, where appropriate.

Formulas that include decimals are derived either from the square root of 2 or $\frac{1}{2}$. As such, they are approximations of the dimension being solved for. Formulas that include π are approximated as well.

The dimensions generally are as follows, with distinctions shown as needed for each figure: A = area; s = side; d = diagonal or diameter; h, H = height; a, b, c = sides or other segments as shown; r, R = radius; l = arc length or other.

Square:



$$A = s^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}d^2$$
$$s = 0.7071d = \sqrt{A}$$
$$d = 1.414s = 1.414\sqrt{A}$$

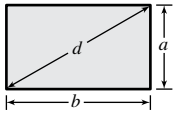
Example: Side s of a square is 15 in. Find the area of the square and the length of its diagonal.

$$A = s^2 = 15^2 = 225 \text{ in}^2$$
$$d = 1.414s = 1.414 \times 15 = 21.21 \text{ in}$$

Example: The area of a square is 625 cm^2. Find the length of side s and diagonal d.

$$s = \sqrt{A} = \sqrt{625} = 25 \text{ cm}$$
$$d = 1.414\sqrt{A} = 1.414 \times 25 = 35.35 \text{ cm}$$

Rectangle:



$$A = ab = a\sqrt{d^2 - a^2} = b\sqrt{d^2 - b^2}$$
$$d = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$
$$a = \sqrt{d^2 - b^2} = A/b$$
$$b = \sqrt{d^2 - a^2} = A/a$$

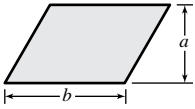
Example: Side a of a rectangle is 12 cm, and the area is 70.5 cm^2. Find the length of side b and diagonal d.

$$b = A/a = 70.5/12 = 5.875 \text{ cm}$$
$$d = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{12^2 + 5.875^2} = \sqrt{178.516} = 13.361 \text{ cm}$$

Example: The sides of a rectangle are 30.5 and 11 cm. Find the area.

$$A = ab = 30.5 \times 11 = 335.5 \text{ cm}^2$$

Parallelogram:



$$A = ab$$
$$a = A/b$$
$$b = A/a$$

Note: The dimension a is the length of the vertical drawn at a right angle to side b. Dimension a is also considered the height of the parallelogram.

Example: Base b of a parallelogram is 16 ft. Height a is 5.5 ft. Find the area.

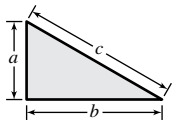
$$A = ab = 5.5 \times 16 = 88 \text{ ft}^2$$

Example: The area of a parallelogram is 12 in^2. The height is 1.5 in. Find the length of the base b.

$$b = A/a = 12/1.5 = 8 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Right Triangle (one angle is a 90-degree angle):



From the Pythagorean theorem, $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$, thus $A = \frac{ab}{2}$

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \qquad a = \sqrt{c^2 - b^2} \qquad b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}$$

Example: Side a is 6 in. and side b is 8 in. Find side c and area A:

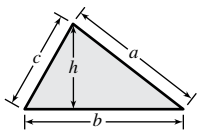
$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{6^2 + 8^2} = \sqrt{36 + 64} = \sqrt{100} = 10 \text{ in.}$$

$$A = \frac{ab}{2} = \frac{6 \times 8}{2} = \frac{48}{2} = 24 \text{ in}^2$$

Example: Side $c = 10$ and side $a = 6$. Find side b:

$$b \text{ in.} = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2} = \sqrt{10^2 - 6^2} = \sqrt{100 - 36} = \sqrt{64} = 8 \text{ in.}$$

Acute Triangle (all three angles measure less than 90 degrees):



$$A = \frac{bh}{2}, \quad h = \sqrt{a^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2b}\right)^2}, \quad \text{so} \quad A = \frac{b}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2b}\right)^2}$$

$$A = \sqrt{S(S-a)(S-b)(S-c)}, \quad \text{where} \quad S = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

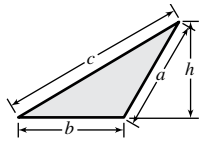
Example: Side $b = 7$ inches, $h = 4$ inches, so $A = bh/2 = (7 \text{ in.} \times 4 \text{ in.})/2 = 28 \text{ in}^2/2 = 14 \text{ in}^2$

Example: Side $a = 10$ cm, $b = 9$ cm, and $c = 8$ cm^2. Find the area.

$$A = \frac{b}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2b}\right)^2} = \frac{9}{2}\sqrt{10^2 - \left(\frac{10^2 + 9^2 - 8^2}{2 \times 9}\right)^2} = 4.5\sqrt{100 - \left(\frac{117}{18}\right)^2}$$

$$= 4.5\sqrt{100 - 42.25} = 4.5\sqrt{57.75} = 4.5 \times 7.60 = 34.20 \text{ cm}^2$$

Obtuse Triangle (one angle measures greater than 90 degrees):



$$A = \frac{bh}{2}, \quad h = \sqrt{a^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2b}\right)^2}, \quad \text{so} \quad A = \frac{b}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2b}\right)^2}$$

$$A = \sqrt{S(S-a)(S-b)(S-c)}, \quad \text{where} \quad S = \frac{a+b+c}{2}$$

Example: If $b = 5$ cm and $h = 3$ cm, then $A = bh/2 = (5 \text{ cm} \times 3 \text{ cm})/2 = 15 \text{ cm}^2/2 = 7.5 \text{ cm}^2$

Example: Side $a = 5$ in., side $b = 4$ in., and side $c = 8$ in. Find the area.

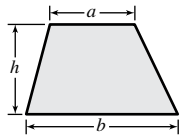
$$S = (a + b + c)/2 = (5 + 4 + 8)/2 = 17/2 = 8.5$$

$$A = \sqrt{S(S-a)(S-b)(S-c)} = \sqrt{8.5(8.5-5)(8.5-4)(8.5-8)}$$

$$= \sqrt{8.5 \times 3.5 \times 4.5 \times 0.5} = \sqrt{66.937} = 8.18 \text{ in}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Trapezoid:



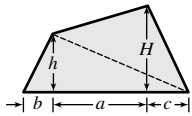
$$\text{Area} = A = \frac{(a+b)h}{2}$$

Note: In Britain, this figure is called a *trapezium* and the figure below it is known as a *trapezoid*, which is the reverse of the US terms.

Example: Side $a = 23$ meters, side $b = 32$ meters, and height $h = 12$ meters. Find the area.

$$A = \frac{(a+b)h}{2} = \frac{(23+32)\times 12}{2} = \frac{55\times 12}{2} = 330 \text{ m}^2$$

Trapezium:



$$\text{Area} = A = \frac{(H+h)a + bh + cH}{2}$$

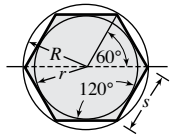
The area of a trapezium also can be found by dividing it into two triangles, as indicated by the dashed line. Each area is added to give the total area of the trapezium.

Example: Let $a = 10$ in., $b = 2$, $c = 3$ in., $h = 8$ in., and $H = 12$ in. Find the area.

$$A = \frac{(H+h)a + bh + cH}{2} = \frac{(12+8)\times 10 + (2\times 8) + (3\times 12)}{2}$$

$$= \frac{(20\times 10) + 16 + 36}{2} = \frac{252}{2} = 126 \text{ in}^2$$

Regular Hexagon:



$A = 2.598s^2 = 2.598R^2 = 3.464r^2$
$R = s =$ radius of circumscribed circle $= 1.155r$
$r =$ radius of inscribed circle $= 0.866s = 0.866R$
$s = R = 1.155r$

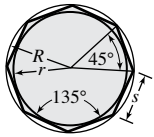
Example: The side s of a regular hexagon is 40 millimeters. Find the area and the radius r of the inscribed (drawn inside) circle.

$$A = 2.598s^2 = 2.598\times 40^2 = 2.598\times 1600 = 4156.8 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$r = 0.866s = 0.866\times 40 = 34.64 \text{ mm}$$

Example: What is the length of the side of a hexagon circumscribed on (drawn around) a circle of 50 millimeters radius? In this case, because the hexagon is circumscribed on the circle, the circle is *inscribed* (drawn within) the hexagon. Hence, $r = 50$ mm and $s = 1.155r = 1.155\times 50 = 57.75$ mm

Regular Octagon:



$A =$ area $= 4.828s^2 = 2.828R^2 = 3.314r^2$
$R =$ radius of circumscribed circle $= 1.307s = 1.082r$
$r =$ radius of inscribed circle $= 1.207s = 0.924R$
$s = 0.765R = 0.828r$

Example: Find the area and the length of the side of an octagon inscribed (drawn inside) in a circle of 12 inches diameter.

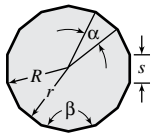
Diameter of circumscribed (drawn around) circle = 12 inches; hence, $R = 6$ in.

$$A = 2.828R^2 = 2.828\times 6^2 = 2.828\times 36 = 101.81 \text{ in}^2$$

$$s = 0.765R = 0.765\times 6 = 4.590 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Regular Polygon:



A = area n = number of sides

$\alpha = 360° \div n$ $\beta = 180° - \alpha$

$$A = \frac{nsr}{2} = \frac{ns}{2}\sqrt{R^2 - \frac{s^2}{4}}$$

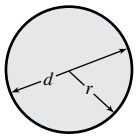
$$R = \sqrt{r^2 + \frac{s^2}{4}} \qquad r = \sqrt{R^2 - \frac{s^2}{4}} \qquad s = 2\sqrt{R^2 - r^2}$$

Example: Find the area of a polygon having 12 sides, inscribed in a circle with radius of 8 centimeters. The length of the side s is 4.141 centimeters.

$$A = \frac{ns}{2}\sqrt{R^2 - \frac{s^2}{4}} = \frac{12 \times 4.141}{2}\sqrt{8^2 - \frac{4.141^2}{4}} = 24.846\sqrt{59.713}$$

$$= 24.846 \times 7.727 = 191.98\ \text{cm}^2$$

Circle:



$$\text{Area} = A = \pi r^2 = 3.1416r^2 = 0.7854d^2$$

$$\text{Circumference} = C = 2\pi r = 6.2832r = 3.1416d$$

$$r = C \div 6.2832 = \sqrt{A \div 3.1416} = 0.564\sqrt{A}$$

$$d = C \div 3.1416 = \sqrt{A \div 0.7854} = 1.128\sqrt{A}$$

Length of arc for center angle of 1° = 0.008727d

Length of arc for center angle of n° = 0.008727nd

Example: Find area A and circumference C of a circle with a diameter of $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches.

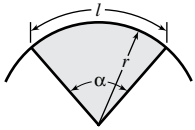
$$A = 0.7854d^2 = 0.7854 \times 2.75^2 = 0.7854 \times 2.75 \times 2.75 = 5.9396\ \text{in}^2$$

$$C = 3.1416d = 3.1416 \times 2.75 = 8.6394\ \text{in}$$

Example: The area of a circle is 16.8 in^2. Find its diameter.

$$d = 1.128\sqrt{A} = 1.128\sqrt{16.8} = 1.128 \times 4.099 = 4.624\ \text{in.}$$

Sector of a Circle:



$$\text{Length of arc} = l = \frac{3.1416\, r\, \alpha}{180} = 0.01745r\alpha = \frac{2A}{r}$$

$$\text{Area} = A = \tfrac{1}{2}rl = 0.008727\alpha r^2$$

$$\text{Central angle, in degrees} = \alpha = \frac{57.296\ l}{r}, \qquad r = \frac{2A}{l} = \frac{57.296\ l}{\alpha}$$

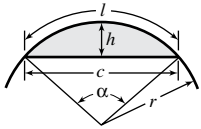
Example: The radius of a circle is 35 millimeters, and angle α of a sector of the circle is 60 degrees. Find the area of the sector and the length of arc l.

$$A = 0.008727\alpha r^2 = 0.008727 \times 60 \times 35^2 = 641.41\ \text{mm}^2 = 6.41\ \text{cm}^2$$

$$l = 0.01745r\alpha = 0.01745 \times 35 \times 60 = 36.645\ \text{mm}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Segment of a Circle:



A = area $\quad l$ = length of arc $\quad \alpha$ = angle, in degrees

$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)} \qquad A = \frac{1}{2}[rl - c(r-h)]$

$r = \dfrac{c^2+4h^2}{8h} \qquad l = 0.01745r\alpha$

$h = r - \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4r^2-c^2} = r[1-\cos(\alpha/2)] \qquad \alpha = \dfrac{57.296\ l}{r}$

See also *Segments of a Circle* starting on page 83.

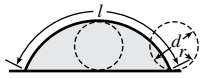
Example: The radius r is 60 inches and the height h is 8 inches. Find the length of the chord c.

$$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)} = 2\sqrt{8\times(2\times60-8)} = 2\sqrt{896} = 2\times29.93 = 59.86 \text{ in.}$$

Example: If $c = 16$, and $h = 6$ inches, what is the radius of the circle of which the segment is a part?

$$r = \frac{c^2+4h^2}{8h} = \frac{16^2+4\times6^2}{8\times6} = \frac{256+144}{48} = \frac{400}{48} = 8\frac{1}{3} \text{ in.}$$

Cycloid:



Area $= A = 3\pi r^2 = 9.4248r^2 = 2.3562d^2$
$= 3 \times$ area of generating circle

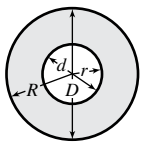
Length of cycloid $= l = 8r = 4d$

See also *Areas Enclosed by Cycloidal Curves* on page 73.

Example: The diameter of the generating circle of a cycloid is 6 inches. Find the length l of the cycloidal curve and the area enclosed between the curve and the base line.

$l = 4d = 4\times6 = 24$ in. $\qquad A = 2.3562d^2 = 2.3562\times6^2 = 84.82$ in.^{2}

Circular Ring (Annulus):



Area $= A = \pi(R^2-r^2) = 3.1416(R^2-r^2)$
$= 3.1416(R+r)(R-r)$
$= 0.7854(D^2-d^2) = 0.7854(D+d)(D-d)$

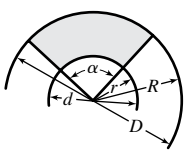
Example: Let the outside diameter $D = 12$ centimeters and the inside diameter $d = 8$ centimeters. Find the area of the ring.

$$A = 0.7854(D^2-d^2) = 0.7854(12^2-8^2) = 0.7854(144-64) = 0.7854\times80$$
$$= 62.83 \text{ cm}^2$$

By the alternative formula:

$$A = 0.7854(D+d)(D-d) = 0.7854(12+8)(12-8) = 0.7854\times20\times4$$
$$= 62.83 \text{ cm}^2$$

Sector of Circular Ring:



A = area, $\quad \alpha$ = central angle, in degrees

$A = \dfrac{\alpha\pi}{360}(R^2-r^2) = 0.00873\alpha(R^2-r^2)$

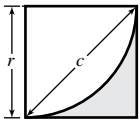
$= \dfrac{\alpha\pi}{4\times360}(D^2-d^2) = 0.00218\alpha(D^2-d^2)$

Example: Find the area, if the outside radius $R = 5$ inches, the inside radius $r = 2$ inches, and $\alpha = 72$ degrees.

$$A = 0.00873\alpha(R^2-r^2) = 0.00873\times72(5^2-2^2)$$
$$= 0.6286(25-4) = 0.6286\times21 = 13.2 \text{ in.}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spandrel or Fillet:



The shaded region is the spandrel (fillet).

$$\text{Area} = A = r^2 - \frac{\pi r^2}{4} = 0.215r^2 = 0.1075c^2$$

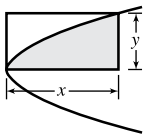
Example: Find the area of a spandrel, the radius of which is 0.7 inch.

$$A = 0.215r^2 = 0.215 \times 0.7^2 = 0.105 \text{ in}^2$$

Example: If chord c were given as 2.2 inches, what would be the area?

$$A = 0.1075c^2 = 0.1075 \times 2.2^2 = 0.520 \text{ in}^2$$

Parabola:



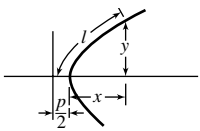
$$\text{Area} = A = \tfrac{2}{3}xy$$

The area of the shaded portion is equal to two-thirds of a rectangle which has x for its base and y for its height.

Example: Let x in the illustration be 15 centimeters, and y be 9 centimeters. Find the area of the shaded portion of the parabola.

$$A = \tfrac{2}{3}xy = \tfrac{2}{3} \times 15 \times 9 = 10 \times 9 = 90 \text{ cm}^2$$

Parabola:



$$l = \text{length of arc} = \frac{p}{2}\left[\sqrt{\frac{2x}{p}\left(1 + \frac{2x}{p}\right)} + \ln\left(\sqrt{\frac{2x}{p}} + \sqrt{1 + \frac{2x}{p}}\right)\right]$$

When x is small in proportion to y, the following is a close approximation:

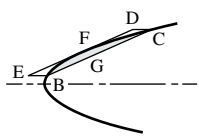
$$l = y\left[1 + \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^2 - \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^4\right] \quad \text{or} \quad l = \sqrt{y^2 + \frac{4}{3}x^2}$$

Example: If $x = 2$ feet and $y = 24$ feet, what is the approximate length l of the parabolic curve?

$$l = y\left[1 + \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^2 - \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^4\right] = 24\left[1 + \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{2}{24}\right)^2 - \frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{2}{24}\right)^4\right]$$

$$= 24 \times 1.0046 = 24.04 \text{ ft}$$

Segment of Parabola:



$$\text{Area } BFC = A = \tfrac{2}{3} \times \text{Area of parallelogram BCDE}$$

If FG is the height of the segment, measured at right angles to BC, then:

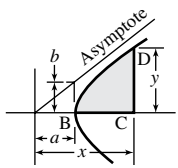
$$\text{Area of segment } BFC = \tfrac{2}{3}(BC)(FG)$$

Example: Suppose the length of the chord $BC = 19.5$ inches, and the distance between lines BC and DE, measured at right angles to BC, is 2.25 inches. Find the area of the segment.

$$\text{Area} = A = \tfrac{2}{3}(BC)(FG) = \tfrac{2}{3} \times 19.5 \times 2.25 = 29.25 \text{ in}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hyperbola:



$$\text{Area } BCD = A = \frac{xy}{2} - \frac{ab}{2}\ln\left(\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b}\right)$$

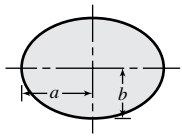
Example: The half-axes a and b are 3 and 2 inches, respectively. Find the area shown shaded in the illustration for $x = 8$ inches and $y = 5$ inches.

Inserting the known values in the formula:

$$\text{Area} = A = \frac{8 \times 5}{2} - \frac{3 \times 2}{2} \times \ln\left(\frac{8}{3} + \frac{5}{2}\right) = 20 - 3 \times \ln(5.167)$$

$$= 20 - 3 \times 1.6423 = 20 - 4.927 = 15.073 \text{ in}^2$$

Ellipse:



$$\text{Area} = A = \pi ab = 3.1416ab$$

An approximate formula for the perimeter is

$$\text{Perimeter} = P = 3.1416\sqrt{2(a^2 + b^2)}$$

A closer approximation is $P = 3.1416\sqrt{2(a^2 + b^2) - \frac{(a-b)^2}{2.2}}$

Example: The larger, or major, axis is 200 millimeters. The smaller, or minor, axis is 150 millimeters. Find the area and the approximate circumference. Here, then, $a = 100$, and $b = 75$.

$$A = 3.1416ab = 3.1416 \times 100 \times 75 = 23{,}562 \text{ mm}^2 = 235.62 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$P = 3.1416\sqrt{2(a^2 + b^2)} = 3.1416\sqrt{2(100^2 + 75^2)} = 3.1416\sqrt{2 \times 15{,}625}$$

$$= 3.1416\sqrt{31{,}250} = 3.1416 \times 176.78 = 555.37 \text{ mm} = 55.537 \text{ cm}$$

Polygons.—A *polygon* is a many-sided figure in a two-dimensional plane. A polygon is sometimes referred to as an n-gon, where n is the number of sides. Triangles are polygons with the least number of sides ($n = 3$), followed by quadrilaterals ($n = 4$), pentagons ($n = 5$), hexagons ($n = 6$), heptagons ($n = 7$), octagons ($n = 8$), and so on.

A *regular* polygon has congruent sides (all sides are of equal measure) and, hence, its interior angles are congruent. In Fig. 4a, β is the measure of each interior angle, $180 - \beta$ is the exterior angle measure at each vertex. α is a measure of the central angle. *Irregular polygons* (Fig. 4b) are polygons whose sides are not all congruent.

Both Fig. 4a and Fig. 4b show convex polygons, in which all exterior angles measure less than 180 degrees. A concave polygon has some interior angles that measure greater than 180 degrees (see Fig. 4c). All the formulas in this section concern convex regular polygons.

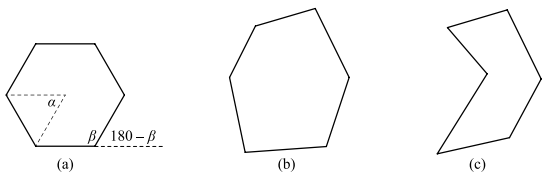
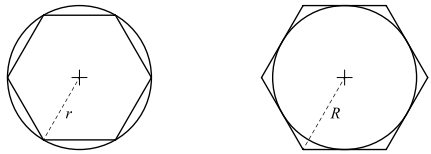


Fig. 4. Polygons: (a) Convex Regular; (b) Convex Irregular; (c) Concave Irregular.

Fig. 5 shows how a regular polygon is either *inscribed* (drawn inside) or *circumscribed* (drawn around) a circle. A polygon inscribed within a circle, as shown in Fig. 5a, is drawn so that all its vertices touch the circle. Its radius is marked r. A polygon that circumscribes a circle, as shown in Fig. 5b, is drawn so that the circle touches each of the sides of the polygon. Its radius is marked R.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



(a) (b)

Fig. 5. Hexagons: (a) Inscribed (Drawn Inside) a Circle; (b) Circumscribed (Drawn Around) a Circle.

Formulas and Table for Regular Polygons: The following formulas and table can be used to calculate area, side length, and radii of inscribed and circumscribed polygons on a circle.

$$A = \frac{nS^2 \cot \alpha}{4} = nR^2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha = nR^2 \tan \alpha, \qquad r = R \cos \alpha = \frac{S \cot \alpha}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{A \cot \alpha}{n}}$$

$$R = \frac{S}{2 \sin \alpha} = \frac{r}{\cos \alpha} = \sqrt{\frac{A}{N \sin \alpha \cos \alpha}}, \qquad S = 2R \sin \alpha = 2r \tan \alpha = 2\sqrt{\frac{A \tan \alpha}{N}}$$

Area, Length of Side, and Inscribed and Circumscribed Radii of Regular Polygons

No. of Sides, n	$\frac{A}{S^2}$	$\frac{A}{R^2}$	$\frac{A}{r^2}$	$\frac{R}{S}$	$\frac{R}{r}$	$\frac{S}{R}$	$\frac{S}{r}$	$\frac{r}{R}$	$\frac{r}{S}$
3	0.4330	1.2990	5.1962	0.5774	2.0000	1.7321	3.4641	0.5000	0.2887
4	1.0000	2.0000	4.0000	0.7071	1.4142	1.4142	2.0000	0.7071	0.5000
5	1.7205	2.3776	3.6327	0.8507	1.2361	1.1756	1.4531	0.8090	0.6882
6	2.5981	2.5981	3.4641	1.0000	1.1547	1.0000	1.1547	0.8660	0.8660
7	3.6339	2.7364	3.3710	1.1524	1.1099	0.8678	0.9631	0.9010	1.0383
8	4.8284	2.8284	3.3137	1.3066	1.0824	0.7654	0.8284	0.9239	1.2071
9	6.1818	2.8925	3.2757	1.4619	1.0642	0.6840	0.7279	0.9397	1.3737
10	7.6942	2.9389	3.2492	1.6180	1.0515	0.6180	0.6498	0.9511	1.5388
12	11.196	3.0000	3.2154	1.9319	1.0353	0.5176	0.5359	0.9659	1.8660
16	20.109	3.0615	3.1826	2.5629	1.0196	0.3902	0.3978	0.9808	2.5137
20	31.569	3.0902	3.1677	3.1962	1.0125	0.3129	0.3168	0.9877	3.1569
24	45.575	3.1058	3.1597	3.8306	1.0086	0.2611	0.2633	0.9914	3.7979
32	81.225	3.1214	3.1517	5.1011	1.0048	0.1960	0.1970	0.9952	5.0766
48	183.08	3.1326	3.1461	7.6449	1.0021	0.1308	0.1311	0.9979	7.6285
64	325.69	3.1365	3.1441	10.190	1.0012	0.0981	0.0983	0.9988	10.178

Example 1: A regular hexagon is inscribed in a circle of 6 in. diameter. Find the area and the radius of an inscribed circle. Here, $R = 3$ in. and $n = 6$. From the table, area $A = 2.5981R^2 = 2.5981 \times 9 = 23.3829$ in^2. Radius of inscribed circle, $r = 0.866R = 0.866 \times 3 = 2.598$ in.

Example 2: An octagon is inscribed in a circle of 100 mm diameter. Thus, $R = 50$ mm and $n = 8$. Find the area and radius of an inscribed circle. $A = 2.8284R^2 = 2.8284 \times 2500 = 7071$ mm^2 = 70.7 cm^2. Radius of inscribed circle, $r = 0.9239R = 09239 \times 50 = 46.195$ mm.

Example 3: Thirty-two bolts are to be equally spaced on the periphery of a 16-in. diameter bolt-circle. Find the chordal distance between the bolts. Chordal distance equals the side length S of a polygon with $n = 32$ sides and $R = 8$. Hence, $S = 0.196R = 0.196 \times 8 = 1.568$ in.

Example 4: Sixteen bolts are to be equally spaced on the periphery of a bolt-circle, 250 mm diameter. Find the chordal distance between the bolts. Chordal distance equals the side length S of a polygon with 16 sides. $R = 125$. Thus, $S = 0.3902R = 0.3902 \times 125 = 48.775$ mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Segments of a Circle.—The table that follows gives the principal formulas for dimensions of circle segments. The dimensions are illustrated in the figures on pages 79 and 84. When two of the dimensions found together in the first column are known, the other dimensions are found by using the formulas in the corresponding row. For example, if radius r and chord c are known, solve for angle α using Equation (13), then use Equations (14) and (15) to solve for h and l, respectively. In these formulas, the value of α is in degrees between 0 and 180°.

Formulas for Segments of a Circle

Given	Formulas		
α, r	$c = 2r\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)$ (1)	$h = r\left(1-\cos\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right)$ (2)	$l = \frac{\pi r\alpha}{180}$ (3)
α, c	$r = \frac{c}{2\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}$ (4)	$h = -\frac{c}{2}\tan\left(\frac{\alpha}{4}\right)$ (5)	$l = \frac{\pi c\alpha}{360\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}$ (6)
α, h	$r = \frac{h}{1-\cos\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}$ (7)	$c = \frac{2h}{\tan\left(\frac{\alpha}{4}\right)}$ (8)	$l = \frac{\pi h\alpha}{180\left(1-\cos\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right)}$ (9)
α, l	$r = \frac{180\,l}{\pi\,\alpha}$ (10)	$c = \frac{360\,l\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}{\pi\alpha}$ (11)	$h = \frac{180\,l\left(1-\cos\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)\right)}{\pi\alpha}$ (12)
r, c	$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(1-\frac{c^2}{2r^2}\right)$ (13)	$h = r-\frac{\sqrt{4r^2-c^2}}{2}$ (14)	$l = \frac{\pi}{90}r\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{c}{2r}\right)$ (15)
r, h	$\alpha = 2\cos^{-1}\left(1-\frac{h}{r}\right)$ (16)	$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)}$ (17)	$l = \frac{\pi}{90}r\cos^{-1}\left(1-\frac{h}{r}\right)$ (18)
r, l	$\alpha = \frac{180\,l}{\pi\,r}$ (19)	$c = 2r\sin\left(\frac{90\,l}{\pi R}\right)$ (20)	$h = r\left(1-\cos\left(\frac{90\,l}{\pi r}\right)\right)$ (21)
c, h	$\alpha = 4\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2h}{c}\right)$ (22)	$r = \frac{c^2+4h^2}{8h}$ (23)	$l = \pi\left(\frac{c^2+4h^2}{360h}\right)\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2h}{c}\right)$ (24)

Given	Formula To Find	Given	Formula To Find
c, l	$\frac{360\,l}{\pi\,c} = \frac{\alpha}{\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}$ (25) Solve Equation (25) for α by iteration[a], then r = Equation (10) h = Equation (5)	h, l	$\frac{180\,l}{\pi\,h} = \frac{\alpha}{1-\cos\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)}$ (26) Solve Equation (26) for α by iteration[a], then r = Equation (10) c = Equation (11)

[a] Equations (25) and (26) cannot be easily solved by ordinary means. To solve these equations, test various values of α until the left side of the equation equals the right side. For example, if given $c = 4$ and $l = 5$, the left side of Equation (25) equals 143.24, and testing various values of α reveals the right side equals 143.24 when $\alpha = 129.62°$.

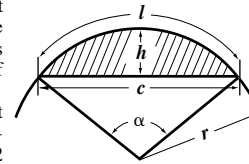
Angle α is in degrees, $0 < \alpha < 180$

Formulas for Circular Segments contributed by Manfred Brueckner.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Segments of Circles for Radius = 1.—Formulas for segments of circles are given on pages 79 and 83. When central angle α and radius *r* are known, the following table can be used to find the length of arc *l*, height of segment *h* (*x* in the discussion on page 79), chord length *c*, and segment area *A*. Column *A*/π is the ratio of segment area *A* to the area of a circle with radius *r* = 1, in percent.

When angle α and radius *r* are not known, but segment height *h* and chord length *c* are known, ratio *h*/*c* can be used to find α, *l*, and *A* by linear interpolation. Radius *r* is found by the formula on page 79 or 83. The value of *l* is then multiplied by the radius *r* and the area *A* by r^2.



Angle α can be found thus with an accuracy of about 0.001 degree; arc length *l* with an error of about 0.02 percent; and area *A* with an error ranging from about 0.02 percent for the highest entry value of *h*/*c* to about 1 percent for values of *h*/*c* of about 0.050. For lower values of *h*/*c*, and where greater accuracy is required, area *A* should be found by the formula on page 79.

Example: A 3-foot diameter cylindrical tank, mounted horizontally, contains fuel. What is the fuel depth, in inches, when the tank is 20% full? *Solution:* Locate 20% in table column *A*/π%. The depth equals *h* multiplied by the radius: *hr* = 0.50758 × 1.5 × 12 = 9.14 inches

Segments of Circles for Radius = 1 (US Customary or Metric Units)

α, Deg.	*l*	*h*	*c*	*Area A*	*A*/π %	*h*/*c*	α, Deg.	*l*	*h*	*c*	*Area A*	*A*/π %	*h*/*c*
1	0.01745	0.00004	0.01745	0.0000	0.0	0.00218	41	0.71558	0.06333	0.70041	0.0298	0.9	0.09041
2	0.03491	0.00015	0.03490	0.0000	0.0	0.00436	42	0.73304	0.06642	0.71674	0.0320	1.0	0.09267
3	0.05236	0.00034	0.05235	0.0000	0.0	0.00655	43	0.75049	0.06958	0.73300	0.0342	1.1	0.09493
4	0.06981	0.00061	0.06980	0.0000	0.0	0.00873	44	0.76794	0.07282	0.74921	0.0366	1.2	0.09719
5	0.08727	0.00095	0.08724	0.0001	0.0	0.01091	45	0.78540	0.07612	0.76537	0.0391	1.2	0.09946
6	0.10472	0.00137	0.10467	0.0001	0.0	0.01309	46	0.80285	0.07950	0.78146	0.0418	1.3	0.10173
7	0.12217	0.00187	0.12210	0.0002	0.0	0.01528	47	0.82030	0.08294	0.79750	0.0445	1.4	0.10400
8	0.13963	0.00244	0.13951	0.0002	0.0	0.01746	48	0.83776	0.08645	0.81347	0.0473	1.5	0.10628
9	0.15708	0.00308	0.15692	0.0003	0.0	0.01965	49	0.85521	0.09004	0.82939	0.0503	1.6	0.10856
10	0.17453	0.00381	0.17431	0.0004	0.0	0.02183	50	0.87266	0.09369	0.84524	0.0533	1.7	0.11085
11	0.19199	0.00460	0.19169	0.0006	0.0	0.02402	51	0.89012	0.09741	0.86102	0.0565	1.8	0.11314
12	0.20944	0.00548	0.20906	0.0008	0.0	0.02620	52	0.90757	0.10121	0.87674	0.0598	1.9	0.11543
13	0.22689	0.00643	0.22641	0.0010	0.0	0.02839	53	0.92502	0.10507	0.89240	0.0632	2.0	0.11773
14	0.24435	0.00745	0.24374	0.0012	0.0	0.03058	54	0.94248	0.10899	0.90798	0.0667	2.1	0.12004
15	0.26180	0.00856	0.26105	0.0015	0.0	0.03277	55	0.95993	0.11299	0.92350	0.0704	2.2	0.12235
16	0.27925	0.00973	0.27835	0.0018	0.1	0.03496	56	0.97738	0.11705	0.93894	0.0742	2.4	0.12466
17	0.29671	0.01098	0.29562	0.0022	0.1	0.03716	57	0.99484	0.12118	0.95432	0.0781	2.5	0.12698
18	0.31416	0.01231	0.31287	0.0026	0.1	0.03935	58	1.01229	0.12538	0.96962	0.0821	2.6	0.12931
19	0.33161	0.01371	0.33010	0.0030	0.1	0.04155	59	1.02974	0.12964	0.98485	0.0863	2.7	0.13164
20	0.34907	0.01519	0.34730	0.0035	0.1	0.04374	60	1.04720	0.13397	1.00000	0.0906	2.9	0.13397
21	0.36652	0.01675	0.36447	0.0041	0.1	0.04594	61	1.06465	0.13837	1.01508	0.0950	3.0	0.13632
22	0.38397	0.01837	0.38162	0.0047	0.1	0.04814	62	1.08210	0.14283	1.03008	0.0996	3.2	0.13866
23	0.40143	0.02008	0.39874	0.0053	0.2	0.05035	63	1.09956	0.14736	1.04500	0.1043	3.3	0.14101
24	0.41888	0.02185	0.41582	0.0061	0.2	0.05255	64	1.11701	0.15195	1.05984	0.1091	3.5	0.14337
25	0.43633	0.02370	0.43288	0.0069	0.2	0.05476	65	1.13446	0.15661	1.07460	0.1141	3.6	0.14574
26	0.45379	0.02563	0.44990	0.0077	0.2	0.05697	66	1.15192	0.16133	1.08928	0.1192	3.8	0.14811
27	0.47124	0.02763	0.46689	0.0086	0.3	0.05918	67	1.16937	0.16611	1.10387	0.1244	4.0	0.15048
28	0.48869	0.02970	0.48384	0.0096	0.3	0.06139	68	1.18682	0.17096	1.11839	0.1298	4.1	0.15287
29	0.50615	0.03185	0.50076	0.0107	0.3	0.06361	69	1.20428	0.17587	1.13281	0.1353	4.3	0.15525
30	0.52360	0.03407	0.51764	0.0118	0.4	0.06583	70	1.22173	0.18085	1.14715	0.1410	4.5	0.15765
31	0.54105	0.03637	0.53448	0.0130	0.4	0.06805	71	1.23918	0.18588	1.16141	0.1468	4.7	0.16005
32	0.55851	0.03874	0.55127	0.0143	0.5	0.07027	72	1.25664	0.19098	1.17557	0.1528	4.9	0.16246
33	0.57596	0.04118	0.56803	0.0157	0.5	0.07250	73	1.27409	0.19614	1.18965	0.1589	5.1	0.16488
34	0.59341	0.04370	0.58474	0.0171	0.5	0.07473	74	1.29154	0.20136	1.20363	0.1651	5.3	0.16730
35	0.61087	0.04628	0.60141	0.0186	0.6	0.07696	75	1.30900	0.20665	1.21752	0.1715	5.5	0.16973
36	0.62832	0.04894	0.61803	0.0203	0.6	0.07919	76	1.32645	0.21199	1.23132	0.1781	5.7	0.17216
37	0.64577	0.05168	0.63461	0.0220	0.7	0.08143	77	1.34390	0.21739	1.24503	0.1848	5.9	0.17461
38	0.66323	0.05448	0.65114	0.0238	0.8	0.08367	78	1.36136	0.22285	1.25864	0.1916	6.1	0.17706
39	0.68068	0.05736	0.66761	0.0257	0.8	0.08592	79	1.37881	0.22838	1.27216	0.1986	6.3	0.17952
40	0.69813	0.06031	0.68404	0.0277	0.9	0.08816	80	1.39626	0.23396	1.28558	0.2057	6.5	0.18199

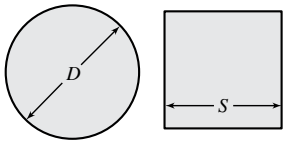
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Segments of Circles for Radius = 1 (US Customary or Metric Units) *(Continued)*

α, Deg.	*l*	*h*	*c*	*Area A*	A/π %	*h/c*	α, Deg.	*l*	*h*	*c*	*Area A*	A/π %	*h/c*
81	1.41372	0.23959	1.29890	0.2130	6.8	0.18446	131	2.28638	0.58531	1.81992	0.7658	24.4	0.32161
82	1.43117	0.24529	1.31212	0.2205	7.0	0.18694	132	2.30383	0.59326	1.82709	0.7803	24.8	0.32470
83	1.44862	0.25104	1.32524	0.2280	7.3	0.18943	133	2.32129	0.60125	1.83412	0.7950	25.3	0.32781
84	1.46608	0.25686	1.33826	0.2358	7.5	0.19193	134	2.33874	0.60927	1.84101	0.8097	25.8	0.33094
85	1.48353	0.26272	1.35118	0.2437	7.8	0.19444	135	2.35619	0.61732	1.84776	0.8245	26.2	0.33409
86	1.50098	0.26865	1.36400	0.2517	8.0	0.19696	136	2.37365	0.62539	1.85437	0.8395	26.7	0.33725
87	1.51844	0.27463	1.37671	0.2599	8.3	0.19948	137	2.39110	0.63350	1.86084	0.8546	27.2	0.34044
88	1.53589	0.28066	1.38932	0.2682	8.5	0.20201	138	2.40855	0.64163	1.86716	0.8697	27.7	0.34364
89	1.55334	0.28675	1.40182	0.2767	8.8	0.20456	139	2.42601	0.64979	1.87334	0.8850	28.2	0.34686
90	1.57080	0.29289	1.41421	0.2854	9.1	0.20711	140	2.44346	0.65798	1.87939	0.9003	28.7	0.35010
91	1.58825	0.29909	1.42650	0.2942	9.4	0.20967	141	2.46091	0.66619	1.88528	0.9158	29.2	0.35337
92	1.60570	0.30534	1.43868	0.3032	9.7	0.21224	142	2.47837	0.67443	1.89104	0.9314	29.6	0.35665
93	1.62316	0.31165	1.45075	0.3123	9.9	0.21482	143	2.49582	0.68270	1.89665	0.9470	30.1	0.35995
94	1.64061	0.31800	1.46271	0.3215	10.2	0.21741	144	2.51327	0.69098	1.90211	0.9627	30.6	0.36327
95	1.65806	0.32441	1.47455	0.3309	10.5	0.22001	145	2.53073	0.69929	1.90743	0.9786	31.1	0.36662
96	1.67552	0.33087	1.48629	0.3405	10.8	0.22261	146	2.54818	0.70763	1.91261	0.9945	31.7	0.36998
97	1.69297	0.33738	1.49791	0.3502	11.1	0.22523	147	2.56563	0.71598	1.91764	1.0105	32.2	0.37337
98	1.71042	0.34394	1.50942	0.3601	11.5	0.22786	148	2.58309	0.72436	1.92252	1.0266	32.7	0.37678
99	1.72788	0.35055	1.52081	0.3701	11.8	0.23050	149	2.60054	0.73276	1.92726	1.0428	33.2	0.38021
100	1.74533	0.35721	1.53209	0.3803	12.1	0.23315	150	2.61799	0.74118	1.93185	1.0590	33.7	0.38366
101	1.76278	0.36392	1.54325	0.3906	12.4	0.23582	151	2.63545	0.74962	1.93630	1.0753	34.2	0.38714
102	1.78024	0.37068	1.55429	0.4010	12.8	0.23849	152	2.65290	0.75808	1.94059	1.0917	34.7	0.39064
103	1.79769	0.37749	1.56522	0.4117	13.1	0.24117	153	2.67035	0.76655	1.94474	1.1082	35.3	0.39417
104	1.81514	0.38434	1.57602	0.4224	13.4	0.24387	154	2.68781	0.77505	1.94874	1.1247	35.8	0.39772
105	1.83260	0.39124	1.58671	0.4333	13.8	0.24657	155	2.70526	0.78356	1.95259	1.1413	36.3	0.40129
106	1.85005	0.39818	1.59727	0.4444	14.1	0.24929	156	2.72271	0.79209	1.95630	1.1580	36.9	0.40489
107	1.86750	0.40518	1.60771	0.4556	14.5	0.25202	157	2.74017	0.80063	1.95985	1.1747	37.4	0.40852
108	1.88496	0.41221	1.61803	0.4669	14.9	0.25476	158	2.75762	0.80919	1.96325	1.1915	37.9	0.41217
109	1.90241	0.41930	1.62823	0.4784	15.2	0.25752	159	2.77507	0.81776	1.96651	1.2084	38.5	0.41585
110	1.91986	0.42642	1.63830	0.4901	15.6	0.26028	160	2.79253	0.82635	1.96962	1.2253	39.0	0.41955
111	1.93732	0.43359	1.64825	0.5019	16.0	0.26306	161	2.80998	0.83495	1.97257	1.2422	39.5	0.42328
112	1.95477	0.44081	1.65808	0.5138	16.4	0.26585	162	2.82743	0.84357	1.97538	1.2592	40.1	0.42704
113	1.97222	0.44806	1.66777	0.5259	16.7	0.26866	163	2.84489	0.85219	1.97803	1.2763	40.6	0.43083
114	1.98968	0.45536	1.67734	0.5381	17.1	0.27148	164	2.86234	0.86083	1.98054	1.2934	41.2	0.43464
115	2.00713	0.46270	1.68678	0.5504	17.5	0.27431	165	2.87979	0.86947	1.98289	1.3105	41.7	0.43849
116	2.02458	0.47008	1.69610	0.5629	17.9	0.27715	166	2.89725	0.87813	1.98509	1.3277	42.3	0.44236
117	2.04204	0.47750	1.70528	0.5755	18.3	0.28001	167	2.91470	0.88680	1.98714	1.3449	42.8	0.44627
118	2.05949	0.48496	1.71433	0.5883	18.7	0.28289	168	2.93215	0.89547	1.98904	1.3621	43.4	0.45020
119	2.07694	0.49246	1.72326	0.6012	19.1	0.28577	169	2.94961	0.90415	1.99079	1.3794	43.9	0.45417
120	2.09440	0.50000	1.73205	0.6142	19.6	0.28868	170	2.96706	0.91284	1.99239	1.3967	44.5	0.45817
121	2.11185	0.50758	1.74071	0.6273	20.0	0.29159	171	2.98451	0.92154	1.99383	1.4140	45.0	0.46220
122	2.12930	0.51519	1.74924	0.6406	20.4	0.29452	172	3.00197	0.93024	1.99513	1.4314	45.6	0.46626
123	2.14675	0.52284	1.75763	0.6540	20.8	0.29747	173	3.01942	0.93895	1.99627	1.4488	46.1	0.47035
124	2.16421	0.53053	1.76590	0.6676	21.3	0.30043	174	3.03687	0.94766	1.99726	1.4662	46.7	0.47448
125	2.18166	0.53825	1.77402	0.6813	21.7	0.30341	175	3.05433	0.95638	1.99810	1.4836	47.2	0.47865
126	2.19911	0.54601	1.78201	0.6950	22.1	0.30640	176	3.07178	0.96510	1.99878	1.5010	47.8	0.48284
127	2.21657	0.55380	1.78987	0.7090	22.6	0.30941	177	3.08923	0.97382	1.99931	1.5184	48.3	0.48708
128	2.23402	0.56163	1.79759	0.7230	23.0	0.31243	178	3.10669	0.98255	1.99970	1.5359	48.9	0.49135
129	2.25147	0.56949	1.80517	0.7372	23.5	0.31548	179	3.12414	0.99127	1.99992	1.5533	49.4	0.49566
130	2.26893	0.57738	1.81262	0.7514	23.9	0.31854	180	3.14159	1.00000	2.00000	1.5708	50.0	0.50000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diameters of Circles and Sides of Squares of Equal Area
(US Customary or Metric Units)

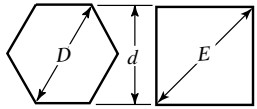


The table below will be found useful for determining the diameter of a circle of an area equal to that of a square, the side of which is known, or for determining the side of a square which has an area equal to that of a circle, the area or diameter of which is known. For example, if the diameter of a circle is 17½ inches, it is found from the table by reading across from the first column that the side of a square of the same area is 15.51 inches. And both have area 240.53 in^2.

Dia. of Circle, *D*	Side of Square, *S*	Area of Circle or Square	Dia. of Circle, *D*	Side of Square, *S*	Area of Circle or Square	Dia. of Circle, *D*	Side of Square, *S*	Area of Circle or Square
½	0.44	0.196	20½	18.17	330.06	40½	35.89	1288.25
1	0.89	0.785	21	18.61	346.36	41	36.34	1320.25
1½	1.33	1.767	21½	19.05	363.05	41½	36.78	1352.65
2	1.77	3.142	22	19.50	380.13	42	37.22	1385.44
2½	2.22	4.909	22½	19.94	397.61	42½	37.66	1418.63
3	2.66	7.069	23	20.38	415.48	43	38.11	1452.20
3½	3.10	9.621	23½	20.83	433.74	43½	38.55	1486.17
4	3.54	12.566	24	21.27	452.39	44	38.99	1520.53
4½	3.99	15.904	24½	21.71	471.44	44½	39.44	1555.28
5	4.43	19.635	25	22.16	490.87	45	39.88	1590.43
5½	4.87	23.758	25½	22.60	510.71	45½	40.32	1625.97
6	5.32	28.274	26	23.04	530.93	46	40.77	1661.90
6½	5.76	33.183	26½	23.49	551.55	46½	41.21	1698.23
7	6.20	38.485	27	23.93	572.56	47	41.65	1734.94
7½	6.65	44.179	27½	24.37	593.96	47½	42.10	1772.05
8	7.09	50.265	28	24.81	615.75	48	42.54	1809.56
8½	7.53	56.745	28½	25.26	637.94	48½	42.98	1847.45
9	7.98	63.617	29	25.70	660.52	49	43.43	1885.74
9½	8.42	70.882	29½	26.14	683.49	49½	43.87	1924.42
10	8.86	78.540	30	26.59	706.86	50	44.31	1963.50
10½	9.31	86.590	30½	27.03	730.62	50½	44.75	2002.96
11	9.75	95.033	31	27.47	754.77	51	45.20	2042.82
11½	10.19	103.87	31½	27.92	779.31	51½	45.64	2083.07
12	10.63	113.10	32	28.36	804.25	52	46.08	2123.72
12½	11.08	122.72	32½	28.80	829.58	52½	46.53	2164.75
13	11.52	132.73	33	29.25	855.30	53	46.97	2206.18
13½	11.96	143.14	33½	29.69	881.41	53½	47.41	2248.01
14	12.41	153.94	34	30.13	907.92	54	47.86	2290.22
14½	12.85	165.13	34½	30.57	934.82	54½	48.30	2332.83
15	13.29	176.71	35	31.02	962.11	55	48.74	2375.83
15½	13.74	188.69	35½	31.46	989.80	55½	49.19	2419.22
16	14.18	201.06	36	31.90	1017.88	56	49.63	2463.01
16½	14.62	213.82	36½	32.35	1046.35	56½	50.07	2507.19
17	15.07	226.98	37	32.79	1075.21	57	50.51	2551.76
17½	15.51	240.53	37½	33.23	1104.47	57½	50.96	2596.72
18	15.95	254.47	38	33.68	1134.11	58	51.40	2642.08
18½	16.40	268.80	38½	34.12	1164.16	58½	51.84	2687.83
19	16.84	283.53	39	34.56	1194.59	59	52.29	2733.97
19½	17.28	298.65	39½	35.01	1225.42	59½	52.73	2780.51
20	17.72	314.16	40	35.45	1256.64	60	53.17	2827.43

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diagonals of Squares and Hexagons.—The table below gives values of dimensions D and E described in the figures and equations that follow.



$$D = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}d = 1.154701d$$

$$E = d\sqrt{2} = 1.414214d$$

A value not given in the table can be obtained from the equations above, or by the simple addition of two or more values taken directly from the table. Further values can be obtained by shifting the decimal point.

Example 1: Find D when $d = 2\,5/16$ inches. From the table, for $d = 2$, $D = 2.3094$, and for $d = 5/16$, $D = 0.3608$. Therefore, $D = 2.3094 + 0.3608 = 2.6702$ inches.

Example 2: Find E when $d = 20.25$ millimeters. From the table, for $d = 20$, $E = 28.2843$; for $d = 0.25$, that is, $1/4$, $E = 0.3536$; Thus, $E = 28.2843 + 0.3536 = 28.6379$ millimeters.

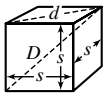
Diagonals of Squares and Hexagons (US Customary or Metric Units)

d	*D*	*E*	*d*	*D*	*E*	*d*	*D*	*E*	*d*	*D*	*E*
1/32	0.0361	0.0442	0.9	1.0392	1.2728	32	36.9504	45.2548	67	77.3650	94.7523
1/16	0.0722	0.0884	29/32	1.0464	1.2816	33	38.1051	46.6691	68	78.5197	96.1666
3/32	0.1083	0.1326	15/16	1.0825	1.3258	34	39.2598	48.0833	69	79.6744	97.5808
0.1	0.1155	0.1414	31/32	1.1186	1.3700	35	40.4145	49.4975	70	80.8291	98.9950
1/8	0.1443	0.1768	1.0	1.1547	1.4142	36	41.5692	50.9117	71	81.9838	100.409
5/32	0.1804	0.2210	2.0	2.3094	2.8284	37	42.7239	52.3259	72	83.1385	101.823
3/16	0.2165	0.2652	3.0	3.4641	4.2426	38	43.8786	53.7401	73	84.2932	103.238
0.2	0.2309	0.2828	4.0	4.6188	5.6569	39	45.0333	55.1543	74	85.4479	104.652
7/32	0.2526	0.3094	5.0	5.7735	7.0711	40	46.1880	56.5686	75	86.6026	106.066
1/4	0.2887	0.3536	6.0	6.9282	8.4853	41	47.3427	57.9828	76	87.7573	107.480
9/32	0.3248	0.3977	7.0	8.0829	9.8995	42	48.4974	59.3970	77	88.9120	108.894
0.3	0.3464	0.4243	8.0	9.2376	11.3137	43	49.6521	60.8112	78	90.0667	110.309
5/16	0.3608	0.4419	9.0	10.3923	12.7279	44	50.8068	62.2254	79	91.2214	111.723
11/32	0.3969	0.4861	10	11.5470	14.1421	45	51.9615	63.6396	80	92.3761	113.137
3/8	0.4330	0.5303	11	12.7017	15.5564	46	53.1162	65.0538	81	93.5308	114.551
0.4	0.4619	0.5657	12	13.8564	16.9706	47	54.2709	66.4681	82	94.6855	115.966
13/32	0.4691	0.5745	13	15.0111	18.3848	48	55.4256	67.8823	83	95.8402	117.380
7/16	0.5052	0.6187	14	16.1658	19.7990	49	56.5803	69.2965	84	96.9949	118.794
15/32	0.5413	0.6629	15	17.3205	21.2132	50	57.7351	70.7107	85	98.1496	120.208
0.5	0.5774	0.7071	16	18.4752	22.6274	51	58.8898	72.1249	86	99.3043	121.622
17/32	0.6134	0.7513	17	19.6299	24.0416	52	60.0445	73.5391	87	100.459	123.037
9/16	0.6495	0.7955	18	20.7846	25.4559	53	61.1992	74.9533	88	101.614	124.451
19/32	0.6856	0.8397	19	21.9393	26.8701	54	62.3539	76.3676	89	102.768	125.865
0.6	0.6928	0.8485	20	23.0940	28.2843	55	63.5086	77.7818	90	103.923	127.279
5/8	0.7217	0.8839	21	24.2487	29.6985	56	64.6633	79.1960	91	105.078	128.693
21/32	0.7578	0.9281	22	25.4034	31.1127	57	65.8180	80.6102	92	106.232	130.108
11/16	0.7939	0.9723	23	26.5581	32.5269	58	66.9727	82.0244	93	107.387	131.522
0.7	0.8083	0.9899	24	27.7128	33.9411	59	68.1274	83.4386	94	108.542	132.936
23/32	0.8299	1.0165	25	28.8675	35.3554	60	69.2821	84.8528	95	109.697	134.350
3/4	0.8660	1.0607	26	30.0222	36.7696	61	70.4368	86.2671	96	110.851	135.765
25/32	0.9021	1.1049	27	31.1769	38.1838	62	71.5915	87.6813	97	112.006	137.179
0.8	0.9238	1.1314	28	32.3316	39.5980	63	72.7462	89.0955	98	113.161	138.593
13/16	0.9382	1.1490	29	33.4863	41.0122	64	73.9009	90.5097	99	114.315	140.007
27/32	0.9743	1.1932	30	34.6410	42.4264	65	75.0556	91.9239	100	115.470	141.421
7/8	1.0104	1.2374	31	35.7957	43.8406	66	76.2103	93.3381	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Volumes of Solids

Cube:



$$\text{Diagonal of cube face} = d = s\sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{Diagonal of cube} = D = \sqrt{\frac{3d^2}{2}} = s\sqrt{3} = 1.732s$$

$$\text{Volume} = V = s^3$$

$$\text{Side } s = \sqrt[3]{V}$$

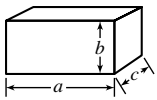
Example: The side of a cube s measures 9.5 centimeters. Find its volume.

$$\text{Volume} = V = s^3 = 9.5^3 = 9.5 \times 9.5 \times 9.5 = 857.375\,\text{cm}^3$$

Example: The volume of cube is 231 cubic centimeters. What is the length of the side?

$$s = \sqrt[3]{V} = \sqrt[3]{231} = 6.136\,\text{cm}$$

Rectangular Prism:



$$\text{Volume} = V = abc$$

$$a = \frac{V}{bc} \qquad b = \frac{V}{ac} \qquad c = \frac{V}{ab}$$

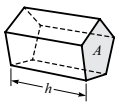
Example: In a rectangular prism, $a = 6$ in., $b = 5$ in., $c = 4$ in. Find the volume.

$$V = abc = 6 \times 5 \times 4 = 120\,\text{in}^3$$

Example: What should the height of a box be if it is to contain 25 cubic feet and if it is 4 feet long and $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet wide? Here, $a = 4$, $c = 2.5$, and $V = 25$. Then,

$$b = \text{height} = \frac{V}{ac} = \frac{25}{4 \times 2.5} = \frac{25}{10} = 2.5\,\text{ft}$$

General Right Prism:



h = edge length
A = area of end surface
$V = Ah$

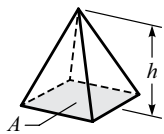
The area A of the end surface is found by the formulas for areas of plane figures on the preceding pages.

Example: A right prism having for its base a regular hexagon with a side s of 7.5 centimeters is 25 centimeters high. Find the volume.

$$\text{Area of hexagon} = A = 2.598s^2 = 2.598 \times 56.25 = 146.14\,\text{cm}^2$$

$$\text{Volume of prism} = Ah = 25 \times 146.14 = 3653.5\,\text{cm}^3$$

Right Pyramid:



$$\text{Volume} = V = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)(\text{Base area} \times h)$$

A square pyramid is pictured. In general, any right pyramid of height h, whose base is a regular, n-sided polygon of side length s has volume:

$$V = \frac{nsrh}{6} = \frac{nsh}{6}\sqrt{R^2 - \frac{s^2}{4}}$$

where r is the radius of the circle inscribed in the base, and R is the radius of the circle circumscribed on the base.

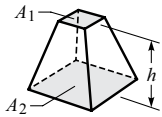
Example: A pyramid having a height of 5 feet has a base formed by a square, the sides of which are 3 feet. Find the volume.

$$\text{Area of base} = 3 \times 3 = 9 \text{ square feet}, \qquad h = 5 \text{ feet}$$

$$\text{Volume} = V = (\tfrac{1}{3})(\text{Base area} \times \text{h}) = \tfrac{1}{3} \times 9 \times 5$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Frustum of Pyramid:



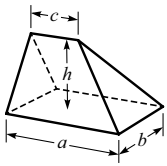
$$\text{Volume} = V = \frac{h}{3}\left(A_1 + A_2 + \sqrt{A_1 A_2}\right)$$

Example: The pyramid in the previous example is cut off 4.5 feet from the base, and the upper part removed. The sides of the rectangle forming the top surface of the frustum are, then, 1 and 1.5 feet long, respectively. Find the volume of the frustum.

$$\text{Area of top} = A_1 = 1 \times 1.5 = 1.5 \text{ ft}^2 \qquad \text{Area of base} = A_2 = 2 \times 3 = 6 \text{ ft}^2$$

$$V = \frac{4 \times 5}{3}(1.5 + 6 + \sqrt{1.5 \times 6}) = 1.5(7.5 + \sqrt{9}) = 1.5 \times 10.5 = 15.75 \text{ ft}^3$$

Wedge:



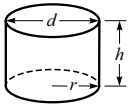
$$\text{Volume} = V = \frac{(2a + c)bh}{6}$$

A wedge has five faces, two of them triangles and three trapezoids. *Example:* Let $a = 4$ inches, $b = 3$ inches, and $c = 5$ inches. The height $h = 4.5$ inches. Find the volume in in^3 and cm^3.

$$V = \frac{(2a + c)bh}{6} = \frac{(2 \times 4 + 5) \times 3 \times 4.5}{6} = \frac{175.5}{6} = 29.25 \text{ in}^3$$

$$V = 29.25 \text{ in}^3 \times 16.387064 \frac{\text{cm}^3}{\text{in}^3} = 479.32162 \text{ cm}^3$$

Cylinder:



$$\text{Volume} = V = 3.1416r^2h = 0.7854d^2h$$

$$\text{Surface area of open-ended cylinder} = S = 6.2832rh = 3.1416dh$$

Total surface area A of closed cylinder:

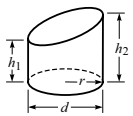
$$A = 6.2832r(r + h)$$

Example: Diameter d of a cylinder is 2.5 inches. Height h is 20 inches. Find the volume and the area of the open-ended cylindrical surface S.

$$V = 0.7854d^2h = 0.7854 \times 2.5^2 \times 20 = 0.7854 \times 6.25 \times 20 = 98.17 \text{ in}^3$$

$$S = 3.1416dh = 3.1416 \times 2.5 \times 20 = 157.08 \text{ in}^2$$

Cylinder Portion:



$$\text{Volume} = V = 1.5708r^2(h_1 + h_2)$$

$$= 0.3927d^2(h_1 + h_2)$$

$$\text{Surface area} = S = 3.1416r(h_1 + h_2)$$

$$= 1.5708d(h_1 + h_2)$$

Example: A cylinder 125 millimeters in diameter is cut off at an angle, as shown in the illustration. Dimension $h_1 = 100$ mm, and $h_2 = 150$ mm. Find the volume and the surface area S of the cylinder.

$$V = 0.3927d^2(h_1 + h_2) = 0.3927 \times 125^2 \times (100 + 150)$$

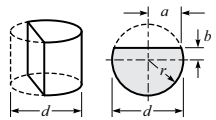
$$= 0.3927 \times 15{,}625 \times 250 = 1{,}533{,}984 \text{ mm}^3 = 1534 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$S = 1.5708d(h_1 + h_2) = 1.5708 \times 125 \times 250$$

$$= 49{,}087.5 \text{ mm}^2 = 490.9 \text{ cm}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Segment of a Cylinder:



In the formulas below, segment area A and arc length l refer to the shaded segment of the circle. The formulas of these dimensions, found on page 75, assume the central angle measure is known.

$$\text{Volume} = V = (\tfrac{2}{3}a^3 \pm b \times \text{segment area})\frac{L}{r \pm b}$$

$$\text{Surface area} = S = (ad \pm b \times \text{arc length area})\frac{L}{r \pm b}$$

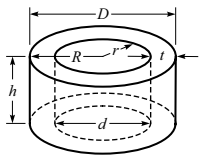
Use + when shaded segment is greater than or equal to one-half the base circle area, use – when it is less than the base circle area.

Example: Find the volume of a cylinder segment of a 2-inch high cylinder with a diameter of 5 inches when it is cut so that line AC passes through the center of the base circle—that is, the base area is a half-circle.

In this case, $b = 0$, and $a = r$; that is, $a = 2.5$ inches. Thus, ABC is a semicircle, and area $ABC = 3.1416 \times r^2 \times {}^1/_2 = 3.1416 \times (2.5)^2 \times {}^1/_2 = 9.82$ in^2.

$$V = \left(\frac{2}{3} \times 2.5^3 + 0 \times 9.82\right)\frac{2}{2.5 + 0} = \frac{2}{3} \times 15.625 \times 0.8 = 8.33 \text{ in}^3$$

Hollow Cylinder:

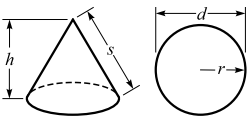


$$\text{Volume} = V = 3.1416h(R^2 - r^2) = 0.7854h(D^2 - d^2)$$
$$= 3.1416ht(2R - t) = 3.1416ht(D - t)$$
$$= 3.1416ht(2r + t) = 3.1416ht(d + t)$$
$$= 3.1416ht(R + r) = 1.5708ht(D + d)$$

Example: A cylindrical shell, 28 cm high, is 36 cm in outside diameter, and 4 cm thick. Find its volume.

$$V = 3.1416ht(D - t) = 3.1416 \times 28 \times 4(36 - 4) = 3.1416 \times 28 \times 4 \times 32$$
$$= 11{,}259.5 \text{ cm}^3$$

Cone:



$$\text{Volume} = V = \frac{3.1416r^2h}{3} = 1.0472r^2h = 0.2618d^2h$$

$$\text{Conical surface area} = A = 3.1416r\sqrt{r^2 + h^2} = 3.1416rs$$
$$= 1.5708ds$$

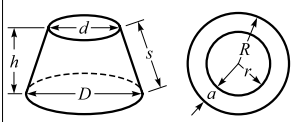
$$s = \sqrt{r^2 + h^2} = \sqrt{\frac{d^2}{4} + h^2}$$

Example: Find the volume and surface area of a cone, the base of which is a circle of 6 inches diameter and the height of which is 4 inches.

$$V = 0.2618d^2h = 0.2618 \times 6^2 \times 4 = 0.2618 \times 36 \times 4 = 37.7 \text{ in}^3$$

$$A = 3.1416r\sqrt{r^2 + h^2} = 3.1416 \times 3 \times \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 9.4248 \times \sqrt{25}$$
$$= 47.124 \text{ in}^2$$

Frustum of Cone:



V = volume A = area of conical surface

$$V = 1.0472h(R^2 + Rr + r^2) = 0.2618h(D^2 + Dd + d^2)$$

$$A = 3.1416s(R + r) = 1.5708s(D + d)$$

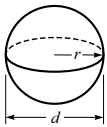
$$a = R - r \qquad s = \sqrt{a^2 + h^2} = \sqrt{(R - r)^2 + h^2}$$

Example: Find the volume of a frustum of a cone of the following dimensions: $D = 8$ centimeters; $d = 4$ centimeters; $h = 5$ centimeters.

$$V = 0.2618 \times 5(8^2 + 8 \times 4 + 4^2) = 0.2618 \times 5(64 + 32 + 16)$$
$$= 0.2618 \times 5 \times 112 = 146.61 \text{ cm}^3$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sphere:



$$\text{Volume} = V = \frac{4\pi r^3}{3} = \frac{\pi d^3}{6} = 4.1888r^3 = 0.5236d^3$$

$$\text{Surface area} = A = 4\pi r^2 = \pi d^2 = 12.5664r^2 = 3.1416d^2$$

$$r = \sqrt[3]{\frac{3V}{4\pi}} = 0.6204\sqrt[3]{V}$$

Example: Find the volume and the surface area of a sphere 6.5 centimeters diameter.

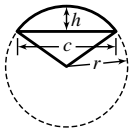
$$V = 0.5236d^3 = 0.5236 \times 6.5^3 = 0.5236 \times 6.5 \times 6.5 \times 6.5 = 143.79 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$A = 3.1416d^2 = 3.1416 \times 6.5^2 = 3.1416 \times 6.5 \times 6.5 = 132.73 \text{ cm}^2$$

Example: The volume of a sphere is 64 cubic centimeters. Find its radius.

$$r = 0.6204\sqrt[3]{64} = 0.6204 \times 4 = 2.4816 \text{ cm}$$

Spherical Sector:



$$V = \frac{2\pi r^2 h}{3} = 2.0944r^2h$$

A = total area of conical and spherical surface

$$A = 3.1416r(2h + c/2)$$

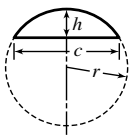
$$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)}$$

Example: Find the volume of a sector of a sphere with a 6-inch diameter ($r = 3$ inches) and 1.5-inch height h. Also find the length of chord c.

$$V = 2.0944r^2h = 2.0944 \times 3^2 \times 1.5 = 2.0944 \times 9 \times 1.5 = 28.27 \text{ in}^3$$

$$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)} = 2\sqrt{1.5(2 \times 3 - 1.5)} = 2\sqrt{6.75} = 2 \times 2.598 = 5.196 \text{ in}$$

Spherical Segment:



V = volume A = area of spherical surface

$$V = 3.1416h^2\left(r - \frac{h}{3}\right) = 3.1416h\left(\frac{c^2}{8} + \frac{h^2}{6}\right)$$

$$A = 2\pi rh = 6.2832rh = 3.1416\left(\frac{c^2}{4} + h^2\right)$$

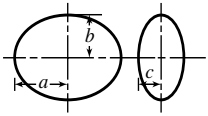
$$c = 2\sqrt{h(2r-h)} \qquad r = \frac{c^2 + 4h^2}{8h}$$

Example: A segment of a sphere has the following dimensions: $h = 50$ millimeters; $c = 125$ millimeters. Find the volume V and the radius of the sphere of which the segment is a part.

$$V = 3.1416 \times 50 \times \left(\frac{125^2}{8} + \frac{50^2}{6}\right) = 157.08 \times \left(\frac{15{,}625}{8} + \frac{2500}{6}\right) = 372{,}247 \text{ mm}^3 = 372 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$r = \frac{125^2 + 4 \times 50^2}{8 \times 50} = \frac{15{,}625 + 10{,}000}{400} = \frac{25{,}625}{400} = 64 \text{ mm}$$

Ellipsoid:



$$V = \frac{4\pi}{3}abc = 4.1888abc$$

In an ellipsoid of revolution, or spheroid, where $c = b$:

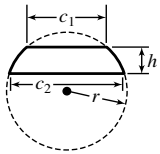
$$V = 4.1888ab^2$$

Example: Find the volume of a spheroid in which $a = 5$ in., and $b = c = 1.5$ in.

$$V = 4.1888 \times 5 \times 1.5^2 = 47.124 \text{ in}^3$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spherical Zone:



$$V = 0.5236h\left(\frac{3c_1^2}{4} + \frac{3c_2^2}{4} + h^2\right)$$

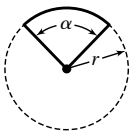
$$A = 2\pi rh = 6.2832rh = \text{area of spherical surface}$$

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{c_2^2}{4} + \left(\frac{c_2^2 - c_1^2 - 4h^2}{8h}\right)^2}$$

Example: In a spherical zone, let $c_1 = 3$; $c_2 = 4$; and $h = 1.5$ in. Find the volume.

$$V = 0.5236 \times 1.5 \times \left(\frac{3 \times 3^2}{4} + \frac{3 \times 4^2}{4} + 1.5^2\right) = 0.5236 \times 1.5 \times \left(\frac{27}{4} + \frac{48}{4} + 2.25\right) = 16.493 \text{ in}^3$$

Spherical Wedge:



V = volume A = area of spherical surface

α = center angle in degrees

$$V = \frac{\alpha}{360} \times \frac{4\pi r^3}{3} = 0.0116\alpha r^3$$

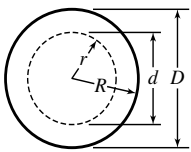
$$A = \frac{\alpha}{360} \times 4\pi r^2 = 0.0349\alpha r^2$$

Example: Find the area of the spherical surface and the volume of a wedge of a sphere. The diameter of the sphere is 100 mm, and the center angle α is 45 degrees.

$$V = 0.0116 \times 45 \times 50^3 = 0.0116 \times 45 \times 125{,}000 = 65{,}250 \text{ mm}^3 = 65.25 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$A = 0.0349 \times 45 \times 50^2 = 3926.25 \text{ mm}^2 = 39.26 \text{ cm}^2$$

Hollow Sphere:



V = volume of material used to make hollow sphere

$$V = \frac{4\pi}{3}(R^3 - r^3) = 4.1888(R^3 - r^3)$$

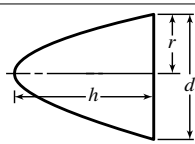
$$= \frac{\pi}{6}(D^3 - d^3) = 0.5236(D^3 - d^3)$$

Example: Find the volume of a hollow sphere, 8 in. in outside diameter, with a thickness of material of 1.5 in.

Here $R = 4$; $r = 4 - 1.5 = 2.5$.

$$V = 4.1888(4^3 - 2.5^3) = 4.1888(64 - 15.625) = 4.1888 \times 48.375 = 202.63 \text{ in}^3$$

Paraboloid:



$$\text{Volume} = V = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi r^2 h = 0.3927d^2h$$

$$\text{Area} = A = \frac{2\pi}{3p}\left[\sqrt{\left(\frac{d^2}{4} + p^2\right)^3} - p^3\right]$$

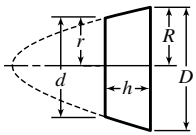
$$\text{where } p = \frac{d^2}{8h}$$

Example: Find the volume of a paraboloid in which $h = 300$ millimeters and $d = 125$ millimeters.

$$V = 0.3927d^2h = 0.3927 \times 125^2 \times 300 = 1{,}840{,}781 \text{ mm}^3 = 1{,}840.8 \text{ cm}^3$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Paraboloid Segment:



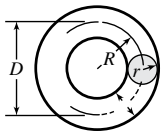
$$V = \frac{\pi}{2}h(R^2 + r^2) = 1.5708h(R^2 + r^2)$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{8}h(D^2 + d^2) = 0.3927h(D^2 + d^2)$$

Example: Find the volume of a segment of a paraboloid in which $D = 5$ in., $d = 3$ in., and $h = 6$ in.

$$V = 0.3927h(D^2 + d^2) = 0.3927 \times 6 \times (5^2 + 3^2)$$
$$= 0.3927 \times 6 \times 34 = 80.11 \text{ in}^3$$

Torus:



$$V = 2\pi^2 Rr^2 = 19.739Rr^2$$

$$= \frac{\pi^2}{4}Dd^2 = 2.4674Dd^2$$

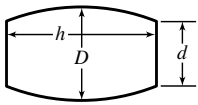
$$\text{Area of surface} = A = 4\pi^2 Rr = 39.478Rr$$

$$= \pi^2 Dd = 9.8696Dd$$

Example: Find the volume and area of surface of a torus in which $d = 1.5$ in. and $D = 5$ in.

$$V = 2.4674 \times 5 \times 1.5^2 = 2.4674 \times 5 \times 2.25 = 27.76 \text{ in}^3$$
$$A = 9.8696 \times 5 \times 1.5 = 74.022 \text{ in}^2$$

Barrel:



V = approximate volume

If the sides are bent to the arc of a circle:

$$V = \frac{1}{12}\pi h(2D^2 + d^2) = 0.262h(2D^2 + d^2)$$

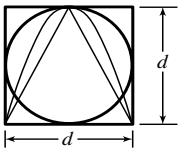
If the sides are bent to the arc of a parabola:

$$V = 0.209h(2D^2 + Dd + \tfrac{3}{4}d^2)$$

Example: Find the approximate contents of a barrel with sides bent to an arc of a circle, the inside dimensions of which are $D = 60$ cm, $d = 50$ cm, $h = 120$ cm.

$$V = 0.262h(2D^2 + d^2) = 0.262 \times 120 \times (2 \times 60^2 + 50^2)$$
$$= 0.262 \times 120 \times (7200 + 2500) = 0.262 \times 120 \times 9700$$
$$= 304{,}968 \text{ cm}^3 = 0.305 \text{ m}^3$$

Ratio of Volumes:



If d = base diameter and height of a cone, a paraboloid and a cylinder, and the diameter of a sphere, then the proportions of the volumes of these solids are to each other as follows:

$$\text{Cone : Paraboloid : Sphere : Cylinder} = \tfrac{1}{3} : \tfrac{1}{2} : \tfrac{2}{3} : 1$$

Example: Assume, as an example, that a cone, paraboloid, and cylinder each has a diameter of 2 inches, and that the height is 2 inches, and that the diameter of a sphere is 2 inches. Then the volumes, written in formula form, are as follows:

Cone Paraboloid Sphere Cylinder

$$\frac{3.1416 \times 2^2 \times 2}{12} : \frac{3.1416 \times (2p)^2 \times 2}{8} : \frac{3.1416 \times 2^3}{6} : \frac{3.1416 \times 2^2 \times 2}{4} = \tfrac{1}{3} : \tfrac{1}{2} : \tfrac{2}{3} : 1$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TRIGONOMETRY: SOLUTION OF TRIANGLES

Terminology.—A triangle is a polygon with three sides. The sum of the angle measures in any triangle in a plane is 180 degrees. The *triangle inequality* states that the sum of any two side lengths of a triangle is always greater than the length of the third side. It is not possible to construct a triangle that violates the *triangle inequality*

Triangles are either *right* or *oblique*. A right triangle has a right angle, which measures 90 degrees. Oblique triangles do not contain a right angle.

As with any polygon (see page 60), parts with equal measure are called *congruent*. Thus, a triangle with congruent sides is one whose sides have the same measure. A triangle with two congruent sides is called an *isosceles* triangle; a triangle with all three sides congruent is *equilateral* and hence *equiangular*. Each angle measures 180 degrees/3 = 60 degrees.

Two positive angles whose measures total 90 degrees are called *complementary* angles. The two acute angles in any right triangle are *complements* of each other. Two positive angles whose sum is 180 degrees are called *supplementary angles*.

An *isosceles* triangle has at least two congruent sides and angles (an equilateral triangle is also isosceles). Angles opposite the congruent sides are congruent angles. An *obtuse* triangle has one angle measuring greater than 90 degrees. An *acute* triangle has all three angles measuring less than 90 degrees; hence, an equilateral (equiangular) triangle is also acute.

Degree and Radian Angle Measure.—Two modes of measuring angles are *degree* measure and *radian* measure. 1 radian is the measure of a circle's central angle whose arc is the same length as the radius of the circle. For any size circle, 1 radian is approximately 57.3 degrees. Conversion between degree and radian measure is based on the relation $360° = 2\pi$ radians, or $180° = \pi$ radians. (π is the ratio of circumference to diameter, C/d, and is approximately 22/7 or 3.1415926. The actual value of π is an irrational number.) Degree measure is converted to its equivalent radian measure by the formula:

$$\text{Degree measure} \times \pi/180 = \text{Radian measure}$$

For example, $45° \times \pi/180 = \pi/4$.

Radian measure is converted to degree by the formula:

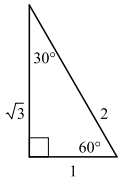
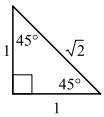
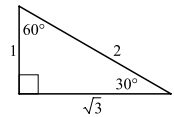
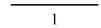
$$\text{Radian measure} \times 180/\pi = \text{Degree measure}$$

For example, $\pi/3 \times 180° = 60°$. Radian measure is actually unitless, but it is customary to write "rad" to indicate when radian measure is used. Conversions for the essential degree measures of the circle are shown in the chart on page 95.

Trigonometric Ratios of Essential Angles.—An acute angle can be any degree measure between 0° and 90°, but the trigonometric values for base angles (designated as θ in the table below the diagrams) 30°, 45°, and 60° are usually memorized. They are derived from right triangles constructed so that the shortest side has length = 1. The other dimensions follow from the geometric construction of the angles (see *Geometric Constructions* starting on page 66) and the Pythagorean theorem. The triangles and trigonometric values of these angle measures, as well as those with base angles 0° and 90° (envisioned by a horizontal and a vertical line segment, respectively) are given in the diagrams and table below. These five are the essential angles.

In the development of the essential angles, the length of the shortest side in each of the triangles is designated as 1, so by construction the other lengths follow. Derivations of the main three functions for the five angle measures is shown. Decimal values of square roots are rounded to three decimal places. In the complete trigonometry tables (Table 2a, Table 2b, and Table 2c), irrational values are carried out to six decimal places, for greater accuracy. For quick estimates, it is useful to memorize the truncated values in the table below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

				
60°-30°-90°	45°-45°-90°	30°-60°-90°	0°-90°-90°	90°-0°-90°
$\sqrt{3}^2 + 1^2 = 2^2$	$1^2 + 1^2 = \sqrt{2}^2$	$1^2 + \sqrt{3}^2 = 2^2$	$1^2 + 0^2 = 1^2$	$0^2 + 1^2 = 1^2$
Base angle = 60°	Base angle = 45°	Base angle = 30°	Base angle = 0°	Base angle = 90°
$\sin 60 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 0.866$	$\sin 45 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \approx 0.707$	$\sin 30 = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$	$\sin 0 = \frac{0}{1} = 0$	$\sin 90 = \frac{1}{1} = 1$
$\cos 60 = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$	$\cos 45 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \approx 0.707$	$\cos 30 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 0.866$	$\cos 0 = \frac{1}{1} = 1$	$\cos 90 = \frac{0}{1} = 0$
$\tan 60 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} \approx 1.732$	$\tan 45 = \frac{1}{1} = 1$	$\tan 30 = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$	$\tan 0 = \frac{0}{1} = 0$	$\tan 90 = \frac{1}{0}$ UND

Note: Base angles are designated as θ in the table below. The values are approximated to three decimal places. If more accuracy is needed, then calculator values carried out further can be used.

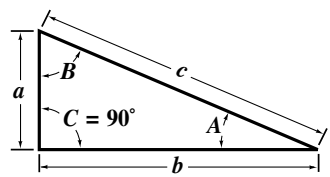
Angle θ, degrees	Angle θ, radians	sin θ	cos θ	tan θ	csc θ	sec θ	cot θ
0	0	0	1	0	UND	1	UND
30	π/6	$\frac{1}{2} = 0.5$	$\sqrt{3}/2 \approx 0.866$	$1/\sqrt{3} \approx 0.577$	2	$2/\sqrt{3} \approx 1.155$	$\sqrt{3}/1 \approx 1.732$
45	π/4	$1/\sqrt{2} \approx 0.707$	$1/\sqrt{2} \approx 0.707$	1	$\sqrt{2} \approx 1.414$	$\sqrt{2} \approx 1.414$	1
60	π/3	$\sqrt{3}/2 \approx 0.866$	$\frac{1}{2} = 0.5$	$\sqrt{3}/1 \approx 1.732$	$2/\sqrt{3} \approx 1.155$	2	$1/\sqrt{3} \approx 0.577$
90	π/2	1	0	UND	1	UND	0

Note: UND = undefined

Functions of Angles

Right Triangle Ratios.—Trigonometry is the branch of mathematics that addresses the relations of the sides and angles of triangles and the resulting functions of angles. The properties of trigonometry are derived, however, from the relationships of angles and sides in the *right* triangle, as pictured here.

In a right triangle, the 90° angle, *C*, is opposite the longest side, *c*, the *hypotenuse*. Since the sum of angle measures in any triangle is 180°, the sum of the two acute angles is 90°. The shorter sides, *a* and *b*, are called the *legs*. They are opposite to angles *A* and *B*, respectively. By the Pythagorean theorem, the sum of the squares of the legs is equal to the square of the hypotenuse; that is,



$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Referring to the figure at the bottom of page 95, the ratios of the sides of a right triangle with respect to angle A are named *sine* A, *cosine* A, and *tangent* A (abbreviated sin A, sin A, and tan A). Ratios and reciprocal ratios, named *cosecant* A, *secant* A, and *cotangent* A (abbreviated csc$A$, sec$A$, and cot$A$) are defined as:

$$\sin A = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{c} \qquad \csc A = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{opposite}} = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{1}{\sin A}$$

$$\cos A = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{c} \qquad \sec A = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{adjacent}} = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{1}{\cos A}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}} = \frac{a}{b} \qquad \cot A = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{opposite}} = \frac{b}{a} = \frac{1}{\tan A}$$

Similar ratios are defined for angle B:

$$\sin B = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{b}{c} \qquad \csc B = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{opposite}} = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{1}{\sin B}$$

$$\cos B = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{a}{c} \qquad \sec B = \frac{\text{hypotenuse}}{\text{adjacent}} = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{1}{\cos B}$$

$$\tan B = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}} = \frac{b}{a} \qquad \cot B = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{opposite}} = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{\tan B}$$

Thus, in a given right triangle, $\sin A = \cos B$, $\cos A = \sin B$, $\tan A = \cot B$. Similarly, $\csc A = \sec B$, $\sec A = \csc B$, $\cot a = \tan B$.

Law of Sines.—In any triangle, if a, b, and c are the sides, and A, B, and C their opposite angles, respectively, then:

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C} \quad \text{so that:}$$

$$a = \frac{b \sin A}{\sin B} \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{c \sin A}{\sin C}$$

$$b = \frac{a \sin B}{\sin A} \quad \text{or} \quad b = \frac{c \sin B}{\sin C}$$

$$c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A} \quad \text{or} \quad c = \frac{b \sin C}{\sin B}$$

Law of Cosines.—In any triangle, if a, b and c are the sides and A, B, and C are the opposite angles, respectively, then:

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

The sine and cosine laws together with the proposition that the sum of the measures of the three angles is 180 degrees are the basis of all formulas relating to the solution of triangles.

Formulas and examples for the solution of right-angle and oblique-angle triangles, arranged in tabular form, are given on the following pages.

Trigonometric Identities.—It is possible to express trigonometric ratios in terms of other ratios by way of trigonometric identities. For example, $\sin(A + B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B$. It may be helpful to use an identity to quickly evaluate a trigonometric function, as shown by the examples given below the trigonometric identities and formulas derived from them.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Reciprocal Identities:

$$\tan A = \frac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \frac{1}{\cot A} \qquad \sec A = \frac{1}{\cos A} \qquad \csc A = \frac{1}{\sin A}$$

Negative-Angle Identities:

$$\sin(-A) = -\sin A \qquad \cos(-A) = \cos A \qquad \tan(-A) = -\tan A$$

Cofunction Identities:

$$\sin(90 - A) = \cos A \qquad \tan(90 - A) = \cot A \qquad \sec(90 - A) = \csc A$$
$$\cos(90 - A) = \sin A \qquad \cot(90 - A) = \tan A \qquad \csc(90 - A) = \sec A$$

Pythagorean Identities:

$$\sin^2 A + \cos^2 A = 1 \qquad 1 + \tan^2 A = \sec^2 A \qquad 1 + \cot^2 A = \csc^2 A$$

Sum- and Difference-of-Angles Formulas:

$$\sin(A + B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B \qquad \sin(A - B) = \sin A \cos B - \cos A \sin B$$
$$\cos(A + B) = \cos A \cos B - \sin A \sin B \qquad \cos(A - B) = \cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B$$
$$\tan(A + B) = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{1 - \tan A \tan B} \qquad \tan(A - B) = \frac{\tan A - \tan B}{1 + \tan A \tan B}$$
$$\cot(A + B) = \frac{\cot A \cot B - 1}{\cot B + \cot A} \qquad \cot(A - B) = \frac{\cot A \cot B + 1}{\cot B - \cot A}$$

Double-Angle Formulas:

$$\cos(2A) = \cos^2 A - \sin^2 A = 2\cos^2 A - 1 = 1 - 2\sin^2 A$$
$$\sin(2A) = 2\sin A \cos A \qquad \tan(2A) = \frac{2\tan A}{1 - \tan^2 A} = \frac{2}{\cot A - \tan A}$$

Half-Angle Formulas:

$$\sin(A/2) = \pm\sqrt{(1 - \cos A)/2} \qquad \cos(A/2) = \pm\sqrt{(1 + \cos A)/2}$$
$$\tan(A/2) = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos A}{1 + \cos A}} = \frac{1 - \cos A}{\sin A} = \frac{\sin A}{1 + \cos A}$$

Product-to-Sum Formulas:

$$\sin A \cos B = \tfrac{1}{2}[\sin(A + B) + \sin(A - B)]$$
$$\cos A \cos B = \tfrac{1}{2}[\cos(A + B) + \cos(A - B)]$$
$$\sin A \sin B = \tfrac{1}{2}[\cos(A - B) - \cos(A + B)]$$
$$\tan A \tan B = \frac{\tan A + \tan B}{\cot A + \cot B}$$

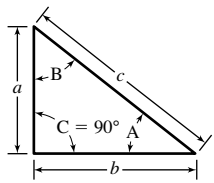
Sum and Difference of Functions Formulas:

$$\sin A + \sin B = 2\sin\left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{A - B}{2}\right) \qquad \tan A + \tan B = \frac{\sin(A + B)}{\cos A \cos B}$$
$$\sin A - \sin B = 2\sin\left(\frac{A - B}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right) \qquad \tan A - \tan B = \frac{\sin(A - B)}{\cos A \cos B}$$
$$\cos A + \cos B = 2\cos\left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right)\cos\frac{(A - B)}{2} \qquad \cot A + \cot B = \frac{\sin(B + A)}{\sin A \sin B}$$
$$\cos A - \cos B = 2\sin\left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{A - B}{2}\right) \qquad \cot A - \cot B = \frac{\sin(B - A)}{\sin A \sin B}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution of Right Triangles

Right triangles (one angle measures 90°) are the easiest to "solve" (that is, to find the missing sides or angles), thanks to the Pythagorean theorem and right triangle ratios.



The figure to the left shows right triangle *ABC*. Sides opposite corresponding angles are labeled a, b, c. The formulas in the table are for finding an unknown side or angle from given information as shown. There are several ways to solve for the missing dimension through one of the three basic trigonometric functions.

Right angle C is always known (90°), thus, $A = 90 - B$ and $B = 90 - A$.

Sides and Angle Known	Formulas for Sides, Angles to be Found		
Sides a and b	$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$	$A = \tan^{-1}(a/b)$	$B = 90° - A$
Side a, hypotenuse c	$b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}$	$A = \sin^{-1}(a/c)$ or $A = \cos^{-1}(b/c)$	$B = 90° - A$
Side b, hypotenuse c	$a = \sqrt{c^2 - b^2}$	$B = \sin^{-1}(b/c)$ or $B = \cos^{-1}(a/c)$	$A = 90° - B$
Hypotenuse c, angle B	$b = c \sin B$ or $a = c \cos B$	$a = c \cos B$ or $b = c \sin B$	$A = 90° - B$
Hypotenuse c, angle A	$b = c \cos A$ or $a = c \sin A$	$a = c \sin A$ or $b = c \cos A$	$B = 90° - A$
Side b, angle B	$c = \frac{b}{\sin B}$ or $c = \frac{a}{\cos B}$	$a = \frac{b}{\tan B}$	$A = 90° - B$
Side b, angle A	$c = \frac{b}{\cos A}$ or $c = \frac{a}{\sin A}$	$a = b \tan A$	$B = 90° - A$
Side a, angle B	$c = \frac{a}{\cos B}$	$b = a \tan B$	$A = 90° - B$
Side a, angle A	$c = \frac{a}{\sin A}$	$b = \frac{a}{\tan A}$	$B = 90° - A$

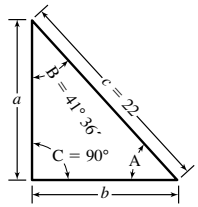
The solutions of triangles—both right and oblique—rely not only on the Pythagorean theorem and the laws of cosines and of sines, but also on correct use of the trigonometry

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tables, either when given an angle and seeking a trigonometric ratio, or "in reverse," when given a ratio (side lengths) and seeking an angle. A full explanation of trigonometric functions and the use of their tables begins on page 105.

Solution and Examples of Right Triangles (US Customary or Metric Units)

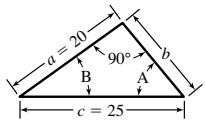
Examples below show angle measure further divided into units of minutes (′) and seconds (″). 1° = 60′; 1′ = 60″, rather than decimal parts.



Hypotenuse and One Acute Angle Known

$c = 22$ inches; $B = 41° 36′$

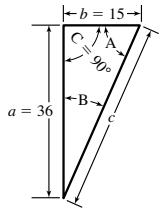
$$a = c\cos B = 22 \times \cos 41°36′ = 22 \times 0.74780$$
$$= 16.4516 \text{ in.}$$
$$b = c\sin B = 22 \times \sin 41°36′ = 22 \times 0.66393$$
$$= 14.6065 \text{ in.}$$
$$A = 90° - B = 90° - 41°36′ = 48°24′$$



Hypotenuse and One Side Known

$c = 25$ centimeters; $a = 20$ centimeters

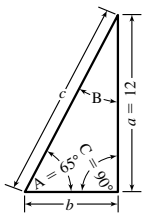
$$b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2} = \sqrt{25^2 - 20^2} = \sqrt{625 - 400}$$
$$= \sqrt{225} = 15 \text{ cm}$$
$$\sin A = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{20}{25} = 0.8$$
$$\text{Hence, } A = \sin^{-1}(0.8) = 53°8′$$
$$B = 90° - A = 90° - 53°8′ = 36°52′$$



Two Sides Known

$a = 36$ mm; $b = 15$ mm

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{36^2 + 15^2} = \sqrt{1296 + 225}$$
$$= \sqrt{1521} = 39 \text{ mm}$$
$$\tan A = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{36}{15} = 2.4$$
$$\text{Hence, } A = \tan^{-1}(2.4) = 67°23′$$
$$B = 90° - A = 90° - 67°23′ = 22°37′$$



One Side and One Angle Known

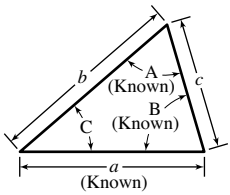
$a = 12$ meters; $A = 65°$

$$c = \frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{12}{\sin 65°} = \frac{12}{0.90631} = 13.2405 \text{ m}$$
$$b = \frac{a}{\tan A} = 12 \times \cot 65° = 12 \times 0.46631$$
$$= 5.5957 \text{ m}$$
$$B = 90° - A = 90° - 65° = 25°$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution and Examples of Oblique Triangles (US Customary or Metric Units)

One Side and Two Excluded (Not Between) Angles Known (Law of Sines):



One Side and Two Excluded Angles Known

If side a, angle A opposite it, and angle B, are known:

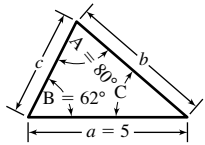
$$C = 180° - (A + B)$$

$$b = \frac{a \sin B}{\sin A} \qquad c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A}$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{ab \sin C}{2}$$

If angles B and C are known, but not A, then

$$A = 180 - (B + C).$$



Side and Angles Known

Example: $a = 5$ cm; $A = 80°$; $B = 62°$

$$C = 180° - (80° + 62°) = 180° - 142° = 38°$$

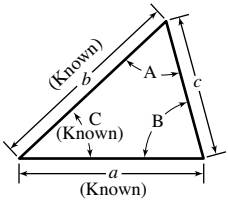
$$b = \frac{a \sin B}{\sin A} = \frac{5 \times \sin 62°}{\sin 80°} = \frac{5 \times 0.88295}{0.98481}$$

$$= 4.483 \text{ cm}$$

$$c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A} = \frac{5 \times \sin 38°}{\sin 80°} = \frac{5 \times 0.61566}{0.98481}$$

$$= 3.126 \text{ cm}$$

Two Sides and Included Angle Known:



Two Sides and One Included Angle Known

If sides a and b, and angle C between them are known:

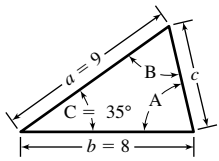
$$\tan A = \frac{a \sin C}{b - (a \cos C)}, \text{ so } A = \tan^{-1} \frac{a \sin C}{b - (a \cos C)}$$

$$B = 180° - (A + C) \qquad c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A}$$

Side c may also be found directly as below:

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - (2ab \cos C)}$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{ab \sin C}{2}$$



Sides and Angle Known

Example: $a = 9$ inches; $b = 8$ inches; $C = 35°$

$$\tan A = \frac{a \sin C}{b - (a \cos C)} = \frac{9 \times \sin 35°}{8 - (9 \times \cos 35°)}$$

$$= \frac{9 \times 0.57358}{8 - (9 \times 0.81915)} = \frac{5.16222}{0.62765} = 8.22468$$

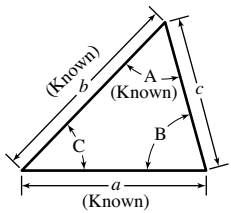
Hence, $A = \tan^{-1}(8.22468) = 83°4'$

$$B = 180° - (A + C) = 180° - 118°4' = 61°56'$$

$$c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A} = \frac{9 \times 0.57358}{0.99269} = 5.2 \text{ inches}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Two Sides and the Angle Opposite One of the Sides Known:



Two Sides and Angle Opposite One Side Known

If angle A, opposite side a, and other side b are known:

$$\sin B = \frac{b \sin A}{a} \qquad C = 180° - (A + B)$$

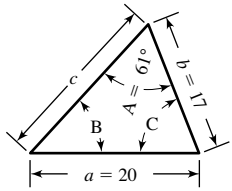
$$c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A} \qquad \text{Area} = \frac{ab \sin C}{2}$$

If $B > A$ but $< 90°$, a second solution, B_2, C_2, c_2, exists:

$$B_2 = 180° - B, \quad C_2 = 180° - (A + B_2)$$

$$c_2 = (a \sin C_2)/\sin A, \quad \text{area} = (ab \sin C_2)/2$$

If $a \geq b \sin A$, then only the first solution exists.
If $a < b \sin A$, then no solution exists.



Sides and Angle Known

Example: $a = 20$ cm; $b = 17$ cm; $A = 61°$

$$\sin B = \frac{b \sin A}{a} = \frac{17 \times \sin 61°}{20}$$

$$= \frac{17 \times 0.87462}{20} = 0.74343$$

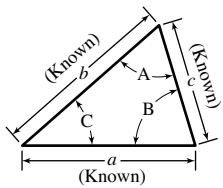
Hence, $B = \sin^{-1}(0.74343) = 48°1'$

$$C = 180° - (A + B) = 180° - 109°1' = 70°59'$$

$$c = \frac{a \sin C}{\sin A} = \frac{20 \times \sin 70°59'}{\sin 61°} = \frac{20 \times 0.94542}{0.87462}$$

$$= 21.62 \text{ cm}$$

All Three Sides Known:

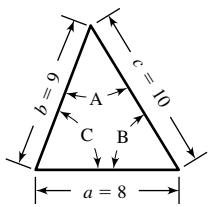


All Three Sides Known

If all three sides a, b, and c are known, then any angle can be found:

$$\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc} \qquad \sin B = \frac{b \sin A}{a}$$

$$C = 180° - (A + B) \qquad \text{Area} = \frac{ab \sin C}{2}$$



Sides Known

Example: $a = 8$ in.; $b = 9$ in.; $c = 10$ in.

$$\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc} = \frac{9^2 + 10^2 - 8^2}{2 \times 9 \times 10}$$

$$= \frac{81 + 100 - 64}{180} = \frac{117}{180} = 0.65000$$

Hence, $A = \cos^{-1}(0.65000) = 49°27'$

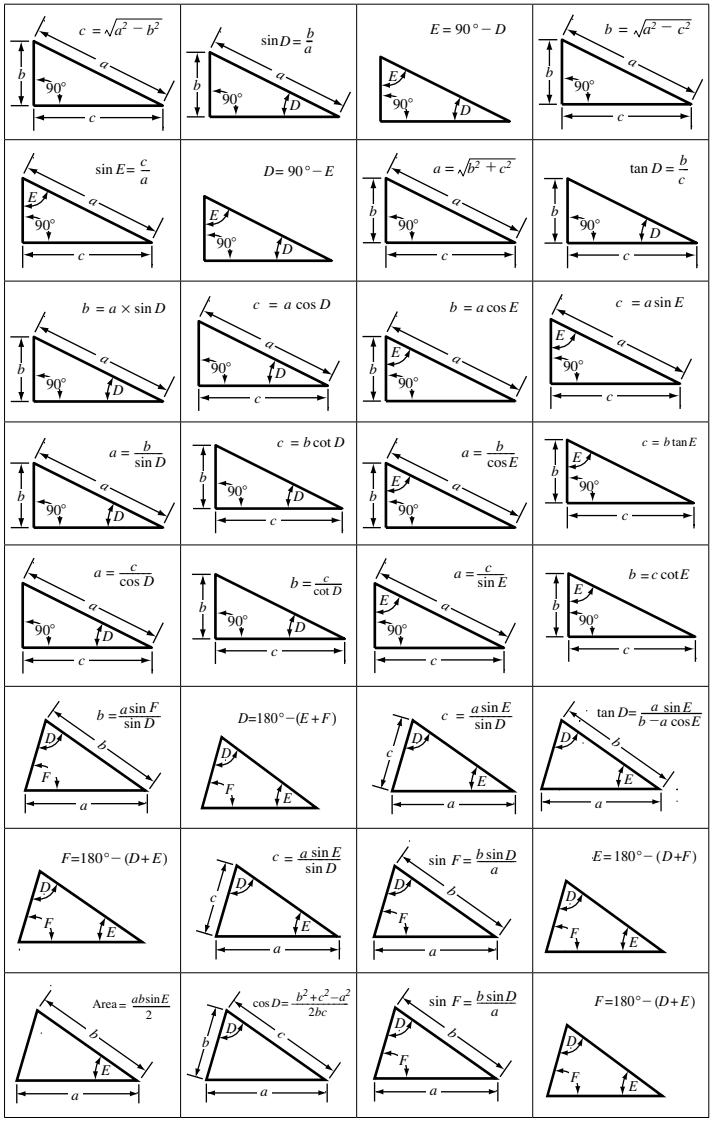
$$\sin B = \frac{b \sin A}{a} = \frac{9 \times 0.75984}{8} = 0.85482$$

Hence, $B = \sin^{-1}(0.85482) = 58°44'$

$$C = 180° - (A + B) = 180° - 108°11' = 71°49'$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rapid Solution of Right and Oblique Triangles


$c = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$
$\sin D = \frac{b}{a}$
$E = 90° - D$
$b = \sqrt{a^2 - c^2}$
$\sin E = \frac{c}{a}$
$D = 90° - E$
$a = \sqrt{b^2 + c^2}$
$\tan D = \frac{b}{c}$
$b = a \times \sin D$
$c = a \cos D$
$b = a \cos E$
$c = a \sin E$
$a = \frac{b}{\sin D}$
$c = b \cot D$
$a = \frac{b}{\cos E}$
$c = b \tan E$
$a = \frac{c}{\cos D}$
$b = \frac{c}{\cot D}$
$a = \frac{c}{\sin E}$
$b = c \cot E$
$b = \frac{a \sin F}{\sin D}$
$D = 180° - (E + F)$
$c = \frac{a \sin E}{\sin D}$
$\tan D = \frac{a \sin E}{b - a \cos E}$
$F = 180° - (D + E)$
$c = \frac{a \sin E}{\sin D}$
$\sin F = \frac{b \sin D}{a}$
$E = 180° - (D + F)$
Area $= \frac{ab \sin E}{2}$
$\cos D = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$
$\sin F = \frac{b \sin D}{a}$
$F = 180° - (D + E)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Conversion Tables of Angular Measure.—The accompanying tables of degrees, minutes, and seconds into radians; radians into degrees, minutes, and seconds; radians into degrees and decimals of a degree; and minutes and seconds into decimals of a degree and vice versa facilitate the conversion of measurements.

Example 1: The "Degrees, Minutes, and Seconds into Radians" table is used to find the number of radians in 324 degrees, 25 minutes, 13 seconds as follows:

300 degrees	=	5.235988 radians
20 degrees	=	0.349066 radian
4 degrees	=	0.069813 radian
25 minutes	=	0.007272 radian
13 seconds	=	0.000063 radian
324°25′13″	=	5.662202 radians

Example 2: The "Radians into Degrees and Decimals of a Degree," and "Radians into Degrees, Minutes and Seconds" tables are used to find the number of decimal degrees or degrees, minutes and seconds in 0.734 radian as follows:

0.7	radian = 40.1070 degrees	0.7	radian = 40°6′25″
0.03	radian = 1.7189 degrees	0.03	radian = 1°43′8″
0.004	radian = 0.2292 degree	0.004	radian = 0°13′45″
0.734	radian = 42.0551 degrees	0.734	radian = 41°62′78″ or 42°3′18″

Degrees, Minutes, and Seconds into Radians (Based on 180 degrees = π radians)

Degrees into Radians

Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.
1000	17.453293	100	1.745329	10	0.174533	1	0.017453	0.1	0.001745	0.01	0.000175
2000	34.906585	200	3.490659	20	0.349066	2	0.034907	0.2	0.003491	0.02	0.000349
3000	52.359878	300	5.235988	30	0.523599	3	0.052360	0.3	0.005236	0.03	0.000524
4000	69.813170	400	6.981317	40	0.698132	4	0.069813	0.4	0.006981	0.04	0.000698
5000	87.266463	500	8.726646	50	0.872665	5	0.087266	0.5	0.008727	0.05	0.000873
6000	104.719755	600	10.471976	60	1.047198	6	0.104720	0.6	0.010472	0.06	0.001047
7000	122.173048	700	12.217305	70	1.221730	7	0.122173	0.7	0.012217	0.07	0.001222
8000	139.626340	800	13.962634	80	1.396263	8	0.139626	0.8	0.013963	0.08	0.001396
9000	157.079633	900	15.707963	90	1.570796	9	0.157080	0.9	0.015708	0.09	0.001571
10000	174.532925	1000	17.453293	100	1.745329	10	0.174533	1.0	0.017453	0.10	0.001745

Minutes into Radians

Min.	Rad.	Min.	Rad.	Min.	Rad.	Min.	Rad.	Min.	Rad.	Min.	Rad.
1	0.000291	11	0.003200	21	0.006109	31	0.009018	41	0.011926	51	0.014835
2	0.000582	12	0.003491	22	0.006400	32	0.009308	42	0.012217	52	0.015126
3	0.000873	13	0.003782	23	0.006690	33	0.009599	43	0.012508	53	0.015417
4	0.001164	14	0.004072	24	0.006981	34	0.009890	44	0.012799	54	0.015708
5	0.001454	15	0.004363	25	0.007272	35	0.010181	45	0.013090	55	0.015999
6	0.001745	16	0.004654	26	0.007563	36	0.010472	46	0.013381	56	0.016290
7	0.002036	17	0.004945	27	0.007854	37	0.010763	47	0.013672	57	0.016581
8	0.002327	18	0.005236	28	0.008145	38	0.011054	48	0.013963	58	0.016872
9	0.002618	19	0.005527	29	0.008436	39	0.011345	49	0.014254	59	0.017162
10	0.002909	20	0.005818	30	0.008727	40	0.011636	50	0.014544	60	0.017453

Seconds into Radians

Sec.	Rad.	Sec.	Rad.	Sec.	Rad.	Sec.	Rad.	Sec.	Rad.	Sec.	Rad.
1	0.000005	11	0.000053	21	0.000102	31	0.000150	41	0.000199	51	0.000247
2	0.000010	12	0.000058	22	0.000107	32	0.000155	42	0.000204	52	0.000252
3	0.000015	13	0.000063	23	0.000112	33	0.000160	43	0.000208	53	0.000257
4	0.000019	14	0.000068	24	0.000116	34	0.000165	44	0.000213	54	0.000262
5	0.000024	15	0.000073	25	0.000121	35	0.000170	45	0.000218	55	0.000267
6	0.000029	16	0.000078	26	0.000126	36	0.000175	46	0.000223	56	0.000271
7	0.000034	17	0.000082	27	0.000131	37	0.000179	47	0.000228	57	0.000276
8	0.000039	18	0.000087	28	0.000136	38	0.000184	48	0.000233	58	0.000281
9	0.000044	19	0.000092	29	0.000141	39	0.000189	49	0.000238	59	0.000286
10	0.000048	20	0.000097	30	0.000145	40	0.000194	50	0.000242	60	0.000291

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Radians into Degrees and Decimals of a Degree

(Based on π radians = 180 degrees)

Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.	Rad.	Deg.
10	572.9578	1	57.2958	0.1	5.7296	0.01	0.5730	0.001	0.0573	0.0001	0.0057
20	1145.9156	2	114.5916	0.2	11.4592	0.02	1.1459	0.002	0.1146	0.0002	0.0115
30	1718.8734	3	171.8873	0.3	17.1887	0.03	1.7189	0.003	0.1719	0.0003	0.0172
40	2291.8312	4	229.1831	0.4	22.9183	0.04	2.2918	0.004	0.2292	0.0004	0.0229
50	2864.7890	5	286.4789	0.5	28.6479	0.05	2.8648	0.005	0.2865	0.0005	0.0286
60	3437.7468	6	343.7747	0.6	34.3775	0.06	3.4377	0.006	0.3438	0.0006	0.0344
70	4010.7046	7	401.0705	0.7	40.1070	0.07	4.0107	0.007	0.4011	0.0007	0.0401
80	4583.6624	8	458.3662	0.8	45.8366	0.08	4.5837	0.008	0.4584	0.0008	0.0458
90	5156.6202	9	515.6620	0.9	51.5662	0.09	5.1566	0.009	0.5157	0.0009	0.0516
100	5729.5780	10	572.9578	1.0	57.2958	0.10	5.7296	0.010	0.5730	0.0010	0.0573

Radians into Degrees, Minutes, and Seconds

(Based on π radians = 180 degrees)

Rad.	Angle	Rad.	Angle	Rad.	Angle	Rad.	Angle	Rad.	Angle	Rad.	Angle
10	572°57′28″	1	57°17′45″	0.1	5°43′46″	0.01	0°34′23″	0.001	0°3′26″	0.0001	0°0′21″
20	1145°54′56″	2	114°35′30″	0.2	11°27′33″	0.02	1°8′45″	0.002	0°6′53″	0.0002	0°0′41″
30	1718°52′24″	3	171°53′14″	0.3	17°11′19″	0.03	1°43′8″	0.003	0°10′19″	0.0003	0°1′2″
40	2291°49′52″	4	229°10′59″	0.4	22°55′6″	0.04	2°17′31″	0.004	0°13′45″	0.0004	0°1′23″
50	2864°47′20″	5	286°28′44″	0.5	28°38′52″	0.05	2°51′53″	0.005	0°17′11″	0.0005	0°1′43″
60	3437°44′48″	6	343°46′29″	0.6	34°22′39″	0.06	3°26′16″	0.006	0°20′38″	0.0006	0°2′4″
70	4010°42′16″	7	401°4′14″	0.7	40°6′25″	0.07	4°0′39″	0.007	0°24′4″	0.0007	0°2′24″
80	4583°39′44″	8	458°21′58″	0.8	45°50′12″	0.08	4°35′1″	0.008	0°27′30″	0.0008	0°2′45″
90	5156°37′13″	9	515°39′43″	0.9	51°33′58″	0.09	5°9′24″	0.009	0°30′56″	0.0009	0°3′6″
100	5729°34′41″	10	572°57′28″	1.0	57°17′45″	0.10	5°43′46″	0.010	0°34′23″	0.0010	0°3′26″

Minutes and Seconds into Decimal of a Degree and Vice Versa

(Based on 1 second = 0.00027778 degree)

Minutes into Decimals of a Degree						Seconds into Decimals of a Degree					
Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Sec.	Deg.	Sec.	Deg.	Sec.	Deg.
1	0.0167	21	0.3500	41	0.6833	1	0.0003	21	0.0058	41	0.0114
2	0.0333	22	0.3667	42	0.7000	2	0.0006	22	0.0061	42	0.0117
3	0.0500	23	0.3833	43	0.7167	3	0.0008	23	0.0064	43	0.0119
4	0.0667	24	0.4000	44	0.7333	4	0.0011	24	0.0067	44	0.0122
5	0.0833	25	0.4167	45	0.7500	5	0.0014	25	0.0069	45	0.0125
6	0.1000	26	0.4333	46	0.7667	6	0.0017	26	0.0072	46	0.0128
7	0.1167	27	0.4500	47	0.7833	7	0.0019	27	0.0075	47	0.0131
8	0.1333	28	0.4667	48	0.8000	8	0.0022	28	0.0078	48	0.0133
9	0.1500	29	0.4833	49	0.8167	9	0.0025	29	0.0081	49	0.0136
10	0.1667	30	0.5000	50	0.8333	10	0.0028	30	0.0083	50	0.0139
11	0.1833	31	0.5167	51	0.8500	11	0.0031	31	0.0086	51	0.0142
12	0.2000	32	0.5333	52	0.8667	12	0.0033	32	0.0089	52	0.0144
13	0.2167	33	0.5500	53	0.8833	13	0.0036	33	0.0092	53	0.0147
14	0.2333	34	0.5667	54	0.9000	14	0.0039	34	0.0094	54	0.0150
15	0.2500	35	0.5833	55	0.9167	15	0.0042	35	0.0097	55	0.0153
16	0.2667	36	0.6000	56	0.9333	16	0.0044	36	0.0100	56	0.0156
17	0.2833	37	0.6167	57	0.9500	17	0.0047	37	0.0103	57	0.0158
18	0.3000	38	0.6333	58	0.9667	18	0.0050	38	0.0106	58	0.0161
19	0.3167	39	0.6500	59	0.9833	19	0.0053	39	0.0108	59	0.0164
20	0.3333	40	0.6667	60	1.0000	20	0.0056	40	0.0111	60	0.0167

Example 3: Convert 11′37″ to decimals of a degree. From the "Min. into Dec. Deg." table, 11′ = 0.1833 degree. From the "Sec. into Dec. Deg." table, 37″ = 0.0103 degree. Adding, 11′37″ = 0.1833 + 0.0103 = 0.1936 degree.

Example 4: Convert 0.1234 degree to minutes and seconds. From the "Min. into Dec. Deg." table, 0.1167 degree = 7′. Subtracting 0.1167 from 0.1234 gives 0.0067. From the "Sec. into Dec. Deg." table, 0.0067 = 24″ so that 0.1234 = 7′24″.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Trigonometric Functions.—Like algebraic functions, trigonometric functions define a relationship between input values (angle measure, expressed in radians) and output values (the trigonometric ratios associated with the angles). Recalling function notation, $y = f(x)$ (see *ALGEBRA* on page 24), the main trigonometric functions are: $f(x) = \sin x$, $f(x) = \cos x$, and $f(x) = \tan x$. The trigonometric graphs are derived from the points on the unit circle (circle of radius = 1) "translated" onto the (x, y)-coordinate system. Because the radius is 1, $\cos\theta = x/1 = x$, and $\sin\theta = y/1 = y$. Thus, the rectangular coordinate ordered pair (x, y) on the unit circle corresponds to the trigonometric coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$.

Possible confusion arises from the different roles of x and y in the two graphs. On the unit circle (Fig. 1), x and y are the coordinates of the points that correspond to the adjacent (cosine) and opposite (sine) sides of the right triangle with radius 1. But on the function graphs (Fig. 2a), x is the *angle measure*, the same as θ, and y is the *value* of the function being plotted. So, "sin x" is the same as "sin θ." Angle measure is marked in radians (*not degrees*). The graphs of $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ are seen in the figure on the same set of axes (Fig. 2a). $y = \tan x$ is graphed on its own set of axes (Fig. 2b).

The *domain* of a trigonometric function is the set of angle measures for which the function is defined. The domain of both $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ is the set of all real numbers, since it makes sense to substitute any angle—positive or negative—into these functions. The answer is always a real number. Negative angles indicate an angle measured clockwise from the horizontal, whereas a positive angle (the usual situation) is measured counterclockwise. The domain of $y = \tan x$, however, does not include the odd multiples of $\pi/2$, since $\tan x = \sin x/\cos x$, and so, when $\cos x = 0$, $\tan x$ is undefined. This happens at $\pm\pi/2$, $\pm 3\pi/2$, $\pm 5\pi/2$, . . . As Fig. 2b shows, the tangent function approaches the dotted lines increasingly closer, never meeting them.

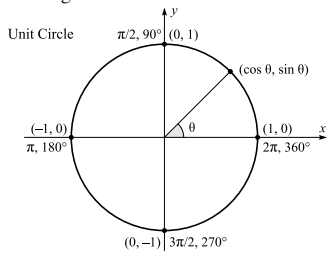


Fig. 1. The Unit Circle, which Gives the Sine and Cosine Relationship for All Angle Measures.

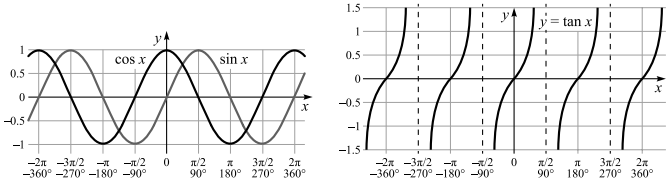


Fig. 2. (a) Graph of $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$; (b) Graph of $y = \tan x$.
Note: For any real number x, $\sin x$ (for example) is defined to be $\sin(x \text{ radians})$. Equivalent degree measures are shown here for reference.

The signs of the three main trigonometric functions (positive or negative) are shown in the diagram at the top of page 106. The names of the positive-signed functions of angles that lie in a particular quadrant are shown. All the functions are positive in the first, only $\sin x$ in the second, only $\tan x$ in the third, and only $\cos x$ is positive in the fourth. The mnemonic device "ASTC" for "All Students Take Calculus" is a simple way to remember the signs. $\csc x$, $\sec x$, and $\cot x$ have the same signs as their respective reciprocal functions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sin	All
Tan	Cos

Fig. 3. Signs of the Three Main Trigonometric Functions

Fig. 3 shows the values of angles and ratios on the unit circle in great detail, as well as the signs of the functions in each of the four quadrants. Radian and degree measure are also marked off.

The figure also shows the sign (+ or –) and the values of trigonometric functions for angles in each of the four quadrants, 0 to 90, 90 to 180, 180 to 270, and 270 to 360 degrees. A π radian is approximately 3.14, and 2π is approximately 6.3 radian measure, as the completed circle indicates. The corresponding degree measures are marked as well, as are the pure radian equivalents. The chart indicates, for example, that all the functions are positive for angles between 0 and 90 degrees. This is because x and y are both positive in the first quadrant, and all the trigonometric ratios are therefore also positive. In the same way, the cotangent of an angle between 180 and 270 degrees is positive and has a value between infinity and 0; in other words, the cotangent for 180 degrees is infinitely large and then the cotangent gradually decreases for increasing angles, so that the cotangent for 270 degrees equals 0. The cosine, tangent, and cotangent for angles between 90 and 180 degrees are negative, although they have the same absolute values as their respective angles from 0 to 90 degrees. Negative trigonometric values are preceded by a minus sign; thus, $\tan 123° 20' = -1.5204$.

Inverse Trigonometric Functions: If the value of the sides of a triangle are known but an angle is unknown, the trigonometric function inverse is used to work backwards to find the angle measure. Inverse trigonometric functions are known by either the prefix "arc" before the name, or by the superscript –1 after the name. The notation is not to be confused with the meaning of a negative exponent.

Trigonometric functions and their inverses are shown below. The roles of x and y are reversed in the inverse functions: x is the ratio given and y is the angle measure that is sought:

Function	*Inverse Function*
$y = \sin x$	$y = \arcsin x$, or $y = \sin^{-1} x$
$y = \cos x$	$y = \arccos x$, or $y = \cos^{-1} x$
$y = \tan x$	$y = \arctan x$, or $y = \tan^{-1} x$

The value of the angle that corresponds to the ratio is intended. Any angle can be found using the inverse trig function and relying on trig tables or a calculator. The examples give a few of the essential, familiar ratios for which the angles are readily known.

Examples: Given $\sin x = 1$, $\arcsin(1)$, or $\sin^{-1}(1) = 90°$, or $\pi/2$.
Given $\cos x = 0.866$, $\arccos(0.866)$, or $\cos^{-1}(0.866) = 60°$, or $\pi/3$.
Given $\tan x = 1$, $\arctan(1)$, or $\tan^{-1}(1) = 45°$, or $\pi/4$.

Trigonometry Tables.—Table 2a, Table 2b, and Table 2c, starting on page 108, contain the values of the sine, cosine, tangent, and cotangent functions of angles from 0 to 90 degrees. Commonly referred to as "trig tables," these values also are accessible on standard scientific calculators. Function values for all other angles can be obtained from the trig tables by applying the rules for signs of trigonometric functions and the useful relationships among angles given in the following. Secant and cosecant functions can be found from $\sec A = 1/\cos A$ and $\csc A = 1/\sin A$.

The trig tables are divided by a double line. The body of each half table consists of four labeled columns of data between the columns that contain the angles. The angles left of the data increase moving down the table, and angles right of the data increase moving up the table. Column labels above the data identify the trig functions for angles listed in the left column of each half table. Columns labels below the data are for angles listed in the right column of each half table. To find the value of a function for a particular angle, first the angle is located in the table, then the appropriate function label across the top or bottom row of the table is located. At the intersection of the angle row and label column is the function value. Angles on opposite sides of each table are complementary angles (i.e.,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

their sum is 90°) and are related (see *Cofunction Identities:*, page 97). For example, sin 10° = cos 80° and cos 10° = sin 80°. Expanded trig tables are also available in the *ADDITIONAL* material in the *Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition*.

Angle measures greater than 90 degrees are converted to their *reference angle* (that is, its angle equivalent) before a trigonometric value can be found. If the angle θ is between 90 and 180, its reference angle is 180 – θ; if θ is between 180 and 270, then θ – 180 is its reference angle; and if it is between 270 and 360 degrees, 360 – θ is its acute angle equivalent. To determine trigonometric values of functions of angles greater than 90°, subtract 90, 180, 270, or 360 from the angle to get the reference angle less than 90° and use Table 1, *Useful Relationships Among Angles*, to find the equivalent first-quadrant function and angle to look up in the trig tables.

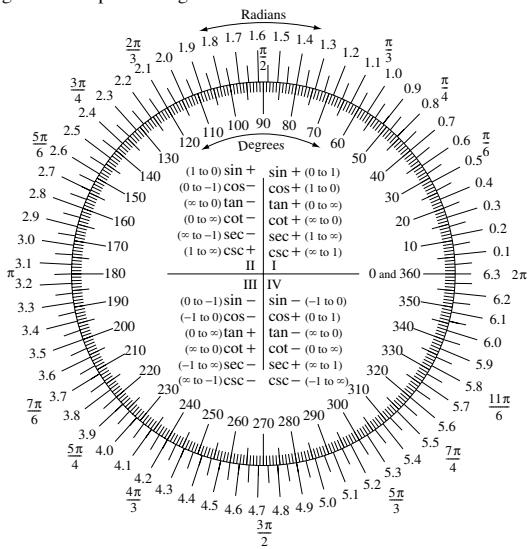

Radians
Degrees
(1 to 0) sin +
(0 to –1) cos –
(∞ to 0) tan –
(0 to ∞) cot –
(∞ to –1) sec –
(1 to ∞) csc +
sin + (0 to 1)
cos + (1 to 0)
tan + (0 to ∞)
cot + (∞ to 0)
sec + (1 to ∞)
csc + (∞ to 1)
II
I
III
IV
(0 to –1) sin –
(–1 to 0) cos –
(0 to ∞) tan +
(∞ to 0) cot +
(–1 to ∞) sec –
(∞ to –1) csc –
sin – (–1 to 0)
cos + (0 to 1)
tan – (∞ to 0)
cot – (0 to ∞)
sec + (∞ to 1)
csc – (–1 to ∞)
0 and 360

Fig. 4. Signs of Trigonometric Functions, Fractions of π, and Degree-Radian Conversion

Table 1. Useful Relationships Among Angles

Angle Function	θ	–θ	90° ± θ	180° ± θ	270° ± θ	360° ± θ
sine	sin θ	–sin θ	+cos θ	∓sin θ	–cos θ	±sin θ
cosine	cos θ	+cos θ	∓sin θ	–cos θ	±sin θ	+cos θ
tangent	tan θ	–tan θ	∓cot θ	±tan θ	∓cot θ	±tan θ
cotangent	cot θ	–cot θ	∓tan θ	±cot θ	∓tan θ	±cot θ
secant	sec θ	+sec θ	∓csc θ	–sec θ	±csc θ	+sec θ
cosecant	csc θ	–csc θ	+sec θ	∓csc θ	–sec θ	±csc θ

Examples: cos (270° – θ) = –sin θ; tan (90° + θ) = –cot θ.

Example: Find the cosine of 336°40′. Fig. 4 shows that the cosine of every angle in Quadrant IV (270° to 360°) is positive. To find the angle and trig function to use when entering the trig table, subtract 270 from 336 to get cos 336°40′ = cos (270° + 66°40′) and then find the intersection of the "cos row" and the 270 ± θ column in Table 1. Because cos (270 ± θ) in the fourth quadrant is equal to ± sin θ in the first quadrant, find sin 66°40′ in the trig table. Therefore, cos 336°40′ = sin 66°40′ = 0.918216.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Trigonometric Values of Angles from 0° to 15° and 75° to 90°

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
0° 0′	0.000000	1.000000	0.000000	—	**90° 0′**	**7° 30′**	0.130526	0.991445	0.131652	7.595754	**82° 30′**
10	0.002909	0.999996	0.002909	343.7737	**50**	**40**	0.133410	0.991061	0.134613	7.428706	**20**
20	0.005818	0.999983	0.005818	171.8854	**40**	**50**	0.136292	0.990669	0.137576	7.268725	**10**
30	0.008727	0.999962	0.008727	114.5887	**30**	**8° 0′**	0.139173	0.990268	0.140541	7.115370	**82° 0′**
40	0.011635	0.999932	0.011636	85.93979	**20**	**10**	0.142053	0.989859	0.143508	6.968234	**50**
50	0.014544	0.999894	0.014545	68.75009	**10**	**20**	0.144932	0.989442	0.146478	6.826944	**40**
1° 0′	0.017452	0.999848	0.017455	57.28996	**89° 0′**	**30**	0.147809	0.989016	0.149451	6.691156	**30**
10	0.020361	0.999793	0.020365	49.10388	**50**	**40**	0.150686	0.988582	0.152426	6.560554	**20**
20	0.023269	0.999729	0.023275	42.96408	**40**	**50**	0.153561	0.988139	0.155404	6.434843	**10**
30	0.026177	0.999657	0.026186	38.18846	**30**	**9° 0′**	0.156434	0.987688	0.158384	6.313752	**81° 0′**
40	0.029085	0.999577	0.029097	34.36777	**20**	**10**	0.159307	0.987229	0.161368	6.197028	**50**
50	0.031992	0.999488	0.032009	31.24158	**10**	**20**	0.162178	0.986762	0.164354	6.084438	**40**
2° 0′	0.034899	0.999391	0.034921	28.63625	**88° 0′**	**30**	0.165048	0.986286	0.167343	5.975764	**30**
10	0.037806	0.999285	0.037834	26.43160	**50**	**40**	0.167916	0.985801	0.170334	5.870804	**20**
20	0.040713	0.999171	0.040747	24.54176	**40**	**50**	0.170783	0.985309	0.173329	5.769369	**10**
30	0.043619	0.999048	0.043661	22.90377	**30**	**10° 0′**	0.173648	0.984808	0.176327	5.671282	**80° 0′**
40	0.046525	0.998917	0.046576	21.47040	**20**	**10**	0.176512	0.984298	0.179328	5.576379	**50**
50	0.049431	0.998778	0.049491	20.20555	**10**	**20**	0.179375	0.983781	0.182332	5.484505	**40**
3° 0′	0.052336	0.998630	0.052408	19.08114	**87° 0′**	**30**	0.182236	0.983255	0.185339	5.395517	**30**
10	0.055241	0.998473	0.055325	18.07498	**50**	**40**	0.185095	0.982721	0.188349	5.309279	**20**
20	0.058145	0.998308	0.058243	17.16934	**40**	**50**	0.187953	0.982178	0.191363	5.225665	**10**
30	0.061049	0.998135	0.061163	16.34986	**30**	**11° 0′**	0.190809	0.981627	0.194380	5.144554	**79° 0′**
40	0.063952	0.997953	0.064083	15.60478	**20**	**10**	0.193664	0.981068	0.197401	5.065835	**50**
50	0.066854	0.997763	0.067004	14.92442	**10**	**20**	0.196517	0.980500	0.200425	4.989403	**40**
4° 0′	0.069756	0.997564	0.069927	14.30067	**86° 0′**	**30**	0.199368	0.979925	0.203452	4.915157	**30**
10	0.072658	0.997357	0.072851	13.72674	**50**	**40**	0.202218	0.979341	0.206483	4.843005	**20**
20	0.075559	0.997141	0.075775	13.19688	**40**	**50**	0.205065	0.978748	0.209518	4.772857	**10**
30	0.078459	0.996917	0.078702	12.70621	**30**	**12° 0′**	0.207912	0.978148	0.212557	4.704630	**78° 0′**
40	0.081359	0.996685	0.081629	12.25051	**20**	**10**	0.210756	0.977539	0.215599	4.638246	**50**
50	0.084258	0.996444	0.084558	11.82617	**10**	**20**	0.213599	0.976921	0.218645	4.573629	**40**
5° 0′	0.087156	0.996195	0.087489	11.43005	**85° 0′**	**30**	0.216440	0.976296	0.221695	4.510709	**30**
10	0.090053	0.995937	0.090421	11.05943	**50**	**40**	0.219279	0.975662	0.224748	4.449418	**20**
20	0.092950	0.995671	0.093354	10.71191	**40**	**50**	0.222116	0.975020	0.227806	4.389694	**10**
30	0.095846	0.995396	0.096289	10.38540	**30**	**13° 0′**	0.224951	0.974370	0.230868	4.331476	**77° 0′**
40	0.098741	0.995113	0.099226	10.07803	**20**	**10**	0.227784	0.973712	0.233934	4.274707	**50**
50	0.101635	0.994822	0.102164	9.788173	**10**	**20**	0.230616	0.973045	0.237004	4.219332	**40**
6° 0′	0.104528	0.994522	0.105104	9.514364	**84° 0′**	**30**	0.233445	0.972370	0.240079	4.165300	**30**
10	0.107421	0.994214	0.108046	9.255304	**50**	**40**	0.236273	0.971687	0.243157	4.112561	**20**
20	0.110313	0.993897	0.110990	9.009826	**40**	**50**	0.239098	0.970995	0.246241	4.061070	**10**
30	0.113203	0.993572	0.113936	8.776887	**30**	**14° 0′**	0.241922	0.970296	0.249328	4.010781	**76° 0′**
40	0.116093	0.993238	0.116883	8.555547	**20**	**10**	0.244743	0.969588	0.252420	3.961652	**50**
50	0.118982	0.992896	0.119833	8.344956	**10**	**20**	0.247563	0.968872	0.255516	3.913642	**40**
7° 0′	0.121869	0.992546	0.122785	8.144346	**83° 0′**	**30**	0.250380	0.968148	0.258618	3.866713	**30**
10	0.124756	0.992187	0.125738	7.953022	**50**	**40**	0.253195	0.967415	0.261723	3.820828	**20**
20	0.127642	0.991820	0.128694	7.770351	**40**	**50**	0.256008	0.966675	0.264834	3.775952	**10**
7° 30′	0.130526	0.991445	0.131652	7.595754	**82° 30**	**15° 0′**	0.258819	0.965926	0.267949	3.732051	**75° 0′**
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

For angles 0° to 15° 0′ (angles found in a column to the left of the data), use the column labels at the top of the table; for angles 75° to 90° 0′ (angles found in a column to the right of the data), use the column labels at the bottom of the table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Trigonometric Values of Angles from 15° to 30° and 60° to 75°

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
15° 0′	0.258819	0.965926	0.267949	3.732051	**75° 0′**	**22° 30′**	0.382683	0.923880	0.414214	2.414214	**67° 30**
10	0.261628	0.965169	0.271069	3.689093	**50**	**40**	0.385369	0.922762	0.417626	2.394489	**20**
20	0.264434	0.964404	0.274194	3.647047	**40**	**50**	0.388052	0.921638	0.421046	2.375037	**10**
30	0.267238	0.963630	0.277325	3.605884	**30**	**23° 0′**	0.390731	0.920505	0.424475	2.355852	**67° 0′**
40	0.270040	0.962849	0.280460	3.565575	**20**	**10**	0.393407	0.919364	0.427912	2.336929	**50**
50	0.272840	0.962059	0.283600	3.526094	**10**	**20**	0.396080	0.918216	0.431358	2.318261	**40**
16° 0′	0.275637	0.961262	0.286745	3.487414	**74° 0′**	**30**	0.398749	0.917060	0.434812	2.299843	**30**
10	0.278432	0.960456	0.289896	3.449512	**50**	**40**	0.401415	0.915896	0.438276	2.281669	**20**
20	0.281225	0.959642	0.293052	3.412363	**40**	**50**	0.404078	0.914725	0.441748	2.263736	**10**
30	0.284015	0.958820	0.296213	3.375943	**30**	**24° 0′**	0.406737	0.913545	0.445229	2.246037	**66° 0′**
40	0.286803	0.957990	0.299380	3.340233	**20**	**10**	0.409392	0.912358	0.448719	2.228568	**50**
50	0.289589	0.957151	0.302553	3.305209	**10**	**20**	0.412045	0.911164	0.452218	2.211323	**40**
17° 0′	0.292372	0.956305	0.305731	3.270853	**73° 0′**	**30**	0.414693	0.909961	0.455726	2.194300	**30**
10	0.295152	0.955450	0.308914	3.237144	**50**	**40**	0.417338	0.908751	0.459244	2.177492	**20**
20	0.297930	0.954588	0.312104	3.204064	**40**	**50**	0.419980	0.907533	0.462771	2.160896	**10**
30	0.300706	0.953717	0.315299	3.171595	**30**	**25° 0′**	0.422618	0.906308	0.466308	2.144507	**65° 0′**
40	0.303479	0.952838	0.318500	3.139719	**20**	**10**	0.425253	0.905075	0.469854	2.128321	**50**
50	0.306249	0.951951	0.321707	3.108421	**10**	**20**	0.427884	0.903834	0.473410	2.112335	**40**
18° 0′	0.309017	0.951057	0.324920	3.077684	**72° 0′**	**30**	0.430511	0.902585	0.476976	2.096544	**30**
10	0.311782	0.950154	0.328139	3.047492	**50**	**40**	0.433135	0.901329	0.480551	2.080944	**20**
20	0.314545	0.949243	0.331364	3.017830	**40**	**50**	0.435755	0.900065	0.484137	2.065532	**10**
30	0.317305	0.948324	0.334595	2.988685	**30**	**26° 0′**	0.438371	0.898794	0.487733	2.050304	**64° 0′**
40	0.320062	0.947397	0.337833	2.960042	**20**	**10**	0.440984	0.897515	0.491339	2.035256	**50**
50	0.322816	0.946462	0.341077	2.931888	**10**	**20**	0.443593	0.896229	0.494955	2.020386	**40**
19° 0′	0.325568	0.945519	0.344328	2.904211	**71° 0′**	**30**	0.446198	0.894934	0.498582	2.005690	**30**
10	0.328317	0.944568	0.347585	2.876997	**50**	**40**	0.448799	0.893633	0.502219	1.991164	**20**
20	0.331063	0.943609	0.350848	2.850235	**40**	**50**	0.451397	0.892323	0.505867	1.976805	**10**
30	0.333807	0.942641	0.354119	2.823913	**30**	**27° 0′**	0.453990	0.891007	0.509525	1.962611	**63° 0′**
40	0.336547	0.941666	0.357396	2.798020	**20**	**10**	0.456580	0.889682	0.513195	1.948577	**50**
50	0.339285	0.940684	0.360679	2.772545	**10**	**20**	0.459166	0.888350	0.516875	1.934702	**40**
20° 0′	0.342020	0.939693	0.363970	2.747477	**70° 0′**	**30**	0.461749	0.887011	0.520567	1.920982	**30**
10	0.344752	0.938694	0.367268	2.722808	**50**	**40**	0.464327	0.885664	0.524270	1.907415	**20**
20	0.347481	0.937687	0.370573	2.698525	**40**	**50**	0.466901	0.884309	0.527984	1.893997	**10**
30	0.350207	0.936672	0.373885	2.674621	**30**	**28° 0′**	0.469472	0.882948	0.531709	1.880726	**62° 0′**
40	0.352931	0.935650	0.377204	2.651087	**20**	**10**	0.472038	0.881578	0.535446	1.867600	**50**
50	0.355651	0.934619	0.380530	2.627912	**10**	**20**	0.474600	0.880201	0.539195	1.854616	**40**
21° 0′	0.358368	0.933580	0.383864	2.605089	**69° 0′**	**30**	0.477159	0.878817	0.542956	1.841771	**30**
10	0.361082	0.932534	0.387205	2.582609	**50**	**40**	0.479713	0.877425	0.546728	1.829063	**20**
20	0.363793	0.931480	0.390554	2.560465	**40**	**50**	0.482263	0.876026	0.550513	1.816489	**10**
30	0.366501	0.930418	0.393910	2.538648	**30**	**29° 0′**	0.484810	0.874620	0.554309	1.804048	**61° 0′**
40	0.369206	0.929348	0.397275	2.517151	**20**	**10**	0.487352	0.873206	0.558118	1.791736	**50**
50	0.371908	0.928270	0.400646	2.495966	**10**	**20**	0.489890	0.871784	0.561939	1.779552	**40**
22° 0′	0.374607	0.927184	0.404026	2.475087	**68° 0′**	**30**	0.492424	0.870356	0.565773	1.767494	**30**
10	0.377302	0.926090	0.407414	2.454506	**50**	**40**	0.494953	0.868920	0.569619	1.755559	**20**
20	0.379994	0.924989	0.410810	2.434217	**40**	**50**	0.497479	0.867476	0.573478	1.743745	**10**
22° 30	0.382683	0.923880	0.414214	2.414214	**67° 30**	**30° 0′**	0.500000	0.866025	0.577350	1.732051	**60° 0′**
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

For angles 15° to 30° 0′ (angles found in a column to the left of the data), use the column labels at the top of the table; for angles 60° to 75° 0′ (angles found in a column to the right of the data), use the column labels at the bottom of the table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. Trigonometric Values of Angles from 30° to 60°

Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot		Angle	sin	cos	tan	cot	
30° 0′	0.500000	0.866025	0.577350	1.732051	**60° 0′**	**37° 30′**	0.608761	0.793353	0.767327	1.303225	**52° 30′**
10	0.502517	0.864567	0.581235	1.720474	**50**	**40**	0.611067	0.791579	0.771959	1.295406	**20**
20	0.505030	0.863102	0.585134	1.709012	**40**	**50**	0.613367	0.789798	0.776612	1.287645	**10**
30	0.507538	0.861629	0.589045	1.697663	**30**	**38° 0′**	0.615661	0.788011	0.781286	1.279942	**52° 0′**
40	0.510043	0.860149	0.592970	1.686426	**20**	**10**	0.617951	0.786217	0.785981	1.272296	**50**
50	0.512543	0.858662	0.596908	1.675299	**10**	**20**	0.620235	0.784416	0.790697	1.264706	**40**
31° 0′	0.515038	0.857167	0.600861	1.664279	**59° 0′**	**30**	0.622515	0.782608	0.795436	1.257172	**30**
10	0.517529	0.855665	0.604827	1.653366	**50**	**40**	0.624789	0.780794	0.800196	1.249693	**20**
20	0.520016	0.854156	0.608807	1.642558	**40**	**50**	0.627057	0.778973	0.804979	1.242268	**10**
30	0.522499	0.852640	0.612801	1.631852	**30**	**39° 0′**	0.629320	0.777146	0.809784	1.234897	**51° 0′**
40	0.524977	0.851117	0.616809	1.621247	**20**	**10**	0.631578	0.775312	0.814612	1.227579	**50**
50	0.527450	0.849586	0.620832	1.610742	**10**	**20**	0.633831	0.773472	0.819463	1.220312	**40**
32° 0′	0.529919	0.848048	0.624869	1.600335	**58° 0′**	**30**	0.636078	0.771625	0.824336	1.213097	**30**
10	0.532384	0.846503	0.628921	1.590024	**50**	**40**	0.638320	0.769771	0.829234	1.205933	**20**
20	0.534844	0.844951	0.632988	1.579808	**40**	**50**	0.640557	0.767911	0.834155	1.198818	**10**
30	0.537300	0.843391	0.637070	1.569686	**30**	**40° 0′**	0.642788	0.766044	0.839100	1.191754	**50° 0′**
40	0.539751	0.841825	0.641167	1.559655	**20**	**10**	0.645013	0.764171	0.844069	1.184738	**50**
50	0.542197	0.840251	0.645280	1.549715	**10**	**20**	0.647233	0.762292	0.849062	1.177770	**40**
33° 0′	0.544639	0.838671	0.649408	1.539865	**57° 0′**	**30**	0.649448	0.760406	0.854081	1.170850	**30**
10	0.547076	0.837083	0.653551	1.530102	**50**	**40**	0.651657	0.758514	0.859124	1.163976	**20**
20	0.549509	0.835488	0.657710	1.520426	**40**	**50**	0.653861	0.756615	0.864193	1.157149	**10**
30	0.551937	0.833886	0.661886	1.510835	**30**	**41° 0′**	0.656059	0.754710	0.869287	1.150368	**49° 0′**
40	0.554360	0.832277	0.666077	1.501328	**20**	**10**	0.658252	0.752798	0.874407	1.143633	**50**
50	0.556779	0.830661	0.670284	1.491904	**10**	**20**	0.660439	0.750880	0.879553	1.136941	**40**
34° 0′	0.559193	0.829038	0.674509	1.482561	**56° 0′**	**30**	0.662620	0.748956	0.884725	1.130294	**30**
10	0.561602	0.827407	0.678749	1.473298	**50**	**40**	0.664796	0.747025	0.889924	1.123691	**20**
20	0.564007	0.825770	0.683007	1.464115	**40**	**50**	0.666966	0.745088	0.895151	1.117130	**10**
30	0.566406	0.824126	0.687281	1.455009	**30**	**42° 0′**	0.669131	0.743145	0.900404	1.110613	**48° 0′**
40	0.568801	0.822475	0.691572	1.445980	**20**	**10**	0.671289	0.741195	0.905685	1.104137	**50**
50	0.571191	0.820817	0.695881	1.437027	**10**	**20**	0.673443	0.739239	0.910994	1.097702	**40**
35° 0′	0.573576	0.819152	0.700208	1.428148	**55° 0′**	**30**	0.675590	0.737277	0.916331	1.091309	**30**
10	0.575957	0.817480	0.704551	1.419343	**50**	**40**	0.677732	0.735309	0.921697	1.084955	**20**
20	0.578332	0.815801	0.708913	1.410610	**40**	**50**	0.679868	0.733334	0.927091	1.078642	**10**
30	0.580703	0.814116	0.713293	1.401948	**30**	**43° 0′**	0.681998	0.731354	0.932515	1.072369	**47° 0′**
40	0.583069	0.812423	0.717691	1.393357	**20**	**10**	0.684123	0.729367	0.937968	1.066134	**50**
50	0.585429	0.810723	0.722108	1.384835	**10**	**20**	0.686242	0.727374	0.943451	1.059938	**40**
36° 0′	0.587785	0.809017	0.726543	1.376382	**54° 0′**	**30**	0.688355	0.725374	0.948965	1.053780	**30**
10	0.590136	0.807304	0.730996	1.367996	**50**	**40**	0.690462	0.723369	0.954508	1.047660	**20**
20	0.592482	0.805584	0.735469	1.359676	**40**	**50**	0.692563	0.721357	0.960083	1.041577	**10**
30	0.594823	0.803857	0.739961	1.351422	**30**	**44° 0′**	0.694658	0.719340	0.965689	1.035530	**46° 0′**
40	0.597159	0.802123	0.744472	1.343233	**20**	**10**	0.696748	0.717316	0.971326	1.029520	**50**
50	0.599489	0.800383	0.749003	1.335108	**10**	**20**	0.698832	0.715286	0.976996	1.023546	**40**
37° 0′	0.601815	0.798636	0.753554	1.327045	**53° 0′**	**30**	0.700909	0.713250	0.982697	1.017607	**30**
10	0.604136	0.796882	0.758125	1.319044	**50**	**40**	0.702981	0.711209	0.988432	1.011704	**20**
20	0.606451	0.795121	0.762716	1.311105	**40**	**50**	0.705047	0.709161	0.994199	1.005835	**10**
37° 30	0.608761	0.793353	0.767327	1.303225	**52° 30**	**45° 0′**	0.707107	0.707107	1.000000	1.000000	**45° 0′**
	cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle		cos	sin	cot	tan	Angle

For angles 30° to 45° 0′ (angles found in a column to the left of the data), use the column labels at the top of the table; for angles 45° to 60° 0′ (angles found in a column to the right of the data), use the column labels at the bottom of the table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Using a Calculator to Find Trigonometric Function Values.—Scientific calculators are quicker and more accurate than tables for finding trigonometric ratios or angles than relying on trigonometric tables. Inputting an angle, in either degree (**DEG**) or radian (**RAD**) measure, and pressing **SIN**, **COS**, or **TAN** key will produce the ratio value to a many decimal places, which can be rounded to the desired accuracy. Though reciprocal function keys are not usually included on the calculator, using the main three functions and the **1/x** key will produce these ratios as well, since $\csc x = 1/\sin x$, $\sec x = 1/\cos x$, and $\cot x = 1/\tan x$.

If the triangle's side dimensions are known and the angle measure is sought, then ratio is entered using the keys labeled **sin^{-1}**, **cos^{-1}**, and **tan^{-1}**. If these keys are not present, then **INV** is used with **SIN**, **COS**, or **TAN**. Again, the correct units, whether degree or radian measure, can be chosen.

An advantage of using a calculator instead of a trigonometry table to find function values is that both positive and negative degree measures can be entered into a calculator; also, angles greater than 90 degrees do not need to be converted to their acute angle equivalent. Interpolation for angles whose measures fall between the values available in the tables is also not necessary.

Example: Use a calculator to find all six of the trigonometry function values, to four decimal places, of 172°.

Solution: The degree measure can be entered as is, without having to first inspect its quadrant and reference (acute) angle. Enter 172 in DEG mode, then, for the three main values, choose SIN, COS, TAN, each time rounding answer to four decimal places.

$\sin(172°) = 0.1392$ $\quad\quad$ $\csc(172°) = 1/\sin(172°) = 7.1853$
$\cos(172°) = -0.9903$ $\quad\quad$ $\sec(172°) = 1/\cos(172°) = -1.0098$
$\tan(172°) = -0.1405$ $\quad\quad$ $\cot(172°) = 1/\tan(172°) = -7.1153$

If a scientific calculator or computer is not available, tables are the easiest way to find trig values. However, trigonometric function values can be calculated very accurately without a scientific calculator by using the infinite series formulas (see *CALCULUS*):

$$\sin A = A - \frac{A^3}{3!} + \frac{A^5}{5!} - \frac{A^7}{7!} \pm \cdots \qquad \cos A = 1 - \frac{A^2}{2!} + \frac{A^4}{4!} - \frac{A^6}{6!} \pm \cdots$$

$$\sin^{-1} A = A + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{A^3}{3} + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{A^5}{5} + \cdots \qquad \tan^{-1} A = A - \frac{A^3}{3} + \frac{A^5}{5} - \frac{A^7}{7} \pm \cdots$$

where angle A is expressed in radians (multiplying degrees by $\pi/180 = 0.0174533$ gives radian measure). Generally, calculating just three or four terms of the expression is sufficient for accuracy. In these formulas, a number followed by the symbol **!** is called a *factorial* (see *Factorial Notation* on page 13). Except for 0!, which equals 1, $n! = n(n-1)(n-2)\ldots$ down to 1. For example, $4! = 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 24$. As an example, $\sin 42° = \sin(42 \times 0.0174533) = \sin(0.733) = 0.733 - (0.733)^3/3! + (0.733)^5/5! - \ldots \approx 0.66912$, which is close to the calculator answer of higher accuracy, 0.669130606.

Versed Sine and Versed Cosine.—These functions are sometimes used in formulas for segments of a circle and may be obtained using the relationships:

$$\text{versed } \sin\theta = 1 - \cos\theta; \qquad \text{versed } \cos\theta = 1 - \sin\theta.$$

Sevolute Functions.—Sevolute functions are used in calculating the form diameter of involute splines. They are computed by subtracting the involute function of an angle from the secant of the angle ($1/\cos\theta = \sec\theta$). For example, sevolute of 20° = secant of 20° − involute function of 20° = 1.064178 − 0.014904 = 1.049274.

Involute Functions.—Involute functions are used in certain formulas relating to the design and measurement of gear teeth as well as measurement of threads over wires. (See, for example, pages 2130 through 2133, 2286, and 2350).

The value of an involute function is calculated from the following formulas:

Involute of $\theta = (\tan\theta) - \theta$ $\quad$ for θ in radians, and
Involute of $\theta = (\tan\theta) - \pi \times \theta/180$ $\quad$ for θ in degrees.

Example: For an angle of 14 degrees and 10 minutes (14° 10′), the involute function is found as follows: 10 minutes = 10/60 = 0.166666°, 14 + 0.166666 = 14.166666°, so that the involute of 14.166666° = (tan 14.166666) − π × 14.166666/180 = 0.252420 − 0.247255 = 0.005165.

The same result would be obtained by using the conversion tables beginning on page 112 to convert 14° 10′ to radians and then applying the first involute formula for radian measure given above.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Involute Function Values for Angles from 14 to 23 Degrees

	Degrees								
	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22
Minutes	Involute Function Values								
0	0.004982	0.006150	0.007493	0.009025	0.010760	0.012715	0.014904	0.017345	0.020054
1	0.005000	0.006171	0.007517	0.009052	0.010791	0.012750	0.014943	0.017388	0.020101
2	0.005018	0.006192	0.007541	0.009079	0.010822	0.012784	0.014982	0.017431	0.020149
3	0.005036	0.006213	0.007565	0.009107	0.010853	0.012819	0.015020	0.017474	0.020197
4	0.005055	0.006234	0.007589	0.009134	0.010884	0.012854	0.015059	0.017517	0.020244
5	0.005073	0.006255	0.007613	0.009161	0.010915	0.012888	0.015098	0.017560	0.020292
6	0.005091	0.006276	0.007637	0.009189	0.010946	0.012923	0.015137	0.017603	0.020340
7	0.005110	0.006297	0.007661	0.009216	0.010977	0.012958	0.015176	0.017647	0.020388
8	0.005128	0.006318	0.007686	0.009244	0.011008	0.012993	0.015215	0.017690	0.020436
9	0.005146	0.006340	0.007710	0.009272	0.011039	0.013028	0.015254	0.017734	0.020484
10	0.005165	0.006361	0.007735	0.009299	0.011071	0.013063	0.015293	0.017777	0.020533
11	0.005184	0.006382	0.007759	0.009327	0.011102	0.013098	0.015333	0.017821	0.020581
12	0.005202	0.006404	0.007784	0.009355	0.011133	0.013134	0.015372	0.017865	0.020629
13	0.005221	0.006425	0.007808	0.009383	0.011165	0.013169	0.015411	0.017908	0.020678
14	0.005239	0.006447	0.007833	0.009411	0.011196	0.013204	0.015451	0.017952	0.020726
15	0.005258	0.006469	0.007857	0.009439	0.011228	0.013240	0.015490	0.017996	0.020775
16	0.005277	0.006490	0.007882	0.009467	0.011260	0.013275	0.015530	0.018040	0.020824
17	0.005296	0.006512	0.007907	0.009495	0.011291	0.013311	0.015570	0.018084	0.020873
18	0.005315	0.006534	0.007932	0.009523	0.011323	0.013346	0.015609	0.018129	0.020921
19	0.005334	0.006555	0.007957	0.009552	0.011355	0.013382	0.015649	0.018173	0.020970
20	0.005353	0.006577	0.007982	0.009580	0.011387	0.013418	0.015689	0.018217	0.021019
21	0.005372	0.006599	0.008007	0.009608	0.011419	0.013454	0.015729	0.018262	0.021069
22	0.005391	0.006621	0.008032	0.009637	0.011451	0.013490	0.015769	0.018306	0.021118
23	0.005410	0.006643	0.008057	0.009665	0.011483	0.013526	0.015809	0.018351	0.021167
24	0.005429	0.006665	0.008082	0.009694	0.011515	0.013562	0.015850	0.018395	0.021217
25	0.005448	0.006687	0.008107	0.009722	0.011547	0.013598	0.015890	0.018440	0.021266
26	0.005467	0.006709	0.008133	0.009751	0.011580	0.013634	0.015930	0.018485	0.021316
27	0.005487	0.006732	0.008158	0.009780	0.011612	0.013670	0.015971	0.018530	0.021365
28	0.005506	0.006754	0.008183	0.009808	0.011644	0.013707	0.016011	0.018575	0.021415
29	0.005525	0.006776	0.008209	0.009837	0.011677	0.013743	0.016052	0.018620	0.021465
30	0.005545	0.006799	0.008234	0.009866	0.011709	0.013779	0.016092	0.018665	0.021514
31	0.005564	0.006821	0.008260	0.009895	0.011742	0.013816	0.016133	0.018710	0.021564
32	0.005584	0.006843	0.008285	0.009924	0.011775	0.013852	0.016174	0.018755	0.021614
33	0.005603	0.006866	0.008311	0.009953	0.011807	0.013889	0.016215	0.018800	0.021665
34	0.005623	0.006888	0.008337	0.009982	0.011840	0.013926	0.016255	0.018846	0.021715
35	0.005643	0.006911	0.008362	0.010011	0.011873	0.013963	0.016296	0.018891	0.021765
36	0.005662	0.006934	0.008388	0.010041	0.011906	0.013999	0.016337	0.018937	0.021815
37	0.005682	0.006956	0.008414	0.010070	0.011939	0.014036	0.016379	0.018983	0.021866
38	0.005702	0.006979	0.008440	0.010099	0.011972	0.014073	0.016420	0.019028	0.021916
39	0.005722	0.007002	0.008466	0.010129	0.012005	0.014110	0.016461	0.019074	0.021967
40	0.005742	0.007025	0.008492	0.010158	0.012038	0.014148	0.016502	0.019120	0.022018
41	0.005762	0.007048	0.008518	0.010188	0.012071	0.014185	0.016544	0.019166	0.022068
42	0.005782	0.007071	0.008544	0.010217	0.012105	0.014222	0.016585	0.019212	0.022119
43	0.005802	0.007094	0.008571	0.010247	0.012138	0.014259	0.016627	0.019258	0.022170
44	0.005822	0.007117	0.008597	0.010277	0.012172	0.014297	0.016669	0.019304	0.022221
45	0.005842	0.007140	0.008623	0.010307	0.012205	0.014334	0.016710	0.019350	0.022272
46	0.005862	0.007163	0.008650	0.010336	0.012239	0.014372	0.016752	0.019397	0.022324
47	0.005882	0.007186	0.008676	0.010366	0.012272	0.014409	0.016794	0.019443	0.022375
48	0.005903	0.007209	0.008702	0.010396	0.012306	0.014447	0.016836	0.019490	0.022426
49	0.005923	0.007233	0.008729	0.010426	0.012340	0.014485	0.016878	0.019536	0.022478
50	0.005943	0.007256	0.008756	0.010456	0.012373	0.014523	0.016920	0.019583	0.022529
51	0.005964	0.007280	0.008782	0.010486	0.012407	0.014560	0.016962	0.019630	0.022581
52	0.005984	0.007303	0.008809	0.010517	0.012441	0.014598	0.017004	0.019676	0.022633
53	0.006005	0.007327	0.008836	0.010547	0.012475	0.014636	0.017047	0.019723	0.022684
54	0.006025	0.007350	0.008863	0.010577	0.012509	0.014674	0.017089	0.019770	0.022736
55	0.006046	0.007374	0.008889	0.010608	0.012543	0.014713	0.017132	0.019817	0.022788
56	0.006067	0.007397	0.008916	0.010638	0.012578	0.014751	0.017174	0.019864	0.022840
57	0.006087	0.007421	0.008943	0.010669	0.012612	0.014789	0.017217	0.019912	0.022892
58	0.006108	0.007445	0.008970	0.010699	0.012646	0.014827	0.017259	0.019959	0.022944
59	0.006129	0.007469	0.008998	0.010730	0.012681	0.014866	0.017302	0.020006	0.022997
60	0.006150	0.007493	0.009025	0.010760	0.012715	0.014904	0.017345	0.020054	0.023049

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Involute Function Values for Angles from 23 to 32 Degrees

	Degrees								
	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
Minutes	Involute Function Values								
0	0.023049	0.026350	0.029975	0.033947	0.038287	0.043017	0.048164	0.053752	0.059809
1	0.023102	0.026407	0.030039	0.034016	0.038362	0.043100	0.048253	0.053849	0.059914
2	0.023154	0.026465	0.030102	0.034086	0.038438	0.043182	0.048343	0.053946	0.060019
3	0.023207	0.026523	0.030166	0.034155	0.038514	0.043264	0.048432	0.054043	0.060124
4	0.023259	0.026581	0.030229	0.034225	0.038590	0.043347	0.048522	0.054140	0.060230
5	0.023312	0.026639	0.030293	0.034294	0.038666	0.043430	0.048612	0.054238	0.060335
6	0.023365	0.026697	0.030357	0.034364	0.038742	0.043513	0.048702	0.054336	0.060441
7	0.023418	0.026756	0.030420	0.034434	0.038818	0.043596	0.048792	0.054433	0.060547
8	0.023471	0.026814	0.030484	0.034504	0.038894	0.043679	0.048883	0.054531	0.060653
9	0.023524	0.026872	0.030549	0.034574	0.038971	0.043762	0.048973	0.054629	0.060759
10	0.023577	0.026931	0.030613	0.034644	0.039047	0.043845	0.049064	0.054728	0.060866
11	0.023631	0.026989	0.030677	0.034714	0.039124	0.043929	0.049154	0.054826	0.060972
12	0.023684	0.027048	0.030741	0.034785	0.039201	0.044012	0.049245	0.054924	0.061079
13	0.023738	0.027107	0.030806	0.034855	0.039278	0.044096	0.049336	0.055023	0.061186
14	0.023791	0.027166	0.030870	0.034926	0.039355	0.044180	0.049427	0.055122	0.061292
15	0.023845	0.027225	0.030935	0.034997	0.039432	0.044264	0.049518	0.055221	0.061400
16	0.023899	0.027284	0.031000	0.035067	0.039509	0.044348	0.049609	0.055320	0.061507
17	0.023952	0.027343	0.031065	0.035138	0.039586	0.044432	0.049701	0.055419	0.061614
18	0.024006	0.027402	0.031130	0.035209	0.039664	0.044516	0.049792	0.055518	0.061721
19	0.024060	0.027462	0.031195	0.035280	0.039741	0.044601	0.049884	0.055617	0.061829
20	0.024114	0.027521	0.031260	0.035352	0.039819	0.044685	0.049976	0.055717	0.061937
21	0.024169	0.027581	0.031325	0.035423	0.039897	0.044770	0.050068	0.055817	0.062045
22	0.024223	0.027640	0.031390	0.035494	0.039974	0.044855	0.050160	0.055916	0.062153
23	0.024277	0.027700	0.031456	0.035566	0.040052	0.044940	0.050252	0.056016	0.062261
24	0.024332	0.027760	0.031521	0.035637	0.040131	0.045024	0.050344	0.056116	0.062369
25	0.024386	0.027820	0.031587	0.035709	0.040209	0.045110	0.050437	0.056217	0.062478
26	0.024441	0.027880	0.031653	0.035781	0.040287	0.045195	0.050529	0.056317	0.062586
27	0.024495	0.027940	0.031718	0.035853	0.040366	0.045280	0.050622	0.056417	0.062695
28	0.024550	0.028000	0.031784	0.035925	0.040444	0.045366	0.050715	0.056518	0.062804
29	0.024605	0.028060	0.031850	0.035997	0.040523	0.045451	0.050808	0.056619	0.062913
30	0.024660	0.028121	0.031917	0.036069	0.040602	0.045537	0.050901	0.056720	0.063022
31	0.024715	0.028181	0.031983	0.036142	0.040680	0.045623	0.050994	0.056821	0.063131
32	0.024770	0.028242	0.032049	0.036214	0.040759	0.045709	0.051087	0.056922	0.063241
33	0.024825	0.028302	0.032116	0.036287	0.040839	0.045795	0.051181	0.057023	0.063350
34	0.024881	0.028363	0.032182	0.036359	0.040918	0.045881	0.051274	0.057124	0.063460
35	0.024936	0.028424	0.032249	0.036432	0.040997	0.045967	0.051368	0.057226	0.063570
36	0.024992	0.028485	0.032315	0.036505	0.041077	0.046054	0.051462	0.057328	0.063680
37	0.025047	0.028546	0.032382	0.036578	0.041156	0.046140	0.051556	0.057429	0.063790
38	0.025103	0.028607	0.032449	0.036651	0.041236	0.046227	0.051650	0.057531	0.063901
39	0.025159	0.028668	0.032516	0.036724	0.041316	0.046313	0.051744	0.057633	0.064011
40	0.025214	0.028729	0.032583	0.036798	0.041395	0.046400	0.051838	0.057736	0.064122
41	0.025270	0.028791	0.032651	0.036871	0.041475	0.046487	0.051933	0.057838	0.064232
42	0.025326	0.028852	0.032718	0.036945	0.041556	0.046575	0.052027	0.057940	0.064343
43	0.025382	0.028914	0.032785	0.037018	0.041636	0.046662	0.052122	0.058043	0.064454
44	0.025439	0.028976	0.032853	0.037092	0.041716	0.046749	0.052217	0.058146	0.064565
45	0.025495	0.029037	0.032920	0.037166	0.041797	0.046837	0.052312	0.058249	0.064677
46	0.025551	0.029099	0.032988	0.037240	0.041877	0.046924	0.052407	0.058352	0.064788
47	0.025608	0.029161	0.033056	0.037314	0.041958	0.047012	0.052502	0.058455	0.064900
48	0.025664	0.029223	0.033124	0.037388	0.042039	0.047100	0.052597	0.058558	0.065012
49	0.025721	0.029285	0.033192	0.037462	0.042120	0.047188	0.052693	0.058662	0.065123
50	0.025778	0.029348	0.033260	0.037537	0.042201	0.047276	0.052788	0.058765	0.065236
51	0.025834	0.029410	0.033328	0.037611	0.042282	0.047364	0.052884	0.058869	0.065348
52	0.025891	0.029472	0.033397	0.037686	0.042363	0.047452	0.052980	.058973	0.065460
53	0.025948	0.029535	0.033465	0.037761	0.042444	0.047541	0.053076	0.059077	0.065573
54	0.026005	0.029598	0.033534	0.037835	0.042526	0.047630	0.053172	0.059181	0.065685
55	0.026062	0.029660	0.033602	0.037910	0.042608	0.047718	0.053268	0.059285	0.065798
56	0.026120	0.029723	0.033671	0.037985	0.042689	0.047807	0.053365	0.059390	0.065911
57	0.026177	0.029786	0.033740	0.038060	0.042771	0.047896	0.053461	0.059494	0.066024
58	0.026235	0.029849	0.033809	0.038136	0.042853	0.047985	0.053558	0.059599	0.066137
59	0.026292	0.029912	0.033878	0.038211	0.042935	0.048074	0.053655	0.059704	0.066251
60	0.026350	0.029975	0.033947	0.038287	0.043017	0.048164	0.053752	0.059809	0.066364

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Involute Function Values for Angles from 32 to 41 Degrees

	Degrees								
	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Minutes	Involute Function Values								
0	0.066364	0.073449	0.081097	0.089342	0.098224	0.107782	0.118061	0.129106	0.140968
1	0.066478	0.073572	0.081229	0.089485	0.098378	0.107948	0.118238	0.129297	0.141173
2	0.066591	0.073695	0.081362	0.089628	0.098532	0.108113	0.118416	0.129488	0.141378
3	0.066705	0.073818	0.081494	0.089771	0.098686	0.108279	0.118594	0.129679	0.141584
4	0.066820	0.073941	0.081627	0.089914	0.098840	0.108445	0.118773	0.129870	0.141789
5	0.066934	0.074064	0.081760	0.090058	0.098994	0.108611	0.118951	0.130062	0.141995
6	0.067048	0.074188	0.081894	0.090201	0.099149	0.108777	0.119130	0.130254	0.142201
7	0.067163	0.074312	0.082027	0.090345	0.099303	0.108943	0.119309	0.130446	0.142408
8	0.067277	0.074435	0.082161	0.090489	0.099458	0.109110	0.119488	0.130639	0.142614
9	0.067392	0.074559	0.082294	0.090633	0.099614	0.109277	0.119667	0.130832	0.142821
10	0.067507	0.074684	0.082428	0.090777	0.099769	0.109444	0.119847	0.131025	0.143028
11	0.067622	0.074808	0.082562	0.090922	0.099924	0.109611	0.120027	0.131218	0.143236
12	0.067738	0.074932	0.082697	0.091067	0.100080	0.109779	0.120207	0.131411	0.143443
13	0.067853	0.075057	0.082831	0.091211	0.100236	0.109947	0.120387	0.131605	0.143651
14	0.067969	0.075182	0.082966	0.091356	0.100392	0.110114	0.120567	0.131799	0.143859
15	0.068084	0.075307	0.083101	0.091502	0.100549	0.110283	0.120748	0.131993	0.144068
16	0.068200	0.075432	0.083235	0.091647	0.100705	0.110451	0.120929	0.132187	0.144276
17	0.068316	0.075557	0.083371	0.091793	0.100862	0.110619	0.121110	0.132381	0.144485
18	0.068432	0.075683	0.083506	0.091938	0.101019	0.110788	0.121291	0.132576	0.144694
19	0.068549	0.075808	0.083641	0.092084	0.101176	0.110957	0.121473	0.132771	0.144903
20	0.068665	0.075934	0.083777	0.092230	0.101333	0.111126	0.121655	0.132966	0.145113
21	0.068782	0.076060	0.083913	0.092377	0.101490	0.111295	0.121837	0.133162	0.145323
22	0.068899	0.076186	0.084049	0.092523	0.101648	0.111465	0.122019	0.133358	0.145533
23	0.069016	0.076312	0.084185	0.092670	0.101806	0.111635	0.122201	0.133553	0.145743
24	0.069133	0.076439	0.084321	0.092816	0.101964	0.111805	0.122384	0.133750	0.145954
25	0.069250	0.076565	0.084458	0.092963	0.102122	0.111975	0.122567	0.133946	0.146165
26	0.069367	0.076692	0.084594	0.093111	0.102280	0.112145	0.122750	0.134143	0.146376
27	0.069485	0.076819	0.084731	0.093258	0.102439	0.112316	0.122933	0.134339	0.146587
28	0.069602	0.076946	0.084868	0.093406	0.102598	0.112486	0.123117	0.134537	0.146799
29	0.069720	0.077073	0.085005	0.093553	0.102757	0.112657	0.123300	0.134734	0.147010
30	0.069838	0.077200	0.085142	0.093701	0.102916	0.112829	0.123484	0.134931	0.147222
31	0.069956	0.077328	0.085280	0.093849	0.103075	0.113000	0.123668	0.135129	0.147435
32	0.070075	0.077455	0.085418	0.093998	0.103235	0.113172	0.123853	0.135327	0.147647
33	0.070193	0.077583	0.085555	0.094146	0.103395	0.113343	0.124037	0.135525	0.147860
34	0.070312	0.077711	0.085693	0.094295	0.103555	0.113515	0.124222	0.135724	0.148073
35	0.070430	0.077839	0.085832	0.094443	0.103715	0.113688	0.124407	0.135923	0.148286
36	0.070549	0.077968	0.085970	0.094593	0.103875	0.113860	0.124592	0.136122	0.148500
37	0.070668	0.078096	0.086108	0.094742	0.104036	0.114033	0.124778	0.136321	0.148714
38	0.070788	0.078225	0.086247	0.094891	0.104196	0.114205	0.124964	0.136520	0.148928
39	0.070907	0.078354	0.086386	0.095041	0.104357	0.114378	0.125150	0.136720	0.149142
40	0.071026	0.078483	0.086525	0.095190	0.104518	0.114552	0.125336	0.136920	0.149357
41	0.071146	0.078612	0.086664	0.095340	0.104680	0.114725	0.125522	0.137120	0.149572
42	0.071266	0.078741	0.086804	0.095490	0.104841	0.114899	0.125709	0.137320	0.149787
43	0.071386	0.078871	0.086943	0.095641	0.105003	0.115073	0.125896	0.137521	0.150002
44	0.071506	0.079000	0.087083	0.095791	0.105165	0.115247	0.126083	0.137722	0.150218
45	0.071626	0.079130	0.087223	0.095942	0.105327	0.115421	0.126270	0.137923	0.150434
46	0.071747	0.079260	0.087363	0.096093	0.105489	0.115595	0.126457	0.138124	0.150650
47	0.071867	0.079390	0.087503	0.096244	0.105652	0.115770	0.126645	0.138326	0.150866
48	0.071988	0.079520	0.087644	0.096395	0.105814	0.115945	0.126833	0.138528	0.151083
49	0.072109	0.079651	0.087784	0.096546	0.105977	0.116120	0.127021	0.138730	0.151299
50	0.072230	0.079781	0.087925	0.096698	0.106140	0.116296	0.127209	0.138932	0.151517
51	0.072351	0.079912	0.088066	0.096850	0.106304	0.116471	0.127398	0.139134	0.151734
52	0.072473	0.080043	0.088207	0.097002	0.106467	0.116647	0.127587	0.139337	0.151952
53	0.072594	0.080174	0.088348	0.097154	0.106631	0.116823	0.127776	0.139540	0.152169
54	0.072716	0.080306	0.088490	0.097306	0.106795	0.116999	0.127965	0.139743	0.152388
55	0.072838	0.080437	0.088631	0.097459	0.106959	0.117175	0.128155	0.139947	0.152606
56	0.072960	0.080569	0.088773	0.097611	0.107123	0.117352	0.128344	0.140151	0.152825
57	0.073082	0.080700	0.088915	0.097764	0.107288	0.117529	0.128534	0.140355	0.153044
58	0.073204	0.080832	0.089057	0.097917	0.107452	0.117706	0.128725	0.140559	0.153263
59	0.073326	0.080964	0.089200	0.098071	0.107617	0.117883	0.128915	0.140763	0.153482
60	0.073449	0.081097	0.089342	0.098224	0.107782	0.118061	0.129106	0.140968	0.153702

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Involute Function Values for Angles from 41 to 50 Degrees

	Degrees								
	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
Minutes	Involute Function Values								
0	0.153702	0.167366	0.182024	0.197744	0.214602	0.232679	0.252064	0.272855	0.295157
1	0.153922	0.167602	0.182277	0.198015	0.214893	0.232991	0.252399	0.273214	0.295542
2	0.154142	0.167838	0.182530	0.198287	0.215184	0.233304	0.252734	0.273573	0.295928
3	0.154362	0.168075	0.182784	0.198559	0.215476	0.233616	0.253069	0.273933	0.296314
4	0.154583	0.168311	0.183038	0.198832	0.215768	0.233930	0.253405	0.274293	0.296701
5	0.154804	0.168548	0.183292	0.199104	0.216061	0.234243	0.253742	0.274654	0.297088
6	0.155025	0.168786	0.183547	0.199377	0.216353	0.234557	0.254078	0.275015	0.297475
7	0.155247	0.169023	0.183801	0.199651	0.216646	0.234871	0.254415	0.275376	0.297863
8	0.155469	0.169261	0.184057	0.199924	0.216940	0.235186	0.254753	0.275738	0.298251
9	0.155691	0.169500	0.184312	0.200198	0.217234	0.235501	0.255091	0.276101	0.298640
10	0.155913	0.169738	0.184568	0.200473	0.217528	0.235816	0.255429	0.276464	0.299029
11	0.156135	0.169977	0.184824	0.200747	0.217822	0.236132	0.255767	0.276827	0.299419
12	0.156358	0.170216	0.185080	0.201022	0.218117	0.236448	0.256106	0.277191	0.299809
13	0.156581	0.170455	0.185337	0.201297	0.218412	0.236765	0.256446	0.277555	0.300200
14	0.156805	0.170695	0.185594	0.201573	0.218708	0.237082	0.256786	0.277919	0.300591
15	0.157028	0.170935	0.185851	0.201849	0.219004	0.237399	0.257126	0.278284	0.300983
16	0.157252	0.171175	0.186109	0.202125	0.219300	0.237717	0.257467	0.278649	0.301375
17	0.157476	0.171415	0.186367	0.202401	0.219596	0.238035	0.257808	0.279015	0.301767
18	0.157701	0.171656	0.186625	0.202678	0.219893	0.238353	0.258149	0.279381	0.302160
19	0.157925	0.171897	0.186883	0.202956	0.220190	0.238672	0.258491	0.279748	0.302553
20	0.158150	0.172138	0.187142	0.203233	0.220488	0.238991	0.258833	0.280115	0.302947
21	0.158375	0.172380	0.187401	0.203511	0.220786	0.239310	0.259176	0.280483	0.303342
22	0.158601	0.172621	0.187661	0.203789	0.221084	0.239630	0.259519	0.280851	0.303736
23	0.158826	0.172864	0.187920	0.204067	0.221383	0.239950	0.259862	0.281219	0.304132
24	0.159052	0.173106	0.188180	0.204346	0.221682	0.240271	0.260206	0.281588	0.304527
25	0.159279	0.173349	0.188440	0.204625	0.221981	0.240592	0.260550	0.281957	0.304924
26	0.159505	0.173592	0.188701	0.204905	0.222281	0.240913	0.260895	0.282327	0.305320
27	0.159732	0.173835	0.188962	0.205185	0.222581	0.241235	0.261240	0.282697	0.305718
28	0.159959	0.174078	0.189223	0.205465	0.222881	0.241557	0.261585	0.283067	0.306115
29	0.160186	0.174322	0.189485	0.205745	0.223182	0.241879	0.261931	0.283438	0.306513
30	0.160414	0.174566	0.189746	0.206026	0.223483	0.242202	0.262277	0.283810	0.306912
31	0.160642	0.174811	0.190009	0.206307	0.223784	0.242525	0.262624	0.284182	0.307311
32	0.160870	0.175055	0.190271	0.206588	0.224086	0.242849	0.262971	0.284554	0.307710
33	0.161098	0.175300	0.190534	0.206870	0.224388	0.243173	0.263318	0.284927	0.308110
34	0.161327	0.175546	0.190797	0.207152	0.224690	0.243497	0.263666	0.285300	0.308511
35	0.161555	0.175791	0.191060	0.207434	0.224993	0.243822	0.264014	0.285673	0.308911
36	0.161785	0.176037	0.191324	0.207717	0.225296	0.244147	0.264363	0.286047	0.309313
37	0.162014	0.176283	0.191588	0.208000	0.225600	0.244472	0.264712	0.286422	0.309715
38	0.162244	0.176529	0.191852	0.208284	0.225904	0.244798	0.265062	0.286797	0.310117
39	0.162474	0.176776	0.192116	0.208567	0.226208	0.245125	0.265412	0.287172	0.310520
40	0.162704	0.177023	0.192381	0.208851	0.226512	0.245451	0.265762	0.287548	0.310923
41	0.162934	0.177270	0.192646	0.209136	0.226817	0.245778	0.266113	0.287924	0.311327
42	0.163165	0.177518	0.192912	0.209420	0.227123	0.246106	0.266464	0.288301	0.311731
43	0.163396	0.177766	0.193178	0.209705	0.227428	0.246433	0.266815	0.288678	0.312136
44	0.163628	0.178014	0.193444	0.209991	0.227734	0.246761	0.267167	0.289056	0.312541
45	0.163859	0.178262	0.193710	0.210276	0.228041	0.247090	0.267520	0.289434	0.312947
46	0.164091	0.178511	0.193977	0.210562	0.228347	0.247419	0.267872	0.289812	0.313353
47	0.164323	0.178760	0.194244	0.210849	0.228654	0.247748	0.268225	0.290191	0.313759
48	0.164556	0.179009	0.194511	0.211136	0.228962	0.248078	0.268579	0.290570	0.314166
49	0.164788	0.179259	0.194779	0.211423	0.229270	0.248408	0.268933	0.290950	0.314574
50	0.165021	0.179509	0.195047	0.211710	0.229578	0.248738	0.269287	0.291330	0.314982
51	0.165254	0.179759	0.195315	0.211998	0.229886	0.249069	0.269642	0.291711	0.315391
52	0.165488	0.180009	0.195584	0.212286	0.230195	0.249400	0.269998	0.292092	0.315800
53	0.165722	0.180260	0.195853	0.212574	0.230504	0.249732	0.270353	0.292474	0.316209
54	0.165956	0.180511	0.196122	0.212863	0.230814	0.250064	0.270709	0.292856	0.316619
55	0.166190	0.180763	0.196392	0.213152	0.231124	0.250396	0.271066	0.293238	0.317029
56	0.166425	0.181014	0.196661	0.213441	0.231434	0.250729	0.271423	0.293621	0.317440
57	0.166660	0.181266	0.196932	0.213731	0.231745	0.251062	0.271780	0.294004	0.317852
58	0.166895	0.181518	0.197202	0.214021	0.232056	0.251396	0.272138	0.294388	0.318264
59	0.167130	0.181771	0.197473	0.214311	0.232367	0.251730	0.272496	0.294772	0.318676
60	0.167366	0.182024	0.197744	0.214602	0.232679	0.252064	0.272855	0.295157	0.319089

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spherical Trigonometry

Spherical trigonometry deals with the measurement of angles of polygons—triangles in particular—that lie on the surface of spheres. The sides of a spherical triangle conform to the surface of the sphere, and, unlike a plane triangle, the sum of angle measures of a spherical triangle ranges from 180° to 540°.

Right-Angle Spherical Trigonometry.—The solid black lines *A*, *B*, and *C* of Fig. 1 represent the sides of a *right* spherical triangle. The dashed lines *J* and *K* are radii of the sphere extending from the center of the sphere to the triangle's vertices. The several plane triangles, indicated by the various broken lines, are formed from the radii and vertices of the spherical triangle. *J* and *K* are radii and thus have the same value.

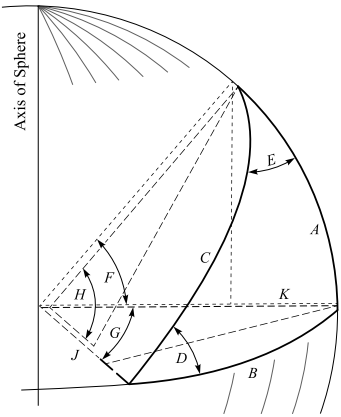


Fig. 1. Right Spherical Triangle

Formulas for Right Spherical Triangles

Formulas for Lengths				
$A = K \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times F°$	$B = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times G°$	$C = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times H°$	$J = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{B}{G°}$	$K = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{A}{F°}$

Formulas for Angles		
$F° = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{A}{K}$	$G° = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{B}{J}$	$H° = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{C}{J}$

Angle	Angular Relationships		
D	$\sin D = \sin F \times \csc H$	$\cos D = \tan G \times \cot H$	$\tan D = \tan F \times \csc G$
E		$\cos E = \cos G \times \sin D$	$\tan E = \tan G \times \csc F$
F	$\sin F = \tan G \times \cot E$	$\cos F = \sec G \times \cos H$	$\tan F = \tan D \times \sin G$
G		$\cos G = \cos H \times \sec F$	$\tan G = \sin F \times \tan E$
H	$\cos H = \cos G \times \cos F$	$\cos H = \cot D \times \cot E$	

Area Formula
$\text{Area} = K^2 \times \frac{\pi}{180}(D° + E° + 90° - 180°) = K^2 \times \frac{\pi}{180}(D° + E° - 90°)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The side and angle labels in examples that follow refer to those of the right spherical triangle in Fig. 1.

Example 1: Find the length of arc A of a right spherical triangle on the surface of a sphere where radius $K = 30.00$ inches and angle $F = 10°$.

Solution: $A = K \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times F = 30 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 10 = 5.2359$ in.

Example 2: Find length of arc B on a sphere of radius $J = 11.20$ inches if angle $G = 10°$.

Solution: $B = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times G = 11.20 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 10 = 1.9547$ in.

Example 3: A right spherical triangle is to be constructed on the surface of a sphere 22.400 inches in diameter. Side A is 7.125 inches and angle E is 57° 59′ 19″. Determine the lengths of sides B and C, and the measure of angle D, and the area of the triangle.

Solution: The radius of the sphere, $J = K = 11.200$, and the length of side A is used to find the value of angle F. Angle E is converted to decimal degree format for simplicity; then angles E and F are used to solve the equation for angle tan G. Side B and angle D can then be found. Angle H can be calculated using either of the two equations given for cos H, and finally the length of side C can be found. Notice that the sum of angles $D + E + 90°$ is not equal to 180°, but 194.98°. Calculation details are as follows:

$$F° = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{A}{K} = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{7.125}{11.200} = 36.449324°$$

$$E = 57°59′19″ = 57 + \frac{59}{60} + \frac{19}{3600} = 57.988611°$$

$$\tan G = \sin F \times \tan E = \sin(36.449324°) \times \tan(57.988611°) = 0.950357$$

$$G = \tan^{-1}(0.950357) = 43.541944°$$

$$B = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times G° = 11.200 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 43.541944 = 8.511443$$

$$\tan D = \tan F \times \csc G = \tan(36.449324°) \times \csc(43.541944°) = 1.0721569$$

$$D = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \tan^{-1}(1.0721569) = 46.994354°$$

$$\cos H = \cos G \times \cos F = \cos(43.541944°) \times \cos(36.449324°) = 0.58307306$$

$$H = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \cos^{-1}(0.58307306) = 54.333023°$$

$$C = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times H° = 11.200 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 54.333023° = 10.62085$$

$$\text{Angles}(D + E + 90°) = 46.994354° + 57.988611° + 90° = 194.98297°$$

$$\text{Area} = 11.200^2 \times (194.98297 - 180) = 50.142591 \text{ in}^2$$

Example 4: A right spherical triangle on a 20-mm diameter sphere has two 90° angles, and the distance B between the 90° angles is $^1/_3$ the circumference of the sphere. Find angle E, the area of the triangle, and check using the conventional formula for area of a sphere.

Solution: By inspection, angle G is 360°/3 = 120°. Because angles D and G are known, angle E can be calculated using $\cos E = \cos G \times \sin D$. Therefore,

$$\cos E = \cos G \times \sin D = \cos(120°) \times \sin(90°) = -0.5$$

$$E = \cos^{-1}(-0.5) = 120°$$

$$\text{Area} = 10^2 \times \frac{\pi}{180}(120° + 90° + 90° - 180°) = 100 \times 2.0943951 = 209.4 \text{ mm}^2$$

$$\text{Check: Total area of 20-mm diameter sphere/6} = \frac{4\pi R^2}{6} = \frac{4\pi(100)}{6} = 209.4 \text{ mm}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Oblique Spherical Trigonometry.—The heavy solid lines *B*, *C*, and *S* of Fig. 2 represent the sides of an *oblique* spherical triangle. The dashed lines *J* and *L* are radii of the sphere extending from the center of the sphere to the vertices of the triangle. The several plane triangles, indicated by the various broken lines, are formed from the radii and vertices of the spherical triangle. *J* and *L* are radii and thus have the same value.

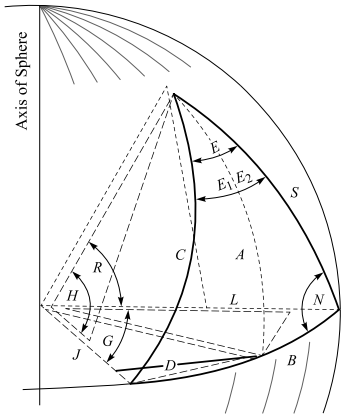


Fig. 2. Oblique Spherical Triangle

Formulas for Oblique Spherical Triangles

Formulas for Lengths				
$B = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times G^\circ$	$C = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times H^\circ$	$S = L \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times R^\circ$	$J = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{B}{G^\circ}$	$L = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{S}{R^\circ}$

Formulas for Angles		
$G^\circ = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{B}{J}$	$H^\circ = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{C}{J}$	$R^\circ = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{S}{L}$

Angular Relationships			
Angle	Relationships	Angle	Relationships
D	$\sin D = \sin R \times \sin E \times \csc G$	E	$\sin E = \sin D \times \sin G \times \csc R$
G	$\sin G = \sin R \times \sin E \times \csc D$	E_1	$\cot E_1 = \tan D \times \cos H$
N	$\cos N = \cos D \times \csc E_1 \times \sin E_2$	E_2	$\cot E_2 = \tan N \times \cos R$
N	$\cot\left(\frac{N}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{R+G}{2}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{R-G}{2}\right)} \times \tan\left(\frac{D-E}{2}\right)$	H	$\tan\left(\frac{H}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{D+E}{2}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{D-E}{2}\right)} \times \tan\left(\frac{R-G}{2}\right)$
R	$\sin R = \sin D \times \sin G \times \csc E$		

Area Formula
$\text{Area} = L^2 \times \frac{\pi}{180}(D + E + N - 180^\circ)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The side and angle labels in the examples that follow refer to those of the oblique spherical triangle in Fig. 2.

Example: An oblique spherical triangle is to be constructed on the surface of a sphere of unknown size. The length of side S will be 5.470 inches; the spherical angle of arc S must be 51° 17′ 31″ (angle R in Fig. 2). Angle D must be 59° 55′ 10″, and angle E must be 85° 36′ 32″. Find the size of the sphere, lengths of sides B and C, and the value of angle N.

Solution: Convert known angles to decimal degree format to simplify calculations:

$$R = 51° + \frac{17}{60} + \frac{31}{3600} = 51.291944°$$

$$D = 59° + \frac{55}{60} + \frac{10}{3600} = 59.919444°$$

$$E = 85° + \frac{36}{60} + \frac{32}{3600} = 85.608889°$$

Find the radius of the sphere:

$$L = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{S}{R°} = \frac{180}{\pi} \times \frac{5.470}{51.291944°} = 6.11 \text{ inches}$$

Find the values of angles of G and H in order to get lengths of sides B and C. Then solve for the value of angle N, and finally the area. Remember that both J and L are radii, thus $J = L$.

$$\sin G = \sin R \times \sin E \times \csc D = 0.780342 \times 0.997065 \times 1.15564$$
$$= 0.899148$$
$$G = \sin^{-1}(0.899148) = 64.046301°$$

$$B = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times G° = 6.11 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 64.046301° = 6.829873 \text{ inches}$$

$$\tan\left(\frac{H}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{D+E}{2}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{D-E}{2}\right)} \times \tan\left(\frac{R-G}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin(72.76417)}{\sin(-12.844723)} \times \tan(-6.377185)$$
$$= \frac{0.955093}{-0.222310}(-0.111765) = 0.480167$$

$$\frac{H}{2} = \tan^{-1}(0.480167) = 25.648772°, \qquad H = 51.297543°$$

$$C = J \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times H° = 6.11 \times \frac{\pi}{180} \times 51.297543° = 5.470350 \text{ inches}$$

$$\cot\left(\frac{N}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin\left(\frac{R+G}{2}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{R-G}{2}\right)} \times \tan\left(\frac{D-E}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin(57.669123)}{\sin(-6.377185)} \times \tan(-12.844723)$$
$$= \frac{0.844974}{-0.111073}(-0.228015) = 1.7345957$$

$$\frac{N}{2} = \cot^{-1}(1.7345957) = 29.963587°, \qquad N = 59.927175°$$

$$\text{Area} = L^2 \times \frac{\pi}{180}(D + E + N - 180°) = 16.585 \text{ in}^2$$

The triangle is an isosceles spherical triangle with legs B and C each being 5.470 inches.

If angle E_1 or E_2 is known, then any problem involving oblique spherical triangles can be solved as two right spherical triangles; in that case, the equations for right spherical triangles are used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Compound Angles

Referring to the *Formulas for Compound Angles* on page 121, in Fig. 1 is shown what might be considered as a thread-cutting tool without front clearance. A is a known angle in plane y-y of the top surface. C is the corresponding angle in plane x-x that is at some given angle B with plane y-y. Thus, angles A and B are components of the compound angle C.

Example Referring to Fig. 1*:* Angle $2A$ in plane y-y is known, as is angle B between planes x-x and y-y. It is required to find compound angle $2C$ in plane x-x.

Solution: Let $2A = 60$ and $B = 15$; then

$$\tan C = \tan A \times \cos B = \tan 30° \times \cos 15°$$
$$\tan C = 0.57735 \times 0.96592 = 0.55767$$
$$C = 29° 8.8′ \qquad 2C = 58° 17.6′$$

Fig. 2 shows a thread-cutting tool with front clearance angle B. Angle A is one-half the angle between the cutting edges in plane y-y of the top surface, and compound angle C is one-half the angle between the cutting edges in a plane x-x at right angles to the inclined front edge of the tool. The angle between planes y-y and x-x is, therefore, equal to clearance angle B.

Example Referring to Fig. 2*:* Find the angle $2C$ between the front faces of a thread-cutting tool having a known clearance angle B that will permit the grinding of these faces so their top edges form the desired angle $2A$ for cutting the thread.

Solution: Let $2A = 60$ and $B = 15$; then

$$\tan C = \frac{\tan A}{\cos B} = \frac{\tan 30°}{\cos 15°} = \frac{0.57735}{0.96592}$$
$$\tan C = 0.59772$$
$$C = 30° 52′ \qquad 2C = 61° 44′$$

In Fig. 3 is shown a form-cutting tool in which the angle A is one-half the angle between the cutting edges in plane y-y of the top surface; B is the front clearance angle; and C is one-half the angle between the cutting edges in plane x-x at right angles to the front edges of the tool. The formula for finding angle C when angles A and B are known is the same as that for Fig. 2.

Example Referring to Fig. 3*:* Find the angle $2C$ between the front faces of a form-cutting tool having a known clearance angle B that will permit the grinding of these faces so their top edges form the desired angle $2A$ for form cutting.

Solution: Let $2A = 46$ and $B = 12$; then

$$\tan C = \frac{\tan A}{\cos B} = \frac{\tan 23°}{\cos 12°} = \frac{0.42447}{0.97815}$$
$$\tan C = 0.43395$$
$$C = 23° 27.5′ \qquad 2C = 46° 55′$$

In Fig. 4 is shown a wedge-shaped block, the top surface of which is inclined at compound angle C with the base in a plane at right angles with the base and at angle R with the front edge. Angle A, in the vertical plane of the front of the plate, and angle B, in the vertical plane of one side that is at right angles to the front, are components of angle C.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Compound Angles

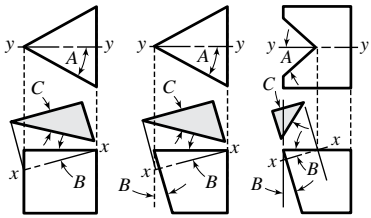


Fig. 1. Fig. 2. Fig. 3.

For given angles A and B, find the resultant angle C in plane x-x. Angle B is measured in vertical plane y-y of midsection.

Fig. 1 $\tan C = \tan A \times \cos B$

Fig. 2 $\tan C = \dfrac{\tan A}{\cos B}$

Fig. 3 (Same formula as for Fig. 2)

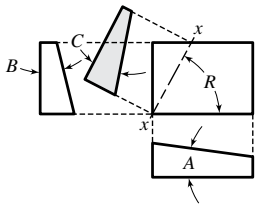


Fig. 4.

Fig. 4. In machining a plate to angles A and B, the plate is held at angle C in plane x-x. Angle of rotation R in plane parallel to base (or complement of R) is for locating plate so that plane x-x is perpendicular to axis of pivot on angle-plate or work-holding vise.

$$\tan R = \frac{\tan B}{\tan A}, \quad \tan C = \frac{\tan A}{\cos R}$$

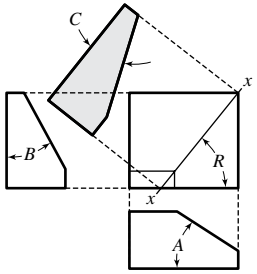


Fig. 5.

Fig. 5. Angle R in horizontal plane parallel to base is angle from plane x-x to side having angle A.

$$\tan R = \frac{\tan A}{\tan B}$$

$$\tan C = \tan A \times \cos R = \tan B \times \sin R$$

Compound angle C is angle in plane x-x from base to corner formed by intersection of planes inclined to angles A and B. This formula for C may be used to find cotangent of complement of C_1, Fig. 6.

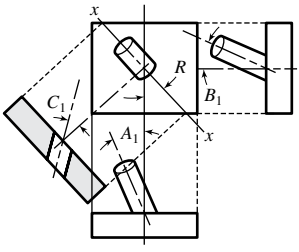


Fig. 6.

Fig. 6. Angles A_1 and B_1 are measured in vertical planes of front and side elevations. Plane x-x is located by angle R from center-line or from plane of angle B_1.

$$\tan R = \frac{\tan A_1}{\tan B_1}$$

$$\tan C_1 = \frac{\tan A_1}{\sin R} = \frac{\tan B_1}{\cos R}$$

The resultant angle C_1 would be required in drilling hole for pin.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

Example Referring to Fig. 4*:* Find the compound angle C of a wedge-shaped block having known component angles A and B in sides at right angles to each other.

C = compound angle in plane x-x, which is the resultant of angles A and B

Solution: Let $A = 47°14'$ and $B = 38°10'$; then

$$\tan R = \frac{\tan B}{\tan A} = \frac{\tan 38°10'}{\tan 47°14'} = \frac{0.78598}{1.0812} = 0.72695 \qquad R = 36°0.9'$$

$$\tan C = \frac{\tan A}{\cos R} = \frac{\tan 47°14'}{\cos 36°0.9'} = \frac{1.0812}{0.80887} = 1.3367 \qquad C = 53°12'$$

In Fig. 5 is shown a four-sided block, two sides of which are at right angles to each other and to the base of the block. The other two sides are inclined at an oblique angle with the base. Angle C is a compound angle formed by the intersection of these two inclined sides and the intersection of a vertical plane passing through x-x, and the base of the block. The components of angle C are angles A and B, and angle R is the angle in the base plane of the block between the plane of angle C and the plane of angle A.

Example Referring to Fig. 5*:* Find the angles C and R in the block shown in Fig. 5 when angles A and B are known.

Solution: Let angle $A = 27°$ and $B = 36°$; then

$$\cot C = \sqrt{\cot^2 A + \cot^2 B} = \sqrt{1.9626^2 + 1.3764^2} = \sqrt{5.74627572} = 2.3971$$

$$C = 22°38.6'$$

$$\tan R = \frac{\cot B}{\cot A} = \frac{\cot 36°}{\cot 27°} = \frac{1.3764}{1.9626} = 0.70131 \qquad R = 35°2.5'$$

Example Referring to Fig. 6*:* A rod or pipe is inserted into a rectangular block at an angle. Angle C_1 is the compound angle of inclination (measured from the vertical) in a plane passing through the center line of the rod or pipe and at right angles to the top surface of the block. Angles A_1 and B_1 are the angles of inclination of the rod or pipe when viewed respectively in the front and side planes of the block. Angle R is the angle between the plane of angle C_1 and the plane of angle B_1. Find angles C_1 and R when a rod or pipe is inclined at known angles A_1 and B_1.

Solution: Let $A_1 = 39°$ and $B_1 = 34°$; then

$$\tan C_1 = \sqrt{\tan^2 A_1 + \tan^2 B_1} = \sqrt{0.80978^2 + 0.67451^2} = 1.0539$$

$$C_1 = 46°30.2'$$

$$\tan R = \frac{\tan A_1}{\tan B_1} = \frac{0.80978}{0.67451} = 1.2005 \qquad R = 50°12.4'$$

Interpolation.—In mathematics, interpolation is the process of finding a value in a table or in a mathematical expression which falls between two given tabulated or known values. In engineering handbooks, the values of trigonometric functions are usually given only in degrees and minutes; hence, if the angle is given in degrees, minutes and seconds, the value of the function is determined from the nearest given values by interpolation.

Interpolation to Find Functions of an Angle: Assume that the sine of 14°22′26″ is to be determined. It is evident that this value lies between the sin 14° 22′ and the sin 14° 23′. sin 14° 23′ = 0.24841 and sin 14° 22′ = 0.24813. The difference is 0.24841 − 0.24813 = 0.00028. Consider this difference as a whole number (28) and multiply it by a fraction having as its numerator the number of seconds (26) in the given angle, and as its denominator 60 (number of seconds in one minute). Thus $^{26}/_{60} \times 28 = 12$ (nearly); hence, by adding 0.00012 to sin 14° 22′ we find that sin 14°22′26″ ≈ 0.24813 + 0.00012 = 0.24825. The correction value (represented in this example by 0.00012) is *added* to the function of the *smaller* angle nearest the given angle in dealing with *sines* or *tangents*, but this correction value is *subtracted* in dealing with cosines or cotangents.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MATRICES

Multiple variables are often present in technology and engineering scenarios; some examples include electrical circuitry, in which there is a long series of resistors, and cost analysis (labor, materials, capital) in industrial economics.

A system of linear equations can be solved by several methods, such as substitution and elimination (see pages 32 to 33, *Solving a System of Linear Equations* in *ALGEBRA*). Another way to solve a system, useful especially when more than two variables are involved, is to set up a *matrix* of the equations' coefficients.

A matrix consists of real numbers arranged in horizontal rows and vertical columns to form a rectangular array. An array of m rows and n columns is an $m \times n$ matrix (read as "m by n") and is written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & \cdot & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

The a_{ij} terms are called the entries or elements of the matrix. The subscript i identifies the row position of an entry, and the subscript j identifies its column position in the matrix. For example, in the matrix below, $a_{11} = 3, a_{12} = 4, a_{21} = -1$, and $a_{22} = 2$:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Special matrices used in matrix operations include:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ \cdot \\ a_{m1} \end{pmatrix}$$

Column Matrix $(m \times 1)$

$$(a_{11} \ \cdots \ a_{1n})$$

Row Matrix $(1 \times n)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{1} & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & a_{1n} \\ \cdot & \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & \cdot & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot & \cdot \\ a_{n1} & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}$$

Square Matrix $(n \times n)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & \cdot & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Zero, or Null, Matrix $(n \times n)$

The two types of special square matrices include:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{1} & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & \cdot & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & a_{nn} \end{pmatrix}$$

Diagonal Matrix $(n \times n)$
All entries are 0, except possibly those on the diagonal.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & a_{1n} \\ \cdot & \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & \cdot & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot & \cdot \\ a_{n1} & \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Identity Matrix $(n \times n)$
All diagonal entries are 1, all others are 0.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Matrix Operations

Matrix Addition and Subtraction.—The sum or difference of matrices is determined simply by adding or subtracting the corresponding elements of each matrix.

So, matrix C is the result of adding or subtracting matrices A and B; the entries are combined as follows:

$$a_{ij} + b_{ij} = c_{ij} \quad \text{or} \quad a_{ij} - b_{ij} = c_{ij}$$

Matrices must be the same size, $m \times n$, to be combined this way. That is, $A_{mn} + B_{mn} = C_{mn}$; $A_{mn} - B_{mn} = C_{mn}$.

An efficient way to indicate both + and – is with the symbol ±. Thus, in the matrix display below, $a_{ij} \pm b_{ij}$ covers both matrix operations.

Example 1:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 6 & -5 \\ 5 & -7 & 8 \\ -8 & 6 & -7 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 8 & -2 & 6 \\ -6 & 9 & 5 \\ 9 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (4+8) & (6-2) & (-5+6) \\ (5-6) & (-7+9) & (8+5) \\ (-8+9) & (6-2) & (-7+2) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 13 \\ 1 & 4 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix Multiplication.—Two matrices can be multiplied *only* if the number of columns in the first matrix equals the number of rows of the second matrix. For example, a 1×3 matrix can multiplied by a 3×2 matrix, but not the other way around. Or a 2×4 by a 4×3, in that order. In general, an $m \times n$ and an $n \times p$ can be multiplied; the product matrix is an $m \times p$ matrix. Matrix multiplication is not commutative, that is, $A \times B$ is not necessarily equal to $B \times A$.

The steps in matrix multiplication are shown in the instructive example below for a general 3×2 matrix multiplied by a 2×1 matrix. The result is a 3×1 matrix.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ -3 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \cdot 0 + 4 \cdot -2 \\ -3 \cdot 0 + 1 \cdot -2 \\ 2 \cdot 0 + -1 \cdot -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

In general, *each entry* $(AB)_{ij}$ in the product matrix (where i is the row number and j is the column number) is equal to $a_{i1}b_{1j} + a_{i2}b_{2j} + \ldots + a_{in}b_{nj}$. For example:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} \\ a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} \\ a_{31}b_{11} + a_{32}b_{21} & a_{31}b_{12} + a_{32}b_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

3×2 matrix × 2×2 matrix = 3×2 matrix

Example 2:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (1 \cdot 7 + 2 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot 4) & (1 \cdot 8 + 2 \cdot 2 + 3 \cdot 5) & (1 \cdot 9 + 2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 7) \\ (4 \cdot 7 + 5 \cdot 1 + 6 \cdot 4) & (4 \cdot 8 + 5 \cdot 2 + 6 \cdot 5) & (4 \cdot 9 + 5 \cdot 3 + 6 \cdot 7) \\ (3 \cdot 7 + 2 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 4) & (3 \cdot 8 + 2 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 5) & (3 \cdot 9 + 2 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot 7) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} (7+2+12) & (8+4+15) & (9+6+21) \\ (28+5+24) & (32+10+30) & (36+15+42) \\ (21+2+4) & (24+4+5) & (27+6+7) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 21 & 27 & 36 \\ 57 & 72 & 93 \\ 27 & 33 & 40 \end{bmatrix}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Transpose of a Matrix.—If the rows of a matrix A_{mn} are interchanged with its columns, the new matrix is called the *transpose of matrix A*, or A^T. The first row of the matrix becomes the first column in the transposed matrix, the second row of the matrix becomes the second column, and the third row of the matrix becomes the third column.

Example 3:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \qquad A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 7 \\ 2 & 5 & 8 \\ 3 & 6 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

Determinant of a Square Matrix.—Every square matrix A is associated with a real number, its determinant, which may be written det A or $|A|$.

$$\text{For } A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}, \det A = |A| = ad - bc.$$

Example 4: $$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \det A = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = (2)(-3) - (1)(-1) = -5$$

The process for taking the determinant of a 3×3 matrix is shown next. It entails multiplying the first entry of each column by the determinant of the remaining 2×2 matrix and alternately adding or subtracting the product.

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \det B = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} = a \begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ h & i \end{vmatrix} - b \begin{vmatrix} d & f \\ g & i \end{vmatrix} + c \begin{vmatrix} d & e \\ g & h \end{vmatrix}$$

Example 5: Find the determinant of the following matrix.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= 5(12 - 15) - 6(6 - 12) + 7(5 - 8) \\ &= 5(-3) - 6(-6) + 7(-3) = -15 + 36 - 21 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Minors and Cofactors.—The *minor* M_{ij} of a matrix A is the determinant of a submatrix resulting from the elimination of row i and column j. If A is a square matrix, the minor M_{ij} of the entry a_{ij} is the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the ith row and jth column of A.

The *cofactor* C_{ij} of the entry a_{ij} is given by $C_{ij} = (-1)^{(i+j)} M_{ij}$. Thus, the sign of cofactor a_{ij} alternates across the row it lies in. The matrix formed by its cofactors is called the *cofactor matrix*.

Example 6: Find the minors and cofactors of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution: To determine the minor M_{11}, delete the first row and first column of A and find the determinant of the resulting matrix.

$$M_{11} = \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = (5 \times 1) - (6 \times 2) = 5 - 12 = -7$$

Similarly to find M_{12}, delete the first row and second column of A and find the determinant of the resulting matrix.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$M_{12} = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = (4 \times 1) - (6 \times 3) = 4 - 18 = -14$$

Continuing this way, we obtain the following minors:

$$M_{11} = -7 \quad M_{12} = -14 \quad M_{13} = -7$$
$$M_{21} = -4 \quad M_{22} = -8 \quad M_{23} = -4$$
$$M_{31} = -3 \quad M_{32} = -6 \quad M_{33} = -3$$

To find the cofactor, calculate $C_{ij} = (-1)^{(i+j)} \times M_{ij}$, thus $C_{11} = (-1)^{(1+1)} \times M_{11} = 1 \times (-7) = -7$.

Similarly $C_{12} = (-1)^{(1+2)} \times M_{12} = (-1)(-14) = 14$, and continuing this way we obtain the following cofactors

$$C_{11} = -7 \quad C_{12} = 14 \quad C_{13} = -7$$
$$C_{21} = 4 \quad C_{22} = -8 \quad C_{23} = 4$$
$$C_{31} = -3 \quad C_{32} = 6 \quad C_{33} = -3$$

Thus, the cofactor matrix is $\begin{pmatrix} -7 & 14 & -7 \\ 4 & -8 & 4 \\ -3 & 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$

Adjoint of a Matrix.—The transpose of cofactor matrix is called the *adjoint* matrix. To obtain the adjoint matrix, the cofactor matrix is determined and then transposed.

Example 7: Find the adjoint matrix of A:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution: The cofactor matrix from the above example is shown below at the left, and the adjoint matrix is shown on the right.

$$\text{cofactor}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 14 & -7 \\ 4 & -8 & 4 \\ -3 & 6 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{adj}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 14 & -7 \\ 4 & -8 & 4 \\ -3 & 6 & -3 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 4 & -3 \\ 14 & -8 & 6 \\ -7 & 4 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Singularity and Rank of a Matrix.—A *singular* matrix is one whose determinant is zero. The *rank* of a matrix is the maximum number of linearly independent row or column vectors it contains. In *ALGEBRA*, *Solving a System of Linear Equations*, it is explained that a system with a unique solution is a linearly independent system. Such systems are vital to depicting many real-life processes. Dependent systems are those with infinite solutions (the lines are collinear), and their determinant is zero. Linearly independent vectors have a non-zero determinant.

Inverse of a Matrix.—A square non-singular matrix A has an inverse A^{-1} such that the product of matrix A and inverse matrix A^{-1} is the identity matrix I. The operation is commutative as well. Thus, $AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = I$. The inverse is the ratio of adjoint of the matrix and the determinant of that matrix.

$$A^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj}(A)}{|A|}$$

Example 8: What is the inverse of the following matrix?

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 & 6 \\ 1 & 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution: The basic formula of an inverse of a matrix is

$$A^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj}(A)}{|A|}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The determinant of A is

$$\begin{aligned}|A| &= 2(1\times 0 - 4\times 6) - 3(4\times 0 - 1\times 6) + 5(4\times 4 - 1\times 1)\\ &= 2(0-24) - 3(0-6) + 5(16-1)\\ &= -48 + 18 + 75 = 45\end{aligned}$$

The cofactors are

$$a_{11} = (-1)^{1+1}\begin{vmatrix}1 & 6\\ 4 & 0\end{vmatrix} = -24 \qquad a_{12} = (-1)^{1+2}\begin{vmatrix}4 & 6\\ 1 & 0\end{vmatrix} = 6 \qquad a_{13} = (-1)^{1+3}\begin{vmatrix}4 & 1\\ 1 & 4\end{vmatrix} = 15$$

$$a_{21} = (-1)^{2+1}\begin{vmatrix}3 & 5\\ 4 & 0\end{vmatrix} = 20 \qquad a_{22} = (-1)^{2+2}\begin{vmatrix}2 & 5\\ 1 & 0\end{vmatrix} = -5 \qquad a_{23} = (-1)^{2+3}\begin{vmatrix}2 & 3\\ 1 & 4\end{vmatrix} = -5$$

$$a_{31} = (-1)^{3+1}\begin{vmatrix}3 & 5\\ 1 & 6\end{vmatrix} = 13 \qquad a_{32} = (-1)^{3+2}\begin{vmatrix}2 & 5\\ 4 & 6\end{vmatrix} = 8 \qquad a_{33} = (-1)^{3+3}\begin{vmatrix}2 & 3\\ 4 & 1\end{vmatrix} = -10$$

The matrix of cofactors is $\begin{bmatrix}-24 & 6 & 15\\ 20 & -5 & -5\\ 13 & 8 & -10\end{bmatrix}$ and the adjoint matrix is $\begin{bmatrix}-24 & 20 & 13\\ 6 & -5 & 8\\ 15 & -5 & -10\end{bmatrix}$

Then the inverse of matrix A is

$$A^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj}(A)}{|A|} = \frac{1}{45}\begin{bmatrix}-24 & 20 & 13\\ 6 & -5 & 8\\ 15 & -5 & -10\end{bmatrix}$$

Multiplying A^{-1} by A results in the identity matrix:

$$\frac{1}{45}\begin{pmatrix}-24 & 20 & 13\\ 6 & -5 & 8\\ 15 & -5 & -10\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}2 & 3 & 5\\ 4 & 1 & 6\\ 1 & 4 & 0\end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{45}\begin{pmatrix}45 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 45 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 45\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}$$

Solving a System of Equations.— Matrices can be used to solve systems of simultaneous equations with a large number of unknowns. Geometrically, the solution of a system is the point in the plane or in space where the lines intersect. Variables may represent the unknowns in industrial and other engineering applications: a series of resistances in a circuit, for example, or, perhaps, factors in a manufacturing process, such as labor costs, materials, and equipment. Generally, this method is less cumbersome than using substitution methods (see *Solving a System of Linear Equations* in *ALGEBRA*). The coefficients of the equations are placed in matrix form. The matrix is then transformed by row and column operations into the identity matrix to yield a solution. The process, as described in the example, is called *matrix reduction to row echelon form*. It is done using any or all of three valid vector operations: 1) multiplying each entry in a row by a constant; 2) adding or subtracting two rows; 3) changing the order of rows.

Example 9: Solve the system of linear equations in three dimensions using matrix operations.

$$\begin{aligned}-4x_1 + 8x_2 + 12x_3 &= 16\\ 3x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 5\\ x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 &= 10\end{aligned}$$

Solution: First, the equation coefficients and constants are placed into what is called an *augmented matrix*. The object is to transform the matrix of the original coefficients into the following form, thereby obtaining a solution (x_1, x_2, x_3) to the system of equations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} -4 & 8 & 12 & 16 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 7 & 6 & 10 \end{array}\right] \Leftrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & x_1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & x_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & x_3 \end{array}\right]$$

The coefficient matrix is transformed so that element c_{11} is 1 and all other elements in the first column are 0, as follows: a) divide row 1 (R_1) by –4; b) multiply new R_1 by –3, then add to R_2; and c) multiply R_1 by –1, then add to R_3.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} \frac{-4}{-4} & \frac{8}{-4} & \frac{12}{-4} & \frac{16}{-4} \\ 3 & -1 & 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 7 & 6 & 10 \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ (3-3) & (-1+6) & (2+9) & (5+12) \\ (1-1) & (7+2) & (6+3) & (10+4) \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ 0 & 5 & 11 & 17 \\ 0 & 9 & 9 & 14 \end{array}\right]$$

The resulting matrix is transformed so that element c_{22} is 1 and all other elements in the second column are 0, as follows: a) divide R_3 by 9; b) multiply new R_3 by –5, then add to R_2; c) multiply R_3 by 2, then add to R_1; and d) swap R_2 and R_3.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ 0 & 5 & 11 & 17 \\ \frac{0}{9} & \frac{9}{9} & \frac{9}{9} & \frac{14}{9} \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & (-2+2) & (-3+2) & \left(-4+\frac{28}{9}\right) \\ 0 & (5-5) & (11-5) & \left(17-\frac{70}{9}\right) \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{14}{9} \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & -\frac{8}{9} \\ 0 & 0 & 6 & \frac{83}{9} \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{14}{9} \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & -\frac{8}{9} \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{14}{9} \\ 0 & 0 & 6 & \frac{83}{9} \end{array}\right]$$

The resulting matrix is finally reduced so that element c_{33} is 1 and all other elements in the third column are 0, as follows: a) divide R_3 by 6; b) multiply new R_3 by –1, then add to R_2; and c) add R_3 to R_1.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & -\frac{8}{9} \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{14}{9} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{6}{6} & \frac{83}{9(6)} \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & (-1+1) & \left(-\frac{8}{9}+\frac{83}{54}\right) \\ 0 & 1 & (1-1) & \left(\frac{14}{9}-\frac{83}{54}\right) \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{83}{54} \end{array}\right] \Rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{35}{54} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{54} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{83}{54} \end{array}\right]$$

When the identity matrix has been formed, the last column contains the values of x_1, x_2, and x_3 that satisfy the original equations.

$$x_1 = \frac{35}{54} \qquad x_2 = \frac{1}{54} \qquad x_3 = \frac{83}{54}$$

Checking that the solutions satisfy the original system:

$$-4\left(\frac{35}{54}\right) + 8\left(\frac{1}{54}\right) + 12\left(\frac{83}{54}\right) = \frac{864}{54} = 16$$

$$3\left(\frac{35}{54}\right) - 1\left(\frac{1}{54}\right) + 2\left(\frac{83}{54}\right) = \frac{270}{54} = 5$$

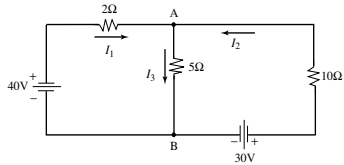
$$1\left(\frac{35}{54}\right) + 7\left(\frac{1}{54}\right) + 6\left(\frac{83}{54}\right) = \frac{540}{54} = 10$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 10: Use matrix operations to find the amperages of the currents (I_1, I_2, I_3) in the following electrical network.

By Kirchoff's first law, concerning the sum of currents: $I_1 + I_2 = I_3$

that is, $I_1 + I_2 - I_3 = 0$



By Kirchoff's second law, concerning the sum of voltages, and Ohm's law, that voltage is the product of current and resistance:

$$2I_1 + 5I_3 - 40 = 0$$

$$10I_2 + 5I_3 - 30 = 0$$

By combining the three equations, a linear system of independent equations is formed. A system is linearly independent if no one equation is a constant multiple of any other. That is, the equations represent distinct lines, but they are not parallel (hence, they have a solution, that is, a point of intersection). Solve the system for the currents I_1, I_2, and I_3:

$$I_1 + I_2 - I_3 = 0$$

$$2I_1 + 5I_3 = 40$$

$$10I_2 + 5I_3 = 30$$

Solution: If A is the matrix of coefficients of the currents, B is the matrix of the currents themselves (the variables), and C is the matrix of constants from the right side of the equations (the voltages), then the problem can be written in the following form: $AB = C$, or equivalently, $B = A^{-1}C$, where A^{-1} is the inverse of matrix A.

Thus,

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 10 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \qquad B = \begin{bmatrix} I_1 \\ I_2 \\ I_3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 40 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} I_1 \\ I_2 \\ I_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 10 & 5 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 40 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix}$$

Using the method of Example 8, the inverse of matrix A is

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 10 & 5 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = -\frac{1}{80}\begin{bmatrix} 50 & 15 & -5 \\ 10 & -5 & 7 \\ -20 & 10 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{5}{8} & \frac{3}{16} & -\frac{1}{16} \\ \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{1}{16} & \frac{7}{80} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{40} \end{bmatrix}$$

and finally, matrix B can be found by matrix multiplication:

$$B = A^{-1}C = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{5}{8} & \frac{3}{16} & -\frac{1}{16} \\ \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{1}{16} & \frac{7}{80} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{40} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 40 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5.625 \\ 0.125 \\ 5.75 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, $I_1 = 5.625$ amps, $I_2 = 0.125$ amp, and $I_3 = 5.75$ amps.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CALCULUS

Problems in engineering and other sciences are often modeled by functions other than simple first- and second-degree polynomials. The features of higher order polynomials, as well as trigonometric and other non-algebraic functions, are found using techniques of calculus. The essential operations of calculus are *differentiation* and *antidifferentiation* (or *integration*). Brief explanations of these processes, as well as detailed formulas, are given here.

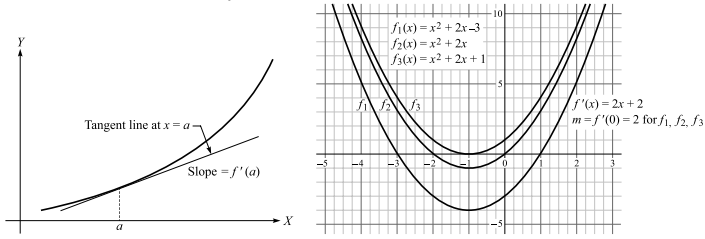
Derivatives

Between any two points of a linear function $y = mx + b$, the change in y with respect to x is the constant m. Most functions of interest, however, are nonlinear. For example, the velocity of a projectile is not modeled by a line, since objects are subject to gravity, among other outside forces, and therefore accelerate as they fall. The *instantaneous rate of change* of a function $y = f(x)$ at a single point of a curve is a critical feature for any model. This quantity is called the *derivative of f with respect to x* (or other independent variable).

A derivative is notated in one of three ways: y', $f'(x)$, or dy/dx. As an example, the instantaneous rate of change of *displacement s* of an object at any instant in time t is its derivative function, *velocity*; that is, $s'(t)$ or $ds/dt = v(t)$.

Graphically, the derivative function gives the *slope* of the line tangent to a point of the graph of f. That is, $y' = m_{\tan}$. Any constant function $y = c$ has a slope of zero, since its graph is a horizontal line. Hence, $y' = 0$ at every point of a line. Fig. 1a shows a portion of a nonlinear function. The tangent line drawn to the point of the curve at x has a slope equal to the derivative $f'(x)$.

Any group of curves that represent a *family* of functions, such as the parabolas f_1, f_2, and f_3 in Fig. 1b, have the same derivative function, since the slope of the tangent lines at any given value of x is the same for each curve. The slope of the tangent line drawn to each of the curves at $x = 0$ is $f'(0) = 2(0) + 2 = 2$.



(a) (b)

Fig. 1. (a) $f'(x)$ gives the slope of the tangent line to a curve $f(x)$ for any x in the domain; (b) A family of parabola functions, all with the same derivative function, $f'(x) = 2x + 2$.

Any continuous, smooth function is *differentiable* (that is, it has a derivative) at each point on its domain. (Roughly speaking, a "continuous" function has no breaks, and a "smooth" function has no sharp corners.) Polynomial, trigonometric, exponential, and logarithmic functions are differentiable everywhere on their domains. To "differentiate" a function means to find (or "take") its derivative.

Derivative Formulas.—The formulas used most often in derivative applications are:

Constant: If $y = c$, then $y' = 0$.

Coefficient: If $y = cx$, then $y' = c$.

Power: If $y = x^n$, then $y' = nx^{n-1}$, for any n in the set of real numbers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Note: The power rules when $n = -1$ and when $n = ½$ are often stated as their own rules:

$$y' = x^{-1}, \quad y' = -x^{-2} = \frac{-1}{x^2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = \sqrt{x} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad y' = \tfrac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{2x^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$$

Logarithmic:

For any base a, if $y = \log_a x$, then $y' = \frac{1}{x \ln a}$; for natural base e, $y = \ln x$, then $y' = \frac{1}{x}$.

Exponential: If $y = a^x$, then $y' = a^x \ln a$. If $y = e^x$, then $y' = e^x$.

Trigonometric:

If $y = \sin x$, then $y' = \cos x$. If $y = \cos x$, then $y' = -\sin x$. If $y = \tan x$, then $y' = \sec^2 x$.

For a complete list of the differentiation formulas, see *Table of Derivatives and Integrals*.

Derivative Rules.—Just like other functions, derivatives have certain properties:

	Rule	*Example*
Sum or difference	$(f \pm g)'(x) = f'(x) \pm g'(x)$	$y = x^5 + \frac{1}{x} - 9, \quad y' = 5x^4 - \frac{1}{x^2}$
Product	$(fg)'(x) = f'(x)g(x) + g'(x)f(x)$	$y = 2x \ln x, \quad y' = 2 \ln x + (2x)\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = 2 \ln x + 2$
Quotient	$\left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right)' = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - g'(x)f(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$	$y = \frac{4x-9}{x^2}, \quad y' = \frac{4x^2 - (4x-9)(2x)}{\left(x^2\right)^2} = \frac{4x^2 - 8x^2 + 18x}{x^4}$
Chain rule	$[f(u(x))]' = f'(u(x))u'(x)$	$y = \sqrt{x^2 + 5x - 1} = \left(x^2 + 5x - 1\right)^{1/2}$ $y' = \frac{1}{2}\left(x^2 + 5x - 1\right)^{-1/2}(2x + 5) = \frac{2x + 5}{2\,(x^2 + 5x - 1)^{1/2}}$

Integrals (Antiderivatives)

The other fundamental calculus operation, *antidifferentiation*, also called *integration*, is the reverse process of differentiation. Whereas derivatives are rate-of-change functions, antiderivatives are *accumulation* functions.

We define F to be *an antiderivative* of f if $F'(x) = f(x)$. Each function in a *family of antiderivatives* $F(x) + C$, where c is a constant, has the same derivative f, since $(F + C)' = F' + C' = F' + 0 = F'$. For this reason, an antiderivative function $F(x)$ also is called an *indefinite integral*. The operation of antidifferentiation is indicated by the notation $F(x) = \int f(x)dx$.

A *definite integral* indicates the *area* under f on a closed interval $[a, b]$ of its domain (Fig. 2). It is denoted by $F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(x)dx$, where a and b are the *bounds of integration*, and $F(a)$ and $F(b)$ are the antiderivative values of f at these bounds.

Just as velocity is the derivative of displacement, so displacement is the antiderivative of velocity. On a time interval $[t_1, t_2]$, displacement is found by $s(t_2) - s(t_1) = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t)\,dt$.

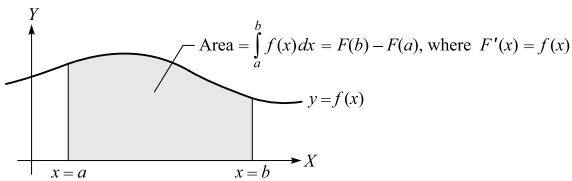


Fig. 2. The definite integral on $[a, b]$ is the area under the curve from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Integral Rules.—Integration rules are somewhat similar to differentiation rules, since they undo what the derivative does. The analogous processes for the chain, product, and quotient rules of derivatives are covered by either *u*-substitution or integration by parts for integrals. *Table of Derivatives and Integrals* contains integration formulas.

Newton's Method for Solving Equations.—Algebraic (polynomial, rational, and root) and transcendental (trigonometric, exponential and logarithmic) equations often can be quickly solved directly, using the processes described in *ALGEBRA* and *TRIGONOMETRY* (for example, $\cos x = 1$ or $\log x = 4$). But, long before there were calculators that could solve less straightforward equations to a high degree of accuracy, *approximation methods* were developed. One such method is *Newton's* (or the *Newton-Raphson*) method, which produces excellent approximations of the solution of more difficult equations, with the help of differentiation. Some equations that can be solved by Newton's method are:

$$x^2 = 101 \qquad x^3 - 2x^2 = 5 \qquad \cos x = x$$

Rewriting any of these equations as a function $f(x) = 0$ converts the problem into one of finding the roots of $f(x)$—that is, those values where the function crosses the x-axis. For example, $x^2 = 101$ is rewritten as $f(x) = x^2 - 101 = 0$. This function has two real roots (see *ALGEBRA*). A good first estimate of the positive root is 10. Rewriting the other two equations, $x^3 - 2x^2 = 5$ and $\cos x = x$ in the $f(x) = 0$ form does not give as obvious an estimate of the root(s), but by inspection (trial and error) or a rough graph, an estimate can be made. In each case, this first estimate is called r_1. From these, successive estimates $r_2, r_3, \ldots$ are made, each progressively closer to the exact value of the root.

After estimating r_1, the first derivative of the function, $f'(x)$, is found. This is the equation for the function's instantaneous rate of change at any value of x. $f'(x)$ is the equation that gives the slope of the line tangent to the function's curve at a given x.

In the above examples, $f'(x)$ is, respectively, $2x$, $3x^2 - 4x$, and $-\sin x + 1$. These were found by the methods described in *Table of Derivatives and Integrals* on page 133.

Starting with the first estimate, the steps of Newton's method are as follows:

r_1 is the first estimate of the value of the root of $f(x) = 0$.

Find $f(r_1)$, the value of $f(x)$ at $x = r_1$.

Find $f'(x)$, the first derivative of $f(x)$.

Find $f'(r_1)$, the value of $f'(x)$ at $x = r_1$.

Get the second approximation of the root of $f(x) = 0$, r_2, by calculating

$$r_2 = r_1 - f(r_1)/f'(r_1)$$

and, further approximations,

$$r_n = r_{n-1} - f(r_{n-1})/f'(r_{n-1})$$

Example: Find the square root of 101 using the Newton-Raphson method.

Solution: The problem is restated as the algebraic equation $x^2 = 101$, rewritten as $x^2 - 101 = 0$, and solved for the positive root. $r_1 = 10$ is a good first estimate. Then, apply the steps of the algorithm:

$$f(r_1) = f(10) = 10^2 - 101 = -1$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Step 2. The first derivative, $f'(x)$, of $x^2 - 101$ is $2x$, as stated previously, so that $f'(10) = 2(10) = 20$. Then,

$r_2 = r_1 - f(r_1)/f'(r_1) = 10 - (-1)/20 = 10 + 0.05 = 10.05$

Check: $10.05^2 = 101.0025$; a calculator determination of $\sqrt{101}$ gives 10.0498756; the error using Newton's method is 0.0001244.

Step 3. The next, better approximation is

$r_3 = r_2 - f(r_2)/f'(r_2) = 10.05 - f(10.05)/f'(10.05)$

$= 10.05 - (10.05^2 - 101)/2(10.05) = 10.049875$

Check: $10.049875^2 = 100.9999875$; error $= 0.0000125$

Closer approximations result from subsequent applications of the algorithm.

Formulas for Differential and Integral Calculus.—The following are formulas for obtaining the derivatives and integrals of basic mathematical functions. In these formulas, the letters a, b, and c denote constants; the letter x denotes a variable; and the letters u and v denote functions of the variable x. The expression d/dx means the derivative with respect to x, and as such applies to whatever expression in parentheses follows it. Thus, $d(cx)/dx$ means the derivative with respect to the variable x of the product cx where c is a constant.

Table of Derivatives and Integrals

Derivatives	Integrals
$\frac{d}{dx}(c) = 0$	$\int c\,dx = cx + \text{constant}$
$\frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$	$\int 1\,dx = x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$, for all real numbers n	$\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C$, for all real numbers $n \neq -1$
$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -\frac{1}{x^2} + C$	$\int \frac{dx}{ax+b} = \frac{1}{a}\ln\lvert ax+b\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\log_a x) = \frac{1}{x \ln a}$	$\int \frac{1}{x}dx = \ln\lvert x\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$	$\int e^x dx = e^x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{ax}) = ae^{ax}$	$e^{ax}dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a} + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(a^x) = a^x \ln a$	$\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a} + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{x}) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$	$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2\sqrt{x} + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x}$	$\int \ln x\,dx = x\ln x - x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x$	$\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x + C$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table of Derivatives and Integrals *(Continued)*

Derivatives	Integrals
$\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x$	$\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x$	$\int \tan x\,dx = -\ln\lvert\cos x\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x$	$\int \cot x\,dx = \ln\lvert\sin x\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x\tan x$	$\int \sin^2 x\,dx = -\frac{1}{4}\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x\cot x$	$\int \cos^2 x\,dx = \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}x + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\quad x \neq 1, -1$	$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{b^2-x^2}} = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{b}\right) + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\cos^{-1} x) = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\quad x \neq 1, -1$	$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-b^2}} = \ln\left(\frac{x}{b} + \frac{\sqrt{x^2-b^2}}{b}\right) + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$	$\int \frac{dx}{b^2+x^2} = \frac{1}{b}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{b}\right) + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\cot^{-1} x) = \frac{-1}{1+x^2}$	$\int \frac{dx}{b^2-x^2} = \frac{1}{b}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{b}\right) = \frac{-1}{2b}\log\left[\frac{\lvert x-b\rvert}{\lvert x+b\rvert}\right] + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\sec^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}\quad x \neq 1, -1$	$\int \frac{dx}{x^2-b^2} = -\frac{1}{b}\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{b}\right) = \frac{1}{2b}\log\left[\frac{\lvert x-b\rvert}{\lvert x+b\rvert}\right] + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\csc^{-1} x) = \frac{-1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}\quad x \neq 1, -1$	$\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}\tan^{-1}\left[\frac{2ax+b}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}\right] + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(\sin x)) = \cot x$	$\int e^{ax}\sin(bx)\,dx = \frac{a\sin(bx) - b\cos(bx)}{a^2+b^2}e^{ax} + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(\cos x)) = -\tan x$	$\int e^{ax}\cos(bx)\,dx = \frac{a\cos(bx) + b\sin(bx)}{a^2+b^2}e^{ax} + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(\tan x)) = \frac{2}{\sin(2x)}$	$\int \frac{1}{\sin x}dx = \ln\lvert\csc x - \cot x\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(\cot x)) = \frac{-2}{\sin(2x)}$	$\int \frac{1}{\cos x}dx = \ln\lvert\sec x + \tan x\rvert + C$
$\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(ax+b)) = \frac{a}{ax+b}$	$\int \frac{1}{1+\cos x}dx = \csc x - \cot x + C$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

Series Representation of a Function

Some hand calculations, as well as computer programs of certain types of mathematical problems, may be facilitated by the use of an appropriate series. For example, in some gear problems, the angle corresponding to a given or calculated involute function (see *TRIGONOMETRY*) is found by using a series together with an iterative procedure such as the Newton-Raphson method described in the previous section. The following are those series most commonly used for such purposes. In the series for trigonometric functions, the angles x are in radians (1 radian = 180/π degrees, or about 57.3 degrees). The expression $\exp(-x^2)$ means that the base e of the natural logarithm system is raised to the $-x^2$ power, where $e = 2.7182818$.

A sum of terms in a sequence of terms is called a *series*. In its simplest notation, the infinite sum of the sequence $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots$ is the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n = a_0 + a_1 + a_2 + \ldots$. For example, for the sequence of $x, x^2, x^3, \ldots$, the series is given as $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^n = x^1 + x^2 + \ldots = x^1 + x^2 + \ldots$.

In calculus, it is helpful to represent certain functions by a special series called the Taylor series. In a manner similar to the Newton-Raphson method, the terms of a Taylor series include the derivatives of the function being approximated. In the table below, common functions and their corresponding infinite series are shown. For any x in the domain (shown to the right of each series), the value of the function can be found.

Common Series

$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots$	for all real x
$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots$	for all real x
$\tan x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2x^5}{15} + \frac{17x^7}{315} + \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert < \frac{\pi}{2}$
$\sin^{-1} x = x + \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{3x^5}{40} + \frac{15x^5}{336} + \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\cos^{-1} x = \frac{\pi}{2} - (x + \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{3x^5}{40} + \frac{15x^5}{336} + \cdots) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1} x$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\tan^{-1} x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \cdots$	
$e = 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots$	
$e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$	for all real x
$a^x = 1 + \frac{x \ln a}{1!} + \frac{(x \ln a)^2}{2!} + \frac{(x \ln a)^3}{3!} + \cdots$	for all real x
$\ln(1 + x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \cdots$	for $-1 < x \le 1$
$\frac{1}{1+x} = 1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\frac{1}{1-x} = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\frac{1}{(1+x)^2} = 1 - 2x + 3x^2 - 4x^3 + 5x^4 - \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\frac{1}{(1-x)^2} = 1 + 2x + 3x^2 + 4x^3 + 5x^4 + \cdots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x}} = 1 - \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1 \cdot 3x^2}{2 \cdot 4} - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5x^3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} - \ldots$	for $\lvert x\rvert \le 1$
$(a+x)^n = a^n + \frac{na^{(n-1)}x}{1!} + \frac{(n-1)na^{n-2}x^2}{2!} + \frac{(n-2)(n-1)a^{n-3}x^3}{3!} + \ldots$	for all real x

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

STATISTICAL ANALYSIS OF MANUFACTURING DATA

Statistics Theory in Brief

High-volume manufacturing production, unlike prototype design work, typically involves repeating machining operations and processes hundreds, thousands, or even millions of times during a given product or product family's production run. Understanding the failure mechanisms in a product's tooling and improving the efficiency of these operations by adjusting manufacturing parameters brings many essential benefits to the manufacturing process. Seeing where failure and inefficiency occur can save on tool wear of indexable inserts, milling cutters, reamers, twist drills, etc.; improve speed, feeds, and power consumption profiles; reduce machine tool accuracy drift; and reduce lubrication and other maintenance-related failures. Improving these and other related process, even by a tiny amount, can result in huge cost savings in large production run environments.

To begin this process, measurements and other production process values must be collected so that patterns can be found. This is the collection of *raw* (or *source*) *data*. The information is put into tables (tabular form), to be processed (usually) by a computer program that analyzes and interprets it by rigorous *statistical analysis*. Without statistics theory, it would be impossible to know whether or not the testing was comprehensive enough to offer valid experimental conclusions that can then be used to make manufacturing process changes.

Probability.—In commercial enterprises, predictions about a particular outcome or event are made regularly to determine best practices and to minimize risk. Predictions are formed by observing events and collecting data, which is then interpreted using statistical analysis, based on concepts of *probability theory*. Probability is the likelihood of an event happening randomly among all possible events. Simple experiments, such as observing the number of times heads or tails turn up in a coin toss, and complex ones, like locating the position of an electron in an atom, are studied using probability. Data analysis enables development of a detailed statistical picture of the event being studied, and probability quantifies how likely the particular event is.

In industry, statistical analysis is used to investigate data to evaluate the success and/or efficiency of a manufacturing process. Statistical methods are described in this section using these terms:

Experiment: A well-defined action that is repeatable.
Data: Information collected during an experiment.
Trial: A particular performance of an experiment.
Set: A collection of events (or elements), such as may occur in an experiment.
Sample space: The set of all possible outcomes.
Event: Any subset of the sample space; one outcome or a collection of outcomes.
Probability of an event: Ratio of number of outcomes of a particular event to total number of outcomes possible in the sample space of events.

The probability of an event can be expressed as a *decimal* between 0 and 1, as a *fraction*, or as a *percent* between 0 and 100. The sum of all probabilities for outcomes of a particular experiment is 1; that is, it is 100% likely that one of the outcomes will occur.

In the coin toss example, each toss is a trial, and there are two possible outcomes: heads or tails (as long as the coin is fair, that is, both sides have an equal chance of turning up). So the probability of tossing a head is $^1/_2$ or 0.5 (50%). As another example with two outcomes, consider a water treatment plant with 34 female workers (set A) and 36 male workers (set B); the universal set is 34 + 36 = 70 workers. The probability that a female worker is chosen at random from the universal set is 34/70, or approximately 0.486 (48.6%).

In manufacturing parts, the probability of a defective part occurring in a production run would be the number of parts found to be defective (the "event") in relation to the total number of parts in the run (the "trials"); defective parts ought to be far fewer than acceptable ones. So, to say there is a 3% probability of a defect means that for every 100 parts that are produced, on average, 3 will be defective and the other 97 will be acceptable. In other words, the predicted defect rate is 3% and the yield of acceptable parts is 97%.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Such simple examples are not that useful in explaining *manufacturing statistics*, where any event can have many values—for instance, in the hardness of an alloy or duration of tool life. However, more complex statistical analysis starts with the same concepts: whether a company is inspecting for defects or for a range of values of physical characteristics, the analysis involves how data from an experiment is regarded and how it can be used to determine the probability of various outcomes.

Statistical analysis depends on the type of statistical distributions that apply to various properties of the data being examined.

Some common statistical distributions are: 1) normal; 2) log-normal; 3) exponential; 4) binomial; 5) Weibull; and 6) Poisson. Normal distribution is described here.

Normal Distribution Analysis.—The *normal* distribution is the most widely used statistical distribution for modeling mechanical, physical, electrical, and chemical properties that scatter randomly about a well-defined mean value without either positive or negative bias. This curve is frequently called a bell curve. In the following discussion, the characteristics of the normal distribution curve are assumed.

Statistical analysis of raw data is a crucially important scientific and engineering tool that summarizes the characteristics of samples (number of observations, trials, data points, etc.). If a sample of data is randomly selected from the population, its statistical characteristics converge towards the statistical characteristics of the population as the sample size increases. Because economic constraints, such as testing time and cost, prevent a large number of repeat tests, it is important to understand how a sample of data represents an approximation of the real population of data. The following parameters must be calculated to evaluate the sample of data with respect to the population of data:

$\overline{X}$ = sample mean S = sample standard deviation V = coefficient of variation
A_x = absolute error of the sample mean
R_x = relative error of the sample mean
t = critical value of t-distribution (or Student's t-distribution)
μ = population mean σ = population standard deviation
$\overline{X} \pm t\,A_x$ = confidence interval for the population mean

Sample Mean ($\overline{X}$): There are several types of *average* measures, the most common being the *arithmetic mean*, or *sample mean*. It is the value about which all data are "centered." The sample mean $\overline{X}$ is calculated as:

$$\overline{X} = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \tag{1}$$

where x_i = individual data point values, and n = number of data points. According to the *central limit theorem*, when a large number of samples is taken independently from a population, the sample *means* follow a normal distribution, regardless of how data in each sample are distributed.

Sample Standard Deviation (S): A measure of the dispersion of data about its standard mean $\overline{X}$. The sample standard deviation is calculated by the formula:

$$S = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i - \overline{X})^2}{n-1}} \tag{2}$$

where $n-1$ = the number of *degrees of freedom* (*d.f.*)

Degrees of Freedom (d.f.): The number of observations made in excess of the minimum needed to estimate a statistical parameter or quantity. For example, only one measurement is required to identify the width of an indexable insert's flank wear that occurs while machining a workpiece. If the measurements are repeated seven times, then the sample variance of flank wear measurement has six degrees of freedom.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coefficient of Variation (V): Used to evaluate or control the variability in data points. The coefficient of variation is calculated by dividing the sample standard deviation S by the sample mean $\overline{X}$ and expressing the result as a percent:

$$V = \frac{S}{\overline{X}} 100\% \tag{3}$$

Absolute Error of the Sample Mean (A_x): Calculated by dividing the sample standard deviation by the square root of the number of data points. The result is expressed in the same unit of measure as the sample standard deviation and the sample mean:

$$A_x = \frac{S}{\sqrt{n}} \tag{4}$$

Relative Error of the Sample Mean (R_x): Calculated by dividing the absolute error of the sample mean by the sample mean and expressing the result as a percent:

$$R_x = \frac{A_x}{\overline{X}} (100) \tag{5}$$

Critical Value of "t-Distribution" ("Student's t-distribution"): The *t-distribution* was discovered in 1908, by W. S. Gosset, who wrote under the name "Student" (the brewery he worked for did not allow him to publish under his own name). The critical value of t depends on the number of degrees of freedom and the probability of error. If a 95% two-sided confidence is used for statistical analysis, then the probability of error is 5%, or 2.5% per side. A 5% probability of error provides practical accuracy, which is commonly acceptable in various engineering calculations. The t-distribution is broader than the normal distribution for small sample sizes, but approaches the shape of a normal distribution as sample size increases, with the difference negligible even for moderately large sample sizes ($n > 30$).

For a 5% probability of error, the critical value of t-distribution can be determined from Table 1, page 140, at the intersection of the column under the heading $t_{0.025}$ and the row corresponding to the number of degrees of freedom shown in the column heading *d.f.*

Population Mean (μ): The normal distribution has two parameters: the population mean μ and the population standard deviation S. The sample mean $\overline{X}$ is an estimate of the population mean ($\overline{X} \approx \mu$), and the sample standard deviation is an estimate of the population standard deviation ($\sigma \approx S$). A graph of the normal distribution is symmetric about its mean μ. Virtually all of the area (99.74%) under the graph is contained within the interval:

$$(\mu - 3\sigma, \mu + 3\sigma)$$

The population mean lies at the center of the normal distribution curve. Thus, almost all of the probability associated with a normal distribution falls within ± three standard deviations of the population mean μ. Also, 95.44% of the area falls within ± two standard deviations of μ, and 68.26% within ± one standard deviation.

Confidence Interval for the Population Mean: The interval of the normal curve associated with the probability of a parameter occurring is the *confidence interval*. The probability itself is the *confidence level*. The ends of this interval are the *confidence limits*. Larger samples tend to give better estimates of a population parameter. A higher confidence level tends to produce a wider confidence interval. Confidence levels of 90%, 95%, and 99% are commonly used. For example, a 95% confidence level implies that the true population parameter (say, a measurement being looked at) has a 95% probability of falling within the presented interval.

Equations (1) through (5) describe a sample mean that is only an estimate of the true (population) mean. Therefore, it is important to define a confidence interval that determines a range within which the population mean lies. Such an interval depends on

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the sample mean, $\overline{X}$, absolute error of the sample mean, A_x, and *t*-distribution (Student's) value. A confidence interval for the population mean satisfies the inequality:

$$\overline{X} - A_x t \le \mu \le \overline{X} + A_x t \tag{6}$$

Applying Statistics

Minimum Number of Test or Data Points.—The minimum number of data points needed to represent a sample size can be determined through the formulas for the coefficient of variation *V*, Equation (3), the absolute error of the sample mean A_x, Equation (4), and the relative error of the sample mean R_x, Equation (5).

According to Equation (4), the absolute error of the sample mean is:

$$A_x = \frac{S}{\sqrt{n}}$$

The other expression for the absolute error of the sample mean from Equation (5) is:

$$A_x = \overline{X} R_x \tag{7}$$

Because the values to the left of the equal sign in Equations (4) and (7) are equal, the values on the right are also equal and, therefore:

$$\frac{S}{\sqrt{n}} = \overline{X} R_x \tag{8}$$

Solving for $\sqrt{n}$ in Equation (8) produces:

$$\sqrt{n} = \frac{S}{\overline{X} R_x} \tag{9}$$

Because $S/\overline{X}$ is the coefficient of variation *V*, see Equation (3), then:

$$\sqrt{n} = \frac{V}{R_x} \qquad \text{and} \qquad n = \frac{V^2}{(R_x)^2} \tag{10}$$

The coefficient of variation of the sample mean must be known or selected according to previously collected data of a similar kind, or, if necessary, preliminary tests should be conducted to estimate its value. Based on numerous studies of cutting tool performance and publications on mechanical properties of cutting tool materials, values of the coefficient of variation within 25 to 45% are considered typical. A relative error of the sample mean between 6 and 12% is also considered typical. The coefficient of variation and the relative error are used to estimate how many tests are required. For example, if $V = 30\%$ and $R_x = 8\%$, then the number of tests required is $n = 30^2/8^2 = 14$.

Comparing Products with Respect to Average Performance.—Lab and field tests are usually conducted to compare the average performance of two or more products. The term "average performance" is a quantitative value, which can be any mechanical, physical, or chemical characteristic of a product. For example, the average tool life of drills and indexable cutting inserts or the average hardness of cemented carbide grades, etc. (*Tool life* usually refers to the usable life of the tool based on wear, a judgment that is made by the manufacturer for a specific product based on various factors.) The products may differ in manufacturing procedure (CVD or PVD coatings), in chemical composition (alloying elements and their amount), and in other parameters. Data collected during experiments must be statistically treated to determine whether products have the same performance characteristics or not.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Statistical treatment of data obtained from experiments with two products includes the following steps:

a) Calculation of the sample means $\overline{X}_1$ and $\overline{X}_2$ using Equation (1)

b) Calculation of the sample standard deviations S_1 and S_2 using Equation (2)

c) Calculation of a weighted, or pooled standard deviation using the following formula:

$$S_p = \sqrt{\frac{(n_1 - 1)S_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)S_2^2}{(n_1 - 1) + (n_2 - 1)}} \tag{11}$$

where n_1 and n_2 represent the number of data points for products 1 and 2 respectively.

d) Selection of a confidence level. A 95% two-sided confidence level is recommended. At this confidence level, the probability of error is ±2.5% per side. The values of *t*-distribution versus *degrees of freedom* (*d.f.*) are provided in Table 1, and for a 95% confidence level are located in the column under the heading "$t_{0.025}$" with respect to given degrees of freedom ($d.f. = n_1 + n_2 - 2$).

e) Calculation of *decision criterion* (*d.c.*) using the following formula:

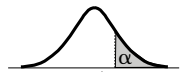
$$d.c. = t_{0.025} \times S_p \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}} \tag{12}$$

f) Comparison of the value of the decision criterion with the difference of the sample means: $\overline{X}_1 - \overline{X}_2$ if $\overline{X}_1 > \overline{X}_2$, or $\overline{X}_2 - \overline{X}_1$ if $\overline{X}_2 > \overline{X}_1$.

A product's average performance is statistically significant if the difference in the two sample means is greater than the decision criterion *d.c.*

$$\overline{X}_1 - \overline{X}_2 > d.c. \qquad \text{or} \qquad \overline{X}_2 - \overline{X}_1 > d.c.$$

Table 1. Critical Values of *t*-Distribution



d.f.	$t_{0.100}$	$t_{0.050}$	$t_{0.025}$	$t_{0.010}$	$t_{0.005}$	*d.f.*	*d.f.*	$t_{0.100}$	$t_{0.050}$	$t_{0.025}$	$t_{0.010}$	$t_{0.005}$	*d.f.*
1	3.078	6.314	12.706	31.821	63.657	1	16	1.337	1.746	2.120	2.583	2.921	16
2	1.886	2.920	4.303	6.965	9.925	2	17	1.333	1.740	2.110	2.567	2.898	17
3	1.638	2.353	3.182	4.541	5.841	3	18	1.330	1.734	2.101	2.552	2.878	18
4	1.533	2.132	2.776	3.747	4.604	4	19	1.328	1.729	2.093	2.539	2.861	19
5	1.476	2.015	2.571	3.365	4.032	5	20	1.325	1.725	2.086	2.528	2.845	20
6	1.440	1.943	2.447	3.143	3.707	6	21	1.323	1.721	2.080	2.518	2.831	21
7	1.415	1.895	2.365	2.998	3.499	7	22	1.321	1.717	2.074	2.508	2.819	22
8	1.397	1.860	2.306	2.896	3.355	8	23	1.319	1.714	2.069	2.500	2.807	23
9	1.383	1.833	2.262	2.821	3.250	9	24	1.318	1.711	2.064	2.492	2.797	24
10	1.372	1.812	2.228	2.764	3.169	10	25	1.316	1.708	2.060	2.485	2.787	25
11	1.363	1.796	2.201	2.718	3.106	11	26	1.315	1.706	2.056	2.479	2.779	26
12	1.356	1.782	2.179	2.681	3.055	12	27	1.314	1.703	2.052	2.473	2.771	27
13	1.350	1.771	2.160	2.650	3.012	13	28	1.313	1.701	2.048	2.467	2.763	28
14	1.345	1.761	2.145	2.624	2.977	14	29	1.311	1.699	2.045	2.462	2.756	29
15	1.341	1.753	2.131	2.602	2.947	15	Inf.	1.282	1.645	1.960	2.326	2.576	Inf.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 1:

Tool Life Tests of CNMG-432 Indexable Inserts Made of Two Different Carbide Grades (A and B)

Carbide Grade A

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i minutes	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	15.0	–2.1	4.41
2	19.0	1.9	3.61
3	16.9	–0.2	0.04
4	16.6	–0.5	0.25
5	16.6	–0.5	0.25
6	16.1	–1.0	1.00
7	19.4	2.3	5.29
$n = 7$		$\overline{X} = 17.1$	
$\Sigma x_i = 119.6$		$\Sigma(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 14.85$	

Carbide Grade B

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i minutes	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	14.6	–0.2	0.04
2	13.5	–1.3	1.69
3	15.6	0.8	0.64
4	12.4	–2.4	5.76
5	14.6	–0.2	0.04
6	13.8	–1.0	1.00
7	19.1	4.3	18.49
$n = 7$		$\overline{X} = 14.8$	
$\Sigma x_i = 103.6$		$\Sigma(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 27.66$	

Characteristics of Normal Distribution	Carbide Grades A	B
Number of data points, n	7	7
Number of degrees of freedom, $n - 1$	6	6
Sample mean (s.m.), Equation (1)	17.1	14.8
Sample standard deviation, Equation (2)	1.6	2.1
Coefficient of variation, Equation (3)	9.4%	14.2%
Absolute error of the s.m., Equation (4)	0.6	0.8
Relative error of the s.m., Equation (5)	3.5%	5.4%
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, d.f. = 6, Table 1	2.447	2.447
Population mean is greater than:	15.6	12.8
Population mean is less than:	18.6	16.8

Comparison of Grades A and B	
Pooled standard deviation, Equation (11)	1.9
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, d.f. = 6 + 6 = 12, Table 1	2.179
Decision criterion, Equation (12)	2.2
Difference between the two sample means	2.3

Conclusion:

Sample means of the tool life of carbide grades A and B are statistically *significant* at the 95% confidence level, since the difference of the sample means (17.1 – 14.8 = 2.3 min) is **greater** than the *decision criterion* (2.2 min).

Note: n_i = ith test or data point, x_i = ith value of the data point

Example 2:

Tensile Strength of Carbon Steel Specimens Versus Heat Treatment

Carbon Steel Sample A

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i MPa	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	522.0	6.9	47.61
2	511.0	–4.1	16.81
3	488.9	–26.2	686.44
4	553.7	38.6	1490.00
5	499.9	–15.1	228.01
$n = 5$		$\overline{X} = 515.1$	
$\Sigma x_i = 2575.5$		$\Sigma(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 2468.9$	

Carbon Steel Sample B

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i MPa	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	517.1	12.4	153.76
2	490.2	–14.5	210.25
3	499.1	–5.6	31.36
4	514.4	9.7	94.09
5	502.6	–2.1	4.41
$n = 5$		$\overline{X} = 504.7$	
$\Sigma x_i = 2523.4$		$\Sigma(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 493.87$	

Note: n_i = ith test or data point, x_i = ith value of the data point

Characteristics of Normal Distribution	Samples A	B
Number of data points, n	5	5
Number of degrees of freedom, $n - 1$	4	4
Sample mean (s.m.), Equation (1)	515.1	504.7
Sample standard deviation, Equation (2)	24.8	11.1
Coefficient of variation, Equation (3)	4.8%	2.2%
Absolute error of the s.m., Equation (4)	11.1	5.0
Relative error of the s.m., Equation (5)	2.2%	1.0%
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, d.f. = 4, Table 1	2.776	2.776
Population mean is greater than:	484.3	490.8
Population mean is less than:	545.9	518.6

Comparison of Samples A and B	
Pooled standard deviation, Equation (11)	19.2
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, d.f. = 4 + 4 = 8, Table 1	2.306
Decision criterion, Equation (12)	28.0
Difference between the two sample means	10.4

Conclusion:

Sample means of the tensile strength of samples A and B are statistically *insignificant* at the 95% confidence level, since the difference of the sample means (515.1 – 504.7 = 10.4 MPa) is **less** than the *decision criterion* (28.0 MPa).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 3:

Tool Life Tests of 6.0-mm Diameter Drills with Different Web Thickness

Drills with 2.0 mm Web, Group A

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i minutes	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	15.68	–11.06	122.3236
2	18.88	–7.86	61.7796
3	19.20	–7.54	56.8516
4	22.56	–4.18	17.4724
5	23.20	–3.54	12.5316
6	24.40	–2.34	5.4756
7	24.64	–2.10	4.4100
8	26.56	0.18	0.0324
9	27.20	0.46	0.2116
10	30.24	3.50	12.2500
11	32.16	5.42	29.3764
12	33.60	6.86	47.0596
13	36.80	10.06	101.2036
14	39.20	12.46	155.2516
$n = 14$		$\overline{X} = 26.74$	
$\Sigma x_i = 374.32$		$\Sigma(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 626.2296$	

Characteristics of Normal Distribution	Drill Groups A	Drill Groups B
Number of data points, n	14	16
Number of degrees of freedom, $n - 1$	13	15
Sample mean (s.m.), Equation (1)	26.74	15.01
Sample standard deviation, Equation (2)	6.94	7.30
Coefficient of variation, Equation (3)	26.0%	48.6%
Absolute error of the s.m., Equation (4)	1.85	1.83
Relative error of the s.m., Equation (5)	6.9%	12.2%
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, Table 1	2.160 d.f.=13	2.131 d.f. =15
Population mean is greater than:	22.74	11.11
Population mean is less than:	30.74	18.91

Comparison of Grades A and B	
Pooled standard deviation, Equation (11)	7.14
t-value at 95% confidence level at given degrees of freedom, d.f. = 13 + 15 = 28, Table 1	2.048
Decision criterion, Equation (12)	5.35
Difference between the two sample means	11.73

Drills with 0.9 mm Web, Group B

Test Number n_i	Data, x_i minutes	Treatment of Data $x_i - \overline{X}$	$(x_i - \overline{X})^2$
1	5.04	–9.97	99.4009
2	6.48	–8.53	72.7609
3	7.12	–7.89	62.2521
4	7.20	–7.81	60.9961
5	9.44	–5.57	31.0249
6	11.36	–3.65	13.3225
7	12.16	–2.85	8.1225
8	14.24	–0.77	0.5929
9	15.68	0.67	0.4489
10	16.32	1.31	1.7161
11	17.84	2.83	8.0089
12	18.00	2.99	8.9401
13	21.28	6.27	39.3129
14	23.04	8.03	64.4809
15	24.60	9.59	91.9681
16	30.40	15.39	236.8521
$n = 16$		$\overline{X} = 15.01$	
$x_i = 240.20$		$(x_i - \overline{X})^2 = 800.2008$	

Conclusion:

Sample means of the tool life of the drills in Group A and B are statistically *significant* at the 95% confidence level, since the difference of the sample means (26.74 – 15.01 = 11.73 min) is **greater** than the decision criterion (5.35 min Difference). Note: $n_i = i$th test or data point, $x_i = i$th value of the data point

Regarding Machinability and Hardness: In cutting steels, the allowable cutting speed for a given tool life between grindings is, as a general rule, inversely proportional to the hardness of a given steel. To illustrate, tests in turning an alloy steel with a high-speed steel tool showed a cutting speed of 70 feet per minute (21.3 meters per minute) when the hardness of the steel was 180 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number); the cutting speed had to be reduced to about 35 feet per minute (10.7 meters per minute) when the hardness was increased to 360 BHN, the life between tool grindings for these tests being 20 minutes in each case. The machinability of other steels of the same hardness might vary. For example, the tests just referred to showed more or less variation in the cutting speeds for steels of the same hardness, but having different compositions or properties. Thus, while there is a constant relationship between the hardness of a steel and its tensile strength, there is not the same constant relationship between steel hardness and machinability as applied to different steels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ENGINEERING ECONOMICS

Engineers, managers, purchasing agents, and others are often required to plan and evaluate project alternatives and make economic decisions that may greatly affect the success or failure of a project. In industry, equipment has to be justified before it can be put into use; multiple projects demand money. The topic of this section is how decisions are made on which projects to prefer over others, based on financial considerations.

The goals of a project, such as reducing manufacturing cost or increasing production, selection of machine tool alternatives, or reduction of tooling, labor and other costs, determine which of the available alternatives may bring the most attractive economic return.

Various cost analysis techniques that may be used to obtain the desired outcome are discussed in the material that follows.

Interest

Interest is money paid out or earned for the use of money that has been borrowed or lent (the *principal*). *Simple interest* is interest paid only on the principal; *compound interest* is interest paid on the principal and any previous interest earned. Principal multiplied by annual interest rate, expressed as a decimal, gives *accrued interest*. *Annual percentage rate* (APR) is percent of principal charged or earned in a year, also referred to as *nominal interest rate per year*. An APR is stated when no intermediate compounding occurs within a year. *Effective rate per year* is calculated by considering multiple compoundings occurring in periods throughout a year, using the nominal interest rate. Thus, effective rate is higher than nominal rate, and the more compounding periods per year, the higher the interest paid over the duration of the loan. Most commercial financial dealings these days involve compound interest.

For example, a nominal interest rate of 10% would be $10/100 = 0.1$ as a decimal. Adding the principal to the interest that results from this calculation gives the total value of the account after a year. This is the basis of the formulas for both simple and compound interest.

An example illustrates the difference between simple and compound calculations: A person borrows $10,000 from a bank for 2 years at an annual rate of 10%. At the end of the first year, the net amount owed, using both the simple interest and the compound interest calculation, is $\$10,000 + (\$10,000 \times 0.1) = \$11,000$. Hence, the interest paid for the first year is $1,000, for both ways of calculating. In the second year, if simple interest is applied, the interest owed is still calculated on just the amount borrowed, $10,000. So, at the end of the second year, the interest paid will be the principal of $10,000 plus $2,000 in interest, or a total of $12,000. But, if compound interest is applied, for the second year, the borrower pays an interest of $\$11,000 \times 0.1 = \$1,100$. Hence, the total paid to pay the bank is $10,000, plus this first-year interest of $1,000, plus the second-year accrued interest of $1,100, for a total of $12,100.

Variables.—The symbols used in the formulas to calculate various types of interest are:

P = principal amount of money lent, invested, or borrowed; sometimes also present value (PV)

I = nominal annual interest rate stated as a percentage, e.g., 10 percent per annum

EIR = effective annual interest rate when interest is compounded more often than once a year

i = nominal annual interest rate percent expressed as a decimal, e.g., if $I = 12$ percent, then $i = 12/100 = 0.12$

n = number of annual interest periods (that is, number of years)

m = number of interest compounding periods in one year

F = future sum of money at the end of n interest periods from the present date that is equivalent to P with added interest i

A = the payment at the end of each period in a uniform series of payments continuing for n periods, the entire series equivalent to P at interest rate i

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Simple Interest.—Over n years, the simple interest formulas are:

Value of interest (I): $I = Pni$

Future account value (F): $F = P + I = P + Pni = P(1 + ni)$

Example: $250 is lent for three years at 6 percent simple interest. $P = 250$, $i = 6/100 = 0.06$, $n = 3$. Then:

$$F = 250 + (250 \times 3 \times 0.06) = 250[1 + (0.06 \times 3)] = 250[1.18] = \$295$$

Compound Interest.—If compound interest is calculated multiple times in a year, say m times a year, then the future value F of principal P over n years at annual rate i is found by the formula:

$$F = P\left(1 + \frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn}$$

Example: Suppose $10,000 is borrowed from a bank as discussed above for 2 years at 10% APR or nominal interest rate; there are three ways the bank can calculate interest:

Simple interest over 2 years: The borrower will pay $F = P + Pni = 10{,}000 + (10{,}000 \times 2 \times 0.1) = 10{,}000 + 2{,}000 = \$12{,}000$.

Compound interest over 2 years with a nominal interest rate of 10% compounded only at the end of the year: $F = P\,[1 + (i/m)]^{mn} = 10{,}000\,[1 + (0.10/1)]^{1 \times 2} = 10{,}000 \times 1.1^2 = 10{,}000 \times 1.21 = \$12{,}100$. This is the same the calculation at the beginning of the discussion.

Compound interest over 2 years with a nominal interest rate of 10% compounded four times a year, or $m = 4$: $F = P\,[1 + (i/m)]^{mn} = 10{,}000\,[1 + (0.10/4)]^{4 \times 2} = 10{,}000 \times 1.025^{4 \times 2} = 10{,}000 \times 1.2184 = \$12{,}184$. Hence, the interest compounded multiple times ($m = 4$) in a year gives more interest than if compounded only once a year. The effect of the four compounds is that the interest is higher by $84.

Clearly, compounding yields more interest than simple interest. This example shows the effect of once a year compounding over a number of years, compared to a single calculation at the end of the same number years.

Determining Principal, Rate, or Time.—What principal should be invested to reach a known or desired future value, based on a given interest rate and time? At what annual rate should an investment be made when the other parameters are known? How much time will a principal take to reach a future value given an annual rate of interest? Solutions to these questions are found by transposing the main formula to isolate the unknown in question.

Note: In the formulas below, the units for time are years. If time is given in months or any other unit, it must be converted to years before substituting it into the formula.

Principal Value of an Investment or Loan (P): These days all commercial banks use compound interest only, so only the formulas and steps for calculating compound interest are shown:

Simple interest:

$$F = P(1 + ni), \text{ so } P = \frac{F}{1 + ni} = F(1 + ni)^{-1}$$

Compound interest, $m = 1$:

$$F = P(1 + i)^n, \text{ so } P = \frac{F}{(1+i)^n}, \text{ or } P = F(1 + i)^{-n}$$

Compound interest, $m > 1$:

$$F = P\left(1 + \frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn}, \text{ so } P = \frac{F}{\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn}} \text{ or } P = F\left(1 + \frac{i}{m}\right)^{-mn}$$

Example: Determine the initial deposit (principal) required for an account to reach $8,000 ($F$), in 10 years ($n$), at an annual interest rate of 4% ($i = 0.04$), compounded monthly ($m = 12$).

Solution: Substituting known values into the formula:

$$P = F\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{-nt} = 8000\left(1 + \frac{0.04}{12}\right)^{-12 \times 10} = 8000(1.003333)^{-120} = \$5{,}366$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Determine the principal needed for an account to have a future value of \$25,000 (F) in 10 years (n), given that interest is compounded *quarterly* (four times a year; so $m = 4$) at an annual rate of 2.5% ($i = 0.025$).

Solution: P is sought, so the formula is:

$$P = F\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)^{-mn} \quad ; \quad P = 25000\left(1+\frac{0.025}{4}\right)^{-4\times 10} = 25000(0.7794) = \$19{,}485.17$$

To find i when the other parameters of the loan or investment are known, use the formulas:

At compound interest: $i = \sqrt[mn]{\frac{F}{P}} - 1$

Solving for Time (n): Solving the future value formulas for n requires logarithms. The process for compound interest is shown (for properties of logarithms, see page 36):

$$F = P\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn} \rightarrow \frac{F}{P} = \left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn} \rightarrow \log\left(\frac{F}{P}\right) = \log\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)^{mn}$$

$$\rightarrow \log\left(\frac{F}{P}\right) = mn\log\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right) \rightarrow n = \frac{\log\left(\frac{F}{P}\right)}{n\log\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)}$$

NOTE: From logarithm properties, $\log(a/b) = \log a - \log b$.

Time to Increase Investment (n): A related approach is taken when calculating time to reach a specific total value:

Compound interest: $n = \dfrac{\log\left(\frac{F}{P}\right)}{n\log\left(1+\frac{i}{m}\right)}$

Example: Determine the time required to double \$500, when interest is compounded monthly at a rate of 5%.

Solution: Here, $i = 0.05, m = 12, P = \$500$, and $F = 2P = \$1000$.

$$n = \frac{\log\left(\frac{1000}{500}\right)}{12\log\left(1+\frac{0.05}{12}\right)} = \frac{\log 2}{12\log(1.0042)} = 13.9 \text{ years}$$

Doubling Time for an Investment: The time needed to double an investment is the same for any principal, since the variables F and P drop out.

Compound interest: $n_{\text{double}} = \dfrac{\log 2}{n\log\left(1+\frac{i}{n}\right)}$

Nominal versus Effective Interest Rates.—Deposits in savings banks, automobile loans, interest on bonds, and many other transactions of this type involve computation of interest due and payable more often than once a year. For such instances, there is a difference between the *nominal* annual interest rate (the stated rate) for the cost of borrowed money and the *effective annual interest rate* (the amount that is actually accrued).

The formula for calculating the effective interest rate (EIR) is:

$$EIR = (1 + i/m)^m - 1$$

The nominal interest rate is also called the "APR," or the annual percentage rate. APR is quoted without compounding frequency per year. If compounding is done only at the end of the year, the APR is the same as the effective rate. If compounding happens more than once in a year, then the effective rate will be greater than the APR. In this case, it is essential the frequency of compounding be stated when APR is quoted. For example, simply saying APR is 10% is not sufficient. Rather, it must be stated that the APR is 10% compounded yearly, for example, or that it is compounded monthly.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: For a nominal per annum rate of 12%, with monthly compounding, the effective per annum rate is:

$$EIR = (1 + 0.12/12)^{12} - 1 = 0.1268 = 12.7\% \text{ effective annual interest rate}$$

Example: Same as before but with quarterly compounding:

$$EIR = (1 + 0.12/4)^{4} - 1 = 0.1255 = 12.6\% \text{ effective annual interest rate}$$

Cash Flow and Equivalence

Cash flow refers to the sum of money received or disbursed, as shown in a project's financial report. Due to the time value of money, the timing of cash flows over a project's lifespan plays a vital role in project success. Engineering economics problems involve four patterns of cash flow, both separately and in combination. Two cash flow patterns are *equivalent* if they have the same value at a particular time.

Present Value and Discount.—The *present value* or present worth P of a given future or final sum F is the amount P that, when placed at interest i for a given time n, will produce the given amount F.

Simple interest: $P = \dfrac{F}{1+ni} = F(1+ni)^{-1}$ Compound interest: $P = \dfrac{F}{(1+i)^n} = F(1+i)^{-n}$

The *true discount* D is the difference between F and P:

$$D = F - P.$$

Example: Find the present value and discount of $500 due in six months at 6% simple interest. Here, $F = 500$; $n = 6/12 = 0.5$ year; $i = 0.06$. Then, $P = 500/(1 + 0.5 \times 0.06) = \$485.44$. The discount is $D = 500 - 485.44 = \$14.56$.

Example: Find the sum that, placed at 5% compound interest, will in three years produce $5,000. Here, $F = 5000$, $i = 0.05$, $n = 3$. Then,

$$P = \frac{5000}{(1 + 0.05)^3} = \$4{,}319.19$$

Annuities.—An *annuity* is a fixed sum paid at regular (uniform) intervals. In the formulas that follow, yearly payments are assumed. When a situation entails a monthly payment, such as rent, the interest rate and duration are modified as needed. It is customary to calculate annuities on the basis of compound interest. If an annuity A is to be paid out for n consecutive years, the interest rate being i, then the present value P of the annuity is

$$P = A\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i(1 + i)^n}$$

If at the *beginning* of each year a sum A is set aside at an interest rate i, the total value F of the sum set aside, with interest, at the end of n years, will be

$$F = A\frac{(1 + i)[(1 + i)^n - 1]}{i}$$

If at the *end* of each year a sum A is set aside at an interest rate i, then the total value F of the principal, with interest, at the end of n years will be

$$F = A\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$$

If a principal P is increased or decreased by a sum A at the end of each year, then the value of the principal after n years will be

$$F = P(1 + i)^n \pm A\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$$

If the sum A by which the principal P is decreased each year is greater than the total yearly interest on the principal, then the principal, with the accumulated interest, will be entirely used up in n years:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$n = \frac{\log\left(\frac{A}{A-iP}\right)}{\log(i+1)}$$

Example: If an annuity of $200 is to be paid for 10 years, what is the present amount of money that needs to be deposited if the interest is 5%? Here, $A = 200, i = 0.05, n = 10$:

$$P = 200\frac{(1+0.05)^{10}-1}{0.05(1+0.05)^{10}} = \$1{,}544.35$$

The annuity a principal P drawing interest at the rate i will give for a period of n years is

$$A = P\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n-1}$$

Example: A sum of $10,000 is placed at 4%. What is the amount of the annuity payable for 20 years out of this sum: Here, $P = 10000, i = 0.04, n = 20$:

$$A = 10000\frac{0.04(1+0.04)^{20}}{(1+0.04)^{20}-1} = \$735.82$$

Sinking Funds.—Amortization is the extinction of debt, usually by means of a *sinking fund*. The sinking fund is created by a fixed investment A placed each year at compound interest for a term of years n, and is therefore an annuity of sufficient size to produce at the end of the term of years the amount F necessary for the repayment of the principal of the debt, or to provide a definite sum for other purposes. Then,

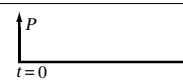
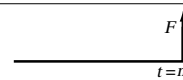
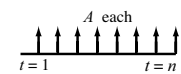
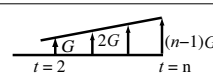
$$F = A\frac{(1+i)^n-1}{i} \quad \text{and} \quad A = F\frac{i}{(1+i)^n-1}$$

Example: If $2,000 is invested annually for 10 years at 4% compound interest, as a sinking fund, what would be the total amount of the fund at the expiration of the term? Here, $A = 2000, n = 10, i = 0.04$:

$$F = 2000\frac{(1+0.04)^{10}-1}{0.04} = \$24{,}012.21$$

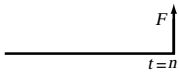
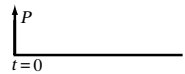
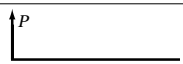
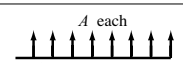
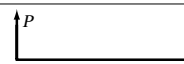
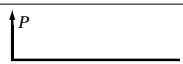
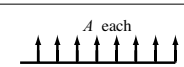
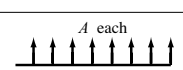
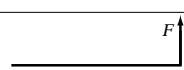
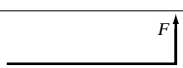
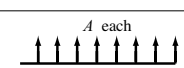
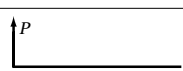
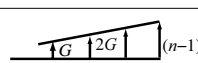
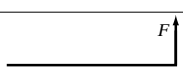
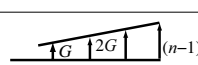
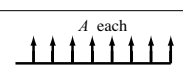
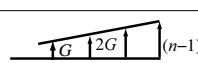
Cash Flow Diagrams.—The following conventions are used to standardize cash flow diagrams. The horizontal (time) axis (as seen in several patterns in Table 1 and Table 2) is marked off in equal increments, representing periods, up to the duration of the project. Receipts are represented by arrows directed upwards and disbursements are represented by arrows directed downwards. Arrow length is proportional to magnitude of cash flow. In the following, A = uniform annuity, i = interest rate, and n = number of payments or periods.

Table 1. Cash Flow Patterns

P-pattern *P* = present value	A single amount *P* occurring at the beginning of *n* years. *P* represents *Present* amount.	
F-pattern *F* = future value	A single amount *F* occurring at the end of *n* years. *F* represents *Future* amount.	
A-pattern *A* = annual value	Equal amounts *A* occurring at the end of each of *n* years. *A* represents *Annual* amount.	
G-pattern *G* = uniform gradient of expense	*G* is increasing by an equal amount for each time increment (e.g., month) over the period of life *n*. *G* represents *Gradient* amount.	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Standard Cash Flow Factors

Symbol	To Find	Formula	Symbol
	$F_{\text{given }P}$	$F = P(1+i)^n$	
	$P_{\text{given }F}$	$P = \frac{F}{(1+i)^n}$	
	$A_{\text{given }P}$	$A = P\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1}$	
	$P_{\text{given }A}$	$P = A\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}$	
	$A_{\text{given }F}$	$A = F\frac{i}{(1+i)^n - 1}$	
	$F_{\text{given }A}$	$F = A\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i}$	
	$P_{\text{given }G}$	$P = G\frac{1}{i}\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n} - \frac{n}{(1+i)^n}\right]$	
	$F_{\text{given }G}$	$F = G\frac{1}{i}\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i} - n\right]$	
	$A_{\text{given }G}$	$A = G\left[\frac{1}{i} - \frac{n}{(1+i)^n - 1}\right]$	

Example: A rental property pays $2,000/month with a $10 per month increase starting the second year. Based on a 10-year period and 8% annual interest, compute the uniform average annuity A from the rental of this property, considering the gradient.

Solution: The gradient G = $10 per month; the interest each month is 1/12 of the rate i = 0.08; the duration n = 120 months (using the basis of the annuity, which is monthly rent).

$$A = G\left[\frac{1}{i} - \frac{n}{(1+i)^n - 1}\right] + A_{\text{initial}}$$

$$= 10\left[\frac{1}{(.08/12)} - \frac{120}{(1+(.08/12))^{120} - 1}\right] + 2000$$

$$= 10(150 - 98.39) = 516 + 2000 = \$2{,}516$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Depreciation

Depreciation is an accounting method that allocates the cost of an asset over its useful life. A machine may decline in value because it is wearing out and no longer performing its function as well as when it was new. As an economics technique, depreciation spreads the purchase price of an asset or other property over a number of years. Tax regulations do not allow the cost of an asset to be treated as a deductible expense in the year of purchase; rather, a portion of the expense is allocated to each year of the asset's depreciation period. This yearly allocation is referred to as *depreciation*.

Straight Line Depreciation.—Straight line depreciation is a constant depreciation charge over the period of life. If P is principal value, L is salvage value and n is period of life, then depreciation is calculated:

Depreciated value of an asset at year n: $A = P(1 - x) + L$

Depreciation at xth year: $D_x = \dfrac{P - L}{n}$

Book value after x years: $BV_x = \dfrac{(P - L)(n - x)}{n} + L$

After tax depreciation recovery: $ATDR = TR\left(\dfrac{P - L}{n}\right)\dfrac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i(1 + i)^n}$

Sum of the Years Digits.—Another method for allocating the cost of an asset minus its salvage value over useful life is *sum of the years digits depreciation*. This method results in charges that are greater than straight line depreciation charges during the early years of an asset and smaller charges near the end period.

Depreciation at xth year: $D_x = \dfrac{2(P - L)(n - x + 1)}{n(n + 1)}$

Book value after x years: $BV_x = P - (P - L)(2n - x + 1)\dfrac{x}{n(n + 1)}$

Double Declining Balance Method.—A constant depreciation is applied to the book value of a property.

Depreciation at xth year: $D_x = 2\left(\dfrac{P}{n}\right)\left(\dfrac{n - 2}{n}\right)^{(x - 1)}$

Book value after x years: $BV_x = P\left(\dfrac{n - 2}{n}\right)^x$

Statutory Depreciation System.—A depreciation method used for income tax purposes is *accelerated cost recovery system* (ACRS) depreciation. The first step in ACRS is to determine the property class of the asset being depreciated. All personal property falls into one of six classes. Reading across Table 3 after identifying the correct property class, principal P for year x is substituted into the following formula:

Depreciation at xth year: $D_x = P \times Depreciation\ Factor$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Property Class and Factor

ACRS Classes of Depreciable Property			Depreciation Factor for Recovery Period (n)			
Property Class	Personal Property	Year (x)	3 Years	5 Years	7 Years	10 Years
3	Handling device for food and beverage manufacture, plastic products, fabricated metal products	1	33.33%	20.00%	14.29%	10.00%
		2	44.45%	32.00%	24.49%	18.00%
		3	14.81%	19.20%	17.49%	14.40%
5	Automobiles, trucks, computer, aircraft, petroleum drilling equipment, research and experimentation equipment	4	7.41%	11.52%	12.49%	11.52%
		5		11.52%	8.93%	9.22%
7	Office furniture, fixtures, and equipment	6		5.76%	8.92%	7.37%
10	Railroad cars, manufacture of tobacco products	7			8.93%	6.55%
		8			4.46%	6.55%
15	Telephone distribution line, municipal sewers plant	9				6.56%
		10				6.55%
20	Municipal sewers	11				3.28%

Evaluating Alternative Investments

When two or more mutually exclusive investments compete for limited funds, a number of ways are available to select the best investment options from a group of proposals. This section discusses such strategies for analyzing alternatives and making decisions to maximize net value.

Net Present Value.— One of the easiest ways to compare mutually exclusive investment alternatives is to calculate and compare the net present value of each. *Net present value* (NPV) is most frequently used to determine the present value of future money receipts and disbursements. Three economic criteria for present worth analysis are described: (1) If investment cost is the same, only the output money is considered. (2) If the output result is known, then the investment cost is minimized. (3) If neither input nor output is fixed, then the output minus the input is maximized. The NPV method is widely applied when the lifespans of the alternative proposals are the same.

In selecting the project with the highest NPV from several projects that all achieve the same outcome, a common rate of interest called the minimum attractive rate of return (MARR) is used. The MARR is a rate that companies strive to earn on all their investments. This rate usually is a rate above the interest rate that a company's idle cash will be earning in a risk-free environment. Small-scale companies also may seek investments based on the MARR to achieve returns slightly above the average rate the same money would earn in the stock market on a long-term basis.

The symbols used for the following calculations are defined:

P = present value
NPV = net present value
AR = annual revenue
AE = annual expense
G_A = uniform gradient of expense given annual amount A
TR = tax rate as percentage
i = interest rate (as a decimal)
n = number of payments or periods
L = salvage value

With uniform annual expense before tax

$$NPV = -P + (AR - AE)\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right] + \frac{L}{(1+i)^n}$$

With uniform gradient on annual expense before tax

$$NPV = -P + \left(AR - AE - A_G\right)\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right] + \frac{L}{(1+i)^n}$$

With uniform annual expense after tax

$$NPV = -P + (AR - AE)(1 - TR)\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right] + \frac{L}{(1+i)^n}$$

With uniform gradient on annual expense after tax

$$NPV = -P + \left(AR - AE - A_G\right)(1 - TR)\left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right] + \frac{L}{(1+i)^n}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To include depreciation, the after tax depreciation recovery (ATDR) must be added to get the net present value.

Example: A pharmaceutical company makes a product from a composition of chemicals. Two mixing processes, batch and continuous, are available.

Process	Continuous	Batch
Initial cost (P)	$75,000	$35,000
Lifetime (years) (n)	10	10
Maintenance (per year)	$5,000	$8,000
Capacity (units/year)	25,000	20,000

The company uses straight line depreciation, pays 40% of its net income as income tax, and has an after tax minimum attractive rate of return of 15%. The company can sell the product at $1.00 per unit. Which manufacturing process should the company invest in?

Solution: Because the lifetimes of the batch and continuous processes are equal at 10 years each, we can make a comparison using the present worth method by applying the formulas for *NPV* and also for *ATDR*.

$$NPV_{\text{Continuous}} = -P + (AR - AE)(1 - TR)\left(\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right) + TR\left(\frac{P - L}{n}\right)\left(\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right)$$

$$= -75000 + ([25000 \times 1] - 5000)(1 - 0.40)\left(\frac{\left(1+0.15\right)^{10} - 1}{0.15\left(1+0.15\right)^{10}}\right) + 0.40\left(\frac{75000}{10}\right)\left(\frac{\left(1+0.15\right)^{10} - 1}{0.15\left(1+0.15\right)^{10}}\right)$$

$$= -14775 + 15056 = 281$$

$$NPV_{\text{Batch}} = -P + (AR - AE)(1 - TR)\left(\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right) + TR\left(\frac{P - L}{n}\right)\left(\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i(1+i)^n}\right)$$

$$= -35000 + [(20000 \times 1) - 8000](1 - 0.40)\left(\frac{\left(1+0.15\right)^{10} - 1}{0.15\left(1+0.15\right)^{10}}\right) + 0.40\left(\frac{35000}{10}\right)\left(\frac{\left(1+0.15\right)^{10} - 1}{0.15\left(1+0.15\right)^{10}}\right)$$

$$= 1135 + 7026 = 8161$$

Based on above calculations, the batch production process is selected because it gives a greater net present value (*NPV*) than the continuous process.

Capitalized Cost.—In governmental analyses, there are some circumstances where a service is required for an infinite period of time, such as with roads, dams, and pipelines. Present worth of a project with an infinite life is known as *capitalized cost* (CC). Capitalized cost is the amount of money at $n = 0$ needed to perpetually support projected expenses with earned interest only. Capitalized cost is the present sum of money that would need to be set aside now, at some interest rate, to yield the funds required to provide the service.

$$CC = P + (A)(P_{\text{given } A}) - (L)(P_{\text{given } F}) + (G)(P_{\text{given } G})$$

Without periodical replacement: $$CC = P + \frac{A}{i}$$

With 100% periodical replacement: $$CC = P + \frac{P - L}{(1+i)^n - 1} + \frac{A}{i}$$

With periodical renovation cost: $$CC = P + \frac{RC}{(1+i)^n - 1} + \frac{A}{i}$$

where CC = capitalized cost; P = initial cost; L = salvage value; A = annual cost; RC = renovation cost; i = interest rate; and, n = effective period of time.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Equivalent Uniform Annual Cost.—This method is applied when the alternatives have unequal periods of life. To avoid unequal periods of time, the present value and future value is converted to an annual value. The alternatives must be mutually exclusive and repeatedly renewed up to the duration of the longest lived alternative.

$$A = (P)(A_{\text{given } P}) - (L)(A_{\text{given } F}) + (G)(A_{\text{given } G}) + AE$$

With sinking fund depreciation:

$$A = (P - L)\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1} + Li + AE$$

With sinking fund depreciation and uniform gradient G:

$$A = (P - L)\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1} + Li + AE + G\left[\frac{1}{i} - \frac{n}{(1+i)^n - 1}\right]$$

Straight line depreciation:

$$A = \frac{P - L}{n} + Li + AE + \frac{(P - L)(n+1)i}{2n}$$

Example: An investment of $15,000 is being considered to reduce labor and labor-associated costs in a materials handling operation from $8,200 a year to $3,300. This operation is expected to be used for 10 years before being changed or discontinued entirely. In addition to the initial investment of $15,000 and the annual cost of $3,300 for labor, there are additional annual combined costs for power, maintenance, insurance, and property taxes of $1,800 associated with the revised operation. Based on comparisons of annual costs, should the $15,000 investment be made or the present operation continued?

Solution: The present annual cost of the operation is $8,200 for labor and labor-associated costs. The proposed operation has an annual cost of $3,300 for labor and labor extras plus $1,800 for additional power, maintenance, insurance, and taxes, plus the annual cost of recovering the initial investment of $15,000 at some interest rate (minimum acceptable rate of return).

Assuming that 10 percent would be an acceptable rate of return on this investment over a period of 10 years, the annual amount to be recovered on the initial investment would be $15,000 multiplied by the capital recovery factor.

Putting this value into ($A_{\text{given } P}$) yields:

$$A = \frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1}P + AE = \frac{(0.10)(1+0.10)^{10}}{(1+0.10)^{10} - 1}\,15000 + 5100 = 7541.18$$

This amount is less than the present annual cost of $8,200. Thus, the investment is justified unless there are other considerations, such as the effects of income taxes, salvage values, expected life, uncertainty about the required rate of return, changes in the cost of borrowed funds, and others.

A tabulation of annual costs of alternative plans A, B, C, etc. is a good way to compare costs item by item. For this example:

	Item	Plan A	Plan B
1	Labor and labor extras	$8,200	$3,300
2	Annual cost of $15,000 investment		2,442
3	Power		400
4	Maintenance		1,100
5	Property taxes and insurance		300
	Total annual cost	$8,200	$7,542

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example, Annual Cost Considering Salvage Value: If in the previous example the salvage value of the equipment installed was $5,000 at the end of 10 years, what is the effect on the annual cost of the proposed investment of $15,000?

Solution: The only item in the annual cost of the previous example that will be affected is the capital recovery amount of $2,442. The following formula gives the amount of annual capital recovery when salvage value is considered:

$$A = (P - L)\frac{i(1+i)^n}{(1+i)^n - 1} + Li + AE$$

$$= (15000 - 5000)\frac{(0.10)(1+0.10)^{10}}{(1+0.10)^{10} - 1} + 5000(0.10) + 5100 = 7227.45$$

This amount is $315 less than the previous annual cost of $7,542 for the proposed investment.

Rate of Return.—This is the estimated interest rate produced by an investment. *Rate of return* (*ROR*) is the interest rate at which benefits are equivalent to costs. It is defined as the interest rate paid on the unpaid balance of a loan in such a way that the payment schedule makes the unpaid loan balance equal zero when the final payment is made. It may be computed by finding the interest rate in such a way that the estimated expenditures are equal to the capital gain. *Net Present Worth* = 0, or equivalently, *PW of benefits* – *PW of costs* = 0

$$\frac{(1+ROR)^n - 1}{ROR(1+ROR)^n}(AR - AE) + \frac{L}{(1+ROR)^n} = P$$

The rate of return can only be calculated through trial and error. To find out the present worth, a reasonable interest rate is selected and the present worth is calculated. Then another rate is chosen and the present worth is calculated. The value of the *ROR* is interpolated or extrapolated to find the zero value of present worth.

Benefit-Cost Ratio.—This is the ratio of present worth of benefit to present worth of cost. This method is applied to municipal project evaluations where benefits (*B*) and costs (*C*) accrue to different segments of the community. A project is considered acceptable if the ratio equals or exceeds 1. For fixed input, $B/C \geq 1$ is maximized, and for fixed output, $B/C \geq 1$ is maximized, and if neither input nor output is fixed, to compute the incremental benefit-cost ratio ($\Delta B/\Delta C$), choose $\Delta B/\Delta C \geq 1$.

Example: To build a bridge over a river costs $1,200,000, with benefits of $2,000,000, and disbenefits of $500,000. (a) What is the benefit-cost ratio? (b) What is the excess of benefits over costs?

Solution: (a) The benefit-cost ratio B/C is regarded as $(B - D)/C$. Here B = benefits, D = disbenefits, and C = cost.

Benefit-cost ratio: (2,000,000 – 500,000)/1,200,000 = 1.25

As the ratio is greater than 1, the project is worth undertaking.

(b) The excess of benefits over cost = 2,000,000 – 1,200,000 – 500,000 = 300,000.

Payback Period.—This is the period required to obtain benefits or cost savings equal to the initial investment made. For example, if a piece of equipment costs $10,000 and the company can obtain cost savings of $2,500 per year by procuring that equipment, the payback period can be said to be $10,000 divided by $2,500, which is 4 years. Payback period is a quick way of evaluating whether an investment is worth making. For example, a plant manager who has a payback period of 5 years in her mind might think the $10,000 investment is worth making.

Payback period ignores the rate of interest or assumes that rate to be 0%. Also, payback period ignores benefits coming in a non-linear manner over the life of the equipment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MECHANICS

156 Terms and Definitions
157 Unit Abbreviations
157 Acceleration of Gravity *g* Used in Mechanics Formulas
158 Use of Metric SI System in Mechanics Calculations
160 Force Systems
160 Graphical Representation of Forces
162 Couples
163 Composition and Resolution
164 Solution of Forces in the Same Plane
168 Solution of Forces Not in Same Plane
172 Friction
172 Laws of Friction
173 Coefficients of Friction
174 Simple Mechanisms
174 Levers
176 Inclined Plane—Wedge
177 Wheels and Pulleys
178 Screw
178 Geneva Wheel
179 Toggle Joint
180 Pendulums
180 Formulas
181 Harmonic

VELOCITY, ACCELERATION, WORK, AND ENERGY

182 Velocity and Acceleration
182 Newton's Laws of Motion
182 Constant Velocity and Acceleration
183 Angular Velocity of a Rotating Body
184 Linear Velocity of Points on a Rotating Body
184 Rotary Motion with Constant Acceleration
186 Force, Work, Energy, and Momentum
186 Accelerations Resulting from Unbalanced Forces
188 Energy
189 Work by Forces and Couples
189 Relation Between Work and Energy
190 Force of a Blow

VELOCITY, ACCELERATION, WORK, AND ENERGY

(Continued)

191 Impulse and Momentum
193 Formulas for Work and Power
194 Centrifugal Force
195 Calculating
195 Centrifugal Casting
198 Balancing Rotating Parts
198 Static Balancing
198 Running, Dynamic Balance
198 Calculations
199 Counterbalancing Masses in a Single Plane
201 Counterbalancing Masses in Two or More Planes
202 Balancing Lathe Fixtures
204 Critical Speeds

STRENGTH OF MATERIALS

206 Mechanical Properties of Materials
208 Compressive and Shear Properties
208 Creep
208 Stress and Strain Analysis
209 Fatigue Properties
211 Factors of Safety
212 Stress and Strain
212 Working Stress
212 Stress Concentration Factors
216 Simple Stresses
218 Deflections
218 Combined Stresses
222 Three-Dimensional Stress
224 Sample Calculations
226 Stresses and Deflections in a Loaded Ring
227 Strength of Taper Pins

RIGID BODY PARAMETERS

228 Center of Gravity
235 Radius of Gyration
238 Center and Radius of Oscillation
238 Center of Percussion
239 Moment of Inertia
240 Calculating for Built-Up Sections
241 Formulas for Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, etc.
251 Polar Area Moment of Inertia and Section Modulus
251 Polar Mass Moment of Inertia
252 Formulas for Calculating

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MECHANICS AND STRENGTH OF MATERIALS

BEAMS

256 Beam Calculations
256 Stresses and Deflections in Beams
268 Rectangular Solid Beams
268 Deflection of Beam Uniformly Loaded for Part of Its Length
269 Round Solid Beams
270 Bending Stress Due to an Oblique Transverse Force
270 Beams of Uniform Strength
273 Deflection as a Limiting Factor
274 Curved Beams
277 Size of Rail to Carry a Load
278 Stresses Produced by Shocks
278 In Beams
279 In Helical Springs
280 Shocks from Bodies in Motion
280 Fatigue Stresses

COLUMNS

281 Strength of Columns or Struts
281 Rankine or Gordon Formula
281 Straight-Line Formula
281 American Railway Formulas
282 Euler Formula
282 Eccentrically Loaded Columns
282 Machine Elements Subjected to Compressive Loads
285 American Institute of Steel Construction

PLATES, SHELLS, AND CYLINDERS

288 Flat Stayed Surfaces
288 Strength and Deflection of Flat Plates
288 Square and Rectangular Flat Plates
290 Circular Flat Plates
290 Cylinders, Internal Pressure
291 Spherical Shells, Internal Pressure
293 Collapsing Pressure under External Pressures

SHAFTS

295 Shaft Calculations
295 Torsional Strength of Shafting
297 Torsional Deflection, Circular Shafts
298 Linear Deflection of Shafting
299 Design of Transmission Shafting
301 Effect of Keyways
301 Formula for Brittle Materials

SHAFTS (Continued)

302 Critical Speed of Rotating Shafts
302 Shaft Couplings
303 Comparison of Hollow and Solid Shafting

SPRINGS

304 Introduction to Spring Design
305 Spring Materials
305 Spring Steels in Wire Form
306 Alloy Spring Steels
306 Stainless Spring Steels
307 Copper-Base Spring Alloys
308 Nickel-Base Spring Alloys
309 Spring Stresses
309 Allowable Working Stresses
314 Endurance Limit for Materials
315 Stresses at Elevated Temperatures
316 Spring Design Data
316 Helical Compression Spring Design
320 Spring Characteristics
325 Extension Springs
327 Extension Spring Design
329 Tolerances for Compression and Extension Springs
331 Torsion Spring Design
338 Torsion Spring Characteristics
343 Torsion Spring Tolerances
344 Miscellaneous Springs
345 Moduli of Elasticity
345 Heat Treating Springs
348 Spring Failure
349 Music Wire

DISC SPRINGS

350 Performance of Disc Springs
350 Nomenclature
350 Group Classification
351 Contact Surfaces
351 Materials
352 Stacking
354 Disc Spring Forces and Stresses
354 Force Generated Without Contact Surfaces
357 Force Generated with Contact Surfaces
357 Functional Stresses
358 Fatigue Life
361 Recommended Dimensional Characteristics
361 Example Applications

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MECHANICS

Throughout this section of the Handbook, both English and metric SI data and formulas are given to cover the requirements of working in either system of measurement. Except for the passage entitled *Use of Metric SI System in Mechanics Calculations*, formulas and text relating exclusively to SI are given in bold face type.

Terms and Definitions

Definitions.—The science of mechanics is concerned with the effects of forces in causing or preventing motion. *Statics* is the branch of mechanics that deals with bodies in equilibrium, i.e., the forces acting on bodies cause them to remain at rest or to move with uniform velocity. *Dynamics* deals with bodies not in equilibrium, i.e., the forces acting on bodies cause them to move with non-uniform velocity. *Kinetics* is the branch of dynamics that concerns both the forces acting on bodies and the motions that they cause. *Kinematics* is the branch of dynamics that deals only with the motions of bodies without reference to the forces that cause them.

Definitions of certain terms and quantities as used in mechanics follow:

Force may be defined simply as a push or a pull, which may result from the force of contact between bodies or from a force, such as magnetism or gravitation, in which no direct contact takes place.

Matter is any substance that occupies space; gases, liquids, solids, electrons, atoms, molecules, etc., are all classified as matter.

Inertia is that property by which matter tends to resist any change in its motion or state of rest.

Mass is a measure of the inertia of a body.

Work, in mechanics, is the product of force and distance and is expressed by a combination of units of force and distance, expressed as foot-pound, inch-pound, meter-kilogram, etc. **The metric SI unit of work is the joule (J), which is the work done when the point of application of a force of one newton is displaced through a distance of one meter in the direction of the force.**

Power, in mechanics, is the rate of change of work per unit time; it is the product of force and distance divided by time; it measures the amount of work performed in a given time period. It is the rate of doing work and is expressed in foot-pound per minute, foot-pound per second, kilogram-meter per second, etc. **The metric SI unit is the watt (W), which is equivalent to one joule per second.**

Horsepower is the unit of power that has been adopted for engineering work. One horsepower (hp) is equal to 33,000 foot-pounds per minute or 550 foot-pounds per second. The *kilowatt* (kW), used in electrical work, equals 1.34 horsepower; or 1 horsepower equals 0.746 kilowatt. **However, in the metric SI, the term "horsepower" is not used, and the basic unit of power is the watt. This unit, and the derived units milliwatt and kilowatt, for example, are the same as those used in electrical work.**

Torque or moment of a force is a measure of the tendency of a force to rotate a body upon which it acts about an axis. The magnitude of the moment due to a force acting in a plane perpendicular to some axis is obtained by multiplying the force by the perpendicular distance from the axis to the line of action of the force. (If the axis of rotation is not perpendicular to the plane of the force, then the components of the force in a plane perpendicular to the axis of rotation are used to find the resultant moment of the force by finding the moment of each component and adding the component moments algebraically.) Moment or torque is commonly expressed in pound-feet, pound-inches, kilogram-meters, etc. **The metric SI unit is the newton-meter (N·m).**

Velocity is the rate of change of distance; it is expressed as distance divided by time, that is, feet per second, miles per hour, centimeters per second, meters per second, etc.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Acceleration is the time-rate of change of velocity and is expressed as velocity divided by time or as distance divided by time squared, that is, in feet per second per second or feet per second squared (ft/sec^2); inches per second per second or inches per second squared (in/sec^2); centimeters per second per second or centimeters per second squared (cm/sec^2); etc. **The metric SI unit is the meter per second squared (m/sec^2).**

Unit Abbreviations.—Standard abbreviations for the units of physical quantities are used throughout the Handbook. Comprehensive tables of unit abbreviations are found starting on page 2827 for US units, and on page 2832 for metric units.

Unit Systems.—In mechanics calculations, both *absolute* and *gravitational* systems of units are employed. The fundamental quantities in absolute systems are *length*, *time*, and *mass*, and from these the dimension of *force* is derived. Two absolute systems that have been in use for many years are the CGS (centimeter-gram-second) and the MKS (meter-kilogram-second) systems. They are named for the fundamental units of length, mass and time, respectively. Another system known as MKSA (meter-kilogram-second-ampere) links the MKS system of units of mechanics with electromagnetic units.

The General Conference of Weights and Measures (CGPM), which is the body responsible for all international matters concerning the metric system, adopted in 1954 a rationalized and coherent system of units based on the four MKSA units, including the kelvin as the unit of temperature and the candela as the unit of luminous intensity. In 1960, the CGPM formally named this system the "Système International d'Unités," for which the abbreviation is SI in all languages. In 1971, the 14th CGPM adopted a seventh base unit, the *mole,* which is the unit of quantity ("amount of substance"). Further details of the SI are given in the section *MEASURING UNITS* starting on page 2831**, and its application in mechanics calculations, contrasted with the use of the English system, is considered below.**

The fundamental quantities in gravitational systems are *length*, *time*, and *force*, and from these units, the dimension of *mass* is derived. In the gravitational system most widely used in English measure countries, the units of length, time, and force are, respectively, the foot (ft), the second (s or sec), and the pound (lb). The corresponding unit of mass, commonly called the *slug*, is equal to 1 lb-s^2/ft and is derived from the formula, $M = W/g$ in which M = mass in slugs, W = weight in pounds, and g = acceleration due to gravity, commonly taken as 32.16 ft/s^2. A body that weighs 32.16 lbs on the surface of the earth has, therefore, a mass of 1 slug.

Many engineering calculations utilize a system of units consisting of the inch,the second, and the pound. The corresponding units of mass are pounds second squared per inch (lb-s^2/in) and the value of g is taken as 386 in/s^2.

In a gravitational system that has been widely used in metric countries, the units of length, time, and force are, respectively, the meter, the second, and the kilogram-force (1 kgf = 9.80665 N). The corresponding units of mass are kgf-s^2/m and the value of g is taken as 9.81 m/s^2.

Acceleration of Gravity *g* Used in Mechanics Formulas.—The acceleration of a freely falling body varies according to location on the earth's surface as well as the height from which the body falls. Its value measured at sea level at the equator is 32.09 ft/sec^2 while at the poles is 32.26 ft/sec^2. In the United States it is customary to regard 32.16 as satisfactory for most practical purposes in engineering calculations.

Standard Pound Force: For use in defining the magnitude of a standard unit of force, known as the *pound force*, a fixed value of 32.1740 ft/sec^2, designated by the symbol g_0, has been adopted by international agreement. As a result of this agreement, whenever the term mass, M, appears in a mechanics formula and the substitution $M = W/g$ is made, use of the standard value g_0 = 32.1740 ft/sec^2 is implied, although as stated previously, it is customary to use approximate values for g except where extreme accuracy is required.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Use of Metric SI System in Mechanics Calculations.—The SI system is a development of the traditional metric system based on decimal arithmetic; fractions are avoided. For each physical quantity, units of different sizes are formed by multiplying or dividing a single base value by powers of 10. Conversions can be made simply by adding zeros or shifting decimal points. For example, the meter is the basic unit of length; *kilo*meter is a multiple (1000 meters); and *milli*meter is a sub-multiple (1/1000 of a meter).

In the older metric system, the simplicity of a series of units linked by powers of 10 is an advantage for plain quantities such as length, but this simplicity is lost as soon as more complex units are encountered. For example, in different branches of science and engineering, energy may appear as the erg, calorie, kilogram-meter, liter-atmosphere, or horsepower-hour. In contrast, the metric SI provides only one basic unit for each physical quantity, and universality is thus achieved.

There are seven *base units,* and in mechanics calculations three are used, which are for the basic quantities of length, mass, and time, expressed as meter (m), kilogram (kg), and second (s). The other four base-units are ampere (A) for electric current, kelvin (K) for thermodynamic temperature, candela (cd) for luminous intensity, and mole (mol) for amount of substance.

The SI is a coherent system. A system of units is said to be coherent if the product or quotient of any two unit quantities in the system is the unit of the resultant quantity. For example, in a coherent system in which the foot is a unit of length, the square foot is the unit of area, whereas the acre is not. Further details of the SI, and definitions of the units are given in the section *MEASURING UNITS* starting on page 2831, near the end of the Handbook.

Additional units of physical quantities are derived from the base-units. For example, the unit of velocity is meter per second (m/s), which is a combination of the base-units of length and time. The unit of acceleration is meter per second squared (m/s^2). By applying Newton's second law of motion, *force is proportional to mass multiplied by acceleration:*

The unit of force is obtained, which is $kg{\cdot}m/s^2$. This unit is the *newton,* or N.

Work, the product of force and distance, has units of $kg{\cdot}m^2/s^2$, which is the *joule,* or J. (1 J = 1 N·m) and energy is also expressed in these terms.

Power, or work per unit time, has units of $kg{\cdot}m^2/s^3$, which is the *watt,* or W. (1 W = 1 J/s = 1 N·m/s).

Information on Newton's laws may be found in *Newton's Laws of Motion* on page 182.

The coherence of SI units has two important advantages. The first, that of uniqueness and therefore universality, has been explained. The second is that it greatly simplifies technical calculations. Equations representing physical principles can be applied without introducing such numbers as 550 in power calculations, which, in the English system of measurement have to be used to convert units. Thus, conversion factors largely disappear from calculations carried out in SI units, with a great saving in time and labor.

Mass, Weight, Force, Load: SI is an absolute system (see *Unit Systems* on page 157), and consequently it is necessary to make a clear distinction between mass and weight. The *mass* of a body is a measure of its inertia, which is unaffected by gravity whereas the *weight* of a body is the *force* exerted on it by gravity. In a fixed gravitational field, weight is directly proportional to mass, and the distinction between mass and weight can be easily overlooked. However, if a body is moved to a different gravitational field, for example, that of the moon, its weight alters, but its mass remains unchanged. Because the gravitational field on earth varies from place to place by only a small amount, and because weight is proportional to mass, it is practical to use the weight of unit mass as a unit of force, and this procedure is adopted in both the English and older metric systems of measurement. In common usage, they are given the same names, and we say that a mass of 1 pound has a weight of 1 pound. In the former case the pound is being used as a unit of mass, and in the latter case, as a unit of force. This procedure is convenient in some branches of engineering, but leads to confusion in others.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As mentioned earlier, Newton's second law of motion states that force is proportional to mass times acceleration. Because an unsupported body on the earth's surface falls with acceleration g (32 ft/s^2 approximately), the pound force (lbf) is that force which will impart an acceleration of g ft/s^2 to a 1 pound mass (lbm). Similarly, the kilogram force (kgf) is that force which will impart an acceleration of g (9.8 m/s^2 approximately), to a mass of 1 kg. In the SI, the *newton* is that force which will impart *unit acceleration* (1 m/s^2) to a mass of one kilogram. The newton is therefore smaller than the kilogram (force) in the ratio 1:g (about 1:9.8). This fact has important consequences in engineering calculations. The factor g now disappears from a wide range of formulas in dynamics, but appears in many formulas in statics where it was formerly absent. It is however not quite the same g, for reasons which will now be explained.

In the article on page 186, the mass of a body is referred to as M, but it is immediately replaced in subsequent formulas by W/g, where W is the weight in pounds (force), which leads to familiar expressions such as $WV^2/2g$ for kinetic energy. In this treatment, the M is really expressed in terms of the slug (page 157), a unit normally used only in aeronautical engineering. In everyday engineers' language, weight and mass are regarded as synonymous and expressions such as $WV^2 / 2g$ are used without pondering the distinction. Nevertheless, on reflection it seems odd that g should appear in a formula which has nothing to do with gravity at all. In fact the g used here is not the true, local value of the acceleration due to gravity, but an arbitrary standard value chosen as part of the definition of the pound force and is more properly designated g_0 (page 157). Its function is not to indicate the strength of the local gravitational field but to convert from one unit to another.

In SI the unit of mass is the *kilogram*, and the unit of force (and weight) is the *newton*.

The following are typical statements in dynamics expressed in SI units:

A force of R newtons acting on a mass of M kilograms produces an acceleration of R/M m/s^2. The kinetic energy of a mass of M kg moving with velocity V m/s is $\frac{1}{2}\,MV^2$ kg (m/s)^2 or $\frac{1}{2}\,MV^2$ joules. The work done by a force of R newtons moving a distance L meters is RL N·m, or RL joules. If this work were converted entirely into kinetic energy we could write $RL = \frac{1}{2}\,MV^2$ and it is instructive to consider the units. Remembering that the N is the same as the kg·m/s^2, we have (kg·m/s^2) m = kg (m/s)^2, which is obviously correct. It will be noted that g does not appear anywhere in these statements.

In contrast, in many branches of engineering where the weight of a body is important, rather than its mass, using SI units, g does appear where formerly it was absent. Thus, if a rope hangs vertically supporting a mass of M kilograms the tension in the rope is Mg N. Here g is acceleration due to gravity, and its units are m/s^2. The ordinary numerical value of 9.81 will be sufficiently accurate for most purposes on earth. The expression is still valid elsewhere, for example, on the moon, provided the proper value of g is used. The maximum tension the rope can safely withstand (and other similar properties) will also be specified in terms of the newton, so that direct comparison may be made with the tension predicted.

Words like load and weight have to be used with greater care. In everyday language we might say "a lift carries a load of five people of average weight 70 kg," but in precise technical language we say that if the average mass is 70 kg, then the average weight is 70g N, and the total load (that is force) on the lift is 350g N.

If the lift starts to rise with acceleration a m/s^2, the load becomes 350 ($g + a$) N; both g and a have units of m/s^2, the mass is in kg, so the load is in terms of kg·m/s^2, which is the same as the newton.

Pressure and stress: These quantities are expressed in terms of force per unit area. In SI the unit is the *pascal* (Pa), which expressed in terms of SI derived and base units is the newton per meter squared (N/m^2). The pascal is very small—equivalent to 0.15×10^{-3} lb/in^2 — hence the kilopascal (kPa = 1000 pascals) and the megapascal (MPa =

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

10^6 pascals) may be more convenient multiples in practice. Thus, note: 1 N/mm^2 = 1 MN/m^2 = 1 MPa.

In addition to the pascal, the *bar*, a non-SI unit, is in use in the field of pressure measurement in some countries, including England. Thus, in view of existing practice, the International Committee of Weights and Measures (CIPM) decided in 1969 to retain this unit for a limited time for use with those of SI. 1 bar = 10^5 pascals and 1 hectobar = 10^7 pascals.

Force Systems

Scalar and Vector Quantities.—The quantities dealt with in mechanics are of two kinds according to whether magnitude alone or direction as well as magnitude must be known in order to completely specify them. Quantities such as time, volume and density are completely specified when their magnitude is known. Such quantities are called *scalar* quantities. Quantities such as force, velocity, acceleration, moment, and displacement must, in order to be specified completely, include direction as well as magnitude, are called *vector* quantities.

Graphical Representation of Forces.—A force has three characteristics which, when known, determine it. They are *direction*, *point of application*, and *magnitude*. The direction of a force is the direction it tends to move the body upon which it acts. The point of application is the place on the line of action where the force is applied. Forces may conveniently be represented by straight lines and arrow heads. The arrow head indicates the direction of the force, and the length of the line, its magnitude to any suitable scale. The point of application may be at any point on the line, but it is generally convenient to assume it to be at one end. In Fig. 1, a force is supposed to act along line *AB* in a direction from left to right. The length of line *AB* shows the magnitude of the force. If point *A* is the point of application, the force is exerted as a pull, but if point *B* be assumed to be the point of application, it would indicate that the force is exerted as a push.

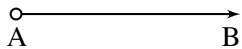


Fig. 1. Vector

Velocities, moments, displacements, etc. may similarly be represented and manipulated graphically because they are all of the same class of quantities, *vectors*. (See *Scalar and Vector Quantities*.)

Addition and Subtraction of Forces: The resultant of two forces applied at the same point and acting in the same direction, as in Fig. 2, is equal to the sum of the forces. For example, if forces *AB* and *AC*, one equal to 2 lbs the other equal to 3 lbs, are applied at point *A*, then their resultant *AD* equals the sum of these forces, or 5 lbs.

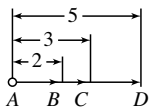


Fig. 2.

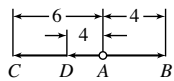


Fig. 3.

If two forces act in opposite directions, as in Fig. 3, then their resultant is equal to their difference, and the direction of the resultant is the same as the direction of the greater of the two forces. For example, *AB* and *AC* are both applied at point *A*; then, if *AB* equals 4 N and *AC* equals 6 N, the resultant force *AD* equals 2 N and acts in the direction of *AC*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Parallelogram of Forces: If two forces applied at a point are represented in magnitude and direction by the adjacent sides of a parallelogram (*AB* and *AC* in Fig. 4), their resultant will be represented in magnitude and direction by the diagonal *AR* drawn from the intersection of the two component forces.

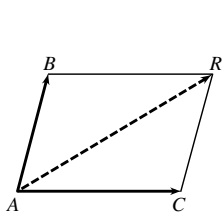


Fig. 4.

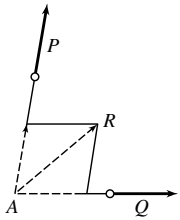


Fig. 5.

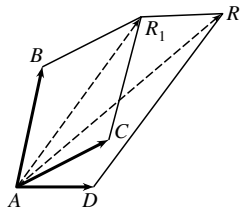


Fig. 6.

If two forces *P* and *Q* do not have the same point of application, as in Fig. 5, but the lines indicating their directions intersect, the forces may be imagined as having been applied at the point of intersection between the lines (as at *A*), and the resultant of the two forces may be found by constructing the parallelogram of forces. Line *AR* shows the direction and magnitude of the resultant, the point of application of which may be assumed to be at any point on line *AR* or its extension.

If the resultant of three or more forces having the same point of application is to be found, as in Fig. 6, first the resultant of any two of the forces (*AB* and *AC*) is found. Then, the resultant of the resultant just found (AR_1) and the third force (*AD*) is found. If there are more than three forces, continue in this manner until the resultant of all remaining forces has been found.

Parallel Forces: If two forces are parallel and act in the same direction, as in Fig. 7, then their resultant is parallel to both lines, is located between them, and is equal to the sum of the two components. The point of application of the resultant divides the line joining the points of application of the components inversely as the magnitude of the components. Thus,

$$AB{:}CE = CD{:}AD$$

The resultant of two parallel and unequal forces acting in opposite directions, Fig. 8, is parallel to both lines, is located outside of them on the side of the greater of the components, has the same direction as the greater component, and is equal in magnitude to the difference between the two components. The point of application on the line *AC* produced is found from the proportion:

$$AB{:}CD = CE{:}AE$$

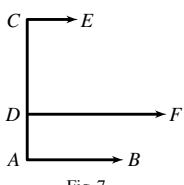


Fig. 7.

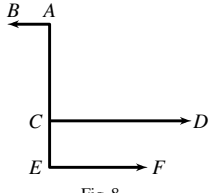


Fig. 8.

Polygon of Forces: When several forces are applied at a point and act in a single plane, Fig. 9, their resultant may be found more simply than by the method just described, as follows: From the extreme end of the line representing the first force, draw a line representing the second force, parallel to it and of the same length and in the direction of the second

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

force. Then through the extreme end of this line, draw a line parallel to, and of the same length and direction as the third force, and continue this until all the forces have been thus represented. Then draw a line from the point of application of the forces (as *A*) to the extreme point (as 5_1) of the line last drawn. This line ($A5_1$) is the resultant of the forces.

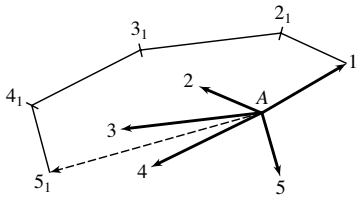


Fig. 9.

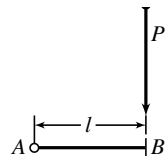


Fig. 10.

Moment of a Force: The moment of a force with respect to a point is the magnitude of the force multiplied by the perpendicular distance from the given point to the direction of the force. In Fig. 10, the moment of the force *P* with relation to point *A* is $P \times AB$. The perpendicular distance *AB* is called the *lever-arm* of the force. The moment is the measure of the tendency of the force to produce rotation about the given point, which is termed the *center-of-moments*. If the force is measured in pounds and the distance in inches, the moment is expressed in inch-pounds. **In metric SI units, the moment is expressed in newton-meters (N·m), or newton-millimeters (N·mm).**

The moment of the resultant of any number of forces acting together in the same plane is equal to the algebraic sum of the moments of the separate forces.

Couples.—Two parallel forces of equal magnitude acting parallel to one another in opposite directions are a *couple*. The *resultant force* of a couple is zero; the resultant itself is a *pure moment*. In the first example of Fig. 11, forces *AB* and *CD* are a couple. A couple tends to produce *rotation*. The measure of this tendency is called the moment of the couple; it is the product of one of the forces multiplied by the distance between the two.

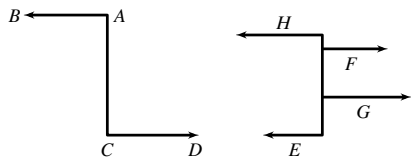


Fig. 11. Two Examples of Couples

As a couple has zero resultant force, no single force can balance or counteract the tendency of the couple to produce rotation. To prevent the rotation of a body acted upon by a couple, two other forces are required, forming a second couple. In the second illustration of Fig. 11, *E* and *F* form one couple and *G* and *H* are the balancing couple. The body on which they act is in equilibrium if the moments of the two couples are equal and tend to rotate the body in opposite directions. A couple may also be represented by a vector in the direction of the axis about which the couple acts. The length of the vector, to some scale, represents the magnitude of the couple, and the direction of the vector is that in which a right-hand screw would advance if it were to be rotated by the couple.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Composition of a Single Force and Couple.—A single force and a couple in the same plane or in parallel planes may be replaced by another single force equal in magnitude and parallel to the first force, at a distance from it equal to the moment of the couple divided by the magnitude of the force. The new single force is located so that the moment of the resultant about the point of application of the original force is of the same sign as the moment of the couple.

Fig. 12 illustrates this relationship. Forces N and $-N$ are a couple. The moment of this couple is $N(ac + bc)$. The resultant of N, $-N$, and a single force P is a force O, equal in magnitude to P and acting on an axis through a point c such that the moment of P and $-N$ are equal to the moment of N. That is: $(P - N) \times ac = N \times bc$.

Thus,

$$ac = \frac{N(ac + bc)}{P} = \frac{\text{Moment of Couple}}{P}$$

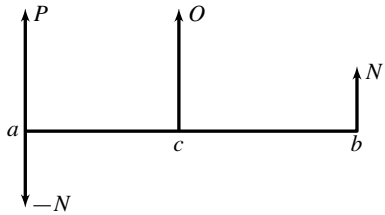


Fig. 12. Single Force and Couple Composition

Algebraic Composition and Resolution of Force Systems.—The graphical methods given beginning on page 160 are convenient for solving problems involving force systems in which all of the forces lie in the same plane and only a few forces are involved. If many forces are involved, however, or the forces do not lie in the same plane, it is better to use algebraic methods to avoid complicated space diagrams. Systematic procedures for solving force problems by algebraic methods are outlined beginning on page 163. In connection with the use of these procedures, several terms applicable to force systems in general must be defined.

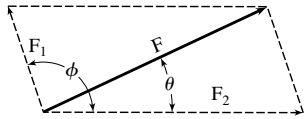
As has been illustrated, single force that produces the same effect upon a body as two or more forces acting together is called their *resultant*. The separate forces which can be so combined are called the *components*. Finding the resultant of two or more forces is called the *composition* of forces, and finding two or more components of a given force, the *resolution* of forces. Forces are said to be *concurrent* when their lines of action can be extended to meet at a common point; forces that are *parallel* are, of course, *nonconcurrent*. Two forces having the same line of action are said to be *collinear*. Two forces equal in magnitude, parallel, and in opposite directions constitute a *couple*. Forces all in the same plane are said to be *coplanar;* if not in the same plane, they are called *noncoplanar* forces.

The resultant of a system of forces is the simplest equivalent system that can be determined. It may be a single force, a couple, or a noncoplanar force and a couple. This last type of resultant, a noncoplanar force and a couple, may be replaced, if desired, by two *skewed* forces (forces that are nonconcurrent, nonparallel, and noncoplanar). When the resultant of a system of forces is zero, the system is in equilibrium, that is, the body on which the force system acts remains at rest or continues to move with uniform velocity.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Algebraic Solution of Force Systems — All Forces in the Same Plane

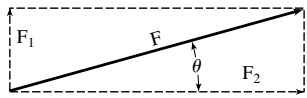
Finding Two Concurrent Components of a Single Force:



Case I: To find two components F_1 and F_2 at angles θ and ϕ, ϕ not being 90°.

$$F_1 = \frac{F \sin \theta}{\sin \phi}$$

$$F_2 = \frac{F \sin (\phi - \theta)}{\sin \phi}$$

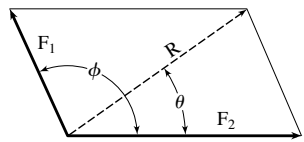


Case II: Components F_1 and F_2 form 90° angle.

$$F_1 = F \sin \theta$$

$$F_2 = F \cos \theta$$

Finding the Resultant of Two Concurrent Forces:

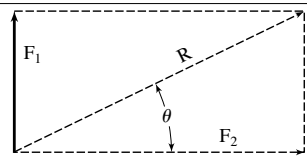


Case I: Forces F_1 and F_2 do not form 90° angle.

$$R = \frac{F_1 \sin \phi}{\sin \theta} \quad \text{or} \quad R = \frac{F_2 \sin \phi}{\sin (\phi - \theta)} \quad \text{or}$$

$$R = \sqrt{F_1^2 + F_2^2 + 2F_1 F_2 \cos \phi}$$

$$\tan \theta = \frac{F_1 \sin \phi}{F_1 \cos \phi + F_2}$$



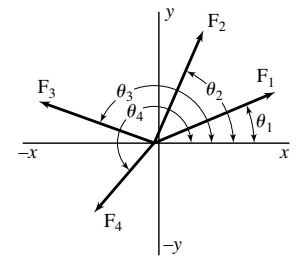
Case II: Forces F_1 and F_2 form 90° angle.

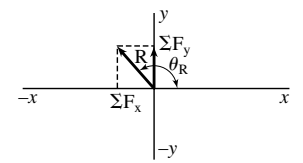
$$R = \frac{F_2}{\cos \theta} \quad \text{or} \quad R = \frac{F_1}{\sin \theta} \quad \text{or}$$

$$R = \sqrt{F_1^2 + F_2^2}$$

$$\tan \theta = \frac{F_1}{F_2}$$

Finding the Resultant of Three or More Concurrent Forces:





To determine resultant of forces F_1, F_2, F_3, etc. making angles, respectively, of $\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3$, etc. with the x axis, find the x and y components F_x and F_y of each force and arrange in a table similar to that shown below for a system of three forces. Find the algebraic sum of the F_x and F_y components (ΣF_x and ΣF_y) and use these to determine resultant R.

Force	F_x	F_y
F_1	$F_1 \cos \theta_1$	$F_1 \sin \theta_1$
F_2	$F_2 \cos \theta_2$	$F_2 \sin \theta_2$
F_3	$F_3 \cos \theta_3$	$F_3 \sin \theta_3$
	ΣF_x	ΣF_y

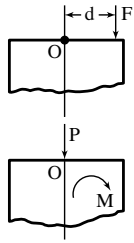
$$R = \sqrt{(\Sigma F_x)^2 + (\Sigma F_y)^2}$$

$$\cos \theta_R = \frac{\Sigma F_x}{R}$$

$$\text{or} \quad \tan \theta_R = \frac{\Sigma F_y}{\Sigma F_x}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Finding a Force and a Couple which Together Are Equivalent to a Single Force:



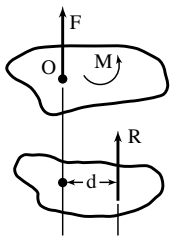
To resolve a single force F into a couple of moment M and a force P passing through any chosen point O at a distance d from the original force F, use the relations

$$P = F$$

$$M = F \times d$$

The moment M must, of course, tend to produce rotation about O in the same direction as the original force. Thus, as seen in the diagram, F tends to produce clockwise rotation; hence M is shown clockwise.

Finding the Resultant of a Single Force and a Couple:



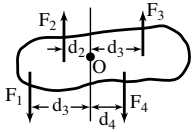
The resultant of a single force F and a couple M is a single force R equal in magnitude and direction to F and parallel to it at a distance d to the left or right of F.

$$R = F$$

$$d = M \div R$$

Resultant R is placed to the left or right of point of application O of the original force F depending on which position will give R the same direction of moment about O as the original couple M.

Finding the Resultant of a System of Parallel Forces:



To find the resultant of a system of coplanar parallel forces, proceed as indicated below.

1) Select any convenient point O from which perpendicular distances d_1, d_2, d_3, etc. to parallel forces F_1, F_2, F_3, etc. can be specified or calculated.

2) Find the algebraic sum of all the forces; this will give the magnitude of the resultant of the system.

$$R = \Sigma F = F_1 + F_2 + F_3 + \ldots$$

3) Find the algebraic sum of the moments of the forces about O; clockwise moments may be taken as negative and counterclockwise moments as positive:

$$\Sigma M_O = F_1 d_1 + F_2 d_2 + \ldots$$

4) Calculate the distance d from O to the line of action of resultant R:

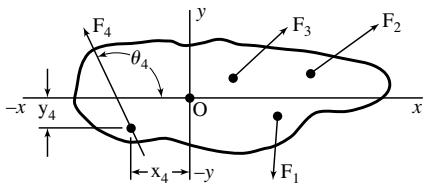
$$d = \frac{\Sigma M_O}{R}$$

This distance is measured to the left or right from O depending on which position will give the moment of R the same direction of rotation about O as the couple ΣM_O, that is, if ΣM_O is negative, then d is left or right of O depending on which direction will make $R \times d$ negative.

Note Concerning Interpretation of Results: If $R = 0$, then the resultant of the system is a couple ΣM_O; if $\Sigma M_O = 0$ then the resultant is a single force R; if both R and $\Sigma M_O = 0$, then the system is in equilibrium.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Finding the Resultant of Forces Not Intersecting at a Common Point:



To determine the resultant of a coplanar, nonconcurrent, nonparallel force system as shown in the diagram, proceed as shown below.

1) Draw a set of x and y coordinate axes through any convenient point O in the plane of the forces as shown in the diagram.
2) Determine the x and y coordinates of any convenient point on the line of action of each force and the angle θ, measured in a counterclockwise direction, that each line of action makes with the positive x axis. For example, in the diagram, coordinates x_4, y_4, and θ_4 are shown for F_4. Similar data should be known for each of the forces of the system.
3) Calculate the x and y components (F_x, F_y) of each force and the moment of each component about O. Counterclockwise moments are considered positive and clockwise moments are negative. Tabulate all results in a manner similar to that shown below for a system of three forces and find ΣF_x, ΣF_y, ΣM_O by algebraic addition.

Force	Coordinates of F			Components of F		Moment of F about O
F	x	y	θ	F_x	F_y	$M_O = xF_y - yF_x$
F_1	x_1	y_1	θ_1	$F_1 \cos\theta_1$	$F_1 \sin\theta_1$	$x_1F_1 \sin\theta_1 - y_1F_1 \cos\theta_1$
F_2	x_2	y_2	θ_2	$F_2 \cos\theta_2$	$F_2 \sin\theta_2$	$x_2F_2 \sin\theta_2 - y_2F_2 \cos\theta_2$
F_3	x_3	y_3	θ_3	$F_3 \cos\theta_3$	$F_3 \sin\theta_3$	$x_3F_3 \sin\theta_3 - y_3F_3 \cos\theta_3$
				ΣF_x	ΣF_y	ΣM_O

4) Compute the resultant of the system and the angle θ_R it makes with the x axis by using the formulas:

$$R = \sqrt{(\Sigma F_x)^2 + (\Sigma F_y)^2}$$

$$\cos\theta_R = \Sigma F_x \div R \quad \text{or} \quad \tan\theta_R = \Sigma F_y \div \Sigma F_x$$

5) Calculate the distance d from O to the line of action of the resultant R:

$$d = \Sigma M_O \div R$$

Distance d is in such direction from O as will make the moment of R about O have the same sign as ΣM_O.

Note Concerning Interpretation of Results: If $R = 0$, then the resultant is a couple ΣM_O; if $\Sigma M_O = 0$, then R passes through O; if both $R = 0$ and $\Sigma M_O = 0$, then the system is in equilibrium.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Find the resultant of three coplanar nonconcurrent forces for which the following data are given.

$$F_1 = 10 \text{ lbs}; \; x_1 = 5 \text{ in.}; \; y_1 = -1 \text{ in.}; \; \theta_1 = 270°$$
$$F_2 = 20 \text{ lbs}; \; x_2 = 4 \text{ in.}; \; y_2 = 1.5 \text{ in.}; \; \theta_2 = 50°$$
$$F_3 = 30 \text{ lbs}; \; x_3 = 2 \text{ in.}; \; y_3 = 2 \text{ in.}; \; \theta_3 = 60°$$

$$F_{x_1} = 10 \cos 270° = 10 \times 0 = 0 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$F_{x_2} = 20 \cos 50° = 20 \times 0.64279 = 12.86 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$F_{x_3} = 30 \cos 60° = 30 \times 0.5000 = 15.00 \text{ lbs.}$$

$$F_{y_1} = 10 \times \sin 270° = 10 \times (-1) = -10.00 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$F_{y_2} = 20 \times \sin 50° = 20 \times 0.76604 = 15.32 \text{ lbs.}$$
$$F_{y_3} = 30 \times \sin 60° = 30 \times 0.86603 = 25.98 \text{ lbs.}$$

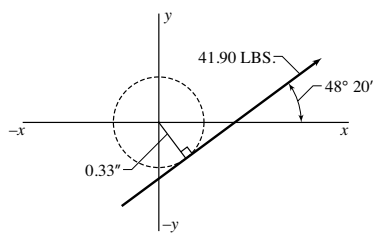
$$M_{O_1} = 5 \times (-10) - (-1) \times 0 = -50 \text{ in. lbs.}$$
$$M_{O_2} = 4 \times 15.32 - 1.5 \times 12.86 = 41.99 \text{ in. lbs.}$$
$$M_{O_3} = 2 \times 25.98 - 2 \times 15 = 21.96 \text{ in. lbs.}$$

***Note:* When working in metric SI units, pounds are replaced by newtons (N); inches by meters or millimeters, and inch-pounds by newton-meters (N · m) or newton-millimeters (N · mm).**

Force	Coordinates of F			Components of F		Moment of F about O
F	x	y	θ	F_x	F_y	
$F_1 = 10$	5	–1	270°	0	–10.00	–50.00
$F_2 = 20$	4	1.5	50°	12.86	15.32	41.99
$F_3 = 30$	2	2	60°	15.00	25.98	21.96
				$\Sigma F_x = 27.86$	$\Sigma F_y = 31.30$	$\Sigma M_O = 13.95$

$$R = \sqrt{(27.86)^2 + (31.30)^2}$$
$$= 41.90 \text{ lbs}$$
$$\tan \theta_R = \frac{31.30}{27.86} = 1.1235$$
$$\theta_R = 48°20'$$
$$d = \frac{13.95}{41.90} = 0.33 \text{ inch}$$

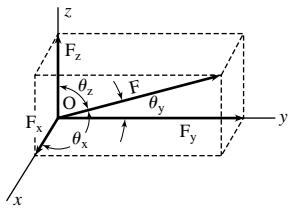
measured as shown on the diagram.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Algebraic Solution of Force Systems — Forces Not in Same Plane

Resolving a Single Force Into Its Three Rectangular Components:

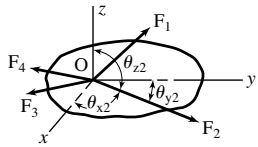


$$F_x = F\cos\theta_x$$
$$F_y = F\cos\theta_y$$
$$F_z = F\cos\theta_z$$
$$F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2 + F_z^2}$$

The diagram shows how a force F may be resolved at any point O on its line of action into three concurrent components each of which is perpendicular to the other two.

The x, y, z components F_x, F_y, F_z of force F are determined from the accompanying relations in which $\theta_x, \theta_y, \theta_z$ are the angles that the force F makes with the x, y, z axes.

Finding the Resultant of Any Number of Concurrent Forces:



To find the resultant of any number of noncoplanar concurrent forces F_1, F_2, F_3, etc., use the procedure outlined below.

1) Draw a set of x, y, z axes at O, the point of concurrency of the forces. The angles each force makes measured counterclockwise from the positive x, y, and z coordinate axes must be known in addition to the magnitudes of the forces. For force F_2, for example, the angles are $\theta_{x2}, \theta_{y2}, \theta_{z2}$ as indicated on the diagram.

2) Apply the first three formulas given under the heading "Resolving a Single Force Into Its Three Rectangular Components" to each force to find its x, y, and z components. Tabulate these calculations as shown below for a system of three forces. Algebraically add the calculated components to find $\Sigma F_x, \Sigma F_y$, and ΣF_z which are the components of the resultant.

Force	Angles			Components of Forces		
F	θ_x	θ_y	θ_z	F_x	F_y	F_z
F_1	θ_{x1}	θ_{y1}	θ_{z1}	$F_1\cos\theta_{x1}$	$F_1\cos\theta_{y1}$	$F_1\cos\theta_{z1}$
F_2	θ_{x2}	θ_{y2}	θ_{z2}	$F_2\cos\theta_{x2}$	$F_2\cos\theta_{y2}$	$F_2\cos\theta_{z2}$
F_3	θ_{x3}	θ_{y3}	θ_{z3}	$F_3\cos\theta_{x3}$	$F_3\cos\theta_{y3}$	$F_3\cos\theta_{z3}$
				ΣF_x	ΣF_y	ΣF_z

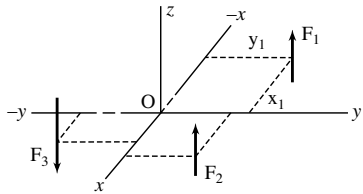
3) Find the resultant of the system from the formula $R = \sqrt{(\Sigma F_x)^2 + (\Sigma F_y)^2 + (\Sigma F_z)^2}$

4) Calculate the angles θ_{xR}, θ_{yR}, and θ_{zR} that the resultant R makes with the respective coordinate axes:

$$\cos\theta_{xR} = \frac{\Sigma F_x}{R}$$
$$\cos\theta_{yR} = \frac{\Sigma F_y}{R}$$
$$\cos\theta_{zR} = \frac{\Sigma F_z}{R}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Finding the Resultant of Parallel Forces Not in the Same Plane:



In the diagram, forces F_1, F_2, etc. represent a system of noncoplanar parallel forces. To find the resultant of such systems, use the procedure shown below.

1) Draw a set of x, y, and z coordinate axes through any point O in such a way that one of these axes, say the z axis, is parallel to the lines of action of the forces. The x and y axes then will be perpendicular to the forces.
2) Set the distances of each force from the x and y axes in a table as shown below. For example, x_1 and y_1 are the x and y distances for F_1 shown in the diagram.
3) Calculate the moment of each force about the x and y axes and set the results in the table as shown for a system consisting of three forces. The algebraic sums of the moments ΣM_x and ΣM_y are then obtained. (In taking moments about the x and y axes, assign counterclockwise moments a plus (+) sign and clockwise moments a minus (–) sign. In deciding whether a moment is counterclockwise or clockwise, look from the positive side of the axis in question toward the negative side.)

Force	Coordinates of Force F		Moments M_x and M_y due to F	
F	x	y	M_x	M_y
F_1	x_1	y_1	F_1y_1	F_1x_1
F_2	x_2	y_2	F_2y_2	F_2x_2
F_3	x_3	y_3	F_3y_3	F_3x_3
ΣF			ΣM_x	ΣM_y

4) Find the algebraic sum ΣF of all the forces; this will be the resultant R of the system.

$$R = \Sigma F = F_1 + F_2 + \ldots$$

5) Calculate x_R and y_R, the moment arms of the resultant:

$$x_R = \Sigma M_y \div R$$
$$y_R = \Sigma M_x \div R$$

These moment arms are measured in a direction along the x and y axes as will give the resultant a moment of the same direction of rotation as ΣM_x and ΣM_y.

Note Concerning Interpretation of Results: If ΣM_x and ΣM_y are both 0, then the resultant is a single force R along the z axis; if R is also 0, then the system is in equilibrium. If R is 0 but ΣM_x and ΣM_y are not both 0, then the resultant is a couple

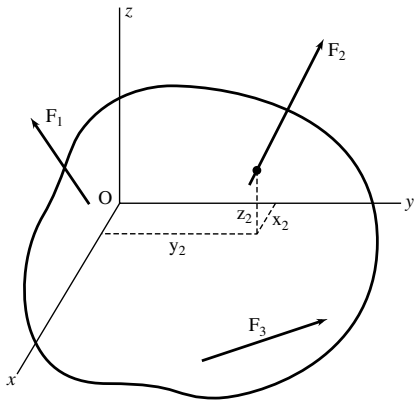
$$M_R = \sqrt{(\Sigma M_x)^2 + (\Sigma M_y)^2}$$

that lies in a plane parallel to the z axis and making an angle θ_R measured in a counterclockwise direction from the positive x axis and calculated from the following formula:

$$\sin \theta_R = \frac{\Sigma M_x}{M_R}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Finding the Resultant of Nonparallel Forces Not Meeting at a Common Point:



The diagram shows a system of noncoplanar, nonparallel, nonconcurrent forces F_1, F_2, etc. for which the resultant is to be determined. Generally speaking, the resultant will be a noncoplanar force and a couple, which may be further combined, if desired, into two forces that are skewed.

This is the most general force system that can be devised, so each of the other systems so far described represents a special, simpler case of this general force system. The method of solution described below for a system of three forces applies for any number of forces.

1) Select a set of coordinate x, y, and z axes at any desired point O in the body as shown in the diagram.
2) Determine the x, y, and z coordinates of any convenient point on the line of action of each force as shown for F_2. Also determine the angles, $\theta_x, \theta_y, \theta_z$ that each force makes with each coordinate axis. These angles are measured counterclockwise from the positive direction of the x, y, and z axes. The data is tabulated, as shown in the table accompanying Step 3, for convenient use in subsequent calculations.
3) Calculate the x, y, and z components of each force using the formulas given in the accompanying table. Add these components algebraically to get $\Sigma F_x, \Sigma F_y$ and ΣF_z, which are the components of the resultant R given by the formula,

$$R = \sqrt{(\Sigma F_x)^2 + (\Sigma F_y)^2 + (\Sigma F_z)^2}$$

Force	Coordinates of Force F						Components of F		
F	x	y	z	θ_x	θ_y	θ_z	F_x	F_y	F_z
F_1	x_1	y_1	z_1	θ_{x1}	θ_{y1}	θ_{z1}	$F_1 \cos\theta_{x1}$	$F_1 \cos\theta_{y1}$	$F_1 \cos\theta_{z1}$
F_2	x_2	y_2	z_2	θ_{x2}	θ_{y2}	θ_{z2}	$F_2 \cos\theta_{x2}$	$F_2 \cos\theta_{y2}$	$F_2 \cos\theta_{z2}$
F_3	x_3	y_3	z_3	θ_{x3}	θ_{y3}	θ_{z3}	$F_3 \cos\theta_{x3}$	$F_3 \cos\theta_{y3}$	$F_3 \cos\theta_{z3}$
							ΣF_x	ΣF_y	ΣF_z

The resultant force R makes angles of θ_{xR}, θ_{yR}, and θ_{zR} with the x, y, and z axes, respectively, and passes through the selected point O. These angles are determined from the formulas,

$$\cos\theta_{xR} = \Sigma F_x \div R$$
$$\cos\theta_{yR} = \Sigma F_y \div R$$
$$\cos\theta_{zR} = \Sigma F_z \div R$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4) Calculate the moments M_x, M_y, M_z about x, y, and z axes, respectively, due to the F_x, F_y, and F_z components of each force and set them in tabular form. The formulas to use are given in the accompanying table.

In interpreting moments about the x, y, and z axes, consider counterclockwise moments a plus (+) sign and clockwise moments a minus (−) sign. In deciding whether a moment is counterclockwise or clockwise, look from the positive side of the axis in question toward the negative side.

Force	Moments of Components of F (F_x, F_y, F_z) about x, y, z axes		
F	$M_x = yF_z - zF_y$	$M_y = zF_x - xF_z$	$M_z = xF_y - yF_x$
F_1	$M_{x1} = y_1F_{z1} - z_1F_{y1}$	$M_{y1} = z_1F_{x1} - x_1F_{z1}$	$M_{z1} = x_1F_{y1} - y_1F_{x1}$
F_2	$M_{x2} = y_2F_{z2} - z_2F_{y2}$	$M_{y2} = z_2F_{x2} - x_2F_{z2}$	$M_{z2} = x_2F_{y2} - y_2F_{x2}$
F_3	$M_{x3} = y_3F_{z3} - z_3F_{y3}$	$M_{y3} = z_3F_{x3} - x_3F_{z3}$	$M_{z3} = x_3F_{y3} - y_3F_{x3}$
	ΣM_x	ΣM_y	ΣM_z

5) Add the component moments algebraically to get $\Sigma M_x, \Sigma M_y$ and ΣM_z, which are the components of the resultant couple, M, given by the formula,

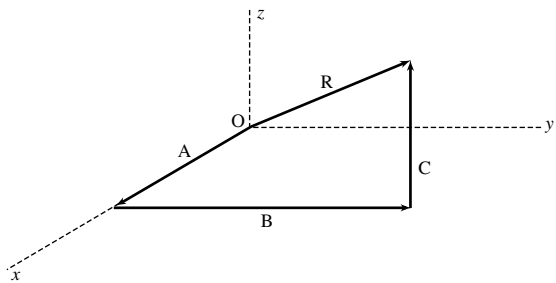
$$M = \sqrt{(\Sigma M_x)^2 + (\Sigma M_y)^2 + (\Sigma M_z)^2}$$

The resultant couple M will tend to produce rotation about an axis making angles of β_x, β_y, and β_z with the x, y, z axes, respectively. These angles are determined from the formulas,

$$\cos\beta_x = \frac{\Sigma M_x}{M} \quad \cos\beta_y = \frac{\Sigma M_y}{M} \quad \cos\beta_z = \frac{\Sigma M_z}{M}$$

General Method of Locating Resultant When Its Components Are Known: To determine the position of the resultant force of a system of forces, proceed as follows:

From the origin, point O, of a set of coordinate axes x, y, z, lay off on the x axis a length A representing the algebraic sum ΣF_x of the x components of all the forces. From the end of line A lay off a line B representing ΣF_y, the algebraic sum of the y components; this line B is drawn in a direction parallel to the y axis. From the end of line B lay off a line C representing ΣF_z. Finally, draw a line R from O to the end of C; R will be the resultant of the system. Notice that R is in the three-dimensional space bounded by the xy, xz, and yz planes.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Friction

Properties of Friction.—Friction is the resistance to motion that takes place when one body is moved upon another, and is generally defined as "that force which acts between two bodies at their surface of contact, so as to resist their sliding on each other." According to the conditions under which sliding occurs, the force of friction, F, bears a certain relation to the force between the two bodies called the normal force N. The relation between force of friction and normal force is given by the *coefficient of friction*, generally denoted by the Greek letter μ. Thus:

$$F = \mu \times N \quad \text{and} \quad \mu = \frac{F}{N}$$

Example: A body weighing 28 pounds rests on a horizontal surface. The force required to keep it in motion along the surface is 7 pounds. Find the coefficient of friction.

$$\mu = \frac{F}{N} = \frac{7}{28} = 0.25$$

If a body is placed on an inclined plane, the friction between the body and the plane will prevent it from sliding down the inclined surface, provided the angle of the plane with the horizontal is not too great. There is a certain angle, however, at which the body will just barely be able to remain stationary, the frictional resistance being very nearly overcome by the tendency of the body to slide down. This angle is termed the *angle of repose*, frequently denoted by the Greek letter θ, and the tangent of this angle is the coefficient of friction. Thus, $\mu = \tan \theta$.

A greater force is required to start a body moving from a state of rest than to merely keep it in motion, because *static (resting) friction* is greater than *sliding (motion) friction*.

Laws of Friction.—*Unlubricated or Dry Surfaces:*

1) At low pressures (low normal force per unit area) friction is directly proportional to the normal force between the two surfaces. As the pressure increases, the friction does not rise proportionally; but when pressure becomes abnormally high, friction increases at a rapid rate until seizing takes place.

2) Friction, both in its total amount and its coefficient, is independent of the area in contact, so long as the normal force remains the same. This is true for moderate pressures only. For high pressures, this law is modified in the same way as in the first case.

3) At very low velocities friction is independent of the velocity of rubbing. As velocity increases, friction decreases.

Lubricated Surfaces: For well-lubricated surfaces, the laws of friction are considerably different from those governing dry or poorly lubricated surfaces.

1) Frictional resistance is almost independent of pressure (normal force per unit area) if the surfaces are flooded with oil.

2) Friction varies directly with speed at low pressures; but at high pressures the friction is very great at low velocities, approaching a minimum at about 2 ft/s (0.61 m/s), linear velocity, and afterwards increasing approximately as the square root of the speed.

3) For well-lubricated surfaces frictional resistance depends, to a very great extent, on temperature, partly because of a change in the viscosity of the lubricant and partly because, for a journal bearing, bearing diameter increases with temperature rise more rapidly than does shaft diameter, thus relieving the bearing of side pressure.

4) If bearing surfaces are flooded with oil, friction is almost independent of the nature of the material of the surfaces in contact. As the lubrication becomes less ample, the coefficient of friction becomes more dependent upon the material of the surfaces.

Influence of Friction on Efficiency of Small Machine Elements.—Friction between machine parts lowers the efficiency of a machine. Average values of efficiency, in percent, of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the most common machine elements when carefully made are: ordinary bearings, 95 to 98; roller bearings, 98; ball bearings, 99; spur gears with cut teeth, including bearings, 99; bevel gears with cut teeth, including bearings, 98; belting, 96 to 98; high-class silent power transmission chain, 97 to 99; roller chains, 95 to 97.

Coefficients of Friction.—Table 1 and Table 2 provide representative values of static friction for various combinations of materials with dry (clean, unlubricated) and lubricated surfaces. The values for static, or breakaway, friction shown in these tables will generally be higher than the subsequent sliding friction. Typically, the steel-on-steel static coefficient of 0.8 unlubricated will drop to 0.4 when sliding has been initiated; with oil lubrication, the value will drop from 0.16 to 0.03.

Many factors affect friction, and even slight deviations from normal or test conditions can produce wide variations. Accordingly, when friction coefficients are used in design calculations, due allowance or factors of safety should be considered, and in critical applications, specific tests should be conducted to provide specific coefficients for material, geometry, and/or lubricant combinations.

Table 1. Coefficients of Static Friction for Steel on Various Materials

Material	Coefficient of Friction, μ		Material	Coefficient of Friction, μ	
	Clean	Lubricated		Clean	Lubricated
Steel	0.8	0.16	Hard carbon	0.14	0.11–0.14
Copper-lead alloy	0.22		Graphite	0.1	0.1
Phosphor-bronze	0.35		Tungsten carbide	0.4–0.6	0.1–0.2
Aluminum-bronze	0.45		Plexiglas	0.4–0.5	0.4–0.5
Brass	0.35	0.19	Polystyrene	0.3–0.35	0.3–0.35
Cast iron	0.4	0.21	Polythene	0.2	0.2
Bronze		0.16	Teflon	0.04	0.04
Sintered bronze		0.13			

Table 1 and Table 2 used with permission from *The Friction and Lubrication of Solids*, Vol. 1, by Bowden and Tabor, Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1950.

Table 2. Coefficients of Static Friction for Various Materials Combinations

Material Combination	Coefficient of Friction, μ		Material Combination	Coefficient of Friction, μ	
	Clean	Lubricated		Clean	Lubricated
Aluminum-aluminum	1.35	0.30	Tungsten carbide-tungsten carbide	0.2–0.25	0.12
Cadmium-cadmium	0.5	0.05	Plexiglas-Plexiglas	0.8	0.8
Chromium-chromium	0.41	0.34	Polystyrene-polystyrene	0.5	0.5
Copper-copper	1.0	0.08	Teflon-Teflon	0.04	0.04
Iron-iron	1.0	0.15–0.20	Nylon-nylon	0.15–0.25	
Magnesium-magnesium	0.6	0.08	Solids on rubber	1–4	
Nickel-nickel	0.7	0.28	Wood on wood (clean)	0.25–0.5	
Platinum-platinum	1.2	0.25	Wood on wood (wet)	0.2	
Silver-silver	1.4	0.55	Wood on metals (clean)	0.2–0.6	
Zinc-zinc	0.6	0.04	Wood on metals (wet)	0.2	
Glass-glass	0.9–1.0	0.1–0.6	Brick on wood	0.6	
Glass-metal	0.5–0.7	0.2–0.3	Leather on wood	0.3–0.4	
Diamond-diamond	0.1	0.05–0.1	Leather on metal (clean)	0.6	
Diamond-metal	0.1–0.15	0.1	Leather on metal (wet)	0.4	
Sapphire-sapphire	0.2	0.2	Leather on metal (greasy)	0.2	
Hard carbon on carbon	0.16	0.12–0.14	Brake material on cast iron	0.4	
Graphite-graphite (in vacuum)	0.5–0.8		Brake material on cast iron (wet)	0.2	
Graphite-graphite	0.1	0.1			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rolling Friction.—When a body rolls on a surface, the force resisting the motion is termed *rolling friction* or *rolling resistance*. Let W = total weight of rolling body or load on wheel, in pounds (newtons); r = radius of wheel, in inches (centimeters); f = coefficient of rolling resistance, in inches (centimeters). Then, resistance to rolling, in pounds (newtons) is given as:

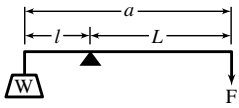
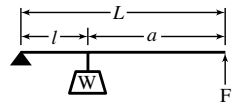
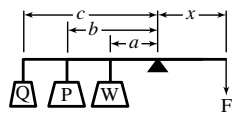
$$F_r = Wf/r$$

Coefficient of rolling resistance varies with conditions. For wood on wood, $f = 0.06$ inch (0.152 cm) may be used; for iron on iron, 0.02 inch (0.051 cm); iron on granite, 0.085 inch (0.216 cm); iron on asphalt, 0.15 inch (0.381 cm); and iron on wood, 0.22 inch (0.559 cm).

The coefficient of rolling resistance f is given in inches (or centimeters) and is not the same as the sliding or static coefficient of friction given in Table 1 and Table 2, in which μ is a dimensionless ratio between frictional resistance and normal load. Various investigators are not in close agreement on the true values for these coefficients and the foregoing values should only be used for the approximate calculation of rolling resistance.

Simple Mechanisms

Levers

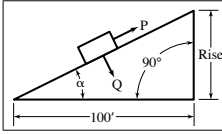
Types of Levers	Examples
 $F:W = l:L$ $\qquad F \times L = W \times l$ $F = \frac{W \times l}{L}$ $\qquad W = \frac{F \times L}{l}$ $L = \frac{W \times a}{W + F} = \frac{W \times l}{F}$ $\qquad l = \frac{F \times a}{W + F} = \frac{F \times L}{W}$	A pull of 80 pounds is exerted at the end of the lever, at W; $l = 12$ inches and $L = 32$ inches. Find the value of force F required to balance the lever. $F = \frac{80 \times 12}{32} = \frac{960}{32} = 30$ pounds If $F = 20$; $W = 180$; and $l = 3$; how long must L be made to secure equilibrium? $L = \frac{180 \times 3}{20} = 27$
 $F:W = l:L$ $\qquad F \times L = W \times l$ $F = \frac{W \times l}{L}$ $\qquad W = \frac{F \times L}{l}$ $L = \frac{W \times a}{W - F} = \frac{W \times l}{F}$ $\qquad l = \frac{F \times a}{W - F} = \frac{F \times L}{W}$	Total length L of a lever is 25 cm. A weight of 400 N, supported at W; l is 10 cm. Find the value of F. $F = \frac{(400)(10)}{25} = 160$ N If $F = 400$ N, $W = 900$ lbs, and $a = 1.5$ m, what should L equal to secure equilibrium? $L = \frac{(900)(1.5)}{900 - 400} = 2.7$ m
 When three or more forces act on lever: $F \times x = W \times a + P \times b + Q \times c$ $x = \frac{W \times a + P \times b + Q \times c}{F}$ $F = \frac{W \times a + P \times b + Q \times c}{x}$	Let $W = 20$, $P = 30$, and $Q = 15$ lbs; $a = 4$, $b = 7$, and $c = 10$ in. If $x = 6$ in., find F. $F = \frac{20 \times 4 + 30 \times 7 + 15 \times 10}{6} = 73\frac{1}{3}$ lbs Assuming $F = 20$ lbs in the example above, how long must lever arm x be made? $x = \frac{20 \times 4 + 30 \times 7 + 15 \times 10}{20} = 22$ inches

The above formulas are valid using metric SI units, with forces expressed in newtons, and lengths in meters. However, it should be noted that the weight of a mass W kilograms

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is equal to a force of Wg newtons, where g is approximately 9.81 m/s². Thus, supposing that in the first example $l = 0.4$ m, $L = 1.2$ m, and $W = 30$ kg, then the weight of W is $30g$ newtons, so that the force F required to balance the lever is $F = \frac{30g \times 0.4}{1.2} = 10g = 98.1$ N. This force could be produced by suspending a mass of 10 kg at location F.

Table of Forces on Inclined Planes



The table below is used to find the force required to move a load on an inclined plane. Friction on the plane is not taken into account. The column headed "Tension P per Ton" gives the pull in pounds required for moving one ton (2000 lbs) along the inclined surface. The fourth column gives the perpendicular or normal pressure of the load. If the coefficient of friction μ is known, the added pull to overcome friction is:

Additional pull per ton = $Q \times \mu$

Example: A 200 lb. body pulled up a 14% grade when friction (μ) is 0.3 requires a force $P = (0.1)(277.3) + (0.1)(1980.68)(0.3) = 87.15$ lbs.

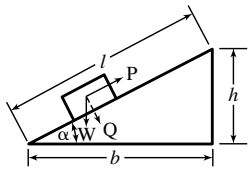
Percent of Grade, Rise in ft per 100 ft	Angle α	Tension P per Ton	Perpendicular Pressure Q on Plane per Ton	Percent of Grade, Rise in ft per 100 ft	Angle α	Tension P in Cable per Ton	Perpendicular Pressure Q on Plane per Ton
1	0.57	20.00	1999.90	51	27.02	908.65	1781.67
2	1.15	39.99	1999.60	52	27.47	922.71	1774.43
3	1.72	59.97	1999.10	53	27.92	936.59	1767.15
4	2.29	79.94	1998.40	54	28.37	950.30	1759.81
5	2.86	99.88	1997.50	55	28.81	963.84	1752.43
6	3.43	119.78	1996.41	56	29.25	977.21	1745.01
7	4.00	139.66	1995.12	57	29.68	990.41	1737.55
8	4.57	159.49	1993.63	58	30.11	1003.44	1730.06
9	5.14	179.28	1991.95	59	30.54	1016.30	1722.54
10	5.71	199.01	1990.07	60	30.96	1028.99	1714.99
11	6.28	218.68	1988.01	61	31.38	1041.52	1707.41
12	6.84	238.29	1985.75	62	31.80	1053.88	1699.81
13	7.41	257.83	1983.31	63	32.21	1066.08	1692.18
14	7.97	277.30	1980.68	64	32.62	1078.11	1684.54
15	8.53	296.68	1977.87	65	33.02	1089.98	1676.89
16	9.09	315.98	1974.88	66	33.42	1101.68	1669.22
17	9.65	335.19	1971.71	67	33.82	1113.23	1661.54
18	10.20	354.31	1968.37	68	34.22	1124.62	1653.85
19	10.76	373.32	1964.85	69	34.61	1135.85	1646.16
20	11.31	392.23	1961.16	70	34.99	1146.92	1638.46
21	11.86	411.03	1957.31	71	35.37	1157.84	1630.77
22	12.41	429.72	1953.29	72	35.75	1168.61	1623.07
23	12.95	448.30	1949.11	73	36.13	1179.22	1615.37
24	13.50	466.75	1944.77	74	36.50	1189.69	1607.68
25	14.04	485.07	1940.29	75	36.87	1200.00	1600.00
26	14.57	503.27	1935.65	76	37.23	1210.17	1592.32
27	15.11	521.33	1930.86	77	37.60	1220.19	1584.66
28	15.64	539.26	1925.93	78	37.95	1230.06	1577.00
29	16.17	557.05	1920.86	79	38.31	1239.80	1569.36
30	16.70	574.70	1915.65	80	38.66	1249.39	1561.74
31	17.22	592.20	1910.31	81	39.01	1258.84	1554.13
32	17.74	609.55	1904.85	82	39.35	1268.16	1546.54
33	18.26	626.76	1899.26	83	39.69	1277.34	1538.96
34	18.78	643.81	1893.55	84	40.03	1286.38	1531.41
35	19.29	660.70	1887.72	85	40.36	1295.30	1523.88
36	19.80	677.44	1881.77	86	40.70	1304.08	1516.37
37	20.30	694.02	1875.72	87	41.02	1312.73	1508.89
38	20.81	710.44	1869.57	88	41.35	1321.26	1501.43
39	21.31	726.69	1863.31	89	41.67	1329.65	1493.99
40	21.80	742.78	1856.95	90	41.99	1337.93	1486.59
41	22.29	758.71	1850.50	91	42.30	1346.08	1479.21
42	22.78	774.47	1843.96	92	42.61	1354.11	1471.86
43	23.27	790.06	1837.34	93	42.92	1362.03	1464.54
44	23.75	805.48	1830.63	94	43.23	1369.82	1457.26
45	24.23	820.73	1823.84	95	43.53	1377.50	1450.00
46	24.70	835.81	1816.98	96	43.83	1385.06	1442.77
47	25.17	850.72	1810.05	97	44.13	1392.52	1435.58
48	25.64	865.46	1803.05	98	44.42	1399.86	1428.43
49	26.10	880.03	1795.98	99	44.71	1407.09	1421.30
50	26.57	894.43	1788.85	100	45.00	1414.21	1414.21

Tensions and pressures in pounds per 1 ton (2000 lbs) load weight.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Inclined Plane—Wedge

W = weight of body



Neglecting friction:

$$P = W \times \frac{h}{l} = W \times \sin\alpha$$

$$W = P \times \frac{l}{h} = \frac{P}{\sin\alpha} = P \times \operatorname{cosec}\alpha$$

$$Q = W \times \frac{b}{l} = W \times \cos\alpha$$

If friction is taken into account, then

Force P to pull body up is:

$$P = W(\mu\cos\alpha + \sin\alpha)$$

Force P_1 to pull body down is:

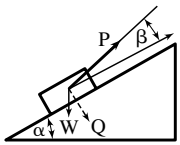
$$P_1 = W(\mu\cos\alpha - \sin\alpha)$$

Force P_2 to hold body stationary:

$$P_2 = W(\sin\alpha - \mu\cos\alpha)$$

in which μ is the coefficient of friction.

W = weight of body



Neglecting friction:

$$P = W \times \frac{\sin\alpha}{\cos\beta}$$

$$W = P \times \frac{\cos\beta}{\sin\alpha}$$

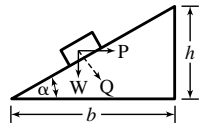
$$Q = W \times \frac{\cos(\alpha+\beta)}{\cos\beta}$$

With friction:

Coefficient of friction $\mu = \tan\phi$

$$P = W \times \frac{\sin(\alpha+\phi)}{\cos(\beta-\phi)}$$

W = weight of body



Neglecting friction:

$$P = W \times \frac{h}{b} = W \times \tan\alpha$$

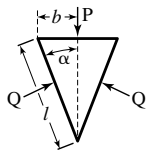
$$W = P \times \frac{b}{h} = P \times \cot\alpha$$

$$Q = \frac{W}{\cos\alpha} = W \times \sec\alpha$$

With friction:

Coefficient of friction $\mu = \tan\phi$

$$P = W\tan(\alpha+\phi)$$



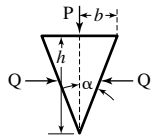
Neglecting friction:

$$P = 2Q \times \frac{b}{l} = 2Q \times \sin\alpha$$

$$Q = P \times \frac{l}{2b} = \frac{1}{2}P \times \csc\alpha$$

With friction: Coefficient of friction = μ.

$$P = 2Q(\mu\cos\alpha + \sin\alpha)$$



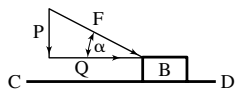
Neglecting friction:

$$P = 2Q \times \frac{b}{h} = 2Q \times \tan\alpha$$

$$Q = P \times \frac{h}{2b} = \frac{1}{2}P \times \cot\alpha$$

With friction: Coefficient of friction = $\mu = \tan\phi$.

$$P = 2Q\tan(\alpha+\phi)$$

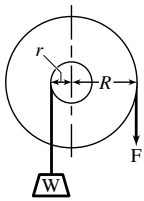


Force Moving Body on Horizontal Plane.—F tends to move B along line CD; Q is the component which actually moves B; P is the pressure, due to F, of the body on CD.

$$Q = F \times \cos\alpha \quad P = \sqrt{F^2 - Q^2}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wheels and Pulleys



$F:W = r:R$

$F \times R = W \times r$

$F = \dfrac{W \times r}{R}$

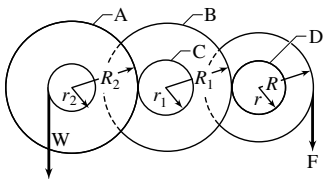
$W = \dfrac{F \times R}{r}$

$R = \dfrac{W \times r}{F}$

$r = \dfrac{F \times R}{W}$

The radius of a drum on which is wound the lifting rope of a windlass is 2 in. What force will be exerted at the periphery of a gear of 24 in. diameter, mounted on the same shaft as the drum and transmitting power to it, if one ton (2000 lbs) is to be lifted? Here $W = 2000$; $R = 12$; $r = 2$.

$$F = \frac{2000 \times 2}{12} = 333 \text{ lbs}$$



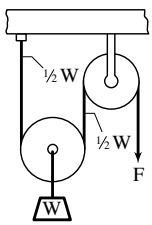
A, *B*, *C* and *D* are the pitch circles of gears.

$$F = \frac{W \times r \times r_1 \times r_2}{R \times R_1 \times R_2}$$

$$W = \frac{F \times R \times R_1 \times R_2}{r \times r_1 \times r_2}$$

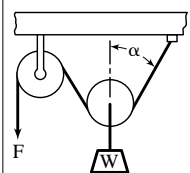
Let the pitch diameters of gears *A*, *B*, *C* and *D* be 30, 28, 12 and 10 in., respectively. Then $R_2 = 15$; $R_1 = 14$; $r_1 = 6$; and $r = 5$. Let $R = 12$, and $r_2 = 4$. The force F required to lift a weight W of 2000 lbs, friction being neglected, is:

$$F = \frac{2000 \times 5 \times 6 \times 4}{12 \times 14 \times 15} = 95 \text{ pounds}$$



$F = \frac{1}{2}W$

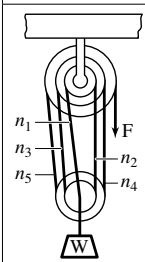
The velocity with which weight W will be raised is one-half the velocity of the force applied at F.



$F:W = \sec\alpha:2$

$F = \dfrac{W \times \sec\alpha}{2}$

$W = 2F \times \cos\alpha$



n = number of strands or parts of rope (n_1, n_2, etc.).

$$F = \frac{1}{n} \times W$$

The velocity with which W will be raised equals $\frac{1}{n}$ of the velocity of the force applied at F.

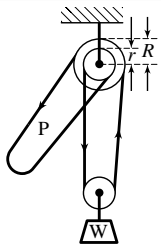
In the illustration is shown a combination of a double and triple block. The pulleys each turn freely on a pin as axis, and are drawn with different diameters, to show the parts of the rope more clearly. There are 5 parts of rope. Therefore, if 200 lbs is to be lifted, the force F required at the end of the rope is:

$$F = \frac{1}{5} \times 200 = 40 \text{ lbs}$$

Note: **The above formulas are valid using metric SI units, with forces expressed in newtons, and lengths in meters or millimeters. (See note on** page 174 **concerning weight and mass.)**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Differential Pulley

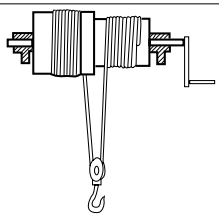


In the differential pulley a chain must be used, engaging sprockets, so as to prevent the chain from slipping over the pulley faces.

$$PR = \frac{1}{2}W(R - r)$$

$$P = \frac{W(R - r)}{2R}$$

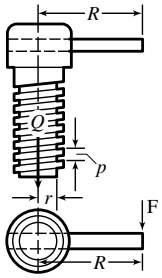
$$W = \frac{2PR}{R - r}$$



Chinese Windlass

The Chinese windlass employs the differential motion principle in that the resultant motion is the difference between two original motions. The hoisting rope is arranged to unwind from one part of a drum or pulley onto another part differing somewhat in diameter. The distance that the load or hook moves for one revolution of the compound hoisting drum is equal to half the difference between the circumferences of the two drum sections.

Screw



F = force at end of handle or wrench; R = lever-arm of F; r = pitch radius of screw; p = lead of thread; Q = load. Then, neglecting friction:

$$F = Q \times \frac{p}{6.2832R} \quad Q = F \times \frac{6.2832R}{p}$$

If μ is the coefficient of friction, then:

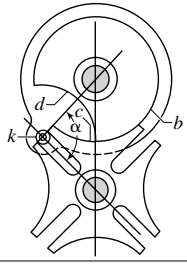
For motion in direction of load Q which *assists* it:

$$F = Q \times \frac{6.2832\mu r - p}{6.2832r + \mu p} \times \frac{r}{R}$$

For motion opposite load Q which *resists* it:

$$F = Q \times \frac{p + 6.2832\mu r}{6.2832r - \mu p} \times \frac{r}{R}$$

Geneva Wheel



Geneva wheels are frequently used on machine tools for indexing or rotating some part of the machine through a fractional part of a revolution.

The driven wheel shown in the illustration has four radial slots located 90 degrees apart, and the driver carries a roller *k* which engages one of these slots each time it makes a revolution, thus turning the driven wheel one-quarter revolution. The concentric surface *b* engages the concave surface *c* between each pair of slots before the driving roller is disengaged from the driven wheel, which prevents the latter from rotating while the roller is moving around to engage the next successive slot. The circular boss *b* on the driver is cut away at *d* to provide a clearance space for the projecting arms of the driven wheel. In designing gearing of the general type illustrated, it is advisable to so proportion the driving and driven members that the angle α will be approximately 90 degrees.

The radial slots in the driven part will then be tangent to the circular path of the driving roller at the time the roller enters and leaves the slot. When the gearing is designed in this way, the driven wheel is started gradually from a state of rest and the motion is also gradually checked.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Toggle Joint

A link mechanism commonly known as a toggle joint is applied to machines of different types, such as drawing and embossing presses, stone crushers, etc., for securing great pressure. The principle of the toggle joint is shown by Fig. 1. There are two links, *b* and *c*, which are connected at the center. Link *b* is free to swivel about a fixed pin or bearing at *d*, and link *c* is connected to a sliding member *e*. Rod *f* joins links *b* and *c* at the central connection. When force is applied to rod *f* in a direction at right angles to centerline *xx*, along which the driven member *e* moves, this force is greatly multiplied at *e*, because a movement at the joint *g* produces a relatively slight movement at *e*. As the angle α becomes less, motion at *e* decreases and the force increases until the links are in line. If *R* = the resistance at *e*, *P* = the applied power or force, and α = the angle between each link, and a line *x*-*x* passing through the axes of the pins, then:

$$2R \sin \alpha = P \cos \alpha$$

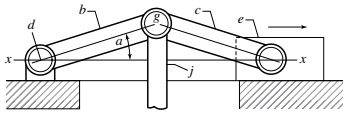


Fig. 1. Toggle Joint Principle

If arms *ED* and *EH* are of unequal length then

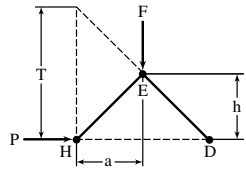
$$P = \frac{Fa}{b}$$

The relation between *P* and *F* changes constantly as *F* moves downward.

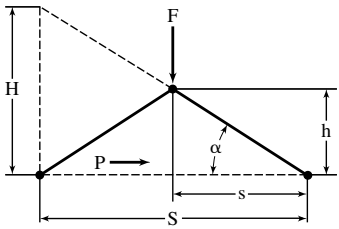
If arms *ED* and *EH* are equal, then

$$P = \frac{Fa}{2h}$$

A double toggle-joint does not increase the pressure exerted so long as the relative distances moved by *F* and *P* remain the same.



Toggle-joints with Equal Arms



$$2P \sin \alpha = F \cos \alpha$$

$$\frac{P}{F} = \frac{\cos \alpha}{2 \sin \alpha} = \text{coefficient}$$

$$P = F \times \text{coefficient}$$

where *F* = force applied; *P* = resistance; and, α = given angle.

Equivalent expressions (see diagram):

$$P = \frac{FS}{4h} \quad P = \frac{Fs}{H}$$

To use the table, measure angle α, and find the coefficient in the table that corresponds to it. The coefficient is the ratio of the resistance to the force applied, and multiplying the force applied by the coefficient gives the resistance, neglecting friction.

Angle °	Coefficient	Angle °	Coefficient	Angle °	Coefficient	Angle °	Coefficient
0.01	2864.79	1.00	28.64	5.25	5.44	23	1.18
0.02	1432.39	1.10	26.04	5.50	5.19	24	1.12
0.03	954.93	1.20	23.87	5.75	4.97	25	1.07
0.04	716.20	1.30	22.03	6.00	4.76	26	1.03
0.05	572.96	1.40	20.46	6.50	4.39	27	0.98
0.10	286.48	1.50	19.09	7.00	4.07	28	0.94
0.15	190.99	1.60	17.90	7.50	3.80	29	0.90
0.20	143.24	1.70	16.85	8.00	3.56	30	0.87
0.25	114.59	1.80	15.91	8.50	3.35	31	0.83
0.30	95.49	1.90	15.07	9.00	3.16	32	0.80
0.35	81.85	2.00	14.32	10.00	2.84	33	0.77
0.40	71.62	2.25	12.73	11.00	2.57	34	0.74
0.45	63.66	2.50	11.45	12.00	2.35	35	0.71
0.50	57.29	2.75	10.41	13.00	2.17	36	0.69
0.55	52.09	3.00	9.54	14.00	2.01	37	0.66
0.60	47.74	3.25	8.81	15.00	1.87	38	0.64
0.65	44.07	3.50	8.17	16.00	1.74	39	0.62
0.70	40.92	3.75	7.63	17.00	1.64	40	0.60
0.75	38.20	4.00	7.15	18.00	1.54	41	0.58
0.80	35.81	4.25	6.73	19.00	1.45	42	0.56
0.85	33.70	4.50	6.35	20.00	1.37	43	0.54
0.90	31.83	4.75	6.02	21.00	1.30	44	0.52
0.95	30.15	5.00	5.72	22.00	1.24	45	0.50

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

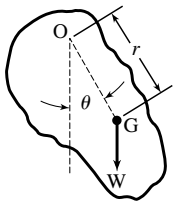
Pendulums

A *compound* or *physical* pendulum consists of any rigid body suspended from a fixed horizontal axis about which the body may oscillate in a vertical plane due to the action of gravity.

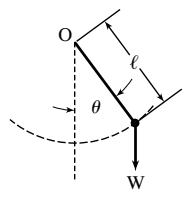
A *simple* or *mathematical* pendulum is similar to a compound pendulum except that the mass of the body is concentrated at a single point which is suspended from a fixed horizontal axis by a weightless cord. Actually, a simple pendulum cannot be constructed since it is impossible to have either a weightless cord or a body whose mass is entirely concentrated at one point. A good approximation, however, consists of a small, heavy bob suspended by a light, fine wire. A pendulum that does not meet these conditions should be considered a compound pendulum.

A *conical* pendulum is similar to a simple pendulum except that the weight suspended by the cord moves at a uniform speed around the circumference of a circle in a horizontal plane instead of oscillating back and forth in a vertical plane. The principle of the conical pendulum is employed in the Watt fly-ball governor.

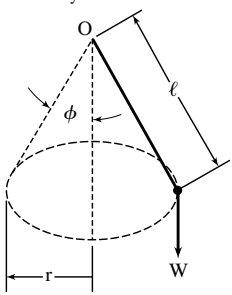
Four Types of Pendulum



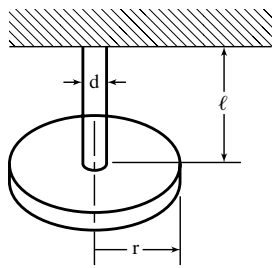
Physical Pendulum



Simple Pendulum



Conical Pendulum



Torsional Pendulum

W = Weight of Disk

A *torsional* pendulum in its simplest form consists of a disk fixed to a slender rod, the other end of which is fastened to a fixed frame. When the disc is twisted through some angle and released, it will oscillate back and forth about the axis of the rod because of the torque exerted by the rod.

Pendulum Formulas.—From the formulas that follow, the period of vibration or time required for one complete cycle back and forth may be determined for the types of pendulums shown in the accompanying diagram.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For a *simple* pendulum,

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{l}{g}} \tag{1}$$

where T = period in seconds for one complete cycle; g = acceleration due to gravity = 32.17 ft/sec^2 (approximately); and l is the length of the pendulum in feet as shown on the accompanying diagram.

For a *physical* or *compound* pendulum,

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{k_o^2}{gr}} \tag{2}$$

where k_o = radius of gyration of the pendulum about the axis of rotation in feet, and r is the distance from the axis of rotation to the center of gravity in feet.

The metric SI units that can be used in the two above formulas are T = time in seconds; g = approximately 9.81 m/s^2, which is the value for acceleration due to gravity; l = the length of the pendulum in meters; k_o = the radius of gyration in meters, and r = the distance from the axis of rotation to the center of gravity in meters.

Formulas (1) and (2) are accurate when the angle of oscillation θ shown in the diagram is very small. For θ equal to 22 degrees, these formulas give results that are too small by 1 percent; for θ equal to 32 degrees, by 2 percent.

For a *conical* pendulum, the time in seconds for one revolution is:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{l\cos\phi}{g}} \quad \text{(3a)} \qquad \text{or} \qquad T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{r\cot\phi}{g}} \quad \text{(3b)}$$

For a *torsional* pendulum consisting of a thin rod and a disk as shown in the figure

$$T = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{\frac{\pi W r^2 l}{g d^4 G}} \tag{4}$$

where W = weight of disk in pounds; r = radius of disk in feet; l = length of rod in feet; d = diameter of rod in feet; and G = modulus of elasticity in shear of the rod material in pounds per square inch (psi or lb/in^2).

The formula using metric SI units is:

$$\boldsymbol{T = 8\sqrt{\frac{\pi M r^2 l}{d^4 G}}}$$

where T = time in seconds for one complete oscillation; M = mass in kilograms; r = radius in meters; l = length of rod in meters; d = diameter of rod in meters; G = modulus of elasticity in shear of the rod material in pascals (newtons per meter squared). The same formula can be applied using millimeters, provided dimensions are expressed in millimeters throughout, and the modulus of elasticity in megapascals (newtons per millimeter squared).

Harmonic.—A harmonic is any component of a periodic quantity which is an integral multiple of the fundamental frequency. For example, a component the frequency of which is twice the fundamental frequency is called the second harmonic.

A harmonic, in electricity, is an alternating-current electromotive force wave of higher frequency than the fundamental, and superimposed on the same so as to distort it from a true sine-wave shape. It is caused by the slots, the shape of the pole pieces, and the pulsation of the armature reaction. The third and the fifth harmonics, i.e., with a frequency three and five times the fundamental, are generally the predominating ones in three-phase machines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

VELOCITY, ACCELERATION, WORK, AND ENERGY

Velocity and Acceleration

Motion is a progressive change of position of a body. Velocity is the rate of motion, that is, the rate of change of a body's position. It is expressed in units of distance over time, such as feet per second, miles per hour, and kilometers per second. *Uniform motion* indicates that the velocity of a body is the same at every moment during which the motion takes place. When velocity is variable and constantly increasing, the rate at which it changes is called *acceleration*. Acceleration is the rate at which the velocity of a body changes in a unit of time, as the change of feet or meters per second in one second. When the motion is decreasing instead of increasing, it is called *retarded* motion, and the rate at which the motion is retarded is frequently called *deceleration*. If the acceleration is uniform, the motion is called *uniformly accelerated* motion. An example of such motion is that of falling bodies.

Newton's Laws of Motion.—The first clear statement of the fundamental relations existing between force and motion was made in the seventeenth century by Sir Isaac Newton, the English mathematician and physicist. It was put in the form of three laws, which are given as originally stated by Newton:

1) Every body continues in its state of rest, or uniform motion in a straight line, except in so far as it may be compelled by force to change that state.

2) Change of motion is proportional to the force applied and takes place in the direction in which that force acts.

3) To every action there is always an equal reaction; or, the mutual actions of two bodies are always equal and oppositely directed.

Motion with Constant Velocity.—In the formulas that follow, S = distance moved; V = velocity; t = time of motion, θ = angle of rotation, and ω = angular velocity; the usual units for these quantities in the US customary system are, respectively, feet, feet per second, seconds, radians, and radians per second. The usual metric units are meters, meters per second, seconds, radians, and radians per second. Any consistent set of units may be employed.

Constant Linear Velocity: $S = Vt \qquad V = S/t \qquad t = S/V$

Constant Angular Velocity: $\theta = \omega t \qquad \omega = \theta/t \qquad t = \theta/\omega$

Relation between Angular Motion and Linear Motion: The relation between the angular velocity of a rotating body and the linear velocity of a point at a distance r from the center of rotation is:

$$V(\text{ft/s}) = r(\text{ft}) \times \omega(\text{radians/s}) \qquad V(\text{m/s}) = r(\text{m}) \times \omega(\text{radians/s})$$

Similarly, the distance moved by the point during rotation through angle θ is:

$$S(\text{ft}) = r(\text{ft}) \times \theta(\text{radians}) \qquad S(\text{m}) = r(\text{m}) \times \theta(\text{radians})$$

Linear Motion with Constant Acceleration.—The relations between distance, velocity, and time for linear motion with constant or uniform acceleration are given by the formulas in the accompanying Table 1. In these formulas, the acceleration is assumed to be in the same direction as the initial velocity; hence, if the acceleration in a particular problem should happen to be in a direction opposite that of the initial velocity, then a should be replaced by $-a$. Thus, for example, the formula $V_f = V_o + at$ becomes $V_f = V_o - at$ when a and V_o are opposite in direction.

Example: A car is moving at 100 km/h when the brakes are suddenly locked and the car begins to skid. If it takes 2 seconds to slow the car to 50 km/h, at what rate is it being decelerated, how long is it before the car comes to a halt, and how far will it have traveled?

Solution: The initial velocity V_o of the car is 100 km/h or 27.78 m/s and the acceleration a due to braking is opposite in direction to V_o, since the car is slowed to 50 km/h or 13.89 m/s.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Linear Motion with Constant Acceleration

To Find	Known	Formula	To Find	Known	Formula
Motion Uniformly Accelerated from Rest ($V_o = 0$)					
S	a, t	$S = \frac{1}{2}at^2$	t	S, V_f	$t = 2S \div V_f$
	V_f, t	$S = \frac{1}{2}V_f t$		S, a	$t = \sqrt{2S \div a}$
	V_f, a	$S = V_f^2 \div 2a$		a, V_f	$t = V_f \div a$
V_f	a, t	$V_f = at$	a	S, t	$a = 2S \div t^2$
	S, t	$V_f = 2S \div t$		S, V	$a = V_f^2 \div 2S$
	a, S	$V_f = \sqrt{2aS}$		V_f, t	$a = V_f \div t$
Motion Uniformly Accelerated from Initial Velocity V_o					
S	a, t, V_o	$S = V_o t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$	t	V_o, V_f, a	$t = (V_f - V_o) \div a$
	V_o, V_f, t	$S = (V_f + V_o)t \div 2$		V_o, V_f, S	$t = 2S \div (V_f + V_o)$
	V_o, V_f, a	$S = (V_f^2 - V_o^2) \div 2a$	a	V_o, V_f, S	$a = (V_f^2 - V_o^2) \div 2S$
	V_f, a, t	$S = V_f t - \frac{1}{2}at^2$		V_o, V_f, t	$a = (V_f - V_o) \div t$
V_f	V_o, a, t	$V_f = V_o + at$		V_o, S, t	$a = 2(S - V_o t) \div t^2$
	V_o, S, t	$V_f = (2S \div t) - V_o$		V_f, S, t	$a = 2(V_f t - S) \div t^2$
	V_o, a, S	$V_f = \sqrt{V_o^2 + 2aS}$	*Meanings of Symbols*		
	S, a, t	$V_f = (S \div t) + \frac{1}{2}at$	S = distance moved in ft or m V_f = final velocity, ft/s or m/s V_o = initial velocity, ft/s or m/s a = acceleration, ft/s^2 or m/s^2 t = time of acceleration, sec or s		
V_o	V_f, a, S	$V_o = \sqrt{V_f^2 - 2aS}$			
	V_f, S, t	$V_o = (2S \div t) - V_f$			
	V_f, a, t	$V_o = V_f - at$			
	S, a, t	$V_o = (S \div t) - \frac{1}{2}at$			

Since V_o, V_f, and t are known, a can be determined from the formula

$$a = (V_f - V_o) \div t = (13.89 - 27.78) \div 2 = -6.95 \text{m/s}^2$$

The time required to stop the car can be determined from the formula

$$t = (V_f - V_o) \div a = (0 - 27.78) \div (-6.95) = 4 \text{ seconds}$$

The distance traveled by the car is obtained from the formula

$$S = V_o t + \frac{1}{2}at^2 = (27.78)(4) + \frac{1}{2}(-6.95)4^2 = (111.12 - 55.6) = 55.52 \text{ m}$$

Angular Velocity of a Rotating Body.—The angular velocity of a rotating body is the angle through which the body turns in a unit of time. Angular velocity is commonly expressed in terms of revolutions per minute rpm, but in certain engineering applications it is necessary to express it as radians per second (rad/s). By definition there are 2π radians in 360 degrees, or one revolution, so that one radian = $360 / 2\pi \approx 57.3$ degrees. To convert angular velocity n in rpm to angular velocity ω in radians per second, and vice versa, use Equation (1):

$$\omega = \frac{\pi n}{30} \text{ rad/s} \qquad n = \frac{30\omega}{\pi} \text{ rpm} \tag{1}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2 can be used to obtain angular velocity in radians per second for all whole numbers of revolutions per minute from 1 to 239.

Table 2. Angular Velocity in Revolutions per Minute Converted to Radians per Second

	Angular Velocity in Radians per Second (rad/s)									
RPM	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0.00	0.10	0.21	0.31	0.42	0.52	0.63	0.73	0.84	0.94
10	1.05	1.15	1.26	1.36	1.47	1.57	1.67	1.78	1.88	1.99
20	2.09	2.20	2.30	2.41	2.51	2.62	2.72	2.83	2.93	3.04
30	3.14	3.25	3.35	3.46	3.56	3.66	3.77	3.87	3.98	4.08
40	4.19	4.29	4.40	4.50	4.61	4.71	4.82	4.92	5.03	5.13
50	5.24	5.34	5.44	5.55	5.65	5.76	5.86	5.97	6.07	6.18
60	6.28	6.39	6.49	6.60	6.70	6.81	6.91	7.02	7.12	7.23
70	7.33	7.43	7.54	7.64	7.75	7.85	7.96	8.06	8.17	8.27
80	8.38	8.48	8.59	8.69	8.80	8.90	9.01	9.11	9.21	9.32
90	9.42	9.53	9.63	9.74	9.84	9.95	10.05	10.16	10.26	10.37
100	10.47	10.58	10.68	10.79	10.89	11.00	11.10	11.20	11.31	11.41
110	11.52	11.62	11.73	11.83	11.94	12.04	12.15	12.25	12.36	12.46
120	12.57	12.67	12.78	12.88	12.98	13.09	13.19	13.30	13.40	13.51
130	13.61	13.72	13.82	13.93	14.03	14.14	14.24	14.35	14.45	14.56
140	14.66	14.76	14.87	14.97	15.08	15.18	15.29	15.39	15.50	15.60
150	15.71	15.81	15.92	16.02	16.13	16.23	16.34	16.44	16.55	16.65
160	16.75	16.86	16.96	17.07	17.17	17.28	17.38	17.49	17.59	17.70
170	17.80	17.91	18.01	18.12	18.22	18.33	18.43	18.53	18.64	18.74
180	18.85	18.95	19.06	19.16	19.27	19.37	19.48	19.58	19.69	19.79
190	19.90	20.00	20.11	20.21	20.32	20.42	20.52	20.63	20.73	20.84
200	20.94	21.05	21.15	21.26	21.36	21.47	21.57	21.68	21.78	21.89
210	21.99	22.10	22.20	22.30	22.41	22.51	22.62	22.72	22.83	22.93
220	23.04	23.14	23.25	23.35	23.46	23.56	23.67	23.77	23.88	23.98
230	24.09	24.19	24.29	24.40	24.50	24.61	24.71	24.82	24.92	25.03

Example: To find the angular velocity in radians per second of a flywheel making 97 revolutions per minute, locate 90 in the left-hand column and 7 at the top of the columns; at the intersection of the two lines, the angular velocity is read off as equal to 10.16 radians per second.

Linear Velocity of Points on a Rotating Body.—The linear velocity, v, of any point on a rotating body expressed in feet per second may be found by multiplying the angular velocity of the body in radians per second, ω, by the radius, r, in feet from the center of rotation to the point:

$$v = \omega r \tag{2}$$

The metric SI units are v = meters per second; ω = radians per second, r = meters.

Rotary Motion with Constant Acceleration.—The relations among angle of rotation, angular velocity, and time for rotation with constant or uniform acceleration are given in the accompanying Table 3.

In these formulas, the acceleration is assumed to be in the same direction as the initial angular velocity; hence, if the acceleration in a particular problem should happen to be in a direction opposite that of the initial angular velocity, then α should be replaced by $-\alpha$. Thus, for example, the formula $\omega_f = \omega_o + \alpha t$ becomes $\omega_f = \omega_o - \alpha t$ when α and ω_o are opposite in direction.

Linear Acceleration of a Point on a Rotating Body: A point, P, on a body rotating about a fixed axis has a linear acceleration a that is the resultant of two component accelerations. The first component is the centripetal, or normal, acceleration, which is directed from the point P toward the axis of rotation; its magnitude is $r\omega^2$, where r is the radius from the axis to the point P and ω is the angular velocity of the body at the time acceleration a is to be determined. The second component of a is the tangential acceleration, which is equal to $r\alpha$, where α is the angular acceleration of the body.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Rotary Motion with Constant Acceleration

To Find	Known	Formula	To Find	Known	Formula
Motion Uniformly Accelerated from Rest ($\omega_o = 0$)					
θ	α, t	$\theta = \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$	t	θ, ω_f	$t = 2\theta \div \omega_f$
	ω_f, t	$\theta = \frac{1}{2}\omega_f t$		θ, α	$t = \sqrt{2\theta \div \alpha}$
	ω_f, α	$\theta = \omega_f^2 \div 2\alpha$		α, ω_f	$t = \omega_f \div \alpha$
ω_f	α, t	$\omega_f = \alpha t$	α	θ, t	$\alpha = 2\theta \div t^2$
	θ, t	$\omega_f = 2\theta \div t$		θ, ω_f	$\alpha = \omega_f^2 \div 2\theta$
	α, θ	$\omega_f = \sqrt{2\alpha\theta}$		ω_f, t	$\alpha = \omega_f \div t$
Motion Uniformly Accelerated from Initial Velocity ω_o					
θ	α, t, ω_o	$\theta = \omega_o t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$	α	$\omega_o, \omega_f, \theta$	$\alpha = (\omega_f^2 - \omega_o^2) \div 2\theta$
	ω_o, ω_f, t	$\theta = (\omega_f + \omega_o)t \div 2$		ω_o, ω_f, t	$\alpha = (\omega_f - \omega_o) \div t$
	$\omega_o, \omega_f, \alpha$	$\theta = (\omega_f^2 - \omega_o^2) \div 2\alpha$		ω_o, θ, t	$\alpha = 2(\theta - \omega_o t) \div t^2$
	ω_f, α, t	$\theta = \omega_f t - \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$		ω_f, θ, t	$\alpha = 2(\omega_f t - \theta) \div t^2$
ω_f	ω_o, α, t	$\omega_f = \omega_o + \alpha t$	*Meanings of Symbols*		
	ω_o, θ, t	$\omega_f = (2\theta \div t) - \omega_o$	θ = angle of rotation, radians ω_f = final angular velocity, rad/s ω_o = initial angular velocity, rad/s α = angular acceleration, rad/s^2 t = time in seconds		
	ω_o, α, θ	$\omega_f = \sqrt{\omega_o^2 + 2\alpha\theta}$			
	θ, α, t	$\omega_f = (\theta \div t) + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t$			
ω_o	ω_f, α, θ	$\omega_o = \sqrt{\omega_f^2 - 2\alpha\theta}$			
	ω_f, θ, t	$\omega_o = (2\theta \div t) - \omega_f$			
	ω_f, α, t	$\omega_o = \omega_f - \alpha t$			
	θ, α, t	$\omega_o = (\theta \div t) - \frac{1}{2}\alpha t$			
t	$\omega_o, \omega_f, \alpha$	$t = (\omega_f - \omega_o) \div \alpha$	1 degree = 0.01745 radian (See degree-radian conversion table on page 103)		
	$\omega_o, \omega_f, \theta$	$t = 2\theta \div (\omega_f + \omega_o)$			

The acceleration of point P is the resultant of $r\omega^2$ and $r\alpha$ and is given by the formula

$$a = \sqrt{(r\omega^2)^2 + (r\alpha)^2}$$

When $\alpha = 0$, this formula reduces to: $a = r\omega^2$

Example: A flywheel on a press rotating at 120 rpm is slowed to 102 rpm during a punching operation that requires ¾ second for the punching portion of the cycle. What angular deceleration does the flywheel experience?

Solution: From the table on page 184, angular velocities corresponding to 120 and 102 rpm, respectively, are 12.57 and 10.68 radians per second. Therefore, using the formula:

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha &= (\omega_f - \omega_o) \div t \\ &= (10.68 - 12.57) \div \tfrac{3}{4} = -1.89 \div \tfrac{3}{4} \\ &= -2.52 \text{ rad/s}^2\end{aligned}$$

which is, from the table on page 184, –24 rpm per second. The minus sign in the answer indicates that acceleration α acts to slow the flywheel, that is, the flywheel is decelerating.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Force, Work, Energy, and Momentum

Accelerations Resulting from Unbalanced Forces.—In the section describing the resolution and composition of forces, page 163, it was stated that when the resultant of a system of forces is zero, the system is in equilibrium, that is, the body on which the force system acts remains at rest or continues to move with uniform velocity. If, however, the resultant of a system of forces is not zero, the body on which the forces act will be accelerated in the direction of the unbalanced force. To determine the relation between the unbalanced force and the resulting acceleration, Newton's laws of motion must be applied. These laws may be stated as follows:

First Law: Every body continues in a state of rest or in uniform motion in a straight line until it is compelled by a force to change its state of rest or motion.

Second Law: Change of motion is proportional to the force applied and takes place along the straight line in which the force acts. The "force applied" represents the resultant of *all* the forces acting on the body. This law is sometimes worded: An unbalanced force acting on a body causes an acceleration of the body in the direction of the force and of magnitude proportional to the force and inversely proportional to the mass of the body. Stated as a formula, $R = Ma$ where R is the resultant of *all* the forces acting on the body, M is the mass of the body (mass = weight W divided by acceleration due to gravity g), and a is the acceleration of the body resulting from application of force R.

Third Law: To every action there is always an equal reaction; or, if a force acts to change the state of motion of a body, the body offers a resistance equal and directly opposite to the force.

Newton's second law may be used to calculate linear and angular accelerations of a body produced by unbalanced forces and torques acting on the body; however, it is necessary first to use the methods described under *Algebraic Composition and Resolution of Force Systems* starting on page 163 to determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant of *all* forces acting on the body. Then, for a body moving with pure translation,

$$R = Ma = \frac{W}{g}a$$

where R is the resultant force in pounds acting on a body weighing W pounds; g is the gravitational constant, usually taken as 32.16 ft/sec^2, approximately; and a is the resulting acceleration in ft/sec^2 of the body due to R and in the same direction as R.

Using metric SI units, the formula is $R = Ma$, where R = force in newtons (N), M = mass in kilograms (kg), and a = acceleration in meters/second squared (m/s^2). It should be noted that the weight of a body of mass M kg is Mg newtons, where g is approximately 9.81 m/s^2.

Free Body Diagram: In order to correctly determine the effect of forces on the motion of a body it is necessary to construct a *free body diagram*. This diagram shows 1) the body removed or isolated from contact with all other bodies that exert force on it; and 2) *all* the forces acting on the body.

For example, in Fig. 1a the block being pulled up the plane is acted upon by certain forces; the free body diagram of this block is shown at Fig. 1b. Note that all forces acting on the block are indicated. These forces include: 1) the force of gravity (weight); 2) the pull of the cable, P; 3) the normal component, $W\cos\phi$, of the force exerted on the block by the plane; and 4) the friction force, $\mu W\cos\phi$, of the plane on the block.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

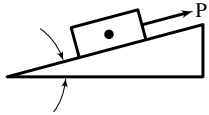


Fig. 1a.

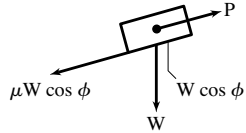


Fig. 1b.

In preparing a free body diagram, it is important to understand that only those forces exerted *on* the body being considered are shown; forces exerted by the body on other bodies are disregarded. This feature makes the free body diagram an invaluable aid in the solution of problems in mechanics.

Example: A 100-pound body is being hoisted by a winch, the tension in the hoisting cable being kept constant at 110 pounds. At what rate is the body accelerated?

Solution: Two forces are acting on the body, its weight, 100 pounds downward, and the pull of the cable, 110 pounds upward. The resultant force R, from a free body diagram, is therefore 110 − 100. Thus, applying Newton's second law,

$$110 - 100 = \frac{100}{32.16}a$$

$$a = \frac{32.16 \times 10}{100} = 3.216 \text{ ft/sec}^2 \text{ upward}$$

It should be noted that since in this problem the resultant force R was positive (110 − 100 = +10), the acceleration a is also positive, that is, a is in the same direction as R, which is in accord with Newton's second law.

Example using SI metric units: **A body of mass 50 kilograms is being hoisted by a winch, and the tension in the cable is 600 newtons. What is the acceleration? The weight of the 50 kg body is 50*g* newtons, where *g* = approximately 9.81 m/s² (see** *Note* **on page 194). Applying the formula *R* = *Ma*, the calculation is: (600 − 50*g*) = 50*a*. Thus,**

$$a = \frac{600 - 50g}{50} = \frac{600 - (50 \times 9.81)}{50} = 2.19 \text{ m/s}^2$$

Formulas Relating Torque and Angular Acceleration: For a body rotating about a fixed axis the relation between the unbalanced torque acting to produce rotation and the resulting angular acceleration may be determined from any one of the following formulas, each based on Newton's second law:

$$T_o = J_M\alpha$$

$$T_o = Mk_o^2\alpha$$

$$T_o = \frac{Wk_o^2\alpha}{g} = \frac{Wk_o^2\alpha}{32.16}$$

where T_o is the unbalanced torque in pounds-feet; J_M in ft-lbs-sec² is the moment of inertia of the body about the axis of rotation; k_o in feet is the radius of gyration of the body with respect to the axis of rotation, and α rad/sec², is the angular acceleration of the body.

Example: A flywheel has a diameter of 3 feet and weighs 1000 pounds. What torque must be applied, neglecting bearing friction, to accelerate the flywheel at the rate of 100 revolutions per minute per second (rpm/s)?

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution: From page 253 the moment of inertia of a solid cylinder with respect to a gravity axis at right angles to the circular cross section is given as $\frac{1}{2}Mr^2$. From page 184, 100 rpm = 10.47 rad/sec, hence an acceleration of 100 rpm per second = 10.47 rad/sec^2. Therefore, using the first of the preceding formulas,

$$T_o = J_M\alpha = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\frac{1000}{32.16}\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 \times 10.47 = 366 \text{ ft-lbs}$$

Using metric SI units, the formulas are: $T_o = J_M\alpha = Mk_o^2\alpha$, where T_o = torque in newton-meters; J_M = the moment of inertia in kg·m^2, and α = the angular acceleration in rad/s^2.

***Example:* A flywheel has a diameter of 1.5 m and a mass of 800 kg. What torque is needed to produce an angular acceleration of 100 rpm/s? As in the preceding example, $\alpha = 10.47$ rad/s^2. Thus:**

$$J_M = \frac{1}{2}Mr^2 = \frac{1}{2} \times 800 \times 0.75^2 = 225 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m}^2$$

Therefore: $T_o = J_M\alpha = 225 \times 10.47 = 2356$ N·m.

Energy.—A body is said to possess energy when it is capable of doing work or overcoming resistance. The energy may be either mechanical or non-mechanical, the latter including chemical, electrical, thermal, and atomic energy.

Mechanical energy includes *kinetic energy* (energy possessed by a body because of its motion) and *potential energy* (energy possessed by a body because of its position in a field of force and/or its elastic deformation).

Kinetic Energy: The motion of a body may be one of pure translation, pure rotation, or a combination of rotation and translation. By translation is meant motion in which every line in the body remains parallel to its original position throughout the motion; that is, no rotation is associated with the motion of the body.

The kinetic energy of a translating body is given by the formula

$$\text{Kinetic Energy in ft-lbs due to translation} = E_{KT} = \frac{1}{2}MV^2 = \frac{WV^2}{2g} \quad (3a)$$

where M = mass of body ($M = W/g$); V = velocity of the center of gravity of the body in ft/sec; W = weight of body in lbs; and g = acceleration due to gravity = 32.16 ft/sec^2.

The kinetic energy of a body rotating about a fixed axis O is expressed by the formula:

$$\text{Kinetic Energy in ft-lbs due to rotation} = E_{KR} = \frac{1}{2}J_{MO}\omega^2 \quad (3b)$$

where J_{MO} is the moment of inertia of the body about the fixed axis O in lbs-ft-sec^2, and ω = angular velocity in rad/sec.

For a body that is moving with both translation and rotation, the total kinetic energy is given by the following formula as the sum of the kinetic energy due to translation of the center of gravity and the kinetic energy due to rotation about the center of gravity:

$$\text{Total Kinetic Energy in ft-lbs} = E_T = \frac{1}{2}MV^2 + \frac{1}{2}J_{MG}\omega^2 \quad (3c)$$

$$= \frac{WV^2}{2g} + \frac{1}{2}J_{MG}\omega^2 = \frac{WV^2}{2g} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{Wk^2\omega^2}{g} = \frac{W}{2g}(V^2 + k^2\omega^2)$$

where J_{MG} is the moment of inertia of the body about its gravity axis in lbs-ft-sec^2, k is the radius of gyration in feet with respect to an axis through the center of gravity, and the other quantities are as previously defined.

In the metric SI system, energy is expressed as the joule (J). One joule = 1 newton-meter. The kinetic energy of a translating body is given by the formula $E_{KT} = \frac{1}{2}MV^2$,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where M = mass in kilograms, and V = velocity in meters per second. Kinetic energy due to rotation is expressed by the formula $E_{KR} = \frac{1}{2} J_{MO}\omega^2$, where J_{MO} = moment of inertia in kg·m^2, and ω = the angular velocity in radians per second. Total kinetic energy $ET = \frac{1}{2}MV^2 + \frac{1}{2} J_{MO}\omega^2$ joules = $\frac{1}{2}M(V^2 + k^2\omega^2)$ joules, where k = radius of gyration in meters.

Potential Energy: A common example of a body having potential energy because of its position in a field of force is that of a body elevated to some height above the earth. The field of force is the gravitational field of the earth. The potential energy of a body weighing W pounds elevated to height S feet above the earth's surface is $E_{PF} = WS$ lb. If the body is permitted to drop from this height its potential energy will be converted to kinetic energy. Thus, after falling through height S the kinetic energy of the body will be WS ft-lbs.

In metric SI units, the potential energy E_{PF} of a body of mass M kilograms elevated to a height of S meters, is MgS joules. After it has fallen a distance S, the kinetic energy gained will thus be MgS joules.

Another type of potential energy is *elastic potential energy*, such as possessed by a spring that has been compressed or extended. The amount of work in ft-lbs done in compressing the spring S feet is equal to $KS^2/2$, where K is the spring constant in pounds per foot. Thus, when the spring is released to act against some resistance, it can perform $KS^2/2$ ft-lbs of work, which is the amount of elastic potential energy E_{PE} stored in the spring.

Using metric SI units, the amount of work done in compressing the spring a distance S meters is $KS^2/2$ joules, where K is the spring constant in newtons per meter.

Work Performed by Forces and Couples.—The work U done by a force F in moving an object along some path is the product of the distance S the body is moved and the component $F \cos \alpha$ of the force F in the direction of S.

$$U = FS \cos\alpha$$

where U = work in ft-lbs; S = distance moved in feet; F = force in lbs; and α = angle between line of action of force and the path of S.

If the force is in the same direction as the motion, then $\cos \alpha = \cos 0 = 1$, and this formula reduces to:

$$U = FS$$

Similarly, the work done by a couple T turning an object through an angle θ is:

$$U = T\theta$$

where T = torque of couple in pounds-feet and θ = the angular rotation in radians.

The above formulas can be used with metric SI units: U in joules; S in meters; F in newtons, and T in newton-meters.

Relation Between Work and Energy.—Theoretically, when work is performed on a body and there are no energy losses (such as those due to friction, air resistance, etc.), the energy acquired by the body is equal to the work performed on the body; this energy may be either potential, kinetic, or a combination of both.

In actual situations, however, there may be energy losses that must be taken into account. Thus, the relation between work done on a body, energy losses, and the energy acquired by the body can be stated as:

$$\text{Work Performed} - \text{Energy Losses} = \text{Energy Acquired}$$
$$U - \text{Losses} = E_T$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 1: A 12-inch cube of steel weighing 490 pounds is being moved on a horizontal conveyor belt at a speed of 6 miles per hour (8.8 feet per second). What is the kinetic energy of the cube?

Solution: Since the block is not rotating, Formula (3a) for the kinetic energy of a body moving with pure translation applies:

$$\text{Kinetic Energy} = \frac{WV^2}{2g} = \frac{490 \times 8.8^2}{2 \times 32.16} = 590 \text{ ft-lbs}$$

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: If a cube of mass 200 kg is being moved on a conveyor belt at a speed of 3 meters per second, what is the kinetic energy of the cube? It is:

$$\textbf{Kinetic Energy} = \frac{1}{2}MV^2 = \frac{1}{2} \times 200 \times 3^2 = \textbf{900 joules}$$

Example 2: If the conveyor in Example 1 is brought to an abrupt stop, how long would it take for the steel block to come to a stop and how far along the belt would it slide before stopping if the coefficient of friction μ between the block and the conveyor belt is 0.2 and the block slides without tipping over?

Solution: The only force acting to slow the motion of the block is the friction force between the block and the belt. This force F is equal to the weight of the block W multiplied by the coefficient of friction; $F = \mu W = 0.2 \times 490 = 98$ lbs.

The time required to bring the block to a stop can be determined from the impulse-momentum Formula (4c) on page 191.

$$R \times t = \frac{W}{g}(V_f - V_o) = (-98)t = \frac{490}{32.16}(0 - 8.8)$$

$$t = \frac{490 \times 8.8}{98 \times 32.16} = 1.37 \text{ seconds}$$

The distance the block slides before stopping can be determined by equating the kinetic energy of the block and the work done by friction in stopping it:

$$\text{Kinetic energy of block}\left(\frac{WV^2}{2g}\right) = \text{Work done by friction } (F \times S)$$

$$590 = 98 \times S$$

$$S = \frac{590}{98} = 6.0 \text{ feet}$$

If metric SI units are used, the calculation is as follows (for the cube of 200 kg mass): The friction force = μ multiplied by the weight Mg where g = approximately 9.81 m/s^2. Thus, $\mu Mg = 0.2 \times 200g = 392.4$ newtons. The time t required to bring the block to a stop is $(-392.4)t = 200(0 - 3)$. Therefore,

$$t = \frac{200 \times 3}{392.4} = \textbf{1.53 seconds}$$

The kinetic energy of the block is equal to the work done by friction, that is $392.4 \times S = 900$ joules. Thus, the distance S which the block moves before stopping is

$$S = \frac{900}{392.4} = \textbf{2.29 meters}$$

Force of a Blow.—A body that weighs W pounds and falls S feet from an initial position of rest is capable of doing WS foot-pounds of work. The work performed during its fall may, for example, be that necessary to drive a pile a distance d into the ground. Neglecting losses in the form of dissipated heat and strain energy, the work done in driving the pile is equal to the product of the impact force acting on the pile and the distance d which the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

pile is driven. Since the impact force is not accurately known, an average value, called the "average force of the blow," may be assumed. Equating the work done on the pile and the work done by the falling body, which in this case is a pile driver:

$$\text{Average force of blow} \times d = WS$$

or,

$$\text{Average force of blow} = \frac{WS}{d}$$

where S = total height in feet through which the driver falls, including the distance d that the pile is driven
W = weight of driver in pounds
d = distance in feet which pile is driven

When using metric SI units, it should be noted that a body of mass *M* kilograms has a weight of *Mg* newtons, where *g* = approximately 9.81 m/s^2. If the body falls a distance *S* meters, it can do work equal to *MgS* joules. The average force of the blow is *MgS*/*d* newtons, where *d* is the distance in meters that the pile is driven.

Example: A pile driver weighing 200 pounds strikes the top of the pile after having fallen from a height of 20 feet. It forces the pile into the ground a distance of ½ foot. Before the ram is brought to rest, it will do 200 × (20 + ½) = 4100 foot-pounds of work, and as this energy is expended in a distance of ½ foot, the average force of the blow equals 4100 ÷ ½ = 8200 pounds.

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: A pile driver of mass 100 kilograms falls 10 meters and moves the pile a distance of 0.3 meter. The work done = 100*g*(10 + 0.3) joules, and it is expended in 0.3 meter. Thus, the average force is

$$\frac{100g \times 10.3}{0.3} = 33680 \text{ newtons or } 33.68 \text{ kN}$$

Impulse and Momentum.—The *linear momentum* of a body is defined as the product of the mass M of the body and the velocity V of the center of gravity of the body:

$$\text{Linear momentum} = MV \text{ or since } M = \frac{W}{g}$$

$$\text{Linear momentum} = \frac{WV}{g} \tag{4a}$$

It should be noted that linear momentum is a vector quantity, the momentum being in the same direction as V.

Linear impulse is defined as the product of the resultant R of *all* the forces acting on a body and the time t that the resultant acts:

$$\text{Linear Impulse} = Rt \tag{4b}$$

The change in the linear momentum of a body is numerically equal to the linear impulse that causes the change in momentum:

$$\text{Linear Impulse} = \text{change in Linear Momentum}$$

$$Rt = \frac{W}{g}V_f - \frac{W}{g}V_o = \frac{W}{g}(V_f - V_o) \tag{4c}$$

where V_f, the final velocity of the body after time t, and V_o, the initial velocity of the body, are both in the same direction as the applied force R. If V_o and V_f are in opposite directions, then the minus sign in the formula becomes a plus sign.

In metric SI units, the formulas are: Linear Momentum = *MV* kg·m/s, where *M* = mass in kg, and *V* = velocity in meters per second; and Linear Impulse = *Rt* newton-seconds (N·s), where *R* = force in newtons, and *t* = time in seconds. In Formula (4c) above, *W*/*g* is replaced by *M* when SI units are used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: A 1000-pound block is pulled up a 2-degree incline by a cable exerting a constant force F of 600 lbs. If the coefficient of friction μ between the block and the plane is 0.5, how fast will the block be moving up the plane 10 seconds after the pull is applied?

Solution: The resultant force R causing the body to be accelerated up the plane is the difference between F, the force acting up the plane, and P, the force acting to resist motion up the plane. This latter force for a body on a plane is given by the formula at the top of page 176 as $P = W(\mu \cos\alpha + \sin\alpha)$ where α is the angle of the incline.

Thus,
$$R = F - P = F - W(\mu\cos\alpha + \sin\alpha)$$
$$= 600 - 1000(0.5\cos 2^\circ + \sin 2^\circ) = 600 - 1000(0.5 \times 0.99939 + 0.03490)$$
$$R = 600 - 535 = 65 \text{ pounds.}$$

Formula (4c) can now be applied to determine the speed at which the body will be moving up the plane after 10 seconds:

$$Rt = \frac{W}{g}V_f - \frac{W}{g}V_o$$
$$65 \times 10 = \frac{1000}{32.2}V_f - \frac{1000}{32.2} \times 0$$
$$V_f = \frac{65 \times 10 \times 32.2}{1000} = 20.9 \text{ ft/sec} = 14.3 \text{ mph}$$

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: A 500 kg block is pulled up a 2 degree incline by a constant force F of 4 kN. The coefficient of friction μ between the block and the plane is 0.5. How fast will the block be moving 10 seconds after the pull is applied?

The resultant force R is:

$$\boldsymbol{R = F - Mg(\mu\cos\alpha + \sin\alpha)}$$
$$\boldsymbol{= 4000 - 500 \times 9.81(0.5 \times 0.99939 + 0.03490) = 1378\text{N or } 1.378\text{ kN}}$$

Formula (4c) can now be applied to determine the speed at which the body will be moving up the plane after 10 seconds. Replacing W/g by M in the formula, the calculation is:

$$\boldsymbol{Rt = MV_f - MV_o}$$
$$\boldsymbol{1378 \times 10 = 500(V_f - 0)}$$
$$\boldsymbol{V_f = \frac{1378 \times 10}{500} = 27.6 \text{ m/s}}$$

Angular Impulse and Momentum: In a manner similar to that for linear impulse and moment, the formulas for angular impulse and momentum for a body rotating about a fixed axis are:

$$\text{Angular momentum} = J_M\omega \quad (5a)$$
$$\text{Angular impulse} = T_o t \quad (5b)$$

where J_M is the moment of inertia of the body about the axis of rotation in lb-ft-sec^2, ω is the angular velocity in rad/sec, T_o is the torque in lb-ft about the axis of rotation, and t is the time in seconds that T_o acts.

The change in angular momentum of a body is numerically equal to the angular impulse that causes the change in angular momentum:

$$\text{Angular Impulse} = \text{Change in Angular Momentum}$$
$$T_o t = J_M\omega_f - J_M\omega_o = J_M(\omega_f - \omega_o) \quad (5c)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where ω_f and ω_o are the final and initial angular velocities, respectively.

Example: A flywheel having a moment of inertia of 25 lbs-ft-sec^2 is revolving with an angular velocity of 10 rad/sec, when a constant torque of 20 lbs-ft is applied to reverse its direction of rotation. For what length of time must this constant torque act to stop the flywheel and bring it up to a reverse speed of 5 rad/sec?

Solution: Applying Formula (5c),

$$T_o t = J_M(\omega_f - \omega_o)$$
$$20t = 25(10 - [-5]) = 250 + 125$$
$$t = 375 \div 20 = 18.8 \text{ seconds}$$

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: A flywheel with a moment of inertia of 20 kg-m^2 is revolving with an angular velocity of 10 rad/s when a constant torque of 30 N-m is applied to reverse its direction of rotation. For what length of time must this constant torque act to stop the flywheel and bring it up to a reverse speed of 5 rad/s? Applying Formula (5c), the calculation is:

$$\mathbf{T_o t = J_M(\omega_f - \omega_o)}$$
$$\mathbf{30t = 20(10 - -5)}$$
$$\mathbf{\text{Thus, } t = \frac{20 \times 15}{30} = 10 s}$$

Formulas for Work and Power.—The formulas in the accompanying Table 4 may be used to determine work and power in terms of the applied force and the velocity at the point of application of the force.

Table 4. Formulas[a] for Work and Power

To Find	Known	Formula
S	*P*, *t*, *F*	$S = P \times t \div F$
	K, *F*	$S = K \div F$
	t, *F*, *hp*	$S = 550 \times t \times hp \div F$
V	*P*, *F*	$V = P \div F$
	K, *F*, *t*	$V = K \div (F \times t)$
	F, *hp*	$V = 550 \times hp \div F$
t	*F*, *S*, *P*	$t = F \times S \div P$
	K, *F*, *V*	$t = K \div (F \times V)$
	F, *S*, *hp*	$t = F \times S \div (550 \times hp)$
F	*P*, *V*	$F = P \div V$
	K, *S*	$F = K \div S$
	K, *V*, *t*	$F = K \div (V \times t)$
	V, *hp*	$F = 550 \times hp \div V$
P	*F*, *V*	$P = F \times V$
	F, *S*, *t*	$P = F \times S \div t$
	K, *t*	$P = K \div t$
	hp	$P = 550 \times hp$

To Find	Known	Formula
K	*F*, *S*	$K = F \times S$
	P, *t*	$K = P \times t$
	F, *V*, *t*	$K = F \times V \times t$
	t, *hp*	$K = 550 \times t \times hp$
hp	*F*, *S*, *t*	$hp = F \times S \div (550 \times t)$
	P	$hp = P \div 550$
	F, *V*	$hp = F \times V \div 550$
	K, *t*	$hp = K \div (550 \times t)$

Meanings of Symbols: (metric units see note [a])

S = distance in feet
V = constant or average velocity in ft/sec
t = time in seconds
F = constant or average force in pounds
P = power in foot-pounds per second
hp = horsepower
K = work in foot-pounds

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

[a] ***Note:*** **The metric SI unit of work is the joule (one joule = 1 newton-meter), and the unit of power is the watt (one watt = 1 joule per second = 1 N·m/s). The term horsepower is not used. Thus, those formulas above that involve horsepower and the factor 550 are not applicable when working in SI units. The remaining formulas can be used, and the units are: S = distance in meters; V = constant or average velocity in meters per second; t = time in seconds; F = force in newtons; P = power in watts; K = work in joules.**

Example: A casting weighing 300 pounds is to be lifted by means of an overhead crane. The casting is lifted 10 feet in 12 seconds. What is the horsepower developed?

Solution: Here $F = 300$ lbs, $S = 10$ ft, and $t = 12$ sec.

$$\text{hp} = \frac{F \times S}{550t} = \frac{300 \times 10}{550 \times 12} = 0.45$$

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: A casting of mass 150 kg is lifted 4 meters in 15 seconds by means of a crane. What is the power? Here $F = 150g$ N, $S = 4$ m, and $t = 15$ s. Thus:

$$\textbf{Power} = \frac{FS}{t} = \frac{150g \times 4}{15} = \frac{150 \times 9.81 \times 4}{15} = \textbf{392 watts or 0.392 kW}$$

Centrifugal Force

When a body rotates about an axis other than the one at its center of mass, the inertia of its rotating body exerts an apparent outward force, drawing it away from that center. This is called *centrifugal force*.

F = centrifugal force in pounds

W = weight of revolving body in pounds

v = velocity at radius R on body in feet/second

n = number of revolutions per minute

g = acceleration due to gravity = 32.16 feet/second^2

R = perpendicular distance in feet from axis of rotation to center of mass, or for practical use, to center of gravity of revolving body

Note: If a body rotates about its own center of mass, R equals zero and v equals zero. This means that the *resultant* of the centrifugal forces of all the elements of the body is equal to zero or, in other words, no centrifugal force is exerted on the axis of rotation. The centrifugal force of any part or element of such a body is found by the equations given below, where R is the radius to the center of gravity of the part or element. In a flywheel rim, R is the mean radius of the rim because it is the radius to the center of gravity of a thin radial section.

$$F = \frac{Wv^2}{gR} = \frac{Wv^2}{32.16R} = \frac{4WR\pi^2n^2}{60 \times 60g} = \frac{WRn^2}{2933} = 0.000341WRn^2$$

$$W = \frac{FRg}{v^2} = \frac{2933F}{Rn^2} \qquad v = \sqrt{\frac{FRg}{W}}$$

$$R = \frac{Wv^2}{Fg} = \frac{2933F}{Wn^2} \qquad n = \sqrt{\frac{2933F}{WR}}$$

(If n is the number of revolutions per second instead of per minute, then $F = 1227WRn^2$.)

If metric SI units are used in the foregoing formulas, W/g is replaced by M, which is the mass in kilograms; F = centrifugal force in newtons; v = velocity in meters per second; n = number of revolutions per minute; and R = the radius in meters. Thus:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$F = \frac{Mv^2}{R} = \frac{Mn^2(2\pi R^2)}{60^2 R} = 0.01097\,MRn^2$$

If the rate of rotation is expressed as n_1 = revolutions per second, then $F = 39.48\,MRn_1^2$; if it is expressed as ω radians per second, then $F = MR\omega^2$.

Calculating Centrifugal Force.—In the ordinary formula for centrifugal force, $F = 0.000341\,WRn^2$; the mean radius R of the flywheel or pulley rim is given in feet. For small dimensions, it is more convenient to have the formula in the form:

$$F = 0.2842 \times 10^{-4} Wrn^2$$

in which F = centrifugal force, in pounds; W = weight of rim, in pounds; r = mean radius of rim, in inches; n = number of revolutions per minute.

In this formula let $C = 0.000028416n^2$. This, then, is the centrifugal force of one pound, one inch from the axis. The formula can now be written in the form,

$$F = WrC$$

C is calculated for various values of the revolutions per minute n, and the calculated values of C are given in Table 5. To find the centrifugal force in any given case, simply find the value of C in the table and multiply it by the product of W and r; the four multiplications in the original formula given are thus reduced to two.

Example: A cast-iron flywheel with a mean rim radius of 9 inches is rotated at a speed of 800 revolutions per minute. If the weight of the rim is 20 pounds, what is the centrifugal force?

Solution: From Table 5, for $n = 800$ revolutions per minute, the value of C is 18.1862.

Thus,

$$F = WrC = 20 \times 9 \times 18.1862 = 3273.52 \text{ pounds}$$

Using metric SI units, $0.01097n^2$ is the centrifugal force acting on a body of 1 kilogram mass rotating at n revolutions per minute at a distance of 1 meter from the axis. If this value is designated C_1, then the centrifugal force of mass M kilograms rotating at this speed at a distance from the axis of R meters is C_1MR newtons. To simplify calculations, values for C_1 are given in Table 6. If it is required to work in terms of millimeters, the force is $0.001\,C_1MR_1$ newtons, where R_1 is the radius in millimeters.

***Example:* A steel pulley with a mean rim radius of 120 mm is rotated at a speed of 1100 rpm. If the mass of the rim is 5 kg, what is the centrifugal force?**

From Table 6, for $n = 1100$ rpm, the value of C_1 is 13,269.1.

Thus,

$$F = 0.001\,C_1MR_1 = 0.001 \times 13{,}269.1 \times 5 \times 120 = 7961.50 \text{ N}$$

Centrifugal Casting.—The centrifugal casting of metals is an old art. This process has become important in such work as the manufacture of paper-mill rolls, railroad car wheels, and cast-iron pipe. The centrifugal casting process has been successfully applied in the production of non-metallic tubes, such as concrete pipe, in the production of solid castings by locating the molds around the rim of a spinning wheel, and to a limited extent in the production of solid ingots by a largely similar process. Hollow objects such as cast-iron pipe are cast by introducing molten metal into a spinning mold. If the chilling of the metal is extremely rapid, for example in casting cast-iron pipe against a water-cooled chilled mold, it is imperative that a movable spout be used. The particular feature that determines the field of application of hot-mold centrifugal casting is the ability to produce long cast shapes of comparatively thin metal.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Factors *C* for Calculating Centrifugal Force (English units)

n	*C*	*n*	*C*	*n*	*C*	*n*	*C*
50	0.07104	100	0.28416	470	6.2770	5200	768.369
51	0.07391	101	0.28987	480	6.5470	5300	798.205
52	0.07684	102	0.29564	490	6.8227	5400	828.611
53	0.07982	103	0.30147	500	7.1040	5500	859.584
54	0.08286	104	0.30735	600	10.2298	5600	891.126
55	0.08596	105	0.31328	700	13.9238	5700	923.236
56	0.08911	106	0.31928	800	18.1862	5800	955.914
57	0.09232	107	0.32533	900	23.0170	5900	989.161
58	0.09559	108	0.33144	1000	28.4160	6000	1022.980
59	0.09892	109	0.33761	1100	34.3834	6100	1057.360
60	0.10230	110	0.34383	1200	40.9190	6200	1092.310
61	0.10573	115	0.37580	1300	48.0230	6300	1127.830
62	0.10923	120	0.40921	1400	55.6954	6400	1163.920
63	0.11278	125	0.44400	1500	63.9360	6500	1200.580
64	0.11639	130	0.48023	1600	72.7450	6600	1237.800
65	0.12006	135	0.51788	1700	82.1222	6700	1275.590
66	0.12378	140	0.55695	1800	92.0678	6800	1313.960
67	0.12756	145	0.59744	1900	102.5820	6900	1352.890
68	0.13140	150	0.63936	2000	113.6640	7000	1392.380
69	0.13529	160	0.72745	2100	125.3150	7100	1432.450
70	0.13924	170	0.82122	2200	137.5330	7200	1473.090
71	0.14325	180	0.92067	2300	150.3210	7300	1514.290
72	0.14731	190	1.02590	2400	163.6760	7400	1556.060
73	0.15143	200	1.1367	2500	177.6000	7500	1598.400
74	0.15561	210	1.2531	2600	192.0920	7600	1641.310
75	0.15984	220	1.3753	2700	207.1530	7700	1684.780
76	0.16413	230	1.5032	2800	222.7810	7800	1728.830
77	0.16848	240	1.6358	2900	238.9790	7900	1773.440
78	0.17288	250	1.7760	3000	255.7400	8000	1818.620
79	0.17734	260	1.9209	3100	273.0780	8100	1864.370
80	0.18186	270	2.0715	3200	290.9800	8200	1910.690
81	0.18644	280	2.2278	3300	309.4500	8300	1957.580
82	0.19107	290	2.3898	3400	328.4890	8400	2005.030
83	0.19576	300	2.5574	3500	348.0960	8500	2053.060
84	0.20050	310	2.7308	3600	368.2710	8600	2101.650
85	0.20530	320	2.9098	3700	389.0150	8700	2150.810
86	0.21016	330	3.0945	3800	410.3270	8800	2200.540
87	0.21508	340	3.2849	3900	432.2070	8900	2250.830
88	0.22005	350	3.4809	4000	454.6560	9000	2301.700
89	0.22508	360	3.6823	4100	477.6730	9100	2353.130
90	0.23017	370	3.8901	4200	501.2580	9200	2405.130
91	0.23531	380	4.1032	4300	525.4120	9300	2457.700
92	0.24051	390	4.3220	4400	550.1340	9400	2510.840
93	0.24577	400	4.5466	4500	575.4240	9500	2564.540
94	0.25108	410	4.7767	4600	601.2830	9600	2618.820
95	0.25645	420	5.0126	4700	627.7090	9700	2673.660
96	0.26188	430	5.2541	4800	654.7050	9800	2729.070
97	0.26737	440	5.5013	4900	682.2680	9900	2785.050
98	0.27291	450	5.7542	5000	710.4000	10000	2841.600
99	0.27851	460	6.0128	5100	739.1000		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Factors C_1 for Calculating Centrifugal Force (Metric SI units)

n	C_1	n	C_1	n	C_1	n	C_1
50	27.4156	100	109.662	470	2,422.44	5200	296,527
51	28.5232	101	111.867	480	2,526.62	5300	308,041
52	29.6527	102	114.093	490	2,632.99	5400	319,775
53	30.8041	103	116.341	500	2,741.56	5500	331,728
54	31.9775	104	118.611	600	3,947.84	5600	343,901
55	33.1728	105	120.903	700	5,373.45	5700	356,293
56	34.3901	106	123.217	800	7,018.39	5800	368,904
57	35.6293	107	125.552	900	8,882.64	5900	381,734
58	36.8904	108	127.910	1000	10,966.2	6000	394,784
59	38.1734	109	130.290	1100	13,269.1	6100	408,053
60	39.4784	110	132.691	1200	15,791.4	6200	421,542
61	40.8053	115	145.028	1300	18,532.9	6300	435,250
62	42.1542	120	157.914	1400	21,493.8	6400	449,177
63	43.5250	125	171.347	1500	24,674.0	6500	463,323
64	44.9177	130	185.329	1600	28,073.5	6600	477,689
65	46.3323	135	199.860	1700	31,692.4	6700	492,274
66	47.7689	140	214.938	1800	35,530.6	6800	507,078
67	49.2274	145	230.565	1900	39,588.1	6900	522,102
68	50.7078	150	246.740	2000	43,864.9	7000	537,345
69	52.2102	160	280.735	2100	48,361.1	7100	552,808
70	53.7345	170	316.924	2200	53,076.5	7200	568,489
71	55.2808	180	355.306	2300	58,011.3	7300	584,390
72	56.8489	190	395.881	2400	63,165.5	7400	600,511
73	58.4390	200	438.649	2500	68,538.9	7500	616,850
74	60.0511	210	483.611	2600	74,131.7	7600	633,409
75	61.6850	220	530.765	2700	79,943.8	7700	650,188
76	63.3409	230	580.113	2800	85,975.2	7800	667,185
77	65.0188	240	631.655	2900	92,226.0	7900	684,402
78	66.7185	250	685.389	3000	98,696.0	8000	701,839
79	68.4402	260	741.317	3100	105,385	8100	719,494
80	70.1839	270	799.438	3200	112,294	8200	737,369
81	71.9494	280	859.752	3300	119,422	8300	755,463
82	73.7369	290	922.260	3400	126,770	8400	773,777
83	75.5463	300	986.960	3500	134,336	8500	792,310
84	77.3777	310	1,053.85	3600	142,122	8600	811,062
85	79.2310	320	1,122.94	3700	150,128	8700	830,034
86	81.1062	330	1,194.22	3800	158,352	8800	849,225
87	83.0034	340	1,267.70	3900	166,796	8900	868,635
88	84.9225	350	1,343.36	4000	175,460	9000	888,264
89	86.8635	360	1,421.22	4100	184,342	9100	908,113
90	88.8264	370	1,501.28	4200	193,444	9200	928,182
91	90.8113	380	1,583.52	4300	202,766	9300	948,469
92	92.8182	390	1,667.96	4400	212,306	9400	968,976
93	94.8469	400	1,754.60	4500	222,066	9500	989,702
94	96.8976	410	1,843.42	4600	232,045	9600	1,010,650
95	98.9702	420	1,934.44	4700	242,244	9700	1,031,810
96	101.065	430	2,027.66	4800	252,662	9800	1,053,200
97	103.181	440	2,123.06	4900	263,299	9900	1,074,800
98	105.320	450	2,220.66	5000	274,156	10000	1,096,620
99	107.480	460	2,320.45	5100	285,232		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Balancing Rotating Parts

Static Balancing.—There are several methods of testing the standing or static balance of a rotating part. A simple method that is sometimes used for flywheels, etc., is illustrated by the diagram, Fig. 1. An accurate shaft is inserted through the bore of the finished wheel, which is then mounted on carefully leveled "parallels" A. If the wheel is in an unbalanced state, it will turn until the heavy side is downward. When it will stand in any position as the result of counterbalancing and reducing the heavy portions, it is said to be in standing or static balance. Another test which is used for disk-shaped parts is shown in Fig. 2. The disk D is mounted on a vertical arbor attached to an adjustable cross-slide B. The latter is carried by a table C, which is supported by a knife-edged bearing. A pendulum having an adjustable screw-weight W at the lower end is suspended from cross-slide B. To test the static balance of disk D, slide B is adjusted until pointer E of the pendulum coincides with the center of a stationary scale F. Disk D is then turned halfway around without moving the slide, and if the indicator remains stationary, it shows that the disk is in balance for this particular position. The test is then repeated for ten or twelve other positions, and the heavy sides are reduced, usually by drilling out the required amount of metal. Several other devices for testing static balance are designed on this same principle.

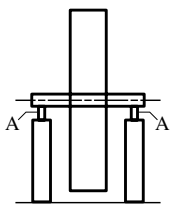


Fig. 1.

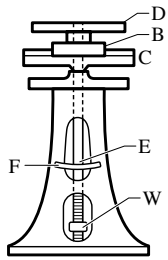


Fig. 2.

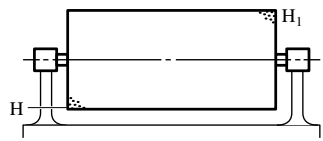


Fig. 3.

Running or Dynamic Balance.—A cylindrical body may be in perfect static balance yet not be in a balanced state when rotating at high speed. If the part is in the form of a thin disk, static balancing, if carefully done, may be accurate enough for high speeds, but if the rotating part is long in proportion to its diameter, and the unbalanced portions are at opposite ends or in different planes, the balancing must be done so as to counteract the centrifugal force of these heavy parts when they are rotating rapidly. This process is known as a *running balance* or *dynamic balancing*. To illustrate, if a heavy section is located at H (Fig. 3), and another correspondingly heavy section at H_1, one may exactly counterbalance the other when the cylinder is stationary, and this static balance may be sufficient for a part rigidly mounted and rotating at a comparatively slow speed; but when the speed is very high, as in turbine rotors, etc., the heavy masses H and H_1, being in different planes, are in an unbalanced state owing to the effect of centrifugal force, which results in excessive strains and injurious vibrations. Theoretically, to obtain a perfect running balance, the exact positions of the heavy sections should be located and the balancing effected either by reducing their weight or by adding counterweights opposite each section and in the same plane at the proper radius; but if the rotating part is rigidly mounted on a stiff shaft, a running balance that is sufficiently accurate for practical purposes can be obtained by means of comparatively few counterbalancing weights located with reference to the unbalanced parts.

Balancing Calculations.—As indicated previously, centrifugal forces caused by an unbalanced mass or masses in a rotating machine member cause additional loads on the bearings, which are transmitted to the housing or frame and to other machine members.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Such dynamically unbalanced conditions can occur even though static balance (balance at zero speed) exists. Dynamic balance can be achieved by the addition of one or two masses rotating about the same axis and at the same speed as the unbalanced masses. A single unbalanced mass can be balanced by one counterbalancing mass located 180 degrees opposite and in the same plane of rotation as the unbalanced mass if the product of their respective radii and masses are equal; i.e., $M_1 r_1 = M_2 r_2$. Two or more unbalanced masses rotating in the same plane can be balanced by a single mass rotating in the same plane, or by two masses rotating about the same axis in two separate planes. Likewise, two or more unbalanced masses rotating in different planes about a common axis can be balanced by two masses rotating about the same axis in separate planes. When the unbalanced masses are in separate planes they may be in static balance but not in dynamic balance; i.e., they may be balanced when not rotating but unbalanced when rotating. If a system is in dynamic balance, it will remain in balance at all speeds, although this is not strictly true at the critical speed of the system. (See *Critical Speeds* on page 204.)

In all the equations that follow, the symbol M denotes either mass in kilograms or in slugs, or weight in pounds. Either mass or weight units may be used; the equations may be used with metric or with customary English units without change; however, in a given problem the units must be all metric or all customary English.

Counterbalancing Several Masses Located in a Single Plane.—In all balancing problems, the product of the counterbalancing mass (or weight) and its radius are calculated; it is thus necessary to select either the mass or the radius and then calculate the other value from the product of the two quantities. Design considerations usually make this decision self-evident. The angular position of the counterbalancing mass must also be calculated. Referring to Fig. 4:

$$M_B r_B = \sqrt{(\Sigma Mr \cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mr \sin\theta)^2} \quad (1)$$

$$\tan\theta_B = \frac{-(\Sigma Mr \sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mr \cos\theta)} = \frac{y}{x} \quad (2)$$

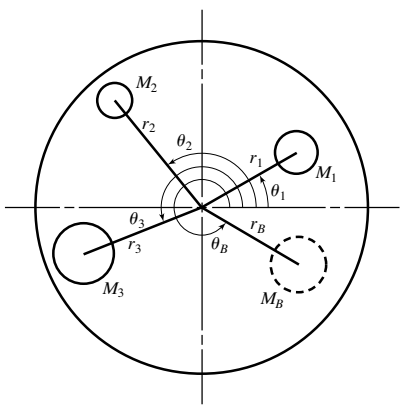


Fig. 4.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where:

$M_1, M_2, M_3, \ldots, M_n$ = any unbalanced mass or weight, kg or lb

M_B = counterbalancing mass or weight, kg or lb

r = radius to center of gravity of any unbalanced mass or weight, mm or inch

r_B = radius to center of gravity of counterbalancing mass or weight, mm or inch

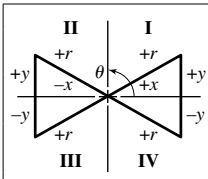
θ = angular position of r of any unbalanced mass or weight, degrees

θ_B = angular position of r_B of counterbalancing mass or weight, degrees

x and y = position with sign according to Table 1

Table 1 is helpful in finding the angular position of the counterbalancing mass or weight. It indicates the range of the angles within which this angular position occurs by noting the plus and minus signs of the numerator and the denominator of the terms in Equation (2). In a like manner, Table 1 is useful in determining the *sign* of the sine or cosine functions for angles ranging from 0 to 360 degrees. Balancing problems are usually solved most conveniently by arranging the arithmetical calculations in a tabular form.

Table 1. Relationship of Angle Function Signs to Quadrant in Which They Occur



	Angle θ			
	0° to 90°	90° to 180°	180° to 270°	270° to 360°
	Signs of the Functions			
tan	$\frac{+y}{+x}$	$\frac{+y}{-x}$	$\frac{-y}{-x}$	$\frac{-y}{+x}$
sine	$\frac{+y}{+r}$	$\frac{+y}{+r}$	$\frac{-y}{+r}$	$\frac{-y}{+r}$
cosine	$\frac{+x}{+r}$	$\frac{-x}{+r}$	$\frac{-x}{+r}$	$\frac{+x}{+r}$

Example: Referring to Fig. 4, particular values of unbalanced weights M_1, M_2, M_3 are entered in the table below. Calculate the magnitude of the counterbalancing weight M_B if its radius r is to be 10 inches.

Solution: The table is arranged with the given masses M, their radii r, and their angular positions θ. The angle functions sin theta and cos theta are determined from the angles using a calculator or trig table. Finally, the quantities are used to fill in the last two columns.

M		r	θ	cos θ	sin θ	Mr cos θ	Mr sin θ
No.	lb.	in.	deg.				
1	10	10	30	0.8660	0.5000	86.6	50.0
2	5	20	120	–0.5000	0.8660	–50.0	86.6
3	15	15	200	–0.9397	–0.3420	–211.4	–77.0
						$-174.8 = \Sigma Mr \cos\theta$	$59.6 = \Sigma Mr \sin\theta$

$$M_B = \frac{\sqrt{(\Sigma Mr\cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mr\sin\theta)^2}}{r_B} = \frac{\sqrt{(-174.8)^2 + (59.6)^2}}{10}$$

$$M_B = 18.5 \text{ lbs}$$

$$\tan\theta_B = \frac{-(\Sigma Mr\sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mr\cos\theta)} = \frac{-(59.6)}{-(-174.8)} = \frac{-y}{+x}; \quad \theta_B = 341°10'$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

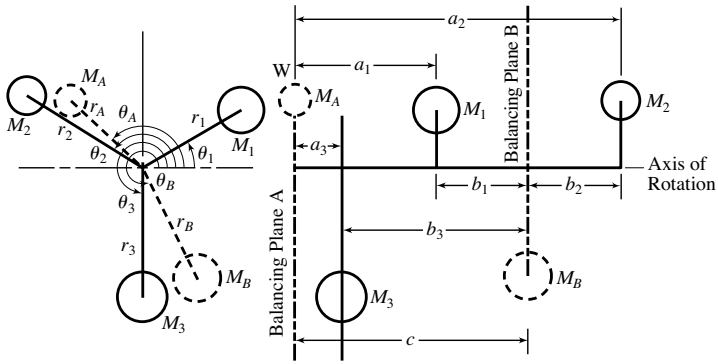


Fig. 5.

Counterbalancing Masses Located in Two or More Planes.—Unbalanced masses or weights rotating about a common axis in two separate planes of rotation form a couple, which must be counterbalanced by masses or weights, also located in two separate planes, say, planes *A* and *B*, and rotating about a common axis (see *Couples* on page 162). In addition, they must be balanced in the direction perpendicular to the axis, as before. Since two counterbalancing masses are required, two separate equations are required to calculate the product of each mass or weight and its radius, and two additional equations are required to calculate the angular positions. The planes *A* and *B* selected as balancing planes may be any two planes separated by any convenient distance *c*, along the axis of rotation. In Fig. 5:

For balancing plane *A*:

$$M_A r_A = \frac{\sqrt{(\Sigma Mrb\cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mrb\sin\theta)^2}}{c} \tag{3}$$

$$\tan\theta_A = \frac{-(\Sigma Mrb\sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mrb\cos\theta)} = \frac{y}{x} \tag{4}$$

For balancing plane *B*:

$$M_B r_B = \frac{\sqrt{(\Sigma Mra\cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mra\sin\theta)^2}}{c} \tag{5}$$

$$\tan\theta_B = \frac{-(\Sigma Mra\sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mra\cos\theta)} = \frac{y}{x} \tag{6}$$

where: M_A and M_B are the mass or weight of the counterbalancing masses in the balancing planes *A* and *B*, respectively; r_A and r_B are the radii; and θ_A and θ_B are the angular positions of the balancing masses in these planes. *M*, *r*, and θ are the mass or weight, radius, and angular positions of the unbalanced masses, with the subscripts defining the particular mass to which the values are assigned. The distance, *c*, between the balancing planes is always a positive value. The axial dimensions, *a* and *b*, may be either positive or negative, depending upon their position relative to the balancing plane; for example, in Fig. 5, the dimension b_2 would be negative.

Example: Referring to Fig. 5, a set of values for the masses and dimensions has been selected and put into convenient table form below. The separation of balancing planes, *c*, is chosen as 15 inches. If in balancing plane *A*, the radius of the counterbalancing weight

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is selected to be 10 inches; calculate the magnitude of the counterbalancing mass and its position. In balancing plane *B* the counterbalancing mass is selected to be 10 lb; calculate its radius and position.

Solution: For balancing plane *A*:

				Balancing Plane *A*			
Plane	*M* lb	*r* in.	θ deg.	*b* in.	*Mrb*	*Mrb* cos θ	*Mrb* sin θ
1	10	8	30	6	480	415.7	240.0
2	8	10	135	–6	–480	339.4	–339.4
3	12	9	270	12	1296	0.0	–1296.0
A	?	10	?	15[a]		755.1	–1395.4
B	10	?	?	0		$=\Sigma Mrb\cos\theta$	$=\Sigma Mrb\sin\theta$

[a] 15 inches = distance *c* between planes *A* and *B*.

$$M_A = \frac{\sqrt{(\Sigma Mrb\cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mrb\sin\theta)^2}}{r_A c} = \frac{\sqrt{(755.1)^2 + (-1395.4)^2}}{10(15)}$$

$$M_A = 10.6 \text{ lb}$$

$$\tan\theta_A = \frac{-(\Sigma Mrb\sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mrb\cos\theta)} = \frac{-(-1395.4)}{-(755.1)} = \frac{+y}{-x}$$

$$\theta_A = 118^\circ\ 25'$$

For balancing plane *B*:

				Balancing Plane *B*			
Plane	*M* lb	*r* in.	θ deg.	*a* in.	*Mra*	*Mra* cos θ	*Mra* sin θ
1	10	8	30	9	720	623.5	360.0
2	8	10	135	21	1680	–1187.9	1187.9
3	12	9	270	3	324	0.0	–324.0
A	?	10	?	0		–564.4	1223.9
B	10	?	?	15[a]		$=\Sigma Mra\cos\theta$	$=\Sigma Mra\sin\theta$

[a] 15 inches = distance *c* between planes *A* and *B*.

$$r_B = \frac{\sqrt{(\Sigma Mra\cos\theta)^2 + (\Sigma Mra\sin\theta)^2}}{M_B c} = \frac{\sqrt{(-564.4)^2 + (1223.9)^2}}{10(15)}$$

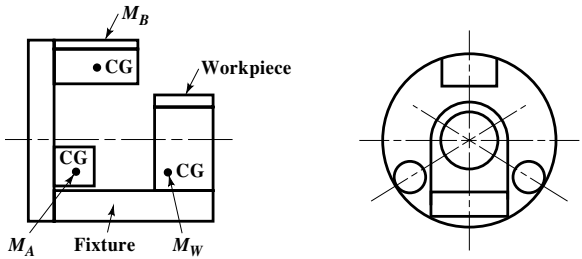
$$= 8.985 \text{ in.}$$

$$\tan\theta_B = \frac{-(\Sigma Mra\sin\theta)}{-(\Sigma Mra\cos\theta)} = \frac{-(1223.9)}{-(-564.4)} = \frac{-y}{+x}$$

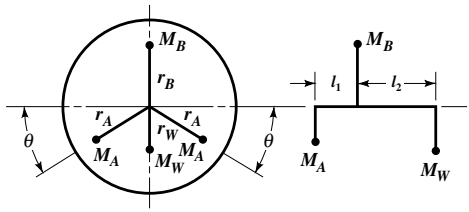
$$\theta_B = 294^\circ\ 45'$$

Balancing Lathe Fixtures.—Lathe fixtures rotating at a high speed require balancing. Often it is assumed that the center of gravity of the workpiece and fixture and of the counterbalancing masses are in the same plane; however, this is not usually the case. Counterbalancing masses are required in two separate planes to prevent excessive vibration or bearing loads at high speeds.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Lathe Fixture



Schematic View

Fig. 6.

Usually a single counterbalancing mass is placed in one plane selected to be 180 degrees directly opposite the combined center of gravity of the workpiece and the fixture. Two equal counterbalancing masses are then placed in the second counterbalancing plane, equally spaced on each side of the fixture. Referring to Fig. 6, the two counterbalancing masses M_A and the two angles θ are equal. For the design in this illustration, the following formulas can be used to calculate the magnitude of the counterbalancing masses. Since their angular positions are fixed by the design, they are not calculated.

$$M_B = \frac{M_W r_W (l_1 + l_2)}{r_B l_1} \tag{7}$$

$$M_A = \frac{M_B r_B - M_W r_W}{2 r_A \sin \theta} \tag{8}$$

In these formulas M_W and r_W denote the mass or weight and the radius of the combined center of gravity of the workpiece and the fixture.

Example: In Fig. 6 the combined weight of the workpiece and the fixture is 18.5 lb. The following dimensions were determined from the layout of the fixture and by calculating the centers of gravity: $r_W = 2$ in.; $r_A = 6.25$ in.; $r_B = 6$ in.; $l_1 = 3$ in.; $l_2 = 5$ in.; and $\theta = 30°$. Calculate the weights of the counterbalancing masses.

$$M_B = \frac{M_w r_w (l_1 + l_2)}{r_B l_1} = \frac{18.5 \times 2 \times 8}{6 \times 3} = 16.44 \text{ lb}$$

$$M_A = \frac{M_B r_B - M_w r_w}{2 r_A \sin \theta} = \frac{(16.44 \times 6) - (18.5 \times 2)}{(2 \times 6.25) \sin 30°} = 9.86 \text{ lb (each weight)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Critical Speeds

Critical Speeds of Rotating Bodies and Shafts.—If a body or disk mounted upon a shaft rotates about it, the center of gravity of the body or disk must be at the center of the shaft if a perfect running balance is to be obtained. In most cases, however, the center of gravity of the disk will be slightly removed from the center of the shaft, owing to the difficulty of perfect balancing. Now, if the shaft and disk are rotated, the centrifugal force generated by the heavier side will be greater than that generated by the lighter side geometrically opposite to it, and the shaft will deflect toward the heavier side, causing the center of the disk to rotate in a small circle. A rotating shaft without a body or disk mounted on it can also become dynamically unstable, and the resulting vibrations and deflections can result in damage not only to the shaft but to the machine of which it is a part. These conditions hold true up to a comparatively high speed, but a point is eventually reached (at several thousand revolutions per minute) when momentarily there will be excessive vibration, and then the parts will run quietly again. The speed at which this occurs is called the *critical speed* of the wheel or shaft, and the phenomenon itself for the shaft-mounted disk or body is called the *settling* of the wheel. The explanation of the settling is that at this speed the axis of rotation changes, and the wheel and shaft, instead of rotating about their geometrical center, begin to rotate about an axis through their center of gravity. The shaft itself is then deflected so that for every revolution its geometrical center traces a circle around the center of gravity of the rotating mass.

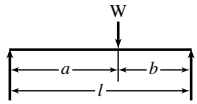
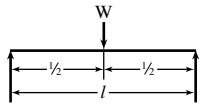
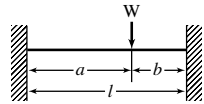
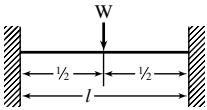
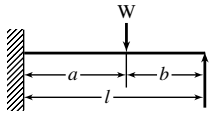
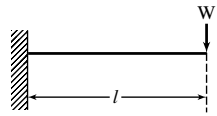
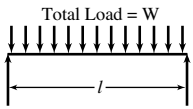
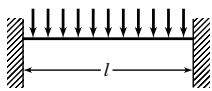
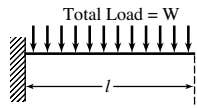
Critical speeds depend upon the magnitude or location of the load or loads carried by the shaft, the length of the shaft, its diameter and the kind of supporting bearings. The normal operating speed of a machine may or may not be higher than the critical speed. For instance, some steam turbines exceed the critical speed, although they do not run long enough at the critical speed for the vibrations to build up to an excessive amplitude. The practice of the General Electric Co. at Schenectady is to keep below the critical speeds. It is assumed that the maximum speed of a machine may be within 20 percent above or below the critical speed without vibration troubles. Thus, in a design of steam turbine sets, critical speed is a factor that determines the size of the shafts for both the generators and turbines. Although a machine may run very close to the critical speed, the alignment and play of the bearings, the balance and construction generally will require extra care, resulting in a more expensive machine; moreover, while such a machine may run smoothly for a considerable time, any looseness or play that may develop later, causing a slight imbalance, will immediately set up excessive vibrations.

The formulas commonly used to determine critical speeds are sufficiently accurate for general purposes. There are cases, however, where the torque applied to a shaft has an important effect on its critical speed. Investigations have shown that the critical speeds of a uniform shaft are decreased as the applied torque is increased and that there exist critical torques which will reduce the corresponding critical speed of the shaft to zero. A detailed analysis of the effects of applied torques on critical speeds may be found in a paper, "Critical Speeds of Uniform Shafts under Axial Torque," by Golumb and Rosenberg, presented at the First US National Congress of Applied Mechanics in 1951.

Formulas for Critical Speeds.—The critical speed formulas given in the accompanying table (from the paper on Critical Speed Calculation presented before the ASME by S. H. Weaver) apply to (1) shafts with single concentrated loads and (2) shafts carrying uniformly distributed loads. These formulas also cover different conditions as regards bearings. If the bearings are self-aligning or very short, the shaft is considered to be supported at the ends; whereas, if the bearings are long and rigid, the shaft is considered fixed. These formulas, for both concentrated and distributed loads, apply to vertical shafts as well as horizontal shafts, the critical speeds having the same value in both cases. The data required for the solution of critical speed problems are the same as for shaft deflection. As the shaft is usually of variable diameter and its stiffness is increased by a long hub, an ideal shaft of uniform diameter and equal stiffness must be assumed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Critical Speed Formulas

Formulas for Single Concentrated Load		
 $N = 387{,}000\frac{d^2}{ab}\sqrt{\frac{l}{W}}$ Bearings supported	 $N = 1{,}550{,}500\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ Bearings supported	 $N = 387{,}000\frac{d^2l}{ab}\sqrt{\frac{l}{Wab}}$ Bearings fixed
 $N = 3{,}100{,}850\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ Bearings fixed	 $N = 775{,}200\frac{d^2l}{ab}\sqrt{\frac{l}{Wa(3l+b)}}$ One-fixed — One supported	 $N = 387{,}000\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ One fixed — One free end
Formulas for Distributed Loads—First Critical Speed		
 $N = 2{,}232{,}500\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ $N_1 = 4{,}760{,}000\frac{d}{l^2}$ Bearings supported	 $N = 4{,}979{,}250\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ $N_1 = 10{,}616{,}740\frac{d}{l^2}$ Bearings fixed	 $N = 795{,}200\frac{d^2}{l\sqrt{Wl}}$ $N_1 = 1{,}695{,}500\frac{d}{l^2}$ One fixed—One free end

N = critical speed, RPM
N_1 = critical speed of shaft alone
d = diameter of shaft, in inches
W = load applied to shaft, in pounds
l = distance between centers of bearings, in inches
a and b = distances from bearings to load

In calculating critical speeds, the weight of the shaft is either neglected or, say, ½ to ⅔ of the weight is added to the concentrated load. The formulas apply to steel shafts having a modulus of elasticity $E = 29{,}000{,}000$. Although a shaft carrying a number of loads or a distributed load may have an infinite number of critical speeds, ordinarily it is the first critical speed that is of importance in engineering work. The first critical speed is obtained by the formulas given in the distributed loads portion of the table *Critical Speed Formulas*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

STRENGTH OF MATERIALS

Strength of materials deals with the relations between elastic bodies, external forces applied, and resulting deformations and stresses. In the design of structures and machines, mechanical engineering must consider the behavior of chosen materials when under load and apply strength of materials principles, including static strength and fatigue strength. Optimizing mechanical properties, load characteristics, and part shapes helps ensure expected behavior and life of a part or machine.

Forces are produced by the action of gravity, by accelerations and impacts of moving parts, by gasses and fluids under pressure, and by the transmission of mechanical power, among others. In order to analyze the stresses and deflections of a body, the magnitudes, directions and points of application of forces acting on the body must be known. Information given previously in the Mechanics section provides the basis for evaluating force systems.

The time element in the application of a force on a body is an important consideration. Thus, a force may be static or change so slowly that its maximum value can be treated as if it were static; it may be suddenly applied, as with an impact; or it may have a repetitive or cyclic behavior.

The environment in which forces act on a machine or part is also important. Such factors as high and low temperatures; the presence of corrosive gases, vapors and liquids; radiation, etc. may have a marked effect on how well parts are able to resist stresses.

Throughout this and other sections of the Handbook, both English and metric SI data and formulas are given to cover the requirements of working in either system of measurement. In many cases, formulas and text relating exclusively to SI units are given in bold-face type.

Mechanical Properties of Materials.—Many mechanical properties of materials are determined from tests such as tensile testing, which subjects a uniform sample of a material to controlled axial tension. Strain (elongation) is measured as well as stress at the point of rupture.

Engineering stress is the applied load on a tensile specimen divided by its original cross-sectional area. *True stress* uses the actual cross-sectional area. The maximum stress a material can withstand before breaking may be called *ultimate tensile stress* or *breaking stress*. *Engineering strain* is the amount by which a tensile specimen of a given material changes when the body is subjected to a load, divided by the original value of the dimension. *True strain* is the natural log of the ratio of current length over original length. Instead of *unit strain*, the simpler term *strain* often is used.

The shape of an engineering stress-strain curve (see Fig. 1) reveals how material will behave under tensile loading, assuming the tensile specimen has a constant cross-sectional area as loading is applied. (True stress and strain both reference the instantaneous cross-sectional area, which can be more accurate, but in practice, engineering stress-strain curves are used almost exclusively.) Values beyond the elastic limit must be used with caution, as the cross-sectional area begins to change and introduce error.

Fig. 1 (1) shows the curve shape for a ductile ferrous material similar to low-carbon steel. The (upper or first) yield point is well defined and followed by some elongation with little additional stress. Then the curve turns upward again, toward an inflection point; strain hardening accounts for the increasing stress in this segment. When the curve again turns downward at the ultimate strength point, necking has begun. Fig. 1 (2) shows a curve typical of a ductile non-ferrous material such as annealed copper. A well-defined yield point is absent, so an offset yield point is constructed. Fig. 1 (3) illustrates an offset yield point, as discussed below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

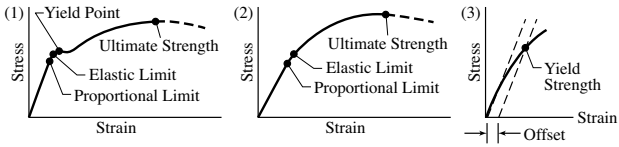


Fig. 1. Stress-Strain Curves

In the SI, the unit of stress is the pascal (Pa), the newton per meter squared (N/m^2). The megapascal (newtons per millimeter squared) is often an appropriate submultiple for use in practice.

Proportional limit is the point on a stress-strain curve at which it begins to deviate from the straight-line relationship between stress and strain. Prior to this point, the curve has a constant slope equal to the modulus of elasticity for that material.

Elastic limit is the maximum tensile stress to which a test specimen may be subjected and still return to its original length upon release of the load. A material is said to be stressed within the *elastic region* when the working stress does not exceed the elastic limit, and to be stressed in the *plastic region* when the working stress does exceed the elastic limit. The elastic limit for steel is for all practical purposes the same as its proportional limit.

Yield point is a point on the stress-strain curve at which there is a sudden increase in strain without a corresponding increase in stress. While not all materials have a yield point, for those that do, this point tends to occur at or near the onset of plastic or permanent deformation. Modern standards may refer to this as *upper yield strength*.

Yield strength, S_y, is the stress associated with a specified small amount of permanent strain. Ideally, this is the maximum stress that can be applied with no permanent deformation of the material; in practice, it is not easily measurable. When a material does not have a clearly defined upper yield strength (yield point), an offset yield strength may be defined instead, as illustrated in Fig. 1 (3). In such cases, yield strength is the stress value on the stress-strain curve corresponding to a defined amount of permanent set or strain, usually 0.1%, 0.2%, or 0.5% of the original dimension. A line drawn parallel to the elastic range curve (with slope equal to the modulus of elasticity) intersects the X-axis at the target strain. The intersection of the stress-strain curve with that offset line is the offset yield point (again 0.2%). Yield strength data for various materials are given in tables starting on pages 388, 390, 418, 419, 421, 423, 427, 510, 512, 516, 525, 526, 531, 532, 536, 544, 546, 547, and elsewhere.

Ultimate tensile strength, S_u (also called *ultimate strength*), is the maximum stress value obtained in a tensile test for a given material. This value has significance in designs with brittle materials; design calculations for ductile materials use yield strength instead.

Modulus of elasticity, E (also called *Young's modulus*), is a measurement of the elasticity of a given material. Calculated according to Hooke's law by dividing stress by the corresponding strain within a material's elastic range, this value is equal to the slope of the linear portion of the stress-strain curve. Smaller *E* values indicate larger deflections under a given stress. Young's modulus has significant implications for parts in use, as well as those being machined or processed. Some representative values of Young's modulus in both US customary and metric units are as follows:

Material	Young's Modulus		Material	Young's Modulus	
	10^6 psi	10^9 Pa		10^6 psi	10^9 Pa
Aluminum, cast, pure	9	62.1	Magnesium, AZ80A-T5	6.5	44.8
Aluminum, wrought, 2014-T6	10.6	73.1	Titanium, pure	15.5	106.9
Beryllium copper	19	131	Titanium, alloy, 5 Al, 2.5 Sn	17	117.2
Brass, naval	15	103.4	Steel for bridges and buildings, ASTM A7-61T, all shapes	29	199.9
Bronze, phosphor, ASTM B159	15	103.4			
Cast iron, malleable	26	179.3	Steel, castings, high strength, for structural purposes, ASTM A148-60	29	199.9
Cast iron, nodular	23.5	162			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Modulus of rigidity, G (also called *modulus of elasticity in shear* or *shear modulus*), is shear stress divided by corresponding shear strain. (Shear may be applied directly or through torsion. Strain torsion is measured in radians.) As with modulus of elasticity, this value is only meaningful within the elastic range of the material, where it is equal to the slope of the straight-line portion of the stress-strain curve. Smaller *G* values also are associated with larger deflections, given the same stress. This value is important to consider in shaft designs where windup is a concern.

Poisson's ratio, μ, is the value of the strain transverse to the load direction, divided by the strain in the load direction. This ratio is determined when uniaxial force is applied, with tensile force having a negative sign and compressive force a positive sign. Values of Poisson's ratio for common materials are as follows:

Aluminum	0.334	Nickel silver	0.322
Beryllium copper	0.285	Phosphor bronze	0.349
Brass	0.340	Rubber	0.500
Cast iron, gray	0.211	Steel, cast	0.265
Copper	0.340	high carbon	0.295
Inconel	0.290	mild	0.303
Lead	0.431	nickel	0.291
Magnesium	0.350	Wrought iron	0.278
Monel metal	0.320	Zinc	0.331

Compressive and Shear Properties.—*Compressive yield strength,* S_{cy}, and *compressive ultimate strength*, S_{cu}, are determined from compression tests. It is common to assume that ultimate compressive strength is equal to ultimate tensile strength. But ductile materials in compression usually fail by excessive yielding well before they fracture; as they are weaker in shear than in tension/compression, shear failure is more likely to occur. For brittle materials, which are stronger in shear, tensile and compressive stresses are of particular concern.

The properties of *shear yield strength*, S_{sy}, and *shear ultimate strength*, S_{su}, are determined by direct shear and torsional tests. The shear yield strength of ductile materials is approximated as 0.577 times the tensile yield strength.

Creep.—Continuing changes in dimensions of a stressed material over time is called creep; it varies with different materials and periods under stress, and with temperature. Creep tests may take some time, as it is necessary to apply a constant tensile load to a specimen under a selected temperature. Measurements are taken to record the resulting elongation at time periods sufficiently long for a relationship to be established. The data are then plotted as elongation against time. The load is applied to the specimen only after it has reached the testing temperature, and causes an initial elastic elongation that includes some plastic deformation if the load is above the proportional limit for the material.

Some combinations of stress and temperature may cause failure of the specimen. Others show initial high rates of deformation, followed by decreasing, then constant, rates over long periods. Generally, testing times to arrive at the constant rate of deformation are over 1000 hours.

Creep Rupture.—Tests for creep rupture are similar to creep tests but are prolonged until the specimen fails. Further data to be obtained from these tests include time to rupture, amount of elongation, and reduction of area. Stress-rupture tests are performed without measuring the elongation, so that no strain data are recorded, time to failure, elongation and reduction of area being sufficient. Sometimes, a V-notch is cut in the specimen to allow measurement of notch sensitivity under the testing conditions.

Stress and Strain Analysis.—Stresses, deflections (strains), and loads may be characterized by applying strain gages or indicating coatings to the surface of a part and then subjecting it to loads simulating those encountered in service. Strain gages, available in various configurations, are attached to the part's surface and often calibrated before use. Such gages convert tension, pressure, force, and so on into electrical resistance, which can be measured to indicate strain. Indicating coatings include brittle lacquers that crack in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

patterns indicative of strain direction and magnitude, as well as color-changing coatings that indicate the amount of strain at each point, identifying areas requiring component modification. Alternatively, modern materials testing systems offer automated, multi-axial, and high-precision capabilities. Testing may involve use of specific wavelengths of light or be performed at extreme temperatures.

Most of these tests have been standardized by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and are published in their *Book of Standards* in separate sections for metals, plastics, rubber, and wood. Many of the test methods are also adopted by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

Fatigue Properties.—When a material is subjected to many cycles of stress reversal or fluctuation (variation in magnitude without reversal), failure may occur, even though the maximum stress at any cycle is considerably less than the value at which failure would occur if the stress were constant. Fatigue properties are determined by subjecting test specimens to stress cycles and counting the number of cycles to failure. From a series of such tests in which maximum stress values are progressively reduced, diagrams of stress versus number of cycles until failure (*S-N* diagrams) can be plotted as illustrated by the accompanying figures. The *S-N* diagram Fig. 2a shows the behavior of a material for which there is an *endurance limit* S_{en}. Endurance limit is the stress value at which the number of cycles to failure is infinite. Steels have endurance limits that vary according to hardness, composition, and quality, but many nonferrous metals do not. The *S-N* diagram Fig. 2b does not have an endurance limit. For a metal that does not have an endurance limit, it is standard practice to specify fatigue strength as the stress value corresponding to a specific number of stress reversals, usually 100,000,000 or 500,000,000.

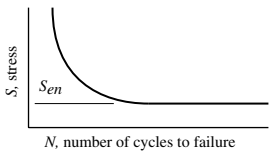


Fig. 2a. *S-N* Endurance Limit

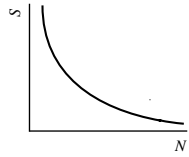


Fig. 2b. *S-N* No Endurance Limit

Influence of Mean Stress on Fatigue.—Most published data on the fatigue properties of metals are for completely reversed alternating stresses, that is, the mean stress of the cycle is equal to zero. However, if a structure is subjected to stresses that fluctuate between different values of tension and compression, then the mean stress is not zero.

When fatigue data for a specified mean stress and design life are not available for a material, the influence of nonzero mean stress can be estimated from empirical relationships that relate failure at a given life, under zero mean stress, to failure at the same life under zero mean cyclic stress. One widely used formula is Goodman's linear relationship,

$$S_a = S\left(1 - S_m / S_u\right)$$

where S_a is the alternating stress associated with some nonzero mean stress S_m. S is the alternating fatigue strength at zero mean stress. S_u is the ultimate tensile strength.

Goodman's linear relationship is usually represented graphically on a so-called *Goodman Diagram*, shown in Fig. 3a. The alternating fatigue strength or the alternating stress for a given number of endurance cycles is plotted on the ordinate (y-axis) and the static tensile strength is plotted on the abscissa (x-axis). The straight line joining the alternating fatigue strength S and the tensile strength S_u is the Goodman line.

The value of an alternating stress S_{ax} at a known value of mean stress S_{mx} is determined as shown by the dashed lines on the diagram.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

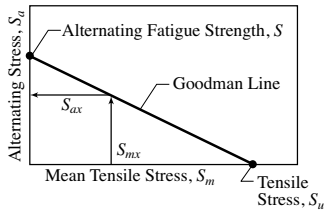


Fig. 3a. Goodman Diagram

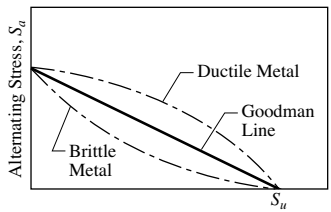


Fig. 3b. Mean Tensile Stress

For ductile materials, the Goodman law is usually conservative, since approximately 90 percent of actual test data for most ferrous and nonferrous alloys fall above the Goodman line, even at low endurance values where the yield strength is exceeded. For many brittle materials, however, actual test values can fall below the Goodman line, as illustrated in Fig. 3b.

As a rule of thumb, materials having an elongation of less than 5 percent in a tensile test may be regarded as brittle. Those having an elongation of 5 percent or more may be regarded as ductile.

Cumulative Fatigue Damage.—Most data are determined from tests at a constant stress amplitude. This is easy to do experimentally, and the data can be presented in a straightforward manner. In actual engineering applications, however, the alternating stress amplitude usually changes in some way during service operation. Such changes, referred to as "spectrum loading," make direct use of standard *S-N* fatigue curves inappropriate. A problem exists, therefore, in predicting the fatigue life under varying stress amplitude from conventional, constant-amplitude *S-N* fatigue data.

The assumption in predicting spectrum loading effects is that operation at a given stress amplitude and number of cycles will produce a certain amount of permanent fatigue damage and that subsequent operation at different stress amplitude and number of cycles will produce additional fatigue damage and a sequential accumulation of total damage, which at a critical value will cause fatigue failure. Although the assumption appears simple, the amount of damage incurred at any stress amplitude and number of cycles has proven difficult to determine, and several "cumulative damage" theories have been advanced.

One of the first and simplest methods for evaluating cumulative damage is known as *Miner's law* or the *linear damage rule*, where it is assumed that n_1 cycles at a stress of S_1, for which the average number of cycles to failure is N_1, causes an amount of damage n_1/N_1. Failure is predicted to occur when

$$\sum_{1}^{N} \frac{n_i}{N_i} = 1$$

The term n/N is known as the "cycle ratio" or the damage fraction.

The greatest advantages of the Miner rule are its simplicity and prediction reliability, which approximates that of more complex theories. For these reasons the rule is widely used. It should be noted, however, that it does not account for all influences, and errors are to be expected in failure prediction ability.

Modes of Fatigue Failure.—Several modes of fatigue failure are:

Low/High-Cycle Fatigue: This fatigue process covers cyclic loading in two significantly different domains, with different physical mechanisms of failure. One domain is characterized by relatively low cyclic loads, strain cycles confined largely to the elastic range, and long lives, that is, a high number of cycles to failure; traditionally, this has been called "high-cycle fatigue." The other domain has cyclic loads that are relatively high, significant amounts of plastic strain induced during each cycle, and short lives, that is, a low

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

number of cycles to failure. This domain has commonly been called "low-cycle fatigue" or cyclic strain-controlled fatigue.

The transition from low- to high-cycle fatigue behavior occurs in the range from approximately 10,000 to 100,000 cycles. Many define low-cycle fatigue as failure that occurs in 50,000 cycles or less.

Thermal Fatigue: Cyclic temperature changes in a machine part will produce cyclic stresses and strains if natural thermal expansions and contractions are either wholly or partially constrained. These cyclic strains produce fatigue failure just as if they were produced by external mechanical loading. When strain cycling is produced by a fluctuating temperature field, the failure process is termed "thermal fatigue."

While thermal fatigue and mechanical fatigue phenomena are very similar, and can be mathematically expressed by the same types of equations, the use of mechanical fatigue results to predict thermal fatigue performance must be done with care. For equal values of plastic strain range, the number of cycles to failure is usually up to 2.5 times lower for thermally cycled than for mechanically cycled samples.

Corrosion Fatigue: Corrosion fatigue is a failure mode where cyclic stresses and a corrosion-producing environment combine to initiate and propagate cracks in fewer stress cycles and at lower stress amplitudes than would be required in a more inert environment. The corrosion process forms pits and surface discontinuities that act as stress raisers to accelerate fatigue cracking. Cyclic loads may also cause cracking and flaking of the corrosion layer, baring fresh metal to the corrosive environment. Each process accelerates the other, making the cumulative result more serious.

Surface or Contact Fatigue: Surface fatigue failure is usually associated with rolling surfaces in contact, and results in pitting, cracking, and spalling of the contacting surfaces from cyclic Hertz contact stresses that cause the maximum values of cyclic shear stresses to be slightly below the surface. The cyclic subsurface shear stresses generate cracks that propagate to the contacting surface, dislodging particles in the process.

Combined Creep and Fatigue: In this failure mode, all of the conditions for both creep failure and fatigue failure exist simultaneously. Each process influences the other in producing failure, but this interaction is not well understood.

Factors of Safety.—There is always a risk that the working stress to which a member is subjected will exceed the strength of its material. The purpose of a factor of safety is to minimize this risk.

Factors of safety can be incorporated into design calculations in many ways. For most calculations the following equation is used:

$$s_w = \frac{S_m}{f_s} \tag{1}$$

where f_s is the factor of safety, S_m is the strength of the material in pounds per square inch, and s_w is the allowable working stress, also in pounds per square inch. Since the factor of safety is greater than 1, the allowable working stress will be less than the strength of the material.

In general, S_m is based on yield strength for ductile materials, ultimate strength for brittle materials, and fatigue strength for parts subjected to cyclic stressing. Most strength values are obtained by testing standard specimens at 68°F in normal atmospheres. If, however, the character of the stress or environment differs significantly from that used in obtaining standard strength data, then special data must be obtained. If special data are not available, standard data must be suitably modified.

General recommendations for values of factors of safety f_s are given in the following list.

f_s	Application
1.3–1.5	For use with highly reliable materials where loading and environmental conditions are not severe, and where weight is an important consideration.
1.5–2	For applications using reliable materials where loading and environmental conditions are not severe.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2–2.5 For use with ordinary materials where loading and environmental conditions are not severe.
2.5–3 For less tried and for brittle materials where loading and environmental conditions are not severe.
3–4 For applications in which material properties are not reliable and where loading and environmental conditions are not severe, or where reliable materials are to be used under difficult loading and environmental conditions.

Stress and Strain.—Stress is force per unit area of a material associated with a given strain (stress = force/area), normally expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or newtons per square meter (N/m^2, or pascals, Pa). Strain is the deformation or extension of a material or part under load (strain = extension/length). Stress and strain are linearly related in some materials over all or part of their elastic ranges. This linear relationship is expressed as Hooke's law, where stress/strain = E, with E being the elastic modulus of the material. Stresses can be axial (tensile or compressive), shear (simple or torsional), isotropic (uniform loading on all surfaces), or combined (any combination of types). Tensile and compressive stress act at right angles to (normal to) the stressed area; shear stress acts along the plane of the affected area (at right angles to compressive or tensile stresses).

Working Stress.—Calculated working stresses are the products of calculated nominal stress values and stress concentration factors. Calculated nominal stress values are based on the assumption of idealized stress distributions. Such nominal stresses may be simple stresses, combined stresses, or cyclic stresses. Depending on the nature of the nominal stress, one of the following equations applies:

$$s_w = K\sigma \quad (2) \qquad s_w = K\sigma' \quad (4) \qquad s_w = K\sigma_{cy} \quad (6)$$

$$s_w = K\tau \quad (3) \qquad s_w = K\tau' \quad (5) \qquad s_w = K\tau_{cy} \quad (7)$$

where K is a stress concentration factor; σ and τ are, respectively, simple normal (tensile or compressive) and shear stresses; σ' and τ' are combined normal and shear stresses; σ_{cy} and τ_{cy} are cyclic normal and shear stresses.

Where uneven stress distribution occurs, as illustrated in the table (on page 216) of simple stresses for Cases 3, 4 and 6, the maximum stress is the one to which the stress concentration factor is applied in computing working stresses. The location of the maximum stress in each case is discussed under the section *Simple Stresses* and the formulas for these maximum stresses are given in the *Table of Simple Stresses* on page 216.

Stress Concentration Factors.—Stress concentration is related to type of material, the nature of the stress, environmental conditions, and the geometry of parts. When stress concentration factors that specifically match all of the foregoing conditions are not available, the following equation may be used:

$$K = 1 + q(K_t - 1) \quad (8)$$

K_t is a theoretical stress concentration factor that is a function only of the geometry of a part and the nature of the stress; q is the *index of sensitivity* of the material. If the geometry is such as to provide no theoretical stress concentration, $K_t = 1$.

Curves for evaluating K_t are on pages 213 through 216. For constant stresses in cast iron and in ductile materials, $q = 0$ (hence, $K = 1$). For constant stresses in brittle materials such as hardened steel, q may be taken as 0.15; for very brittle materials such as steels that have been quenched but not drawn, q may be taken as 0.25. When stresses are suddenly applied (impact stresses) q ranges from 0.4 to 0.6 for ductile materials; for cast iron it is taken as 0.5; and, for brittle materials, 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

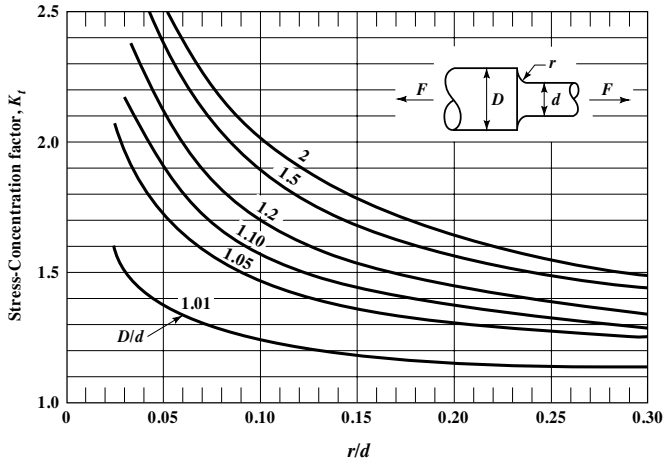


Fig. 4. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Filleted Shaft in Tension

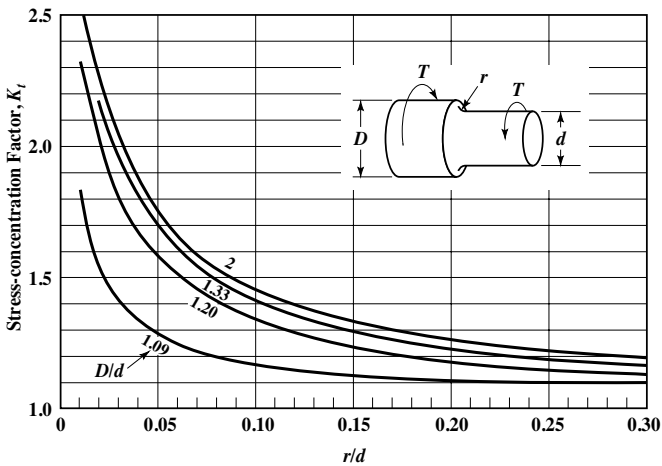


Fig. 5. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Filleted Shaft in Torsion[a]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

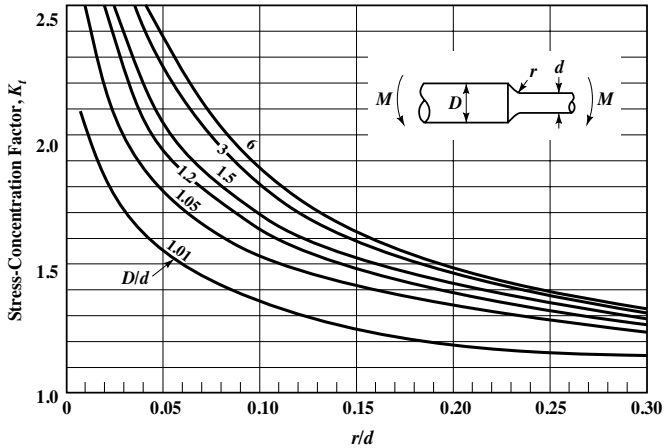


Fig. 6. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Shaft with Shoulder Fillet in Bending[a]

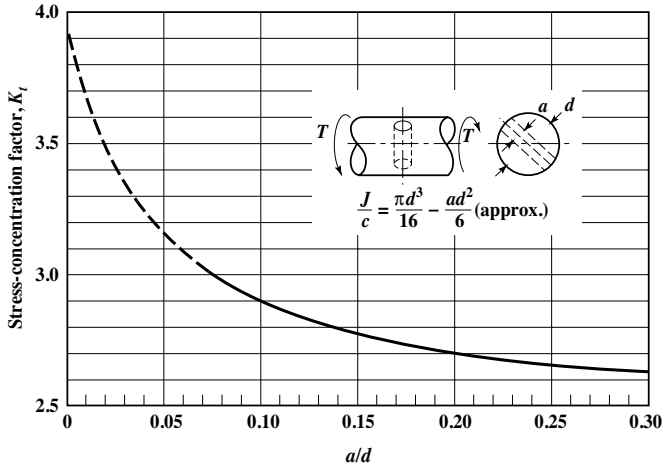


Fig. 7. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Shaft with a Transverse Hole in Torsion[a]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

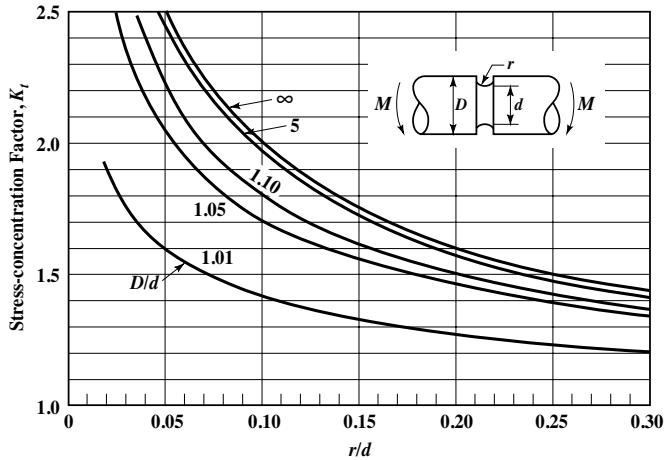


Fig. 8. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Grooved Shaft in Bending[a]

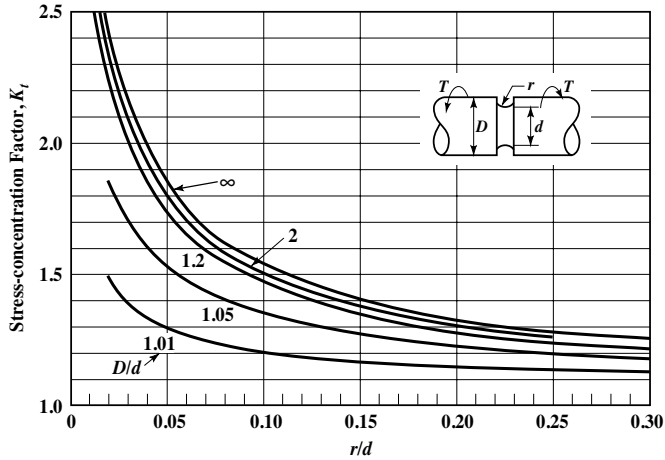


Fig. 9. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Grooved Shaft in Torsion[a]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

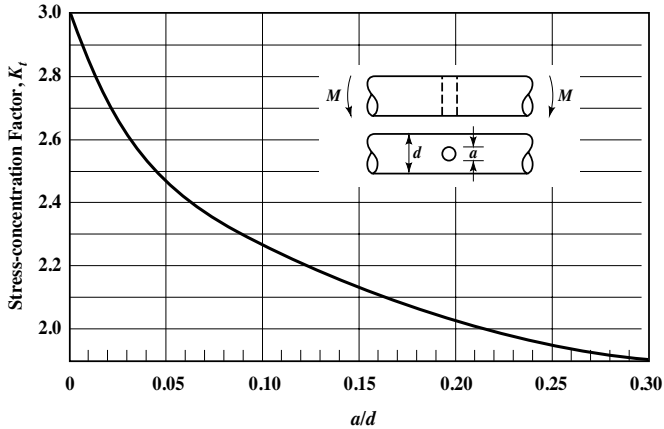


Fig. 10. Stress-Concentration Factor K_t for a Shaft with a Transverse Hole in Bending[a]

[a] Source: R. E. Peterson, Design Factors for Stress Concentration, *Machine Design*, vol. 23, 1951. For other stress concentration charts, see Lipson and Juvinall, *The Handbook of Stress and Strength*, The Macmillan Co., 1963.

Simple Stresses.— Simple stresses are produced by constant conditions of loading on elements that can be represented as beams, rods, or bars. Table 2 summarizes information pertaining to the calculation of simple stresses, including symbols used in simple stress formulae:

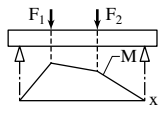
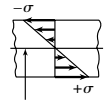
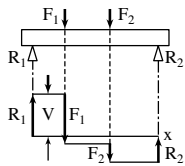
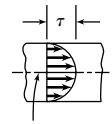
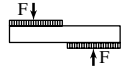
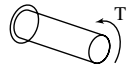
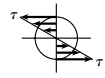
σ = simple normal (tensile or compressive) stress, in psi (Mpa)
τ = simple shear stress, in psi (Mpa)
F = external force in pounds (Newtons, or N)
V = shearing force in pounds (N)
M = bending moment in inch-pounds (N-mm)
T = torque in inch-pounds (N-mm)
A = cross-sectional area perpendicular to the axial force or parallel to the shear force, in in^2 (mm^2)
Z = section modulus in in^3 (mm^3)
Z_p = polar section modulus in in^3 (mm^3)
I = moment of inertia in in^4 (mm^4)
J = polar moment of inertia in in^4 (mm^4)
a = area of the web of wide flange and I beams in in^2 (mm^2)
y = perpendicular distance from axis through center of gravity of cross-sectional area to the most-stressed fiber in inches (mm)
c = radial distance from center of gravity to the most-stressed fiber (usually the farthest point from the neutral axis) in in. (mm).

Table 2. Table of Simple Stresses

Case	Type of Loading	Illustration	Stress Distribution	Stress Equations
1	Direct tension	F F	Uniform	$\sigma = \frac{F}{A}$ (9)
2	Direct compression	F F	Uniform	$\sigma = -\frac{F}{A}$ (10)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Table of Simple Stresses**

Case	Type of Loading	Illustration	Stress Distribution	Stress Equations
3	Bending	 Bending moment diagram	 Neutral plane	$\sigma = \pm\frac{M}{Z} = \pm\frac{My}{I}$ (11)
4	Shear	 Shearing force diagram	 Neutral plane	For beams of rectangular cross section: $\tau = \frac{3V}{2A}$ (12) For beams of solid circular cross section: $\tau = \frac{4V}{3A}$ (13) For wide flange and I beams (approximately): $\tau = \frac{V}{a}$ (14)
5	Direct shear		Uniform	$\tau = \frac{F}{A}$ (15)
6	Torsional Shear			$\tau = \frac{T}{Zp} = \frac{Tc}{J}$ (16)

For direct tension and direct compression loading, Cases 1 and 2 in the table on page 216, the force F must act along a line through the center of gravity of the section at which the stress is calculated. The equation for direct compression loading applies only to members for which the ratio of length to least radius of gyration is relatively small, approximately 20; otherwise the member must be treated as a column.

The table *Stresses and Deflections in Beams* starting on page 257 give equations for calculating stresses due to bending for common types of beams and conditions of loading. Where these tables are not applicable, stress may be calculated using Equation (11) in the table on page 216. In using this equation it is necessary to determine the value of the bending moment at the point where the stress is to be calculated. For beams of constant cross-section, stress is ordinarily calculated at the point coinciding with the maximum value of bending moment. Bending loading results in the characteristic stress distribution shown in the table for Case 3. It will be noted that the maximum stress values are at the surfaces farthest from the neutral plane. One of the surfaces is stressed in tension and the other in compression. It is for this reason that the ± sign is used in Equation (11). Numerous tables for evaluating section moduli are given in the section starting on page 239.

Shear stresses caused by bending have maximum values at neutral planes and zero values at the surfaces farthest from the neutral axis, as indicated by the stress distribution diagram shown for Case 4 in the *Table of Simple Stresses*. Values for V in Equations (12), (13) and (14) can be determined from shearing force diagrams. The shearing force diagram shown in Case 4 corresponds to the bending moment diagram for Case 3. As shown in this diagram, the value taken for V is represented by the greatest vertical distance from the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

x-axis. The shear stress caused by direct shear loading, Case 5, has a uniform distribution. However, the shear stress caused by torsion loading, Case 6, has a zero value at the axis and a maximum value at the surface farthest from the axis.

Deflections.—For direct tension and direct compression loading on members with uniform cross sections, deflection can be calculated using Equation (17). For direct tension loading, e is an elongation; for direct compression loading, e is a contraction. Deflection is in inches when the load F is in pounds, the length L over which deflection occurs is in inches, the cross-sectional area A is in square inches, and the modulus of elasticity E is in pounds per square inch. The angular deflection of members with uniform circular cross sections subject to torsion loading can be calculated with Equation (18).

$$e = \frac{FL}{AE} \qquad (17) \qquad\qquad \theta = \frac{TL}{GJ} \qquad (18)$$

The angular deflection θ is in radians when the applied torsion T is in inch-pounds, the length L over which the member is twisted is in inches, the modulus of rigidity G is in pounds per square inch, and the polar moment of inertia J is in in.^{4}

Metric SI units can be used in Equations (17) and (18), where F = force in newtons (N); L = length over which deflection or twisting occurs in meters; A = cross-sectional area in meters^2; E = the modulus of elasticity in N/m^2; θ = radians; T = the applied torsion in newton-meters (N·m); G = modulus of rigidity, in pascals (Pa); and J = the polar moment of inertia in meters^4. If the load (F) is applied as a weight, it should be noted that the weight of a mass M kilograms is Mg newtons, where g = 9.81 m/s^2. Millimeters can be used in the calculations in place of meters, provided the treatment is consistent throughout.

Combined Stresses.—A member may be loaded in such a way that a combination of simple stresses acts at a point. Three general cases are shown in the accompanying illustration, Fig. 11. Strength data is widely available for tensile performance, and the *von Mises stress* method and other methods can be used to calculate effective tensile stress at a point under combined loading.

von Mises Effective Tensile Stress: This method of calculating an equivalent tensile stress for combined stress scenarios is applicable to ductile material. The von Mises effective tensile stress, σ', can be directly compared to the tensile yield strength of the material to predict performance for two-dimensional loading (Equation 19) and three-dimensional loading (Equation 20):

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\sigma_x^2 + \sigma_y^2 - \sigma_x\sigma_y + 3\,\tau_{xy}^2} \qquad (19)$$

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\frac{(\sigma_x - \sigma_y)^2 + (\sigma_y - \sigma_z)^2 + (\sigma_z - \sigma_x)^2 + 6(\tau_{xy}^2 + \tau_{yz}^2 + \sigma_{zx}^2)}{2}} \qquad (20)$$

Superposition of Stresses: This method may be used in cases where the deformations are small and within the elastic range. Fig. 11 at (1) illustrates a common situation that results in simple stresses combining by superposition at points **a** and **b**. The equal and opposite forces F_1 will cause a compressive stress $\sigma_1 = -F_1/A$. Force F_2 will cause a bending moment M to exist in the plane of points **a** and **b**. The resulting stress $\sigma_2 = \pm M/Z$. The combined stress at point **a**,

$$\sigma_a' = -\frac{F_1}{A} - \frac{M}{Z} \qquad (21)$$

and at **b**,

$$\sigma_b' = -\frac{F_1}{A} + \frac{M}{Z} \qquad (22)$$

where the minus sign indicates a compressive stress and the plus sign a tensile stress. Thus, the stress at **a** will be compressive and at **b** either tensile or compressive, depending on which term in the equation for σ_b' has the greatest value.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Normal Stresses at Right Angles: This is shown in Fig. 11 at (2). This combination of stresses occurs, for example, in tanks subjected to internal or external pressure. According to the Maximum Shear Stress theory, failure will occur in ductile materials due to shear, so this stress is critical to evaluate. The principal normal stresses are $\sigma_x = F_1/A_1$, $\sigma_y = F_2/A_2$, and $\sigma_z = 0$ in this plane stress problem. Determine the values of these three stresses with their signs, order them algebraically, and then calculate the maximum shear stress:

$$\tau = \frac{\sigma_{\text{largest}} - \sigma_{\text{smallest}}}{2} \tag{23}$$

Normal and Shear Stresses: The example in Fig. 11 at (3) shows a member subjected to a torsional shear stress, $\tau = T/Z_p$, and a direct compressive stress, $\sigma = -F/A$. At some point **a** on the member the principal normal stresses are calculated using the equation,

$$\sigma' = \frac{\sigma}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma}{2}\right)^2 + \tau^2} \tag{24}$$

The maximum shear stress is calculated by using the equation,

$$\tau' = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma}{2}\right)^2 + \tau^2} \tag{25}$$

The point **a** should ordinarily be selected where stress is a maximum value. For the example shown in Fig. 11 at (3), the point **a** can be anywhere on the cylindrical surface because the combined stress has the same value anywhere on that surface.

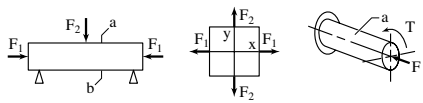


Fig. 11. Types of Combined Loading

Tables of Combined Stresses.—Beginning on page 220, these tables list equations for maximum nominal tensile or compressive (normal) stresses, and maximum nominal shear stresses for common machine elements. These equations were derived using general Equations (21), (22), (24), and (25). The equations apply to the critical points indicated on the figures. Cases 1, 2, 3, and 4 are cantilever beams. These may be loaded with a combination of a vertical and horizontal force, or by a single oblique force. If the single oblique force F and the angle θ are given, then horizontal and vertical forces can be calculated using the equations $F_x = F\cos\theta$ and $F_y = F\sin\theta$. In cases 9 and 10 of the table, the equations for σ_a' can give a tensile and a compressive stress because of the ± sign in front of the radical. Equations involving direct compression are valid only if machine elements have relatively short lengths with respect to their sections; otherwise column equations apply.

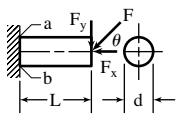
Calculation of Worst Stress Condition: Stress failure can occur at any critical point if either the tensile, compressive, or shear stress properties of the material are exceeded by the corresponding working stress. It is necessary to evaluate the factor of safety for each possible failure condition. If working with the von Mises equivalent stress, only tensile yield need be considered.

The following rules apply to calculations using equations in the *Table of Simple Stresses* on page 216 and to calculations based on Equations (21) and (22). *Rule 1:* For every calculated normal stress there is a corresponding induced shear stress; the value of the shear stress is equal to half that of the normal stress. *Rule 2:* For every calculated shear stress there is a corresponding induced normal stress; the value of the normal stress is equal to that of the shear stress. The tables of combined stress formulas below include equations for calculating both maximum nominal tensile or compressive stresses, and maximum nominal shear stresses.

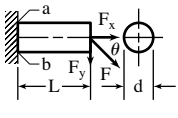
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Combined Stresses

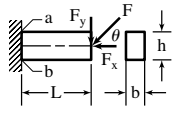
(1) *Circular Cantilever Beam in Direct Compression and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(\frac{8LF_y}{d} - F_x\right)$ $\sigma_b' = -\frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(\frac{8LF_y}{d} + F_x\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

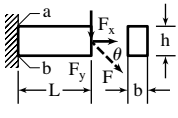
(2) *Circular Cantilever Beam in Direct Tension and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(F_x + \frac{8LF_y}{d}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(F_x - \frac{8LF_y}{d}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

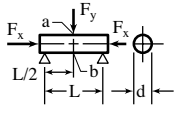
(3) *Rectangular Cantilever Beam in Direct Compression and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(\frac{6LF_y}{h} - F_x\right)$ $\sigma_b' = -\frac{1}{bh}\left(\frac{6LF_y}{h} + F_x\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

(4) *Rectangular Cantilever Beam in Direct Tension and Bending:*

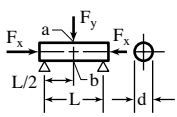
Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(F_x + \frac{6LF_y}{h}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(F_x - \frac{6LF_y}{h}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

(5) *Circular Beam or Shaft in Direct Compression and Bending:*

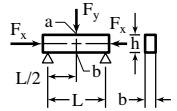
Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = -\frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(\frac{2LF_y}{d} + F_x\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(\frac{2LF_y}{d} - F_x\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

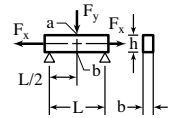
(6) *Circular Beam or Shaft in Direct Tension and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(F_x - \frac{2LF_y}{d}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1.273}{d^2}\left(F_x + \frac{2LF_y}{d}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

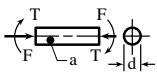
(7) *Rectangular Beam or Shaft in Direct Compression and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = -\frac{1}{bh}\left(\frac{3LF_y}{2h} + F_x\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(-\frac{3LF_y}{2h} - F_x\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

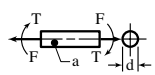
(8) *Rectangular Beam or Shaft in Direct Tension and Bending:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(F_x - \frac{3LF_y}{2h}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1}{bh}\left(F_x + \frac{3LF_y}{2h}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

(9) *Circular Shaft in Direct Compression and Torsion:*

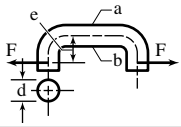
Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
 **a** anywhere on surface	$\sigma_a' = -\frac{0.637}{d^2}\left[F \pm \sqrt{F^2 + \left(\frac{8T}{d}\right)^2}\right]$	$\tau_a' = -\frac{0.637}{d^2}\sqrt{F^2 + \left(\frac{8T}{d}\right)^2}$

(10) *Circular Shaft in Direct Tension and Torsion:*

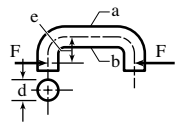
Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
 **a** anywhere on surface	$\sigma_a' = \frac{0.637}{d^2}\left[F \pm \sqrt{F^2 + \left(\frac{8T}{d}\right)^2}\right]$	$\tau_a' = \frac{0.637}{d^2}\sqrt{F^2 + \left(\frac{8T}{d}\right)^2}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

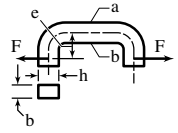
(11) *Offset Link, Circular Cross Section, in Direct Tension:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1.273F}{d^2}\left(1 - \frac{8e}{d}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{1.273F}{d^2}\left(1 + \frac{8e}{d}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

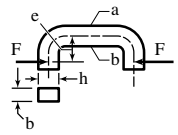
(12) *Offset Link, Circular Cross Section, in Direct Compression:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{1.273F}{d^2}\left(\frac{8e}{d} - 1\right)$ $\sigma_b' = -\frac{1.273F}{d^2}\left(\frac{8e}{d} + 1\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

(13) *Offset Link, Rectangular Section, in Direct Tension:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{F}{bh}\left(1 - \frac{6e}{h}\right)$ $\sigma_b' = \frac{F}{bh}\left(1 + \frac{6e}{h}\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

(14) *Offset Link, Rectangular Section, in Direct Compression:*

Type of Beam and Loading	Maximum Nominal Tensile or Compressive Stress	Maximum Nominal Shear Stress
	$\sigma_a' = \frac{F}{bh}\left(\frac{6e}{h} - 1\right)$ $\sigma_b' = -\frac{F}{bh}\left(\frac{6e}{h} + 1\right)$	$\tau_a' = 0.5\sigma_a'$ $\tau_b' = 0.5\sigma_b'$

Formulas from the simple and combined stress tables, as well as tension and shear factors, can be applied without change in calculations using metric SI units. Stresses are given in N/m^2 or in N/mm^2.

Three-Dimensional Stress.—Three-dimensional or triaxial stress occurs in assemblies such as a shaft press-fitted into a gear bore, or in pipes and cylinders subjected to internal or external fluid pressure. Triaxial stress also occurs in two-dimensional stress problems if the loads produce normal stresses that are either both tensile or both compressive. In either case the calculated maximum shear stress, based on the corresponding two-dimensional theory, will be less than the true maximum value because of three-dimensional effects.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

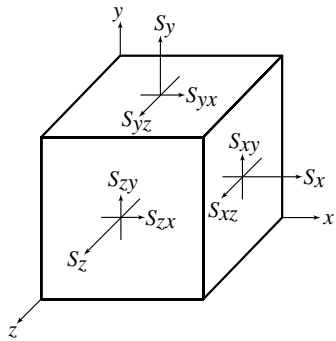


Fig. 12. *x, y, z*-Coordinate System Showing Positive Directions of Stresses

The von Mises effective tensile stress method can be used to evaluate three-dimensional stress failure of ductile materials. If stress analysis is based on the maximum-shear-stress theory of failure, the triaxial stress cubic equation is used first to calculate the three principal stresses; true maximum shear stress can then be determined. The following procedure provides the principal maximum normal tensile and compressive stresses and the true maximum shear stress at any point on a body subjected to any combination of loads. The basis for the procedure is the stress cubic equation

$$S^3 - AS^2 + BS - C = 0$$

in which:

$$A = S_x + S_y + S_z$$
$$B = S_x S_y + S_y S_z + S_z S_x - S_{xy}{}^2 - S_{yz}{}^2 - S_{zx}{}^2$$
$$C = S_x S_y S_z + 2S_{xy} S_{yz} S_{zx} - S_x S_{yz}{}^2 - S_y S_{zx}{}^2 - S_z S_{xy}{}^2$$

and S_x, S_y, etc. are as shown in Fig. 12.

The x, y, z coordinate system in Fig. 12 shows the positive directions of the normal and shear stress components on an elementary cube of material. Only six of the nine components shown are needed for the calculations: the normal stresses S_x, S_y, and S_z on three of the faces of the cube; and the three shear stresses S_{xy}, S_{yz}, and S_{zx}. The remaining three shear stresses are known because $S_{yx} = S_{xy}$, $S_{zy} = S_{yz}$, and $S_{xz} = S_{zx}$. The normal stresses S_x, S_y, and S_z are shown as positive (tensile) stresses; the opposite direction is negative (compressive). The first subscript of each shear stress identifies the coordinate axis perpendicular to the plane of the shear stress; the second subscript identifies the axis to which the stress is parallel. Thus, S_{xy} is the shear stress in the yz-plane to which the x-axis is perpendicular, and the stress is parallel to the y-axis.

Step 1. Draw a diagram of the hardware to be analyzed, and show the applied loads P, T, and any others.

Step 2. For any point at which the stresses are to be analyzed, draw a coordinate diagram similar to Fig. 12 and show the magnitudes of the stresses resulting from the applied loads (these stresses may be calculated by using standard basic equations from strength of materials, and should include any stress concentration factors).

Step 3. Substitute the values of the six stresses $S_x, S_y, S_z, S_{xy}, S_{yz}$, and S_{zx}, including zero values, into the formulas for the quantities A through K. The quantities I, J, and K represent the principal normal stresses at the point analyzed. As a check, if the algebraic sum $I + J + K$ equals A, within rounding errors, then the calculations up to this point should be correct.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$D = \frac{A^2}{3} - B \qquad E = \frac{AB}{3} - C - \frac{2A^3}{27} \qquad F = \sqrt{\frac{D^3}{27}}$$

$$G = \arccos\left(\frac{-E}{2F}\right) \qquad H = \sqrt{\frac{D}{3}} \qquad I = 2H\cos\left(\frac{G}{3}\right) + \frac{A}{3}$$

$$J = 2H\cos\left(\frac{G}{3} + 120°\right) + \frac{A}{3} \qquad K = 2H\cos\left(\frac{G}{3} + 240°\right) + \frac{A}{3}$$

Step 4. Calculate the true maximum shear stress $S_{s(\max)}$ using the formula

$$S_{s(\max)} = 0.5(S_{\text{large}} - S_{\text{small}})$$

in which S_{large} is equal to the algebraically largest of the calculated principal stresses I, J, or K and S_{small} is algebraically the smallest.

The maximum principal normal stresses and the maximum true shear stress calculated above may be used with any of the various theories of failure.

Sample Calculations.—The following examples illustrate some typical strength of materials calculations, using both English and metric SI units of measurement.

Example 1(a): A round bar made from SAE 1025 low carbon steel is to support a direct tension load of 50,000 lbs. Using a factor of safety of 4, and assuming that the stress concentration factor $K = 1$, a suitable standard diameter is to be determined. Calculations are to be based on a yield strength of 40,000 psi.

Solution: Because the factor of safety and strength of the material are known, the allowable working stress s_w may be calculated using Equation (1): 40,000/4 = 10,000 psi. The relationship between working stress s_w and nominal stress σ is given by Equation (2). Since $K = 1$, $\sigma = 10{,}000$ psi. Applying Equation (9) in the *Table of Simple Stresses* on page 216, the area of the bar can be solved for: $A = 50{,}000/10{,}000$ or 5 square inches. The next largest standard diameter corresponding to this area is $2\frac{9}{16}$ inches.

***Example 1(b):* A similar example to that given in Example 1(a), using metric SI units, is as follows. A round steel bar of 300 meganewtons/meter^2 yield strength is to withstand a direct tension of 200 kilonewtons. Using a safety factor of 4, and assuming that the stress concentration factor $K = 1$, a suitable diameter is to be determined.**

Because the factor of safety and the strength of the material are known, the allowable working stress s_w may be calculated using Equation (1): 300/4 = 75 meganewtons/meter^2. The relationship between working stress and nominal stress σ is given by Equation (2). Since $K = 1$, $\sigma = 75$ MN/m^2. Applying Equation (9) in the *Table of Simple Stresses* on page 216, the area of the bar can be determined from:

$$A = \frac{\mathbf{200\ kN}}{\mathbf{75\ MN/m^2}} = \frac{\mathbf{200{,}000\ \mathit{N}}}{\mathbf{75{,}000{,}000\ N/m^2}} = \mathbf{0.00267 m^2}$$

The diameter corresponding to this area is 0.058 meters, or approximately 0.06 m. Millimeters can be employed in the calculations in place of meters, provided the treatment is consistent throughout. In this instance the diameter would be 60 mm.

***Note:* If the tension in the bar is produced by hanging a mass of M kilograms from its end, the value is Mg newtons, where g = approximately 9.81 meters per second^2.**

Example 2(a) : What would the total elongation of the bar in Example 1(a) be if its length were 60 inches? Applying Equation (18) on page 218,

$$e = \frac{50{,}000 \times 60}{5.157 \times 30{,}000{,}000} = 0.019 \text{ inch}$$

***Example 2(b):* What would be the total elongation of the bar in Example 1(b) if its length were 1.5 meters? The problem is solved by applying Equation (17) in which F = 200 kilonewtons; L = 1.5 meters; $A = \pi 0.06^2/4 = 0.00283$ m^2. Assuming a modulus of elasticity E of 200 giganewtons/meter^2, then the calculation is:**

$$e = \frac{\mathbf{200{,}000 \times 1.5}}{\mathbf{0.00283 \times 200{,}000{,}000{,}000}} = \mathbf{0.000530\ m}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The calculation is less unwieldy if carried out using millimeters in place of meters; then $F = 200$ kN; $L = 1500$ mm; $A = 2830$ mm^2, and $E = 200{,}000$ N/mm^2. Thus:

$$e = \frac{200{,}000 \times 1500}{2830 \times 200{,}000} = 0.530 \text{ mm}$$

Example 3(a): Determine the size for the section of a square bar which is to be held firmly at one end and is to support a load of 3000 pounds at the other end. The bar is to be 30 inches long and is to be made from SAE 1045 medium carbon steel with a yield point of 60,000 psi. A factor of safety of 3 and a stress concentration factor of 1.3 are to be used.

Solution: From Equation (1) the allowable working stress $s_w = 60{,}000/3 = 20{,}000$ psi. The applicable equation relating working stress and nominal stress is Equation (2); hence, $\sigma = 20{,}000/1.3 = 15{,}400$ psi. The member must be treated as a cantilever beam subject to a bending moment of 30×3000 or 90,000 inch-pounds. Solving Equation (11) in the *Table of Simple Stresses* for section modulus: $Z = 90{,}000/15{,}400 = 5.85$ inch^3. The section modulus for a square section with neutral axis equidistant from either side is $a^3/6$, where a is the dimension of the square, so $a = \sqrt[3]{35.1} = 3.27$ inches. The bar size can be $3\frac{5}{16}$ inches.

***Example 3(b):* A similar example to that given in Example 3(a), using metric SI units is as follows. Determine the size for the section of a square bar which is to be held firmly at one end and is to support a load of 1600 kilograms at the other end. The bar is to be 1 meter long and is to be made from steel with a yield strength of 500 newtons/mm^2. A factor of safety of 3 and a stress concentration factor of 1.3 are to be used. The calculation can be performed using millimeters throughout.**

***Solution:* From Equation (1) the allowable working stress $s_w = 500$ N/mm^2/3 = 167 N/mm^2. The formula relating working stress and nominal stress is Equation (2); hence $\sigma = 167/1.3 = 128$ N/mm^2. Since a mass of 1600 kg equals a weight of $1600g$ newtons, where $g = 9.81$ meters/second^2, the force acting on the bar is 15,700 newtons. The bending moment on the bar, which must be treated as a cantilever beam, is thus 1000 mm $\times$ 15,700 N = 15,700,000 N·mm. Solving Equation (11) in the *Table of Simple Stresses* for section modulus: $Z = M/\sigma = 15{,}700{,}000/128 = 123{,}000$ mm^3. Since the section modulus for a square section with neutral axis equidistant from either side is $a^3/6$, where a is the dimension of the square,**

$$a = \sqrt[3]{6 \times 123{,}000} = 90.4 \text{ mm}$$

Example 4(a): Find the working stress in a 2-inch diameter shaft through which a transverse hole $\frac{1}{4}$ inch in diameter has been drilled. The shaft is subject to a torsional moment of 80,000 inch-pounds and is made from hardened steel so that the index of sensitivity $q = 0.2$.

Solution: The polar section modulus is calculated using the equation shown in the stress concentration curve for a Round Shaft in Torsion with Transverse Hole, Fig. 7, page 214.

$$\frac{J}{c} = Z_p = \frac{\pi \times 2^3}{16} - \frac{2^2}{4 \times 6} = 1.4 \text{ inches}^3$$

The nominal shear stress due to torsion loading is computed using Equation (16) in the *Table of Simple Stresses*:

$$\tau = \frac{80{,}000}{1.4} = 57{,}200 \text{ psi}$$

Referring to the previously mentioned stress concentration curve on page 214, K_t is 2.82 since d/D is 0.125. The stress concentration factor may now be calculated by means of Equation (8): $K = 1 + 0.2(2.82 - 1) = 1.36$. Working stress calculated with Equation (3) is $s_w = 1.36 \times 57{,}200 = 77{,}800$ psi.

***Example 4(b):* A similar example to that given in Example 4(a), using metric SI units, is as follows. Find the working stress in a 50 mm diameter shaft through which a transverse hole 6 mm in diameter has been drilled. The shaft is subject to a torsional moment of 8000 N·m, and has an index of sensitivity of $q = 0.2$. If the calculation is made in millimeters, the torsional moment is 8,000,000 N·mm.**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution: **The polar section modulus is calculated using the equation shown in the stress concentration curve for a Round Shaft in Torsion with Transverse Hole, Fig. 7, page 214:**

$$\frac{J}{c} = Z_p = \frac{\pi \times 50^3}{16} - \frac{6 \times 50^2}{6} = 24{,}544 - 2500 = 22{,}044 \text{ mm}^3$$

The nominal shear stress due to torsion loading is computed using Equation (16) in the *Table of Simple Stresses*:

$$\tau = \frac{8{,}000{,}000}{22{,}000} = 363 \frac{\text{N}}{\text{mm}^2} = 363 \text{ megapascals}$$

Referring to the previously mentioned stress concentration curve on page 214, K_t is 2.85, since $a/d = 6/50 = 0.12$. The stress concentration factor may now be calculated by means of Equation (8): $K = 1 + 0.2(2.85 - 1) = 1.37$. From Equation (3), working stress $s_w = 1.37 \times 363 = 497$ N/mm^2 = 497 MPa.

Example 5(a) : For Case 3 in the *Tables of Combined Stresses*, calculate the least factor of safety for a 5052-H32 aluminum beam that is 10 inches long, 1 inch wide, and 2 inches high. Yield strengths are 23,000 psi tension; 21,000 psi compression; 13,000 psi shear. The stress concentration factor is 1.5; F_y is 600 lbs; F_x 500 lbs.

Solution: From *Tables of Combined Stresses*, Case 3:

$$\sigma_b' = -\frac{1}{1 \times 2}\left(\frac{6 \times 10 \times 600}{2} + 500\right) = -9250 \text{ psi (in compression)}$$

The other formulas for Case 3 give $\sigma_a' = 8750$ psi (in tension); $\tau_a' = 4375$ psi, and $\tau_b' = 4625$ psi. Using Equation (4) for the nominal compressive stress of 9250 psi: $S_w = 1.5 \times 9250 = 13{,}900$ psi. From Equation (1) $f_s = 21{,}000/13{,}900 = 1.51$. Applying Equations (1), (4) and (5) in appropriate fashion to the other calculated nominal stress values for tension and shear will show that the factor of safety of 1.51, governed by the compressive stress at *b* on the beam, is minimum.

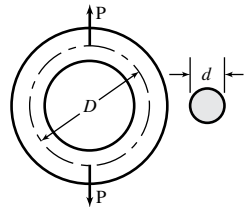
Example 5(b): **What maximum *F* can be applied in Case 3 if the aluminum beam is 200 mm long; 20 mm wide; 40 mm high; $\theta = 30°$; $f_s = 2$, governing for compression, $K = 1.5$, and $S_m = 144$ N/mm^2 for compression.**

Solution: **From Equation (1) $S_w = -144$ N/mm^2. Therefore, from Equation (4), $\sigma_b' = -72/1.5 = -48$ N/mm^2. Since $F_x = F\cos 30° = 0.866F$, and $F_y = F\sin 30° = 0.5F$:**

$$-48 = -\frac{1}{20 \times 40}\left(0.866F + \frac{6 \times 200 \times 0.5F}{40}\right) \qquad F = 2420 \text{ N}$$

Stresses and Deflections in a Loaded Ring.—For *thin* rings, that is, rings in which the dimension *d* shown in the accompanying diagram is small compared with *D*, the maximum stress in the ring is due primarily to bending moments produced by the forces *P*. The maximum stress due to bending is:

$$S = \frac{PDd}{4\pi I} \qquad (26)$$



For a ring of circular cross section where *d* is the diameter of the bar from which the ring is made,

$$S = \frac{1.621PD}{d^3} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{0.617Sd^3}{D} \qquad (27)$$

The increase in the vertical diameter of the ring due to load *P* is:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

$$\text{Increase in vertical diameter} = \frac{0.0186PD^3}{EI} \text{ inches} \quad (28)$$

The *decrease* in the horizontal diameter will be about 92 percent of the increase in the vertical diameter given by Formula (28). In the above formulas, P = load on ring in pounds; D = mean diameter of ring in inches; S = tensile stress in psi, I = moment of inertia of section in inches^4; and E = modulus of elasticity of material in psi.

Strength of Taper Pins.—The mean diameter of taper pin required to safely transmit a known torque may be found from the formulas:

$$d = 1.13\sqrt{\frac{T}{DS}} \quad (29) \qquad \text{and} \qquad d = 283\sqrt{\frac{\text{HP}}{NDS}} \quad (30a)$$

where T = torque in inch-pounds; S = safe unit stress in psi; HP = horsepower transmitted; N = number of revolutions per minute; and d and D denote dimensions shown in the figure.

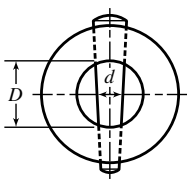
Formula (29) can be used with metric SI units where d and D denote dimensions shown in the figure in millimeters; T = torque in newton-millimeters (N·mm); and S = safe unit stress in newtons per millimeter^2 (N/mm^2). Formula (30a) is replaced by:

$$\boldsymbol{d = 110.3\sqrt{\frac{\text{Power}}{NDS}}} \quad (30b)$$

where d and D denote dimensions shown in the figure in millimeters; S = safe unit stress in N/mm^2; N = number of revolutions per minute, and Power = power transmitted in watts.

Example 6(a): A lever secured to a 2-inch round shaft by a steel tapered pin (dimension $d = \frac{3}{8}$ inch) has a pull of 50 pounds at a 30-inch radius from shaft center. Find S, the unit working stress on the pin. By rearranging Formula (29):

$$S = \frac{1.27T}{Dd^2} = \frac{1.27 \times 50 \times 30}{2 \times \left(\frac{3}{8}\right)^2} \cong 6770 \text{ psi}$$



6770 psi is a safe unit working stress for machine steel in shear.

Let P = 50 pounds, R = 30 inches, D = 2 inches, and S = 6000 pounds unit working stress. Using Formula (29) to find d:

$$d = 1.13\sqrt{\frac{T}{DS}} = 1.13\sqrt{\frac{50 \times 30}{2 \times 6000}} = 1.13\sqrt{\frac{1}{8}} = 0.4 \text{ inch}$$

Example 6(b): **A similar example using SI units is as follows: A lever secured to a 50 mm round shaft by a steel tapered pin (d = 10 mm) has a pull of 200 newtons at a radius of 800 mm. Find S, the working stress on the pin. By rearranging Formula (29):**

$$\boldsymbol{S = \frac{1.27T}{Dd^2} = \frac{1.27 \times 200 \times 800}{50 \times 10^2} = 40.6 \text{ N / mm}^2 = 40.6 \text{ megapascals}}$$

If a shaft of 50 mm diameter is to transmit power of 12 kilowatts at a speed of 500 rpm, find the mean diameter of the pin for a material having a safe unit stress of 40 N/mm^2. Using Equation (30b):

$$\boldsymbol{d = 110.3\sqrt{\frac{\text{Power}}{NDS}} \quad \text{then} \quad d = 110.3\sqrt{\frac{12{,}000}{500 \times 50 \times 40}}}$$
$$\boldsymbol{= 110.3 \times 0.1096 = 12.09 \text{ mm}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

RIGID BODY PARAMETERS

Center of Gravity

The center of gravity of a body, volume, area, or line is that point at which if the body, volume, area, or line were suspended it would be perfectly balanced in all positions. For symmetrical bodies of uniform material it is at the geometric center. The center of gravity of a uniform round rod, for example, is at the center of its diameter halfway along its length; the center of gravity of a sphere is at the center of the sphere. For solids, areas, and arcs that are not symmetrical, the determination of the center of gravity may be made experimentally or may be calculated by the use of formulas.

The tables that follow give such formulas for some of the more important shapes. For more complicated and unsymmetrical shapes the methods outlined on page 234 may be used.

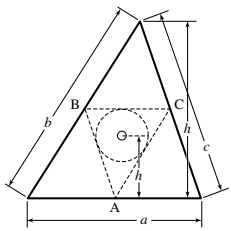
Example: A piece of wire is bent into the form of a semi-circular arc of 10-inch (25.4 cm) radius. How far from the center of the arc is the center of gravity located?

Solution: Accompanying the *Circular Arc* diagram on page 229 is a formula for the distance from the center of gravity of an arc to the center of the arc: $a = 2r \div \pi$. Therefore,

$$a = \frac{2 \times 10}{3.1416} = 6.366 \text{ inches} \qquad a = \frac{2 \times 25.4}{3.1416} = 16.17 \text{ cm}$$

Formulas for Center of Gravity

Triangle:

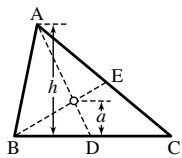


Perimeter

If A, B and C are the midpoints of the sides of the triangle, then the center of gravity is at the center of the circle that can be inscribed in triangle ABC. The distance d of the center of gravity from side a is:

$$d = \frac{h(b+c)}{2(a+b+c)}$$

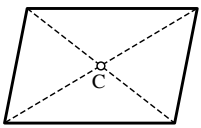
where h is the height perpendicular to a.



Area

The center of gravity is at the intersection of lines AD and BE, which bisect the sides BC and AC. The perpendicular distance from the center of gravity to any one of the sides is equal to one-third the height perpendicular to that side. Hence, $a = h \div 3$.

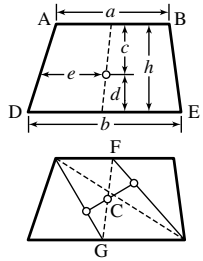
Perimeter or Area of a Parallelogram:



The center of gravity is at the intersection of the diagonals.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Area of Trapezoid:



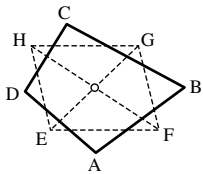
The center of gravity is on the line joining the midpoints of parallel lines *AB* and *DE*.

$$c = \frac{h(a+2b)}{3(a+b)} \quad d = \frac{h(2a+b)}{3(a+b)}$$

$$e = \frac{a^2 + ab + b^2}{3(a+b)}$$

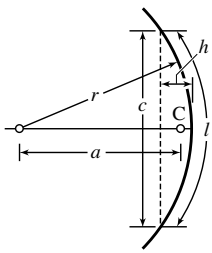
The trapezoid can also be divided into two triangles. The center of gravity is at the intersection of the line joining the centers of gravity of the triangles and the middle line *FG*.

Any Four-sided Figure:



Two cases are possible, as shown in the illustration. To find the center of gravity of the four-sided figure *ABCD*, each of the sides is divided into three equal parts. A line is then drawn through each pair of division points next to the points of intersection *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* of the sides of the figure. These lines form a parallelogram *EFGH*; the intersection of the diagonals *EG* and *FH* locates center of gravity.

Circular Arc:



The center of gravity is on the line that bisects the arc, at a distance $a = \frac{r \times c}{l} = \frac{c(c^2 + 4h^2)}{8lh}$ from the center of the circle.

For an arc equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ the periphery:

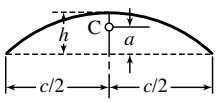
$$a = 2r \div \pi = 0.6366r$$

For an arc equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the periphery:

$$a = 2r\sqrt{2} \div \pi = 0.9003r$$

For an arc equal to $\frac{1}{6}$ of the periphery:

$$a = 3r \div \pi = 0.9549r$$

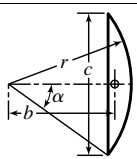


An approximate formula is very nearly exact for all arcs less than $\frac{1}{4}$ the periphery is:

$$a = \frac{2}{3}h$$

The error is only about 1 percent for a quarter circle, and it decreases for smaller arcs.

Circle Segment:



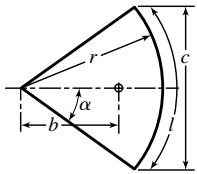
The distance of the center of gravity from the center of the circle is:

$$b = \frac{c^3}{12A} = \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{r^3 \sin \alpha^3}{A}$$

in which A = area of segment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Circle Sector:



Distance b from center of gravity to center of circle is:

$$b = \frac{2rc}{3l} = \frac{r^2c}{3A} = 38.197\frac{r\sin\alpha}{\alpha}$$

in which A = area of sector, and α is expressed in degrees.

For the area of a half-circle:

$$b = 4r \div 3\pi = 0.4244r$$

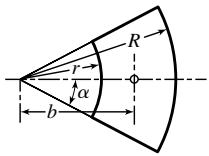
For the area of a quarter-circle:

$$b = 4\sqrt{2} \times r \div 3\pi = 0.6002r$$

For the area of a sixth of a circle:

$$b = 2r \div \pi = 0.6366r$$

Part of Circle Ring:

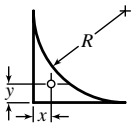


Distance b from center of gravity to center of circle is:

$$b = 38.197\frac{(R^3 - r^3)\sin\alpha}{(R^2 - r^2)\alpha}$$

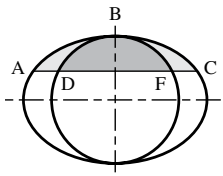
Angle α is expressed in degrees.

Spandrel or Fillet:



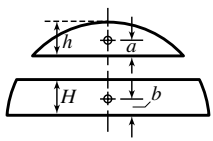
Area $= 0.2146R^2$ $\quad x = 0.2234R$, $\quad y = 0.2234R$

Segment of an Ellipse:



The center of gravity of an elliptic segment ABC, symmetrical about one of the axes, coincides with the center of gravity of the segment DBF of a circle, the diameter of which is equal to that axis of the ellipse about which the elliptic segment is symmetrical.

Spherical Surface of Segments and Zones of Spheres:

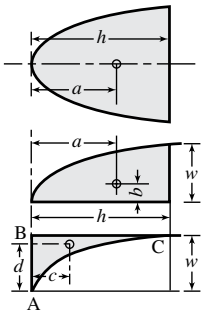


Distances a and b which determine the center of gravity are:

$$a = \frac{h}{2} \qquad b = \frac{H}{2}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Area of a Parabola:



For the complete parabolic area, the center of gravity is on the center line or axis, and

$$a = \frac{3h}{5}$$

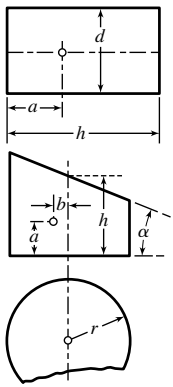
For one-half of the parabola:

$$a = \frac{3h}{5} \quad \text{and} \quad b = \frac{3w}{8}$$

For the complement area *ABC*:

$$c = 0.3h \quad \text{and} \quad d = 0.75w$$

Cylinder:



The center of gravity of a solid cylinder (or prism) with parallel end surfaces is located at the middle of the line that joins the centers of gravity of the end surfaces.

The center of gravity of a cylindrical surface or shell with the base or end surface in one end is found from:

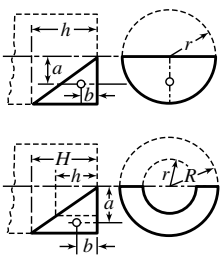
$$a = \frac{2h^2}{4h + d}$$

The center of gravity of a cylinder cut off by an inclined plane is located by:

$$a = \frac{h}{2} + \frac{r^2 \tan^2 \alpha}{8h} \qquad b = \frac{r^2 \tan \alpha}{4h}$$

where α is the angle between the obliquely cut off surface and the base surface.

Portion of Cylinder:



For a solid portion of a cylinder, as shown, the center of gravity is determined by:

$$a = \frac{3}{16} \times 3.1416r \quad b = \frac{3}{32} \times 3.1416h$$

For the cylindrical surface only:

$$a = \frac{1}{4} \times 3.1416r \quad b = \frac{1}{8} \times 3.1416h$$

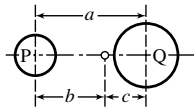
If the cylinder is hollow, the center of gravity of the solid shell is found by:

$$a = \frac{3}{16} \times 3.1416 \frac{R^4 - r^4}{R^3 - r^3}$$

$$b = \frac{3}{32} \times 3.1416 \frac{H^4 - h^4}{H^3 - h^3}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

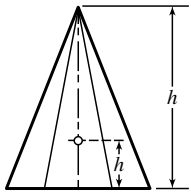
Center of Gravity of Two Bodies:



If the weights of the bodies are P and Q, and the distance between their centers of gravity is a, then:

$$b = \frac{Qa}{P+Q} \qquad c = \frac{Pa}{P+Q}$$

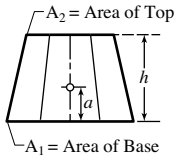
Pyramid:



In a solid pyramid the center of gravity is located on the line joining the apex with the center of gravity of the base surface, at a distance from the base equal to one-quarter of the height; or $a = \frac{1}{4}h$.

The center of gravity of the triangular surfaces forming the pyramid is located on the line joining the apex with the center of gravity of the base surface at a distance from the base equal to one-third the height: $a = \frac{1}{3}h$.

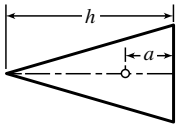
Frustum of Pyramid:



The center of gravity is located on the line that joins the centers of gravity of the end surfaces. If A_1 = area of base surface, and A_2 area of top surface,

$$a = \frac{h\left(A_1 + 2\sqrt{A_1 \times A_2} + 3A_2\right)}{4\left(A_1 + \sqrt{A_1 \times A_2} + A_2\right)}$$

Cone:



The same rules apply as for the pyramid.

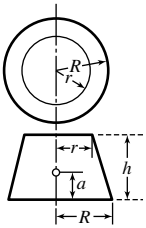
For the solid cone:

$$a = \frac{1}{4}h$$

For the conical surface:

$$a = \frac{1}{3}h$$

Frustum of Cone:



The same rules apply as for the frustum of a pyramid. For a solid frustum of a circular cone the formula below is also used:

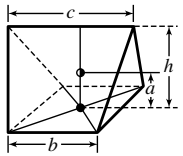
$$a = \frac{h\left(R^2 + 2Rr + 3r^2\right)}{4\left(R^2 + Rr + r^2\right)}$$

The location of the center of gravity of the conical surface of a frustum of a cone is determined by:

$$a = \frac{h(R + 2r)}{3(R + r)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

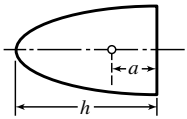
Wedge:



The center of gravity is on the line joining the center of gravity of the base with the middle point of the edge, and is located at:

$$a = \frac{h(b+c)}{2(2b+c)}$$

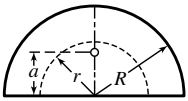
Paraboloid:



The center of gravity of a solid paraboloid of rotation is at:

$$a = \frac{1}{3}h$$

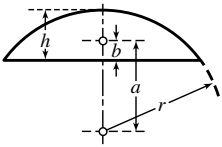
Half of a Hollow Sphere:



The center of gravity is located at:

$$a = \frac{3(R^4 - r^4)}{8(R^3 - r^3)}$$

Spherical Segment:



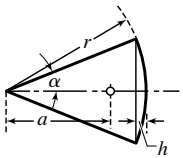
The center of gravity of a solid segment is determined by:

$$a = \frac{3(2r-h)^2}{4(3r-h)}$$

$$b = \frac{h(4r-h)}{4(3r-h)}$$

For a half-sphere, $a = b = \frac{3}{8}r$

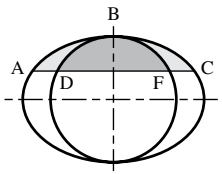
Spherical Sector:



The center of gravity of a solid sector is at:

$$a = \frac{3}{8}(1+\cos\alpha)r = \frac{3}{8}(2r-h)$$

Segment of Ellipsoid or Spheroid:



The center of gravity of a solid segment *ABC*, symmetrical about the axis of rotation, coincides with the center of gravity of the segment *DBF* of a sphere, the diameter of which is equal to the axis of rotation of the spheroid.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Center of Gravity of Figures of Any Outline.—If the figure is symmetrical about a center line, as in Fig. 1, the center of gravity will be located on that line. To find the exact location on that line, the simplest method is by taking moments with reference to any convenient axis at right angles to this center line. Divide the area into geometrical figures the centers of gravity of which can be easily found. In the example shown, divide the figure into three rectangles KLMN, EFGH and OPRS. Call the areas of these rectangles *A*, *B* and *C*, respectively, and find the center of gravity of each. Then select any convenient axis, such as X-X, at right angles to the center line Y-Y, and determine distances *a*, *b* and *c*. The distance *y* of the center of gravity of the complete figure from the axis X-X is then found from the equation:

$$y = \frac{Aa + Bb + Cc}{A + B + C}$$

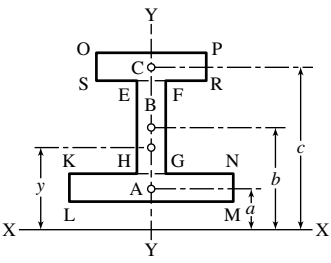


Fig. 1.

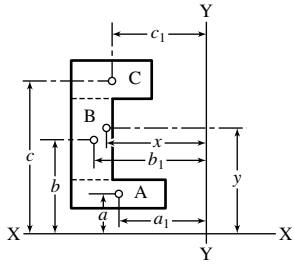


Fig. 2.

Example 1: Assume that the area *A* is 24 square inches, *B*, 14 square inches, and *C*, 16 square inches, and that $a = 3$ inches, $b = 7.5$ inches, and $c = 12$ inches. Then:

$$y = \frac{24 \times 3 + 14 \times 7.5 + 16 \times 12}{24 + 14 + 16} = \frac{369}{54} = 6.83 \text{ inches}$$

If the figure whose center of gravity is to be found is not symmetrical about any axis, as in Fig. 2, then moments must be taken with relation to two axes X-X and Y-Y, centers of gravity of which can be easily found, the same as before. The center of gravity is determined by the equations:

$$x = \frac{Aa_1 + Bb_1 + Cc_1}{A + B + C} \qquad y = \frac{Aa + Bb + Cc}{A + B + C}$$

Example 2: **In Fig. 2, let $A = 14$ cm^2, $B = 18$ cm^2, and $C = 20$ cm^2. Let $a = 3$ cm, $b = 7$ cm, and $c = 11.5$ cm. Let $a_1 = 6.5$ cm, $b_1 = 8.5$ cm, and $c_1 = 7$ cm. Then:**

$$x = \frac{14 \times 6.5 + 18 \times 8.5 + 20 \times 7}{14 + 18 + 20} = \frac{384}{52} = 7.38 \text{ cm}$$

$$y = \frac{14 \times 3 + 18 \times 7 + 20 \times 11.5}{14 + 18 + 20} = \frac{398}{52} = 7.65 \text{ cm}$$

In other words, the center of gravity is located at a distance of 7.65 cm from the axis X–X and 7.38 cm from the axis Y–Y.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Radius of Gyration

The radius of gyration with reference to an axis is that distance from the axis at which the entire mass of a body may be considered as concentrated, the moment of inertia, meanwhile, remaining unchanged. If W is the weight of a body; J_M its moment of inertia with respect to some axis; and k_o the radius of gyration with respect to the same axis, then:

$$k_o = \sqrt{\frac{J_M g}{W}} \quad \text{and} \quad J_M = \frac{W k_o^2}{g}$$

When using metric SI units, the formulas are:

$$\boldsymbol{k_o = \sqrt{\frac{J_M}{M}}} \quad \textbf{and} \quad \boldsymbol{J_M = M k_o^2}$$

where k_o = the radius of gyration in meters, J_M = moment of inertia in kilogram-meter^2 (kg·m^2), and M = mass in kilograms.

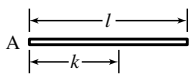
To find the radius of gyration of an area, such as for the cross section of a beam, divide the moment of inertia of the area by the area and extract the square root.

When the axis, the reference to which the radius of gyration is taken, passes through the center of gravity, the radius of gyration is the least possible and is called the *principal* radius of gyration. If k is the radius of gyration with respect to such an axis passing through the center of gravity of a body, then the radius of gyration k_o with respect to a parallel axis at a distance d from the gravity axis is given by: $k_o = \sqrt{k^2 + d^2}$

Tables of radii of gyration for various bodies and axes follows.

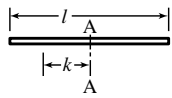
Formulas for Radius of Gyration

Bar of Small Diameter:



$k = 0.5773l$
$k^2 = \frac{1}{3}l^2$

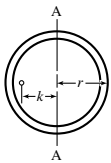
Axis at end



$k = 0.2886l$
$k^2 = \frac{1}{12}l^2$

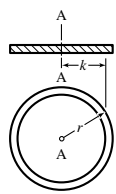
Axis at center

Bar of Small Diameter Bent to Circular Shape:



$k = 0.7071r$
$k^2 = \frac{1}{2}r^2$

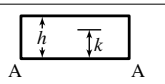
Axis, a diameter of the ring



$k = r$
$k^2 = r^2$

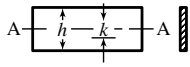
Axis through center of ring

Parallelogram (Thin Flat Plate):



$k = 0.5773h$
$k^2 = \frac{1}{3}h^2$

Axis at base

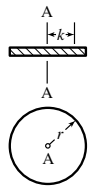


$k = 0.2886h$
$k^2 = \frac{1}{12}h^2$

Axis at mid-height

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

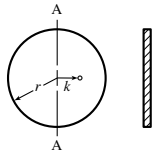
Thin Circular Disk:



$k = 0.7071r$

$k^2 = \frac{1}{2}r^2$

Axis through center

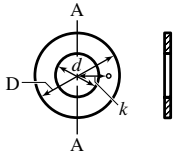


$k = \frac{1}{2}r$

$k^2 = \frac{1}{4}r^2$

Axis its diameter

Thin, Flat, Circular Ring:

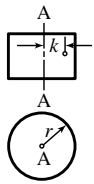


$k = \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{D^2 + d^2}$

$k^2 = \frac{D^2 + d^2}{16}$

Axis its diameter

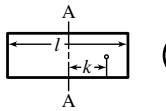
Cylinder:



$k = \frac{r}{\sqrt{2}}$

$k^2 = \frac{1}{2}r^2$

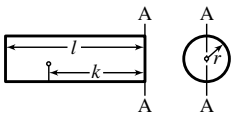
Axis through center



$k = \frac{\sqrt{l^2 + 3r^2}}{\sqrt{12}}$

$k^2 = \frac{l^2}{12} + \frac{r^2}{4}$

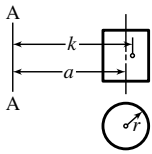
Axis, diameter at mid-length



$k = \frac{\sqrt{4l^2 + 3r^2}}{\sqrt{12}}$

$k^2 = \frac{l^2}{3} + \frac{r^2}{4}$

Axis, diameter at end

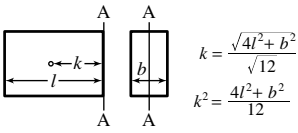


$k = \sqrt{a^2 + \frac{1}{2}r^2}$

$k^2 = a^2 + \frac{1}{2}r^2$

Axis at a distance

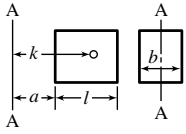
Parallelepiped:



$k = \frac{\sqrt{4l^2 + b^2}}{\sqrt{12}}$

$k^2 = \frac{4l^2 + b^2}{12}$

Axis at one end, central

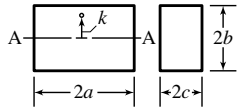


$k = \sqrt{\frac{4l^2 + b^2}{12} + a^2 + al}$

Axis at distance from end

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rectangular Prism:

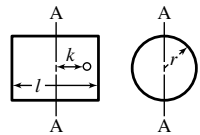


Axis through center

$$k = 0.577\sqrt{b^2 + c^2}$$

$$k^2 = \frac{1}{3}(b^2 + c^2)$$

Thin Hollow Cylinder:

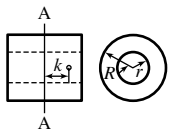


Axis, diameter at mid-length

$$k = 0.289\sqrt{l^2 + 6r^2}$$

$$k^2 = \frac{l^2}{12} + \frac{r^2}{2}$$

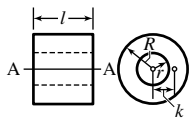
Hollow Cylinder:



Axis, diameter at mid-length

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{l^2 + 3(R^2 + r^2)}}{\sqrt{12}}$$

$$k^2 = \frac{l^2}{12} + \frac{R^2 + r^2}{4}$$

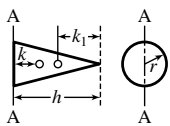


Longitudinal Axis

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{R^2 + r^2}}{\sqrt{2}}$$

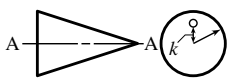
$$k^2 = \frac{1}{2}(R^2 + r^2)$$

Cone:



Axis at base $\quad k = \sqrt{\dfrac{2h^2 + 3r^2}{20}}$

Axis at apex $\quad k_1 = \sqrt{\dfrac{12h^2 + 3r^2}{20}}$

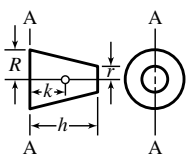


Axis through its center line

$$k = 0.5477r$$

$$k^2 = 0.3r^2$$

Frustum of Cone:

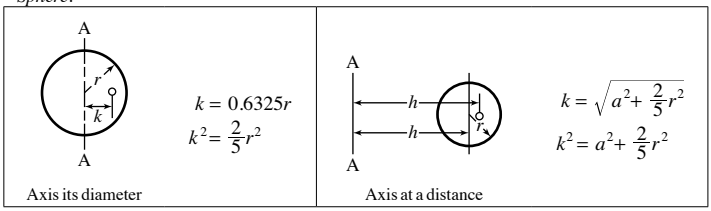


Axis at large end

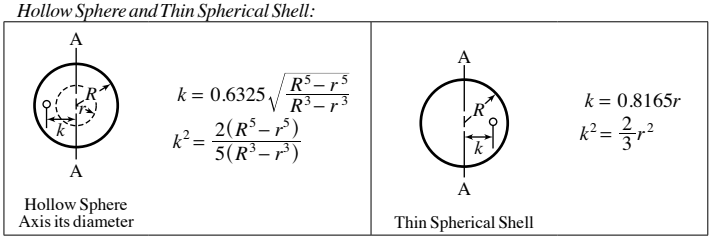
$$k = \sqrt{\frac{h^2}{10}\left(\frac{R^2 + 3Rr + 6r^2}{R^2 + Rr + r^2}\right) + \frac{3}{20}\left(\frac{R^5 - r^5}{R^3 - r^3}\right)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

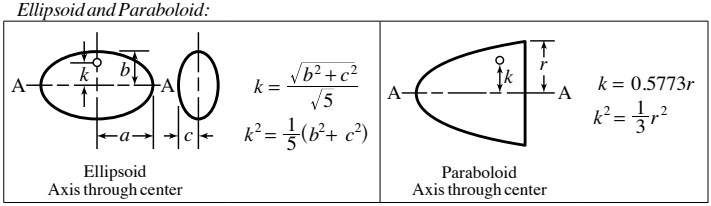
Sphere:



Hollow Sphere and Thin Spherical Shell:



Ellipsoid and Paraboloid:



Center and Radius of Oscillation.—If a body oscillates about a horizontal axis which does not pass through its center of gravity, there will be a point on the line drawn from the center of gravity, perpendicular to the axis, the motion of which will be the same as if the whole mass were concentrated at that point. This point is called the *center of oscillation*. The *radius of oscillation* is the distance between the center of oscillation and the point of suspension. In a straight line, or in a bar of small diameter suspended at one end and oscillating about it, the center of oscillation is at $^2/_3$ the length of the rod from the end by which it is suspended.

When the vibrations are perpendicular to the plane of the figure, and the figure is suspended by the vertex of an angle or its uppermost point, the radius of oscillation of an isosceles triangle is equal to $^3/_4$ of the height of the triangle; of a circle, $^5/_8$ of the diameter; of a parabola, $^5/_7$ of the height.

If the vibrations are in the plane of the figure, then the radius of oscillation of a circle equals $^3/_4$ of the diameter; of a rectangle suspended at the vertex of one angle, $^2/_3$ of the diagonal.

Center of Percussion.—For a body that moves without rotation, the resultant of all the forces acting on the body passes through the center of gravity. On the other hand, for a body that rotates about some *fixed axis*, the resultant of all the forces acting on it does not pass through the center of gravity of the body but through a point called the *center of*

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

percussion. The center of percussion is useful in determining the position of the resultant in mechanics problems involving angular acceleration of bodies about a fixed axis.

Finding the Center of Percussion when Radius of Gyration and Location of Center of Gravity are Known: The center of percussion lies on a line drawn through the center of rotation and the center of gravity. The distance from the axis of rotation to the center of percussion may be calculated from the following formula

$$q = k_o^2 \div r$$

in which q = distance from the axis of rotation to the center of percussion; k_o = radius of gyration of the body with respect to the axis of rotation; and r = distance from the axis of rotation to the center of gravity of the body.

Moment of Inertia

An important property of areas and solid bodies is moment of inertia. Standard formulas are derived by multiplying elementary particles of area or mass by the squares of their distances from reference axes. Moments of inertia, therefore, depend on the location of reference axes. Values are minimum when these axes pass through the centers of gravity.

Three kinds of moments of inertia occur in engineering formulas:

1) *Moments of inertia of plane area*, I, in which the axis is in the plane of the area are found in formulas for calculating deflections and stresses in beams. When dimensions are given in inches, the units of I are inches^4. A table of formulas for calculating the I of common areas can be found beginning on page 241.

2) *Polar moments of inertia of plane areas*, J, in which the axis is at right angles to the plane of the area, occur in formulas for the torsional strength of shafting. When dimensions are given in inches, the units of J are inches^4. If moments of inertia, I, are known for a plane area with respect to both x and y axes, then the polar moment for the z axis may be calculated using the equation, $J_z = I_x + I_y$

A table of formulas for calculating J for common areas can be found on page 252 in this section.

When metric SI units are used, the formulas referred to in (1) and (2) above are valid if the dimensions are given consistently in meters or millimeters. If meters are used, the units of I and J are in meters^4; if millimeters are used, these units are in millimeters^4.

3) *Polar moments of inertia of masses*, J_M*, appear in dynamics equations involving rotational motion. J_M bears the same relationship to angular acceleration as mass does to linear acceleration. If units are in the foot-pound-second system, the units of J_M are ft-lbs-sec^2 or slug-ft^2 (1 slug = 1 lb-sec^2/ft). If units are in the inch-pound-second system, the units of J_M are inch-lbs-sec^2.

If metric SI values are used, the units of J_M are kilogram-meter squared (kg-m^2). Formulas for calculating J_M for various bodies are given beginning on page 253. If the polar moment of inertia J is known for the area of a body of constant cross section, J_M may be calculated using the equation,

$$J_M = \frac{\rho L}{g} J$$

where ρ is the density of the material, L the length of the part, and g the gravitational constant. If dimensions are in the foot-pound-second system, ρ is in lbs/ft^3, L is in ft, g is

* In some books the symbol I denotes the polar moment of inertia of masses; J_M is used in this Handbook to avoid confusion with moments of inertia of plane areas.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

32.16 ft/sec^2, and J is in ft^4. If dimensions are in the inch-pound-second system, ρ is in lbs/in^3, L is in inches, g is 386 in/sec^2, and J is in inches^4.

Using metric SI units, the above formula becomes $J_M = \rho LJ$, where ρ = density in kilograms/meter^3, L = length in meters, and J = polar moment of inertia in meters^4. The units of J_M are kg·m^2.

Moment of Inertia of Built-Up Sections.—The usual method of calculating the moment of inertia of a built-up section involves the calculations of the moment of inertia for each element of the section about its own neutral axis and the transferring of this moment of inertia to the previously found neutral axis of the whole built-up section. A much simpler method, called the tabular method, can be used in the case of any section that can be divided into rectangular elements bounded by lines parallel and perpendicular to the neutral axis. It is based upon the formula: $I = b(h_1{}^3 - h^3)/3$ in which I = the moment of inertia about axis DE, Fig. 1, and b, h and h_1 are dimensions as given in the same illustration.

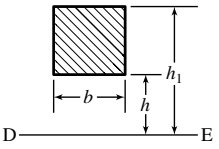


Fig. 1.

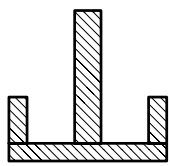


Fig. 2.

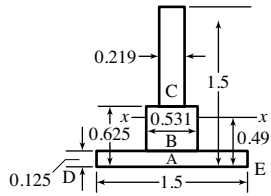


Fig. 3.

The method may be illustrated by applying it to the section shown in Fig. 2, and for simplicity of calculation shown "massed" in Fig. 3. The calculation may then be tabulated as shown in the accompanying table. The distance from the axis DE to the neutral axis xx (which will be designated as d) is found by dividing the sum of the geometrical moments by the area. The moment of inertia about the neutral axis is then found in the usual way by subtracting the area multiplied by d^2 from the moment of inertia about the axis DE.

Tabulated Calculation of Moment of Inertia

Section	Breadth b	Height h_1	Area $b(h_1 - h)$	$h_1{}^2$	Moment $\frac{b(h_1^2 - h^2)}{2}$	$h_1{}^3$	I about axis DE $\frac{b(h_1^3 - h^3)}{3}$
A	1.500	0.125	0.187	0.016	0.012	0.002	0.001
B	0.531	0.625	0.266	0.391	0.100	0.244	0.043
C	0.219	1.500	0.191	2.250	0.203	3.375	0.228
			$\Sigma A = 0.644$		$\Sigma M = 0.315$		$\Sigma I_{DE} = 0.272$

The distance d from DE, the axis at the base of the configuration, to the neutral axis xx is:

$$d = \frac{M}{A} = \frac{0.315}{0.644} = 0.49$$

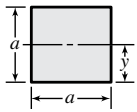
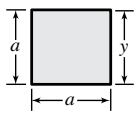
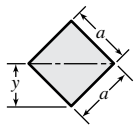
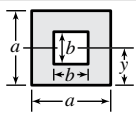
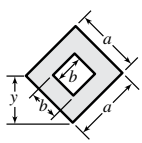
The moment of inertia of the entire section with reference to the neutral axis xx is:

$$\begin{aligned} I_N &= I_{DE} - Ad^2 \\ &= 0.272 - 0.644 \times 0.49^2 \\ &= 0.117 \end{aligned}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

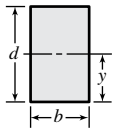
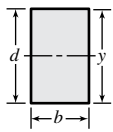
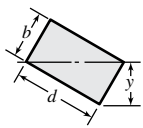
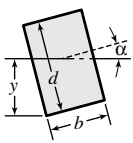
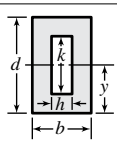
Formulas for Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, etc.—On the following pages are given formulas for moments of inertia and other properties of forty-two different cross sections. The formulas give the area of the section A, and the distance y from the neutral axis to the extreme fiber, for each example. Where the formulas for the section modulus and radius of gyration are very lengthy, the formula for the section modulus, for example, has been simply given as $I \div y$. The radius of gyration is sometimes given as $\sqrt{I \div A}$ to save space.

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration

Section A = area y = distance from axis to extreme fiber	Moment of Inertia I	Section Modulus $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
Square and Rectangular Sections			
 $A = a^2 \quad y = a/2$	$\frac{a^4}{12}$	$\frac{a^3}{6}$	$\frac{a}{\sqrt{12}} = 0.289a$
 $A = a^2 \quad y = a$	$\frac{a^4}{3}$	$\frac{a^3}{3}$	$\frac{a}{\sqrt{3}} = 0.577a$
 $A = a^2$ $y = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.707a$	$\frac{a^4}{12}$	$\frac{a^3}{6\sqrt{2}} = 0.118a^3$	$\frac{a}{\sqrt{12}} = 0.289a$
 $A = a^2 - b^2 \quad y = a/2$	$\frac{a^4 - b^4}{12}$	$\frac{a^4 - b^4}{6a}$	$\sqrt{\frac{a^2 + b^2}{12}}$ $= 0.289\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$
 $A = a^2 - b^2 \quad y = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{a^4 - b^4}{12}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}(a^4 - b^4)}{12a}$ $= 0.118\frac{a^4 - b^4}{a}$	$\sqrt{\frac{a^2 + b^2}{12}}$ $= 0.289\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$

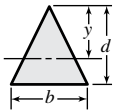
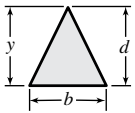
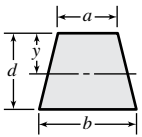
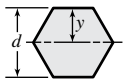
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section A = area y = distance from axis to extreme fiber	Moment of Inertia I	Section Modulus $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
Square and Rectangular Sections			
 $A = bd \quad y = d/2$	$\frac{bd^3}{12}$	$\frac{bd^2}{6}$	$\frac{d}{\sqrt{12}} = 0.289d$
 $A = bd \quad y = d$	$\frac{bd^3}{3}$	$\frac{bd^2}{3}$	$\frac{d}{\sqrt{3}} = 0.577d$
 $A = bd$ $y = \frac{bd}{\sqrt{b^2 + d^2}}$	$\frac{b^3d^3}{6(b^2 + d^2)}$	$\frac{b^2d^2}{6\sqrt{b^2 + d^2}}$	$\frac{bd}{\sqrt{6(b^2 + d^2)}}$ $= 0.408\frac{bd}{\sqrt{b^2 + d^2}}$
 $A = bd$ $y = \frac{1}{2}(d\cos\alpha + b\sin\alpha)$	$\frac{bd}{12}(d^2\cos^2\alpha + b^2\sin^2\alpha)$	$\frac{bd}{6} \times \left(\frac{d^2\cos^2\alpha + b^2\sin^2\alpha}{d\cos\alpha + b\sin\alpha}\right)$	$\sqrt{\frac{d^2\cos^2\alpha + b^2\sin^2\alpha}{12}}$ $= 0.289 \times$ $\sqrt{d^2\cos^2\alpha + b^2\sin^2\alpha}$
 $A = bd - hk$ $y = d/2$	$\frac{bd^3 - hk^3}{12}$	$\frac{bd^3 - hk^3}{6d}$	$\sqrt{\frac{bd^3 - hk^3}{12(bd - hk)}}$ $= 0.289\sqrt{\frac{bd^3 - hk^3}{bd - hk}}$

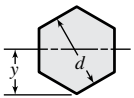
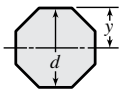
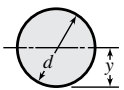
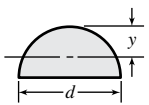
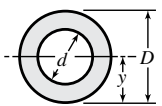
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
Triangular Sections					
	$\frac{1}{2}\,bd$	$\frac{2}{3}\,d$	$\frac{bd^3}{36}$	$\frac{bd^2}{24}$	$\frac{d}{\sqrt{18}} = 0.236d$
	$\frac{1}{2}\,bd$	d	$\frac{bd^3}{12}$	$\frac{bd^2}{12}$	$\frac{d}{\sqrt{6}} = 0.408d$
Polygon Sections					
	$\frac{d(a+b)}{2}$	$\frac{d(a+2b)}{3(a+b)}$	$\frac{d^3(a^2+4ab+b^2)}{36(a+b)}$	$\frac{d^2(a^2+4ab+b^2)}{12(a+2b)}$	$\sqrt{\frac{d^2(a^2+4ab+b^2)}{18(a+b)^2}}$
	$\frac{3d^2\tan 30^\circ}{2}$ $= 0.866d^2$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{A}{12}\left[\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 30^\circ)}{4\cos^2 30^\circ}\right]$ $= 0.06d^4$	$\frac{A}{6}\left[\frac{d(1+2\cos^2 30^\circ)}{4\cos^2 30^\circ}\right]$ $= 0.12d^3$	$\sqrt{\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 30^\circ)}{48\cos^2 30^\circ}}$ $= 0.264d$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

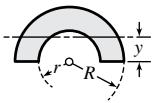
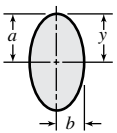
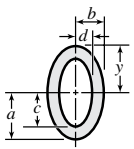
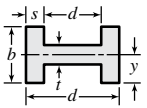
Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$\frac{3d^2 \tan 30°}{2}$ $= 0.866d^2$	$\frac{d}{2\cos 30°} = 0.577d$	$\frac{A}{12}\left[\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 30°)}{4\cos^2 30°}\right]$ $= 0.06d^4$	$\frac{A}{6.9}\left[\frac{d(1+2\cos^2 30°)}{4\cos^2 30°}\right]$ $= 0.104d^3$	$\sqrt{\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 30°)}{48\cos^2 30°}}$ $= 0.264d$
	$2d^2 \tan 22\frac{1}{2}° = 0.828d^2$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{A}{12}\left[\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°)}{4\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°}\right]$ $= 0.055d^4$	$\frac{A}{6}\left[\frac{d(1+2\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°)}{4\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°}\right]$ $= 0.109d^3$	$\sqrt{\frac{d^2(1+2\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°)}{48\cos^2 22\frac{1}{2}°}}$ $= 0.257d$
Circular, Elliptical, and Circular Arc Sections					
	$\frac{\pi d^2}{4} = 0.7854d^2$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{\pi d^4}{64} = 0.049d^4$	$\frac{\pi d^3}{32} = 0.098d^3$	$\frac{d}{4}$
	$\frac{\pi d^2}{8} = 0.393d^2$	$\frac{(3\pi - 4)d}{6\pi}$ $= 0.288d$	$\frac{(9\pi^2 - 64)d^4}{1152\pi}$ $= 0.007d^4$	$\frac{(9\pi^2 - 64)d^3}{192(3\pi - 4)}$ $= 0.024d^3$	$\frac{\sqrt{(9\pi^2 - 64)d^2}}{12\pi}$ $= 0.132d$
	$\frac{\pi(D^2 - d^2)}{4}$ $= 0.7854(D^2 - d^2)$	$\frac{D}{2}$	$\frac{\pi(D^4 - d^4)}{64}$ $= 0.049(D^4 - d^4)$	$\frac{\pi(D^4 - d^4)}{32D}$ $= 0.098\frac{D^4 - d^4}{D}$	$\frac{\sqrt{D^2 + d^2}}{4}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

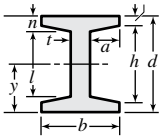
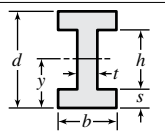
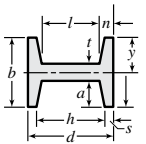
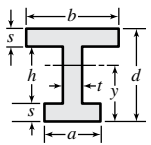
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$\frac{\pi(R^2-r^2)}{2}$ $= 1.5708(R^2-r^2)$	$\frac{4(R^3-r^3)}{3\pi(R^2-r^2)}$ $= 0.424\frac{R^3-r^3}{R^2-r^2}$	$0.1098(R^4-r^4)$ $-\frac{0.283R^2r^2(R-r)}{R+r}$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$\pi ab = 3.1416ab$	a	$\frac{\pi a^3 b}{4} = 0.7854a^3b$	$\frac{\pi a^2 b}{4} = 0.7854a^2b$	$\frac{a}{2}$
	$\pi(ab-cd)$ $= 3.1416(ab-cd)$	a	$\frac{\pi}{4}(a^3b-c^3d)$ $= 0.7854(a^3b-c^3d)$	$\frac{\pi(a^3b-c^3d)}{4a}$ $= 0.7854\frac{a^3b-c^3d}{a}$	$\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{a^3b-c^3d}{ab-cd}}$
I-Sections					
	$bd-h(b-t)$	$\frac{b}{2}$	$\frac{2sb^3+ht^3}{12}$	$\frac{2sb^3+ht^3}{6b}$	$\sqrt{\frac{2sb^3+ht^3}{12[bd-h(b-t)]}}$

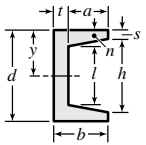
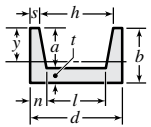
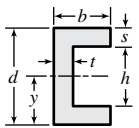
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$dt + 2a(s + n)$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{1}{12}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{4g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]$ in which g = slope of flange = $(h - l)/(b - t) = \frac{100}{\%}$ for standard I-beams	$\frac{1}{6d}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{4g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]$	$\sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{12}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{4g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]}{dt + 2a(s + n)}}$
	$bd - h(b - t)$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b - t)}{12}$	$\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b - t)}{6d}$	$\sqrt{\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b - t)}{12[bd - h(b - t)]}}$
	$dt + 2a(s + n)$	$\frac{b}{2}$	$\frac{1}{12}[b^3(d - h) + lt^3 + \frac{g}{4}(b^4 - t^4)]$ in which g = slope of flange = $(h - l)/(b - t) = \frac{1}{6}$ for standard I-beams	$\frac{1}{6b}[b^3(d - h) + lt^3 + \frac{g}{4}(b^4 - t^4)]$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$bs + ht + as$	$d - [td^2 + s^2(b - t) + s(a - t)(2d - s)] \div 2A$	$\frac{1}{3}[b(d - y)^3 + ay^3 - (b - t)(d - y - s)^3 - (a - t)(y - s)^3]$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$

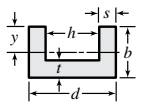
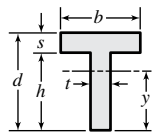
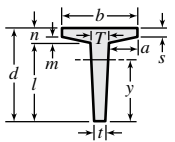
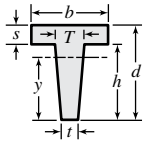
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
C-Sections					
	$dt + a(s + n)$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{1}{12}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{8g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]$ g = slope of flange $= \frac{h-l}{2(b-t)} = \frac{1}{6}$ for standard channels	$\frac{1}{6d}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{8g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]$	$\sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{12}\left[bd^3 - \frac{1}{8g}(h^4 - l^4)\right]}{dt + a(s+n)}}$
	$dt + a(s + n)$	$b - \left[\, b^2 s + \frac{ht^2}{2} + \frac{g}{3}(b-t)^2 \times (b + 2t)\,\right] \div A$ g = slope of flange $= \frac{h-l}{2(b-t)}$	$\frac{1}{3}\left[2sb^3 + lt^3 + \frac{g}{2}(b^4 - t^4)\right] - A(b-y)^2$ g = slope of flange $= \frac{h-l}{2(b-t)} = \frac{1}{6}$ for standard channels	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$bd - h(b-t)$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b-t)}{12}$	$\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b-t)}{6d}$	$\sqrt{\frac{bd^3 - h^3(b-t)}{12[bd - h(b-t)]}}$

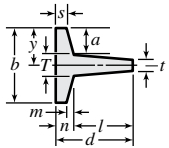
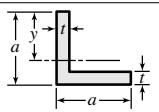
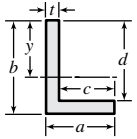
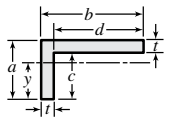
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$bd - h(b-t)$	$b - \frac{2b^2s + ht^2}{2bd - 2h(b-t)}$	$\frac{2sb^3 + ht^3}{3} - A(b-y)^2$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
T-Sections					
	$bs + ht$	$d - \frac{d^2t + s^2(b-t)}{2(bs+ht)}$	$\frac{1}{3}[ty^3 + b(d-y)^3 - (b-t)(d-y-s)^3]$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{1}{3(bs+ht)}[ty^3 + b(d-y)^3 - (b-t)(d-y-s)^3]}$
	$\frac{l(T+t)}{2} + Tn + a(s+n)$	$d - [\,3s^2(b-T) + 2am(m+3s) + 3Td^2 - l(T-t)(3d-l\,)\,] \div 6A$	$\frac{1}{12}[l^3(T+3t) + 4bn^3 - 2am^3] - A(d-y-n)^2$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$bs + \frac{h(T+t)}{2}$	$d - [3bs^2 + 3ht\,(d+s) + h\,(T-t)(h+3s)] \div 6A$	$\frac{1}{12}[4bs^3 + h^3(3t+T)] - A(d-y-s)^2$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$

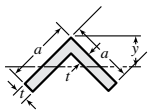
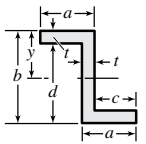
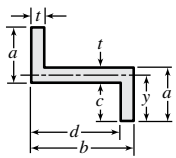
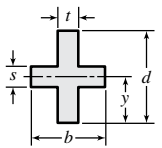
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$\frac{l(T+t)}{2} + Tn + a(s+n)$	$\frac{b}{2}$	$\frac{sb^3 + mT^3 + lt^3}{12} + \frac{am[2a^2 + (2a+3T)^2]}{36} + \frac{l(T-t)[(T-t)^2 + 2(T+2t)^2]}{144}$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
L-, Z-, and X-Sections					
	$t(2a-t)$	$a - \frac{a^2 + at - t^2}{2(2a-t)}$	$\frac{1}{3}[ty^3 + a(a-y)^3 - (a-t)(a-y-t)^3]$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$t(a+b-t)$	$b - \frac{t(2d+a) + d^2}{2(d+a)}$	$\frac{1}{3}[ty^3 + a(b-y)^3 - (a-t)(b-y-t)^3]$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{1}{3t(a+b-t)}[ty^3 + a(b-y)^3 - (a-t)(b-y-t)^3]}$
	$t(a+b-t)$	$a - \frac{t(2c+b) + c^2}{2(c+b)}$	$\frac{1}{3}[ty^3 + b(a-y)^3 - (b-t)(a-y-t)^3]$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{1}{3t(a+b-t)}[ty^3 + b(a-y)^3 - (b-t)(a-y-t)^3]}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration *(Continued)*

Section	Area of Section, A	Distance from Neutral Axis to Extreme Fiber, y	Moment of Inertia, I	Section Modulus, $Z = \frac{I}{y}$	Radius of Gyration, $k = \sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$t(2a - t)$	$\frac{a^2 + at - t^2}{2(2a - t)\cos 45°}$	$\frac{A}{12}[7(a^2 + b^2) - 12y^2] - 2ab^2(a - b)$ in which $b = (a - t)$	$\frac{I}{y}$	$\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$
	$t[b + 2(a - t)]$	$\frac{b}{2}$	$\frac{ab^3 - c(b - 2t)^3}{12}$	$\frac{ab^3 - c(b - 2t)^3}{6b}$	$\sqrt{\frac{ab^3 - c(b - 2t)^3}{12t[b + 2(a - t)]}}$
	$t[b + 2(a - t)]$	$\frac{2a - t}{2}$	$\frac{b(a + c)^3 - 2c^3d - 6a^2cd}{12}$	$\frac{b(a + c)^3 - 2c^3d - 6a^2cd}{6(2a - t)}$	$\sqrt{\frac{b(a + c)^3 - 2c^3d - 6a^2cd}{12t[b + 2(a - t)]}}$
	$dt + s(b - t)$	$\frac{d}{2}$	$\frac{td^3 + s^3(b - t)}{12}$	$\frac{td^3 - s^3(b - t)}{6d}$	$\sqrt{\frac{td^3 + s^3(b - t)}{12[td + s(b - t)]}}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Polar Area Moment of Inertia and Section Modulus.—The *polar moment of inertia J* of a cross section with respect to a polar axis, that is, an axis at right angles to the plane of the cross section, is defined as the moment of inertia of the cross section with respect to the point of intersection of the axis and the plane. The polar moment of inertia may be found by taking the sum of the moments of inertia about two perpendicular axes lying in the plane of the cross section and passing through this point. Thus, for example, the polar moment of inertia of a circular or a square area with respect to a polar axis through the center of gravity is equal to twice the moment of inertia with respect to an axis lying in the plane of the cross section and passing through the center of gravity.

The polar moment of inertia with respect to a polar axis through the center of gravity is required for problems involving the torsional strength of shafts since this axis is usually the axis about which twisting of the shaft takes place.

The *polar section modulus* (also called section modulus of torsion) Z_p for *circular* sections may be found by dividing the polar moment of inertia J by the distance c from the center of gravity to the most remote fiber. This method may be used to find the *approximate* value of the polar section modulus of sections that are *nearly* round. For other than circular cross sections, however, the polar section modulus *does not* equal the polar moment of inertia divided by the distance c.

The accompanying table *Polar Moment of Inertia and Polar Section Modulus* on page 252 gives formulas for the polar section modulus for several different cross sections. The polar section modulus multiplied by the allowable torsional shearing stress gives the allowable twisting moment to which a shaft may be subjected; see Formula (7) on page 296.

Polar Mass Moment of Inertia.—Starting on page 253, formulas for mass moment of inertia* J_M of various solids are given in a series of tables. The example that follows illustrates the derivaion of J_M for one of the bodies given on page 253.

Example, Polar Mass Moment of Inertia of a Hollow Circular Section: Referring to the figure *Hollow Cylinder* on page 253, consider a strip of width dr on a hollow circular section whose inner radius is r and outer radius is R.

The mass of the strip = $2\pi r dr\rho$, where ρ is the density of material. In order to get the mass of an individual section, integrate the mass of the strip from r to R.

$$M = \int_r^R 2\pi\rho r\,dr = 2\pi\rho\int_r^R r\,dr = 2\pi\rho\left[\frac{r^2}{2}\right]_r^R$$

$$= 2\pi\rho\left(\frac{R^2}{2} - \frac{r^2}{2}\right) = \pi\rho(R^2 - r^2)$$

The second moment of the strip about the AA axis = $2\pi r\,dr\rho r^2$. To find the polar moment of inertia about the AA axis, integrate the 2nd moment from r to R.

$$J_M = \int_r^R 2\pi r(dr)\rho r^2 = 2\pi\rho\int_r^R r^3(dr) = 2\pi\rho\left[\frac{r^4}{4}\right]_r^R$$

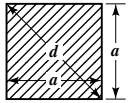
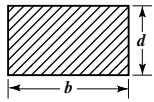
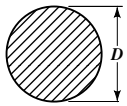
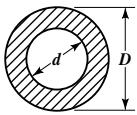
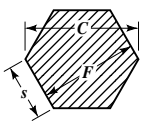
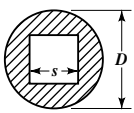
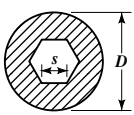
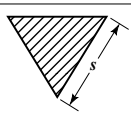
$$= 2\pi\rho\left(\frac{R^4}{4} - \frac{r^4}{4}\right) = \frac{\pi\rho}{2}(R^2 - r^2)(R^2 + r^2)$$

$$= \pi\rho(R^2 - r^2)\frac{(R^2 + r^2)}{2} = \frac{M(R^2 + r^2)}{2}$$

*In some books the symbol I denotes the polar moment of inertia of masses; J_M is used in this Handbook to avoid confusion with moments of inertia of plane areas.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Polar Moment of Inertia and Polar Section Modulus

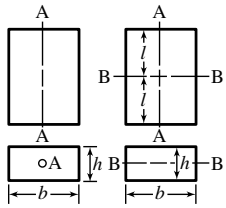
Section	Polar Moment of Inertia, J	Polar Section Modulus, Z_p
	$\frac{a^4}{6} = 0.1667a^4$	$0.208a^3 = 0.074d^3$
	$\frac{bd(b^2+d^2)}{12}$	$\frac{bd^2}{3+1.8\frac{d}{b}}$ (d is the shorter side)
	$\frac{\pi D^4}{32} = 0.098D^4$	$\frac{\pi D^3}{16} = 0.196D^3$
	$\frac{\pi}{32}(D^4 - d^4)$ $= 0.098(D^4 - d^4)$	$\frac{\pi}{16}\left(\frac{D^4-d^4}{D}\right)$ $= 0.196\left(\frac{D^4-d^4}{D}\right)$
	$\frac{5\sqrt{3}}{8}s^4 = 1.0825s^4$ $= 0.12F^4$	$0.20F^3$
	$\frac{\pi D^4}{32} - \frac{s^4}{6}$ $= 0.098D^4 - 0.167s^4$	$\frac{\pi D^3}{16} - \frac{s^4}{3D}$ $= 0.196D^3 - 0.333\frac{s^4}{D}$
	$\frac{\pi D^4}{32} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{8}s^4$ $= 0.098D^4 - 1.0825s^4$	$\frac{\pi D^3}{16} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{4D}s^4$ $= 0.196D^3 - 2.165\frac{s^4}{D}$
	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{48}s^4 = 0.036s^4$	$\frac{s^3}{20} = 0.05s^3$

Polar Section Modulus for a shaft of given diameter can be obtained by multiplying its section modulus by 2. *Polar Moment of Inertia* can be obtained by multiplying its moment of inertia by 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Polar Moment of Inertia of Masses, J_M

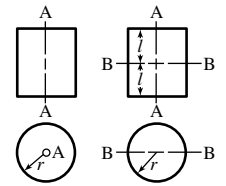
Prism:



With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{M}{12}(h^2 + b^2)$

With reference to axis *BB*: $J_M = M\left(\frac{l^2}{3} + \frac{h^2}{12}\right)$

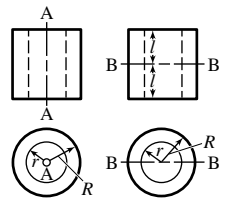
Cylinder:



With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{1}{2}Mr^2$

With reference to axis *BB*: $J_M = M\left(\frac{l^2}{3} + \frac{r^2}{4}\right)$

Hollow Cylinder:

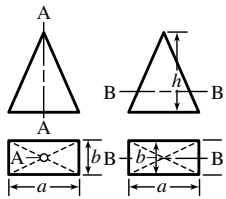


With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{1}{2}M(R^2 + r^2)$

With reference to axis *BB*:

$$J_M = M\left(\frac{l^2}{3} + \frac{R^2 + r^2}{4}\right)$$

Pyramid, Rectangular Base:

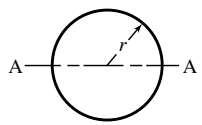


With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{M}{20}(a^2 + b^2)$

With reference to axis *BB* (through the center of gravity):

$$J_M = M\left(\frac{3}{80}h^2 + \frac{b^2}{20}\right)$$

Sphere:

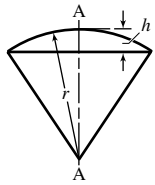


With reference to any axis through the center:

$$J_M = \frac{2}{5}Mr^2$$

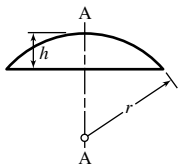
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spherical Sector:



With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{M}{5}(3rh - h^2)$

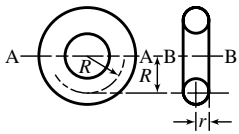
Spherical Segment:



Spherical Segment: With reference to axis *AA*:

$$J_M = M\left(r^2 - \frac{3rh}{4} + \frac{3h^2}{20}\right)\frac{2h}{3r - h}$$

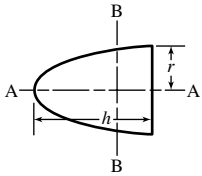
Torus:



With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = M\left(\frac{R^2}{2} + \frac{5r^2}{8}\right)$

With reference to axis *BB*: $J_M = M\left(R^2 + \frac{3}{4}r^2\right)$

Paraboloid:

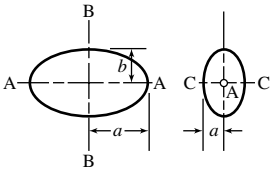


With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{1}{3}Mr^2$

With reference to axis *BB* (through the center of gravity):

$$J_M = M\left(\frac{r^2}{6} + \frac{h^2}{18}\right)$$

Ellipsoid:



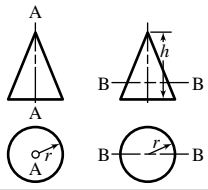
With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{M}{5}(b^2 + c^2)$

With reference to axis *BB*: $J_M = \frac{M}{5}(a^2 + c^2)$

With reference to axis *CC*: $J_M = \frac{M}{5}(a^2 + b^2)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cone:

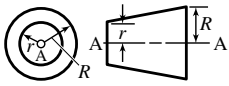


With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{3M}{10} r^2$

With reference to axis *BB* (through the center of gravity):

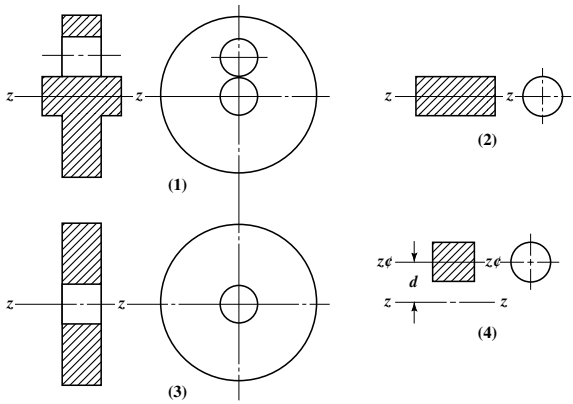
$$J_M = \frac{3M}{20}\left(r^2 + \frac{h^2}{4}\right)$$

Frustum of Cone:



With reference to axis *AA*: $J_M = \frac{3M(R^5 - r^5)}{10(R^3 - r^3)}$

Moments of Inertia of Complex Areas and Masses may be evaluated by the addition and subtraction of elementary areas and masses. For example, the accompanying figure shows a complex mass at (1); its mass polar moment of inertia can be determined by adding the moments of inertia of the bodies shown at (2) and (3), and subtracting that at (4). Thus, $J_{M1} = J_{M2} + J_{M3} - J_{M4}$. All of these moments of inertia are with respect to the axis of rotation $z - z$. Formulas for J_{M2} and J_{M3} can be obtained from the tables beginning on page 253. The moment of inertia for the body at (4) can be evaluated by using the following transfer-axis equation: $J_{M4} = J_{M4}' + d^2M$. The term J_{M4}' is the moment of inertia with respect to axis $z' - z'$; it may be evaluated using the same equation that applies to J_{M2} where d is the distance between the $z - z$ and the $z' - z'$ axes, and M is the mass of the body (= weight in lbs ÷ g).



Moments of Inertia of Complex Masses

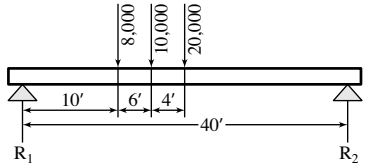
Similar calculations can be made when calculating I and J for complex areas using the appropriate transfer-axis equations $I = I' + d^2A$ and $J = J' + d^2A$. The primed term, I' or J', is with respect to the center of gravity of the corresponding area A; d is the distance between the axis through the center of gravity and the axis to which I or J is referred.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BEAMS

Beam Calculations

Reaction at the Supports.—When a beam is loaded by vertical loads or forces, the sum of the reactions at the supports equals the sum of the loads. In a simple beam, when the loads are symmetrically placed with reference to the supports, or when the load is uniformly distributed, the reaction at each end will equal one-half the sum of the loads. When the loads are not symmetrically placed, the reaction at each support may be ascertained from the fact that the algebraic sum of the moments must equal zero. In the accompanying illustration, if moments are taken about the support to the left, then: $R_2 \times 40 - 8000 \times 10 - 10{,}000 \times 16 - 20{,}000 \times 20 = 0$; $R_2 = 16{,}000$ pounds. In the same way, moments taken about the support at the right give $R_1 = 22{,}000$ pounds.



The sum of the reactions equals 38,000 pounds, which is also the sum of the loads. If part of the load is uniformly distributed over the beam, this part is first equally divided between the two supports, or the uniform load may be considered as concentrated at its center of gravity.

If metric SI units are used for the calculations, distances may be expressed in meters or millimeters, provided the treatment is consistent, and loads in newtons. ***Note:*** **If the load is given in kilograms, the value referred to is the mass. A mass of** ***M*** **kilograms has a weight (applies a force) of** ***Mg*** **newtons, where** ***g*** **= approximately 9.81 m/s^2.**

Stresses and Deflections in Beams.—On the following pages Table 1 gives an extensive list of formulas for stresses and deflections in beams, shafts, etc. It is assumed that all the dimensions are in inches, all loads in pounds, and all stresses in pounds per square inch. **The formulas are also valid using metric SI units, with all dimensions in millimeters, all loads in newtons, and stresses and moduli in newtons per millimeter^2 (N/mm^2).** ***Note:*** **A load due to the weight of a mass of** ***M*** **kilograms is** ***Mg*** **newtons, where** ***g*** **= approximately 9.81 m/s^2.** In the tables:

E = modulus of elasticity of the material

I = moment of inertia of the cross section of the beam

Z = section modulus of the cross section of the beam = $I \div$ distance from neutral axis to extreme fiber

W = load on beam

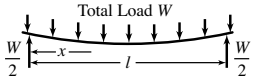
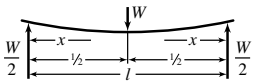
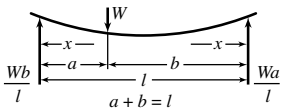
s = stress in extreme fiber, or maximum stress in the cross section considered, due to load W. A positive value of s denotes tension in the upper fibers and compression in the lower ones (as in a cantilever). A negative value of s denotes the reverse (as in a beam supported at the ends). The greatest safe load is that value of W which causes a maximum stress equal to, but not exceeding, the greatest safe value of s

y = deflection measured from the position occupied if the load causing the deflection were removed. A positive value of y denotes deflection below this position; a negative value, deflection upward

u, v, w, x = variable distances along the beam from a given support to any point

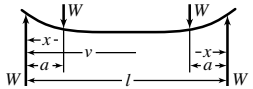
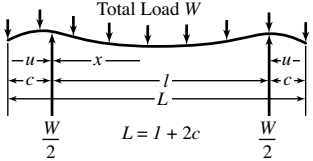
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Stresses and Deflections in Beams

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 1. — Supported at Both Ends, Uniform Load				
 W = wl (where w = load per unit length)	$s = -\frac{W}{2Zl}x(l-x)$	Stress at center, $-\frac{Wl}{8Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	$y = \frac{Wx(l-x)}{24EIl}[l^2 + x(l-x)]$	Maximum deflection, at center, $\frac{5}{384}\frac{Wl^3}{EI}$
Case 2. — Supported at Both Ends, Load at Center				
	Between each support and load, $s = -\frac{Wx}{2Z}$	Stress at center, $-\frac{Wl}{4Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	Between each support and load, $y = \frac{Wx}{48EI}(3l^2 - 4x^2)$	Maximum deflection, at load, $\frac{Wl^3}{48EI}$
Case 3. — Supported at Both Ends, Load at any Point				
	For segment of length a, $s = -\frac{Wbx}{Zl}$ For segment of length b, $s = -\frac{Wav}{Zl}$	Stress at load, $-\frac{Wab}{Zl}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	For segment of length a, $y = \frac{Wbx}{6EIl}(l^2 - x^2 - b^2)$ For segment of length b, $y = \frac{Wav}{6EIl}(l^2 - v^2 - a^2)$	Deflection at load, $\frac{Wa^2b^2}{3EIl}$ Let a be the length of the shorter segment and b of the longer one. The maximum deflection $\frac{Wav_1^3}{3EIl}$ is in the longer segment, at $v = b\sqrt{\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2a}{3b}} = v_1$

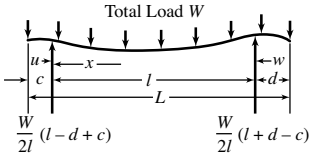
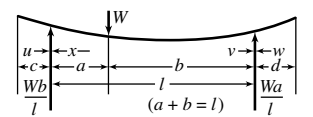
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 4. — Supported at Both Ends, Two Symmetrical Loads				
	Between each support and adjacent load, $s = -\frac{Wx}{Z}$ Between loads, $s = -\frac{Wa}{Z}$	Stress at each load, and at all points between, $-\frac{Wa}{Z}$	Between each support and adjacent load, $y = \frac{Wx}{6EI}[3a(l-a)-x^2]$ Between loads, $y = \frac{Wa}{6EI}[3v(l-v)-a^2]$	Maximum deflection at center, $\frac{Wa}{24EI}(3l^2-4a^2)$ Deflection at loads $\frac{Wa^2}{6EI}(3l-4a)$
Case 5. — Both Ends Overhanging Supports Symmetrically, Uniform Load				
	Between each support and adjacent end, $s = \frac{W}{2Zl}(c-u)^2$ Between supports, $s = \frac{W}{2ZL}[c^2-x(l-x)]$	Stress at each support, $\frac{Wc^2}{2ZL}$ Stress at center, $\frac{W}{2ZL}\left(c^2-\frac{1}{4}l^2\right)$ If cross section is constant, the greater of these is the maximum stress. If l is greater than $2c$, the stress is zero at points $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}l^2-c^2}$ on both sides of the center. If cross section is constant and if $l = 2.828c$, the stresses at supports and center are equal and opposite, and are $\pm\frac{WL}{46.62Z}$	Between each support and adjacent end, $y = \frac{Wu}{24EIL}[6c^2(l+u) - u^2(4c-u)-l^3]$ Between supports, $y = \frac{Wx(l-x)}{24EIL}[x(l-x)+l^2-6c^2]$	Deflection at ends, $\frac{Wc}{24EIL}[3c^2(c+2l)-l^3]$ Deflection at center, $\frac{Wl^2}{384EIL}(5l^2-24c^2)$ If l is between $2c$ and $2.449c$, there are maximum upward deflections at points $\sqrt{3\left(\frac{1}{4}l^2-c^2\right)}$ on both sides of the center, which are, $-\frac{W}{96EIL}(6c^2-l^2)^2$

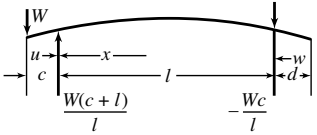
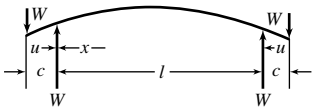
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses: General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses: Stresses at Critical Points	Deflections: General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections: Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 6. — Both Ends Overhanging Supports Unsymmetrically, Uniform Load				
	For overhanging end of length c, $s = \frac{W}{2ZL}(c-u)^2$ Between supports, $s = \frac{W}{2ZL}\left\{c^2\left(\frac{l-x}{l}\right) + d^2\frac{x}{l} - x(l-x)\right\}$ For overhanging end of length d, $s = \frac{W}{2ZL}(d-w)^2$	Stress at support next to end of length c, $\frac{Wc^2}{2ZL}$ Critical stress between supports is at $x = \frac{l^2+c^2-d^2}{2l} = x_1$ and is $\frac{W}{2ZL}(c^2 - x_1^2)$ Stress at support next to end of length d, $\frac{Wd^2}{2ZL}$ If cross section is constant, the greatest of these three is the maximum stress. If $x_1 > c$, the stress is zero at points $\sqrt{x_1^2 - c^2}$ on both sides of $x = x_1$.	For overhanging end of length c, $y = \frac{Wu}{24EIL}[2l(d^2+2c^2) + 6c^2u - u^2(4c-u) - l^3]$ Between supports, $y = \frac{Wx(l-x)}{24EIL}\{x(l-x) + l^2 - 2(d^2+c^2) - \frac{2}{l}[d^2x + c^2(l-x)]\}$ For overhanging end of length d, $y = \frac{Ww}{24EIL}[2l(c^2+2d^2) + 6d^2w - w^2(4d-w) - l^3]$	Deflection at end c, $\frac{Wc}{24EIL}[2l(d^2+2c^2) + 3c^3 - l^3]$ Deflection at end d, $\frac{Wd}{24EIL}[2l(c^2+2d^2) + 3d^3 - l^3]$ This case is so complicated that convenient general expressions for the critical deflections between supports cannot be obtained.
Case 7. — Both Ends Overhanging Supports, Load at any Point Between				
	Between supports: For segment of length a, $s = -\frac{Wbx}{Zl}$ For segment of length b, $s = -\frac{Wav}{Zl}$ Beyond supports $s = 0$.	Stress at load, $-\frac{Wab}{Zl}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	Between supports, same as Case 3. For overhanging end of length c, $y = -\frac{Wabu}{6EIl}(l+b)$ For overhanging end of length d, $y = -\frac{Wabw}{6EIl}(l+a)$	Between supports, same as Case 3. Deflection at end c, $-\frac{Wabc}{6EIl}(l+b)$ Deflection at end d, $-\frac{Wabd}{6EIl}(l+a)$

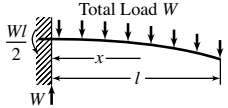
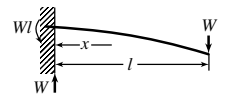
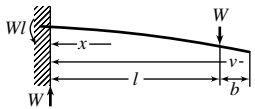
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 8. — Both Ends Overhanging Supports, Single Overhanging Load				
	Between load and adjacent support, $s = \frac{W}{Z}(c-u)$ Between supports, $s = \frac{Wc}{Zl}(l-x)$ Between unloaded end and adjacent supports, $s = 0$.	Stress at support adjacent to load, $\frac{Wc}{Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress. Stress is zero at other support.	Between load and adjacent support, $y = \frac{Wu}{6EI}(3cu - u^2 + 2cl)$ Between supports, $y = -\frac{Wcx}{6EIl}(l-x)(2l-x)$ Between unloaded end and adjacent support, $y = \frac{Wclw}{6EI}$	Deflection at load, $\frac{Wc^2}{3EI}(c+l)$ Maximum upward deflection is at $x = .42265l$, and is $-\frac{Wcl^2}{15.55EI}$ Deflection at unloaded end, $\frac{Wcld}{6EI}$
Case 9. — Both Ends Overhanging Supports, Symmetrical Overhanging Loads				
	Between each load and adjacent support, $s = \frac{W}{Z}(c-u)$ Between supports, $s = \frac{Wc}{Z}$	Stress at supports and at all points between, $\frac{Wc}{Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	Between each load and adjacent support, $y = \frac{Wu}{6EI}[3c(l+u) - u^2]$ Between supports, $y = -\frac{Wcx}{2EI}(l-x)$ The above expressions involve the usual approximations of the theory of flexure, and hold only for small deflections. Exact expressions for deflections of any magnitude are as follows: Between supports the curve is a circle of radius $r = \frac{EI}{Wc}$ Deflection at any point x between supports $y = \sqrt{r^2 - \frac{1}{4}l^2} - \sqrt{r^2 - \left(\frac{1}{2}l - x\right)^2}$ Deflection at center, $\sqrt{r^2 - \frac{1}{4}l^2} - r$	Deflections at loads, $\frac{Wc^2}{6EI}(2c+3l)$ Deflection at center, $-\frac{Wcl^2}{8EI}$

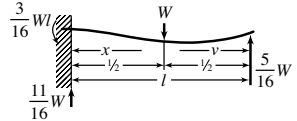
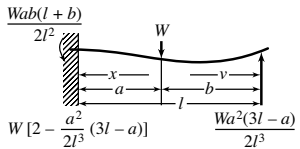
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 10. — Fixed at One End, Uniform Load				
	$s = \frac{W}{2Zl}(l-x)^2$	Stress at support, $\frac{Wl}{2Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{24EIl}[2l^2 + (2l-x)^2]$	Maximum deflection, at end, $\frac{Wl^3}{8EI}$
Case 11. — Fixed at One End, Load at Other				
	$s = \frac{W}{Z}(l-x)$	Stress at support, $\frac{Wl}{Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{6EI}(3l-x)$	Maximum deflection, at end, $\frac{Wl^3}{3EI}$
Case 12. — Fixed at One End, Intermediate Load				
	Between support and load, $s = \frac{W}{Z}(l-x)$ Beyond load, $s = 0$.	Stress at support, $\frac{Wl}{Z}$ If cross section is constant, this is the maximum stress.	Between support and load, $y = \frac{Wx^2}{6EI}(3l-x)$ Beyond load, $y = \frac{Wl^2}{6EI}(3v-l)$	Deflection at load, $\frac{Wl^3}{3EI}$ Maximum deflection, at end, $\frac{Wl^2}{6EI}(2l+3b)$

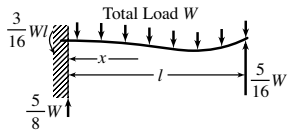
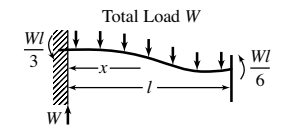
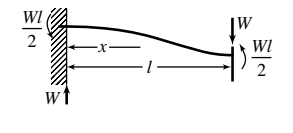
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 13. — Fixed at One End, Supported at the Other, Load at Center				
	Between point of fixture and load, $s = \frac{W}{16Z}(3l - 11x)$ Between support and load, $s = -\frac{5}{16}\frac{Wv}{Z}$	Maximum stress at point of fixture, $\frac{3}{16}\frac{Wl}{Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = 3/11\,l$ Greatest negative stress at center, $-\frac{5}{32}\frac{Wl}{Z}$	Between point of fixture and load, $y = \frac{Wx^2}{96EI}(9l - 11x)$ Between support and load, $y = \frac{Wv}{96EI}(3l^2 - 5v^2)$	Maximum deflection is at $v =$ 0.4472l, and is $\frac{Wl^3}{107.33EI}$ Deflection at load, $\frac{7}{768}\frac{Wl^3}{EI}$
Case 14. — Fixed at One End, Supported at the Other, Load at any Point				
$m = (l + a)(l + b) + al$ $n = al(l + b)$ 	Between point of fixture and load, $s = \frac{Wb}{2Zl^3}(n - mx)$ Between support and load, $s = -\frac{Wa^2v}{2Zl^3}(3l - a)$	Greatest positive stress, at point of fixture, $\frac{Wab}{2Zl^2}(l + b)$ Greatest negative stress, at load, $-\frac{Wa^2b}{2Zl^3}(3l - a)$ If $a < 0.5858l$, the first is the maximum stress. If $a = 0.5858l$, the two are equal and are $\pm\frac{Wl}{5.83Z}$ If $a > 0.5858l$, the second is the maximum stress. Stress is zero at $x = \frac{n}{m}$	Between point of fixture and load, $y = \frac{Wx^2b}{12EIl^3}(3n - mx)$ Between support and load, $y = \frac{Wa^2v}{12EIl^3}[3l^2b - v^2(3l - a)]$	Deflection at load, $\frac{Wa^3b^2}{12EIl^3}(3l + b)$ If $a < 0.5858l$, maximum deflection is $\frac{Wa^2b}{6EI}\sqrt{\frac{b}{2l + b}}$ and located between load and support, at $v = l\sqrt{\frac{b}{2l + b}}$ If $a = 0.5858l$, maximum deflection is at load and is $\frac{Wl^3}{101.9EI}$ If $a > 0.5858l$, maximum deflection is $\frac{Wbn^3}{3E\,\mathrm{Im}^2l^3}$ and located between load and point of fixture, at $x = \frac{2n}{m}$

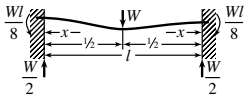
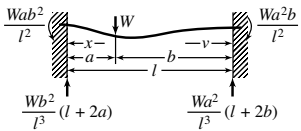
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 15. — Fixed at One End, Supported at the Other, Uniform Load				
	$s = \frac{W(l-x)}{2Zl}\left(\frac{1}{4}l - x\right)$	Maximum stress at point of fixture, $\frac{Wl}{8Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = \frac{1}{4}l$. Greatest negative stress is at $x = \frac{5}{8}l$ and is $-\frac{9}{128}\frac{Wl}{Z}$	$y = \frac{Wx^2(l-x)}{48EIl}(3l - 2x)$	Maximum deflection is at $x =$ 0.5785l, and is $\frac{Wl^3}{185EI}$ Deflection at center, $\frac{Wl^3}{192EI}$ Deflection at point of greatest negative stress, at $x = \frac{5}{8}l$ is $\frac{Wl^3}{187EI}$
Case 16. — Fixed at One End, Free but Guided at the Other, Uniform Load				
	$s = \frac{Wl}{Z}\left\{\frac{1}{3} - \frac{x}{l} + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x}{l}\right)^2\right\}$	Maximum stress, at support, $\frac{Wl}{3Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = 0.4227l$ Greatest negative stress, at free end, $-\frac{Wl}{6Z}$	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{24EIl}(2l - x)^2$	Maximum deflection, at free end, $\frac{Wl^3}{24EI}$
Case 17. — Fixed at One End, Free but Guided at the Other, with Load				
	$s = \frac{W}{Z}\left(\frac{1}{2}l - x\right)$	Stress at support, $\frac{Wl}{2Z}$ Stress at free end, $-\frac{Wl}{2Z}$ These are the maximum stresses and are equal and opposite. Stress is zero at center.	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{12EI}(3l - 2x)$	Maximum deflection, at free end, $\frac{Wl^3}{12EI}$

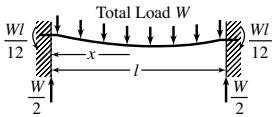
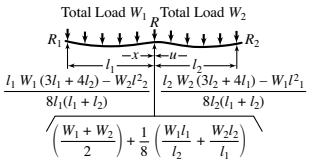
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 18. — Fixed at Both Ends, Load at Center				
	Between each end and load, $s = \frac{W}{2Z}\left(\frac{1}{4}l - x\right)$	Stress at ends, $\frac{Wl}{8Z}$ Stress at load, $-\frac{Wl}{8Z}$ These are the maximum stresses and are equal and opposite. Stress is zero at $x = ¼\,l$	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{48EI}(3l - 4x)$	Maximum deflection, at load, $\frac{Wl^3}{192EI}$
Case 19. — Fixed at Both Ends, Load at any Point				
	For segment of length a, $s = \frac{Wb^2}{Zl^3}[al - x(l + 2a)]$ For segment of length b, $s = \frac{Wa^2}{Zl^3}[bl - v(l + 2b)]$	Stress at end next to segment of length a, $\frac{Wab^2}{Zl^2}$ Stress at end next to segment of length b, $\frac{Wa^2b}{Zl^2}$ Maximum stress is at end next to shorter segment. Stress is zero at $x = \frac{al}{l + 2a}$ and $v = \frac{bl}{l + 2b}$ Greatest negative stress, at load, $-\frac{2Wa^2b^2}{Zl^3}$	For segment of length a, $y = \frac{Wx^2b^2}{6EIl^3}[2a(l - x) + l(a - x)]$ For segment of length b, $y = \frac{Wv^2a^2}{6EIl^3}[2b(l - v) + l(b - v)]$	Deflection at load, $\frac{Wa^3b^3}{3EIl^3}$ Let b be the length of the longer segment and a of the shorter one. The maximum deflection is in the longer segment, at $v = \frac{2bl}{l + 2b}$ and is $\frac{2Wa^2b^3}{3EI(l + 2b)^2}$

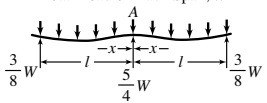
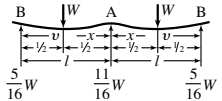
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 20. — Fixed at Both Ends, Uniform Load				
	$s = \frac{Wl}{2Z}\left\{\frac{1}{6} - \frac{x}{l} + \left(\frac{x}{l}\right)^2\right\}$	Maximum stress, at ends, $\frac{Wl}{12Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = 0.7887l$ and at $x = 0.2113l$ Greatest negative stress, at center, $-\frac{Wl}{24Z}$	$y = \frac{Wx^2}{24EIl}(l - x)^2$	Maximum deflection, at center, $\frac{Wl^3}{384EI}$
Case 21. — Continuous Beam, with Two Unequal Spans, Unequal, Uniform Loads				
	Between R_1 and R, $s = \frac{l_1 - x}{Z}\left\{\frac{(l_1 - x)W_1}{2l_1} - R_1\right\}$ Between R_2 and R, $s = \frac{l_2 - u}{Z}\left\{\frac{(l_2 - u)W_2}{2l_2} - R_2\right\}$	Stress at support R, $\frac{W_1 l_1^2 + W_2 l_2^2}{8Z(l_1 + l_2)}$ Greatest stress in the first span is at $x = \frac{l_1}{W_1}(W_1 - R_1)$ and is $-\frac{R_1^2 l_1}{2ZW_1}$ Greatest stress in the second span is at $u = \frac{l_2}{W_2}(W_2 - R_2)$ and is, $-\frac{R_2^2 l_2}{2ZW_2}$	Between R_1 and R, $y = \frac{x(l_1 - x)}{24EI}\left\{(2l_1 - x)(4R_1 - W_1) - \frac{W_1(l_1 - x)^2}{l_1}\right\}$ Between R_2 and R, $y = \frac{u(l_2 - u)}{24EI}\left\{(2l_2 - u)(4R_2 - W_2) - \frac{W_2(l_2 - u)^2}{l_2}\right\}$	This case is so complicated that convenient general expressions for the critical deflections cannot be obtained.

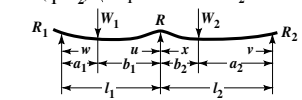
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 22. — Continuous Beam, with Two Equal Spans, Uniform Load				
Total Load on Each Span, W  	$s = \frac{W(l-x)}{2Zl}\left(\frac{1}{4}l - x\right)$	Maximum stress at point A, $\frac{Wl}{8Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = \frac{1}{4}l$ Greatest negative stress is at $x = \frac{5}{8}l$ and is, $-\frac{9}{128}\frac{Wl}{Z}$	$y = \frac{Wx^2(l-x)}{48EIl}(3l - 2x)$	Maximum deflection is at $x = 0.5785l$, and is $\frac{Wl^3}{185EI}$ Deflection at center of span, $\frac{Wl^3}{192EI}$ Deflection at point of greatest negative stress, at $x = \frac{5}{8}l$ is $\frac{Wl^3}{187EI}$
Case 23. — Continuous Beam, with Two Equal Spans, Equal Loads at Center of Each				
 	Between point A and load, $s = \frac{W}{16Z}(3l - 11x)$ Between point B and load, $s = -\frac{5}{16}\frac{Wv}{Z}$	Maximum stress at point A, $\frac{3}{16}\frac{Wl}{Z}$ Stress is zero at $x = \frac{3}{11}l$ Greatest negative stress at center of span, $-\frac{5}{32}\frac{Wl}{Z}$	Between point A and load, $y = \frac{Wx^2}{96EI}(9l - 11x)$ Between point B and load, $y = \frac{Wv}{96EI}(3l^2 - 5v^2)$	Maximum deflection is at $v = 0.4472l$, and is $\frac{Wl^3}{107.33EI}$ Deflection at load, $\frac{7}{768}\frac{Wl^3}{EI}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Stresses and Deflections in Beams**

Type of Beam	Stresses		Deflections	
	General Formula for Stress at any Point	Stresses at Critical Points	General Formula for Deflection at any Point[a]	Deflections at Critical Points[a]
Case 24. — Continuous Beam, with Two Unequal Spans, Unequal Loads at any Point of Each				
$m = \frac{1}{2(l_1+l_2)}\left(\frac{W_1a_1b_1}{l_1}(l_1+a_1)+\frac{W_2a_2b_2}{l_2}(l_2+a_2)\right)$  $\frac{W_1b_1-m}{l_1}$ $\frac{W_1a_1+m}{l_1}+\frac{W_2a_2+m}{l_2}$ $\frac{W_2b_2-m}{l_2}$ $= r_1$ $= r$ $= r_2$	Between R_1 and W_1, $s = -\frac{wr_1}{Z}$ Between R and W_1, $s =$ $\frac{1}{l_1 Z}[m(l_1-u)-W_1a_1u]$ Between R and W_2, $s =$ $\frac{1}{l_2 Z}[m(l_2-x)-W_2a_2x]$ Between R_2 and W_2, $s = -\frac{vr_2}{Z}$	Stress at load W_1, $-\frac{a_1r_1}{Z}$ Stress at support R, $\frac{m}{Z}$ Stress at load W_2, $-\frac{a_2r_2}{Z}$ The greatest of these is the maximum stress.	Between R_1 and W_1, $y = \frac{w}{6EIl_1}\left\{(l_1-w)(l_1+w)r_1-\frac{W_1b_1^3}{l_1}\right\}$ Between R and W_1, $y = \frac{u}{6EIl_1}[W_1a_1b_1(l_1+a_1)-W_1a_1u^2-m(2l_1-u)(l_1-u)]$ Between R and W_2 $y = \frac{x}{6EIl_2}[W_2a_2b_2(l_2+a_2)-W_2a_2x^2-m(2l_2-x)(l_2-x)]$ Between R_2 and W_2, $y = \frac{v}{6EI}\left\{(l_2-v)(l_2+v)r_2-\frac{W_2b_2^3}{l_2}\right\}$	Deflection at load W_1, $\frac{a_1b_1}{6EIl_1}[2a_1b_1W_1-m(l_1+a_1)]$ Deflection at load W_2, $\frac{a_2b_2}{6EIl_2}[2a_2b_2W_2-m(l_2+a_2)]$ This case is so complicated that convenient general expressions for the maximum deflections cannot be obtained.

[a] The deflections apply only to cases where the cross section of the beam is constant for its entire length.

In the diagrammatical illustrations of the beams and their loading, the values indicated near, but below, the supports are the "reactions" or upward forces at the supports. For Cases 1 to 12, inclusive, the reactions, as well as the formulas for the stresses, are the same whether the beam is of constant or variable cross section. For the other cases, the reactions and the stresses given are for constant cross section beams only.

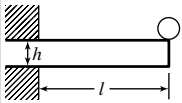
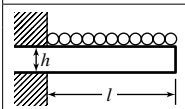
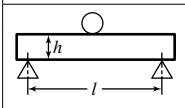
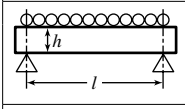
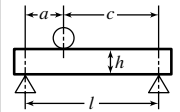
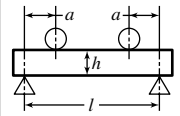
The bending moment at any point in inch-pounds (newton-meters if metric units are used) is $s \times Z$ and can be found by omitting the divisor Z in the formula for the stress given in the tables. A positive value of the bending moment denotes tension in the upper fibers and compression in the lower ones. A negative value denotes the reverse, The value of W corresponding to a given stress is found by transposition of the formula. For example, in Case 1, the stress at the critical point is $s = -Wl \div 8Z$. From this formula we find $W = -8Zs \div l$. Of course, the negative sign of W may be ignored.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In Table 1, if there are several kinds of loads, as, for instance, a uniform load and a load at any point, or separate loads at different points, the total stress and the total deflection at any point is found by adding together the various stresses or deflections at the point considered due to each load acting by itself. If the stress or deflection due to any one of the loads is negative, it must be subtracted instead of added.

Table 2a and Table 2b give expressions for determining dimensions of rectangular and round beams in terms of beam stresses and load.

Table 2a. Rectangular Solid Beams

Style of Loading and Support	Breadth of Beam, b inch (mm)	Beam Height, h inch (mm)	Stress in Extreme Fibers, f lb/in^2 (N/mm^2)	Beam Length, l inch (mm)	Total Load, W lb (N)
	Beam fixed at one end, loaded at the other				
	$\frac{6lW}{fh^2} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{6lW}{bf}} = h$	$\frac{6lW}{bh^2} = f$	$\frac{bfh^2}{6W} = l$	$\frac{bfh^2}{6l} = W$
	Beam fixed at one end, uniformly loaded				
	$\frac{3lW}{fh^2} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{3lW}{bf}} = h$	$\frac{3lW}{bh^2} = f$	$\frac{bfh^2}{3W} = l$	$\frac{bfh^2}{3l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, single load in middle				
	$\frac{3lW}{2fh^2} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{3lW}{2bf}} = h$	$\frac{3lW}{2bh^2} = f$	$\frac{2bfh^2}{3W} = l$	$\frac{2bfh^2}{3l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, uniformly loaded				
	$\frac{3lW}{4fh^2} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{3lW}{4bf}} = h$	$\frac{3lW}{4bh^2} = f$	$\frac{4bfh^2}{3W} = l$	$\frac{4bfh^2}{3l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, single unsymmetrical load				
	$\frac{6Wac}{fh^2l} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{6Wac}{bfl}} = h$	$\frac{6Wac}{bh^2l} = f$	$a + c = l$	$\frac{bh^2fl}{6ac} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, two symmetrical loads				
	$\frac{3Wa}{fh^2} = b$	$\sqrt{\frac{3Wa}{bf}} = h$	$\frac{3Wa}{bh^2} = f$	l, any length $\frac{bh^2f}{3W} = a$	$\frac{bh^2f}{3a} = W$

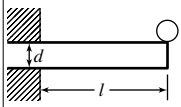
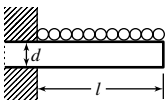
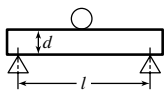
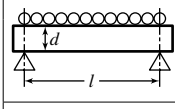
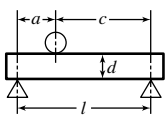
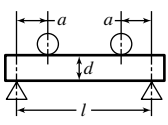
Deflection of Beam Uniformly Loaded for Part of Its Length.—In the following formulas, lengths are in inches, weights in pounds. W = total load; L = total length between supports; E = modulus of elasticity; I = moment of inertia of beam section; a = fraction of length of beam at each end, that is not loaded = $b \div L$; and f = deflection.

$$f = \frac{WL^3}{384EI(1-2a)}(5 - 24a^2 + 16a^4)$$

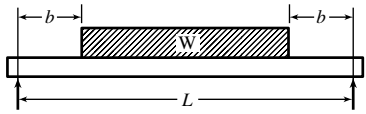
The expression for maximum bending moment is: $M_{max} = \frac{1}{8}WL(1+2a)$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Round Solid Beams

Style of Loading and Support	Diameter of Beam, d inch (mm)	Stress in Extreme Fibers, f lb/in² (N/mm²)	Beam Length, l inch (mm)	Total Load, W lb (N)
	Beam fixed at one end, loaded at the other			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18lW}{f}} = d$	$\frac{10.18lW}{d^3} = f$	$\frac{d^3f}{10.18W} = l$	$\frac{d^3f}{10.18l} = W$
	Beam fixed at one end, uniformly loaded			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{5.092Wl}{f}} = d$	$\frac{5.092Wl}{d^3} = f$	$\frac{d^3f}{5.092W} = l$	$\frac{d^3f}{5.092l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, single load in middle			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{2.546Wl}{f}} = d$	$\frac{2.546Wl}{d^3} = f$	$\frac{d^3f}{2.546W} = l$	$\frac{d^3f}{2.546l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, uniformly loaded			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{1.273Wl}{f}} = d$	$\frac{1.273Wl}{d^3} = f$	$\frac{d^3f}{1.273W} = l$	$\frac{d^3f}{1.273l} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, single unsymmetrical load			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18Wac}{fl}} = d$	$\frac{10.18Wac}{d^3l} = f$	$a + c = l$	$\frac{d^3fl}{10.18ac} = W$
	Beam supported at both ends, two symmetrical loads			
	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{5.092Wa}{f}} = d$	$\frac{5.092Wa}{d^3} = f$	l, any length $\frac{d^3f}{5.092W} = a$	$\frac{d^3f}{5.092a} = W$

These formulas apply to simple beams resting on supports at the ends.



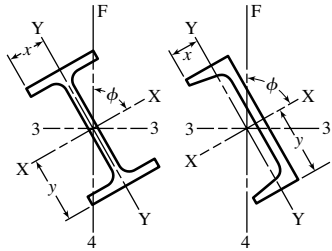
If the formulas are used with metric SI units, W = total load in newtons (N); L = total length between supports in millimeters; E = modulus of elasticity in newtons per millimeter² (N/mm²); I = moment of inertia of beam section in mm⁴; a = fraction of length of beam at each end, that is not loaded = $b \div L$; and f = deflection in mm. The bending moment M_{max} is in newton-millimeters (N·mm).

Note: **A load due to the weight of a mass of M kilograms is Mg newtons, where g = approximately 9.81 m/s².**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bending Stress Due to an Oblique Transverse Force.—The following illustration shows a beam and a channel being subjected to a transverse force acting at an angle ϕ to the center of gravity. To find the bending stress, the moments of inertia I around axes 3-3 and 4-4 are computed from the following equations: $I_3 = I_x \sin^2\phi + I_y \cos^2\phi$, and $I_4 = I_x \cos^2\phi + I_y \sin^2\phi$.

The computed bending stress f_b is then found from $f_b = M\left(\frac{y}{I_x}\sin\phi + \frac{x}{I_y}\cos\phi\right)$ where M is the bending moment due to force F.

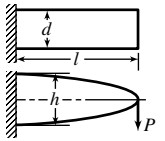
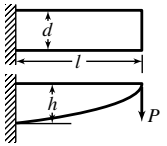
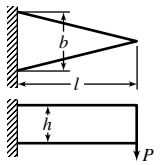
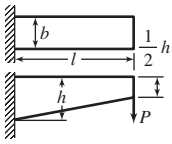
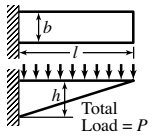
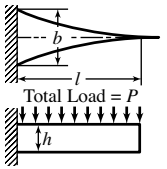


Beams of Uniform Strength Throughout Their Length.—The bending moment in a beam is generally not uniform throughout its length, but varies. Therefore, a beam of uniform cross section which is made strong enough at its most strained section will have an excess of material at every other section. Sometimes it may be desirable to have the cross section uniform, but at other times the metal can be more advantageously distributed if the beam is so designed that its cross section varies from point to point, so that it is at every point just great enough to take care of the bending stresses at that point. Table 3a and Table 3b are given showing beams in which the load is applied in different ways and which are supported by different methods, and the shape of the beam required for uniform strength is indicated. It should be noted that the shape given is the theoretical shape required to resist bending only. It is apparent that sufficient cross section of beam must also be added either at the points of support (in beams supported at both ends), or at the point of application of the load (in beams loaded at one end), to take care of the vertical shear.

It should be noted that the theoretical shapes of the beams given in the two tables that follow are based on the stated assumptions of uniformity of width or depth of cross section, and unless these are observed in the design the theoretical outlines do not apply without modifications. For example, in a cantilever with the load at one end, the outline is a parabola only when the width of the beam is uniform. It is not correct to use a strictly parabolic shape when the thickness is not uniform, as, for instance, when the beam is made of an I- or T-section. In such cases, some modification may be necessary; but it is evident that whatever the shape adopted, the correct depth of the section can be obtained by an investigation of the bending moment and the shearing load at a number of points, and then a line can be drawn through the points thus ascertained, which will provide for a beam of practically uniform strength whether the cross section be of uniform width or not.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

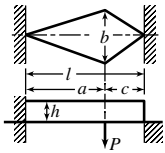
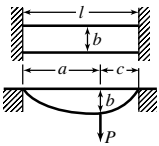
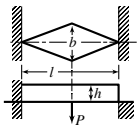
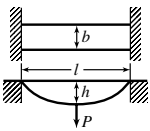
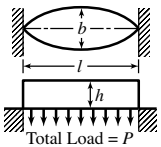
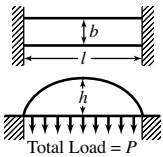
Table 3a. Beams of Uniform Strength Throughout Their Length

Type of Beam	Description	Formula[a]
	Load at one end. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam decreasing towards loaded end. Outline of beam-shape, parabola with vertex at loaded end.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{6l}$
	Load at one end. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam decreasing towards loaded end. Outline of beam, one-half of a parabola with vertex at loaded end. Beam may be reversed so that upper edge is parabolic.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{6l}$
	Load at one end. Depth of beam uniform. Width of beam decreasing towards loaded end. Outline of beam triangular, with apex at loaded end.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{6l}$
	Beam of *approximately* uniform strength. Load at one end. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam decreasing towards loaded end, but not tapering to a sharp point.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{6l}$
	Uniformly distributed load. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam decreasing towards outer end. Outline of beam, right-angle triangle.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{3l}$
	Uniformly distributed load. Depth of beam uniform. Width of beam gradually decreasing towards outer end. Outline of beam is formed by two parabolas which are tangent to each other at their vertexes at the outer end of the beam.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2}{3l}$

[a] In the formulas, P = load in pounds; S = safe stress in lb/in^2; and a, b, c, h, and l are in inches. **If metric SI units are used, P is in newtons (N); S = safe stress in N/mm^2; and a, b, c, h, and l are in millimeters.**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3b. Beams of Uniform Strength Throughout Their Length

Type of Beam	Description	Formula[a]
	Beam supported at both ends. Load concentrated at any point. Depth of beam uniform. Width of beam maximum at point of loading. Outline of beam, two triangles with apexes at points of support.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2 l}{6ac}$
	Beam supported at both ends. Load concentrated at any point. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam maximum at point of loading. Outline of beam is formed by two parabolas with their vertexes at points of support.	$P = \frac{Sbh^2 l}{6ac}$
	Beam supported at both ends. Load concentrated in the middle. Depth of beam uniform. Width of beam maximum at point of loading. Outline of beam, two triangles with apexes at points of support.	$P = \frac{2Sbh^2}{3l}$
	Beam supported at both ends. Load concentrated at center. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam maximum at point of loading. Outline of beam, two parabolas with vertices at points of support.	$P = \frac{2Sbh^2}{3l}$
	Beam supported at both ends. Load uniformly distributed. Depth of beam uniform. Width of beam maximum at center. Outline of beam, two parabolas with vertexes at middle of beam.	$P = \frac{4Sbh^2}{3l}$
	Beam supported at both ends. Load uniformly distributed. Width of beam uniform. Depth of beam maximum at center. Outline of beam one-half of an ellipse.	$P = \frac{4Sbh^2}{3l}$

[a] For details of English and metric SI units used in the formulas, see footnote on page 271.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Deflection as a Limiting Factor in Beam Design.—For some applications, a beam must be stronger than required by the maximum load it is to support in order to prevent excessive deflection. Maximum allowable deflections vary widely for different classes of service, so a general formula for determining them cannot be given. When exceptionally stiff girders are required, one rule is to limit the deflection to 1 inch per 100 feet of span; hence, if l = length of span in inches, deflection = $l \div 1200$. According to another formula, deflection limit = $l \div 360$ where beams are adjacent to materials like plaster, which would be broken by excessive beam deflection. Some machine parts of the beam type must be very rigid to maintain alignment under load. For example, the deflection of a punch press column may be limited to 0.010 inch or less. These examples merely illustrate variations in practice. It is impracticable to give general formulas for determining the allowable deflection in any specific application because the allowable amount depends on the conditions governing each class of work.

Procedure in Designing for Deflection: Assume that a deflection equal to $l \div 1200$ is to be the limiting factor in selecting a wide-flange (W-shape) beam having a span length of 144 inches. Supports are at both ends and load at center is 15,000 pounds. Deflection y is to be limited to $144 \div 1200 = 0.12$ inch. According to the formula on page 257 (Case 2), in which W = load on beam in pounds, l = length of span in inches, E = modulus of elasticity of material in psi, and I = moment of inertia of cross section in inches^4:

$$\text{Deflection } y = \frac{Wl^3}{48EI} \text{ hence, } I = \frac{Wl^3}{48yE} = \frac{15{,}000 \times 144^3}{48 \times 0.12 \times 29{,}000{,}000} = 268.1$$

A structural wide-flange beam, see *Steel Wide-Flange Sections* on page 2694, having a depth of 12 inches and weighing 35 pounds per foot has a moment of inertia I of 285 and a section modulus (Z or S) of 45.6. Checking now for maximum stress s (Case 2, page 257):

$$s = \frac{Wl}{4Z} = \frac{15{,}000 \times 144}{4 \times 46.0} = 11{,}842 \text{ lbs/in}^2$$

Although deflection is the limiting factor in this case, the maximum stress is checked to make sure that it is within the allowable limit. As the limiting deflection is decreased, for a given load and length of span, the beam strength and rigidity must be increased, and, consequently, the maximum stress is decreased. Thus, in the preceding example, if the maximum deflection is 0.08 inch instead of 0.12 inch, then the calculated value for the moment of inertia I will be 402; hence a W 12 × 53 beam having an I value of 426 could be used (nearest value above 402). The maximum stress then would be reduced to 7640 lb/in^2 and the calculated deflection is 0.076 inch.

A similar example using metric SI units is as follows. Assume that a deflection equal to $l \div 1000$ mm is to be the limiting factor in selecting a W-beam having a span length of 5 meters. Supports are at both ends and the load at the center is 30 kN. Deflection y is to be limited to $5000 \div 1000 = 5$ mm. The formula on page 257 (Case 2) is applied, and W = load on beam in N; l = length of span in mm; E = modulus of elasticity (assume 200,000 N/mm^2 in this example); and I = moment of inertia of cross section in mm^4. Thus,

$$\textbf{Deflection } y = \frac{Wl^3}{48EI}$$

hence

$$I = \frac{Wl^3}{48yE} = \frac{30{,}000 \times 5000^3}{48 \times 5 \times 200{,}000} = 78{,}125{,}000 \text{ mm}^4$$

Although deflection is the limiting factor in this case, the maximum stress is checked to make sure that it is within the allowable limit using the formula from page 257 (Case 2):

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$s = \frac{Wl}{4Z}$$

The units of *s* are newtons per square millimeter; *W* is the load in newtons; *l* is the length in mm; and *Z* = section modulus of the cross section of the beam = *I* ÷ distance in mm from neutral axis to extreme fiber.

Curved Beams.—The formula $S = Mc/I$ used to compute stresses due to bending of beams is based on the assumption that the beams are straight before any loads are applied. In beams having initial curvature, however, the stresses may be considerably higher than predicted by the ordinary straight-beam formula because the effect of initial curvature is to shift the neutral axis of a curved member in from the gravity axis toward the center of curvature (the concave side of the beam). This shift in the position of the neutral axis causes an increase in the stress on the concave side of the beam and decreases the stress at the outside fibers.

Hooks, press frames, and other machine members which as a rule have a rather pronounced initial curvature may have a maximum stress at the inside fibers of up to about $3\frac{1}{2}$ times that predicted by the ordinary straight-beam formula.

Stress Correction Factors for Curved Beams: A simple method for determining the maximum fiber stress due to bending of curved members consists of 1) calculating the maximum stress using the straight-beam formula $S = Mc/I$; and; and 2) multiplying the calculated stress by a stress correction factor. Table 4 on page 275 gives stress correction factors for some of the common cross sections and proportions used in the design of curved members.

An example in the application of the method using English units of measurement is given at the bottom of the table. **A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: The fiber stresses of a curved rectangular beam are calculated as 40 newtons per millimeter^2, using the straight beam formula, $S = Mc/I$. If the beam is 150 mm deep and its radius of curvature is 300 mm, what are the true stresses? $R/c = 300/75 = 4$. From Table 4 on page 275, the *K* factors corresponding to $R/c = 4$ are 1.20 and 0.85. Thus, the inside fiber stress is $40 \times 1.20 = 48$ N/mm^2 = 48 megapascals (MPa); and the outside fiber stress is $40 \times 0.85 = 34$ N/mm^2 = 34 MPa.**

Approximate Formula for Stress Correction Factor: The stress correction factors given in Table 4 on page 275 were determined by Wilson and Quereau and published in the University of Illinois Engineering Experiment Station Circular No. 16, "A Simple Method of Determining Stress in Curved Flexural Members." In this same publication the authors indicate that the following empirical formula may be used to calculate the value of the stress correction factor for the *inside* fibers of sections not covered by the tabular data to within 5 percent accuracy, except in triangular sections where up to 10 percent deviation may be expected. However, for most engineering calculations, this formula should prove satisfactory for general use in determining the factor for the inside fibers.

$$K = 1.00 + 0.5\frac{I}{bc^2}\left[\frac{1}{R-c} + \frac{1}{R}\right]$$

(Use 1.05 instead of 0.5 in this formula for circular and elliptical sections.)

I = moment of inertia of section about centroidal axis

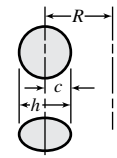
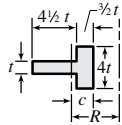
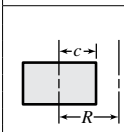
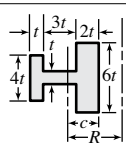
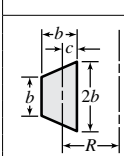
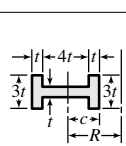
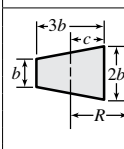
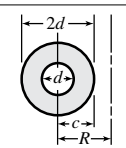
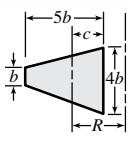
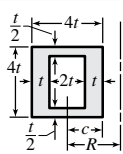
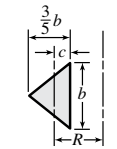
b = maximum width of section

c = distance from centroidal axis to inside fiber, i.e., to the extreme fiber nearest the center of curvature

R = radius of curvature of centroidal axis of beam

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

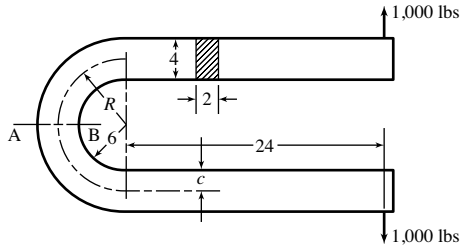
Table 4. Values of Stress Correction Factor *K* for Various Curved Beam Sections

Section	R/c	Factor K Inside Fiber	Factor K Outside Fiber	y_0[a]	Section	R/c	Factor K Inside Fiber	Factor K Outside Fiber	y_0[a]
	1.2	3.41	.54	.224*R*		1.2	3.63	.58	.418*R*
	1.4	2.40	.60	.151*R*		1.4	2.54	.63	.299*R*
	1.6	1.96	.65	.108*R*		1.6	2.14	.67	.229*R*
	1.8	1.75	.68	.084*R*		1.8	1.89	.70	.183*R*
	2.0	1.62	.71	.069*R*		2.0	1.73	.72	.149*R*
	3.0	1.33	.79	.030*R*		3.0	1.41	.79	.069*R*
	4.0	1.23	.84	.016*R*		4.0	1.29	.83	.040*R*
	6.0	1.14	.89	.0070*R*		6.0	1.18	.88	.018*R*
	8.0	1.10	.91	.0039*R*		8.0	1.13	.91	.010*R*
	10.0	1.08	.93	.0025*R*		10.0	1.10	.92	.0065*R*
	1.2	2.89	.57	.305*R*		1.2	3.55	.67	.409*R*
	1.4	2.13	.63	.204*R*		1.4	2.48	.72	.292*R*
	1.6	1.79	.67	.149*R*		1.6	2.07	.76	.224*R*
	1.8	1.63	.70	.112*R*		1.8	1.83	.78	.178*R*
	2.0	1.52	.73	.090*R*		2.0	1.69	.80	.144*R*
	3.0	1.30	.81	.041*R*		3.0	1.38	.86	.067*R*
	4.0	1.20	.85	.021*R*		4.0	1.26	.89	.038*R*
	6.0	1.12	.90	.0093*R*		6.0	1.15	.92	.018*R*
	8.0	1.09	.92	.0052*R*		8.0	1.10	.94	.010*R*
	10.0	1.07	.94	.0033*R*		10.0	1.08	.95	.0065*R*
	1.2	3.01	.54	.336*R*		1.2	2.52	.67	.408*R*
	1.4	2.18	.60	.229*R*		1.4	1.90	.71	.285*R*
	1.6	1.87	.65	.168*R*		1.6	1.63	.75	.208*R*
	1.8	1.69	.68	.128*R*		1.8	1.50	.77	.160*R*
	2.0	1.58	.71	.102*R*		2.0	1.41	.79	.127*R*
	3.0	1.33	.80	.046*R*		3.0	1.23	.86	.058*R*
	4.0	1.23	.84	.024*R*		4.0	1.16	.89	.030*R*
	6.0	1.13	.88	.011*R*		6.0	1.10	.92	.013*R*
	8.0	1.10	.91	.0060*R*		8.0	1.07	.94	.0076*R*
	10.0	1.08	.93	.0039*R*		10.0	1.05	.95	.0048*R*
	1.2	3.09	.56	.336*R*		1.2	3.28	.58	.269*R*
	1.4	2.25	.62	.229*R*		1.4	2.31	.64	.182*R*
	1.6	1.91	.66	.168*R*		1.6	1.89	.68	.134*R*
	1.8	1.73	.70	.128*R*		1.8	1.70	.71	.104*R*
	2.0	1.61	.73	.102*R*		2.0	1.57	.73	.083*R*
	3.0	1.37	.81	.046*R*		3.0	1.31	.81	.038*R*
	4.0	1.26	.86	.024*R*		4.0	1.21	.85	.020*R*
	6.0	1.17	.91	.011*R*		6.0	1.13	.90	.0087*R*
	8.0	1.13	.94	.0060*R*		8.0	1.10	.92	.0049*R*
	10.0	1.11	.95	.0039*R*		10.0	1.07	.93	.0031*R*
	1.2	3.14	.52	.352*R*		1.2	2.63	.68	.399*R*
	1.4	2.29	.54	.243*R*		1.4	1.97	.73	.280*R*
	1.6	1.93	.62	.179*R*		1.6	1.66	.76	.205*R*
	1.8	1.74	.65	.138*R*		1.8	1.51	.78	.159*R*
	2.0	1.61	.68	.110*R*		2.0	1.43	.80	.127*R*
	3.0	1.34	.76	.050*R*		3.0	1.23	.86	.058*R*
	4.0	1.24	.82	.028*R*		4.0	1.15	.89	.031*R*
	6.0	1.15	.87	.012*R*		6.0	1.09	.92	.014*R*
	8.0	1.12	.91	.0060*R*		8.0	1.07	.94	.0076*R*
	10.0	1.10	.93	.0039*R*		10.0	1.06	.95	.0048*R*
	1.2	3.26	.44	.361*R*	*Example:* The fiber stresses of a curved rectangular beam are calculated as 5000 psi using the straight beam formula, $S = Mc/I$. If the beam is 8 inches deep and its radius of curvature is 12 inches, what are the true stresses? *Solution:* $R/c = 12/4 = 3$. The factors in the table corresponding to $R/c = 3$ are 0.81 and 1.30. Outside fiber stress = 5000 × 0.81 = 4050 psi; inside fiber stress = 5000 × 1.30 = 6500 psi.			
	1.4	2.39	.50	.251*R*					
	1.6	1.99	.54	.186*R*					
	1.8	1.78	.57	.144*R*					
	2.0	1.66	.60	.116*R*					
	3.0	1.37	.70	.052*R*					
	4.0	1.27	.75	.029*R*					
	6.0	1.16	.82	.013*R*					
	8.0	1.12	.86	.0060*R*					
	10.0	1.09	.88	.0039*R*					

[a] y_0 is the distance from the centroidal axis to the neutral axis of curved beams subjected to pure bending and is measured from the centroidal axis toward the center of curvature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The accompanying diagram shows the dimensions of a clamp frame of rectangular cross section. Determine the maximum stress at points *A* and *B* due to a clamping force of 1000 pounds.



The cross-sectional area = 2 × 4 = 8 square inches; the bending moment at section *AB* is 1000 (24 + 6 + 2) = 32,000 inch pounds; the distance from the center of gravity of the section at *AB* to point *B* is *c* = 2 inches; and using the formula on page 242, the moment of inertia of the section is $2 \times (4)^3 \div 12 = 10.667$ inches^4.

Using the straight-beam formula, page 274, the stress at points *A* and *B* due to the bending moment is:

$$S = \frac{Mc}{I} = \frac{32{,}000 \times 2}{10.667} = 6000 \text{ psi}$$

The stress at *A* is a compressive stress of 6000 psi and that at *B* is a tensile stress of 6000 psi.

These values must be corrected to account for the curvature effect. In Table 4 on page 275 for *R*/*c* = (6 + 2)/2 = 4, the value of *K* is found to be 1.20 and 0.85 for points *B* and *A* respectively. Thus, the actual stress due to bending at point *B* is 1.20 × 6000 = 7200 psi in tension, and the stress at point *A* is 0.85 × 6000 = 5100 psi in compression.

To these stresses at *A* and *B* must be added, algebraically, the direct stress at section *AB* due to the 1000-pound clamping force. The direct stress on section *AB* will be a tensile stress equal to the clamping force divided by the section area. Thus 1000 ÷ 8 = 125 psi in tension.

The maximum unit stress at *A* is, therefore, 5100 – 125 = 4975 psi in compression, and the maximum unit stress at *B* is 7200 + 125 = 7325 psi in tension.

The following is a similar calculation using metric SI units, assuming that it is required to determine the maximum stress at points *A* and *B* due to clamping force of 4 kN acting on the frame. The frame cross section is 50 by 100 mm, the radius *R* = 200 mm, and the length of the straight portions is 600 mm. Thus, the cross-sectional area = 50 × 100 = 5000 mm^2; the bending moment at *AB* is 4000 (600 + 200) = 3,200,000 newton-millimeters; the distance from the center of gravity of the section at *AB* to point *B* is *c* = 50 mm; and the moment of inertia of the section is (from the formula on page 242), $50(100^3)/12 = 4{,}170{,}000$ mm^4.

Using the straight-beam formula, page 274, the stress at points *A* and *B* due to the bending moment is:

$$s = \frac{Mc}{I} = \frac{3{,}200{,}000 \times 50}{4{,}170{,}000}$$

= 38.4 newtons per millimeter^2 = 38.4 megapascals

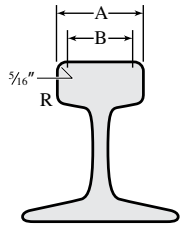
The stress at *A* is a compressive stress of 38.4 N/mm^2, while that at *B* is a tensile stress of 38.4 N/mm^2. These values must be corrected to account for the curvature

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

effect. From the table on page 275, the *K* factors are 1.20 and 0.85 for points *A* and *B*, respectively, derived from *R*/*c* = 200/50 = 4. Thus, the actual stress due to bending at point *B* is 1.20 × 38.4 = 46.1 N/mm^2 (46.1 MPa) in tension; and the stress at point *A* is 0.85 × 38.4 = 32.6 N/mm^2 (32.6 MPa) in compression.

To these stresses at *A* and *B* must be added, algebraically, the direct stress at section *AB* due to the 4 kN clamping force. The direct stress on section *AB* will be a tensile stress equal to the clamping force divided by the section area. Thus, 4000/5000 = 0.8 N/mm^2. The maximum unit stress at *A* is, therefore, 32.61 − 0.8 = 31.8 N/mm^2 (31.8 MPa) in compression, and the maximum unit stress at *B* is 46.1 + 0.8 = 46.9 N/mm^2 (46.9 MPa) in tension.

Size of Rail Necessary to Carry a Given Load.—The following formulas may be employed for determining the size of rail and wheel suitable for carrying a given load. Let *A* = the width of the head of the rail in inches; *B* = width of the tread of the rail in inches; *C* = the wheel-load in pounds; *D* = the diameter of the wheel in inches.



Then the width of the tread of the rail in inches is found from the formula:

$$B = \frac{C}{1250D} \tag{1}$$

The width *A* of the head equals $B + \frac{5}{8}$ inch. The diameter *D* of the smallest track wheel that will safely carry the load is found from the formula:

$$D = \frac{C}{A \times K} \tag{2}$$

in which *K* = 600 to 800 for steel castings; *K* = 300 to 400 for cast iron.

As an example, assume that the wheel-load is 10,000 pounds; the diameter of the wheel is 20 inches; and the material is cast steel. Determine the size of rail necessary to carry this load. From Formula (1):

$$B = \frac{10{,}000}{1250 \times 20} = 0.4 \text{ inch}$$

The width of the rail required equals $0.4 + \frac{5}{8}$ inch = 1.025 inch. Determine also whether a wheel 20 inches in diameter is large enough to safely carry the load. From Formula (2):

$$D = \frac{10{,}000}{1.025 \times 600} = 16\frac{1}{4} \text{ inches}$$

This is the smallest diameter of track wheel that will safely carry the load; hence a 20-inch wheel is ample.

American Railway Engineering Association Formulas.—The American Railway Engineering Association recommends for safe operation of steel cylinders rolling on steel plates that the allowable load *p* in pounds per inch of length of the cylinder should not exceed the value calculated from the formula

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$p = \frac{\text{y.s.} - 13{,}000}{20{,}000} 600d \text{ for diameter } d \text{ less than 25 inches}$$

This formula is based on steel having a yield strength, y.s., of 32,000 pounds per square inch. For roller or wheel diameters of up to 25 inches, the Hertz stress (contact stress) resulting from the calculated load p will be approximately 76,000 pounds per square inch.

For a 10-inch diameter roller the safe load per inch of roller length is

$$p = \frac{32{,}000 - 13{,}000}{20{,}000} 600 \times 10 = 5700 \text{ lbs per inch of length}$$

Therefore, to support a 10,000 pound load the roller or wheel would need to be 10,000/5700 = 1.75 inches wide.

Stresses Produced by Shocks

Stresses in Beams Produced by Shocks.—Any elastic structure subjected to a shock will deflect until the product of the average resistance developed by the deflection and the distance through which it has been overcome has reached a value equal to the energy of the shock. It follows that for a given shock, the average resisting stresses are inversely proportional to the deflection. If the structure were perfectly rigid, the deflection would be zero and the stress infinite. The effect of a shock is, therefore, to a great extent dependent upon the elastic property (the springiness) of the structure subjected to the impact.

The energy of a body in motion, such as a falling body, may be spent in each of four ways:

1) In deforming the body struck as a whole.

2) In deforming the falling body as a whole.

3) In partial deformation of both bodies on the surface of contact (most of this energy will be transformed into heat).

4) Part of the energy will be taken up by the supports, if these are not perfectly rigid and inelastic.

How much energy is spent in the last three ways is usually difficult to determine, and for this reason it is safest to figure as if the whole amount were spent as in Case 1. If a reliable judgment is possible as to what percentage of the energy is spent in other ways than the first, a corresponding fraction of the total energy can be assumed as developing stresses in the body subjected to shocks.

One investigation into the stresses produced by shocks led to the following conclusions:

1) A suddenly applied load will produce the same deflection, and, therefore, the same stress as a static load twice as great; and 2) the unit stress p (see formulas in Table 1, *Stresses Produced in Beams by Shocks*) for a given load producing a shock varies directly as the square root of the modulus of elasticity E and inversely as the square root of the length L of the beam and the area of the section.

Thus, for instance, if the sectional area of a beam is increased by four times, the unit stress will diminish only by half. This result is entirely different from those produced by static loads where the stress would vary inversely with the area, and within certain limits be practically independent of the modulus of elasticity.

In Table 1, the expression for the approximate value of p, which is applicable whenever the deflection of the beam is small as compared with the total height h through which the body producing the shock is dropped, is always the same for beams supported at both ends and subjected to shock at *any* point between the supports. In the formulas all dimensions are in inches and weights in pounds.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Stresses Produced in Beams by Shocks

Method of Support and Point Struck by Falling Body	Fiber (Unit) Stress p Produced by Weight Q Dropped Through a Distance h	Approximate Value of p
Supported at both ends; struck in center.	$p = \frac{QaL}{4I}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{96hEI}{QL^3}}\right)$	$p = a\sqrt{\frac{6QhE}{LI}}$
Fixed at one end; struck at the other.	$p = \frac{QaL}{I}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{6hEI}{QL^3}}\right)$	$p = a\sqrt{\frac{6QhE}{LI}}$
Fixed at both ends; struck in center.	$p = \frac{QaL}{8I}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{384hEI}{QL^3}}\right)$	$p = a\sqrt{\frac{6QhE}{LI}}$

I = moment of inertia of section; a = distance of extreme fiber from neutral axis; L = length of beam; E = modulus of elasticity.

If metric SI units are used, p is in newtons per square millimeter; Q is in newtons; E = modulus of elasticity in N/mm^2; I = moment of inertia of section in mm^4; and h, a, and L in mm. ***Note:*** **If Q is given in kilograms, the value referred to is mass. The weight Q of a mass M kilograms is Mg newtons, where g = approximately 9.81 m/s^2.**

Examples of How Formulas for Stresses Produced by Shocks are Derived: The general formula from which specific formulas for shock stresses in beams, springs, and other machine and structural members are derived is:

$$p = p_s\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{2h}{y}}\right) \tag{1}$$

In this formula, p = stress in psi due to shock caused by impact of a moving load; p_s = stress in psi resulting when moving load is applied statically; h = distance in inches that load falls before striking beam, spring, or other member; y = deflection in inches resulting from static load.

As an example of how Formula (1) may be used to obtain a formula for a specific application, suppose that the load W shown applied to the beam in Case 2 on page 257 were dropped on the beam from a height of h inches instead of being gradually applied (static loading). The maximum stress p_s due to load W for Case 2 is given as $Wl \div 4Z$ and the maximum deflection y is given as $Wl^3 \div 48\,EI$. Substituting these values in Formula (1),

$$p = \frac{Wl}{4Z}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{2h}{Wl^3 \div 48EI}}\right) = \frac{Wl}{4Z}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{96hEI}{Wl^3}}\right) \tag{2}$$

If in Formula (2) the letter Q is used in place of W and if Z, the section modulus, is replaced by its equivalent, $I \div$ distance a from neutral axis to extreme fiber of beam, then Formula (2) becomes the first formula given in the accompanying Table 1, *Stresses Produced in Beams by Shocks*.

Stresses in Helical Springs Produced by Shocks.—A load suddenly applied on a spring will produce the same deflection, and, therefore, also the same unit stress, as a static load twice as great. When the load drops from a height h, the stresses are as given in the accompanying Table 2. The approximate values are applicable when the deflection is small as compared with the height h. The formulas show that the fiber stress for a given shock will be greater in a spring made from a square bar than in one made from a round bar, if the diameter of coil is the same and the side of the square bar equals the diameter of the round

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

bar. It is, therefore, more economical to use round stock for springs which must withstand shocks, due to the fact that the deflection for the same fiber stress for a square bar spring is smaller than that for a round bar spring, the ratio being as 4 to 5. The round bar spring is therefore capable of storing more energy than a square bar spring for the same stress.

Table 2. Stresses Produced in Springs by Shocks

Form of Bar from Which Spring is Made	Fiber (Unit) Stress f Produced by Weight Q Dropped a Height h on a Helical Spring	Approximate Value of f
Round	$f = \frac{8QD}{\pi d^3}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{Ghd^4}{4QD^3n}}\right)$	$f = 1.27\sqrt{\frac{QhG}{Dd^2n}}$
Square	$f = \frac{9QD}{4d^3}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{Ghd^4}{0.9\pi QD^3n}}\right)$	$f = 1.34\sqrt{\frac{QhG}{Dd^2n}}$

G = modulus of elasticity for torsion; d = diameter or side of bar; D = mean diameter of spring; n = number of coils in spring.

Shocks from Bodies in Motion.—The formulas given can be applied, in general, to shocks from bodies in motion. A body of weight W moving horizontally with the velocity of v feet per second has a stored-up energy:

$$E_K = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{Wv^2}{g} \text{ foot-pounds} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{6Wv^2}{g} \text{ inch-pounds}$$

This expression may be substituted for Qh in the tables in the equations for unit stresses containing this quantity, and the stresses produced by the energy of the moving body thereby determined.

The formulas in the tables give the maximum value of the stresses, providing the designer with some definitive guidance even where there may be justification for assuming that only a part of the energy of the shock is taken up by the member under stress.

The formulas can also be applied using metric SI units. The stored-up energy of a body of mass M kilograms moving horizontally with the velocity of v meters per second is:

$$E_K = \frac{1}{2}Mv^2 \text{ newton-meters}$$

This expression may be substituted for Qh in the appropriate equations in the tables. For calculation in millimeters, $Qh = 1000\,E_K$ newton-millimeters.

Fatigue Stresses.—So-called "fatigue ruptures" occur in parts that are subjected to continually repeated shocks or stresses of small magnitude. Machine parts that are subjected to continual stresses in varying directions, or to repeated shocks, even if of comparatively small magnitude, may fail ultimately if designed from a mere knowledge of the behavior of the material under a steady stress, such as is imposed upon it by ordinary tensile stress testing machines. Examinations of numerous cases of machine parts, broken under actual working conditions, indicate that at least 80 percent of these ruptures are caused by fatigue stresses. Most fatigue ruptures are caused by bending stresses, and frequently by a revolving bending stress. Hence, to test materials for this class of stress the tests should be made to stress the material in a manner similar to that in which it will be stressed under actual working conditions. See *Fatigue Properties* on page 209 for more on this topic.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

COLUMNS

Strength of Columns or Struts

Structural members which are subject to compression may be so long in proportion to their diameter or lateral dimensions that failure may be the result 1) of both compression and bending; and 2) of bending or buckling to such a degree that compression stress may be ignored.

In such cases, the *slenderness ratio* is important. This ratio equals the length l of the column in inches or millimeters, according to the unit system in use, divided by the least radius of gyration r of the cross section. Various formulas have been used for designing columns which are too slender to be designed for compression only.

Rankine or Gordon Formula.—This formula is generally applied when slenderness ratios range between 20 and 100, and sometimes for ratios up to 120. The notation, in English and metric SI units of measurement, is given on page 283.

$$p = \frac{S}{1 + K\left(\frac{l}{r}\right)^2} = \text{ultimate load, lb/in}^2 \text{ or N/mm}^2$$

Factor K may be established by tests with a given material and end condition, and for the probable range of l/r. If determined by calculation, $K = S/C\pi^2 E$. Factor C equals 1 for either rounded or pivoted column ends, 4 for fixed ends, and 1 to 4 for square flat ends. The factors 25,000, 12,500, etc., in the Rankine formulas, arranged as on page 283, equal $1/K$, and have been used extensively.

Straight-Line Formula.—This general type of formula is often used in designing compression members for buildings, bridges, or similar structural work. It is convenient especially in designing a number of columns that are made of the same material but vary in size, assuming that factor B is known. This factor is determined by tests.

$$p = S_y - B\left(\frac{l}{r}\right) = \text{ultimate load, lb/in}^2$$

S_y equals yield point, lb/in^2, and factor B ranges from 50 to 100. Safe unit stress = $p \div$ factor of safety.

Formulas of American Railway Engineering Association.—The formulas that follow apply to structural steel having an ultimate strength of 60,000 to 72,000 lb/in^2.

For building columns having l/r ratios not greater than 120:

$$\text{allowable unit stress} = 17{,}000 - 0.485\, l^2/r^2$$

For columns having l/r ratios greater than 120:

$$\text{allowable unit stress} = \frac{18{,}000}{1 + l^2/18{,}000r^2}$$

For bridge compression members centrally loaded and values of l/r not greater than 140:

$$\text{Allowable unit stress, riveted ends} = 15{,}000 - \frac{1}{4}\frac{l^2}{r^2}$$

$$\text{Allowable unit stress, pin ends} = 15{,}000 - \frac{1}{3}\frac{l^2}{r^2}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Euler Formula.—This formula is for columns that are so slender that bending or buckling action predominates and compressive stresses are not taken into account.

$$P = \frac{C\pi^2 IE}{l^2} = \text{total ultimate load, in pounds or newtons}$$

The notation, in English and metric SI units of measurement, is given in the table *Rankine and Euler Formulas for Columns* on page 283. Factors C for different end conditions are included in the Euler formulas at the bottom of the table. According to a series of experiments, Euler formulas should be used if the values of l/r exceed the following ratios: Structural steel and flat ends, 195; hinged ends, 155; round ends, 120; cast iron with flat ends, 120; hinged ends, 100; round ends, 75; oak with flat ends, 130. The *critical slenderness ratio*, which marks the dividing line between the shorter columns and those slender enough to warrant using the Euler formula, depends upon the column material and its end conditions. If the Euler formula is applied when the slenderness ratio is too small, the *calculated* ultimate strength will exceed the yield point of the material and, obviously, will be incorrect.

Eccentrically Loaded Columns.—In the application of the column formulas previously referred to, it is assumed that the action of the load coincides with the axis of the column. If the load is offset relative to the column axis, the column is said to be eccentrically loaded, and its strength is then calculated by using a modification of the Rankine formula, the quantity cz/r^2 being added to the denominator, as shown in the table on the next page. This modified formula is applicable to columns having a slenderness ratio varying from 20 or 30 to about 100.

Machine Elements Subjected to Compressive Loads.—As in structural compression members, an unbraced machine member that is relatively slender (i.e., its length is more than, say, six times the least dimension perpendicular to its longitudinal axis) is usually designed as a column because failure due to overloading (assuming a compressive load centrally applied in an axial direction) may occur by buckling or a combination of buckling and compression rather than by direct compression alone. In the design of unbraced steel machine "columns" which are to carry compressive loads applied along their longitudinal axes, two formulas are in general use:

(Euler) $$P_{cr} = \frac{S_y A r^2}{Q} \quad (1)$$

(J. B. Johnson) $$P_{cr} = AS_y\left(1 - \frac{Q}{4r^2}\right) \quad (2) \quad \text{where} \quad Q = \frac{S_y l^2}{n\pi^2 E} \quad (3)$$

In these formulas, P_{cr} = critical load in pounds that would result in failure of the column; A = cross sectional area, inches^2; S_y = yield point of material, psi; r = least radius of gyration of cross section, inches; E = modulus of elasticity, psi; l = column length, inches; and n = coefficient for end conditions. For both ends fixed, $n = 4$; for one end fixed, one end free, $n = 0.25$; for one end fixed and the other end free but guided, $n = 2$; for round or pinned ends, free but guided, $n = 1$; and for flat ends, $n = 1$ to 4. It should be noted that these values of n represent ideal conditions that are seldom attained in practice; for example, for both ends fixed, a value of $n = 3$ to 3.5 may be more realistic than $n = 4$.

If metric SI units are used in these formulas, P_{cr} = critical load in newtons that would result in failure of the column; A = cross-sectional area, mm^2; S_y = yield point of the material, N/mm^2; r = least radius of gyration of cross section, mm; E = modulus of elasticity, N/mm^2; l = column length, mm; and n = a coefficient for end conditions. The coefficients given are valid for calculations in metric units.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rankine and Euler Formulas for Columns

Symbol	Quantity	English Unit	Metric SI Units
p	Ultimate unit load	Lbs/in^2	Newtons/mm^2
P	Total ultimate load	Pounds	Newtons
S	Ultimate compressive strength of material	Lbs/in^2	Newtons/mm^2
l	Length of column or strut	Inches	Millimeters
r	Least radius of gyration	Inches	Millimeters
I	Least moment of inertia	Inches^4	Millimeters^4
r^2	Moment of inertia/area of section	Inches^2	Millimeters^2
E	Modulus of elasticity of material	Lbs/in^2	Newtons/mm^2
c	Distance from neutral axis of cross section to side under compression	Inches	Millimeters
z	Distance from axis of load to axis coinciding with center of gravity of cross section	Inches	Millimeters

Rankine Formulas			
Material	Both Ends of Column Fixed	One End Fixed and One End Rounded	Both Ends Rounded
Steel	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{25{,}000r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{12{,}500r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{6250r^2}}$
Cast Iron	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{5000r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{2500r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{1250r^2}}$
Wrought Iron	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{35{,}000r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{17{,}500r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{8750r^2}}$
Timber	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{3000r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{1500r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{750r^2}}$

Formulas Modified for Eccentrically Loaded Columns			
Material	Both Ends of Column Fixed	One End Fixed and One End Rounded	Both Ends Rounded
Steel	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{25{,}000r^2} + \dfrac{cz}{r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{12{,}500r^2} + \dfrac{cz}{r^2}}$	$p = \dfrac{S}{1 + \dfrac{l^2}{6250r^2} + \dfrac{cz}{r^2}}$
For materials other than steel, such as cast iron, use the Rankine formulas given in the upper table and add to the denominator the quantity cz/r^2			

Euler Formulas for Slender Columns			
Both Ends of Column Fixed	One End Fixed and One End Rounded	Both Ends Rounded	One End Fixed and One End Free
$P = \dfrac{4\pi^2 IE}{l^2}$	$P = \dfrac{2\pi^2 IE}{l^2}$	$P = \dfrac{\pi^2 IE}{l^2}$	$P = \dfrac{\pi^2 IE}{4l^2}$

Allowable Working Loads for Columns: To find the total allowable working load for a given section, divide the total ultimate load P (or $p \times$ area), as found by the appropriate formula above, by a suitable factor of safety.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Factor of Safety for Machine Columns: When the conditions of loading and the physical qualities of the material used are accurately known, a factor of safety as low as 1.25 is sometimes used when minimum weight is important. Usually, however, a factor of safety of 2 to 2.5 is applied for steady loads. The factor of safety represents the ratio of the critical load P_{cr} to the working load.

Application of Euler and Johnson Formulas: To determine whether the Euler or Johnson formula is applicable in any particular case, it is necessary to determine the value of the quantity $Q \div r^2$. If $Q \div r^2$ is greater than 2, then the Euler Formula (1) should be used; if $Q \div r^2$ is less than 2, then the J. B. Johnson formula is applicable. Most compression members in machine design are in the range of proportions covered by the Johnson formula. For this reason a good procedure is to design machine elements on the basis of the Johnson formula and then as a check calculate $Q \div r^2$ to determine whether the Johnson formula applies or the Euler formula should have been used.

Example 1, Compression Member Design: A rectangular machine member 24 inches long and ½ × 1 inch in cross section is to carry a compressive load of 4000 pounds along its axis. What is the factor of safety for this load if the material is machinery steel having a yield point of 40,000 psi, the load is steady, and each end of the rod has a ball connection so that $n = 1$?

Solution: From Formula (3)

$$Q = \frac{40{,}000 \times 24 \times 24}{1 \times 3.1416 \times 3.1416 \times 30{,}000{,}000} = 0.0778$$

(The values 40,000 and 30,000,000 were obtained from the table *Strength Data for Iron and Steel* on page 429.)

The radius of gyration r for a rectangular section (page 242) is 0.289 × the dimension in the direction of bending. In columns, bending is most apt to occur in the direction in which the section is the weakest, the ½-inch dimension in this example. Hence, least radius of gyration $r = 0.289 \times \frac{1}{2} = 0.145$ inch.

$$\frac{Q}{r^2} = \frac{0.0778}{(0.145)^2} = 3.70$$

which is more than 2, so the Euler formula will be used.

$$P_{cr} = \frac{s_y A r^2}{Q} = \frac{40{,}000 \times \frac{1}{2} \times 1}{3.70}$$

$$= 5400 \text{ pounds so that the factor of safety is } 5400 \div 4000 = 1.35$$

Example 2, Compression Member Design: In the preceding example, the column formulas were used to check the adequacy of a column of known dimensions. The more usual problem involves determining what the dimensions should be to resist a specified load. For example:

A 24-inch long bar of rectangular cross section with width w twice its depth d is to carry a load of 4000 pounds. What must the width and depth be if a factor of safety of 1.35 is to be used?

Solution: First determine the critical load P_{cr}:

$$P_{cr} = \text{working load} \times \text{factor of safety}$$

$$= 4000 \times 1.35 = 5400 \text{ pounds}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Next determine Q, which is found as in Example 1, and will again be 0.0778.

Assume Formula (2) applies:

$$P_{cr} = As_y\left(1 - \frac{Q}{4r^2}\right)$$

$$5400 = w \times d \times 40{,}000\left(1 - \frac{0.0778}{4r^2}\right)$$

$$= 2d^2 \times 40{,}000\left(1 - \frac{0.01945}{r^2}\right)$$

$$\frac{5400}{40{,}000 \times 2} = d^2\left(1 - \frac{0.01945}{r^2}\right)$$

As mentioned in Example 1 the least radius of gyration r of a rectangle is equal to 0.289 times the least dimension, d, in this case. Therefore, substituting for d the value $r \div 0.289$,

$$\frac{5400}{40{,}000 \times 2} = \left(\frac{r}{0.289}\right)^2\left(1 - \frac{0.01945}{r^2}\right)$$

$$\frac{5400 \times 0.289 \times 0.289}{40{,}000 \times 2} = r^2 - 0.01945$$

$$0.005638 = r^2 - 0.01945$$

$$r^2 = 0.0251$$

Checking to determine if $Q \div r^2$ is greater or less than 2,

$$\frac{Q}{r^2} = \frac{0.0778}{0.0251} = 3.1$$

Therefore, Formula (1) should have been used to determine r and dimensions w and d. Using Formula (1),

$$5400 = \frac{40{,}000 \times 2d^2 \times r^2}{Q} = \frac{40{,}000 \times 2 \times \left(\frac{r}{0.289}\right)^2 r^2}{0.0778}$$

$$r^4 = \frac{5400 \times 0.0778 \times 0.289 \times 0.289}{40{,}000 \times 2} = 0.0004386$$

$$d = \frac{0.145}{0.289} = 0.50 \text{ inch}$$

and $w = 2d = 1$ inch as in the previous example.

American Institute of Steel Construction.—For main or secondary compression members with l/r ratios up to 120, safe unit stress = $17{,}000 - 0.485l^2/r^2$. For columns and bracing or other secondary members with l/r ratios above 120,

$$\text{For bracing and secondary members, safe unit stress, psi} = \frac{18{,}000}{1 + l^2/18{,}000r^2}$$

$$\text{For main members, safe unit stress, psi} = \frac{18{,}000}{1 + l^2/18{,}000r^2} \times \left(1.6 - \frac{l/r}{200}\right)$$

Pipe Columns: Allowable concentric loads for steel pipe columns based on the above formulas are given in the table on page 286.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Allowable Concentric Loads for Steel Pipe Columns

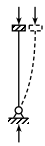
STANDARD STEEL PIPE								
Nominal Diameter, Inches	12	10	8	6	5	4	3½	3
Wall Thickness, Inch	0.375	0.365	0.322	0.280	0.258	0.237	0.226	0.216
Weight per Foot, Pounds	49.56	40.48	28.55	18.97	14.62	10.79	9.11	7.58
Effective Length (*KL*), Feet[a]	Allowable Concentric Loads in Thousands of Pounds							
6	303	246	171	110	83	59	48	38
7	301	243	168	108	81	57	46	36
8	299	241	166	106	78	54	44	34
9	296	238	163	103	76	52	41	31
10	293	235	161	101	73	49	38	28
11	291	232	158	98	71	46	35	25
12	288	229	155	95	68	43	32	22
13	285	226	152	92	65	40	29	19
14	282	223	149	89	61	36	25	16
15	278	220	145	86	58	33	22	14
16	275	216	142	82	55	29	19	12
17	272	213	138	79	51	26	17	11
18	268	209	135	75	47	23	15	10
19	265	205	131	71	43	21	14	9
20	261	201	127	67	39	19	12	
22	254	193	119	59	32	15	10	
24	246	185	111	51	27	13		
25	242	180	106	47	25	12		
26	238	176	102	43	23			
EXTRA STRONG STEEL PIPE								
Nominal Diameter, Inches	12	10	8	6	5	4	3½	3
Wall Thickness, Inch	0.500	0.500	0.500	0.432	0.375	0.337	0.318	0.300
Weight per Foot, Pounds	65.42	54.74	43.39	28.57	20.78	14.98	12.50	10.25
Effective Length (*KL*), Feet[a]	Allowable Concentric Loads in Thousands of Pounds							
6	400	332	259	166	118	81	66	52
7	397	328	255	162	114	78	63	48
8	394	325	251	159	111	75	59	45
9	390	321	247	155	107	71	55	41
10	387	318	243	151	103	67	51	37
11	383	314	239	146	99	63	47	33
12	379	309	234	142	95	59	43	28
13	375	305	229	137	91	54	38	24
14	371	301	224	132	86	49	33	21
15	367	296	219	127	81	44	29	18
16	363	291	214	122	76	39	25	16
18	353	281	203	111	65	31	20	12
19	349	276	197	105	59	28	18	11
20	344	271	191	99	54	25	16	
21	337	265	185	92	48	22	14	
22	334	260	179	86	44	21		
24	323	248	166	73	37	17		
26	312	236	152	62	32			
28	301	224	137	54	27			

[a] With respect to radius of gyration. The effective length (*KL*) is the actual unbraced length, *L*, in feet, multiplied by the effective length factor (*K*), which is dependent upon the restraint at the ends of the unbraced length and the means available to resist lateral movements. *K* may be determined by referring to the last portion of this table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Allowable Concentric Loads for Steel Pipe Columns *(Continued)*

DOUBLE-EXTRA STRONG STEEL PIPE					
Nominal Diameter, Inches	8	6	5	4	3
Wall Thickness, Inch	0.875	0.864	0.750	0.674	0.600
Weight per Foot, Pounds	72.42	53.16	38.55	27.54	18.58
Effective Length (*KL*), Feet[a]	Allowable Concentric Loads in Thousands of Pounds				
6	431	306	216	147	91
7	424	299	209	140	84
8	417	292	202	133	77
9	410	284	195	126	69
10	403	275	187	118	60
11	395	266	178	109	51
12	387	257	170	100	43
13	378	247	160	91	37
14	369	237	151	81	32
15	360	227	141	70	28
16	351	216	130	62	24
17	341	205	119	55	22
18	331	193	108	49	
19	321	181	97	44	
20	310	168	87	40	
22	288	142	72	33	
24	264	119	61		
26	240	102	52		
28	213	88	44		

EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTORS (*K*) FOR VARIOUS COLUMN CONFIGURATIONS						
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)
Buckled shape of column is shown by dashed line						
Theoretical *K* value	0.5	0.7	1.0	1.0	2.0	2.0
Recommended design value when ideal conditions are approximated	0.65	0.80	1.2	1.0	2.10	2.0
End condition code		Rotation fixed and translation fixed Rotation free and translation fixed Rotation fixed and translation free Rotation free and translation free				

Load tables are given for 36 ksi yield stress steel. No load values are given below the heavy horizontal lines, because the *Kl*/*r* ratios (where *l* is the actual unbraced length in inches and *r* is the governing radius of gyration in inches) would exceed 200.

Data from "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th ed., 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PLATES, SHELLS, AND CYLINDERS

Flat Stayed Surfaces.—Large flat areas are often held against pressure by stays distributed at regular intervals over the surface. In boiler work, these stays are usually screwed into the plate and the projecting end riveted over to insure steam tightness. The US Board of Supervising Inspectors and the American Boiler Manufacturers Association (ABMA) rules give the following formula for flat stayed surfaces:

$$P = \frac{C \times t^2}{S^2}$$

in which P = pressure in pounds per square inch
C = a constant, which equals
112 for plates $\frac{7}{16}$ inch and under
120, for plates over $\frac{7}{16}$ inch thick
140, for plates with stays having a nut and bolt on the inside and outside
160, for plates with stays having washers of at least one-half the plate thickness, and with a diameter at least one-half of the greatest pitch
t = thickness of plate in 16ths of an inch (thickness = $\frac{7}{16}$, $t = 7$)
S = greatest pitch of stays in inches

Strength and Deflection of Flat Plates.—Generally, the formulas used to determine stresses and deflections in flat plates are based on certain assumptions that can be closely approximated in practice. These assumptions are:

1) the thickness of the plate is not greater than one-quarter the least width of the plate;

2) the greatest deflection when the plate is loaded is less than one-half the plate thickness;

3) the maximum tensile stress resulting from the load does not exceed the elastic limit of the material; and

4) all loads are perpendicular to the plane of the plate.

Plates of ductile materials fail when the maximum stress resulting from deflection under load exceeds the yield strength; for brittle materials, failure occurs when the maximum stress reaches the ultimate tensile strength of the material involved.

Square and Rectangular Flat Plates.—The formulas that follow give the maximum stress and deflection of flat steel plates supported in various ways and subjected to the loading indicated. These formulas are based upon a modulus of elasticity for steel of 30,000,000 psi and a value of Poisson's ratio of 0.3. If the formulas for maximum stress, S, are applied without modification to other materials, such as cast iron, aluminum, and brass, for which the range of Poisson's ratio is about 0.26 to 0.34, the maximum stress calculations will be in error by not more than about 3 percent. The deflection formulas may also be applied to materials other than steel by substituting in these formulas the appropriate value for E, the modulus of elasticity of the material (see pages 429 and 510). The deflections thus obtained will not be in error by more than about 3 percent.

In the stress and deflection formulas that follow,

p = uniformly distributed load acting on plate, psi
W = total load on plate, pounds; $W = p \times$ area of plate
L = distance between supports (length of plate), inches. For rectangular plates, L = long side, l = short side
t = thickness of plate, inches
S = maximum tensile stress in plate, psi
d = maximum deflection of plate, in.
E = modulus of elasticity in tension. $E = 30{,}000{,}000$ psi for steel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If metric SI units are used in the formulas, then,

W = **total load on plate, newtons**

L = **distance between supports (length of plate), mm. For rectangular plates, L = long side, l = short side**

t = **thickness of plate, mm**

S = **maximum tensile stress in plate, N/mm^2**

d = **maximum deflection of plate, mm**

E = **modulus of elasticity, N/mm^2**

a) Square flat plate supported at top and bottom of all four edges and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.29W}{t^2} \quad (1) \qquad d = \frac{0.0443WL^2}{Et^3} \quad (2)$$

b) Square flat plate supported at the bottom only of all four edges and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.28W}{t^2} \quad (3) \qquad d = \frac{0.0443WL^2}{Et^3} \quad (4)$$

c) Square flat plate with all edges firmly fixed and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.31W}{t^2} \quad (5) \qquad d = \frac{0.0138WL^2}{Et^3} \quad (6)$$

d) Square flat plate with all edges firmly fixed and a uniform load over small circular area at the center. In Equations (7) and (9), r_0 = radius of area to which load is applied.

If $r_0 < 1.7t$, use r_s where $r_s = \sqrt{1.6r_0^2 + t^2} - 0.675t$.

$$S = \frac{0.62W}{t^2}\log_e\left(\frac{L}{2r_0}\right) \quad (7) \qquad d = \frac{0.0568WL^2}{Et^3} \quad (8)$$

e) Square flat plate with all edges supported above and below, or below only, and a concentrated load at the center. See Item d), above, for definition of r_0.

$$S = \frac{0.62W}{t_2}\left[\log_e\left(\frac{L}{2r_0}\right) + 0.577\right] \quad (9) \qquad d = \frac{0.1266WL^2}{Et^3} \quad (10)$$

f) Rectangular plate with all edges supported at top and bottom and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.75W}{t^2\left(\frac{L}{l} + 1.61\frac{l^2}{L^2}\right)} \quad (11) \qquad d = \frac{0.1422W}{Et^3\left(\frac{L}{l^3} + \frac{2.21}{L^2}\right)} \quad (12)$$

g) Rectangular plate with all edges fixed and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.5W}{t^2\left(\frac{L}{l} + \frac{0.623l^5}{L^5}\right)} \quad (13) \qquad d = \frac{0.0284W}{Et^3\left(\frac{L}{l^3} + \frac{1.056l^2}{L^4}\right)} \quad (14)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Circular Flat Plates.—In the following formulas, R = radius of plate to supporting edge in inches; W = total load in pounds; and other symbols are the same as used for square and rectangular plates.

If metric SI units are used, R = radius of plate to supporting edge in mm, and the values of other symbols are the same as those used for square and rectangular plates.

a) Edge supported around the circumference and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.39W}{t^2} \quad (15) \qquad d = \frac{0.221WR^2}{Et^3} \quad (16)$$

b) Edge fixed around circumference and a uniformly distributed load over the surface of the plate.

$$S = \frac{0.24W}{t^2} \quad (17) \qquad d = \frac{0.0543WR^2}{Et^3} \quad (18)$$

c) Edge supported around the circumference and a concentrated load at the center.

$$S = \frac{0.48W}{t^2}\left[1 + 1.3\log_e\frac{R}{0.325t} - 0.0185\frac{t^2}{R^2}\right] \quad (19) \qquad d = \frac{0.55WR^2}{Et^3} \quad (20)$$

d) Edge fixed around circumference and a concentrated load at the center.

$$S = \frac{0.62W}{t^2}\left[\log_e\frac{R}{0.325t} + 0.0264\frac{t^2}{R^2}\right] \quad (21) \qquad d = \frac{0.22WR^2}{Et^3} \quad (22)$$

Strength of Cylinders Subjected to Internal Pressure.—In designing a cylinder to withstand internal pressure, the choice of formula to be used depends on 1) the kind of material of which the cylinder is made (whether brittle or ductile); 2) the construction of the cylinder ends (whether open or closed); and 3) whether the cylinder is classed as a thin- or a thick-walled cylinder.

A cylinder is considered to be thin-walled when the ratio of wall thickness to inside diameter is 0.1 or less and thick-walled when this ratio is greater than 0.1. Materials such as cast iron, hard steel, and cast aluminum are considered to be brittle materials; low-carbon steel, brass, bronze, etc. are considered to be ductile.

In the formulas that follow, p = internal pressure, psi; D = inside diameter of cylinder, inches; t = wall thickness of cylinder, inches; μ = Poisson's ratio, = 0.3 for steel, 0.26 for cast iron, 0.34 for aluminum and brass; and S = allowable tensile stress, psi.

Metric SI units can be used in Formulas (23), (25), (26), and (27), where p = internal pressure in N/mm^2; D = inside diameter of cylinder, mm; t = wall thickness, mm; μ = Poisson's ratio, = 0.3 for steel, 0.26 for cast iron, and 0.34 for aluminum and brass; and S = allowable tensile stress, N/mm^2. For the use of metric SI units in Formula (24), see below.

Thin-walled Cylinders:

$$t = \frac{Dp}{2S} \quad (23)$$

For low-pressure cylinders of cast iron such as are used for certain engine and press applications, a formula in common use is

$$t = \frac{Dp}{2500} + 0.3 \quad (24)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

This formula is based on allowable stress of 1250 pounds per square inch (psi) and will give a wall thickness 0.3 inch greater than Formula (23) to allow for variations in metal thickness that may result from the casting process.

If metric SI units are used in Formula (24), t = cylinder wall thickness in mm; D = inside diameter of cylinder, mm; and the allowable stress is in N/mm^2. The value of 0.3 inches additional wall thickness is 7.62 mm, and the next highest number in preferred metric basic sizes is 8 mm.

Thick-walled Cylinders of Brittle Material, Ends Open or Closed: Lamé's equation is used when cylinders of this type are subjected to internal pressure.

$$t = \frac{D}{2}\left(\sqrt{\frac{S+p}{S-p}} - 1\right) \tag{25}$$

The table *Ratio of Outside Radius to Inside Radius, Thick Cylinders* on page 292 is for convenience in calculating the dimensions of cylinders under high internal pressure without the use of Formula (25).

Example, Use of the Table: Assume that a cylinder of 10 inches inside diameter is to withstand a pressure of 2500 psi; the material is cast iron and the allowable stress is 6000 psi. To solve the problem, locate the allowable stress per square inch in the left-hand column of the table and the working pressure at the top of the columns. Then find the ratio between the outside and inside radii in the body of the table. In this example, the ratio is 1.558, and hence the outside diameter of the cylinder should be 10 × 1.558, or about 15$\frac{5}{8}$ inches. The thickness of the cylinder wall will therefore be (15.58 – 10)/2 = 2.79 inches.

Unless very high-grade material is used and sound castings assured, cast iron should not be used for pressures exceeding 2000 pounds psi (13.75 N/mm^2). It is well to leave more metal in the bottom of a hydraulic cylinder than is indicated by the results of calculations because a hole of some size must be cored in the bottom to permit the entrance of a boring bar when finishing the cylinder, and when this hole is subsequently tapped and plugged it often gives trouble if there is too little thickness.

For steady or gradually applied stresses, the maximum allowable fiber stress S may be assumed to be from 3500 to 4000 psi (24–27 N/mm^2) for cast iron; from 6000 to 7000 psi (41–48 N/mm^2) for brass; and 12,000 psi (82 N/mm^2) for steel castings. For intermittent stresses, such as in cylinders for steam and hydraulic work, 3000 psi (20 N/mm^2) for cast iron; 5000 psi (34 N/mm^2) for brass; and 10,000 psi (69 N/mm^2) for steel castings is ordinarily used. These values give ample factors of safety.

***Note:* In metric SI units, 1000 pounds per square inch equals 6.895 newtons per square millimeter (1000 lb/in^2 = 6.895 N/mm^2). Also, one newtons per square millimeter equals one megapascal (1 N/mm^2 = 1 MPa).**

Thick-walled Cylinders of Ductile Material, Closed Ends: Clavarino's equation is used:

$$t = \frac{D}{2}\left[\sqrt{\frac{S+(1-2\mu)p}{S-(1+\mu)p}} - 1\right] \tag{26}$$

Thick-walled Cylinders of Ductile Material, Open Ends: Birnie's equation is used:

$$t = \frac{D}{2}\left[\sqrt{\frac{S+(1-\mu)p}{S-(1+\mu)p}} - 1\right] \tag{27}$$

Spherical Shells Subjected to Internal Pressure.—Let:

D = internal diameter of shell in inches
p = internal pressure in psi
S = safe tensile stress per square inch
t = thickness of metal in the shell, in inches. Then, $t = pD \div 4S$ (28)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ratio of Outside Radius to Inside Radius, Thick Cylinders

Allowable Stress per Sq. In. of Section	Working Pressure in Cylinder, Pounds per Square Inch												
	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000	6500	7000
2000	1.732	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2500	1.528	2.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3000	1.414	1.732	2.236	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3500	1.342	1.581	1.915	2.449	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
4000	1.291	1.483	1.732	2.082	2.646	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
4500	1.254	1.414	1.612	1.871	2.236	2.828	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5000	1.225	1.363	1.528	1.732	2.000	2.380	3.000	…	…	…	…	…	…
5500	1.202	1.323	1.464	1.633	1.844	2.121	2.517	3.162	…	…	…	…	…
6000	1.183	1.291	1.414	1.558	1.732	1.949	2.236	2.646	3.317	…	…	…	…
6500	…	1.265	1.374	1.500	1.648	1.826	2.049	2.345	2.769	3.464	…	…	…
7000	…	1.243	1.342	1.453	1.581	1.732	1.915	2.145	2.449	2.887	3.606	…	…
7500	…	1.225	1.314	1.414	1.528	1.658	1.813	2.000	2.236	2.550	3.000	3.742	…
8000	…	1.209	1.291	1.382	1.483	1.599	1.732	1.890	2.082	2.324	2.646	3.109	3.873
8500	…	1.195	1.271	1.354	1.446	1.549	1.667	1.803	1.964	2.160	2.408	2.739	3.215
9000	…	1.183	1.254	1.330	1.414	1.508	1.612	1.732	1.871	2.035	2.236	2.490	2.828
9500	…	…	1.238	1.309	1.387	1.472	1.567	1.673	1.795	1.936	2.104	2.309	2.569
10,000	…	…	1.225	1.291	1.363	1.441	1.528	1.624	1.732	1.856	2.000	2.171	2.380
10,500	…	…	1.213	1.275	1.342	1.414	1.494	1.581	1.679	1.789	1.915	2.062	2.236
11,000	…	…	1.202	1.260	1.323	1.390	1.464	1.544	1.633	1.732	1.844	1.972	2.121
11,500	…	…	1.192	1.247	1.306	1.369	1.438	1.512	1.593	1.683	1.784	1.897	2.028
12,000	…	…	1.183	1.235	1.291	1.350	1.414	1.483	1.558	1.641	1.732	1.834	1.949
12,500	…	…	…	1.225	1.277	1.333	1.393	1.458	1.528	1.604	1.687	1.780	1.883
13,000	…	…	…	1.215	1.265	1.318	1.374	1.435	1.500	1.571	1.648	1.732	1.826
13,500	…	…	…	1.206	1.254	1.304	1.357	1.414	1.475	1.541	1.612	1.690	1.776
14,000	…	…	…	1.198	1.243	1.291	1.342	1.395	1.453	1.515	1.581	1.653	1.732
14,500	…	…	…	1.190	1.234	1.279	1.327	1.378	1.433	1.491	1.553	1.620	1.693
15,000	…	…	…	1.183	1.225	1.268	1.314	1.363	1.414	1.469	1.528	1.590	1.658
16,000	…	…	…	1.171	1.209	1.249	1.291	1.335	1.382	1.431	1.483	1.539	1.599

Formula (28) also applies to hemi-spherical shells, such as the hemi-spherical head of a cylindrical container subjected to internal pressure, etc.

If metric SI units are used, then:

D = **internal diameter of shell in millimeters**

p = **internal pressure in newtons per square millimeter**

S = **safe tensile stress in newtons per square millimeter**

t = **thickness of metal in the shell, in millimeters. Use Formula (28).**

Meters can be used in the formula in place of millimeters, provided the treatment is consistent throughout.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Find the thickness of metal required in the hemi-spherical end of a cylindrical vessel, 2 feet in diameter, subjected to an internal pressure of 500 pounds per square inch.

Solution: The material is mild steel and a tensile stress of 10,000 psi is allowable.

$$t = \frac{500 \times 2 \times 12}{4 \times 10{,}000} = 0.3 \text{ inch}$$

***Example:* A similar example using metric SI units is as follows: find the thickness of metal required in the hemi-spherical end of a cylindrical vessel, 750 mm in diameter, subjected to an internal pressure of 3 newtons/mm^2. The material is mild steel and a tensile stress of 70 newtons/mm^2 is allowable.**

$$\boldsymbol{t = \frac{3 \times 750}{4 \times 70} = 8.04 \text{ mm}}$$

If the radius of curvature of the domed head of a boiler or container subjected to internal pressure is made equal to the diameter of the boiler, the thickness of the cylindrical shell and of the spherical head should be made the same. For example, if a boiler is 3 feet in diameter, the radius of curvature of its head should also be 3 feet, if material of the same thickness is to be used and the stresses are to be equal in both the head and cylindrical portion.

Collapsing Pressure of Cylinders and Tubes Subjected to External Pressures.—The following formulas may be used for finding the collapsing pressures of lap-welded Bessemer steel tubes:

$$P = 86{,}670\frac{t}{D} - 1386 \tag{29}$$

$$P = 50{,}210{,}000\left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^3 \tag{30}$$

in which P = collapsing pressure in psi; D = outside diameter of tube or cylinder in inches; t = thickness of wall in inches.

Formula (29) is for values of P greater than 580 pounds per square inch, and Formula (30) is for values of P less than 580 pounds per square inch. These formulas are substantially correct for all lengths of pipe greater than six diameters between transverse joints that tend to hold the pipe to a circular form. The pressure P found is the actual collapsing pressure, and a suitable factor of safety must be used. Ordinarily, a factor of safety of 5 is sufficient. In cases where there are repeated fluctuations of the pressure, vibration, shocks and other stresses, a factor of safety of from 6 to 12 should be used.

If metric SI units are used the formulas are:

$$\boldsymbol{P = 597.6\frac{t}{D} - 9.556} \tag{31}$$

$$\boldsymbol{P = 346{,}200\left(\frac{t}{D}\right)^3} \tag{32}$$

where P = collapsing pressure in newtons per square millimeter; D = outside diameter of tube or cylinder in millimeters; and t = thickness of wall in millimeters. Formula (31) is for values of P greater than 4 N/mm^2, and Formula (32) is for values of P less than 4 N/mm^2.

The table *Tubes Subjected to External Pressure* is based upon the requirements of the Steam Boat Inspection Service of the Department of Commerce and Labor and gives the permissible working pressures and corresponding minimum wall thickness for long, plain, lap-welded and seamless steel flues subjected to external pressure only. The table thicknesses have been calculated from the formula:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$t = \frac{[(F \times p) + 1386]D}{86{,}670}$$

in which D = outside diameter of flue or tube in inches; t = thickness of wall in inches; p = working pressure in pounds per square inch; F = factor of safety. The formula is applicable to working pressures greater than 100 pounds per square inch, to outside diameters from 7 to 18 inches, and to temperatures less than 650°F.

The preceding Formulas (29) and (30) were determined by Prof. R. T. Stewart, Dean of the Mechanical Engineering Department of the University of Pittsburgh, in a series of experiments carried out at the plant of the National Tube Co., McKeesport, Pennsylvania.

The apparent fiber stress under which the different tubes failed varied from about 7000 pounds per square inch for the relatively thinnest to 35,000 pounds per square inch for the relatively thickest walls. The average yield point of the material tested was 37,000 pounds and the tensile strength 58,000 pounds per square inch, so it is evident that the strength of a tube subjected to external fluid collapsing pressure is not dependent alone upon the elastic limit or ultimate strength of the material from which it is made.

Tubes Subjected to External Pressure

Outside Diameter of Tube, Inches	Working Pressure in Pounds per Square Inch						
	100	120	140	160	180	200	220
	Thickness of Tube in Inches. Safety Factor, 5						
7	0.152	0.160	0.168	0.177	0.185	0.193	0.201
8	0.174	0.183	0.193	0.202	0.211	0.220	0.229
9	0.196	0.206	0.217	0.227	0.237	0.248	0.258
10	0.218	0.229	0.241	0.252	0.264	0.275	0.287
11	0.239	0.252	0.265	0.277	0.290	0.303	0.316
12	0.261	0.275	0.289	0.303	0.317	0.330	0.344
13	0.283	0.298	0.313	0.328	0.343	0.358	0.373
14	0.301	0.320	0.337	0.353	0.369	0.385	0.402
15	0.323	0.343	0.361	0.378	0.396	0.413	0.430
16	0.344	0.366	0.385	0.404	0.422	0.440	0.459
16	0.366	0.389	0.409	0.429	0.448	0.468	0.488
18	0.387	0.412	0.433	0.454	0.475	0.496	0.516

Dimensions and Maximum Allowable Pressure of Tubes Subjected to External Pressure

Outside Dia., Inches	Thickness of Material, Inches	Max. Pressure Allowed, psi	Outside Dia., Inches	Thickness of Material, Inches	Max. Pressure Allowed, psi	Outside Dia., Inches	Thickness of Material, Inches	Max. Pressure Allowed, psi
2	0.095	427	3	0.109	327	4	0.134	303
2¼	0.095	380	3¼	0.120	332	4½	0.134	238
2½	0.109	392	3½	0.120	308	5	0.148	235
2¾	0.109	356	3¾	0.120	282	6	0.165	199

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SHAFTS

Shaft Calculations

Torsional Strength of Shafting.—In the formulas that follow,

α = angular deflection of shaft in degrees
c = distance from center of gravity to extreme fiber
D = diameter of shaft in inches
G = torsional modulus of elasticity = 11,500,000 pounds per square inch for steel
J = polar moment of inertia of shaft cross section (see table)
l = length of shaft in inches
N = angular velocity of shaft in revolutions per minute
P = power transmitted in horsepower
S_s = allowable torsional shearing stress in pounds per square inch
T = torsional or twisting moment in inch-pounds
Z_p = polar section modulus (see table page 252)

The allowable twisting moment for a shaft of any cross section such as circular, square, etc., is:

$$T = S_s \times Z_p \tag{1}$$

For a shaft delivering P horsepower at N revolutions per minute the twisting moment T being transmitted is:

$$T = \frac{63{,}000P}{N} \tag{2}$$

The twisting moment T as determined by Formula (2) should be less than the value determined by using Formula (1) if the maximum allowable stress S_s is not to be exceeded.

The diameter of a solid circular shaft required to transmit a given torque T is:

$$D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1T}{S_s}} \quad \text{(3a)} \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{321{,}000P}{NS_s}} \quad \text{(3b)}$$

The allowable stresses that are generally used in practice are: 4000 pounds per square inch for main power-transmitting shafts; 6000 pounds per square inch for lineshafts carrying pulleys; and 8500 pounds per square inch for small, short shafts, countershafts, etc. Using these allowable stresses, the horsepower P transmitted by a shaft of diameter D, or the diameter D of a shaft to transmit a given horsepower P may be determined from the following formulas:

For main power-transmitting shafts:

$$P = \frac{D^3N}{80} \quad \text{(4a)} \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{80P}{N}} \quad \text{(4b)}$$

For lineshafts carrying pulleys:

$$P = \frac{D^3N}{53.5} \quad \text{(5a)} \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{53.5P}{N}} \quad \text{(5b)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For small, short shafts:

$$P = \frac{D^3 N}{38} \quad (6a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{38P}{N}} \quad (6b)$$

Shafts that are subjected to shocks, such as sudden starting and stopping, should be given a greater factor of safety resulting in the use of lower allowable stresses than those just mentioned.

Example: What should be the diameter of a lineshaft to transmit 10 horsepower if the shaft is to make 150 revolutions per minute? Using Formula (5b),

$$D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{53.5 \times 10}{150}} = 1.53 \text{ or, say, } 1\frac{9}{16} \text{ inches}$$

Example: What horsepower would be transmitted by a short shaft, 2 inches in diameter, carrying two pulleys close to the bearings, if the shaft makes 300 revolutions per minute? Using Formula (6a),

$$P = \frac{2^3 \times 300}{38} = 63 \text{ horsepower}$$

Torsional Strength of Shafting, Calculations in Metric SI Units.—The allowable twisting moment for a shaft of any cross section such as circular, square, etc. can be calculated from:

$$\boldsymbol{T = S_s \times Z_p} \quad (7)$$

where T = torsional or twisting moment in N-mm; S_s = allowable torsional shearing stress in N/mm^2; and Z_p = polar section modulus in mm^3.

For a shaft delivering power of P kilowatts at N revolutions per minute, the twisting moment T being transmitted is:

$$\boldsymbol{T = \frac{9.55 \times 10^6 P}{N}} \quad (8a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \boldsymbol{T = \frac{10^6 P}{\omega}} \quad (8b)$$

where T is in newton-millimeters, and ω = angular velocity in radians per second.

The diameter D of a solid circular shaft required to transmit a given torque T is:

$$\boldsymbol{D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1T}{S_s}}} \quad (9a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \boldsymbol{D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{48.7 \times 10^6 P}{NS_s}}} \quad (9b)$$

$$\text{or} \qquad \boldsymbol{D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1 \times 10^6 P}{\omega S_s}}} \quad (9c)$$

where D is in millimeters; T is in newton-millimeters; P is power in kilowatts; N = revolutions per minute; S_s = allowable torsional shearing stress in newtons per square millimeter, and ω = angular velocity in radians per second.

If 28 newtons/mm^2 and 59 newtons/mm^2 are taken as the generally allowed stresses for main power-transmitting shafts and small short shafts, respectively, then using these allowable stresses, the power P transmitted by a shaft of diameter D, or the diameter D of a shaft to transmit a given power P may be determined from the following formulas:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For main power-transmitting shafts:

$$P = \frac{D^3N}{1.77 \times 10^6} \quad (10a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1.77 \times 10^6 P}{N}} \quad (10b)$$

For small, short shafts:

$$P = \frac{D^3N}{0.83 \times 10^6} \quad (11a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{0.83 \times 10^6 P}{N}} \quad (11b)$$

where P is in kilowatts, D is in millimeters, and N = revolutions per minute.

Example: **What should be the diameter of a power-transmitting shaft to transmit 150 kW at 500 rpm?**

$$D = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1.77 \times 10^6 \times 150}{500}} = 81 \text{ millimeters}$$

Example: **What power would a short shaft, 50 millimeters in diameter, transmit at 400 rpm?**

$$P = \frac{50^3 \times 400}{0.83 \times 10^6} = 60 \text{ kilowatts}$$

Torsional Deflection of Circular Shafts.—Shafting must often be proportioned not only to provide the strength required to transmit a given torque, but also to prevent torsional deflection (twisting) through a greater angle than has been found satisfactory for a given type of service.

For a solid circular shaft the torsional deflection in degrees is given by:

$$\alpha = \frac{584Tl}{D^4G} \quad (12)$$

Example: Find the torsional deflection for a solid steel shaft 4 inches in diameter and 48 inches long, subjected to a twisting moment of 24,000 inch-pounds. By Formula (12),

$$\alpha = \frac{584 \times 24{,}000 \times 48}{4^4 \times 11{,}500{,}000} = 0.23 \text{ degree}$$

Formula (12) can be used with metric SI units, where α = angular deflection of shaft in degrees; T = torsional moment in newton-millimeters; l = length of shaft in millimeters; D = diameter of shaft in millimeters; and G = torsional modulus of elasticity in newtons per square millimeter.

Example: **Find the torsional deflection of a solid steel shaft, 100 mm in diameter and 1300 mm long, subjected to a twisting moment of 3×10^6 newton-millimeters. The torsional modulus of elasticity is 80,000 newtons/mm^2. By Formula (12)**

$$\alpha = \frac{584 \times 3 \times 10^6 \times 1300}{100^4 \times 80{,}000} = 0.285 \text{ degree}$$

The diameter of a shaft that is to have a maximum torsional deflection α is given by:

$$D = 4.9 \times \sqrt[4]{\frac{Tl}{G\alpha}} \quad (13)$$

Formula (13) can be used with metric SI units, where D = diameter of shaft in millimeters; T = torsional moment in newton-millimeters; l = length of shaft in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

millimeters; G = torsional modulus of elasticity in newtons per square millimeter; and α = angular deflection of shaft in degrees.

According to some authorities, the allowable twist in steel transmission shafting should not exceed 0.08 degree per foot length of the shaft. The diameter D of a shaft that will permit a maximum angular deflection of 0.08 degree per foot of length for a given torque T or for a given horsepower P can be determined from the formulas:

$$D = 0.29\sqrt[4]{T} \quad (14a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = 4.6 \times \sqrt[4]{\frac{P}{N}} \quad (14b)$$

Using metric SI units and assuming an allowable twist in steel transmission shafting of 0.26 degree per meter length, Formulas (14a) and (14b) become:

$$\boldsymbol{D = 2.26\sqrt[4]{T}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \boldsymbol{D = 125.7 \times \sqrt[4]{\frac{P}{N}}}$$

where D = diameter of shaft in millimeters; T = torsional moment in newton-millimeters; P = power in kilowatts; and N = revolutions per minute.

Another rule that has been generally used in mill practice limits the deflection to 1 degree in a length equal to 20 times the shaft diameter. For a given torque or horsepower, the diameter of a shaft having this maximum deflection is given by:

$$D = 0.1\sqrt[3]{T} \quad (15a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = 4.0 \times \sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{N}} \quad (15b)$$

Example: Find the diameter of a steel lineshaft to transmit 10 horsepower at 150 revolutions per minute with a torsional deflection not exceeding 0.08 degree per foot of length.

Solution: By Formula (14b),

$$D = 4.6 \times \sqrt[4]{\frac{10}{150}} = 2.35 \text{ inches}$$

This diameter is larger than that obtained for the same horsepower and rpm in the example given for Formula (5b) in which the diameter was calculated for strength considerations only. The usual procedure in the design of shafting which is to have a specified maximum angular deflection is to compute the diameter first by means of Formulas (13), (14a), (14b), (15a), or (15b) and then by means of Formulas (3a), (3b), (4b), (5b), or (6b), using the larger of the two diameters thus found.

Linear Deflection of Shafting.—For steel line shafting, it is considered good practice to limit the linear deflection to a maximum of 0.010 inch per foot of length. The maximum distance in feet between bearings for average conditions, in order to avoid excessive linear deflection, is determined by the formulas:

$L = 8.95\sqrt[3]{D^2}$ for shafting subject to no bending action except its own weight

$L = 5.2\sqrt[3]{D^2}$ for shafting subject to bending action of pulleys, etc.

in which D = diameter of shaft in inches and L = maximum distance between bearings in feet. Pulleys should be placed as close to the bearings as possible.

In general, shafting up to 3 inches in diameter is almost always made from cold-rolled steel. This shafting is true and straight and needs no turning, but if keyways are cut in the shaft, it must usually be straightened afterwards, as the cutting of the keyways relieves the tension on the surface of the shaft produced by the cold-rolling process. Sizes of shafting from 3 to 5 inches in diameter may be either cold-rolled or turned, more frequently the latter, and all larger sizes of shafting must be turned because cold-rolled shafting is not available in diameters larger than 5 inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diameters of Finished Shafting (former American Standard *ASA B17.1*)

Diameters, Inches		Minus Tolerances, Inches[a]	Diameters, Inches		Minus Tolerances Inches[a]	Diameters, Inches		Minus Tolerances, Inches[a]
Transmission Shafting	Machinery Shafting		Transmission Shafting	Machinery Shafting		Transmission Shafting	Machinery Shafting	
	½	0.002		1 13/16	0.003		3¾	0.004
	9/16	0.002		1⅞	0.003		3⅞	0.004
	⅝	0.002	1 15/16	1 15/16	0.003	3 15/16	4	0.004
	11/16	0.002		2	0.003		4¼	0.005
	¾	0.002		2 1/16	0.004	4 7/16	4½	0.005
	13/16	0.002		2⅛	0.004		4¾	0.005
	⅞	0.002	2 3/16	2 3/16	0.004	4 15/16	5	0.005
15/16	15/16	0.002		2¼	0.004		5¼	0.005
	1	0.002		2 5/16	0.004	5 7/16	5½	0.005
	1 1/16	0.003		2⅜	0.004		5¾	0.005
	1⅛	0.003	2 7/16	2 7/16	0.004	5 15/16	6	0.005
1 3/16	1 3/16	0.003		2½	0.004		6¼	0.006
	1¼	0.003		2⅝	0.004	6½	6½	0.006
	1 5/16	0.003		2¾	0.004		6¾	0.006
	1⅜	0.003	2 15/16	2⅞	0.004	7	7	0.006
1 7/16	1 7/16	0.003		3	0.004		7¼	0.006
	1½	0.003		3⅛	0.004	7½	7½	0.006
	1 9/16	0.003		3¼	0.004		7¾	0.006
	1⅝	0.003		3⅜	0.004	8	8	0.006
1 11/16	1 11/16	0.003	3 7/16	3½	0.004	…	…	…
	1¾	0.003		3⅝	0.004	…	…	…

[a] *Note:*—These tolerances are *negative* or minus and represent the maximum allowable variation *below* the exact nominal size. For instance the maximum diameter of the $1\,^{15}/_{16}$ inch shaft is 1.938 inch and its minimum allowable diameter is 1.935 inch. Stock lengths of finished transmission shafting shall be: 16, 20 and 24 feet.

Design of Transmission Shafting.—The following guidelines for the design of shafting for transmitting a given amount of power under various conditions of loading are based upon formulas given in the former American Standard ASA B17c Code for the Design of Transmission Shafting. These formulas are based on the *maximum-shear theory* of failure which assumes that the elastic limit of a *ductile* ferrous material in shear is practically one-half its elastic limit in tension. This theory agrees, very nearly, with the results of tests on ductile materials and has gained wide acceptance in practice.

The formulas given apply in all shaft designs including shafts for special machinery. The limitation of these formulas is that they provide only for the strength of shafting and are not concerned with the torsional or lineal deformations which may, in shafts used in machine design, be the controlling factor (see *Torsional Deflection of Circular Shafts* on page 297 and *Linear Deflection of Shafting* on page 298 for deflection considerations). In the formulas that follow,

$B = \sqrt[3]{1 \div (1 - K^4)}$ (see Table 3)

D = outside diameter of shaft in inches

D_1 = inside diameter of a hollow shaft in inches

K_m = shock and fatigue factor to be applied in every case to the computed bending moment (see Table 1)

K_t = combined shock and fatigue factor to be applied in every case to the computed torsional moment (see Table 1)

M = maximum bending moment in inch-pounds

N = revolutions per minute

P = maximum power to be transmitted by the shaft in horsepower

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

p_t = maximum allowable shearing stress under combined loading conditions in pounds per square inch (see Table 2)

S = maximum allowable flexural (bending) stress, in either tension or compression in pounds per square inch (see Table 2)

S_s = maximum allowable torsional shearing stress in pounds per square inch (see Table 2)

T = maximum torsional moment in inch-pounds

V = maximum transverse shearing load in pounds

For shafts subjected to pure torsional loads only,

$$D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1K_tT}{S_s}} \quad (16a) \qquad \text{or} \qquad D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{321{,}000K_tP}{S_sN}} \quad (16b)$$

For stationary shafts subjected to bending only,

$$D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{10.2K_mM}{S}} \quad (17)$$

For shafts subjected to combined torsion and bending,

$$D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1}{p_t}\sqrt{(K_mM)^2 + (K_tT)^2}} \quad (18a)$$

or

$$D = B \times \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1}{p_t}\sqrt{(K_mM)^2 + \left(\frac{63{,}000K_tP}{N}\right)^2}} \quad (18b)$$

Formulas (16a) to (18b) may be used for solid shafts or for hollow shafts. For solid shafts the factor B is equal to 1, whereas for hollow shafts the value of B depends on the value of K which, in turn, depends on the ratio of the inside diameter of the shaft to the outside diameter ($D_1 \div D = K$). Table 3 gives values of B corresponding to various values of K.

For short solid shafts subjected only to heavy transverse shear, the diameter of shaft required is:

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{1.7V}{S_s}} \quad (19)$$

Formulas (16a), (17), (18a) and (19), can be used unchanged with metric SI units. Formula (16b) becomes:

$$D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{48.7K_tP}{S_sN}}$$ **and Formula (18b) becomes:**

$$D = B\sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1}{p_t}\sqrt{(K_mM)^2 + \left(\frac{9.55K_tP}{N}\right)^2}}$$

Throughout the formulas, D = outside diameter of shaft in millimeters; T = maximum torsional moment in newton-millimeters; S_s = maximum allowable torsional shearing stress in newtons per millimeter squared (see Table 2); P = maximum power to be transmitted in milliwatts; N = revolutions per minute; M = maximum bending moment in newton-millimeters; S = maximum allowable flexural (bending) stress, either in tension or compression in newtons per millimeter squared (see Table 2); p_t = maximum allowable shearing stress under combined loading conditions in newtons per millimeter squared; and V = maximum transverse shearing load in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

kilograms. The factors K_m, K_t, and B are unchanged, and D_1 = the inside diameter of a hollow shaft in millimeters.

Table 1. Recommended Values of the Combined Shock and Fatigue Factors for Various Types of Load

Type of Load	Stationary Shafts		Rotating Shafts	
	K_m	K_t	K_m	K_t
Gradually applied and steady	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.0
Suddenly applied, minor shocks only	1.5–2.0	1.5–2.0	1.5–2.0	1.0–1.5
Suddenly applied, heavy shocks	…	…	2.0–3.0	1.5–3.0

Table 2. Recommended Maximum Allowable Working Stresses for Shafts Under Various Types of Load

Material	Type of Load		
	Simple Bending	Pure Torsion	Combined Stress
"Commercial Steel" shafting without keyways	$S = 16{,}000$	$S_s = 8000$	$p_t = 8000$
"Commercial Steel" shafting with keyways	$S = 12{,}000$	$S_s = 6000$	$p_t = 6000$
Steel purchased under definite physical specs.	(See note [a])	(See note [b])	(See note [b])

[a] $S = 60$ percent of the elastic limit in tension but not more than 36 percent of the ultimate tensile strength.

[b] S_s and $p_t = 30$ percent of the elastic limit in tension but not more than 18 percent of the ultimate tensile strength.

If the values in the Table are converted to metric SI units, note that 1000 pounds per square inch = 6.895 newtons per square millimeter.

Table 3. Values of the Factor B Corresponding to Various Values of K for Hollow Shafts

$K = \frac{D_1}{D}$	0.95	0.90	0.85	0.80	0.75	0.70	0.65	0.60	0.55	0.50
$B = \sqrt[3]{1 \div (1 - K^4)}$	1.75	1.43	1.28	1.19	1.14	1.10	1.07	1.05	1.03	1.02

For solid shafts, $B = 1$ because $K = 0$, as follows: $B = \sqrt[3]{1 \div (1 - K^4)} = \sqrt[3]{1 \div (1 - 0)} = 1$

Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength.—Keyways cut into a shaft reduce its load carrying ability, particularly when impact loads or stress reversals are involved. To ensure an adequate factor of safety in the design of a shaft with standard keyway (width, one-quarter, and depth, one-eighth of shaft diameter), the former Code for Transmission Shafting tentatively recommended that shafts with keyways be designed on the basis of a solid circular shaft using not more than 75 percent of the working stress recommended for the solid shaft. See also page 2539.

Formula for Shafts of Brittle Materials.—The preceding formulas are applicable to ductile materials and are based on the *maximum-shear theory* of failure which assumes that the elastic limit of a *ductile* material in shear is one-half its elastic limit in tension.

Brittle materials are generally stronger in shear than in tension; therefore, the maximum-shear theory is not applicable. The *maximum-normal-stress theory* of failure is now generally accepted for the design of shafts made from brittle materials. A material may be considered brittle if its elongation in a 2-inch gage length is less than 5 percent. Materials such as cast iron, hardened tool steel, hard bronze, etc. conform to this rule. The diameter of a shaft made of a brittle material may be determined from the following formula which is based on the maximum-normal-stress theory of failure:

$$D = B \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.1}{S_t}\left[(K_m M) + \sqrt{(K_m M)^2 + (K_t T)^2}\right]}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where S_t is the maximum allowable tensile stress in pounds per square inch and the other quantities are as previously defined.

The formula can be used unchanged with metric SI units, where D = outside diameter of shaft in millimeters; S_t = the maximum allowable tensile stress in newtons per millimeter squared; M = maximum bending moment in newton-millimeters; and T = maximum torsional moment in newton-millimeters. The factors K_m, K_t, and B are unchanged.

Critical Speed of Rotating Shafts.—At certain speeds, a rotating shaft will become dynamically unstable and the resulting vibrations and deflections can result in damage not only to the shaft but to the machine of which it is a part. The speeds at which such dynamic instability occurs are called the *critical speeds* of the shaft. On page 205 are given formulas for the critical speeds of shafts subject to various conditions of loading and support. A shaft may be safely operated either above or below its critical speed, good practice indicating that the operating speed be at least 20 percent above or below the critical.

The formulas commonly used to determine critical speeds are sufficiently accurate for general purposes. However, the torque applied to a shaft has an important effect on its critical speed. Investigations have shown that the critical speeds of a uniform shaft are decreased as the applied torque is increased, and that there exist critical torques which will reduce the corresponding critical speed of the shaft to zero. A detailed analysis of the effects of applied torques on critical speeds may be found in a paper, "Critical Speeds of Uniform Shafts under Axial Torque," by Golomb and Rosenberg, presented at the First US National Congress of Applied Mechanics in 1951.

Shaft Couplings.—A shaft coupling is a device for fastening together the ends of two shafts, so that the rotary motion of one causes rotary motion of the other. One of the most simple and common forms of coupling is the flange coupling Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b. It consists of two flanged sleeves or hubs, each of which is keyed to the end of one of the two shafts to be connected. The sleeves are held together and prevented from rotating relative to each other by bolts through the flanges as indicated.

Flange Coupling

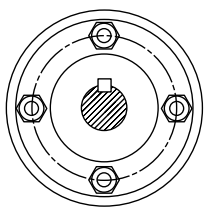


Fig. 1a.

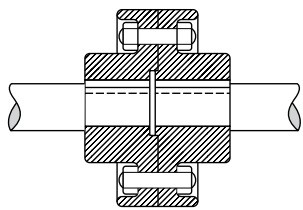


Fig. 1b.

Flexible Couplings: Flexible couplings are the most common mechanical means of compensating for unavoidable errors in alignment of shafts and shafting. When correctly applied, they are highly efficient for joining lengths of shafting without causing loss of power from bearing friction due to misalignment, and for use in direct motor drives for all kinds of machinery. Flexible couplings are not intended to be used for connecting a driven shaft and a driving shaft that are purposely placed in different planes or at an angle but are intended simply to overcome slight unavoidable errors in alignment that develop in service. There is a wide variety of flexible coupling designs; most of them consist essentially of two flanged members or hubs, fastened to the shafts and connected by some yielding arrangement. Balance is an important factor in coupling selection or design; it is not sufficient that the coupling be perfectly balanced when installed, but it must remain in balance after wear has taken place.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Comparison of Hollow and Solid Shafting with Same Outside Diameter.—Table 4 that follows gives the percent decrease in strength and weight of a hollow shaft relative to the strength and weight of a solid shaft of the same diameter. The upper figures in each line give the percent decrease in strength and the lower figures give the percent decrease in weight.

Example: A 4-inch shaft, with a 2-inch hole through it, has a weight 25 percent less than a solid 4-inch shaft, but its strength is decreased only 6.25 percent.

Table 4. Comparative Torsional Strengths and Weights of Hollow and Solid Shafting with Same Outside Diameter

Dia. of Solid and Hollow Shaft, Inches	Diameter of Axial Hole in Hollow Shaft, Inches									
	1	1¼	1½	1¾	2	2½	3	3½	4	4½
1½	19.76	48.23	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	44.44	69.44	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1¾	10.67	26.04	53.98	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	32.66	51.02	73.49	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2	6.25	15.26	31.65	58.62	…	…	…	…	…	…
	25.00	39.07	56.25	76.54	…	…	…	…	…	…
2¼	3.91	9.53	19.76	36.60	62.43	…	…	…	…	…
	19.75	30.87	44.44	60.49	79.00	…	…	…	…	…
2½	2.56	6.25	12.96	24.01	40.96	…	…	…	…	…
	16.00	25.00	36.00	49.00	64.00	…	…	…	…	…
2¾	1.75	4.28	8.86	16.40	27.98	68.30	…	…	…	…
	13.22	20.66	29.74	40.48	52.89	82.63	…	…	…	…
3	1.24	3.01	6.25	11.58	19.76	48.23	…	…	…	…
	11.11	17.36	25.00	34.01	44.44	69.44	…	…	…	…
3¼	0.87	2.19	4.54	8.41	14.35	35.02	72.61	…	…	…
	9.46	14.80	21.30	29.00	37.87	59.17	85.22	…	…	…
3½	0.67	1.63	3.38	6.25	10.67	26.04	53.98	…	…	…
	8.16	12.76	18.36	25.00	32.66	51.02	73.49	…	…	…
3¾	0.51	1.24	2.56	4.75	8.09	19.76	40.96	75.89	…	…
	7.11	11.11	16.00	21.77	28.45	44.44	64.00	87.10	…	…
4	0.40	0.96	1.98	3.68	6.25	15.26	31.65	58.62	…	…
	6.25	9.77	14.06	19.14	25.00	39.07	56.25	76.56	…	…
4¼	0.31	0.74	1.56	2.89	4.91	11.99	24.83	46.00	78.47	…
	5.54	8.65	12.45	16.95	22.15	34.61	49.85	67.83	88.59	…
4½	0.25	0.70	1.24	2.29	3.91	9.53	19.76	36.60	62.43	…
	4.94	7.72	11.11	15.12	19.75	30.87	44.44	60.49	79.00	…
4¾	0.20	0.50	1.00	1.85	3.15	7.68	15.92	29.48	50.29	80.56
	4.43	6.93	9.97	13.57	17.73	27.70	39.90	54.29	70.91	89.75
5	0.16	0.40	0.81	1.51	2.56	6.25	12.96	24.01	40.96	65.61
	4.00	6.25	8.10	12.25	16.00	25.00	36.00	49.00	64.00	81.00
5½	0.11	0.27	0.55	1.03	1.75	4.27	8.86	16.40	27.98	44.82
	3.30	5.17	7.43	10.12	13.22	20.66	29.76	40.48	52.89	66.94
6	0.09	0.19	0.40	0.73	1.24	3.02	6.25	11.58	19.76	31.65
	2.77	4.34	6.25	8.50	11.11	17.36	25.00	34.02	44.44	56.25
6½	0.06	0.14	0.29	0.59	0.90	2.19	4.54	8.41	14.35	23.98
	2.36	3.70	5.32	7.24	9.47	14.79	21.30	28.99	37.87	47.93
7	0.05	0.11	0.22	0.40	0.67	1.63	3.38	6.25	10.67	17.08
	2.04	3.19	4.59	6.25	8.16	12.76	18.36	25.00	32.66	41.33
7½	0.04	0.08	0.16	0.30	0.51	1.24	2.56	4.75	8.09	12.96
	1.77	2.77	4.00	5.44	7.11	11.11	16.00	21.77	28.45	36.00
8	0.03	0.06	0.13	0.23	0.40	0.96	1.98	3.68	6.25	10.02
	1.56	2.44	3.51	4.78	6.25	9.77	14.06	19.14	25.00	31.64

The upper figures in each line give number of percent decrease in strength; the lower figures give percent decrease in weight.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SPRINGS

Introduction to Spring Design

Many advances have been made in the spring industry in recent years. For example: developments in materials permit longer fatigue life at higher stresses; simplified design procedures reduce the complexities of design, and improved methods of manufacture help to speed up some of the complicated fabricating procedures and increase production. New types of testing instruments and revised tolerances also permit higher standards of accuracy. Designers should also consider the possibility of using standard springs now available from stock. They can be obtained from spring manufacturing companies located in different areas, and small shipments usually can be made quickly.

Designers of springs require information in the following order of precedence to simplify design procedures.

1) Spring materials and their applications

2) Allowable spring stresses

3) Spring design data with tables of spring characteristics, tables of formulas, and tolerances.

Only the more commonly used types of springs are covered in detail here. Special types and designs rarely used such as torsion bars, volute springs, Belleville washers, constant force, ring and spiral springs and those made from rectangular wire are only described briefly. Belleville and disc springs are discussed in the section *DISC SPRINGS* starting on page 350.

Notation.—The following symbols are used in spring equations:

AC = Active coils
b = Widest width of rectangular wire, inches
CL = Compressed length, inches
D = Mean coil diameter, inches = $OD - d$
d = Diameter of wire or side of square, inches
E = Modulus of elasticity in tension, pounds per square inch
F = Deflection, for N coils, inches
$F°$ = Deflection, for N coils, rotary, degrees
f = Deflection, for one active coil
FL = Free length, unloaded spring, inches
G = Modulus of elasticity in torsion, pounds per square inch
IT = Initial tension, pounds
K = Curvature stress correction factor
L = Active length subject to deflection, inches
N = Number of active coils, total
P = Load, pounds
p = Pitch, inches
R = Distance from load to central axis, inches
S or S_t = Stress, torsional, pounds per square inch
S_b = Stress, bending, pounds per square inch
SH = Solid height
S_{it} = Stress, torsional, due to initial tension, pounds per square inch
T = Torque = $P \times R$, pound-inches
TC = Total coils
t = Thickness, inches
U = Number of revolutions = $F°/360°$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spring Materials

The spring materials most commonly used include high-carbon spring steels, alloy spring steels, stainless spring steels, copper-base spring alloys, and nickel-base spring alloys.

High-Carbon Spring Steels in Wire Form.—These spring steels are the most commonly used of all spring materials because they are the least expensive, are easily worked, and are readily available. However, they are not satisfactory for springs operating at high or low temperatures or for shock or impact loading. The following wire forms are available:

Music Wire, ASTM A228: (0.80–0.95 percent carbon) This is the most widely used of all spring materials for small springs operating at temperatures up to about 250°F. It is tough, has a high tensile strength, and can withstand high stresses under repeated loading. The material is readily available in round form in diameters ranging from 0.005 to 0.125 inch and in some larger sizes up to $\frac{3}{16}$ inch. It is not available with high tensile strengths in square or rectangular sections. Music wire can be plated easily and is obtainable pretinned or preplated with cadmium, but plating after spring manufacture is usually preferred for maximum corrosion resistance.

Oil-Tempered MB Grade, ASTM A229: (0.60–0.70 percent carbon) This general-purpose spring steel is commonly used for many types of coil springs where the cost of music wire is prohibitive and in sizes larger than are available in music wire. It is readily available in diameters ranging from 0.125 to 0.500 inch, but both smaller and larger sizes may be obtained. The material should not be used under shock and impact loading conditions, at temperatures above 350°F, or at temperatures in the sub-zero range. Square and rectangular sections of wire are obtainable in fractional sizes. Annealed stock also can be obtained for hardening and tempering after coiling. This material has a heat-treating scale that must be removed before plating.

Oil-Tempered HB Grade, SAE 1080: (0.75–0.85 percent carbon) This material is similar to the MB Grade except that it has a higher carbon content and a higher tensile strength. It is obtainable in the same sizes and is used for more accurate requirements than the MB Grade, but is not so readily available. In lieu of using this material it may be better to use an alloy spring steel, particularly if a long fatigue life or high endurance properties are needed. Round and square sections are obtainable in the oil-tempered or annealed conditions.

Hard-Drawn MB Grade, ASTM A227: (0.60–0.70 percent carbon) This grade is used for general-purpose springs where cost is the most important factor. Although increased use in recent years has resulted in improved quality, it is best not to use this grade where long life and accuracy of loads and deflections are important. It is available in diameters ranging from 0.031 to 0.500 inch and in some smaller and larger sizes also. The material is available in square sections but at reduced tensile strengths. It is readily plated. Applications should be limited to those in the temperature range of 0 to 250°F.

High-Carbon Spring Steels in Flat Strip Form.—Two types of thin, flat, high-carbon spring steel strip are most widely used although several other types are obtainable for specific applications in watches, clocks, and certain instruments. These two compositions are used for over 95 percent of all such applications. Thin sections of these materials under 0.015 inch having a carbon content of over 0.85 percent and a hardness of over 47 RC (Rockwell C scale) are susceptible to hydrogen-embrittlement, even though special plating and heating operations are employed. The two types are described as follows:

Cold-Rolled Spring Steel, Blue-Tempered or Annealed, SAE 1074, also 1064, and 1070: (0.60 to 0.80 percent carbon) This very popular spring steel is available in thicknesses ranging from 0.005 to 0.062 inch and in some thinner and thicker sections. The material is available in the annealed condition for forming in 4-slide machines and in presses, and can readily be hardened and tempered after forming. It is also available in the heat-treated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

or blue-tempered condition. The steel is obtainable in several finishes, such as straw color, blue color, black, or plain. Hardnesses ranging from 42 to 46 RC (Rockwell C scale) are recommended for spring applications. Uses include spring clips, flat springs, clock springs, and motor, power, and spiral springs.

Cold-Rolled Spring Steel, Blue-Tempered Clock Steel, SAE 1095: (0.90 to 1.05 percent carbon) This popular type should be used principally in the blue-tempered condition. Although obtainable in the annealed condition, it does not always harden properly during heat treatment as it is a "shallow" hardening type. It is used principally in clocks and motor springs. End sections of springs made from this steel are annealed for bending or piercing operations. Hardnesses usually range from 47 to 51 RC.

Other materials available in strip form and used for flat springs are brass, phosphor-bronze, beryllium-copper, stainless steels, and nickel alloys.

Alloy Spring Steels.—These spring steels are used for conditions of high stress, and shock or impact loadings. They can withstand both higher and lower temperatures than the high-carbon steels and are obtainable in either the annealed or pretempered conditions.

Chromium Vanadium, ASTM A231: This very popular spring steel is used under conditions involving higher stresses than those for which the high-carbon spring steels are recommended and is also used where good fatigue strength and endurance are needed. It behaves well under shock and impact loading. The material is available in diameters ranging from 0.031 to 0.500 inch and in some larger sizes also. In square sections it is available in fractional sizes. Both the annealed and pretempered types are available in round, square, and rectangular sections. It is used extensively in aircraft-engine valve springs and for springs operating at temperatures up to 425°F.

Silicon Manganese: This alloy steel is quite popular in Great Britain. It is less expensive than chromium-vanadium steel and is available in round, square, and rectangular sections in both annealed and pretempered conditions in sizes ranging from 0.031 to 0.500 inch. It was formerly used for knee-action springs in automobiles. It is used in flat leaf springs for trucks and as a substitute for more expensive spring steels.

Chromium Silicon, ASTM A401: This alloy is used for highly stressed springs that require long life and are subjected to shock loading. It can be heat treated to higher hardnesses than other spring steels so that high tensile strengths are obtainable. The most popular sizes range from 0.031 to 0.500 inch in diameter. Very rarely are square, flat, or rectangular sections used. Hardnesses ranging from 50 to 53 RC are quite common and the alloy may be used at temperatures up to 475°F. This material is usually ordered specially for each job.

Stainless Spring Steels.—The use of stainless spring steels has increased and several compositions are available all of which may be used for temperatures up to 550°F. They are all corrosion resistant. Only the stainless 18-8 compositions should be used at sub-zero temperatures.

Stainless Type 302, ASTM A313: (18 percent chromium, 8 percent nickel) This stainless spring steel is very popular because it has the highest tensile strength and quite uniform properties. It is cold-drawn to obtain its mechanical properties and cannot be hardened by heat treatment. This material is nonmagnetic only when fully annealed and becomes slightly magnetic due to the cold-working performed to produce spring properties. It is suitable for use at temperatures up to 550°F. and for sub-zero temperatures. It is very corrosion resistant. The material best exhibits its desirable mechanical properties in diameters ranging from 0.005 to 0.1875 inch although some larger diameters are available. It is also available as hard-rolled flat strip. Square and rectangular sections are available but are infrequently used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Stainless Type 304, ASTM A313: (18 percent chromium, 8 percent nickel) This material is quite similar to Type 302, but has better bending properties and about 5 percent lower tensile strength. It is a little easier to draw, due to the slightly lower carbon content.

Stainless Type 316, ASTM A313: (18 percent chromium, 12 percent nickel, 2 percent molybdenum) This material is quite similar to Type 302 but is slightly more corrosion resistant because of its higher nickel content. Its tensile strength is 10 to 15 percent lower than Type 302. It is used for aircraft springs.

Stainless Type 17-7 PH ASTM A313: (17 percent chromium, 7 percent nickel) This alloy, which also contains small amounts of aluminum and titanium, is formed in a moderately hard state and then precipitation hardened at relatively low temperatures for several hours to produce tensile strengths nearly comparable to music wire. This material is not readily available in all sizes, and has limited applications due to its high manufacturing cost.

Stainless Type 414, SAE 51414: (12 percent chromium, 2 percent nickel) This alloy has tensile strengths about 15 percent lower than Type 302 and can be hardened by heat-treatment. For best corrosion resistance it should be highly polished or kept clean. It can be obtained hard drawn in diameters up to 0.1875 inch and is commonly used in flat cold-rolled strip for stampings. The material is not satisfactory for use at low temperatures.

Stainless Type 420, SAE 51420: (13 percent chromium) This is the best stainless steel for use in large diameters above 0.1875 inch and is frequently used in smaller sizes. It is formed in the annealed condition and then hardened and tempered. It does not exhibit its stainless properties until after it is hardened. Clean bright surfaces provide the best corrosion resistance, therefore the heat-treating scale must be removed. Bright hardening methods are preferred.

Stainless Type 431, SAE 51431: (16 percent chromium, 2 percent nickel) This spring alloy acquires high tensile properties (nearly the same as music wire) by a combination of heat-treatment to harden the wire plus cold-drawing after heat treatment. Its corrosion resistance is not equal to Type 302.

Copper-Base Spring Alloys.—Copper-base alloys are important spring materials because of their good electrical properties combined with their good resistance to corrosion. Although these materials are more expensive than the high-carbon and the alloy steels, they nevertheless are frequently used in electrical components and in sub-zero temperatures.

Spring Brass, ASTM B134: (70 percent copper, 30 percent zinc) This material is the least expensive and has the highest electrical conductivity of the copper-base alloys. It has a low tensile strength and poor spring qualities, but is extensively used in flat stampings and where sharp bends are needed. It cannot be hardened by heat treatment and should not be used at temperatures above 150°F, but is especially good at sub-zero temperatures. Available in round sections and flat strips, this hard-drawn material is usually used in the "spring hard" temper.

Phosphor Bronze, ASTM B159: (95 percent copper, 5 percent tin) This alloy is the most popular of this group because it combines the best qualities of tensile strength, hardness, electrical conductivity, and corrosion resistance with the least cost. It is more expensive than brass, but can withstand stresses 50 percent higher. The material cannot be hardened by heat treatment. It can be used at temperatures up to 212°F and at sub-zero temperatures. It is available in round sections and flat strip, usually in the "extra-hard" or "spring hard" tempers. It is frequently used for contact fingers in switches because of its low arcing properties. An 8 percent tin composition is used for flat springs and a superfine grain composition called "Duraflex" has good endurance properties.

Beryllium Copper, ASTM B197: (98 percent copper, 2 percent beryllium) This alloy can be formed in the annealed condition and then precipitation hardened after forming at

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

temperatures around 600°F, for 2 to 3 hours. This treatment produces a high hardness combined with a high tensile strength. After hardening, the material becomes quite brittle and can withstand very little or no forming. It is the most expensive alloy in the group and heat treating is expensive due to the need for holding the parts in fixtures to prevent distortion. The principal use of this alloy is for carrying electric current in switches and in electrical components. Flat strip is frequently used for contact fingers.

Nickel-Base Spring Alloys.—Nickel-base alloys are corrosion resistant, withstand both elevated and sub-zero temperatures, and their non-magnetic characteristic makes them useful for such applications as gyroscopes, chronoscopes, and indicating instruments. These materials have a high electrical resistance and therefore should not be used for conductors of electrical current.

*Monel**:* (67 percent nickel, 30 percent copper) This material is the least expensive of the nickel-base alloys. It also has the lowest tensile strength but is useful due to its resistance to the corrosive effects of sea water and because it is nearly non-magnetic. The alloy can be subjected to stresses slightly higher than phosphor bronze and nearly as high as beryllium copper. Its high tensile strength and hardness are obtained as a result of cold-drawing and cold-rolling only, since it can not be hardened by heat treatment. It can be used at temperatures ranging from −100 to +425°F at normal operating stresses and is available in round wires up to $\frac{3}{16}$ inch in diameter with quite high tensile strengths. Larger diameters and flat strip are available with lower tensile strengths.

*"K" Monel**:* (66 percent nickel, 29 percent copper, 3 percent aluminum) This material is quite similar to Monel except that the addition of the aluminum makes it a precipitation-hardening alloy. It may be formed in the soft or fairly hard condition and then hardened by a long-time age-hardening heat treatment to obtain a tensile strength and hardness above Monel and nearly as high as stainless steel. It is used in sizes larger than those usually used with Monel, is non-magnetic and can be used in temperatures ranging from −100 to +450°F at normal working stresses under 45,000 pounds per square inch.

*Inconel**:* (78 percent nickel, 14 percent chromium, 7 percent iron) This is one of the most popular of the non-magnetic nickel-base alloys because of its corrosion resistance and because it can be used at temperatures up to 700°F. It is more expensive than stainless steel but less expensive than beryllium copper. Its hardness and tensile strength is higher than that of "K" Monel and is obtained as a result of cold-drawing and cold-rolling only. It cannot be hardened by heat treatment. Wire diameters up to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch have the best tensile properties. It is often used in steam valves, regulating valves, and for springs in boilers, compressors, turbines, and jet engines.

*Inconel "X"**:* (70 percent nickel, 16 percent chromium, 7 percent iron) This material is quite similar to Inconel but the small amounts of titanium, columbium and aluminum in its composition make it a precipitation-hardening alloy. It can be formed in the soft or partially hard condition and then hardened by holding it at 1200°F for 4 hours. It is non-magnetic and is used in larger sections than Inconel. This alloy is used at temperatures up to 850°F and at stresses up to 55,000 pounds per square inch.

*Duranickel**:* ("Z" Nickel) (98 percent nickel) This alloy is non-magnetic, corrosion resistant, has a high tensile strength and is hardenable by precipitation hardening at 900°F for 6 hours. It may be used at the same stresses as Inconel but should not be used at temperatures above 500°F.

Nickel-Base Spring Alloys with Constant Moduli of Elasticity.—Some special nickel alloys have a constant modulus of elasticity over a wide temperature range. These materials are especially useful where springs undergo temperature changes and must exhibit uniform spring characteristics. These materials have a low or zero thermo-elastic coefficient

*Trade name of the International Nickel Company.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and therefore do not undergo variations in spring stiffness because of modulus changes due to temperature differentials. They also have low hysteresis and creep values which makes them preferred for use in food-weighing scales, precision instruments, gyroscopes, measuring devices, recording instruments and computing scales where the temperature ranges from –50 to +150°F. These materials are expensive, none being regularly stocked in a wide variety of sizes. They should not be specified without prior discussion with spring manufacturers because some suppliers may not fabricate springs from these alloys due to the special manufacturing processes required. All of these alloys are used in small wire diameters and in thin strip only and are covered by US patents. They are more specifically described as follows:

Elinvar[*]*:* (nickel, iron, chromium) This alloy, the first constant-modulus alloy used for hairsprings in watches, is an austenitic alloy hardened only by cold-drawing and cold-rolling. Additions of titanium, tungsten, molybdenum and other alloying elements have brought about improved characteristics and precipitation-hardening abilities. These improved alloys are known by the following trade names: Elinvar Extra, Durinval, Modulvar and Nivarox.

Ni-Span C[*]*:* (nickel, iron, chromium, titanium) This very popular constant-modulus alloy is usually formed in the 50 percent cold-worked condition and precipitation-hardened at 900°F for 8 hours, although heating up to 1250°F for 3 hours produces hardnesses on the Rockwell C scale of 40 to 44 RC, permitting safe torsional stresses of 60,000 to 80,000 pounds per square inch. This material is ferromagnetic up to 400°F; above that temperature it becomes non-magnetic.

Iso-Elastic[†]*:* (nickel, iron, chromium, molybdenum) This popular alloy is relatively easy to fabricate and is used at safe torsional stresses of 40,000 to 60,000 pounds per square inch and hardnesses of 30 to 36 RC. It is used principally in dynamometers, instruments, and food-weighing scales.

Elgiloy[‡]*:* (nickel, iron, chromium, cobalt) This alloy, also known by the trade names 8J Alloy, Durapower, and Cobenium, is a non-magnetic alloy suitable for sub-zero temperatures and temperatures up to about 1000°F, provided that torsional stresses are kept under 75,000 pounds per square inch. It is precipitation-hardened at 900°F for 8 hours to produce hardnesses of 48 to 50 RC. The alloy is used in watch and instrument springs.

Dynavar[§]*:* (nickel, iron, chromium, cobalt) This alloy is a non-magnetic, corrosion-resistant material suitable for sub-zero temperatures and temperatures up to about 750°F, provided that torsional stresses are kept below 75,000 pounds per square inch. It is precipitation-hardened to produce hardnesses of 48 to 50 RC and is used in watch and instrument springs.

Spring Stresses

Allowable Working Stresses for Springs.—The safe working stress for any particular spring depends to a large extent on the following items:

1) Type of spring — whether compression, extension, torsion, etc.

2) Size of spring — small or large, long or short

3) Spring material

4) Size of spring material

5) Type of service — light, average, or severe

6) Stress range — low, average, or high

*Trade name of Soc. Anon. de Commentry Fourchambault et Decazeville, Paris, France.
†Trade name of John Chatillon & Sons.
‡Trade name of Elgin National Watch Company.
§Trade name of Hamilton Watch Company.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

7) Loading — static, dynamic, or shock

8) Operating temperature

9) Design of spring — spring index, sharp bends, hooks.

Consideration should also be given to other factors that affect spring life: corrosion, buckling, friction, and hydrogen embrittlement decrease spring life; manufacturing operations such as high-heat stress-equalizing, presetting, and shot-peening increase spring life.

Item 5, the type of service to which a spring is subjected, is a major factor in determining a safe working stress once consideration has been given to type of spring, kind and size of material, temperature, type of loading, and so on. The types of service are:

Light Service: This includes springs subjected to static loads or small deflections and seldom-used springs, such as those in bomb fuses, projectiles, and safety devices. This service is for 1000 to 10,000 deflections.

Average Service: This includes springs in general use in machine tools, mechanical products, and electrical components. Normal frequency of deflections not exceeding 18,000 per hour permit such springs to withstand 100,000 to 1,000,000 deflections.

Severe Service: This includes springs subjected to rapid deflections over long periods of time and to shock loading, such as in pneumatic hammers, hydraulic controls and valves. This service is for 1,000,000 deflections, and above. Lowering the values 10 percent permits 10,000,000 deflections.

Fig. 1 through Fig. 6 show curves that relate the three types of service conditions to allowable working stresses and wire sizes for compression and extension springs, and safe values are provided. Fig. 7 through Fig. 10 provide similar information for helical torsion springs. In each chart, the values obtained from the curves may be increased by 20 percent (but not beyond the top curves on the charts if permanent set is to be avoided) for springs that are baked, and shot-peened, and compression springs that are pressed. Springs stressed slightly above the Light Service curves will take a permanent set.

A curvature correction factor is included in all curves, and is used in spring design calculations (see examples beginning page 317). The curves may be used for materials other than those designated in Fig. 1 through Fig. 10, by applying multiplication factors as given in Table 1.

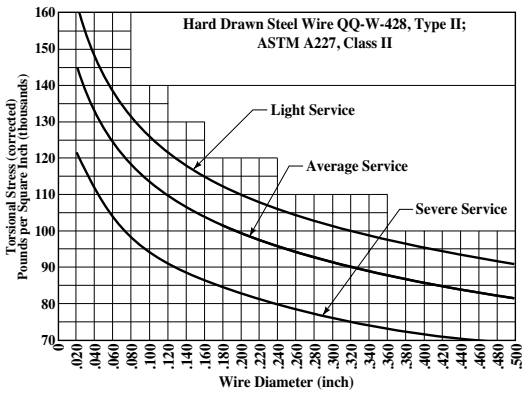


Fig. 1. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Hard Drawn Steel Wire[a]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

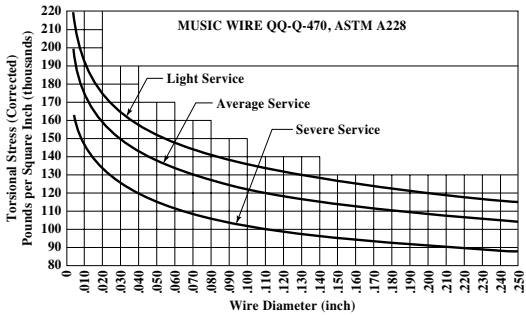


Fig. 2. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Music Wire[a]

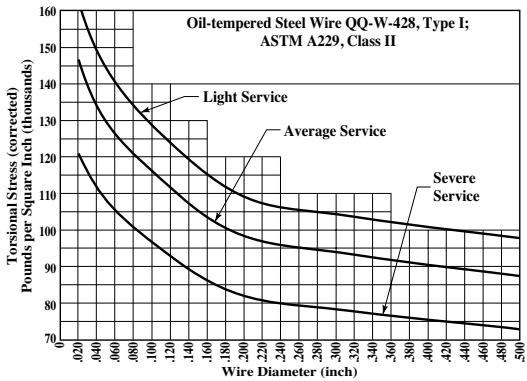


Fig. 3. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Oil-Tempered[a]

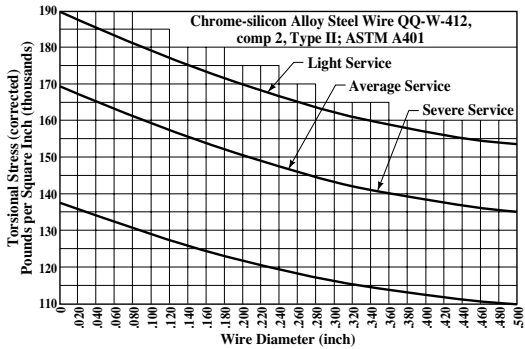


Fig. 4. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Chrome-Silicon Alloy Steel Wire[a]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

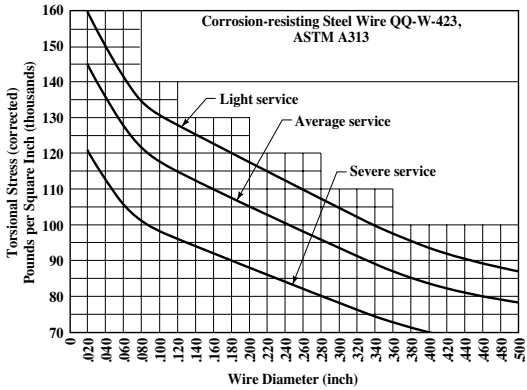


Fig. 5. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Corrosion-Resisting Steel Wire[a]

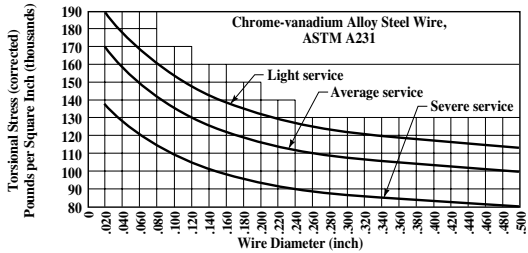


Fig. 6. Allowable Working Stresses for Compression Springs — Chrome-Vanadium Alloy Steel Wire[a]

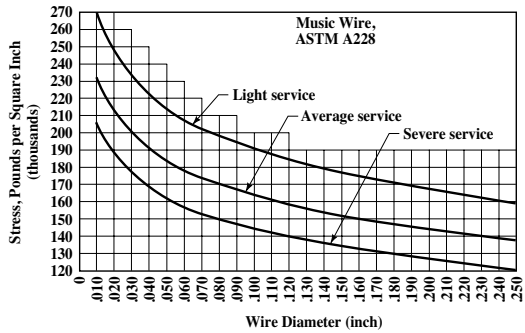


Fig. 7. Recommended Design Stresses in Bending for Helical Torsion Springs — Round Music Wire

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

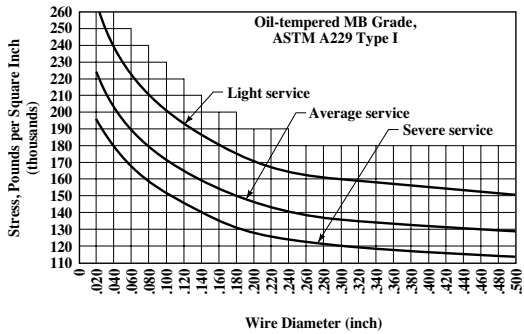


Fig. 8. Recommended Design Stresses in Bending for Helical Torsion Springs — Oil-Tempered MB Round Wire

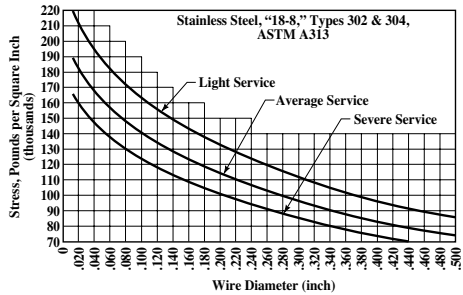


Fig. 9. Recommended Design Stresses in Bending for Helical Torsion Springs — Stainless Steel Round Wire

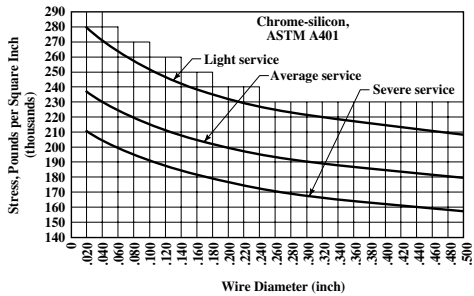


Fig. 10. Recommended Design Stresses in Bending for Helical Torsion Springs — Chrome-Silicon Round Wire

[a]Although Fig. 1 through Fig. 6 are for compression springs, they may also be used for extension springs; for extension springs, *reduce* the values obtained from the curves by 10 to 15 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Correction Factors for Other Materials

Compression and Tension Springs			
Material	Factor	Material	Factor
Silicon-manganese	Multiply the values in the chromium-vanadium curves (Fig. 6) by 0.90	Stainless Steel, 316	Multiply the values in the corrosion-resisting steel curves (Fig. 5) by 0.90
Valve-spring quality wire	Use the values in the chromium-vanadium curves (Fig. 6)		
Stainless Steel, 304 and 420	Multiply the values in the corrosion-resisting steel curves (Fig. 5) by 0.95	Stainless Steel, 431 and 17-7PH	Multiply the values in the music wire curves (Fig. 2) by 0.90

Helical Torsion Springs			
Material	Factor[a]	Material	Factor[a]
Hard Drawn MB	0.70	Stainless Steel, 431	
Stainless Steel, 316		Up to 1/32 inch diameter	0.80
Up to 1/32 inch diameter	0.75	Over 1/32 to 1/16 inch	0.85
Over 1/32 to 3/16 inch	0.70	Over 1/16 to 1/8 inch	0.95
Over 3/16 to 1/4 inch	0.65	Over 1/8 inch	1.00
Over 1/4 inch	0.50	Chromium-Vanadium	
Stainless Steel, 17-7 PH		Up to 1/16 inch diameter	1.05
Up to 1/8 inch diameter	1.00	Over 1/16 inch	1.10
Over 1/8 to 3/16 inch	1.07	Phosphor Bronze	
Over 3/16 inch	1.12	Up to 1/8 inch diameter	0.45
Stainless Steel, 420		Over 1/8 inch	0.55
Up to 1/32 inch diameter	0.70	Beryllium Copper[b]	
Over 1/32 to 1/16 inch	0.75	Up to 1/32 inch diameter	0.55
Over 1/16 to 1/8 inch	0.80	Over 1/32 to 1/16 inch	0.60
Over 1/8 to 3/16 inch	0.90	Over 1/16 to 1/8 inch	0.70
Over 3/16 inch	1.00	Over 1/8 inch	0.80

[a] Multiply the values in the curves for oil-tempered MB grade ASTM A229 Type 1 steel (Fig. 8) by these factors to obtain required values.

[b] Hard drawn and heat treated after coiling.

For use with design stress curves shown in Fig. 2, Fig. 5, Fig. 6, and Fig. 8.

Endurance Limit for Spring Materials.—When a spring is deflected continually it will become "tired" and fail at a stress far below its elastic limit. This type of failure is called *fatigue failure* and usually occurs without warning. *Endurance limit* is the highest stress, or range of stress, in pounds per square inch that can be repeated indefinitely without failure of the spring. Usually ten million cycles of deflection is called "infinite life" and is satisfactory for determining this limit.

For severely worked springs of long life, such as those used in automobile or aircraft engines and in similar applications, it is best to determine the allowable working stresses by referring to the endurance limit curves seen in Fig. 11. These curves are based principally upon the range or difference between the stress caused by the first or initial load and the stress caused by the final load. Experience with springs designed to stresses within the limits of these curves indicates that they should have infinite or unlimited fatigue life. All values include Wahl curvature correction factor. The stress ranges shown may be increased 20 to 30 percent for springs that have been properly heated, pressed to remove set, and then shot peened, provided that the increased values are lower than the torsional elastic limit by at least 10 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

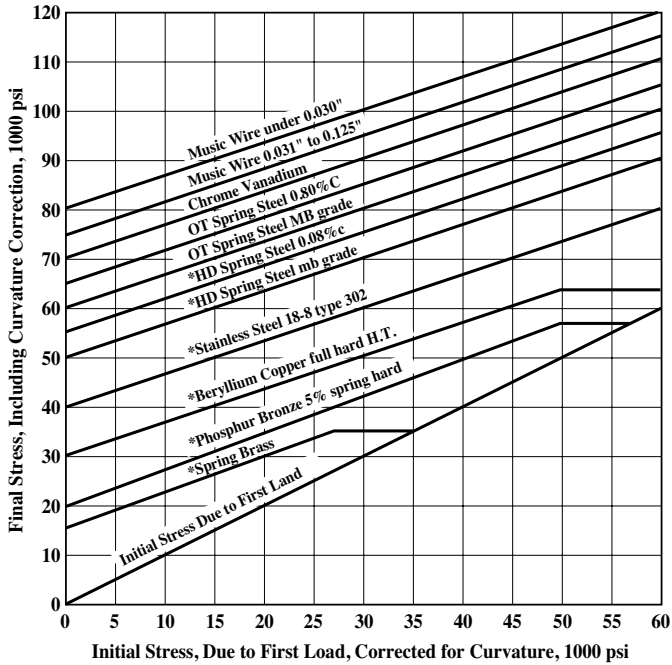


Fig. 11. Endurance Limit Curves for Compression Springs

Notes: For commercial spring materials with wire diameters up to ¼ inch except as noted. Stress ranges may be increased by approximately 30 percent for properly heated, preset, shot-peened springs.

Materials preceeded by * are not ordinarily recommended for long continued service under severe operating conditions.

Working Stresses at Elevated Temperatures.—Since modulus of elasticity decreases with increase in temperature, springs used at high temperatures exert less load and have larger deflections under load than at room temperature. The torsional modulus of elasticity for steel may be 11,200,000 pounds per square inch at room temperature, but it will drop to 10,600,000 pounds per square inch at 400°F. and will be only 10,000,000 pounds per square inch at 600°F. Also, the elastic limit is reduced, thereby lowering the permissible working stress.

Design stresses should be as low as possible for all springs used at elevated temperatures. In addition, corrosive conditions that usually exist at high temperatures, especially with steam, may require the use of corrosion-resistant material. Table 2 shows the permissible elevated temperatures at which various spring materials may be operated, together with the maximum recommended working stresses at these temperatures. The loss in load at the temperatures shown is less than 5 percent in 48 hours; however, if the temperatures listed are increased by 20 to 40 degrees, the loss of load may be nearer 10 percent. Maximum stresses shown in the table are for compression and extension springs and may be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

increased by 75 percent for torsion and flat springs. In using the data in Table 2 it should be noted that the values given are for materials in the heat-treated or spring temper condition.

Table 2. Recommended Maximum Working Temperatures and Corresponding Maximum Working Stresses for Springs

Spring Material	Max. Working Temp., °F	Max. Working Stress, psi	Spring Material	Max. Working Temp, °F	Max. Working Stress, psi
Brass Spring Wire	150	30,000	Permanickel[a]	500	50,000
Phosphor Bronze	225	35,000	Stainless Steel 18-8	550	55,000
Music Wire	250	75,000	Stainless Chromium 431	600	50,000
Beryllium-Copper	300	40,000	Inconel	700	50,000
Hard Drawn Steel Wire	325	50,000	High-Speed Steel	775	70,000
Carbon Spring Steels	375	55,000	Inconel X	850	55,000
Alloy Spring Steels	400	65,000	Chromium-Molybdenum-Vanadium	900	55,000
Monel	425	40,000	Cobenium, Elgiloy	1000	75,000
K-Monel	450	45,000			

[a] Formerly called Z-Nickel, Type B.

Loss of load at temperatures shown is less than 5 percent in 48 hours.

Spring Design Data

Spring Characteristics.—This section provides tables of spring characteristics, tables of principal formulas, and other information of a practical nature for designing the more commonly used types of springs.

Standard wire gages for springs: Information on wire gages is given in the section beginning on page 2702, and gages in decimals of an inch are given in the table on page 2703. It should be noted that the range in this table extends from Number 7/0 through Number 80. However, in spring design, the range most commonly used extends only from Gage Number 4/0 through Number 40. When selecting wire use Steel Wire Gage or Washburn and Moen gage for all carbon steels and alloy steels except music wire; use Brown & Sharpe gage for brass and phosphor bronze wire; use Birmingham gage for flat spring steels, and cold rolled strip; and use piano or music wire gage for music wire.

Spring index: The spring index is the ratio of the mean coil diameter of a spring to the wire diameter (D/d). This ratio is one of the most important considerations in spring design because the deflection, stress, number of coils, and selection of either annealed or tempered material depend to a considerable extent on this ratio. The best proportioned springs have an index of 7 through 9. Indexes of 4 through 7, and 9 through 16 are often used. Springs with values larger than 16 require tolerances wider than standard for manufacturing; those with values less than 5 are difficult to coil on automatic coiling machines.

Direction of helix: Unless functional requirements call for a definite hand, the helix of compression and extension springs should be specified as optional. When springs are designed to operate, one inside the other, the helices should be opposite hand to prevent intermeshing. For the same reason, a spring that is to operate freely over a threaded member should have a helix of opposite hand to that of the thread. When a spring is to engage with a screw or bolt, it should, of course, have the same helix as that of the thread.

Helical Compression Spring Design.—After selecting a suitable material and a safe stress value for a given spring, designers should next determine the type of end coil formation best suited for the particular application. Springs with unground ends are less expensive but they do not stand perfectly upright; if this requirement has to be met, closed ground ends are used. Helical compression springs with different types of ends are shown in Fig. 12.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

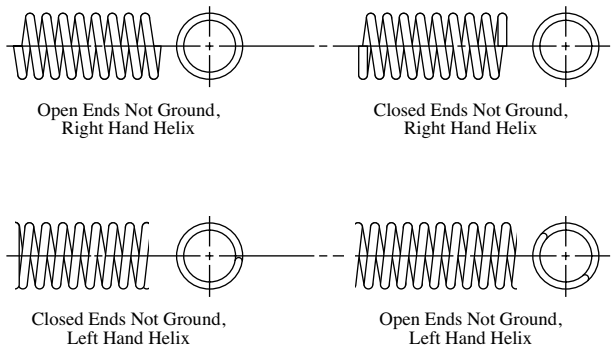


Fig. 12. Types of Helical Compression Spring Ends

Spring design formulas: Table 3 gives formulas for compression spring dimensional characteristics, and Table 4 gives design formulas for compression and extension springs.

Curvature correction: In addition to the stress obtained from the formulas for load or deflection, there is a direct shearing stress and an increased stress on the inside of the section due to curvature. Therefore, the stress obtained by the usual formulas should be multiplied by a factor K taken from the curve in Fig. 13. The corrected stress thus obtained is used only for comparison with the allowable working stress (fatigue strength) curves to determine if it is a safe stress and should not be used in formulas for deflection. The curvature correction factor K is for compression and extension springs made from round wire. For square wire reduce the K value by approximately 4 percent.

Design procedure: The limiting dimensions of a spring are often determined by the available space in the product or assembly in which it is to be used. The loads and deflections on a spring may also be known or can be estimated, but the wire size and number of coils are usually unknown. Design can be carried out with the aid of the tabular data that appears later in this section (see Table 5, which is a simple method, or by calculation alone using the formulas in Table 3 and Table 4.

Example: A compression spring with closed and ground ends is to be made from ASTM A229 high carbon steel wire, as shown in Fig. 14. Determine the wire size and number of coils.

Method 1, using table: Referring to Table 5, starting on page 321, locate the spring outside diameter ($^{13}/_{16}$ inches, from Fig. 14 on page 319) in the left-hand column. Note from the drawing that the spring load is 36 pounds. Move to the right in the table to the figure nearest this value, which is 41.7 pounds. This is somewhat above the required value but safe. Immediately above the load value, the deflection f is given, which in this instance is 0.1594 inch. This is the deflection of one coil under a load of 41.7 pounds with an uncorrected torsional stress S of 100,000 pounds per square inch for ASTM A229 oil-tempered MB steel. For other spring materials, see the footnotes to Table 5. Moving vertically in Table 5 from the load entry, the wire diameter is found to be 0.0915 inch.

The remaining spring design calculations are completed as follows:

Step 1: The stress with a load of 36 pounds is obtained by proportion, as follows: The 36 pound load is 86.3 percent of the 41.7 pound load; therefore, the stress S at 36 pounds = $0.863 \times 100{,}000 = 86{,}300$ pounds per square inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Formulas for Compression Springs

Feature	Type of End: Open or Plain (not ground)	Open or Plain (with ends ground)	Squared or Closed (not ground)	Closed and Ground
	Formula[a]			
Pitch (p)	$\frac{FL-d}{N}$	$\frac{FL}{TC}$	$\frac{FL-3d}{N}$	$\frac{FL-2d}{N}$
Solid Height (SH)	$(TC+1)d$	$TC \times d$	$(TC+1)d$	$TC \times d$
Number of Active Coils (N)	$N = TC = \frac{FL-d}{p}$	$N = TC-1 = \frac{FL}{p}-1$	$N = TC-2 = \frac{FL-3d}{p}$	$N = TC-2 = \frac{FL-2d}{p}$
Total Coils (TC)	$\frac{FL-d}{p}$	$\frac{FL}{p}$	$\frac{FL-3d}{p}+2$	$\frac{FL-2d}{p}+2$
Free Length (FL)	$(p \times TC)+d$	$p \times TC$	$(p \times N)+3d$	$(p \times N)+2d$

[a] The symbol notation is given on page 304.

Table 4. Formulas for Compression and Extension Springs

Feature	Formula[a, b]: Springs made from round wire	Springs made from square wire
Load, P Pounds	$P = \frac{0.393Sd^3}{D} = \frac{Gd^4F}{8ND^3}$	$P = \frac{0.416Sd^3}{D} = \frac{Gd^4F}{5.58ND^3}$
Stress, Torsional, S Pounds per square inch	$S = \frac{GdF}{\pi ND^2} = \frac{PD}{0.393d^3}$	$S = \frac{GdF}{2.32ND^2} = P\frac{D}{0.416d^3}$
Deflection, F Inch	$F = \frac{8PND^3}{Gd^4} = \frac{\pi SND^2}{Gd}$	$F = \frac{5.58PND^3}{Gd^4} = \frac{2.32SND^2}{Gd}$
Number of Active Coils, N	$N = \frac{Gd^4F}{8PD^3} = \frac{GdF}{\pi SD^2}$	$N = \frac{Gd^4F}{5.58PD^3} = \frac{GdF}{2.32SD^2}$
Wire Diameter, d Inch	$d = \frac{\pi SND^2}{GF} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{2.55PD}{S}}$	$d = \frac{2.32SND^2}{GF} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{PD}{0.416S}}$
Stress due to Initial Tension, S_{it}	$S_{it} = \frac{S}{P} \times IT$	$S_{it} = \frac{S}{P} \times IT$

[a] The symbol notation is given on page 304.
[b] Two formulas are given for each feature, and designers can use the one found to be appropriate for a given design. The end result from either of any two formulas is the same.

Step 2: The 86.3 percent figure is also used to determine the deflection per coil f at 36 pounds load: $0.863 \times 0.1594 = 0.1375$ inch.

Step 3: The number of active coils $AC = \frac{F}{f} = \frac{1.25}{0.1375} = 9.1$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

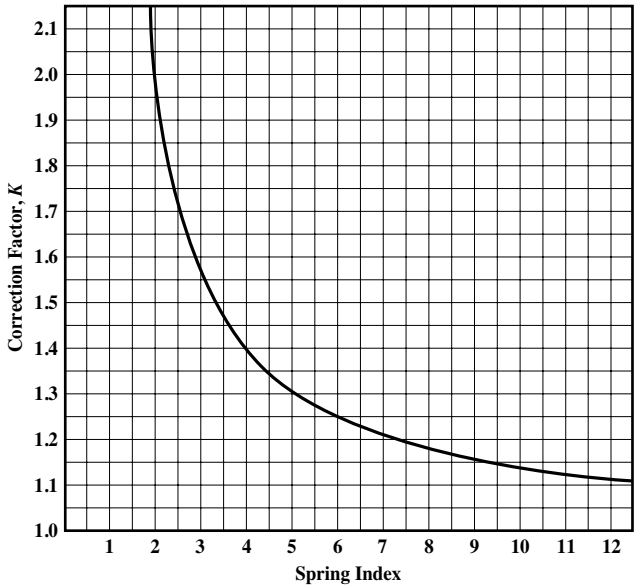


Fig. 13. Compression and Extension Spring-Stress Correction for Curvature[a]

[a]For springs made from round wire. For springs made from square wire, reduce the *K* factor values by approximately 4 percent.

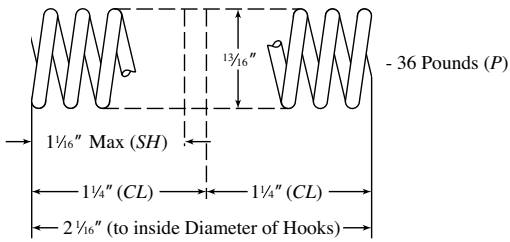


Fig. 14. Compression Spring Design Example

Step 4: Total Coils $TC = AC + 2$ (Table 3) $= 9 + 2 = 11$

Therefore, a quick answer is: 11 coils of 0.0915 inch diameter wire. However, the design procedure should be completed by carrying out these remaining steps:

Step 5: From Table 3, Solid Height $= SH = TC \times d = 11 \times 0.0915 \cong 1$ inch

Therefore, Total Deflection $= FL - SH = 1.5$ inches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Step 6: Stress Solid $= \frac{86{,}300}{1.25} \times 1.5 = 103{,}500$ pounds per square inch

Step 7: Spring Index $= \frac{O.D.}{d} - 1 = \frac{0.8125}{0.0915} - 1 = 7.9$

Step 8: From Fig. 13 on page 319, the curvature correction factor $K = 1.185$

Step 9: Total Stress at 36 pounds load $= S \times K = 86{,}300 \times 1.185 = 102{,}300$ pounds per square inch. This stress is below the 117,000 pounds per square inch permitted for 0.0915 inch wire shown on the middle curve in Fig. 3 on page 311, so it is a safe working stress.

Step 10: Total Stress at Solid $= 103{,}500 \times 1.185 = 122{,}800$ pounds per square inch. This stress is also safe, as it is below the 131,000 pounds per square inch shown on the top curve of Fig. 3, and therefore the spring will not set.

Method 2, using formulas: The procedure for design using formulas is as follows (the design example is the same as in Method 1, and the spring is shown in Fig. 14):

Step 1: Select a safe stress S below the middle fatigue strength curve Fig. 3 on page 311 for ASTM A229 steel wire, say 90,000 pounds per square inch. Assume a mean diameter D slightly below the $^{13}/_{16}$-inch $O.D.$, say 0.7 inch. Note that the value of G is 11,200,000 pounds per square inch (Table 20 on page 346).

Step 2: A trial wire diameter d and other values are found by formulas from Table 4 as follows:

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{2.55PD}{S}} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{2.55 \times 36 \times 0.7}{90{,}000}}$$
$$= \sqrt[3]{0.000714} = 0.0894 \text{ inch}$$

Note: Table 21 on page 347 can be used to avoid solving the cube root.

Step 3: From Table 21 (also see the table on page 2703), select the nearest wire gauge size, which is 0.0915 inch diameter. Using this value, the mean diameter $D = {}^{13}/_{16}$ inch $- 0.0915 = 0.721$ inch.

Step 4: The stress $S = \frac{PD}{0.393d^3} = \frac{36 \times 0.721}{0.393 \times 0.0915^3} = 86{,}300$ lb/in^2

Step 5: The number of active coils is

$$N = \frac{GdF}{\pi SD^2} = \frac{11{,}200{,}000 \times 0.0915 \times 1.25}{3.1416 \times 86{,}300 \times 0.721^2} = 9.1 \text{ (say 9)}$$

The answer is the same as before, which is to use 11 total coils of 0.0915-inch diameter wire. The total coils, solid height, etc., are determined in the same manner as in Method 1.

Table of Spring Characteristics.—Table 5 gives characteristics for compression and extension springs made from ASTM A229 oil-tempered MB spring steel having a torsional modulus of elasticity G of 11,200,000 pounds per square inch, and an uncorrected torsional stress S of 100,000 pounds per square inch. The deflection f for one coil under a load P is shown in the body of the table. The method of using these data is explained in the problems for compression and extension spring design. The table may be used for other materials by applying factors to f. The factors are given in a footnote to the table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Compression and Extension Spring Deflections[a]

Spring Outside Dia.		Wire Size or Washburn and Moen Gauge, and Decimal Equivalent[b]																		
																	19	18	17	16
		.010	.012	.014	.016	.018	.020	.022	.024	.026	.028	.030	.032	.034	.036	.038	.041	.0475	.054	.0625
Nom.	Dec.	Deflection f (inch) per coil, at Load P (pounds)[c]																		
7/64	.1094	.0277	.0222	.01824	.01529	.01302	.01121	.00974	.00853	.00751	.00664	.00589	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
		.395	.697	1.130	1.722	2.51	3.52	4.79	6.36	8.28	10.59	13.35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/8	.125	.0371	.0299	.0247	.0208	.01784	.01548	.01353	.01192	.01058	.00943	.00844	.00758	.00683	.00617	…	…	…	…	…
		.342	.600	.971	1.475	2.14	2.99	4.06	5.37	6.97	8.89	11.16	13.83	16.95	20.6	…	…	…	…	…
9/64	.1406	.0478	.0387	.0321	.0272	.0234	.0204	.01794	.01590	.01417	.01271	.01144	.01034	.00937	.00852	.00777	…	…	…	…
		.301	.528	.852	1.291	1.868	2.61	3.53	4.65	6.02	7.66	9.58	11.84	14.47	17.51	21.0	…	…	…	…
5/32	.1563	.0600	.0487	.0406	.0345	.0298	.0261	.0230	.0205	.01832	0.1649	.01491	.01354	.01234	.01128	.01033	.00909	…	…	…
		.268	.470	.758	1.146	1.656	2.31	3.11	4.10	5.30	6.72	8.39	10.35	12.62	15.23	18.22	23.5	…	…	…
11/64	.1719	.0735	.0598	.0500	.0426	.0369	.0324	.0287	.0256	.0230	.0208	.01883	.01716	.01569	.01439	.01324	.01172	.00914	…	…
		.243	.424	.683	1.031	1.488	2.07	2.79	3.67	4.73	5.99	7.47	9.19	11.19	13.48	16.09	21.8	33.8	…	…
3/16	.1875	.0884	.0720	.0603	.0516	.0448	.0394	.0349	.0313	.0281	.0255	.0232	.0212	.01944	.01788	.01650	.01468	.01157	.00926	…
		.221	.387	.621	.938	1.351	1.876	2.53	3.32	4.27	5.40	6.73	8.27	10.05	12.09	14.41	18.47	30.07	46.3	…
13/64	.2031	.1046	.0854	.0717	.0614	.0534	.0470	.0418	.0375	.0338	.0307	.0280	.0257	.0236	.0218	.0201	.01798	.01430	.01155	…
		.203	.355	.570	.859	1.237	1.716	2.31	3.03	3.90	4.92	6.12	7.52	9.13	10.96	13.05	16.69	27.1	41.5	…
7/32	.2188	…	.1000	.0841	.0721	.0628	.0555	.0494	.0444	.0401	.0365	.0333	.0306	.0282	.0260	.0241	.0216	.01733	.01411	.01096
		…	.328	.526	.793	1.140	1.580	2.13	2.79	3.58	4.52	5.61	6.88	8.35	10.02	11.92	15.22	24.6	37.5	61.3
15/64	.2344	…	.1156	.0974	.0836	.0730	.0645	.0575	.0518	.0469	.0427	.0391	.0359	.0331	.0307	.0285	.0256	.0206	.01690	.01326
		…	.305	.489	.736	1.058	1.465	1.969	2.58	3.21	4.18	5.19	6.35	7.70	9.23	10.97	13.99	22.5	34.3	55.8
1/4	.250	…	…	.1116	.0960	.0839	.0742	.0663	.0597	.0541	.0494	.0453	.0417	.0385	.0357	.0332	.0299	.0242	.01996	.01578
		…	…	.457	.687	.987	1.366	1.834	2.40	3.08	3.88	4.82	5.90	7.14	8.56	10.17	12.95	20.8	31.6	51.1
9/32	.2813	…	…	.1432	.1234	.1080	.0958	.0857	.0774	.0703	.0643	.0591	.0545	.0505	.0469	.0437	.0395	.0323	.0268	.0215
		…	…	.403	.606	.870	1.202	1.613	2.11	2.70	3.40	4.22	5.16	6.24	7.47	8.86	11.26	18.01	27.2	43.8
5/16	.3125	…	…	…	.1541	.1351	.1200	.1076	.0973	.0886	.0811	.0746	.0690	.0640	.0596	.0556	.0504	.0415	.0347	.0281
		…	…	…	.542	.778	1.074	1.440	1.881	2.41	3.03	3.75	4.58	5.54	6.63	7.85	9.97	15.89	23.9	38.3
11/32	.3438	…	…	…	…	.1633	.1470	.1321	.1196	.1090	.0999	.0921	.0852	.0792	.0733	.0690	.0627	.0518	.0436	.0355
		…	…	…	…	.703	.970	1.300	1.697	2.17	2.73	3.38	4.12	4.98	5.95	7.05	8.94	14.21	21.3	34.1
3/8	.375	…	…	…	…	…	.1768	.1589	.1440	.1314	.1206	.1113	.1031	.0960	.0895	.0839	.0764	.0634	.0535	.0438
		…	…	…	…	…	.885	1.185	1.546	1.978	2.48	3.07	3.75	4.53	5.40	6.40	8.10	12.85	19.27	30.7

[a] This table is for ASTM A229 oil tempered spring steel with a torsional modulus G of 11,200,000 psi, and an uncorrected torsional stress of 100,000 psi. For other materials use the following factors: stainless steel, multiply f by 1.067; spring brass, multiply f by 2.24; phosphor bronze, multiply f by 1.867; Monel metal, multiply f by 1.244; beryllium copper, multiply f by 1.725; Inconel (non-magnetic), multiply f by 1.045.

[b] Round wire. For square wire, multiply f by 0.707, and p, by 1.2

[c] The upper figure is the deflection and the lower figure the load as read against each spring size. *Note:* Intermediate values can be obtained within reasonable accuracy by interpolation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Compression and Extension Spring Deflections**[a]

Spring Outside Dia.		Wire Size or Washburn and Moen Gauge, and Decimal Equivalent																	
									19	18	17	16	15	14	13	3/32	12	11	1/8
		.026	.028	.030	.032	.034	.036	.038	.041	.0475	.054	.0625	.072	.080	.0915	.0938	.1055	.1205	.125
Nom.	Dec.	Deflection *f* (inch) per coil, at Load *P* (pounds)																	
13/32	.4063	.1560	.1434	.1324	.1228	.1143	.1068	.1001	.0913	.0760	.0645	.0531	.0436	.0373	.0304	.0292	.0241	…	…
		1.815	2.28	2.82	3.44	4.15	4.95	5.85	7.41	11.73	17.56	27.9	43.9	61.6	95.6	103.7	153.3	…	…
7/16	.4375	.1827	.1680	.1553	.1441	.1343	.1256	.1178	.1075	.0898	.0764	.0631	.0521	.0448	.0367	.0353	.0293	.0234	.0219
		1.678	2.11	2.60	3.17	3.82	4.56	5.39	6.82	10.79	16.13	25.6	40.1	56.3	86.9	94.3	138.9	217.	245.
15/32	.4688	.212	.1947	.1800	.1673	.1560	.1459	.1370	.1252	.1048	.0894	.0741	.0614	.0530	.0437	.0420	.0351	.0282	.0265
		1.559	1.956	2.42	2.94	3.55	4.23	5.00	6.33	9.99	14.91	23.6	37.0	51.7	79.7	86.4	126.9	197.3	223.
1/2	.500	.243	.223	.207	.1920	.1792	.1678	.1575	.1441	.1209	.1033	.0859	.0714	.0619	.0512	.0494	.0414	.0335	.0316
		1.456	1.826	2.26	2.75	3.31	3.95	4.67	5.90	9.30	13.87	21.9	34.3	47.9	73.6	80.0	116.9	181.1	205.
17/32	.5313	.276	.254	.235	.219	.204	.1911	.1796	.1645	.1382	.1183	.0987	.0822	.0714	.0593	.0572	.0482	.0393	.0371
		1.366	1.713	2.12	2.58	3.10	3.70	4.37	5.52	8.70	12.96	20.5	31.9	44.6	68.4	74.1	108.3	167.3	188.8
9/16	.5625	…	.286	.265	.247	.230	.216	.203	.1861	.1566	.1343	.1122	.0937	.0816	.0680	.0657	.0555	.0455	.0430
		…	1.613	1.991	2.42	2.92	3.48	4.11	5.19	8.18	12.16	19.17	29.9	41.7	63.9	69.1	100.9	155.5	175.3
19/32	.5938	…	…	.297	.277	.259	.242	.228	.209	.1762	.1514	.1267	.1061	.0926	.0774	.0748	.0634	.0522	.0493
		…	…	1.880	2.29	2.76	3.28	3.88	4.90	7.71	11.46	18.04	28.1	39.1	60.0	64.8	94.4	145.2	163.6
5/8	.625	…	…	.331	.308	.288	.270	.254	.233	.1969	.1693	.1420	.1191	.1041	.0873	.0844	.0718	.0593	.0561
		…	…	1.782	2.17	2.61	3.11	3.67	4.63	7.29	10.83	17.04	26.5	36.9	56.4	61.0	88.7	136.2	153.4
21/32	.6563	…	…	…	.342	.320	.300	.282	.259	.219	.1884	.1582	.1330	.1164	.0978	.0946	.0807	.0668	.0634
		…	…	…	2.06	2.48	2.95	3.49	4.40	6.92	10.27	16.14	25.1	34.9	53.3	57.6	83.7	128.3	144.3
11/16	.6875	…	…	…	…	.352	.331	.311	.286	.242	.208	.1753	.1476	.1294	.1089	.1054	.0901	.0748	.0710
		…	…	…	…	2.36	2.81	3.32	4.19	6.58	9.76	15.34	23.8	33.1	50.5	54.6	79.2	121.2	136.3
23/32	.7188	…	…	…	…	…	.363	.342	.314	.266	.230	.1933	.1630	.1431	.1206	.1168	.1000	.0833	.0791
		…	…	…	…	…	2.68	3.17	3.99	6.27	9.31	14.61	22.7	31.5	48.0	51.9	75.2	114.9	129.2
3/4	.750	…	…	…	…	…	…	.374	.344	.291	.252	.212	.1791	.1574	.1329	.1288	.1105	.0923	.0877
		…	…	…	…	…	…	3.03	3.82	5.99	8.89	13.94	21.6	30.0	45.7	49.4	71.5	109.2	122.7
25/32	.7813	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.375	.318	.275	.232	.1960	.1724	.1459	.1413	.1214	.1017	.0967
		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.66	5.74	8.50	13.34	20.7	28.7	43.6	47.1	68.2	104.0	116.9
13/16	.8125	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.407	.346	.299	.253	.214	.1881	.1594	.1545	.1329	.1115	.1061
		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.51	5.50	8.15	12.78	19.80	27.5	41.7	45.1	65.2	99.3	111.5

[a] This table is for ASTM A229 oil tempered spring steel with a torsional modulus *G* of 11,200,000 psi, and an uncorrected torsional stress of 100,000 psi. For other materials, and other important footnotes, see page 321.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Compression and Extension Spring Deflections**[a]

Spring Outside Dia.		Wire Size or Washburn and Moen Gauge, and Decimal Equivalent																
		15	14	13	3/32	12	11	1/8	10	9	5/32	8	7	3/16	6	5	7/32	4
		.072	.080	.0915	.0938	.1055	.1205	.125	.135	.1483	.1563	.162	.177	.1875	.192	.207	.2188	.2253
Nom.	Dec.	Deflection f (inch) per coil, at Load P (pounds)																
7/8	.875	.251	.222	.1882	.1825	.1574	.1325	.1262	.1138	.0999	.0928	.0880	.0772	.0707	.0682	.0605	.0552	.0526
		18.26	25.3	39.4	41.5	59.9	91.1	102.3	130.5	176.3	209.	234.	312.	377.	407.	521.	626.	691.
29/32	.9063	.271	.239	.204	.1974	.1705	.1438	.1370	.1236	.1087	.1010	.0959	.0843	.0772	.0746	.0663	.0606	.0577
		17.57	24.3	36.9	39.9	57.6	87.5	98.2	125.2	169.0	199.9	224.	299.	360.	389.	498.	598.	660.
15/16	.9375	.292	.258	.219	.213	.1841	.1554	.1479	.1338	.1178	.1096	.1041	.0917	.0842	.0812	.0723	.0662	.0632
		16.94	23.5	35.6	38.4	55.4	84.1	94.4	120.4	162.3	191.9	215.	286.	345.	373.	477.	572.	631.
31/32	.9688	.313	.277	.236	.229	.1982	.1675	.1598	.1445	.1273	.1183	.1127	.0994	.0913	.0882	.0786	.0721	.0688
		16.35	22.6	34.3	37.0	53.4	81.0	90.9	115.9	156.1	184.5	207.	275.	332.	358.	457.	548.	604.
1	1.000	.336	.297	.253	.246	.213	.1801	.1718	.1555	.1372	.1278	.1216	.1074	.0986	.0954	.0852	.0783	.0747
		15.80	21.9	33.1	35.8	51.5	78.1	87.6	111.7	150.4	177.6	198.8	264.	319.	344.	439.	526.	580.
1 1/32	1.031	.359	.317	.271	.263	.228	.1931	.1843	.1669	.1474	.1374	.1308	.1157	.1065	.1029	.0921	.0845	.0809
		15.28	21.1	32.0	34.6	49.8	75.5	84.6	107.8	145.1	171.3	191.6	255.	307.	331.	423.	506.	557.
1 1/16	1.063	.382	.338	.289	.281	.244	.207	.1972	.1788	.1580	.1474	.1404	.1243	.1145	.1107	.0993	.0913	.0873
		14.80	20.5	31.0	33.5	48.2	73.0	81.8	104.2	140.1	165.4	185.0	246.	296.	319.	407.	487.	537.
1 1/32	1.094	.407	.360	.308	.299	.260	.221	.211	.1910	.1691	.1578	.1503	.1332	.1229	.1188	.1066	.0982	.0939
		14.34	19.83	30.0	32.4	46.7	70.6	79.2	100.8	135.5	159.9	178.8	238.	286.	308.	393.	470.	517.
1 1/8	1.125	.432	.383	.328	.318	.277	.235	.224	.204	.1804	.1685	.1604	.1424	.1315	.1272	.1142	.1053	.1008
		13.92	19.24	29.1	31.4	45.2	68.4	76.7	97.6	131.2	154.7	173.0	230.	276.	298.	379.	454.	499.
1 3/16	1.188	.485	.431	.368	.358	.311	.265	.254	.231	.204	.1908	.1812	.1620	.1496	.1448	.1303	.1203	.1153
		13.14	18.15	27.5	29.6	42.6	64.4	72.1	91.7	123.3	145.4	162.4	215.	259.	279.	355.	424.	467.
1 1/4	1.250	.541	.480	.412	.400	.349	.297	.284	.258	.230	.215	.205	.1824	.1690	.1635	.1474	.1363	.1308
		12.44	17.19	26.0	28.0	40.3	60.8	68.2	86.6	116.2	137.0	153.1	203.	244.	263.	334.	399.	438.
1 5/16	1.313	.600	.533	.457	.444	.387	.331	.317	.288	.256	.240	.229	.205	.1894	.1836	.1657	.1535	.1472
		11.81	16.31	24.6	26.6	38.2	57.7	64.6	82.0	110.1	129.7	144.7	191.6	230.	248.	315.	376.	413.
1 3/8	1.375	.662	.588	.506	.491	.429	.367	.351	.320	.285	.267	.255	.227	.211	.204	.1848	.1713	.1650
		11.25	15.53	23.4	25.3	36.3	54.8	61.4	77.9	104.4	123.0	137.3	181.7	218.	235.	298.	356.	391
1 7/16	1.438	.727	.647	.556	.540	.472	.404	.387	.353	.314	.295	.282	.252	.234	.227	.205	.1905	.1829
		10.73	14.81	22.3	24.1	34.6	52.2	58.4	74.1	99.4	117.0	130.6	172.6	207.	223.	283.	337.	371.

[a] This table is for ASTM A229 oil tempered spring steel with a torsional modulus G of 11,200,000 psi, and an uncorrected torsional stress of 100,000 psi. For other materials, and other important footnotes, see page 321.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Compression and Extension Spring Deflections**[a]

Spring Outside Dia.		Wire Size or Washburn and Moen Gauge, and Decimal Equivalent																	
		11	1/8	10	9	5/32	8	7	3/16	6	5	7/32	4	3	1/4	2	9/32	0	5/16
		.1205	.125	.135	.1483	.1563	.162	.177	.1875	.192	.207	.2188	.2253	.2437	.250	.2625	.2813	.3065	.3125
Nom.	Dec.	Deflection f (inch) per coil, at Load P (pounds)																	
1½	1.500	.443	.424	.387	.350	.324	.310	.277	.258	.250	.227	.210	.202	.1815	.1754	.1612	.1482	.1305	.1267
		49.8	55.8	70.8	94.8	111.5	124.5	164.6	197.1	213.	269.	321.	352.	452.	499.	574.	717.	947.	1008.
1⅝	1.625	.527	.505	.461	.413	.387	.370	.332	.309	.300	.273	.254	.244	.220	.212	.1986	.1801	.1592	.1547
		45.7	51.1	64.8	86.7	102.0	113.9	150.3	180.0	193.9	246.	292.	321.	411.	446.	521.	650.	858.	912.
1¾	1.750	.619	.593	.542	.485	.456	.437	.392	.366	.355	.323	.301	.290	.261	.253	.237	.215	.1908	.1856
		42.2	47.2	59.8	80.0	94.0	104.9	138.5	165.6	178.4	226.	269.	295.	377.	409.	477.	595.	783.	833.
1⅞	1.875	.717	.687	.629	.564	.530	.508	.457	.426	.414	.377	.351	.339	.306	.296	.278	.253	.225	.219
		39.2	43.8	55.5	74.2	87.2	97.3	128.2	153.4	165.1	209.	248.	272.	348.	378.	440.	548.	721.	767.
1 15/16	1.938	.769	.738	.676	.605	.569	.546	.492	.458	.446	.405	.379	.365	.331	.320	.300	.273	.243	.237
		37.8	42.3	53.6	71.6	84.2	93.8	123.6	147.9	159.2	201.	239.	262.	335.	364.	425.	528.	693.	737.
2	2.000	.823	.789	.723	.649	.610	.585	.527	.492	.478	.436	.407	.392	.355	.344	.323	.295	.263	.256
		36.6	40.9	51.8	69.2	81.3	90.6	119.4	142.8	153.7	194.3	231.	253.	324.	351.	409.	509.	668.	710.
2 1/16	2.063	.878	.843	.768	.693	.652	.626	.564	.526	.512	.467	.436	.421	.381	.369	.346	.316	.282	.275
		35.4	39.6	50.1	66.9	78.7	87.6	115.4	138.1	148.5	187.7	223.	245.	312.	339.	395.	491.	644.	685.
2⅛	2.125	.936	.898	.823	.739	.696	.667	.602	.562	.546	.499	.466	.449	.407	.395	.371	.339	.303	.295
		34.3	38.3	48.5	64.8	76.1	84.9	111.8	133.6	143.8	181.6	216.	236.	302.	327.	381.	474.	622.	661.
2 3/16	2.188	.995	.955	.876	.786	.740	.711	.641	.598	.582	.532	.497	.479	.435	.421	.396	.362	.324	.316
		33.3	37.2	47.1	62.8	73.8	82.2	108.3	129.5	139.2	175.8	209.	229.	292.	317.	369.	459.	601.	639.
2¼	2.250	1.056	1.013	.930	.835	.787	.755	.681	.637	.619	.566	.529	.511	.463	.449	.423	.387	.346	.337
		32.3	36.1	45.7	60.9	71.6	79.8	105.7	125.5	135.0	170.5	202.	222.	283.	307.	357.	444.	582.	618.
2 5/16	2.313	1.119	1.074	.986	.886	.834	.801	.723	.676	.657	.601	.562	.542	.493	.478	.449	.411	.368	.359
		31.4	35.1	44.4	59.2	69.5	77.5	101.9	121.8	131.0	165.4	196.3	215.	275.	298.	347.	430.	564.	599.
2⅜	2.375	1.184	1.136	1.043	.938	.884	.848	.763	.716	.696	.637	.596	.576	.523	.507	.477	.437	.392	.382
		30.5	34.1	43.1	57.5	67.6	75.3	99.1	118.3	127.3	160.7	190.7	209.	267.	289.	336.	417.	547.	581.
2 7/16	2.438	…	1.201	1.102	.991	.934	.897	.810	.757	.737	.674	.631	.609	.554	.537	.506	.464	.416	.405
		…	33.2	42.0	56.0	65.7	73.2	96.3	115.1	123.7	156.1	185.3	203.	259.	281.	327.	405.	531.	564.
2½	2.500	…	1.266	1.162	1.046	.986	.946	.855	.800	.778	.713	.667	.644	.586	.568	.536	.491	.441	.430
		…	32.3	40.9	54.5	64.0	71.3	93.7	111.6	120.4	151.9	180.2	197.5	252.	273.	317.	394.	516.	548.

[a] This table is for ASTM A229 oil tempered spring steel with a torsional modulus G of 11,200,000 psi, and an uncorrected torsional stress of 100,000 psi. For other materials, and other important footnotes, see page 321.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Extension Springs.—About 10 percent of all springs made by many companies are of this type, and they frequently cause trouble because insufficient consideration is given to stress due to initial tension, stress and deflection of hooks, special manufacturing methods, secondary operations and overstretching at assembly. Fig. 15 shows types of ends used on these springs.

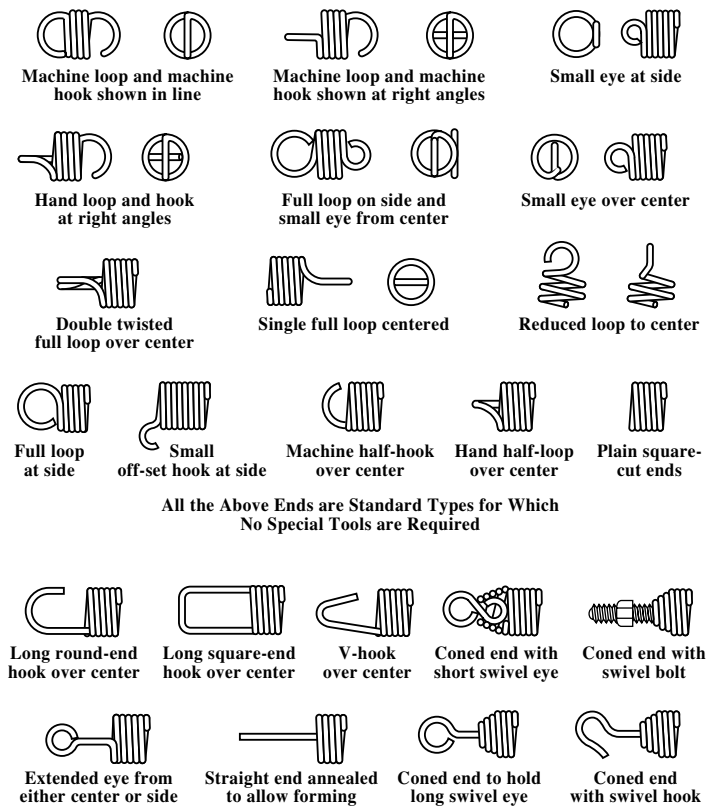

Machine loop and machine hook shown in line
Machine loop and machine hook shown at right angles
Small eye at side
Hand loop and hook at right angles
Full loop on side and small eye from center
Small eye over center
Double twisted full loop over center
Single full loop centered
Reduced loop to center
Full loop at side
Small off-set hook at side
Machine half-hook over center
Hand half-loop over center
Plain square-cut ends
All the Above Ends are Standard Types for Which No Special Tools are Required
Long round-end hook over center
Long square-end hook over center
V-hook over center
Coned end with short swivel eye
Coned end with swivel bolt
Extended eye from either center or side
Straight end annealed to allow forming
Coned end to hold long swivel eye
Coned end with swivel hook
This Group of Special Ends Requires Special Tools

Fig. 15. Types of Helical Extension Spring Ends

Initial tension: In the spring industry, the term "Initial tension" is used to define a force or load, measurable in pounds or ounces, which presses the coils of a close wound extension spring against one another. This force must be overcome before the coils of a spring begin to open up.

Initial tension is wound into extension springs by bending each coil as it is wound away from its normal plane, thereby producing a slight twist in the wire which causes the coil to spring back tightly against the adjacent coil. Initial tension can be wound into cold-coiled

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

extension springs only. Hot-wound springs and springs made from annealed steel are hardened and tempered after coiling, and therefore initial tension cannot be produced. It is possible to make a spring having initial tension only when a high tensile strength, obtained by cold drawing or by heat treatment, is possessed by the material as it is being wound into springs. Materials that possess the required characteristics for the manufacture of such springs include hard-drawn wire, music wire, pre-tempered wire, 18-8 stainless steel, phosphor-bronze, and many of the hard-drawn copper-nickel, and nonferrous alloys. Permissible torsional stresses resulting from initial tension for different spring indexes are shown in Fig. 16.

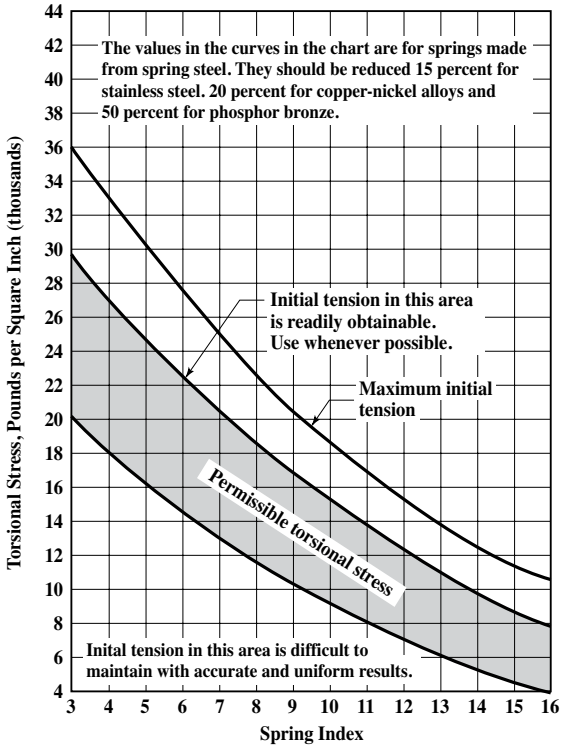


Fig. 16. Permissible Torsional Stress Caused by Initial Tension in Coiled Extension Springs for Different Spring Indexes

Hook failure: The great majority of breakages in extension springs occurs in the hooks. Hooks are subjected to both bending and torsional stresses and have higher stresses than the coils in the spring.

Stresses in regular hooks: The calculations for the stresses in hooks are quite complicated and lengthy. Also, the radii of the bends are difficult to determine and frequently vary between specifications and actual production samples. However, regular hooks are more highly stressed than the coils in the body and are subjected to a bending stress at section B

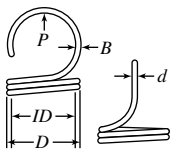
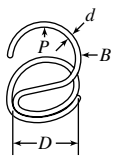
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(see Table 6.) The bending stress S_b at section B should be compared with allowable stresses for torsion springs and with the elastic limit of the material in tension (See Fig. 7 through Fig. 10.)

Stresses in cross-over hooks: Results of tests on springs having a normal average index show that the cross-over hooks last longer than regular hooks. These results may not occur on springs of small index or if the cross-over bend is made too sharply.

In as much as both types of hooks have the same bending stress, it would appear that the fatigue life would be the same. However, the large bend radius of the regular hooks causes some torsional stresses to coincide with the bending stresses, thus explaining the earlier breakages. If sharper bends were made on the regular hooks, the life should then be the same as for cross-over hooks.

Table 6. Formula for Bending Stress at Section B

Type of Hook	Stress in Bending
 Regular Hook  Cross-over Hook	$S_b = \frac{5PD^2}{IDd^3}$

Stresses in half hooks: The formulas for regular hooks can also be used for half hooks, because the smaller bend radius allows for the increase in stress. It will therefore be observed that half hooks have the same stress in bending as regular hooks.

Frequently overlooked facts by many designers are that one full hook deflects an amount equal to one half a coil and each half hook deflects an amount equal to one tenth of a coil. Allowances for these deflections should be made when designing springs. Thus, an extension spring, with regular full hooks and having 10 coils, will have a deflection equal to 11 coils, or 10 percent more than the calculated deflection.

Extension Spring Design.—The available space in a product or assembly usually determines the limiting dimensions of a spring, but the wire size, number of coils, and initial tension are often unknown.

Example: An extension spring is to be made from spring steel ASTM A229, with regular hooks as shown in Fig. 17. Calculate the wire size, number of coils and initial tension.

Note: Allow about 20 to 25 percent of the 9 pound load for initial tension, say 2 pounds, and then design for a 7 pound load (not 9 pounds) at $\frac{5}{8}$ inch deflection. Also use lower stresses than for a compression spring to allow for overstretching during assembly and to obtain a safe stress on the hooks. Proceed as for compression springs, but locate a load in the tables somewhat higher than the 9 pound load.

Method 1, using table: From Table 5 locate $\frac{3}{4}$ inch outside diameter in the left column and move to the right to locate a load P of 13.94 pounds. A deflection f of 0.212 inch appears above this figure. Moving vertically from this position to the top of the column a suitable wire diameter of 0.0625 inch is found.

The remaining design calculations are completed as follows:

Step 1: The stress with a load of 7 pounds is obtained as follows:

The 7 pound load is 50.2 percent of the 13.94 pound load. Therefore, the stress S at 7 pounds = 0.502 percent × 100,000 = 50,200 pounds per square inch.

Step 2: The 50.2 percent figure is also used to determine the deflection per coil f: 0.502 percent × 0.212 = 0.1062 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

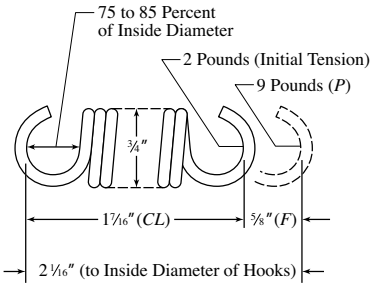


Fig. 17. Extension Spring Design Example

Step 3: The number of active coils (say 6)

$$AC = \frac{F}{f} = \frac{0.625}{0.1062} = 5.86$$

This result should be reduced by 1 to allow for deflection of 2 hooks (see notes 1 and 2 that follow these calculations.) Therefore, a quick answer is: 5 coils of 0.0625 inch diameter wire. However, the design procedure should be completed by carrying out the following steps:

Step 4: The body length = $(TC + 1) \times d = (5 + 1) \times 0.0625 = \frac{3}{8}$ inch.

Step 5: The length from the body to inside hook

$$= \frac{\text{FL} - \text{Body}}{2} = \frac{1.4375 - 0.375}{2} = 0.531 \text{ inch}$$

$$\text{Percentage of ID} = \frac{0.531}{ID} = \frac{0.531}{0.625} = 85 \text{ percent}$$

This length is satisfactory, see Note 3 following this procedure.

Step 6:

$$\text{The spring index} = \frac{OD}{d} - 1 = \frac{0.75}{0.0625} - 1 = 11$$

Step 7: The initial tension stress is

$$S_{it} = \frac{S \times IT}{P} = \frac{50{,}200 \times 2}{7} = 14{,}340 \text{ pounds per square inch}$$

This stress is satisfactory, as checked against curve in Fig. 16.

Step 8: The curvature correction factor $K = 1.12$ (Fig. 13).

Step 9: The total stress = $(50{,}200 + 14{,}340) \times 1.12 = 72.285$ pounds per square inch

This result is less than 106,250 pounds per square inch permitted by the middle curve for 0.0625 inch wire in Fig. 3 and therefore is a safe working stress that permits some additional deflection that is usually necessary for assembly purposes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Step 10: The large majority of hook breakage is due to high stress in bending and should be checked as follows:

From Table 6, stress on hook in bending is:

$$S_b = \frac{5PD^2}{IDd^3} = \frac{5 \times 9 \times 0.6875^2}{0.625 \times 0.0625^3} = 139{,}200 \text{ pounds per square inch}$$

This result is less than the top curve value, Fig. 8, for 0.0625 inch diameter wire, and is therefore safe. Also see Note 5 that follows.

Notes: The following points should be noted when designing extension springs:

1) All coils are active and thus $AC = TC$.

2) Each full hook deflection is approximately equal to ½ coil. Therefore for 2 hooks, reduce the total coils by 1. (Each half hook deflection is nearly equal to $^1/_{10}$ of a coil.)

3) The distance from the body to the inside of a regular full hook equals 75 to 85 percent (90 percent maximum) of the ID. For a cross-over center hook, this distance equals the ID.

4) Some initial tension should usually be used to hold the spring together. Try not to exceed the maximum curve shown on Fig. 16. Without initial tension, a long spring with many coils will have a different length in the horizontal position than it will when hung vertically.

5) The hooks are stressed in bending, therefore their stress should be less than the maximum bending stress as used for torsion springs—use top fatigue strength curves Fig. 7 through Fig. 10.

Method 2, using formulas: The sequence of steps for designing extension springs by formulas is similar to that for compression springs. The formulas for this method are given in Table 3.

Tolerances for Compression and Extension Springs.—Tolerances for coil diameter, free length, squareness, load, and the angle between loop planes for compression and extension springs are given in Table 7 through Table 12. To meet the requirements of load, rate, free length, and solid height, it is necessary to vary the number of coils for compression springs by ± 5 percent. For extension springs, the tolerances on the numbers of coils are: for 3 to 5 coils, ± 20 percent; for 6 to 8 coils, ± 30 percent; for 9 to 12 coils, ± 40 percent. For each additional coil, a further 1½ percent tolerance is added to the extension spring values. Closer tolerances on the number of coils for either type of spring lead to the need for trimming after coiling, and manufacturing time and cost are increased. Fig. 18 shows deviations allowed on the ends of extension springs, and variations in end alignments.

Table 7. Compression and Extension Spring Coil Diameter Tolerances

Wire Diameter, Inch	Spring Index						
	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
	Tolerance, ± inch						
0.015	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.007
0.023	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.010
0.035	0.002	0.004	0.006	0.007	0.009	0.011	0.013
0.051	0.003	0.005	0.007	0.010	0.012	0.015	0.017
0.076	0.004	0.007	0.010	0.013	0.016	0.019	0.022
0.114	0.006	0.009	0.013	0.018	0.021	0.025	0.029
0.171	0.008	0.012	0.017	0.023	0.028	0.033	0.038
0.250	0.011	0.015	0.021	0.028	0.035	0.042	0.049
0.375	0.016	0.020	0.026	0.037	0.046	0.054	0.064
0.500	0.021	0.030	0.040	0.062	0.080	0.100	0.125

Courtesy of the Spring Manufacturers Institute

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

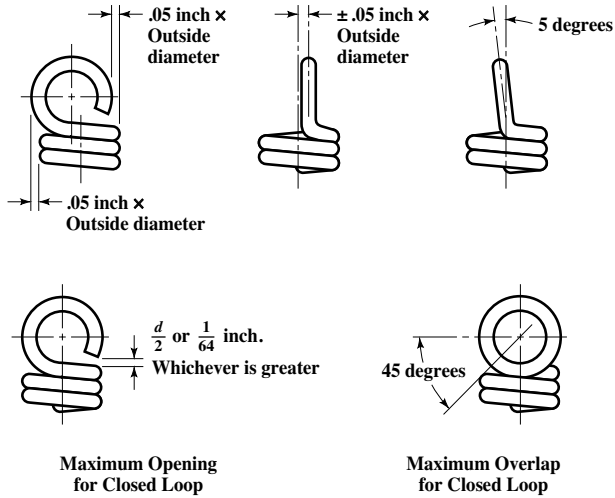

.05 inch × Outside diameter
± .05 inch × Outside diameter
5 degrees
.05 inch × Outside diameter
d/2 or 1/64 inch. Whichever is greater
45 degrees
Maximum Opening for Closed Loop
Maximum Overlap for Closed Loop

Fig. 18. Maximum Deviations Allowed on Ends and Variation in Alignment of Ends (Loops) for Extension Springs

Table 8. Compression Spring Normal Free-Length Tolerances, Squared and Ground Ends

Number of Active Coils per Inch	Spring Index						
	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
	Tolerance, ± Inch per Inch of Free Length[a]						
0.5	0.010	0.011	0.012	0.013	0.015	0.016	0.016
1	0.011	0.013	0.015	0.016	0.017	0.018	0.019
2	0.013	0.015	0.017	0.019	0.020	0.022	0.023
4	0.016	0.018	0.021	0.023	0.024	0.026	0.027
8	0.019	0.022	0.024	0.026	0.028	0.030	0.032
12	0.021	0.024	0.027	0.030	0.032	0.034	0.036
16	0.022	0.026	0.029	0.032	0.034	0.036	0.038
20	0.023	0.027	0.031	0.034	0.036	0.038	0.040

[a] For springs less than 0.5 inch long, use the tolerances for 0.5 inch long springs. For springs with unground closed ends, multiply the tolerances by 1.7.

Courtesy of the Spring Manufacturers Institute

Table 9. Extension Spring Normal Free-Length and End Tolerances

Free-Length Tolerances		End Tolerances		Free-Length Tolerances		End Tolerances	
Spring Free Length (inch)	Tolerance (inch)	Total Number of Coils	Angle Between Loop Planes	Spring Free Length (inch)	Tolerance (inch)	Total Number of Coils	Angle Between Loop Planes
Up to 0.5	±0.020			Over 4.0 to 8.0	±0.093	13 to 16	±60°
Over 0.5 to 1.0	±0.030	3 to 6	±25°	Over 8.0 to 16.0	±0.156	Over 16	Random
Over 1.0 to 2.0	±0.040	7 to 9	±35°	Over 16.0 to 24.0	±0.218		
Over 2.0 to 4.0	±0.060	10 to 12	±45°				

Courtesy of the Spring Manufacturers Institute

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Compression Spring Squareness Tolerances

Slenderness Ratio *FL/D*[a]	Spring Index						
	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
	Squareness Tolerances (± degrees)						
0.5	3.0	3.0	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	4.0
1.0	2.5	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.5	3.5
1.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0	3.0
3.0	2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0
4.0	2.0	2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5
6.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5
8.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5
10.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.5	2.5
12.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.5

[a] Slenderness Ratio = $FL \div D$

Springs with closed and ground ends, in the free position. Squareness tolerances closer than those shown require special process techniques which increase cost. Springs made from fine wire sizes, and with high spring indices, irregular shapes or long free lengths, require special attention in determining appropriate tolerance and feasibility of grinding ends.

Table 11. Compression Spring Normal Load Tolerances

Length Tolerance, ± inch	Deflection (inch)[a]														
	0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.40	0.50	0.75	1.00	1.50	2.00	3.00	4.00	6.00
	Tolerance, ± Percent of Load														
0.005	12	7	6	5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.010	…	12	8.5	7	6.5	5.5	5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.020	…	22	15.5	12	10	8.5	7	6	5	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.030	…	…	22	17	14	12	9.5	8	6	5	…	…	…	…	…
0.040	…	…	…	22	18	15.5	12	10	7.5	6	5	…	…	…	…
0.050	…	…	…	…	22	19	14.5	12	9	7	5.5	…	…	…	…
0.060	…	…	…	…	25	22	17	14	10	8	6	5	…	…	…
0.070	…	…	…	…	…	25	19.5	16	11	9	6.5	5.5	…	…	…
0.080	…	…	…	…	…	…	22	18	12.5	10	7.5	6	5	…	…
0.090	…	…	…	…	…	…	25	20	14	11	8	6	5	…	…
0.100	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	22	15.5	12	8.5	7	5.5	…	…
0.200	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	22	15.5	12	8.5	7	5.5
0.300	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	22	17	12	9.5	7
0.400	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	21	15	12	8.5
0.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	25	18.5	14.5	10.5

[a] From free length to loaded position.

Torsion Spring Design.—Fig. 19 shows the types of ends most commonly used on torsion springs. To produce them requires only limited tooling. The straight torsion end is the least expensive and should be used whenever possible. After determining the spring load or torque required and selecting the end formations, the designer usually estimates suitable space or size limitations. However, the space should be considered approximate until the wire size and number of coils have been determined. The wire size is dependent principally upon the torque. Design data can be developed with the aid of the tabular data, which is a simple method, or by calculation alone, as shown in the following sections. Many other factors affecting the design and operation of torsion springs are also covered in the section, *Torsion Spring Design Recommendations* on page 337. Design formulas are shown in Table 13.

Curvature correction: In addition to the stress obtained from the formulas for load or deflection, there is a direct shearing stress on the inside of the section due to curvature. Therefore, the stress obtained by the usual formulas should be multiplied by the factor K obtained from the curve in Fig. 20. The corrected stress thus obtained is used only for comparison with the allowable working stress (fatigue strength) curves to determine if it is a safe value, and should not be used in the formulas for deflection.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Extension Spring Normal Load Tolerances

Spring Index	$\frac{FL}{F}$	Wire Diameter (inch)										
		0.015	0.022	0.032	0.044	0.062	0.092	0.125	0.187	0.250	0.375	0.437
		Tolerance, ± Percent of Load										
4	12	20.0	18.5	17.6	16.9	16.2	15.5	15.0	14.3	13.8	13.0	12.6
	8	18.5	17.5	16.7	15.8	15.0	14.5	14.0	13.2	12.5	11.5	11.0
	6	16.8	16.1	15.5	14.7	13.8	13.2	12.7	11.8	11.2	9.9	9.4
	4.5	15.0	14.7	14.1	13.5	12.6	12.0	11.5	10.3	9.7	8.4	7.9
	2.5	13.1	12.4	12.1	11.8	10.6	10.0	9.1	8.5	8.0	6.8	6.2
	1.5	10.2	9.9	9.3	8.9	8.0	7.5	7.0	6.5	6.1	5.3	4.8
	0.5	6.2	5.4	4.8	4.6	4.3	4.1	4.0	3.8	3.6	3.3	3.2
6	12	17.0	15.5	14.6	14.1	13.5	13.1	12.7	12.0	11.5	11.2	10.7
	8	16.2	14.7	13.9	13.4	12.6	12.2	11.7	11.0	10.5	10.0	9.5
	6	15.2	14.0	12.9	12.3	11.6	10.9	10.7	10.0	9.4	8.8	8.3
	4.5	13.7	12.4	11.5	11.0	10.5	10.0	9.6	9.0	8.3	7.6	7.1
	2.5	11.9	10.8	10.2	9.8	9.4	9.0	8.5	7.9	7.2	6.2	6.0
	1.5	9.9	9.0	8.3	7.7	7.3	7.0	6.7	6.4	6.0	4.9	4.7
	0.5	6.3	5.5	4.9	4.7	4.5	4.3	4.1	4.0	3.7	3.5	3.4
8	12	15.8	14.3	13.1	13.0	12.1	12.0	11.5	10.8	10.2	10.0	9.5
	8	15.0	13.7	12.5	12.1	11.4	11.0	10.6	10.1	9.4	9.0	8.6
	6	14.2	13.0	11.7	11.2	10.6	10.0	9.7	9.3	8.6	8.1	7.6
	4.5	12.8	11.7	10.7	10.1	9.7	9.0	8.7	8.3	7.8	7.2	6.6
	2.5	11.2	10.2	9.5	8.8	8.3	7.9	7.7	7.4	6.9	6.1	5.6
	1.5	9.5	8.6	7.8	7.1	6.9	6.7	6.5	6.2	5.8	4.9	4.5
	0.5	6.3	5.6	5.0	4.8	4.5	4.4	4.2	4.1	3.9	3.6	3.5
10	12	14.8	13.3	12.0	11.9	11.1	10.9	10.5	9.9	9.3	9.2	8.8
	8	14.2	12.8	11.6	11.2	10.5	10.2	9.7	9.2	8.6	8.3	8.0
	6	13.4	12.1	10.8	10.5	9.8	9.3	8.9	8.6	8.0	7.6	7.2
	4.5	12.3	10.8	10.0	9.5	9.0	8.5	8.1	7.8	7.3	6.8	6.4
	2.5	10.8	9.6	9.0	8.4	8.0	7.7	7.3	7.0	6.5	5.9	5.5
	1.5	9.2	8.3	7.5	6.9	6.7	6.5	6.3	6.0	5.6	5.0	4.6
	0.5	6.4	5.7	5.1	4.9	4.7	4.5	4.3	4.2	4.0	3.8	3.7
12	12	14.0	12.3	11.1	10.8	10.1	9.8	9.5	9.0	8.5	8.2	7.9
	8	13.2	11.8	10.7	10.2	9.6	9.3	8.9	8.4	7.9	7.5	7.2
	6	12.6	11.2	10.2	9.7	9.0	8.5	8.2	7.9	7.4	6.9	6.4
	4.5	11.7	10.2	9.4	9.0	8.4	8.0	7.6	7.2	6.8	6.3	5.8
	2.5	10.5	9.2	8.5	8.0	7.8	7.4	7.0	6.6	6.1	5.6	5.2
	1.5	8.9	8.0	7.2	6.8	6.5	6.3	6.1	5.7	5.4	4.8	4.5
	0.5	6.5	5.8	5.3	5.1	4.9	4.7	4.5	4.3	4.2	4.0	3.3
14	12	13.1	11.3	10.2	9.7	9.1	8.8	8.4	8.1	7.6	7.2	7.0
	8	12.4	10.9	9.8	9.2	8.7	8.3	8.0	7.6	7.2	6.8	6.4
	6	11.8	10.4	9.3	8.8	8.3	7.7	7.5	7.2	6.8	6.3	5.9
	4.5	11.1	9.7	8.7	8.2	7.8	7.2	7.0	6.7	6.3	5.8	5.4
	2.5	10.1	8.8	8.1	7.6	7.1	6.7	6.5	6.2	5.7	5.2	5.0
	1.5	8.6	7.7	7.0	6.7	6.3	6.0	5.8	5.5	5.2	4.7	4.5
	0.5	6.6	5.9	5.4	5.2	5.0	4.8	4.6	4.4	4.3	4.2	4.0
16	12	12.3	10.3	9.2	8.6	8.1	7.7	7.4	7.2	6.8	6.3	6.1
	8	11.7	10.0	8.9	8.3	7.8	7.4	7.2	6.8	6.5	6.0	5.7
	6	11.0	9.6	8.5	8.0	7.5	7.1	6.9	6.5	6.2	5.7	5.4
	4.5	10.5	9.1	8.1	7.5	7.2	6.8	6.5	6.2	5.8	5.3	5.1
	2.5	9.7	8.4	7.6	7.0	6.7	6.3	6.1	5.7	5.4	4.9	4.7
	1.5	8.3	7.4	6.6	6.2	6.0	5.8	5.6	5.3	5.1	4.6	4.4
	0.5	6.7	5.9	5.5	5.3	5.1	5.0	4.8	4.6	4.5	4.3	4.1

FL/F = the ratio of the spring free length FL to the deflection F.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

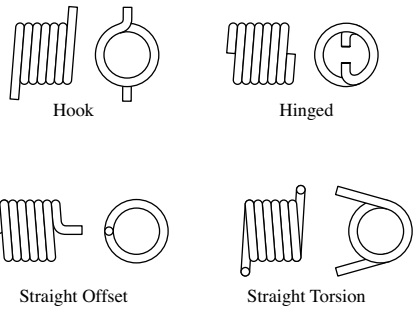


Fig. 19. The Most Commonly Used Types of Ends for Torsion Springs

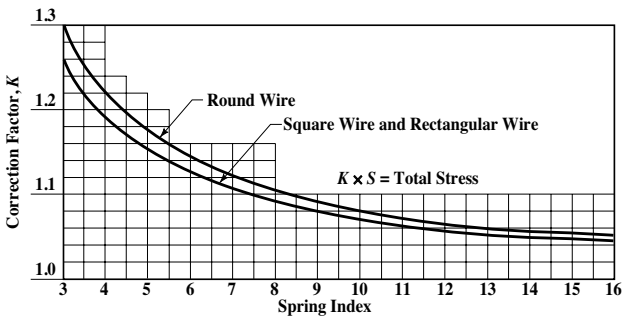


Fig. 20. Torsion Spring Stress Correction for Curvature

Torque: Torque is a force applied to a moment arm and tends to produce rotation. Torsion springs exert torque in a circular arc and the arms are rotated about the central axis. It should be noted that the stress produced is in bending, not in torsion. In the spring industry it is customary to specify torque in conjunction with the deflection or with the arms of a spring at a definite position. Formulas for torque are expressed in pound-inches. If ounce-inches are specified, it is necessary to divide this value by 16 in order to use the formulas.

When a load is specified at a distance from a centerline, the torque is, of course, equal to the load multiplied by the distance. The load can be in pounds or ounces with the distances in inches or the load can be in grams or kilograms with the distance in centimeters or millimeters, but to use the design formulas, all values must be converted to pounds and inches. Design formulas for torque are based on the tangent to the arc of rotation and presume that a rod is used to support the spring. The stress in bending caused by the moment $P \times R$ is identical in magnitude to the torque T, provided a rod is used.

Theoretically, it makes no difference how or where the load is applied to the arms of torsion springs. Thus, in Fig. 21, the loads shown multiplied by their respective distances produce the same torque; i.e., $20 \times 0.5 = 10$ pound-inches; $10 \times 1 = 10$ pound-inches; and $5 \times 2 = 10$ pound-inches. To further simplify the understanding of torsion spring torque, observe in both Fig. 22 and Fig. 23 that although the turning force is in a circular arc the torque is not equal to P times the radius. The torque in both designs equals $P \times R$ because the spring rests against the support rod at point a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Formulas for Torsion Springs

Feature	Springs made from round wire	Springs made from square wire
	Formula [a, b]	
d = Wire diameter, Inches	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18T}{S_b}}$	$\sqrt[3]{\frac{6T}{S_b}}$
	$\sqrt[4]{\frac{4000TND}{EF°}}$	$\sqrt[4]{\frac{2375TND}{EF°}}$
S_b = Stress, bending pounds per square inch	$\frac{10.18T}{d^3}$	$\frac{6T}{d^3}$
	$\frac{EdF°}{392ND}$	$\frac{EdF°}{392ND}$
N = Active Coils	$\frac{EdF°}{392S_bD}$	$\frac{EdF°}{392S_bD}$
	$\frac{Ed^4F°}{4000TD}$	$\frac{Ed^4F°}{2375TD}$
$F°$ = Deflection	$\frac{392S_bND}{Ed}$	$\frac{392S_bND}{Ed}$
	$\frac{4000TND}{Ed^4}$	$\frac{2375TND}{Ed^4}$
T = Torque Inch lbs. (Also = $P \times R$)	$0.0982S_bd^3$	$0.1666S_bd^3$
	$\frac{Ed^4F°}{4000ND}$	$\frac{Ed^4F°}{2375ND}$
ID_1 = Inside Diameter After Deflection, Inches	$\frac{N(ID\text{ free})}{N+\frac{F°}{360}}$	$\frac{N(ID\text{ free})}{N+\frac{F°}{360}}$

[a] Where two formulas are given for one feature, the designer should use the one found to be appropriate for the given design. The end result from either of any two formulas is the same.

[b] The symbol notation is given on page 304.

Design Procedure: Torsion spring designs require more effort than other kinds because consideration has to be given to more details, such as the proper size of a supporting rod, reduction of the inside diameter, increase in length, deflection of arms, allowance for friction, and method of testing.

Example: What music wire diameter and how many coils are required for the torsion spring shown in Fig. 24, which is to withstand at least 1000 cycles? Determine the corrected stress and the reduced inside diameter after deflection.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

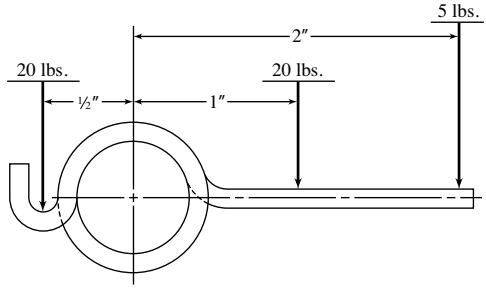


Fig. 21. Right-Hand Torsion Spring

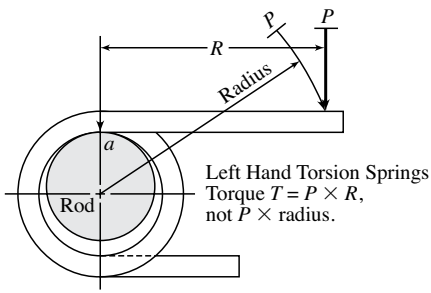


Fig. 22. Left-Hand Torsion Spring
The Torque is $T = P \times R$, Not $P \times$ Radius, because the Spring is Resting Against the Support Rod at Point *a*.

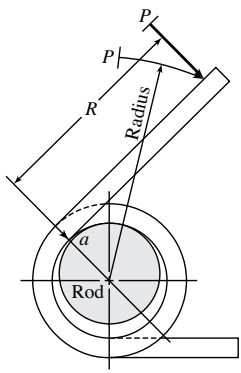


Fig. 23. Left-Hand Torsion Spring
As with the Spring in Fig. 22, the Torque is $T = P \times R$, Not $P \times$ Radius, Because the Support Point Is at *a*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

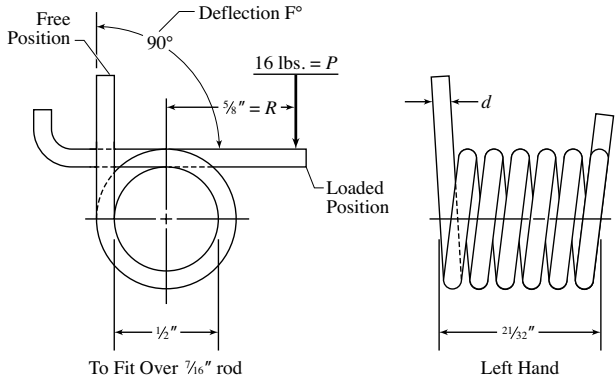


Fig. 24. Torsion Spring Design Example. The Spring is to be Assembled on a 7/16-Inch Support Rod.

Method 1, using table: From Table 14, page 339, locate the 1/2 inch inside diameter for the spring in the left-hand column. Move to the right and then vertically to locate a torque value nearest to the required 10 pound-inches, which is 10.07 pound-inches. At the top of the same column, the music wire diameter is found, which is Number 31 gauge (0.085 inch). At the bottom of the same column the deflection for one coil is found, which is 15.81 degrees. As a 90-degree deflection is required, the number of coils needed is $^{90}/_{15.81} = 5.69$ (say $5\frac{3}{4}$ coils).

The spring index $\frac{D}{d} = \frac{0.500 + 0.085}{0.085} = 6.88$ and thus the curvature correction factor K from Fig. 20 = 1.13. Therefore the corrected stress equals 167,000 × 1.13 = 188,700 pounds per square inch which is below the Light Service curve (Fig. 7) and therefore should provide a fatigue life of over 1,000 cycles. The reduced inside diameter due to deflection is found from the formula in Table 13:

$$ID_1 = \frac{N(ID\ \text{free})}{N + \frac{F}{360}} = \frac{5.75 \times 0.500}{5.75 + \frac{90}{360}} = 0.479\ \text{in.}$$

This reduced diameter easily clears a suggested 7/16 inch diameter supporting rod: 0.479 – 0.4375 = 0.041 inch clearance, and it also allows for the standard tolerance. The overall length of the spring equals the total number of coils plus one, times the wire diameter. Thus, $6\frac{3}{4} \times 0.085 = 0.574$ inch. If a small space of about 1/64 in. is allowed between the coils to eliminate coil friction, an overall length of $^{21}/_{32}$ inch results.

Although this completes the design calculations, other tolerances should be applied in accordance with the Torsion Spring Tolerance Table 16 through Table 17 shown at the end of this section.

Longer fatigue life: If a longer fatigue life is desired, use a slightly larger wire diameter. Usually the next larger gage size is satisfactory. The larger wire will reduce the stress and still exert the same torque, but will require more coils and a longer overall length.

Percentage method for calculating longer life: The spring design can be easily adjusted for longer life as follows:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1) Select the next larger gage size, which is Number 32 (0.090 inch) from Table 14. The torque is 11.88 pound-inches, the design stress is 166,000 pounds per square inch, and the deflection is 14.9 degrees per coil. As a percentage the torque is 10/11.88 × 100 = 84 percent.

2) The new stress is 0.84 × 166,000 = 139,440 pounds per square inch. This value is under the bottom or Severe Service curve, Fig. 7, and thus assures longer life.

3) The new deflection per coil is 0.84 × 14.97 = 12.57 degrees. Therefore, the total number of coils required = 90/12.57 = 7.16 (say 7⅛). The new overall length = 8⅛ × 0.090 = 0.73 inch (say ¾ inch). A slight increase in the overall length and new arm location are thus necessary.

Method 2, using formulas: When using this method, it is often necessary to solve the formulas several times because assumptions must be made initially either for the stress or for a wire size. The procedure for design using formulas is as follows (the design example is the same as in Method 1, and the spring is shown in Fig. 24):

Step 1: Note from Table 13, page 334 that the wire diameter formula is:

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18T}{S_b}}$$

Step 2: Referring to Fig. 7, select a trial stress, say 150,000 pounds per square inch.

Step 3: Apply the trial stress, and the 10 pound-inches torque value in the wire diameter formula:

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18T}{S_b}} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{10.18 \times 10}{150{,}000}} = \sqrt[3]{0.000679} = 0.0879 \text{ inch}$$

The nearest gauge sizes are 0.085 and 0.090 inch diameter. *Note*: Table 21, page 347, can be used to avoid solving the cube root.

Step 4: Select 0.085 inch wire diameter and solve the equation for the actual stress:

$$S_b = \frac{10.18T}{d^3} = \frac{10.18 \times 10}{0.085^3} = 165{,}764 \text{ pounds per square inch}$$

Step 5: Calculate the number of coils from the equation, Table 13:

$$N = \frac{EdF^\circ}{392S_bD} = \frac{28{,}500{,}000 \times 0.085 \times 90}{392 \times 165{,}764 \times 0.585} = 5.73 \left(\text{say } 5\tfrac{3}{4}\right)$$

Step 6: Calculate the total stress. The spring index is 6.88, and the correction factor K is 1.13 therefore total stress = 165,764 × 1.13 = 187,313 pounds per square inch. *Note*: The corrected stress should not be used in any of the formulas as it does not determine the torque or the deflection.

Torsion Spring Design Recommendations.—The following recommendations should be taken into account when designing torsion springs:

Hand: The hand or direction of coiling should be specified and the spring designed so deflection causes the spring to wind up and to have more coils. This increase in coils and overall length should be allowed for during design. Deflecting the spring in an unwinding direction produces higher stresses and may cause early failure. When a spring is sighted down the longitudinal axis, it is "right hand" when the direction of the wire into the spring takes a clockwise direction or if the angle of the coils follows an angle similar to the threads of a standard bolt or screw, otherwise it is "left hand." A spring must be coiled right-handed to engage the threads of a standard machine screw.

Rods: Torsion springs should be supported by a rod running through the center whenever possible. If unsupported, or if held by clamps or lugs, the spring will buckle and the torque will be reduced or unusual stresses may occur.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diameter Reduction: The inside diameter reduces during deflection. This reduction should be computed and proper clearance provided over the supporting rod. Also, allowances should be considered for normal spring diameter tolerances.

Winding: The coils of a spring may be closely or loosely wound, but they seldom should be wound with the coils pressed tightly together. Tightly wound springs with initial tension on the coils do not deflect uniformly and are difficult to test accurately. A small space between the coils of about 20 to 25 percent of the wire thickness is desirable. Square and rectangular wire sections should be avoided whenever possible as they are difficult to wind, expensive, and are not always readily available.

Arm Length: All the wire in a torsion spring is active between the points where the loads are applied. Deflection of long extended arms can be calculated by allowing one third of the arm length, from the point of load contact to the body of the spring, to be converted into coils. However, if the length of arm is equal to or less than one-half the length of one coil, it can be safely neglected in most applications.

Total Coils: Torsion springs having less than three coils frequently buckle and are difficult to test accurately. When thirty or more coils are used, light loads will not deflect all the coils simultaneously due to friction with the supporting rod. To facilitate manufacturing it is usually preferable to specify the total number of coils to the nearest fraction in eighths or quarters, such as 5 ⅛, 5 ¼, 5 ½, etc.

Double Torsion: This design consists of one left-hand-wound series of coils and one series of right-hand-wound coils connected at the center. These springs are difficult to manufacture and are expensive, so it often is better to use two separate springs. For torque and stress calculations, each series is calculated separately as individual springs; then the torque values are added together, but the deflections are not added.

Bends: Arms should be kept as straight as possible. Bends are difficult to produce and often are made by secondary operations, so they are therefore expensive. Sharp bends raise stresses that cause early failure. Bend radii should be as large as practicable. Hooks tend to open during deflection; their stresses can be calculated by the same procedure as that for tension springs.

Spring Index: The spring index must be used with caution. In design formulas it is D/d. For shop measurement it is OD/d. For arbor design it is ID/d. Conversions are easily performed by either adding or subtracting 1 from D/d.

Proportions: A spring index between 4 and 14 provides the best proportions. Larger ratios may require more than average tolerances. Ratios of 3 or less often cannot be coiled on automatic spring coiling machines because of arbor breakage. Also, springs with smaller or larger spring indexes often do not give the same results as are obtained using the design formulas.

Table of Torsion Spring Characteristics.—Table 14 shows design characteristics for the most commonly used torsion springs made from wire of standard gauge sizes. The deflection for one coil at a specified torque and stress is shown in the body of the table. The figures are based on music wire (ASTM A228) and oil-tempered MB grade (ASTM A229), and can be used for several other materials which have similar values for the modulus of elasticity E. However, the design stress may be too high or too low, and the design stress, torque, and deflection per coil should each be multiplied by the appropriate correction factor in Table 15 when using any of the materials given in that table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Torsion Spring Deflections

AMW Wire Gauge Decimal Equivalent[a]		1 .010	2 .011	3 .012	4 .013	5 .014	6 .016	7 .018	8 .020	9 .022	10 .024	11 .026	12 .029	13 .031	14 .033	15 .035	16 .037
Design Stress, kpsi		232	229	226	224	221	217	214	210	207	205	202	199	197	196	194	192
Torque, pound-inch		.0228	.0299	.0383	.0483	.0596	.0873	.1226	.1650	.2164	.2783	.3486	.4766	.5763	.6917	.8168	.9550
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil															
1/16	0.0625	22.35	20.33	18.64	17.29	16.05	14.15	18.72	11.51	10.56	9.818	9.137	8.343	7.896	…	…	…
5/64	0.078125	27.17	24.66	22.55	20.86	19.32	16.96	15.19	13.69	12.52	11.59	10.75	9.768	9.215	…	…	…
3/32	0.09375	31.98	28.98	26.47	24.44	22.60	19.78	17.65	15.87	14.47	13.36	12.36	11.19	10.53	10.18	9.646	9.171
7/64	0.109375	36.80	33.30	30.38	28.02	25.88	22.60	20.12	18.05	16.43	15.14	13.98	12.62	11.85	11.43	10.82	10.27
1/8	0.125	41.62	37.62	34.29	31.60	29.16	25.41	22.59	20.23	18.38	16.91	15.59	14.04	13.17	12.68	11.99	11.36
9/64	0.140625	46.44	41.94	38.20	35.17	32.43	28.23	25.06	22.41	20.33	18.69	17.20	15.47	14.49	13.94	13.16	12.46
5/32	0.15625	51.25	46.27	42.11	38.75	35.71	31.04	27.53	24.59	22.29	20.46	18.82	16.89	15.81	15.19	14.33	13.56
3/16	0.1875	60.89	54.91	49.93	45.91	42.27	36.67	32.47	28.95	26.19	24.01	22.04	19.74	18.45	17.70	16.67	15.75
7/32	0.21875	70.52	63.56	57.75	53.06	48.82	42.31	37.40	33.31	30.10	27.55	25.27	22.59	21.09	20.21	19.01	17.94
1/4	0.250	80.15	72.20	65.57	60.22	55.38	47.94	42.34	37.67	34.01	31.10	28.49	25.44	23.73	22.72	21.35	20.13

AMW Wire Gauge Decimal Equivalent[a]		17 .039	18 .041	19 .043	20 .045	21 .047	22 .049	23 .051	24 .055	25 .059	26 .063	27 .067	28 .071	29 .075	30 .080	31 .085
Design Stress, kpsi		190	188	187	185	184	183	182	180	178	176	174	173	171	169	167
Torque, pound-inch		1.107	1.272	1.460	1.655	1.876	2.114	2.371	2.941	3.590	4.322	5.139	6.080	7.084	8.497	10.07
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil														
1/8	0.125	10.80	10.29	9.876	9.447	9.102	8.784	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
9/64	0.140625	11.83	11.26	10.79	10.32	9.929	9.572	9.244	8.654	8.141	…	…	…	…	…	…
5/32	0.15625	12.86	12.23	11.71	11.18	10.76	10.36	9.997	9.345	8.778	8.279	7.975	…	…	…	…
3/16	0.1875	14.92	14.16	13.55	12.92	12.41	11.94	11.50	10.73	10.05	9.459	9.091	8.663	8.232	7.772	7.364
7/32	0.21875	16.97	16.10	15.39	14.66	14.06	13.52	13.01	12.11	11.33	10.64	10.21	9.711	9.212	8.680	8.208
1/4	0.250	19.03	18.04	17.22	16.39	15.72	15.09	14.52	13.49	12.60	11.82	11.32	10.76	10.19	9.588	9.053

[a] For sizes up to 13 gauge, the table values are for music wire with a modulus *E* of 29,000,000 psi; and for sizes from 27 to 31 gauge, the values are for oil-tempered MB with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Torsion Spring Deflections**

AMW Wire Gauge / Decimal Equivalent[a]		8 .020	9 .022	10 .024	11 .026	12 .029	13 .031	14 .033	15 .035	16 .037	17 .039	18 .041	19 .043	20 .045	21 .047	22 .049	23 .051
Design Stress, kpsi		210	207	205	202	199	197	196	194	192	190	188	187	185	184	183	182
Torque, pound-inch		.1650	.2164	.2783	.3486	.4766	.5763	.6917	.8168	.9550	1.107	1.272	1.460	1.655	1.876	2.114	2.371
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil															
9/32	0.28125	42.03	37.92	34.65	31.72	28.29	26.37	25.23	23.69	22.32	21.09	19.97	19.06	18.13	17.37	16.67	16.03
5/16	0.3125	46.39	41.82	38.19	34.95	31.14	29.01	27.74	26.04	24.51	23.15	21.91	20.90	19.87	19.02	18.25	17.53
11/32	0.34375	50.75	45.73	41.74	38.17	33.99	31.65	30.25	28.38	26.71	25.21	23.85	22.73	21.60	20.68	19.83	19.04
3/8	0.375	55.11	49.64	45.29	41.40	36.84	34.28	32.76	30.72	28.90	27.26	25.78	24.57	23.34	22.33	21.40	20.55
13/32	0.40625	59.47	53.54	48.85	44.63	39.69	36.92	35.26	33.06	31.09	29.32	27.72	26.41	25.08	23.99	22.98	22.06
7/16	0.4375	63.83	57.45	52.38	47.85	42.54	39.56	37.77	35.40	33.28	31.38	29.66	28.25	26.81	25.64	24.56	23.56
15/32	0.46875	68.19	61.36	55.93	51.00	45.39	42.20	40.28	37.74	35.47	33.44	31.59	30.08	28.55	27.29	26.14	25.07
1/2	0.500	72.55	65.27	59.48	54.30	48.24	44.84	42.79	40.08	37.67	35.49	33.53	31.92	30.29	28.95	27.71	26.58

AMW Wire Gauge / Decimal Equivalent[a]		24 .055	25 .059	26 .063	27 .067	28 .071	29 .075	30 .080	31 .085	32 .090	33 .095	34 .100	35 .106	36 .112	37 .118	1/8 125
Design Stress, kpsi		180	178	176	174	173	171	169	167	166	164	163	161	160	158	156
Torque, pound-inch		2.941	3.590	4.322	5.139	6.080	7.084	8.497	10.07	11.88	13.81	16.00	18.83	22.07	25.49	29.92
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil														
9/32	0.28125	14.88	13.88	13.00	12.44	11.81	11.17	10.50	9.897	9.418	8.934	8.547	8.090	7.727	7.353	6.973
5/16	0.3125	16.26	15.15	14.18	13.56	12.85	12.15	11.40	10.74	10.21	9.676	9.248	8.743	8.341	7.929	7.510
11/32	0.34375	17.64	16.42	15.36	14.67	13.90	13.13	12.31	11.59	11.00	10.42	9.948	9.396	8.955	8.504	8.046
3/8	0.375	19.02	17.70	16.54	15.79	14.95	14.11	13.22	12.43	11.80	11.16	10.65	10.05	9.569	9.080	8.583
13/32	0.40625	20.40	18.97	17.72	16.90	15.99	15.09	14.13	13.28	12.59	11.90	11.35	10.70	10.18	9.655	9.119
7/16	0.4375	21.79	20.25	18.90	18.02	17.04	16.07	15.04	14.12	13.38	12.64	12.05	11.35	10.80	10.23	9.655
15/32	0.46875	23.17	21.52	20.08	19.14	18.09	17.05	15.94	14.96	14.17	13.39	12.75	12.01	11.41	10.81	10.19
1/2	0.500	24.55	22.80	21.26	20.25	19.14	18.03	16.85	15.81	14.97	14.13	13.45	12.66	12.03	11.38	10.73

[a] For sizes up to 13 gauge, the table values are for music wire with a modulus E of 29,000,000 psi; and for sizes from 27 to 31 gauge, the values are for oil-tempered MB with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Torsion Spring Deflections**

AMW Wire Gauge Decimal Equivalent[a]		16 .037	17 .039	18 .041	19 .043	20 .045	21 .047	22 .049	23 .051	24 .055	25 .059	26 .063	27 .067	28 .071	29 .075	30 .080
Design Stress, kpsi		192	190	188	187	185	184	183	182	180	178	176	174	173	171	169
Torque, pound-inch		.9550	1.107	1.272	1.460	1.655	1.876	2.114	2.371	2.941	3.590	4.322	5.139	6.080	7.084	8.497
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil														
17/32	0.53125	39.86	37.55	35.47	33.76	32.02	30.60	29.29	28.09	25.93	24.07	22.44	21.37	20.18	19.01	17.76
9/16	0.5625	42.05	39.61	37.40	35.59	33.76	32.25	30.87	29.59	27.32	25.35	23.62	22.49	21.23	19.99	18.67
19/32	0.59375	44.24	41.67	39.34	37.43	35.50	33.91	32.45	31.10	28.70	26.62	24.80	23.60	22.28	20.97	19.58
5/8	0.625	46.43	43.73	41.28	39.27	37.23	35.56	34.02	32.61	30.08	27.89	25.98	24.72	23.33	21.95	20.48
21/32	0.65625	48.63	45.78	43.22	41.10	38.97	37.22	35.60	34.12	31.46	29.17	27.16	25.83	24.37	22.93	21.39
11/16	0.6875	50.82	47.84	45.15	42.94	40.71	38.87	37.18	35.62	32.85	30.44	28.34	26.95	25.42	23.91	22.30
23/32	0.71875	53.01	49.90	47.09	44.78	42.44	40.52	38.76	37.13	34.23	31.72	29.52	28.07	26.47	24.89	23.21
3/4	0.750	55.20	51.96	49.03	46.62	44.18	42.18	40.33	38.64	35.61	32.99	30.70	29.18	27.52	25.87	24.12

Wire Gauge[a, b] or Size and Decimal Equivalent		31 .085	32 .090	33 .095	34 .100	35 .106	36 .112	37 .118	1/8 .125	10 .135	9 .1483	5/32 .1563	8 .162	7 .177	3/16 .1875	6 .192	5 .207
Design Stress, kpsi		167	166	164	163	161	160	158	156	161	158	156	154	150	149	146	143
Torque, pound-inch		10.07	11.88	13.81	16.00	18.83	22.07	25.49	29.92	38.90	50.60	58.44	64.30	81.68	96.45	101.5	124.6
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil															
17/32	0.53125	16.65	15.76	14.87	14.15	13.31	12.64	11.96	11.26	10.93	9.958	9.441	9.064	8.256	7.856	7.565	7.015
9/16	0.5625	17.50	16.55	15.61	14.85	13.97	13.25	12.53	11.80	11.44	10.42	9.870	9.473	8.620	8.198	7.891	7.312
19/32	0.59375	18.34	17.35	16.35	15.55	14.62	13.87	13.11	12.34	11.95	10.87	10.30	9.882	8.984	8.539	8.218	7.609
5/8	0.625	19.19	18.14	17.10	16.25	15.27	14.48	13.68	12.87	12.47	11.33	10.73	10.29	9.348	8.881	8.545	7.906
21/32	0.65625	20.03	18.93	17.84	16.95	15.92	15.10	14.26	13.41	12.98	11.79	11.16	10.70	9.713	9.222	8.872	8.202
11/16	0.6875	20.88	19.72	18.58	17.65	16.58	15.71	14.83	13.95	13.49	12.25	11.59	11.11	10.08	9.564	9.199	8.499
23/32	0.71875	21.72	20.52	19.32	18.36	17.23	16.32	15.41	14.48	14.00	12.71	12.02	11.52	10.44	9.905	9.526	8.796
3/4	0.750	22.56	21.31	20.06	19.06	17.88	16.94	15.99	15.02	14.52	13.16	12.44	11.92	10.81	10.25	9.852	9.093

[a] For sizes up to 26 gauge, the table values are for music wire with a modulus E of 29,500,000 psi; for sizes from 27 gauge to 1/8 inch diameter the table values are for music wire with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi; for sizes from 10 gauge to 1/8 inch diameter, the values are for oil-tempered MB with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi.

[b] Gauges 31 through 37 are AMW gauges. Gauges 10 through 5 are Washburn and Moen.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Torsion Spring Deflections**

AMW Wire Gauge Decimal Equivalent[a]		24 .055	25 .059	26 .063	27 .067	28 .071	29 .075	30 .080	31 .085	32 .090	33 .095	34 .100	35 .106	36 .112	37 .118	1/8 .125
Design Stress, kpsi		180	178	176	174	173	171	169	167	166	164	163	161	160	158	156
Torque, pound-inch		2.941	3.590	4.322	5.139	6.080	7.084	8.497	10.07	11.88	13.81	16.00	18.83	22.07	25.49	29.92
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil														
13/16	0.8125	38.38	35.54	33.06	31.42	29.61	27.83	25.93	24.25	22.90	21.55	20.46	19.19	18.17	17.14	16.09
7/8	0.875	41.14	38.09	35.42	33.65	31.70	29.79	27.75	25.94	24.58	23.03	21.86	20.49	19.39	18.29	17.17
15/16	0.9375	43.91	40.64	37.78	35.88	33.80	31.75	29.56	27.63	26.07	24.52	23.26	21.80	20.62	19.44	18.24
1	1.000	46.67	43.19	40.14	38.11	35.89	33.71	31.38	29.32	27.65	26.00	24.66	23.11	21.85	20.59	19.31
1 1/16	1.0625	49.44	45.74	42.50	40.35	37.99	35.67	33.20	31.01	29.24	27.48	26.06	24.41	23.08	21.74	20.38
1 1/8	1.125	52.20	48.28	44.86	42.58	40.08	37.63	35.01	32.70	30.82	28.97	27.46	25.72	24.31	22.89	21.46
1 3/16	1.1875	54.97	50.83	47.22	44.81	42.18	39.59	36.83	34.39	32.41	30.45	28.86	27.02	25.53	24.04	22.53
1 1/4	1.250	57.73	53.38	49.58	47.04	44.27	41.55	38.64	36.08	33.99	31.94	30.27	28.33	26.76	25.19	23.60

Washburn and Moen Gauge or Size and Decimal Equivalent[a]		10 .135	9 .1483	5/32 .1563	8 .162	7 .177	3/16 .1875	6 .192	5 .207	7/32 .2188	4 .2253	3 .2437	1/4 .250	9/32 .2813	5/16 .3125	11/32 .3438	3/8 .375
Design Stress, kpsi		161	158	156	154	150	149	146	143	142	141	140	139	138	137	136	135
Torque, pound-inch		38.90	50.60	58.44	64.30	81.68	96.45	101.5	124.6	146.0	158.3	199.0	213.3	301.5	410.6	542.5	700.0
Inside Diameter, inch		Deflection, degrees per coil															
13/16	0.8125	15.54	14.08	13.30	12.74	11.53	10.93	10.51	9.687	9.208	8.933	8.346	8.125	7.382	6.784	6.292	5.880
7/8	0.875	16.57	15.00	14.16	13.56	12.26	11.61	11.16	10.28	9.766	9.471	8.840	8.603	7.803	7.161	6.632	6.189
15/16	0.9375	17.59	15.91	15.02	14.38	12.99	12.30	11.81	10.87	10.32	10.01	9.333	9.081	8.225	7.537	6.972	6.499
1	1.000	18.62	16.83	15.88	15.19	13.72	12.98	12.47	11.47	10.88	10.55	9.827	9.559	8.647	7.914	7.312	6.808
1 1/16	1.0625	19.64	17.74	16.74	16.01	14.45	13.66	13.12	12.06	11.44	11.09	10.32	10.04	9.069	8.291	7.652	7.118
1 1/8	1.125	20.67	18.66	17.59	16.83	15.18	14.35	13.77	12.66	12.00	11.62	10.81	10.52	9.491	8.668	7.993	7.427
1 3/16	1.1875	21.69	19.57	18.45	17.64	15.90	15.03	14.43	13.25	12.56	12.16	11.31	10.99	9.912	9.045	8.333	7.737
1 1/4	1.250	22.72	20.49	19.31	18.46	16.63	15.71	15.08	13.84	13.11	12.70	11.80	11.47	10.33	9.422	8.673	8.046

[a] For sizes up to 26 gauge, the table values are for music wire with a modulus E of 29,500,000 psi; for sizes from 27 gauge to 1/8 inch diameter the table values are for music wire with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi; for sizes from 10 gauge to 1/8 inch diameter, the values are for oil-tempered MB with a modulus of 28,500,000 psi.

For an example in the use of the table, see the example starting on page 334. Note: Intermediate values may be interpolated within reasonable accuracy.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Correction Factors for Other Materials

Material[a]	Factor	Material[a]	Factor
Hard Drawn MB	0.75	Stainless 316	
Chrome-vanadium	1.10	Up to 1/8 inch diameter	0.75
Chrome-silicon	1.20	Over 1/8 to 1/4 inch diameter	0.65
Stainless 302 and 304		Over 1/4 inch diameter	0.65
Up to 1/8 inch diameter	0.85	Stainless 17-7 PH	
Over 1/8 to 1/4 inch diameter	0.75	Up to 1/8 inch diameter	1.00
Over 1/4 inch diameter	0.65	Over 1/8 to 3/16 inch diameter	1.07
Stainless 431	0.80	Over 3/16 inch diameter	1.12
Stainless 420	0.85	…	…

[a] For use with values in Table 14. *Note:* The figures in Table 14 are for music wire (ASTM A228) and oil-tempered MB grade (ASTM A229) and can be used for several other materials that have a similar modulus of elasticity *E*. However, the design stress may be too high or too low, and therefore the design stress, torque, and deflection per coil should each be multiplied by the appropriate correction factor when using any of the materials given in this table (Table 15).

Torsion Spring Tolerances.—Torsion springs are coiled in a different manner from other types of coiled springs and therefore different tolerances apply. The commercial tolerance on loads is ±10 percent and is specified with reference to the angular deflection. For example: 100 pound-inches ±10 percent at 45 degrees deflection. One load specified usually suffices. If two loads and two deflections are specified, the manufacturing and testing times are increased. Tolerances smaller than ±10 percent require each spring to be individually tested and adjusted, which adds considerably to manufacturing time and cost. Table 16, Table 17, and Table 18 give, respectively, free angle tolerances, tolerances on the number of coils, and coil diameter tolerances.

Table 16. Torsion Spring Tolerances for Angular Relationship of Ends

Number of Coils (*N*)	Spring Index								
	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
	Free Angle Tolerance, ± degrees								
1	2	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	5.5	5.5	6
2	4	5	6	7	8	8.5	9	9.5	10
3	5.5	7	8	9.5	10.5	11	12	13	14
4	7	9	10	12	14	15	16	16.5	17
5	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	20.5	21
6	9.5	12	14.5	16	19	20.5	21	22.5	24
8	12	15	18	20.5	23	25	27	28	29
10	14	19	21	24	27	29	31.5	32.5	34
15	20	25	28	31	34	36	38	40	42
20	25	30	34	37	41	44	47	49	51
25	29	35	40	44	48	52	56	60	63
30	32	38	44	50	55	60	65	68	70
50	45	55	63	70	77	84	90	95	100

Table 17. Torsion Spring Tolerance on Number of Coils

Number of Coils	Tolerance	Number of Coils	Tolerance
up to 5	±5°	over 10 to 20	±15°
over 5 to 10	±10°	over 20 to 40	±30°

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. Torsion Spring Coil Diameter Tolerances

Wire Diameter, Inch	Spring Index						
	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
	Coil Diameter Tolerance, ± inch						
0.015	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.003	0.004
0.023	0.002	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006
0.035	0.002	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.006	0.007	0.009
0.051	0.002	0.003	0.005	0.007	0.008	0.010	0.012
0.076	0.003	0.005	0.007	0.009	0.012	0.015	0.018
0.114	0.004	0.007	0.010	0.013	0.018	0.022	0.028
0.172	0.006	0.010	0.013	0.020	0.027	0.034	0.042
0.250	0.008	0.014	0.022	0.030	0.040	0.050	0.060

Miscellaneous Springs.—This section provides information on various springs, some in common use, some less commonly used.

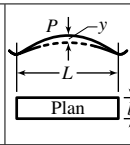
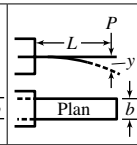
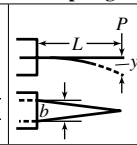
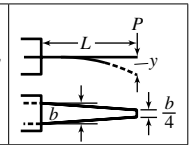
Conical compression: These springs taper from top to bottom and are useful where an increasing (instead of a constant) load rate is needed, where solid height must be small, and where vibration must be damped. Conical springs with a uniform pitch are easiest to coil. Load and deflection formulas for compression springs can be used—using the average mean coil diameter, and provided the deflection does not cause the largest active coil to lie against the bottom coil. When this happens, each coil must be calculated separately, using the standard formulas for compression springs.

Constant force springs: Those springs are made from flat spring steel and are finding more applications each year. Complicated design procedures can be eliminated by selecting a standard design from thousands now available from several spring manufacturers.

Spiral, clock, and motor springs: Although often used in wind-up type motors for toys and other products, these springs are difficult to design and results cannot be calculated with precise accuracy. However, many useful designs have been developed and are available from spring manufacturing companies.

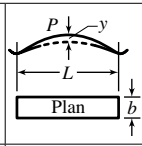
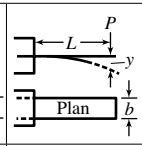
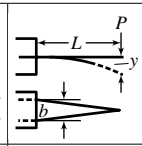
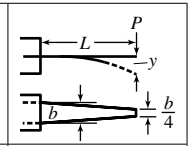
Flat springs: These springs are often used to overcome operating space limitations in various products such as electric switches and relays. Table 19 lists formulas for designing flat springs. The formulas are based on standard beam formulas where the deflection is small.

Table 19. Formulas for Flat Springs

Feature				
Deflection, y Inches	$y = \frac{PL^3}{4Ebt^3}$ $= \frac{S_b L^2}{6Et}$	$y = \frac{4PL^3}{Ebt^3}$ $= \frac{2S_b L^2}{3Et}$	$y = \frac{6PL^3}{Ebt^3}$ $= \frac{S_b L^2}{Et}$	$y = \frac{5.22PL^3}{Ebt^3}$ $= \frac{0.87S_b L^2}{Et}$
Load, P, Pounds	$P = \frac{2S_b bt^2}{3L}$ $= \frac{4Ebt^3 y}{L^3}$	$P = \frac{S_b bt^2}{6L}$ $= \frac{Ebt^3 y}{4L^3}$	$P = \frac{S_b bt^2}{6L}$ $= \frac{Ebt^3 y}{6L^3}$	$P = \frac{S_b bt^2}{6L}$ $= \frac{Ebt^3 y}{5.22L^3}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. *(Continued)* **Formulas for Flat Springs**

Feature				
Stress, S_b Bending psi	$S_b = \frac{3PL}{2bt^2}$ $= \frac{6Ety}{L^2}$	$S_b = \frac{6PL}{bt^2}$ $= \frac{3Ety}{2L^2}$	$S_b = \frac{6PL}{bt^2}$ $= \frac{Ety}{L^2}$	$S_b = \frac{6PL}{bt^2}$ $= \frac{Ety}{0.87L^2}$
Thickness, t Inches	$t = \frac{S_bL^2}{6Ey}$ $= \sqrt[3]{\frac{PL^3}{4Eby}}$	$t = \frac{2S_bL^2}{3Ey}$ $= \sqrt[3]{\frac{4PL^3}{Eby}}$	$t = \frac{S_bL^2}{Ey}$ $= \sqrt[3]{\frac{6PL^3}{Eby}}$	$t = \frac{0.87S_bL^2}{Ey}$ $= \sqrt[3]{\frac{5.22PL^3}{Eby}}$

Based on standard beam formulas where the deflection is small.

y is deflection, see page 304 for other notation.

Note: Where two formulas are given for one feature, the designer should use the one found to be appropriate for the given design. The result from either of any two formulas is the same.

Belleville washers or disc springs: These washer type springs can sustain relatively large loads with small deflections, and the loads and deflections can be increased by stacking the springs.

Information on springs of this type is given in the section *DISC SPRINGS* starting on page 350.

Volute springs: These springs are often used on army tanks and heavy field artillery, and seldom find additional uses because of their high cost, long production time, difficulties in manufacture, and unavailability of a wide range of materials and sizes. Small volute springs are often replaced with standard compression springs.

Torsion bars: Although the more simple types are often used on motor cars, the more complicated types with specially forged ends are finding fewer applications.

Moduli of Elasticity of Spring Materials.—The modulus of elasticity in tension, denoted by the letter E, and the modulus of elasticity in torsion, denoted by the letter G, are used in formulas relating to spring design. Values of these moduli for various ferrous and nonferrous spring materials are given in Table 20.

General Heat Treating Information for Springs.—The following is general information on the heat treatment of springs, and is applicable to pre-tempered or hard-drawn spring materials only.

Compression springs are baked after coiling (before setting) to relieve residual stresses and thus permit larger deflections before taking a permanent set.

Extension springs also are baked, but heat removes some of the initial tension. Allowance should be made for this loss. Baking at 500 degrees F for 30 minutes removes approximately 50 percent of the initial tension. The shrinkage in diameter however, will slightly increase the load and rate.

Outside diameters shrink when springs of music wire, pretempered MB, and other carbon or alloy steels are baked. Baking also slightly increases the free length and these changes produce a little stronger load and increase the rate.

Outside diameters expand when springs of stainless steel (18-8) are baked. The free length is also reduced slightly and these changes result in a little lighter load and a decrease in the spring rate.

Inconel, Monel, and nickel alloys do not change much when baked.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Beryllium-copper shrinks and deforms when heated. Such springs usually are baked in fixtures or supported on arbors or rods during heating.

Brass and phosphor bronze springs should be given a light heat only. Baking above 450°F will soften the material. Do not heat in salt pots.

Torsion springs do not require baking because coiling causes residual stresses in a direction that is helpful, but such springs frequently are baked so that jarring or handling will not cause them to lose the position of their ends.

Table 20. Moduli of Elasticity in Torsion and Tension of Spring Materials

Ferrous Materials			Nonferrous Materials		
Material (Commercial Name)	Modulus of Elasticity[a], psi		Material (Commercial Name)	Modulus of Elasticity[a], psi	
	In Torsion, G	In Tension, E		In Torsion, G	In Tension, E
Hard Drawn MB			Spring Brass		
Up to 0.032 inch	11,700,000	28,800,000	Type 70-30	5,000,000	15,000,000
0.033 to 0.063 inch	11,600,000	28,700,000	Phosphor Bronze		
0.064 to 0.125 inch	11,500,000	28,600,000	5 percent tin	6,000,000	15,000,000
0.126 to 0.625 inch	11,400,000	28,500,000	Beryllium-Copper		
Music Wire			Cold Drawn 4 Nos.	7,000,000	17,000,000
Up to 0.032 inch	12,000,000	29,500,000	Pretempered, fully hard	7,250,000	19,000,000
0.033 to 0.063 inch	11,850,000	29,000,000	Inconel[b] 600	10,500,000	31,000,000[c]
0.064 to 0.125 inch	11,750,000	28,500,000	Inconel[b] X 750	10,500,000	31,000,000[c]
0.126 to 0.250 inch	11,600,000	28,000,000	Monel[b] 400	9,500,000	26,000,000
Oil-Tempered MB	11,200,000	28,500,000	Monel[b] K 500	9,500,000	26,000,000
Chrome-Vanadium	11,200,000	28,500,000	Duranickel[b] 300	11,000,000	30,000,000
Chrome-Silicon	11,200,000	29,500,000	Permanickel[b]	11,000,000	30,000,000
Silicon-Manganese	10,750,000	29,000,000	Ni Span[b] C 902	10,000,000	27,500,000
Stainless Steel			Elgiloy[d]	12,000,000	29,500,000
Types 302, 304, 316	10,000,000	28,000,000[c]	Iso-Elastic[e]	9,200,000	26,000,000
Type 17-7 PH	10,500,000	29,500,000			
Type 420	11,000,000	29,000,000			
Type 431	11,400,000	29,500,000			

[a] *Note:* Modulus G (shear modulus) is used for compression and extension springs; modulus E (Young's modulus) is used for torsion, flat, and spiral springs.

[b] Trade name of International Nickel Company.

[c] May be 2,000,000 pounds per square inch less if material is not fully hard.

[d] Trade name of Hamilton Watch Company.

[e] Trade name of John Chatillon & Sons.

Spring brass and phosphor bronze springs that are not very highly stressed and are not subject to severe operating use may be stress relieved after coiling by immersing them in boiling water for a period of 1 hour.

Positions of loops will change with heat. Parallel hooks may change as much as 45 degrees during baking. Torsion spring arms will alter position considerably. These changes should be allowed for during looping or forming.

Quick heating after coiling either in a high-temperature salt pot or by passing a spring through a gas flame is not good practice. Samples heated in this way will not conform with production runs that are properly baked. A small, controlled-temperature oven should be used for samples and for small lot orders.

Plated springs should always be baked before plating to relieve coiling stresses and again after plating to relieve hydrogen embrittlement.

Hardness values fall with high heat—but music wire, hard drawn, and stainless steel will increase 2 to 4 points on the Rockwell C scale.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. Squares, Cubes, and Fourth Powers of Wire Diameters

Steel Wire Gage (US)	Music or Piano Wire Gage	Diameter, Inch	Section Area	Square	Cube	Fourth Power
7-0	…	0.4900	0.1886	0.24010	0.11765	0.05765
6-0	…	0.4615	0.1673	0.21298	0.09829	0.04536
5-0	…	0.4305	0.1456	0.18533	0.07978	0.03435
4-0	…	0.3938	0.1218	0.15508	0.06107	0.02405
3-0	…	0.3625	0.1032	0.13141	0.04763	0.01727
2-0	…	0.331	0.0860	0.10956	0.03626	0.01200
1-0	…	0.3065	0.0738	0.09394	0.02879	0.008825
1	…	0.283	0.0629	0.08009	0.02267	0.006414
2	…	0.2625	0.0541	0.06891	0.01809	0.004748
3	…	0.2437	0.0466	0.05939	0.01447	0.003527
4	…	0.2253	0.0399	0.05076	0.01144	0.002577
5	…	0.207	0.0337	0.04285	0.00887	0.001836
6	…	0.192	0.0290	0.03686	0.00708	0.001359
…	45	0.180	0.0254	0.03240	0.00583	0.001050
7	…	0.177	0.0246	0.03133	0.00555	0.000982
…	44	0.170	0.0227	0.02890	0.00491	0.000835
8	43	0.162	0.0206	0.02624	0.00425	0.000689
…	42	0.154	0.0186	0.02372	0.00365	0.000563
9	…	0.1483	0.0173	0.02199	0.00326	0.000484
…	41	0.146	0.0167	0.02132	0.00311	0.000455
…	40	0.138	0.0150	0.01904	0.00263	0.000363
10	…	0.135	0.0143	0.01822	0.00246	0.000332
…	39	0.130	0.0133	0.01690	0.00220	0.000286
…	38	0.124	0.0121	0.01538	0.00191	0.000237
11	…	0.1205	0.0114	0.01452	0.00175	0.000211
…	37	0.118	0.0109	0.01392	0.00164	0.000194
…	36	0.112	0.0099	0.01254	0.00140	0.000157
…	35	0.106	0.0088	0.01124	0.00119	0.000126
12	…	0.1055	0.0087	0.01113	0.001174	0.0001239
…	34	0.100	0.0078	0.0100	0.001000	0.0001000
…	33	0.095	0.0071	0.00902	0.000857	0.0000815
13	…	0.0915	0.0066	0.00837	0.000766	0.0000701
…	32	0.090	0.0064	0.00810	0.000729	0.0000656
…	31	0.085	0.0057	0.00722	0.000614	0.0000522
14	30	0.080	0.0050	0.0064	0.000512	0.0000410
…	29	0.075	0.0044	0.00562	0.000422	0.0000316
15	…	0.072	0.0041	0.00518	0.000373	0.0000269
…	28	0.071	0.0040	0.00504	0.000358	0.0000254
…	27	0.067	0.0035	0.00449	0.000301	0.0000202
…	26	0.063	0.0031	0.00397	0.000250	0.0000158
16	…	0.0625	0.0031	0.00391	0.000244	0.0000153
…	25	0.059	0.0027	0.00348	0.000205	0.0000121
…	24	0.055	0.0024	0.00302	0.000166	0.00000915
17	…	0.054	0.0023	0.00292	0.000157	0.00000850
…	23	0.051	0.0020	0.00260	0.000133	0.00000677
…	22	0.049	0.00189	0.00240	0.000118	0.00000576
18	…	0.0475	0.00177	0.00226	0.000107	0.00000509
…	21	0.047	0.00173	0.00221	0.000104	0.00000488
…	20	0.045	0.00159	0.00202	0.000091	0.00000410
…	19	0.043	0.00145	0.00185	0.0000795	0.00000342
19	18	0.041	0.00132	0.00168	0.0000689	0.00000283
…	17	0.039	0.00119	0.00152	0.0000593	0.00000231
…	16	0.037	0.00108	0.00137	0.0000507	0.00000187
…	15	0.035	0.00096	0.00122	0.0000429	0.00000150
20	…	0.0348	0.00095	0.00121	0.0000421	0.00000147
…	14	0.033	0.00086	0.00109	0.0000359	0.00000119
21	…	0.0317	0.00079	0.00100	0.0000319	0.00000101
…	13	0.031	0.00075	0.00096	0.0000298	0.000000924
…	12	0.029	0.00066	0.00084	0.0000244	0.000000707
22	…	0.0286	0.00064	0.00082	0.0000234	0.000000669
…	11	0.026	0.00053	0.00068	0.0000176	0.000000457
23	…	0.0258	0.00052	0.00067	0.0000172	0.000000443
…	10	0.024	0.00045	0.00058	0.0000138	0.000000332
24	…	0.023	0.00042	0.00053	0.0000122	0.000000280
…	9	0.022	0.00038	0.00048	0.0000106	0.000000234

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spring Failure.—Spring failure may be breakage, high permanent set, or loss of load. The causes are listed in groups in Table 22. Group 1 covers causes that occur most frequently; Group 2 covers causes that are less frequent; and Group 3 lists causes that occur occasionally.

Table 22. Causes of Spring Failure

	Cause	Comments and Recommendations
Group 1	High stress	The majority of spring failures are due to high stresses caused by large deflections and high loads. High stresses should be used only for statically loaded springs. Low stresses lengthen fatigue life.
	Hydrogen embrittlement	Improper electroplating methods and acid cleaning of springs, without proper baking treatment, cause spring steels to become brittle, and are a frequent cause of failure. Nonferrous springs are immune.
	Sharp bends and holes	Sharp bends on extension, torsion, and flat springs, and holes or notches in flat springs, cause high concentrations of stress, resulting in failure. Bend radii should be as large as possible, and tool marks avoided.
	Fatigue	Repeated deflections of springs, especially above 1,000,000 cycles, even with medium stresses, may cause failure. Low stresses should be used if a spring is to be subjected to a very high number of operating cycles.
Group 2	Shock loading	Impact, shock, and rapid loading cause far higher stresses than those computed by the regular spring formulas. High-carbon spring steels do not withstand shock loading as well as do alloy steels.
	Corrosion	Slight rusting or pitting caused by acids, alkalis, galvanic corrosion, stress corrosion cracking, or corrosive atmosphere weakens the material and causes higher stresses in the corroded area.
	Faulty heat treatment	Keeping spring materials at the hardening temperature for longer periods than necessary causes an undesirable growth in grain structure, resulting in brittleness, even though the hardness may be correct.
	Faulty material	Poor material containing inclusions, seams, slivers, and flat material with rough, slit, or torn edges is a cause of early failure. Overdrawn wire, improper hardness, and poor grain structure also cause early failure.
Group 3	High temperature	High operating temperatures reduce spring temper (or hardness) and lower the modulus of elasticity, thereby causing lower loads, reducing the elastic limit, and increasing corrosion. Corrosion-resisting or nickel alloys should be used.
	Low temperature	Temperatures below –40 degrees F reduce the ability of carbon steels to withstand shock loads. Carbon steels become brittle at –70 degrees F. Corrosion-resisting, nickel, or nonferrous alloys should be used.
	Friction	Close fits on rods or in holes result in a wearing away of material and occasional failure. The outside diameters of compression springs expand during deflection but they become smaller on torsion springs.
	Other causes	Enlarged hooks on extension springs increase the stress at the bends. Carrying too much electrical current will cause failure. Welding and soldering frequently destroy the spring temper. Tool marks, nicks, and cuts often raise stresses. Deflecting torsion springs outwardly causes high stresses and winding them tightly causes binding on supporting rods. High speed of deflection, vibration, and surging due to operation near natural periods of vibration or their harmonics cause increased stresses.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. Arbor Diameters for Springs Made from Music Wire

Wire Dia. (inch)	Spring Outside Diameter (inch)												
	1/16	3/32	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	9/32	5/16	11/32	3/8	7/16	1/2
	Arbor Diameter (inch)												
0.008	0.039	0.060	0.078	0.093	0.107	0.119	0.129	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.010	0.037	0.060	0.080	0.099	0.115	0.129	0.142	0.154	0.164	…	…	…	…
0.012	0.034	0.059	0.081	0.101	0.119	0.135	0.150	0.163	0.177	0.189	0.200	…	…
0.014	0.031	0.057	0.081	0.102	0.121	0.140	0.156	0.172	0.187	0.200	0.213	0.234	…
0.016	0.028	0.055	0.079	0.102	0.123	0.142	0.161	0.178	0.194	0.209	0.224	0.250	0.271
0.018	…	0.053	0.077	0.101	0.124	0.144	0.161	0.182	0.200	0.215	0.231	0.259	0.284
0.020	…	0.049	0.075	0.096	0.123	0.144	0.165	0.184	0.203	0.220	0.237	0.268	0.296
0.022	…	0.046	0.072	0.097	0.122	0.145	0.165	0.186	0.206	0.224	0.242	0.275	0.305
0.024	…	0.043	0.070	0.095	0.120	0.144	0.166	0.187	0.207	0.226	0.245	0.280	0.312
0.026	…	…	0.067	0.093	0.118	0.143	0.166	0.187	0.208	0.228	0.248	0.285	0.318
0.028	…	…	0.064	0.091	0.115	0.141	0.165	0.187	0.208	0.229	0.250	0.288	0.323
0.030	…	…	0.061	0.088	0.113	0.138	0.163	0.187	0.209	0.229	0.251	0.291	0.328
0.032	…	…	0.057	0.085	0.111	0.136	0.161	0.185	0.209	0.229	0.251	0.292	0.331
0.034	…	…	…	0.082	0.109	0.134	0.159	0.184	0.208	0.229	0.251	0.292	0.333
0.036	…	…	…	0.078	0.106	0.131	0.156	0.182	0.206	0.229	0.250	0.294	0.333
0.038	…	…	…	0.075	0.103	0.129	0.154	0.179	0.205	0.227	0.251	0.293	0.335
0.041	…	…	…	…	0.098	0.125	0.151	0.176	0.201	0.226	0.250	0.294	0.336
0.0475	…	…	…	…	0.087	0.115	0.142	0.168	0.194	0.220	0.244	0.293	0.337
0.054	…	…	…	…	…	0.103	0.132	0.160	0.187	0.212	0.245	0.287	0.336
0.0625	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.108	0.146	0.169	0.201	0.228	0.280	0.330
0.072	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.129	0.158	0.186	0.214	0.268	0.319
0.080	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.144	0.173	0.201	0.256	0.308
0.0915	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.181	0.238	0.293
0.1055	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.215	0.271
0.1205	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.215
0.125	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.239

Wire Dia. (inch)	Spring Outside Diameter (inch)													
	9/16	5/8	11/16	3/4	13/16	7/8	15/16	1	1 1/8	1 1/4	1 3/8	1 1/2	1 3/4	2
	Arbor Diameter (inches)													
0.022	0.332	0.357	0.380	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.024	0.341	0.367	0.393	0.415	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.026	0.350	0.380	0.406	0.430	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.028	0.356	0.387	0.416	0.442	0.467	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.030	0.362	0.395	0.426	0.453	0.481	0.506	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.032	0.367	0.400	0.432	0.462	0.490	0.516	0.540	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.034	0.370	0.404	0.437	0.469	0.498	0.526	0.552	0.557	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.036	0.372	0.407	0.442	0.474	0.506	0.536	0.562	0.589	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.038	0.375	0.412	0.448	0.481	0.512	0.543	0.572	0.600	0.650	…	…	…	…	…
0.041	0.378	0.416	0.456	0.489	0.522	0.554	0.586	0.615	0.670	0.718	…	…	…	…
0.0475	0.380	0.422	0.464	0.504	0.541	0.576	0.610	0.643	0.706	0.763	0.812	…	…	…
0.054	0.381	0.425	0.467	0.509	0.550	0.589	0.625	0.661	0.727	0.792	0.850	0.906	…	…
0.0625	0.379	0.426	0.468	0.512	0.556	0.597	0.639	0.678	0.753	0.822	0.889	0.951	1.06	1.17
0.072	0.370	0.418	0.466	0.512	0.555	0.599	0.641	0.682	0.765	0.840	0.911	0.980	1.11	1.22
0.080	0.360	0.411	0.461	0.509	0.554	0.599	0.641	0.685	0.772	0.851	0.930	1.00	1.13	1.26
0.0915	0.347	0.398	0.448	0.500	0.547	0.597	0.640	0.685	0.776	0.860	0.942	1.02	1.16	1.30
0.1055	0.327	0.381	0.433	0.485	0.535	0.586	0.630	0.683	0.775	0.865	0.952	1.04	1.20	1.35
0.1205	0.303	0.358	0.414	0.468	0.520	0.571	0.622	0.673	0.772	0.864	0.955	1.04	1.22	1.38
0.125	0.295	0.351	0.406	0.461	0.515	0.567	0.617	0.671	0.770	0.864	0.955	1.05	1.23	1.39

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

DISC SPRINGS

Performance of Disc Springs

Introduction.—Disc springs, also known as *Belleville springs*, are conically formed from washers and have rectangular cross section. The disc spring concept was invented by a Frenchman Louis Belleville in 1865. His springs were relatively thick and had a small amount of cone height or "dish", which determined axial deflection. At that time, these springs were used in the buffer parts of railway rolling stock, for recoil mechanisms of guns, and some other applications. The use of disc springs will be advantageous when space is limited and high force is required, as these conditions cannot be satisfied by using coil springs. Load-deflection characteristics of disc springs are linear and regressive depending on their dimensions and the type of stacking. A large number of standard sizes are available from disc spring manufacturers and distributors, so that custom sizes may not be required. Therefore, disc springs are widely used today in virtually all branches of engineering with possibilities of new applications.

Disc Spring Nomenclature.—Disc spring manufacturers assign their own part number for each disc spring, but the catalog numbers for disc springs are similar, so each item can often be identified regardless of manufacturer. The disc spring identification number is a numerical code that provides basic dimensions in millimeters. Identification numbers represent the primary dimensions of the disc spring and consist of one, two, or three numbers separated from each other by dash marks or spaces. Disc spring manufacturers in the United States also provide dimensions in inches. Dimensions of several typical disc springs are shown in the following table. Basic nomenclature is illustrated in Fig. 1.

Catalog Number (mm)	Outside Diameter D (mm)	Inside Diameter d (mm)	Thickness t (mm)	Equivalent Catalog Number (inch)
8-4.2-0.4	8	4.2	0.4	0.315-0.165-0.0157
50-25.4-2	50	25.4	2	1.97-1.00-0.0787
200-102-12	200	102	12	7.87-4.02-0.472

Additional dimensions shown in catalogs are cone (dish) height h at unloaded condition, and overall height $H = h + t$, that combines the cone height and the thickness of a disc spring.

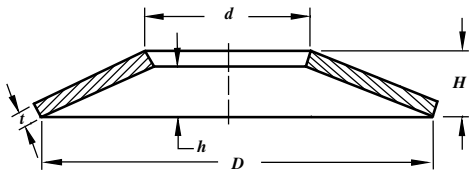


Fig. 1. Disc Spring Nomenclature

Disc Spring Group Classification.—Forces and stresses generated by compression depend on disc spring thickness much more than on any other dimensions. Standard DIN 2093 divides all disc springs into three groups in accordance with their thickness:

Group 1 includes all disc springs with thickness less than 1.25 mm (0.0492 inch).

Group 2 includes all disc springs with thickness between 1.25 mm and 6.0 mm (0.0492 inch and 0.2362 inch).

Group 3 includes disc springs with thickness greater than 6.0 mm (0.2362 inch).

There are 87 standard disc spring items, which are manufactured in accordance with DIN 2093 specifications for dimensions and quality requirements. There are 30 standard disc spring items in *Group 1*. The smallest and the largest disc springs in this group are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

8-4.2-0.2 and 40-20.4-1, respectively. *Group 2* has 45 standard disc spring items. The smallest and the largest disc springs are 22.5-11.2-1.25 and 200-102-5.5, respectively. *Group 3* includes 12 standard disc spring items. The smallest and the largest disc springs of this group are 125-64-8 and 250-127-14, respectively.

Summary of Disc Spring Sizes Specified in *DIN 2093*

Classification	OD		ID		Thickness	
	Min.	Max	Min.	Max	Min.	Max
Group 1	6 mm (0.236 in)	40 mm (1.575 in)	3.2 mm (0.126 in)	20.4 mm (0.803 in)	0.2 mm (0.008 in)	1.2 mm (0.047 in)
Group 2	20 mm (0.787 in)	225 mm (8.858 in)	10.2 mm (0.402 in)	112 mm (4.409 in)	1.25 mm (0.049 in)	6 mm (0.236 in)
Group 3	125 mm (4.921 in)	250 mm (9.843 in)	61 mm (2.402 in)	127 mm (5.000 in)	6.5 mm (0.256 in)	16 mm (0.630 in)

The number of catalog items by disc spring dimensions depends on the manufacturer. Currently, the smallest disc spring is 6-3.2-0.3 and the largest is 250-127-16. One of the US disc spring manufacturers, Key Bellevilles, Inc. offers 190 catalog items. The greatest number of disc spring items can be found in Christian Bauer GmbH + Co. catalog. There are 291 disc spring catalog items in all three groups.

Disc Spring Contact Surfaces.—Disc springs are manufactured with and without contact (also called load-bearing) surfaces. Contact surfaces are small flats at points 1 and 3 in Fig. 2, adjacent to the corner radii of the spring. The width of the contact surfaces w depends on the outside diameter D of the spring, and its value is approximately $w = D/150$.

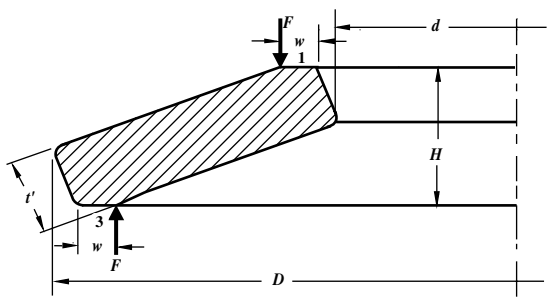


Fig. 2. Disc Spring with Contact Surfaces

Disc springs of *Group 1* and *Group 2*, that are contained in the DIN 2093 standard, do not have contact surfaces, although some *Group 2* disc springs not included in DIN 2093 are manufactured with contact surfaces. All disc springs of *Group 3* (standard and nonstandard) are manufactured with contact surfaces. Almost all disc springs with contact surfaces are manufactured with reduced thickness.

Disc springs without contact surfaces have a corner radii r whose value depends on the spring thickness t. One disc spring manufacturer recommends the following relationship:

$$r = t/6$$

Disc Spring Materials .—A wide variety of materials are available for disc springs, but selection of the material depends mainly on application. High-carbon steels are used only for *Group 1* disc springs. AISI 1070 and AISI 1095 carbon steels are used in the United States. Similar high-carbon steels such as DIN 1.1231 and DIN 1.1238 (Germany), and BS 060 A67 and BS 060 A78 (Great Britain) are used in other countries. The most common materials for *Groups 2* and *3* springs operating under normal conditions are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

chromium-vanadium alloy steels such as AISI 6150 used in the United States. Similar alloys such as DIN 1.8159 and DIN 1.7701 (Germany) and BS 735 A50 (Great Britain) are used in foreign countries. Some disc spring manufacturers in the United States also use chromium alloy steel AISI 5160. The hardness of disc springs in *Groups 2* and *3* should be 42 to 52 RC. The hardness of disc springs in *Group 1* tested by the Vickers method should be 412 to 544 HV.

If disc springs must withstand corrosion and high temperatures, stainless steels and heat-resistant alloys are used. Most commonly used stainless steels in the United States are AISI types 301, 316, and 631, which are similar to foreign material numbers DIN 1.4310, DIN 1.4401, and DIN 1.4568, respectively. The operating temperature range for 631 stainless steel is –330 to 660°F (–200 to 350°C). Among heat-resistant alloys, Inconel 718 and Inconel X750 (similar to DIN 2.4668 and DIN 2.4669, respectively) are the most popular. Operating temperature range for Inconel 718 is –440 to 1290°F (–260 to 700°C).

When disc springs are stacked in large numbers and their total weight becomes a major concern, titanium α-β alloys can be used to reduce weight. In such cases, Ti-6Al-4V alloy is used.

If nonmagnetic and corrosion resistant properties are required and material strength is not an issue, phosphor bronzes and beryllium-coppers are the most popular copper alloys for disc springs. Phosphor bronze C52100, which is similar to DIN material number 2.1030, is used at the ordinary temperature range. Beryllium-coppers C17000 and C17200, similar to material numbers DIN 2.1245 and DIN 2.1247 respectively, works well at very low temperatures.

Strength properties of disc spring materials are characterized by moduli of elasticity and Poisson's ratios. These are summarized in Table 1.

Table 1. Strength Characteristics of Disc Spring Materials

Material	Modulus of Elasticity		Poisson's Ratio
	10^6 psi	N/mm^2	
All Steels	28-31	193,000–213,700	0.30
Heat-resistant Alloys			0.28–0.29
α-β Titanium Alloys (Ti-6Al-4V)	17	117,200	0.32
Phosphor Bronze (C52100)	16	110,300	0.35
Beryllium-copper (C17000)	17	117,200	0.30
Beryllium-copper (C17200)	18	124,100	0.30

Stacking of Disc Springs.—Individual disc springs can be arranged in series and parallel stacks. Disc springs in series stacking, Fig. 3, provide larger deflection S_{total} under the same load F as a single disc spring would generate. Disc springs in parallel stacking, Fig. 4, generate higher loads F_{total} with the same deflection s than a single disc spring would have.

n = number of disc springs in stack
s = deflection of single spring
S_{total} = total deflection of stack of n springs
F = load generated by a single spring
F_{total} = total load generated by springs in stack
L_0 = length of unloaded spring stack

Series: For n disc springs arranged in series, Fig. 3, the following equations are applied:

$$F_{total} = F$$
$$S_{total} = s \times n$$
$$L_0 = H \times n = (t + h) \times n \quad (1)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

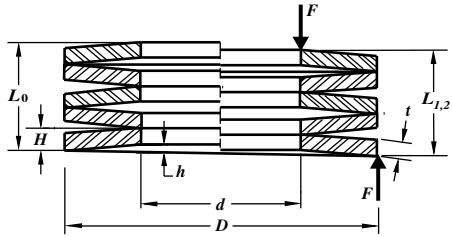


Fig. 3. Disc Springs in Series Stacking
$L_{1,2}$ Indices Indicate Length of Spring Stack under Minimum and Maximum Load.

Parallel: Parallel stacking generates a force that is directly proportional to the number of springs arranged in parallel. Two springs in parallel will double the force, three springs in parallel will triple the force, and so on. However, it is a common practice to use two springs in parallel in order to keep the frictional forces between the springs as low as possible. Otherwise, the actual spring force cannot be accurately determined due to deviation from its theoretical value.

For n disc springs arranged in parallel as in Fig. 4, the following equations are applied:

$$F_{total} = F \times n$$
$$S_{total} = s$$
$$L_0 = H + t(n-1) = (h+t) + tn - t = h + tn \quad (2)$$

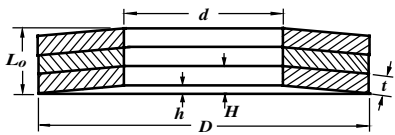


Fig. 4. Disc Springs in Parallel Stacking

Parallel-Series: When both higher force and greater deflection are required, disc springs must be arranged in a combined parallel-series stacking as illustrated in Fig. 5.

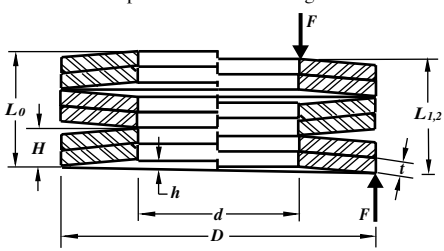


Fig. 5. Disc Springs in Parallel-Series Stacking

Normally, two springs in parallel are nested in series stacking. Two springs in parallel, called a pair, double the force, and the number of pairs, n_p, determines the total deflection, S_{total}.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For n_p disc spring pairs arranged in series, the following equations are applied:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{total} &= 2 \times F \\ S_{total} &= s \times n_p \\ L_0 = H \times n_p &= (2t + h) \times n_p \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Disc Spring Forces and Stresses

Several methods of calculating forces and stresses for given disc spring configurations exist, some very complicated, others of limited accuracy. The theory which is widely used today for force and stress calculations was developed more than 65 years ago by Almen and Laszlo.

The theory is based on the following assumptions: cross sections are rectangular without radii over the entire range of spring deflection; no stresses occur in the radial direction; disc springs are always under elastic deformation during deflection; and due to small cone angles of unloaded disc springs (between 3.5° and 8.6°), mathematical simplifications are applied.

The theory provides accurate results for disc springs with the following ratios: outside-to-inside diameter, $D / d = 1.3$ to 2.5; and cone height-to-thickness, h/t is up to 1.5.

Force Generated by Disc Springs Without Contact Surfaces.—Disc springs in *Group 1* and most of disc springs in *Group 2* are manufactured without contact (load-bearing) surfaces, but have corner radii.

A single disc spring force applied to points 1 and 3 in Fig. 6 can be found from Equation (4) in which corner radii are not considered:

$$F = \frac{4 \cdot E \cdot s}{(1 - \mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D^2} \left[\left(h - \frac{s}{2} \right) \cdot (h - s) \cdot t + t^3 \right] \tag{4}$$

where F = disc spring force; E = modulus of elasticity of spring material; μ = Poisson's ratio of spring material; K_1 = constant depending on outside-to-inside diameter ratio; D = disc spring nominal outside diameter; h = cone (dish) height; s = disc spring deflection; and, t = disc spring thickness.

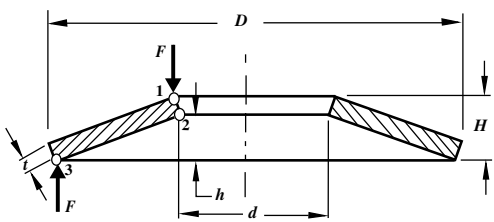


Fig. 6. Schematic of Applied Forces

It has been found that the theoretical forces calculated using Equation (4) are lower than the actual (measured) spring forces, as illustrated in Fig. 7. The difference between theoretical (trace 1) and measured force values (trace 3) was significantly reduced (trace 2) when the actual outside diameter of the spring in loaded condition was used in the calculations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

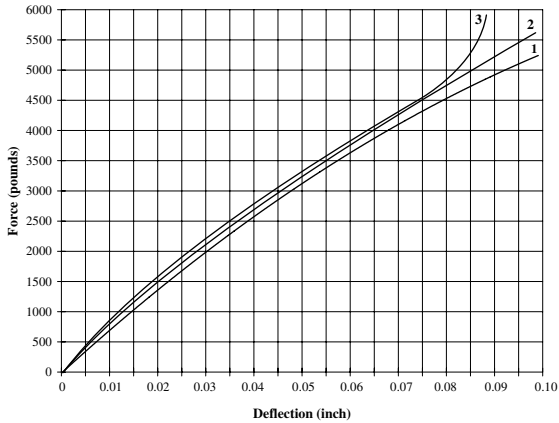


Fig. 7. Force-Deflection Relationships (80-36-3.6 Disc Springs)
1 - Theoretical Force Calculated by Equation (4)
2 - Theoretical Force Calculated by Equation (10)
3 - Measured Force

The actual outside diameter D_a of a disc spring contact circle is smaller than the nominal outside diameter D due to cone angle α and corner radius r, as shown in Fig. 8. Diameter D_a cannot be measured, but can be calculated by Equation (9) developed by Dr. Isacov.

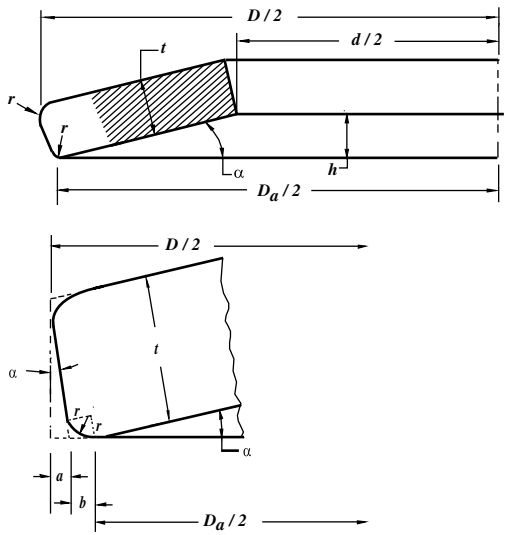


Fig. 8. Conventional Shape of Disc Spring

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

From Fig. 8,

$$\frac{D_a}{2} = \frac{D}{2} - (a + b) \tag{5}$$

where $a = t\sin\alpha$ and $b = r\cos\alpha$. Substitution of a and b values into Equation (5) gives:

$$\frac{D_a}{2} = \frac{D}{2} - (t\sin\alpha + r\cos\alpha) \tag{6}$$

The cone angle α is found from:

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{h}{\frac{D}{2} - \frac{d}{2}} = \frac{2h}{D-d} \quad \alpha = \operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{2h}{D-d}\right) \tag{7}$$

Substituting α from Equation (7) and $r = \frac{t}{6}$ into Equation (6) gives:

$$\frac{D_a}{2} = \frac{D}{2} - t\left\{\sin\left[\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{2h}{D-d}\right)\right] + \frac{1}{6}\cos\left[\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{2h}{D-d}\right)\right]\right\} \tag{8}$$

Finally,

$$D_a = D - 2t\left\{\sin\left[\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{2h}{D-d}\right)\right] + \frac{1}{6}\cos\left[\operatorname{atan}\left(\frac{2h}{D-d}\right)\right]\right\} \tag{9}$$

Substituting D_a from Equation (9) for D in Equation (4) yields Equation (10), that provides better accuracy for calculating disc spring forces.

$$F = \frac{4 \cdot E \cdot s}{(1-\mu^2) K_1 \cdot D_a^2}\left[\left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right)\cdot(h-s)\cdot t + t^3\right] \tag{10}$$

The constant K_1 depends on disc spring outside diameter D, inside diameter d, and their ratio $\delta = {}^{D}\!/_{d}$:

$$K_1 = \frac{\left(\frac{\delta - 1}{\delta}\right)^2}{\pi\left(\frac{\delta+1}{\delta-1} - \frac{2}{\ln\delta}\right)} \tag{11}$$

Table 2 compares the spring force of a series of disc springs deflected by 75 percent of their cone height, i.e., $s = 0.75h$, as determined from manufacturers catalogs calculated in accordance with Equation (4), calculated forces by use of Equation (10), and measured forces.

Table 2. Comparison Between Calculated and Measured Disc Spring Forces

Disc Spring Catalog Item	*Schnorr* Handbook for Disc Springs	*Christian Bauer* Disc Spring Handbook	*Key Bellevilles* Disc Spring Catalog	Spring Force Calculated by Equation (10)	Measured Disc Spring Force
50 – 22.4 – 2.5 S = 1.05 mm	8510 N 1913 lbf	8510 N 1913 lbf	8616 N 1937 lbf	9020 N 2028 lbf	9563 N 2150 lbf
60 – 30.5 – 2.5 S = 1.35 mm	8340 N 1875 lbf	8342 N 1875 lbf	8465 N 1903 lbf	8794 N 1977 lbf	8896 N 2000 lbf
60 – 30.5 – 3 S = 1.275 mm	13200 N 2967 lbf	13270 N 2983 lbf	13416 N 3016 lbf	14052 N 3159 lbf	13985 N 3144 lbf
70 – 35.5 – 3 S = 1.575 mm	12300 N 2765 lbf	12320 N 2770 lbf	12397 N 2787 lbf	12971 N 2916 lbf	13287 N 2987 lbf
70 – 35.5 – 3.5 S = 1.35 mm		16180 N 3637 lbf		17170 N 3860 lbf	17304 N 3890 lbf

Comparison made at 75 percent deflection, in newtons (N) and pounds (lbf)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The difference between disc spring forces calculated by Equation (10) and the measured forces varies from −5.7 percent (maximum) to +0.5 percent (minimum). Disc spring forces calculated by Equation (4) and shown in manufacturers catalogs are less than measured forces by −11 percent (maximum) to −6 percent (minimum).

Force Generated by Disc Spring with Contact Surfaces.— Some of disc springs in *Group 2* and all disc springs in *Group 3* are manufactured with small contact (load-bearing) surfaces or flats in addition to the corner radii. These flats provide better contact between disc springs, but, at the same time, they reduce the springs outside diameter and generate higher spring force because in Equation (4) force F is inversely proportional to the square of outside diameter D^2. To compensate for the undesired force increase, the disc spring thickness is reduced from t to t'. Thickness reduction factors t'/t are approximately 0.94 for disc spring series A and B, and approximately 0.96 for series C springs. With such reduction factors, the disc spring force at 75 percent deflection is the same as for equivalent disc spring without contact surfaces. Equation (12), which is similar to Equation (10), has an additional constant K_4 that correlates the increase in spring force due to contact surfaces. If disc springs do not have contact surfaces, then $K_4^2 = K_4 = 1$.

$$F = \frac{4 \cdot E \cdot K_4^2 \cdot s}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2}\left[K_4^2 \cdot \left(h' - \frac{s}{2}\right) \cdot (h' - s) \cdot (t' + t')^3\right] \tag{12}$$

where t' = reduced thickness of a disc spring

h' = cone height adjusted to reduced thickness: $h' = H - t'$ $(h' > h)$

K_4 = constant applied to disc springs with contact surfaces.

K_4^2 can be calculated as follows:

$$K_4^2 = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \tag{13}$$

where $a = t'(H - 4t' + 3t)\,(5H - 8t' + 3t)$; $b = 32(t')^3$; and, $c = -t\,[5(H-t)^2 + 32t^2]$.

Disc Spring Functional Stresses.— Disc springs are designed for both static and dynamic load applications. In static load applications, disc springs may be under constant or fluctuating load conditions that change up to 5,000 or 10,000 cycles over long time intervals. Dynamic loads occur when disc springs are under continuously changing deflection between pre-load (approximately 15 to 20 percent of the cone height) and the maximum deflection values over short time intervals. Both static and dynamic loads cause compressive and tensile stresses. The position of critical stress points on a disc spring cross section are shown in Fig. 9.

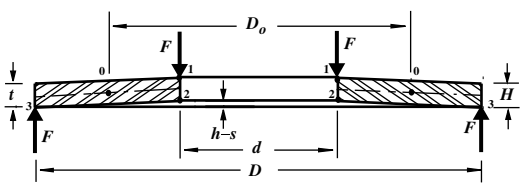


Fig. 9. Critical Stress Points
s is Deflection of Spring by Force F; $h - s$ is a Cone Height of Loaded Disc Spring.

Compressive stresses are acting at points 0 and 1, that are located on the top surface of the disc spring. Point 0 is located on the cross-sectional midpoint diameter, and point 1 is located on the top inside diameter. Tensile stresses are acting at points 2 and 3, which are located on the bottom surface of the disc spring. Point 2 is on the bottom inside diameter, and point 3 is on the bottom outside diameter. The following equations are used to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

calculate stresses. The minus sign "–" indicates that compressive stresses are acting in a direction opposite to the tensile stresses.

$$\text{Point 0:} \quad \sigma_0 = -\frac{3}{\pi} \cdot \frac{4E \cdot t \cdot s \cdot K_4}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} \tag{14}$$

$$\text{Point 1:} \quad \sigma_1 = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_4 \cdot K_2 \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right) + K_3 \cdot t \right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} \tag{15}$$

$$\text{Point 2:} \quad \sigma_2 = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_3 \cdot t - K_2 \cdot K_4 \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right) \right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} \tag{16}$$

$$\text{Point 3:} \quad \sigma_3 = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_4 \cdot (2K_3 - K_2) \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right) \right] + K_3 \cdot t}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2 \cdot \delta} \tag{17}$$

K_2 and K_3 are disc spring dimensional constants, defined as follows:

$$K_2 = \frac{6\left(\frac{\delta - 1}{\ln\delta} - 1\right)}{\pi \cdot \ln\delta} \tag{18}$$

$$K_3 = \frac{3 \cdot (\delta - 1)}{\pi \cdot \ln\delta} \tag{19}$$

where $\delta = D/d$ is the outside-to-inside diameter ratio.

In static application, if disc springs are fully flattened (100 percent deflection), compressive stress at point 0 should not exceed the tensile strength of disc spring materials. For most spring steels, the permissible value is $\sigma_0 \leq 1600$ N/mm^2 or 232,000 psi.

In dynamic applications, certain limitations on tensile stress values are recommended to obtain controlled fatigue life of disc springs utilized in various stacking. Maximum tensile stresses at points 2 and 3 depend on the *Group* number of the disc springs. Stresses σ_2 and σ_3 should not exceed the following values:

	Group 1	Group 2	Group 3
Maximum allowable tensile stresses at points 2 and 3	1300 N/mm^2 (188,000 psi)	1250 N/mm^2 (181,000 psi)	1200 N/mm^2 (174,000 psi)

Fatigue Life of Disc Springs.—Fatigue life is measured in terms of the maximum number of cycles that dynamically loaded disc springs can sustain prior to failure. Dynamically loaded disc springs are divided into two groups: disc springs with unlimited fatigue life, which exceeds 2×10^6 cycles without failure, and disc springs with limited fatigue life between 10^4 cycles and less than 2×10^6 cycles.

Typically, fatigue life is estimated from three diagrams, each representing one of the three Groups of disc springs (Fig. 10, Fig. 11, and Fig. 12). Fatigue life is found at the intersection of the vertical line representing minimum tensile stress σ_{min} with the horizontal line, which represents maximum tensile stress σ_{max}. The point of intersection of these two lines defines fatigue life expressed in number of cycles N that can be sustained prior to failure.

Example: For *Group 2* springs in Fig. 11, the intersection point of the $\sigma_{min} = 500$ N/mm^2 line with the $\sigma_{max} = 1200$ N/mm^2 line, is located on the $N = 10^5$ cycles line. The estimated fatigue life is 10^5 cycles.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

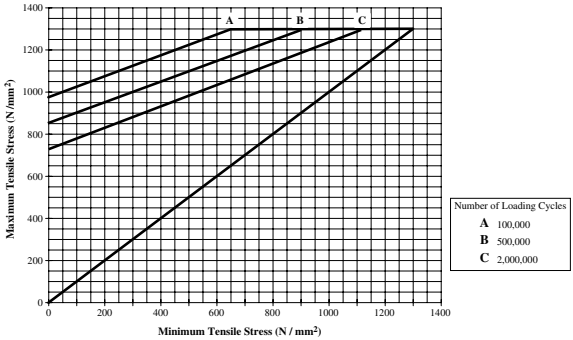


Fig. 10. *Group 1* Diagram for Estimating Fatigue Life of Disc Springs ($0.2 \leq t < 1.25$ mm)

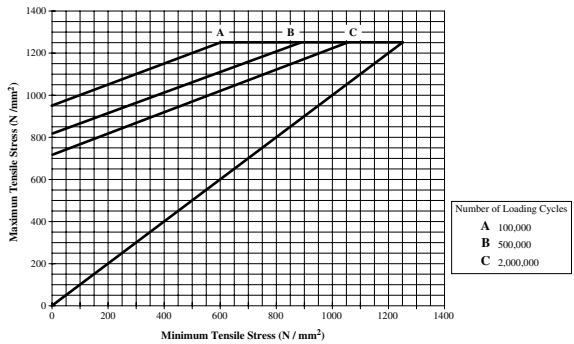


Fig. 11. *Group 2* Diagram for Estimating Fatigue Life of Disc Springs ($1.25 \leq t \leq 6$ mm)

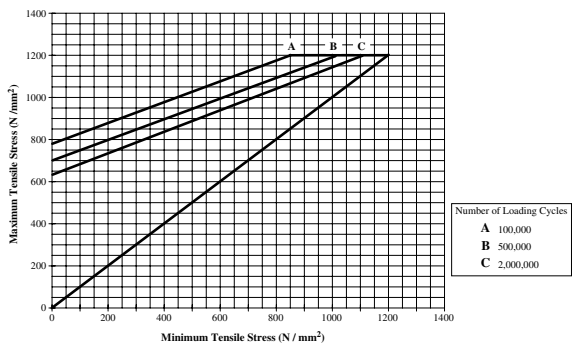


Fig. 12. *Group 3* Diagram for Estimating Fatigue Life of Disc Springs ($6 < t \leq 16$ mm)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When the intersection points of the minimum and maximum stress lines fall inside the areas of each cycle line, only the approximate fatigue life can be estimated by extrapolating the distance from the point of intersection to the nearest cycle line. The extrapolation cannot provide accurate values of fatigue life, because the distance between the cycle lines is expressed in logarithmic scale, and the distance between tensile strength values is expressed in linear scale (Figs. 10, 11, and 12), therefore linear-to-logarithmic scales ratio is not applicable.

When intersection points of minimum and maximum stress lines fall outside the cycle lines area, especially outside the $N = 10^5$ cycles line, the fatigue life cannot be estimated.

Thus, the use of the fatigue life diagrams should be limited to such cases when the minimum and maximum tensile stress lines intersect exactly with each of the cycle lines.

To calculate fatigue life of disc springs without the diagrams, the following equations developed by the author can be used.

Disc Springs in Group 1 $$N = 10^{10.29085532 - 0.00542096\,(\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min})} \quad (20)$$

Disc Springs in Group 2 $$N = 10^{10.10734911 - 0.00537616\,(\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min})} \quad (21)$$

Disc Springs in Group 3 $$N = 10^{13.23985664 - 0.01084192\,(\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min})} \quad (22)$$

As can be seen from Equations (20), (21), and (22), the maximum and minimum tensile stress range affects the fatigue life of disc springs. Since tensile stresses at Points 2 and 3 have different values, see Equations (16) and (17), it is necessary to determine at which critical point the minimum and maximum stresses should be used for calculating fatigue life. The general method is based on the diagram, Fig. 9 from which Point 2 or Point 3 can be found in relationship with disc spring outside-to-inside diameters ratio *D*/*d* and disc spring cone height-to-thickness ratio *h*/*r*. This method requires intermediate calculations of *D*/*d* and *h*/*t* ratios and is applicable only to disc springs without contact surfaces. The method is not valid for *Group 3* disc springs or for disc springs in *Group 2* that have contact surfaces and reduced thickness.

A simple and accurate method, that is valid for all disc springs, is based on the following statements:

if $(\sigma_{2\,max} - 0.5\,\sigma_{2\,min}) > (\sigma_{3\,max} - 0.5\,\sigma_{3\,min})$, then Point 2 is used, otherwise

if $(\sigma_{3\,max} - 0.5\,\sigma_{3\,min}) > (\sigma_{2\,max} - 0.5\,\sigma_{2\,min})$, then Point 3 is used

The maximum and minimum tensile stress range for disc springs in *Groups 1*, *2*, and *3* is found from the following equations.

For disc springs in *Group 1*:

$$\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min} = \frac{10.29085532 - \log N}{0.00542096} \quad (23)$$

For disc springs in *Group 2*:

$$\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min} = \frac{10.10734911 - \log N}{0.00537616} \quad (24)$$

For disc springs in *Group 3*:

$$\sigma_{max} - 0.5\sigma_{min} = \frac{13.23985664 - \log N}{0.01084192} \quad (25)$$

Thus, Equations (23), (24), and (25) can be used to design any spring stack that provides required fatigue life. The following example illustrates how a maximum-minimum stress range is calculated in relationship with fatigue life of a given disc spring stack.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: A dynamically loaded stack, which utilizes disc springs in *Group 2*, must have the fatigue life of 5×10^5 cycles. The maximum allowable tensile stress at Points 2 or 3 is 1250 N/mm^2. Find the minimum tensile stress value to sustain $N = 5 \times 10^5$ cycles.

Solution: Substitution of $\sigma_{max} = 1250$ and $N = 5 \times 10^5$ in Equation (24) gives:

$$1250 - 0.5\sigma_{min} = \frac{10.10734911 - \log(5 \times 10^5)}{0.00537616} = \frac{10.10734911 - 5.69897}{0.00537616} = 820$$

from which $\sigma_{min} = \frac{1250 - 820}{0.5} = 860$ N/mm^2 (124,700 psi)

Recommended Dimensional Characteristics of Disc Springs.—Dimensions of disc springs play a very important role in their performance. It is imperative to check selected disc springs for dimensional ratios, that should fall within the following ranges:

1) Diameters ratio, $\delta = D/d = 1.7$ to 2.5.
2) Cone height-to-thickness ratio, $h/t = 0.4$ to 1.3.
3) Outside diameter-to-thickness ratio, $D/t = 18$ to 40.

Small values of δ correspond with small values of the other two ratios. The h/t ratio determines the shape of force-deflection characteristic graphs, that may be nearly linear or strongly curved. If $h/t = 0.4$ the graph is almost linear during deflection of a disc spring up to its flat position. If $h/t = 1.6$ the graph is strongly curved and its maximum point is at 75 percent deflection. Disc spring deflection from 75 to 100 percent slightly reduces spring force. Within the $h/t = 0.4 - 1.3$ range, disc spring forces increase with the increase in deflection and reach maximum values at 100 percent deflection. In a stack of disc springs with a ratio $h/t > 1.3$ deflection of individual springs may be unequal, and only one disc spring should be used if possible.

Example Applications of Disc Springs

Example 1, Disc Springs in Group 2 (no contact surfaces): A mechanical device that works under dynamic loads must sustain a minimum of 1,000,000 cycles. The applied load varies from its minimum to maximum value every 30 seconds. The maximum load is approximately 20,000N (4,500 lbf). A 40-mm diameter guide rod is a receptacle for the disc springs. The rod is located inside a hollow cylinder. Deflection of the disc springs under minimum load should not exceed 5.5 mm (0.217 inch) including a 20 percent preload deflection. Under maximum load, the deflection is limited to 8 mm (0.315 inch) maximum. Available space for the disc spring stack inside the cylinder is 35 to 40 mm (1.38 to 1.57 inch) in length and 80 to 85 mm (3.15 to 3.54 inch) in diameter.

Select the disc spring catalog item, determine the number of springs in the stack, the spring forces, the stresses at minimum and maximum deflection, and actual disc spring fatigue life.

Solution: 1) Disc spring standard inside diameter is 41 mm (1.61 inch) to fit the guide rod. The outside standard diameter is 80 mm (3.15 in) to fit the cylinder inside diameter. Disc springs with such diameters are available in various thickness: 2.25, 3.0, 4.0, and 5.0 mm (0.089, 0.118, 0.157, and 0.197 inch). The 2.25- and 3.0-mm thick springs do not fit the applied loads since the maximum force values for disc springs with such thickness are 7,200N and 13,400N (1,600 lbf and 3,000 lbf) respectively. A 5.0-mm thick disc spring should not be used because its D/t ratio, $80/5 = 16$, is less than 18 and is considered as unfavorable. Disc spring selection is narrowed to an 80-41-4 catalog item.

2) Checking 80 - 41 - 4 disc spring for dimensional ratios:

$$\delta = D/d = 80/41 = 1.95 \qquad h/t = 22/4 = 0.55 \qquad D/t = 80/4 = 20$$

Because the dimensional ratios are favorable, the 80-41-4 disc springs are selected.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) The number of springs in the stack is found from Equation (1):

$$n = L_0 / (t + h) = 40/(4 + 2.2) = {}^{40}\!/_{6.2} = 6.45.$$

Rounding n to the nearest integer gives $n = 6$. The actual length of unloaded spring stack is $L_0 = 6.2 \times 6 = 37.2$ mm (1.465 inch) and it satisfies the $L_0 < 40$ mm condition.

4) Calculating the cone angle α from Equation (7) and actual outside diameter D_a from Equation (9) gives:

$$\alpha = \text{atan}\left(\frac{2 \times 2.2}{80 - 41}\right) = \text{atan}\,(0.11282) = 6.4°$$

$$D_a = 80 - 2 \times 4\left(\sin[\,\text{atan}\,(0.11282)] + \frac{1}{6}\cos[\text{atan}\,(0.11282)]\right)$$

$$D_a = 77.78 \text{ mm } (3.062 \text{ in})$$

5) Calculating constant K_1 from Equation (11):

$$\delta = \frac{D}{d} = 1.95122$$

$$K_1 = \frac{\left(\frac{1.95122 - 1}{1.95122}\right)^2}{\pi \cdot \left[\frac{1.95122 + 1}{1.95122 - 1} - \frac{2}{\ln(1.95122)}\right]} = 0.6841$$

6) Calculating minimum and maximum forces, F_{min} and F_{max} from Equation (10):

Based on the design requirements, the disc spring stack is deflecting by 5.5 mm (0.217 in) under minimum load, and each individual disc spring is deflecting by 5.5 / 6 ≅ 0.92 mm (0.036 in). A single disc spring deflection $s_{min} = 0.9$ mm (0.035 in) is used to calculate F_{min}. Under maximum load, the disc spring stack is permitted maximum deflection of 8 mm (0.315 in), and each individual disc spring deflects by 8 / 6 ≅ 1.33 mm (0.0524 in). A disc spring deflection $s_{max} = 1.32$ mm (0.052 in) will be used to calculate F_{max}. If disc springs are made of AISI 6150 alloy steel, then modulus of elasticity $E = 206{,}000$ N/mm^2 (30×10^6 psi) and Poisson's ratio $\mu = 0.3$.

$$F_{min} = \frac{4 \cdot 206000}{(1 - 0.3^2)(0.6841)(77.78)^2}\left[\left(2.2 - \frac{0.9}{2}\right) \cdot (2.2 - 0.9) \cdot 4 + 4^3\right]0.9$$

$$F_{min} = 14390N \text{ (3235 lbf)}$$

$$F_{max} = \frac{4 \cdot 206000}{(1 - 0.3^2)(0.6841)(77.78)^2}\left[\left(2.2 - \frac{1.32}{2}\right) \cdot (2.2 - 1.32) \cdot 4 + 4^3\right]1.32$$

$$F_{max} = 20050N \text{ (4510 lbf)}$$

7) Calculating constant K_2, Equation (18):

$$\delta = \frac{D}{d} = \frac{80}{41} = 1.95122$$

$$K_2 = \frac{6\left(\frac{\delta - 1}{\ln\delta} - 1\right)}{\pi \cdot \ln\delta} = \frac{6\left(\frac{1.95122 - 1}{\ln(1.95122)} - 1\right)}{\pi \cdot \ln(1.95122)} = 1.2086$$

8) Calculating constant K_3 (Equation (19)):

$$K_3 = \frac{3 \cdot (\delta - 1)}{\pi \cdot \ln\delta} = \frac{3 \cdot (1.95122 - 1)}{\pi \cdot \ln(1.95122)} = 1.3589$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9) Compressive stress σ_0 at point 0 due to maximum deflection, Equation (14):

$$\sigma_0 = -\frac{3}{\pi} \cdot \frac{4E \cdot t \cdot s \cdot K_4}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} = -\frac{3}{\pi} \cdot \frac{4 \cdot 206000 \cdot 4 \cdot 1.32 \cdot 1}{(1-0.3^2) \cdot 0.6841 \cdot 77.78^2}$$

$$\sigma_0 = 1103 \text{ N/mm}^2 = 160000 \text{ psi}$$

Because the compressive stress at point 0 does not exceed 1600 N/mm^2, its current value satisfies the design requirement.

10) Tensile stress σ_2 at point 2 due to minimum deflection $s = 0.9$ mm, Equation (16):

$$\sigma_{2min} = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_3 \cdot t - K_2 \cdot K_4 \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right)\right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} =$$

$$\frac{4 \cdot 206000 \cdot 1 \cdot 0.9 \left[1.3589 \cdot 4 - 1.2086 \cdot 1 \cdot \left(2.2 - \frac{0.9}{2}\right)\right]}{(1-0.3^2) \cdot 0.6841 \cdot 77.78^2} = 654 N/\text{mm}^2$$

11) Tensile stress σ_2 at point *2* due to maximum deflection $s = 1.32$ mm, Equation (16):

$$\sigma_{2max} = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_3 \cdot t - K_2 \cdot K_4 \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right)\right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2} =$$

$$\frac{4 \cdot 206000 \cdot 1 \cdot 1.32 \cdot \left[1.3589 \cdot 4 - 1.2086) \cdot 1 \cdot \left(2.2 - \frac{1.32}{2}\right)\right]}{(1-0.3^2) \cdot 0.6841 \cdot 77.78^2} = 1032 N/\text{mm}^2$$

Thus, $\sigma_{2\,min} = 654$ N/mm^2 (94,850 psi) and $\sigma_{2\,max} = 1032$ N/mm^2 (149,700 psi).

12) Tensile stress σ_3 at point 3 due to minimum deflection $s = 0.9$ mm, Equation (17):

$$\sigma_{3min} = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_4 \cdot (2K_3 - K_2) \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right) + K_3 \cdot t\right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2 \cdot \delta} =$$

$$\frac{4 \cdot 206000 \cdot 1 \cdot 0.9 \cdot \left[1 \cdot (2 \cdot 1.3589 - 1.2086) \cdot \left(2.2 - \frac{0.9}{2}\right) + 1.3589 \cdot 4\right]}{(1-0.3^2) \cdot 0.6841 \cdot 77.78^2 \cdot 1.95122} = 815 N/\text{mm}^2$$

13) Tensile stress σ_3 at point 3 due to maximum deflection $s = 1.32$ mm, Equation (17):

$$\sigma_{3max} = \frac{4E \cdot K_4 \cdot s \cdot \left[K_4 \cdot (2K_3 - K_2) \cdot \left(h - \frac{s}{2}\right) + K_3 \cdot t\right]}{(1-\mu^2) \cdot K_1 \cdot D_a^2 \cdot \delta} =$$

$$\frac{4 \cdot 206000 \cdot 1 \cdot 1.32 \cdot \left[1 \cdot (2 \cdot 1.3589 - 1.2086) \cdot \left(2.2 - \frac{1.32}{2}\right) + 1.3589 \cdot 4\right]}{(1-0.3^2) \cdot 0.6841 \cdot 77.78^2 \cdot 1.95122} = 1149 N/\text{mm}^2$$

Thus, $\sigma_{3\,min} = 815$ N/mm^2 (118,200 psi) and $\sigma_{3\,max} = 1149$ N/mm^2 (166,600 psi).

14) Functional tensile stress range at critical points 2 and 3.

Point 2: $\sigma_{2\,max} - 0.5\sigma_{2\,min} = 1032 - 0.5 \times 654 = 705$ N/mm^2

Point 3: $\sigma_{3\,max} - 0.5\sigma_{3\,min} = 1149 - 0.5 \times 815 = 741.5$ N/mm^2

Because $\sigma_{3\,max} - 0.5\sigma_{3\,min} > \sigma_{2\,max} - 0.5\,\sigma_{2\,min}$, the tensile stresses at point 3 are used for fatigue life calculations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

15) Fatigue life of selected disc springs, Equation (21):

$N = 10^{[10.10734911 - 0.00537616\,(1149 - 0.5 \times 815)]} = 10^{10.10734911 - 3.98642264} = 10^{6.12092647}$

N = 1,321,000 cycles. Thus, the calculated actual fatigue life exceeds required minimum number of cycles by 31 percent.

In conclusion, the six 80-41-4 disc springs arranged in series stacking, satisfy the requirements and will provide a 32 percent longer fatigue life than required by the design criteria.

Example 2: A company wishes to use *Group 3* disc springs with contact surfaces on couplings to absorb bumping impacts between railway cars.

Given:

D = 200 mm, disc spring outside diameter
d = 102 mm, disc spring inside diameter
t = 14 mm, spring standard thickness
t' = 13.1 mm, spring reduced thickness
h = 4.2 mm, cone height of unloaded spring
n = 22, number of springs in series stacking
S_i = 33.9 mm, initial deflection of the pack
S_a = 36.0 mm, additional deflection of the pack

Find the fatigue life in cycles and determine if the selected springs are suitable for the application.

The calculations are performed in the following sequence:

1) Determine the minimum s_{min} and maximum s_{max} deflections of a single disc spring:

$$s_{\max} = \frac{(S_i + S_a)}{n} = \frac{(33.9 + 36)}{22} = 3.18 \text{ mm}$$

$$s_{\min} = \frac{S_i}{n} = \frac{33.9}{22} = 1.54 \text{ mm}$$

2) Use Equations (16) and (17) to calculate tensile stresses σ_2 and σ_3 at s_{min} and s_{max} deflections:

$\sigma_{2min} = 674$ N/mm^2, $\sigma_{2max} = 1513$ N/mm^2, $\sigma_{3min} = 707$ N/mm^2, $\sigma_{3max} = 1379$ N/mm^2

3) Determine critical stress points:

$\sigma_{2max} - 0.5\sigma_{2min} = 1513 - 0.5 \times 674 = 1176$ N/mm^2

$\sigma_{3max} - 0.5\sigma_{3min} = 1379 - 0.5 \times 707 = 1025.5$ N/mm^2

Because $(\sigma_{2max} - 0.5\sigma_{2min}) > (\sigma_{3max} - 0.5\sigma_{3min})$, then tensile stresses at point 2 are used to calculate fatigue life.

4) Fatigue life N is calculated using Equation (22):

$N = 10^{[13.23985664 - (0.01084192 \times 1176)]} = 10^{0.49} = 3$ cycles

The selected disc springs at the above-mentioned minimum and maximum deflection values will not sustain any number of cycles. It is imperative to check the selected disc springs for dimensional ratios:

Outside-to-inside diameters ratio, 200/102 = 1.96; within recommended range.

Cone height-to-thickness ratio is 4.2/13.1 = 0.3; out of range, the minimum ratio is 0.4.

Outside diameter-to-thickness ratio is 200/13.1 = 15; out of range, the minimum ratio is 18. Thus, only one of the dimensional ratios satisfies the requirements for the best disc spring performance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

THE ELEMENTS, HEAT, MASS, AND WEIGHT

368 The Elements
369 Latent Heat
369 Specific Heat
370 Heat Loss from Steam Pipes
371 Thermal Properties
375 Adjusting Length for Temperature
375 Changes Due to Temperature
377 Properties of Mass and Weight
377 Density
377 Specific Gravity
379 Weight of Natural Piles
381 Molecular Weight
381 Mole or Mol
381 Air
381 Alligation
381 Earth or Soil Weight

PROPERTIES OF WOOD, CERAMICS, PLASTICS, METALS

382 Properties of Wood
382 Mechanical Properties
383 Weight
383 Effect of Pressure Treatment
384 Density
384 Machinability
386 Tabulated Properties of
386 Ceramics
387 Plastics
388 Investment Casting Alloys
390 Powdered Metal Alloys
391 Elastic Properties of Materials
392 Tensile Strength of Spring Wire
392 Effect of Temperature on Elasticity and Strength of Metals

STANDARD STEELS

393 Property, Composition, Application
393 Standard Steel Classification
395 Numbering Systems
396 Identifying Metals
396 Standard Steel Numbering System
396 Binary, Ternary, and Quarternary Alloys
396 Damascus Steel
397 AISI and SAE Numbers for Steels
398 AISI and SAE Designations
399 Composition of Carbon Steels

STANDARD STEELS *(Continued)*

401 Composition of Alloy Steels
403 Composition of Stainless Steels
404 Thermal Treatments of Steel
405 Applications of Steels
407 Carbon Steels
410 Carburizing Grade Alloy Steels
411 Hardenable Grade Alloy Steels
412 Characteristics of Stainless Steels
415 Chromium-Nickel Austenitic Steels
416 Stainless Chromium Irons and Steels
417 High-Strength, Low-Alloy Steels
418 Mechanical Properties of Steels

TOOL STEELS

430 Overview
430 Properties
433 Common Tool Faults and Failures
434 Effect of Alloying Elements
436 Classification
440 Selection
443 High-Speed Tool Steels
443 Molybdenum-Type
445 Tungsten-Type
446 Hot-Work Tool Steels
446 Chromium Types
448 Tungsten-Types
448 Molybdenum-Types
449 Cold-Work Tool Steels
449 High-Carbon, High-Chromium Types
449 Oil-Hardening Types
450 Medium-Alloy, Air-Hardening Types
452 Shock-Resisting Tool Steels
452 Mold Steels
454 Special-Purpose Tool Steels
454 Water-Hardening Tool Steels
456 Mill Production Forms
457 Tolerances of Dimensions
457 Allowances for Machining
457 Decarburization Limits
457 Advances in Tool Steel-Making

HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING

458 Heat Treatment of Standard Steels
458 Heat Treating Definitions
462 Hardness and Hardenability

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING

(Continued)

464 Surface Hardening Treatment (Case Hardening)
465 Fully Annealed Carbon Steel
466 Slow Cooling
466 Rapid Cooling or Quenching
467 Steel Heat Treating Furnaces
468 Physical Properties of Heat Treated Steels
469 Hardening
469 Basic Steps
470 Critical Points of Decalescence and Recalescence
470 Hardening Temperatures
471 Heating Steel in Liquid Baths
471 Salt Baths
472 Lead Bath
472 Defects in Hardening
472 Scale on Hardened Steel
472 Hardening or Quenching Baths
473 In Water
474 In a Molten Salt Bath
474 Tanks for Quenching Baths
475 Interrupted Quenching
476 Laser and Electron-Beam Surface Hardening
476 Tempering
477 Temperatures
478 In Oil
478 In Salt Baths
478 In a Lead Bath
478 To Prevent Lead from Sticking
479 In Sand
479 Double Tempering
479 Annealing, Spheroidizing, and Normalizing
480 Annealing
481 Spheroidizing
481 Normalizing
481 Case Hardening
481 Carburization
482 Pack-Hardening
482 Cyanide Hardening
482 Nitriding
483 Liquid Carburizing
483 Gas Carburizing
483 Vacuum Carburizing
483 Carburizing Steels
483 Clean after Case Hardening

HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING

(Continued)

484 Flame Hardening
484 Induction Hardening
485 Induction Heating Equipment
485 Depth of Heat Penetration
485 Steel for Induction Hardening
486 Through Hardening, Annealing, and Normalizing by Induction
486 Induction Surface Hardening
487 Typical Heat Treatments
489 Metallography
493 Heat Treating High-Speed Steels
493 Tungsten High-Speed Steel
496 Molybdenum High-Speed Steels
498 Nitriding High-Speed Steel Tools
498 Equipment for Hardening
499 Heating for Forging
499 Subzero Treatment of Steel
499 Resulting Changes
501 Carburized Parts
501 Application to High-Speed Steel
502 Testing the Hardness of Metals
503 Brinell Hardness Test
503 Rockwell Hardness Test
503 Shore's Scleroscope
503 Vickers Hardness Test
504 Knoop Hardness Numbers
504 Monotron Hardness Indicator
504 Keep's Test
504 Comparison of Hardness Scales
506 Turner's Sclerometer
506 Mohs's Hardness Scale
506 Durometer Tests

NONFERROUS ALLOYS

510 Strength Data for Nonferrous Metals
511 Coppers and Copper Alloys
511 Cast
516 Wrought
525 Copper-Silicon and Copper-Beryllium Alloys
527 Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys
528 Temper Designations
531 Alloy Designation Systems
539 Heat-Treatability
540 Clad Aluminum Alloys
540 Aluminum Alloys, Wrought, Sheet
540 Principal Alloy Groups

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROPERTIES, TREATMENT, AND TESTING OF MATERIALS

NONFERROUS ALLOYS

(Continued)

541 Type Metal
542 Magnesium Alloys
545 Nickel and Nickel Alloys
545 Titanium and Titanium Alloys

CORROSION

548 Types and Methods of Prevention
548 Uniform (General) Corrosion
548 Chemical Corrosion
548 Dry and High-Temperature Corrosion
548 Electrochemical Corrosion
549 Galvanic Corrosion
553 Effects of Corrosion
553 Crevice Corrosion
553 Pitting Corrosion
553 Microbiologically Influenced Corrosion
553 Intergranular Corrosion
553 Selective Leaching (Dealloying)
553 Stress Corrosion Cracking
554 Tribocorrosion
554 Hydrogen Embrittlement
554 Corrosion Fatigue

PLASTICS

555 Properties of Plastics
555 Plastics Families
556 Plastics Materials
558 Application and Physical Properties
563 Stress and Strain

PLASTICS

(Continued)

569 Strength and Modulus
572 Thermal Properties
576 Electrical Properties
578 Mechanical Properties
578 Design Analysis
578 Structural Analysis
580 Design Stresses
582 Thermal Stresses
582 Designing for Stiffness
583 Manufacture of Plastics Products
584 Sheet Thermoforming
584 Blow Molding
586 Processing of Thermosets
586 Polyurethanes
587 Reinforced Plastics
587 Injection Molding
592 Load-Bearing Parts
594 Melt Flow in the Mold
595 Design for Assembly
600 Assembly with Fasteners
601 Machining Plastics
606 Plastics Gears
609 Polishing Plastics
610 Finishing and Decorating Plastics
611 Development of Plastics Prototypes
611 Additive Manufacturing Plastics
612 Stereolithography
613 Selective Laser Sintering
614 Fused Deposition Modeling
614 Binder Jetting
615 Material Jetting
615 Multijet Fusion
615 Additive Manufacturing Considerations for Tooling and Parts

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

THE ELEMENTS, HEAT, MASS, AND WEIGHT

Table 1. The Elements — Symbols, Atomic Numbers and Weights, Melting Points

Name of Element	Symbol	Atomic Num.	Atomic Weight	Melting Point, °C	Name of Element	Symbol	Atomic Num.	Atomic Weight	Melting Point, °C
Actinium	Ac	89	227.028	1050	Neon	Ne	10	20.1179	–248.67
Aluminum	Al	13	26.9815	660.37	Neptunium	Np	93	237.048	640 ± 1
Americium	Am	95	(243)	994 ± 4	Nickel	Ni	28	58.69	1453
Antimony	Sb	51	121.75	630.74	Niobium	Nb	41	92.9064	2468 ± 10
Argon	A	18	39.948	–189.2	Nitrogen	N	7	14.0067	–209.86
Arsenic	As	33	74.9216	817[a]	Nobelium	No	102	(259)	…
Astatine	At	85	(210)	302	Osmium	Os	76	190.2	3045 ± 30
Barium	Ba	56	137.33	725	Oxygen	O	8	15.9994	–218.4
Berkelium	Bk	97	(247)	…	Palladium	Pd	46	106.42	1554
Beryllium	Be	4	9.01218	1278 ± 5	Phosphorus	P	15	30.9738	44.1
Bismuth	Bi	83	208.980	271.3	Platinum	Pt	78	195.08	1772
Boron	B	5	10.81	2079	Plutonium	Pu	94	(244)	641
Bromine	Br	35	79.904	–7.2	Polonium	Po	84	(209)	254
Cadmium	Cd	48	112.41	320.9	Potassium	K	19	39.0938	63.25
Calcium	Ca	20	40.08	839 ± 2	Praseodymium	Pr	59	140.908	931 ± 4
Californium	Cf	98	(251)	…	Promethium	Pm	61	(145)	1080[b]
Carbon	C	6	12.011	3652[c]	Protactinium	Pa	91	231.0359	1600
Cerium	Ce	58	140.12	798 ± 2	Radium	Ra	88	226.025	700
Cesium	Cs	55	132.9054	28.4 ± 0.01	Radon	Rn	86	(222)	–71
Chlorine	Cl	17	35.453	–100.98	Rhenium	Re	75	186.207	3180
Chromium	Cr	24	51.996	1857 ± 20	Rhodium	Rh	45	102.906	1965 ± 3
Cobalt	Co	27	58.9332	1495	Rubidium	Rb	37	85.4678	38.89
Copper	Cu	29	63.546	1083.4 ± 0.2	Ruthenium	Ru	44	101.07	2310
Curium	Cm	96	(247)	1340 ± 40	Samarium	Sm	62	150.36	1072 ± 5
Dysprosium	Dy	66	162.5	1409	Scandium	Sc	21	44.9559	1539
Einsteinium	Es	99	(252)	…	Selenium	Se	34	78.96	217
Erbium	Er	68	167.26	1522	Silicon	Si	14	28.0855	1410
Europium	Eu	63	151.96	822 ± 5	Silver	Ag	47	107.868	961.93
Fermium	Fm	100	(257)	…	Sodium	Na	11	22.9898	97.81 ± 0.03
Fluorine	F	9	18.9984	–219.62	Strontium	Sr	38	87.62	769
Francium	Fr	87	(223)	27[b]	Sulfur	S	16	32.06	112.8
Gadolinium	Gd	64	157.25	1311 ± 1	Tantalum	Ta	73	180.9479	2996
Gallium	Ga	31	69.72	29.78	Technetium	Tc	43	(98)	2172
Germanium	Ge	32	72.59	937.4	Tellurium	Te	52	127.60	449.5 ± 0.3
Gold	Au	79	196.967	1064.434	Terbium	Tb	65	158.925	1360 ± 4
Hafnium	Hf	72	178.49	2227 ± 20	Thallium	Tl	81	204.383	303.5
Helium	He	2	4.00260	–272.2[d]	Thorium	Th	90	232.038	1750
Holmium	Ho	67	164.930	1470	Thulium	Tm	69	168.934	1545 ± 15
Hydrogen	H	1	1.00794	–259.14	Tin	Sn	50	118.71	231.9681
Indium	In	49	114.82	156.61	Titanium	Ti	22	47.88	1660 ± 10
Iodine	I	53	126.905	113.5	Tungsten	W	74	183.85	3410 ± 20
Iridium	Ir	77	192.22	2410	Unnilhexium	Unh	106	(266)	…
Iron	Fe	26	55.847	1535	Unnilnonium	Unn	109	(266)	…
Krypton	Kr	36	83.80	–156.6	Unniloctium	Uno	108	(265)	…
Lanthanum	La	57	138.906	920 ± 5	Unnilpentium	Unp	105	(262)	…
Lawrencium	Lw	103	(260)	…	Unnilquadium	Unq	104	(261)	…
Lead	Pb	82	207.2	327.502	Unnilseptium	Uns	107	(261)	…
Lithium	Li	3	6.941	180.54	Uranium	U	92	238.029	1132 ± 0.8
Lutetium	Lu	71	174.967	1656 ± 5	Vanadium	V	23	50.9415	1890 ± 10
Magnesium	Mg	12	24.305	648.8 ± 0.5	Xenon	Xe	54	131.29	–111.9
Manganese	Mn	25	54.9380	1244 ± 2	Ytterbium	Yb	70	173.04	824 ± 5
Mendelevium	Md	101	(258)	…	Yttrium	Y	39	88.9059	1523 ± 8
Mercury	Hg	80	200.59	–38.87	Zinc	Zn	30	65.39	419.58
Molybdenum	Mo	42	95.94	2617	Zirconium	Zr	40	91.224	1852 ± 2
Neodymium	Nd	60	144.24	1010					

[a] At 28 atm (2.837 MPa).
[b] Approximate.
[c] Sublimates.
[d] At 26 atm (2.635 MPa).

Notes: Values in parentheses are atomic weights of the most stable known isotopes. Melting points are at standard pressure except as noted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Heat and Combustion Related Properties

Latent Heat.—When a body changes from the solid to the liquid state or from the liquid to the gaseous state, a certain amount of heat is used to accomplish this change. This heat does not raise the temperature of the body and is called latent heat. When the body changes again from the gaseous to the liquid, or from the liquid to the solid state, it gives out this quantity of heat. The *latent heat of fusion* is the heat supplied to a solid body at the melting point; this heat is absorbed by the body although its temperature remains nearly stationary during the whole operation of melting. The *latent heat of evaporation* is the heat that must be supplied to a liquid at the boiling point to transform the liquid into a vapor. The latent heat is generally given in British thermal units per pound, or kilojoules per kilogram. The latent heat of evaporation of water is 966.6 Btu/pound, or 2248 kJ/kg. This means that it takes 966.6 Btu to evaporate 1 pound, or 2248 kJ to evaporate 1 kilogram, of water after it has been raised to the boiling point, 212°F or 100°C.

When a body changes from the solid to the gaseous state without passing through the liquid stage, as solid carbon dioxide does, the process is called *sublimation*.

Table 2. Latent Heat of Fusion

Substance	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg	Substance	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg	Substance	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg
Bismuth	22.75	52.92	Paraffine	63.27	147.17	Sulfur	16.86	39.22
Beeswax	76.14	177.10	Phosphorus	9.06	21.07	Tin	25.65	59.66
Cast iron, gray	41.40	96.30	Lead	10.00	23.26	Zinc	50.63	117.77
Cast iron, white	59.40	138.16	Silver	37.92	88.20	Ice	144.00	334.94

Table 3. Latent Heat of Evaporation

Liquid	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg	Liquid	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg	Liquid	Btu per Pound	kJ/kg
Alcohol, ethyl	371.0	863	Carbon bisulfide	160.0	372	Turpentine	133.0	309
Alcohol, methyl	481.0	1119	Ether	162.8	379	Water	966.6	2248
Ammonia	529.0	1230	Sulfur dioxide	164.0	381			

Table 4. Boiling Points of Various Substances at Atmospheric Pressure

Substance	Boiling Point		Substance	Boiling Point		Substance	Boiling Point	
	°F	°C		°F	°C		°F	°C
Aniline	363	183.9	Chloroform	140	60.0	Saturated brine	226	107.8
Alcohol	173	78.3	Ether	100	37.8	Sulfur	833	445.0
Ammonia	–28	–33.3	Linseed oil	597	313.9	Sulfuric acid	590	310.0
Benzine	176	80.0	Mercury	676	357.8	Water, pure	212	100.0
Bromine	145	62.8	Napthaline	428	220.0	Water, sea	213.2	100.7
Carbon bisulfide	118	47.8	Nitric acid	248	120.0	Wood alcohol	150	65.6
			Oil of turpentine	315	157.2			

Specific Heat.—The specific heat of a substance is the ratio of the heat required to raise the temperature of a certain weight of the given substance 1°F to the heat required to raise the temperature of the same weight of water 1°F. As the specific heat is not constant at all temperatures, it is generally assumed that it is determined by raising the temperature from 62 to 63°F. For most substances, however, specific heat is practically constant for temperatures up to 212°F.

In metric units, specific heat is defined as the ratio of the heat needed to raise the temperature of a mass by 1°C to the heat needed to raise the temperature of the same mass of water by 1°C. In the metric system, heat is measured in joules (J), mass is in grams (g), and measurements are usually taken at 15°C.

Because specific heat is a dimensionless ratio, the values given in Table 5 and Table 6 that follow are valid in both the US system and the metric system.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Average Specific Heats of Various Substances

Substance	Specific Heat	Substance	Specific Heat
Alcohol (absolute)	0.700	Lead	0.031
Alcohol (density 0.8)	0.622	Lead (fluid)	0.037
Aluminum	0.214	Limestone	0.217
Antimony	0.051	Magnesia	0.222
Benzine	0.450	Marble	0.210
Brass	0.094	Masonry, brick	0.200
Brickwork	0.200	Mercury	0.033
Cadmium	0.057	Naphtha	0.310
Carbon	0.204	Nickel	0.109
Charcoal	0.200	Oil, machine	0.400
Chalk	0.215	Oil, olive	0.350
Coal	0.240	Paper	0.32
Coke	0.203	Phosphorus	0.189
Copper, 32° to 212°F (0–100°C)	0.094	Platinum	0.032
Copper, 32° to 572°F (0–100°C)	0.101	Quartz	0.188
Corundum	0.198	Sand	0.195
Ether	0.503	Silica	0.191
Fusel oil	0.564	Silver	0.056
Glass	0.194	Soda	0.231
Gold	0.031	Steel, high carbon	0.117
Graphite	0.201	Steel, mild	0.116
Ice	0.504	Stone (generally)	0.200
Iron, cast	0.130	Sulfur	0.178
Iron, wrought, 32° to 212°F (0–100°C)	0.110	Sulfuric acid	0.330
32° to 392°F (0–200°C)	0.115	Tin (solid)	0.056
32° to 572°F (0–300°C)	0.122	Tin (fluid)	0.064
32° to 662°F (0–350°C)	0.126	Turpentine	0.472
Iron, at high temperatures:		Water	1.000
1382° to 1832°F (750–1000°C)	0.213	Wood, fir	0.650
1750° to 1840°F (954–1004°C)	0.218	Wood, oak	0.570
1920° to 2190°F (1049–1199°C)	0.199	Wood, pine	0.467
Kerosene	0.500	Zinc	0.095

Table 6. Specific Heat of Gases

Gas	Constant Pressure	Constant Volume	Gas	Constant Pressure	Constant Volume
Acetic acid	0.412	…	Chloroform	0.157	…
Air	0.238	0.168	Ethylene	0.404	0.332
Alcohol	0.453	0.399	Hydrogen	3.409	2.412
Ammonia	0.508	0.399	Nitrogen	0.244	0.173
Carbonic acid	0.217	0.171	Oxygen	0.217	0.155
Carbonic oxide	0.245	0.176	Steam	0.480	0.346
Chlorine	0.121	…			

Heat Loss from Uncovered Steam Pipes.—The loss of heat from a bare steam or hot-water pipe varies with the temperature difference between the inside of the pipe and the surrounding air. The loss is 2.15 Btu per hour, per square foot of pipe surface, per degree F of temperature difference when the latter is 100 degrees; for a difference of 200 degrees, the loss is 2.66 Btu; for 300 degrees, 3.26 Btu; for 400 degrees, 4.03 Btu; for 500 degrees, 5.18 Btu. Thus, if the pipe area is 1.18 square feet per foot of length, and the temperature difference 300°F, the loss per hour per foot of length = $1.18 \times 300 \times 3.26 = 1154$ Btu.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Values of Thermal Conductivity (*k*) and of Conductance (*C*) of Common Building and Insulating Materials

Type of Material	Thick-ness, in.	*k* or *C*[a]	Type of Material	Thick-ness, in.	*k* or *C*[a]	Max. Temp.,°F	Density, lb per cu. ft.	*k*[a]
BUILDING			BUILDING (*Continued*)					
Batt:	…	…	Siding:	…	…	…	…	…
Mineral Fiber	2–2¾	0.14	Metal[b]	Avg.	1.61	…	…	…
Mineral Fiber	3–3½	0.09	Wood, Med. Density	7/16	1.49	…	…	…
Mineral Fiber	3½–6½	0.05	Stone:	…	…	…	…	…
Mineral Fiber	6–7	0.04	Lime or Sand	1	12.50	…	…	…
Mineral Fiber	8½	0.03	Wall Tile:	…	…	…	…	…
Block:	…	…	Hollow Clay, 1-Cell	4	0.9	…	…	…
Cinder	4	0.90	Hollow Clay, 2-Cell	8	0.54	…	…	…
Cinder	8	0.58	Hollow Clay, 3-Cell	12	0.40	…	…	…
Cinder	12	0.53	Hollow Gypsum	Avg.	0.7	…	…	…
Block:	…	…	INSULATING					
Concrete	4	1.40	Blanket, Mineral Fiber:	…	…	…	…	…
Concrete	8	0.90	Felt	…	…	400	3 to 8	0.26
Concrete	12	0.78	Rock or Slag	…	…	1200	6 to 12	0.26[c]
Board:	…	…	Glass	…	…	350	0.65	0.33
Asbestos Cement	¼	16.5	Textile	…	…	350	0.65	0.31
Plaster	½	2.22	Blanket, Hairfelt	…	…	180	10	0.29
Plywood	¾	1.07	Board, Block and Pipe	…	…	…	…	…
Brick:	…	…	Insulation:	…	…	…	…	…
Common	1	5.0	Amosite	…	…	1500	15 to 18	0.32[c]
Face	1	9.0	Asbestos Paper	…	…	700	30	0.40[c]
Concrete (poured)	1	12.0	Glass or Slag (for Pipe)	…	…	350	3 to 4	0.23
Floor:	…	…	Glass or Slag (for Pipe)	…	…	1000	10 to 15	0.33[c]
Wood Subfloor	¾	1.06	Glass, Cellular	…	…	800	9	0.40
Hardwood Finish	¾	1.47	Magnesia (85%)	…	…	600	11 to 12	0.35[c]
Tile	Avg.	20.0	Mineral Fiber	…	…	100	15	0.29
Glass:	…	…	Polystyrene, Beaded	…	…	170	1	0.28
Architectural	…	10.00	Polystyrene, Rigid	…	…	170	1.8	0.25
Mortar:	…	…	Rubber, Rigid Foam	…	…	150	4.5	0.22
Cement	1	5.0	Wood Felt	…	…	180	20	0.31
Plaster:	…	…	Loose Fill:	…	…	…	…	…
Sand	⅜	13.30	Cellulose	…	…	…	2.5 to 3	0.27
Sand and Gypsum	½	11.10	Mineral Fiber	…	…	…	2 to 5	0.28
Stucco	1	5.0	Perlite	…	…	…	5 to 8	0.37
Roofing:	…	…	Silica Aerogel	…	…	…	7.6	0.17
Asphalt Roll	Avg.	6.50	Vermiculite	…	…	…	7 to 8.2	0.47
Shingle, asb. cem.	Avg.	4.76	Mineral Fiber Cement:	…	…	…	…	…
Shingle, asphalt	Avg.	2.27	Clay Binder	…	…	1800	24 to 30	0.49[c]
Shingle, wood	Avg.	1.06	Hydraulic Binder	…	…	1200	30 to 40	0.75[c]

[a] Units are in Btu/hr-ft^2-°F. Where thickness is given as 1 inch, the value given is thermal conductivity (k); for other thicknesses the value given is thermal conductance (*C*). All values are for a test mean temperature of 75°F, except those designated with [c], which are for 100°F.

[b] Over hollowback sheathing.

[c] Test mean temperature 100°F, see footnote [a].

Source: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.: *Handbook of Fundamentals*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Typical Values of Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion for Thermoplastics and Other Commonly Used Materials

Material[a]	in/in/deg F × 10^{-5}	cm/cm/deg C × 10^{-5}	Material[a]	in/in/deg F × 10^{-5}	cm/cm/deg C × 10^{-5}
Liquid Crystal—GR	0.3	0.6	ABS—GR	1.7	3.1
Glass	0.4	0.7	Polypropylene—GR	1.8	3.2
Steel	0.6	1.1	Epoxy—GR	2.0	3.6
Concrete	0.8	1.4	Polyphenylene sulfide—GR	2.0	3.6
Copper	0.9	1.6	Acetal—GR	2.2	4.0
Bronze	1.0	1.8	Epoxy	3.0	5.4
Brass	1.0	1.8	Polycarbonate	3.6	6.5
Aluminum	1.2	2.2	Acrylic	3.8	6.8
Polycarbonate—GR	1.2	2.2	ABS	4.0	7.2
Nylon—GR	1.3	2.3	Nylon	4.5	8.1
TP polyester—GR	1.4	2.5	Acetal	4.8	8.5
Magnesium	1.4	2.5	Polypropylene	4.8	8.6
Zinc	1.7	3.1	TP Polyester	6.9	12.4
ABS—GR	1.7	3.1	Polyethylene	7.2	13.0

[a]GR = Typical glass fiber-reinforced material. Other plastics materials shown are unfilled.

Table 9. Linear Expansion of Various Substances between 32 and 212°F Expansion of Volume = 3 × Linear Expansion

Substance	Linear Expansion for 1°F	Linear Expansion for 1°C	Substance	Linear Expansion for 1°F	Linear Expansion for 1°C
Brick	0.0000030	0.0000054	Masonry, brick from	0.0000026	0.0000047
Cement, Portland	0.0000060	0.0000108	to	0.0000050	0.0000090
Concrete	0.0000080	0.0000144	Plaster	0.0000092	0.0000166
Ebonite	0.0000428	0.0000770	Porcelain	0.0000020	0.0000036
Glass, thermometer	0.0000050	0.0000090	Quartz, from	0.0000043	0.0000077
Glass, hard	0.0000040	0.0000072	to	0.0000079	0.0000142
Granite	0.0000044	0.0000079	Slate	0.0000058	0.0000104
Marble, from	0.0000031	0.0000056	Sandstone	0.0000065	0.0000117
to	0.0000079	0.0000142	Wood, pine	0.0000028	0.0000050

Table 10. Coefficients of Heat Transmission

Metal	Btu per Second	Metal	Btu per Second	Metal	Btu per Second
Aluminum	0.00203	German silver	0.00050	Steel, soft	0.00062
Antimony	0.00022	Iron	0.00089	Silver	0.00610
Brass, yellow	0.00142	Lead	0.00045	Tin	0.00084
Brass, red	0.00157	Mercury	0.00011	Zinc	0.00170
Copper	0.00404	Steel, hard	0.00034	…	…

Heat transmitted, in British thermal units, per second, through metal 1 inch thick, per square inch of surface, for a temperature difference of 1°F.

Table 11. Coefficients of Heat Radiation

Surface	Btu per Hour	Surface	Btu per Hour
Cast-iron, new	0.6480	Sawdust	0.7215
Cast-iron, rusted	0.6868	Sand, fine	0.7400
Copper, polished	0.0327	Silver, polished	0.0266
Glass	0.5948	Tin, polished	0.0439
Iron, ordinary	0.5662	Tinned iron, polished	0.0858
Iron, sheet-, polished	0.0920	Water	1.0853
Oil	1.4800	…	…

Heat radiated, in British thermal units, per square foot of surface per hour, for a temperature difference of 1° F.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Freezing Mixtures

Mixture	Temperature Change,°F		Temperature Change,°C	
	From	To	From	To
Common salt (NaCl), 1 part; snow, 3 parts	32	±0	0	–17.8
Common salt (NaCl), 1 part; snow, 1 part	32	–0.4	0	–18
Calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), 3 parts; snow, 2 parts	32	–27	0	–32.8
Calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), 2 parts; snow, 1 part	32	–44	0	–42.2
Sal ammoniac (NH_4Cl), 5 parts; saltpeter (KNO_3), 5 parts; water, 16 parts	50	+10	10	–12.2
Sal ammoniac (NH_4Cl), 1 part; saltpeter (KNO_3), 1 part; water, 1 part	46	–11	7.8	–23.9
Ammonium nitrate (NH_4NO_3), 1 part; water, 1 part	50	+3	10	–16.1
Potassium hydrate (KOH), 4 parts; snow, 3 parts	32	–35	0	–37.2

Ignition Temperatures.—The following temperatures are required to ignite the different substances specified: Phosphorus, transparent, 120°F (49°C); bisulfide of carbon, 300°F (149°C); gun cotton, 430°F (221°C); nitroglycerine, 490°F (254°C); phosphorus, amorphous, 500°F (260°C); rifle powder, 550°F (288°C); charcoal, 660°F (349°C); dry pine wood, 800°F (427°C); dry oak wood, 900°F (482°C).

Table 13. Typical Thermal Properties of Various Metals

Material and Alloy Designation[a]	Density, ρ		Melting Point, °F		Conductivity, *k*	Specific Heat, *C*	Coeff. of Expansion, α	
	lb/in³	g/cc	solidus	liquidus	Btu/hr-ft-°F	Btu/lb/°F	µin/in-°F	µm/m-°C
Aluminum Alloys								
2011	0.102	2.823	995	1190	82.5	0.23	12.8	23.0
2017	0.101	2.796	995	1185	99.4	0.22	13.1	23.6
2024	0.100	2.768	995	1180	109.2	0.22	12.9	23.2
3003	0.099	2.740	1190	1210	111	0.22	12.9	23.2
5052	0.097	2.685	1100	1200	80	0.22	13.2	23.8
5086	0.096	2.657	1085	1185	73	0.23	13.2	23.8
6061	0.098	2.713	1080	1200	104	0.23	13.0	23.4
7075	0.101	2.796	890	1180	70	0.23	13.1	23.6
Copper-Base Alloys								
Manganese Bronze	0.302	8.359	1590	1630	61	0.09	11.8	21.2
C11000 (Electrolytic tough pitch)	0.321	8.885	1941	1981	226	0.09	9.8	17.6
C14500 (Free machining Cu)	0.323	8.941	1924	1967	205	0.09	9.9	17.8
C17200, C17300 (Beryllium Cu)	0.298	8.249	1590	1800	62	0.10	9.9	17.8
C18200 (Chromium Cu)	0.321	8.885	1958	1967	187	0.09	9.8	17.6
C18700 (Leaded Cu)	0.323	8.941	1750	1975	218	0.09	9.8	17.6
C22000 (Commercial bronze, 90%)	0.318	8.802	1870	1910	109	0.09	10.2	18.4
C23000 (Red brass, 85%)	0.316	8.747	1810	1880	92	0.09	10.4	18.7
C26000 (Cartridge brass, 70%)	0.313	8.664	1680	1750	70	0.09	11.1	20.0
C27000 (Yellow brass)	0.306	8.470	1660	1710	67	0.09	11.3	20.3
C28000 (Muntz metal, 60%)	0.303	8.387	1650	1660	71	0.09	11.6	20.9
C33000 (Low-leaded brass tube)	0.310	8.581	1660	1720	67	0.09	11.2	20.2
C35300 (High-leaded brass)	0.306	8.470	1630	1670	67	0.09	11.3	20.3
C35600 (Extra-high-leaded brass)	0.307	8.498	1630	1660	67	0.09	11.4	20.5
C36000 (Free machining brass)	0.307	8.498	1630	1650	67	0.09	11.4	20.5
C36500 (Leaded Muntz metal)	0.304	8.415	1630	1650	71	0.09	11.6	20.9
C46400 (Naval brass)	0.304	8.415	1630	1650	67	0.09	11.8	21.2
C51000 (Phosphor bronze, 5% A)	0.320	8.858	1750	1920	40	0.09	9.9	17.8
C54400 (Free cutting phos. bronze)	0.321	8.885	1700	1830	50	0.09	9.6	17.3
C62300 (Aluminum bronze, 9%)	0.276	7.640	1905	1915	31.4	0.09	9.0	16.2
C62400 (Aluminum bronze, 11%)	0.269	7.446	1880	1900	33.9	0.09	9.2	16.6
C63000 (Ni-Al bronze)	0.274	7.584	1895	1930	21.8	0.09	9.0	16.2
Nickel-Silver	0.314	8.691	1870	2030	17	0.09	9.0	16.2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **Typical Thermal Properties of Various Metals**

Material and Alloy Designation[a]	Density, ρ		Melting Point, °F		Conductivity, *k*	Specific Heat, *C*	Coeff. of Expansion, α	
	lb/in³	g/cc	solidus	liquidus	Btu/hr-ft-°F	Btu/lb/°F	µin/in-°F	µm/m-°C
Nickel-Base Alloys								
Nickel 200, 201, 205	0.321	8.885	2615	2635	43.3	0.11	8.5	15.3
Hastelloy C-22	0.314	8.691	2475	2550	7.5	0.10	6.9	12.4
Hastelloy C-276	0.321	8.885	2415	2500	7.5	0.10	6.2	11.2
Inconel 718	0.296	8.193	2300	2437	6.5	0.10	7.2	13.0
Monel	0.305	8.442	2370	2460	10	0.10	8.7	15.7
Monel 400	0.319	8.830	2370	2460	12.6	0.10	7.7	13.9
Monel K500	0.306	8.470	2400	2460	10.1	0.10	7.6	13.7
Monel R405	0.319	8.830	2370	2460	10.1	0.10	7.6	13.7
Stainless Steels								
S30100	0.290	8.027	2550	2590	9.4	0.12	9.4	16.9
S30200, S30300, S30323	0.290	8.027	2550	2590	9.4	0.12	9.6	17.3
S30215	0.290	8.027	2500	2550	9.2	0.12	9.0	16.2
S30400, S30500	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	9.4	0.12	9.6	17.3
S30430	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	6.5	0.12	9.6	17.3
S30800	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	8.8	0.12	9.6	17.3
S30900, S30908	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	9.0	0.12	8.3	14.9
S31000, S31008	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	8.2	0.12	8.8	15.8
S31600, S31700	0.290	8.027	2500	2550	9.4	0.12	8.8	15.8
S31703	0.290	8.027	2500	2550	8.3	0.12	9.2	16.6
S32100	0.290	8.027	2550	2600	9.3	0.12	9.2	16.6
S34700	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	9.3	0.12	9.2	16.6
S34800	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	9.3	0.12	9.3	16.7
S38400	0.290	8.027	2550	2650	9.4	0.12	9.6	17.3
S40300, S41000, S41600, S41623	0.280	7.750	2700	2790	14.4	0.11	5.5	9.9
S40500	0.280	7.750	2700	2790	15.6	0.12	6.0	10.8
S41400	0.280	7.750	2600	2700	14.4	0.11	5.8	10.4
S42000, S42020	0.280	7.750	2650	2750	14.4	0.11	5.7	10.3
S42200	0.280	7.750	2675	2700	13.8	0.11	6.2	11.2
S42900	0.280	7.750	2650	2750	14.8	0.11	5.7	10.3
S43000, S43020, S43023	0.280	7.750	2600	2750	15.1	0.11	5.8	10.4
S43600	0.280	7.750	2600	2750	13.8	0.11	5.2	9.4
S44002, S44004	0.280	7.750	2500	2700	14.0	0.11	5.7	10.3
S44003	0.280	7.750	2500	2750	14.0	0.11	5.6	10.1
S44600	0.270	7.474	2600	2750	12.1	0.12	5.8	10.4
S50100, S50200	0.280	7.750	2700	2800	21.2	0.11	6.2	11.2
Cast Iron and Steel								
Malleable Iron, A220 (50005, 60004, 80002)	0.265	7.335	liquidus approximately, 2100 to 2200, depending on composition		29.5	0.12	7.5	13.5
Gray Cast Iron	0.25	6.920			28.0	0.25	5.8	10.4
Ductile Iron, A536 (120-90-02)	0.25	6.920				0.16	5.9–6.2	10.6–11.16
Ductile Iron, A536 (100-70-03)	0.25	6.920			20.0	0.16	5.9–6.2	10.6–11.16
Ductile Iron, A536 (80-55-06)	0.25	6.920			18.0	0.15	5.9–6.2	10.6–11.16
Ductile Iron, A536 (65-45-120)	0.25	6.920			20.8	0.15	5.9–6.2	10.6–11.16
Ductile Iron, A536 (60-40-18)	0.25	6.920				0.12	5.9–6.2	10.6–11.16
Cast Steel, 3%C	0.25	6.920	liquidus, 2640		28.0	0.12	7.0	12.6
Titanium Alloys								
Commercially Pure	0.163	4.512	3000	3040	9.0	0.12	5.1	9.2
Ti-5Al-2.5Sn	0.162	4.484	2820	3000	4.5	0.13	5.3	9.5
Ti-8Mn	0.171	4.733	2730	2970	6.3	0.19	6.0	10.8

[a] Alloy designations correspond to the Aluminum Association numbers for aluminum alloys and to the unified numbering system (UNS) for copper and stainless steel alloys. A220 and A536 are ASTM specified irons.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Adjusting Lengths for Reference Temperature.—The standard reference temperature for industrial length measurements is 20 degrees Celsius (68 degrees Fahrenheit). For other temperatures, corrections should be made in accordance with the difference in thermal expansion for the two parts, especially when the gage is made of a different material than the part to be inspected.

Example: An aluminum part is to be measured with a steel gage when the room temperature is 30 °C. The aluminum part has a coefficient of linear thermal expansion, $\alpha_{Part} = 24.7 \times 10^{-6}$ mm/mm-°C, and for the steel gage, $\alpha_{Gage} = 10.8 \times 10^{-6}$ mm/mm-°C.

At the reference temperature, the specified length of the aluminum part is 20.021 mm. What is the length of the part at the measuring (room) temperature?

ΔL, the change in the measured length due to temperature, is given by:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta L &= L(T_R - T_0)(\alpha_{Part} - \alpha_{Gage}) \\ &= 20.021(30 - 20)(24.7 - 10.8) \times 10^{-6}\text{mm} \\ &= 2782.919 \times 10^{-6} \approx 0.003\text{ mm}\end{aligned}$$

where L = length of part at reference temperature; T_R = room temperature (temperature of part and gage) and T_0 = reference temperature.

Thus, the temperature-corrected length at 30°C is $L + \Delta L = 20.021 + 0.003 = 20.024$ mm.

Length Change Due to Temperature.—Table 14 gives changes in length for variations from the standard reference temperature of 68°F (20°C) for materials of known coefficients of expansion, α. Coefficients of expansion are given in tables on pages 372, 373, 374, 386, 387, and elsewhere.

Example: In Table 14, for coefficients between those listed, add appropriate listed values. For example, a length change for a coefficient of 7 is the sum of values in the 5 and 2 columns. Fractional interpolation also is possible. Thus, in a steel bar with a coefficient of thermal expansion of $6.3 \times 10^{-6} = 0.0000063$ in/in = 6.3 µin/in of length/°F, the increase in length at 73°F is 25 + 5 + 1.5 = 31.5 µin/in of length. For a steel with the same coefficient of expansion, the change in length, measured in degrees C, is expressed in microns (micrometers)/meter (µm/m) of length.

Alternatively, and for temperatures beyond the scope of the table, the length difference due to a temperature change is equal to the coefficient of expansion multiplied by the change in temperature, i.e., $\Delta L = \alpha \Delta T$. Thus, for the previous example, $\Delta L = 6.3 \times (73 - 68) = 6.3 \times 5 = 31.5$ µin/in.

Change in Radius of Thin Circular Ring with Temperature.—Consider a circular ring of initial radius r, that undergoes a temperature change ΔT. Initially, the circumference of the ring is $c = 2\pi r$. If the coefficient of expansion of the ring material is α, the change in circumference due to the temperature change is $\Delta c = 2\pi r\, \alpha \Delta T$.

The new circumference of the ring will be: $c_n = c + \Delta c = 2\pi r + 2\pi r \alpha \Delta T = 2\pi r(1 + \alpha \Delta T)$.

Note: An increase in temperature causes Δc to be positive, and a decrease in temperature causes Δc to be negative.

As the circumference increases, the radius of the circle also increases. If the new radius is R, the new circumference is $2\pi R$. For a given change in temperature, ΔT, the change in radius of the ring is found as follows:

$$c_n = 2\pi R = 2\pi r(1 + \alpha \Delta T) \qquad R = r + r\alpha \Delta T \qquad \Delta r = R - r = r\alpha \Delta T$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Differences in Length in Microinches/Inch (Microns/Meter) for Changes from the Standard Temperature of 68°F (20°C)

Temperature Deg. F	Temperature Deg. C	Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Material per Degree F (C) × 10^6									
		1	2	3	4	5	10	15	20	25	30
		Total Change in Length from Standard Temperature { for °F in microinches/inch of length (µin/in) for °C or °K in microns/meter of length (µm/m)									
38	–10	–30	–60	–90	–120	–150	–300	–450	–600	–750	–900
39	–9	–29	–58	–87	–116	–145	–290	–435	–580	–725	–870
40	–8	–28	–56	–84	–112	–140	–280	–420	–560	–700	–840
41	–7	–27	–54	–81	–108	–135	–270	–405	–540	–675	–810
42	–6	–26	–52	–78	–104	–130	–260	–390	–520	–650	–780
43	–5	–25	–50	–75	–100	–125	–250	–375	–500	–625	–750
44	–4	–24	–48	–72	–96	–120	–240	–360	–480	–600	–720
45	–3	–23	–46	–69	–92	–115	–230	–345	–460	–575	–690
46	–2	–22	–44	–66	–88	–110	–220	–330	–440	–550	–660
47	–1	–21	–42	–63	–84	–105	–210	–315	–420	–525	–630
48	0	–20	–40	–60	–80	–100	–200	–300	–400	–500	–600
49	1	–19	–38	–57	–76	–95	–190	–285	–380	–475	–570
50	2	–18	–36	–54	–72	–90	–180	–270	–360	–450	–540
51	3	–17	–34	–51	–68	–85	–170	–255	–340	–425	–510
52	4	–16	–32	–48	–64	–80	–160	–240	–320	–400	–480
53	5	–15	–30	–45	–60	–75	–150	–225	–300	–375	–450
54	6	–14	–28	–42	–56	–70	–140	–210	–280	–350	–420
55	7	–13	–26	–39	–52	–65	–130	–195	–260	–325	–390
56	8	–12	–24	–36	–48	–60	–120	–180	–240	–300	–360
57	9	–11	–22	–33	–44	–55	–110	–165	–220	–275	–330
58	10	–10	–20	–30	–40	–50	–100	–150	–200	–250	–300
59	11	–9	–18	–27	–36	–45	–90	–135	–180	–225	–270
60	12	–8	–16	–24	–32	–40	–80	–120	–160	–200	–240
61	13	–7	–14	–21	–28	–35	–70	–105	–140	–175	–210
62	14	–6	–12	–18	–24	–30	–60	–90	–120	–150	–180
63	15	–5	–10	–15	–20	–25	–50	–75	–100	–125	–150
64	16	–4	–8	–12	–16	–20	–40	–60	–80	–100	–120
65	17	–3	–6	–9	–12	–15	–30	–45	–60	–75	–90
66	18	–2	–4	–6	–8	–10	–20	–30	–40	–50	–60
67	19	–1	–2	–3	–4	–5	–10	–15	–20	–25	–30
68	20	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
69	21	1	2	3	4	5	10	15	20	25	30
70	22	2	4	6	8	10	20	30	40	50	60
71	23	3	6	9	12	15	30	45	60	75	90
72	24	4	8	12	16	20	40	60	80	100	120
73	25	5	10	15	20	25	50	75	100	125	150
74	26	6	12	18	24	30	60	90	120	150	180
75	27	7	14	21	28	35	70	105	140	175	210
76	28	8	16	24	32	40	80	120	160	200	240
77	29	9	18	27	36	45	90	135	180	225	270
78	30	10	20	30	40	50	100	150	200	250	300
79	31	11	22	33	44	55	110	165	220	275	330
80	32	12	24	36	48	60	120	180	240	300	360
81	33	13	26	39	52	65	130	195	260	325	390
82	34	14	28	42	56	70	140	210	280	350	420
83	35	15	30	45	60	75	150	225	300	375	450
84	36	16	32	48	64	80	160	240	320	400	480
85	37	17	34	51	68	85	170	255	340	425	510
86	38	18	36	54	72	90	180	270	360	450	540
87	39	19	38	57	76	95	190	285	380	475	570
88	40	20	40	60	80	100	200	300	400	500	600
89	41	21	42	63	84	105	210	315	420	525	630
90	42	22	44	66	88	110	220	330	440	550	660
91	43	23	46	69	92	115	230	345	460	575	690
92	44	24	48	72	96	120	240	360	480	600	720
93	45	25	50	75	100	125	250	375	500	625	750
94	46	26	52	78	104	130	260	390	520	650	780
95	47	27	54	81	108	135	270	405	540	675	810
96	48	28	56	84	112	140	280	420	560	700	840
97	49	29	58	87	116	145	290	435	580	725	870
98	50	30	60	90	120	150	300	450	600	750	900

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Properties of Mass and Weight

Density.—The density of any solid, fluid or gaseous substance is the mass of that substance per unit volume. If weight is used in the ordinary sense as being equivalent to mass, then density may be defined as the weight per unit volume. The density depends upon the unit in which the mass or weight is expressed, and upon the unit of volume used. In engineering and scientific work, density is generally expressed in grams per cubic centimeter, without naming the units, because the density will be equal to the specific gravity.

Specific Gravity.—Specific gravity is a number indicating how many times a volume of material is heavier than an equal volume of water. Density of water varies slightly at different temperatures. In exacting scientific studies, a reference temperature of 4°C (39.2°F) is often used, and the weight of 1 cubic meter of pure water at 4°C is 1000 kg. In engineering practice, the usual custom is to measure specific gravity at water temperature of 60 or 62°F (15.5 or 16.6°C); 1 cubic foot of pure water at 62°F weighs 62.355 pounds.

Given	Rule to find density	Given	Rule to find specific gravity
Specific Gravity (S.G.)	weight/cm^3 = S.G.	weight/cm^3	S.G. = weight/cm^3
	weight/m^3 = S.G. × 1000	weight/m^3	S.G. = weight/m^3 ÷ 1000
	weight/in^3 = S.G. × 0.0361	weight/in^3	S.G. = weight/in^3 ÷ 0.0361
	weight/ft^3 = S.G. ÷ 0.01604	weight/ft^3	S.G. = weight/ft^3 × 0.01604

When specific gravity is known, the weight per cubic centimeter is equal to its specific gravity. The weight per cubic meter equals the specific gravity × 1000. The weight per cubic inch equals the specific gravity × 0.0361. The weight of a cubic foot equals the specific gravity divided by 0.01604.

When weight per cubic centimeter is known, the specific gravity is equal to the weight per cubic centimeter. If weight per cubic meter is known, the specific gravity equals this weight divided by 1000. If density is given in lb/in^3, specific gravity may be determined by dividing the density by 0.0361. If weight per cubic foot is known, specific gravity equals this weight multiplied by 0.01604.

Examples: The specific gravity of cast iron is 7.2. The weight of 80 cm^3 of cast iron = 7.2 × 80 = 5.6 kg. The weight of 5 in^3 of cast iron = 7.2 × 0.0361 × 5 = 1.2996 pounds.

Examples: The weight of a cubic centimeter of gold is 19.31 grams. The specific gravity of gold = weight of a cubic centimeter of gold = 19.31. A cubic inch of gold weighs 0.697 pound. The specific gravity of gold = 0.697 ÷ 0.0361 = 19.31

Table 15. Average Specific Gravity of Various Substances

Substance	Specific Gravity	[a]Weight lb/ft^3	[a]Weight kg/m^3	Substance	Specific Gravity	[a]Weight lb/ft^3	[a]Weight kg/m^3	Substance	Specific Gravity	[a]Weight lb/ft^3	[a]Weight kg/m^3
ABS	1.05	66	1057	Glass	2.6	162	2595	Platinum	21.5	1342	21497
Acrylic	1.19	74	1185	Glass, crushed	…	74	1185	Polycarbonate	1.19	74	1185
Aluminum bronze	7.8	486	7785	Gold, 22 carat fine	17.5	1091	17476	Polyethylene	0.97	60	961
Aluminum, cast	2.6	160	2563	Gold, pure	19.3	1204	19286	Polypropylene	0.91	57	913
Aluminum, wrought	2.7	167	2675	Granite	2.7	168	2691	Polyurethane	1.05	66	1057
Asbestos	2.4	150	2403	Gravel	…	109	1746	Quartz	2.6	162	2595
Asphaltum	1.4	87	1394	Gypsum	2.4	150	2403	Salt, common	…	48	769
Borax	1.8	112	1794	Ice	0.9	56	897	Sand, dry	…	100	1602
Brick, common	1.8	112	1794	Iron, cast	7.2	447	7160	Sand, wet	…	125	2002
Brick, fire	2.3	143	2291	Iron, wrought	7.7	479	7673	Sandstone	2.3	143	2291
Brick, hard	2.0	125	2002	Iron slag	2.7	168	2691	Silver	10.5	656	10508
Brick, pressed	2.2	137	2195	Lead	11.4	711	11389	Slate	2.8	175	2803
Brickwork, in cement	1.8	112	1794	Limestone	2.6	162	2595	Soapstone	2.7	168	2691
Brickwork, in mortar	1.6	100	1602	Marble	2.7	168	2691	Steel	7.9	491	7865
CPVC	1.55	97	1554	Masonry	2.4	150	2403	Sulfur	2.0	125	2002
Cement, Portland (set)	3.1	193	3092	Mercury	13.56	845.3	13540	Tar, bituminous	1.2	75	1201
Chalk	2.3	143	2291	Mica	2.8	175	2803	Tile	1.8	112	1794
Charcoal	0.4	25	400	Mortar	1.5	94	1506	Trap rock	3.0	187	2995
Coal, anthracite	1.5	94	1506	Nickel, cast	8.3	517	8282	Water at 4°C	1.0	62.43	1000
Coal, bituminous	1.3	81	1297	Nickel, rolled	8.7	542	8682	Water at 62°F	1.0	62.355	
Concrete	2.2	137	2195	Nylon 6, Cast	1.16	73	1169	White metal	7.3	457	7320
Earth, loose	…	75	1201	PTFE	2.19	137	2195	Zinc, cast	6.9	429	6872
Earth, rammed	…	100	1602	Phosphorus	1.8	112	1794	Zinc, sheet	7.2	450	7208
Emery	4.0	249	3989	Plaster of Paris	1.8	112	1794	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

[a] The weight per cubic foot or cubic meter is calculated on the basis of the specific gravity except for those substances that occur in bulk, heaped, or loose form. In these instances, only the weights per cubic foot and cubic meter are given because the voids present in representative samples make the values of the specific gravities inaccurate.

Average Weights and Volumes of Solid Fuels

Material	lb/ft^3	ft^3/ton (2240 lb)	kg/m^3	lb/bushel	m^3/t
Anthracite coal	55–65	34–41	881–1041	67 (80[a])	0.96–1.14
Bituminous coal	50–55	41–45	801–881	78–86 (80[a])	1.14–1.25
Charcoal	18–18.5	121–124	288–296	22–23 (20[a])	3.37–3.47
Coke	28	80	449	35 (40[a])	2.23

[a] Legal commodities weight/bushel defined by statute in some states.

Note: t = metric ton = 1000 kg; ton = US ton of 2000 lbs; a gross or long ton = 2240 lbs.

Specific Gravity of Gases.—The specific gravity of gases is the number that indicates their weight in comparison with that of an equal volume of air. The specific gravity of air is 1, and the comparison is made at 32°F (0°C). Values are given in Table 16.

Table 16. Specific Gravity of Gases At 32°F (0°C)

Gas	Sp. Gr.	Gas	Sp. Gr.	Gas	Sp. Gr.
Air[a]	1.000	Ether vapor	2.586	Marsh gas	0.555
Acetylene	0.920	Ethylene	0.967	Nitrogen	0.971
Alcohol vapor	1.601	Hydrofluoric acid	2.370	Nitric oxide	1.039
Ammonia	0.592	Hydrochloric acid	1.261	Nitrous oxide	1.527
Carbon dioxide	1.520	Hydrogen	0.069	Oxygen	1.106
Carbon monoxide	0.967	Illuminating gas	0.400	Sulfur dioxide	2.250
Chlorine	2.423	Mercury vapor	6.940	Water vapor	0.623

[a] 1 cubic foot of air at 32°F and atmospheric pressure weighs 0.0807 pound. 1 cubic meter of air at 0°C and atmospheric pressure weighs 1.29 kg.

Specific Gravity of Liquids.—The specific gravity of liquids is the number that indicates how much a certain volume of the liquid weighs compared with an equal volume of water, the same as with solid bodies. Specific gravity of various liquids is given in Table 17.

The density of liquid is often expressed in degrees on the hydrometer, an instrument for determining the density of liquids that is provided with graduations made to an arbitrary scale. The hydrometer consists of a glass tube with a bulb at one end containing air and arranged with a weight at the bottom so as to float in an upright position in the liquid, the density of which is to be measured. The depth to which the hydrometer sinks in the liquid is read off on the graduated scale. The most commonly used hydrometer is the Baumé, see Table 18. The value of the degrees of the Baumé scale differs according to whether the liquid is heavier or lighter than water. The specific gravity for liquids heavier than water equals 145 ÷ (145 – degrees Baumé). For liquids lighter than water, the specific gravity equals 140 ÷ (130 + degrees Baumé).

Table 17. Specific Gravity of Liquids

Liquid	Sp. Gr.	Liquid	Sp. Gr.	Liquid	Sp. Gr.	Liquid	Sp. Gr.
Acetic acid	1.06	Cotton-seed oil	0.93	Naphtha	0.76	Tar	1.00
Alcohol, commercial	0.83	Ether, sulfuric	0.72	Nitric acid	1.50	Turpentine oil	0.87
Alcohol, pure	0.79	Fluoric acid	1.50	Olive oil	0.92	Vinegar	1.08
Ammonia	0.89	Gasoline	0.70	Palm oil	0.97	Water	1.00
Benzine	0.69	Kerosene	0.80	Petroleum oil	0.82	Water, sea	1.03
Bromine	2.97	Linseed oil	0.94	Phosphoric acid	1.78	Whale oil	0.92
Carbolic acid	0.96	Mineral oil	0.92	Rape oil	0.92		
Carbon disulfide	1.26	Muriatic acid	1.20	Sulfuric acid	1.84		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. Degrees on Baumé's Hydrometer Converted to Specific Gravity

Deg. Baumé	Specific Gravity for Liquids		Deg. Baumé	Specific Gravity for Liquids		Deg. Baumé	Specific Gravity for Liquids	
	Heavier than Water	Lighter than Water		Heavier than Water	Lighter than Water		Heavier than Water	Lighter than Water
0	1.000	…	27	1.229	0.892	54	1.593	0.761
1	1.007	…	28	1.239	0.886	55	1.611	0.757
2	1.014	…	29	1.250	0.881	56	1.629	0.753
3	1.021	…	30	1.261	0.875	57	1.648	0.749
4	1.028	…	31	1.272	0.870	58	1.667	0.745
5	1.036	…	32	1.283	0.864	59	1.686	0.741
6	1.043	…	33	1.295	0.859	60	1.706	0.737
7	1.051	…	34	1.306	0.854	61	1.726	0.733
8	1.058	…	35	1.318	0.849	62	1.747	0.729
9	1.066	…	36	1.330	0.843	63	1.768	0.725
10	1.074	1.000	37	1.343	0.838	64	1.790	0.721
11	1.082	0.993	38	1.355	0.833	65	1.813	0.718
12	1.090	0.986	39	1.368	0.828	66	1.836	0.714
13	1.099	0.979	40	1.381	0.824	67	1.859	0.710
14	1.107	0.972	41	1.394	0.819	68	1.883	0.707
15	1.115	0.966	42	1.408	0.814	69	1.908	0.704
16	1.124	0.959	43	1.422	0.809	70	1.933	0.700
17	1.133	0.952	44	1.436	0.805	71	1.959	0.696
18	1.142	0.946	45	1.450	0.800	72	1.986	0.693
19	1.151	0.940	46	1.465	0.796	73	2.014	0.689
20	1.160	0.933	47	1.480	0.791	74	2.042	0.686
21	1.169	0.927	48	1.495	0.787	75	2.071	0.683
22	1.179	0.921	49	1.510	0.782	76	2.101	0.679
23	1.189	0.915	50	1.526	0.778	77	2.132	0.676
24	1.198	0.909	51	1.542	0.773	78	2.164	0.673
25	1.208	0.903	52	1.559	0.769	79	2.197	0.669
26	1.219	0.897	53	1.576	0.765	80	2.230	0.666

How to Estimate the Weight of Natural Piles.—To calculate the upper and lower limits of weight of a substance piled naturally on a plate, use the following:

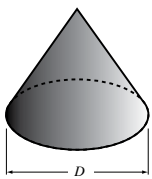


Fig. 1a. Conical Pile

For a substance piled naturally on a circular plate, forming a cone of material,

$$W = MD^3 \quad (1)$$

where W = weight, lb (kg); D = diameter of plate in Fig. 1a, in feet (meters); and, M = a materials factor, whose upper and lower limits are given in Table 19b.

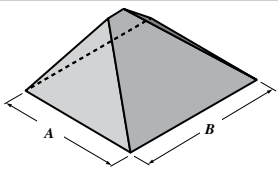


Fig. 1b. Rectangular Pile

For a substance piled naturally on a rectangular plate,

$$W = MRA^3 \quad (2)$$

where W = weight, lb (kg); A and B = the length and width in feet (meters), respectively, of the rectangular plate in Fig. 1b, with $B \leq A$; M = a materials factor, whose upper and lower limits are given in Table 19b; and, R = is a factor given in Table 19a as a function of the ratio B/A.

Example: Find the upper and lower limits of the weight of dry ashes piled naturally on a plate 10 ft. in diameter.

Using Equation (1), $M = 4.58$ from Table 19b, the lower limit $W = 4.58 \times 10^3 = 4{,}580$ lb. For $M = 5.89$, the upper limit $W = 5.89 \times 10^3 = 5{,}890$ lb.

Example: What weight of dry ashes rests on a rectangular plate 10 ft. by 5 ft.?

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For $B/A = 5/10 = 0.5$, $R = 0.39789$ from Table 19a. Using Equation (2), for $M = 4.58$, the lower limit $W = 4.58 \times 0.39789 \times 10^3 = 1{,}822$ lb. For $M = 5.89$, the upper limit $W = 5.89 \times 0.39789 \times 10^3 = 2{,}344$lb.

Example: What is the weight of a pile of cast iron chips resting on a rectangular plate 4 m by 2 m? For $B/A = 2/4$, $R = 0.39789$ from Table 19a. Using Equation (2), for $M = 17.02$, the lower limit $W = 17.02 \times 0.39789 \times 4^3 = 433$ kg. For $M = 26.18$, the upper limit $W = 26.18 \times 0.39789 \times 4^3 = 667$ kg.

Table 19a. Factor *R* as a Function of *B*/*A* (*B* ≤ *A*)

B/*A*	*R*	*B*/*A*	*R*	*B*/*A*	*R*	*B*/*A*	*R*	*B*/*A*	*R*	*B*/*A*	*R*
0.01	0.00019	0.18	0.05817	0.35	0.20666	0.52	0.42691	0.69	0.70015	0.86	1.00761
0.02	0.00076	0.19	0.06458	0.36	0.21782	0.53	0.44170	0.70	0.71747	0.87	1.02636
0.03	0.00170	0.20	0.07130	0.37	0.22921	0.54	0.45667	0.71	0.73491	0.88	1.04516
0.04	0.00302	0.21	0.07833	0.38	0.24085	0.55	0.47182	0.72	0.75245	0.89	1.06400
0.05	0.00470	0.22	0.08566	0.39	0.25273	0.56	0.48713	0.73	0.77011	0.90	1.08289
0.06	0.00674	0.23	0.09329	0.40	0.26483	0.57	0.50262	0.74	0.78787	0.91	1.10182
0.07	0.00914	0.24	0.10121	0.41	0.27717	0.58	0.51826	0.75	0.80572	0.92	1.12078
0.08	0.01190	0.25	0.10942	0.42	0.28973	0.59	0.53407	0.76	0.82367	0.93	1.13977
0.09	0.01501	0.26	0.11792	0.43	0.30252	0.60	0.55004	0.77	0.84172	0.94	1.15879
0.10	0.01846	0.27	0.12670	0.44	0.31552	0.61	0.56616	0.78	0.85985	0.95	1.17783
0.11	0.02226	0.28	0.13576	0.45	0.32873	0.62	0.58243	0.79	0.87807	0.96	1.19689
0.12	0.02640	0.29	0.14509	0.46	0.34216	0.63	0.59884	0.80	0.89636	0.97	1.21596
0.13	0.03088	0.30	0.15470	0.47	0.35579	0.64	0.61539	0.81	0.91473	0.98	1.23505
0.14	0.03569	0.31	0.16457	0.48	0.36963	0.65	0.63208	0.82	0.93318	0.99	1.25414
0.15	0.04082	0.32	0.17471	0.49	0.38366	0.66	0.64891	0.83	0.95169	1.00	1.27324
0.16	0.04628	0.33	0.18511	0.50	0.39789	0.67	0.66586	0.84	0.97027	…	…
0.17	0.05207	0.34	0.19576	0.51	0.41231	0.68	0.68295	0.85	0.98891	…	…

Table 19b. Limits of Factor *M* for Various Materials

Material	Factor *M*	Material	Factor *M*	Material	Factor *M*
Almonds, whole	2.12–3.93	Coffee, ground	1.89–3.27	Peanuts, unshelled	1.13–3.14
Aluminum chips	0.92–1.96	Coke, pulverized	2.21	Peanuts, shelled	2.65–5.89
Aluminum silicate	3.7–6.41	Copper oxide, powdered	20.87	Peas, dry	2.75–3.05
Ammonium chloride	3.93–6.81	Cork, granulated	1.57–1.96	Potassium carbonate	3.85–6.68
Asbestos, shredded	2.62–3.27	Corn on cob	1.29–1.33	Potassium sulphate	5.5–6.28
Ashes, dry	4.58–5.89	Corn sugar	2.34–4.06	Pumice	5.24–5.89
Ashes, damp	6.24–7.80	Cottonseed, dry, de-linted	1.66–5.24	Rice, bran	1.51–2.75
Asphalt, crushed	3.4–5.89	Diatomaceous earth	0.83–1.83	Rubber, scrap, ground	2.11–4.58
Bakelite, powdered	3.93–5.24	Dicalcium phosphate	5.63	Salt, dry, coarse	3.02–8.38
Baking powder	3.1–5.37	Ebonite, crushed	4.91–9.16	Salt, dry, fine	5.29–10.47
Barium carbonate	9.42	Epsom salts	3.02–6.54	Saltpeter	6.05–10.47
Bauxite, mine run	5.9–6.69	Feldspar, ground	8.51–9.16	Salt rock, crushed	4.58
Beans, navy, dry	3.63	Fish scrap	5.24–6.54	Sand, very fine	7.36–9
Beets, sugar, shredded	0.47–0.55	Flour	5.61–10.43	Sawdust, dry	0.95–2.85
Bicarbonate of soda	3.10	Flue dust	2.65–3.40	Sesame seed	2.04–4.84
Borax	3.78–9.16	Fluorspar (Fluorite)	10.73–14.40	Shellac, powdered	2.34–4.06
Boric acid	4.16–7.20	Graphite, flake	3.02–5.24	Slag, furnace, granular	4.53–8.51
Bronze chips	3.93–6.54	Gravel	6.8–13.18	Soap powder	1.51–3.27
Buckwheat	2.8–3.17	Gypsum, calcined	6.04–6.59	Sodium nitrate	3.96–4.66
Calcium lactate	3.4–3.8	Hominy	2.8–6.54	Sodium sulphite	10.54
Calcium oxide (lime)	3.30	Hops, dry	4.58	Sodium sulphate	6.92
Carbon, ground	2.51	Kaolin clay	12.32–21.34	Soybeans	3.48–6.28
Casein	2.72–4.71	Lead silicate, granulated	25.26	Steel chips, crushed	7.56–19.63
Cashew nuts	4.19–4.84	Lead sulphate, pulverized	24.09	Sugar, refined	3.78–7.2
Cast iron chips	17.02–26.18	Lime, ground	7.85	Sulphur	4.5–6.95
Cement, Portland	6.8–13.09	Limestone, crushed	6.42–11.78	Talcum powder	4.37–5.9
Cinders, coal	3.02–5.24	Magnesium chloride	4.32	Tin oxide, ground	9.17
Clay, blended for tile	5.89	Malt, dry, ground	1.66–2.88	Tobacco stems	1.96–3.27
Coal, anthracite, chestnut	2.43	Manganese sulphate	5.29–9.16	Trisodium phosphate	4.53–7.85
Coal, bituminous, sized	2.64–4.48	Marble, crushed	6.8–12.44	Walnut shells, crushed	2.65–5.24
Coal, ground	2.90	Mica, ground	1.24–1.43	Wood chips, fir	2.49–2.88
Cocoa, powdered	3.93–4.58	Milk, whole, powdered	2.62	Zinc sulphate	8.85–11.12
Coconut, shredded	2.62–2.88	Oats	1.74–2.86	…	…
Coffee beans	2.42–5.89	Orange peel, dry	1.96	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Molecular Weight.—The smallest mass of a chemical combination which can be conceived of as existing and yet preserving its chemical properties is known as a *molecule*. The molecular weight of a chemical compound is equal to the sum of the atomic weights of the atoms contained in the molecule, and is calculated from the atomic weights, when the symbol of the compound is known. See Table 1 on page 368 for atomic weights. The atomic weight of silver is 107.88; of nitrogen, 14.01; and of oxygen, 16; hence, the molecular weight of silver-nitrate, the chemical formula of which is $AgNO_3$ equals 107.88 + 14.01 + (3 × 16) = 169.89.

Mole or Mol.—This term is used as a designation of quantity in electro-chemistry to indicate the number of grams of a substance equal to its molecular weight. For example, one mol of silver-nitrate equals 169.89 grams, the molecular weight of silver-nitrate being 169.89.

Air.—Air is a mechanical mixture composed of 78 percent, by volume, of nitrogen, 21 percent of oxygen, and 1 percent of argon. The weight of pure air at 32 °F (0 °C), at an atmospheric pressure of 29.92 inches of mercury (760 mm mercury or 760 torr) or 14.70 pounds per square inch, is 0.08073 pound per cubic foot. The volume of a pound of air at the same temperature and pressure is 12.387 cubic feet. The weight of air, in pounds per cubic foot, at any other temperature or pressure may be determined by first multiplying the barometer reading (atmospheric pressure in inches of mercury) by 1.325 and then dividing the product by the absolute temperature in degrees F. The absolute zero from which all temperatures must be derived in dealing with the weight and volume of gases, is assumed to be minus 459.67 °F (273.15 °C). Hence, to obtain the absolute temperature, add to the temperature observed on a regular Fahrenheit thermometer the value 459.67.

Alligation.—Alligation or "the rule of mixtures" are names applied to several rules of arithmetical processes for determining the relation between proportions and prices of the ingredients of a mixture and the cost of the mixture per unit of weight or volume. For example, if an alloy is composed of several metals varying in price, the price per pound of the alloy can be found as in the following example: An alloy is composed of 50 pounds of copper at $1.70 a pound, 10 pounds of tin at $4.05 a pound, 20 pounds of zinc at $0.99 a pound, and 5 pounds of lead at $1.10 cents a pound. What is the cost of the alloy per pound, no account being taken of the cost of mixing it? Multiply the number of pounds of each of the ingredients by its price per pound, add these products together, and divide the sum by the total weight of all the ingredients. The quotient is the price per pound of the alloy.

Example: The foregoing example would be worked out numerically as follows:
Total cost of materials: 50 × 1.70 +10 × 4.05 + 20 × 0.99 + 5 × 1.10 = $150.80
Total weight of metal in alloy: 50 + 10 + 20 + 5 = 85 lbs.
Price per pound of alloy = 150.80 ÷ 85 = $1.77, approximately.

Earth or Soil Weight.—Loose earth has a weight of approximately 75 lb/ft^3 (1200 kg/m^3) and rammed earth, 100 lb/ft^3 (1600 kg/m^3).

Composition of Earth Crust: The solid crust of the earth, according to an estimate, is composed approximately of the following elements: oxygen 44 to 48.7 percent; silicon 22.8 to 36.2 percent; aluminum 6.1 to 9.9 percent; iron 2.4 to 9.9 percent; calcium 0.9 to 6.6 percent; magnesium 0.1 to 2.7 percent; sodium 2.4 to 2.5 percent; potassium 1.7 to 3.1 percent.

Loads on Soils and Rocks: The bearing capacities of soils and rocks is useful in structural engineering and also of value under certain conditions in connection with the installation of very heavy machinery requiring foundations. The ultimate resistance of various soils and rocks will be given in tons per square foot: natural earth that is solid and dry, 4 to 6 tons; thick beds of absolutely dry clay, 4 tons; thick beds of moderately dry clay, 2 tons; soft clay, 1 ton; gravel that is dry, coarse, and well packed, 6 to 8 tons; soft, friable rock and shales, 5 to 10 tons; sand that is compact, dry, and well cemented, 4 tons; natural sand in a clean dry condition, 2 to 4 tons; compact bedrock, northern red sandstone, 20 tons; compact bedrock, northern sound limestone, 25 tons; compact bedrock granite, 30 tons.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

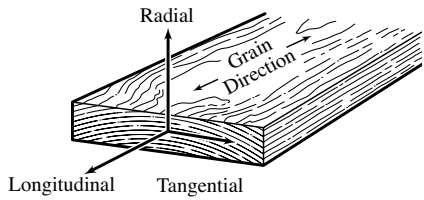
PROPERTIES OF WOOD, CERAMICS, PLASTICS, METALS

Properties of Wood

Mechanical Properties of Wood.—Wood is composed of cellulose, lignin, ash-forming minerals, and extractives formed into a cellular structure. (Extractives are substances that can be removed from wood by extraction with such solvents as water, alcohol, acetone, benzene, and ether.) Variations in the characteristics and volumes of the four components and differences in the cellular structure result in some woods being heavy and some light, some stiff and some flexible, and some hard and some soft. For a single species, the properties are relatively constant within limits; therefore, selection of wood by species alone may sometimes be adequate. However, to use wood most effectively in engineering applications, the effects of physical properties or specific characteristics must be considered.

The mechanical properties listed in the accompanying Table 1 were obtained from tests on small pieces of wood termed "clear" and "straight grained" because they did not contain such characteristics as knots, cross grain, checks, and splits. However, these test pieces did contain such characteristics as growth rings that occur in consistent patterns within the piece. Since wood products may contain knots, cross grain, etc., these characteristics must be taken into account when assessing actual properties or when estimating actual performance. In addition, the methods of data collection and analysis have changed over the years during which the data in Table 1 have been collected; therefore, the appropriateness of the data should be reviewed when used for critical applications such as stress grades of lumber.

Wood is an orthotropic material; that is, its mechanical properties are unique and independent in three mutually perpendicular directions—longitudinal, radial, and tangential. These directions are illustrated in the following figure.



Modulus of Rupture: The modulus of rupture in bending reflects the maximum load-carrying capacity of a member and is proportional to the maximum moment borne by the member. The modulus is an accepted criterion of strength, although it is not a true stress because the formula used to calculate it is valid only to the proportional limit.

Work to Maximum Load in Bending: The work to maximum load in bending represents the ability to absorb shock with some permanent deformation and more or less injury to a specimen; it is a measure of the combined strength and toughness of the wood under bending stress.

Maximum Crushing Strength: The maximum crushing strength is the maximum stress sustained by a compression parallel-to-grain specimen having a ratio of length to least diameter of less than 11.

Compression Perpendicular to Grain: Strength in compression perpendicular to grain is reported as the stress at the proportional limit because there is no clearly defined ultimate stress for this property.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shear Strength Parallel to Grain: Shear strength is a measure of the ability to resist internal slipping of one part upon another along the grain. The values listed in the table are averages of the radial and tangential shears.

Tensile Strength Perpendicular to Grain: The tensile strength perpendicular to the grain is a measure of the resistance of wood to forces acting across the grain that tend to split the material. Averages of radial and tangential measurements are listed.

Table 1. Mechanical Properties of Commercially Important US Grown Woods

Use the first number in each column for GREEN wood; use the second number for DRY wood.	Static Bending				Maximum Crushing Strength (10^3 psi)		Compression Strength Perpendicular to Grain (psi)		Shear Strength Parallel to Grain (psi)		Tensile Strength Perp. to Grain (psi)	
	Modulus of Rupture (10^3 psi)		Work to Max Load (in-lb/in^3)									
Basswood, American	5.0	8.7	5.3	7.2	2.22	4.73	170	370	600	990	280	350
Cedar, N. white	4.2	6.5	5.7	4.8	1.90	3.96	230	310	620	850	240	240
Cedar, W. red	5.2	7.5	5.0	5.8	2.77	4.56	240	460	770	990	230	220
Douglas Fir, coast[a]	7.7	12.4	7.6	9.9	3.78	7.23	380	800	900	1,130	300	340
Douglas Fir, interior W.	7.7	12.6	7.2	10.6	3.87	7.43	420	760	940	1,290	290	350
Douglas Fir, interior N.	7.4	13.1	8.1	10.5	3.47	6.90	360	770	950	1,400	340	390
Douglas Fir, interior S.	6.8	11.9	8.0	9.0	3.11	6.23	340	740	950	1,510	250	330
Fir, balsam	5.5	9.2	4.7	5.1	2.63	5.28	190	404	662	944	180	180
Hemlock, Eastern	6.4	8.9	6.7	6.8	3.08	5.41	360	650	850	1,060	230	…
Hemlock, Mountain	6.3	11.5	11.0	10.4	2.88	6.44	370	860	930	1,540	330	…
Hemlock, Western	6.6	11.3	6.9	8.3	3.36	7.20	280	550	860	1,290	290	340
Pine, E. white	4.9	9.9	5.2	8.3	2.44	5.66	220	580	680	1,170	250	420
Pine, Virginia	7.3	13.0	10.9	13.7	3.42	6.71	390	910	890	1,350	400	380
Pine, W. white	4.7	9.7	5.0	8.8	2.43	5.04	190	470	680	1,040	260	…
Redwood, old-growth	7.5	10.0	7.4	6.9	4.20	6.15	420	700	800	940	260	240
Redwood, young-growth	5.9	7.9	5.7	5.2	3.11	5.22	270	520	890	1,110	300	250
Spruce, Engelmann	4.7	9.3	5.1	6.4	2.18	4.48	200	410	640	1,200	240	350
Spruce, red	6.0	10.8	6.9	8.4	2.72	5.54	260	550	750	1,290	220	350
Spruce, white	5.0	9.4	6.0	7.7	2.35	5.18	210	430	640	970	220	360

[a] Coast: grows west of the summit of the Cascade Mountains in OR and WA. Interior west: grows in CA and all counties in OR and WA east of but adjacent to the Cascade summit. Interior north: grows in remainder of OR and WA and ID, MT, and WY. Interior south: grows in UT, CO, AZ, and NM.

Results of tests on small, clear, straight-grained specimens. Data for dry specimens are from tests of seasoned material adjusted to a moisture content of 12%.

Source: US Department of Agriculture: *Wood Handbook*.

Weight of Wood.—The weight of seasoned wood per cord is approximately as follows, assuming about 70 cubic feet of *solid wood* per cord: beech, 3300 pounds; chestnut, 2600 pounds; elm, 2900 pounds; maple, 3100 pounds; poplar, 2200 pounds; white pine, 2200 pounds; red oak, 3300 pounds; white oak, 3500 pounds. For additional weights of green and dry woods, see Table 2.

Weight per Foot of Wood, Board Measure.—The following is the weight in pounds of various kinds of woods, commercially known as dry timber, per foot board measure: white oak, 4.16; white pine, 1.98; Douglas fir, 2.65; short-leaf yellow pine, 2.65; red pine, 2.60; hemlock, 2.08; spruce, 2.08; cypress, 2.39; cedar, 1.93; chestnut, 3.43; Georgia yellow pine, 3.17; California spruce, 2.08. For other woods, divide the weight/ft^3 from Table 2 by 12 to obtain the approximate weight per board foot.

Effect of Pressure Treatment on Mechanical Properties of Wood.—The strength of wood preserved with creosote, coal-tar, creosote-coal-tar mixtures, creosote-petroleum mixtures, or pentachlorophenol dissolved in petroleum oil is not reduced. However, waterborne salt preservatives contain chemicals, such as copper, arsenic, chromium, and ammonia, which have the potential of affecting mechanical properties

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of treated wood and causing mechanical fasteners to corrode. Preservative salt-retention levels required for marine protection may reduce bending strength by 10 percent or more.

Density of Wood.—The following formula can be used to find the density of wood in lb/ft^3 as a function of its moisture content.

$$\rho = 62.4\left(\frac{G}{1 + G \times 0.009 \times M}\right)\left(1 + \frac{M}{100}\right)$$

where ρ is the density, G is the specific gravity of wood, and M is the moisture content expressed in percent.

Table 2. Weights of American Woods, in Pounds per Cubic Foot

Species	Green	Airdry	Species	Green	Airdry	Species	Green	Airdry
Alder, red	46	28	Douglas fir, Rocky Mt. region	35	30	Oak, red	64	44
Ash, black	52	34	Elm, American	54	35	Oak, white	63	47
Ash, commercial white	48	41	Elm, rock	53	44	Pine, lodgepole	39	29
Ash, Oregon	46	38	Elm, slippery	56	37	Pine, northern white	36	25
Aspen	43	26	Fir, balsam	45	25	Pine, Norway	42	34
Basswood	42	26	Fir, commercial white	46	27	Pine, ponderosa	45	28
Beech	54	45	Gum, black	45	35	Pines, southern yellow:		
Birch	57	44	Gum, red	50	34	Pine, loblolly	53	36
Birch, paper	50	38	Hemlock, eastern	50	28	Pine, longleaf	55	41
Cedar, Alaska	36	31	Hemlock, western	41	29	Pine, shortleaf	52	36
Cedar, eastern red	37	33	Hickory, pecan	62	45	Pine, sugar	52	25
Cedar, northern white	28	22	Hickory, true	63	51	Pine, western white	35	27
Cedar, southern white	26	23	Honeylocust	61	…	Poplar, yellow	38	28
Cedar, western red	27	23	Larch, western	48	36	Redwood	50	28
Cherry, black	45	35	Locust, black	58	48	Spruce, eastern	34	28
Chestnut	55	30	Maple, bigleaf	47	34	Spruce, Engelmann	39	23
Cottonwood, eastern	49	28	Maple, black	54	40	Spruce, Sitka	33	28
Cottonwood, northern black	46	24	Maple, red	50	38	Sycamore	52	34
Cypress, southern	51	32	Maple, silver	45	33	Tamarack	47	37
Douglas fir, coast region	38	34	Maple, sugar	56	44	Walnut, black	58	38

Source: United States Department of Agriculture

Machinability of Wood.—The ease of working wood with hand tools generally varies directly with the specific gravity of the wood; the lower the specific gravity, the easier the wood is to cut with a sharp tool. A rough idea of the specific gravity of various woods can be obtained from the preceding table by dividing the weight of wood in lb/ft^3 by 62.355.

A wood species that is easy to cut does not necessarily develop a smooth surface when it is machined. Three major factors, other than specific gravity, influence the smoothness of the surface obtained by machining: interlocked and variable grain, hard deposits in the grain, and reaction wood. Interlocked and variable grain is a characteristic of many tropical and some domestic species; this type of grain structure causes difficulty in planing quarter sawn boards unless careful attention is paid to feed rates, cutting angles, and sharpness of the knives. Hard deposits of calcium carbonate, silica, and other minerals in the grain tend to dull cutting edges quickly, especially in wood that has been dried to the usual in service moisture content. Reaction wood results from growth under some physical stress, such as occurs in leaning trunks and crooked branches. Generally, reaction wood occurs as tension wood in hardwoods and as compression wood in softwoods. Tension wood is particularly troublesome, often resulting in fibrous and fuzzy surfaces, especially in woods of lower density. Reaction wood may also be responsible for pinching saw blades, resulting in burning and dulling of teeth.

The Table 3 rates the suitability of various domestic hardwoods for machining. The data for each species represent the percentage of pieces machined that successfully met

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the listed quality requirement for the processes. For example, 62 percent of the black walnut pieces planed came out perfect, but only 34 percent of the pieces run on the shaper achieved good to excellent results.

Table 3. Machinability and Related Properties of Various Domestic Hardwoods

	Planing	Shaping	Turning	Boring	Mortising	Sanding
	Quality Required					
Type of Wood	Perfect	Good to Excellent	Fair to Excellent	Good to Excellent	Fair to Excellent	Good to Excellent
Alder, red	61	20	88	64	52	…
Ash	75	55	79	94	58	75
Aspen	26	7	65	78	60	…
Basswood	64	10	68	76	51	17
Beech	83	24	90	99	92	49
Birch	63	57	80	97	97	34
Birch, paper	47	22	…	…	…	…
Cherry, black	80	80	88	100	100	…
Chestnut	74	28	87	91	70	64
Cottonwood	21	3	70	70	52	19
Elm, soft	33	13	65	94	75	66
Hackberry	74	10	77	99	72	…
Hickory	76	20	84	100	98	80
Magnolia	65	27	79	71	32	37
Maple, bigleaf	52	56	8	100	80	…
Maple, hard	54	72	82	99	95	38
Maple, soft	41	25	76	80	34	37
Oak, red	91	28	84	99	95	81
Oak, white	87	35	85	95	99	83
Pecan	88	40	89	100	98	…
Sweetgum	51	28	86	92	53	23
Sycamore	22	12	85	98	96	21
Tanoak	80	39	81	100	100	…
Tupelo, black	48	32	75	82	24	21
Tupelo, water	55	52	79	62	33	34
Walnut, black	62	34	91	100	98	…
Willow	52	5	58	71	24	24
Yellow-poplar	70	13	81	87	63	19

The data above represent the percentage of pieces attempted that meet the quality requirement listed.

Nominal and Minimum Sizes of Sawn Lumber

Type of Lumber	Thickness (inches)			Face Widths (inches)		
	Nominal, T_n	Dry	Green	Nominal, W_n	Dry	Green
Boards	1	¾	$^{25}/_{32}$	2 to 4	$W_n - ½$	$W_n - 7/16$
	1¼	1	1$^{1}/_{32}$	5 to 7	$W_n - ½$	$W_n - ⅜$
	1½	1¼	1$^{9}/_{32}$	8 to 16	$W_n - ¾$	$W_n - ½$
Dimension Lumber	2	1½	1$^{9}/_{16}$	2 to 4	$W_n - ½$	$W_n - 7/16$
	2½	2	2$^{1}/_{16}$	5 to 6	$W_n - ½$	$W_n - ⅜$
	3	2½	2$^{9}/_{16}$	8 to 16	$W_n - ¾$	$W_n - ½$
	3½	3	3$^{1}/_{16}$	…	…	…
	4	3½	3$^{9}/_{16}$	…	…	…
	4½	4	4$^{1}/_{16}$	…	…	…
Timbers	5 and up	…	$T_n - ½$	5 and up	…	$W_n - ½$

Source: National Forest Products Association: *Design Values for Wood Construction*. Moisture content: dry lumber ≤ 19%; green lumber > 19%. Dimension lumber refers to lumber 2 to 4 inches thick (nominal) and 2 inches or greater in width. Timbers refers to lumber of approximately square cross section, 5 × 5 inches or larger, and a width no more than 2 inches greater than the thickness.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tabulated Properties of Ceramics, Plastics, and Metals

Typical Properties of Ceramics Materials

Material		Density[a] lb/in³	Density[a] g/cm3	Dielectric Strength (V/mil)	Coeff. of Expansion[b] 10^{-6} in/in-°F	Coeff. of Expansion[b] 10^{-6} m/m-°C	Flexural Strength (10^3 psi)	Mohs's Hardness[c]	Operating Temp. (°F)	Tensile Strength 10^3 psi	Tensile Strength MPa	Compressive Strength (10^3 psi)	Thermal Conductivity[d] (Btu-ft/hr-ft²-°F)	Thermal Conductivity[d] W/(m-k)
Machinable Glass Ceramic		0.09	2.49	1000	4.1–7.0	7.38–12.6		48 RA	1472	…	…	50	0.85	1.47
		0.11	3.04	400	6	10.8	15	5.5	700	…	…	40	0.24	0.42
		0.10	2.77	380	5.2	9.4	14	5.0	1100	…	…	32	0.34	0.59
Glass-Mica	Machining Grades	0.09–0.10	2.49–2.77	400	10.5–11.2	18.9–20.2	12.5–13	90 RH	750	6	41	40–45	0.24–0.29	0.41–0.50
		0.10	2.77	380	9.4	16.9	11	90 RH	1100	5	34	32	0.34	0.59
	Molding Grades	0.13–0.17	3.60–4.70	300–325	11–11.5	19.8–20.7	9–10	90 RH	700–750	6–6.5	41–45	33–35	0.29–0.31	0.50–0.54
		0.14	3.88	350	10.3	18.5	9	90 RH	1300	6	41	30	0.3	0.52
Aluminum Silicate		0.10	2.77	80	2.5	4.5	4.5	1–2	1000	…	…	12	0.92	1.59
		0.08	2.21	100	2.9	5.2	10	6.0	2100	…	…	25	0.75	1.30
Alumina Silicate		0.08	2.21	70	…	…	…	…	2370	…	…	…	0.38	0.66
Silica Foam		0.03	0.83	80	0.3	0.5	0.4	NA	2000	…	…	1.4	0.10	0.17
TiO_2 (Titania)		0.14	3.88	100	4.61	8.3	20	8	1800	7.5	52	100	…	…
Lava (Grade A)		0.08	2.21	80	1.83	3.3	9	6	2000	2.5	17	40	0.92	1.59
Zirconium Phosphate		0.11	3.04	NA	0.5	0.9	7.5	NA	2800	…	…	30	0.4 (approx.)	0.69
ZrO_2		0.21	5.81	…	6.1	11.0	102	1300 HV	…	…	…	261	1.69	2.92
$ZrO_2 \cdot SiO_2$ (Zircon)		0.11	3.04	220	1.94	3.5	16	7.5	1825	10	69	90	…	…
$2MgO \cdot SiO_2$ (Forsterite)		0.11	3.04	240	5.56	10.0	20	7.5	1825	10	69	85	4.58	7.93
$MgO \cdot SiO_2$ (Steatite)		0.09–0.10	2.49–2.77	210–240	3.83–5.44	6.89–9.79	18–21	7.5	1825	8.5–10	59–69	80–90	3.17–3.42	5.49–5.92
$2MgO \cdot 2Al_2O_3 \cdot 5SiO_2$ (Cordierite)		0.06	1.66	60	0.33	0.6	3.4	6.5	2000	2.5	17	18.5	1.00	1.73
		0.08	2.21	100–172	1.22–1.28	2.20–2.30	8–12	7–7.5	2000	3.5–3.7	24–25	30–40	1.00	1.73
		0.09	2.49	200	1.33	2.4	15	8	2000	4	28	50	1.83	3.17
Al_2O_3 (Alumina)	94%	0.13	3.60	210	3.33	6.0	44	9	2700	20	138	315	16.00	27.69
	96%	0.13–0.14	3.60–3.88	210	3.5–3.7	6.3–6.6	48–60	9	2600–2800	25	172	375	20.3–20.7	35.13–35.8
	99.5%	0.14	3.88	200	3.72	6.7	70	9	2700	28	193	380	21.25	36.78
	99.9%	0.14	3.88	…	3.75	6.8	72	9	2900	…	…	400	…	…

[a] Obtain specific gravity by dividing density in lb/in³ by 0.0361; for density in lb/ft³, multiply lb/in³ by 1728; for kg/m³, multiply density in lb/in³ by 27,679.9.
[b] To convert coefficient of expansion to 10^{-6} in/in-°C, multiply table value by 1.8.
[c] Mohs's Hardness scale is used unless otherwise indicated as follows: RA and RH for Rockwell A and H scales, respectively; HV for Vickers hardness.
[d] To convert conductivity from Btu-ft/hr-ft²-°F to cal-cm/sec-cm²-°C, divide by 241.9.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Typical Properties of Plastics Materials

Material	Density[a] lb/in³	Density[a] g/cm³	Specific Gravity	Dielectric Strength V/mil	Dielectric Strength MV/m	Coeff. of Expansion[b] 10⁻⁶ in/in-°F	Coeff. of Expansion[b] 10⁻⁶ m/m-°C	Tensile Modulus 10³ psi	Tensile Modulus MPa	Izod Impact ft-lb/in of notch	Izod Impact J/m of notch	Flexural Modulus ksi at 73°F	Flexural Modulus MPa at 23°C	% Elongation	Hardness[c]	Max. Operating Temp. °F	Max. Operating Temp. °C
ABS, Extrusion Grade	0.038	1.052	1.05	…	…	53.0	95.4	275	1896	7	373.65	300	2068	…	105 Rr	200	93
ABS, High Impact	0.037	1.024	1.03	…	…	…	…	200	1379	…	…	330	2275	…	105 Rr	…	…
Acetal, 20% Glass	0.056	1.550	1.55	…	…	…	…	1000	6895	0.9	48.04	715	4930	…	94 Rm	…	…
Acetal, Copolymer	0.051	1.412	1.41	380	14.96	47.0	84.6	437	3013	2	106.76	400	2758	13	94 Rm	…	…
Acetyl, Homopolymer	0.051	1.412	1.41	…	…	58.0	104.4	310	2137	…	…	320	2206	…	94 Rm	200	93
Acrylic	0.043	1.190	1.19	500	19.69	35.0	63.0	400	2758	0.5	26.69	400	2758	2.7	94 Rm	180	82
Azdel	0.043	1.190	1.19	500	19.69	15.0	27.0	750	5171	14	747.30	800	5516	2.1	94 Rm	311	155
CPVC	0.056	1.550	1.55	…	…	34.0	61.2	400	2758	3	160.14	400	2758	4	…	212	100
Fiberglass Sheet	0.067	1.855	1.87	…	…	11.1	20.0	…	…	8	427.03	1	7	…	101 Rm	260	127
Nylon 6, 30% Glass	0.050	1.384	1.39	…	…	…	…	1350	9308	2.8	149.46	1400	9653	…	119 Rr	…	…
Nylon 6, Cast	0.042	1.163	1.16	295	11.61	45.0	81.0	380	2620	1.4	74.73	450	3103	20	100 Rr	210	99
Nylon 6/6, Cast	0.047	1.301	1.30	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Nylon 6/6, Extruded	0.041	1.135	1.14	600	23.62	45.0	81.0	390	2689	1	53.38	…	…	240	118 Rr	230	110
Nylon 60L, Cast	0.042	1.163	1.16	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.2	117.43	…	…	…	…	…	…
PET, unfilled	0.049	1.356	1.36	1300	51.18	39.0	70.2	500	3447	0.5	26.69	400	2758	70	…	230	110
PTFE (Teflon)	0.079	2.187	2.19	480	18.90	50.0	90.0	225	1551	3	160.14	80	552	350	…	…	…
PVC	0.050	1.384	1.39	500	19.69	29.5	53.1	550	3792	0.8	42.70	400	2758	31–40	110 Rr	170	77
PVDF	0.064	1.772	1.77	260	10.24	60.0	108.0	320	2206	3	160.14	200	1379	80	100 Rr	180	82
Phenolics	0.050	1.384	1.38	…	…	11.1	20.0	…	…	2.4	128.11	1000	6895	…	100 Rm	248	120
Polycarbonate	0.043	1.190	1.19	380	14.96	37.5	67.5	345	2379	14	747.30	340	2344	110	74 Rm	290	143
Polyetherimide	0.046	1.273	1.27	480	18.90	…	…	430	2965	1.1	58.72	480	3309	…	…	…	…
Polyethylene, HD	0.035	0.969	0.97	475	18.70	20.0	36.0	156	1076	6	320.27	160	1103	900	…	180	82
Polyethylene, UHMW	0.034	0.941	0.94	710	27.95	19.0	34.2	110	758	No Break	…	130	896	450	64 Rr	176	80
Polymethylpentene	0.030	0.830	0.83	…	…	…	…	220	1517	2.5	133.45	…	…	…	…	…	…
Polymid, unfilled	0.051	1.412	1.41	560	22.05	…	…	300	2068	1.5	80.07	…	…	…	…	…	…
Polyphenylene Sulfide	0.047	1.301	1.30	380	14.96	…	…	…	…	0.5	26.69	550	3792	…	…	…	…
Polypropylene	0.033	0.913	0.91	600	23.62	96.0	172.8	155	1069	0.75	40.03	200	1379	120	92 Rr	150	66
Polysulfone	0.045	1.246	1.25	425	16.73	31.0	55.8	360	2482	1.2	64.05	390	2689	50	120 Rr	325	163
Polyurethane	0.038	1.052	1.05	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	465–520	…	…	…

[a] To obtain specific gravity, divide density in lb/in³ by 0.0361; for density in lb/ft³, multiply lb/in³ by 1728; for kg/m³, multiply density in lb/in³ by 27,679.9.
[b] To convert coefficient of expansion to 10⁻⁶ in/in-°C, multiply table value by 1.8.
[c] Hardness value scales are: RM and RR for Rockwell M and R scales, respectively.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Mechanical Properties of Various Investment Casting Alloys

Alloy Designation	Material Condition	Tensile Strength (10^3 psi)	0.2% Yield Strength[a] (10^3 psi)	% Elongation	Hardness[c]
Aluminum					
356	As Cast	32–40	22–30	3–7	…
A356	As Cast	38–40	28–36	3–10	…
A357	As Cast	33–50	27–40	3–9	…
355, C355	As Cast	35–50	28–39	1–8	…
D712 (40E)	As Cast	34–40	25–32	4–8	…
A354	As Cast	47–55	36–45	2–5	…
RR-350	As Cast	32–45	24–38	1.5–5	…
Precedent 71	As Cast	35–55	25–45	2–5	…
KO-1	As Cast	56–60	48–55	3–5	…
Copper-Base Alloys[a]					
Al Bronze C (954)	As Cast	75–85	30–40	10–20	80–85 RB
	Heat Treated	90–105	45–55	6–10	91–96 RB
Al Bronze D (955)	As Cast	90–100	40–50	6–10	91–96 RB
	Heat Treated	110–120	60–70	5–8	93–98 RB
Manganese Bronze, A	…	65–75	25–40	16–24	60–65 RB
Manganese Bronze, C	…	110–120	60–70	8–16	95–100 RB
Silicon Bronze	…	45	18	20	…
Tin Bronze	…	40–50	18–30	20–35	40–50 RB
Leaded Yellow Brass (854)	…	30–50	11–20	15–25	…
Red Brass	…	30–40	14–25	20–30	30–35 RB
Silicon Brass	…	70	32	24	…
Pure Copper	…	20–30	…	4–50	35–42 RB
Beryllium Cu 10C (820)	As Cast	45–50	40–45	15–20	50–55 RB
	Hardened	90–100	90–130	3–8	90–95 RB
Beryllium Cu 165C (824)	…	70–155	40–140	1–15	60 RB–38 RC
Beryllium Cu 20C (825)	As Cast	70–80	50–55	18–23	75–80 RB
	Hardened	110–160	…	1–4	25–44 RC
Beryllium Cu 275C (828)	As Cast	80–90	…	15–20	80–85 RB
Chrome Copper	…	33–50	20–40	20–30	70–78 RB
Carbon and Low-Alloy Steels and Iron					
IC 1010	Annealed	50–60	30–35	30–35	50–55 RB
IC 1020	Annealed	60–70	40–45	25–40	80 RB
IC 1030	Annealed	65–75	45–50	20–30	75 RB
	Hardened	85–150	60–150	0–15	20–50 RC
IC 1035	Annealed	70–80	45–55	20–30	80 RB
	Hardened	90–150	85–150	0–15	25–52 RC
IC 1045	Annealed	80–90	50–60	20–25	100 RB
	Hardened	100–180	90–180	0–10	25–57 RC
IC 1050	Annealed	90–110	50–65	20–25	100 RB
	Hardened	125–180	100–180	0–10	30–60 RC
IC 1060	Annealed	100–120	55–70	5–10	25 RC
	Hardened	120–200	100–180	0–3	30–60 RC
IC 1090	Annealed	110–150	70–80	12–20	30 RC
	Hardened	130–180	130–180	0–3	37–50 RC
IC 2345	Hardened	130–200	110–180	5–10	30–58 RC
IC 4130	Hardened	130–170	100–130	5–20	23–49 RC
IC 4140	Hardened	130–200	100–155	5–20	29–57 RC
IC 4150	Hardened	140–200	120–180	5–10	25–58 RC
IC 4330	Hardened	130–190	100–175	5–20	25–48 RC
IC 4340	Hardened	130–200	100–180	5–20	20–55 RC
IC 4620	Hardened	110–150	90–130	10–20	20–32 RC
IC 6150, IC 8740	Hardened	140–200	120–180	5–10	30–60 RC
IC 8620	Hardened	100–130	80–110	10–20	20–45 RC
IC 8630	Hardened	120–170	100–130	7–20	25–50 RC
IC 8640	Hardened	130–200	100–180	5–20	30–60 RC

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Mechanical Properties of Various Investment Casting Alloys *(Continued)*

Alloy Designation	Material Condition	Tensile Strength (10^3 psi)	0.2% Yield Strength[a] (10^3 psi)	% Elongation	Hardness[c]
Carbon and Low-Alloy Steels and Iron *(Continued)*					
IC 8665	Hardened	170–220	140–200	0–10	…
IC 8730	Hardened	120–170	110–150	7–20	…
IC 52100	Hardened	180–230	140–180	1–7	30–65 RC
IC 1722AS	Hardened	130–170	100–140	6–12	25–48 RC
1.2% Si Iron	…	50–60	37–43	30–35	55 RB
Ductile Iron, Ferritic	Annealed	60–80	40–50	18–24	143–200 BHN
Ductile Iron, Pearlitic	Normalized	100–120	70–80	3–10	243–303 BHN
Hardenable Stainless Steel					
CA-15	Hardened	95–200	75–160	5–12	94 RB–45 RC
IC 416	Hardened	95–200	75–160	3–8	94 RB–45 RC
CA-40	Hardened	200–225	130–210	0–5	30–52 RC
IC 431	Hardened	110–160	75–105	5–20	20–40 RC
IC 17-4	Hardened	150–190	140–160	6–20	34–44 RC
Am-355	Hardened	200–220	150–165	6–12	…
IC 15-5	Hardened	135–170	110–145	5–15	26–38 RC
CD-4M Cu	Annealed	100–115	75–85	20–30	94–100 RB
	Hardened	135–145	100–120	10–25	28–32 RC
Austenitic Stainless Steels					
CF-3, CF-3M, CF-8, CF-8M, IC 316F	Annealed	70–85	40–50	35–50	90 RB (max)
CF-8C	Annealed	70–85	32–36	30–40	90 RB (max)
CF-16F	Annealed	65–75	30–35	35–45	90 RB (max)
CF-20	Annealed	65–75	30–45	35–60	90 RB (max)
CH-20	Annealed	70–80	30–40	30–45	90 RB (max)
CN-7M	Annealed	65–75	25–35	35–45	90 RB (max)
IC 321, CK-20	Annealed	65–75	30–40	35–45	90 RB (max)
Nickel-Base Alloys					
Alloy B	Annealed	75–85	50–60	8–12	90–100 RB
Alloy C	As Cast	80–95	45–55	8–12	90–100 RB
	Annealed	75–95	45–55	8–12	90 RB–25 RC
Alloy X[b]	AC to 24°C	63–70	41–45	10–15	85–96 RB
	AC to 816°C	35–45	…	12–20	…
Invar (Fe-Ni alloy)	As Cast	50–60	25–30	30–40	50–60 RB
In 600 (Inconel)	As Cast	65–75	35–40	10–20	80–90 RB
In 625 (Inconel)	Annealed	80–100	40–55	15–30	10–20 RC
Monel 410	As Cast	65–75	32–38	25–35	65–75 RB
S Monel	Annealed	100–110	55–65	5–10	20–28 RC
	Hardened	120–140	85–100	0	32–38 RC
RH Monel	As Cast	100–110	60–80	10–20	20–30 RC
Monel E	As Cast	65–80	33–40	25–35	67–78 RB
M-35 Monel	As Cast	65–80	25–35	25–40	65–85 RB
Cobalt-Base Alloys					
Cobalt 21	As Cast	95–130	65–95	8–20	24–32 RC
Cobalt 25	As Cast	90–120	60–75	15–25	20–25 RC
Cobalt 31	As Cast	105–130	75–90	6–10	20–30 RC
Cobalt 36	As Cast	90–105	60–70	15–20	30–36 RC
F75	As Cast	95–110	70–80	8–15	25–34 RC
N-155	Sol. Anneal	90–100	50–60	15–30	90–100 RB

[a] For copper alloys, yield strength is determined by 0.5% extension under load or 0.2% offset method. A number in parentheses following a copper alloy indicates the UNS designation of that alloy (for example, Al Bronze C (954) identifies the alloy as UNS C95400).

[b] AC = air cooled to temperature indicated.

[c] Hardness value scales are: RB and RC for Rockwell B and C scales, respectively, and BHN for Brinell Hardness Numbers.

Source: Investment Casting Institute. Mechanical properties are average values of separately cast test bars and are for reference only. For items marked … data are not available. Alloys identified by IC followed by an SAE designation number (IC 1010 steel, for example) are generally similar to the SAE material although properties and chemical composition may be different.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Typical Properties of Compressed and Sintered Powdered Metal Alloys

Alloy Number[a] and Nominal Composition (%)		Density (g/cc)	Hardness[b]	Strength (10^3 psi)			% Elongation
				Transverse Rupture	Ultimate Tensile	Yield	
Copper Base							
…	100Cu	7.7–7.9	81–82 RH	54–68	24–34	…	10–26
CZP-3002	70Cu, 1.5Pb, Bal. Zn	8	75 RH	…	33.9	…	24
CNZ-1818	63Cu, 17.5Ni, Bal. Zn	7.9	90 RH	73	34	20	11
CTG-1004	10Sn, 4.4C, Bal. Cu	7	67 RH	20	9.4	6.5	6
CTG-1001	10Sn, 1C, Bal. Cu	6.5	45 RH	25.8	15.1	9.6	9.7
Iron Base (Balance of composition, Fe)							
FC-2015	23.5Cu, 1.5C	6.5	65 RB	80	52.4	48.5	0
FC-0800	8Cu, 0.4C	6.3–6.8	39–55 RB	75–100	38–54	32–47	1 or less
FX-2008	20Cu, 1C	7.3	93 RB	164.2	72.3	57.7	2
FN-0408	4Ni, 1-2Cu, 0.75C	6.3–7	64–84 RB	70–107	37–63	30–47	1–1.6
F-0000	100Fe	6.5	26 RF	37.7	15.7	11	5.7
FN-0005	0.45C, 0.50 MnS	6.4–6.8	66–78 RF	44–61	…	…	…
F-0000	0.02C, 0.45P	6.6–7.2	35–50 RB	90–125	…	29–38	3.9–5.5
F-0008	0.6–0.9C	6.2–7	50–70 RB	61–100	35–57	30–40	<0.5 to 1
FC-0508	0.6–0.9C, 4–6Cu	5.9–6.8	60–80 RB	100–145	58–82	50–70	<0.5 to 1
FN-0405	4Ni, 0.5C	6.6–7.0	73–82 RB	90–100	47–50	38–40	<1
FN-0208	2Ni, 0.8C	6.6–7.0	50–70 RB	70–108	47–58	35–51	<1
FN-0205	2Ni, 0.5C	6.6–7.0	51–61 RB	72–93	35–45	27–31	2.0–2.5
FN-0200	2Ni, 0.25C	6.6	29 RB	57.5	25.8	19.0	1.3
FC-0208	2Cu, 0.75C	6.5–6.7	68–72 RB	95–107	56–61	51–54	up to 1
FC-2008	20Cu, 1C	6.2	45 RB	79.5	47.8	40.0	1.3
…	4Ni, 0.6C, 1.6Cu, 0.55Mo	7.0	92 RB	190.0	100.0	65.0	2.5
FL-4605	1.8Ni, 0.6C, 1.6Cu, 0.55Mo	7.0	87 RB	170.0	80.0	55.0	2.5
FL-4605	1.8Ni, 0.6C, 0.55Mo	7.0	80 RB	150.0	…	…	…
SS-316L	17Cr, 13Ni, 2.2Mo, 0.9Si	6.5	65 RB	94.0	45.0	30.0	6.0
…	17Cr, 13Ni, 2.2Mo, 0.9Si, 15-20Cu	7.3	66 RB	108.6	59.2	49.7	4.3
SS-410	13Cr, 0.8Si, 0.8Mn	6.2	15 RC	85.0	66.7	56.9	0
FL-4608	2Cu, 3.8Ni, 0.9C, 0.75Mo	6.8	24 RC	107.3	55.8	46.5	1.5
SS-303N1	18Cr, 11Ni, 1Mn	6.4	62 RB	86.0	39.0	32.0	0.5
SS-304N1	19Cr, 10Ni, 1Mn	6.4	61 RB	112.0	43.0	38.0	0.5
Tungsten Base							
90W, 6Ni, 4Cu		17.0	24 RC	…	110	80	6
90W, 7Ni, 3Cu		17.0	25 RC	…	120	88	10
92.5W, 5.25Ni, 2.25Cu		17.5	26 RC	…	114	84	7
92.5W, Bal. Ni, Fe, and Mo		17.6	30 RC	…	120	90	4
93W, Bal. Ni, Fe, and Mo		17.7	32 RC	…	125	95	4
95W, 3.5Ni, 1.5Cu		18.0	27 RC	…	110	85	7
95W, 3.5Ni, 1.5Fe		18.0	27 RC	…	120	90	7
97W, 2.1Ni, 0.9Fe		18.5	28 RC	…	123	85	5

[a]Copper- and iron-base alloy designations are Metal Powder Industries Federation (MPIF) alloy numbers.

[b]Hardness value scales are: RB, RC, RF, and RH for Rockwell B, C, F, and H scales, respectively.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Typical Elastic Properties of Materials

Material	Modulus of Elasticity		Shear Modulus		Bulk Modulus		Poisson's Ratio
	10^6 psi	GPa	10^6 psi	GPa	10^6 psi	GPa	
Aluminum, var. alloys	9.9–10.3	68–71	3.7–3.9	26–27	9.9–10.2	68–70	0.330–0.334
Aluminum, 6061-T6	10	70	3.8	26	…	…	0.35
Aluminum, 2024-T4	10.6	73	4	28	…	…	0.32
Beryllium copper	18	124	7	48	…	…	0.29
Brass, 70–30	15.9	110	6	41	15.7	108	0.331
Brass, cast	14.5	100	5.3	37	16.8	116	0.357
Bronze	14.9	103	6.5	45	…	…	0.14
Copper	15.6	108	5.8	40	17.9	123	0.355
Glass	6.7	46	2.7	19	…	…	0.24
Glass ceramic (machinable)	9.7	67	3.7	26	…	…	0.29
Inconel	31	214	11	76	…	…	0.27–0.38
Iron, cast	13.5–21.0	93–145	5.2–8.2	36–57	8.4–15.5	58–107	0.221–0.299
Iron, ductile	23.8–25.2	164–174	9.1–9.6	63–66	…	…	0.26–0.31
Iron, gray cast	14.5	100	6	41	…	…	0.211
Iron, malleable	23.6	163	9.3	64	17.2	119	0.271
Lead	5.3	37	1.9	13	…	…	0.43
Magnesium	6.5	45	2.4	17	…	…	0.35
Magnesium alloy	6.3	43	2.5	17	4.8	33	0.281
Molybdenum	48	331	17	117	…	…	0.307
Monel metal	25	172	9.5	66	22.5	155	0.315
Nickel silver	18.5	128	7	48	…	…	0.322
Nickel steel	30	207	11.5	79	…	…	0.291
Phosphor bronze	13.8	95	5.1	35	16.3	112	0.359
Stainless steel 18–8	27.6	190	10.6	73	23.6	163	0.305
Steel, cast	28.5	197	11.3	78	20.2	139	0.265
Steel, cold-rolled	29.5	203	11.5	79	23.1	159	0.287
Steel, all others	28.6–30.0	197–207	11.0–11.9	76–82	22.6–24.0	156–165	0.283–0.292
Titanium (99.0 Ti)	15–16	103–110	6.5	45	…	…	0.24
Titanium (Ti-8Al-1Mo-1V)	18	124	6.8	47	…	…	0.32
Zinc, cast alloys	10.9–12.4	75–85	…	…	…	…	0.33
Zinc, wrought alloys	6.2–14	43–97	…	…	…	…	0.33
Z-nickel	30	207	11	76	…	…	0.36

Data represent typical values, but material properties may vary widely, depending on exact composition, material condition, and processing. Symbol … indicates no data available.

Average Ultimate Strength of Common Materials other than Metals

Material	Compression		Tension		Material	Compression		Tension	
	psi	kPa	psi	kPa		psi	kPa	psi	kPa
Bricks, best hard	12,000	82737	400	2758	Concrete, Portland	1,000	6895	200	1379
Bricks, light red	1,000	6895	40	276	Concrete, Portland, 1 year old	2,000	13790	400	2758
Brickwork, common	1,000	6895	50	345	Granite	19,000	131000	700	4826
Brickwork, best	2,000	13790	300	2068	Limestone and sandstone	9,000	62053	300	2068
Cement, Portland, 1 month old	2,000	13790	400	2758	Trap rock	20,000	137895	800	5516
Cement, Portland, 1 year old	3,000	20684	500	3447	Slate	14,000	96527	500	3447
					Vulcanized fiber	39,000	268896	13,000	89632

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Minimum Tensile Strength of Spring Wire by Diameter

Wire Dia.		Wire Type													
		Music Wire		Hard-Drawn MB		Oil Temp. MB		Stainless Steel 18-8		Cr–V Alloy		Phosphor Bronze		Chrome Silicon	
inch	mm	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa
0.004	0.10	439	3027	…	…	…	…	325	2241	…	…	140	965	…	…
0.008	0.20	399	2751	…	…	…	…	325	2241	…	…	140	965	…	…
0.012	0.30	377	2599	…	…	…	…	316	2179	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.020	0.51	350	2413	283	1951	288	1986	300	2068	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.028	0.71	333	2296	271	1868	281	1937	284	1958	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.032	0.81	327	2255	265	1827	275	1896	278	1917	281	1937	…	…	300	2068
0.035	0.89	322	2220	261	1800	268	1848	274	1889	276	1903	…	…	298	2055
0.041	1.04	314	2165	255	1758	261	1800	270	1862	270	1862	135	931	298	2055
0.047	1.19	307	2117	248	1710	254	1751	262	1806	263	1813	…	…	292	2013
0.054	1.37	301	2075	243	1675	248	1710	258	1779	257	1772	…	…	292	2013
0.063	1.60	293	2020	237	1634	242	1669	251	1731	251	1731	130	896	290	1999
0.072	1.83	287	1979	232	1600	236	1627	245	1689	245	1689	…	…	288	1986
0.080	2.03	282	1944	227	1565	230	1586	240	1655	240	1655	…	…	285	1965
0.092	2.34	275	1896	220	1517	225	1551	233	1606	235	1620	…	…	280	1931
0.105	2.67	269	1855	216	1489	220	1517	227	1565	229	1579	125	862	275	1896
0.120	3.05	263	1813	210	1448	215	1482	221	1524	222	1531	…	…	275	1896
0.135	3.43	258	1779	206	1420	210	1448	213	1469	219	1510	…	…	270	1862
0.148	3.76	253	1744	203	1400	205	1413	207	1427	215	1482	…	…	268	1848
0.162	4.11	249	1717	200	1379	200	1379	200	1379	212	1462	…	…	162	1117
0.177	4.50	245	1689	195	1344	195	1344	195	1344	210	1448	…	…	260	1793
0.192	4.88	241	1662	192	1324	190	1310	189	1303	206	1420	…	…	260	1793
0.207	5.26	238	1641	190	1310	185	1276	185	1276	204	1407	…	…	260	1793
0.225	5.72	225	1551	186	1282	183	1262	180	1241	200	1379	120	827	255	1758
0.250	6.35	220	1517	182	1255	180	1241	174	1200	196	1351	…	…	250	1724
0.312	7.92	…	…	174	1200	178	1227	160	1103	189	1303	110	758	245	1689
0.375	9.53	…	…	167	1151	175	1207	…	…	187	1289	…	…	240	1655
0.437	11.10	…	…	165	1138	170	1172	…	…	186	1282	…	…	235	1620
0.500	12.70	…	…	156	1076	165	1138	…	…	185	1276	100	689	230	1586

For allowable working stresses and recommended design stresses in bending related to severity of service, refer to Fig. 1 through Fig. 10 on pages 310 through 313, and for endurance limits for compression springs made from these materials refer to Fig. 11 on page 315 in the section on spring stresses.

Effect of Temperature on Elasticity and Strength of Metals.—Most ferrous metals have a maximum strength at approximately 400°F (204°C), whereas the strength of non-ferrous alloys is a maximum at about room temperature. The table below gives general data for variation in metal strength with temperature.

The modulus of elasticity of metals decreases regularly with increasing temperatures above room temperature until at some elevated temperature it falls off rapidly and reaches zero at the melting point.

Influence of Temperature on the Strength of Metals

Material	210°F (99°C)	400°F (204°C)	570°F (299°C)	750°F (399°C)	930°F (499°C)	1100°F (593°C)	1300°F (704°C)	1475°F (802°C)
	Strength in Percent of Strength at 70°F (21°C)							
Wrought iron	104	112	116	96	76	42	25	15
Cast iron	…	100	99	92	76	42	…	…
Steel castings	109	125	121	97	57	…	…	…
Structural steel	103	132	122	86	49	28	…	…
Copper	95	85	73	59	42	…	…	…
Bronze	101	94	57	26	18	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

STANDARD STEELS

Properties, Compositions, and Applications

Steel is the generic term for a large family of iron-carbon alloys that are malleable, within some temperature range, immediately after solidification from the molten state. The principal raw materials used in steelmaking are iron ore, coal, and limestone. These materials are converted in a blast furnace into a product known as "pig iron," which contains considerable amounts of carbon, manganese, sulfur, phosphorus, and silicon. Pig iron is hard, brittle, and unsuitable for direct processing into wrought forms. Steelmaking is the process of refining pig iron as well as iron and steel scrap by removing undesirable elements from the melt and then adding desirable elements in predetermined amounts. A primary reaction in most steelmaking is the combination of carbon with oxygen to form a gas. If dissolved oxygen is not removed from the melt prior to or during pouring, the gaseous products continue to evolve during solidification. If the steel is strongly deoxidized by the addition of deoxidizing elements, no gas is evolved, and the steel is called "killed" because it lies quietly in the molds. Increasing degrees of gas evolution (decreased deoxidation) characterize steels called "semikilled," "capped," or "rimmed." The degree of deoxidation affects some of the properties of the steel. In addition to oxygen, liquid steel contains measurable amounts of dissolved hydrogen and nitrogen. For some critical steel applications, special deoxidation practices as well as vacuum treatments may be used to reduce and control dissolved gases.

By definition, steel is an iron-carbon alloy that contains less than 2 percent carbon and 1 percent manganese, which acts as a deoxidizer and facilitates hot-working. Silicon, phosphorus, and sulfur are also always present, if only in trace amounts. Other elements may be present, either as residuals that are not intentionally added but result from the raw materials or steelmaking practice, or as alloying elements added to effect changes in the properties of the steel.

Steels can be cast to shape, or the cast ingot or strand can be reheated and hot-worked by rolling, forging, extrusion, or other processes into a wrought mill shape. Wrought steels are the most widely used of engineering materials, offering a multitude of forms, finishes, strengths, and usable temperature ranges.

Standard Steel Classification.—Wrought steels may be classified into groups based on characteristics such as elemental composition and metallurgical structure; manufacturing, deoxidation, and finishing processes; product form; and so on. Chemical composition is commonly used as a basis for identifying and assigning standard designations to wrought steels. Although carbon is the principal hardening and strengthening element in steel, no single element controls the steel's characteristics. The combined effect of several elements influences microstructure, hardness, strength, response to heat treatment, formability, and corrosion resistance.

Standard steels can be divided by composition into three main groups: *plain carbon steels* (mild steels), which have no appreciable alloying element content; *low-alloy steels,* containing up to 8 percent alloying elements; and *high-alloy steels* with more than 8 percent alloys. The general term *alloy steel* also may be used for any grade to which are added any amount of alloying elements other than what is found in plain carbon steel, within specific ranges, to enhance certain attributes of steels. Thermal treatments and other processes also are used to develop specific properties.

Carbon Steels (Mild Steels): A steel qualifies as a carbon steel when its manganese content is limited to 1.65 percent (max), silicon to 0.60 percent (max), and copper to 0.60 percent (max). With the exception of deoxidizers and boron when specified, no other alloying elements are added intentionally, but they may be present as residuals. If any of these incidental elements are considered detrimental for special applications, maximum acceptable limits may be specified. Carbon steels are further divided into low-carbon (less than 0.2% carbon), medium-carbon (0.2% to 0.5%), and high-carbon (great than 0.5%) categories. In contrast to most alloy steels, carbon steels are most often used without

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

a final heat treatment; however, they may be annealed, normalized, case hardened, or quenched and tempered to enhance fabrication or mechanical properties. Carbon steels may be killed, semikilled, capped, or rimmed, and, when necessary, the method of deoxidation may be specified.

Low-Alloy Steels: Low-alloy steels contain up to 8 percent of one or more alloying elements. Various alloy compositions are designed to enhance mechanical properties, fabricating characteristics, weathering performance, hardenability, or any other attribute of the steel.

High-Alloy Steels: These steels contain more than 8 percent of alloying elements, in combinations designed to achieve enhanced performance characteristics. Types of high-alloy steels include corrosion-resistant steels, heat-resistant steels, and wear-resistant steels. Stainless steels and some tool steels are important members of the high-alloy steels category.

Stainless Steels: These high-alloy steels owe much of their corrosion resistance to relatively large amounts of chromium. Other elements also may be added to increase corrosion resistance, but their usefulness in this respect is limited. Stainless steels generally contain at least 10 percent chromium, with or without other elements; however, it has been customary in the United States to include in this classification those steels that contain as little as 4 percent chromium. Together, these steels form a family known as *stainless and heat-resisting steels*, in which some members possess very high strength and oxidation resistance. Few, however, contain more than 30 percent chromium or less than 50 percent iron.

The most common stainless steels can be divided into groups based on their metallurgical structures: *austenitic*, *ferritic*, and *martensitic*. *Precipitation-hardening* stainless steels are classified as either semi-austenitic or martensitic. *Duplex stainless steels* contain approximately equal amounts of austenite and ferrite. In each group, the standard grades are defined by their compositional ranges, within which stainless steel will exhibit certain desired attributes. Variations in composition are made to obtain specific properties. For instance, added chromium, molybdenum, and nitrogen give *super duplex* grades enhanced corrosion resistance.

The *austenitic grades* are nonmagnetic in the annealed condition, although some may become slightly magnetic after cold-working. They can be hardened only by cold-working, and not by heat treatment, and combine outstanding corrosion and heat resistance with good mechanical properties over a wide temperature range. The austenitic grades are further classified into two subgroups: the chromium-nickel types and the less frequently used chromium-manganese-low-nickel types. The basic composition in the chromium-nickel group is widely known as 18-8 (Cr-Ni) and is the general-purpose austenitic grade. This grade is the basis for over 20 modifications that can be characterized as follows: the chromium-nickel ratio has been modified to change the forming characteristics; the carbon content has been decreased to prevent intergranular corrosion; the elements niobium or titanium have been added to stabilize the structure; or molybdenum has been added or the chromium and nickel contents have been increased to improve corrosion or oxidation resistance.

The standard *ferritic grades* are always magnetic and contain chromium but no nickel. They can be hardened to some extent by cold-working, but not by heat treatment, and they combine corrosion and heat resistance with moderate mechanical properties and decorative appeal. The ferritic grades generally are restricted to a narrower range of corrosive conditions than the austenitic grades. The basic ferritic grade contains 17 percent chromium. In this series, there are free-machining modifications and grades with increased chromium content to improve scaling resistance. Also in this ferritic group is a 12 percent chromium steel (the basic composition of the martensitic group) with other elements, such as aluminum or titanium, added to prevent hardening.

The standard *martensitic grades* are magnetic and can be hardened by quenching and tempering. They contain chromium and, with two exceptions, no nickel. The basic martensitic grade normally contains 12 percent chromium. There are more than 10 standard

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

compositions in the martensitic series; some are modified to improve machinability and others have small additions of nickel or other elements to improve the mechanical properties or their response to heat treatment. Still others have greatly increased carbon content, in the tool steel range, and are hardenable to the highest levels of all the stainless steels. The martensitic grades are excellent for service in mild environments, such as the atmosphere, freshwater, steam, and weak acids, but are not resistant to severely corrosive solutions.

Numbering Systems for Metals and Alloys.—Several different numbering systems have been developed for metals and alloys by various trade associations, professional engineering societies, standards organizations, and private industries for their own use. The numerical code used to identify the metal or alloy may or may not be related to a specification, which is a statement of the technical and commercial requirements that the product must meet. Numbering systems in use include those developed by the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI), Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), American National Standards Institute (ANSI), Steel Founders Society of America, American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), American Welding Society (AWS), Aluminum Association, Copper Development Association, US Department of Defense (Military Specifications), and the General Accounting Office (Federal Specifications).

The Unified Numbering System (UNS) was developed through a joint effort of the ASTM and the SAE to provide a means of correlating the different numbering systems for metals and alloys that have a commercial standing. This system avoids the confusion caused when more than one identification number is used to specify the same material, or when the same number is assigned to two entirely different materials. It is important to understand that a UNS number is not a specification; it is an identification number for metals and alloys for which detailed specifications are provided elsewhere. UNS numbers are shown in Table 1; each number consists of a letter prefix followed by five digits. In some, the letter is suggestive of the family of metals identified by the series, such as A for aluminum and C for copper. Whenever possible, the numbers in the UNS groups contain numbering sequences taken directly from other systems to facilitate identification of the material; e.g., the corresponding UNS number for AISI 1020 steel is G10200. The UNS numbers corresponding to the commonly used AISI-SAE numbers that are used to identify plain carbon, alloy, and tool steels are given in Table 2.

Table 1. Unified Numbering System (UNS) for Metals and Alloys

UNS Series	Metal
A00001 to A99999	Aluminum and aluminum alloys
C00001 to C99999	Copper and copper alloys
D00001 to D99999	Specified mechanical property steels
E00001 to E99999	Rare earth and rare earthlike metals and alloys
F00001 to F99999	Cast irons
G00001 to G99999	AISI and SAE carbon and alloy steels (except tool steels)
H00001 to H99999	AISI and SAE H-steels
J00001 to J99999	Cast steels (except tool steels)
K00001 to K99999	Miscellaneous steels and ferrous alloys
L00001 to L99999	Low-melting metals and alloys
M00001 to M99999	Miscellaneous nonferrous metals and alloys
N00001 to N99999	Nickel and nickel alloys
P00001 to P99999	Precious metals and alloys
R00001 to R99999	Reactive and refractory metals and alloys
S00001 to S99999	Heat and corrosion resistant (stainless) steels
T00001 to T99999	Tool steels, wrought and cast
W00001 to W99999	Welding filler metals
Z00001 to Z99999	Zinc and zinc alloys

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Identifying Metals.—When it is necessary to sort materials, several rough methods may be used without elaborate chemical analysis. The most obvious of these is by using a magnet to pick out those materials that contain magnetic elements. To differentiate various levels of carbon and other elements in a steel bar, hold the bar in contact with a grinding wheel and observe the sparks. With high levels of carbon, for instance, sparks are produced that appear to split into several bright tracers. Patterns produced by several other elements, including small amounts of aluminum and titanium, for instance, can be identified with the aid of Data Sheet 13, issued by the American Society for Metals (ASM), Metals Park, OH.

Standard Steel Numbering System.—The most widely used systems for identifying wrought carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels are based on chemical composition, and are those of the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) and the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE). These systems are almost identical, but they are carefully coordinated. The standard steels so designated have been developed cooperatively by producers and users and have been found through long experience to cover most of the wrought ferrous metals used in automotive vehicles and related equipment. These designations, however, are not specifications, and should not be used for purchasing unless accompanied by supplementary information necessary to describe commercially the product desired. Engineering societies, associations, and institutes whose members make, specify, or purchase steel products publish standard specifications, many of which have become well known and respected. The most comprehensive and widely used specifications are those published by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM). The US government and various companies also publish their own specification for steel products to serve their own special procurement needs. The Unified Numbering System (UNS) for metals and alloys is also used to designate steels (see pages 395 and 397).

The numerical designation system used by both AISI and SAE for wrought carbon, alloy, and stainless steels is summarized in Table 3. In Table 4 is given the compositions of the standard carbon steels; Table 5 lists the standard low-alloy steel compositions; and Table 6 includes the typical compositions of the standard stainless steels.

Binary Alloy.—An alloy containing two elements. When the term is used in regard to iron or steel, it refers to a material that has one alloying element in addition to iron. Since carbon is always present in steel, plain carbon steel is the typical binary iron alloy.

Ternary Alloy.—This is an alloy consisting of three elements. When the term refers to steel, it denotes a steel that contains two alloying elements in addition to iron; since carbon is always present, it is one of these elements. The third element may be nickel, chromium, manganese, tungsten, molybdenum, titanium, or any other element that is alloyed to give the steel some special property.

Quarternary Alloy.—A quarternary alloy is an alloy consisting of four elements. When applied to steel, such an alloy contains, in addition to iron, three alloying elements. Carbon is one of these, and the other two may be chromium and nickel, silicon and manganese, etc.

Damascus Steel.—A characteristic feature of Damascus steel is its surface patterns, which vary with the carbon content and are either in the form of wavy parallel stripes or mottled patterns. This steel represents an early development in steel making, as it was imported during the Middle Ages to Western Europe through Syria and Palestine, and is known also as Indian steel and bulat. The old Indian method of producing real damascene steel consists in using a pure ore and the best grade of charcoal. The Persian practice is to use soft iron bars and charcoal and plumbago (black lead or graphite) to supply the carbon; and a third method consists of a certain heat treatment which resembles a prolonged tempering. One investigator has concluded that the carbon, irregularly dispersed in the metal and forming two distinct combinations, is what causes the damask or characteristic pattern, and that the slower the cooling the larger the veins will be.

An imitation of Damascus steel can be obtained by etching the surface of the steel blade with acids, the parts which are not to be attacked by the acid being protected by a "resist."

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. AISI and SAE Numbers and Their Corresponding UNS Numbers for Plain Carbon, Alloy, and Tool Steels

AISI-SAE Numbers	UNS Numbers	AISI-SAE Numbers	UNS Numbers	AISI-SAE Numbers	UNS Numbers	AISI-SAE Numbers	UNS Numbers
Plain Carbon Steels							
1005	G10050	1030	G10300	1070	G10700	1566	G15660
1006	G10060	1035	G10350	1078	G10780	1110	G11100
1008	G10080	1037	G10370	1080	G10800	1117	G11170
1010	G10100	1038	G10380	1084	G10840	1118	G11180
1012	G10120	1039	G10390	1086	G10860	1137	G11370
1015	G10150	1040	G10400	1090	G10900	1139	G11390
1016	G10160	1042	G10420	1095	G10950	1140	G11400
1017	G10170	1043	G10430	1513	G15130	1141	G11410
1018	G10180	1044	G10440	1522	G15220	1144	G11440
1019	G10190	1045	G10450	1524	G15240	1146	G11460
1020	G10200	1046	G10460	1526	G15260	1151	G11510
1021	G10210	1049	G10490	1527	G15270	1211	G12110
1022	G10220	1050	G10500	1541	G15410	1212	G12120
1023	G10230	1053	G10530	1548	G15480	1213	G12130
1025	G10250	1055	G10550	1551	G15510	1215	G12150
1026	G10260	1059	G10590	1552	G15520	12L14	G12144
1029	G10290	1060	G10600	1561	G15610	…	…
Alloy Steels							
1330	G13300	4150	G41500	5140	G51400	8642	G86420
1335	G13350	4161	G41610	5150	G51500	8645	G86450
1340	G13400	4320	G43200	5155	G51550	8655	G86550
1345	G13450	4340	G43400	5160	G51600	8720	G87200
4023	G40230	E4340	G43406	E51100	G51986	8740	G87400
4024	G40240	4615	G46150	E52100	G52986	8822	G88220
4027	G40270	4620	G46200	6118	G61180	9260	G92600
4028	G40280	4626	G46260	6150	G61500	50B44	G50441
4037	G40370	4720	G47200	8615	G86150	50B46	G50461
4047	G40470	4815	G48150	8617	G86170	50B50	G50501
4118	G41180	4817	G48170	8620	G86200	50B60	G50601
4130	G41300	4820	G48200	8622	G86220	51B60	G51601
4137	G41370	5117	G51170	8625	G86250	81B45	G81451
4140	G41400	5120	G51200	8627	G86270	94B17	G94171
4142	G41420	5130	G51300	8630	G86300	94B30	G94301
4145	G41450	5132	G51320	8637	G86370	…	…
4147	G41470	5135	G51350	8640	G86400	…	…
Tool Steels (AISI and UNS Only)							
M1	T11301	T6	T12006	A6	T30106	P4	T51604
M2	T11302	T8	T12008	A7	T30107	P5	T51605
M4	T11304	T15	T12015	A8	T30108	P6	T51606
M6	T11306	H10	T20810	A9	T30109	P20	T51620
M7	T11307	H11	T20811	A10	T30110	P21	T51621
M10	T11310	H12	T20812	D2	T30402	F1	T60601
M3-1	T11313	H13	T20813	D3	T30403	F2	T60602
M3-2	T11323	H14	T20814	D4	T30404	L2	T61202
M30	T11330	H19	T20819	D5	T30405	L3	T61203
M33	T11333	H21	T20821	D7	T30407	L6	T61206
M34	T11334	H22	T20822	O1	T31501	W1	T72301
M36	T11336	H23	T20823	O2	T31502	W2	T72302
M41	T11341	H24	T20824	O6	T31506	W5	T72305
M42	T11342	H25	T20825	O7	T31507	CA2	T90102
M43	T11343	H26	T20826	S1	T41901	CD2	T90402
M44	T11344	H41	T20841	S2	T41902	CD5	T90405
M46	T11346	H42	T20842	S4	T41904	CH12	T90812
M47	T11347	H43	T20843	S5	T41905	CH13	T90813
T1	T12001	A2	T30102	S6	T41906	CO1	T91501
T2	T12002	A3	T30103	S7	T41907	CS5	T91905
T4	T12004	A4	T30104	P2	T51602	…	…
T5	T12005	A5	T30105	P3	T51603	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. AISI and SAE System of Designating Carbon and Alloy Steels

AISI-SAE Designation[a]	Type of Steel and Nominal Alloy Content (%)
	Carbon Steels
10xx	Plain Carbon (Mn 1.00% max.)
11xx	Resulfurized
12xx	Resulfurized and Rephosphorized
15xx	Plain Carbon (Max. Mn range 1.00 to 1.65%)
	Manganese Steels
13xx	Mn 1.75
	Nickel Steels
23xx	Ni 3.50
25xx	Ni 5.00
	Nickel-Chromium Steels
31xx	Ni 1.25; Cr 0.65 and 0.80
32xx	Ni 1.75; Cr 1.07
33xx	Ni 3.50; Cr 1.50 and 1.57
34xx	Ni 3.00; Cr 0.77
	Molybdenum Steels
40xx	Mo 0.20 and 0.25
44xx	Mo 0.40 and 0.52
	Chromium-Molybdenum Steels
41xx	Cr 0.50, 0.80, and 0.95; Mo 0.12, 0.20, 0.25, and 0.30
	Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum Steels
43xx	Ni 1.82; Cr 0.50 and 0.80; Mo 0.25
43BVxx	Ni 1.82; Cr 0.50; Mo 0.12 and 0.35; V 0.03 min.
47xx	Ni 1.05; Cr 0.45; Mo 0.20 and 0.35
81xx	Ni 0.30; Cr 0.40; Mo 0.12
86xx	Ni 0.55; Cr 0.50; Mo 0.20
87xx	Ni 0.55; Cr 0.50; Mo 0.25
88xx	Ni 0.55; Cr 0.50; Mo 0.35
93xx	Ni 3.25; Cr 1.20; Mo 0.12
94xx	Ni 0.45; Cr 0.40; Mo 0.12
97xx	Ni 0.55; Cr 0.20; Mo 0.20
98xx	Ni 1.00; Cr 0.80; Mo 0.25
	Nickel-Molybdenum Steels
46xx	Ni 0.85 and 1.82; Mo 0.20 and 0.25
48xx	Ni 3.50; Mo 0.25
	Chromium Steels
50xx	Cr 0.27, 0.40, 0.50, and 0.65
51xx	Cr 0.80, 0.87, 0.92, 0.95, 1.00, and 1.05
50xxx	Cr 0.50; C 1.00 min.
51xxx	Cr 1.02; C 1.00 min.
52xxx	Cr 1.45; C 1.00 min.
	Chromium-Vanadium Steels
61xx	Cr 0.60, 0.80, and 0.95; V 0.10 and 0.15 min
	Tungsten-Chromium Steels
72xx	W 1.75; Cr 0.75
	Silicon-Manganese Steels
92xx	Si 1.40 and 2.00; Mn 0.65, 0.82, and 0.85; Cr 0.00 and 0.65
	High-Strength Low-Alloy Steels
9xx	Various SAE grades
xxBxx	B denotes boron steels
xxLxx	L denotes leaded steels

AISI	SAE	Stainless Steels
2xx	302xx	Chromium-Manganese-Nickel Steels
3xx	303xx	Chromium-Nickel Steels
4xx	514xx	Chromium Steels
5xx	515xx	Chromium Steels

[a] xx in the last two digits of the carbon and low-alloy designations (but not the stainless steels) indicates that the carbon content (in hundredths of a percent) is to be inserted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Composition of AISI-SAE Standard Carbon Steels

AISI-SAE No.	UNS No.	Composition(%)[a]			
		C	Mn	P(max)[b]	S(max)[b]
Nonresulfurized Grades — 1 percent Mn (max)					
1005[c]	G10050	0.06 max	0.35 max	0.040	0.050
1006[c]	G10060	0.08 max	0.25-0.40	0.040	0.050
1008	G10080	0.10 max	0.30-0.50	0.040	0.050
1010	G10100	0.08-0.13	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1012	G10120	0.10-0.15	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1015	G10150	0.13-0.18	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1016	G10160	0.13-0.18	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1017	G10170	0.15-0.20	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1018	G10180	0.15-0.20	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1019	G10190	0.15-0.20	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1020	G10200	0.18-0.23	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1021	G10210	0.18-0.23	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1022	G10220	0.18-0.23	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1023	G10230	0.20-0.25	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1025	G10250	0.22-0.28	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1026	G10260	0.22-0.28	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1029	G10290	0.25-0.31	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1030	G10300	0.28-0.34	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1035	G10350	0.32-0.38	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1037	G10370	0.32-0.38	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1038	G10380	0.35-0.42	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1039	G10390	0.37-0.44	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1040	G10400	0.37-0.44	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1042	G10420	0.40-0.47	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1043	G10430	0.40-0.47	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1044	G10440	0.43-0.50	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1045	G10450	0.43-0.50	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1046	G10460	0.43-0.50	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1049	G10490	0.46-0.53	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1050	G10500	0.48-0.55	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1053	G10530	0.48-0.55	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.050
1055	G10550	0.50-0.60	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1059[c]	G10590	0.55-0.65	0.50-0.80	0.040	0.050
1060	G10600	0.55-0.65	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1064[c]	G10640	0.60-0.70	0.50-0.80	0.040	0.050
1065[c]	G10650	0.60-0.70	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1069[c]	G10690	0.65-0.75	0.40-0.70	0.040	0.050
1070	G10700	0.65-0.75	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1078	G10780	0.72-0.85	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.050
1080	G10800	0.75-0.88	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1084	G10840	0.80-0.93	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1086[c]	G10860	0.80-0.93	0.30-0.50	0.040	0.050
1090	G10900	0.85-0.98	0.60-0.90	0.040	0.050
1095	G10950	0.90-1.03	0.30-0.50	0.040	0.050

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Composition of AISI-SAE Standard Carbon Steels**

AISI-SAE No.	UNS No.	Composition(%)[a]			
		C	Mn	P(max)[b]	S(max)[b]
Nonresulfurized Grades — Over 1 percent Mn					
1513	G15130	0.10-0.16	1.10-1.40	0.040	0.050
1522	G15220	0.18-0.24	1.10-1.40	0.040	0.050
1524	G15240	0.19-0.25	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.050
1526	G15260	0.22-0.29	1.10-1.40	0.040	0.050
1527	G15270	0.22-0.29	1.20-1.50	0.040	0.050
1541	G15410	0.36-0.44	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.050
1548	G15480	0.44-0.52	1.10-1.40	0.040	0.050
1551	G15510	0.45-0.56	0.85-1.15	0.040	0.050
1552	G15520	0.47-0.55	1.20-1.50	0.040	0.050
1561	G15610	0.55-0.65	0.75-1.05	0.040	0.050
1566	G15660	0.60-0.71	0.85-1.15	0.040	0.050
Free-Machining Grades — Resulfurized					
1110	G11100	0.08-0.13	0.30-0.60	0.040	0.08-0.13
1117	G11170	0.14-0.20	1.00-1.30	0.040	0.08-0.13
1118	G11180	0.14-0.20	1.30-1.60	0.040	0.08-0.13
1137	G11370	0.32-0.39	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.08-0.13
1139	G11390	0.35-0.43	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.13-0.20
1140	G11400	0.37-0.44	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.08-0.13
1141	G11410	0.37-0.45	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.08-0.13
1144	G11440	0.40-0.48	1.35-1.65	0.040	0.24-0.33
1146	G11460	0.42-0.49	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.08-0.13
1151	G11510	0.48-0.55	0.70-1.00	0.040	0.08-0.13
Free-Machining Grades — Resulfurized and Rephosphorized					
1211	G12110	0.13 max	0.60-0.90	0.07-0.12	0.10-0.15
1212	G12120	0.13 max	0.70-1.00	0.07-0.12	0.16-0.23
1213	G12130	0.13 max	0.70-1.00	0.07-0.12	0.24-0.33
1215	G12150	0.09 max	0.75-1.05	0.04-0.09	0.26-0.35
12L14[d]	G12144	0.15 max	0.85-1.15	0.04-0.09	0.26-0.35

[a] The following notes refer to boron, copper, lead, and silicon additions. Boron: Standard killed carbon steels, which are generally fine grain, may be produced with a boron treatment addition to improve hardenability. Such steels are produced to a range of 0.0005–0.003 percent B. These steels are identified by inserting the letter "B" between the second and third numerals of the AISI or SAE number, e.g., 10B46. Copper: When copper is required, 0.20 percent (min) is generally specified. Lead: Standard carbon steels can be produced with a lead range of 0.15–0.35 percent to improve machinability. Such steels are identified by inserting the letter "L" between the second and third numerals of the AISI or SAE number, e.g., 12L15 and 10L45. Silicon: It is not common practice to produce the 12XX series of resulfurized and rephosphorized steels to specified limits for silicon because of its adverse effect on machinability. When silicon ranges or limits are required for resulfurized or nonresulfurized steels, however, these values apply: a range of 0.08 percent Si for Si max up to 0.15 percent inclusive, a range of 0.10 percent Si for Si max over 0.15 to 0.20 percent inclusive, a range of 0.15 percent Si for Si max over 0.20 to 0.30 percent inclusive, and a range of 0.20 percent Si for Si max over 0.30 to 0.60 percent inclusive. Example: Si max is 0.25 percent, range is 0.10–0.25 percent.

[b] Values given are maximum percentages, except where a range of values is given.

[c] Standard grades for wire rods and wire only.

[d] 0.15–0.35 percent Pb.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Compositions of AISI-SAE Standard Low-Alloy Steels

AISI-SAE No.	UNS No.	Composition (%)[a, b]							
		C	Mn	P (max)	S (max)	Si	Ni	Cr	Mo
1330	G13300	0.28-0.33	1.60-1.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	…
1335	G13350	0.33-0.38	1.60-1.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	…
1340	G13400	0.38-0.43	1.60-1.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	…
1345	G13450	0.43-0.48	1.60-1.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	…
4023	G40230	0.20-0.25	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4024	G40240	0.20-0.25	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.035-0.050	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4027	G40270	0.25-0.30	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4028	G40280	0.25-0.30	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.035-0.050	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4037	G40370	0.35-0.40	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4047	G40470	0.45-0.50	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	…	0.20-0.30
4118	G41180	0.18-0.23	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.40-0.60	0.08-0.15
4130	G41300	0.28-0.33	0.40-0.60	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4137	G41370	0.35-0.40	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4140	G41400	0.38-0.43	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4142	G41420	0.40-0.45	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4145	G41450	0.43-0.48	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4147	G41470	0.45-0.50	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4150	G41500	0.48-0.53	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15-0.25
4161	G41610	0.56-0.64	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	0.25-0.35
4320	G43200	0.17-0.22	0.45-0.65	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	1.65-2.00	0.40-0.60	0.20-0.30
4340	G43400	0.38-0.43	0.60-0.80	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	1.65-2.00	0.70-0.90	0.20-0.30
E4340[c]	G43406	0.38-0.43	0.65-0.85	0.025	0.025	0.15-0.35	1.65-2.00	0.70-0.90	0.20-0.30
4615	G46150	0.13-0.18	0.45-0.65	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	1.65-2.00	…	0.20-0.30
4620	G46200	0.17-0.22	0.45-0.65	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	1.65-2.00	…	0.20-0.30
4626	G46260	0.24-0.29	0.45-0.65	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.70-1.00	…	0.15-0.25
4720	G47200	0.17-0.22	0.50-0.70	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.90-1.20	0.35-0.55	0.15-0.25
4815	G48150	0.13-0.18	0.40-0.60	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	3.25-3.75	…	0.20-0.30
4817	G48170	0.15-0.20	0.40-0.60	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	3.25-3.75	…	0.20-0.30
4820	G48200	0.18-0.23	0.50-0.70	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	3.25-3.75	…	0.20-0.30
5117	G51170	0.15-0.20	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	070-0.90	…
5120	G51200	0.17-0.22	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…
5130	G51300	0.28-0.33	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	…
5132	G51320	0.30-0.35	0.60-0.80	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.75-1.00	…
5135	G51350	0.33-0.38	0.60-0.80	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.05	…
5140	G51400	0.38-0.43	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…
5150	G51500	0.48-0.53	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…
5155	G51550	0.51-0.59	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…
5160	G51600	0.56-0.64	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Compositions of AISI-SAE Standard Low-Alloy Steels**

AISI-SAE No.	UNS No.	Composition (%)[a, b]							
		C	Mn	P (max)	S (max)	Si	Ni	Cr	Mo
E51100[c]	G51986	0.98-1.10	0.25-0.45	0.025	0.025	0.15-0.35	…	0.90-1.15	…
E52100[c]	G52986	0.98-1.10	0.25-0.45	0.025	0.025	0.15-0.35	…	1.30-1.60	…
6118	G61180	0.16-0.21	0.50-0.70	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.50-0.70	0.10-0.15 V
6150	G61500	0.48-0.53	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.80-1.10	0.15 V min
8615	G86150	0.13-0.18	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8617	G86170	0.15-0.20	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8620	G86200	0.18-0.23	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8622	G86220	0.20-0.25	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8625	G86250	0.23-0.28	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8627	G86270	0.25-0.30	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8630	G86300	0.28-0.33	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8637	G86370	0.35-0.40	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8640	G86400	0.38-0.43	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8642	G86420	0.40-0.45	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8645	G86450	0.43-0.48	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8655	G86550	0.51-0.59	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.15-0.25
8720	G87200	0.18-0.23	0.70-0.90	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.20-0.30
8740	G87400	0.38-0.43	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.20-0.30
8822	G88220	0.20-0.25	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.40-0.70	0.40-0.60	0.30-0.40
9260	G92600	0.56-0.64	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	1.80-2.20	…	…	…
Standard Boron Grades[d]									
50B44	G50441	0.43-0.48	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.40-0.60	…
50B46	G50461	0.44-0.49	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.20-0.35	…
50B50	G50501	0.48-0.53	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.40-0.60	…
50B60	G50601	0.56-0.64	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.40-0.60	…
51B60	G51601	0.56-0.64	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	…	0.70-0.90	…
81B45	G81451	0.43-0.48	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.20-0.40	0.35-0.55	0.08-0.15
94B17	G94171	0.15-0.20	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.30-0.60	0.30-0.50	0.08-0.15
94B30	G94301	0.28-0.33	0.75-1.00	0.035	0.040	0.15-0.35	0.30-0.60	0.30-0.50	0.08-0.15

[a] Small quantities of certain elements are present that are not specified or required. These incidental elements may be present to the following maximum amounts: Cu, 0.35 percent; Ni, 0.25 percent; Cr, 0.20 percent; and Mo, 0.06 percent.

[b] Standard alloy steels can also be produced with a lead range of 0.15-0.35 percent. Such steels are identified by inserting the letter "L" between the second and third numerals of the AISI or SAE number, e.g., 41L40.

[c] Electric furnace steel.

[d] 0.0005-0.003 percent B.

Source: American Iron and Steel Institute: *Steel Products Manual*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Standard Stainless Steels — Typical Compositions

AISI Type (UNS)	Typical Composition (%)	AISI Type (UNS)	Typical Composition (%)
Austenitic			
201 (S20100)	16-18 Cr, 3.5-5.5 Ni, 0.15 C, 5.5-7.5 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.060 P, 0.030 S, 0.25 N	310 (S31000)	24-26 Cr, 19-22 Ni, 0.25 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.5 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S
202 (S20200)	17-19 Cr, 4-6 Ni, 0.15 C, 7.5-10.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.060 P, 0.030 S, 0.25 N	310S (S31008)	24-26 Cr, 19-22 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.5 Si, 0.045 P, 0.30 S
205 (S20500)	16.5-18 Cr, 1-1.75 Ni, 0.12-0.25 C, 14-15.5 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.060 P, 0.030 S, 0.32-0.40 N	314 (S31400)	23-26 Cr, 19-22 Ni, 0.25 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.5-3.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S
301 (S30100)	16-18 Cr, 6-8 Ni, 0.15 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	316 (S31600)	16-18 Cr, 10-14 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 2.0-3.0 Mo, 0.10 N
302 (S30200)	17-19 Cr, 8-10 Ni, 0.15 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 0.10 N	316L (S31603)	16-18 Cr, 10-14 Ni, 0.03 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 2.0-3.0 Mo, 0.10 N
302B (S30215)	17-19 Cr, 8-10 Ni, 0.15 C, 2.0 Mn, 2.0-3.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	316F (S31620)	16-18 Cr, 10-14 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.20 P, 0.10 S min, 1.75-2.50 Mo
303 (S30300)	17-19 Cr, 8-10 Ni, 0.15 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.20 P, 0.015 S min, 0.60 Mo (optional)	316N (S31651)	16-18 Cr, 10-14 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 2-3 Mo, 0.10-0.16 N
303Se (S30323)	17-19 Cr, 8-10 Ni, 0.15 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.20 P, 0.060 S, 0.15 Se min	317 (S31700)	18-20 Cr, 11-15 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 3.0-4.0 Mo, 0.10 N max
304 (S30400)	18-20 Cr, 8-10.50 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 0.10 N	317L (S31703)	18-20 Cr, 11-15 Ni, 0.03 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 3-4 Mo, 0.10 N max
304L (S30403)	18-20 Cr, 8-12 Ni, 0.03 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 0.10 N	321 (S32100)	17-19 Cr, 9-12 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S [Ti, 5(C + N) min, 0.70 max], 0.10 max
304 Cu (S30430)	17-19 Cr, 8-10 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 3-4 Cu	329 (S32900)	23-28 Cr, 2.5-5 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 1-2 Mo
304N (S30451)	18-20 Cr, 8-10.5 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 0.10-0.16 N	330 (N08330)	17-20 Cr, 34-37 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75-1.50 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S
305 (S30500)	17-19 Cr, 10.50-13 Ni, 0.12 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	347 (S34700)	17-19 Cr, 9-13 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S (Nb + Ta, 10 × C min, 1 max)
308 (S30800)	19-21 Cr, 10-12 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	348 (S34800)	17-19 Cr, 9-13 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 0.75 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S (Nb + Ta, 10 × C min, 1 max, but 0.10 Ta max), 0.20 Ca
309 (S30900)	22-24 Cr, 12-15 Ni, 0.20 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	384 (S38400)	15-17 Cr, 17-19 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S
309S (S30908)	22-24 Cr, 12-15 Ni, 0.08 C, 2.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S	…	…
Ferritic			
405 (S40500)	11.5-14.5 Cr, 0.08 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.1-0.3 Al, 0.60 max	430FSe (S43023)	16-18 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.25 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.060 P, 0.060 S, 0.15 Se min
409 (S40900)	10.5-11.75 Cr, 0.08 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.045 P, 0.030 S, 0.05 Ni (Ti 6 × C, but with 0.75 max)	434 (S43400)	16-18 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75-1.25 Mo
429 (S42900)	14-16 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 030 S, 0.75 Ni	436 (S43600)	16-18 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75-1.25 Mo (Nb + Ta 5 × C min, 0.70 max)
430 (S43000)	16-18 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 030 S, 0.75 Ni	442 (S44200)	18-23 Cr, 0.20 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S
430F (S43020)	16-18 Cr, 0.12 C, 1.25 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.060 P, 0.15 S min, 0.60 Mo (optional)	446 (S44600)	23-27 Cr, 0.20 C, 1.5 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.025 N

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. *(Continued)* **Standard Stainless Steels — Typical Compositions**

AISI Type (UNS)	Typical Composition (%)	AISI Type (UNS)	Typical Composition (%)
Martensitic			
403 (S40300)	11.5-13.0 Cr, 1.15 C, 1.0 Mn, 0.5 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.60 Ni	420F (S42020)	12-14 Cr, over 0.15 C, 1.25 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.060 P, 0.15 S min, 0.60 Mo max (optional)
410 (S41000)	11.5-13.5 Cr, 0.15 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75 Ni	422 (S42200)	11-12.50 Cr, 0.50-1.0 Ni, 0.20- 0.25 C, 0.50-1.0 Mn, 0.50 Si, 0.025 P, 0.025 S, 0.90-1.25 Mo, 0.20-0.30 V, 0.90-1.25 W
414 (S41400)	11.5-13.5 Cr, 1.25-2.50 Ni, 0.15 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 1.25-2.50 Ni	431 (S41623)	15-17 Cr, 1.25-2.50 Ni, 0.20 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S
416 (S41600)	12-14 Cr, 0.15 C, 1.25 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.060 P, 0.15 S min, 0.060 Mo (optional)	440A (S44002)	16-18 Cr, 0.60-0.75 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75 Mo
416Se (S41623)	12-14 Cr, 0.15 C, 1.25 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.060 P, 0.060 S, 0.15 Se min	440B (S44003)	16-18 Cr, 0.75-0.95 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75 Mo
420 (S42000)	12-14 Cr, 0.15 C min, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S	440C (S44004)	16-18 Cr, 0.95-1.20 C, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0040 P, 0.030 S, 0.75 Mo
Heat-Resisting			
501 (S50100)	4-6 Cr, 0.10 C min, 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.40-0.65 Mo	502 (S50200)	4-6 Cr, 0.10 C. 1.0 Mn, 1.0 Si, 0.040 P, 0.030 S, 0.40-0.65 Mo

Thermal Treatments of Steel.— Steel's versatility is due to its response to thermal treatment. Although most steel products are used in the as-rolled or un-heat-treated condition, thermal treatment greatly increases the number of properties that can be obtained because at certain "critical temperatures" iron changes from one type of crystal structure to another. This structural change, known as an allotropic transformation, is spontaneous and reversible and can be made to occur by simply changing the temperature of the metal.

In steel, the transformation in crystal structure occurs over a range of temperatures, bounded by lower and upper critical points. When heated, most carbon and low-alloy steels have a critical temperature range between 1300 and 1600°F (700 and 870°C). Steel above this temperature but below the melting range, has a crystalline structure known as austenite, in which the carbon and alloying elements are dissolved in a solid solution. Below this critical range, the crystal structure changes to a phase known as ferrite, which is capable of maintaining only a very small percentage of carbon in solid solution. The remaining carbon exists in the form of carbides, which are compounds of carbon and iron and certain of the other alloying elements. Depending primarily on cooling rate, the carbides may be present as thin plates alternating with the ferrite (pearlite); as spheroidal globular particles at ferrite grain boundaries or dispersed throughout the ferrite; or as a uniform distribution of extremely fine particles throughout a "ferritelike" phase, which has an acicular (needle-like) appearance, termed martensite. In some of the highly alloyed stainless steels, the addition of certain elements stabilizes the austenite structure so that it persists even at very low temperatures (austenitic grades). Other alloying elements can prevent the formation of austenite entirely up to the melting point (ferritic grades).

Fundamentally, all steel heat treatments are intended to either harden or soften the metal. They involve one or a series of operations in which the solid metal is heated and cooled under specified conditions to develop a required structure and properties. In general, there are five major forms of heat treatment for the standard steels that modify properties to suit either fabrication or end use.

Quenching and Tempering: The primary hardening treatment for steel, quenching and tempering, usually consists of three successive operations: heating the steel above the critical range and holding it at these temperatures for a sufficient time to approach a uniform solid solution (austenitizing); cooling the steel rapidly by quenching in oil, water,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

brine, salt or air to form a hard, usually brittle, metastable structure known as untempered or white martensite; tempering the steel by reheating it to a temperature below the critical range in order to obtain the required combination of hardness, strength, ductility, toughness, and structural stability (tempered martensite).

Two well-known modifications of conventional quenching and tempering are "austempering" and "martempering." They involve interrupted quenching techniques (two or more quenching media) that can be utilized for some steels to obtain desired structures and properties while minimizing distortion and cracking problems that may occur in conventional hardening.

Normalizing: The steel is heated to a temperature above the critical range, after which it is cooled in still air to produce a generally fine pearlite structure. The purpose is to promote uniformity of structure and properties after a hot-working operation such as forging or extrusion. Steels may be placed in service in the normalized condition, or they may be subjected to additional thermal treatment after subsequent machining or other operations.

Annealing: The steel is heated to a temperature above or within the critical range, then cooled at a predetermined slow rate (usually in a furnace) to produce a coarse pearlite structure. This treatment is used to soften the steel for improved machinability; to improve or restore ductility for subsequent forming operations; or to eliminate the residual stresses and microstructural effects of cold-working.

Spheroidize Annealing: This is a special form of annealing that requires prolonged heating at an appropriate temperature followed by slow cooling in order to produce globular carbides, a structure desirable for machining, cold forming, or cold drawing, or for the effect it will have on subsequent heat treatment.

Stress Relieving: This process reduces internal stresses caused by machining, cold-working, or welding. The steel is heated to a temperature below the critical range and held there long enough to equalize the temperature throughout the piece.

See the sections *HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING* on page 458 and *Heat Treating High-Speed Steels* on page 493 for more information about the heat treatment of steels.

Applications.—Many factors enter into the selection of a steel for a particular application. These factors include the mechanical and physical properties needed to satisfy the design requirements and service environment; the cost and availability of the material; the cost of processing (machining, heat treatment, welding, etc.); and the suitability of available processing equipment or the cost of any new equipment required.

These steel selection considerations require input from designers, metallurgists, manufacturing engineers, service engineers, and procurement specialists, and can be considered proper or optimum when the part is made from the lowest cost material consistent with satisfying engineering and service requirements. The factors in selection can vary widely among different organizations, so that several different steels may be used successfully for similar applications. The best choice of a steel for any application most often results from a balance or trade-offs among the various selection considerations.

The AISI/SAE designated "standard steels" provide a convenient way for engineers and metallurgists to state briefly but clearly the chemical composition and, in some instances, desired properties. These steels are widely recognized and used in the United States and in many other countries. There are, however, numerous nonstandard carbon, alloy, and stainless steel grades that are widely used for special applications.

The following sections and tables illustrate the general characteristics and typical applications of most of the standard carbon, alloy, and stainless steel grades.

General Application of SAE Steels: These applications are intended as a general guide only since the selection may depend on the exact character of the service, cost of material, machinability when machining is required, or other factors. When more than one steel is recommended for a given application, information on the characteristics of each steel listed will be found in the section *Carbon Steels* starting on page 407.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Adapters, 1145
Agricultural steel, 1070, 1080
Aircraft forgings, 4140
Axles front or rear, 1040, 4140
Axle shafts, 1045, 2340, 2345, 3135, 3140, 3141, 4063, 4340
Ball-bearing races, 52100
Balls for ball bearings, 52100
Body stock for cars, rimmed*
Bolts and screws, 1035
Bolts
  anchor, 1040
  cold-headed, 4042
  connecting-rod, 3130
  heat-treated, 2330
  heavy-duty, 4815, 4820
  steering-arm, 3130
Brake levers, 1030, 1040
Bumper bars, 1085
Cams free-wheeling, 4615, 4620
Camshafts, 1020, 1040
Carburized parts, 1020, 1022, 1024, 1117, 1118, 1320, 2317, 2515, 3310, 3115, 3120, 4023, 4032
Chain pins transmission, 4320, 4815, 4820
Chains transmission, 3135, 3140
Clutch disks, 1060, 1070, 1085
Clutch springs, 1060
Coil springs, 4063
Cold-headed bolts, 4042
Cold-heading
  steel, 30905, 1070
  wire or rod, rimmed*, 1035
Cold-rolled steel, 1070
Connecting-rods, 1040, 3141
Connecting-rod bolts, 3130
Corrosion resisting, 51710, 30805
Covers transmission, rimmed*
Crankshafts, 1045, 1145, 3135, 3140, 3141
Crankshafts, Diesel engine, 4340
Cushion springs, 1060
Cutlery, stainless, 51335
Cylinder studs, 3130
Deep-drawing steel, rimmed*, 30905
Differential gears, 4023
Disks, clutch, 1070, 1060
Ductile steel, 30905
Fan blades, 1020
Fatigue resisting 4340, 4640
Fender stock for cars, rimmed*
Forgings
  aircraft, 4140
  carbon steel, 1040, 1045
  heat-treated, 3240, 5140, 6150
  high-duty, 6150
  small or medium, 1035
  large, 1036
Free-cutting steel
  carbon, 1111, 1113
  chromium-nickel steel, 30615
  manganese steel, 1132, 1137
Gears
  carburized, 1320, 2317, 3115, 3120, 3310, 4119, 4125, 4320, 4615, 4620, 4815, 4820
  heat-treated, 2345
  car and truck, 4027, 4032
  cyanide-hardening, 5140
  differential, 4023
  high duty, 4640, 6150
  oil-hardening, 3145, 3150, 4340, 5150
  ring, 1045, 3115, 3120, 4119
  transmission, 3115, 3120, 4119
  truck and bus, 3310, 4320
Gear shift levers, 1030
Harrow disks, 1080
Hay-rake teeth, 1095
Key stock, 1030, 2330, 3130
Leaf springs, 1085, 9260
Levers
  brake, 1030, 1040
  gear shift, 1030
  heat-treated, 2330
Lock washers, 1060
Mower knives, 1085
Mower sections, 1070
Music wire, 1085
Nuts, 3130
  heat-treated, 2330
Oil pans, automobile, rimmed*
Pinions, carburized, 3115, 3120, 4320
Piston pins, 3115, 3120
Plow
  beams, 1070
  disks, 1080
  shares, 1080

* The "rimmed" and "killed" steels listed are in the SAE 1008, 1010, and 1015 group. See general description of these steels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Propeller shafts, 2340, 2345, 4140
Races, ball-bearing, 52100
Ring gears, 3115, 3120, 4119
Rings, snap, 1060, 1070, 1090
Rivets, rimmed*
Rod and wire, killed*
Rod, cold-heading, 1035
Roller bearings, 4815
Rollers for bearings, 52100
Screws and bolts, 1035
Screw stock
  Bessemer, 1111, 1112, 1113
  open-hearth, 1115
Screws, heat-treated, 2330
Seat springs, 10956
Shafts
  axle, 1045
  cyanide-hardening, 5140
  heavy-duty, 4340, 6150, 4615, 4620
  oil-hardening, 5150
  propeller, 2340, 2345, 4140
  transmission, 4140
Sheets and strips, rimmed*
Snap rings, 1060, 1070, 1090
Spline shafts, 1045, 1320, 2340, 2345, 3115, 3120, 3135, 3140, 4023
Spring clips, 1060
Springs
  coil, 1095, 4063, 6150
  clutch, 1060
  cushion, 1060
  hard-drawn coiled, 1066
  leaf, 1085, 1095, 4063, 4068, 9260, 6150
  oil-hardening, 5150
  oil-tempered wire, 1066
  seat, 1095
  valve, 1060
Spring wire, 1045
  hard-drawn, 1055
  oil-tempered, 1055
Stainless irons, 51210, 51710
Steel
  cold-rolled, 1070
  cold-heading, 30905
  free-cutting carbon, 1111, 1113
  free-cutting chrome-nickel, 30615
  free-cutting manganese, 1132
  minimum distortion, 4615, 4620, 4640
  soft ductile, 30905
Steering arms, 4042
Steering-arm bolts, 3130
Steering knuckles, 3141
Steering-knuckle pins, 4815, 4820
Tacks, rimmed*
Thrust washers, 1060
  oil-hardened, 5150
Transmission shafts, 4140
Tubing, 1040
  front axle, 4140
  seamless, 1030
  welded, 1020
Universal joints, 1145
Valve springs, 1060
Washers, lock, 1060
Welded structures, 30705
Wire and rod, killed*
Wire
  cold-heading, rimmed*
  hard-drawn spring, 1045, 1055
  music, 1085
  oil-tempered spring, 1055
Wrist-pins, automobile, 1020
Yokes, 1145

Carbon Steels.—*SAE Steels 1006, 1008, 1010, 1015:* These steels are the lowest carbon steels of the plain carbon type and are selected where cold formability is the primary requisite of the user. They are produced both as rimmed and killed steels. Rimmed steel is used for sheet, strip, rod, and wire where excellent surface finish or good drawing qualities are required, such as body and fender stock, hoods, lamps, oil pans, and other deep-drawn and -formed products. This steel is also used for cold-heading wire for tacks, and rivets and low carbon wire products. Killed steel (usually aluminum killed or special killed) is used for difficult stampings, or where nonaging properties are needed. Killed steels (usually silicon killed) should be used in preference to rimmed steel for forging or heat-treating applications.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

These steels have relatively low tensile values and should not be selected where much strength is desired. Within the carbon range of the group, strength and hardness will rise with increases in carbon and/or with cold-work, but such increases in strength are at the sacrifice of ductility or the ability to withstand cold deformation. Where cold rolled strip is used, the proper temper designation should be specified to obtain the desired properties.

With less than 0.15 carbon, the steels are susceptible to serious grain growth, causing brittleness, which may occur as the result of a combination of critical strain (from cold-work) followed by heating to certain elevated temperatures. If cold-worked parts formed from these steels are to be later heated to temperatures in excess of 1100°F (590°C), the user should exercise care to avoid or reduce cold-working. When this condition develops, it can be overcome by heating the parts to a temperature well in excess of the upper critical point, or at least 1750°F (955°C).

Steels in this group, being nearly pure iron or ferritic in structure, do not machine freely and should be avoided for cut screws and operations requiring broaching or smooth finish on turning. The machinability of bar, rod, and wire products is improved by cold drawing. Steels in this group are readily welded.

SAE 1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1027, 1030: Steels in this group, due to the carbon range covered, have increased strength and hardness, and reduced cold formability compared to the lowest carbon group. For heat-treating purposes, they are known as carburizing or case hardening grades. When uniform response to heat treatment is required, or for forgings, killed steel is preferred; for other uses, semi-killed or rimmed steel may be indicated, depending on the combination of properties desired. Rimmed steels can ordinarily be supplied up to 0.25 carbon.

Selection of one of these steels for carburizing applications depends on the nature of the part, the properties desired, and the processing practice preferred. Increases in carbon give greater core hardness with a given quench, or permit the use of thicker sections. Increases in manganese improve the hardenability of both the core and case; in carbon steels this is the only change in composition that will increase case hardenability. The higher manganese variants also machine much better. For carburizing applications, SAE 1016, 1018, and 1019 are widely used for thin sections or water-quenched parts. SAE 1022 and 1024 are used for heavier sections or where oil quenching is desired, and SAE 1024 is sometimes used for such parts as transmission and rear axle gears. SAE 1027 is used for parts given a light case to obtain satisfactory core properties without drastic quenching. SAE 1025 and 1030, although not usually regarded as carburizing types, are sometimes used in this manner for larger sections or where greater core hardness is needed.

For cold-formed or -headed parts, the lowest manganese grades (SAE 1017, 1020, and 1025) offer the best formability at their carbon level. SAE 1020 is used for fan blades and some frame members, and SAE 1020 and 1025 are widely used for low-strength bolts. The next higher manganese types (SAE 1018, 1021, and 1026) provide increased strength.

All steels listed may be readily welded or brazed by the common commercial methods. SAE 1020 is frequently used for welded tubing. These steels are used for numerous forged parts, the lower-carbon grades where high strength is not essential. Forgings from the lower-carbon steels usually machine better in the as-forged condition without annealing, or after normalizing.

SAE 1030, 1033, 1034, 1035, 1036, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041, 1042, 1043, 1045, 1046, 1049, 1050, 1052: These steels, of the medium-carbon type, are selected for uses where higher mechanical properties are needed and are frequently further hardened and strengthened by heat treatment or by cold-work. These grades are ordinarily produced as killed steels.

Steels in this group are suitable for a wide variety of automotive-type applications. The particular carbon and manganese level selected is affected by a number of factors. Increases in the mechanical properties required in section thickness, or in depth of hardening, ordinarily indicate either higher carbon or manganese or both. The heat-treating practice preferred, particularly the quenching medium, has a great effect on the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

steel selected. In general, any of the grades over 0.30 carbon may be selectively hardened by induction or flame methods.

The lower-carbon and manganese steels in this group find usage for certain types of cold-formed parts. SAE 1030 is used for shift and brake levers. SAE 1034 and 1035 are used in the form of wire and rod for cold upsetting such as bolts, and SAE 1038 for bolts and studs. The parts cold-formed from these steels are usually heat treated prior to use. Stampings are generally limited to flat parts or simple bends. The higher-carbon SAE 1038, 1040, and 1042 are frequently cold drawn to specified physical properties for use without heat treatment for some applications such as cylinder head studs.

Any of this group of steels may be used for forgings, the selection being governed by the section size and the physical properties desired after heat treatment. Thus, SAE 1030 and 1035 are used for shifter forks and many small forgings where moderate properties are desired, but the deeper-hardening SAE 1036 is used for more critical parts where a higher strength level and more uniformity are essential, such as some front suspension parts. Forgings such as connecting rods, steering arms, truck front axles, axle shafts, and tractor wheels are commonly made from the SAE 1038 to 1045 group. Larger forgings at similar strength levels need more carbon and perhaps more manganese. Examples are crankshafts made from SAE 1046 and 1052. These steels are also used for small forgings where high hardness after oil quenching is desired. Suitable heat treatment is necessary on forgings from this group to provide machinability. These steels are also widely used for parts machined from bar stock, the selection following an identical pattern to that described for forgings. They are used both with and without heat treatment, depending on the application and the level of properties needed. As a class, they are considered good for normal machining operations. It is also possible to weld these steels by most commercial methods, but precautions should be taken to avoid cracking from too rapid cooling.

SAE 1055, 1060, 1062, 1064, 1065, 1066, 1070, 1074, 1078, 1080, 1085, 1086, 1090, 1095: Steels in this group are of the high-carbon type, having more carbon than is required to achieve maximum as quenched hardness. They are used for applications where the higher carbon is needed to improve wear characteristics for cutting edges, to make springs, and for special purposes. Selection of a particular grade is affected by the nature of the part, its end use, and the manufacturing methods available.

In general, cold-forming methods are not practical on this group of steels, being limited to flat stampings and springs coiled from small-diameter wire. Practically all parts from these steels are heat treated before use, with some variations in heat-treating methods to obtain optimum properties for the particular use to which the steel is to be put.

Uses in the spring industry include SAE 1065 for pretempered wire and SAE 1066 for cushion springs of hard-drawn wire, SAE 1064 may be used for small washers and thin stamped parts, SAE 1074 for light flat springs formed from annealed stock, and SAE 1080 and 1085 for thicker flat springs. SAE 1085 is also used for heavier coil springs. Valve spring wire and music wire are special products.

Due to good wear properties when properly heat treated, the high-carbon steels find wide usage in the farm implement industry. SAE 1070 has been used for plow beams, SAE 1074 for plowshares, and SAE 1078 for such parts as rake teeth, scrapers, cultivator shovels, and plowshares. SAE 1085 has been used for scraper blades, disks, and for spring tooth harrows. SAE 1086 and 1090 find use as mower and binder sections, twine holders, and knotter disks.

SAE 1111, 1112, 1113: This class of steels is intended for those uses where easy machining is the primary requirement. They are characterized by a higher sulfur content than comparable carbon steels. This composition results in some sacrifice of cold-forming properties, weldability, and forging characteristics. In general, the uses are similar to those for carbon steels of similar carbon and manganese content.

These steels are commonly known as Bessemer screw stock and are considered the best machining steels available, machinability improving within the group as sulfur increases. They are used for a wide variety of machined parts. Although of excellent strength in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cold-drawn condition, they have an unfavorable property of cold shortness and are not commonly used for vital parts. These steels may be cyanided or carburized, but when uniform response to heat treating is necessary, open-hearth steels are recommended.

SAE 1109, 1114, 1115, 1116, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1120, 1126: Steels in this group are used where a combination of good machinability and more uniform response to heat treatment is needed. The lower-carbon varieties are used for small parts that are to be cyanided or carbonitrided. SAE 1116, 1117, 1118, and 1119 carry more manganese for better hardenability, permitting oil quenching after case-hardening heat treatments in many instances. The higher-carbon SAE 1120 and 1126 provide more core hardness when this is needed.

SAE 1132, 1137, 1138, 1140, 1141, 1144, 1145, 1146, 1151: This group of steels has characteristics comparable to carbon steels of the same carbon level, except for changes due to higher sulfur as noted previously. They are widely used for parts where large amounts of machining are necessary, or where threads, splines, or other contours present special problems with tooling. SAE 1137, for example, is widely used for nuts and bolts and studs with machined threads. The higher-manganese SAE 1132, 1137, 1141, and 1144 offer greater hardenability, the higher-carbon types being suitable for oil quenching for many parts. All these steels may be selectively hardened by induction or flame heating if desired.

Carburizing Grades of Alloy Steels.—*Properties of the Case:* The properties of carburized and hardened cases (surface layers) depend on the carbon and alloy content, the structure of the case, and the degree and distribution of residual stresses. The carbon content of the case depends on the details of the carburizing process and the response of iron and the alloying elements present to carburization. The original carbon content of the steel has little or no effect on the carbon content produced in the case. The hardenability of the case, therefore, depends on the alloy content of the steel and the final carbon content produced by carburizing, but not on the initial carbon content of the steel.

With complete carbide solution, the effect of alloying elements on the hardenability of the case is about the same as the effect of these elements on the hardenability of the core. As an exception to this statement, any element that inhibits carburizing may reduce the hardenability of the case. Some elements that raise the hardenability of the core may tend to produce more retained austenite and consequently somewhat lower hardness in the case.

Alloy steels are frequently used for case hardening because the required surface hardness can be obtained by moderate speeds of quenching. Slower quenching may mean less distortion than would be encountered with water quenching. It is usually desirable to select a steel that will attain a minimum surface hardness of 58 or 60 RC (Rockwell C scale) after carburizing and oil quenching. Where section sizes are large, a high-hardenability alloy steel may be necessary, whereas for medium and light sections, low-hardenability steels will suffice.

In general, the case-hardening alloy steels may be divided into two classes as far as the hardenability of the case is concerned. Only the general type of steel (SAE 3300-4100, etc.) is discussed. The original carbon content of the steel has no effect on the carbon content of the case, so the last two digits in the specification numbers are not meaningful as far as the case is concerned.

a) High-Hardenability Case: SAE 2500, 3300, 4300, 4800, 9300

As these are high-alloy steels, both the case and the core have high hardenability. They are used particularly for carburized parts having thick sections, such as bevel drive pinions and heavy gears. Good case properties can be obtained by oil quenching. These steels are likely to have retained austenite in the case after carburizing and quenching; consequently, special precautions or treatments, such as refrigeration, may be required.

b) Medium-Hardenability Case: SAE 1300, 2300, 4000, 4100, 4600, 5100, 8600, 8700

Carburized cases of these steels have medium hardenability, which means that their hardenability is intermediate between that of plain carbon steel and the higher-alloy

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

carburizing steels discussed earlier. In general, these steels can be used for average-size case-hardened automotive parts, such as gears, pinions, piston pins, ball studs, universal joint crosses, crankshafts, etc. Satisfactory case hardness is usually produced by oil quenching.

Core Properties: The core properties of case-hardened steels depend on both carbon and alloy content of the steel. Each of the general types of alloy case-hardening steel is usually made with two or more carbon contents to permit different hardenability in the core.

The most desirable hardness for the core depends on the design and functioning of the individual part. In general, where high compressive loads are encountered, relatively high core hardness is beneficial in supporting the case. Low core hardnesses may be desirable where great toughness is essential.

The case-hardening steels may be divided into three general classes, depending on hardenability of the core.

a) Low-Hardenability Core: SAE 4017, 4023, 4024, 4027*, 4028*, 4608, 4615, 4617*, 8615*, 8617*

b) Medium-Hardenability Core: SAE 1320, 2317, 2512, 2515*, 3115, 3120, 4032, 4119, 4317, 4620, 4621, 4812, 4815*, 5115, 5120, 8620, 8622, 8720, 9420

c) High-Hardenability Core: SAE 2517, 3310, 3316, 4320, 4817, 4820, 9310, 9315, 9317

Heat Treatments: In general, all the alloy carburizing steels are made with fine grain and most are suitable for direct quenching from the carburizing temperature. Several other types of heat treatment involving single and double quenching are also used for most of these steels. See Table 4a on page 487 and Table 4b on page 488.

Directly Hardenable Grades of Alloy Steels.—These steels may be considered in five groups on the basis of approximate mean carbon content of the SAE specification. In general, the last two figures of the specification agree with the mean carbon content. Consequently the heading *0.30–0.37 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification* includes steels such as SAE 1330, 3135, and 4137.

It is necessary to deviate from the above plan in the classification of the carbon molybdenum steels. Because of the low alloy content of carbon molybdenum steels, it is customary to specify a higher carbon content for any given application than would be specified for other alloy steels. For example, SAE 4063 is used for the same applications as SAE 4140, 4145, and 5150. Consequently, in the following discussion, the carbon molybdenum steels have been shown in the groups where they belong on the basis of applications rather than carbon content.

Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification	Common Applications
(a) 0.30–0.37 percent	Heat-treated parts requiring moderate strength and great toughness.
(b) 0.40–0.42 percent	Heat-treated parts requiring higher strength and good toughness.
(c) 0.45–0.50 percent	Heat-treated parts requiring fairly high hardness and strength with moderate toughness.
(d) 0.50–0.62 percent	Springs and hand tools.
(e) 1.02 percent	Ball and roller bearings.

For the present discussion, steels of each carbon content are divided into two or three groups on the basis of hardenability. Transformation ranges and consequently heat-treating practices vary somewhat with different alloying elements even though the hardenability is not changed.

0.30–0.37 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification: These steels are frequently used for water-quenched parts of moderate section size and for oil-quenched parts of small section size. Typical applications of these steels are connecting rods, steering arms and steering knuckles, axle shafts, bolts, studs, screws, and other parts requiring strength

* Borderline classifications might be considered in the next higher hardenability group.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and toughness where section size is small enough to permit the desired physical properties to be obtained with the customary heat treatment.

Steels falling in this classification may be subdivided into two groups on the basis of hardenability:

a) Low Hardenability: SAE 1330, 1335, 4037, 4042, 4130, 5130, 5132, 8630

b) Medium Hardenability: SAE 2330, 3130, 3135, 4137, 5135, 8632, 8635, 8637, 8735, 9437

0.40–0.42 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification: In general, these steels are used for medium and large parts requiring a high degree of strength and toughness. The choice of the proper steel depends on the section size and the mechanical properties that must be produced. The low and medium hardenabilty steels are used for average size automotive parts, such as steering knuckles, axle shafts, propeller shafts, etc. The high hardenability steels are used particularly for large axles and shafts for large aircraft parts.

These steels are usually considered as oil quenching steels, although some large parts made of the low and medium hardenability classifications may be quenched in water under properly controlled conditions.

These steels may be divided into three groups on the basis of hardenability:

a) Low Hardenability: SAE 1340, 4047, 5140, 9440

b) Medium Hardenability: SAE 2340, 3140, 3141, 4053, 4063, 4140, 4640, 8640, 8641, 8642, 8740, 8742, 9442

c) High Hardenability: SAE 4340, 9840

0.45–0.50 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification: These steels are used primarily for gears and other parts requiring fairly high hardness as well as strength and toughness. Such parts are usually oil-quenched and a minimum of 90 percent martensite in the as-quenched condition is desirable.

a) Low Hardenability: SAE 5045, 5046, 5145, 9747, 9763

b) Medium Hardenability: SAE 2345, 3145, 3150, 4145, 5147, 5150, 8645, 8647, 8650, 8745, 8747, 8750, 9445, 9845

c) High Hardenability: SAE 4150, 9850

0.50–0.63 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification: These steels are used primarily for springs and hand tools. The hardenability necessary depends on the thickness of the material and the quenching practice.

a) Medium hardenability: SAE 4068, 5150, 5152, 6150, 8650, 9254, 9255, 9260, 9261

b) High Hardenability: SAE 8653, 8655, 8660, 9262

1.02 Mean Carbon Content of SAE Specification—SAE 50100, 51100, 52100: These straight chromium electric furnace steels are used primarily for the races and balls or rollers of antifriction bearings. They are also used for other parts requiring high hardness and wear resistance. The compositions of the three steels are identical, except for a variation in chromium, with a corresponding variation in hardenability.

a) Low Hardenability: SAE 50100

b) Medium Hardenability: SAE 51100, 52100

Resulfurized Steel: Some of the alloy steels, SAE 4024, 4028, and 8641, are made resulfurized so as to give better machinability at a relatively high hardness. In general, increased sulfur results in decreased transverse ductility, notched impact toughness, and weldability.

Characteristics and Typical Applications of Standard Stainless Steels.—Typical applications of various stainless steel alloys are given in the following. The first number given is the AISI designation followed by the UNS number in parenthesis. (See also *Numbering Systems for Metals and Alloys* on page 395)

201 (S20100): High work-hardening rate; low-nickel equivalent of type 301. Flatware; automobile wheel covers, trim.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

202 (S20200): General-purpose low-nickel equivalent of type 302. Kitchen equipment; hub caps; milk handling.

205 (S20500): Lower work-hardening rate than type 202; used for spinning and special drawing operations. Nonmagnetic and cryogenic parts.

301 (S30100): High work-hardening rate; used for structural applications where high strength plus high ductility are required. Railroad cars; trailer bodies; aircraft structurals; fasteners; automobile wheel covers, trim; pole line hardware.

302 (S30200): General-purpose austenitic stainless steel. Trim; food-handling equipment; aircraft cowlings; antennas; springs; cookware; building exteriors; tanks; hospital, household appliances; jewelry; oil refining equipment; signs.

302B (S30215): More resistant to scale than type 302. Furnace parts; still liners; heating elements; annealing covers; burner sections.

303 (S30300): Free-machining modification of type 302, for heavier cuts. Screw machine products; shafts; valves; bolts; bushings; nuts.

303Se (S30323): Free-machining modification of type 302, for lighter cuts; used where hot-working or cold-heading may be involved. Aircraft fittings; bolts; nuts; rivets; screws; studs.

304 (S30400): Low-carbon modification of type 302 for restriction of carbide precipitation during welding. Chemical and food processing equipment; brewing equipment; cryogenic vessels; gutters; downspouts; flashings.

304L (S30403): Extra-low-carbon modification of type 304 for further restriction of carbide precipitation during welding. Coal hopper linings; tanks for liquid fertilizer and tomato paste.

304Cu (S30430): Lower work-hardening rate than type 304. Severe cold-heading applications.

304N (S30451): Higher nitrogen than type 304 to increase strength with minimum effect on ductility and corrosion resistance, more resistant to increased magnetic permeability. Type 304 applications requiring higher strength.

305 (S30500): Low work-hardening rate; used for spin forming, severe drawing, cold heading, and forming. Coffee urn tops; mixing bowls; reflectors.

308 (S30800): Higher-alloy steel having high corrosion and heat resistance. Welding filler metals to compensate for alloy loss in welding; industrial furnaces.

309 (S30900): High-temperature strength and scale resistance. Aircraft heaters; heat-treating equipment; annealing covers; furnace parts; heat exchangers; heat-treating trays; oven linings; pump parts.

309S (S30908): Low-carbon modification of type 309. Welded constructions; assemblies subject to moist corrosion conditions.

310 (S31000): Higher elevated temperature strength and scale resistance than type 309. Heat exchangers; furnace parts; combustion chambers; welding filler metals; gas-turbine parts; incinerators; recuperators; rolls for roller hearth furnaces.

310S (S31008): Low-carbon modification of type 310. Welded constructions; jet engine rings.

314 (S31400): More resistant to scale than type 310. Severe cold-heading or -forming applications. Annealing and carburizing boxes; heat-treating fixtures; radiant tubes.

316 (S31600): Higher corrosion resistance than types 302 and 304; high creep strength. Chemical and pulp handling equipment; photographic equipment; brandy vats; fertilizer parts; ketchup cooking kettles; yeast tubs.

316L (S31603): Extra-low-carbon modification of type 316. Welded construction where intergranular carbide precipitation must be avoided. Type 316 applications requiring extensive welding.

316F (S31620): Higher phosphorus and sulfur than type 316 to improve machining and nonseizing characteristics. Automatic screw machine parts.

316N (S31651): Higher nitrogen than type 316 to increase strength with minimum effect on ductility and corrosion resistance. Type 316 applications requiring extra strength.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

317 (S31700): Higher corrosion and creep resistance than type 316. Dyeing and ink manufacturing equipment.

317L (S31703): Extra-low-carbon modification of type 317 for restriction of carbide precipitation during welding. Welded assemblies.

321 (S32100): Stabilized for weldments under severe corrosive conditions and service from 800–1650°F (425–900°C). Aircraft exhaust manifolds; boiler shells; process equipment; expansion joints; cabin heaters; fire walls; flexible couplings; pressure vessels.

329 (S32900): Austenitic-ferritic type with general corrosion resistance similar to type 316 but with better resistance to stress-corrosion cracking; capable of age hardening. Valves; valve fittings; piping; pump parts.

330 (N08330): Good resistance to carburization and oxidation and to thermal shock. Heat-treating fixtures.

347 (S34700): Similar to type 321 with higher creep strength. Airplane exhaust stacks; welded tank cars for chemicals; jet engine parts.

348 (S34800): Similar to type 321; low retentivity. Tubes and pipes for radioactive systems; nuclear energy uses.

384 (S38400): Suitable for severe cold heading or cold forming; lower cold-work hardening rate than type 305. Bolts; rivets; screws; instrument parts.

403 (S40300): "Turbine quality" grade. Steam turbine blading and other highly stressed parts including jet engine rings.

405 (S40500): Nonhardenable grade for assemblies where air-hardening types such as 410 or 403 are objectionable. Annealing boxes; quenching racks; oxidation-resistant partitions.

409 (S40900): General-purpose construction stainless. Automotive exhaust systems; transformer and capacitor cases; dry fertilizer spreaders; tanks for agricultural sprays.

410 (S41000): General-purpose heat-treatable type. Machine parts; pump shafts; bolts; bushings; coal chutes; cutlery; hardware; jet engine parts; mining machinery; rifle barrels; screws; valves.

414 (41400): High hardenability steel. Springs; tempered rules; machine parts, bolts; mining machinery; scissors; ships' bells; spindles; valve seats.

416 (S41600): Free-machining modification of type 410, for heavier cuts. Aircraft fittings; bolts; nuts; fire extinguisher inserts; rivets; screws.

416Se (S41623): Free-machining modification of type 410, for lighter cuts. Machined parts requiring hot-working or cold-heading.

420 (S42000): Higher carbon modification of type 410. Cutlery; surgical instruments; valves; wear-resisting parts; glass molds; hand tools; vegetable choppers.

420F (S42020): Free-machining modification of type 420. Applications similar to those for type 420 requiring better machinability.

422 (S42200): High strength and toughness at service temperatures up to 1200°F (650°C). Steam turbine blades; fasteners.

429 (S42900): Improved weldability as compared to type 430. Nitric acid and nitrogen-fixation equipment.

430 (S43000): General-purpose nonhardenable chromium type. Decorative trim; nitric acid tanks; annealing baskets; combustion chambers; dishwashers; heaters; mufflers; range hoods; recuperators; restaurant equipment.

430F (S43020): Free-machining modification of type 430, for heavier cuts. Screw machine parts.

430FSe (S43023): Free-machining modification of type 430, for lighter cuts. Machined parts requiring light cold heading or forming.

431 (S43100): Special-purpose hardenable steel used where particularly high mechanical properties are required. Aircraft fittings; beater bars; paper machinery; bolts.

434 (S43400): Modification of type 430 designed to resist atmospheric corrosion in the presence of winter road conditioning and dust-laying compounds. Automotive trim and fasteners.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

436 (S43600): Similar to types 430 and 434. Used where low "roping" or "ridging" required. General corrosion and heat-resistant applications, such as automobile trim.

440A (S44002): Hardenable to higher hardeness than type 420 with good corrosion resistance. Cutlery; bearings; surgical tools.

440B (S44003): Cutlery grade. Cutlery; valve parts; instrument bearings.

440C (S44004): Yields highest hardnesses of hardenable stainless steels. Balls; bearings; races; nozzles; balls and seats for oil well pumps; valve parts.

442 (S44200): High-chromium steel, principally for parts that must resist high service temperatures without scaling. Furnace parts; nozzles; combustion chambers.

446 (S44600): High-resistance to corrosion and scaling at high temperatures, especially for intermittent service; often used in sulfur-bearing atmosphere. Annealing boxes; combustion chambers; glass molds; heaters; pyrometer tubes; recuperators; stirring rods; valves.

501 (S50100): Heat resistance; good mechanical properties at moderately elevated temperatures. Heat exchangers; petroleum refining equipment.

502 (S50200): More ductility and less strength than type 501. Heat exchangers; petroleum refining equipment; gaskets.

Chromium-Nickel Austenitic Steels.—(Not capable of heat treatment) *SAE 30201:* This steel is an austenitic chromium-nickel-manganese stainless steel usually required in flat products. In the annealed condition, it exhibits higher strength values than the corresponding chromium-nickel stainless steel (SAE 30301). It is nonmagnetic in the annealed condition, but may be magnetic when cold-worked. SAE 30201 is used to obtain high strength by work-hardening and is well suited for corrosion-resistant structural members requiring high strength with low weight. It has excellent resistance to a wide variety of corrosive media, showing behavior comparable to stainless grade SAE 30301. It has high ductility and excellent forming properties. Owing to this steel's work-hardening rate and yield strength, tools for forming must be designed to allow for a higher springback or recovery rate. It is used for automotive trim, automotive wheel covers, railroad passenger car bodies and structural members, and truck trailer bodies.

SAE 30202: Like chromium-nickel stainless steel SAE 30302, this is a general-purpose stainless steel. It has excellent corrosion resistance and deep drawing qualities. It is nonhardenable by thermal treatments but may be cold-worked to high tensile strengths. In the annealed condition, it is nonmagnetic but slightly magnetic when cold-worked. Applications for this stainless steel are hub cap, railcar and truck trailer bodies, and spring wire.

SAE 30301: Capable of attaining high tensile strength and ductility by moderate or severe cold-working. It is used largely in the cold-rolled or cold-drawn condition in the form of sheet, strip, and wire. Its corrosion resistance is good but not equal to SAE 30302.

SAE 30302: The most widely used of the general-purpose austenitic chromium-nickel stainless steels. It is used for deep drawing largely in the annealed condition. It can be worked to high tensile strengths but with slightly lower ductility than SAE 30301.

SAE 30303F: A free-machining steel recommended for the manufacture of parts produced on automatic screw machines. Caution must be used in forging this steel.

SAE 30304: Similar to SAE 30302 but somewhat superior in corrosion resistance and having superior welding properties for certain types of equipment.

SAE 30305: Similar to SAE 30304 but capable of lower hardness. Has greater ductility with slower work-hardening tendency.

SAE 30309: A steel with high heat-resisting qualities which is resistant to oxidation at temperatures up to about 1800°F (980°C).

SAE 30310: This steel has the highest heat-resisting properties of the chromium nickel steels listed here and will resist oxidation at temperatures up to about 1900°F (1040°C).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SAE 30316: Recommended for use in parts where unusual resistance to chemical or salt water corrosion is necessary. It has superior creep strength at elevated temperatures.

SAE 30317: Similar to SAE 30316 but has the highest corrosion resistance of all these alloys in many environments.

SAE 30321: Recommended for use in the manufacture of welded structures where heat treatment after welding is not feasible. It is also recommended for use where temperatures up to 1600°F (870°C) are encountered in service.

SAE 30325: Used for such parts as heat control shafts.

SAE 30347: This steel is similar to SAE 30321. This niobium alloy is sometimes preferred to titanium because niobium is less likely to be lost in welding operations.

Stainless Chromium Irons and Steels.—*SAE 51409:* An 11 percent chromium alloy developed especially for automotive mufflers and tailpipes. Resistance to corrosion and oxidation is very similar to SAE 51410. It is nonhardenable and has good forming and welding characteristics. This alloy is recommended for mildly corrosive applications where surface appearance is not critical.

SAE 51410: A general-purpose stainless steel capable of heat treatment to show good physical properties. It is used for general stainless applications, both in the annealed and heat-treated condition, but is not as resistant to corrosion as SAE 51430 in either the annealed or heat-treated condition.

SAE 51414: A corrosion and heat-resisting nickel-bearing chromium steel with somewhat better corrosion resistance than SAE 51410. It will attain slightly higher mechanical properties when heat treated than SAE 51410. It is used in the form of tempered strip or wire, and in bars and forgings for heat-treated parts.

SAE 51416F: A free-machining grade for the manufacture of parts produced in automatic screw machines.

SAE 51420: This steel is heat-treatable to a relatively high hardness. It will harden to a maximum of approximately 500 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number). Maximum corrosion-resisting qualities exist only in the fully hardened condition. It is used for cutlery, hardened pump shafts, etc.

SAE 51420F: This is similar to SAE 51420 except for its free-machining properties.

SAE 51430: This high-chromium steel is not capable of heat treatment and is recommended for use in shallow parts requiring moderate draw. Corrosion and heat resistance are superior to SAE 51410.

SAE 51430F: This steel is similar to SAE 51430 except for its free-machining properties.

SAE 51431: This nickel-bearing chromium steel is designed for heat treatment to high mechanical properties. Its corrosion resistance is superior to other hardenable steels.

SAE 51440A: A hardenable chromium steel with greater quenched hardness than SAE 51420 and greater toughness than SAE 51440B and 51440C. Maximum corrosion resistance is obtained in the fully hardened and polished condition.

SAE 51440B: A hardenable chromium steel with greater quenched hardness than SAE 51440A. Maximum corrosion resistance is obtained in the fully hardened and polished condition. Capable of hardening to 50–60 RC (Rockwell C scale) depending on carbon content.

SAE 51440C: This steel has the greatest quenched hardness and wear resistance on heat treatment of any corrosion- or heat-resistant steel.

SAE 51440F: The same as SAE 51440C, except for its free-machining characteristics.

SAE 51442: A corrosion- and heat-resisting chromium steel with corrosion-resisting properties slightly better than SAE 51430 and with good scale resistance up to 1600°F (870°C).

SAE 51446: A corrosion- and heat-resisting steel with maximum amount of chromium consistent with commercial malleability. Used principally for parts that must resist high temperatures in service without scaling. Resists oxidation up to 2000°F (1095°C).

SAE 51501: Used for its heat and corrosion resistance and good mechanical properties at temperatures up to approximately 1000°F (540°C).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

High-Strength, Low-Alloy Steels.—High-strength, low-alloy (HSLA) steel represents a specific group of steels in which enhanced mechanical properties and, sometimes, resistance to atmospheric corrosion are obtained by the addition of moderate amounts of one or more alloying elements other than carbon. Different types are available, some of which are carbon-manganese steels and others contain further alloy additions, governed by special requirements for weldability, formability, toughness, strength, and economics. These steels may be obtained in the form of sheet, strip, plates, structural shapes, bars, and bar size sections.

HSLA steels are especially characterized by their mechanical properties, obtained in the as-rolled condition. They are not intended for quenching and tempering. For certain applications, they are sometimes annealed, normalized, or stress relieved with some influence on mechanical properties.

Where these steels are used for fabrication by welding, care must be exercised in selection of grade and in the details of the welding process. Certain grades may be welded without preheat or postheat.

Because of their high strength-to-weight ratio, abrasion resistance, and, in certain compositions, improved atmospheric corrosion resistance, these steels are adapted particularly for use in mobile equipment and other structures where substantial weight savings are generally desirable. Typical applications are truck bodies, frames, structural members, scrapers, truck wheels, cranes, shovels, booms, chutes, and conveyors.

Grade 942X: A niobium- or vanadium-treated carbon-manganese high-strength steel similar to 945X and 945C except for somewhat improved welding and forming properties.

Grade 945A: A HSLA steel with excellent welding characteristics, both arc and resistance, and the best formability, weldability, and low-temperature notch toughness of the high-strength steels. It is generally used in sheets, strip, and light plate thicknesses.

Grade 945C: A carbon-manganese high-strength steel with satisfactory arc welding properties if adequate precautions are observed. It is similar to grade 950C, except that lower carbon and manganese improve arc welding characteristics, formability, and low-temperature notch toughness at some sacrifice in strength.

Grade 945X: A niobium- or vanadium-treated carbon-manganese high-strength steel similar to 945C, except for somewhat improved welding and forming properties.

Grade 950A: A HSLA steel with good weldability, both arc and resistance, with good low-temperature notch toughness, and good formability. It is generally used in sheet, strip, and light plate thicknesses.

Grade 950B: A HSLA steel with satisfactory arc welding properties and fairly good low-temperature notch toughness and formability.

Grade 950C: A carbon-manganese high-strength steel that can be arc welded with special precautions, but is unsuitable for resistance welding. The formability and toughness are fair.

Grade 950D: A HSLA steel with good weldability, both arc and resistance, and fairly good formability. Where low-temperature properties are important, the effect of phosphorus in conjunction with other elements present should be considered.

Grade 950X: A niobium- or vanadium-treated carbon-manganese high-strength steel similar to 950C, except for somewhat improved welding and forming properties.

Grades 955X, 960X, 965X, 970X, 980X: These are steels similar to 945X and 950X with higher strength obtained by increased amounts of strengthening elements, such as carbon or manganese, or by the addition of nitrogen up to about 0.015 percent. This increased strength involves reduced formability and usually decreased weldability. Toughness will vary considerably with composition and mill practice.

The formability, composition, and minimum mechanical properties of the HSLA steel grades are shown in Table 7 through Table 9 on page 418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. HSLA Steel Grades in Approximate Order of Increasing Excellence

	Weldability	Formability	Toughness
	980X	980X	980X
	970X	970X	970X
	965X	965X	965X
	960X	960X	960X
	955X, 950C, 942X	955X	955X
	945C	950C	945C, 950C, 942X
	950B, 950X	950D	945X, 950X
	945X	950B, 950X, 942X	950D
	950D	945C, 945X	950B
	950A	950A	950A
(Best)	945A	945A	945A

Source: SAE Handbook, 1990. Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table 8. Chemical Composition Ladle Analysis of HSLA Steels (max. percent)

Grade	C	Mn	P	Grade	C	Mn	P
942X	0.21	1.35	0.04	950D	0.15	1.00	0.15
945A	0.15	1.00	0.04	950X	0.23	1.35	0.04
945C	0.23	1.40	0.04	955X	0.25	1.35	0.04
945X	0.22	1.35	0.04	960X	0.26	1.45	0.04
950A	0.15	1.30	0.04	965X	0.26	1.45	0.04
950B	0.22	1.30	0.04	970X	0.26	1.65	0.04
950C	0.25	1.60	0.04	980X	0.26	1.65	0.04

Sulfur, 0.05 percent max; silicon, 0.90 percent max.

Source: SAE Handbook, 1990. Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table 9. Minimum Mechanical Properties of High-strength Low-alloy Steels

		Tensile Strength[a] (psi)		% Elongation				Tensile Strength[a] (psi)		% Elongation	
Grade	Form	Yield	Ultimate	2 in.	8 in.	Grade	Form	Yield	Ultimate	2 in.	8 in.
942X	Plates, shapes, bars To 4 in. incl.	42,000	60,000	24	20	955X	Sheet and strip	55,000	70,000	20	…
945A, C	Sheet and strip	45,000	60,000	22	…		Plates, shapes, bars				
	Plates, shapes, bars						To 1½ in. incl.	55,000	70,000	…	17
	To ½ in. incl.	45,000	65,000	22	18	960X	Sheet and strip	60,000	75,000	18	…
	½-1½ in. incl.	42,000	62,000	24	19		Plates, shapes, bars				
	1½-3 in. incl.	40,000	62,000	24	19		To 1½ in. incl.	60,000	75,000	…	16
945X	Sheet and strip	45,000	60,000	25	…	965X	Sheet and strip	65,000	80,000	16	…
	Plates, shapes, bars						Plates, shapes, bars				
	To 1½ in. incl.	45,000	60,000	22	19		To ¾ in. incl.	65,000	80,000	…	15
950A, B, C, D	Sheet and strip	50,000	70,000	22	…	970X	Sheet and strip	70,000	85,000	14	…
	Plates, shapes, bars						Plates, shapes, bars				
	To ½ in. incl.	50,000	70,000	22	18		To ¾ in. incl.	70,000	85,000	…	14
	½-1½ in. incl.	45,000	67,000	24	19	980X	Sheet and strip	80,000	95,000	12	…
	1½-3 in. incl.	42,000	63,000	24	19		Plates to ⅜ in. incl.	80,000	95,000	…	10
950X	Sheet and strip	50,000	65,000	22	…						
	Plates, shapes, bars										
	To 1½ in. incl.	50,000	65,000	…	18						

[a] Yield strength to be measured at 0.2 percent offset. Mechanical properties to be determined in accordance with ASTM A370.

Source: SAE Handbook, 1990. Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

Typical Mechanical Properties of Steel.—Table 10 through Table 13 provide expected minimum and/or typical mechanical properties of selected standard carbon and alloy steels and stainless steels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Expected Minimum Mechanical Properties of Cold-Drawn Carbon-Steel Rounds, Squares, and Hexagons

Size, in.	As Cold-Drawn					Cold-Drawn Followed by Low-Temperature Stress Relief					Cold-Drawn Followed by High-Temperature Stress Relief				
	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
	Ultimate	Yield				Ultimate	Yield				Ultimate	Yield			
	1000 lb/in²					1000 lb/in²					1000 lb/in²				
AISI 1018 and 1025 Steels															
⅝ - ⅞	70	60	18	40	143	....	....	....	....	…	65	45	20	45	131
Over ⅞ - 1¼	65	55	16	40	131	....	....	....	....	…	60	45	20	45	121
Over 1¼ - 2	60	50	15	35	121	....	....	....	....	…	55	45	16	40	111
Over 2 - 3	55	45	15	35	111	....	....	....	....	…	50	40	15	40	101
AISI 1117 and 1118 Steels															
⅝ - ⅞	75	65	15	40	149	80	70	15	40	163	70	50	18	45	143
Over ⅞ - 1¼	70	60	15	40	143	75	65	15	40	149	65	50	16	45	131
Over 1¼ - 2	65	55	13	35	131	70	60	13	35	143	60	50	15	40	121
Over 2 - 3	60	50	12	30	121	65	55	12	35	131	55	45	15	40	111
AISI 1035 Steel															
⅝ - ⅞	85	75	13	35	170	90	80	13	35	179	80	60	16	45	163
Over ⅞ - 1¼	80	70	12	35	163	85	75	12	35	170	75	60	15	45	149
Over 1¼ - 2	75	65	12	35	149	80	70	12	35	163	70	60	15	40	143
Over 2 - 3	70	60	10	30	143	75	65	10	30	149	65	55	12	35	131
AISI 1040 and 1140 Steels															
⅝ - ⅞	90	80	12	35	179	95	85	12	35	187	85	65	15	45	170
Over ⅞ - 1¼	85	75	12	35	170	90	80	12	35	179	80	65	15	45	163
Over 1¼ - 2	80	70	10	30	163	85	75	10	30	170	75	60	15	40	149
Over 2 - 3	75	65	10	30	149	80	70	10	30	163	70	55	12	35	143

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **Expected Minimum Mechanical Properties of Cold-Drawn Carbon-Steel Rounds, Squares, and Hexagons**

Size, in.	As Cold-Drawn					Cold-Drawn Followed by Low-Temperature Stress Relief					Cold-Drawn Followed by High-Temperature Stress Relief				
	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN	Tensile Strength		Elongation in 2 inches, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
	Ultimate	Yield				Ultimate	Yield				Ultimate	Yield			
	1000 lb/in²					1000 lb/in²					1000 lb/in²				
AISI 1045, 1145, and 1146 Steels															
⅝-⅞	95	85	12	35	187	100	90	12	35	197	90	70	15	45	179
Over ⅞-1¼	90	80	11	30	179	95	85	11	30	187	85	70	15	45	170
Over 1¼-2	85	75	10	30	170	90	80	10	30	179	80	65	15	40	163
Over 2-3	80	70	10	30	163	85	75	10	25	170	75	60	12	35	149
AISI 1050, 1137, and 1151 Steels															
⅝-⅞	100	90	11	35	197	105	95	11	35	212	95	75	15	45	187
Over ⅞-1¼	95	85	11	30	187	100	90	11	30	197	90	75	15	40	179
Over 1¼-2	90	80	10	30	179	95	85	10	30	187	85	70	15	40	170
Over 2-3	85	75	10	30	170	90	80	10	25	179	80	65	12	35	163
AISI 1141 Steel															
⅝-⅞	105	95	11	30	212	110	100	11	30	223	100	80	15	40	197
Over ⅞-1¼	100	90	10	30	197	105	95	10	30	212	95	80	15	40	187
Over 1¼-2	95	85	10	30	187	100	90	10	25	197	90	75	15	40	179
Over 2-3	90	80	10	20	179	95	85	10	20	187	85	70	12	30	170
AISI 1144 Steel															
⅝-⅞	110	100	10	30	223	115	105	10	30	229	105	85	15	40	212
Over ⅞-1¼	105	95	10	30	212	110	100	10	30	223	100	85	15	40	197
Over 1¼-2	100	90	10	25	197	105	95	10	25	212	95	80	15	35	187
Over 2-3	95	85	10	20	187	100	90	10	20	197	90	75	12	30	179

Source: AISI Committee of Hot-Rolled and Cold-Finished Bar Producers and published in 1974 DATABOOK issue of the American Society for Metals' *Metal Progress* magazine and used with permission.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11a. Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Treatment	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hard-ness, BHN	Impact Strength (Izod), ft-lb
		Ultimate	Yield				
		lb/in^2					
1015	As-rolled	61,000	45,500	39.0	61.0	126	81.5
	Normalized (1700 F)	61,500	47,000	37.0	69.6	121	85.2
	Annealed (1600 F)	56,000	41,250	37.0	69.7	111	84.8
1020	As-rolled	65,000	48,000	36.0	59.0	143	64.0
	Normalized (1600 F)	64,000	50,250	35.8	67.9	131	86.8
	Annealed (1600 F)	57,250	42,750	36.5	66.0	111	91.0
1022	As-rolled	73,000	52,000	35.0	67.0	149	60.0
	Normalized (1700 F)	70,000	52,000	34.0	67.5	143	86.5
	Annealed (1600 F)	65,250	46,000	35.0	63.6	137	89.0
1030	As-rolled	80,000	50,000	32.0	57.0	179	55.0
	Normalized (1700 F)	75,000	50,000	32.0	60.8	149	69.0
	Annealed (1550 F)	67,250	49,500	31.2	57.9	126	51.2
1040	As-rolled	90,000	60,000	25.0	50.0	201	36.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	85,500	54,250	28.0	54.9	170	48.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	75,250	51,250	30.2	57.2	149	32.7
1050	As-rolled	105,000	60,000	20.0	40.0	229	23.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	108,500	62,000	20.0	39.4	217	20.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	92,250	53,000	23.7	39.9	187	12.5
1060	As-rolled	118,000	70,000	17.0	34.0	241	13.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	112,500	61,000	18.0	37.2	229	9.7
	Annealed (1450 F)	90,750	54,000	22.5	38.2	179	8.3
1080	As-rolled	140,000	85,000	12.0	17.0	293	5.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	146,500	76,000	11.0	20.6	293	5.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	89,250	54,500	24.7	45.0	174	4.5
1095	As-rolled	140,000	83,000	9.0	18.0	293	3.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	147,000	72,500	9.5	13.5	293	4.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	95,250	55,000	13.0	20.6	192	2.0
1117	As-rolled	70,600	44,300	33.0	63.0	143	60.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	67,750	44,000	33.5	63.8	137	62.8
	Annealed (1575 F)	62,250	40,500	32.8	58.0	121	69.0
1118	As-rolled	75,600	45,900	32.0	70.0	149	80.0
	Normalized (1700 F)	69,250	46,250	33.5	65.9	143	76.3
	Annealed (1450 F)	65,250	41,250	34.5	66.8	131	78.5
1137	As-rolled	91,000	55,00	28.0	61.0	192	61.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	97,000	57,500	22.5	48.5	197	47.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	84,750	50,000	26.8	53.9	174	36.8
1141	As-rolled	98,000	52,000	22.0	38.0	192	8.2
	Normalized (1650 F)	102,500	58,750	22.7	55.5	201	38.8
	Annealed (1500 F)	86,800	51,200	25.5	49.3	163	25.3
1144	As-rolled	102,000	61,000	21.0	41.0	212	39.0
	Normalized (1650 F)	96,750	58,000	21.0	40.4	197	32.0
	Annealed (1450 F)	84,750	50,250	24.8	41.3	167	48.0

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11a. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels** (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Treatment	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN	Impact Strength (Izod), ft-lb
		Ultimate	Yield				
		lb/in^2					
1340	Normalized (1600 F)	121,250	81,000	22.0	62.9	248	68.2
	Annealed (1475 F)	102,000	63,250	25.5	57.3	207	52.0
3140	Normalized (1600 F)	129,250	87,000	19.7	57.3	262	39.5
	Annealed (1500 F)	100,000	61,250	24.5	50.8	197	34.2
4130	Normalized (1600 F)	97,000	63,250	25.5	59.5	197	63.7
	Annealed (1585 F)	81,250	52,250	28.2	55.6	156	45.5
4140	Normalized (1600 F)	148,000	95,000	17.7	46.8	302	16.7
	Annealed (1500 F)	95,000	60,500	25.7	56.9	197	40.2
4150	Normalized (1600 F)	167,500	106,500	11.7	30.8	321	8.5
	Annealed (1500 F)	105,750	55,000	20.2	40.2	197	18.2
4320	Normalized (1640 F)	115,000	67,250	20.8	50.7	235	53.8
	Annealed (1560 F)	84,000	61,625	29.0	58.4	163	81.0
4340	Normalized (1600 F)	185,500	125,000	12.2	36.3	363	11.7
	Annealed (1490 F)	108,000	68,500	22.0	49.9	217	37.7
4620	Normalized (1650 F)	83,250	53,125	29.0	66.7	174	98.0
	Annealed (1575 F)	74,250	54,000	31.3	60.3	149	69.0
4820	Normalized (1580 F)	109,500	70,250	24.0	59.2	229	81.0
	Annealed (1500 F)	98,750	67,250	22.3	58.8	197	68.5
5140	Normalized (1600 F)	115,000	68,500	22.7	59.2	229	28.0
	Annealed (1525 F)	83,000	42,500	28.6	57.3	167	30.0
5150	Normalized (1600 F)	126,250	76,750	20.7	58.7	255	23.2
	Annealed (1520 F)	98,000	51,750	22.0	43.7	197	18.5
5160	Normalized (1575 F)	138,750	77,000	17.5	44.8	269	8.0
	Annealed (1495 F)	104,750	40,000	17.2	30.6	197	7.4
6150	Normalized (1600 F)	136,250	89,250	21.8	61.0	269	26.2
	Annealed (1500 F)	96,750	59,750	23.0	48.4	197	20.2
8620	Normalized (1675 F)	91,750	51,750	26.3	59.7	183	73.5
	Annealed (1600 F)	77,750	55,875	31.3	62.1	149	82.8
8630	Normalized (1600 F)	94,250	62,250	23.5	53.5	187	69.8
	Annealed (1550 F)	81,750	54,000	29.0	58.9	156	70.2
8650	Normalized (1600 F)	148,500	99,750	14.0	40.4	302	10.0
	Annealed (1465 F)	103,750	56,000	22.5	46.4	212	21.7
8740	Normalized (1600 F)	134,750	88,000	16.0	47.9	269	13.0
	Annealed (1500 F)	100,750	60,250	22.2	46.4	201	29.5
9255	Normalized (1650 F)	135,250	84,000	19.7	43.4	269	10.0
	Annealed (1550 F)	112,250	70,500	21.7	41.1	229	6.5
9310	Normalized (1630 F)	131,500	82,750	18.8	58.1	269	88.0
	Annealed (1550 F)	119,000	63,750	17.3	42.1	241	58.0

[a] All grades are fine-grained except those in the 1100 series that are coarse-grained. Austenitizing temperatures are given in parentheses. Heat-treated specimens were oil-quenched unless otherwise indicated.

Source: Bethlehem Steel Corp. and Republic Steel Corp. as published in 1974 DATA BOOK issue of the American Society for Metals' *Metal Progress* magazine and used with permission.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11b. Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Tempering Temperature, °F	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
		Ultimate	Yield			
		1000 lb/in²				
1030[b]	400	123	94	17	47	495
	600	116	90	19	53	401
	800	106	84	23	60	302
	1000	97	75	28	65	255
	1200	85	64	32	70	207
1040[b]	400	130	96	16	45	514
	600	129	94	18	52	444
	800	122	92	21	57	352
	1000	113	86	23	61	269
	1200	97	72	28	68	201
1040	400	113	86	19	48	262
	600	113	86	20	53	255
	800	110	80	21	54	241
	1000	104	71	26	57	212
	1200	92	63	29	65	192
1050[b]	400	163	117	9	27	514
	600	158	115	13	36	444
	800	145	110	19	48	375
	1000	125	95	23	58	293
	1200	104	78	28	65	235
1050	400	…	…	…	…	…
	600	142	105	14	47	321
	800	136	95	20	50	277
	1000	127	84	23	53	262
	1200	107	68	29	60	223
1060	400	160	113	13	40	321
	600	160	113	13	40	321
	800	156	111	14	41	311
	1000	140	97	17	45	277
	1200	116	76	23	54	229
1080	400	190	142	12	35	388
	600	189	142	12	35	388
	800	187	138	13	36	375
	1000	164	117	16	40	321
	1200	129	87	21	50	255
1095[b]	400	216	152	10	31	601
	600	212	150	11	33	534
	800	199	139	13	35	388
	1000	165	110	15	40	293
	1200	122	85	20	47	235
1095	400	187	120	10	30	401
	600	183	118	10	30	375
	800	176	112	12	32	363
	1000	158	98	15	37	321
	1200	130	80	21	47	269
1137	400	157	136	5	22	352
	600	143	122	10	33	285
	800	127	106	15	48	262
	1000	110	88	24	62	229
	1200	95	70	28	69	197

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels** (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Tempering Temperature, °F	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
		Ultimate	Yield			
		1000 lb/in^2				
1137[b]	400	217	169	5	17	415
	600	199	163	9	25	375
	800	160	143	14	40	311
	1000	120	105	19	60	262
	1200	94	77	25	69	187
1141	400	237	176	6	17	461
	600	212	186	9	32	415
	800	169	150	12	47	331
	1000	130	111	18	57	262
	1200	103	86	23	62	217
1144	400	127	91	17	36	277
	600	126	90	17	40	262
	800	123	88	18	42	248
	1000	117	83	20	46	235
	1200	105	73	23	55	217
1330[b]	400	232	211	9	39	459
	600	207	186	9	44	402
	800	168	150	15	53	335
	1000	127	112	18	60	263
	1200	106	83	23	63	216
1340	400	262	231	11	35	505
	600	230	206	12	43	453
	800	183	167	14	51	375
	1000	140	120	17	58	295
	1200	116	90	22	66	252
4037	400	149	110	6	38	310
	600	138	111	14	53	295
	800	127	106	20	60	270
	1000	115	95	23	63	247
	1200	101	61	29	60	220
4042	400	261	241	12	37	516
	600	234	211	13	42	455
	800	187	170	15	51	380
	1000	143	128	20	59	300
	1200	115	100	28	66	238
4130[b]	400	236	212	10	41	467
	600	217	200	11	43	435
	800	186	173	13	49	380
	1000	150	132	17	57	315
	1200	118	102	22	64	245
4140	400	257	238	8	38	510
	600	225	208	9	43	445
	800	181	165	13	49	370
	1000	138	121	18	58	285
	1200	110	95	22	63	230
4150	400	280	250	10	39	530
	600	256	231	10	40	495
	800	220	200	12	45	440
	1000	175	160	15	52	370
	1200	139	122	19	60	290
4340	400	272	243	10	38	520
	600	250	230	10	40	486
	800	213	198	10	44	430
	1000	170	156	13	51	360
	1200	140	124	19	60	280

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels** (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Tempering Temperature, °F	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
		Ultimate	Yield			
		1000 lb/in²				
5046	400	253	204	9	25	482
	600	205	168	10	37	401
	800	165	135	13	50	336
	1000	136	111	18	61	282
	1200	114	95	24	66	235
50B46	400	…	…	…	…	560
	600	258	235	10	37	505
	800	202	181	13	47	405
	1000	157	142	17	51	322
	1200	128	115	22	60	273
50B60	400	…	…	…	…	600
	600	273	257	8	32	525
	800	219	201	11	34	435
	1000	163	145	15	38	350
	1200	130	113	19	50	290
5130	400	234	220	10	40	475
	600	217	204	10	46	440
	800	185	175	12	51	379
	1000	150	136	15	56	305
	1200	115	100	20	63	245
5140	400	260	238	9	38	490
	600	229	210	10	43	450
	800	190	170	13	50	365
	1000	145	125	17	58	280
	1200	110	96	25	66	235
5150	400	282	251	5	37	525
	600	252	230	6	40	475
	800	210	190	9	47	410
	1000	163	150	15	54	340
	1200	117	118	20	60	270
5160	400	322	260	4	10	627
	600	290	257	9	30	555
	800	233	212	10	37	461
	1000	169	151	12	47	341
	1200	130	116	20	56	269
51B60	400	…	…	…	…	600
	600	…	…	…	…	540
	800	237	216	11	36	460
	1000	175	160	15	44	355
	1200	140	126	20	47	290
6150	400	280	245	8	38	538
	600	250	228	8	39	483
	800	208	193	10	43	420
	1000	168	155	13	50	345
	1200	137	122	17	58	282
81B45	400	295	250	10	33	550
	600	256	228	8	42	475
	800	204	190	11	48	405
	1000	160	149	16	53	338
	1200	130	115	20	55	280

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Selected Carbon and Alloy Steels** (Hot Rolled, Normalized, and Annealed)

AISI No.[a]	Tempering Temperature, °F	Tensile Strength		Elongation, Percent	Reduction in Area, Percent	Hardness, BHN
		Ultimate	Yield			
		1000 lb/in²				
8630	400	238	218	9	38	465
	600	215	202	10	42	430
	800	185	170	13	47	375
	1000	150	130	17	54	310
	1200	112	100	23	63	240
8640	400	270	242	10	40	505
	600	240	220	10	41	460
	800	200	188	12	45	400
	1000	160	150	16	54	340
	1200	130	116	20	62	280
86B45	400	287	238	9	31	525
	600	246	225	9	40	475
	800	200	191	11	41	395
	1000	160	150	15	49	335
	1200	131	127	19	58	280
8650	400	281	243	10	38	525
	600	250	225	10	40	490
	800	210	192	12	45	420
	1000	170	153	15	51	340
	1200	140	120	20	58	280
8660	400	…	…	…	…	580
	600	…	…	…	…	535
	800	237	225	13	37	460
	1000	190	176	17	46	370
	1200	155	138	20	53	315
8740	400	290	240	10	41	578
	600	249	225	11	46	495
	800	208	197	13	50	415
	1000	175	165	15	55	363
	1200	143	131	20	60	302
9255	400	305	297	1	3	601
	600	281	260	4	10	578
	800	233	216	8	22	477
	1000	182	160	15	32	352
	1200	144	118	20	42	285
9260	400	…	…	…	…	600
	600	…	…	…	…	540
	800	255	218	8	24	470
	1000	192	164	12	30	390
	1200	142	118	20	43	295
94B30	400	250	225	12	46	475
	600	232	206	12	49	445
	800	195	175	13	57	382
	1000	145	135	16	65	307
	1200	120	105	21	69	250

[a] All grades are fine-grained except those in the 1100 series that are coarse-grained. Austenitizing temperatures are given in parentheses. Heat-treated specimens were oil-quenched unless otherwise indicated.

[b] Water quenched.

Source: Bethlehem Steel Corp. and Republic Steel Corp. as published in 1974 DATA BOOK issue of the American Society for Metals' *Metal Progress* magazine and used with permission.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Nominal Mechanical Properties of Standard Stainless Steels

Grade	Condition	Ultimate Tensile Strength (psi)	0.2 Percent Yield Strength (psi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Reduction of Area (%)	Hardness	
						Rockwell	BHN
Austenitic Steels							
201	Annealed	115,000	55,000	55	…	90 RB	…
	¼-hard	125,000[a]	75,000[a]	20[a]	…	25 RC	…
	½-hard	150,000[a]	110,000[a]	10[a]	…	32 RC	…
	¾-hard	175,000[a]	135,000[a]	5[a]	…	37 RC	…
	Full-hard	185,000[a]	140,000[a]	4[a]	…	41 RC	…
202	Annealed	105,000	55,000	55	…	90 RB	…
	¼-hard	125,000[a]	75,000[a]	12[a]	…	27 RC	…
301	Annealed	110,000	40,000	60	…	85 RB	165
	¼-hard	125,000[a]	75,000[a]	25[a]	…	25 RC	…
	½-hard	150,000[a]	110,000[a]	15[a]	…	32 RC	…
	¾-hard	175,000[a]	135,000[a]	12[a]	…	37 RC	…
	Full-hard	185,000	140,000[a]	8[a]	…	41 RC	…
302	Annealed	90,000	37,000	55	65	82 RB	155
	1/4-hard (sheet, strip)	125,000[a]	75,000[a]	12[a]	…	25 RC	…
	Cold-drawn (bar, wire)[b]	To 350,000	…	…	…	…	…
302B	Annealed	95,000	40,000	50	65	85 RB	165
303, 303Se	Annealed	90,000	35,000	50	55	84 RB	160
304	Annealed	85,000	35,000	55	65	80 RB	150
304L	Annealed	80,000	30,000	55	65	76 RB	140
305	Annealed	85,000	37,000	55	70	82 RB	156
308	Annealed	85,000	35,000	55	65	80 RB	150
309, 309S	Annealed	90,000	40,000	45	65	85 RB	165
310, 310S	Annealed	95,000	40,000	45	65	87 RB	170
314	Annealed	100,000	50,000	45	60	87 RB	170
316	Annealed	85,000	35,000	55	70	80 RB	150
	Cold-drawn (bar, wire)[b]	To 300,000	…	…	…	…	…
316L	Annealed	78,000	30,000	55	65	76 RB	145
317	Annealed	90,000	40,000	50	55	85 RB	160
321	Annealed	87,000	35,000	55	65	80 RB	150
347, 348	Annealed	92,000	35,000	50	65	84 RB	160
Martensitic Steels							
403, 410, 416, 416Se	Annealed	75,000	40,000	30	65	82 RB	155
	Hardened[c]	…	…	…	…	43 RC	410
	Tempered at						
	400°F	190,000	145,000	15	55	41 RC	390
	600°F	180,000	140,000	15	55	39 RC	375
	800°F	195,000	150,000	17	55	41 RC	390
	1000°F	145,000	115,000	20	65	31 RC	300
	1200°F	110,000	85,000	23	65	97 RB	225
	1400°F	90,000	60,000	30	70	89 RB	180

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **Nominal Mechanical Properties of Standard Stainless Steels**

Grade	Condition	Ultimate Tensile Strength (psi)	0.2 Percent Yield Strength (psi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Reduction of Area (%)	Hardness	
						Rockwell	BHN
Martensitic Steels *(Continued)*							
414	Annealed	120,000	95,000	17	55	22 RC	235
	Hardened[c]	…	…	…	…	44 RC	426
	Tempered at						
	400°F	200,000	150,000	15	55	43 RC	415
	600°F	190,000	145,000	15	55	41 RC	400
	800°F	200,000	150,000	16	58	43 RC	415
	1000°F	145,000	120,000	20	60	34 RC	325
	1200°F	120,000	105,000	20	65	24 RC	260
420, 420F	Annealed	95,000	50,000	25	55	92 RB	195
	Hardened[d]	…	…	…	…	54 RC	540
	Tempered at						
	600°F	230,000	195,000	8	25	50 RC	500
431	Annealed	125,000	95,000	20	60	24 RC	260
	Hardened[d]	…	…	…	…	45 RC	440
	Tempered at						
	400°F	205,000	155,000	15	55	43 RC	415
	600°F	195,000	150,000	15	55	41 RC	400
	800°F	205,000	155,000	15	60	43 RC	415
	1000°F	150,000	130,000	18	60	34 RC	325
	1200°F	125,000	95,000	20	60	24 RC	260
440A	Annealed	105,000	60,000	20	45	95 RB	215
	Hardened[d]	…	…	…	…	56 RC	570
	Tempered						
	600°F	260,000	240,000	5	20	51 RC	510
440B	Annealed	107,000	62,000	18	35	96 RB	220
	Hardened[d]	…	…	…	…	58 RC	590
	Tempered						
	600°F	280,000	270,000	3	15	55 RC	555
440C, 440F	Annealed	110,000	65,000	13	25	97 RB	230
	Hardened[d]	…	…	…	…	60 RC	610
	Tempered						
	600°F	285,000	275,000	2	10	57 RC	580
501	Annealed	70,000	30,000	28	65	…	160
502	Annealed	70,000	30,000	30	75	80 RB	150
Ferritic Steels							
405	Annealed	70,000	40,000	30	60	80 RB	150
430	Annealed	75,000	45,000	30	60	82 RB	155
430F, 430FSe	Annealed	80,000	55,000	25	60	86 RB	170
446	Annealed	80,000	50,000	23	50	86 RB	170

[a] Minimum.
[b] Depending on size and amount of cold reduction.
[c] Hardening temperature 1800°F (982°C), 1-inch-diameter bars.
[d] Hardening temperature 1900°F (1038°C), 1-inch-diameter bars.
Source: Metals Handbook, 8th edition, Volume 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Strength Data for Iron and Steel

Material	Ultimate Strength			Yield Strength, Thousands of Pounds per Square Inch	Modulus of Elasticity	
	Tension, Thousands of Pounds per Square Inch, *T*	Compression, in terms of *T*	Shear, in terms of *T*		Tension, Millions of psi, *E*	Shear,[a] in terms of *E*
Cast iron, gray, class 20	20[b]	3.6*T* to 4.4*T*	1.6*T*	…	11.6	0.40*E*
class 25	25[b]	3.6*T* to 4.4*T*	1.4*T*	…	14.2	0.40*E*
class 30	30[b]	3.7*T*	1.4*T*	…	14.5	0.40*E*
class 35	35[b]	3.2*T* to 3.9*T*	1.4*T*	…	16.0	0.40*E*
class 40	40[b]	3.1*T* to 3.4*T*	1.3*T*	…	17	0.40*E*
class 50	50[b]	3.0*T* to 3.4*T*	1.3*T*	…	18	0.40*E*
class 60	60[b]	2.8*T*	1.0*T*	…	19.9	0.40*E*
malleable	40 to 100[c]	…	…	30 to 80[c]	25	0.43*E*
nodular (ductile iron)	60 to 120[d]	…	…	40 to 90[d]	23	…
Cast steel, carbon	60 to 100	*T*	0.75*T*	30 to 70	30	0.38*E*
low-alloy	70 to 200	*T*	0.75*T*	45 to 170	30	0.38*E*
Steel, SAE 950 (low-alloy)	65 to 70	*T*	0.75*T*	45 to 50	30	0.38*E*
1025 (low-carbon)	60 to 103	*T*	0.75*T*	40 to 90	30	0.38*E*
1045 (medium-carbon)	80 to 182	*T*	0.75*T*	50 to 162	30	0.38*E*
1095 (high-carbon)	90 to 213	*T*	0.75*T*	20 to 150	30	0.39*E*
1112 (free-cuttting)*	60 to 100	*T*	0.75*T*	30 to 95	30	0.38*E*
1212 (free-cuttting)	57 to 80	*T*	0.75*T*	25 to 72	30	0.38*E*
1330 (alloy)	90 to 162	*T*	0.75*T*	27 to 149	30	0.38*E*
2517 (alloy)[e]	88 to 190	*T*	0.75*T*	60 to 155	30	0.38*E*
3140 (alloy)	93 to 188	*T*	0.75*T*	62 to 162	30	0.38*E*
3310 (alloy)[e]	104 to 172	*T*	0.75*T*	56 to 142	30	0.38*E*
4023 (alloy)[e]	105 to 170	*T*	0.75*T*	60 to 114	30	0.38*E*
4130 (alloy)	81 to 179	*T*	0.75*T*	46 to 161	30	0.38*E*
4340 (alloy)	109 to 220	*T*	0.75*T*	68 to 200	30	0.38*E*
4640 (alloy)	98 to 192	*T*	0.75*T*	62 to 169	30	0.38*E*
4820 (alloy)[e]	98 to 209	*T*	0.75*T*	68 to 184	30	0.38*E*
5150 (alloy)	98 to 210	*T*	0.75*T*	51 to 190	30	0.38*E*
52100 (alloy)	100 to 238	*T*	0.75*T*	81 to 228	30	0.38*E*
6150 (alloy)	96 to 228	*T*	0.75*T*	59 to 210	30	0.38*E*
8650 (alloy)	110 to 228	*T*	0.75*T*	69 to 206	30	0.38*E*
8740 (alloy)	100 to 179	*T*	0.75*T*	60 to 165	30	0.38*E*
9310 (alloy)[e]	117 to 187	*T*	0.75*T*	63 to 162	30	0.38*E*
9840 (alloy)	120 to 285	*T*	0.75*T*	45 to 50	30	0.38*E*
Steel, stainless, SAE						
30302[f]	85 to 125	*T*	…	35 to 95	28	0.45*E*
30321[f]	85 to 95	*T*	…	30 to 60	28	…
30347[f]	90 to 100	*T*	…	35 to 65	28	…
51420[g]	95 to 230	*T*	…	50 to 195	29	0.40*E*
51430[h]	75 to 85	*T*	…	40 to 70	29	…
51446[h]	80 to 85	*T*	…	50 to 70	29	…
51501[g]	70 to 175	*T*	…	30 to 135	29	…
Steel, structural						
common	60 to 75	*T*	0.75*T*	33[b]	29	0.41*E*
rivet	52 to 62	*T*	0.75*T*	28[b]	29	…
rivet, high-strength	68 to 82	*T*	0.75*T*	38[b]	29	…
Wrought iron	34 to 54	*T*	0.83*T*	23 to 32	28	…

[a] Synonymous in other literature to the modulus of elasticity in torsion and the modulus of rigidity, *G*.

[b] Minimum specified value of the American Society for Testing and Materials. The specifications for the various materials are as follows: Cast iron, ASTM A48; structural steel for bridges and structures, ASTM A7; structural rivet steel, ASTM A141; high-strength structural rivet steel, ASTM A195.

[c] Range of minimum specified values of the ASTM (ASTM A47, A197, and A220).

[d] Range of minimum specified values of the ASTM (ASTM A339) and the Munitions Board Standards Agency (MIL-I-17166A and MIL-I-11466).

[e] Carburizing grades of steel.

[f] Nonhardenable nickel-chromium and chromium-nickel-manganese steel (austenitic).

[g] Hardenable chromium steel (martensitic).

[h] Nonhardenable chromium steel (ferritic).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TOOL STEELS

Overview

As the designation implies, tool steels serve primarily for making tools used in manufacturing and in the trades for the working and forming of metals, wood, plastics, and other industrial materials. Tools must withstand high specific loads, often concentrated at exposed areas, may have to operate at elevated or rapidly changing temperatures and in continual contact with abrasive types of work materials, and are often subjected to shocks, or may have to perform under other varieties of adverse conditions. Nevertheless, when employed under circumstances that are regarded as normal operating conditions, the tool should not suffer major damage, untimely wear resulting in the dulling of the edges, or be susceptible to detrimental metallurgical changes.

Tools for less demanding uses, such as ordinary handtools, including hammers, chisels, files, mining bits, etc., are often made of standard AISI steels that are not considered to belong to any of the tool steel categories.

The steel for most types of tools must be used in a heat-treated state, usually hardened and tempered, to provide properties needed for a particular application. Adaptability to heat treatment, with minimum harmful effects, dependably resulting in intended beneficial changes in material properties, is another requirement for tool steels.

To meet such varied requirements, steel types of different chemical composition, often produced by special metallurgical processes, have been developed. Due to the large number of tool steel types produced by the steel mills, which generally are made available with proprietary designations, it is rather difficult for the user to select those types that are most suitable for any specific application, unless the recommendations of a particular steel producer or producers are obtained.

Substantial clarification has resulted from the development of a classification system that is now widely accepted throughout the industry, on the part of both the producers and the users of tool steels. The tool steel classification system establishes seven basic categories of tool and die steels. These categories are associated with the predominant applicational characteristics of the tool steel types they comprise. A few of these categories are composed of several groups to distinguish between families of steel types that, while serving the same general purpose, differ with regard to one or more dominant characteristics. The classification categories are given in Table 3.

To provide an easily applicable guide for the selection of tool steel types best suited for a particular application, the subsequent discussions and tables are based on the previously mentioned application-related categories. As an introduction to the detailed surveys, a concise discussion is presented of the principal tool steel characteristics that govern the suitability for varying service purposes and operational conditions. A brief review of the major steel alloying elements and of the effect of these constituents on the significant characteristics of tool steels is also given in the following sections.

The Properties of Tool Steels.—Tool steels must possess certain properties to a higher than ordinary degree to make them adaptable for uses that require the ability to sustain heavy loads and perform dependably even under adverse conditions. The extent and types of loads, operating conditions, and expected performance with regard to both duration and level of consistency are the principal considerations, in combination with aspects of cost, that govern selection of tool steels for specific applications.

Although it is not possible to define and apply exact parameters for measuring significant tool steel characteristics, certain properties can be determined that may assist in appraising suitability of various tool steels for specific uses. AISI standards define the chemical composition of tool steels, but the quality of ingredients (such as element purity and initial particle size) and processing of materials (manufacturing methods and heat-treatment parameters) can result in different properties. Material testing and controlled processes help ensure that desired properties are obtained.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Because tool steels are generally heat treated to make them adaptable to the intended use by enhancing the desirable properties, *the behavior of the steel during heat treatment* is of prime importance. The behavior of the steel comprises, in this respect, both the resistance to harmful effects and the attainment of the desirable properties. The following are considered the major properties related to heat treatment:

Safety in Hardening: This designation expresses the ability of the steel to withstand the harmful effects of exposure to very high heat and particularly to the sudden temperature changes during quenching, without harmful effects. One way of obtaining this property is by adding alloying elements to reduce the critical speed at which quenching must be carried out, thus permitting the use of milder quenching media, such as oil, salt, or just still air.

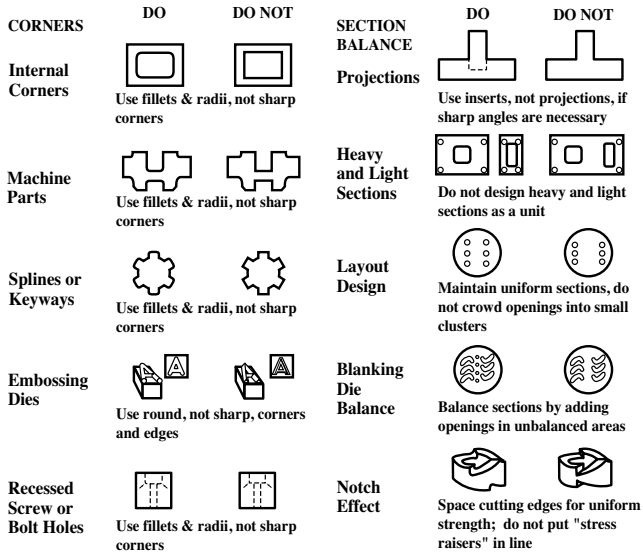

CORNERS
DO
DO NOT
Internal Corners
Use fillets & radii, not sharp corners
Machine Parts
Use fillets & radii, not sharp corners
Splines or Keyways
Use fillets & radii, not sharp corners
Embossing Dies
Use round, not sharp, corners and edges
Recessed Screw or Bolt Holes
Use fillets & radii, not sharp corners
SECTION BALANCE
DO
DO NOT
Projections
Use inserts, not projections, if sharp angles are necessary
Heavy and Light Sections
Do not design heavy and light sections as a unit
Layout Design
Maintain uniform sections, do not crowd openings into small clusters
Blanking Die Balance
Balance sections by adding openings in unbalanced areas
Notch Effect
Space cutting edges for uniform strength; do not put "stress raisers" in line

Fig. 1. Tool and Die Design Tips to Reduce Breakage in Heat Treatment
Courtesy of Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.

Parts made of tool steel suffer most commonly during heat treatment from the development of cracks. In addition to the composition of the steel and the applied heat-treating process, the configuration of the part can also affect the sensitivity to cracking. The preceding figure illustrates a few design characteristics related to cracking and warpage in heat treatment; the observation of these design tips, which call for generous filleting, avoidance of sharp angles, and major changes without transition in the cross-section, is particularly advisable when using tool steel types with a low index value for safety in hardening.

In current practice, the previously mentioned property of tool steels is rated in the order of decreasing safety (i.e., increasing sensitivity) as Highest, Very High, High, Medium, and Low safety, expressed in Table 6 through Table 11 by the letters A, B, C, D, and E.

Distortions in Heat Treating: In parts made from tool steels, distortions are often a consequence of inadequate design (See Fig. 1) or improper heat treatment (e.g., lack of stress relieving). However, certain types of tool steels display different degrees of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

sensitivity to distortion. Steels that are less stable require safer design of the parts for which they are used, more careful heat treatment, including the proper support for long and slender parts, or thin sections, and possibly greater grinding allowance to permit subsequent correction of the distorted shape. Some parts made of a type of steel generally sensitive to distortions can be heat treated with very little damage when the requirements of the part call for a relatively shallow hardened layer over a soft core. However, for intricate shapes and large tools, steel types should be selected that possess superior nondeforming properties. The ratings used in Table 6 through Table 11 express the nondeforming properties (stability of shape in heat treatment) of the steel types and start with the lowest distortion (the best stability) designated as A; the greatest susceptibility to distortion is designated as E.

Depth of Hardening: Hardening depth is indicated by a relative rating based on how deep the phase transformation penetrates from the surface and thus produces a hardened layer. Because of the effect of the heat-treating process, and particularly of the applied quenching medium, on the depth of hardness, reference is made in Table 6 through Table 11 to the quench that results in the listed relative hardenability values. These values are designated by letters A, B, and C, expressing deep, medium, and shallow depth, respectively.

Resistance to Decarburization: Higher or lower sensitivity to losing a part of the carbon content of the surface exposed to heat depends on the chemistry of the steel. The sensitivity can be balanced partially by appropriate heat-treating equipment and processes. Also, the amount of material to be removed from the surface after heat treatment, usually by grinding, should be specified in such a manner as to avoid the retention of a decarburized layer on functional surfaces. The relative resistance of individual tool steel types to decarburization during heat treatment is rated in Table 6 through Table 11 from High to Low, expressed by the letters A, B, and C.

Tool steels must be workable with available means, without requiring highly specialized processes. The tools made from these steels must, of course, perform adequately, often under adverse environmental and burdensome operational conditions. The ability of individual types of tool steels to satisfy, to different degrees, such applicational requirements can be appraised based on significant properties, such as the following.

Machinability: Tools are precision products whose final shape and dimensions must be produced by machining, a process to which not all tool steel types lend themselves equally. The difference in machinability is particularly evident in tool steels that, depending on their chemical composition, may contain substantial amounts of metallic carbides, beneficial to increased wear resistance, yet detrimental to service life of tools with which the steel has to be worked. The microstructure of the steel type can also affect the ease of machining and, in some types, certain phase conditions, such as those due to low carbon content, may cause difficulties in achieving a fine surface finish. Machinability of certain types of tool steels may be improved by adding small amounts of sulfur or lead. Note that machinability ratings may be defined for a single cutting process not optimal for the material grades being considered.

Machinability affects the cost of making the tool, particularly for intricate tool shapes, and must be considered in selection of the steel to be used. The ratings in Table 6 through Table 11, starting with A for the greatest ease of machining to E for the lowest machinability, refer to working of the steel in an unhardened condition. Machinability is not necessarily identical with grindability, which expresses how well the steel is adapted to grinding after heat treating. The ease of grinding, however, may become an important consideration in tool steel selection, particularly for cutting tools and dies, which require regular sharpening involving extensive grinding. AVCO Bay State Abrasives Company compiled information on the relative grindability of frequently used types of tool steels. A simplified version of that information is presented in Table 1, which assigns the listed tool steel types to one of the following grindability grades: High (A), Medium (B), Low (C), and Very Low (D), expressing decreasing ratios of volume of metal removed to wheel wear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Relative Grindability of Selected Types of Frequently Used Tool Steels

AISI Tool Steel Type	H41	H42	H43	Other H	D2	D3	D5	D7	A Types	O Types	L Types	F Types
Relative Grindability Index	B	B	B	A	B	B	B	C	A	A	A	B

High-Speed Tool Steel Type	M1	M2	M3 (1)	M3 (2)	M4	M7	M8	M10	M15	M36	M43	T1	T2	T3	T5	T6	T15
Relative Grindability Index	A	B	C	C	D	B	A	B	D	B	B	A	B	C	B	B	D

Hot Hardness: This property designates the steel's resistance to the softening effect of elevated temperature. This characteristic is related to the tempering temperature of the type of steel, which is controlled by various alloying elements, such as tungsten, molybdenum, vanadium, cobalt, and chromium. Hot hardness testing is typically performed using a Rockwell or Vickers hardness tester. Hardness is measured over time, with the samples at high temperature (often 2100°F or 1200°C).

Hot hardness is a necessary property of tools used for hot-work, like forging, casting, and hot extrusion. Hot hardness is also important in cutting tools operated at high-speed, which generate sufficient heat to raise their temperature well above the level where ordinary steels lose their hardness; hence the designation *high-speed steels*, which refers to a family of tool steels developed for use at high cutting speeds. Frequently it is the degree of the tool steel's resistance to softening at elevated temperature that governs important process data, such as the applicable cutting speed. In the ratings of Table 6 through Table 11, tool steel types having the highest hot hardness are marked with A. Subsequent letters express gradually decreasing capacity to endure elevated temperature without losing hardness.

Wear Resistance: The gradual erosion of the tool's operating surface, most conspicuously occurring at the exposed edges, is known as wear. Resistance to wear prolongs the useful life of the tool by delaying the degradation of its surface through abrasive contact with the work at regular operating temperatures; these temperatures vary according to the type of process. Wear resistance is observable experimentally and measurable by comparison based on a specific and unchanging set of test parameters. As a result, these ratings must be used with caution. Certain types of metallic carbides embedded into the steel matrix are considered to be the prime contributing factors to wear resistance, besides the hardness of the heat-treated steel material. The ratings of Table 6 through Table 11, starting with A for the best to E for poor, are based on conditions thought to be normal in operations for which various types of tool materials are primarily used.

Toughness: Toughness is amount of energy a material can absorb without fracture. For tool steels, this is the material's ability to withstand shocks, major impacts, and sudden loading and unloading. Steels used for making tools also must be able to absorb such forces with a minimum of elastic deformation and without permanent deformation that would interfere with proper functioning of the tool. Certain types of tool steels, particularly those with high carbon content and without beneficial alloying constituents, tend to be the most sensitive to shocks. They can be made functionally tougher when they are used in tools that permit a hardened case to be supported by a soft core. Also, tempering improves toughness, while generally reducing hardness.

In Table 6 through Table 11, an A rating is for steels with the highest toughness, while an E rating is for steels that are the most sensitive to shocks. These ratings apply to tools heat-treated to hardness values normally used for the particular type of tool steel. Such relative ratings often are used when comparing materials, but toughness also is a measurable property with units of energy. Results of standardized testing methods can be affected by material variations and may not represent performance in real-world applications.

Common Tool Faults and Failures.—The proper selection of the steel grade used for any particular type of tool is of great importance, but it should be recognized that many of the failures experienced in common practice originate from causes other than those related to the tool material.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To permit a better appraisal of the actual causes of failure and possible corrective action, a general, although not complete, list of common tool faults, resulting failures, and corrective actions is shown in Table 2a through Table 2d. In this list, the potential failure causes are grouped into four categories. The possibility of more than a single cause being responsible for the experienced failure should not be excluded.

Note: Examples of tool failures from causes such as those listed in Table 2a through Table 2d may be found in "The Tool Steel Trouble Shooter" handbook, published by Bethlehem Steel Corporation.

Finally, it must be remembered that the proper usage of tools is indispensable for obtaining satisfactory performance and tool life. Using the tools properly involves, for example, the avoidance of damage to the tool, overloading, excessive speeds and feeds, the application of adequate coolant when called for, a rigid setup, proper alignment, and firm tool and work holding.

Table 2a. Common Tool Faults, Failures, and Cures

Improper Tool Design

Fault Description	Probable Failure	Possible Cure
Drastic section changes—widely different thicknesses of adjacent wall sections or protruding elements	In liquid quenching, the thin section will cool and then harden more rapidly than the adjacent thicker section, setting up stresses that may exceed the strength of the steel.	Make such parts of two pieces or use an air-hardening tool steel that avoids the harsh action of a liquid quench.
Sharp corners on shoulders or in square holes	Cracking can occur, particularly in liquid quenching, due to stress concentrations.	Apply fillets to the corners and/or use an air-hardening tool steel.
Sharp cornered keyways	Failure may arise during service and is usually considered to be caused by fatigue.	The use of round keyways should be preferred when the general configuration of the part makes it prone to failure due to square keyways.
Abrupt section changes in battering tools	Due to impact in service, pneumatic tools are particularly sensitive to stress concentrations that lead to fatigue failures.	Use taper transitions, which are better than even generous fillets.
Functional inadequacy of tool design—e.g., insufficient guidance for a punch	Excessive wear or breakage in service may occur.	Assure solid support, avoid unnecessary play, adapt travel length to operational conditions (e.g., punch to penetrate to four-fifths of thickness in hard work material).
Improper tool clearance, such as in blanking and punching tools	Deformed and burred parts may be produced, excessive tool wear or breakage can result.	Adapt clearances to material conditions and dimensions to reduce tool load and to obtain clean sheared surfaces.

The Effect of Alloying Elements on Tool Steel Properties.—*Carbon (C):* The presence of carbon, usually in excess of 0.60 percent for nonalloyed types, is essential for raising the hardenability of steels to the levels needed for tools. Raising the carbon content by different amounts up to a maximum of about 1.3 percent increases the hardness slightly and the wear resistance considerably. The amount of carbon in tool steels is designed to attain certain properties (such as in the water-hardening category where higher carbon content may be chosen to improve wear resistance, although to the detriment of toughness) or, in the alloyed types of tool steels, in conformance with the other constituents to produce well-balanced metallurgical and performance properties.

Manganese (Mn): In small amounts, to about 0.60 percent, manganese is added to reduce brittleness and to improve forgeability. Larger amounts of manganese improve hardenability, permitting oil quenching for nonalloyed carbon steels, thus reducing deformation, although, with regard to several other properties, manganese is not an equivalent replacement for the regular alloying elements.

Silicon (Si): In itself, silicon may not be considered an alloying element of tool steels, but it is needed as a deoxidizer and improves the hot-forming properties of the steel. In combination with certain alloying elements, the silicon content is sometimes raised to about 2 percent to increase the strength and toughness of steels used for tools that have to sustain shock loads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Common Tool Faults, Failures, and Cures
Faulty Condition or Inadequate Grade of Tool Steel

Fault Description	Probable Failure	Possible Cure
Improper tool steel grade selection	Typical failures: Chipping—insufficient toughness. Wear—poor abrasion resistance. Softening—inadequate "red hardness."	Choose the tool steel grade by following recommendations and improve selection when needed, guided by property ratings.
Material defects—voids, streaks, tears, flakes, surface cooling cracks, etc.	When not recognized during material inspection, tools made of defective steel often prove to be useless.	Obtain tool steels from reliable sources and inspect tool material for detectable defects.
Decarburized surface layer ("bark") in rolled tool steel bars	Cracking may originate from the decarburized layer or it will not harden ("soft skin").	Provide allowance for stock to be removed from all surfaces of hot-rolled tool steel. Recommended amounts are listed in tool steel catalogs and vary according to section size, generally about 10 percent for smaller and 5 percent for larger diameters.
Brittleness caused by poor carbide distribution in high-alloy tool steels	Excessive brittleness can cause chipping or breakage during service.	Bars with large diameter (above about 4 inches or 10 cm) tend to be prone to nonuniform carbide distribution. Choose upset forged discs instead of large-diameter bars.
Unfavorable grain flow	Improper grain flow of the steel used for milling cutters and similar tools can cause teeth to break out.	Upset forged discs made with an upset ratio of about 2 to 1 (starting to upset thickness) display radial grain flow. Highly stressed tools, such as gear-shaper cutters, may require the cross forging of blanks.

Tungsten (W): Tungsten is one of the important alloying elements of tool steels, particularly because of two valuable properties: it improves "hot hardness," that is, the resistance of the steel to the softening effect of elevated temperature, and it forms hard, abrasion-resistant carbides, thus improving the wear properties of tool steels.

Vanadium (V): Vanadium contributes to the refinement of the carbide structure and thus improves the forgeability of alloy tool steels. Vanadium has a very strong tendency to form a hard carbide, which improves both the hardness and the wear properties of tool steels. However, a large amount of vanadium carbide makes the grinding of the tool very difficult (causing low grindability).

Molybdenum (Mo): In small amounts, molybdenum improves certain metallurgical properties of alloy steels, such as deep hardening and toughness. It is used often in larger amounts in certain high-speed tool steels to replace tungsten, primarily for economic reasons, often with nearly equivalent results.

Cobalt (Co): As an alloying element of tool steels, cobalt increases hot hardness and is used in applications where that property is needed. Substantial addition of cobalt, however, raises the critical quenching temperature of the steel with a tendency to increase the decarburization of the surface, and reduces toughness.

Chromium (Cr): This element is added in amounts of several percent to high-alloy tool steels and up to 12 percent to types in which chromium is the major alloying element. Chromium improves hardenability and, together with high carbon, provides both wear resistance and toughness, a combination valuable in certain tool applications. However, high chromium raises the hardening temperature of the tool steel and thus can make it prone to hardening deformations. A high percentage of chromium also affects the grindability of the tool steel.

Nickel (Ni): Generally in combination with other alloying elements, particularly chromium, nickel is used to improve the toughness and, to some extent, the wear resistance of tool steels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. Common Tool Faults, Failures, and Cures
Heat-Treatment Faults

Fault Description	Probable Failure	Possible Cure
Improper preparation for heat treatment. Certain tools may require stress relieving or annealing, and often preheating as well	Tools highly stressed during machining or forming, unless stress-relieved, may aggravate the thermal stresses of heat treatment, thus causing cracks. Excessive temperature gradients developed in nonpreheated tools with different section thicknesses can cause warpage.	Stress relieve, when needed, before hardening. Anneal prior to heavy machining or cold forming (e.g., hobbing). Preheat tools (a) having substantial section thickness variations or (b) requiring high quenching temperatures, as those made of high-speed tool steels.
Overheating during hardening; quenching from too high a temperature	Causes grain coarsening and a sensitivity to cracking that is more pronounced in tools with drastic section changes.	Overheated tools have a characteristic microstructure that aids recognition of the cause of failure and indicates the need for improved temperature control.
Low hardening temperature	The tool may not harden at all, or in its outer portion only, thereby setting up stresses that can lead to cracks.	Controlling both the temperature of the furnace and the time of holding the tool at quenching temperature will prevent this not too frequent deficiency.
Inadequate composition or condition of the quenching media	Water-hardening tool steels are particularly sensitive to inadequate quenching media, which can cause soft spots or even violent cracking.	For water-hardening tool steels, use water free of dissolved air and contaminants, also assure sufficient quantity and proper agitation of the quench.
Improper handling during and after quenching	Cracking, particularly of tools with sharp corners, during the heat treatment can result from holding the part too long in the quench or from incorrectly applied tempering.	Following the steel producer's specifications is a safe way to assure proper heat-treatment handling. In general, the tool should be left in the quench until it reaches a temperature of 150–200°F (66–93°C), and should then be transferred promptly into a warm tempering furnace.
Insufficient tempering	Omission of double tempering for steel types that require it may cause early failure by heat checking in hot-work steels or make the tool abnormally sensitive to grinding checks.	Double temper highly alloyed tool steel of the high-speed, hot-work, and high-chromium categories to remove stresses caused by martensite formed during the first tempering phase. Second temper also increases hardness of most high-speed steels.
Decarburization and carburization	Unless hardened in a neutral atmosphere the original carbon content of the tool surface may be changed: Reduced carbon (decarburization) causes a soft layer that wears rapidly. Increased carbon (carburization) when excessive may cause brittleness.	Heating in neutral atmosphere or well-maintained salt bath and controlling the furnace temperature and the time during which the tool is subjected to heating can usually keep the carbon imbalance within acceptable limits.

The addition of more than one element to a steel often produces what is called a synergistic effect. Thus, the combined effects of two or more alloy elements may be greater than the sum of the individual effects of each element.

Classification of Tool Steels.—Steels for tools must satisfy a number of different, often conflicting, requirements. The need for specific steel properties arising from widely varying applications has led to the development of many compositions of tool steels, each intended to meet a particular combination of applicational requirements. The diversity of tool steels, their number being continually expanded by the addition of new developments, makes it extremely difficult for the user to select the type best suited to his needs or to find equivalent alternatives for specific types available from particular sources.

As a cooperative industrial effort under the sponsorship of AISI and SAE, a tool classification system has been developed in which the commonly used tool steels are grouped into seven major categories. These categories, several of which contain more than a single group, are listed in Table 3 with the letter symbols used for their identification. The individual types of tool steels within each category are identified by suffix numbers following the letter symbols.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2d. Common Tool Faults, Failures, and Cures
Grinding Damages

Fault Description	Probable Failure	Possible Cure
Grinding Damages		
Excessive stock removal rate causing heating of the part surface beyond the applied tempering temperature	Scorched tool surface displaying temper colors varying from yellow to purple, depending on the degree of heat, causes softening of the ground surface. When coolant is used, a local rehardening can take place, often resulting in cracks.	Prevention: by reducing speed and feed, or using coarser, softer, more openstructured grinding wheel, with ample coolant. Correction: eliminate the discolored layer by subsequent light stock removal. Not always a cure, because the effects of abusive grinding may not be corrected.
Improper grinding wheel specifications; grain too fine or bond too hard	Intense localized heating during grinding may set up surface stresses causing grinding cracks. These cracks are either parallel but at right angles to the direction of grinding or, when more advanced, form a network. May need cold etch or magnetic particle testing to become recognizable.	Prevention: by correcting the grinding wheel specifications. Correction: in shallow (0.002–0.004-inch, or 0.05–0.1 mm) cracks, by removing the damaged layer, when permitted by the design of the tool, using very light grinding passes.
Incorrectly dressed or loaded grinding wheel	Heating of the work surface can cause scorching or cracking. Incorrect dressing can also cause a poor finish of the ground work surface.	Dress wheel with sharper diamond and faster diamond advance to produce coarser wheel surface. Alternate dressing methods, like crush-dressing, can improve wheel surface conditions. Dress wheel regularly to avoid loading or glazing of the wheel surface.
Inadequate coolant, with regard to composition, amount, distribution, and cleanliness	Introducing into the tool surface heat that is not adequately dissipated or absorbed by the coolant can cause softening or even the development of cracks.	Improve coolant supply and quality, or reduce stock removal rate to reduce generation of heat in grinding.
Damage caused by abusive abrasive cutoff	The intensive heat developed during this process can cause a hardening of the steel surface, or may even result in cracks.	Reduce rate of advance; adopt wheel specifications better suited for the job. Use ample coolant or, when harmful effect not eliminated, replace abrasive cutoff by some cooler-acting stock separation method (e.g., sawing or lathe cutoff) unless damaged surface is being removed by subsequent machining.

Table 3. Classification of Tool Steels

Category Designation	Letter Symbol	Group Designation	Application Type
High-speed tool steels	M	Molybdenum types	Cutting Tools
	M50 - M52	Intermediate types	
	T	Tungsten types	
Hot-work tool steels	H1 - H19	Chromium types	Hot-work
	H20 - H39	Tungsten types	
	H40 - H59	Molybdenum types	
Cold-work tool steels	D	High-carbon, high-chromium types	Cold-work
	A	Medium-alloy, air-hardening types	
	O	Oil-hardening types	
Shock-resistant tool steels	S	—	Cold-work; hot-work (some grades)
Low-carbon tool and mold steels	P	—	Cold-work
Special-purpose tool steels	L	Low-alloy types	Cold-work
	F	Carbon-tungsten types	
Water-hardening tool steels	W	-	Cold-work

The following detailed discussion of tool steels will be in agreement with these categories, showing for each type the percentages of the major alloying elements. However, these values are for identification only; elements in tool steels of different producers in the mean analysis of the individual types may deviate from the listed percentages.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Classification, Approximate Compositions, and Properties Affecting Selection of Tool and Die Steels
(From SAE Recommended Practice)

Type of Tool Steel	Chemical Composition[a]								Non-warping Prop.	Safety in Hardening	Tough-ness	Depth of Hardening	Wear Resistance
	C	Mn	Si	Cr	V	W	Mo	Co					
Water Hardening													
0.80 Carbon	70-0.85	[b]	[b]	[b]	…	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good[c]	Shallow	Fair
0.90 Carbon	0.85-0.95	[b]	[b]	[b]	…	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good[c]	Shallow	Fair
1.00 Carbon	0.95-1.10	[b]	[b]	[b]	…	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good[c]	Shallow	Good
1.20 Carbon	1.10-1.30	[b]	[b]	[b]	…	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good[c]	Shallow	Good
0.90 Carbon-V	0.85-0.95	[b]	[b]	[b]	0.15-0.35	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good	Shallow	Fair
1.00 Carbon-V	0.95-1.10	[b]	[b]	[b]	0.15-0.35	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good	Shallow	Good
1.00 Carbon-VV	0.90-1.10	[b]	[b]	[b]	0.35-0.50	…	…	…	Poor	Fair	Good	Shallow	Good
Oil Hardening													
Low-Manganese	0.90	1.20	0.25	0.50	0.20[d]	0.50	…	…	Good	Good	Fair	Deep	Good
High-Manganese	0.90	1.60	0.25	0.35[d]	0.20[d]	…	0.30[d]	…	Good	Good	Fair	Deep	Good
High-Carbon, High-Chromium[e]	2.15	0.35	0.35	12.00	0.80[d]	0.75[d]	0.80[d]	…	Good	Good	Poor	Through	Best
Chromium	1.00	0.35	0.25	1.40	…	…	0.40	…	Fair	Good	Fair	Deep	Good
Molybdenum Graphitic	1.45	0.75	1.00	…	…	…	0.25	…	Fair	Good	Fair	Deep	Good
Nickel-Chromium[f]	0.75	0.70	0.25	0.85	0.25[d]	…	0.50[d]	…	Fair	Good	Fair	Deep	Fair
Air Hardening													
High-Carbon, High-Chromium	1.50	0.40	0.40	12.00	0.80[d]	…	0.90	0.60[d]	Best	Best	Fair	Through	Best
5 Percent Chromium	1.00	0.60	0.25	5.25	0.40[d]	…	1.10	…	Best	Best	Fair	Through	Good
High-Carbon, High-Chromium-Cobalt	1.50	0.40	0.40	12.00	0.80[d]	…	0.90	3.10	Best	Best	Fair	Through	Best
Shock-Resisting													
Chromium-Tungsten	0.50	0.25	0.35	1.40	0.20	2.25	0.40[d]	…	Fair	Good	Good	Deep	Fair
Silicon-Molybdenum	0.50	0.40	1.00	…	0.25[d]	…	0.50	…	Poor[g]	Poor[h]	Best	Deep	Fair
Silicon-Manganese	0.55	0.80	2.00	0.30[d]	0.25[d]	…	0.40[d]	…	Poor[g]	Poor[h]	Best	Deep	Fair
Hot-Work													
Chromium-Molybdenum-Tungsten	0.35	0.30	1.00	5.00	0.25[d]	1.25	1.50	…	Good	Good	Good	Through	Fair
Chromium-Molybdenum-V	0.35	0.30	1.00	5.00	0.40	…	1.50	…	Good	Good	Good	Through	Fair
Chromium-Molybdenum-VV	0.35	0.30	1.00	5.00	0.90	…	1.50	…	Good	Good	Good	Through	Fair
Tungsten	0.32	0.30	0.20	3.25	0.40	9.00	…	…	Good	Good	Good	Through	Fair

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Classification, Approximate Compositions, and Properties Affecting Selection of Tool and Die Steels**
(From SAE Recommended Practice)

Type of Tool Steel	Chemical Composition[a]								Non-warping Prop.	Safety in Hardening	Tough-ness	Depth of Hardening	Wear Resistance
	C	Mn	Si	Cr	V	W	Mo	Co					
High Speed													
Tungsten, 18-4-1	0.70	0.30	0.30	4.10	1.10	18.00	…	…	Good	Good	Poor	Through	Good
Tungsten, 18-4-2	0.80	0.30	0.30	4.10	2.10	18.50	0.80	…	Good	Good	Poor	Through	Good
Tungsten, 18-4-3	1.05	0.30	0.30	4.10	3.25	18.50	0.70	…	Good	Good	Poor	Through	Best
Cobalt-Tungsten, 14-4-2-5	0.80	0.30	0.30	4.10	2.00	14.00	0.80	5.00	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Cobalt-Tungsten, 18-4-1-5	0.75	0.30	0.30	4.10	1.00	18.00	0.80	5.00	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Cobalt-Tungsten, 18-4-2-8	0.80	0.30	0.30	4.10	1.75	18.50	0.80	8.00	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Cobalt-Tungsten, 18-4-2-12	0.80	0.30	0.30	4.10	1.75	20.00	0.80	12.00	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Molybdenum, 8-2-1	0.80	0.30	0.30	4.00	1.15	1.50	8.50	…	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Molybdenum-Tungsten, 6-6-2	0.83	0.30	0.30	4.10	1.90	6.25	5.00	…	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good
Molybdenum-Tungsten, 6-6-3	1.15	0.30	0.30	4.10	3.25	5.75	5.25	…	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Best
Molybdenum-Tungsten, 6-6-4	1.30	0.30	0.30	4.25	4.25	5.75	5.25	…	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Best
Cobalt-Molybdenum-Tungsten, 6-6-2-8	0.85	0.30	0.30	4.10	2.00	6.00	5.00	8.00	Good	Fair	Poor	Through	Good

[a] C = carbon; Mn = manganese; Si = silicon; Cr = chromium; V = vanadium; W = tungsten; Mo = molybdenum; Co = cobalt.

[b] Carbon tool steels are usually available in four grades or qualities: *Special (Grade 1)*—The highest quality water-hardening carbon tool steel, controlled for hardenability, chemistry held to closest limits, and subject to rigid tests to ensure maximum uniformity in performance; *Extra (Grade 2)*—A high-quality water-hardening carbon tool steel, controlled for hardenability, subject to tests to ensure good service; *Standard (Grade 3)*—A good-quality water-hardening carbon tool steel, not controlled for hardenability, recommended for application where some latitude with respect to uniformity is permissible; *Commercial (Grade 4)*—A commercial-quality water-hardening carbon tool steel, not controlled for hardenability, not subject to special tests. On *special* and *extra* grades, limits on manganese, silicon, and chromium are not generally required if Shepherd hardenability limits are specified. For *standard* and *commercial* grades, limits are 0.35 max. each for Mn and Si; 0.15 max. Cr for standard; 0.20 max. Cr for commercial.

[c] Toughness decreases somewhat when increasing depth of hardening.

[d] Optional element. Steels have found satisfactory application either with or without the element present. In silicon-manganese steel listed under Shock-Resisting, if chromium, vanadium, and molybdenum are not present, then hardenability will be affected.

[e] This steel may have 0.50 percent nickel as an optional element. The steel has been found to give satisfactory application either with or without the element present.

[f] Approximate nickel content of this steel is 1.50 percent.

[g] Poor when water-quenched, fair when oil-quenched.

[h] Poor when water-quenched, good when oil-quenched.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

The Selection of Tool Steels for Particular Applications.—Although the advice of the specialized steel producer is often sought as a reliable source of information, the engineer is still faced with the task of selecting the tool steel. It must be realized that frequently the designation of the tool or of the process will not define the particular tool steel type best suited for the job. For that reason, tool steel selection tables naming a single type for each listed application cannot take into consideration such often conflicting work factors as ease of tool fabrication and maintenance (resharpening), productivity, product quality, and tooling cost. For certain high-speed cutting applications, alternate, advanced materials, such as carbides and ceramics, may be preferable.

When data related to past experience with tool steels for identical or similar applications are not available, a tool steel selection procedure may be followed, based on information in this Handbook section as follows:

Identify the AISI category that contains the type of steel sought by consulting the Quick Reference Guide, Table 5, starting on page 441. Within the defined category:

a) find from the listed applications of the most frequently used types of tool steels the particular type that corresponds to the job on hand; or

b) evaluate from the table of property ratings the best compromise between any conflicting properties (e.g., compromising on wear resistance to obtain better toughness).

For those willing to refine even further the first choice or to improve on it when there is not entirely satisfactory experience in one or more meaningful respects, the identifying analyses of the different types of tool steels within each general category may provide additional guidance. In this procedure, the general discussion of the effects of different alloying elements on the properties of tool steels, in a previous section, will probably be found useful.

The following two examples illustrate the procedure for refining an original choice with the purpose of adopting a tool steel grade best suited to a particular set of conditions:

Example 1, Workpiece—Trimming Dies: For the manufacture of a type of trimming die, the first choice was grade A2 because, for the planned medium rate of production, the lower material cost was considered an advantage.

A subsequent rise in the production rate indicated the use of a higher-alloy tool steel, such as D2, whose increased abrasion resistance would permit longer runs between regrinds.

A still further increase in the abrasion-resistant properties was then sought, which led to the use of D7, the high carbon and high chromium content of which provided excellent edge retainment, although at the cost of greatly reduced grindability. Finally, it became a matter of economic appraisal, whether the somewhat shorter tool regrind intervals (for D2) or the more expensive tool sharpening (for D7) constituted the lesser burden.

Example 2, Workpiece—Circular form cutter made of high-speed tool steel for use on multiple-spindle automatic turning machines: The first choice from Table 5 may be the classical tungsten-base high-speed tool steel T1, because of its good performance and ease of heat treatment, or its alternate in the molybdenum high-speed tool steel category, the type M2.

In practice, neither of these grades provided a tool that could hold its edge and profile over the economical tool change time because of the abrasive properties of the work material and the high cutting speeds applied in the cycle. An overrating of the problem resulted in reaching for the top of the scale, making the tool from T15, a high-alloy high-speed tool steel (high vanadium and high cobalt).

Although the performance of the tools made of T15 was excellent, the cost of this steel type was rather high, and the grinding of the tool, both for making it and in regularly needed resharpening, proved to be very time-consuming and expensive. Therefore, an intermediate tool steel type was tried, the M3 that provided added abrasion resistance (due to increased carbon and vanadium content), and was less expensive and much easier to grind than the T15.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Quick Reference Guide for Tool Steel Selection

Application Areas	Tool Steel Categories and AISI Letter Symbol						
	High-Speed Tool Steels, M and T	Hot-Work Tool Steels, H	Cold-Work Tool Steels, D, A, and O	Shock-Resisting Tool Steels, S	Mold Steels, P	Special-Purpose Tool Steels, L and F	Water-Hardening Tool Steels, W
	Examples of Typical Applications						
Cutting Tools Single-point types (lathe, planer, boring) Milling cutters Drills Reamers Taps Threading dies Form cutters	General-purpose production tools: M2, T1 For increased abrasion resistance: M3, M4, and M10 Heavy-duty work calling for high hot hardness: T5, T15 Heavy-duty work calling for high abrasion resistance: M42, M44		Tools with keen edges (knives, razors) Tools for operations where no high-speed is involved, yet stability in heat treatment and substantial abrasion resistance are needed	Pipe cutter wheels			Uses that do not require hot hardness or high abrasion resistance. Examples with carbon content of applicable group: Taps (1.05/1.10% C) Reamers (1.10/1.15% C) Twist drills (1.20/1.25% C) Files (1.35/1.40% C)
Hot Forging Tools and Dies Dies and inserts Forging machine plungers and pierces	For combining hot hardness with high abrasion resistance: M2, T1	Dies for presses and hammers: H20, H21 For severe conditions over extended service periods: H22 to H26, also H43	Hot trimming dies: D2	Hot trimming dies Blacksmith tools Hot swaging dies			Smith's tools (1.65/0.70% C) Hot chisels (0.70/0.75% C) Drop forging dies (0.90/1.00% C) Applications limited to short-run production
Hot Extrusion Tools and Dies Extrusion dies and mandrels Dummy blocks Valve extrusion tools	Brass extrusion dies: T1	Extrusion dies and dummy blocks: H20 to H26 For tools that are exposed to less heat: H10 to H19		Compression molding: S1			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Quick Reference Guide for Tool Steel Selection**

Application Areas	Tool Steel Categories and AISI Letter Symbol						
	High-Speed Tool Steels, M and T	Hot-Work Tool Steels, H	Cold-Work Tool Steels, D, A, and O	Shock-Resisting Tool Steels, S	Mold Steels, P	Special-Purpose Tool Steels, L and F	Water-Hardening Tool Steels, W
	Examples of Typical Applications						
Cold-Forming Dies Bending, forming, drawing, and deep drawing dies and punches	Burnishing tools: M1, T1	Cold heading: die-casting dies: H13	Drawing dies: O1 Coining tools: O1, D2 Forming and bending dies: A2 Thread rolling dies: D2	Hobbing and short-run applications: S1, S7 Rivet sets and rivet busters		Blanking, forming, and trimmer dies when toughness has precedence over abrasion resistance: L6	Cold-heading dies: W1 or W2 (C ≅ 1.00%) Bending dies: W1 (C ≅ 1.00%)
Shearing Tools Dies for piercing, punching, and trimming Shear blades	Special dies for cold- and hot-work: T1 For work requiring high abrasion resistance: M2, M3	For shearing knives: H11, H12 For severe hot shearing applications: M21, M25	Dies for medium runs: A2, A6 also O1 and O4 Dies for long runs: D2, D3 Trimming dies (also for hot trimming): A2	Cold and hot shear blades Hot punching and piercing tools Boilermaker's tools		Knives for work requiring high toughness: L6	Trimming dies (0.90/0.95% C) Cold blanking and punching dies (1.00% C)
Die-Casting Dies and Plastics Molds		For zinc and lead: H11 For aluminum: H13 For brass: H21	A2 and A6 O1		Plastics molds: P2 to P4, and P20		
Structural Parts for Severe Service Conditions	Roller bearings for high-temperature environment: T1 Lathe centers: M2 and T1	For aircraft components (landing gear, arrester hooks, rocket cases): H11	Lathe centers: D2, D3 Arbors: O1 Bushings: A4 Gages: D2	Pawls Clutch parts		Spindles, clutch parts (where high toughness is needed): L6	Spring steel (1.10/1.15% C)
Battering Tools for Hand and Power Tool Use				Pneumatic chisels for cold-work: S5 For higher performance: S7			For intermittent use: W1 (0.80% C)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

High-Speed Tool Steels

The primary application of high-speed steels is for tools used for the working of metals at high cutting speeds. Cutting metal at high speed generates heat, the penetration of the cutting tool edge into the work material requires great hardness and strength, and the continued frictional contact of the tool with both the parent material and the detached chips can only be sustained by an abrasion-resistant tool edge.

Accordingly, the dominant properties of high-speed steel are a) resistance to the softening effect of elevated temperature; b) great hardness penetrating to substantial depth from the surface; and c) excellent abrasion resistance.

High-speed tool steels are listed in the AISI specifications in two groups: molybdenum types and tungsten types, these designations expressing the dominant alloying element of the respective group.

Molybdenum-Type High-Speed Tool Steels.—Unlike the traditional tungsten-base high-speed steels, the tool steels listed in this category are considered to have molybdenum as the principal alloying constituent, this element also being used in the designation of the group. Other significant elements like tungsten and cobalt might be present in equal, or even greater, amounts in several types listed in this category. The available range of types also includes high-speed tool steels with higher than usual carbon and vanadium content. Amounts of these alloying elements have been increased to obtain better abrasion resistance although such a change in composition may adversely affect the machinability and grindability of the steel. The series in whose AISI identification numbers the number 4 is the first digit was developed to attain exceptionally high hardness in heat treatment that, for these types, usually requires triple tempering rather than the double tempering generally applied for high-speed tool steels.

Frequently Used Molybdenum Types: AISI M1: This alloy was developed as a substitute for the classical T1 to save on the alloying element tungsten by replacing most of it with molybdenum. In most uses, this steel is an acceptable substitute, although it requires greater care or more advanced equipment for its heat treatment than the tungsten-alloyed type it replaces. The steel is often selected for cutting tools like drills, taps, milling cutters, reamers, lathe tools used for lighter cuts, and for shearing dies.

AISI M2: Similar to M1, yet with substantial tungsten content replacing a part of the molybdenum. This is one of the general-purpose high-speed tool steels, combining the economic advantages of the molybdenum-type steels with greater ease of hardening, excellent wear resistance, and improved toughness. It is a preferred steel type for the manufacture of general-purpose lathe tools; of most categories of multiple-edge cutting tools, like milling cutters, taps, dies, reamers, and for form tools in lathe operations.

AISI M3: A high-speed tool steel with increased vanadium content for improved wear resistance, yet still below the level where vanadium would interfere with the ease of grinding. This steel is preferred for cutting tools requiring improved wear resistance, like broaches, form tools, milling cutters, chasers, and reamers.

AISI M7: The chemical composition of this type is similar to that of M1, except for the higher carbon and vanadium content that raises the cutting efficiency without materially reducing the toughness. Because of sensitivity to decarburization, heat treatment in a salt bath or a controlled atmosphere is advisable. Used for blanking and trimming dies, shear blades, lathe tools, and thread rolling dies.

AISI M10: Although the relatively high vanadium content assures excellent wear and cutting properties, the only slightly increased carbon does not cause brittleness to an extent that is harmful in many applications. Form cutters and single-point lathe tools, broaches, planer tools, punches, blanking dies, and shear blades are examples of typical uses.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Molybdenum High-Speed Steels

Identifying Chemical Composition and Typical Heat-Treatment Data																				
AISI Type			M1	M2	M3 Cl. 1	M3 Cl. 2	M4	M6	M7	M10	M30	M33	M34	M36	M41	M42	M43	M44	M46	M47
Identifying Chemical Elements in Percent	C		0.80	0.85 1.00	1.05	1.20	1.30	0.80	1.00	0.85 1.00	0.80	0.90	0.90	0.80	1.10	1.10	1.20	1.15	1.25	1.10
	W		1.50	6.00	6.00	6.00	5.50	4.00	1.75	…	2.00	1.50	2.00	6.00	6.75	1.50	2.75	5.25	2.00	1.50
	Mo		8.00	5.00	5.00	5.00	4.50	5.00	8.75	8.00	8.00	9.50	8.00	5.00	3.75	9.50	8.00	6.25	8.25	9.50
	Cr		4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.25	3.75	3.75	4.25	4.00	3.75
	V		1.00	2.00	2.40	3.00	4.00	1.50	2.00	2.00	1.25	1.15	2.00	2.00	2.00	1.15	1.60	2.25	3.20	1.25
	Co		…	…	…	…	…	12.00	…	…	5.00	8.00	8.00	8.00	5.00	8.00	8.25	12.00	8.25	5.00
Heat-Treatment Data	Hardening Temperature Range	°F	2150–2225	2175–2225	2200–2250	2200–2250	2200–2250	2150–2200	2150–2225	2150–2225	2200–2250	2200–2250	2200–2250	2225–2275	2175–2220	2175–2210	2175–2220	2190–2240	2175–2225	2150–2200
		°C	1177–1218	1191–1218	1204–1232	1204–1232	1204–1232	1177–1204	1177–1218	1177–1218	1204–1232	1204–1232	1204–1232	1218–1246	1191–1216	1191–1210	1191–1216	1199–1227	1191–1218	1177–1204
	Tempering Temperature Range	°F	1000–1100	1000–1160	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	950–1100	950–1100	1000–1160	975–1050	975–1100
		°C	538–593	538–627	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	510–593	510–593	538–627	524–566	524–594
	Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)		65–60	65–60	66–61	66–61	66–61	66–61	66–61	65–60	65–60	65–60	65–60	65–60	70–65	70–65	70–65	70–62	69–67	70–65
Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to E = least)																				
Characteristics in Heat Treatment	Safety in Hardening		D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
	Depth of Hardening		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	Resistance to Decarburization		C	B	B	B	B	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
	Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment	Quenching Medium: Air or Salt	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
		Quenching Medium: Oil	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
Service Properties	Machinability		D	D	D	D/E	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
	Hot Hardness		B	B	B	B	B	A	B	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	Wear Resistance		B	B	B	B	A	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B
	Toughness		E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

AISI M42: In applications where high hardness both at regular and at elevated temperatures is needed, this type of high-speed steel with high cobalt content can provide excellent service. Typical applications are tool bits, form tools, shaving tools, fly cutters, roll turning tools, and thread rolling dies. Important uses are found for M42, and for other types of the "M40" group, in the working of "difficult-to-machine" alloys.

Tungsten-Type High-Speed Tool Steels.—For several decades following their introduction, the tungsten-base high-speed steels were the only types available for cutting operations involving the generation of substantial heat and are still preferred by users who do not have the kind of advanced heat-treating equipment that efficient hardening of the molybdenum-type high-speed tool steels requires. Most tungsten high-speed steels display excellent resistance to decarburization and can be brought to good hardness by simple heat treatment. However, even with tungsten-type high-speed steels, heat treatment using modern methods and furnaces can appreciably improve the metallurgical qualities of the hardened material and the performance of the cutting tools made from these steels.

Table 7. Tungsten High-Speed Tool Steels—Identifying Chemical Composition and Typical Heat-Treatment Data

AISI Type			T1	T2	T4	T5	T6	T8	T15
Identifying Chemical Elements in Percent									
C			0.75	0.80	0.75	0.80	0.80	0.75	1.50
W			18.00	18.00	18.00	18.00	20.00	14.00	12.00
Cr			4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.50	4.00	4.00
V			1.00	2.00	1.00	2.00	1.50	2.00	5.00
Co			…	…	5.00	…	…	5.00	5.00
Heat-Treatment Data									
Hardening Temperature Range		°F	2300–2375	2300–2375	2300–2375	2325–2375	2325–2375	2300–2375	2200–2300
		°C	1260–1302	1260–1302	1260–1302	1274–1302	1274–1302	1260–1302	1204–1260
Tempering Temperature Range		°F	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1100	1000–1200
		°C	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–593	538–649
Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)			65–60	66–61	66–62	65–60	65–60	65–60	68–63
Characteristics in Heat Treatment[a]									
Safety in Hardening			C	C	D	D	D	D	D
Depth of Hardening			A	A	A	A	A	A	A
Resistance to Decarburization			A	A	B	C	C	B	B
Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment	Quenching Medium	Air or Salt	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
		Oil	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
Service Properties									
Machinability			D	D	D	D	D/E	D	D/E
Hot Hardness			B	B	A	A	A	A	A
Wear Resistance			B	B	B	B	B	B	A
Toughness			E	E	E	E	E	E	E

[a] Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to E = least)

Frequently Used Tungsten Types: AISI T1: Also mentioned as the 18-4-1 type with reference to the nominal percentage of its principal alloying elements (W-Cr-V), it is considered to be the classical type of high-speed tool steel. The chemical composition of T1 was developed in the early 1900s, and has changed very little since. T1 is still considered to be perhaps the best general-purpose high-speed tool steel because of the comparative ease of its machining and heat treatment. It combines a high degree of cutting ability with relative toughness. T1 steel is used for all types of multiple-edge cutting tools like drills, reamers, milling cutters, threading taps and dies, light- and medium-duty lathe tools, and is also used for punches, dies, and machine knives, as well as for structural parts that are subjected to elevated temperatures, like lathe centers and certain types of antifriction bearings.

AISI T2: Similar to T1 except for somewhat higher carbon content and twice the vanadium contained in the former grade. Its handling ease, both in machining and heat treating, is comparable to that of T1, although it should be held at the quenching temperature slightly

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

longer, particularly when the heating is carried out in a controlled-atmosphere furnace. The applications are similar to those of T1. However, because of its increased wear resistance, T2 is preferred for tools required for finer cuts and where the form or size retention of the tool is particularly important, such as for form and finishing tools.

AISI T5: The essential characteristic of this type of high-speed steel, its superior red hardness, stems from its substantial cobalt content that, combined with the relatively high amount of vanadium, provides this steel with excellent wear resistance. In heat treatment, the tendency for decarburization must be considered, and heating in a controlled, slightly reducing atmosphere is recommended. This type of high-speed tool steel is mainly used for single-point tools and inserts; it is well adapted for working at high speeds and feeds, for cutting hard materials and those that produce discontinuous chips, also for nonferrous metals and, for all kinds of tools needed for hogging (removing great bulks of material).

AISI T15: The performance qualities of this high-alloy tool steel surpass most of those found in other grades of high-speed tool steels. The high vanadium content, supported by uncommonly high carbon, assures superior cutting ability and wear resistance. The addition of high cobalt increases the "hot hardness," and therefore tools made of T15 can sustain cutting speeds in excess of those commonly applicable to tools made of steel. The machining and heat treatment of T15 does not cause extraordinary problems, although for best results, heating to high temperature is often applied in its heat treatment, and double or even triple tempering is recommended. On the other hand, T15 is rather difficult to grind because of the presence of large amounts of very hard metallic carbides; therefore, it is considered to have a very low "grindability" index. The main uses are in the field of high-speed cutting and the working of hard metallic materials, T15 being often considered to represent in its application a transition from the regular high-speed tool steels to cemented carbides. Lathe tool bits, form cutters, and solid and inserted blade milling cutters are examples of uses of this steel type for cutting tools; excellent results may also be obtained with such tools as cold-work dies, punches, blanking, and forming dies, etc. The low toughness rating of the T15 steel excludes its application for operations that involve shock or sudden variations in load.

Hot-Work Tool Steels

A family of special tool steels has been developed for tools that in their regular service are in contact with hot metals over a shorter or longer period of time, with or without cooling being applied, and are known as hot-work steels. The essential property of these steels is their ability to sustain elevated temperature without seriously affecting the usefulness of the tools made from them. Depending on the purpose of the tools for which they were developed, the particular types of hot-work tool steels have different dominant properties and are assigned to one of three groups, based primarily on their principal alloying elements.

Hot-Work Tool Steels, Chromium Types.—As referred to in the group designation, the chromium content is considered the characteristic element of these tool steels. Their predominant properties are high hardenability, excellent toughness, and great ductility, even at the cost of wear resistance. Some members of this family are made with the addition of tungsten, and in one type, cobalt as well. These alloying elements improve the resistance to the softening effect of elevated temperatures, but reduce ductility.

Frequently Used Chromium Types: AISI H11: This hot-work tool steel of the Chromium-molybdenum-vanadium type has excellent ductility, can be machined easily, and retains its strength at temperatures up to 1000°F (538°C).

These properties, combined with relatively good abrasion and shock resistance, account for the varied fields of application of H11, which include the following typical uses:

a) structural applications where high strength is needed at elevated operating temperatures, as for gas turbine engine components; and b) hot-work tools, particularly of the kind whose service involves shocks and drastic cooling of the tool, such as in extrusion tools, pierce and draw punches, bolt header dies, etc.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Hot-Work Tool Steels

Identifying Chemical Composition and Typical Heat-Treatment Data																	
AISI	Group		Chromium Types						Tungsten Types						Molybdenum Types		
	Type		H10	H11	H12	H13	H14	H19	H21	H22	H23	H24	H25	H26	H41	H42	H43
Identifying Chemical Elements in Percent	C		0.40	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.40	0.40	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.45	0.25	0.50	0.65	0.60	0.55
	W		…	…	1.50	…	5.00	4.25	9.00	11.00	12.00	15.00	15.00	18.00	1.50	6.00	…
	Mo		2.50	1.50	1.50	1.50	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	8.00	5.00	8.00
	Cr		3.25	5.00	5.00	5.00	5.00	4.25	3.50	2.00	12.00	3.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00	4.00
	V		0.40	0.40	0.40	1.00	…	2.00	…	…	…	…	…	1.00	1.00	2.00	2.00
	Co		…	…	…	…	…	4.25	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Heat-Treatment Data	Hardening Temperature Range	°F	1850–1900	1825–1875	1825–1875	1825–1900	1850–1950	2000–2200	2000–2200	2000–2200	2000–2300	2000–2250	2100–2300	2150–2300	2000–2175	2050–2225	2000–2175
		°C	1010–1038	996–1024	996–1024	996–1038	1010–1066	1093–1204	1093–1204	1093–1204	1093–1260	1093–1232	1149–1260	1177–1260	1093–1191	1121–1218	1093–1191
	Tempering Temperature Range	°F	1000–1200	1000–1200	1000–1200	1000–1200	1100–1200	1000–1300	1100–1250	1100–1250	1200–1500	1050–1200	1050–1250	1050–1250	1050–1200	1050–1200	1050–1200
		°C	538–649	538–649	538–649	538–649	593–649	538–704	593–677	593–677	649–816	566–649	566–677	566–677	566–649	566–649	566–649
	Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)		56–39	54–38	55–38	53–38	47–40	59–40	54–36	52–39	47–30	55–45	44–35	58–43	60–50	60–50	58–45
Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to D = least)																	
Characteristics in Heat Treatment	Safety in Hardening		A	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	C	C
	Depth of Hardening		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	Resistance to Decarburization		B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B	C	B	C
	Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment	Quenching Medium: Air or Salt	B	B	B	B	C	C	C	C	…	C	C	C	C	C	C
		Quenching Medium: Oil	…	…	…	…	…	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
Service Properties	Machinability		C/D	C/D	C/D	C/D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
	Hot Hardness		C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C	B	B	B	B	B	B	B
	Wear Resistance		D	D	D	D	D	C/D	C/D	C/D	C/D	C	D	C	C	C	C
	Toughness		C	B	B	B	C	C	C	C	D	D	C	D	D	D	D

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

AISI H12: The properties of this type of steel are comparable to those of H11, with increased abrasion resistance and hot hardness resulting from the addition of tungsten, yet in an amount that does not affect the good toughness of this steel type. The applications based on these properties are hot-work tools that often have to withstand severe impact, such as various punches, bolt header dies, trimmer dies, and hot shear blades. H12 is also used to make aluminum extrusion dies and die-casting dies.

AISI H13: This type of tool steel differs from the preceding ones particularly in properties related to the addition of about 1 percent vanadium, which contributes to increased hot hardness, abrasion resistance, and reduced sensitivity to heat checking. Such properties are needed in die casting, particularly of aluminum, where the tools are subjected to drastic heating and cooling at high operating temperatures. Besides die-casting dies, H13 is also widely used for extrusion dies, trimmer dies, hot gripper and header dies, and hot shear blades.

AISI H19: This high-alloyed hot-work tool steel containing chromium, tungsten, cobalt, and vanadium has excellent resistance to abrasion and shocks at elevated temperatures. It is particularly well adapted to severe hot-work uses where the tool, to retain its size and shape, must withstand wear and the washing-out effect of molten work material. Typical applications include brass extrusion dies and dummy blocks, inserts for forging and valve extrusion dies, press forging dies, and hot punches.

Hot-Work Tool Steels, Tungsten Types.—A substantial amount of tungsten and very low-carbon content characterize the hot-work tool steels of this group. These tool steels have been developed for applications where the tool is in contact with the hot-work material over extended periods of time; therefore, the resistance of the steel to the softening effect of elevated temperatures is of prime importance, even to the extent of accepting a lower degree of toughness.

Frequently Used Tungsten Types: AISI H21: This medium-tungsten alloyed hot-work tool steel has substantially increased abrasion resistance over the chromium-alloyed types yet possesses a degree of toughness that represents a transition between the chromium and the higher-alloyed tungsten-steel types. The principal applications are for tools subjected to continued abrasion yet to only a limited amount of shock loads, like tools for the extrusion of brass, both dies and dummy blocks, pierces for forging machines, inserts for forging tools, and hot nut tools. Another typical application is dies for the hot extrusion of automobile valves.

AISI H24: The comparatively high tungsten content (about 14 percent) of this steel results in good hardness, great compression strength, and excellent abrasion resistance, but makes it sensitive to shock loads. By taking these properties into account, the principal applications include extrusion dies for brass in long-run operations, hot-forming and gripper dies with shallow impressions, punches that are subjected to great wear yet only to moderate shocks, and hot shear blades.

AISI H20: The composition of this high-alloyed tungsten-type hot-work steel resembles the tungsten-type high-speed steel AISI T1, except for the somewhat lower carbon content for improved toughness. The high amount of tungsten provides the maximum resistance to the softening effect of elevated temperature and assures excellent wear-resistant properties, including withstanding the washing-out effect of certain processes. However, this steel is less resistant to thermal shocks than the chromium hot-work steels. Typical applications comprise extrusion dies for long production runs, extrusion mandrels operated without cooling, hot piercing punches, hot forging dies and inserts. It is also used as special structural steel for springs operating at elevated temperatures.

Hot-Work Tool Steels, Molybdenum Types.—These steels are closely related to certain types of molybdenum high-speed steels and possess excellent resistance to the softening effect of elevated temperature, but their ductility is rather low. These steel types are generally available on special orders only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Frequently Used Molybdenum Types: AISI H43: The principal constituents of this hot-work steel, chromium, molybdenum, and vanadium, provide excellent abrasion- and wear-resistant properties at elevated temperatures. H43 has a good resistance to the development of heat checks and a toughness adequate for many different purposes. Applications include tools and operations that tend to cause surface wear in high-temperature work, like hot headers, punch and die inserts, hot heading and hot nut dies, as well as different kinds of punches operating at high temperature in service involving considerable wear.

Cold-Work Tool Steels

Tool steels of the cold-working category are primarily intended for die work, although their use is by no means restricted to that general field. Cold-work tool steels are extensively used for tools whose regular service does not involve elevated temperatures. They are available in chemical compositions adjusted to the varying requirements of a wide range of different applications. According to their predominant properties, characterized either by the chemical composition or by the quenching medium in heat treatment, the cold-work tool steels are assigned to three different groups, as discussed below.

Cold-Work Tool Steels, High-Carbon, High-Chromium Types.—The chemical composition of tool steels of this family is characterized by the very high chromium content, to the order of 12 to 13 percent, and the uncommonly high carbon content, in the range of about 1.50 to 2.30 percent. Additional alloying elements that are present in different amounts in some of the steel types of this group are vanadium, molybdenum, and cobalt, each of which contributes desirable properties.

The predominant properties of the whole group are: 1) excellent dimensional stability in heat treatment, where, with one exception, air quench is used; 2) great wear resistance, particularly in the types with the highest carbon content; and 3) rather good machinability.

Frequently Used High-Carbon, High-Chromium Types: AISI D2: An air-hardening die steel with high-carbon, high-chromium content having several desirable tool steel properties, such as abrasion resistance, high hardness, and nondeforming characteristics. The carbon content of this type, although relatively high, is not particularly detrimental to its machining. The ease of working can be further improved by selecting the same basic type with the addition of sulfur. Several steel producers supply the sulfurized version of D2, in which the uniformly distributed sulfide particles substantially improve the machinability and the resulting surface finish. The applications comprise primarily cold-working press tools for shearing (blanking and stamping dies, punches, shear blades), for forming (bending, seaming), and for thread rolling dies, solid gages, and wear-resistant structural parts. Dies for hot trimming of forgings are also made of D2, which is then heated treated to a lower hardness for the purpose of increasing toughness.

AISI D3: The high carbon content of this high-chromium tool steel type results in excellent resistance to wear and abrasion and provides superior compressive strength as long as the pressure is applied gradually without exerting sudden shocks. In hardening, an oil quench is used without affecting the excellent nondeforming properties of this type. Its deep-hardening properties make it particularly suitable for tools that require repeated regrinding during their service life, such as different types of dies and punches. The more important applications comprise blanking, stamping, and trimming dies and punches for long production runs; forming, bending and drawing tools; and structural elements like plug and ring gages, and lathe centers, in applications where high wear resistance is important.

Cold-Work Tool Steels, Oil-Hardening Types.—With a relatively low percentage of alloying elements, yet with a substantial amount of manganese, these less expensive types

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of tool steels attain good depth of hardness in an oil quench, although at the cost of reduced resistance to deformation. Their good machinability supports general-purpose applications, yet, because of relatively low wear resistance, they are mostly selected for comparatively short-run work.

Frequently Used Oil-Hardening Types: AISI O1: A low-alloy tool steel that is hardened in oil and exhibits only a low tendency to shrinking or warping. It is used for cutting tools, the operation of which does not generate high heat, such as taps and threading dies, reamers, and broaches, and for press tools like blanking, trimming, and forming dies in short- or medium-run operations.

AISI O2: Manganese is the dominant alloying element in this type of oil-hardening tool steel that has good nondeforming properties, can be machined easily, and performs satisfactorily in low-volume production. The low hardening temperature results in good safety in hardening, both with regard to form stability and freedom from cracking. The combination of handling ease, including free-machining properties, with good wear resistance, makes this type of tool steel adaptable to a wide range of common applications, such as cutting tools for low- and medium-speed operations; forming tools including thread rolling dies; structural parts, such as bushings and fixed gages; and for plastics molds.

AISI O6: This oil-hardening type of tool steel belongs to a group often designated as graphitic because of the presence of small particles of graphitic carbon that are uniformly dispersed throughout the steel. Usually, about one-third of the total carbon is present as free graphite in nodular form, which contributes to the uncommon ease of machining. In the service of parts made of this type of steel, the free graphite acts like a lubricant, reducing wear and galling. The ease of hardening is also excellent, requiring only a comparatively low quenching temperature. Deep hardness penetration is produced and the oil quench causes very little dimensional change. The principal applications of the O6 tool steel are in the field of structural parts, like arbors, bushings, bodies for inserted tool cutters, and shanks for cutting tools, jigs, and machine parts, and fixed gages like plugs, rings, and snap gages. It is also used for blanking, forming, and trimming dies and punches, in applications where the stability of the tool material is more important than high wear resistance.

Cold-Work Tool Steels, Medium-Alloy, Air-Hardening Types.—The desirable nondeforming properties of the high-chromium types are approached by the members of this family, with substantially lower alloy content that, nonetheless, is sufficient to permit hardening by air quenching. The machinability is good, and the comparatively low wear resistance is balanced by relatively high toughness, a property that, in certain applications, may be considered of prime importance.

Frequently Used Medium-Alloy, Air-Hardening Types: AISI A2: The lower chromium content, about 5 percent, makes this air-hardening tool steel less expensive than the high-chromium types, without affecting its nondeforming properties. The somewhat reduced wear resistance is balanced by greater toughness, making this type suitable for press work where the process calls for tough tool materials. The machinability is improved by the addition of about 0.12 percent sulfur, offered as a variety of the basic composition by several steel producers. The prime uses of this tool steel type are punches for blanking and forming, cold and hot trimming dies (the latter heat treated to a lower hardness), thread rolling dies, and plastics molds.

AISI A6: The composition of this type of tool steel makes it adaptable to air hardening from a relatively low temperature, comparable to that of oil-hardening types, yet offers improved stability in heat treating. Its reduced tendency to heat-treatment distortions makes this tool steel type well adapted for die work, forming tools, and gages, which do not require the highest degree of wear resistance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Cold-Work Tool Steels

Identifying Chemical Composition and Typical Heat-Treatment Data																			
AISI	Group		High-Carbon, High-Chromium Types					Medium-Alloy, Air-Hardening Types								Oil-Hardening Types			
	Types		D2	D3	D4	D5	D7	A2	A3	A4	A6	A7	A8	A9	A10	O1	O2	O6	O7
Identifying Chemical Elements in Percent	C		1.50	2.25	2.25	1.50	2.35	1.00	1.25	1.00	0.70	2.25	0.55	0.50	1.35	0.90	0.90	1.45	1.20
	Mn		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.00	2.00	…	…	…	1.80	1.00	1.60	…	…
	Si		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.25	…	…	1.00	…
	W		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.00	1.25	…	…	0.50	…	…	1.75
	Mo		1.00	…	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.25	1.00	1.25	1.40	1.50	…	…	0.25	…
	Cr		12.00	12.00	12.00	12.00	12.00	5.00	5.00	1.00	1.00	5.25	5.00	5.00	…	0.50	…	…	0.75
	V		1.00	…	…	…	4.00	…	1.00	…	…	4.75	…	1.00	…	…	…	…	…
	Co		…	…	…	3.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Heat-Treatment Data	Ni		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.50	1.80	…	…	…	…
	Hardening Temperature Range	°F	1800–1875	1700–1800	1775–1850	1800–1875	1850–1950	1700–1800	1750–1850	1500–1600	1525–1600	1750–1800	1800–1850	1800–1875	1450–1500	1450–1500	1400–1475	1450–1500	1550–1525
		°C	982–1024	927–982	968–1010	982–1024	1010–1066	927–982	954–1010	816–871	829–871	954–982	982–1010	982–1024	788–816	788–816	760–802	788–816	843–829
	Quenching Medium		Air	Oil	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Air	Oil	Oil	Oil	Oil
	Tempering Temperature Range	°F	400–1000	400–1000	400–1000	400–1000	300–1000	350–1000	350–1000	350–800	300–800	300–1000	350–1100	950–1150	350–800	350–500	350–500	350–500	350–550
		°C	204–538	204–538	204–538	204–538	149–538	177–538	177–538	177–427	149–427	149–538	177–593	510–621	177–427	177–260	177–260	177–316	177–288
	Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)		61–54	61–54	61–54	61–54	65–58	62–57	65–57	62–54	60–54	67–57	60–50	56–35	62–55	62–57	62–57	63–58	64–58
Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to E = least)																			
Characteristics in Heat Treatment	Safety in Hardening		A	C	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
	Depth of Hardening		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
	Resistance to Decarburization		B	B	B	B	B	B	B	A/B	A/B	B	B	B	A/B	A	A	A	A
	Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment		A	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	B	B	B
Service Properties	Machinability		E	E	E	E	E	D	D	D/E	D/E	E	D	D	C/D	C	C	B	C
	Hot Hardness		C	C	C	C	C	C	C	D	D	C	C	C	D	E	E	E	E
	Wear Resistance		B/C	B	B	B/C	A	C	B	C/D	C/D	A	C/D	C/D	C	D	D	D	D
	Toughness		E	E	E	E	E	D	D	D	D	E	C	C	D	D	D	D	C

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shock-Resisting, Mold, and Special-Purpose Tool Steels

There are fields of tool application in which specific properties of the tool steels have dominant significance, determining to a great extent the performance and the service life of tools made of these materials. To meet these requirements, special types of tool steels have been developed. These individual types grew into families with members that, while similar in their major characteristics, provide related properties to different degrees. Originally developed for a specific use, the resulting particular properties of some of these tool steels made them desirable for other uses as well. In the tool steel classification system, they are shown in three groups, as discussed below.

Shock-Resisting Tool Steels.—These steels are made with low-carbon content for increased toughness, even at the expense of wear resistance, which is generally low. Each member of this group also contains alloying elements, different in composition and amount, selected to provide properties particularly adjusted to specific applications. Such varying properties are the degree of toughness (generally high in all members), hot hardness, abrasion resistance, and machinability.

Properties and Applications of Frequently Used Shock-Resisting Types: AISI S1: This Chromium-tungsten alloyed tool steel combines, in its hardened state, great toughness with high hardness and strength. Although it has a low-carbon content for reasons of good toughness, the carbon-forming alloys contribute to deep hardenability and abrasion resistance. When high wear resistance is also required, this property can be improved by carburizing the surface of the tool while still retaining its shock-resistant characteristics. Primary uses are for battering tools, including hand and pneumatic chisels. The chemical composition, particularly the silicon and tungsten content, also provides good hot hardness up to operating temperatures of about 1050°F (566°C), making this tool steel type adaptable for such hot-work tool applications involving shock loads as headers, pierces, forming tools, drop forge die inserts, and heavy shear blades.

AISI S2: This steel type serves primarily for hand chisels and pneumatic tools, but it also has limited applications for hot-work. Although its wear-resistance properties are only moderate, S2 is sometimes used for forming and thread rolling applications, when the resistance to rupturing is more important than extended service life. For hot-work applications, this steel requires heat treatment in a neutral atmosphere to avoid either carburization or decarburization of the surface. Such conditions make this tool steel type particularly susceptible to failure in hot-work uses.

AISI S5: This composition is essentially a silicon-manganese-type tool steel with small additions of chromium, molybdenum, and vanadium for the purpose of improved deep hardening and refinement of the grain structure. The most important properties of this steel are its high elastic limit and good ductility, resulting in excellent shock-resisting characteristics, when used at atmospheric temperatures. Its recommended quenching medium is oil, although a water quench may also be applied as long as the design of the tools avoids sharp corners or drastic sectional changes. Typical applications include pneumatic tools in severe service, like chipping chisels as well as shear blades, heavy-duty punches, and bending rolls. Occasionally, this steel is also used for structural applications, like shanks for carbide tools and machine parts subject to shocks.

Mold Steels.—These materials differ from all other types of tool steels by their very low-carbon content, generally requiring carburizing to obtain a hard operating surface. A special property of most steel types in this group is adaptability to shaping by impression (hobbing) instead of by conventional machining. They also have high resistance to decarburization in heat treatment and dimensional stability, characteristics that obviate the need for grinding following heat treatment. Molding dies for plastics materials require an excellent surface finish, even to the degree of high luster; the generally high-chromium content of these types of tool steels greatly aids in meeting this requirement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Shock-Resisting, Mold, and Special-Purpose Tool Steels

Identifying Chemical Composition and Typical Heat-Treatment Data																		
AISI	Category		Shock-Resisting Tool Steels				Mold Steels							Special-Purpose Tool Steels				
	Types		S1	S2	S5	S7	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P20	P21[a]	L2[b]	L3[b]	L6	F1	F2
Identifying Elements in Percent	C		0.50	0.50	0.55	0.50	0.07	0.10	0.07	0.10	0.10	0.35	0.20	0.50/1.10	1.00	0.70	1.00	1.25
	Mn		…	…	0.80	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	Si		…	1.00	2.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	W		2.50	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.25	3.50
	Mo		…	0.50	0.40	1.40	0.20	…	0.75	…	…	0.40	…	…	…	0.25	…	…
	Cr		1.50	…	…	3.25	2.00	0.60	5.00	2.25	1.50	1.25	…	1.00	1.50	0.75	…	…
	V		…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.20	0.20	…	…	…
	Ni		…	…	…	…	0.50	1.25	…	…	3.50	…	4.00	…	…	1.50	…	…
Heat-Treatment Data	Hardening Temperature	°F	1650–1750	1550–1650	1600–1700	1700–1750	1525–1550[c]	1475–1525[c]	1775–1825[c]	1550–1600[c]	1450–1500[c]	1500–1600[c]	Soln. treat.	1550–1700	1500–1600	1450–1550	1450–1600	1450–1600
		°C	899–954	843–899	871–927	927–955	829–843c	802–829c	968–996c	843–871c	788–816c	816–871c	Soln. treat.	843–927	816–871	788–843	788–871	788–871
	Tempering Temp. Range	°F	400–1200	350–800	350–800	400–1150	350–500	350–500	350–900	350–500	350–450	900–1100	Aged	350–1000	350–600	350–1000	350–500	350–500
		°C	204–649	177–427	177–427	204–621	177–260	177–260	177–482	177–260	177–232	482–593	Aged	177–538	177–316	177–538	177–260	177–260
	Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)		58–40	60–50	60–50	57–45	64–58[d]	64–58[d]	64–58[d]	64–58[d]	61–58[d]	37–28[d]	40–30	63–45	63–56	62–45	64–60	65–62
Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to E = least)																		
Characteristics in Heat Treatment	Safety in Hardening		C	E	C	B/C	C	C	C	C	C	C	A	D	D	C	E	E
	Depth of Hardening		B	B	B	A	B[e]	B[e]	B[e]	B[e]	A[e]	B	A	B	B	B	C	C
	Resist. to Decarb.		B	C	C	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
	Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment	Quench. Med. Air	…	…	…	A	…	…	B	…	B	C	A	…	…	…	…	…
		Oil	D	…	D	C	C	C	…	C	C	…	A	D	D	C	…	…
		Water[f]	…	E	…	…	…	…	…	E	…	…	…	E	E	…	E	E
Service Properties	Machinability		D	C/D	C/D	D	C/D	D	D/E	D	D	C/D	D	C	C	D	C	D
	Hot Hardness		D	E	E	C	E	E	D	E	E	E	D	E	E	E	E	E
	Wear Resistance		D/E	D/E	D/E	D/E	D	D	C	D	D	D/E	D	D/E	D	D	D	B/C
	Toughness		B	A	A	B	C	C	C	C	C	C	D	B	D	B	E	E

[a] Contains also about 1.20 percent A1. Solution treated in hardening.
[b] Quenched in oil.
[c] After carburizing.
[d] Carburized case.
[e] Core hardenability.
[f] Sometimes brine is used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Properties and Applications of Frequently Used Mold Steel Types: AISI P3 and P4: Essentially, both types of tool steels were developed for the same special purpose, that is, the making of plastics molds. The application conditions of plastics molds require high core strength, good wear resistance at elevated temperature, and excellent surface finish. Both types are carburizing steels that possess good dimensional stability. Hobbing is the process of sinking a cavity by pressing a punch that is the inverse replica of the cavity into the tool material, and is the process by which many plastics mold cavities are produced. Good "hobbability" is an important requirement of tool steels used for this purpose. The different chemistry of these two types of mold steels is responsible for the high core hardness of P4, which makes it better suited for applications requiring high strength at elevated temperature.

AISI P6: This nickel-chromium-type plastics mold steel has exceptional core strength and develops a deep carburized case. Due to the high nickel-chromium content, the cavities of molds made of this steel type are produced by machining rather than by hobbing. An outstanding characteristic of this steel type is the high luster that is produced by polishing of the hard case surface.

AISI P20: This general-type mold steel is adaptable to both through hardening and carburized case hardening. In through hardening, an oil quench is used and a relatively lower, yet deeply penetrating, hardness is obtained, such as is needed for zinc die-casting dies and injection molds for plastics. After the direct quenching and tempering, carburizing produces a very hard case and comparatively high core hardness. When thus heat treated, this steel is particularly well adapted for making compression, transfer, and plunger-type plastics molds.

Special-Purpose Tool Steels.—These steels include several low-alloy types of tool steels that were developed to provide transitional types between the more commonly used basic types of tool steels, and thereby contribute to the balancing of certain conflicting properties, such as wear resistance and toughness. They offer intermediate depth of hardening and are less expensive than the higher-alloyed types of tool steels.

Properties and Applications of Frequently Used Special-Purpose Types: AISI L6: This material is a low-alloy-type special-purpose tool steel. Comparatively safe hardening and fair nondeforming properties, combined with the service advantage of good toughness in comparison to most other oil-hardening types, explain the acceptance of this steel with a rather special chemical composition. L6 is used for tools whose toughness requirements prevail over abrasion-resistant properties, such as forming rolls and forming and trimmer dies in applications where combinations of moderate shock- and wear-resistant properties are sought. The areas of use also include structural parts, like clutch members, pawls, and knuckle pins, that must withstand shock loads and still display good wear properties.

AISI F2: This carbon-tungsten type is one of the most abrasion-resistant of all water-hardening tool steels. However, it is sensitive to thermal changes, such as those involved in heat treatment, and it is also susceptible to distortions. Consequently, its use is limited to tools of simple shape in order to avoid cracking in hardening. The shallow hardening characteristics of F2 result in a tough core and are desirable properties for certain tool types that, at the same time, require excellent wear-resistant properties.

Water-Hardening Tool Steels.—Steel types in this category are made without, or with only a minimum amount of, alloying elements, and their heat treatment needs the harsh quenching action of water or brine, hence the general designation of the category.

Water-hardening steels are usually available with different percentages of carbon, to provide properties required for different applications; the classification system lists a carbon range of 0.60 to 1.40 percent. In practice, however, the steel mills produce these steels in a few varieties of differing carbon content, often giving proprietary designations to each particular group. Typical carbon content limits of frequently used water-hardening tool steels are 0.70–0.90, 0.90–1.10, 1.05–1.20, and 1.20–1.30 percent. The appropriate group should be chosen according to the intended use, as indicated in the steel selection

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

guide for this category, keeping in mind that whereas higher carbon content results in deeper hardness penetration, it also reduces toughness.

The general system distinguishes the following four grades, listed in the order of decreasing quality: 1) special; 2) extra; 3) standard; and 4) commercial.

The differences between these grades, which are not offered by all steel mills, are defined in principle only. The distinguishing characteristics are purity and consistency resulting from different degrees of process refinement and inspection steps applied in making the steel. Higher qualities are selected for assuring dependable uniformity and performance of the tools made from the steel.

The groups with higher carbon content are more sensitive to heat-treatment defects and are generally used for the more demanding applications, so the better grades are usually chosen for the high-carbon types and the lower grades for applications where steels with lower carbon content only are needed.

Water-hardening tool steels, although the least expensive and quite acceptable in many types of applications, have several drawbacks. Some limiting properties are the tendency to deformation in heat treatment due to harsh effects of the applied quenching medium, the sensitivity to heat during the use of the tools made of these steels, the only fair degree of toughness, and the shallow penetration of hardness. However, this last-mentioned property may prove a desirable characteristic in certain applications, such as cold-heading dies, because the relatively shallow hard case is supported by the tough, although softer, core.

The AISI designation for water-hardening tool steels is W, followed by a numeral indicating the type, primarily defined by the chemical composition, as shown in Table 11.

Table 11. Water-Hardening Tool Steels—Identifying Chemical Composition and Heat-Treatment Data

Chemical Composition in Percent	AISI Types		
	W1	W2	W5
C	0.60–1.40	0.60–1.40	1.10
	Varying carbon content may be available		
V	…	0.25	…
Cr	These elements are adjusted to satisfy the hardening requirements		0.50
Mn			
Si			

Heat-Treatment Data		
Hardening Temperature Ranges Varying with Carbon Content	0.60–0.80%	1450–1500°F (788–816°C)
	0.85–1.05%	1425–1550°F (774–843°C)
	1.10–1.40%	1400–1525°F (760–829°C)
Quenching Medium		Brine or Water
Tempering Temperature Range		350–650°F (177–343°C)
Approx. Tempered Hardness, RC (Rockwell C scale)		64–50

Relative Ratings of Properties (A = greatest to E = least)							
Characteristics in Heat Treatment				Service Properties			
Safety in Hardening	Depth of Hardening	Resistance to Decarburization	Stability of Shape in Heat Treatment	Machinability	Hot Hardness	Wear Resistance	Toughness
D	C	A	E	A	E	D/E	C/D

Water-Hardening Type W1 (Plain Carbon) Tool Steels, Recommended Applications:

Group I (C 0.70 to 0.90%): This group is relatively tough and therefore preferred for tools that are subjected to shocks or abusive treatment. Used for such applications as hand tools, chisels, screwdriver blades, cold punches, and nail sets, and fixture elements, vise jaws, anvil faces, and chuck jaws.

Group II (C 0.90 to 1.10%): This group combines greater hardness with fair toughness, resulting in improved cutting capacity and moderate ability to sustain shock loads. Used for such applications as hand tools, knives, center punches, pneumatic chisels, cutting

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tools, reamers, hand taps, and threading dies, wood augers; die parts, drawing and heading dies, shear knives, cutting and forming dies; and fixture elements, drill bushings, lathe centers, collets, and fixed gages.

Group III (C 1.05 to 1.20%): The higher carbon content of this group increases the depth of hardness penetrations, yet reduces toughness, thus the resistance to shock loads. Preferred for applications where wear resistance and cutting ability are the prime considerations. Used for such applications as hand tools, woodworking chisels, paper knives, cutting tools (for low-speed applications), milling cutters, reamers, planer tools, thread chasers, center drills, die parts, cold blanking, coining, bending dies.

Group IV (C 1.20 to 1.30%): The high carbon content of this group produces a hard case of considerable depth with improved wear resistance yet sensitivity to shock and concentrated stresses. Selected for applications where the capacity to withstand abrasive wear is needed and where the retention of a keen edge or the original shape of the tool is important. Used for such applications as cutting tools for finishing work, like cutters and reamers, and for cutting chilled cast iron and forming tools, for ferrous and nonferrous metals, and burnishing tools.

By adding small amounts of alloying elements to W-steel types 2 and 5, certain characteristics that are desirable for specific applications are improved. The vanadium in type 2 contributes to retaining a greater degree of fine-grain structure after heat treating. Chromium in type 5 improves the deep-hardening characteristics of the steel, a property needed for large sections, and assists in maintaining the keen cutting edge that is desirable in cutting tools like broaches, reamers, threading taps, and dies.

Mill Production Forms of Tool Steels

Tool steels are produced in many different forms, but not all those listed in the following are always readily available; certain forms and shapes are made for special orders only.

Hot-Finished Bars and Cold-Finished Bars: These bars are the most commonly produced forms of tool steels. Bars can be furnished in many different cross sections, the round shape being the most common. Sizes can vary over a wide range, with a more limited number of standard stock sizes. Various conditions may also be available; however, technological limitations prevent all conditions applying to every size, shape, or type of steel. Tool steel bars may be supplied in one of the following conditions and surface finishes:

Conditions: Hot-rolled or forged (natural); hot-rolled or forged and annealed; hot-rolled or forged and heat treated; cold- or hot-drawn (as drawn); and cold- or hot-drawn and annealed.

Finishes: Hot-rolled finish (scale not removed); pickled or blast-cleaned; cold-drawn; turned or machined; rough ground; centerless ground or precision flat ground; and polished (rounds only).

Other forms in which tool steels are supplied are the following:

Rolled or Forged Special Shapes: These shapes are usually produced on special orders only, for the purpose of reducing material loss and machining time in the large-volume manufacture of certain frequently used types of tools.

Forgings: All types of tool steels may be supplied in the form of forgings that are usually specified for special shapes and for dimensions that are beyond the range covered by bars.

Wires: Tool steel wires are produced either by hot or cold drawing and are specified when special shapes, controlled dimensional accuracy, improved surface finish, or special mechanical properties are required. Round wire is commonly produced within an approximate size range of 0.015 to 0.500 inch (0.38 to 12.7 mm), and these dimensions also indicate the limits within which other shapes of tool steel wires, like oval, square, or rectangular, may be produced.

Drill Rods: Rods are produced in round, rectangular, square, hexagonal, and octagonal shapes, usually with tight dimensional tolerances to eliminate subsequent machining, thereby offering manufacturing economies for the users.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hot-Rolled Plates and Sheets, and Cold-Rolled Strips: Such forms of tool steel are generally specified for the high-volume production of specific tool types.

Tool Bits: These pieces are semifinished tools and are used by clamping in a tool holder or shank in a manner permitting ready replacement. Tool bits are commonly made of high-speed types of tool steels, mostly in square, but also in round, rectangular, and other shapes. Tool bits are made of hot-rolled bars and are commonly, yet not exclusively, supplied in hardened and ground form, ready for use after the appropriate cutting edges are ground, usually in the user's plant.

Hollow Bars: These bars are generally produced by trepanning, boring, or drilling of solid round rods and are used for making tools or structural parts of annular shapes, like rolls, ring gages, bushings, etc.

Tolerances of Dimensions.—Such tolerances have been developed and published by the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) as a compilation of available industry experience that, however, does not exclude the establishment of closer tolerances, particularly for hot-rolled products manufactured in large quantities. The tolerances differ for various categories of production processes (e.g., forged, hot-rolled, cold-drawn, centerless ground) and of general shapes.

Allowances for Machining.—These allowances provide freedom from soft spots and defects of the tool surface, thereby preventing failures in heat treatment or in service. After a layer of specific thickness, known as the allowance, has been removed, the bar or other form of tool steel material should have a surface without decarburization and other surface defects, such as scale marks or seams. The accepted industry-wide machining allowance values for tool steels in different conditions, shapes, and size ranges are spelled out in AISI specifications and are generally also listed in the tool steel catalogs of the producer companies.

Decarburization Limits.—Heating of steel for production operation causes the oxidation of the exposed surfaces, resulting in the loss of carbon. That condition, called decarburization, penetrates to a certain depth from the surface, depending on the applied process, the shape and the dimensions of the product. Values of tolerance for decarburization must be considered one of the factors for defining the machining allowances, which must also compensate for expected variations of size and shape, the dimensional effects of heat treatment, and so forth. Decarburization can be present not only in hot-rolled and forged, but also in rough turned and cold-drawn conditions.

Advances in Tool Steel-Making Technology.—Significant advances in processes for tool steel production have been made that offer more homogeneous materials of greater density and higher purity for applications where such extremely high quality is required. Two of these methods of tool steel production are of particular interest.

Vacuum-melted tool steels: These steels are produced by the consumable electrode method, which involves remelting of the steel originally produced by conventional processes. Inside a vacuum-tight shell that has been evacuated, the electrode cast of tool steel of the desired chemical analysis is lowered into a water-cooled copper mold where it strikes a low-voltage, high-amperage arc causing the electrode to be consumed by gradual melting. The undesirable gases and volatiles are drawn off by the vacuum, and the inclusions float on the surface of the pool, accumulating on the top of the produced ingot, to be removed later by cropping. In the field of tool steels, the consumable-electrode vacuum-melting (CVM) process is applied primarily to the production of special grades of hot-work and high-speed tool steels.

High-speed tool steels produced by powder metallurgy: The steel produced by conventional methods is reduced to a fine powder by a gas atomization process. The powder is compacted by a hot isostatic method with pressures in the range of 15,000 to 17,000 psi (103 to 117 MPa). The compacted billets are hot-rolled to the final bar size, yielding a tool-steel material which has 100 percent theoretical density. High-speed tool steels produced by the PM method offer a tool material providing increased tool wear life and high impact strength, of particular advantage in interrupted cuts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HARDENING, TEMPERING, AND ANNEALING

Heat Treatment of Standard Steels

Heat Treating Definitions.—This glossary of heat-treating terms has been adopted by the American Foundry Society (AFS, formerly American Foundrymen's Association), ASM International (formerly American Society for Metals), American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), and the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE). Since it is not intended to be a specification but is strictly a set of definitions, temperatures have purposely been omitted.

Aging: Describes a time-temperature-dependent change in the properties of certain alloys. Except for strain aging and age softening, it is the result of precipitation from a solid solution of one or more compounds whose solubility decreases with decreasing temperature. For each alloy susceptible to aging, there is a unique range of time-temperature combinations to which it will respond.

Annealing: A term denoting a treatment, consisting of heating to and holding at a suitable temperature followed by cooling at a suitable rate, used primarily to soften but also to simultaneously produce desired changes in other properties or in microstructure. The purpose of such changes may be, but is not confined to, improvement of machinability, facilitation of cold-working, improvement of mechanical or electrical properties, or increase in stability of dimensions. The time-temperature cycles used vary widely both in maximum temperature attained and in cooling rate employed, depending on the composition of the material, its condition, and the results desired. When applicable, the following more specific process names should be used: Black Annealing, Blue Annealing, Box Annealing, Bright Annealing, Cycle Annealing, Flame Annealing, Full Annealing, Graphitizing, Intermediate Annealing, Isothermal Annealing, Process Annealing, Quench Annealing, and Spheroidizing. When the term is used without qualification, full annealing is implied. When applied only for the relief of stress, the process is properly called stress relieving.

Black Annealing: Box annealing or pot annealing, used mainly for sheet, strip, or wire.

Blue Annealing: Heating hot-rolled sheet in an open furnace to a temperature within the transformation range and then cooling in air to soften the metal. The formation of a bluish oxide on the surface is incidental.

Box Annealing: Annealing in a sealed container under conditions that minimize oxidation. In box annealing, the charge is usually heated slowly to a temperature below the transformation range, but sometimes above or within it, and is then cooled slowly; this process is also called "close annealing" or "pot annealing."

Bright Annealing: Annealing in a protective medium to prevent discoloration of the bright surface.

Cycle Annealing: An annealing process employing a predetermined and closely controlled time-temperature cycle to produce specific properties or microstructure.

Flame Annealing: Annealing in which the heat is applied directly by a flame.

Full Annealing: Austenitizing and then cooling at a rate such that the hardness of the product approaches a minimum.

Graphitizing: Annealing in such a way that some or all of the carbon is precipitated as graphite.

Intermediate Annealing: Annealing at one or more stages during manufacture and before final thermal treatment.

Isothermal Annealing: Austenitizing and then cooling to and holding at a temperature at which austenite transforms to a relatively soft ferrite-carbide aggregate.

Process Annealing: An imprecise term used to denote various treatments that improve workability. For the term to be meaningful, the condition of the material and the time-temperature cycle used must be stated.

Quench Annealing: Annealing an austenitic alloy by *Solution Heat Treatment*.

Spheroidizing: Heating and cooling in a cycle designed to produce a spheroidal or globular form of carbide.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Austempering: Quenching from a temperature above the transformation range, in a medium having a rate of heat abstraction high enough to prevent the formation of high-temperature transformation products, and then holding the alloy, until transformation is complete, at a temperature below that of pearlite formation and above that of martensite formation.

Austenitizing: Forming austenite by heating into the transformation range (partial austenitizing) or above the transformation range (complete austenitizing). When used without qualification, the term implies complete austenitizing.

Baking: Heating to a low temperature in order to remove entrained gases.

Bluing: A treatment of the surface of iron-base alloys, usually in the form of sheet or strip, on which, by the action of air or steam at a suitable temperature, a thin blue oxide film is formed on the initially scale-free surface, as a means of improving appearance and resistance to corrosion. This term is also used to denote a heat treatment of springs after fabrication, to reduce the internal stress created by coiling and forming.

Carbon Potential: A measure of the ability of an environment containing active carbon to alter or maintain, under prescribed conditions, the carbon content of the steel exposed to it. In any particular environment, the carbon level attained will depend on such factors as temperature, time, and steel composition.

Carbon Restoration: Replacing the carbon lost in the surface layer from previous processing by carburizing this layer to substantially restore the original carbon level.

Carbonitriding: A case-hardening process in which a suitable ferrous material is heated above the lower transformation temperature in a gaseous atmosphere of such composition as to cause simultaneous absorption of carbon and nitrogen by the surface and, by diffusion, create a concentration gradient. The process is completed by cooling at a rate that produces the desired properties in the workpiece.

Carburizing: A process in which carbon is introduced into a solid iron-base alloy by heating above the transformation temperature range while in contact with a carbonaceous material that may be a solid, liquid, or gas. Carburizing is frequently followed by quenching to produce a hardened case.

Case: 1) The surface layer of an iron-base alloy that has been suitably altered in composition and can be made substantially harder than the interior or core by a process of case hardening; and 2) the hardened surface layer of a piece of steel that is large enough to have a distinctly softer core or center.

Cementation: The process of introducing elements into the outer layer of metal objects by means of high-temperature diffusion.

Cold Treatment: Exposing to suitable subzero temperatures for the purpose of obtaining desired conditions or properties, such as dimensional or microstructural stability. When the treatment involves the transformation of retained austenite, it is usually followed by a tempering treatment.

Conditioning Heat Treatment: A preliminary heat treatment used to prepare a material for a desired reaction to a subsequent heat treatment. For the term to be meaningful, the treatment used must be specified.

Controlled Cooling: A term used to describe a process by which a steel object is cooled from an elevated temperature, usually from the final hot-forming operation in a predetermined manner of cooling to avoid hardening, cracking, or internal damage.

Core: 1) The interior portion of an iron-base alloy that after case hardening is substantially softer than the surface layer or case; and 2) the relatively soft central portion of certain hardened tool steels.

Critical Range or Critical Temperature Range: Synonymous with *Transformation Range*, which is preferred.

Cyaniding: A process of case hardening an iron-base alloy by the simultaneous absorption of carbon and nitrogen by heating in a cyanide salt. Cyaniding is usually followed by quenching to produce a hard case.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Decarburization: The loss of carbon from the surface of an iron-base alloy as the result of heating in a medium that reacts with the carbon.

Drawing: Drawing, or drawing the temper, is synonymous with *Tempering*, which is preferable.

Eutectic Alloy: The alloy composition that freezes at constant temperature similar to a pure metal. The lowest melting (or freezing) combination of two or more metals. The alloy structure (homogeneous) of two or more solid phases formed from the liquid eutectically.

Hardenability: In a ferrous alloy, the property that determines the depth and distribution of hardness induced by quenching.

Hardening: Any process of increasing hardness of metal by suitable treatment, usually involving heating and cooling. See also *Aging*.

Hardening, Case: A process of surface hardening involving a change in the composition of the outer layer of an iron-base alloy followed by appropriate thermal treatment. Typical case-hardening processes are *Carburizing*, *Cyaniding*, *Carbonitriding*, and *Nitriding*.

Hardening, Flame: A process of heating the surface layer of an iron-base alloy above the transformation temperature range by means of a high-temperature flame, followed by quenching.

Hardening, Precipitation: A process of hardening an alloy in which a constituent precipitates from a supersaturated solid solution. See also *Aging*.

Hardening, Secondary: An increase in hardness following the normal softening that occurs during the tempering of certain alloy steels.

Heating, Differential: A heating process by which the temperature is made to vary throughout the object being heated so that, on cooling, different portions may have such different physical properties as may be desired.

Heating, Induction: A process of local heating by electrical induction.

Heat Treatment: A combination of heating and cooling operations applied to a metal or alloy in the solid state to obtain desired conditions or properties. Heating for the sole purpose of hot-working is excluded from the meaning of this definition.

Heat Treatment, Solution: A treatment in which an alloy is heated to a suitable temperature and held at this temperature for a sufficient length of time to allow a desired constituent to enter into solid solution, followed by rapid cooling to hold the constituent in solution. The material is then in a supersaturated, unstable state, and may subsequently exhibit *Age Hardening*.

Homogenizing: A high-temperature heat-treatment process intended to eliminate or to decrease chemical segregation by diffusion.

Isothermal Transformation: A change in phase at constant temperature.

Malleablizing: A process of annealing white cast iron in which the combined carbon is wholly or in part transformed to graphitic or free carbon and, in some cases, part of the carbon is removed completely. See *Temper Carbon*.

Maraging: A precipitation hardening treatment applied to a special group of iron-base alloys to precipitate one or more intermetallic compounds in a matrix of essentially carbon-free martensite.

Martempering: A hardening procedure in which an austenitized ferrous workpiece is quenched into an appropriate medium whose temperature is maintained substantially at the M_s of the workpiece, held in the medium until its temperature is uniform throughout but not long enough to permit bainite to form, and then cooled in air. The treatment is followed by tempering.

Nitriding: A process of case hardening in which an iron-base alloy of special composition is heated in an atmosphere of ammonia or in contact with nitrogenous material. Surface hardening is produced by the absorption of nitrogen without quenching.

Normalizing: A process in which an iron-base alloy is heated to a temperature above the transformation range and subsequently cooled in still air at room temperature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Overheated: A metal is said to have been overheated if, after exposure to an unduly high temperature, it develops an undesirably coarse grain structure but is not permanently damaged. The structure damaged by overheating can be corrected by suitable heat treatment or by mechanical work or by a combination of the two. In this respect it differs from a Burnt structure.

Patenting: A process of heat treatment applied to medium- or high-carbon steel in wire making prior to the wire drawing or between drafts. It consists in heating to a temperature above the transformation range, followed by cooling to a temperature below that range in air or in a bath of molten lead or salt maintained at a temperature appropriate to the carbon content of the steel and the properties required of the finished product.

Preheating: Heating to an appropriate temperature immediately prior to austenitizing when hardening high-hardenability constructional steels, many of the tool steels, and heavy sections.

Quenching: Rapid cooling. When applicable, the following more specific terms should be used: Direct Quenching, Fog Quenching, Hot Quenching, Interrupted Quenching, Selective Quenching, Slack Quenching, Spray Quenching, and Time Quenching.

Direct Quenching: Quenching carburized parts directly from the carburizing operation.

Fog Quenching: Quenching in a mist.

Hot Quenching: An imprecise term used to cover a variety of quenching procedures in which a quenching medium is maintained at a prescribed temperature above 160°F (71°C).

Interrupted Quenching: A quenching procedure in which the workpiece is removed from the first quench at a temperature substantially higher than that of the quenchant and is then subjected to a second quenching system having a different cooling rate than the first.

Selective Quenching: Quenching only certain portions of a workpiece.

Slack Quenching: The incomplete hardening of steel due to quenching from the austenitizing temperature at a rate slower than the critical cooling rate for the particular steel, resulting in the formation of one or more transformation products in addition to martensite.

Spray Quenching: Quenching in a spray of liquid.

Time Quenching: Interrupted quenching in which the duration of holding in the quenching medium is controlled.

Soaking: Prolonged heating of a metal at a selected temperature.

Stabilizing Treatment: A treatment applied to stabilize the dimensions of a workpiece or the structure of a material such as 1) before finishing to final dimensions, heating a workpiece to or somewhat beyond its operating temperature and then cooling to room temperature a sufficient number of times to ensure stability of dimensions in service; 2) transforming retained austenite in those materials that retain substantial amounts when quench hardened (see cold treatment); and 3) heating a solution-treated austenitic stainless steel that contains controlled amounts of titanium or niobium plus tantalum to a temperature below the solution heat-treating temperature to cause precipitation of finely divided, uniformly distributed carbides of those elements, thereby substantially reducing the amount of carbon available for the formation of chromium carbides in the grain boundaries on subsequent exposure to temperatures in the sensitizing range.

Stress Relieving: A process to reduce internal residual stresses in a metal object by heating the object to a suitable temperature and holding for a proper time at that temperature. This treatment may be applied to relieve stresses induced by casting, quenching, normalizing, machining, cold-working, or welding.

Temper Carbon: The free or graphitic carbon that comes out of solution usually in the form of rounded nodules in the structure during *Graphitizing* or *Malleablizing*.

Tempering: Heating a quench-hardened or normalized ferrous alloy to a temperature below the transformation range to produce desired changes in properties.

Double Tempering: A treatment in which quench-hardened steel is given two complete tempering cycles at substantially the same temperature for the purpose of ensuring completion of the tempering reaction and promoting stability of the resulting microstructure.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Snap Temper: A precautionary interim stress-relieving treatment applied to high hardenability steels immediately after quenching to prevent cracking because of delay in tempering them at the prescribed higher temperature.

Temper Brittleness: Brittleness that results when certain steels are held within, or are cooled slowly through, a certain range of temperatures below the transformation range. The brittleness is revealed by notched-bar impact tests at or below room temperature.

Transformation Ranges or Transformation Temperature Ranges: Those ranges of temperature within which austenite forms during heating and transforms during cooling. The two ranges are distinct, sometimes overlapping but never coinciding. The limiting temperatures of the ranges depend on the composition of the alloy and on the rate of change of temperature, particularly during cooling.

Transformation Temperature: The temperature at which a change in phase occurs. The term is sometimes used to denote the limiting temperature of a transformation range. The following symbols are used for iron and steels:

Ac_{cm} = In hypereutectoid steel, the temperature at which the solution of cementite in austenite is completed during heating

Ac_1 = The temperature at which austenite begins to form during heating

Ac_3 = The temperature at which transformation of ferrite to austenite is completed during heating

Ac_4 = The temperature at which austenite transforms to delta ferrite during heating

$Ae_1, Ae_3, Ae_{cm}, Ae_4$ = The temperatures of phase changes at equilibrium

Ar_{cm} = In hypereutectoid steel, the temperature at which precipitation of cementite starts during cooling

Ar_1 = The temperature at which transformation of austenite to ferrite or to ferrite plus cementite is completed during cooling

Ar_3 = The temperature at which austenite begins to transform to ferrite during cooling

Ar_4 = The temperature at which delta ferrite transforms to austenite during cooling

M_s = The temperature at which transformation of austenite to martensite starts during cooling

M_f = The temperature, during cooling, at which transformation of austenite to martensite is substantially completed

All these changes, except the formation of martensite, occur at lower temperatures during cooling than during heating, and depend on the rate of change of temperature.

Hardness and Hardenability.—Hardenability is the property of steel that determines the *depth and distribution of hardness* induced by quenching from the austenitizing temperature. Hardenability should not be confused with hardness as such or with maximum hardness. Hardness is a measure of the ability of a metal to resist penetration as determined by any one of a number of standard tests (Brinell, Rockwell, Vickers, etc). The maximum attainable hardness of any steel depends solely on carbon content and is not significantly affected by alloy content. Maximum hardness is realized only when the cooling rate in quenching is rapid enough to ensure full transformation to martensite.

The as-quenched surface hardness of a steel part is dependent on carbon content and cooling rate, but the *depth* to which a certain hardness level is maintained with given quenching conditions is a function of its hardenability. Hardenability is largely determined by the percentage of alloying elements in the steel; however, austenite grain size, time and temperature during austenitizing, and prior microstructure also significantly affect the hardness depth. The hardenability required for a particular part depends on size, design, and service stresses. For highly stressed parts, the best combination of strength and toughness is obtained by through hardening to a martensitic structure followed by adequate tempering. There are applications, however, where through hardening is not

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

necessary or even desirable. For parts that are stressed principally at or near the surface, or in which wear resistance or resistance to shock loading is anticipated, a shallow hardening steel with a moderately soft core may be appropriate.

For through hardening of thin sections, carbon steels may be adequate; but as section size increases, alloy steels of increasing hardenability are required. The usual practice is to select the most economical grade that can meet the desired properties consistently. It is not good practice to utilize a higher alloy grade than necessary, because excessive use of alloying elements adds little to the properties and can sometimes induce susceptibility to quenching cracks.

Quenching Media: The choice of quenching media is often a critical factor in the selection of steel of the proper hardenability for a particular application. Quenching severity can be varied by selection of quenching medium, agitation control, and additives that improve the cooling capability of the quenchant. Increasing the quenching severity permits the use of less expensive steels of lower hardenability; however, consideration must also be given to the amount of distortion that can be tolerated and the susceptibility to quench cracking. In general, the more severe the quenchant and the less symmetrical the part being quenched, the greater are the size and shape changes that result from quenching and the greater is the risk of quench cracking. Consequently, although water quenching is less costly than oil quenching and water-quenched steels are less expensive than those requiring oil quenching, it is important to know that the parts being hardened can withstand the resulting distortion and the possibility of cracking.

Oil, salt, and synthetic water-polymer quenchants are also used, but they often require steels of higher alloy content and hardenability. A general rule for the selection of steel and quenchant for a particular part is that the steel should have a hardenability not exceeding that required by the severity of the quenchant selected. The carbon content of the steel should also not exceed that required to meet specified hardness and strength, because quench cracking susceptibility increases with carbon content.

The choice of quenching media is important in hardening, but another factor is agitation of the quenching bath. The more rapidly the bath is agitated, the more rapidly heat is removed from the steel and the more effective is the quench.

Hardenability Test Methods: The most commonly used method for determining hardenability is the end-quench test developed by Jominy and Boegehold, and described in detail in both SAE J406 and ASTM A255. In this test a normalized 1-inch-round (25.4 mm), approximately 4-inch-long (102 mm) specimen of the steel to be evaluated is heated uniformly to its austenitizing temperature. The specimen is then removed from the furnace, placed in a jig, and immediately end quenched by a jet of room-temperature water. The water is played on the end face of the specimen, without touching the sides, until the entire specimen has cooled. Longitudinal flat surfaces are ground on opposite sides of the piece, and Rockwell C scale hardness readings are taken at $\frac{1}{16}$-inch (1.6 mm) intervals from the quenched end. The resulting data are plotted on graph paper with the hardness values as ordinates (y-axis) and distances from the quenched end as abscissas (x-axis). Representative data have been accumulated for a variety of standard steel grades and are published by SAE and AISI as "H-bands." These data show graphically and in tabular form the high and low limits applicable to each grade. The suffix H following the standard AISI/SAE numerical designation indicates that the steel has been produced to specific hardenability limits.

Experiments have confirmed that the cooling rate at a given point along the Jominy bar corresponds closely to the cooling rate at various locations in round bars of various sizes. In general, when end-quench curves for different steels coincide approximately, similar treatments will produce similar properties in sections of the same size. On occasion it is necessary to predict the end-quench hardenability of a steel not available for testing, and reasonably accurate means of calculating hardness for any Jominy location on a section of steel of known analysis and grain size have been developed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tempering: As-quenched steels are in a highly stressed condition and are seldom used without tempering. Tempering imparts plasticity or toughness to the steel and is inevitably accompanied by a loss in hardness and strength. The loss in strength, however, is only incidental to the very important increase in toughness, which is due to the relief of residual stresses induced during quenching and to precipitation, coalescence, and spheroidization of iron and alloy carbides resulting in a microstructure of greater plasticity.

Alloying slows the tempering rate, so that alloy steel requires a higher tempering temperature to obtain a given hardness than carbon steel of the same carbon content. The higher tempering temperature for a given hardness permits a greater relaxation of residual stress and thereby improves the steel's mechanical properties. Tempering is done in furnaces or in oil or salt baths at temperatures varying from 300 to 1200°F (149 to 649°C). With most grades of alloy steel, the range between 500 and 700°F (260 to 371°C) is avoided because of a phenomenon known as "blue brittleness," which reduces impact properties. Tempering the martensitic stainless steels in the range of 800–1100°F (427 to 593°C) is not recommended because of the low and erratic impact properties and reduced corrosion resistance that result. Maximum toughness is achieved at higher temperatures. It is important to temper parts as soon as possible after quenching because any delay greatly increases the risk of cracking resulting from the high-stress condition in the as-quenched part.

Surface Hardening Treatment (Case Hardening).—Many applications require high hardness or strength primarily at the surface, and complex service stresses frequently require not only a hard, wear-resistant surface, but also core strength and toughness to withstand impact stress.

To achieve these different properties, two general processes are used: 1) The chemical composition of the surface is altered, prior to or after quenching and tempering; the processes used include carburizing, nitriding, cyaniding, and carbonitriding; and 2) Only the surface layer is hardened by the heating and quenching process; the most common processes used for surface hardening are flame hardening and induction hardening.

Carburizing: Carbon is diffused into the part's surface to a controlled depth by heating the part in a carbonaceous medium. The resulting depth of carburization, commonly referred to as case depth, depends on the carbon potential of the medium used and the time and temperature of the carburizing treatment. The steels most suitable for carburizing to enhance toughness are those with sufficiently low carbon contents, usually below 0.3 percent. Carburizing temperatures range from 1550 to 1750°F (843 to 954°C), with the temperature and time at temperature adjusted to obtain various case depths. Steel selection, hardenability, and type of quench are determined by section size, desired core hardness, and service requirements.

Three types of carburizing are most often used: 1) *Liquid carburizing* involves heating the steel in molten barium cyanide or sodium cyanide. The case absorbs some nitrogen in addition to carbon, thus enhancing surface hardness; 2) *Gas carburizing* involves heating the steel in a gas of controlled carbon content. When used, the carbon level in the case can be closely controlled; and 3) *Pack carburizing*, which involves sealing both the steel and solid carbonaceous material in a gas-tight container, then heating this combination.

With any of these methods, the part may be either quenched after the carburizing cycle without reheating or air cooled followed by reheating to the austenitizing temperature prior to quenching. The case depth may be varied to suit the conditions of loading in service. However, service characteristics frequently require that only selective areas of a part have to be case hardened. Covering the areas not to be cased, with copper plating or a layer of commercial paste, allows the carbon to penetrate only the exposed areas. Another method involves carburizing the entire part, then removing the case in selected areas by machining, prior to quench hardening.

Nitriding: The steel part is heated to a temperature of 900–1150°F (482 to 621°C) in an atmosphere of ammonia gas and dissociated ammonia for an extended period of time

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

that depends on the case depth desired. A thin, very hard case results from the formation of nitrides. Strong nitride-forming elements (chromium and molybdenum) are required to be present in the steel, and often special nonstandard grades containing aluminum (a strong nitride former) are used. The major advantage of this process is that parts can be quenched and tempered, then machined, prior to nitriding, because only a little distortion occurs during nitriding.

Cyaniding: This process involves heating the part in a bath of sodium cyanide to a temperature slightly above the transformation range, followed by quenching, to obtain a thin case of high hardness.

Carbonitriding: This process is similar to cyaniding except that the absorption of carbon and nitrogen is accomplished by heating the part in a gaseous atmosphere containing hydrocarbons and ammonia. Temperatures of 1425–1625°F (774 to 885°C) are used for parts to be quenched, and lower temperatures, 1200–1450°F (649 to 788°C), may be used where a liquid quench is not required.

Flame Hardening: This process involves rapid heating with a direct high-temperature gas flame, such that the surface layer of the part is heated above the transformation range, followed by cooling at a rate that causes the desired hardening. Steels for flame hardening are usually in the range of 0.30–0.60 percent carbon, with hardenability appropriate for the case depth desired and the quenchant used. The quenchant is usually sprayed on the surface a short distance behind the heating flame. Immediate tempering is required and may be done in a conventional furnace or by a flame-tempering process, depending on part size and costs.

Induction Hardening: This process is similar in many respects to flame hardening except that the heating is caused by a high-frequency electric current sent through a coil or inductor surrounding the part. The depth of heating depends on the frequency, the rate of heat conduction from the surface, and the length of the heating cycle. Quenching is usually accomplished with a water spray introduced at the proper time through jets in or near the inductor block or coil. In some instances, however, parts are oil-quenched by immersing them in a bath of oil after they reach the hardening temperature.

Structure of Fully Annealed Carbon Steel.—In carbon steel that has been fully annealed, there are normally present, apart from such impurities as phosphorus and sulfur, two constituents: the element iron in a form metallurgically known as *ferrite* and the chemical compound iron carbide in the form metallurgically known as *cementite*. This latter constituent consists of 6.67 percent carbon and 93.33 percent iron. A certain proportion of these two constituents will be present as a mechanical mixture. This mechanical mixture, the amount of which depends on the carbon content of the steel, consists of alternate bands or layers of ferrite and cementite. Under the microscope, the matrix frequently has the appearance of mother-of-pearl and hence has been named *pearlite*. Pearlite contains about 0.85 percent carbon and 99.15 percent iron, neglecting impurities. A fully annealed steel containing 0.85 percent carbon would consist entirely of pearlite. Such a steel is known as *eutectoid* steel and has a laminated structure characteristic of a eutectic alloy. Steel that has less than 0.85 percent carbon (*hypoeutectoid* steel) has an excess of ferrite above that required to mix with the cementite present to form pearlite; hence, both ferrite and pearlite are present in the fully annealed state. Steel having a carbon content greater than 0.85 percent (*hypereutectoid* steel) has an excess of cementite over that required to mix with the ferrite to form pearlite; hence, both cementite and pearlite are present in the fully annealed state. The structural constitution of carbon steel in terms of ferrite, cementite, pearlite and austenite for different carbon contents and at different temperatures is shown by the accompanying figure, *Phase Diagram of Carbon Steel*.

Effect of Heating Fully Annealed Carbon Steel.—When carbon steel in the fully annealed state is heated above the lower critical point, which is some temperature in the range of 1335 to 1355°F (724 to 735°C) depending on the carbon content, the alternate

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

bands or layers of ferrite and cementite that make up the pearlite begin to merge into each other. This process continues until the pearlite is thoroughly "dissolved," forming what is known as *austenite*. If the temperature of the steel continues to rise and there is present, in addition to the pearlite, any excess ferrite or cementite, this also will begin to dissolve into the austenite until finally only austenite will be present. The temperature at which the excess ferrite or cementite is completely dissolved in the austenite is called the *upper critical point*. This temperature varies with the carbon content of the steel much more widely than the lower critical point (see Fig. 1).

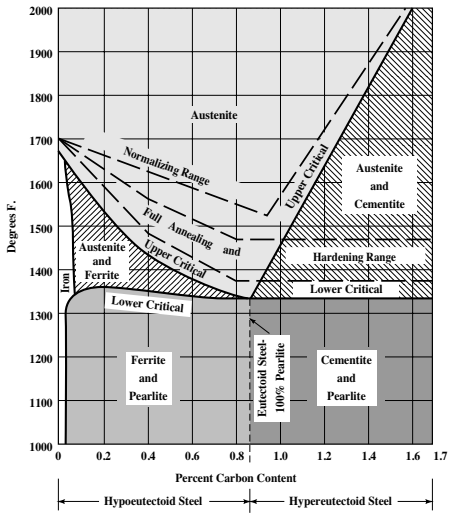


Fig. 1. Phase Diagram of Carbon Steel

Effect of Slow Cooling on Carbon Steel.—If carbon steel that has been heated to the point where it consists entirely of austenite is slowly cooled, the process of transformation that took place during the heating will be reversed, but the upper and lower critical points will occur at somewhat lower temperatures than they do on heating. Assuming that the steel was originally fully annealed, its structure on returning to atmospheric temperature after slow cooling will be the same as before in terms of the proportions of ferrite or cementite and pearlite present. The austenite will have entirely disappeared.

Effect of Rapid Cooling or Quenching on Carbon Steel.—Observations have shown that as the rate at which carbon steel is cooled from an austenitic state is increased, the temperature at which the austenite begins to change into pearlite drops more and more below the slow cooling transformation temperature of about 1300°F (704°C). For example, a 0.80 percent carbon steel that is cooled at such a rate that the temperature drops 500°F (278°C drop) in one second will show transformation of austenite beginning at 930°F (500°C). As the cooling rate is increased, the laminations of the pearlite formed by the transformation of the austenite become finer and finer up to the point where they cannot be detected under a high-power microscope, while the steel itself increases in hardness and tensile strength. As the rate of cooling is still further increased, this transformation temperature suddenly drops to around 500°F (260°C) or lower, depending on the carbon content of the steel. The cooling rate at which this sudden drop in transformation

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

temperature takes place is called the *critical cooling rate*. When a piece of carbon steel is quenched at this rate or faster, a new structure is formed. The austenite is transformed into *martensite*, which is characterized by an angular needle-like structure and a very high hardness.

If carbon steel is subjected to a severe quench or to extremely rapid cooling, a small percentage of the austenite, instead of being transformed into martensite during the quenching operation, may be retained. Over a period of time, however, this remaining austenite tends to be gradually transformed into martensite even though the steel is not subjected to further heating or cooling. Martensite has a lower density than austenite, and such a change, or "aging" as it is called, often results in an appreciable increase in volume or "growth" and the setting up of new internal stresses in the steel.

Steel Heat Treating Furnaces.—Various types of furnaces heated by gas, oil, or electricity are used for the heat treatment of steel. These furnaces include the oven or box type in various modifications for "in-and-out" or for continuous loading and unloading; the retort type; the pit type; the pot type; and the salt-bath electrode type.

Oven or Box Furnaces: This type of furnace has a box or oven-shaped heating chamber. The "in-and-out" oven furnaces are loaded by hand or by a track-mounted car that, when rolled into the furnace, forms the bottom of the heating chamber. The car type is used where heavy or bulky pieces must be handled. Some oven-type furnaces are provided with a full muffle or a semimuffle, which is an enclosed refractory chamber into which the parts to be heated are placed. The full-muffle, being fully enclosed, prevents any flames or burning gases from coming in contact with the work and permits a special atmosphere to be used to protect or condition the work. The semimuffle, which is open at the top, protects the work from direct impingement of the flame although it does not shut off the work from the hot gases. In the direct-heat-type oven furnace, the work is open to the flame. In the electric oven furnace, a retort is provided when gas atmospheres are to be employed to confine the gas and prevent it from attacking the heating elements. Where muffles are used, they must be replaced periodically, and a greater amount of fuel is required than in a direct-heat type of oven furnace.

For continuous loading and unloading, there are several types of furnaces, such as rotary hearth car; roller-, furnace belt-, walking-beam, or pusher-conveyor; and a continuous-kiln-type through which track-mounted cars are run. In the continuous type of furnace, the work may pass through several zones that are maintained at different temperatures for preheating, heating, soaking, and cooling.

Retort Furnace: This is a vertical type of furnace provided with a cylindrical metal retort into which the parts to be heat treated are suspended either individually, if large enough, or in a container of some sort. The use of a retort permits special gas atmospheres to be employed for carburizing, nitriding, etc.

Pit-Type Furnace: This is a vertical furnace arranged for the loading of parts in a metal basket. The parts within the basket are heated by convection, and when the basket is lowered into place, it fits into the furnace chamber in such a way as to provide a dead-air space to prevent direct heating.

Pot-Type Furnace: This furnace is used for the immersion method of heat treating small parts. A cast-alloy pot is employed to hold a bath of molten lead or salt in which the parts are placed for heating.

Salt Bath Electrode Furnace: In this type of electric furnace, heating is accomplished by means of electrodes suspended directly in the salt bath. The patented grouping and design of electrodes provide an electromagnetic action that results in an automatic stirring action. This stirring tends to produce an even temperature throughout the bath.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Vacuum Furnace: Vacuum heat treatment is a relatively new development in metallurgical processing, with a vacuum substituting for the more commonly used protective gas atmospheres. The most commonly used furnace is the "cold wall" type, consisting of a water-cooled vessel that is maintained near ambient temperature during operation. During quenching, the chamber is backfilled up to or above atmospheric pressure with an inert gas, which is circulated by an internal fan. When even faster cooling rates are needed, furnaces are available with capability for liquid quenching, performed in an isolated chamber.

Fluidized-Bed Furnace: Fluidized-bed techniques are not new; however, new furnace designs have extended the technology into the temperature ranges required for most common heat treatments. In fluidization, a bed of dry, finely divided particles, typically aluminum oxide, is made to behave like a liquid by feeding gas upward through the bed. An important characteristic of the bed is high-efficiency heat transfer. Applications include continuous or batch-type units for all general heat treatments.

Physical Properties of Heat Treated Steels.—Steels that have been "fully hardened" to the same hardness when quenched will have about the same tensile and yield strengths regardless of composition and alloying elements. When the hardness of such a steel is known, it is also possible to predict its reduction of area and tempering temperature. The accompanying figures illustrating these relationships have been prepared by the Society of Automotive Engineers.

Fig. 2 gives the range of Brinell Hardness Numbers (BHN) that could be expected for any particular tensile strength, or it may be used to determine the range of tensile strengths that would correspond to any particular hardness. Fig. 3 shows the relationship between the tensile strength, hardness, and the yield point. The solid line is the normal-expectancy curve. The dotted-line curves give the range of the variation of scatter of the plotted data. Fig. 4 shows the relationship that exists between the tensile strength (or hardness) and the reduction of area. The curve to the left represents the alloy steels and that on the right the carbon steels. Both are normal-expectancy curves and the extremities of the perpendicular lines that intersect them represent the variations from the normal-expectancy curves that may be caused by quality differences and by the magnitude of parasitic stresses induced by quenching. Fig. 5 shows the relationship between the hardness (or approximately equivalent tensile strength) and the tempering temperature. Three curves are given, one for fully hardened steels with a carbon content between 0.40 and 0.55 percent, one for fully hardened steels with a carbon content between 0.30 and 0.40 percent, and one for steels that are not fully hardened.

From Fig. 2, it can be seen that for a tensile strength of, say, 200,000 pounds per square inch (1379 MPa), the Brinell Hardness Number could range between 375 and 425. By taking 400 as the mean hardness value and using Fig. 5, it can be seen that the tempering temperature of fully hardened steels of 0.40 to 0.55 percent carbon content would be 990°F (532°C) and that of fully hardened steels of 0.30 to 0.40 percent carbon would be 870°F (466°C). This chart also shows that the tempering temperature for a steel not fully hardened would approach 520°F (271°C). A yield point of 0.9 × 200,000, or 180,000 pounds per square inch (1241 MPa) is indicated (Fig. 3) for the fully hardened steel with a tensile strength of 200,000 pounds per square inch. Most alloy steels of 200,000 pounds per square inch tensile strength would probably have a reduction in area of close to 44 percent (Fig. 4), but some would have values in the range of 35 to 53 percent. Carbon steels of the same tensile strength would probably have a reduction in area of close to 24 percent but could possibly range from 17 to 31 percent.

Fig. 3 and Fig. 4 represent steel in the quenched and tempered condition, and Fig. 2 represents steel in the hardened and tempered, as-rolled, annealed, and normalized conditions. These charts give a good general indication of mechanical properties; however, more exact information when required should be obtained from tests on samples of the individual heats of steel under consideration.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

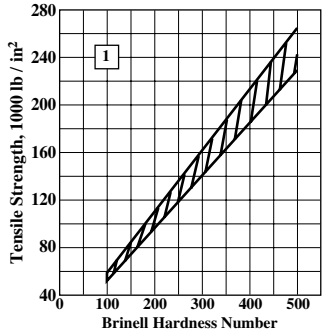


Fig. 2.

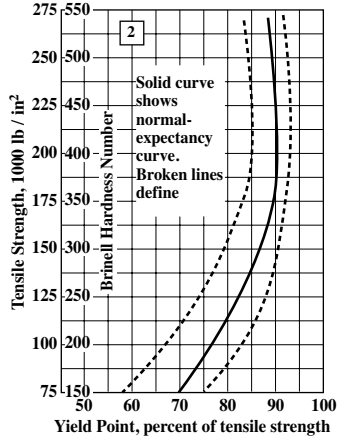


Fig. 3.

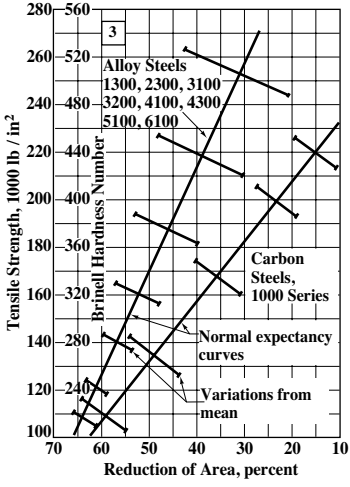


Fig. 4.

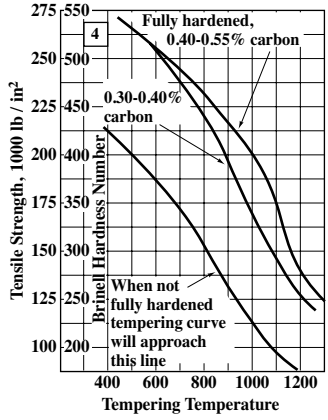


Fig. 5.

Hardening

Basic Steps in Hardening.—The operation of hardening steel consists fundamentally of two steps. The first step is to heat the steel to some temperature above its transformation point (usually at least 100°F or 56°C above) so that it becomes entirely austenitic in structure. The second step is to quench the steel at some rate faster than the critical rate (which depends on the carbon content, the amounts of alloying elements present other than carbon, and the grain size of the austenite) to produce a martensitic structure. The hardness of a martensitic steel depends on its carbon content and ranges from about 460 BHN at

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

0.20 percent carbon to about 710 BHN above 0.50 carbon. In comparison, ferrite has a hardness of about 90 BHN, pearlite about 240 BHN, and cementite around 550 BHN.

Critical Points of Decalescence and Recalescence.—The critical or transformation point at which pearlite is transformed into austenite as it is being heated is also called the *decalescence point*. If the temperature of the steel was observed as it passed through the decalescence point, it would be noted that it would continue to absorb heat without appreciably rising in temperature, although the immediate surroundings were hotter than the steel. Similarly, the critical or transformation point at which austenite is transformed back into pearlite on cooling is called the *recalescence point*. When this point is reached, the steel will give out heat so that its temperature, instead of continuing to fall, will momentarily increase.

The recalescence point is lower than the decalescence point by anywhere from 85 to 215°F (47 to 119°C lower), and the lower of these points does not manifest itself unless the higher one has first been fully passed. These critical points have a direct relation to the hardening of steel. Unless a temperature sufficient to reach the decalescence point is obtained, so that the pearlite is changed into austenite, no hardening action can take place; and unless the steel is cooled suddenly before it reaches the recalescence point, thus preventing the changing back again from austenite to pearlite, no hardening can take place. The critical points vary for different kinds of steel and must be determined by tests. The variation in the critical points makes it necessary to heat different steels to different temperatures when hardening.

Hardening Temperatures.—The maximum temperature to which a steel is heated before quenching to harden it is called the hardening temperature. Hardening temperatures vary for different steels and different classes of service, although, in general, it may be said that the hardening temperature for any given steel is above the lower critical point of that steel.

Just how far above this point the hardening temperature lies for any particular steel depends on three factors: 1) the chemical composition of the steel; 2) the amount of excess ferrite (if the steel has less than 0.85 percent carbon content) or the amount of excess cementite (if the steel has more than 0.85 percent carbon content) that is to be dissolved in the austenite; and 3) the maximum grain size permitted, if desired.

The general range of full-hardening temperatures for carbon steels is shown in Fig. 5. This range is merely indicative of general practice and is not intended to represent absolute hardening temperature limits. It can be seen that for steels of less than 0.85 percent carbon content, the hardening range is above the upper critical point—that is, above the temperature at which all the excess ferrite has been dissolved in the austenite. On the other hand, for steels of more than 0.85 percent carbon content, the hardening range lies somewhat below the upper critical point. This indicates that in this hardening range, some of the excess cementite still remains undissolved in the austenite. If steel of more than 0.85 percent carbon content were heated above the upper critical point and then quenched, the resulting grain size would be excessively large.

At one time, it was considered desirable to heat steel only to the minimum temperature at which it would fully harden, one of the reasons being to avoid grain growth that takes place at higher temperature. It is now realized that no such rule as this can be applied generally since there are factors other than hardness that must be taken into consideration. For example, in many cases, toughness can be impaired by too low a temperature just as much as by too high a temperature. It is true, however, that excessive hardening temperatures result in warpage, distortion, increased scale, and decarburization.

Hardening Temperatures for Carbon Tool Steels.—The best hardening temperatures for any given tool steel are dependent on the type of tool and the intended class of service. Wherever possible, the specific recommendations of the tool steel manufacturer should be followed. General recommendations for hardening temperatures of carbon tool steels based on carbon content are as follows: For steel of 0.65 to 0.80 percent carbon content, 1450 to 1550°F (788 to 843°C); for steel of 0.80 to 0.95 percent carbon content, 1410 to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1460°F (766 to 793°C); for steel of 0.95 to 1.10 percent carbon content, 1390 to 1430°F (754 to 777°C); and for steels of 1.10 percent and over carbon content, 1380 to 1420°F (749 to 771°C). For a given hardening temperature range, the higher temperatures tend to produce deeper hardness penetration and increased compressional strength, whereas the lower temperatures tend to result in shallower hardness penetration but increased resistance to splitting or bursting stresses.

Determining Hardening Temperatures.—A hardening temperature can be specified directly, or it may be specified indirectly as a certain temperature rise above the lower critical point of the steel. Where the temperature is specified directly, a pyrometer of the type that indicates the furnace temperature or a pyrometer of the type that indicates the work temperature may be employed. If the pyrometer shows furnace temperature, care must be taken to allow sufficient time for the work to reach the furnace temperature after the pyrometer indicates that the required hardening temperature has been attained. If the pyrometer indicates work temperature, then, where the workpiece is large, time must be allowed for the interior of the work to reach the temperature of the surface, which is the temperature indicated by the pyrometer.

Where the hardening temperature is specified as a given temperature rise above the critical point of the steel, a pyrometer that indicates the temperature of the work should be used. The critical point, as well as the given temperature rise, can be more accurately determined with this type of pyrometer. As the work is heated, its temperature, as indicated by the pyrometer, rises steadily until the lower critical or decalescence point of the steel is reached. At this point, the temperature of the work ceases to rise and the pyrometer indicating or recording pointer remains stationary or fluctuates slightly. After a certain elapsed period, depending on the heat input rate, the internal changes in structure of the steel that take place at the lower critical point are completed and the temperature of the work again begins to rise. A small fluctuation in temperature may occur in the interval during which structural changes are taking place, so for uniform practice, the critical point may be considered as the temperature at which the pointer first becomes stationary.

Heating Steel in Liquid Baths.—The liquid bath commonly used for heating steel tools preparatory to hardening are molten lead, sodium cyanide, barium chloride, a mixture of barium and potassium chloride, and other metallic salts. The molten substance is retained in a crucible or pot, and the heat required may be obtained from gas, oil, or electricity. The principal advantages of heating baths are as follows: No part of the work can be heated to a temperature above that of the bath; the temperature can be easily maintained at whatever degree has proved, in practice, to give the best results; the submerged steel can be heated uniformly; and the finished surfaces are protected against oxidation.

Salt Baths.—Molten baths of various salt mixtures or compounds are used extensively for heat-treating operations, such as hardening and tempering; they are also utilized for annealing ferrous and nonferrous metals. Commercial salt-bath mixtures are available that meet a wide range of temperature and other metallurgical requirements. For example, there are neutral baths for heating tool and die steels without carburizing the surfaces; baths for carburizing the surfaces of low-carbon steel parts; baths adapted for the usual tempering temperatures of, say, 300 to 1100°F (approx. 150 to 595°C); and baths that may be heated to temperatures up to approximately 2400°F (1315°C) for hardening high-speed steels. Salt baths are also adapted for local or selective hardening, the type of bath being selected to suit the requirements. For example, a neutral bath may be used for annealing the ends of tubing or other parts, or an activated cyanide bath for carburizing the ends of shafts or other parts. Surfaces that are not to be carburized are protected by copper plating. When the work is immersed, the unplated surfaces are subjected to the carburizing action.

Baths may consist of a mixture of sodium, potassium, barium, and calcium chlorides or nitrates of sodium, potassium, barium, and calcium in varying proportions, to which sodium carbonate and sodium cyanide are sometimes added to prevent decarburization. Various proportions of these salts provide baths of different properties. Potassium

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cyanide is seldom used, as sodium cyanide costs less. The specific gravity of a salt bath is not as high as that of a lead bath; consequently, the work may be suspended in a salt bath and does not have to be held below the surface as in a lead bath.

The Lead Bath.—The lead bath is extensively used but is not adapted to the high temperatures required for hardening high-speed steel, as it begins to vaporize at about 1190°F (645°C). As the temperature increases, the lead volatilizes and gives off poisonous vapors; hence, lead furnaces should be equipped with hoods to carry away the fumes. Lead baths are generally used for temperatures below 1500 or 1600°F (815 or 870°C). They are often employed for heating small pieces that must be hardened in quantities. It is important to use pure lead that is free from sulfur. The work should be preheated before plunging it into the molten lead.

Defects in Hardening.—Uneven heating is the cause of most defects in hardening. Cracks of a circular form, from the corners or edges of a tool, indicate uneven heating in hardening. Cracks of a vertical nature and dark-colored fissures indicate that the steel has been burned and should be put on the scrap heap. Tools that have hard and soft places have been either unevenly heated, unevenly cooled, or "soaked," a term used to indicate prolonged heating. A tool not thoroughly moved about in the hardening fluid will show hard and soft places, and have a tendency to crack. Tools that are hardened by dropping them to the bottom of the tank sometimes have soft places, owing to contact with the floor or sides.

Scale on Hardened Steel.—The formation of scale on the surface of hardened steel is due to the contact of oxygen with the heated steel; hence, to prevent scale, the heated steel must not be exposed to the action of the air. When using an oven heating furnace, the flame should be so regulated that it is not visible in the heating chamber. The heated steel should be exposed to the air as little as possible when transferred from the furnace to the quenching bath. An old method of preventing scale and retaining a fine finish on dies used in jewelry manufacture, small taps, etc., is as follows: Fill the die impression with powdered boracic acid and place near the fire until the acid melts; then add a little more acid to ensure all the surfaces are covered. The die is then hardened in the usual way. If the boracic acid does not come off entirely in the quenching bath, immerse the work in boiling water. Dies hardened by this method are said to be as durable as those heated without the acid.

Hardening or Quenching Baths.—The purpose of a quenching bath is to remove heat from the steel being hardened at a rate that is faster than the critical cooling rate. Generally speaking, the more rapid the rate of heat extraction above the cooling rate, the higher will be the resulting hardness. To obtain the different rates of cooling required by different classes of work, baths of various kinds are used. These include plain or fresh water, brine, caustic soda solutions, oils of various classes, oil-water emulsions, baths of molten salt or lead for high-speed steels, and air cooling for some high-speed steel tools when a slow rate of cooling is required. To minimize distortion and cracking where such tendencies are present, without sacrificing depth-of-hardness penetration, a quenching medium should be selected that will cool rapidly at the higher temperatures and more slowly at the lower temperatures, that is below 750°F (400°C). Oil quenches in general meet this requirement.

Oil Quenching Baths: Oil is used very extensively as a quenching medium, as it results in a good proportion of hardness, toughness, and freedom from warpage when used with standard steels. Oil baths are used extensively for alloy steels. Various kinds of oils are employed, such as prepared mineral oils and vegetable, animal, and fish oils, either singly or in combination. Prepared mineral quenching oils are widely used because they have good quenching characteristics, are chemically stable, do not have an objectionable odor, and are relatively inexpensive. Special compounded oils of the soluble type are used in many plants instead of such oils as fish oil, linseed oil, cottonseed oil, etc. The soluble properties enable the oil to form an emulsion with water.

Oil cools steel at a slower rate than water, but the rate is fast enough for alloy steel. Oils have different cooling rates, however, and this rate may vary through the initial and final stages of the quenching operation. Faster cooling in the initial stage and slower cooling

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

at lower temperatures are preferable because there is less danger of cracking the steel. The temperature of quenching oil baths should range ordinarily between 90 and 130°F (32 and 55°C). A fairly constant temperature may be maintained either by circulating the oil through cooling coils or by using a tank provided with a cold-water jacket.

A good quenching oil should possess a flash and fire point sufficiently high to be safe under the conditions used. 350°F (175°C) should be about the minimum point. The specific heat of the oil regulates the hardness and toughness of the quenched steel; and the greater the specific heat, the higher will be the hardness produced. Specific heats of quenching oils vary from 0.20 to 0.75, the specific heats of fish, animal, and vegetable oils usually being from 0.2 to 0.4, and of soluble and mineral oils from 0.5 to 0.7. The efficient temperature range for quenching oil is from 90 to 140°F (32 to 60°C).

Quenching in Water.—Many carbon tool steels are hardened by immersing them in a bath of fresh water, but water is not an ideal quenching medium. Contact between the water and work and the cooling of the hot steel are impaired by the formation of gas bubbles or an insulating vapor film, especially in holes, cavities, or pockets. The results are uneven cooling and sometimes excessive strains, which may cause the tool to crack; in fact, there is greater danger of cracking in a fresh-water bath than in one containing salt water or brine.

In order to secure more even cooling and reduce the danger of cracking, either rock salt (8 or 9 percent) or caustic soda (3 to 5 percent) may be added to the bath to eliminate or prevent the formation of a vapor film or gas pockets, thus promoting rapid early cooling. Brine is commonly used and $\frac{3}{4}$ pound of rock salt per gallon (90 gm per liter) of water is equivalent to about 8 percent of salt. Brine is not inherently a more severe or drastic quenching medium than plain water, although it may seem to be because the brine makes better contact with the heated steel, and cooling is more effective. In still-bath quenching, a slow up-and-down movement of the tool is preferable to a violent swishing around.

The temperature of water-base quenching baths should preferably be kept around 70°F (21°C), but up to 90 or 100°F (32 to 38°C) is a safe range. The temperature of the hardening bath has a great deal to do with the hardness obtained. The higher the temperature of the quenching water, the more nearly does its effect approach that of oil; and if boiling water is used for quenching, it will have an effect even more gentle than that of oil — in fact, it would leave the steel nearly soft. Parts of irregular shape are sometimes quenched in a water bath that has been warmed somewhat to prevent sudden cooling and cracking.

When water is used, it should be "soft" because unsatisfactory results will be obtained with "hard" water. Any contamination of water-base quenching liquids by soap tends to decrease their rate of cooling. A water bath having 1 or 2 inches (2.5 to 5 cm) of oil on the top is sometimes employed to advantage for quenching tools made of high-carbon steel, as the oil through which the work first passes reduces the sudden quenching action of the water.

The bath should be amply large to dissipate the heat rapidly, and the temperature should be kept about constant so that successive pieces will be cooled at the same rate. Irregularly shaped parts should be immersed so that the heaviest or thickest section enters the bath first. After immersion, the part to be hardened should be agitated in the bath; the agitation reduces the tendency of the formation of a vapor coating on certain surfaces, and a more uniform rate of cooling is obtained. The work should never be dropped to the bottom of the bath until quite cool.

Flush or Local Quenching by Pressure-Spraying: When dies for cold heading, drawing, extruding, etc., or other tools, require a hard working surface and a relatively soft but tough body, the quenching may be done by spraying water under pressure against the interior or other surfaces to be hardened. Special spraying fixtures are used to hold the tool and apply the spray where the hardening is required. The pressure spray prevents the formation of gas pockets previously referred to in connection with the fresh-water quenching bath; hence, fresh water is effective for flush quenching and there is no advantage in using brine.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Quenching in Molten Salt Bath.—A molten salt bath may be used in preference to oil for quenching high-speed steel. The object in using a liquid salt bath for quenching (instead of an oil bath) is to obtain maximum hardness with minimum cooling stresses and distortion that might result in cracking expensive tools, especially if there are irregular sections. The temperature of the quenching bath may be around 1100 or 1200°F (595 to 650°C). Quenching is followed by cooling to room temperature and then the tool is tempered or drawn in a bath having a temperature range of 950 to 1100°F (510 to 593°C). In many cases, the tempering temperature is about 1050°F (566°C).

Tanks for Quenching Baths.—The main point to be considered in a quenching bath is to keep it at a uniform temperature so that successive pieces quenched will be subjected to the same heat treatment. The next consideration is to keep the bath agitated so that it will not be of different temperatures in different places; if thoroughly agitated and kept in motion, as is the case with the bath shown in Fig. 6, it is not even necessary to keep the pieces in motion in the bath, as steam will not be likely to form around the pieces quenched. Experience has proved that if a piece is held still in a thoroughly agitated bath, it will come out much straighter than if it has been moved around in an unagitated bath, an important consideration, especially when hardening long pieces. It is, besides, no easy matter to keep heavy and long pieces in motion unless by mechanical means.

Fig. 6 illustrates a water or brine tank for quenching baths. Water is forced by a pump or other means through the supply pipe into the intermediate space between the outer and inner tank. From the intermediate space, it is forced into the inner tank through holes as indicated. The water returns to the storage tank by overflowing from the inner tank into the outer one and then through the overflow pipe as indicated. Fig. 8 illustrates another water or brine tank of a more common type. In this case, the water or brine is pumped from the storage tank and continuously returned to it. If the storage tank contains a large volume of water, there is no need for a special means for cooling. Otherwise, arrangements must be made for cooling the water after it has passed through the tank. The bath is agitated by the force with which the water is pumped into it. The holes at A are drilled at an angle, so as to throw the water toward the center of the tank. Fig. 7 shows an oil-quenching tank in which water is circulated in an outer surrounding tank to keep the oil bath cool. Air is forced into the oil bath to keep it agitated. Fig. 9 shows the ordinary type of quenching tank cooled by water forced through a coil of pipe. This arrangement can be used for oil, water, or brine. Fig. 10 shows a similar type of quenching tank, but with two coils of pipe. Waterflows through one of these and steam through the other. By these means, it is possible to keep the bath at a constant temperature.

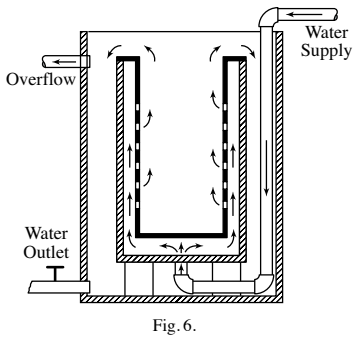


Fig. 6.

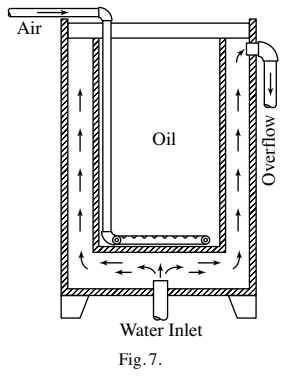


Fig. 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

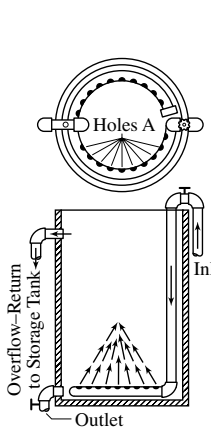


Fig. 8.

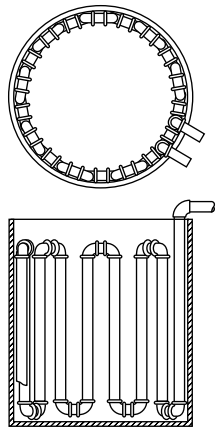


Fig. 9.

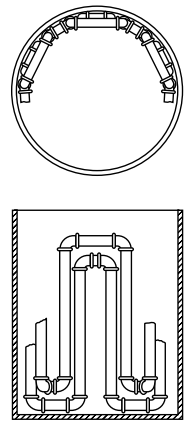


Fig. 10.

Interrupted Quenching.—*Austempering, martempering, and isothermal quenching* are three methods of interrupted quenching that have been developed to obtain greater toughness and ductility for given hardnesses and to avoid the difficulties of quench cracks, internal stresses, and warpage, frequently experienced when the conventional method of quenching steel directly and rapidly from above the transformation point to atmospheric temperature is employed. In each of these three methods, quenching is begun when the work has reached some temperature above the transformation point and is conducted at a rate faster than the critical rate. The rapid cooling of the steel is interrupted, however, at some temperature above that at which martensite begins to form. The three methods differ in the temperature range at which interruption of the rapid quench takes place, the length of time that the steel is held at this temperature, and whether the subsequent cooling to atmospheric temperature is rapid or slow, and is or is not preceded by a tempering operation.

One of the reasons for maintaining the steel at a constant temperature for a definite period of time is to permit the inside sections of the piece to reach the same temperature as the outer sections so that when transformation of the structure does take place, it will occur at about the same rate and period of time throughout the piece. In order to maintain the constant temperature required in interrupted quenching, a quenching arrangement for absorbing and dissipating a large quantity of heat without increase in temperature is needed. Molten salt baths equipped for water spray or air cooling around the exterior of the bath container have been used for this purpose.

Austempering: This is a heat-treating process in which steels are quenched in a bath maintained at some constant temperature in the range of 350 to 800°F (177 to 427°C), depending on the analysis of the steel and the characteristics to be obtained. On immersion in the quenching bath, the steel is cooled more rapidly than the critical quenching rate. When the temperature of the steel reaches that of the bath, however, the quenching action is interrupted. If the steel is now held at this temperature for a predetermined length of time, say, from 10 to 60 minutes, the austenitic structure of the steel is gradually changed into a new structure, called *bainite*. The structure of bainite is acicular (needlelike) and resembles that of tempered martensite such as is usually obtained by quenching in the usual manner to atmospheric temperature and tempering at 400°F (204°C) or higher.

Hardnesses ranging up to 60 RC (Rockwell C scale), depending on the carbon and alloy content of the steel, are obtainable and compare favorably with those obtained for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the respective steels by a conventional quench and tempering to above 400°F (204°C). Much greater toughness and ductility are obtained in an austempered piece, however, as compared with a similar piece quenched and tempered in the usual manner.

Two factors are important in austempering. First, the steel must be quenched rapidly enough to the specified subtransformation temperature to avoid any formation of pearlite, and, second, it must be held at this temperature until the transformation from austenite to bainite is completed. Time and temperature transformation curves (called S-curves because of their shape) have been developed for different steels, and these curves provide important data governing the conduct of austempering as well as the other interrupted quenching methods.

Austempering has been applied chiefly to steels having 0.60 percent or more carbon content with or without additional low-alloy content, and to pieces of small diameter or section, usually under 1 inch (2.5 cm), but varying with the composition of the steel. Case-hardened parts may also be austempered.

Martempering: In this process the steel is first rapidly quenched from some temperature above the transformation point down to some temperature (usually about 400°F or 204°C) just above that at which martensite begins to form. It is then held at this temperature for a length of time sufficient to equalize the temperature throughout the part, after which it is removed and cooled in air. As the temperature of the steel drops below the transformation point, martensite begins to form in a matrix of austenite at a fairly uniform rate throughout the piece. The soft austenite acts as a cushion to absorb some of the stresses which develop as the martensite is formed. The difficulties presented by quench cracks, internal stresses, and dimensional changes are largely avoided; thus a structure of high hardness can be obtained. If greater toughness and ductility are required, conventional tempering may follow. In general, heavier sections can be hardened more easily by the martempering process than by the austempering process. The martempering process is especially suited to the higher-alloyed steels.

Isothermal Quenching: This process resembles austempering in that the steel is first rapidly quenched from above the transformation point down to a temperature that is above that at which martensite begins to form and is held at this temperature until the austenite is completely transformed into bainite. The constant temperature to which the piece is quenched and then maintained is usually 450°F (232°C) or above. The process differs from austempering in that, after transformation to a bainite structure has been completed, the steel is immersed in another bath and is brought up to some higher temperature, depending on the characteristics desired. It is maintained at that temperature for a definite period of time, followed by cooling in air. Thus, tempering to obtain the desired toughness or ductility takes place immediately after the structure of the steel has changed to bainite and before it is cooled to atmospheric temperature.

Laser and Electron-Beam Surface Hardening.—Industrial lasers and electron-beam equipment are now available for surface hardening of steels, a process referred to as *laser peening*. The laser and electron beams can generate intense energy fluxes and steep temperature profiles in the workpiece so that external quench media are not needed. This self-quenching is due to a cold interior with sufficient mass acting as a large heat sink to rapidly cool the hot surface by conducting heat to the interior of a part. The laser beam is a beam of light and does not require a vacuum for operation. The electron beam is a stream of electrons, and processing usually takes place in a vacuum chamber or envelope. Both processes may normally be applied to finished machined or ground surfaces because little distortion results.

Tempering

The object of *tempering* or *drawing* is to reduce the brittleness in hardened steel and to remove the internal strains caused by the sudden cooling in the quenching bath. The tempering process consists in heating the steel by various means to a certain temperature and then cooling it. When steel is in a fully hardened condition, its structure consists

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

largely of *martensite*. On reheating to a temperature of about 300 to 750°F (150 to 400°C), a softer and tougher structure known as *troostite* is formed. If the steel is reheated to a temperature of 750 to 1290°F (400 to 700°C), a structure known as *sorbite* is formed that has somewhat less strength than troostite but much greater ductility.

Tempering Temperatures.—If steel is heated in an oxidizing atmosphere, a film of oxide forms on the surface that changes color as the temperature increases. These oxide colors (see Table 1) have been used extensively in the past as a means of gaging the correct amount of temper; but, since these colors are affected to some extent by the composition of the metal, the method is not dependable.

Table 1. Temperatures as Indicated by the Color of Plain Carbon Steel

Degrees			Degrees		
Fahrenheit	Centigrade	Color of Steel	Fahrenheit	Centigrade	Color of Steel
430	221.1	Very pale yellow	510	265.6	Spotted red-brown
440	226.7	Light yellow	520	271.1	Brown-purple
450	232.2	Pale straw-yellow	530	276.7	Light purple
460	237.8	Straw-yellow	540	282.2	Full purple
470	243.3	Deep straw-yellow	550	287.8	Dark purple
480	248.9	Dark yellow	560	293.3	Full blue
490	254.4	Yellow-brown	570	298.9	Dark blue
500	260.0	Brown-yellow	640	337.8	Light blue

The availability of reliable pyrometers in combination with tempering baths of oil, salt, or lead makes it possible to heat the work uniformly and to a given temperature within close limits.

Suggested temperatures for tempering various tools are given in Table 2.

Table 2. Tempering Temperatures for Various Plain Carbon Steel Tools

Degrees F	Degrees C	Class of Tool
495 to 500	257 to 260	Taps, ½ inch (1.27 cm) or over, for use on automatic screw machines
495 to 500	257 to 260	Nut taps, ½ inch (1.27 cm) and under
515 to 520	268 to 271	Taps, ¼ inch (0.635 cm) and under, for use on automatic screw machines
525 to 530	274 to 277	Thread dies to cut thread close to shoulder
500 to 510	260 to 266	Thread dies for general work
495	257	Thread dies for tool steel or steel tube
525 to 540	274 to 282	Dies for bolt threader threading to shoulder
460 to 470	238 to 243	Thread rolling dies
430 to 435	221 to 224	Hollow mills (solid type) for roughing on automatic screw machines
485	252	Knurls
450	232	Twist drills for hard service
450	232	Centering tools for automatic screw machines
430	221	Forming tools for automatic screw machines
430 to 435	221 to 224	Cut-off tools for automatic screw machines
440 to 450	227 to 232	Profile cutters for milling machines
430	221	Formed milling cutters
435 to 440	224 to 227	Milling cutters
430 to 440	221 to 227	Reamers
460	238	Counterbores and countersinks
480	249	Cutters for tube- or pipe-cutting machines
460 to 520	238 to 271	Snaps for pneumatic hammers — harden full length, temper to 460°F (238°C), then bring point to 520°F (271°C)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tempering in Oil.—Oil baths are extensively used for tempering tools (especially in quantity), the work being immersed in oil heated to the required temperature, as indicated by a thermometer. It is important that the oil have a uniform temperature throughout and that the work be immersed long enough to acquire this temperature. Cold steel should not be plunged into a bath heated for tempering, owing to the danger of cracking. The steel should either be preheated to about 300°F (150°C) before placing it in the bath or the bath should be at a comparatively low temperature before the steel is immersed, and then reheated to the required degree. A temperature of from 650 to 700°F (343 to 371°C) can be obtained with heavy tempering oils; for higher temperatures, either a bath of nitrate salts or a lead bath may be used.

In tempering, the best method is to immerse the pieces to be tempered before starting to heat the oil so that they are heated with the oil. After the tempered pieces are taken out of the oil bath, they should be immediately dipped in a tank of caustic soda and, after that, in a tank of hot water. This will remove all oil that might adhere to the tools. The following tempering oil has given satisfactory results: mineral oil, 94 percent; saponifiable oil, 6 percent; specific gravity, 0.920; flash point, 550°F (288°C); fire test, 625°F (329°C).

Tempering in Salt Baths.—Molten salt baths may be used for tempering or drawing operations. Nitrate baths are particularly adapted for the usual drawing temperature range of, say, 300 to 1100°F (150 to 595°C). Tempering in an oil bath usually is limited to temperatures of 500 to 600°F (260 to 315°C), and some heat-treating specialists recommend the use of a salt bath for temperatures above 350 or 400°F (175 or 205°C), as it is considered more efficient and economical. Tempering in a bath (salt or oil) has several advantages, such as ease in controlling the temperature range and maintenance of a uniform temperature. The work is also heated much more rapidly in a molten bath. A gas- or oil-fired muffle or semimuffle furnace may be used for tempering, but a salt bath or oil bath is preferable. A salt bath is recommended for tempering high-speed steel, although furnaces may also be used. The bath or furnace temperature should be increased gradually, say, from 300 to 400°F (150 to 205°C) up to the tempering temperature, which may range from 1050 to 1150°F (565 to 620°C) for high-speed steel.

Tempering in a Lead Bath.—The lead bath is commonly used for heating steel in connection with tempering, as well as for hardening. The bath is first heated to the temperature at which the steel should be tempered; the preheated work is then placed in the bath long enough to acquire this temperature, after which it is removed and cooled. As the melting temperature of pure lead is about 620°F (327°C), tin is commonly added to lower the temperature sufficiently for tempering. Reductions in temperature can be obtained by varying the proportions of lead and tin, as shown in Table 3.

Table 3. Temperatures of Lead Bath Alloys

Parts Lead	Parts Tin	Melting Temperature		Parts Lead	Parts Tin	Melting Temperature		Parts Lead	Parts Tin	Melting Temperature	
		Deg. F	Deg. C			Deg. F	Deg. C			Deg. F	Deg. C
200	8	560	293	39	8	510	266	19	8	460	238
100	8	550	288	33	8	500	260	17	8	450	232
75	8	540	282	28	8	490	254	16	8	440	227
60	8	530	277	24	8	480	249	15	8	430	221
48	8	520	271	21	8	470	243	14	8	420	216

To Prevent Lead from Sticking to Steel.—To prevent hot lead from sticking to parts heated in it, mix common whiting (calcium carbonate) with wood alcohol and paint the part that is to be heated. Water can be used instead of alcohol, but, in that case, the paint must be thoroughly dry, as otherwise the moisture will cause the lead to "fly." Another method is to make a thick paste according to the following formula: pulverized charred leather, 1 pound; fine wheat flour, 1½ pounds; fine table salt, 2 pounds. Coat the tool with

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

this paste and heat slowly until dry, then proceed to harden. Still another method is to heat the work to a blue color, or about 600°F (316°C), and then dip it in a strong solution of salt water prior to heating in the lead bath. The lead is sometimes removed from parts having fine projections or teeth, by using a stiff brush just before immersing in the cooling bath. Removal of lead is necessary to prevent the formation of soft spots.

Tempering in Sand.—The sand bath is used for tempering certain classes of work. One method is to deposit the sand on an iron plate or in a shallow box that has burners beneath it. With this method of tempering, tools such as boiler punches, etc., can be given a varying temper by placing them endwise in the sand. As the temperature of the sand bath is higher toward the bottom, a tool can be so placed that the color of the lower end will become a deep dark blue when the middle portion is a very dark straw, and the working end or top a light straw color, the hardness gradually increasing from the bottom up.

Double Tempering.—In tempering high-speed steel tools, it is common practice to repeat the tempering operation or "double temper" the steel. Double tempering is done by heating the steel to tempering temperature, say 1050°F (566°C), and holding it at that temperature for 2 hours. It is then cooled to room temperature, reheated to the same temperature for another two-hour period, and again cooled to room temperature. After the first tempering operation, some untempered martensite remains in the steel. This martensite is not only tempered by a second tempering operation but is relieved of internal stresses, thus improving the steel for service conditions. The hardening temperature for the higher-alloy steels may affect the hardness after tempering. For example, molybdenum high-speed steel heated to 2100°F (1149°C) had a 61 RC (Rockwell C scale) after tempering, whereas a temperature of 2250°F (1232°C) resulted in hardness of 64.5 RC after tempering.

Annealing, Spheroidizing, and Normalizing

Annealing of steel is a heat-treating process in which the steel is heated to some elevated temperature, usually in or near the critical range, is held at this temperature for some period of time, and is then cooled, usually at a slow rate. Spheroidizing and normalizing may be considered as special cases of annealing.

The *full annealing* of carbon steel consists in heating it slightly above the *upper* critical point for hypoeutectoid steels (steels of less than 0.85 percent carbon content) and slightly above the *lower* critical point for hypereutectoid steels (steels of more than 0.85 percent carbon content), holding it at this temperature until it is uniformly heated and then slowly cooling it to 1000°F (538°C) or below. The resulting structure is layerlike, or lamellar, in character due to the pearlite that is formed during the slow cooling.

Anealing is employed 1) to soften steel for machining, cutting, stamping, etc., or for some particular service; 2) to alter ductility, toughness, electrical or magnetic characteristics or other physical properties; 3) to refine the crystal structure; 4) to produce grain reorientation; and 5) to relieve stresses and hardness resulting from cold-working.

The *spheroidizing* of steel, according to the American Society of Metals, is "any process of heating and cooling that produces a rounded or globular form of carbide." High-carbon steels are spheroidized to improve their machinability especially in continuous cutting operations, such as are performed by lathes and screw machines. In low-carbon steels, spheroidizing may be employed to meet certain strength requirements before subsequent heat treatment. Spheroidizing also tends to increase resistance to abrasion.

The *normalizing* of steel consists in heating it to some temperature above that used for annealing, usually about 100°F (56°C) above the upper critical range, and then cooling it in still air at room temperature. Normalizing is intended to put the steel into a uniform, unstressed condition of proper grain size and refinement so that it will properly respond to further heat treatments. It is particularly important in the case of forgings that are to be later heat treated. Normalizing may or may not (depending on the composition) leave steel in a sufficiently soft state for machining with available tools. Annealing for machinability

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is often preceded by normalizing, and the combined treatment—frequently called a *double anneal*—produces a better result than a simple anneal.

Annealing Practice.—For carbon steels, the following annealing temperatures are recommended by the American Society for Testing and Materials:

Percent Carbon	Annealing Temperature	
	°F	°C
less than 0.12%	1600 to 1700	871 to 927
0.12 to 0.29%	1550 to 1600	843 to 871
0.30 to 0.49%	1500 to 1550	816 to 843
0.50 to 1.00%	1450 to 1500	788 to 816

Slightly lower temperatures are satisfactory for steels having more than 0.75 percent manganese content. Heating should be uniform to avoid the formation of additional stresses. In the case of large workpieces, the heating should be slow enough so that the temperature of the interior does not lag too far behind that of the surface.

It has been found that in annealing steel, the higher the temperature to which it is heated to produce an austenitic structure, the greater the tendency of the structure to become lamellar (pearlitic) in cooling. On the other hand, the closer the austenitizing temperature to the critical temperature, the greater is the tendency of the annealed steel to become spheroidal.

Rate of Cooling: After the steel is heated to some temperature within the annealing range, it should be cooled slowly enough to permit the development of the desired softness and ductility. In general, the slower the cooling rate, the greater the resulting softness and ductility. Steel of a high-carbon content should be cooled more slowly than steel of a low-carbon content; and the higher the alloy content, the slower is the cooling rate usually required. Where extreme softness and ductility are not required, the steel may be cooled in the annealing furnace to some temperature well below the critical point, say, to about 1000°F (538°C) and then removed and cooled in air.

Annealing by Constant-Temperature Transformation.—It has been found that steel that has been heated above the critical point so that it has an austenitic structure can be transformed into a lamellar (pearlitic) or a spheroidal structure by holding it for a definite period of time at some constant subcritical temperature. In other words, it is feasible to anneal steel by means of a constant-temperature transformation as well as by the conventional continuous cooling method. When the constant-temperature transformation method is employed, the steel, after being heated to some temperature above the critical and held at this temperature until it is austenitized, is cooled as rapidly as feasible to some relatively high subcritical transformation temperature. This temperature selection is governed by the desired microstructure and hardness required, and is taken from a transformation time and temperature curve (often called a TTT curve). As drawn for a particular steel, such a curve shows the length of time required to transform that steel from an austenitic state at various subcritical temperatures. After being held at the selected sub-critical temperature for the required length of time, the steel is cooled to room temperature — again, as rapidly as feasible. This rapid cooling down to the selected transformation temperature and then down to room temperature has a negligible effect on the structure of the steel and often produces a considerable time saving over the conventional slow cooling method of annealing.

The softest condition in steel can be developed by heating it to a temperature usually less than 100°F (56°C) above the lower critical point and then cooling it to some temperature, usually less than 100 degrees (56°C), below the critical point, where it is held until the transformation is completed. Certain steels require a very lengthy period of time for transformation of the austenite when held at a constant temperature within this range. For such steels, a practical procedure is to allow most of the transformation to take place in this temperature range where a soft product is formed and then to finish the transformation at a lower temperature where the time for the completion of the transformation is short.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spheroidizing Practice.—A common method of spheroidizing steel consists in heating it to or slightly below the lower critical point, holding it at this temperature for a period of time, and then cooling it slowly to about 1000°F (538°C) or below. The length of time for which the steel is held at the spheroidizing temperature largely governs the degree of spheroidization. High-carbon steel may be spheroidized by subjecting it to a temperature that alternately rises and falls between a point within and a point without the critical range. Tool steel may be spheroidized by heating to a temperature slightly above the critical range and then, after being held at this temperature for a period of time, cooling without removal from the furnace.

Normalizing Practice.—When using the lower-carbon steels, simple normalizing is often sufficient to place the steel in its best condition for machining and will lessen distortion in carburizing or hardening. In the medium- and higher-carbon steels, combined normalizing and annealing constitutes the best practice. For unimportant parts, the normalizing may be omitted entirely or annealing may be practiced only when the steel is otherwise difficult to machine. Both processes are recommended in the following heat treatments (for SAE steels) as representing the best metallurgical practice. The temperatures recommended for normalizing and annealing have been made indefinite in many instances because of the many different types of furnaces used in various plants and the difference in results desired.

Case Hardening

In order to harden low-carbon steel, it is necessary to increase the carbon content of the surface of the steel so that a thin outer "case" can be hardened by heating the steel to the hardening temperature and then quenching it. The process, therefore, involves two separate operations. The first is the *carburizing* operation for impregnating the outer surface with sufficient carbon, and the second operation is that of heat treating the carburized parts so as to obtain a hard outer case and, at the same time, give the "core" the required physical properties. The term "case hardening" is ordinarily used to indicate the complete process of carburizing and hardening.

Carburization.—Carburization is the result of heating iron or steel to a temperature below its melting point in the presence of a solid, liquid, or gaseous material that decomposes so as to liberate carbon when heated to the temperature used. In this way, it is possible to obtain, by the gradual penetration, diffusion, or absorption of the carbon by the steel, a "zone" or "case" of higher-carbon content at the outer surfaces than that of the original object. When a carburized object is rapidly cooled or quenched in water, oil, brine, etc., from the proper temperature, this case becomes hard, leaving the inside of the piece soft but of great toughness.

Use of Carbonaceous Mixtures.—When carburizing materials of the solid class are used, the case-hardening process consists in packing steel articles in metal boxes or pots, with a carbonaceous compound surrounding the steel objects. The boxes or pots are sealed and placed in a carburizing oven or furnace maintained usually at a temperature of from about 1650 to 1700°F (899 to 927°C) for a length of time depending on the extent of the carburizing action desired. The carbon from the carburizing compound will then be absorbed by the steel on the surfaces desired, and the low-carbon steel is converted into high-carbon steel at these portions. The internal sections and the insulated parts of the object retain practically their original low-carbon content. The result is a steel of a dual structure, a high-carbon and a low-carbon steel in the same piece. The carburized steel may now be heat treated by heating and quenching, in much the same way as high-carbon steel is hardened, in order to develop the properties of hardness and toughness; but, as the steel is, in reality, two steels in one, one high-carbon and one low-carbon, the correct heat treatment after carburizing includes two distinct processes, one suitable for the high-carbon portion or the "case," as it is generally called, and one suitable for the low-carbon portion or core. The method of heat treatment varies according to the kind of steel used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Usually, an initial heating and slow cooling is followed by reheating to 1400–1450°F (760 to 788°C), quenching in oil or water, and a final tempering. More definite information is given in the following section on SAE steels.

Carburizers: There are many commercial carburizers on the market in which the materials used as the generator may be hard and soft wood charcoal, animal charcoal, coke, coal, beans and nuts, bone and leather, or various combinations of these. The energizers may be barium, cyanogen, and ammonium compounds, various salts, soda ash, or lime and oil hydrocarbons.

Pack-Hardening.—When cutting tools, gages, and other parts made from high-carbon steels are heated for hardening while packed in some carbonaceous material in order to protect delicate edges, corners, or finished surfaces, the process is usually known as pack-hardening. Thus, the purpose is to protect the work, prevent scale formation, ensure uniform heating, and minimize the danger of cracking and warpage. The work is packed, as in carburizing, and in the same type of receptacle. Common hardwood charcoal often is used, especially if it has had an initial heating to eliminate shrinkage and discharge its more impure gases. The lowest temperature required for hardening should be employed for pack-hardening—usually 1400 to 1450°F (760 to 788°C) for carbon steels. Pack-hardening has also been applied to high-speed steels, but modern developments in heat-treating salts have made it possible to harden high-speed steel without decarburization, injury to sharp edges, or marring the finished surfaces. See *Salt Baths* on page 471.

Cyanide Hardening.—When low-carbon steel requires a very hard outer surface but does not need high shock-resisting qualities, the cyanide-hardening process may be employed to produce what is known as superficial hardness. This superficial hardening is the result of carburizing a very thin outer skin (which may be only a few thousandths inch thick) by immersing the steel in a bath containing sodium cyanide. The temperatures usually vary from 1450 to 1650°F (788 to 899°C), and the percentage of sodium cyanide in the bath extends over a wide range, depending on the steel used and properties required.

Nitriding Process.—Nitriding is a process for surface hardening certain alloy steels by heating the steel in an atmosphere of nitrogen (ammonia gas) at approximately 950°F (510°C). The steel is then cooled slowly. Finish machined surfaces hardened by nitriding are subject to minimum distortion. The physical properties, such as toughness, high impact strength, etc., can be imparted to the core by previous heat treatments and are unaffected by drawing temperatures up to 950°F (510°C). The "Nitralloy" steels suitable for this process may be readily machined in the heat-treated as well as in the annealed state, and they forge as easily as alloy steels of the same carbon content. Certain heat treatments must be applied prior to nitriding, the first being annealing to relieve rolling, forging, or machining strains. Parts or sections not requiring heat treating should be machined or ground to the exact dimensions required. Close tolerances must be maintained in finish machining, but allowances for growth due to adsorption of nitrogen should be made, and this usually amounts to about 0.0005 inch (0.0127 mm) for a case depth of 0.02 inch (0.508 mm). Parts requiring heat treatment for definite physical properties are forged or cut from annealed stock, heat treated for the desired physical properties, rough machined, normalized, and finish machined. If quenched and drawn parts are normalized afterwards, the drawing and normalizing temperatures should be alike. The normalizing temperature may be below but should never be above the drawing temperature.

Ion Nitriding.—Ion nitriding, also referred to as glow discharge nitriding, is a process for case hardening of steel parts, such as tool spindles, cutting tools, extrusion equipment, forging dies, gears, and crankshafts. An electrical potential ionizes low-pressure nitrogen gas, and the ions produced are accelerated to and impinge on the workpiece, heating it to the appropriate temperature for diffusion to take place. Therefore, there is no requirement for a supplemental heat source. The inward diffusion of the nitrogen ions forms the iron

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and alloy nitrides in the case. White layer formation, familiar in conventional gas nitriding, is readily controlled by this process.

Liquid Carburizing.—Activated liquid salt baths are now used extensively for carburizing. Sodium cyanide and other salt baths are used. The salt bath is heated by electrodes immersed in it, the bath itself acting as the conductor and resistor. One or more groups of electrodes, with two or more electrodes per group, may be used. The heating is accompanied by a stirring action to ensure uniform temperature and carburizing activity throughout the bath. The temperature may be controlled by a thermocouple immersed in the bath and connecting with a pyrometer designed to provide automatic regulation. The advantages of liquid baths include rapid action, uniform carburization, minimum distortion, and elimination of the packing and unpacking required when carbonaceous mixtures are used. In selective carburizing, the portions of the work that are not to be carburized are copperplated, and the entire piece is then immersed in an activated cyanide bath. The copper inhibits any carburizing action on the plated parts, and this method offers a practical solution for selectively carburizing any portion of a steel part.

Gas Carburizing.—When carburizing gases are used, the mixture varies with the type of case and quality of product desired. The gaseous hydrocarbons most widely used are methane (natural gas), propane, and butane. These carbon-bearing gases are mixed with air, with manufactured gases of several types, with flue gas, or with other specially prepared "diluent" gases. It is necessary to maintain a continuous fresh stream of carburizing gases to the carburizing retort or muffle as well as to continuously remove the spent gases from the muffle in order to obtain the correct mixture of gases inside the muffle. A slight pressure is maintained on the muffle to exclude unwanted gases.

The horizontal rotary type of gas carburizing furnace has a retort or muffle that revolves slowly. This type of furnace is adapted to small parts, such as ball and roller bearings, chain links, small axles, bolts, etc. With this type of furnace, very large pieces, such as gears, for example, may be injured by successive shocks due to tumbling within the rotor.

The vertical pit type of gas carburizer has a stationary workholder that is placed vertically in a pit. The work, instead of circulating in the gases as with the rotary type, is stationary, and the gases circulate around it. This type is applicable to long, large shafts or other parts or shapes that cannot be rolled in a rotary type of furnace.

There are three types of continuous gas furnaces that may be designated as

1) direct quench and manually operated

2) direct quench and mechanically operated

3) cooling-zone type

Where production does not warrant using a large continuous-type furnace, a horizontal muffle furnace of the batch type may be used, especially if the quantities of work are varied and the production not continuous.

Vacuum Carburizing.—Vacuum carburizing is a high-temperature gas carburizing process that is performed at pressures below atmospheric. The furnace atmosphere usually consists solely of an enriching gas, such as natural gas, pure methane, or propane; nitrogen is sometimes used as a carrier gas. Vacuum carburizing offers several advantages, such as combining of processing operations and reduced total processing time.

Carburizing Steels.—A low-carbon steel containing, say, from 0.10 to 0.20 percent of carbon is suitable for carburized case hardening. In addition to straight-carbon steels, the low-carbon alloy steels are employed. The alloys add to case-hardened parts the same advantageous properties they give to other classes of steel. Various steels suitable for case hardening will be found in the section on SAE steels.

To Clean Work after Case Hardening.—To clean work, especially if knurled, or if dirt is likely to stick into crevices after case hardening, wash it in caustic soda (1 part soda to 10 parts water). In making the solution, the soda should be put into hot water gradually, and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the mixture stirred until the soda is thoroughly dissolved. A still more effective method of cleaning is to dip the work into a mixture of 1 part sulfuric acid and 2 parts water. Leave the pieces in this mixture about 3 minutes; then wash them immediately in a soda solution.

Flame Hardening.—This method of hardening is especially applicable to selective hardening of large steel forgings or castings that must be finish-machined prior to heat-treatment or, because of size or shape, cannot be heat treated by using a furnace or bath. An oxyacetylene torch is used to quickly heat the surface to be hardened, which is then quenched to secure a hardened layer that may vary in depth from a mere skin to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm) and with hardness ranging from 400 to 700 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number). A multiflame torchhead may be equipped with quenching holes or a spray nozzle behind the flame. This is not a carburizing or a case-hardening process as the torch is only a heating medium. Most authorities recommend tempering or drawing of the hardened surface at temperatures between 200 and 350°F (93 and 177°C). This treatment may be performed in a standard furnace, in an oil bath, or with a gas flame. It should follow the hardening process as closely as possible. Medium-carbon and many low-alloy steels are suitable for flame hardening. Plain carbon steels ranging from 0.35 to 0.60 percent carbon will give hardnesses of from 400 to 700 BHN. Steels in the 0.40 to 0.45 percent carbon range are preferred, as they have excellent core properties and produce hardnesses of from 400 to 500 BHN without checking or cracking. Higher-carbon steels will give greater hardnesses, but extreme care must be taken to prevent cracking. Careful control of the quenching operation is required.

Spinning Method of Flame Hardening: This method is employed on circular objects that can be rotated or spun past a stationary flame. It may be subdivided according to the speed of rotation, where the part is rotated slowly in front of a stationary flame and the quench is applied immediately after the flame. This method is used on large circular pieces, such as track wheels and bearing surfaces. There will be a narrow band of material with lower hardness between adjacent torches if more than one path of the flame is required to harden the surface. There will also be an area of lower hardness where the flame is extinguished. A second method is applicable to small rollers or pinions. The work is spun at a speed of 50 to 150 rpm in front of the flame until the entire piece has reached the proper temperature; then it is quenched as a unit by a cooling spray or by ejecting it into a cooling bath.

The Progressive Method: In this method the torch travels along the face of the work and the work remains stationary. It is used to harden lathe ways, gear teeth, and track rails.

The Stationary or Spot-hardening Method: When this method is employed, the work and torch are both stationary. When the spot to be hardened reaches the quenching temperature, the flame is removed and the quench applied.

The Combination Method: This approach is a combination of the spinning and progressive methods, and is used for long bearing surfaces. The work rotates slowly past the torch as the torch travels longitudinally across the face of the work at the rate of the torch width per revolution of the work.

Equipment for the stationary method of flame hardening consists merely of an acetylene torch, an oxyacetylene supply, and a suitable means of quenching; but when the other methods are employed, work-handling tools are essential and specially designed torches are desirable. A lathe is ideally suited for the spinning or combination hardening method, whereas a planer is easily adapted for progressive hardening. Production jobs, such as the hardening of gears, require specially designed machines. These machines reduce handling and hardening time, as well as assuring consistent results.

Induction Hardening.—The hardening of steel by means of induction heating and subsequent quenching in either liquid or air is particularly applicable to parts that require localized hardening or controlled depth of hardening and to irregularly shaped parts, such as cams that require uniform surface hardening around their contour.

Advantages offered by induction hardening are: 1) a short heating cycle that may range from a fraction of a second to several seconds; heat energy can be induced in a piece of steel at the rate of 100 to 250 Btu/in^2/min (165 to 410 J/mm^2/min) by induction heating, as

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

compared with a rate of 3 Btu/in^2/min (5 J/mm^2/min) for the same material at room temperature when placed in a furnace with a wall temperature of 2000°F (1093°C); 2) absence of tendency to produce oxidation or decarburization; 3) exact control of depth and area of hardening; 4) close regulation of degree of hardness obtained by automatic timing of heating and quenching cycles; 5) minimum warpage or distortion; and 6) possibility of substituting carbon steels for higher-cost alloy steels.

To the designer, the principal advantage of induction hardening lies in its application to localized zones. Thus, specific areas in a given part can be heat treated separately to the respective hardnesses required. Parts can be designed so that the stresses at any given point in the finished piece can be relieved by local heating. Parts can be designed in which welded or brazed assemblies are built up prior to heat treating with only internal surfaces or projections requiring hardening.

Types of Induction Heating Equipment.—Induction heating is secured by placing the metal part inside or close to an "applicator" coil of one or more turns through which alternating current is passed. The coil, formed to suit the general class of work to be heated, is usually made of copper tubing through which water is passed to prevent overheating of the coil itself. The workpiece is either held in a fixed position or rotated slowly within or close to the applicator coil. Where the length of work is too great to permit heating in a fixed position, progressive heating may be employed. Thus, a rod or tube of steel may be fed through an applicator coil of one or more turns so that the heating zone travels progressively along the entire length of the workpiece.

The frequency of the alternating current used and the type of generator employed to supply this current to the applicator coil depend on the character of the work to be done.

There are three types of commercial equipment used to produce high-frequency current for induction heating: 1) motor generator sets that deliver current at frequencies of approximately 1000, 2000, 3000, and 10,000 cycles; 2) spark gap oscillator units that produce frequencies ranging from 80,000 to 300,000 cycles; and 3) vacuum tube oscillator sets, which produce currents at frequencies ranging from 350,000 to 15,000,000 cycles or more.

Depth of Heat Penetration.—Generally speaking, the higher the frequency used, the shallower the depth of heat penetration. For heating clear through, for deep hardening, and for large workpieces, low power concentrations and low frequencies are usually used. For very shallow and closely controlled depths of heating, as in surface hardening and localized heat treating of small workpieces, currents at high frequencies are used.

For example, a $\frac{1}{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) round bar of hardenable steel will be heated through its entire structure quite rapidly by an induced current of 2000 cycles. After quenching, the bar would show through hardness with a decrease in hardness from surface to center. The same piece of steel could be readily heated and surface hardened to a depth of 0.100 inch (2.5 mm) with current at 9600 cycles, and to an even shallower depth with current at 100,000 cycles. A $\frac{1}{4}$-inch (6.35 mm) bar, however, would not reach a sufficiently high temperature at 2000 cycles to permit hardening, but at 9600 cycles through hardening would be accomplished. Current at over 100,000 cycles would be needed for surface hardening such a bar.

Types of Steel for Induction Hardening.—Most of the standard types of steels can be hardened by induction heating, providing the carbon content is sufficient to produce the desired degree of hardness by quenching. Thus, low-carbon steels with a carburized case, medium- and high-carbon steels (both plain and alloy), and cast iron with a portion of the carbon in combined form, may be used for this purpose. Induction heating of alloy steels should be limited primarily to the shallow-hardening type, that is, those of low alloy content; otherwise the severe quench usually required may result in a highly stressed surface with consequent reduced load-carrying capacity and danger of cracking.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Through Hardening, Annealing, and Normalizing by Induction.—For through hardening, annealing, and normalizing by induction, low power concentrations are desirable to prevent too great a temperature differential between the surface and the interior of the work. A satisfactory rate of heating is obtained when the total power input to the work is slightly greater than the radiation losses at the desired temperature. If possible, as low a frequency should be used as is consistent with good electrical coupling. A number of applicator coils may be connected in a series so that several workpieces can be heated simultaneously, thus reducing the power input to each. Widening the spacing between work and applicator coil also will reduce the amount of power delivered to the work.

Induction Surface Hardening.—As indicated on page 485 in "*Depth of Heat Penetration*," currents at much higher frequencies are required in induction surface hardening than in through hardening by induction. In general, the smaller the workpiece, the thinner the section; or the shallower the depth to be hardened, the higher the frequency required. High power concentrations are also needed to make possible a short heating period so that an undue amount of heat will not be conducted to adjacent or interior areas, where a change in hardness is not desired. Generators of large capacity and applicator coils of but a few turns, or even a single turn, provide the necessary concentration of power in the localized area to be hardened.

Induction heating of internal surfaces, such as the interior of a hollow cylindrical part or the inside of a hole, can be accomplished readily with applicator coils shaped to match the cross section of the opening, which may be round, square, elliptical or some other form. If the internal surface is of short length, a multiturn applicator coil extending along its entire length may be employed. Where the power available is insufficient to heat the entire internal surface at once, progressive heating is used. For this purpose, an applicator coil of few turns — often but a single turn — is employed, and either coil or work is moved so that the heated zone passes progressively from one end of the hole or opening to the other. For bores of small diameter, a hairpin-shaped applicator, extending the entire length of the hole, may be used and the work rotated about the axis of the hole to ensure even heating.

Quenching After Induction Heating.—After induction heating, quenching may be by immersion in a liquid bath (usually oil), by liquid spray (usually water), or by self-quenching. The term "self-quenching" is used when there is no quenching medium and hardening of the heated section is due chiefly to rapid absorption of heat by the mass of cool metal adjacent to it. Quenching by immersion offers the advantage of even cooling and is particularly satisfactory for through heated parts. Spray quenching may be arranged so that the quenching ring and applicator coil are in the same or adjacent units, permitting the quenching cycle to follow the heating cycle immediately without removal of the work from the holding fixture. Automatic timing to a fraction of a second may also be employed for both heating and quenching with this arrangement to secure the exact degree of hardness desired. Self-quenching is applicable only in thin-surface hardening where the mass of adjacent cool metal in the part is great enough to conduct the heat rapidly out of the surface layer being hardened. It has been recommended that for adequate self-quenching, the mass of the unheated section should be at least ten times that of the heated shell. It has been found difficult to use the self-quenching technique to produce hardened shells of much more than about 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thickness. Close to this limit, self-quenching can only be accomplished with the easily hardenable steels. By using a combination of self-quench and liquid quench, however, it is possible to produced hardened shells on work too thin to self-quench completely. In general, self-quenching is confined chiefly to relatively small parts and simple shapes.

Induction Hardening of Gear Teeth.—Several advantages are claimed for the induction hardening of gear teeth. One advantage is that the gear teeth can be completely machined, including shaving, when in the soft-annealed or normalized condition, and then hardened, because when induction heating is used, distortion is held to a minimum. Another advantage claimed is that bushings and inserts can be assembled in the gears

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

before hardening. A wide latitude in choice of built-up webs and easily machined hubs is afforded because the hardness of neither web nor hub is affected by the induction-hardening operation although slight dimensional changes may occur in certain designs. Regular carbon steels can be used in place of alloy steels for a wide variety of gears, and steel with a higher carbon content can frequently be substituted for a carburizing steel so that the carburizing operation can be eliminated. Another time-saving benefit is elimination of cleaning after hardening.

In heating spur gear teeth by induction, the gear is usually placed inside a circular unit that combines the applicator coil and quenching ring. An automatic timing device controls both the heating and quenching cycles. During the heating cycle, the gear is rotated at 25 to 35 rpm to ensure uniform heating.

In hardening bevel gears, the applicator coil is wound to conform to the face angle of the gear. In some spiral-bevel gears, there is a tendency to obtain more heat on one side of the tooth than on the other. In some sizes of spiral-bevel gears, this tendency can be overcome by applying slightly more heat to ensure hardening of the concave side. In some forms of spiral-bevel gears, it has been the practice to carburize that part of the gear surface which is to be hardened after the teeth have been rough-cut. Carburizing is followed by the finish-cutting operation, after which the teeth can be induction heated, using a long enough period to heat the entire tooth. When the gear is quenched, only the carburized surface will become hardened.

Table 4a. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Carbon Steels (Carburizing Grades)

SAE No.	Normalize, Deg. F	Carburize		Cool[a]	Reheat		Cool[a]	2nd Reheat,	Cool[a]	Temper,[b]	
		Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F		Deg. F	Deg. C
1010 to 1022	…	1650–1700	899–927	A	…	…	…	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	B	1400–1450	760–788	A	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1400–1450	760–788	A	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1650–1700	899–927	B	1400–1450	A	250–400	121–204
	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1024	1650–1750[f]	1650–1700	899–927	E	.....	.....	…	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1025 1026	…	1650–1700	899–927	A	…	…	…	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1027	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1030	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1111 1112 1113	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1109 to 1120	…	1650–1700	899–927	A	…	…	…	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	B	1400–1450	760–788	A	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1400–1450	760–788	A	…	…	250–400	121–204
	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1650–1700	899–927	B	1400–1450	A	250–400	121–204
	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
1126	…	1500–1650[c,d]	816–899[c,d]	B	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional
	…	1350–1575[e,d]	732–857[e,d]	D	…	…	…	…	…	Optional	Optional

[a] Symbols: A = water or brine; B = water or oil; C = cool slowly; D = air or oil; E = oil; F = water, brine, or oil.

[b] Even where tempering temperatures are shown, tempering is not mandatory in many applications. Tempering is usually employed for partial stress relief and improved resistance to grinding cracks.

[c] Activated or cyanide baths.

[d] May be given refining heat as in other processes.

[e] Carbonitriding atmospheres.

[f] Normalizing temperatures at least 50°F (28°C) above the carburizing temperature are sometimes recommended where minimum heat-treatment distortion is of vital importance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4b. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Carbon Steels (Heat-Treating Grades)

SAE Number	Normalize, Deg. F		Anneal, Deg. F	Harden, Deg. F	Quench[a]	Temper, Deg. F
1025 & 1030	…		…	1575–1650	A	To Desired Hardness
1033 to 1035	…		…	1525–1575	B	
1036	1600–1700		…	1525–1575	B	
	…		…	1525–1575	B	
1038 to 1040	1600–1700		…	1525–1575	B	
	…		…	1525–1575	B	
1041	1600–1700	and/or	1400–1500	1475–1550	E	
1042 to 1050	1600–1700		…	1475–1550	B	
1052 & 1055	1550–1650	and/or	1400–1500	1475–1550	E	
1060 to 1074	1550–1650	and/or	1400–1500	1475–1550	E	
1078	…		1400–1500[a]	1450–1500	A	
1080 to 1090	1550–1650	and/or	1400–1500[a]	1450–1500	E[b]	
1095	…		1400–1500[a]	1450–1500	F	
	…		1400–1500[a]	1500–1600	E	
1132 & 1137	1600–1700	and/or	1400–1500	1525–1575	B	
1138 & 1140	…		…	1500–1550	B	
	1600–1700		…	1500–1550	B	
1141 & 1144	…		1400–1500	1475–1550	E	
	1600–1700		1400–1500	1475–1550	E	
1145 to 1151	…		…	1475–1550	B	
	1600–1700		…	1475–1550	B	

[a] Slow cooling produces a spheroidal structure in these high-carbon steels that is sometimes required for machining purposes.

[b] May be water- or brine-quenched by special techniques such as partial immersion or time-quenched; otherwise they are subject to quench cracking.

Table 5a. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Alloy Steels
(Carburizing Grades)

SAE No.	Normalize[a]	Cycle Anneal[b]	Carburized		Cool[c]	Reheat		Cool[c]	Temper,[d]	
			Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F	Deg. C
1320	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1475–1525[f]	802–829[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1500–1550[f]	816–843[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E[g]	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1500–1650[h]	816–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
2317	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1375–1425[e]	746–774[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1450–1500[f]	788–816[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1375–1425[e]	746–774[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1475–1525[f]	802–829[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E[g]	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1450–1650[h]	788–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
2512 to 2517	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1325–1375[e]	718–746[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1425–1475[f]	774–802[f]	E	250–350	121–177
3115 & 3120	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1475–1525[f]	802–829[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1500–1550[f]	816–843[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E[g]	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	……	1500–1650[h]	816–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
3310 & 3316	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1475–1500[f]	802–816[f]	E	250–350	121–177
4017 to 4032	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E[g]	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
4119 & 4125	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E[g]	…	…	…	250–350	121–177

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. *(Continued)* **Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Alloy Steels**
(Carburizing Grades)

SAE No.	Normalize[a]	Cycle Anneal[b]	Carburized		Cool[c]	Reheat		Cool[c]	Temper,[d]	
			Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F	Deg. C		Deg. F	Deg. C
4317 & 4320 4608 to 4621	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1425–1475[e]	774–802[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1475–1527[f]	802–831[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1425–1475[e]	774–802[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1475–1525[f]	802–829[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	Eg	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	Eg	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1500–1650[h]	816–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
4812 to 4820	yes[i]	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1375–1425[e]	746–774[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1450–1500[f]	788–816[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1375–1425[e]	746–774[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1450–1500[f]	788–816[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	…	…	1650–1700	899–927	Eg	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
5115 & 5120	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1425–1475[e]	774–802[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1500–1550[f]	816–843[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1425–1475[e]	774–802[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1500–1550[f]	816–843[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	…	1500–1650[h]	816–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
8615 to 8625 8720	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1475–1525[e]	802–829[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	E	1525–1575[f]	829–857[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1475–1525[e]	802–829[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	C	1525–1575[f]	829–857[f]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1650–1700	899–927	Eg	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
	yes	yes	1500–1650[h]	816–899[h]	E	…	…	…	250–350	121–177
9310 to 9317	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	E	1400–1450[e]	760–788[e]	E	250–350	121–177
	yes[i]	…	1650–1700	899–927	C	1500–1525	816–829	E	250–350	121–177

[a] Normalizing temperatures should be not less than 50°F (28°C) higher than the carburizing temperature. Follow by air cooling.

[b] For cycle annealing, heat to normalizing temperature; hold for uniformity; cool rapidly to 1000–1250°F (538–677°C); hold 1 to 3 hours; then air or furnace cool to obtain a structure suitable for machining and finishing.

[c] Symbols: C = cool slowly; E = oil.

[d] Tempering treatment is optional and is generally employed for partial stress relief and improved resistance to cracking from grinding operations.

[e] For use when case hardness only is paramount.

[f] For use when higher core hardness is desired.

[g] Treatment is for fine-grained steels only, when a second reheat is often unnecessary.

[h] Treatment is for activated or cyanide baths. Parts may be given refining heats as indicated for other heat-treating processes.

[i] After normalizing, reheat to temperatures of 1000–1200°F (538–649°C) and hold approximately 4 hours.

Metallography.—The science or study of the microstructure of metal is known by most metallurgists as "metallography" or sometimes "crystallography". The examination of metals and metal alloys by the aid of the microscope is one of the most effective methods of studying their properties and is also a valuable means of controlling the quality of manufactured metallic articles and of testing the finished product. In preparing the specimen, a flat surface is first formed by filing or grinding and then given a high polish, which is later etched in order to clearly reveal the internal structure under the microscope. This process clearly shows an experienced observer the effect of variation in composition, heat treatment, etc., and in many cases it has proved a correct means of determining certain properties of industrial products that a chemical analysis has failed to reveal.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5b. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Alloy Steels (Directly Hardenable Grades)

SAE No.	Normalize, °F		Anneal, °F	Harden, °F	Quench[a]	Temper, °F
1330	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1500-1600	1525-1575 1525-1575	B B	To desired hardness
1335 & 1340	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1500-1600	1500-1550 1525-1575	E E	
2330	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1400-1500	1450-1500 1450-1500	E E	
2340 & 2345	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1400-1500	1425-1475 1425-1475	E E	
3130	1600-1700		…	1500-1550	B	
3135 to 3141	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1450-1550	1500-1550 1500-1550	E E	
3145 & 3150	… 1600-1700	and/or	… 1400-1500	1500-1550 1500-1550	E E	
4037 & 4042	…		1525-1575	1500-1575	E	Gears, 350-450 To desired hardness
4047 & 4053	…		1450-1550	1500-1575	E	To desired hardness
4063 & 4068	…		1450-1550	1475-1550	E	
4130	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1600-1650	B	
4137 & 4140	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1550-1600	E	
4145 & 4150	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1600	E	
4340	1600-1700	and draw	1100-1225	1475-1525	E	
4640	1600-1700 1600-1700	and/or and/or	1450-1550 1450-1500	1450-1500 1450-1500	E E	To desired hardness Gears, 350-450
5045 & 5046	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1475-1500	E	250-300
5130 & 5132	1650-1750	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1550	G	To desired hardness
5135 to 5145	1650-1750	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1550	E	To desired hardness Gears, 350-400
5147 to 5152	1650-1750	and/or	1450-1550	1475-1550	E	To desired hardness Gears, 350-400
50100 51100 52100	… …		1350-1450 1350-1450	1425-1475 1500-1600	H E	To desired hardness
6150	1650-1750	and/or	1550-1650	1600-1650	E	To desired hardness
9254 to 9262	…		…	1500-1650	E	
8627 to 8632	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1550-1650	B	
8635 to 8641	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1525-1575	E	
8642 to 8653	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1550	E	
8655 & 8660	1650-1750	and/or	1450-1550	1475-1550	E	
8735 & 8740	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1525-1575	E	
8745 & 8750	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1500	1500-1550	E	
9437 & 9440	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1550-1600	E	
9442 to 9747	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1600	E	
9840	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1550	E	
9845 & 9850	1600-1700	and/or	1450-1550	1500-1550	E	

[a] Symbols: B = water or oil; E = oil; G = water, caustic solution, or oil; H = water.

Table 5c. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Alloy Steels
(Heat-Treating Grades — Chromium–Nickel Austenitic Steels)

SAE No.	Normalize	Anneal,[a]		Harden	Quenching Medium	Temper
		Deg. F	Deg. C	°F (°C)		
30301 to 30347	…	1800–2100	982–1149	…	Water or Air	…

[a] Quench to produce full austenitic structure using water or air in accordance with thickness of section. Annealing temperatures given cover process and full annealing as used by industry, the lower end of the range being used for process annealing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5d. Typical Heat Treatments for SAE Alloy Steels
(Heat-Treating Grades — Stainless Chromium Irons and Steels)

SAE No.[a]	Normalize	Sub-critical Anneal		Full Anneal		Harden		Quenching Medium	Temper
		Deg. F	Deg. C	Deg. F	Deg. C	Deg. F	Deg. C		
51410	…	1300–1350[b]	704–732[b]	1550–1650[c]	843–899[c]	…	…	Oil or air	To desired hardness
	…	…	…	…	…	1750–1850	954–1010		
51414	…	1200–1250[b]	649–677[b]	…	…	…	…	Oil or air	To desired hardness
	…	…	…	…	…	1750–1850	954–1010		
51416	…	1300–1350[b]	704–732[b]	1550–1650[c]	843–899[c]	…	…	Oil or air	To desired hardness
	…	…	…	…	…	1750–1850	954–1010		
51420	…	1350–1450[b]	732–788[b]	1550–1650[c]	843–899[c]	…	…	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51420F	…	…	…	…	…	1800–1850	982–1010		
51430	…	1400–1500[d]	760–816[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51430F	…	1250–1500[d]	677–816[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51431	…	1150–1225[b]	621–663[b]	…	…	1800–1900	982–1038	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51440A 51440B 51440C 51440F	…	1350–1440[b]	732–782[b]	1550–1650[c]	843–899[c]	1850–1950	1010–1066	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51442	…	1400–1500[d]	760–816[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51446	…	1500–1650[d]	816–899[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51501	…	1325–1375[b]	718–746[b]	1525–1600[c]	829–871[c]	1600–1700	871–927	Oil or air	To desired hardness

[a] Suffixes A, B, and C denote steels differing in carbon content only. Suffix F denotes a free-machining steel.
[b] Usually air cooled, but may be furnace cooled.
[c] Cool slowly in furnace.
[d] Cool rapidly in air.

Table 6. Typical SAE Heat Treatments for Grades of Chromium-Nickel Austenitic Steels Not Hardenable by Thermal Treatment

SAE Steels	AISI No.	Annealing[a] Temperature		Quenching Medium
		(degrees F)	(degrees C)	
30201	201	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30202	202	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30301	301	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30302	302	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30303	303	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30304	304	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30305	305	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30309	309	1900-2050	1040-1120	Air
30310	310	1900-2100	1040-1150	Air
30316	316	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30317	317	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air
30321	321	1750-2050	955-1120	Air
30325	325	1800-2100	980-1150	Air
30330	…	1950-2150	1065-1175	Air
30347	347	1850-2050	1010-1120	Air

[a] Quench to produce full austenitic structure in accordance with the thickness of the section. Annealing temperatures given cover process and full annealing as already established and used by industry, the lower end of the range being used for process annealing.

Source: SAE Handbook, 1990. Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Typical SAE Heat Treatments for Stainless Chromium Steels

SAE Steels	AISI No.	Normalizing Temperature	Subcritical Annealing Temperature		Full Annealing[a] Temperature		Hardening Temperature (degrees F)		Quenching Medium	Temper
			degrees F	degrees C	degrees F	degrees C	degrees F	degrees C		
51409	…	…	…	…	1625	885	…	…	Air	…
51410	410		1300–1350[b]	705–730[b]	1500–1650	845–900	1700–1850	925–1010	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51414	414	…	1200–1250[b]	650–675[b]	…	…	1800–1900	980–1040	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51416	416	…	1300–1350[c]	705–730[c]	1500–1650	845–900	1700–1850	925–1010	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51420	420	…	1350–1450[b]	730–790[b]	1550–1650	845–900	1800–1900	980–1040	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51420F[d]	…	…	1350–1450[b]	730–790[b]	1550–1650	845–900	1800–1900	980–1040	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51430	430	…	1400–1500[c]	760–815[c]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51430F[d]	…	…	1250–1400[c]	675–760[c]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51431	431	…	1150–1225[b]	620–665[b]	…	…	1800–1950	980–1065	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51434	…	…	1400–1600[c]	760–870[c]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51436	…									
51440A[d]	440A[d]	…	1350–1440[b]	730–780[b]	1550–1650	845–900	1850–1950	1010–1065	Oil or air	To desired hardness
51440B[d]	440B[d]									
51440C[d]	440C[d]									
51440F[d]	…									
51442	442	…	1350–1500[c]	730–815[c]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51446	446	…	1450–1600[b]	790–870[b]	…	…	…	…	…	…
51501	501	…	1325–1375[c]	720–745[c]	1525–1600	829–871	1600–1700	871–927	Oil or air	To desired hardness

[a] Cool slowly in furnace.
[b] Usually air cooled but may be furnace cooled.
[c] Cool rapidly in air.
[d] Suffixes A, B, and C denote three types of steel differing only in carbon content. Suffix F denotes a free-machining steel.
Source: SAE Handbook, 1990. Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990. Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Heat Treating High-Speed Steels

Cobaltcrom Steel.—A tungstenless alloy steel or high-speed steel that contains approximately 1.5 percent carbon, 12.5 percent chromium, and 3.5 percent cobalt. Tools such as dies and milling cutters made from cobaltcrom steel can be cast to shape in suitable molds, the cutter teeth being formed so that it is necessary only to grind them.

Before the blanks can be machined, they must be annealed; this operation is performed by pack annealing at the temperature of 1800°F (982°C), for a period of from 3 to 6 hours, according to the size of the castings being annealed. The following directions are given for the hardening of blanking and trimming dies, milling cutters, and similar tools made from cobaltcrom steel: Heat slowly in a hardening furnace to about 1830°F (999°C), and hold at this temperature until the tools are thoroughly soaked. Reduce the temperature about 50°F (28°C), withdraw the tools from the furnace, and allow them to cool in the atmosphere. As soon as the red color disappears from the cooling tool, place it in quenching oil until cold. The slight drop of 50°F (28°C) in temperature while the tool is still in the hardening furnace is highly important to obtain proper results. The steel will be injured if the tool is heated above 1860°F (1016°C). In cooling milling cutters or other rotary tools, it is suggested that they be suspended on a wire to ensure a uniform rate of cooling.

Tools that are to be subjected to shocks or vibration, such as pneumatic rivet sets, shear blades, etc., should be heated slowly to 1650°F (899°C), after which the temperature should be reduced to about 1610°F (877°C), at which point the tool should be removed from the furnace and permitted to cool in the atmosphere. No appreciable scaling occurs in the hardening of cobaltcrom steel tools.

Preheating Tungsten High-Speed Steel.—Tungsten high-speed steel must be hardened at a very high temperature; consequently, tools made from such steel are seldom hardened without at least one preheating stage to avoid internal strain. This requirement applies especially to milling cutters, taps, and other tools having thin teeth and thick bodies and to forming tools of irregular shape and section. The tools should be heated slowly and carefully to a temperature somewhat below the critical point of the steel, usually in the range of 1500 to 1600°F (816 to 871°C). Limiting the preheating temperature prevents the operation from being unduly sensitive, and the tool may be safely left in the furnace until it reaches a uniform temperature throughout its length and cross section.

A single stage of preheating is customary for tools of simple form that are not more than from 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (25 to 38 mm) in thickness. For large, intricate tools, two stages of preheating are frequently used. The first brings the tool up to a temperature of about 1100 to 1200°F (593 to 649°C), and the second raises its temperature to 1550 to 1600°F (843 to 649°C). A preheating time of 5 minutes for each $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) in tool thickness has been recommended for a furnace temperature of 1600°F (871°C). This is where a single stage of preheating is used and the furnace capacity should be sufficient to maintain practically constant temperature when the tools are changed. To prevent undue chilling, it is common practice to insert a single tool or a small lot in the hardening furnace whenever a tool or lot is removed rather than to insert a full charge of cold metal at one time.

Preheating is usually done in a simple type of oven furnace heated by gas, electricity, or oil. Atmospheric control is seldom used, although for 18-4-1 steel a slightly reducing atmosphere (2 to 6 percent carbon monoxide) has been found to produce the least amount of scale and will result in a better surface after final hardening.

Hardening of Tungsten High-Speed Steel.—All tungsten high-speed steels must be heated to a temperature close to their fusion point to develop their maximum efficiency as metal-cutting tools. Hardening temperatures ranging from 2200 to 2500°F (1204 to 1371°C) may be needed. The effects of changes in the hardening temperature on the cutting efficiency of several of the more common high-speed steels are shown in Table 1. The figures given are ratios, the value 1.00 for each steel being assigned to the highest observed cutting speed for that steel. The figures for different steels, therefore, cannot

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be directly compared with each other, except to note changes in the point of maximum cutting efficiency.

Table 1. Relation of Hardening Temperature to Cutting Efficiency

Hardening Temperature		Typical Analyses of High-Speed Steels			
Deg. F	Deg. C	18 – 4 – 1	14 – 4 – 2	18 – 4 – 1 Cobalt	14 – 4 – 2 Cobalt
2200	1204	0.86	0.83	0.84	0.85
2250	1232	0.88	0.88	0.86	0.88
2300	1260	0.90	0.93	0.90	0.91
2350	1288	0.95	0.98	0.94	0.94
2400	1316	0.99	0.98	0.98	0.98
2450	1343	1.00	…	0.99	1.00
2500	1371	0.98	…	1.00	0.97

The figures in the table refer to tools heated in an oven-type furnace in which a neutral atmosphere is maintained. The available data indicate that a steel reaches its best cutting qualities at a temperature approximately 50°F (28°C) lower than the figures in the table if it is hardened in a bath-type furnace. It is, however, desirable to use a hardening temperature approximately 50°F (28°C) lower than that giving maximum cutting qualities to avoid the possibility of overheating the tool.

Length of Time for Heating: The cutting efficiency of a tool is affected by the time that it is kept at the hardening temperature, almost as much as by the hardening temperature itself. It has been common practice to heat a tool for hardening until a "sweat" appears on its surface. This sweat is presumably a melting of the oxide film on the surface of a tool heated in an oxidizing atmosphere. It does not appear when the tool is heated in an inert atmosphere. This method of determining the proper heating time is at best an approximation and indicates only the temperature on the outside of the tool rather than the condition of the interior. As such, it cannot be relied upon to give consistent results.

The only safe method is to heat the tool for a definite predetermined time, based on the size and the thickness of metal that the heat must penetrate to reach the interior. The values given in Table 2 are based on a series of experiments to determine the relative cutting efficiency of a group of tools hardened in an identical manner except for variations in the time the tools were kept at the hardening temperature. The time given is based on that required to harden throughout a tool resting on a conducting hearth; the tool receives heat freely from three sides, on its large top surface and its smaller side surfaces. (The table does not apply to a disk lying flat on the hearth.) For a tool having a projecting cutting edge, such as a tap, the thickness or depth of the projecting portion on which the cutting edge is formed should be used when referring to the table.

Table 2. Length of Heating Time for Through Hardening

High-Speed Steel Tool Thickness		Time in Furnace at High Heat, Minutes	High-Speed Steel Tool Thickness		Time in Furnace at High Heat, Minutes	High-Speed Steel Tool Thickness		Time in Furnace at High Heat, Minutes
Inch	Centimeter		Inch	Centimeter		Inch	Centimeter	
¼	0.635	2	1½	3.81	7	5	12.7	18
½	1.27	3	2	5.08	8	6	15.24	20
¾	1.905	4	3	7.62	12	8	20.32	25
1	2.54	5	4	10.16	15	10	25.4	30

The time periods given in Table 2 are based on complete penetration of the hardening effect. For very thick tools, the practical procedure is to harden to a depth sufficient to produce an adequate cutting edge, leaving the interior of the tool relatively soft.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Where atmosphere control is not provided, it often will be found impracticable to use both the temperature for maximum cutting efficiency, given in Table 1, and the heating time, given in Table 2, because abnormal scaling, grain growth, and surface decarburization of the tool will result. The principal value of an accurate control of the furnace atmosphere appears to lie in the fact that its use makes possible the particular heat treatment that produces the best structure in the tool without destruction of the tool surface or grain.

Quenching Tungsten High-Speed Steel.—High-speed steel is usually quenched in oil. The oil bath offers a convenient quench; it calls for no unusual care in handling and brings about a uniform and satisfactory rate of cooling, which does not vary appreciably with the temperature of the oil. Some authorities believe it desirable to withdraw the tool from the oil bath for a few seconds after it has reached a dull red. It is also believed desirable to move the tool around in the quenching oil, particularly immediately after being placed in it, to prevent the formation of a gas film on the tool. Such a film is usually a poor conductor of heat and slows the rate of cooling.

Salt Bath: Quenching in a lead or salt bath at from 1000 to 1200°F (538 to 649°C) has the advantage that cooling of the tool from hardening to room temperature is accomplished in two stages, thus reducing the possibility of setting up internal strains that may tend to crack the tool. The quenching temperature is sufficiently below the lower critical point for a tool so quenched to be allowed to cool to room temperature in still air. This type of quench is particularly advantageous for tools of complicated section that would easily develop hardening cracks. The salt quench has the advantage that the tool sinks and requires only a support, whereas the same tool will float in the lead bath and must be held under the surface. It is believed that the lead quench gives a somewhat higher matrix hardness, and is of advantage for tools that tend to fail by nose abrasion. Tools treated as described are brittle unless given a regular tempering treatment, because the 1000°F (538°C) quenching temperature is not a substitute for later tempering at the same temperature, after the tool has cooled to room temperature.

Air Cooling: Many high-speed steel tools are quenched in air, either in a stream of dry compressed air or in still air. Small sections harden satisfactorily in still air, but heavier sections should be subjected to air under pressure. One advantage of air cooling is that the tool can be kept straight and free from distortion, although it is likely that there will be more scale on a tool thus quenched than when oil, lead, or salt is used. Cooling between steel plates may help to keep thin flat tools straight and flat.

Straightening Tools when Quenching.—The final straightness required in a tool must be considered when it is quenched. When several similar tools are to be hardened, a jig can be used to advantage for holding the tools while quenching. When long slender tools are quenched without holders, they frequently warp and must be straightened later. The best time for this straightening is during the first few minutes after the tools have been quenched, as the steel is then quite pliable and may be straightened without difficulty. The straightening must be done at once, as the tools become hard in a few minutes.

Anneal Before Rehardening.—Tools that are too soft after hardening must be annealed before rehardening. A quick anneal, such as previously described, is all that is required to put such a tool into the proper condition for rehardening. This treatment is absolutely essential. For milling cutters and forming tools of irregular section, a full anneal should be used.

Tempering or Drawing Tungsten High-Speed Steel.—The tempering or drawing temperature for high-speed steel tools usually varies from 900 to 1200°F (482 to 649°C). This temperature is higher for turning and planing tools than for such tools as milling cutters, forming tools, etc. If the temperature is below 800°F (427°C), the tool is likely to be too brittle. The general idea is to temper tools at the highest temperature likely to occur in service. Because this temperature ordinarily is unknown, the general practice is to temper at whatever temperature experience with that particular steel and tool has proved to be the best. The furnace used for tempering usually is kept at a temperature of from 1000 to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1100°F (538 to 593°C) for ordinary high-speed steels and from 1200 to 1300°F (649 to 704°C) for steels of the cobalt type. These furnace temperatures apply to tools of the class used on lathes and planers. Such tools, in service, frequently heat to the point of visible redness. Milling cutters, forming tools, or any other tools for lighter duty may be tempered as low as 850 or 900°F (454 to 4821°C). When the tool has reached the temperature of the furnace, it should be held at this temperature for from one to several hours until it has been heated evenly throughout. It should then be allowed to cool gradually in the air and in a place that is dry and free from air drafts. In tempering, the tool should not be quenched because quenching tends to produce strains that may result later in cracks.

Annealing Tungsten High-Speed Steel.—The following method of annealing high-speed steel has been used extensively. Use an iron box or pipe of sufficient size to allow at least ½ inch (12.7 mm) of packing between the pieces of steel to be annealed and the sides of the box or pipe. It is not necessary that each piece of steel be kept separate from every other piece, but only that the steel be prevented from touching the sides of the annealing pipe or box. Pack carefully with powdered charcoal, fine dry lime, or mica (preferably charcoal), and cover with an airtight cap or lute with fire clay; heat slowly to 1600 to 1650°F (871 to 899°C) and keep at this heat from 2 to 8 hours, depending on the size of the pieces to be annealed. A piece measuring 2 × 1 × 8 inches (5 × 2.5 × 20.3 cm) requires about 3 hours. Cool as slowly as possible, and do not expose to the air until cold because cooling in air is likely to cause partial hardening. A good method is to allow the box or pipe to remain in the furnace until cold.

Hardening Molybdenum High-Speed Steels.—Table 3 gives the compositions of several molybdenum high-speed steels that are widely used for general commercial tool applications. The general method of hardening molybdenum high-speed steels resembles that used for 18-4-1 tungsten high-speed steel except that the hardening temperatures are lower and more precautions must be taken to avoid decarburization, especially on tools made from Type I or Type II steels, when the surface is not ground after hardening. Either salt baths or atmosphere-controlled furnaces are recommended for hardening molybdenum high-speed steels.

Table 3. Compositions of Molybdenum High-Speed Steels

	Molybdenum-Tungsten		Molybdenum-Vanadium	Tungsten-Molybdenum
Element	Type Ia (Percent)	Type Ib[a] (Percent)	Type II (Percent)	Type III (Percent)
Carbon	0.70-0.85	0.76-0.82	0.70-0.90	0.75-0.90
Tungsten	1.25-2.00	1.60-2.30	…	5.00-6.00
Chromium	3.00-5.00	3.70-4.20	3.00-5.00	3.50-5.00
Vanadium	0.90-1.50	1.05-1.35	1.50-2.25	1.25-1.75
Molybdenum	8.00-9.50	8.00-9.00	7.50-9.50	3.50-5.50
Cobalt	See footnote	4.50-5.50	See footnote	See footnote

[a] Cobalt may be used in any of these steels in varying amounts up to 9 percent, and the vanadium content may be as high as 2.25 percent. When cobalt is used in Type III steel, the vanadium content may be as high as 2.25 percent. When cobalt is used in Type III steel, this steel becomes susceptible to decarburization. As an illustration of the use of cobalt, Type Ib steel is included. This is steel T10 in the US Navy Specification 46S37, dated November 1, 1939.

The usual method is to preheat uniformly in a separate furnace to 1250 to 1550°F (677 to 843°C), then transfer to a high-heat furnace maintained within the hardening temperature range given in Table 4. Single-point cutting tools, in general, should be hardened at the upper end of the temperature range indicated by Table 4. Slight grain coarsening is not objectionable in such tools when they are properly supported in service and are not subjected to chattering; however, when these tools are used for intermittent cuts, it is better

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

to use the middle of the temperature range. All other cutting tools, such as drills, countersinks, taps, milling cutters, reamers, broaches, and form tools, should be hardened in the middle of the range shown. For certain tools, such as slender taps, cold punches, and blanking and trimming dies, where greater toughness to resist shocks is required, the lower end of the hardening temperature range should be used.

Table 4. Heat Treatment of Molybdenum High-Speed Steels

Heat-Treating Operation	Molybdenum–Tungsten Types Ia and Ib[a] Temp.		Molybdenum–Vanadium Type II Temp.		Tungsten–Molybdenum Type III Temp.	
	Deg. F	Deg. C	Deg. F	Deg. C	Deg. F	Deg. C
Forging	1850–2000	1010–1093	1850–2000	1010–1093	1900–2050	1038–1121
Not below	1600	871	1600	871	1600	871
Annealing	1450–1550	788–843	1450–1550	788–843	1450–1550	788–843
Strain relief	1150–1350	621–732	1150–1350	621–732	1150–1350	621–732
Preheating	1250–1500	677–816	1250–1500	677–816	1250–1550	677–843
Hardening[b]	2150–2250[a]	1177–1232[a]	2150–2250	1177–1232	2175–2275	1191–1246
Salt	2150–2225	1177–1218	2150–2225	1177–1218	2150–2250	1177–1232
Tempering	950–1100	510–593	950–1100	510–593	950–1100	510–593

[a] For similar working conditions, Type Ib steel requires slightly higher hardening heat than Type Ia.
[b] The higher side of the hardening range should be used for large sections, and the lower side for small sections.

Molybdenum high-speed steels can be pack-hardened following the same practice as is used for tungsten high-speed steels but keeping on the lower side of the hardening range (approximately 1850°F or 1010°C). Special surface treatments such as nitriding by immersion in molten cyanide that are used for tungsten high-speed steels are also applicable to molybdenum high-speed tools.

When heated in an open fire or in furnaces without atmosphere control, these steels do not sweat like 18-4-1 steels; consequently, determining the proper time in the high-heat chamber is a matter of experience. This time approximates that used with 18-4-1 steels, although it may be slightly longer when the lower part of the hardening range is used. Much can be learned by preliminary hardening of test pieces and checking on the hardness fracture and structure. It is difficult to give the exact heating time because it is affected by temperature, type of furnace, size and shape, and furnace atmosphere. Rate of heat transfer is most rapid in salt baths and slowest in controlled-atmosphere furnaces with high carbon monoxide content.

Quenching and Tempering of Molybdenum High-Speed Tools.—Quenching may be done in oil, air, or molten bath. To reduce the possibility of breakage and undue distortion of intricately shaped tools, it is advisable to quench in a molten bath at approximately 1100°F (593°C). The tool also may be quenched in oil and removed while still red, or at approximately 1100°F (593°C). The tool is then cooled in air to room temperature and tempered immediately to avoid cracking.

When straightening is necessary, it should be done after quenching and before cooling to room temperature prior to tempering.

To temper, the tools should be reheated slowly and uniformly to 950 to 1100°F (510 to 593°C). For general work, 1050°F (566°C) is most common. The tools should be held at this temperature at least 1 hour. Two hours is a safer minimum, and 4 hours is maximum. The time and temperature depend on the hardness and toughness required. Where tools are subjected to more or less shock, multiple temperings are suggested.

Protective Coatings for Molybdenum Steels.—To protect the surface from oxidation during heat treatment, borax may be sprinkled lightly over the steel when the latter is heated in a furnace to a low temperature, 1200 to 1400°F (649 to 760°C). Small tools may be rolled in a box of borax before heating. Another method more suitable for finished tools is to apply the borax or boric acid in the form of a supersaturated water solution. The tools

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

are then immersed in the solution at 180 to 212°F (82 to 100°C), or the solution may be applied with a brush or spray. Pieces so treated are heated as usual and carefully handled to ensure good adherence of the coating. When properly applied, special protective coatings or paints have been found to be extremely useful. These materials do not fuse or run at the temperatures used and therefore do not affect the furnace hearth. When applying these coatings, it is necessary to have a surface free from scale or grease to ensure good adherence. Coatings may be sprayed or brushed on, and usually one thin coat is sufficient. Heavy coats tend to pit the surface of the tool and are difficult to remove. Tools covered with these coatings should be allowed to dry before they are charged into the preheat furnace. After hardening and tempering, the coating can be easily removed by light blasting with sand or steel shot. When tools are lightly ground, these coatings come off immediately. Protection may also be obtained by wrapping pieces in stainless steel foil.

Nitriding High-Speed Steel Tools.—Nitriding is applied to high-speed steel for the purpose of increasing tool life by producing a very hard skin or case, the thickness of which ordinarily is from 0.001 to 0.002 inch (0.025 to 0.05 mm). Nitriding is done after the tool has been fully heat treated and finish-ground. (The process differs entirely from that which is applied to surface harden certain alloy steels by heating in an atmosphere of nitrogen or ammonia gas.) The temperature of the high-speed steel nitriding bath, which is a mixture of sodium and potassium cyanides, is equal to or slightly lower than the tempering temperature. For ordinary tools, this temperature usually varies from about 1025 to 1050°F (552 to 566°C); but, if the tools are exceptionally fragile, the range may be reduced to 950 or 1000°F (510 to 538°C). Accurate temperature control is essential to prevent exceeding the final tempering temperature. The nitriding time may vary from 10 or 15 minutes to 30 minutes or longer, and should be determined by experiment. The shorter periods are applied to tools for iron or steel, or any shock-resisting tools, and the longer periods are for tools used in machining nonferrous metals and plastics. This nitriding process is applied to tools, such as hobs, reamers, taps, box tools, form tools, and milling cutters. Nitriding may increase tool life 50 to 200 percent, or more, but it should always be preceded by correct heat treatment.

Nitriding Bath Mixtures and Temperatures: A mixture of 60 percent sodium cyanide and 40 percent potassium cyanide is commonly used for nitriding. This mixture has a melting point of 925°F (496°C), which is gradually reduced to 800°F (427°C) as the cyanate content of the bath increases. A more economical mixture of 70 percent sodium cyanide and 30 percent potassium cyanide may be used if the bath temperature is only 1050°F (566°C). Nitriding bath temperatures should not exceed 1100°F (593°C) because higher temperatures accelerate the formation of carbonate at the expense of the essential cyanide. A third mixture used for nitriding consists of 55 percent sodium cyanide, 25 percent potassium chloride, and 20 percent sodium carbonate. This mixture melts at 930°F (499°C).

Equipment for Hardening High-Speed Steel.—Equipment for hardening high-speed steel consists of a hardening furnace capable of maintaining a temperature of 2350 to 2450°F (1288 to 1343°C); a preheating furnace capable of maintaining a temperature of 1700 to 1800°F (927 to 982°C) and of sufficient size to hold a number of pieces of the work; a tempering (drawing) furnace capable of maintaining a temperature of 1000 to 1200°F (538 to 649°C) as a general rule; and a water-cooled tank of quenching oil.

High-speed steels usually are heated for hardening either in some type of electric furnace or in a gas-fired furnace of the muffle type. The small furnaces used for high-speed steel seldom are oil-fired. It is desirable to use automatic temperature control and, where an oven-type of furnace is employed, a controlled atmosphere is advisable because of the variations in cutting qualities caused by hardening under uncontrolled conditions. Some furnaces of both electric and fuel-fired types are equipped with a salt bath suitable for high-speed steel hardening temperatures. Salt baths have the advantage of providing protection against the atmosphere during the heating period. A type of salt developed for commercial use is water-soluble so that all deposits from the hardening bath may be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

removed by immersion in water after quenching in oil or salt, or after air cooling. One type of electric furnace heats the salt bath internally by electrodes immersed in it. The same type of furnace is also applied to various heat-treating operations, such as cyanide hardening, liquid carburizing, tempering, and annealing.

An open-forge fire has many disadvantages, especially in hardening cutters or other tools that cannot be ground all over after hardening. The air blast decarburizes the steel, and lack of temperature control makes it impossible to obtain uniform results. Electric and gas furnaces provide continuous uniform heat, and the temperature may be regulated accurately, especially when pyrometers are used. In shops equipped with only one furnace for carbon steel and one for high-speed steel, the tempering can be done in the furnace used for hardening carbon steel after the preheating is finished and the steel has been removed for hardening.

Heating High-Speed Steel for Forging.—Care should be taken not to heat high-speed steel for forging too abruptly. In winter, the steel may be extremely cold when brought into the forge shop. If the steel is put directly into the hot forge fire, it is likely to develop cracks that will show up later in the finished tool. The steel, therefore, should be warmed gradually before heating for forging.

Subzero Treatment of Steel

Subzero treatment consists of subjecting the steel, after hardening and either before or after tempering, to a subzero temperature that usually ranges from –100 to –120°F (–73 to –84°C), and for a period of time varying with the size or volume of the tool, gage, or other part. Commercial equipment is available for obtaining these low temperatures.

The subzero treatment is employed by most gage manufacturers to stabilize precision gages and prevent subsequent changes in size or form. Subzero treatment is also applied to some high-speed steel cutting tools. The object here is to increase the durability or life of the tools; however, up to the present time, the results of tests by metallurgists and tool engineers often differ considerably and in some instances are contradictory. Methods of procedure also vary, especially with regard to the order and number of operations in the complete heat-treating and cooling cycle.

Changes Resulting From Subzero Treatment.—When steel is at the hardening temperature it contains a solid solution of carbon and iron known as *austenite*. When the steel is hardened by sudden cooling, most of the austenite, which is relatively soft, tough, and ductile even at room temperatures, is transformed into martensite, a hard and strong constituent. If all the austenite were changed to martensite upon reaching room temperature, this process would be an ideal hardening operation, but many steels retain some austenite. In general, the higher the carbon and alloy contents and the higher the hardening temperature, the greater the tendency to retain austenite. When steel is cooled to subzero temperatures, the stability of the retained austenite is reduced so that it is more readily transformed. To obtain more complete transformation, the subzero treatment may be repeated. The ultimate transformation of austenite to martensite may take place in carbon steel without the aid of subzero treatment, but this natural transformation might require 6 months or longer, whereas by refrigeration this change occurs in a few hours.

The thorough, uniform heating that is always recommended in heat-treating operations should be accompanied by thorough, uniform cooling when the subzero treatment is applied. To ensure uniform cooling, the subzero cooling period should be increased for the larger tools and it may range from 2 to 6 hours. The tool or other part is sometimes surrounded by one or more layers of heavy wrapping for insulating material to delay the cooling somewhat and ensure uniformity. After the cooling cycle is started, it should continue without interruption.

Subzero treatment may sometimes cause cracking. Normally, the austenite in steel provides a cushioning effect that may prevent cracking or breakage resulting from treatments

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

involving temperature and dimensional changes; but if this cushioning effect is removed, particularly at very low temperatures as in subzero treatments, there may be danger of cracking, especially with tools having large or irregular sections and sharp corners offering relatively low resistance to stresses. This effect is one reason why subzero treatments may differ in regard to the cooling and tempering cycle.

Stabilizing Dimensions of Gages or Precision Parts by Subzero Cooling.— Transformation of austenite into martensite is accompanied by an increase in volume; consequently, the transformation of austenite, that may occur naturally over a period of months or years, tends to change the dimensions and form of steel parts, and such changes may be serious in the case of precision gages, close-fitting machine parts, etc. To prevent such changes, the subzero treatment has proved effective. Gage blocks, for example, may be stabilized by hardening followed by repeated cycles of chilling and tempering, to transform a large percentage of the austenite into martensite.

Order of Operations for Stabilizing Precision Gages: If precision gages and sine-bars are heat treated in the ordinary manner and then finished without some stabilizing treatment, dimensional changes and warpage are liable to occur. Subzero cooling provides a practical and fairly rapid method of obtaining the necessary stabilization by transforming the austenite into martensite. In stabilization treatments of this kind, tempering is the final operation. One series of treatments that has been recommended after hardening and rough-grinding is as follows:

a) Cool to −120°F (−84°C). This cooling period may require from 1 to 6 hours, depending on the size and form of the gage.

b) Place gage in boiling water for 2 hours (oil or salt bath may also be used).

Note: Steps Item a) and Item b) may be repeated from two to six times, depending on the size and form of the gage. These repeated cycles will eventually transform practically all the austenite into martensite. Two or three cooling and drawing operations usually are sufficient for such work as thread gages and gage blocks.

c) Follow with regular tempering or drawing operation and finish gage by lapping.

Series of Stabilizing Treatments for Chromium Steel: The following series of treatments has proved successful in stabilizing precision gage blocks made from SAE 52100 chromium steel.

a) Preheat to 600°F (316°C), then heat to 1575°F (857°C) for a period of four minutes.

b) Quench in oil at 85°F (29°C). Uniform quenching is essential.

c) Temper at 275°F (135°C) for one hour.

d) Cool in tempering furnace to room temperature.

e) Continue cooling in atmosphere of industrial refrigerator for 6 hours with temperature of atmosphere at −120°F (−84°C).

f) Allow gage blocks to return to room temperature and again temper.

Note: The complete treatment consists of six subzero cooling periods, each followed by a tempering operation. The transformation to martensite is believed to be complete even after the fifth cooling period. The hardness is about 66 RC (Rockwell C scale). Transformation is checked by magnetic tests based upon the magnetism of martensite and the nonmagnetic qualities of austenite.

Stabilizing Dimensions of Close-Fitting Machine Parts.— Subzero treatment will always cause an increase in size. Machine parts subjected to repeated and perhaps drastic changes in temperature, as in aircraft, may eventually cause trouble due to growth or warpage as the austenite gradually changes to martensite. In some instances, the sizes of close-fitting moving parts have increased sufficiently to cause seizure. Such treatment, for example, may be applied to precision bearings made from SAE 52100 or alloy carburizing steels for stabilizing or aging them. *Time* aging of 52100 steels after hardening has been found to cause

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

changes as large as 0.0025 inch (0.064 mm) in medium size sections. A practical remedy is to apply the subzero treatment before the final grinding or other machining operation.

Subzero Treatment of Carburized Parts to Improve Physical Properties.—The subzero treatment has been applied to carburized machine parts. For example, the amount of retained austenite in carburized gears may be sufficient to reduce the life of the gears. In one component, the Rockwell hardness was increased from 55 to 65 RC without loss of impact resistance qualities; in fact, impact and fatigue resistance may be increased in some examples.

Application of Subzero Treatments to High-Speed Steel.—The subzero treatment has been applied to such tools as milling cutters, hobs, taps, broaches, and drills. It is applicable to different classes of high-speed steels, such as the 18-4-1 tungsten, 18-4-14 cobalt, and the molybdenum high-speed steels. This *cold* treatment is applied preferably in conjunction with the heat treatment, both being combined in a continuous cycle of operations. The general procedure is either to harden the steel, cool it to a subzero temperature, and then temper; or, especially if there is more than one tempering operation, the first tempering may *precede* subzero cooling. The cooling and tempering cycle may be repeated two or more times. The number and order of the operations, or the complete cycle, may be varied to suit the class of work and to minimize the danger of cracking, particularly if the tool has large or irregular sections, sharp corners or edges, or a high cobalt content. A subzero treatment of some kind with a final tempering operation for stress relief is intended to increase strength and toughness without much loss in hardness; consequently, if there is greater strength at a given hardness, tools subjected to subzero treatment can operate with a higher degree of hardness than those heat treated in the ordinary manner, or, if preferred, greater toughness can be obtained by tempering to the original degree of hardness.

Order of Cooling and Tempering Periods for High-Speed Steel.—The order or cycle for the cooling and tempering periods has not been standardized. The methods that follow have been applied to high-speed steel tools. They are given as examples of procedure and are subject to possible changes due to subsequent developments. The usual ranges of preheating and hardening temperatures are given, but, for a particular steel, the recommended temperatures should be obtained from the manufacturer.

1) *Double Subzero Treatment:* (For rugged simple tool forms without irregular sections, sharp corners or edges where cracks might develop during the subzero treatment).

a) Preheat between 1400 and 1600°F (760 and 871°C). Double preheating is preferable, the first preheating ranging from 700 to 1000°F (371 to 538°C).

b) Heat to the hardening temperature. *Note:* Tests indicate that the effect of subzero treatment on high-speed steel may be influenced decidedly by the hardening temperature. If this temperature is near the lower part of the range, the results are unsatisfactory. Effective temperatures for ordinary high-speed steels appear to range from 2300 to 2350°F (1260 to 1288°C).

c) Quench in oil, salt, lead, or air, down to a workpiece temperature of 150–200°F (66–93°C). *Note:* One method is to quench in oil; a second method is to quench in oil to about 200–225°F (93–107°C) and then air cool; a third method is to quench in salt bath at 1050–1100°F (566–593°C) and then air cool.

d) Cool in refrigerating unit to temperature of –100 to –120°F (–73 to –84°C) *right after quenching. Note:* Tests have shown that a delay of one hour has a detrimental effect, and in 10 hours the efficiency of the subzero treatment is reduced 50 percent. This is because the austenite becomes more and more stabilized when the subzero treatment is delayed; consequently, the austenite is more difficult to transform into martensite.) The refrigerating period usually varies from 2 to 6 hours, depending on the size of the tool. Remove the tool from the refrigerating unit and allow it to return to room temperature.

e) Temper to required hardness for a period of $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 hours. The tempering temperature usually varies from a minimum of 1000 to 1100°F (538 to 593°C) for ordinary high-speed steels. Tests indicate that if this first tempering is less

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

than $2\frac{1}{2}$ hours at 1050°F (566°C), there will not be sufficient precipitation of carbides at the tempering temperature to allow complete transformation of the retained austenite on cooling, whereas more than 3 hours causes some loss in room temperature hardness, hot hardness, strength, and toughness.

f) Repeat subzero treatment, step Item d).

g) Repeat the tempering operation, Item e). *Note:* The time for the second tempering operation is sometimes reduced to about $\frac{1}{2}$ the time required for the first tempering.

2) *Single Subzero Treatment:* This treatment is the same as procedure Item 1) except that a second subzero cooling is omitted; hence, the cycle consists of hardening, subzero cooling, and double tempering. Procedure Item 3), which follows, also has one subzero cooling period in the cycle, but this *follows* the first tempering operation.

3) *Tempering Followed by Subzero Treatment:* This treatment is for tools having irregular sections, sharp corners, or edges where cracks might develop if the hardening operation were followed immediately by subzero cooling.

a) Preheat and heat for hardening.

b) Preheat and heat for hardening.

c) Quench as described under procedure Item 1).

d) Temper to required hardness.

e) Cool to subzero temperature −100 to −120°F (−73 to −84°C) and then allow the tool to return to room temperature.

f) Repeat tempering operation.

Testing the Hardness of Metals

Brinell Hardness Test.—The Brinell test for determining the hardness of metallic materials consists in applying a known load to the surface of the material to be tested through a hardened steel ball of known diameter. The diameter of the resulting permanent impression in the metal is measured and the Brinell Hardness Number (BHN)* is then calculated from the following formula in which D = diameter of ball in millimeters, d = measured diameter at the rim of the impression in millimeters, and P = applied load in kilograms.

$$\text{BHN} = \frac{\text{load on indenting tool in kilograms}}{\text{surface area of indentation in sq. mm.}} = \frac{P}{\frac{\pi D}{2}\left(D - \sqrt{D^2 - d^2}\right)}$$

If the steel ball were not deformed under the applied load and if the impression were truly spherical, then the preceding formula would be a general one, and any combination of applied load and size of ball could be used. The impression, however, is not quite a spherical surface because there must always be some deformation of the steel ball and some recovery of form of the metal in the impression. Hence, for a standard Brinell Hardness test, the size and characteristics of the ball and the magnitude of the applied load must be standardized. In the standard test, a ball 10 millimeters in diameter and a load of 3000, 1500, or 500 kilograms is used. It is desirable, although not mandatory, that the test load be of such magnitude that the diameter of the impression be in the range of 2.50 to 4.75 millimeters. The following test loads and approximate Brinell Hardness Numbers for this range of impression diameters are: 3000 kg, 160 to 600 BHN; 1500 kg, 80 to 300 BHN; 500 kg, 26 to 100 BHN. In making a Brinell Hardness test, the load should be applied steadily and without a jerk for at least 15 seconds for iron and steel, and at least 30 seconds in testing other metals. A minimum period of 2 minutes, for example, has been recommended for magnesium and magnesium alloys. (For the softer metals, loads of 250, 125, or 100 kg are sometimes used.)

According to the American Society for Testing and Materials Standard E10-66, a steel ball may be used on material having a BHN not over 450, a Hultgren ball on material not over 500, or a carbide ball on material not over 630. The Brinell Hardness test is not recommended for material having a BHN over 630.

* Brinell Hardness Numbers also may be identified with the letters HB, HBS for hardness measured with a steel indenter, and HBW for hardness measured with a carbide indenter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rockwell Hardness Test.—The Rockwell hardness tester is essentially a machine that measures hardness by determining the depth of penetration of a penetrator into the specimen under certain fixed test conditions. The penetrator may be either a steel ball or a diamond spheroconical penetrator. The hardness number is related to the depth of indentation, and the number is higher the harder the material. A minor load of 10 kg is first applied, causing an initial penetration; the dial is set at zero on the black-figure scale, and the major load is applied. This major load is customarily 60 or 100 kg when a steel ball is used as a penetrator, but other loads may be used when necessary. The ball penetrator is $\frac{1}{16}$ inch in diameter normally, but other penetrators of larger diameter, such as $\frac{1}{8}$ inch, may be employed for soft metals. When a diamond spheroconical penetrator is employed, the load usually is 150 kg. Experience decides the best combination of load and penetrator for use. After the major load is applied and removed, according to standard procedure, the reading is taken while the minor load is still applied.

The Rockwell Hardness Scales.—The various Rockwell scales and their applications are shown in the following table. The type of penetrator and load used with each are shown in Table 5 and Table 6, which give comparative hardness values for different hardness scales.

Scale	Testing Application
A	For tungsten carbide and other extremely hard materials. Also for thin, hard sheets.
B	For materials of medium hardness such as low- and medium-carbon steels in the annealed condition.
C	For materials harder than 100 RB on the Rockwell B scale.
D	Where a somewhat lighter load is desired than on the Rockwell C scale, as on case-hardened pieces.
E	For very soft materials such as bearing metals.
F	Same as the Rockwell E scale but using a $\frac{1}{16}$-inch ball.
G	For metals harder than tested on the Rockwell B scale.
H & K	For softer metals.
15-N; 30-N; 45-N	Where a shallow impression or a small area is desired. For hardened steel and hard alloys.
15-T; 30-T; 45-T	Where a shallow impression or a small area is desired for materials softer than hardened steel.

Shore's Scleroscope.—The scleroscope is an instrument that measures the hardness of the work in terms of elasticity. A diamond-tipped hammer is allowed to drop from a known height on the metal to be tested. As this hammer strikes the metal, it rebounds, and the harder the metal, the greater the rebound. The extreme height of the rebound is recorded, and an average of a number of readings taken on a single piece will give a good indication of the hardness of the work. The surface smoothness of the work affects the reading of the instrument. The readings are also affected by the contour and mass of the work and the depth of the case, and, in carburized work, the soft core of light-depth carburizing, pack-hardening, or cyanide hardening, absorbing the force of the hammer fall and decreasing the rebound. The hammer weighs about 40 grains, the height of the rebound of hardened steel is in the neighborhood of 100 on the scale, or about $6\frac{1}{4}$ inches (158.8 mm), and the total fall is about 10 inches or 255 millimeters.

Vickers Hardness Test.—The Vickers test is similar in principle to the Brinell Hardness test. The standard Vickers penetrator is a square-based diamond pyramid having an included point angle of 136 degrees. The numerical value of the hardness number equals the applied load in kilograms divided by the area of the pyramidal impression. A smooth, firmly supported, flat surface is required. The load, which is usually applied for 30 seconds, may be 5, 10, 20, 30, 50, or 120 kilograms. The 50-kilogram load is the most usual. The hardness number is based upon the diagonal length of the square impression. The Vickers test is considered to be very accurate and may be applied to thin sheets as well as to larger sections with proper load regulation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Knoop Hardness Numbers.—The Knoop hardness test is applicable to extremely thin metal, plated surfaces, exceptionally hard and brittle materials, very shallow carburized or nitrided surfaces, or whenever the applied load must be kept below 3600 grams. The Knoop indentor is a diamond ground to an elongated pyramidal form and it produces an indentation having long and short diagonals with a ratio of approximately 7 to 1. The longitudinal angle of the indentor is 172 degrees, 30 minutes, and the transverse angle 130 degrees. The Tukon Tester in which the Knoop indentor is used is fully automatic under electronic control. The Knoop hardness number equals the load in kilograms divided by the projected area of indentation in square millimeters. The indentation number corresponding to the long diagonal and for a given load may be determined from a table computed for a theoretically perfect indentor. The load, which may be varied from 25 to 3600 grams, is applied for a definite period and always normal to the surface tested. Lapped plane surfaces free from scratches are required.

Monotron Hardness Indicator.—With this instrument, a diamond-ball impressor point $\frac{3}{4}$ mm in diameter is forced into the material to a depth of $\frac{9}{5000}$ inch; the pressure required to produce this constant impression indicates the hardness. One of two dials shows the pressure in kilograms and pounds, and the other shows the depth of the impression in millimeters and inches. Readings in Brinell Hardness Numbers may be obtained by means of a scale designated as *M*-1.

Keep's Test.—With this apparatus, a standard steel drill makes a definite number of revolutions while it is pressed with standard force against the specimen to be tested. The hardness is automatically recorded on a diagram on which a dead soft material gives a horizontal line, and a material as hard as the drill itself gives a vertical line, intermediate hardness being represented by the corresponding angle between 0 and 90 degrees.

Comparison of Hardness Scales.—Table 5, Table 6, and Table 7 show comparisons of various hardness scales. All such tables are based on the assumption that the metal tested is homogeneous to a depth several times that of the indentation. To the extent that the metal being tested is not homogeneous, errors are introduced because different loads and different shapes of penetrators meet the resistance of metal of varying hardness, depending on the depth of indentation. Another source of error is introduced in comparing the hardness of different materials as measured on different hardness scales. This error arises from the fact that in any hardness test, metal that is severely cold-worked actually supports the penetrator, and different metals, different alloys, and different analyses of the same type of alloy have different cold-working properties. In spite of the possible inaccuracies introduced by such factors, it is of considerable value to be able to compare hardness values in a general way.

The data shown in Table 5 are based on extensive tests on carbon and alloy steels mostly in the heat-treated condition but have been found to be reliable on constructional alloy steels and tool steels in the as-forged, annealed, normalized, quenched, and tempered conditions, providing they are homogeneous. These hardness comparisons are not as accurate for special alloys such as high manganese steel, 18-8 stainless steel and other austenitic steels, nickel-base alloys, constructional alloy steels, and nickel-base alloys in the cold-worked condition.

The data shown in Table 6 are for hardness measurements of unhardened steel, steel of soft temper, gray and malleable cast iron, and most nonferrous metals. Again these hardness comparisons are not as accurate for annealed metals of high Rockwell B hardness, such as austenitic stainless steel, nickel and high nickel alloys, and cold-worked metals of low Rockwell B scale hardness, such as aluminum and the softer alloys.

Table 7 is intended to provided a general numerical comparison of the various Rockwell hardness scales; however, it should not be used for conversion between the various scales.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Comparative Hardness Scales for Steel

Rockwell C Scale Hardness Number	Diamond Pyramid Hardness Number Vickers	Brinell Hardness Number 10-mm Ball, 3000-kgf Load			Rockwell Hardness Number		Rockwell Superficial Hardness Number Superficial Diamond Indenter			Shore Scleroscope Hardness Number
		Standard Ball	Hultgren Ball	Tungsten Carbide Ball	A Scale 60-kgf Load Diamond Indenter	D Scale 100-kgf Load Diamond Indenter	15-N Scale 15-kgf Load	30-N Scale 30-kgf Load	45-N Scale 45-kgf Load	
68	**940**	…	…	…	**85.6**	**76.9**	**93.2**	**84.4**	**75.4**	97
67	**900**	…	…	…	**85.0**	**76.1**	**92.9**	**83.6**	**74.2**	95
66	**865**	…	…	…	**84.5**	**75.4**	**92.5**	**82.8**	**73.3**	92
65	**832**	…	…	**(739)**	**83.9**	**74.5**	**92.2**	**81.9**	**72.0**	91
64	**800**	…	…	**(722)**	**83.4**	**73.8**	**91.8**	**81.1**	**71.0**	88
63	**772**	…	…	**(705)**	**82.8**	**73.0**	**91.4**	**80.1**	**69.9**	87
62	**746**	…	…	**(688)**	**82.3**	**72.2**	**91.1**	**79.3**	**68.8**	85
61	**720**	…	…	**(670)**	**81.8**	**71.5**	**90.7**	**78.4**	**67.7**	83
60	**697**	…	**(613)**	**(654)**	**81.2**	**70.7**	**90.2**	**77.5**	**66.6**	81
59	**674**	…	**(599)**	**(634)**	**80.7**	**69.9**	**89.8**	**76.6**	**65.5**	80
58	**653**	…	**(587)**	**615**	**80.1**	**69.2**	**89.3**	**75.7**	**64.3**	78
57	**633**	…	**(575)**	**595**	**79.6**	**68.5**	**88.9**	**74.8**	**63.2**	76
56	**613**	…	**(561)**	**577**	**79.0**	**67.7**	**88.3**	**73.9**	**62.0**	75
55	**595**	…	**(546)**	**560**	**78.5**	**66.9**	**87.9**	**73.0**	**60.9**	74
54	**577**	…	**(534)**	**543**	**78.0**	**66.1**	**87.4**	**72.0**	**59.8**	72
53	**560**	…	**(519)**	**525**	**77.4**	**65.4**	**86.9**	**71.2**	**58.6**	71
52	**544**	**(500)**	**(508)**	**512**	**76.8**	**64.6**	**86.4**	**70.2**	**57.4**	69
51	**528**	**(487)**	**(494)**	**496**	**76.3**	**63.8**	**85.9**	**69.4**	**56.1**	68
50	**513**	**(475)**	**(481)**	**481**	**75.9**	**63.1**	**85.5**	**68.5**	**55.0**	67
49	**498**	**(464)**	**(469)**	**469**	**75.2**	**62.1**	**85.0**	**67.6**	**53.8**	66
48	**484**	**(451)**	**(455)**	**455**	**74.7**	**61.4**	**84.5**	**66.7**	**52.5**	64
47	**471**	**442**	**443**	**443**	**74.1**	**60.8**	**83.9**	**65.8**	**51.4**	63
46	**458**	**432**	**432**	**432**	**73.6**	**60.0**	**83.5**	**64.8**	**50.3**	62
45	**446**	**421**	**421**	**421**	**73.1**	**59.2**	**83.0**	**64.0**	**49.0**	60
44	**434**	**409**	**409**	**409**	**72.5**	**58.5**	**82.5**	**63.1**	**47.8**	58
43	**423**	**400**	**400**	**400**	**72.0**	**57.7**	**82.0**	**62.2**	**46.7**	57
42	**412**	**390**	**390**	**390**	**71.5**	**56.9**	**81.5**	**61.3**	**45.5**	56
41	**402**	**381**	**381**	**381**	**70.9**	**56.2**	**80.9**	**60.4**	**44.3**	55
40	**392**	**371**	**371**	**371**	**70.4**	**55.4**	**80.4**	**59.5**	**43.1**	54
39	**382**	**362**	**362**	**362**	**69.9**	**54.6**	**79.9**	**58.6**	**41.9**	52
38	**372**	**353**	**353**	**353**	**69.4**	**53.8**	**79.4**	**57.7**	**40.8**	51
37	**363**	**344**	**344**	**344**	**68.9**	**53.1**	**78.8**	**56.8**	**39.6**	50
36	**354**	**336**	**336**	**336**	**68.4**	**52.3**	**78.3**	**55.9**	**38.4**	49
35	**345**	**327**	**327**	**327**	**67.9**	**51.5**	**77.7**	**55.0**	**37.2**	48
34	**336**	**319**	**319**	**319**	**67.4**	**50.8**	**77.2**	**54.2**	**36.1**	47
33	**327**	**311**	**311**	**311**	**66.8**	**50.0**	**76.6**	**53.3**	**34.9**	46
32	**318**	**301**	**301**	**301**	**66.3**	**49.2**	**76.1**	**52.1**	**33.7**	44
31	**310**	**294**	**294**	**294**	**65.8**	**48.4**	**75.6**	**51.3**	**32.5**	43
30	**302**	**286**	**286**	**286**	**65.3**	**47.7**	**75.0**	**50.4**	**31.3**	42
29	**294**	**279**	**279**	**279**	**64.7**	**47.0**	**74.5**	**49.5**	**30.1**	41
28	**286**	**271**	**271**	**271**	**64.3**	**46.1**	**73.9**	**48.6**	**28.9**	41
27	**279**	**264**	**264**	**264**	**63.8**	**45.2**	**73.3**	**47.7**	**27.8**	40
26	**272**	**258**	**258**	**258**	**63.3**	**44.6**	**72.8**	**46.8**	**26.7**	38
25	**266**	**253**	**253**	**253**	**62.8**	**43.8**	**72.2**	**45.9**	**25.5**	38
24	**260**	**247**	**247**	**247**	**62.4**	**43.1**	**71.6**	**45.0**	**24.3**	37
23	**254**	**243**	**243**	**243**	**62.0**	**42.1**	**71.0**	**44.0**	**23.1**	36
22	**248**	**237**	**237**	**237**	**61.5**	**41.6**	**70.5**	**43.2**	**22.0**	35

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Comparative Hardness Scales for Steel**

Rockwell C Scale Hardness Number	Diamond Pyramid Hardness Number Vickers	Brinell Hardness Number 10-mm Ball, 3000-kgf Load			Rockwell Hardness Number		Rockwell Superficial Hardness Number Superficial Diamond Indenter			Shore Scleroscope Hardness Number
		Standard Ball	Hultgren Ball	Tungsten Carbide Ball	A Scale 60-kgf Load Diamond Indenter	D Scale 100-kgf Load Diamond Indenter	15-N Scale 15-kgf Load	30-N Scale 30-kgf Load	45-N Scale 45-kgf Load	
21	**243**	**231**	**231**	**231**	**61.0**	**40.9**	**69.9**	**42.3**	**20.7**	35
20	**238**	**226**	**226**	**226**	**60.5**	**40.1**	**69.4**	**41.5**	**19.6**	34
(18)	230	219	219	219	…	…	…	…	…	33
(16)	222	212	212	212	…	…	…	…	…	32
(14)	213	203	203	203	…	…	…	…	…	31
(12)	204	194	194	194	…	…	…	…	…	29
(10)	196	187	187	187	…	…	…	…	…	28
(8)	188	179	179	179	…	…	…	…	…	27
(6)	180	171	171	171	…	…	…	…	…	26
(4)	173	165	165	165	…	…	…	…	…	25
(2)	166	158	158	158	…	…	…	…	…	24
(0)	160	152	152	152	…	…	…	…	…	24

Note: The values in this table shown in **boldface** type correspond to those shown in American Society for Testing and Materials Specification E140-67.

Values in ( ) are beyond the normal range and are given for information only.

Turner's Sclerometer.—In making this test, a weighted diamond point is drawn once forward and once backward over the smooth surface of the material to be tested. The hardness number is the weight in grams required to produce a standard scratch.

Mohs's Hardness Scale.—Hardness, in general, is determined by what is known as Mohs's scale, a standard for hardness that is applied mainly to nonmetallic elements and minerals. In this hardness scale, there are ten degrees or steps, each designated by a mineral, the difference in hardness of the different steps being determined by the fact that any member in the series will scratch any of the preceding members. This scale is as follows:

1) talc; 2) gypsum; 3) calcite; 4) fluorspar; 5) apatite; 6) orthoclase; 7) quartz; 8) topaz; 9) sapphire or corundum; and 10) diamond.

These minerals, arbitrarily selected as standards, are successively harder, from talc, the softest of all minerals, to diamond, the hardest. This scale, which is now universally used for nonmetallic minerals, is not applied to metals.

Relation Between Hardness and Tensile Strength.—The approximate relationship between hardness and tensile strength is shown by the following formula:

Tensile strength = $BHN \times 515$ (for Brinell Hardness Numbers up to 175).

Tensile strength = $BHN \times 490$ (for Brinell Hardness Numbers larger than 175).

The above formulas give the tensile strength in pounds per square inch for steels. These approximate relationships between hardness and tensile strength do not apply to nonferrous metals, with the possible exception of certain aluminum alloys.

Durometer Tests.—The durometer is a portable hardness tester for measuring hardness of rubber, plastics, and some soft metals. The instrument is designed to apply pressure to the specimen and the hardness is read from a scale while the pressure is maintained. Various scales can be used by changing the indentor and the load applied.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Comparative Hardness Scales for Unhardened Steel, Soft-Temper Steel, Gray and Malleable Cast Iron, and Nonferrous Alloys

Rockwell Hardness Number			Rockwell Superficial Hardness Number			Rockwell Hardness Number				Brinell Hardness Number	
1/16″ Ball Indenter			1/16″ Ball Indenter			1/8″ Ball Indenter			"Brale" Indenter	10-mm Standard Ball	
B scale 100-kg Load	F scale 60-kg Load	G scale 150-kg Load	15-T scale 15-kg Load	30-T scale 30-kg Load	45-T scale 45-kg Load	E scale 100-kg Load	H scale 60-kg Load	K scale 150-kg Load	A scale 60-kg Load	500-kg Load	3000-kg Load
100	…	82.5	93.0	82.0	72.0	…	…	…	61.5	201	240
99	…	81.0	92.5	81.5	71.0	…	…	…	61.0	195	234
98	…	79.0	…	81.0	70.0	…	…	…	60.0	189	228
97	…	77.5	92.0	80.5	69.0	…	…	…	59.5	184	222
96	…	76.0	…	80.0	68.0	…	…	…	59.0	179	216
95	…	74.0	91.5	79.0	67.0	…	…	…	58.0	175	210
94	…	72.5	…	78.5	66.0	…	…	…	57.5	171	205
93	…	71.0	91.0	78.0	65.5	…	…	…	57.0	167	200
92	…	69.0	90.5	77.5	64.5	…	…	100	56.5	163	195
91	…	67.5	…	77.0	63.5	…	…	99.5	56.0	160	190
90	…	66.0	90.0	76.0	62.5	…	…	98.5	55.5	157	185
89	…	64.0	89.5	75.5	61.5	…	…	98.0	55.0	154	180
88	…	62.5	…	75.0	60.5	…	…	97.0	54.0	151	176
87	…	61.0	89.0	74.5	59.5	…	…	96.5	53.5	148	172
86	…	59.0	88.5	74.0	58.5	…	…	95.5	53.0	145	169
85	…	57.5	…	73.5	58.0	…	…	94.5	52.5	142	165
84	…	56.0	88.0	73.0	57.0	…	…	94.0	52.0	140	162
83	…	54.0	87.5	72.0	56.0	…	…	93.0	51.0	137	159
82	…	52.5	…	71.5	55.0	…	…	92.0	50.5	135	156
81	…	51.0	87.0	71.0	54.0	…	…	91.0	50.0	133	153
80	…	49.0	86.5	70.0	53.0	…	…	90.5	49.5	130	150
79	…	47.5	…	69.5	52.0	…	…	89.5	49.0	128	147
78	…	46.0	86.0	69.0	51.0	…	…	88.5	48.5	126	144
77	…	44.0	85.5	68.0	50.0	…	…	88.0	48.0	124	141
76	…	42.5	…	67.5	49.0	…	…	87.0	47.0	122	139
75	99.5	41.0	85.0	67.0	48.5	…	…	86.0	46.5	120	137
74	99.0	39.0	…	66.0	47.5	…	…	85.0	46.0	118	135
73	98.5	37.5	84.5	65.5	46.5	…	…	84.5	45.5	116	132
72	98.0	36.0	84.0	65.0	45.5	…	…	83.5	45.0	114	130
71	97.5	34.5	…	64.0	44.5	100	…	82.5	44.5	112	127
70	97.0	32.5	83.5	63.5	43.5	99.5	…	81.5	44.0	110	125
69	96.0	31.0	83.0	62.5	42.5	99.0	…	81.0	43.5	109	123
68	95.5	29.5	…	62.0	41.5	98.0	…	80.0	43.0	107	121
67	95.0	28.0	82.5	61.5	40.5	97.5	…	79.0	42.5	106	119
66	94.5	26.5	82.0	60.5	39.5	97.0	…	78.0	42.0	104	117
65	94.0	25.0	…	60.0	38.5	96.0	…	77.5	…	102	116
64	93.5	23.5	81.5	59.5	37.5	95.5	…	76.5	41.5	101	114
63	93.0	22.0	81.0	58.5	36.5	95.0	…	75.5	41.0	99	112
62	92.0	20.5	…	58.0	35.5	94.5	…	74.5	40.5	98	110
61	91.5	19.0	80.5	57.0	34.5	93.5	…	74.0	40.0	96	108
60	91.0	17.5	…	56.5	33.5	93.0	…	73.0	39.5	95	107
59	90.5	16.0	80.0	56.0	32.0	92.5	…	72.0	39.0	94	106
58	90.0	14.5	79.5	55.0	31.0	92.0	…	71.0	38.5	92	104
57	89.5	13.0	…	54.5	30.0	91.0	…	70.5	38.0	91	103
56	89.0	11.5	79.0	54.0	29.0	90.5	…	69.5	…	90	101
55	88.0	10.0	78.5	53.0	28.0	90.0	…	68.5	37.5	89	100
54	87.5	8.5	…	52.5	27.0	89.5	…	68.0	37.0	87	…
53	87.0	7.0	78.0	51.5	26.0	89.0	…	67.0	36.5	86	…
52	86.5	5.5	77.5	51.0	25.0	88.0	…	66.0	36.0	85	…
51	86.0	4.0	…	50.5	24.0	87.5	…	65.0	35.5	84	…
50	85.5	2.5	77.0	49.5	23.0	87.0	…	64.5	35.0	83	…
49	85.0	1.0	76.5	49.0	22.0	86.5	…	63.5	…	82	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

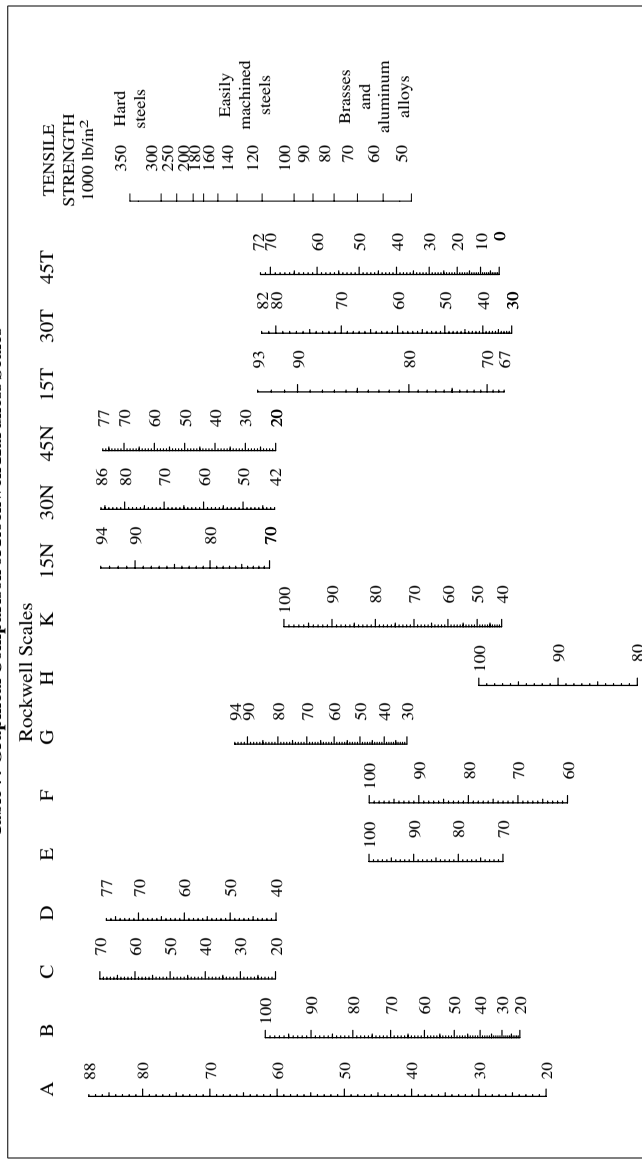
Table 6. *(Continued)* **Comparative Hardness Scales for Unhardened Steel, Soft-Temper Steel, Gray and Malleable Cast Iron, and Nonferrous Alloys**

Rockwell Hardness Number			Rockwell Superficial Hardness Number			Rockwell Hardness Number				Brinell Hardness Number	
1/16″ Ball Indenter			1/16″ Ball Indenter			1/8″ Ball Indenter			"Brale" Indenter	10-mm Standard Ball	
B scale 100-kg Load	F scale 60-kg Load	G scale 150-kg Load	15-T scale 15-kg Load	30-T scale 30-kg Load	45-T scale 45-kg Load	E scale 100-kg Load	H scale 60-kg Load	K scale 150-kg Load	A scale 60-kg Load	500-kg Load	3000-kg Load
48	84.5	…	…	48.5	20.5	85.5	…	62.5	34.5	81	…
47	84.0	…	76.0	47.5	19.5	85.0	…	61.5	34.0	80	…
46	83.0	…	75.5	47.0	18.5	84.5	…	61.0	33.5	…	…
45	82.5	…	…	46.0	17.5	84.0	…	60.0	33.0	79	…
44	82.0	…	75.0	45.5	16.5	83.5	…	59.0	32.5	78	…
43	81.5	…	74.5	45.0	15.5	82.5	…	58.0	32.0	77	…
42	81.0	…	…	44.0	14.5	82.0	…	57.5	31.5	76	…
41	80.5	…	74.0	43.5	13.5	81.5	…	56.5	31.0	75	…
40	79.5	…	73.5	43.0	12.5	81.0	…	55.5	…	…	…
39	79.0	…	…	42.0	11.0	80.0	…	54.5	30.5	74	…
38	78.5	…	73.0	41.5	10.0	79.5	…	54.0	30.0	73	…
37	78.0	…	72.5	40.5	9.0	79.0	…	53.0	29.5	72	…
36	77.5	…	…	40.0	8.0	78.5	100	52.0	29.0	…	…
35	77.0	…	72.0	39.5	7.0	78.0	99.5	51.5	28.5	71	…
34	76.5	…	71.5	38.5	6.0	77.0	99.0	50.5	28.0	70	…
33	75.5	…	…	38.0	5.0	76.5	…	49.5	…	69	…
32	75.0	…	71.0	37.5	4.0	76.0	98.5	48.5	27.5	…	…
31	74.5	…	…	36.5	3.0	75.5	98.0	48.0	27.0	68	…
30	74.0	…	70.5	36.0	2.0	75.0	…	47.0	26.5	67	…
29	73.5	…	70.0	35.5	1.0	74.0	97.5	46.0	26.0	…	…
28	73.0	…	…	34.5	…	73.5	97.0	45.0	25.5	66	…
27	72.5	…	69.5	34.0	…	73.0	96.5	44.5	25.0	…	…
26	72.0	…	69.0	33.0	…	72.5	…	43.5	24.5	65	…
25	71.0	…	…	32.5	…	72.0	96.0	42.5	…	64	…
24	70.5	…	68.5	32.0	…	71.0	95.5	41.5	24.0	…	…
23	70.0	…	68.0	31.0	…	70.5	…	41.0	23.5	63	…
22	69.5	…	…	30.5	…	70.0	95.0	40.0	23.0	…	…
21	69.0	…	67.5	29.5	…	69.5	94.5	39.0	22.5	62	…
20	68.5	…	…	29.0	…	68.5	…	38.0	22.0	…	…
19	68.0	…	67.0	28.5	…	68.0	94.0	37.5	21.5	61	…
18	67.0	…	66.5	27.5	…	67.5	93.5	36.5	…	…	…
17	66.5	…	…	27.0	…	67.0	93.0	35.5	21.0	60	…
16	66.0	…	66.0	26.0	…	66.5	…	35.0	20.5	…	…
15	65.5	…	65.5	25.5	…	65.5	92.5	34.0	20.0	59	…
14	65.0	…	…	25.0	…	65.0	92.0	33.0	…	…	…
13	64.5	…	65.0	24.0	…	64.5	…	32.0	…	58	…
12	64.0	…	64.5	23.5	…	64.0	91.5	31.5	…	…	…
11	63.5	…	…	23.0	…	63.5	91.0	30.5	…	…	…
10	63.0	…	64.0	22.0	…	62.5	90.5	29.5	…	57	…
9	62.0	…	…	21.5	…	62.0	…	29.0	…	…	…
8	61.5	…	63.5	20.5	…	61.5	90.0	28.0	…	…	…
7	61.0	…	63.0	20.0	…	61.0	89.5	27.0	…	56	…
6	60.5	…	…	19.5	…	60.5	…	26.0	…	…	…
5	60.0	…	62.5	18.5	…	60.0	89.0	25.5	…	55	…
4	59.5	…	62.0	18.0	…	59.0	88.5	24.5	…	…	…
3	59.0	…	…	17.0	…	58.5	88.0	23.5	…	…	…
2	58.0	…	61.5	16.5	…	58.0	…	23.0	…	54	…
1	57.5	…	61.0	16.0	…	57.5	87.5	22.0	…	…	…
0	57.0	…	…	15.0	…	57.0	87.0	21.0	…	53	…

Not applicable to annealed metals of high Rockwell B scale hardness, such as austenitic stainless steels, nickel and high-nickel alloys, nor to cold-worked metals of low Rockwell B scale hardness, such as aluminum and the softer alloys. (Compiled by Wilson Mechanical Instrument Co.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Graphical Comparison of Rockwell Hardness Scales



Source: George Dorian of GPDorian Co. *Note:* This chart is for the general comparison of Rockwell scales only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

NONFERROUS ALLOYS

Strength Data for Nonferrous Metals

The ultimate tensile, shear, and yield strengths and moduli of elasticity of many nonferrous metals are given in Table 1. Values for the most part are given in ranges rather than as single values because of differences in composition, forms, sizes, and shapes for the aluminum alloys, and differences in heat treatments undergone for the other nonferrous metals. The values in the table are meant to serve as a guide, not as specifications. More specific data should be obtained from the supplier.

Table 1. Strength Data for Nonferrous Metals

Material	Ultimate Strength				Yield Strength (0.2% offset)		Modulus of Elasticity			
	in Tension		in Shear				in Tension, E		in Shear, G	
	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	kpsi	MPa	10^6 psi	10^3 MPa	10^6 psi	10^3 MPa
Aluminum alloys, cast,										
sand-cast	19–35	131–241	14 –26	97–179	8–25	55–172	10.3	71	…	…
heat-treated	20–48	138–331	20 t–34	138–234	16–40	110–276	10.3	71	…	…
permanent-mold-cast,	23–35	159–241	16 – 27	110–186	9–24	62–165	10.3	71	…	…
heat-treated	23–48	159–331	15–36	103–248	8.5–43	59–296	10.3	71	…	…
die-cast	30–46	207–317	19 –29	131–200	16–27	110–186	10.3	71	…	…
Aluminum alloys, wrought,										
annealed	10–42	69–290	7– 26	48–179	4–22	28–152	10.0–10.6	68.9–73	…	…
cold-worked	12–63	83–434	8– 34	55–234	11–59	76–407	10.0–10.3	68.9–71	…	…
heat-treated	22–83	152–572	14– 48	97–331	13–73	90–503	10.0–11.4	68.9–78.6	…	…
Aluminum bronze, cast,	62–90	428–621	…	…	25–37	172–255	15–18	103.4–124.1	…	…
heat-treated	80–110	552–758	…	…	32–65	221–448	15–18	103.4–124.1	…	…
Aluminum bronze, wrought,										
annealed	55 –80	379–552	…	…	20–40	138–276	16–19	110.3–131	…	…
cold-worked	71–110	490–758	…	…	62–66	427–455	16–19	110.3–131	…	…
heat-treated	101–151	696–1041	…	…	48–94	331–648	16–19	110.3–131	…	…
Brasses, leaded, cast,	32 –40	221–276	29– 31	200–214	12–15	83–103	12–14	82.7–96.5	…	…
flat products, wrought	46–85	317–586	31– 45	214–310	14–62	97–427	14–17	96.5–117.2	5.3–6.4	36.5–44.1
wire, wrought	50–88	345–607	34–46	234–317	…	…	15	103.4	5.6	38.6
Brasses, nonleaded,										
flat products, wrought	34–99	234–683	28–48	193–331	10–65	69–448	15–17	103.4–117.2	5.6–6.4	38.6–44.1
wire, wrought	40–130	276–896	29–60	200–414	…	…	15–17	103.4–117.2	5.6–6.4	38.6–44.1
Copper, wrought,										
flat products	32–57	221–393	22–29	152–200	10–53	69–365	17	117.2	6.4	44.1
wire	35–66	241–455	24–33	165–228	…	…	17	117.2	6.4	44.1
Inconel, cast,	70–95	483–655	…	…	30–45	207–310	23	158.6	…	…
flat products, wrought	80–170	552–1172	…	…	30–160	207–1103	31	213.7	11	75.8
wire, wrought	80–185	552–1276	…	…	25–175	172–1207	31	213.7	11	75.8
Lead	2.2–4.9	15–34	…	…	…	…	0.8–2.0	5.5–13.8	…	…
Magnesium, cast,										
sand & permanent mold	22–40	152–276	17–22	117–152	12–23	83–159	6.5	44.8	2.4	16.5
die-cast	33	228	20	138	22	152	6.5	44.8	2.4	16.5
Magnesium, wrought,										
sheet and plate	35–42	241–290	21–23	145–159	20–32	138–221	6.5	44.8	2.4	16.5
bars, rods, and shapes	37–55	255–379	19–27	131–186	26–44	179–303	6.5	44.8	2.4	16.5
Monel, cast,	65– 90	448–621	…	…	32–40	221–276	19	131	…	…
flat products, wrought	70–140	483–965	…	…	25–130	172–896	26	179.3	9.5	65.5
wire, wrought	70–170	483–1172	…	…	25–160	172–1103	26	179.3	9.5	65.5
Nickel, cast,	45–60	310–414	…	…	20–30	138–207	21.5	148.2	…	…
flat products, wrought	55–130	379–896	…	…	15–115	103–793	30	206.8	11	75.8
wire, wrought	50–165	345–1138	…	…	10–155	69–1069	30	206.8	11	75.8
Nickel silver, cast,	40–50	276–345	…	…	24–25	165–172	…	…	…	…
flat products, wrought	49–115	338–793	41–59	283–407	18–90	124–621	17.5–18	120.7–124.1	6.6–6.8	45.5–46.9
wire, wrought	50–145	345–1000	…	…	25–90	172–621	17.5–18	120.7–124.1	6.6–6.8	45.5–46.9
Phosphor bronze, wrought,										
flat products	40–128	276–883	…	…	14–80	97–552	15–17	103.4–117.2	5.6–6.4	38.6–44.1
wire	50–147	345–1014	…	…	20–80	138–552	16–17	110.3–117.2	6–6.4	41.4–44.1
Silicon bronze, wrought,										
flat products	56–110	386–758	42–63	290–434	21–62	145–427	15	103.4	5.6	38.6
wire	50–145	345–1000	36– 70	248–483	25–70	172–483	15–17	103.4–117.2	5.6–6.4	38.6–44.1
Tin bronze, leaded, cast	21–38	145–262	23 –43	159–296	15–18	103–124	10–14.5	68.9–100	…	…
Titanium	50–135	345–931	…	…	40–120	276–827	15.0–16.5	103.4–113.8	…	…
Zinc, commercial rolled	19.5–31	134–214	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Zirconium	22 –83	152–572	…	…	…	…	9–14.5	62.1–100	4.8	33.1

Consult the index for data on metals not listed and for more data on metals listed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coppers and Copper Alloys

Pure copper is a reddish, highly malleable metal, and was one of the first to be found and utilized. Copper and its alloys are widely used because of their excellent electrical and thermal conductivities, outstanding resistance to corrosion, ease of fabrication, and broad ranges of obtainable strengths and special properties. Almost 400 commercial copper and copper-alloy compositions are available from mills as wrought products (rod, plate, sheet, strip, tube, pipe, extrusions, foil, forgings, and wire) and from foundries as castings.

Copper alloys are grouped into several general categories according to composition:

coppers and high-copper alloys
brasses
bronzes
copper nickels
copper-nickel-zinc alloys (nickel silvers)
leaded coppers
special alloys

The designation system originally developed by the US copper and brass industry for identifying copper alloys used a three-digit number preceded by the letters CA. These designations have now been made part of the Unified Numbering System (UNS) simply by expanding the numbers to five digits preceded by the letter C. Because the old numbers are embedded in the new UNS numbers, no confusion results. UNS C10000 to C79999 are assigned to wrought compositions, and UNS C80000 to C99999 are assigned to castings. The designation system is not a specification but a method for identifying the composition of mill and foundry products. The precise technical and quality assurance requirements to be satisfied are defined in relevant standard specifications issued by the federal government, the military, and the ASTM.

Table 1. Classification of Coppers and Copper Alloys

Family	Principal Alloying Element	UNS Numbers[a]
Coppers, high-copper alloys		C1xxxx
Brasses	Zn	C2xxxx, C3xxxx, C4xxxx, C66400 to C69800
Phosphor bronzes	Sn	C5xxxx
Aluminum bronzes	Al	C60600 to C64200
Silicon bronzes	Si	C64700 to C66100
Copper nickels, nickel silvers	Ni	C7xxxx

[a] Wrought alloys.

Cast Coppers and Copper Alloys.—Generally, casting permits greater latitude in the use of alloying elements than in the fabrication of wrought products, which requires either hot or cold-working. The cast compositions of coppers and high-copper alloys have a designated minimum copper content and may include other elements to impart special properties. The cast brasses are comprised of copper-zinc-tin alloys (red, semired, and yellow brasses); manganese bronze alloys (high-strength yellow brasses); leaded manganese bronze alloys (leaded high-strength yellow brasses); and copper-zinc-silicon alloys (silicon brasses and bronzes).

The cast bronze alloys have four main families: copper-tin alloys (tin bronzes); copper-tin-lead alloys (leaded and high-leaded tin bronzes); copper-tin-nickel alloys (nickel-tin bronzes); and copper-aluminum alloys (aluminum bronzes).

The cast copper-nickel alloys contain nickel as the principal alloying element. The leaded coppers are cast alloys containing 20 percent or more lead.

Table 2 lists the properties and applications of common cast copper alloys.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Properties and Applications of Cast Coppers and Copper Alloys

UNS Designation	Nominal Composition (%)	Typical Mechanical Properties, as Cast or Heat-Treated[a]				Typical Applications
		Tensile Strength (ksi)	Yield Strength (ksi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[b]	
Copper Alloys						
C80100	99.95 Cu + Ag min, 0.05 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation-resisant applications.
C80300	99.95 Cu + Ag min, 0.034 Ag min, 0.05 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation-resistant applications.
C80500	99.75 Cu + Ag min, 0.034 Ag min, 0.02 B max, 0.23 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation-resistant applications.
C80700	99.75 Cu + Ag min, 0.02 B max, 0.23 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation-resistant applications.
C80900	99.70 Cu + Ag min, 0.034 Ag min, 0.30 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation-resistant applications.
C81100	99.70 Cu + Ag min, 0.30 others max	25	9	40	10	Electrical and thermal conductors; corrosion and oxidation resstant applications.
High-Copper Alloys						
C81300	98.5 Cu min, 0.06 Be, 0.80 Co, 0.40 others max	(53)	(36)	(11)	20	Higher hardness electrical and thermal conductors.
C81400	98.5 Cu min, 0.06 Be, 0.80 Cr, 0.40 others max	(53)	(36)	(11)	20	Higher hardness electrical and thermal conductors.
C81500	98.0 Cu min, 1.0 Cr, 0.50 others max	(51)	(40)	(17)	20	Electrical and/or thermal conductors used as structural members where strength and hardness greater than that of C80100-81100 are required.
C81700	94.2 Cu min, 1.0 Ag, 0.4 Be, 0.9 Co, 0.9 Ni	(92)	(68)	(8)	30	Electrical and/or thermal conductors used as structural members where strength and hardness greater than that of C80100-81100 are required. Also used in place of C81500 where electrical and/or thermal conductivities can be sacrificed for hardness and strength.
C81800	95.6 Cu min, 1.0 Ag, 0.4 Be, 1.6 Co	50 (102)	25 (75)	20 (8)	20	Resistance-welding electrodes, dies.
C82000	96.8 Cu, 0.6 Be, 2.6 Co	50 (100)	20 (75)	20 (8)	20	Current-carrying parts, contact and switch blades, bushings and bearings, and soldering iron and resistance-welding tips.
C82100	97.7 Cu, 0.5 Be, 0.9 Co, 0.9 Ni	(92)	(68)	(8)	30	Electrical and/or thermal conductors used as structural members where strength and hardness greater than that of C80100-81100 are required. Also used in place of C81500 where electrical and/or thermal conductivities can be sacrificed for hardness and strength.
C82200	96.5 Cu min, 0.6 Be, 1.5 Ni	57 (95)	30 (75)	20 (8)	20	Clutch rings, brake drums, seam-welder electrodes, projection welding dies, spot-welding tips, beam-welder shapes, bushings, water-cooled holders.
C82400	96.4 Cu min, 1.70 Be, 0.25 Co	72 (150)	37 (140)	20 (1)	20	Safety tools, molds for plastic parts, cams, bushings, bearings, valves, pump parts, gears.
C82500	97.2 Cu, 2.0 Be, 0.5 Co, 0.25 Si	80 (160)	45	20 (1)	20	Safety tools, molds for plastic parts, cams, bushings, bearings, valves, pump parts.
C82600	95.2 Cu min, 2.3 Be, 0.5 Co, 0.25 Si	82 (165)	47 (155)	20 (1)	20	Bearings and molds for plastic parts.
C82700	96.3 Cu, 2.45 Be, 1.25 Ni	(155)	(130)	(0)	20	Bearings and molds for plastic parts.
C82800	96.6 Cu, 2.6 Be, 0.5 Co, 0.25 Si	97 (165)	55 (145)	20 (1)	10	Molds for plastic parts, cams, bushings, bearings, valves, pump parts, sleeves.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Cast Coppers and Copper Alloys**

UNS Designation	Nominal Composition (%)	Typical Mechanical Properties, as Cast or Heat-Treated[a]				Typical Applications
		Tensile Strength (ksi)	Yield Strength (ksi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[b]	
Red Brasses and Leaded Red Brasses						
C83300	93 Cu, 1.5 Sn, 1.5 Pb, 4 Zn	32	10	35	35	Terminal ends for electrical cables.
C83400	90 Cu, 10 Zn	35	10	30	60	Moderate strength, moderate conductivity castings; rotating bands.
C83600	85 Cu, 5 Sn, 5 Pb, 5 Zn	37	17	30	84	Valves, flanges, pipe fittings, plumbing goods, pump castings, water pump impellers and housings, ornamental fixtures, small gears.
C83800	83 Cu, 4 Sn, 6 Pb, 7 Zn	35	16	25	90	Low-pressure valves and fittings, plumbing supplies and fittings, general hardware, air-gas-water fittings, pump components, railroad catenary fittings.
Semired Brasses and Leaded Semired Brasses						
C84200	80 Cu, 5 Sn, 2.5 Pb, 12.5 Zn	35	14	27	80	Pipe fittings, elbows, T's, couplings, bushings, locknuts, plugs, unions.
C84400	81 Cu, 3 Sn, 7 Pb, 9 Zn	34	15	26	90	General hardware, ornamental castings, plumbing supplies and fixtures, low-pressure valves and fittings.
C84500	78 Cu, 3 Sn, 7 Pb, 12 Zn	35	14	28	90	Plumbing fixtures, cocks, faucets, stops, waste, air and gas fittings, low-pressure valve fittings.
C84800	76 Cu, 3 Sn, 6 Pb, 15 Zn	36	14	30	90	Plumbing fixtures, cocks, faucets, stops, waste, air, and gas, general hardware, and low-pressure valve fittings.
Yellow Brasses and Leaded Yellow Brasses						
C85200	72 Cu, 1 Sn, 3 Pb, 24 Zn	38	13	35	80	Plumbing fittings and fixtures, ferrules, valves, hardware, ornamental brass, chandeliers, and-irons.
C85400	67 Cu, 1 Sn, 3 Pb, 29 Zn	34	12	35	80	General-purpose yellow casting alloy not subject to high internal pressure. Furniture hardware, ornamental castings, radiator fittings, ship trimmings, battery clamps, valves, and fittings.
C85500	61 Cu, 0.8 Al, bal Zn	60	23	40	80	Ornamental castings.
C85700	63 Cu, 1 Sn, 1 Pb, 34.7 Zn, 0.3 Al	50	18	40	80	Bushings, hardware fittings, ornamental castings.
C85800	58 Cu, 1 Sn, 1 Pb, 40 Zn	55	30	15	80	General-purpose die-casting alloy having moderate strength.
Manganese and Leaded Manganese Bronze Alloys						
C86100	67 Cu, 21 Zn, 3 Fe, 5 Al, 4 Mn	95	50	20	30	Marine castings, gears, gun mounts, bushings and bearings, marine racing propellers.
C86200	64 Cu, 26 Zn, 3 Fe, 4 Al, 3 Mn	95	48	20	30	Marine castings, gears, gun mounts, bushings and bearings.
C86300	63 Cu, 25 Zn, 3 Fe, 6 Al, 3 Mn	115	83	15	8	Extra-heavy duty, high-strength alloy. Large valve stems, gears, cams, slow-speed heavy-load bearings, screwdown nuts, hydraulic cylinderparts.
C86400	59 Cu, 1 Pb, 40 Zn	65	25	20	65	Free-machining manganese bronze. Valve stems, marine fittings, lever arms, brackets, light-duty gears.
C86500	58 Cu, 0.5 Sn, 39.5 Zn, 1 Fe, 1 Al	71	28	30	26	Machinery parts requiring strength and toughness, lever arms, valve stems, gears.
C86700	58 Cu, 1 Pb, 41 Zn	85	42	20	55	High strength, free-machining manganese bronze. Valve stems.
C86800	55 Cu, 37 Zn, 3 Ni, 2 Fe, 3 Mn	82	38	22	30	Marine fittings, marine propellers.
Silicon Bronzes and Silicon Brasses						
C87200	89 Cu min, 4 Si	55	25	30	40	Bearings, bells, impellers, pump and valve components, marine fittings, corrosion-resistant castings.
C87400	83 Cu, 14 Zn, 3 Si	55	24	30	50	Bearings, gears, impellers, rocker arms, valve stems, clamps.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Cast Coppers and Copper Alloys**

UNS Designation	Nominal Composition (%)	Typical Mechanical Properties, as Cast or Heat-Treated[a]				Typical Applications
		Tensile Strength (ksi)	Yield Strength (ksi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[b]	
C87500	82 Cu, 14 Zn, 4 Si	67	30	21	50	Bearings, gears, impellers, rocker arms, valve stems, small boat propellers.
C87600	90 Cu, 5.5 Zn, 4.5 Si	66	32	20	40	Valve stems.
C87800	82 Cu, 14 Zn, 4 Si	85	50	25	40	High-strength, thin-wall die castings; brush holders, lever arms, brackets, clamps, hexagonal nuts.
C87900	65 Cu, 34 Zn, 1 Si	70	35	25	80	General-purpose die-casting alloy having moderate strength.
	Tin Bronzes					
C90200	93 Cu, 7 Sn	38	16	30	20	Bearings and bushings.
C90300	88 Cu, 8 Sn, 4 Zn	45	21	30	30	Bearings, bushings, pump impellers, piston rings, valve components, seal rings, steam fittings, gears.
C90500	88 Cu, 10 Sn, 2 Zn	45	22	25	30	Bearings, bushings, pump impellers, piston rings, valve components, steam fittings, gears.
C90700	89 Cu, 11 Sn	44 (55)	22 (30)	20 (16)	20	Gears, bearings, bushings.
C90900	87 Cu, 13 Sn	40	20	15	20	Bearings and bushings.
C91000	85 Cu, 14 Sn, 1 Zn	32	25	2	20	Piston rings and bearings.
C91100	84 Cu, 16 Sn	35	25	2	10	Piston rings, bearings, bushings, bridge plates.
C91300	81 Cu, 19 Sn	35	30	0.5	10	Piston rings, bearings, bushings, bridge plates, bells.
C91600	88 Cu, 10.5 Sn, 1.5 Ni	44 (60)	22 (32)	16 (16)	20	Gears.
C91700	86.5 Cu, 12 Sn, 1.5 Ni	44 (60)	22 (32)	16 (16)	20	Gears.
	Leaded Tin Bronzes					
C92200	88 Cu, 6 Sn, 1.5 Pb, 4.5 Zn	40	20	30	42	Valves, fittings, and pressure-containing parts for use up to 550°F.
C92300	87 Cu, 8 Sn, 4 Zn	40	20	25	42	Valves, pipe fittings, and high-pressure steam castings. Superior machinability to C90300.
C92500	87 Cu, 11 Sn, 1 Pb, 1 Ni	44	20	20	30	Gears, automotive synchronizer rings.
C92600	87 Cu, 10 Sn, 1 Pb, 2 Zn	44	20	30	40	Bearings, bushings, pump impellers, piston rings, valve components, steam fittings, and gears. Superior machinability to C90500.
C92700	88 Cu, 10 Sn, 2 Pb	42	21	20	45	Bearings, bushings, pump impellers, piston rings, and gears. Superior machinability to C90500.
C92800	79 Cu, 16 Sn, 5 Pb	40	30	1	70	Piston rings.
C92900	82 Cu min, 9 Sn min, 2 Pb min, 2.8 Ni min	47 (47)	26 (26)	20 (20)	40	Gears, wear plates, guides, cams, parts requiring machinability superior to that of C91600 or 91700.
	High-Leaded Tin Bronzes					
C93200	83 Cu, 6.3 Sn min, 7 Pb, 3 Zn	35	18	20	70	General-utility bearings and bushings.
C93400	84 Cu, 8 Sn, 8 Pb	32	16	20	70	Bearings and bushings.
C93500	85 Cu, 5 Sn, 9 Pb	32	16	20	70	Small bearings and bushings, bronze backing for babbit-lined automotive bearings.
C93700	80 Cu, 10 Sn, 10 Pb	35	18	20	80	Bearings for high speed and heavy pressures, pumps, impellers, corrosion-resistant applications, pressure-tight castings.
C93800	78 Cu, 7 Sn, 15 Pb	30	16	18	80	Bearings for general service and moderate pressure, pump impellers, and bodies for use in acid mine water.
C93900	79 Cu, 6 Sn, 15 Pb	32	22	7	80	Continuous castings only. Bearings for general service, pump bodies, and impellers for mine waters.
C94300	70 Cu, 5 Sn, 25 Pb	27	13	15	80	High-speed bearings for light loads.
C94400	81 Cu, 8 Sn, 11 Pb, 0.35 P	32	16	18	80	General-utility alloy for bushings and bearings.
C94500	73 Cu, 7 Sn, 20 Pb	25	12	12	80	Locomotive wearing parts; high-low, low-speed bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Cast Coppers and Copper Alloys**

UNS Designation	Nominal Composition (%)	Typical Mechanical Properties, as Cast or Heat-Treated[a]				Typical Applications
		Tensile Strength (ksi)	Yield Strength (ksi)	Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[b]	
Nickel-Tin Bronzes						
C94700	88 Cu, 5 Sn, 2 Zn, 5 Ni	50 (85)	23 (60)	35 (10)	30 (20)	Valve stems and bodies, bearings, wear guides, shift forks, feeding mechanisms, circuit breaker parts, gears, piston cylinders, nozzles.
C94800	87 Cu, 5 Sn, 5 Ni	45 (60)	23 (30)	35 (8)	50 (40)	Structural castings, gear components, motion-translation devices, machinery parts, bearings.
Aluminum Bronzes						
C95200	88 Cu, 3 Fe, 9 Al	80	27	35	50	Acid-resisting pumps, bearings, gears, valve seats, guides, plungers, pump rods, bushings.
C95300	89 Cu, 1 Fe, 10 Al	75 (85)	27 (42)	25 (15)	55	Pickling baskets, nuts, gears, steel-mill slippers, marine equipment, welding jaws.
C95400	85 Cu, 4 Fe, 11 Al	85 (105)	35 (54)	18 (8)	60	Bearings, gears, worms, bushings, valve seats and guides, pickling hooks.
C95500	81 Cu, 4 Ni, 4 Fe, 11 Al	100 (120)	44 (68)	12 (10)	50	Valve guides and seats in aircraft engines, corrosion-resistant parts, bushings, gears, worms, pickling hooks and baskets, agitators.
C95600	91 Cu, 7 Al, 2 Si	75	34	18	60	Cable connectors, terminals, valve stems, marine hardware, gears, worms, pole-line hardware.
C95700	75 Cu, 2 Ni, 3 Fe, 8 Al, 12 Mn	95	45	26	50	Propellers, impellers, stator clamp segments, safety tools, welding rods, valves, pump casings.
C95800	81 Cu, 5 Ni, 4 Fe, 9 Al, 1 Mn	95	38	25	50	Propeller hubs, blades, and other parts in contact with salt water.
Copper-Nickels						
C96200	88.6 Cu, 10 Ni, 1.4 Fe	45 min	25 min	20 min	10	Components of items being used for seawater corrosion resistance.
C96300	79.3 Cu, 20 Ni, 0.7 Fe	75 min	55 min	10 min	15	Centrifugally cast tailshaft sleeves.
C96400	69.1 Cu, 30 Ni, 0.9 Fe	68	37	28	20	Valves, pump bodies, flanges, elbows used for seawater corrosion resistance.
C96600	68.5 Cu, 30 Ni, 1 Fe, 0.5 Be	(110)	(70)	(7)	20	High-strength constructional parts for seawater corrosion resistance.
Nickel Silvers						
C97300	56 Cu, 2 Sn, 10 Pb, 12 Ni, 20 Zn	35	17	20	70	Hardware fittings, valves and valve trim, statuary, ornamental castings.
C97400	59 Cu, 3 Sn, 5 Pb, 17 Ni, 16 Zn	38	17	20	60	Valves, hardware, fittings, ornamental castings.
C97600	64 Cu, 4 Sn, 4 Pb, 20 Ni, 8 Zn	45	24	20	70	Marine castings, sanitary fittings, ornamental hardware, valves, pumps.
C97800	66 Cu, 5 Sn, 2 Pb, 25 Ni, 2 Zn	55	30	15	60	Ornamental and sanitary castings, valves and valve seats, musical instrument components.
Special Alloys						
C99300	71.8 Cu, 15 Ni, 0.7 Fe, 11 Al, 1.5 Co	95	55	2	20	Glass-making molds, plate glass rolls, marine hardware.
C99400	90.4 Cu, 2.2 Ni, 2.0 Fe, 1.2 Al, 1.2 Si, 3.0 Zn	66 (79)	34 (54)	25	50	Valve stems, marine and other uses requiring resistance to dezincification and dealuminification, propeller wheels, electrical parts, mining equipment gears.
C99500	87.9 Cu, 4.5 Ni, 4.0 Fe, 1.2 Al, 1.2 Si, 1.2 Zn	70 min	40 min	12 min	50	Same as C99400, but where higher yield strength is required.
C99700	56.5 Cu, Al, 1.5 Pb, 12 Mn, 5 Ni, 24 Zn	55	25	25	80	
C99750	58 Cu, 1 Al, 1 Pb, 20 Mn, 20 Zn	65 (75)	32 (40)	30 (20)		

[a] Values in parentheses are for heat-treated condition.
[b] Free cutting brass = 100.

Source: Copper Development Association, New York.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys.—Wrought copper alloys can be utilized in the annealed, cold-worked, stress-relieved, or hardened-by-heat-treatment conditions, depending on composition and end use. The "temper designation" for copper alloys is defined in ASTM Standard Recommended Practice B601, which is applicable to all product forms.

Wrought coppers and high-copper alloys, like cast alloys, have a designated minimum copper content and may include other elements to impart special properties. Wrought brasses have zinc as the principal alloying element and may have other designated elements. They comprise the copper-zinc alloys; copper-zinc-lead alloys (leaded brasses); and copper-zinc-tin alloys (tin brasses).

Four main groups comprise the wrought bronzes; copper-tin-phosphorus alloys (phosphor bronze); copper-tin-lead-phosphorus alloys (leaded phosphor bronze); copper-aluminum alloys (aluminum bronzes); and copper-silicon alloys (silicon bronze).

Wrought copper-nickel alloys, like the cast alloys, have nickel as the principal alloying element. The wrought copper-nickel-zinc alloys are known as "nickel silvers" because of their color.

Table 3 lists the nominal composition, properties, and applications of common wrought copper alloys.

Table 3. Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C10100 Oxygen-free electronic	99.99 Cu	32 -66	10 -53	55	20	Excellent hot and cold workability; good forgeability. Fabricated by blanking, coining, coppersmithing, drawing and upsetting, hot forging and pressing, spinning, swaging, stamping. Uses: busbars, bus conductors, waveguides, hollow conductors, lead-in wires and anodes for vacuum tubes, vacuum seals, transistor components, glass to metal seals, coaxial cables and tubes, klystrons, microwave tubes, rectifiers.
C10200 Oxygen-free copper	99.95 Cu	32-66	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: busbars, waveguides.
C10300 Oxygen-free, extra-low phosphorus	99.95 Cu, 0.003 P	32-55	10-50	50	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: busbars, electrical conductors, tubular bus, and applications requiring good conductivity and welding or brazing properties.
C10400, C10500, C10700 Oxygen-free, silver-bearing	99.95 Cu	32-66	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: auto gaskets, radiators, busbars, conductivity wire, contacts, radio parts, winding, switches, terminals, commutator segments; chemical process equipment, printing rolls, clad metals, printed-circuit foil.
C10800 Oxygen-free, low phosphorus	99.95 Cu, 0.009 P	32-55	10-50	50	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: refrigerators, air conditioners, gas and heater lines, oil burner tubes, plumbing pipe and tube, brewery tubes, condenser and heat-exchanger tubes, dairy and distiller tubes, pulp and paper lines, tanks; air, gasoline, and hydraulic lines.
C11000 Electrolytic tough pitch copper	99.90 Cu, 0.04 O	32-66	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: downspouts, gutters, roofing, gaskets, auto radiators, busbars, nails, printing rolls, rivets, radio parts.
C11000 Electrolytic tough pitch, anneal-resistant	99.90 Cu, 0.04 O, 0.01 Cd	66			20	Fabricated by drawing and stranding, stamping. Uses: electrical power transmission where resistance to softening under overloads is desired.
C11300, C11400, C11500, C11600 Silver-bearing tough pitch copper	99.90 Cu, 0.04 O, Ag	32-66	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: gaskets, radiators, busbars, windings, switches, chemical process equipment, clad metals, printed-circuit foil.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C12000, C12100 Phosphorus deoxidized, low residual phosphorus	99.9 Cu	32-57	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: busbars, electrical conductors, tubular bus, and applications requiring welding or brazing.
C12200, C12210 Phosphorus deoxidized copper, high residual phosphorus	99.90 Cu, 0.02 P	32-55	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: gas and heater lines; oil burner tubing; plumbing pipe and tubing; condenser, evaporator, heat exchanger, dairy, and distiller tubing; steam and water lines; air, gasoline, and hydraulic lines.
C12500, C12700, C12800, C12900, C13000 Fire-refined tough pitch with silver	99.88 Cu	32-66	10-53	55	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: same as C11000, electrolytic tough pitch copper.
C14200 Phosphorus deoxidized, arsenical	99.68 Cu, 0.3 As, 0.02 P	32-55	10-50	45	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: staybolts, heat-exchanger and condenser tubes.
C14300, C14310 Cadmium copper, deoxidized	99.9 Cu, 0.1 Cd	32-58	11-56	42	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: anneal-resistant electrical applications requiring thermal softening and embrittlement resistance, lead frames, contacts, terminals, solder-coated and solder-fabricated parts, furnace-brazed assemblies and welded components, cable wrap.
C14500, C14510, C14520 Tellurium bearing	99.5 Cu, 0.50 Te, 0.008 P	32-56	10-51	50	85	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: Forgings and screw-machine products, and parts requiring high conductivity, extensive machining, corrosion resistance, copper color, or a combination of these; electrical connectors, motor and switch parts, plumbing fittings, soldering coppers, welding torch tips, transistor bases, and furnace-brazed articles.
C14700, C14710, C14720 Sulfur bearing	99.6 Cu, 0.40 S	32-57	10-55	52	85	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: screw-machine products and parts requiring high conductivity, extensive machining, corrosion resistance, copper color, or a combination of these; electrical connectors, motor and switch components, plumbing fittings, cold-headed and machined parts, cold forgings, furnace-brazed articles, screws, soldering coppers, rivets and welding torch tips.
C15000 Zirconium copper	99.8 Cu, 0.15 Zr	29-76	6-72	54	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: switches, high-temperature circuit breakers, commutators, stud bases for power transmitters, rectifiers, soldering welding tips.
C15500	99.75 Cu, 0.06 P, 0.11 Mg, Ag	40-80	18-72	40	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: high-conductivity light-duty springs, electrical contacts, fittings, clamps, connectors, diahragms, electronic components, resistance-welding electrodes.
C15715	99.6 Cu, 0.13 Al_2O_3	52-88	44-84	27	20	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by extrusion, drawing, rolling, heading, swaging, machining, blanking, roll threading. Uses: integrated-circuit lead frames, diode leads; vacuum, microwave, and x-ray tube components; electrical components; brush springs; commutators, electric generator and motor components.
C15720	99.5 Cu, 0.18 Al_2O_3	64-98	54-96	25		Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by extrusion, drawing, rolling, heading, swaging, machining, blanking. Uses: relay and switch springs, lead frames, contact supports, heat sinks, circuit breaker parts, rotor bars, resistance-welding electrodes and wheels, connectors, soldering gun tips.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C15760	98.8 Cu, 0.58 Al_2O_3	70-90	65-87	22		Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by extrusion and drawing. Uses: resistance-welding electrodes, soldering gun tips, MIG welding contact tips, continuous-casting molds.
C16200, C16210 Cadmium copper	99.0 Cu, 1.0 Cd	35-100	7-69	57	20	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Uses: trolley wires, heating pads, electric-blanket elements, spring contacts, railbands, high-strength transmission lines, connectors, cable wrap, switch-gear components, and waveguide cavities.
C16500	98.6 Cu, 0.8 Cd, 0.6 Sn	40-95	14-71	53	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C16200. Uses: electrical springs and contacts, trolley wire, clips, flat cable, resistance-welding electrodes.
C17000 Beryllium copper	98.3 Cu, 1.7 Be, 0.20 Co	70-190	32-170	45	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C16200. Commonly fabricated by blanking, forming and bending, turning, drilling, tapping. Uses: bellows, Bourdon tubing, diaphragms, fuse clips, fasteners, lock-washers, springs, switch parts, roll pins, valves, welding equipment.
C17200 Beryllium copper	98.1 Cu, 1.9 Be, 0.20 Co	68-212	25-195	48	20	Similar to C17000, particularly for its nonsparking characteristics.
C17300 Beryllium copper	98.1 Cu, 1.9 Be, 0.40 Pb	68-212	25-195	48	50	Combines superior machinability with good fabricating characteristics of C17200.
C17500, C17510 Beryllium copper	96.9 Cu, 2.5 Co, 0.6 Be	45-115	25-110	28		Fabricating characteristics same as C16200. Uses: fuse clips, fasteners, springs, switch and relay parts, electrical conductors, welding equipment.
C18200, C18400, C18500 Chromium copper	99.2 Cu	34-86	14-77	40	20	Excellent cold workability, good hot workability. Uses: resistance-welding electrodes, seam-welding wheels, switch gear, electrode-holder jaws, cable connectors, current-carrying arms and shafts, circuit-breaker parts, molds, spot-welding tips, flash-welding electrodes, electrical and thermal conductors requiring strength, switch contacts.
C18700 Leaded copper	99.0 Cu, 1.0 Pb	32-55	10-50	45	85	Good cold workability; poor hot formability. Uses: connectors, motor and switch parts, screw-machine parts requiring high conductivity.
C18900	98.7 Cu, 0.8 Sn, 0.3 Si, 0.20 Mn	38-95	9-52	48	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: welding rod and wire for inert gas tungsten arc and metal arc welding, and oxyacetylene welding of copper.
C19000 Copper-nickel-phosphorus alloy	98.6 Cu, 1.1 Ni, 0.3 P	38-115	20-81	50	30	Fabricating characteristics same as C10100. Uses: springs, clips, electrical connectors, power tube and electron tube components, high-strength electrical conductors, bolts, nails, screws, cotter pins, and parts requiring some combination of high strength, high electrical or thermal conductivity, high resistance to fatigue and creep, and good workability.
C19100 Copper-nickel-phosphorus-tellurium alloy	98.2 Cu, 1.1 Ni, 0.5 Te, 0.2 P	36-104	10-92	27	75	Good hot and cold workability. Uses: forgings and screw-machine parts requiring high strength, hardenability, extensive machining, corrosion resistance, copper color, good conductivity, or a combination of these; bolts, bushings, electrical connectors, gears, marine hardware, nuts, pinions, tie rods, turnbuckle barrels, welding torch tips.
C19200	99 Cu, 1.0 Fe, 0.03 P	37-77	11-74	40	20	Excellent hot and cold workability. Uses: automotive hydraulic brake lines, flexible hose, electrical terminals, fuse clips, gaskets, gift hollow ware, applications requiring resistance to softening and stress corrosion, air-conditioning and heat-exchanger tubing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C19400	97.4 Cu, 2.4 Fe, 0.13 Zn, 0.04 P	45-76	24-73	32	20	Excellent hot and cold workability. Uses: circuit-breaker components, contact springs, electrical clamps, electrical springs, electrical terminals, flexible hose, fuse clips, gaskets, gift hollow ware, plug contacts, rivets, and welded condenser tubes.
C19500	97.0 Cu, 1.5 Fe, 0.6 Sn, 0.10 P, 0.80 Co	80-97	65-95	15	20	Excellent hot and cold workability. Uses: electrical springs, sockets, terminals, connectors, clips, and other current-carrying parts requiring strength.
C21000 Gilding, 95%	95.0 Cu, 5.0 Zn	34-64	10-58	45	20	Excellent cold workability, good hot workability for blanking, coining, drawing, piercing and punching, shearing, spinning, squeezing and swaging, stamping. Uses: coins, medals, bullet jackets, fuse caps, primers, plaques, jewelry base for gold plate.
C22000 Commercial bronze, 90%	90.0 Cu, 10.0 Zn	37-72	10-62	50	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C21000, plus heading and upsetting, roll threading and knurling, hot forging and pressing. Uses: etching bronze, grillwork, screen cloth, weatherstripping, lipstick cases, compacts, marine hardware, screws, rivets.
C22600 Jewelry bronze, 87.5%	87.5 Cu, 12.5 Zn	39-97	11-62	46	30	Fabricating characteristics same as C21000, plus heading and up-setting, roll threading and knurling. Uses: angles, channels, chain, fasteners, costume jewelry, lipstick cases, powder compacts, base for gold plate.
C23000 Red brass, 85%	85.0 Cu, 15.0 Zn	39-105	10-63	55	30	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Uses: weather-stripping, conduit, sockets, fasteners, fire extinguishers, condenser and heat-exchanger tubing, plumbing pipe, radiator cores.
C24000 Low brass, 80%	80.0 Cu, 20.0 Zn	42-125	12-65	55	30	Excellent cold workability. Fabricating characteristics same as C23000. Uses: battery caps, bellows, musical instruments, clock dials, pump lines, flexible hose.
C26000, C26100, C26130, C26200 Cartridge brass, 70%	70.0 Cu, 30.0 Zn	44 -130	11-65	66		Excellent cold workability. Uses: radiator cores and tanks, flashlight shells, lamp fixtures, fasteners, screws, springs, grillwork, stencils, plumbing accessories, plumbing brass goods, locks, hinges, ammunition components, plumbing accessories, pins, rivets.
C26800, C27000 Yellow brass	65.0 Cu, 35.0 Zn	46-128	14-62	65	30	Excellent cold workability. Fabricating characteristics same as C23000. Uses: same as C26000 except not used for ammunition.
C28000 Muntz metal, 60%	60.0 Cu, 40.0 Zn	54-74	21-55	52	40	Excellent hot formability and forgeability for blanking, forming and bending, hot forging and pressing, hot heading and upsetting, shearing. Uses: architectural, large nuts and bolts, brazing rod, condenser plates, heat-exchanger and condenser tubing, hot forgings.
C31400 Leaded commercial bronze	89.0 Cu, 1.9 Pb, 0.1 Zn	37-60	12-55	45	80	Excellent machinability. Uses: screws, machine parts, pickling crates.
C31600 Leaded commercial bronze, nickel-bearing	89.0 Cu, 1.9 Pb, 1.0 Ni, 8.1 Zn	37-67	12-59	45	80	Good cold workability; poor hot formability. Uses: electrical connectors, fasteners, hardware, nuts, screws, screw-machine parts.
C33000 Low-leaded brass tube	66.0 Cu, 0.5 Pb, 33.5 Zn	47-75	15-60	60	60	Combines good machinability and excellent cold workability. Fabricated by forming and bending, machining, piercing and punching. Uses: pump and power cylinders and liners, ammunition primers, plumbing accessories.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C33200 High-leaded brass tube	66.0 Cu, 2.0 Pb, 32.0 Zn	47-75	15-60	50	80	Excellent machinability. Fabricated by piercing, punching, and machining. Uses: general-purpose screw-machine parts.
C33500 Low-leaded brass	63.5 Cu, 0.5 Pb, 36 Zn	46-74	14-60	65	60	Similar to C33200. Commonly fabricated by blanking, drawing, machining, piercing and punching, stamping. Uses: butts, hinges, watch backs.
C34000 Medium-leaded brass	63.5 Cu, 1.0 Pb, 35.5 Zn	47-88	15-60	60	70	Similar to C33200. Fabricated by blanking, heading and upsetting, machining, piercing and punching, roll threading and knurling, stamping. Uses: butts, gears, nuts, rivets, screws, dials, engravings, instrument plates.
C34200 High-leaded brass	63.5 Cu, 2.0 Pb, 34.5 Zn	49-85	17-62	52	90	Combines excellent machinability with moderate cold workability. Uses: clock plates and nuts, clock and watch backs, gears, wheels and channel plate.
C35000 Medium-leaded brass	62.5 Cu, 1.1 Pb, 36.4 Zn	45-95	13-70	66	70	Fair cold workability; poor hot formability. Uses: bearing cages, book dies, clock plates, gears, hinges, hose couplings, keys, lock parts, lock tumblers, meter parts, nuts, sink strainers, strike plates, templates, type characters, washers, wear plates.
C35300 High-leaded brass	61.5 Cu, 2.8 Pb, 36.5 Zn	49-85	17-62	52	90	Similar to C34200.
C35600 Extra-high-leaded brass	61.5 Cu, 2.5 Pb, 36 Zn	47-97	17-87	60	100	Excellent machinability. Fabricated by blanking, machining, piercing and punching, stamping. Uses: clock plates and nuts, clock and watch backs, gears, wheels, and channel plate.
C36000 Free-cutting brass	61.5 Cu, 3.1 Pb, 35.4 Zn	49-68	18-45	53	100	Excellent machinability. Fabricated by machining, roll threading, and knurling. Uses: gears, pinions, automatic high-speed screw-machine parts.
C36500 to C36800 Leaded Muntz metal	59.5 Cu, 0.5 Pb, 40.0 Zn	54 (As hot rolled)	20	45	60	Combines good machinability with excellent hot formability. Uses: condenser-tube plates.
C37000 Free-cutting Muntz metal	60.0 Cu, 1.0 Pb, 39.0 Zn	54-80	20-60	40	70	Fabricating characteristics similar to C36500 to 36800. Uses: automatic screw-machine parts.
C37700 Forging brass	59.5 Cu, 2.0 Pb, 38.0 Zn	52 (As extruded)	20	45	80	Excellent hot workability. Fabricated by heading and upsetting, hot forging and pressing, hot heading and upsetting, machining. Uses: forgings and pressings of all kinds.
C38500 Architectural bronze	57.0 Cu, 3.0 Pb, 40.0 Zn	60 (As extruded)	20	30	90	Excellent machinability and hot workability. Fabricated by hot forging and pressing, forming, bending, and machining. Uses: architectural extrusions, store fronts, thresholds, trim, butts, hinges, lock bodies, and forgings.
C40500	95 Cu, 1 Sn, 4 Zn	39-78	12-70	49	20	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, forming, and drawing. Uses: meter clips, terminals, fuse clips, contact and relay springs, washers.
C40800	95 Cu, 2 Sn, 3 Zn	42-79	13-75	43	20	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, stamping, and shearing. Uses: electrical connectors.
C41100	91 Cu, 0.5 Sn, 8.5 Zn	39-106	11-72	43	20	Excellent cold workability, good hot formability. Fabricated by blanking, forming and bending, drawing, piercing and punching, shearing, spinning, and stamping. Uses: bushings, bearing sleeves, thrust washers, flexible metal hose.
C41300	90.0 Cu, 1.0 Sn, 9.0 Zn	41-105	12-82	45	20	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Uses: plater bar for jewelry products, flat springs for electrical switchgear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C41500	91 Cu, 1.8 Sn, 7.2 Zn	46-81	17-75	44	30	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, bending, forming, shearing, and stamping. Uses: spring applications for electrical switches.
C42200	87.5 Cu, 1.1 Sn, 11.4 Zn	43-88	15-75	46	30	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Fabricated by blanking, piercing, forming, and drawing. Uses: sash chains, fuse clips, terminals, spring washers, contact springs, electrical connectors.
C42500	88.5 Cu, 2.0 Sn, 9.5 Zn	45-92	18-76	49	30	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, piercing, forming, and drawing. Uses: electrical switches, springs, terminals, connectors, fuse clips, pen clips, weather stripping.
C43000	87.0 Cu, 2.2 Sn, 10.8 Zn	46-94	18-73	55	30	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Fabricated by blanking, coining, drawing, forming, bending, heading, and upsetting. Uses: same as C42500.
C43400	85.0 Cu, 0.7 Sn, 14.3 Zn	45-90	15-75	49	30	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, bonding, forming, stamping, and shearing. Uses: electrical switch parts, blades, relay springs, contacts.
C43500	81.0 Cu, 0.9 Sn, 18.1 Zn	46-80	16-68	46	30	Excellent cold workability for fabrication by forming and bending. Uses: Bourdon tubing and musical instruments.
C44300, C44400, C44500 Inhibited admiralty	71.0 Cu, 28.0 Zn, 1.0 Sn	48-55	18-22	65	30	Excellent cold workability for forming and bending. Uses: condenser, evaporator and heat-exchanger tubing, condenser tubing plates, distiller tubing, ferrules.
C46400 to C46700 Naval brass	60.0 Cu, 39.2 Zn, 0.8 Sn	55-88	25-66	50	30	Excellent hot workability and hot forgeability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, bending, heading and upsetting, hot forging, pressing. Uses: aircraft turnbuckle barrels, balls, bolts, marine hardware, nuts, propeller shafts, rivets, valve stems, condenser plates, welding rod.
C48200 Naval brass, medium-leaded	60.5 Cu, 0.7 Pb, 0.8 Sn, 38.0 Zn	56-75	25-53	43	50	Good hot workability for hot forging, pressing, and machining operations. Uses: marine hardware, screw-machine products, valve stems.
C48500 Leaded naval brass	60.0 Cu, 1.8 Pb, 37.5 Zn, 0.7 Sn	57-75	25-53	40	70	Combines good hot forgeability and machinability. Fabricated by hot forging and pressing, machining. Uses: marine hardware, screw-machine parts, valve stems.
C50500 Phosphor bronze, 1.25% E	98.7 Cu, 1.3 Sn, trace P	40-79	14-50	48	20	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Fabricated by blanking, bending, heading and upsetting, shearing and swaging. Uses: electrical contacts, flexible hose, pole-line hardware.
C51000 Phosphor bronze, 5% A	94.8 Cu, 5.0 Sn, trace P	47-140	19-80	64	20	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, bending, heading and upsetting, roll threading and knurling, shearing, stamping. Uses: bellows, Bourdon tubing, clutch discs, cotter pins, diaphragms, fasteners, lock washers, wire brushes, chemical hardware, textile machinery, welding rod.
C51100	95.6 Cu, 4.2 Sn, 0.2 P	46-103	50-80	48	20	Excellent cold workability. Uses: bridge bearing plates, locator bars, fuse clips, sleeve bushings, springs, switch parts, truss wire, wire brushes, chemical hardware, perforated sheets, textile machinery.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C52100 Phosphor bronze, 8% C	92.0 Cu, 8.0 Sn, trace P	55-140	24-80	70	20	Good cold workability for blanking, drawing, forming and bending, shearing, stamping. Uses: generally for more severe service conditions than C51000.
C52400 Phosphor bronze, 10% D	90.0 Cu, 10.0 Sn, trace P	66-147	28	70	20	Good cold workability for blanking, forming and bending, shearing. Uses: heavy bars and plates for severe compression, bridge and expansion plates and fittings, articles requiring good spring qualities, resilience, fatigue resistance, good wear and corrosion resistance.
C54400	88.0 Cu, 4.0 Pb, 4.0 Zn, 4.0 Sn	44-75	19-63	50	80	Excellent machinability; good cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, bending, machining, shearing, stamping. Uses: bearings, bushings, gears, pinions, shafts, thrust washers, valve parts.
C60800	95.0 Cu, 5.0 Al	60	27	55	20	Good cold workability; fair hot formability. Uses: condenser, evaporator and heat-exchanger tubes, distiller tubes, ferrules.
C61000	92.0 Cu, 8.0 Al	52-60	17-27	45	20	Good hot and cold workability. Uses: bolts, pump parts, shafts, tie rods, overlay on steel for wearing surfaces.
C61300	90.3 Cu, 0.35 Sn, 6.8 Al, 0.35 Sn	70-85	30-58	42	30	Good hot and cold formability. Uses: nuts, bolts, corrosion resistant vessels and tanks, structural components, machine parts, condenser tube and piping systems, marine protective sheathing and fasteners, munitions mixing troughs and blending chambers.
C61400 Aluminum bronze, D	91.0 Cu, 7.0 Al, 2.0 Fe	76-89	33-60	45	20	Similar to C61300.
C61500	90.0 Cu, 8.0 Al, 2.0 Ni	70-145	22-140	55	30	Good hot and cold workability. Fabricating characteristics similar to C52100. Uses: hardware, decorative metal trim, interior furnishings and other articles requiring high tarnish resistance.
C61800	89.0 Cu, 1.0 Fe, 10.0 Al	80-85	39-42.5	28	40	Fabricated by hot forging and hot pressing. Uses: bushings, bearings, corrosion-resistant applications, welding rods.
C61900	86.5 Cu, 4.0 Fe, 9.5 Al	92-152	49-145	30		Excellent hot formability for fabricating by blanking, forming, bending, shearing, and stamping. Uses: springs, contacts, and switch components.
C62300	87.0 Cu, 3.0 Fe, 10.0 Al	75-98	35-52	35	50	Good hot and cold formability. Fabricated by bending, hot forging, hot pressing, forming, and welding. Uses: bearings, bushings, valve guides, gears, valve seats, nuts, bolts, pump rods, worm gears, and cams.
C62400	86.0 Cu, 3.0 Fe, 11.0 Al	90-105	40-52	18	50	Excellent hot formability for fabrication by hot forging and hot bending. Uses: bushings, gears, cams, wear strips, nuts, drift pins, tie rods.
C62500	82.7 Cu, 4.3 Fe, 13.0 Al	100 (As extruded)	55	1	20	Excellent hot formability for fabrication by hot forging and machining. Uses: guide bushings, wear strips, cams, dies, forming rolls.
C63000	82.0 Cu, 3.0 Fe, 10.0 Al, 5.0 Ni	90-118	50-75	20	30	Good hot formability. Fabricated by hot forming and forging. Uses: nuts, bolts, valve seats, plunger tips, marine shafts, valve guides, aircraft parts, pump shafts, structural members.
C63200	82.0 Cu, 4.0 Fe, 9.0 Al, 5.0 Ni	90-105	45-53	25	30	Good hot formability. Fabricated by hot forming and welding. Uses: nuts, bolts, structural pump parts, shafting requiring corrosion resistance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C63600	95.5 Cu, 3.5 Al, 1.0 Si	60-84		64	40	Excellent cold workability; fair hot formability. Fabricated by cold heading. Uses: components for pole-line hardware, cold-headed nuts for wire and cable connectors, bolts and screw products.
C63800	95.0 Cu, 2.8 Al, 1.8 Si, 0.40 Co	82-130	54-114	36		Excellent cold workability and hot formability. Uses: springs, switch parts, contacts, relay springs, glass sealing, and porcelain enameling.
C64200	91.2 Cu, 7.0 Al, 1.8 Si	75-102	35-68	32	60	Excellent hot formability. Fabricated by hot forming, forging, machining. Uses: valve stems, gears, marine hardware, pole-line hardware, bolts, nuts, valve bodies, and components.
C65100 Low-silicon bronze, B	98.5 Cu, 1.5 Si	40-105	15-71	55	30	Excellent hot and cold workability. Fabricated by forming and bending, heading and upsetting, hot forging and pressing, roll threading and knurling, squeezing and swaging. Uses: hydraulic pressure lines, anchor screws, bolts, cable clamps, cap screws, machine screws, marine hardware, nuts, pole-line hardware, rivets, U-bolts, electrical conduits, heat-exchanger tubing, welding rod.
C65500 High-silicon bronze, A	97.0 Cu, 3.0 Si	56-145	21-71	63	30	Excellent hot and cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, forming and bending, heading and upsetting, hot forging and pressing, roll threading and knurling, shearing, squeezing and swaging. Uses: similar to C65100 including propeller shafts.
C66700 Manganese brass	70.0 Cu, 28.8 Zn, 1.2 Mn	45.8-100	12-92.5	60	30	Excellent cold formability. Fabricated by blanking, bending, forming, stamping, welding. Uses: brass products resistance welded by spot, seam, and butt welding.
C67400	58.5 Cu, 36.5 Zn, 1.2 Al, 2.8 Mn, 1.0 Sn	70-92	34-55	28	25	Excellent hot formability. Fabricated by hot forging and pressing, machining. Uses: bushings, gears, connecting rods, shafts, wear plates.
C67500 Manganese bronze, A	58.5 Cu, 1.4 Fe, 39.0 Zn, 1.0 Sn, 0.1 Mn	65-84	30-60	33	30	Excellent hot workability. Fabricated by hot forging and pressing, hot heading and upsetting. Uses: clutch discs, pump rods, shafting, balls, valve stems and bodies.
C68700 Aluminum brass, arsenical	77.5 Cu, 20.5 Zn, 2.0 Al, trace As	60	27	55	30	Excellent cold workability for forming and bending. Uses: condenser, evaporator- and heat-exchanger tubing, condenser tubing plates, distiller tubing, ferrules.
C68800	73.5 Cu, 22.7 Zn, 3.4 Al, 0.40 Co	82-129	55-114	36		Excellent hot and cold formability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, forming and bending, shearing and stamping. Uses: springs, switches, contacts, relays, drawn parts.
C69000	73.3 Cu, 3.4 Al, 0.6 Ni, 22.7 Zn	82-130	52-117	35		Fabricating characteristics same as C68800. Uses: contacts, relays, switches, springs, drawn parts.
C69400 Silicon red brass	81.5 Cu, 14.5 Zn, 4.0 Si	80-100	40-57	25	30	Excellent hot formability for fabrication by forging, screw-machine operations. Uses: valve stems where corrosion resistance and high strength are critical.
C70400 Copper nickel, 5%	92.4 Cu, 1.5 Fe, 5.5 Ni, 0.6 Mn	38-77	40-76	46	20	Excellent cold workability; good hot formability. Fabricated by forming, bending, and welding. Uses: condensers, evaporators, heat exchangers, ferrules, salt water piping, lithium bromide absorption tubing, shipboard condenser intake systems.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Properties and Applications of Wrought Coppers and Copper Alloys**

Name and Number	Nominal Composition (%)	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Machinability Rating[a]	Fabricating Characteristics and Typical Applications
		Tensile	Yield			
C70600 Copper nickel, 10%	88.6 Cu, 1.4 Fe, 10.0 Ni	44-60	16-57	42	20	Good hot and cold workability. Fabricated by forming and bending, welding. Uses: condensers, condenser plates, distiller tubing, evaporator and heat-exchanger tubing, ferrules.
C71000 Copper nickel, 20%	79.0 Cu, 21.0 Ni	49-95	13-85	40	20	Good hot and cold formability. Fabricated by blanking, forming and bending, welding. Uses: communication relays, condensers, condenser plates, electrical springs, evaporator and heat-exchanger tubes, ferrules, resistors.
C71500 Copper nickel, 30%	69.5 Cu, 30.0 Ni, 0.5 Fe	54-75	20-70	45	20	Similar to C70600.
C72200	82.2 Cu, 16.5 Ni, 0.8 Fe, 0.5 Cr	46-70	18-66	46		Good hot and cold formability. Fabricated by forming, bending, and welding. Uses: condenser tubing, heat-exchanger tubing, saltwater piping.
C72500	88.2 Cu, 9.5 Ni, 2.3 Sn	55-120	22-108	35	20	Excellent cold and hot formability. Fabricated by blanking, brazing, coining, drawing, etching, forming and bending, heading and upsetting, roll threading and knurling, shearing, spinning, squeezing, stamping, and swaging. Uses: relay and switch springs, connectors, brazing alloy, lead frames, control and sensing bellows.
C73500	72.0 Cu, 10.0 Zn, 18.0 Ni	50-100	15-84	37	20	Fabricating characteristics same as C74500. Uses: hollow ware, medallions, jewelry, base for silverplate, cosmetic cases, musical instruments, name plates, contacts.
C74500 Nickel silver, 65-10	65.0 Cu, 25.0 Zn, 10.0 Ni	49-130	18-76	50	20	Excellent cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, drawing, etching, forming and bending, heading and upsetting, roll threading and knurling, shearing, spinning, squeezing, and swaging. Uses: rivets, screws, slide fasteners, optical parts, etching stock, hollow ware, nameplates, platers' bars.
C75200 Nickel silver, 65-18	65.0 Cu, 17.0 Zn, 18.0 Ni	56-103	25-90	45	20	Fabricating characteristics similar to C74500. Uses: rivets, screws, table flatware, truss wire, zippers, bows, camera parts, core bars, temples, base for silverplate, costume jewelry, etching stock, hollow ware, nameplates, radio dials.
C75400 Nickel silver, 65-15	65.0 Cu, 20.0 Zn, 15.0 Ni	53-92	18-79	43	20	Fabricating characteristics similar to C74500. Uses: camera parts, optical equipment, etching stock, jewelry.
C75700 Nickel silver, 65-12	65.0 Cu, 23.0 Zn, 12.0 Ni	52-93	18-79	48	20	Fabricating characteristics similar to C74500. Uses: slide fasteners, camera parts, optical parts, etching stock, name plates.
C76390	61 Cu, 13 Zn, 24.5 Ni, 1 Pb, 0.5 Sn	90	85	6	40	Fabricated by machining, roll threading, and knurling. Uses: hardware, fasteners, connectors for electronic applications.
C77000 Nickel silver, 55-18	55.0 Cu, 27.0 Zn, 18.0 Ni	60-145	27-90	40	30	Good cold workability. Fabricated by blanking, forming and bending, and shearing. Uses: optical goods, springs, and resistance wire.
C78200	65.0 Cu, 2.0 Pb, 25.0 Zn, 8.0 Ni	53-91	23-76	40	60	Good cold formability. Fabricated by blanking, milling, and drilling. Uses: key blanks, watch plates, watch parts.

[a] Free-cutting brass = 100.

Source: Copper Development Association, New York.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Strength of Copper-Zinc-Tin Alloys (US Government Tests)

Percentage of			Tensile Strength		Percentage of			Tensile Strength		Percentage of			Tensile Strength	
Copper	Zinc	Tin	lb/in²	MPa	Copper	Zinc	Tin	lb/in²	MPa	Copper	Zinc	Tin	lb/in²	MPa
45	50	5	15,000	103.4	60	20	20	10,000	68.9	75	20	5	45,000	310.3
50	45	5	50,000	344.7	65	30	5	50,000	344.7	75	15	10	45,000	310.3
50	40	10	15,000	103.4	65	25	10	42,000	289.6	75	10	15	43,000	296.5
55	43	2	65,000	488.2	65	20	15	30,000	206.8	75	5	20	41,000	282.7
55	40	5	62,000	427.5	65	15	20	18,000	124.1	80	15	5	45,000	310.3
55	35	10	32,500	224.0	65	10	25	12,000	82.7	80	10	10	45,000	310.3
55	30	15	15,000	103.4	70	25	5	45,000	310.3	80	5	15	47,500	327.5
60	37	3	60,000	413.7	70	20	10	44,000	303.4	85	10	5	43,500	299.9
60	35	5	52,500	362.0	70	15	15	37,000	255.1	85	5	10	46,500	320.6
60	30	10	40,000	275.8	70	10	20	30,000	206.8	90	5	5	42,000	289.6

Copper-Silicon and Copper-Beryllium Alloys

Everdur.—This copper-silicon alloy is available in five slightly different nominal compositions for applications that require high strength, good fabricating and fusing qualities, immunity to rust, free-machining and a corrosion resistance equivalent to copper. The following table gives the nominal compositions and tensile strengths, yield strengths, and percent elongations for various tempers and forms.

Table 4. Nominal Composition and Properties of Everdur

Desig. No.	Nominal Composition					Temper[a]	Strength				Elongation (%)
							Tensile		Yield		
	Cu	Si	Mn	Pb	Al		ksi	MPa	ksi	MPa	
655	95.80	3.10	1.10			A	52	359	15	103	35[b]
						HRA	50	345	18	124	40
						CRA	52	359	18	124	35
						CRHH	71	490	40	276	10
						CRH	87	600	60	414	3
						H	70–85	483–586	38–50	262–345	17 to 8[b]
651	98.25	1.50	0.25			AP	38	262	10	69	35
						HP	50	345	40	276	7
						XHB	75–85	517–586	45–55	310–379	8 to 6[b]
661	95.60	3.00	1.00	0.40		A	52	359	15	103	35[b]
						H	85	586	50	345	13 to 8[b]
6552	94.90	4.00	1.10			AC	45	310			15
637	90.75	2.00			7.25	A	75–90	517–621	37.5–45	259–310	12 to 9[b]

[a] Symbols used are HRA for hot-rolled and annealed tank plates; CRA for cold-rolled sheets and strips; CRHH for cold-rolled half hard strips; abd CRH for cold-rolled hard strips. For round, square, hexagonal, and octagonal rods: A for annealed; H for hard; and XHB for extra-hard bolt temper (in coils for cold-heading). For pipe and tube: AP for annealed; and HP for hard. For castings: AC for as cast.

[b] Percent elongation in 4 times the diameter or thickness of the specimen. All other values are percent elongation in 2 inches.

Designation numbers are those of the American Brass Co.

The values given for tensile srength, yield strength, and elongation are all minimum values. Where ranges are shown, the first values given are for the largest diameter or largest size specimens. Yield strength values were determined at 0.50 percent elongation under load.

Copper-Beryllium Alloys.—Alloys of copper and beryllium present health hazards. Particles produced by machining may be absorbed into the body through the skin, the mouth, the nose, or an open wound, resulting in a condition requiring immediate medical attention. Working of these alloys requires protective clothing or other shielding in a monitored environment. Copper-beryllium alloys involved in a fire give off profuse toxic fumes that must not be inhaled.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

These alloys contain copper, beryllium, cobalt, and silver, and fall into two groups. One group, whose beryllium content is greater than one percent, is characterized by its high strength and hardness, and the other, whose beryllium content is less than one percent, by its high electrical and thermal conductivity. The alloys have many applications in the electrical and aircraft industries or wherever strength, corrosion resistance, conductivity, non-magnetic and nonsparking properties are essential. Beryllium copper is obtainable in the form of strips, rods and bars, wire, platers, bars, billets, tubes, and casting ingots.

Composition and Properties: Table 5 lists some of the more common wrought alloys and gives some of their mechanical properties.

Table 5. Wrought Copper–Beryllium Properties

Alloy[a]	Form	Temper[b]	Heat Treatment	Tensile Strength ksi	Tensile Strength MPa	Yield Strength 0.2% Offset ksi	Yield Strength 0.2% Offset MPa	Elongation % in 2 inch (5.08 cm)
25	Rod, Bar, and Plate	A		60–85	414–586	20–30	138–207	35–60
		½ H or H		85–130	586–896	75–105	517–724	10–20
		AT	3 hr at 600°F (316°C) or mill heat treated	165–190	1138–1310	145–175	1000–1207	3–10
		½ HT or HT	2 hr at 600°F (316°C) or mill heat treated	175–215	1207–1482	150–200	1034–1379	2–5
	Wire	A		58–78	400–538	20–35	138–241	35–55
		¼ H		90–115	621–793	70–95	483–655	10–35
		½ H		110–135	758–931	90–110	621–758	5–10
		¾ H		130–155	896–1069	110–135	758–931	2–8
		AT	3 hr at 600°F (316°C)	165–190	1138–1310	145–175	1000–1207	3–8
		¼ HT	2 hr at 600°F (316°C)	175–205	1207–1413	160–190	1103–1310	2–5
		½ HT	2 hr at 600°F (316°C)	190–215	1310–1482	175–200	1207–1379	1–3
		¾ HT	2 hr at 600°F (316°C)	195–220	1344–1517	180–205	1241–1413	1–3
		XHT	Mill heat treated	115–165	793–1138	95–145	655–1000	2–8
165	Rod, Bar, and Plate	A		60–85	414–586	20–30	138–207	35–60
		½ H or H		85–130	586–896	75–105	517–724	10–20
		AT	3 hr at 650°F (343°C) or mill heat treated	150–180	1034–1241	125–155	862–1069	4–10
		½ HT or HT	2 hr at 650°F (343°C) or mill heat treated	165–200	1138–1379	135–165	931–1138	2–5
10	Rod, Bar, and Plate	A		35–55	241–379	20–30	138–207	20–35
		½ H or H		65–80	448–552	55–75	379–517	10–15
		AT	3 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	100–120	689–827	80–100	552–689	10–25
		½ HT or HT	2 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	110–130	758–896	100–120	689–827	8–20
50	Rod, Bar, and Plate	A		35–55	241–379	20–30	138–207	20–35
		½ H or H		65–80	448–552	55–75	379–517	10–15
		AT	3 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	100–120	689–827	80–100	552–689	10–25
		½ HT or HT	2 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	110–130	758–896	100–120	689–827	8–20
35	Rod, Bar, and Plate	A		35–55	241–379	20–30	138–207	20–35
		½ H or H		65–80	448–552	55–75	379–517	10–15
		AT	3 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	100–120	689–827	80–100	552–689	10–25
		½ HT or HT	2 hr at 900°F (482°C) or mill heat treated	110–130	758–896	100–120	689–827	8–20

[a] Composition (in percent) of alloys is as follows: alloy 25: 1.80–2.05 Be, 0.20–0.35 Co, balance Cu; alloy 165: 1.6–1.8 Be, 0.20–0.35 Co, balance Cu; alloy 10: 0.4–0.7 Be, 2.35–2.70 Co, balance Cu; alloy 50, 0.25–0.50 Be, 1.4–1.7 Co, 0.9–1.1 Ag, balance Cu; alloy 35, 0.25–0.50 Be, 1.4–1.6 Ni, balance Cu.

[b] Temper symbol designations: A, solution annealed; H, hard; HT, heat treated from hard; At, heat treated from solution annealed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys

Pure aluminum is a silver-white metal characterized by a slightly bluish cast. It has a specific gravity of 2.70, resists the corrosive effects of many chemicals, and has a malleability approaching that of gold. When alloyed with other metals, numerous properties are obtained that make these alloys useful over a wide range of applications.

Aluminum alloys are light in weight compared with steel, brass, nickel, or copper; can be fabricated by all common processes; are available in a wide range of sizes, shapes, and forms; resist corrosion; readily accept a wide range of surface finishes; have good electrical and thermal conductivities; and are highly reflective to both heat and light.

Characteristics of Aluminum and Aluminum Alloys.—Aluminum and its alloys lose part of their strength at elevated temperatures, although some alloys retain good strength at temperatures from 400 to 500°F (204 to 260°C). At subzero temperatures, however, their strength increases without loss of ductility so that aluminum is a particularly useful metal for low-temperature applications.

When aluminum surfaces are exposed to the atmosphere, a thin invisible oxide skin forms immediately that protects the metal from further oxidation. This self-protecting characteristic gives aluminum its high resistance to corrosion. Unless exposed to some substance or condition that destroys this protective oxide coating, the metal remains protected against corrosion. Aluminum is highly resistant to weathering, even in industrial atmospheres. It is also corrosion resistant to many acids. Alkalis are among the few substances that attack the oxide skin and therefore are corrosive to aluminum. Although the metal can safely be used in the presence of certain mild alkalis with the aid of inhibitors, in general, direct contact with alkaline substances should be avoided. Direct contact with certain other metals should be avoided in the presence of an electrolyte; otherwise, galvanic corrosion of the aluminum may take place in the contact area. Where other metals must be fastened to aluminum, the use of a bituminous paint coating or insulating tape is recommended.

Aluminum is one of the two common metals having an electrical conductivity high enough for use as an electric conductor. The conductivity of electric-conductor (EC) grade is about 62 percent that of the International Annealed Copper Standard. Because aluminum has less than one-third the specific gravity of copper, however, a pound of aluminum will go almost twice as far as a pound of copper when used as a conductor. Alloying lowers the conductivity somewhat so that wherever possible the EC grade is used in electric conductor applications. However, aluminum takes a set, which often results in loosening of screwed connectors, leading to arcing and fires. Special clamping designs are therefore required when aluminum is used for electrical wiring, especially in buildings.

Aluminum has nonsparking and nonmagnetic characteristics that make the metal useful for electrical shielding purposes, such as in bus bar housings or enclosures for other electrical equipment, and for use around inflammable or explosive substances.

Aluminum can be cast by any method known. It can be rolled to any desired thickness down to foil thinner than paper and in sheet form can be stamped, drawn, spun, or roll-formed. The metal also may be hammered or forged. Aluminum wire, drawn from rolled rod, may be stranded into cable of any desired size and type. The metal may be extruded into a variety of shapes. It may be turned, milled, bored, or otherwise machined in equipment often operating at their maximum speeds. Aluminum rod and bar may readily be employed in the high-speed manufacture of parts made on automatic screw-machine.

Almost any method of joining is applicable to aluminum—riveting, welding, or brazing. A wide variety of mechanical aluminum fasteners simplifies the assembly of many products. Resin bonding of aluminum parts has been successfully employed, particularly in aircraft components.

For the majority of applications, aluminum needs no protective coating. Mechanical finishes such as polishing, sandblasting, or wire brushing meet the majority of needs. When additional protection is desired, chemical, electrochemical, and paint finishes are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

all used. Vitreous enamels have been developed for aluminum, and the metal may also be electroplated.

Temper Designations for Aluminum Alloys.—The temper designation system adopted by the Aluminum Association and used in industry pertains to all forms of wrought and cast aluminum and aluminum alloys except ingot. It is based on the sequences of basic treatments used to produce the various tempers. The temper designation follows the alloy designation, being separated by a dash.

Basic temper designations consist of letters. Subdivisions of the basic tempers, where required, are indicated by one or more digits following the letter. These digits designate specific sequences of basic treatments, but only operations recognized as significantly influencing the characteristics of the product are indicated. Should some other variation of the same sequence of basic operations be applied to the same alloy, resulting in different characteristics, then additional digits are added.

The basic temper designations and subdivisions are as follows:

-F, as fabricated: Applies to products that acquire some temper from shaping processes not having special control over the amount of strain-hardening or thermal treatment. For wrought products, there are no mechanical property limits.

-O, annealed, recrystallized (wrought products only): Applies to the softest temper of wrought products.

-H, strain-hardened (wrought products only): Applies to products that have their strength increased by strain-hardening with or without supplementary thermal treatments to produce partial softening.

The -H is always followed by two or more digits. The first digit indicates the specific combination of basic operations, as follows:

-H1, strain-hardened only: Applies to products that are strain-hardened to obtain the desired mechanical properties without supplementary thermal treatment. The number following this designation indicates the degree of strain-hardening.

-H2, strain-hardened and then partially annealed: Applies to products that are strain-hardened more than the desired final amount and then reduced in strength to the desired level by partial annealing. For alloys that age-soften at room temperature, the -H2 tempers have approximately the same ultimate strength as the corresponding -H3 tempers. For other alloys, the -H2 tempers have approximately the same ultimate strengths as the corresponding -H1 tempers and slightly higher elongations. The number following this designation indicates the degree of strain-hardening remaining after the product has been partially annealed.

-H3, strain-hardened and then stabililized: Applies to products which are strain-hardened and then stabilized by a low-temperature heating to slightly lower their strength and increase ductility. This designation applies only to the magnesium-containing alloys that, unless stabilized, gradually age-soften at room temperature.The number following this designation indicates the degree of strain-hardening remaining after the product has been strain-hardened a specific amount and then stabilized.

The second digit following the designations -H1, -H2, and -H3 indicates the final degree of strain-hardening. Numeral 8 has been assigned to indicate tempers having a final degree of strain-hardening equivalent to that resulting from approximately 75 percent reduction of area. Tempers between -O (annealed) and 8 (full hard) are designated by numerals 1 through 7. Material having an ultimate strength about midway between that of the -O temper and that of the 8 temper is designated by the numeral 4 (half hard); between -O and 4 by the numeral 2 (quarter hard); and between 4 and 8 by the numeral 6 (three-quarter hard). (*Note:* For two-digit -H tempers whose second figure is odd, the standard limits for ultimate strength are exactly midway between those for the adjacent two-digit -H tempers whose second figures are even.) Numeral 9 designates extra-hard tempers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The third digit, when used, indicates a variation of a two-digit -H temper, and is used when the degree of control of temper or the mechanical properties are different from but close to those for the two-digit -H temper designation to which it is added. (*Note:* The minimum ultimate strength of a three-digit -H temper is at least as close to that of the corresponding two-digit -H temper as it is to the adjacent two-digit -H tempers.) Numerals 1 through 9 may be arbitrarily assigned and registered with the Aluminum Association for an alloy and product to indicate a specific degree of control of temper or specific mechanical property limits. Zero has been assigned to indicate degrees of control of temper or mechanical property limits negotiated between the manufacturer and purchaser that are not used widely enough to justify registration with the Aluminum Association.

The following three-digit -H temper designations have been assigned for wrought products in all alloys:

-H111: Applies to products that are strain-hardened less than the amount required for a controlled H11 temper.

-H112: Applies to products that acquire some temper from shaping processes not having special control over the amount of strain-hardening or thermal treatment, but for which there are mechanical property limits, or require mechanical property testing.

The following three-digit H temper designations have been assigned for wrought products in alloys containing more than a normal 4 percent magnesium.

-H311: Applies to products that are strain-hardened less than the amount required for a controlled H31 temper.

-H321: Applies to products that are strain-hardened less than the amount required for a controlled H32 temper.

-H323: Applies to products that are specially fabricated to have acceptable resistance to stress-corrosion cracking.

-H343: Applies to products that are specially fabricated to have acceptable resistance to stress-corrosion cracking.

The following three-digit -H temper designations have been assigned for

Patterned or Embossed Sheet	Fabricated Form
-H114	-O temper
-H124, -H224, -H324	-H11, -H21, -H31 temper, respectively
-H134, -H234, -H334	-H12, -H22, -H32 temper, respectively
-H144, -H244, -H344	-H13, -H23, -H33 temper, respectively
-H154, -H254, -H354	-H14, -H24, -H34 temper, respectively
-H164, -H264, -H364	-H15, -H25, -H35 temper, respectively
-H174, -H274, -H374	-H16, -H26, -H36 temper, respectively
-H184, -H284, -H384	-H17, -H27, -H37 temper, respectively
-H194, -H294, -H394	-H18, -H28, -H38 temper, respectively
-H195, -H395	-H19, -H39 temper, respectively

-W, solution heat treated: An unstable temper applicable only to alloys that spontaneously age at room temperature after solution heat treatment. This designation is specific only when the period of natural aging is indicated.

-T, thermally treated to produce stable tempers other than -F, -O, or -H: Applies to products that are thermally treated, with or without supplementary strain-hardening, to produce stable tempers.The -T is always followed by one or more digits. Numerals 2 through 10 have been assigned to indicate specific sequences of basic treatments, as follows:

-T1, naturally aged to a substantially stable condition: Applies to products for which the rate of cooling from an elevated temperature-shaping process, such as casting or extrusion, is such that their strength is increased by room-temperature aging.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

-T2, annealed (cast products only): Designates a type of annealing treatment used to improve ductility and increase dimensional stability of castings.

-T3, solution heat treated and then cold-worked: Applies to products that are cold-worked to improve strength, or in which the effect of cold-work in flattening or straightening is recognized in applicable specifications.

-T4, solution heat treated and naturally aged to a substantially stable condition: Applies to products that are not cold-worked after solution heat treatment, or in which the effect of cold-work in flattening or straightening may not be recognized in applicable specifications.

-T5, artificially aged only: Applies to products that are artificially aged after an elevated-temperature rapid-cool fabrication process, such as casting or extrusion, to improve mechanical properties or dimensional stability, or both.

-T6, solution heat treated and then artificially aged: Applies to products that are not cold-worked after solution heat treatment, or in which the effect of cold-work in flattening or straightening may not be recognized in applicable specifications.

-T7, solution heat treated and then stabilized: Applies to products that are stabilized to carry them beyond the point of maximum hardness, providing control of growth or residual stress or both.

-T8, solution heat treated, cold-worked, and then artificially aged: Applies to products that are cold-worked to improve strength, or in which the effect of cold-work in flattening or straightening is recognized in applicable specifications.

-T9, solution heat treated, artificially aged, and then cold-worked: Applies to products that are cold-worked to improve strength.

-T10, artificially aged and then cold-worked: Applies to products that are artificially aged after an elevated-temperature rapid-cool fabrication process, such as casting or extrusion, and then cold-worked to improve strength.

Additional digits may be added to designations -T1 through -T10 to indicate a variation in treatment that significantly alters the characteristics of the product. These may be arbitrarily assigned and registered with The Aluminum Association for an alloy and product to indicate a specific treatment or specific mechanical property limits.

These additional digits have been assigned for wrought products in all alloys:

-T__51, stress-relieved by stretching: Applies to products that are stress-relieved by stretching the following amounts after solution heat treatment:

Plate	1½ to 3 percent permanent set
Rod, Bar and Shapes	1 to 3 percent permanent set
Drawn tube	0.5 to 3 percent permanent set

Applies directly to plate and rolled or cold-finished rod and bar.

These products receive no further straightening after stretching.

Applies to extruded rod and bar shapes and tube when designated as follows:

-T__510 : Products that receive no further straightening after stretching.

-T__511: Products that receive minor straightening after stretching to comply with standard tolerances.

-T__52, stress-relieved by compressing: Applies to products that are stress-relieved by compressing after solution heat treatment to produce a nominal permanent set of 2½ percent.

-T__54, stress-relieved by combined stretching and compressing: Applies to die forgings that are stress relieved by restriking cold in the finish die.

The following two-digit -T temper designations have been assigned for wrought products in all alloys:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

-T42: Applies to products solution heat treated and naturally aged that attain mechanical properties different from those of the -T4 temper.

-T62: Applies to products solution heat treated and artificially aged that attain mechanical properties different from those of the -T6 temper.

Aluminum Alloy Designation Systems.—Aluminum casting alloys are listed in many specifications of various standardizing agencies. The numbering systems used by each differ and do not always correlate. Casting alloys are available from producers who use a commercial numbering system; this system is used in the tables of aluminum casting alloys given in this section.

Table 6a lists the nominal composition of commonly used aluminum casting alloys, and Table 6b and Table 6c list the typical tensile properties of separately cast bars.

Table 6a. Nominal Compositions (in percent) of Common Aluminum Casting Alloys (AA/ANSI)

Alloy	Product[a]	Si	Fe	Cu	Mn	Mg	Cr	Ni	Zn	Ti	Others	
											Each	Total
201.0	S	0.10	0.15	4.0-5.2	0.20-0.50	0.15-0.55				0.15-0.35	0.05[b]	0.10
204.0	S&P	0.20	0.35	4.2-5.0	0.10	0.15-0.35		0.05	0.10	0.15-0.30	0.05[c]	0.15
208.0	S&P	2.5-3.5	1.2	3.5-4.5	0.50	0.10		0.35	1.0	0.25		0.50
222.0	S&P	2.0	1.5	9.2-10.7	0.50	0.15-0.35		0.50	0.8	0.25		0.35
242.0	S&P	0.7	1.0	3.5-4.5	0.35	1.2-1.8	0.25	1.7-2.3	0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
295.0	S	0.7-1.5	1.0	4.0-5.0	0.35	0.03			0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
308.0	P	5.0-6.0	1.0	4.0-5.0	0.50	0.10			1.0	0.25		0.50
319.0	S&P	5.5-6.5	1.0	3.0-4.0	0.50	0.10		0.35	1.0	0.25		0.50
328.0	S	7.5-8.5	1.0	1.0-2.0	0.20-0.6	0.20-0.6	0.35	0.25	1.5	0.25		0.50
332.0	P	8.5-10.5	1.2	2.0-4.0	0.50	0.50-1.5		0.50	1.0	0.25		0.50
333.0	P	8.0-10.0	1.0	3.0-4.0	0.50	0.05-0.50		0.50	1.0	0.25		0.50
336.0	P	11.0-13.0	1.2	0.50-1.5	0.35	0.7-1.3		2.0-3.0	0.35	0.25	0.05	
355.0	S&P	4.5-5.5	0.6[d]	1.0-1.5	0.50[d]	0.40-0.6	0.25		0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
C355.0	S&P	4.5-5.5	0.20	1.0-1.5	0.10	0.40-0.6			0.10	0.20	0.05	0.15
356.0	S&P	6.5-7.5	0.6[d]	0.25	0.35[d]	0.20-0.45			0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
356.0	S&P	6.5-7.5	0.20	0.20	0.10	0.25-0.45			0.10	0.20	0.05	0.15
357.0	S&P	6.5-7.5	0.15	0.05	0.03	0.45-0.6			0.05	0.20	0.05	0.15
A357.0	S&P	6.5-7.5	0.20	0.20	0.10	0.40-0.7			0.10	0.04-0.20	0.05	0.15[e]
443.0	S&P	4.5-6.0	0.8	0.6	0.50	0.05	0.25		0.50	0.25		0.35
B443.0	S&P	4.5-6.0	0.8	0.15	0.35	0.05			0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
A444.0	P	6.5-7.5	0.20	0.10	0.10	0.05			0.10	0.20	0.05	0.15
512.0	S	1.4-2.2	0.6	0.35	0.8	3.5-4.5	0.25		0.35	0.25	0.05	0.15
513.0	P	0.30	0.40	0.10	0.30	3.5-4.5			1.4-2.2	0.20	0.05	0.15
514.0	S	0.35	0.50	0.15	0.35	3.5-4.5			0.15	0.25	0.05	0.15
520.0	S	0.25	0.30	0.25	0.15	9.5-10.6			0.15	0.25	0.05	0.15
705.0	S&P	0.20	0.8	0.20	0.40-0.6	1.4-1.8	0.20-0.40		2.7-3.3	0.25	0.05	0.15
707.0	S&P	0.20	0.8	0.20	0.40-0.6	1.8-2.4	0.20-0.40		4.0-4.5	0.25	0.05	0.15
710.0	S	0.15	0.50	0.35-0.65	0.05	0.6-0.8			6.0-7.0	0.25	0.05	0.15
711.0	P	0.30	0.7-1.4	0.35-0.65	0.05	0.25-0.45			6.0-7.0	0.20	0.05	0.15
712.0	S	0.30	0.50	0.25	0.10	0.50-0.65	0.40-0.6		5.0-6.5	0.15-0.25	0.05	0.20
850.0	S&P	0.7	0.7	0.7-1.3	0.10	0.10		0.7-1.3		0.20	—[f]	0.30
851.0	S&P	2.0-3.0	0.7	0.7-1.3	0.10	0.10		0.3-0.7		0.20	—[f]	0.30

[a] S = sand cast; P = permanent mold cast. The sum of those "Others," metallic elements 0.010 percent or more each, is expressed to the second decimal before determining the sum. *Source: Standards for Aluminum Sand and Permanent Mold Castings,* courtesy of the Aluminum Association.

[b] Also contains 0.40–1.0 percent silver.

[c] Also contains 0.05 max. percent tin.

[d] If iron exceeds 0.45 percent, manganese content should not be less than one-half the iron content.

[e] Also contains 0.04–0.07 percent beryllium.

[f] Also contains 5.5–7.0 percent tin.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6b. Mechanical Property Limits for Separately Cast Test Bars of Commonly Used Aluminum Sand Casting Alloys

Alloy	Temper[a]	Minimum Properties: Tensile Strength (ksi) Ultimate	Minimum Properties: Tensile Strength (ksi) Yield	Minimum Properties: Elongation In 2 inches (%)	Typical Brinell Hardness Number (500 kgf load, 10-mm ball)
201.0	T7	60.0	50.0	3.0	110-140
204.0	T4	45.0	28.0	6.0	
208.0	F	19.0	12.0	1.5	40-70
222.0	O	23.0			65-95
222.0	T61	30.0			100-130
242.0	O	23.0			55-85
242.0	T571	29.0			70-100
242.0	T61	32.0	20.0		90-120
242.0	T77	24.0	13.0	1.0	60-90
295.0	T4	29.0	13.0	6.0	45-75
295.0	T6	32.0	20.0	3.0	60-90
295.0	T62	36.0	28.0		80-110
295.0	T7	29.0	16.0	3.0	55-85
319.0	F	23.0	13.0	1.5	55-85
319.0	T5	25.0			65-95
319.0	T6	31.0	20.0	1.5	65-95
328.0	F	25.0	14.0	1.0	45-75
328.0	T6	34.0	21.0	1.0	65-95
354.0	[b]				
355.0	T51	25.0	18.0		50-80
355.0	T6	32.0	20.0	2.0	70-105
355.0	T7	35.0			70-100
355.0	T71	30.0	22.0		60-95
C355.0	T6	36.0	25.0	2.5	75-105
356.0	F	19.0		2.0	40-70
356.0	T51	23.0	16.0		45-75
356.0	T6	30.0	20.0	3.0	55-90
356.0	T7	31.0	29.0		60-90
356.0	T71	25.0	18.0	3.0	45-75
A356.0	T6	34.0	24.0	3.5	70-105
443.0	F	17.0	7.0	3.0	25-55
B443.0	F	17.0	6.0	3.0	25-55
512.0	F	17.0	10.0		35-65
514.0	F	22.0	9.0	6.0	35-65
520.0	T4[c]	42.0	22.0	12.0	60-90
535.0	F or T5	35.0	18.0	9.0	60-90
705.0	F or T5	30.0	17.0	5.0	50-80
707.0	T5	33.0	22.0	2.0	70-100
707.0	T7	37.0	30.0	1.0	65-95
710.0	F or T5	32.0	20.0	2.0	60-90
712.0	F or T5	34.0	25.0	4.0	60-90
713.0	F or T5	32.0	22.0	3.0	60-90
771.0	T5	42.0	38.0	1.5	85-115
771.0	T51	32.0	27.0	3.0	70-100
771.0	T52	36.0	30.0	1.5	70-100
771.0	T53	36.0	27.0	1.5	
771.0	T6	42.0	35.0	5.0	75-105
771.0	T71	48.0	45.0	2.0	105-135
850.0	T5	16.0		5.0	30-60
851.0	T5	17.0		3.0	30-60
852.0	T5	24.0	18.0		45-75

Source: Standards for Aluminum Sand and Permanent Mold Castings, courtesy of the Aluminum Association.

[a] F indicates "as cast" condition.

[b] Mechanical properties for these alloys depend on the casting process. For further information consult the individual foundries.

[c] The T4 temper of Alloy 520.0 is unstable; significant room temperature aging occurs within life expectancy of most castings. Elongation may decrease by as much as 80 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6c. Mechanical Property Limits for Separately Cast Test Bars of Commonly Used Aluminum Permanent Mold Casting Alloys

Alloy	Temper[a]	Minimum Properties			Typical Brinell Hardness Number (500 kgf load, 10-mm ball)
		Tensile Strength (ksi)		Elongation In 2 inches (%)	
		Ultimate	Yield		
204.0	T4	48.0	29.0	8.0	
208.0	T4	33.0	15.0	4.5	60-90
208.0	T6	35.0	22.0	2.0	75-105
208.0	T7	33.0	16.0	3.0	65-95
222.0	T551	30.0			100-130
222.0	T65	40.0			125-155
242.0	T571	34.0			90-120
242.0	T61	40.0			95-125
296.0	T6	35.0		2.0	75-105
308.0	F	24.0			55-85
319.0	F	28.0	14.0	1.5	70-100
319.0	T6	34.0		2.0	75-105
332.0	T5	31.0			90-120
333.0	F	28.0			65-100
333.0	T5	30.0			70-105
333.0	T6	35.0			85-115
333.0	T7	31.0			75-105
336.0	T551	31.0			90-120
336.0	T65	40.0			110-140
354.0	T61	48.0	37.0	3.0	
354.0	T62	52.0	42.0	2.0	
355.0	T51	27.0			60-90
355.0	T6	37.0		1.5	75-105
355.0	T62	42.0			90-120
355.0	T7	36.0			70-100
355.0	T71	34.0	27.0		65-95
C355.0	T61	40.0	30.0	3.0	75-105
356.0	F	21.0		3.0	40-70
356.0	T51	25.0			55-85
356.0	T6	33.0	22.0	3.0	65-95
356.0	T7	25.0		3.0	60-90
356.0	T71	25.0		3.0	60-90
A356.0	T61	37.0	26.0	5.0	70-100
357.0	T6	45.0		3.0	75-105
A357.0	T61	45.0	36.0	3.0	85-115
359.0	T61	45.0	34.0	4.0	75-105
359.0	T62	47.0	38.0	3.0	85-115
443.0	F	21.0	7.0	2.0	30-60
B443.0	F	21.0	6.0	2.5	30-60
A444.0	T4	20.0		20.0	
513.0	F	22.0	12.0	2.5	45-75
535.0	F	35.0	18.0	8.0	60-90
705.0	T5	37.0	17.0	10.0	55-85
707.0	T7	45.0	35.0	3.0	80-110
711.0	T1	28.0	18.0	7.0	55-85
713.0	T5	32.0	22.0	4.0	60-90
850.0	T5	18.0		8.0	30-60
851.0	T5	17.0		3.0	30-60
851.0	T6	18.0		8.0	
852.0	T5	27.0		3.0	55-85

Source: Standards for Aluminum Sand and Permanent Mold Castings. Courtesy of the Aluminum Association.

[a] F indicates "as cast" condition.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A system of four-digit numerical designations for wrought aluminum and wrought aluminum alloys was adopted by the Aluminum Association in 1954. This system is used by the commercial producers and is similar to that used by the SAE, the difference being the addition of two prefix letters.

The first digit of the designation identifies the alloy type: 1) indicating an aluminum of 99.00 percent or greater purity; 2) copper; 3) manganese; 4) silicon; 5) magnesium; 6) magnesium and silicon; 7) zinc; 8) some element other than those aforementioned; and 9) unused (not assigned at present).

If the second digit in the designation is zero, it indicates that there is no special control on individual impurities; integers 1 through 9 indicate special control on one or more individual impurities.

In the 1000 series group for aluminum of 99.00 percent or greater purity, the last two of the four digits indicate to the nearest hundredth the amount of aluminum above 99.00 percent. Thus designation 1030 indicates 99.30 percent minimum aluminum. In the 2000 to 8000 series groups, the last two of the four digits have no significance but are used to identify different alloys in the group. At the time of adoption of this designation system, most of the existing commercial designation numbers were used for these last two digits; for example, 14S became 2014, 3S became 3003, and 75S became 7075. When new alloys are developed and are commercially used, these last two digits are assigned consecutively beginning with -01, skipping any numbers previously assigned at the time of initial adoption.

Experimental alloys are also designated in accordance with this system, but they are indicated by the prefix X, which is dropped upon standardization.

Table 7a shows the product forms and nominal compositions of common wrought aluminum alloys, and Table 7b lists typical mechanical properties of wrought aluminum alloys.

Table 7a. Nominal Compositions of Common Wrought Aluminum Alloys

	Alloying Elements — Aluminum and Normal Impurities Constitute Remainder												
Alloy	Si	Cu	Mn	Mg	Cr	Ni	Zn	Ti	Pb	Bi	V	Z	Fe
1050			99.50 percent minimum aluminum										
1060			99.60 percent minimum aluminum										
1100		0.12	99.00 percent minimum aluminum										
1145			99.45 percent minimum aluminum										
1175			99.75 percent minimum aluminum										
1200			99.00 percent minimum aluminum										
1230			99.30 percent minimum aluminum										
1235			99.35 percent minimum aluminum										
1345			99.45 percent minimum aluminum										
1350[a]			99.50 percent minimum aluminum										
2011		5.5							0.4	0.4			
2014	0.8	4.4	0.8	0.50									
2017	0.50	4.0	0.7	0.6									
2018		4.0		0.7		2.0							
2024		4.4	0.6	1.5									
2025	0.8	4.4	0.8										
2036		2.6	0.25	0.45									
2117		2.6		0.35									
2124		4.4	0.6	1.5									
2218		4.0		1.5		2.0							
2219		6.3	0.30					0.06			0.10	0.18	
2319		6.3	0.30					0.15			0.10	0.18	
2618	0.18	2.3		1.6		1.0		0.07					1.1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7a. *(Continued)* **Nominal Compositions of Common Wrought Aluminum Alloys**

	Alloying Elements — Aluminum and Normal Impurities Constitute Remainder												
Alloy	Si	Cu	Mn	Mg	Cr	Ni	Zn	Ti	Pb	Bi	V	Z	Fe
3003		0.12	1.2										
3004			1.2	1.0									
3005			1.2	0.40									
4032	12.2	0.9		1.0		0.9							
4043	5.2												
4045	10.0												
4047	12.0												
4145	10.0	4.0											
5005				0.8									
5050				1.4									
5052				2.5	0.25								
5056			0.12	5.0	0.12								
5083			0.7	4.4	0.15								
5086			0.45	4.0	0.15								
5183			0.8	4.8	0.15								
5252				2.5									
5254				3.5	0.25								
5356			0.12	5.0	0.12			0.13					
5456			0.8	5.1	0.12								
5457			0.30	1.0									
5554			0.8	2.7	0.12			0.12					
5556			0.8	5.1	0.12			0.12					
5652				2.5	0.25								
5654				3.5	0.25			0.10					
6003	0.7			1.2									
6005	0.8			0.50									
6053	0.7			1.2	0.25								
6061	0.6	0.28		1.0	0.20								
6066	1.4	1.0	0.8	1.1									
6070	1.4	0.28	0.7	0.8									
6101	0.50			0.6									
6105	0.8			0.62									
6151	0.9			0.6	0.25								
6201	0.7			0.8									
6253	0.7			1.2	0.25		2.0						
6262	0.6	0.28		1.0	0.09				0.6	0.6			
6351	1.0		0.6	0.6									
6463	0.40			0.7									
7005			0.45	1.4	0.13		4.5	0.04				0.14	
7008				1.0	0.18		5.0						
7049		1.6		2.4	0.16		7.7						
7050		2.3		2.2	6.2							0.12	
7072							1.0						
7075		1.6		2.5	0.23		5.6						
7108				1.0			5.0					0.18	
7178		2.0		2.8	0.23		6.8						
8017		0.15		0.03									0.7
8030 [b]		0.22											
8177				0.08									0.35

[a] Formerly designated EC.

[b] Boron 0.02 percent.

Source: Aluminum Standards and Data. Courtesy of the Aluminum Association.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7b. Typical Mechanical Properties of Wrought Aluminum Alloys

Alloy and Temper	Tension				Brinell Hardness Number (500 kg load, 10-mm ball)	Ultimate Shearing Strength (ksi)	Endurance Limit[a] (ksi)
	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 inches (%)				
	Ulti-mate	Yield	1/16-inch Thick Specimen	1/2-inch Diameter Specimen			
1060-O	10	4	43		19	7	3
1060-H12	12	11	16		23	8	4
1060-H14	14	13	12		26	9	5
1060-H16	16	15	8		30	10	6.5
1060-H18	19	18	6		35	11	6.5
1100-O	13	5	35	45	23	9	5
1100-H12	16	15	12	25	28	10	6
1100-H14	18	17	9	20	32	11	7
1100-H16	21	20	6	17	38	12	9
1100-H18	24	22	5	15	44	13	9
1350-O	12	4		[b]		8	
1350-H12	14	12				9	
1350-H14	16	14				10	
1350-H16	18	16				11	
1350-H19	27	24		[c]		15	7
2011-T3	55	43		15	95	32	18
2011-T8	59	45		12	100	35	18
2014-O	27	14		18	45	18	13
2014-T4, T451	62	42		20	105	38	20
2014-T6, T651	70	60		13	135	42	18
Alclad 2014-O	25	10	21			18	
Alclad 2014-T3	63	40	20			37	
Alclad 2014-T4, T451	61	37	22			37	
Alclad 2014-T6, T651	68	60	10			41	
2017-O	26	10		22	45	18	13
2017-T4, T451	62	40		22	105	38	18
2018-T61	61	46		12	120	39	17
2024-O	27	11	20	22	47	18	13
2024-T3	70	50	18		120	41	20
2024-T4, T351	68	47	20	19	120	41	20
2024-T361[d]	72	57	13		130	42	18
Alclad 2024-O	26	11	20			18	
Alclad 2024-T3	65	45	18			40	
Alclad 2024-T4, T351	64	42	19			40	
Alclad 2024-T361[d]	67	53	11			41	
Alclad 2024-T81, T851	65	60	6			40	
Alclad 2024-T861[d]	70	66	6			42	
2025-T6	58	37		19	110	35	18
2036-T4	49	28	24				18[e]
2117-T4	43	24		27	70	28	14
2218-T72	48	37		11	95	30	
2219-O	25	11	18				
2219-T42	52	27	20				
2219-T31, T351	52	36	17				
2219-T37	57	46	11				
2219-T62	60	42	10				15
2219-T81, T851	66	51	10				15
2219-T87	69	57	10				15

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Wrought Aluminum Alloys**

Alloy and Temper	Tension				Brinell Hardness Number (500 kg load, 10-mm ball)	Ultimate Shearing Strength (ksi)	Endurance Limit[a] (ksi)
	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 inches (%)				
	Ulti-mate	Yield	1/16-inch Thick Specimen	1/2-inch Diameter Specimen			
3003-O	16	6	30	40	28	11	7
3003-H12	19	18	10	20	35	12	8
3003-H14	22	21	8	16	40	14	9
3003-H16	26	25	5	14	47	15	10
3003-H18	29	27	4	10	55	16	10
Alclad 3003-O	16	6	30	40		11	
Alclad 3003-H12	19	18	10	20		12	
Alclad 3003-H14	22	21	8	16		14	
Alclad 3003-H16	26	25	5	14		15	
Alclad 3003-H18	29	27	4	10		16	
3004-O	26	10	20	25	45	16	14
3004-H32	31	25	10	17	52	17	15
3004-H34	35	29	9	12	63	18	15
3004-H36	38	33	5	9	70	20	16
3004-H38	41	36	5	6	77	21	16
Alclad 3004-O	26	10	20	25		16	
Alclad 3004-H32	31	25	10	17		17	
Alclad 3004-H34	35	29	9	12		18	
Alclad 3004-H36	38	33	5	9		20	
Alclad 3004-H38	41	36	5	6		21	
3105-O	17	8	24			12	
3105-H12	22	19	7			14	
3105-H14	25	22	5			15	
3105-H16	28	25	4			16	
3105-H18	31	28	3			17	
3105-H25	26	23	8			15	
4032-T6	55	46		9	120	38	16
5005-O	18	6	25		28	11	
5005-H12	20	19	10			14	
5005-H14	23	22	6			14	
5005-H16	26	25	5			15	
5005-H18	29	28	4			16	
5005-H32	20	17	11		36	14	
5005-H34	23	20	8		41	14	
5005-H36	26	24	6		46	15	
5005-H38	29	27	5		51	16	
5050-O	21	8	24		36	15	12
5050-H32	25	21	9		46	17	13
5050-H34	28	24	8		53	18	13
5050-H36	30	26	7		58	19	14
5050-H38	32	29	6		63	20	14
5052-O	28	13	25	30	47	18	16
5052-H32	33	28	12	18	60	20	17
5052-H34	38	31	10	14	68	21	18
5052-H36	40	35	8	10	73	23	19
5052-H38	42	37	7	8	77	24	20
5056-O	42	22		35	65	26	20
5056-H18	63	59		10	105	34	22
5056-H38	60	50		15	100	32	22
5083-O	42	21		22		25	
5083-H321, H116	46	33		16			23

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Wrought Aluminum Alloys**

Alloy and Temper	Tension				Brinell Hardness Number (500 kg load, 10-mm ball)	Ultimate Shearing Strength (ksi)	Endurance Limit[a] (ksi)
	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 inches (%)				
	Ulti-mate	Yield	1/16-inch Thick Specimen	1/2-inch Diameter Specimen			
5086-O	38	17	22			23	
5086-H32, H116	42	30	12				
5086-H34	47	37	10			27	
5086-H112	39	19	14				
5154-O	35	17	27		58	22	17
5154-H32	39	30	15		67	22	18
5154-H34	42	33	13		73	24	19
5154-H36	45	36	12		78	26	20
5154-H38	48	39	10		80	28	21
5154-H112	35	17	25		63		17
5252-H25	34	25	11		68	21	
5252-H38, H28	41	35	5		75	23	
5254-O	35	17	27		58	22	17
5254-H32	39	30	15		67	22	18
5254-H34	42	33	13		73	24	19
5254-H36	45	36	12		78	26	20
5254-H38	48	39	10		80	28	21
5254-H112	35	17	25		63		17
5454-O	36	17	22		62	23	
5454-H32	40	30	10		73	24	
5454-H34	44	35	10		81	26	
5454-H111	38	26	14		70	23	
5454-H112	36	18	18		62	23	
5456-O	45	23		24			
5456-H112	45	24		22			
5456-H321, H116	51	37		16	90	30	
5457-O	19	7	22		32	12	
5457-H25	26	23	12		48	16	
5457-H38, H28	30	27	6		55	18	
5652-O	28	13	25	30	47	18	16
5652-H32	33	28	12	18	60	20	17
5652-H34	38	31	10	14	68	21	18
5652-H36	40	35	8	10	73	23	19
5652-H38	42	37	7	8	77	24	20
5657-H25	23	20	12		40	14	
5657-H38, H28	28	24	7		50	15	
6061-O	18	8	25	30	30	12	9
6061-T4, T451	35	21	22	25	65	24	14
6061-T6, T651	45	40	12	17	95	30	14
Alclad 6061-O	17	7	25			11	
Alclad 6061-T4, T451	33	19	22			22	
Alclad 6061-T6, T651	42	37	12			27	
6063-O	13	7			25	10	8
6063-T1	22	13	20		42	14	9
6063-T4	25	13	22				
6063-T5	27	21	12		60	17	10
6063-T6	35	31	12		73	22	10
6063-T83	37	35	9		82	22	
6063-T831	30	27	10		70	18	
6063-T832	42	39	12		95	27	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7b. *(Continued)* **Typical Mechanical Properties of Wrought Aluminum Alloys**

Alloy and Temper	Tension				Brinell Hardness Number (500 kg load, 10-mm ball)	Ultimate Shearing Strength (ksi)	Endurance Limit[a] (ksi)
	Strength (ksi)		Elongation in 2 inches (%)				
	Ulti-mate	Yield	1/16-inch Thick Specimen	1/2-inch Diameter Specimen			
6066-O	22	12		18	43	14	
6066-T4, T451	52	30		18	90	29	
6066-T6, T651[b]	57	52		12	120	34	16
6070-T6	55	51	10			34	14
6101-H111	14	11					
6101-T6	32	28	15		71	20	
6262-T9	58	55		10	120	35	13
6351-T4	36	22	20				
6351-T6	45	41	14		95	29	13
6463-T1	22	13	20		42	14	10
6463-T5	27	21	12		60	17	10
6463-T6	35	31	12		74	22	10
7049-T73	75	65		12	135	44	
7049-T7352	75	63		11	135	43	
7050-T73510, T73511	72	63		12			
7050-T7451[f]	76	68		11		44	
7050-T7651	80	71		11		47	
7075-O	33	15	17	16	60	22	
7075-T6, T651	83	73	11	11	150	48	23
Alclad 7075-O	32	14	17			22	
Alclad 7075-T6, T651	76	67	11			46	
7178-O	33	15	15	16			
7178-T6, T651	88	78	10	11			
7178-T76, T7651	83	73		11			
Alclad 7178-O	32	14	16				
Alclad 7178-T6, T651	81	71	10				
8176-H24	17	14	15			10	

[a] Based on 500,000,000 cycles of completely reversed stress using the R. R. Moore type of machine and specimen.

[b] 1350-O wire should have an elongation of approximately 23 percent in 10 inches.

[c] 1350-H19 wire should have an elongation of approximately 1.5 percent in 10 inches.

[d] Tempers T361 and T861 were formerly designated T36 and T86, respectively.

[e] Based on 10^7 cycles using flexural type testing of sheet specimens.

[f] T7451, although not previously registered, has appeared in the literature and in some specifications as T73651.

The data given in this table are intended only as a basis for comparing alloys and tempers, and should not be specified as engineering requirements or used for design purposes. The indicated typical mechanical properties for all except O temper material are higher than the specified minimum properties. For O temper products, typical ultimate and yield values are slightly lower than specified (maximum) values.

Source: Aluminum Standards and Data. Courtesy of the Aluminum Association.

Heat-Treatability of Wrought Aluminum Alloys.—In high-purity form, aluminum is soft and ductile. Most commercial uses, however, require greater strength than pure aluminum affords. This extra strength is achieved in aluminum first by the addition of other elements to produce various alloys, which singly or in combination impart strength to the metal. Further strengthening is possible by means that classify the alloys roughly into two categories, non-heat-treatable and heat-treatable.

Non-heat-treatable alloys: The initial strength of alloys in this group depends upon the hardening effect of elements such as manganese, silicon, iron and magnesium, singly or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

in various combinations. The non-heat-treatable alloys are usually designated, therefore, in the 1000, 3000, 4000, or 5000 series. These alloys are work-hardenable, so further strengthening is made possible by various degrees of cold-working, denoted by the "H" series of tempers. Alloys containing appreciable amounts of magnesium when supplied in strain-hardened tempers are usually given a final elevated-temperature treatment called *stabilizing* for improving property stability.

Heat-treatable alloys: The initial strength of alloys in this group is enhanced by the addition of alloying elements such as copper, magnesium, zinc, and silicon. These elements singly or in various combinations show increasing solid solubility in aluminum with increasing temperature, so it is possible to subject them to thermal treatments that will impart pronounced strengthening.

The first step, called *heat treatment* or *solution heat treatment,* is an elevated-temperature process designed to put the soluble element in solid solution. This step is followed by rapid quenching, usually in water, which momentarily "freezes" the structure and for a short time renders the alloy very workable. Some fabricators retain this more workable structure by storing the alloys at below freezing temperatures until they can be formed. At room or elevated temperatures the alloys are not stable after quenching, however, and precipitation of the constituents from the supersaturated solution begins. After a period of several days at room temperature, termed *aging* or *room-temperature precipitation,* the alloy is considerably stronger. Many alloys approach a stable condition at room temperature, but some alloys, particularly those containing magnesium and silicon or magnesium and zinc, continue to age-harden for long periods of time at room temperature.

Heating for a controlled time at slightly elevated temperatures provides even further strengthening and property stabilization. This process is called *artificial aging* or *precipitation hardening.* By application of the proper combination of solution heat treatment, quenching, cold-working and artificial aging, the highest strengths are obtained.

Clad Aluminum Alloys.—The heat-treatable alloys in which copper or zinc are major alloying constituents are less resistant to corrosive attack than the majority of non-heat-treatable alloys. To increase their corrosion resistance in sheet and plate form, these alloys are often clad with high-purity aluminum, a low magnesium-silicon alloy, or an alloy containing 1 percent zinc. The cladding, usually from 2½ to 5 percent of the total thickness on each side, not only protects the composite due to its own inherently excellent corrosion resistance but also exerts a galvanic effect that further protects the core material.

Special composites, such as clad non-heat-treatable alloys for extra corrosion protection, for brazing purposes, or for special surface finishes, may be obtained. Some alloys in wire and tubular form are clad for similar reasons, and on an experimental basis extrusions also have been clad.

Aluminum Alloys, Wrought, Sheet.—*Physical Properties:* In sheet form, tensile strength varies from 35,000 psi (241 MPa) for soft temper to 62,000 (427 MPa) psi for heat-treated sheets, and the elongation in 2 inches (5.08 cm) from 12 to 18 percent. The yield strength of a heat-treated sheet is about 40,000 psi (276 MPa) minimum.

Characteristics of Principal Aluminum Alloy Series Groups.—*1000 series:* These alloys are characterized by high corrosion resistance, high thermal and electrical conductivity, low mechanical properties and good workability. Moderate increases in strength may be obtained by strain-hardening. Iron and silicon are the major impurities.

2000 series: Copper is the principal alloying element in this group. These alloys require solution heat treatment to obtain optimum properties; in the heat-treated condition mechanical properties are similar to, and sometimes exceed, those of mild steel. In some instances artificial aging is employed to further increase the mechanical properties. This treatment materially increases yield strength, with attendant loss in elongation; its effect on tensile (ultimate) strength is not as great. Alloys in the 2000 series have reduced corrosion resistance compared to most other aluminum alloys, and under certain

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

conditions they may be subject to intergranular corrosion. Therefore, these alloys in the form of sheet are usually clad with a high-purity alloy or a magnesium-silicon alloy of the 6000 series, which provides galvanic protection to the core material and thus greatly increases resistance to corrosion. Alloy 2024 is perhaps the best known and most widely used aircraft alloy.

3000 series: Manganese is the major alloying element of alloys in this group, which are generally non-heat-treatable. Because only a limited percentage of manganese, up to about 1.5 percent, can be effectively added to aluminum, it is used as a major element in only a few instances. One of these, however, is the popular 3003, used for moderate-strength applications requiring good workability.

4000 series: The major alloying element of this group is silicon, which can be added in sufficient quantities to cause substantial lowering of the melting point without producing brittleness in the resulting alloys. For these reasons aluminum-silicon alloys are used in welding wire and as brazing alloys where a lower melting point than that of the parent metal is required. Most alloys in this series are non-heat-treatable, but, when used in welding heat-treatable alloys, they will pick up some of the alloying constituents of the latter and so respond to heat treatment to a limited extent. The alloys containing appreciable amounts of silicon become dark gray when anodic oxide finishes are applied and hence are in demand for architectural applications.

5000 series: Magnesium is one of the most effective and widely used alloying elements for aluminum. When it is used as the major alloying element or with manganese, the result is a moderate to high strength non-heat-treatable alloy. Magnesium is considerably more effective than manganese as a hardener, about 0.8 percent magnesium being equal to 1.25 percent manganese, and it can be added in considerably higher quantities. Alloys in this series possess good welding characteristics and good resistance to corrosion in marine atmospheres. However, certain limitations should be placed on the amount of cold-work and on safe operating temperatures permissible for the higher magnesium content alloys (over about 3½ percent for operating temperatures over about 150°F or 66°C) to avoid susceptibility to stress corrosion.

6000 series: Alloys in this group contain silicon and magnesium in approximate proportions to form magnesium silicide, thus making them capable of being heat treated. The major alloy in this series is 6061, one of the most versatile of the heat-treatable alloys. Though not as strong as most of the 2000 or 7000 alloys, the magnesium-silicon (or magnesium-silicide) alloys possess good formability and corrosion resistance, with medium strength. Alloys in this heat-treatable group may be formed in the -T4 temper (solution heat treated but not artificially aged) and then reach full -T6 properties by artificial aging.

7000 series: Zinc is the major alloying element in this group, and when coupled with a smaller percentage of magnesium results in heat-treatable alloys of very high strength. Other elements, such as copper and chromium, are usually added in small quantities. A notable member of this group is 7075, which is among the highest strength aluminum alloys available and is used in air-frame structures and for highly stressed parts.

Type Metal.—Antimony gives to metals the property of expansion on solidification. Hence, it is used in type metal for casting type for the printing trades to insure the molds are completely filled. Type metals are generally made with from 5 to 25 percent of antimony, and with lead, tin and sometimes a small percentage of copper as the other alloying metals.

The compositions of a number of type metal alloys are as follows (figures given are percentages): lead 77.5, tin 6.5, antimony 16; lead 70, tin 10, antimony 18, copper 2; lead 63.2, tin 12, antimony 24, copper 0.8 ; lead 60.5, tin 14.5, antimony 24–25, copper 0.75; lead 60, tin 35, antimony 5; and lead 55.5, tin 40, antimony 4.5.

A high grade of type metal is composed of the following percentages: lead 50; tin 25; and antimony 25.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Magnesium Alloys

Magnesium Alloys.—Magnesium is the lightest of all structural metals. Silver-white in color, pure magnesium is relatively soft, so it is rarely used for structural purposes in the pure state. Principal metallurgical uses for pure magnesium are as an alloying element for aluminum and other metals; as a reducing agent in the extraction of such metals as titanium, zirconium, hafnium, and uranium; as a nodularizing agent in the manufacture of ductile iron; and as a sulfur removal agent in steel manufacture. Magnesium alloys are made by alloying up to about 10 percent of other metals and have low density and an excellent combination of mechanical properties, as shown in Table 8a, resulting in high strength-to-weight ratios.

Magnesium alloys are the easiest of all the structural metals to machine, and these alloys have very high weld efficiencies. Magnesium is readily processed by all the standard casting and fabrication techniques used in metalworking, especially by pressure die casting. Because the metal work hardens rapidly, cold forming is limited to mild deformation, but magnesium alloys have excellent working characteristics at temperatures between 300 and 500°F (149 and 260°C).

These alloys have relatively low elastic moduli, so they will absorb energy with good resistance to dents and high damping capacities. Fatigue strength also is good, particularly in the low-stress, high-cycle range. The alloys can be precipitation hardened, so mechanical properties can be improved by solution heat treatment and aging. Corrosion resistance was greatly improved recently, when methods were found to limit heavy metal impurities to "parts per million."

Applications of Magnesium Alloys.—Magnesium alloys are used in a wide variety of structural applications including industrial, materials handling, automotive, consumer-durable, and aerospace equipment. In industrial machinery, the alloys are used for parts that operate at high speeds, which must have light weight to allow rapid acceleration and minimize inertial forces. Materials handling equipment applications include hand trucks, dockboards, grain shovels, and gravity conveyors. Automotive applications include wheels, gearboxes, clutch housings, valve covers, and brake pedal and other brackets. Consumer durables include luggage, softball bats, tennis rackets, and housings for cameras and projectors. Their high strength-to-weight ratio suits magnesium alloys to use in a variety of aircraft structures, particularly helicopters. Very intricate shapes that are uneconomical to produce in other materials are often cast in magnesium, sometimes without draft. Wrought magnesium alloys are made in the form of bars, forgings, extrusions, wire, sheet, and plate.

Alloy and Temper Designation.—Magnesium alloys are designated by a standard four-part system established by the ASTM, and now also used by the SAE, that indicates both chemical composition and temper. Designations begin with two letters representing the two alloying elements that are specified in the greatest amount; these letters are arranged in order of decreasing percentage of alloying elements or alphabetically if they are present in equal amounts. The letters are followed by digits representing the respective composition percentages, rounded off to whole numbers, and then by a serial letter indicating some variation in composition of minor constituents. The final part, separated by a hyphen, consists of a letter followed by a number, indicating the temper condition. The letters that designate the more common alloying elements are A, aluminum; E, rare earths; H, thorium; K, zirconium; M, manganese; Q, silver; S, silicon; T, tin; Z, zinc.

The letters and numbers that indicate the temper designation are F, as fabricated; O, annealed; H10, H11, strain hardened; H23, H24, H26, strain hardened and annealed; T4, solution heat treated; T5, artificially aged; T6, solution heat treated and artificially aged; and T8, solution heat treated, cold-worked, and artificially aged.

The nominal composition and typical properties of magnesium alloys are listed in Table 8a and Table 8b.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8a. Nominal Composition of Magnesium Alloys

Alloy	Al	Zn	Mn[a]	Si	Zr	Ag	Th	Y	Rare Earth
Sand and Permanent Mold (Gravity Die) Castings									
AM100A-T61	10.0		0.10						
AZ63A-T6	6.0	3.0	0.15						
AZ81A-T4	7.6	0.7	0.13						
AZ91C-T6	8.7	0.7	0.13						
AZ91E-T6[b]	8.7	0.7	0.17						
AZ92A-T6	9.0	2.0	0.10						
EZ33A-T5		2.6			0.8				3.3
HK31A-T6		0.3			0.7		3.3		
HZ32A-T6		2.1			0.8		3.3		0.1
K1A-F					0.7				
QE22A-T6					0.7	2.5			2.2
QH21A-T6		0.2			0.7		1.1		1.1
ZE41A-T5		4.3	0.15		0.7				1.3
ZE63A-T6		5.8			0.7				2.6
ZH62A-T5		5.7			0.8		1.8		
ZK51A-T5		4.6			0.8				
ZK61A-T6		6.0			0.8				
WE54A-F					0.5			5.3	3.5
Pressure Die Castings									
AZ91A-F	9.0	0.7	0.13						
AZ91B-F[c]	9.0	0.7	0.13						
AZ91D-F[b]	9.0	0.7	0.15						
AM60A-F	6.0		0.13						
AM60B-F[b]	6.0		0.25						
AS41A-F[d]	4.3		0.35	1.0					
Extruded Bars and Shapes									
AZ10A-F	1.3	0.4	0.20						
AZ31B-F	3.0	1.0	0.20						
AZ31C-F	3.0	1.0	0.15						
AZ61A-F	6.5	1.0	0.15						
AZ80A-T5	8.5	0.5	0.12						
HM31A-F			1.20				3.0		
M1A-F			1.20						
ZK40A-T5		4.0			0.45				
ZK60A-F		5.5			0.45				
Sheet and Plate									
AZ31B-H24	3.0	1.0	0.20						
AZ31C-H24	3.0	1.0	0.15						
HK31A-H24					0.7		3.3		
HM21A-T8			0.80				2.0		

[a] All manganese values are minimum.
[b] High-purity alloy, Ni, Fe, and Cu severely restricted.
[c] 0.30 percent maximum residual copper is allowed.
[d] For battery applications.

Source: Metals Handbook, 9th edition, Vol. 2, American Society for Metals.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8b. Typical Room-Temperature Mechanical Properties of Magnesium Alloys

Alloy	Tensile Strength (ksi)	Yield Strength			Elongation in 2 in. (%)	Shear Strength (ksi)	Rockwell Hardness B[a]
		Tensile (ksi)	Compressive (ksi)	Bearing (ksi)			
Sand and Permanent Mold (Gravity Die) Castings							
AM100A-T61	40	22	22	68	1		69
AZ63A-T6	40	14	14	44	12	18	55
AZ81A-T4	40	12	12	35	15	21	55
AZ91C-T6	40	21	21	52	6	21	70
AZ91E-T6[b]	40	21	21	52	6	21	70
AZ92A-T6	40	22	22	65	3	21	81
EZ33A-T5	23	16	16	40	3	20	50
HK31A-T6	32	15	15	40	8	21	55
HZ32A-T6	27	13	13	37	4	20	55
K1A-F	26	8	8	18	19	8	
QE22A-T6	38	28	28		3		80
QH21A-T6	40	30	30		4	22	
ZE41A-T5	30	20	20	51	4	23	62
ZE63A-T6	44	28	28		10		60-85
ZH62A-T5	35	22	22	49	4	23	70
ZK51A-T5	30	20	20	51	4	22	62
ZK61A-T6	45	28	28		10		
WE54A-F	40	29	29		4		
Pressure Die Castings							
AZ91A-F	34	23	23		3	20	63
AZ91B-FAZ91B-F[c]	34	23	23		3	20	63
AZ91D-F[b]	34	23	23		3	20	63
AM60A-F	32	19	19		8		
AM60B-F[b]	32	19	19		8		
AS41A-F[d]	31	20	20		6		
Extruded Bars and Shapes							
AZ10A-F	35	21	10		10		
AZ31B-F	38	29	14	33	15	19	49
AZ31C-F	38	29	14	33	15	19	49
AZ61A-F	45	33	19	41	16	20	60
AZ80A-T5	55	40	35		7	24	82
HM31A-F	42	33	27	50	10	22	
M1A-F	37	26	12	28	12	18	44
ZK40A-T5	40	37	20		4		
ZK60A-F	51	41	36	59	11	26	88
Sheet and Plate							
AZ31B-H24	42	32	26	47	15	23	73
AZ31C-H24	42	32	26	47	15	23	73
HK31A-H24	38	30	23	41	9		68
HM21A-T8	34	25	19	39	11	18	

[a] 500 kg load, 10-mm ball.
[b] High-purity alloy, Ni, Fe, and Cu severely restricted.
[c] 0.30 percent maximum residual copper is allowed.
[d] For battery applications.

Source: Metals Handbook, 9th edition, Vol. 2, American Society for Metals.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Nickel and Nickel Alloys

Characteristics of Nickel and Nickel Alloys.—Nickel is a white metal, similar in some respects to iron but with good oxidation and corrosion resistances. Nickel and its alloys are used in a variety of applications, usually requiring specific corrosion resistance or high strength at high temperature. Some nickel alloys exhibit very high toughness; others have very high strength, high proportional limits, and high moduli compared with steel. Commercially, pure nickel has good electrical, magnetic, and magnetostrictive properties. Nickel alloys are strong, tough, and ductile at cryogenic temperatures, and several of the nickel-based superalloys have good strength at temperatures up to 2000°F (1095°C).

Most wrought nickel alloys can be hot- and cold-worked, machined, and welded successfully; an exception is the most highly alloyed nickel compound—forged nickel-based superalloys—in which these operations are more difficult. The casting alloys can be machined or ground, and many can be welded and brazed.

There are five categories into which the common nickel-based metals and alloys can be separated:the pure nickel and high nickel (over 94 percent Ni) alloys; the nickel-molybdenum and nickel-molybdenum-chromium superalloys, which are specifically for corrosive or high-temperature, high-strength service; the nickel-molybdenum-chromium-copper alloys, which are also specified for corrosion applications; the nickel-copper (Monel) alloys, which are used in actively corrosive environments; and the nickel-chromium and nickel-chromium-iron superalloys, which are noted for their strength and corrosion resistance at high temperatures.

Descriptions and compositions of some commonly used nickel and high nickel alloys are shown in Table 9.

Titanium and Titanium Alloys

Titanium is a gray, light metal with a better strength-to-weight ratio than any other metal at room temperature and is used in corrosive environments or in applications that take advantage of its light weight, good strength, and nonmagnetic properties. Titanium is available commercially in many alloys, but multiple requirements can be met by a single grade of the commercially pure metal. The alloys of titanium are of three metallurgical types: alpha, alpha-beta, and beta, with these designations referring to the predominant phases present in the microstructure.

Titanium has a strong affinity for hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen gases, which tend to embrittle the material; carbon is another embrittling agent. Titanium is outstanding in its resistance to strongly oxidizing acids, aqueous chloride solutions, moist chlorine gas, sodium hypochlorite, and seawater and brine solutions. Nearly all nonaircraft applications take advantage of this corrosion resistance. Its uses in aircraft engine compressors and in airframe structures are based on both its high corrosion resistance and high strength-to-weight ratio.

Procedures for forming titanium are similar to those for forming stainless steel. Titanium and its alloys can be machined and abrasive ground; however, sharp tools and continuous feed are required to prevent work hardening. Tapping is difficult because the metal galls.

Titanium castings can be produced by investment or graphite mold methods; however, because of the highly reactive nature of the metal in the presence of oxygen, casting must be done in a vacuum.

Generally, titanium is welded by gas-tungsten arc or plasma arc techniques, and the key to successful welding lies in proper cleaning and shielding. The alpha-beta titanium alloys can be heat treated for higher strength, but they are not easily welded. Beta and alpha-beta alloys are designed for formability; they are formed in the soft state, and then heat treated for high strength.

The properties of some wrought titanium alloys are shown in Table 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Common Cast and Wrought Nickel and High Nickel Alloys — Designations, Compositions, Typical Properties, and Uses

UNS Designation	Description and Common Name	Nominal Composition (Weight %)	Typical Room-Temperature Properties			Form	Typical Uses
			Tensile (ksi)	0.2% Yield (ksi)	Elong. (%)		
N02200	Commercially pure Ni (Nickel 200)	99.5 Ni	67	22	47	Wrought	Food processing and chemical equipment.
N04400	Nickel-copper alloy (Monel 400)	65 Ni, 32 Cu, 2 Fe	79	30	48	Wrought	Valves, pumps, shafts, marine fixtures and fasteners, electrical and petroleum refining equipment.
N05500	Age-hardened Ni-Cu alloy (Monel K 500)	65 Ni, 30 Cu, 2 Fe, 3 Al + Ti	160	111	24	Wrought	Pump shafts, impellers, springs, fasteners, and electronic and oil well components.
N06002	Ni-Cr Alloy (Hastelloy X)	60 Ni, 22 Cr, 19 Fe, 9 Mo, 0.6 W	114	52	43	Wrought	Turbine and furnace parts, petrochemical equipment.
N06003	Ni-Cr alloy (Nichrome V)	80 Ni, 20 Cr	100	60	30	Wrought	Heating elements, resistors, electronic parts.
N06333	Ni-Cr alloy (RA 333)	48 Ni, 25 Cr, 18 Fe, 3 Mo, 3 W, 3 Co	100	50	50	Wrought	Turbine and furnace parts.
N06600	Ni-Cr alloy (Inconel 600)	75 Ni, 15 Cr, 10 Fe	90	36	47	Wrought	Chemical, electronic, food processing and heat-treating equipment; nuclear steam generator tubing.
N06625	Ni-Cr alloy (Inconel 625)	61 Ni, 21 Cr, 2 Fe, 9 Mo, 4 Nb	142	86	42	Wrought	Turbine parts, marine and chemical equipment.
N07001	Age-hardened Ni-Cr alloy (Waspalloy)	58 Ni, 20 Cr, 14 Co, 4 Mo, 3 Al, 1.3 Ti, B, Zr	185	115	25	Wrought	Turbine parts.
N07500	Age-hardened Ni-Cr alloy (Udimet 500)	52 Ni, 18 Cr, 19 Co, 4 Mo, 3 Al, 3 Ti, B, Zr	176	110	16	Wrought & Cast	Turbine parts.
N07750	Age-hardened Ni-Cr alloy (Inconel X-750)	73 Ni, 16 Cr, 7 Fe, 2.5 Ti, 1 Al, 1 Nb	185	130	20	Wrought	Turbine parts, nuclear reactor springs, bolts, extrusion dies, forming tools.
N08800	Ni-Cr-Fe alloy (Incoloy 800)	32 Ni, 21 Cr, 46 Fe, 0.4 Ti, 0.4 Al	87	42	44	Wrought	Heat exchangers, furnace parts, chemical and power plant piping.
N08825	Ni-Cr-Fe alloy (Incoloy 825)	42 Ni, 22 Cr, 30 Fe, 3 Mo, 2 Cu, 1 Ti, Al	91	35	50	Wrought	Heat-treating and chemical handling equipment.
N09901	Age-hardened Ni-Cr-Fe alloy (Incoloy 901)	43 Ni, 12 Cr, 36 Fe, 6 Mo, 3 Ti + Al, B	175	130	14	Wrought	Turbine parts.
N10001	Ni-Mo alloy (Hastelloy B)	67 Ni, 28 Mo, 5 Fe	121	57	63	Wrought	Chemical handling equipment.
N10004	Ni-Cr-Mo alloy (Hastelloy W)	59 Ni, 5 Cr, 25 Mo, 5 Fe, 0.6 V	123	53	55	Wrought	Weld wire for joining dissimilar metals, engine repair and maintenance.
N10276	Ni-Cr-Mo alloy (Hastelloy C-276)	57 Ni, 15 Cr, 16 Mo, 5 Fe, 4 W, 2 Co	116	52	60	Wrought	Chemical handling equipment.
N13100	Ni-Co alloy (IN 100)	60 Ni, 10 Cr, 15 Co, 3 Mo, 5.5 Al, 5 Ti, 1 V, B, Zr	147	123	9	Cast	Turbine parts.

For strength in MPa, multipy strength in ksi by 6.8947572

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Mechanical Properties of Wrought Titanium Alloys

Nominal Composition (%)	Condition	Tensile Strength (ksi)	Room Temperature		Reduction in Area (%)
			Yield Strength (ksi)	Elongation (%)	
Commercially Pure					
99.5 Ti	Annealed	48	35	30	55
99.2 Ti	Annealed	63	50	28	50
99.1 Ti	Annealed	75	65	25	45
99.0 Ti	Annealed	96	85	20	40
99.2 Ti[a]	Annealed	63	50	28	50
98.9 Ti[b]	Annealed	75	65	25	42
Alpha Alloys					
5 Al, 2.5 Sn	Annealed	125	117	16	40
5 Al, 2.5 Sn (low O_2)	Annealed	117	108	16	
Near Alpha Alloys					
8 Al, 1 Mo, 1 V	Duplex annealed	145	138	15	28
11 Sn, 1 Mo, 2.25 Al, 5.0 Zr, 1 Mo, 0.2 Si	Duplex annealed	160	144	15	35
6 Al, 2 Sn, 4 Zr, 2 Mo	Duplex annealed	142	130	15	35
5 Al, 5 Sn, 2 Zr, 2 Mo, 0.25 Si	975°C (1785°F) (½ h), AC 595°C (1100°F)(2 h), AC	152	140	13	
6 Al, 2 Nb, 1 Ta, 1 Mo	As rolled 2.5 cm (1 in.) plate	124	110	13	34
6 Al, 2 Sn, 1.5 Zr, 1 Mo, 0.35 Bi, 0.1 Si	Beta forge + duplex anneal	147	137	11	
Alpha-Beta Alloys					
8 Mn	Annealed	137	125	15	32
3 Al, 2.5 V	Annealed	100	85	20	
6 Al, 4 V	Annealed	144	134	14	30
	Solution + age	170	160	10	25
6 Al, 4 V (low O_2)	Annealed	130	120	15	35
6 Al, 6 V, 2 Sn	Annealed	155	145	14	30
	Solution + age	185	170	10	20
7 Al, 4 Mo	Solution + age	160	150	16	22
6 Al, 2 Sn, 4 Zr, 6 Mo	Solution + age	184	170	10	23
6 Al, 2 Sn, 2 Zr, 2 Mo, 2 Cr, 0.25 Si	Solution + age	185	165	11	33
10 V, 2 Fe, 3 Al	Solution + age	185	174	10	19
Beta Alloys					
13 V, 11 Cr, 3 Al	Solution + age	177	170	8	
	Solution + age	185	175	8	
8 Mo, 8 V, 2 Fe, 3 Al	Solution + age	190	180	8	
3 Al, 8 V, 6 Cr, 4 Mo, 4 Zr	Solution + age	210	200	7	
	Annealed	128	121	15	
11.5 Mo, 6 Zr, 4.5 Sn	Solution + age	201	191	11	

[a] Also contains 0.2 Pd.
[b] Also contains 0.8 Ni and 0.3 Mo.

Source: Titanium Metals Corp. of America and RMI Co.
For strength in MPa, multipy strength in ksi by 6.8947572

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CORROSION

Corrosion is a chemical or electrochemical process by which a material and/or its properties deteriorate due to interaction with one or more external substances. Environmental conditions, surface conditions, and component stresses can initiate or accelerate corrosion. Effects of corrosion are many, ranging from merely aesthetic changes to interference with electrical connections and weakening of a structural or mechanical part that can lead to failure. Of particular concern are common material changes, such as pitting corrosion and stress corrosion cracking, which are difficult to detect, yet can result in sudden component failure.

Corrosion Types and Methods of Prevention

Consideration of material properties—including chemical compatibility, galvanic potential, and reaction to anticipated environmental conditions—is important in minimizing corrosion and maximizing the design life of metal and alloy parts and assemblies. However, the mechanisms of corrosion can result in a wide variety of corrosion patterns and processes, and different types and mechanisms of corrosion may occur simultaneously. Thus, corrosion protection often requires a multipronged approach.

Uniform (General) Corrosion.—This process describes either a chemical or electrochemical attack that uniformly affects an entire exposed surface. The corroding part will gradually thin; corrosive substances may accumulate on the surface. Usually, uniform corrosion can be predicted and measured, so designers can provide for and monitor it to ensure safety.

Methods of preventing general corrosion include using appropriate materials, passivation, polishing, coatings and other barriers, and environmental controls, as well as reducing stresses on components. To prevent corrosive interaction between incompatible materials, parts can be separated electrically from each other or electrolyte solutions with gaskets or coatings. Gaskets or sealants also can minimize moisture intrusion into joints to further reduce corrosion, though materials interactions should be investigated. For instance, graphite, often found in carbon black rubber and gaskets, should not be used in contact with stainless steels in seawater.

Chemical Corrosion.—This type of corrosion generally refers to various chemical interactions. In most cases, damage results from the destructive reaction of a contacting substance directly acting on and degrading a material, for instance, an acid affecting a metal. Chemical corrosion also may result in oxide formation or deposition of other surface coatings.

Dry and High-Temperature Corrosion.—Dry corrosion, also called *scaling,* generally is caused by chemicals (gases, molten salts, or solids) acting on a surface in a dry atmosphere (i.e., no aqueous electrolyte), though particulate abrasion also may be involved. Material selection and effective environmental controls can significantly reduce damage; numerous specialized protective coatings also are available.

High-temperature corrosion takes place when dry corrosion occurs and/or accelerates due to a high-temperature environment. Critical temperature and rate of corrosion depend on the materials involved and environmental conditions. As this form of corrosion may become a risk at temperatures as low as 194° F (90° C) in some applications (such as oil pipelines), it may simply be identified as dry corrosion. Common results of high-temperature corrosion include oxidation (in air, this is a problem above the material's scaling temperature), carburization, chlorination, and sulfidation.

Electrochemical Corrosion.—This occurs when an electrically active material is exposed to an electrolyte, forming an electrical cell in which ionization occurs and electrons move from an anodic (active) material to a cathodic (noble) material. As a result, the anode corrodes through oxidation, while the cathode absorbs the free electrons through a reduction reaction. With sufficient oxygen, the cathode often will develop a protective

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

oxide layer. Areas of oxygen deprivation can become anodic, resulting in hidden pockets of accelerated corrosion.

Wet and damp/atmospheric corrosion occur when water and contaminants in the environment form an electrolyte liquid or damp film on the surface of a part, facilitating electrochemical corrosion. Wet corrosion rates generally are highest, while atmospheric corrosion rates depend on the amount and type of moisture.

To minimize electrochemical corrosion, the best course of action is to avoid mixing different metals in an assembly and match the potentials of the part(s) to the environment. The next lines of defense are barriers and protective area ratios (see *Galvanic Corrosion*, below). When those methods are not enough, it is common practice to add one or more auxiliary anodes or cathodes to the system. Current from an external DC power supply may be applied to change the electrical potential of the target material and control the flow of electrons. Some systems can monitor and optimize conditions in the cell by using a reference electrode.

Cathodic Protection: Adding one or more sacrificial anodes (either a part or a coating) to a system can protect a part that otherwise would be the anode in an electrochemical reaction. Buried or submerged metal pipes are commonly protected passively by the addition of a sacrificial magnesium anode placed nearby and connected by a wire. An impressed current system includes a DC power supply to supply current, which improves system performance and extends anode life. Cathodic protection is broadly applicable for all metals and alloys, but it is often not suitable for corrosive environments and can accelerate hydrogen embrittlement.

Anodic Protection: This newer method employs additional cathodes and an applied current to shift the target material's potential into passive range. Anodic protection applies to corrosive environments and can be achieved with much lower current density than cathodic protection would require. This method is limited to materials that exhibit active-passive behavior (material surfaces can change from active to passive when exposed to oxidizers or applied current). Steel, titanium, and nickel alloys are included in this group.

Galvanic Corrosion.—In this electrochemical corrosion process, sometimes called *bimetallic corrosion*, dissimilar metals or alloys interact when electrically coupled by a conductive fluid. If the two metals or alloys have different electrochemical potentials, current will flow from the more active (anodic) metal to the more noble (cathodic) metal. In this galvanic couple, the anode will experience dissolution (usually oxidation), while the cathode will experience reduction. In practical terms, the anode will corrode faster or differently than it would alone in the electrolyte, and the cathode usually will be protected. The metals or alloys usually are in direct contact with each other, but this is not necessary for corrosion to occur—it can expand into the entire wetted area if the fluid is highly conductive. Parts in direct contact will experience the most corrosion; as separation between parts increases, corrosion decreases.

Intensity of the corrosion process depends on differences in electrochemical potential between two metals, distance between the metals, wetted surface areas of the parts, and conductivity of the surrounding fluid. Other factors include oxygenation, fluid pH, metal composition and variations, presence of films or deposits, passive film stability, and exposure of metals to processes such as cold-working or welding. Corrosion often will intensify as oxygen levels in the electrolyte drop, and oxygen depletion frequently occurs in crevices and other stagnant areas.

Galvanic Compatibility: The US military published empirical compatibility information in MIL-STD-889B, "Dissimilar Metals." Data in Table 1 represents those results. Because many factors influence galvanic corrosion, this data should be used only as a general guide.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Galvanic Compatibility of Metals in Select Environments

			Active (Anodic) → *Noble (Cathodic)* Metal or Alloy																		
	Metal or Alloy		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T
Active (Anodic)	Magnesium	A	C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Zinc	B		C,C,C	C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Cadmium, Beryllium	C			C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Aluminum, Al-Zn, Al-Mg	D				C,C,C	C,C,C	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Aluminum-Copper	E					C,C,C	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Carbon Steels, Low-Alloy Steels	F						C,C,C	C,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	C,C,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Lead	G							C,C,C	C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	I,I,I	C,I,I	C,I,I	C,I,I	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,I,I
	Tin, Tin-Lead, Indium	H								C,C,C	I,I,I	C,I,I	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,C	C,I,C	C,C,C	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Martensitic Stainless Steels (includes 420), Ferritic Stainless Steels	I									C,C,C	C,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	C,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I
	Chromium, Molybdenum, Tungsten	J										C,C,C	C,C,C	C,C,I	C,I,I	I,I,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Austenitic Stainless Steels (includes 200 and 300 Series), PH Stainless Steels, Super Strength Stainless Steels, Heat-Resistant Stainless Steel	K											C,C,C	I,I,I	I,I,I	I,I,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Lead Brass, Bronze	L												C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,C I	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Low Copper Brass, Low Copper Bronze	M													C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,I,I
	High Copper Brass, High Copper Bronze	N														C,C,C	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,C,I	C,I,I	C,I,I
	Copper-High Nickel, Monel	O															C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Nickel, Cobalt	P																C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Titanium	Q																	C,C,C	C,C,I	C,C,I	C,C,I
	Silver	R																		C,C,C	C,C,C	C,C,I
Noble (Cathodic)	Palladium, Rhodium, Gold, Platinum	S																			C,C,C	C,C,C
	Graphite	T																				C,C,C

Values
I = Incompatible (risk of significant galvanic interaction)
C = Compatible (negligible galvanic interaction likely)

Position of Compatibility Values (1,2,3)
1 = Industrial atmosphere
2 = Marine atmosphere
3 = Seawater immersion

Example: C,C,I = Compatible in industrial atmosphere (1)
Compatible in marine atmosphere (2)
Incompatible in seawater immersion (3)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Selecting metals with similar electrochemical potentials usually minimizes galvanic corrosion. One method of comparing potentials involves referencing a *galvanic series*. While it should be representative of anticipated environmental conditions, this tool is not used to predict corrosion rates, but rather provides a qualitative evaluation of coupled metal behavior.

To develop a series, a reference half-cell and samples of the target metals are immersed together in an electrolyte solution chosen and circulated to match the expected environmental conditions. Over time, potentials of the target metals are measured relative to the reference half-cell. There are several standard reference half-cell compositions that will yield different values; the appropriate reference is compatible with the electrolyte. A useful standard is ASTM G82-98 (2014), "Standard Guide for Development and Use of a Galvanic Series for Predicting Galvanic Corrosion Performance."

Most published galvanic series data applies to specific flowing seawater environment conditions. While saltwater is highly conductive, freshwater has low conductivity, and dynamic electrolyte conditions will greatly affect potential measurements. Therefore, for critical applications, it is good practice to develop application-specific series data, rather than using published galvanic series information.

For examples of seawater applications, refer to Table 2, which is based on Army Missile Command Report RS-TR-67-11, "Practical Galvanic Series." Materials closer together along the arrow in the series have less corrosion-inducing potential difference between them in that environment. However, use this data with caution in predicting whether corrosion will be a risk. This series indicates which material will be the anode in a couple, though polarity reversals can occur in which a metal normally anodic to another will become cathodic to that same metal. Examples include high-temperature reversals of zinc/iron, aluminum/iron, and aluminum/zinc.

Table 2. Sample Galvanic Series, General Seawater Environment

Active (Anodic)

Magnesium	Stainless Steel 410 (active)	Stainless Steel 201 (active)
Mg alloy AZ-31B	Copper (plated, cast, or wrought)	Carpenter 20 (active)
Mg alloy HK-31A	Nickel (plated)	Stainless Steel 321 (active)
Zinc (hot-dip, die cast, or plated)	Chromium (plated)	Stainless Steel 316 (active)
Beryllium (hot-pressed)	Tantalum	Stainless Steel 309 (active)
Aluminum 7072 clad on 7075	AM350 (active)	Stainless Steel 17-7PH (passive)
Aluminum 2014-T3	Stainless Steel 310 (active)	Silicon Bronze 655
Aluminum 1160-H14	Stainless Steel 301 (active)	Stainless Steel 304 (passive)
Aluminum 7079-T6	Stainless Steel 304 (active)	Stainless Steel 301 (passive)
Cadmium (plated)	Stainless Steel 430 (active)	Stainless Steel 321 (passive)
Uranium	Stainless Steel 410 (active)	Stainless Steel 201 (passive)
Aluminum 218 (die cast)	Stainless Steel 17-7PH (active)	Stainless Steel 286 (passive)
Aluminum 5052-0	Tungsten	Stainless Steel 316L (passive)
Aluminum 5052-H12	Niobium (columbium) 1% Zr	AM355 (active)
Aluminum 5456-0, H353	Brass, Yellow, 268	Stainless Steel 202 (passive)
Aluminum 5052-H32	Uranium 8% Mo	Carpenter 20 (passive)
Aluminum 1100-0	Brass, Naval, 464	AM355 (passive)
Aluminum 3003-H25	Yellow Brass	A286 (passive)
Aluminum 6061-T6	Muntz Metal 280	Titanium 5A1, 2.5 Sn
Aluminum A360 (die cast)	Brass (plated)	Titanium 13V, 11Cr, 3Al (annealed)
Aluminum 7075-T6	Nickel-Silver (18% Ni)	Titanium 6Al, 4V (solution treated and aged)
Aluminum 6061-0	Stainless Steel 316L (active)	Titanium 6Al, 4V (anneal)
Indium	Bronze 220	Titanium 8Mn
Aluminum 2014-0	Copper 110	Titanium 13V, 11Cr 3Al (solution heat treated and aged)
Aluminum 2024-T4	Red Brass	Titanium 75A
Aluminum 5052-H16	Stainless Steel 347 (active)	AM350 (passive)
Tin (plated)	Molybdenum (commercial pure)	Silver
Stainless Steel 430 (active)	Copper-Nickel 715	Gold
Lead	Admiralty Brass	Graphite
Steel 1010	Stainless Steel 202 (active)	
Iron (cast)	Bronze, Phosphor 534 (B-1)	
	Monel 400	

Noble (Cathodic)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Another galvanic compatibility guide is an *anodic index*. Table 3 is an example based on US military specification MIL-F-14072, "Finishes for Ground Based Electronic Equipment." This table shows electrochemical potentials normalized relative to a gold reference. Subtract one index value from another to determine the electrochemical potential difference between the metals. The standard recommends differential limits for three types of non-immersed application environments (controlled, normal, and harsh). Again, use caution when referring to any anodic index, because, as with a galvanic series, actual conditions can significantly change the corrosion behavior of a galvanic couple.

Table 3. Anodic Index (Gold Reference)

Metals and Alloys	Anodic Index (V)	
Gold, Gold-Platinum Alloys, Wrought Platinum	−0.00	*Cathodic (Noble)*
Rhodium Plated on Silver-Plated Copper	−0.10	
Silver, High Silver Alloys	−0.15	
Nickel, Monel, High Nickel-Copper Alloys, Titanium Alloys	−0.30	
Copper, Low Brasses or Bronzes, Silver Solder, High Copper-Nickel-Zinc Alloys, Nickel-Chromium Alloys	−0.35	
Yellow Brasses and Bronzes	−0.40	
High Brasses and Bronzes, Naval Brass, Muntz Metal	−0.45	
18% Chromium-type Stainless Steels (includes 300 Series)	−0.50	
Chromium Plated, Tin Plated, 12% Chromium-type Stainless Steels (some 400 Series Steels)	−0.60	
Tin Plate, Tin-Lead Solder, Terneplate (Lead-Tin Alloy)	−0.65	
Lead, High Lead Alloys	−0.70	
2000 Series Wrought Aluminum	−0.75	
Plain Carbon Steels, Low Alloy Steels, Wrought Iron, Gray Malleable Iron	−0.85	
Wrought Aluminum Alloys other than 2000 Series, Cast Aluminum-Silicon Alloys	−0.90	
Cast Aluminum Alloys other than Silicon Type, Cadmium, Cadmium Chromate	−0.95	
Hot-Dip Zinc Plate, Galvanized Steel	−1.20	
Wrought Zinc, Zinc Die-Casting Alloys, Zinc Plate	−1.25	
Magnesium, Magnesium Alloys	−1.75	*Anodic (Active)*
Beryllium	−1.85	

Evaluation of Galvanic Couples in Various Environments

Environmental Conditions	Maximum Differential (V)
Controlled: Temperature and humidity are controlled, as in laboratory or office spaces.	0.50
Normal: Industrial environments like warehouses where temperature and humidity are not controlled.	0.25
Harsh: Outdoors, high humidity, or salt exposure environments.	0.15

Note that the "Electrochemical Series," also known as the "Electromotive Force (EMF) Series," which ranks metals with respect to inherent reactivity, from active to noble, depends on theoretical, static conditions. Therefore, galvanic corrosion of metals listed is likely to vary in real-world environments.

Protective Area Ratios for Galvanic Couples: The wetted cathode/anode area ratio for parts in contact has a significant effect on the rate of galvanic corrosion: if the wetted cathode is large and the wetted anode is small (high ratio), corrosion is intensified; if the cathode is small and the anode is large (low ratio), corrosion slows. Protective area ratios can offset large potential differences between coupled metals. This effect makes it possible to use stainless steel screws to anchor large aluminum parts in conductive environments. By contrast, use of zinc or galvanized fasteners to secure large stainless steel parts will result in intense fastener corrosion in the presence of moisture. When choosing which part to coat in a galvanic couple, coat the more noble (cathodic) part; if only the more active metal (anodic) is coated, intense corrosion can occur at sites of small coating defects due to the resulting high area ratio.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Effects of Corrosion

Corrosion can result in many different effects on a material. The following sections describe some common effects on materials induced at least in part or enhanced by corrosion, as well as mitigation methods.

Crevice Corrosion.—In small gaps, holes, and crevices, such as those between contacting parts, the fluid medium can be stagnant and undergo chemical changes with oxygen depletion. This corrosion is difficult to detect due to its location. Where possible, it helps to eliminate features that can trap fluid, use full welds instead of fasteners, and seal joints with grease or nonporous gaskets.

Pitting Corrosion.—Localized pitting corrosion is difficult to detect and can be destructive and unpredictable. Pits characteristic of this process may be small or large, may exist singly or in groups, and may be masked by corrosion-protection products. Pitting corrosion can be initiated by damage to a coating or oxide layer; surface contaminants or inclusions; or acid, chloride, or other caustic chemical exposure. Pits can act as stress risers and cause premature part failure due to fatigue or stress corrosion cracking.

Microbiologically Influenced Corrosion (MIC).—Also called *microbial corrosion* or *biocorrosion,* this process usually takes the form of crevice and/or pitting corrosion under a fouling biofilm that has formed on part surfaces. Chemistry changes due to static conditions under the film, metabolic waste from the microorganisms, and metabolic reduction of oxygen all contribute to corrosive attack. Many different biological organisms, both aerobic and anaerobic, can participate in this corrosion process. Elimination of fouling biofilms is the best defense. Also applicable are the stated methods for reducing pitting or crevices and using corrosion-resistant materials where possible. For example, in seawater applications, titanium is highly resistant to MIC, though it is not immune in all environments.

Intergranular Corrosion.—Localized attack along microstructural grain boundaries of a material can occur due to segregation or precipitation of elements at those boundaries. The unique material composition at the grain boundaries can preferentially corrode or cause galvanic corrosion to occur. The resulting changes in material properties can lead to intergranular stress corrosion cracking or disintegration.

This type of corrosion is a risk for stainless steel welded in multiple passes, which can cause sensitization of material. Depletion of chromium and/or formation of carbides in the heat-affected zone can lead to a type of intergranular corrosion known as *weld decay,* or *knife-line attacks* in alloys stabilized with niobium. Aluminum alloys, particularly extruded or heavily worked pieces, also are susceptible to intergranular corrosion; a subtype called *exfoliation corrosion* may occur where the surface grain is thinner than the rolled grain. Prevention methods include heat treatment of sensitized parts.

Selective Leaching (Dealloying).—This process involves preferential corrosion of the least noble element in an alloy. Dezincification of unstabilized brass (leaving porous copper) and iron depletion of gray cast iron (leaving graphite) are examples of selective leaching corrosion. This type of corrosion is difficult to detect visually, but structural weakening can be profound. To reduce the likelihood of selective leaching, vulnerable parts may be heat treated to improve homogeneity.

Stress Corrosion Cracking.—Potentially devastating cracks can start and grow slowly in metals and alloys exposed to both static tensile stress (applied and/or residual) and a corrosive environment. Rather than propagating on surfaces, such cracks usually are fine, branching, transgranular, and penetrating, and, thus, difficult to detect. Environmental conditions that induce this process are very specific and depend on materials, applied processes, and part uses. Weldments and heavily worked parts are particularly vulnerable, due to the potential for high levels of residual stress. Methods to guard against stress corrosion cracking include using stress-relieving parts with heat treatment or mechanical

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

loading and introducing surface compressive stress through methods such as shot peening, laser peening, or grit blasting.

Tribocorrosion.—When a material degrades due to a combination of erosion/wear and corrosion, the process is called *tribocorrosion*. Mechanical wear often accelerates the corrosion process; in turn, corrosion attack on the material often accelerates wear. There are two commonly encountered subtypes of tribocorrosion:

Fretting Corrosion: This occurs when two parts, exposed to a corrosive medium, rub forcibly against each other in a repetitive manner. The movements typically are very small; vibration is a common culprit. Contact surfaces experience mechanical wear and corrosive attack simultaneously, often leading to crack formation and fatigue failure. Bolted joints are especially vulnerable, as are bearings that undergo oscillating movements. Mitigation methods include eliminating movement between parts (particularly small oscillating movements), employing protective lubricants or sealants, adjusting hardness of one or both parts, and reducing contact loading, if possible.

Erosion Corrosion: Parts exposed to a flowing corrosive medium may exhibit localized areas where mechanical erosion occurs and corrosion is intensified. Optimizing flow geometry and velocity can help reduce turbulence and prevent such cavitation. Other methods include filtering out abrasive particles in the fluid, smoothing surfaces to remove imperfections, and minimizing edges.

Hydrogen Embrittlement.—High-strength steels, titanium alloys, and aluminum alloys are particularly susceptible to this type of attack. When hydrogen is absorbed into the material, this can cause embrittlement and cracking along grain boundaries, posing a risk of sudden failure. Processes that can cause excess hydrogen exposure include arc welding (unless low-hydrogen electrodes are used), electroplating, pickling, and phosphating. Mitigation steps include limiting hydrogen exposure, baking off hydrogen after exposure, relieving residual stresses, using barrier coatings, and substituting less vulnerable materials. Note that cathodic protection accelerates hydrogen embrittlement, especially in acid environments, so it should be used with caution when working with susceptible materials and processes.

Corrosion Fatigue.—Fatigue failure can occur prematurely in parts exposed to a corrosive environment while experiencing cyclic or alternating loading conditions. Cracks formed in this process usually are nonbranching and transgranular, form early, and grow at an accelerated rate, leading to substantially reduced fatigue life of parts. Prevention includes reducing loads and stresses, as well as normal corrosion mitigation methods.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PLASTICS

Properties of Plastics

Characteristics of Important Plastics Families

ABS (acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene)	Rigid, relatively low-cost thermoplastic, easily machined and thermoformed.
Acetal, POM	Engineering thermoplastic with good strength, wear resistance, and dimensional stability. More dimensionally stable than nylon under wet and humid conditions.
Acrylic, PMMA	Clear, transparent, strong, break-resistant thermoplastic with excellent chemical resistance and weatherability.
CPVC (chlorinated PVC)	Thermoplastic with properties similar to PVC, but operates to a 40–60°F (14–16°C) higher temperature.
Fiberglass	Thermosetting composite with high strength-to-weight ratio, excellent dielectric properties, and unaffected by corrosion.
Liquid crystal polymer (LCP)	Aromatic, highly inert polymer, with excellent mechanical properties, as well as chemical, fire, and temperature resistance.
Nylon	Thermoplastic with excellent impact resistance, ideal for wear applications such as bearings and gears, self-lubricating under some circumstances.
PEEK (polyetherether-ketone)	Engineering thermoplastic, excellent temperature resistance, suitable for continuous use above 500°F (260°C), excellent flexural and tensile properties.
Polyester, PET (polyethylene-terephthalate)	Dimensionally stable thermoplastic with superior machining characteristics compared to acetal.
Phenolic	Thermosetting family of plastics with minimal thermal expansion, high compressive strength, excellent wear and abrasion resistance, and a low coefficient of friction. Used for bearing applications and molded parts.
Polycarbonate, PC	Transparent tough thermoplastic with high impact strength, excellent chemical resistance and electrical properties, and good dimensional stability.
Polypropylene, PP	Good chemical resistance combined with low moisture absorption and excellent electrical properties, retains strength up to 250°F (120°C).
Polystyrene, PS	Transparent, colorless, and relatively low-cost amorphous thermoplastic. Relatively rigid with good electrical properties but brittle with poor chemical and ultraviolet properties.
Polysulfone, PSU	Durable thermoplastic, good electrical properties, operates at temperatures in excess of 300°F (150°C).
Polyurethane	Thermoplastic, excellent impact and abrasion resistance, resists sunlight and weathering.
Teflon, PTFE (polytetrafluoro-ethylene)	Thermoplastic, low coefficient of friction, withstands up to 500°F (260°C), inert to chemicals and solvents, self-lubricating with a low thermal-expansion rate.
PVC (polyvinyl chloride)	Thermoplastic, resists corrosive solutions and gases both acid and alkaline, good stiffness.
PVDF (polyvinylidene-fluoride)	Thermoplastic, outstanding chemical resistance, excellent substitute for PVC or polypropylene. Good mechanical strength and dielectric properties.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Plastics Materials.—Plastics encompass a wide range of materials that consist of long chains of carbon atoms with attached atoms of other elements, mainly hydrogen, and small, repeating chemical functional groups that influence the plastics' properties. Some other elements found in plastics are oxygen, nitrogen, chlorine, sulfur, and fluorine. A special class, the *silicones*, have chains of alternating silicon and oxygen atoms with small carbon-based side groups. These repeating chain segments are called *mers*, giving the term *polymers* for these materials. The pure (*neat)* materials are also known as *resins*. Commercial plastics are resins containing additives in amounts ranging from trace quantities to 50 percent or more. In any sample of resin, molecular chain lengths will generally vary widely, but the average typically exceed several thousand mer units if the resin is to possess good mechanical properties. There are two main classes of resins: *thermoplastics* (which includes *elastomers*) and *thermosets*.

Thermoplastics: Plastics that soften when heated are called thermoplastics. These plastics can be repeatedly melted by heating and then solidified by cooling. This reversible change may actually be repeated several times until a final product is made. For example, freshly polymerized polypropylene is a fine powder that is converted into pelletized feedstock by extrusion. The extruder compacts and melts the powder and pumps it through a strand die, where the emerging strands are water-chilled and sliced into ¼-inch (10 mm) BB-sized pellets. A sheet maker may then reprocess the pellets in an extruder to produce long rolls of thin sheet or shorter slabs of thicker sheet. These can be used by a thermoformer, which again heat-softens the sheet and pulls it down over a chilled mold to make packages from the thin sheet or wastebaskets from the thicker ones.

Some examples of commodity thermoplastic families are polystyrenes (PS), olefins including polyethylenes (PE) and polypropylenes (PP), acrylics (PMMA), cellulosics (e.g., cellulose acetate butyrate, CAB), and polyvinyls. Engineering thermoplastics, such as the nylon family, acetal resins, polycarbonate, and others listed in the preceding table, generally have superior strength, toughness, and resistance to heat and chemicals. Although the heating/cooling cycle can be repeated, each recycling tends to reduce mechanical properties and appearance.

Thermosets: Thermosetting plastics, such as amino, epoxy, phenolic, and unsaturated polyesters, are supplied to the final processor as partially polymerized mixtures of chemically active, long-chain molecules. When they are heated during molding, the mixture components react to form chemical bonds, called *cross-links*, between the original chains, forming huge three-dimensional molecules. Such products generally have improved mechanical properties and heat resistance. However, if heated above their molding temperatures, they do not melt but instead decompose. They cannot be reprocessed, so opportunities for salvaging scrap for recycling are limited. Many rubbers that are processed by vulcanizing, such as butyl, latex, neoprene, nitrile, polyurethane, and silicone, also are classified as thermosets.

Elastomers and Rubbers: Raw natural or synthetic rubber, initially thermoplastic, is mixed with finely divided carbon and sulfur. During molding, these materials undergo cross-linking by sulfur, a process called *vulcanizing*. Elastomers typically have low elastic moduli (stiffness) but high elasticity (stretch). Many, if stretched to twice their length (or much more) and then released, will snap back resiliently to their original length and shape. Thermoplastic elastomers are often used in place of rubber, and also may be used as additives in other thermoplastic resins for improving impact strength of rigid thermoplastics.

Thermoplastic Structures.—Thermoplastics can be classified by their structures into three categories:

Amorphous: These randomly structured materials are sometimes called *noncrystalline*. Such thermoplastics include acrylates, polycarbonate (PC), polystyrene, acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS), styrene acrylonitrile (SAN), and polyvinylchloride (PVC) and its acetate copolymers.

Semi-Crystalline: Half or even more of the chains in crystalline thermoplastics are organized into tiny regular regions called *crystallites*. Representative members are nylons,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

acetals, polyethylene (PE), polypropylene (PP), and polyethylene terephthalate (PET). The crystallites are linked by amorphous zones; the resulting microstructures make these materials stronger and stiffer than similar materials without crystallinity. They generally possess higher end-use chemical and temperature resistance, and melt at higher temperatures, with more sharply defined melting ranges than amorphous resins.

Liquid-Crystalline Polymers (LCP): These contain crystal-like structures even in the melted resin. They have highly ordered, rod-like microstructures with good mechanical properties and high melting temperatures. They have the lowest shrinkage and warpage of the three types of thermoplastics.

Copolymers, Blends, Additives, and Reinforcements.—Plastics can be manipulated to modify mechanical, chemical, electrical, and cost characteristics.

Copolymers: Combining two or more different polymers can create a new material with properties that are quite different from those of the individual polymers (*homopolymers*) from which they are made. The copolymers are alloyed: mechanically blended from the two or more different polymers, often with special additives to make them compatible. These "alloys" are compounded so as to retain the most desirable characteristics of each constituent, especially impact strength and flame resistance. The properties usually are between those of the constituent homopolymer materials.

Copolymers such as SAN and ABS have long been commercially available. While tens of thousands of grades have been developed, less common blends and alloys are not always readily available in sheets or in standard industry stock shapes supplied for machining.

Additives and Fillers: Plastics compounds with desired sets of properties are produced from "neat" resins by adding many types of other chemicals and materials. Antioxidants, lubricants, pigments and dyes, fire retardants, and ultraviolet protectants in small percentages usually do not significantly alter mechanical and physical properties. *Larger* quantities of particulate fillers, such as wood flour or fibers, silica powder, glass or phenolic microballoons, and carbon and metal powders, are often used to tune density, thermal and electrical conductivity, mechanical properties, and unit cost. The use of such additives makes available many grades of a given plastic type from each commercial plastics manufacturer. Such additives can increase value in application but also may increase difficulty in recycling.

Plasticizers: Plasticizers soften and toughen the base resins with which they are compounded. While they are used in several resin families to some extent, polyvinyl chloride resins (PVC) and related plastics use plasticizers and many other additives in high percentages. These modified resins produce a myriad of grades of PVC from the familiar rigid pipe material (the dominant consumer of PVC) to wire coatings, flooring, and elastomerics used in footwear.

Fibers: Plastics, which have much lower moduli and strengths than glass and metals, can be made stiffer and stronger by incorporating glass, graphite or other fibers. Short chopped fibers in fractions up to about 40 percent, randomly oriented in molding compounds, provide substantial increases in stiffness and strength. But more dramatic improvements are obtained by incorporating longer fibers in carefully chosen directions, as in fishing rods and golf club shafts, where content of glass or carbon fiber may be more than 50 percent by weight. Historically, sturdy composites have been and still are made by compression molding multilayer canvas, paper, or cotton-felt sheets impregnated with phenolic or other thermosetting resins. (See also *Plastics Gears* on page 606.) A relatively recent reinforcement material is *oriented aramid* (aromatic polyamide, Kevlar), whose strength and modulus rival those of metals. Its most familiar use has been in "bullet-proof" vests for law-enforcement and military personnel.

Cellular Plastics.—Many rigid and flexible thermoplastic and thermosetting resin families are available as foamed plastics in the form of sheets, boards, bars, and cylinders, as well as molded shapes. The internal structure of plastic foam consists of tiny gas-filled cells bounded by shared membranes of the resin.

In *closed cell* foams, each cell is a tiny polyhedral cavity adjacent to, but not opening into, other cells. Foamed polystyrene hot liquid beverage cups are an example of closed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cell foams. In *open cell* foams, the cells are not completely closed but instead form continuous connecting tunnels with other cells in all directions throughout the object. Kitchen sponges are open cell foams.

Densities of plastics foams range from 90 percent of the resin's unfoamed density down to just a few percent. Foaming may be accomplished physically by injection of a gas or volatile solvent during extrusion or molding, or by mixing a chemical blowing agent with the resin. When the mix is processed, the unstable blowing agent decomposes in the melt, generating bubbles. Foams have many uses: as low-cost space filling, cushioning, thermal and electrical insulation, and as the interlayer member of sandwich materials. Polystyrene, polyethylene, and polyurethane (rigid and flexible) are important foam families.

Application and Physical Properties.— Selecting a plastic for a specific application requires knowledge of many different kinds of properties of candidate materials. Density and mechanical properties will be important considerations in most cases. The plastics must be able to bear tensile, compressive, or bending loads; resist or allow twisting or stretching; survive impacts; withstand thousands or even millions of repeated stress cycles; and resist abrasion. Special service environments—extremely low or high temperatures and humidities, outdoor exposure, and the presence of active solvents and chemicals—will modify the selection criteria. Thermal or electrical properties, such as coefficients of thermal expansion, thermal or electrical conductivity, heat capacity (specific heat), dielectric strength, and dielectric-loss factor, may sometimes be important.

Over many years, Committee D-20 of ASTM (formerly American Society for Testing Materials) has developed thousands of characterization and test methods for plastics and their products. ASTM Standards, Section 8, "Plastics," is updated and reissued annually by ASTM. All leading US resin makers and many compounders can furnish the product designer with the results of batteries of tests made on their materials according to numbered ASTM standards. For example, ASTM Test D638, "Tensile Properties," prescribes the preparation and dimensions of specimens to be tested by pulling from both ends. Several useful mechanical-property values are obtained from this test: tensile modulus, yield strength, tensile strength at break, and elongation (percent stretching) at break. Most plastics products are made by molding from a molten or pre-polymer condition by processes such as extrusion or injection- or compression-molding. Products so made are apt to have a somewhat different microstructure close to the surface than in their interiors. In theory, the behavior of a simple test bar in bending should be calculable from the straight tensile-test modulus E, as it is with metals. However, because of the "skin effects" found in molded plastics such predictions are not very reliable. For this reason, ASTM Committee D-20 developed Method D790 for flexural properties. Flexural moduli, theoretically the same as E, actually tend to be somewhat higher in molded thermoplastics, as are their flexural strengths. While tensile and flexural specimens are typically $^1/_8$-inch (3.2 mm) thick, properties do vary with part thickness and processing conditions, so designs should be developed with appropriate safety factors and validation.

Even with homogeneous plastics whose properties are expected to be about the same in all principal directions, certain processing conditions, such as stretching while the heat-softened plastic is cooling, can cause alignment *orientation* of the long polymer chains or crystallites in the stretching or flow direction. This will increase tensile strength in that direction but with some reduction in the perpendicular cross directions. Even more striking anisotropic effects are achieved with long-fiber reinforcements, in which the modulus and strength may be a factor of two or greater in the fiber direction than in the cross-fiber direction.

Suppliers of unreinforced sheet, bar, and rod stock for machining can relieve stress by controlled annealing of any residual stresses developed in processing, thereby preventing distortions related to the relief of residual strains during machining. Machining or heating of un-annealed stock can release residual stresses in the material, causing significant dimensional variations and warpage that can be difficult to resolve.

Some of the more important application properties are defined here.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Density and Specific Gravity: These properties are closely linked. *Density* is the mass (or weight) per unit volume of a material, used mainly to calculate the mass of material required to make a part whose volume has been calculated from its dimensions. In the plastics industry, commonly used units are lb/in^3 or g/cm^3. *Specific gravity* is the ratio of a material's density to that of water, both measured at the same temperature, at 23°C (73.4°F) for plastics. Since the density of water at typical room temperatures is very close to 1.00 gm/cm^3, specific gravity and density measured in metric units are numerically almost equal. In US customary units, water density equals 0.0361 lb/in^3. Specific gravities of neat resins range from 0.83 for polymethylpentene to 2.20 for polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE, Teflon). Because specific gravity is a ratio of densities of like units, it is dimensionless. See also *Specific Gravity* on page 377.

Unlike specific gravity, *specific volume* is not dimensionless, but is defined as the reciprocal of density, with units of in^3/lb or cm^3/g.

Shrinkage: This is the difference in measurement between a linear dimension of a mold and the corresponding dimension of a plastic article made in the mold, divided by the mold dimension, and expressed in/in, mils/in, or percent. The dominant material property here is the *coefficient of linear thermal expansion* since the shrinkage is mainly due to cooling from the high temperature of the melt as it solidifies under pressure in the mold to room temperature after its removal from the mold. Expansion coefficients of plastics are much larger, 20 to over 100 times those of metals and ceramics. For type-66 nylon, which freezes at 260°C (500°F), shrinkage may be as much as 20 mils/in (0.02 cm/cm), i.e., 2 percent. Shrinkage can also be affected by other molding conditions and by additive content. Amorphous and liquid-crystalline thermoplastics have lower shrinkages than crystalline materials. Glass- or carbon-reinforced and mineral-filled compounds have lower shrinkage than their neat resins. For accurate assessment of shrinkage, test moldings at the target part thickness are advised before mold-cavity dimensions are finalized.

Water Absorption: This is the increase in weight of a test specimen due to absorption of water, expressed as a percentage of the original dry weight. Standard test specimens (ASTM Method D570) are first dried for 24 hours, then weighed before and after immersion in water at 23°C (73.4°F) for a specified time. Absorption of water affects not only the dimensions of plastics parts but also mechanical and electrical properties. Parts made from materials with low water absorption tend to have greater dimensional stability.

Transparency: This is a measure of the percentage of incident light that is transmitted through a test specimen. It is quantified as *luminous transmittance*, the ratio of transmitted to incident light. *Haze* measures the percentage of light entering a specimen that is scattered more than 2.5 degrees from the incident beam.

Elasticity: Most solid materials are initially elastic, such that when small stresses causing deformation are removed, the material will recover its original shape and dimensions. A more precisely formulated definition of "elastic" is "a material that obeys Hooke's law of proportionality of strain to stress up to its proportional limit" (see page 565). The *modulus of elasticity* is Hooke's law constant E, the quotient of stress divided by strain in the proportional region. In a tensile test, strain is the ratio of observed displacement, relative to the original length, reached under a given stress. Because plastics generally deviate from strict linearity, the moduli reported are usually "one percent moduli," that is, the quotient of stress and strain at 1 percent strain. For most materials the limit of recoverable strain is a few percent or less. For rubbers and a handful of thermoplastic elastomers, maximum recoverable strain may be as high as 100 percent or more. Stress and strain in relation to plastics part design is discussed on page 563.

Plasticity: This refers to the deformation exhibited when materials are stressed beyond their elastic limits without breaking (i.e., when stress exceeds the *yield point*). In this mode, there can be considerable flow within the microstructure of the material, and permanent changes in the dimensions and shape of the deformed article occur. Plastic deformation continues with small increases in stress until finally there is rupture. Plasticity is exhibited to some degree by most unreinforced plastics. While parts are normally

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

designed to operate in their material's elastic ranges, and plastic deformation may render a part useless for its designed function, plastic deformation *can* be used to prevent catastrophic failure with a fail-safe design. A few plastics have such compliant plasticity that they can be cold-formed by metalworking methods—rolled, stretched, or even forged into final products. This property in metals is called *ductility* and also applies to plastics.

Toughness: This property governs the ability of a material to absorb mechanical energy without cracking or breaking. Often it depends on the rate at which the specimen is deformed. In a standard tensile test (ASTM D638), the strain rate is fairly low—from 0.15 to 15 (in/in)/min. In a tensile-impact test (ASTM D1822) the specimen is abruptly stretched to failure in milliseconds at a strain rate of about 20,000 (in/in)/min. The tensile tester of D638 generates a graph of stress (psi) versus strain (in/in). The area under this curve is the energy in ft-lb_f/in^3 absorbed by the gage volume as it is stretched and finally broken. The impact tester, on the other hand, directly determines how many foot-pounds of energy are needed to stretch and break the specimen. That value, too, can be converted to energy per unit of specimen volume, but the impact energy usually will be very different from the tensile energy to failure. A widely used test of toughness for plastics is the Izod impact test (ASTM D256), in which a falling pendulum strikes and breaks off the upper half of a cantilever test bar whose leading face has a 0.1 in. (2.54 mm) deep, V-shaped notch across it just above the clamping point. This test (the oldest in ASTM's Plastics list, first published in 1926) indicates not only toughness but also the *notch-sensitivity* of the plastic. The test result is expressed in ft-lb_f/in of notch width. Izod-test values for $^1/_8$-inch (3.2 mm) wide specimens of neat thermoplastics range from 0.4 for crystal polystyrene or wood-flour-filled phenolics to 14 for polycarbonate and phenolics with a high content of glass fiber. Particulate fillers may increase or decrease Izod impact strength; fibrous reinforcements usually increase it. Thus, applying tabulated toughness values to plastics part design is not a simple task.

Brittleness: Lack of toughness, characterized in plastics by Izod impact test values below 1.0 ft-lb_f/in (53 J/m) or by abrupt fracture with little or no yield in tensile tests, is referred to as brittleness.

Notch Sensitivity: This measurement indicates the ease with which a crack progresses through a material from an existing notch, crack, or sharp corner.

Hardness: The ability of a material to resist deformation by surface indentation or abrasion, hardness is often related to modulus, strength, and wear resistance. Several ASTM test methods are in use for plastics, the Rockwell hardness test (ASTM D785) being a popular one. One of three hardened steel balls is pressed into the test specimen, first with a low force, then a much higher one, while a micrometer indicates the increase in depth of impression. Five scales are available for plastics: R, L, M, E, and K, in order of increasing hardness, requiring progressively smaller balls and stronger forces. The scale *must* be identified in the report of Rockwell hardness numbers. When an article is expected to suffer abrasion in service, the abrasion loss of candidate plastics may be experimentally determined with an abrasion machine (ASTM D1242).

Homogeneous plastics have the same composition throughout a part down to the microstructural level, but not to the molecular level as in simple chemical compounds. A $^3/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) BB-sized pellet of a neat resin contains many long-chain molecules of various chain lengths. However, even compounds containing several additives, pigments, and powdery fillers behave in molded articles as if they were homogeneous.

Heterogeneous (inhomogeneous) plastics vary in composition and structure. A compound reinforced with centimeter-long, randomly oriented, chopped glass fibers will not look homogeneous under 50× magnification, yet it may be safely treated as such in the design of parts that are larger than the test samples whose properties have been measured.

Isotropy and Anisotropy: These properties are related to homogeneous and heterogeneous types of plastics. In *isotropic* materials, measured properties are equal in all directions. Cast metals and unfilled, amorphous plastics tend to be isotropic. Processing effects such as flow orientation that do not change homogeneity can create substantial directional differences in properties. This effect is called *anisotropy*. In plastic films made by

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

extruding molten resin onto chilled rolls, the films are usually stronger in the "stretch" direction, weaker in the lateral or cross direction. Laminates made of laid-up reinforcing fibers or woven cloths can be nearly biaxially isotropic in the laminate plane, but their interlaminar shear is low because no fibers cross through the plane. Extremely anisotropic are unidirectional laminates in which all the fibers are parallel, as in golf club shafts reinforced with graphite fibers.

Wood (see page 382) is a natural anisotropic material, strong and stiff in the grain (growth) direction, less so in the perpendicular and tangential directions. Commercially important fibers, both natural and synthetic, are also highly anisotropic with their greatest strength and moduli aligned with length.

As the degree of anisotropy increases, the number of physical constants (moduli) required to define a material's stress-strain behavior also increases, up to a maximum of 21. Absence of such complete information on complex laminates and the inadequacy of simple analysis methods point to the need for extensive end-use testing of plastics parts before approval of critical application requirements. Computer modeling using finite element analysis (FEA) techniques can help in the successful implementation of these materials. Detailed properties data are required for reliable and accurate modeling.

In addition to mechanical properties, isotropy and anisotropy can affect manufactured plastic part dimensions. Anisotropic shrinkage caused by patterns of flow during processing is important in molding crystalline and fiber-reinforced plastics, for which different shrinkage values are experienced in the flow and cross-flow directions. These values are of most concern to the tool designer and molder; however, the existence and severity of anisotropic shrinkage must be considered when a material is chosen for a part having tight tolerances.

Coefficient of Friction: This property comes into play in plastics gears and bearings and other applications where low dynamic (kinetic) friction is desired between moving surfaces in contact. When a weighted block of a plastic is dragged at a steady velocity along a horizontal slab of the same or different material and the contact surfaces are smooth, the coefficient of friction is defined as the ratio of the horizontal drag force to the total weight of the block, called the normal force. In general, the observed coefficients will be different for different pairs of materials, so a test report must identify both materials. While some coefficients were (long ago) determined in this basic manner, ASTM D3028 now prescribes a sophisticated machine ("frictionometer") for measuring the property. Coefficients of friction change with temperature. Materials such as 66-nylon, acetal resin, and polytetrafluoroethylene containing molybdenum disulfide, which have low self-coefficients, typically enjoy long operating life in unlubricated gears and bearings.

Significance of Elasticity, Homogeneity, and Isotropy in Plastics: In the section *The Basics of Stress and Strain in Plastics* on page 563, formulas for stress and strain in a wide variety of structural geometries are based on the assumptions that 1) the materials are perfectly isotropic and elastic, obeying Hooke's law in tension, compression, and shear; and 2) the only mechanical properties needed are the elastic modulus E, the shear modulus G, and, occasionally, Poisson's ratio ν. See pages 564 and 565.

For discussion purposes, consider the structural material low-carbon steel, which obeys these assumptions at temperatures below dull red heat. For this metal, $E = 30{,}000$ kpsi (206.8 GPa), $G = 11{,}400$ kpsi (78.6 GPa), and Poisson's ratio $\nu = 0.32$. The elastic limit is about 40 kpsi (276 MPa), which indicates that its elongation in tension at that limit is only 0.13 percent. Its stress-strain graph up to the elastic limit is practically a straight line. If it is loaded up to half its elastic limit and maintained at that load for a couple of decades, when the loading is removed, the 0.065 percent elongation will be instantly and completely recovered. The rate and duration of loading in normal applications do not affect the steel's apparent properties.

Plastics, in contrast, are *viscoelastic* materials. They are complex aggregates of many different elastic and fluid elements and therefore display properties between those of crystalline metals and very viscous fluids. Their stress-strain graphs tend not to be linear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Even at low stresses, they are sensitive to rate of loading and to temperature, as shown generically in Fig. 1. Curves A and B identify the stress-strain behavior of brittle materials that will tend to fail suddenly under increasing strain. By comparison, curves C through E show how increasing temperatures both increase ductility and extend the strain to failure curve, albeit with decreased stiffness.

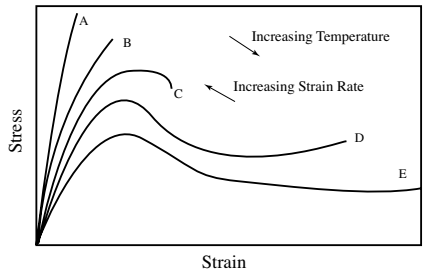


Fig. 1. Generic Tensile-Test Graphs for Plastics, Showing Typical Range of Behavior from Brittle to Highly Ductile with Increasing Temperatures

Structural analysis during design of components uses two independent constants, Young's modulus (E) and Poisson's ratio (ν), but these two constants are sufficient only for elastic, isotropic materials that respond linearly to loads (when load is proportional to deformation). Designers often use the same values for these constants everywhere in the structure, which is correct only if the structure is homogeneous.

Assumptions of linear elasticity, isotropy, and homogeneity are reasonable for many analyses and provide a good starting point, but use of these assumptions can lead to significant design errors with plastics, particularly with glass-reinforced and liquid crystalline polymers, which are highly anisotropic. In this discussion, plastics are assumed to be linearly elastic, homogeneous, and isotropic to allow a simpler presentation of mechanical properties in line with the data provided in plastics manufacturers' marketing data sheets. The standard equations of structural analysis (bending, torsion, pressure in a pipe, etc.) also require these assumptions.

Creep: When plastics are subjected to sustained high loads, they *creep*. That is, they tend to slowly deform (flow), exhibiting the viscous side of their nature. If the load is removed, the stressed object will usually not return completely to its original shape and dimensions. Creep is more rapid at higher temperatures, even at temperatures expected in normal service. Laboratory stress-strain curves obtained according to ASTM D638 at moderate strain rates and 23°C (73.4°F) or other temperatures will resemble those in Fig. 2. Most plastics have no true proportional limits, instead exhibiting curved dependence of stress versus strain even at strains less than 1 percent. Tangent moduli from D638 therefore tend to be subjective and inaccurate when used for predicting deformation. The isometric diagram of Fig. 2 shows the dependence of stress in Styron 475, a rigid modified polystyrene, at various strains and times. Note the logarithmic time scale (0.01 h = 36 s, 10,000 h = 1.14 yr). The curve on the left panel, for 0.01 h, is the stress-strain graph one might obtain at one of the slower testing rates of ASTM D638. The stress ordinate at the left edge, front, i.e., 600 psi (4.1 MPa) for a strain of 0.15 percent, corresponds to a short-time modulus for this resin of 400 kpsi (2.8 MPa), in agreement with values reported elsewhere. When this small strain was maintained for 1000 hours (6 weeks), the stress had decayed along the first curve (left rear to right front) to about 400 psi (2.8 MPa), two-thirds of its initial value.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

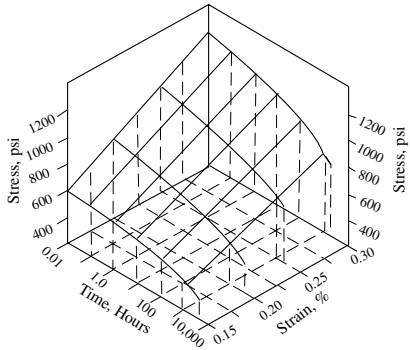


Fig. 2. Isometric Plot for High-Impact Polystyrene Showing Stress Response to Imposed Strains over Three Decades

Some hygroscopic resins can absorb water from the air, with stress-strain behavior ranging from curve B or C of Fig. 1 when very dry to curve D or E at high moisture contents. Polyamides (nylons), classified as engineering resins with superior properties, exemplify this moisture dependence, picking up about 0.3 percent in very dry climates, and 2.5 percent or more in very humid ones.

Modulus and strength values reported from ASTM D638 testing should not be used in the design of plastics products that must sustain loads over long periods; the addition of reinforcements, such as glass fiber (GF), is observed to significantly increase the modulus and strength of both thermoplastics (e.g., PP) and thermosets (e.g., epoxy). Properties for various plastics are included in the plastics properties table on page 387.

The Basics of Stress and Strain in Plastics.—The mechanical behavior of plastics is similar in many ways to that of metals, but there are important differences that must be kept in mind in the design of plastics products and parts.

Stress: A three-dimensional body having a balanced system of external forces F_1 through F_5 acting on it such that the body is at rest is shown in Fig. 3. Such a body develops internal forces to transfer and distribute the external loads. If the body is cut at an arbitrary cross section and one part is removed, as shown at the right in Fig. 3, a new system of forces acting on the cut surface is developed to balance the remaining external forces. Similar forces (stresses) exist within the uncut body.

Stresses must be defined by both magnitude and direction. The stress S acting in the direction shown in Fig. 3 on point P of the cut surface has two stress components. One of these components, σ, acts perpendicular to the surface and is called a *normal stress*. The other stress, τ, acts parallel to the surface and is called a *shear stress*.

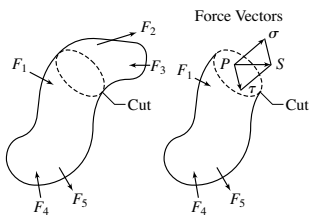


Fig. 3. Internal Forces and Stresses in a Body

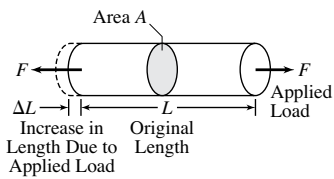


Fig. 4. Simple Tension Load

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Normal stress (σ) is illustrated by the simple tension test shown in Fig. 4, where the direct stress is the ratio of applied load to the original cross-sectional area in lb_f/in^2. **In the Système International (SI or metric system, see page 2872 and Table 39 on page 2863) the stress σ is expressed in newtons/meter^2 (N/m^2).**

$$\text{Stress} = \frac{\text{Load}}{\text{Area}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \sigma = \frac{F}{A} \tag{1}$$

If the load is applied as shown in Fig. 4, the test piece is in tension, and if reversed, it is in compression.

Normal strain (ε) is also illustrated by the diagram in Fig. 4, where the load or stress applied to the test piece causes it to change its length. If the bar has an original length L and changes its length by ΔL, the strain, ε, is defined as

$$\text{Strain} = \frac{\text{Change of Length}}{\text{Original Length}} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \varepsilon = \frac{\Delta L}{L} \tag{2}$$

Strain is the ratio between the amount of deformation of the material and its original length. It is a dimensionless quantity. Extensions of most materials under load are generally very small. Strain (με or microstrain in most metals) is measured and expressed in microinches (millionths of an inch) per inch, or 10^{-6} in/in (10^{-6} cm/cm). Alternatively, strain is expressed as a percentage. The three methods compare as follows:

$$1000\mu\varepsilon = 0.001 = 0.1 \text{ percent strain}$$

$$10000\mu\varepsilon = 0.010 = 1 \text{ percent strain}$$

Modulus of Elasticity E: Most metals and plastics have deformations that are proportional to the imposed loads over a range of loads. Stress is proportional to load, and strain is proportional to deformation, so stress is proportional to strain and is expressed by Hooke's law:

$$\frac{\text{Stress}}{\text{Strain}} = \text{Constant} = E \tag{3}$$

The constant E is called by various names: the *modulus of elasticity*, *Young's modulus*, or, in the plastics industry, *tensile modulus*. Referring to Fig. 4, tensile modulus is given by the formula:

$$E = \frac{\sigma}{\varepsilon} = \frac{F/A}{\Delta L/L} = \frac{FL}{A\Delta L} \tag{4}$$

Thus, the modulus is the slope of the initial portion of the stress-strain curve. An elastic material does not necessarily obey Hooke's law, since it is possible for a material to return to its original shape without the stress being proportional to the strain. If a material does obey Hooke's law, however, it is elastic.

The straight portion of the stress-strain curve for many plastics is difficult to locate, and it is necessary to construct a straight line tangent to the initial portion of the curve to use as a modulus. The shape of a line so obtained is called the *initial modulus*. In some plastics the initial modulus can be misleading, owing to the nonlinear elasticity of the material. Some suppliers therefore provide the so-called 1 percent secant modulus, which is the ratio of stress to strain at 1 percent strain on the stress-strain curve. In the illustration of typical stress-strain curves in Fig. 5, the secant modulus at the point E is the slope of the line OE.

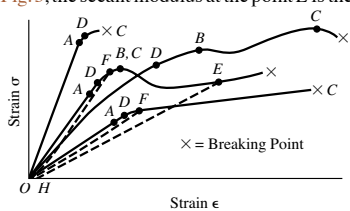


Fig. 5. Typical Stress-Strain Curves

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For metals, Young's modulus is expressed in terms of 10^6 lb_f/in^2, N/m^2, or Pa, as convenient (see *Units of Pressure and Stress* starting on page 2861.)

Secant modulus is the ratio of stress to corresponding strain at any point on the stress-strain curve (see *Modulus of Elasticity E*).

Proportional limit is the greatest stress at which a material is capable of sustaining the applied load without losing the proportionality of stress to strain. This limit is the point on the stress-strain curve where the slope begins to change, as shown at *A* on each of the curves in Fig. 5. Proportional limit is expressed in lb_f/in^2 (MPa or GPa).

Yield point is the first point on the stress-strain curve where an increase in strain occurs without an increase in stress, indicated by *B* on some of the curves in Fig. 5. The slope of the curve is zero at this point; however, some materials do not have a yield point.

Ultimate strength is the maximum stress a material withstands when subjected to a load, and is indicated by *C* in Fig. 5. Ultimate strength is expressed in lb_f/in^2 (MPa or GPa).

Elastic limit is indicated by *D* on the stress-strain curve in Fig. 5 and is the level beyond which a material is permanently deformed when the load is removed.

Although many materials can be loaded beyond their proportional limit and still return to zero strain when the load is removed, some plastics have no proportional limit in that no region exists where the stress is proportional to strain (i.e., where the material obeys Hooke's law).

Yield strength is the stress at which a material shows a specified deviation from stress to strain proportionality. Some materials do not show a yield strength clearly, and it may be desirable to choose an arbitrary stress level beyond the elastic limit, especially with plastics that have a very high strain at the yield point, to establish a realistic yield strength. Such a point is seen at *F* on some of the curves in Fig. 5 and is defined by constructing a line parallel to *OA* at a specified offset strain *H*. The stress at the intersection of the line with the stress-strain curve at *F* would be the yield strength at *H* offset. If *H* were at 2 percent strain, *F* would be described as the yield strength at a 2 percent strain offset.

Poisson's Ratio ν is the ratio of the lateral contraction to longitudinal elongation. Under a tensile load, a rectangular bar of length *L* with sides of widths *b* and *d* lengthens by an amount ΔL, producing a longitudinal strain of

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta L}{L} \tag{5}$$

The bar is reduced in its lateral dimensions and the associated lateral strains will be opposite in sign, resulting in

$$\varepsilon = -\frac{\Delta b}{b} = -\frac{\Delta d}{d} \tag{6}$$

If the deformation is within the elastic range, Poisson's ratio of the lateral to the longitudinal strains will be constant. The formula is:

$$\nu = \frac{\text{Lateral Strain}}{\text{Longitudinal Strain}} = \frac{\Delta d/d}{\Delta L/L} \tag{7}$$

When a bar like that in Fig. 4 is stretched in tension, mass must be conserved; if there is no change in diameter, the average density diminishes inversely as the strain increases. If the area decreases in percentage as much as length increases in percentage, the stretched volume would equal the original volume, and density would be preserved. In fact, most real materials do contract laterally when stretched, but not enough to preserve constant density; therefore, density usually does diminish with elongation.

Values of *v* for most engineering materials lie between 0.20 and 0.40, and these values hold for unfilled rigid thermoplastics. Values of ν for filled or reinforced rigid thermoplastics fall between 0.10 and 0.40 and for structural foam between 0.30 and 0.40. Rigid thermoset plastics have Poisson's ratios between 0.20 and 0.40, whether filled or unfilled, and elastomers can approach 0.5.

Table 1 lists values of ν determined at 73°F (23°C) for some plastics by measuring of lateral contraction and longitudinal elongation in tensile tests.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Poisson's Ratio at 23 °C for Resins and Compounds

Plastic	Poisson's Ratio, ν	Plastic	Poisson's Ratio, ν
ABS, unfilled	0.35	Polycarbonate	0.37
Acetal	0.35	Polyester, thermoplastic, gfr[a]	0.35–0.41
Acrylic (PMMA)	0.35–0.40	Polyester, thermoset, gfr[a]	0.24
Alkyd, mineral filled	0.17	Polyetherimide	0.36
Diallyl phthalate	0.27	Polyethylene, HD	0.45
FEP resin	0.48	Polyphenylene ether	0.35
PC, gfr[a]	0.38	Polyphenylene oxide	0.27–0.38
PCTFE	0.33	Polypropylene	0.42
Phenolic, cellulose-filled	0.24	Polystyrene, cross-linked	0.35
Phenolic, gfr[a]	0.2	Polyethersulfone	0.4
Polyamide, min-filled, gfr[a]	0.32	PTFE	0.46
Polyamide 6, dry, gfr[a]	0.36	PVF	0.4
Polyamide 66, dry, gfr[a]	0.32	PVDF	0.34

[a] gfr = glass-fiber reinforced, 30 or 33%.

Mineral fillers and glass-fiber reinforcements in plastics reduce Poisson's ratio. In anisotropic structures such as uni- and bi-directional laminates, Poisson's ratio may be different in orthogonal (i.e., perpendicular) directions. Usually, the value perpendicular to the reinforcing fibers will be the one most likely to be relevant. Vulcanized gum rubber has exceptional behavior; its Poisson ratio = 0.5, and it conserves density. This must be kept in mind in designing items to be compressed, such as rubber cushions and bumpers. When a rubber specimen is compressed it is shortened and its sides must be free to bulge out; otherwise the incompressibility of the rubber would not allow it to deform at all.

Shear stress is described on page 219. Any block of material is subject to a set of equal and opposite shearing forces Q. If the block is envisaged as an infinite number of infinitesimally thin layers as shown diagrammatically in Fig. 6, it is easy to imagine a tendency for one layer subject to a force to slide over the next layer, producing a shear form of deformation or failure. The shear stress τ is defined as

$$\tau = \frac{\text{Shear Load}}{\text{Area Resisting Load}} = \frac{Q}{A} \tag{8}$$

Shear stress is always tangential to the area on which it acts. Shearing strain is the angle of deformation γ and is measured in radians.

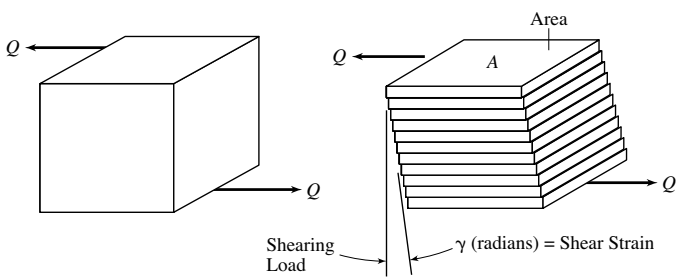


Fig. 6. Shear Stress Is Visualized as a Force Q Causing Infinitely Thin Layers of a Component to Slide Past Each Other, Producing a Shear Form of Failure

Example: In Fig. 7a, shear stress in the overlapped zone equals the tensile force F divided by the contact area of the adhesive. That is, $\tau = F/(WL)$. As F is increased, the joint will finally fail in shear, either in the adhesive layer or in the material of one of the bars, depending on which material has the greater shear strength.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

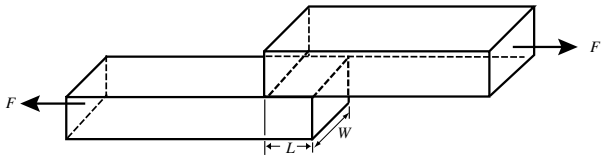


Fig. 7a. Adhesive Lap Joint

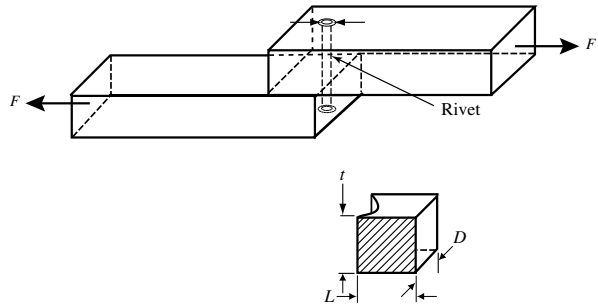


Fig. 7b. Riveted Lap Joint

In Fig. 7b, a similar lap joint is joined with a rivet of diameter D. In this case, the shear area in the rivet is $\pi D^2/4$, a much smaller area. But what if the rivet were aluminum and much stronger than the plastic being joined? A second, very different shear area comes into play, shown as a free body in the lower portion of Fig. 7b, the small bar-end volume adjacent to the rivet. The area shown shaded is equal to $L \times t$ and is $\frac{1}{2}$ of the shear area, so the total shear area equals $2Lt$. Thus, the shear stress τ exerted by the rivet and trying to push the plug out of each bar end is $F/(2Lt)$. As the force F is increased, the mode of failure in the rivet or the bar end will be decided by which of these shear stresses first exceeds the shear strength of the material on which it is acting.

Geometries like those in Fig. 7a and Fig. 7b are not useful for determining shear *modulus* because there is very little recordable shear deformation prior to failure at the shear strength. However, the very simple shear geometry shown in Fig. 8 is used in ASTM D732 test to measure the shear strengths of plastics. The washer-shaped test sample has an outer diameter of 2 inches (50.8 mm) and a central hole of about $^9/_{16}$ inch (14.3 mm) to allow the half-inch (12.7 mm) bolt to pass freely through the specimen. The thickness may be any measured value between 0.05 and 0.5 inch (1.27 and 12.7 mm). In this test, the shear area is given by $\pi \times$ punch diameter $\times$ disk thickness. The results of such tests are often described in manufacturers' marketing data sheets as the shear strength of the material. The shear strength reported from such a test is not a pure shear strength because a considerable part of the load is transferred by bending or compressing, or both, rather than by pure shear, and results can be affected by the susceptibility of the material to the sharpness of the load faces in the test apparatus. Thus, the test cannot be used to develop shear stress-strain curves or to determine the shear modulus. Shear strengths reported from this test have coefficients of variation of about 4 percent.

When analyzing plastics in a pure shear situation or when the maximum shear stress is calculated in a complex stress environment, designers often use a shear strength value of about half the tensile strength, or the direct shear strength obtained from the test referred to above, whichever is least.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

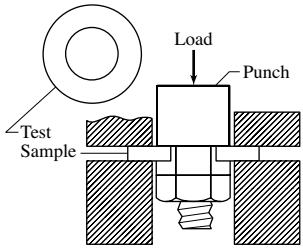


Fig. 8. Setup for Testing Shear Strength of Plastics in ASTM Test D732.
Specimen may be Molded or Cut from Sheet

Shear modulus G is a constant otherwise called the *modulus of rigidity*. For materials that behave according to Hooke's law, it is directly comparable to the modulus of elasticity used in direct stress calculations. The constant is derived from

$$G = \frac{\text{Shear Stress}}{\text{Shear Strain}} = \frac{\tau}{\gamma} \tag{9}$$

For isotropic materials in their Hooke's-law range at low deformations, it may be assumed that the modulus in compression is equal to E. Then a simple theoretical relationship links the tensile and shear moduli with Poisson's ratio:

$$G = \frac{E}{2(1+\nu)} \tag{10}$$

ASTM D1043 provides a method for determining the shear modulus G of plastic specimens at various temperatures by a torsion test. Material suppliers can furnish values of G for their compounds.

Relating Material Constants: Although only two material constants are required to characterize a material that is linearly elastic, homogeneous, and isotropic, three such constants have been introduced here. These three constants are tensile modulus E, Poisson's ratio ν, and shear modulus G, and they are related by Equation (10) or rewritten in the following form, based on elasticity principles:

$$\frac{E}{G} = 2(1+\nu) \tag{11}$$

This relationship holds for most metals and is generally applicable to injection-moldable thermoplastics. It must be remembered, however, that most plastics, particularly fiber-reinforced and liquid crystalline materials, are inherently either nonlinear, anisotropic, or both.

Bulk Modulus B: When a sample of material is subjected to high pressure from all sides, its volume diminishes with a corresponding increase in density. Bulk modulus B is defined as the increase in pressure divided by the fractional decrease in specific volume:

$$B = \frac{\Delta P}{(\Delta V)/V} \rightarrow \frac{dP}{d\ln V} \tag{12}$$

Since $\rho = \frac{1}{V}$, it follows that

$$\frac{1}{B} = \frac{(\Delta\rho)/\rho}{\Delta P} \rightarrow \frac{d\ln\rho}{dP} \tag{13}$$

The dimensions of B are pressure per unit of fractional volume contraction. In English units B is in Mpsi/(in^3/in^3), or just Mpsi; the SI units for B are GPa/(cm^3/cm^3) or just GPa. The last equation indicates that what happens to volume (and specific volume) also happens in the same degree to density, but with the opposite sign, i.e., as the volume increases, the density decreases and vice versa.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For isotropic elastic materials it has been shown that bulk modulus is linked to Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio by the equation

$$B = \frac{E}{3(1 - 2\nu)} \tag{14}$$

Thus, all three moduli, E, G, and B, are linked through Poisson's ratio.

True stress and true strain are terms not in frequent use. In Fig. 5 the stress, sometimes called the *engineering stress*, is calculated from an increasing load F, acting over a constant area A. Because the cross-sectional area is reduced with most materials, use of that smaller cross-sectional area in the calculation yields what is called the *true stress*. In addition, the direct strain referred to earlier, that is, the total change in length divided by the original length, is often called the *engineering strain*. The true strain would be the instantaneous deformation divided by the instantaneous length. Therefore, the shape of such a stress-strain curve would not be the same as a simple stress-strain curve. Modulus values and stress-strain curves are almost universally based on engineering stress and strain.

Other Measures of Strength and Modulus.—Tensile and compression properties of many engineering materials, which are treated as linearly elastic, homogeneous, and isotropic, are often considered to be identical so as to eliminate the need to measure properties in compression. Also, if tension and compression properties are identical, under standard beam bending theory, there is no need to measure the properties in bending. In a concession to the nonlinear, anisotropic nature of most plastics, these properties, particularly flexural properties, are often reported on manufacturers' marketing data sheets.

Compression Strength and Modulus: Because of the relative simplicity of testing in tension, the elastic modulus of a material is usually measured and reported as a tension value. For design purposes it often is necessary to know the stress-strain relationship for compression loading. With most elastic materials at low stress levels, the tensile and compressive stress-strain curves are nearly equivalent. At higher stress levels, the compressive strain is less than the tensile strain. Unlike tensile loading, which usually results in a clear-cut failure, stressing in compression produces a slow and indefinite yielding that seldom leads to failure. Because of this phenomenon, compressive strength is customarily expressed as the amount of stress in lb_f/in^2 (or Pa) required to deform a standard plastics test specimen to a certain strain. Compression modulus is not always reported because defining a stress at a given strain is equivalent to reporting a secant modulus. If a compression modulus is given, it is usually an initial modulus.

Bending Strength and Modulus: When a beam of rectangular cross section is bent under a vertical load midway between the beam supports, the bottom surface is stretched in tension while the top surface is compressed. Extending from end to end along the vertical center of the beam is a plane of zero stress called the *neutral axis*. Whatever the shape of the cross section—constant along the beam—the neutral axis is located at the center of gravity (centroid) of that cross-sectional area. The theory of bending for simple beams makes the following assumptions: the beam is initially straight, unstressed, and symmetric; the material is linearly elastic, homogeneous, and isotropic; the proportional limit is not exceeded; Young's modulus for the material is the same in tension and compression; and all deflections are small so that cross sections remain planar during bending.

For a beam of length L with a rectangular section of width b and depth h carrying a central load F, the formula for the maximum bending stress σ at the bottom surface is

$$\sigma = \frac{3FL}{2bh^2} \tag{15}$$

and the formula for the maximum deflection at the center of the beam is

$$y = \frac{FL^3}{4Ebh^3} \tag{16}$$

Note that, if the deflection equation is solved for E, Young's modulus, the modulus can be estimated by measuring the deflection of a beam under a known central force:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$E = \frac{FL^3}{4ybh^3} \tag{17}$$

This is the basis for ASTM Test D790 for the flexural modulus and strength of plastics. The flexural modulus reported is usually the initial modulus from the load/deflection curve. Most plastics parts undergo bending, so use of flexural values, which tend to be higher than tensile values for many molded plastics, should give more conservative and hence trustworthy results in product design.

Rate Dependence of Mechanical Properties: Tensile and flexural data in manufacturers' literature are measured at specific displacement rates. These rates are usually not consistent with the loading environment encountered in use of the product. The same plastics material, under differing rates or in other environmental conditions, can produce different stress-strain curves. Designers should be aware of the loading rates in specific applications and request the appropriate data. End-use testing must always be considered, particularly when adequate data are not available.

Time-Related Mechanical Properties.— Mechanical properties discussed previously were related to loads applied gradually and applied for short periods. Long-term and very short-term loading may give somewhat different results. With high-performance thermoplastics it is important to consider creep, impact, fatigue, and related issues. Even the best laboratory test methods do not always predict structural response of production parts accurately, and other factors may also affect results.

Creep is defined as increasing strain over time at constant stress. The rate of creep for a given material depends on applied stress, temperature, and time.

Creep behavior of a material is an important, even crucial, issue with plastics when parts are to be subjected to loads for extended periods and the maximum allowable deflection is critical. To determine creep behavior, test samples may be loaded in tension, compression, or flexure in a constant-temperature environment. Under constant loads, deflection is recorded at regular intervals over suitable periods. Results are generally obtained for four or more stress levels and recorded as creep curves of strain versus logarithmically scaled time. In general, crystalline materials have lower creep rates than amorphous plastics. Glass reinforcement substantially improves the creep resistance. Fig. 9 shows the great differences in creep-rupture behavior that exist among different plastics at several temperatures.

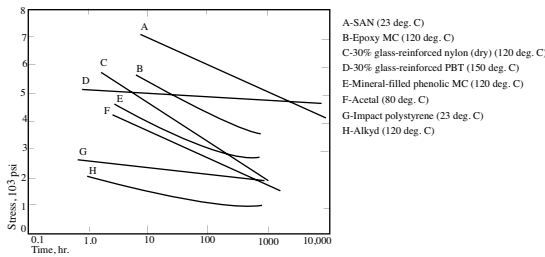


Fig. 9. Plots Showing Diminishing Strengths of Several Plastics as Creep Period is Extended (Curves are Steeper at Higher Temperatures)

Apparent or Creep Modulus: If the deflection of a part subjected to continuous loading is calculated using the short-test modulus of elasticity E, results are likely to be disappointing or even disastrous because the effects of creep have not been considered. If the stress level and temperature are known and creep curves are available for the temperature in question, an apparent, or creep, modulus E_{app} can be calculated from the creep curves by the formula: $E_{app} = \sigma/\varepsilon_c$ where σ is the calculated stress level and ε_c is the strain from the creep curve at

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the expected time and temperature. This value E_{app} can be used instead of E in predicting the maximum beam deflection from the traditional equation given earlier.

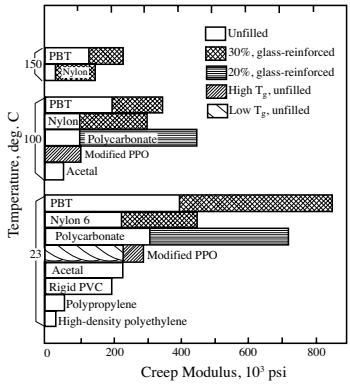


Fig. 10. 1000-Hour Creep Moduli of Several Plastics at Room Temperature and Higher

Manufacturers' data often include curves of creep modulus (or log creep modulus) versus log time at either constant stress or constant strain derived from creep data. The bar graphs of Fig. 10 show 1000-hour creep moduli for several engineering resins at 73°F (23°C). This kind of information may also be provided as tables of values at constant stress and temperature for various time periods.

Creep rupture data are obtained in the same manner as creep data except that higher stresses are used and time is measured to failure. Such failures may be brittle or ductile with some degree of necking. Results are generally plotted as log stress versus log time to failure.

Stress relaxation occurs when plastics parts are assembled into a permanent deflected condition, as in a press fit, a bolted assembly, or some plastics springs. Under constant strain over a period of time the stress level decreases due to the same internal molecular movement that produces creep. Stress relaxation is important with such applications as bolt preloading and springs, where loading must be maintained. The relaxation can be assessed by applying a fixed strain to a sample and measuring the load over time. A relaxation modulus similar to the creep modulus can be derived from the relaxation data. Relaxation data are not as readily available as creep data, but the decrease in load due to stress relaxation can be approximated by using the creep modulus E_{app} calculated from the creep curves.

Plastics parts often fail due to imposition of excessive fixed strains over extended periods of time, for example, a plastics tube that is a press fit over a steel shaft. No relaxation rupture equivalent to creep rupture exists, so for initial design purposes, a strain limit of 20 percent of the strain at the yield point or yield strength is suggested for high-elongation plastics. For low-elongation brittle plastics that have no yield point, 20 percent of the elongation at break is also recommended. These figures should be regarded only as guidelines for development of initial design concepts; prototype parts should be thoroughly tested under end-use conditions to confirm the suitability of the design. Higher or lower property limits may also be indicated in manufacturers' data on specific materials.

Extrapolating creep and relaxation data must be done with caution. When creep and relaxation data are plotted as log property against log time, the curves are generally less pronounced, facilitating extrapolation. This procedure is common practice, particularly with creep modulus and creep rupture data. Extrapolation should not exceed one unit of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

log time, and the strain limit of 20 percent of the yield or ultimate strength mentioned above should not be exceeded.

Impact loading describes a situation in which a load is applied extremely rapidly. Any moving body has kinetic energy, and when the motion is stopped by a collision, the energy is dissipated. Ability of a plastic part to absorb energy is determined by the shape, size, thickness, and type of material. Impact-testing methods now available do not provide designers with information that can be used analytically. The tests can be used for comparing relative notch sensitivity or relative impact resistance, and so can be useful in choosing a series of materials to be evaluated for an application or in grading materials within a series. Impact testing by the Izod and Charpy (ASTM Method D6110) methods, in which a pendulum arm is swung from a certain height to impact a notched test specimen, is the most widely used for measuring impact strength. Impact with the test specimen reduces the energy remaining in the arm, and this energy loss is recorded in ft-lb_f (J). The value of such tests is that they permit comparison of the relative notch toughness of two or more materials under specific conditions.

Table 2b provides the mean and range of the notched Izod impact strength (measured in J/cm) for different thermoplastic and thermoset (TS) materials. In general, materials with higher strain to failure will exhibit greater impact resistance. Thermosetting materials tend to have lower impact resistance than thermoplastics, though thermosets with flexible and unsaturated networks (e.g. rubber and polyester) can have high impact resistance. The addition of reinforcements, such as glass fiber (GF), tends to increase modulus and strength but lower strain to failure and thus reduce the impact properties of composite systems. While such Izod and Charpy impact tests provide comparative data about material performance, the tensile impact test mentioned earlier helps in ranking materials, because it represents more realistic conditions that are encountered by actual parts in certain applications.

Fatigue tests measure the ability of plastics materials to withstand repeated stresses or other cyclic phenomena. Example applications are a snap-action or snap-fit latch that is frequently opened and closed, a gear tooth, a bearing, and a structural component subject to vibration or to repeated impacts. Cyclic loading can cause mechanical deterioration and progressive fracture, leading to failure in service. Typical fatigue tests are carried out on machines designed to subject a cantilever test piece to reversing flexural loading cycles at different stress levels. ASTM Test D671 is of this type, with a cycle rate of 30 Hz. The number of cycles to failure is recorded for each stress level. Data are normally presented in plots of stress (S) versus the log of the number of cycles (N) called S-N curves for specific cycle rates and environmental temperatures.

Tensile impact tests mount the test specimen on the swinging arm. Attached to the test specimen is a cross-piece that is arrested by a notched anvil as the bar swings down, allowing the energy stored in the arm to break the specimen under tension as it passes through the notch. Another impact test used for plastics allows a weighted, round-ended cylindrical "dart" to fall on a flat disk of the plastics to be tested. This test is good for ranking materials because it represents conditions encountered by actual parts in certain applications.

Thermal Properties.—Melting temperatures of highly crystalline thermoplastics are sharp and clearly defined, but amorphous and liquid-crystalline materials soften and become more fluid over wider temperature ranges. Melting points have greater significance in molding and assembly operations than in product design, which usually deals with the product's service temperatures well beneath the melting range.

Glass transition is a reversible change that occurs in an amorphous polymer or in amorphous regions of a partly crystalline polymer when it is heated from a very low temperature into a certain range, peculiar to each polymer, characterized by a rather sudden change from a hard, glassy, or brittle condition to a flexible or rubbery condition. Physical properties such as coefficient of thermal expansion, specific heat, and density usually undergo distinct changes in their temperature derivatives at the same time. The symbol for the glass-transition temperature is T_g.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Typical Mechanical Properties of Common Plastics

Material	Yield Stress, ksi			Elastic Modulus, ksi			Heat Deflection Temperature, ° F			Izod Impact Strength, ft lb/in		
	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum
ABS	2.9	6.3	10.7	112.8	333.5	884.5	149	192	244	0.19	4.12	12.0
PC	40	62.7	154	1.8	2.39	6	78	127	187	0.84	16.7	37.4
PE, HD	7.6	21.3	43	0.45	0.93	1.5	38	48	86	0.36	1.44	37.4
PE, LD	7.7	10.8	64.8	0.11	0.23	0.45	38	67	101	4.49	8.42	37.4
PEEK	65	97.4	115	2.2	3.92	6.48	140	158	260	0.39	1.09	3.18
PET	2.1	38.8	90	0.9	3.15	5.2	60	70	115	0.26	1.12	1.55
PMMA	25	64	85	0.95	2.9	3.79	52	89	106	0.22	0.56	2.75
PP	8.96	25	35.2	0.75	1.35	3.5	38	57	115	0.50	4.02	13.5
PP, GF	25	60	90	1.03	4.3	6.55	60	131	190	0.26	1.80	8.42
PSU	48	88.1	185	1.72	5.64	19.3	79	178	260	0.50	1.42	7.86
PVC	1.47	16.4	59	0.0016	2.16	3.24	47	71	87	0.39	11.6	37.4
TS Epoxy	0.69	22.8	85.1	0.1	2.48	6	65	146	343	0.36	0.67	1.29
TS Epoxy, GF	83	114	150	3	14.4	19	165	226	280	0.30	0.54	0.69
TS Phenolic	41	53.2	57.9	4.1	7	8.64	160	176	226	0.39	0.51	0.60
TS Polyester	10	51.8	123	1	4.03	10.6	200	252	260	2.30	7.49	17.0
TS Polyimide	73	128	160	1.1	3.93	10.8	180	375	400	0.39	0.66	0.80

Table 2b. Typical Mechanical Properties of Common Plastics (Metric)

Material	Yield Stress, MPa			Elastic Modulus, GPa			Heat Deflection Temperature, ° C			Izod Impact Strength, J/cm		
	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum	Minimum	Median	Maximum
ABS	20	43.4	73.5	0.778	2.3	6.1	65	88.9	118	0.1	2.2	6.4
PC	40	62.7	154	1.8	2.39	6	77.8	127	187	0.45	8.92	20
PE, HD	7.6	21.3	43	0.45	0.927	1.5	37.6	47.5	86.1	0.19	0.77	20
PE, LD	7.7	10.8	64.8	0.11	0.232	0.449	38	67.4	101	2.4	4.5	20
PEEK	65	97.4	115	2.2	3.92	6.48	140	158	260	0.21	0.58	1.7
PET	2.1	38.8	90	0.9	3.15	5.2	60	70.3	115	0.139	0.6	0.83
PMMA	25	64	85	0.95	2.9	3.79	51.7	89.4	106	0.12	0.3	1.47
PP	8.96	25	35.2	0.75	1.35	3.5	37.8	57	115	0.267	2.15	7.2
PP, GF	25	60	90	1.03	4.2	6.55	60	131	190	0.14	0.96	4.5
PSU	48	88.1	185	1.72	5.64	19.3	79.4	178	260	0.267	0.76	4.2
PVC	1.47	16.4	59	0.0016	2.16	3.24	46.7	70.8	87.2	0.21	6.2	20
TS Epoxy	0.69	22.8	85.1	0.1	2.48	6	65	146	343	0.19	0.36	0.69
TS Epoxy, GF	83	114	150	3	14.4	19	165	226	280	0.16	0.29	0.37
TS Phenolic	41	53.2	57.9	4.1	7	8.64	160	176	226	0.21	0.27	0.32
TS Polyester	10	51.8	123	1	4.03	10.6	200	252	260	1.23	4	9.08
TS Polyimide	73	128	160	1.1	3.93	10.8	180	375	400	0.21	0.35	0.43

Statistical summary of available grades submitted by material suppliers (data courtesy of MatWeb.com).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Vicat softening point is the temperature at which a small, circular, lightly gravity-loaded, heated probe penetrates a specific distance into a thermoplastics test specimen. This test (ASTM D1525) measures the ability of a thermoplastics material to withstand short-term contact with a heated surface and is most useful for crystalline plastics. Amorphous thermoplastics tend to creep during the test, which reduces its usefulness for such materials.

Deflection temperature under load (DTUL) is the temperature at which a test bar of 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) thickness, loaded to a specified bending stress, will deflect by 0.010 inch (0.25 mm). This ASTM test (D648) is run at bending stresses of 66 lb_f/in^2 (0.455 MPa) or 264 lb_f/in^2 (1.82 MPa) or both. The value obtained is referred to as the *heat deflection temperature* (HDT), also called heat distortion temperature, and is an indication of the ability of the material to perform at elevated temperatures under load. Both stress and deflection for a specific design of test bar are given, so the test may be regarded as establishing the temperature at which the flexural modulus is reduced to particular values—35,200 psi (242.7 MPa) at 66 psi stress, and 140,000 psi (965.3 MPa) at 264 psi stress. Tables 2a and 2b provides the range of HDTs for some common thermoplastics and thermosets. The addition of reinforcements, such as glass fiber (GF), can increase the HDT, so that the parts may be used at higher service temperatures than unreinforced grades.

Like metals, thermoplastic materials expand when heated and contract when cooled. For a given temperature range, most plastics change dimensions much more than metals. The coefficient of *linear thermal expansion* (α) is the ratio of the fractional change in a linear dimension for a unit change of temperature and is expressed as in/in-F, or cm/cm-C. Typical average values for common materials and selected plastics are shown in Table 8, page 372. ASTM Method D696 directs that samples should be prepared so as to give a minimum of anisotropy, but if anisotropy is suspected, specimens shall be cut so as to measure α along the principal axes of anisotropy. The values in Table 8, page 372, may be presumed to have been measured according to those instructions.

Thermal conductivity is the rate at which a material conducts heat energy along its length or through its thickness. For example, if a tightly covered plastic insulated cooler at 32°F (0°C) is filled with ice and chilled beverage cans and the outside is 80°F (27°C), heat from the surrounding warm air passes slowly through the box wall, melting the ice inside. A low thermal conductivity of the wall resists this heat flow. The property is defined by *Fourier's law of heat conduction* as follows:

$$Q_x = k\frac{\Delta T}{x}$$

where Q_x = flux, i.e., the rate of heat flow per unit area of the wall surface,
k = thermal conductivity of the box-wall material,
ΔT = temperature difference from the hot side to the cold side, and
x = wall thickness.

English units for k are Btu/h-in^2(°F/in); SI units are J/s-m^2(K/m).

In sharp contrast to metals, plastics are poor heat conductors but excellent insulators, and plastic foams even more so. Plastics are also good electrical insulators. These insulating properties are valuable in many applications. Conductivities can be enhanced where needed by loading the plastics with copper or aluminum powder. In anisotropic materials, thermal conductivity may differ along major axes. Thermal conductivities for plastics are listed in the table *Typical Properties of Plastics Materials* on page 387.

Aging at elevated temperatures may affect physical, mechanical, electrical, or thermal properties of plastics materials. Data from tests on specimens stored at specific temperatures for suitable periods are presented as plots of properties versus aging time at various temperatures, and may be used as an indication of thermal stability of the material.

Temperature index is a rating by Underwriters Laboratories (UL) of electrical and mechanical properties (with and without effects of impacts) of plastics materials used in electrical equipment for certain continuous operating conditions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flammability ratings also are produced by Underwriters Laboratories. UL tests measure the ability to continue burning after a flame is removed, and the percentage of oxygen needed for the material to continue burning. Other tests measure combustibility, ignition temperatures, and smoke generation. The importance of flammability testing for plastics is reflected by ASTM's listing of ten different tests under the index subject "Flammability—Plastics." The high carbon and hydrogen content of plastics means they are usually flammable. Some exceptions are fluorocarbons and chlorofluoroplastics, which are not flammable. Silicones and rigid PVC will not sustain fire by themselves. Compounders can significantly reduce any plastic's flammability by judiciously choosing from among hundreds of available fire-retarding additives.

Effect of Temperature on Mechanical Properties.—The equivalence of high strain rates and low temperatures (and vice versa) must be kept in mind when designing with plastics materials. Stress-strain curves for tests performed with one strain rate at several temperatures are similar to those for tests with one temperature and several strain rates. That is, very high strain rates and very low temperatures produce similar responses in materials. Conversely, the effects of very low strain rates, that is, creep effects, can be determined more quickly by testing at elevated temperatures and employing time-temperature superposition methods to estimate creep at lower temperatures and longer times. End-use testing at temperatures near or above the highest values expected in everyday use of a product helps the designer estimate long-term performance of components.

Strength, modulus, and elongation behavior are similar for tensile, compressive, flexural, and shear properties. Generally, strength and modulus decrease with increasing temperature. The effect of temperature increase is shown by the curves in Fig. 11 for crystalline and amorphous materials, where a gradual drop in modulus is seen as the glass-transition temperature T_g is approached. The deflection temperature marks a flexural modulus of 35,200 psi (242.7 MPa) at a test stress of 66 psi (455 kPa), giving rise to the horizontal dashed line in Fig. 11. Above the glass-transition temperature, amorphous materials suffer rapid diminution of modulus, and, even with glass-fiber and other reinforcements, modulus drops rapidly above T_g. Some crystalline resins maintain usable moduli at temperatures approaching the crystalline melting point (T_m). Glass-fiber reinforcement can substantially improve the modulus of crystalline materials between the glass-transition and melting temperatures. Generally, strength-versus-temperature curves exhibit shapes like modulus curves, while, as expected, elongations increase with rising temperatures.

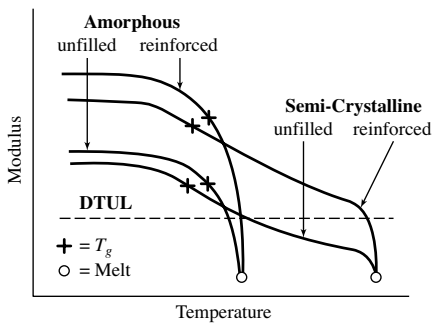


Fig. 11. Schematic of Modulus Behavior of Semi-Crystalline and Amorphous Plastics Showing T_g and T_m and the Beneficial Effect of Reinforcement on Deflection Temperature Under Load (DTUL)

As temperatures drop significantly below normal ambient values, most plastics materials become brittle and lose much of their room-temperature impact strength, although a few

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

materials show only a gradual decrease. Concern over failures at low temperatures led to the development of ASTM D746, "Brittleness Temperature of Plastics," in 1943. In this test, small, unnotched test bars are set up as cantilever beams in groups of five or more, brought to a preset low temperature, and struck by a weighted, blunt-nosed bar falling at 2 m/s. The experiment is repeated at other temperatures, higher and lower, and the fraction of breaks is plotted versus temperature on normal-probability graph paper. From the plot, the temperature at which half the bars break is estimated and reported as the brittleness temperature. Plastics reinforced with long glass fibers have relatively high impact values, both notched and unnotched, at room temperature. They retain much of these values at lower temperatures.

Electrical Properties.—The most notable electrical property of plastics is that they are good insulators, but there are many other electrical properties that must be considered in plastics part design.

Conductivity in solids depends on the availability and mobility of movable charge carriers within the material. Metals are good conductors because the metal atom has a loosely held, outermost electron, and the close proximity of the atoms allows these outer electrons to break free and move within the lattice structure. These free electrons give metals the ability to conduct large currents, even at low voltages. Outer electrons in materials such as glass, porcelain, and plastics are tightly bound to the atoms or molecules so there are no free electrons. Electrical current cannot be conducted, and the materials act as insulators.

Volume resistivity is the electrical resistance of a material when a steady electromotive force (emf) difference is applied to a sample of the material that is made part of an electric circuit. Ohm's law governs the flow of direct current:

$$I = \frac{V}{R}$$

where I = current, amperes (A)
V = emf difference across the test element, volts (V)
R = resistance, ohms (Ω)

R is determined by the element's dimensions and the material's electrical resistivity:

$$R = \rho \frac{L}{A}$$

where L = length of the element, cm
A = cross-sectional area perpendicular to the current direction, cm^2
ρ = resistivity of the conductor material, ohm-cm

Materials having resistivities above 10^8 ohm-cm are considered insulators, and materials with values between 10^8 and 10^3 ohm-cm are considered partial conductors. Most plastics have volume resistivities in the range of 10^{12} to 10^{18} ohm-cm.

Surface resistivity is a measure of the susceptibility of an electrical insulating material to surface contamination, particularly moisture, which makes it electrically conductive. The tests use parallel electrodes that are placed on the same surface of the material. Measured resistance is multiplied by the width of the electrodes and divided by the distance between them and reported as ohms per square. Methods for determining both volume and surface resistivities of insulating materials are spelled out in ASTM D257.

The results of such measurements are sometimes reported in terms of their reciprocals, *volume conductivity* (siemens/cm) and *surface conductivity* (siemens). The unit siemens is the reciprocal of resistance, $1/R$ (with units $1/\Omega$.) The siemens was formerly known as the mho.

Dielectric strength is a measure of the voltage required to cause an insulator to break down and allow an electric current to pass through the resulting conductive path. It may be measured (ASTM Test D149) at any or several frequencies from 0 Hz (direct current) to 800 Hz; the results are expressed in volts per mil (0.001 inch, or 0.0254 mm) of thickness. High values of this property are desired in capacitor films and wire coverings. Variables that may affect test results include temperature, frequency, sample contamination,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

internal voids, rate of voltage increase, and duration of test. Although the use of volts/mil units in test results suggests that the same dielectric strength value should apply to different film thicknesses, tests show that thinner films fail at lower V/mil than thicker ones.

Dielectric constant or permittivity is a dimensionless constant that indicates how easily a material can become polarized by imposition of an electrical field on an insulator. Polarization occurs because of charge-carrying atoms or functional groups (dipoles) in materials. When the field is applied, these groups try to align their positive and negative ends with the field. Reversal of the direction of the electric field results in reversal of the polarization. The dielectric constant is the ratio of the permittivity of the material in normal ambient conditions to the permittivity of a vacuum. Permittivity is important when plastics are used as insulating materials in capacitors and high-frequency electrical apparatus. Changes in temperature, humidity, electrical frequency, and part thickness may affect the dielectric constant. Dielectric constants for a dozen various engineering thermoplastics are listed in Table 3, page 577. Many others are included in the main table of plastics properties, *Typical Properties of Plastics Materials* on page 387.

If a polar material is subjected to an alternating electric field, its dipoles reverse their orientation twice per cycle. This movement encounters frictional resistance at the molecular level, and at high frequencies that friction can generate considerable heat, as detected by the electrical phase angle between voltage and current. This effect is called the *heat dissipation factor*. The heat dissipation factor is a measure of heat energy dissipated by rapidly repeated reversals of polarization, as with an alternating current. The dissipation factor can also be thought of as the ratio of electrical energy lost to that transmitted at a representative frequency, such as 1 MHz (10^6 cycles/s). This high-frequency heat generation, undesired in many insulation uses, can be used to preheat thermosetting materials just before molding. It is also the basis for electronic heat-sealing, widely used in the fabrication of articles from plasticized-PVC films. Some heat dissipation factor values are shown in Table 3.

Table 3. Typical Values of Dielectric Constants and Heat Dissipation Factors for Several Thermoplastics at Room Temperature

Material	Dielectric Constant	Heat Dissipation Factor	Material	Dielectric Constant	Heat Dissipation Factor
Acetal	3.7-3.9	0.001-0.007	Polypropylene	2.3-2.9	0.003-0.014
Acrylic	2.1-3.9	0.001-0.060	Polysulfone	2.7-3.8	0.0008-0.009
ABS	2.9-3.4	0.006-0.021	Modified PPO	2.4-3.1	0.0002-0.005
Nylon 6/6	3.1-8.3	0.006-0.190	Polyphenylene sulfide	2.9-4.5	0.001-0.002
Polycarbonate	2.9-3.8	0.0006-0.026	Polyarylate	2.6-3.1	0.001-0.022
TP Polyester	3.0-4.5	0.0012-0.022	Liquid crystal	3.7-10	0.010-0.060

Arc resistance as determined by ASTM D495 is the length of time (seconds) required for an electric arc applied on the surface of an insulating material to develop a conductive path. Materials that resist such a development are preferred for switchgear parts and other high-voltage apparatus. This test is used mostly for thermosetting materials because, unlike thermoplastics which tend to melt in the arc, thermosets decompose and do produce conductive paths.

The *Comparative Tracking Index (CTI)* is a UL test with an ASTM counterpart (D3638) that is similar to the arc resistance test except that the surface to be tested is precoated with an ammonium chloride electrolyte. The test measures the voltage required to cause a conductive path to form between the electrodes and indicates the arc resistance of a contaminated surface, a condition often found in electrical and electronic equipment.

End-Use Environmental Considerations.—The environment that will be encountered by the product is a prime consideration at the design stage. Problems with cracking, crazing, discoloration, loss of properties, melting, or dissolving can be encountered in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

presence of high or low temperatures, chemical substances, energy sources, and radiation. Design also must consider that plastics components may be stressed by processing, assembly, finishing, and cleaning operations that affect their end-use properties.

The stress level in the plastics product greatly affects performance. Generally, increased stress levels resulting from injection molding, forming, assembly work, and end-use forces reduce resistance to environmental factors. Although many plastics are hygroscopic and absorption of water results in dimensional and property changes, plastics are widely accepted because of their relative compatibility with the environment compared to metals. Some chemicals attack the polymer chain directly by reaction, resulting in a progressive lowering of the molecular weight of the polymer and changes in the short-term mechanical properties; others dissolve the material, although high-molecular-weight plastics dissolve very slowly. Swelling, changes in weight and dimensions, and loss of properties are evidence of solvation.

Plasticization may result if the chemical is miscible with the polymer, resulting in loss of strength, stiffness, and creep resistance, and increased impact resistance. The material may swell and warp due to relaxation of molded-in stresses. Environmental stress cracking may cause catastrophic failure when plastics are stressed, even when the product appears to be unaffected by exposure to a chemical.

Chemical compatibility data are obtained from standard test bars exposed to or placed in the chemical of study and tested as previously described for such properties as tensile strength, flexural modulus, dimensional change, weight, and discoloration. Chemical resistances from some commonly used thermoplastics materials are shown in Table 4, but these are only general guidelines and cannot substitute for values derived from tests on the end product. More extensive tests expose samples to a chemical in the presence of fixed stress or fixed strain distribution along its length, followed by examination for the stress or strain location at which damage begins.

While the preceding tests may provide useful data about chemical compatibility, they do not generate reliable information on performance properties for design purposes. The only tests that provide such information are the creep modulus and rupture tests, conducted at appropriate temperatures in the environment that will be encountered by the product, preferably on prototype parts. Many plastics are slowly degraded to varying degrees by ultraviolet light (UV), which causes fading, chalking, and embrittlement. Acrylics and a few others are not damaged by UV. However, hundreds of additives are available that, when compounded into neat resins, will give compounds that are resistant to heat, burning, UV, staining, etc.

Mechanical Properties.—Almost all end-use applications involve some degree of loading, so mechanical properties are of prime importance in designing with plastics. Material selection is usually based on manufacturers' marketing data sheets listing tensile strength, modulus of elasticity (E), elongation, impact strength, stress and strain behavior, and shear strength. Suppliers' data often are generated under standard test conditions, so they may not be directly transferable to the components produced.

Determination of the governing mechanical properties and their relation to end-use requirements is of vital importance in design. In practical applications materials are seldom subjected to steady deformation without the influence of other factors such as environment and temperature. A thorough understanding of mechanical properties and tests used to determine such properties and of the effects of adverse or beneficial conditions on mechanical properties over long time periods is extremely important. Some resin suppliers and contract manufacturers offer design and technical advice to customers who need design assistance.

Design Analysis

Structural Analysis.—Plastics parts may be subjected to stresses caused by assembly, handling, temperature variations, and other environmental effects. Simple analysis using information in *Moment of Inertia* on page 239 and *Beam Calculations* on page 256 can be used to make sure that newly designed parts can withstand these stresses. These methods may also be used for product improvement, cost reduction, and failure analysis of existing parts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Chemical Resistance of Various Materials by Chemical Classes

Polyethylene	Polyphenylene Sulfide*	Liquid Crystal Polymer*	Polyester Elastomer	Thermoplastic Polyester (PET)	Thermoplastic Polyester (PBT)	Nylon 6/6	Acetal Homopolymer	Acetal Copolymer	Polycarbonate	Polysulfone*	Modified Polyphenylene Oxide	Polypropylene	ABS	316 Stainless Steel	Carbon Steel	Aluminum	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•								
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	
	•	•	•	•	•	•			•		•	•	•	•	•		
	•	•	•	•	•				•		•	•	•	•			
	•	•	•	•					•		•	•	•				
	•	•	•						•		•	•					
	•	•							•		•						
	•								•		•						
ACIDS AND BASES																	
A	B	C	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	C	Dilute mineral acids
C	C	C	B	—	C	B	A	B	C	C	B	A	A	B	C	C	Concentrated mineral acids
A	C	A	B	B	A	B	A	B	C	A	A	A	A	A	B	C	Dilute sodium hydroxide
A	C	C	—	—	B	C	A	C	C	A	A	A	A	B	B	C	Concentrated sodium hydroxide
A	B	C	A	A	A	A	A	B	A	B	A	A	A	A	C	C	Acetic acid, vinegar
C	C	C	B	—	C	B	A	C	C	C	A	A	A	B	C	C	Trichloroacetic acid
AUTOMOTIVE																	
A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	C	C	A	C	C	A	A	A	A	
A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	C	C	A	A	A	A	A	B	A	
A	A	—	A	A	—	A	A	C	C	C	A	A	A	—	—	—	
SOLVENTS																	
A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	C	A	A	B	C	A	A	A	A	Heptane, hexane
A	B	C	B	B	A	A	A	C	C	C	C	C	C	B	B	B	Ethylene chloride, chloroform
A	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	B	Ethanol, cyclohexanol
A	A	A	A	B	B	A	A	B	C	B	A	A	—	A	B	A	Acetaldehyde, formaldehyde
C	C	C	—	—	—	C	B	C	C	C	C	A	C	A	B	B	Aniline, triethanolamine
A	B	A	A	B	B	A	A	C	C	C	C	C	C	A	A	A	Toluene, xylene, naphtha
A	A	A	—	—	C	—	A	C	C	C	C	C	C	A	A	A	Chlorobenzene
C	C	C	C	—	C	A	A	C	C	C	C	A	—	B	C	A	Phenol
B	B	A	B	B	B	A	A	C	C	C	C	C	C	B	B	B	Ethyl acetate, dioctyl phthalate
B	B	A	A	—	—	—	A	C	A	B	C	C	—	A	A	A	Butyl ether, diethyl ether
B	B	A	B	B	B	A	A	C	C	C	C	B	C	A	A	A	Methyl ethyl ketone, acetone
MISCELLANEOUS																	
A	—	A	—	B	—	—	A	B	A	—	B	A	—	A	A	B	Laundry and dishwashing detergents, soaps
B	B	B	—	A	—	—	A	B	A	—	A	A	A	B	B	B	Zinc chloride, cupric sulfate
C	C	C	—	C	—	B	B	C	C	—	C	A	C	C	C	C	30% hydrogen peroxide, bromine (wet)
C	C	C	A	—	A	A	A	B	A	—	A	A	A	B	C	A	Sodium hypochlorite solution
A	A	B	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	—	A	C	B	
B	C	B	C	C	B	A	A	A	C	—	A	C	—	A	C	B	
C	C	C	C	C	C	B	A	—	C	—	—	C	—	A	C	—	

A — minimal effect; B — some effect; C — generally not recommended.

This information is presented for instructional purposes and is not intended for design. The data were extracted from numerous sources, making consistent rating assignments difficult. Furthermore, the response of any given material to specific chemicals in any one class can vary significantly. Indeed, during the preparation of the table, the effect on one plastics of various chemicals in the same category ranged from essentially no effect to total dissolution. Therefore, an "A" rating for a particular plastics exposed to a particular class of chemicals should not be interpreted as applying to all chemicals in that class. The rating simply means that for the chemicals in that class found in the literature reviewed, the rating was generally an "A." There may be other chemicals in the same class for which the rating would be "C." Finally, the typical chemicals listed do not necessarily correspond to the ones on which the individual ratings are based.

Room temperature except for hot water, steam, and materials marked with a * ≡ 200°F (93.3°C). Generally, data covering extended exposure (more than a week) were used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Safety Factors: In setting safety factors for plastics parts, there are no hard and fast rules. The most important consideration is the consequence of failure. For example, a little extra deflection in an outside wall or a crack in one of six internal screw bosses may not cause much concern, but the failure of a pressure vessel or water valve might have serious safety or product liability implications. Tests should be run on actual parts at the most extreme operating conditions that could possibly be encountered during product life. For example, maximum working load should be applied at the maximum temperature and in the presence of any chemicals that might be encountered in service. Loads, temperatures, and chemicals to which a product may be exposed prior to its end use also should be investigated. Impact loading tests should be performed at the lowest temperature expected, including during assembly and shipping. Effects of variations in resin lots and molding conditions must also be considered.

Failures in testing of preproduction lots often can be corrected by increasing the wall thickness, using ribs or gussets, and eliminating stress concentrations. Changing the material to another grade of the same resin or to a different plastics with more suitable mechanical properties is another possible solution. Reviews of product data and discussions with experienced engineers suggest the design stresses shown in Table 5 are suitable for use with the structural analysis information indicated above and the equations presented here, for preliminary design analysis and for evaluating general product dimensions. Products designed under these guidelines must be thoroughly tested before being marketed.

Table 5. Design Stresses for Preliminary Part Designs Expressed as a Percentage of Manufacturers' Data Sheet Strength Values

	Failure Not Critical	Failure Critical
Intermittent (nonfatigue) loading	25–50%	10–25%
Continuous loading (creep or fatigue)	10–25%	5–10%

Failure Criteria: Specification of failure criteria is beyond the scope of this section, which is intended to give only basic general information on plastics. Designers who wish to rationalize complex stress states and analyses might consider the calculated Von Mises stresses relative to the stress limits expressed in Table 5 or investigate the maximum shear theory of failure (otherwise known as Coulomb or Tresca theory). It is further suggested that the shear strength be taken as the manufacturer's published shear strength, or half the tensile strength, whichever is lower.

Pressure Vessels: The most common plastic pressure vessel is a cylindrical tube with internal pressure. In selecting a wall thickness for the tube it is convenient to use the thin-wall hoop stress equation:

$$\text{hoop stress } \sigma = \frac{Pd_i}{2t} \tag{18}$$

where P = uniform internal pressure in the tube, d_i = inside diameter of the tube, and t = tube-wall thickness. This equation is reasonably accurate for tubes where the wall thickness is less than $0.1 \times d$. Also, it is easy to solve for the wall thickness t required to support an internal pressure P with an allowable hoop stress σ. For wall thicknesses greater than $0.1d$, the maximum hoop stress on the wall surface inside the tube can be calculated from

$$\text{hoop stress } \sigma = P\frac{d_o^2 + d_i^2}{d_o^2 - d_i^2} \quad \text{or} \quad \sigma = P\frac{1+R}{1-R} \tag{19}$$

where d_i and d_o are the inside and outside diameters of the tube, and $R = (d_i/d_o)^2$.

By substituting $d_o = d_i + t$ into the left equation one can solve it for the required wall thickness t to provide a working equation for design. The result is

$$t = \frac{d_i}{2}\left(\sqrt{\frac{\sigma + P}{\sigma - P}} - 1\right) \tag{20}$$

In the above equations, all units must be consistent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Press Fits: Press fits are used widely in assembly work for speed and convenience, although they sometimes are unsatisfactory with thermoplastics parts. Common applications are to a plastics hub or boss accepting a plastics or metal shaft or pin. Forcing the pin into the hole expands the hub, creating a tensile or hoop stress.

If the interference is too great, very high strain and stress develop, and the plastics part may a) fail immediately by developing a crack parallel to the hub axis to relieve the stress, a typical hoop stress failure; b) survive assembly but fail prematurely due to creep rupture caused by the high induced-stress levels; or c) undergo stress relaxation sufficient to reduce the stress to a level that can be sustained, which can result in slippage during end use.

For a typical press fit, the allowable design stress depends on the particular plastics material, temperature, and other environmental considerations. Hoop stress equations for such a design make use of a geometry factor γ:

$$\gamma = \frac{1 + (d_s/d_o)^2}{1 - (d_s/d_o)^2} \tag{21}$$

where d_s = diameter of the pin to be inserted and d_o = outside diameter of the boss.

When both the shaft and the hub are of the same or essentially the same materials, the hoop stress σ given the diametral interference $i = d_s - d_i$ is

$$\sigma = \frac{i}{d_s} E_p \frac{\gamma}{\gamma + 1} \tag{22}$$

and the allowable interference i_a given the permissible design stress σ_a is

$$i_a = d_s \frac{\sigma_a}{E_p} \frac{\gamma + 1}{\gamma} \tag{23}$$

When the shaft is metal and the hub is plastic, the hoop stress given i is obtained from

$$\sigma = \frac{i}{d_s} E_p \frac{\gamma}{(\gamma + \nu_p)} \tag{24}$$

and the allowable interference i_a given the permissible design stress for plastic's σ_a is

$$i_a = d_s \frac{\sigma_a}{E_p} \frac{\gamma + \nu_p}{\gamma} \tag{25}$$

where E_p = modulus of elasticity of plastics and ν_p = Poisson's ratio for plastics.

Pipe Threads: Pipe threads on plastics pipes and other parts used in plastics plumbing and pneumatic assemblies typically require only hand tight assembly to effect a good seat, especially if a compatible sealant tape or compound is used. Assembling a tapered male pipe thread into a mating female thread in a plastics part is analogous to driving a cone into a round hole and may result in a split boss. Sometimes straight threads and an O-ring seal can avoid the need for pipe threads. When pipe threads must be used, torque control is essential.

When mating metal to plastics pipe threads, the threaded plastics component should be the male member, so that the plastics are in compression. If torque can be controlled during assembly, fluoroplastics tape should be used on female plastics pipe threads. If torque cannot be controlled, an external hoop ring, either pressed on or molded in, should be considered. Flats should not be designed into plastics parts for assembly purposes because they can encourage overtightening. If some provision for improved gripping must be made, wings or a textured surface may be used. An approximate formula for the hoop stress σ produced in a plastics boss with internal pipe threads is

$$\sigma = \frac{3T}{tdL} \tag{26}$$

where T = torque in in-lb, t = wall thickness of the plastics boss in inches, d = pipe outside diameter in inches, and L = length of thread engagement in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Equation (26) assumes certain geometric relationships and a coefficient of friction of 0.15. If compatible thread lubricants are used during assembly, the torque must be reduced. To ensure safety and reliability, all threaded assemblies must be subjected to long-term testing under operating pressures, temperatures, and stresses caused by installation procedures exceeding those likely to be encountered in service.

Thermal Stresses.—When materials with different coefficients of thermal expansion are bolted, riveted, bonded, crimped, pressed, welded, or fastened by any method that prevents relative movement between the parts, there is potential for thermal stress to exist. Typical examples are joining of nonreinforced thermoplastics parts with materials such as metals, glass, or ceramics which usually have much lower coefficients of thermal expansion than plastics. The basic relationship for thermal expansion is

$$\Delta L = \alpha L \Delta T \tag{27}$$

where ΔL = change in length, α = coefficient of thermal expansion (see Table 8, page 372), L = linear dimension under consideration (including hole diameters), and ΔT = temperature change.

If the plastics component is constrained so that it cannot expand or contract, the strain ε_T, induced by a temperature change, is calculated by

$$\varepsilon_T = \frac{\Delta L}{L} = \alpha \Delta T \tag{28}$$

The stress can then be calculated by multiplying the strain ε_T by the tensile modulus of the material at the temperature involved. A typical example is of a plastics part to be mounted to a metal part, such as a window in a housing. Both components expand with changes in temperature. The plastics imposes insignificant load to the metal, but considerable stress is generated in the plastics. For such an example, the approximate thermal stress σ_T in the plastics is given by

$$\sigma_T = (\alpha_m - \alpha_p) E_p \Delta T \tag{29}$$

where α_m = coefficient of thermal expansion of the metal, α_p = coefficient of thermal expansion of the plastics, and E_p = tensile modulus of the plastics at the temperature involved. Other equations for thermal expansion in various situations are shown in Fig. 12.

Most plastics expand more than metals with temperature increase, and their modulus drops. The result is a compressive load in the plastics that often results in buckling. Conversely, as the temperature drops, the plastics shrinks more than the metal and develops an increased tensile stress. These conditions can cause tensile rupture of the plastics part. Clearances around fasteners, warpage, creep, or failure, or yield of adhesives tend to relieve the thermal stress. Allowances must be made for temperature changes, especially with large parts subjected to wide variations. Provision is often made for relative motion ΔL_{rel} between two materials, as illustrated in Fig. 12:

$$\Delta L_{rel} = (\alpha_p - \alpha_m) L \Delta T \tag{30}$$

Designing for Stiffness.—The designer must take full advantage of the ability of plastics to be easily formed into a desired shape, in contrast to woods where every shape must be machined or assembled from planks or blocks. To a lesser degree, the same is often true of metals, although die-castable metals have a considerable shape versatility. Though the modulus of elasticity is much less in plastics than in metals, *stiffness* is a property not just of the material but also of the *structure* that can be made from it. When the product must support bending loads, as in a bookshelf, a simple beam of rectangular cross section would be the logical approach if the shelf material were pine or mahogany. If the material is plastic, other cross sections of higher stiffness per unit weight can be considered to take advantage of plastics' ease of formability and low density. Fig. 13 shows some alternatives to the traditional rectangular cross section that achieve greater stiffness with less material.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Manufacture of Plastics Products

The main processes for manufacturing large quantities of plastics products are extrusion, injection molding, blow molding, and sheet thermoforming for thermoplastic materials; compression molding, transfer molding, prepreg molding, and pultrusion for thermosetting materials.

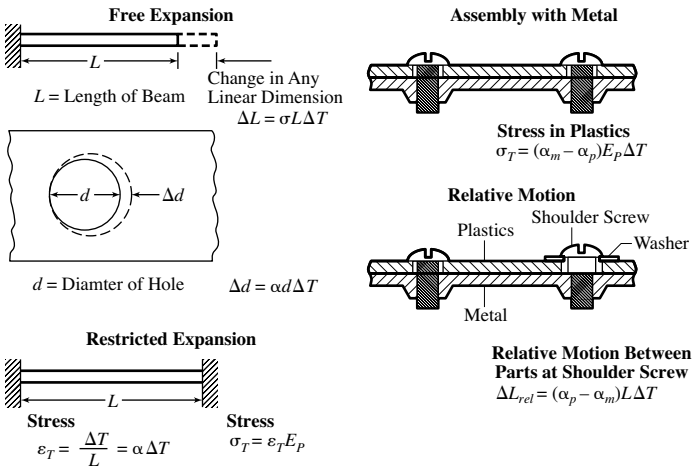


Fig. 12. Thermal Expansion Equations for Various Combinations of Materials and Situations

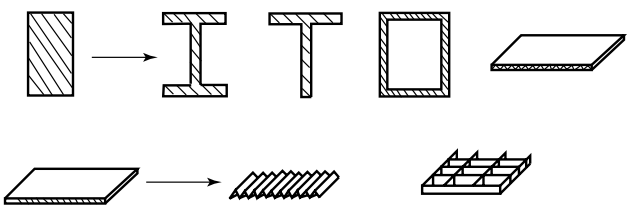


Fig. 13. Placing Most of the Material Far from the Centroid Achieves Far Higher Bending Stiffness per Unit Weight of Plastics

More tonnage of thermoplastics pass through extrusion machines than any type of plastics forming machines. The dominant type of extruder is the single-screw extruder. A feed hopper supplies small plastic granules to a thick-barreled, heated cylinder, inside which turns a sturdy, precisely contoured screw. A powerful variable-speed motor drive turns the screw at speeds typically between 10 and 1000 rpm. At the delivery end is attached a die, a block of metal with a specially shaped orifice. The screw has two main jobs: 1) to melt by friction and thoroughly mix the feed, transforming it from cold, solid particles into a homogeneous hot, viscous melt; 2) to develop the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

very high pressure (1,000–8,000 psi, or 14–55 MPa) needed to pump the melt through the die. This produces a continuous length of product whose cross section resembles that of the die opening. Extruders are widely employed in intermediate processing of material in the plastics industry. Some final consumer products made by this process are pipes, sheets and films, garden hoses, electrical wires, netting, fishing lines and leaders, and house sidings. Many extruded products are parts of other industrial or consumer products. For example, huge quantities of ABS sheet and flexible vinyl gasketing go into refrigerators and freezers each year. Mop handles are extruded tubing cut to the length needed. Produce bags are made from extruded tubular blown polyethylene film that is laid flat, printed, heat-sealed across and perforated for tear-off at intervals, then wound onto roll cores for delivery to supermarkets. An important class of extruded products includes rods, bars, and tubes from which machinists fabricate smaller quantities of objects, such as prototypes for testing prior to mass production.

Sheet Thermoforming.—Also known as vacuum or pressure forming, these widely used molding processes respectively operate at significantly less than or greater than atmospheric pressure to form feedstock in the form of sheet. The process begins with a sheet of plastic from which a single product or sometimes up to several dozen small products are to be made per operating cycle. Mounted in a frame, the sheet to be formed is preheated in an oven between paired radiant heaters at the thermoforming press until it begins to sag. The temperature is still well below that at which the same resin would be injection molded. The sheet is then positioned over the mold, which, in the original and simplest variant of the process, is a female mold made porous by drilling many small holes through it. The mold is enclosed in a chamber (vacuum or pressure box) so that a vacuum can be drawn from below (or a pressure applied from above). The softened sheet is clamped to the mold around its edges, and the pressure difference is applied to press the sheet against the mold surface. Cooling and solidification of the part is done with fans, water mist, or cooling channels in the mold. The unclamped molding is then indexed to a die-cutting table where the edges are trimmed and the part(s) cut out. Trim scrap, which may be as much as 20 percent of the sheet area, is recycled to the sheet extruder.

Because the drawn sheet contacts the upper areas of the mold early in the mold cycle and the bottom last, the wall thickness of the finished part is thinner at the bottom than the upper areas when using a female mold. Often, at least average thickness is needed in the bottom areas to satisfy the design service and service life requirements. Over the years, techniques such as plug assist, male forming, and others have been developed that permit draw depths of more than twice the clamping width with much more uniform wall thickness. Polystyrene cups for cold drinks are now made in this way. Fig. 14 shows the steps in a more sophisticated variant vacuum air-cushion forming, in which a male mold component provides plug assistance without actually touching the softened plastic membrane. Clearly, though, thermoforming cannot match the tight tolerances of injection molding. Nor can it produce intricate components that require substantial or abrupt variations in wall thickness. Because of the low pressure, thermoforming molds can be made much more cheaply of aluminum—even plaster for short runs—and usually do not need the extensive polishing and hard-chrome plating as typical with injection molds. Also, thermoforming machines are much less massive for equal part sizes than injection machines. Production efficiency is higher in multi-station machines but requires a higher financial investment.

Blow Molding.—In its most common form, blow molding couples an extruder with a chilled aluminum mold to make a hollow object such as a 2-liter soda bottle. A crosshead die attached to the extruder extrudes a tube of hot melt (*parison*) downward between the mold halves, as in Fig. 15. The parison-inflating air injection at stage 4 is done through a needle that typically, but not always, penetrates the pinched-off melt at the inverted top of the bottle. Bottles with capacities from 2 ml to 10 gallons (38 liters) and myriad other hollow objects are produced by this process. Close tolerances are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

maintained on the threaded closures where the mold halves meet; elsewhere they are looser, comparable to those of sheet thermoforming. As in thermoforming, when a particular product, such as a half-gallon or 2-liter bottle, warrants a very high production rate, highly automated, multi-station machines are economical.

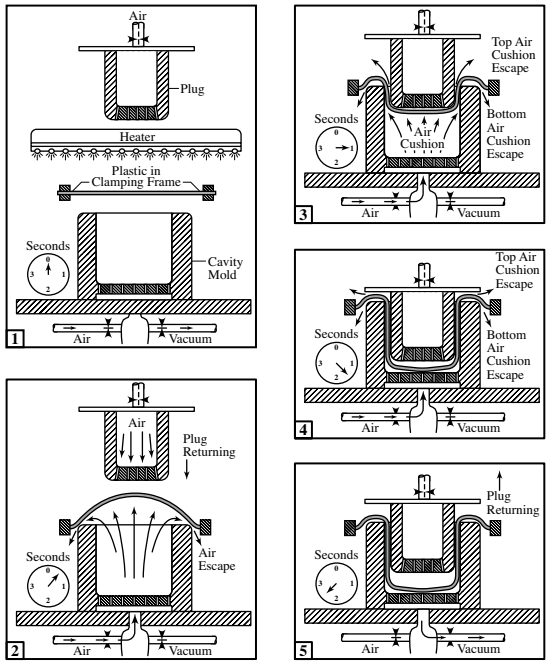


Fig. 14. Five Stages in the Cycle of Air-Cushion Vacuum Forming with Controlled Air Pressures at Stages 3 and 4. Removal and Trimming Follow Stage 5.

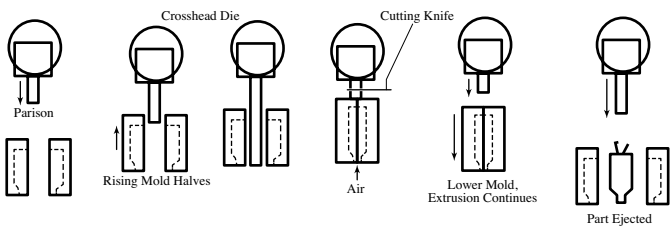


Fig. 15. Six Stages of Extrusion/Blow Molding

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Processing of Thermosets.—While some thermosetting materials have been adapted to injection molding processes, most are still processed by compression molding, transfer molding, prepreg molding, sprayup, and hand layup. Commonly used *compression molding* is a process in which precompounded and catalyzed resins, still thermoplastically formable, are preformed into buns or bricks of known weight. One or more bricks are preheated in convection or electronic ovens and quickly positioned in the female half of a horizontal mold. It and the hovering male half are at the molding temperature. The mold is closed and brought to high pressure, squeezing the softened bricks, which, ideally, flow into all parts of the mold cavity. Pressure is maintained for the time required to complete the chemical cross-linking reaction and to solidify the molding, after which it is ejected from the mold, any slight leakage at the parting line (*flash*) is trimmed, and it is set aside to cool. With the correct choice and dose of catalyst, time in the mold need not be long. As with injection molding, the high pressures dictate massive molds and presses.

Compression molding is also an efficient way to process unsaturated polyesters, perhaps the most versatile and user-friendly resins available for reinforced plastics processing. When reinforced with chopped glass and mixed to a dough-like consistency, these compounds, known as premix or "gunk," have been widely used in the automotive and boat industries. Compression molding is also used with sheet-molding compounds. Glass-fiber cloths are preimpregnated with resin and need only heat and pressure to cure them into finished products.

If a mold is provided with both heating and cooling, thermoplastics, too, may be compression molded, an obviously slow process, but sometimes convenient for making prototypes and test pieces. The use of heated and cooled molds with compression is also used in *thermal imprint lithography* to form micro- and nano-sized features on the cavity surface.

In *transfer molding*, also called *plunger molding*, the thermosetting compound is preheated in a separate cylinder (the pot) until it is fully fluid, then forced by a plunger through a runner into the final mold. This process is capable of molding complex parts that cannot be made by compression molding, and also offers closer dimensional tolerances and glossier surfaces than the latter. Multi-cavity molds and short cycle times are feasible with transfer molding. Transfer molding has been used widely in the electronics industry and in molding and overmolding of silicone products, including medical devices.

Another popular method of processing thermosets into unidirectionally reinforced products is *pultrusion*, in which continuous glass roving or mat is pulled through a resin bath or impregnator and then into a preforming fixture where the cross section is partly shaped. The preliminary profile continues through dies where curing mechanisms are applied, and finally to a cut-off saw to produce shapes such as channels, rods, and tubes. Ladder rails, fishing rods, tool handles, tent poles, and numerous other parts are made by this process.

Polyurethanes.—Polyurethanes (PUR) are among the most versatile of polymers, both as thermoplastic and thermosetting, as well as the most ubiquitous in everyday products. For example, the flexible thermoplastic members of the family are mainly elastomers that are favorites for athletic shoes, while the rigid, transparent thermoplastics are vying with polycarbonate for the high-value market in eyeglass lenses. Cast rigid PUR is available in rod, tube, and bar stock form.

The thermosets are formed by linking two reactive components, an isocyanate and a polyol. Toluene diisocyanate and diphenylmethane diisocyanate are the most used isocyanates, while a variety of polyols are commonly used. Short-chain, low-molecular-weight types result in rigid plastics, and longer-chain types form flexible materials. About 70 percent of all PURs worldwide go into automotive, building and construction, mattresses, and furniture including frame members produced by reaction injection molding. Densities of rigid PUR foams range from 1 to 8 lb/ft^3 (16–128 kg/m^3) and much higher in furniture members. Flexible PUR foams range from near that of the parent plastic down to 1 lb/ft^3 (16 kg/m^3). Since the reactive components must be mixed instantly and thoroughly at the moment of application, a special industry of PUR processing machinery has developed to deal with that requirement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

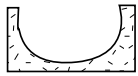
Reinforced Plastics.—For superior strength and modulus, many items are reinforced with cloths of various fibers and weaves. Felted mats are often cross-layered and then impregnated with liquid resin (e.g., polyester or epoxy) prior to being cured to make final products. Some of these products, if not too large, can be compression molded. But with judicious catalysis, the resin can be cured at room temperature, facilitating manufacture at low pressure, with or without heat, of large structures such as boats and storage tanks for liquids. With layup one can handily distribute the reinforcing web in accordance with the stress distribution expected when the product is placed in service. Fig. 16 shows four increasingly positive (and more costly) ways of curing hand layups. Also, many laminates are produced in sheets, typically 4 ft by 8 ft (122 by 244 cm), for subsequent fabrication into final products. The familiar decorative laminates (Formica), for example, are produced in large presses with multiple steam-heated platens interleaved between laminates, permitting production of dozens of sheets in one pressing. Properties of some reinforced plastics available in sheet form are given in Table 6.

Table 6. General Properties of Reinforced Plastics *(ASTM Test Procedures)*

Material	Specific Gravity	Tensile Strength 10^3 psi	Tensile Modulus 10^6 psi	Compressive Strength 10^3 psi	Flexural Strength 10^3 psi	Izod Impact Strength ft-lb/in notch	Heat Resistance Continuous °F	Arc Resistance seconds
Polyester								
Glass cloth	1.5–2.1	30–70	1–3	25–50	40–90	5–30	300–350	60–120
Glass mat	1.3–2.3	20–25	0.5–2	15–50	25–40	2–10	300–350	120–180
Asbestos	1.6–1.9	30–60	1–3	30–50	50–70	2–8	300–450	100–140
Paper	1.2–1.5	6–14	0.5–1.5	20–25	13–28	1–2	220–250	28–75
Cotton cloth	1.2–1.4	7–9	0.5–1.5	23–24	13–18	1–4	230–250	70–85
Epoxy								
Glass cloth	1.9–2.0	20–60	2–4	50–70	70–100	11–26	330–500	100–110
Glass mat	1.8–2.0	14–30	1–3	30–38	20–26	8–15	330–500	110–125
Paper	1.4–1.5	10–19	0.5–1	20–28	19–24	0.5–1	260–300	30–100
Phenolic								
Glass cloth	1.8–2.0	40–60	1–3	35–40	65–95	10–35	350–500	20–130
Glass mat	1.7–1.9	5–20		17–26	10–60	8–16	350–500	40–150
Asbestos	1.7–1.9	40–65	2–5	45–55	50–90	1–6	350–600	120–200
Paper	1.3–1.4	8–20	1–2	20–40	10–30	0.3–1	225–250	Tracks
Cotton cloth	1.3–1.4	7–16	0.5–1.5	30–44	14–30	0.5–3	225–250	Tracks
Nylon cloth	1.1–1.2	5–10	0.3–0.5	28–36	9–22	2–4	150–165	Tracks
Silicone								
Glass cloth	1.6–1.9	10–35	1–2	25–46	10–38	5–13	400–700	150–250
Asbestos cloth	1.7–1.8	10–25	1–2	40–50	12–20	6–9	450–730	150–300

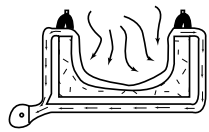
Injection Molding.—This process produces the majority of plastics consumer and industrial products. The modern injection molding machine consists of an extruder, much like the one described previously, but with the added feature that the screw can be driven forward to quickly inject the stored-up hot melt into the second main part, the mold. A nozzle at the end of the extruder presses tightly into a recess (*sprue)* in the stationary half of the mold. The two halves of the mold, with a vertical parting surface, are made from heavy steel and mounted on thick steel tie-bars. Within the mold is a network of *runners* distributing melt from the sprue to the mold cavities that determine the dimensions of the molded product. The mold halves are clamped together with high pressure by a hydraulic piston or toggle mechanism driven by hydraulic or electric means. Coolant channels passing near the cavities keep the mold cold, well below the freezing range of the plastic. The screw moves forward, forcing the melt through the runners and into the cavities, and maintains melt pressure (5,000–15,000 psi, 34–103 MPa) while the moldings cool and freeze. Then the far half of the mold is withdrawn, activating ejection pins that push the moldings and runners out of the mold. Meanwhile the extruder rotates the screw to generate more hot melt, while retracting the screw. Typically the process is highly automated with computer controls. Injection machines are rated by their melting capacity, shot size, platen size,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



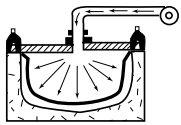
Contact Molding

Resin in contact with air. Layup normally cures at room temperature; heat may accelerate cure. A smoother exposed side may be achieved by wiping on cellophane.



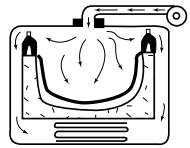
Vacuum Bag

Cellophane or polyvinyl acetate is placed over the layup. Joints are sealed with plastic; vacuum is drawn. Resultant atmospheric pressure eliminates voids and forces out entrapped air and excess resin.



Pressure Bag

Tailored bag – normally rubber sheeting – is placed against layup. Air or steam pressure up to 50 psi (345 kPa) is applied between pressure plate and bag.



Autoclave

Modification of the pressure bag method; after layup, the entire assembly is placed in steam autoclave at 50–100 psi (345–690 kPa). Additional pressure achieves higher glass loadings and improved removal of air.

Fig. 16. Variants of Hand-Layup Method of Reinforced Plastics Molding with Cloth or Mat Provide Improved Control of Final Product Qualities.

and clamping force. They range from machines for forming micron-sized gears up to meter-sized garbage dumpsters.

Injection molding is capable of making identical items with very close tolerances on dimensions, so it is ideal for the production of interchangeable industrial parts destined for complex assemblies. Undercut shapes can be molded with the aid of side-draw mold sections. For example, millions of bottle caps are molded in automatic unscrewing molds. Producing mold cavities and their male halves in fine tool steels is costly, so one should be quite certain that the part design is accurate before finishing the mold cavities. Successful production requires the inputs of all persons connected with the project: the product designer, the mold designer, the mold maker, the molder and the customer. Because of the high investment in the mold, injection molding is seldom considered for very short runs, especially in view of available 3D printing technologies. For more on this topic, see *Metal Additive Manufacturing* on page 1555. However, inexpensive molds that may serve to make a few hundred parts have been made from metal-filled epoxy casting compounds, while CNC machining of aluminum and other rapidly produced metal molds is still widely used for production of tens of thousands of parts that have tolerances and surface finishes that exceed the capabilities of most current 3D printing processes.

Design for Injection Molding.—Product analysis is a good starting point in the design process for plastics molding. Make a detailed checklist of the functions the new part will have to perform and the operating conditions it will encounter. If the part will replace an older design that required fabrication from other materials and, perhaps, subassembly with fasteners or adhesives, the new design may be able to take advantage of injection molding's versatility to meld the several functions into a single new part design.

Properties Checklist: Identify potential candidate materials that can fulfill required functions. Preliminary analysis using relevant properties should reduce the list to a few materials that can do the job and the required volume (in^3 or cm^3) of each.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Considerations and questions to ask in this phase of the project are:

1) What are the strength, structural stiffness, impact loading, exposure to chemicals, operating temperature range (and possible overheating and cooling), electrical factors, and other relevant material factors?

2) What certifications or government regulations are involved?

3) Must the design be approved by clients or in-house managers?

4) Has the marketing group determined the anticipated production run?

5) Input from the prospective mold builder and molder (often not the same) should be sought before the design is made final.

6) The cost for each part produced of the plastics to be used.

Relative Plastics Costs: The list of some comparative material costs in Table 7 should serve to narrow materials choices, but current quantity quotations from various suppliers must be obtained. It is important to account for material density when calculating material costs, since the density of thermoplastics may vary significantly. For injection molding of a large production run, a crude estimate of part cost is double the material cost to account for amortized mold cost, as well as the molder's processing costs.

Table 7. Volumetric Costs of Plastics

Type/Material	Price (US $)		Type/Material	Price (US $)	
	Per Pound	Per Kilogram		Per Pound	Per Kilogram
Thermoplastics			PSU	5.50	12.13
ABS	1.24	2.73	PTFE	7.35	16.20
Acetal, POM	1.41	3.11	PVC	0.89	1.96
HDPE	0.70	1.54	TPU	2.06	4.54
LCP	6.40	14.11	**Recycled Thermoplastics**		
LDPE	0.78	1.72	HDPE	0.68	1.50
PA66, Nylon	1.64	3.62	Recycled LDPE	0.39	0.86
PC	1.77	3.90	Recycled PET	0.61	1.34
PEEK	45.00	99.21	Recycled PP	0.34	0.75
PEI	8.80	19.40	**Thermoset**		
PET, bottle	0.78	1.72	Epoxy	1.12	2.47
PMMA	1.28	2.82	Thermoset Melamine	1.55	3.42
Polyester	1.23	2.71	Thermoset Phenolic	0.80	1.76
PP	0.85	1.87	Thermoset Polyester	1.84	4.06
PPS, 30%GF	3.85	8.49	Thermoset Polyurethane	1.10	2.43
PS	1.10	2.43	Thermoset Urea	1.07	2.36

Based on 2018 market prices. Recycled material prices are for pelletized feed stock and vary with quality.

Wall Thicknesses: Wall thickness throughout the part, referred to as the nominal wall thickness, is one of the most critical design parameters. Nominal dimensions and tolerances should be calculated and decided before the mold is made, since modifications are costly. In general, wall thicknesses should be kept as thin as needed to meet the part's design requirements and as uniform as possible. Ideally, the flow of molten plastic should be arranged to flow through thicker sections into thinner ones rather than the reverse. This is accomplished—in consultation with the mold builder—by gating cavities in the thick sections. The mold builder will help, too, with the decisions on how many cavities are needed, how to arrange them in the mold for optimal temperature control, the best runner layout and sizing, and what size mold and injection machine will be economical for the production desired. Most injection-molded plastics parts have wall thicknesses in the range from 0.02 to 0.25 inch (0.5 to 6 mm). For compounds containing half-inch (12.7 mm) and longer glass fibers, and for thermoplastic polyurethanes, the range shifts upward by a factor of 2 or more.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When the plastics selection for the part has been finalized, the suppliers of the plastic resin can provide recommendations of grades and wall thicknesses appropriate to those grades. Table 8 shows typical nominal wall thicknesses for various thermoplastics.

Table 8. Typical Nominal Wall Thicknesses for Various Classes of Thermoplastics

Thermoplastics Group	Typical Working Range		Thermoplastics Group	Typical Working Range	
	inch	mm		inch	mm
Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS)	0.045–0.140	1.14–3.56	Polyester elastomer	0.025–0.125	0.64–3.18
Acetal	0.030–0.120	0.76–3.05	Polyethylene	0.030–0.200	0.76–5.08
Acrylic	0.025–0.150	0.64–3.81	Polyphenylene sulfide	0.020–0.180	0.51–4.57
Liquid-crystal polymer	0.008–0.120	0.20–3.05	Polypropylene	0.025–0.150	0.64–3.81
Long-fiber-reinforced plastics	0.075–1.000	1.91–25.4	Polystyrene	0.035–0.150	0.89–3.81
Modified polyphenylene ether	0.045–0.140	1.14–3.56	Polysulfone	0.050–0.150	1.27–3.81
Nylon	0.010–0.115	0.25–2.92	Polyurethane	0.080–0.750	2.03–19.05
Polyarylate	0.045–0.150	1.14–3.81	Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	0.040–0.150	1.02–3.81
Polycarbonate	0.040–0.150	1.02–3.81	Styrene-acrylonitrile (SAN)	0.035–0.150	0.89–3.81
Polyester	0.025–0.125	0.64–3.18	…	…	…

If the plastics part is to carry loads, load-bearing areas should be analyzed for stress and deflection. When stress or deflection is too high, solutions are to use ribs or contours to increase section modulus; to use a higher-strength, higher-modulus (fiber-reinforced) material; or to increase the wall thickness if it is not already too thick. Where space allows, adding or thickening ribs can increase structural integrity without thickening walls.

Equations (15), (16), and (17) on pages 569–570 can be related to formulas using the section modulus and moment of inertia on page 257, where for Case 2, stress at the beam center is given by $\sigma = -Wl/4Z$.

On page 256, note that $Z = I \div$ distance from neutral axis to extreme fiber ($h \div 2$ in the plastics example). The rectangular beam section diagrammed on page 242 gives the equivalent of $I = bh^3/12$ for the rectangular section in the plastics example. Therefore,

$$Z = \frac{I}{h/2} = \frac{bh^3}{12} \times \frac{2}{h} = \frac{bh^2}{6}$$

In $\sigma = -Wl/4Z$, the (−) sign indicates that the beam is supported at the ends, so that the upper fibers are in compression and the lower fibers are in tension. Also, $W = F$ and $l = L$ in the respective equations, so that stress, $\sigma = FL/4(bh^2)/6$, and $\sigma = 3FL/2bh^2$.

To calculate the maximum deflection y at load, equate Equation (16) from page 569 and $Y = Wl^3/48EI$ from page 257, where $W = F$, $l = L$, $E = E$, and $I = bh^3/12$. Therefore,

$$y = \frac{FL^3}{48E\ (bh^3/12)} = \frac{FL^3}{4Ebh^3}$$

Example: Assume that a beam (see Fig. 17) as described in connection with Equations (15), (16), and (17) on pages 569–570 is 0.75 inch wide with a constant wall thickness of 0.08 inch, so that the cross-sectional area is 0.06 in^2, and there is a central load W of 5 lb. Based on a bending or flexural modulus of 300,000 lb/in^2, the maximum stress is calculated at 6250 lb/in^2 and the maximum deflection at 0.694 inch. Both the stress and the deflection are too high, so a decision is made to add a rib measuring 0.04 inch thick by 0.4 inch deep, with a small draft of ½ degree per side to reinforce the structure.

The equations in the *BEAMS* section starting on page 256, the drawing on page 248 representing the ribbed section (neglecting fillets), and the accompanying formulas permit calculation of the maximum stress and deflection for the ribbed section.

With the new cross-sectional area only slightly larger at 0.0746 in^2, the calculated stress is reduced to 2270 lb/in^2, and the deflection goes down to 0.026 inch, which is acceptable for both the material and the application. To achieve the same result from a heavier beam would require a thickness of 0.239 inch, tripling the weight of the beam and increasing molding difficulties. The rib adds only 24.3 percent to the total section weight.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Use of ribs allows the structural characteristics of a part to be tailored to suit its function, but ribs can increase the size of the product and cause warping, as well as appearance problems, so they are best avoided when not structurally necessary. If the first parts produced require strengthening, ribs can be added or thickened without high cost after the tool is finished because the work consists only of removing steel from the mold. In general, ribs should have a base thickness of about 70 percent the thickness of the adjacent wall and be kept as thin as possible where they are positioned near faces that need to have a good appearance.

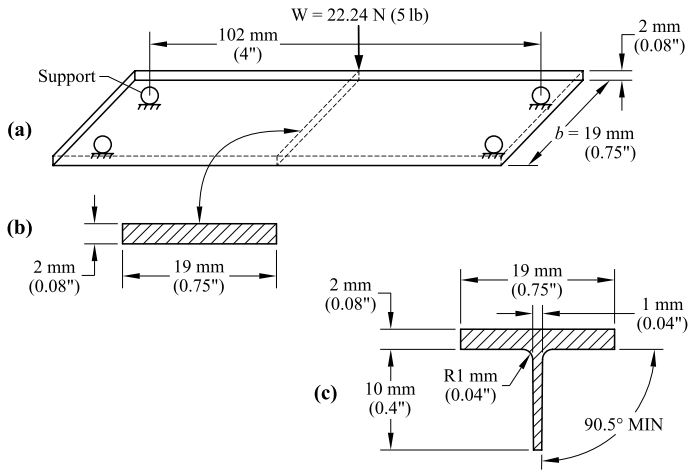


Fig. 17. (a) Original Beam; (b) Original Central Section; (c) Cross Section of Center with Rib Added to Reinforce the Structure

Note: *Dimensions in parentheses are for example on page 590.*

Where structural strength is more important than appearance, or when materials are used that have low shrinkage, ribs can be made 75 or 100 percent of the wall thickness. However, where the rib base joins the main molding, there is locally increased thickness, forming a heavy mass of material. Shrinkage of this mass can produce a cavity or void, a hollow area or sink, or can distort the molding. If the mass is very large, cooling time may be prolonged, leading to low output from the machine. Large masses of material in other parts of a molding are also best avoided. These problems can usually be addressed by good mold design.

Ribs need not be of constant height or width and are often varied in proportions to suit the stress distribution in the part. All ribs should have a minimum of ½ degree of draft per side for ease of removal from the mold and a minimum radius of 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) at the base to avoid stress-raising corners. Higher draft angles are needed when molding textured surfaces or fiber-filled resins that are difficult to eject. Draft and thickness requirements will usually limit the height of the rib, which can be from 1.5 to 5 times the base thickness, and several evenly spaced ribs are generally preferred to a single large one. Smooth transitions (chamfers, fillets, and gussets) should be made to other structural features such as bosses, walls, and pads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Other ways to improve section properties include use of top-hat and corrugated sections, crowning or doming of some areas, and reinforcement with metal or other inserts that are placed in the mold before it is closed. To keep molded parts uniform in wall thickness, cores or projections may be provided in the mold to prevent a space being filled with molding material. Blind holes can be cored by pins that are supported on only one side of the mold and through holes by pins that pass through both sides. The length-to-width ratio should be kept as low as possible to prevent bending or breakage under the high pressures used in the injection molding process.

Agency approvals for resistance to flammability or heat, electrical properties, or other characteristics are usually based on specific wall thicknesses. These restrictions sometimes necessitate thicker walls than are required for structural strength purposes.

When determining wall thickness, design engineers must also have some knowledge of mold design and should consider the ability of plastics to flow into the narrow mold channels. The degree and rate of flow depend on temperature and pressure to some extent but vary for different materials, as shown in Fig. 18. Spiral flow tests provide much more accurate information about the achievable flow lengths for a given wall thickness than melt flow indices (MFI), since they are performed with shear rates similar to those of molded parts. However, spiral flow tests tend to overestimate flow lengths relative to real applications, because they calculate the maximum effect of the moving melt's heat convection relative to radial flow fronts that often occur in mold filling.

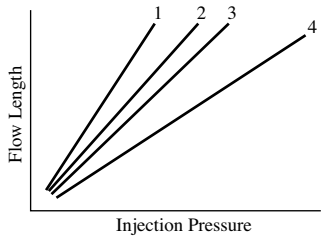


Fig. 18. Typical Spiral-Flow Curves for (1) Nylon 6/6, (2) Polyester Thermoplastics PBT, Liquid-Crystal-Glass-Reinforced, and Polyphenylene-Sulfide-Glass-Reinforced, (3) Acetal Copolymer, and (4) PBT-Glass-Reinforced Plastics Materials

Stresses and Deflections in Load-Bearing Parts.—If the plastic part is to carry loads, load-bearing areas should be analyzed for stress and deflection according to the principles presented earlier. If stress or deflection is found to be too high, solutions include using ribs or contours to increase section modulus; using a higher-strength or higher-modulus (i.e., fiber-reinforced) material; or increasing the wall thickness if it is not already excessive. Where space allows, adding or thickening ribs can increase structural integrity without making walls thicker.

Formulas given in *Beam Calculations* starting on page 256, which presume elastic behavior, can be used if care is taken to use moduli and strengths related to anticipated service times and temperatures.

Example: Consider a simple case of a beam with rectangular cross section b wide and h deep, of length l centrally loaded and freely supported at its ends. This is an example of Case 2 on page 257 with a beam cross section depicted generically in the first diagram of *Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration* on page 241. Applicable formulas for the moment of inertia I of the beam cross section, the section modulus Z, and the maximum tensile stress s beneath the central load are

$$I = \frac{bh^3}{12} \qquad Z = \frac{I}{(h/2)} = \frac{bh^2}{6} \qquad \sigma = \frac{Wl}{4Z} = \frac{6Wl}{4bh^2}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

From the last box for Case 2, the maximum deflection at the beam center is given by

$$y = \frac{Wl^3}{48EI} = \frac{Wl^3}{4Ebh^3}$$

Consider the example of a small beam whose width = 19 mm, depth (wall thickness) = 2.0 mm, and length between supports = 102 mm. The beam is to support a central load of 22.24 N (5 lb). This beam's cross section is depicted in Fig. 17. As it has very little depth, hence a low sectional modulus, it may not handle the job. The plastic's flex modulus is 2069 MPa (300,000 psi). Using the formulas above, the four quantities to be calculated are

$$I = \frac{19(2^3)}{12} = 12.67 \text{ mm}^4$$

$$Z = \frac{(12.666667)2}{2} = 12.67 \text{ mm}^3$$

$$\sigma = \frac{6(22.24)102}{4(19)2^2} = 44.77 \text{ MPa}$$

$$y = \frac{(22.24)(102^3)}{(4)(2068.5)(19)(2^3)} = 18.77 \text{ mm}$$

Both the stress and the deflection are too high. The wall thickness could be increased, but instead a rib will be added that will run along the underside and center of the beam, changing its cross section to that shown in Fig. 17. The rib will be 10 mm deep but only 1.0 mm thick, with a slight draft of 0.5 degree per side. Following the formulas given in the table *Moments of Inertia, Section Moduli, and Radii of Gyration* starting on page 241, see the third row of the T-sections for the one with the tapered rib; the new cross-sectional area is 47.548 mm^2, and the location of the neutral axis is 9.87 mm above the most extreme material at the bottom of the rib. The new cross-sectional moment of inertia I is 339.6 mm^4, 27 times greater than the original I. The section modulus $Z = 339.6/9.87 = 34.4$ mm^3. The recomputed maximum stress is 16.5 MPa, and the maximum deflection is 0.70 mm, acceptable for both the material and the application. To achieve the same result from a heavier rectangular-section beam would require a thickness (depth) of 5.99 mm, tripling the beam's weight and increasing molding difficulties, whereas the new rib adds only 25 percent to the total section weight. As shown in Fig. 17, a fillet should be added at the bottom of the rib with a radius equal to half the nominal wall thickness to assist molding and avoid stress concentrations.

Draft: Most molded parts have features that must be cut into the mold perpendicular to the parting line. Removal of these parts from the mold is easier if they are tapered in the direction of mold opening. This taper is called *draft* in the line of draw or mold movement, and it allows the part to break free of the mold by creating a clearance as soon as the mold starts to open. The drawing of Fig. 19 defines draft and the dimensions associated with it. Plastics materials shrink as they cool, so they grip mold projections very tightly and ejection can be difficult without sufficient draft. A draft of ½ degree on each side of a projection on the part is generally considered the minimum, although up to 3 degrees per side is often used.

The exact relationship between the draft angle α and the dimensional difference from the top to the bottom of the draw depth D is given by

$$d = D \tan \alpha \tag{31}$$

where tan is the tangent of the draft angle. An excellent approximation is

$$d = 0.0175\alpha D \tag{32}$$

This is accurate to the nearest 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) for draft angles up to 5 degrees and draw depths up to 10 inches (254 mm).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

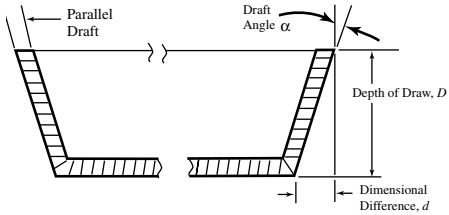


Fig. 19. Defining Dimensions Related to Draft and Draft Angle

Where minimal variation in wall thickness is needed to produce sidewalls that are perpendicular to the direction of draw, the mold can be designed with parallel draft, as indicated at the left in Fig. 19. The amount of draft also depends on the surface finish of the mold walls. Any texturing of the surface will increase the draft requirement by at least 1 degree per side for every 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) of texture depth.

Most plastics parts are so designed that they can be ejected parallel with the direction of mold parting. Complex parts with undercuts may require mold designs with cavity-forming projections that must move at an angle to the direction of opening. Between these two extremes lie such items as "windows," or simple openings in the side of a molding, which can be produced by the normal interaction of the two main parts of the mold.

Fillets, Radii, and Undercuts: Sharp corners are always to be avoided in injection-molded part designs because they represent points of stress concentration. Sharp corners in metal parts often are less important because the stresses are low compared with the strength of the material or because local yielding redistributes the loads. Sharp inside corners are particularly to be avoided in moldings because severe molded-in stresses are generated as the material shrinks onto the mold corner. Sharp corners also cause poor material flow patterns, reduced mechanical properties, and increased tool wear. Therefore, inside corner radii should be equal to half the nominal wall thickness (as shown in Fig. 17 for a 1 mm rib thickness) with a minimum of 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) for parts subject to stress, and 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) radius for stress-free parts. Outside corner radius should equal the inside corner radius plus the wall thickness.

With an inside radius of half the wall thickness, a stress concentration of 1.5 is a reasonable assumption, and for radii down to 0.1 times the wall thickness, a stress concentration of 3 is likely. More information on stress concentrations is found in *Working Stress* on page 212. A suitable value for q in Equation (8) on page 212, for plastics materials, is 1. That is, the actual stress-concentration factor equals the theoretical value.

Impact Resistance: The impact resistance of a plastics part is directly related to its ability to absorb mechanical energy without fracture or deformation, and this ability depends on the material properties and the part geometry. Increasing wall thickness may improve impact resistance but may also hurt impact resistance by making the part too stiff so that it is unable to deflect and distribute the force. Validation is required in critical applications.

Melt Flow in the Mold.—The designer of plastics products needs a basic appreciation of what goes on during injection molding and the special properties of plastics that affect molding. Some of these, such as thermal properties, have been previously described. It is the flow properties of molten plastics that dominate mold filling. Foremost are the very high viscosities of thermoplastic melts—thousands to hundreds of thousands times that of room-temperature water—requiring pressures (P) of 5,000–30,000 psi (35–206 MPa) to move the melt quickly from the injection cylinder through the mold runners and into the cavities. Second is the strong dependence of viscosity on temperature, so the transfer to the chilled mold must be nearly instantaneous to obtain fully filled cavities and accurately dimensioned products. Because of the high viscosities and rapid flow, frictional heat is dissipated within the melt, helping to keep it warm during its travel. Another property,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

also helpful, is more subtle: plastic melts have non-Newtonian physical properties. That is, viscosity depends not only on temperature, as with ordinary liquids, but also on the flow rate and pressure drop ΔP. Doubling the injection pressure may triple or quadruple the flow rate through the mold passages, but the pressure itself squeezes molecules closer together and tends to increase viscosity and freezing point. Unpredictable results can be obtained if the melt temperature is too near the freezing range.

If the product designer is calling for thin wall sections, *Melt Flow Rate* (*MFR*), formerly known as *Melt Flow Index* (*MFI*), can be used as a selection property characteristic among grades of candidate plastics. The higher the flow rate, the easier it will likely be to fill thin sections during molding. Flow rate values are obtained by testing (ASTM Test D 1238) in a simple extrusion plastometer. In this device, a small sample of resin is loaded into a 9.55-mm diameter well in a heated cylinder and brought to a test temperature above the plastic's melting range. At the bottom of the well is a die 2.1 mm in bore diameter and 8 mm long.

A weighted piston drives the melt through the die while a timer runs. Extrudate is collected and weighed, and the flow rate is reported in grams per 10-minute interval. To accommodate the wide range of plastics flow behaviors, 36 standard conditions specifying both the melt temperature in °C and the total piston weight in kg have been adopted. *MFR* values are meaningless without the condition numbers. Most polypropylenes (PP), for example, are tested at condition 230/2.16, meaning a PP resin reported to have an *MFR* of 8 (230/2.16 assumed) would be one that at 230°C under a piston weighing 2.16 kg_f, produced a flow rate of 8 g/10 min. Resin and compound suppliers can supply the *MFR* values for their grades. Product designers should obtain all three numbers.

A somewhat more practical way of judging resin flows under actual molding conditions uses a spiral-flow mold. This injection molding method was in common use by the early 1950s. A similar mold is the basis for testing the flow of transfer-molding compounds (ASTM D 3123). A half-round or shallow-trapezoidal groove, $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) wide and beginning at the center, circles outward with the spiral radius increasing about $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) per turn, to a total channel length of 70 to 100 inches (178 to 254 cm). Inch numerals and 0.1-inch marks are engraved in the flat upper half of the mold. The injection nozzle fills the mold from its center and, under specified melt and mold temperatures and injection pressure, holds pressure until flow stops. The mold is opened, and the flow distance is read off the molded spiral and recorded. With careful control of molding conditions, flow distances of 40 inches (102 cm) and more can be closely reproduced in repeated shots. Many resin suppliers have spiral-flow data available for product designers and processors.

Design for Assembly.—An advantage of the flexibility of plastics parts compared to other materials is that they can often be designed for assembly by means of molded-in snap-fit, press-fit, pop-on, and thread fasteners. With careful design, no additional fasteners, adhesives, solvents, or special equipment is required, significantly reducing assembly time and costs. Improper assembly can be minimized, but tooling is often made more complex and disassembly may be difficult with these methods.

Mechanical fasteners designed for metals are generally usable with plastics, and there are many other fasteners designed specifically for plastics. Typical are bolts, self-tapping and thread-forming screws, rivets, threaded inserts, and spring clips. Care must be taken to avoid overstressing the parts. Creep can result in loss of preload in poorly designed systems.

Snap-fit designs are widely used, a typical application being to battery compartment covers. All snap-fit designs have a molded part that must flex like a spring, usually past a designed-in interference, then return to its unflexed position to hold the parts together. The design must have sufficient holding power without exceeding the elastic or fatigue limits of the material. With the typical snap-fit designs in Fig. 20, beam equations can be used to calculate the maximum strain during assembly. If the stress is kept below the yield point of the material, the flexing finger returns to its original position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

With some materials the calculated bending stress can exceed the yield point stress considerably if the movement is done rapidly. In other words, the flexing finger passes through its maximum deflection or strain and the material does not respond as it should if the yield stress has been greatly exceeded. It is common to evaluate snap-ins by calculating the strain instead of stress. Dynamic strain ε for the straight beam, is calculated from

$$\varepsilon = \frac{3Yh_o}{2L^2}$$

and for the tapered beam, from

$$\varepsilon = \frac{3Yh_0}{2L^2K}$$

The derived values should be compared with the permissible dynamic strain limits for the material in question, if known. A tapered finger provides more uniform stress distribution and is recommended where possible. Sharp corners or structural discontinuities that will cause stress concentrations can be avoided through the use of judicious fillets.

Snap-in arrangements usually require undercuts produced by a sliding core in the mold as shown in Fig. 21. Sometimes the snap finger can simply be popped off when the mold is opened. An alternative to the sliding core is shown in Fig. 21, which requires an opening in the molding at the base of the flexing finger. Other snap-in assembly techniques that take advantage of the flexibility of plastics are shown in Fig. 22.

Molded-in threads in holes usually are formed by cores that require some type of unscrewing or collapsing mechanism, leading to tooling complications. External threads can often be molded by positioning them across the parting plane of the mold. Molding of threads finer than 28 threads per inch (0.9 mm pitch) is sometimes not practical.

Chemical Bonding. Chemical bonding is suited to applications that must be leak-tight or where stresses due to assembly must be minimized. However, adhesives and solvents can be hazardous, and their preparation and cure times can be prolonged. Properly applied cyanoacrylate adhesives achieve moderate strength in seconds or minutes and work well with assemblies that can be brought together very quickly after applying the bonding agent.

Chemical bonding may use solvents, solvents bodied with resin, or so-called "100% solids" adhesives, such as epoxies and cyanoacrylates. Use of solvents is limited to compatible materials that can be dissolved by the same solvent. Because most of the solvent must gradually diffuse out of the joint, solvent cementing is used mostly where a very thin film of the solvent can be applied to the accurately mating surface(s) to be joined, followed by rapid assembly, usually with clamping. Bodied solvent cements permit more flexibility in such operations. Safety precautions must be observed in handling the solvents to protect workers and in solvent recovery.

Adhesives that set up or cure with little or no loss of volatiles include epoxies, acrylics, polyurethanes, phenolics, rubbers, polyesters, and vinyls. Cyanoacrylates are often used because of their rapid setting with many materials, both similar and dissimilar, and because they are naturally catalyzed by atmospheric humidity. Their downside is the very short working time they allow for assembly.

Recommendations of both plastics suppliers and adhesives suppliers should be sought because many adhesives contain active components that can partly dissolve the plastics' surfaces, giving improved adhesion. However, some adhesives attack certain plastics, causing crazing and even joint failure. The main disadvantages of adhesives are that their bonds require time to reach full strength, may need long clamp times, may require fixtures and may involve special ovens or curing conditions. Also, surface preparation may be difficult because of the presence of grease or mold-release compounds; even a fingerprint can spoil a bond. Some adhesion-resistant materials such as polyolefins, nylons, and fluorocarbons usually need pretreatment with surface-activating primers or flame or plasma treatment prior to applying an adhesive. Some materials may need mechanical roughening to improve joint strength.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

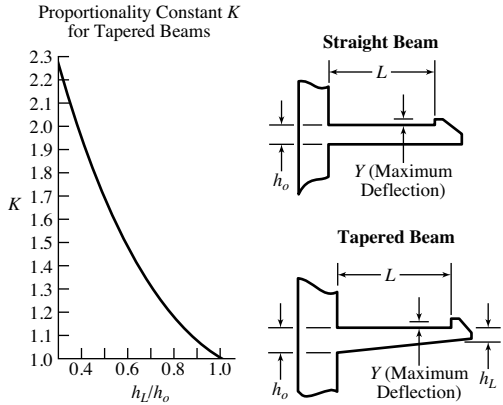


Fig. 20. Snap-Fit Designs for Cantilever Beams with Rectangular Cross Sections

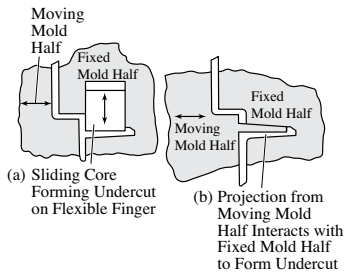


Fig. 21. (a) Arrangement for Molding an Undercut on the End of a Flexible Finger Using a Sliding Core; (b) With the Undercut Formed by a Mold Projection, the Sliding Core is Eliminated

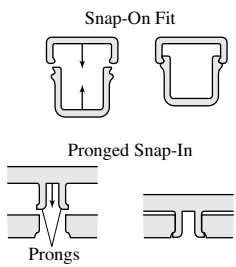


Fig. 22. Examples of Snap-In and Snap-On Arrangements

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Welding Plastics: Plastics welding techniques include ultrasonic, hot-plate, spin, induction, and microwave energy, melt-bead sealing, and hot-gas welding. Thermal methods are also used for staking, swaging, and other post-thermoforming procedures. Materials must be melt-compatible and have similar melting temperatures.

Plastics welding encompasses a variety of processes in which a film melt is created at the surfaces to be joined. *Ultrasonic welding* is frequently used for joining small- and medium-sized parts of a single material or melt-compatible materials that share the same melting-temperature range. High-frequency (20 to 40 kHz) acoustic vibrational energy is briefly applied to the surfaces to be joined, creating localized molecular excitation that causes a thin layer to melt. The surfaces are pressed and held together while the melt freezes. With proper joint designs, welds can be made in two seconds or less and on cooling can be as strong as the base resins. The lower part of the assembly is supported in a rigid nest fixture and the upper part is aligned, usually by the joint design. This upper part has the freedom to couple acoustically when it is in contact with the horn through which the ultrasonic energy is transmitted. Fig. 23 shows two typical joint designs for this process. The example on the left shows a simple butt-type, energy-director design that works well with amorphous materials. The inverted-cone projection, known as an *energy director*, concentrates the energy in a small area on both faces of the joint. This area melts quickly and the material flows as the parts are pressed together. Shown at the right in Fig. 23 is a shear-interference joint. Melting of both components starts in the small initial contact area, and flow continues along the near-vertical wall as the parts are pressed together, creating a continuous, leakproof joint with a strength that often equals that of the parts joined.

With hygroscopic plastics, welding should be done as soon as possible after molding because even small amounts of moisture can weaken bonds. Drying immediately before welding may be advisable. Drawbacks of ultrasonic welding are the following: design, quality control, equipment maintenance, and settings are of critical importance for consistent, high-strength welds; the equipment is costly; the process uses large amounts of electric power especially with large parts; and parts to be joined must be of the same or compatible plastics. Filled and fiber-reinforced materials are more difficult to weld.

Although horn frequencies in ultrasonic welding are not audible to the ear, sounds that cause discomfort may be generated when plastics parts vibrate at lower frequencies, necessitating sound-proofing.

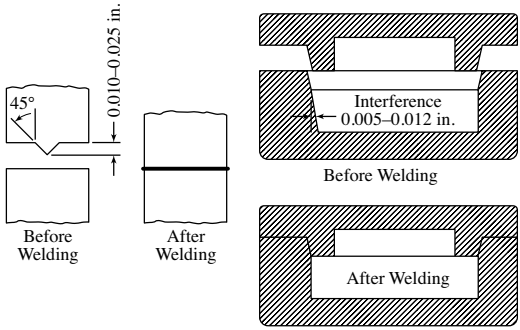


Fig. 23. (left) Energy-Director Type of Ultrasonic Weld Joint for Molded-Part Assembly and (right) Typical Shear-Interference Joint

Vibration Welding: Vibration welding resembles ultrasonic welding except that the parts to be joined are rubbed together to produce frictional heat that melts the faces. The energy is transferred in the form of high-amplitude, low-frequency, reciprocating motion. After a short period of vibration, the weld area cools and solidifies while the parts are held in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

alignment provided by the welding fixture. Typical frequencies used are 120 to 240 Hz, and amplitudes range between 0.10 and 0.20 inch (2.54–5.08 mm). When the geometry or assembly design prevents linear movement, vibration-welding equipment can be designed to produce angular displacement of parts. Like ultrasonic welding, vibration welding produces high-strength joints and is better suited to large parts and irregular joint faces.

Spin Welding: Like vibration welding, spin welding uses frictional heat to melt the faces of circular joint surfaces. It is a rapid and economical method of joining melt-compatible parts. The process is completed in about three seconds and is easily automated. Frictional heat is generated by rotating one part against its mate (usually fixed) with a controlled pressure. When rotation is stopped, pressure is maintained during cooling and solidification of the joint. Simple equipment such as a drill press can serve for this process.

Hot-Gas Welding: Hot-gas welding is a process resembling acetylene brazing and welding of metals. Used mostly with polyolefins, which do not accept adhesives, the hot-gas welding equipment consists of an electric hot-gas "gun" that provides, through any of several interchangeable nozzles, a stream of hot air or preferably hot nitrogen at a temperature above the melting range of the plastic to be worked. A welding rod of the same material provides the melt that forms the joint to be made between two parts. The parts to be joined are set up in their final orientation in a jig. A groove will usually be machined in one or both to accept the molten plastic. The operator directs the hot gas stream along the joint surfaces while feeding and melting the welding rod into the joint. The welded structure is then allowed to cool several hours. Some huge tanks have been fabricated from thick polyethylene sheets by this technique. It is also useful for repairing broken polyolefin parts. Hot-gas welding can produce joints with 85 percent of the strength of the parent material. Hot-gas welding is not recommended for use with substrates less than $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) thick.

Dielectric Welding: Dielectric welding is also known as *radio-frequency welding*. This process utilizes the dielectric loss that occurs in many plastics when they are placed in a rapidly reversing electric field. It is widely used with flexible thermoplastics films and sheets of materials—typically plasticized PVC and polyurethane—and for joining some injection-molded parts. The parts to be joined are brought together between two electrodes that also supply joining pressure. The field passes through the material, generating heat throughout the volume between the electrodes until it reaches melting range. The field is then turned off and pressure is maintained until the joined parts freeze. Polyolefins and some other plastics are so nonpolar that their dielectric loss is too small to permit welding them by this method.

Electromagnetic or Induction Welding: This form of welding uses inductive heating to generate fusion temperatures in thermoplastics as shown at the top in Fig. 24. Fine iron particles embedded in a gasket, preform, filament, ribbon, adhesive, or molded part are excited by the rapidly alternating magnetic field, generating eddy currents that, through resistive loss, cause distributed local heating. The heated parts are pressed together, and, as the temperature rises, the material of the particle carrier flows under pressure through the joint interface, filling voids and cavities and becoming an integral part of the weld. Ideally, the melted material should be contained and subjected to internal pressure by the surrounding component surfaces. Proper joint design is essential to successful induction welding.

Requirements of the preform often add cost to this welding method, but the cost is offset by low reject rates resulting from good reliability of the welds. Structural, hermetic welds can be produced in most thermoplastics materials, and automation can be used for large-volume production. The process also offers great latitude in joint size, configuration, tolerance requirements, and ability to bond some dissimilar materials. A limitation is that no ferrous metal can be near the joint line during the energizing of the inductor coil. All components of an assembly (except the weld medium) to be induction-welded must therefore be nonferrous, or ferrous components must be placed where they will not be subjected to the high-frequency field from the inductor.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

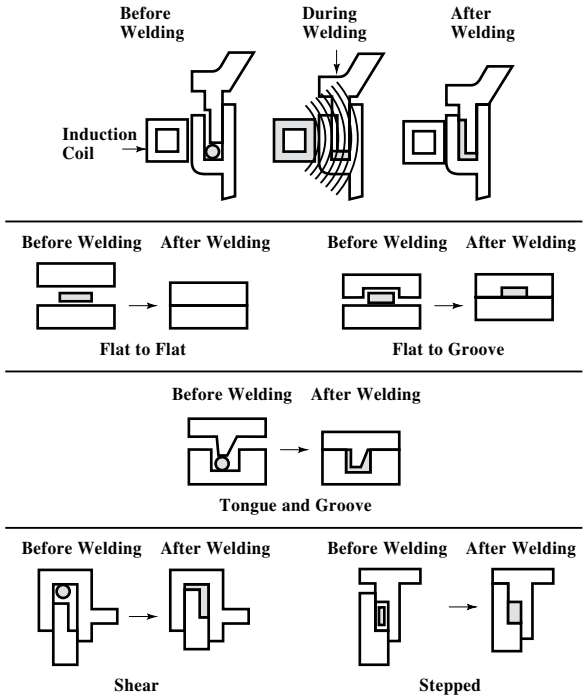


Fig. 24. Typical Joint Designs Used in Induction-Welding Plastics Assembly

Assembly with Fasteners.—Metal fasteners of high strength can overstress plastics parts, so torque-controlled tightening or special design provisions are needed. Examples of poor and preferred designs are shown in Fig. 25. The shoulder of the metal screw shown in the lower right portion of Fig. 25 meets the metal component when it is tightened, sparing the plastic part from over-compression. Where force cannot be satisfactorily controlled, even with a shoulder screw, various types of washers can be used to spread the compression force over wider areas.

Metal inserts are available in a wide range of shapes and sizes for permanent installation of metal threads or bushings in plastics parts. Inserts are typically installed in molded bosses, designed with holes to suit the insert to be used. Some inserts are pressed into place and others are installed by methods designed to limit stress and increase strength. Generally, the outside of the insert is knurled or otherwise provided with projections of various configurations that penetrate the plastics and prevent movement under normal torques exerted during assembly. "Helicoil" inserts have large standard threads on the outside and receive a smaller standard screw inside, thus lowering the assembly torque on the plastic by distributing it to the larger outside contact area. Inserts can also be installed with equipment similar to that used for ultrasonic welding, the plastics being melted to enhance contact with the metal and reduce insertion stresses.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

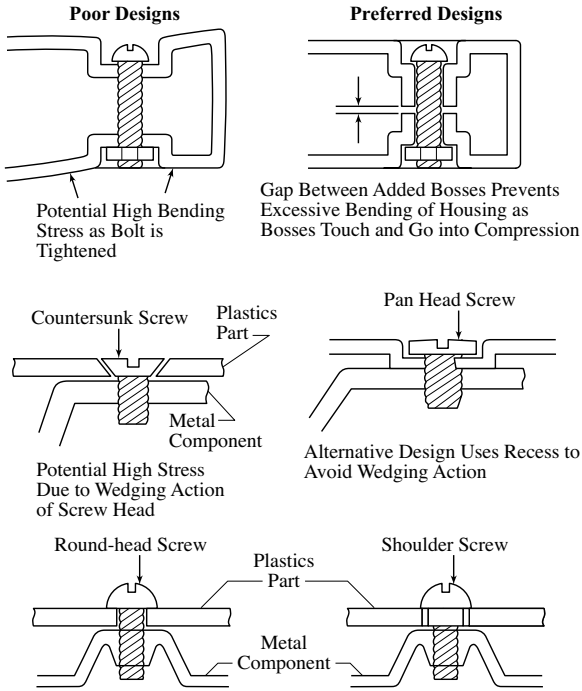

Poor Designs
Preferred Designs
Potential High Bending Stress as Bolt is Tightened
Gap Between Added Bosses Prevents Excessive Bending of Housing as Bosses Touch and Go into Compression
Countersunk Screw
Plastics Part
Metal Component
Potential High Stress Due to Wedging Action of Screw Head
Pan Head Screw
Alternative Design Uses Recess to Avoid Wedging Action
Round-head Screw
Plastics Part
Shoulder Screw
Metal Component

Fig. 25. Examples of Bad and Good Designs in Assembling Plastics with Metal Fasteners

Thread-cutting and -forming screws are widely used with plastics parts. Information on standard self-threading screws is found in *SELF-THREADING SCREWS* starting on page 1833. Thread-forming screws must be used carefully with high-modulus, low-creep plastics, as high hoop stresses can be generated during insertion. Screws with multiple lobes and screws with alternating low and high threads have excellent holding power in plastics. Molded holes must have sufficient depth to prevent bottoming, and boss walls must be thick enough to resist stresses. As a general rule of thumb, the outside diameter of the boss should be double the major diameter of the screw. Gussets and ribs can be used to increase the torsional strength of bosses.

Hollow aluminum or other metal rivets are often used in plastics assembly, as are stamped sheet metal components, especially push-on or -in designs. Molded plastics fasteners are also frequently used.

Machining Plastics.—Plastics can be molded into complex shapes and so do not usually need to be machined. However, machining is sometimes more cost-effective than making a complex tool, especially when requirements are for prototype development, low-volume production, undercuts, angular holes, or other openings that are difficult to produce in a mold. Special methods for development of prototypes are discussed on page 611. All

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

machining of plastics requires dust control, adequate ventilation, safety guards, and eye protection.

Like some metals, plastics may need to be annealed before machining to avoid warpage. Some commercially available bar and rod stock are sold already annealed. If annealing is necessary, instructions can be obtained from plastics suppliers. Plastics moduli are small fractions—2 to 10 percent—of those of metals, and this lower stiffness permits much greater deflection of the work material during cutting. Thermoplastics materials must be held and supported firmly to prevent distortion, and sharp tools are essential to minimize normal forces and avoid excess heat generation.

Plastics recover elastically during and after machining so that drilled or tapped holes often end up tapered or of smaller diameter than the tool. Turned diameters also can end up larger or smaller than the dimensions measured immediately after the finishing cut. The low thermal conductivity of plastics causes much of the heat generated in cutting to be absorbed by the tool. Heat in the plastics tends to stay near the surface. The heat must be removed by an air blast or a liquid coolant for optimum surface finishes and close tolerances. A non-aromatic, water-soluble misting or flood coolant is suggested.

Plastics have thermal expansion coefficients some 10 times higher than those of metals so that even though actual heat generation during machining may be less than with metals there can easily be more expansion. Adequate tool clearances must be provided to minimize heating. Compared with most structural metals, temperatures at which plastics soften, deform and flow are quite low. Allowing frictional heat to build up causes gumming, discoloration, poor tolerance control, and rough finishes. These effects are more pronounced with plastics such as polystyrene and polyvinyl chloride that have low melting points than with plastics that have higher melting points, such as nylons, fluoroplastics, and polyphenylene sulfide. Sufficient clearances must be provided on cutting tools to prevent rubbing contact between the tool and the work. Tool surfaces that will come into contact with plastics during machining should be polished to reduce frictional drag and resulting temperature increases. Proper rake angles depend on depth of cut, cutting speed, and the type of plastic being cut. Large rake angles should be used to produce continuous-type cuttings, but they should not be so large as to cause brittle fracture of the work and resulting discontinuous chips.

Turning and Cutting Off: High-speed steel and carbide tools are commonly used with cutting speeds of 300–600 and 600–1200 ft/min (91–183 and 183–366 m/min), respectively. Water-soluble coolants can be used to keep down temperatures at the shear zone and improve the finish, except when they react with the work material. Chatter may result from the low modulus of elasticity and can be reduced by close chucking and follow rests. Box tools are good for long, thin parts. Tools for cutting off plastics require greater front and side clearances than are needed for metal. Cutting speeds should be about half those used for turning operations.

Drilling: This is the most common machining operation because small-diameter holes are more easily drilled than molded. However, plastics are rather difficult to drill without some damage. Many difficulties not encountered in drilling metals, such as gumming, burning in the drilled hole, cracks around the edges or growth of cracks after drilling, can occur. Two reasons for these difficulties are that swarf flow (chip removal) in drilling is poor and cutting speeds vary from the center to the periphery of the drill, so that drilling imposes severe loading on the workpiece. Some drill types used with plastics are shown in Fig. 26.

Drills of high-speed steel or premium high-speed steel (T15, M33, or M41-M47) are recommended, with low helix angles, point angles of 70–120 degrees, and wide, highly polished flutes to ease chip exit. Normal feed rates are in the range of 0.001–0.012 in/rev (0.025–0.3 mm/rev) for holes of 1⁄16 to 2 inch (1.6–51 mm) diameter, and speeds of 100–250 ft/min (30.5–76.2 m/min), with lower speeds used for deep and blind holes. Point angles of 60 to 90 degrees (included) are used for many plastics, but an angle of 120 degrees should be used for rigid polyvinyl chloride and acrylic (polymethyl methacrylate).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

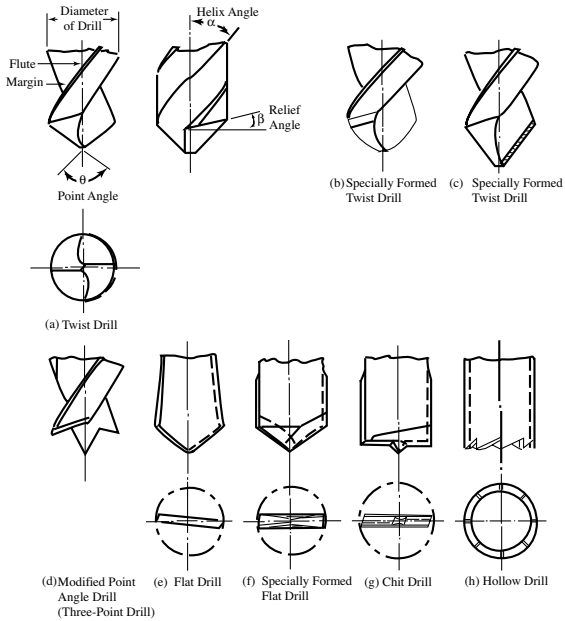


Fig. 26. Drill Designs Used for Drilling Plastics

Clearance angles of 9 to 15 degrees are usually sufficient to prevent the drill flanks from rubbing in the bottom of the hole, but acrylic materials require angles of 12–20 degrees. Tests may be needed to determine the drill diameter for accurately sized holes, allowing for thermal expansion and elastic recovery. Reaming may be used to size holes accurately, but even those diameters produced may also be affected by thermal expansion of the plastics. Close-fitting bushings in drill jigs may increase friction on the drill and cause swarf to plug up the drill flutes. For positioning accuracy, removable templates may be used to spot the hole position, then set aside for the drilling to be completed. Pilot holes are not necessary, except when the hole is to be reamed or counterbored. Frequent pull-out (peck drilling) to remove chips and compressed air cooling may be needed, especially for deep holes.

Drilling and reaming speed and feed suggestions for various materials are shown in Table 9. These speeds and feeds are approximate, and can be increased where there is no melting, burning, discoloration, or poor surface finish. Drilling is best done with commercially available drills designed for plastics (Fig. 26), usually having large helix angles, narrow lands, and highly polished or chromium-plated flutes to expel swarf rapidly and minimize frictional heating. Circle cutters are often preferred for holes in thin materials. Drills must be kept sharp and cool, and carbide tools may be needed in high production, especially with glass-reinforced materials. They must be cooled with clean compressed air to avoid contamination. Aqueous solutions are used for deep drilling because metal cutting fluids and oils may degrade or attack the plastics and may cause a cleaning problem. Plastics parts must be held firmly during drilling to counter the tendency for the tooling to grab and spin the work.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Suggested Approximate Speeds and Feeds for Drilling Various Thermoplastics[a]

Material	1/16 in. Diameter		1/4 in. Diameter		1 in. Diameter	
	Speed (RPM)	Feed (in/rev)	Speed (RPM)	Feed (in/rev)	Speed (RPM)	Feed (in/rev)
ABS	6000	0.015	2000	0.040	500	0.080
Acetal (POM)	12000	0.010	4000	0.030	1000	0.060
Acrylic (PMMA)	9000	0.010	3000	0.030	750	0.060
Polyamide, Nylon 6/6 and PA6	6000	0.010	2000	0.030	500	0.060
Polycarbonate (PC)	9000	0.010	3000	0.030	750	0.060
Polyester (PET)	9000	0.007	3000	0.020	750	0.040
Polyether ether ketone (PEEK)	12000	0.005	4000	0.015	1000	0.030
Polyethylene (PE)	12000	0.015	4000	0.040	1000	0.080
Polyphenylene sulfide (PPS)	3000	0.010	1000	0.030	250	0.060
Polypropylene (PP)	12000	0.015	4000	0.040	1000	0.080
Polystyrene (PS)	6000	0.007	2000	0.020	500	0.040
Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)	9000	0.007	3000	0.020	750	0.040
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	12000	0.007	4000	0.020	1000	0.040
Ultem polyetherimide (PEI)	12000	0.010	4000	0.030	1000	0.040

[a] Using a two-fluted drill.

Tapping and Threading of Plastics: Many different threaded fasteners can be used with plastics, including thread-tapping and -forming screws, threaded metal inserts, and molded-in threads, but threads must sometimes be machined after molding. For tapping of through holes in thin-cast, molded, or extruded thermoplastics and thermosets, a speed of 50 ft/min (15.2 m/min) is appropriate. Tapping of filled materials is done at 25 ft/min (7.6 m/min). These speeds should be reduced for deep or blind holes and when the percentage of thread is greater than 65–75 percent. Taps should be of M10, M7, or M1 molybdenum high-speed steel, with finish-ground and -polished flutes. Two-flute taps are recommended for holes up to 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) diameter. Oversize taps may be required to make up for elastic recovery of the plastics. The danger of retapping on the return stroke can be reduced by blunting the withdrawal edges of the tool.

Sawing Thermoset Cast or Molded Plastics: Circular or band saws may be used for sawing. Circular saws provide smoother cut faces than band saws, but, because band saws run cooler, they are often preferred even for straight cuts. Projection of the circular saw above the table should be minimized. Saws should have skip teeth or buttress teeth with zero front rake and a raker set. Precision-tooth saw blades should be used for thicknesses up to 1 inch (25.4 mm), and saws with buttress teeth are recommended for thicknesses above 1 inch (25.4 mm). Dull edges to the teeth cause chipping of the plastics and may cause breakage of the saw. Sawing speeds and other recommendations for using blades of high-carbon steel are shown in Table 10.

Table 10. Speeds and Numbers of Teeth for Sawing Plastics Materials with High-Carbon Steel Saw Blades

Material Thickness		Number of Teeth/inch on Blade	Peripheral Speed			
			Thermoset Cast or Molded Plastics		Thermoplastics (and Epoxy, Melamine, Phenolic and Allyl Thermosets)	
(inch)	(mm)		(ft/min)	(m/min)	(ft/min)	(m/min)
0–0.5	0–13	8–14	2000–3000	607–914	4000–5000	1219–1524
0.5–1	13–25	6–8	1800–2200	549–671	3500–4300	1067–1311
1–3	25–76	3	1500–2200	475–671	3000–3500	914–1067
>3	>76	>3	1200–1800	366–549	2500–3000	762–914

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Suggested Approximate Speeds and Feeds for Milling Various Thermoplastics[a]

Material	Roughing 0.250 in. Cut Depth		Finishing 0.050 in. Cut Depth	
	Speed (feet/min)	Feed (in/rev)	Speed (feet/min)	Feed (in/rev)
ABS	600	0.018	480	0.008
Acetal (POM)	600	0.012	480	0.005
Acrylic (PMMA)	450	0.012	360	0.005
Polyamide, Nylon 6 / 6 (PA6)	800	0.012	480	0.005
Polycarbonate (PC)	500	0.012	450	0.005
Polyester (PET)	600	0.010	480	0.004
Polyether ether ketone (PEEK)	450	0.010	360	0.004
Polyethylene (PE)	800	0.018	620	0.008
Polyphenylene sulfide (PPS)	450	0.015	360	0.006
Polypropylene (PP)	800	0.018	620	0.008
Polystyrene (PS)	450	0.010	360	0.004
Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)	600	0.012	480	0.005
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	600	0.010	480	0.004
Ultem polyetherimide (PEI)	450	0.012	360	0.005

[a] 2-fluted, 1 in. end mill

Milling of Plastics: Peripheral cutting with end mills is used for edge preparation, slotting and similar milling operations; end cutting can also be used for facing operations. Some recommended approximate speeds and feeds are provided in Table 11 for peripheral end milling of common thermoplastics; as per standard machining practice, speeds and feeds must be adjusted with observation of the machining relative to the quality requirements. Slower speeds are generally used for face and other milling operations, with some thermoplastics being machined at 300–500 ft/min (91–152 m/min), and some thermosets at 150–300 ft/min (46–91 m/min). Adequate support and suitable feed rates are very important. A table feed that is too low will generate excessive heat and cause surface cracks, loss of dimensional accuracy, and poor surface finish. Too high a feed rate will produce a rough surface. High-speed steel tools (M2, M3, M7, or T15) are generally used, but for glass-reinforced nylon, silicone, polyimide, and allyl, carbide (C2) is recommended.

Turning of Plastics: Plastics can be processed on commercially available lathes. A fine-grained, C2 carbide cutter, with a small cutting radius and broad-nosed finishing cutting edge, is recommended to avoid material build-up. Recommended approximate feed speeds are provided in Table 12. When feasible, turning at higher cutting speeds is recommended, using a cutting depth of at least 0.004 inch. Compressed air is a common and acceptable method for cooling, though misted and flooded coolants can be used if available. If the diameter of the plastic workpiece is small or workpiece rigidity is an issue, then a live center or lunette is recommended to stabilize the component and provide improved tolerances and surface finish.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Suggested Approximate Speeds and Feeds for Turning Various Thermoplastics

Material	Roughing 0.150 in. Cut Depth		Finishing 0.030 in. Cut Depth	
	Speed (feet/min)	Feed (in/rev)	Speed (feet/min)	Feed (in/rev)
ABS	1200	0.018	800	0.007
Acetal (POM)	1200	0.012	800	0.006
Acrylic (PMMA)	1000	0.012	700	0.005
Polyamide, Nylon 6 / 6 (PA6)	1200	0.012	800	0.006
Polycarbonate (PC)	1000	0.012	700	0.005
Polyester (PET)	1200	0.010	800	0.005
Polyether ether ketone (PEEK)	1000	0.010	700	0.005
Polyethylene (PE)	1500	0.018	1200	0.008
Polyphenylene sulfide (PPS)	800	0.015	800	0.007
Polypropylene (PP)	1500	0.018	1200	0.008
Polystyrene (PS)	900	0.010	800	0.005
Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE)	1200	0.012	700	0.005
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	1200	0.010	800	0.005
Ultem polyetherimide (PEI)	800	0.012	600	0.005

Other Machining Techniques: Lasers can be used for machining plastics, especially sheet laminates, although their use may generate internal stresses. Ultrasonic machining has no thermal, chemical, or electrical reaction with the workpiece and can produce holes down to 0.003 inch (0.0762 mm) diameter; tight tolerances, 0.0005 inch (0.0127 mm); and very smooth finishes, 0.15 µinch (0.381 µm) with No. 600 boron carbide abrasive powder. Water-jet cutting using pressures up to 60,000 lb/in^2 (414 N/mm^2) is widely used for plastics and does not introduce stresses into the material. Tolerances of ± 0.004 inch (± 0.102 mm) can be held, depending on the equipment available. Process variables, pressures, feed rates, and the nozzle diameter depend on the material being cut. This method does not work reliably with hollow parts unless they can be filled with a solid core.

Machining Hard Rubber: Hard rubber, or ebonite, is the oldest rigid manmade plastic, and has been used since the 1840s. The base material is a highly vulcanized natural or, today, synthetic rubber, empirical formula C5H8S, containing 32 percent sulfur. A range of compositions containing various amounts of fillers is available. Unfilled ebonite has a specific gravity = 1.18, tensile strength = 9,000 psi (62 N/mm^2), elongation = 3 percent, and Izod impact strength = 0.5 ft-lb$_f$/in (26.7 J/m) of notch. Its continued use is due to its good insulating characteristics, good chemical resistance, and ease of machining. Tools suitable for steel, high-speed steel, or tungsten carbide may be used with hard rubber with no top or side rake angles and 10 to 20 degrees clearance angles.

Without coolant, surface speeds of 200 ft/min (60 m/min) are recommended for turning, boring and facing; they may be increased to 300 surface ft/min (90 m/min) with coolant.

Drilling of hard rubber requires high-speed steel drills of 35 to 40 degrees helix angle to obtain maximum cutting speeds and drill life. Feed rates for drilling range up to 0.015 in/rev (0.38 mm/rev). Deep-fluted taps are best for threading hard rubber and should be 0.002 to 0.005 inch (0.05-0.13 mm) oversize if close tolerances are to be held. Machine oil is used as the lubricant. Hard rubber may be sawed with band saws having 5 to 10 teeth per inch, running at about 3000 ft/min (915 m/min), or it may be cut with abrasive wheels. Use of coolant in grinding ebonite gives a smoother finish.

Piercing and blanking of hard-rubber sheet is best performed with the rubber and dies warmed. Straightening of the often-distorted blanks may be accomplished by dropping them into a pan of hot water.

Plastics Gears.—Plastics gears may be cut from blanks, as are metal gears, or molded to shape in an injection-molding machine for lower production costs, though tooling may cost more. Cut plastics gears may be of similar design to their metal counterparts, but molded gears are usually of modified form to suit material characteristics, including sensitivity to temperature and humidity. Plastics materials also may be preferred for gears

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

because of superior sliding properties with reduced noise and less need for lubrication, chemical or electrical properties, or resistance to wear. However, plastics gear teeth slide more smoothly and easily against metal teeth than do plastics against plastics, and wear is less. For power transmission, plastics gear teeth are usually of involute form. See also *Non-Metallic Gearing* on page 2324.

Most plastics gears are made from nylons and acetals, although acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrenes (ABS), polycarbonates, polysulfones, phenylene oxides, polyurethanes, liquid crystal polymers, and thermoplastic polyesters have also been used. Gears can be made from virtually any plastic, including polypropylene and polyethylene. But care must be taken to manage deflection and stresses, even in low-load and low-speed applications. Additives used in plastics for gears include glass and carbon fiber for added strength and stiffness, and fibers, beads, and powders for reduced thermal expansion and better dimensional stability. Other materials, such as molybdenum disulfide, polytetrafluoroethylene powder (PTFE), and silicones may be incorporated as integral lubricants to reduce friction and wear.

Choice of plastics gear material depends on requirements for size and nature of loads to be transmitted, designated speeds, required life, working environment, type of cooling, lubrication, and operating precision. Because of cost, plastics gears are sometimes not enclosed in sealed housings and are often given only a single coating of lubricant grease. Overloading of lubricated plastics gear teeth will usually cause tooth fracture, and unlubricated teeth often suffer excessive wear. Thermoplastics strength varies with temperature, with higher temperatures reducing root stress and permitting tooth deformation. In calculating power to be transmitted by spur, helical, and straight bevel gearing, the following formulas should be used with the factors given in Table 13, Table 14, and Table 15:

	US Customary Units		**Metric Units**	
Internal and External Spur Gears	$HP = \dfrac{S_s F Y V}{55(600 + V)PC_s}$	(33a)	$\boldsymbol{KW = \dfrac{FYmS_s V}{327(3.05 + V)C_s}}$	(33b)
Internal and External Helical Gears	$HP = \dfrac{S_s F Y V}{423(78 + \sqrt{V})P_n C_s}$	(34a)	$\boldsymbol{KW = \dfrac{FYmS_s V}{179(5.56 + \sqrt{V})C_s}}$	(34b)
Straight Bevel Gears	$HP = \dfrac{S_s F Y V (C - F)}{55(600 + V)PCC_s}$	(35a)	$\boldsymbol{KW = \dfrac{FYmS_s V\,(C - F)}{327(3.05 + V)C_s C}}$	(35b)

S_s = safe stress in bending (from Table 14); F = face width in inches (mm); Y = tooth form factor (from Table 13); m = module, mm; C = pitch cone distance in inches (mm); C_s = service factor (from Table 15); P = diametral pitch; P_n = normal diametral pitch; and V = velocity at pitch circle diameter in ft/min (m/s).

Example: As an example, assume that a material is to be selected for a spur gear that must transmit $\frac{1}{8}$ hp at 350 rpm for 8 hours/day under a steady load. The gear is to have 75 teeth, 32 diametral pitch, 20 degree pressure angle, 0.375 inch face width, and a pitch diameter of 2.3438 inches. Using Equation (33a),

$$HP = \frac{S_s F Y V}{55(600 + V)PC_s} \quad \text{or} \quad S_s = \frac{55(600 + V)PC_s HP}{FYV}$$

$$HP = 0.125 \qquad Y = 0.434 \quad \text{and}$$

$$V = \frac{rpm \times \pi \times D}{12} = \frac{350 \times 3.1416 \times 2.3438}{12} = 215 \text{ ft/min}$$

therefore,

$$S_s = \frac{55(600 + 215)32 \times 1.00 \times 0.125}{0.375 \times 0.434 \times 215} = 5{,}124 \text{ lb/in}^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Tooth Form Factors *Y* for Plastics Gears

Number of Teeth	14½-degree Involute or Cycloidal	20-degree Full Depth Involute	20-degree Stub Tooth Involute	20-deg Internal Full Depth	
				Pinion	Gear
12	0.210	0.245	0.311	0.327	…
13	0.220	0.261	0.324	0.327	…
14	0.226	0.276	0.339	0.330	…
15	0.236	0.289	0.348	0.330	…
16	0.242	0.259	0.361	0.333	…
17	0.251	0.302	0.367	0.342	…
18	0.261	0.308	0.377	0.349	…
19	0.273	0.314	0.386	0.358	…
20	0.283	0.320	0.393	0.364	…
21	0.289	0.327	0.399	0.371	…
22	0.292	0.330	0.405	0.374	…
24	0.298	0.336	0.415	0.383	…
26	0.307	0.346	0.424	0.393	…
28	0.314	0.352	0.430	0.399	0.691
30	0.320	0.358	0.437	0.405	0.679
34	0.327	0.371	0.446	0.415	0.660
38	0.336	0.383	0.456	0.424	0.644
43	0.346	0.396	0.462	0.430	0.628
50	0.352	0.480	0.474	0.437	0.613
60	0.358	0.421	0.484	0.446	0.597
75	0.364	0.434	0.496	0.452	0.581
100	0.371	0.446	0.506	0.462	0.565
150	0.377	0.459	0.518	0.468	0.550
300	0.383	0.471	0.534	0.478	0.534
Rack	0.390	0.484	0.550	…	…

These values assume a moderate temperature increase and some initial lubrication. With bevel gearing, divide the number of teeth by the cosine of the pitch angle and use the data in the table. For example, if a 20-degree PA bevel gear has 40 teeth and a pitch angle of 58 degrees, 40 divided by the cosine of 58 degrees = 40 ÷ 0.529919 ≈ 75, and $Y = 0.434$.

Table 14. Safe Bending Stress Values for Plastics Gears

Plastics Type	Safe Stress			
	Unfilled		Glass-Filled	
	lb/in^2	MPa	lb/in^2	MPa
ABS	3,000	20.68	6,000	41.37
Acetal	5,000	34.47	7,000	48.26
Nylon	6,000	41.37	12,000	82.74
Polycarbonate	6,000	41.37	9,000	62.05
Polyester	3,500	24.13	8,000	55.16
Polyurethane	2,500	17.24	…	…

Table 15. Service Factors for Plastics Gears

Type of Load	8–10 hr/day	24 hr/day	Intermittent, 3 hr/day	Occasional, ½ hr/day
Steady	1.00	1.25	0.80	0.50
Light shock	1.25	1.5	1.00	0.80
Medium shock	1.5	1.75	1.25	1.00
Heavy shock	1.75	2.00	1.5	1.25

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

From Table 14 it is apparent that the gear could be molded from several materials. Available physical and chemical characteristics must now be considered in relation to the operating environment for the gear. Strengths of plastics materials decrease with increasing temperatures, and not all plastics resist the effects of some liquids, including some lubricants. Some plastics deteriorate when in sunlight for long periods; some are more dimensionally stable than others; and wear resistance varies from one to another. Manufacturers' data sheets will answer some of these questions.

Backlash: Plastics gears should be so dimensioned that they will provide sufficient backlash at the highest temperatures likely to be encountered in service. Dimensional allowances must also be made for gears made of hygroscopic plastics that may be exposed to damp service conditions. Teeth of heavily loaded gears usually have tip relief to reduce effects of deflection, and have full fillet radii to reduce stress concentrations. Such modifications to tooth form are also desirable in plastics gears. If the pinion in a pair of gears has a small number of teeth, undercutting may result. Undercutting weakens teeth, causes undue wear, and may affect continuity of action. The undercutting can be reduced by using the long-short addendum system, which involves increasing the addendum of the pinion teeth and reducing that of the gear teeth. The modified addendum method will also reduce the amount of initial wear that takes place during initial stages of contact between the teeth.

Accuracy: The Gear Handbook, AGMA 390-03a-1980, Part 2, Gear Classification, provides a system whereby results of gear accuracy measurements are expressed in terms of maximum tooth-to-tooth and composite tolerances. This system uses AGMA quality numbers related to maximum tolerances, by pitch and diameter, and is equally applicable to plastics and metal gears. AGMA quality numbers must be chosen for a pair of mating gears early in the design process, and the finished gears must be inspected by being run in close mesh with a master gear in a center-distance measuring instrument to make sure that the errors do not exceed the specified tolerances.

To prevent failure from fatigue and wear caused by excessive flexing of the teeth, plastics gears must be made to similar standards of accuracy as metal gears. Solidification shrinkage of plastics requires that dimensions of molds for gears be larger than the dimensions of the parts to be produced from them. The amount of the shrinkage is usually added to the mold dimension (with the mold at operating temperature). However, this procedure cannot be followed for the tooth profile as it would introduce large errors in the pressure angle. Increases in pressure angle cause gear teeth to become wider at the root and more pointed. Sliding conditions are improved and the teeth are stronger, so that higher loading values can be used.

Shrinkage allowances have the greatest effect on the accuracy of the molded gears, so tooth profiles must be calculated extremely carefully in terms of mold profile. If a tooth is merely made larger by using a standard hobbing cutter to cut the tool, whereby the teeth in the mold are electroeroded, differential shrinkage caused by the molded tooth being thicker at the root than at the tip will distort the shape of the molded tooth, making it thinner at the tip and thicker at the root. With two mating gears these faulty shapes will affect the pressure angle, resulting in binding, wear, and general malfunction. If tooth thickness limits for a molded gear are to be held to +0.000 inch, −0.001 inch (−0.025 mm), the outside diameter must be permitted to vary up to 0.0027 inch (0.069 mm) for 20 degree and 0.0039 inch (0.099 mm) for $14\frac{1}{2}$-deg pressure angle gears. All high-accuracy gears should be specified with AGMA quality numbers and inspected with center-distance measuring machines if the required accuracy is to be achieved.

Polishing Plastics.—Plastics can be highly polished for optical and tooling applications, low-friction surfaces, aesthetic purposes, and other uses. This can be achieved with buffing methods similar to those used on metals. But experiments typically are required to determine appropriate speed and forces, based on effects of various polishing media and frictional heat.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To minimize surface heating during machine polishing, it is recommended to avoid lingering at any one location, and to keep speeds and forces low. Otherwise, surfaces can quickly heat to temperatures of 400°F (205°C), and many plastics will soften and melt at these temperatures. Heating also can cause plastics to give off toxic gases. So machine polishing should be performed in vented enclosures, and masks worn during manual polishing to filter gases and dust.

As with metals, polishing operations proceed from coarser to finer surfaces. If molding, additive manufacturing, or machining processes left a rough surface, sanding may be needed prior to polishing. Larger defects, including parting lines, imperfections, scratches, saw lines, and scars resulting from fabrication, also can be treated with abrasives prior to buffing. Wet or dry abrasives, such as silicon carbide or aluminum oxide, generally are used in grain sizes from 60 to as fine as 1000. Surfaces are ready for fine polishing when a satin finish is achieved.

If the plastic parts are sufficiently robust, tumble polishing can be used with abrasive media in a vibratory bowl. Tumbling processes can operate as a batch process, with high loadings of parts. Cycle times are typically a few hours, with the usual media to parts ratio approximately 2 or 3 to 1 by volume. A wide variety of abrasive media are available, varying in shape, density, hardness, and grit. For burnishing and polishing of plastics parts, angle-cut cylinders, with finer grit and lower density and hardness, are recommended to avoid excessive material removal and loss of feature detail. Tumbling of plastics parts in ceramic media usually works best when used as a wet process, with intermittent or continuous filtering of the generated particulates.

Economical polishing of edges—for example, of acrylic sheets—may be accomplished by flame polishing. If the surface is rough, edges should first be sanded with 320 grit paper. Quickly passing an oxy-acetylene torch over the edge surface melts it with the local flow and solidification results in a polished appearance. To minimize rounding of melted edges, a small strip of plastic or other material can be clamped on each side. Note that polycarbonate and many other plastics may not be easily flame polished, given their propensity to oxidative degradation and flammability.

Polishing with buffer wheels is common, with speeds for polishing comparable to those for turning (see Table 12), typically 800 to 1,500 feet (360 to 580 meters) per minute, with rotation speeds varying with the buffer wheel size. For example, a wheel measuring 6 in. (150 mm) operating at 750 rpm will provide a linear velocity of 1,180 feet/minute (360 meters/minute). For most plastics, soft cotton buffs are best, using a wet or greasy tripoli or silica compound. If a cleaning solvent is used, it should be checked to see that it does not dissolve the plastic and used only in a well-ventilated area. Each round of polishing should be performed with a separate, clean polishing bonnet.

Finishing and Decorating Plastics.—There are a number of other methods for finishing and decorating the surfaces of plastic parts, such as spray painting, vacuum metallizing, hot stamping, silk screening, and even plating. Conductive coatings may be applied to inside surfaces, usually by flame- or arc-spraying, to dissipate static electricity and provide electromagnetic shielding. Thorough cleaning is essential. Materials such as polyethylene, polypropylene, and acetal have waxlike surfaces that may not be painted easily or may need pretreatment or special primers. Many amorphous plastics are easy to paint. Suitable coatings include polyurethane-, epoxy-, acrylic-, alkyd-, and vinyl-based paints. Oven curing must be carried out at temperatures well below the deflection temperatures of the plastics in order to avoid distortion of parts. See *Deflection temperature under load (DTUL)* on page 574.

Vacuum Metallizing and Sputter Coating require application of a special base lacquer and protective clear top coat before and after treatment. Resistance heating or an electron beam can be used to melt the coating metals such as aluminum, silver, copper, and gold, which usually are pure elements. Wires of the coating metal are hung from tungsten heating elements in an array that gives them direct views of the surfaces to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be coated. Sputter plating uses a plasma to produce the metallic vapor, requires line-of-sight setup, and can use brass as well as the other metals mentioned. The appearance of gold or brass is often simulated with vacuum-metallized aluminum by tinting the overcoating lacquer. Chromium plating requires etched surfaces to ensure good adhesion.

Development of Plastics Prototypes.—Model prototypes are made for testing of properties, such as stress and fatigue resistance, to find ways to improve quality and reliability, to improve tooling design, and to reduce time to market. Prototyping may answer questions about finish, sink marks that result from contraction, witness lines from mold joints, ejector pin marks, knit or weld lines, texturing, moldability, shrinkage, mechanical strength, insert pull-out resistance electrical properties, and problems of mating with other parts.

Prototypes of moldings are made in five major steps: design, refining the design, making a model (physical or computer), making a mold, and producing parts. The model may be made from wood, plaster, plastics (by machining), or metal. The majority of prototypes utilize CAD/CAM methods that enable dimensional tolerances to be held to 2 to 3 percent of drawing specifications. (See *CAD/CAM* on page 1390.) However, ongoing advancements in sophisticated additive manufacturing (AM) processes, commonly known as 3D printing, are steadily increasing the number of plastics prototypes, as well as parts, being produced using such methods.

After the initial investment, use of AM processes to produce plastics prototypes can be less expensive and more efficient than producing prototypes with CNC machines, freeing up the more costly CNC machines for production. CNC systems generally require more floor space than 3D printers and, as a subtractive process, use more material and produce scrap that must be recycled or otherwise disposed of, whereas AM machines use only the amount of material needed.

Additive Manufacturing Plastics

Plastics prototyping was the motivation for development of the first AM process, known as stereolithography (SLA). This process patent was filed in 1984, granted in 1986, and commercialized in 1987 by 3D Systems. Since then, other AM processes for making plastics prototypes and production parts have been developed and refined, including selective laser sintering, fused deposition modeling, binder jetting, material jetting, and multijet fusion. In all of these processes, a part is built up one layer at a time, adding material to produce a shape.

In all AM methods, as in CNC machining and other computerized manufacturing systems, the objective shape is represented in a three-dimensional (3D) CAD file. The CAD file may be made by a designer or by scanning an object into a solid modeling package. Software embedded within the printer "slices" the CAD model into layers; it then determines the toolpath for fabricating each layer. The "tool" in this case is an extruder, laser, or printhead, as described in the following sections.

Unlike CNC systems, AM does not require external programming of the toolpath. With the new programs and interfaces, the skill level required to program and operate a 3D printer and create unique plastic models in-house is less. Alternatively, parts designers can take advantage of 3D printing services to produce affordable prototypes. Thus, prototypes can be produced more frequently, providing efficiencies in product design and development time. At the same time, production parts are increasingly being manufactured with this technology.

Operating principles and features of various plastic AM processes follows. Table 1 summarizes attributes of plastic 3D printing processes. For more on the plastics mentioned here, see *Plastics Materials* on page 556.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Plastics Processes and Materials for 3D Printing

Process	Materials	Feedstock Form	Accuracy		Resolution				Layer Thickness		Surface Finish
					Diameter of Hole		Thickness of Wall				
			inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	Roughness Average (Ra)
Stereolithography (SLA)	Thermoset plastics: PP-like, ABS-like, PC-like, heat-resistant, flexible	Photosensitive liquid resin	0.002	0.05	0.02	0.5	0.02	0.5	0.001–0.004	0.03–0.10	3–5
Selective Laser Sintering (SLS)	Thermoplastics: nylon, carbon-filled nylon, glass-filled nylon, aluminum-filled nylon	Polymer powders	0.012	0.30	0.06	1.5	0.03	0.8	0.001–0.004	0.03–0.10	10–20
Fused Deposition Modeling (FDM)	Thermoplastics: ABS, PC, PLA, Ultem high-temperature	Polymer filament	0.02	0.5	0.08	2.0	0.03	0.8	0.004–0.012	0.10–0.30	20–50
Binder Jetting (BJ)	Plaster, starch	Plaster starch powders; water-based binders	0.02	0.5	0.04	1.0	0.04	1.0	0.004–0.012	0.10–0.30	10–20
Material Jetting (MJ)	Thermoset plastics: ABS-like, PP-like, rubber	Photosensitive polymer resin	0.004	0.10	0.02	0.5	0.04	1.0	0.0006–0.002	0.015–0.05	5–10
Multijet Fusion (MJF)	Nylon	Polymer particles; liquid binder and detail agents	0.012	0.30	0.02	0.5	0.02	0.5	0.002–0.005	0.05–0.13	5–10

Stereolithography (SLA).—Under the action of light energy supplied by a laser beam, individual molecules in a photosensitive liquid resin cross-link into a long-chain molecule to form a solid polymer. Motion of the laser spot is controlled by galvanometer-driven mirrors to trace a two-dimensional (2D) slice of the three-dimensional (3D) CAD model.

Commonly, the part is built from bottom up, as shown in Table 2A. First, the bottom slice of the part is produced on a platform that moves in the vertical direction. The platform is then lowered into a vat of photosensitive liquid resin, by one layer thickness (see Table 1). An arm sweeps across the surface to smooth it, and the next slice is traced by the laser. This action sequence is repeated until the part specified by the CAD file is produced.

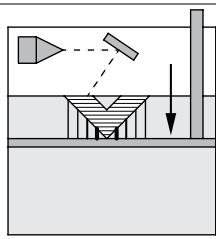
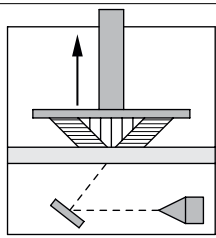
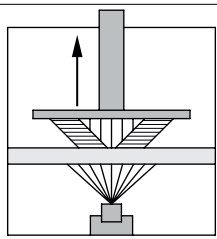
In a variation of this process, the platform is moved upward, while the laser beam projects from below onto the bottom of a transparent tray containing photosensitive liquid resin, as shown in Table 2B. In this case, the top slice of the part is produced first, the build platform moves upward, in one layer thickness, and each new slice is added in a top-down approach. This method initially requires much less resin than the bottom-up approach.

A version of the top-down SLA method, shown in Table 2C, uses a digital light processor (DLP) to convert each layer of liquid resin into a solid 2D slice with a flash of light; this sequence is repeated until each slice of the 3D part is produced. The DLP consists of millions of tiny, movable micro-mirrors, whose tilt angles are individually computer controlled to reflect a single light source toward or away from the layer of resin. Those mirrors tilted toward the resin solidify the entire shape at once, while those tilted away reflect light onto a nonreflecting surface.

In all SLA approaches, support structures are printed with the part to support overhanging sections of the part that otherwise would sag under gravity. Supports are removed from the finished part and the affected surfaces smoothed, though SLA produces the smoothest finish of all plastic 3D printing processes. It also produces the most accurate parts (approximately 0.002 in. or 0.05 mm) of the 3D printing processes. With SLA's ability to produce parts with high resolution and good surface finish, this process is suitable for functional prototypes of mechanisms, patterns for fine investment casting (such as jewelry), and form-and-fit models.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Three Configurations of the Stereolithography (SLA) Process

 A	(a) *Bottom-up build by SLA with ultraviolet (UV) laser projecting from above:* The build platform descends into a vat of photosensitive polymer, one layer at a time. A UV laser scans the cross section of the part on the top surface. As the laser moves across this surface, it solidifies the polymer, incrementally transforming each slice of the model into a layer of the 3D part.
 B	(b) *Top-down build by SLA with UV laser projecting from below:* The build platform moves upward, one layer at a time, over a build tray containing photosensitive polymer. A UV laser scans the cross section of the part through the transparent base of the build tray. As the laser moves across and projects through the build tray, it solidifies the polymer, incrementally transforming each slice of the model into a layer of the 3D part.
 C	(c) *Top-down build by SLA with digital light processor (DLP) projecting from below:* The build platform moves upward, one layer at a time, over a build tray containing photosensitive polymer. A DLP projects through the transparent base of the build tray. As the DLP projects the complete shape of each slice on the build tray, it solidifies the polymer, transforming the slice of the model into a layer of the 3D part all at once.

Selective Laser Sintering (SLS).—In this powder-bed layered process, parts are built within a build box on a build plate that moves vertically. First, a thin layer of polymer powder is spread on the build plate by a roller, blade, or hopper. Then an infrared laser travels across the surface, guided by galvanometer-driven mirrors (as in the bottom-up SLA process described earlier) and traces the 2D layer of the 3D part to be produced. Polymer powders within the laser spot are heated and fused together by sintering. Thus, thermoplastic materials are used in SLS processes.

The build plate is moved down by one layer thickness (see Table 1) and a new layer of powder is spread, followed by the laser trace. This sequence is repeated until the 3D part is completed. Unused powder is removed from the build box, the part is brushed off to remove residual powder, and the unused powder is saved for reuse (supplemented by new powder) in future builds.

Unprinted powder provides support for powder bonded by the laser, so supports are not added to parts produced using SLS printers. As a result, material is not wasted in supports, and multiple layers of parts can be produced in one build, improving productivity of SLS

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

machines. SLS parts have a rougher surface finish than SLA parts, and feature resolution is less. Applications of SLS include functional prototypes, design evaluation models, short-run bridge production, and casting patterns.

Fused Deposition Modeling (FDM).—Also called *material extrusion*, this process involves feeding a thermoplastic filament from a coil into a heated nozzle, which melts the plastic and extrudes it into a fine filament, typically 0.004 in. (0.102 mm) in diameter (Fig. 1). The nozzle is attached to a precision XYZ motion system that traces the first 2D layer, as defined by the sliced CAD file, onto a platform. The platform then moves down one layer thickness, and the next layer is traced; this process is repeated until the defined model is completed.

Since the extruded plastic is soft, it requires supports, extending from the build platform upward to any overhangs of the part; after the part is completed and separated from the build platform, supports are easily broken off. Because the part is made of extruded filaments, the surface will be bumpy. Surface finishing can be accomplished by sanding or exposing the part to boiling acetone, which dissolves the surface slightly and allows it to reflow to a smooth finish.

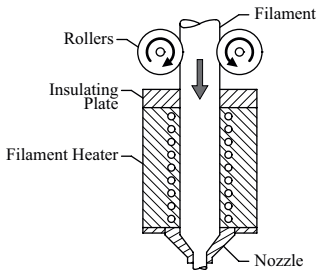


Fig. 1. Fused Deposition Modeling (FDM) Process

FDM machines are the least expensive plastics prototyping machines because they do not involve a laser and the heated extrusion head is widely available. Filaments for FDM are readily made by extrusion of thermoplastic feedstocks. Some feedstocks include reinforcing particles of glass or chopped graphite fiber, adding strength to printed parts.

One FDM method uses two nozzles and can produce multicolored parts. Or one of the nozzles can extrude a water-soluble support material that can be removed easily by soaking parts in water, reducing post-processing labor.

Another FDM process includes a separate nozzle for inserting continuous fibers of graphite, fiberglass, or Kevlar. This type of machine produces parts with selective reinforcement in high-stress areas.

Applications for FDM are based on its low cost but limited resolution. These include proof-of-concept models, low-cost prototyping, sand casting patterns, and jigs and fixtures. Because of its low cost, FDM has brought AM to a large number of nontechnical users, such as hobbyists, experimenters, and model-makers. In addition, FDM machines have provided a convenient and low-cost vehicle for introduction of students at all levels to the basic concepts of design and manufacturing.

Binder Jetting (BJ).—In this process, a layer of powder is spread on a build plate in a build box, similar to SLS. However, instead of bonding powder by sintering with the heat of an infrared laser, droplets of binder are jetted from a printhead, with thousands of jets, as it passes over the powder layer, creating a 2D layer. After each pass, the build platform is lowered by one layer thickness, a new layer of powder is spread, and the print head passes over the new layer. This process is repeated until the complete 3D part is produced.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Binder droplets can be thought of as dots that combine to produce each slice of the CAD file. The binder not only bonds particles within each droplet, it also bonds each dot to its neighbors and penetrates to the slice below to ensure strength for subsequent handling. Because the droplet mass is negligible, bonded powder particles have the same density as unbonded particles, and supports are not required. The finished part is removed from the build box, and the unbonded powder is removed and reused. Starch or plaster powder is commonly used in binder jetting. To add strength to the part, it may be infiltrated or painted with epoxy and cured.

Material Jetting (MJ).— Something of a hybrid process, material jetting involves printing fine droplets of light-curable resin onto a build plate. Immediately after the printhead deposits the resin droplets, a light bar passes over the build plate, solidifying the resin in a polymerization process similar to SLA, producing thermoset plastics. Overhangs require supports to prevent sagging of solidified material.

Some advanced versions of MJ involve multiple printheads; each one can be set up to jet a different resin. Various resins harden into solid polymers of different color and hardness. As a result, material jetting can be used to produce product prototypes and parts with varying material properties, such as a toothbrush with a rigid handle, soft grip, and stiff bristles.

Multijet Fusion (MJF).— A powder bed fusion process like binder jetting, multijet fusion uses two types of binders for selective fusion. A layer of plastic powder is spread, a printhead deposits the two binders, and intense infrared radiation is applied to the layer. One binder is a dark color that absorbs infrared radiation and fuses the polymer particles together; it is deposited by multiple jets where the part is to be made. The second, lighter binder, which prevents fusion, is deposited in other areas to provide sharp definition of part boundaries and features. MJF produces highly accurate parts and is useful for prototype development and form-and-fit models.

AM Considerations for Tooling and Parts

All plastic AM processes build parts layer by layer. This characteristic enables production of much more complex shapes than can be made by conventional machining, casting and molding, or other forming operations. Because AM processes do not involve forming tools, overhangs and re-entrant corners can be produced readily. In addition, internal cavities and channels that are neither round nor straight are feasible—overcoming limitations of conventional drilling.

On the other hand, the per-part cost of AM parts is greater than that of conventional mass production processes. The cost of powder or filament feedstocks is higher than the same materials in conventional form, and the processes are much slower than conventional processes. These advantages and limitations are illustrated as cost break-even points in Fig. 30a and Fig. 30b in *Additive Manufacturing Workflow* on page 1555.

A major application that fits within these limits is production of tooling for conventional processes. Applications include jigs and fixtures for machining, grinding, and welding; dimension-checking fixtures and gages for quality control; masking and non-marring of critical surfaces; organizing tools; and robotic end effectors. In addition, high-strength AM plastic dies are used for short-run thermoforming and injection molding. Composite layup tools and sand casting patterns also are produced economically by plastic AM processes.

Probably the most widely used AM tooling application is in fixtures for dimensioning first production articles and/or for periodic checks. Such fixtures normally are CNC machined from aluminum or assembled from machined aluminum segments, but in most cases, the strength of aluminum is not required. Furthermore, fixtures can be produced by the FDM process in a day or two, rather than the far longer lead time required for CNC programming and production or assembly.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

An example of the benefits of AM for fixtures is shown by a fixture needed for dimension and distortion measurement of investment casting for a household sweeper. Fabricating the fixture using a CNC machine would require delivery time of four weeks and cost $450 if it were made from aluminum, $350 if made from high-density polyethylene (HDPE). Producing the part from ABS plastic by FDM cost $50 and was delivered in one day.

Similar savings of time and money are realized in AM production of plastic assembly jigs. For example, AM is being used on automotive assembly lines to produce low-run parts, such as jigs for emblem or medallion attachment.

While AM processes and procedures currently are not capable of economically producing the large numbers of components needed for full-scale automotive production, rapid evolution of AM processes and procedures will soon lead to mass (or *serial*) production of small parts. In the meantime, AM is being used in the automotive industry to produce customized features, such as whimsical front-end "face" coverings, with shark skin, dimple, and whisker details. Race car and other custom shops have used AM for many years to produce custom spoilers for wind tunnel testing, vents to enhance engine performance, and other specialized parts. AM also is used to make parts such as air intakes and fender vents for luxury automobiles. For vintage vehicles, from cars to airplanes, AM software and systems can scan, analyze, and replicate outdated replacement parts. For this purpose, in addition to making plastic parts directly, plastic-based AM processes also are used to produce tooling for other manufacturing processes.

Such applications of plastic AM include making patterns and molds for metal and composite casting and molding, as well as dies for sheet metal forming processes. FDM, SLS, and MJ processes can be used to produce thermoforming dies in much less time than machining aluminum (see *Sheet Thermoforming* on page 584). One of the most visible applications is the use of SLA to print custom molds for thermoforming of Invisalign dental braces.

Plastic tooling made by AM processes has enough strength to be used for forming simple shapes in sheet metal. In one case, a nose gear failure during landing on an aircraft carrier at sea damaged two sheet metal parts in the nose of the plane, removing it from service. Replacement parts were not available, so two forming dies, used for forming such replacement sheet metal parts, were made by FDM at a seaside base and then flown to the carrier at sea. The aircraft was repaired and in service within a week, instead of waiting longer to receive replacement parts from the original equipment manufacturer or aftermarket parts supplier.

SLA, FDM, and MJ processes also are used to produce injection molding tools for short runs between 100 and 1,000 parts (see *Sheet Thermoforming* on page 584). A major advantage of making injection molding tools by AM processes is that conformal internal cooling channels can be printed into tools. Because the cooling channels have the same profile as the tool, heat is removed from the part rapidly and uniformly, reducing injection molding cycle time and improving quality by practically eliminating warping of molded parts.

Patterns for sandcasting are being made by FDM to shorten time to mold production. While patterns are commonly made by machining aluminum or composition, using FDM reduces delivery time from weeks to days. The pattern materials must resist the heavy pressures and abrasion of sand impact during mold compaction around the pattern and be impervious to the binding agents and mold-release chemicals used in casting (see *Patterns* on page 1498). ABS and Ultem patterns produced on FDM machines meet these conditions. Printed patterns may be sanded, smoothed by acetone treatment, or sealed with epoxy to provide a smoother finish.

Plastic AM is also used to produce patterns for investment casting (see *Precision Investment Casting* on page 1504). Patterns are produced by SLA, SLS, and FDM processes, and then used in the conventional investment casting sequence of coating the pattern with plaster or refractory materials, melting or burning out the pattern material, and pouring liquid metal into the mold. Plastics have been developed for this purpose that leave very

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

small amounts of ash to contaminate the investment casting. In addition, because loads on patterns for investment casting are low, the patterns are made in the form of a shell with a honeycomb internal structure, reducing the amount of material in the pattern.

Tooling for composite layups is increasingly being made by FDM because of their rapid turnaround. Various approaches are used to heat and pressurize the composite layers into a finished part, such as a blade for a wind turbine. (See *Reinforced Plastics* on page 587 for curing practices used in plastic composite forming.) ABS and PC can withstand curing process temperatures up to 270°F (132°C) and pressures up to 100 psi (690 kPa). For greater temperatures and pressures, FDM tools made from ULTEM 1010 are used.

Some of the largest parts made by AM processes are composite layup tools using the FDM process with filament containing chopped graphite fibers. Use of such filament drastically reduces thermal distortion and sagging during production of large parts. The largest of these 3D printers has a production envelope of length, width, and height, respectively, of 20 by 7.5 by 6 feet (6 by 2.3 by 1.8 meters). This process supports segmented printing of prototype vehicles and even building parts.

Production of parts by AM is useful in several ways beyond prototyping. In some cases, a duplicate of the actual part can be made by AM and used to set up assembly jigs or inspection fixtures while waiting for the first article from a molding or casting process. In addition, AM parts can be used as a bridge to production by accelerating rapid product changes, enabling short runs to gain market insertion without having to wait for conventional tooling and mass production.

A further use of AM is providing spare parts, particularly for systems near the end of their lifecycle, if their inventory has been depleted. This capability is important for machinery, such as older amusement park rides, that have been in operation for decades. Production of legacy and other on-demand parts on location for defense systems is a similar opportunity.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

DRAFTING PRACTICES

620 Standard Drafting Practices
620 Sizes of Drawing Sheets
620 Line Conventions and Drawings
621 Lines for Engineering Drawings
622 Symbols for Section Lining
623 ASME Geometric Symbols
624 ISO Geometric Symbols
625 Surface Texture Symbols
625 Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T)
627 Standard Drafting Definitions
631 Datum Referencing
632 Positional Tolerance
635 GD&T and CAD Models
636 Digital Product Definitions
637 Checking Designs and Drawings
637 Design Parameters
638 Checking Drawings
638 ASME and ISO Drawing Checklists
639 Arrangement of Views

ALLOWANCES AND TOLERANCES FOR FITS

640 Limits and Fits
640 Basic Size
640 Tolerances
640 Unilateral and Bilateral Tolerances
641 Application of Tolerances
641 Locating Tolerance Dimensions
642 Direction of Tolerances on Gages
642 Forced Fits
643 Expansion Fits
643 Shrinkage Fits
646 Temperatures for Shrinkage Fits
646 ANSI/ASME Standard Limits and Fits
646 Selection of Fits
646 Definitions
647 Preferred Basic Sizes
647 Standard Tolerances
648 ANSI/ASME Standard Fits
651 Modified Standard Fits
660 ANSI/ASME Preferred Metric Limits and Fits
660 Definitions
661 Tolerances Designation
662 Preferred Metric Fits

ALLOWANCES AND TOLERANCES FOR FITS

(Continued)

674 Tolerance Applications
674 ISO Metric Limits and Fits
675 Definitions
675 Limits of Tolerance, and Fits
675 Tolerances and Fundamental Deviations
675 Calculated Limits of Tolerance
684 Tolerance Analysis and Assignment
684 Tolerance Stack-Up Chain
684 Tolerance Analysis Calculation
686 Tolerance Assignment
687 Preferred Numbers
687 American National Standard
688 Preferred Metric Sizes
689 British Standard Preferred Numbers and Sizes

MEASURING, INSTRUMENTS, AND INSPECTION METHODS

690 Reading Verniers and Micrometers
691 Metric Vernier
691 Dual Metric-Inch Vernier
692 Micrometer
693 Metric Micrometer
693 Sine-Bar Use
695 Using Sine-Bar Tables
695 Using a Calculator to Determine Sine-Bar Constants
696 Measuring Tapers with V-Block
696 Dimensioning Tapers
697 Measurement of Angles and Tapers
697 Measuring Dovetail Slides
698 Taper per Foot
702 Measurement over Pins and Rolls
703 Checking a V-Shaped Groove
703 Checking Radius of Arc
705 Checking Shaft Conditions
708 Coordinates for Hole Circles
710 Adapting Equations to Geometry
711 Lengths of Chords
712 Hole Coordinate Tables
721 Gage Blocks
723 Gage Block Sets, Inch Sizes
724 Gage Block Sets, Metric Sizes
724 Surface Plates
724 Materials and Grades
727 Calibration of Surface Plates

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MEASURING, INSTRUMENTS, AND INSPECTION METHODS

(Continued)

732 V-Blocks
733 Classification: Type, Style, Grade
741 Metric Products
743 Calibration of V-Blocks
744 Preliminary Operations
744 Sides Square To Each Other
745 Parallelism of V to Base
747 V-Groove Centrality
748 Flatness of Working Surfaces
749 Parallel Bars
753 Calibration, Precision Parallel Bars, Naval Air Systems and Air Force Metrology
753 Flatness (Straightness) Calibration Method
755 Height and Width, Matched Sets
756 Right-Angle Plates
756 Grades
759 Types
761 Calibration and Maintenance
764 Measurements Using Light
765 Interferometer

MICROMETER, VERNIER, AND DIAL CALIPERS

766 Micrometer Calipers
766 Types, Classes, and Styles
766 Construction Requirements
767 Outside Micrometers
767 Type I, Caliper Micrometer
771 Type I, Class 1, Style A
771 Type I, Class 1, Style B
772 Type I, Class 1, Style C
772 Type I, Class 1, Style D
772 Type I, Class 2, Finished Frame
776 Inside Micrometers
776 Type II, Class 1, Inside
777 Type II, Class 2, Rod and Sleeve
778 Type II, Class 3, Style A
779 Type II, Class 3, Style B
780 Type III, Micrometer Depth Gage
781 Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables
783 Calipers, Vernier and Dial
783 Classification: Type and Class
784 Scale and Graduations

MICROMETER, VERNIER AND DIAL CALIPERS

(Continued)

784 Inch Graduated Instruments
785 Metric Graduated Instruments
786 Dial Caliper
786 Digital Caliper
787 Calibration of Reference Setting Standards
789 Calibration of Outside Micrometers
793 Calibration of Depth Micrometers
794 Calibration of Micrometer Heads
795 Calibration of Thread Micrometers
796 Calibration of Inside Micrometers
798 Tubular Type Inside Micrometer
798 Length Calibration Process
799 Extension Rod Calibration
800 Calibration of Vernier, Dial and Digital Calipers
802 Calibration of Jaw Parallelism
802 Adjustment of Gib Slide Screws
803 Calibration of Outside Jaws
804 Calibration of Inside Jaws (Nibs)
805 Calibration of Depth Rod
806 Calibration of Step Height
807 Calibration Tolerance Tables

SURFACE TEXTURE

808 American National Standard Surface Texture
808 Terms Relating to the Surfaces of Solid Materials
810 Terms Relating to the Measurement of Surface Texture
811 Sampling Lengths
812 Roughness Parameters
813 Waviness Parameters
814 Instruments for Measurement
815 Roughness Measurements
815 Surface Texture Symbols
818 Roughness Average Values
819 Surface Texture of Castings
819 Metric Dimensions on Drawings
820 Lay Symbols
822 ISO Surface Finish Standards
825 ISO Profiles
827 Examples of ISO Applications of Surface Texture Symbology

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

DRAFTING PRACTICES

While there are many national standards-based drafting practices throughout the world, three sets of standards practices predominate internationally. These sets of practices include the American National Standards Institute (ANSI); American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME); those modeled on standards developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO); and to a lesser extent, those based on Japanese Industry Standards (JIS). However since JIS has committed to adopting ISO practices, coverage will be limited to ANSI/ASME practice and select ISO practices where appropriate. In general, there are several ANSI/ASME Standards for use in preparing engineering drawings and related documents.

Standard Drafting Practices

Sizes of Drawing Sheets.—Recommended trimmed sheet sizes are shown in Table 1. Customary inch sizes are documented in US ANSI/ASME ANSI/Y14.1-2012, are based on commercial letterhead paper ($8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ in.), and are in general use throughout the United States. Each successive size beginning with $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ in. (A) is double the size of the previous (except size F). Using sizes based on commercial letterhead paper size, and its multiples, permits filing small prints and folded larger prints in the same commercial standard letter files. For drawings requiring trimmed metric sheets, sizes are based on ANSI/ANSI/ASME Y14.1M-2012 in the United States and ISO 5457 in other countries. Metric sizes are consistent across US and ISO standards. As with the customary inch sheet sizes, each successive metric size sheet beginning with commercial letterhead paper size A4 is double the previous size also for ease of folding and filing.

Metric sizes are based on the width-to-length ratio of 1 to $\sqrt{2}$. Note that the metric size designators increase as the paper decreases in area. Virtually all CAD systems include both inch and metric size paper templates. Most countries outside the United States use metric paper sizes, so for foreign correspondence it is recommended that the metric sheet sizes be used. For additional sizes and details see the respective standards.

Table 1. Drawing Sheet Sizes

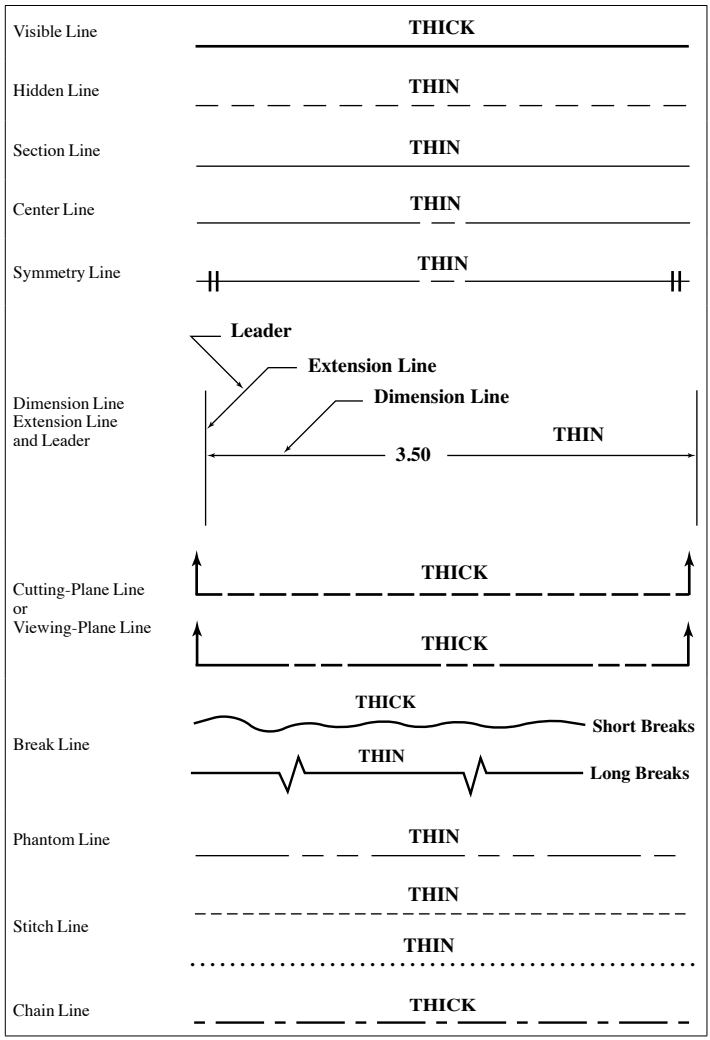
US Customary Size, inches (*ANSI/ASME Y14.1-2012*)				Metric Size, millimeters (*ANSI/ASME Y14.1M-2012*)			
A	$8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$	D	22×34	A4	210×297	A1	594×841
B	11×17	E	34×44	A3	297×420	A0	841×1189
C	17×22	F	28×40	A2	420×594		

Line Conventions and Drawings.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME Y14.2-2014 establishes line and lettering practices for engineering drawings. The line conventions and the symbols for section lining are as shown in Table 2 and Table 3.

Approximate width of THICK lines for metric drawings is 0.6 mm, and for inch drawings, 0.032 inch. Approximate width of THIN lines for metric drawings is 0.3 mm, and for inch drawings, 0.016 inch. These approximate line widths are intended to differentiate between THICK and THIN lines and are not values influencing acceptance or rejection of drawings. Basic line conventions in ISO are established in ISO 128-20: 1996. Lines intended to comply with ISO standards use widths of 0.13 mm, 0.18 mm, 0.25 mm, 0.35 mm, 0.5 mm, 0.7 mm, 1 mm, 1.4 mm and 2 mm, but again may deviate as long as lines are consistent in width and it is possible to differentiate "unambiguously" between two adjacent lines with different widths.

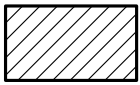
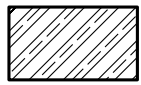
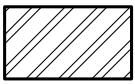
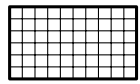
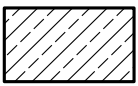
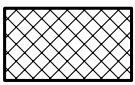
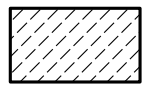
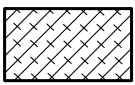
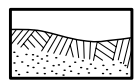
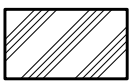
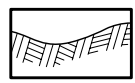
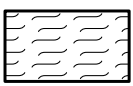
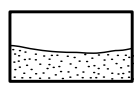
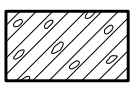
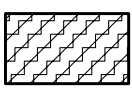
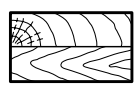
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Lines for Engineering Drawings
ANSI/ASME Y14.2-2014



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Symbols for Section Lining
ANSI Y14.2M-1979 (R1987)[a]

	Cast and malleable iron (Also for general use of all materials)		Titanium and refractory material
	Steel		Electric windings, electromagnets, resistance, etc.
	Bronze, brass, copper, and compositions		Concrete
	White metal, zinc, lead, babbitt, and alloys		Marble, slate, glass, porcelain, etc.
	Magnesium, aluminum, and aluminum alloys		Earth
	Rubber, plastic electrical insulation		Rock
	Cork, felt, fabric, leather, fiber		Sand
	Sound insulation		Water and other liquids
	Thermal insulation		Wood-across grain Wood-with grain

[a] This table appeared in the 2008 reaffirmed version of this standard but has been removed from the current version, ANSI/ASME Y14.2-2014. It has been retained here for reference.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ASME Geometric Symbols *ASME Y14.5-2018*

Symbol for		Symbol for	
Straightness	—	Diameter	Ø
Flatness	▱	Basic Dimension	50
Circularity	○	Reference Dimension	(50)
Cylindricity	⌭	Datum Feature (triangle may be filled in or not)	A
Angularity	∠	Dimension Origin	
Perpendicularity	⊥	Feature Control Frame	⌖ Ø 0.5 Ⓜ A B C
Parallelism	//	Conical Taper	
Position	⌖	Slope	
Profile of a Line	⌒	Counterbore	⌴
Profile of a Surface	⌓	Spotface	SF
Circular Runout (arrowhead may be filled in or not)	↗	Countersink	∨
Total Runout (arrowheads may be filled in or not)	⌰	Depth/Deep	↧
All Around		Square	□
All Over		Dimension Not to Scale	15
At Maximum Material Condition	Ⓜ	Number of Places	8X
At Maximum Material Boundary	Ⓜ	Arc Length	105
At Least Material Condition	Ⓛ	Radius	R
At Least Material Boundary	Ⓛ	Spherical Radius	SR
Projected Tolerance Zone	Ⓟ	Spherical Diameter	SØ
Tangent Plane	Ⓣ	Controlled Radius	CR
Free State	Ⓕ	Between (arrowheads may be filled in or not)	↔
Unequally Disposed Profile	Ⓤ	Statistical Tolerance	ST
Envelope Principle	Default	Continuous Feature	CF
Independency	Ⓘ	Datum Target	Ø6 A1 or Ø6 A1
Dynamic Profile Tolerance	⌓	Movable Datum Target	A1
Translation	▷	Target Point	×
From / To	→		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

Table 5. ISO Geometric Symbols *ISO 1101:2017*

Symbol for		Symbol for	
Straightness	—	Independency	Default
Flatness	▱	Dynamic Profile Tolerance	Δ
Circularity	○	From / To	→
Cylindricity	⌭	Diameter	ϕ
Angularity	∠	Theoretically Exact Dimension	50
Perpendicularity	⊥	Auxiliary Dimension	(50)
Parallelism	//	Datum Feature (triangle may be filled in or not)	A
Position	⌖	Dimension Origin	⌖→
Concentricity and Coaxiality	◎	Feature Control Frame	⌖ ϕ 0.5 Ⓜ A B C
Symmetry	⌯	Conical Taper	
Profile of a Line	⌒	Slope	
Profile of a Surface	⌓	Square	□
Circular Runout	↗	Dimension Not to Scale	15
Total Runout	⌰	Number of Places	8x
All Around	⌾	Arc Length	⌒105
All Over	⌾	Radius	R
At Maximum Material Condition	Ⓜ	Spherical Radius	SR
At Least Material Condition	Ⓛ	Spherical Diameter	Sϕ
Projected Tolerance Zone	Ⓟ	Between (arrowheads may be filled in or not)	↔
Tangent Plane	Ⓣ	Datum Target	ϕ6 / A1 or ϕ6 / A1
Free State	Ⓕ	Movable Datum Target	A1
Unequally Disposed Profile	UZ	Target Point	×
Envelope Principle	Ⓔ		

Note: This table includes the most commonly used symbols; for additional symbols, refer to the standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Surface Texture Symbols.—A detailed explanation of the use of surface-texture symbols from American National Standard ANSI/ASME Y14.36 begins on page 815, while ISO surface-texture techniques, standardized in ISO 1302, are explained beginning on page 822.

Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T).—ASME Y14.5-2018, "Dimensioning and Tolerancing," covers dimensioning, tolerancing, and similar practices for engineering drawings and related documentation. The mathematical definitions of dimensioning and tolerancing principles are given in the standard ANSI/ASME Y14.5.1M-1994 (R2012). ISO standards ISO 8015, ISO 1101 and ISO 26921 contain a detailed explanation of ISO geometric dimensioning and tolerancing practices. Those ISO practices involving GD&T and other selected ISO standard practices are shown in contrast to ANSI/ASME practices where applicable.

Geometric dimensioning and tolerancing provides a comprehensive system for symbolically defining the geometrical tolerance zone within which features must be contained. It provides an accurate transmission of design specifications among the three primary users of engineering drawings: design, manufacturing, and quality assurance groups. Some techniques introduced in ASME Y14.5-2018 have been accepted by ISO. These techniques include projected tolerance zone, the three-plane datum concept, total runout tolerance, multiple datums, and datum targets. Although Y14.5 follows ISO practice closely, there are still differences between ISO and US practice. Summaries of commonly used symbols in ASME Y14.5 and ISO standards are given in Table 4 and Table 5, respectively.

One major area of disagreement is the ISO "principle of independency" versus the "Taylor principle." Y14.5 and standard US practice both follow the Taylor principle, in which a geometric tolerancing zone may not extend beyond the boundary (or envelope) of perfect form at MMC (maximum material condition). This boundary is prescribed to control variations as well as the size of individual features. The US definition of independency further defines features of size as being independent and not required to maintain a perfect relationship with other features. The "envelope principle" is optional in treatment of these principles. A summary of the application of ASME geometric control symbols and their use with basic dimensions and modifiers is given in Table 6.

ASME Y14.5 features metric SI units (the International System of Units), but customary units may be used without violating any principles. On drawings where all dimensions are either in millimeters or in inches, individual identification of linear units is not required. However, the drawing should contain a note stating *"Unless otherwise specified, all dimensions are in millimeters"* (or *in inches*, as applicable). According to Y14.5, all dimensions are applicable at a temperature of 20°C (68°F) unless otherwise specified. Compensation may be made for measurements taken at other temperatures.

Angular units are expressed in degrees and decimals of a degree (35.4) or in degrees (°), minutes (′), and seconds (″), as in 35° 25′ 10″. Where decimal degrees less than one are specified, a zero shall precede the decimal value. A 90-degree angle is implied where center lines and depicting features are shown on a drawing at right angles and no angle is specified. A 90-degree BASIC angle applies where center lines of features in a pattern or surface shown at right angles on a drawing are located or defined by basic dimensions and no angle is specified.

Basic to all US practice is that orthographic drawing views are arranged in 3rd angle projection while Europe and Asia generally follow ISO practices that default to 1st angle projection. In 1st angle projection, the orientation of the views is reversed from US practice. See Fig. 1a for 3rd angle projection and Fig. 1b for 1st angle projection. Note the graphical symbol at the bottom of each, which indicates the projection system in use for the drawing. ANSI, ASME and ISO practice allow the other projection system, but the use of non-default practice must be declared by use of the graphical symbol.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. ASME Geometric Control Symbols *ASME Y14.5-2018*

Type [a]	Geometric Characteristics		Pertains To	Basic Dimensions	Feature Modifier	Datum Modifier
Form	—	Straightness	Only individual feature	Not applicable	See *Note* 1	No datum
	▱	Flatness			Modifier not applicable	
	○	Circularity				
	⌭	Cylindricity				
Profile	⌒	Profile of a Line	Individual or related	Yes if related		See *Note* 1
	⌓	Profile of a Surface				
Orientation	∠	Angularity	Always related feature(s)	Yes	See *Note* 1	
	⊥	Perpendicularity		Not applicable		
	//	Parallelism				
Location	⌖	Position		Yes		
Runout	↗	Circular Runout [b]		Not applicable	Only RFS	
	⌰	Total Runout [b]				

Note 1: Default RFS unless MMC or LMC explicitly stated.

[a] Five types of geometric control, when datums are indicated, when basic dimensions are required, and when MMC and LMC modifiers may be used.
[b] Arrowheads may be filled in or not.

ANSI/ASME and ISO Orthographic Projections

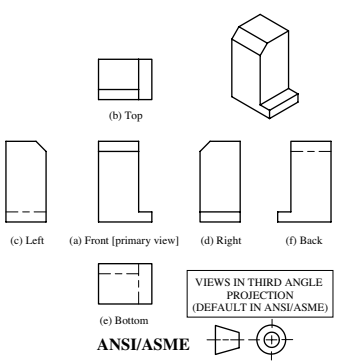


Fig. 1a. ANSI/ASME–Orthographic Projection Following Third Angle Projection

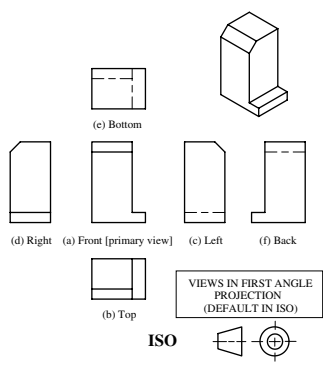


Fig. 1b. ISO–Orthographic Projection Following First Angle Projection

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

US ASME Y14.5-2018 and ISO practice use a preceding 0 before millimeter dimension values less than 1. Unlike US practice, ISO requires a comma as a decimal placeholder where US practice would use a decimal point, compare Fig. 2a and Fig. 2c. For decimal inch dimensioning, a zero is NOT used before the decimal for values less than 1 inch, Fig. 2b.

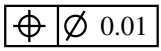


Fig. 2a. US Practice, Metric Dimensions

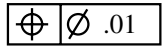


Fig. 2b. US Practice, Inch Dimensions

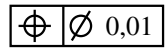


Fig. 2c. ISO Practice

When dimensioning per US default practice, unless otherwise specified, dimension lines are broken and dimension text remains horizontal, hence read from the bottom of the drawing, see Fig. 3a. ISO dimensioning practices default to aligned text with dimensions placed above an unbroken dimension line, see Fig. 3b.

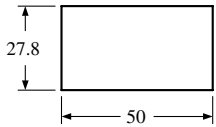


Fig. 3a. Default US Practice

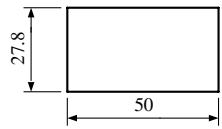


Fig. 3b. Default ISO Practice

Standard Drafting Definitions

The following terms are defined as their use applies to ASME Y14.5. Where ISO practice in actual use differs, the definitions are expanded to clarify the contrasting practices.

Datum Feature: The feature of a part that is used to establish a datum, identified with either a datum feature or datum target symbols, see Fig. 4.

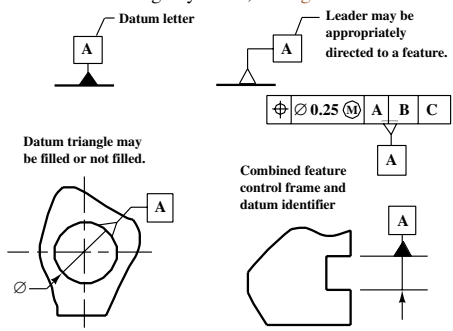


Fig. 4. Datum Feature Symbol

Datum Identifier: The graphic symbol on a drawing used to indicate the datum feature.

Specified Datum Feature: A datum is the origin from which the location or other geometric characteristics of features of a part are established.

Datum Reference Frame: Sufficient features on a part are chosen to position the part in relationship to as many as three planes. The three planes are mutually perpendicular and together are called the datum reference frame. The planes follow an order of precedence and allow the part to be immobilized. This immobilization in turn creates measurable relationships among features.

Datum Simulator: Formed by the datum feature contacting a precision surface such as a surface plate, gage surface or by a mandrel contacting the datum. Thus, the plane formed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

by contact restricts motion and constitutes the specific reference surface from which measurements are taken and dimensions verified. The datum simulator is the practical embodiment of the datum feature during manufacturing and quality assurance.

Datum Target: A specified point, line, or area on a part, used to establish a datum; see page 631.

Degrees of Freedom: The six directions of movement or translation are called degrees of freedom in a three-dimensional environment. They are up-down, left-right, fore-aft, roll, pitch, and yaw, see Fig. 5.

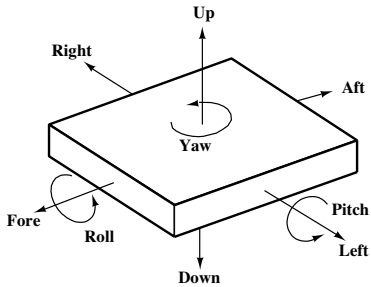


Fig. 5. Degrees of Freedom (Movement) that Must be Controlled, Depending on the Design Requirements

Dimension, Basic: A numerical value used to describe the theoretically exact size, orientation, location, or optionally, the profile, of a feature or datum or datum target. Basic dimensions are indicated by a rectangle around the dimension and are not toleranced directly or by default, see Fig. 6. The specific dimensional limits are determined by the permissible variations as established by the tolerance zone specified in the feature control frame. A dimension is only considered basic for the geometric control to which it is related.

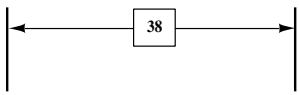


Fig. 6. Basic Dimensions

Dimension, Origin: A symbol used to indicate the origin and direction of a dimension between two features. The dimension originates from the symbol with the dimension tolerance zone being applied at the other feature, see Fig. 7.

Dimension, Reference: A dimension, usually without tolerance, used for information purposes only. Considered to be auxiliary information and not governing production or inspection operations. A reference dimension is a repeat of a dimension or is derived from a calculation or combination of other values shown on the drawing or on related drawings.

Feature Control Frame [Tolerance Frame]: Specification on a drawing that indicates the type of geometric control for the feature, the tolerance for the control, and the related datums, if applicable, see Fig. 8.

Feature: The general term applied to a physical portion of a part, such as a surface, hole, pin, tab, or slot. In ISO practice, depending on how the tolerance frame leader line is attached to the feature, different interpretations may be invoked as to whether the reference is to a line or surface, or an axis or median planer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

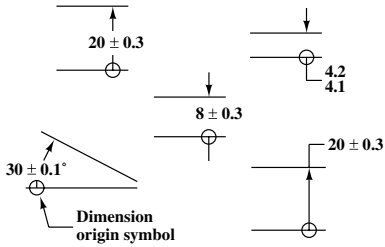


Fig. 7. Dimension Origin Symbol

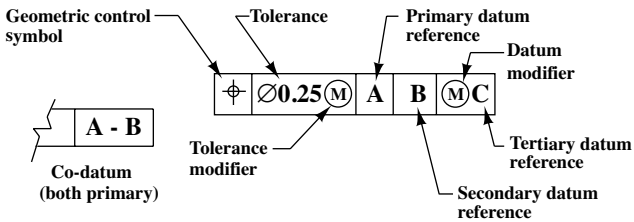


Fig. 8. Feature Control Frame and Datum Order of Precedence

When an ISO tolerance frame leader line terminates on the outline of the feature, it indicates that the control is a line or the surface itself (Fig. 9a.) When an ISO tolerance frame leader line terminates on a dimension, the axis or medium plane of the dimensioned feature is being controlled. Either inside or outside dimension lines may be used (Fig. 9b.)

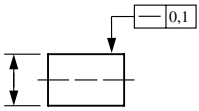


Fig. 9a. ISO Tolerance Frame Leader Line Terminating on the Outline of the Feature

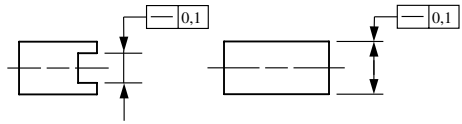


Fig. 9b. ISO Tolerance Frame Leader Line Terminating on a Dimension

Feature of Size, Regular: One cylindrical or spherical surface, a circular element, and a set of two opposed parallel elements or opposed parallel surfaces, each of which is associated with a directly toleranced dimension.

Feature of Size, Irregular: A directly toleranced feature or collection of features that may contain or be contained by an actual mating envelope that is a) a sphere, cylinder, or pair of parallel planes; or b) other than a sphere, cylinder, or pair of parallel planes.

Least Material Boundary (LMB): The limit defined by a tolerance or combination of tolerances that exist on or inside the material of a feature or features.

Least Material Condition (LMC): The condition in which a feature of size contains the least amount of material within the stated limits of size, for example, upper limit or maximum hole diameter and lower limit or minimum shaft diameter.

Limits, Upper and Lower (UL and LL): The arithmetic values representing the maximum and minimum size allowable for a dimension or tolerance. The upper limit represents the maximum size allowable. The lower limit represents the minimum size allowable.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Maximum Material Boundary (MMB): The limit defined by a tolerance or combination of tolerances that exist on or outside the material of a feature or features.

Maximum Material Condition (MMC): The condition in which a feature of size contains the maximum amount of material within the stated limits of size. For example, the lower limit of a hole is the minimum hole diameter. The upper limit of a shaft is the maximum shaft diameter.

Position: Formerly called true position, position is the theoretically exact location of a feature established by basic dimensions. In ISO practice a basic dimension is called a theoretically exact dimension (TED). A positional tolerance is indicated by the position symbol, a tolerance value, applicable material condition modifiers, and appropriate datum references placed in a feature control frame.

Regardless of Feature Size (RFS): The term used to indicate that a geometric tolerance or datum reference applies at any increment of size of the feature within its tolerance limits. RFS is the default condition unless MMC or LMC is specified. The concept is now the default in ASME Y14.5-2018, unless specifically stated otherwise. Thus the symbol for RFS is no longer supported in ASME Y14.5-2018.

Regardless of Material Boundary (RMB): indicates that a datum feature simulator progresses from MMB toward LMB until it makes maximum contact with the extremities of a feature(s). See *Datum Simulator* on page 627.

Size, Actual: The term indicating the size of a feature as produced.

Tolerance Zone Symmetry: In geometric tolerancing, the tolerance value stated in the feature control frame is always a single value. Unless otherwise specified, it is assumed that boundaries created by the stated tolerance are bilateral and equidistant about the perfect form control specified. See Fig. 10a for default zone. If desired, the tolerance may be specified as unilateral or unequally bilateral. See Fig. 10b and Fig. 10c for external and internal unilateral zones, and Fig. 10d for an example of a bilateral asymmetrical zone.

Tolerance Zone Symmetry Examples

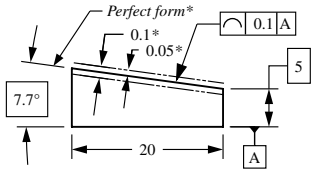


Fig. 10a. Default Symmetrical Tolerance Zone About Perfect Form

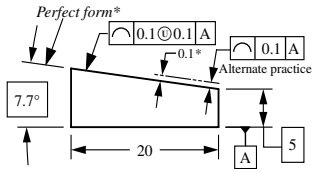


Fig. 10b. External Unilateral Tolerance Zone About Perfect Form

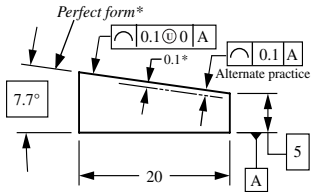


Fig. 10c. Internal Unilateral Tolerance Zone About Perfect Form

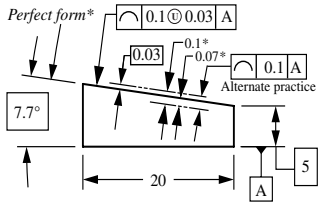


Fig. 10d. Bilateral Asymmetrical Tolerance Zone About Perfect Form

* *Added for clarification and is not part of the specification.*

Tolerance, Bilateral: A tolerance where variation is permitted in both directions from the specified dimension. Bilateral tolerances may be equal or unequal.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerance, Geometric: The general term applied to the category of tolerances used to control form, profile, orientation, location, and runout.

Tolerance, Unilateral: A tolerance where variation is permitted in only one direction from the specified dimension.

True Geometric Counterpart: Theoretically perfect plane of a specified datum feature.

Virtual Condition: A constant boundary generated by the collective effects of the feature size, its specified MMC or LMC material condition, and the geometric tolerance for that condition.

Datum Referencing.—A datum indicates the origin of a dimensional relationship between a toleranced feature and a designated feature or features on a part. The designated feature serves as a datum feature, whereas its true geometric counterpart establishes the datum plane. Because measurements cannot be made from a true geometric counterpart, which is theoretical, a datum is assumed to exist in and be simulated by the associated processing equipment.

For example, machine tables and surface plates, although not true planes, are of such quality that they are used to simulate the datums from which measurements are taken and dimensions are verified. When magnified, flat surfaces of manufactured parts are seen to have irregularities, so that contact is made with a datum plane formed at a number of surface extremities or high points. Sufficient datum features, those most important to the design of the part, are chosen to position the part in relation to a set of three mutually perpendicular planes, the datum reference frame. This reference frame exists only in theory and not on the part. Therefore, it is necessary to establish a method for simulating the theoretical reference frame from existing features of the part. This simulation is accomplished by positioning the part on appropriate datum features to adequately relate the part to the reference frame and to restrict the degrees of freedom of the part in relation to it.

These reference frame planes are simulated in a mutually perpendicular relationship to provide direction as well as the origin for related dimensions and measurements. Thus, when the part is positioned on the datum reference frame (by physical contact between each datum feature and its counterpart in the associated processing equipment), dimensions related to the datum reference frame by a feature control frame are thereby mutually perpendicular. This theoretical reference frame constitutes the three-plane dimensioning system used for datum referencing.

Depending on the degrees of freedom that must be controlled, a simple reference frame may suffice. At other times, additional datum reference frames may be necessary where physical separation occurs or the functional relationship of features requires that datum reference frames be applied at specific locations on the part. Each feature control frame must contain the datum feature references that are applicable.

Datum Targets: Datum targets are used to establish a datum plane. They may be points, lines or surface areas. Datum targets are used when the datum feature contains irregularities, other features block the surface or the entire surface cannot be used. Examples where datum targets may be indicated include uneven surfaces, forgings and castings, weldments, non-planar surfaces or surfaces subject to warping or distortion. The datum target symbol is located outside the part outline with a leader directed to the target point, area or line. The targets are dimensionally located on the part using basic or toleranced dimensions. If basic dimensions are used, established tooling or gaging tolerances apply.

A solid leader line from the symbol to the target is used for visible or near side locations, with a dashed leader line used for hidden or far side locations. The datum target symbol is divided horizontally into two halves. The top half contains the target point area if applicable; the bottom half contains a datum feature identifying letter and target number. Target numbers indicate the quantity required to define a primary, secondary, or tertiary datum. If a target point or target line is indicated, the top half is left blank. Datum targets and datum features may be combined to form the datum reference frame, see Fig. 11.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

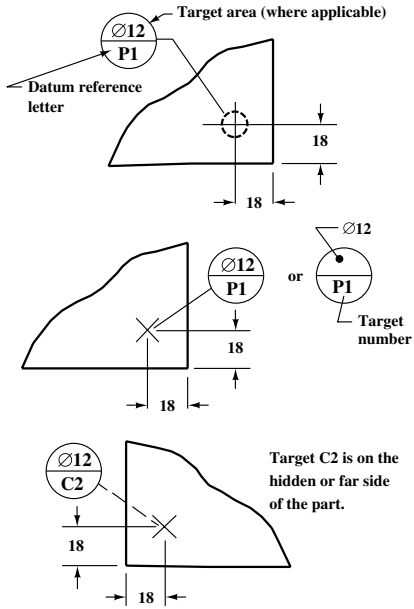


Fig. 11. Datum Target Symbols

Datum Target Points: A datum target point is indicated by the symbol "X," which is dimensionally located on a direct view of the surface. Where there is no direct view, the point location is dimensioned on multiple views.

Datum Target Lines: A datum target line is dimensionally located on an edge view of the surface using a phantom line on the direct view. Where there is no direct view, the location is dimensioned on multiple views. Where the length of the datum target line must be controlled, its length and location are dimensioned.

Datum Target Areas: Where it is determined that an area or areas of flat contact are necessary to ensure establishment of the datum, and where spherical or pointed pins would be inadequate, a target area of the desired shape is specified. Examples include the need to span holes, finishing irregularities, or rough surface conditions. The datum target area may be indicated with the "X" symbol as with a datum point, but the area of contact is specified in the upper half of the datum target symbol. Datum target areas may additionally be specified by defining controlling dimensions and drawing the contact area on the feature with section lines inside a phantom outline of the desired shape.

Positional Tolerance.—A positional tolerance defines a zone within which the center, axis, or center plane of a feature of size is permitted to vary from true (theoretically exact) position. Basic dimensions establish the true position from specified datum features and between interrelated features. A positional tolerance is indicated by the position symbol, a tolerance, and appropriate datum references placed in a feature control frame.

Modifiers: In certain geometric tolerances, modifiers in the form of additional symbols may be used to further refine the level of control. The use of the MMC and LMC modifiers

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

has been common practice for many years. Several new modifiers introduced with the 1994 US standard include free state, tangent plane and statistical tolerancing, see Fig. 12. New modifiers introduced in the 2009 standard include MMB, LMB, and RMB.

Free State	MMC and MMB	LMC and LMB	Tangent Plane	Projected Tolerance Zone	Unequally Disposed	Statistical Tolerance	Continuous Feature
Ⓕ	Ⓜ	Ⓛ	Ⓣ	Ⓟ	Ⓤ	ST	CF

Fig. 12. Tolerance Modifiers

Projected Tolerance Zone: Application of this concept is recommended where any variation in perpendicularity of the threaded or press-fit holes could cause fasteners such as screws, studs, or pins to interfere with mating parts. An interference with subsequent parts can occur even though the hole axes are inclined within allowable limits. This interference occurs because, without a projected tolerance zone, a positional tolerance is applied solely to the depth of threaded or press-fit holes. Unlike the floating fastener application involving clearance holes only, the attitude of a fixed fastener is restrained by the inclination of the produced hole into which it assembles.

With a projected tolerance zone equal to the thickness of the mating part, the inclinational error is accounted for in both parts. In other words, the projected zone is an extension of the tolerance zone begun inside the hole and projected out, in this case 14 mm, on the same axis within the specified tolerance of location. The minimum extent and direction of the projected tolerance zone is shown as a value in the feature control frame. The zone may be shown in a drawing view as a dimensioned value with a heavy chain line drawn closely adjacent to an extension of the center line of the hole, see Fig. 13.

It has been noted that the projected tolerance zone illustration shown here differs slightly from that shown in ASME Y14.5-2018. However, it is believed that the illustration shown here is a more realistic portrayal of the intent of the text in the standard.

Statistical Tolerance: The statistical tolerancing symbol is a modifier that may be used to indicate that a tolerance is controlled statistically as opposed to being controlled arithmetically. With arithmetic control, assembly tolerances are typically divided arithmetically among the individual components of the assembly. This division results in the assumption that assemblies based on "worst case" conditions would be guaranteed to fit because the worst case set of parts fits — so that anything better would fit as well. When this technique is restrictive, statistical tolerancing, via the symbol, may be specified in the feature control frame as a method of increasing tolerances for individual parts. This procedure may reduce manufacturing costs because its use changes the assumption that statistical process control may make a statistically significant quantity of parts fit, but not absolutely all. The technique should only be used when sound statistical methods are employed.

Tangent Plane: When it is desirable to control the surface of a feature by the contacting or high points of the surface, a tangent plane symbol is added as a modifier to the tolerance in the feature control frame, see Fig. 14.

Free State: The free state modifier symbol is used when the geometric tolerance applies to the feature in its "free state," or after removal of any forces used in the manufacturing process. With removal of forces, the part may distort due to gravity, flexibility, springback, or other release of internal stresses developed during fabrication. Typical applications include parts with extremely thin walls and non-rigid parts made of rubber or plastics. The modifier is placed in the tolerance portion of the feature control frame and follows any other modifier.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

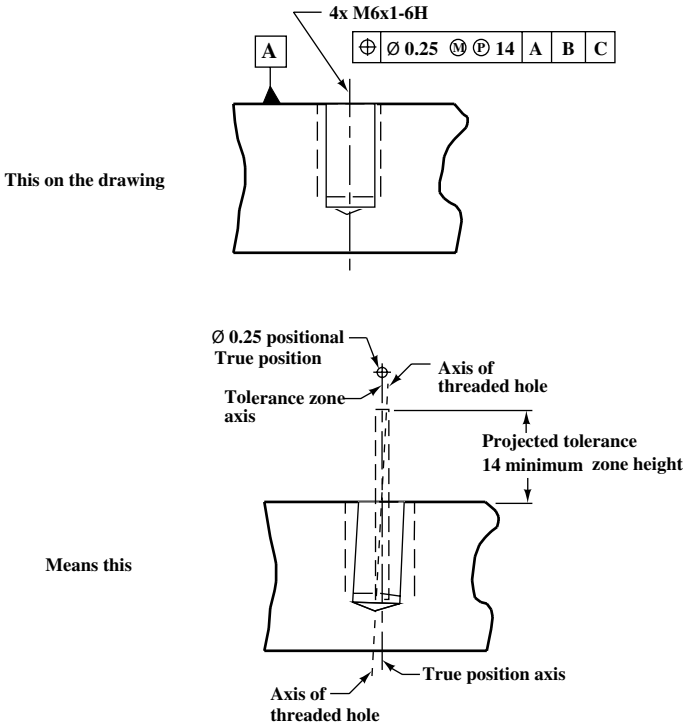


Fig. 13. Projected Tolerance Zone Application

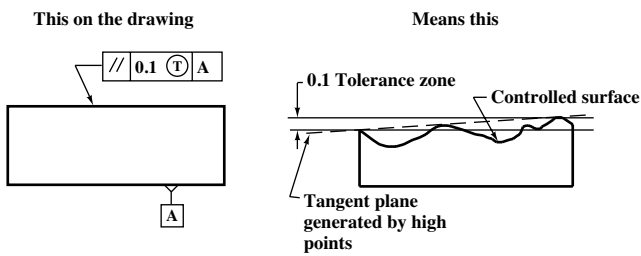


Fig. 14. Tangent Plane Modifier

The above examples are just a few of the numerous concepts and related symbols covered by ASME Y14.5-2018. Refer to the standard for a complete discussion with further examples of the application of geometric dimensioning and tolerancing principles.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GD&T and CAD Models.—ASME Y14.5-2018 and all earlier editions are usable on modern CAD systems. However, the primary concepts are still communicated visually among design, manufacturing and quality stakeholders via annotation applied to engineering drawings, be they on paper or depicted on a computer monitor. Effectively, there is no difference between specifications communicated manually on paper using a pencil and those applied to a drawing on a CAD system, the latter being for all practical purposes an electronic drawing board. As such, utilization of the tolerancing information still requires that a person read the specifications, interpret them and manually apply the information in manufacturing and/or quality systems. That manual process has begun to change with the introduction of ANSI/ASME Y14.41-2012, Digital Production Definition Data Practices, and its international version ISO 16792:2006, Digital Production Definition Data Practices.

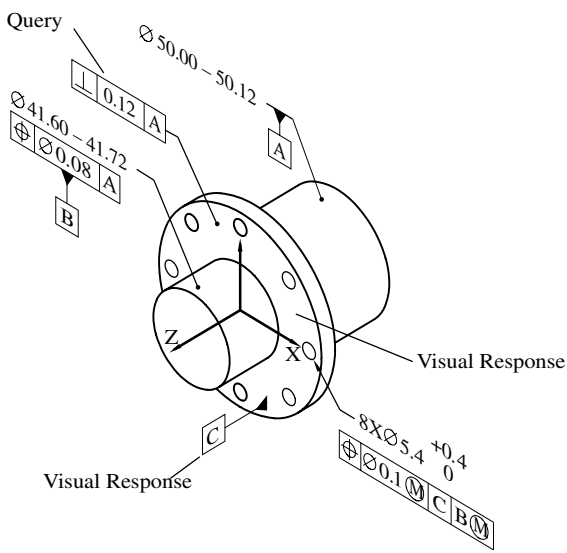


Fig. 15. Visual Response to a Tolerance Query on a 3D CAD System Compliant with ASME Y14.41-2012

These standards define use of ASME GD&T practices and ISO GD&T practices, respectively, in a digital environment where specifications are embedded directly into the product definition data set as part of product lifecycle management (PLM). Embedded GD&T is generally called "eGD&T" (electronic geometric dimensioning & tolerancing). Once incorporated into the data set, the specifications can be selectively queried for visual display as needed on a computer screen or an engineering drawing, see Fig. 15. Perhaps more importantly, the embedded tolerancing information can be directly accessed by software for tolerance analysis, process planning, or any other applications designed to utilize the geometric and tolerancing information as part of product lifecycle management. As these standards are adopted by CAD vendors and fully implemented, their promise is for a more expedient, more accurate design and analysis process.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Both standards define how current GD&T concepts are applied to digital models. Both standards also explain where rules have changed to account for differing requirements between 2D-based annotation and 3D annotations.

Digital Product Definition Data Practices Terms.—The following terms are defined in both ANSI/ASME Y14.41 and ISO 16792. In ISO 16792, rules are modified to recognize ISO drawing practices where those practices differ from predominately US practice as illustrated in ANSI/ASME Y14.41-2012. Rules in both standards cover not only data sets with models only, but also those data sets with models and drawings. See the respective standards for complete rules and definitions.

Annotation: Dimensions, tolerances, notes, text, or symbols visible without any manual or external manipulation.

Attribute: A dimension, tolerance, note, text, or symbol required to complete the product definition or feature of the product that is not visible but available upon interrogating the model.

Design Model: The portion of the data set that contains model and supplemental geometry.

Geometric Element: A graphic entity used in a data set. For example: point, line, plane, surface, solid, model coordinate system or crosshatching.

Management Data: The data required for the release, control, and storage of product definition data as well as other relevant engineering data.

Model: A combination of design model, annotation and attributes that describes a product, see Fig. 16.

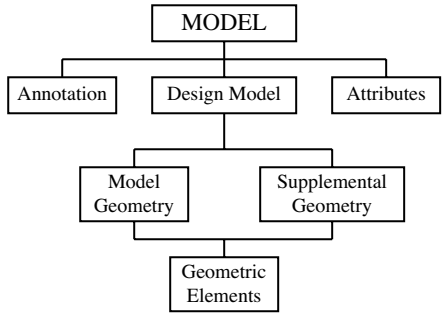


Fig. 16. Content of a Digital Model (ANSI/ASME Y14.41-2012)

Model Value: The numerical value derived by interrogating the model that quantifies the form and spatial relationships of the geometry composing a design model or assembly of models to the precision (number of decimal places) of the computer system.

Model Geometry: Geometric elements in product definition data which represent a designed product.

Product Definition Data: Data elements required to completely define a product.

Product Definition Data Set: A collection of one or more computer files that discloses (directly or by reference), by means of graphic or textual presentations, or combinations of both, the physical and functional requirements of an item, see Fig. 17.

Query: A means of interrogating a digital element or the relationship between digital elements, see Fig. 17.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

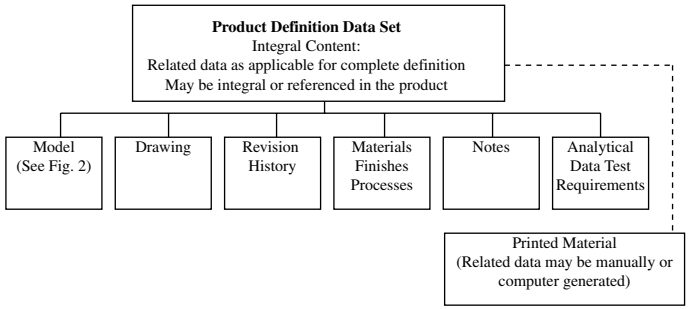


Fig. 17. Product Definition Data Set (ANSI/ASME Y14.41-2012)

Supplemental Geometry: Geometric elements included in product definition data to communicate design requirements but not intended to represent a portion of the manufactured product.

Checking Designs and Drawings

In order for production designs to be maintained at the highest level of consistency, a set of suggestions for checking models and drawings is provided below. The suggestions first concentrate on a review of the design parameters in a global sense, then on a detailed review of the drawings and/or model itself. It is recommended that these suggestions be followed in parts based on responsibility, by engineers, checkers, designers, detailers and any others involved in producing, reviewing and approving engineering models and drawings.

Design Parameters.—*Inspecting a New Design:* When a new design is involved, first carefully inspect the general design and its parts in relationship to the assemblies as a whole, ascertaining that parts function correctly and assemble under all material conditions. Additionally, determine if the parts have the proper relative proportions and that the general design satisfies constraints for strength, rigidity, bearing areas, appearance, manufacturability, ergonomics of assembly, direction of motion, no unnecessary interferences, etc. Generate a digital simulation physical rapid prototype if necessary. If the design appears to be unsatisfactory in any aspect, or improvements appear to be possible, notify the person responsible for that aspect of the design.

Checking for Strength: Physically inspect the design for strength, rigidity, and appearance. Compare it with other designs used in similar service whenever possible, giving preference to the known working designs in such a comparison, unless the known designs are examples of unsatisfactory parts. If there is any question, perform applicable analysis on the model or, if required, manually compute the stresses and deformations. If the new design is for a larger version of an existing device, ascertain that any standard parts necessarily increased in size will continue to be sufficiently strong to bear increased service loads.

Materials Specified: For the design, consider the material specification in relationship to the various manufacturing process options available, such as molding, forging, a weldment, or other method with which to form the rough shape. Then consider the machining operations to see whether changes in form or design will reduce the number of operations or reduce the machining cost. Parts should be designed with reference to the economical use of material, and whenever possible, utilize standard stock sizes and material readily obtainable from local sources. In the case of alloy steel, special bronze, and similar or exotic materials, confirm that the material can be obtained in the required size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Checking Casting Designs: In checking castings, the form of the pattern is studied, the methods of molding, the method of supporting and venting the cores, and the effect of draft and rough molding on clearances. Undue metal thickness should be avoided, as well as extreme differences between thick and thin sections in the same casting.

All metal thicknesses should be specified, so that appropriate chaplets can be selected for supporting cores. Ample fillets and rounds should be provided and properly dimensioned directly or by note. Cores should be designed so that they can be secured in the mold without crushing or causing interference.

Allowances should be made for swelling, shrinkage, or misalignment of cores to ensure adequate machineability. Material should be added to surfaces destined to be finished.

On large castings, sufficient extra material should be provided for finishing to permit "clean up" to net size in case of warpage.

Checking Drawings.—The following are some rules-of-thumb and general guidelines to keep in mind when creating and reviewing engineering drawings and data models.

Checking the Technique Used in Making the Drawing: Inspect the drawing to see that all regular, auxiliary and section views are made in such a way as to illustrate the most descriptive views of the form of the piece and its relationship to other parts. Selection of type and quantity of views on a drawing serve as both a carrier of the dimensional values and to represent accurately the visual nature of the part. Ultimately, drawings must communicate design intent, both numerically and visually.

Checking Dimensions in General: In general, all dimensions should be checked for correctness. If manually drawn, dimensions should also be scaled to determine if the drawing is to scale. Where any dimension is "not-to-scale," it is indicated by underlining the offending dimension. This is the standard technique for indicating not-to-scale. While most CAD systems automatically indicate not-to-scale dimensions, some do not. Not-to-scale dimensions are problematic on CAD drawings and models as they are indicative of dimension values not matching the geometry. In the case of a CAD drawing dimension being not-to-scale, it too should be underlined. However, this may be a serious concern, and may demand immediate correction. More and more, CAD geometry drives downstream applications such as numerical control or tolerance analysis. Hence, errors in CAD geometry cannot be tolerated if accurate downstream results are expected.

ASME and ISO Drawing Checklists.—The following checklists represent questions based on industry practice and standards for engineering drawings and, unless noted, apply to both inch and metric drawings and models and both ASME Y14.5 and ISO methodology.

Model Checklist: Are features built within dimensional limits and to appropriate material conditions (MMC, LMC, nominal)?

Are features built to sufficient numerical accuracy?

Are fillets and rounds added to all non-finished corners of castings and forgings?

On as-cast models, is machining allowance added to surfaces destined to be finished?

Has allowance for wrench clearance been built into locations of bolts and other fasteners requiring tools?

Drawing Checklist: Are all dimensions indicated only once to avoid potentially misinterpreted redundant dimensioning?

Are all auxiliary and section views labeled?

Are general notes added to address default conditions such as fillets and rounds, numerical significance, default tolerances?

Are all finish marks indicated where appropriate?

Are clearance hole diameters clearly specified to avoid potential look-up errors?

Are there sufficient views so that no assumptions need be made about any feature or dimension?

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If following US practice, are all dimensions, notes and other text readable from the bottom of the drawing?

If following ISO practice, is all dimensional text aligned with each dimension on the drawing?

When dimensioning in metric, are preceding 0s shown for values less than 1, and trailing 0s not shown for integers? (e.g. 0.11 and 10)

When heat treatment is required, the heat treatment should be specified.

When dimension in inches, are preceding 0s not shown for values less than 1, and trailing 0s added for consistent significant digits? (e.g. 11 and 10.00)

If dimensioning symbols are used, such as depth, diameter, radius, etc., are the symbols placed before the dimensional value?

Are quantities specified for all dimensions or features occurring in multiple locations (via 2X or TWO TIMES)?

Are threaded holes specified by tap drill and thread specifications to avoid potential look-up errors?

Are all occurrences of dimensional and non-dimensional text to consistent size or per company policy?

Are dimensions to hidden lines and those directly to object lines minimized unless impossible to avoid?

Are dimensions shown in a view depicting the true shape projection of the feature?

Do all dimensions account for tolerance, either directly or indirectly, via note or block tolerance?

Does the selection of paper size match the complexity of the part to avoid over-crowding via a size too small or wasted space via a size too large?

Are dimensions shown in a form that minimizes unnecessary calculations by readers of the drawing?

Are views aligned left-to-right and bottom-to-top, and arranged properly for 3rd angle projection (or 1st angle projection)?

Is the primary view the most descriptive view possible?

Is chain dimensioning minimized to avoid "stacking" of tolerances?

Are holes and other round features and parts located by their centers?

Are witness lines (extension lines) used with dimensions rather than dimensioning directly to features?

Is the drawing title correct and the drawing number or file name in the correct format?

Arrangement of Views.—A drawing may show one or more views of an object arranged according to a definite plan. In the United States, the general practice is to place the top view above the front view, and the end view next to whatever end it represents. For example, if a view of the left-hand end is considered important, the end view is placed to the left of the front view. If a right-hand view is also necessary, it is placed to the right of the front view. If a bottom view is needed, it is placed below the front view.

The view obtained by looking at an object from above is a *plan* view. The view obtained by looking at the object from its side and showing a vertical face is an elevation, which may be either a *front elevation* or an *end elevation* (also known as side elevation).

Third-angle and First-angle Projection: If the views are placed with the plan above the front elevation, the right-hand end view to the right and the left-hand end view (when drawn) to the left, this is known as *third-angle projection*. In ISO practice, it is the custom to use what is known as *first-angle projection*. With this method, the front elevation is placed at the top, the plan view at the bottom, the right-hand end view at the left, and the left-hand end view at the right. The first-angle projection is also generally employed in architectural and structural work, as in drawings of bridges, etc. See Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b on page 626.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ALLOWANCES AND TOLERANCES FOR FITS

Limits and Fits

Fits between cylindrical parts, i.e., cylindrical fits, govern the proper assembly and performance of many mechanisms. Clearance fits permit relative freedom of motion between a shaft and a hole—axially, radially, or both. Interference fits secure a certain amount of tightness between parts, whether these are meant to remain permanently assembled or to be taken apart from time to time. Or again, two parts may be required to fit together snugly—without apparent tightness or looseness. The designer's problem is to specify these different types of fits in such a way that the shop can produce them. Establishing the specifications requires the adoption of two manufacturing limits for the hole and two for the shaft, and, hence, the adoption of a manufacturing tolerance on each part.

In selecting and specifying limits and fits for various applications, it is essential in the interests of interchangeable manufacturing that 1) standard definitions of terms relating to limits and fits be used; 2) preferred basic sizes be selected wherever possible to reduce material and tooling costs; 3) limits be based upon a series of preferred tolerances and allowances; and 4) a uniform system of applying tolerances (preferably unilateral) be used. These principles have been incorporated in both the American and British standards for limits and fits. Information about these standards is given beginning on page 646.

Basic Size.—The basic size of a screw thread or machine part is the theoretical or nominal standard size from which variations are made. For example, a shaft may have a *basic* diameter of 2 inches, but a maximum variation of minus 0.010 inch may be permitted. The minimum hole should be of basic size wherever the use of standard tools represents the greatest economy. The maximum shaft should be of basic size wherever the use of standard purchased material, without further machining, represents the greatest economy, even though special tools are required to machine the mating part.

Tolerances.—Tolerance is the amount of variation permitted on dimensions or surfaces of machine parts. The tolerance is equal to the difference between the maximum and minimum limits of any specified dimension. For example, if the maximum limit for the diameter of a shaft is 2.000 inches and its minimum limit 1.990 inches, the tolerance for this diameter is 0.010 inch. The extent of these tolerances is established by determining the maximum and minimum clearances required on operating surfaces. As applied to the fitting of machine parts, the word tolerance means the amount that duplicate parts are allowed to vary in size in connection with manufacturing operations, owing to unavoidable imperfections of workmanship. Tolerance may also be defined as the amount that duplicate parts are permitted to vary in size to secure sufficient accuracy without unnecessary refinement. The terms "tolerance" and "allowance" are often used interchangeably, but, according to common usage, *allowance* is a difference in dimensions prescribed to secure various classes of fits between different parts.

For information on factors involved in and various methods for calculating tolerances, see *Tolerance Analysis and Assignment* on page 684.

Unilateral and Bilateral Tolerances.—The term "unilateral tolerance" means that the total tolerance, as related to a basic dimension, is in *one* direction only. For example, if the basic dimension were 1 inch and the tolerance were expressed as 1.000 – 0.002, or as 1.000 + 0.002, these would be unilateral tolerances because the total tolerance in each is in one direction. On the contrary, if the tolerance were divided, so as to be partly plus and partly minus, it would be classed as "bilateral."

Thus, $1.000\ ^{+0.001}_{-0.001}$

is an example of bilateral tolerance, because the total tolerance of 0.002 is given in two directions—plus and minus.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When unilateral tolerances are used, one of the following three methods should be used to express them:

1) Specify, limiting dimensions only as
Diameter of hole: 2.250, 2.252
Diameter of shaft: 2.249, 2.247

2) One limiting size may be specified with its tolerances as
Diameter of hole: 2.250 + 0.002, –0.000
Diameter of shaft: 2.249 + 0.000, –0.002

3) The nominal size may be specified for both parts, with a notation showing both allowance and tolerance, as
Diameter of hole: $2\frac{1}{4}$ + 0.002, – 0.000
Diameter of shaft: $2\frac{1}{4}$ – 0.001, – 0.003

Bilateral tolerances should be specified as such, usually with plus and minus tolerances of equal amount. An example of the expression of bilateral tolerances is

$$2 \pm 0.001 \quad \text{or} \quad 2\ ^{+0.001}_{-0.001}$$

Application of Tolerances.—According to common practice, tolerances are applied in such a way as to show the permissible amount of dimensional variation in the direction that is less dangerous. When a variation in either direction is equally dangerous, a bilateral tolerance should be given. When a variation in one direction is more dangerous than a variation in another, a unilateral tolerance should be given in the less dangerous direction.

For nonmating surfaces, or atmospheric fits, the tolerances may be bilateral or unilateral, depending entirely upon the nature of the variations that develop in manufacture. On mating surfaces, with few exceptions, the tolerances should be unilateral.

Where tolerances are required on the distances between holes, usually they should be bilateral, as variation in either direction is normally equally dangerous. The variation in the distance between shafts carrying gears, however, should always be unilateral and plus; otherwise, the gears might run too tight. A slight increase in the backlash between gears is seldom of much importance.

One exception to the use of unilateral tolerances on mating surfaces occurs when tapers are involved; either bilateral or unilateral tolerances may then prove advisable, depending upon conditions. These tolerances should be determined in the same manner as the tolerances on the distances between holes. When a variation either in or out of the position of the mating taper surfaces is equally dangerous, the tolerances should be bilateral. When a variation in one direction is of less danger than a variation in the opposite direction, the tolerance should be unilateral and in the less dangerous direction.

Locating Tolerance Dimensions.—Only one dimension in the same straight line can be controlled within fixed limits. That dimension is the distance between the cutting surface of the tool and the locating or registering surface of the part being machined. Therefore, it is incorrect to locate any point or surface with tolerances from more than one point in the same straight line.

Every part of a mechanism must be located in each plane. Every operating part must be located with proper operating allowances. After such requirements of location are met, all other surfaces should have liberal clearances. Dimensions should be given between those points or surfaces that it is essential to hold in a specific relation to each other. This restriction applies particularly to those surfaces in each plane that control the location of other component parts. Many dimensions are relatively unimportant in this respect. It is good practice to establish a common locating point in each plane and give, as far as possible, all such dimensions from these common locating points. The locating points on the drawing, the locating or registering points used for machining the surfaces and the locating points for measuring should all be identical.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The initial dimensions placed on component drawings should be the exact dimensions that would be used if it were possible to work without tolerances. Tolerances should be given in that direction in which variations will cause the least harm or danger. When a variation in either direction is equally dangerous, the tolerances should be of equal amount in both directions, or bilateral. The initial clearance, or allowance, between operating parts should be as small as the operation of the mechanism will permit. The maximum clearance should be as great as the proper functioning of the mechanism will permit.

Direction of Tolerances on Gages.—The extreme sizes for all plain limit gages shall not exceed the extreme limits of the part to be gaged. All variations in the gages, whatever their cause or purpose, shall bring these gages within these extreme limits.

The data for gage tolerances on page 673 cover gages to inspect workpieces held to tolerances in the American National Standard ANSI B4.4M-1981 (Withdrawn).

Allowance for Forced Fits.—The allowance per inch of diameter usually ranges from 0.001 inch to 0.0025 inch (0.0254-0.0635 mm), 0.0015 inch (0.0381 mm) being a fair average. Ordinarily the allowance per inch decreases as the diameter increases; thus the total allowance for a diameter of 2 inches (50.8 mm) might be 0.004 inch (0.102 mm), whereas for a diameter of 8 inches (203.2 mm) the total allowance might not be over 0.009 or 0.010 inch (0.23 or 0.25 mm). The parts to be assembled by forced fits are usually made cylindrical, although sometimes they are slightly tapered. Advantages of the taper form are: the possibility of abrasion of the fitted surfaces is reduced; less pressure is required in assembling; and parts are more readily separated when renewal is required. On the other hand, the taper fit is less reliable because, if it loosens, the entire fit is free with but little axial movement. Some lubricant, such as white lead and lard oil mixed to the consistency of paint, should be applied to the pin and bore before assembling, to reduce the tendency toward abrasion.

Pressure for Forced Fits.—The pressure required for assembling cylindrical parts depends not only upon the allowance for the fit, but also upon the area of the fitted surfaces, the pressure increasing in proportion to the distance that the inner member is forced in. The approximate ultimate pressure in tons can be determined by the use of the following formula in conjunction with the accompanying table of *Pressure Factors for Forced Fits*. Assuming that A = area of surface in contact in "fit"; a = total allowance in inches; P = ultimate pressure required, in tons; F = pressure factor based upon assumption that the diameter of the hub is twice the diameter of the bore, that the shaft is of machine steel, and that the hub is of cast iron:

$$P = \frac{A \times a \times F}{2}$$

Pressure Factors for Forced Fits

Diameter, Inches	Pressure Factor	Diameter, Inches	Pressure Factor	Diameter, Inches	Pressure Factor	Diameter, Inches	Pressure Factor	Diameter, Inches	Pressure Factor
1	500	3½	132	6	75	9	48.7	14	30.5
1¼	395	3¾	123	6¼	72	9½	46.0	14½	29.4
1½	325	4	115	6½	69	10	43.5	15	28.3
1¾	276	4¼	108	6¾	66	10½	41.3	15½	27.4
2	240	4½	101	7	64	11	39.3	16	26.5
2¼	212	4¾	96	7¼	61	11½	37.5	16½	25.6
2½	189	5	91	7½	59	12	35.9	17	24.8
2¾	171	5¼	86	7¾	57	12½	34.4	17½	24.1
3	156	5½	82	8	55	13	33.0	18	23.4
3¼	143	5¾	78	8½	52	13½	31.7	…	…

Allowance for Given Pressure.—By transposing the preceding formula, the approximate allowance for a required ultimate tonnage can be determined. Thus, $a = \frac{2P}{AF}$. The average ultimate pressure in tons commonly used ranges from 7 to 10 times the diameter in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Expansion Fits.—In assembling certain classes of work requiring a very tight fit, the inner member is contracted by sub-zero cooling to permit insertion into the outer member and a tight fit is obtained as the temperature rises and the inner part expands. To obtain the sub-zero temperature, solid carbon dioxide or "dry ice" has been used, but its temperature of about –109°F (–78°C) below zero will not contract some parts sufficiently to permit insertion in holes or recesses. Greater contraction may be obtained by using high purity liquid nitrogen which has a temperature of about –320°F (–196°C) below zero. During a temperature reduction from 75° F to –321°F (220°C difference), the shrinkage per inch of diameter varies from about 0.002 to 0.003 inch for steel; 0.0042 inch for aluminum alloys; 0.0046 inch for magnesium alloys; 0.0033 inch for copper alloys; 0.0023 inch for monel metal; and 0.0017 inch for cast iron (not alloyed). The cooling equipment may vary from an insulated bucket to a special automatic unit, depending upon the kind and quantity of work. One type of unit is so arranged that parts are precooled by vapors from the liquid nitrogen before immersion. With another type, cooling is entirely by the vapor method.

Shrinkage Fits.—General practice seems to favor a smaller allowance for shrinkage fits than for forced fits, although in many shops the allowances are practically the same for each, and, for some classes of work, shrinkage allowances exceed those for forced fits. The shrinkage allowance also varies to a great extent with the form and construction of the part that has to be shrunk into place. The thickness or amount of metal around the hole is the most important factor. The way in which the metal is distributed also has an influence on the results. Shrinkage allowances for locomotive driving wheel tires adopted by the American Railway Master Mechanics Association are as follows:

Center diameter, inches	38	44	50	56	62	66
Allowances, inches	0.040	0.047	0.053	0.060	0.066	0.070

Whether parts are to be assembled by forced or shrinkage fits depends upon conditions. For example, to press a tire over its wheel center, without heating, would ordinarily be a rather difficult job. On the other hand, pins, etc., are easily and quickly forced into place with a hydraulic press, and there is the additional advantage of knowing the exact pressure required in assembling, whereas there is more or less uncertainty connected with a shrinkage fit, unless the stresses are calculated. Tests to determine the difference in the quality of shrinkage and forced fits showed that the resistance of a shrinkage fit to slippage for an axial pull was 3.66 times greater than that of a forced fit, and, in rotation or torsion, 3.2 times greater. In each comparative test, dimensions and allowances were equal.

Allowances for Shrinkage Fits.—The most important point to consider when calculating shrinkage fits is the stress in the hub at the bore, which depends chiefly upon the shrinkage allowance. If the allowance is excessive, the elastic limit of the material will be exceeded, and permanent set will occur, or, in extreme conditions, the ultimate strength of the metal will be exceeded and the hub will burst. The intensity of the grip of the fit and the resistance to slippage depend mainly upon the thickness of the hub; the greater the thickness, the stronger the grip, and *vice versa*. Assuming the modulus of elasticity for steel to be 30,000,000 (206.8×10^{-6} MPa) and for cast iron 15,000,000 (103.4×10^{-6} MPa), the shrinkage allowance per inch (mm) of nominal diameter can be determined by the following formula, in which A = allowance per inch (mm) of diameter; T = true tangential tensile stress at inner surface of outer member, psi (MPa); C = factor taken from one of the accompanying Table 1, Table 2, and Table 3.

For a cast-iron hub and steel shaft:

$$\text{US} \quad A = \frac{T(2+C)}{30{,}000{,}000} \qquad (1a) \qquad \textbf{metric} \quad \boldsymbol{A = 25.4\frac{T(2+C)}{206.843 \times 10^{9}}} \qquad (1b)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When both hub and shaft are of steel:

$$\text{US} \quad A = \frac{T(1+C)}{30{,}000{,}000} \qquad (2a) \qquad \textbf{metric} \quad \boldsymbol{A = 25.4\frac{T(1+C)}{206.843 \times 10^9}} \qquad (2b)$$

If the shaft is solid, the factor C is taken from Table 1; if it is hollow and the hub is of steel, factor C is taken from Table 2; if it is hollow and the hub is of cast iron, the factor is taken from Table 3.

Table 1. Factors for Calculating Shrinkage Fit Allowances for Steel Shafts and Steel or Cast-Iron Hubs

Ratio of Diameters $\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	Steel Hub	Cast-iron Hub	Ratio of Diameters $\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	Steel Hub	Cast-iron Hub
	C			C	
1.5	0.227	0.234	2.8	0.410	0.432
1.6	0.255	0.263	3.0	0.421	0.444
1.8	0.299	0.311	3.2	0.430	0.455
2.0	0.333	0.348	3.4	0.438	0.463
2.2	0.359	0.377	3.6	0.444	0.471
2.4	0.380	0.399	3.8	0.450	0.477
2.6	0.397	0.417	4.0	0.455	0.482

Values of factor C for solid steel shafts of nominal diameter D_1, and hubs of steel or cast iron of nominal external and internal diameters D_2 and D_1, respectively.

Example 1: A steel crank web 375 mm outside diameter is to be shrunk on a 250 mm solid steel shaft. Required is the allowance per mm of shaft diameter to produce a maximum tensile stress in the crank of 170 MPa, assuming the stresses in the crank to be equivalent to those in a ring of the diameter given.

The ratio of the external to the internal diameters equals 375 ÷ 250 = 1.5; T = 170 MPa; from Table 1, C = 0.227. Substituting in Formula (2b):

$$A = 25.4\frac{170 \times (1 + 0.227)}{206843} = 0.026 \text{ mm}$$

Example 2: Find the allowance per mm of diameter for a 250 mm shaft having a 125 mm axial through hole, other conditions being the same as in Example 1.

The ratio of external to internal diameters of the hub equals 375 ÷ 250 = 1.5, as before, and the ratio of external to internal diameters of the shaft equals 250 ÷ 125 = 2. From Table 2, we find that factor C = 0.455; T = 170 MPa. Substituting these values in Formula (2b):

$$A = 25.4\frac{170(1 + 0.455)}{206843} = 0.030 \text{ mm}$$

The allowance is increased, as compared with Example 1, because the hollow shaft is more compressible.

Example 3: If the crank web in Example 1 is of cast iron and 28 MPa is the maximum tensile stress in the hub, what is the allowance per mm of diameter?

$$\frac{D_2}{D_1} = 1.5 \qquad T = 28$$

In Table 1, we find that C = 0.234. Substituting in Formula (1b), for cast-iron hubs, A = 0.0076 mm, which, owing to the lower tensile strength of cast iron, is about one-third the shrinkage allowance in Example 1, although the stress is two-thirds of the elastic limit.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Factors for Calculating Shrinkage Fit Allowances for Hollow Steel Shafts and Steel Hubs

$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]	$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]	$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]
1.5	2.0	0.455	2.4	2.0	0.760	3.4	2.0	0.876
	2.5	0.357		2.5	0.597		2.5	0.689
	3.0	0.313		3.0	0.523		3.0	0.602
	3.5	0.288		3.5	0.481		3.5	0.555
1.6	2.0	0.509	2.6	2.0	0.793	3.6	2.0	0.888
	2.5	0.400		2.5	0.624		2.5	0.698
	3.0	0.350		3.0	0.546		3.0	0.611
	3.5	0.322		3.5	0.502		3.5	0.562
1.8	2.0	0.599	2.8	2.0	0.820	3.8	2.0	0.900
	2.5	0.471		2.5	0.645		2.5	0.707
	3.0	0.412		3.0	0.564		3.0	0.619
	3.5	0.379		3.5	0.519		3.5	0.570
2.0	2.0	0.667	3.0	2.0	0.842	4.0	2.0	0.909
	2.5	0.524		2.5	0.662		2.5	0.715
	3.0	0.459		3.0	0.580		3.0	0.625
	3.5	0.422		3.5	0.533		3.5	0.576
2.2	2.0	0.718	3.2	2.0	0.860	…	…	…
	2.5	0.565		2.5	0.676		…	…
	3.0	0.494		3.0	0.591		…	…
	3.5	0.455		3.5	0.544		…	…

[a] Values of factor C for hollow steel shafts of external and internal diameters D_1 and D_0, respectively, and steel hubs of nominal external diameter D_2.

Table 3. Factors for Calculating Shrinkage Fit Allowances for Hollow Steel Shafts and Cast-Iron Hubs

$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]	$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]	$\frac{D_2}{D_1}$	$\frac{D_1}{D_0}$	C[a]
1.5	2.0	0.468	2.4	2.0	0.798	3.4	2.0	0.926
	2.5	0.368		2.5	0.628		2.5	0.728
	3.0	0.322		3.0	0.549		3.0	0.637
	3.5	0.296		3.5	0.506		3.5	0.587
1.6	2.0	0.527	2.6	2.0	0.834	3.6	2.0	0.941
	2.5	0.414		2.5	0.656		2.5	0.740
	3.0	0.362		3.0	0.574		3.0	0.647
	3.5	0.333		3.5	0.528		3.5	0.596
1.8	2.0	0.621	2.8	2.0	0.864	3.8	2.0	0.953
	2.5	0.488		2.5	0.679		2.5	0.749
	3.0	0.427		3.0	0.594		3.0	0.656
	3.5	0.393		3.5	0.547		3.5	0.603
2.0	2.0	0.696	3.0	2.0	0.888	4.0	2.0	0.964
	2.5	0.547		2.5	0.698		2.5	0.758
	3.0	0.479		3.0	0.611		3.0	0.663
	3.5	0.441		3.5	0.562		3.5	0.610
2.2	2.0	0.753	3.2	2.0	0.909	…	…	…
	2.5	0.592		2.5	0.715		…	…
	3.0	0.518		3.0	0.625		…	…
	3.5	0.477		3.5	0.576		…	…

[a] Values of factor C for hollow steel shafts and cast-iron hubs. Notation as in Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Temperatures for Shrinkage Fits.—The temperature to which the outer member in a shrinkage fit should be heated for clearance in assembling the parts depends on the total expansion required and on the coefficient α of linear expansion of the metal (i.e., the increase in length of any section of the metal in any direction for an increase in temperature of 1 degree F). The total expansion in diameter that is required consists of the total allowance for shrinkage and an added amount for clearance. The value of the coefficient α is, for nickel-steel, 0.000007; for steel in general, 0.0000065; for cast iron, 0.0000062. As an example, take an outer member of steel to be expanded 0.005 inch per inch of internal diameter, 0.001 being the shrinkage allowance and the remainder for clearance. Then

$$\alpha \times t^\circ = 0.005$$

$$t = \frac{0.005}{0.0000065} = 769 \text{ degrees F}$$

The value t is the number of degrees F that the temperature of the member must be raised above that of the room temperature.

ANSI/ASME Standard Limits and Fits

This American National Standard for Preferred Limits and Fits for Cylindrical Parts, ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print), presents definitions of terms applying to fits between plain (non threaded) cylindrical parts and makes recommendations on preferred sizes, allowances, tolerances, and fits for use wherever they are applicable. As of 2009, this standard was in accord with the recommendations of American-British-Canadian (ABC) conferences up to a diameter of 20 inches, with experimental work thereafter carried on with the objective of reaching agreement in the range above 20 inches. The recommendations in the standard are presented for guidance and for use where they might serve to improve and simplify products, practices, and facilities. They have practical application for a wide range of products.

Note: At the time of this publication, even though ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 was no longer officially in print, it was still available for reference and not yet revised or superseded.

Factors Affecting Selection of Fits.—Many factors, such as length of engagement, bearing load, speed, lubrication, temperature, humidity, and materials must be taken into consideration in the selection of fits for a particular application, and modifications in the ANSI/ASME recommendations may be required to satisfy extreme conditions. Subsequent adjustments may also be found desirable as a result of experience in a particular application to suit critical functional requirements or to permit optimum manufacturing economy.

Definitions.—The following terms are defined in this standard:

Nominal Size: The nominal size is the designation used for the purpose of general identification.

Dimension: A dimension is a geometrical characteristic such as diameter, length, angle, or center distance.

Size: Size is a designation of magnitude. When a value is assigned to a dimension, it is referred to as the size of that dimension. (It is recognized that the words "dimension" and "size" are both used at times to convey the meaning of magnitude.)

Allowance: An allowance is a prescribed difference between the maximum material limits of mating parts. (See definition of *Fit*). It is a minimum clearance (positive allowance) or maximum interference (negative allowance) between such parts.

Tolerance: A tolerance is the total permissible variation of a size. The tolerance is the difference between the limits of size.

Basic Size: The basic size is that size from which the limits of size are derived by the application of allowances and tolerances.

Design Size: The design size is the basic size with allowance applied, from which the limits of size are derived by the application of tolerances. Where there is no allowance, the design size is the same as the basic size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Actual Size: An actual size is a measured size.

Limits of Size: The limits of size are the applicable maximum and minimum sizes.

Maximum Material Limit: A maximum material limit is that limit of size that provides the maximum amount of material for the part. Normally it is the maximum limit of size of an external dimension or the minimum limit of size of an internal dimension.*

Minimum Material Limit: A minimum material limit is that limit of size that provides the minimum amount of material for the part. Normally it is the minimum limit of size of an external dimension or the maximum limit of size of an internal dimension.*

Tolerance Limit: A tolerance limit is the variation, positive or negative, by which a size is permitted to depart from the design size.

Unilateral Tolerance: A unilateral tolerance is a tolerance in which variation is permitted in only one direction from the design size.

Bilateral Tolerance: A bilateral tolerance is a tolerance in which variation is permitted in both directions from the design size.

Unilateral Tolerance System: A design plan that uses only unilateral tolerances is known as a Unilateral Tolerance System.

Bilateral Tolerance System: A design plan that uses only bilateral tolerances is known as a Bilateral Tolerance System.

Fits.—*Fit:* Fit is the general term used to signify the range of tightness that may result from the application of a specific combination of allowances and tolerances in the design of mating parts.

Actual Fit: The actual fit between two mating parts is the relation existing between them with respect to the amount of clearance or interference that is present when they are assembled. (Fits are of three general types: clearance, transition, and interference.)

Clearance Fit: A clearance fit is one having limits of size so specified that a clearance always results when mating parts are assembled.

Interference Fit: An interference fit is one having limits of size so specified that an interference always results when mating parts are assembled.

Transition Fit: A transition fit is one having limits of size so specified that either a clearance or an interference may result when mating parts are assembled.

Basic Hole System: A basic hole system is a system of fits in which the design size of the hole is the basic size and the allowance, if any, is applied to the shaft.

Basic Shaft System: A basic shaft system is a system of fits in which the design size of the shaft is the basic size and the allowance, if any, is applied to the hole.

Preferred Basic Sizes.—In specifying fits, the basic size of mating parts shall be chosen from the decimal series or the fractional series in Table 4.

Preferred Series for Tolerances and Allowances.—All fundamental tolerances and allowances of all shafts and holes have been taken from the series given in Table 5.

Standard Tolerances.—The series of standard tolerances shown in Table 6 are so arranged that for any one grade they represent approximately similar production difficulties throughout the range of sizes. This table provides a suitable range from which appropriate tolerances for holes and shafts can be selected and enables standard gages to be used. The tolerances shown in Table 6 have been used in the succeeding tables for different classes of fits.

Table 7 graphically illustrates the range of tolerance grades that various machining processes may produce under normal conditions.

* An example of exceptions: an exterior corner radius where the maximum radius is the minimum material limit and the minimum radius is the maximum material limit.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Preferred Basic Sizes *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Decimal[a]			Fractional[a]					
0.010	2.00	8.50	1/64	0.015625	2 1/4	2.2500	9 1/2	9.5000
0.012	2.20	9.00	1/32	0.03125	2 1/2	2.5000	10	10.0000
0.016	2.40	9.50	1/16	0.0625	2 3/4	2.7500	10 1/2	10.5000
0.020	2.60	10.00	3/32	0.09375	3	3.0000	11	11.0000
0.025	2.80	10.50	1/8	0.1250	3 1/4	3.2500	11 1/2	11.5000
0.032	3.00	11.00	5/32	0.15625	3 1/2	3.5000	12	12.0000
0.040	3.20	11.50	3/16	0.1875	3 3/4	3.7500	12 1/2	12.5000
0.05	3.40	12.00	1/4	0.2500	4	4.0000	13	13.0000
0.06	3.60	12.50	5/16	0.3125	4 1/4	4.2500	13 1/2	13.5000
0.08	3.80	13.00	3/8	0.3750	4 1/2	4.5000	14	14.0000
0.10	4.00	13.50	7/16	0.4375	4 3/4	4.7500	14 1/2	14.5000
0.12	4.20	14.00	1/2	0.5000	5	5.0000	15	15.0000
0.16	4.40	14.50	9/16	0.5625	5 1/4	5.2500	15 1/2	15.5000
0.20	4.60	15.00	5/8	0.6250	5 1/2	5.5000	16	16.0000
0.24	4.80	15.50	11/16	0.6875	5 3/4	5.7500	16 1/2	16.5000
0.30	5.00	16.00	3/4	0.7500	6	6.0000	17	17.0000
0.40	5.20	16.50	7/8	0.8750	6 1/2	6.5000	17 1/2	17.5000
0.50	5.40	17.00	1	1.0000	7	7.0000	18	18.0000
0.60	5.60	17.50	1 1/4	1.2500	7 1/2	7.5000	18 1/2	18.5000
0.80	5.80	18.00	1 1/2	1.5000	8	8.0000	19	19.0000
1.00	6.00	18.50	1 3/4	1.7500	8 1/2	8.5000	19 1/2	19.5000
1.20	6.50	19.00	2	2.0000	9	9.0000	20	20.0000
1.40	7.00	19.50	…	…	…	…	…	…
1.60	7.50	20.00	…	…	…	…	…	…
1.80	8.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] All dimensions are in inches.

Table 5. Preferred Series of Tolerances and Allowances[a]
ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)

0.1	1	10	100	0.3	3	30	…
…	1.2	12	125	…	3.5	35	…
0.15	1.4	14	…	0.4	4	40	…
…	1.6	16	160	…	4.5	45	…
…	1.8	18	…	0.5	5	50	…
0.2	2	20	200	0.6	6	60	…
…	2.2	22	…	0.7	7	70	…
0.25	2.5	25	250	0.8	8	80	…
…	2.8	28	…	0.9	9	…	…

[a] All values in thousandths of an inch.

ANSI/ASME Standard Fits.—Table 8a through Table 12 inclusive show a series of standard types and classes of fits on a unilateral hole basis, such that the fit produced by mating parts in any one class will produce approximately similar performance throughout the range of sizes. These tables prescribe the fit for any given size, or type of fit; they also prescribe the standard limits for the mating parts that will produce the fit. The fits listed in these tables contain all those that appear in the approved American-British-Canadian proposal.

Selection of Fits: In selecting limits of size for any application, the type of fit is determined first, based on the use or service required from the equipment being designed; then the limits of size of the mating parts are established, to insure that the desired fit will be produced.

Theoretically, an infinite number of fits could be chosen, but the number of standard fits shown in the accompanying tables should cover most applications.

Designation of Standard Fits: Standard fits are designated by means of the following symbols which, facilitate reference to classes of fit for educational purposes. The symbols are not intended to be shown on manufacturing drawings; instead, sizes should be specified on drawings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

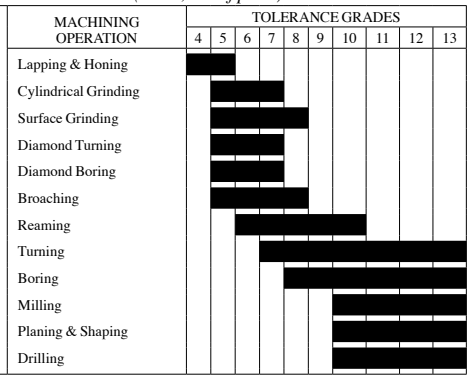
Table 6. ANSI/ASME Standard Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size, Inches		Grade									
		4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Over	To	Tolerances in thousandths of an inch[a]									
0	0.12	0.12	0.15	0.25	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.6	2.5	4	6
0.12	0.24	0.15	0.20	0.3	0.5	0.7	1.2	1.8	3.0	5	7
0.24	0.40	0.15	0.25	0.4	0.6	0.9	1.4	2.2	3.5	6	9
0.40	0.71	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.7	1.0	1.6	2.8	4.0	7	10
0.71	1.19	0.25	0.4	0.5	0.8	1.2	2.0	3.5	5.0	8	12
1.19	1.97	0.3	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.6	2.5	4.0	6	10	16
1.97	3.15	0.3	0.5	0.7	1.2	1.8	3.0	4.5	7	12	18
3.15	4.73	0.4	0.6	0.9	1.4	2.2	3.5	5	9	14	22
4.73	7.09	0.5	0.7	1.0	1.6	2.5	4.0	6	10	16	25
7.09	9.85	0.6	0.8	1.2	1.8	2.8	4.5	7	12	18	28
9.85	12.41	0.6	0.9	1.2	2.0	3.0	5.0	8	12	20	30
12.41	15.75	0.7	1.0	1.4	2.2	3.5	6	9	14	22	35
15.75	19.69	0.8	1.0	1.6	2.5	4	6	10	16	25	40
19.69	30.09	0.9	1.2	2.0	3	5	8	12	20	30	50
30.09	41.49	1.0	1.6	2.5	4	6	10	16	25	40	60
41.49	56.19	1.2	2.0	3	5	8	12	20	30	50	80
56.19	76.39	1.6	2.5	4	6	10	16	25	40	60	100
76.39	100.9	2.0	3	5	8	12	20	30	50	80	125
100.9	131.9	2.5	4	6	10	16	25	40	60	100	160
131.9	171.9	3	5	8	12	20	30	50	80	125	200
171.9	200	4	6	10	16	25	40	60	100	160	250

[a] All tolerances above the heavy line are in accordance with American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements.

Table 7. Relation of Machining Processes to Tolerance Grades
ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)

This chart may be used as a general guide to determine the machining processes that will, under normal conditions, produce work within the tolerance grades indicated.
(See also *Relation of Surface Roughness to Tolerances* starting on page 813.)



The letter symbols used to designate standard fits are as follows:

RC = Running or Sliding Clearance Fit *LC* = Locational Clearance Fit

LT = Transition Clearance or Interference Fit

LN = Locational Interference Fit

FN = Force or Shrink Fit

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

These letter symbols are used in conjunction with numbers representing the class of fit; thus FN 4 represents a Class 4 force fit.

Each of these symbols (two letters and a number) represents a complete fit for which the minimum and maximum clearance or interference and the limits of size for the mating parts are given directly in the tables.

Description of Fits.—The classes of fits are arranged in three general groups: running and sliding fits, locational fits, and force fits.

Running and Sliding Fits (RC): Running and sliding fits, for which limits of clearance are given in Table 8a, are intended to provide a similar running performance, with suitable lubrication allowance, throughout the range of sizes. The clearances for the first two classes, used chiefly as slide fits, increase more slowly with the diameter than for the other classes so that accurate location is maintained even at the expense of free relative motion.

These fits may be described as follows:

RC 1 *Close sliding fits* are intended for the accurate location of parts that must assemble without perceptible play.

RC 2 *Sliding fits* are intended for accurate location, but with greater maximum clearance than class RC 1. Parts made to this fit move and turn easily but are not intended to run freely, and in the larger sizes may seize with small temperature changes.

RC 3 *Precision running fits* are about the closest fits that can be expected to run freely and are intended for precision work at slow speeds and light journal pressures, but they are not suitable where appreciable temperature differences are likely to be encountered.

RC 4 *Close running fits* are intended chiefly for running fits on accurate machinery with moderate surface speeds and journal pressures, where accurate location and minimum play are desired.

RC 5 and RC 6 *Medium running fits* are intended for higher running speeds, or heavy journal pressures, or both.

RC 7 *Free running fits* are intended for use where accuracy is not essential, or where large temperature variations are likely to be encountered, or under both these conditions.

RC 8 and RC 9 *Loose running fits* are intended for use where wide commercial tolerances may be necessary, together with an allowance, on the external member.

Locational Fits (LC, LT, and LN): Locational fits are intended to determine only the location of the mating parts; they may provide rigid or accurate location, as with interference fits, or provide some freedom of location, as with clearance fits. Accordingly, they are divided into three groups: clearance fits (LC), transition fits (LT), and interference fits (LN).

These are described as follows:

LC *Locational clearance fits* are intended for parts that are normally stationary but that can be freely assembled or disassembled. They range from snug fits for parts requiring accuracy of location, through the medium clearance fits for parts such as spigots, to the looser fastener fits where freedom of assembly is of prime importance.

LT *Locational transition fits* are a compromise between clearance and interference fits for applications where accuracy of location is important but either a small amount of clearance or interference is permissible.

LN *Locational interference fits* are used where accuracy of location is of prime importance, and for parts requiring rigidity and alignment with no special requirements for bore pressure. Such fits are not intended for parts designed to transmit frictional loads from one part to another by virtue of the tightness of fit. These conditions are covered by force fits.

Force Fits (FN): Force or shrink fits constitute a special type of interference fit, normally characterized by maintenance of constant bore pressures throughout the range of sizes. The interference, therefore, varies almost directly with diameter, and the difference

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

between its minimum and maximum value is small to maintain the resulting pressures within reasonable limits.

These fits are described as follows:

FN 1 *Light drive fits* are those requiring light assembly pressures and produce more or less permanent assemblies. They are suitable for thin sections or long fits, or in cast-iron external members.

FN 2 *Medium drive fits* are suitable for ordinary steel parts or for shrink fits on light sections. They are about the tightest fits that can be used with high-grade cast-iron external members.

FN 3 *Heavy drive fits* are suitable for heavier steel parts or for shrink fits in medium sections.

FN 4 and FN 5 *Force fits* are suitable for parts that can be highly stressed or for shrink fits where the heavy pressing forces required are impractical.

Graphical Representation of Limits and Fits.—A visual comparison of the hole and shaft tolerances and the clearances or interferences provided by the various types and classes of fits can be obtained from the diagrams on page 652. These diagrams have been drawn to scale for a nominal diameter of 1 inch.

Use of Standard Fit Tables.—*Example 1:* A Class RC 1 fit is to be used in assembling a mating hole and shaft of 2-inch nominal diameter. This class of fit was selected because the application required accurate location of the parts with no perceptible play (see *Description of Fits*, RC 1 close sliding fits). From the data in Table 8a, establish the limits of size and clearance of the hole and shaft.

Maximum hole = 2 + 0.0005 = 2.0005; minimum hole = 2 inches

Maximum shaft = 2 – 0.0004 = 1.9996; minimum shaft = 2 – 0.0007 = 1.9993 inches

Minimum clearance = 0.0004; maximum clearance = 0.0012 inch

Modified Standard Fits.—Fits having the same limits of clearance or interference as those shown in Table 8a to Table 12 may sometimes have to be produced by using holes or shafts having limits of size other than those shown in these tables. These modifications may be accomplished by using either a *Bilateral Hole System* (*Symbol B*) or a *Basic Shaft System* (*Symbol S*). Both methods will result in nonstandard holes and shafts.

Bilateral Hole Fits (Symbol B): The common situation is where holes are produced with fixed tools such as drills or reamers; to provide a longer wear life for such tools, a bilateral tolerance is desired.

The symbols used for these fits are identical with those used for standard fits except that they are followed by the letter B. Thus, LC 4B is a clearance locational fit Class 4, except that it is produced with a bilateral hole.

The limits of clearance or interference are identical with those shown in Table 8a to Table 12 for the corresponding fits.

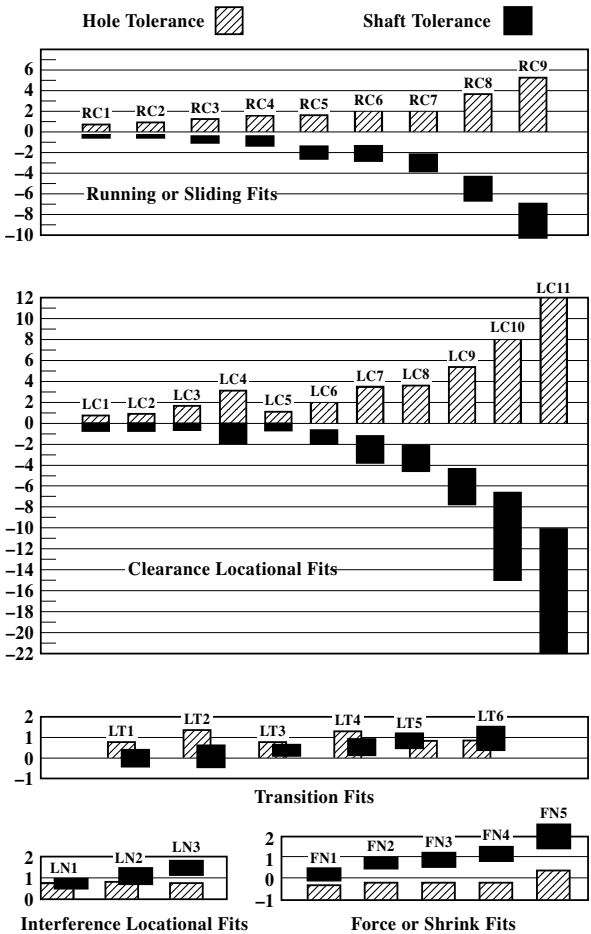
The hole tolerance, however, is changed so that the plus limit is that for one grade finer than the value shown in the tables and the minus limit equals the amount by which the plus limit was lowered. The shaft limits are both lowered by the same amount as the lower limit of size of the hole. The finer grade of tolerance required to make these modifications may be obtained from Table 6. For example, an LC 4B fit for a 6-inch diameter hole would have tolerance limits of +4.0, –2.0 (+ 0.0040 inch, – 0.0020 inch); the shaft would have tolerance limits of –2.0, –6.0 (–0.0020 inch, –0.0060 inch).

Basic Shaft Fits (Symbol S) For these fits, the maximum size of the shaft is basic. The limits of clearance or interference are identical with those shown in Table 8a to Table 12 for the corresponding fits, and the symbols used for these fits are identical with those used for standard fits except that they are followed by the letter S. Thus, LC 4S is a clearance locational fit Class 4, except that it is produced on a basic shaft basis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The limits for hole and shaft as given in Table 8a to Table 12 are increased for clearance fits (*decreased* for transition or interference fits) by the value of the upper shaft limit, that is, by the amount required to change the maximum shaft to the basic size.

Graphical Representation of ANSI/ASME Standard Limits and Fits
ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)



Diagrams show disposition of hole and shaft tolerances (in thousandths of an inch) with respect to basic size (0) for a diameter of 1 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8a. American National Standard Running and Sliding Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class RC 1			Class RC 2			Class RC 3			Class RC 4		
		Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits		
Over	To	Clearance[a]	Hole H5	Shaft g4	Clearance[a]	Hole H6	Shaft g5	Clearance[a]	Hole H7	Shaft f6	Clearance[a]	Hole H8	Shaft f7
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch											
0 - 0.12		0.1	+0.2	–0.1	0.1	+0.25	–0.1	0.3	+0.4	–0.3	0.3	+0.6	–0.3
		0.45	0	–0.25	0.55	0	–0.3	0.95	0	–0.55	1.3	0	–0.7
0.12 - 0.24		0.15	+0.2	–0.15	0.15	+0.3	–0.15	0.4	+0.5	–0.4	0.4	+0.7	–0.4
		0.5	0	–0.3	0.65	0	–0.35	1.2	0	–0.7	1.6	0	–0.9
0.24 - 0.40		0.2	+0.25	–0.2	0.2	+0.4	–0.2	0.5	+0.6	–0.5	0.5	+0.9	–0.5
		0.6	0	–0.35	0.85	0	–0.45	1.5	0	–0.9	2.0	0	–1.1
0.40 - 0.71		0.25	+0.3	–0.25	0.25	+0.4	–0.25	0.6	+0.7	–0.6	0.6	+1.0	–0.6
		0.75	0	–0.45	0.95	0	–0.55	1.7	0	–1.0	2.3	0	–1.3
0.71 - 1.19		0.3	+0.4	–0.3	0.3	+0.5	–0.3	0.8	+0.8	–0.8	0.8	+1.2	–0.8
		0.95	0	–0.55	1.2	0	–0.7	2.1	0	–1.3	2.8	0	–1.6
1.19 - 1.97		0.4	+0.4	–0.4	0.4	+0.6	–0.4	1.0	+1.0	–1.0	1.0	+1.6	–1.0
		1.1	0	–0.7	1.4	0	–0.8	2.6	0	–1.6	3.6	0	–2.0
1.97 - 3.15		0.4	+0.5	–0.4	0.4	+0.7	–0.4	1.2	+1.2	–1.2	1.2	+1.8	–1.2
		1.2	0	–0.7	1.6	0	–0.9	3.1	0	–1.9	4.2	0	–2.4
3.15 - 4.73		0.5	+0.6	–0.5	0.5	+0.9	–0.5	1.4	+1.4	–1.4	1.4	+2.2	–1.4
		1.5	0	–0.9	2.0	0	–1.1	3.7	0	–2.3	5.0	0	–2.8
4.73 - 7.09		0.6	+0.7	–0.6	0.6	+1.0	–0.6	1.6	+1.6	–1.6	1.6	+2.5	–1.6
		1.8	0	–1.1	2.3	0	–1.3	4.2	0	–2.6	5.7	0	–3.2
7.09 - 9.85		0.6	+0.8	–0.6	0.6	+1.2	–0.6	2.0	+1.8	–2.0	2.0	+2.8	–2.0
		2.0	0	–1.2	2.6	0	–1.4	5.0	0	–3.2	6.6	0	–3.8
9.85 - 12.41		0.8	+0.9	–0.8	0.8	+1.2	–0.8	2.5	+2.0	–2.5	2.5	+3.0	–2.5
		2.3	0	–1.4	2.9	0	–1.7	5.7	0	–3.7	7.5	0	–4.5
12.41 - 15.75		1.0	+1.0	–1.0	1.0	+1.4	–1.0	3.0	+2.2	–3.0	3.0	+3.5	–3.0
		2.7	0	–1.7	3.4	0	–2.0	6.6	0	–4.4	8.7	0	–5.2
15.75 - 19.69		1.2	+1.0	–1.2	1.2	+1.6	–1.2	4.0	+2.5	–4.0	4.0	+4.0	–4.0
		3.0	0	–2.0	3.8	0	–2.2	8.1	0	–5.6	10.5	0	–6.5

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8b. American National Standard Running and Sliding Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class RC 5			Class RC 6			Class RC 7			Class RC 8			Class RC 9		
			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits	
Over	To	Clearance[a]	Hole H8	Shaft e7	Clearance[a]	Hole H9	Shaft e8	Clearance[a]	Hole H9	Shaft d8	Clearance[a]	Hole H10	Shaft c9	Clearance[a]	Hole H11	Shaft
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch														
0 -	0.12	0.6	+0.6	– 0.6	0.6	+1.0	– 0.6	1.0	+1.0	– 1.0	2.5	+1.6	– 2.5	4.0	+2.5	– 4.0
		1.6	0	– 1.0	2.2	0	– 1.2	2.6	0	– 1.6	5.1	0	– 3.5	8.1	0	– 5.6
0.12 -	0.24	0.8	+0.7	– 0.8	0.8	+1.2	– 0.8	1.2	+1.2	– 1.2	2.8	+1.8	– 2.8	4.5	+3.0	– 4.5
		2.0	0	– 1.3	2.7	0	– 1.5	3.1	0	– 1.9	5.8	0	– 4.0	9.0	0	– 6.0
0.24 -	0.40	1.0	+0.9	– 1.0	1.0	+1.4	– 1.0	1.6	+1.4	– 1.6	3.0	+2.2	– 3.0	5.0	+3.5	– 5.0
		2.5	0	– 1.6	3.3	0	– 1.9	3.9	0	– 2.5	6.6	0	– 4.4	10.7	0	– 7.2
0.40 -	0.71	1.2	+1.0	– 1.2	1.2	+1.6	– 1.2	2.0	+1.6	– 2.0	3.5	+2.8	– 3.5	6.0	+4.0	– 6.0
		2.9	0	– 1.9	3.8	0	– 2.2	4.6	0	– 3.0	7.9	0	– 5.1	12.8	0	– 8.8
0.71 -	1.19	1.6	+1.2	– 1.6	1.6	+2.0	– 1.6	2.5	+2.0	– 2.5	4.5	+3.5	– 4.5	7.0	+5.0	– 7.0
		3.6	0	– 2.4	4.8	0	– 2.8	5.7	0	– 3.7	10.0	0	– 6.5	15.5	0	–10.5
1.19 -	1.97	2.0	+1.6	– 2.0	2.0	+2.5	– 2.0	3.0	+2.5	– 3.0	5.0	+4.0	– 5.0	8.0	+6.0	– 8.0
		4.6	0	– 3.0	6.1	0	– 3.6	7.1	0	– 4.6	11.5	0	– 7.5	18.0	0	–12.0
1.97 -	3.15	2.5	+1.8	– 2.5	2.5	+3.0	– 2.5	4.0	+3.0	– 4.0	6.0	+4.5	– 6.0	9.0	+7.0	– 9.0
		5.5	0	– 3.7	7.3	0	– 4.3	8.8	0	– 5.8	13.5	0	– 9.0	20.5	0	–13.5
3.15 -	4.73	3.0	+2.2	– 3.0	3.0	+3.5	– 3.0	5.0	+3.5	– 5.0	7.0	+5.0	– 7.0	10.0	+9.0	–10.0
		6.6	0	– 4.4	8.7	0	– 5.2	10.7	0	– 7.2	15.5	0	–10.5	24.0	0	–15.0
4.73 -	7.09	3.5	+2.5	– 3.5	3.5	+4.0	– 3.5	6.0	+4.0	– 6.0	8.0	+6.0	– 8.0	12.0	+10.0	–12.0
		7.6	0	– 5.1	10.0	0	– 6.0	12.5	0	– 8.5	18.0	0	–12.0	28.0	0	–18.0
7.09 -	9.85	4.0	+2.8	– 4.0	4.0	+4.5	– 4.0	7.0	+4.5	– 7.0	10.0	+7.0	–10.0	15.0	+12.0	–15.0
		8.6	0	– 5.8	11.3	0	– 6.8	14.3	0	– 9.8	21.5	0	–14.5	34.0	0	–22.0
9.85 -	12.41	5.0	+3.0	– 5.0	5.0	+5.0	– 5.0	8.0	+5.0	– 8.0	12.0	+8.0	–12.0	18.0	+12.0	–18.0
		10.0	0	– 7.0	13.0	0	– 8.0	16.0	0	–11.0	25.0	0	–17.0	38.0	0	–26.0
12.41 -	15.75	6.0	+3.5	– 6.0	6.0	+6.0	– 6.0	10.0	+6.0	–10.0	14.0	+9.0	–14.0	22.0	+14.0	–22.0
		11.7	0	– 8.2	15.5	0	– 9.5	19.5	0	–13.5	29.0	0	–20.0	45.0	0	–31.0
15.75 -	19.69	8.0	+4.0	– 8.0	8.0	+6.0	– 8.0	12.0	+6.0	–12.0	16.0	+10.0	–16.0	25.0	+16.0	–25.0
		14.5	0	–10.5	18.0	0	–12.0	22.0	0	–16.0	32.0	0	–22.0	51.0	0	–35.0

[a] Pairs of values shown represent minimum and maximum amounts of clearance resulting from application of standard tolerance limits.

Tolerance limits in Table 8a and Table 8b are added to or subtracted from basic size (as indicated by + or – sign) to obtain maximum and minimum sizes of mating parts.

All data above heavy lines are in accord with ABC agreements. Symbols H5, g4, etc., are hole and shaft designations in ABC system. Limits for sizes above 19.69 inches are also given in the ANSI/ASME Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9a. American National Standard Clearance Locational Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class LC 1			Class LC 2			Class LC 3			Class LC 4			Class LC 5		
		Clearance[a]	Standard Tolerance Limits		Clearance[a]	Standard Tolerance Limits		Clearance[a]	Standard Tolerance Limits		Clearance[a]	Standard Tolerance Limits		Clearance[a]	Standard Tolerance Limits	
			Hole H6	Shaft h5		Hole H7	Shaft h6		Hole H8	Shaft h7		Hole H10	Shaft h9		Hole H7	Shaft g6
Over	To	Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch														
0-	0.12	0 0.45	+0.25 0	0 –0.2	0 0.65	+0.4 0	0 –0.25	0 1	+0.6 0	0 –0.4	0 2.6	+1.6 0	0 –1.0	0.1 0.75	+0.4 0	–0.1 –0.35
0.12-	0.24	0 0.5	+0.3 0	0 –0.2	0 0.8	+0.5 0	0 –0.3	0 1.2	+0.7 0	0 –0.5	0 3.0	+1.8 0	0 –1.2	0.15 0.95	+0.5 0	–0.15 –0.45
0.24-	0.40	0 0.65	+0.4 0	0 –0.25	0 1.0	+0.6 0	0 –0.4	0 1.5	+0.9 0	0 –0.6	0 3.6	+2.2 0	0 –1.4	0.2 1.2	+0.6 0	–0.2 –0.6
0.40-	0.71	0 0.7	+0.4 0	0 –0.3	0 1.1	+0.7 0	0 –0.4	0 1.7	+1.0 0	0 –0.7	0 4.4	+2.8 0	0 –1.6	0.25 1.35	+0.7 0	–0.25 –0.65
0.71-	1.19	0 0.9	+0.5 0	0 –0.4	0 1.3	+0.8 0	0 –0.5	0 2	+1.2 0	0 –0.8	0 5.5	+3.5 0	0 –2.0	0.3 1.6	+0.8 0	–0.3 –0.8
1.19-	1.97	0 1.0	+0.6 0	0 –0.4	0 1.6	+1.0 0	0 –0.6	0 2.6	+1.6 0	0 –1	0 6.5	+4.0 0	0 –2.5	0.4 2.0	+1.0 0	–0.4 –1.0
1.97-	3.15	0 1.2	+0.7 0	0 –0.5	0 1.9	+1.2 0	0 –0.7	0 3	+1.8 0	0 –1.2	0 7.5	+4.5 0	0 –3	0.4 2.3	+1.2 0	–0.4 –1.1
3.15-	4.73	0 1.5	+0.9 0	0 –0.6	0 2.3	+1.4 0	0 –0.9	0 3.6	+2.2 0	0 –1.4	0 8.5	+5.0 0	0 –3.5	0.5 2.8	+1.4 0	–0.5 –1.4
4.73-	7.09	0 1.7	+1.0 0	0 –0.7	0 2.6	+1.6 0	0 –1.0	0 4.1	+2.5 0	0 –1.6	0 10.0	+6.0 0	0 –4	0.6 3.2	+1.6 0	–0.6 –1.6
7.09-	9.85	0 2.0	+1.2 0	0 –0.8	0 3.0	+1.8 0	0 –1.2	0 4.6	+2.8 0	0 –1.8	0 11.5	+7.0 0	0 –4.5	0.6 3.6	+1.8 0	–0.6 –1.8
9.85-	12.41	0 2.1	+1.2 0	0 –0.9	0 3.2	+2.0 0	0 –1.2	0 5	+3.0 0	0 –2.0	0 13.0	+8.0 0	0 –5	0.7 3.9	+2.0 0	–0.7 –1.9
12.41-	15.75	0 2.4	+1.4 0	0 –1.0	0 3.6	+2.2 0	0 –1.4	0 5.7	+3.5 0	0 –2.2	0 15.0	+9.0 0	0 –6	0.7 4.3	+2.2 0	–0.7 –2.1
15.75-	19.69	0 2.6	+1.6 0	0 –1.0	0 4.1	+2.5 0	0 –1.6	0 6.5	+4 0	0 –2.5	0 16.0	+10.0 0	0 –6	0.8 4.9	+2.5 0	–0.8 –2.4

Tolerance limits given in body of Table 9a and Table 9b are added or subtracted to basic size (as indicated by + or – sign) to obtain maximum and minimum sizes of mating parts. All data above heavy lines are in accordance with American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements. Symbols H6, H7, s6, etc., are hole and shaft designations in ABC system.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9b. American National Standard Clearance Locational Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class LC 6			Class LC 7			Class LC 8			Class LC 9			Class LC 10			Class LC 11		
			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits	
Over	To	Clearance[a]	Hole H9	Shaft f8	Clearance[a]	Hole H10	Shaft e9	Clearance[a]	Hole H10	Shaft d9	Clearance[a]	Hole H11	Shaft c10	Clearance[a]	Hole H12	Shaft	Clearance[a]	Hole H13	Shaft
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch																	
0 -	0.12	0.3	+1.0	–0.3	0.6	+1.6	– 0.6	1.0	+1.6	– 1.0	2.5	+2.5	– 2.5	4	+4	– 4	5	+6	– 5
		1.9	0	–0.9	3.2	0	– 1.6	2.0	0	– 2.0	6.6	0	– 4.1	12	0	– 8	17	0	– 11
0.12 –	0.24	0.4	+1.2	–0.4	0.8	+1.8	– 0.8	1.2	+1.8	– 1.2	2.8	+3.0	– 2.8	4.5	+5	– 4.5	6	+7	– 6
		2.3	0	–1.1	3.8	0	– 2.0	4.2	0	– 2.4	7.6	0	– 4.6	14.5	0	– 9.5	20	0	–13
0.24 –	0.40	0.5	+1.4	–0.5	1.0	+2.2	– 1.0	1.6	+2.2	– 1.6	3.0	+3.5	– 3.0	5	+6	– 5	7	+9	– 7
		2.8	0	–1.4	4.6	0	– 2.4	5.2	0	– 3.0	8.7	0	– 5.2	17	0	–11	25	0	–16
0.40 -	0.71	0.6	+1.6	–0.6	1.2	+2.8	– 1.2	2.0	+2.8	– 2.0	3.5	+4.0	– 3.5	6	+7	– 6	8	+10	– 8
		3.2	0	–1.6	5.6	0	– 2.8	6.4	0	– 3.6	10.3	0	– 6.3	20	0	–13	28	0	–18
0.71 -	1.19	0.8	+2.0	–0.8	1.6	+3.5	– 1.6	2.5	+3.5	– 2.5	4.5	+5.0	– 4.5	7	+8	– 7	10	+12	–10
		4.0	0	–2.0	7.1	0	– 3.6	8.0	0	– 4.5	13.0	0	– 8.0	23	0	–15	34	0	–22
1.19 -	1.97	1.0	+2.5	–1.0	2.0	+4.0	– 2.0	3.6	+4.0	– 3.0	5.0	+6	– 5.0	8	+10	– 8	12	+16	–12
		5.1	0	–2.6	8.5	0	– 4.5	9.5	0	– 5.5	15.0	0	– 9.0	28	0	–18	44	0	–28
1.97 -	3.15	1.2	+3.0	–1.0	2.5	+4.5	– 2.5	4.0	+4.5	– 4.0	6.0	+7	– 6.0	10	+12	–10	14	+18	–14
		6.0	0	–3.0	10.0	0	– 5.5	11.5	0	– 7.0	17.5	0	–10.5	34	0	–22	50	0	–32
3.15 -	4.73	1.4	+3.5	–1.4	3.0	+5.0	– 3.0	5.0	+5.0	– 5.0	7	+9	– 7	11	+14	–11	16	+22	–16
		7.1	0	–3.6	11.5	0	– 6.5	13.5	0	– 8.5	21	0	–12	39	0	–25	60	0	–38
4.73 -	7.09	1.6	+4.0	–1.6	3.5	+6.0	– 3.5	6	+6	– 6	8	+10	– 8	12	+16	–12	18	+25	–18
		8.1	0	–4.1	13.5	0	– 7.5	16	0	–10	24	0	–14	44	0	–28	68	0	–43
7.09 –	9.85	2.0	+4.5	–2.0	4.0	+7.0	– 4.0	7	+7	– 7	10	+12	–10	16	+18	–16	22	+28	–22
		9.3	0	–4.8	15.5	0	– 8.5	18.5	0	–11.5	29	0	–17	52	0	–34	78	0	–50
9.85 -	12.41	2.2	+5.0	–2.2	4.5	+8.0	– 4.5	7	+8	– 7	12	+12	–12	20	+20	–20	28	+30	–28
		10.2	0	–5.2	17.5	0	– 9.5	20	0	–12	32	0	–20	60	0	–40	88	0	–58
12.41 -	15.75	2.5	+6.0	–2.5	5.0	+9.0	– 5	8	+9	– 8	14	+14	–14	22	+22	–22	30	+35	–30
		12.0	0	–6.0	20.0	0	–11	23	0	–14	37	0	–23	66	0	–44	100	0	–65
15.75-	19.69	2.8	+6.0	–2.8	5.0	+10.0	– 5	9	+10	– 9	16	+16	–16	25	+25	–25	35	+40	–35
		12.8	0	–6.8	21.0	0	–11	25	0	–15	42	0	–26	75	0	–50	115	0	–75

[a] Pairs of values shown represent minimum and maximum amounts of interference resulting from application of standard tolerance limits.

Limits for sizes above 19.69 inches are not covered by American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements but are given in the ANSI/ASME Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. ANSI/ASME Standard Transition Locational Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class LT 1			Class LT 2			Class LT 3			Class LT 4			Class LT 5			Class LT 6		
			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits			Std. Tolerance Limits	
Over	To	Fit[a]	Hole H7	Shaft js6	Fit[a]	Hole H8	Shaft js7	Fit[a]	Hole H7	Shaft k6	Fit[a]	Hole H8	Shaft k7	Fit[a]	Hole H7	Shaft n6	Fit[a]	Hole H7	Shaft n7
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch																	
0 -	0.12	–0.12 +0.52	+0.4 0	+0.12 –0.12	–0.2 +0.8	+0.6 0	+0.2 –0.2							–0.5 +0.15	+0.4 0	+0.5 +0.25	–0.65 +0.15	+0.4 0	+0.65 +0.25
0.12 -	0.24	–0.15 +0.65	+0.5 0	+0.15 –0.15	–0.25 +0.95	+0.7 0	+0.25 –0.25							–0.6 +0.2	+0.5 0	+0.6 +0.3	–0.8 +0.2	+0.5 0	+0.8 +0.3
0.24 -	0.40	–0.2 +0.8	+0.6 0	+0.2 –0.2	–0.3 +1.2	+0.9 0	+0.3 –0.3	–0.5 +0.5	+0.6 0	+0.5 +0.1	–0.7 +0.8	+0.9 0	+0.7 +0.1	–0.8 +0.2	+0.6 0	+0.8 +0.4	–1.0 +0.2	+0.6 0	+1.0 +0.4
0.40 -	0.71	–0.2 +0.9	+0.7 0	+0.2 –0.2	–0.35 +1.35	+1.0 0	+0.35 –0.35	–0.5 +0.6	+0.7 0	+0.5 +0.1	–0.8 +0.9	+1.0 0	+0.8 +0.1	–0.9 +0.2	+0.7 0	+0.9 +0.5	–1.2 +0.2	+0.7 0	+1.2 +0.5
0.71 -	1.19	–0.25 +1.05	+0.8 0	+0.25 –0.25	–0.4 +1.6	+1.2 0	+0.4 –0.4	–0.6 +0.7	+0.8 0	+0.6 +0.1	–0.9 +1.1	+1.2 0	+0.9 +0.1	–1.1 +0.2	+0.8 0	+1.1 +0.6	–1.4 +0.2	+0.8 0	+1.4 +0.6
1.19 -	1.97	–0.3 +1.3	+1.0 0	+0.3 –0.3	–0.5 +2.1	+1.6 0	+0.5 –0.5	–0.7 +0.9	+1.0 0	+0.7 +0.1	–1.1 +1.5	+1.6 0	+1.1 +0.1	–1.3 +0.3	+1.0 0	+1.3 +0.7	–1.7 +0.3	+1.0 0	+1.7 +0.7
1.97 -	3.15	–0.3 +1.5	+1.2 0	+0.3 –0.3	–0.6 +2.4	+1.8 0	+0.6 –0.6	–0.8 +1.1	+1.2 0	+0.8 +0.1	–1.3 +1.7	+1.8 0	+1.3 +0.1	–1.5 +0.4	+1.2 0	+1.5 +0.8	–2.0 +0.4	+1.2 0	+2.0 +0.8
3.15 -	4.73	–0.4 +1.8	+1.4 0	+0.4 –0.4	–0.7 +2.9	+2.2 0	+0.7 –0.7	–1.0 +1.3	+1.4 0	+1.0 +0.1	–1.5 +2.1	+2.2 0	+1.5 +0.1	–1.9 +0.4	+1.4 0	+1.9 +1.0	–2.4 +0.4	+1.4 0	+2.4 +1.0
4.73 -	7.09	–0.5 +2.1	+1.6 0	+0.5 –0.5	–0.8 +3.3	+2.5 0	+0.8 –0.8	–1.1 +1.5	+1.6 0	+1.1 +0.1	–1.7 +2.4	+2.5 0	+1.7 +0.1	–2.2 +0.4	+1.6 0	+2.2 +1.2	–2.8 +0.4	+1.6 0	+2.8 +1.2
7.09 -	9.85	–0.6 +2.4	+1.8 0	+0.6 –0.6	–0.9 +3.7	+2.8 0	+0.9 –0.9	–1.4 +1.6	+1.8 0	+1.4 +0.2	–2.0 +2.6	+2.8 0	+2.0 +0.2	–2.6 +0.4	+1.8 0	+2.6 +1.4	–3.2 +0.4	+1.8 0	+3.2 +1.4
9.85 -	12.41	–0.6 +2.6	+2.0 0	+0.6 –0.6	–1.0 +4.0	+3.0 0	+1.0 –1.0	–1.4 +1.8	+2.0 0	+1.4 +0.2	–2.2 +2.8	+3.0 0	+2.2 +0.2	–2.6 +0.6	+2.0 0	+2.6 +1.4	–3.4 +0.6	+2.0 0	+3.4 +1.4
12.41 -	15.75	–0.7 +2.9	+2.2 0	+0.7 –0.7	–1.0 +4.5	+3.5 0	+1.0 –1.0	–1.6 +2.0	+2.2 0	+1.6 +0.2	–2.4 +3.3	+3.5 0	+2.4 +0.2	–3.0 +0.6	+2.2 0	+3.0 +1.6	–3.8 +0.6	+2.2 0	+3.8 +1.6
15.75 -	19.69	–0.8 +3.3	+2.5 0	+0.8 –0.8	–1.2 +5.2	+4.0 0	+1.2 –1.2	–1.8 +2.3	+2.5 0	+1.8 +0.2	–2.7 +3.8	+4.0 0	+2.7 +0.2	–3.4 +0.7	+2.5 0	+3.4 +1.8	–4.3 +0.7	+2.5 0	+4.3 +1.8

[a] Pairs of values shown represent maximum amount of interference (–) and maximum amount of clearance (+) resulting from application of standard tolerance limits.

All data above heavy lines are in accord with American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements. Symbols H7, js6, etc., are hole and shaft designations in the ABC system.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. ANSI/ASME Standard Force and Shrink Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class FN 1			Class FN 2			Class FN 3			Class FN 4			Class FN 5		
			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits	
Over	To	Interference[a]	Hole H6	Shaft	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft s6	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft t6	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft u6	Interference[a]	Hole H8	Shaft x7
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch														
0	0.12	0.05	+0.25	+0.5	0.2	+0.4	+0.85				0.3	+0.4	+0.95	0.3	+0.6	+1.3
		0.5	0	+0.3	0.85	0	+0.6				0.95	0	+0.7	1.3	0	+0.9
0.12	0.24	0.1	+0.3	+0.6	0.2	+0.5	+1.0				0.4	+0.5	+1.2	0.5	+0.7	+1.7
		0.6	0	+0.4	1.0	0	+0.7				1.2	0	+0.9	1.7	0	+1.2
0.24	0.40	0.1	+0.4	+0.75	0.4	+0.6	+1.4				0.6	+0.6	+1.6	0.5	+0.9	+2.0
		0.75	0	+0.5	1.4	0	+1.0				1.6	0	+1.2	2.0	0	+1.4
0.40	0.56	0.1	+0.4	+0.8	0.5	+0.7	+1.6				0.7	+0.7	+1.8	0.6	+1.0	+2.3
		0.8	0	+0.5	1.6	0	+1.2				1.8	0	+1.4	2.3	0	+1.6
0.56	0.71	0.2	+0.4	+0.9	0.5	+0.7	+1.6				0.7	+0.7	+1.8	0.8	+1.0	+2.5
		0.9	0	+0.6	1.6	0	+1.2				1.8	0	+1.4	2.5	0	+1.8
0.71	0.95	0.2	+0.5	+1.1	0.6	+0.8	+1.9				0.8	+0.8	+2.1	1.0	+1.2	+3.0
		1.1	0	+0.7	1.9	0	+1.4				2.1	0	+1.6	3.0	0	+2.2
0.95	1.19	0.3	+0.5	+1.2	0.6	+0.8	+1.9	0.8	+0.8	+2.1	+1.0	+0.8	+2.3	1.3	+1.2	+3.3
		1.2	0	+0.8	1.9	0	+1.4	2.1	0	+1.6	2.3	0	+1.8	3.3	0	+2.5
1.19	1.58	0.3	+0.6	+1.3	0.8	+1.0	+2.4	1.0	+1.0	+2.6	1.5	+1.0	+3.1	1.4	+1.6	+4.0
		1.3	0	+0.9	2.4	0	+1.8	2.6	0	+2.0	3.1	0	+2.5	4.0	0	+3.0
1.58	1.97	0.4	+0.6	+1.4	0.8	+1.0	+2.4	1.2	+1.0	+2.8	1.8	+1.0	+3.4	2.4	+1.6	+5.0
		1.4	0	+1.0	2.4	0	+1.8	2.8	0	+2.2	3.4	0	+2.8	5.0	0	+4.0
1.97	2.56	0.6	+0.7	+1.8	0.8	+1.2	+2.7	1.3	+1.2	+3.2	2.3	+1.2	+4.2	3.2	+1.8	+6.2
		1.8	0	+1.3	2.7	0	+2.0	3.2	0	+2.5	4.2	0	+3.5	6.2	0	+5.0
2.56	3.15	0.7	+0.7	+1.9	1.0	+1.2	+2.9	1.8	+1.2	+3.7	2.8	+1.2	+4.7	4.2	+1.8	+7.2
		1.9	0	+1.4	2.9	0	+2.2	3.7	0	+3.0	4.7	0	+4.0	7.2	0	+6.0
3.15	3.94	0.9	+0.9	+2.4	1.4	+1.4	+3.7	2.1	+1.4	+4.4	3.6	+1.4	+5.9	4.8	+2.2	+8.4
		2.4	0	+1.8	3.7	0	+2.8	4.4	0	+3.5	5.9	0	+5.0	8.4	0	+7.0
3.94	4.73	1.1	+0.9	+2.6	1.6	+1.4	+3.9	2.6	+1.4	+4.9	4.6	+1.4	+6.9	5.8	+2.2	+9.4
		2.6	0	+2.0	3.9	0	+3.0	4.9	0	+4.0	6.9	0	+6.0	9.4	0	+8.0

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **ANSI/ASME Standard Force and Shrink Fits** *ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)*

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class FN 1			Class FN 2			Class FN 3			Class FN 4			Class FN 5		
			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits			Standard Tolerance Limits	
Over	To	Interference[a]	Hole H6	Shaft	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft s6	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft t6	Interference[a]	Hole H7	Shaft u6	Interference[a]	Hole H8	Shaft x7
		Values shown below are in thousandths of an inch														
4.73-	5.52	1.2	+1.0	+2.9	1.9	+1.6	+4.5	3.4	+1.6	+6.0	5.4	+1.6	+8.0	7.5	+2.5	+11.6
		2.9	0	+2.2	4.5	0	+3.5	6.0	0	+5.0	8.0	0	+7.0	11.6	0	+10.0
5.52-	6.30	1.5	+1.0	+3.2	2.4	+1.6	+5.0	3.4	+1.6	+6.0	5.4	+1.6	+8.0	9.5	+2.5	+13.6
		3.2	0	+2.5	5.0	0	+4.0	6.0	0	+5.0	8.0	0	+7.0	13.6	0	+12.0
6.30-	7.09	1.8	+1.0	+3.5	2.9	+1.6	+5.5	4.4	+1.6	+7.0	6.4	+1.6	+9.0	9.5	+2.5	+13.6
		3.5	0	+2.8	5.5	0	+4.5	7.0	0	+6.0	9.0	0	+8.0	13.6	0	+12.0
7.09-	7.88	1.8	+1.2	+3.8	3.2	+1.8	+6.2	5.2	+1.8	+8.2	7.2	+1.8	+10.2	11.2	+2.8	+15.8
		3.8	0	+3.0	6.2	0	+5.0	8.2	0	+7.0	10.2	0	+9.0	15.8	0	+14.0
7.88-	8.86	2.3	+1.2	+4.3	3.2	+1.8	+6.2	5.2	+1.8	+8.2	8.2	+1.8	+11.2	13.2	+2.8	+17.8
		4.3	0	+3.5	6.2	0	+5.0	8.2	0	+7.0	11.2	0	+10.0	17.8	0	+16.0
8.86-	9.85	2.3	+1.2	+4.3	4.2	+1.8	+7.2	6.2	+1.8	+9.2	10.2	+1.8	+13.2	13.2	+2.8	+17.8
		4.3	0	+3.5	7.2	0	+6.0	9.2	0	+8.0	13.2	0	+12.0	17.8	0	+16.0
9.85-	11.03	2.8	+1.2	+4.9	4.0	+2.0	+7.2	7.0	+2.0	+10.2	10.0	+2.0	+13.2	15.0	+3.0	+20.0
		4.9	0	+4.0	7.2	0	+6.0	10.2	0	+9.0	13.2	0	+12.0	20.0	0	+18.0
11.03-	12.41	2.8	+1.2	+4.9	5.0	+2.0	+8.2	7.0	+2.0	+10.2	12.0	+2.0	+15.2	17.0	+3.0	+22.0
		4.9	0	+4.0	8.2	0	+7.0	10.2	0	+9.0	15.2	0	+14.0	22.0	0	+20.0
12.41-	13.98	3.1	+1.4	+5.5	5.8	+2.2	+9.4	7.8	+2.2	+11.4	13.8	+2.2	+17.4	18.5	+3.5	+24.2
		5.5	0	+4.5	9.4	0	+8.0	11.4	0	+10.0	17.4	0	+16.0	24.2	0	+22.0
13.98-	15.75	3.6	+1.4	+6.1	5.8	+2.2	+9.4	9.8	+2.2	+13.4	15.8	+2.2	+19.4	21.5	+3.5	+27.2
		6.1	0	+5.0	9.4	0	+8.0	13.4	0	+12.0	19.4	0	+18.0	27.2	0	+25.0
15.75-	17.72	4.4	+1.6	+7.0	6.5	+2.5	+10.6	+9.5	+2.5	+13.6	17.5	+2.5	+21.6	24.0	+4.0	+30.5
		7.0	0	+6.0	10.6	0	+9.0	13.6	0	+12.0	21.6	0	+20.0	30.5	0	+28.0
17.72-	19.69	4.4	+1.6	+7.0	7.5	+2.5	+11.6	11.5	+2.5	+15.6	19.5	+2.5	+23.6	26.0	+4.0	+32.5
		7.0	0	+6.0	11.6	0	+10.0	15.6	0	+14.0	23.6	0	+22.0	32.5	0	+30.0

[a] Pairs of values shown represent minimum and maximum amounts of interference resulting from application of standard tolerance limits.

All data above heavy lines are in accordance with American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements. Symbols H6, H7, s6, etc., are hole and shaft designations in the ABC system. Limits for sizes above 19.69 inches are not covered by ABC agreements but are given in the ANSI/ASME standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. ANSI/ASME Standard Interference Locational Fits
ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print)

Nominal Size Range, Inches		Class LN 1			Class LN 2			Class LN 3		
		Limits of Interference	Standard Limits		Limits of Interference	Standard Limits		Limits of Interference	Standard Limits	
			Hole H6	Shaft n5		Hole H7	Shaft p6		Hole H7	Shaft r6
Over	To	Values shown below are given in thousandths of an inch								
0-	0.12	0	+0.25	+0.45	0	+0.4	+0.65	0.1	+0.4	+0.75
		0.45	0	+0.25	0.65	0	+0.4	0.75	0	+0.5
0.12-	0.24	0	+0.3	+0.5	0	+0.5	+0.8	0.1	+0.5	+0.9
		0.5	0	+0.3	0.8	0	+0.5	0.9	0	+0.6
0.24-	0.40	0	+0.4	+0.65	0	+0.6	+1.0	0.2	+0.6	+1.2
		0.65	0	+0.4	1.0	0	+0.6	1.2	0	+0.8
0.40-	0.71	0	+0.4	+0.8	0	+0.7	+1.1	0.3	+0.7	+1.4
		0.8	0	+0.4	1.1	0	+0.7	1.4	0	+1.0
0.71-	1.19	0	+0.5	+1.0	0	+0.8	+1.3	0.4	+0.8	+1.7
		1.0	0	+0.5	1.3	0	+0.8	1.7	0	+1.2
1.19-	1.97	0	+0.6	+1.1	0	+1.0	+1.6	0.4	+1.0	+2.0
		1.1	0	+0.6	1.6	0	+1.0	2.0	0	+1.4
1.97-	3.15	0.1	+0.7	+1.3	0.2	+1.2	+2.1	0.4	+1.2	+2.3
		1.3	0	+0.8	2.1	0	+1.4	2.3	0	+1.6
3.15-	4.73	0.1	+0.9	+1.6	0.2	+1.4	+2.5	0.6	+1.4	+2.9
		1.6	0	+1.0	2.5	0	+1.6	2.9	0	+2.0
4.73-	7.09	0.2	+1.0	+1.9	0.2	+1.6	+2.8	0.9	+1.6	+3.5
		1.9	0	+1.2	2.8	0	+1.8	3.5	0	+2.5
7.09-	9.85	0.2	+1.2	+2.2	0.2	+1.8	+3.2	1.2	+1.8	+4.2
		2.2	0	+1.4	3.2	0	+2.0	4.2	0	+3.0
9.85-	12.41	0.2	+1.2	+2.3	0.2	+2.0	+3.4	1.5	+2.0	+4.7
		2.3	0	+1.4	3.4	0	+2.2	4.7	0	+3.5
12.41-	15.75	0.2	+1.4	+2.6	0.3	+2.2	+3.9	2.3	+2.2	+5.9
		2.6	0	+1.6	3.9	0	+2.5	5.9	0	+4.5
15.75-	19.69	0.2	+1.6	+2.8	0.3	+2.5	+4.4	2.5	+2.5	+6.6
		2.8	0	+1.8	4.4	0	+2.8	6.6	0	+5.0

All data in this table are in accordance with American-British-Canadian (ABC) agreements.

Limits for sizes above 19.69 inches are not covered by ABC agreements but are given in the ANSI/ASME Standard.

Symbols H7, p6, etc., are hole and shaft designations in the ABC system.

Tolerance limits given in body of table are added or subtracted to basic size (as indicated by + or – sign) to obtain maximum and minimum sizes of mating parts.

ANSI/ASME Preferred Metric Limits and Fits

This standard ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009) describes the ISO system of metric limits and fits for mating parts as approved for general engineering usage in the United States.

It establishes 1) the designation symbols used to define dimensional limits on drawings, material stock, related tools, gages, etc.; 2) the preferred basic sizes (first and second choices); 3) the preferred tolerance zones (first, second, and third choices); 4) the preferred limits and fits for sizes (first choice only) up to and including 500 millimeters; and 5) the definitions of related terms.

The general terms "hole" and "shaft" can also be taken to refer to the space containing or contained by two parallel faces of any part, such as the width of a slot or the thickness of a key.

Definitions.—The most important terms relating to limits and fits are shown in Fig. 1 and are defined as follows:

Basic Size: The size to which limits of deviation are assigned. The basic size is the same for both members of a fit. For example, it is designated by the numbers 40 in 40H7.

Deviation: The algebraic difference between a size and the corresponding basic size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Upper Deviation: The algebraic difference between the maximum limit of size and the corresponding basic size.

Lower Deviation: The algebraic difference between the minimum limit of size and the corresponding basic size.

Fundamental Deviation: That one of the two deviations closest to the basic size. For example, it is designated by the letter H in 40H7.

Tolerance: The difference between the maximum and minimum size limits on a part.

Tolerance Zone: A zone representing the tolerance and its position in relation to the basic size.

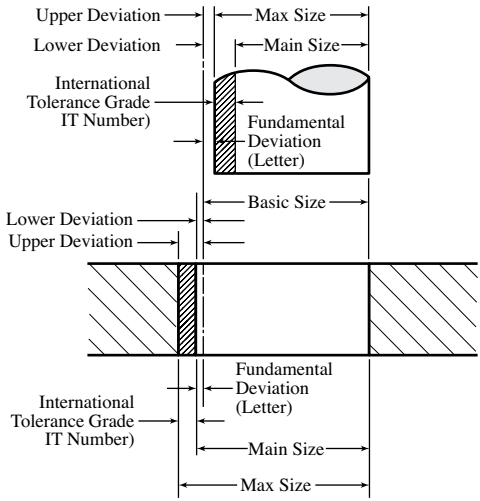


Fig. 1. Illustration of Definitions

International Tolerance Grade: (*IT*): A group of tolerances that vary depending on the basic size, but that provide the same relative level of accuracy within a given grade. For example, International Tolerance Grade is designated by the number 7 in 40H7 or as IT7.

Hole Basis: The system of fits where the minimum hole size is basic. The fundamental deviation for a hole basis system is H.

Shaft Basis: The system of fits where the maximum shaft size is basic. The fundamental deviation for a shaft basis system is h.

Clearance Fit: The relationship between assembled parts when clearance occurs under all tolerance conditions.

Interference Fit: The relationship between assembled parts when interference occurs under all tolerance conditions.

Transition Fit: The relationship between assembled parts when either a clearance or an interference fit can result, depending on the tolerance conditions of the mating parts.

Tolerances Designation.—An "International Tolerance Grade" establishes the magnitude of the tolerance zone or the amount of part size variation allowed for external and internal dimensions alike (see Fig. 1). Tolerances are expressed in grade numbers that are consistent with International Tolerance Grades identified by the prefix IT, such as IT6, IT11, etc. A smaller grade number provides a smaller tolerance zone.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A fundamental deviation establishes the position of the tolerance zone with respect to the basic size (see Fig. 1). Fundamental deviations are expressed by tolerance position letters. Capital letters are used for internal dimensions and lowercase or small letters for external dimensions.

Symbols: By combining the IT grade number and the tolerance position letter, the tolerance symbol is established that identifies the actual maximum and minimum limits of the part. The toleranced size is thus defined by the basic size of the part followed by a symbol composed of a letter and a number, such as 40H7, 40f7, etc.

A fit is indicated by the basic size common to both components, followed by a symbol corresponding to each component, the internal part symbol preceding the external part symbol, such as 40H8/f7.

Some methods of designating tolerances on drawings are:

$$40H8 \qquad 40H8\ \binom{40.039}{40.000} \qquad \binom{40.039}{40.000}\ 40H8$$

The values in parentheses indicate reference only.

Preferred Metric Fits.—First-choice tolerance zones are used to establish preferred fits in ANSI/ASME B4.2, *Preferred Metric Limits and Fits*, as shown in Fig. 2 and Fig. 3. A complete listing of first-, second-, and third- choice tolerance zones is given in the Standard.

Hole basis fits have a fundamental deviation of H on the hole, and shaft basis fits have a fundamental deviation of *h* on the shaft; they are shown in Fig. 2 for hole basis and Fig. 3 for shaft basis fits. A description of both types of fits, which have the same relative fit condition, is given in Table 1. Normally, the hole basis system is preferred; however, when a common shaft mates with several holes, the shaft basis system should be used.

The hole basis and shaft basis fits shown in the table *Description of Preferred Fits* on page 664 are combined with the first-choice preferred metric sizes from Table 1, page 688, to form Table 2, Table 3, Table 4, and Table 5, in which specific limits as well as the resultant fits are tabulated.

If the required size is not found tabulated in Table 2 through Table 5, then the preferred fit can be calculated from numerical values given in an appendix of ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009). It is anticipated that other fit conditions may be necessary to meet special requirements, and a preferred fit can be loosened or tightened simply by selecting a standard tolerance zone as given in the Standard. Information on how to calculate limit dimensions, clearances, and interferences for nonpreferred fits and sizes can be found in an appendix of this Standard.

Conversion of Fits: It may sometimes be necessary or desirable to modify the tolerance zone on one or both of two mating parts yet still keep the total tolerance and fit condition the same. Examples of this appear in Table 1 on page 664 when converting from a hole basis fit to a shaft basis fit. The corresponding fits are identical, yet the individual tolerance zones are different.

To convert from one type of fit to another, reverse the fundamental deviations between the shaft and hole, keeping the IT grade the same on each individual part. The examples below represent preferred fits from Table 1 for a 60-mm basic size. These fits have the same maximum clearance (0.520) and the same minimum clearance (0.140).

Hole basis, loose running fit, values from Table 2

$$\text{Hole } 60H11\ \binom{60.190}{60.000} \qquad \text{Shaft } 60c11\ \binom{59.860}{59.670} \qquad \text{Fit } 60H11/c11\ \binom{0.520}{0.140}$$

Hole basis, loose running fit, values from Table 4

$$\text{Hole } 60C11\ \binom{60.330}{60.140} \qquad \text{Shaft } 60h11\ \binom{60.000}{59.810} \qquad \text{Fit } 60C11/h11\ \binom{0.520}{0.140}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

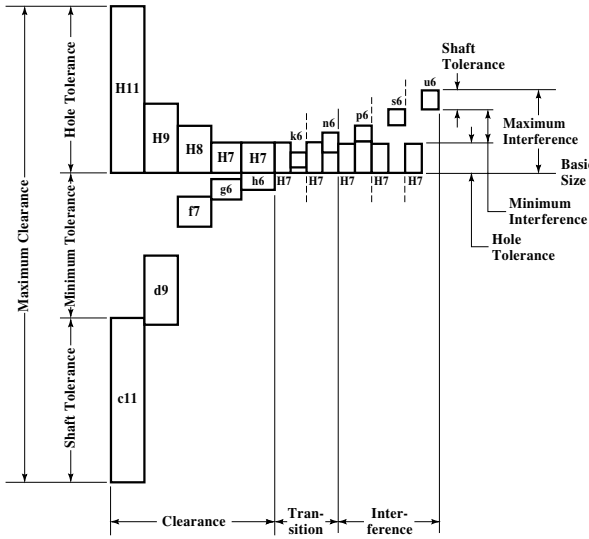


Fig. 2. Preferred Hole Basis Fits

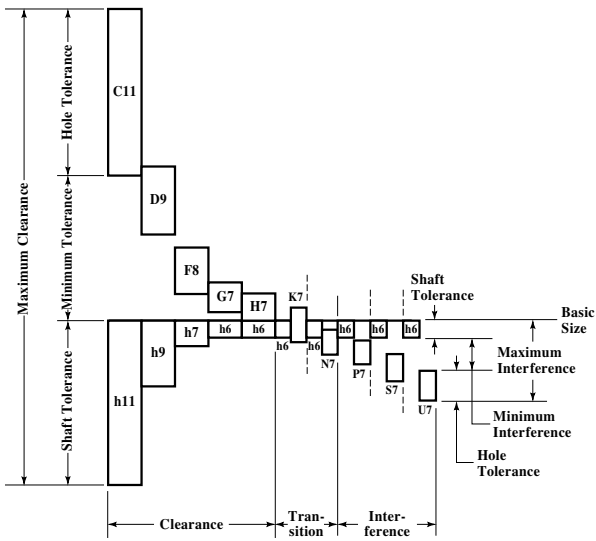


Fig. 3. Preferred Shaft Basis Fits

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Description of Preferred Fits

	ISO SYMBOL		DESCRIPTION	
	Hole Basis	Shaft Basis		
Clearance Fits	H11/c11	C11/h11	*Loose running* fit for wide commercial tolerances or allowances on external members.	↑ More Clearance
	H9/d9	D9/h9	*Free running* fit not for use where accuracy is essential, but good for large temperature variations, high running speeds, or heavy journal pressures.	
	H8/f7	F8/h7	*Close Running* fit for running on accurate machines and for accurate moderate speeds and journal pressures.	
	H7/g6	G7/h6	*Sliding fit* not intended to run freely but to move and turn freely and locate accurately.	
	H7/h6	H7/h6	*Locational clearance* fit provides snug fit for locating stationary parts but can be freely assembled and disassembled.	
Transition Fits	H7/k6	K7/h6	*Locational transition* fit for accurate location, a compromise between clearance and Interference.	
	H7/n6	N7/h6	*Locational transition* fit for more accurate location where greater interference is permissible.	
Interference Fits	H7/p6[a]	P7/h6	*Locational interference* fit for parts requiring rigidity and alignment with prime accuracy of location but without special bore pressure requirements.	More Interference ↓
	H7/s6	S7/h6	*Medium drive* fit for ordinary steel parts or shrink fits on light sections, the tightest fit usable with cast iron.	
	H7/u6	U7/h6	*Force* fit suitable for parts which can be highly stressed or for shrink fits where the heavy pressing forces required are impractical.	

[a] Transition fit for basic sizes in range from 0 through 3 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Preferred Hole Basis Metric Clearance Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Loose Running			Free Running			Close Running			Sliding			Locational Clearance		
		Hole H11	Shaft c11	Fit[b]	Hole H9	Shaft d9	Fit[b]	Hole H8	Shaft f7	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft g6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
1	Max	1.060	0.940	0.180	1.025	0.980	0.070	1.014	0.994	0.030	1.010	0.998	0.018	1.010	1.000	0.016
	Min	1.000	0.880	0.060	1.000	0.955	0.020	1.000	0.984	0.006	1.000	0.992	0.002	1.000	0.994	0.000
1.2	Max	1.260	1.140	0.180	1.225	1.180	0.070	1.214	1.194	0.030	1.210	1.198	0.018	1.210	1.200	0.016
	Min	1.200	1.080	0.060	1.200	1.155	0.020	1.200	1.184	0.006	1.200	1.192	0.002	1.200	1.194	0.000
1.6	Max	1.660	1.540	0.180	1.625	1.580	0.070	1.614	1.594	0.030	1.610	1.598	0.018	1.610	1.600	0.016
	Min	1.600	1.480	0.060	1.600	1.555	0.020	1.600	1.584	0.006	1.600	1.592	0.002	1.600	1.594	0.000
2	Max	2.060	1.940	0.180	2.025	1.980	0.070	2.014	1.994	0.030	2.010	1.998	0.018	2.010	2.000	0.016
	Min	2.000	1.880	0.060	2.000	1.955	0.020	2.000	1.984	0.006	2.000	1.992	0.002	2.000	1.994	0.000
2.5	Max	2.560	2.440	0.180	2.525	2.480	0.070	2.514	2.494	0.030	2.510	2.498	0.018	2.510	2.500	0.016
	Min	2.500	2.380	0.060	2.500	2.455	0.020	2.500	2.484	0.006	2.500	2.492	0.002	2.500	2.494	0.000
3	Max	3.060	2.940	0.180	3.025	2.980	0.070	3.014	2.994	0.030	3.010	2.998	0.018	3.010	3.000	0.016
	Min	3.000	2.880	0.060	3.000	2.955	0.020	3.000	2.984	0.006	3.000	2.992	0.002	3.000	2.994	0.000
4	Max	4.075	3.930	0.220	4.030	3.970	0.090	4.018	3.990	0.040	4.012	3.996	0.024	4.012	4.000	0.020
	Min	4.000	3.855	0.070	4.000	3.940	0.030	4.000	3.978	0.010	4.000	3.988	0.004	4.000	3.992	0.000
5	Max	5.075	4.930	0.220	5.030	4.970	0.090	5.018	4.990	0.040	5.012	4.996	0.024	5.012	5.000	0.020
	Min	5.000	4.855	0.070	5.000	4.940	0.030	5.000	4.978	0.010	5.000	4.988	0.004	5.000	4.992	0.000
6	Max	6.075	5.930	0.220	6.030	5.970	0.090	6.018	5.990	0.040	6.012	5.996	0.024	6.012	6.000	0.020
	Min	6.000	5.855	0.070	6.000	5.940	0.030	6.000	5.978	0.010	6.000	5.988	0.004	6.000	5.992	0.000
8	Max	8.090	7.920	0.260	8.036	7.960	0.112	8.022	7.987	0.050	8.015	7.995	0.029	8.015	8.000	0.024
	Min	8.000	7.830	0.080	8.000	7.924	0.040	8.000	7.972	0.013	8.000	7.986	0.005	8.000	7.991	0.000
10	Max	10.090	9.920	0.260	10.036	9.960	0.112	10.022	9.987	0.050	10.015	9.995	0.029	10.015	10.000	0.024
	Min	10.000	9.830	0.080	10.000	9.924	0.040	10.000	9.972	0.013	10.000	9.986	0.005	10.000	9.991	0.000
12	Max	12.110	11.905	0.315	12.043	11.956	0.136	12.027	11.984	0.061	12.018	11.994	0.035	12.018	12.000	0.029
	Min	12.000	11.795	0.095	12.000	11.907	0.050	12.000	11.966	0.016	12.000	11.983	0.006	12.000	11.989	0.000
16	Max	16.110	15.905	0.315	16.043	15.950	0.136	16.027	15.984	0.061	16.018	15.994	0.035	16.018	16.000	0.029
	Min	16.000	15.795	0.095	16.000	15.907	0.050	16.000	15.966	0.016	16.000	15.983	0.006	16.000	15.989	0.000
20	Max	20.130	19.890	0.370	20.052	19.935	0.169	20.033	19.980	0.074	20.021	19.993	0.041	20.021	20.000	0.034
	Min	20.000	19.760	0.110	20.000	19.883	0.065	20.000	19.959	0.020	20.000	19.980	0.007	20.000	19.987	0.000
25	Max	25.130	24.890	0.370	25.052	24.935	0.169	25.033	24.980	0.074	25.021	24.993	0.041	25.021	25.000	0.034
	Min	25.000	24.760	0.110	25.000	24.883	0.065	25.000	24.959	0.020	25.000	24.980	0.007	25.000	24.987	0.000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Preferred Hole Basis Metric Clearance Fits** *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Loose Running			Free Running			Close Running			Sliding			Locational Clearance		
		Hole H11	Shaft c11	Fit[b]	Hole H9	Shaft d9	Fit[b]	Hole H8	Shaft f7	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft g6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
30	Max	30.130	29.890	0.370	30.052	29.935	0.169	30.033	29.980	0.074	30.021	29.993	0.041	30.021	30.000	0.034
	Min	30.000	29.760	0.110	30.000	29.883	0.065	30.000	29.959	0.020	30.000	29.980	0.007	30.000	29.987	0.000
40	Max	40.160	39.880	0.440	40.062	39.920	0.204	40.039	39.975	0.089	40.025	39.991	0.050	40.025	40.000	0.041
	Min	40.000	39.720	0.120	40.000	39.858	0.080	40.000	39.950	0.025	40.000	39.975	0.009	40.000	39.984	0.000
50	Max	50.160	49.870	0.450	50.062	49.920	0.204	50.039	49.975	0.089	50.025	49.991	0.050	50.025	50.000	0.041
	Min	50.000	49.710	0.130	50.000	49.858	0.080	50.000	49.950	0.025	50.000	49.975	0.009	50.000	49.984	0.000
60	Max	60.190	59.860	0.520	60.074	59.900	0.248	60.046	59.970	0.106	60.030	59.990	0.059	60.030	60.000	0.049
	Min	60.000	59.670	0.140	60.000	59.826	0.100	60.000	59.940	0.030	60.000	59.971	0.010	60.000	59.981	0.000
80	Max	80.190	79.850	0.530	80.074	79.900	0.248	80.046	79.970	0.106	80.030	79.990	0.059	80.030	80.000	0.049
	Min	80.000	79.660	0.150	80.000	79.826	0.100	80.000	79.940	0.030	80.000	79.971	0.010	80.000	79.981	0.000
100	Max	100.220	99.830	0.610	100.087	99.880	0.294	100.054	99.964	0.125	100.035	99.988	0.069	100.035	100.000	0.057
	Min	100.000	99.610	0.170	100.000	99.793	0.120	100.000	99.929	0.036	100.000	99.966	0.012	100.000	99.978	0.000
120	Max	120.220	119.820	0.620	120.087	119.880	0.294	120.054	119.964	0.125	120.035	119.988	0.069	120.035	120.000	0.057
	Min	120.000	119.600	0.180	120.000	119.793	0.120	120.000	119.929	0.036	120.000	119.966	0.012	120.000	119.978	0.000
160	Max	160.250	159.790	0.710	160.100	159.855	0.345	160.063	159.957	0.146	160.040	159.986	0.079	160.040	160.000	0.065
	Min	160.000	159.540	0.210	160.000	159.755	0.145	160.000	159.917	0.043	160.000	159.961	0.014	160.000	159.975	0.000
200	Max	200.290	199.760	0.820	200.115	199.830	0.400	200.072	199.950	0.168	200.046	199.985	0.090	200.046	200.000	0.075
	Min	200.000	199.470	0.240	200.000	199.715	0.170	200.000	199.904	0.050	200.000	199.956	0.015	200.000	199.971	0.000
250	Max	250.290	249.720	0.860	250.115	249.830	0.400	250.072	249.950	0.168	250.046	249.985	0.090	250.046	250.000	0.075
	Min	250.000	249.430	0.280	250.000	249.715	0.170	250.000	249.904	0.050	250.000	249.956	0.015	250.000	249.971	0.000
300	Max	300.320	299.670	0.970	300.130	299.810	0.450	300.081	299.944	0.189	300.052	299.983	0.101	300.052	300.000	0.084
	Min	300.000	299.350	0.330	300.000	299.680	0.190	300.000	299.892	0.056	300.000	299.951	0.017	300.000	299.968	0.000
400	Max	400.360	399.600	1.120	400.140	399.790	0.490	400.089	399.938	0.208	400.057	399.982	0.111	400.057	400.000	0.093
	Min	400.000	399.240	0.400	400.000	399.650	0.210	400.000	399.881	0.062	400.000	399.946	0.018	400.000	399.964	0.000
500	Max	500.400	499.520	1.280	500.155	499.770	0.540	500.097	499.932	0.228	500.063	499.980	0.123	500.063	500.000	0.103
	Min	500.000	499.120	0.480	500.000	499.615	0.230	500.000	499.869	0.068	500.000	499.940	0.020	500.000	499.960	0.000

[a] The sizes shown are first-choice basic sizes (see Table 1, page 688). Preferred fits for other sizes can be calculated from data given in ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009).

[b] All fits shown in this table have clearance.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Preferred Hole Basis Metric Transition and Interference Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Locational Transition			Locational Transition			Locational Interference			Medium Drive			Force		
		Hole H7	Shaft k6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft n6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft p6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft s6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft u6	Fit[b]
1	Max	1.010	1.006	+0.010	1.010	1.010	+0.006	1.010	1.012	+0.004	1.010	1.020	–0.004	1.010	1.024	–0.008
	Min	1.000	1.000	–0.006	1.000	1.004	–0.010	1.000	1.006	–0.012	1.000	1.014	–0.020	1.000	1.018	–0.024
1.2	Max	1.210	1.206	+0.010	1.210	1.210	+0.006	1.210	1.212	+0.004	1.210	1.220	–0.004	1.210	1.224	–0.008
	Min	1.200	1.200	–0.006	1.200	1.204	–0.010	1.200	1.206	–0.012	1.200	1.214	–0.020	1.200	1.218	–0.024
1.6	Max	1.610	1.606	+0.010	1.610	1.610	+0.006	1.610	1.612	+0.004	1.610	1.620	–0.004	1.610	1.624	–0.008
	Min	1.600	1.600	–0.006	1.600	1.604	–0.010	1.600	1.606	–0.012	1.600	1.614	–0.020	1.600	1.618	–0.024
2	Max	2.010	2.006	+0.010	2.010	2.010	+0.006	2.010	2.012	+0.004	2.010	2.020	–0.004	2.010	2.024	–0.008
	Min	2.000	2.000	–0.006	2.000	2.004	–0.010	2.000	2.006	–0.012	2.000	2.014	–0.020	2.000	2.018	–0.024
2.5	Max	2.510	2.506	+0.010	2.510	2.510	+0.006	2.510	2.512	+0.004	2.510	2.520	–0.004	2.510	2.524	–0.008
	Min	2.500	2.500	–0.006	2.500	2.504	–0.010	2.500	2.506	–0.012	2.500	2.514	–0.020	2.500	2.518	–0.024
3	Max	3.010	3.006	+0.010	3.010	3.010	+0.006	3.010	3.012	+0.004	3.010	3.020	–0.004	3.010	3.024	–0.008
	Min	3.000	3.000	–0.006	3.000	3.004	–0.010	3.000	3.006	–0.012	3.000	3.014	–0.020	3.000	3.018	–0.024
4	Max	4.012	4.009	+0.011	4.012	4.016	+0.004	4.012	4.020	0.000	4.012	4.027	–0.007	4.012	4.031	–0.011
	Min	4.000	4.001	–0.009	4.000	4.008	–0.016	4.000	4.012	–0.020	4.000	4.019	–0.027	4.000	4.023	–0.031
5	Max	5.012	5.009	+0.011	5.012	5.016	+0.004	5.012	5.020	0.000	5.012	5.027	–0.007	5.012	5.031	–0.011
	Min	5.000	5.001	–0.009	5.000	5.008	–0.016	5.000	5.012	–0.020	5.000	5.019	–0.027	5.000	5.023	–0.031
6	Max	6.012	6.009	+0.011	6.012	6.016	+0.004	6.012	6.020	0.000	6.012	6.027	–0.007	6.012	6.031	–0.011
	Min	6.000	6.001	–0.009	6.000	6.008	–0.016	6.000	6.012	–0.020	6.000	6.019	–0.027	6.000	6.023	–0.031
8	Max	8.015	8.010	+0.014	8.015	8.019	+0.005	8.015	8.024	0.000	8.015	8.032	–0.008	8.015	8.037	–0.013
	Min	8.000	8.001	–0.010	8.000	8.010	–0.019	8.000	8.015	–0.024	8.000	8.023	–0.032	8.000	8.028	–0.037
10	Max	10.015	10.010	+0.014	10.015	10.019	+0.005	10.015	10.024	0.000	10.015	10.032	–0.008	10.015	10.034	–0.013
	Min	10.000	10.001	–0.010	10.000	10.010	–0.019	10.000	10.015	–0.024	10.000	10.023	–0.032	10.000	10.028	–0.037
12	Max	12.018	12.012	+0.017	12.018	12.023	+0.006	12.018	12.029	0.000	12.018	12.039	–0.010	12.018	12.044	–0.015
	Min	12.000	12.001	–0.012	12.000	12.012	–0.023	12.000	12.018	–0.029	12.000	12.028	–0.039	12.000	12.033	–0.044
16	Max	16.018	16.012	+0.017	16.018	16.023	+0.006	16.018	16.029	0.000	16.018	16.039	–0.010	16.018	16.044	–0.015
	Min	16.000	16.001	–0.012	16.000	16.012	–0.023	16.000	16.018	–0.029	16.000	16.028	–0.039	16.000	16.033	–0.044
20	Max	20.021	20.015	+0.019	20.021	20.028	+0.006	20.021	20.035	–0.001	20.021	20.048	–0.014	20.021	20.054	–0.020
	Min	20.000	20.002	–0.015	20.000	20.015	–0.028	20.000	20.022	–0.035	20.000	20.035	–0.048	20.000	20.041	–0.054
25	Max	25.021	25.015	+0.019	25.021	25.028	+0.006	25.021	25.035	–0.001	25.021	25.048	–0.014	25.021	25.061	–0.027
	Min	25.000	25.002	–0.015	25.000	25.015	–0.028	25.000	25.022	–0.035	25.000	25.035	–0.048	25.000	25.048	–0.061

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table3. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Preferred Hole Basis Metric Transition and Interference Fits** *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Locational Transition			Locational Transition			Locational Interference			Medium Drive			Force		
		Hole H7	Shaft k6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft n6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft p6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft s6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft u6	Fit[b]
30	Max	30.021	30.015	+0.019	30.021	30.028	+0.006	30.021	30.035	–0.001	30.021	30.048	–0.014	30.021	30.061	–0.027
	Min	30.000	30.002	–0.015	30.000	30.015	–0.028	30.000	30.022	–0.035	30.000	30.035	–0.048	30.000	30.048	–0.061
40	Max	40.025	40.018	+0.023	40.025	40.033	+0.008	40.025	40.042	–0.001	40.025	40.059	–0.018	40.025	40.076	–0.035
	Min	40.000	40.002	–0.018	40.000	40.017	–0.033	40.000	40.026	–0.042	40.000	40.043	–0.059	40.000	40.060	–0.076
50	Max	50.025	50.018	+0.023	50.025	50.033	+0.008	50.025	50.042	–0.001	50.025	50.059	–0.018	50.025	50.086	–0.045
	Min	50.000	50.002	–0.018	50.000	50.017	–0.033	50.000	50.026	–0.042	50.000	50.043	–0.059	50.000	50.070	–0.086
60	Max	60.030	60.021	+0.028	60.030	60.039	+0.010	60.030	60.051	–0.002	60.030	60.072	–0.023	60.030	60.106	–0.057
	Min	60.000	60.002	–0.021	60.000	60.020	–0.039	60.000	60.032	–0.051	60.000	60.053	–0.072	60.000	60.087	–0.106
80	Max	80.030	80.021	+0.028	80.030	80.039	+0.010	80.030	80.051	–0.002	80.030	80.078	–0.029	80.030	80.121	–0.072
	Min	80.000	80.002	–0.021	80.000	80.020	–0.039	80.000	80.032	–0.051	80.000	80.059	–0.078	80.000	80.102	–0.121
100	Max	100.035	100.025	+0.032	100.035	100.045	+0.012	100.035	100.059	–0.002	100.035	100.093	–0.036	100.035	100.146	–0.089
	Min	100.000	100.003	–0.025	100.000	100.023	–0.045	100.000	100.037	–0.059	100.000	100.071	–0.093	100.000	100.124	–0.146
120	Max	120.035	120.025	+0.032	120.035	120.045	+0.012	120.035	120.059	–0.002	120.035	120.101	–0.044	120.035	120.166	–0.109
	Min	120.000	120.003	–0.025	120.000	120.023	–0.045	120.000	120.037	–0.059	120.000	120.079	–0.101	120.000	120.144	–0.166
160	Max	160.040	160.028	+0.037	160.040	160.052	+0.013	160.040	160.068	–0.003	160.040	160.125	–0.060	160.040	160.215	–0.150
	Min	160.000	160.003	–0.028	160.000	160.027	–0.052	160.000	160.043	–0.068	160.000	160.100	–0.125	160.000	160.190	–0.215
200	Max	200.046	200.033	+0.042	200.046	200.060	+0.015	200.046	200.079	–0.004	200.046	200.151	–0.076	200.046	200.265	–0.190
	Min	200.000	200.004	–0.033	200.000	200.031	–0.060	200.000	200.050	–0.079	200.000	200.122	–0.151	200.000	200.236	–0.265
250	Max	250.046	250.033	+0.042	250.046	250.060	+0.015	250.046	250.079	–0.004	250.046	250.169	–0.094	250.046	250.313	–0.238
	Min	250.000	250.004	–0.033	250.000	250.031	–0.060	250.000	250.050	–0.079	250.000	250.140	–0.169	250.000	250.284	–0.313
300	Max	300.052	300.036	+0.048	300.052	300.066	+0.018	300.052	300.088	–0.004	300.052	300.202	–0.118	300.052	300.382	–0.298
	Min	300.000	300.004	–0.036	300.000	300.034	–0.066	300.000	300.056	–0.088	300.000	300.170	–0.202	300.000	300.350	–0.382
400	Max	400.057	400.040	+0.053	400.057	400.073	+0.020	400.057	400.098	–0.005	400.057	400.244	–0.151	400.057	400.471	–0.378
	Min	400.000	400.004	–0.040	400.000	400.037	–0.073	400.000	400.062	–0.098	400.000	400.208	–0.244	400.000	400.435	–0.471
500	Max	500.063	500.045	+0.058	500.063	500.080	+0.023	500.063	500.108	–0.005	500.063	500.292	–0.189	500.063	500.580	–0.477
	Min	500.000	500.005	–0.045	500.000	500.040	–0.080	500.000	500.068	–0.108	500.000	500.252	–0.292	500.000	500.540	–0.580

[a] The sizes shown are first-choice basic sizes (see Table 1, page 688). Preferred fits for other sizes can be calculated from data given in ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009).

[b] A plus sign indicates clearance; a minus sign indicates interference.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Preferred Shaft Basis Metric Clearance Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Loose Running			Free Running			Close Running			Sliding			Locational Clearance		
		Hole C11	Shaft h11	Fit[b]	Hole D9	Shaft h9	Fit[b]	Hole F8	Shaft h7	Fit[b]	Hole G7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
1	Max	1.120	1.000	0.180	1.045	1.000	0.070	1.020	1.000	0.030	1.012	1.000	0.018	1.010	1.000	0.016
	Min	1.060	0.940	0.060	1.020	0.975	0.020	1.006	0.990	0.006	1.002	0.994	0.002	1.000	0.994	0.000
1.2	Max	1.320	1.200	0.180	1.245	1.200	0.070	1.220	1.200	0.030	1.212	1.200	0.018	1.210	1.200	0.016
	Min	1.260	1.140	0.060	1.220	1.175	0.020	1.206	1.190	0.006	1.202	1.194	0.002	1.200	1.194	0.000
1.6	Max	1.720	1.600	0.180	1.645	1.600	0.070	1.620	1.600	0.030	1.612	1.600	0.018	1.610	1.600	0.016
	Min	1.660	1.540	0.060	1.620	1.575	0.020	1.606	1.590	0.006	1.602	1.594	0.002	1.600	1.594	0.000
2	Max	2.120	2.000	0.180	2.045	2.000	0.070	2.020	2.000	0.030	2.012	2.000	0.018	2.010	2.000	0.016
	Min	2.060	1.940	0.060	2.020	1.975	0.020	2.006	1.990	0.006	2.002	1.994	0.002	2.000	1.994	0.000
2.5	Max	2.620	2.500	0.180	2.545	2.500	0.070	2.520	2.500	0.030	2.512	2.500	0.018	2.510	2.500	0.016
	Min	2.560	2.440	0.060	2.520	2.475	0.020	2.506	2.490	0.006	2.502	2.494	0.002	2.500	2.494	0.000
3	Max	3.120	3.000	0.180	3.045	3.000	0.070	3.020	3.000	0.030	3.012	3.000	0.018	3.010	3.000	0.016
	Min	3.060	2.940	0.060	3.020	2.975	0.020	3.006	2.990	0.006	3.002	2.994	0.002	3.000	2.994	0.000
4	Max	4.145	4.000	0.220	4.060	4.000	0.090	4.028	4.000	0.040	4.016	4.000	0.024	4.012	4.000	0.020
	Min	4.070	3.925	0.070	4.030	3.970	0.030	4.010	3.988	0.010	4.004	3.992	0.004	4.000	3.992	0.000
5	Max	5.145	5.000	0.220	5.060	5.000	0.090	5.028	5.000	0.040	5.016	5.000	0.024	5.012	5.000	0.020
	Min	5.070	4.925	0.070	5.030	4.970	0.030	5.010	4.988	0.010	5.004	4.992	0.004	5.000	4.992	0.000
6	Max	6.145	6.000	0.220	6.060	6.000	0.090	6.028	6.000	0.040	6.016	6.000	0.024	6.012	6.000	0.020
	Min	6.070	5.925	0.070	6.030	5.970	0.030	6.010	5.988	0.010	6.004	5.992	0.004	6.000	5.992	0.000
8	Max	8.170	8.000	0.260	8.076	8.000	0.112	8.035	8.000	0.050	8.020	8.000	0.029	8.015	8.000	0.024
	Min	8.080	7.910	0.080	8.040	7.964	0.040	8.013	7.985	0.013	8.005	7.991	0.005	8.000	7.991	0.000
10	Max	10.170	10.000	0.260	10.076	10.000	0.112	10.035	10.000	0.050	10.020	10.000	0.029	10.015	10.000	0.024
	Min	10.080	9.910	0.080	10.040	9.964	0.040	10.013	9.985	0.013	10.005	9.991	0.005	10.000	9.991	0.000
12	Max	12.205	12.000	0.315	12.093	12.000	0.136	12.043	12.000	0.061	12.024	12.000	0.035	12.018	12.000	0.029
	Min	12.095	11.890	0.095	12.050	11.957	0.050	12.016	11.982	0.016	12.006	11.989	0.006	12.000	11.989	0.000
16	Max	16.205	16.000	0.315	16.093	16.000	0.136	16.043	16.000	0.061	16.024	16.000	0.035	16.018	16.000	0.029
	Min	16.095	15.890	0.095	16.050	15.957	0.050	16.016	15.982	0.016	16.006	15.989	0.006	16.000	15.989	0.000
20	Max	20.240	20.000	0.370	20.117	20.000	0.169	20.053	20.000	0.074	20.028	20.000	0.041	20.021	20.000	0.034
	Min	20.110	19.870	0.110	20.065	19.948	0.065	20.020	19.979	0.020	20.007	19.987	0.007	20.000	19.987	0.000
25	Max	25.240	25.000	0.370	25.117	25.000	0.169	25.053	25.000	0.074	25.028	25.000	0.041	25.021	25.000	0.034
	Min	25.110	24.870	0.110	25.065	24.948	0.065	25.020	24.979	0.020	25.007	24.987	0.007	25.000	24.987	0.000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Preferred Shaft Basis Metric Clearance Fits** *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Loose Running			Free Running			Close Running			Sliding			Locational Clearance		
		Hole C11	Shaft h11	Fit[b]	Hole D9	Shaft h9	Fit[b]	Hole F8	Shaft h7	Fit[b]	Hole G7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole H7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
30	Max	30.240	30.000	0.370	30.117	30.000	0.169	30.053	30.000	0.074	30.028	30.000	0.041	30.021	30.000	0.034
	Min	30.110	29.870	0.110	30.065	29.948	0.065	30.020	29.979	0.020	30.007	29.987	0.007	30.000	29.987	0.000
40	Max	40.280	40.000	0.440	40.142	40.000	0.204	40.064	40.000	0.089	40.034	40.000	0.050	40.025	40.000	0.041
	Min	40.120	39.840	0.120	40.080	39.938	0.080	40.025	39.975	0.025	40.009	39.984	0.009	40.000	39.984	0.000
50	Max	50.290	50.000	0.450	50.142	50.000	0.204	50.064	50.000	0.089	50.034	50.000	0.050	50.025	50.000	0.041
	Min	50.130	49.840	0.130	50.080	49.938	0.080	50.025	49.975	0.025	50.009	49.984	0.009	50.000	49.984	0.000
60	Max	60.330	60.000	0.520	60.174	60.000	0.248	60.076	60.000	0.106	60.040	60.000	0.059	60.030	60.000	0.049
	Min	60.140	59.810	0.140	60.100	59.926	0.100	60.030	59.970	0.030	60.010	59.981	0.010	60.000	59.981	0.000
80	Max	80.340	80.000	0.530	80.174	80.000	0.248	80.076	80.000	0.106	80.040	80.000	0.059	80.030	80.000	0.049
	Min	80.150	79.810	0.150	80.100	79.926	0.100	80.030	79.970	0.030	80.010	79.981	0.010	80.000	79.981	0.000
100	Max	100.390	100.000	0.610	100.207	100.000	0.294	100.090	100.000	0.125	100.047	100.000	0.069	100.035	100.000	0.057
	Min	100.170	99.780	0.170	100.120	99.913	0.120	100.036	99.965	0.036	100.012	99.978	0.012	100.000	99.978	0.000
120	Max	120.400	120.000	0.620	120.207	120.000	0.294	120.090	120.000	0.125	120.047	120.000	0.069	120.035	120.000	0.057
	Min	120.180	119.780	0.180	120.120	119.913	0.120	120.036	119.965	0.036	120.012	119.978	0.012	120.000	119.978	0.000
160	Max	160.460	160.000	0.710	160.245	160.000	0.345	160.106	160.000	0.146	160.054	160.000	0.079	160.040	160.000	0.065
	Min	160.210	159.750	0.210	160.145	159.900	0.145	160.043	159.960	0.043	160.014	159.975	0.014	160.000	159.975	0.000
200	Max	200.530	200.000	0.820	200.285	200.000	0.400	200.122	200.000	0.168	200.061	200.000	0.090	200.046	200.000	0.075
	Min	200.240	199.710	0.240	200.170	199.885	0.170	200.050	199.954	0.050	200.015	199.971	0.015	200.000	199.971	0.000
250	Max	250.570	250.000	0.860	250.285	250.000	0.400	250.122	250.000	0.168	250.061	250.000	0.090	250.046	250.000	0.075
	Min	250.280	249.710	0.280	250.170	249.885	0.170	250.050	249.954	0.050	250.015	249.971	0.015	250.000	249.971	0.000
300	Max	300.650	300.000	0.970	300.320	300.000	0.450	300.137	300.000	0.189	300.069	300.000	0.101	300.052	300.000	0.084
	Min	300.330	299.680	0.330	300.190	299.870	0.190	300.056	299.948	0.056	300.017	299.968	0.017	300.000	299.968	0.000
400	Max	400.760	400.000	1.120	400.350	400.000	0.490	400.151	400.000	0.208	400.075	400.000	0.111	400.057	400.000	0.093
	Min	400.400	399.640	0.400	400.210	399.860	0.210	400.062	399.943	0.062	400.018	399.964	0.018	400.000	399.964	0.000
500	Max	500.880	500.000	1.280	500.385	500.000	0.540	500.165	500.000	0.228	500.083	500.000	0.123	500.063	500.000	0.103
	Min	500.480	499.600	0.480	500.230	499.845	0.230	500.068	499.937	0.068	500.020	499.960	0.020	500.000	499.960	0.000

[a] The sizes shown are first-choice basic sizes (see Table 1, page 688). Preferred fits for other sizes can be calculated from data given in ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009).

[b] All fits shown in this table have clearance.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Preferred Shaft Basis Metric Transition and Interference Fits *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Locational Transition			Locational Transition			Locational Interference			Medium Drive			Force		
		Hole K7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole N7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole P7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole S7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole U7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
1	Max	1.000	1.000	+0.006	0.996	1.000	+0.002	0.994	1.000	0.000	0.986	1.000	–0.008	0.982	1.000	–0.012
	Min	0.990	0.994	–0.010	0.986	0.994	–0.014	0.984	0.994	–0.016	0.976	0.994	–0.024	0.972	0.994	–0.028
1.2	Max	1.200	1.200	+0.006	1.196	1.200	+0.002	1.194	1.200	0.000	1.186	1.200	–0.008	1.182	1.200	–0.012
	Min	1.190	1.194	–0.010	1.186	1.194	–0.014	1.184	1.194	–0.016	1.176	1.194	–0.024	1.172	1.194	–0.028
1.6	Max	1.600	1.600	+0.006	1.596	1.600	+0.002	1.594	1.600	0.000	1.586	1.600	–0.008	1.582	1.600	–0.012
	Min	1.590	1.594	–0.010	1.586	1.594	–0.014	1.584	1.594	–0.016	1.576	1.594	–0.024	1.572	1.594	–0.028
2	Max	2.000	2.000	+0.006	1.996	2.000	+0.002	1.994	2.000	0.000	1.986	2.000	–0.008	1.982	2.000	–0.012
	Min	1.990	1.994	–0.010	1.986	1.994	–0.014	1.984	1.994	–0.016	1.976	1.994	–0.024	1.972	1.994	–0.028
2.5	Max	2.500	2.500	+0.006	2.496	2.500	+0.002	2.494	2.500	0.000	2.486	2.500	–0.008	2.482	2.500	–0.012
	Min	2.490	2.494	–0.010	2.486	2.494	–0.014	2.484	2.494	–0.016	2.476	2.494	–0.024	2.472	2.494	–0.028
3	Max	3.000	3.000	+0.006	2.996	3.000	+0.002	2.994	3.000	0.000	2.986	3.000	–0.008	2.982	3.000	–0.012
	Min	2.990	2.994	–0.010	2.986	2.994	–0.014	2.984	2.994	–0.016	2.976	2.994	–0.024	2.972	2.994	–0.028
4	Max	4.003	4.000	+0.011	3.996	4.000	+0.004	3.992	4.000	0.000	3.985	4.000	–0.007	3.981	4.000	–0.011
	Min	3.991	3.992	–0.009	3.984	3.992	–0.016	3.980	3.992	–0.020	3.973	3.992	–0.027	3.969	3.992	–0.031
5	Max	5.003	5.000	+0.011	4.996	5.000	+0.004	4.992	5.000	0.000	4.985	5.000	–0.007	4.981	5.000	–0.011
	Min	4.991	4.992	–0.009	4.984	4.992	–0.016	4.980	4.992	–0.020	4.973	4.992	–0.027	4.969	4.992	–0.031
6	Max	6.003	6.000	+0.011	5.996	6.000	+0.004	5.992	6.000	0.000	5.985	6.000	–0.007	5.981	6.000	–0.011
	Min	5.991	5.992	–0.009	5.984	5.992	–0.016	5.980	5.992	–0.020	5.973	5.992	–0.027	5.969	5.992	–0.031
8	Max	8.005	8.000	+0.014	7.996	8.000	+0.005	7.991	8.000	0.000	7.983	8.000	–0.008	7.978	8.000	–0.013
	Min	7.990	7.991	–0.010	7.981	7.991	–0.019	7.976	7.991	–0.024	7.968	7.991	–0.032	7.963	7.991	–0.037
10	Max	10.005	10.000	+0.014	9.996	10.000	+0.005	9.991	10.000	0.000	9.983	10.000	–0.008	9.978	10.000	–0.013
	Min	9.990	9.991	–0.010	9.981	9.991	–0.019	9.976	9.991	–0.024	9.968	9.991	–0.032	9.963	9.991	–0.037
12	Max	12.006	12.000	+0.017	11.995	12.000	+0.006	11.989	12.000	0.000	11.979	12.000	–0.010	11.974	12.000	–0.015
	Min	11.988	11.989	–0.012	11.977	11.989	–0.023	11.971	11.989	–0.029	11.961	11.989	–0.039	11.956	11.989	–0.044
16	Max	16.006	16.000	+0.017	15.995	16.000	+0.006	15.989	16.000	0.000	15.979	16.000	–0.010	15.974	16.000	–0.015
	Min	15.988	15.989	–0.012	15.977	15.989	–0.023	15.971	15.989	–0.029	15.961	15.989	–0.039	15.956	15.989	–0.044
20	Max	20.006	20.000	+0.019	19.993	20.000	+0.006	19.986	20.000	–0.001	19.973	20.000	–0.014	19.967	20.000	–0.020
	Min	19.985	19.987	–0.015	19.972	19.987	–0.028	19.965	19.987	–0.035	19.952	19.987	–0.048	19.946	19.987	–0.054
25	Max	25.006	25.000	+0.019	24.993	25.000	+0.006	24.986	25.000	–0.001	24.973	25.000	–0.014	24.960	25.000	–0.027
	Min	24.985	24.987	–0.015	24.972	24.987	–0.028	24.965	24.987	–0.035	24.952	24.987	–0.048	24.939	24.987	–0.061

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Preferred Shaft Basis Metric Transition and Interference Fits** *ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)*

Basic Size[a]		Locational Transition			Locational Transition			Locational Interference			Medium Drive			Force		
		Hole K7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole N7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole P7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole S7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]	Hole U7	Shaft h6	Fit[b]
30	Max	30.006	30.000	+0.019	29.993	30.000	+0.006	29.986	30.000	–0.001	29.973	30.000	–0.014	29.960	30.000	–0.027
	Min	29.985	29.987	–0.015	29.972	29.987	–0.028	29.965	29.987	–0.035	29.952	29.987	–0.048	29.939	29.987	–0.061
40	Max	40.007	40.000	+0.023	39.992	40.000	+0.008	39.983	40.000	–0.001	39.966	40.000	–0.018	39.949	40.000	–0.035
	Min	39.982	39.984	–0.018	39.967	39.984	–0.033	39.958	39.984	–0.042	39.941	39.984	–0.059	39.924	39.984	–0.076
50	Max	50.007	50.000	+0.023	49.992	50.000	+0.008	49.983	50.000	–0.001	49.966	50.000	–0.018	49.939	50.000	–0.045
	Min	49.982	49.984	–0.018	49.967	49.984	–0.033	49.958	49.984	–0.042	49.941	49.984	–0.059	49.914	49.984	–0.086
60	Max	60.009	60.000	+0.028	59.991	60.000	+0.010	59.979	60.000	–0.002	59.958	60.000	–0.023	59.924	60.000	–0.087
	Min	59.979	59.981	–0.021	59.961	59.981	–0.039	59.949	59.981	–0.051	59.928	59.981	–0.072	59.894	59.981	–0.106
80	Max	80.009	80.000	+0.028	79.991	80.000	+0.010	79.979	80.000	–0.002	79.952	80.000	–0.029	79.909	80.000	–0.072
	Min	79.979	79.981	–0.021	79.961	79.981	–0.039	79.949	79.981	–0.051	79.922	79.981	–0.078	79.879	79.981	–0.121
100	Max	100.010	100.000	+0.032	99.990	100.000	+0.012	99.976	100.000	–0.002	99.942	100.000	–0.036	99.889	100.000	–0.089
	Min	99.975	99.978	–0.025	99.955	99.978	–0.045	99.941	99.978	–0.059	99.907	99.978	–0.093	99.854	99.978	–0.146
120	Max	120.010	120.000	+0.032	119.990	120.000	+0.012	119.976	120.000	–0.002	119.934	120.000	–0.044	119.869	120.000	–0.109
	Min	119.975	119.978	–0.025	119.955	119.978	–0.045	119.941	119.978	–0.059	119.899	119.978	–0.101	119.834	119.978	–0.166
160	Max	160.012	160.000	+0.037	159.988	160.000	+0.013	159.972	160.000	–0.003	159.915	160.000	–0.060	159.825	160.000	–0.150
	Min	159.972	159.975	–0.028	159.948	159.975	–0.052	159.932	159.975	–0.068	159.875	159.975	–0.125	159.785	159.975	–0.215
200	Max	200.013	200.00	+0.042	199.986	200.000	+0.015	199.967	200.000	–0.004	199.895	200.000	–0.076	199.781	200.000	–0.190
	Min	199.967	199.971	–0.033	199.940	199.971	–0.060	199.921	199.971	–0.079	199.849	199.971	–0.151	199.735	199.971	–0.265
250	Max	250.013	250.000	+0.042	249.986	250.000	+0.015	249.967	250.000	–0.004	249.877	250.000	–0.094	249.733	250.000	–0.238
	Min	249.967	249.971	–0.033	249.940	249.971	–0.060	249.921	249.971	–0.079	249.831	249.971	–0.169	249.687	249.971	–0.313
300	Max	300.016	300.000	+0.048	299.986	300.000	+0.018	299.964	300.000	–0.004	299.850	300.000	–0.118	299.670	300.000	–0.298
	Min	299.964	299.968	–0.036	299.934	299.968	–0.066	299.912	299.968	–0.088	299.798	299.968	–0.202	299.618	299.968	–0.382
400	Max	400.017	400.000	+0.053	399.984	400.000	+0.020	399.959	400.000	–0.005	399.813	400.000	–0.151	399.586	400.000	–0.378
	Min	399.960	399.964	–0.040	399.927	399.964	–0.073	399.902	399.964	–0.098	399.756	399.964	–0.244	399.529	399.964	–0.471
500	Max	500.018	500.000	+0.058	499.983	500.000	+0.023	499.955	500.000	–0.005	499.771	500.000	–0.189	499.483	500.000	–0.477
	Min	499.955	499.960	–0.045	499.920	499.960	–0.080	499.892	499.960	–0.108	499.708	499.960	–0.292	499.420	499.960	–0.580

[a] The sizes shown are first-choice basic sizes (see Table 1, page 688). Preferred fits for other sizes can be calculated from data given in ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009).

[b] A plus sign indicates clearance; a minus sign indicates interference.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Gagemakers Tolerances
ANSI B4.4M-1981 (Withdrawn)

Gagemakers Tolerance			Workpiece Tolerance	
	Class	ISO Symbol[a]	IT Grade	Recommended Gage Usage
Rejection of Good Parts Increase ↑	ZM	0.05 IT11	IT11	Low-precision gages recommended to be used to inspect workpieces held to internal (hole) tolerances C11 and H11 and to external (shaft) tolerances c11 and h11.
	YM	0.05 IT9	IT9	Gages recommended to be used to inspect workpieces held to internal (hole) tolerances D9 and H9 and to external (shaft) tolerances d9 and h9.
	XM	0.05 IT8	IT8	Precision gages recommended to be used to inspect workpieces held to internal (hole) tolerances F8 and H8.
Gage Cost Increase ↓	XXM	0.05 IT7	IT7	Recommended to be used for gages to inspect workpieces held to internal (hole) tolerances G7, H7, K7, N7, P7, S7, and U7, and to external (shaft) tolerances f7 and h7.
	XXXM	0.05 IT6	IT6	High-precision gages recommended to be used to inspect workpieces held to external (shaft) tolerances g6, h6, k6, n6, p6, s6, and u6.

[a] Gagemakers tolerance is equal to 5 percent of workpiece tolerance or 5 percent of applicable IT grade value. See Table 7.

For workpiece tolerance class values, see previous Table 2 through Table 5, inclusive.

Table 7. American National Standard Gagemakers Tolerances
ANSI B4.4M-1981 (Withdrawn)

Basic Size		Class ZM	Class YM	Class XM	Class XXM	Class XXXM
Over	To	0.05 IT11	0.05 IT9	0.05 IT8	0.05 IT7	0.05 IT6
0	3	0.0030	0.0012	0.0007	0.0005	0.0003
3	6	0.0037	0.0015	0.0009	0.0006	0.0004
6	10	0.0045	0.0018	0.0011	0.0007	0.0005
10	18	0.0055	0.0021	0.0013	0.0009	0.0006
18	30	0.0065	0.0026	0.0016	0.0010	0.0007
30	50	0.0080	0.0031	0.0019	0.0012	0.0008
50	80	0.0095	0.0037	0.0023	0.0015	0.0010
80	120	0.0110	0.0043	0.0027	0.0017	0.0011
120	180	0.0125	0.0050	0.0031	0.0020	0.0013
180	250	0.0145	0.0057	0.0036	0.0023	0.0015
250	315	0.0160	0.0065	0.0040	0.0026	0.0016
315	400	0.0180	0.0070	0.0044	0.0028	0.0018
400	500	0.0200	0.0077	0.0048	0.0031	0.0020

All dimensions are in millimeters. For closer gagemakers tolerance classes than Class XXXM, specify 5 percent of IT5, IT4, or IT3 and use the designation 0.05 IT5, 0.05 IT4, etc.

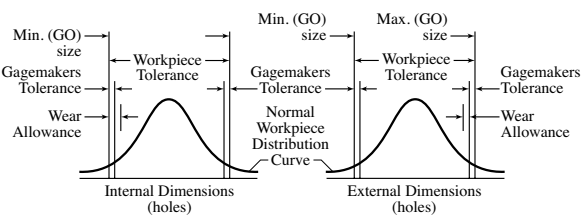


Fig. 4. Relationship between Gagemakers Tolerance, Wear Allowance and Workpiece Tolerance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Applications

Many factors such as length of engagement, bearing load, speed, lubrication, operating temperatures, humidity, surface texture, and materials must be taken into account in fit selections for a particular application.

Choice of other than the preferred fits might be considered necessary to satisfy extreme conditions. Subsequent adjustments might also be desired as the result of experience in a particular application to suit critical functional requirements or to permit optimum manufacturing economy. Selection of a departure from these recommendations will depend upon consideration of the engineering and economic factors that might be involved; however, the benefits to be derived from the use of preferred fits should not be overlooked.

A general guide to machining processes that may normally be expected to produce work within the tolerances indicated by the IT grades given in ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009) is shown in Table 8. Practical usage of the various IT tolerance grades is shown in Table 9.

Table 8. Relation of Machining Processes to IT Tolerance Grades

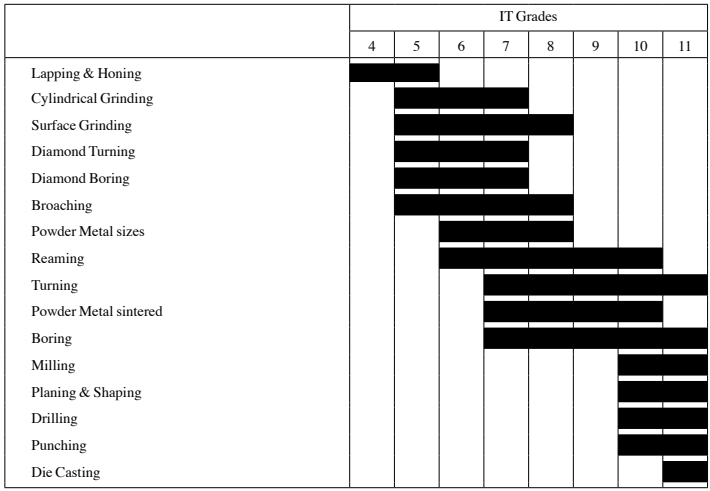


Table 9. Practical Use of International Tolerance Grades

	For Measuring Tools								For Material									
IT Grades	01	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
	For Fits									For Large Manufacturing Tolerances								

ISO Metric Limits and Fits

Based on ISO Recommendation R286, this British Standard BS 4500:1969 is intended to provide a comprehensive range of metric limits and fits for engineering purposes, and meets the requirements of metrication in the United Kingdom. Sizes up to 3,150 mm are covered by the Standard, but the condensed information presented here embraces dimensions up to 500 mm only. The system is based on a series of tolerances graded to suit all classes of work from the finest to the most coarse, and the different types of fits that can be obtained range from coarse clearance to heavy interference. In the Standard, only cylindrical parts, designated holes and shafts are referred to explicitly, but it is emphasized that the recommendations

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

apply equally well to other sections, and the general terms *hole* and *shaft* can be taken to mean the space contained by or containing two parallel faces or tangent planes of any part, such as the width of a slot or the thickness of a key. It is also strongly emphasized that the grades series of tolerances are intended for the most general application and should be used wherever possible whether the features of the component involved are members of a fit or not.

Definitions.—The definitions given in the Standard include the following:

Limits of Size: The maximum and minimum sizes permitted for a feature.

Basic Size: The reference size to which the limits of size are fixed. The basic size is the same for both members of a fit.

Upper Deviation: The algebraic difference between the maximum limit of size and the corresponding basic size. It is designated as "ES" for a hole and as "es" for a shaft, which stands for the French term *écart supérieur.*

Lower Deviation: The algebraic difference between the minimum limit of size and the corresponding basic size. It is designated as "EI" for a hole and as "ei" for a shaft, which stands for the French term *écart inférieur.*

Zero Line: In a graphical representation of limits and fits, the straight line to which the deviations are referred. The zero line is the line of zero deviation and represents the basic size.

Tolerance: The difference between the maximum limit of size and the minimum limit of size. It is an absolute value without sign.

Tolerance Zone: In a graphical representation of tolerances, the zone comprised between the two lines representing the limits of tolerance and defined by its magnitude (tolerance) and by its position in relation to the zero line.

Fundamental Deviation: That one of the two deviations, being the one nearest to the zero line, which is conventionally chosen to define the position of the tolerance zone in relation to the zero line.

Shaft-Basis System of Fits: A system of fits in which the different clearances and interferences are obtained by associating various holes with a single shaft. In the ISO system, the basic shaft is the shaft the upper deviation of which is zero.

Hole-Basis System of Fits: A system of fits in which the different clearances and interferences are obtained by associating various shafts with a single hole. In the ISO system, the basic hole is the hole the lower deviation of which is zero.

Selected Limits of Tolerance, and Fits.—The number of fit combinations that can be built up with the ISO system is very large. However, experience shows that the majority of fits required for usual engineering products can be provided by a limited selection of tolerances. Limits of tolerance for selected holes are shown in Table 1 and for shafts in Table 2. Selected fits, based on combinations of the selected hole and shaft tolerances, are given in Table 3.

Tolerances and Fundamental Deviations.—There are 18 tolerance grades intended to meet the requirements of different classes of work, and they are designated IT01, IT0, and IT1 to IT16. (IT stands for ISO series of tolerances.) Table 4 shows the standardized numerical values for the 18 tolerance grades, which are known as standard tolerances. The system provides 27 fundamental deviations for sizes up to and including 500 mm, and Table 5a and Table 5b contain the values for shafts and Table 6a and Table 6b for holes. Uppercase (capital) letters designate hole deviations, and the same letters in lower case designate shaft deviations. The deviation j_s (J_s for holes) is provided to meet the need for symmetrical bilateral tolerances. In this instance, there is no fundamental deviation, and the tolerance zone, of whatever magnitude, is equally disposed about the zero line.

Calculated Limits of Tolerance.—The deviations and fundamental tolerances provided by the ISO system can be combined in any way that appears necessary to give a required fit. Thus, for example, the deviations H (basic hole) and f (clearance shaft) could

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be associated, and with each of these deviations any one of the tolerance grades IT01 to IT16 could be used. All the limits of tolerance that the system is capable of providing for sizes up to and including 500 mm can be calculated from the standard tolerances given in Table 4, and the fundamental deviations given in Table 5a, Table 5b, Table 6a and Table 6b. The range includes limits of tolerance for shafts and holes used in small high-precision work and horology.

The system provides for the use of either hole-basis or shaft-basis fits, and the Standard includes details of procedures for converting from one type of fit to the other.

The limits of tolerance for a shaft or hole are designated by the appropriate letter indicating the fundamental deviation, followed by a suffix number denoting the tolerance grade. This suffix number is the numerical part of the tolerance grade designation. Thus, a hole tolerance with deviation H and tolerance grade IT7 is designated H7. Likewise, a shaft with deviation p and tolerance grade IT6 is designated p6. The limits of size of a component feature are defined by the basic size, say, 45 mm, followed by the appropriate tolerance designation, for example, 45 H7 or 45 p6. A fit is indicated by combining the basic size common to both features with the designation appropriate to each of them, for example, 45 H7-p6 or 45 H7/p6.

When calculating the limits of size for a shaft, the upper deviation es, or the lower deviation ei, is first obtained from Table 5a or Table 5b, depending on the particular letter designation, and nominal dimension. If an upper deviation has been determined, the lower deviation ei = es – IT. The IT value is obtained from Table 4 for the particular tolerance grade being applied. If a lower deviation has been obtained from Table 5a or Table 5b, the upper deviation es = ei + IT. When the upper deviation ES has been determined for a hole from Table 6a or Table 6b, the lower deviation EI = ES – IT. If a lower deviation EI has been obtained from Table 6a, then the upper deviation ES = EI + IT.

The upper deviations for holes K, M, and N with tolerance grades up to and including IT8, and for holes P to ZC with tolerance grades up to and including IT7 must be calculated by adding the delta (Δ) values given in Table 6b as indicated.

Example 1: The limits of size for a part of 133 mm basic size with a tolerance designation g9 are derived as follows:

From Table 5a, the upper deviation (es) is – 0.014 mm. From Table 4, the tolerance grade (IT9) is 0.100 mm. The lower deviation (ei) = es – IT = 0.114 mm, and the limits of size are thus 132.986 and 132.886 mm.

Example 2: The limits of size for a part 20 mm in size, with tolerance designation D3, are derived as follows: From Table 6a, the lower deviation (EI) is + 0.065 mm. From Table 4, the tolerance grade (IT3) is 0.004 mm. The upper deviation (ES) = EI + IT = 0.069 mm, and thus the limits of size for the part are 20.069 and 20.065 mm.

Example 3: The limits of size for a part 32 mm in size, with tolerance designation M5, which involves a delta value, are obtained as follows: From Table 6a, the upper deviation ES is – 0.009 mm + Δ = –0.005 mm. (The delta value given at the end of Table 6b for this size and grade IT5 is 0.004 mm.) From Table 4, the tolerance grade (IT5) is 0.011 mm. The lower deviation (EI) = ES – IT = – 0.016 mm, and thus the limits of size for the part are 31.995 and 31.984 mm.

Where the designations h and H or j_s and J_s are used, it is only necessary to refer to Table 4. For h and H, the fundamental deviation is always zero, and the disposition of the tolerance is always negative (–) for a shaft and positive (+) for a hole.

Example 4: The limits for a part 40 mm in size, designated h8 are derived as follows: From Table 4, the tolerance grade (IT8) is 0.039 mm, and the limits are therefore 40.000 and 39.961 mm.

Example 5: The limits for a part 60 mm in size, designated j_s7 or J_s7 are derived as follows: From Table 4, the tolerance grade (IT7) is 0.030 mm, and this value is divided equally about the basic size to give limits of 60.015 and 59.985 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. British Standard Limits of Tolerance for Selected Holes (Upper and Lower Deviations) *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		H7		H8		H9		H11	
Over	Up to and Including	ES +	EI	ES +	EI	ES +	EI	ES +	EI
…	3	10	0	14	0	25	0	60	0
3	6	12	0	18	0	30	0	75	0
6	10	15	0	22	0	36	0	90	0
10	18	18	0	27	0	43	0	110	0
18	30	21	0	33	0	52	0	130	0
30	50	25	0	39	0	62	0	160	0
50	80	30	0	46	0	74	0	190	0
80	120	35	0	54	0	87	0	220	0
120	180	40	0	63	0	100	0	250	0
180	250	46	0	72	0	115	0	290	0
250	315	52	0	81	0	130	0	320	0
315	400	57	0	89	0	140	0	360	0
400	500	63	0	97	0	155	0	400	0

ES = Upper deviation, EI = Lower deviation.

The dimensions are given in 0.001 mm, except for the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.

Table 2. British Standard Limits of Tolerance for Selected Shafts (Upper and Lower Deviations) *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		c11		d10		e9		f7		g6		h6		k6		n6		p6		s6	
Over	Up to and Incl.	es −	ei −	es −	ei −	es −	ei −	es −	ei −	es −	ei −	es −	ei −	es +	ei +	es +	ei +	es +	ei +	es +	ei +
…	3	60	120	20	60	14	39	6	16	2	8	0	6	6	0	10	4	12	6	20	14
3	6	70	145	30	78	20	50	10	22	4	12	0	8	9	1	16	8	20	12	27	19
6	10	80	170	40	98	25	61	13	28	5	14	0	9	10	1	19	10	24	15	32	23
10	18	95	205	50	120	32	75	16	34	6	17	0	11	12	1	23	12	29	18	39	28
18	30	110	240	65	149	40	92	20	41	7	20	0	13	15	2	28	15	35	22	48	35
30	40	120	280	80	180	50	112	25	50	9	25	0	16	18	2	33	17	42	26	59	43
40	50	130	290	80	180	50	112	25	50	9	25	0	16	18	2	33	17	42	26	59	43
50	65	140	330	100	220	60	134	30	60	10	29	0	19	21	2	39	20	51	32	72	53
65	80	150	340	100	220	60	134	30	60	10	29	0	19	21	2	39	20	51	32	78	59
80	100	170	390	120	260	72	159	36	71	12	34	0	22	25	3	45	23	59	37	93	71
100	120	180	400	120	260	72	159	36	71	12	34	0	22	25	3	45	23	59	37	101	79
120	140	200	450	145	305	85	185	43	83	14	39	0	25	28	3	52	27	68	43	117	92
140	160	210	460	145	305	85	185	43	83	14	39	0	25	28	3	52	27	68	43	125	100
160	180	230	480	145	305	85	185	43	83	14	39	0	25	28	3	52	27	68	43	133	108
180	200	240	530	170	355	100	215	50	96	15	44	0	29	33	4	60	31	79	50	151	122
200	225	260	550	170	355	100	215	50	96	15	44	0	29	33	4	60	31	79	50	159	130
225	250	280	570	170	355	100	215	50	96	15	44	0	29	33	4	60	31	79	50	169	140
250	280	300	620	190	400	110	240	56	108	17	49	0	32	36	4	66	34	88	56	190	158
280	315	330	650	190	400	110	240	56	108	17	49	0	32	36	4	66	34	88	56	202	170
315	355	360	720	210	440	125	265	62	119	18	54	0	36	40	4	73	37	98	62	226	190
355	400	400	760	210	440	125	265	62	119	18	54	0	36	40	4	73	37	98	62	244	208
400	450	440	840	230	480	135	290	68	131	20	60	0	40	45	5	80	40	108	68	272	232
450	500	480	880	230	480	135	290	68	131	20	60	0	40	45	5	80	40	108	68	292	252

es = Upper deviation, ei = Lower deviation.

The dimensions are given in 0.001 mm, except for the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. British Standard Selected Fits, Minimum and Maximum Clearances *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		H11—c11		H9—d10		H9—e9		H8—f7		H7—g6		H7—h6		H7—k6		H7—n6		H7—p6		H7—s6	
Over	Up to and Including	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
…	3	60	180	20	85	14	64	6	30	2	18	0	16	–6	+10	–10	+6	–12	+4	–20	–4
3	6	70	220	30	108	20	80	10	40	4	24	0	20	–9	+11	–16	+4	–20	0	–27	–7
6	10	80	260	40	134	25	97	13	50	5	29	0	24	–10	+14	–19	+5	–24	0	–32	–8
10	18	95	315	50	163	32	118	16	61	6	35	0	29	–12	+17	–23	+6	–29	0	–39	–10
18	30	110	370	65	201	40	144	20	74	7	41	0	34	–15	+19	–28	+6	–35	–1	–48	–14
30	40	120	440	80	242	50	174	25	89	9	50	0	41	–18	+23	–33	+8	–42	–1	–59	–18
40	50	130	450	80	242	50	174	25	89	9	50	0	41	–18	+23	–33	+8	–42	–1	–59	–18
50	65	140	520	100	294	60	208	30	106	10	59	0	49	–21	+28	–39	+10	–51	–2	–72	–23
65	80	150	530	100	294	60	208	30	106	10	59	0	49	–21	+28	–39	+10	–51	–2	–78	–29
80	100	170	610	120	347	72	246	36	125	12	69	0	57	–25	+32	–45	+12	–59	–2	–93	–36
100	120	180	620	120	347	72	246	36	125	12	69	0	57	–25	+32	–45	+12	–59	–2	–101	–44
120	140	200	700	145	405	85	285	43	146	14	79	0	65	–28	+37	–52	+13	–68	–3	–117	–52
140	160	210	710	145	405	85	285	43	146	14	79	0	65	–28	+37	–52	+13	–68	–3	–125	–60
160	180	230	730	145	405	85	285	43	146	14	79	0	65	–28	+37	–52	+13	–68	–3	–133	–68
180	200	240	820	170	470	100	330	50	168	15	90	0	75	–33	+42	–60	+15	–79	–4	–151	–76
200	225	260	840	170	470	100	330	50	168	15	90	0	75	–33	+42	–60	+15	–79	–4	–159	–84
225	250	280	860	170	470	100	330	50	168	15	90	0	75	–33	+42	–60	+15	–79	–4	–169	–94
250	280	300	940	190	530	110	370	56	189	17	101	0	84	–36	+48	–66	+18	–88	–4	–190	–126
280	315	330	970	190	530	110	370	56	189	17	101	0	84	–36	+48	–66	+18	–88	–4	–202	–112
315	355	360	1080	210	580	125	405	62	208	18	111	0	93	–40	–53	–73	+20	–98	–5	–226	–133
355	400	400	1120	210	580	125	405	62	208	18	111	0	93	–40	–53	–73	+20	–98	–5	–244	–151
400	450	440	1240	230	635	135	445	68	228	20	123	0	103	–45	+58	–80	+23	–108	–5	–272	–169
450	500	480	1280	230	635	135	445	68	228	20	123	0	103	–45	+58	–80	+23	–108	–5	–292	–189

The dimensions are given in 0.001 mm, except for the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.
Minus (–) sign indicates negative clearance, i.e., interference.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. British Standard Limits and Fits *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		Tolerance Grades																	
Over	To	IT 01	IT 0	IT 1	IT 2	IT 3	IT 4	IT 5	IT 6	IT 7	IT 8	T 9	IT 10	IT 11	IT 12	IT 13	IT 14 [a]	IT 15 [a]	IT 16 [a]
…	3	0.3	0.5	0.8	1.2	2	3	4	6	10	14	25	40	60	100	140	250	400	600
3	6	0.4	0.6	1	1.5	2.5	4	5	8	12	18	30	48	75	120	180	300	480	750
6	10	0.4	0.6	1	1.5	2.5	4	6	9	15	22	36	58	90	150	220	360	580	900
10	18	0.5	0.8	1.2	2	3	5	8	11	18	27	43	70	110	180	270	430	700	1100
18	30	0.6	1	1.5	2.5	4	6	9	13	21	33	52	84	130	210	330	520	840	1300
30	50	0.6	1	1.5	2.5	4	7	11	16	25	39	62	100	160	250	390	620	1000	1600
50	80	0.8	1.2	2	3	5	8	13	19	30	46	74	120	190	300	460	740	1200	1900
80	120	1	1.5	2.5	4	6	10	15	22	35	54	87	140	220	350	540	870	1400	2200
120	180	1.2	2	3.5	5	8	12	18	25	40	63	100	160	250	400	630	1000	1600	2500
180	250	2	3	4.5	7	10	14	20	29	46	72	115	185	290	460	720	1150	1850	2900
250	315	2.5	4	6	8	12	16	23	32	52	81	130	210	320	520	810	1300	2100	3200
315	400	3	5	7	9	13	18	25	36	57	89	140	230	360	570	890	1400	2300	3600
400	500	4	6	8	10	15	20	27	40	63	97	155	250	400	630	970	1550	2500	4000

[a] Not applicable to sizes below 1 mm.

The dimensions are given in 0.001 mm, except for the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. British Standard Fundamental Deviations for Shafts *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		Grade																
		01 to 16												5–6	7	8	4–7	≤3 >7
		Fundamental (Upper) Deviation es												Fundamental (Lower) Deviation ei				
Over	To	a[a]	b[a]	c	cd	d	e	ef	f	fg	g	h	js[b]	j			k	
…	3	–270	–140	–60	–34	–20	–14	–10	–6	–4	–2	0		–2	–4	–6	0	0
3	6	–270	–140	–70	–46	–30	–20	–14	–10	–6	–4	0		–2	–4	…	+1	0
6	10	–280	–150	–80	–56	–40	–25	–18	–13	–8	–5	0		–2	–5	…	+1	0
10	14	–290	–150	–95	…	–50	–32	…	–16	…	–6	0		–3	–6	…	+1	0
14	18	–290	–150	–95	…	–50	–32	…	–16	…	–6	0		–3	–6	…	+1	0
18	24	–300	–160	–110	…	–65	–40	…	–20	…	–7	0		–4	–8	…	+2	0
24	30	–300	–160	–110	…	–65	–40	…	–20	…	–7	0		–4	–8	…	+2	0
30	40	–310	–170	–120	…	–80	–50	…	–25	…	–9	0		–5	–10	…	+2	0
40	50	–320	–180	–130	…	–80	–50	…	–25	…	–9	0		–5	–10	…	+2	0
50	65	–340	–190	–140	…	–100	–60	…	–30	…	–10	0		–7	–12	…	+2	0
65	80	–360	–200	–150	…	–100	–60	…	–30	…	–10	0		–7	–12	…	+2	0
80	100	–380	–220	–170	…	–120	–72	…	–36	…	–12	0		–9	–15	…	+3	0
100	120	–410	–240	–180	…	–120	–72	…	–36	…	–12	0	±IT/2	–9	–15	…	+3	0
120	140	–460	–260	–200	…	–145	–85	…	–43	…	–14	0		–11	–18	…	+3	0
140	160	–520	–280	–210	…	–145	–85	…	–43	…	–14	0		–11	–18	…	+3	0
160	180	–580	–310	–230	…	–145	–85	…	–43	…	–14	0		–11	–18	…	+3	0
180	200	–660	–340	–240	…	–170	–100	…	–50	…	–15	0		–13	–21	…	+4	0
200	225	–740	–380	–260	…	–170	–100	…	–50	…	–15	0		–13	–21	…	+4	0
225	250	–820	–420	–280	…	–170	–100	…	–50	…	–15	0		–13	–21	…	+4	0
250	280	–920	–480	–300	…	–190	–110	…	–56	…	–17	0		–16	–26	…	+4	0
280	315	–1050	–540	–330	…	–190	–110	…	–56	…	–17	0		–16	–26	…	+4	0
315	355	–1200	–600	–360	…	–210	–125	…	–62	…	–18	0		–18	–28	…	+4	0
355	400	–1350	–680	–400	…	–210	–125	…	–62	…	–18	0		–18	–28	…	+4	0
400	450	–1500	–760	–440	…	–230	–135	…	–68	…	–20	0		–20	–32	…	+5	0
450	500	–1650	–840	–480	…	–230	–135	…	–68	…	–20	0		–20	–32	…	+5	0

[a] Not applicable to sizes up to 1 mm.

[b] In grades 7 to 11, the two symmetrical deviations ±IT/2 should be rounded if the IT value in micrometers is an odd value by replacing it with the even value immediately below. For example, if IT = 175, replace it by 174.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5b. British Standard Fundamental Deviations for Shafts *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		Grade													
		01 to 16													
		Fundamental (Lower) Deviation ei													
Over	To	m	n	p	r	s	t	u	v	x	y	z	za	zb	zc
…	3	+2	+4	+6	+10	+14	…	+18	…	+20	…	+26	+32	+40	+60
3	6	+4	+8	+12	+15	+19	…	+23	…	+28	…	+35	+42	+50	+80
6	10	+6	+10	+15	+19	+23	…	+28	…	+34	…	+42	+52	+67	+97
10	14	+7	+12	+18	+23	+28	…	+33	…	+40	…	+50	+64	+90	+130
14	18	+7	+12	+18	+23	+28	…	+33	+39	+45	…	+60	+77	+108	+150
18	24	+8	+15	+22	+28	+35	…	+41	+47	+54	+63	+73	+98	+136	+188
24	30	+8	+15	+22	+28	+35	+41	+48	+55	+64	+75	+88	+118	+160	+218
30	40	+9	+17	+26	+34	+43	+48	+60	+68	+80	+94	+112	+148	+200	+274
40	50	+9	+17	+26	+34	+43	+54	+70	+81	+97	+114	+136	+180	+242	+325
50	65	+11	+20	+32	+41	+53	+66	+87	+102	+122	+144	+172	+226	+300	+405
65	80	+11	+20	+32	+43	+59	+75	+102	+120	+146	+174	+210	+274	+360	+480
80	100	+13	+23	+37	+51	+71	+91	+124	+146	+178	+214	+258	+335	+445	+585
100	120	+13	+23	+37	+54	+79	+104	+144	+172	+210	+254	+310	+400	+525	+690
120	140	+15	+27	+43	+63	+92	+122	+170	+202	+248	+300	+365	+470	+620	+800
140	160	+15	+27	+43	+65	+100	+134	+190	+228	+280	+340	+415	+535	+700	+900
160	180	+15	+27	+43	+68	+108	+146	+210	+252	+310	+380	+465	+600	+780	+1000
180	200	+17	+31	+50	+77	+122	+166	+236	+284	+350	+425	+520	+670	+880	+1150
200	225	+17	+31	+50	+80	+130	+180	+258	+310	+385	+470	+575	+740	+960	+1250
225	250	+17	+31	+50	+84	+140	+196	+284	+340	+425	+520	+640	+820	+1050	+1350
250	280	+20	+34	+56	+94	+158	+218	+315	+385	+475	+580	+710	+920	+1200	+1550
280	315	+20	+34	+56	+98	+170	+240	+350	+425	+525	+650	+790	+1000	+1300	+1700
315	355	+21	+37	+62	+108	+190	+268	+390	+475	+590	+730	+900	+1150	+1500	+1900
355	400	+21	+37	+62	+114	+208	+294	+435	+530	+660	+820	+1000	+1300	+1650	+2100
400	450	+23	+40	+68	+126	+232	+330	+490	+595	+740	+920	+1100	+1450	+1850	+2400
450	500	+23	+40	+68	+132	+252	+360	+540	+660	+820	+1000	+1250	+1600	+2100	+2600

The dimensions are in 0.001 mm, except the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6a. British Standard Fundamental Deviations for Holes *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		Grade																			
		01 to 16												6	7	8	≤8	>8	≤8[a]	>8	≤8	>8[b]
		Fundamental (Lower) Deviation EI												Fundamental (Upper) Deviation ES								
Over	To	A[b]	B[b]	C	CD	D	E	EF	F	FG	G	H	Js[c]	J			K[d]		M[d]		N[d]	
…	3	+270	+140	+60	+34	+20	+14	+10	+6	+4	+2	0		+2	+4	+6	0	0	–2	–2	–4	–4
3	6	+270	+140	+70	+46	+30	+20	+14	+10	+6	+4	0		+5	+6	+10	–1+Δ	…	–4+Δ	–4	–8+Δ	0
6	10	+280	+150	+80	+56	+40	+25	+18	+13	+8	+5	0		+5	+8	+12	–1+Δ	…	–6+Δ	–6	–10+Δ	0
10	14	+290	+150	+95	…	+50	+32	…	+16	…	+6	0		+6	+10	+15	–1+Δ	…	–7+Δ	–7	–12+Δ	0
14	18	+290	+150	+95	…	+50	+32	…	+16	…	+6	0		+6	+10	+15	–1+Δ	…	–7+Δ	–7	–12+Δ	0
18	24	+300	+160	+110	…	+65	+40	…	+20	…	+7	0		+8	+12	+20	–2+Δ	…	–8+Δ	–8	–15+Δ	0
24	30	+300	+160	+110	…	+65	+40	…	+20	…	+7	0		+8	+12	+20	–2+Δ	…	–8+Δ	–8	–15+Δ	0
30	40	+310	+170	+120	…	+80	+50	…	+25	…	+9	0		+10	+14	+24	–2+Δ	…	–9+Δ	–9	–17+Δ	0
40	50	+320	+180	+130	…	+80	+50	…	+25	…	+9	0		+10	+14	+24	–2+Δ	…	–9+Δ	–9	–17+Δ	0
50	65	+340	+190	+140	…	+100	+60	…	+30	…	+10	0		+13	+18	+28	–2+Δ	…	–11+Δ	–11	–20+Δ	0
65	80	+360	+200	+150	…	+100	+60	…	+30	…	+10	0		+13	+18	+28	–2+Δ	…	–11+Δ	–11	–20+Δ	0
80	100	+380	+220	+170	…	+120	+72	…	+36	…	+12	0		+16	+22	+34	–3+Δ	…	–13+Δ	–13	–23+Δ	0
100	120	+410	+240	+180	…	+120	+72	…	+36	…	+12	0	±IT/2	+16	+22	+34	–3+Δ	…	–13+Δ	–13	–23+Δ	0
120	140	+460	+260	+200	…	+145	+85	…	+43	…	+14	0		+18	+26	+41	–3+Δ	…	–15+Δ	–15	–27+Δ	0
140	160	+520	+280	+210	…	+145	+85	…	+43	…	+14	0		+18	+26	+41	–3+Δ	…	–15+Δ	–15	–27+Δ	0
160	180	+580	+310	+230	…	+145	+85	…	+43	…	+14	0		+18	+26	+41	–3+Δ	…	–15+Δ	–15	–27+Δ	0
180	200	+660	+340	+240	…	+170	+100	…	+50	…	+15	0		+22	+30	+47	–4+Δ	…	–17+Δ	–17	–31+Δ	0
200	225	+740	+380	+260	…	+170	+100	…	+50	…	+15	0		+22	+30	+47	–4+Δ	…	–17–Δ	–17	–31+Δ	0
225	250	+820	+420	+280	…	+170	+100	…	+50	…	+15	0		+22	+30	+47	–4+Δ	…	–17+Δ	–17	–31+Δ	0
250	280	+920	+480	+300	…	+190	+110	…	+56	…	+17	0		+25	+36	+55	–4+Δ	…	–20+Δ	–20	–34+Δ	0
280	315	+1050	+540	+330	…	+190	+110	…	+56	…	+17	0		+25	+36	+55	–4+Δ	…	–20+Δ	–20	–34+Δ	0
315	355	+1200	+600	+360	…	+210	+125	…	+62	…	+18	0		+29	+39	+60	–4+Δ	…	–21+Δ	–21	–37+Δ	0
355	400	+1350	+680	+400	…	+210	+125	…	+62	…	+18	0		+29	+39	+60	–4+Δ	…	–21+Δ	–21	–37+Δ	0
400	450	+1500	+760	+440	…	+230	+135	…	+68	…	+20	0		+33	+43	+66	–5+4	…	–23+Δ	–23	–40+Δ	0
450	500	+1650	+840	+480	…	+230	+135	…	+68	…	+20	0		+33	+43	+66	–5+4	…	–23+Δ	–23	–40+Δ	0

[a] Special case: for M6, ES = –9 for sizes from 250 to 315 mm, instead of –11.

[b] Not applicable to sizes up to 1 mm.

[c] In grades 7 to 11, the two symmetrical deviations ±IT/2 should be rounded if the IT value in micrometers is an odd value by replacing it with the even value below. For example, if IT = 175, replace it by 174.

[d] When calculating deviations for holes K, M, and N with tolerance grades up to and including IT8, and holes P to ZC with tolerance grades up to and including IT7, the delta (Δ) values are added to the upper deviation ES. For example, for 25 P7, ES = –0.022 + 0.008 = –0.014 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6b. British Standard Fundamental Deviations for Holes *BS 4500:1969*

Nominal Sizes, mm		Grade													Values for delta (Δ)[d]					
		≤7	>7																	
		Fundamental (Upper) Deviation ES													Grade					
Over	To	P to ZC	P	R	S	T	U	V	X	Y	Z	ZA	ZB	ZC	3	4	5	6	7	8
…	3	Same deviation as for grades above 7 increased by Δ	– 6	–10	–14	…	–18	…	–20	…	–26	–32	–40	–60	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	6		–12	–15	–19	…	–23	…	–28	…	–35	–42	–50	–80	1	1.5	1	3	4	6
6	10		–15	–19	–23	…	–28	…	–34	…	–42	–52	–67	–97	1	1.5	2	3	6	7
10	14		–18	–23	–28	…	–33	…	–40	…	–50	–64	–90	–130	1	2	3	3	7	9
14	18		–18	–23	–28	…	–33	–39	–45	…	–60	–77	–108	–150	1	2	3	3	7	9
18	24		–22	–28	–35	…	–41	–47	–54	–63	–73	–98	–136	–188	1.5	2	3	4	8	12
24	30		–22	–28	–35	–41	–48	–55	–64	–75	–88	–118	–160	–218	1.5	2	3	4	8	12
30	40		–26	–34	–43	–48	–60	–68	–80	–94	–112	–148	–200	–274	1.5	3	4	5	9	14
40	50		–26	–34	–43	–54	–70	–81	–97	–114	–136	–180	–242	–325	1.5	3	4	5	9	14
50	65		–32	–41	–53	–66	–87	–102	–122	–144	–172	–226	–300	–405	2	3	5	6	11	16
65	80		–32	–43	–59	–75	–102	–120	–146	–174	–210	–274	–360	–480	2	3	5	6	11	16
80	100		–37	–51	–71	–91	–124	–146	–178	–214	–258	–335	–445	–585	2	4	5	7	13	19
100	120		–37	–54	–79	–104	–144	–172	–210	–254	–310	–400	–525	–690	2	4	5	7	13	19
120	140		–43	–63	–92	–122	–170	–202	–248	–300	–365	–470	–620	–800	3	4	6	7	15	23
140	160		–43	–65	–100	–134	–190	–228	–280	–340	–415	–535	–700	–900	3	4	6	7	15	23
160	180		–43	–68	–108	–146	–210	–252	–310	–380	–465	–600	–780	–1000	3	4	6	7	15	23
180	200		–50	–77	–122	–166	–226	–284	–350	–425	–520	–670	–880	–1150	3	4	6	9	17	26
200	225		–50	–80	–130	–180	–258	–310	–385	–470	–575	–740	–960	–1250	3	4	6	9	17	26
225	250		–50	–84	–140	–196	–284	–340	–425	–520	–640	–820	–1050	–1350	3	4	6	9	17	26
250	280		–56	–94	–158	–218	–315	–385	–475	–580	–710	–920	–1200	–1550	4	4	7	9	20	29
280	315		–56	–98	–170	–240	–350	–425	–525	–650	–790	–1000	–1300	–1700	4	4	7	9	20	29
315	355		–62	–108	–190	–268	–390	–475	–590	–730	–900	–1150	–1500	–1800	4	5	7	11	21	32
355	400		–62	–114	–208	–294	–435	–530	–660	–820	–1000	–1300	–1650	–2100	4	5	7	11	21	32
400	450		–68	–126	–232	–330	–490	–595	–740	–920	–1100	–1450	–1850	–2400	5	5	7	13	23	34
450	500		–68	–132	–252	–360	–540	–660	–820	–1000	–1250	–1600	–2100	–2600	5	5	7	13	23	34

The dimensions are given in 0.001 mm, except the nominal sizes, which are in millimeters.

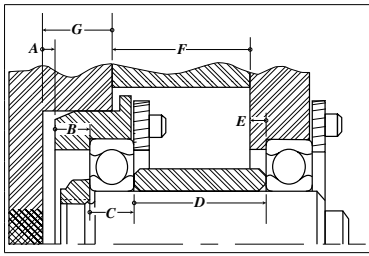
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerance Analysis and Assignment

All parts are produced with some amount of variation, or difference, between the intended geometry and features of the part produced. While variation is unavoidable and expected, the challenge is determining an acceptable amount. The amount and type of variation is called *tolerance*. Part feature tolerances are not assigned arbitrarily, but rather are specified by designers with good understanding of manufacturing process capabilities, cost limitations, and assembly and functional requirements. Good design allows for the broadest tolerances possible that meet all requirements, resulting in parts that are easier and less costly to produce. Overly restrictive tolerances limit manufacturers to unnecessarily precise methods, driving up costs, which can be impacted dramatically by small differences in tolerances.

Tolerance analysis and tolerance assignment are bottom-up and top-down approaches, respectively, to calculating tolerances, and typically they are used in iterative fashion. Tolerance assignment is done at the design stage, to meet assembly and functional requirements. Tolerance analysis is performed later, on preliminary or final part tolerances, to detect any needed design improvements and changes in tolerance assignments. Predicting the results of variations may be an end in itself, but more often, the goal is to select the best tolerances throughout an assembly to meet design requirements.

The Tolerance Stack-Up Chain.—Tolerance stack-up calculations analyze the effects that tolerances have on function and guide tolerance assignment. A tolerance stack-up chain diagram is created first to clearly identify the assembly dimension to be solved and each part dimension contributing to the stack-up, as is shown in Fig. 5.



Dim	Max	Min	Mean (μ) (from mfg. data)	Standard Deviation (σ) (from mfg. data)
B	0.376	0.375	0.375464	0.000106
C	0.5906	0.5858	0.588126	0.001004
D	1.751	1.749	1.750128	0.000203
E	0.1875	0.1825	0.185147	0.000874
F	1.755	1.745	1.750748	0.001200
G	0.9395	0.9355	0.937331	0.000517

Fig. 5. Tolerance Stack-Up Chain Diagram, Related Specifications, and Dimension Data

From the diagram, a tolerance stack-up equation is derived. In dimension labeling, a sign convention denotes direction: positive for up or right; negative for down or left. The assembly dimension can then be solved, as in the following example, written in general form:

$$A = -B - C - D + E + F + G \quad (1)$$

Clear, unambiguous part definition, as provided by geometric dimensioning and tolerancing, is required for accurate tolerance analysis. Care must be taken to ensure the effects of geometric variation are included in dimensions expressed numerically. Any sources of variation allowed by referenced drawings must be included in the stack-up equation.

Tolerance Analysis Calculation Methods.—For solving analysis or assignment problems, four methods of tolerance stack-up calculation are common.

Worst-Case: During analysis, the worst-case method predicts the largest variation in the assembly dimension and requires the smallest tolerances be assigned. Worst-case calculations are appropriate when every feature is inspected to screen from use any out-of-specification parts, and/or when there are few (approximately seven or fewer) dimensions in the chain. Benefits of this analytical method are its simplicity and speed.

A tolerance stack-up calculation is performed twice, resulting in the maximum value on the first pass and the minimum value on the second pass. Thus, the general stack-up equation is expressed as two separate equations, with each dimension represented by its maximum and minimum values. The default is to put maximum values on the first line and minimum on the second; this is reversed for contributing dimensions with negative signs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$A_{max} = -B_{min} - C_{min} - D_{min} + E_{max} + F_{max} + G_{max} \quad (2a)$$

$$A_{min} = -B_{max} - C_{max} - D_{max} + E_{min} + F_{min} + G_{min} \quad (2b)$$

Example: Predict the minimum and maximum assembly dimensions for the stack-up diagram and dimensions given in Fig. 5 using the worst-case method.

Solution: Using Equations (2a) and (2b):

$$A_{max} = -0.375 - 0.5858 - 1.749 + 0.1875 + 1.755 + 0.9395 = 0.1722$$

$$A_{min} = -0.376 - 0.5906 - 1.751 + 0.1825 + 1.745 + 0.9355 = 0.1454$$

Statistical: This approach produces likely values and ranges, predicts smaller assembly variations, and permits larger tolerances to be assigned. While it does not guarantee conformity to requirements, conformance and defect rates can be predicted. Statistical calculations are appropriate when many dimensions are contributing to a stack-up chain or when it can be assumed that the contributing dimensions follow normal distributions, such as when statistical process control (SPC) is used (see *STATISTICAL ANALYSIS OF MANUFACTURING DATA* on page 136 for statistics terminology used here). The assembly dimension *A* is modeled as a normal distribution, with assembly mean (μ_A) and assembly standard deviation (σ_A) calculated using the general stack-up equations written in statistical form:

Assembly mean (μ_A):

$$\mu_A = -\mu_B - \mu_C - \mu_D + \mu_E + \mu_F + \mu_G \quad (3)$$

Assembly standard deviation (σ_A):

$$\sigma_A = \sqrt{\sigma_B^2 + \sigma_C^2 + \sigma_D^2 + \sigma_E^2 + \sigma_F^2 + \sigma_G^2} \quad (4)$$

Example: Use the statistical method to determine the range of assembly dimension values, between which 99 percent of assembly dimensions are expected to fall, for the stack-up diagram and dimensions given in Fig. 5. Manufacturing data show the contributing dimensions are well modeled as normal distributions using the parameters included in the figure.

Solution: Model assembly dimension *A* as a normal distribution with parameters calculated using Equations (3) and (4):

$$\mu_A = -0.375464 - 0.588126 - 1.750128 + 0.185147 + 1.750748 + 0.937331 = 0.159508$$

$$\sigma_A = \sqrt{0.000106^2 + 0.001004^2 + 0.000203^2 + 0.000874^2 + 0.001200^2 + 0.000517^2} = 0.001879$$

99 percent of the area under the normal distribution curve falls within the range of $\mu \pm 2.5758\sigma$. Upper and lower limits of this range for assembly dimension *A* are calculated as:

$$A_{upper} = 0.159508 + (2.5758)(0.001879) = 0.164348$$

$$A_{lower} = 0.159508 - (2.5758)(0.001879) = 0.154668$$

Therefore, 99 percent of assembly dimensions are expected to measure between 0.154668 and 0.164348.

Root Sum of Squares (RSS): This method belongs somewhere between the worst-case and statistical methods in terms of when applicable and the desired characteristics of the result. RSS is technically a statistical method with several simplifying assumptions applied. Each contributing dimension is modeled as a normal distribution, with mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ) calculated from the maximum and minimum values.

Each contributing dimension mean (μ) is calculated as:

$$\mu = \frac{\text{Max} + \text{Min}}{2} \quad (5)$$

Each contributing dimension standard deviation (σ) is calculated as:

$$\sigma = \frac{\text{Max} - \text{Min}}{6} \quad (6)$$

The calculations for assembly mean (μ_A) and assembly standard deviation (σ_A) are the same as in the statistical method; see Equations (3) and (4). The assembly dimension is then predicted to fall between the limits:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$A_{max} = \mu_A + 3\sigma_A \quad (7a)$$

$$A_{min} = \mu_A - 3\sigma_A \quad (7b)$$

Example: Predict the minimum and maximum assembly dimension for the stack-up diagram and dimensions given in Fig. 5. Assume manufacturing data are not available for this example and apply the RSS method.

Solution: Using Equations (5) and (6), calculate a mean and standard deviation to use as model parameters for each of the contributing dimensions in Fig. 5. Starting with B:

$$\mu = \frac{0.376 + 0.375}{2} = 0.3755$$

$$\sigma = \frac{0.376 - 0.375}{6} = 0.000167$$

Dim	Mean (μ)	Standard Deviation (σ)
B	0.3755	0.000167
C	0.5882	0.000800
D	1.75	0.000333
E	0.185	0.000833
F	1.75	0.001667
G	0.9375	0.000667

Repeating this calculation for dimensions *C* through *G* produces the table values shown. Next, the assembly dimension parameters are calculated using Equations (3) and (4):

$$\mu_A = -0.3755 - 0.5882 - 1.75 + 0.185 + 1.75 + 0.9375 = 0.1588$$

$$\sigma_A = \sqrt{0.000167^2 + 0.000800^2 + 0.000333^2 + 0.000833^2 + 0.001667^2 + 0.000667^2} = 0.002167$$

Finally, the assembly limits are calculated using Equations (7a) and (7b):

$$A_{max} = 0.1588 + (3)(0.002167) = 0.165301$$

$$A_{min} = 0.1588 - (3)(0.002167) = 0.152299$$

Therefore, assemblies are expected to measure between 0.152299 and 0.165301.

Monte Carlo Simulation: This random-number-based calculation method attempts to model variation realistically. The simulation runs numerous cases and builds a probability distribution for the stack-up, which is used to predict results, including defect rates. For each case, contributing dimensions in the stack-up chain are randomly chosen according to their statistical distribution (normal, uniform, or otherwise). The dimensions are combined according to the stack-up equation, which may be nonlinear.

Tolerance Assignment.—This is the process of distributing the "tolerance budget" among contributing dimensions of the stack-up chain to manage costs and meet target quality levels. As explained above, analysis produces one solution (assembly dimension) from several inputs (dimensions of contributing parts), whereas assignment attempts to produce several contributing part dimensions from one assembly dimension. There are infinite ways to assign part tolerances to achieve a desired assembly tolerance (thus, analytical solutions usually are not possible), with several methods for assigning tolerances being most common.

Even Assignment: Part feature tolerances are assigned equally among assignable tolerances to stay within the required assembly tolerance.

Proportional Scaling: Preliminary tolerances are assigned and analyzed. If the assembly tolerance exceeds the allowed amount, assignable part feature tolerances are scaled down proportionally as needed.

Weight Factors: Weight factors, determined on the basis of manufacturing difficulty, are allocated to each assignable tolerance. The assembly tolerance budget is divided across each tolerance proportional to its weight factor.

Cost Minimization: A cost-versus-tolerance relationship is determined for each contributing dimension. The optimization algorithm varies and compares the tolerances of each dimension to arrive at the combination that minimizes total cost.

Total Cost Minimization: This method loosens tolerances to reduce cost while considering the cost of lower yields due to production of some number of defective parts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Preferred Numbers

Preferred numbers are series of numbers selected to be used for standardization purposes in preference to any other numbers. Their use will lead to simplified practice, and they should be employed whenever possible for individual standard sizes and ratings, or for a series, in applications similar to the following:

1) Important or characteristic linear dimensions such as diameters and lengths, areas, volume, weights, capacities.

2) Ratings of machinery and apparatus in horsepower, kilowatts, kilovolt-amperes, voltages, currents, speeds, power-factors, pressures, heat units, temperatures, gas or liquid-flow units, weight-handling capacities, etc.

3) Characteristic ratios of figures for all kinds of units.

American National Standard for Preferred Numbers.—ANSI Standard Z17.1-1973 covers basic series of preferred numbers which are independent of any measurement system and therefore can be used with metric or customary units. This standard has been withdrawn with no superseding standard specified.

The numbers are rounded values of the following five geometric series of numbers: $10^{N/5}$, $10^{N/10}$, $10^{N/20}$, $10^{N/40}$, and $10^{N/80}$, where N is an integer in the series 0, 1, 2, 3, etc. The designations used for the five series are respectively R5, R10, R20, R40, and R80, where R stands for Renard (Charles Renard, originator of the first preferred number system) and the number indicates the root of 10 on which the particular series is based.

The R5 series gives 5 numbers approximately 60 percent apart, the R10 series gives 10 numbers approximately 25 percent apart, the R20 series gives 20 numbers approximately 12 percent apart, the R40 series gives 40 numbers approximately 6 percent apart, and the R80 series gives 80 numbers approximately 3 percent apart. The number of sizes for a given purpose can be minimized by using the R5 series first and then adding sizes from the R10 and R20 series as needed. The R40 and R80 series are used principally for expressing tolerances in sizes based on preferred numbers. Preferred numbers below 1 are formed by dividing the given numbers by 10, 100, etc., and numbers above 10 are obtained by multiplying the given numbers by 10, 100, etc. Sizes graded according to the system may not be exactly proportional to one another because preferred numbers may differ from calculated values by +1.26 percent to –1.01 percent. Deviations from preferred numbers are used in some instances — for example, where whole numbers are needed, such as 32 instead of 31.5 for the number of teeth in a gear.

Basic Series of Preferred Numbers *ANSI Z17.1-1973*

Series Designation								
R5	R10	R20	R40	R40	R80	R80	R80	R80
Preferred Numbers								
1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	3.15	1.00	1.80	3.15	5.60
1.60	1.25	1.12	1.06	3.35	1.03	1.85	3.25	5.80
2.50	1.60	1.25	1.12	3.55	1.06	1.90	3.35	6.00
4.00	2.00	1.40	1.18	3.75	1.09	1.95	3.45	6.15
6.30	2.50	1.60	1.25	4.00	1.12	2.00	3.55	6.30
…	3.15	1.80	1.32	4.25	1.15	2.06	3.65	6.50
…	4.00	2.00	1.40	4.50	1.18	2.12	3.75	6.70
…	5.00	2.24	1.50	4.75	1.22	2.18	3.87	6.90
…	6.30	2.50	1.60	5.00	1.25	2.24	4.00	7.10
…	8.00	2.80	1.70	5.30	1.28	2.30	4.12	7.30
…	…	3.15	1.80	5.60	1.32	2.36	4.25	7.50
…	…	3.55	1.90	6.00	1.36	2.43	4.37	7.75
…	…	4.00	2.00	6.30	1.40	2.50	4.50	8.00
…	…	4.50	2.12	6.70	1.45	2.58	4.62	8.25
…	…	5.00	2.24	7.10	1.50	2.65	4.75	8.50
…	…	5.60	2.36	7.50	1.55	2.72	4.87	8.75
…	…	6.30	2.50	8.00	1.60	2.80	5.00	9.00
…	…	7.10	2.65	8.50	1.65	2.90	5.15	9.25
…	…	8.00	2.80	9.00	1.70	3.00	5.20	9.50
…	…	9.00	3.00	9.50	1.75	3.07	5.45	9.75

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Preferred Metric Sizes.—American National Standard ANSI B32.4M-1980 (R1994), presents series of preferred metric sizes for round, square, rectangular, and hexagonal metal products. Table 1 gives preferred metric diameters from 1 to 320 millimeters for round metal products. Wherever possible, sizes should be selected from the Preferred Series shown in the table. A Second Preference Series is also shown. A Third Preference Series not shown in the table is: 1.3, 2.1, 2.4, 2.6, 3.2, 3.8, 4.2, 4.8, 7.5, 8.5, 9.5, 36, 85, and 95. This standard has now been consolidated into ANSI/ASME B32.100-2016, see *Metric Sizes for Flat Metal Products* on page 2708.

ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009) states that the basic size of mating parts should be chosen from the first choice sizes listed in Table 1. Most of the Preferred Series sizes are derived from the American National Standard "10 series" of preferred numbers (see *American National Standard for Preferred Numbers* on page 687). Most of the Second Preference Series are derived from the "20 series" of preferred numbers. Third Preference sizes are generally from the "40 series" of preferred numbers.

For preferred metric diameters less than 1 millimeter, preferred across flat metric sizes of square and hexagon metal products, preferred across flat metric sizes of rectangular metal products, and preferred metric lengths of metal products, reference should be made to the Standard.

Table 1. American National Standard Preferred Metric Sizes
ANSI/ASME B4.2-1978 (R2009)

Basic Size, mm		Basic Size, mm		Basic Size, mm		Basic Size, mm	
1st Choice	2nd Choice	1st Choice	2nd Choice	1st Choice	2nd Choice	1st Choice	2nd Choice
1	…	6	…	40	…	250	…
…	1.1	…	7	…	45	…	280
1.2	…	8	…	50	…	300	…
…	1.4	…	9	…	55	…	350
1.6	…	10	…	60	…	400	…
…	1.8	…	11	…	70	…	450
2	…	12	…	80	…	500	…
…	2.2	…	14	…	90	…	550
2.5	…	16	…	100	…	600	…
…	2.8	…	18	…	110	…	700
3	…	20	…	120	…	800	…
…	3.5	…	22	…	140	…	900
4	…	25	…	160	…	1000	…
…	4.5	…	28	…	180	…	…
5	…	30	…	200	…	…	…
…	5.5	…	35	…	220	…	…

Preferred Metric Sizes for Metal Products.—See *Metric Sizes for Flat Metal Products* on page 2708.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Preferred Numbers and Preferred Sizes.—This British Standard, PD 6481:1977 1983, gives recommendations for the use of preferred numbers and preferred sizes for functional characteristics and dimensions of various products.

The preferred number system is internationally standardized in ISO 3. It is also referred to as the Renard, or R, series (see *American National Standard for Preferred Numbers* on page 687).

The series in the preferred number system are geometric series, that is, there is a constant ratio between each figure and the succeeding one, within a decimal framework. Thus, the R5 series has five steps between 1 and 10, the R10 series has 10 steps between 1 and 10, the R20 series, 20 steps, and the R40 series, 40 steps, giving increases between steps of approximately 60, 25, 12, and 6 percent, respectively.

The preferred size series have been developed from the preferred number series by rounding off the inconvenient numbers in the basic series and adjusting for linear measurement in millimeters. These series are shown in Table 2.

After taking all normal considerations into account, it is recommended that (a) for ranges of values of the primary *functional* characteristics (outputs and capacities) of a series of products, the preferred number series R5 to R40 (see page 687) should be used, and (b) whenever linear sizes are concerned, the preferred sizes as given in the following table should be used. The presentation of preferred sizes gives designers and users a logical selection and the benefits of rational variety reduction.

The second-choice size given should only be used when it is not possible to use the first choice, and the third choice should be applied only if a size from the second choice cannot be selected. With this procedure, common usage will tend to be concentrated on a limited range of sizes, and a contribution is thus made to variety reduction. However, the decision to use a particular size cannot be taken on the basis that one is first choice and the other not. Account must be taken of the effect on the design, the availability of tools, and other relevant factors.

Table 2. British Standard Preferred Sizes, *PD 6481: 1977 (1983)*

Choice			Choice			Choice			Choice			Choice			Choice		
1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd	1st	2nd	3rd
1					5.2			23	65					122			188
	1.1			5.5				24			66		125		190		
1.2					5.8	25				68			128				192
		1.3	6					26	70			130				195	
	1.4				6.2		28			72			132				198
		1.5		6.5		30					74		135		200		
1.6					6.8		32		75				138				205
		1.7		7				34			76	140				210	
	1.8				7.5	35				78			142				215
		1.9	8					36	80				145		220		
2					8.5		38				82		148				225
		2.1		9		40				85		150				230	
	2.2				9.5		42				88		152				235
		2.4	10					44	90				155		240		
2.5				11		45				92			158				245
		2.6	12					46		95		160				250	
2.8					13		48				98		162				255
3				14		50			100				165		260		
		3.2			15		52				102		168				265
	3.5		16					54	105			170				270	
		3.8			17	55					108		172				275
4				18				56	110				175		280		
		4.2			19		58				112		178				285
	4.5		20			60				115		180				290	
		4.8			21		62				118		182				295
5				22				64	120				185		300		

For dimensions above 300, each series continues in a similar manner, i.e., the intervals between each series number are the same as between 200 and 300.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MEASURING, INSTRUMENTS, AND INSPECTION METHODS

Reading Verniers and Micrometers

Reading a Vernier.—A general rule for taking readings with a vernier scale is as follows: Note the number of inches and subdivisions of an inch that the zero mark of the vernier scale has moved along the true scale, and then add to this reading as many thousandths, hundredths, or whatever fractional part of an inch the vernier reads to, as there are spaces between the vernier zero and that line on the vernier coinciding with one on the true scale. For example, if the zero line of a vernier that reads to thousandths is slightly beyond the 0.5 inch division on the main or true scale, as shown in Fig. 1, and graduation line 10 on the vernier exactly coincides with one on the true scale, the reading is 0.5 + 0.010 or 0.510 inch. In order to determine the reading or fractional part of an inch that can be obtained by a vernier, multiply the denominator of the finest subdivision given on the true scale by the total number of divisions on the vernier. For example, if one inch on the true scale is divided into 40 parts or fortieths (as in Fig. 1), and the vernier into twenty-five parts, the vernier will read to thousandths of an inch, as $25 \times 40 = 1000$. Similarly, if there are sixteen divisions to the inch on the true scale and a total of eight on the vernier, the latter will enable readings to be taken within $\frac{1}{128}$ of an inch, as $8 \times 16 = 128$.

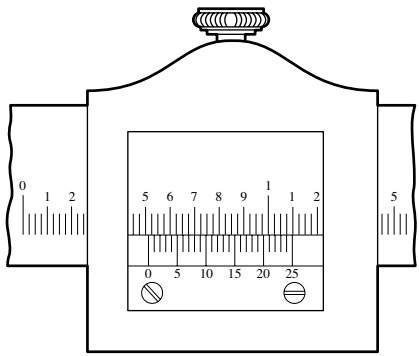


Fig. 1. Inch Vernier

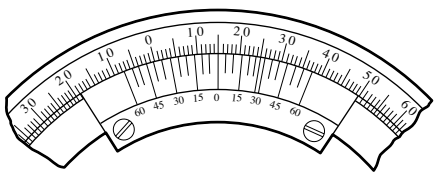


Fig. 2. Protractor with Vernier Scale

If the vernier is on a protractor, note the whole number of degrees passed by the vernier zero mark and then count the spaces between the vernier zero and the line coinciding with a graduation on the protractor scale. If the vernier indicates angles within five minutes or one-twelfth degree (as in Fig. 2), the number of spaces multiplied by 5 will, of course, give the number of minutes to be added to the whole number of degrees. The reading of the protractor set as illustrated would be 14 whole degrees (the number passed by the zero mark on the vernier) plus 30 minutes, as the graduation 30 on the vernier is the only one to the right of the vernier zero that exactly coincides with a line on the protractor scale. It will be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

noted that there are duplicate scales on the vernier, one being to the right and the other to the left of zero. The left-hand scale is used when the vernier zero is moved to the left of the zero of the protractor scale, whereas the right-hand graduations are used when the movement is to the right.

Reading a Metric Vernier.—The smallest graduation on the bar (true or main scale) of the metric vernier gage shown in Fig. 1, is 0.5 millimeter. The scale is numbered at each twentieth division, and thus increments of 10, 20, 30, 40 millimeters, etc., are indicated. There are 25 divisions on the vernier scale, occupying the same length as 24 divisions on the bar, which is 12 millimeters. Therefore, one division on the vernier scale equals one twenty-fifth of 12 millimeters = $0.04 \times 12 = 0.48$ millimeter. Thus, the difference between one bar division (0.50 mm) and one vernier division (2.48 mm) is $0.50 - 0.48 = 0.02$ millimeter, which is the minimum measuring increment that the gage provides. To permit direct readings, the vernier scale has graduations to represent tenths of a millimeter (0.1 mm) and fiftieths of a millimeter (0.02 mm).

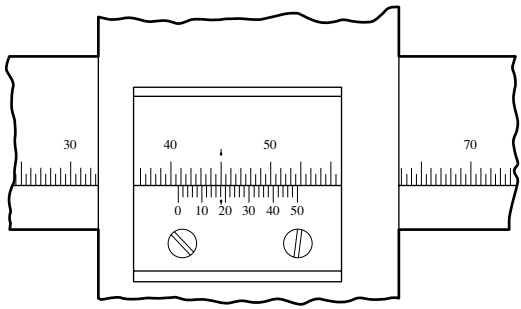


Fig. 1. Metric Vernier

To read a vernier gage, first note how many millimeters the zero line on the vernier is from the zero line on the bar. Next, find the graduation on the vernier scale that exactly coincides with a graduation line on the bar, and note the value of the vernier scale graduation. This value is added to the value obtained from the bar, and the result is the total reading.

In the example shown in Fig. 1, the vernier zero is just past the 40.5 millimeters graduation on the bar. The 0.18 millimeter line on the vernier coincides with a line on the bar, and the total reading is therefore $40.5 + 0.18 = 40.68$ mm.

Dual Metric-Inch Vernier.—The vernier gage shown in Fig. 2 has separate metric 50-division, and inch 25-division vernier scales to permit measurements in either system.

On the bar, the smallest metric graduation is 1 millimeter, and the 50 divisions of the vernier occupy the same length as 49 divisions on the bar, which is 49 mm. Therefore, one division on the vernier scale equals one-fiftieth of 49 millimeters = $0.02 \times 49 = 0.98$ mm. Thus, the difference between one bar division (1.0 mm) and one vernier division (0.98 mm) is 0.02 mm, which is the minimum measuring increment the gage provides.

The vernier scale is graduated for direct reading to 0.02 mm. In Fig. 2, the vernier zero is just past the 27 mm graduation on the bar, and the 0.42 mm graduation on the vernier coincides with a line on the bar. The total reading is therefore 27.42 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The smallest inch graduation on the bar is 0.025 inch, and the 25 vernier divisions occupy the same length as 49 bar divisions, which is 1.225 inches. Therefore, one vernier division equals one twenty-fifth of 1.225 inches = 0.04 × 1.225 = 0.049 inch. Thus, the difference between the length of two bar divisions and a vernier division is 0.050 – 0.049 = 0.001 inch. The vernier scale is graduated for direct reading to 0.001 inch. In the example, the vernier zero is past the 1.075 graduation on the bar, and the 0.004 graduation on the vernier coincides with a line on the bar. Thus, the total reading is 1.079 inches.

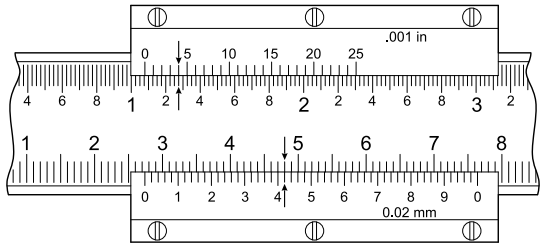


Fig. 2. Dual Metric-Inch Vernier

Reading a Micrometer.—The spindle of an inch-system micrometer has 40 threads per inch, so that one turn moves the spindle axially 0.025 inch (1 ÷ 40 = 0.025), equal to the distance between two graduations on the frame. The 25 graduations on the thimble allow the 0.025 inch to be further divided, so that turning the thimble through one division moves the spindle axially 0.001 inch (0.025 ÷ 25 = 0.001). To read a micrometer, count the number of whole divisions visible on the scale of the frame, multiply this number by 25 (the number of thousandths of an inch that each division represents) and add to the product the number of that division on the thimble coinciding with the axial zero line on the frame. The result will be the diameter expressed in thousandths of an inch. As the numbers 1, 2, 3, etc., opposite every fourth subdivision on the frame indicate hundreds of thousandths, the reading can easily be taken mentally. Suppose the thimble were screwed out so that graduation 2 and three additional subdivisions were visible (as shown in Fig. 3), and that graduation 10 on the thimble coincided with the axial line on the frame. The reading then would be 0.200 + 0.075 + 0.010, or 0.285 inch.

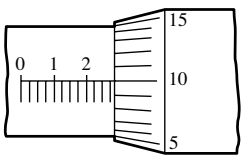


Fig. 3. Inch Micrometer

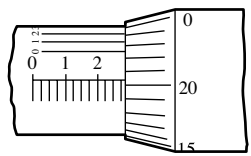


Fig. 4. Inch Micrometer with Vernier

Some micrometers have a vernier scale on the frame in addition to the regular graduations so that measurements within 0.0001 part of an inch can be taken. Micrometers of this type are read as follows: First determine the number of thousandths, as with an ordinary micrometer, and then find a line on the vernier scale that exactly coincides with one on the thimble; the number of this line represents the number of ten-thousandths to be added to the number of thousandths obtained by the regular graduations. The reading shown in the illustration, Fig. 4, is 0.275 + 0.020 + 0.0003 = 0.2953 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Micrometers graduated according to the English system of measurement ordinarily have a table of decimal equivalents stamped on the sides of the frame so that fractions such as sixty-fourths, thirty-seconds, etc., can readily be converted into decimals.

Reading a Metric Micrometer.—The spindle of an ordinary metric micrometer has 2 threads per millimeter, and thus one complete revolution moves the spindle through a distance of 0.5 millimeter. The longitudinal line on the frame is graduated with 1 millimeter divisions and 0.5 millimeter subdivisions. The thimble has 50 graduations, each being 0.01 millimeter (one-hundredth of a millimeter).

To read a metric micrometer, note the number of millimeter divisions visible on the scale of the sleeve, and add the total to the particular division on the thimble that coincides with the axial line on the sleeve. Suppose that the thimble were screwed out so that graduation 5 and one additional 0.5 subdivision were visible (as shown in Fig. 5), and that graduation 28 on the thimble coincided with the axial line on the sleeve. The reading then would be 5.00 + 0.5 + 0.28 = 5.78 mm.

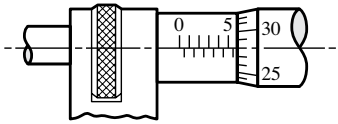


Fig. 5. Metric Micrometer

To permit measurements within 0.002 millimeter to be made, some micrometers are provided with a vernier scale on the sleeve in addition to regular graduations. Micrometers of this type are read as follows: First, as with an ordinary micrometer, determine the number of whole millimeters (if any) and the number of hundredths of a millimeter, and then find a line on the sleeve vernier scale that exactly coincides with one on the thimble. The number of this coinciding vernier line represents the number of two-thousandths of a millimeter to be added to the reading already obtained. Thus, for example, a measurement of 2.958 millimeters would be obtained by reading 2.5 millimeters on the sleeve, adding 0.45 millimeter read from the thimble, and then adding 0.008 millimeter as determined by the vernier.

Note: 0.01 millimeter = 0.000393 inch, and 0.002 millimeter = 0.000078 inch (78 millionths). Therefore, metric micrometers provide smaller measuring increments than comparable inch unit micrometers—the smallest graduation of an ordinary inch-reading micrometer is 0.001 inch; the vernier type has graduations down to 0.0001 inch. When using either a metric or inch micrometer without a vernier, smaller readings than those graduated may, of course, be obtained by visual interpolation between graduations.

Sine-Bar Use

The sine-bar is used either for very accurate angular measurements or for locating work at a given angle as, for example, in surface grinding templets, gages, etc. The sine-bar is especially useful in measuring or checking angles when the limit of accuracy is 5 minutes or less. Some bevel protractors are equipped with verniers which read to 5 minutes, but the setting depends upon the alignment of graduations, whereas a sine-bar usually is located by positive contact with precision gage-blocks selected for whatever dimension is required for obtaining a given angle.

Types of Sine-Bars.—A sine-bar consists of a hardened, ground and lapped steel bar with very accurate cylindrical plugs of equal diameter attached to or near each end. The form illustrated by Fig. 1 has notched ends for receiving the cylindrical plugs so that they are held firmly against both faces of the notch. The standard center-to-center distance C between the plugs is either 5 or 10 inches. The upper and lower sides of sine-bars are parallel to the center line of the plugs within very close limits. The body of the sine-bar ordinarily

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

has several through holes to reduce the weight. In the making of the sine-bar shown in Fig. 2, if too much material is removed from one locating notch, regrinding the shoulder at the opposite end would make it possible to obtain the correct center distance. That is the reason for this change in form. The type of sine-bar illustrated by Fig. 3 has the cylindrical disks or plugs attached to one side. These differences in form or arrangement do not, of course, affect the principle governing the use of the sine-bar. An accurate surface plate or master flat is always used in conjunction with a sine-bar in order to form the base from which the vertical measurements are made.

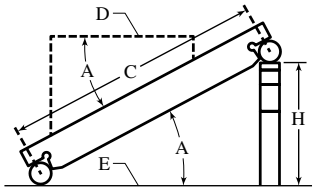


Fig. 1.

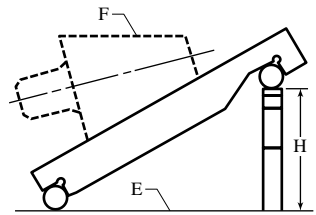


Fig. 2.

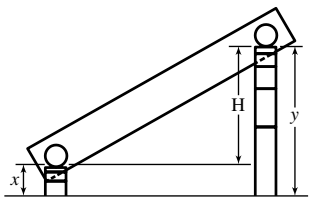


Fig. 3.

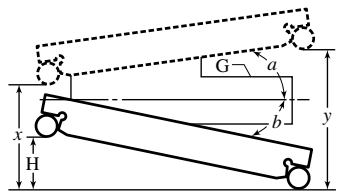


Fig. 4.

Setting a Sine-Bar to a Given Angle.—To find the vertical distance *H* for setting a sine-bar to the required angle, convert the angle to decimal form on a pocket calculator, take the sine of that angle, and multiply by the distance between the cylinders. For example, if an angle of 31 degrees, 30 minutes is required, the equivalent angle is 31 degrees plus $^{30}/_{60} = 31 + 0.5$, or 31.5 degrees. (For conversions from minutes and seconds to decimals of degrees and vice versa, see page 103). The sine of 31.5 degrees is 0.5225, and multiplying this value by the sine-bar length gives 2.613 inches for the height *H*, Fig. 1 and Fig. 3, of the gage blocks.

Finding Angle when Height *H* of Sine-Bar is Known.—To find the angle equivalent to a given height *H*, reverse the above procedure. Thus, if the height *H* is 1.4061 in., dividing by 5 gives a sine of 0.28122, which corresponds to an angle of 16.333 degrees, or 16 degrees 20 minutes.

Checking Angle of Templet or Gage by Using Sine-Bar.—Place templet or gage on sine-bar as indicated by dotted lines, Fig. 1. Clamps may be used to hold work in place. Place upper end of sine-bar on gage blocks having total height *H* corresponding to the required angle. If upper edge *D* of work is parallel with surface plate *E*, then angle *A* of work equals angle *A* to which sine-bar is set. Parallelism between edge *D* and surface plate may be tested by checking the height at each end with a dial gage or some type of indicating comparator.

Measuring Angle of Templet or Gage with Sine-Bar.—To measure such an angle, adjust height of gage blocks and sine-bar until edge *D*, Fig. 1, is parallel with surface plate *E*; then find angle corresponding to height *H* of gage blocks. For example, if height *H* is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2.5939 inches when *D* and *E* are parallel, the calculator will show that the angle *A* of the work is 31 degrees, 15 minutes.

Checking Taper per Foot with Sine-Bar.—As an example, assume that the plug gage in Fig. 2 is supposed to have a taper of $6\frac{1}{8}$ inches per foot and taper is to be checked by using a 5-inch sine-bar. The table of *Tapers per Foot and Corresponding Angles* on page 698 shows that the included angle for a taper of $6\frac{1}{8}$ inches per foot is 28 degrees 38 minutes 1 second, or 28.6336 degrees from the calculator. For a 5-inch sine-bar, the calculator gives a value of 2.396 inch for the height *H* of the gage blocks. Using this height, if the upper surface *F* of the plug gage is parallel to the surface plate, the angle corresponds to a taper of $6\frac{1}{8}$ inches per foot.

Setting Sine-Bar having Plugs Attached to Side.—If the lower plug does not rest directly on the surface plate, as in Fig. 3, the height *H* for the sine-bar is the difference between heights *x* and *y*, or the difference between the heights of the plugs; otherwise, the procedure in setting the sine-bar and checking angles is the same as previously described.

Checking Templets Having Two Angles.—Assume that angle *a* of templet, Fig. 4, is 9 degrees, angle *b* is 12 degrees, and that edge *G* is parallel to the surface plate. For an angle *b* of 12 degrees, the calculator shows that the height *H* is 1.03956 inches. For an angle *a* of 9 degrees, the difference between measurements *x* and *y* when the sine-bar is in contact with the upper edge of the templet is 0.78217 inch.

Sine-Bar Tables to Set Sine-Bars to Given Angle.—*Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition* contains tables that give constants for sine-bars of 2.5 to 10 inches and 75 to 150 mm length. These constants represent the vertical height *H* for setting a sine-bar of the corresponding length to the required angle.

Using Sine-Bar Tables with Sine-Bars of Other Lengths.—A sine-bar may sometimes be preferred that is longer (or shorter) than that given in available tables because of its longer working surface or because the longer center distance is conducive to greater precision. To use the sine-bar tables with a sine-bar of another length to obtain the vertical distances *H*, multiply the value obtained from the table by the fraction (length of sine-bar used ÷ length of sine-bar specified in table).

Example: Use the 5-inch sine-bar table to obtain the vertical height *H* for setting a 10-inch sine-bar to an angle of 39 degrees. The sine of 39 degrees is 0.62932, hence the vertical height *H* for setting a 10-inch sine-bar is 6.2932 inches.

Solution: The height *H* given for 39 degrees in the 5-inch sine-bar table (*Constants for 5-Inch Sine-Bar* in the *ADDITIONAL* material in the *Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition*) is 3.14660. The corresponding height for a 10-inch sine-bar is $^{10}/_{5} \times 3.14660 = 6.2932$ inches.

Using a Calculator to Determine Sine-Bar Constants for a Given Angle.—The constant required to set a given angle for a sine-bar of any length can be quickly determined by using a scientific calculator. The required formulas are as follows:

a) angle *A* given in degrees and calculator is set to measure angles in radian

$$H = L \times \sin\left(A \times \frac{\pi}{180}\right)$$

or

a) angle *A* is given in radian, or
b) angle *A* is given in degrees and calculator is set to measure angles in degrees

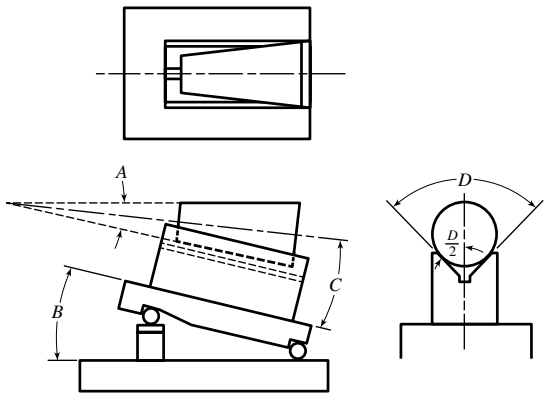
$$H = L \times \sin(A)$$

where L = length of the sine-bar A = angle to which the sine-bar is to be set
H = vertical height to which one end of sine-bar must be set to obtain angle A
$\pi = 3.141592654$

In the previous formulas, the height *H* and length *L* must be given in the same units but may be in either metric or US units. Thus, if *L* is given in mm, then *H* is in mm; and, if *L* is given in inches, then *H* is in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Measuring Tapers with V-Block and Sine-Bar.—The taper on a conical part may be checked or found by placing the part in a V-block that rests on the surface of a sine-plate or sine-bar as shown in the accompanying diagram. The advantage of this method is that the axis of the V-block may be aligned with the sides of the sine-bar. Thus, when the tapered part is placed in the V-block, it will be aligned perpendicular to the transverse axis of the sine-bar.



The sine-bar is set to angle $B = (C + A/2)$ where $A/2$ is one-half the included angle of the tapered part. If D is the included angle of the precision V-block, the angle C is calculated from the formula:

$$\sin C = \frac{\sin (A/2)}{\sin (D/2)}$$

If dial indicator readings show no change across all points along the top of the taper surface, then this checks that the angle A of the taper is correct.

If the indicator readings vary, proceed as follows to find the actual angle of taper: 1) Adjust the angle of the sine-bar until the indicator reading is constant. Then find the new angle B' as explained in the paragraph *Measuring Angle of Templet or Gage with Sine-Bar* on page 694; and Using the angle B' calculate the actual half-angle $A'/2$ of the taper from the formula:

$$\tan \frac{A'}{2} = \frac{\sin B'}{\csc \frac{D}{2} + \cos B'}$$

The taper per foot corresponding to certain half-angles of taper may be found in the table on page 698.

Dimensioning Tapers.—At least three methods of dimensioning tapers are in use.

Standard Tapers: Give one diameter or width, the length, and insert note on drawing designating the taper by number.

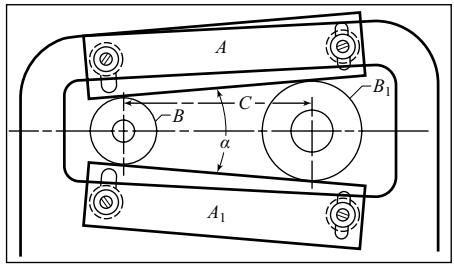
Special Tapers: In dimensioning a taper when the slope is specified, the length and only one diameter should be given or the diameters at both ends of the taper should be given and length omitted.

Precision Work: In certain cases where very precise measurements are necessary, the taper surface, either external or internal, is specified by giving a diameter at a certain distance from a surface and the slope of the taper.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

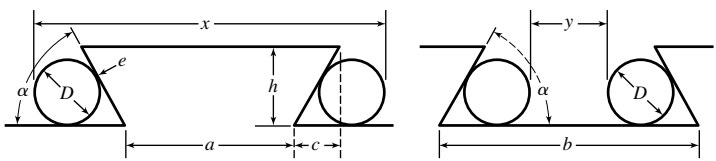
Accurate Measurement of Angles and Tapers

When great accuracy is required in the measurement of angles, or when originating tapers, disks are commonly used. The principle of the disk method of taper measurement is that if two disks of unequal diameters are placed either in contact or a certain distance apart, lines tangent to their peripheries will represent an angle or taper, the degree of which depends upon the diameters of the two disks and the distance between them.



The gage shown in the accompanying illustration, which is a form commonly used for originating tapers or measuring angles accurately, is set by means of disks. This gage consists of two adjustable straight edges A and A_1, which are in contact with disks B and B_1. The angle α or the taper between the straight edges depends, of course, upon the diameters of the disks and the center distance C, and, as these three dimensions can be measured accurately, it is possible to set the gage to a given angle within very close limits. Moreover, if a record of the three dimensions is kept, the exact setting of the gage can be reproduced quickly at any time. The following rules may be used for adjusting a gage of this type and cover all problems likely to arise in practice. Disks are also occasionally used for the setting of parts in angular positions when they are to be machined accurately to a given angle: the rules are applicable to these conditions also.

Measuring Dovetail Slides.—Dovetail slides that must be machined accurately to a given width are commonly gaged by using pieces of cylindrical rod or wire and measuring as indicated by the dimensions x and y of the accompanying illustrations.



The rod or wire used should be small enough so that the point of contact e is somewhat below the corner or edge of the dovetail.

To obtain dimension x for measuring male dovetails, add 1 to the cotangent of one-half the dovetail angle α, multiply by diameter D of the rods used, and add the product to dimension α.

$$x = D\left(1 + \cot\frac{1}{2}\alpha\right) + a \qquad c = h \times \cot\alpha$$

To obtain dimension y for measuring a female dovetail, add 1 to the cotangent of one-half the dovetail angle α, multiply by diameter D of the rod used, and subtract the result from dimension b. Expressing these rules as formulas:

$$y = b - D\left(1 + \cot\frac{1}{2}\alpha\right)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tapers per Foot and Corresponding Angles

Taper per Foot	Included Angle				Angle with Center Line			Taper per Foot	Included Angle				Angle with Center Line		
1/64	0.074604°	0°	4′	29″	0°	2′	14″	17/8	8.934318°	8°	56′	4″	4°	28′	2″
1/32	0.149208°	0	8	57	0	4	29	1 15/16	9.230863°	9	13	51	4	36	56
1/16	0.298415	0	17	54	0	8	57	2	9.527283	9	31	38	4	45	49
3/32	0.447621	0	26	51	0	13	26	2 1/8	10.119738	10	7	11	5	3	36
1/8	0.596826	0	35	49	0	17	54	2 1/4	10.711650	10	42	42	5	21	21
5/32	0.746028	0	44	46	0	22	23	2 3/8	11.302990	11	18	11	5	39	5
3/16	0.895228	0	53	43	0	26	51	2 1/2	11.893726	11	53	37	5	56	49
7/32	1.044425	1	2	40	0	31	20	2 5/8	12.483829	12	29	2	6	14	31
1/4	1.193619	1	11	37	0	35	49	2 3/4	13.073267	13	4	24	6	32	12
9/32	1.342808	1	20	34	0	40	17	2 7/8	13.662012	13	39	43	6	49	52
5/16	1.491993	1	29	31	0	44	46	3	14.250033	14	15	0	7	7	30
11/32	1.641173	1	38	28	0	49	14	3 1/8	14.837300	14	50	14	7	25	7
3/8	1.790347	1	47	25	0	53	43	3 1/4	15.423785	15	25	26	7	42	43
13/32	1.939516	1	56	22	0	58	11	3 3/8	16.009458	16	0	34	8	0	17
7/16	2.088677	2	5	19	1	2	40	3 1/2	16.594290	16	35	39	8	17	50
15/32	2.237832	2	14	16	1	7	8	3 5/8	17.178253	17	10	42	8	35	21
1/2	2.386979	2	23	13	1	11	37	3 3/4	17.761318	17	45	41	8	52	50
17/32	2.536118	2	32	10	1	16	5	3 7/8	18.343458	18	20	36	9	10	18
9/16	2.685248	2	41	7	1	20	33	4	18.924644	18	55	29	9	27	44
19/32	2.834369	2	50	4	1	25	2	4 1/8	19.504850	19	30	17	9	45	9
5/8	2.983481	2	59	1	1	29	30	4 1/4	20.084047	20	5	3	10	2	31
21/32	3.132582	3	7	57	1	33	59	4 3/8	20.662210	20	39	44	10	19	52
11/16	3.281673	3	16	54	1	38	27	4 1/2	21.239311	21	14	22	10	37	11
23/32	3.430753	3	25	51	1	42	55	4 5/8	21.815324	21	48	55	10	54	28
3/4	3.579821	3	34	47	1	47	24	4 3/4	22.390223	22	23	25	11	11	42
25/32	3.728877	3	43	44	1	51	52	4 7/8	22.963983	22	57	50	11	28	55
13/16	3.877921	3	52	41	1	56	20	5	23.536578	23	32	12	11	46	6
27/32	4.026951	4	1	37	2	0	49	5 1/8	24.107983	24	6	29	12	3	14
7/8	4.175968	4	10	33	2	5	17	5 1/4	24.678175	24	40	41	12	20	21
29/32	4.324970	4	19	30	2	9	45	5 3/8	25.247127	25	14	50	12	37	25
15/16	4.473958	4	28	26	2	14	13	5 1/2	25.814817	25	48	53	12	54	27
31/32	4.622931	4	37	23	2	18	41	5 5/8	26.381221	26	22	52	13	11	26
1	4.771888	4	46	19	2	23	9	5 3/4	26.946316	26	56	47	13	28	23
1 1/16	5.069753	5	4	11	2	32	6	5 7/8	27.510079	27	30	36	13	45	18
1 1/8	5.367550	5	22	3	2	41	2	6	28.072487	28	4	21	14	2	10
1 3/16	5.665275	5	39	55	2	49	57	6 1/8	28.633518	28	38	1	14	19	0
1 1/4	5.962922	5	57	47	2	58	53	6 1/4	29.193151	29	11	35	14	35	48
1 5/16	6.260490	6	15	38	3	7	49	6 3/8	29.751364	29	45	5	14	52	32
1 3/8	6.557973	6	33	29	3	16	44	6 1/2	30.308136	30	18	29	15	9	15
1 7/16	6.855367	6	51	19	3	25	40	6 5/8	30.863447	30	51	48	15	25	54
1 1/2	7.152669	7	9	10	3	34	35	6 3/4	31.417276	31	25	2	15	42	31
1 9/16	7.449874	7	27	0	3	43	30	6 7/8	31.969603	31	58	11	15	59	5
1 5/8	7.746979	7	44	49	3	52	25	7	32.520409	32	31	13	16	15	37
1 11/16	8.043980	8	2	38	4	1	19	7 1/8	33.069676	33	4	11	16	32	5
1 3/4	8.340873	8	20	27	4	10	14	7 1/4	33.617383	33	37	3	16	48	31
1 13/16	8.637654	8	38	16	4	19	8	7 3/8	34.163514	34	9	49	17	4	54

Taper per foot represents inches of taper per foot of length. For conversions into decimal degrees and radians see *Conversion Tables of Angular Measure* on page 103.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Amount of Taper in a Given Length, When the Taper per Foot is Known

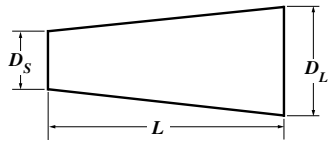
Length of Taper	Taper per Foot										
	1/16	3/32	1/8	1/4	3/8	1/2	0.600	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4
1/32	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0007	0.0010	0.0013	0.0016	0.0016	0.0020	0.0026	0.0033
1/16	0.0003	0.0005	0.0007	0.0013	0.0020	0.0026	0.0031	0.0033	0.0039	0.0052	0.0065
1/8	0.0007	0.0010	0.0013	0.0026	0.0039	0.0052	0.0063	0.0065	0.0078	0.0104	0.0130
3/16	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0039	0.0059	0.0078	0.0094	0.0098	0.0117	0.0156	0.0195
1/4	0.0013	0.0020	0.0026	0.0052	0.0078	0.0104	0.0125	0.0130	0.0156	0.0208	0.0260
5/16	0.0016	0.0024	0.0033	0.0065	0.0098	0.0130	0.0156	0.0163	0.0195	0.0260	0.0326
3/8	0.0020	0.0029	0.0039	0.0078	0.0117	0.0156	0.0188	0.0195	0.0234	0.0313	0.0391
7/16	0.0023	0.0034	0.0046	0.0091	0.0137	0.0182	0.0219	0.0228	0.0273	0.0365	0.0456
1/2	0.0026	0.0039	0.0052	0.0104	0.0156	0.0208	0.0250	0.0260	0.0313	0.0417	0.0521
9/16	0.0029	0.0044	0.0059	0.0117	0.0176	0.0234	0.0281	0.0293	0.0352	0.0469	0.0586
5/8	0.0033	0.0049	0.0065	0.0130	0.0195	0.0260	0.0313	0.0326	0.0391	0.0521	0.0651
11/16	0.0036	0.0054	0.0072	0.0143	0.0215	0.0286	0.0344	0.0358	0.0430	0.0573	0.0716
3/4	0.0039	0.0059	0.0078	0.0156	0.0234	0.0313	0.0375	0.0391	0.0469	0.0625	0.0781
13/16	0.0042	0.0063	0.0085	0.0169	0.0254	0.0339	0.0406	0.0423	0.0508	0.0677	0.0846
7/8	0.0046	0.0068	0.0091	0.0182	0.0273	0.0365	0.0438	0.0456	0.0547	0.0729	0.0911
15/16	0.0049	0.0073	0.0098	0.0195	0.0293	0.0391	0.0469	0.0488	0.0586	0.0781	0.0977
1	0.0052	0.0078	0.0104	0.0208	0.0313	0.0417	0.0500	0.0521	0.0625	0.0833	0.1042
2	0.0104	0.0156	0.0208	0.0417	0.0625	0.0833	0.1000	0.1042	0.1250	0.1667	0.2083
3	0.0156	0.0234	0.0313	0.0625	0.0938	0.1250	0.1500	0.1563	0.1875	0.2500	0.3125
4	0.0208	0.0313	0.0417	0.0833	0.1250	0.1667	0.2000	0.2083	0.2500	0.3333	0.4167
5	0.0260	0.0391	0.0521	0.1042	0.1563	0.2083	0.2500	0.2604	0.3125	0.4167	0.5208
6	0.0313	0.0469	0.0625	0.1250	0.1875	0.2500	0.3000	0.3125	0.3750	0.5000	0.6250
7	0.0365	0.0547	0.0729	0.1458	0.2188	0.2917	0.3500	0.3646	0.4375	0.5833	0.7292
8	0.0417	0.0625	0.0833	0.1667	0.2500	0.3333	0.4000	0.4167	0.5000	0.6667	0.8333
9	0.0469	0.0703	0.0938	0.1875	0.2813	0.3750	0.4500	0.4688	0.5625	0.7500	0.9375
10	0.0521	0.0781	0.1042	0.2083	0.3125	0.4167	0.5000	0.5208	0.6250	0.8333	1.0417
11	0.0573	0.0859	0.1146	0.2292	0.3438	0.4583	0.5500	0.5729	0.6875	0.9167	1.1458
12	0.0625	0.0938	0.1250	0.2500	0.3750	0.5000	0.6000	0.6250	0.7500	1.0000	1.2500

The amount of taper in a certain length of inches is equal to the taper per foot divided by 12 then multiplied by the given length of the tapered part.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

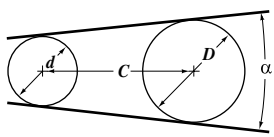
Rules for Figuring Tapers

D_L = diameter of taper, large end
D_S = diameter of taper, small end
L = length of taper (inches)
TPF = taper per foot
TPI = taper per inch
T = taper in a certain length, in inches



Given	To Find	Rule
TPF	TPI	$TPI = TPF/12$
TPI	TPF	$TPF = TPI \times 12$
D_L, D_S, L	TPF	$TPF = 12\dfrac{D_L - D_S}{L}$
D_L, L, TPF	D_S	$D_S = D_L - \dfrac{TPF}{12}L$
D_S, L, TPF	D_L	$D_L = D_S + \dfrac{TPF}{12}L$
D_L, D_S, TPF	L	$L = (D_L - D_S)\dfrac{12}{TPF}$
L, TPF	T	$T = \dfrac{TPF}{12} \times L$

To find angle α for given taper *T* in inches per foot.—



$$\alpha = 2 \arctan(T/24)$$

Example: What angle α is equivalent to a taper of 1.5 inches per foot?

$$\alpha = 2 \times \arctan(1.5/24) = 7.153°$$

To find taper per foot *T* given angle α in degrees.—

$$T = 24 \tan(\alpha/2) \text{ inches per foot}$$

Example: What taper *T* is equivalent to an angle of 7.153°?

$$T = 24 \tan(7.153/2) = 1.5 \text{ inches per foot}$$

To find angle α given dimensions *D*, *d*, and *C*.— Let *K* be the difference in the disk diameters divided by twice the center distance. $K = (D - d)/(2C)$, then $\alpha = 2 \arcsin K$

Example: If the disk diameters *d* and *D* are 1 and 1.5 inches, respectively, and the center distance *C* is 5 inches, find the included angle α.

$$K = (1.5 - 1)/(2 \times 5) = 0.05 \qquad \alpha = 2 \times \arcsin 0.05 = 5.732°$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To find taper *T* measured at right angles to a line through the disk centers given dimensions *D*, *d*, and distance *C*.—Find *K* using the formula in the previous example, then $T = 24K/\sqrt{1 - K^2}$ inches per foot.

Example: If disk diameters *d* and *D* are 1 and 1.5 inches, respectively, and the center distance *C* is 5 inches, find the taper per foot.

$$K = (1.5 - 1)/(2 \times 5) = 0.05 \qquad T = \frac{24 \times 0.05}{\sqrt{1 - (0.05)^2}} = 1.2015 \text{ inches per foot}$$

To find center distance *C* for a given taper *T* in inches per foot.—

$$C = \frac{D - d}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{1 + (T/24)^2}}{T/24} \text{ inches}$$

Example: Gage is to be set to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot, and disk diameters are 1.25 and 1.5 inches, respectively. Find the required center distance for the disks.

$$C = \frac{1.5 - 1.25}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{1 + (0.75/24)^2}}{0.75/24} = 4.002 \text{ inches}$$

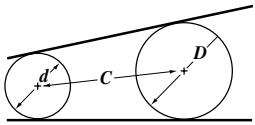
To find center distance *C* for a given angle α and dimensions *D* and *d*.

$$C = (D - d)/2 \sin(\alpha/2) \text{ inches}$$

Example: If an angle α of 20° is required, and the disks are 1 and 3 inches in diameter, respectively, find the required center distance *C*.

$$C = (3 - 1)/(2 \times \sin 10°) = 5.759 \text{ inches}$$

To find taper *T* measured at right angles to one side.—When one side is taken as a base line and the taper is measured at right angles to that side, calculate *K* as explained above and use the following formula for determining the taper *T*:



$$T = 24K \frac{\sqrt{1 - K^2}}{1 - 2K^2} \text{ inches per foot}$$

Example: If the disk diameters are 2 and 3 inches, respectively, and the center distance is 5 inches, what is the taper per foot measured at right angles to one side?

$$K = \frac{3 - 2}{2 \times 5} = 0.1 \qquad T = 24 \times 0.1 \times \frac{\sqrt{1 - (0.1)^2}}{1 - [2 \times (0.1)^2]} = 2.4367 \text{ in. per ft.}$$

To find center distance *C* when taper *T* is measured from one side.—

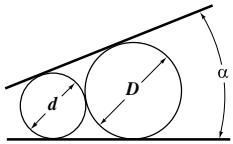
$$C = \frac{D - d}{\sqrt{2 - 2/\sqrt{1 + (T/12)^2}}} \text{ inches}$$

Example: If the taper measured at right angles to one side is 6.9 inches per foot, and the disks are 2 and 5 inches in diameter, respectively, what is center distance *C*?

$$C = \frac{5 - 2}{\sqrt{2 - 2\sqrt{1 = (6.9/12)^2}}} = 5.815 \text{ inches.}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To find diameter *D* of a large disk in contact with a small disk of diameter *d* given angle α.—



$$D = d \times \frac{1 + \sin(\alpha/2)}{1 - \sin(\alpha/2)} \text{ inches}$$

Example: The required angle α is 15°. Find diameter *D* of a large disk that is in contact with a standard 1-inch reference disk.

$$D = 1 \times \frac{1 + \sin 7.5°}{1 - \sin 7.5°} = 1.3002 \text{ inches}$$

Measurement over Pins and Rolls

Measurement over Pins.—When the distance across a bolt circle is too large to measure using ordinary measuring tools, then the required distance may be found from the distance across adjacent or alternate holes using one of the methods that follow:

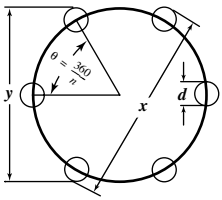


Fig. 1a.

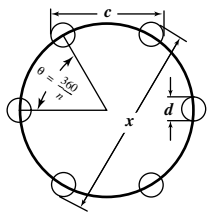


Fig. 1b.

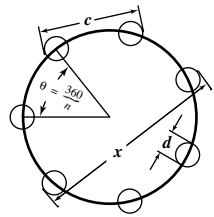


Fig. 1c.

Even Number of Holes in Circle: To measure the unknown distance *x* over opposite plugs in a bolt circle of *n* holes (*n* is even and greater than 4), as shown in Fig. 1a, where *y* is the distance over alternate plugs, *d* is the diameter of the holes, and θ = 360/*n* is the angle between adjacent holes, use the following general equation for obtaining *x*:

$$x = \frac{y - d}{\sin\theta} + d$$

Example: In a die that has six 3/4-inch diameter holes equally spaced on a circle, where the distance *y* over alternate holes is 4½ inches, and the angle θ between adjacent holes is 60, then

$$x = \frac{4.500 - 0.7500}{\sin 60°} + 0.7500 = 5.0801$$

In a similar problem, the distance *c* over adjacent plugs is given, as shown in Fig. 1b. If the number of holes is even and greater than 4, the distance *x* over opposite plugs is given in the following formula:

$$x = 2(c - d)\left(\frac{\sin\left(\frac{180 - \theta}{2}\right)}{\sin\theta}\right) + d$$

where *d* and θ are as defined above.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Odd Number of Holes in Circle: In a circle as shown in Fig. 1c, where the number of holes n is odd and greater than 3, and the distance c over adjacent holes is given, then θ equals 360/n and the distance x across the most widely spaced holes is given by:

$$x = \frac{\frac{c-d}{2}}{\sin\frac{\theta}{4}} + d$$

Checking a V-Shaped Groove by Measurement Over Pins.— In checking a groove of the shape shown in Fig. 2, it is necessary to measure the dimension X over the pins of radius R. If values for the radius R, dimension Z, and the angles α and β are known, the problem is to determine the distance Y, to arrive at the required overall dimension for X. If a line AC is drawn from the bottom of the V to the center of the pin at the left in Fig. 2, and a line CB from the center of this pin to its point of tangency with the side of the V, a right-angle triangle is formed in which one side, CB, is known and one angle, CAB, can be determined. A line drawn from the center of a circle to the point of intersection of two tangents to the circle bisects the angle made by the tangent lines, and angle CAB therefore equals $\frac{1}{2}(\alpha+\beta)$. The length AC and the angle DAC can now be found, and with AC known in the right-angle triangle ADC, AD, which is equal to Y, can be found.

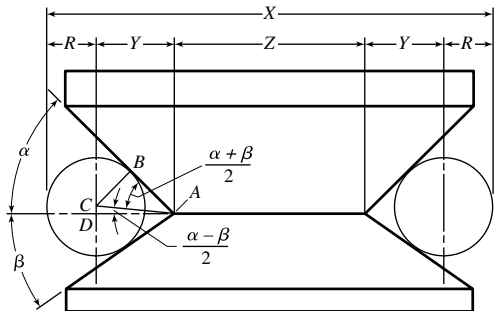


Fig. 2.

The value for X can be obtained from the formula

$$X = Z + 2R\left(\csc\frac{\alpha+\beta}{2}\cos\frac{\alpha-\beta}{2} + 1\right)$$

For example, if $R = 0.500$, $Z = 1.824$, $\alpha = 45$ degrees, and $\beta = 35$ degrees,

$$X = 1.824 + (2 \times 0.5)\left(\csc\frac{45° + 35°}{2}\cos\frac{45° - 35°}{2} + 1\right)$$

$$X = 1.824 + \csc 40°\cos 5° + 1$$

$$X = 1.824 + 1.5557 \times 0.99619 + 1$$

$$X = 1.824 + 1.550 + 1 = 4.374$$

Checking Radius of Arc by Measurement Over Rolls.— The radius R of large-radius concave and convex gages of the type shown in Fig. 3a, Fig. 3b and Fig. 3c can be checked by measurement L over two rolls with the gage resting on the rolls as shown. If the diameter of the rolls D, the length L, and the height H of the top of the arc above the surface plate (for the concave gage, Fig. 3a) are known or can be measured, the radius R of the workpiece to be checked can be calculated trigonometrically, as follows.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Referring to Fig. 3a for the concave gage, if L and D are known, cb can be found, and if H and D are known, ce can be found. With cb and ce known, ab can be found by means of a diagram as shown in Fig. 3c.

In diagram Fig. 3c, cb and ce are shown at right angles as in Fig. 3a. A line is drawn connecting points b and e, and line ce is extended to the right. A line is now drawn from point b perpendicular to be and intersecting the extension of ce at point f. A semicircle can now be drawn through points b, e, and f with point a as the center. Triangles bce and bcf are similar and have a common side. Thus $ce{:}bc{::}bc{:}cf$. With ce and bc known, cf can be found from this proportion and, hence, ef, which is the diameter of the semicircle and radius ab. Then $R = ab + D/2$.

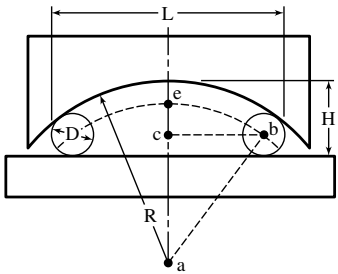


Fig. 3a.

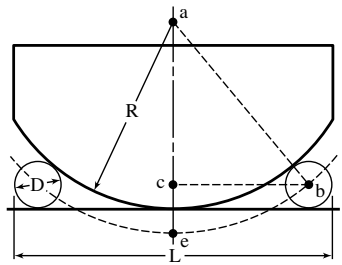


Fig. 3b.

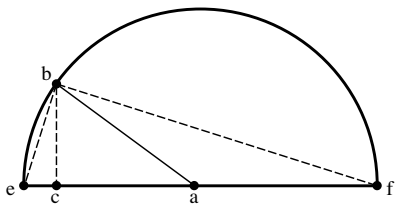


Fig. 3c.

The procedure for the convex gage is similar. The distances cb and ce are readily found, and from these two distances ab is computed on the basis of similar triangles as before. Radius R is then readily found.

The derived formulas for concave and convex gages are as follows:

Formulas:

$$R = \frac{(L-D)^2}{8(H-D)} + \frac{H}{2} \qquad \text{(Concave gage Fig. 3a)}$$

$$R = \frac{(L-D)^2}{8D} \qquad \text{(Convex gage Fig. 3b)}$$

For example: For Fig. 3a, let $L = 17.8$, $D = 3.20$, and $H = 5.72$, then

$$R = \frac{(17.8-3.20)^2}{8(5.72-3.20)} + \frac{5.72}{2} = \frac{(14.60)^2}{8\times 2.52} + 2.86$$

$$R = \frac{213.16}{20.16} + 2.86 = 13.43$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For Fig. 3b, let $L = 22.28$ and $D = 3.40$, then

$$R = \frac{(22.28 - 3.40)^2}{8 \times 3.40} = \frac{356.45}{27.20} = 13.1$$

Checking Shaft Conditions

Checking for Various Shaft Conditions.—An indicating height gage, together with V-blocks can be used to check shafts for ovality, taper, straightness (bending or curving), and concentricity of features (as shown exaggerated in Fig. 4). If a shaft on which work has been completed shows lack of concentricity, it may be due to the shaft having become bent or bowed because of mishandling or oval or tapered due to poor machine conditions. In checking for concentricity, the first step is to check for ovality, or out-of-roundness, as in Fig. 4a. The shaft is supported in a suitable V-block on a surface table, and the dial indicator plunger is placed over the workpiece, which is then rotated beneath the plunger to obtain readings of the amount of eccentricity.

This procedure (sometimes called clocking, owing to the resemblance of the dial indicator to a clock face) is repeated for other shaft diameters as necessary, and, in addition to making a written record of the measurements, the positions of extreme conditions should be marked on the workpiece for later reference.

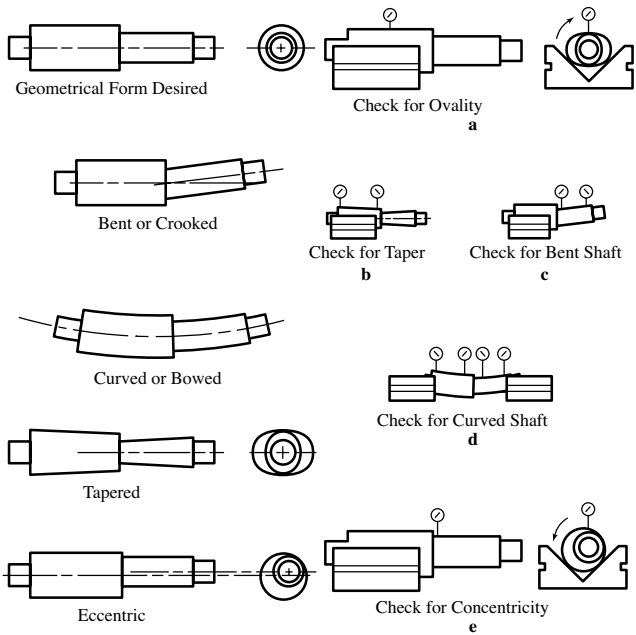


Fig. 4.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To check for taper, the shaft is supported in the V-block and the dial indicator is used to measure the maximum height over the shaft at various positions along its length, as shown in Fig. 4b, without turning the workpiece. Again, the shaft should be marked with the reading positions and values, and with the direction of the taper, and a written record should be made of the amount and direction of any taper discovered.

Checking for a bent shaft requires that the shaft be clocked at the shoulder and at the farther end, as shown in Fig. 4c. For a second check, the shaft is rotated only 90° or a quarter turn. When the recorded readings are compared with those from the ovality and taper checks, the three conditions can be distinguished.

To detect a curved or bowed condition, the shaft should be suspended in two V-blocks with only about $\frac{1}{8}$ inch of each end in each V. Alternatively, the shaft can be placed between centers. The shaft is then clocked at several points, as shown in Fig. 4d, but preferably not at those locations used for the ovality, taper, or crookedness checks. If the single element due to curvature is to be distinguished from the effects of ovality, taper, and crookedness, and its value assessed, great care must be taken to differentiate between the conditions detected by the measurements.

Finally, the amount of eccentricity between one shaft diameter and another may be tested by the setup shown in Fig. 4e. With the indicator plunger in contact with the smaller diameter, close to the shoulder, the shaft is rotated in the V-block and the indicator needle position is monitored to find the maximum and minimum readings.

Curvature, ovality, or crookedness conditions may tend to cancel each other, as shown in Fig. 5, and one or more of these degrees of defectiveness may add themselves to the true eccentricity readings, depending on their angular positions. Fig. 5a shows, for instance, how crookedness and ovality tend to cancel each other, and also shows their effect in falsifying the reading for eccentricity. As the same shaft is turned in the V-block to the position shown in Fig. 5b, the maximum curvature reading could tend to cancel or reduce the maximum eccentricity reading. Where maximum readings for ovality, curvature, or crookedness occur at the same angular position, their values should be subtracted from the eccentricity reading to arrive at a true picture of the shaft condition. Confirmation of eccentricity readings may be obtained by reversing the shaft in the V-block, as shown in Fig. 5c, and clocking the larger diameter of the shaft.

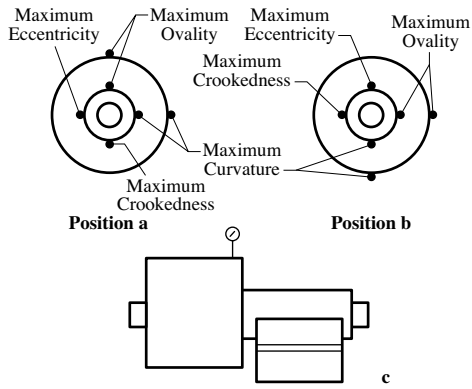


Fig. 5.

Out-of-Roundness—Lobing.—With the imposition of finer tolerances and the development of improved measurement methods, it has become apparent that no hole, cylinder, or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

sphere can be produced with a perfectly symmetrical round shape. Some of the conditions are diagrammed in Fig. 6, where Fig. 6a shows simple ovality and Fig. 6b shows ovality occurring in two directions. From the observation of such conditions have come the terms lobe and lobing. Fig. 6c shows the three-lobed shape common with centerless-ground components, and Fig. 6d is typical of multi-lobed shapes. In Fig. 6e are shown surface waviness, surface roughness, and out-of-roundness, which often are combined with lobing.

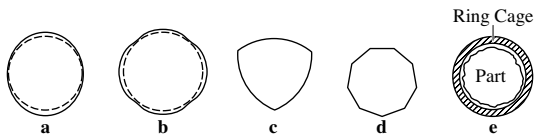


Fig. 6.

In Fig. 6a through Fig. 6d, the cylinder (or hole) diameters are shown at full size, but the lobes are magnified some 10,000 times to make them visible. In precision parts, the deviation from the round condition is usually only in the range of millionths of an inch, although it occasionally can be 0.0001 inch, 0.0002 inch, or more. For instance, a 3-inch-diameter part may have a lobing condition amounting to an inaccuracy of only 30 millionths (0.000030 inch). Even if the distortion (ovality, waviness, roughness) is small, it may cause hum, vibration, heat buildup, and wear, possibly leading to eventual failure of the component or assembly.

Plain elliptical out-of-roundness (two lobes), or any even number of lobes, can be detected by rotating the part on a surface plate under a dial indicator of adequate resolution, or by using an indicating caliper or snap gage. However, supporting such a part in a V-block during measurement will tend to conceal roundness errors. Ovality in a hole can be detected by a dial-type bore gage or internal measuring machine. Parts with odd numbers of lobes require an instrument that can measure the envelope or complete circumference. Plug and ring gages will tell whether a shaft can be assembled into a bearing but not whether there will be a good fit, as illustrated in Fig. 6e.

A standard, 90-degree included-angle V-block can be used to detect and count the number of lobes, but to measure the exact amount of lobing indicated by R-r in Fig. 7 requires a V-block with an angle α, which is related to the number of lobes. This angle α can be calculated from the formula $2\alpha = 180° - 360°/N$, where N is the number of lobes. Thus, for a three-lobe form, α becomes 30 degrees, and the V-block used should have a 60-degree included angle. The distance M, which is obtained by rotating the part under the comparator plunger, is converted to a value for the radial variation in cylinder contour by the formula $M = (R - r)(1 + \csc \alpha)$.

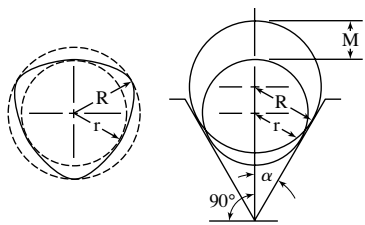


Fig. 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Using a V-block (even of appropriate angle) for parts with odd numbers of lobes will give exaggerated readings when the distance $R - r$ (Fig. 7) is used as the measure of the amount of out-of-roundness. The accompanying table shows the appropriate V-block angles for various odd numbers of lobes and the factors $(1 + \csc \alpha)$ by which the readings are increased over the actual out-of-roundness values.

Table of Lobes, V-Block Angles and Exaggeration Factors in Measuring Out-of-Round Conditions in Shafts

Number of Lobes	Included Angle of V-Block (deg)	Exaggeration Factor $(1 + \csc \alpha)$
3	60	3.00
5	108	2.24
7	128.57	2.11
9	140	2.06

Measurement of a complete circumference requires special equipment, often incorporating a precision spindle running true within two millionths (0.000002) inch. A stylus attached to the spindle is caused to traverse the internal or external cylinder being inspected, and its divergences are processed electronically to produce a polar chart similar to the wavy outline in Fig. 6e. Electronic circuits provide for the variations due to surface effects to be separated from those of lobing and other departures from the "true" cylinder traced out by the spindle.

Coordinates for Hole Circles

Type "A" Hole Circles.—Type "A" hole circles can be identified by hole number 1 at the top of the hole circle, as shown in Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b. The x, y coordinates for hole circles of from 3 to 33 holes corresponding to the geometry of Fig. 1a are given in Table 1a, and corresponding to the geometry of Fig. 1b in Table 1b. Holes are numbered in a counterclockwise direction as shown. Coordinates given are based upon a hole circle of (1) unit diameter. For other diameters, multiply the x and y coordinates from the table by the hole circle diameter. For example, for a 3-inch or 3-centimeter hole circle diameter, multiply table values by 3. Coordinates are valid in any unit system.

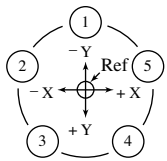


Fig. 1a. Type "A" Circle

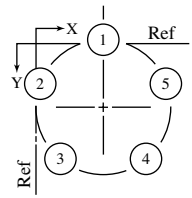


Fig. 1b. Type "A" Circle

The origin of the coordinate system in Fig. 1a, marked "Ref", is at the center of the hole circle at position $x = 0, y = 0$. The equations for calculating hole coordinates for type "A" circles with the coordinate system origin at the center of the hole circle are as follows:

$$\theta = \frac{360}{n} = \frac{2\pi}{n} \qquad x_H = -\frac{D}{2}\sin((H-1)\theta) \qquad y_H = -\frac{D}{2}\cos((H-1)\theta) \qquad \text{(1a)}$$

where n = number of holes in circle; D = diameter of hole circle; θ = angle between adjacent holes in circle; H = number (from 1 to n) of the current hole; $x_H = x$ coordinate at position of hole number H; and, $y_H = y$ coordinate at position of hole number H.

Example 1(a): Calculate the hole coordinates for the 5-hole circle shown in Fig. 1a when circle diameter = 1. Compare the results to the data tabulated in Table 1a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hole	$\theta = 360/5 = 72°$ $D = 1$	
1	$x_H = x_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(0) = 0.00000$	$y_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(0) = -0.50000$
2	$x_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(72) = -0.47553$	$y_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(72) = -0.15451$
3	$x_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(144) = -0.29389$	$y_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(144) = 0.40451$
4	$x_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(216) = 0.29389$	$y_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(216) = 0.40451$
5	$x_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(288) = 0.47553$	$y_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(288) = -0.15451$

In Fig. 1b, the origin of the coordinate system (point 0,0) is located at the top left of the figure at the intersection of the two lines labeled "Ref." The center of the hole circle is offset from the coordinate system origin by distance X_O in the $+x$ direction, and by distance Y_O in the $+y$ direction. In practice the origin of the coordinate system can be located at any convenient distance from the center of the hole circle. In Fig. 1b, it can be determined by inspection that the distances $X_O = Y_O = {}^{D}/_{2}$. The equations for calculating hole positions of type "A" circles of the Fig. 1b type are almost the same as in Equation (1a), but with the addition of X_O and Y_O terms, as follows:

$$\theta = \frac{360}{n} = \frac{2\pi}{n} \qquad x_H = -\frac{D}{2}\sin((H-1)\theta) + X_O \qquad y_H = -\frac{D}{2}\cos((H-1)\theta) + Y_O \quad \text{(1b)}$$

Example 1(b): Use results of Example 1 to determine hole coordinates of Fig. 1b for circle diameter = 1, and compare results with Table 1b.

Hole	$\theta = 360/5 = 72°$ $D = 1$ $X_O = {}^{D}/_{2} = 0.50000$ $Y_O = {}^{D}/_{2} = 0.50000$	
1	$x_1 = 0.00000 + X_O = 0.50000$	$y_1 = -0.50000 + Y_O = 0.00000$
2	$x_2 = -0.47553 + X_O = 0.02447$	$y_2 = -0.15451 + Y_O = 0.34549$
3	$x_3 = -0.29389 + X_O = 0.20611$	$y_3 = 0.40451 + Y_O = 0.90451$
4	$x_4 = 0.29389 + X_O = 0.79389$	$y_4 = 0.40451 + Y_O = 0.90451$
5	$x_5 = 0.47553 + X_O = 0.97553$	$y_5 = -0.15451 + Y_O = 0.34549$

Type "B" Hole Circles.— Compared to type "A" hole circles, type "B" hole circles, Fig. 2a and Fig. 2b, are arranged such that the circle of holes is rotated about the center of the circle by ${}^{\theta}/_{2}$ degrees, that is, $\frac{1}{2}$ of the angle between adjacent holes. The x,y coordinates for type "B" hole circles of from 3 to 33 holes are given in Table 2a for geometry corresponding to Fig. 2a, and in Table 2b for geometry corresponding to Fig. 2b. Holes are numbered in a counterclockwise direction as shown. Coordinates given are based upon a hole circle of (1) unit diameter. For other diameters, multiply the x and y coordinates from the table by the hole circle diameter. For example, for a 3-inch or 3-centimeter hole circle diameter, multiply table values by 3. Coordinates are valid in any unit system.

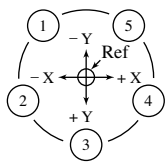


Fig. 2a. Type "B" Circle

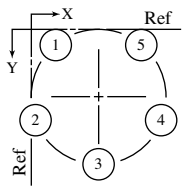


Fig. 2b. Type "B" Circle

In Fig. 2a, the coordinate system origin, marked "Ref", is at the center of the hole circle at position $x = 0, y = 0$. Equations for calculating hole coordinates for type "B" circles with the coordinate system origin at the center of the hole circle as in Fig. 2a are as follows:

$$\theta = \frac{360}{n} = \frac{2\pi}{n} \qquad x_H = -\frac{D}{2}\sin\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2}\right) \qquad y_H = -\frac{D}{2}\cos\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2}\right) \quad \text{(2a)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where n = number of holes in circle; D = diameter of hole circle; θ = angle between adjacent holes; $x_H = x$ coordinate at position of hole number H; and, $y_H = y$ coordinate at position of hole number H.

Example 2(a): Calculate the hole coordinates for the 5-hole circle shown in Fig. 2a when circle diameter = 1. Compare the results to the data in Table 2a.

Hole	$\theta = 360/5 = 72°$	$\theta/2 = 36°$	$D = 1$
1	$x_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(36) = -0.29389$	$y_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(36) = -0.40451$	
2	$x_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(108) = -0.47553$	$y_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(108) = 0.15451$	
3	$x_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(180) = 0.00000$	$y_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(180) = 0.50000$	
4	$x_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(252) = 0.47553$	$y_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(252) = 0.15451$	
5	$x_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(324) = 0.29389$	$y_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(324) = -0.40451$	

In Fig. 2b, the origin of the coordinate system (point 0,0) is located at the top left of the figure at the intersection of the two lines labeled "Ref." The center of the hole circle is offset from the coordinate system origin by distance X_O in the $+x$ direction and by distance Y_O in the $+y$ direction. In practice, the origin of the coordinate system can be chosen at any convenient distance from the hole circle origin. In Fig. 2b, it can be determined by inspection that distance $X_O = Y_O = D/2$. The equations for calculating hole positions of type "B" circles of the Fig. 2b type are the same as in Equation (2a) but with the addition of X_O and Y_O terms, as follows:

$$\theta = \frac{360}{n} = \frac{2\pi}{n} \qquad x_H = -\frac{D}{2}\sin\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2}\right) + X_O \qquad y_H = -\frac{D}{2}\cos\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2}\right) + Y_O \quad \text{(2b)}$$

Example 2(b): Use the coordinates obtained in Example 2(a) to determine the hole coordinates of a 5-hole circle shown in Fig. 1b with circle diameter = 1. Compare the results to the data in Table 2b.

Hole	$\theta = 360/5 = 72°$	$\theta/2 = 36°$	$D = 1$	$X_O = D/2 = 0.50000$	$Y_O = D/2 = 0.50000$
1	$x_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(36) + 0.50000 = 0.20611$		$y_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(36) + 0.50000 = 0.09549$		
2	$x_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(108) + 0.50000 = 0.02447$		$y_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(108) + 0.50000 = 0.65451$		
3	$x_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(180) + 0.50000 = 0.50000$		$y_3 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(180) + 0.50000 = 1.00000$		
4	$x_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(252) + 0.50000 = 0.97553$		$y_4 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(252) + 0.50000 = 0.65451$		
5	$x_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \sin(324) + 0.50000 = 0.79389$		$y_5 = -\frac{1}{2} \times \cos(324) + 0.50000 = 0.09549$		

Adapting Hole Coordinate Equations for Different Geometry.—Hole coordinate values in Table 1a through Table 2b are obtained using the equations given previously, along with the geometry of the corresponding figures. If the geometry does not match that given in one of the previous figures, hole coordinate values from the tables or equations will be incorrect. Fig. 3 illustrates such a case. Fig. 3 resembles a type "A" hole circle (Fig. 1b) with hole number 2 at the top, and it also resembles a type "B" hole circle (Fig. 2b) in which all holes have been rotated 90° clockwise. A closer look also reveals that the positive y direction in Fig. 3 is opposite that used in Fig. 1b and Fig. 2b. Therefore, to determine the hole coordinates of Fig. 3 it is necessary to create new equations that match the given geometry or to modify the previous equations to match the Fig. 3 geometry.

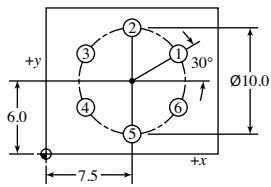


Fig. 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 3(a), Determining Hole Coordinates for Fig. 3*:* Write equations for the coordinates of holes 1, 2, and 3 of Fig. 3.

$$x_1 = 7.5 + 5\cos(30°) = 11.8301 \qquad y_1 = 6.0 + 5\sin(30°) = 8.5000$$
$$x_2 = 7.5 + 5\cos(30° + 60°) = 7.5 \qquad y_2 = 6.0 + 5\sin(30° + 60°) = 11.0000$$
$$x_3 = 7.5 + 5\cos(30° + 120°) = 3.1699 \qquad y_3 = 6.0 + 5\sin(30° + 120°) = 8.5000$$

Example 3(b), Modify Equation (2b) *for* Fig. 3*:* In Fig. 3, hole numbering is rotated 90° (π/2 radian) in the clockwise (negative) direction relative to Fig. 2b, and the direction of the +*y* coordinate axis is the reverse, or negative, of that given in Fig. 2b. Equations for Fig. 3 can be obtained from Equation (2b) by

1) subtracting 90° from the angle of each hole in the *x* and *y* equations of Equation (2b)

2) multiplying the y_H equation by –1 to reverse the orientation of the *y* axis

$$x_H = -\frac{D}{2}\sin\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2} - 90\right) + X_0 \qquad y_H = -\left(-\frac{D}{2}\cos\left((H-1)\theta + \frac{\theta}{2} - 90\right) + Y_0\right)$$

In Fig. 3, $\theta = 360/n = 60°$ for 6 holes, $X_O = 7.5$, and $Y_O = -6.0$.

$$x_1 = -5\sin(30 - 90) + 7.5 = 11.8301 \qquad y_1 = 5\cos(30 - 90) + 6 = 8.5000$$
$$x_2 = -5\sin(60° + 30° - 90°) + 7.5 = 7.5 \qquad y_2 = 5\cos(60° + 30° - 90°) + 6 = 11.0000$$
$$x_3 = -5\sin(120° + 30° - 90°) + 7.5 = 3.1699 \qquad y_3 = 5\cos(120° + 30° - 90°) + 6 = 8.5000$$

Lengths of Chords on Hole Circle Circumference.—Table 3 on page 720 gives the lengths of chords for spacing off the circumferences of circles. The object of this table is to make possible the division of the periphery into a number of equal parts without trials with the dividers. Table 3 is calculated for circles having a diameter equal to 1. For circles of other diameters, the length of chord given in the table should be multiplied by the diameter of the circle. Table 3 may be used by toolmakers when setting "buttons" in circular formation and with inch or metric dimensions. See *Coordinates for Hole Circles* on page 708 for more information on this topic.

Example: Assume that it is required to divide the periphery of a circle of 20 inches diameter into thirty-two equal parts.

Solution: From the table the length of the chord is found to be 0.098017 inch, if the diameter of the circle were 1 inch. With a diameter of 20 inches the length of the chord for one division would be 20 × 0.098017 = 1.9603 inches.

Another example, in metric units: For a 100 millimeter diameter requiring 5 equal divisions, the length of the chord for one division would be 100 × 0.587785 = 58.7785 millimeters.

***Example:* Assume that it is required to divide a circle of $6\frac{1}{2}$ millimeter diameter into seven equal parts. Find the length of the chord required for spacing off the circumference.**

***Solution:* In Table 3, the length of the chord for dividing a circle of 1 millimeter diameter into 7 equal parts is 0.433884 mm. The length of chord for a circle of $6\frac{1}{2}$ mm diameter is $6\frac{1}{2} \times 0.433884 = 2.820246$ mm.**

Example: Assume that it is required to divide a circle having a diameter of $9\frac{23}{32}$ inches into 15 equal divisions.

Solution: In Table 3, the length of the chord for dividing a circle of 1 inch diameter into 15 equal parts is 0.207912 inch. The length of chord for a circle of 9 inches diameter is $9\frac{23}{32} \times 0.207912 = 2.020645$ inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "A" Hole Circles

3 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.43301	0.25000
3	0.43301	0.25000

4 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.50000	0.00000
3	0.00000	0.50000
4	0.50000	0.00000

5 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.47553	−0.15451
3	−0.29389	0.40451
4	0.29389	0.40451
5	0.47553	−0.15451

6 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.43301	−0.25000
3	−0.43301	0.25000
4	0.00000	0.50000
5	0.43301	0.25000
6	0.43301	−0.25000

7 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.39092	−0.31174
3	−0.48746	0.11126
4	−0.21694	0.45048
5	0.21694	0.45048
6	0.48746	0.11126
7	0.39092	−0.31174

8 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.35355	−0.35355
3	−0.50000	0.00000
4	−0.35355	0.35355
5	0.00000	0.50000
6	0.35355	0.35355
7	0.50000	0.00000
8	0.35355	−0.35355

9 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.32139	−0.38302
3	−0.49240	−0.08682
4	−0.43301	0.25000
5	−0.17101	0.46985
6	0.17101	0.46985
7	0.43301	0.25000
8	0.49240	−0.08682
9	0.32139	−0.38302

10 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.29389	−0.40451
3	−0.47553	−0.15451
4	−0.47553	0.15451
5	−0.29389	0.40451
6	0.00000	0.50000
7	0.29389	0.40451
8	0.47553	0.15451
9	0.47553	−0.15451
10	0.29389	−0.40451

11 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.27032	−0.42063
3	−0.45482	−0.20771
4	−0.49491	0.07116
5	−0.37787	0.32743
6	−0.14087	0.47975
7	0.14087	0.47975
8	0.37787	0.32743
9	0.49491	0.07116
10	0.45482	−0.20771
11	0.27032	−0.42063

12 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.25000	−0.43301
3	−0.43301	−0.25000
4	−0.50000	0.00000
5	−0.43301	0.25000
6	−0.25000	0.43301
7	0.00000	0.50000
8	0.25000	0.43301
9	0.43301	0.25000
10	0.50000	0.00000
11	0.43301	−0.25000
12	0.25000	−0.43301

13 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	0.23236	−0.44273
3	0.47553	−0.15451
4	0.29389	−0.40451
5	0.46194	−0.19134
6	0.46194	0.19134
7	0.35355	0.35355
8	0.19134	0.46194
9	0.00000	0.50000
10	−0.19134	0.46194
11	−0.35355	0.35355
12	−0.46194	0.19134
13	−0.46194	−0.19134

13 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
6	−0.33156	0.37426
7	−0.11966	0.48547
8	0.11966	0.48547
9	0.33156	0.37426
10	0.46751	0.17730
11	0.49635	−0.06027
12	0.41149	−0.28403
13	0.23236	−0.44273

14 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.21694	−0.45048
3	−0.39092	−0.31174
4	−0.48746	−0.11126
5	−0.48746	0.11126
6	−0.39092	0.31174
7	−0.21694	0.45048
8	0.00000	0.50000
9	0.21694	0.45048
10	0.39092	0.31174
11	0.48746	0.11126
12	0.48746	−0.11126
13	0.39092	−0.31174
14	0.21694	−0.45048

15 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.20337	−0.45677
3	−0.37157	−0.33457
4	−0.47553	−0.15451
5	−0.49726	0.05226
6	−0.43301	0.25000
7	−0.29389	0.40451
8	−0.10396	0.48907
9	0.10396	0.48907
10	0.29389	0.40451
11	0.43301	0.25000
12	0.49726	0.05226
13	0.47553	−0.15451
14	0.37157	−0.33457
15	0.20337	−0.45677

16 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.19134	−0.46194
3	−0.35355	−0.35355
4	−0.46194	−0.19134
5	−0.50000	0.00000
6	−0.46194	0.19134
7	−0.35355	0.35355
8	−0.19134	0.46194
9	0.00000	0.50000
10	0.19134	0.46194
11	0.35355	0.35355
12	0.46194	0.19134
13	0.50000	0.00000
14	0.46194	−0.19134
15	0.35355	−0.35355
16	0.19134	−0.46194

17 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.18062	−0.46624
3	−0.33685	−0.36950
4	−0.44758	−0.22287
5	−0.49787	−0.04613
6	−0.48091	0.13683
7	−0.39901	0.30132
8	−0.26322	0.42511
9	−0.09187	0.49149
10	0.09187	0.49149
11	0.26322	0.42511
12	0.39901	0.30132
13	0.48091	0.13683
14	0.49787	−0.04613
15	0.44758	−0.22287
16	0.33685	−0.36950
17	0.18062	−0.46624

18 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.17101	−0.46985
3	−0.32139	−0.38302
4	−0.43301	−0.25000
5	−0.49240	−0.08682
6	−0.49240	0.08682
7	−0.43301	0.25000

18 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	−0.32139	0.38302
9	−0.17101	0.46985
10	0.00000	0.50000
11	0.17101	0.46985
12	0.32139	0.38302
13	0.43301	0.25000
14	0.49240	0.08682
15	0.49240	−0.08682
16	0.43301	−0.25000
17	0.32139	−0.38302
18	0.17101	−0.46985

19 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.16235	−0.47291
3	−0.30711	−0.39457
4	−0.41858	−0.27347
5	−0.48470	−0.12274
6	−0.49829	0.04129
7	−0.45789	0.20085
8	−0.36786	0.33864
9	−0.23797	0.43974
10	−0.08230	0.49318
11	0.08230	0.49318
12	0.23797	0.43974
13	0.36786	0.33864
14	0.45789	0.20085
15	0.49829	0.04129
16	0.48470	−0.12274
17	0.41858	−0.27347
18	0.30711	−0.39457
19	0.16235	−0.47291

20 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.15451	−0.47553
3	−0.29389	−0.40451
4	−0.40451	−0.29389
5	−0.47553	−0.15451
6	−0.50000	0.00000
7	−0.47553	0.15451
8	−0.40451	0.29389
9	−0.29389	0.40451
10	−0.15451	0.47553

20 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.00000	0.50000
12	0.15451	0.47553
13	0.29389	0.40451
14	0.40451	0.29389
15	0.47553	0.15451
16	0.50000	0.00000
17	0.47553	−0.15451
18	0.40451	−0.29389
19	0.29389	−0.40451
20	0.15451	−0.47553

21 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.14738	−0.47779
3	−0.28166	−0.41312
4	−0.39092	−0.31174
5	−0.46544	−0.18267
6	−0.49860	−0.03737
7	−0.48746	0.11126
8	−0.43301	0.25000
9	−0.34009	0.36653
10	−0.21694	0.45048
11	−0.07452	0.49442
12	0.07452	0.49442
13	0.21694	0.45048
14	0.34009	0.36653
15	0.43301	0.25000
16	0.48746	0.11126
17	0.49860	−0.03737
18	0.46544	−0.18267
19	0.39092	−0.31174
20	0.28166	−0.41312
21	0.14738	−0.47779

22 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.14087	−0.47975
3	−0.27032	−0.42063
4	−0.37787	−0.32743
5	−0.45482	−0.20771
6	−0.49491	−0.07116
7	−0.49491	0.07116
8	−0.45482	0.20771
9	−0.37787	0.32743

22 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
10	−0.27032	0.42063
11	−0.14087	0.47975
12	0.00000	0.50000
13	0.14087	0.47975
14	0.27032	0.42063
15	0.37787	0.32743
16	0.45482	0.20771
17	0.49491	0.07116
18	0.49491	−0.07116
19	0.45482	−0.20771
20	0.37787	−0.32743
21	0.27032	−0.42063
22	0.14087	−0.47975

23 holes

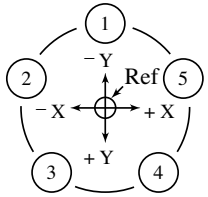
#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.13490	−0.48146
3	−0.25979	−0.42721
4	−0.36542	−0.34128
5	−0.44394	−0.23003
6	−0.48954	−0.10173
7	−0.49883	0.03412
8	−0.47113	0.16744
9	−0.40848	0.28834
10	−0.31554	0.38786
11	−0.19920	0.45861
12	−0.06808	0.49534
13	0.06808	0.49534
14	0.19920	0.45861
15	0.31554	0.38786
16	0.40848	0.28834
17	0.47113	0.16744
18	0.49883	0.03412
19	0.48954	−0.10173
20	0.44394	−0.23003
21	0.36542	−0.34128
22	0.25979	−0.42721
23	0.13490	−0.48146

24 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.12941	−0.48296
3	−0.25000	−0.43301
4	−0.35355	−0.35355

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "A" Hole Circles



24 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
5	−0.43301	−0.25000
6	−0.48296	−0.12941
7	−0.50000	0.00000
8	−0.48296	0.12941
9	−0.43301	0.25000
10	−0.35355	0.35355
11	−0.25000	0.43301
12	−0.12941	0.48296
13	0.00000	0.50000
14	0.12941	0.48296
15	0.25000	0.43301
16	0.35355	0.35355
17	0.43301	0.25000
18	0.48296	0.12941
19	0.50000	0.00000
20	0.48296	−0.12941
21	0.43301	−0.25000
22	0.35355	−0.35355
23	0.25000	−0.43301
24	0.12941	−0.48296

25 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
7	−0.49901	−0.03140
8	−0.49114	0.09369
9	−0.45241	0.21289
10	−0.38526	0.31871
11	−0.29389	0.40451
12	−0.18406	0.46489
13	−0.06267	0.49606
14	0.06267	0.49606
15	0.18406	0.46489
16	0.29389	0.40451
17	0.38526	0.31871
18	0.45241	0.21289
19	0.49114	0.09369
20	0.49901	−0.03140
21	0.47553	−0.15451
22	0.42216	−0.26791
23	0.34227	−0.36448
24	0.24088	−0.43815
25	0.12434	−0.48429

25 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.12434	−0.48429
3	−0.24088	−0.43815
4	−0.34227	−0.36448
5	−0.42216	−0.26791
6	−0.47553	−0.15451

26 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.11966	−0.48547
3	−0.23236	−0.44273
4	−0.33156	−0.37426
5	−0.41149	−0.28403
6	−0.46751	−0.17730
7	−0.49635	−0.06027

26 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	−0.49635	0.06027
9	−0.46751	0.17730
10	−0.41149	0.28403
11	−0.33156	0.37426
12	−0.23236	0.44273
13	−0.11966	0.48547
14	0.00000	0.50000
15	0.11966	0.48547
16	0.23236	0.44273
17	0.33156	0.37426
18	0.41149	0.28403
19	0.46751	0.17730
20	0.49635	0.06027
21	0.49635	−0.06027
22	0.46751	−0.17730
23	0.41149	−0.28403
24	0.33156	−0.37426
25	0.23236	−0.44273
26	0.11966	−0.48547

27 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.11531	−0.48652
3	−0.22440	−0.44682
4	−0.32139	−0.38302
5	−0.40106	−0.29858
6	−0.45911	−0.19804
7	−0.49240	−0.08682
8	−0.49915	0.02907
9	−0.47899	0.14340
10	−0.43301	0.25000
11	−0.36369	0.34312
12	−0.27475	0.41774
13	−0.17101	0.46985
14	−0.05805	0.49662
15	0.05805	0.49662
16	0.17101	0.46985
17	0.27475	0.41774
18	0.36369	0.34312
19	0.43301	0.25000
20	0.47899	0.14340
21	0.49915	0.02907
22	0.49240	−0.08682
23	0.45911	−0.19804

27 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
24	0.40106	−0.29858
25	0.32139	−0.38302
26	0.22440	−0.44682
27	0.11531	−0.48652

28 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.11126	−0.48746
3	−0.21694	−0.45048
4	−0.31174	−0.39092
5	−0.39092	−0.31174
6	−0.45048	−0.21694
7	−0.48746	−0.11126
8	−0.50000	0.00000
9	−0.48746	0.11126
10	−0.45048	0.21694
11	−0.39092	0.31174
12	−0.31174	0.39092
13	−0.21694	0.45048
14	−0.11126	0.48746
15	0.00000	0.50000
16	0.11126	0.48746
17	0.21694	0.45048
18	0.31174	0.39092
19	0.39092	0.31174
20	0.45048	0.21694
21	0.48746	0.11126
22	0.50000	0.00000
23	0.48746	−0.11126
24	0.45048	−0.21694
25	0.39092	−0.31174
26	0.31174	−0.39092
27	0.21694	−0.45048
28	0.11126	−0.48746

29 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.10749	−0.48831
3	−0.20994	−0.45379
4	−0.30259	−0.39805
5	−0.38108	−0.32369
6	−0.44176	−0.23420
7	−0.48177	−0.13376
8	−0.49927	−0.02707

29 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
9	−0.49341	0.08089
10	−0.46449	0.18507
11	−0.41384	0.28059
12	−0.34385	0.36300
13	−0.25778	0.42843
14	−0.15965	0.47383
15	−0.05406	0.49707
16	0.05406	0.49707
17	0.15965	0.47383
18	0.25778	0.42843
19	0.34385	0.36300
20	0.41384	0.28059
21	0.46449	0.18507
22	0.49341	0.08089
23	0.49927	−0.02707
24	0.48177	−0.13376
25	0.44176	−0.23420
26	0.38108	−0.32369
27	0.30259	−0.39805
28	0.20994	−0.45379
29	0.10749	−0.48831

30 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.10396	−0.48907
3	−0.20337	−0.45677
4	−0.29389	−0.40451
5	−0.37157	−0.33457
6	−0.43301	−0.25000
7	−0.47553	−0.15451
8	−0.49726	−0.05226
9	−0.49726	0.05226
10	−0.47553	0.15451
11	−0.43301	0.25000
12	−0.37157	0.33457
13	−0.29389	0.40451
14	−0.20337	0.45677
15	−0.10396	0.48907
16	0.00000	0.50000
17	0.10396	0.48907
18	0.20337	0.45677
19	0.29389	0.40451
20	0.37157	0.33457
21	0.43301	0.25000

30 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
22	0.47553	0.15451
23	0.49726	0.05226
24	0.49726	−0.05226
25	0.47553	−0.15451
26	0.43301	−0.25000
27	0.37157	−0.33457
28	0.29389	−0.40451
29	0.20337	−0.45677
30	0.10396	−0.48907

31 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.10065	−0.48976
3	−0.19718	−0.45948
4	−0.28563	−0.41038
5	−0.36240	−0.34448
6	−0.42432	−0.26448
7	−0.46888	−0.17365
8	−0.49423	−0.07571
9	−0.49936	0.02532
10	−0.48404	0.12533
11	−0.44890	0.22020
12	−0.39539	0.30605
13	−0.32569	0.37938
14	−0.24265	0.43717
15	−0.14968	0.47707
16	−0.05058	0.49743
17	0.05058	0.49743
18	0.14968	0.47707
19	0.24265	0.43717
20	0.32569	0.37938
21	0.39539	0.30605
22	0.44890	0.22020
23	0.48404	0.12533
24	0.49936	0.02532
25	0.49423	−0.07571
26	0.46888	−0.17365
27	0.42432	−0.26448
28	0.36240	−0.34448
29	0.28563	−0.41038
30	0.19718	−0.45948
31	0.10065	−0.48976

32 holes

#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.09755	−0.49039
3	−0.19134	−0.46194
4	−0.27779	−0.41573
5	−0.35355	−0.35355
6	−0.41573	−0.27779
7	−0.46194	−0.19134
8	−0.49039	−0.09755
9	−0.50000	0.00000
10	−0.49039	0.09755
11	−0.46194	0.19134
12	−0.41573	0.27779
13	−0.35355	0.35355
14	−0.27779	0.41573
15	−0.19134	0.46194
16	−0.09755	0.49039
17	0.00000	0.50000
18	0.09755	0.49039
19	0.19134	0.46194
20	0.27779	0.41573
21	0.35355	0.35355
22	0.41573	0.27779
23	0.46194	0.19134
24	0.49039	0.09755
25	0.50000	0.00000
26	0.49039	−0.09755
27	0.46194	−0.19134
28	0.41573	−0.27779
29	0.35355	−0.35355
30	0.27779	−0.41573
31	0.19134	−0.46194
32	0.09755	−0.49039

33 holes

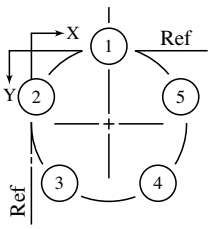
#	x	y
1	0.00000	−0.50000
2	−0.09463	−0.49096
3	−0.18583	−0.46418
4	−0.27032	−0.42063
5	−0.34504	−0.36187
6	−0.40729	−0.29003
7	−0.45482	−0.20771
8	−0.48591	−0.11788
9	−0.49943	−0.02379
10	−0.49491	0.07116

33 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	−0.47250	0.16353
12	−0.43301	0.25000
13	−0.37787	0.32743
14	−0.30908	0.39303
15	−0.22911	0.44442
16	−0.14087	0.47975
17	−0.04753	0.49774
18	0.04753	0.49774
19	0.14087	0.47975
20	0.22911	0.44442
21	0.30908	0.39303
22	0.37787	0.32743
23	0.43301	0.25000
24	0.47250	0.16353
25	0.49491	0.07116
26	0.49943	−0.02379
27	0.48591	−0.11788
28	0.45482	−0.20771
29	0.40729	−0.29003
30	0.34504	−0.36187
31	0.27032	−0.42063
32	0.18583	−0.46418
33	0.09463	−0.49096

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "A" Hole Circles



3 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.06699	0.75000
3	0.93301	0.75000

4 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.00000	0.50000
3	0.50000	1.00000
4	1.00000	0.50000

5 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.02447	0.34549
3	0.20611	0.90451
4	0.79389	0.90451
5	0.97553	0.34549

6 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.06699	0.25000
3	0.06699	0.75000
4	0.50000	1.00000
5	0.93301	0.75000
6	0.93301	0.25000

7 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.10908	0.18826
3	0.01254	0.61126
4	0.28306	0.95048
5	0.71694	0.95048
6	0.98746	0.61126
7	0.89092	0.18826

8 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.14645	0.14645
3	0.00000	0.50000
4	0.14645	0.85355
5	0.50000	1.00000
6	0.85355	0.85355
7	1.00000	0.50000
8	0.85355	0.14645

9 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.17861	0.11698
3	0.00760	0.41318
4	0.06699	0.75000
5	0.32899	0.96985
6	0.67101	0.96985
7	0.93301	0.75000
8	0.99240	0.41318
9	0.82139	0.11698

10 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.20611	0.09549
3	0.02447	0.34549
4	0.02447	0.65451
5	0.20611	0.90451
6	0.50000	1.00000
7	0.79389	0.90451
8	0.97553	0.65451
9	0.97553	0.34549
10	0.79389	0.09549

11 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.22968	0.07937
3	0.04518	0.29229
4	0.00509	0.57116
5	0.12213	0.82743
6	0.35913	0.97975
7	0.64087	0.97975
8	0.87787	0.82743
9	0.99491	0.57116
10	0.95482	0.29229
11	0.77032	0.07937

12 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.25000	0.06699
3	0.06699	0.25000
4	0.00000	0.50000
5	0.06699	0.75000
6	0.25000	0.93301
7	0.50000	1.00000
8	0.75000	0.93301
9	0.93301	0.75000
10	1.00000	0.50000
11	0.93301	0.25000
12	0.75000	0.06699

13 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.26764	0.05727
3	0.08851	0.21597
4	0.00365	0.43973
5	0.03249	0.67730

13 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
6	0.16844	0.87426
7	0.38034	0.98547
8	0.61966	0.98547
9	0.83156	0.87426
10	0.96751	0.67730
11	0.99635	0.43973
12	0.91149	0.21597
13	0.73236	0.05727

14 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.28306	0.04952
3	0.10908	0.18826
4	0.01254	0.38874
5	0.01254	0.61126
6	0.10908	0.81174
7	0.28306	0.95048
8	0.50000	1.00000
9	0.71694	0.95048
10	0.89092	0.81174
11	0.98746	0.61126
12	0.98746	0.38874
13	0.89092	0.18826
14	0.71694	0.04952

15 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.29663	0.04323
3	0.12843	0.16543
4	0.02447	0.34549
5	0.00274	0.55226
6	0.06699	0.75000
7	0.20611	0.90451
8	0.39604	0.98907
9	0.60396	0.98907
10	0.79389	0.90451
11	0.93301	0.75000
12	0.99726	0.55226
13	0.97553	0.34549
14	0.87157	0.16543
15	0.70337	0.04323

16 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.30866	0.03806
3	0.14645	0.14645
4	0.03806	0.30866
5	0.00000	0.50000
6	0.03806	0.69134
7	0.14645	0.85355
8	0.30866	0.96194
9	0.50000	1.00000
10	0.69134	0.96194
11	0.85355	0.85355
12	0.96194	0.69134
13	1.00000	0.50000
14	0.96194	0.30866
15	0.85355	0.14645
16	0.69134	0.03806

17 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.31938	0.03376
3	0.16315	0.13050
4	0.05242	0.27713
5	0.00213	0.45387
6	0.01909	0.63683
7	0.10099	0.80132
8	0.23678	0.92511
9	0.40813	0.99149
10	0.59187	0.99149
11	0.76322	0.92511
12	0.89901	0.80132
13	0.98091	0.63683
14	0.99787	0.45387
15	0.94758	0.27713
16	0.83685	0.13050
17	0.68062	0.03376

18 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.32899	0.03015
3	0.17861	0.11698
4	0.06699	0.25000
5	0.00760	0.41318
6	0.00760	0.58682
7	0.06699	0.75000

18 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	0.17861	0.88302
9	0.32899	0.96985
10	0.50000	1.00000
11	0.67101	0.96985
12	0.82139	0.88302
13	0.93301	0.75000
14	0.99240	0.58682
15	0.99240	0.41318
16	0.93301	0.25000
17	0.82139	0.11698
18	0.67101	0.03015

19 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.33765	0.02709
3	0.19289	0.10543
4	0.08142	0.22653
5	0.01530	0.37726
6	0.00171	0.54129
7	0.04211	0.70085
8	0.13214	0.83864
9	0.26203	0.93974
10	0.41770	0.99318
11	0.58230	0.99318
12	0.73797	0.93974
13	0.86786	0.83864
14	0.95789	0.70085
15	0.99829	0.54129
16	0.98470	0.37726
17	0.91858	0.22653
18	0.80711	0.10543
19	0.66235	0.02709

20 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.34549	0.02447
3	0.20611	0.09549
4	0.09549	0.20611
5	0.02447	0.34549
6	0.00000	0.50000
7	0.02447	0.65451
8	0.09549	0.79389
9	0.20611	0.90451
10	0.34549	0.97553

20 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.50000	1.00000
12	0.65451	0.97553
13	0.79389	0.90451
14	0.90451	0.79389
15	0.97553	0.65451
16	1.00000	0.50000
17	0.97553	0.34549
18	0.90451	0.20611
19	0.79389	0.09549
20	0.65451	0.02447

21 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.35262	0.02221
3	0.21834	0.08688
4	0.10908	0.18826
5	0.03456	0.31733
6	0.00140	0.46263
7	0.01254	0.61126
8	0.06699	0.75000
9	0.15991	0.86653
10	0.28306	0.95048
11	0.42548	0.99442
12	0.57452	0.99442
13	0.71694	0.95048
14	0.84009	0.86653
15	0.93301	0.75000
16	0.98746	0.61126
17	0.99860	0.46263
18	0.96544	0.31733
19	0.89092	0.18826
20	0.78166	0.08688
21	0.64738	0.02221

22 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.35913	0.02025
3	0.22968	0.07937
4	0.12213	0.17257
5	0.04518	0.29229
6	0.00509	0.42884
7	0.00509	0.57116
8	0.04518	0.70771
9	0.12213	0.82743

22 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
10	0.22968	0.92063
11	0.35913	0.97975
12	0.50000	1.00000
13	0.64087	0.97975
14	0.77032	0.92063
15	0.87787	0.82743
16	0.95482	0.70771
17	0.99491	0.57116
18	0.99491	0.42884
19	0.95482	0.29229
20	0.87787	0.17257
21	0.77032	0.07937
22	0.64087	0.02025

23 holes

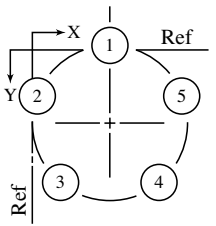
#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.36510	0.01854
3	0.24021	0.07279
4	0.13458	0.15872
5	0.05606	0.26997
6	0.01046	0.39827
7	0.00117	0.53412
8	0.02887	0.66744
9	0.09152	0.78834
10	0.18446	0.88786
11	0.30080	0.95861
12	0.43192	0.99534
13	0.56808	0.99534
14	0.69920	0.95861
15	0.81554	0.88786
16	0.90848	0.78834
17	0.97113	0.66744
18	0.99883	0.53412
19	0.98954	0.39827
20	0.94394	0.26997
21	0.86542	0.15872
22	0.75979	0.07279
23	0.63490	0.01854

24 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.37059	0.01704
3	0.25000	0.06699
4	0.14645	0.14645

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. *(Continued)* Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "A" Hole Circles



24 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
5	0.06699	0.25000
6	0.01704	0.37059
7	0.00000	0.50000
8	0.01704	0.62941
9	0.06699	0.75000
10	0.14645	0.85355
11	0.25000	0.93301
12	0.37059	0.98296
13	0.50000	1.00000
14	0.62941	0.98296
15	0.75000	0.93301
16	0.85355	0.85355
17	0.93301	0.75000
18	0.98296	0.62941
19	1.00000	0.50000
20	0.98296	0.37059
21	0.93301	0.25000
22	0.85355	0.14645
23	0.75000	0.06699
24	0.62941	0.01704

25 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.37564	0.01571
3	0.25912	0.06185
4	0.15773	0.13552
5	0.07784	0.23209
6	0.02447	0.34549

25 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
7	0.00099	0.46860
8	0.00886	0.59369
9	0.04759	0.71289
10	0.11474	0.81871
11	0.20611	0.90451
12	0.31594	0.96489
13	0.43733	0.99606
14	0.56267	0.99606
15	0.68406	0.96489
16	0.79389	0.90451
17	0.88526	0.81871
18	0.95241	0.71289
19	0.99114	0.59369
20	0.99901	0.46860
21	0.97553	0.34549
22	0.92216	0.23209
23	0.84227	0.13552
24	0.74088	0.06185
25	0.62434	0.01571

26 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.38034	0.01453
3	0.26764	0.05727
4	0.16844	0.12574
5	0.08851	0.21597
6	0.03249	0.32270
7	0.00365	0.43973

26 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	0.00365	0.56027
9	0.03249	0.67730
10	0.08851	0.78403
11	0.16844	0.87426
12	0.26764	0.94273
13	0.38034	0.98547
14	0.50000	1.00000
15	0.61966	0.98547
16	0.73236	0.94273
17	0.83156	0.87426
18	0.91149	0.78403
19	0.96751	0.67730
20	0.99635	0.56027
21	0.99635	0.43973
22	0.96751	0.32270
23	0.91149	0.21597
24	0.83156	0.12574
25	0.73236	0.05727
26	0.61966	0.01453

27 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.38469	0.01348
3	0.27560	0.05318
4	0.17861	0.11698
5	0.09894	0.20142
6	0.04089	0.30196
7	0.00760	0.41318
8	0.00085	0.52907
9	0.02101	0.64340
10	0.06699	0.75000
11	0.13631	0.84312
12	0.22525	0.91774
13	0.32899	0.96985
14	0.44195	0.99662
15	0.55805	0.99662
16	0.67101	0.96985
17	0.77475	0.91774
18	0.86369	0.84312
19	0.93301	0.75000
20	0.97899	0.64340
21	0.99915	0.52907
22	0.99240	0.41318
23	0.95911	0.30196

27 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
24	0.90106	0.20142
25	0.82139	0.11698
26	0.72440	0.05318
27	0.61531	0.01348

28 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.38874	0.01254
3	0.28306	0.04952
4	0.18826	0.10908
5	0.10908	0.18826
6	0.04952	0.28306
7	0.01254	0.38874
8	0.00000	0.50000
9	0.01254	0.61126
10	0.04952	0.71694
11	0.10908	0.81174
12	0.18826	0.89092
13	0.28306	0.95048
14	0.38874	0.98746
15	0.50000	1.00000
16	0.61126	0.98746
17	0.71694	0.95048
18	0.81174	0.89092
19	0.89092	0.81174
20	0.95048	0.71694
21	0.98746	0.61126
22	1.00000	0.50000
23	0.98746	0.38874
24	0.95048	0.28306
25	0.89092	0.18826
26	0.81174	0.10908
27	0.71694	0.04952
28	0.61126	0.01254

29 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.39251	0.01169
3	0.29006	0.04621
4	0.19741	0.10195
5	0.11892	0.17631
6	0.05824	0.26580
7	0.01823	0.36624
8	0.00073	0.47293

29 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
9	0.00659	0.58089
10	0.03551	0.68507
11	0.08616	0.78059
12	0.15615	0.86300
13	0.24222	0.92843
14	0.34035	0.97383
15	0.44594	0.99707
16	0.55406	0.99707
17	0.65965	0.97383
18	0.75778	0.92843
19	0.84385	0.86300
20	0.91384	0.78059
21	0.96449	0.68507
22	0.99341	0.58089
23	0.99927	0.47293
24	0.98177	0.36624
25	0.94176	0.26580
26	0.88108	0.17631
27	0.80259	0.10195
28	0.70994	0.04621
29	0.60749	0.01169

30 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.39604	0.01093
3	0.29663	0.04323
4	0.20611	0.09549
5	0.12843	0.16543
6	0.06699	0.25000
7	0.02447	0.34549
8	0.00274	0.44774
9	0.00274	0.55226
10	0.02447	0.65451
11	0.06699	0.75000
12	0.12843	0.83457
13	0.20611	0.90451
14	0.29663	0.95677
15	0.39604	0.98907
16	0.50000	1.00000
17	0.60396	0.98907
18	0.70337	0.95677
19	0.79389	0.90451
20	0.87157	0.83457
21	0.93301	0.75000

30 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
22	0.97553	0.65451
23	0.99726	0.55226
24	0.99726	0.44774
25	0.97553	0.34549
26	0.93301	0.25000
27	0.87157	0.16543
28	0.79389	0.09549
29	0.70337	0.04323
30	0.60396	0.01093

31 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.39935	0.01024
3	0.30282	0.04052
4	0.21437	0.08962
5	0.13760	0.15552
6	0.07568	0.23552
7	0.03112	0.32635
8	0.00577	0.42429
9	0.00064	0.52532
10	0.01596	0.62533
11	0.05110	0.72020
12	0.10461	0.80605
13	0.17431	0.87938
14	0.25735	0.93717
15	0.35032	0.97707
16	0.44942	0.99743
17	0.55058	0.99743
18	0.64968	0.97707
19	0.74265	0.93717
20	0.82569	0.87938
21	0.89539	0.80605
22	0.94890	0.72020
23	0.98404	0.62533
24	0.99936	0.52532
25	0.99423	0.42429
26	0.96888	0.32635
27	0.92432	0.23552
28	0.86240	0.15552
29	0.78563	0.08962
30	0.69718	0.04052
31	0.60065	0.01024

32 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.40245	0.00961
3	0.30866	0.03806
4	0.22221	0.08427
5	0.14645	0.14645
6	0.08427	0.22221
7	0.03806	0.30866
8	0.00961	0.40245
9	0.00000	0.50000
10	0.00961	0.59755
11	0.03806	0.69134
12	0.08427	0.77779
13	0.14645	0.85355
14	0.22221	0.91573
15	0.30866	0.96194
16	0.40245	0.99039
17	0.50000	1.00000
18	0.59755	0.99039
19	0.69134	0.96194
20	0.77779	0.91573
21	0.85355	0.85355
22	0.91573	0.77779
23	0.96194	0.69134
24	0.99039	0.59755
25	1.00000	0.50000
26	0.99039	0.40245
27	0.96194	0.30866
28	0.91573	0.22221
29	0.85355	0.14645
30	0.77779	0.08427
31	0.69134	0.03806
32	0.59755	0.00961

33 holes

#	x	y
1	0.50000	0.00000
2	0.40537	0.00904
3	0.31417	0.03582
4	0.22968	0.07937
5	0.15496	0.13813
6	0.09271	0.20997
7	0.04518	0.29229
8	0.01409	0.38212
9	0.00057	0.47621
10	0.00509	0.57116

33 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.02750	0.66353
12	0.06699	0.75000
13	0.12213	0.82743
14	0.19092	0.89303
15	0.27089	0.94442
16	0.35913	0.97975
17	0.45247	0.99774
18	0.54753	0.99774
19	0.64087	0.97975
20	0.72911	0.94442
21	0.80908	0.89303
22	0.87787	0.82743
23	0.93301	0.75000
24	0.97250	0.66353
25	0.99491	0.57116
26	0.99943	0.47621
27	0.98591	0.38212
28	0.95482	0.29229
29	0.90729	0.20997
30	0.84504	0.13813
31	0.77032	0.07937
32	0.68583	0.03582
33	0.59463	0.00904

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "B" Hole Circles

3 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.43301	−0.25000
2	0.00000	0.50000
3	0.43301	−0.25000

4 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.35355	−0.35355
2	−0.35355	0.35355
3	0.35355	0.35355
4	0.35355	−0.35355

5 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.29389	−0.40451
2	−0.47553	0.15451
3	0.00000	0.50000
4	0.47553	0.15451
5	0.29389	−0.40451

6 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.25000	−0.43301
2	−0.50000	0.00000
3	−0.25000	0.43301
4	0.25000	0.43301
5	0.50000	0.00000
6	0.25000	−0.43301

7 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.21694	−0.45048
2	−0.48746	−0.11126
3	−0.39092	0.31174
4	0.00000	0.50000
5	0.39092	0.31174
6	0.48746	−0.11126
7	0.21694	−0.45048

8 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.19134	−0.46194
2	−0.46194	−0.19134
3	−0.46194	0.19134
4	−0.19134	0.46194
5	0.19134	0.46194
6	0.46194	0.19134
7	0.46194	−0.19134
8	0.19134	−0.46194

9 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.17101	−0.46985
2	−0.43301	−0.25000
3	−0.49240	0.08682
4	−0.32139	0.38302
5	0.00000	0.50000
6	0.32139	0.38302
7	0.49240	0.08682
8	0.43301	−0.25000
9	0.17101	−0.46985

10 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.15451	−0.47553
2	−0.40451	−0.29389
3	−0.50000	0.00000
4	−0.40451	0.29389
5	−0.15451	0.47553
6	0.15451	0.47553
7	0.40451	0.29389
8	0.50000	0.00000
9	0.40451	−0.29389
10	0.15451	−0.47553

11 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.14087	−0.47975
2	−0.37787	−0.32743
3	−0.49491	−0.07116
4	−0.45482	0.20771
5	−0.27032	0.42063
6	0.00000	0.50000
7	0.27032	0.42063
8	0.45482	0.20771
9	0.49491	−0.07116
10	0.37787	−0.32743
11	0.14087	−0.47975

12 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.12941	−0.48296
2	−0.35355	−0.35355
3	−0.48296	−0.12941
4	−0.48296	0.12941
5	−0.35355	0.35355
6	−0.12941	0.48296
7	0.12941	0.48296
8	0.35355	0.35355
9	0.48296	0.12941
10	0.48296	−0.12941
11	0.35355	−0.35355
12	0.12941	−0.48296

13 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.11966	−0.48547
2	−0.33156	−0.37426
3	−0.46751	−0.17730
4	−0.49635	0.06027
5	−0.41149	0.28403

13 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
6	−0.23236	0.44273
7	0.00000	0.50000
8	0.23236	0.44273
9	0.41149	0.28403
10	0.49635	0.06027
11	0.46751	−0.17730
12	0.33156	−0.37426
13	0.11966	−0.48547

14 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.11126	−0.48746
2	−0.31174	−0.39092
3	−0.45048	−0.21694
4	−0.50000	0.00000
5	−0.45048	0.21694
6	−0.31174	0.39092
7	−0.11126	0.48746
8	0.11126	0.48746
9	0.31174	0.39092
10	0.45048	0.21694
11	0.50000	0.00000
12	0.45048	−0.21694
13	0.31174	−0.39092
14	0.11126	−0.48746

15 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.10396	−0.48907
2	−0.29389	−0.40451
3	−0.43301	−0.25000
4	−0.49726	−0.05226
5	−0.47553	0.15451
6	−0.37157	0.33457
7	−0.20337	0.45677
8	0.00000	0.50000
9	0.20337	0.45677
10	0.37157	0.33457
11	0.47553	0.15451
12	0.49726	−0.05226
13	0.43301	−0.25000
14	0.29389	−0.40451
15	0.10396	−0.48907

16 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.09755	−0.49039
2	−0.27779	−0.41573
3	−0.41573	−0.27779
4	−0.49039	−0.09755
5	−0.49039	0.09755
6	−0.41573	0.27779
7	−0.27779	0.41573
8	−0.09755	0.49039
9	0.09755	0.49039
10	0.27779	0.41573
11	0.41573	0.27779
12	0.49039	0.09755
13	0.49039	−0.09755
14	0.41573	−0.27779
15	0.27779	−0.41573
16	0.09755	−0.49039

17 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.09187	−0.49149
2	−0.26322	−0.42511
3	−0.39901	−0.30132
4	−0.48091	−0.13683
5	−0.49787	0.04613
6	−0.44758	0.22287
7	−0.33685	0.36950
8	−0.18062	0.46624
9	0.00000	0.50000
10	0.18062	0.46624
11	0.33685	0.36950
12	0.44758	0.22287
13	0.49787	0.04613
14	0.48091	−0.13683
15	0.39901	−0.30132
16	0.26322	−0.42511
17	0.09187	−0.49149

18 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.08682	−0.49240
2	−0.25000	−0.43301
3	−0.38302	−0.32139
4	−0.46985	−0.17101
5	−0.50000	0.00000
6	−0.46985	0.17101
7	−0.38302	0.32139

18 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	−0.25000	0.43301
9	−0.08682	0.49240
10	0.08682	0.49240
11	0.25000	0.43301
12	0.38302	0.32139
13	0.46985	0.17101
14	0.50000	0.00000
15	0.46985	−0.17101
16	0.38302	−0.32139
17	0.25000	−0.43301
18	0.08682	−0.49240

19 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.08230	−0.49318
2	−0.23797	−0.43974
3	−0.36786	−0.33864
4	−0.45789	−0.20085
5	−0.49829	−0.04129
6	−0.48470	0.12274
7	−0.41858	0.27347
8	−0.30711	0.39457
9	−0.16235	0.47291
10	0.00000	0.50000
11	0.16235	0.47291
12	0.30711	0.39457
13	0.41858	0.27347
14	0.48470	0.12274
15	0.49829	−0.04129
16	0.45789	−0.20085
17	0.36786	−0.33864
18	0.23797	−0.43974
19	0.08230	−0.49318

20 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.07822	−0.49384
2	−0.22700	−0.44550
3	−0.35355	−0.35355
4	−0.44550	−0.22700
5	−0.49384	−0.07822
6	−0.49384	0.07822
7	−0.44550	0.22700
8	−0.35355	0.35355
9	−0.22700	0.44550
10	−0.07822	0.49384

20 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.07822	0.49384
12	0.22700	0.44550
13	0.35355	0.35355
14	0.44550	0.22700
15	0.49384	0.07822
16	0.49384	−0.07822
17	0.44550	−0.22700
18	0.35355	−0.35355
19	0.22700	−0.44550
20	0.07822	−0.49384

21 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.07452	−0.49442
2	−0.21694	−0.45048
3	−0.34009	−0.36653
4	−0.43301	−0.25000
5	−0.48746	−0.11126
6	−0.49860	0.03737
7	−0.46544	0.18267
8	−0.39092	0.31174
9	−0.28166	0.41312
10	−0.14738	0.47779
11	0.00000	0.50000
12	0.14738	0.47779
13	0.28166	0.41312
14	0.39092	0.31174
15	0.46544	0.18267
16	0.49860	0.03737
17	0.48746	−0.11126
18	0.43301	−0.25000
19	0.34009	−0.36653
20	0.21694	−0.45048
21	0.07452	−0.49442

22 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.07116	−0.49491
2	−0.20771	−0.45482
3	−0.32743	−0.37787
4	−0.42063	−0.27032
5	−0.47975	−0.14087
6	−0.50000	0.00000
7	−0.47975	0.14087
8	−0.42063	0.27032
9	−0.32743	0.37787

22 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
10	−0.20771	0.45482
11	−0.07116	0.49491
12	0.07116	0.49491
13	0.20771	0.45482
14	0.32743	0.37787
15	0.42063	0.27032
16	0.47975	0.14087
17	0.50000	0.00000
18	0.47975	−0.14087
19	0.42063	−0.27032
20	0.32743	−0.37787
21	0.20771	−0.45482
22	0.07116	−0.49491

23 holes

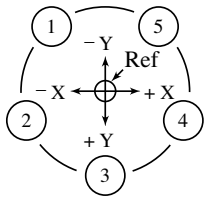
#	x	y
1	−0.06808	−0.49534
2	−0.19920	−0.45861
3	−0.31554	−0.38786
4	−0.40848	−0.28834
5	−0.47113	−0.16744
6	−0.49883	−0.03412
7	−0.48954	0.10173
8	−0.44394	0.23003
9	−0.36542	0.34128
10	−0.25979	0.42721
11	−0.13490	0.48146
12	0.00000	0.50000
13	0.13490	0.48146
14	0.25979	0.42721
15	0.36542	0.34128
16	0.44394	0.23003
17	0.48954	0.10173
18	0.49883	−0.03412
19	0.47113	−0.16744
20	0.40848	−0.28834
21	0.31554	−0.38786
22	0.19920	−0.45861
23	0.06808	−0.49534

24 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.06526	−0.49572
2	−0.19134	−0.46194
3	−0.30438	−0.39668
4	−0.39668	−0.30438

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. *(Continued)* Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "B" Hole Circles



24 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
5	−0.46194	−0.19134
6	−0.49572	−0.06526
7	−0.49572	0.06526
8	−0.46194	0.19134
9	−0.39668	0.30438
10	−0.30438	0.39668
11	−0.19134	0.46194
12	−0.06526	0.49572
13	0.06526	0.49572
14	0.19134	0.46194
15	0.30438	0.39668
16	0.39668	0.30438
17	0.46194	0.19134
18	0.49572	0.06526
19	0.49572	−0.06526
20	0.46194	−0.19134
21	0.39668	−0.30438
22	0.30438	−0.39668
23	0.19134	−0.46194
24	0.06526	−0.49572

25 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.06267	−0.49606
2	−0.18406	−0.46489
3	−0.29389	−0.40451
4	−0.38526	−0.31871
5	−0.45241	−0.21289
6	−0.49114	−0.09369

25 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
7	−0.49901	0.03140
8	−0.47553	0.15451
9	−0.42216	0.26791
10	−0.34227	0.36448
11	−0.24088	0.43815
12	−0.12434	0.48429
13	0.00000	0.50000
14	0.12434	0.48429
15	0.24088	0.43815
16	0.34227	0.36448
17	0.42216	0.26791
18	0.47553	0.15451
19	0.49901	0.03140
20	0.49114	−0.09369
21	0.45241	−0.21289
22	0.38526	−0.31871
23	0.29389	−0.40451
24	0.18406	−0.46489
25	0.06267	−0.49606

26 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.06027	−0.49635
2	−0.17730	−0.46751
3	−0.28403	−0.41149
4	−0.37426	−0.33156
5	−0.44273	−0.23236
6	−0.48547	−0.11966
7	−0.50000	0.00000

26 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	−0.48547	0.11966
9	−0.44273	0.23236
10	−0.37426	0.33156
11	−0.28403	0.41149
12	−0.17730	0.46751
13	−0.06027	0.49635
14	0.06027	0.49635
15	0.17730	0.46751
16	0.28403	0.41149
17	0.37426	0.33156
18	0.44273	0.23236
19	0.48547	0.11966
20	0.50000	0.00000
21	0.48547	−0.11966
22	0.44273	−0.23236
23	0.37426	−0.33156
24	0.28403	−0.41149
25	0.17730	−0.46751
26	0.06027	−0.49635

27 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.05805	−0.49662
2	−0.17101	−0.46985
3	−0.27475	−0.41774
4	−0.36369	−0.34312
5	−0.43301	−0.25000
6	−0.47899	−0.14340
7	−0.49915	−0.02907
8	−0.49240	0.08682
9	−0.45911	0.19804
10	−0.40106	0.29858
11	−0.32139	0.38302
12	−0.22440	0.44682
13	−0.11531	0.48652
14	0.00000	0.50000
15	0.11531	0.48652
16	0.22440	0.44682
17	0.32139	0.38302
18	0.40106	0.29858
19	0.45911	0.19804
20	0.49240	0.08682
21	0.49915	−0.02907
22	0.47899	−0.14340
23	0.43301	−0.25000

27 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
24	0.36369	−0.34312
25	0.27475	−0.41774
26	0.17101	−0.46985
27	0.05805	−0.49662

28 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.05598	−0.49686
2	−0.16514	−0.47194
3	−0.26602	−0.42336
4	−0.35355	−0.35355
5	−0.42336	−0.26602
6	−0.47194	−0.16514
7	−0.49686	−0.05598
8	−0.49686	0.05598
9	−0.47194	0.16514
10	−0.42336	0.26602
11	−0.35355	0.35355
12	−0.26602	0.42336
13	−0.16514	0.47194
14	−0.05598	0.49686
15	0.05598	0.49686
16	0.16514	0.47194
17	0.26602	0.42336
18	0.35355	0.35355
19	0.42336	0.26602
20	0.47194	0.16514
21	0.49686	0.05598
22	0.49686	−0.05598
23	0.47194	−0.16514
24	0.42336	−0.26602
25	0.35355	−0.35355
26	0.26602	−0.42336
27	0.16514	−0.47194
28	0.05598	−0.49686

29 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.05406	−0.49707
2	−0.15965	−0.47383
3	−0.25778	−0.42843
4	−0.34385	−0.36300
5	−0.41384	−0.28059
6	−0.46449	−0.18507
7	−0.49341	−0.08089
8	−0.49927	0.02707

29 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
9	−0.48177	0.13376
10	−0.44176	0.23420
11	−0.38108	0.32369
12	−0.30259	0.39805
13	−0.20994	0.45379
14	−0.10749	0.48831
15	0.00000	0.50000
16	0.10749	0.48831
17	0.20994	0.45379
18	0.30259	0.39805
19	0.38108	0.32369
20	0.44176	0.23420
21	0.48177	0.13376
22	0.49927	0.02707
23	0.49341	−0.08089
24	0.46449	−0.18507
25	0.41384	−0.28059
26	0.34385	−0.36300
27	0.25778	−0.42843
28	0.15965	−0.47383
29	0.05406	−0.49707

30 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.05226	−0.49726
2	−0.15451	−0.47553
3	−0.25000	−0.43301
4	−0.33457	−0.37157
5	−0.40451	−0.29389
6	−0.45677	−0.20337
7	−0.48907	−0.10396
8	−0.50000	0.00000
9	−0.48907	0.10396
10	−0.45677	0.20337
11	−0.40451	0.29389
12	−0.33457	0.37157
13	−0.25000	0.43301
14	−0.15451	0.47553
15	−0.05226	0.49726
16	0.05226	0.49726
17	0.15451	0.47553
18	0.25000	0.43301
19	0.33457	0.37157
20	0.40451	0.29389
21	0.45677	0.20337

30 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
22	0.48907	0.10396
23	0.50000	0.00000
24	0.48907	−0.10396
25	0.45677	−0.20337
26	0.40451	−0.29389
27	0.33457	−0.37157
28	0.25000	−0.43301
29	0.15451	−0.47553
30	0.05226	−0.49726

31 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.05058	−0.49743
2	−0.14968	−0.47707
3	−0.24265	−0.43717
4	−0.32569	−0.37938
5	−0.39539	−0.30605
6	−0.44890	−0.22020
7	−0.48404	−0.12533
8	−0.49936	−0.02532
9	−0.49423	0.07571
10	−0.46888	0.17365
11	−0.42432	0.26448
12	−0.36240	0.34448
13	−0.28563	0.41038
14	−0.19718	0.45948
15	−0.10065	0.48976
16	0.00000	0.50000
17	0.10065	0.48976
18	0.19718	0.45948
19	0.28563	0.41038
20	0.36240	0.34448
21	0.42432	0.26448
22	0.46888	0.17365
23	0.49423	0.07571
24	0.49936	−0.02532
25	0.48404	−0.12533
26	0.44890	−0.22020
27	0.39539	−0.30605
28	0.32569	−0.37938
29	0.24265	−0.43717
30	0.14968	−0.47707
31	0.05058	−0.49743

32 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.04901	−0.49759
2	−0.14514	−0.47847
3	−0.23570	−0.44096
4	−0.31720	−0.38651
5	−0.38651	−0.31720
6	−0.44096	−0.23570
7	−0.47847	−0.14514
8	−0.49759	−0.04901
9	−0.49759	0.04901
10	−0.47847	0.14514
11	−0.44096	0.23570
12	−0.38651	0.31720
13	−0.31720	0.38651
14	−0.23570	0.44096
15	−0.14514	0.47847
16	−0.04901	0.49759
17	0.04901	0.49759
18	0.14514	0.47847
19	0.23570	0.44096
20	0.31720	0.38651
21	0.38651	0.31720
22	0.44096	0.23570
23	0.47847	0.14514
24	0.49759	0.04901
25	0.49759	−0.04901
26	0.47847	−0.14514
27	0.44096	−0.23570
28	0.38651	−0.31720
29	0.31720	−0.38651
30	0.23570	−0.44096
31	0.14514	−0.47847
32	0.04901	−0.49759

33 holes

#	x	y
1	−0.04753	−0.49774
2	−0.14087	−0.47975
3	−0.22911	−0.44442
4	−0.30908	−0.39303
5	−0.37787	−0.32743
6	−0.43301	−0.25000
7	−0.47250	−0.16353
8	−0.49491	−0.07116
9	−0.49943	0.02379
10	−0.48591	0.11788

33 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	−0.45482	0.20771
12	−0.40729	0.29003
13	−0.34504	0.36187
14	−0.27032	0.42063
15	−0.18583	0.46418
16	−0.09463	0.49096
17	0.00000	0.50000
18	0.09463	0.49096
19	0.18583	0.46418
20	0.27032	0.42063
21	0.34504	0.36187
22	0.40729	0.29003
23	0.45482	0.20771
24	0.48591	0.11788
25	0.49943	0.02379
26	0.49491	−0.07116
27	0.47250	−0.16353
28	0.43301	−0.25000
29	0.37787	−0.32743
30	0.30908	−0.39303
31	0.22911	−0.44442
32	0.14087	−0.47975
33	0.04753	−0.49774

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "B" Hole Circles

3 holes

#	x	y
1	0.06699	0.25000
2	0.50000	1.00000
3	0.93301	0.25000

4 holes

#	x	y
1	0.14645	0.14645
2	0.14645	0.85355
3	0.85355	0.85355
4	0.85355	0.14645

5 holes

#	x	y
1	0.20611	0.09549
2	0.02447	0.65451
3	0.50000	1.00000
4	0.97553	0.65451
5	0.79389	0.09549

6 holes

#	x	y
1	0.25000	0.06699
2	0.00000	0.50000
3	0.25000	0.93301
4	0.75000	0.93301
5	1.00000	0.50000
6	0.75000	0.06699

7 holes

#	x	y
1	0.28306	0.04952
2	0.01254	0.38874
3	0.10908	0.81174
4	0.50000	1.00000
5	0.89092	0.81174
6	0.98746	0.38874
7	0.71694	0.04952

8 holes

#	x	y
1	0.30866	0.03806
2	0.03806	0.30866
3	0.03806	0.69134
4	0.30866	0.96194
5	0.69134	0.96194
6	0.96194	0.69134
7	0.96194	0.30866
8	0.69134	0.03806

9 holes

#	x	y
1	0.32899	0.03015
2	0.06699	0.25000
3	0.00760	0.58682
4	0.17861	0.88302
5	0.50000	1.00000
6	0.82139	0.88302
7	0.99240	0.58682
8	0.93301	0.25000
9	0.67101	0.03015

10 holes

#	x	y
1	0.34549	0.02447
2	0.09549	0.20611
3	0.00000	0.50000
4	0.09549	0.79389
5	0.34549	0.97553
6	0.65451	0.97553
7	0.90451	0.79389
8	1.00000	0.50000
9	0.90451	0.20611
10	0.65451	0.02447

11 holes

#	x	y
1	0.35913	0.02025
2	0.12213	0.17257
3	0.00509	0.42884
4	0.04518	0.70771
5	0.22968	0.92063
6	0.50000	1.00000
7	0.77032	0.92063
8	0.95482	0.70771
9	0.99491	0.42884
10	0.87787	0.17257
11	0.64087	0.02025

12 holes

#	x	y
1	0.37059	0.01704
2	0.14645	0.14645
3	0.01704	0.37059
4	0.01704	0.62941
5	0.14645	0.85355
6	0.37059	0.98296
7	0.62941	0.98296
8	0.85355	0.85355
9	0.98296	0.62941
10	0.98296	0.37059
11	0.85355	0.14645
12	0.62941	0.01704

13 holes

#	x	y
1	0.38034	0.01453
2	0.16844	0.12574
3	0.03249	0.32270
4	0.00365	0.56027
5	0.08851	0.78403

13 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
6	0.26764	0.94273
7	0.50000	1.00000
8	0.73236	0.94273
9	0.91149	0.78403
10	0.99635	0.56027
11	0.96751	0.32270
12	0.83156	0.12574
13	0.61966	0.01453

14 holes

#	x	y
1	0.38874	0.01254
2	0.18826	0.10908
3	0.04952	0.28306
4	0.00000	0.50000
5	0.04952	0.71694
6	0.18826	0.89092
7	0.38874	0.98746
8	0.61126	0.98746
9	0.81174	0.89092
10	0.95048	0.71694
11	1.00000	0.50000
12	0.95048	0.28306
13	0.81174	0.10908
14	0.61126	0.01254

15 holes

#	x	y
1	0.39604	0.01093
2	0.20611	0.09549
3	0.06699	0.25000
4	0.00274	0.44774
5	0.02447	0.65451
6	0.12843	0.83457
7	0.29663	0.95677
8	0.50000	1.00000
9	0.70337	0.95677
10	0.87157	0.83457
11	0.97553	0.65451
12	0.99726	0.44774
13	0.93301	0.25000
14	0.79389	0.09549
15	0.60396	0.01093

16 holes

#	x	y
1	0.40245	0.00961
2	0.22221	0.08427
3	0.08427	0.22221
4	0.00961	0.40245
5	0.00961	0.59755
6	0.08427	0.77779
7	0.22221	0.91573
8	0.40245	0.99039
9	0.59755	0.99039
10	0.77779	0.91573
11	0.91573	0.77779
12	0.99039	0.59755
13	0.99039	0.40245
14	0.91573	0.22221
15	0.77779	0.08427
16	0.59755	0.00961

17 holes

#	x	y
1	0.40813	0.00851
2	0.23678	0.07489
3	0.10099	0.19868
4	0.01909	0.36317
5	0.00213	0.54613
6	0.05242	0.72287
7	0.16315	0.86950
8	0.31938	0.96624
9	0.50000	1.00000
10	0.68062	0.96624
11	0.83685	0.86950
12	0.94758	0.72287
13	0.99787	0.54613
14	0.98091	0.36317
15	0.89901	0.19868
16	0.76322	0.07489
17	0.59187	0.00851

18 holes

#	x	y
1	0.41318	0.00760
2	0.25000	0.06699
3	0.11698	0.17861
4	0.03015	0.32899
5	0.00000	0.50000
6	0.03015	0.67101
7	0.11698	0.82139

18 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	0.25000	0.93301
9	0.41318	0.99240
10	0.58682	0.99240
11	0.75000	0.93301
12	0.88302	0.82139
13	0.96985	0.67101
14	1.00000	0.50000
15	0.96985	0.32899
16	0.88302	0.17861
17	0.75000	0.06699
18	0.58682	0.00760

19 holes

#	x	y
1	0.41770	0.00682
2	0.26203	0.06026
3	0.13214	0.16136
4	0.04211	0.29915
5	0.00171	0.45871
6	0.01530	0.62274
7	0.08142	0.77347
8	0.19289	0.89457
9	0.33765	0.97291
10	0.50000	1.00000
11	0.66235	0.97291
12	0.80711	0.89457
13	0.91858	0.77347
14	0.98470	0.62274
15	0.99829	0.45871
16	0.95789	0.29915
17	0.86786	0.16136
18	0.73797	0.06026
19	0.58230	0.00682

20 holes

#	x	y
1	0.42178	0.00616
2	0.27300	0.05450
3	0.14645	0.14645
4	0.05450	0.27300
5	0.00616	0.42178
6	0.00616	0.57822
7	0.05450	0.72700
8	0.14645	0.85355
9	0.27300	0.94550
10	0.42178	0.99384

20 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.57822	0.99384
12	0.72700	0.94550
13	0.85355	0.85355
14	0.94550	0.72700
15	0.99384	0.57822
16	0.99384	0.42178
17	0.94550	0.27300
18	0.85355	0.14645
19	0.72700	0.05450
20	0.57822	0.00616

21 holes

#	x	y
1	0.42548	0.00558
2	0.28306	0.04952
3	0.15991	0.13347
4	0.06699	0.25000
5	0.01254	0.38874
6	0.00140	0.53737
7	0.03456	0.68267
8	0.10908	0.81174
9	0.21834	0.91312
10	0.35262	0.97779
11	0.50000	1.00000
12	0.64738	0.97779
13	0.78166	0.91312
14	0.89092	0.81174
15	0.96544	0.68267
16	0.99860	0.53737
17	0.98746	0.38874
18	0.93301	0.25000
19	0.84009	0.13347
20	0.71694	0.04952
21	0.57452	0.00558

22 holes

#	x	y
1	0.42884	0.00509
2	0.29229	0.04518
3	0.17257	0.12213
4	0.07937	0.22968
5	0.02025	0.35913
6	0.00000	0.50000
7	0.02025	0.64087
8	0.07937	0.77032
9	0.17257	0.87787

22 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
10	0.29229	0.95482
11	0.42884	0.99491
12	0.57116	0.99491
13	0.70771	0.95482
14	0.82743	0.87787
15	0.92063	0.77032
16	0.97975	0.64087
17	1.00000	0.50000
18	0.97975	0.35913
19	0.92063	0.22968
20	0.82743	0.12213
21	0.70771	0.04518
22	0.57116	0.00509

23 holes

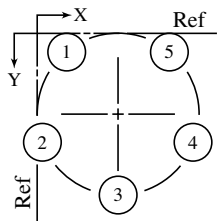
#	x	y
1	0.43192	0.00466
2	0.30080	0.04139
3	0.18446	0.11214
4	0.09152	0.21166
5	0.02887	0.33256
6	0.00117	0.46588
7	0.01046	0.60173
8	0.05606	0.73003
9	0.13458	0.84128
10	0.24021	0.92721
11	0.36510	0.98146
12	0.50000	1.00000
13	0.63490	0.98146
14	0.75979	0.92721
15	0.86542	0.84128
16	0.94394	0.73003
17	0.98954	0.60173
18	0.99883	0.46588
19	0.97113	0.33256
20	0.90848	0.21166
21	0.81554	0.11214
22	0.69920	0.04139
23	0.56808	0.00466

24 holes

#	x	y
1	0.43474	0.00428
2	0.30866	0.03806
3	0.19562	0.10332
4	0.10332	0.19562

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. *(Continued)* Hole Coordinate Dimension Factors for Type "B" Hole Circles



24 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
5	0.03806	0.30866
6	0.00428	0.43474
7	0.00428	0.56526
8	0.03806	0.69134
9	0.10332	0.80438
10	0.19562	0.89668
11	0.30866	0.96194
12	0.43474	0.99572
13	0.56526	0.99572
14	0.69134	0.96194
15	0.80438	0.89668
16	0.89668	0.80438
17	0.96194	0.69134
18	0.99572	0.56526
19	0.99572	0.43474
20	0.96194	0.30866
21	0.89668	0.19562
22	0.80438	0.10332
23	0.69134	0.03806
24	0.56526	0.00428

25 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
7	0.00099	0.53140
8	0.02447	0.65451
9	0.07784	0.76791
10	0.15773	0.86448
11	0.25912	0.93815
12	0.37566	0.98429
13	0.50000	1.00000
14	0.62434	0.98429
15	0.74088	0.93815
16	0.84227	0.86448
17	0.92216	0.76791
18	0.97553	0.65451
19	0.99901	0.53140
20	0.99114	0.40631
21	0.95241	0.28711
22	0.88526	0.18129
23	0.79389	0.09549
24	0.68406	0.03511
25	0.56267	0.00394

25 holes

#	x	y
1	0.43733	0.00394
2	0.31594	0.03511
3	0.20611	0.09549
4	0.11474	0.18129
5	0.04759	0.28711
6	0.00886	0.40631

26 holes

#	x	y
1	0.43973	0.00365
2	0.32270	0.03249
3	0.21597	0.08851
4	0.12574	0.16844
5	0.05727	0.26764
6	0.01453	0.38034
7	0.00000	0.50000

26 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
8	0.01453	0.61966
9	0.05727	0.73236
10	0.12574	0.83156
11	0.21597	0.91149
12	0.32270	0.96751
13	0.43973	0.99635
14	0.56027	0.99635
15	0.67730	0.96751
16	0.78403	0.91149
17	0.87426	0.83156
18	0.94273	0.73236
19	0.98547	0.61966
20	1.00000	0.50000
21	0.98547	0.38034
22	0.94273	0.26764
23	0.87426	0.16844
24	0.78403	0.08851
25	0.67730	0.03249
26	0.56027	0.00365

27 holes

#	x	y
1	0.44195	0.00338
2	0.32899	0.03015
3	0.22525	0.08226
4	0.13631	0.15688
5	0.06699	0.25000
6	0.02101	0.35660
7	0.00085	0.47093
8	0.00760	0.58682
9	0.04089	0.69804
10	0.09894	0.79858
11	0.17861	0.88302
12	0.27560	0.94682
13	0.38469	0.98652
14	0.50000	1.00000
15	0.61531	0.98652
16	0.72440	0.94682
17	0.82139	0.88302
18	0.90106	0.79858
19	0.95911	0.69804
20	0.99240	0.58682
21	0.99915	0.47093
22	0.97899	0.35660
23	0.93301	0.25000

27 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
24	0.86369	0.15688
25	0.77475	0.08226
26	0.67101	0.03015
27	0.55805	0.00338

28 holes

#	x	y
1	0.44402	0.00314
2	0.33486	0.02806
3	0.23398	0.07664
4	0.14645	0.14645
5	0.07664	0.23398
6	0.02806	0.33486
7	0.00314	0.44402
8	0.00314	0.55598
9	0.02806	0.66514
10	0.07664	0.76602
11	0.14645	0.85355
12	0.23398	0.92336
13	0.33486	0.97194
14	0.44402	0.99686
15	0.55598	0.99686
16	0.66514	0.97194
17	0.76602	0.92336
18	0.85355	0.85355
19	0.92336	0.76602
20	0.97194	0.66514
21	0.99686	0.55598
22	0.99686	0.44402
23	0.97194	0.33486
24	0.92336	0.23398
25	0.85355	0.14645
26	0.76602	0.07664
27	0.66514	0.02806
28	0.55598	0.00314

29 holes

#	x	y
1	0.44594	0.00293
2	0.34035	0.02617
3	0.24222	0.07157
4	0.15615	0.13700
5	0.08616	0.21941
6	0.03551	0.31493
7	0.00659	0.41911
8	0.00073	0.52707

29 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
9	0.01823	0.63376
10	0.05824	0.73420
11	0.11892	0.82369
12	0.19741	0.89805
13	0.29006	0.95379
14	0.39251	0.98831
15	0.50000	1.00000
16	0.60749	0.98831
17	0.70994	0.95379
18	0.80259	0.89805
19	0.88108	0.82369
20	0.94176	0.73420
21	0.98177	0.63376
22	0.99927	0.52707
23	0.99341	0.41911
24	0.96449	0.31493
25	0.91384	0.21941
26	0.84385	0.13700
27	0.75778	0.07157
28	0.65965	0.02617
29	0.55406	0.00293

30 holes

#	x	y
1	0.44774	0.00274
2	0.34549	0.02447
3	0.25000	0.06699
4	0.16543	0.12843
5	0.09549	0.20611
6	0.04323	0.29663
7	0.01093	0.39604
8	0.00000	0.50000
9	0.01093	0.60396
10	0.04323	0.70337
11	0.09549	0.79389
12	0.16543	0.87157
13	0.25000	0.93301
14	0.34549	0.97553
15	0.44774	0.99726
16	0.55226	0.99726
17	0.65451	0.97553
18	0.75000	0.93301
19	0.83457	0.87157
20	0.90451	0.79389
21	0.95677	0.70337

30 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
22	0.98907	0.60396
23	1.00000	0.50000
24	0.98907	0.39604
25	0.95677	0.29663
26	0.90451	0.20611
27	0.83457	0.12843
28	0.75000	0.06699
29	0.65451	0.02447
30	0.55226	0.00274

31 holes

#	x	y
1	0.44942	0.00257
2	0.35032	0.02293
3	0.25735	0.06283
4	0.17431	0.12062
5	0.10461	0.19395
6	0.05110	0.27980
7	0.01596	0.37467
8	0.00064	0.47468
9	0.00577	0.57571
10	0.03112	0.67365
11	0.07568	0.76448
12	0.13760	0.84448
13	0.21437	0.91038
14	0.30282	0.95948
15	0.39935	0.98976
16	0.50000	1.00000
17	0.60065	0.98976
18	0.69718	0.95948
19	0.78563	0.91038
20	0.86240	0.84448
21	0.92432	0.76448
22	0.96888	0.67365
23	0.99423	0.57571
24	0.99936	0.47468
25	0.98404	0.37467
26	0.94890	0.27980
27	0.89539	0.19395
28	0.82569	0.12062
29	0.74265	0.06283
30	0.64968	0.02293
31	0.55058	0.00257

32 holes

#	x	y
1	0.45099	0.00241
2	0.35486	0.02153
3	0.26430	0.05904
4	0.18280	0.11349
5	0.11349	0.18280
6	0.05904	0.26430
7	0.02153	0.35486
8	0.00241	0.45099
9	0.00241	0.54901
10	0.02153	0.64514
11	0.05904	0.73570
12	0.11349	0.81720
13	0.18280	0.88651
14	0.26430	0.94096
15	0.35486	0.97847
16	0.45099	0.99759
17	0.54901	0.99759
18	0.64514	0.97847
19	0.73570	0.94096
20	0.81720	0.88651
21	0.88651	0.81720
22	0.94096	0.73570
23	0.97847	0.64514
24	0.99759	0.54901
25	0.99759	0.45099
26	0.97847	0.35486
27	0.94096	0.26430
28	0.88651	0.18280
29	0.81720	0.11349
30	0.73570	0.05904
31	0.64514	0.02153
32	0.54901	0.00241

33 holes

#	x	y
1	0.45247	0.00226
2	0.35913	0.02025
3	0.27089	0.05558
4	0.19092	0.10697
5	0.12213	0.17257
6	0.06699	0.25000
7	0.02750	0.33647
8	0.00509	0.42884
9	0.00057	0.52379
10	0.01409	0.61788

33 holes *(Continued)*

#	x	y
11	0.04518	0.70771
12	0.09271	0.79003
13	0.15496	0.86187
14	0.22968	0.92063
15	0.31417	0.96418
16	0.40537	0.99096
17	0.50000	1.00000
18	0.59463	0.99096
19	0.68583	0.96418
20	0.77032	0.92063
21	0.84504	0.86187
22	0.90729	0.79003
23	0.95482	0.70771
24	0.98591	0.61788
25	0.99943	0.52379
26	0.99491	0.42884
27	0.97250	0.33647
28	0.93301	0.25000
29	0.87787	0.17257
30	0.80908	0.10697
31	0.72911	0.05558
32	0.64087	0.02025
33	0.54753	0.00226

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Lengths of Chords for Spacing Off the Circumferences of Circles with a Diameter Equal to 1 (English or Metric units)

No. of Spaces	Length of Chord	No. of Spaces	Length of Chord	No. of Spaces	Length of Chord	No. of Spaces	Length of Chord
3	0.866025	41	0.076549	79	0.039757	117	0.026848
4	0.707107	42	0.074730	80	0.039260	118	0.026621
5	0.587785	43	0.072995	81	0.038775	119	0.026397
6	0.500000	44	0.071339	82	0.038303	120	0.026177
7	0.433884	45	0.069756	83	0.037841	121	0.025961
8	0.382683	46	0.068242	84	0.037391	122	0.025748
9	0.342020	47	0.066793	85	0.036951	123	0.025539
10	0.309017	48	0.065403	86	0.036522	124	0.025333
11	0.281733	49	0.064070	87	0.036102	125	0.025130
12	0.258819	50	0.062791	88	0.035692	126	0.024931
13	0.239316	51	0.061561	89	0.035291	127	0.024734
14	0.222521	52	0.060378	90	0.034899	128	0.024541
15	0.207912	53	0.059241	91	0.034516	129	0.024351
16	0.195090	54	0.058145	92	0.034141	130	0.024164
17	0.183750	55	0.057089	93	0.033774	131	0.023979
18	0.173648	56	0.056070	94	0.033415	132	0.023798
19	0.164595	57	0.055088	95	0.033063	133	0.023619
20	0.156434	58	0.054139	96	0.032719	134	0.023443
21	0.149042	59	0.053222	97	0.032382	135	0.023269
22	0.142315	60	0.052336	98	0.032052	136	0.023098
23	0.136167	61	0.051479	99	0.031728	137	0.022929
24	0.130526	62	0.050649	100	0.031411	138	0.022763
25	0.125333	63	0.049846	101	0.031100	139	0.022599
26	0.120537	64	0.049068	102	0.030795	140	0.022438
27	0.116093	65	0.048313	103	0.030496	141	0.022279
28	0.111964	66	0.047582	104	0.030203	142	0.022122
29	0.108119	67	0.046872	105	0.029915	143	0.021967
30	0.104528	68	0.046183	106	0.029633	144	0.021815
31	0.101168	69	0.045515	107	0.029356	145	0.021664
32	0.098017	70	0.044865	108	0.029085	146	0.021516
33	0.095056	71	0.044233	109	0.028818	147	0.021370
34	0.092268	72	0.043619	110	0.028556	148	0.021225
35	0.089639	73	0.043022	111	0.028299	149	0.021083
36	0.087156	74	0.042441	112	0.028046	150	0.020942
37	0.084806	75	0.041876	113	0.027798	151	0.020804
38	0.082579	76	0.041325	114	0.027554	152	0.020667
39	0.080467	77	0.040789	115	0.027315	153	0.020532
40	0.078459	78	0.040266	116	0.027079	154	0.020399

For circles of other diameters, multiply length given in table by diameter of circle.

Example: In a drill jig, 8 holes, each ½ inch diameter, were spaced evenly on a 6-inch diameter circle. To test the accuracy of the jig, plugs were placed in adjacent holes, and the distance over the plugs was measured with a micrometer. What should be the micrometer reading?

Solution: The micrometer reading equals the diameter of one plug plus 6 times the chordal distance between adjacent hole centers given in the table above. Thus, the reading should be $\frac{1}{2} + (6 \times 0.382683) = 2.796098$ inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Gage Blocks

The primary standard for linear measurement is the *gage block*. Gage blocks were originally called Jo-Blocks after their Swedish inventor, Carl Edvard Johansson. These precision lapped blocks are the primary means of establishing measurement traceability to the prime standards located in the national laboratories of every country. The primary length standards are themselves defined by the distance traveled by light in a vacuum over a fixed time period.

The gage block is critical in establishing true traceability and measurement assurance in the dimensional discipline. There are several materials and grades of gage blocks to select from. The most common material in use today is steel. However, there is also Croblox, made by Mitutoyo, a thermally stable material with a very low coefficient of thermal expansion, and ceramic blocks, with extremely good wear capabilities. The average life span of a gage block is approximately 3 years. With proper care and cleaning the gage block may last many years longer but will eventually wear beyond the limits of the allowable tolerances and will need to be replaced.

The size tolerances applied to gage blocks, defined in the ANSI/ASME B89.1.9-2002, are shown in Table 1a and Table 1b, for inch and metric units, respectively. Nearly all gage blocks are manufactured and calibrated to this standard. B89.1.9 establishes the allowable deviations for size variance as well as flatness and parallelism. It is these controlled dimensions that give the gage block the properties necessary for use as a dimensional standard.

Table 1a. Maximum Permitted Deviations of Length at Any Point[a] and Tolerance on Variation in Length, Inch[b] *ANSI/ASME B89.1.9-2002 (R2012)*

Nominal Length Range, l_n inches	Calibration Grade K		Grade 00		Grade 0		Grade AS-1		Grade AS-2	
	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]
	$\pm t_e$ µin.	t_v µin.	$\pm t_e$ µin.	t_v µin.	$\pm t_e$ µin.	t_v µin.	$\pm t_e$ µin.	t_v µin.	$\pm t_e$ µin.	t_v µin.
≤ 0.05	12	2	4	2	6	4	12	6	24	12
$0.05 < l_n \leq 0.4$	10		3		5		8		18	
$0.55 < l_n \leq 1$	12		3		6		12		24	
$1 < l_n \leq 2$	16		4		8		16		32	
$2 < l_n \leq 3$	20		5	3	10		20		40	14
$3 < l_n \leq 4$	24	3	6		12	5	24	8	48	
$4 < l_n \leq 5$	32		8		16		32		64	16
$5 < l_n \leq 6$	32		8		16					
$6 < l_n \leq 7$	40	4	10	4	20	6	40	10	80	
$7 < l_n \leq 8$	40		10		20					
$8 < l_n \leq 10$	48		12		24		48		104	18
$10 < l_n \leq 12$	56		14		28	7	56		112	20
$12 < l_n \leq 16$	72	5	18	5	36	8	72	12	144	
$16 < l_n \leq 20$	88	6	20	6	44	10	88	14	176	24
$20 < l_n \leq 24$	104		25		52		104	16	200	28
$24 < l_n \leq 28$	120	7	30	7	60	12	120	18	240	
$28 < l_n \leq 32$	136	8	34	8	68		136	20	260	32
$32 < l_n \leq 36$	152		38		76	14	152		300	36
$36 < l_n \leq 40$	160	10	40	10	80	16	168	24	320	40

[a] Maximum permitted deviations of length at any point, $\pm t_e$ µinch, from nominal length, l_e inches.

[b] Tolerance, t_v µinch, for the variation in length.

Care of Gage Blocks.—Through proper care and handling of gage blocks, their functional life span can be maximized and many years of use can be realized from your investment. The basic care and cleaning of gage blocks should follow these simple guidelines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Maximum Permitted Deviations of Length at Any Point[a] and Tolerance on Variation in Length, Metric[b] *ANSI/ASME B89.1.9-2002 (R2012)*

Nominal Length Range, l_n mm	Calibration Grade K		Grade 00		Grade 0		Grade AS-1		Grade AS-2	
	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]	Limit on Deviations of Length[a]	Tolerance for Variation in Length[b]
	$\pm t_e$ µm	t_v µm	$\pm t_e$ µm	t_v µm	$\pm t_e$ µm	t_v µm	$\pm t_e$ µm	t_v µm	$\pm t_e$ µm	t_v µm
≤ 0.5	0.30	0.05	0.10	0.05	0.14	0.10	0.30	0.16	0.60	0.30
0.5 < l_n ≤ 10	0.20		0.07		0.12		0.20		0.45	
10 < l_n ≤ 25	0.30				0.14		0.30		0.60	
25 < l_n ≤ 50	0.40	0.06	0.10	0.06	0.20		0.40	0.18	0.80	
50 < l_n ≤ 75	0.50		0.12	0.07	0.25	0.12	0.50		1.00	0.35
75 < l_n ≤ 100	0.60	0.07	0.15		0.30		0.60	0.20	1.20	
100 < l_n ≤ 150	0.80	0.08	0.20	0.08	0.40	0.14	0.80		1.60	0.40
150 < l_n ≤ 200	1.00	0.09	0.25	0.09	0.50	0.16	1.00	0.25	2.00	
200 < l_n ≤ 250	1.20	0.10	0.30	0.10	0.60		1.20		2.40	0.45
250 < l_n ≤ 300	1.40		0.35		0.70	0.18	1.40		2.80	0.50
300 < l_n ≤ 400	1.80	0.12	0.45	0.12	0.90	0.20	1.80	0.30	3.60	
400 < l_n ≤ 500	2.20	0.14	0.50	0.14	1.10	0.25	2.20	0.35	4.40	0.60
500 < l_n ≤ 600	2.60	0.16	0.65	0.16	1.30		2.60	0.40	5.00	0.70
600 < l_n ≤ 700	3.00	0.18	0.75	0.18	1.50	0.30	3.00	0.45	6.00	
700 < l_n ≤ 800	3.40	0.20	0.85	0.20	1.70		3.40	0.50	6.50	0.80
800 < l_n ≤ 900	3.80		0.95		1.90	0.35	3.80		7.50	0.90
900 < l_n ≤ 1000	4.20	0.25	1.00	0.25	2.00	0.40	4.20	0.60	8.00	1.00

[a] Maximum permitted deviations of length at any point, $\pm t_e$ µm, from nominal length, l_e mm.

[b] Tolerance, t_v µm, for the variation in length.

1) Always keep gage blocks clean and well oiled when not in direct use. Alcohol is acceptable as a cleaner, but it is always advisable to coat the gage block with a rust inhibitor when placing it back in the case. A very light machine oil is recommended.

2) Take great care when removing gage blocks from the case so as not to nick or damage the working surface. Clean with a soft cloth or chamois and isopropanol. Never touch gage blocks with bare hands. Oil from fingers will cause corrosion on the bare metal surface.

3) Always keep the gage blocks over a soft cloth or chamois when handling or wringing them together. Dropping the gage blocks onto a hard surface or other gage blocks will damage the working surface and cause an error beyond the limits of the tolerance. Always treat gage blocks as highly accurate precision instruments.

4) Should the gage block surface show signs of degradation and the wringing together of blocks become difficult, the surface may need to be deburred. The use of a serrated sintered aluminum oxide deburring stone is recommended to recondition the surface and renew the ability to join the gage blocks through wringing. Caution must be exercised when deburring the surface of gage blocks so it is not damaged instead of repaired.

5) Gently place the gage block flat on the serrated block. With two fingers (using gloves), press down firmly, but not hard, on the gage block and slide it lengthwise over the serrations on the block for three or four strokes until the surface feels very smooth. Turn the gage block over and repeat the movement. Remove and clean the gage block thoroughly.

6) It is important that the serrated sintered aluminum oxide deburring stone is cleaned as well, and metal deposits, oils, and dirt are not allowed to build up on the surface. A cotton packing impregnated with a metal solvent will clean the serrated sintered aluminum oxide deburring stone.

Calibration and Verification of Gage Blocks.—The calibration and verification of gage blocks should be completed on a regular basis. This is done to maintain measurement assurance in every good quality program. The quality assurance program will determine

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the optimal interval for recalibration of the gage block sets to maintain the appropriate level of measurement assurance. Calibration of the gage blocks should be done by an approved and, if necessary, certified calibration laboratory that provides impartial third party confirmation of the calibrated features of the gage block set.

Precision Gage Blocks.—Precision gage blocks are usually purchased in sets containing a specific number of blocks of different sizes. The nominal gage lengths of individual blocks in a set are determined mathematically so that particular desired lengths can be obtained by combining selected blocks. They are made to several different tolerance grades that categorize them as master blocks, calibration blocks, inspection blocks, and workshop blocks. *Master blocks* are employed as basic reference standards; *calibration blocks* are used for high precision gaging work and calibrating inspection blocks; *inspection blocks* are used as toolroom standards and for checking and setting limit and comparator gages, for example. The *workshop blocks* are working gages used as shop standards for direct precision measurements and gaging applications, including sine-bars.

Federal Specification GGG-G-15C, Gage Blocks (see below), lists typical sets and gives details of materials, design, and manufacturing requirements, and tolerance grades. When there is in a set no single block of the exact size wanted, two or more blocks are combined by "wringing" them together. Wringing is achieved by first placing one block crosswise on the other and applying some pressure. Then a swiveling motion is used to twist the blocks to a parallel position, causing them to adhere firmly to one another.

When combining blocks for a given dimension, the object is to use as few blocks as possible to obtain the dimension. The procedure for selecting blocks is based on successively eliminating the right-hand figure of the desired dimension.

Example: Referring to inch-size gage block Set Number 1 below, determine the blocks required to obtain 3.6742 inches. *Step 1:* Eliminate 0.0002 by selecting a 0.1002 block. Subtract 0.1002 from 3.6743 = 3.5740. *Step 2:* Eliminate 0.004 by selecting a 0.124 block. Subtract 0.124 from 3.5740 = 3.450. *Step 3:* Eliminate 0.450 with a block this size. Subtract 0.450 from 3.450 = 3.000. *Step 4:* Select a 3.000 inch block. The combined blocks are 0.1002 + 0.124 + 0.450 + 3.000 = 3.6742 inches.

Gage Block Sets, Inch Sizes (Federal Specification GGG-G-15C).—*Set Number 1 (81 Blocks):* First Series: 0.0001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.1001 to 0.1009; Second Series: 0.001-Inch Increments (49 Blocks), 0.101 to 0.149; Third Series: 0.050-Inch Increments (19 Blocks), 0.050 to 0.950; Fourth Series: 1.000-Inch Increments (4 Blocks), 1.000- to 4.000-inch.

Set Numbers 2, 3, and 4: The specification does not list a set 2 or 3. Gage block *Set Number 4* (88 Blocks), listed in the Specification, is not given here; it is the same as Set Number 1 (81 Blocks) but contains seven additional blocks measuring 0.0625, 0.078125, 0.093750, 0.100025, 0.100050, 0.100075, and 0.109375 inch.

Set Number 5 (21 Blocks): First Series: 0.0001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.0101 to 0.0109; Second Series: 0.001-Inch Increments (11 Blocks), 0.010 to 0.020; One Block 0.01005 inch.

Set Number 6 (28 Blocks): First Series: 0.0001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.0201 to 0.0209; Second Series: 0.001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks). 0.021 to 0.029; Third Series: 0.010-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.010 to 0.090; One Block 0.02005 Inch.

Long Gage Block Set Number 7 (8 Blocks): Whole-Inch Series (8 Blocks), 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 16, 20 inches.

Set Number 8 (36 Blocks): First Series: 0.0001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.1001 to 0.1009; Second Series: 0.001-Inch Increments (11 Blocks), 0.100 to 0.110; Third Series: 0.010-Inch Increments (8 Blocks), 0.120 to 0.190; Fourth Series: 0.100-Inch Increments (4 Blocks), 0.200 to 0.500; Whole-Inch Series (3 Blocks), 1, 2, 4 Inches; One Block 0.050 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Set Number 9 (20 Blocks): First Series: 0.0001-Inch Increments (9 Blocks), 0.0501 to 0.0509; Second Series: 0.001-Inch Increments (10 Blocks), 0.050 to 0.059; One Block 0.05005 inch.

Gage Block Sets, Metric Sizes (Federal Specification GGG-G-15C).—*Set Number 1M (45 Blocks):* First Series: 0.001-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.001 to 1.009; Second Series: 0.01-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.01 to 1.09; Third Series: 0.10-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.10 to 1.90; Fourth Series: 1.0-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.0 to 9.0; Fifth Series: 10-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 10 to 90 mm.

Set Number 2M (88 Blocks): First Series: 0.001-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.001 to 1.009; Second Series: 0.01-Millimeter Increments (49 Blocks), 1.01 to 1.49; Third Series: 0.50-Millimeter Increments (19 Blocks), 0.5 to 9.5; Fourth Series: 10-Millimeter Increments (10 Blocks), 10 to 100; One Block 1.0005 mm.

Set Number 3M: Gage block Set Number 3M (112 Blocks) is not given here. It is similar to Set Number 2M (88 Blocks), and the chief difference is the inclusion of a larger number of blocks in the 0.5-millimeter increment series up to 24.5 mm.

Set Number 4M (45 Blocks): First Series: 0.001-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 2.001 to 2.009; Second Series: 0.01-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 2.01 to 2.09; Third Series: 0.10-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 2.1 to 2.9; Fourth Series: 1-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 1.0 to 9.0; Fifth Series: 10-Millimeter Increments (9 Blocks), 10 to 90 mm.

Set Numbers 5M, 6M, 7M: Set Numbers 5M (88 Blocks), 6M (112 Blocks), and 7M (17 Blocks) are not listed here.

Long Gage Block Set Number 8M (8 Blocks): Whole-Millimeter Series (8 Blocks), 125, 150, 175, 200, 250, 300, 400, 500 mm.

Surface Plates

The surface plate is the primary plane from which all vertical measurements are made. The quality and dependability of this surface is one of the most critical elements in dimensional inspection measurement. Originally made from cast iron, the present-day granite plate was first developed during World War II because most metal was being used in the war effort. Faced with a need to check precision parts, Mr. Wallace Herman, a metal working and monument shop owner, decided to investigate the use of granite as a suitable replacement for the then-common cast-iron surface plate and manufactured the first granite surface plate in his shop in Dayton, Ohio.

Although surface plates have changed in their design and materials, the basic concept has remained the same. The stability and precision that can be achieved with granite is actually far superior to cast iron and is much easier to maintain. With the proper care and maintenance, a well-made surface plate can last for generations and always remain within the parameters of the grade to which it was originally made, or even better.

Materials and Grades of Surface Plates.—The selection of a surface plate is driven directly by the specific application the plate will be used for. A plate, for instance, that will be used in a very large machining facility would be primarily concerned with the load-bearing properties and secondarily in surface flatness accuracy, although both are important concerns. A surface plate that will be used in a metrology laboratory or high precision inspection department with a high volume of work would be concerned with high accuracy and surface wear properties. In each case the material and design would be considered for the application in mind before a selection is made and a purchase initiated.

The material properties of the granite is what makes the difference in the performance of surface plates. The differences in the various types of granite are considered in Table 1, based on Federal Specification GGG-P-463c, Plate, Surface (Granite) (Inch and Metric).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Granite Rock Types, Physical Properties, and Mineral Components *GGG-P-463c*

Rock Type	Natural Color	Texture	Mineral Constituents, Descending Order Of Abundance	Modulus of Elasticity	
				10^6 psi	GPa
Biotite granite	Bluish gray	Fine-grained	Orthoclase, smokey quartz,[a] oligoclase, albite, biotite, muscovite, magnetite and zircon	3.5–7.0	24.1–48.2
	Light gray	Medium-grained	Oligoclase, orthoclase and microcline, quartz, biotite, apatite and zircon	3.5–7.0	24.1–48.2
	Pink		Orthoclase with a small amount of microcline, plagioclase, quartz[a], biotite, magnetite, and garnet	5.0–9.0	34.4–62.0
Biotite hornblende granite	Reddish brown	Fine-grained	Orthoclase and microcline, quartz[a], hornblende, biotite, plagioclase and magnetite	6.0–9.0	41.3–62.0
Biotite-muscovite	Light gray	Medium- to fine-grained	Microcline, quartz, plagioclase, biotite, muscovite and magnetite	5.0–7.0	34.4–48.2
Diabase	Dark gray	Fine-grained	Plagioclase, pyroxene and magnetite	9.0–12.0	62.0–82.7
Hypersthene Gabbro			Plagioclase, pryoxene, hornblende, magnetite and biotite	10.0–12.0	68.9–82.7
Muscovite-biotite granite-gneiss	Light gray	Medium-grained	Microcline and orthoclase, oligoclase, quartz, rutile, muscovite	3.5–8.0	24.1–55.1

[a] 28 to 32% quartz by volume. In certain conditions, high quartz content tends to increase wear life.

As indicated in Table 1, fine-grained pink granite containing a small amount of quartz has a lower modulus of elasticity and therefore a lower load bearing per square foot capacity. The presence of large quartz crystals, however, results in a high degree of wearability by providing an ultra-smooth surface finish with increased surface hardness that resists wear on the granite and the precision ground and lapped instruments used on it. Although the load-bearing properties are lower than those of black or dark gray granite, this can be compensated for by increasing the thickness of the plate.

As a result of the increased wearability of pink granite, the interval between lapping compared to fine-grained black granite can be as much as five times as long. This is an important consideration when planning the maintenance costs and downtime involved in maintaining a production schedule.

The precision lapped and calibrated granite surface plate is a high-precision piece of equipment and must be maintained as such. Great care should be taken at all times to protect the surface, and attention to cleanliness is critical in the life span of the surface plate. It is essential that the surface be protected from the buildup of dirt, grease, airborne grime and oils. The plate should be covered when not in use to avoid accidentally dropping objects on the surface and chipping or cracking the precision finished surface.

All surface plates should be installed and supported according to the manufacturer's design and recommendations. Plates up to and including 6–12 feet are supported in a three-point non-distortable support system of hard rubber pads that are installed during manufacturing and remain in place during lapping and finishing. These pads are critical in the correct support of the surface plate and must never be removed or repositioned. Always make sure the surface plate is resting on these pads, and never support the plate by its ledges or under the four corners as this will cause deformation of the surface and introduce errors beyond the tolerance limits.

Surface plates made to meet standard guidelines and accuracy parameters established over the last fifty years and published in documents such as the Federal Specification GGG-P-463c will be manufactured in certain pre-designed sizes. These designs have been analyzed for dimensional stability and dependability and will, with proper care, provide dependable measurement assurance for many years. There are manufacturers that will special order surface plates in a wide variety of sizes and configurations to meet the needs

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of specialized applications, and have engineering staffs that will design a surface plate to meet those needs. However, most applications and manufacturers' products fall under the design guidelines of the tables in the GGG-P-463c Federal Specification.

Table 2a. Standard Sizes for Rectangular Granite Surface Plates *GGG-P-463c*

Inch				Metric			
Width (inch)	Length (inch)	Calculated Diagonal (inch)	Area (ft^2)	Width (mm)	Length (mm)	Calculated Diagonal (mm)	Area (m^2)
12	12	17.0	1	300	300	424	0.090
	18	21.6	1.5		350	541	0.135
18	18	25.5	2.25	450	450	636	0.202
	24	30.0	3		600	750	0.270
24	24	33.9	4	600	600	849	0.360
	36	43.3	6		900	1082	0.540
	48	53.7	8		1200	1342	0.720
36	36	50.9	9	900	900	1273	0.810
	48	60.0	12		1200	1500	1.080
	60	70.0	15		1500	1749	1.350
	72	80.5	18		1800	2012	1.620
48	48	67.9	16	1200	1200	1697	1.440
	60	76.9	20		1500	1921	1.800
	72	86.5	24		1800	2163	2.160
	96	107.3	32		2400	2683	2.880
	120	129.2	40		3000	3231	3.600
60	120	134.2	50	1500	300	3304	4.500
72	96	120.0	48	1800	2400	3000	4.320
	144	161.0	72		3600	4025	6.480

Table 2b. Standard Sizes for Round Granite Surface Plates *GGG-P-463c*

Inch		Millimeter	
Diameter (inch)	Area (ft^2)	Diameter (mm)	Area (m^2)
12	0.8	300	0.071
18	1.8	450	0.159
24	3.1	600	0.283
36	7.1	900	0.636
48	48	1200	1.131

Thickness: For rectangular and round surface plates, specify thickness only if essential; see Appendix 30 and inch and metric versions of Tables XI and XII of GGG-P-463c.

Surface plate grades are established in the Federal Specifications and are the guidelines by which the plates are calibrated. The flatness tolerances in microinches for standard inch-dimension plates, listed in Table 3a., are obtained through the standard formula:

$$\text{Total flatness tolerance for inch} - \text{dimension grade AA plates} = 40 + \frac{D^2}{25}\,\mu\text{in.}$$

where D = diagonal or diameter of the plate in inches. The calculated flatness tolerance for grade AA is rounded to the nearest 25 μin.

For metric plate sizes, the total flatness tolerance of grade AA plates in micrometers is:

$$\textbf{Total flatness tolerance for metric grade AA plates} = 1 + 1.62D^2 10^{-6}\,\mu\text{m}$$

where D = diagonal or diameter of the plate in millimeters.

For both the inch and metric plates, the tolerances of the A and B grades are 2 and 4 times, respectively, those for grade AA.

Table 3a and Table 3b, adapted from Federal Specification GGG-P-463c, contain the calculated tolerances for the standard size and grades of rectangular and round surface plates.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3a. Total Flatness Tolerance, Rectangular Surface Plates *GGG-P-463c*

Rectangular Plates									
Inch Sizes, Tolerances in Microinches					Millimeter Sizes, Tolerances in Micrometers				
Width (inch)	Length (inch)	Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B	Width (mm)	Length (mm)	Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B
12	12	50	100	200	300	300	1.3	2.6	5.2
	18	50	100	200		450	1.5	2.9	5.9
18	18	50	100	200	450	450	1.6	3.3	6.6
	24	75	150	300		600	1.9	3.8	7.6
24	24	75	150	300	600	600	2.2	4.3	8.6
	36	100	200	400		900	2.9	5.7	11.5
	48	150	300	600		1200	3.9	7.8	15.5
36	36	150	300	600	900	900	3.6	7.2	14.4
	48	200	400	800		1200	4.6	9.2	18.4
	60	250	500	1000		1500	5.9	11.8	23.6
	72	300	600	1200		1800	7.5	15.0	29.9
48	48	200	400	800	1200	1200	5.6	11.2	22.4
	60	300	600	1200		1500	6.9	13.8	17.6
	72	350	700	1400		1800	8.5	17.0	33.9
	96	500	1000	2000		2400	12.5	25.0	50.0
	120	700	1400	2800		3000	17.7	35.4	70.8
60	120	750	1500	3000	1500	3000	18.5	36.9	73.9
72	96	600	1200	2400	1800	2400	15.4	30.8	61.6
	144	1100	2200	4400		3600	26.9	53.8	107.7

Table 3b. Total Flatness Tolerance, Round Surface Plates *GGG-P-463c*

Round Plates							
Inch Sizes, Tolerances in Microinches				Millimeter Sizes, Tolerances in Micrometers			
Diameter (inch)	Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B	Diameter (mm)	Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B
12	50	100	200	300	1.1	2.3	4.6
18	50	100	200	450	1.3	2.5	5.3
24	75	150	300	600	1.6	3.2	6.3
36	100	200	400	900	2.3	4.6	9.2
48	125	250	500	1200	3.3	6.6	13.2

Calibration of Surface Plates.— Surface plates, like other precision instruments, will drift out of tolerance in time and need to be periodically checked and even adjusted to maintain accuracy. For a surface plate, this adjustment involves lapping the surface and physically removing material until the entire surface is once again flat to within the limits of the grade to which it was made. This is a labor-intensive adjustment that should only be attempted by a trained technician with the appropriate tools. An untrained technician, even with the proper lapping tools and compounds, may cause more harm than good when attempting such an adjustment.

However, with proper care and cleaning, a surface plate may not need lapping at every calibration. Completing the calibration process will give the quality assurance program the data needed to identify wear patterns on a surface plate and have the proper maintenance completed before an out of tolerance condition occurs, thereby avoiding a costly failure impact analysis and reinspection of parts, or even a recall of finished parts from a customer. The calibration process is a cost-effective alternative to these undesirable effects.

Fig. 1 illustrates the "Union Jack" or eight line pattern that is used to analyze the overall flatness of the surface plate working area. Each line is measured independently, and the positive and negative elevations are recorded at predetermined intervals. The peak to valley

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

flatness is calculated from the recorded data. This method was developed by JC Moody while working for Sandia Corporation, and the resulting plot of the data points is referred to as a Moody Plot. There are many software packages available that simplify the process of calculating this plot and provide a detailed printout of the data in a graphical format.

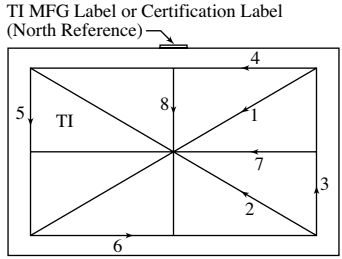


Fig. 1. Union Jack Pattern

Repeat-o-Meter Method (Fed. Spec. GGG-P-463c) The easiest and quickest method of monitoring for surface plate wear and tolerance adherence is the Repeat-o-Meter method. A *repeat reading gage* similar in design to the one shown in Fig. 2 is used to establish the variation in flatness of the surface plate.

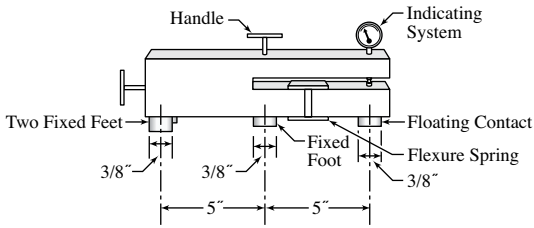


Fig. 2. Repeat Reading Gage from Federal Specification GGG-P-463c

The gage is placed at the center of the surface plate, and the indicator is set to zero. The eight-line Union Jack pattern, Fig. 1, is then scanned in the sequence defined in the Federal Specification GGG-P-463c. The result of the maximum reading minus the minimum reading shall not exceed the flatness tolerance expressed in Table 4a and Table 4b for inch- and millimeter-sized plates, respectively.

Table 4a. Tolerance for Repeat Reading of Measurement (microinches)

Diagonal / Diameter Range		Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B	
Over	Thru	Full Indicator Movement (FIM), microinches			Obtained
…	30	35	60	110	When not specified
30	60	45	70	120	
60	90	60	80	160	
90	120	75	100	200	
120	150	90	120	240	
150	…	100	140	280	
All Sizes		25	50	100	When specified

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4b. Tolerance for Repeat Reading of Measurement (micrometers)

Diagonal / Diameter Range (mm)		Grade AA	Grade A	Grade B	
Over	Thru	Full Indicator Movement (FIM), micrometers			Obtained
…	800	35	60	110	When not specified
800	1500	45	70	120	
1500	2200	60	80	160	
2200	3000	75	100	200	
3000	3800	90	120	240	
3800	…	100	140	280	
All Sizes		0.6	1.3	2.5	When specified

Note for Table 4a *and* Table 4b*:* If it is intended that small objects be measured on large surface plates, it should be noted that a larger tolerance in flatness over small areas is permitted on larger plates.

All points on the work surface shall be contained between two parallel planes, the roof plane and the base plane. The distance between these planes shall be no greater than that specified in the tolerance table for the respective grades.

Autocollimator Calibration (Ref NAVAIR 17-20MD-14, 1 MAY 1995).— Calibration of a surface plate by autocollimator is one of the most accurate and relatively quickest methods in use today. The method has been in use since the advent of the autocollimator in the 1940s but was refined by JC Moody with the development of the Moody Plot analysis method that utilized the data collected on perimeters, diagonals and bisectors. The resulting pattern resembles the "Union Jack" and is referred to as such.

Autocollimators today have been enhanced with the inclusion of CCD devices, digital readouts, computer interfacing, and automatic data collection that calculates the deviations and analyzes the results in a fraction of the time previously required, producing a full color graphical diagram of the surface plate variances.

Fig. 3 and Fig. 4 show the positioning of the turning mirrors used when performing the surface plate calibration with an autocollimator.

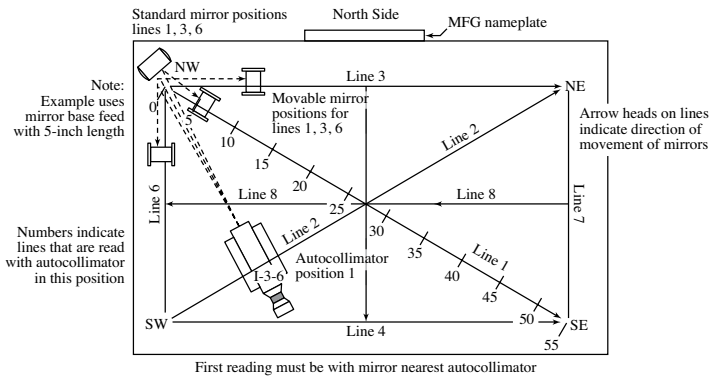


Fig. 3. Placement of the First Turning Mirror and Retroreflector: TO 33K6-4-137-1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

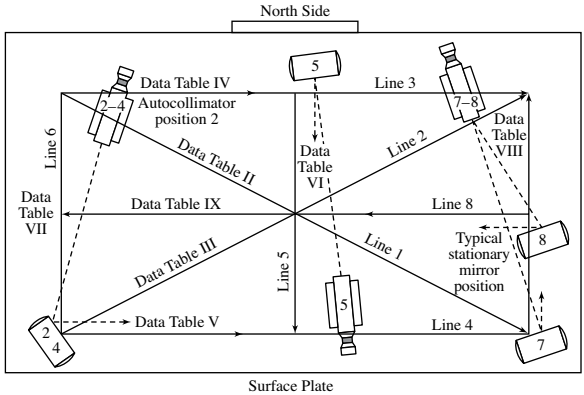


Fig. 4. Turning Mirror Placement for Remaining Lines: TO 33K6-4-137-1

Interferometer Calibration (Ref TO 33K6-4-10-1 30 April 2006).—Calibration of a surface plate can also be accomplished using a laser interferometer. The laser offers the absolute lowest uncertainty in the calibration process, and, although it takes more time than either of the other methods, it is sometimes required by some customers doing military or government contract work. There are several models and methods available on the market today. The general process will be covered, but familiarity with the particular model being used is necessary to complete the full calibration procedure.

The process is much the same as the autocollimator calibration method using turning mirrors. The laser tripod and laser head are located as close to the line being shot as possible. Move the tripod and realign the laser interferometer for each line during calibration. If available, use the turning mirrors to facilitate the alignment of the beam. As with any high-precision physical measurements, air currents and vibrations will affect the indications. Take precautions to minimize these affects. Clean the surface plate twice with surface plate cleaner and once again with ethyl alcohol prior to beginning the calibration process.

Mark the surface with lines as shown in Fig. 5 below. The lines will be either 3 or 4 inches away from the edge of the surface plate, depending on the size of the plate. The North side of the plate will always be the side bearing the manufacturer's label or the previous calibration label.

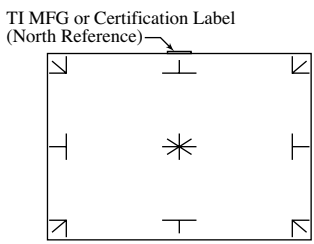


Fig. 5. Reference Lines for Union Jack 1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Clamp the straight edge to the surface plate in the position shown in Fig. 6 below. The straightedge will always be offset from the center of the line so that the centerline of the mirror will travel directly above the center of the reference line.

Place the interferometer and retroreflector on the reference line closest to the laser head. Direct the beam through the interferometer optics and, using the vertical and horizontal adjustments on the tripod head, adjust until the beam returns through the optics and registers a strong beam strength on the beam strength indicator.

Slide the retroreflector to the far end of the reference line and use the rotation adjustment on the tripod head to swing the beam back into alignment with the laser head until once again the beam strength indicator shows a strong beam strength. Using this method of Translate Near / Rotate Far you will be able to align the beam with the path of the reference line. Patience will be required, and the manufacturer will also have information regarding the best method for the specific model being used.

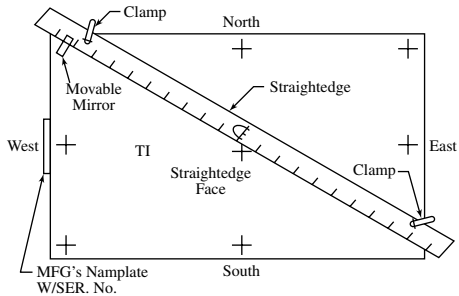


Fig. 6. Placement of the Straightedge for Measurement of the First Reference Line

Once the alignment of the first reference line has been completed, take the measurements at the stations recommended by the software calculations. The number of stations will change according to the size of the surface plate and the length of the footpad used for the retroreflector. Record the values at each station along the first reference line then return to the first position and verify that the reading repeats before proceeding to the next line. Great care must be taken to ensure a clean plate and footpad, free of residue or buildup. A very small amount of dirt or dust can cause an out of tolerance condition and result in many wasted hours of failure impact analysis and possibly recall of parts to be reinspected unnecessarily.

When the data from all the reference lines has been collected, the interferometer software will calculate the overall flatness of the plate and make the determination as to whether or not the plate meets the specific grade to which it has been assigned or needs to be lapped to meet tolerance limits. If there is a failure determination, the plate will need to be lapped and reshot to collect the "As Left" data and close the calibration event with an acceptance of the calibration data.

Lapping a surface plate is a very specific skill and should not be attempted by an amateur or enthusiastic technician however good the intentions may be. Lapping requires specialized tools and compounds as well as skill. An inexperienced technician attempting to lap a surface plate may well cause more damage than is already present. Always consult an experienced and proven professional in this field.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

V-Blocks

The V-block is a precision holding jig or fixture devised as a tool or to enable the precision and repeatable positioning of a cylindrical work piece. The V-block enables drilling, grinding, or milling operations on a robust and precision platform as compared to the vise or other simple holding devices.

In 1902, Elmer Cobb and Eugene Spaulding of Portland, Maine patented a Machinists V-block to expand their capability to hold and drill extended workpieces. The V-blocks were machined with a large channel on one side and a pair of smaller channels on the other to accommodate the various diameters that were encountered in the basic work done in the machine shop of the era. Each block had a hole in the center to allow the passage of a drill through the work piece. The blocks were a matched set that were secured together by two rods that aligned the blocks together and allowed them to slide open or to be closed together to support work of varying lengths.

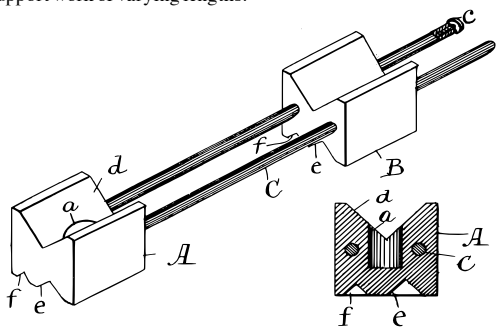
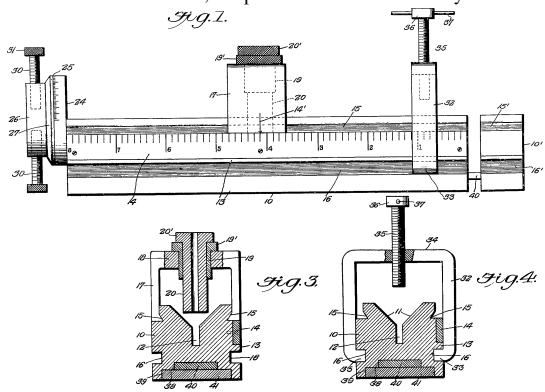


Fig. 1. Machinists' V-Block, Patented 1902 by Cobb and Spaulding

In 1923, Gustave Hines invented a device that incorporated a scale along the linear side of the work piece, and locked the work into a scaled collar that could be rotated accurately throughout 180°. The device provided a drill guide that would accurately measure distances between centerlines of holes, and provide rotational accuracy.



Gustave Hines 1923 Innovation

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Classification.—The Federal Specification GGG-V-191D 1971 "V Blocks and Clamps" was developed to provide the acceptable criteria for items to be purchased under contract by the US Government or Department of Defense. This specification has been superseded by Federal Specification A-A-51150B and since canceled. However, these and related standards are still referenced by many manufacturers of precision V-blocks and were the initial guidelines for the manufacturing and specification of the tool.

Federal Specification Coverage: This specification covers only the types, styles and grades generally purchased by the Federal Government, and does not include all types, styles, and grades which are commercially available.

Type, Style, and Grade

Type I – Single V-Groove (page 735)

Style 2: Double level clamping

Style 3: Reversible clamping yoke

Style 4: Magnetic clamping (mild steel and brass laminated)

Style 5: Ribbed, without clamping

Style 6: Plain without clamping

Grades: Grade A: Steel (alloy); Grade B: Mild Steel (and brass laminated for style 4); and Grade C: Cast Steel.

Type II – Double V-Groove (page 738)

Style 1: Single level clamping

Grades: Grade A: Steel (alloy); and Grade B: Cast Iron (class 40 iron).

Type III – Quadruple V-Groove (page 739)

Style 1: Single level clamping

Grades: Grade A: Steel (alloy); and Grade B: Cast Iron (class 40 iron).

Type IV – Combination, Top and End V-Grooves (page 741)

Style 1: Single level clamping

Grades: Grade A: Steel (alloy)

Material.—*Note:* Grade and surface finish specifications are a representation of all governing standards in use today.

Grade A Blocks: Grade A blocks shall be steel or steel alloy and shall have a surface hardness of 58 to 65 RC on the Rockwell C scale.

Grade B Blocks: Grade B blocks shall be a good quality mild steel, free from porosity and other injurious defects and have a surface hardness of 40 to 45 on the Rockwell C scale.

Grade C Blocks: Grade C blocks shall be a good quality cast steel free of porosity or other injurious defects and shall have a surface hardness of 150 to 180 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number).

Precision Granite Blocks: Precision granite V-blocks shall be made from a close grained uniform texture granite free from flaws or fissures and inclusions of softer material. Granite V-blocks shall adhere to either Grade A or B accuracy. Grade A and matched sets are to be provided in a protective case.

Finished Surfaces: Surfaces of the V-grooves, tops sides, bottom, V-groove relief slots, and clamp engaging grooves shall have finished surfaces measured in micrometers arithmetical average (A.A.) or roughness average (Ra) in accordance with ANSI/ASME B46.1-2009. All other surfaces shall be finished in accordance with normal manufacturer's standard commercial practice.

Surface Finish, Grades A and B, Style 4, Blocks: Surface of V-groove relief slots and clamp engaging grooves (when applicable) on blocks shall have a surface roughness not greater than 125 µin (3.175 µm). All other finished surfaces shall have a surface roughness not greater than 32 µin (0.81 µm) Ra.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Surface Finish, Grade B (except Style 4), and Grade C Blocks: Surface of V-groove(s). The V-grooves relief slots and clamp engaging grooves (when applicable) on blocks shall have a surface roughness not greater than 125 µin (3.175 µm) Ra. All other finished surfaces shall have a surface roughness not greater than 63 µin (1.600 µm) Ra.

Surface Edges: Edges of all exterior surfaces, including corners, shall be rounded or beveled not less than 0.010 inch and shall be free from fins and burrs.

Tolerance.—All Grade A; and Style 4, Grade B, mild steel laminated with brass, shall have a ground finish on the ends, sides, top, bottom, and the V-groove(s). The V-grooves shall be centered with the sides, square with the sides and ends, and parallel to the bottom within 0.0003 in. All surfaces shall be square with each other within 0.0003 in.

Grade B (except Style 4) and Grade C shall have a machined or ground finish. The V-groove(s) shall be parallel and centered with the sides to within 0.002 in. The ends shall be square with the sides within 0.002 in. and the sides shall be square with the top and the bottom within 0.002 in. The V-grooves shall be 45° each side of the center perpendicular plane for all grades. When specified, Grade B or C blocks shall be furnished with tolerances as specified for Grade A blocks.

When the V-blocks are provided in matched sets, they shall be clearly marked to identify them as such and shall be identical to each other within 0.0002 in. on all critical features.

V-Block Design.—Each V-block shall have a 90° V-groove 45° from center perpendicular plane cut lengthwise on the top, or top and end, or top and bottom, for the type specified. A slot shall be provided at the apex of the V-groove for chip relief. The exception being with the Type III V-blocks which shall be furnished without the chip relief unless otherwise specified.

When V-blocks are furnished in "matched pairs" they shall be marked to readily identify them as a pair. Clamping grooves shall be provided along the full length of the sides of Styles 1 and 2 blocks for engaging the clamps.

Clamps.—The clamps shall consist essentially of a yoke and one or two screws for the style specified, and shall be of a size to accommodate the maximum size round stock specified in the respective tables. The Clamp shall be made of good quality steel or iron and sufficiently robust to provide adequate support and security of the work piece in the V-block during drilling and grinding operations. When engaged in the clamping grooves, the clamp should not extend past the side faces of the block. When provided with matched sets the clamp shall be applicable to either member of the set. The screws for the clamping device shall be right handed thread conforming to ANSI/ASME B1.2 or FED-STD-H28.

Yokes.—Yokes shall be made of good quality steel or iron and sufficiently robust to provide adequate support and security of the work piece in the V-block during drilling and grinding operations and should not extend past the side faces of the block. V-block and yoke screws for Type 1 Style 3 shall be threaded in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.2 or FED-STD-H28 or the equivalent and shall be a Class 2 fit. When the yoke is in place it shall bisect the 90° V-groove. The yokes when engaged in the clamping grooves shall stand in an upright position.

Yokes for the style 3 blocks shall have a slot on each end to engage the two adjusting screws. The yoke shall be designed so that the pads bisect the 90° V-groove to allow the yoke to secure stock that does not extend above the V-groove. When inverted the yoke shall be able to secure stock of the maximum size specified.

Screws.—All screws shall be made of steel of such quality as to withstand hard usage. Screw heads shall be knurled and provided with a hole through the center for tightening with a pin or rod. All screws shall conform to the ANSI/ASME B1.2 or FED-STD-H28 or equivalent and shall be a class 2 fit.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type 1, Style 2.—Type 1 V-blocks are of the single V type. The Style 2 V-block shall have two clamping grooves on each side to accommodate clamping from minimum to the full range of the capacity of the V-groove. The block shall be similar to Fig. 2 and conform to the dimensions shown in Table 1. Style 2 V-blocks can be furnished in matched pairs and the clamps shall be suitable for use with either V-block.

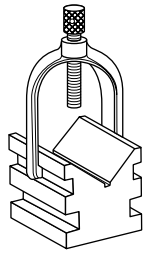


Fig. 2. Type 1, Style 2

Table 1. Accuracy and Dimensions, Type 1, Style 2

Grade and Designating Size		Permitted Deviations (inch)					
		Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Sides	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance over "V" Length
Grade A	1	0.00015	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
	2	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B	1	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
	2	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001

Grades A & B Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	3.000	2.500	2.500	2.500
2	2.500	3.000	2.000	2.000

All dimensions are in inches.

Type 1, Style 3.—Style 3, reversible clamping yoke. Style 3 blocks shall be similar to Fig. 3, conform to dimensions and accuracies shown in Table 2 for the sizes specified and be designed to facilitate clamping to a machine table or plate. The top surface shall have 4 drilled and tapped holes, one near each corner, to accommodate the yoke screws. If the blocks are furnished in matched pairs the yokes and screws shall be suitable for use with either block of the matched pair.

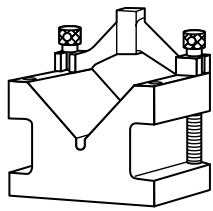


Fig. 3. Type 1, Style 3
Machinists' Table Block with Yoke

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Accuracy and Dimensions, Type 1, Style 3 Machinists' Table Block

Designating Size	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grade A	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grade A	• Up to 6.375" • Surface finish NTE 32 µin • Steel alloy or mild steel • Material hardness 40 to 62 RC					
Grade B	• Up to 6.375" • Surface finish NTE 63 µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel / 200–280 BHN cast steel • Mild steel or fine grained cast steel					

Grades A & B Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	1.375	1.375	1.125	0.75
2	2.125	2.375	1.875	1.500
3	2.250	2.9375	1.9375	2.000
4	2.875	4.000	2.875	3.000
5	6.000	6.000	6.000	4.500
6	8.000	8.000	8.000	6.375

All dimensions are in inches.

Type 1, Style 4, Magnetic Clamping Blocks.—Style 4, magnetic clamping blocks shall be similar to Fig. 4 and conform to the dimensions and accuracies shown in Table 3. Magnetic clamping V-blocks shall be either made of mild steel laminated with brass or an assembly of mild steel with an embedded magnetic core that can be disengaged to allow positioning of work piece. Style 4 magnetic clamping blocks shall have a ground finish on the sides, top, bottom, and V-grooves.

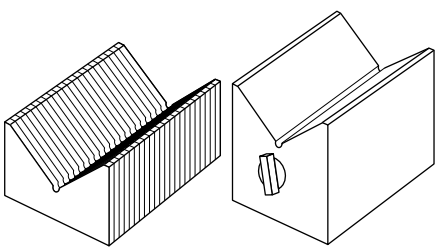


Fig. 4. Type 1, Style 4
Magnetic Clamping V Blocks

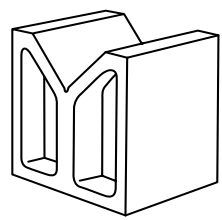


Fig. 5. Type 1, Style 5
Ribbed without Clamps

Type 1, Style 5, Ribbed without Clamps.—The Style 5 block shall be designed without clamping capability for the work piece. The block shall be similar in design to Fig. 5 and conform to the dimensions and accuracies shown in Table 4. The Style 5 block shall be of ribbed design to provide strength with light weight. There may be lightening holes in the webbing section to reduce weight without affecting the performance capabilities. The Style 5 block shall be of a design as to facilitate clamping to a machine table or plate.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Accuracy and Dimensions for Type 1, Style 4 Magnetic Clamping V-Block

Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of opposite faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching tolerance
Grades A, B	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade C	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grade A, B	• Up to 2.125" • Mild steel with embedded magnetic core, or laminated mild steel with brass • Surface finish NTE 32µin • Material hardness for mild steel 50–62 RC					
Grade C	• Up to 2.125" • Mild steel with embedded magnetic core, or laminated mild steel with brass • Surface finish NTE 63µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC Steel					

All Grades, Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	1.750	2.375	1.875	2.125
2	2.375	1.875	1.750	1.625
3	2.500	2.500	1.750	2.250
4	3.750	2.375	1.750	2.125

All dimensions in inches.

Due to the nature of the material, special consideration has been given to the granite V-blocks and the general recommended dimensions are given in Table 4. Higher accuracy granite V-blocks are commercially available and manufacturers' tolerances apply.

Table 4. Accuracy and Dimensions for Type 1, Style 5 Ribbed without Clamps

Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grades A, B	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade C	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grades A, B	• Up to 10.500" • Mild Steel or close grained cast steel free from porosity and defects • Surface finish NTE 63 µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel					
Grade C	• Up to 10.500" • Mild Steel or close grained cast steel free from porosity and defects • Surface finish NTE 63 µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel					

All Grades, Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	2.250	4.000	4.000	3.000
2	3.500	4.000	4.000	3.000
3	5.000	6.000	6.000	4.875
4	8.000	8.000	8.000	6.500
5	10.000	10.000	10.000	8.500
6	12.000	12.000	12.000	10.500

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type 1, Style 6, Plain, without Clamps.—Type 1, Style 6 V-block shall be designed similar to the style shown in Fig. 6 and conform to the dimensions and accuracies described in Table 5. The Style 6 block shall be designed plain with a chip relief at the apex of the V-groove. The block shall be furnished in a set of three suitable for general machine shop use.

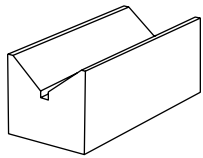


Fig. 6. Type 1, Style 6
General Machine Shop Support V-Block

Table 5. Type 1, Style 6
General Machine Shop Support V-Block

Grade and Designating Size	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Sides	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance over "V" Length
Grade A						
1	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
2	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B						
1	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
2	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001

All Grades, Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	2.92	1.57	1.57	0.160 to 1.50
2	3.93	1.77	1.77	0.236 to 1.70
3	5.90	2.16	2.16	0.315 to 2.10
4	7.87	2.75	2.75	0.315 to 2.70
5	9.84	3.34	3.34	0.475 to 3.30
6	11.81	4.13	4.13	0.600 to 4.10

All dimensions in inches.

Type II, Double V-Blocks.—The Type II, Double V-Blocks shall be designed to incorporate two V-grooves, as in Fig. 7a, Fig. 7b, and Fig. 7c, on one block machined on opposite sides, and both conforming to the dimensions and accuracies shown in Table 6. Nominal dimensions shown in Table 6 do not encompass all configurations available but define the tolerances that need to be adhered to and define the design parameters. In the case that the design furnishes two V-grooves of different sizes, the accuracy tolerances of the larger size shall apply to both.

The Type II, Double V-Block shall be furnished individually or in matched pairs and shall conform to Grade A or Grade B accuracy tolerances and shall come furnished with a clamp or clamps sufficiently robust to enable adequate security of work piece during average drilling or grinding operations. If furnished in matched pairs the clamps shall be usable on either member of the matched set. The clamps shall be designed to engage a single clamping groove along the outer face of the block.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type II, Style 1 Double Groove Examples

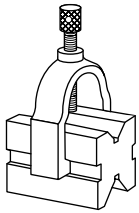


Fig. 7a. Double Groove Single Level Clamping

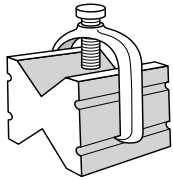


Fig. 7b. Double Groove Double Level Clamping

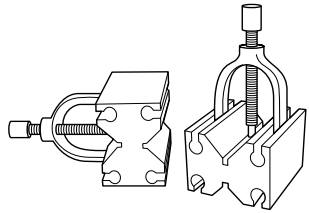


Fig. 7c. Double Groove Single Level Clamping

Table 6. Type II, Style 1
Double Groove Single Level Clamping

Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grade A	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grade A	• Steel alloy • Surface finish NTE 32µin • Material hardness 50–62 RC					
Grade B	• Mild steel or high grade cast steel • Surface finish NTE 63µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel / 200–280 BHN cast steel					

Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	1.625	1.250	1.250	1.000
2	2.000	1.500	1.500	1.500

All dimensions in inches.

Type III, Quadruple V-Groove Block.—The Type III, Quadruple Groove Block shall have four V-grooves, one on each of the four sides. This type shall be furnished in Grade A or B. Grade A shall be of a steel alloy and conform to the dimensions and accuracy tolerances defined in Table 7.

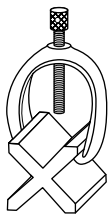


Fig. 8. Type III, Style 1 Quadruple V-Block

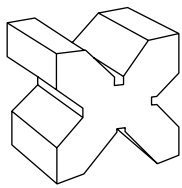


Fig. 9. Type III, Style 2 Quadruple V-Block

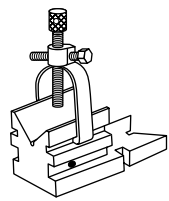


Fig. 10. Type IV, Style 1 Combination Top and End V-Block

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The Grade B Type III shall be of fine grained cast steel and conform to the dimensions and tolerances defined in Table 8. The nominal dimensions referenced in Table 7 and Table 8 do not represent the full extent of options available. Tolerances are defined as the minimum acceptable. Higher accuracy V-blocks of the Type III Style 1 and 2 may be available.

Table 7. Type III, Style 1
Quadruple V-Groove Block

Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grade A	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B	0.0004	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.002	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grade A	• Steel alloy • Surface finish NTE 32µin • Material hardness 50–62 RC					
Grade B	• Mild steel or high grade cast steel • Surface finish NTE 63µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel / 200–280 BHN cast steel					

Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	2.000	1.500	1.500	1.125

All dimensions in inches

Type III, Style 2, Quadruple V-Block.—Type III, Style 2, Quadruple V-Block is designed for a robust precision support of the work piece. This style V-block is not furnished with clamp or yoke and may be made of either mild steel or fine grain cast steel. The Type III, Style 2 block may be designed with uniform V-groove capability or a range of capacities. The tolerance of the Style 2 V-block will conform to those shown in Table 8, however the nominal dimensions and accuracies referenced in Table 8 do not represent the full extent of options available. Manufacturers' tolerances are always applied.

Table 8. Type III, Style 2
Quadruple V-Block

Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grade A	0.0003	0.0005	0.0005	0.0003	0.0003	0.0002
Grade B	0.0005	0.001	0.001	0.0012	0.0012	0.001
Grade Characteristics						
Grade A	• Steel alloy • Surface finish NTE 32µin • Material hardness 50–62 RC					
Grade B	• Mild steel or high grade cast steel • Surface finish NTE 63 µin • Material hardness 40–45 RC steel / 200–280 BHN cast steel					

All Grades, Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions			
	Length (mm)	Height (mm)	Width (mm)	Maximum Capacity (mm)
1	95	70	35	20 × 1 – 30 × 1 – 40 × 1 – 50 × 1
2	100	100	30	20 × 1 – 30 × 1 – 40 × 1 – 50 × 1
3	120	120	35	30 × 1 – 40 × 1 – 50 × 1 – 60 × 1
4	120	120	60	30 × 1 – 40 × 1 – 50 × 1 – 60 × 1
5	150	150	75	40 × 1 – 50 × 1 – 60 × 1 – 70 × 1
6	200	200	100	60 × 1 – 70 × 1 – 80 × 1 – 100 × 1

Dimensions of deviations are in inches; Nominal dimensions are in mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type IV, Combination Top and End V-Groove Block.—The Type IV, Combination Top and End V-Groove Block shall be furnished in individual blocks consisting of one block, one clamp and one securing screw which is similar to the design illustrated in Fig. 10. The V-block shall be so designed that when turned on side or end that there shall be no interference from the sliding clamp. One end of the block shall be stepped and this end shall contain a V-groove and clamping grooves at right angle to the base. The blocks shall be designed to facilitate clamping to a machine bed or plate and have two tapped holes in the base and one on each side for mounting purposes.

Style 1, Single Level Clamping.—The Type IV, Style 1 Block shall be similar in design to the one shown in Fig. 10 and shall conform to the dimensions and tolerances as defined in Table 9. The Type IV, Style 1 shall be offered in Grade A configuration. Grade A tolerance shall be applied to the perpendicular secondary V-groove as it is to the primary V-groove.

Table 9. Combination Top and End V-Groove Block

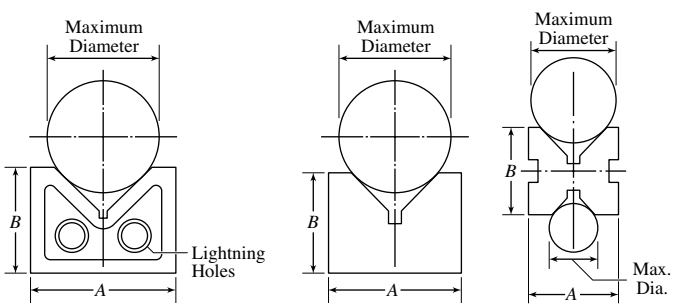
Grade	Permitted Deviations (inch)					
	Flatness of Working Faces	End/Side Square to Base	Parallelism of Opposite Faces	Parallelism of "V" to Base and Side	"V" Centrality	Matching Tolerance
Grade A	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002	0.0003	0.0003	N/A
Characteristics	• Steel alloy • Surface finish NTE 32µin • Material hardness 50–62 RC					

Designating Size	Nominal Dimensions (inch)			
	Length	Width	Height	Maximum Capacity
1	3.625	1.875	1.875	1.3125

All dimensions in inches

Metric Products.—Products manufactured to metric dimensions (SI units) shall be considered on an equal basis with those manufactured to the inch units, providing they fall within the applicable tolerance conversions. The British Standard BS 3731:1987 provides specific requirements for hollow or solid, single or double V-groove blocks made from cast iron or steel, and solid V-blocks made from granite. Two grades of accuracy are defined, Grade 1 and Grade 2. Provisions are made for matched sets as well.

British Standard V-Block Designs, *BS 3731*



Cast Iron Hollow V-Block[a] Solid V-Block[a] Double V-Block[a]

[a] Length C (side view) not shown.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Accuracy of Grade 1 and Grade 2 V-Blocks, *BS 3731:1987*

Designating Size, mm	Permitted Deviations							
	Flatness of Working Faces, µm	End and Side Faces, Squareness to the Base, µm	Parallelism of Opposite Faces, µm	Parallelism of "V" Axis to Base and Side Faces, µm	Squareness of "V" Axis to End Face, µm	Equality of "V" Flank Angle, minutes	"V" Centrality, µm	Matching Tolerance over "V" Length, µm
Grade 1								
20	2	4	4	2	2	1	4	2
25	2	4	4	2	2	1	4	2
40	3	6	6	4	4	1	6	3
50	3	6	6	4	4	1	6	3
63	4	8	8	6	6	1	8	4
75	5	10	10	8	8	1	10	5
80	5	10	10	8	8	1	10	5
85	5	10	10	8	8	1	10	5
100	6	12	12	10	10	1	12	6
125	8	16	16	14	14	1	16	8
160	10	20	20	18	18	1	20	10
200	12	24	24	22	22	1	24	12
Grade 2								
20	6	8	8	8	8	2	6	4
25	6	10	10	10	10	2	8	4
40	8	14	14	14	14	2	10	6
50	8	14	14	14	14	2	10	6
63	12	26	26	26	26	2	18	8
75	16	34	34	34	34	2	22	10
80	16	34	34	34	34	2	22	10
85	16	34	34	34	34	2	22	10
100	18	38	38	38	38	2	24	12
125	24	40	40	40	40	2	24	16
160	26	42	42	42	42	2	26	20
200	28	46	46	46	46	2	28	24

Note: Intermediate sizes should be made to the accuracy specified for the next smaller designated size. Double V-blocks should be made to the accuracy specified for the larger designating size.

Recommended General Dimensions for Steel, Cast Iron, and Granite V-Blocks *BS 3731*

Max Dia., mm	Width *A*, mm	Height *B*, mm	Length *C*, mm	Max Dia., mm	Width *A*, mm	Height *B*, mm	Length *C*, mm
Cast Iron Hollow V-Block				Solid Steel or Cast Iron			
63	80	60	35	40	50	40	25
80	100	75	40	85	100	70	50
100	130	90	45	Solid Granite V-Block			
125	150	100	50	50	75	75	75
160	180	130	60	75	100	100	100
200	220	160	70	85	150	150	150
Double V-Block				125	200	200	200
20 and 25	32	32	42				
20 and 40	40	40	50				

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calibration of V-Blocks

Calibration Description.—Calibration of the V-block shall be accomplished at intervals determined by either National Conference of Standards Laboratories (NCSL) Recommended Practices found in RP-1 "Establishment and Adjustment of Calibration Intervals" or the responsible facilities Quality Assurance Manual. Calibration intervals are designed to provide an acceptable level of assurance to adherence to original manufacturer's specifications. Calibration of all precision measurement equipment is critical to providing measurement assurance to the quality system and maintaining a sound, robust manufacturing process and quality system.

Table 11. Tolerance Limits per Grade

Test Instrument (TI) Characteristics	Range	Performance Specification for Accuracy	Test Method
Ends/sides Squareness To Each Other	Up to 5 in.	Grade A – 200 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	Verified with Electronic Indicator
	Over 5 in.	Grade A – 500 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	
Parallelism of V to Base	Up to 5 in.	Grade A – 300 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	
	Over 5 in.	Grade A – 500 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	
V Centrality	Up to 5 in.	Grade A – 300 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	
	Over 5 in.	Grade A – 500 µin Grade B – 0.002 in.	
Flatness of Working Faces		Grade A – 100 µin Grade B – 500 µin	
Matching Tolerance	Less than 6.00 in.	Grade A – 200 µin Grade A – 300 µin	
	Over 6.00 in.	Grade B – 500 µin	

Note: Tolerances listed in Table 11 are a representation of the standard tolerances recommended by the GGG-V-191D -1971, AFMETCAL (Air Force Metrology & Calibration Program) and general commercial manufacturing. Be advised that not all features are calibrated on all types and styles of V-blocks. Manufacturer's tolerances shall be applied when provided. The actual use of the V-block should be taken into consideration when selecting the features to be calibrated.

Table 12. Equipment Requirements

Item	Minimum Use Specifications	Calibration Equipment Examples
Surface Plate	Range: 24 × 36 inch, Grade AA, 100 µin overall Flatness	Per Fed Spec GGG-P-463
Electronic Indicator	Range: ±0.010, Accuracy: ±0.00001 in.	Mahr-Federal, Model 832 Digital Electronic Amplifier w/ EHE-2056 LVDT
Precision Cylindrical Gage	Range: 0.5 in. dia. × 3 in L; Accuracy: Class XX	Van Keuren, Extra Length Reversible Plug Gage
	Range: 1.00 in dia. × 2 in. L; Accuracy: Class XX	Van Keuren, Reversible Plug Gage
Granite Master Square	Range: 9 in. L × 12 in. H × 3 in. W Accuracy: Grade AA 25µin/6 in.	L.S.Starrett Granite Tri-Square
Squarol	Range: 0.375 in. to 5.00 in	Squarol Squareness Checker Model #700
Sine Plate	Range: 6 × 6 inch; Accuracy: ±200 µin	Taft Pierce Model 9123-1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **Equipment Requirements**

Item	Minimum Use Specifications	Calibration Equipment Examples
Alternative Equipment Requirements		
SquareMaster	Range: 0 in. to 12 in.; Accuracy ±50 µin over 12.00 in.	PMC/Mercury SquareMaster Model VSQ-12
Master Square	Range 3 in. W × 5 in. L × 12 in. H	SquareMaster Master Square
Cylindrical Square	Range to fit max diameter of UUT. (*Example:* 5 in. × 12 in.); Accuracy: 100 µin	Taft Pierce Model 9143

Preliminary Operations.—Review and become familiar with the entire procedure before proceeding with the calibration process. Alternative standards may be substituted for the ones listed in Table 12. Equipment Requirements. Thorough consideration must be paid to the *Accuracy Ratio*, *Total Accuracy Ratio (TAR)*, and *Measurement Uncertainties* introduced when substituting standards. Some standards represented do not offer a 4:1 TAR. If this is an unacceptable condition according to your particular quality assurance system then measures must be taken to calculate the uncertainty and introduce this into your uncertainty budget, or determine the acceptable tolerance limits through *Guard Banding* or similar method to satisfy the requirements of your quality system.

- Allow all the components to stabilize a minimum of 4 hours to the temperature of the calibration area before beginning the procedure.
- Clean and closely inspect all critical surfaces for nicks and burrs. Carefully stone with fine hard Arkansas stone to remove any incursions.
- Turn on electronic indicator and allow to warm up for a minimum of 30 minutes before proceeding.

Calibration Procedure

Note: Document the results of all measurements and tests for future reference, Trend Analysis, Root Cause Analysis or Calibration Interval Adjustment.

Sides Square To Each Other.—1) Set up equipment as shown in Fig. 11.

a) Special attention must be paid to establishing ZERO indication at the height of the V-block (UUT or Unit Under Test) sides to be measured. The SQUAROL (squareness checker) is rotated so the crest of the radius is indicated by the lowest reading on the Electronic Indicator. Plus and Minus travel must be available on the indicator head.

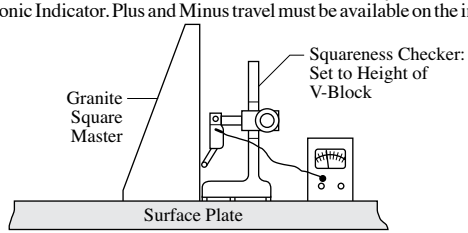


Fig. 11.

2) Set the electronic indicator to the appropriate range to measure the Squareness of the Side A of the UUT.

a) ±0.0002 in. for Grade A. (±0.0005 over 5 in.)
b) ±0.002 in. for Grade B (or C)

3) Set the gage head of the electronic indicator against the granite square master at the appropriate height to measure side A of the UUT at approximately 90% of it vertical height. Rotate the Squarol to seek the lowest indication. Using the fine adjust of the Squarol to bring the reading close to the zero indication. Assure that plus and minus travel can be realized.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4) Zero the indicator with the electronic fine adjust to set the final zero indication.

5) Remove the granite square master and replace with the UUT (Side A) as shown in Fig. 12. Side A is determined arbitrarily, but once established, must be maintained throughout the procedure to determine the relationship of all sides to each other.

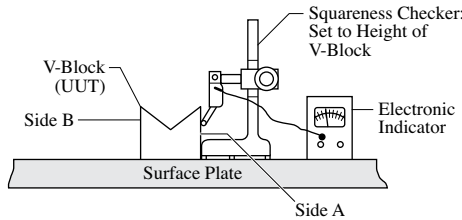


Fig. 12.

6) Rotate the Squarol to seek the lowest indication. Verify that the indication is within the tolerance limits for the UUT as defined in Table 11. Record the indication as Side A to Base Squareness.

7) It may be necessary to place a parallel bar or right-angle iron behind the UUT to secure the UUT in place while obtaining indication. This will not affect the accuracy of the measurement as long as the measurement is repeatable and consistent.

8) Reverse the UUT and repeat Items 1) through 6) for Side B. Record indication as Side B to Base Squareness.

9) Rotate UUT 90° clockwise and repeat Item 6) and record indication as End A to Base Squareness.

10) Rotate UUT 180° clockwise and repeat Item 6) and record indication as End B to Base Squareness.

11) The End measurements will not be applicable to all styles and types due to design features. In that case disregard Items 8) and 9).

12) Rotate the UUT so that Side A is down and the indication is of Base to Side A.

13) Repeat Items 6) through 9) for remaining three sides (End A, End B, Top)

14) Rotate the UUT so that Side B is down and the indication is of Base to Side B.

15) Rotate the UUT so End A is down and the indication is Base to End A.

16) Repeat Items 6) through 9)for remaining three sides. (Side A, Side B Top)

17) Repeat process for End B if applicable.

18) All readings must be within limits defined in Table 11.

Parallelism of V to Base.—1) Select the appropriate size precision cylindrical gage or cylindrical square for the UUT being calibrated. The appropriate size gage should contact the V-groove near the center of the working surface. Leave approximately half the length of the cylindrical gage extended over one end of the UUT as shown in Fig. 13.

Note: Larger V-blocks will require the use of cylindrical squares of various diameters to accomplish the engagement at the center of the working surface. Special care should be taken in handling these precision standards to avoid nicking or damaging the fine lapped surfaces. Adaptation of the methods used herein can be made to accomplish the calibration of larger V-blocks without reducing confidence levels associated with the readings taken.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

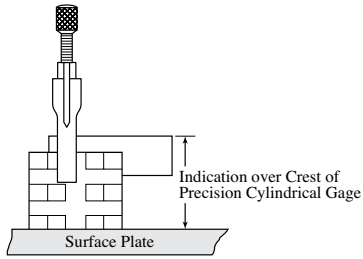


Fig. 13. V-Block with Cylindrical Gage Installed

2) Place the contact point on top of the cylindrical gage as close as possible and directly above the end of the V-block. Seek the top of the cylinder by sweeping across the radius and observing the maximum indication.
3) Zero the electronic indicator at the high point of the sweep.
4) Move the gage head to the end of the cylindrical gage. Indicate the peak of the radius and note the reading.
5) Rotate the cylindrical gage or square 180° and repeat Items 2) through 4).
6) Do not adjust the zero setting of the electronic indicator from Item 5).
Note: If the cylindrical gage or cylindrical square being used covers $^{3}/_{4}$ of the V-groove then Gage or Square does not have to be moved to the other end.
7) Remove the cylindrical gage or cylindrical square being used and place it on the opposite end of the V-groove with the same end facing out.
8) Place the contact point on top of the cylindrical gage as close as possible and directly above the end of the V-block. Seek the top of the Cylinder by sweeping across the radius and observing the maximum indication. Note this reading.
9) Move the gage head to the end of the cylindrical gage. Indicate the peak of the radius and note the reading.
10) Rotate the cylindrical gage or square 180° and repeat Items 8) through 9) retaining the original zero setting position.
11) Record the largest reading found as the maximum error of Parallelism of V to Base. Reading shall fall within the Tolerance Limits defined in Table 11.
12) Lay UUT on Side A and perform Items 1) through 11) to calibrate Parallelism of V-Groove to Side A.
13) Lay UUT on Side B and perform Items 1) through 11) to calibrate Parallelism of V-Groove to Side B.
14) Repeat Items 1) through 13) for V-groove opposite and all remaining V-grooves if unit is Type 2, Style 1; Type 3, Style 1 or 2; or Type 4, Style 1.
a) Double V-Groove Block Tolerance is to be derived from the tolerance of the larger of the two V-grooves.
b) The Type III Style 2 Quadruple V-Block is generally produced in the B Grade and the applicable tolerance shall be applied to all V-grooves inclusive. Grade A tolerances shall apply to all V-grooves in a Grade A Quadruple Type III Style 2 regardless of the size of the V-groove unless otherwise specified by the manufacturer.
15) If V-blocks are a matched pair the maximum deviation between the members may not exceed the tolerance limits as defined in Table 11.
16) All dimensions must be indicated in matched sets.
17) Place both members of the set side by side on the surface plate with the V-groove up as shown in Fig. 14. The clamp or yoke is not installed for this measurement.
18) Place the contact point at the upper left corner of V-Block 1 and zero the indicator at that point.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

19) Indicate the top surface of the V-block and confirm the flatness of the block. If there are any erroneous readings, immediately check the V-block base for nicks or burrs that could be affecting the reading. Gently remove nicks or burrs with a hard Arkansas stone.

20) Move the contact point to V-Block 2. Do not change the zero setting and indicate the top surface of V-Block 2 and confirm that the readings are within the tolerance limits as defined in Table 11 for matched sets.

21) Rotate the UUT set so that Side A is now on the surface plate and place the contact point in the same relative position as with the TOP measurement.

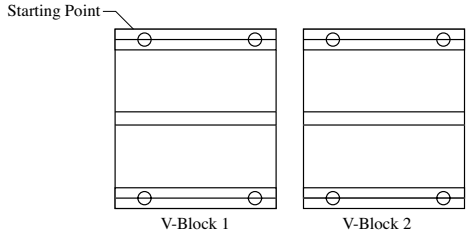


Fig. 14. Matched V-Block Setup TOP VIEW

22) Indicate the entire surface of V-Block 1, once again observing for any abnormalities that may indicate a nick or burr on the side opposite.

23) Move the contact point to the starting point on V-Block 2 and observe the deviation from the zero setting. Indicate the entire surface of V-Block 2 and note the maximum deviation from zero.

24) Verify that all readings are within the tolerance limits as defined in Table 11.

25) Rotate the UUT set so that the TOP is now on the surface plate.

26) Place the contact point in the same relative starting position as previously used. If the V-Block Set has a lapped or flat ground surface, indicate the entire surface observing any abnormalities and deviations in accordance with the tolerance table. If the UUT has a double rail supporting system, only indicate the sections that come into contact with the surface plate under normal use.

27) Move the contact point to V-Block 2 starting point and observe the initial deviation from zero. Indicate the applicable surface area and verify that all deviations are within the tolerance limits as defined in Table 11.

28) Rotate the UUT set to the final side and repeat Items 21) through 24).

29) Place UUT set on End A and repeat Items 21) through 24).

30) Place UUT set on End B and repeat Items 21) through 24).

V-Groove Centrality.—1) The V-Groove Centrality is not calibrated in all types and styles. Centrality of the V-Groove is only applicable if the V-block can be set on its side with no interference when the clamp or yoke is installed.

a) Precision granite V-blocks are generally produced in laboratory grade accuracies and require special attention in handling to avoid damage to the standards and V-blocks.

b) Type 1 Style 5 are sometimes large and require special care in handling due to the weight of the UUT and the size of the standard use in this calibration. Care must be taken when securing a large cylindrical square into the V-groove so no nicks or burrs are raised in the lapped surface.

2) Using the same cylindrical gage or cylindrical square as in *Parallelism of V to Base*: Items through 13), lay the UUT on Side A as shown in Fig. 15.

3) Place the contact point on top of the cylindrical gage close to the end of the V-block. Seek the top of the Cylinder by sweeping across the radius and observing the maximum indication. Zero the electronic indicator.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4) Without disturbing the position of the cylindrical gage mounted in the V-groove, rotate the setup over and lay the UUT on Side B.

5) Place the contact point on top of the cylindrical gage as close as possible to the same distance from the end of the V-block as in Item 3). Seek the top of the cylinder by sweeping across the radius and observing the maximum indication. This reading must be within the tolerance limits defined in Table 11.

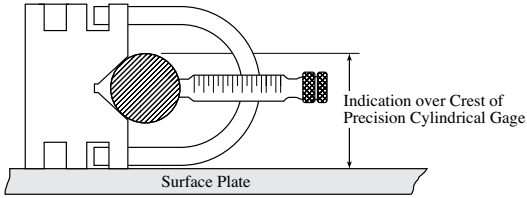


Fig. 15. V-Block Indicate Side A

6) Rotate the cylindrical gage 180° and repeat Items 2) through 5). This reading must be within the tolerance limits defined in Table 11.

7) Repeat the process for the opposite end, and for each remaining V-groove on the UUT.

8) If the UUT is a matched set, the maximum deviation must not exceed the limits for matched sets as defined in Table 11.

Flatness of Working Surfaces.—1) Place UUT onto sine plate as shown in Fig. 16 and seat well against the end bar. Assure that no nicks or burrs are present on either the plate or end bar that could affect the reading.

2) Set up the Sine Plate to an angle of 45°

3) Place the contact point of the electronic indicator into the V-groove at the upper left position of the first line as shown in the **Top View of Surface** of Fig. 16 and zero the electronic indicator at this position.

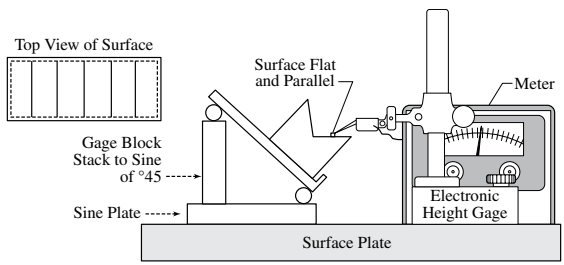


Fig. 16. Flatness of Working Surface Set Up

4) Sweep the surface along the lines shown from the throat of the V-groove to the outer edge Left to Right (or End A to End B)

5) Verify that all readings are within the tolerance limits as defined in Table 11.

6) Rotate the V-block so the side opposite is now parallel to the surface plate and repeat Items 3) through 5), working from End B to End A.

7) Record all readings on a permanent record and retain for use by the QA system.

8) Remove all standards. Clean and return to protected storage condition. Remove UUT from set up and store in appropriate protective containers or stations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Parallel Bars

Parallel bars are used for workpiece support during layout, machining, and inspection operations. Parallel bars are made from either steel, cast iron, or granite, come in a wide range of sizes and are either used alone or in matched pairs. In general, there are four types of parallel bars: Type I, Solid; Type II, Ribbed; Type III, Box; Type IV, Adjustable. Although the parallel bar is a relatively simple tool, it is still considered a precision instrument and must be handled with the same attention to care and handling as other precision ground and finished supporting gages. Most precision parallels are made from heat-treated steel and hardened to 55 to 60 on the C Rockwell scale. Generally, they have a finish of 8 µin Ra with a fine finish free from all grind marks, chatter, or cracks. Granite parallel bars are also very desirable in an environment where thermal expansion is a consideration or where steel or cast iron would not be acceptable. Granite parallel bars are made to a very high degree of accuracy and can be used in a precision inspection setup.

Type I, Solid.—Type I parallel bars are designed to be used independently as an individual bar to aid in inspection setups. They can be used as a reference surface or to establish a vertical plane perpendicular to a base plane. They can also be used as an extended support plane, when used in matched pairs, to establish an elevated plane that is parallel to the base plane. Type I parallel bars have four finished sides that shall not vary from a true plane by more than 0.0002 inch per foot (0.005mm/300mm). The adjacent sides will be square to each other within 0.0005 inch (0.012mm). Type I parallel bars will appear similar to Fig. 1 and will meet the tolerance specifications stated in Table 1.

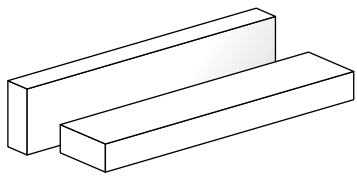


Fig. 1. Parallel Bars, Type 1, Solid

Table 1. Steel and Cast-Iron Parallel Bar Tolerances, Inch Sizes

Size[a]	Tolerance Limits			Width/Height Variance Matched Pairs (in.)
	Straightness (in.)	Parallelism (in.)	Width/Height (in.)	
Inch Sizes				
(in.)	(in.)	(in.)	(in.)	(in.)
1/8 to 3/16	0.002	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002
1/4 to 3/4	0.0005	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002
3/4 to 1 1/8	0.0002	0.0001	0.0002	0.0002
1 1/8 to 1 1/2	0.0002	0.00015	0.0003	0.0003
1 1/2 to 3	0.0002	0.0002	0.0004	0.0004
Millimeter Sizes				
(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)
3 to 5	0.0500	0.0025	0.0050	0.0050
6 to 20	0.0130	0.0025	0.0050	0.0050
20 to 25	0.0050	0.0025	0.0050	0.0050
25 to 35	0.0050	0.0040	0.0080	0.0080
35 to 75	0.0050	0.0050	0.0100	0.0100

[a] Size as applicable to either width or height dimension specified by the manufacturer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Some common size configurations available from most manufacturers of Type I precision parallel bars appear in Table 2. This is a representation of sizes that are available; however, it is possible to have parallel bars custom made to a special order for a particular application. In that case, either the tolerance specifications of the engineering drawing or the specifications defined in the Federal Specification GGG-P-61a shall apply. It is at the discretion of the designing engineer which tolerances will apply in this case.

Table 2. Common Sizes of Parallel Bars

Width and Height (in.)	Length ± 0.002 (in.)	Width and Height (in.)	Length ± 0.002 (in.)	Width and Height (in.)	Length ± 0.002 (in.)
1/8 – 1	6	7/16 – 7/8	6	1/2 – 1 1/2	12
1/8 – 1 3/16	6	1/2 – 5/8	6	1/2 – 2	12
3/16 – 7/8	6	1/2 – 3/4	6	11/16 – 1 1/4	12
3/16 – 1 1/8	6	1/2 – 13/16	6	3/4 – 1	12
1/4 – 3/8	6	1/2 – 1	6	3/4 – 2	12
1/4 – 1/2	6	1/4 – 3/8	9	1 – 1 1/2	12
1/4 – 5/8	6	1/2 – 5/8	9	1 – 2	12
1/4 – 3/4	6	1/2 – 1	9	1 – 3	12
1/4 – 1	6	1/2 – 1 1/4	9	1 1/4 – 1 3/4	12
3/8 – 1/2	6	1/2 – 1 1/2	9	1 1/4 – 2 1/2	12
3/8 – 3/4	6	3/4 – 1	9	1 1/2 – 2	12
3/8 – 7/8	6	3/4 – 1 1/2	9	1 1/2 – 3	12
3/8 – 1	6	3/8 – 1	12		

Type II, Ribbed.—The Type II parallel bars are rectangular in cross section and made from a cast gray iron. The casting is ribbed to provide lightness while maintaining strength and rigidity. The ribbing on the Type II parallel bar extends to the outer surfaces of the bar and becomes an integral part of the working surface. The working surfaces of the Type II have a fine ground surface that will not exceed a value of 16 µin Ra. All the sharp edges are removed, and the surface is free from all machining marks such as grind chatter or burn. The Type II parallel bar is finished on the four sides of its length. The ends not being considered working surfaces are not finished for work applications. The Type II parallel bar is a much more rugged design that the Type I and is designed to support workpieces of larger dimensions. Type II parallel bars are commonly available in sizes up to 4 by 8 inches with a length of 36 inches. Although larger in overall size, the Type II still maintains a very close tolerance in straightness, parallelism, and squareness.

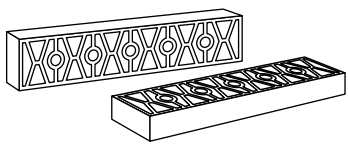


Fig. 2. Parallel Bars, Type II, Ribbed

After each bar is cast and rough ground, it is subject to a seasoning or aging process. This process can either be natural or artificial. The aging process is necessary to provide long term stability after finish grinding. Once the bar is aged and seasoned, the final dimensions will remain stable and not warp or twist for many years. Well-made and seasoned castings have been known to be in service for nearly 100 years and still hold their original geometry. Type II parallel bars will appear similar to Fig. 2 and will conform to the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tolerances defined in Table 3. Squareness and parallelism tolerances are Total Indicated Readings (TIR) over the full length of the bar.

The following table shows some common sizes that are readily available from most manufacturers of precision parallel bars. These are representative of the sizes that may be available in the general market, and almost any size or combination may be specially made for a specific application.

Table 3. Tolerance Limits for Type II - Ribbed Parallel Bars

Size	Tolerance Limits			Width/Height Variance Matched Pairs
	Straightness	Parallelism	Squareness	
Inch Sizes				
(inch)	(inch)	(inch)	(inch)	(inch)
$1\frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 24$	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
$2 \times 4 \times 24$	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
$2\frac{1}{2} \times 5 \times 24$	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
$3 \times 6 \times 36$	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
$4 \times 8 \times 36$	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005
Millimeter Sizes				
(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)
$35 \times 75 \times 600$	0.005	0.013	0.013	0.013
$50 \times 100 \times 600$	0.005	0.013	0.013	0.013
$50 \times 152 \times 600$	0.005	0.013	0.013	0.013
$75 \times 150 \times 1000$	0.005	0.013	0.013	0.013
$100 \times 200 \times 1000$	0.005	0.013	0.013	0.013

Type III, Box Parallel.—The Type III "Box" Parallel is designed to provide a wide working surface. The Type III can either be square or rectangular in cross section. The rectangular design will have a rib running through the middle of the block the entire length. This provides support to the two larger surfaces. The surfaces of all six sides will be finish ground to an average of 16 µinch Ra and all sharp edges will be removed. The ground surfaces will all be free from grind chatter marks and grind burn marks.

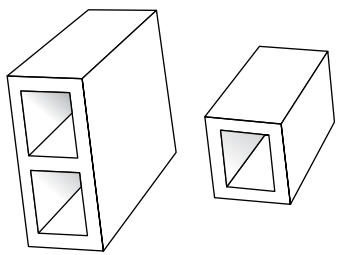


Fig. 3. Type III, Box Parallel

The Type III parallel bar, after casting and rough grinding, will be subject to a seasoning or aging process. This process can either be artificial or natural, and insures the stability of the material after the grinding process. The finished Type III parallel bars will have a material hardness of 180 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) checked with a 10mm ball and a 3000 Kg load.

Each of the six working surfaces will not vary from a true plane (straightness) by more than 0.0002 inch per foot. The opposite sides and ends will be parallel to each other within 0.0005 inch. All adjacent sides will be square to each other within 0.0005 inch as well. The

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

size as specified will also be within 0.0005 inch. The Type III box parallel will appear similar to Fig. 3. Tolerances are given in Table 4.

Table 4. Tolerance Limits for Type III Box Parallel

Size (in.)	Straightness (in.)	Squareness (in.)	Parallelism (in.)
4 × 4 × 6	0.0001	0.0005	0.0005
4 × 6 × 6	0.0001	0.0005	0.0005
5 × 8 × 12	0.0002	0.0005	0.0005
10 × 10 × 10	0.0001	0.0005	0.0005

Type IV, Adjustable Parallel.—The adjustable parallel is a precision parallel that is adjustable to any height within a specified range. This design allows a flexibility in the use of the parallel that the other designs do not possess. The adjustable parallel is made of close-grained, seasoned cast iron. After initial casting and rough machining, the members of the parallel are subject to an aging or seasoning process that can either be natural or artificial. When complete, the member will have a hardness value of no less than 87 RB on the Rockwell B scale. The final machining on the adjustable parallel shall have a finish of 16 µin Ra on the working surfaces and a 32 µin Ra on the sides. The sides of the adjustable parallel are not designed to be working surfaces.

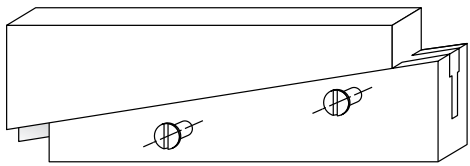


Fig. 4. Type IV, Adjustable Parallel

The adjustable parallel is made of two pieces. One piece is a fixed member machined with a dovetail slot, and the other a sliding member machined with a dovetail that fits into the slot and slides smoothly. It is this feature that gives the adjustable parallel the ability to be adjusted to any height within the range specified. The width of the bearing surface between the two members will be ½ the total thickness of the parallel. The two members are held in place and fixed by a locking screw arrangement that secures the two members and prevents them from moving or slipping after they have been set. Adjustable parallels are supplied in either individual pieces or in sets that cover a wide range. The adjustable parallel will conform to the tolerances defined in Table 5 and will appear similar to Fig. 4. A bilateral tolerance will be applied to the parallelism and flatness

Table 5. Tolerance Limits for Type IV - Adjustable Parallel

Size (range) (in.)	Length (in.)	Thickness (in.)	Parallelism (in.)	Straightness (flatness) (in.)	Lock Screws
0.375–0.500	1.750	9/32	0.0005	0.00005	1
0.500–0.6875	2.125	9/32	0.0005	0.00005	1
0.6875–0.9375	2.6875	9/32	0.0007	0.00007	1
0.9375–1.3125	3.5625	9/32	0.0007	0.00009	2
1.3125–1.750	4.1875	9/32	0.0009	0.00010	2
1.750–2.250	5.0625	9/32	0.0009	0.00012	2

Granite Parallel, High-Precision.—The granite parallel is designed for the very high precision applications where thermal or magnetic properties must be taken into consideration. The granite parallel is made with a much tighter tolerance than the cast-iron or steel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

parallels. The configuration is basically the same as the Type I solid parallel; the only difference is in the material and the tolerance limits. The granite parallel is supplied in either individual members or matched sets. Granite parallels must meet the tolerances defined in the table below and will appear similar to Fig. 1.

Table 6. Tolerance Limits - Granite Parallel

Size (in.)	Grade AA Flatness and Parallelism	Grade A Flatness and Parallelism	Grade B Flatness and Parallelism
0.5 × 1 × 6	0.000025	0.00005	0.00010
0.750 × 1 × 6	0.00003	0.00006	N/A
0.750 × 1.5 × 9	0.00004	0.00008	0.00010
1 × 2 × 12	0.00006	0.00010	N/A
1.5 × 3 × 18	0.00015	0.00030	N/A
2 × 4 × 24	0.00020	0.00040	N/A
1.5 × 4 × 30	0.00025	0.00040	N/A

Calibration, Precision Parallel Bars, Naval Air Systems and Air Force Metrology.— It is commonly understood that wear and naturally occurring damage will affect the performance of all precision measuring equipment. Identifying an out of tolerance condition before it can impact a critical measurement is the primary goal of calibration. Parallel bars are no exception to this rule. A precision-ground steel or cast-iron parallel bar may become worn or even deformed from daily wear or excessive forces applied. A granite parallel can also show evidence of wear, and, due to the extremely close tolerances applied to granite parallel bars, the monitoring of these instruments is even more critical. It is not extremely difficult to perform the calibration of the parallel bar, and it can be achieved in a relatively short period of time in a temperature-controlled environment on a clean surface plate with an electronic indicator, a height transfer standard, and a few gage blocks. The features that will be observed are flatness, parallelism, and height and width of matched pairs. The exact height and width of individual parallel bars is not a critical feature, but in this status they can only be used independently.

As an additional note, a Pratt & Whitney Supermicrometer can be used to measure the exact height and width of a set of matched parallel bars, but, in the absence of this instrument, the same results can be achieved with the instruments listed above. The uncertainty of the measurement is effectively the same, and the confidence in the results is just as high with either method.

Flatness (Straightness) Calibration Method.— In any calibration, the first steps are to ensure a clean working surface and a proper setup of the standards and measuring instruments. To that end, the first step is to clean the surface plate thoroughly with an approved surface plate cleaner and place the electronic indicator next to the working surface. The indicator should be powered up and allowed to warm up. The surface plate should be of an accuracy grade to provide a surface flatness deviation no greater than 0.00005" within the working surface that will be used. The *UUT* or *Unit Under Test* should be cleaned and, as a preliminary step to calibration, deburred with a clean ultra-fine hard Arkansas stone or gage block deburring stone. Only the edges should be stoned as this is where most burrs will occur. However, all edges, corners and surfaces should be observed to ensure that no damage or burring is present before proceeding.

For precision cast-iron or steel parallel bars, the UUT will be set up on two gage blocks of the same size and accuracy grade. A 2.000" gage block is recommended as a minimum. This will allow access to both sides of the parallel bar when taking data to determine the flatness of each side. It is important that the gage blocks are placed at the correct points to support the UUT without any sagging effect on the bar. These are called *Airy points* and are calculated by a simple formula:

$$\text{Airy point separation distance} = 0.554L, \text{where } L \text{ is the length of the UUT.}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: For a 12.00" UUT, the gage blocks should be placed 0.554 × 12.00 = 6.650 inches apart and located (12.00 – 6.650)/2 = 2.675 inches from each end, as shown in Fig. 5. This distance should be very close to the calculated distance, but it does not have to be exact. Establishing the distance using a machinists' rule within 0.100" is sufficient.

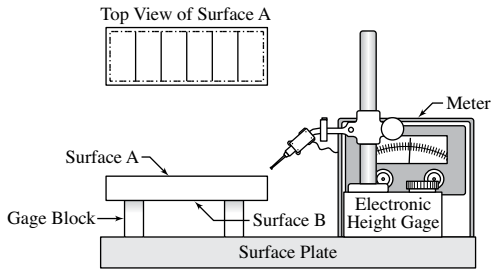


Fig. 5. Parallel Bar Flatness Setup

The UUT will be marked at five points equally spaced along the distance of each surface. The marks should be done with a felt-tipped marker or other suitable method. By general convention, the largest parallel surfaces are designated A and B. The two smaller surfaces are C and D. The markings A1 through D1 and A2 through D2 should be aligned with one another. A datasheet similar to the one shown in Table 7 should be created to collect the data and aid in the calculations of the deviations.

With the UUT placed on the gage blocks as shown, configure the electronic indicator to measure "over" and set the indicator amplifier range to ±0.0002 with a resolution of 0.00001". It is recommended, however, to begin the readings at a slightly higher range and dial the scale in to a more sensitive resolution to determine the magnitude of the error. This will keep the readings on scale. Take the final readings in the highest sensitivity scale.

Place the indicator contact point on the UUT at the A1 position and zero the amplifier. All readings will have the x1 position as the zero point (A1, B1, C1, D1). All deviations will be from this point.

Sweep the surface of the UUT, recording on the datasheet the deviation as indicated at each of the calibration points. Ensure that each point does not exceed the documented tolerance for the type, style, grade, and size of the UUT.

When Side A has been scanned, adjust the electronic indicator contact point for "Under" measurements, place the contact point at the B1 calibration point and zero the indicator amplifier. This measurement is taken from the underside of the UUT, and the data collected will be used to calculate the parallelism of the two sides A to B. Once again, sweep the surface and record the deviations of the surface at each of the designated calibration points. Verify that all readings for sides A and B are within the tolerance limits assigned to the UUT.

Parallelism will be calculated from the sum of the deviations of each side. Calculate the sum of the deviations at each calibration point for surfaces A and B. The sum of the deviations will reveal the parallelism of the two surfaces. Verify that the values calculated are within the assigned tolerances for the UUT.

Carefully move the UUT to the adjacent sides (C and D) with side C up and repeat the sequence to determine the flatness and parallelism for sides C and D. Once complete and the values have been determined to be within the assigned tolerance limits, remove the UUT from the gage blocks and place on the surface pate. If this is a matched set of parallel bars, place the second member on the gage blocks as for the first member and complete the sequence for the second member.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Calibration of Parallel Bar and Matched Parallel Bar Sets

Straightness				
Surface A	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
Zero Setting (Point 1)				
Cal Point 2				
Cal Point 3				
Cal Point 4				
Cal Point 5				
Surface B (under)	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
Zero Setting (Point 1)				
Cal Point 2				
Cal Point 3				
Cal Point 4				
Cal Point 5				
Surface C	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
Zero Setting (Point 1)				
Cal Point 2				
Cal Point 3				
Cal Point 4				
Cal Point 5				
Surface D (under)	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
Zero Setting (Point 1)				
Cal Point 2				
Cal Point 3				
Cal Point 4				
Cal Point 5				
Parallelism Calculations				
Sum Surfaces A + B	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
A2 + B2				
A3 + B3				
A4 + B4				
A5 + B5				
Sum Surfaces C + D	Nominal	As Found	As Left	Tolerance
C2 + D2				
C3 + D3				
C4 + D4				
C5 + D5				

Height and Width, Matched Sets.—The calibration of height and width of matched sets of steel or cast-iron parallel bars is a relatively simple process. Place the two parallel bars side by side on the surface plate in the same orientation, that is, with the same side up and the predefined calibration points adjacent to each other. One parallel bar will be designated as "A" and the other as "B".

Position the height transfer gage next to the parallel bars and dial the transfer gage to the dimension of the side under test. Zero the electronic indicator on the transfer gage. Pull back the indicator probe off the land of the transfer gage and then replace it onto the land and ensure the zero setting repeats. If it does not repeat, re-zero the indicator amplifier and repeat the reading. Verify the zero setting in this manner until the reading repeats three times in a row with no variation. Then move the indicator probe to the surface of the "A" parallel bar and observe the deviation from zero reading. Sweep the entire surface and verify that all readings fall within the tolerance limits defined for the type and grade under test. Return the indicator probe to the transfer gage land and confirm that the zero point has not shifted before accepting the readings observed. If the zero point has shifted, it will be necessary to repeat the zero point setup and take the readings from the parallel bar again. If the readings are acceptable, proceed to the "B" parallel bar and verify that the deviation from zero reading is within the tolerance limits defined and the deviation from the "A" block is not beyond the limits for the type and grade under test.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

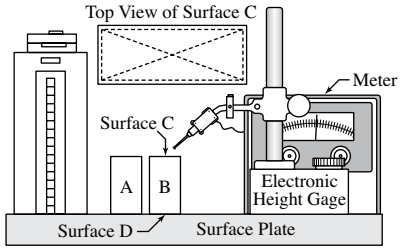


Fig. 6. Parallel Bar Matched Set, Height and Width Calibration

Size limitations for granite parallel bars are not as rigid as those for individual bars, acceptable limits for size being $\pm 1/32$ inch. However, the tolerance for size of matched sets is the same as that for steel and cast iron. The calibration procedure for granite parallel bars is the same as that for steel and cast iron.

As a final note, it should be mentioned that a Pratt & Whitney Supermicrometer can also be used to calibrate the height and width of a parallel bar or a matched set of parallel bars. The Supermicrometer is set up using a gage block or gage block stack to the precise dimension of either the height or width of the parallel bar and zeroed at that point. The gage block is then removed, and the parallel bar is set on the elevating table between the anvils of the Supermicrometer and supported by two flatted rounds. The parallel bar is then measured at the first calibration point and the reading compared to the tolerance limits to assure compliance. The bar is then measured at each remaining calibration point, verifying at each point the compliance to the tolerance limits. This same process is then completed for the "B" parallel bar in the matched set, and the values obtained in the measurement of the "A" bar are compared to assure that deviations in the matched sizes are within the tolerance limits. This method is very good for smaller parallel bar matched sets if a Supermicrometer is available.

Right-Angle Plates

Right-angle plates or knees, as they are more generally referred to, are divided into six different types as defined in Federal Specification GGG-P-441A. Right-angle plates are used in both machining applications and the setup and inspection of machined parts and assemblies. The plate material is usually high grade, fine-grained, controlled-process iron or iron alloy castings. These castings are always of uniform quality, free from blow holes, porosity or other material inconsistencies, and defects. All castings after being rough cut are stress-relieved to assure dimensional stability and become more stable as they age. With proper care and surface maintenance, angle plates can perform for many years. Fine angle plates over 50 years old are still in service.

Right-Angle Plate Grades.—Most right-angle plates are manufactured to meet the guidelines and tolerances laid out in the GGG-P-441A or IS 2554:1971 (India Standards Bureau). While these two governing documents may differ slightly, they both achieve the goal of establishing dimensional guidelines and tolerances that enable the manufacturer to produce a dependably consistent product with values and accuracies that customers require to maintain a high degree of measurement confidence in their quality systems.

Angle plates come in grades according to the surface finish that is applied and the dimensional accuracies that they are manufactured to. The assigned grade is in direct

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

correlation to the quality and accuracy of the angle plate. Federal Specification GGG-P-441A specifies three *Grades* of surface finish applied to right-angle plates. In addition, there are six distinct *Types* of angle plates that have unique properties according to their specifically designed target uses in the manufacturing process.

Grade A angle plates are the highest grade and are used in precise applications where the smallest deviation from square (90°) is required. These plates are used in various industries for clamping and holding work in a vertical position. The scraped surface is beneficial for supporting work in a very precise vertical plane and facilitating the dispersion of lubricants and coolants during the manufacturing process. Grade A plates are required to have working surfaces that are fine precision-scraped with relief spots to prevent sticking of gage blocks or precision-lapped instruments. These relief spots allow the surface to be controlled to a high degree of flatness. Each square inch of surface on a Grade A plate has 15 to 18 spotting cavities, from 0.0002" to 0.0005" deep, and a bearing surface of 20 to 40 percent. The bearing area does not deviate from the mean plane by more than 0.0001 inch in over 24 inches, and no more than 0.0002 inch in up to 60 inches, as per Table 1. No square inch may vary from the adjacent area by more than 0.0001" per square foot. The adjacent working surfaces on any Grade A angle plate shall not vary from square by more than 0.0001" in every 8". This equates to 2.5 arc seconds. These angle plates make excellent fixturing for high precision shaping, milling, grinding, drilling, or boring operations.

Table 1. Maximum Permissible Deviation of Bearing Area from Main Plane (*GGG-P-441A*)

Maximum dimension of working surface, inches		Maximum permissible deviation of bearing areas from mean plane, inch	
Above	To and including	Grades A and B	Grade C
2½	12	0.0001	0.0002
12	24		
24	36	0.0002	0.0004
36	48		0.0006
48	60		0.0008

Grade B plates are made to meet requirements of precision inspection and calibration operations. Although the style of the plate can accommodate uses in any of the manufacturing practices, the precision-ground surface finish lends itself to inspection applications on the surface plate and use in calibration laboratories, high precision inspection stations, or situations where a fine precision-ground finish is desired and the highest degree of accuracy necessary. The Grade B angle plate has a working surface that is precision ground to a roughness average value of not more that 16 microinches for plates less than 64 square inches and 32 microinches for larger plates. The precision-ground surface of the Grade B plate is well suited to the applications involved in the inspection process of high accuracy, tight tolerance, precision-made parts. The fine-ground finish offers a precise surface that does not deviate from the mean plane by more than 0.0001 inch in over 24 inches, and no more than 0.0002 inch in up to 60 inches, as per Table 1. No adjacent areas shall vary with each other by more than 0.0001 inch per square foot. The aspect that is most critical about the angle plate is the control of squareness and the ability to pass on the accuracy to the parts being machined or inspected. All adjacent working surfaces will not vary from square by more than 0.0001 inch in every 8 inches. This high degree of accuracy in the Grade A and Grade B angle plates provides the measurement assurance necessary to inspect precision parts and calibrate precision measuring instruments.

Grade C angle plates are the workhorses of the plate grades. They are designed to have a smooth machined finish and controlled to not exceed a surface roughness of 32 r.m.s. The bearing area of the working surface shall not exceed a deviation from the mean plane any greater than between 0.0002 to 0.0008 inch depending on the size of the bearing area, as per Table 1. Furthermore, no adjacent square foot may deviate from another by more than

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

0.0003 inch per square foot. This ensures that the bearing surface is tightly controlled in the graduation of allowable error and will not deviate from the mean plane beyond the allowable limits. Deviation beyond the allowable graduation limits will introduce an error in the surface flatness beyond the functional limits. This flatness deviation control enables the surface of the angle plate to support the workpiece in such a manner as not to introduce errors due to nonuniform support beneath the workpiece or squareness errors from the adjacent sides.

IS 2554:1971 Grades: Standard sizes and accuracy of angle plates specified by IS 2554:1971 (India Standards Bureau) are given in Table 2a and Table 2b.

Table 2a. Sizes and Accuracy of Slotted Angle Plates Metric Sizes (*IS 2554:1971***)**

Size (mm) $L \times B \times H$	Accuracy in Microns, µm			
	Flatness of Working Faces	Squareness of Working Faces over Dimension *H*	Parallelism of Opposite Faces & Edges over their Total Length	Squareness of End Faces with Respect to Exterior Faces as Measured over Dimension *L*
Grade 1				
150 × 100 × 125	5	10	13	13
150 × 150 × 150	5	10	13	13
175 × 100 × 125	5	13	15	15
200 × 150 × 125	8	15	18	18
250 × 150 × 175	8	15	18	18
300 × 200 × 225	8	18	20	20
300 × 300 × 300	8	18	20	20
350 × 200 × 250	8	18	20	20
450 × 300 × 350	10	18	20	20
400 × 400 × 400	10	18	20	20
600 × 400 × 450	10	20	23	23
Grade 2				
700 × 420 × 700	50	140	140	140
900 × 600 × 700				
1000 × 700 × 500				

Table 2b. Sizes and Accuracy of Slotted Angle Plates Inch Sizes (*IS 2554:1971***)**

Size (in.) $L \times B \times H$	Accuracy in Inches			
	Flatness of Working Faces	Squareness of Working Faces over Dimension H	Parallelism of Opposite Faces & Edges over their Total Length	Squareness of End Faces with Respect to Exterior Faces as Measured over Dimension L
Grade 1				
6 × 4 × 5	0.0002	0.0004	0.0005	0.0005
6 × 6 × 6	0.0002	0.0004	0.0005	0.0005
7 × 6 × 5	0.0002	0.0005	0.0006	0.0006
8 × 6 × 5	0.0003	0.0006	0.0007	0.0007
10 × 6 × 7	0.0003	0.0006	0.0007	0.0007
12 × 8 × 9	0.0003	0.0007	0.0008	0.0008
12 × 12 × 12	0.0003	0.0007	0.0008	0.0008
14 × 8 × 10	0.0003	0.0007	0.0008	0.0008
18 × 12 × 14	0.0004	0.0007	0.0008	0.0008
16 × 16 × 16	0.0004	0.0007	0.0008	0.0008
24 × 16 × 18	0.0004	0.0008	0.0009	0.0009
Grade 2				
28 × 16 × 28	0.002	0.0055	0.0055	0.0055
36 × 24 × 28				
24 × 16 × 18				

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Angle Plate Types.—The right-angle plate is further divided into *Types* and *Classes*, each type having unique characteristics and uses. Types I, II, and III angle plates or knees are intended to be used by craftsmen for ordinary machine shop operations; Types IV, V, and VI are intended to be used principally by toolmakers and for precision type work.

Type I: Class 1-Plain Right-Angle Plate and Class 2-Slotted Right-Angle Plate: The Type I Class 1 angle plate has two members with the outside surfaces at right angles to each other. Both the working surfaces and the ends are machined square to within the tolerance limits assigned to their grade, (Fig. 1a). Type I Class 2 plates are similar to Class 1 with the vertical and horizontal slots provided on one or both faces, (Fig. 1b).

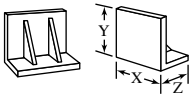


Fig. 1a. Type 1 Class 1-Plain

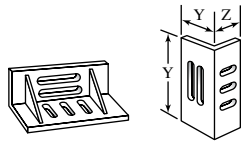


Fig. 1b. Type 1 Class 2-Slotted

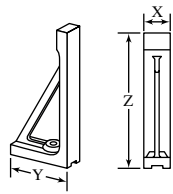


Fig. 1c. Type 1 Class 3, Measuring-Plain

All the right-angle plates of the various types have ribbing of sufficient thickness to assure maximum support for flatness, squareness, and stability. Class 1 plates of approximately 10 to 12 inches will have at least 2 ribs, those of 16 to 24 inches at least 3 ribs, and those of 36 inches and above a minimum of 4 ribs in their design.

Plates weighing over 75 pounds are designed with lifting holes in the ribbing or threaded holes for the placement of lifting eyes.

Type I, Class 3, Measuring Plane Right-Angle Plate: The Type I Class 3 angle plate, Fig. 1c, is designed to establish a measuring plane for production or inspection functions. It has two outside working surfaces that are at right angles to each other. The working surfaces are finished according to the grade specified and are the only two faces designed for functional operation. Unless specifically ordered otherwise, the sides and ends will be finish ground only, and these surfaces are not to be used to determine or establish squareness. The rib provides support between the ends of the plate and is cored out to provide a good hand gripping surface without sacrificing the stabilizing effect of the rib. The short base member "Y" is provided with a suitable hole so the plate may be bolted to the table of a machine or a tapped hole in a surface plate.

Type II, Inside Right-Angle Plate: The Type II right-angle plate is an inside right angle that is constructed with the same adherence to squareness and finish as the outside angle plates, Fig. 2. The inside angle plate is an inverted T-shaped casting formed by a base and a perpendicular member of approximately the same thickness. One side of the perpendicular, the adjacent top side of the base, and the bottom of the base are the three working surfaces and are all finished in accordance to the grade specified. The opposite ends and opposite sides are machined parallel and square to their respective working surfaces.

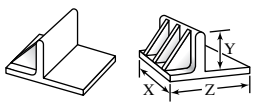


Fig. 2. Type II, Inside Right-Angle Plate

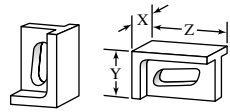


Fig. 3. Type III, Universal Right-Angle Plates

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type III, Universal Right-Angle Plate: By far the most versatile and useful right-angle plate in the machine shop is the Type III universal right-angle plate, Fig. 3. The Type III has two outside working surfaces at right angles and all adjacent sides are ground and finished to the same tolerance assigned to the main working surfaces. This provides a full range of positioning capabilities and makes the universal right angle just as accurate on its side as it is resting on its main working surface. All opposite sides are parallel within 0.0002 inch per foot. The universal right angle has a rib located between the ends that is square in configuration and provides support and stability to the main working surfaces while providing additional working surfaces that can be utilized for work support due to the accuracy assigned to the entire plate. The rib is hollowed out to provide good hand grip without sacrificing the stabilizing characteristics.

Type IV: Machinist's Adjustable Angle Plate: The Type IV adjustable angle plate, Fig. 4, is designed to allow rotation of the workpiece through 360°. The workpiece support table is adjustable from zero horizontal to 90° vertical in 10° increments. Basically, the Type IV machinist's adjustable angle plate consists of a tilting table mounted on a rotary table base. The base has heavy lugs or bolt slots to accommodate mounting the plate on machine tools. The bottom of the base is machined true flat, parallel to the top plate and square to the vertical axis. The base is the true foundation of the plate and must be manufactured to the tightest of tolerances. All accuracies extend from the craftsmanship that is put into the base work of the Type IV plate. The top of the rotary base is graduated in one degree increments for the full 360° and is marked at least every 10° for a minimum of plus and minus 90° from zero (0°). Most plates are marked around the full 360° in 10° major divisions with 1× minor divisions, permanently engraved or etched on a chrome or brightly finished face for ease of reading and maintenance. The standard rotary accuracy to which all Type IV plates are made is ±2.5 minutes, noncumulative. This tolerance maintains the accuracy ratio necessary to maintain a good measurement assurance level in your quality system.

The tilting table consists of two plates joined together at one end by a precision hinge and provided with an adjustable and positive locking mechanism. The bottom plate is attached to the base at the vertical axis. This plate will swivel through 360° freely and will also have a positive locking mechanism. The bottom of the plate is marked with a permanent line for accurate positioning in relation to the graduations on the base. The top plate is made in one piece as a casting and has T-slots milled in from the solid plate, as shown in Fig. 4.

The top plate is adjustable up to 90° and the positive locking mechanism is robust enough to secure the workpiece into position during milling, drilling, or boring operations without movement. The top plate is made with a protractor integrated into the design that is marked from 0° (horizontal) to 90° (vertical) with major scale indications at every 10°. Minor scale graduations may be indicated at 1° increments. The noncumulative error between graduations of the protractor is no greater than ±2.5 minutes, which allows for a high level of confidence in the measurements and operations made with this plate.

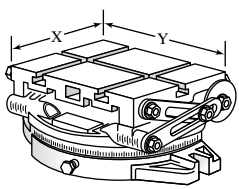


Fig. 4. Type IV, Machinist's Adjustable Angle Plate

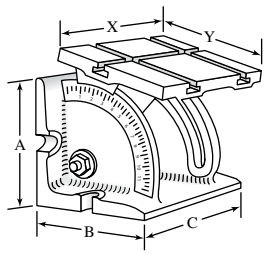


Fig. 5. Type V, Toolmaker's Adjustable Knee

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type V, Toolmaker's Adjustable Angle Plate: The toolmaker's adjustable knee or adjustable angle plate extends the capabilities of the right-angle plate and allows for precise adjustment of the support table or bearing surface from 0° (horizontal) through 90° (vertical), Fig. 5. The same tolerances in regard to flatness and squareness apply to the bearing surface and the base.

The toolmaker's adjustable knee is constructed of a plate, finished to the tolerances determined by the class specified, and a right-angle iron with two ribs. The right-angle iron and the plate are joined together by a precision hinge that has the capability to be secured at any position within the arc from 0° to 90°. The two ribs are of sufficient thickness to provide stability and support enough to withstand the forces applied during boring, milling, drilling, or grinding operations. The locking mechanism must be capable of maintaining its locked position under the same circumstances. The table is provided with T-slots for the mounting of the workpiece.

The quadrant scale of the adjustable angle plate is divided into 90 divisions and a vernier scale. The vernier scale is graduated into 5 minute divisions from 0 to 60 minutes on either side of the zero index. The 0 (zero index) and every 15 minute index thereafter on both sides of 0 is clearly marked with the corresponding number, and the 5 minute divisions are clearly readable. The quadrant scale has 1 degree divisions from 0° to 90°. The zero index and every 10° index following will be clearly marked with the corresponding number. A tolerance not to exceed plus or minus 2 minutes, noncumulative, is given for the error between any two graduations.

Due to its specialized nature, the toolmaker's adjustable angle plate usually is only manufactured in one size according to the GGG-P-441A Federal Specification.

Type VI: Toolmaker's Non-Adjustable Angle Plate: The Type VI toolmaker's nonadjustable right-angle plate is different from the other types in that it has two members. These members have two working surfaces at right angles to each other as well as a finished pad on the back of both working surfaces. The design is of sufficient thickness along with the ribbing to insure rigidity and stability in all operations and applications.

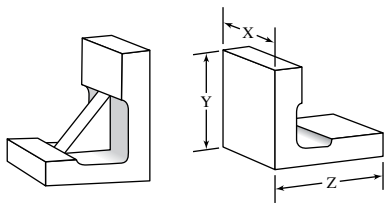


Fig. 6. Type VI, Toolmaker's Non-Adjustable Knee

Both front sides and the back side pads are considered functional working surfaces and will be manufactured according to the grade specified. The working surfaces, the opposite sides, and the opposite ends are all machined parallel to each other and square to their respective working surfaces. All machined surfaces will meet the tolerance limits assigned to the specified grade for finish, flatness, squareness, and parallelism. The Type VI toolmaker's nonadjustable right-angle plate will appear similar to Fig. 6.

Calibration and Maintenance of Right-Angle Plates.—In many machine shops and quality assurance programs, right-angle plates are not calibrated and are considered "Calibration Not Required" or "Reference Only" instruments that are not placed into the calibration recall system. Inevitably, this practice may lead to unknown error in a manufacturing operation or inspection procedure. However, calibration of a right-angle plate may be an investment in quality if it becomes evident that an angle plate that has worn

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

out of squareness or flatness is introducing error in a machining operation or inspection process. There are several calibration procedures and methods for verifying the accuracy of the right-angle plate.

Flatness Calibration: The first feature that should be calibrated is the flatness of the working surfaces. The tolerances for the calibration of any individual right-angle plate is defined by the manufacturer and in their absence the GGG-P-441A shall provide an acceptable calibration tolerance. For Type I, II and VI angle plates, the setup for the flatness calibration will appear similar to Fig. 7.

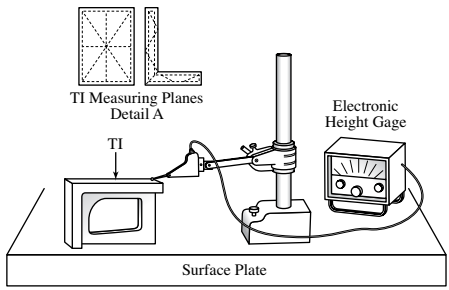


Fig. 7. Calibration of Surface Flatness

Place the angle plate (the *Test Instrument*, or *TI*) on the leveling plate, as shown, and use a jack stand or similar device to support the TI in position. A bubble level can assist in leveling the plate. When the plate has been leveled, use the electronic indicator to measure the surface following the pattern shown in the Detail A of Fig. 7. This pattern is generally called the Union Jack in that it resembles the stripes on the British flag.

Observe the readings and record the *maximum plus* and the *maximum minus* readings overall. Subtract the maximum minus reading from the maximum plus reading; the result is the overall flatness of the surface. This value must meet the manufacturer's tolerance limits for the model under test or the tolerances specified in the GGG-P-441A. The same process is performed for the side opposite and the sides of the TI. All readings must meet the tolerances stated by the manufacturer or the GGG-P-441A standard. Flatness is only checked on TIs that require external hardware for support and leveling on the surface plate. On units not requiring external support, such as Type III plates, flatness is checked as a function of the parallelism calibration.

Parallelism Calibration (Type III Right-Angle) The Type III universal right-angle plate has a parallelism tolerance due to the unique design of this unit. As discussed previously, the Type III is finished on all sides and is square and parallel to all working surfaces and sides opposite.

General Parallelism Tolerances	
Size Range	Total Indicator Reading
> 2.5 to 24 inches	0.0004 inch TIR
> 24 to 36 inches	0.0008 inch TIR
> 36 to 48 inches	0.0012 inch TIR
> 48 to 60 inches	0.0016 inch TIR

Before beginning the calibration process, attention must be paid to the surface condition to be certain that no burrs or damage to the edges or surface is present that might affect the outcome of the measurements. A super fine-grained "hard Arkansas stone" may be used

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

to remove any burrs on the edges or surfaces prior to beginning the calibration process. After the right-angle plate is clean and free from burrs, the TI is placed on the surface plate as shown in Fig. 8. There is no need for a leveling plate as the side opposite is finished and parallel to the working surface, and the parallelism feature is what is being indicated.

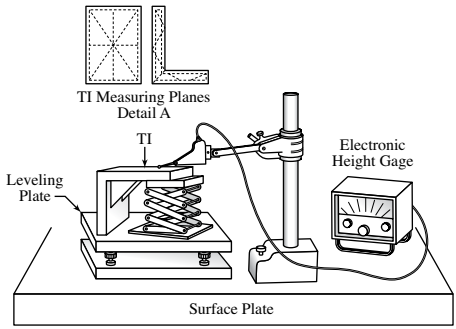


Fig. 8. Measuring Flatness/Parallelism of Type III Right-Angle Plate

Using the electronic indicator as before, indicate the surface in the Union Jack pattern and record the maximum plus and the maximum minus readings overall. In general, it is a good idea to zero the electronic indicator in the center of the Union Jack and take the readings from that point. This provides an easily repeated starting point and an overall numerical picture of the parallelism of the surface. As before, subtract the minimum reading from the maximum; the result must meet the tolerance limits specified by the manufacturer or GGG-P-441A. Repeat this process for the remaining sides. All results must meet the stated tolerances.

Squareness Calibration (Preferred Method) The simplest method that can be used to verify the squareness of the Type III universal right-angle plate, as well as the squareness of the other types, is quite sufficient when done properly to meet the accuracy ratio that is required for a high confidence level measurement. This method provides quantifiable data that can be assigned an uncertainty should the *Quality System* determine this necessary. This method provides a good measurement to verify the squareness value and identify any out of tolerance conditions before the error is passed on into the manufacturing or inspection process.

Place the angle plate (TI) on the surface plate with two 0.1005-inch gage blocks between the face of the angle plate and the face of the granite angle block, as shown in Fig. 9a.

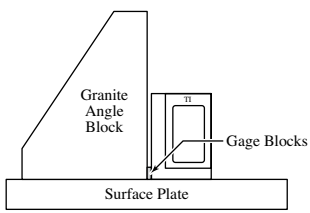


Fig. 9a. Gage Blocks Between TI and Granite Angle Block

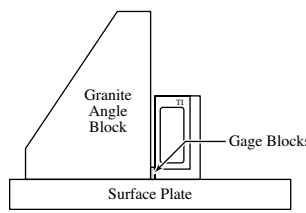


Fig. 9b. Gage Blocks Between Rotated TI and Granite Angle Block

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Then, beginning with a 0.1000-inch gage block, gently insert the gage block between the TI and the granite angle block at the top edge of the TI. Continue placing increasingly larger gage blocks between the TI and the granite angle block until the next larger gage block cannot be inserted without moving the TI. A gentle force should be applied to make sure the gage block is in direct contact with the granite surface, and as the gage block slides between the TI and the granite there should be no resistance until reaching the gage block size that is too large to go between without moving the granite. Record the size of this block as Block A. Rotate the TI and place the side opposite against the granite angle block as shown in Fig. 9b. Repeat the gage block sequence as above and record the size of the gage block as Block B.

To calculate the squareness of the working faces of the rotated TI follow the formula:

$$\text{Squareness} = \frac{|A - B|}{2}$$

Example: Block A = 0.1001 inch and Block B = 0.1009 inch.

Solution: The calculation would be 0.1001 minus 0.1009 divided by 2. The result being (–)0.0004 in overall squareness of the working surfaces to a perfect perpendicular plane.

Repeat the sequence for all remaining sides opposite. All results must meet the tolerances specified by the manufacturer or the GGG-P-441A standard. If for any reason the results do not meet the specified tolerances, it is possible to have the right-angle plates refurbished at a fraction of the cost of purchasing a new one. It is also possible that the deviations may be acceptable to the quality system, and, if the results are discussed with the Quality Engineer, the decision may be made to accept the unit "As Is" and annotate the deviation for future reference. The unit may also be downgraded to a less critical operation and the previous application be taken over by a new unit of acceptable condition. These decisions must be made by the quality engineers or quality managers and follow the guidelines of the quality system in place.

Measurements Using Light

Measuring by Light-wave Interference Bands.—Surface variations as small as two millionths (0.000002) inch can be detected by light-wave interference methods, using an optical flat. An optical flat is a transparent block, usually of plate glass, clear fused quartz, or borosilicate glass, the faces of which are finished to extremely fine limits (of the order of 1 to 8 millionths [0.000001 to 0.000008] inch, depending on the application) for flatness. When an optical flat is placed on a "flat" surface, as shown in Fig. 1, any small departure from flatness will result in formation of a wedge-shaped layer of air between the work surface and the underside of the flat.

Light rays reflected from the work surface and underside of the flat either interfere with or reinforce each other. Interference of two reflections results when the air gap measures exactly half a wavelength of the light used and produces a dark band across the work surface when viewed perpendicularly, under monochromatic helium light. A light band is produced halfway between the dark bands when the rays reinforce each other. With the 0.0000232-inch-wavelength helium light used, the dark bands occur where the optical flat and work surface are separated by 11.6 millionths (0.0000116) inch, or multiples thereof.

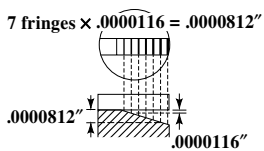


Fig. 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For instance, at a distance of seven dark bands from the point of contact, as shown in Fig. 1, the underface of the optical flat is separated from the work surface by a distance of 7×0.0000116 inch or 0.0000812 inch. The bands are separated more widely and the indications become increasingly distorted as the viewing angle departs from the perpendicular. If the bands appear straight, equally spaced and parallel with each other, the work surface is flat. Convex or concave surfaces cause the bands to curve correspondingly, and a cylindrical tendency in the work surface will produce unevenly spaced, straight bands.

See also *Interpreting Optical Flat Fringe Patterns* on page 791.

Interferometer.—The interferometer is an instrument of great precision for measuring exceedingly small movements, distances, or displacements, by means of the interference of two beams of light. Instruments of this type are used by physicists and by the makers of astronomical instruments requiring great accuracy. Prior to the introduction of the interferometer, the compound microscope had to be used in connection with very delicate measurements of length. The microscope, however, could not be used for objects smaller than one-half a wavelength of light. Two physicists (Professors Michelson and Morley) developed the *interferometer* for accomplishing in the laboratory what was beyond the range of the compound microscope. This instrument consisted principally of a system of optical mirrors arranged in such a way as to let the waves of light from a suitable source pass between and through them, the waves in the course of their travel being divided and reflected a certain number of times, thus making it possible to measure objects ten times smaller than was possible with the best compound microscope obtainable. Professor C.W. Chamberlain of Denison University invented another instrument known as the *compound interferometer,* which is much more sensitive than the one previously referred to; in fact, it is claimed that it will measure a distance as small as one twenty-millionth of an inch. These compound interferometers have been constructed in several different forms.

An important practical application of the interferometer is in measuring precision gages by a fundamental method of measurement. The use of this optical apparatus is a scientific undertaking, requiring considerable time and involving complex calculations. For this reason all commercial methods of checking accuracy must be comparative, and the taking of fundamental measurements is necessarily confined to the basic or primary standards, such as are used to a very limited extent for checking working masters, where the greatest possible degree of accuracy is required. The interferometer is used to assist in determining the number of light waves of known wavelength (or color) which at a given instant are between two planes coinciding with the opposite faces of a gage block or whatever part is to be measured. When this number is known, the thickness can be computed because the lengths of the light waves used have been determined with almost absolute precision. The light, therefore, becomes a scale with divisions — approximately two hundred-thousandths inch apart.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MICROMETER, VERNIER, AND DIAL CALIPERS

Micrometer Calipers

Classification.—The definition of the various classifications of micrometers was established in the Federal Specification GGG-C-105 and provided the basic requirements that were to be met by manufactures for sale to the Federal Supply Service, General Services Administration. As stated in the GGG-C-105C (1987); Federal Specifications do not include all varieties of the commodity as indicated by the title of this specification or which are commercially available, but intend to cover only those generally used by the Federal Government. This Federal Specification would become the guideline for manufacturers throughout the United States. Not only was the Federal Government a large consumer of the precision measurement instruments produced by domestic manufacturers, but the establishment of the design and accuracies provided a direction for further development and responded to the needs of the growing quality systems that were, by necessity, playing a greater and greater role in the manufacturing of high quality parts and systems. As the complexity of the systems grew, the greater the need for precision measurement instruments that could provide the measurement assurance needed to support those systems. Establishing the design and accuracies for these instruments was a necessary step and provided the foundation for all future developments.

Types, Classes, and Styles

Type I – Caliper, Micrometer, Outside (page 767)
- *Class 1: Enameled (I-Beam or Hollow Tubular) Frame*
  - *Style A:* Solid Anvil
  - *Style B:* Interchangeable Anvil
  - *Style C:* Tubing, Ball Anvil
  - *Style D:* Tubing, Upright Anvil
- *Class 2: Finished Frame*
  - *Style A:* Solid Anvil
  - *Style B:* Paper Gage
  - *Style C:* Tubing, Ball Anvil
  - *Style D:* Thread

Type II – Caliper, Micrometer, Inside (page 776)
- *Class 1: With Jaws*
- *Class 2: Rod and Sleeve*
- *Class 3: Tubular*
  - *Style A:* Interchangeable Head
  - *Style B:* Fixed Head

Type III – Gage, Depth, Micrometer (page 780)
- *Class 1: Interchangeable Measuring Rods*
  - *Style A:* Full base
  - *Style B:* Half base

Type IV – Micrometer Heads
- *Class 1: High Accuracy Mechanical*
- *Class 2: High Accuracy Digital*
- *Class 3: Extended Travel*

Construction Requirements.—*Materials:* The micrometer spindles and anvils and component parts of the Type II and Type III caliper micrometers and gages having utile measuring surfaces shall be made of high grade tool steel or alloy steel. The source stock shall be assured of a refined crystal structure with a uniform carbide distribution, and shall be sound and free of injurious porosity, soft spots, hard spots and other defects. All materials shall meet the minimum requirements for hardness, stability and strength.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Resolution: Micrometers using the inch system shall have a least significant digit of 0.001 in., 0.0001 in., or 0.00005 in. Micrometers using the SI (metric) system shall have a least significant digit of 0.01 mm, 0.002 mm, or 0.001 mm.

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, the frames and graduated components of Type I Class 2 micrometers and the thimble and barrels of all inside, depth, and micrometer heads shall have either a dull (non-glare) or satin chrome finish. All other exposed surfaces, excepting Type I Class 1 frames, shall have a ground finish. The surface roughness of all ground surfaces excepting direct measuring surfaces shall not exceed 32 µin (0.8 µm) Ra, and shall be coated to prevent corrosion. The Type I Class 1 frames shall have either a smooth or ripple enamel coating.

Identification: The Type I, Class 1 frame shall have a manufacturer's pad of smooth machined finish. All instruments shall be permanently and legibly marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark, so the source of manufacture can be easily determined, part number, and range of the instrument.

Adjustments: Each type, style and class shall provide a method for adjustment due to wear of the measuring faces and/or wear between the spindle screw and the nut. Regular calibration and adjustment of the nut will maintain the accuracy of the micrometer. This is especially true in higher accuracy instruments.

Micrometer Screw Spindle: The screw spindle is a critical component of the micrometer. The true accuracy of the instrument derives from the accuracy of the manufacturing of the threaded (screw) section of the spindle. The screw spindle material will be a stabilized high grade tool steel or alloy steel. The spindle screw section will be precision ground and have a hardness of no less than 62 RC on the Rockwell C scale. The exposed spindle section will have a fine ground finish with a surface finish of no greater than 32 µin (0.08 µm) Ra. The fit between the spindle and the bearing including the nut, shall be free-turning and exhibiting no side shake, end shake or backlash.

Measuring Faces: The spindle and anvil of all Type I, Class 1 and Class 2, micrometers shall be at minimum made of a stabilized high grade tool steel or alloy steel and have a hardness of no less than 62 RC. Alternatively, the measuring faces can be made of tungsten carbide with a hardness value of 92 RA on the Rockwell A scale. The tungsten carbide surfaces are preferred and provide a greatly improved life span for the measuring surfaces.

Graduations: The graduations shall have a depth reduced below the surface of the barrel and thimble and shall be of contrasting color. Variations in the width of the graduated lines on the barrel, thimble or vernier shall not exceed 0.001 inch.

Outside Micrometers

Type I, Caliper Micrometer.—*Size and Range:* The size of an outside micrometer caliper is defined as the maximum cylindrical diameter measurement that can be obtained by that particular instrument. The range is defined as the span of obtainable measurements from the minimum to maximum capacity of the particular micrometer.

Design: The basic features of the micrometer design shall consist of a frame, micrometer screw spindle, barrel and thimble, adjusting nut, either a lock-ring or lever type spindle lock, and a ratchet or friction stop, as shown in Fig. 1. Higher accuracy micrometers will include a vernier scale on the barrel that enables the reading of measurements to 1/10,000 of an inch (0.002 mm).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

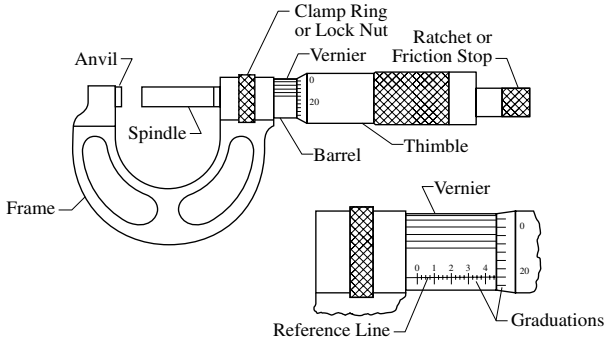


Fig. 1. Design Features of Type I, Class 1 Micrometer

Frame: Frames of all outside micrometers in sizes from $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to 4 inch shall be of steel. Frames of micrometers from 5 inch and greater shall be of steel, tubular steel or malleable iron.

The Type I, Class 1 enameled frame shall have a cutaway back (Fig. 2a), long tapered back (Fig. 2b), or C-type Back (Fig. 2c), of either I-beam or hollow tubular steel frame construction, and shall have either a smooth or rippled enameled finish.

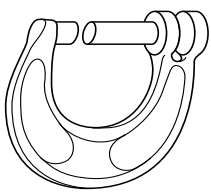


Fig. 2a. Cut-Away Back

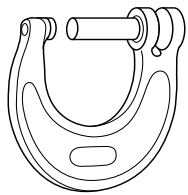


Fig. 2b. Long Taper Back

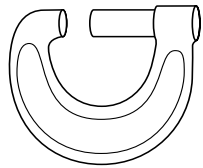


Fig. 2c. C-Type Back

Flexure: The cross section design and material used in the frame shall be, in combination, of sufficient design, that when a force of 2 pounds (10 N) is applied in parallel to the spindle axis upon the anvil, that a flexure of the frame shall not exceed the tolerance as specified in Table 8a and Table 8b.

Micrometer Screw Spindle: The entire micrometer screw spindle shall be hardened and stabilized to no less than 62 RC from a high grade or alloy steel. The thread form and all surfaces shall be precision ground and smoothly lapped. The thread form shall conform to ANSI/ASME B1.3-2007 (R2017), "Screw Thread Gaging Systems for Acceptability: Inch and Metric Screw Threads", and be a UN 40 pitch for English measurements and a M 0.5 mm pitch for SI (metric) measurements. The cylindrical portion of micrometer screw spindle shall be a free turning fit to the frame bearing without bind or shake and move smoothly and freely through the entire length of travel. There shall be no backlash between the threaded portion and the nut and at the maximum reading, there shall be no less than 0.240 inch engagement of the nut on the threaded portion of the screw spindle. The thread lead shall be sufficiently accurate throughout the entire length so as to permit compliance to the tolerances defined in Table 8a and Table 8b. The diameter of the spindle shall be no less than 0.1875 ($\frac{3}{16}$) inch for $\frac{1}{2}$ inch micrometers, and no less than 0.2343 ($\frac{15}{64}$) inch

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(5.9 mm) for 1.00 inch (25.0 mm) and larger micrometers. The diameter of the anvil and spindle measuring face shall be equal in diameter to within 0.0015 inch (0.038 mm).

Barrel and Thimble: The diameter of the graduated surface of the barrel shall be not less than 0.406 ($^{13}/_{32}$) inch (10.31 mm). The angle of the bevel at the graduated end of the thimble shall not be more than 20 degrees as measured from the barrel. The beveled end of the thimble at the reading end shall be sharp but dulled to prevent injury to the operator. The major diameter opposite the reading end shall be diamond knurled to facilitate ease of operation. The radial clearance from the barrel to the reading end of the thimble shall not exceed 0.020 and shall be concentric and constant throughout the range of travel. When set at 0.000, 0.025, 0.050 inch …, etc., the reading edge shall bisect the graduation line exactly. Throughout the range of travel, there shall be no more than $^{2}/_{3}$ of the line visible at any point. The barrel shall be constructed so as to prevent dust and foreign matter from coming into contact with the spindle screw.

Adjusting Nut: The micrometer design shall provide an adjusting nut to compensate for wear between the spindle screw and the fixed nut. There shall as well be a means provided to compensate as well for wear of the measuring surfaces. This is generally accomplished through adjustment of the barrel or by disengaging the spindle screw from the thimble and resetting the zero indication of the micrometer. Both adjustment of the barrel and the adjusting nut shall be such that they remain secure after resetting and will not impair the original accuracy of the instrument. Disengaging the spindle screw and resetting the zero indication are more advanced adjustments and would require a recalibration of the micrometer before returning to service. Micrometers with a friction-adjusting sleeve on the barrel shall have no less than $3^{1}/_{2}$ and no more than 15 in-lb torque on the friction sleeve. Spanner wrench, keys or other specialized devices shall be provided by the manufacturer of each micrometer.

Spindle Lock: The micrometer shall have a spindle lock which will arrest the spindle at the selected point and not alter the position when engaged. The spindle lock will be either a diamond knurled ring friction lock or a lever operated lock.

Ratchet or Friction Stop: The ratchet or friction stop is a device that shall exert a constant and even measuring force on the spindle and effectively removes subjective "feel" of measurements. This device is critical to obtaining an objective measurement and removes a variable in uncertainty analysis by delivering the same force between the spindle and anvil regardless of the operator. The design shall be either the ratchet or friction stop design. It shall be sufficiently knurled to enable satisfactory operation and shall exert a compressive force between the measuring faces of 1 to $1^{1}/_{2}$ lbs. up to the 6 inch size and 1 to 3 lbs. for larger sizes.

Measuring Faces of Micrometer Screw Spindle: The face of the micrometer screw spindle shall be at right angles to the axis at all positions of rotation of the screw spindle. Shall be square and flat and parallel to the anvil and shall maintain this orientation throughout the entire range of travel. The measuring face shall meet the tolerance limits as defined in Table 8a and Table 8b.

Measuring Faces: All measuring faces shall be hardened, ground and lapped. The hardness shall be no less than 62 RC and the lapped finish shall be no greater than 4 µin Ra. Utile measuring faces can be lapped to recondition them should wear from use cause the surface to exceed the tolerance limits.

Carbide Measuring Faces: Some micrometer calipers are furnished with carbide measuring faces. The carbide measuring face tip shall not be less than 0.030 inch thick and shall be an integral part of the spindle and anvil. When provided with carbide measuring faces, both spindle and anvil shall be faced with the carbide tip.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Graduations: Reference, *Graduation* and *Vernier* lines on the barrel and thimble shall be clearly cut to a width of not more than 0.010 inch and all vernier and graduation lines shall be within 0.001 inch in uniform size. The lines and numbers shall have distinct and clean edges and shall be clearly legible under ordinary service conditions. The barrel and thimble shall be graduated as follows:

Inch Reading Micrometer: The graduations on the thimble of the English (inch) reading micrometer shall be divided into 25 divisions each representing 0.001 inch. They shall be numbered as 0, 1, 2, 3, …, 23, and 24. Zero, then, represents 25 graduations or one full revolution. The barrel is graduated with a longitudinal reference line that runs parallel to the axis of travel of the screw spindle. This reference line is graduated into 40 divisions each representing 0.025 or one full revolution of the thimble. The first graduation shall be numbered 0 (zero) and shall be the zeroing point for all consecutive measurements. After that every fourth division shall be numbered 1, 2, 3, and so on to 9, and 0. These divisions represent 0.100, 0.200, 0.300 and so on throughout the 1.000 inch length of travel. The 0.100 in. lines shall meet the reference line and extend above the line in a manner to designate them as the major 0.100 divisions. The 0.050 in. division lines shall meet the reference line and extend above the line but shall be half the length of the major 0.100 in. lines. The 0.025 in. graduation lines shall also meet the reference line and extend above the line to half the length of the 0.050 division lines. This method establishes a readily visible reference to the exact cumulative value of the reading. The vernier lines for the measurement of 1/ 10,000th inch (0.0001) shall be engraved on the upper part of the barrel parallel to the axis of travel of the spindle and extend a sufficient length along the barrel as to provide a reading at any point throughout the entire length of travel. The 10 vernier spaces are equal to nine divisions on the thimble and are numbered 0, 1, 2, 3, …, 9, and 0.

Metric Reading Micrometer: The graduations of metric (SI) reading micrometers are configured in the same manner as the English reading micrometers. However, it must be stressed that manufacturers have developed variations of the basic principal that are equally accurate, and in some cases may be considered a genuine improvement. Slanted minor graduation lines, and split major minor graduations, have both been employed with great success. However, the principle for division of the scale is the same, and provides the amplification of the spindle screw movement necessary to obtain precision and repeatable measurements with the micrometer. The metric micrometer thimble is graduated into 50 divisions, each representing 0.01 mm. These are numbered as 0, 5, 10, 15, …, 45. The barrel is graduated along the reference line at 0.5 mm intervals. The reference line runs parallel to the axis of travel of the spindle screw. The first of the graduations lines is designated as 0 (zero) and every 10th graduation thereafter is numbered as 5, 10, 15, 20, and 25. The graduation lines representing 1.0 mm shall be meet the reference line and be distinguished by either length or position. The graduation lines representing 0.05 mm shall be distinguished from all other lines again by either length or position, as in the English scale system. The vernier scale shall be as described previously in the section *Inch Reading Micrometer*.

Accuracy: All micrometers shall be calibrated at a controlled temperature in a manner and method developed to assure performance parameters are acceptable and within the limits of tolerances as defined in Table 21a and Table 21b. Proper maintenance and periodic calibration are mandatory to maintaining a high confidence level in all precision measuring instruments.

Reference Setting Standards: The Type I, Class 1, Styles A and B, and Type I, Class 2, Style A micrometers are furnished with a reference standard for checking and setting the zero reading between the regularly scheduled calibration. These reference standards do not constitute a complete and thorough calibration but may be used to verify the zero setting of the instrument. These setting standards are themselves calibrated to assure adherence to tolerance, and act as a transfer standard during the calibration interval. The

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

setting standards for the 1.000 inch (25 mm) micrometer shall be either a disk or rod of 1 inch, or 25 mm, respectively. Standards for larger sizes shall be rods. The rods may have either flat and parallel, or spherical ends. The disk, and the ends of the rods, shall have a hardness of no less than 58 RC. The disk shall be concentric in diameter to within 0.00005 inch (0.0012 mm) and shall be within 0.00005 inch (0.0012 mm) of the nominal size. The tolerances for other lengths shall conform to those defined in Table 9.

Tolerances and instructions for calibration of reference standards are given in the section *Calibration of Reference Setting Standards* starting on page 787.

Type I, Class 1, Style A.—Type I, Class 1, Style A, *Solid Anvil Micrometers* shall follow a design similar to Fig. 3 and conform to tolerances and requirements of Table 8a and Table 8b and be finished in either a smooth or rippled enamel.

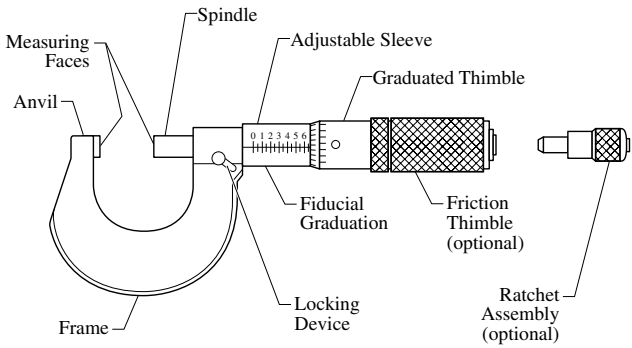


Fig. 3. Type I, Class 1, Style A: Solid Anvil Micrometer

Type I, Class 1, Style B.—*Interchangeable Anvil Micrometer* shall be in design similar to Fig. 4 and conform to the tolerances and requirements in Table 8a and Table 8b for accuracy. The anvils of the Type I, Class 1, Style B micrometer shall be designed so as to permit a secure and solid seating that allows no side movement and provides accurate alignment with the spindle measuring face. The anvils will provide a means to compensate for wear of the anvil faces and will be provided in the size ranges defined in Table 1.

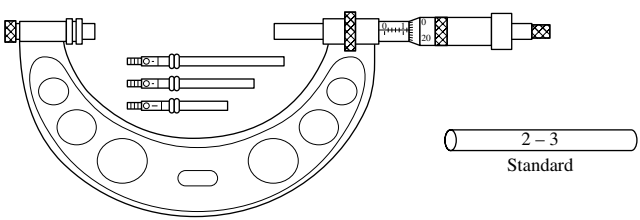


Fig. 4. Type I, Class 1, Style B, Interchangeable Anvil, Enameled (I-beam or Hollow Tubular) Frame. Provided with reference setting standards. Shown with four 1-inch incremental anvils.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Standard Sizes, Type I Class 1 Style B, Interchangeable Anvil Micrometers

Size Range, Inch		Size Range, mm	
0–4	12–18	0–100	300–450
2–6	16–20	50–150	400–500
6–9	18–24	150–225	450–600
6–12	20–24	150–300	500–600
9–12	24–96	225–300	600–2400
12–16	(in 6 inch increments)	300–400	(in 150 mm increments)

Type I, Class 1, Style C.—*Tubing Ball Anvil Micrometer* shall appear similar in design to Fig. 5.

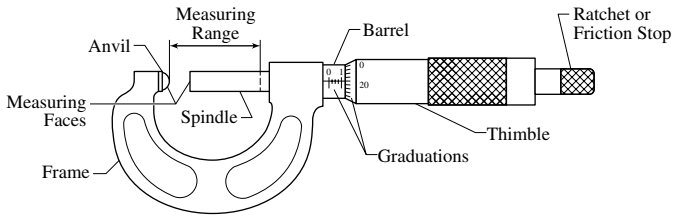


Fig. 5. Type I, Class 1, Style C: Tubing Ball Anvil, Enameled (I-Beam or Hollow Tubular) Frame, Fixed Ball Anvil

Size and Range: The Style C Tubing Ball Anvil Micrometer is generally provided in the $\frac{1}{2}$ inch or 1 inch (13 mm or 25 mm) range. The range and accuracy of the micrometer is defined in Table 8a and Table 8b. The $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (13 mm) size micrometer shall conform to the tolerance limits expressed for the 0–1 inch micrometer.

Anvil: The measuring face of the anvil shall be a bisected sphere permanently affixed to the frame with the radial center aligned to the projected axis of the spindle. The anvil shall be of such a radius as to permit accurate measurements of the wall thickness of tubing having a minimum inside diameters of 0.3125 inch for the 0 to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch range. The radius of the anvil for the 0 to 1 inch micrometer shall permit accurate measurement of minimum inside wall thickness diameters of 0.375 inch. For the metric calibrated micrometer, the anvil radius shall be adequate to accurately measure a minimum internal wall diameter of 8 mm for the 13 mm micrometer, and a minimum internal wall diameter of 10 mm for the 25 mm range micrometers.

Type I, Class 1, Style D.—The Style D, *Tubing Upright Anvil Micrometer*, shall have the half-C type frame, of I-Beam construction, with the diametrical axis of the anvil perpendicular to the axis of the spindle and in the same plane. The Style D micrometer shall follow in design the example in Fig. 6. Micrometer is provided in 1 inch or 25 mm range.

Spindle and Anvil: The measuring face of the spindle will be no less than 0.2343-inch diameter and be flat and parallel to the axis of the anvil. The spindle face shall be perpendicular to the axis of the anvil throughout the rotation and travel of the spindle. The diameter of the anvil shall permit the anvil to freely enter a 0.375-inch diameter hole to a depth of 0.750 inch.

Type I, Class 2, Finished Frame.—The Class 2 *Fixed Anvil, Finished Frame Micrometer* shall have a *long taper back*, *cutaway*, or *C-type frame* (see Fig. 2a, Fig. 2b, and Fig. 2c) of a solid rectangular construction. The sides of the frame shall be stamped, engraved or permanently marked in a practicable location in the decimal equivalent of common fractions; 8ths, 16ths, 32nds, 64ths. Stamping, engraving or etching shall be sufficiently deep enough to make characters readily legible in normal operating conditions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

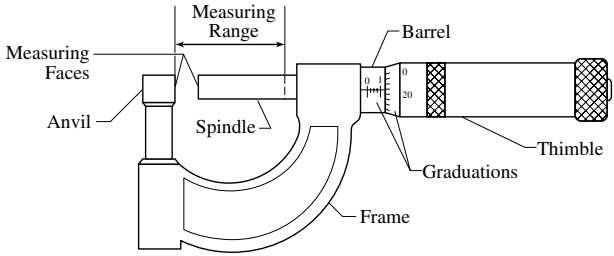


Fig. 6. Type I, Class 1, Style D: Upright Anvil Tubing Micrometer. Enameled (I-Beam or Hollow Tubular) Frame.

Finish: The finish of the Type I, Class 2 frames shall be a dull, non-reflective chrome plating. The utile measuring face of the anvil and spindle shall have a finish not to exceed 4 µin Ra. The finish of the outer surfaces of the spindle shall not exceed 32 µin Ra.

Type I, Class 2, Style A: The Style A *Solid Anvil Micrometer* is provided in 0–1 inch, 1–2 inch, and 2–3 inch only. The Style A micrometer shall conform to the tolerance limits as defined in Table 8a and Table 8b and in design appear similar to Fig. 7.

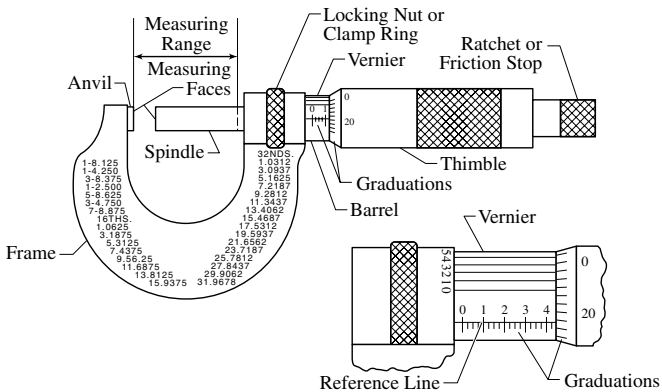


Fig. 7. Type I, Class 2, Style A: Solid Anvil, Finished Frame Micrometer

Type I, Class 2, Style B: The Style B *Paper Gage (Disk) Micrometer* shall be designed with a disk attached to the anvil and spindle of approximately 0.4375 inch diameter. The Style B micrometer is provided in ranges from 0–½ inch, 0–1 inch, and 1–2 inch. The attached disk may be larger or smaller than recommended diameter. All variations in design shall adhere to the tolerance limits defined in Table 8a and Table 8b. The Style B micrometer shall follow in design and appear similar to Fig. 8.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

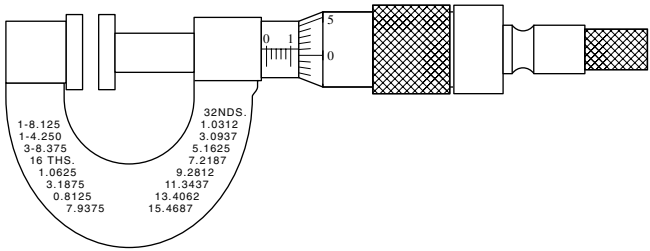


Fig. 8. Type I, Class 2, Style B: Paper (Disk) Micrometer

Type I, Class 2, Style C: The *Solid Ball Anvil Tubing Micrometer* is similar in all aspects to the *Type I, Class 1, Style C* design with the exception that the frame is a solid rectangular construction. Style C shall adhere to the tolerance limits defined in Table 8a and Table 8b. The Style C micrometer shall by design appear similar to Fig. 9.

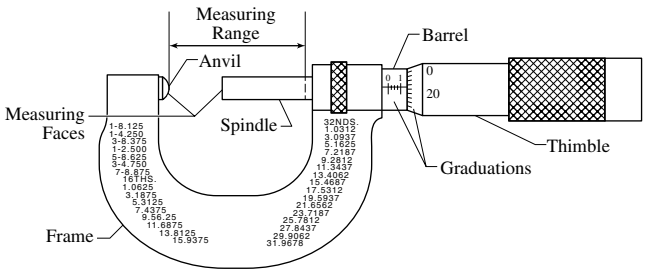


Fig. 9. Type I, Class 2, Style C: Solid Ball Anvil Tubing Micrometer

Type I, Class 2, Style D, Thread Pitch Micrometer: The Type I, Class 2, Style D pitch micrometer shall appear similar in design to Fig. 10 for fixed pitch micrometers. The Style D interchangeable anvil pitch micrometers vary in that the design incorporates an adjustable anvil with an anvil lock to allow for resetting the zero indication of the micrometer when changing the matched anvil/spindle pitch sets. The interchangeable anvil pitch micrometer shall appear similar to Fig. 11. Both designs adhere to the tolerance limits defined in Table 2 for the frame design and pitch indication accuracy. The micrometer section of the pitch micrometer shall adhere to the tolerance limits of Table 8a and Table 8b for accuracy of the micrometer indication.

Design: The design of the Type I, Class 2, Style D pitch micrometer shall be similar to that shown in Fig. 10 or Fig. 11. The frame design, either C-type or rectangular, shall be shaped to permit the measurement of screw thread pitch diameters of Unified thread form threads within size and range of the specific pitch micrometer. The measuring faces of the pitch micrometer consist of a cone (spindle) and a V-groove (anvil) with an inclusive angle the same as the angle of the thread to be measured. The apex of the spindle cone is to be centered and concentric to the axis of the spindle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Type I, Class 2, Style D Pitch Micrometer Design Specifications

Size (in.)	Range (in.)	Number of Threads per inch (1/pitch)	Permissible Flexure (in.)	Tolerance on Half Angle of Measuring Faces (±)		Error in Indicated Measurement (max.) (in.)	Error in Spindle/Anvil Alignment (max.) (in.)
				Degree	Minutes		
½	0–0.500	48 to 64	0.0001	0	18	0.00010	0.00010
1	0–1	8–13	0.0001	0	5	0.00020	0.00020
1	0–1	14–20	0.0001	0	6	0.00015	0.00015
1	0–1	22–30	0.0001	0	8	0.00015	0.00015
1	0–1	32–40	0.0001	0	12	0.00015	0.00015
2	1–2	4.5–7	0.0001	0	4	0.00025	0.00030
2	1–2	8–13	0.0001	0	5	0.00025	0.00030
2	1–2	14–20	0.0001	0	6	0.00020	0.00015
2	1–2	22–30	0.0001	0	8	0.00020	0.00015

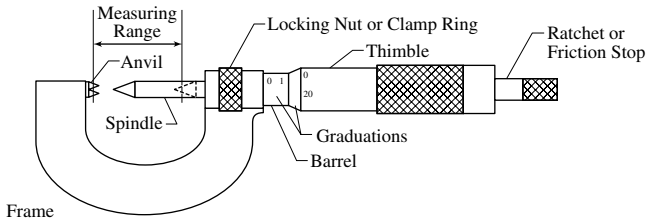


Fig. 10. Type I, Class 2, Style D: Thread (Fixed Pitch) Micrometer

Anvil: The anvil shall be secured in the frame with it axis aligned and concentric to the axis of the micrometer screw spindle. The anvil shall be well seated and secured but allow for a free turning fit with no shake or lateral movement. The end of the anvil facing the spindle cone shall have a V-groove of the same angle as the thread form to be measured. Both the spindle cone and anvil V-groove shall comply with the parameters set forth in Table 2.

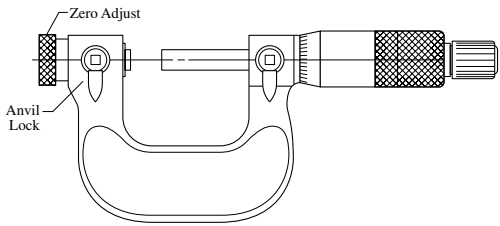


Fig. 11. Type I, Class 2, Style D: Interchangeable Anvil Thread (Pitch) Micrometer

Measuring Surfaces: The conical surface of the screw spindle and the angular surfaces of the V-groove anvil shall conform to the angular requirements defined in Table 2. The intersection of the apex of the conical screw spindle and the V-groove anvil shall be centered, aligned and in the same plane as the axis of the micrometer screw spindle. The surfaces of the conical spindle and the V-groove anvil shall be ground and lapped and hardened to no less than 62 RC. The surface roughness of these surfaces shall not exceed 4 µin Ra.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Inside Micrometers

Type II, Class 1, Inside.—The Type II, Class 1, *Inside Micrometer with Jaws* shall appear similar in design to Fig. 12 and conform to parameters and accuracy as defined in Table 3.

Table 3. Type II, Class 1, Inside Micrometer with Jaws

Size (in.)	Range (in.)	Tolerance (in.)	Radial Alignment (in.)
1	0.200 to 1	0.0002	0.003
1½	0.500 to 1½	0.0002	0.003
2	1 to 2	0.0002	0.003

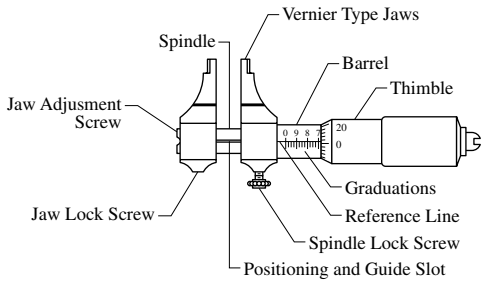


Fig. 12. Type II, Class 1: Inside Micrometer with Jaws

Design : The inside micrometer with jaws shall have a vernier-caliper style measuring jaw, micrometer screw, spindle, barrel and thimble, knurled lock screw, lock device and adjusting screw.

Jaws : The inside micrometer vernier-caliper style jaws shall be designed so the measuring surfaces remain parallel throughout the entire range of measurement. The jaws shall travel parallel to the axis of the spindle travel and in the same plane.

Micrometer Screw: The Type II, Class 1 inside micrometer shall be driven by a micrometer screw with a lead accuracy throughout its entire length of travel that will permit conformance to the tolerance defined in Table 3. The micrometer screw shall in all aspects adhere to the requirements and performance parameters previously defined for the *Micrometer Screw Spindle* on page 767.

Spindle: The Type II, Class 1 inside micrometer shall have a spindle that is not an integral part of the Micrometer Screw. The spindle shall be designed to have only longitudinal movement in the barrel while the micrometer screw is secured to the thimble and free to rotate on the connection to the spindle. The spindle shall have a good free moving fit in the barrel bearing with no shake or bind and shall move smoothly throughout its entire length of travel. The spindle is secured from rotation and guided by the positioning guide and slot.

Barrel and Thimble: The barrel and thimble of the Type II, Class 1 inside micrometer shall conform to the design requirements as defined in the previous section *Type I, Caliper Micrometer*. The design requirements for the applicable graduations shall as well be adhered to with the exception of the vernier scale. The numerals for graduations on the barrel shall read in the opposite direction from those on the conventional Type I micrometers as the measurements are reading an internal measurement that will become smaller as the micrometer spindle is drawn outward and larger as it is turned in. The first and every fourth graduation on the barrel along the longitudinal reference line shall

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be numbered 0, 9, 8, … 3, and 2 for the 0.200 to 1 inch range inside micrometer; and 15, 14, 13, … 6, and 5 for the 0.500 inch through 1.5 inch range inside micrometer. The numerals for graduations on the thimble shall read in the opposite direction from those on a conventional Type I OD micrometer.

Measuring Faces: The measuring faces on the Type II, Class 1 inside micrometer shall two jaws in the vernier-caliper style designed to be perpendicular to the axis of travel of the micrometer spindle and shall have a radius of curvature no greater than $\frac{1}{2}$ the diameter if the smallest value of the measuring range. The measuring surfaces shall conform to all design and accuracy requirements defined in the previous section, *Type I, Caliper Micrometer*.

Type II, Class 2, Rod and Sleeve.—The Type II, Class 2, *Rod and Sleeve Inside Micrometer* shall follow in design as shown in Fig. 13. The ranges and accuracy shall follow Table 4. The micrometer head is calibrated separately from the length rods and maintains a separate calibration tolerance as shown in Table 4.

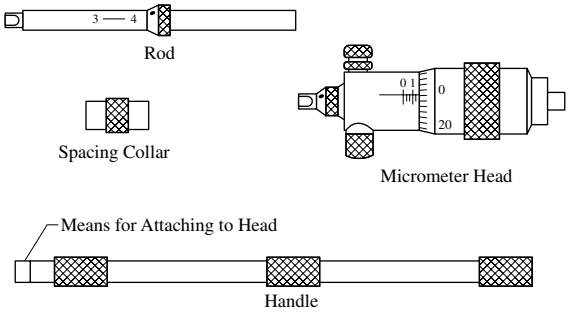


Fig. 13. Type II, Class 2: Inside Micrometer: Rod and Sleeve Design

Table 4. Type II, Class 2, Inside Micrometer Accuracy Tolerance

Inch			Metric		
	Tolerance			Tolerance	
Range (inch)	Micrometer Head (inch)	Length Rods (inch)	Range (mm)	Micrometer Head (mm)	Length Rods (mm)
1 to 2	0.0002	0.0003	1 to 2	0.0002	0.0003
2 to 8	0.0002	0.0004	25 to 50	0.005	0.0075
2 to 12	0.0002	0.0005	50 to 200	0.005	0.010
8 to 32	0.0002	0.001	50 to 300	0.005	0.0125
8 to 36	0.0002	0.001	200 to 900	0.005	0.025

Design: The Type II, Class 2 inside micrometer shall essentially consist of a micrometer head, measuring (length) rods, spacing collars, a knurled locking screw to secure micrometer head in place after obtaining measurement and an extension handle in some designs to optimize handling of unit in deeper bores or smaller diameters.

Micrometer Head : The micrometer head consists of a micrometer screw barrel and thimble graduated in design as defined for the Type I outside micrometer (see *Graduations* on page 767) with the exception of the vernier lines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For Type II, Class 2 inside micrometers designed to inch scale:

- in the 1 to 2 inch range, graduations shall be from 0 to 0.250 inch on the barrel
- in the 2 to 8 inch, and 2 to 12 inch range, graduations will be from 0 to 0.500 inch
- in the 8 to 32 or 36 inch range, graduations will be from 0 to 1.000 inch distance

For Type II, Class 2 inside micrometer designed to the metric scale:

- in the 25 to 50mm range, graduations shall be from 0 to 7mm on the barrel
- in the 50 to 200mm, and 50 to 300mm range, graduations will be from 0 to 13mm
- in the 200 to 800 or 900mm range, graduations will be from 0 to 25mm on the barrel

All Type II, Class 2 micrometer heads shall conform in feature design and finish as previously defined in the *Type I, Caliper Micrometer* general definitions.

Micrometer Screw, Barrel and Thimble: The lead of the micrometer screw shall be accurate to within the performance limits as defined in the *Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables* on page 781 throughout the entire length of travel. The barrel and thimble shall conform to the design definitions as previously outlined in the *Type I, Caliper Micrometer* section.

Measuring Rods and Spacing Collars: A sufficient number of Measuring (length) Rods and Spacing Collars shall be provided to enable the measurement of all distances within the range of each Inside Micrometer Set. The Rods shall be of such design as to provide positive seating with no side motion when assembled with the micrometer head. Length Rods shall provide an adjustable contact point to enable compensation for wear of the measuring face. Each Length Rod shall be plainly, clearly and permanently marked for measurement range.

Measuring Faces: The measuring face shall have a radius of curvature less than one-half of the smallest measuring range of the inside micrometer with a surface roughness not to exceed 4 µinch Ra. The locating faces on all spacing collars and length rods and micrometer head ends shall have a surface finish not to exceed 8 µinch Ra.

Type II, Class 3, Style A.—The Type II, Class 3, Style A, *Tubular Inside Micrometer, Interchangeable Head* shall conform to all design feature definitions of the Class 2 inside micrometer with the exception that the length rods shall be tubular in design and conform to the accuracy and length requirements defined in Table 5. The Style A inside micrometer shall follow in design and appear similar to Fig. 14.

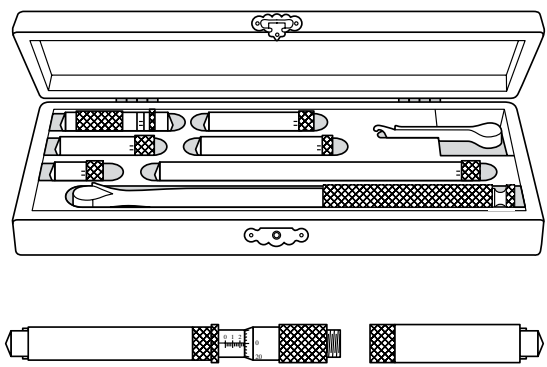


Fig. 14. Type II, Class 3, Style A: Tubular Inside Micrometer with Interchangeable Heads

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Type II, Class 3, Style A, Range and Tolerance

Inch			
Range (inch)	Range of Micrometer Head (inch)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (inch)	Length Rods (inch)
1 to 8	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0005
1 to 12	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0005
4 to 24	0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.0007
4 to 32	0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.009
4 to 40	0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.001
1 to 32	(two heads) 0 to 0.500 / 0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.0015
Metric			
Range (mm)	Range of Micrometer Head (mm)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (mm)	Length Rods (mm)
40 to 200	0 to 13	0.005	0.012
40 to 300	0 to 13	0.005	0.012
100 to 600	0 to 25	0.005	0.018
100 to 800	0 to 25	0.005	0.022
100 to 1000	0 to 25	0.005	0.022
40 to 800	(two heads) 0 to 13 / 0 to 25	0.005	0.025

Measuring (Length) Rods: A sufficient number of length rods of hollow steel tubular construction shall be provided to enable measurement of any dimension within the range of the inside micrometer set. The length rods shall be so designed that they may be mounted on either or both ends of the micrometer head. A cap head measuring face shall be provided to mount to either or both ends of the micrometer head in the case where no length rod is being used. Each rod is to be adjustable by means of a hardened and ground plug at one end that can be turned either into or out of the length rod.

Type II, Class 3, Style B.—The Type II, Class 3, Style B, *Tubular Inside Micrometer, Fixed Head* shall be of hollow steel tubular construction with a micrometer head permanently attached. Each unit will be equipped with a thermal isolation grip to negate the effects of thermal expansion from the heat of the hand. The Style B shall follow in design and appear similar to Fig. 15. Accuracy and length requirements are defined in Table 6.

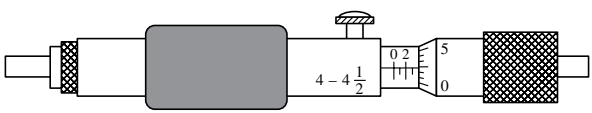


Fig. 15. Type II, Class 3, Style B: Inside Tubular Fixed Micrometer Head

Type II, Micrometer Head, Adjustments, Measuring Faces: The Type II, Class 2, Style B inside micrometer uses a micrometer head that adheres in design and function to the features defined in the *Type I, Caliper Micrometer* section. The measuring faces shall have a spherical radius not to exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ the radius of the smallest measuring range but otherwise adhere to the parameters defined in that section. The adjustment shall be as defined in the *Type I, Caliper Micrometer* section.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Type II, Class 3, Style B, Inside Tubular Fixed Micrometer Head

Inch			
Range (inch)	Range of Micrometer Head (inch)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (inch)	Length Rods (inch)
2 to 2	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
2 to 3	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
3 to 3	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
3 to 4	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
4 to 4	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
4 to 5	0 to 0.500	0.0002	0.0003
5 to 12 (1 inch increments)	0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.0004
Metric			
Range (mm)	Range of Micrometer Head (mm)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (mm)	Length Rods (mm)
50 to 63	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
63 to 75	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
75 to 88	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
88 to 100	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
100 to 113	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
113 to 125	0 to 13	0.005	0.007
125 to 300 (25mm increments)	0 to 25	0.005	0.010

Type III, Micrometer Depth Gage.—The Type III micrometer depth gage shall be similar in design and function to Fig. 16 below. The Type III depth micrometer consists of a micrometer head, base and interchangeable depth rods. The unit shall be further provided with a ratchet or friction thimble, a clamp ring, spindle lock nut or lever-type spindle lock.

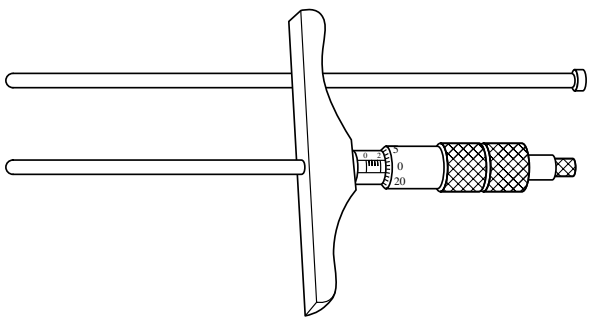


Fig. 16. Type III: Micrometer Depth Gage

Micrometer Head: The micrometer head shall be provided in a measuring range of 0–1.000 inch or 0–25 mm. The resolution of the instrument shall be 0.001 inch / 0.01 mm, 0.0001 inch / 0.002 mm (with vernier scale) or 0.00005 inch / 0.001 mm (units equipped

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

with digital encoders). The graduations on the barrel shall read from the thimble end toward the base to indicate extension of the measuring rod from the base position of zero.

Base: The base shall be designed with a measuring surface of no less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch, no more than $\frac{7}{8}$ inch in width, and a length of either 2, $2\frac{1}{2}$, 3, 4, 5, or 6 inches. The surface finish shall not exceed 4 µin Ra with a surface hardness of not less than 62 RC on the Rockwell C scale. The measuring surface of the base shall be flat to within 0.0001 inch per inch of length.

Measuring Rods: The basic micrometer depth gage shall be equipped with three depth measuring rods to provide for the measurement of ranges of 0 to 1, 1 to 2, and 2 to 3 inches or 0 to 25, 25 to 50, and 50 to 75 mm. The depth measuring rods shall be of a design so that one rod at a time can be inserted through a hole in the micrometer screw spindle. The rod seat on the barrel end of the base shall provide a mounting surface parallel to the base measuring surface. When inserted into position the measuring rod shall be held securely into place and pass freely and smoothly throughout the entire range of travel. The measuring rod shall have a means of compensation for wear. The measuring rods shall be straight with a runout when fully extended of no more than 0.003 inch.

Additional Depth Measuring Rods: While the basic design requires that the set be provided with three depth measuring rods to reach the range of 0 to 3 inches, additional rods are available in expanded sets. All additional measuring rods shall be of design and performance as defined in this section.

Accuracy: All micrometer depth gage micrometer heads and depth measuring rods shall meet the accuracy limits as defined in Table 7. Adjustment to out of tolerance conditions shall be performed before instrument is returned to service.

Table 7. Type III, Micrometer Depth Gage

Inch			
Range (inch)	Range of Micrometer Head (inch)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (inch)	Depth Rods (inch)
0 to 3	0 to 1.000	0.0001	0.0003
3 to 6	0 to 1.000	0.00015	0.0004
6 to 9	0 to 1.000	0.0002	0.00045

Metric			
Range (mm)	Range of Micrometer Head (mm)	Tolerance	
		Micrometer Head (mm)	Depth Rods (mm)
0 to 75	0 to 25	0.002	0.006
75 to 175	0 to 25	0.003	0.008
175 to 275	0 to 25	0.004	0.009

Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables

The *Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables*, Table 8a and Table 8b, represent the parameters that are utilized by the original manufacturers of the instruments. These values were defined by the Project Team B89.1.13 of the ASME Standards Committee on Dimensional Metrology. This committee is a representative group of the manufacturing industry that establishes the standards used in the production of micrometers. These standards address the requirements of the American industry and the ISO efforts in the support of international commerce. While these tolerance tables and values are utilized in the manufacturing of the instruments, the calibration of the individual instruments is slightly different and does not always include all the geometrical parameters that are taken into consideration during the manufacturing process.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8a. Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables, Inch *ASME B89.1.13-2001*

Range (in.)	Permissible Frame Flexure (2 lbf) (in.)	Maximum Parallelism		Indicated Measurement Error (max.) (in.)	Spindle/Anvil Alignment Error (max.) (in.)
		Fixed Anvil (in.)	Interchange Anvil (in.)		
0–1	0.00010	0.00005	0.00040	0.00010	0.0020
1–2	0.00010	0.00010	0.00040	0.00020	0.0030
2–3	0.00010	0.00020	0.00040	0.00020	0.0045
3–4	0.00015	0.00020	0.00040	0.00020	0.0060
4–5	0.00015	0.00020	0.00040	0.00020	0.0080
5–6	0.00015	0.00020	0.00040	0.00020	0.0100
6–7	0.00020	0.00020	0.00040	0.00020	0.0100
7–9	0.00020	0.00025	0.00060	0.00020	0.0100
9–12	0.00030	0.00030	0.00060	0.00030	0.0100
12–18	0.00040	0.00040	0.00080	0.00040	0.0150
18–24	0.00050	0.00050	0.00080	0.00050	0.0150
24–30	0.00060	0.00060	0.00100	0.00060	0.0150
30–36	0.00070	0.00070	0.00010	0.00070	0.0150

Table 8b. Manufacturers' Production Tolerance Tables, Metric *ASME B89.1.13*

Range (mm)	Permissible Frame Flexure (10N) (mm)	Maximum Parallelism		Indicated Measurement Error (max.) (mm)	Spindle/Anvil Alignment Error (max.) (mm)
		Fixed Anvil (mm)	Interchange Anvil (mm)		
0–25	0.002	0.002	0.010	0.004	0.05
25–50	0.002	0.002	0.010	0.004	0.10
50–75	0.003	0.003	0.010	0.005	0.10
75–100	0.003	0.003	0.010	0.005	0.15
100–125	0.004	0.004	0.010	0.006	0.20
125–150	0.005	0.004	0.015	0.006	0.25
150–175	0.006	0.005	0.015	0.007	0.25
175–200	0.006	0.005	0.015	0.007	0.25
200–225	0.007	0.006	0.015	0.008	0.25
225–250	0.008	0.006	0.015	0.008	0.25
250–275	0.008	0.007	0.015	0.009	0.25
275–300	0.009	0.007	0.020	0.009	0.25
300–350	0.010	0.008	0.020	0.010	0.25
350–375	0.011	0.009	0.020	0.011	0.25
375–400	0.012	0.009	0.020	0.011	0.25
400–425	0.012	0.010	0.020	0.012	0.25
425–450	0.013	0.010	0.020	0.012	0.25
450–475	0.014	0.011	0.025	0.013	0.38
475–500	0.015	0.011	0.025	0.013	0.38
500–600	0.017	0.013	0.030	0.015	0.38
600–700	0.020	0.015	0.030	0.017	0.38
700–800	0.022	0.017	0.035	0.019	0.38
800–900	0.025	0.019	0.035	0.021	0.38

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calipers, Vernier and Dial

Classification.—The definition of the classifications of vernier calipers was established in the GGG-C-111 standard and provides the basic requirements that were to be met by manufacturers supplying such calipers to the Federal Supply Service, General Services Administration. While the Federal Specifications do not include all varieties of the calipers commercially available, it does provide a guideline for manufacturers. Dial and digital calipers follow the general design features as illustrated in Fig. 17, Fig. 18, and Fig. 20. Any variation in designs must incorporate all aspects and necessary measurement capabilities as defined in the original government specification.

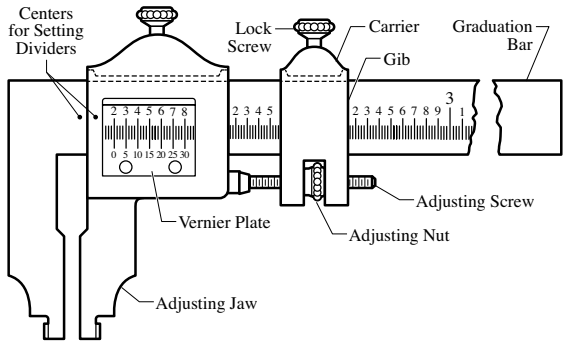


Fig. 17. Original Design: Type 1, Class 1 with Fine Adjust Carrier, Gib, Lock Screw and Fine Adjust Screw and Nut

Type and Classes.—Calipers and gages shall be of the following types, classes, and styles, as specified:

Type 1 – Calipers, vernier
Class 1: Inch measure
Class 2: Metric measure
Class 3: Inch-metric measure

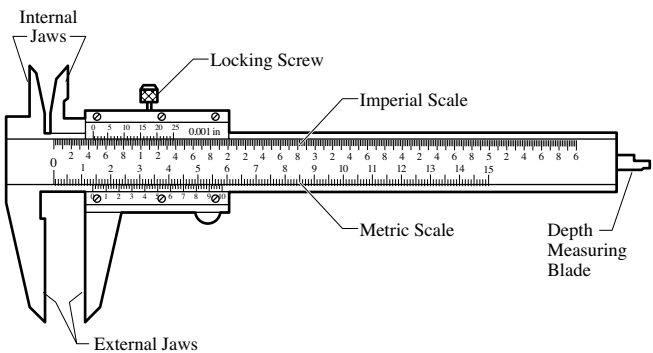


Fig. 18. Type 1, Class 3 – Inch/Metric Dual Scale with Vernier Scale Flush to Edge of Main Scale

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Construction Requirements.—*Materials:* The beam and all measuring surfaces having direct contact with the work shall be made of high grade tool steel. The measuring faces may be made of Tool Steel with Carbide inserts. All materials shall be sound and free of injurious porosity, soft spots, hard spots and other defects. All parts subject to wear, breakage or distortion shall be replaceable.

Main-scale Member (Beam): The main-scale member, or beam, of the Type 1 caliper shall be graduated as defined herein for each design variant. The main-scale shall be of a cross sectional area as to provide stability without undue weight when the instrument is used to make measurements at the maximum range. The measuring face and slide locating edge shall be straight within 0.0003 inch for each linear foot of the beam length. The total tolerance for the instrument (if over 12 inch) shall not be accumulated in any 12 inch increment and all deviation in straightness shall be evenly distributed along the entire length of the instrument.

Slide: The slide or moveable jaw shall be machined to receive the main-scale beam and shall have a fit and surface finish so as to allow the slide to move through the entire length of the beam without lateral shake or bind when not locked into position. The locating side of the slot shall be square with the measuring plane within 0.0003 inch along the full length of the contact surface. The opposite side of the moveable jaw shall be fitted with a nib or knife edge inside measuring jaw and a locking screw.

Vernier Plate: The vernier plate shall either overlap or be flush with the edge of the main scale. The overlap of the main scale shall be no less than 1/64 inch and straight with 0.002 inch in the full length. The vernier plate shall be beveled to prevent parallax error. If the scale is installed flush along the edge of the main scale, the edge of the Vernier Plate shall slide easily along the main scale. The edges of both the main scale and the vernier plate shall extend fully to the edges. The Plate shall be held in place with two screws through elongated mounting holes to allow no less than 0.010 inch longitudinal adjustment.

Measuring Contacts: The measuring contacts shall have a surface finish of 8 μin Ra or better and have a hardness value of no less than 60 to 65 RC (Rockwell C scale).

Scale and Graduations.—All calipers regardless of Type or Class will have a *main scale* and a *Vernier scale* or dial. The vernier scale shall be a direct reading scale so that when aligned with the zero point of the data scale, the first division of the vernier scale will appear below the first mark on the main scale. All vernier scale graduation spacing is a precise fraction smaller than the marks on the main scale. All graduations shall be machine cut or etched between 0.003 to 0.006 in width and from 0.001 to 0.003 inch in depth and shall not vary in width on the main scale or the vernier scale by more than 0.001 inch. The edges of the graduations shall be straight and not vary more than 0.0002 inch throughout the full length of the graduations along the full length of the instrument. The graduations shall be sharp and well defined and contrast with the surrounding area through chemical etching or other similar methods so that the graduations are distinct and easily readable to enable the use of the instrument under normal working conditions. The graduations will be parallel to each other and square to the locating edge of the main scale within 0.0004 inch. The vernier scale graduations shall be parallel and square to the reading edge of the vernier plate or scale within 0.0002 inch. The index of both the main and vernier scales will be located referencing the measuring contacts planes so as to be direct reading.

Inch Graduated Instruments.—*Main Scale:* The inch graduated instruments will be graduated to read in thousandths of an inch increments. Each inch of the main scale shall be represented with a graduation mark representing the inch incremental value. Each inch segment shall be subdivided into ten increments of 0.100 inch. Each 0.100 inch increment shall be further divided into 4 increments of 0.025 inch each for 100 divisions per inch instruments or two divisions of 0.050 inch for 50 divisions per inch instruments. Each graduation of the main scale within the first foot shall be accurately located to the reference zero index within 0.0003 inch. With each additional foot length of the main scale and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

additional 0.0003 inch shall be acceptable with no total tolerance accumulated within any single foot of main scale length. All graduations within any 1 inch increment shall be accurately located in that inch increment within 0.0002 inch.

Vernier Scale : The inch vernier scale shall be divided into either 25 minor divisions each equivalent to one twenty-fifth of the main scale minor division or twenty five thousandths of an inch or 50 divisions each equivalent to one fiftieth of the main scale minor division or fifty thousandths of an inch. On either scale each alignment of the vernier scale mark to the main scale is equivalent to one thousandths of an inch. The graduated length for the 25 division inch graduated vernier scale shall be either 0.6000 or 1.2250 inch ±0.0002 and are divided into 25 equal increments accurately spaced to within ±0.0002 inch. All graduations shall be of a length so as to be easily discernible with the graduations for 0 (zero) and each 0.005 inch having extra length to enable them to be easily distinguished. The 0 (zero) index and each 0.005 inch increment shall be clearly marked with the incremental value. The vernier scales that are divided into 50 increments shall have a length of either 1.225 or 2.450 ±0.0002 with each increment accurately spaced to within 0.0002 inch. Each instrument shall be marked with the scaled value.

Metric Graduated Instruments.—*Main Scale:* The metric graduated instruments will be graduated to read in 1/50 mm (0.02mm) increments. Each centimeter of the main scale shall be represented with a graduation mark representing the incremental value. For instruments with 25 increment vernier scales, the main scale shall be graduated in centimeters, millimeters and half-millimeters. Each centimeter segment shall be subdivided into ten increments of 1 millimeter each. Each 1 millimeter increment shall be further divided into 2 increments of $\frac{1}{2}$ millimeter each for 20 divisions per centimeter. Centimeters shall be numbered from zero with easily read numerals. The graduation lines for cm, $\frac{1}{2}$ cm, mm, and $\frac{1}{2}$ mm shall have length of descending order. All graduation lines shall be clearly marked as described in the previous *Scale and Graduations* and *Inch Graduated Instruments* sections, and be easily readable under normal operating conditions.

Instruments with 50 increment vernier scales shall have the main scale graduated in centimeters and millimeters with half-millimeters at the manufacturers' option.

Each graduation of the main scale within the first 30 cm shall be accurately located to the reference zero index within 0.008 mm. With each additional 30 cm length of the main scale and additional 0.008 mm shall be acceptable with no total tolerance accumulated within any single 30 cm of main scale length. All graduations within any 1 cm increment shall be accurately located in that centimeter increment within 0.005 mm.

Vernier Scale: Vernier scales for metric instruments divided into 25 increments shall have a graduated length of 12 mm or 24.5 mm, ±0.005 mm and scales divided into 50 increments shall have a graduated length of 24.5 mm or 49 mm, ±0.005 mm.

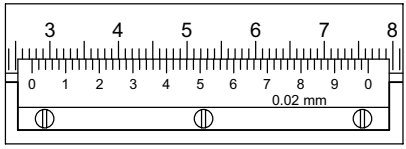


Fig. 19. Common Metric Vernier Caliper Scale Markings

The metric vernier scale most generally found in the current market shall be divided into 10 divisions or 0.1 mm, each division further divided into 5 minor divisions equivalent to a resolution of 0.02 mm. The spacing and location from zero shall be accurate to within 0.005 mm. All graduations shall be of a length so as to be easily discernible with the graduations for 0 (zero) and each 0.1 mm having extra length to enable them to be easily

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

distinguished. The 0 (zero) index and each major division shall be clearly marked with the numerical incremental value.

Dial Caliper.—The dial caliper uses a precise rack and pinion movement that drives an indicating hand to provide a direct reading on a circular dial. This precision movement eliminates the necessity to visually read the vernier scale and negates the effects of subjective observation.

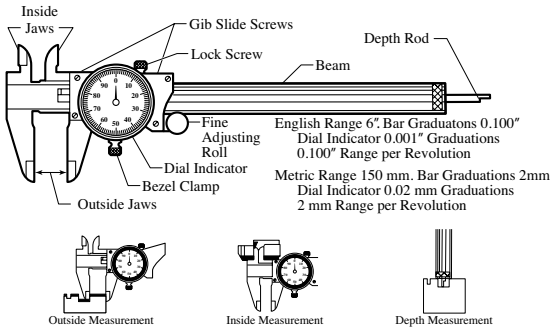


Fig. 20. Dial Caliper – Fine Adjust Wheel and Gib Slide Screws for Accuracy Adjustment

The movement, when adjusted properly and calibrated will provide a measurement with a higher level of confidence than the vernier scale. Typically the indicating hand rotates once every 0.100 in or 1 mm and provides a resolution of 0.001 inch or 0.02 millimeter. The main scale still indicates the major divisions that are added to the reading taken from the dial indication. An additional feature of the dial caliper is that the dial is designed to be rotatable beneath the pointer allowing the operator to "set" the caliper at a known value and zero the indicator and make "differential measurements" from the known value. This function was not possible with the original vernier caliper.

Digital Caliper.—The most current refinement in the instrument is in the replacement of the dial movement or vernier scale with a digital display. The dial rack and pinion movement or vernier scale has been replaced with the application of a linear encoder that allows switching between millimeters and inches on demand, zeroing the scale at any point along the scale for differential measurements and electronically "holding" a measurement possibly taken in an awkward position where the digital display may not be visible. Many digital calipers offer a *serial data output* function that allows the operator to capture collected data in a spreadsheet or dedicated controller for analysis and more accurate records collection.

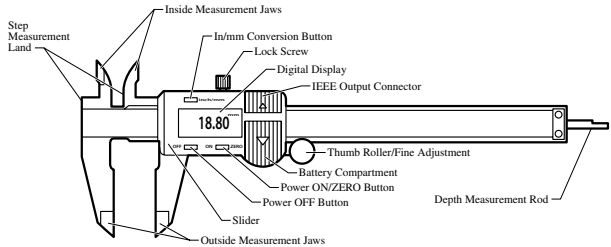


Fig. 21. Digital Caliper – Average Feature Configuration

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calibration of Reference Setting Standards

Preliminary Operations

1) Review and become familiar with the entire calibration procedure before beginning the calibration process. Ensure familiarity with setup and operation of all standards involved in the procedure.
2) Always observe safe operating methods for all standards, whether electrical, physical, mechanical, or dimensional; exercise caution in handling of all precision standards.
3) Ensure measuring surfaces are clean and free of nicks and burrs that could affect the accuracy of the measurements. Observe the rod ends for any possible damage and observe the unit for bending or any condition that may affect the parallelism of the measuring surfaces. If any condition of concern is observed, light stoning with a hard Arkansas stone can be used with care to remove any nicks or burrs.
4) Bring the UUT (Unit Under Test) into the controlled environment 12 hours prior to beginning the calibration process. Allow all standards and UUT to stabilize to common temperature.

Typical Equipment Requirements

Name	Minimum Use Specifications	Recommended Measurement Standards	Alternative
Universal Horizontal Measuring Machine	Range: 0 to 24 inch Accuracy: ±30µin	Mahr-Federal 828	Mahr Linear 1200
Gage Block Set	Range: 0.050 to 4.000 inch 2.0 to 450 mm	Starrett Webber SC 81.A1 Starrett Webber S2C 88.MA1	Mitutoyo 516-401-16 Mitutoyo 516-442-10
Gage Block Set (Long Block)	5 to 84 inch 125 to 500 mm	Starrett Webber SS 8.A1X Starrett Webber SS 8. MA1X	Mitutoyo 516-762-16 Mitutoyo 516-753-10
Height Transfer Gage	Range: 1 to 48 inch	Starrett DIGI-CHECK II DHG 49	Mitutoyo Universal Height Master Model 515-513
Electronic Height Indicator	Range: ±0.032 in. (min.) Accuracy: ±50 µin ±0.001 mm	Mahr Federal Model 832 w/ LVDT	Mitutoyo Analog MU-Checker 519-420A with 519-327 Lever Head
Precision V-Block	Range: Adequate to support UUT in vertical position. Accuracy: Calibrated to specifications of GGG-V-191D (or equivalent)		
Surface Plate	Range: 24 x 36 Accuracy: Grade A	Starrett Crystal Pink EDP 80655	Mitutoyo 517-808

Reference Setting Standard Calibration Process.—*Note:* Special care should be taken to clean and apply a protective coating when handling gage blocks or other precision standards with bare hands. The use of clean cotton or vinyl gloves is recommended to prevent corrosive oils from damaging precision surfaces.

The temperature of the calibration environment must be maintained at approximately 23° C (73.4° F) with a fluctuation of no more than ±0.5° C (±0.9 °F) per hour.

1) Calibration of UUT up to 4.000 inch shall be performed on the horizontal measuring machine. All other measurements shall be performed in the vertical position as described in this procedure.

2) Select gage block equal to the size of the UUT. Wringing blocks together to achieve the desired size should be avoided if possible as this method increases possibility of error.

3) Insert the gage block between the anvil and spindle of the universal horizontal measuring machine resting against the anvil. Bring the head (spindle) into contact with

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the gage block and gently bring the indicator to the zero indication. Lock the head into position. Seat the gage block, re-zero, and assure the measurement is repeatable.

4) Remove the gage block and replace with the UUT. Assure that the UUT is seated and the measurement is being read at the peak (highest reading) for radius rod ends, or the parallel point (lowest reading) for flat rod ends. Assure radius is centered on the anvil and spindle. Verify the reading is within the tolerance limits as defined in Table 9.

5) Setup the universal horizontal measuring machine for the next size UUT as described in Items 2) and 3).

6) Repeat measurement as described in Item 4).

7) Continue the process through the range of the universal horizontal measuring machine or until all UUT in the set have been measured. If the UUT length in the set exceeds the length of the universal horizontal measuring machine, proceed to Item 8) for the process to measure the remainder of the set up to 40 inch (1000 mm).

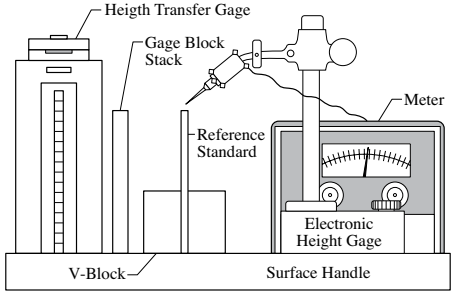


Fig. 22. Vertical Measurement of Reference Setting Standard

8) Using a precision V-block, clamp the UUT into the V-block ensuring the rod end is in contact with the surface plate and the UUT is secured in a vertical orientation.

9) Using either a height transfer gage or a gage block, set the electronic indicator to a zero indication. Set the range and resolution of the indicator so as to adequately indicate the deviation from zero in relation to the tolerance limits assigned to the UUT.

10) Repeat the zero indication several times to assure no drift or error has occurred.

11) Move the indicator from the standard to UUT and seek the highest point (for radius ends) or sweep the flat rod end for deviation from nominal and indication of parallelism.

12) Confirm that the indicated deviation is within the tolerance limits as assigned to the UUT in Table 9.

Table 9. Size and Tolerance for Inch and Metric Reference Standards
(*ASME B89.1.13-2001*)

English		Metric	
Length (in.)	Tolerance (in.)	Length (mm)	Tolerance (mm)
1	±0.00005	25	±0.0012
2 to 4	±0.0001	50 to 125	±0.002
5 to 8	±0.00015	150 to 200	±0.003
9 to 11	±0.0002	225 to 275	±0.004
12 to 18	±0.00025	300 to 425	±0.005
19 to 24	±0.0003	450 to 575	±0.006
25 to 36	±0.00035	600 to 750	±0.007
37 to 40	±0.0004	775 to 900	±0.008

13) Repeat Items 8) through 12) for the remaining reference setting standards in the set.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calibration of Outside Micrometers

Typical equipment requirements for calibration procedures are shown in Table 10; a description of the calibration is given in Table 11, and various types of monochromatic light sources are given in Table 12.

Table 10. Calibration Equipment Standards

Item	Minimum Use Specifications	Recommended Equipment
Monochromatic Light	Range: N/A Accuracy: N/A	[a] Helium Discharge: 11.6 µin Length/Fringe Van Keuren L-1A or L-1
Optical Parallel Set	Range: Two optical parallels differing in thickness by 0.0125 in. Accuracy: 10 µin (flat and parallel)	Van Keuren: OP-2B
Gage Block Set	Range: 0.05 to 4 inch 2.0 to 450 mm	Starrett Webber SC 81.A1 Starrett Webber S2C 88. MA1X
Gage Block Set (Long Block Set)	Range: 5 to 84 inch 125 to 500 mm	Starrett Webber SS 8.A1X Starrett Webber SS 8.MA1X
Optional Equipment		
[b] U6 Monochromatic Reflex Interference Viewer	Range: 6 in diameter Accuracy: N/A	[a] Helium Discharge: 11.6 µin Length/Fringe Van Keuren V760300

[a] While the *Helium Discharge Monochromatic Light* is one of the most common frequencies in use, other monochromatic light sources are available (see Table 12) and all will produce the same results. The band count is multiplied by the fringe length value to obtain the flatness of the measured surface. See examples in the table *Interpreting Optical Flat Fringe Patterns*.

[b] The U6 Monochromatic Reflex Interference Viewer is used to observe the base flatness of the depth micrometer directly through an optical flat. The same technique of fringe count can be utilized to obtain the flatness as is used for the OD micrometer anvil and spindle.

Table 11. Calibration Description

UUT Characteristics	Performance Specifications	Test Method
Flatness	Range: 0 to 54 in. 0 to 300 mm Tolerance: See Fig. 12	Measured with *Optical Flat/Parallel* converting fringe curvature to an equivalent linear value.
Parallelism	Range: 0 to 1 inch 0 to 25 mm Tolerance: 50 µin. 0.0013 mm	For UUT with 0–1 inch (0–25 mm) range, measured at two positions with optical parallel set.
Length and Linearity	Range: 0 to 54 inch 0 to 1400 mm Tolerance: See Table 21a and Table 21b	Comparative measurement of UUT reading to gage block test setup to test the basic length and micrometer head linearity.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Note: The *Minimum Use Specifications* column of Table 10 represents the principal parameters required for performance of the calibration. References to specific equipment are recommendations only, and in no way constitute an endorsement other than as examples of the appropriate accuracy required to maintain the correct *Test Accuracy Ratio* (*TAR*) and confidence level in the calibration procedure. It is understood that equivalent equipment produced by other manufacturers is capable of equally satisfactory performance of this procedure.

Note: If the UUT uses the metric scale, use test points equivalent to those defined for the English scale so as to test the micrometer at five places in the circumference of the drum and five equally spaced intervals throughout the range of travel of the micrometer spindle screw.

Table 12. Types of Monochromatic Light Source

Light Source	Wave Length		Length/Fringe	
	µin	nm	µin	nm
Helium-Neon Laser (bright red)	24.9	632.8	12.5	316.4
Sodium Vapor (yellow)	23.2	589.3	11.6	294.7
Mercury Vapor (green)	21.5	546.1	10.8	273.1
Helium Discharge (yellow-orange)	23.1	587.6	11.6	293.8

Preliminary Operations.—Ensure a clean and well illuminated work area, free from drafts, excessive humidity with a stable temperature that does not fluctuate more than ±2° per hour. It is recommended that a stable temperature of 68° F is maintained in the calibration work area.

Note: The calibration of OD Micrometers and similar precision measurement devices is accomplished through the use of gage blocks as the length standard. Due to the thermal reactivity of gage blocks, environmental stability is a major consideration in maintaining the confidence in the accuracy of the measurements taken during the calibration.

Calibration of UUT with an accuracy of ±0.001 inch or greater can be accurately calibrated in an environment with a temperature fluctuation of ±4°F. Calibration of UUT with a higher accuracy, such as ±0.0001 inch, must be accomplished in a stable environment of no greater than 68°F with a temperature fluctuation of no more than ± 2°F per hour.

Ensure that the UUT and all associated standards have been allowed to stabilize in the controlled environment for a minimum of 8 hours prior beginning the calibration procedure. This is especially critical for UUT in excess of 10 inches.

Closely examine the UUT for any burrs or nicks on the measuring surfaces that could in any way damage the highly polished precision surface finishes of the gage blocks and optical flats. Damage to these surfaces could degrade or potentially ruin the standard.

Thoroughly clean the UUT and rotate the micrometer through the full range of travel, ensuring smooth movement with no binding or indication of drag or misalignment of the spindle through the support bearing.

Note: It is recommended that well-fitting cotton or nitrile gloves be used to reduce thermal transfer and protect from corrosive elements of direct contact.

Calibration Procedure, Flatness Test (Outside Micrometers).—UUT used in precision work or any re-lapped anvil or spindle require a flatness test. If the instrument is known to be for general purpose; i.e. tool box issue, diameter measurement where flatness is not a factor, measurement is a non-quantified value, etc., a flatness test would not be required. Calibration records should reflect "flatness not calibrated".

Ball anvil and tubing micrometers require a flatness test on the spindle only.

- Connect the *Monochromatic Light* to a power source and turn on. Allow a few moments to warm up.
- Position the UUT in the monochromatic light field and place the optical flat on the anvil. Apply slight pressure and gently seat the optical flat until 3 to 5 bands are displayed on the surface. It is important to not apply greater than necessary force or to cause damage to the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

optical flat by pressing down if a burr is detected. Scratching the surface of the optical flat can ruin the flat. Caution is required.

- Using the optical flat and monochromatic light, observe interference bands on anvil face.
- Count the number of bands between the lowest ends and the crest of 1 band. Multiply this number by the frequency of the monochromatic light being used. Confirm that the calculated deviation is within the tolerance limits defined in Table 13.

1 band = 11.6 millionths (µin) using helium discharge light source (Table 12).

Record the band count, frequency and result.

Interpreting Optical Flat Fringe Patterns

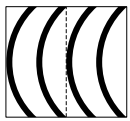


Fig. 23a.

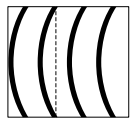


Fig. 23b.

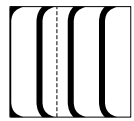


Fig. 23c.

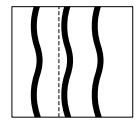


Fig. 23d.

Example, Optical Flat Fringe Patterns: Fig. 23a through Fig. 23d illustrate fringe patterns produced by an optical flat in contact with several test surfaces.

The following illustrates how to interpret the fringe patterns observed to determine deviations in flatness of the unit under test (UUT).

a) Convex surface (Fig. 23a): side edges low 11.6 µin

b) Convex surface (Fig. 23b): side edges low 5.7 µin.

c) Nearly flat (Fig. 23c): side edges low 5.7 µin.

d) Complex surface (Fig. 23d) both convex and concave: hollow in center, higher each side of center and lower at side edges: error 3 µin.

- Turn over the UUT and repeat preceding steps for the spindle. If this is inconvenient due to size of UUT, remove the spindle to take the reading. Calculate in the same manner as above. Record the reading.
- If UUT is an interchangeable anvil micrometer, repeat measurement for each anvil.
- *Note:* If anvil or spindle do not create an image, or are too worn to produce an image, they will need to be sent out to the appropriate vendor for lapping.

Table 13. Anvil/Spindle Flatness Tolerances per *USAF*

Range		Tolerance	
Inches	Millimeters	English UUT (inch)	Metric UUT (millimeters)
0 to 3	0 to 75	0.00005	0.001
4 to 9	100 to 225	0.00008	0.002
10 and above	250 and above	0.0001	0.0025
All with a resolution of 50 in. or 0.001 mm		0.000025	0.0006

Parallelism Test (Outside Micrometers).—The anvil and spindle parallelism test is performed on 0–1 inch / 0–25mm micrometers where a high degree of accuracy is required to be maintained. Prior to the parallelism test, the flatness test must be performed to the satisfaction of the tolerance of the UUT.

- It is critical to the accurate measurement that no dirt or dust particles are present. It is highly recommended that several measurements be taken to verify the results of the measurement. Cleaning the anvil and spindle and optical parallel with lint free lens tissue will aid in assuring the accuracy of the measurement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

- Position the thinner optical parallel between the anvil and spindle of the UUT and adjust the UUT until both surfaces are in contact with the optical parallel. Do not exert greater than necessary force in attempting to minimize interference band count. Adjust the optical flat on the anvil end of the UUT to obtain the minimum band image. The optimum number of bands anticipated here is four. This provides an easily read image to calculate the parallelism of the anvil and spindle. Note the number of bands on the anvil face as *count A*.
- Without changing the position of the UUT, carefully turn and observe the number of bands on the spindle face. Note this as *count B*.
- Compute the parallelism of the anvil and spindle over the smaller optical flat as follows. Use the band width of the monochromatic light that is being used;

$$11.6 \times (A + B) = Parallelism \text{ (microinches)}$$

where A = *count A*; B = *count B*; and 11.6 is the fringe/length of the light source in microinches (Table 12).
- Remove the thinner optical flat and replace with the 0.0125 inch thicker one and repeat the measurement process. To calculate the anvil to spindle parallelism inclusive of the rotation of the spindle, calculate the difference between the two optical flat measurements.
- Verify that the difference between the two sets of measurements is within ±50 µinch or ±12 µm.
- If only one optical flat is available the same measurement can be achieved by using the measurement technique described above but calculated as 11.6 × (A – B) = Parallelism (microinches). The exception being that this method will not take into consideration the rotation of the spindle.

Linearity Test (Outside Micrometers).—1) Set the UUT to indicate zero reading using the ratchet or friction thimble, and assure that the reading meets the applicable tolerance limits. If an *Out of Tolerance (OOT)* reading is identified at this time, assure there is no foreign particle or burr on the anvil or spindle. An accurate zero indication must be established at this time as all other measurements will be affected by any error at zero.

Note: The micrometer anvil and spindle can be closed over a sheet of clean white paper damp with isopropyl alcohol, which can then be drawn out slowly to remove any obstructing matter. Repeat with a dry paper and observe any smear or smudge that would indicate dirt or foreign matter. Clean until paper comes through with no residue.

2) For *Interchangeable Anvil Micrometers* the appropriate length gage block will be used to establish the zero indication.

3) The recommended size gage blocks used to test the micrometer spindle thread are very important. The recommended test points achieve the testing of the accuracy of the micrometer throughout the entire length and at points evenly distributed around the diameter of the spindle thread. This verifies the accuracy of the lead error of the thread as well as identifying any sections that may have experienced excessive wear or damage. The recommended sizes are as follows:

a) *X*.210, *X*.420, *X*.605, *X*.815 and 1(*X*).000 (inch) and 5.10, 10.20, 15.30, 20.40, and 25.00 (mm). The micrometer should be tested at zero and full scale. *X* represents the applicable length for the UUT range.

b) When wringing gage blocks together to achieve the desired size, the stack must soak for 1 hour when calibrating UUT with 0.0001 inch (0.002 mm) resolution in a range over 8.000 inches (200 mm). The soak time does not apply to sizes over 8.000 in (200 mm) that do not require wringing.

4) Select the first gage block stack and measure it using the ratchet or friction thimble. Do not rely on feel as the correct and controlled loading of measuring force by the ratchet or friction thimble will give the most accurate and repeatable reading. All other methods are subjective and open to operator influence. Several clicks of the ratchet or applying force until the friction thimble slips and assuring the micrometer is gently seated on the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

gage block stack will give an accurate reading. Assure the reading is repeatable. The reading must meet the tolerance limits as defined in Table 21a and Table 21b for *Indicated Measurement Error*.

5) Repeat these steps for each remaining gage block stack and record readings for evaluation or trend analysis. Follow all guidelines of the quality assurance programs in place in regards to recording and retaining all data collected and reporting OOT (out of tolerance) conditions.

6) For *Interchangeable Anvil Micrometers*, after calibration of the micrometer spindle thread, repeat Items 1) and 2) for each anvil in the set. Once the micrometer spindle thread accuracy has been confirmed, only the zero setting of each interchangeable anvil needs to be calibrated. Verify that each interchangeable anvil meets the tolerance limits assigned and record any OOT conditions before adjusting to meet tolerance limits if necessary.

Calibration of Depth Micrometers

Note: Do not lock the micrometer head without the depth rod installed. This could result in damage to the split ring locking mechanism causing the rods to bind.

Flatness Calibration.—1) For *Depth Micrometers* with a resolution of 100 µin (or metric equivalent) or better, the Van Keuren model U6 Monochromatic Reflex Interference Viewer is used to observe the base flatness of the depth micrometer directly through an optical flat. The same technique of fringe count can be utilized to obtain the flatness as is used for the OD micrometer anvil and spindle (*Interpreting Optical Flat Fringe Patterns*).

2) For *Depth Micrometers* with 0.001 inch (0.01 mm) resolution per division, place the UUT on an individual 1.000 in (25 mm) gage block with the depth rod extended through the center relief hole as shown in Fig. 24. Bring the depth rod into contact using the ratchet stop or friction thimble and observe the reading. Repeat this measurement three times ensuring repeatability of the reading. Record the reading as reading *A*.

3) Remove the UUT from the setup and place it on two gage blocks (or stacks) of 1.000 in. (25 mm) as shown in Fig. 24. Bring the depth rod into contact using the ratchet stop or friction thimble as in Item 2) and observe the reading. Repeat this measurement three times ensuring repeatability of the reading. Record the reading as reading *B*.

Subtract reading *B* from reading *A* and ensure that the result is within the tolerance limits as listed in Table 14.

Table 14. Depth Micrometer Base Flatness

Range		Tolerance	
Inches	Millimeters	(inch)	(millimeters)
All with a resolution of 0.0001 in. or 50µin	All with a resolution of 0.0025mm or 0.001mm	0.0001	0.0025
All with a resolution of 0.001 in.	All with a resolution of 0.01 mm	0.001	0.01

Note: The *Linearity* of the UUT is checked using the 0–1 inch (0–25 mm) depth rod only. Once the accuracy of the *Micrometer Head* has been verified, the remaining depth rod extensions are calibrated at the zero position only. It is critical to the outcome of the calibration of the entire set that the base zero setting for the micrometer sleeve and thimble be accurate and without error or deviation. Any error in the base zero setting will cause errors to be translated to the depth rod extensions.

Linearity Calibration (Depth Micrometers).—1) Select the appropriate gage blocks to make stacks to measure 0.210, 0.420, 0.605, and 0.815 inch, or 5.10, 10.20, 15.30, 20.40, and 25.00 mm. The 1.000 inch (25.00 mm) block will also be used as the micrometer head will be calibrated at zero to full scale. Clean and wring gage blocks assuring no dirt or foreign matter is present.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

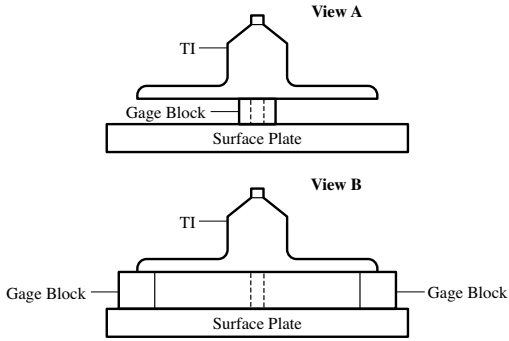


Fig. 24. Figure 4: Depth Micrometer Base Flatness Measurement

2) Place the UUT on the surface plate and zero against the plate. A calibrated surface plate must be used as it is used to establish the base zero setting and is considered as one of the standards used in the calibration procedure. Record any deviation and assure the reading is within the tolerance limits as defined.

3) Place the first gage block stack (0.210 inch or metric equivalent) on the surface plate and place the UUT on top of the stack. Measure the stack through the center relief hole in the gage block. Observe the reading. Repeat the measurement three times and assure repeatability of the measurement. Verify that the reading is within the tolerance limits.

4) Repeat Item 3) for all remaining gage block stacks. Record all readings. If an OOT condition is discovered, adjust the UUT and repeat the linearity calibration to verify the adjusted accuracy.

5) Repeat Item 2) for all remaining depth rod extensions. For UUT with resolution of 0.0001 in or better, allow gage block stacks that require wringing to assemble to stabilize for one hour for lengths over 8.00 inch. Stabilization is not required for single block lengths.

Calibration of Micrometer Heads

Linearity Calibration.— 1) Select the appropriate gage blocks as defined in the *Linearity Test (Outside Micrometers)*. As previously the micrometer head will be calibrated at zero to full scale. Clean and wring gage blocks, as appropriate, assuring no dirt or foreign matter is present.

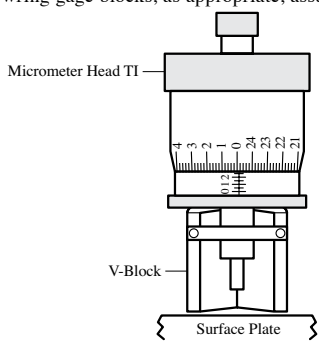


Fig. 25. Micrometer Head Set Up — Vertical in V-Block

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2) Mount the micrometer head vertically by the shank into a precision V-block as shown in Fig. 25, and adjust so that the zero position can be achieved making contact with the calibrated surface plate. If a zero position cannot be achieved with the V-block available, use an intermediary gage block of the necessary size so as to achieve contact with the spindle face and set zero on that intermediary block. This is the zero indication and will not be included in the linear measurement. Repeat the zero measurement three time to assure repeatability of the measurement (zero setting) Record the reading as zero. Verify that the reading is within the tolerance limits for the UUT. Raise the micrometer head spindle and insert the first step gage block (0.210 in or metric equivalent) lower the micrometer head until the spindle measuring face makes contact with the gage block stack. The micrometer head has no ratchet stop or friction thimble to control the force applied. It is important to not overdrive the spindle and introduce an error caused by disturbing the setup. It does not require a great amount of force to lift the setup. Care must be taken to apply the measurement gently but firmly. Repeat the measurement three times to assure the repeatability and accuracy of the measurement.

3) Repeat Item 2) for all remaining gage block stacks throughout the full range of the UUT. Record all readings and verify that all readings are within tolerance limits. Adhere to manufacturers' tolerances if different than the tolerance limits listed in *Calibration Tolerance Tables*, Table 21a and Table 21b.

Calibration of Thread Micrometers

Note: The *Thread (Pitch) Micrometer* uses a dedicated set of spindle and anvil contacts that measure the pitch diameter of a thread of a given pitch range. There are fixed anvil micrometers as well as interchangeable anvil/spindle sets. The interchangeable sets come with matched spindle/anvil sets that can be installed into the micrometer frame and then set to zero.

Linearity Calibration (Fixed Pitch).—The fixed anvil micrometers usually do not have the capability to reset the zero indication other than the standard barrel adjustment. The calibration of these instruments is achieved by the measurement of master setting thread plug members that are selected to cover, as close as possible, 25, 50 and 75 percent of the range of the UUT.

1) Three calibrated *Master Setting Thread Plug Gages* are selected that cover 25, 50 and 75 percent of the measuring range of the UUT in the range of pitch that the UUT is designed for. (i.e., 8–13 pitch, 16–18 pitch, 18–24 pitch).

2) Mount the pitch micrometer in a micrometer stand to enable easier operation of the UUT and to provide better control of the standard.

3) Gently bring the *Anvil* and *Spindle* together to achieve a zero indication. If zero reading is not exact, adjust the barrel so no error from zero exists. Repeat the zero indication to assure repeatability.

4) Open the micrometer anvil and spindle beyond the point of the first standard pitch diameter and seat the standard against the anvil.

5) Slowly close the micrometer until the spindle cone seats into the thread opposite the supported anvil.

6) Gently roll the standard up and down against the spindle cone to seek the highest point on the diameter. When this point is located, take a measurement of the pitch diameter.

7) Record the measurement and assure that the measurement is within the tolerance limits for the UUT.

Note: UUT with the resolution of ±0.001 require a Class X master thread setting plug gage. UUT with a resolution of ±0.0001 require a class W master thread setting plug gage.

8) Remove the first standard and repeat measurement throughout the remainder of the master thread setting plug gages selected for the UUT.

Interchangeable Anvil Pitch Micrometer Sets.—1) *Interchangeable Anvil Pitch Micrometer* sets include several sets of Anvil and Spindle Cone, and V Anvils. These sets are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

dedicated to a range of thread pitch. Most sets also include a set of flat anvil and spindle inserts that can be used to calibrate the micrometer exactly the same as a standard micrometer. If this is the case proceed as follows.

2) Select the flat anvil and spindle set and install.

3) Zero the anvil and spindle and assure repeatability.

4) Perform calibration as described in *Linearity Test (Outside Micrometers)*, Item 3) on page 792 using the defined test points to verify the accuracy of the micrometer head.

5) Remove the flat anvil and spindle set and install the smallest (highest pitch) dedicated Anvil V and Spindle Cone set. Close anvil and spindle and re zero the micrometer to the new set.

6) Select one master thread setting plug gage for the pitch range, preferably at midrange of travel, and measure as described in *Linearity Calibration (Fixed Pitch)* section. Verify that the measurement is within the tolerance limits of the UUT. This measurement verified the accuracy of the flank angle of the cone and V anvil. This measurement can also be performed on an optical comparator. However, the physical measurement should be performed as the final step in the calibration of the interchangeable cone and anvil sets.

7) Repeat for all remaining Anvil V and Spindle Cone sets.

Calibration of Inside Micrometers

Caliper Type Inside Micrometer.— A description of the calibration and equipment requirements for the Type II, Class 1, Inside Micrometer with Jaws are given in Table 15.

Table 15. Calibration Requirements of the Type II, Class 1, Inside Micrometer with Jaws

Calibration Description		
UUT Characteristics	Performance Specifications	Test Method
UUT Length and Linearity	Range: 0.200 to 1.000 inch 0.500 to 1.500 inch 1.000 to 2.000 inch (or metric equivalent)	Comparative measurement of UUT reading to gage block test setup to test the basic length and micrometer head linearity.

Equipment Requirements			
Description	Minimum Use Specifications	Calibration Equipment	Sub Item
Gage Block Set	Range: ±0.05 to 4 inch Accuracy: ±12 µin from stated value	L.S. Starrett Co. SS 36.A1	L.S. Starrett Co. SS 81.A1

Calibration Process.— 1) Set the UUT to indicate the minimum reading for the UUT using the ratchet or friction thimble. Assure that the reading indicates the minimum for the UUT model and range. If the reading is observed as off the minimum at this time, assure there is no foreign particle or burr on the anvil or spindle. An accurate zero indication must be established at this time as all other measurements will be affected by any error at zero.

2) The recommended size gage blocks used to test the micrometer spindle thread are very important. The recommended test points achieve the testing of the accuracy of the micrometer throughout the entire length and at points evenly distributed around the diameter of the spindle thread. This verifies the accuracy of the lead error of the thread as well as identifying any sections that may have experienced excessive wear or damage. The recommended sizes are given in Table 16:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 16. Recommended Test Points for Type II, Class 1, Inside Caliper Micrometer

Size		Range		Recommended Test Points	
(in.)	(mm)	(in.)	(mm)	(in.)	(mm)
1	25	0.200 to 1	5 to 25	0.210, 0.420, 0.605, 0.815 and 1.000	5.10, 10.20, 15.30, 20.40 and 25.00
1½	30	0.500 to 1½	5 to 30	0.510, 0.720, 0.905, 1.115, and 1.500	7.10, 12.20, 17.30, 23.40, and 30.00
2	50	1 to 2	25 to 50	1.210, 1.420, 1.605, 1.815, and 2.000	25.10, 30.20, 35.30, 40.40, and 50.00

Note:

a) The micrometer should be tested at zero and full scale.

b) Care must be taken when wringing gage blocks together to achieve the desired size. It is critical to clean the gage blocks thoroughly before wringing and assembling the end blocks to avoid damaging the superior finish of the standard.

3) Assemble the first gage block stack and measure it using the ratchet or friction thimble as described in the *Linearity Test (Outside Micrometers)* on page 792. Do not rely on feel as the correct and controlled loading of measuring force by the ratchet or friction thimble will give the most accurate and repeatable reading. Several clicks of the ratchet or applying force until the friction thimble slips and assuring the micrometer is gently seated on the gage block stack will give an accurate reading. Gently rock the micrometer to assure that the Nibs are parallel to the gage block end block faces. Repeat the measurement several times to assure the reading is repeatable. The reading must meet the tolerance limits as defined in Table 17, *Tolerance* column.

Table 17. Tolerance Table: Type II, Class 1 Inside Micrometer with Jaws

Size (in.)	Range (in.)	Tolerance (in.)
1	0.200 to 1	±0.001
1½	0.500 to 1½	±0.001
2	1 to 2	±0.001

4) Repeat these steps for each remaining gage block stack and record readings for evaluation or trend analysis. Follow all guidelines of the quality assurance programs in place in regards to recording and retaining all data collected and reporting OOT conditions.

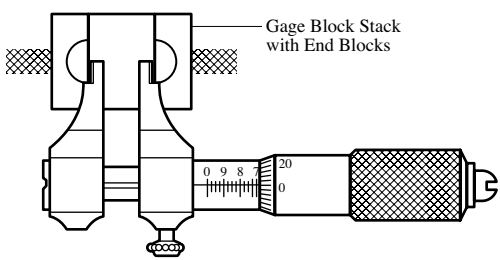


Fig. 26. Measure Gage Block Stack Assembled with End Blocks

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tubular Type Inside Micrometer.—A description of the calibration and equipment requirements for the tubular type inside micrometer are given in Table 18.

Table 18. Calibration Requirements of Tubular Type Inside Micrometer

Calibration Description		
Test Instrument (TI) Characteristics	Performance Specifications	Test Method
Length	Range: All Accuracy: As listed in Tables 4, 5, and 6	Measured using a standard measuring machine or supermicrometer referenced to gage blocks
End caps	Range: All Accuracy: ±0.00025 in	
Extension Rods	Range: All Accuracy: As listed in Tables 4, 5, and 6	

Equipment Requirements			
Description	Minimum Use Specifications	Calibration Equipment	Alternate Selection
Gage Block Set	Range: 0.05 to 4 in Accuracy: ±12 µin from stated value	L.S. Starrett Co. SC 36.A1 SC 36.MA1X	L.S. Starrett Co. SC 88.A1X SC 88.MA1X
Gage Block Set	Range: 5 to 20 in Accuracy: ±5 µin/in	L.S. Starrett Co. SS8.A1X	
Supermicrometer	Range: 0 to 10.00 inch 0 to 250 mm Accuracy: 20 µin	Pratt & Whitney Model PC-250	
Standard Measuring Machine	Range: 0 to 148 inch 0 to 1200 mm Accuracy: 50 µin	Pratt & Whitney Model DMM-1219	

Preliminary Operations.—1) UUT shall be brought into the calibration area at least 4 hours prior to beginning the calibration process.

2) Ensure that all working surfaces are clean and free from dust and dirt.

3) The UUT must be free from all rust, nicks and burrs that would affect the results of the measurements and operation of the UUT.

4) Linear measurements are affected by temperature and all measurements must be conducted in a temperature controlled environment. The preferred environment is 68°F with no greater than ±1° per hour deviation from nominal. The temperature must have been stable and within the preferred range for a minimum of 8 hours prior to beginning the calibration soak time.

Length Calibration Process.—*Preferred Method:* 1) Install the shortest extension rod available for the UUT set being calibrated. If the UUT has end caps (Type II Class 3 Style A) install just the end caps. This section will calibrate the micrometer head accuracy.

Note: If the TI being calibrated is equipped with two end caps that can be removed and interchanged (Type II Class 3 Style A), the end caps must be checked for wear and must be the same length (nominal 0.250 inch). If the end caps differ in length by more than ±0.00025 inch (as measured on the *Supermicrometer* or *Standard Measuring Machine*, both TI end caps must be replaced.

2) Select a gage block of a length close to the nominal length of the UUT when set to zero on the micrometer head and the extension rod or end cap for minimum length indication is installed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) For UUT with greater than 0.0001 inch (0.001 mm) resolution, gage block stacks that are wrung together to achieve the nominal setting dimension over 8 inches, must soak for one hour before establishing the setting dimension. This does not apply to single gage blocks used as setting standards.

4) Set the *Reference* of the supermicrometer or standard measuring machine to zero.

5) With the UUT set to zero, place into the measuring plane of the supermicrometer or standard measuring machine and measure the UUT. Assure that the UUT is supported on either a flatted round or adequate support to allow it to maintain alignment with the axis of measurement of the standard.

6) Verify that the measurement is within the tolerance limits for the UUT. Refer to the tolerance tables for the Type II Class 2 (Table 4), Type II Class 3 Style A (Table 5), and Type II Class 3 Style B (Table 6) for applicable tolerance limits.

7) Remove the UUT from the standard and set to the next test point as defined in Table 12 for the 1 inch (25 mm) micrometer head.

8) Repeat Items 5) and 6) for all remaining test points.

Alternate Method: 1) Install the shortest extension rod or end caps and set UUT to zero on the micrometer head. Wring together appropriate size gage blocks to measure the zero indication assembly.

2) Wring or attach the *Caliper Jaw End Blocks* from the gage block accessories and assure the setup is square and true. If using the connecting rods, minimal force is required to secure the end blocks to the gage block stack.

Note: For UUT with greater than 0.0001 inch resolution, gage block assemblies longer than 8.00 in (200 mm) will require 1 hour stabilization time before taking measurement.

3) Use the UUT to measure the gage block stack. Care must be taken to assure that the measurement is taken at the shortest distance between the caliper end block faces.

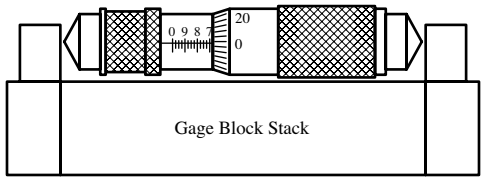


Fig. 27. Inside Micrometer Gage Block Stack Measurement

4) Repeat Items to 3) for each remaining test point. Measure each gage block setup and assure that the indication is within the tolerance limits as defined in the Table 4, Table 5, and Table 6 for the Type II Class 2, Type II Class 3 Style A, and Type II Class 3 Style B inside micrometers.

Extension Rod Calibration.—*Preferred Method:* 1) Remove the shortest extension rod or one end cap used in the linearity calibration and replace with the next UUT extension rod in the set.

2) Ensure the *Standard Measuring Machine* has retained its reference. Verify the zero setting if necessary. The *Supermicrometer* will require re-mastering every 1 inch and can only be used up to 10 inches (generally). The standard measuring machine uses a continuous measurement path but must be re-mastered every 8 inches.

3) For UUT with 0.0001 inch (0.001 mm) resolution, allow for 1 hour stabilization time for gage block stacks that are wrung to achieve nominal length over 8 inches (200 mm).

4) Using a flatted round or appropriate supporting device, mount the UUT into the standard. Assure the alignment of the measuring path and measure the UUT.

5) Confirm that the indication is within the tolerance limits as listed in the Table 4, Table 5, and Table 6 for the Type II Class 2, Type II Class 3 Style A, and Type II Class 3 Style B inside micrometer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

6) Repeat Items to 5) for all remaining extension rods, sleeves and end caps in the set.

Alternate Method: 1) Remove the shortest extension rod or one end cap used in the linearity calibration, and replace with the next UUT extension rod in the set.

2) Wring together a gage block stack to achieve the nominal desired length of the micrometer head at zero indication and the included extension rod.

3) Wring, or attach using the accessory attachment rods, the outside caliper jaws to the gage block stack. Assure stack is square and true. Minimal force is required to secure the outside caliper jaws to the gage block stack.

4) For UUT with 0.0001 inch (0.001 mm) resolution, allow for 1 hour stabilization time for gage block stacks that are wrung to achieve nominal length over 8 inches (200 mm).

5) Use the UUT to measure the gage block stack.

6) Confirm that the measured value is within the tolerance limits as listed in the Table 4, Table 5, and Table 6 for the Type II Class 2, Type II Class 3 Style A, and Type II Class 3 Style B inside micrometer.

7) Repeat Items to 6) for all remaining extension rods, sleeves and end caps in the set.

Calibration of Vernier, Dial and Digital Calipers

Preliminary Operations.—1) Review and become familiar with the entire calibration procedure before beginning calibration process. Ensure familiarity with setup and operation of all standards involved in the procedure.

2) Always observe safe handling methods for all standards and exercise caution in the handling of all precision standards.

3) Ensure the work area is clean, well illuminated, and free from excessive drafts and humidity.

4) Ensure measuring surfaces are clean and free of nicks and burrs that could affect the accuracy of the measurements. Observe the Outside Measuring Jaws and Inside Measuring Jaws for any possible damage and observe the unit for wear or deformation or any condition that may affect the parallelism of the measuring surfaces. Close the measuring jaws completely and tighten the lock screw. Hold the UUT in front of a strong light source and verify that there are no burrs on the OD or ID measuring jaws. If any condition of concern is observed in regards to nicks or burrs along the beam, light stoning with a hard Arkansas stone can be used with care to remove these incursions.

5) Observe the condition of the rack along the full length of a dial caliper to assure there is no damage to the rack gear tooth or embedded chips or dirt that will affect or damage the movement. Look for bent or damaged gearing. Open and close the slide slowly and listen and feel for evidence or broken or damaged drive pinion gear.

6) Assure that the movement along the length of the beam does not bind or indicate the presence of any nicks or burrs along the beam. Assure the movement is not too loose. Observe the position of the gib slide screws that they have not been removed or loosened.

7) Bring the UUT (Unit Under Test) into the controlled environment a minimum of 4 hours prior to beginning the calibration process. Allow all standards and UUT to stabilize to common temperature before proceeding.

Table 19. Equipment Requirements and Minimum Accuracy Specifications of Required Standards

Noun	Minimum Use Specifications	Recommended Measurement Standards	Alternative
Gage Block Set	Range: 0.050 to 4.000 inch 2.0 to 450 mm	Starrett Webber SC 81.A1 Starrett Webber S2C 88.MA1	Mitutoyo 516-401-16 Mitutoyo 516-442-10
Gage Block Set (Long Block)	5 to 84 inch 125 to 500 mm	Starrett Webber SS 8.A1X Starrett Webber SS 8.MA1X	Mitutoyo 516-762-16 Mitutoyo 516-753-10

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. *(Continued)* **Equipment Requirements and Minimum Accuracy Specifications of Required Standards**

Noun	Minimum Use Specifications	Recommended Measurement Standards	Alternative
Precision Micrometer	Range: 0–1.0000 inch 0–25 mm	Mitutoyo Series 293	Starrett No.3732
Precision Pin or Ball	0.500 inch / 12 mm	Van Keuren Class XX	Precision Ground Pin or Ball ±40 in / 0.001 mm
Surface Plate	Range: 24 x 36 Accuracy: Grade A	Starrett Crystal Pink EDP 80655	Mitutoyo 517-808

Note: Standards listed are recommended and are determined to meet the necessary accuracy requirements of the calibration process. Substitute or alternative standards may be used as long as they have a current in tolerance calibration status and have been determined to meet or exceed the minimum accuracy specifications as listed in Table 19.

Note: Special care should be taken to clean and apply protective coating when handling gage blocks or other precision standards with bare hands. The use of clean cotton or vinyl gloves is recommended to prevent corrosive oils from damaging precision surfaces.

Vernier, Dial and Digital Caliper Calibration Process.—The temperature of the calibration environment must be maintained at approximately 23° C with a fluctuation in temperature of no more than ±0.1° per hour.

Table 20. Range and Tolerance Limits

Feature	Range (inch)	Accuracy (inch)	Method
Scale Zero	Set at Zero	±0.0005	Determined by observation of scale
Jaw Parallelism	0.00–0.250	±0.001 inch	Measured with Precision cylindrical plug gage
ID Jaws (Nibs) Set at Scale Zero	0 to 6.000–0.250 0 to 9.000–0.300 0 to 12.000–0.300 0 to 24.000–0.300 0 to 36.000–0.500 0 to 48.000–0.500	(inch) +0.000 −0.005	Measured with precision micrometer
Outside (OD) Jaws	0–6.00 inch 6–24 inch 24–48 inch	±0.0010 inch ±0.0020 inch ±0.0030 inch	Determined at 4 equal points along the main scale by direct comparison with gage blocks
ID Jaws (Knife Edge)	0–6.00 inch 6–24 inch 24–48 inch	±0.0010 inch ±0.0020 inch ±0.0030 inch	Measured with gage blocks
Depth Rod	0.000–6.000 inch	±0.001 inch	Measured with gage blocks

Note: Metric equivalents apply to all tolerance limits stated in Table 20. All tolerances based on AFMETCAL, NAVAIR and GGG-C-111guidelines and specifications. Default to manufacturers specifications if different from those represented here.

Nib Calibration, Inside Measurement, Type 1.—*Class 1, 2, and 3:* The *Total Nib Width* (measured to the fourth place) shall be measured over both nibs with the jaws fully closed as shown in Fig. 28. The offset value shall be marked on the *Inside Measurement* side of the sliding jaw or main beam and on both sides of the main beam of the Type 1, Class 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

a) Alternately the vernier scale can be adjusted to directly compensate for and deviation from nominal dimension of the nib. This can be accomplished by adjusting the inside measurement vernier scale to zero on a known standard. Measurement of the nib nominal dimension must still be performed as excessive wear to the nib will result in adjustment in excess of the available range of the vernier scale.

b) Assemble a 1.000 inch gage block with accessory end blocks as shown in Fig. 30 of the *Calibration of Inside Dimension Jaws (Nibs)* section.

c) Measure the gage block stack and adjust the vernier scale to zero at this known point.

d) This method is applied to the Type 1 style caliper only.

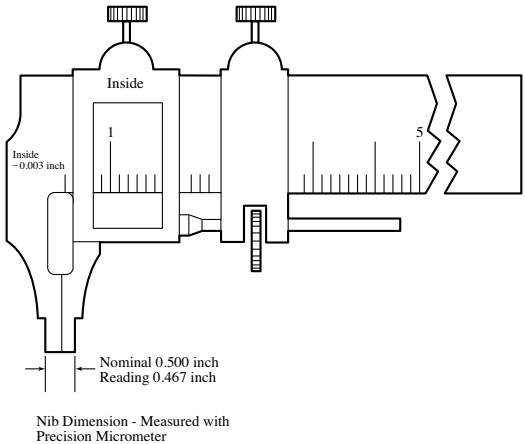


Fig. 28. Nib Dimension Measurement Location

Calibration of Jaw Parallelism.—1) Slide jaws together and tighten the sliding jaw lock screw. Hold the UUT in front of a strong light source. Observe that no light is visible between the jaw measuring surfaces. Look carefully for evidence of burrs, damage to the measuring surfaces, excessive wear or bowing.

a) If any burrs or damage appears gently stone the jaws with a white hard Arkansas stone. Only use a super fine grain stone for this operation.

2) Loosen the sliding jaw lock screw and open the jaws. Place the precision cylindrical plug gage or ball in between the jaws as close as possible to the beam and measure the standard. Observe the scale, dial, or digital reading.

3) Move the plug gage or ball to the opposite end of the measuring jaws (tip) and remeasure. The difference between the two readings must be within tolerance stated in Table 20. *Range and Tolerance Limits* for "Outside Jaws".

4) If the readings are within tolerance, proceed to Calibration of Outside Jaws. If adjustment is needed, go to Items 5) through 7), in *Adjustment of Gib Slide Set Screws*.

Adjustment of Gib Slide Set Screws.—5) Using a small precision screwdriver loosen the gib slide set screws then retighten evenly with a slight pressure.

a) It is important that both set screws are tightened evenly and a slight resistance is felt in the sliding jaw full range movement.

6) Operate the UUT several times over its full range to ensure that the sliding jaw can be moved smoothly over the full length of the beam.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

7) Repeat steps 1 through 3 to verify the Jaw Parallelism in within tolerance as stated in Table 2 for Outside Jaws.

8) If the readings are within tolerance, proceed to *Calibration of Outside Jaws*. If readings are not within tolerance, record all readings as "As Found" and consult the end user to determine the course of action that they desire. Excessive damage or wear to the Jaws, Nibs or ID measuring contacts can result in a high degree of uncertainty in all measurements taken with the instrument and is cause for concern. Consideration of these facts should be addressed before proceeding.

Calibration of Outside Jaws.—1) Slide the UUT jaws together and tighten the sliding jaw set screw.

2) Set zero for this calibration measurement.

a) For vernier calipers close the jaws and observe the alignment of the zero indication on the main scale and vernier scale.

b) For dial calipers, adjust the bezel for proper zero indication.

c) For digital calipers, press the ZERO set button on the face of the UUT. Verify the digital indication is between −0.0005 and +0.0005.

3) Loosen the sliding jaw lock screw. Open and close the sliding jaw to verify repeatability of the zero setting.

a) For digital calipers, loosen the jaw set screw and open the calipers to a mid-point location. Lock the jaw set screw then press the zero set switch on the front of the instrument. Verify the digital indication is between -0.0005 and +0.0005. Close the slide jaw and zero the instrument.

4) Select the gage blocks needed to check the caliper at the test points listed below:

a) For dial calipers, select the proper gage blocks to check the caliper at the 3 o'clock, 6 o'clock, 9 o'clock and 12 o'clock positions of the dial face in the first inch. (0.125, 0.550, 0.675, 1.000)

b) For digital and vernier calipers, select gage blocks equal to 25, 50, 75, 100 percent of the first inch (0.250, 0.500, 0.750 and 1.000 inches).

5) Select the gage blocks needed to check the UUT at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full scale. Place the UUT and all gage blocks on the surface plate for a minimum of 15 minutes to stabilize. The gage blocks should have both working surfaces exposed, as in Fig. 29.

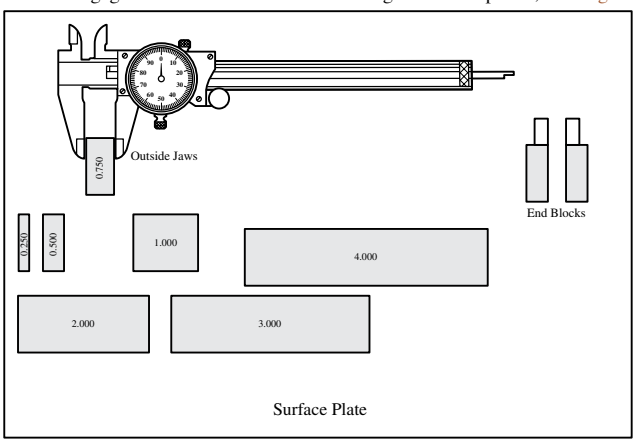


Fig. 29. Gage Blocks and End Blocks Staged for Calibration of 6-inch Dial Caliper

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

6) Open the outside jaws and measure the gage block that equates to the first test point defined in step 4. Ensure that the jaws are squarely placed with a slight pressure against the gage block measuring surfaces. Use the thumb wheel or fine adjust to apply gentle but steady pressure against the gage block. Rock the caliper gently to ensure that the OD measuring faces are seated squarely. Seek the smallest reading obtainable with gentle pressure. Record the value.

7) Repeat Item 6) for remaining test points defined in Item 4), parts a) and b), and Item 5).

8) If the outside jaws are within tolerance, proceed to the next section: *Calibration of Inside Dimension Jaws (Nibs)*. If the outside jaws are found Out of Tolerance, continue through each calibration section and record all data as "As Found" prior to any further adjustments. Upon completion of procedure, report any out of tolerance conditions that may have been discovered. *Any out of tolerance conditions must be addressed before returning the UUT to service*.

Calibration of Inside Dimension Jaws (Nibs).—1) Select the gage block needed to check the UUT at the first test point as defined above in Item 4) of *Calibration of Outside Jaws*. Clean the surface of the gage block and end blocks with lint free wipe and alcohol and assemble the Accessory End Blocks and assure they are secured in position snugly.

2) Close the caliper jaws and assure the dial or digital indication or vernier scale indicate zero.

3) Measure the dimension of the gage block as illustrated in Fig. 30. Use a gentle rocking motion to assure that the jaws are seated squarely. Seek the lowest reading as this is the true distance between the parallel faces of the end blocks.

Note: Excessive force must be avoided as this can cause deformation of the UUT jaws and result in erroneous readings. A gentle consistent feel must be used to provide an accurate reading. If too much force is applied or the ID measuring jaws are not in line and perpendicular to the parallel planes of the end blocks, a larger and unrepeatable reading will result. Repeat all measurements several times to assure that you have a true reading.

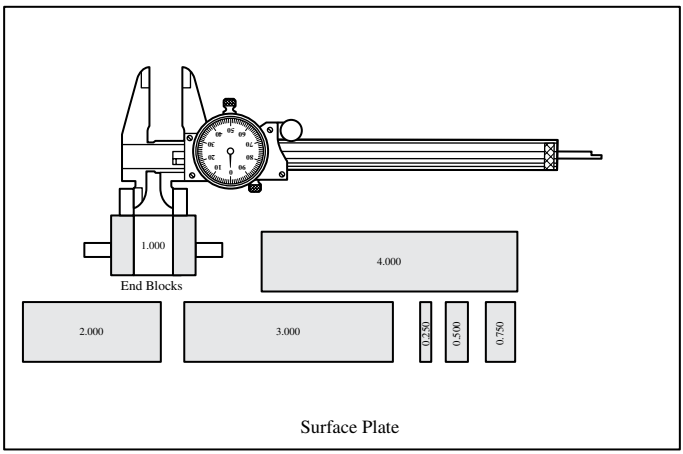


Fig. 30. Inside Dimension Measurement of Gage Blocks using Accessory End Blocks

4) Repeat the set up and readings at the 3 o'clock, 6 o'clock, 9 o'clock and 12 o'clock positions of the dial face in the first inch. For vernier and digital calipers measure at 0.250, 0.500, 0.750 and 1.000 inches. Record all readings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5) Measure the remainder of the length of the UUT at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full scale. Select the appropriate gage blocks and assemble as illustrated in Fig. 30. Measure each test point and record all readings.

Calibration of Depth Rod.—1) Select a 1.000 inch gage block and position it on the surface plate with the measuring surface against the plate.

2) Close the caliper jaws completely and place the end of the mail beam flat on the surface plate in a vertical position. Apply slight downward pressure bringing the depth rod in contact with the surface plate. Zero the dial or display at this point.

a) Type 1 Class 1 calipers do not have depth measurement capability.

b) Type 1 Class 2 have a depth rod that is directly tied to the Vernier Scale. If the Zero Reading is OOT (out of tolerance) at this point the depth rod will require service or replacement.

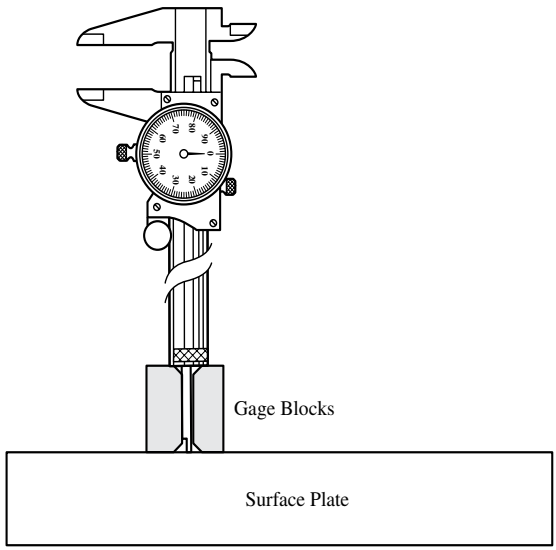


Fig. 31. Caliper Depth Rod Extended through Center Relief Hole of Gage Block.

3) Place the caliper depth rod through the center relief hole of the gage block and extend the rod to make contact with the surface plate as shown in Fig. 31. Assure that the end of the main beam is seated squarely on the surface of the gage block. Apply gently downward pressure with the thumb wheel until contact on the surface plate is felt. Using the thumb wheel, lift the depth rod and re-apply contact to repeat the measurement. Confirm the measurement repeats before accepting.

a) Alternately, the depth rod can be extended down the outside of the gage block while in direct contact with the outer surface. The end of the main beam is squarely in contact with the surface of the gage block. This method can be used with a rectangular gage block that has no center relief hole or to assure a square contact between the end of the main beam and the depth rod.

4) If the depth rod is determined to be within tolerance, proceed to the next section, *Calibration of Step Height*. If the depth rod is found out of tolerance, continue through

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

each calibration section and record all data as "As Found" prior to any further action. Upon completion of procedure, report any out of tolerance conditions that may have been discovered. *Any out of tolerance conditions must be addressed before returning the UUT to service*.

Calibration of Step Height.—1) Close the caliper jaws completely and set zero on the dial or display.

2) Place the caliper head downward on the surface plate as shown in Fig. 32.

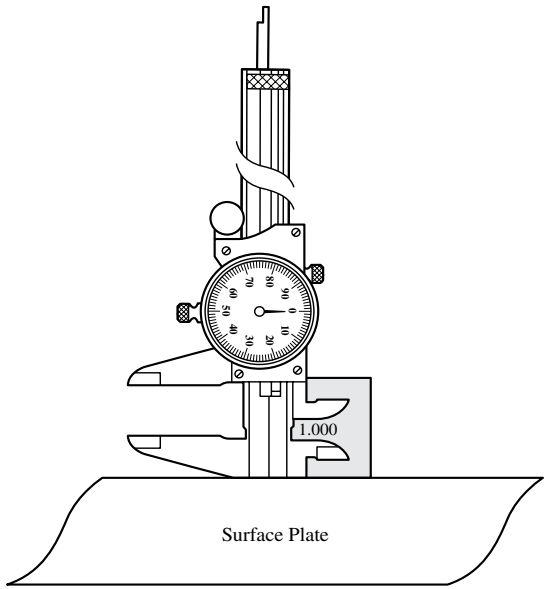


Fig. 32. Step Height Measurement with Gage Block in Position behind Main Beam Engaging Step Height Measurement Surface

3) Open the caliper jaws to accommodate the measurement of a 1.000 inch gage block by the Step Height measuring surface on the back side of the moveable jaw.

4) Bring the *Step Height* measuring surface into contact with the surface of the gage block. Assure the back of the main beam is in direct contact with the outside of the gage block to establish a good perpendicular condition.

5) Apply gently downward pressure with the thumb wheel.

6) Repeat the measurement several times to confirm repeatability before accepting the measurement.

7) Record the measurement. There is no adjustment for this feature.

8) If the Step Height is determined to be within tolerance, remove and store all standards in their appropriate containers and apply any corrosion protection methods as required. If the step height is found Out of Tolerance, record all data as "As Found" prior to any further action. Upon completion of procedure, report any out of tolerance conditions that may have been discovered. *Any out of tolerance conditions must be addressed before returning the UUT to service*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calibration Tolerance Tables

Table 21a. Calibration Tolerance Tables, English

Size (in.)	Range (in.)	Permissible Flexure (in.)	Measuring Faces		Indicated Measurement Error, max. (in.)	Spindle/Anvil Alignment Error max. (in.)
			Flatness, max. (in.)	Parallelism, max. (in.)		
1	0–1	0.0001	0.00005	0.00005	0.0001	0.002
2	1–2	0.0001	0.00005	0.00010	0.00015	0.003
3	2–3	0.0001	0.00005	0.00015	0.00015	0.0045
4	3–4	0.00015	0.00008	0.0002	0.0002	0.006
5	4–5	0.00015	0.00008	0.0002	0.0002	0.007
6	5–6	0.00015	0.00008	0.0002	0.0002	0.009
7	6–7	0.0002	0.00008	0.00025	0.00025	0.010
8	7–8	0.0002	0.00008	0.00025	0.00025	0.010
9	8–9	0.0003	0.0001	0.00025	0.00025	0.010
10	9–10	0.0003	0.0001	0.0003	0.0003	0.010
11	10–11	0.0003	0.0001	0.0003	0.0003	0.010
12	11–12	0.0003	0.0001	0.0003	0.0003	0.010
13 to 18	Per 1 inch	0.0004	0.0001	0.0004	0.0004	0.010
19 to 24	"	0.0005	0.0001	0.0005	0.0005	0.010
25 to 30	"	0.0006	0.0001	0.0006	0.0006	0.010
31 to 36	"	0.0007	0.0001	0.0007	0.0007	0.010

Table 21b. Calibration Tolerance Tables, Metric

Size (mm)	Range (mm)	Permissible Flexure (mm)	Measuring Faces		Indicated Measurement Error, max. (mm)	Spindle/Anvil Alignment Error, max. (mm)
			Flatness, max. (mm)	Parallelism, max. (mm)		
13	0–13	0.0025	0.001	0.0012	0.003	0.03
25	0–25	0.0025	0.0012	0.0012	0.004	0.05
50	25–50	0.0025	0.0012	0.0025	0.004	0.08
75	50–75	0.0025	0.0012	0.004	0.004	0.11
100	75–100	0.004	0.002	0.005	0.005	0.15
125	100–125	0.004	0.002	0.005	0.005	0.19
150	125–150	0.004	0.002	0.005	0.005	0.23
175	150–175	0.005	0.002	0.006	0.006	0.25
200	175–200	0.005	0.002	0.006	0.006	0.25
225	200–225	0.005	0.002	0.006	0.006	0.25
250	225–250	0.008	0.0025	0.0075	0.0075	0.25
275	250–275	0.008	0.0025	0.0075	0.0075	0.25
300	275–300	0.008	0.0025	0.0075	0.0075	0.25

Note: Indicated Measurement Error tolerances for UUT with 0.001 inch graduations (no vernier scale) are set to ±0.001 up to 30 inch, and ±0.002 inch from 31 to 36 inch. Tolerances of UUT over 36 inch are subject to manufacturer's specification. Tolerance for UUT with a resolution of 50 µin shall be ±50µin for 0–1 inch; ±0.0001 inch for 1 through 4 inches; ±0.0002 inch for 4 three 9 inches; ±0.0003 inch for 9 three 12 inches; ±0.0004 inch for 12 to 18 inches; ±0.0005 for 18 to 24 inches; ±0.0006 for 24 to 30 inches; and ±0.0007 for 30 to 36 inches. All metric equivalents shall apply to UUT of this resolution. Metric Scale UUT with 0.01 mm graduations are set at ±0.01 mm for up to 300 mm. Tolerances above 300 mm are subject to manufacturers specifications.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SURFACE TEXTURE

American National Standard Surface Texture (Surface Roughness, Waviness, and Lay)

American National Standard ANSI/ASME B46.1-2009 is concerned with the geometric irregularities of surfaces of solid materials, physical specimens for gaging roughness, and the characteristics of stylus instrumentation for measuring roughness. The standard defines surface texture and its constituents: roughness, waviness, lay, and flaws. A set of symbols for drawings, specifications, and reports is established. To ensure a uniform basis for measurements, the standard also provides specifications for Precision Reference Specimens, and Roughness Comparison Specimens, and establishes requirements for stylus-type instruments. The standard is not concerned with luster, appearance, color, corrosion resistance, wear resistance, hardness, subsurface microstructure, surface integrity, or many other characteristics that may govern considerations in specific applications.

The standard is expressed in SI metric units, but US customary units may be used without prejudice. The standard does not define the degrees of surface roughness and waviness or type of lay suitable for specific purposes, nor does it specify the means by which any degree of such irregularities may be obtained or produced. However, criteria for selection of surface qualities and information on instrument techniques and methods of producing, controlling and inspecting surfaces are included in Appendixes attached to the standard. The Appendix sections are not considered a part of the standard: they are included for clarification or information purposes only.

Surfaces, in general, are very complex in character. The standard deals only with the height, width, and direction of surface irregularities because these characteristics are of practical importance in specific applications. Surface texture designations as delineated in this standard may not be a sufficient index to performance. Other part characteristics such as dimensional and geometrical relationships, material, metallurgy, and stress must also be controlled.

Definitions of Terms Relating to the Surfaces of Solid Materials.—The terms and ratings in the standard relate to surfaces produced by such means as abrading, casting, coating, cutting, etching, plastic deformation, sintering, wear, and erosion.

Error of form is considered to be that deviation from the nominal surface caused by errors in machine tool ways, guides, insecure clamping or incorrect alignment of the workpiece or wear, none of which are included in surface texture. Out-of-roundness and out-of-flatness are examples of errors of form. See ANSI/ASME B89.3.1-1972 (R2003) for measurement of out-of-roundness.

Flaws are unintentional, unexpected, and unwanted interruptions in the topography typical of a part surface and are defined as such only when agreed upon by buyer and seller. If flaws are defined, the surface should be inspected specifically to determine whether flaws are present, and rejected or accepted prior to performing final surface roughness measurements. If defined flaws are not present, or if flaws are not defined, then interruptions in the part surface may be included in roughness measurements.

Lay is the direction of the predominant surface pattern, ordinarily determined by the production method used.

Roughness consists of the finer irregularities of the surface texture, usually including those irregularities that result from the inherent action of the production process. These irregularities are considered to include traverse feed marks and other irregularities within the limits of the roughness sampling length.

Surface is the boundary of an object that separates that object from another object, substance or space.

Surface, measured is the real surface obtained by instrumental or other means.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

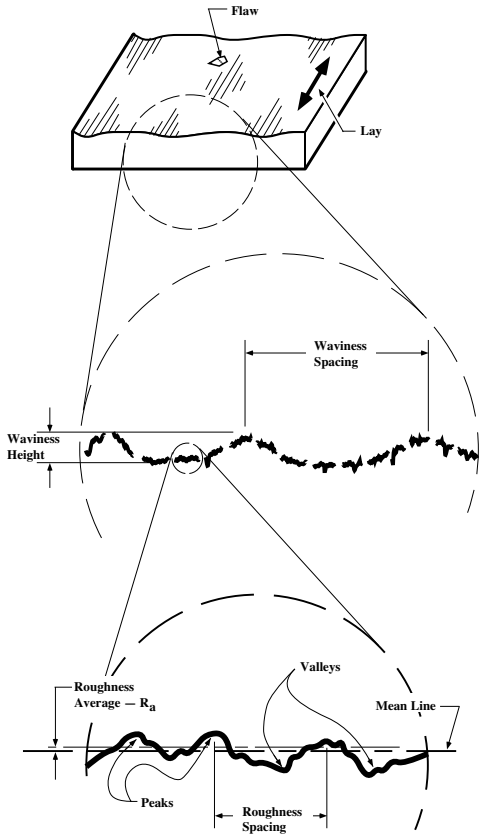


Fig. 1. Pictorial Display of Surface Characteristics

Surface, nominal is the intended surface contour (exclusive of any intended surface roughness), the shape and extent of which is usually shown and dimensioned on a drawing or descriptive specification.

Surface, real is the actual boundary of the object. Manufacturing processes determine its deviation from the nominal surface.

Surface texture is repetitive or random deviations from the real surface that forms the three-dimensional topography of the surface. Surface texture includes roughness, waviness, lay and flaws. Fig. 1 is an example of a unidirectional lay surface. Roughness and waviness parallel to the lay are not represented in the expanded views.

Waviness is the more widely spaced component of surface texture. Unless otherwise noted, waviness includes all irregularities whose spacing is greater than the roughness sampling length and less than the waviness sampling length. Waviness may result from

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

such factors as machine or work deflections, vibration, chatter, heat treatment, or warping strains. Roughness may be considered as being superposed on a 'wavy' surface.

Definitions of Terms Relating to the Measurement of Surface Texture.—Terms regarding surface texture pertain to the geometric irregularities of surfaces and include roughness, waviness and lay.

Profile is the contour of the surface in a plane measured normal, or perpendicular, to the surface, unless another angle is specified.

Graphical centerline. See Mean Line.

Height (z) is considered to be those measurements of the profile in a direction normal, or perpendicular, to the nominal profile. For digital instruments, the profile Z(x) is approximated by a set of digitized values. Height parameters are expressed in micrometers (μm).

Height range (z) is the maximum peak-to-valley surface height that can be detected accurately with the instrument. It is measurement normal, or perpendicular, to the nominal profile and is another key specification.

Mean line (M) is the line about which deviations are measured and is parallel to the general direction of the profile within the limits of the sampling length. See Fig. 2. The mean line may be determined in one of two ways. The filtered mean line is the centerline established by the selected cutoff and its associated circuitry in an electronic roughness average measuring instrument. The least squares mean line is formed by the nominal profile, but by dividing into selected lengths the sum of the squares of the deviations minimizes the deviation from the nominal form. The form of the nominal profile could be a curve or a straight line.

Peak is the point of maximum height on that portion of a profile that lies above the mean line and between two intersections of the profile with the mean line.

Profile measured is a representation of the real profile obtained by instrumental or other means. When the measured profile is a graphical representation, it will usually be distorted through the use of different vertical and horizontal magnifications but shall otherwise be as faithful to the profile as technically possible.

Profile, modified is the measured profile where filter mechanisms (including the instrument datum) are used to minimize certain surface texture characteristics and emphasize others. Instrument users apply profile modifications typically to differentiate surface roughness from surface waviness.

Profile, nominal is the profile of the nominal surface; it is the intended profile (exclusive of any intended roughness profile). Profile is usually drawn in an x-z coordinate system. See Fig. 2.

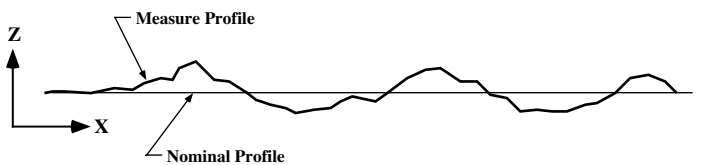


Fig. 2. Nominal and Measured Profiles

Profile, real is the profile of the real surface.

Profile, total is the measured profile where the heights and spacing may be amplified differently, but otherwise no filtering takes place.

Roughness profile is obtained by filtering out the longer wavelengths characteristic of waviness.

Roughness spacing is the average spacing between adjacent peaks of the measured profile within the roughness sampling length.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Roughness topography is the modified topography obtained by filtering out the longer wavelengths of waviness and form error.

Sampling length is the nominal spacing within which a surface characteristic is determined. The range of sampling lengths is a key specification of a measuring instrument.

Spacing is the distance between specified points on the profile measured parallel to the nominal profile.

Spatial (x) resolution is the smallest wavelength that can be resolved to 50 percent of the actual amplitude. This also is a key specification of a measuring instrument.

System height resolution is the minimum height that can be distinguished from background noise of the measurement instrument. Background noise values can be determined by measuring approximate rms roughness of a sample surface where actual roughness is significantly less than the background noise of the measuring instrument. It is a key instrumentation specification.

Topography is the three-dimensional representation of geometric surface irregularities.

Topography, measured is the three-dimensional representation of geometric surface irregularities obtained by measurement.

Topography, modified is the three-dimensional representation of geometric surface irregularities obtained by measurement but filtered to minimize certain surface characteristics and accentuate others.

Valley is the point of maximum depth on that portion of a profile that lies below the mean line and between two intersections of the profile with the mean line.

Waviness, evaluation length (L), is the length within which waviness parameters are determined.

Waviness, long-wavelength cutoff (lcw) is the spatial wavelength above which the undulations of waviness profile are removed to identify form parameters. A digital Gaussian filter can be used to separate form error from waviness, but its use must be specified.

Waviness profile is obtained by filtering out the shorter roughness wavelengths characteristic of roughness and the longer wavelengths associated with the part form parameters.

Waviness sampling length is a concept no longer used. See waviness long-wavelength cutoff and waviness evaluation length.

Waviness short-wavelength cutoff (lsw) is the spatial wavelength below which roughness parameters are removed by electrical or digital filters.

Waviness topography is the modified topography obtained by filtering out the shorter wavelengths of roughness and the longer wavelengths associated with form error.

Waviness spacing is the average spacing between adjacent peaks of the measured profile within the waviness sampling length.

Sampling Lengths.— Sampling length is the normal interval for a single value of a surface parameter. Generally it is the longest spatial wavelength to be included in the profile measurement. Range of sampling lengths is an important specification for a measuring instrument.

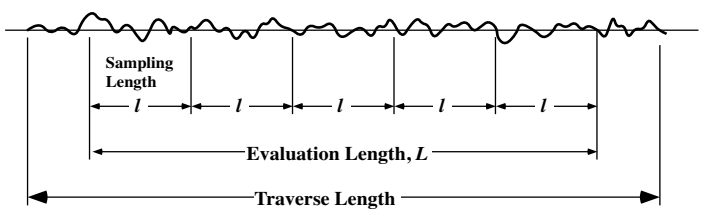


Fig. 3. Traverse Length

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Roughness sampling length (l) is the sampling length within which the roughness average is determined. This length is chosen to separate the profile irregularities designated as roughness from those irregularities designated as waviness. It is different from evaluation length *(L)* and the traversing length. See Fig. 3.

Evaluation length (L) is the length the surface characteristics are evaluated. The evaluation length is a key specification of a measuring instrument.

Traversing length is the profile length traversed to establish a representative evaluation length. It is always longer than the evaluation length. See Section 4.4.4 of ANSI/ASME B46.1-2009 for values that should be used for different types of measurements.

Cutoff is the electrical response characteristic of the measuring instrument which is selected to limit the spacing of the surface irregularities to be included in the assessment of surface texture. Cutoff is rated in millimeters. In most electrical averaging instruments, the cutoff can be user-selected and is a characteristic of the instrument rather than of the surface being measured. In specifying the cutoff, care must be taken to choose a value that will include all the surface irregularities to be assessed.

Waviness sampling length (l) is a concept no longer used. See waviness long-wavelength cutoff and waviness evaluation length.

Roughness Parameters.—Roughness refers to the fine irregularities of the surface texture resulting from the production process or material condition.

Roughness average (Ra or R_a), also known as arithmetic average (AA), is the arithmetic average of the absolute values of the measured profile height deviations divided by the evaluation length, L. This is shown as the shaded area of Fig. 4 and generally includes sampling lengths or cutoffs. For graphical determinations of roughness average, the height deviations are measured normal, or perpendicular, to the chart center line.

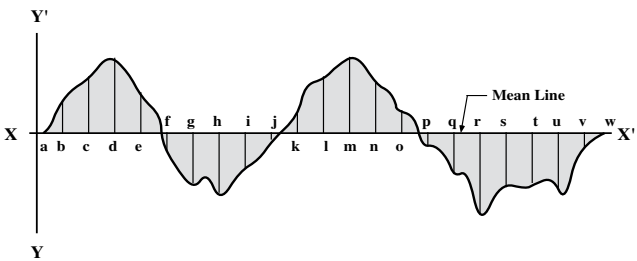


Fig. 4.

Roughness average is expressed in micrometers (μm). A micrometer is one millionth of a meter (0.000001 meter). A microinch (μin) is one millionth of an inch (0.000001 inch). One microinch equals 0.0254 micrometer (1 μin. = 0.0254 μm).

Roughness average (Ra) value from continuously averaging meter reading may be made of readings from stylus-type instruments of the continuously averaging type. To ensure uniform interpretation, it should be understood that the reading that is considered significant is the mean reading around which the needle tends to dwell or fluctuate with a small amplitude.

Roughness is also indicated by the root-mean-square (rms) average, which is the square root of the average value squared, within the evaluation length and measured from the mean line shown in Fig. 4, expressed in micrometers. A roughness-measuring instrument calibrated for rms average usually reads about 11 percent higher than an instrument calibrated for arithmetical average. Such instruments usually can be recalibrated to read arithmetical average. Some manufacturers consider the difference between rms and AA to be small enough that rms on a drawing may be read as AA for many purposes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Roughness evaluation length (L), for statistical purposes should, whenever possible, consist of five sampling lengths (l). Use of other than five sampling lengths must be clearly indicated.

Waviness Parameters.—Waviness is the more widely spaced component of surface texture. Roughness may be thought of as superimposed on waviness.

Waviness height (Wt) is the peak-to-valley height of the modified profile with roughness and part form errors removed by filtering, smoothing or other means. This value is typically three or more times the roughness average. The measurement is taken normal, or perpendicular, to the nominal profile within the limits of the waviness sampling length.

Waviness evaluation length (Lw) is the evaluation length required to determine waviness parameters. For waviness, the sampling length concept is no longer used. Rather, only waviness evaluation length (*Lw*) and waviness long-wavelength cutoff (*lew*) are defined. For better statistics, the waviness evaluation length should be several times the waviness long-wavelength cutoff.

Relation of Surface Roughness to Tolerances.—Because the measurement of surface roughness involves the determination of the average linear deviation of the measured surface from the nominal surface, there is a direct relationship between the dimensional tolerance on a part and the permissible surface roughness. It is evident that a requirement for the accurate measurement of a dimension is that the variations introduced by surface roughness should not exceed the dimensional tolerances. If this is not the case, the measurement of the dimension will be subject to an uncertainty greater than the required tolerance, as illustrated in Fig. 5.

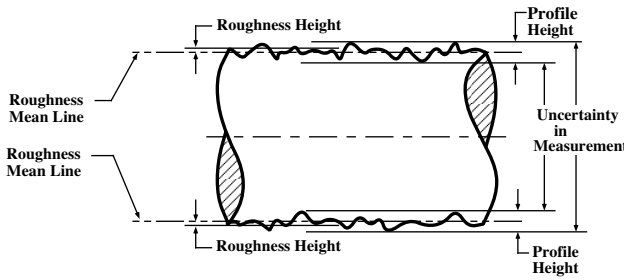


Fig. 5.

The standard method of measuring surface roughness involves the determination of the average deviation from the mean surface. On most surfaces the total profile height of the surface roughness (peak-to-valley height) will be approximately four times (4×) the measured average surface roughness. This factor will vary somewhat with the character of the surface under consideration, but the value of four may be used to establish approximate profile heights.

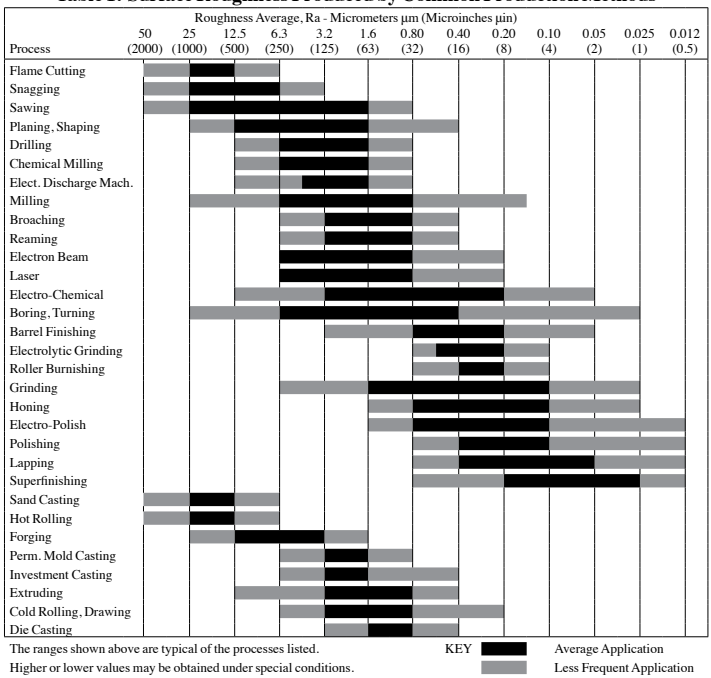
From these considerations it follows that if the arithmetical average value of surface roughness specified on a part exceeds one eighth of the dimensional tolerance, the whole tolerance will be taken up by the roughness height. In most cases, a smaller roughness specification than this will be found; but, on parts where very small dimensional tolerances are given, it is necessary to specify a suitably small surface roughness so useful dimensional measurements can be made. The tables on pages 648 and 674 show the relations between machining processes and working tolerances.

Values for surface roughness produced by common processing methods are shown in Table 1. The ability of a processing operation to produce a specific surface roughness depends on many factors. For example, in surface grinding, the final surface depends on the peripheral speed of the wheel, the speed of the traverse, the rate of feed, the grit size, bonding material and state of dress of the wheel, the amount and type of lubrication at the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

point of cutting, and the mechanical properties of the piece being ground. A small change in any of the above factors can have a marked effect on the surface produced.

Table 1. Surface Roughness Produced by Common Production Methods



Instrumentation for Surface Texture Measurement.—Instrumentation used for measurement of surface texture, including roughness and waviness generally falls into six types. These include:

Type I, Profiling Contact Skidless Instruments: Used for very smooth to very rough surfaces. Used for roughness and may measure waviness. Can generate filtered or unfiltered profiles and may have a selection of filters and parameters for data analysis. Examples include: 1) skidless stylus-type with LVDT (linear variable differential transformer) vertical transducers; 2) skidless-type using an interferometric transducer; 3) skidless stylus-type using capacitance transducer.

Type II, Profiling Non-contact Instruments: Capable of full profiling or topographical analysis. Non-contact operation may be advantageous for softness but may vary with sample type and reflectivity. Can generate filtered or unfiltered profiles but may have difficulty with steeply inclined surfaces. Examples include: 1) interferometric microscope; 2) optical focus sending; 3) Nomarski differential profiling; 4) laser triangulation; 5) scanning electron microscope (SEM) stereoscopy; 6) confocal optical microscope.

Type III, Scanned Probe Microscope: Features high spatial resolution (at or near the atomic scale) but area of measurement may be limited. Examples include: 1) scanning tunneling microscope (STM) and 2) atomic force microscope (AFM).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type IV, Profiling Contact Skidded Instruments: Uses a skid as a datum to eliminate longer wavelengths; thus cannot be used for waviness or errors of form. May have a selection of filters and parameters and generates an output recording of filtered and skid-modified profiles. Examples include: 1) skidded, stylus-type with LVDT vertical measuring transducer and 2) fringe-field capacitance (FFC) transducer.

Type V, Skidded Instruments with Parameters Only: Uses a skid as a datum to eliminate longer wavelengths; thus cannot be used for waviness or errors of form. Does not generate a profile. Filters are typically 2RC type and generate Ra, but other parameters may be available. Examples include: 1) skidded, stylus-type with piezoelectric measuring transducer and 2) skidded, stylus-type with moving coil measuring transducer.

Type VI, Area Averaging Methods: Used to measure averaged parameters over defined areas, but do not generate profiles. Examples include: 1) parallel plate capacitance (PPC) method; 2) total integrated scatter (TIS); 3) angle resolved scatter (ARS)/bi-directional reflectance distribution function (BRDF).

Selecting Cutoff for Roughness Measurements.—In general, surfaces will contain irregularities with a large range of widths. Surface texture instruments are designed to respond only to irregularity spacings less than a given value, called cutoff. In some cases, such as surfaces in which actual contact area with a mating surface is important, the largest convenient cutoff will be used. In other cases, such as surfaces subject to fatigue failure, only the irregularities of small width will be important, and more significant values will be obtained when a short cutoff is used. In still other cases, such as identifying chatter marks on machined surfaces, information is needed on only the widely space irregularities. For such measurements, a large cutoff value and a larger radius stylus should be used.

The effect of variation in cutoff can be understood better by reference to Fig. 6. The profile at the top is the true movement of a stylus on a surface having a roughness spacing of about 1 mm and the profiles below are interpretations of the same surface with cutoff value settings of 0.8 mm, 0.25 mm and 0.08 mm, respectively. It can be seen that the trace based on 0.8 mm cutoff includes most of the coarse irregularities and all of the fine irregularities of the surface. The trace based on 0.25 mm excludes the coarser irregularities but includes the fine and medium fine. The trace based on 0.08 mm cutoff includes only the very fine irregularities. In this example, the effect of reducing the cutoff has been to reduce the roughness average indication. However, had the surface been made up only of irregularities as fine as those of the bottom trace, the roughness average values would have been the same for all three cutoff settings.

In other words, all irregularities having a spacing less than the value of the cutoff used are included in a measurement. Obviously, if the cutoff value is too small to include coarser irregularities of a surface, the measurements will not agree with those taken with a larger cutoff. For this reason, care must be taken to choose a cutoff value which will include all of the surface irregularities it is desired to assess.

To become proficient in the use of continuously averaging stylus-type instruments, the inspector or machine operator must realize that for uniform interpretation the reading considered significant is the mean reading around which the needle tends to dwell or fluctuate under small amplitude.

Drawing Practices for Surface Texture Symbols.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME Y14.36-2018 establishes the method to designate symbolic controls for surface texture of solid materials. It includes methods for controlling roughness, waviness, and lay, and provides a set of symbols for use on drawings, specifications, or other documents. The standard is expressed in SI metric units, but US customary units may be used without prejudice. Units used (metric or non-metric) should be consistent with the other units used on the drawing or documents. Approximate non-metric equivalents are shown for reference.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

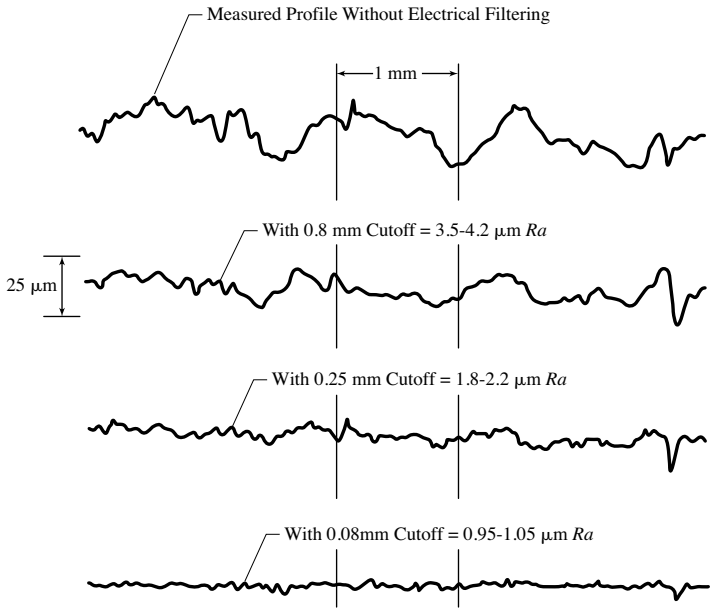

Measured Profile Without Electrical Filtering
1 mm
With 0.8 mm Cutoff = 3.5-4.2 µm Ra
25 µm
With 0.25 mm Cutoff = 1.8-2.2 µm Ra
With 0.08mm Cutoff = 0.95-1.05 µm Ra

Fig. 6. Effects of Various Cutoff Values

Surface Texture Symbol.—The symbol used to designate control of surface irregularities is shown in Fig. 7b and Fig. 7d. Where surface texture values other than roughness average are specified, the symbol must be drawn with the horizontal extension as shown in Fig. 7f.

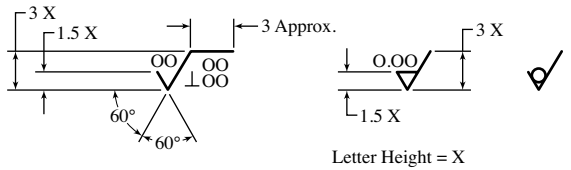
Use of Surface Texture Symbols: When required from a functional standpoint, the desired surface characteristics should be specified. Where no surface texture control is specified, the surface produced by normal manufacturing methods is satisfactory provided it is within the limits of size (and form) specified in accordance with ASME Y14.5-2018, Dimensioning and Tolerancing. It is considered good practice to always specify some maximum value, either specifically or by default (for example, in the manner of the note shown in Fig. 8 on page 818).

Material Removal Required or Prohibited: The surface texture symbol is modified when necessary to require or prohibit removal of material. When it is necessary to indicate that a surface must be produced by removal of material by machining, specify the symbol shown in Fig. 7b. When required, the amount of material to be removed is specified, as shown in Fig. 7c, in millimeters for metric drawings and in inches for non-metric drawings. Tolerance for material removal may be added to the basic value shown or specified in a general note. When it is necessary to indicate that a surface must be produced without material removal, specify the machining prohibited symbol as shown in Fig. 7d.

Proportions of Surface Texture Symbols: The recommended proportions for drawing the surface texture symbol are shown in Fig. 7f. The letter height and line width should be the same as those for dimensions and dimension lines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Surface Texture Symbols and Construction

Symbol	Meaning
Fig. 7a.	Basic Surface Texture Symbol. Surface may be produced by any method except when the bar or circle (Fig. 7b or Fig. 7d) is specified.
Fig. 7b.	Material Removal By Machining Is Required. The horizontal bar indicates that material removal by machining is required to produce the surface and that material must be provided for that purpose.
Fig. 7c.	Material Removal Allowance. The number indicates the amount of stock to be removed by machining in millimeters (or inches). Tolerances may be added to the basic value shown or in general note.
Fig. 7d.	Material Removal Prohibited. The circle in the V-shape indicates that the surface must be produced by processes such as casting, forging, hot finishing, cold finishing, die casting, powder metallurgy or injection molding without subsequent removal of material.
Fig. 7e.	Surface Texture Symbol. To be used when any surface characteristics are specified above the horizontal line or the right of the symbol. Surface may be produced by any method except when the bar or circle (Fig. 7b and Fig. 7d) is specified.
 Fig. 7f.	

Applying Surface Texture Symbols.—The point of the symbol should be on a line representing the surface, an extension line of the surface, or a leader line directed to the surface, or to an extension line. The symbol may be specified following a diameter dimension. Although ASME Y14.5-2018, "Dimensioning and Tolerancing," specifies that normally all textual dimensions and notes should be read from the bottom of the drawing, the surface texture symbol itself with its textual values may be rotated as required. Regardless, the long leg (and extension) must be to the right as the symbol is read. For parts requiring extensive and uniform surface roughness control, a general note may be added to the drawing that applies to each surface texture symbol specified without values as shown in Fig. 8.

When the symbol is used with a dimension, it affects the entire surface defined by the dimension. Areas of transition, such as chamfers and fillets, shall conform with the roughest adjacent finished area unless otherwise indicated.

Surface texture values, unless otherwise specified, apply to the complete surface. Drawings or specifications for plated or coated parts shall indicate whether the surface texture values apply before plating, after plating, or both before and after plating.

Only those values required to specify and verify the required texture characteristics should be included in the symbol. Values should be in metric units for metric drawing and non-metric units for non-metric drawings. Minority units on dual dimensioned drawings are enclosed in brackets.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

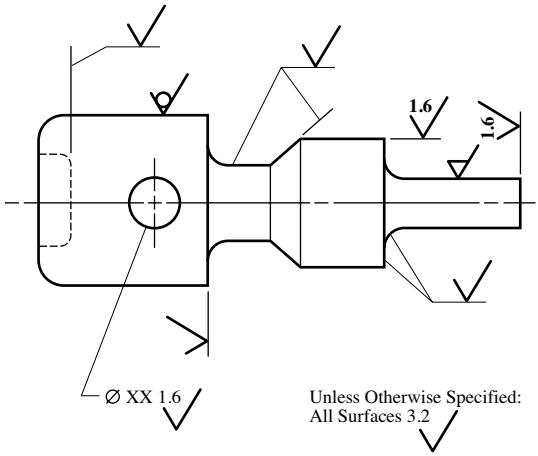


Fig. 8. Application of Surface Texture Symbols

Roughness and waviness measurements, unless otherwise specified, apply in a direction which gives the maximum reading, generally across the lay.

Cutoff or Roughness Sampling Length, (l): Standard values are listed in Table 2. When no value is specified, the value 0.8 mm (0.030 in.) applies.

Table 2. Standard Roughness Sampling Length (Cutoff) Values

mm	in.	mm	in.
0.08	0.003	2.5	0.1
0.25	0.010	8.0	0.3
0.80	0.030	25.0	1.0

Roughness Average (Ra or R_a): The preferred series of specified roughness average values is given in Table 3.

Table 3. Preferred Series Roughness Average (Ra) Values

µm	µin	µm	µin	µm	µin
0.012	0.5	0.40[a]	16[a]	4.0	160
0.025[a]	1[a]	0.50	20	5.0	200
0.050[a]	2[a]	0.63	25	6.3[a]	250[a]
0.075[a]	3	0.80[a]	32[a]	8.0	320
0.10[a]	4[a]	1.00	40	10.0	400
0.125	5	1.25	50	12.5[a]	500[a]
0.15	6	1.60[a]	63[a]	15	600
0.20[a]	8[a]	2.0	80	20	800
0.25	10	2.5	100	25[a]	1000[a]
0.32	13	3.2[a]	125[a]	…	…

[a] Recommended

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Waviness Height (Wt): The preferred series of maximum waviness height values is listed in Table 4. Waviness height is not currently shown in US or ISO Standards. It is included here to follow present industry practice in the United States.

Table 4. Preferred Series Maximum Waviness Height Values

mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch
0.0005	0.00002	0.008	0.0003	0.12	0.005
0.0008	0.00003	0.012	0.0005	0.20	0.008
0.0012	0.00005	0.020	0.0008	0.25	0.010
0.0020	0.00008	0.025	0.001	0.38	0.015
0.0025	0.0001	0.05	0.002	0.50	0.020
0.005	0.0002	0.08	0.003	0.80	0.030

Lay: Symbols for designating the direction of lay are shown and interpreted in Table 5.

Example Designations.—Table 6 illustrates examples of designations of roughness, waviness, and lay by insertion of values in appropriate positions relative to the symbol.

Where surface roughness control of several operations is required within a given area or on a given surface, surface qualities may be designated, as in Fig. 9a. If a surface must be produced by one particular process or a series of processes, they should be specified as shown in Fig. 9b. Where special requirements are needed on a designated surface, a note should be added at the symbol giving the requirements and the area involved. An example is illustrated in Fig. 9c.

Surface Texture of Castings.—Surface characteristics should not be controlled on a drawing or specification unless such control is essential to functional performance or appearance of the product. Imposition of such restrictions when unnecessary may increase production costs and in any event will serve to lessen the emphasis on the control specified for important surfaces. Surface characteristics of castings should never be considered on the same basis as machined surfaces. Castings are characterized by random distribution of nondirectional deviations from the nominal surface.

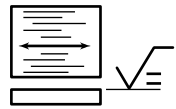
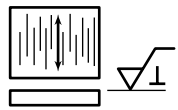
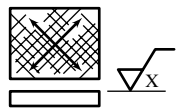
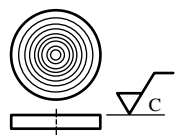
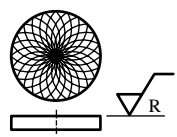
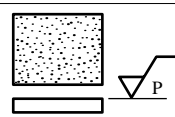
Surfaces of castings rarely need control beyond that provided by the production method necessary to meet dimensional requirements. Comparison specimens are frequently used for evaluating surfaces having specific functional requirements. Surface texture control should not be specified unless required for appearance or function of the surface. Specification of such requirements may increase cost to the user.

Engineers should recognize that different areas of the same castings may have different surface textures. It is recommended that specifications of the surface be limited to defined areas of the casting. Practicality of and methods of determining that a casting's surface texture meets the specification shall be coordinated with the producer. The Society of Automotive Engineers standard J435 "Automotive Steel Castings" describes methods of evaluating steel casting surface texture used in the automotive and related industries.

Metric Dimensions on Drawings.—The length units of the metric system most generally used in connection with any work relating to mechanical engineering are the meter (39.37 inches) and the millimeter (0.03937 inch). One meter equals 1000 millimeters. On mechanical drawings, all dimensions are generally given in millimeters, no matter how large the dimensions may be. In fact, dimensions of such machines as locomotives and large electrical apparatus are given exclusively in millimeters. This practice is adopted to avoid mistakes due to misplacing decimal points, or misreading dimensions as when other units are used as well. When dimensions are given in millimeters, many of them can be given without resorting to decimal points, as a millimeter is only a little more than $^1/_{32}$ inch. Only dimensions of precision need be given in decimals of a millimeter; such dimensions are generally given in hundredths of a millimeter—for example, 0.02 millimeter, which is equal to 0.0008 inch. As 0.01 millimeter is equal to 0.0004 inch, dimensions are seldom given with greater accuracy than to hundredths of a millimeter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Lay Symbols

Lay Symbol	Meaning	Example Showing Direction of Tool Marks
=	Lay approximately parallel to the line representing the surface to which the symbol is applied.	
⊥	Lay approximately perpendicular to the line representing the surface to which the symbol is applied.	
X	Lay angular in both directions to line representing the surface to which the symbol is applied.	
M	Lay multidirectional.	
C	Lay approximately circular relative to the center of the surface to which the symbol is applied.	
R	Lay approximately radial relative to the center of the surface to which the symbol is applied.	
P	Lay particulate, nondirectional, or protuberant.	

Scales of Metric Drawings: Drawings made to the metric system are not made to scales of $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{8}$, etc., as with drawings made to the English system. If the object cannot be drawn full size, it may be drawn $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{5}$, $\frac{1}{10}$, $\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{50}$, $\frac{1}{100}$, $\frac{1}{200}$, $\frac{1}{500}$, or $\frac{1}{1000}$ size. If the object is too small and has to be drawn larger, it is drawn 2, 5, or 10 times its actual size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Application of Surface Texture Values to Symbol *ANSI B46.1-1978*

1.6	Roughness average rating is placed at the left of the long leg. The specification of only one rating shall indicate the maximum value, and any lesser value shall be acceptable. Specify in micrometers (microinch).
1.6 3.5	Material removal by machining is required to produce the surface. The basic amount of stock provided for material removal is specified at the left of the short leg of the symbol. Specify in millimeters (inch).
1.6 0.8	The specification of maximum and minimum roughness average values indicates permissible range of roughness. Specify in micrometers (microinch).
1.6	Removal of material is prohibited.
0.005-5 0.8	Maximum waviness height rating is the first rating place above the horizontal extension. Any lesser rating shall be acceptable. Specify in millimeters (inch). Maximum waviness spacing rating is the second rating placed above the horizontal extension and to the right of the waviness height rating. Any lesser rating shall be acceptable. Specify in millimeters (inch).
0.8 ⊥	Lay designation is indicated by the lay symbol placed at the right of the long leg.
0.8 2.5	Roughness sampling length or cutoff rating is placed below the horizontal extension. When no value is shown, 0.80 mm (0.030 inch) applies. Specify in millimeters (inch).
0.8 ⊥ 0.5	Where required, maximum roughness spacing shall be placed at the right of the lay symbol. Any lesser rating shall be acceptable. Specify in millimeters (inch).

Examples of Special Designations

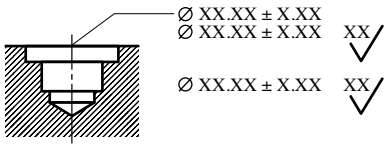


Fig. 9a.

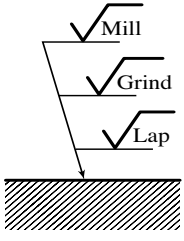


Fig. 9b.

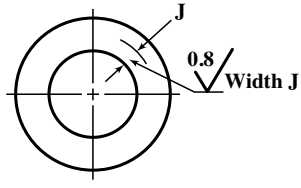


Fig. 9c.

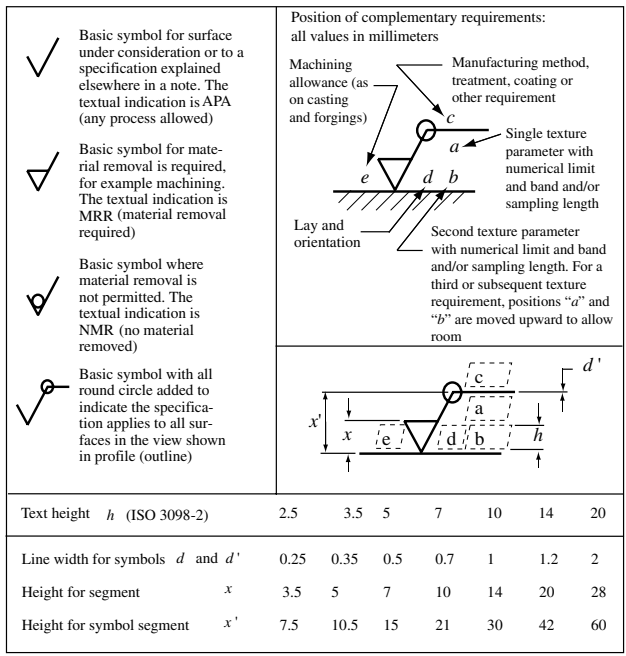
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO Surface Finish Standards

ISO surface finish standards are comprised of numerous individual standards that, taken as a whole, form a set of standards roughly comparable in scope to American National Standard ANSI/ASME Y14.36.

ISO Surface Finish (ISO 1302).—The primary standard dealing with surface finish, ISO 1302:2002 is concerned with the methods of specifying surface texture symbology and additional indications on engineering drawings. The parameters in ISO surface finish standards relate to surfaces produced by abrading, casting, coating, cutting, etching, plastic deformation, sintering, wear, erosion, and some other methods.

ISO 1302 defines how surface texture and its constituents, roughness, waviness, and lay, are specified on the symbology. Surface defects are specifically excluded from consideration during inspection of surface texture, but definitions of flaws and imperfections are discussed in ISO 8785.


Basic symbol for surface under consideration or to a specification explained elsewhere in a note. The textual indication is APA (any process allowed)
Basic symbol for material removal is required, for example machining. The textual indication is MRR (material removal required)
Basic symbol where material removal is not permitted. The textual indication is NMR (no material removed)
Basic symbol with all round circle added to indicate the specification applies to all surfaces in the view shown in profile (outline)
Position of complementary requirements: all values in millimeters
Machining allowance (as on casting and forgings)
Manufacturing method, treatment, coating or other requirement
Single texture parameter with numerical limit and band and/or sampling length
Lay and orientation
Second texture parameter with numerical limit and band and/or sampling length. For a third or subsequent texture requirement, positions "a" and "b" are moved upward to allow room
c
a
e
d
b
d'
x'
x
h

Text height h (ISO 3098-2)		2.5	3.5	5	7	10	14	20
Line width for symbols d and d'		0.25	0.35	0.5	0.7	1	1.2	2
Height for segment	x	3.5	5	7	10	14	20	28
Height for symbol segment	x'	7.5	10.5	15	21	30	42	60

Fig. 1. ISO Surface Finish Symbols

Differences Between ISO and ANSI/ASME Surface Finish Symbology: ISO 1302, like ANSI/ASME Y14.36-2018, is not concerned with luster, appearance, color, corrosion resistance, wear resistance, hardness, sub-surface microstructure, surface integrity, or many other characteristics that may govern considerations in specific applications. Visually, ISO 1302 surface finish symbols are similar to the ANSI/ASME symbols; however, with the release of the 2002 edition, the indication of some of the parameters has changed when compared to ANSI/ASME Y14.36. The proportions of the symbol in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

relationship to text height differs in each as well. There is now less harmonization between ANSI/ASME Y14.36 and ISO 1302 than has been the case previously.

Table 1. Other ISO Standards Related to Surface Finish

ISO 3274:1996	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method; Nominal characteristics of contact (stylus) instruments."
ISO 4287:1997	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method; Terms, definitions and surface texture parameters."
ISO 4288:1996	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method; Rules and procedures for the assessment of surface texture."
ISO 8785:1998	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface imperfections — Terms, definitions and parameters."
ISO 12085:1996	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method — Motif parameters."
ISO 13565-1:1996 ISO 13565-2:1996 ISO 13565-3:1998	"Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method; Surfaces having stratified functional properties Part 1: Filtering and general measurement conditions." Part 2: Height characterization using the linear material ratio curve." Part 3: Height characterization using the material probability curve."

Table 2. ISO Surface Parameter Symbols (*ISO 4287:1997*)

Rp = max height profile	*R*δ*c* = profile section height difference
Rv = max profile valley depth	*Ip* = sampling length - primary profile
*Rz** = max height of the profile	*lw* = sampling length - waviness profile
Rc = mean height of the profile	*lr* = sampling length - roughness profile
Rt = total height of the profile	*ln* = evaluation length
Ra = arithmetic mean deviation of the profile	*Z(x)* = ordinate value
Rq = root mean square deviation of the profile	*dZ* / *dX* = local slope
Rsk = skewness of the profile	*Zp* = profile peak height
Rku = kurtosis of the profile	*Zv* = profile valley depth
RSm = mean width of the profile	*Zt* = profile element height
*R*Δ*q* = root mean square slope of the profile	*Xs* = profile element width
Rmr = material ration of the profile	*Ml* = material length of the profile

Graphic Symbology Textural Descriptions.—New to this version of ISO 1302:2002 is the ability to add textual descriptions of the graphic symbology used on drawing. This gives specifications writers a consistent means to describe surface texture specification from within a body of text without having to add illustrations. See Fig. 1 for textual application definitions, then Fig. 2- Fig. 6 for applications of this concept.

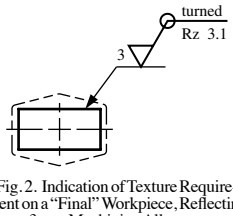


Fig. 2. Indication of Texture Requirement on a "Final" Workpiece, Reflecting a 3 mm Machining Allowance

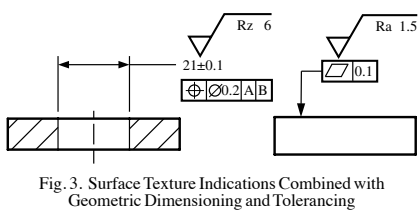


Fig. 3. Surface Texture Indications Combined with Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO 1302:2002 does not define the degrees of surface roughness and waviness or type of lay for specific purposes, nor does it specify the means by which any degree of such irregularities may be obtained or produced. Also, errors of form such as out-of-roundness and out-of-flatness are not addressed in the ISO surface finish standards. This edition does better illustrate how surface texture indications can be used on castings to reflect machining allowances (Fig. 2) and how symbology can be attached to geometric dimensioning and tolerancing symbology (See Fig. 3).

MRR U Rz 0.9; L Ra 0.3

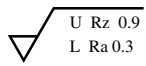
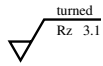


Fig. 4. Indication of Bilateral Surface Specification Shown Textually and as Indicated on a Drawing

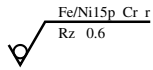
MRR turned Rz 3.1



Indication of a machining process and requirement for roughness shown textually and as indicated on a drawing.

Fig. 5a. Indication of Manufacturing Processes or Related Information

NMR Fe/Ni15p Cr r; Rz 0.6



Indication of coating and roughness requirement shown textually and as indicated on a drawing.

Fig. 5b. Indication of Manufacturing Processes or Related Information

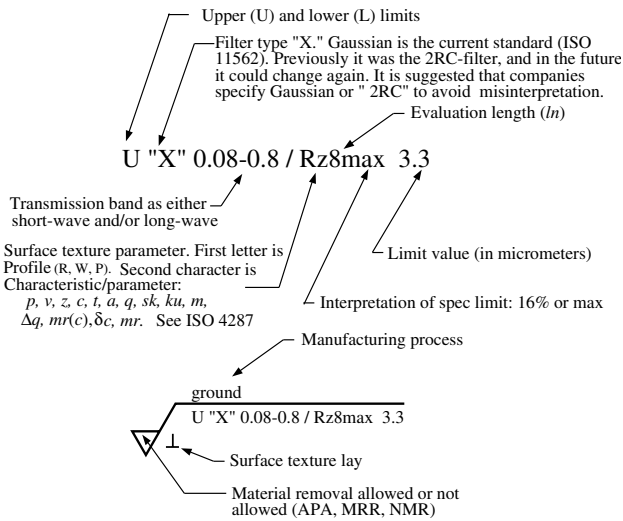

Upper (U) and lower (L) limits
Filter type "X." Gaussian is the current standard (ISO 11562). Previously it was the 2RC-filter, and in the future it could change again. It is suggested that companies specify Gaussian or " 2RC" to avoid misinterpretation.
Evaluation length (ln)
U "X" 0.08-0.8 / Rz8max 3.3
Transmission band as either short-wave and/or long-wave
Surface texture parameter. First letter is Profile (R, W, P). Second character is Characteristic/parameter:
p, v, z, c, t, a, q, sk, ku, m, Δq, mr(c), δc, mr. See ISO 4287
Limit value (in micrometers)
Interpretation of spec limit: 16% or max
Manufacturing process
ground
U "X" 0.08-0.8 / Rz8max 3.3
Surface texture lay
Material removal allowed or not allowed (APA, MRR, NMR)

Fig. 6. Control Elements for Indication of Surface Texture Requirements on Drawings

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO Profiles.—Profile parameters may be one of three types (ISO 4287). These include:

R-profile: Defined as the evaluation length. The ISO default length l_n consists of five sampling lengths l_r , thus $l_n = 5 \times l_r$

W-profile: This parameter indicates waviness. There is no default length.

P-profile: Indicates the structure parameters. The default evaluation length is defined in ISO 4288: 1996.

Rules for Comparing Measured Values to Specified Limits.—

Max Rule: When a maximum requirement is specified for a surface finish parameter on a drawing (e.g. *Rz*1.5max), none of the inspected values may extend beyond the upper limit over the entire surface. The term "max" must be added to the parametric symbol in the surface finish symbology on the drawing.

16%-Rule: When upper and lower limits are specified, no more than 16% of all measured values of the selected parameter within the evaluation length may exceed the upper limit. No more than 16% of all measured values of the selected parameter within the evaluation length may be less than the lower limit.

Exceptions to the 16%-Rule: Where the measured values of roughness profiles being inspected follow a normal distribution, the 16%-rule may be overridden. This is allowed when greater than 16% of the measured values exceeds the upper limit, but the total roughness profile conforms with the sum of the arithmetic mean and standard deviation ($\mu + \sigma$). Effectively, this means that the greater the value of σ, the further μ must be from the upper limit (see Fig. 7).

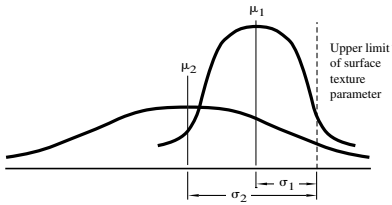
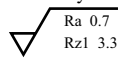


Fig. 7. Roughness Parameter Value Curves Showing Mean and Standard Deviation

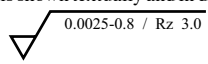
Indications of Transmission Band and Sampling Length in Textual Format: With the "16%-rule" transmission band as default it is shown textually and in drawings as:

MRR Ra 0.7; Rz1 3.3



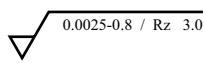
If the "max-rule" transmission band is applied, it is shown textually and in drawings as:

MRR 0.0025-0.8 / Rz 3.0



Transmission band and sampling length are specified when there is no default value. The transmission band is indicated with the cut-off value of the filters in millimeters separated by a hyphen (-) with the short-wave filter first and the long-wave filter second. Again, in textual format and on drawings:

MRR 0.0025-0.8 / Rz 3.0



A specification may indicate one or both of the two transmission band filters. If only one is indicated, the hyphen is maintained to indicate whether the indication is the short-wave or the long-wave filter.

0.008– (short-wave filter indication) or –0.25 (long-wave filter indication)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Determining Cut-off Wavelength: When the sampling length is specified on the drawing or in documentation, the cut-off wavelength λc is equal to the sample length. When no sampling length is specified, the cut-off wavelength is estimated using Table 3.

Measurement of Roughness Parameters: For non-periodic roughness, the parameter $Ra, Rz, Rz1_{max}$ or RSm is first estimated using visual inspection, comparison to specimens, graphic analysis, etc. The sampling length is then selected from Table 3, based on the use of Ra, Rz, $Rz1_{max}$ or RSm. Then, with instrumentation, a representative sample is taken using the sampling length chosen above.

The measured values are then compared to the ranges of values in Table 3 for the particular parameter. If the value is outside the range of values for the estimated sampling length, the measuring instrument is adjusted for the next higher or lower sampling length and the measurement repeated. If the final setting corresponds to Table 3, then both the sampling length setting and $Ra, Rz, Rz1_{max}$ or RSm values are correct and a representative measurement of the parameter can be taken.

For periodic roughness, the parameter RSm is estimated graphically and the recommended cut-off values selected using Table 3. If the value is outside the range of values for the estimated sampling length, the measuring instrument is adjusted for the next higher or lower sampling length and the measurement repeated. If the final setting corresponds to Table 3, then both the sampling length setting and RSm values are correct and a representative measurement of the parameter can be taken.

Table 3. Sampling Lengths

Curves for Non-periodic Profiles such as Ground Surfaces		Curves for Periodic and Non-periodic Profiles	Sampling length, lr (mm)	Evaluation length, ln (mm)
For $Ra, Rq, Rsk, Rku, R\Delta q$	For Rz, Rv, Rp, Rc, Rt	For R-parameters and RSm		
Ra, µm	$Rz, Rz1_{max}$, µm	RSm, µm		
$(0.006) < Ra \le 0.02$	$(0.025) < Rz, Rz1_{max} \le 0.1$	$0.013 < RSm \le 0.04$	0.08	0.4
$0.02 < Ra \le 0.1$	$0.1 < Rz, Rz1_{max} \le 0.5$	$0.04 < RSm \le 0.13$	0.25	1.25
$0.1 < Ra \le 2$	$0.5 < Rz, Rz1_{max} \le 10$	$0.13 < RSm \le 0.4$	0.8	4
$2 < Ra \le 10$	$10 < Rz, Rz1_{max} \le 50$	$0.4 < RSm \le 1.3$	2.5	12.5
$10 < Ra \le 80$	$50 < Rz, Rz1_{max} \le 200$	$1.3 < RSm \le 4$	8	40

Table 4. Preferred Roughness Values and Roughness Grades

Roughness values, Ra		Previous Grade Number from ISO 1302	Roughness values, Ra		Previous Grade Number from ISO 1302
µm	µin		µm	µin	
50	2000	N12	0.8	32	N6
25	1000	N11	0.4	16	N5
12.5	500	N10	0.2	8	N4
6.3	250	N9	0.1	4	N3
3.2	125	N8	0.05	2	N2
1.6	63	N7	0.025	1	N1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples of ISO Applications of Surface Texture Symbology

Example 1: Surface roughness in Fig. 8 is produced by milling with a bilateral tolerance between an upper limit of *Ra* = 55 µm and a lower limit of *Ra* = 6.2µm. Both apply the "16%-rule" default (ISO 4288). Both transmission bands are 0.008 - 4 mm, using default evaluation length (5 × 4 mm = 20 mm) (ISO 4288). The surface lay is circular about the center. *U* and *L* are omitted because it is obvious one is upper and one lower. Material removal is allowed.

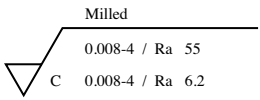


Fig. 8.

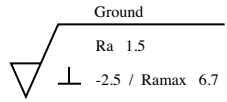


Fig. 9.

Example 2: Surface roughness in Fig. 9 is produced by grinding to two upper limit specifications: *Ra* = 1.5 µm and limited to *Rz* = 6.7 µm max. The default "16%-rule," default transmission band and default evaluation length apply to the *Ra*, while the "max-rule", a –2.5 mm transmission band and default evaluation length, apply to the *Rz*. The surface lay is perpendicular relative to the plane of projection, and material removal is allowed.

Example 3: Fig. 10 indicates a simplified representation where *surface roughness* of *Rz* = 6.1 µm is the default for all surfaces as indicated by the *Rz* = 6.1 specification, plus basic symbol within parentheses. The default "16%-rule" applies to both as does the default transmission band (ISO 4288 and ISO 3274). Any deviating specification is called out with local notes such as the *Ra* =0.7 µm specification. There is no lay requirement, and material removal is allowed.

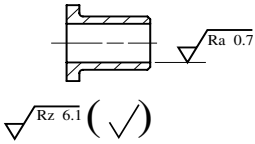


Fig. 10.

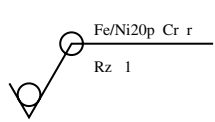


Fig. 11.

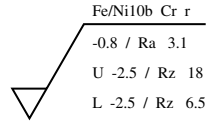


Fig. 12.

Example 4: Surface treatment without any material removal allowed is indicated in Fig. 11, and to a single unilateral upper limit specification of *Rz* = 1 µm. The default "16%-rule," default transmission band and default evaluation length apply. The surface treatment is nickel-chrome plated to all surfaces shown in profile (outline) in the view where the symbol is applied. There is no lay requirement.

Example 5: In Fig. 12, *surface roughness* is produced by any material removal process to one unilateral upper limit and one bilateral specification: the unilateral *Ra* = 3.1 is to the default "16%-rule," a transmission band of -0.8 mm and the default evaluation length (5 × 0.8 = 4 mm). The bilateral *Rz* has an upper limit of *Rz* = 18 µm and a lower limit of *Rz* = 6.5 µm. Both limits are to a transmission band of –2.5 mm with both to the default 5 × 2.5 = 12.5 mm. The symbols *U* and *L* may be indicated even if it is obvious. Surface treatment is nickel/chromium plating. There is no lay requirement.

Example 6: Surface texture symbology may be combined with dimension leaders and witness (extension) lines, as in Fig. 13. Surface roughness for the side surfaces of the keyway is produced by any material removal process to one unilateral upper limit specification, *Ra* = 6.5 µm. It is to the default "16%-rule," default transmission band and default evaluation length (5 × λc) (ISO 3274). There is no lay requirement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Surface roughness for the chamfer is produced by any material removal process to one unilateral upper limit specification, *Ra* = 2.5 µm. It is to the default "16%-rule," default transmission band and default evaluation length (5 × λc) (ISO 3274). There is no lay requirement.

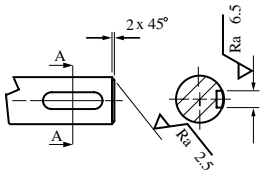


Fig. 13.

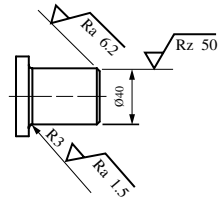


Fig. 14.

Example 7: Surface texture symbology may be applied to extended extension lines or on extended projection lines, Fig. 14. All feature surface roughness specifications shown are obtainable by any material removal process and are single unilateral upper limit specifications, respectively: *Ra* = 1.5 µm, *Ra* = 6.2 µm and *Rz* = 50 µm. All are to "16%-rule" default, default transmission band and default evaluation length (5 × λc). There is no lay requirement for any of the three.

Example 8: Surface texture symbology and dimensions may be combined on leader lines, as in Fig. 15. The feature surface roughness specifications shown are obtainable by any material removal process and are single unilateral upper limit specifications, respectively: *Rz* = 1 µm, to the default "16%-rule," default transmission band and default evaluation length (5 × λc). There is no lay requirement.

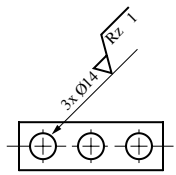


Fig. 15.

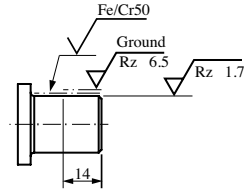


Fig. 16.

Example 9: Symbology can be used for *dimensional information* and *surface treatment*. Fig. 16 illustrates three successive steps of a manufacturing process.

The first step is a single unilateral upper limit *Rz* = 1.7 µm to the default "16%-rule," default evaluation length (5 × λc) and default transmission band. It is obtainable by any material removal process, with no lay characteristics specified. Step two, indicated with a phantom line over the whole length of the cylinder, has no surface texture requirement other than chromium plating.

The third step is a single unilateral upper limit of *Rz* = 6.5 µm applied only to the first 14 mm of the cylinder surface. The default "16%-rule" applies as does default evaluation length (5 × λc) and default transmission band. Material removal is to be by grinding, with no lay characteristics specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CUTTING TOOLS

832 Terms and Definitions
832 Tool Contour
835 Relief Angles
836 Rake Angles
837 Side Cutting Edge and Lead Angles
837 End Cutting Edge Angle
837 Nose Radius
838 Chipbreakers
839 Planing Tools
839 Indexable Inserts
840 Identification System
841 Indexable Insert Tool Holders
842 Standard Shank Sized for Holders
842 Identification System for Holders
843 Letter Symbols
844 Selecting Holders
847 Sintered Carbide Blanks and Cutting Tools
847 Sintered Carbide Blanks
847 Single Point Tools
847 Single-Point, Sintered Carbide-Tipped Tools
850 Carbide-Tipped Tools
850 Style A
851 Style B
852 Style C
852 Style D
853 Style E
853 Styles ER and EL
854 Style F
855 Style G
856 Chipbreaker
856 Chipless Machining
856 Indexable Insert Holders for NC
857 Insert Radius Compensation
859 Threading Tool Insert Radius

CEMENTED CARBIDES

860 Cemented Carbides and Other Hard Materials
860 Carbides and Carbonitrides
861 Properties of Tungsten Carbide-Based Cutting Tool Hard Metals
865 Ceramics
866 ISO Classifications of Hardmetals
868 Superhard Materials
870 Hardmetal Tooling

MILLING CUTTERS

871 Selection of Milling Cutters
871 Number of Teeth
872 American National Standard
873 Plain Milling Cutters
874 Side Milling Cutters
875 T-Slot Milling Cutters
876 Metal Slitting Saws
877 Single- and Double-Angle
878 Shell Mills
879 Helical End Mills
890 Arbor-Type Cutters
893 Roller Chain Sprocket
894 Keys and Keyways
895 Woodruff Keyseat Cutters
899 Spline-Shaft Milling Cutter
899 Cutter Grinding
900 Wheel Speeds and Feeds
900 Clearance Angles
901 Rake Angles for Milling Cutters
901 Eccentric-Type Radial Relief
904 Indicator Drop Method
906 Distance to Set Tooth
907 Counter Milling

REAMERS

908 Hand Reamers
909 Irregular Spacing of Teeth
909 Threaded-End Hand Reamers
909 Fluted Chucking Reamers
910 Rose Chucking Reamers
912 Vertical Adjustment of Tooth-Rest
913 Terms Applying to Reamers
915 Direction of Rotation and Helix
915 Dimensions of Centers
916 Calculating Countersink and Spot Drill Depths
917 Reamer Difficulties
918 Types and Sizes of Reamers
919 Expansion Chucking Reamers
920 Hand Reamers
921 Expansion Hand Reamers
922 Driving Slots and Lugs
923 Chucking Reamers
926 Shell Reamers
928 Center Reamers
929 Taper Pipe Reamers

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TWIST DRILLS AND COUNTERBORES

931 Definitions of Twist Drill Terms
932 Types of Drills
952 Split-Sleeve, Collet Drill Drivers
953 Three- and Four-Flute Straight Shank Core Drills
954 Twist Drills and Centering Tools
955 British Standard Combined Drills and Countersinks
955 Drill Drivers—Split-Sleeve, Collet-Type
955 British Standard Metric Twist Drills
956 Gauge and Letter Sizes
957 Morse Taper-Shank Twist Drills
958 Tolerance on Diameter
959 Parallel Shank Jobber Twist Drills
961 Stub Drills
961 Steels for Twist Drills
961 Accuracy of Drilled Holes
962 Counterboring
963 Interchangeable Cutters and Guides
963 Three-Piece Counterbores
964 Counterbore Sizes for Hex-Head Bolts and Nuts
964 Sintered Carbide Boring Tools
964 Style Designations
965 Boring Tools
965 Square
967 Carbide-Tipped Square
968 Solid Carbide Round
968 Boring Machines, Origin

TAPS

969 Thread Form, Styles, and Types
971 Standard System of Tap Marking
973 Thread Series Designations
974 Thread Limits, Ground Thread
975 Thread Limits, Cut Thread
976 M Profile Metric Taps
976 Thread Limits, Ground Thread
977 Definitions of Tap Terms
983 Tap Dimensions, Inch and Metric
986 Optional Neck and Thread Length
989 Extension Tap Dimensions

TAPS *(Continued)*

990 Fine Pitch Tap Dimensions
991 Standard Number of Flutes
992 Pulley Taps Dimensions
993 Straight and Taper Pipe Tap
994 Runout and Locational Tolerance
995 M Profile Tap D Limits (Inch)
995 M Profile Tap D Limits (mm)
996 Tap Sizes for Class 6H Threads
997 Tap Sizes, Unified 2B and 3B
998 Unified Threads Taps H Limits
1003 Straight Pipe Tap Thread Limits
1005 Taper Pipe Tap Thread Limits
1006 Screw Thread Insert Tap Limits
1009 Acme and Square-Threaded Taps
1009 Adjustable Taps
1009 Drill Hole Sizes for Acme Threads
1011 Proportions
1012 Tapping Square Threads
1012 Collapsible Taps

STANDARD TAPERS

1013 Tapers for Machine Tool Spindles
1013 Morse Taper
1013 Brown & Sharpe Taper
1014 Jarno Taper
1015 American National Standard Machine Tapers
1021 British Standard Tapers
1022 Morse Taper Sleeves
1023 Brown & Sharpe Taper Shanks
1024 Jarno Taper Shanks
1024 Tapers for Machine Tool Spindles
1025 Plug and Ring Gages
1026 Jacobs Tapers and Threads
1027 Spindle Noses
1029 Tool Shanks
1030 Draw-In Bolt Ends
1031 Spindle Nose
1032 V-Flange Tool Shanks and Retention Knobs
1033 Collets
1033 R8 Collet
1034 Collets for Lathes, Mills, Grinders, and Fixtures
1036 ER Type Collets

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

ARBORS, CHUCKS, AND SPINDLES

1037 Portable Tool Spindles
1037 Circular Saw Arbors
1037 Spindles for Geared Chucks
1037 Spindle Sizes
1037 Straight Grinding Wheel Spindles
1038 Square Drives for Portable Air and Electric Tools
1039 Threaded and Tapered Spindles
1039 Abrasion Tool Spindles
1040 Hexagonal Chucks for Portable Air and Electric Tools
1041 Mounted Wheels and Points
1043 Shapes and Sizes

BROACHES AND BROACHING

1044 The Broaching Process
1044 Types of Broaches
1045 Pitch of Broach Teeth
1046 Data for Surface Broaches
1047 Depth of Cut per Tooth
1048 Face Angle or Rake
1048 Clearance Angle
1048 Land Width
1048 Depth of Broach Teeth
1048 Radius of Tooth Fillet
1048 Total Length of Broach
1048 Chipbreakers
1049 Shear Angle
1049 Types of Broaching Machines
1049 Ball-Broaching
1050 Broaching Difficulties

FILES AND BURS

1051 Definitions of File Terms
1052 File Characteristics
1052 Classes of Files
1054 Effectiveness of Rotary Files and Burs
1055 Speeds of Rotary Files and Burs
1055 Steel Wool

KNURLS AND KNURLING

1056 Standard Knurls and Knurling
1056 Preferred Sizes
1056 Specifications
1057 Cylindrical Knurling Tools
1058 Flat Knurling Tools
1058 Specifications for Flat Dies
1058 Formulas for Knurled Work
1059 Recommended Tolerances
1060 Marking on Knurls and Dies
1060 Concave Knurls

TOOL WEAR AND SHARPENING

1061 Flank Wear
1062 Cratering
1062 Cutting Edge Chipping
1062 Deformation
1063 Surface Finish
1063 Sharpening Twist Drills
1063 Relief Grinding of the Tool Flanks
1064 Drill Point Thinning
1065 Sharpening Carbide Tools
1065 Silicon Carbide Wheels
1066 Diamond Wheels
1066 Grit Sizes
1066 Wheel Grades
1066 Concentration
1067 Dry Versus Wet Grinding of Carbide Tools
1067 Coolants for Carbide Tool Grinding
1067 Peripheral versus Flat Side Grinding
1068 Lapping Carbide Tools
1068 Chipbreaker Grinding
1068 Miscellaneous Points
1068 Meshes, Sieves, and Screens
1070 Commercial Sieve Mesh Dimensions
1071 Standard Sieves and Mesh Sizes
1072 Typical Openings in Laboratory Sieve Series
1072 Abrasive Grit Number

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CUTTING TOOLS

Terms and Definitions

Tool Contour.—Tools for turning, planing, etc., are made in straight, bent, offset, and other forms to place the cutting edges in convenient positions for operating on differently located surfaces. The contour or shape of the cutting edge may also be varied to suit different classes of work. Tool shapes, however, are not only related to the kind of operation, but, in roughing tools particularly, the contour may have a decided effect upon the cutting efficiency of the tool. To illustrate, an increase in the side cutting-edge angle of a roughing tool, or in the nose radius, tends to permit higher cutting speeds because the chip will be thinner for a given feed rate. Such changes, however, may result in chattering or vibrations unless the work and the machine are rigid; hence, the most desirable contour may be a compromise between the ideal form and one that is needed to meet practical requirements.

Terms and Definitions.—The terms and definitions relating to single-point tools vary somewhat in different plants, but the following are in general use.

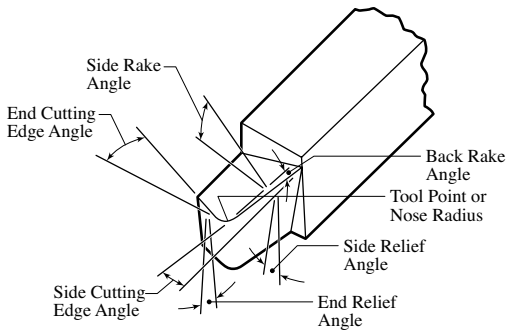


Fig. 1. Terms Applied to Single-Point Turning Tools

Single-Point Tool: This term is applied to tools for turning, planing, boring, etc., which have a cutting edge at one end. This cutting edge may be formed on one end of a solid piece of steel, or the cutting part of the tool may consist of an insert or tip which is held to the body of the tool by brazing, welding, or mechanical means.

Shank: The shank is the main body of the tool. If the tool is an inserted cutter type, the shank supports the cutter or bit. (See diagram, Fig. 1.)

Nose: A general term sometimes used to designate the cutting end but usually relating more particularly to the rounded tip of the cutting end.

Face: The surface against which the chips bear, as they are severed in turning or planing operations, is called the face.

Flank: The flank is that end surface adjacent to the cutting edge and below it when the tool is in a horizontal position as for turning.

Base: The base is the surface of the tool shank that bears against the supporting toolholder or block.

Side Cutting Edge: The side cutting edge is the cutting edge on the side of the tool. Tools such as that shown in Fig. 1 do the bulk of the cutting with this cutting edge and are, therefore, sometimes called side cutting edge tools.

End Cutting Edge: The end cutting edge is the cutting edge at the end of the tool.

On side cutting edge tools, the end cutting edge can be used for light plunging and facing cuts. Cutoff tools and similar tools have only one cutting edge located on the end. These

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tools and other tools that are intended to cut primarily with the end cutting edge are sometimes called end cutting edge tools.

Rake: A metal-cutting tool is said to have rake when the tool face or surface against which the chips bear as they are being severed is inclined for the purpose of either increasing or diminishing the keenness or bluntness of the edge. The magnitude of the rake is most conveniently measured by two angles called the back rake angle and the side rake angle. The tool shown in Fig. 1 has rake. If the face of the tool did not incline but was parallel to the base, there would be no rake; the rake angles would be zero.

Positive Rake: If the inclination of the tool face is such as to make the cutting edge keener or more acute than when the rake angle is zero, the rake angle is defined as positive.

Negative Rake: If the inclination of the tool face makes the cutting edge less keen or more blunt than when the rake angle is zero, the rake is defined as negative.

Back Rake: The back rake is the inclination of the face toward or away from the end or the end cutting edge of the tool. When the inclination is away from the end cutting edge, as shown in Fig. 1, the back rake is positive. If the inclination is downward toward the end cutting edge, the back rake is negative.

Side Rake: The side rake is the inclination of the face toward or away from the side cutting edge. When the inclination is away from the side cutting edge, as shown in Fig. 1, the side rake is positive. If the inclination is toward the side cutting edge the side rake is negative.

Relief: The flanks below the side cutting edge and the end cutting edge must be relieved to allow these cutting edges to penetrate into the workpiece when taking a cut. If the flanks are not provided with relief, the cutting edges will rub against the workpiece and be unable to penetrate in order to form the chip. Relief is also provided below the nose of the tool to allow it to penetrate into the workpiece. The relief at the nose is usually a blend of the side relief and the end relief.

End Relief Angle: The end relief angle is a measure of the relief below the end cutting edge.

Side Relief Angle: The side relief angle is a measure of the relief below the side cutting edge.

Back Rake Angle: The back rake angle is a measure of the back rake. It is measured in a plane that passes through the side cutting edge and is perpendicular to the base. Thus, the back rake angle can be defined by measuring the inclination of the side cutting edge with respect to a line or plane that is parallel to the base. The back rake angle may be positive, negative, or zero depending upon the magnitude and direction of the back rake.

Side Rake Angle: The side rake angle is a measure of the side rake. This angle is always measured in a plane that is perpendicular to the side cutting edge and perpendicular to the base. Thus, the side rake angle is the angle of inclination of the face perpendicular to the side cutting edge with reference to a line or a plane that is parallel to the base.

End Cutting Edge Angle: The end cutting edge angle is the angle made by the end cutting edge with respect to a plane perpendicular to the axis of the tool shank. It is provided to allow the end cutting edge to clear the finish machined surface on the workpiece.

Side Cutting Edge Angle: The side cutting edge angle is the angle made by the side cutting edge and a plane that is parallel to the side of the shank.

Nose Radius: The nose radius is the radius of the nose of the tool. The performance of the tool, in part, is influenced by nose radius so that it must be carefully controlled.

Lead Angle: The lead angle, shown in Fig. 2, is not ground on the tool. It is a tool setting angle which has a great influence on the performance of the tool. The lead angle is bounded by the side cutting edge and a plane perpendicular to the workpiece surface when the tool is in position to cut; or, more exactly, the lead angle is the angle between the side cutting edge and a plane perpendicular to the direction of the feed travel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

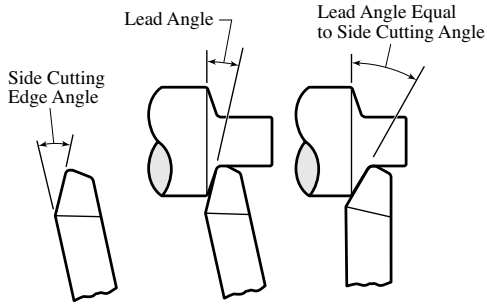


Fig. 2. Lead Angle on Single-Point Turning Tool

Solid Tool: A solid tool is a cutting tool made from one piece of tool material.

Brazed Tool: A brazed tool is a cutting tool having a blank of cutting-tool material permanently brazed to a steel shank.

Blank: A blank is an unground piece of cutting-tool material from which a brazed tool is made.

Tool Bit: A tool bit is a relatively small cutting tool that is clamped in a holder in such a way that it can readily be removed and replaced. It is intended primarily to be reground when dull and not indexed.

Tool-Bit Blank: The tool-bit blank is an unground piece of cutting-tool material from which a tool bit can be made by grinding. It is available in standard sizes and shapes.

Tool-Bit Holder: Usually made from forged steel, the tool-bit holder is used to hold the tool bit, to act as an extended shank for the tool bit, and to provide a means for clamping in the tool post.

Straight-Shank Tool-Bit Holder: A straight-shank tool-bit holder has a straight shank when viewed from the top. The axis of the tool bit is held parallel to the axis of the shank.

Offset-Shank Tool-Bit Holder: An offset-shank tool-bit holder has the shank bent to the right or left, as seen in Fig. 3. The axis of the tool bit is held at an angle with respect to the axis of the shank.

Side Cutting Tool: A side cutting tool has its major cutting edge on the side of the cutting part of the tool. The major cutting edge may be parallel or at an angle with respect to the axis of the tool.

Indexable Inserts: An indexable insert is a relatively small piece of cutting-tool material that is geometrically shaped to have two or several cutting edges that are used until dull. The insert is then indexed on the holder to apply a sharp cutting edge. When all the cutting edges have been dulled, the insert is discarded. The insert is held in a pocket or against other locating surfaces on an indexable insert holder by means of a mechanical clamping device that can be tightened or loosened easily.

Indexable Insert Holder: Made of steel, an indexable insert holder is used to hold indexable inserts. It is equipped with a mechanical clamping device that holds the inserts firmly in a pocket or against other seating surfaces.

Straight-Shank Indexable Insert Holder: A straight-shank indexable insert tool-holder is essentially straight when viewed from the top, although the cutting edge of the insert may be oriented parallel, or at an angle to, the axis of the holder.

Offset-Shank Indexable Insert Holder: An offset-shank indexable insert holder has the head end, or the end containing the insert pocket, offset to the right or left, as shown in Fig. 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

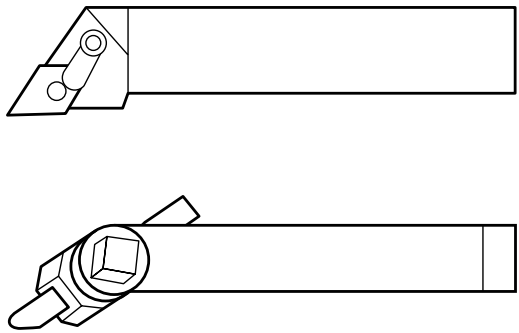


Fig. 3. Top: Right-Hand Offset-Shank, Indexable Insert Holder
Bottom: Right-Hand Offset-Shank Tool-Bit Holder

End Cutting Tool: An end cutting tool has its major cutting edge on the end of the cutting part of the tool. The major cutting edge may be perpendicular or at an angle, with respect to the axis of the tool.

Curved Cutting-Edge Tool: A curved cutting-edge tool has a continuously variable side cutting edge angle. The cutting edge is usually in the form of a smooth, continuous curve along its entire length, or along a large portion of its length.

Right-Hand Tool: A right-hand tool has the major, or working, cutting edge on the right-hand side when viewed from the cutting end with the face up. As used in a lathe, such a tool is usually fed into the work from right to left, when viewed from the shank end.

Left-Hand Tool: A left-hand tool has the major or working cutting edge on the left-hand side when viewed from the cutting end with the face up. As used in a lathe, the tool is usually fed into the work from left to right, when viewed from the shank end.

Neutral-Hand Tool: A neutral-hand tool is a tool to cut either left to right or right to left; or the cut may be parallel to the axis of the shank as when plunge cutting.

Chipbreaker: A groove formed in or on a shoulder on the face of a turning tool back of the cutting edge to break up the chips and prevent the formation of long, continuous chips that would be dangerous to the operator and also bulky and cumbersome to handle. A chipbreaker of the shoulder type may be formed directly on the tool face, or it may consist of a separate piece that is held either by brazing or by clamping.

Relief Angles.—The end relief angle and the side relief angle on single-point cutting tools are usually, though not invariably, made equal to each other. The relief angle under the nose of the tool is a blend of the side and end relief angles.

The size of the relief angles has a pronounced effect on the performance of the cutting tool. If the relief angles are too large, the cutting edge will be weakened and in danger of breaking when a heavy cutting load is placed on it by a hard and tough material. On finish cuts, rapid wear of the cutting edge may cause problems with size control on the part. Relief angles that are too small will cause the rate of wear on the flank of the tool below the cutting edge to increase, thereby significantly reducing the tool life. In general, when cutting hard and tough materials, the relief angles should be 6 to 8 degrees for high-speed steel tools and 5 to 7 degrees for carbide tools. For medium steels, mild steels, cast iron, and other average work the recommended values of the relief angles are 8 to 12 degrees for high-speed steel tools and 5 to 10 degrees for carbides. Ductile materials having a relatively low modulus of elasticity should be cut using larger relief angles. For example, the relief angles recommended for turning copper, brass, bronze, aluminum,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ferritic malleable iron, and similar metals are 12 to 16 degrees for high-speed steel tools and 8 to 14 degrees for carbides.

Larger relief angles generally tend to produce a better finish on the finish machined surface because less surface of the worn flank of the tool rubs against the workpiece. For this reason, single-point thread-cutting tools should be provided with relief angles that are as large as circumstances will permit. Problems encountered when machining stainless steel may be overcome by increasing the size of the relief angle. The relief angles used should never be smaller than necessary.

Rake Angles.—Machinability tests have confirmed that when the rake angle along which the chip slides, called the true rake angle, is made larger in the positive direction, the cutting force and the cutting temperature will decrease. Also, the tool life for a given cutting speed will increase with increases in the true rake angle up to an optimum value, after which it will decrease again. For turning tools that cut primarily with the side cutting edge, the true rake angle corresponds rather closely with the side rake angle except when taking shallow cuts. Increasing the side rake angle in the positive direction lowers the cutting force and the cutting temperature, while at the same time it results in a longer tool life or a higher permissible cutting speed up to an optimum value of the side rake angle. After the optimum value is exceeded, the cutting force and the cutting temperature will continue to drop; however, the tool life and the permissible cutting speed will decrease.

As an approximation, the magnitude of the cutting force will decrease about one percent per degree increase in the side rake angle. While not exact, this rule of thumb does correspond approximately to test results and can be used to make rough estimates. Of course, the cutting force also increases about one percent per degree decrease in the side rake angle. The limiting value of the side rake angle for optimum tool life or cutting speed depends upon the work material and the cutting tool material. In general, lower values can be used for hard and tough work materials. Cemented carbides are harder and more brittle than high-speed steel; therefore, the rake angles usually used for cemented carbides are less positive than for high-speed steel.

Negative rake angles cause the face of the tool to slope in the opposite direction from positive rake angles and, as might be expected, they have an opposite effect. For side cutting edge tools, increasing the side rake angle in a negative direction will result in an increase in the cutting force and an increase in the cutting temperature of approximately one percent per degree change in rake angle. For example, if the side rake angle is changed from 5 degrees positive to 5 degrees negative, the cutting force will be about 10 percent larger. Usually the tool life will also decrease when negative side rake angles are used, although the tool life will sometimes increase when the negative rake angle is not too large and when a fast cutting speed is used.

Negative side rake angles are usually used in combination with negative back rake angles on single-point cutting tools. The negative rake angles strengthen the cutting edges, enabling them to sustain heavier cutting loads and shock loads. They are recommended for turning very hard materials and for heavy interrupted cuts. There is also an economic advantage in favor of using negative rake indexable inserts and tool holders inasmuch as the cutting edges provided on both the top and bottom of the insert can be used.

On turning tools that cut primarily with the side cutting edge, the effect of the back rake angle alone is much less than the effect of the side rake angle, although the direction of the change in cutting force, cutting temperature, and tool life is the same. The effect that the back rake angle has can be ignored unless, of course, extremely large changes in this angle are made. A positive back rake angle does improve the performance of the nose of the tool somewhat and is helpful in taking light finishing cuts. A negative back rake angle strengthens the nose of the tool and is helpful when interrupted cuts are taken. The back rake angle has a very significant effect on the performance of end cutting edge tools, such as cut-off tools. For these tools, the effect of the back rake angle is very similar to the effect of the side rake angle on side cutting edge tools.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Side Cutting Edge and Lead Angles.—These angles are considered together because the side cutting edge angle is usually designed to provide the desired lead angle when the tool is being used. The side cutting edge angle and the lead angle will be equal when the shank of the cutting tool is positioned perpendicular to the workpiece, or, more correctly, perpendicular to the direction of the feed. When the shank is not perpendicular, the lead angle is determined by the side cutting edge and an imaginary line perpendicular to the feed direction.

The flow of the chips over the face of the tool is approximately perpendicular to the side cutting edge except when shallow cuts are taken. The thickness of the undeformed chip is measured perpendicular to the side cutting edge. As the lead angle is increased, the length of chip in contact with the side cutting edge is increased, and the chip will become longer and thinner. This effect is the same as increasing the depth of cut and decreasing the feed, although the actual depth of cut and feed remain the same and the same amount of metal is removed. The effect of lengthening and thinning the chip by increasing the lead angle is very beneficial as it increases the tool life for a given cutting speed or that speed can be increased. Increasing the cutting speed while the feed and the tool life remain the same leads to faster production.

However, an adverse effect must be considered. Chatter can be caused by a cutting edge that is oriented at a high lead angle when turning, and sometimes, when turning long and slender shafts, even a small lead angle can cause chatter. In fact, an unsuitable lead angle of the side cutting edge is one of the principal causes of chatter. When chatter occurs, often simply reducing the lead angle will cure it. Sometimes, very long and slender shafts can be turned successfully with a tool having a zero degree lead angle (and having a small nose radius). Boring bars, being usually somewhat long and slender, are also susceptible to chatter if a large lead angle is used. The lead angle for boring bars should be kept small, and for very long and slender boring bars a zero-degree lead angle is recommended. It is impossible to provide a rule that will determine when chatter caused by a lead angle will occur and when it will not. The first consideration is the length to diameter ratio of the part to be turned, or of the boring bar. Then the method of holding the workpiece must be considered — a part that is firmly held is less apt to chatter. Finally, the overall condition and rigidity of the machine must be considered because they may be the real cause of chatter.

Although chatter can be a problem, the advantages gained from high lead angles are such that the lead angle should be as large as possible at all times.

End Cutting Edge Angle.—The size of the end cutting edge angle is important when tool wear by cratering occurs. Frequently, the crater will enlarge until it breaks through the end cutting edge just behind the nose, and tool failure follows shortly. Reducing the size of the end cutting edge angle tends to delay the time of crater breakthrough. When cratering takes place, the recommended end cutting edge angle is 8 to 15 degrees. If there is no cratering, the angle can be made larger. Larger end cutting edge angles may be required to enable profile turning tools to plunge into the work without interference from the end cutting edge.

Nose Radius.—The tool nose is a very critical part of the cutting edge since it cuts the finished surface on the workpiece. If the nose is made to a sharp point, the finish machined surface will usually be unacceptable and the life of the tool will be short. Thus, a nose radius is required to obtain an acceptable surface finish and tool life. The surface finish obtained is determined by the feed rate and by the nose radius if other factors such as the work material, the cutting speed, and cutting fluids are not considered. A large nose radius will give a better surface finish and will permit a faster feed rate to be used.

Machinability tests have demonstrated that increasing the nose radius will also improve the tool life or allow a faster cutting speed to be used. For example, high-speed steel tools were used to turn an alloy steel in one series of tests where complete or catastrophic tool failure was used as a criterion for the end of tool life. The cutting speed for a 60-minute

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tool life was found to be 125 fpm (0.635 m/s) when the nose radius was 1/16 inch (1.59 mm) and 160 fpm (0.8.13 m/s) when the nose radius was 1/4 inch (6.35 mm).

A very large nose radius can often be used but a limit is sometimes imposed because the tendency for chatter to occur is increased as the nose radius is made larger. A nose radius that is too large can cause chatter, and, when it does, a smaller nose radius must be used on the tool. It is always good practice to make the nose radius as large as is compatible with the operation being performed.

Chipbreakers.—Many steel turning tools are equipped with chipbreaking devices to prevent the formation of long continuous chips in connection with the turning of steel at the high speeds made possible by high-speed steel and especially cemented carbide tools. Long steel chips are dangerous to the operator and cumbersome to handle, and they may twist around the tool and cause damage. Broken chips not only occupy less space, but permit a better flow of coolant to the cutting edge. Several different forms of chipbreakers are illustrated in Fig. 4.

Angular Shoulder Type: The angular shoulder type shown at *A* is one of the commonly used forms. As the enlarged sectional view shows, the chipbreaking shoulder is located back of the cutting edge. The angle *a* between the shoulder and cutting edge may vary from 6 to 15 degrees or more, 8 degrees being a fair average. The ideal angle, width *W* and depth *G*, depend upon the speed and feed, the depth of cut, and the material. As a general rule, width *W*, at the end of the tool, varies from 3/32 to 7/32 inch (2.4–5.6 mm), and the depth *G* may range from 1/64 to 1/16 inch (0.4–1.6 mm). The shoulder radius equals depth *G*. If the tool has a large nose radius, the corner of the shoulder at the nose end may be beveled off, as illustrated at *B*, to prevent it from coming into contact with the work. The width *K* for type *B* should equal approximately 1.5 times the nose radius.

Parallel Shoulder Type: Diagram C shows a design with a chipbreaking shoulder that is parallel with the cutting edge. With this form, the chips are likely to come off in short curled sections. The parallel form may also be applied to straight tools that do not have a side cutting-edge angle. The tendency with this parallel shoulder form is to force the chips against the work and damage it.

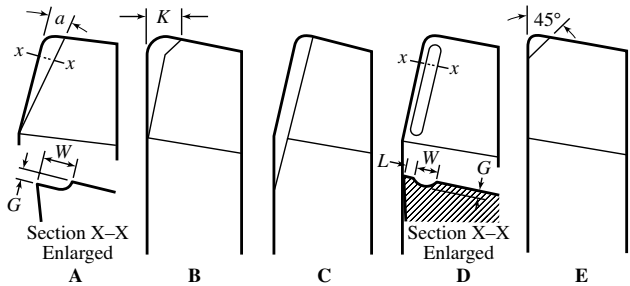


Fig. 4. Different Forms of Chipbreakers for Turning Tools

Groove Type: This type (diagram D) has a groove in the face of the tool produced by grinding. Between the groove and the cutting edge, there is a land *L*. Under ideal conditions, this width *L*, the groove width *W*, and the groove depth *G*, would be varied to suit the feed, depth of cut and material. For average use, *L* and *G* are about 1/32 inch (0.79 mm), and *W* 1/16 inch (1.59 mm). There are differences of opinion concerning the relative merits of the groove type and the shoulder type. Both types have proved satisfactory when properly proportioned for a given class of work.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chipbreaker for Light Cuts: Diagram E illustrates a form of chipbreaker that is sometimes used on tools for finishing cuts having a maximum depth of about $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.79 mm). This chipbreaker is a shoulder type, having an angle of 45 degrees and a maximum width of about $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.59 mm). It is important in grinding all chipbreakers to give the chip-bearing surfaces a fine finish, such as would be obtained by honing. This finish greatly increases the life of the tool.

Planing Tools.—Many of the principles governing the shape of turning tools also apply in the grinding of tools for planing. The amount of rake depends upon the hardness of the material, and the direction of the rake should be away from the *working part* of the cutting edge. The angle of clearance should be about 4 or 5 degrees for planer tools, which is less than for lathe tools. This small clearance is allowable because a planer tool is held about square with the platen, whereas a lathe tool, the height and inclination of which can be varied, may not always be clamped in the same position.

Carbide Tools: Carbide tools for planing usually have negative rake. Round-nose and square-nose end-cutting tools should have a "negative back rake" (or front rake) of 2 or 3 degrees. Side cutting tools may have a negative back rake of 10 degrees, a negative side rake of 5 degrees, and a side cutting-edge angle of 8 degrees.

Indexable Inserts

Introduction.—A large proportion of cemented carbide, single-point cutting tools are indexable inserts and indexable insert tool holders. Dimensional specifications for solid sintered carbide indexable inserts are given in ANSI B212.12-1991 (R2002). Samples of the many insert shapes are shown in Table 3b. Most modern, cemented carbide, face milling cutters are of the indexable insert type. Larger size end milling cutters, side milling or slotting cutters, boring tools, and a wide variety of special tools are made to use indexable inserts. These inserts are primarily made from cemented carbide, although most of the cemented oxide cutting tools are also indexable inserts.

The objective of this type of tooling is to provide an insert with several cutting edges. When an edge is worn, the insert is indexed in the tool holder until all the cutting edges are used up, after which it is discarded. The insert is not intended to be reground. The advantages are that the cutting edges on the tool can be rapidly changed without removing the tool holder from the machine, tool-grinding costs are eliminated, and the cost of the insert is less than the cost of a similar, brazed carbide tool. Of course, the cost of the tool holder must be added to the cost of the insert; however, one tool holder will usually last for a long time before it, too, must be replaced.

Indexable inserts and tool holders are made with a negative or positive rake. Negative rake inserts have the advantage of having twice as many cutting edges available as comparable positive rake inserts, because the cutting edges on both the top and bottom of negative rake inserts can be used, while only the top cutting edges can be used on positive rake inserts. Positive rake inserts have a distinct advantage when machining long and slender parts, thin-walled parts, or other parts that are subject to bending or chatter when the cutting load is applied to them, because the cutting force is significantly lower as compared to that for negative rake inserts. Indexable inserts can be obtained in the following forms: utility ground, or ground on top and bottom only; precision ground, or ground on all surfaces; prehoned to produce a slight rounding of the cutting edge; and precision molded, which are unground. Positive-negative rake inserts also are available. These inserts are held on a negative-rake tool holder and have a chipbreaker groove that is formed to produce an effective positive-rake angle while cutting. Cutting edges may be available on the top surface only, or on both top and bottom surfaces. The positive-rake chipbreaker surface may be ground or precision molded on the insert.

Many materials, such as gray cast iron, form a discontinuous chip. For these materials an insert that has plain faces without chipbreaker grooves should always be used. Steels and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

other ductile materials form a continuous chip that must be broken into small segments when machined on lathes and planers having single-point, cemented carbide and cemented-oxide cutting tools; otherwise, the chips can cause injury to the operator. In this case a chipbreaker must be used. Some inserts are made with chipbreaker grooves molded or ground directly on the insert. When inserts with plain faces are used, a cemented-carbide plate-type chipbreaker is clamped on top of the insert.

Identification System for Indexable Inserts.—The size of indexable inserts is determined by the diameter of an inscribed circle (I.C.), except for rectangular and parallelogram inserts where the length and width are used. To describe an insert in its entirety, a standard ANSI B212.4-2002 identification system is used where each position number designates a feature of the insert. The ANSI Standard includes items now commonly used and facilitates identification of items not in common use. Identification consists of up to ten positions; each position defines a characteristic of the insert as shown below:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8[a]	9[a]	10[a]
T	**N**	**M**	**G**	**5**	**4**	**3**			**A**

[a] Eighth, Ninth, and Tenth Positions are used only when required.

1) *Shape:* The shape of an insert is designated by a letter: **R** for round; **S,** square; **T,** triangle; **A,** 85° parallelogram; **B,** 82° parallelogram; **C,** 80° diamond; **D,** 55° diamond; **E,** 75° diamond; **H,** hexagon; **K,** 55° parallelogram; **L,** rectangle; **M,** 86° diamond; **O,** octagon; **P,** pentagon; **V,** 35° diamond; and **W,** 80° trigon.

2) *Relief Angle (Clearances):* The second position is a letter denoting the relief angles: **N** for 0°; **A,** 3°; **B,** 5°; **C,** 7°; **P,** 11°; **D,** 15°; **E,** 20°; **F,** 25°; **G,** 30°; **H,** 0° & 11°*; **J,** 0° & 14°*; **K,** 0° & 17°*; **L,** 0° & 20°*; **M,** 11° & 14°*; **R,** 11° & 17°*; **S,** 11° & 20°*. When mounted on a holder, the actual relief angle may be different from that on the insert.

3) *Tolerances:* The third position is a letter and indicates the tolerances controlling the indexability of the insert. Tolerances specified do not imply the method of manufacture.

Symbol	Tolerance (± from nominal)		Symbol	Tolerance (± from nominal)	
	Inscribed Circle, Inch	Thickness, Inch		Inscribed Circle, Inch	Thickness, Inch
A	0.001	0.001	H	0.0005	0.001
B	0.001	0.005	J	0.002–0.005	0.001
C	0.001	0.001	K	0.002–0.005	0.001
D	0.001	0.005	L	0.002–0.005	0.001
E	0.001	0.001	M	0.002–0.004[a]	0.005
F	0.0005	0.001	U	0.005–0.010[a]	0.005
G	0.001	0.005	N	0.002–0.004[a]	0.001

[a] Exact tolerance is determined by size of insert. See ANSI B212.12.

4) *Type:* The type of insert is designated by a letter: **A,** with hole; **B,** with hole and countersink; **C,** with hole and two countersinks; **F,** chip grooves both surfaces, no hole; **G,** same as **F** but with hole; **H,** with hole, one countersink, and chip groove on one rake surface; **J,** with hole, two countersinks and chip grooves on two rake surfaces; **M,** with hole and chip groove on one rake surface; **N,** without hole; **Q,** with hole and two countersinks; **R,** without hole but with chip groove on one rake surface; **T,** with hole, one countersink, and chip groove on one rake face; **U,** with hole, two countersinks, and chip grooves on two rake faces; and **W,** with hole and one countersink. *Note:* a dash may be used after

* Second angle is secondary facet angle, which may vary by ± 1°.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

position 4 to separate the shape-describing portion from the following dimensional description of the insert and is not to be considered a position in the standard description.

5) *Size:* The size of the insert is designated by a one- or two-digit number. For regular polygons and diamonds, insert size is the number of eighths of an inch in the nominal size of the inscribed circle, and will be a one- or two-digit number when the number of eighths is a whole number. It will be a two-digit number, including one decimal place, when it is not a whole number. Rectangular and parallelogram inserts require two digits: the first digit indicates the number of eighths of an inch width and the second digit the number of quarters of an inch length.

6) *Thickness:* The thickness is designated by a one- or two-digit number, which indicates the number of sixteenths of an inch in the thickness of the insert. Thickness is a one-digit number when the number of sixteenths is a whole number; it is a two-digit number carried to one decimal place when the number of sixteenths of an inch is not a whole number.

7) *Cutting Point Configuration:* The cutting point, or nose radius, is designated by a number representing $^1/_{64}$ths of an inch; a flat at the cutting point or nose, is designated by a letter: **0** for sharp corner, 0.002 inch max. radius; **0.2** for 0.004 radius; **0.3 for 0.008 radius; 1,** $^1/_{64}$ inch radius; **2,** $^1/_{32}$ inch radius; **3,** $^3/_{64}$ inch radius; **4,** $^1/_{16}$ inch radius; **5,** $^5/_{64}$ inch radius; **6,** $^3/_{32}$ inch radius; **7,** $^7/_{64}$ inch radius; **8,** $^1/_8$ inch radius; **X, any other radius; A,** square insert with 45° chamfer; **D,** square insert with 30° chamfer; **E,** square insert with 15° chamfer; **F,** square insert with 3° chamfer; **K,** square insert with 30° double chamfer; **L,** square insert with 15° double chamfer; **M,** square insert with 3° double chamfer; **N,** truncated triangle insert; and **P,** flatted corner triangle insert.

8) *Special Cutting Point Definition:* The eighth position, if it follows a letter in the 7th position, is a number indicating the number of $^1/_{64}$ths of an inch in the primary facet length measured parallel to the edge of the facet.

9) *Hand:* **R,** right; **L,** left; to be used when required in ninth position.

10) *Other Conditions:* Position ten defines special conditions (such as edge treatment, surface finish): **A,** honed, 0.0005 to less than 0.003 inch (0.0127 to 0.0762 mm); **B,** honed, 0.003 to less than 0.005 inch (0.0762 to 0.127 mm); **C,** honed, 0.005 to less than 0.007 inch (0.127 to 0.178 mm); **J,** polished, 4 μinch (0.1016 μm) arithmetic average (AA) on rake surfaces only; **T,** chamfered, manufacturer's standard negative land, rake face only.

Indexable Insert Tool Holders.—Indexable insert tool holders are made from a good grade of steel which is heat treated to a hardness of 44 to 48 RC (Rockwell C scale) for most normal applications. Accurate pockets that serve to locate the insert in position and to provide surfaces against which the insert can be clamped are machined in the ends of tool holders. A cemented carbide seat usually is provided and is held in the bottom of the pocket by a screw or by the clamping pin, if one is used. The seat is necessary to provide a flat bearing surface upon which the insert can rest and, in so doing, it adds materially to the ability of the insert to withstand the cutting load. The seating surface of the holder may provide a positive-, negative-, or a neutral-rake orientation to the insert when it is in position on the holder. Holders, therefore, are classified as positive, negative, or neutral rake.

Four basic methods are used to clamp the insert on the holder: 1) Clamping, usually top clamping; 2) Pin-lock clamping; 3) Multiple clamping using a clamp, usually a top clamp, and a pin lock; and 4) Clamping the insert with a machine screw.

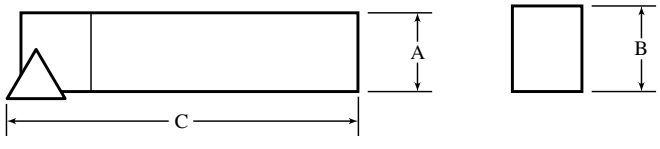
All top clamps are actuated by a screw that forces the clamp directly against the insert. When required, a cemented carbide, plate-type chipbreaker is placed between the clamp and the insert. Pin-lock clamps require an insert having a hole: the pin acts against the walls of the hole to clamp the insert firmly against the seating surfaces of the holder. Multiple or combination clamping, simultaneously using both a pin-lock and a top clamp, is recommended when taking heavier or interrupted cuts. Holders are available on which all the above-mentioned methods of clamping may be used. Other holders are made with only a top clamp or a pin lock. Screw-on type holders use a machine screw to hold the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

insert in the pocket. Most standard indexable insert holders are either straight-shank or offset-shank, although special holders are made having a wide variety of configurations.

The common shank sizes of indexable insert tool holders are shown in Table 1. Not all styles are available in every shank size. Positive- and negative-rake tools are also not available in every style or shank size. Some manufacturers provide additional shank sizes for certain tool holder styles. For more complete details, the manufacturers' catalogs must be consulted.

Table 1. Standard Shank Sizes for Indexable Insert Holders



Basic Shank Size	Shank Dimensions for Indexable Insert Holders					
	A		B		C[a]	
	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
½ × ½ × 4½	0.500	12.70	0.500	12.70	4.500	114.30
⅝ × ⅝ × 4½	0.625	15.87	0.625	15.87	4.500	114.30
⅝ × 1¼ × 6	0.625	15.87	1.250	31.75	6.000	152.40
¾ × ¾ × 4½	0.750	19.05	0.750	19.05	4.500	114.30
¾ × 1 × 6	0.750	19.05	1.000	25.40	6.000	152.40
¾ × 1¼ × 6	0.750	19.05	1.250	31.75	6.000	152.40
1 × 1 × 6	1.000	25.40	1.000	25.40	6.000	152.40
1 × 1¼ × 6	1.000	25.40	1.250	31.75	6.000	152.40
1 × 1½ × 6	1.000	25.40	1.500	38.10	6.000	152.40
1¼ × 1¼ × 7	1.250	31.75	1.250	31.75	7.000	177.80
1¼ × 1½ × 8	1.250	31.75	1.500	38.10	8.000	203.20
1⅜ × 2 1⁄16 × 6⅜	1.375	34.92	2.062	52.37	6.380	162.05
1½ × 1½ × 7	1.500	38.10	1.500	38.10	7.000	177.80
1¾ × 1¾ × 9½	1.750	44.45	1.750	44.45	9.500	241.30
2 × 2 × 8	2.000	50.80	2.000	50.80	8.000	203.20

[a] Holder length; may vary by manufacturer. Actual shank length depends on holder style.

Identification System for Indexable Insert Holders.—The following identification system conforms to the American National Standard, ANSI B212.5-2002, Metric Holders for Indexable Inserts.

Each position in the system designates a feature of the holder in the following sequence:

1	2	3	4	5	—	6	—	7	—	8[a]	—	9	—	10[a]
C	**T**	**N**	**A**	**R**	**—**	**85**	**—**	**25**	**—**	**D**	**—**	**16**	**—**	**Q**

1) *Method of Holding Horizontally Mounted Insert:* The method of holding or clamping is designated by a letter: **C,** top clamping, insert without hole; **M,** top and hole clamping, insert with hole; **P,** hole clamping, insert with hole; **S,** screw clamping through hole, insert with hole; **W,** wedge clamping.

2) *Insert Shape:* The insert shape is identified by a letter: **H,** hexagonal; **O,** octagonal; **P,** pentagonal; **S,** square; **T,** triangular; **C,** rhombic, 80° included angle; **D,** rhombic, 55° included angle; **E,** rhombic, 75° included angle; **M,** rhombic, 86° included angle; **V,** rhombic, 35° included angle; **W,** hexagonal, 80° included angle; **L,** rectangular; **A,** parallelogram, 85° included angle; **B,** parallelogram, 82° included angle; **K,** parallelogram, 55° included angle; **R,** round. The included angle is always the smaller angle.

3) *Holder Style:* The holder style designates the shank style and the side cutting edge angle, or end cutting edge angle, or the purpose for which the holder is used. It is designated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

by a letter: **A** for straight shank with 0° side cutting edge angle; **B,** straight shank with 15° side cutting edge angle; **C,** straight-shank end cutting tool with 0° end cutting edge angle; **D,** straight shank with 45° side cutting edge angle; **E,** straight shank with 30° side cutting edge angle; **F,** offset shank with 0° end cutting edge angle; **G,** offset shank with 0° side cutting edge angle; **J,** offset shank with negative 3° side cutting edge angle; **K,** offset shank with 15° end cutting edge angle; **L,** offset shank with negative 5° side cutting edge angle and 5° end cutting edge angle; **M,** straight shank with 40° side cutting edge angle; **N,** straight shank with 27° side cutting edge angle; **R,** offset shank with 15° side cutting edge angle; **S,** offset shank with 45° side cutting edge angle; **T,** offset shank with 30° side cutting edge angle; **U,** offset shank with negative 3° end cutting edge angle; **V,** straight shank with $17\frac{1}{2}$° side cutting edge angle; **W,** offset shank with 30° end cutting edge angle; **Y,** offset shank with 5° end cutting edge angle.

4) *Normal Clearances:* The normal clearances of inserts are identified by letters: **A,** 3°; **B,** 5°; **C,** 7°; **D,** 15°; **E,** 20°; **F,** 25°; **G,** 30°; **N,** 0°; **P,** 11°.

5) *Hand of tool:* The hand of the tool is designated by a letter: **R** for right-hand; **L,** left-hand; and **N,** neutral, or either hand.

6) *Tool Height for Rectangular Shank Cross Sections:* The tool height for tool holders with a rectangular shank cross section and the height of cutting edge equal to shank height are given as two-digit numbers representing these values in millimeters. For example, a height of 32 mm would be encoded as 32; 8 mm would be encoded as 08, where the one-digit value is preceded by a zero.

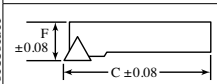
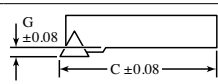
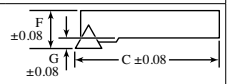
7) *Tool Width for Rectangular Shank Cross Sections:* The tool width for tool holders with a rectangular shank cross section is given as a two-digit number representing this value in millimeters. For example, a width of 25 mm would be encoded as 25; 8 mm would be encoded as 08, where the one-digit value is preceded by a zero.

8) *Tool Length:* The tool length is designated by a letter: **A,** 32 mm; **B,** 40 mm; **C,** 50 mm; **D,** 60 mm; **E,** 70 mm; **F,** 80 mm; **G,** 90 mm; **H,** 100 mm; **J,** 110 mm; **K,** 125 mm; **L,** 140 mm; **M,** 150 mm; **N,** 160 mm; **P,** 170 mm; **Q,** 180 mm; **R,** 200 mm; **S,** 250 mm; **T,** 300 mm; **U,** 350 mm; **V,** 400 mm; **W,** 450 mm; **X,** special length to be specified; **Y,** 500 mm.

9) *Indexable Insert Size:* The size of indexable inserts is encoded as follows: For insert shapes **C**, **D**, **E**, **H**, **M**, **O**, **P**, **R**, **S**, **T**, **V**, the side length (the diameter for **R** inserts) in millimeters is used as a two-digit number, with decimals being disregarded. For example, the symbol for a side length of 16.5 mm is 16. For insert shapes **A**, **B**, **K**, **L**, the length of the main cutting edge or of the longer cutting edge in millimeters is encoded as a two-digit number, disregarding decimals. If the symbol obtained has only one digit, then it should be preceded by a zero. For example, the symbol for a main cutting edge of 19.5 mm is 19; for an edge of 9.5 mm, the symbol is 09.

10) *Special Tolerances:* Special tolerances are indicated by a letter: **Q,** back and end qualified tool; **F,** front and end qualified tool; **B,** back, front, and end qualified tool. A qualified tool is one that has tolerances of ± 0.08 mm for dimensions *F*, *G*, and *C*. (See Table 2.)

Table 2. Letter Symbols for Qualification of Tool Holders
Position 10 *ANSI B212.5-2002*

Qualification of Tool Holder	Letter Symbol		
	Q	F	B
			
	Back and end qualified tool	Front and end qualified tool	Back, front, and end qualified tool

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Selecting Indexable Insert Holders.—A guide for selecting indexable insert holders is provided by Table 3b. Some operations such as deep grooving, cut-off, and threading are not given in this table. However, tool holders designed specifically for these operations are available. The boring operations listed in Table 3b refer primarily to larger holes into which the holders will fit. Smaller holes are bored using boring bars. An examination of this table shows that several tool-holder styles can be and frequently are used for each operation. Selection of the best holder for a given job depends largely on the job, and there are certain basic facts that should be considered in making the selection.

Rake Angle: A negative-rake insert has twice as many cutting edges available as a comparable positive-rake insert. Sometimes the tool life obtained when using the second face may be less than that obtained on the first face because the tool wear on the cutting edges of the first face may reduce the insert strength. Nevertheless, the advantage of negative-rake inserts and holders is such that they should be considered first in making any choice. Positive-rake holders should be used where lower cutting forces are required, as when machining slender or small-diameter parts, when chatter may occur, and for machining some materials, such as aluminum, copper, and certain grades of stainless steel, when positive-negative rake inserts can sometimes be used to advantage. These inserts are held on negative-rake holders that have their rake surfaces ground or molded to form a positive-rake angle.

Insert Shape: The configuration of the workpiece, the operation to be performed, and the lead angle required often determine the insert shape. When these factors need not be considered, the insert shape should be selected on the basis of insert strength and the maximum number of cutting edges available. Thus, a round insert is the strongest and has a maximum number of available cutting edges. It can be used with heavier feeds while producing a good surface finish. Round inserts are limited by their tendency to cause chatter, which may preclude their use. The square insert is the next most effective shape, providing good corner strength and more cutting edges than all other inserts except the round insert. The only limitation of this insert shape is that it must be used with a lead angle. Therefore, the square insert cannot be used for turning square shoulders or for back-facing. Triangle inserts are the most versatile and can be used to perform more operations than any other insert shape. The 80-degree diamond insert is designed primarily for heavy turning and facing operations using the 100-degree corners, and, for turning and back-facing square shoulders, using the 80-degree corners. The 55- and 35-degree diamond inserts are intended primarily for tracing.

Lead Angle: Tool holders should be selected to provide the largest possible lead angle, although limitations are sometimes imposed by the nature of the job. For example, when tuning and back-facing a shoulder, a negative lead angle must be used. Slender or small-diameter parts may deflect, causing difficulties in holding size, or chatter when the lead angle is too large.

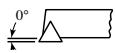
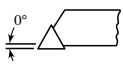
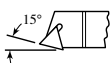
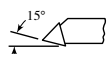
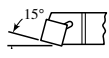
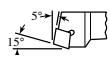
End Cutting Edge Angle: When tracing or contour turning, the plunge angle is determined by the end cutting edge angle. A 2-deg minimum clearance angle should be provided between the workpiece surface and the end cutting edge of the insert. Table 3a provides the maximum plunge angle for holders commonly used to plunge when tracing where insert shape identifiers are S = square, T = triangle, D = 55-deg diamond, V = 35-deg diamond. When severe cratering cannot be avoided, an insert having a small, end cutting edge angle is desirable to delay the crater breakthrough behind the nose. For very heavy cuts, a small, end cutting edge angle will strengthen the corner of the tool. Tool holders for numerical control machines are discussed beginning page 856.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3a. Maximum Plunge Angle for Tracing or Contour Turning

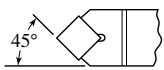
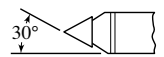
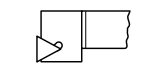
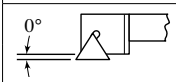
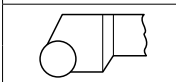
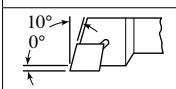
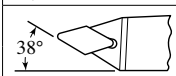
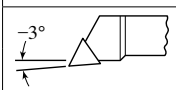
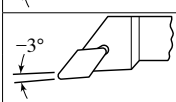
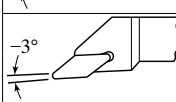
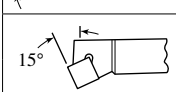
Tool Holder Style	Insert Shape	Maximum Plunge Angle	Tool Holder Style	Insert Shape	Maximum Plunge Angle
E	T	58°	J	D	30°
D and S	S	43°	J	V	50°
H	D	71°	N	T	55°
J	T	25°	N	D	58° to 60°

Table 3b. Indexable Insert Holder Application Guide

Tool	Tool Holder Style	Insert Shape	N-Negative P-Positive Rake	Application: Turn	Face	Turn and Face	Turn and Backface	Trace	Groove	Chamfer	Bore	Plane
	A	T	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	
	A	T	N	●	●			●				
			P	●	●			●				
	A	R	N	●	●	●						●
	A	R	N	●	●	●		●				●
	B	T	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	
	B	T	N	●	●			●			●	
			P	●	●			●			●	
	B	S	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	
	B	C	N	●	●	●					●	●
	C	T	N	●	●				●	●		
			P	●	●				●	●		

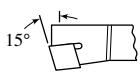
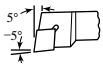
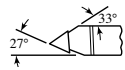
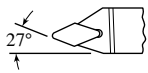
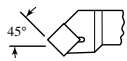
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3b. *(Continued)* **Indexable Insert Holder Application Guide**

Tool	Tool Holder Style	Insert Shape	N-Negative P-Positive Rake	Application								
				Turn	Face	Turn and Face	Turn and Backface	Trace	Groove	Chamfer	Bore	Plane
	D	S	N	●	●	●		●		●	●	●
			P	●	●	●		●		●	●	●
	E	T	N	●	●			●	●	●		
			P	●	●			●	●	●		
	F	T	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	
	G	T	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	
	G	R	N	●	●	●						
	G	C	N	●	●	●						
			P	●	●	●						
	H	D	N	●	●			●				
	J	T	N				●	●				
			P				●	●				
	J	D	N				●	●				
	J	V	N				●	●				
	K	S	N	●	●						●	
			P	●	●						●	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3b. *(Continued)* **Indexable Insert Holder Application Guide**

Tool	Tool Holder Style	Insert Shape	N-Negative P-Positive Rake	Application								
				Turn	Face	Turn and Face	Turn and Backface	Trace	Groove	Chamfer	Bore	Plane
	K	C	N	●	●						●	
	L	C	N			●	●					
	N	T	N	●	●			●				
			P	●	●			●				
	N	D	N	●	●			●				
	S	S	N	●	●	●		●		●	●	●
			P	●	●	●		●		●	●	●
	W	T	N	●	●							

Sintered Carbide Blanks and Cutting Tools

Sintered Carbide Blanks.—As shown in Table 4, American National Standard ANSI B212.1-2002 provides standard sizes and designations for eight styles of sintered carbide blanks. These blanks are the unground solid carbide from which either solid or tipped cutting tools are made. Tipped cutting tools are made by brazing a blank onto a shank to produce the cutting tool; these tools differ from carbide *insert* cutting tools which consist of a carbide insert held mechanically in a tool holder. A typical single-point carbide-tipped cutting tool is shown in Fig. 1 on page 849.

Single-Point, Sintered Carbide-Tipped Tools.—American National Standard ANSI B212.1-2002 covers eight different styles of single-point, carbide-tipped general purpose tools. These styles are designated by the letters A to G inclusive. Styles A, B, F, G, and E with offset point are either right- or left-hand cutting as indicated by the letters R or L. Dimensions of tips and shanks are given in Table 5 to Table 12. For dimensions and tolerances not shown, and for the identification system, dimensions, and tolerances of sintered carbide boring tools, see the Standard.

A number follows the letters of the tool style and hand designation, and, for square shank tools, represents the number of sixteenths of an inch of width, *W*, and height, *H*. With rectangular shanks, the first digit of the number indicates the number of eighths of an inch in the shank width, *W*, and the second digit the number of quarters of an inch in the shank height, *H*. One exception is the $1\frac{1}{2} \times 2$-inch size, which has been arbitrarily assigned the number 90.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Sizes and Designations for Carbide Blanks
ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)

Blank Dimensions[a]			Style[b]	
			1000	2000
T	*W*	*L*	Blank Designation	
1/16	1/8	5/8	1010	2010
1/16	5/32	1/4	1015	2015
1/16	3/16	1/4	1020	2020
1/16	1/4	1/4	1025	2025
1/16	1/4	5/16	1030	2030
3/32	1/8	3/4	1035	2035
3/32	3/16	5/16	1040	2040
3/32	3/16	1/2	1050	2050
3/32	1/4	3/8	1060	2060
3/32	1/4	1/2	1070	2070
3/32	5/16	3/8	1080	2080
3/32	3/8	3/8	1090	2090
3/32	3/8	1/2	1100	2100
3/32	7/16	1/2	1105	2105
3/32	5/16	3/8	1080	2080
1/8	3/16	3/4	1110	2110
1/8	1/4	1/2	1120	2120
1/8	1/4	5/8	1130	2130
1/8	1/4	3/4	1140	2140
1/8	5/16	7/16	1150	2150
1/8	5/16	1/2	1160	2160
1/8	3/16	3/4	1110	2110
1/8	5/16	5/8	1170	2170
1/8	3/8	1/2	1180	2180
1/8	3/8	3/4	1190	2190
1/8	1/2	1/2	1200	2200
1/8	1/2	3/4	1210	2210
1/8	3/4	3/4	1215	2215
5/32	3/8	9/16	1220	2220
5/32	3/8	3/4	1230	2230
5/32	5/8	5/8	1240	2240
3/16	5/16	7/16	1250	2250
3/16	5/16	5/8	1260	2260
3/16	3/8	1/2	1270	2270
3/16	3/8	5/8	1280	2280
3/16	3/8	3/4	1290	2290
3/16	7/16	5/8	1300	2300
3/16	7/16	13/16	1310	2310
3/16	1/2	1/2	1320	2320
3/16	1/2	3/4	1330	2330
3/16	3/4	3/4	1340	2340

Blank Dimensions[a]			Style[b]			
			0000	1000	3000	4000
T	*W*	*L*	Blank Designation			
1/4	3/8	9/16	0350	1350	3350	4350
1/4	3/8	3/4	0360	1360	3360	4360
1/4	7/16	5/8	0370	1370	3370	4370
1/4	1/2	3/4	0380	1380	3380	4380
1/4	9/16	1	0390	1390	3390	4390
1/4	5/8	5/8	0400	1400	3400	4400
1/4	3/4	3/4	0405	1405	3405	4405
1/4	3/4	1	0410	1410	3410	4410
1/4	1	1	0415	1415	3415	4415
5/16	7/16	5/8	0420	1420	3420	4420
5/16	7/16	15/16	0430	1430	3430	4430
5/16	1/2	3/4	0440	1440	3440	4440
5/16	1/2	1	0450	1450	3450	4450
5/16	5/8	1	0460	1460	3460	4460
5/16	3/4	3/4	0470	1470	3470	4470
5/16	3/4	1	0475	1475	3475	4475
5/16	3/4	1 1/4	0480	1480	3480	4480
3/8	1/2	3/4	0490	1490	3490	4490
3/8	1/2	1	0500	1500	3500	4500
3/8	5/8	1	0510	1510	3510	4510
3/8	5/8	1 1/4	0515	1515	3515	4515
3/8	3/4	1 1/4	0520	1520	3520	4520
3/8	3/4	1 1/2	0525	1525	3525	4525
1/2	3/4	1	0530	1530	3530	4530
1/2	3/4	1 1/4	0540	1540	3540	4540
3/8	1/2	3/4	0490	1490	3490	4490
1/2	3/4	1 1/2	0550	1550	3550	4550

				Style[b]		
T	*W*	*L*	*F*	5000	6000	70000
1/16	1/4	5/16	…	5030	…	…
3/32	1/4	3/8	1/16	…	…	7060
3/32	5/16	3/8	…	5080	6080	…
3/32	3/8	1/2	…	5100	6100	…
3/32	7/16	1/2	…	5105	…	…
1/8	5/16	5/8	3/32	…	…	7170
3/32	1/4	3/8	1/16	…	…	7060
1/8	1/2	1/2	…	5200	6200	…
5/32	3/8	3/4	1/8	…	…	7230
5/32	5/8	5/8	…	5240	6240	…
3/16	3/4	3/4	…	5340	6340	…
1/4	1	3/4	…	5410	…	…

[a] All dimensions are in inches.

[b] See Fig. 1 on page 849 for a description of styles.

A typical single-point carbide-tipped cutting tool is shown in Fig. 2. The side rake, side relief, and the clearance angles are normal to the side-cutting edge, rather than the shank, to facilitate its being ground on a tilting-table grinder. The end-relief and clearance angles are *normal* to the end-cutting edge. The back-rake angle is parallel to the side-cutting edge.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

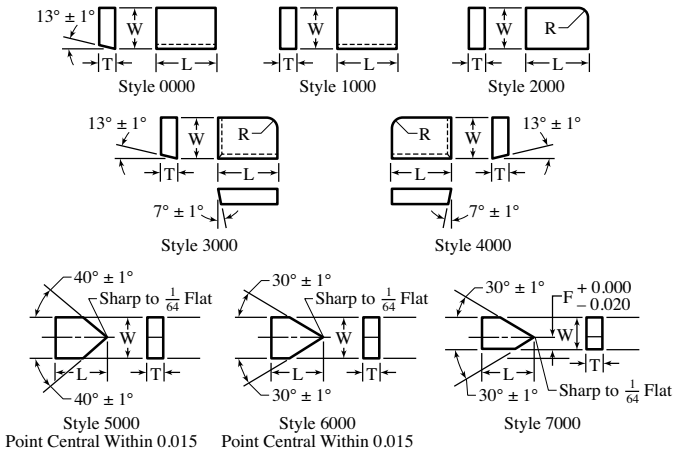


Fig. 1. Eight styles of Sintered Carbide Blanks (see Table 4)

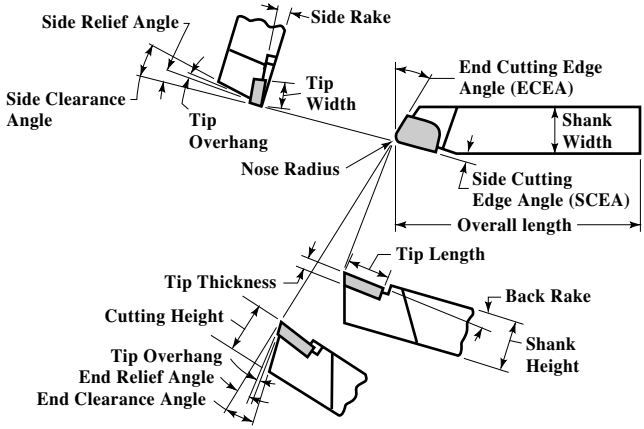


Fig. 2. A Typical Single-Point Carbide-Tipped Cutting Tool

The tip of the brazed carbide blank overhangs the shank of the tool by either $^1/_{32}$ or $^1/_{16}$ inch, depending on the size of the tool. For tools in Table 5, Table 6, Table 7, Table 8, Table 11 and Table 12, the maximum overhang is $^1/_{32}$ inch for shank sizes 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12 and 44; for other shank sizes in these tables, the maximum overhang is $^1/_{16}$ inch. In Table 9 and Table 10, all tools have maximum overhang of $^1/_{32}$ inch.

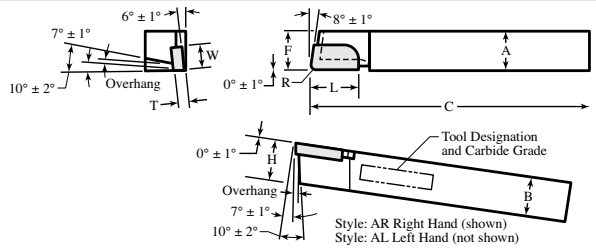
Single-point Tool Nose Radii: The tool nose radii recommended in the American National Standard are as follows: For square-shank tools up to and including $^3/_8$-inch

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

square tools, 1/64 inch; for those over 3/8-inch square through 1 1/4-inches square, 1/32 inch; and for those above 1 1/4-inches square, 1/16 inch. For rectangular-shank tools with shank sections of 1/2 × 1 inch through 1 × 1 1/2 inches, the nose radii are 1/32 inch, and for 1 × 2- and 1 1/2 × 2-inch shanks, the nose radius is 1/16 inch.

Single-point Tool Angle Tolerances: The tool angles shown on the diagrams in Table 5 through Table 12 are general recommendations. Tolerances applicable to these angles are ± 1 degree on all angles except end and side clearance angles; for these the tolerance is ± 2 degrees.

Table 5. American National Standard Style A Carbide-Tipped Tools
ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)

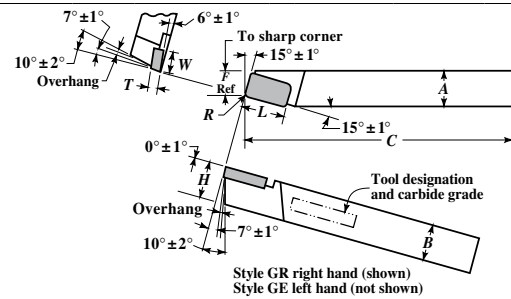


Designation		Shank Dimensions			Tip	Tip Dimensions		
Style AR[a]	Style AL[a]	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*	Designation[a]	Thickness *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
Square Shank								
AR 4	AL 4	1/4	1/4	2	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
AR 5	AL 5	5/16	5/16	2 1/4	2070	3/32	1/4	1/2
AR 6	AL 6	3/8	3/8	2 1/2	2070	3/32	1/4	1/2
AR 7	AL 7	7/16	7/16	3	2070	3/32	1/4	1/2
AR 8	AL 8	1/2	1/2	3 1/2	2170	1/8	5/16	5/8
AR 10	AL 10	5/8	5/8	4	2230	5/32	3/8	3/4
AR 12	AL 12	3/4	3/4	4 1/2	2310	3/16	7/16	1 3/16
AR 16	AL 16	1	1	6	{ P3390, P4390	1/4	9/16	1
AR 20	AL 20	1 1/4	1 1/4	7	{ P3460, P4460	5/16	5/8	1
AR 24	AL 24	1 1/2	1 1/2	8	{ P3510, P4510	3/8	5/8	1
Rectangular Shank								
AR 44	AL 44	1/2	1	6	P2260	3/16	5/16	5/8
AR 54	AL 54	5/8	1	6	{ P3360, P4360	1/4	3/8	3/4
AR 55	AL 55	5/8	1 1/4	7	{ P3360, P4360	1/4	3/8	3/4
AR 64	AL 64	3/4	1	6	{ P3380, P4380	1/4	1/2	3/4
AR 66	AL 66	3/4	1 1/2	8	{ P3430, P4430	5/16	7/16	1 5/16
AR 85	AL 85	1	1 1/4	7	{ P3460, P4460	5/16	5/8	1
AR 86	AL 86	1	1 1/2	8	{ P3510, P4510	3/8	5/8	1
AR 88	AL 88	1	2	10	{ P3510, P4510	3/8	5/8	1
AR 90	AL 90	1 1/2	2	10	{ P3540, P4540	1/2	3/4	1 1/4

[a] "A" is straight shank, 0 deg., SCEA (side-cutting-edge angle). "R" is right-cut. "L" is left-cut. Where a pair of tip numbers is shown, the upper number applies to AR tools, the lower to AL tools. All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Style B Carbide-Tipped Tools with 15-degree Side-cutting-edge Angle *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*



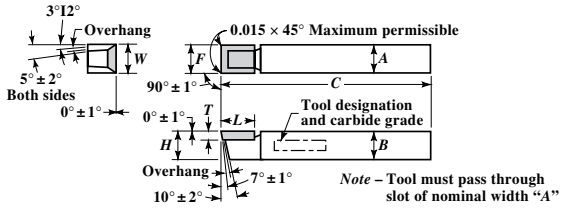
Designation		Shank Dimensions			Tip Designation[a]	Tip Dimensions		
Style BR	Style BL	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*		Thickness *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
Square Shank								
BR 4	BL 4	¼	¼	2	2015	1/16	5/32	¼
BR 5	BL 5	5/16	5/16	2¼	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
BR 6	BL 6	⅜	⅜	2½	2070	3/32	¼	½
BR 7	BL 7	7/16	7/16	3	2070	3/32	¼	½
BR 8	BL 8	½	½	3½	2170	⅛	5/16	⅝
BR 10	BL 10	⅝	⅝	4	2230	5/32	⅜	¾
BR 12	BL 12	¾	¾	4½	2310	3/16	7/16	13/16
BR 16	BL 16	1	1	6	{ 3390, 4390	¼	9/16	1
BR 20	BL 20	1¼	1¼	7	{ 3460, 4460	5/16	⅝	1
BR 24	BL 24	1½	1½	8	{ 3510, 4510	⅜	⅝	1
Rectangular Shank								
BR 44	BL 44	½	1	6	2260	3/16	5/16	⅝
BR 54	BL 54	⅝	1	6	{ 3360, 4360	¼	⅜	¾
BR 55	BL 55	⅝	1¼	7	{ 3360, 4360	¼	⅜	¾
BR 64	BL 64	¾	1	6	{ 3380, 4380	¼	½	¾
BR 66	BL 66	¾	1½	8	{ 3430, 4430	5/16	7/16	15/16
BR 85	BL 85	1	1¼	7	{ 3460, 4460	5/16	⅝	1
BR 86	BL 86	1	1½	8	{ 3510, 4510	⅜	⅝	1
BR 88	BL 88	1	2	10	{ 3510, 4510	⅜	⅝	1
BR 90	BL 90	1½	2	10	{ 3540, 4540	½	¾	1¼

[a] Where a pair of tip numbers is shown, the upper number applies to BR tools, the lower to BL tools. All dimensions are in inches.

Brazing Carbide Tips to Steel Shanks.—Sintered carbide tips or blanks are attached to steel shanks by brazing. Shanks usually are made of low-alloy steels having carbon contents ranging from 0.40 to 0.60 percent. Shank Preparation: The carbide tip usually is inserted into a milled recess or seat. When a recess is used, the bottom should be flat to provide a firm even support for the tip. The corner radius of the seat should be somewhat smaller than the radius on the tip to avoid contact and insure support along each side of the recess. Cleaning: All surfaces to be brazed must be absolutely clean. Surfaces of the tip may be cleaned by grinding lightly or by sand-blasting. Brazing Materials and Equipment: The brazing metal may be copper, naval brass such as Tobin bronze, or silver solder. A flux such as borax is used to protect the clean surfaces and prevent oxidation. Heating may be done in a furnace or by oxy-acetylene torch or an oxy-hydrogen torch. Copper brazing usually is done in a furnace, although an oxy-hydrogen torch with excess hydrogen is sometimes used. Brazing Procedure: One method using a torch is to place a thin sheet material, such as copper foil, around and beneath the carbide tip, the top of which is covered with flux. The flame is applied to the underside of the tool shank, and, when the materials melt, the tip is pressed firmly into its seat with tongs or with the end of a rod. Brazing material in the form of wire or rod may be used to coat or tin the surfaces of the recess after the flux

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

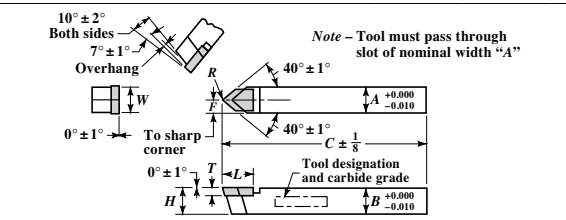
Table 7. American National Standard Style C Carbide-Tipped Tools
ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)



Designation	Shank Dimensions			Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
	Width, *A*	Height, *B*	Length, *C*		Thickness, *T*	Width, *W*	Length, *L*
C 4	¼	¼	2	1030	1/16	¼	5/16
C 5	5/16	5/16	2¼	1080	3/32	5/16	⅜
C 6	⅜	⅜	2½	1090	3/32	⅜	⅜
C 7	7/16	7/16	3	1105	3/32	7/16	½
C 8	½	½	3½	1200	⅛	½	½
C 10	⅝	⅝	4	1240	5/32	⅝	⅝
C 12	¾	¾	4½	1340	3/16	¾	¾
C 16	1	1	6	1410	¼	1	¾
C 20	1¼	1¼	7	1480	5/16	1¼	¾
C 44	½	1	6	1320	3/16	½	½
C 54	⅝	1	6	1400	¼	⅝	⅝
C 55	⅝	1¼	7	1400	¼	⅝	⅝
C 64	¾	1	6	1405	¼	¾	¾
C 66	¾	1½	8	1470	5/16	¾	¾
C 86	1	1½	8	1475	5/16	1	¾

All dimensions are in inches. Square shanks above horizontal line, rectangular below.

Table 8. American National Standard Style D, 80-degree Nose-angle Carbide-Tipped Tools *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*

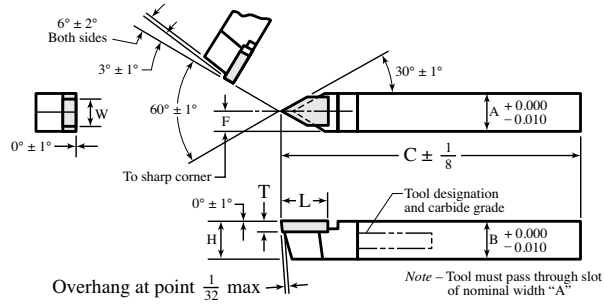


Designation	Shank Dimensions			Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
	Width, *A*	Height, *B*	Length, *C*		Thickness, *T*	Width, *W*	Length, *L*
D 4	¼	¼	2	5030	1/16	¼	5/16
D 5	5/16	5/16	2¼	5080	3/32	5/16	⅜
D 6	⅜	⅜	2½	5100	3/32	⅜	½
D 7	7/16	7/16	3	5105	3/32	7/16	½
D 8	½	½	3½	5200	⅛	½	½
D 10	⅝	⅝	4	5240	5/32	⅝	⅝
D 12	¾	¾	4½	5340	3/16	¾	¾
D 16	1	1	6	5410	¼	1	¾

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

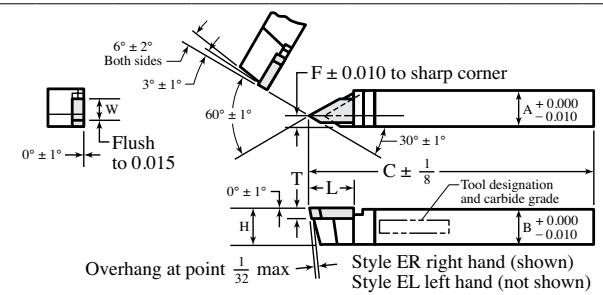
Table 9. American National Standard Style E, 60-degree Nose-angle, Carbide-Tipped Tools *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*



Designation	Shank Dimensions			Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*		Thickness *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
E 4	1/4	1/4	2	6030	1/16	1/4	5/16
E 5	5/16	5/16	2 1/4	6080	3/32	5/16	3/8
E 6	3/8	3/8	2 1/2	6100	3/32	3/8	1/2
E 8	1/2	1/2	3 1/2	6200	1/8	1/2	1/2
E 10	5/8	5/8	4	6240	5/32	5/8	5/8
E 12	3/4	3/4	4 1/2	6340	3/16	3/4	3/4

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 10. American National Standard Styles ER and EL, 60-degree Nose-angle, Carbide-Tipped Tools with Offset Point *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*

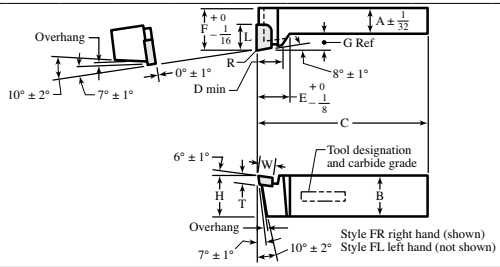


Designation		Shank Dimensions			Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
Style ER	Style EL	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*		Thick. *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
ER 4	EL 4	1/4	1/4	2	1020	1/16	3/16	1/4
ER 5	EL 5	5/16	5/16	2 1/4	7060	3/32	1/4	3/8
ER 6	EL 6	3/8	3/8	2 1/2	7060	3/32	1/4	3/8
ER 8	EL 8	1/2	1/2	3 1/2	7170	1/8	5/16	5/8
ER 10	EL 10	5/8	5/8	4	7170	1/8	5/16	5/8
ER 12	EL 12	3/4	3/4	4 1/2	7230	5/32	3/8	3/4

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. American National Standard Style F, Offset, End-cutting Carbide-Tipped Tools *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*



Designation		Shank Dimensions					Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
Style FR	Style FL	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*	Offset *G*	Length of Offset *E*		Thickness *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
Square Shank										
FR 8	FL 8	½	½	3½	¼	¾	{ P4170, P3170	⅛	5/16	⅝
FR 10	FL 10	⅝	⅝	4	⅜	1	{ P1230, P3230	5/32	⅜	¾
FR 12	FL 12	¾	¾	4½	⅝	1⅛	{ P4310, P3310	3/16	7/16	13/16
FR 16	FL 16	1	1	6	¾	1⅜	{ P4390, P3390	¼	9/16	1
FR 20	FL 20	1¼	1¼	7	¾	1½	{ P4460, P3460	5/16	⅝	1
FR 24	FL 24	1½	1½	8	¾	1½	{ P4510, P3510	⅜	⅝	1
Rectangular Shank										
FR 44	FL 44	½	1	6	½	⅞	{ P4260, P1260	3/16	5/16	⅝
FR 55	FL 55	⅝	1¼	7	⅝	1⅛	{ P4360, P3360	¼	⅜	¾
FR 64	FL 64	¾	1	6	⅝	1 3/16	{ P4380, P3380	¼	½	¾
FR 66	FL 66	¾	1½	8	¾	1¼	{ P4430, P3430	5/16	7/16	15/16
FR 85	FL 85	1	1¼	7	¾	1½	{ P4460, P3460	5/16	⅝	1
FR 86	FL 86	1	1½	8	¾	1½	{ P4510, P3510	⅜	⅝	1
FR 90	FL 90	1½	2	10	¾	1⅝	{ P4540, P3540	½	¾	1¼

All dimensions are in inches. Where a pair of tip numbers is shown, the upper number applies to FR tools, the lower to FL tools.

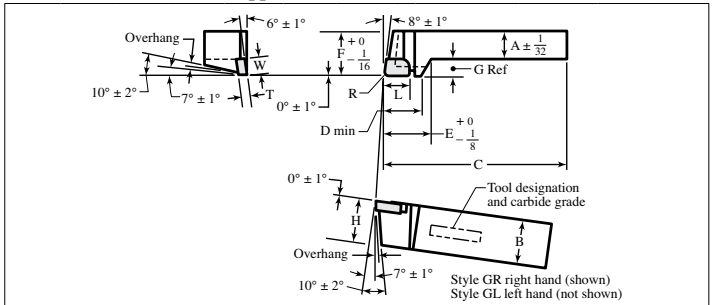
melts and runs freely. The tip is then inserted, flux is applied to the top, and heating is continued until the coatings melt and run freely. The tip, after coating with flux, is placed in the recess and the shank end is heated. Then a small piece of silver solder, having a melting point of 1325°F (718°C), is placed on top of the tip. When this solder melts, it runs over the nickel-coated surfaces while the tip is held firmly into its seat. The brazed tool should be cooled slowly to avoid cracking due to unequal contraction between the steel and carbide.

Carbide Tools.—Cemented or sintered carbides are used in the machine-building and various other industries, chiefly for cutting tools but also for certain other tools or parts subject to considerable abrasion or wear. Carbide cutting tools, when properly selected to obtain the right combination of strength and hardness, are very effective in machining all classes of iron and steel, nonferrous alloys, non-metallic materials, hard rubber, synthetic resins, slate, marble, and other materials which would quickly dull steel tools either because of hardness or abrasive action. Carbide cutting tools are not only durable, but capable of exceptionally high cutting speeds. See *CEMENTED CARBIDES* starting on page 860 for more on these materials.

Tungsten carbide is used extensively in cutting cast iron, nonferrous metals that form short chips in cutting, plastics and various other non-metallic materials. A grade having

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. American National Standard Style G, Offset, Side-cutting, Carbide-Tipped Tools *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*



Designation		Shank Dimensions					Tip Designation	Tip Dimensions		
Style GR	Style GL	Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*	Offset *G*	Length of Offset *E*		Thickness *T*	Width *W*	Length *L*
Square Shank										
GR 8	GL 8	½	½	3½	¼	1 1/16	{ P3170, P4170	⅛	5/16	⅝
GR 10	GL 10	⅝	⅝	4	⅜	1⅜	{ P3230, P4230	5/32	⅜	¾
GR 12	GL 12	¾	¾	4½	⅜	1½	{ P3310, P2310	3/16	7/16	13/16
GR 16	GL 16	1	1	6	½	1 11/16	{ P3390, P4390	¼	9/16	1
GR 20	GL 20	1¼	1¼	7	¾	1 13/16	{ P3460, P4460	5/16	⅝	1
GR 24	GL 24	1½	1½	8	¾	1 13/16	{ P3510, P4510	⅜	⅝	1
Rectangular Shank										
GR 44	GL 44	½	1	6	¼	1 1/16	{ P3260, P4260	3/16	5/16	⅝
GR 55	GL 55	⅝	1¼	7	⅜	1⅜	{ P3360, P4360	¼	⅜	¾
GR 64	GL 64	¾	1	6	½	1 7/16	{ P3380, P4380	¼	½	¾
GR 66	GL 66	¾	1½	8	½	1⅝	{ P3430, P4430	5/16	7/16	15/16
GR 85	GL 85	1	1¼	7	½	1 11/16	{ P3460, P4460	5/16	⅝	1
GR 86	GL 86	1	1½	8	½	1 11/16	{ P3510, P4510	⅜	⅝	1
GR 90	GL 90	1½	2	10	¾	2 1/16	{ P3540, P4540	½	¾	1¼

All dimensions are in inches. Where a pair of tip numbers is shown, the upper number applies to GR tools, the lower to GL tools.

a hardness of 87.5 RA on the Rockwell A scale might be used where a strong grade is required, as for roughing cuts, whereas for light high-speed finishing or other cuts, a hardness of about 92 RA might be preferable. When tungsten carbide is applied to steel, craters or chip cavities are formed back of the cutting edge; hence other carbides have been developed that offer greater resistance to abrasion.

Tungsten-titanium carbide (often called "titanium carbide") is adapted to cutting either heat-treated or non-heat-treated steels, cast steel, or any tough material that might form chip cavities. It is also applicable to bronzes, monel metal, aluminum alloys, etc.

Tungsten-tantalum carbide or "tantalum carbide" cutting tools are also applicable to steels, bronzes or other tough materials. A hardness of 86.8 RA is recommended by one manufacturer for roughing steel, whereas a grade for finishing might have a hardness ranging from 88.8 to 91.5 RA.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chipbreaker.—The term "chipbreaker" indicates a method of forming or grinding turning tools which will cause the chips to break up into short pieces, thus preventing the formation of long or continuous chips that would occupy considerable space and be difficult to handle. The chipbreaking form of cutting end is especially useful in turning with carbide-tipped steel turning tools because the cutting speeds are high and the chip formation rapid. The chipbreaker consists of a shoulder back of the cutting edge. As the chip encounters this shoulder it is bent and broken repeatedly into small pieces. Some tools have attached or "mechanical" chipbreakers, which serve the same purpose as the shoulder.

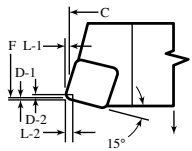
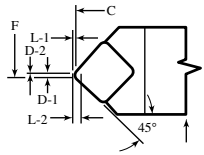
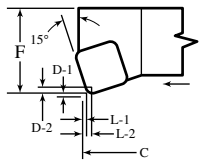
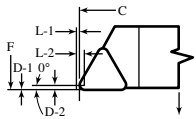
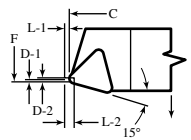
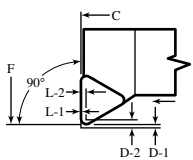
Chipless Machining.—Chipless machining is the term applied to methods of cold forming metals to the required finished part shape (or nearly finished shape) without the production of chips (or with a minimum of subsequent machining required). Cold forming of steel has long been performed in such operations as wire-, bar-, and tube-drawing; cold-heading; coining; and conventional stamping and drawing. However, newer methods of plastic deformation with greatly increased degrees of metal displacement have been developed. Among these processes are the rolling of serrations, splines, and gears; power spinning; internal swaging; radial forging; the cold forming of multiple-diameter shafts; cold extrusion; and high-energy-rate forming, which includes explosive forming. The processes of cold heading, thread rolling and rotary swaging are also considered chipless machining processes.

Indexable Insert Holders for NC.—Indexable insert holders for numerical control lathes are usually made to more precise standards than ordinary holders. Where applicable, reference should be made to American National Standard B212.3-2002, Precision Holders for Indexable Inserts. This standard covers the dimensional specifications, styles, and designations of precision holders for indexable inserts, which are defined as tool holders that locate the gage insert (a combination of shim and insert thicknesses) from the back or front and end surfaces to a specified dimension with a ± 0.003 inch (± 0.08 mm) tolerance. In NC programming, the programmed path is that followed by the center of the tool tip, which is the center of the point, or nose radius, of the insert. The surfaces produced are the result of the path of the nose and the major cutting edge, so it is necessary to compensate for the nose or point radius and the lead angle when writing the program. Table 1, from B212.3, gives the compensating dimensions for different holder styles. The reference point is determined by the intersection of extensions from the major and minor cutting edges, which would be the location of the point of a sharp pointed tool. The distances from this point to the nose radius are $L1$ and $D1$; $L2$ and $D2$ are the distances from the sharp point to the center of the nose radius. Threading tools have sharp corners and do not require a radius compensation. Other dimensions of importance in programming threading tools are also given in Table 2; the data were developed by Kennametal, Inc.

The C and F characters are tool holder dimensions other than the shank size. In all instances, the C dimension is parallel to the length of the shank and the F dimension is parallel to the side dimension; actual dimensions must be obtained from the manufacturer. For all K style holders, the C dimension is the distance from the end of the shank to the tangent point of the nose radius and the end cutting edge of the insert. For all other holders, the C dimension is from the end of the shank to a tangent to the nose radius of the insert. The F dimension on all B, D, E, M, P, and V style holders is measured from the back side of the shank to the tangent point of the nose radius and the side cutting edge of the insert. For all A, F, G, J, K, and L style holders, the F dimension is the distance from the back side of the shank to the tangent of the nose radius of the insert. In all these designs, the nose radius is the standard radius corresponding to those given in the paragraph *Cutting Point Configuration* on page 841.

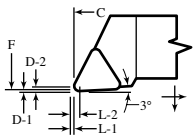
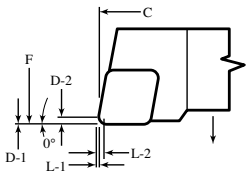
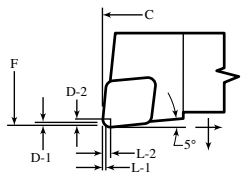
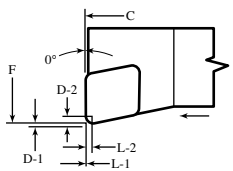
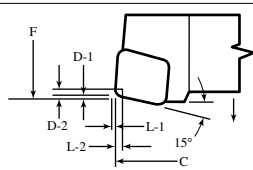
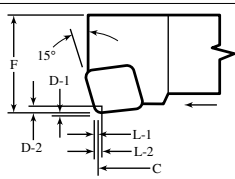
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Insert Radius Compensation *ANSI B212.3-2002 (R2011)*

Square Profile						
B Style[a] Also applies to R Style		Turning 15° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0035	.0191	.0009	.0110
		1/32	.0070	.0383	.0019	.0221
		3/64	.0105	.0574	.0028	.0331
		1/16	.0140	.0765	.0038	.0442
D Style[a] Also applies to S Style		Turning 45° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0065	.0221	.0065	0
		1/32	.0129	.0442	.0129	0
		3/64	.0194	.0663	.0194	0
		1/16	.0259	.0884	.0259	0
K Style[a]		Facing 15° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0009	.0110	.0035	.0191
		1/32	.0019	.0221	.0070	.0383
		3/64	.0028	.0331	.0105	.0574
		1/16	.0038	.0442	.0140	.0765
Triangle Profile						
G Style[a]		Turning 0° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0114	.0271	0	.0156
		1/32	.0229	.0541	0	.0312
		3/64	.0343	.0812	0	.0469
		1/16	.0458	.1082	0	.0625
B Style[a] Also applies to R Style		Turning and Facing 15° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0146	.0302	.0039	.0081
		1/32	.0291	.0604	.0078	.0162
		3/64	.0437	.0906	.0117	.0243
		1/16	.0582	.1207	.0156	.0324
F Style[a]		Facing 90° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	0	.0156	.0114	.0271
		1/32	0	.0312	.0229	.0541
		3/64	0	.0469	.0343	.0812
		1/16	0	.0625	.0458	.1082

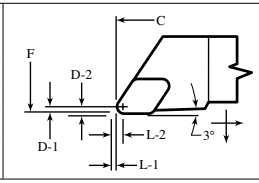
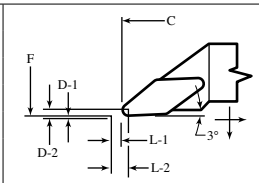
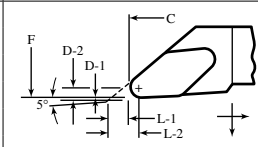
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Insert Radius Compensation** *ANSI B212.3-2002 (R2011)*

Triangle Profile *(continued)*						
J Style[a]		Turning & Facing 3° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0106	.0262	.0014	.0170
		1/32	.0212	.0524	.0028	.0340
		3/64	.0318	.0786	.0042	.0511
		1/16	.0423	.1048	.0056	.0681
80° Diamond Profile						
G Style[a]		Turning & Facing 0° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0030	.0186	0	.0156
		1/32	.0060	.0312	0	.0312
		3/64	.0090	.0559	0	.0469
		1/16	.0120	.0745	0	.0625
L Style[a]		Turning & Facing 5° Reverse Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0016	.0172	.0016	.0172
		1/32	.0031	.0344	.0031	.0344
		3/64	.0047	.0516	.0047	.0516
		1/16	.0062	.0688	.0062	.0688
F Style[a]		Facing 0° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	0	.0156	.0030	.0186
		1/32	0	.0312	.0060	.0372
		3/64	0	.0469	.0090	.0559
		1/16	0	.0625	.0120	.0745
R Style[a]		Turning 15° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0011	.0167	.0003	.0117
		1/32	.0022	.0384	.0006	.0234
		3/64	.0032	.0501	.0009	.0351
		1/16	.0043	.0668	.0012	.0468
K Style[a]		Facing 15° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0003	.0117	.0011	.0167
		1/32	.0006	.0234	.0022	.0334
		3/64	.0009	.0351	.0032	.0501
		1/16	.0012	.0468	.0043	.0668

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Insert Radius Compensation** *ANSI B212.3-2002 (R2011)*

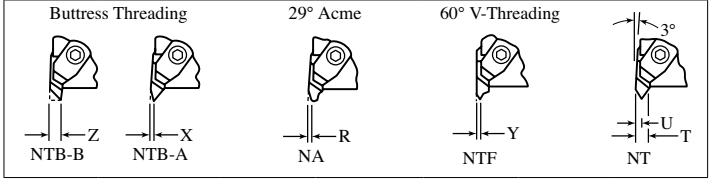
55° Profile						
J Style[a]		Profiling 3° Reverse Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0135	.0292	.0015	.0172
		1/32	.0271	.0583	.0031	.0343
		3/64	.0406	.0875	.0046	.0519
		1/16	.0541	.1166	.0062	.0687
35° Profile						
J Style[a] Negative rake holders have 6° back rake and 6° side rake		Profiling 3° Reverse Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L*-2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0330	.0487	.0026	.0182
		1/32	.0661	.0973	.0051	.0364
		3/64	.0991	.1460	.0077	.0546
		1/16	.1322	.1947	.0103	.0728
L Style[a]		Profiling 5° Lead Angle				
		Rad.	*L*-1	*L* -2	*D*-1	*D*-2
		1/64	.0324	.0480	.0042	.0198
		1/32	.0648	.0360	.0086	.0398
		3/64	.0971	.1440	.0128	.0597
		1/16	.1205	.1920	.0170	.0795

[a] *L*-1 and *D*-1 over sharp point to nose radius; and *L*-2 and *D*-2 over sharp point to center of nose radius. The *D*-1 dimension for the *B*, *E*, *D*, *M*, *P*, *S*, *T*, and *V* style tools are over the sharp point of insert to a sharp point at the intersection of a line on the lead angle on the cutting edge of the insert and the *C* dimension. The *L*-1 dimensions on *K* style tools are over the sharp point of insert to sharp point intersection of lead angle and *F* dimensions.

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 2. Threading Tool Insert Radius Compensation for NC Programming

Threading						
Insert Size	T	R	U	Y	X	Z
2	5/32 Wide	.040	.075	.040	.024	.140
3	3/16 Wide	.046	.098	.054	.031	.183
4	1/4 Wide	.053	.128	.054	.049	.239
5	3/8 Wide	.099	.190	…	…	…



All dimensions are given in inches. Courtesy of Kennametal, Inc.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CEMENTED CARBIDES

Cemented Carbides and Other Hard Materials

Carbides and Carbonitrides.—Though high-speed steel retains its importance for such applications as drilling and broaching, most metal cutting is carried out with carbide tools. For materials that are very difficult to machine, carbide is now being replaced by carbonitrides, ceramics, and superhard materials. Cemented (or sintered) carbides and carbonitrides, known collectively in most parts of the world as hard metals, are a range of very hard, refractory, wear-resistant alloys made by powder metallurgy techniques. The minute carbide or nitride particles are "cemented" by a binder metal that is liquid at the sintering temperature. Compositions and properties of individual hardmetals can be as different as those of brass and high-speed steel.

All hardmetals are *cermets*, combining *cer*amic particles with a *met*allic binder. It is unfortunate that (owing to a mistranslation) the term *cermet* has come to mean either all hardmetals with a titanium carbide (TiC) base or simply cemented titanium carbonitrides. Although no single element other than carbon is present in all hardmetals, it is no accident that the generic term is "tungsten carbide." The earliest successful grades were based on carbon, as are the majority of those made today, as listed in Table 1.

The outstanding machining capabilities of high-speed steel are due to the presence of very hard carbide particles, notably tungsten carbide, in the iron-rich matrix. Modern methods of making cutting tools from pure tungsten carbide were based on this knowledge. Early pieces of cemented carbide were much too brittle for industrial use, but it was soon found that mixing tungsten carbide powder with up to 10 percent of metals such as iron, nickel, or cobalt, allowed pressed compacts to be sintered at about 1500°C to give a product with low porosity, very high hardness, and considerable strength. This combination of properties made the materials ideally suitable for use as tools for cutting metal.

Cemented carbides for cutting tools were introduced commercially in 1927, and, although the key discoveries were made in Germany, many of the later developments have taken place in the United States, Austria, Sweden, and other countries. Recent years have seen two "revolutions" in carbide cutting tools, one led by the United States and the other by Europe. These were the change from brazed to clamped carbide inserts and the rapid development of coating technology.

When indexable tips were first introduced, it was found that so little carbide was worn away before they were discarded that a minor industry began to develop, regrinding the so-called "throwaway" tips and selling them for reuse in adapted toolholders. Hardmetal consumption, which had grown dramatically when indexable inserts were introduced, leveled off and began to decline. This situation was changed by the advent and rapid acceptance of carbide, nitride, and oxide coatings. Application of an even harder, more wear-resistant surface to a tougher, more shock-resistant substrate allowed production of new generations of longer-lasting inserts. Regrinding destroyed the enhanced properties of the coatings and was, therefore, abandoned for coated tooling.

Brazed tools have the advantage that they can be reground over and over again, until almost no carbide is left, but the tools must always be reset after grinding to maintain machining accuracy. However, all brazed tools suffer to some extent from the stresses left by the brazing process, which in unskilled hands or with poor design can shatter the carbide even before it has been used to cut metal. In present conditions, it is cheaper to use indexable inserts, which are tool tips of precise size, clamped in similarly precise holders, needing no time-consuming and costly resetting but usable only until each cutting edge or corner has lost its initial sharpness (see *Introduction* and related topics starting on page 839 and *Indexable Insert Holders for NC* on page 856). The absence of brazing stresses and the "one-use" concept also means that harder, longer-lasting grades can be used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Typical Properties of Tungsten Carbide-Based Cutting Tool Hard Metals

ISO Application Code	Composition (%)				Density (g/cm^3)	Hardness (Vickers)	Transverse Rupture Strength (N/mm^2)
	WC	TiC	TaC	Co			
P01	50	35	7	6	8.5	1900	1100
P05	78	16		6	11.4	1820	1300
P10	69	15	8	8	11.5	1740	1400
P15	78	12	3	7	11.7	1660	1500
P20	79	8	5	8	12.1	1580	1600
P25	82	6	4	8	12.9	1530	1700
P30	84	5	2	9	13.3	1490	1850
P40	85	5		10	13.4	1420	1950
P50	78	3	3	16	13.1	1250	2300
M10	85	5	4	6	13.4	1590	1800
M20	82	5	5	8	13.3	1540	1900
M30	86	4		10	13.6	1440	2000
M40	84	4	2	10	14.0	1380	2100
K01	97			3	15.2	1850	1450
K05	95		1	4	15.0	1790	1550
K10	92		2	6	14.9	1730	1700
K20	94			6	14.8	1650	1950
K30	91			9	14.4	1400	2250
K40	89			11	14.1	1320	2500

A complementary development was the introduction of ever more complex chipbreakers derived from computer-aided design and pressed and sintered to precise shapes and dimensions. Another advance was the application of hot isostatic pressing (HIP), which has moved hardmetals into applications that were formerly uneconomical. This method allows virtually all residual porosity to be squeezed out of the carbide by means of inert gas at high pressure applied at about the sintering temperature. Toughness, rupture strength, and shock resistance can be doubled or tripled by this method, and the reject rates of very large sintered components are reduced to a fraction of their previous levels.

Further research has produced a substantial number of excellent cutting-tool materials based on titanium carbonitride. Generally called "cermets," as noted previously, carbonitride-based cutting inserts offer excellent performance and considerable prospects for the future.

Compositions and Structures: Properties of hardmetals are profoundly influenced by microstructure. The microstructure, in turn, depends on many factors, including basic chemical composition of the carbide and matrix phases; size, shape, and distribution of carbide particles; relative proportions of carbide and matrix phases; degree of intersolubility of carbides; excess or deficiency of carbon; variations in composition and structure caused by diffusion or segregation; production methods generally, but especially milling, carburizing, and sintering methods, and the types of raw materials; post sintering treatments such as hot isostatic pressing; and coatings or diffusion layers applied after initial sintering.

Tungsten Carbide/Cobalt (WC/Co): The first commercially available cemented carbides consisted of fine angular particles of tungsten carbide bonded with metallic cobalt. Intended initially for wire-drawing dies, this composition type is still considered to have the greatest resistance to simple abrasive wear and, therefore, to have many applications in machining.

For maximum hardness to be obtained from closeness of packing, the tungsten carbide grains should be as small as possible, preferably below 1 µm (0.00004 inch) and considerably less for special purposes. Hardness and abrasion resistance increase as the cobalt content is lowered, provided that a minimum of cobalt is present (2 percent can be enough,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

although 3 percent is the realistic minimum) to ensure complete sintering. In general, as carbide grain size or cobalt content or both are increased—frequently in unison—tougher and less hard grades are obtained. No porosity should be visible, even under the highest optical magnification.

WC/Co compositions used for cutting tools range from about 2 to 13 percent cobalt, and from less than 0.5 to more than 5 μm (0.00002–0.0002 in.) in grain size. For stamping tools, swaying dies, and other wear applications for parts subjected to moderate or severe shock, cobalt content can be as much as 30 percent, and grain size a maximum of about 10 μm (0.0004 in.). In recent years, "micrograin" carbides, combining submicron (less than 0.00004 in.) carbide grains with relatively high cobalt content have found increasing use for machining at low speeds and high feed rates. An early use was in high-speed woodworking cutters such as are used for planing.

For optimum properties, porosity should be at a minimum, carbide grain size as regular as possible, and carbon content of the tungsten carbide phase close to the theoretical (stoichiometric) value. Many tungsten carbide/cobalt compositions are modified by small but important additions—from 0.5 to perhaps 3 percent of tantalum, niobium, chromium, vanadium, titanium, hafnium, or other carbides. The basic purpose of these additions is generally inhibition of grain growth so that a consistently fine structure is maintained.

Tungsten-Titanium Carbide/Cobalt (WC/TiC/Co): These grades are used for tools to cut steels and other ferrous alloys, the purpose of the TiC content being to resist the high-temperature diffusive attack that causes chemical breakdown and cratering. Tungsten carbide diffuses readily into the chip surface, but titanium carbide is extremely resistant to such diffusion. A solid solution or "mixed crystal" of WC in TiC retains the anticratering property to a great extent.

Unfortunately, titanium carbide and TiC-based solid solutions are considerably more brittle and less abrasion resistant than tungsten carbide. TiC content, therefore, is kept as low as possible, only sufficient TiC being provided to avoid severe cratering wear. Even 2 or 3 percent of titanium carbide has a noticeable effect, and, as the relative content is substantially increased, the cratering tendency becomes more severe.

In the limiting formulation, the carbide is tungsten-free and based entirely on TiC, but, generally, TiC content extends to no more than about 18 percent. Above this figure, the carbide becomes excessively brittle and is very difficult to braze, although this drawback is not a problem with throwaway inserts.

WC/TiC/Co grades generally have two distinct carbide phases, angular crystals of almost pure WC and rounded TiC/WC mixed crystals. Among progressive manufacturers, although WC/TiC/Co hardmetals are very widely used, in certain important respects they are obsolescent, having been superseded by the WC/TiC/Ta(Nb)C/Co series in the many applications where higher strength combined with crater resistance is an advantage. TiC, TiN, and other coatings on tough substrates have also diminished the attractions of high-TiC grades for high-speed machining of steels and ferrous alloys.

Tungsten-Titanium-Tantalum (-Niobium) Carbide/Cobalt: Except for coated carbides, tungsten-titanium-tantalum (-niobium) grades could be the most popular class of hardmetals. Used mainly for cutting steel, they combine and improve upon most of the best features of the longer-established WC/TiC/Co compositions. These carbides compete directly with carbonitrides and silicon nitride ceramics, and the best cemented carbides of this class can undertake very heavy cuts at high speeds on all types of steels, including austenitic stainless varieties. These tools also operate well on ductile cast irons and nickel-base superalloys, where great heat and high pressures are generated at the cutting edge. However, they do not have the resistance to abrasive wear possessed by micrograin straight tungsten carbide grades nor the good resistance to cratering of coated grades and titanium carbide-based cermets.

Titanium Carbide/Molybdenum/Nickel (TiC/Mo/Ni): The extreme indentation hardness and crater resistance of titanium carbide, allied to the cheapness and availability of its

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

main raw material (titanium dioxide, TiO_2), provide a strong inducement to use grades based on this carbide alone. Although developed early in the history of hardmetals, these carbides were difficult to braze satisfactorily and consequently were little used until the advent of clamped, throwaway inserts. Moreover, the carbides were notoriously brittle and could take only fine cuts in minimal-shock conditions.

Titanium carbide-based grades again came into prominence about 1960, when nickel-molybdenum began to be used as a binder instead of nickel. The new grades were able to perform a wider range of tasks, including interrupted cutting and cutting under shock conditions.

The very high indentation hardness values recorded for titanium carbide grades are not accompanied by correspondingly greater resistance to abrasive wear, the apparently less hard tungsten carbide being considerably superior in this property. Moreover, carbonitrides, advanced tantalum-containing multicarbides, and coated variants generally provide better all-around cutting performances.

Titanium-Base Carbonitrides: Development of titanium-carbonitride-based cutting-tool materials predates the use of coatings of this type on more conventional hardmetals by many years. Appreciable, though uncontrolled, amounts of carbonitride were often present, if only by accident, when cracked ammonia was used as a less expensive substitute for hydrogen in some stages of the production process in the 1950s and perhaps for two decades earlier.

Much of the recent, more scientific development of this class of materials has taken place in the United States, particularly by Teledyne Firth Sterling with its SD_3 grade and in Japan by several companies. Many of the compositions currently in use are extremely complex, and their structures—even with apparently similar compositions—can vary enormously. For instance, Mitsubishi characterizes its Himet NX series of cermets as TiC/WC/Ta(Nb)C/Mo_2C/TiN/Ni/Co/Al, with a structure comprised of both large and medium-size carbide particles (mainly TiC according to the quoted density) in a superalloy-type matrix containing an aluminum-bearing intermetallic compound.

Steel- and Alloy-Bonded Titanium Carbide: The class of material exemplified by Ferro-Tic, as it is known, consists primarily of titanium carbide bonded with heat-treatable steel, but some grades also contain tungsten carbide or are bonded with nickel- or copper-base alloys. These cemented carbides are characterized by high binder contents (typically 50–60 percent by volume) and lower hardnesses, compared with the more usual hardmetals, and by the great variation in properties obtained by heat treatment.

In the annealed condition, steel-bonded carbides have a relatively soft matrix and can be machined with little difficulty, especially by CBN (superhard cubic boron nitride) tools. After heat treatment, the degree of hardness and wear resistance achieved is considerably greater than that of normal tool steels, although understandably much less than that of traditional sintered carbides. Microstructures are extremely varied, being composed of 40–50 percent TiC by volume and a matrix appropriate to the alloy composition and the stage of heat treatment. Applications include stamping, blanking and drawing dies, machine components, and similar items where the ability to machine before hardening reduces production costs substantially.

Coating: As a final stage in carbide manufacture, coatings of various kinds are applied mainly to cutting tools, where for cutting steel in particular it is advantageous to give the rank and clearance surfaces characteristics that are quite different from those of the body of the insert. Coatings of titanium carbide, nitride, or carbonitride; of aluminum oxide; and of other refractory compounds are applied to a variety of hardmetal substrates by chemical or physical vapor deposition (CVD or PVD) or by newer plasma methods.

The most recent types of coatings include hafnium, tantalum, and zirconium carbides and nitrides; alumina/titanium oxide; and multiple carbide/carbonitride/nitride/oxide, oxynitride or oxycarbonitride combinations. Greatly improved properties have been

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

claimed for variants with as many as 13 distinct CVD coatings. A markedly sharper cutting edge compared with other CVD-coated hardmetals is claimed, permitting finer cuts and the successful machining of soft but abrasive alloys.

The keenest edges on coated carbides are achieved by the techniques of physical vapor deposition. In this process, ions are deposited directionally from the electrodes, rather than evenly on all surfaces, so the sharpness of cutting edges is maintained and may even be enhanced. PVD coatings currently available include titanium nitride and carbonitride, their distinctive gold color having become familiar throughout the world on high-speed steel tooling. The high temperatures required for normal CVD tend to soften heat-treated high-speed steel. PVD-coated hardmetals have been produced commercially for several years, especially for precision milling inserts.

Recent developments in extremely hard coatings, generally involving exotic techniques, include boron carbide, cubic boron nitride, and pure diamond. Almost the ultimate in wear resistance, the commercial applications of thin plasma-generated diamond surfaces at present are mainly in the manufacture of semiconductors, where other special properties are important.

For cutting tools, the substrate is of equal importance to the coating in many respects, its critical properties including fracture toughness (resistance to crack propagation), elastic modulus, resistance to heat and abrasion, and expansion coefficient. Some manufacturers are now producing inserts with graded composition so that structures and properties are optimized at both surface and interior, and coatings are less likely to crack or break away.

Specifications: Compared with other standardized materials, the world of sintered hardmetals is peculiar. For instance, an engineer who seeks a carbide grade for the finish-machining of a steel component may be told to use *ISO Standard Grade P10* or *Industry Code C7*. If the composition and nominal properties of the designated tool material are then requested, the surprising answer is that, in basic composition alone, the tungsten carbide content of P10 (or of the now superseded C7) can vary from zero to about 75, titanium carbide from 8 to 80, cobalt 0 to 10, and nickel 0 to 15 percent. There are other possible constituents, also, in this so-called standard alloy, and many basic properties can vary as much as the composition. All that these dissimilar materials have in common, and all that the so-called standards mean, is that their suppliers—and sometimes their suppliers alone—consider them suitable for one particular and ill-defined machining application (which for P10 or C7 is the finish machining of steel).

This peculiar situation arose because the production of cemented carbides in occupied Europe during World War II was controlled by the German Hartmetallzentrale, and no factory other than Krupp was permitted to produce more than one grade. By the end of the war, all German-controlled producers were equipped to make the G, S, H, and F series to German standards. In the postwar years, this series of carbides formed the basis of unofficial European standardization. With the advent of the newer multicarbides, the previous identities of grades were gradually lost. The applications relating to the old grades were retained, however, as a new German DIN standard, eventually being adopted, in somewhat modified form, by the International Standards Organization (ISO) and by ANSI in the United States.

The American cemented carbides industry developed under diverse ownership and solid competition. The major companies actively and independently developed new varieties of hardmetals, and there was little or no standardization, although there were many attempts to compile equivalent charts as a substitute for true standardization. Around 1942, the Buick division of GMC produced a simple classification code that arranged nearly 100 grades derived from 10 manufacturers under only 14 symbols (TC-1 to TC-14). In spite of serious deficiencies, this system remained in use for many years as an American industry standard; that is, Buick TC-1 was equivalent to industry code C1. Buick itself went much further, using the tremendous influence, research facilities, and purchasing potential of its parent company to standardize the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

products of each carbide manufacturer by properties that could be tested, rather than by the indeterminate recommended applications. Many large-scale carbide users have developed similar systems in attempts to exert some degree of in-house standardization and quality control. Small and medium-sized users, however, still suffer from so-called industry standards, which only provide a starting point for grade selection.

ISO standard 513, summarized in Table 2, divides all machining grades into three color-coded groups: straight tungsten carbide grades (letter K, color red) for cutting gray cast iron, nonferrous metals, and nonmetallics; highly alloyed grades (letter P, color blue) for machining steel; and less alloyed grades (letter M, color yellow, generally with less TiC than the corresponding P series), which are multipurpose and may be used on steels, nickel-base superalloys, ductile cast irons, and so on. Each grade within a group is also given a number to represent its position in a range from maximum hardness to maximum toughness (shock resistance). Typical applications are described for grades at more or less regular numerical intervals. Although coated grades scarcely existed when the ISO standard was prepared, it is easy to classify coated as uncoated carbides—or carbonitrides, ceramics, and superhard materials—according to this system.

In this situation, it is easy to see how one plant will prefer one manufacturer's carbide and a second plant will prefer that of another. Each has found the carbide most nearly ideal for the particular conditions involved. In these circumstances it pays each manufacturer to make grades that differ in hardness, toughness, and crater resistance, so that they can provide a product that is near the optimum for a specific customer's application.

Although not classified as a hard metal, new particle or powder metallurgical methods of manufacture, coupled with new coating technology, have led in recent years to something of an upsurge in the use of high-speed steel. Lower cost is a big factor, and the development of such coatings as titanium nitride, cubic boron nitride, and pure diamond, has enabled some high-speed steel tools to rival tools made from tungsten and other carbides in their ability to maintain cutting accuracy and prolong tool life. Multiple layers may be used to produce optimum properties in the coating, with adhesive strength where there is contact with the substrate, combined with hardness at the cutting surface to resist abrasion. Total thickness of such coating, even with multiple layers, is seldom more than 15 microns (0.000060 in.).

Importance of Correct Grades: A great diversity of hardmetal types is required to cope with all possible combinations of metals and alloys, machining operations, and working conditions. Tough, shock-resistant grades are needed for slow speeds and interrupted cutting, harder grades for high-speed finishing, heat-resisting alloyed grades for machining superalloys, and crater-resistant compositions, including most of the many coated varieties, for machining steels and ductile iron.

Ceramics.—Moving up the hardness scale, ceramics provide increasing competition for cemented carbides, both in performance and in cost-effectiveness, though not yet in reliability. Hardmetals themselves consist of ceramics—nonmetallic refractory compounds, usually carbides or carbonitrides—with a metallic binder of much lower melting point. In such systems, densification generally takes place by liquid-phase sintering. Pure ceramics have no metallic binder, but may contain lower-melting-point compounds or ceramic mixtures that permit liquid-phase sintering to take place. Where this condition is not possible, hot pressing or hot isostatic pressing can often be used to make a strong, relatively pore-free component or cutting insert. This section is restricted to those ceramics that compete directly with hardmetals, mainly in the cutting-tool category as shown in Table 3.

Ceramics are hard, completely nonmetallic substances that resist heat and abrasive wear. Increasingly used as clamped indexable tool inserts, ceramics differ significantly from tool steels, which are completely metallic. Ceramics also differ from cermets such as cemented carbides and carbonitrides, which comprise minute ceramic particles held together by metallic binders.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. ISO Classifications of Hardmetals (Cemented Carbides and Carbonitrides) by Application

Main Types of Chip Removal		Groups of Applications			Direction of Decrease in Characteristic	
Symbol and Color	Broad Categories of Materials to be Machined	Designation (Grade)	Specific Material to be Machined	Use and Working Conditions	of cut	of carbide
P Blue	Ferrous with long chips	P01	Steel, steel castings	Finish turning and boring; high cutting speeds, small chip sections, accurate dimensions, fine finish, vibration-free operations	↑ speed ↑ wear resistance	
		P10	Steel, steel castings	Turning, copying, threading, milling; high cutting speeds; small or medium chip sections		
		P20	Steel, steel castings, ductile cast iron with long chips	Turning, copying, milling; medium cutting speeds and chip sections, planing with small chip sections		
		P30	Steel, steel castings, ductile cast iron with long chips	Turning, milling, planing; medium or large chip sections, unfavorable machining conditions		
		P40	Steel, steel castings with sand inclusions and cavities	Turning, planing, slotting; low cutting speeds, large chip sections, with possible large cutting angles, unfavorable cutting conditions, and work on automatic machines		
		P50	Steel, steel castings of medium- or low-tensile strength, with sand inclusions and cavities	Operations demanding very tough carbides; turning, planing, slotting; low cutting speeds, large chip sections, with possible large cutting angles, unfavorable conditions and work on automatic machines		
M Yellow	Ferrous metals with long or short chips, and nonferrous metals	M10	Steel, steel castings, manganese steel, gray cast iron, alloy cast iron	Turning; medium or high cutting speeds, small or medium chip sections		
		M20	Steel, steel castings, austenitic or manganese steel, gray cast iron	Turning, milling; medium cutting speeds and chip sections		
		M30	Steel, steel castings, austenitic steel, gray cast iron, high-temperature-resistant alloys	Turning, milling, planing; medium cutting speeds, medium or large chip sections		
		M40	Mild, free-cutting steel, low-tensile steel, nonferrous metals and light alloys	Turning, parting off; particularly on automatic machines		
K Red	Ferrous metals with short chips, nonferrous metals and non-metallic materials	K01	Very hard gray cast iron, chilled castings over 85 Shore, high-silicon aluminum alloys, hardened steel, highly abrasive plastics, hard cardboard, ceramics	Turning, finish turning, boring, milling, scraping		
		K10	Gray cast iron over 220 BHN (Brinell), malleable cast iron with short chips, hardened steel, silicon-aluminum and copper alloys, plastics, glass, hard rubber, hard cardboard, porcelain, stone	Turning, milling, drilling, boring, broaching, scraping		
		K20	Gray cast iron up to 220 BHN, nonferrous metals, copper, brass, aluminum	Turning, milling, planing, boring, broaching, demanding very tough carbide		
		K30	Low-hardness gray cast iron, low-tensile steel, compressed wood	Turning, milling, planing, slotting, unfavorable conditions, and possibility of large cutting angles	↓ feed ↓ toughness	
		K40	Softwood or hardwood, nonferrous metals	Turning, milling, planing, slotting, unfavorable conditions, and possibility of large cutting angles		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Typical Properties of Cutting Tool Ceramics

Group	Alumina	Alumina/TiC	Silicon Nitride	PCD	PCBN
Typical composition types	Al_2O_3 or Al_2O_3/ZrO_2	70/30 Al_2O_3/TiC	Si_3N_4/Y_2O_3 plus		
Density (g/cm^3)	4.0	4.25	3.27	3.4	3.1
Transverse rupture strength (N/mm^2)	700	750	800		800
Compressive strength (kN/mm^2)	4.0	4.5	4.0	4.7	3.8
Hardness (HV)	1750	1800	1600		
Hardness HK (kN/mm^2)				50	28
Young's modulus (kN/mm^2)	380	370	300	925	680
Modulus of rigidity (kN/mm^2)	150	160	150	430	280
Poisson's ratio	0.24	0.22	0.20	0.09	0.22
Thermal expansion coefficient (10^{-6}/K)	8.5	7.8	3.2	3.8	4.9
Thermal conductivity (W/m K)	23	17	22	120	100
Fracture toughness (K_{1c}MN/m$^{3/2}$)	2.3	3.3	5.0	7.9	10

Alumina-based ceramics were introduced as cutting inserts during World War II and were for many years considered too brittle for regular machine-shop use. Improved machine tools and finer-grain, tougher compositions incorporating zirconia or silicon carbide "whiskers" now permit their use in a wide range of applications. Silicon nitride, often combined with alumina (aluminum oxide), yttria (yttrium oxide), and other oxides and nitrides, is used for much of the high-speed machining of superalloys, and newer grades have been formulated specifically for cast iron—potentially a far larger market.

In addition to improvements in toolholders, great advances have been made in machine tools, many of which now feature the higher powers and speeds required for the efficient use of ceramic tooling. Brittleness at the cutting edge is no longer a disadvantage, with the improvements made to the ceramics themselves, mainly in toughness, but also in other critical properties.

Although very large numbers of useful ceramic materials are now available, only a few combinations have been found to combine such properties as minimum porosity, hardness, wear resistance, chemical stability, and resistance to shock to the extent necessary for cutting-tool inserts. Most ceramics used for machining are still based on high-purity, fine-grained alumina (aluminum oxide) but embody property-enhancing additions of other ceramics such as zirconia (zirconium oxide), titania (titanium oxide), titanium carbide, tungsten carbide, and titanium nitride. For commercial purposes, those more commonly used are often termed "white" (alumina with or without zirconia) or "black" (roughly 70¤30 alumina/titanium carbide). More recent developments are the distinctively green alumina ceramics strengthened with silicon carbide whiskers and the brown-tinged silicon nitride types.

Ceramics benefit from hot isostatic pressing to remove the last vestiges of porosity and raise substantially the material's shock resistance, even more than carbide-based hardmetals. Significant improvements are derived by even small parts such as tool inserts, although, in principle, they should not need such treatment if raw materials and manufacturing methods are properly controlled.

Oxide Ceramics: Alumina cutting tips have extreme hardness—more than HV 2000 or HRA 94—and give excellent service in their limited but important range of uses such as the machining of chilled iron rolls and brake drums. A substantial family of alumina-based materials has been developed, and fine-grained alumina-based composites now have sufficient strength for milling cast iron at speeds up to 2500 ft/min (800 m/min). Resistance to cratering when machining steel is exceptional.

Oxide/Carbide Ceramics: A second important class of alumina-based cutting ceramics combines aluminum oxide or alumina-zirconia with a refractory carbide or carbides,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

nearly always 30 percent TiC. The compound is black and normally hot pressed or hot isostatically pressed (HIPed). As shown in Table 3, the physical and mechanical properties of this material are generally similar to those of the pure alumina ceramics, but strength and shock resistance are generally higher, being comparable with those of higher-toughness simple alumina-zirconia grades. Current commercial grades are even more complex, combining alumina, zirconia, and titanium carbide with the further addition of titanium nitride.

Silicon Nitride Base: One of the most effective ceramic cutting-tool materials developed in the United Kingdom is Syalon (from SiAlON or silicon-aluminum-oxynitride) though it incorporates a substantial amount of yttria for efficient liquid-phase sintering). The material combines high strength with hot hardness, shock resistance, and other vital properties. Syalon cutting inserts are made by Kennametal and Sandvik and sold as Kyon 2000 and CC680, respectively. The brown Kyon 200 is suitable for machining high-nickel alloys and cast iron, but a later development, Kyon 3000, has good potential for machining cast iron.

Resistance to thermal stress and thermal shock of Kyon 2000 are comparable to those of sintered carbides. Toughness is substantially less than that of carbides, but roughly twice that of oxide-based cutting-tool materials at temperatures up to 850°C. Syon 200 can cut at high edge temperatures and is harder than carbide and some other ceramics at over 700°C, although softer than most at room temperature.

Whisker-Reinforced Ceramics: To improve toughness, Greenleaf Corporation has reinforced alumina ceramics with silicon carbide single-crystal "whiskers" that impart a distinctive green color to the material, marketed as WG300. Typically as thin as human hairs, the immensely strong whiskers improve tool life under arduous conditions. Whisker-reinforced ceramics and perhaps hardmetals are likely to become increasingly important as cutting and wear-resistant materials. Their only drawback seems to be the carcinogenic nature of the included fibers, which requires stringent precautions during manufacture.

Superhard Materials.—Polycrystalline synthetic diamond (PCD) and cubic boron nitride (PCBN), in the two columns at the right in Table 3, are almost the only cutting-insert materials in the "superhard" category. Both PCD and PCBN are usually made with the highest practicable concentration of the hard constituent, although ceramic or metallic binders can be almost equally important in providing overall strength and optimizing other properties. Variations in grain size are another critical factor in determining cutting characteristics and edge stability. Some manufacturers treat CBN in similar fashion to tungsten carbide, varying the composition and amount of binder within exceptionally wide limits to influence the physical and mechanical properties of the sintered compact.

In comparing these materials, users should note that some inserts comprise solid polycrystalline diamond or CBN and are double-sized to provide twice the number of cutting edges. Others consist of a layer, from 0.020- to 0.040-inch (0.5- to 1-mm) thick, on a tough carbide backing. A third type is produced with a solid superhard material almost surrounded by sintered carbide. A fourth type, used mainly for cutting inserts, is comprised of solid hard metal with a tiny superhard insert at one or more (usually only one) cutting corners or edges. Superhard cutting inserts are expensive—up to 30 times the cost of equivalent shapes or sizes in ceramic or cemented carbide—but their outstanding properties, exceptional performance and extremely long life can make them by far the most cost-effective for certain applications.

Diamond: Diamond is the hardest material found or made. As harder, more abrasive ceramics and other materials came into widespread use, diamond began to be used for grinding wheel grits. Cemented carbide tools virtually demanded diamond grinding wheels for fine edge finishing. Solid single-crystal diamond tools were and are used to a small extent for special purposes, such as microtomes, for machining of hard materials, and for exceptionally fine finishes. These diamonds are made from comparatively large,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

high-quality gem-type diamonds, have isotropic properties, and are very expensive. By comparison, diamond abrasive grits cost only a few dollars a carat.

Synthetic diamonds are produced from graphite using high temperatures and extremely high pressures. The fine diamond particles produced are sintered together in the presence of a metal "catalyst" to produce high-efficiency anisotropic cutting-tool inserts. These tools comprise either a solid diamond compact or a layer of sintered diamond on a carbide backing, and are made under conditions similar to, though less severe than, those used in diamond synthesis. Both natural and synthetic diamond can be sintered in this way, although the latter method is the most frequently used.

Polycrystalline diamond (PCD) compacts are immensely hard and can be used to machine many substances, from highly abrasive hardwoods and glass fiber to nonferrous metals, hardmetals, and tough ceramics. Important classes of tools that are also available with cubic boron nitride inserts include brazed-tip drills, single-point turning tools, and face-milling cutters.

Boron Nitride: Polycrystalline diamond has one big limitation: it cannot be used to machine steel or any other ferrous material without rapid chemical breakdown. Boron nitride does not have this limitation. Normally soft and slippery like graphite, the soft hexagonal crystals (HBN) become cubic boron nitride (CBN) when subjected to ultrahigh pressures and temperatures, with a structure similar to and hardness second only to diamond. As a solid insert of polycrystalline cubic boron nitride (PCBN), the compound machines even the hardest steel with relative immunity from chemical breakdown or cratering.

Backed by sintered carbide, inserts of PCBN can readily be brazed, increasing the usefulness of the material and the range of tooling in which it can be used. With great hardness and abrasion resistance, coupled with extreme chemical stability when in contact with ferrous alloys at high temperatures, PCBN has the ability to machine both steels and cast irons at high speeds for long operating cycles. Only its currently high cost in relation to hardmetals prevents its wider use in mass-production machining.

Similar in general properties to PCBN, the recently developed "Wurbon" consists of a mixture of ultrafine (0.02 µm grain size) hexagonal and cubic boron nitride with a "wurtzite" structure, and is produced from soft hexagonal boron nitride in a microsecond by an explosive shockwave.

Basic Machining Data: Most mass-production metal-cutting operations are carried out with carbide-tipped tools, but their correct application is not simple. Even apparently similar batches of the same material vary greatly in their machining characteristics and may require different tool settings to attain optimum performance. Depth of cut, feed, surface speed, cutting rate, desired surface finish, and target tool life often need to be modified to suit the requirements of a particular component.

For the same downtime, the life of an insert between indexings can be less than that of an equivalent brazed tool between regrinds, so a much higher rate of metal removal is possible with the indexable or throwaway insert. It is commonplace for the claims for a new coating to include increases in surface-speed rates of 200–300 percent, and for a new insert design to offer similar improvements. Many operations are run at metal removal rates that are far from optimum for tool life because the rates used maximize productivity and cost-effectiveness.

Thus any recommendations for cutting speeds and feeds must be oversimplified or extremely complex, and must be hedged with many provisos, dependent on the technical and economic conditions in the manufacturing plant concerned. A preliminary grade selection should be made from the ISO-based tables and manufacturers' literature consulted for recommendations on the chosen grades and tool designs. If tool life is much greater than that desired under the suggested conditions, speeds, feeds, or depths of cut may be increased. If tools fail by edge breakage, a tougher (more shock-resistant) grade should be selected, with a numerically higher ISO code.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Alternatively, increasing the surface speed and decreasing the feed may be tried. If tools fail prematurely from what appears to be abrasive wear, a harder grade with numerically lower ISO designation should be tried. If cratering is severe, use a grade with higher titanium carbide content; that is, switch from an ISO K to M or M to P grade, use a P grade with lower numerical value, change to a coated grade, or use a coated grade with a (claimed) more-resistant surface layer.

Built-Up Edge and Cratering: The big problem in cutting steel with carbide tools is associated with the built-up edge and the familiar phenomenon called cratering. Research has shown that the built-up edge is continuous with the chip itself during normal cutting. Additions of titanium, tantalum, and niobium to the basic carbide mixture have a remarkable effect on the nature and degree of cratering, which is related to adhesion between the tool and the chip.

Hardmetal Tooling for Wood and Nonmetallics.—Carbide-tipped circular saws are now conventional for cutting wood, wood products such as chipboard, and plastics, and tipped bandsaws of large size are also gaining in popularity. Tipped handsaws and mechanical equivalents are seldom needed for wood, but they are extremely useful for cutting abrasive building boards, glass-reinforced plastics, and similar material. Like the hardmetal tips used on most other woodworking tools, saw tips generally make use of straight (unalloyed) tungsten carbide/cobalt grades. However, where excessive heat is generated as with the cutting of high-silica hardwoods and particularly abrasive chipboards, the very hard but tough tungsten-titanium-tantalum-niobium carbide solid-solution grades, normally reserved for steel finishing, may be preferred. Saw tips are usually brazed and reground a number of times during service, so coated grades appear to have little immediate potential in this field.

Cutting Blades and Plane Irons: These tools comprise long, thin, comparatively wide slabs of carbide on a minimal-thickness steel backing. Compositions are straight tungsten carbide, preferably micrograin (to maintain a keen cutting edge with an included angle of 30° or less), but with relatively high amounts of cobalt, 11–13 percent, for toughness. Considerable expertise is necessary to braze and grind these cutters without inducing or failing to relieve the excessive stresses that cause distortion or cracking.

Other Woodworking Cutters: Routers and other cutters are generally similar to those used on metals and include many indexable-insert designs. The main difference with wood is that rotational and surface speeds can be the maximum available on the machine. High-speed routing of aluminum and magnesium alloys was developed largely from machines and techniques originally designed for work on wood.

Cutting Other Materials: The machining of plastics, fiber-reinforced plastics, graphite, asbestos, and other hard and abrasive constructional materials mainly requires abrasion resistance. Cutting pressures and power requirements are generally low. With thermoplastics and some other materials, particular attention must be given to cooling because of softening or degradation of the work material that might be caused by the heat generated in cutting. An important application of cemented carbides is the drilling and routing of printed circuit boards. Solid tungsten carbide drills of extremely small sizes are used for this work.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MILLING CUTTERS

Selection of Milling Cutters

The most suitable type of milling cutter for a particular milling operation depends on such factors as the kind of cut to be made, the material to be cut, the number of parts to be machined, and the type of milling machine available. Solid cutters of small size will usually cost less, initially, than inserted blade types; for long-run production, inserted-blade cutters will probably have a lower overall cost. Depending on either the material to be cut or the amount of production involved, the use of carbide-tipped cutters in preference to high-speed steel or other cutting tool materials may be justified.

Rake angles depend on both the cutter material and the work material. Carbide and cast alloy cutting tool materials generally have smaller rake angles than high-speed steel tool materials because of their lower edge strength and greater abrasion resistance. Soft work materials permit higher radial rake angles than hard materials; thin cutters permit zero or practically zero axial rake angles; and wide cutters operate more smoothly with high axial rake angles. See *Rake Angles for Milling Cutters* on page 901.

Cutting edge relief or clearance angles are usually from 3 to 6 degrees for hard or tough materials, 4 to 7 degrees for average materials, and 6 to 12 degrees for easily machined materials. See *Clearance Angles for Milling Cutter Teeth* on page 900.

The number of teeth in the milling cutter is also a factor that should be given consideration, as explained in the next paragraph.

Number of Teeth in Milling Cutters.—In determining the number of teeth a milling cutter should have for optimum performance, there is no universal rule.

There are, however, two factors that should be considered in making a choice: 1) The number of teeth should never be so great as to reduce the chip space between the teeth to a point where a free flow of chips is prevented; and 2) The chip space should be smooth and without sharp corners that would cause clogging of the chips in the space.

For milling ductile materials that produce a continuous and curled chip, a cutter with large chip spaces is preferable. Such coarse tooth cutters permit an easier flow of the chips through the chip space than would be obtained with fine tooth cutters and help to eliminate cutter "chatter." For cutting operations in thin materials, fine tooth cutters reduce cutter and workpiece vibration and the tendency for the cutter teeth to "straddle" the workpiece and dig in. For slitting copper and other soft nonferrous materials, teeth that are either chamfered or alternately flat and V-shaped are best.

As a general rule, to give satisfactory performance the number of teeth in milling cutters should be such that no more than two teeth at a time are engaged in the cut. Based on this rule, the following formulas (valid in both SI and English system of units) are recommended:

For face milling cutters,

$$T = \frac{6.3D}{W} \tag{1}$$

For peripheral milling cutters,

$$T = \frac{12.6D\cos A}{D + 4d} \tag{2}$$

where T = number of teeth in cutter; D = cutter diameter in inches (mm); W = width of cut in inches (mm); d = depth of cut in inches (mm); and A = helix angle of cutter.

To find the number of teeth that a cutter should have when other than two teeth are in the cut at the same time, Formulas (1) and (2) should be divided by 2 and the result multiplied by the number of teeth desired in the cut.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Determine the required number of teeth in a face mill where $D = 6$ inches and $W = 4$ inches. Using Formula (1),

$$T = \frac{6.3 \times 6}{4} = 10 \text{ teeth, approximately}$$

Example: Determine the required number of teeth in a plain milling cutter where $D = 4$ inches and $d = {}^1/_4$ inch. Using Formula (2),

$$T = \frac{12.6 \times 4 \times \cos 0^\circ}{4 + \left(4 \times \frac{1}{4}\right)} = 10 \text{ teeth, approximately}$$

In *high-speed milling* with sintered carbide, high-speed steel, and cast nonferrous cutting tool materials, a formula that permits full use of the power available at the cutter but prevents overloading of the motor driving the milling machine is:

$$T = \frac{K \times H}{F \times N \times d \times W} \tag{3}$$

where T = number of cutter teeth; H = horsepower (kilowatts) available at the cutter; F = feed per tooth in inches (mm); N = revolutions per minute of cutter; d = depth of cut in inches (mm); W = width of cut in inches (mm); and K = a constant that may be taken as 0.65 for average steel, 1.5 for cast iron, and 2.5 for aluminum. **For metric units, K = 14278 for average steel, 32949 for cast iron, and 54915 for aluminum.** These values are conservative and take into account dulling of the cutter in service.

Example: Determine the required number of teeth in a sintered carbide-tipped face mill for high-speed milling of 200 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) alloy steel if H = 7.5 kilowatt; F = 0.2032 mm; N = 272 rpm; d = 3.2 mm; W = 152.4 mm; and K for alloy steel is 14278. Using Formula (3),

$$T = \frac{14278 \times 7.5}{0.2032 \times 272 \times 3.2 \times 152.4} = 4 \text{ teeth, approximately}$$

American National Standard Milling Cutters.—According to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019), milling cutters may be classified in two general ways, given as follows:

By Type of Relief on Cutting Edges: Milling cutters may be described on the basis of one of two methods of providing relief for the cutting edges. *Profile sharpened* cutters are those on which relief is obtained and which are resharpened by grinding a narrow land back of the cutting edges. Profile sharpened cutters may produce flat, curved, or irregular surfaces. *Form relieved* cutters are those which are so relieved that by grinding only the faces of the teeth the original form is maintained throughout the life of the cutters. Form relieved cutters may produce flat, curved or irregular surfaces.

By Method of Mounting: Milling cutters may be described by one of two methods used to mount the cutter. *Arbor type* cutters are those which have a hole for mounting on an arbor and usually have a keyway to receive a driving key. These are sometimes called *Shell type*. *Shank type* cutters are those which have a straight or tapered shank to fit the machine tool spindle or adapter.

Explanation of the "Hand" of Milling Cutters.—In the ANSI/ASME Standard, the terms "right hand" and "left hand" are used to describe hand of rotation, hand of cutter and hand of flute helix.

Hand of Rotation or Hand of Cut is described as either "right hand" if the cutter revolves counterclockwise as it cuts when viewed from a position in front of a horizontal milling machine and facing the spindle, or "left hand" if the cutter revolves clockwise as it cuts when viewed from the same position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Plain Milling Cutters
ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)

Cutter Diameter			Range of Face Widths, Nom.[a]	Hole Diameter		
Nom.	Max.	Min.		Nom.	Max.	Min.
Light-duty Cutters[b]						
2½	2.515	2.485	3/16, 1/4, 5/16, 3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1, 1½, 2 and 3	1	1.00075	1.0000
3	3.015	2.985	3/16, 1/4, 5/16, 3/8, 5/8, 3/4, and 1½	1	1.00075	1.0000
3	3.015	2.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1, 1¼, 1½, 2 and 3	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
4	4.015	3.985	1/4, 5/16 and 3/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1, 1½, 2, 3 and 4	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
Heavy-duty Cutters[c]						
2½	2.515	2.485	2	1	1.00075	1.0000
2½	2.515	2.485	4	1	1.0010	1.0000
3	3.015	2.985	2, 2½, 3, 4 and 6	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
4	4.015	3.985	2, 3, 4 and 6	1½	1.5010	1.5000
High-helix Cutters[d]						
3	3.015	2.985	4 and 6	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
4	4.015	3.985	8	1½	1.5010	1.5000

[a] *Tolerances on Face Widths:* Up to 1 inch, inclusive, ± 0.001 inch; over 1 to 2 inches, inclusive, +0.010, −0.000 inch; over 2 inches, +0.020, −0.000 inch.

[b] Light-duty plain milling cutters with face widths under 3/4 inch have straight teeth. Cutters with 3/4- inch face and wider have helix angles of not less than 15 degrees nor greater than 25 degrees.

[c] Heavy-duty plain milling cutters have a helix angle of not less than 25 degrees nor greater than 45 degrees.

[d] High-helix plain milling cutters have a helix angle of not less than 45 degrees nor greater than 52 degrees.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Plain milling cutters are of cylindrical shape, having teeth on the peripheral surface only.

Hand of Cutter: Some types of cutters require special consideration when referring to their hand. These are principally cutters with unsymmetrical forms, face-type cutters, or cutters with threaded holes. *Symmetrical* cutters may be reversed on the arbor in the same axial position and rotated in the cutting direction without altering the contour produced on the work-piece, and may be considered as either right or left hand. *Unsymmetrical* cutters reverse the contour produced on the work-piece when reversed on the arbor in the same axial position and rotated in the cutting direction. A *single-angle* cutter is considered to be a right-hand cutter if it revolves counterclockwise, or a left-hand cutter if it revolves clockwise, when cutting as viewed from the side of the larger diameter. The *hand of rotation* of a single angle milling cutter need not necessarily be the same as its *hand of cutter*. A *single corner rounding* cutter is considered to be a right-hand cutter if it revolves counterclockwise, or a left-hand cutter if it revolves clockwise, when cutting as viewed from the side of the smaller diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Side Milling Cutters
ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)

Cutter Diameter			Range of Face Widths Nom.[a]	Hole Diameter		
Nom.	Max.	Min.		Nom.	Max.	Min.
Side Cutters [b]						
2	2.015	1.985	3/16, 1/4, 3/8	5/8	0.62575	0.6250
2 1/2	2.515	2.485	1/4, 3/8, 1/2	7/8	0.87575	0.8750
3	3.015	2.985	1/4, 5/16, 3/8, 7/16, 1/2	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	1/4, 3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 7/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
5	5.015	4.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
6	6.015	5.985	1/2	1	1.00075	1.0000
6	6.015	5.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
7	7.015	6.985	3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
7	7.015	6.985	3/4	1 1/2	1.5010	1.5000
8	8.015	7.985	3/4, 1	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
8	8.015	7.985	3/4, 1	1 1/2	1.5010	1.5000
Staggered-Tooth Side Cutters [c]						
2 1/2	2.515	2.485	1/4, 5/16, 3/8, 1/2	7/8	0.87575	0.8750
3	3.015	2.985	3/16, 1/4, 5/16, 3/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
3	3.015	2.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
4	4.015	3.985	1/4, 5/16, 3/8, 7/16, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4 and 7/8	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
5	5.015	4.985	1/2, 5/8, 3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
6	6.015	5.985	3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 7/8, 1	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
8	8.015	7.985	3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 1	1 1/2	1.5010	1.5000
Half Side Cutters [d]						
4	4.015	3.985	3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
5	5.015	4.985	3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500
6	6.015	5.985	3/4	1 1/4	1.2510	1.2500

[a] *Tolerances on Face Widths:* For side cutters, +0.002, −0.001 inch; for staggered-tooth side cutters up to 3/4-inch face width, inclusive, +0.000 −0.0005 inch, and over 3/4 to 1 inch, inclusive, +0.000 − 0.0010 inch; and for half side cutters, +0.015, −0.000 inch.

[b] Side milling cutters have straight peripheral teeth and side teeth on both sides.

[c] Staggered-tooth side milling cutters have peripheral teeth of alternate right- and left-hand helix and alternate side teeth.

[d] Half side milling cutters have side teeth on one side only. The peripheral teeth are helical of the same hand as the cut. Made either with right-hand or left-hand cut.

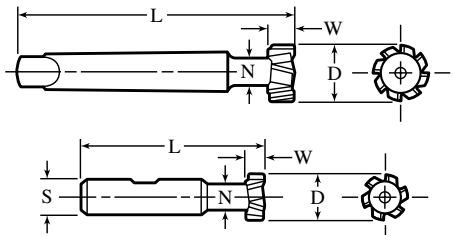
All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Side milling cutters are of cylindrical shape, having teeth on the periphery and on one or both sides.

Hand of Flute Helix: Milling cutters may have *straight flutes*, which means that their cutting edges are in planes parallel to the cutter axis. Milling cutters with flute helix in one direction only are described as having a right-hand helix if the flutes twist away from the observer in a clockwise direction when viewed from either end of the cutter or as having a left-hand helix if the flutes twist away from the observer in a counterclockwise direction when viewed from either end of the cutter. *Staggered tooth cutters* are milling cutters with every other flute of opposite (right- and left-hand) helix.

An illustration describing the various milling cutter elements of both a profile cutter and a form-relieved cutter is given on page 876.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Staggered Teeth, T-Slot Milling Cutters with Brown & Sharpe Taper and Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Bolt Size	Cutter Dia., *D*	Face Width, *W*	Neck Dia., *N*	With B. & S. Taper[a,b]		With Weldon Shank	
				Length, *L*	Taper No.	Length, *L*	Dia., *S*
1/4	9/16	15/64	17/64	…	…	2 19/32	1/2
5/16	2 1/32	17/64	21/64	…	…	2 11/16	1/2
3/8	2 5/32	21/64	13/32	…	…	3 1/4	3/4
1/2	3 1/32	25/64	17/32	5	7	3 7/16	3/4
5/8	1 1/4	31/64	21/32	5 1/4	7	3 15/16	1
3/4	1 15/32	5/8	25/32	6 7/8	9	4 7/16	1
1	1 27/32	53/64	1 1/32	7 1/4	9	4 13/16	1 1/4

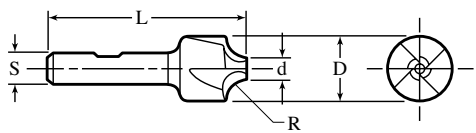
[a] For dimensions of Brown & Sharpe taper shanks, see information given on page 1023.

[b] Brown & Sharpe taper shanks have been removed from ANSI/ASME B94.19; they are included for reference only.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel, and only right-hand cutters are standard.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.000, –0.010 inch; on *W*, +0.000, –0.005 inch; on *N*, +0.000, –0.005 inch; on *L*, ± 1/16 inch; on *S*, –00001 to –0.0005 inch.

American National Standard Form Relieved Corner Rounding Cutters with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Rad., *R*	Dia., *D*	Dia., *d*	*S*	*L*	Rad., *R*	Dia., *D*	Dia., *d*	*S*	*L*
1/16	7/16	1/4	3/8	2 1/2	3/8	1 1/4	3/8	1/2	3 1/2
3/32	1/2	1/4	3/8	2 1/2	3/16	7/8	5/16	3/4	3 1/8
1/8	5/8	1/4	1/2	3	1/4	1	3/8	3/4	3 1/4
5/32	3/4	5/16	1/2	3	5/16	1 1/8	3/8	7/8	3 1/2
3/16	7/8	5/16	1/2	3	3/8	1 1/4	3/8	7/8	3 3/4
1/4	1	3/8	1/2	3	7/16	1 3/8	3/8	1	4
5/16	1 1/8	3/8	1/2	3 1/4	1/2	1 1/2	3/8	1	4 1/8

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters are standard.

Tolerances: On *D*, ±0.010 inch; on diameter of circle, 2*R*, ±0.001 inch for cutters up to and including 1/8-inch radius, +0.002, –0.001 inch for cutters over 1/8-inch radius; on *S*, –0.0001 to –0.0005 inch; and on *L*, ± 1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Metal Slitting Saws *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

Cutter Diameter			Range of Face Widths Nom.[a]	Hole Diameter		
Nom.	Max.	Min.		Nom.	Max.	Min.
Plain Metal Slitting Saws [b]						
2½	2.515	2.485	1/32, 3/64, 1/16, 3/32, 1/8	7/8	0.87575	0.8750
3	3.015	2.985	1/32, 3/64, 1/16, 3/32, 1/8 and 5/32	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	1/32, 3/64, 1/16, 3/32, 1/8, 5/32 and 3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	1/8	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
6	6.015	5.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
6	6.015	5.985	1/8, 3/16	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
8	8.015	7.985	1/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
8	8.015	7.985	1/8	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
Metal Slitting Saws with Side Teeth [c]						
2½	2.515	2.485	1/16, 3/32, 1/8	7/8	0.87575	0.8750
3	3.015	2.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8, 5/32	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8, 5/32, 3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8, 5/32, 3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	1/8	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
6	6.015	5.985	1/16, 3/32, 1/8, 3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
6	6.015	5.985	1/8, 3/16	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
8	8.015	7.985	1/8	1	1.00075	1.0000
8	8.015	7.985	1/8, 3/16	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
Metal Slitting Saws with Staggered Peripheral and Side Teeth [d]						
3	3.015	2.985	3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
4	4.015	3.985	3/16	1	1.00075	1.0000
5	5.015	4.985	3/16, 1/4	1	1.00075	1.0000
6	6.015	5.985	3/16, 1/4	1	1.00075	1.0000
6	6.015	5.985	3/16, 1/4	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
8	8.015	7.985	3/16, 1/4	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
10	10.015	9.985	3/16, 1/4	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
12	12.015	11.985	1/4, 5/16	1½	1.5010	1.5000

[a] Tolerances on face widths are plus or minus 0.001 inch.

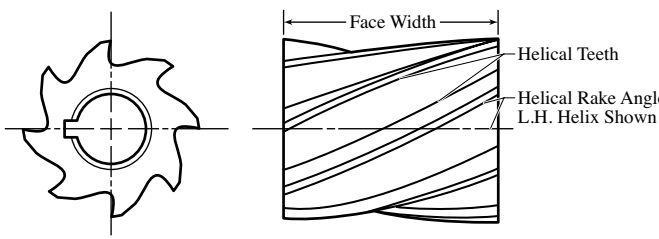
[b] Plain metal slitting saws are relatively thin plain milling cutters having peripheral teeth only. They are furnished with or without hub, and their sides are concaved to the arbor hole or hub.

[c] Metal slitting saws with side teeth are relatively thin side milling cutters having both peripheral and side teeth.

[d] Metal slitting saws with staggered peripheral and side teeth are relatively thin staggered-tooth milling cutters having peripheral teeth of alternate right- and left-hand helix and alternate side teeth.

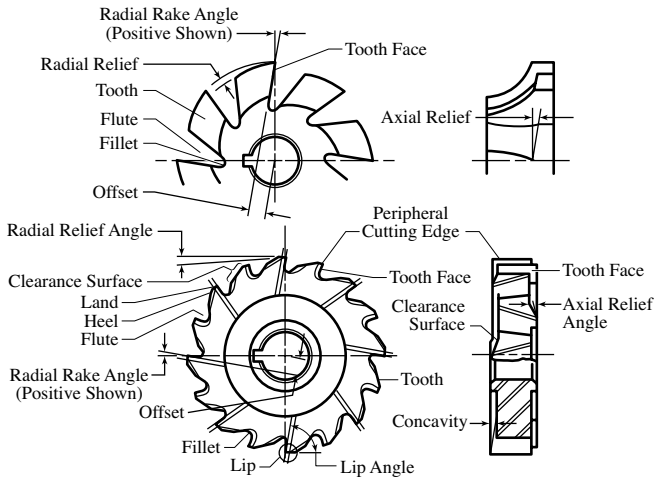
All dimensions are in inches. All saws are high-speed steel. Metal slitting saws are similar to plain or side milling cutters but are relatively thin.

Milling Cutter Terms



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Milling Cutter Terms *(Continued)*



American National Standard Single- and Double-Angle Milling Cutters *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

Cutter Diameter				Hole Diameter		
Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nominal Face Width[a]	Nom.	Max.	Min.
Single-Angle Cutters[b]						
[c]1¼	1.265	1.235	7/16	3/8-24 UNF-2B RH 3/8-24 UNF-2B LH		
[c]1⅝	1.640	1.610	9/16	1/2-20 UNF-2B RH		
2¾	2.765	2.735	1/2	1	1.00075	1.0000
3	3.015	2.985	1/2	1¼	1.2510	1.2500
Double-Angle Cutters[d]						
2¾	2.765	2.735	1/2	1	1.00075	1.0000

[a] Face width tolerances are plus or minus 0.015 inch.

[b] Single-angle milling cutters have peripheral teeth, one cutting edge of which lies in a conical surface and the other in the plane perpendicular to the cutter axis. There are two types: one has a plain keywayed hole and has an included tooth angle of either 45 or 60 degrees ±10 minutes; the other has a threaded hole and an included tooth angle of 60 degrees ±10 minutes. Cutters with a right-hand threaded hole have a right-hand hand of rotation and a right-hand hand of cutter. Cutters with a left-hand threaded hole have a left-hand hand of rotation and a left-hand hand of cutter. Cutters with plain keywayed holes are standard as either right-hand or left-hand cutters.

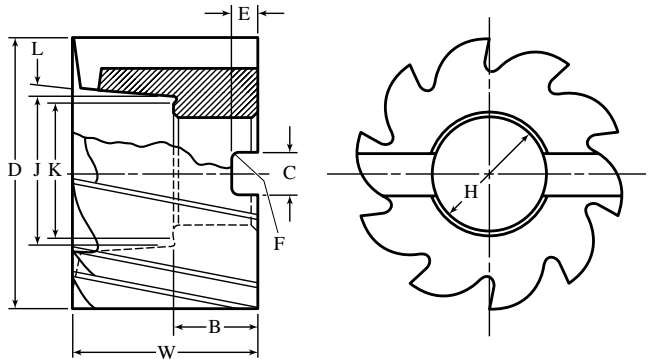
[c] These cutters have threaded holes, the sizes of which are given under "Hole Diameter."

[d] Double-angle milling cutters have symmetrical peripheral teeth, both sides of which lie in conical surfaces. They are designated by the included angle, which may be 45, 60 or 90 degrees. Tolerances are ±10 minutes for the half angle on each side of the center.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Shell Mills *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

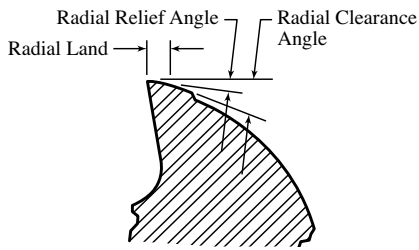


Dia., *D*	Width, *W*	Dia., *H*	Length, *B*	Width, *C*	Depth, *E*	Radius, *F*	Dia., *J*	Dia., *K*	Angle, *L*
inches	inches	inches	inches	inches	inches	inches	inches	degrees	inches
1¼	1	½	⅝	¼	5⁄32	1⁄64	11⁄16	⅝	0
1½	1⅛	½	⅝	¼	5⁄32	1⁄64	11⁄16	⅝	0
1¾	1¼	¾	¾	5⁄16	3⁄16	1⁄32	15⁄16	⅞	0
2	1⅜	¾	¾	5⁄16	3⁄16	1⁄32	15⁄16	⅞	0
2¼	1½	1	¾	⅜	7⁄32	1⁄32	1¼	1 3⁄16	0
2½	1⅝	1	¾	⅜	7⁄32	1⁄32	1⅜	1 3⁄16	0
2¾	1⅝	1	¾	⅜	7⁄32	1⁄32	1½	1 3⁄16	5
3	1¾	1¼	¾	½	9⁄32	1⁄32	1 21⁄32	1½	5
3½	1⅞	1¼	¾	½	9⁄32	1⁄32	1 11⁄16	1½	5
4	2¼	1½	1	⅝	⅜	1⁄16	2 1⁄32	1⅞	5
4½	2¼	1½	1	⅝	⅜	1⁄16	2 1⁄16	1⅞	10
5	2¼	1½	1	⅝	⅜	1⁄16	2 9⁄16	1⅞	10
6	2¼	2	1	¾	7⁄16	1⁄16	2 13⁄16	2½	15

All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix and square corners are standard.

Tolerances: On D, $+1/64$ inch; on W, $\pm 1/64$ inch; on H, +0.0005 inch; on B, $+1/64$ inch; on C, at least +0.008 but not more than +0.012 inch; on E, $+1/64$ inch; on J, $\pm 1/64$ inch; on K, $\pm 1/64$ inch.

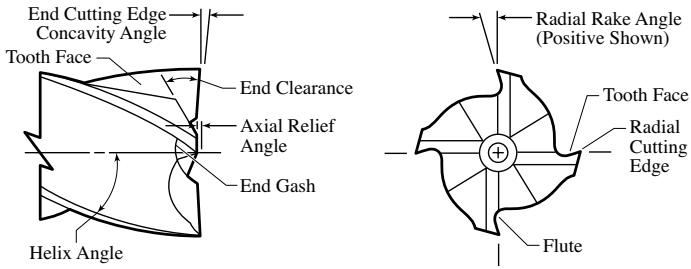
End Mill Terms



Enlarged Section of End Mill Tooth

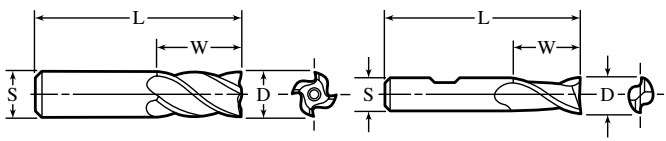
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

End Mill Terms *(Continued)*



Enlarged Section of End Mill

American National Standard Multiple- and Two-Flute Single-End Helical End Mills with Plain Straight and Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Cutter Diameter, *D*			Shank Diameter, *S*		Length of Cut, *W*	Length Overall, *L*
Nom.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		
Multiple-Flute with Plain Straight Shanks						
1/8	.130	.125	.125	.1245	5/16	1 1/4
3/16	.1925	.1875	.1875	.1870	1/2	1 3/8
1/4	.255	.250	.250	.2495	5/8	1 11/16
3/8	.380	.375	.375	.3745	3/4	1 13/16
1/2	.505	.500	.500	.4995	1 5/16	2 1/4
3/4	.755	.750	.750	.7495	1 1/4	2 5/8
Two-Flute for Keyway Cutting with Weldon Shanks						
1/8	.125	.1235	.375	.3745	3/8	2 5/16
3/16	.1875	.1860	.375	.3745	7/16	2 5/16
1/4	.250	.2485	.375	.3745	1/2	2 5/16
5/16	.3125	.3110	.375	.3745	9/16	2 5/16
3/8	.375	.3735	.375	.3745	9/16	2 5/16
1/2	.500	.4985	.500	.4995	1	3
5/8	.625	.6235	.625	.6245	1 5/16	3 7/16
3/4	.750	.7485	.750	.7495	1 5/16	3 9/16
7/8	.875	.8735	.875	.8745	1 1/2	3 3/4
1	1.000	.9985	1.000	.9995	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/4	1.250	1.2485	1.250	1.2495	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/2	1.500	1.4985	1.250	1.2495	1 5/8	4 1/8

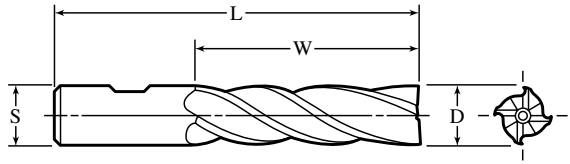
All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard.

The helix angle is not less than 10 degrees for multiple-flute cutters with plain straight shanks; the helix angle is optional with the manufacturer for two-flute cutters with Weldon shanks.

Tolerances: On *W*, ±1/32 inch; on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI Regular-, Long-, and Extra-Long-Length, Multiple-Flute Medium Helix Single-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



As Indicated by the Dimensions Given Below, Shank Diameter *S* May Be Larger, Smaller, or the Same as the Cutter Diameter *D*

Cutter Dia., *D*	Regular Mills				Long Mills				Extra-Long Mills			
	S	*W*	*L*	*N*[a]	*S*	*W*	*L*	*N*[a]	*S*	*W*	*L*	*N*[a]
1/8[b]	3/8	3/8	2 5/16	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/16[b]	3/8	1/2	2 3/8	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/4 [b]	3/8	5/8	2 7/16	4	3/8	1 1/4	3 1/16	4	3/8	1 3/4	3 9/16	4
5/16[b]	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	4	3/8	1 3/8	3 1/8	4	3/8	2	3 3/4	4
3/8 [b]	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	4	3/8	1 1/2	3 1/4	4	3/8	2 1/2	4 1/4	4
7/16	3/8	1	2 11/16	4	1/2	1 3/4	3 3/4	4	…	…	…	…
1/2	3/8	1	2 11/16	4	1/2	2	4	4	1/2	3	5	4
1/2 [b]	1/2	1 1/4	3 1/4	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
9/16	1/2	1 3/8	3 3/8	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5/8	1/2	1 3/8	3 3/8	4	5/8	2 1/2	4 5/8	4	5/8	4	6 1/8	4
11/16	1/2	1 5/8	3 5/8	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/4	1/2	1 5/8	3 5/8	4	3/4	3	5 1/4	4	3/4	4	6 1/4	4
5/8 [b]	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
11/16	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/4 [b]	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
13/16	5/8	1 7/8	4	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
7/8	5/8	1 7/8	4	6	7/8	3 1/2	5 3/4	4	7/8	5	7 1/4	4
1	5/8	1 7/8	4	6	1	4	6 1/2	4	1	6	8 1/2	4
7/8	7/8	1 7/8	4 1/8	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	7/8	1 7/8	4 1/8	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/8	7/8	2	4 1/4	6	1	4	6 1/2	6	…	…	…	…
1 1/4	7/8	2	4 1/4	6	1	4	6 1/2	6	1 1/4	6	8 1/2	6
1	1	2	4 1/2	4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/8	1	2	4 1/2	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/4	1	2	4 1/2	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 3/8	1	2	4 1/2	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/2	1	2	4 1/2	6	1	4	6 1/2	6	…	…	…	…
1 1/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	6	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	6	…	…	…	…
1 1/2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	6	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	6	1 1/4	8	10 1/2	6
1 3/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	6	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	6	…	…	…	…
2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	8	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	8	…	…	…	…

[a] *N* = Number of flutes.

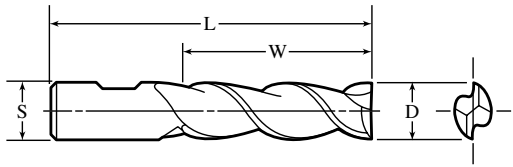
[b] In this size of regular mill, a left-hand cutter with left-hand helix is also standard.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.003 inch; on *S*, −0.0001 to −0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI Two-Flute, High Helix, Regular-, Long-, and Extra-Long-Length, Single-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

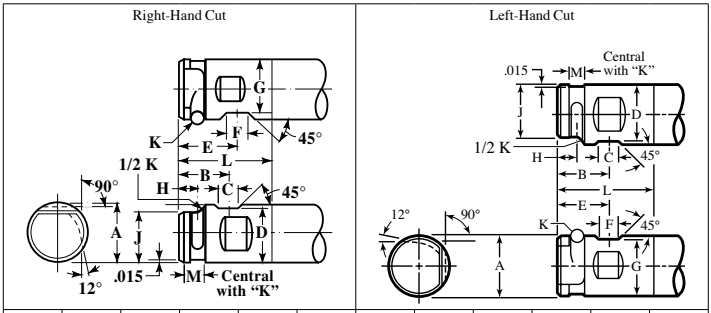


Cutter Dia., *D*	Regular Mill			Long Mill			Extra-Long Mill		
	S	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*
1/4	3/8	5/8	2 7/16	3/8	1 1/4	3 1/16	3/8	1 3/4	3 9/16
5/16	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	3/8	1 3/8	3 1/8	3/8	2	3 3/4
3/8	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	3/8	1 1/2	3 1/4	3/8	2 1/2	4 1/4
7/16	3/8	1	2 11/16	1/2	1 3/4	3 3/4	…	…	…
1/2	1/2	1 1/4	3 1/4	1/2	2	4	1/2	3	5
5/8	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	5/8	2 1/2	4 5/8	5/8	4	6 1/8
3/4	3/4	1 5/8	3 7/8	3/4	3	5 1/4	3/4	4	6 1/4
7/8	7/8	1 7/8	4 1/8	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	1	2	4 1/2	1	4	6 1/2	1	6	8 1/2
1 1/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	1 1/4	6	8 1/2
1 1/2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	1 1/4	8	10 1/2
2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.003 inch; on *S*, −0.0001 to −0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Combination Shanks for End Mills *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

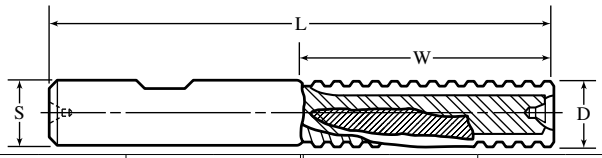


Dia. *A*	*L*[a]	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*	*J*	*K*	*M*
1 1/2	2 11/16	1 3/16	.515	1.406	1 1/2	.515	1.371	9/16	1.302	.377	7/16
2	3 1/4	1 23/32	.700	1.900	1 3/4	.700	1.809	5/8	1.772	.440	1/2
2 1/2	3 1/2	1 15/16	.700	2.400	2	.700	2.312	3/4	2.245	.503	9/16

[a] Length of shank.
All dimensions are in inches.
Modified for use as Weldon or Pin Drive shank.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

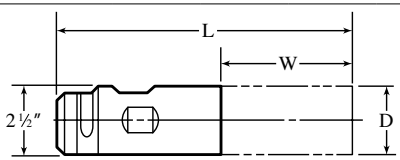
ANSI Roughing, Single-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks, High-Speed Steel *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Diameter		Length		Diameter		Length	
Cutter	Shank	Cut	Overall	Cutter	Shank	Cut	Overall
D	*S*	*W*	*L*	*D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
½	½	1	3	2	2	2	5¾
½	½	1¼	3¼	2	2	3	6¾
½	½	2	4	2	2	4	7¾
⅝	⅝	1¼	3⅜	2	2	5	8¾
⅝	⅝	1⅝	3¾	2	2	6	9¾
⅝	⅝	2½	4⅜	2	2	7	10¾
¾	¾	1½	3¾	2	2	8	11¾
¾	¾	1⅝	3⅞	2	2	10	13¾
¾	¾	3	5¼	2	2	12	15¾
1	1	2	4½	2½	2	4	7¾
1	1	4	6½	2½	2	6	9¾
1¼	1¼	2	4½	2½	2	8	11¾
1¼	1¼	4	6½	2½	2	10	13¾
1½	1¼	2	4½	3	2½	4	7¾
1½	1¼	4	6½	3	2½	6	9¾
1¾	1¼	2	4½	3	2½	8	11¾
1¾	1¼	4	6½	3	2½	10	13¾

All dimensions are in inches. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard.
Tolerances: Outside diameter, +0.025, −0.005 inch; length of cut, $+\frac{1}{8}$, $-\frac{1}{32}$ inch.

American National Standard Heavy Duty, Medium Helix Single-End End Mills, $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch Combination Shank, High-Speed Steel *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

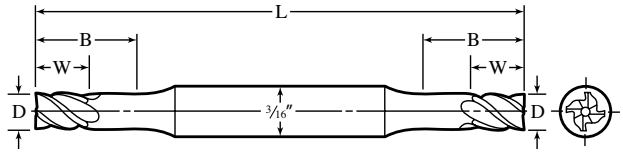


Dia. of Cutter, *D*	No. of Flutes	Length of Cut, *W*	Length Overall, *L*	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	No. of Flutes	Length of Cut, *W*	Length Overall, *L*
2½	3	8	12	3	3	4	7¾
2½	3	10	14	3	3	6	9¾
2½	6	4	8	3	3	8	11¾
2½	6	6	10	3	8	4	7¾
2½	6	8	12	3	8	6	9¾
2½	6	10	14	3	8	8	11¾
2½	6	12	16	3	8	10	13¾
3	2	4	7¾	3	8	12	15¾
3	2	6	9¾	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches. For shank dimensions, see page 881. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.
Tolerances: On *D*, +0.005 inch; on *W*, $\pm\frac{1}{32}$ inch; on *L*, $\pm\frac{1}{16}$ inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI Stub-, Regular-, and Long-Length, Four-Flute, Medium Helix, Plain-End, Double-End Miniature End Mills with $^{3}/_{16}$-Inch Diameter Straight Shanks
ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)



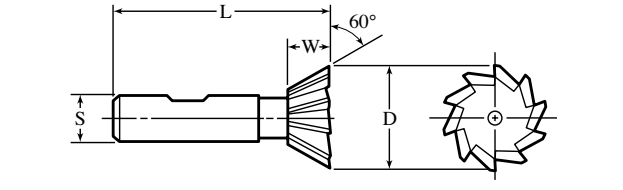
Dia. *D*	Stub Length		Regular Length	
	W	*L*	*W*	*L*
1/16	3/32	2	3/16	2 1/4
3/32	9/64	2	9/32	2 1/4
1/8	3/16	2	3/8	2 1/4
5/32	15/64	2	7/16	2 1/4
3/16	9/32	2	1/2	2 1/4

Dia. *D*	Long Length		
	B	*W*	*L*
1/16	3/8	7/32	2 1/2
3/32	1/2	9/32	2 5/8
1/8	3/4	3/4	3 1/8
5/32	7/8	7/8	3 1/4
3/16	1	1	3 3/8

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *D*, + 0.003 inch (if the shank is the same diameter as the cutting portion, however, then the tolerance on the cutting diameter is – 0.0025 inch.); on *W*, + 1/32, – 1/64 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

American National Standard 60-Degree Single-Angle Milling Cutters with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



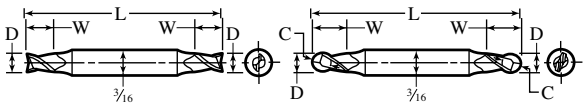
Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*	Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
3/4	3/8	5/16	2 1/8	1 7/8	7/8	13/16	3 1/4
1 3/8	5/8	9/16	2 7/8	2 1/4	1	1 1/16	3 3/4

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters are standard.

Tolerances: On *D*, ± 0.015 inch; on *S*, – 0.0001 to – 0.0005 inch; on *W*, ± 0.015 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Stub-, Regular-, and Long-Length, Two-Flute, Medium Helix, Plain- and Ball-End, Double-End Miniature End Mills with 3/16-Inch Diameter Straight Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Dia., *C* and *D*	Stub Length				Regular Length			
	Plain-End		Ball-End		Plain-End		Ball-End	
	W	*L*	*W*	*L*	*W*	*L*	*W*	*L*
1/32	3/64	2	…	…	3/32	2 1/4	…	…
3/64	1/16	2	…	…	9/64	2 1/4	…	…
1/16	3/32	2	3/32	2	3/16	2 1/4	3/16	2 1/4
5/64	1/8	2	…	…	15/64	2 1/4	…	…
3/32	9/64	2	9/64	2	9/32	2 1/4	9/32	2 1/4
7/64	5/32	2	…	…	21/64	2 1/4	…	…
1/8	3/16	2	3/16	2	3/8	2 1/4	3/8	2 1/4
9/64	7/32	2	…	…	13/32	2 1/4	…	…
5/32	15/64	2	15/64	2	7/16	2 1/4	7/16	2 1/4
11/64	1/4	2	…	…	1/2	2 1/4	…	…
3/16	9/32	2	9/32	2	1/2	2 1/4	1/2	2 1/4

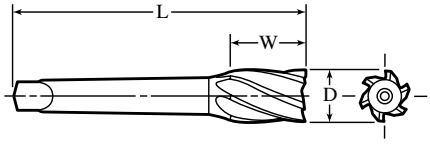
Dia., *D*	Long-Length, Plain-End			Dia., *D*	Long-Length, Plain-End		
	B [a]	*W*	*L*		*B* [a]	*W*	*L*
1/16	3/8	7/32	2 1/2	5/32	7/8	7/8	3 1/4
3/32	1/2	9/32	2 5/8	3/16	1	1	3 3/8
1/8	3/4	3/4	3 1/8				

[a] *B* is the length below the shank.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *C* and *D*, – 0.0015 inch for stub and regular length; + 0.003 inch for long length (if the shank is the same diameter as the cutting portion, however, then the tolerance on the cutting diameter is – 0.0025 inch.); on *W*, + 1/32, – 1/64 inch; and on *L*, ± 1/16 inch.

American National Standard Multiple-Flute, Helical Series End Mills with Brown & Sharpe Taper Shanks



Dia., *D*	*W*	*L*	Taper No.	Dia., *D*	*W*	*L*	Taper No.
1/2	15/16	4 15/16	7	1 1/4	2	7 1/4	9
3/4	1 1/4	5 1/4	7	1 1/2	2 1/4	7 1/2	9
1	1 5/8	5 5/8	7	2	2 3/4	8	9

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is not less than 10 degrees.

No. 5 taper is standard without tang; Nos. 7 and 9 are standard with tang only.

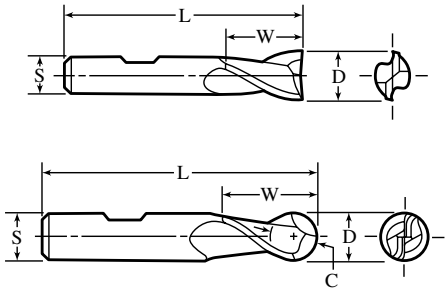
Tolerances: On *D*, +0.005 inch; on *W*, ± 1/32 inch; and on *L* ± 1/16 inch.

For dimensions of B & S taper shanks, see information given on page 1023.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Stub- and Regular-Length, Two-Flute, Medium Helix, Plain- and Ball-End, Single-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks

ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)



Regular Length — Plain End			
Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
1/8	3/8	3/8	2 5/16
3/16	3/8	7/16	2 5/16
1/4	3/8	1/2	2 5/16
5/16	3/8	9/16	2 5/16
3/8	3/8	9/16	2 5/16
7/16	3/8	13/16	2 1/2
1/2	3/8	13/16	2 1/2
1/2	1/2	1	3
9/16	1/2	1 1/8	3 1/8
5/8	1/2	1 1/8	3 1/8
11/16	1/2	1 5/16	3 5/16
3/4	1/2	1 5/16	3 5/16
5/8	5/8	1 5/16	3 7/16
11/16	5/8	1 5/16	3 7/16
3/4	5/8	1 5/16	3 7/16
13/16	5/8	1 1/2	3 5/8
7/8	5/8	1 1/2	3 5/8
1	5/8	1 1/2	3 5/8
7/8	7/8	1 1/2	3 3/4
1	7/8	1 1/2	3 3/4
1 1/8	7/8	1 5/8	3 7/8
1 1/4	7/8	1 5/8	3 7/8
1	1	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/8	1	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/4	1	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 3/8	1	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/2	1	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/4	1 1/4	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 1/2	1 1/4	1 5/8	4 1/8
1 3/4	1 1/4	1 5/8	4 1/8
2	1 1/4	1 5/8	4 1/8

Stub Length — Plain End			
Cutter Dia., *D*	Shank Dia., *S*	Length of Cut. *W*	Length Overall. *L*
1/8	3/8	3/16	2 1/8
3/16	3/8	9/32	2 3/16
1/4	3/8	3/8	2 1/4

Regular Length — Ball End			
Dia., *C* and *D*	Shank Dia., *S*	Length of Cut. *W*	Length Overall. *L*
1/8	3/8	3/8	2 5/16
3/16	3/8	1/2	2 3/8
1/4	3/8	5/8	2 7/16
5/16	3/8	3/4	2 1/2
3/8	3/8	3/4	2 1/2
7/16	1/2	1	3
1/2	1/2	1	3
9/16	1/2	1 1/8	3 1/8
5/8	1/2	1 1/8	3 1/8
5/8	5/8	1 3/8	3 1/2
3/4	1/2	1 5/16	3 5/16
3/4	3/4	1 5/8	3 7/8
7/8	7/8	2	4 1/4
1	1	2 1/4	4 3/4
1 1/8	1	2 1/4	4 3/4
1 1/4	1 1/4	2 1/2	5
1 1/2	1 1/4	2 1/2	5

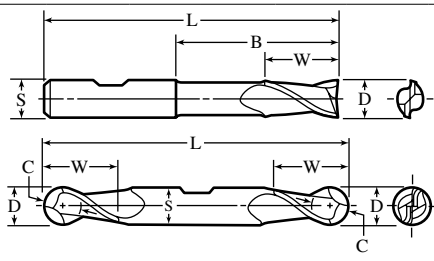
All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *C* and *D*, −0.0015 inch for stub-length mills, + 0.003 inch for regular-length mills; on *S*, −0.0001 to −0.0005 inch; on *W*, ± 1/32 inch; and on *L*, ± 1/16 inch.

The following single-end end mills are available in premium high-speed steel: ball end, two flute, with *D* ranging from 1/8 to 1 1/2 inches; ball end, multiple flute, with *D* ranging from 1/8 to 1 inch; and plain end, two flute, with *D* ranging from 1/8 to 1 1/2 inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Long-Length Single-End and Stub-, and Regular-Length, Double-End, Plain- and Ball-End, Medium Helix, Two-Flute End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Single End								
Dia., *C* and *D*	Long Length — Plain End				Long Length — Ball End			
	S	*B*[a]	*W*	*L*	*S*	*B*[a]	*W*	*L*
1/8	…	…	…	…	3/8	13/16	3/8	2 3/8
3/16	…	…	…	…	3/8	1 1/8	1/2	2 11/16
1/4	3/8	1 1/2	5/8	3 1/16	3/8	1 1/2	5/8	3 1/16
5/16	3/8	1 3/4	3/4	3 5/16	3/8	1 3/4	3/4	3 5/16
3/8	3/8	1 3/4	3/4	3 5/16	3/8	1 3/4	3/4	3 5/16
7/16	…	…	…	…	1/2	1 7/8	1	3 11/16
1/2	1/2	2 7/32	1	4	1/2	2 1/4	1	4
5/8	5/8	2 23/32	1 3/8	4 5/8	5/8	2 3/4	1 3/8	4 5/8
3/4	3/4	3 11/32	1 5/8	5 3/8	3/4	3 3/8	1 5/8	5 3/8
1	1	4 31/32	2 1/2	7 1/4	1	5	2 1/2	7 1/4
1 1/4	1 1/4	4 31/32	3	7 1/4	…	…	…	…

[a] *B* is the length below the shank.

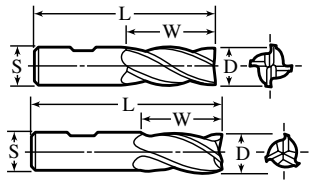
Double End									
Dia., *C* and *D*	Stub Length — Plain End			Regular Length — Plain End			Regular Length — Ball End		
	S	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*
1/8	3/8	3/16	2 3/4	3/8	3/8	3 1/16	3/8	3/8	3 1/16
5/32	3/8	15/64	2 3/4	3/8	7/16	3 1/8	…	…	…
3/16	3/8	9/32	2 3/4	3/8	7/16	3 1/8	3/8	7/16	3 1/8
7/32	3/8	21/64	2 7/8	3/8	1/2	3 1/8	…	…	…
1/4	3/8	3/8	2 7/8	3/8	1/2	3 1/8	3/8	1/2	3 1/8
9/32	…	…	…	3/8	9/16	3 1/8	…	…	…
5/16	…	…	…	3/8	9/16	3 1/8	3/8	9/16	3 1/8
11/32	…	…	…	3/8	9/16	3 1/8	…	…	…
3/8	…	…	…	3/8	9/16	3 1/8	3/8	9/16	3 1/8
13/32	…	…	…	1/2	13/16	3 3/4	…	…	…
7/16	…	…	…	1/2	13/16	3 3/4	1/2	13/16	3 3/4
15/32	…	…	…	1/2	13/16	3 3/4	…	…	…
1/2	…	…	…	1/2	13/16	3 3/4	1/2	13/16	3 3/4
9/16	…	…	…	5/8	1 1/8	4 1/2	…	…	…
5/8	…	…	…	5/8	1 1/8	4 1/2	5/8	1 1/8	4 1/2
11/16	…	…	…	3/4	1 5/16	5	…	…	…
3/4	…	…	…	3/4	1 5/16	5	3/4	1 5/16	5
7/8	…	…	…	7/8	1 9/16	5 1/2	…	…	…
1	…	…	…	1	1 5/8	5 7/8	1	1 5/8	5 7/8

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *C* and *D*, + 0.003 inch for single-end mills, –0.0015 inch for double-end mills; on *S*, –0.0001 to –0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Regular-, Long-, and Extra-Long-Length, Three- and Four-Flute, Medium Helix, Center Cutting, Single-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Four Flute

Dia., *D*	Regular Length			Long Length			Extra-Long Length		
	S	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*	*S*	*W*	*L*
1/8	3/8	3/8	2 5/16	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/16	3/8	1/2	2 3/8	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/4	3/8	5/8	2 7/16	3/8	1 1/4	3 3/16	3/8	1 3/4	3 9/16
5/16	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	3/8	1 3/8	3 1/8	3/8	2	3 3/4
3/8	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	3/8	1 1/2	3 1/4	3/8	2 1/2	4 1/4
1/2	1/2	1 1/4	3 1/4	1/2	2	4	1/2	3	5
5/8	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	5/8	2 1/2	4 5/8	5/8	4	6 1/8
11/16	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/4	3/4	1 5/8	3 7/8	3/4	3	5 1/4	3/4	4	6 1/4
7/8	7/8	1 7/8	4 1/8	7/8	3 1/2	5 3/4	7/8	5	7 1/4
1	1	2	4 1/2	1	4	6 1/2	1	6	8 1/2
1 1/8	1	2	4 1/2	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2	1 1/4	6	8 1/2
1 1/2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2	…	…	…	…	…	…

Three Flute

Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*	Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
Regular Length				Regular Length (*cont.*)			
1/8	3/8	3/8	2 5/16	1 1/8	1	2	4 1/2
3/16	3/8	1/2	2 3/8	1 1/4	1	2	4 1/2
1/4	3/8	5/8	2 7/16	1 1/2	1	2	4 1/2
5/16	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	1 1/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2
3/8	3/8	3/4	2 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2
7/16	3/8	1	2 11/16	1 3/4	1 1/4	2	4 1/2
1/2	3/8	1	2 11/16	2	1 1/4	2	4 1/2
1/2	1/2	1 1/4	3 1/4	Long Length			
9/16	1/2	1 3/8	3 3/8				
9/16	1/2	1 3/8	3 3/8	1/4	3/8	1 1/4	3 11/16
5/8	1/2	1 3/8	3 3/8	5/16	3/8	1 3/8	3 1/8
3/4	1/2	1 5/8	3 5/8	3/8	3/8	1 1/2	3 1/4
5/8	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	7/16	1/2	1 3/4	3 3/4
3/4	5/8	1 5/8	3 3/4	1/2	1/2	2	4
7/8	5/8	1 7/8	4	5/8	5/8	2 1/2	4 5/8
1	5/8	1 7/8	4	3/4	3/4	3	5 1/4
3/4	3/4	1 5/8	3 7/8	1	1	4	6 1/2
7/8	3/4	1 7/8	4 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/4	4	6 1/2
1	3/4	1 7/8	4 1/8	1 1/2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2
1	7/8	1 7/8	4 1/8	1 3/4	1 1/4	4	6 1/2
1	1	2	4 1/2	2	1 1/4	4	6 1/2

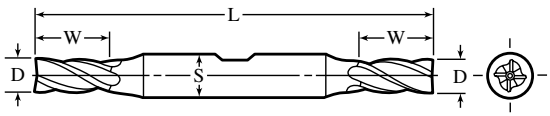
All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.003 inch; on *S*, −0.0001 to −0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

The following center-cutting, single-end end mills are available in premium high-speed steel: regular-length, multiple flute, with *D* ranging from 1/8 to 1 1/2 inches; long length, multiple flute, with *D* ranging from 3/8 to 1 1/4 inches; and extra-long-length, multiple flute, with *D* ranging from 3/8 to 1 1/4 inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Stub- and Regular-Length, Four-Flute, Medium Helix, Double-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



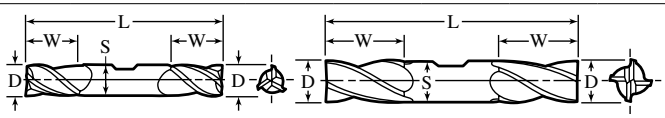
Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*	Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*	Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
Stub Length											
1/8	3/8	3/16	2 3/4	3/16	3/8	9/32	2 3/4	1/4	3/8	3/8	2 7/8
5/32	3/8	15/64	2 3/4	7/32	3/8	21/64	2 7/8	…	…	…	…
Regular Length											
1/8 [a]	3/8	3/8	3 1/16	11/32	3/8	3/4	3 1/2	5/8 [a]	5/8	1 3/8	5
5/32 [a]	3/8	7/16	3 1/8	3/8 [a]	3/8	3/4	3 1/2	11/16	3/4	1 5/8	5 5/8
3/16 [a]	3/8	1/2	3 1/4	13/32	1/2	1	4 1/8	3/4 [a]	3/4	1 5/8	5 5/8
7/32	3/8	9/16	3 1/4	7/16	1/2	1	4 1/8	13/16	7/8	1 7/8	6 1/8
1/4 [a]	3/8	5/8	3 3/8	15/32	1/2	1	4 1/8	7/8	7/8	1 7/8	6 1/8
9/32	3/8	11/16	3 3/8	1/2 [a]	1/2	1	4 1/8	1	1	1 7/8	6 3/8
5/16 [a]	3/8	3/4	3 1/2	9/16	5/8	1 3/8	5	…	…	…	…

[a] In this size of regular mill, a left-hand cutter with a left-hand helix is also standard.

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.003 inch (if the shank is the same diameter as the cutting portion, however, then the tolerance on the cutting diameter is –0.0025 inch); on *S*, –0.0001 to –0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

American National Standard Regular-Length, Three- and Four-Flute, Medium Helix, Double-End End Mills with Weldon Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



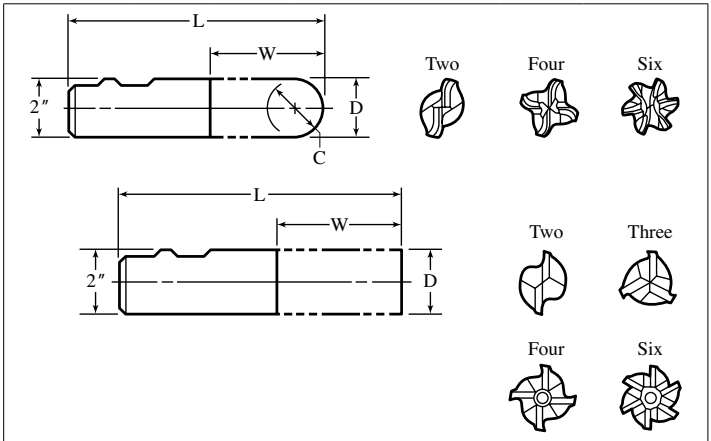
Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*	Dia., *D*	*S*	*W*	*L*
Three Flute				Four Flute			
1/8	3/8	3/8	3 1/16	1/8	3/8	3/8	3 1/16
3/16	3/8	1/2	3 1/4	3/16	3/8	1/2	3 1/4
1/4	3/8	5/8	3 3/8	1/4	3/8	5/8	3 3/8
5/16	3/8	3/4	3 1/2	5/16	3/8	3/4	3 1/2
3/8	3/8	3/4	3 1/2	3/8	3/8	3/4	3 1/2
7/16	1/2	1	4 1/8	1/2	1/2	1	4 1/8
1/2	1/2	1	4 1/8	5/8	5/8	1 3/8	5
9/16	5/8	1 3/8	5	3/4	3/4	1 5/8	5 5/8
5/8	5/8	1 3/8	5	7/8	7/8	1 7/8	6 1/8
3/4	3/4	1 5/8	5 5/8	1	1	1 7/8	6 3/8
1	1	1 7/8	6 3/8	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On *D*, +0.0015 inch; on *S*, –0.0001 to –0.0005 inch; on *W*, ±1/32 inch; and on *L*, ±1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Plain- and Ball-End, Heavy-Duty, Medium Helix, Single-End End Mills with 2-Inch Diameter Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Dia., *C* and *D*	Plain End			Ball End		
	W	*L*	No. of Flutes	*W*	*L*	No. of Flutes
2	2	5¾	2, 4, 6	…	…	…
2	3	6¾	2, 3	…	…	…
2	4	7¾	2, 3, 4, 6	4	7¾	6
2	…	…	…	5	8¾	2, 4
2	6	9¾	2, 3, 4, 6	6	9¾	6
2	8	11¾	6	8	11¾	6
2½	4	7¾	2, 3, 4, 6	…	…	…
2½	…	…	…	5	8¾	4
2½	6	9¾	2, 4, 6	…	…	…
2½	8	11¾	6	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel. Right-hand cutters with right-hand helix are standard. Helix angle is greater than 19 degrees but not more than 39 degrees.

Tolerances: On C and D, + 0.005 inch for 2, 3, 4 and 6 flutes: on *W*, ± 1/16 inch; and on *L*, ± 1/16 inch.

Dimensions of American National Standard Weldon Shanks
ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)

Shank		Flat		Shank		Flat	
Dia.	Length	*X*[a]	Length[b]	Dia.	Length	*X*[a]	Length[b]
⅜	1 9/16	0.325	0.280	1	2 9/32	0.925	0.515
½	1 25/32	0.440	0.330	1¼	2 9/32	1.156	0.515
⅝	1 29/32	0.560	0.400	1½	2 11/16	1.406	0.515
¾	2 1/32	0.675	0.455	2	3¼	1.900	0.700
⅞	2 1/32	0.810	0.455	2½	3½	2.400	0.700

[a] *X* is distance from bottom of flat to opposite side of shank.

[b] Minimum.

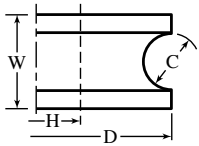
All dimensions are in inches.

Centerline of flat is at half-length of shank except for 1½-, 2- and 2½-inch shanks where it is 1 3/16, 1 27/32 and 1 15/16 from shank end, respectively.

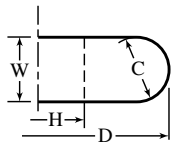
Tolerance on shank diameter, – 0.0001 to – 0.0005 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

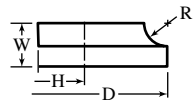
Amerian National Standard Relieved, Concave, Convex, and Corner-Rounding Arbor-Type Cutters *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Concave



Convex



Corner-Rounding

Diameter *C* or Radius *R*			Cutter Dia. *D*[a]	Width *W* ± .010[b]	Diameter of Hole *H*		
Nom.	Max.	Min.			Nom.	Max.	Min.
Concave Cutters[c]							
1/8	0.1270	0.1240	2 1/4	1/4	1	1.00075	1.00000
3/16	0.1895	0.1865	2 1/4	3/8	1	1.00075	1.00000
1/4	0.2520	0.2490	2 1/2	7/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
5/16	0.3145	0.3115	2 3/4	9/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
3/8	0.3770	0.3740	2 3/4	5/8	1	1.00075	1.00000
7/16	0.4395	0.4365	3	3/4	1	1.00075	1.00000
1/2	0.5040	0.4980	3	13/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
5/8	0.6290	0.6230	3 1/2	1	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
3/4	0.7540	0.7480	3 3/4	1 3/16	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
7/8	0.8790	0.8730	4	1 3/8	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
1	1.0040	0.9980	4 1/4	1 9/16	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
Convex Cutters[c]							
1/8	0.1270	0.1230	2 1/4	1/8	1	1.00075	1.00000
3/16	0.1895	0.1855	2 1/4	3/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
1/4	0.2520	0.2480	2 1/2	1/4	1	1.00075	1.00000
5/16	0.3145	0.3105	2 3/4	5/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
3/8	0.3770	0.3730	2 3/4	3/8	1	1.00075	1.00000
7/16	0.4395	0.4355	3	7/16	1	1.00075	1.00000
1/2	0.5020	0.4980	3	1/2	1	1.00075	1.00000
5/8	0.6270	0.6230	3 1/2	5/8	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
3/4	0.7520	0.7480	3 3/4	3/4	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
7/8	0.8770	0.8730	4	7/8	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
1	1.0020	0.9980	4 1/4	1	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
Corner-Rounding Cutters[d]							
1/8	0.1260	0.1240	2 1/2	1/4	1	1.00075	1.00000
1/4	0.2520	0.2490	3	13/32	1	1.00075	1.00000
3/8	0.3770	0.3740	3 3/4	9/16	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
1/2	0.5020	0.4990	4 1/4	3/4	1 1/4	1.251	1.250
5/8	0.6270	0.6240	4 1/4	15/16	1 1/4	1.251	1.250

[a] Tolerances on cutter diameter are $+1/16$, $-1/16$ inch for all sizes.

[b] Tolerance does not apply to convex cutters.

[c] Size of cutter is designated by specifying diameter *C* of circular form.

[d] Size of cutter is designated by specifying radius *R* of circular form.

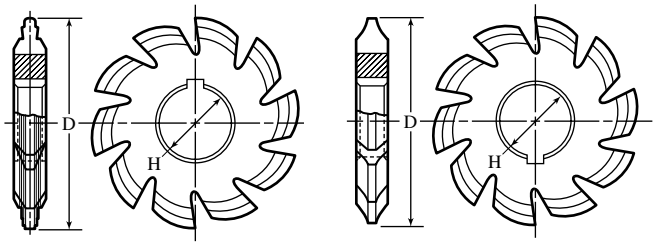
All dimensions in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel and are form relieved.

Right-hand corner rounding cutters are standard, but left-hand cutter for 1/4-inch size is also standard.

For key and keyway dimensions for these cutters, see page 894.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Roughing and Finishing Gear Milling Cutters for Gears with 14½-Degree Pressure Angles *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



ROUGHING FINISHING

Diametral Pitch	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Dia. of Hole, *H*	Diametral Pitch	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Dia. of Hole, *H*	Diametral Pitch	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Dia. of Hole, *H*
Roughing Gear Milling Cutters								
1	8½	2	3	5¼	1½	5	3⅜	1
1¼	7¾	2	3	4¾	1¼	6	3⅞	1½
1½	7	1¾	4	4¾	1¾	6	3½	1¼
1¾	6½	1¾	4	4½	1½	6	3⅛	1
2	6½	1¾	4	4¼	1¼	7	3⅜	1¼
2	5¾	1½	4	3⅝	1	7	2⅞	1
2½	6⅛	1¾	5	4⅜	1¾	8	3¼	1¼
2½	5¾	1½	5	4¼	1½	8	2⅞	1
3	5⅝	1¾	5	3¾	1¼	…	…	…
Finishing Gear Milling Cutters								
1	8½	2	6	3⅞	1½	14	2⅛	⅞
1¼	7¾	2	6	3½	1¼	16	2½	1
1½	7	1¾	6	3⅛	1	16	2⅛	⅞
1¾	6½	1¾	7	3⅜	1½	18	2⅜	1
2	6½	1¾	7	3⅜	1¼	18	2	⅞
2	5¾	1½	7	2⅞	1	20	2⅜	1
2½	6⅛	1¾	8	3½	1½	20	2	⅞
2½	5¾	1½	8	3¼	1¼	22	2¼	1
3	5⅝	1¾	8	2⅞	1	22	2	⅞
3	5¼	1½	9	3⅛	1¼	24	2¼	1
3	4¾	1¼	9	2¾	1	24	1¾	⅞
4	4¾	1¾	10	3	1¼	26	1¾	⅞
4	4½	1½	10	2¾	1	28	1¾	⅞
4	4¼	1¼	10	2⅜	⅞	30	1¾	⅞
4	3⅝	1	11	2⅝	1	32	1¾	⅞
5	4⅜	1¾	11	2⅜	⅞	36	1¾	⅞
5	4¼	1½	12	2⅞	1¼	40	1¾	⅞
5	3¾	1¼	12	2⅝	1	48	1¾	⅞
5	3⅜	1	12	2¼	⅞	…	…	…
6	4¼	1¾	14	2½	1	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches.

All gear milling cutters are high-speed steel and are form relieved.

For keyway dimensions see page 894.

Tolerances: On outside diameter, + 1/16, –1/16 inch; on hole diameter, through 1-inch hole diameter, +0.00075 inch, over 1-inch and through 2-inch hole diameter, +0.0010 inch.

For cutter number relative to numbers of gear teeth, see page 2227. Roughing cutters are made with No. 1 cutter form only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Gear Milling Cutters for Mitre and Bevel Gears with 14½-Degree Pressure Angles *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

Diametral Pitch	Diameter of Cutter, *D*	Diameter of Hole, *H*	Diametral Pitch	Diameter of Cutter, *D*	Diameter of Hole, *H*
3	4	1¼	10	2⅜	⅞
4	3⅝	1¼	12	2¼	⅞
5	3⅜	1¼	14	2⅛	⅞
6	3⅛	1	16	2⅛	⅞
7	2⅞	1	20	2	⅞
8	2⅞	1	24	1¾	⅞

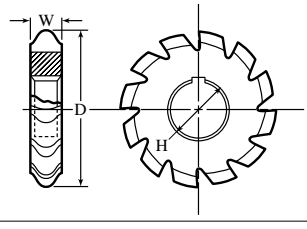
All dimensions are in inches.

All cutters are high-speed steel and are form relieved.

For keyway dimensions see page 894. For cutter selection see page 2266.

Tolerances: On outside diameter, +1/16, –1/16 inch; on hole diameter, through 1-inch hole diameter, +0.00075 inch, for 1¼-inch hole diameter, +0.0010 inch.

To select the cutter number for bevel gears with the axis at any angle, double the back cone radius and multiply the result by the diametral pitch. This procedure gives the number of equivalent spur gear teeth and is the basis for selecting the cutter number from the table on page 2229.



American National Standard Roller Chain Sprocket Milling Cutters

American National Standard Roller Chain Sprocket Milling Cutters *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*

Chain Pitch	Dia. of Roll	No. of Teeth in Sprocket	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Width of Cutter, *W*	Dia. of Hole, *H*
¼	0.130	6	2¾	5/16	1
¼	0.130	7-8	2¾	5/16	1
¼	0.130	9-11	2¾	5/16	1
¼	0.130	12-17	2¾	5/16	1
¼	0.130	18-34	2¾	9/32	1
¼	0.130	35 and over	2¾	9/32	1
⅜	0.200	6	2¾	15/32	1
⅜	0.200	7-8	2¾	15/32	1
⅜	0.200	9-11	2¾	15/32	1
⅜	0.200	12-17	2¾	7/16	1
⅜	0.200	18-34	2¾	7/16	1
⅜	0.200	35 and over	2¾	13/32	1
½	0.313	6	3	¾	1
½	0.313	7-8	3	¾	1
½	0.313	9-11	3⅛	¾	1
½	0.313	12-17	3⅛	¾	1
½	0.313	18-34	3⅛	23/32	1
½	0.313	35 and over	3⅛	11/16	1
⅝	0.400	6	3⅛	¾	1
⅝	0.400	7-8	3⅛	¾	1
⅝	0.400	9-11	3¼	¾	1
⅝	0.400	12-17	3¼	¾	1
⅝	0.400	18-34	3¼	23/32	1
⅝	0.400	35 and over	3¼	11/16	1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Roller Chain Sprocket Milling Cutters *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019) (Continued)*

Chain Pitch	Dia. of Roll	No. of Teeth in Sprocket	Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Width of Cutter, *W*	Dia. of Hole, *H*
¾	0.469	6	3¼	29⁄32	1
¾	0.469	7-8	3¼	29⁄32	1
¾	0.469	9-11	3⅜	29⁄32	1
¾	0.469	12-17	3⅜	⅞	1
¾	0.469	18-34	3⅜	27⁄32	1
¾	0.469	35 and over	3⅜	13⁄16	1
1	0.625	6	3⅞	1½	1¼
1	0.625	7-8	4	1½	1¼
1	0.625	9-11	4⅛	1 15⁄32	1¼
1	0.625	18-34	4¼	1 13⁄32	1¼
1	0.625	35 and over	4¼	1 11⁄32	1¼
1¼	0.750	6	4¼	1 13⁄16	1¼
1¼	0.750	7-8	4⅜	1 13⁄16	1¼
1¼	0.750	9-11	4½	1 25⁄32	1¼
1¼	0.750	18-34	4⅝	1 11⁄16	1¼
1¼	0.750	35 and over	4⅝	1⅝	1¼
1½	0.875	6	4⅜	1 13⁄16	1¼
1½	0.875	7-8	4½	1 13⁄16	1¼
1½	0.875	9-11	4⅝	1 25⁄32	1¼
1½	0.875	12-17	4⅝	1¾	1¼
1½	0.875	18-34	4¾	1 11⁄16	1¼
1½	0.875	35 and over	4¾	1⅝	1¼
1¾	1.000	6	5	2 3⁄32	1½
1¾	1.000	7-8	5⅛	2 3⁄32	1½
1¾	1.000	9-11	5¼	2 1⁄16	1½
1¾	1.000	12-17	5⅜	2 1⁄32	1½
1¾	1.000	18-34	5½	1 31⁄32	1½
1¾	1.000	35 and over	5½	1⅞	1½
2	1.125	6	5⅜	2 13⁄32	1½
2	1.125	7-8	5½	2 13⁄32	1½
2	1.125	9-11	5⅝	2⅜	1½
2	1.125	12-17	5¾	2 5⁄16	1½
2	1.125	18-34	5⅞	2¼	1½
2	1.125	35 and over	5⅞	2 5⁄32	1½
2¼	1.406	6	5⅞	2 11⁄16	1½
2¼	1.406	7-8	6	2 11⁄16	1½
2¼	1.406	9-11	6¼	2 21⁄32	1½
2¼	1.406	12-17	6⅜	2 19⁄32	1½
2¼	1.406	18-34	6½	2 15⁄32	1½
2¼	1.406	35 and over	6½	2 13⁄32	1½
2½	1.563	6	6⅜	3	1¾
2½	1.563	7-8	6⅝	3	1¾
2½	1.563	9-11	6¾	2 15⁄16	1¾
2½	1.563	12-17	6⅞	2 29⁄32	1¾
2½	1.563	18-34	7	2¾	1¾
2½	1.563	35 and over	7⅛	2 11⁄16	1¾
3	1.875	6	7½	3 19⁄32	2
3	1.875	7-8	7¾	3 19⁄32	2
3	1.875	9-11	7⅞	3 17⁄32	2
3	1.875	12-17	8	3 15⁄32	2
3	1.875	18-34	8	3 11⁄32	2
3	1.875	35 and over	8¼	3 7⁄32	2

All dimensions are in inches.

All cutters are high-speed steel and are form relieved.

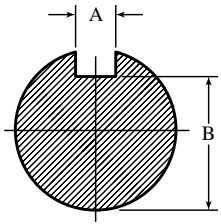
For keyway dimensions see page 894.

Tolerances: Outside diameter, $+1/16$, $-1/16$ inch; hole diameter, through 1-inch diameter, + 0.00075 inch, above 1-inch diameter and through 2-inch diameter, + 0.0010 inch.

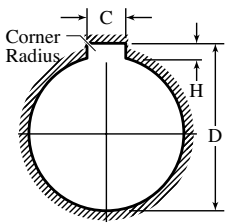
For tooth form, see ANSI/ASME sprocket tooth form table on page 2633.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

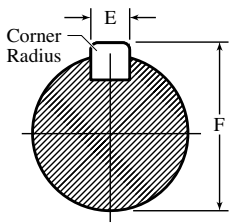
American National Standard Keys and Keyways for Milling Cutters and Arbors *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



ARBOR AND KEYSEAT



CUTTER HOLE AND KEYWAY



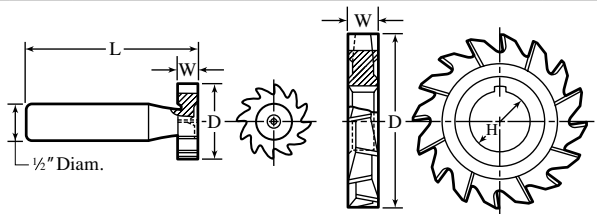
ARBOR AND KEY

Nom. Arbor and Cutter Hole Dia.	Nom. Size Key (Square)	Arbor and Keyseat				Hole and Keyway					Arbor and Key			
		A Max.	*A* Min.	*B* Max.	*B* Min.	*C* Max.	*C* Min.	*D*[a] Min.	*H* Nom.	Corner Radius	*E* Max.	*E* Min.	*F* Max.	*F* Min.
½	3⁄32	0.0947	0.0937	0.4531	0.4481	0.106	0.099	0.5578	3⁄64	0.020	0.0932	0.0927	0.5468	0.5408
⅝	⅛	0.1260	0.1250	0.5625	0.5575	0.137	0.130	0.6985	1⁄16	1⁄32	0.1245	0.1240	0.6875	0.6815
¾	⅛	0.1260	0.1250	0.6875	0.6825	0.137	0.130	0.8225	1⁄16	1⁄32	0.1245	0.1240	0.8125	0.8065
⅞	⅛	0.1260	0.1250	0.8125	0.8075	0.137	0.130	0.9475	1⁄16	1⁄32	0.1245	0.1240	0.9375	0.9315
1	¼	0.2510	0.2500	0.8438	0.8388	0.262	0.255	1.1040	3⁄32	3⁄64	0.2495	0.2490	1.0940	1.0880
1¼	5⁄16	0.3135	0.3125	1.0630	1.0580	0.343	0.318	1.3850	⅛	1⁄16	0.3120	0.3115	1.3750	1.3690
1½	⅜	0.3760	0.3750	1.2810	1.2760	0.410	0.385	1.6660	5⁄32	1⁄16	0.3745	0.3740	1.6560	1.6500
1¾	7⁄16	0.4385	0.4375	1.5000	1.4950	0.473	0.448	1.9480	3⁄16	1⁄16	0.4370	0.4365	1.9380	1.9320
2	½	0.5010	0.5000	1.6870	1.6820	0.535	0.510	2.1980	3⁄16	1⁄16	0.4995	0.4990	2.1880	2.1820
2½	⅝	0.6260	0.6250	2.0940	2.0890	0.660	0.635	2.7330	7⁄32	1⁄16	0.6245	0.6240	2.7180	2.7120
3	¾	0.7510	0.7500	2.5000	2.4950	0.785	0.760	3.2650	¼	3⁄32	0.7495	0.7490	3.2500	3.2440
3½	⅞	0.8760	0.8750	3.0000	2.9950	0.910	0.885	3.8900	⅜	3⁄32	0.8745	0.8740	3.8750	3.8690
4	1	1.0010	1.0000	3.3750	3.3700	1.035	1.010	4.3900	⅜	3⁄32	0.9995	0.9990	4.3750	4.3690
4½	1⅛	1.1260	1.1250	3.8130	3.8080	1.160	1.135	4.9530	7⁄16	⅛	1.1245	1.1240	4.9380	4.9320
5	1¼	1.2510	1.2500	4.2500	4.2450	1.285	1.260	5.5150	½	⅛	1.2495	1.2490	5.5000	5.4940

[a] *D* max. is 0.010 inch larger than *D* min.
All dimensions given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Woodruff Keyseat Cutters—Shank-Type Straight-Teeth and Arbor-Type Staggered-Teeth *ANSI/ASME B94.19-1997 (R2019)*



Shank-type Cutters

Cutter Number	Nom. Dia.of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Length Over-all, *L*	Cutter Number	Nom. Dia. of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Length Over-all, *L*	Cutter Number	Nom. Dia.of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Length Over-all, *L*
202	1/4	1/16	2 1/16	506	3/4	5/32	2 5/32	809	1 1/8	1/4	2 1/4
202 1/2	5/16	1/16	2 1/16	606	3/4	3/16	2 3/16	1009	1 1/8	5/16	2 5/16
302 1/2	5/16	3/32	2 3/32	806	3/4	1/4	2 1/4	610	1 1/4	3/16	2 3/16
203	3/8	1/16	2 1/16	507	7/8	5/32	2 5/32	710	1 1/4	7/32	2 7/32
303	3/8	3/32	2 3/32	607	7/8	3/16	2 3/16	810	1 1/4	1/4	2 1/4
403	3/8	1/8	2 1/8	707	7/8	7/32	2 7/32	1010	1 1/4	5/16	2 5/16
204	1/2	1/16	2 1/16	807	7/8	1/4	2 1/4	1210	1 1/4	3/8	2 3/8
304	1/2	3/32	2 3/32	608	1	3/16	2 3/16	811	1 3/8	1/4	2 1/4
404	1/2	1/8	2 1/8	708	1	7/32	2 7/32	1011	1 3/8	5/16	2 5/16
305	5/8	3/32	2 3/32	808	1	1/4	2 1/4	1211	1 3/8	3/8	2 3/8
405	5/8	1/8	2 1/8	1008	1	5/16	2 5/16	812	1 1/2	1/4	2 1/4
505	5/8	5/32	2 5/32	1208	1	3/8	2 3/8	1012	1 1/2	5/16	2 5/16
605	5/8	3/16	2 3/16	609	1 1/8	3/16	2 3/16	1212	1 1/2	3/8	2 3/8
406	3/4	1/8	2 1/8	709	1 1/8	7/32	2 7/32	…	…	…	…

Arbor-type Cutters

Cutter Number	Nom. Dia.of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Dia. of Hole, *H*	Cutter Number	Nom. Dia.of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Dia. of Hole, *H*	Cutter Number	Nom. Dia.of Cutter, *D*	Width of Face, *W*	Dia. of Hole, *H*
617	2 1/8	3/16	3/4	1022	2 3/4	5/16	1	1628	3 1/2	1/2	1
817	2 1/8	1/4	3/4	1222	2 3/4	3/8	1	1828	3 1/2	9/16	1
1017	2 1/8	5/16	3/4	1422	2 3/4	7/16	1	2028	3 1/2	5/8	1
1217	2 1/8	3/8	3/4	1622	2 3/4	1/2	1	2428	3 1/2	3/4	1
822	2 3/4	1/4	1	1228	3 1/2	3/8	1	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are given in inches. All cutters are high-speed steel.

Shank type cutters are standard with right-hand cut and straight teeth. All sizes have 1/2-inch diameter straight shank.

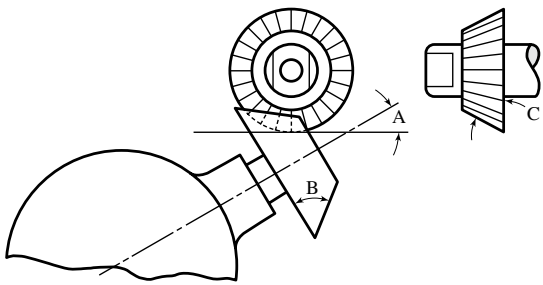
Arbor type cutters have staggered teeth.

For Woodruff key and key-slot dimensions, see pages 2557 through 2559.

Tolerances: Face with *W* for shank-type cutters: 1/16- to 5/32-inch face, + 0.0000, −0.0005; 3/16 to 7/32, − 0.0002, − 0.0007; 1/4, −0.0003, −0.0008; 5/16, −0.0004, −0.0009; 3/8, − 0.0005, −0.0010 inch. Face width *W* for arbor-type cutters; 3/16 inch face, −0.0002, −0.0007; 1/4, −0.0003, −0.0008; 5/16, −0.0004, −0.0009; 3/8 and over, −0.0005, −0.0010 inch. Hole size *H:* +0.00075, −0.0000 inch. Diameter *D* for shank type cutters: 1/4- through 3/4-inch diameter, +0.010, +0.015, 7/8 through 1 1/8, +0.012, +0.017; 1 1/4 through 1 1/2, +0.015, +0.020 inch. These tolerances include an allowance for sharpening. For arbor-type cutters, diameter *D* is furnished 1/32 inch larger than listed, and a tolerance of ±0.002 inch applies to the oversize diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Setting Angles for Milling Straight Teeth of Uniform Land Width in End Mills, Angular Cutters, and Taper Reamers.—The accompanying tables give setting angles for the dividing head when straight teeth, having a land of uniform width throughout their length, are to be milled using single-angle fluting cutters. These setting angles depend upon three factors: the number of teeth to be cut; the angle of the blank in which the teeth are to be cut; and the angle of the fluting cutter. Setting angles for various combinations of these three factors are given in the tables. For example, assume that 12 teeth are to be cut on the end of an end mill using a 60-degree cutter. By following the horizontal line from 12 teeth, read in the column under 60 degrees that the dividing head should be set to an angle of 70 degrees and 32 minutes.



The following formulas, which were used to compile these tables, may be used to calculate the setting-angles for combinations of number of teeth, blank angle, and cutter angle not covered by the tables. In these formulas, A = setting-angle for dividing head, B = angle of blank in which teeth are to be cut, C = angle of fluting cutter, N = number of teeth to be cut, and D and E are angles not shown on the accompanying diagram that are used only to simplify calculations.

$$\tan D = \cos(360°/N) \times \cot B \tag{1}$$

$$\sin E = \tan(360°/N) \times \cot C \times \sin D \tag{2}$$

$$\text{Setting-angle } A = D - E \tag{3}$$

Example: Suppose 9 teeth are to be cut in a 35-degree blank using a 55-degree single-angle fluting cutter. Then, $N = 9$, $B = 35°$, and $C = 55°$.

$$\tan D = \cos(360°/9) \times \cot 35° = 0.76604 \times 1.4281 = 1.0940; \text{ and } D = 47°34'$$

$$\sin E = \tan(360°/9) \times \cot 55° \times \sin 47°34' = 0.83910 \times 0.70021 \times 0.73806$$
$$= 0.43365; \text{ and } E = 25°42'$$

$$\text{Setting angle } A = 47°34' - 25°42' = 21°52'$$

For end mills and side mills, the angle of the blank B is 0 degrees, and the following simplified formula may be used to find the setting angle A:

$$\cos A = \tan\left(360°/N\right) \times \cot C \tag{4}$$

Example: If in the previous example the blank angle was 0 degrees,

$$\cos A = \tan(360°/9) \times \cot 55° = 0.83910 \times 0.70021 = 0.58755$$

and setting-angle $A = 54°1'$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Angles of Elevation for Milling Straight Teeth in 0-, 5-, 10-, 15-, 20-, 25-, 30-, and 35-degree Blanks Using Single-Angle Fluting Cutters

No. of Teeth	Angle of Fluting Cutter									
	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°
	0° Blank (End Mill)					5° Blank				
6	…	72° 13′	50° 55′	…	…	80° 4′	62° 34′	41° 41′	…	…
8	…	79 51	68 39	54° 44′	32° 57′	82 57	72 52	61 47	48° 0′	25° 40′
10	…	82 38	74 40	65 12	52 26	83 50	76 31	68 35	59 11	46 4
12	…	84 9	77 52	70 32	61 2	84 14	78 25	72 10	64 52	55 5
14	…	85 8	79 54	73 51	66 10	84 27	79 36	74 24	68 23	60 28
16	…	85 49	81 20	76 10	69 40	84 35	80 25	75 57	70 49	64 7
18	…	86 19	82 23	77 52	72 13	84 41	81 1	77 6	72 36	66 47
20	…	86 43	83 13	79 11	74 11	84 45	81 29	77 59	73 59	68 50
22	…	87 2	83 52	80 14	75 44	84 47	81 50	78 40	75 4	70 26
24	…	87 18	84 24	81 6	77 0	84 49	82 7	79 15	75 57	71 44
	10° Blank					15° Blank				
6	70° 34′	53° 50′	34° 5′	…	…	61° 49′	46° 12′	28° 4′	…	…
8	76 0	66 9	55 19	41° 56′	20° 39′	69 15	59 46	49 21	36° 34′	17° 34′
10	77 42	70 31	62 44	53 30	40 42	71 40	64 41	57 8	48 12	36 18
12	78 30	72 46	66 37	59 26	49 50	72 48	67 13	61 13	54 14	45 13
14	78 56	74 9	69 2	63 6	55 19	73 26	68 46	63 46	57 59	50 38
16	79 12	75 5	70 41	65 37	59 1	73 50	69 49	65 30	60 33	54 20
18	79 22	75 45	71 53	67 27	61 43	74 5	70 33	66 46	62 26	57 0
20	79 30	76 16	72 44	68 52	63 47	74 16	71 6	67 44	63 52	59 3
22	79 35	76 40	73 33	69 59	65 25	74 24	71 32	68 29	65 0	60 40
24	79 39	76 59	74 9	70 54	66 44	74 30	71 53	69 6	65 56	61 59
	20° Blank					25° Blank				
6	53° 57′	39° 39′	23° 18′	…	…	47° 0′	34° 6′	19° 33′	…	…
8	62 46	53 45	43 53	31° 53′	14° 31′	56 36	48 8	38 55	27° 47′	11° 33′
10	65 47	59 4	51 50	43 18	32 1	60 2	53 40	46 47	38 43	27 47
12	67 12	61 49	56 2	49 18	40 40	61 42	56 33	51 2	44 38	36 10
14	68 0	63 29	58 39	53 4	46 0	62 38	58 19	53 41	48 20	41 22
16	68 30	64 36	60 26	55 39	49 38	63 13	59 29	55 29	50 53	44 57
18	68 50	65 24	61 44	57 32	52 17	63 37	60 19	56 48	52 46	47 34
20	69 3	65 59	62 43	58 58	54 18	63 53	60 56	57 47	54 11	49 33
22	69 14	66 28	63 30	60 7	55 55	64 5	61 25	58 34	55 19	51 9
24	69 21	66 49	64 7	61 2	57 12	64 14	61 47	59 12	56 13	52 26
	30° Blank					35° Blank				
6	40° 54′	29° 22′	16° 32′	…	…	35° 32′	25° 19′	14° 3′	…	…
8	50 46	42 55	34 24	24° 12′	10° 14′	45 17	38 5	30 18	21° 4′	8° 41′
10	54 29	48 30	42 3	34 31	24 44	49 7	43 33	37 35	30 38	21 40
12	56 18	51 26	46 14	40 12	32 32	51 3	46 30	41 39	36 2	28 55
14	57 21	53 15	48 52	43 49	37 27	52 9	48 19	44 12	39 28	33 33
16	58 0	54 27	50 39	46 19	40 52	52 50	49 20	45 56	41 51	36 45
18	58 26	55 18	51 57	48 7	43 20	53 18	50 21	47 12	43 36	39 8
20	58 44	55 55	52 56	49 30	45 15	53 38	50 59	48 10	44 57	40 57
22	58 57	56 24	53 42	50 36	46 46	53 53	51 29	48 56	46 1	42 24
24	59 8	56 48	54 20	51 30	48 0	54 4	51 53	49 32	46 52	43 35

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Angles of Elevation for Milling Straight Teeth in 40-, 45-, 50-, 55-, 60-, 65-, 70-, and 75-degree Blanks Using Single-Angle Fluting Cutters

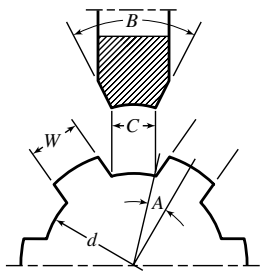
No. of Teeth	Angle of Fluting Cutter									
	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°
	40° Blank					45° Blank				
6	30° 48′	21° 48′	11° 58′	…	…	26° 34′	18° 43′	10° 11′	…	…
8	40 7	33 36	26 33	18° 16′	7° 23′	35 16	29 25	23 8	15° 48′	5° 58′
10	43 57	38 51	33 32	27 3	18 55	38 58	34 21	29 24	23 40	16 10
12	45 54	41 43	37 14	32 3	25 33	40 54	37 5	33 0	28 18	22 13
14	47 3	43 29	39 41	35 19	29 51	42 1	38 46	35 17	31 18	26 9
16	47 45	44 39	41 21	37 33	32 50	42 44	39 54	36 52	33 24	28 57
18	48 14	45 29	42 34	39 13	35 5	43 13	40 42	38 1	34 56	30 1
20	48 35	46 7	43 30	40 30	36 47	43 34	41 18	38 53	36 8	32 37
22	48 50	46 36	44 13	41 30	38 8	43 49	41 46	39 34	37 5	34 53
24	49 1	46 58	44 48	42 19	39 15	44 0	42 7	40 7	37 50	35 55
	50° Blank					55° Blank				
6	22° 45′	15° 58′	8° 38′	…	…	19° 17′	13° 30′	7° 15′	…	…
8	30 41	25 31	19 59	13° 33′	5° 20′	26 21	21 52	17 3	11° 30′	4° 17′
10	34 10	30 2	25 39	20 32	14 9	29 32	25 55	22 3	17 36	11 52
12	36 0	32 34	28 53	24 42	19 27	31 14	28 12	24 59	21 17	16 32
14	37 5	34 9	31 1	27 26	22 58	32 15	29 39	26 53	23 43	19 40
16	37 47	35 13	32 29	29 22	25 30	32 54	30 38	28 12	25 26	21 54
18	38 15	35 58	33 33	30 46	27 21	33 21	31 20	29 10	26 43	23 35
20	38 35	36 32	34 21	31 52	28 47	33 40	31 51	29 54	27 42	24 53
22	38 50	36 58	34 59	32 44	29 57	33 54	32 15	30 29	28 28	25 55
24	39 1	37 19	35 30	33 25	30 52	34 5	32 34	30 57	29 7	26 46
	60° Blank					65° Blank				
6	16° 6′	11° 12′	6° 2′	…	…	13° 7′	9° 8′	4° 53′	…	…
8	22 13	18 24	14 19	9° 37′	3° 44′	18 15	15 6	11 42	7° 50′	3° 1′
10	25 2	21 56	18 37	14 49	10 5	20 40	18 4	15 19	12 9	8 15
12	26 34	23 57	21 10	17 59	14 13	21 59	19 48	17 28	14 49	11 32
14	27 29	25 14	22 51	20 6	16 44	22 48	20 55	18 54	16 37	13 48
16	28 5	26 7	24 1	21 37	18 40	23 18	21 39	19 53	17 53	15 24
18	28 29	26 44	24 52	22 44	20 6	23 40	22 11	20 37	18 50	16 37
20	28 46	27 11	25 30	23 35	21 14	23 55	22 35	21 10	19 33	17 34
22	29 0	27 34	26 2	24 17	22 8	24 6	22 53	21 36	20 8	18 20
24	29 9	27 50	26 26	24 50	22 52	24 15	23 8	21 57	20 36	18 57
	70° Blank					75° Blank				
6	10° 18′	7° 9′	3° 48′	…	…	7° 38′	5° 19′	2° 50′	…	…
8	14 26	11 55	9 14	6° 9′	2° 21′	10 44	8 51	6 51	4° 34′	1° 45′
10	16 25	14 21	12 8	9 37	6 30	12 14	10 40	9 1	7 8	4 49
12	17 30	15 45	13 53	11 45	9 8	13 4	11 45	10 21	8 45	6 47
14	18 9	16 38	15 1	13 11	10 55	13 34	12 26	11 13	9 50	8 7
16	18 35	17 15	15 50	14 13	12 13	13 54	12 54	11 50	10 37	9 7
18	18 53	17 42	16 26	14 59	13 13	14 8	13 14	12 17	11 12	9 51
20	19 6	18 1	16 53	15 35	13 59	14 18	13 29	12 38	11 39	10 27
22	19 15	18 16	17 15	16 3	14 35	14 25	13 41	12 53	12 0	10 54
24	19 22	18 29	17 33	16 25	15 5	14 31	13 50	13 7	12 18	11 18

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Angles of Elevation for Milling Straight Teeth in 80- and 85-degree Blanks Using Single-Angle Fluting Cutters

No.of Teeth	Angle of Fluting Cutter									
	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°	90°	80°	70°	60°	50°
	80° Blank					85° Blank				
6	5° 2′	3° 30′	1° 52′	…	…	2° 30′	1° 44′	0° 55′	…	…
8	7 6	5 51	4 31	3° 2′	1° 8′	3 32	2 55	2 15	1° 29′	0° 34′
10	8 7	7 5	5 59	4 44	3 11	4 3	3 32	2 59	2 21	1 35
12	8 41	7 48	6 52	5 48	4 29	4 20	3 53	3 25	2 53	2 15
14	9 2	8 16	7 28	6 32	5 24	4 30	4 7	3 43	3 15	2 42
16	9 15	8 35	7 51	7 3	6 3	4 37	4 17	3 56	3 30	3 1
18	9 24	8 48	8 10	7 26	6 33	4 42	4 24	4 5	3 43	3 16
20	9 31	8 58	8 24	7 44	6 56	4 46	4 29	4 12	3 52	3 28
22	9 36	9 6	8 35	7 59	7 15	4 48	4 33	4 18	3 59	3 37
24	9 40	9 13	8 43	8 11	7 30	4 50	4 36	4 22	4 5	3 45

Spline-Shaft Milling Cutter.—The most efficient method of forming splines on shafts is by hobbing, but special milling cutters may also be used. Since the cutter forms the space between adjacent splines, it must be made to suit the number of splines and the root diameter of the shaft. The cutter angle B equals 360 degrees divided by the number of splines. The following formulas are for determining the chordal width C at the root of the splines or the chordal width across the concave edge of the cutter. In these formulas, A = angle between center line of spline and a radial line passing through the intersection of the root circle and one side of the spline; W = width of spline; d = root diameter of splined shaft; C = chordal width at root circle between adjacent splines; N = number of splines.



$$\sin A = \frac{W}{d} \qquad C = d \times \sin\left(\frac{180}{N} - A\right)$$

Splines of involute form are often used in preference to the straight-sided type. Dimensions of the American Standard involute splines and hobs are given in the section on splines.

Cutter Grinding

Wheels for Sharpening Milling Cutters.—Milling cutters may be sharpened by using either the periphery of a disk wheel or the face of a cup wheel. The latter grinds the lands of the teeth flat, whereas the periphery of a disk wheel leaves the teeth slightly concave back of the cutting edges. The concavity produced by disk wheels reduces the effective clearance angle on the teeth, the effect being more pronounced for wheels of small diameter than for wheels of large diameter. For this reason, large diameter wheels are preferred when sharpening milling cutters with disk type wheels. Irrespective of what type of wheel is used to sharpen a milling cutter, any burrs resulting from grinding should be carefully removed by a hand stoning operation. Stoning also helps to reduce the roughness

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of grinding marks and improves the quality of the finish produced on the surface being machined. Unless done very carefully, hand stoning may dull the cutting edge. Stoning may be avoided and a sharper cutting edge produced if the wheel rotates toward the cutting edge, which requires that the operator maintain contact between the tool and the rest while the wheel rotation is trying to move the tool away from the rest. Though slightly more difficult, this method will eliminate the burr.

Specifications of Grinding Wheels for Sharpening Milling Cutters

Cutter Material	Operation	Grinding Wheel			
		Abrasive Material	Grain Size	Grade	Bond
Carbon Tool Steel	Roughing Finishing	Aluminum Oxide	46-60 100	K H	Vitrified Vitrified
High-Speed Steel:					
18-4-1 {	Roughing Finishing	Aluminum Oxide	60 100	K,H H	Vitrified Vitrified
18-4-2 {	Roughing Finishing		80 100	F,G,H H	Vitrified Vitrified
Cast Nonferrous Tool Material	Roughing Finishing	Aluminum Oxide	46 100-120	H,K,L,N H	Vitrified Vitrified
Sintered Carbide	Roughing after Brazing	Silicon Carbide	60	G	Vitrified
	Roughing	Diamond	100	[a]	Resinoid
	Finishing	Diamond	Up to 500	[a]	Resinoid
Carbon Tool Steel and High-Speed Steel[b]	Roughing Finishing	Cubic Boron Nitride	80-100 100-120	R,P S,T	Resinoid Resinoid

[a] Not indicated in diamond wheel markings.

[b] For hardnesses above 56 RC on the Rockwell C scale.

Wheel Speeds and Feeds for Sharpening Milling Cutters.—Relatively low cutting speeds should be used when sharpening milling cutters to avoid tempering and heat checking. Dry grinding is recommended in all cases except when diamond wheels are employed. The surface speed of grinding wheels should be in the range of 4500–6500 ft/min (22.8 to 33 m/s) for grinding milling cutters of high-speed steel or cast nonferrous tool material. For sintered carbide cutters, 5000–5500 ft/min (25.4 to 27.9 m/s) should be used.

The maximum stock removed per pass of the grinding wheel should not exceed about 0.0004 inch (0.010 mm) for sintered carbide cutters; 0.003 inch (0.076 mm) for large high-speed steel and cast nonferrous tool material cutters; and 0.0015 inch (0.038 mm) for narrow saws and slotting cutters of high-speed steel or cast nonferrous tool material. The stock removed per pass of the wheel may be increased for backing-off operations such as the grinding of secondary clearance behind the teeth since there is usually a sufficient body of metal to carry off the heat.

Clearance Angles for Milling Cutter Teeth.—The clearance angle provided on the cutting edges of milling cutters has an important bearing on cutter performance, cutting efficiency, and cutter life between sharpenings. It is desirable in all cases to use a clearance angle as small as possible so as to leave more metal back of the cutting edges for better heat dissipation and to provide maximum support. Excessive clearance angles not only weaken the cutting edges, but also increase the likelihood of "chatter," which will result in poor finish on the machined surface and reduce the life of the cutter. According to The Cincinnati Milling Machine Co., milling cutters used for general purpose work and having diameters from $\frac{1}{8}$ to 3 inches (3.18–76.2 mm) should have clearance angles from 13 to 5 degrees, respectively, decreasing proportionately as the diameter increases. General

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

purpose cutters over 3 inches (76.2 mm) in diameter should be provided with a clearance angle of 4 to 5 degrees. The land width is usually $^1/_{64}$, $^1/_{32}$, and $^1/_{16}$ inch (0.4, 0.8, and 1.6 mm), respectively, for small, medium, and large cutters.

The primary clearance or relief angle for best results varies according to the material being milled, as follows: low-carbon, high-carbon, and alloy steels, 3 to 5 degrees; cast iron and medium and hard bronze, 4 to 7 degrees; brass, soft bronze, aluminum, magnesium, plastics, etc., 10 to 12 degrees. When milling cutters are resharpened, it is customary to grind a secondary clearance angle of 3 to 5 degrees behind the primary clearance angle to reduce the land width to its original value and thus avoid interference with the surface to be milled. The following is a general formula for plain milling cutters, face mills, and form relieved cutters, which gives the clearance angle C, in degrees, necessitated by the feed per revolution F, in inches; the width of land L, in inches; the depth of cut d, in inches (mm); the cutter diameter D, in inches; and the Brinell Hardness Number B of the work being cut:

$$C = \frac{45860}{DB}\left(1.5L + \frac{F}{\pi D}\sqrt{d(D-d)}\right)$$

Rake Angles for Milling Cutters.—In peripheral milling cutters, the rake angle is generally defined as the angle in degrees that the tooth face deviates from a radial line to the cutting edge. In face milling cutters, the teeth are inclined with respect to both the radial and axial lines. These angles are called *radial* and *axial* rake, respectively. The radial and axial rake angles may be positive, zero, or negative.

Positive rake angles should be used whenever possible for all types of high-speed steel milling cutters. For sintered carbide-tipped cutters, zero and negative rake angles are frequently employed to provide more material back of the cutting edge to resist shock loads.

Rake Angles for High-Speed Steel Cutters: Positive rake angles of 10 to 15 degrees are satisfactory for milling steels of various compositions with plain milling cutters. For softer materials, such as magnesium and aluminum alloys, the rake angle may be 25 degrees or more. Metal slitting saws for cutting alloy steel usually have rake angles from 5 to 10 degrees, whereas zero and sometimes negative rake angles are used for saws to cut copper and other soft nonferrous metals to reduce the tendency to "hog in." Form relieved cutters usually have rake angles of 0, 5, or 10 degrees. Commercial face milling cutters usually have 10 degrees positive radial and axial rake angles for general use in milling cast iron, forged and alloy steel, brass, and bronze. For milling castings and forgings of magnesium and free-cutting aluminum and their alloys, the rake angles may be increased to 25 degrees positive or more, depending on the operating conditions; a smaller rake angle is used for abrasive or difficult to machine aluminum alloys.

Cast Nonferrous Tool Material Milling Cutters: Positive rake angles are generally provided on milling cutters using cast nonferrous tool materials, although negative rake angles may be used advantageously for some operations such as those where shock loads are encountered or where it is necessary to eliminate vibration when milling thin sections.

Sintered Carbide Milling Cutters: Peripheral milling cutters, such as slab mills, slotting cutters, saws, etc., tipped with sintered carbide, generally have negative radial rake angles of 5 degrees for soft low-carbon steel and 10 degrees or more for alloy steels. Positive axial rake angles of 5 and 10 degrees, respectively, may be provided, and for slotting saws and cutters, 0 degree axial rake may be used. On soft materials, such as free-cutting aluminum alloys, positive rake angles of 10 to so degrees are used. For milling abrasive or difficult to machine aluminum alloys, small positive or even negative rake angles are used.

Eccentric-Type Radial Relief.—When the radial relief angles on peripheral teeth of milling cutters are ground with a disc-type grinding wheel in the conventional manner, the ground surfaces on the lands are slightly concave, conforming approximately to the radius of the wheel. A flat land is produced when the radial relief angle is ground with a cup wheel. Another entirely different method of grinding the radial angle is by the eccentric method, which produces a slightly convex surface on the land. If the radial relief angle at

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the cutting edge is equal for all of the three types of land mentioned, it will be found that the land with the eccentric relief will drop away from the cutting edge a somewhat greater distance for a given distance around the land than will the others. This is evident from a study of Table 1, *Indicator Drops for Checking the Radial Relief Angle on Peripheral Teeth*. This feature is an advantage of the eccentric-type relief, which also produces an excellent finish.

Table 1. Indicator Drops for Checking the Radial Relief Angle on Peripheral Teeth

Cutter Diameter, Inch	Rec. Range of Radial Relief Angles, Degrees	Checking Distance, Inch	Indicator Drops, Inches				Rec. Max. Primary Land Width, Inch
			For Flat and Concave Relief		For Eccentric Relief		
			Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	
1/16	20-25	.005	.0014	.0019	.0020	.0026	.007
3/32	16-20	.005	.0012	.0015	.0015	.0019	.007
1/8	15-19	.010	.0018	.0026	.0028	.0037	.015
5/32	13-17	.010	.0017	.0024	.0024	.0032	.015
3/16	12-16	.010	.0016	.0023	.0022	.0030	.015
7/32	11-15	.010	.0015	.0022	.0020	.0028	.015
1/4	10-14	.015	.0017	.0028	.0027	.0039	.020
9/32	10-14	.015	.0018	.0029	.0027	.0039	.020
5/16	10-13	.015	.0019	.0027	.0027	.0035	.020
11/32	10-13	.015	.0020	.0028	.0027	.0035	.020
3/8	10-13	.015	.0020	.0029	.0027	.0035	.020
13/32	9-12	.020	.0022	.0032	.0032	.0044	.025
7/16	9-12	.020	.0022	.0033	.0032	.0043	.025
15/32	9-12	.020	.0023	.0034	.0032	.0043	.025
1/2	9-12	.020	.0024	.0034	.0032	.0043	.025
9/16	9-12	.020	.0024	.0035	.0032	.0043	.025
5/8	8-11	.020	.0022	.0032	.0028	.0039	.025
11/16	8-11	.030	.0029	.0045	.0043	.0059	.035
3/4	8-11	.030	.0030	.0046	.0043	.0059	.035
13/16	8-11	.030	.0031	.0047	.0043	.0059	.035
7/8	8-11	.030	.0032	.0048	.0043	.0059	.035
15/16	7-10	.030	.0027	.0043	.0037	.0054	.035
1	7-10	.030	.0028	.0044	.0037	.0054	.035
1 1/8	7-10	.030	.0029	.0045	.0037	.0053	.035
1 1/4	6-9	.030	.0024	.0040	.0032	.0048	.035
1 3/8	6-9	.030	.0025	.0041	.0032	.0048	.035
1 1/2	6-9	.030	.0026	.0041	.0032	.0048	.035
1 5/8	6-9	.030	.0026	.0042	.0032	.0048	.035
1 3/4	6-9	.030	.0026	.0042	.0032	.0048	.035
1 7/8	6-9	.030	.0027	.0043	.0032	.0048	.035
2	6-9	.030	.0027	.0043	.0032	.0048	.035
2 1/4	5-8	.030	.0022	.0038	.0026	.0042	.040
2 1/2	5-8	.030	.0023	.0039	.0026	.0042	.040
2 3/4	5-8	.030	.0023	.0039	.0026	.0042	.040
3	5-8	.030	.0023	.0039	.0026	.0042	.040
3 1/2	5-8	.030	.0024	.0040	.0026	.0042	.047
4	5-8	.030	.0024	.0040	.0026	.0042	.047
5	4-7	.030	.0019	.0035	.0021	.0037	.047
6	4-7	.030	.0019	.0035	.0021	.0037	.047
7	4-7	.030	.0020	.0036	.0021	.0037	.060
8	4-7	.030	.0020	.0036	.0021	.0037	.060
10	4-7	.030	.0020	.0036	.0021	.0037	.060
12	4-7	.030	.0020	.0036	.0021	.0037	.060

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The setup for grinding an eccentric relief is shown in Fig. 1. In this setup, the point of contact between the cutter and the tooth rest must be in the same plane as the centers, or axes, of the grinding wheel and the cutter. A wide face is used on the grinding wheel, which is trued and dressed at an angle with respect to the axis of the cutter. An alternate method is to tilt the wheel at this angle. Then as the cutter is traversed and rotated past the grinding wheel while in contact with the tooth rest, an eccentric relief will be generated by the angular face of the wheel. This type of relief can only be ground on the peripheral teeth on milling cutters having helical flutes because the combination of the angular wheel face and the twisting motion of the cutter is required to generate the eccentric relief. Therefore, an eccentric relief cannot be ground on the peripheral teeth of straight-fluted cutters.

Table 2 is a table of wheel angles for grinding an eccentric relief for different combinations of relief angles and helix angles. When angles are required that cannot be found in this table, the wheel angle, W, can be calculated by using the following formula, in which R is the radial relief angle and H is the helix angle of the flutes on the cutter.

$$\tan W = \tan R \times \tan H$$

Table 2. Grinding Wheel Angles for Grinding Eccentric-Type Radial Relief Angle

Radial Relief Angle, R, Degrees	Helix Angle of Cutter Flutes, H, Degrees							
	12	18	20	30	40	45	50	52
	Wheel Angle, W, Degrees							
1	0°13′	0°19′	0°22′	0°35′	0°50′	1°00′	1°12′	1°17′
2	0°26′	0°39′	0°44′	1°09′	1°41′	2°00′	2°23′	2°34′
3	0°38′	0°59′	1°06′	1°44′	2°31′	3°00′	3°34′	3°50′
4	0°51′	1°18′	1°27′	2°19′	3°21′	4°00′	4°46′	5°07′
5	1°04′	1°38′	1°49′	2°53′	4°12′	5°00′	5°57′	6°23′
6	1°17′	1°57′	2°11′	3°28′	5°02′	6°00′	7°08′	7°40′
7	1°30′	2°17′	2°34′	4°03′	5°53′	7°00′	8°19′	8°56′
8	1°43′	2°37′	2°56′	4°38′	6°44′	8°00′	9°30′	10°12′
9	1°56′	2°57′	3°18′	5°13′	7°34′	9°00′	10°41′	11°28′
10	2°09′	3°17′	3°40′	5°49′	8°25′	10°00′	11°52′	12°43′
11	2°22′	3°37′	4°03′	6°24′	9°16′	11°00′	13°03′	13°58′
12	2°35′	3°57′	4°25′	7°00′	10°07′	12°00′	14°13′	15°13′
13	2°49′	4°17′	4°48′	7°36′	10°58′	13°00′	15°23′	16°28′
14	3°02′	4°38′	5°11′	8°11′	11°49′	14°00′	16°33′	17°42′
15	3°16′	4°59′	5°34′	8°48′	12°40′	15°00′	17°43′	18°56′
16	3°29′	5°19′	5°57′	9°24′	13°32′	16°00′	18°52′	20°09′
17	3°43′	5°40′	6°21′	10°01′	14°23′	17°00′	20°01′	21°22′
18	3°57′	6°02′	6°45′	10°37′	15°15′	18°00′	21°10′	22°35′
19	4°11′	6°23′	7°09′	11°15′	16°07′	19°00′	22°19′	23°47′
20	4°25′	6°45′	7°33′	11°52′	16°59′	20°00′	23°27′	24°59′
21	4°40′	7°07′	7°57′	12°30′	17°51′	21°00′	24°35′	26°10′
22	4°55′	7°29′	8°22′	13°08′	18°44′	22°00′	25°43′	27°21′
23	5°09′	7°51′	8°47′	13°46′	19°36′	23°00′	26°50′	28°31′
24	5°24′	8°14′	9°12′	14°25′	20°29′	24°00′	27°57′	29°41′
25	5°40′	8°37′	9°38′	15°04′	21°22′	25°00′	29°04′	30°50′

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Indicator Drop Method of Checking Relief and Rake Angles.—The most convenient and inexpensive method of checking the relief and rake angles on milling cutters is by the indicator drop method. Three tables, Table 1, Table 3 and Table 4, of indicator drops are provided in this section for checking radial relief angles on the peripheral teeth, relief angles on side and end teeth, and rake angles on the tooth faces.

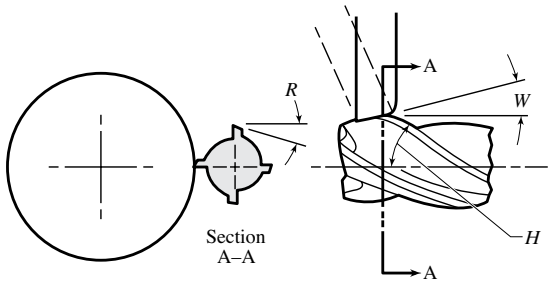


Fig. 1. Setup for Grinding Eccentric-Type Radial Relief Angle

Table 3. Indicator Drops for Checking Relief Angles on Side Teeth and End Teeth

Checking Distance, Inch	Given Relief Angle								
	1°	2°	3°	4°	5°	6°	7°	8°	9°
	Indicator Drop, inch								
.005	.00009	.00017	.00026	.00035	.0004	.0005	.0006	.0007	.0008
.010	.00017	.00035	.00052	.0007	.0009	.0011	.0012	.0014	.0016
.015	.00026	.0005	.00079	.0010	.0013	.0016	.0018	.0021	.0024
.031	.00054	.0011	.0016	.0022	.0027	.0033	.0038	.0044	.0049
.047	.00082	.0016	.0025	.0033	.0041	.0049	.0058	.0066	.0074
.062	.00108	.0022	.0032	.0043	.0054	.0065	.0076	.0087	.0098

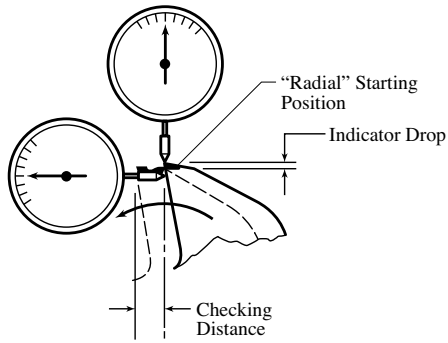


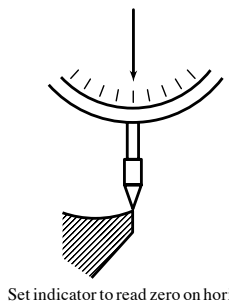
Fig. 2. Setup for Checking the Radial Relief Angle by Indicator Drop Method

The setup for checking the radial relief angle is illustrated in Fig. 2. Two dial test indicators are required, one of which should have a sharp-pointed contact point. This indicator is positioned so that the axis of its spindle is vertical, passing through the axis of the cutter. The cutter may be held by its shank in the spindle of a tool and cutter grinder workhead, or

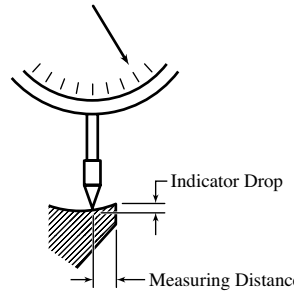
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

between centers while mounted on a mandrel. The cutter is rotated to the position where the vertical indicator contacts a cutting edge. The second indicator is positioned with its spindle axis horizontal and with the contact point touching the tool face just below the cutting edge. With both indicators adjusted to read zero, the cutter is rotated a distance equal to the checking distance, as determined by the reading on the second indicator. Then the indicator drop is read on the vertical indicator and checked against the values in the tables. The indicator drops for radial relief angles ground by a disc-type grinding wheel and those ground with a cup wheel are so nearly equal that the values are listed together; values for the eccentric-type relief are listed separately, since they are larger. A similar procedure is used to check the relief angles on the side and end teeth of milling cutters; however, only one indicator is used. Also, instead of rotating the cutter, the indicator or the cutter must be moved a distance equal to the checking distance in a straight line.

Table 4. Indicator Drops for Checking Rake Angles on Milling Cutter Face



Set indicator to read zero on horizontal plane passing through cutter axis. Zero cutting edge against indicator.



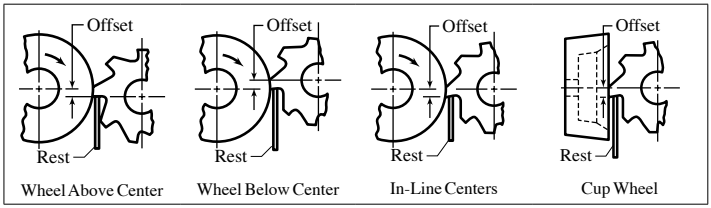
Move cutter or indicator measuring distance.

Rate Angle, Deg.	Measuring Distance, inch				Rate Angle, Deg.	Measuring Distance, inch			
	.031	.062	.094	.125		.031	.062	.094	.125
	Indicator Drop, inch					Indicator Drop, inch			
1	.0005	.0011	.0016	.0022	11	.0060	.0121	.0183	.0243
2	.0011	.0022	.0033	.0044	12	.0066	.0132	.0200	.0266
3	.0016	.0032	.0049	.0066	13	.0072	.0143	.0217	.0289
4	.0022	.0043	.0066	.0087	14	.0077	.0155	.0234	.0312
5	.0027	.0054	.0082	.0109	15	.0083	.0166	.0252	.0335
6	.0033	.0065	.0099	.0131	16	.0089	.0178	.0270	.0358
7	.0038	.0076	.0115	.0153	17	.0095	.0190	.0287	.0382
8	.0044	.0087	.0132	.0176	18	.0101	.0201	.0305	.0406
9	.0049	.0098	.0149	.0198	19	.0107	.0213	.0324	.0430
10	.0055	.0109	.0166	.0220	20	.0113	.0226	.0342	.0455

Relieving Attachments.—A relieving attachment is a device applied to lathes (especially those used in tool-rooms) for imparting a reciprocating motion to the tool-slide and tool, in order to provide relief or clearance for the cutting edges of milling cutters, taps, hobs, etc. For example, in making a milling cutter of the formed type, such as is used for cutting gears, it is essential to provide clearance for the teeth and so form them that they may be ground repeatedly without changing the contour or shape of the cutting edge. This may be accomplished by using a relieving attachment. The tool for "backing off" or giving clearance to the teeth corresponds to the shape required, and it is given a certain amount of reciprocating movement, so that it forms a surface back of each cutting edge, which is of uniform cross section on a radial plane but eccentric to the axis of the cutter sufficiently to provide the necessary clearance for the cutting edges.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Various Set-ups Used in Grinding the Clearance Angle on Milling Cutter Teeth



Distance to Set Center of Wheel Above the Cutter Center (Disk Wheel)

Dia. of Wheel, Inches	Desired Clearance Angle, Degrees											
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	[a]Distance to Offset Wheel Center Above Cutter Center, Inches											
3	.026	.052	.079	.105	.131	.157	.183	.209	.235	.260	.286	.312
4	.035	.070	.105	.140	.174	.209	.244	.278	.313	.347	.382	.416
5	.044	.087	.131	.174	.218	.261	.305	.348	.391	.434	.477	.520
6	.052	.105	.157	.209	.261	.314	.366	.417	.469	.521	.572	.624
7	.061	.122	.183	.244	.305	.366	.427	.487	.547	.608	.668	.728
8	.070	.140	.209	.279	.349	.418	.488	.557	.626	.695	.763	.832
9	.079	.157	.236	.314	.392	.470	.548	.626	.704	.781	.859	.936
10	.087	.175	.262	.349	.436	.523	.609	.696	.782	.868	.954	1.040

[a] Calculated from the formula: Offset = Wheel Diameter × ½ × Sine of Clearance Angle.

Distance to Set Center of Wheel Below the Cutter Center (Disk Wheel)

Dia. of Cutter, Inches	Desired Clearance Angle, Degrees											
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	[a]Distance to Offset Wheel Center Below Cutter Center, Inches											
2	.017	.035	.052	.070	.087	.105	.122	.139	.156	.174	.191	.208
3	.026	.052	.079	.105	.131	.157	.183	.209	.235	.260	.286	.312
4	.035	.070	.105	.140	.174	.209	.244	.278	.313	.347	.382	.416
5	.044	.087	.131	.174	.218	.261	.305	.348	.391	.434	.477	.520
6	.052	.105	.157	.209	.261	.314	.366	.417	.469	.521	.572	.624
7	.061	.122	.183	.244	.305	.366	.427	.487	.547	.608	.668	.728
8	.070	.140	.209	.279	.349	.418	.488	.557	.626	.695	.763	.832
9	.079	.157	.236	.314	.392	.470	.548	.626	.704	.781	.859	.936
10	.087	.175	.262	.349	.436	.523	.609	.696	.782	.868	.954	1.040

[a] Calculated from the formula: Offset = Cutter Diameter × ½ × Sine of Clearance Angle.

Distance to Set Tooth Rest Below Center Line of Wheel and Cutter.—When the clearance angle is ground with a disc-type wheel by keeping the center line of the wheel in line with the center line of the cutter, the tooth rest should be lowered by an amount given by the following formula:

$$\text{Offset} = \frac{\text{Wheel Diam.} \times \text{Cutter Diam.} \times \text{Sine of One-half the Clearance Angle}}{\text{Wheel Diam.} + \text{Cutter Diam.}}$$

Distance to Set Tooth Rest Below Cutter Center When Cup Wheel is Used.—When the clearance is ground with a cup wheel, the tooth rest is set below the center of the cutter the same amount as given in the table for *Distance to Set Center of Wheel Below the Cutter Center (Disk Wheel)*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Counter Milling.—Changing the direction of a linear milling operation by a specific angle requires a linear offset before changing the angle of cut. This compensates for the radius of the milling cutters, as illustrated in Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b.

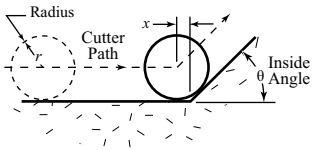


Fig. 1a. Inside Milling

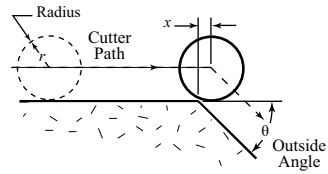


Fig. 1b. Outside Milling

For inside cuts the offset is subtracted from the point at which the cutting direction changes (Fig. 1a), and for outside cuts the offset is added to the point at which the cutting direction changes (Fig. 1b). The formula for the offset is

$$x = rM$$

where x = offset distance; r = radius of the milling cutter; and, M = the multiplication factor ($M = \tan \frac{\theta}{2}$). The value of M for certain angles can be found in Table 5.

Table 5. Offset Multiplication Factors

Deg°	*M*	Deg°	*M*	Deg°	*M*	Deg°	*M*	Deg°	*M*
1°	0.00873	19°	0.16734	37°	0.33460	55°	0.52057	73°	0.73996
2°	0.01746	20°	0.17633	38°	0.34433	56°	0.53171	74°	0.75355
3°	0.02619	21°	0.18534	39°	0.35412	57°	0.54296	75°	0.76733
4°	0.03492	22°	0.19438	40°	0.36397	58°	0.55431	76°	0.78129
5°	0.04366	23°	0.20345	41°	0.37388	59°	0.56577	77°	0.79544
6°	0.05241	24°	0.21256	42°	0.38386	60°	0.57735	78°	0.80978
7°	0.06116	25°	0.22169	43°	0.39391	61°	0.58905	79°	0.82434
8°	0.06993	26°	0.23087	44°	0.40403	62°	0.60086	80°	0.83910
9°	0.07870	27°	0.24008	45°	0.41421	63°	0.61280	81°	0.85408
10°	0.08749	28°	0.24933	46°	0.42447	64°	0.62487	82°	0.86929
11°	0.09629	29°	0.25862	47°	0.43481	65°	0.63707	83°	0.88473
12°	0.10510	30°	0.26795	48°	0.44523	66°	0.64941	84°	0.90040
13°	0.11394	31°	0.27732	49°	0.45573	67°	0.66189	85°	0.91633
14°	0.12278	32°	0.28675	50°	0.46631	68°	0.67451	86°	0.93252
15°	0.13165	33°	0.29621	51°	0.47698	69°	0.68728	87°	0.94896
16°	0.14054	34°	0.30573	52°	0.48773	70°	0.70021	88°	0.96569
17°	0.14945	35°	0.31530	53°	0.49858	71°	0.71329	89°	0.98270
18°	0.15838	36°	0.32492	54°	0.50953	72°	0.72654	90°	1.00000

Multiply factor M by the tool radius r to determine the offset dimension

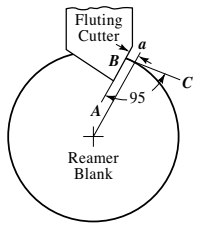
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

REAMERS

Hand Reamers.—Hand reamers are made with both straight and helical flutes. Helical flutes provide a shearing cut and are especially useful in reaming holes having keyways or grooves, as these are bridged over by the helical flutes, thus preventing binding or chattering. Hand reamers are made in both solid and expansion forms. The American standard dimensions for solid forms are given in the accompanying table. The expansion type is useful whenever, in connection with repair or other work, it is necessary to enlarge a reamed hole by a few thousandths of an inch. The expansion form is split through the fluted section and a slight amount of expansion is obtained by screwing in a tapering plug. The diameter increase may vary from 0.005 to 0.008 inch (0.127–0.2 mm) for reamers up to about 1 inch (25.4 mm) diameter and from 0.010 to 0.012 inch (0.25–0.3 mm) for diameters between 1 and 2 inches (25.4 and 50.8 mm). Hand reamers are tapered slightly on the end to facilitate starting them properly. The actual diameter of the shanks of commercial reamers may be from 0.002 to 0.005 inch (0.05–0.13 mm) under the reamer size. That part of the shank that is squared should be turned smaller in diameter than the shank itself, so that, when applying a wrench, no burr may be raised that may mar the reamed hole if the reamer is passed clear through it.

When fluting reamers, the cutter is so set with relation to the center of the reamer blank that the tooth gets a slight negative rake; that is, the cutter should be set *ahead* of the center, as shown in the illustration accompanying the table giving the amount to set the cutter ahead of the radial line. The amount is so selected that a tangent to the circumference of the reamer at the cutting point makes an angle of approximately 95 degrees with the front face of the cutting edge.

Amount to Set Cutter Ahead of Radial Line to Obtain Negative Front Rake



Size of Reamer	*a*, Inches	Size of Reamer	*a*, Inches	Size of Reamer	*a*, Inches
1/4	0.011	7/8	0.038	2	0.087
3/8	0.016	1	0.044	2 1/4	0.098
1/2	0.022	1 1/4	0.055	2 1/2	0.109
5/8	0.027	1 1/2	0.066	2 3/4	0.120
3/4	0.033	1 3/4	0.076	3	0.131

When fluting reamers, it is necessary to "break up the flutes," that is, to space the cutting edges unevenly around the reamer. The difference in spacing should be very slight and need not exceed two degrees one way or the other. The manner in which the breaking up of the flutes is usually done is to move the index head to which the reamer is fixed a certain amount more or less than it would be moved if the spacing were regular. A table is given showing the amount of this additional movement of the index crank for reamers with different numbers of flutes. When a reamer is provided with helical flutes, the angle of spiral should be such that the cutting edges make an angle of about 10 or at most 15 degrees with the axis of the reamer.

The relief of the cutting edges should be comparatively slight. An eccentric relief, that is, one where the land back of the cutting edge is convex, rather than flat, is used by one or two manufacturers and is preferable for finishing reamers, as the reamer will hold its size longer. When hand reamers are used merely for removing stock, or simply for enlarging holes, the flat relief is better because the reamer has a keener cutting edge. The width of the land of the cutting edges should be about $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.79 mm) for a $^1/_4$-inch (6.35 mm), $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.59 mm) for a 1-inch (25.4 mm), and $^3/_{32}$ inch (2.38 mm) for a 3-inch (76.2 mm) reamer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Irregular Spacing of Teeth in Reamers

Number of Flutes in Reamer	4	6	8	10	12	14	16
Index Circle to Use	39	39	39	39	39	49	20
Before Cutting	Move Spindle the Number of Holes Below More or Less than for Regular Spacing						
2d flute	8 less	4 less	3 less	2 less	4 less	3 less	2 less
3d flute	4 more	5 more	5 more	3 more	4 more	2 more	2 more
4th flute	6 less	7 less	2 less	5 less	1 less	2 less	1 less
5th flute	…	6 more	4 more	2 more	3 more	4 more	2 more
6th flute	…	5 less	6 less	2 less	4 less	1 less	2 less
7th flute	…	…	2 more	3 more	4 more	3 more	1 more
8th flute	…	…	3 less	2 less	3 less	2 less	2 less
9th flute	…	…	…	5 more	2 more	1 more	2 more
10th flute	…	…	…	1 less	2 less	3 less	2 less
11th flute	…	…	…	…	3 more	3 more	1 more
12th flute	…	…	…	…	4 less	2 less	2 less
13th flute	…	…	…	…	…	2 more	2 more
14th flute	…	…	…	…	…	3 less	1 less
15th flute	…	…	…	…	…	…	2 more
16th flute	…	…	…	…	…	…	2 less

Threaded-End Hand Reamers.—Hand reamers are sometimes provided with a thread at the extreme point in order to give them a uniform feed when reaming. The diameter on the top of this thread at the point of the reamer is slightly smaller than the reamer itself, and the thread tapers upward until it reaches a dimension of from 0.003 to 0.008 inch (0.076–0.2 mm), according to size, below the size of the reamer; at this point, the thread stops and a short neck about $\frac{1}{16}$-inch (1.59 mm) wide separates the threaded portion from the actual reamer, which is provided with a short taper from $\frac{3}{16}$ to $\frac{7}{16}$ inch (4.76–11.1 mm) long up to where the standard diameter is reached. The length of the threaded portion and the number of threads per inch for reamers of this kind are given in the accompanying table. The thread employed is a sharp V-thread.

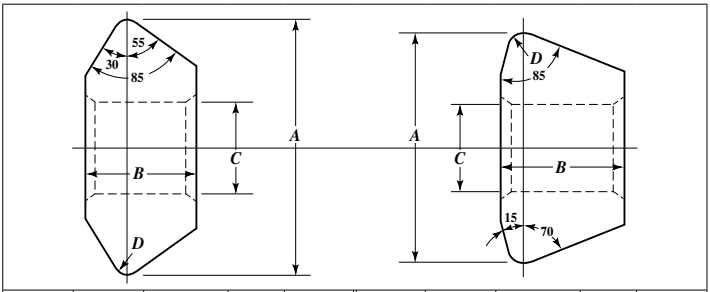
Dimensions for Threaded-End Hand Reamers

Sizes of Reamers	Length of Threaded Part	No. of Threads per Inch	Dia. of Thread at Point of Reamer	Sizes of Reamers	Length of Threaded Part	No. of Threads per Inch	Dia. of Thread at Point of Reamer
			Full diameter				Full diameter
⅛-5/16	⅜	32	–0.006	1 1/32-1 ½	9/16	18	–0.010
11/32-½	7/16	28	–0.006	1 17/32-2	9/16	18	–0.012
17/32-¾	½	24	–0.008	2 1/32-2 ½	9/16	18	–0.015
25/32-1	9/16	18	–0.008	2 17/32-3	9/16	18	–0.020

Fluted Chucking Reamers.—Reamers of this type are used in turret lathes, screw machines, etc., for enlarging holes and finishing them smooth and to the required size. The best results are obtained with a floating type of holder that permits a reamer to align itself with the hole being reamed. These reamers are intended for removing a small amount of metal, 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.127–0.25 mm) being common allowances. Fluted chucking reamers are provided either with a straight shank or a standard taper shank. (See table on page 910 for standard dimensions.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fluting Cutters for Reamers



Reamer Dia.	Fluting Cutter Dia. A	Fluting Cutter Thickness B	Hole Dia. in Cutter C	Radius between Cutting Faces D	Reamer Dia.	Fluting Cutter Dia. A	Fluting Cutter Thickness B	Hole Dia. in Cutter C	Radius between Cutting Faces D
1/8	1 3/4	3/16	3/4	none[a]	1 1/4	2 1/4	9/16	1	1/16
3/16	1 3/4	3/16	3/4	none[a]	1 1/2	2 1/4	5/8	1	1/16
1/4	1 3/4	3/16	3/4	1/64	1 3/4	2 1/4	5/8	1	5/64
3/8	2	1/4	3/4	1/64	2	2 1/2	3/4	1	5/64
1/2	2	5/16	3/4	1/32	2 1/4	2 1/2	3/4	1	5/64
5/8	2	3/8	3/4	1/32	2 1/2	2 1/2	7/8	1	3/16
3/4	2	7/16	3/4	3/64	2 3/4	2 1/2	7/8	1	3/16
1	2 1/4	1/2	1	3/64	3	2 1/2	1	1	3/16

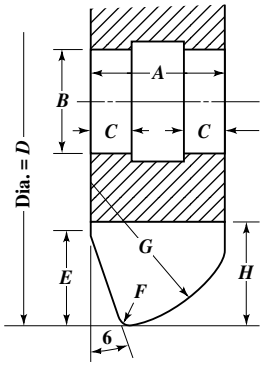
[a] Sharp corner, no radius

Rose Chucking Reamers.—The rose type of reamer is used for enlarging cored or other holes. The cutting edges at the end are ground to a 45-degree bevel. This type of reamer will remove considerable metal in one cut. The cylindrical part of the reamer has no cutting edges but merely grooves cut for the full length of the reamer body, providing a way for the chips to escape and a channel for lubricant to reach the cutting edges. There is no relief on the cylindrical surface of the body part, but it is slightly back-tapered so that the diameter at the point with the beveled cutting edges is slightly larger than the diameter farther back. The back-taper should not exceed 0.001 inch per inch (or mm/mm). This form of reamer usually produces holes slightly larger than its size; it is, therefore, always made from 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.127-0.25 mm) smaller than its nominal size, so that it may be followed by a fluted reamer for finishing. The grooves on the cylindrical portion are cut by a convex cutter having a width equal to from one-fifth to one-fourth the diameter of the rose reamer itself. The depth of the groove should be from one-eighth to one-sixth the diameter of the reamer. The teeth at the end of the reamer are milled with a 75-degree angular cutter; the width of the land of the cutting edge should be about one-fifth the distance from tooth to tooth. If an angular cutter is preferred to a convex cutter for milling the grooves on the cylindrical portion because of the higher cutting speed possible when milling, an 80-degree angular cutter slightly rounded at the point may be used.

Cutters for Fluting Rose Chucking Reamers.—The cutters used for fluting rose chucking reamers on the end are 80-degree angular cutters for 1/4- and 5/16-inch diameter reamers; 75-degree angular cutters for 3/8- and 7/16-inch reamers; and 70-degree angular cutters for all larger sizes. The grooves on the cylindrical portion are milled with convex cutters of approximately the following sizes for given diameters of reamers: 5/32-inch convex cutter for 1/2-inch reamers; 5/16-inch cutter for 1-inch reamers; 3/8-inch cutter for 1 1/2-inch reamers; 13/32-inch cutters for 2-inch reamers; and 15/32-inch cutters for 2 1/2-inch reamers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dimensions of Formed Reamer Fluting Cutters



The making and maintenance of cutters of the formed type involve greater expense than the use of angular cutters, dimensions of which are given on the previous page; but the form of flute produced by the formed type of cutter is preferred by many reamer users. The claims made for the formed type of flute are that the chips can be more readily removed from the reamer and that the reamer has greater strength and is less likely to crack or spring out of shape in hardening.

Reamer Size	No. of Teeth in Reamer	Cutter Dia. *D*	Cutter Width *A*	Hole Dia. *B*	Bearing Width *C*	Bevel Length *E*	Radius *F*	Radius *F*	Tooth Depth *H*	No. of Cutter Teeth
1/8-3/16	6	1 3/4	3/16	7/8	…	0.125	0.016	7/32	0.21	14
1/4-5/16	6	1 3/4	1/4	7/8	…	0.152	0.022	9/32	0.25	13
3/8-7/16	6	1 7/8	3/8	7/8	1/8	0.178	0.029	1/2	0.28	12
1/2-11/16	6-8	2	7/16	7/8	1/8	0.205	0.036	9/16	0.30	12
3/4-1	8	2 1/8	1/2	7/8	5/32	0.232	0.042	11/16	0.32	12
1 1/16-1 1/2	10	2 1/4	9/16	7/8	5/32	0.258	0.049	3/4	0.38	11
1 9/16-2 1/8	12	2 3/8	5/8	7/8	3/16	0.285	0.056	27/32	0.40	11
2 1/4-3	14	2 5/8	11/16	7/8	3/16	0.312	0.062	7/8	0.44	10

The smaller sizes of reamers, from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch in diameter, are often milled, with regular double-angle reamer fluting cutters having a radius of $\frac{1}{64}$ inch for $\frac{1}{4}$-inch reamer, and $\frac{1}{32}$ inch for $\frac{5}{16}$- and $\frac{3}{8}$-inch sizes.

Reamer Terms and Definitions.—*Reamer:* A rotary cutting tool with one or more cutting elements used for enlarging to size and contour a previously formed hole. Its principal support during the cutting action is obtained from the workpiece. (See Fig. 1.)

Actual Size: The actual measured diameter of a reamer, usually slightly larger than the nominal size to allow for wear.

Angle of Taper: The included angle of taper on a taper tool or taper shank.

Arbor Hole: The central mounting hole in a shell reamer.

Axis: The imaginary straight line that forms the longitudinal centerline of a reamer, usually established by rotating the reamer between centers.

Back Taper: A slight decrease in diameter, from front to back, in the flute length of reamers.

Bevel: An unrelieved angular surface of revolution (not to be confused with chamfer).

Body: The fluted full-diameter portion of a reamer, inclusive of the chamfer, starting taper, and bevel.

Chamfer: The angular cutting portion at the entering end of a reamer (see also *Secondary Chamfer*).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Vertical Adjustment of Tooth-Rest for Grinding Clearance on Reamers

Size of Reamer	Hand Reamer for Steel. Cutting Clearance Land 0.006 inch Wide		Hand Reamer for Cast Iron and Bronze. Cutting Clearance Land 0.025 inch Wide		Chucking Reamer for Cast Iron and Bronze. Cutting Clearance Land 0.025 inch Wide		Rose Chucking Reamers for Steel
	For Cutting Clearance	For Second Clearance	For Cutting Clearance	For Second Clearance	For Cutting Clearance	For Second Clearance	For Cutting Clearance on Angular Edge at End
½	0.012	0.052	0.032	0.072	0.040	0.080	0.080
⅝	0.012	0.062	0.032	0.072	0.040	0.090	0.090
¾	0.012	0.072	0.035	0.095	0.040	0.100	0.100
⅞	0.012	0.082	0.040	0.120	0.045	0.125	0.125
1	0.012	0.092	0.040	0.120	0.045	0.125	0.125
1⅛	0.012	0.102	0.040	0.120	0.045	0.125	0.125
1¼	0.012	0.112	0.045	0.145	0.050	0.160	0.160
1⅜	0.012	0.122	0.045	0.145	0.050	0.160	0.175
1½	0.012	0.132	0.048	0.168	0.055	0.175	0.175
1⅝	0.012	0.142	0.050	0.170	0.060	0.200	0.200
1¾	0.012	0.152	0.052	0.192	0.060	0.200	0.200
1⅞	0.012	0.162	0.056	0.196	0.060	0.200	0.200
2	0.012	0.172	0.056	0.216	0.064	0.224	0.225
2⅛	0.012	0.172	0.059	0.219	0.064	0.224	0.225
2¼	0.012	0.172	0.063	0.223	0.064	0.224	0.225
2⅜	0.012	0.172	0.063	0.223	0.068	0.228	0.230
2½	0.012	0.172	0.065	0.225	0.072	0.232	0.230
2⅝	0.012	0.172	0.065	0.225	0.075	0.235	0.235
2¾	0.012	0.172	0.065	0.225	0.077	0.237	0.240
2⅞	0.012	0.172	0.070	0.230	0.080	0.240	0.240
3	0.012	0.172	0.072	0.232	0.080	0.240	0.240
3⅛	0.012	0.172	0.075	0.235	0.083	0.240	0.240
3¼	0.012	0.172	0.078	0.238	0.083	0.243	0.245
3⅜	0.012	0.172	0.081	0.241	0.087	0.247	0.245
3½	0.012	0.172	0.084	0.244	0.090	0.250	0.250
3⅝	0.012	0.172	0.087	0.247	0.093	0.253	0.250
3¾	0.012	0.172	0.090	0.250	0.097	0.257	0.255
3⅞	0.012	0.172	0.093	0.253	0.100	0.260	0.255
4	0.012	0.172	0.096	0.256	0.104	0.264	0.260
4⅛	0.012	0.172	0.096	0.256	0.104	0.264	0.260
4¼	0.012	0.172	0.096	0.256	0.106	0.266	0.265
4⅜	0.012	0.172	0.096	0.256	0.108	0.268	0.265
4½	0.012	0.172	0.100	0.260	0.108	0.268	0.265
4⅝	0.012	0.172	0.100	0.260	0.110	0.270	0.270
4¾	0.012	0.172	0.104	0.264	0.114	0.274	0.275
4⅞	0.012	0.172	0.106	0.266	0.116	0.276	0.275
5	0.012	0.172	0.110	0.270	0.118	0.278	0.275

Chamfer Angle: The angle between the axis and the cutting edge of the chamfer measured in an axial plane at the cutting edge.

Chamfer Length: The length of the chamfer measured parallel to the axis at the cutting edge.

Chamfer Relief Angle: See under *Relief*.

Chamfer Relief: See under *Relief*.

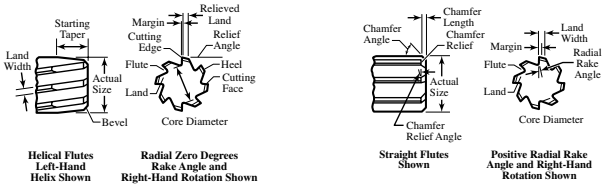
Chipbreakers: Notches or grooves in the cutting edges of some taper reamers designed to break the continuity of the chips.

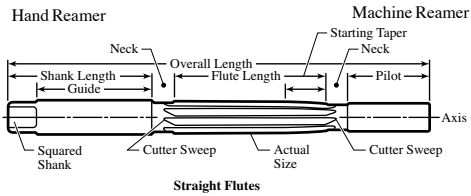
Circular Land: See preferred term *Margin*.

Clearance: The space created by the relief behind the cutting edge or margin of a reamer.

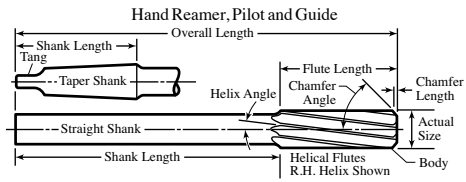
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Illustration of Terms Applying to Reamers





Straight Flutes



Chucking Reamer, Straight and Taper Shank

Core: The central portion of a reamer that joins the lands below the flutes.

Core Diameter: The diameter at a given point along the axis of the largest circle which does not project into the flutes.

Cutter Sweep: The section removed by the milling cutter or grinding wheel in entering or leaving a flute.

Cutting Edge: The leading edge of the relieved land in the direction of rotation for cutting.

Cutting Face: The leading side of the relieved land in the direction of rotation for cutting on which the chip impinges.

External Center: The pointed end of a reamer. The included angle varies with manufacturing practice.

Flutes: Longitudinal channels formed in the body of the reamer to provide cutting edges, permit passage of chips, and allow cutting fluid to reach the cutting edges.

Angular Flute: A flute that forms a cutting face lying in a plane intersecting the reamer axis at an angle. It is unlike a helical flute in that it forms a cutting face that lies in a single plane.

Helical Flute: Sometimes called a spiral flute, a flute formed in a helical path around the axis of a reamer.

Spiral flute: 1) On a taper reamer, a flute of constant lead; or 2) in reference to a straight reamer, see preferred term *Helical Flute*.

Straight Flute: A flute that forms a cutting edge lying in an axial plane.

Flute Length: The length of the flutes, not including the cutter sweep.

Guide: A cylindrical portion following the flutes of a reamer to maintain alignment.

Heel: The trailing edge of the land in the direction of rotation for cutting.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Helix Angle: The angle which a helical cutting edge at a given point makes with an axial plane through the same point.

Hook: A concave condition of a cutting face. The rake of a hooked cutting face must be determined at a given point.

Internal Center: A 60-degree countersink with clearance at the bottom, in one or both ends of a tool, which establishes the tool axis.

Irregular Spacing: A deliberate variation from uniform spacing of the reamer cutting edges.

Land: The section of the reamer between adjacent flutes.

Land Width: The distance between the leading edge of the land and the heel, measured at a right angle to the leading edge.

Lead of Flute: The axial advance of a helical or spiral cutting edge in one turn around the reamer axis.

Length: The dimension of any reamer element measured parallel to the reamer axis.

Limits: The maximum and minimum values designated for a specific element.

Margin: The unrelieved part of the periphery of the land adjacent to the cutting edge.

Margin Width: The distance between the cutting edge and the primary relief measured at a right angle to the cutting edge.

Neck: The section of reduced diameter connecting shank to body, or connecting other portions of the reamer.

Nominal Size: The designated basic size of a reamer overall length—the extreme length of the complete reamer from end to end, but not including external centers or expansion screws.

Periphery: The outside circumference of a reamer.

Pilot: A cylindrical portion preceding the entering end of the reamer body to maintain alignment.

Rake: The angular relationship between the cutting face, or a tangent to the cutting face at a given point and a given reference plane or line.

Axial Rake: Applies to angular (not helical or spiral) cutting faces. It is the angle between a plane containing the cutting face, or tangent to the cutting face at a given point, and the reamer axis.

Helical Rake: Applies only to helical and spiral cutting faces (not angular). It is the angle between a plane, tangent to the cutting face at a given point on the cutting edge, and the reamer axis.

Negative Rake: Describes a cutting face in rotation whose cutting edge lags the surface of the cutting face.

Positive Rake: Describes a cutting face in rotation whose cutting edge leads the surface of the cutting face.

Radial Rake Angle: The angle in a transverse plane between a straight cutting face and a radial line passing through the cutting edge.

Relief: The result of the removal of tool material behind or adjacent to the cutting edge to provide clearance and prevent rubbing (heel drag).

Axial Relief: The relief measured in the axial direction between a plane perpendicular to the axis and the relieved surface. It can be measured by the amount of indicator drop at a given radius in a given amount of angular rotation.

Cam Relief : The relief from the cutting edge to the heel of the land produced by a cam action.

Chamfer Relief Angle: The axial relief angle at the outer corner of the chamfer. It is measured by projection into a plane tangent to the periphery at the outer corner of the chamfer.

Chamfer Relief: The axial relief on the chamfer of the reamer.

Eccentric Relief: A convex relieved surface behind the cutting edge.

Flat Relief: A relieved surface behind the cutting edge which is essentially flat.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Radial Relief: Relief in a radial direction measured in the plane of rotation. It can be measured by the amount of indicator drop at a given radius in a given amount of angular rotation.

Primary Relief: The relief immediately behind the cutting edge or margin. Properly called relief.

Secondary Relief: An additional relief behind the primary relief.

Relief Angle: The angle, measured in a transverse plane, between the relieved surface and a plane tangent to the periphery at the cutting edge.

Secondary Chamfer: A slight relieved chamfer adjacent to and following the initial chamfer on a reamer.

Shank: The portion of the reamer by which it is held and driven.

Squared Shank: A cylindrical shank having a driving square on the back end.

Starting Radius: A relieved radius at the entering end of a reamer in place of a chamfer.

Starting Taper: A slight relieved taper on the front end of a reamer.

Straight Shank: A cylindrical shank.

Tang: The flatted end of a taper shank which fits a slot in the socket.

Taper per Foot: The difference in diameter between two points 12 in. apart measured along the axis.

Taper Shank: A shank made to fit a specific (conical) taper socket.

Direction of Rotation and Helix.—The terms "right hand" and "left hand" are used to describe both direction of rotation and direction of flute helix or reamers.

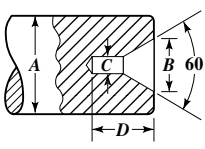
Hand of Rotation (or Hand of Cut): Right-hand Rotation (or Right-hand Cut): When viewed from the cutting end, the reamer must revolve counterclockwise to cut

Left-hand Rotation (or Left-hand Cut): When viewed from the cutting end, the reamer must revolve clockwise to cut

Hand of Flute Helix: Right-hand Helix: When the flutes twist away from the observer in a clockwise direction when viewed from either end of the reamer.

Left-hand Helix: When the flutes twist away from the observer in a counterclockwise direction when viewed from either end of the reamer. The standard reamers on the tables that follow are all right-hand rotation.

Dimensions of Centers for Reamers and Arbors

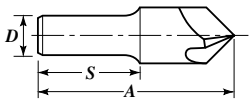


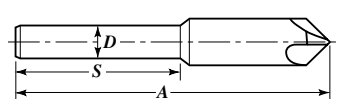
Arbor. Dia. *A*	Large Center Dia. *B*	Drill No. *C*	Hole Depth *D*
1/4	1/8	55	5/32
5/16	5/32	52	3/16
3/8	3/16	48	7/32
7/16	7/32	43	1/4
1/2	1/4	39	5/16
9/16	9/32	33	11/32
5/8	5/16	30	3/8
11/16	11/32	29	13/32

Arbor Dia. *A*	Large Center Dia. *B*	Drill No. *C*	Hole Depth *D*	Arbor Dia. *A*	Large Center Dia. *B*	Drill No. *C*	Hole Depth *D*
3/4	3/8	25	7/16	2 1/2	11/16	**J**	27/32
13/16	13/32	20	1/2	2 5/8	45/64	**K**	7/8
7/8	7/16	17	17/32	2 3/4	23/32	**L**	29/32
15/16	15/32	12	9/16	2 7/8	47/64	**M**	29/32
1	1/2	8	19/32	3	3/4	**N**	15/16
1 1/8	33/64	5	5/8	3 1/8	49/64	**N**	31/32
1 1/4	17/32	3	21/32	3 1/4	25/32	**O**	31/32
1 3/8	35/64	2	21/32	3 3/8	51/64	**O**	1
1 1/2	9/16	1	11/16	3 1/2	13/16	**P**	1
…	…	Letter	…	3 5/8	53/64	**Q**	1 1/16
1 5/8	37/64	**A**	23/32	3 3/4	27/32	**R**	1 1/16
1 3/4	19/32	**B**	23/32	3 7/8	55/64	**R**	1 1/16
1 7/8	39/64	**C**	3/4	4	7/8	**S**	1 1/8
2	5/8	**E**	3/4	4 1/4	29/32	**T**	1 1/8
2 1/8	41/64	**F**	25/32	4 1/2	15/16	**V**	1 3/16
2 1/4	21/32	**G**	13/16	4 3/4	31/32	**W**	1 1/4
2 3/8	43/64	**H**	27/32	5	1	**X**	1 1/4

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Straight-Shank Center Reamers and Machine Countersinks
ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)





Center Reamers (Short Countersinks)				Machine Countersinks			
Dia. of Cut	Approx. Length Overall, *A*	Length of Shank, *S*	Dia. of Shank, *D*	Dia. of Cut	Approx. Length Overall, *A*	Length of Shank, *S*	Dia. of Shank, *D*
1/4	1 1/2	3/4	3/16	1/2	3 7/8	2 1/4	1/2
3/8	1 3/4	7/8	1/4	5/8	4	2 1/4	1/2
1/2	2	1	3/8	3/4	4 1/8	2 1/4	1/2
5/8	2 1/4	1	3/8	7/8	4 1/4	2 1/4	1/2
3/4	2 5/8	1 1/4	1/2	1	4 3/8	2 1/4	1/2

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel. Reamers and countersinks have 3 or 4 flutes. Center reamers are standard with 60, 82, 90, or 100 degrees included angle. Machine countersinks are standard with either 60 or 82 degrees included angle.

Tolerances: On overall length *A*, the tolerance is ±1/8 inch for center reamers in a size range of from 1/4 to 3/8 inch, incl., and machine countersinks in a size range of from 1/2 to 5/8 inch. incl.; ± 3/16 inch for center reamers, 1/2 to 3/4 inch, incl.; and machine countersinks, 3/4 to 1 inch, incl. On shank diameter *D*, the tolerance is −0.0005 to −0.002 inch. On shank length *S*, the tolerance is ±1/16 inch.

Calculating Countersink and Spot Drill Depths.—The following formulas are for countersinks and spot drills that have been sharpened to a point, allowances on tool depth will have to be made if the countersink or spot drill is not sharpened to a point.

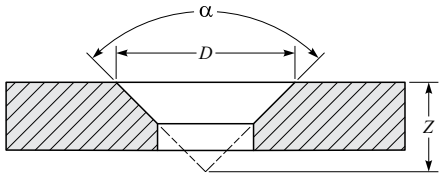


Fig. 1. For Countersinks and Spot Drills that have been Sharpened to a Point

α = countersink angle

D = countersink diameter

Z = depth of tool travel required from surface of part

To find the tool travel "Z" required for any sharp-point countersink or spot drill angle, use either of the following formulas:

$$Z = \frac{D}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{\tan\frac{\alpha}{2}} \quad \text{or} \quad Z = \frac{D}{2} \cdot \cot\frac{\alpha}{2}$$

To find the tool travel "*Z-a*" required for any truncated countersink or spot drill angle, use either of the following formulas:

$$Z - a = \frac{D - T}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{\tan\frac{\alpha}{2}} \quad \text{or} \quad Z - a = \frac{D - T}{2} \cdot \cot\frac{\alpha}{2}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

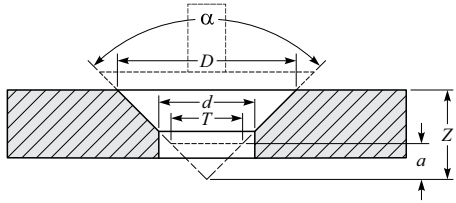


Fig. 2. For Countersinks and Spot Drills that are a Truncated Cone

α = allowance for truncated countersink tool
d = diameter of hole
T = diameter of small end of truncated tool

The table below is a quick reference for some predefined angles on countersinks and spot drills that have been sharpened to a point. To calculate the tool travel "Z", multiply the factor by the countersink diameter.

Countersink Angle α, degrees	Factor (Imperial or Metric Units)	Countersink Angle α, degrees	Factor (Imperial or Metric Units)
60	0.8660	118	0.3004
82	0.5752	120	0.2887
90	0.5000	135	0.2071
100	0.4195	142	0.1722

Reamer Difficulties.—Certain frequently occurring problems in reaming require remedial measures. These difficulties include the production of oversize holes, bellmouth holes, and holes with a poor finish. The following is taken from suggestions for correction of these difficulties by the National Twist Drill and Tool Co. and Winter Brothers Co.*

Oversize Holes: The cutting of a hole oversize from the start of the reaming operations usually indicates a mechanical defect in the setup or reamer. Thus, the wrong reamer for the workpiece material may have been used or there may be inadequate workpiece support; inadequate or worn guide bushings; misalignment of the spindles, bushings, or workpiece; or runout of the spindle or reamer holder. The reamer itself may be defective due to chamfer runout or runout of the cutting end due to a bent or nonconcentric shank.

When reamers gradually start to cut oversize, it is due to pickup or galling, principally on the reamer margins. This condition is partly due to the workpiece material. Mild steels, certain cast irons, and some aluminum alloys are particularly troublesome in this respect.

Corrective measures include reducing the reamer margin widths to about 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.127-0.25 mm), use of hard case surface treatments on high-speed steel reamers, either alone or in combination with black oxide treatments, and the use of a high-grade finish on the reamer faces, margins, and chamfer relief surfaces.

Bellmouth Holes: The cutting of a hole that becomes oversize at the entry end with the oversize decreasing gradually along its length always reflects misalignment of the cutting portion of the reamer with respect to the hole. The obvious solution is to provide improved guiding of the reamer by the use of accurate bushings and pilot surfaces. If this solution is not feasible and the reamer is cutting in a vertical position, a flexible element may be employed to hold the reamer in such a way that it has both radial and axial float, with the hope that the reamer will follow the original hole and prevent the bellmouth condition.

In horizontal setups where the reamer is held fixed and the workpiece rotated, any misalignment exerts a sideways force on the reamer as it is fed to depth, resulting in the formation of a tapered hole. This type of bellmouthing can frequently be reduced by shortening

* "Some Aspects of Reamer Design and Operation," *Metal Cuttings*, April 1963.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the bearing length of the cutting portion of the reamer. One way to do this is to reduce the reamer diameter by 0.010 to 0.030 inch (0.25–0.76 mm), depending on size and length, behind a short full-diameter section, 1/8 to 1/2 inch (3.18 to 12.7 mm) long according to length and size, following the chamfer. The second method is to grind a high back taper, 0.008 to 0.015 inch per inch (or mm/mm), behind the short full-diameter section. These modifications reduce the length of the reamer tooth that can cause the bellmouth condition.

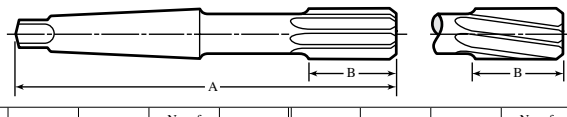
Poor Finish: The most obvious step toward producing a good finish is to reduce the reamer feed per revolution. Feeds as low as 0.0002 to 0.0005 inch (0.005 to 0.013 mm) per tooth have been used successfully. However, better reamer life results if the maximum feasible feed is used.

The minimum practical amount of reaming stock allowance will often improve finish by reducing the volume of chips and the resulting heat generated on the cutting portion of the chamfer. Too little reamer stock, however, can be troublesome in that the reamer teeth may not cut freely but will deflect or push the work material out of the way. When this happens, excessive heat, poor finish, and rapid reamer wear can occur.

Because of superior abrasion resistance, carbide reamers are often used when fine finishes are required. When properly conditioned, carbide reamers can produce a large number of good-quality holes. Careful honing of the carbide reamer edges is very important.

Types and Sizes of Reamers

American National Standard Fluted Taper Shank Chucking Reamers—Straight and Helical Flutes, Fractional Sizes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



Reamer Dia.	Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	No. of Morse Taper Shank[a]	No. of Flutes	Reamer Dia.	Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	No. of Morse Taper Shank[a]	No. of Flutes
1/4	6	1 1/2	1	4 to 6	27/32	9 1/2	2 1/2	2	8 to 10
5/16	6	1 1/2	1	4 to 6	7/8	10	2 5/8	2	8 to 10
3/8	7	1 3/4	1	4 to 6	29/32	10	2 5/8	2	8 to 10
7/16	7	1 3/4	1	6 to 8	15/16	10	2 5/8	3	8 to 10
1/2	8	2	1	6 to 8	31/32	10	2 5/8	3	8 to 10
17/32	8	2	1	6 to 8	1	10 1/2	2 3/4	3	8 to 12
9/16	8	2	1	6 to 8	1 1/16	10 1/2	2 3/4	3	8 to 12
19/32	8	2	1	6 to 8	1 1/8	11	2 7/8	3	8 to 12
5/8	9	2 1/4	2	6 to 8	1 3/16	11	2 7/8	3	8 to 12
21/32	9	2 1/4	2	6 to 8	1 1/4	11 1/2	3	4	8 to 12
11/16	9	2 1/4	2	6 to 8	1 5/16	11 1/2	3	4	8 to 12
23/32	9	2 1/4	2	6 to 8	1 3/8	12	3 1/4	4	10 to 12
3/4	9 1/2	2 1/2	2	6 to 8	1 7/16	12	3 1/4	4	10 to 12
25/32	9 1/2	2 1/2	2	8 to 10	1 1/2	12 1/2	3 1/2	4	10 to 12
13/16	9 1/2	2 1/2	2	8 to 10	…	…	…	…	…

[a] American National Standard self-holding tapers (see Table 7a on page 1020).

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

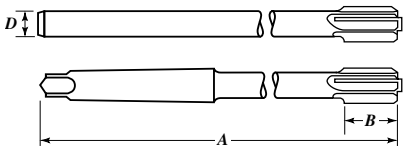
Helical flute reamers with right-hand helical flutes are standard.

Tolerances: On reamer diameter, 1/4-inch size, +.0001 to +.0004 inch; over 1/4- to 1-inch size, +.0001 to +.0005 inch; over 1-inch size, +.0002 to +.0006 inch. On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., ±1/16 inch; 1 1/16- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., 3/32 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Expansion Chucking Reamers—Straight and Taper Shanks

ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)



Dia of Reamer	Length, *A*	Flute Length, *B*	Shank Dia., *D*		Dia.of Reamer	Length, *A*	Flute Length, *B*	Shank Dia., *D*	
			Max.	Min.				Max.	Min.
3/8	7	3/4	0.3105	0.3095	1 3/32	10 1/2	1 5/8	0.8745	0.8730
13/32	7	3/4	0.3105	0.3095	1 1/8	11	1 3/4	0.8745	0.8730
7/16	7	7/8	0.3730	0.3720	1 5/32	11	1 3/4	0.8745	0.8730
15/32	7	7/8	0.3730	0.3720	1 3/16	11	1 3/4	0.9995	0.9980
1/2	8	1	0.4355	0.4345	1 7/32	11	1 3/4	0.9995	0.9980
17/32	8	1	0.4355	0.4345	1 1/4	11 1/2	1 7/8	0.9995	0.9980
9/16	8	1 1/8	0.4355	0.4345	1 5/16	11 1/2	1 7/8	0.9995	0.9980
19/32	8	1 1/8	0.4355	0.4345	1 3/8	12	2	0.9995	0.9980
5/8	9	1 1/4	0.5620	0.5605	1 7/16	12	2	1.2495	1.2480
21/32	9	1 1/4	0.5620	0.5605	1 1/2	12 1/2	2 1/8	1.2495	1.2480
11/16	9	1 1/4	0.5620	0.5605	1 9/16[a]	12 1/2	2 1/8	1.2495	1.2480
23/32	9	1 1/4	0.5620	0.5605	1 5/8	13	2 1/4	1.2495	1.2480
3/4	9 1/2	1 3/8	0.6245	0.6230	1 11/16[a]	13	2 1/4	1.2495	1.2480
25/32	9 1/2	1 3/8	0.6245	0.6230	1 3/4	13 1/2	2 3/8	1.2495	1.2480
13/16	9 1/2	1 3/8	0.6245	0.6230	1 13/16[a]	13 1/2	2 3/8	1.4995	1.4980
27/32	9 1/2	1 3/8	0.6245	0.6230	1 7/8	14	2 1/2	1.4995	1.4980
7/8	10	1 1/2	0.7495	0.7480	1 15/16[a]	14	2 1/2	1.4995	1.4980
29/32	10	1 1/2	0.7495	0.7480	2	14	2 1/2	1.4995	1.4980
15/16	10	1 1/2	0.7495	0.7480	2 1/8[b]	14 1/2	2 3/4	…	…
31/32	10	1 1/2	0.7495	0.7480	2 1/4[b]	14 1/2	2 3/4	…	…
1	10 1/2	1 5/8	0.8745	0.8730	2 3/8[b]	15	3	…	…
1 1/32	10 1/2	1 5/8	0.8745	0.8730	2 1/2[b]	15	3	…	…
1 1/16	10 1/2	1 5/8	0.8745	0.8730	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Straight shank only.
[b] Taper shank only.

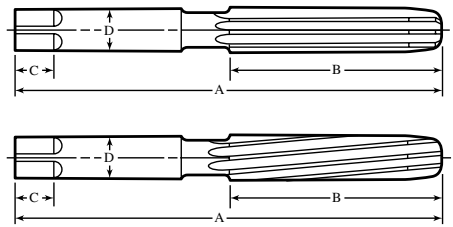
All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel. The number of flutes is as follows: 3/8- to 15/32-inch sizes, 4 to 6; 1/2- to 31/32-inch sizes, 6 to 8; 1- to 1 11/16-inch sizes, 8 to 10; 1 3/4- to 1 15/16-inch sizes, 8 to 12; 2- to 2 1/4-inch sizes, 10 to 12; 2 3/8- and 2 1/2-inch sizes, 10 to 14. The expansion feature of these reamers provides a means of adjustment that is important in reaming holes to close tolerances. When worn undersize, they may be expanded and reground to the original size.

Tolerances: On reamer diameter, 3/8- to 1-inch sizes, incl., +0.0001 to +0.0005 inch; over 1-inch size, + 0.0002 to + 0.0006 inch. On length *A* and flute length *B*, 3/8- to 1-inch sizes, incl., ±1/16 inch; 1 1/32- to 2-inch sizes, incl., ±3/32 inch; over 2-inch sizes, ±1/8 inch.

Taper is Morse taper: No. 1 for sizes 3/8 to 19/32 inch, incl.; No. 2 for sizes 5/8 to 29/32 incl.; No. 3 for sizes 15/16 to 1 7/32, incl.; No. 4 for sizes 1 1/4 to 1 5/8, incl.; and No. 5 for sizes 1 3/4 to 2 1/2, incl. For amount of taper, see Table on page 1013.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hand Reamers—Straight and Helical Flutes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



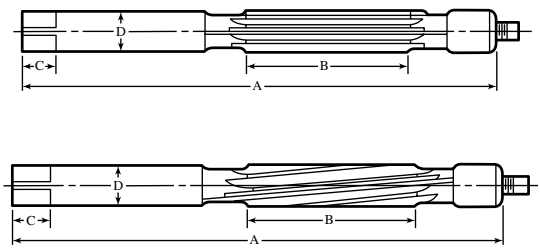
Reamer Diameter			Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	Square Length *C*	Size of Square	No. of Flutes
Straight Flutes	Helical Flutes	Decimal Equivalent					
1/8	…	0.1250	3	1 1/2	5/32	0.095	4 to 6
9/64	…	0.1406	3 1/4	1 5/8	5/32	0.105	4 to 6
5/32	…	0.1562	3 1/4	1 5/8	7/32	0.115	4 to 6
11/64	…	0.1719	3 1/2	1 3/4	7/32	0.130	4 to 6
3/16	…	0.1875	3 1/2	1 3/4	7/32	0.140	4 to 6
13/64	…	0.2031	3 3/4	1 7/8	1/4	0.150	4 to 6
7/32	…	0.2188	3 3/4	1 7/8	1/4	0.165	4 to 6
15/64	…	0.2344	4	2	1/4	0.175	4 to 6
1/4	1/4	0.2500	4	2	1/4	0.185	4 to 6
17/64	…	0.2969	4 1/4	2 1/8	1/4	0.200	4 to 6
9/32	…	0.2812	4 1/4	2 1/8	1/4	0.210	4 to 6
19/64	…	0.2969	4 1/2	2 1/4	5/16	0.220	4 to 6
5/16	5/16	0.3125	4 1/2	2 1/4	5/16	0.235	4 to 6
21/64	…	0.3281	4 3/4	2 3/8	5/16	0.245	4 to 6
11/32	…	0.3438	4 3/4	2 3/8	5/16	0.255	4 to 6
23/64	…	0.3594	5	2 1/2	3/8	0.270	4 to 6
3/8	3/8	0.3750	5	2 1/2	3/8	0.280	4 to 6
25/64	…	0.3906	5 1/4	2 5/8	3/8	0.290	6 to 8
13/32	…	0.4062	5 1/4	2 5/8	3/8	0.305	6 to 8
27/64	…	0.4219	5 1/2	2 3/4	7/16	0.315	6 to 8
7/16	7/16	0.4375	5 1/2	2 3/4	7/16	0.330	6 to 8
29/64	…	0.4531	5 3/4	2 7/8	7/16	0.340	6 to 8
15/32	…	0.4688	5 3/4	2 7/8	7/16	0.350	6 to 8
31/64	…	0.4844	6	3	1/2	0.365	6 to 8
1/2	1/2	0.5000	6	3	1/2	0.375	6 to 8
17/32	…	0.5312	6 1/4	3 1/8	1/2	0.400	6 to 8
9/16	9/16	0.5625	6 1/2	3 1/4	9/16	0.420	6 to 8
19/32	…	0.5938	6 3/4	3 3/8	9/16	0.445	6 to 8
5/8	5/8	0.6250	7	3 1/2	5/8	0.470	6 to 8
21/32	…	0.6562	7 3/8	3 11/16	5/8	0.490	6 to 8
11/16	11/16	0.6875	7 3/4	3 7/8	11/16	0.515	6 to 8
23/32	…	0.7188	8 1/8	4 1/16	11/16	0.540	6 to 8
3/4	3/4	0.7500	8 3/8	4 3/16	3/4	0.560	6 to 8
…	13/16	0.8125	9 1/8	4 9/16	13/16	0.610	8 to 10
7/8	7/8	0.8750	9 3/4	4 7/8	7/8	0.655	8 to 10
…	15/16	0.9375	10 1/4	5 1/8	15/16	0.705	8 to 10
1	1	1.0000	10 7/8	5 7/16	1	0.750	8 to 10
1 1/8	1 1/8	1.1250	11 5/8	5 13/16	1	0.845	8 to 10
1 1/4	1 1/4	1.2500	12 1/4	6 1/8	1	0.935	8 to 12
1 3/8	1 3/8	1.3750	12 5/8	6 5/16	1	1.030	10 to 12
1 1/2	1 1/2	1.5000	13	6 1/2	1 1/8	1.125	10 to 14

All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel. The nominal shank diameter *D* is the same as the reamer diameter. Helical-flute hand reamers with left-hand helical flutes are standard. Reamers are tapered slightly on the end to facilitate proper starting.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, up to 1/4-inch size, incl., + .0001 to + .0004 inch; over 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., +.0001 to + .0005 inch; over 1-inch size, +.0002 to +.0006 inch. On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, 1/8- to 1-inch size, incl., ± 1/16 inch; 1 1/8- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., ± 3/32 inch. On length of square *C*, 1/8- to 1 inch size, incl., ± 1/32 inch; 1 1/8- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., ± 1/16 inch. On shank diameter *D*, 1/8- to 1-inch size, incl., –.001 to –.005 inch; 1 1/8- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., –.0015 to –.006 inch. On size of square, 1/8- to 1/2-inch size, incl., –.004 inch; 17/32- to 1-inch size, incl., –.006 inch; 1 1/8- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., –.008 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Expansion Hand Reamers — Straight and Helical Flutes, Squared Shank *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



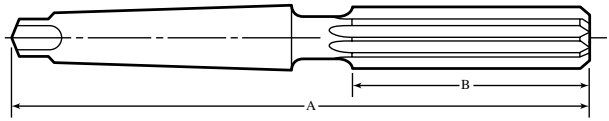
Reamer Dia.	Length Overall *A*		Flute Length *B*		Length of Square *C*	Shank Dia. *D*	Size of Square	Number of Flutes
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.				
Straight Flutes								
1/4	4 3/8	3 3/4	1 3/4	1 1/2	1/4	1/4	0.185	6 to 8
5/16	4 3/8	4	1 7/8	1 1/2	5/16	5/16	0.235	6 to 8
3/8	5 3/8	4 1/4	2	1 3/4	3/8	3/8	0.280	6 to 9
7/16	5 3/8	4 1/2	2	1 3/4	7/16	7/16	0.330	6 to 9
1/2	6 1/2	5	2 1/2	1 3/4	1/2	1/2	0.375	6 to 9
9/16	6 1/2	5 3/8	2 1/2	1 7/8	9/16	9/16	0.420	6 to 9
5/8	7	5 3/4	3	2 1/4	5/8	5/8	0.470	6 to 9
11/16	7 5/8	6 1/4	3	2 1/2	11/16	11/16	0.515	6 to 10
3/4	8	6 1/2	3 1/2	2 5/8	3/4	3/4	0.560	6 to 10
7/8	9	7 1/2	4	3 1/8	7/8	7/8	0.655	8 to 10
1	10	8 3/8	4 1/2	3 1/8	1	1	0.750	8 to 10
1 1/8	10 1/2	9	4 3/4	3 1/2	1	1 1/8	0.845	8 to 12
1 1/4	11	9 3/4	5	4 1/4	1	1 1/4	0.935	8 to 12
Helical Flutes								
1/4	4 3/8	3 7/8	1 3/4	1 1/2	1/4	1/4	0.185	6 to 8
5/16	4 3/8	4	1 3/4	1 1/2	5/16	5/16	0.235	6 to 8
3/8	6 1/8	4 1/4	2	1 3/4	3/8	3/8	0.280	6 to 9
7/16	6 1/4	4 1/2	2	1 3/4	7/16	7/16	0.330	6 to 9
1/2	6 1/2	5	2 1/2	1 3/4	1/2	1/2	0.375	6 to 9
5/8	8	6	3	2 1/4	5/8	5/8	0.470	6 to 9
3/4	8 5/8	6 1/2	3 1/2	2 5/8	3/4	3/4	0.560	6 to 10
7/8	9 3/8	7 1/2	4	3 1/8	7/8	7/8	0.655	6 to 10
1	10 1/4	8 3/8	4 1/2	3 1/8	1	1	0.750	6 to 10
1 1/4	11 3/8	9 3/4	5	4 1/4	1	1 1/4	0.935	8 to 12

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is carbon steel. Reamers with helical flutes that are left hand are standard. Expansion hand reamers are primarily designed for work where it is necessary to enlarge reamed holes by a few thousandths. The pilots and guides on these reamers are ground undersize for clearance. The maximum expansion on these reamers is as follows: .006 inch for the 1/4- to 7/16-inch sizes. .010 inch for the 1/2- to 7/8-inch sizes and .012 inch for the 1- to 1 1/4-inch sizes.

Tolerances: On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, ±1/16 inch for 1/4- to 1-inch sizes, ± 3/32 inch for 1 1/8-to 1 1/4-inch sizes; on length of square *C*, ±1/32 inch for 1/4- to 1-inch sizes, ± 1/16 inch for 1 1/8-to 1 1/4-inch sizes; on shank diameter *D* –.001 to –.005 inch for 1/4- to 1-inch sizes, –.0015 to –.006 inch for 1 1/8- to 1 1/4-inch sizes; on size of square, –.004 inch for 1/4- to 1/2-inch sizes. –.006 inch for 9/16- to 1-inch sizes, and –.008 inch for 1 1/8- to 1 1/4-inch sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Taper Shank Jobbers Reamers—Straight Flutes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



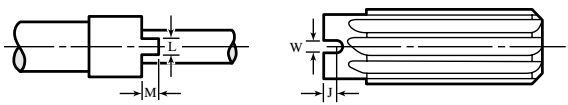
Reamer Diameter		Length Overall *A*	Length of Flute *B*	No. of Morse Taper Shank[a]	No. of Flutes
Fractional	Dec. Equiv.				
1/4	0.2500	5 3/16	2	1	6 to 8
5/16	0.3125	5 1/2	2 1/4	1	6 to 8
3/8	0.3750	5 13/16	2 1/2	1	6 to 8
7/16	0.4375	6 1/8	2 3/4	1	6 to 8
1/2	0.5000	6 7/16	3	1	6 to 8
9/16	0.5625	6 3/4	3 1/4	1	6 to 8
5/8	0.6250	7 9/16	3 1/2	2	6 to 8
11/16	0.6875	8	3 7/8	2	8 to 10
3/4	0.7500	8 3/8	4 3/16	2	8 to 10
13/16	0.8125	8 13/16	4 9/16	2	8 to 10
7/8	0.8750	9 3/16	4 7/8	2	8 to 10
15/16	0.9375	10	5 1/8	3	8 to 10
1	1.0000	10 3/8	5 7/16	3	8 to 10
1 1/16	1.0625	10 5/8	5 5/8	3	8 to 10
1 1/8	1.1250	10 7/8	5 13/16	3	8 to 10
1 3/16	1.1875	11 1/8	6	3	8 to 12
1 1/4	1.2500	12 9/16	6 1/8	4	8 to 12
1 3/8	1.3750	12 13/16	6 5/16	4	10 to 12
1 1/2	1.5000	13 1/8	6 1/2	4	10 to 12

[a] American National Standard self-holding tapers (Table 7a on page 1020.)

All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

Tolerances: On reamer diameter, 1/4-inch size, +.0001 to +.0004 inch; over 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., +.0001 to +.0005 inch; over 1-inch size, +.0002 to +.0006 inch. On overall length *A* and length of flute *B*, 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., ±1/16 inch; and 1 1/16- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., ±3/32 inch.

American National Standard Driving Slots and Lugs for Shell Reamers or Shell Reamer Arbors *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*

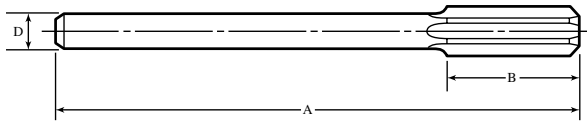


Arbor Size No.	Fitting Reamer Sizes	Driving Slot		Lug on Arbor		Reamer Hole Dia. at Large End
		Width *W*	Depth *J*	Width *L*	Depth *M*	
4	3/4	5/32	3/16	9/64	5/32	0.375
5	13/16 to 1	3/16	1/4	11/64	7/32	0.500
6	1 1/16 to 1 1/4	3/16	1/4	11/64	7/32	0.625
7	1 5/16 to 1 5/8	1/4	5/16	15/64	9/32	0.750
8	1 11/16 to 2	1/4	5/16	15/64	9/32	1.000
9	2 1/16 to 2 1/2	5/16	3/8	19/64	11/32	1.250

All dimension are given in inches. The hole in shell reamers has a taper of 1/8 inch per foot, with arbors tapered to correspond. Shell reamer arbor tapers are made to permit a driving fit with the reamer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Straight-Shank Chucking Reamers—Straight Flutes, Wire Gage Sizes
ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)



Reamer Diameter		Lgth. Overall *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Dia. *D*		No. of Flutes	Reamer Diameter		Lgth. Overall *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Dia. *D*		No. of Flutes
Wire Gage	Inch			Max.	Min.		Wire Gage	Inch			Max.	Min.	
60	.0400	2½	½	.0390	.0380	4	49	.0730	3	¾	.0660	.0650	4
59	.0410	2½	½	.0390	.0380	4	48	.0760	3	¾	.0720	.0710	4
58	.0420	2½	½	.0390	.0380	4	47	.0785	3	¾	.0720	.0710	4
57	.0430	2½	½	.0390	.0380	4	46	.0810	3	¾	.0771	.0701	4
56	.0465	2½	½	.0455	.0445	4	45	.0820	3	¾	.0771	.0761	4
55	.0520	2½	½	.0510	.0500	4	44	.0860	3	¾	.0810	.0800	4
54	.0550	2½	½	.0510	.0500	4	43	.0890	3	¾	.0810	.0800	4
53	.0595	2½	½	.0585	.0575	4	42	.0935	3	¾	.0880	.0870	4
52	.0635	2½	½	.0585	.0575	4	41	.0960	3½	⅞	.0928	.0918	4 to 6
51	.0670	3	¾	.0660	.0650	4	40	.0980	3½	⅞	.0928	.0918	4 to 6
50	.0700	3	¾	.0660	.0650	4	39	.0995	3½	⅞	.0928	.0918	4 to 6
38	.1015	3½	⅞	.0950	.0940	4 to 6	19	.1660	4½	1⅛	.1595	.1585	4 to 6
37	.1040	3½	⅞	.0950	.0940	4 to 6	18	.1695	4½	1⅛	.1595	.1585	4 to 6
36	.1065	3½	⅞	.1030	.1020	4 to 6	17	.1730	4½	1⅛	.1645	.1635	4 to 6
35	.1100	3½	⅞	.1030	.1020	4 to 6	16	.1770	4½	1⅛	.1704	.1694	4 to 6
34	.1110	3½	⅞	.1055	.1045	4 to 6	15	.1800	4½	1⅛	.1755	.1745	4 to 6
33	.1130	3½	⅞	.1055	.1045	4 to 6	14	.1820	4½	1⅛	.1755	.1745	4 to 6
32	.1160	3½	⅞	.1120	.1110	4 to 6	13	.1850	4½	1⅛	.1805	.1795	4 to 6
31	.1200	3½	⅞	.1120	.1110	4 to 6	12	.1890	4½	1⅛	.1805	.1795	4 to 6
30	.1285	3½	⅞	.1190	.1180	4 to 6	11	.1910	5	1¼	.1860	.1850	4 to 6
29	.1360	4	1	.1275	.1265	4 to 6	10	.1935	5	1¼	.1860	.1850	4 to 6
28	.1405	4	1	.1350	.1340	4 to 6	9	.1960	5	1¼	.1895	.1885	4 to 6
27	.1440	4	1	.1350	.1340	4 to 6	8	.1990	5	1¼	.1895	.1885	4 to 6
26	.1470	4	1	.1430	.1420	4 to 6	7	.2010	5	1¼	.1945	.1935	4 to 6
25	.1495	4	1	.1430	.1420	4 to 6	6	.2040	5	1¼	.1945	.1935	4 to 6
24	.1520	4	1	.1460	.1450	4 to 6	5	.2055	5	1¼	.2016	.2006	4 to 6
23	.1540	4	1	.1460	.1450	4 to 6	4	.2090	5	1¼	.2016	.2006	4 to 6
22	.1570	4	1	.1510	.1500	4 to 6	3	.2130	5	1¼	.2075	.2065	4 to 6
21	.1590	4½	1⅛	.1530	.1520	4 to 6	2	2210	6	1½	.2173	.2163	4 to 6
20	.1610	4½	1⅛	.1530	.1520	4 to 6	1	.2280	6	1½	.2173	.2163	4 to 6

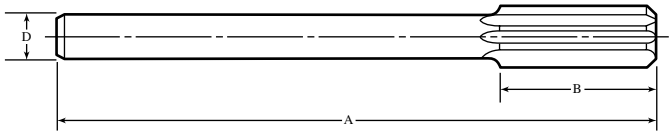
All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, plus .0001 to plus .0004 inch. On overall length *A*, plus or minus 1/16 inch. On length of flute *B*, plus or minus 1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Straight-Shank Chucking Reamers—Straight Flutes, Letter Sizes

ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)



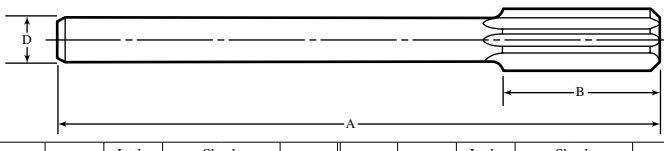
Reamer Diameter		Lgth. Over-all *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Dia. *D*		No. of Flutes	Reamer Diameter		Lgth. Over-all *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Dia. *D*		No. of Flutes
Letter	Inch			Max.	Min.		Letter	Inch			Max.	Min.	
A	0.2340	6	1½	0.2265	.2255	4 to 6	N	0.3020	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
B	0.2380	6	1½	0.2329	.2319	4 to 6	O	0.3160	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
C	0.2420	6	1½	0.2329	.2319	4 to 6	P	0.3230	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
D	0.2460	6	1½	0.2329	.2319	4 to 6	Q	0.3320	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
E	0.2500	6	1½	0.2405	.2395	4 to 6	R	0.3390	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
F	0.2570	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	S	0.3480	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
G	0.2610	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	T	0.3580	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
H	0.2660	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	U	0.3680	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
I	0.2720	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	V	0.3770	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
J	0.2770	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	W	0.3860	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
K	0.2810	6	1½	0.2485	.2475	4 to 6	X	0.3970	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
L	0.2900	6	1½	0.2792	.2782	4 to 6	Y	0.4040	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
M	0.2950	6	1½	0.2792	.2782	4 to 6	Z	0.4130	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8

All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, for sizes A to E, incl., plus .0001 to plus .0004 inch and for sizes F to Z, incl., plus .0001 to plus .0005 inch. On overall length *A*, plus or minus 1/16 inch. On length of flute *B*, plus or minus 1/16 inch.

Straight-Shank Chucking Reamers— Straight Flutes, Decimal Sizes

ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)



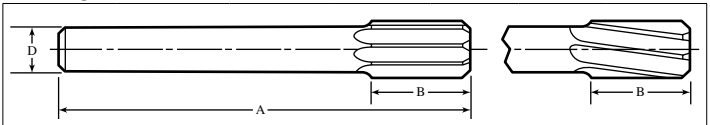
Reamer Dia.	Lgth. Overall *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Diameter *D*		No. of Flutes	Reamer Dia.	Lgth. Overall *A*	Lgth. of Flute *B*	Shank Diameter *D*		No. of Flutes
			Max.	Min.					Max.	Min.	
0.1240	3½	⅞	0.1190	0.1180	4 to 6	0.3135	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
0.1260	3½	⅞	0.1190	0.1180	4 to 6	0.3740	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	6 to 8
0.1865	4½	1⅛	0.1805	0.1795	4 to 6	0.3760	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	6 to 8
0.1885	4½	1⅛	0.1805	0.1795	4 to 6	0.4365	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
0.2490	6	1½	0.2405	0.2395	4 to 6	0.4385	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
0.2510	6	1½	0.2405	0.2395	4 to 6	0.4990	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
0.3115	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6	0.5010	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8

All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, for 0.124 to 0.249-inch sizes, plus .0001 to plus .0004 inch and for 0.251 to 0.501-inch sizes, plus .0001 to plus .0005 inch. On overall length *A*, plus or minus 1/16 inch. On length of flute *B*, plus or minus 1/16 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Straight-Shank Rose Chucking and Chucking Reamers—Straight and Helical Flutes, Fractional Sizes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



Reamer Diameter		Length	Flute	Shank Dia. *D*		No. of
Chucking	Rose Chucking	Overall *A*	Length *B*	Max.	Min.	Flutes
3/64[a]	…	2½	½	0.0455	0.0445	4
1/16	…	2½	½	0.0585	0.0575	4
5/64	…	3	¾	0.0720	0.0710	4
3/32	…	3	¾	0.0880	0.0870	4
7/64	…	3½	⅞	0.1030	0.1020	4 to 6
1/8	1/8[a]	3½	⅞	0.1190	0.1180	4 to 6
9/64	…	4	1	0.1350	0.1340	4 to 6
5/32	…	4	1	0.1510	0.1500	4 to 6
11/64	…	4½	1⅛	0.1645	0.1635	4 to 6
3/16	3/16[a]	4½	1⅛	0.1805	0.1795	4 to 6
13/64	…	5	1¼	0.1945	0.1935	4 to 6
7/32	…	5	1¼	0.2075	0.2065	4 to 6
15/64	…	6	1½	0.2265	0.2255	4 to 6
1/4	1/4[a]	6	1½	0.2405	0.2395	4 to 6
17/64	…	6	1½	0.2485	0.2475	4 to 6
9/32	…	6	1½	0.2485	0.2475	4 to 6
19/64	…	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
5/16	5/16[a]	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
21/64	…	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
11/32	…	6	1½	0.2792	0.2782	4 to 6
23/64	…	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
3/8	3/8[a]	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
25/64	…	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
13/32	…	7	1¾	0.3105	0.3095	4 to 6
27/64	…	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
7/16	7/16[a]	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
29/64	…	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
15/32	…	7	1¾	0.3730	0.3720	6 to 8
31/64	…	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
1/2	1/2[a]	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
17/32	…	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
9/16	…	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
19/32	…	8	2	0.4355	0.4345	6 to 8
5/8	…	9	2¼	0.5620	0.5605	6 to 8
21/32	…	9	2¼	0.5620	0.5605	6 to 8
11/16	…	9	2¼	0.5620	0.5605	6 to 8
23/32	…	9	2¼	0.5620	0.5605	6 to 8
3/4	…	9½	2½	0.6245	0.6230	6 to 8
25/32	…	9½	2½	0.6245	0.6230	8 to 10
13/16	…	9½	2½	0.6245	0.6230	8 to 10
27/32	…	9½	2½	0.6245	0.6230	8 to 10
7/8	…	10	2⅝	0.7495	0.7480	8 to 10
29/32	…	10	2⅝	0.7495	0.7480	8 to 10
15/16	…	10	2⅝	0.7495	0.7480	8 to 10
31/32	…	10	2⅝	0.7495	0.7480	8 to 10
1	…	10½	2¾	0.8745	0.8730	8 to 12
1 1/16	…	10½	2¾	0.8745	0.8730	8 to 12
1 1/8	…	11	2⅞	0.8745	0.8730	8 to 12
1 3/16	…	11	2⅞	0.9995	0.9980	8 to 12
1 1/4	…	11½	3	0.9995	0.9980	8 to 12
1 5/16[b]	…	11½	3	0.9995	0.9980	10 to 12
1 3/8	…	12	3¼	0.9995	0.9980	10 to 12
1 7/16[b]	…	12	3¼	1.2495	1.2480	10 to 12
1 1/2	…	12½	3½	1.2495	1.2480	10 to 12

[a] Reamer with straight flutes is standard only.
[b] Reamer with helical flutes is standard only.

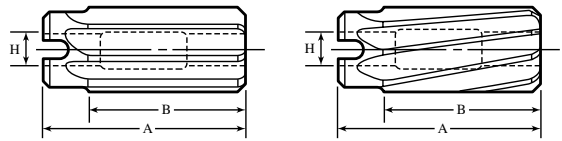
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel. Chucking reamers are end cutting on the chamfer and the relief for the outside diameter is ground in back of the margin for the full length of land. Lands of rose chucking reamers are not relieved on the periphery but have a relatively large amount of back taper.

Tolerances: On reamer diameter, up to 1/4-inch size, incl., + .0001 to + .0004 inch; over 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., + .0001 to + .0005 inch; over 1-inch size, + .0002 to + .0006 inch. On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, up to 1-inch size, incl., ±1/16 inch; 1 1/16- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., ±3/32 inch.

Helical flutes are right- or left-hand helix, right-hand cut, except sizes 1 1/16 through 1 1/2 inches, which are right-hand helix only.

Shell Reamers—Straight and Helical Flutes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



Diameter of Reamer	Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	Hole Diameter Large End *H*	Fitting Arbor No.	Number of Flutes
3/4	2 1/4	1 1/2	0.375	4	8 to 10
7/8	2 1/2	1 3/4	0.500	5	8 to 10
15/16[a]	2 1/2	1 3/4	0.500	5	8 to 10
1	2 1/2	1 3/4	0.500	5	8 to 10
1 1/16	2 3/4	2	0.625	6	8 to 12
1 1/8	2 3/4	2	0.625	6	8 to 12
1 3/16	2 3/4	2	0.625	6	8 to 12
1 1/4	2 3/4	2	0.625	6	8 to 12
1 5/16	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	8 to 12
1 3/8	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	8 to 12
1 7/16	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	8 to 12
1 1/2	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	10 to 14
1 9/16	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	10 to 14
1 5/8	3	2 1/4	0.750	7	10 to 14
1 11/16	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	10 to 14
1 3/4	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	12 to 14
1 13/16	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	12 to 14
1 7/8	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	12 to 14
1 15/16	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	12 to 14
2	3 1/2	2 1/2	1.000	8	12 to 14
2 1/16[a]	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	12 to 16
2 1/8	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	12 to 16
2 3/16[a]	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	12 to 16
2 1/4	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	12 to 16
2 3/8[a]	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	14 to 16
2 1/2[a]	3 3/4	2 3/4	1.250	9	14 to 16

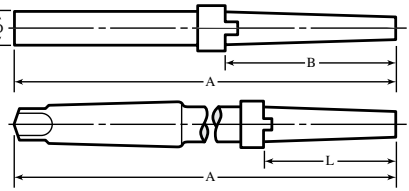
[a] Helical flutes only.

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel. Helical flute shell reamers with left-hand helical flutes are standard. Shell reamers are designed as a sizing or finishing reamer and are held on an arbor provided with driving lugs. The holes in these reamers are ground with a taper of 1/8 inch per foot.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, 3/4- to 1-inch size, incl., + .0001 to + .0005 inch; over 1-inch size, + .0002 to + .0006 inch. On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, 3/4- to 1-inch size, incl., ± 1/16 inch; 1 1/16- to 2-inch size, incl., ± 3/32 inch; 2 1/16- to 2 1/2-inch size, incl., ± 1/8 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Arbors for Shell Reamers—Straight and Taper Shanks *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*

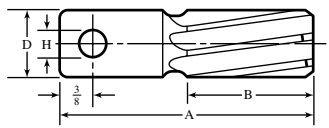


Arbor Size No.	Overall Length *A*	Approx. Length of Taper *L*	Reamer Size	Taper Shank No.[a]	Straight Shank Dia. *D*	Arbor Size No.	Overall Length *A*	Approx. Length of Taper *L*	Reamer Size	Taper Shank No.[a]	Straight Shank Dia. *D*
4	9	2¼	¾	2	½	7	11	3	1 5/16 to 1 5/8	3	⅞
5	9½	2½	1 3/16 to 1	2	⅝	8	12	3½	1 1/16 to 2	4	1⅛
6	10	2¾	1 1/16 to 1¼	3	¾	9	13	3¾	2 1/16 to 2½	4	1⅜

[a] American National Standard self-holding tapers (see Table 7a on page 1020).

All dimensions are given in inches. These arbors are designed to fit standard shell reamers (see table). End that fits reamer has taper of 1/8 inch per foot.

Stub Screw Machine Reamers—Helical Flutes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



Series No.	Diameter Range	Length Overall *A*	Length of Flute *B*	Dia. of Shank *D*	Size of Hole *H*	Flute No.	Series No.	Diameter Range	Length Overall *A*	Length of Flute *B*	Dia. of Shank *D*	Size of Hole *H*	Flute No.
00	.0600-.066	1¾	½	⅛	1/16	4	12	.3761-.407	2½	1¼	½	3/16	6
0	.0661-.074	1¾	½	⅛	1/16	4	13	.4071-.439	2½	1¼	½	3/16	6
1	.0741-.084	1¾	½	⅛	1/16	4	14	.4391-.470	2½	1¼	½	3/16	6
2	.0841-.096	1¾	½	⅛	1/16	4	15	.4701-.505	2½	1¼	½	3/16	6
3	.0961-.126	2	¾	⅛	1/16	4	16	.5051-.567	3	1½	⅝	¼	6
4	.1261-.158	2¼	1	¼	3/32	4	17	.5671-.630	3	1½	⅝	¼	6
5	.1581-.188	2¼	1	¼	3/32	4	18	.6301-.692	3	1½	⅝	¼	6
6	.1881-.219	2¼	1	¼	3/32	6	19	.6921-.755	3	1½	¾	5/16	8
7	.2191-.251	2¼	1	¼	3/32	6	20	.7551-.817	3	1½	¾	5/16	8
8	.2511-.282	2¼	1	⅜	⅛	6	21	.8171-.880	3	1½	¾	5/16	8
9	.2821-.313	2¼	1	⅜	⅛	6	22	.8801-.942	3	1½	¾	5/16	8
10	.3131-.344	2½	1¼	⅜	⅛	6	23	.9421-1.010	3	1½	¾	5/16	8
11	.3441-.376	2½	1¼	⅜	⅛	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

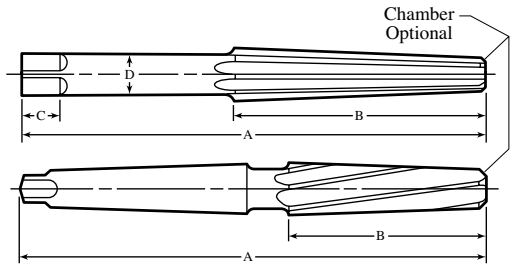
All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel.

These reamers are standard with right-hand cut and left-hand helical flutes within the size ranges shown.

Tolerances: On diameter of reamer, for sizes 00 to 7, incl., plus .0001 to plus .0004 inch and for sizes 8 to 23, incl., plus .0001 to plus .0005 inch. On overall length *A*, plus or minus 1/16 inch. On length of flute *B*, plus or minus 1/16 inch. On diameter of shank *D*, minus .0005 to minus .002 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Morse Taper Finishing Reamers
ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)



Straight Flutes and Squared Shank							
Taper No.[a]	Small End Dia. (Ref.)	Large End Dia. (Ref.)	Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	Square Length *C*	Shank Dia. *D*	Square Size
0	0.2503	0.3674	3¾	2¼	5/16	5/16	0.235
1	0.3674	0.5170	5	3	7/16	7/16	0.330
2	0.5696	0.7444	6	3½	5/8	5/8	0.470
3	0.7748	0.9881	7¼	4¼	7/8	7/8	0.655
4	1.0167	1.2893	8½	5¼	1	1⅛	0.845
5	1.4717	1.8005	9¾	6¼	1⅛	1½	1.125

Straight and Spiral Flutes and Taper Shank						
Taper No.[a]	Small End Dia. (Ref.)	Large End Dia. (Ref.)	Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	Taper Shank No.[a]	Squared and Taper Shank Number of Flutes
0	0.2503	0.3674	5 11/32	2¼	0	4 to 6 incl.
1	0.3674	0.5170	6 5/16	3	1	6 to 8 incl.
2	0.5696	0.7444	7⅜	3½	2	6 to 8 incl.
3	0.7748	0.9881	8⅞	4¼	3	8 to 10 incl.
4	1.0167	1.2893	10⅞	5¼	4	8 to 10 incl.
5	1.4717	1.8005	13⅛	6¼	5	10 to 12 incl.

[a] Morse. For amount of taper see Table on page 1013.

All dimension are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel. The chamfer on the cutting end of the reamer is optional. Squared shank reamers are standard with straight flutes. Tapered shank reamers are standard with straight or spiral flutes. Spiral flute reamers are standard with left-hand spiral flutes.

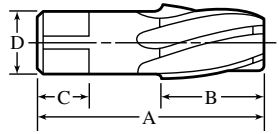
Tolerances: On overall length *A* and flute length *B*, in taper numbers 0 to 3, incl., ±1/16 inch, in taper numbers 4 and 5, ±3/32 inch. On length of square *C*, in taper numbers 0 to 3, incl., ±1/32 inch; in taper numbers 4 and 5, ±1/16 inch. On shank diameter *D*, –.0005 to –.002 inch. On size of square, in taper numbers 0 and 1, –.004 inch; in taper numbers 2 and 3, –.006 inch; in taper numbers 4 and 5, –.008 inch.

Center Reamers.—A "center reamer" is a reamer the teeth of which meet in a point. By their use, small conical holes may be reamed in the ends of parts to be machined as on lathe centers. When large holes—usually cored—must be center-reamed, a large reamer is ordinarily used in which the teeth do not meet in a point, the reamer forming the frustum of a cone. Center reamers for such work are called "bull" or "pipe" center reamers.

Bull Center Reamer: A conical reamer used for reaming the ends of large holes—usually cored—so that they will fit on a lathe center. The cutting part of the reamer is generally in the shape of a frustum of a cone. It is also known as a pipe center reamer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Taper Pipe Reamers—Spiral Flutes *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



Nom. Size	Diameter		Length Overall *A*	Flute Length *B*	Square Length *C*	Shank Diameter *D*	Size of Square	No. of Flutes
	Large End	Small End						
1/8	0.362	0.316	2 1/8	3/4	3/8	0.4375	0.328	4 to 6
1/4	0.472	0.406	2 7/16	1 1/16	7/16	0.5625	0.421	4 to 6
3/8	0.606	0.540	2 9/16	1 1/16	1/2	0.7000	0.531	4 to 6
1/2	0.751	0.665	3 1/8	1 3/8	5/8	0.6875	0.515	4 to 6
3/4	0.962	0.876	3 1/4	1 3/8	11/16	0.9063	0.679	6 to 10
1	1.212	1.103	3 3/4	1 3/4	13/16	1.1250	0.843	6 to 10
1 1/4	1.553	1.444	4	1 3/4	15/16	1.3125	0.984	6 to 10
1 1/2	1.793	1.684	4 1/4	1 3/4	1	1.5000	1.125	6 to 10
2	2.268	2.159	4 1/2	1 3/4	1 1/8	1.8750	1.406	8 to 12

All dimensions are given in inches. These reamers are tapered 3/4 inch per foot and are intended for reaming holes to be tapped with American National Standard Taper Pipe Thread taps. Material is high-speed steel. Reamers are standard with left-hand spiral flutes.

Tolerances: On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, 1/8- to 3/4-inch size, incl., ±1/16 inch; 1- to 1 1/2-inch size, incl., ±3/32 inch; 2-inch size, ±1/8 inch. On length of square *C*, 1/8- to 3/4-inch size, incl., ±1/32 inch; 1- to 2-inch size, incl., ±1/16 inch. On shank diameter *D*, 1/8-inch size, – .0015 inch; 1/4- to 1-inch size, incl., – .002 inch; 1 1/4- to 2-inch size, incl., – .003 inch. On size of square, 1/8-inch size, – .004 inch; 1/4- to 3/4-inch size, incl., – .006 inch; 1- to 2-inch size, incl., – .008 inch.

B & S Taper Reamers—Straight and Spiral Flutes, Squared Shank

Taper No.[a]	Dia., Small End	Dia., Large End	Overall Length	Square Length	Flute Length	Dia. of Shank	Size of Square	No. of Flutes
1	0.1974	0.3176	4 3/4	1/4	2 7/8	9/32	0.210	4 to 6
2	0.2474	0.3781	5 1/8	5/16	3 1/8	11/32	0.255	4 to 6
3	0.3099	0.4510	5 1/2	3/8	3 3/8	13/32	0.305	4 to 6
4	0.3474	0.5017	5 7/8	7/16	3 11/16	7/16	0.330	4 to 6
5	0.4474	0.6145	6 3/8	1/2	4	9/16	0.420	4 to 6
6	0.4974	0.6808	6 7/8	5/8	4 3/8	5/8	0.470	4 to 6
7	0.5974	0.8011	7 1/2	3/4	4 7/8	3/4	0.560	6 to 8
8	0.7474	0.9770	8 1/8	13/16	5 1/2	13/16	0.610	6 to 8
9	0.8974	1.1530	8 7/8	7/8	6 1/8	1	0.750	6 to 8
10	1.0420	1.3376	9 3/4	1	6 7/8	1 1/8	0.845	6 to 8

[a] For taper per foot, see Table 10 on page 1023.

These reamers are no longer ANSI/ASME Standard.

All dimensions are given in inches. Material is high-speed steel. The chamfer on the cutting end of the reamer is optional. All reamers are finishing reamers. Spiral flute reamers are standard with left-hand spiral flutes. (Tapered reamers, especially those with left-hand spirals, should not have circular lands because cutting must take place on the outer diameter of the tool.) B & S taper reamers are designed for use in reaming out Brown & Sharpe standard taper sockets.

Tolerances: On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, taper nos. 1 to 7, incl., ±1/16 inch; taper nos. 8 to 10, incl., ±3/32 inch. On length of square *C*, taper nos. 1 to 9, incl., ±1/32 inch; taper no. 10, ±1/16 inch. On shank diameter *D*, – .0005 to – .002 inch. On size of square, taper nos. 1 to 3, incl., – .004 inch; taper nos. 4 to 9, incl., – .006 inch; taper no. 10, – .008 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Die-Makers' Reamers *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*

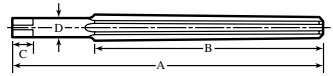
Letter Size	Diameter		Length		Letter Size	Diameter		Length		Letter Size	Diameter		Length	
	Small End	Large End	*A*	*B*		Small End	Large End	*A*	*B*		Small End	Large End	*A*	*B*
AAA	0.055	0.070	2¼	1⅛	G	0.135	0.158	3	1¾	O	0.250	0.296	5	3½
AA	0.065	0.080	2¼	1⅛	H	0.145	0.169	3¼	1⅞	P	0.275	0.327	5½	4
A	0.075	0.090	2¼	1⅛	I	0.160	0.184	3¼	1⅞	Q	0.300	0.358	6	4½
B	0.085	0.103	2⅜	1⅜	J	0.175	0.199	3¼	1⅞	R	0.335	0.397	6½	4¾
C	0.095	0.113	2½	1⅜	K	0.190	0.219	3½	2¼	S	0.370	0.435	6¾	5
D	0.105	0.126	2⅝	1⅝	L	0.205	0.234	3½	2¼	T	0.405	0.473	7	5¼
E	0.115	0.136	2¾	1⅝	M	0.220	0.252	4	2½	U	0.440	0.511	7¼	5½
F	0.125	0.148	3	1¾	N	0.235	0.274	4½	3	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions in inches. Material is high-speed steel. These reamers are designed for use in diemaking, have a taper of $\frac{3}{4}$ degree included angle or 0.013 inch per inch, and have 2 or 3 flutes. Reamers are standard with left-hand spiral flutes.

Tip of reamer may have conical end.

Tolerances: On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, $\pm 1/16$ inch.

Taper Pin Reamers — Straight and Left-Hand Spiral Flutes, Squared Shank; and Left-Hand High-Spiral Flutes, Round Shank *ANSI/ASME B94.2-1995 (R2015)*



No. of Taper Pin Reamer	Diameter at Large End of Reamer (Ref.)	Diameter at Small End of Reamer (Ref.)	Overall Length of Reamer *A*	Length of Flute *B*	Length of Square *C*[a]	Diameter of Shank *D*	Size of Square[a]
8/0[b]	0.0514	0.0351	1⅝	25/32	…	1/16	…
7/0	0.0666	0.0497	1 13/16	13/16	5/32	5/64	0.060
6/0	0.0806	0.0611	1 15/16	15/16	5/32	3/32	0.070
5/0	0.0966	0.0719	2 1/16	1 1/16	5/32	7/64	0.080
4/0	0.1142	0.0869	2 1/16	1 1/16	5/32	1/8	0.095
3/0	0.1302	0.1029	2 1/16	1 1/16	5/32	9/64	0.105
2/0	0.1462	0.1137	2 9/16	1 9/16	7/32	5/32	0.115
0	0.1638	0.1287	2 15/16	1 11/16	7/32	11/64	0.130
1	0.1798	0.1447	2 15/16	1 11/16	7/32	3/16	0.140
2	0.2008	0.1605	3 3/16	1 15/16	1/4	13/64	0.150
3	0.2294	0.1813	3 11/16	2 5/16	1/4	15/64	0.175
4	0.2604	0.2071	4 1/16	2 9/16	1/4	17/64	0.200
5	0.2994	0.2409	4 5/16	2 13/16	5/16	5/16	0.235
6	0.3540	0.2773	5 7/16	3 11/16	3/8	23/64	0.270
7	0.4220	0.3297	6 5/16	4 7/16	3/8	13/32	0.305
8	0.5050	0.3971	7 3/16	5 3/16	7/16	7/16	0.330
9	0.6066	0.4805	8 5/16	6 1/16	9/16	9/16	0.420
10	0.7216	0.5799	9 5/16	6 13/16	5/8	5/8	0.470

[a] Not applicable to high-spiral flute reamers.

[b] Not applicable to straight and left-hand spiral-fluted, squared-shank reamers.

All dimensions in inches. Reamers have a taper of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch per foot and are made of high-speed steel. Straight flute reamers of carbon steel are also standard. The number of flutes is as follows; 3 or 4, for 7/0 to 4/0 sizes; 4 to 6, for 3/0 to 0 sizes; 5 or 6, for 1 to 5 sizes; 6 to 8, for 6 to 9 sizes; 7 or 8, for the 10 size in the case of straight- and spiral-flute reamers; and 2 or 3, for 8/0 to 8 sizes; 2 to 4, for the 9 and 10 sizes in the case of high-spiral flute reamers.

Tolerances: On length overall *A* and flute length *B*, $\pm 1/16$ inch. On length of square *C*, $\pm 1/32$ inch. On shank diameter *D*, –.001 to –.005 inch for straight- and spiral-flute reamers and –.0005 to –.002 inch for high-spiral flute reamers. On size of square, –.004 inch for 7/0 to 7 sizes and –.006 inch for 8 to 10 sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TWIST DRILLS AND COUNTERBORES

Twist drills are rotary end-cutting tools having one or more cutting lips and one or more straight or helical flutes for the passage of chips and cutting fluids. Twist drills are made with straight or tapered shanks, but most have straight shanks. All but the smaller sizes are ground with "back taper," reducing the diameter from the point toward the shank, to prevent binding in the hole when the drill is worn.

Straight-Shank Drills: Straight-shank drills have cylindrical shanks that may be of the same or of a different diameter than the body diameter of the drill and may be made with or without driving flats, tang, or grooves.

Taper-Shank Drills: Taper-shank drills are preferable to the straight-shank type for drilling medium- and large-size holes. The taper on the shank conforms to one of the tapers in the American Standard (Morse) Series.

American National Standard.—American National Standard B94.11M-1993 covers nomenclature, definitions, sizes and tolerances for High-Speed Steel Straight- and Taper-Shank Drills and Combined Drills and Countersinks, Plain and Bell types. It covers both inch and metric sizes. Dimensional tables from the Standard will be found on the following pages.

Definitions of Twist Drill Terms.—The following definitions are included in the Standard.

Axis: The imaginary straight line that forms the longitudinal center of the drill.

Back Taper: A slight decrease in diameter from point to back in the body of the drill.

Body: The portion of the drill extending from the shank or neck to the outer corners of the cutting lips.

Body Diameter Clearance: That portion of the land that has been cut away so it will not rub against the wall of the hole.

Chisel Edge: The edge at the ends of the web that connects the cutting lips.

Chisel Edge Angle: The angle included between the chisel edge and the cutting lip as viewed from the end of the drill.

Clearance Diameter: The diameter over the cutaway portion of the drill lands.

Drill Diameter: The diameter over the margins of the drill measured at the point.

Flutes: Helical or straight grooves cut or formed in the body of the drill to provide cutting lips, to permit removal of chips, and to allow cutting fluid to reach the cutting lips.

Helix Angle: The angle made by the leading edge of the land with a plane containing the axis of the drill.

Land: The peripheral portion of the drill body between adjacent flutes.

Land Width: The distance between the leading edge and the heel of the land measured at a right angle to the leading edge.

Lips—Two-Flute Drill: The cutting edges extending from the chisel edge to the periphery.

Lips—Three- or Four-Flute Drill (Core Drill): The cutting edges extending from the bottom of the chamfer to the periphery.

Lip Relief: The axial relief on the drill point.

Lip Relief Angle: The axial relief angle at the outer corner of the lip. It is measured by projection into a plane tangent to the periphery at the outer corner of the lip. (Lip relief angle is usually measured across the margin of the twist drill.)

Margin: The cylindrical portion of the land that is not cut away to provide clearance.

Neck: The section of reduced diameter between the body and the shank of a drill.

Overall Length: The length from the extreme end of the shank to the outer corners of the cutting lips. It does not include the conical-shank end often used on straight-shank drills, nor does it include the conical cutting point used on both straight- and taper-shank drills. (For core drills with an external center on the cutting end, the overall length is the same as for two-flute drills. For core drills with an internal center on the cutting end, the overall length is to the extreme ends of the tool.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Point: The cutting end of a drill made up of the ends of the lands, the web, and the lips. In form, it resembles a cone but departs from a true cone to furnish clearance behind the cutting lips.

Point Angle: The angle included between the lips projected upon a plane parallel to the drill axis and parallel to the cutting lips.

Shank: The part of the drill by which it is held and driven.

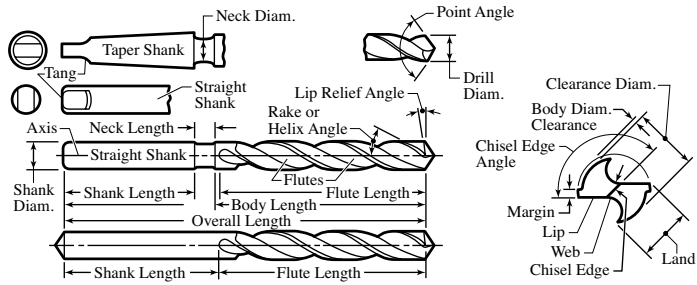
Tang: The flattened end of a taper shank, intended to fit into a driving slot in the socket.

Tang Drive: Two opposite parallel driving flats on the end of a straight shank.

Web: The central portion of the body that joins the end of the lands. The end of the web forms the chisel edge on a two-flute drill.

Web Thickness: The thickness of the web at the point unless another specific location is indicated.

Web Thinning: The operation of reducing the web thickness at the point to reduce drilling thrust.



ANSI Standard Twist Drill Nomenclature

Types of Drills.—Drills may be classified based on the type of shank, number of flutes or hand of cut.

Straight-Shank Drills: Those having cylindrical shanks that may be the same or a different diameter than the body of the drill. The shank may be with or without driving flats, tang, grooves, or threads.

Taper-Shank Drills: Those having conical shanks suitable for direct fitting into tapered holes in machine spindles, driving sleeves, or sockets. Tapered shanks generally have a driving tang.

Two-Flute Drills: The conventional type of drill used for originating holes.

Three-Flute Drills (Core Drills): Drills commonly used for enlarging and finishing drilled, cast or punched holes. They will not produce original holes.

Four-Flute Drills (Core Drills): Used interchangeably with three-flute drills. They are of similar construction except for the number of flutes.

Right-Hand Cut: When viewed from the cutting point, the counterclockwise rotation of a drill in order to cut.

Left-Hand Cut: When viewed from the cutting point, the clockwise rotation of a drill in order to cut.

Teat Drill: The cutting edges of a teat drill are at right angles to the axis, and in the center there is a small teat of pyramid shape which leads the drill and holds it in position. This form is used for squaring the bottoms of holes made by ordinary twist drills or for drilling the entire hole, especially if it is not very deep and a square bottom is required. For instance, when drilling holes to form clearance spaces at the end of a keyseat, preparatory to cutting it out by planing or chipping, the teat drill is commonly used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

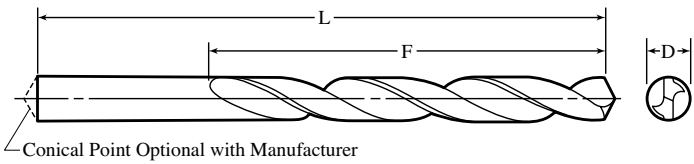


Table 1. ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.		Equivalent		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall	
				F		*L*		*F*		*L*		*F*		*L*	
	mm	Decimal Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
97	0.15	0.0059	0.150	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
96	0.16	0.0063	0.160	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
95	0.17	0.0067	0.170	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
94	0.18	0.0071	0.180	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
93	0.19	0.0075	0.190	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
92	0.20	0.0079	0.200	1/16	1.6	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
91		0.0083	0.211	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
90	0.22	0.0087	0.221	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
89		0.0091	0.231	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
88		0.0095	0.241	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.25	0.0098	0.250	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
87		0.0100	0.254	5/64	2.0	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
86		0.0105	0.267	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
85	0.28	0.0110	0.280	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
84		0.0115	0.292	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.30	0.0118	0.300	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
83		0.0120	0.305	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
82		0.0125	0.318	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.32	0.0126	0.320	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
81		0.0130	0.330	3/32	2.4	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
80		0.0135	0.343	1/8	3	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.35	0.0138	0.350	1/8	3	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
79		0.0145	0.368	1/8	3	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.38	0.0150	0.380	3/16	5	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/64		0.0156	0.396	3/16	5	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.40	0.0157	0.400	3/16	5	3/4	19	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
78		0.0160	0.406	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.42	0.0165	0.420	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.45	0.0177	0.450	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
77		0.0180	0.457	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.48	0.0189	0.480	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.50	0.0197	0.500	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
76		0.0200	0.508	3/16	5	7/8	22	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
75		0.0210	0.533	1/4	6	1	25	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.55	0.0217	0.550	1/4	6	1	25	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
74		0.0225	0.572	1/4	6	1	25	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.60	0.0236	0.600	5/16	8	1 1/8	29	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.		Equivalent		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall	
				F		L		F		L		F		L	
	mm	Decimal Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
73		0.0240	0.610	5/16	8	1 1/8	29	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
72		0.0250	0.635	5/16	8	1 1/8	29	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.65	0.0256	0.650	3/8	10	1 1/4	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
71		0.0260	0.660	3/8	10	1 1/4	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.70	0.0276	0.700	3/8	10	1 1/4	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
70		0.0280	0.711	3/8	10	1 1/4	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
69		0.0292	0.742	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.75	0.0295	0.750	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
68		0.0310	0.787	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/32		0.0312	0.792	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.80	0.0315	0.800	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
67		0.0320	0.813	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
66		0.0330	0.838	1/2	13	1 3/8	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.85	0.0335	0.850	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
65		0.0350	0.889	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.90	0.0354	0.899	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
64		0.0360	0.914	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
63		0.0370	0.940	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	0.95	0.0374	0.950	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
62		0.0380	0.965	5/8	16	1 1/2	38	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
61		0.0390	0.991	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	1.00	0.0394	1.000	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
60		0.0400	1.016	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
59		0.0410	1.041	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
	1.05	0.0413	1.050	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
58		0.0420	1.067	11/16	17	1 5/8	41	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
57		0.0430	1.092	3/4	19	1 3/4	44	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
	1.10	0.0433	1.100	3/4	19	1 3/4	44	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
	1.15	0.0453	1.150	3/4	19	1 3/4	44	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
56		0.0465	1.181	3/4	19	1 3/4	44	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
3/64		0.0469	1.191	3/4	19	1 3/4	44	1 1/8	29	2 1/4	57	1/2	13	1 3/8	35
	1.20	0.0472	1.200	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.25	0.0492	1.250	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.30	0.0512	1.300	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
55		0.0520	1.321	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.35	0.0531	1.350	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
54		0.0550	1.397	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.40	0.0551	1.400	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.45	0.0571	1.450	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.50	0.0591	1.500	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
53		0.0595	1.511	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.55	0.0610	1.550	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
1/16		0.0625	1.588	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	1 3/4	44	3	76	5/8	16	1 5/8	41
	1.60	0.0630	1.600	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	2	51	3 3/4	95	11/16	17	1 11/16	43
52		0.0635	1.613	7/8	22	1 7/8	48	2	51	3 3/4	95	11/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.65	0.0650	1.650	1	25	2	51	2	51	3 3/4	95	11/16	17	1 11/16	43

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.	mm	Equivalent Decimal Inch	Equivalent mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm
	1.70	0.0669	1.700	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
51		0.0670	1.702	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.75	0.0689	1.750	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
50		0.0700	1.778	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.80	0.0709	1.800	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.85	0.0728	1.850	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
49		0.0730	1.854	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.90	0.0748	1.900	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
48		0.0760	1.930	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	1.95	0.0768	1.950	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
5/64		0.0781	1.984	1	25	2	51	2	51	3¾	95	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
47		0.0785	1.994	1	25	2	51	2¼	57	4¼	108	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	2.00	0.0787	2.000	1	25	2	51	2¼	57	4¼	108	1 1/16	17	1 11/16	43
	2.05	0.0807	2.050	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
46		0.0810	2.057	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
45		0.0820	2.083	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.10	0.0827	2.100	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.15	0.0846	2.150	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
44		0.0860	2.184	1 1/8	29	2 1/8	54	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.20	0.0866	2.200	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.25	0.0886	2.250	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
43		0.0890	2.261	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.30	0.0906	2.300	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.35	0.0925	2.350	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
42		0.0935	2.375	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
3/32		0.0938	2.383	1¼	32	2¼	57	2¼	57	4¼	108	¾	19	1¾	44
	2.40	0.0945	2.400	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
41		0.0960	2.438	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
	2.46	0.0965	2.450	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
40		0.0980	2.489	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
	2.50	0.0984	2.500	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
39		0.0995	2.527	1⅜	35	2⅜	60	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
38		0.1015	2.578	1 7/16	37	2½	64	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
	2.60	0.1024	2.600	1 7/16	37	2½	64	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
37		0.1040	2.642	1 7/16	37	2½	64	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
	2.70	0.1063	2.700	1 7/16	37	2½	64	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
36		0.1065	2.705	1 7/16	37	2½	64	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
7/64		0.1094	2.779	1½	38	2⅝	67	2½	64	4⅝	117	1 3/16	21	1 13/16	46
35		0.1100	2.794	1½	38	2⅝	67	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
	2.80	0.1102	2.800	1½	38	2⅝	67	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
34		0.1110	2.819	1½	38	2⅝	67	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
33		0.1130	2.870	1½	38	2⅝	67	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
	2.90	0.1142	2.900	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
32		0.1160	2.946	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
	3.00	0.1181	3.000	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
31		0.1200	3.048	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.	mm	Equivalent Decimal Inch	Equivalent mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm	Flute F Inch	Flute F mm	Overall L Inch	Overall L mm
	3.10	0.1220	3.100	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
⅛		0.1250	3.175	1⅝	41	2¾	70	2¾	70	5⅛	130	⅞	22	1⅞	48
	3.20	0.1260	3.200	1⅝	41	2¾	70	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
30		0.1285	3.264	1⅝	41	2¾	70	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
	3.30	0.1299	3.300	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
	3.40	0.1339	3.400	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
29		0.1360	3.454	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
	3.50	0.1378	3.500	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
28		0.1405	3.569	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
9/64		0.1406	3.571	1¾	44	2⅞	73	3	76	5⅜	137	15/16	24	1 15/16	49
	3.60	0.1417	3.600	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
27		0.1440	3.658	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
	3.70	0.1457	3.700	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
26		0.1470	3.734	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
25		0.1495	3.797	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
	3.80	0.1496	3.800	1⅞	48	3	76	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
24		0.1520	3.861	2	51	3⅛	79	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
	3.90	0.1535	3.900	2	51	3⅛	79	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
23		0.1540	3.912	2	51	3⅛	79	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
5/32		0.1562	3.967	2	51	3⅛	79	3	76	5⅜	137	1	25	2 1/16	52
22		0.1570	3.988	2	51	3⅛	79	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
	4.00	0.1575	4.000	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
21		0.1590	4.039	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
20		0.1610	4.089	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
	4.10	0.1614	4.100	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
	4.20	0.1654	4.200	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
19		0.1660	4.216	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
	4.30	0.1693	4.300	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
18		0.1695	4.305	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
11/64		0.1719	4.366	2⅛	54	3¼	83	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1 1/16	27	2⅛	54
17		0.1730	4.394	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
	4.40	0.1732	4.400	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
16		0.1770	4.496	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
	4.50	0.1772	4.500	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
15		0.1800	4.572	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
	4.60	0.1811	4.600	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
14		0.1820	4.623	2 3/16	56	3⅜	86	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
13	4.70	0.1850	4.700	2 5/16	59	3½	89	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
3/16		0.1875	4.762	2 5/16	59	3½	89	3⅜	86	5¾	146	1⅛	29	2 3/16	56
12	4.80	0.1890	4.800	2 5/16	59	3½	89	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
11		0.1910	4.851	2 5/16	59	3½	89	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
	4.90	0.1929	4.900	2 7/16	62	3⅝	92	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
10		0.1935	4.915	2 7/16	62	3⅝	92	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
9		0.1960	4.978	2 7/16	62	3⅝	92	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
	5.00	0.1969	5.000	2 7/16	62	3⅝	92	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57
8		0.1990	5.054	2 7/16	62	3⅝	92	3⅝	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2¼	57

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.	mm	Equivalent Decimal Inch	mm	Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L	
				Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	5.10	0.2008	5.100	2 1/16	62	3 5/8	92	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2 1/4	57
7		0.2010	5.105	2 1/16	62	3 5/8	92	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2 1/4	57
13/64		0.2031	5.159	2 1/16	62	3 5/8	92	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 3/16	30	2 1/4	57
6		0.2040	5.182	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
	5.20	0.2047	5.200	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
5		0.2055	5.220	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
	5.30	0.2087	5.300	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
4		0.2090	5.309	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
	5.40	0.2126	5.400	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
3		0.2130	5.410	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
	5.50	0.2165	5.500	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
7/32		0.2188	5.558	2 1/2	64	3 3/4	95	3 5/8	92	6	152	1 1/4	32	2 3/8	60
	5.60	0.2205	5.600	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
2		0.2210	5.613	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
	5.70	0.2244	5.700	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
1		0.2280	5.791	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
	5.80	0.2283	5.800	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
	5.90	0.2323	5.900	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
A		0.2340	5.944	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	…	…	…	…	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
15/64		0.2344	5.954	2 5/8	67	3 7/8	98	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 5/16	33	2 7/16	62
	6.00	0.2362	6.000	2 3/4	70	4	102	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
B		0.2380	6.045	2 3/4	70	4	102	…	…	…	…	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
	6.10	0.2402	6.100	2 3/4	70	4	102	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
C		0.2420	6.147	2 3/4	70	4	102	…	…	…	…	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
	6.20	0.2441	6.200	2 3/4	70	4	102	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
D		0.2460	6.248	2 3/4	70	4	102	…	…	…	…	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
	6.30	0.2480	6.300	2 3/4	70	4	102	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
E, 1/4		0.2500	6.350	2 3/4	70	4	102	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	1 3/8	35	2 1/2	64
	6.40	0.2520	6.400	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
	6.50	0.2559	6.500	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
F		0.2570	6.528	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
	6.60	0.2598	6.600	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
G		0.2610	6.629	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
	6.70	0.2638	6.700	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
17/64		0.2656	6.746	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 7/16	37	2 5/8	67
H		0.2660	6.756	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
	6.80	0.2677	6.800	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
	6.90	0.2717	6.900	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
I		0.2720	6.909	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
	7.00	0.2756	7.000	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
J		0.2770	7.036	2 7/8	73	4 1/8	105	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
	7.10	0.2795	7.100	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
K		0.2810	7.137	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	…	…	…	…	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
9/32		0.2812	7.142	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	1 1/2	38	2 11/16	68
	7.20	0.2835	7.200	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	4	102	6 3/8	162	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
	7.30	0.2874	7.300	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	…	…	…	…	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.		Equivalent		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall		Flute		Overall	
		Decimal Inch		F		L		F		L		F		L	
	mm		mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
L		0.2900	7.366	2 15/16	75	4 1/4	108	…	…	…	…	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
	7.40	0.2913	7.400	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	…	…	…	…	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
M		0.2950	7.493	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	…	…	…	…	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
	7.50	0.2953	7.500	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	4	102	6 3/8	162	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
19/64		0.2969	7.541	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	4	102	6 3/8	162	1 9/16	40	2 3/4	70
	7.60	0.2992	7.600	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	…	…	…	…	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
N		0.3020	7.671	3 1/16	78	4 3/8	111	…	…	…	…	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
	7.70	0.3031	7.700	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	…	…	…	…	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
	7.80	0.3071	7.800	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	4	102	6 3/8	162	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
	7.90	0.3110	7.900	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	…	…	…	…	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
5/16		0.3125	7.938	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	4	102	6 3/8	162	1 5/8	41	2 13/16	71
	8.00	0.3150	8.000	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
O		0.3160	8.026	3 3/16	81	4 1/2	114	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
	8.10	0.3189	8.100	3 5/16	84	4 5/8	117	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
	8.20	0.3228	8.200	3 5/16	84	4 5/8	117	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
P		0.3230	8.204	3 5/16	84	4 5/8	117	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
	8.30	0.3268	8.300	3 5/16	84	4 5/8	117	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
21/64		0.3281	8.334	3 5/16	84	4 5/8	117	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	1 11/16	43	2 15/16	75
	8.40	0.3307	8.400	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	3	76
Q		0.3320	8.433	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	3	76
	8.50	0.3346	8.500	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	1 11/16	43	3	76
	8.60	0.3386	8.600	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	3	76
R		0.3390	8.611	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	3	76
	8.70	0.3425	8.700	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	…	…	…	…	1 11/16	43	3	76
11/32		0.3438	8.733	3 7/16	87	4 3/4	121	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	1 11/16	43	3	76
	8.80	0.3465	8.800	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
S		0.3480	8.839	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	…	…	…	…	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
	8.90	0.3504	8.900	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	…	…	…	…	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
	9.00	0.3543	9.000	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
T		0.3580	9.093	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	…	…	…	…	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
	9.10	0.3583	9.100	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	…	…	…	…	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
23/64		0.3594	9.129	3 1/2	89	4 7/8	124	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 3/4	44	3 1/16	78
	9.20	0.3622	9.200	3 5/8	92	5	127	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
	9.30	0.3661	9.300	3 5/8	92	5	127	…	…	…	…	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
U		0.3680	9.347	3 5/8	92	5	127	…	…	…	…	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
	9.40	0.3701	9.400	3 5/8	92	5	127	…	…	…	…	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
	9.50	0.3740	9.500	3 5/8	92	5	127	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
3/8		0.3750	9.525	3 5/8	92	5	127	4 1/4	108	6 3/4	171	1 13/16	46	3 1/8	79
V		0.3770	9.576	3 5/8	92	5	127	…	…	…	…	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
	9.60	0.3780	9.600	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	…	…	…	…	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
	9.70	0.3819	9.700	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	…	…	…	…	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
	9.80	0.3858	9.800	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	4 3/8	111	7	178	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
W		0.3860	9.804	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	…	…	…	…	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
	9.90	0.3898	9.900	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	…	…	…	…	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
25/64		0.3906	9.921	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	4 3/8	111	7	178	1 7/8	48	3 1/4	83
	10.00	0.3937	10.000	3 3/4	95	5 1/8	130	4 3/8	111	7	178	1 15/16	49	3 5/16	84

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.	mm	Equivalent Decimal Inch	Equivalent mm	Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L	
				Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
X		0.3970	10.084	3¾	95	5⅛	130	…	…	…	…	1 15⁄16	49	3 5⁄16	84
	10.20	0.4016	10.200	3⅞	98	5¼	133	4⅜	111	7	178	1 15⁄16	49	3 5⁄16	84
Y		0.4040	10.262	3⅞	98	5¼	133	…	…	…	…	1 15⁄16	49	3 5⁄16	84
13⁄32		0.4062	10.317	3⅞	98	5¼	133	4⅜	111	7	178	1 15⁄16	49	3 5⁄16	84
Z		0.4130	10.490	3⅞	98	5¼	133	…	…	…	…	2	51	3⅜	86
	10.50	0.4134	10.500	3⅞	98	5¼	133	4⅜	117	7¼	184	2	51	3⅜	86
27⁄64		0.4219	10.716	3 15⁄16	100	5⅜	137	4⅝	117	7¼	184	2	51	3⅜	86
	10.80	0.4252	10.800	4 1⁄16	103	5½	140	4⅝	117	7¼	184	2 1⁄16	52	3 7⁄16	87
	11.00	0.4331	11.000	4 1⁄16	103	5½	140	4⅝	117	7¼	184	2 1⁄16	52	3 7⁄16	87
7⁄16		0.4375	11.112	4 1⁄16	103	5½	140	4⅝	117	7¼	184	2 1⁄16	52	3 7⁄16	87
	11.20	0.4409	11.200	4 3⁄16	106	5⅝	143	4¾	121	7½	190	2⅛	54	3 9⁄16	90
	11.50	0.4528	11.500	4 3⁄16	106	5⅝	143	4¾	121	7½	190	2⅛	54	3 9⁄16	90
29⁄64		0.4531	11.509	4 3⁄16	106	5⅝	143	4¾	121	7½	190	2⅛	54	3 9⁄16	90
	11.80	0.4646	11.800	4 5⁄16	110	5¾	146	4¾	121	7½	190	2⅛	54	3⅝	92
15⁄32		0.4688	11.908	4 5⁄16	110	5¾	146	4¾	121	7½	190	2⅛	54	3⅝	92
	12.00	0.4724	12.000	4⅜	111	5⅞	149	4¾	121	7¾	197	2 3⁄16	56	3 11⁄16	94
	12.20	0.4803	12.200	4⅜	111	5⅞	149	4¾	121	7¾	197	2 3⁄16	56	3 11⁄16	94
31⁄64		0.4844	12.304	4⅜	111	5⅞	149	4¾	121	7¾	197	2 3⁄16	56	3 11⁄16	94
	12.50	0.4921	12.500	4½	114	6	152	4¾	121	7¾	197	2¼	57	3¾	95
½		0.5000	12.700	4½	114	6	152	4¾	121	7¾	197	2¼	57	3¾	95
	12.80	0.5039	12.800	4½	114	6	152	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
	13.00	0.5118	13.000	4½	114	6	152	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
33⁄64		0.5156	13.096	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
	13.20	0.5197	13.200	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
17⁄32		0.5312	13.492	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
	13.50	0.5315	13.500	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅜	60	3⅞	98
	13.80	0.5433	13.800	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2½	64	4	102
35⁄64		0.5469	13.891	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2½	64	4	102
	14.00	0.5512	14.000	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2½	64	4	102
	14.25	0.5610	14.250	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2½	64	4	102
9⁄16		0.5625	14.288	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2½	64	4	102
	14.50	0.5709	14.500	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅝	67	4 1⁄8	105
37⁄64		0.5781	14.684	4 13⁄16	122	6⅝	168	…	…	…	…	2⅝	67	4 1⁄8	105
	14.75	0.5807	14.750	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅝	67	4 1⁄8	105
	15.00	0.5906	15.000	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅝	67	4 1⁄8	105
19⁄32		0.5938	15.083	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅝	67	4 1⁄8	105
	15.25	0.6004	15.250	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2¾	70	4¼	108
39⁄64		0.6094	15.479	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2¾	70	4¼	108
	15.50	0.6102	15.500	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2¾	70	4¼	108
	15.75	0.6201	15.750	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2¾	70	4¼	108
5⁄8		0.6250	15.875	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2¾	70	4¼	108
	16.00	0.6299	16.000	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
	16.25	0.6398	16.250	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
41⁄64		0.6406	16.271	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	144
	16.50	0.6496	16.500	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
21⁄32		0.6562	16.669	5 3⁄16	132	7⅛	181	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114

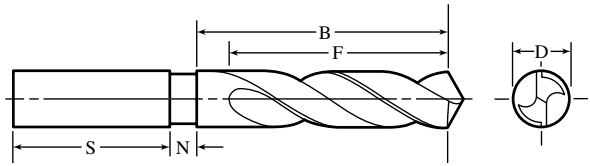
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Jobbers Length through 17.5 mm, Taper Length through 12.7 mm, and Screw Machine Length through 25.4 mm Diameter** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, D[a]				Jobbers Length				Taper Length				Screw Machine Length			
Fraction No. or Ltr.	mm	Equivalent Decimal Inch	mm	Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L		Flute F		Overall L	
				Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	16.75	0.6594	16.750	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
	17.00	0.6693	17.000	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
43/64		0.6719	17.066	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
	17.25	0.6791	17.250	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
11/16		0.6875	17.462	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	2⅞	73	4½	114
	17.50	0.6890	17.500	5⅝	143	7⅝	194	…	…	…	…	3	76	4¾	121
45/64		0.7031	17.859	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3	76	4¾	121
	18.00	0.7087	18.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3	76	4¾	121
23/32		0.7188	18.258	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3	76	4¾	121
	18.50	0.7283	18.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅛	79	5	127
47/64		0.7344	18.654	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅛	79	5	127
	19.00	0.7480	19.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅛	79	5	127
¾		0.7500	19.050	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅛	79	5	127
49/64		0.7656	19.446	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¼	83	5⅛	130
	19.50	0.7677	19.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¼	83	5⅛	130
25/32		0.7812	19.845	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¼	83	5⅛	130
	20.00	0.7879	20.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅜	86	5¼	133
51/64		0.7969	20.241	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅜	86	5¼	133
	20.50	0.8071	20.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅜	86	5¼	133
13/16		0.8125	20.638	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅜	86	5¼	133
	21.00	0.8268	21.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
53/64		0.8281	21.034	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
27/32		0.8438	21.433	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
	21.50	0.8465	21.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
55/64		0.8594	21.829	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
	22.00	0.8661	22.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
⅞		0.8750	22.225	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3½	89	5⅜	137
	22.50	0.8858	22.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅝	92	5⅝	143
57/64		0.8906	22.621	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅝	92	5⅝	143
	23.00	0.9055	23.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅝	92	5⅝	143
29/32		0.9062	23.017	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅝	92	5⅝	143
59/64		0.9219	23.416	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¾	95	5¾	146
	23.50	0.9252	23.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¾	95	5¾	146
15/16		0.9375	23.812	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3¾	95	5¾	146
	24.00	0.9449	24.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅞	98	5⅞	149
61/64		0.9531	24.209	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅞	98	5⅞	149
	24.50	0.9646	24.500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅞	98	5⅞	149
31/32		0.9688	24.608	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3⅞	98	5⅞	149
	25.00	0.9843	25.000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	4	102	6	152
63/64		0.9844	25.004	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	4	102	6	152
1		1.0000	25.400	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	4	102	6	152

[a] Fractional inch, number, letter, and metric sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Nominal Shank Size is Same as Nominal Drill Size

Table 2. ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Taper Length — Over 1/2 in. (12.7 mm) Dia., Fractional and Metric Sizes *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Diameter of Drill				Flute Length		Overall Length		Length of Body		Minimum Length of Shk.		Maximum Length of Neck	
D		Decimal	Millimeter	*F*		*L*		*B*		*S*		*N*	
Frac.	mm	Inch Equiv.	Equiv.	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	12.80	0.5039	12.800	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
	13.00	0.5117	13.000	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
33/64		0.5156	13.096	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
	13.20	0.5197	13.200	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
17/32		0.5312	13.492	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
	13.50	0.5315	13.500	4¾	121	8	203	4⅞	124	2⅝	66	½	13
	13.80	0.5433	13.800	4⅞	124	8¼	210	5	127	2¾	70	½	13
35/64		0.5419	13.891	4⅞	124	8¼	210	5	127	2¾	70	½	13
	14.00	0.5512	14.000	4⅞	124	8¼	210	5	127	2¾	70	½	13
	14.25	0.5610	14.250	4⅞	124	8¼	210	5	127	2¾	70	½	13
9/16		0.5625	14.288	4⅞	124	8¼	210	5	127	2¾	70	½	13
	14.50	0.5709	14.500	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
37/64		0.5781	14.684	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	14.75	0.5807	14.750	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	15.00	0.5906	15.000	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
19/32		0.5938	15.083	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	15.25	0.6004	15.250	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
39/64		0.6094	15.479	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	15.50	0.6102	15.500	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	15.75	0.6201	15.750	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
⅝		0.6250	15.875	4⅞	124	8¾	222	5	127	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	16.00	0.6299	16.000	5⅛	130	9	228	5¼	133	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	16.25	0.6398	16.250	5⅛	130	9	228	5¼	133	3⅛	79	⅝	16
41/64		0.6406	16.271	5⅛	130	9	228	5¼	133	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	16.50	0.6496	16.500	5⅛	130	9	228	5¼	133	3⅛	79	⅝	16
21/32		0.6562	16.667	5⅛	130	9	228	5¼	133	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	16.75	0.6594	16.750	5⅜	137	9¼	235	5½	140	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	17.00	0.6693	17.000	5⅜	137	9¼	235	5½	140	3⅛	79	⅝	16
43/64		0.6719	17.066	5⅜	137	9¼	235	5½	140	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	17.25	0.6791	17.250	5⅜	137	9¼	235	5½	140	3⅛	79	⅝	16
11/16		0.6875	17.462	5⅜	137	9¼	235	5½	140	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	17.50	0.6890	17.500	5⅜	143	9½	241	5¾	146	3⅛	79	⅝	16
45/64		0.7031	17.859	5⅜	143	9½	241	5¾	146	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	18.00	0.7087	18.000	5⅜	143	9½	241	5¾	146	3⅛	79	⅝	16
23/32		0.7188	18.258	5⅜	143	9½	241	5¾	146	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	18.50	0.7283	18.500	5⅞	149	9¾	247	6	152	3⅛	79	⅝	16
47/64		0.7344	18.654	5⅞	149	9¾	247	6	152	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	19.00	0.7480	19.000	5⅞	149	9¾	247	6	152	3⅛	79	⅝	16
¾		0.7500	19.050	5⅞	149	9¾	247	6	152	3⅛	79	⅝	16
49/64		0.7656	19.446	6	152	9⅞	251	6⅛	156	3⅛	79	⅝	16
	19.50	0.7677	19.500	6	152	9⅞	251	6⅛	156	3⅛	79	⅝	16
25/32		0.7812	19.842	6	152	9⅞	251	6⅛	156	3⅛	79	⅝	16

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Taper Length — Over 1/2 in. (12.7 mm) Dia., Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Diameter of Drill				Flute Length		Overall Length		Length of Body		Minimum Length of Shk.		Maximum Length of Neck	
D		Decimal	Millimeter	*F*		*L*		*B*		*S*		*N*	
Frac.	mm	Inch Equiv.	Equiv.	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	20.00	0.7874	20.000	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
51/64		0.7969	20.241	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	20.50	0.8071	20.500	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
13/16		0.8125	20.638	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	21.00	0.8268	21.000	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
53/64		0.8281	21.034	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
27/32		0.8438	21.433	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	21.50	0.8465	21.500	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
55/64		0.8594	21.829	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	22.00	0.8661	22.000	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
7/8		0.8750	22.225	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	22.50	0.8858	22.500	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
57/64		0.8906	22.621	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
	23.00	0.9055	23.000	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
29/32		0.9062	23.017	6 1/8	156	10	254	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	79	5/8	16
59/64		0.9219	23.416	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	23.50	0.9252	23.500	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
15/16		0.9375	23.812	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	6 1/4	159	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	24.00	0.9449	24.000	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
61/64		0.9531	24.209	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	24.50	0.9646	24.500	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
31/32		0.9688	24.608	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	25.00	0.9843	25.000	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
63/64		0.9844	25.004	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1		1.0000	25.400	6 3/8	162	11	279	6 1/2	165	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	25.50	1.0039	25.500	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	282	6 5/8	168	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 1/64		1.0156	25.796	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	282	6 5/8	168	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	26.00	1.0236	26.000	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	282	6 5/8	168	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 1/32		1.0312	26.192	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	282	6 5/8	168	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	26.50	1.0433	26.560	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286	6 3/4	172	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 3/64		1.0469	26.591	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286	6 3/4	172	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 1/16		1.0625	26.988	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286	6 3/4	172	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	27.00	1.0630	27.000	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286	6 3/4	172	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 5/64		1.0781	27.384	6 7/8	175	11 1/2	292	7	178	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	27.50	1.0827	27.500	6 7/8	175	11 1/2	292	7	178	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 3/32		1.0938	27.783	6 7/8	175	11 1/2	292	7	178	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	28.00	1.1024	28.000	7 1/8	181	11 3/4	298	7 1/4	184	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 7/64		1.1094	28.179	7 1/8	181	11 3/4	298	7 1/4	184	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	28.50	1.1220	28.500	7 1/8	181	11 3/4	298	7 1/4	184	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 1/8		1.1250	28.575	7 1/8	181	11 3/4	298	7 1/4	184	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 9/64		1.1406	28.971	7 1/4	184	11 7/8	301	7 3/8	187	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	29.00	1.1417	29.000	7 1/4	184	11 7/8	301	7 3/8	187	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 5/32		1.1562	29.367	7 1/4	184	11 7/8	301	7 3/8	187	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	29.50	1.1614	29.500	7 3/8	187	12	305	7 1/2	191	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 11/64		1.1719	29.766	7 3/8	187	12	305	7 1/2	191	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	30.00	1.1811	30.000	7 3/8	187	12	305	7 1/2	191	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 3/16		1.1875	30.162	7 3/8	187	12	305	7 1/2	191	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	30.50	1.2008	30.500	7 1/2	190	12 1/8	308	7 5/8	194	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 13/64		1.2031	30.559	7 1/2	190	12 1/8	308	7 5/8	194	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 7/32		1.2188	30.958	7 1/2	190	12 1/8	308	7 5/8	194	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	31.00	1.2205	31.000	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	317	8	203	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
1 15/64		1.2344	31.354	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	317	8	203	3 1/8	98	5/8	16
	31.50	1.2402	31.500	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	317	8	203	3 1/8	98	5/8	16

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **ANSI Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Taper Length — Over 1/2 in. (12.7 mm) Dia., Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Diameter of Drill				Flute Length		Overall Length		Length of Body		Minimum Length of Shk.		Maximum Length of Neck	
D		Decimal	Millimeter	*F*		*L*		*B*		*S*		*N*	
Frac.	mm	Inch Equiv.	Equiv.	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
1¼		1.2500	31.750	7⅞	200	12½	317	8	203	3⅞	98	⅝	16
	32.00	1.2598	32.000	8½	216	14⅛	359	8⅝	219	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	32.50	1.2795	32.500	8½	216	14⅛	359	8⅝	219	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 9/32		1.2812	32.542	8½	216	14⅛	359	8⅝	219	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	33.00	1.2992	33.000	8⅝	219	14¼	362	8¾	222	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 5/16		1.3125	33.338	8⅝	219	14¼	362	8¾	222	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	33.50	1.3189	33.500	8¾	222	14⅜	365	8⅞	225	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	34.00	1.3386	34.000	8¾	222	14⅜	365	8⅞	225	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 11/32		1.3438	34.133	8¾	222	14⅜	365	8⅞	225	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	34.50	1.3583	34.500	8⅞	225	14½	368	9	229	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1⅜		1.3750	34.925	8⅞	225	14½	368	9	229	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	35.00	1.3780	35.000	9	229	14⅝	372	9⅛	232	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	35.50	1.3976	35.500	9	229	14⅝	372	9⅛	232	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 13/32		1.4062	35.717	9	229	14⅝	372	9⅛	232	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	36.00	1.4173	36.000	9⅛	232	14¾	375	9¼	235	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	36.50	1.4370	36.500	9⅛	232	14¾	375	9¼	235	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 7/16		1.4375	36.512	9⅛	232	14¾	375	9¼	235	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	37.00	1.4567	37.000	9¼	235	14⅞	378	9⅜	238	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 15/32		1.4688	37.308	9¼	235	14⅞	378	9⅜	238	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	37.50	1.4764	37.500	9⅜	238	15	381	9½	241	4⅞	124	⅝	16
	38.00	1.4961	38.000	9⅜	238	15	381	9½	241	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1½		1.5000	38.100	9⅜	238	15	381	9½	241	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1 9/16		1.5625	39.688	9⅝	244	15¼	387	9¾	247	4⅞	124	⅝	16
1⅝		1.6250	41.275	9⅞	251	15⅝	397	10	254	4⅞	124	¾	19
1¾		1.7500	44.450	10½	267	16¼	413	10⅜	270	4⅞	124	¾	19

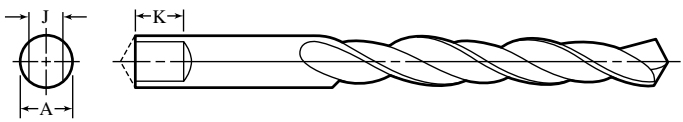


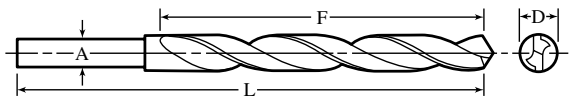
Table 3. American National Standard Tangs for Straight-Shank Drills
ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993

Nominal Diameter of Drill Shank, *A*		Thickness of Tang, *J*				Length of Tang, *K*	
		Inches		Millimeters			
Inches	Millimeters	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Inches	Millimeters
1/8 thru 3/16	3.18 thru 4.76	0.094	0.090	2.39	2.29	9/32	7.0
over 3/16 thru 1/4	over 4.76 thru 6.35	0.122	0.118	3.10	3.00	5/16	8.0
over 1/4 thru 5/16	over 6.35 thru 7.94	0.162	0.158	4.11	4.01	11/32	8.5
over 5/16 thru 3/8	over 7.94 thru 9.53	0.203	0.199	5.16	5.06	3/8	9.5
over 3/8 thru 15/32	over 9.53 thru 11.91	0.243	0.239	6.17	6.07	7/16	11.0
over 15/32 thru 9/16	over 11.91 thru 14.29	0.303	0.297	7.70	7.55	1/2	12.5
over 9/16 thru 21/32	over 14.29 thru 16.67	0.373	0.367	9.47	9.32	9/16	14.5
over 21/32 thru 3/4	over 16.67 thru 19.05	0.443	0.437	11.25	11.10	5/8	16.0
over 3/4 thru 7/8	over 19.05 thru 22.23	0.514	0.508	13.05	12.90	11/16	17.5
over 7/8 thru 1	over 22.23 thru 25.40	0.609	0.601	15.47	15.27	3/4	19.0
over 1 thru 1 3/16	over 25.40 thru 30.16	0.700	0.692	17.78	17.58	13/16	20.5
over 1 3/16 thru 1 3/8	over 30.16 thru 34.93	0.817	0.809	20.75	20.55	7/8	22.0

To fit split-sleeve collet-type drill drivers. See page 955.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Straight-Shank Twist Drills — Screw Machine Length — Over 1 in. (25.4 mm) Dia. *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*



Diameter of Drill				Flute Length		Overall Length		Shank Diameter	
D		Decimal Inch Equivalent	Millimeter Equivalent	*F*		*L*		*A*	
Frac.	mm			Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	25.50	1.0039	25.500	4	102	6	152	0.9843	25.00
	26.00	1.0236	26.000	4	102	6	152	0.9843	25.00
1 1/16		1.0625	26.988	4	102	6	152	1.0000	25.40
	28.00	1.1024	28.000	4	102	6	152	0.9843	25.00
1 1/8		1.1250	28.575	4	102	6	152	1.0000	25.40
	30.00	1.1811	30.000	4 1/4	108	6 5/8	168	0.9843	25.00
1 3/16		1.1875	30.162	4 1/4	108	6 5/8	168	1.0000	25.40
1 1/4		1.2500	31.750	4 3/8	111	6 3/4	171	1.0000	25.40
	32.00	1.2598	32.000	4 3/8	111	7	178	1.2402	31.50
1 5/16		1.3125	33.338	4 3/8	111	7	178	1.2500	31.75
	34.00	1.3386	34.000	4 1/2	114	7 1/8	181	1.2402	31.50
1 3/8		1.3750	34.925	4 1/2	114	7 1/8	181	1.2500	31.75
	36.00	1.4173	36.000	4 3/4	121	7 3/8	187	1.2402	31.50
1 7/16		1.4375	36.512	4 3/4	121	7 3/8	187	1.2500	31.75
	38.00	1.4961	38.000	4 7/8	124	7 1/2	190	1.2402	31.50
1 1/2		1.5000	38.100	4 7/8	124	7 1/2	190	1.2500	31.75
1 9/16		1.5625	39.688	4 7/8	124	7 3/4	197	1.5000	38.10
	40.00	1.5748	40.000	4 7/8	124	7 3/4	197	1.4961	38.00
1 5/8		1.6250	41.275	4 7/8	124	7 3/4	197	1.5000	38.10
	42.00	1.6535	42.000	5 1/8	130	8	203	1.4961	38.00
1 11/16		1.6875	42.862	5 1/8	130	8	203	1.5000	38.10
	44.00	1.7323	44.000	5 1/8	130	8	203	1.4961	38.00
1 3/4		1.7500	44.450	5 1/8	130	8	203	1.5000	38.10
	46.00	1.8110	46.000	5 3/8	137	8 1/4	210	1.4961	38.00
1 13/16		1.8125	46.038	5 3/8	137	8 1/4	210	1.5000	38.10
1 7/8		1.8750	47.625	5 3/8	137	8 1/4	210	1.5000	38.10
	48.00	1.8898	48.000	5 5/8	143	8 1/2	216	1.4961	38.00
1 15/16		1.9375	49.212	5 5/8	143	8 1/2	216	1.5000	38.10
	50.00	1.9685	50.000	5 5/8	143	8 1/2	216	1.4961	38.00
2		2.0000	50.800	5 5/8	143	8 1/2	216	1.5000	38.10

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

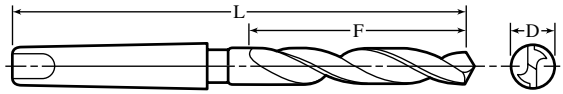


Table 5. American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills
Fractional and Metric Sizes *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length		Overall Length		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length		Overall Length	
					F		*L*			*F*		*L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	3.00	0.1181	3.000	1	1⅞	48	5⅛	130	…	…	…	…	…
1/8		0.1250	3.175	1	1⅞	48	5⅛	130	…	…	…	…	…
	3.20	0.1260	3.200	1	2⅛	54	5⅜	137	…	…	…	…	…
	3.50	0.1378	3.500	1	2⅛	54	5⅜	137	…	…	…	…	…
9/64		0.1406	3.571	1	2⅛	54	5⅜	137	…	…	…	…	…
	3.80	0.1496	3.800	1	2⅛	54	5⅜	137	…	…	…	…	…
5/32		0.1562	3.967	1	2⅛	54	5⅜	137	…	…	…	…	…
	4.00	0.1575	4.000	1	2½	64	5¾	146	…	…	…	…	…
	4.20	0.1654	4.200	1	2½	64	5¾	146	…	…	…	…	…
11/64		0.1719	4.366	1	2½	64	5¾	146	…	…	…	…	…
	4.50	0.1772	4.500	1	2½	64	5¾	146	…	…	…	…	…
3/16		0.1875	4.762	1	2½	64	5¾	146	…	…	…	…	…
	4.80	0.1890	4.800	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
	5.00	0.1969	5.000	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
13/64		0.2031	5.159	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
	5.20	0.2047	5.200	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
	5.50	0.2165	5.500	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
7/32		0.2183	5.558	1	2¾	70	6	152	…	…	…	…	…
	5.80	0.2223	5.800	1	2⅞	73	6⅛	156	…	…	…	…	…
15/64		0.2344	5.954	1	2⅞	73	6⅛	156	…	…	…	…	…
	6.00	0.2362	6.000	1	2⅞	73	6⅛	156	…	…	…	…	…
	6.20	0.2441	6.200	1	2⅞	73	6⅛	156	…	…	…	…	…
1/4		0.2500	6.350	1	2⅞	73	6⅛	156	…	…	…	…	…
	6.50	0.2559	6.500	1	3	76	6¼	159	…	…	…	…	…
17/64		0.2656	6.746	1	3	76	6¼	159	…	…	…	…	…
	6.80	0.2677	6.800	1	3	76	6¼	159	…	…	…	…	…
	7.00	0.2756	7.000	1	3	76	6¼	159	…	…	…	…	…
9/32		0.2812	7.142	1	3	76	6¼	159	…	…	…	…	…
	7.20	0.2835	7.200	1	3⅛	79	6⅜	162	…	…	…	…	…
	7.50	0.2953	7.500	1	3⅛	79	6⅜	162	…	…	…	…	…
19/64		0.2969	7.541	1	3⅛	79	6⅜	162	…	…	…	…	…
	7.80	0.3071	7.800	1	3⅛	79	6⅜	162	…	…	…	…	…
5/16		0.3125	7.938	1	3⅛	79	6⅜	162	…	…	…	…	…
	8.00	0.3150	8.000	1	3¼	83	6½	165	…	…	…	…	…
	8.20	0.3228	8.200	1	3¼	83	6½	165	…	…	…	…	…
21/64		0.3281	8.334	1	3¼	83	6½	165	…	…	…	…	…
	8.50	0.3346	8.500	1	3¼	83	6½	165	…	…	…	…	…
11/32		0.3438	8.733	1	3¼	83	6½	165	…	…	…	…	…
	8.80	0.3465	8.800	1	3½	89	6¾	171	…	…	…	…	…
	9.00	0.3543	9.000	1	3½	89	6¾	171	…	…	…	…	…
23/64		0.3594	9.129	1	3½	89	6¾	171	…	…	…	…	…
	9.20	0.3622	9.200	1	3½	89	6¾	171	…	…	…	…	…
	9.50	0.3740	9.500	1	3½	89	6¾	171	…	…	…	…	…
3/8		0.3750	9.525	1	3½	89	6¾	171	2	3½	89	7⅜	187
	9.80	0.3858	9.800	1	3⅝	92	7	178	…	…	…	…	…
25/64		0.3906	9.921	1	3⅝	92	7	178	2	3⅝	92	7½	190
	10.00	0.3937	10.000	1	3⅝	92	7	178	…	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	10.20	0.4016	10.200	1	3⅝	92	7	178	…	…	…	…	…
13/32		0.4062	10.320	1	3⅝	92	7	178	2	3⅝	92	7½	190
	10.50	0.4134	10.500	1	3⅞	98	7¼	184	…	…	…	…	…
27/64		0.4219	10.716	1	3⅞	98	7¼	184	2	3⅞	98	7¾	197
	10.80	0.4252	10.800	1	3⅞	98	7¼	184	…	…	…	…	…
	11.00	0.4331	11.000	1	3⅞	98	7¼	184	…	…	…	…	…
7/16		0.4375	11.112	1	3⅞	98	7¼	184	2	3⅞	98	7¾	197
	11.20	0.4409	11.200	1	4⅛	105	7½	190	…	…	…	…	…
	11.50	0.4528	11.500	1	4⅛	105	7½	190	…	…	…	…	…
29/64		0.4531	11.509	1	4⅛	105	7½	190	2	4⅛	105	8	203
	11.80	0.4646	11.800	1	4⅛	105	7½	190	…	…	…	…	…
15/32		0.4688	11.906	1	4⅛	105	7½	190	2	4⅛	105	8	203
	12.00	0.4724	12.000	2	4⅜	111	8¼	210	1	4⅜	111	7¾	197
	12.20	0.4803	12.200	2	4⅜	111	8¼	210	1	4⅜	111	7¾	197
31/64		0.4844	12.304	2	4⅜	111	8¼	210	1	4⅜	111	7¾	197
	12.50	0.4921	12.500	2	4⅜	111	8¼	210	1	4⅜	111	7¾	197
1/2		0.5000	12.700	2	4⅜	111	8¼	210	1	4⅜	111	7¾	197
	12.80	0.5034	12.800	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
	13.00	0.5118	13.000	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
33/64		0.5156	13.096	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
	13.20	0.5197	13.200	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
17/32		0.5312	13.492	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
	13.50	0.5315	13.500	2	4⅝	117	8½	216	1	4⅝	117	8	203
	13.80	0.5433	13.800	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	1	4⅞	124	8¼	210
35/64		0.5469	13.891	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	1	4⅞	124	8¼	210
	14.00	0.5572	14.000	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	1	4⅞	124	8¼	210
	14.25	0.5610	14.250	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	1	4⅞	124	8¼	210
9/16		0.5625	14.288	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	1	4⅞	124	8¼	210
	14.50	0.5709	14.500	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
37/64		0.5781	14.684	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	14.75	0.5807	14.750	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	15.00	0.5906	15.000	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
19/32		0.5938	15.083	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	15.25	0.6004	15.250	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
39/64		0.6094	15.479	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	15.50	0.6102	15.500	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	15.75	0.6201	15.750	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
5/8		0.6250	15.875	2	4⅞	124	8¾	222	…	…	…	…	…
	16.00	0.6299	16.000	2	5⅛	130	9	229	…	…	…	…	…
	16.25	0.6398	16.250	2	5⅛	130	9	229	…	…	…	…	…
41/64		0.6406	16.271	2	5⅛	130	9	229	3	5⅛	130	9¾	248
	16.50	0.6496	16.500	2	5⅛	130	9	229	…	…	…	…	…
21/32		0.6562	16.667	2	5⅛	130	9	229	3	5⅛	130	9¾	248
	16.75	0.6594	16.750	2	5⅜	137	9¼	235	…	…	…	…	…
	17.00	0.6693	17.000	2	5⅜	137	9¼	235	…	…	…	…	…
43/64		0.6719	17.066	2	5⅜	137	9¼	235	3	5⅜	137	10	254
	17.25	0.6791	17.250	2	5⅜	137	9¼	235	…	…	…	…	…
11/16		0.6875	17.462	2	5⅜	137	9¼	235	3	5⅜	137	10	254
	17.50	0.6880	17.500	2	5⅝	143	9½	241	…	…	…	…	…
45/64		0.7031	17.859	2	5⅝	143	9½	241	3	5⅝	143	10¼	260
	18.00	0.7087	18.000	2	5⅝	143	9½	241	…	…	…	…	…
23/32		0.7188	18.258	2	5⅝	143	9½	241	3	5⅝	143	10¼	260
	18.50	0.7283	18.500	2	5⅞	149	9¾	248	…	…	…	…	…
47/64		0.7344	18.654	2	5⅞	149	9¾	248	3	5⅞	149	10½	267

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	19.00	0.7480	19.000	2	5⅞	149	9¾	248	…	…	…	…	…
¾		0.7500	19.050	2	5⅞	149	9¾	248	3	5⅞	149	10½	267
49/64		0.7656	19.446	2	6	152	9⅞	251	3	6	152	10⅝	270
	19.50	0.7677	19.500	2	6	152	9⅞	251	…	…	…	…	…
25/32		0.7812	19.843	2	6	152	9⅞	251	3	6	152	10⅝	270
	20.00	0.7821	20.000	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
51/64		0.7969	20.241	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	20.50	0.8071	20.500	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
13/16		0.8125	20.638	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	21.00	0.8268	21.000	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
53/64		0.8281	21.034	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
27/32		0.8438	21.433	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	21.50	0.8465	21.500	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
55/64		0.8594	21.829	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	22.00	0.8661	22.000	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
⅞		0.8750	22.225	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	22.50	0.8858	22.500	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
57/64		0.8906	22.621	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
	23.00	0.9055	23.000	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
29/32		0.9062	23.017	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	2	6⅛	156	10	254
59/64		0.9219	23.416	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	…	…	…	…	…
	23.50	0.9252	23.500	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	…	…	…	…	…
15/16		0.9375	23.813	3	6⅛	156	10¾	273	…	…	…	…	…
	24.00	0.9449	24.000	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
61/64		0.9531	24.209	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
	24.50	0.9646	24.500	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
31/32		0.9688	24.608	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
	25.00	0.9843	25.000	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
63/64		0.9844	25.004	3	6⅜	162	11	279	…	…	…	…	…
1		1.0000	25.400	3	6⅜	162	11	279	4	6⅜	162	12	305
	25.50	1.0039	25.500	3	6½	165	11⅛	283	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/64		1.0156	25.796	3	6½	165	11⅛	283	…	…	…	…	…
	26.00	1.0236	26.000	3	6½	165	11⅛	283	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/32		1.0312	26.192	3	6½	165	11⅛	283	4	6½	165	12⅛	308
	26.50	1.0433	26.500	3	6⅝	168	11¼	286	…	…	…	…	…
1 3/64		1.0469	26.591	3	6⅝	168	11¼	286	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/16		1.0625	26.988	3	6⅝	168	11¼	286	4	6⅝	168	12¼	311
	27.00	1.0630	27.000	3	6⅝	168	11¼	286	…	…	…	…	…
1 5/64		1.0781	27.384	4	6⅞	175	12½	318	3	6⅞	175	11½	292
	27.50	1.0827	27.500	4	6⅞	175	12½	318	3	6⅞	175	11½	292
1 3/32		1.0938	27.783	4	6⅞	175	12½	318	3	6⅞	175	11½	292
	28.00	1.1024	28.000	4	7⅛	181	12¾	324	3	7⅛	181	11¾	298
1 7/64		1.1094	28.179	4	7⅛	181	12¾	324	3	7⅛	181	11¾	298
	28.50	1.1220	28.500	4	7⅛	181	12¾	324	3	7⅛	181	11¾	298
1 1/8		1.1250	28.575	4	7⅛	181	12¾	324	3	7⅛	181	11¾	298
1 9/64		1.1406	28.971	4	7¼	184	12⅞	327	3	7¼	184	11⅞	302
	29.00	1.1417	29.000	4	7¼	184	12⅞	327	3	7¼	184	11⅞	302
1 5/32		1.1562	29.367	4	7¼	184	12⅞	327	3	7¼	184	11⅞	302
	29.50	1.1614	29.500	4	7⅜	187	13	330	3	7⅜	187	12	305
1 11/64		1.1719	29.797	4	7⅜	187	13	330	3	7⅜	187	12	305
	30.00	1.1811	30.000	4	7⅜	187	13	330	3	7⅜	187	12	305
1 3/16		1.1875	30.162	4	7⅜	187	13	330	3	7⅜	187	12	305
	30.50	1.2008	30.500	4	7½	190	13⅛	333	3	7½	190	12⅛	308
1 13/64		1.2031	30.559	4	7½	190	13⅛	333	3	7½	190	12⅛	308

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
1 1/32		1.2188	30.958	4	7 1/2	190	13 1/8	333	3	7 1/2	190	12 1/8	308
	31.00	1.2205	31.000	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343	3	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	318
1 15/64		1.2344	31.354	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343	3	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	318
	31.50	1.2402	31.500	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343	3	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	318
1 1/4		1.2500	31.750	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343	3	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	318
	32.00	1.2598	32.000	4	8 1/2	216	14 1/8	359	…	…	…	…	…
1 17/64		1.2656	32.146	4	8 1/2	216	14 1/8	359	…	…	…	…	…
	32.50	1.2795	32.500	4	8 1/2	216	14 1/8	359	…	…	…	…	…
1 9/32		1.2812	32.542	4	8 1/2	216	14 1/8	359	…	…	…	…	…
1 19/64		1.2969	32.941	4	8 5/8	219	14 1/4	362	…	…	…	…	…
	33.00	1.2992	33.000	4	8 5/8	219	14 1/4	362	…	…	…	…	…
1 5/16		1.3125	33.338	4	8 5/8	219	14 1/4	362	…	…	…	…	…
	33.50	1.3189	33.500	4	8 3/4	222	14 3/8	365	…	…	…	…	…
1 21/64		1.3281	33.734	4	8 3/4	222	14 3/8	365	…	…	…	…	…
	34.00	1.3386	34.000	4	8 3/4	222	14 3/8	365	…	…	…	…	…
1 11/32		1.3438	34.133	4	8 3/4	222	14 3/8	365	…	…	…	…	…
	34.50	1.3583	34.500	4	8 7/8	225	14 1/2	368	…	…	…	…	…
1 23/64		1.3594	34.529	4	8 7/8	225	14 1/2	368	…	…	…	…	…
1 3/8		1.3750	34.925	4	8 7/8	225	14 1/2	368	…	…	…	…	…
	35.00	1.3780	35.000	4	9	229	14 5/8	371	…	…	…	…	…
1 25/64		1.3906	35.321	4	9	229	14 5/8	371	…	…	…	…	…
	35.50	1.3976	35.500	4	9	229	14 5/8	371	…	…	…	…	…
1 13/32		1.4062	35.717	4	9	229	14 5/8	371	…	…	…	…	…
	36.00	1.4173	36.000	4	9 1/8	232	14 3/4	375	…	…	…	…	…
1 27/64		1.4219	36.116	4	9 1/8	232	14 3/4	375	…	…	…	…	…
	36.50	1.4370	36.500	4	9 1/8	232	14 3/4	375	…	…	…	…	…
1 7/16		1.4375	36.512	4	9 1/4	232	14 3/4	375	…	…	…	…	…
1 29/64		1.4531	36.909	4	9 1/4	235	14 7/8	378	…	…	…	…	…
	37.00	1.4567	37.000	4	9 1/4	235	14 7/8	378	…	…	…	…	…
1 15/32		1.4688	37.308	4	9 1/4	235	14 7/8	378	…	…	…	…	…
	37.50	1.4764	37.500	4	9 3/8	238	15	381	…	…	…	…	…
1 31/64		1.4844	37.704	4	9 3/8	238	15	381	…	…	…	…	…
	38.00	1.4961	38.000	4	9 3/8	238	15	381	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/2		1.5000	38.100	4	9 3/8	238	15	381	…	…	…	…	…
1 33/64		1.5156	38.496	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 3/4	238	15	381
1 17/32		1.5312	38.892	5	9 3/8	238	16 3/8	416	4	9 3/8	238	15	381
	39.00	1.5354	39.000	5	9 5/8	244	16 5/8	422	4	9 5/8	244	15 1/4	387
1 35/64		1.5469	39.291	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 5/8	244	15 1/4	387
1 9/16		1.5625	39.688	5	9 5/8	244	16 5/8	422	4	9 5/8	244	15 1/4	387
	40.00	1.5748	40.000	5	9 7/8	251	16 7/8	429	4	9 7/8	251	15 1/2	394
1 37/64		1.5781	40.084	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 7/8	251	15 1/2	394
1 19/32		1.5938	40.483	5	9 7/8	251	16 7/8	429	4	9 7/8	251	15 1/2	394
1 39/64		1.6094	40.879	…	…	…	…	…	4	10	254	15 5/8	397
	41.00	1.6142	41.000	5	10	254	17	432	4	10	254	15 5/8	397
1 5/8		1.6250	41.275	5	10	254	17	432	4	10	254	15 5/8	397
1 41/64		1.6406	41.671	…	…	…	…	…	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
	42.00	1.6535	42.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
1 21/32		1.6562	42.067	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
1 43/64		1.6719	42.466	…	…	…	…	…	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
1 11/16		1.6875	42.862	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
	43.00	1.6929	43.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
1 45/64		1.7031	43.259	…	…	…	…	…	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
1 23/32		1.7188	43.658	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 1/8	257	15 3/4	400
	44.00	1.7323	44.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
147/64		1.7344	44.054	…	…	…	…	…	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
1 3/4		1.7500	44.450	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/4	264	16 1/4	413
	45.00	1.7717	45.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
125/32		1.7812	45.242	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
	46.00	1.8110	46.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
1 13/16		1.8125	46.038	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
127/32		1.8438	46.833	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435	4	10 3/8	264	16 1/4	413
	47.00	1.8504	47.000	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 1/2	267	16 1/2	419
1 7/8		1.8750	47.625	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 1/2	267	16 1/2	419
	48.00	1.8898	48.000	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 1/2	267	16 1/2	419
129/32		1.9062	48.417	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 1/2	267	16 1/2	419
	49.00	1.9291	49.000	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 5/8	270	16 5/8	422
1 15/16		1.9375	49.212	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 5/8	270	16 5/8	422
	50.00	1.9625	50.000	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 5/8	270	16 5/8	422
131/32		1.9688	50.008	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 5/8	270	16 5/8	422
2		2.0000	50.800	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	4	10 5/8	270	16 5/8	422
	51.00	2.0079	51.000	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/32		2.0312	51.592	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	52.00	2.0472	52.000	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/16		2.0625	52.388	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	53.00	2.0866	53.000	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 3/32		2.0938	53.183	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/8		2.1250	53.975	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	54.00	2.1260	54.000	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 5/32		2.1562	54.767	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	55.00	2.1654	55.000	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 3/16		2.1875	55.563	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/4	441	…	…	…	…	…
	56.00	2.2000	56.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 7/32		2.2188	56.358	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	57.00	2.2441	57.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/4		2.2500	57.150	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	58.00	2.2835	58.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 5/16		2.3125	58.738	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	59.00	2.3228	59.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	60.00	2.3622	60.000	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
2 3/8		2.3750	60.325	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441	…	…	…	…	…
	61.00	2.4016	61.000	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476	…	…	…	…	…
2 7/16		2.4375	61.912	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476	…	…	…	…	…
	62.00	2.4409	62.000	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476	…	…	…	…	…
	63.00	2.4803	63.000	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/2		2.5000	63.500	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476	…	…	…	…	…
	64.00	2.5197	64.000	5	11 7/8	302	19 1/2	495	…	…	…	…	…
	65.00	2.5591	65.000	5	11 7/8	302	19 1/2	495	…	…	…	…	…
2 9/16		2.5625	65.088	5	11 7/8	302	19 1/2	495	…	…	…	…	…
	66.00	2.5984	66.000	5	11 7/8	302	19 1/2	495	…	…	…	…	…
2 5/8		2.6250	66.675	5	11 7/8	302	19 1/2	495	…	…	…	…	…
	67.00	2.6378	67.000	5	12 3/4	324	20 3/8	518	…	…	…	…	…
	68.00	2.6772	68.000	5	12 3/4	324	20 3/8	518	…	…	…	…	…
2 11/16		2.6875	68.262	5	12 3/4	324	20 3/8	518	…	…	…	…	…
	69.00	2.7165	69.000	5	12 3/4	324	20 3/8	518	…	…	…	…	…
2 3/4		2.7500	69.850	5	12 3/4	324	20 3/8	518	…	…	…	…	…
	70.00	2.7559	70.000	5	13 3/8	340	21 1/8	537	…	…	…	…	…
	71.00	2.7953	71.000	5	13 3/8	340	21 1/8	537	…	…	…	…	…
2 13/16		2.8125	71.438	5	13 3/8	340	21 1/8	537	…	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

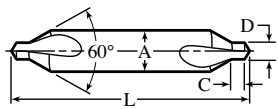
Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Taper-Shank Twist Drills Fractional and Metric Sizes** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*				Regular Shank					Larger or Smaller Shank[a]				
		Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Fraction	mm	Decimal Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm		Inch	mm	Inch	mm
	72.00	2.8346	72.000	5	13⅜	340	21⅛	537	…	…	…	…	…
	73.00	2.8740	73.000	5	13⅜	340	21⅛	537	…	…	…	…	…
2⅞		2.8750	73.025	5	13⅜	340	21⅛	537	…	…	…	…	…
	74.00	2.9134	74.000	5	14	356	21¾	552	…	…	…	…	…
2 15⁄16		2.9375	74.612	5	14	356	21¾	552	…	…	…	…	…
	75.00	2.9528	75.000	5	14	356	21¾	552	…	…	…	…	…
	76.00	2.9921	76.000	5	14	356	21¾	552	…	…	…	…	…
3		3.0000	76.200	5	14	356	21¾	552	…	…	…	…	…
	77.00	3.0315	77.000	6	14⅝	371	24½	622	5	14¼	362	22	559
	78.00	3.0709	78.000	6	14⅝	371	24½	622	5	14¼	362	22	559
3⅛		3.1250	79.375	6	14⅝	371	24½	622	5	14¼	362	22	559
3¼		3.2500	82.550	6	15½	394	25½	648	5	15¼	387	23	584
3½		3.5000	88.900	…	…	…	…	…	5	16¼	413	24	610

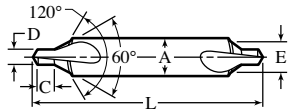
[a] Larger or smaller than regular shank.

Table 6. American National Standard Combined Drills and Countersinks — Plain and Bell Types *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

PLAIN TYPE



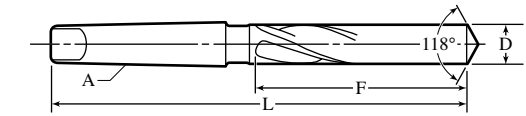
BELL TYPE



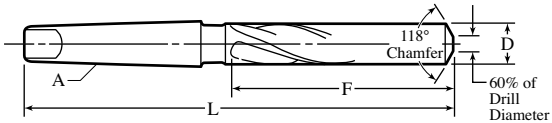
Plain Type								
Size Designation	Body Diameter *A*		Drill Diameter *D*		Drill Length *C*		Overall Length *L*	
	Inches	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters
00	⅛	3.18	.025	0.64	.030	0.76	1⅛	29
0	⅛	3.18	1⁄32	0.79	.038	0.97	1⅛	29
1	⅛	3.18	3⁄64	1.19	3⁄64	1.19	1¼	32
2	3⁄16	4.76	5⁄64	1.98	5⁄64	1.98	1⅞	48
3	¼	6.35	7⁄64	2.78	7⁄64	2.78	2	51
4	5⁄16	7.94	⅛	3.18	⅛	3.18	2⅛	54
5	7⁄16	11.11	3⁄16	4.76	3⁄16	4.76	2¾	70
6	½	12.70	7⁄32	5.56	7⁄32	5.56	3	76
7	⅝	15.88	¼	6.35	¼	6.35	3¼	83
8	¾	19.05	5⁄16	7.94	5⁄16	7.94	3½	89

Bell Type										
Size Designation	Body Diameter *A*		Drill Diameter *D*		Bell Diameter *E*		Drill Length *C*		Overall Length *L*	
	Inches	mm	Inches	mm	Inches	mm	Inches	mm	Inches	mm
11	⅛	3.18	3⁄64	1.19	0.10	2.5	3⁄64	1.19	1¼	32
12	3⁄16	4.76	1⁄16	1.59	0.15	3.8	1⁄16	1.59	1⅞	48
13	¼	6.35	3⁄32	2.38	0.20	5.1	3⁄32	2.38	2	51
14	5⁄16	7.94	7⁄64	2.78	0.25	6.4	7⁄64	2.78	2⅛	54
15	7⁄16	11.11	5⁄32	3.97	0.35	8.9	5⁄32	3.97	2¾	70
16	½	12.70	3⁄16	4.76	0.40	10.2	3⁄16	4.76	3	76
17	⅝	15.88	7⁄32	5.56	0.50	12.7	7⁄32	5.56	3¼	83
18	¾	19.05	¼	6.35	0.60	15.2	¼	6.35	3½	89

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Drill Diameter 11/32″ (8.737 mm and Smaller



Drill Diameter 3/8″ (9.525 mm) and Larger

Table 7. American National Standard Three- and Four-Flute Taper-Shank Core Drills — Fractional Sizes Only *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

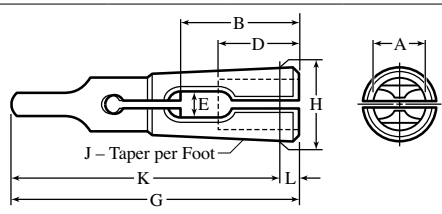
Drill Diameter, *D*			Three-Flute Drills					Four-Flute Drills				
	Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Inch	Decimal Inch	mm	A	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	A	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
1/4	0.2500	6.350	1	2 7/8	73	6 1/8	156	…	…	…	…	…
9/32	0.2812	7.142	1	3	76	6 1/4	159	…	…	…	…	…
5/16	0.3175	7.938	1	3 1/8	79	6 3/8	162	…	…	…	…	…
11/32	0.3438	8.733	1	3 1/4	83	6 1/2	165	…	…	…	…	…
3/8	0.3750	9.525	1	3 1/2	89	6 3/4	171	…	…	…	…	…
13/32	0.4062	10.319	1	3 5/8	92	7	178	…	…	…	…	…
7/16	0.4375	11.112	1	3 7/8	98	7 1/4	184	…	…	…	…	…
15/32	0.4688	11.908	1	4 1/8	105	7 1/2	190	…	…	…	…	…
1/2	0.5000	12.700	2	4 3/8	111	8 1/4	210	2	4 3/8	111	8 1/4	210
17/32	0.5312	13.492	2	4 5/8	117	8 1/2	216	2	4 5/8	117	8 1/2	216
9/16	0.5625	14.288	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222
19/32	0.5938	15.083	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222
5/8	0.6250	15.815	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222	2	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222
21/32	0.6562	16.668	2	5 1/8	130	9	229	2	5 1/8	130	9	229
11/16	0.6875	17.462	2	5 3/8	137	9 1/4	235	2	5 3/8	137	9 1/4	235
23/32	0.7188	18.258	2	5 5/8	143	9 1/2	241	2	5 5/8	143	9 1/2	241
3/4	0.7500	19.050	2	5 7/8	149	9 3/4	248	2	5 7/8	149	9 3/4	248
25/32	0.7812	19.842	2	6	152	9 7/8	251	2	6	152	9 7/8	251
13/16	0.8125	20.638	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
27/32	0.8438	21.433	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
7/8	0.8750	22.225	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
29/32	0.9062	23.019	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
15/16	0.9375	23.812	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273	3	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
31/32	0.9688	24.608	3	6 3/8	162	11	279	3	6 3/8	162	11	279
1	1.0000	25.400	3	6 3/8	162	11	279	3	6 3/8	162	11	279
1 1/32	1.0312	26.192	3	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	283	3	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	283
1 1/16	1.0625	26.988	3	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286	3	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286
1 3/32	1.0938	27.783	4	6 7/8	175	12 1/2	318	4	6 7/8	175	12 1/2	318
1 1/8	1.1250	28.575	4	7 1/8	181	12 3/4	324	4	7 1/8	181	12 3/4	324
1 5/32	1.1562	29.367	4	7 1/4	184	12 7/8	327	4	7 1/4	184	12 7/8	327
1 3/16	1.1875	30.162	4	7 3/8	187	13	330	4	7 3/8	187	13	330
1 7/32	1.2188	30.958	4	7 1/2	190	13 1/8	333	4	7 1/2	190	13 1/8	333
1 1/4	1.2500	31.750	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343	4	7 7/8	200	13 1/2	343
1 9/32	1.2812	32.542	…	…	…	…	…	4	8 1/2	216	14 1/8	359

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Three- and Four-Flute Taper-Shank Core Drills — Fractional Sizes Only** *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*

Drill Diameter, *D*			Three-Flute Drills					Four-Flute Drills				
	Equivalent		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*		Morse Taper No.	Flute Length *F*		Overall Length *L*	
Inch	Decimal Inch	mm	A	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	A	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
1 5/16	1.3125	33.338	…	…	…	…	…	4	8 5/8	219	14 1/4	362
1 11/32	1.3438	34.133	…	…	…	…	…	4	8 3/4	222	14 3/8	365
1 3/8	1.3750	34.925	…	…	…	…	…	4	8 7/8	225	14 1/2	368
1 13/32	1.4062	35.717	…	…	…	…	…	4	9	229	14 5/8	371
1 7/16	1.4375	36.512	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 1/8	232	14 3/4	375
1 15/32	1.4688	37.306	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 1/4	235	14 7/8	378
1 1/2	1.5000	38.100	…	…	…	…	…	4	9 3/8	238	15	381
1 17/32	1.5312	38.892	…	…	…	…	…	5	9 3/8	238	16 3/8	416
1 9/16	1.5675	39.688	…	…	…	…	…	5	9 5/8	244	16 5/8	422
1 19/32	1.5938	40.483	…	…	…	…	…	5	9 7/8	251	16 7/8	429
1 5/8	1.6250	41.275	…	…	…	…	…	5	10	254	17	432
1 21/32	1.6562	42.067	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 11/16	1.6875	42.862	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 23/32	1.7188	43.658	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 3/4	1.7500	44.450	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 25/32	1.7812	45.244	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 13/16	1.8125	46.038	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 27/32	1.8438	46.833	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 1/8	435
1 7/8	1.8750	47.625	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441
1 29/32	1.9062	48.417	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441
1 15/16	1.9375	49.212	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441
1 31/32	1.9688	50.008	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441
2	2.0000	50.800	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 3/8	264	17 3/8	441
2 1/8	2.1250	53.975	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/4	260	17 3/8	441
2 1/4	2.2500	57.150	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441
2 3/8	2.3750	60.325	…	…	…	…	…	5	10 1/8	257	17 3/8	441
2 1/2	2.5000	63.500	…	…	…	…	…	5	11 1/4	286	18 3/4	476

Table 8. American National Standard Drill Drivers — Split-Sleeve, Collet-Type
ANSI/ASME B94.35-1972 (R2015)

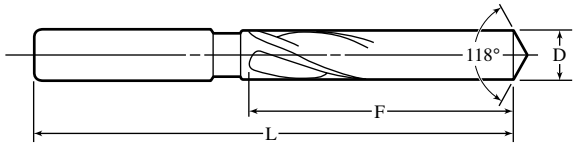


Taper Number	*G* Overall Length	*H* Diameter at Gage Line	*J* Taper per Foot[a]	*K* Length to Gage Line	*L* Driver Projection
0[b]	2.38	0.356	0.62460	2.22	0.16
1	2.62	0.475	0.59858	2.44	0.19
2	3.19	0.700	0.59941	2.94	0.25

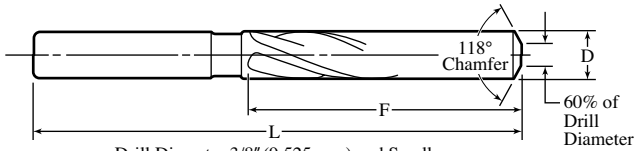
[a] Taper rate in accordance with ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013), Machine Tapers.
[b] Size 0 is not an American National Standard but is included here to meet special needs.
All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. ANSI Three- and Four-Flute Straight-Shank Core Drills — Fractional Sizes Only *ANSI/ASME B94.11M-1993*



Drill Diameter 11/32″ (8.733 mm) and Smaller



Drill Diameter 3/8″ (9.525 mm) and Smaller

Nominal Shank Size is Same Size as Nominal Drill Size

Drill Diameter, *D*			Three-Flute Drills				Four-Flute Drills			
	Equivalent		Flute Length		Overall Length		Flute Length		Overall Length	
			F		*L*		*F*		*L*	
Inch	Decimal Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm
1/4	0.2500	6.350	3 3/4	95	6 1/8	156	…	…	…	…
9/32	0.2812	7.142	3 7/8	98	6 1/4	159	…	…	…	…
5/16	0.3125	7.938	4	102	6 3/8	162	…	…	…	…
11/32	0.3438	8.733	4 1/8	105	6 1/2	165	…	…	…	…
3/8	0.3750	9.525	4 1/8	105	6 3/4	171	…	…	…	…
13/32	0.4062	10.317	4 3/8	111	7	178	…	…	…	…
7/16	0.4375	11.112	4 5/8	117	7 1/4	184	…	…	…	…
15/32	0.4688	11.908	4 3/4	121	7 1/2	190	…	…	…	…
1/2	0.5000	12.700	4 3/4	121	7 3/4	197	4 3/4	121	7 3/4	197
17/32	0.5312	13.492	4 3/4	121	8	203	4 3/4	121	8	203
9/16	0.5625	14.288	4 7/8	124	8 1/4	210	4 7/8	124	8 1/4	210
19/32	0.5938	15.083	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222
5/8	0.6250	15.875	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222	4 7/8	124	8 3/4	222
21/32	0.6562	16.667	5 1/8	130	9	229	5 1/8	130	9	229
11/16	0.6875	17.462	5 3/8	137	9 1/4	235	5 3/8	137	9 1/4	235
23/32	0.7188	18.258	…	…	…	…	5 5/8	143	9 1/2	241
3/4	0.7500	19.050	5 7/8	149	9 3/4	248	5 7/8	149	9 3/4	248
25/32	0.7812	19.842	…	…	…	…	6	152	9 7/8	251
13/16	0.8125	20.638	…	…	…	…	6 1/8	156	10	254
27/32	0.8438	21.433	…	…	…	…	6 1/8	156	10	254
7/8	0.8750	22.225	…	…	…	…	6 1/8	156	10	254
29/32	0.9062	23.017	…	…	…	…	6 1/8	156	10	254
15/16	0.9375	23.812	…	…	…	…	6 1/8	156	10 3/4	273
31/32	0.9688	24.608	…	…	…	…	6 3/8	162	11	279
1	1.0000	25.400	…	…	…	…	6 3/8	162	11	279
1 1/32	1.0312	26.192	…	…	…	…	6 1/2	165	11 1/8	283
1 1/16	1.0625	26.988	…	…	…	…	6 5/8	168	11 1/4	286
1 3/32	1.0938	27.783	…	…	…	…	6 7/8	175	11 1/2	292
1 1/8	1.1250	28.575	…	…	…	…	7 1/8	181	11 3/4	298
1 1/4	1.2500	31.750	…	…	…	…	7 7/8	200	12 1/2	318

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Length of Point on Twist Drills and Centering Tools

Size of Drill	Decimal Equivalent	Length of Point when Included Angle = 90°	Length of Point when Included Angle = 118°	Size of Drill	Decimal Equivalent	Length of Point when Included Angle = 90°	Length of Point when Included Angle = 118°	Size or Dia. of Drill	Decimal Equivalent	Length of Point when Included Angle = 90°	Length of Point when Included Angle = 118°	Dia. of Drill	Decimal Equivalent	Length of Point when Included Angle = 90°	Length of Point when Included Angle = 118°
60	0.0400	0.020	0.012	37	0.1040	0.052	0.031	14	0.1820	0.091	0.055	3/8	0.3750	0.188	0.113
59	0.0410	0.021	0.012	36	0.1065	0.054	0.032	13	0.1850	0.093	0.056	25/64	0.3906	0.195	0.117
58	0.0420	0.021	0.013	35	0.1100	0.055	0.033	12	0.1890	0.095	0.057	13/32	0.4063	0.203	0.122
57	0.0430	0.022	0.013	34	0.1110	0.056	0.033	11	0.1910	0.096	0.057	27/64	0.4219	0.211	0.127
56	0.0465	0.023	0.014	33	0.1130	0.057	0.034	10	0.1935	0.097	0.058	7/16	0.4375	0.219	0.131
55	0.0520	0.026	0.016	32	0.1160	0.058	0.035	9	0.1960	0.098	0.059	29/64	0.4531	0.227	0.136
54	0.0550	0.028	0.017	31	0.1200	0.060	0.036	8	0.1990	0.100	0.060	15/32	0.4688	0.234	0.141
53	0.0595	0.030	0.018	30	0.1285	0.065	0.039	7	0.2010	0.101	0.060	31/64	0.4844	0.242	0.145
52	0.0635	0.032	0.019	29	0.1360	0.068	0.041	6	0.2040	0.102	0.061	1/2	0.5000	0.250	0.150
51	0.0670	0.034	0.020	28	0.1405	0.070	0.042	5	0.2055	0.103	0.062	33/64	0.5156	0.258	0.155
50	0.0700	0.035	0.021	27	0.1440	0.072	0.043	4	0.2090	0.105	0.063	17/32	0.5313	0.266	0.159
49	0.0730	0.037	0.022	26	0.1470	0.074	0.044	3	0.2130	0.107	0.064	35/64	0.5469	0.273	0.164
48	0.0760	0.038	0.023	25	0.1495	0.075	0.045	2	0.2210	0.111	0.067	9/16	0.5625	0.281	0.169
47	0.0785	0.040	0.024	24	0.1520	0.076	0.046	1	0.2280	0.114	0.068	37/64	0.5781	0.289	0.173
46	0.0810	0.041	0.024	23	0.1540	0.077	0.046	15/64	0.2344	0.117	0.070	19/32	0.5938	0.297	0.178
45	0.0820	0.041	0.025	22	0.1570	0.079	0.047	1/4	0.2500	0.125	0.075	39/64	0.6094	0.305	0.183
44	0.0860	0.043	0.026	21	0.1590	0.080	0.048	17/64	0.2656	0.133	0.080	5/8	0.6250	0.313	0.188
43	0.0890	0.045	0.027	20	0.1610	0.081	0.048	9/32	0.2813	0.141	0.084	41/64	0.6406	0.320	0.192
42	0.0935	0.047	0.028	19	0.1660	0.083	0.050	19/64	0.2969	0.148	0.089	21/32	0.6563	0.328	0.197
41	0.0960	0.048	0.029	18	0.1695	0.085	0.051	5/16	0.3125	0.156	0.094	43/64	0.6719	0.336	0.202
40	0.0980	0.049	0.029	17	0.1730	0.087	0.052	21/64	0.3281	0.164	0.098	11/16	0.6875	0.344	0.206
39	0.0995	0.050	0.030	16	0.1770	0.089	0.053	11/32	0.3438	0.171	0.103	23/32	0.7188	0.359	0.216
38	0.1015	0.051	0.030	15	0.1800	0.090	0.054	23/64	0.3594	0.180	0.108	3/4	0.7500	0.375	0.225

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Combined Drills and Countersinks (Center Drills).—BS 328: Part 2: 1972 (1990) provides dimensions of combined drills and countersinks for center holes. Three types of drill and countersink combinations are shown in this standard but are not given here. These three types will produce center holes without protecting chamfers, with protecting chamfers, and with protecting chamfers of radius form.

Drill Drivers—Split-Sleeve, Collet-Type.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME B94.35-1972 (R2015) covers split-sleeve, collet-type drivers for driving straight shank drills, reamers, and similar tools, without tangs from 0.0390-inch through 0.1220-inch diameter, and with tangs from 0.1250-inch through 0.7500-inch diameter, including metric sizes.

For sizes 0.0390 through 0.0595 inch, the standard taper number is 1, and the optional taper number is 0. For sizes 0.0610 through 0.1875 inch, the standard taper number is 1, first optional taper number is 0, and second optional taper number is 2. For sizes 0.1890 through 0.2520 inch, the standard taper number is 1, first optional taper number is 2, and second optional taper number is 0. For sizes 0.2570 through 0.3750 inch, the standard taper number is 1 and the optional taper number is 2. For sizes 0.3860 through 0.5625 inch, the standard taper number is 2 and the optional taper number is 3. For sizes 0.5781 through 0.7500 inch, the standard taper number is 3 and the optional taper number is 4.

The depth *B* that the drill enters the driver is 0.44 inch for sizes 0.0390 through 0.0781 inch; 0.50 inch for sizes 0.0785 through 0.0938 inch; 0.56 inch for sizes 0.0960 through 0.1094 inch; 0.62 inch for sizes 0.1100 through 0.1220 inch; 0.75 inch for sizes 0.1250 through 0.1875 inch; 0.88 inch for sizes 0.1890 through 0.2500 inch; 1.00 inch for sizes 0.2520 through 0.3125 inch; 1.12 inches for sizes 0.3160 through 0.3750 inch; 1.25 inches for sizes 0.3860 through 0.4688 inch; 1.31 inches for sizes 0.4844 through 0.5625 inch; 1.47 inches for sizes 0.5781 through 0.6562 inch; and 1.62 inches for sizes 0.6719 through 0.7500 inch.

British Standard Metric Twist Drills.—BS 328: Part 1:1959 (incorporating amendments issued March 1960 and March 1964) covers twist drills made to inch and metric dimensions that are intended for general engineering purposes. ISO recommendations are taken into account. The accompanying tables give the standard metric sizes of Morse taper-shank twist drills and core drills, parallel-shank jobbing and long-series drills, and stub drills.

All drills are right-hand cutting unless otherwise specified, and normal, slow, or quick helix angles may be provided. A "back-taper" is ground on the diameter from point to shank to provide longitudinal clearance. Core drills may have three or four flutes and are intended for opening up cast holes or enlarging machined holes, for example. The parallel-shank jobber, long-series drills, and stub drills are made without driving tenons.

Morse taper shank drills with oversize dimensions are also listed, and Table 11 shows metric drill sizes superseding gage and letter-size drills, which are now obsolete in Britain. To meet special requirements, the Standard lists nonstandard sizes for the various types of drills.

The limits of tolerance on cutting diameters, as measured across the lands at the outer corners of a drill, shall be h8, in accordance with BS 1916, Limits and Fits for Engineering (Part I, Limits and Tolerances); Table 14 shows the values common to the different types of drills mentioned before.

The drills shall be permanently and legibly marked whenever possible, preferably by rolling, showing the size, and the manufacturer's name or trademark. If they are made from high-speed steel, they shall be marked with the letters H.S. where practicable.

Drill Elements: The following definitions of drill elements are given.

Axis: The longitudinal center line.

Body: That portion of the drill extending from the extreme cutting end to the commencement of the shank.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shank: That portion of the drill by which it is held and driven.

Flutes: The grooves in the body of the drill that provide lips, permit the removal of chips and allow cutting fluid to reach the lips.

Web (Core): The central portion of the drill situated between the roots of the flutes and extending from the point end toward the shank; the point end of the web or core forms the chisel edge.

Lands: The cylindrical-ground surfaces on the leading edges of the drill flutes. The width of the land is measured at right angles to the flute helix.

Body Clearance: The portion of the body surface that is reduced in diameter to provide diametral clearance.

Heel: The edge formed by the intersection of the flute surface and the body clearance.

Point: The sharpened end of the drill, consisting of all that part of the drill that is shaped to produce lips, faces, flanks, and chisel edge.

Face: That portion of the flute surface adjacent to the lip on which the chip impinges as it is cut from the work.

Flank: The surface on a drill point that extends behind the lip to the following flute.

Lip (Cutting Edge): The edge formed by the intersection of the flank and face.

Relative Lip Height: The relative position of the lips measured at the outer corners in a direction parallel to the drill axis.

Outer Corner: The corner formed by the intersection of the lip and the leading edge of the land.

Chisel Edge: The edge formed by the intersection of the flanks.

Chisel Edge Corner: The corner formed by the intersection of a lip and the chisel edge.

Table 11. British Standard Drills — Metric Sizes Superseding Gauge and Letter Sizes *BS 328: Part 1:1959, Appendix B*

Obsolete Drill Size	Recommended Metric Size (mm)	Obsolete Drill Size	Recommended Metric Size (mm)	Obsolete Drill Size	Recommended Metric Size (mm)	Obsolete Drill Size	Recommended Metric Size (mm)	Obsolete Drill Size	Recommended Metric Size (mm)
80	0.35	58	1.05	36	2.70	14	4.60	I	6.90
79	0.38	57	1.10	35	2.80	13	4.70	J	7.00
78	0.40	56	3/64 in.	34	2.80	12	4.80	K	9/32 in.
77	0.45	55	1.30	33	2.85	11	4.90	L	7.40
76	0.50	54	1.40	32	2.95	10	4.90	M	7.50
75	0.52	53	1.50	31	3.00	9	5.00	N	7.70
74	0.58	52	1.60	30	3.30	8	5.10	O	8.00
73	0.60	51	1.70	29	3.50	7	5.10	P	8.20
72	0.65	50	1.80	28	9/64 in.	6	5.20	Q	8.40
71	0.65	49	1.85	27	3.70	5	5.20	R	8.60
70	0.70	48	1.95	26	3.70	4	5.30	S	8.80
69	0.75	47	2.00	25	3.80	3	5.40	T	9.10
68	1/32 in.	46	2.05	24	3.90	2	5.60	U	9.30
67	0.82	45	2.10	23	3.90	1	5.80	V	3/8 in.
66	0.85	44	2.20	22	4.00	A	15/64 in.	W	9.80
65	0.90	43	2.25	21	4.00	B	6.00	X	10.10
64	0.92	42	3/32 in.	20	4.10	C	6.10	Y	10.30
63	0.95	41	2.45	19	4.20	D	6.20	Z	10.50
62	0.98	40	2.50	18	4.30	E	1/4 in.	…	…
61	1.00	39	2.55	17	4.40	F	6.50	…	…
60	1.00	38	2.60	16	4.50	G	6.60	…	…
59	1.05	37	2.65	15	4.60	H	17/64 in.	…	…

Gauge and letter-size drills are now obsolete in the United Kingdom and should not be used in the production of new designs. The table is given to assist users in changing over to the recommended standard sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. British Standard Morse Taper-Shank Twist Drills and Core Drills — Standard Metric Sizes *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length
3.00	33	114	16.75	125	223	30.25	180	301
3.20	36	117	17.00			30.50		
3.50	39	120	17.25	130	228	30.75		
3.80	43	123	17.50			31.00		
4.00			17.75			31.25		
4.20			18.00			31.50		
4.50	47	128	18.25	135	233	31.75	185	306
4.80	52	133	18.50			32.00	185	334
5.00			18.75			32.50		
5.20			19.00			33.00		
5.50	57	138	19.25	140	238	33.50		
5.80			19.50			34.00	190	339
6.00			19.75			34.50		
6.20	63	144	20.00			35.00		
6.50			20.25	145	243	35.50		
6.80	69	150	20.50			36.00	195	344
7.00			20.75			36.50		
7.20			21.00			37.00		
7.50			21.25	150	248	37.50		
7.80	75	156	21.50			38.00	200	349
8.00			21.75			38.50		
8.20			22.00			39.00		
8.50			22.25			39.50		
8.80	81	162	22.50	155	253	40.00		
9.00			22.75			40.50	205	354
9.20			23.00			41.00		
9.50			23.25	155	276	41.50		
9.80	87	168	23.50			42.00		
10.00			23.75	160	281	42.50		
10.20			24.00			43.00	210	359
10.50			24.25			43.50		
10.80	94	175	24.50			44.00		
11.00			24.75			44.50		
11.20			25.00			45.00		
11.50			25.25	165	286	45.50	215	364
11.80			25.50			46.00		
12.00	101	182	25.75			46.50		
12.20			26.00			47.00		
12.50			26.25			47.50		
12.80			26.50			48.00	220	369
13.00			26.75	170	291	48.50		
13.20			27.00			49.00		
13.50	108	189	27.25			49.50		
13.80			27.50			50.00		
14.00			27.75			50.50	225	374
14.25	114	212	28.00			51.00	225	412
14.50			28.25	175	296	52.00		
14.75			28.50			53.00		
15.00			28.75			54.00	230	417
15.25	120	218	29.00			55.00		
15.50			29.25			56.00		
15.75			29.50	175	296	57.00	235	422
16.00			29.75			58.00		
16.25	125	223	30.00			59.00		
16.50						60.00		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **British Standard Morse Taper-Shank Twist Drills and Core Drills — Standard Metric Sizes** *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length
61.00			76.00	260	477	91.00		
62.00	240	427	77.00			92.00		
63.00			78.00	260	514	93.00	275	529
64.00			79.00			94.00		
65.00	245	432	80.00			95.00		
66.00			81.00			96.00		
67.00			82.00			97.00		
68.00			83.00	265	519	98.00	280	534
69.00	250	437	84.00			99.00		
70.00			85.00			100.00		
71.00	250	437	86.00					
72.00			87.00					
73.00	255	442	88.00	270	524			
74.00			89.00					
75.00			90.00					

All dimensions are in millimeters. Tolerances on diameters are given in the table below.

Table 13 shows twist drills that may be supplied with the shank and length oversize, but they should be regarded as nonpreferred.

The Morse taper shanks of these twist and core drills are as follows: 3.00 to 14.00 mm diameter, M.T. No. 1; 14.25 to 23.00 mm diameter, M.T. No. 2; 23.25 to 31.50 mm diameter, M.T. No. 3; 31.75 to 50.50 mm diameter, M.T. No. 4; 51.00 to 76.00 mm diameter, M.T. No. 5; 77.00 to 100.00 mm diameter, M.T. No. 6.

Table 13. British Standard Morse Taper-Shank Twist Drills — Metric Oversize Shank and Length Series *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Dia. Range	Overall Length	M.T. No.	Dia. Range	Overall Length	M.T. No.	Dia. Range	Overall Length	M.T. No.
12.00 to 13.20	199	2	22.50 to 23.00	276	3	45.50 to 47.50	402	5
13.50 to 14.00	206	2	26.75 to 28.00	319	4	48.00 to 50.00	407	5
18.25 to 19.00	256	3	29.00 to 30.00	324	4	50.50	412	5
19.25 to 20.00	251	3	30.25 to 31.50	329	4	64.00 to 67.00	499	6
20.25 to 21.00	266	3	40.50 to 42.50	392	5	68.00 to 71.00	504	6
21.25 to 22.25	271	3	43.00 to 45.00	397	5	72.00 to 75.00	509	6

Diameters and lengths are given in millimeters. For the individual sizes within the diameter ranges given, see Table 12.

This series of drills should be regarded as non-preferred.

Table 14. British Standard Limits of Tolerance on Diameter for Twist Drills and Core Drills — Metric Series *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Drill Size (Diameter measured across lands at outer corners)	Tolerance (h8)
0 to 1 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.014
Over 1 to 3 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.014
Over 3 to 6 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.018
Over 6 to 10 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.022
Over 10 to 18 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.027
Over 18 to 30 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.033
Over 30 to 50 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.039
Over 50 to 80 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.046
Over 80 to 120 inclusive	Plus 0.000 to Minus 0.054

All dimensions are given in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. British Standard Parallel Shank Jobber Series Twist Drills — Standard Metric Sizes *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length
0.20	2.5	19	1.75	22	46	5.40	57	93	10.20	87	133
0.22			1.80			5.50			10.30		
0.25	3.0	19	1.85			5.60			10.40		
0.28			1.90			5.70			10.50		
0.30	4	19	1.95	24	49	5.80			10.60		
0.32			2.00			5.90			10.70	94	142
0.35			2.05			6.00			10.80		
0.38			2.10			6.10	63	101	10.90		
0.40	5	20	2.15	27	53	6.20			11.00		
0.42			2.20			6.30			11.10		
0.45			2.25			6.40			11.20		
0.48			2.30			6.50			11.30		
0.50	6	22	2.35			6.60			11.40		
0.52			2.40	30	57	6.70			11.50		
0.55	7	24	2.45			6.80	69	109	11.60		
0.58			2.50			6.90			11.70		
0.60			2.55			7.00			11.80		
0.62	8	26	2.60			7.10			11.90	101	151
0.65			2.65			7.20			12.00		
0.68	9	28	2.70	33	61	7.30			12.10		
0.70			2.75			7.40			12.20		
0.72			2.80			7.50			12.30		
0.75			2.85			7.60	75	117	12.40		
0.78	10	30	2.90			7.70			12.50		
0.80			2.95			7.80			12.60		
0.82			3.00			7.90			12.70		
0.85			3.10	36	65	8.00			12.80		
0.88	11	32	3.20			8.10			12.90		
0.90			3.30			8.20			13.00		
0.92			3.40	39	70	8.30			13.10		
0.95			3.50			8.40			13.20		
0.98	12	34	3.60			8.50			13.30	108	160
1.00			3.70			8.60	81	125	13.40		
1.05			3.80	43	75	8.70			13.50		
1.10	14	36	3.90			8.80			13.60		
1.15			4.00			8.90			13.70		
1.20	16	38	4.10			9.00			13.80		
1.25			4.20			9.10			13.90		
1.30			4.30	47	80	9.20			14.00		
1.35	18	40	4.40			9.30			14.25	114	169
1.40			4.50			9.40			14.50		
1.45			4.60			9.50			14.75		
1.50			4.70			9.60	87	133	15.00		
1.55	20	43	4.80	52	86	9.70			15.25	120	178
1.60			4.90			9.80			15.50		
1.65			5.00			9.90			15.75		
1.70			5.10			10.00			16.00		
			5.20			10.10					
			5.30								

All dimensions are in millimeters. Tolerances on diameters are given in Table 14.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 16. British Standard Parallel Shank Long Series Twist Drills — Standard Metric Sizes *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length
2.00	56	85	6.80	102	156	12.70	134	205
2.05			6.90			12.80		
2.10			7.00			12.90		
2.15	59	90	7.10			13.00		
2.20			7.20			13.10		
2.25			7.30			13.20		
2.30			7.40			13.30	140	214
2.35			7.50			13.40		
2.40	62	95	7.60	109	165	13.50		
2.45			7.70			13.60		
2.50			7.80			13.70		
2.55			7.90			13.80		
2.60			8.00			13.90		
2.65			8.10			14.00		
2.70	66	100	8.20			14.25	144	220
2.75			8.30			14.50		
2.80			8.40			14.75		
2.85			8.50			15.00		
2.90			8.60	115	175	15.25	149	227
2.95			8.70			15.50		
3.00			8.80			15.75		
3.10	69	106	8.90			16.00		
3.20			9.00			16.25	154	235
3.30			9.10			16.50		
3.40	73	112	9.20			16.75		
3.50			9.30			17.00		
3.60			9.40			17.25	158	241
3.70			9.50			17.50		
3.80	78	119	9.60	121	184	17.75		
3.90			9.70			18.00		
4.00			9.80			18.25	162	247
4.10			9.90			18.50		
4.20			10.00			18.75		
			10.10			19.00		
4.30	82	126	10.20			19.25	166	254
4.40			10.30			19.50		
4.50			10.40			19.75		
4.60			10.50			20.00		
4.70			10.60					
4.80	87	132	10.70	128	195	20.25	171	261
4.90			10.80			20.50		
5.00			10.90			20.75		
5.10			11.00			21.00		
5.20			11.10			21.25	176	268
5.30			11.20			21.50		
5.40	91	139	11.30			21.75		
5.50			11.40			22.00		
5.60			11.50			22.25		
5.70			11.60			22.50	180	275
5.80			11.70			22.75		
5.90			11.80			23.00		
6.00			11.90	134	205	23.25		
6.10	97	148	12.00			23.50		
6.20			12.10			23.75	185	282
6.30			12.20			24.00		
6.40			12.30			24.25		
6.50			12.40			24.50		
6.60			12.50			24.75		
6.70			12.60			25.00		

All dimensions are in millimeters. Tolerances on diameters are given in Table 14.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. British Standard Stub Drills — Metric Sizes *BS 328: Part 1:1959*

Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length	Diameter	Flute Length	Overall Length
0.50	3	20	5.00	26	62	9.50	40	84	14.00	54	107
0.80	5	24	5.20			9.80	43	89	14.50	56	111
1.00	6	26	5.50	28	66	10.00			15.00		
1.20	8	30	5.80			10.20			15.50	58	115
1.50	9	32	6.00			10.50			16.00		
1.80	11	36	6.20	31	70	10.80	47	95	16.50	60	119
2.00	12	38	6.50			11.00			17.00		
2.20	13	40	6.80	34	74	11.20			17.50	62	123
2.50	14	43	7.00			11.50			18.00		
2.80	16	46	7.20			11.80			18.50	64	127
3.00			7.50			12.00	51	102	19.00		
3.20	18	49	7.80	37	79	12.20			19.50	66	131
3.50	20	52	8.00			12.50			20.00		
3.80	22	55	8.20			12.80			21.00	68	136
4.00			8.50			13.00			22.00	70	141
4.20			8.80	40	84	13.20			23.00	72	146
4.50	24	58	9.00			13.50	54	107	24.00	75	151
4.80	26	62	9.20			13.80			25.00		

All dimensions are given in millimeters. Tolerances on diameters are given in Table 14.

Steels for Twist Drills.—Twist drill steels need good toughness, abrasion resistance, and ability to resist softening due to heat generated by cutting. The amount of heat generated indicates the type of steel that should be used.

Carbon Tool Steel may be used where little heat is generated during drilling.

High-Speed Steel is preferred because of its combination of red hardness and wear resistance, which permits higher operating speeds and increased productivity. Optimum properties can be obtained by selection of alloy analysis and heat treatment.

Cobalt High-Speed Steel alloys have higher red hardness than standard high-speed steels, permitting drilling of materials such as heat-resistant alloys and materials with hardness greater than 38 RC (Rockwell C scale). These high-speed drills can withstand cutting speeds beyond the range of conventional high-speed steel drills and have superior resistance to abrasion but are not equal to tungsten carbide-tipped tools.

Accuracy of Drilled Holes.—Normally, the diameter of drilled holes is not given a tolerance; the size of the hole is expected to be as close to the drill size as can be obtained.

The accuracy of holes drilled with a two-fluted twist drill is influenced by many factors, including accuracy of the drill point; size of the drill; length and shape of the chisel edge; whether or not a bushing is used to guide the drill; work material; length of the drill; runout of the spindle and the chuck; rigidity of the machine tool, workpiece, and the setup; and cutting fluid used, if any.

The diameter of the drilled holes will be oversize in most materials. The table *Oversize Diameters in Drilling* on page 962 provides the results of tests reported by The United States Cutting Tool Institute in which the diameters of over 2800 holes drilled in steel and cast iron were measured. The values in this table indicate what might be expected under average shop conditions; however, when the drill point is accurately ground and the other machining conditions are correct, the resulting hole size is more likely to be between the mean and average minimum values given in this table. If the drill is ground and used incorrectly, holes that are even larger than the average maximum values can result.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Oversize Diameters in Drilling

Drill Dia., Inch	Amount Oversize, Inch			Drill Dia., Inch	Amount Oversize, Inch		
	Average Max.	Mean	Average Min.		Average Max.	Mean	Average Min.
1/16	0.002	0.0015	0.001	1/2	0.008	0.005	0.003
1/8	0.0045	0.003	0.001	3/4	0.008	0.005	0.003
1/4	0.0065	0.004	0.0025	1	0.009	0.007	0.004

Courtesy of The United States Cutting Tool Institute

Some conditions will cause the drilled hole to be undersize. For example, holes drilled in light metals and in other materials having a high coefficient of thermal expansion such as plastics may contract to a size that is smaller than the diameter of the drill as the material surrounding the hole is cooled after having been heated by the drilling. The elastic action of the material surrounding the hole may also cause the drilled hole to be undersize when drilling high-strength materials with a drill that is dull at its outer corner.

The accuracy of the drill point has a great effect on the accuracy of the drilled hole. An inaccurately ground twist drill will produce holes that are excessively oversize. The drill point must be symmetrical; i.e., the point angles must be equal, as well as the lip lengths and the axial height of the lips. Any alterations to the lips or to the chisel edge, such as thinning the web, must be done carefully to preserve the symmetry of the drill point. Adequate relief should be provided behind the chisel edge to prevent heel drag. On conventionally ground drill points, this relief can be estimated by the chisel edge angle.

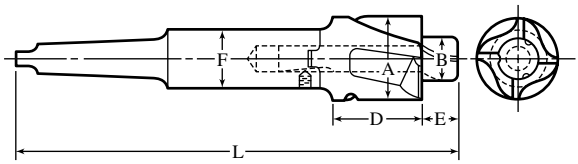
When drilling a hole, as the drill point starts to enter the workpiece, the drill will be unstable and will tend to wander. Then, as the body of the drill enters the hole, the drill will tend to stabilize. The result of this action is a tendency to drill a bellmouth shape in the hole at the entrance and perhaps beyond. Factors contributing to bellmouthing are: an unsymmetrically ground drill point; a large chisel edge length; inadequate relief behind the chisel edge; runout of the spindle and the chuck; using a slender drill that will bend easily; and lack of rigidity of the machine tool, workpiece, or the setup. Correcting these conditions as required will reduce the tendency for bellmouthing to occur and improve the accuracy of the hole diameter and its straightness. Starting the hole with a short stiff drill, such as a center drill, will quickly stabilize the drill that follows and reduce or eliminate bellmouthing; this procedure should always be used when drilling in a lathe, where the work is rotating. Bellmouthing can also be eliminated almost entirely and the accuracy of the hole improved by using a close-fitting drill jig bushing placed close to the workpiece. Although specific recommendations cannot be made, many cutting fluids will help to increase the accuracy of the diameters of drilled holes. Double-margin twist drills, available in the smaller sizes, will drill a more accurate hole than conventional twist drills having only a single margin at the leading edge of the land. The second land, located on the trailing edge of each land, provides greater stability in the drill bushing and in the hole. These drills are especially useful in drilling intersecting off-center holes. Single and double-margin step drills, also available in the smaller sizes, will produce very accurate drilled holes, which are usually less than 0.002 inch (0.051 mm) larger than the drill size.

Counterboring.—Counterboring (called spot-facing if the depth is shallow) is the enlargement of a previously formed hole. Counterbores for screw holes are generally made in sets. Each set contains three counterbores: one with the body of the size of the screw head and the pilot the size of the hole to admit the body of the screw; one with the body the size of the head of the screw and the pilot the size of the tap drill; and the third with the body the size of the body of the screw and the pilot the size of the tap drill. Counterbores are usually provided with helical flutes to provide positive effective rake on the cutting edges. The four flutes are so positioned that the end teeth cut ahead of center to provide a shearing action and eliminate chatter in the cut. Three designs are most common: solid, two-piece, and three-piece. Solid designs have the body, cutter, and pilot all in one piece. Two-piece designs have an integral shank and counterbore cutter, with an interchangeable pilot, and provide true concentricity of the cutter diameter with the shank while

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

allowing use of various pilot diameters. Three-piece counterbores have separate holder, counterbore cutter, and pilot, so that a holder will take any size of counterbore cutter. Each counterbore cutter, in turn, can be fitted with any suitable size diameter of pilot. Counterbores for brass are fluted straight.

Counterbores with Interchangeable Cutters and Guides



No. of Holder	No. of Morse Taper Shank	Range of Cutter Diameters, *A*	Range of Pilot Diameters, *B*	Total Length, *C*	Length of Cutter Body, *D*	Length of Pilot, *E*	Dia. of Shank, *F*
1	1 or 2	¾-1 1⁄16	½-¾	7¼	1	⅝	¾
2	2 or 3	1⅛-1 9⁄16	1 1⁄16-1⅛	9½	1⅜	⅞	1⅛
3	3 or 4	1 5⁄8-2 1⁄16	⅞-1⅝	12½	1¾	1⅛	1⅝
4	4 or 5	2 1⁄8-3½	1-2⅛	15	2¼	1⅜	2⅛

Small counterbores are often made with three flutes, but should then have the size plainly stamped on them before fluting, as they cannot afterwards be conveniently measured. The flutes should be deep enough to come below the surface of the pilot. The counterbore should be relieved on the end of the body only, and not on the cylindrical surface. To facilitate the relieving process, a small neck is turned between the guide and the body for clearance. The amount of clearance on the cutting edges is, for general work, from 4 to 5 degrees. The accompanying table gives dimensions for straight shank counterbores.

Solid Counterbores with Integral Pilot

Counterbore Diameters	Pilot Diameters			Straight Shank Diameter	Overall Length	
	Nominal	+1⁄64	+1⁄32		Short	Long
0.110	0.060	0.076	…	7⁄64	2½	…
0.133	0.073	0.089	…	⅛	2½	…
0.155	0.086	0.102	…	5⁄32	2½	…
0.176	0.099	0.115	…	11⁄64	2½	…
0.198	0.112	0.128	…	3⁄16	2½	…
0.220	0.125	0.141	…	3⁄16	2½	…
0.241	0.138	0.154	…	7⁄32	2½	…
0.285	0.164	0.180	…	¼	2½	…
0.327	0.190	0.206	…	9⁄32	2¾	…
0.372	0.216	0.232	…	5⁄16	2¾	…
13⁄32	¼	17⁄64	9⁄32	⅜	3½	5½
½	5⁄16	21⁄64	11⁄32	⅜	3½	5½
19⁄32	⅜	25⁄64	13⁄32	½	4	6
11⁄16	7⁄16	29⁄64	15⁄32	½	4	6
25⁄32	½	33⁄64	17⁄32	½	5	7

All dimensions are in inches.

Three-Piece Counterbores.—Data shown for the first two styles of counterbores are for straight-shank designs. These tools are also available with taper shanks in most sizes. Sizes of taper shanks for cutter diameters of 1⁄4 to 9⁄16 in. are No. 1; for 19⁄32 to 7⁄8 in., No. 2; for 15⁄16 to 1 3⁄8 in., No. 3; for 1 1⁄2 to 2 in., No. 4; and for 2 1⁄8 to 2 1⁄2 in., No. 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Counterbore Sizes for Hex-Head Bolts and Nuts.—Table 3a, page 1689, shows the maximum socket wrench dimensions for standard 1/4-, 1/2- and 3/4-inch drive socket sets. For a given socket size (nominal size equals the maximum width across the flats of nut or bolt head), the dimension *K* given in the table is the minimum counterbore diameter required to provide socket wrench clearance for access to the bolt or nut.

Sintered Carbide Boring Tools.—Industrial experience has shown that the shapes of tools used for boring operations need to be different from those of single-point tools ordinarily used for general applications such as lathe work. Accordingly, Section 5 of American National Standard ANSI B212.1-2002 gives standard sizes, styles and designations for four basic types of sintered carbide boring tools, namely: solid carbide square; carbide-tipped square; solid carbide round; and carbide-tipped round boring tools. In addition to these ready-to-use standard boring tools, solid carbide round and square unsharpened boring tool bits are provided.

Style Designations for Carbide Boring Tools: Table 1 shows designations used to specify the styles of American Standard sintered carbide boring tools. The first letter denotes solid (S) or tipped (T). The second letter denotes square (S) or round (R). The side cutting edge angle is denoted by a third letter (A through H) to complete the style designation. Solid square and round bits with the mounting surfaces ground but the cutting edges unsharpened (Table 3) are designated using the same system except that the third letter indicating the side cutting edge angle is omitted.

Table 1. American National Standard Sintered Carbide Boring Tools — Style Designations *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*

Side Cutting Edge Angle *E*		Boring Tool Styles			
Degrees	Designation	Solid Square (SS)	Tipped Square (TS)	Solid Round (SR)	Tipped Round (TR)
0	A		TSA		
10	B		TSB		
30	C	SSC	TSC	SRC	TRC
40	D		TSD		
45	E	SSE	TSE	SRE	TRE
55	F		TSF		
90 (0° Rake)	G				TRG
90 (10° Rake)	H				TRH

Size Designation of Carbide Boring Tools: Specific sizes of boring tools are identified by the addition of numbers after the style designation. The first number denotes the diameter or square size in number of 1/32nds for types SS and SR and in number of 1/16ths for types TS and TR. The second number denotes length in number of 1/8ths for types SS and SR. For styles TRG and TRH, a letter "U" after the number denotes a semi-finished tool (cutting edges unsharpened). Complete designations for the various standard sizes of carbide boring tools are given in Table 2 through Table 7. In the diagrams in the tables, angles shown without tolerance are ± 1°.

Examples of Tool Designation: The designation TSC-8 indicates a carbide-tipped tool (T); square cross section (S); 30-degree side cutting edge angle (C); and 8/16 or 1/2 inch square size (8).

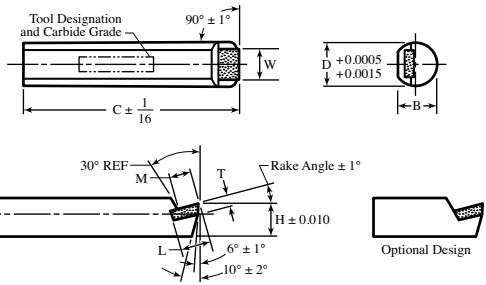
The designation SRE-66 indicates a solid carbide tool (S); round cross section (R); 45-degree side cutting edge angle (E); 6/32 or 3/16 inch diameter (6); and 6/8 or 3/4 inch long (6).

The designation SS-610 indicates a solid carbide tool (S); square cross section (S); 6/32 or 3/16 inch square size (6); 10/8 or 1 1/4 inches long (10).

It should be noted in this last example that the absence of a third letter (from A to H) indicates that the tool has its mounting surfaces ground but that the cutting edges are unsharpened.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

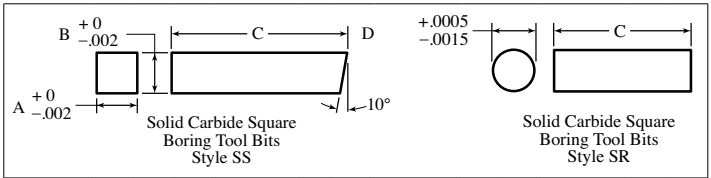
Table 2. ANSI Carbide-Tipped Round General-Purpose Square-End Boring Tools Style TRG with 0° Rake and Style TRH with 10° Rake *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*



Tool Designation		Shank Dimensions, Inches					Rake Angle Deg.	Tip No.	Tip Dimensions, Inches		
Finished	Semi-finished[a]	Dia. *D*	Length *C*	Dim.Over Flat *B*	Nose Height *H*	Setback *M* (Min)			*T*	*W*	*L*
TRG-5	TRG-5U	5/16	1½	19/64 ±.005	3/16	3/16	0	1025	1/16	1/4	1/4
TRH-5	TRH-5U				7/32	3/16	10				
TRG-6	TRG-6U	3/8	1¾	11/32 ±.010	7/32	3/16	0	1030	1/16	5/16	1/4
TRH-6	TRH-6U				1/4		10				
TRG-7	TRG-7U	7/16	2½	13/32 ±.010	1/4	3/16	0	1080	3/32	5/16	3/8
TRH-7	TRH-7U				5/16		10				
TRG-8	TRG-8U	½	2½	15/32 ±.010	9/32	1/4	0	1090	3/32	3/8	3/8
TRH-8	TRH-8U				11/32		10				

[a] Semifinished tool will be without Flat (B) and carbide unground on the end.

Table 3. Solid Carbide Square and Round Boring Tool Bits

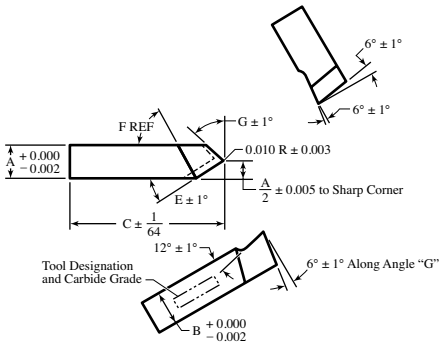


Square Bits				Round Bits							
Tool Designation	*A*	*B*	*C*	Tool Designation	*D*	*C*	Tool Designation	*D*	*C*	Tool Designation	*D*	*C*
SS-58	5/32	5/32	1	SR-33	3/32	3/8	SR-55	5/32	5/8	SR-88	1/4	1
SS-610	3/16	3/16	1¼	SR-34	3/32	½	SR-64	3/16	½	SR-810	1/4	1¼
SS-810	1/4	1/4	1¼	SR-44	1/8	½	SR-66	3/16	¾	SR-1010	5/16	1¼
SS-1012	5/16	5/16	1½	SR-46	1/8	¾	SR-69	3/16	1⅛	…	…	…
SS-1214	3/8	3/8	1¾	SR-48	1/8	1	SR-77	7/32	7/8	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches.
Tolerance on Length: Through 1 inch, +1/32, −0; over 1 inch, +1/16, −0.

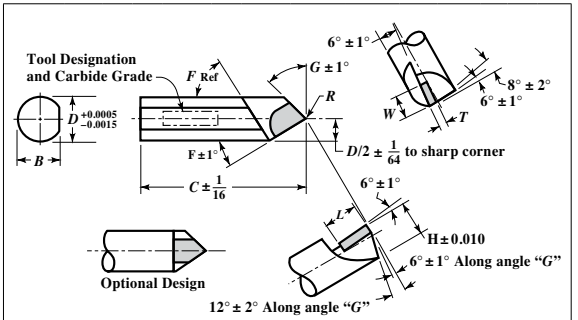
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ANSI Solid Carbide Square Boring Tools
Style SSC for 60° Boring Bar and Style SSE for 45° Boring Bar
ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)



Tool Designation	Boring Bar Angle, Deg. from Axis	Shank Dimensions, Inches			Side Cutting Edge Angle *E*, Deg.	End Cutting Edge Angle *G*, Deg.	Shoulder Angle *F*, Deg.
		Width *A*	Height *B*	Length *C*			
SSC-58	60	5/32	5/32	1	30	38	60
SSE-58	45				45	53	45
SSC-610	60	3/16	3/16	1 1/4	30	38	60
SSE-610	45				45	53	45
SSC-810	60	1/4	1/4	1 1/4	30	38	60
SSE-810	45				45	53	45
SSC-1012	60	5/16	5/16	1 1/2	30	38	60
SSE-1012	45				45	53	45

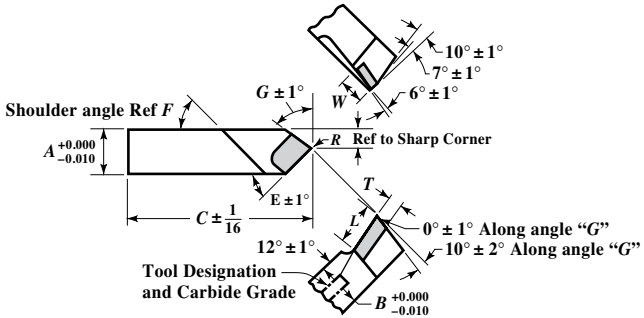
Table 5. ANSI Carbide-Tipped Round Boring Tools
Style TRC for 60° Boring Bar and Style TRE for 45° Boring Bar
ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)



Tool Designation	Bor. Bar Angle from Axis, Deg.	Shank Dimensions, Inches					Side Cut. Edge Angle *E*, Deg.	End Cut. Edge Angle *G*, Deg.	Shoulder Angle *F*, Deg.	Tip No.	Tip Dimensions, Inches		
		D	*C*	*B*	*H*	*R*					*T*	*W*	*L*
TRC-5	60	5/16	1 1/2	19/64 ±.005	7/32	1/64 ±.005	30	38	60	2020	1/16	3/16	1/4
TRE-5	45						45	53	45				
TRC-6	60	3/8	1 3/4	11/32 ±.010	9/32	1/64 ±.005	30	38	60	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TRE-6	45						45	53	45	2020	1/16	3/16	1/4
TRC-7	60	7/16	2 1/2	13/32 ±.010	5/16	1/32 ±.010	30	38	60	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TRE-7	45						45	53	45				
TRC-8	60	1/2	2 1/2	15/32 ±.010	3/8	1/32 ±.010	30	38	60	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TRE-8	45						45	53	45	2080	3/32	5/16	3/8

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

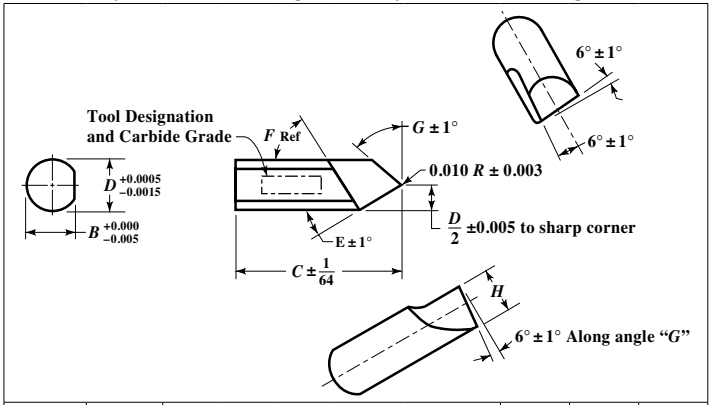
Table 6. ANSI Carbide-Tipped Square Boring Tools — *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*
Styles TSA and TSB for 90° Boring Bar, Styles TSC and TSD for 60° Boring Bar, and Styles TSE and TSF for 45° Boring Bar



Tool Designation	Bor. Bar Angle from Axis, Deg.	Shank Dimensions, Inches				Side Cut. Edge Angle E, Deg.	End Cut. Edge Angle G, Deg.	Shoulder Angle F, Deg.	Tip No.	Tip Dimensions, Inches		
		A	*B*	*C*	*R*					*T*	*W*	*L*
TSA-5	90	5/16	5/16	1½		0	8	90	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSB-5	90	5/16	5/16	1½		10	8	90	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSC-5	60	5/16	5/16	1½		30	38	60	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSD-5	60	5/16	5/16	1½		40	38	60	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSE-5	45	5/16	5/16	1½		45	53	45	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSF-5	45	5/16	5/16	1½		55	53	45	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSA-6	90	3/8	3/8	1¾		0	8	90	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSB-6	90	3/8	3/8	1¾		10	8	90	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSC-6	60	3/8	3/8	1¾		30	38	60	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSD-6	60	3/8	3/8	1¾		40	38	60	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSE-6	45	3/8	3/8	1¾		45	53	45	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSF-6	45	3/8	3/8	1¾		55	53	45	2040	3/32	3/16	5/16
TSA-7	90	7/16	7/16	2½		0	8	90	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSB-7	90	7/16	7/16	2½		10	8	90	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSC-7	60	7/16	7/16	2½		30	38	60	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSD-7	60	7/16	7/16	2½		40	38	60	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSE-7	45	7/16	7/16	2½		45	53	45	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSF-7	45	7/16	7/16	2½		55	53	45	2060	3/32	1/4	3/8
TSA-8	90	1/2	1/2	2½		0	8	90	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSB-8	90	1/2	1/2	2½		10	8	90	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSC-8	60	1/2	1/2	2½		30	38	60	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSD-8	60	1/2	1/2	2½		40	38	60	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSE-8	45	1/2	1/2	2½		45	53	45	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSF-8	45	1/2	1/2	2½		55	53	45	2150	1/8	5/16	7/16
TSA-10	90	5/8	5/8	3		0	8	90	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSB-10	90	5/8	5/8	3		10	8	90	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSC-10	60	5/8	5/8	3		30	38	60	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSD-10	60	5/8	5/8	3		40	38	60	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSE-10	45	5/8	5/8	3		45	53	45	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSF-10	45	5/8	5/8	3		55	53	45	2220	5/32	3/8	9/16
TSA-12	90	3/4	3/4	3½		0	8	90	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8
TSB-12	90	3/4	3/4	3½		10	8	90	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8
TSC-12	60	3/4	3/4	3½		30	38	60	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8
TSD-12	60	3/4	3/4	3½		40	38	60	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8
TSE-12	45	3/4	3/4	3½		45	53	45	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8
TSF-12	45	3/4	3/4	3½		55	53	45	2300	3/16	7/16	5/8

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. ANSI Solid Carbide Round Boring Tools — *ANSI B212.1-2002 (R2007)*
Style SRC for 60° Boring Bar and Style SRE for 45° Boring Bar



Tool Designation	Bor. Bar Angle from Axis, Deg.	Shank Dimensions, Inches					Side Cut. Edge Angle *E*, Deg.	End Cut. Edge Angle *G*, Deg.	Shoulder Angle *F*, Deg.
		Dia. *D*	Length *C*	Dim. Over Flat *B*	Nose Height *H*				
SRC-33	60	3/32	3/8	0.088	0.070	$\left[\begin{smallmatrix}+0.000\\-0.005\end{smallmatrix}\right]$	30	38	60
SRE-33	45	3/32	3/8	0.088	0.070		45	53	45
SRC-44	60	1/8	1/2	0.118	0.094	$\left[\begin{smallmatrix}+0.000\\-0.005\end{smallmatrix}\right]$	30	38	60
SRE-44	45	1/8	1/2	0.118	0.094		45	53	45
SRC-55	60	5/32	5/8	0.149	0.117	±0.005	30	38	60
SRE-55	45	5/32	5/8	0.149	0.117	±0.005	45	53	45
SRC-66	60	3/16	3/4	0.177	0.140	±0.005	30	38	60
SRE-66	45	3/16	3/4	0.177	0.140	±0.005	45	53	45
SRC-88	60	1/4	1	0.240	0.187	±0.005	30	38	60
SRE-88	45	1/4	1	0.240	0.187	±0.005	45	53	45
SRC-1010	60	5/16	1 1/4	0.300	0.235	±0.005	30	38	60
SRE-1010	45	5/16	1 1/4	0.300	0.235	±0.005	45	53	45

Boring Machines, Origin.—The first boring machine was built by John Wilkinson in 1775. John Smeaton had built one in 1769 which had a large rotary head, with inserted cutters, carried on the end of a light, overhanging shaft. The cylinder to be bored was fed forward against the cutter on a rude carriage, running on a track laid in the floor. The cutter head followed the inaccuracies of the bore, doing little more than smooth out local roughness of the surface. Watt's first steam cylinders were bored on this machine and he complained that one, 18 inches in diameter, was 3/8 inch out of true. Wilkinson thought of the expedient, which had escaped both Smeaton and Watt, of extending the boring-bar completely through the cylinder and giving it an out-board bearing, at the same time making it much larger and stiffer. With this machine, cylinders 57 inches in diameter were bored which were within 1/16 inch of true. Its importance can hardly be overestimated as it insured the commercial success of Watt's steam engine, which, up to that time, had not passed the experimental stage.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TAPS

A tap is a mechanical device applied to make a standard thread on a hole. A range of tap pitch diameter (PD) limits, from which the user may select to suit local conditions, is available. Taps included in the ANSI/ASME B94.9 standard are categorized according to type, style, size and chamfer, and blank design. General dimensions and tap markings are given in the standard ANSI/ASME B94.9 Taps: *Ground Thread With Cut Thread Appendix (Inch and Metric Sizes)* for straight-fluted taps, spiral-pointed taps, spiral-pointed-only taps, spiral-fluted taps, fast spiral-fluted taps, thread-forming taps, pulley taps, nut taps, and pipe taps. The standard also gives the thread limits for taps with cut threads and ground threads. The tap thread limits and tolerances are given in Table 2 to Table 4, tap dimensions for cut thread and ground thread are given in Table 5a through Table 10. Pulley tap dimensions and tolerances are given in Table 12, straight and taper pipe thread tap dimensions and tolerances are given on Table 13a and Table 13b, and thread limits for cut thread and ground thread taps are given in Table 15 through Table 26a.

Thread Form, Styles, and Types

Thread Form.—The basic angle of thread between the flanks of thread measured in an axial plane is 60 degrees. The line bisecting this 60° angle is perpendicular to the axis of the screw thread. The symmetrical height of the thread form, h, is found as follows:

$$h = 0.64951905P = \frac{0.64951905}{n} \quad (1)$$

The basic pitch diameter (PD) is obtained by subtracting the symmetrical single thread height, h, from the basic major diameter as follows:

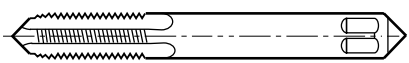
$$\text{Basic Pitch Diameter} = D_{bsc} - h \quad (2)$$

D_{bsc} = basic major diameter
P = pitch of thread
h = symmetrical height of thread
n = number of threads per inch

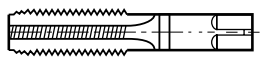
Types and Styles of Taps.—Tap *type* is based on general dimensions such as standard straight thread, taper and straight pipe, pulley, etc., or is based on purpose, such as thread forming and screw thread inserts (STI).

Tap *style* is based on flute construction for cutting taps, such as straight, spiral, or spiral point, and on lobe style and construction for forming taps, such as straight or spiral.

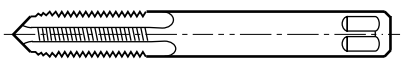
Straight-Flute Taps: These taps have straight flutes of a number specified as either standard or optional, and are for general purpose applications. This standard applies to machine screw, fractional, metric, and STI sizes in high-speed steel ground thread, and to machine screw and fractional sizes in high speed and carbon steel cut thread, with taper, plug, semibottom, and bottom chamfer.



BLANK Design 1



BLANK Design 3

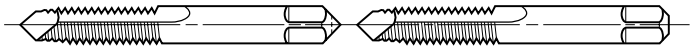


BLANK Design 2

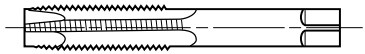
Spiral-Pointed Taps: These taps have straight flutes, and the cutting face of the first few threads is ground at an angle to force the chips ahead and prevent clogging in the flutes. This standard applies to machine screw, fractional, metric, and STI sizes in high-speed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

steel ground thread, and to cut thread in machine screw and fractional sizes with plug, semibottom, and bottom chamfer.

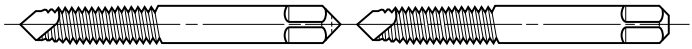


Blank Design 1 Blank Design 2

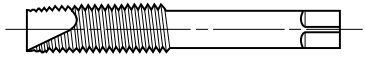


Blank Design 3

Spiral-Pointed-Only Taps: These taps are made with the spiral point feature only, without longitudinal flutes. These taps are especially suitable for tapping thin materials. This standard applies to machine screw and fractional sizes in high-speed steel, ground thread, with plug chamfer.

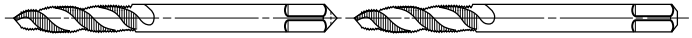


Blank Design 1 Blank Design 2

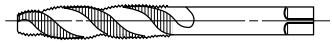


Blank Design 3

Spiral-Fluted Taps: These taps have right-hand helical flutes with a helix angle of 25 to 35 degrees. These features are designed to help draw chips from the hole or to bridge a keyway. This standard applies to machine screw, fractional, metric, and STI sizes in high-speed steel and to ground thread with plug, semibottom, and bottom chamfer.

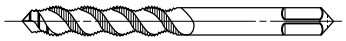


Blank Design 1 Blank Design 2

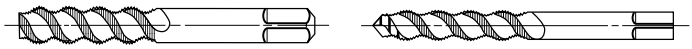


Blank Design 3

Fast Spiral-Fluted Taps: These taps are similar to spiral-fluted taps, except the helix angle is from 45 to 60 degrees.This standard applies to machine screw, fractional, metric, and STI sizes in high-speed steel with plug, semibottom, and bottom chamfer.



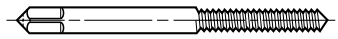
Blank Design 1



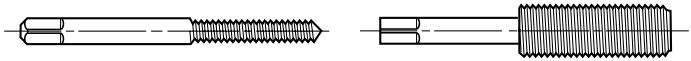
Blank Design 2 Blank Design 3

Thread-Forming Taps: These taps are fluteless except as optionally designed with one or more lubricating grooves. The thread form on the tap is lobed, so that there are a finite number of points contacting the work thread form. The tap does not cut, but forms the thread by extrusion. This standard applies to machine screw, fractional, and metric sizes, in high-speed steel, ground thread form, with plug, semibottom, and bottom entry taper.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

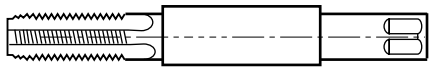


Blank Design 1

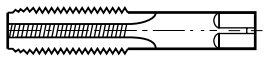


Blank Design 2 Blank Design 3

Pulley Taps: These taps were originally designed for tapping line-shaft pulleys by hand. Today, these taps have shanks that are extended in length by a standard amount for use where added reach is required. The shank is the same nominal diameter as the thread. This standard applies to fractional size and ground thread with plug and bottom chamfer.



Pipe Taps: These taps are used to produce standard straight or tapered pipe threads. This standard applies to fractional size in high-speed steel, ground thread, to high-speed steel and carbon steel in cut thread, and to straight pipe taps having plug chamfers and taper pipe taps.



Standard System of Tap Marking.— Ground thread taps specified in the US customary system are marked with the nominal size, number of threads per inch, the proper symbol to identify the thread form, "HS" for high-speed steel, "G" for ground thread, and designators for tap pitch diameter and special features, such as left-hand and multi-start threads.

Cut thread taps specified in the US customary system are marked with the nominal size, number of threads per inch, and the proper symbol to identify the thread form. High-speed steel taps are marked "HS," but carbon steel taps need not be marked.

Ground thread taps made with metric screw threads (M profile) are marked with "M," followed by the nominal size and pitch in millimeters, separated by "X." Marking also includes "HS" for high-speed steel, "G" for ground thread, designators for tap pitch diameter and special features, such as left-hand and multi-start threads.

Thread symbol designators are listed in the accompanying table. Tap pitch diameter designators, systems of limits, special features, and examples for ground threads are given in the following section.

Standard System of Tap Thread Limits and Identification for Unified Inch Screw Threads, Ground Thread.—*H or L Limits:* For Unified inch screw threads, when the maximum tap pitch diameter is over basic pitch diameter by an even multiple of 0.0005 inches, or the minimum tap pitch diameter limit is under basic pitch diameter by an even multiple of 0.0005 inches, the taps are marked "H" or "L," respectively, followed by a limit number, determined as follows:

$$\text{H Limit number} = \frac{\text{Tap PD} - \text{Basic PD}}{0.0005}$$

$$\text{L Limit number} = \frac{\text{Basic PD} - \text{Tap PD}}{0.0005}$$

The tap PD tolerances for ground threads are given in Table 2, column D; PD tolerances for cut threads are given in Table 3, column D. For standard taps, the PD limits for various H limit numbers are given in Table 20. The minimum tap PD equals the basic PD minus the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

number of half-thousandths (0.0005 in.) represented by the limit number. The maximum tap PD equals the minimum PD plus the PD tolerance given in Table 20.

Tap Marking with H or L Limit Numbers

Example 1: $\frac{3}{8}$-16 NC HS H1

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Maximum tap PD} &= \text{Basic PD} + 0.0005\\ &= \frac{3}{8} - \left(0.64951904 \times \frac{1}{16}\right) + 0.0005\\ &= 0.3344 + 0.0005\\ &= 0.3349\\ \text{Minimum tap PD} &= \text{Maximum tap PD} - 0.0005\\ &= 0.3349 - 0.0005\\ &= 0.3344\end{aligned}$$

Example 2: $\frac{3}{8}$-16 NC HS G L2

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Minimum tap PD} &= \text{Basic PD} - 0.0010\\ &= \frac{3}{8} - \left(0.64951904 \times \frac{1}{16}\right) - 0.0010\\ &= 0.3344 - 0.0010\\ &= 0.3334\\ \text{Maximum tap PD} &= \text{Minimum tap PD} + 0.0005\\ &= 0.3334 + 0.0005\\ &= 0.3339\end{aligned}$$

Oversize or Undersize: When the maximum tap PD over basic PD or the minimum tap PD under basic PD is not an even multiple of 0.0005, the tap PD is usually designated as an amount oversize or undersize. The amount oversize is added to the basic PD to establish the *minimum* tap PD. The amount undersize is subtracted from the basic PD to establish the *minimum* tap PD. The PD tolerance from Table 2 is added to the minimum tap PD to establish the maximum tap PD for both.

Example: $\frac{7}{16}$-14 NC plus 0.0017 HS G

Min. tap PD = Basic PD + 0.0017 in.

Max. tap PD = Min. tap PD + 0.0005 in.

Whenever possible for oversize or other special tap PD requirements, the maximum and minimum tap PD requirements should be specified.

Special Tap Pitch Diameter: Taps not made to H or L limit numbers, to the specifications in, or to the formula for oversize or undersize taps may be marked with the letter "S" enclosed by a circle or by some other special identifier. Example: $\frac{1}{2}$-16 NC HS G.

Left-Hand Taps: Taps with left-hand threads are marked "LEFT HAND" or "LH."

Example: $\frac{3}{8}$-16 NC LH HS G H3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Thread Series Designations

Standard Tap Marking	Product Thread Designation	Third Series	American National Standard References
M	M	Metric Screw Threads—M Profile, with basic ISO 68 profile	B1.13M
M	MJ	Metric Screw Threads: MJ Profile, with rounded root of radius 0.15011*P* to 0.18042*P* (external thread only)	
		Class 5 interference-fit thread	
NC	NC5IF	Entire ferrous material range	B1.12
NC	NC5INF	Entire nonferrous material range	B1.12
NPS	NPSC	American Standard straight pipe threads in pipe couplings	B1.20.1
NPSF	NPSF	Dryseal American Standard fuel internal straight pipe threads	B1.20.3
NPSH	NPSH	American Standard straight hose coupling threads for joining to American Standard taper pipe threads	B1.20.7
NPSI	NPSI	Dryseal American Standard intermediate internal straight pipe threads	B1.20.3
NPSL	NPSL	American Standard straight pipe threads for loose-fitting mechanical joints with locknuts	B1.20.1
NPSM	NPSM	American Standard straight pipe threads for free-fitting mechanical joints for fixtures	B1.20.1
ANPT	ANPT	Pipe threads, taper, aeronautical, national form	AS-71051
NPT	NPT	American Standard taper pipe threads for general use	B1.20.1
NPTF	NPTF	Dryseal American Standard taper pipe threads	B1.20.3
NPTR	NPTR	American Standard taper pipe threads for railing joints	B1.20.1
PTF	PTF	Dryseal American Standard pipe threads	B1.20.3
PTF-SPL	PTF-SPL	Dryseal American Standard pipe threads	B1.20.3
STI	STI	Helical coil screw thread inserts-free running and screw locking (inch series)	B18.29.1
		Unified Inch Screw Thread	
N	UN	Constant-pitch series	B1.1
NC	UNC	Coarse pitch series	B1.1
NF	UNF	Fine pitch series	B1.1
NEF	UNEF	Extra-fine pitch series	B1.1
N	UNJ	Constant-pitch series, with rounded root of radius 0.15011*P* to 0.18042*P* (external thread only)	AS-8879
NC	UNJC	Coarse pitch series, with rounded root of radius 0.15011*P* to 0.18042 *P* (external thread only)	B1.15 AS-8879
NF	UNJF	Fine pitch series, with rounded root of radius 0.15011*P* to 0.18042*P* (external thread only)	B1.15 AS-8879
NEF	UNJEF	Extra-fine pitch series, with rounded root of radius 0.15011*P* to 0.18042*P* (external thread only)	B1.15 AS-8879
N	UNR	Constant-pitch series, with rounded root of radius not less than 0.108*P* (external thread only)	B1.1
NC	UNRC	Coarse thread series, with rounded root of radius not less than 0.108*P* (external thread only)	B1.1
NF	UNRF	Fine pitch series, with rounded root of radius not less than 0.108*P* (external thread only)	B1.1
NEF	UNREF	Extra-fine pitch series, with rounded root of radius not less than 0.108*P* (external thread only)	B1.1
NS	UNS	Special diameter pitch, or length of engagement	B1.1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Tap Thread Limits and Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
Formulas for Unified Inch Screw Threads (Ground Thread)

Max. Major Diameter = Basic Diameter + A Max. Pitch Diameter = Basic Diameter + C
Min. Major Diameter = Max. Maj. Dia. − B Min. Pitch Diameter = Max. Pitch Dia. − D

A = Constant to add = 0.130P for all pitches
B = Major diameter tolerance= 0.087P for 48 to 80 TPI; 0.076P for 36 to 47 TPI; 0.065P for 4 to 35 TPI
C = Amount over basic for maximum pitch diameter
D = Pitch Diameter Tolerance

Threads per Inch	A	B	C					D				
			0 to ⅝	⅝ to 1	1 to 1½	1½ to 2½	Over 2½	0 to ⅝	⅝ to 1	1 to 1½	1½ to 2½	Over 2½
80	0.0016	0.0011	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
72	0.0018	0.0012	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
64	0.0020	0.0014	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
56	0.0023	0.0016	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
48	0.0027	0.0018	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
44	0.0030	0.0017	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
40	0.0032	0.0019	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
36	0.0036	0.0021	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
32	0.0041	0.0020	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
28	0.0046	0.0023	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0020	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010	0.0015
24	0.0054	0.0027	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0015
20	0.0065	0.0032	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0015
18	0.0072	0.0036	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0015
16	0.0081	0.0041	0.0015	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0035	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
14	0.0093	0.0046	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
13	0.0100	0.0050	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
12	0.0108	0.0054	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
11	0.0118	0.0059	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0040	0.0005	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
10	0.0130	0.0065	…	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0040	…	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
9	0.0144	0.0072	…	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0040	…	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
8	0.0162	0.0081	…	0.0020	0.0025	0.0030	0.0040	…	0.0005	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020
7	0.0186	0.0093	…	0.0025	0.0025	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0010	0.0020	0.0025
6	0.0217	0.0108	…	0.0025	0.0025	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0010	0.0020	0.0025
5½	0.0236	0.0118	…	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025
5	0.0260	0.0130	…	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025
4½	0.0289	0.0144	…	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025
4	0.0325	0.0162	…	0.0025	0.0030	0.0035	0.0045	…	0.0010	0.0015	0.0020	0.0025

Dimensions are given in inches.
The tables and formulas are used in determining the limits and tolerances for ground thread taps having a thread lead angle not in excess of 5°, unless otherwise specified.
The tap major diameter must be determined from a specified tap pitch diameter: the minimum major diameter equals the maximum specified tap pitch diameter minus constant C, plus 0.64951904P plus constant A.

$$\text{Minimum Major Diameter} = \text{Tap Pitch Diameter} - C + 0.64951904P + A$$

For intermediate pitches, use value of next coarser pitch; for C and D use formulas for A and B.
Lead Tolerance:± 0.0005 inch within any two threads not farther apart than 1 inch.
Angle Tolerance: ± 20′ in half angle for 4 to 5½ pitch; ± 25′ in half angle for 6 to 9 pitch; and ± 30′ in half angle for 10 to 80 pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Tap Thread Limits and Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
Formulas for Unified Inch Screw Threads (Cut Thread)

Min. Major Diameter = Basic Diameter + $B + C$ Min. Pitch Diameter = Basic Diameter + B
Max. Major Diameter = Min. Maj. Dia. + A Max. Pitch Diameter = Min. Pitch Dia. + D

A = Major diameter tolerance
B = Amount over basic for minimum pitch diameter
C = A constant to add for major diameter: 20% of theoretical truncation for 2 to 5.5 threads per inch and 25% for 6 to 80 threads per inch
D = Pitch diameter tolerance

Diameter of Tap (Inch)	A	B		D	
		36 or more TPI	34 or less TPI	Coarser than N.F.	N.F. and Finer[a]
0 to 0.099	0.0015	0.0002	0.0005	0.0010	0.0010
0.10 to 0.249	0.0020	0.0002	0.0005	0.0015	0.0015
1/4 to 3/8	0.0025	0.0005	0.0005	0.0020	0.0015
3/8 to 5/8	0.0030	0.0005	0.0005	0.0025	0.0020
5/8 to 3/4	0.0040	0.0005	0.0005	0.0030	0.0025
3/4 to 1	0.0040	0.0010	0.0010	0.0030	0.0025
1 to 1 1/2	0.0045	0.0010	0.0010	0.0035	0.0030
1 1/2 to 2	0.0055	0.0015	0.0015	0.0040	0.0030
2 to 2 1/4	0.0060	0.0015	0.0015	0.0045	0.0035
2 1/4 to 2 1/2	0.0060	0.0020	0.0020	0.0045	0.0035
2 1/2 to 3	0.0070	0.0020	0.0020	0.0050	0.0035
over 3	0.0070	0.0025	0.0025	0.0055	0.0045

[a] Taps over 1 1/2 inches with 10 or more threads per inch have tolerances for N.F. and finer.

Threads per Inch	C	Threads per Inch	C	Threads per Inch	C	Threads per Inch	C
2	0.0217	7	0.0077	18	0.0030	36	0.0015
2 1/2	0.0173	8	0.0068	20	0.0027	40	0.0014
3	0.0144	9	0.0060	22	0.0025	48	0.0011
3 1/2	0.0124	10	0.0054	24	0.0023	50	0.0011
4	0.0108	11	0.0049	26	0.0021	56	0.0010
4 1/2	0.0096	12	0.0045	27	0.0020	60	0.0009
5	0.0087	13	0.0042	28	0.0019	64	0.0008
5 1/2	0.0079	14	0.0039	30	0.0018	72	0.0008
6	0.0078	16	0.0034	32	0.0017	80	0.0007

Angle Tolerance					
Threads per Inch	Deviation in Half angle	Deviation in Half angle	Threads per Inch	Deviation in Half angle	Deviation in Half angle
4 and coarser	± 30′	± 45′	10 to 28	± 45′	± 68′
4 1/2 to 5 1/2	± 35′	± 53′	30 and finer	± 60′	± 90′
6 to 9	± 40′	± 60′			

Dimensions are given in inches.

The tables and formulas are used in determining the limits and tolerances for cut thread metric taps having special diameter, special pitch, or both.

For intermediate pitches, use value of next coarser pitch.

Lead Tolerance: ± 0.003 inch within any two threads not farther apart than 1 inch.

Taps over 1 1/2 in. with 10 or more threads per inch have tolerances for N.F. and finer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Standard System of Ground Thread Tap Limits and Identification for Metric Screw Threads, M Profile.—All calculations for metric taps use millimeter values. When US customary values are needed, they are translated from the three-place millimeter tap diameters only after the calculations are completed.

Table 4. Tap Thread Limits and Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
Formulas for Metric Thread (Ground Thread)

Min. major diameter = Basic diameter + W Max. pitch diameter = Basic diameter + Y
Max. major diameter = Min. maj. dia. + X Min. pitch diameter = Max. pitch dia. + Z

W = Constant to add with basic major diameter (W = 0.08P)
X = Major diameter tolerance
Y = Amount over basic for maximum pitch diameter
Z = Pitch diameter tolerance

			Y				*Z*			
P Pitch (mm)	*W* (0.08*P*)	*X*	M1.6 to M6.3	Over M6.3 to to M25	Over M25 to M90	Over M90	M1.6 to M6.3	Over M6.3 to to M25	Over M25 to M90	Over M90
0.30	0.024	0.025	0.039	0.039	0.052	0.052	0.015	0.015	0.020	0.020
0.35	0.028	0.025	0.039	0.039	0.052	0.052	0.015	0.015	0.020	0.020
0.40	0.032	0.025	0.039	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.015	0.015	0.020	0.025
0.45	0.036	0.025	0.039	0.052	0.052	0.052	0.015	0.020	0.020	0.025
0.50	0.040	0.025	0.039	0.052	0.052	0.065	0.015	0.020	0.025	0.025
0.60	0.048	0.025	0.052	0.052	0.065	0.065	0.020	0.020	0.025	0.025
0.70	0.056	0.041	0.052	0.052	0.065	0.065	0.020	0.020	0.025	0.025
0.75	0.060	0.041	0.052	0.065	0.065	0.078	0.020	0.025	0.025	0.031
0.80	0.064	0.041	0.052	0.065	0.065	0.078	0.020	0.025	0.025	0.031
0.90	0.072	0.041	0.052	0.065	0.065	0.078	0.020	0.025	0.025	0.031
1.00	0.080	0.041	0.065	0.065	0.078	0.091	0.025	0.025	0.031	0.031
1.25	0.100	0.064	0.065	0.065	0.078	0.091	0.025	0.031	0.031	0.041
1.50	0.120	0.064	0.065	0.078	0.078	0.091	0.025	0.031	0.031	0.041
1.75	0.140	0.064	…	0.078	0.091	0.104	…	0.031	0.041	0.041
2.00	0.160	0.064	…	0.091	0.091	0.104	…	0.041	0.041	0.041
2.50	0.200	0.063	…	0.091	0.104	0.117	…	0.041	0.041	0.052
3.00	0.240	0.100	…	0.104	0.104	0.130	…	0.041	0.052	0.052
3.50	0.280	0.100	…	0.104	0.117	0.130	…	0.041	0.052	0.052
4.00	0.320	0.100	…	0.104	0.117	0.143	…	0.052	0.052	0.064
4.50	0.360	0.100	…	…	0.130	0.143	…	0.052	0.052	0.064
5.00	0.400	0.100	…	…	0.130	0.156	…	…	0.064	0.064
5.50	0.440	0.100	…	…	0.143	0.156	…	…	0.064	0.064
6.00	0.480	0.100	…	…	0.143	0.156	…	…	0.064	0.064

Dimensions are given in millimeters.

The tables and formulas are used in determining the limits and tolerances for ground thread metric taps having a thread lead angle not in excess of 5°, unless otherwise specified. They apply only to metric thread having a 60° form with a *P*/8 flat at the major diameter of the basic thread form. All calculations for metric taps are done using millimeter values as shown. When inch values are needed, they are translated from the three-place millimeter tap diameters only after calculations are performed.

The tap major diameter must be determined from a specified tap pitch diameter: the minimum major diameter equals the maximum specified tap pitch diameter minus constant *Y*, plus 0.64951905*P* plus constant *W*.

$$\text{Minimum major diameter} = \text{Max. tap pitch diameter} - Y + 0.64951904P + W$$

For intermediate pitches, use value of next coarser pitch.

Lead Tolerance: ± 0.013 mm within any two threads not farther apart than 25 mm.

Angle Tolerance: ± 30′ in half angle for 0.25 to 2.5 pitch; ± 25′ in half angle for 2.5 to 4 pitch; and ± 20′ in half angle for 4 to 6 pitch.

D or DU Limits: When the maximum tap pitch diameter is over basic pitch diameter by an even multiple of 0.013 mm (0.000512 in. reference), or the minimum tap pitch diameter limit is under basic pitch diameter by an even multiple of 0.013 mm, the taps are marked

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

with the letters "D" or "DU," respectively, followed by a limit number. The limit number is determined as follows:

$$\text{D Limit number} = \frac{\text{Tap PD} - \text{Basic PD}}{0.0013}$$

$$\text{DU Limit number} = \frac{\text{Basic PD} - \text{Tap PD}}{0.0013}$$

Example: M1.6×0.35 HS G D3

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Maximum tap PD} &= \text{Basic PD} + 0.0039\\ &= 1.6 - (0.64951904 \times 0.35) + 0.0039\\ &= 1.3727 + 0.039\\ &= 1.412\\ \text{Minimum tap PD} &= \text{Maximum tap PD} - 0.015\\ &= 1.412 - 0.015\\ &= 1.397\end{aligned}$$

M6×1 HS G DU4

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Minimum tap PD} &= \text{Basic PD} - 0.052\\ &= 6 - (0.64951904 \times 1.0) - 0.052\\ &= 5.350 - 0.052\\ &= 5.298\\ \text{Maximum tap PD} &= \text{Minimum tap PD} + 0.025\\ &= 5.298 + 0.025\\ &= 5.323\end{aligned}$$

Definitions of Tap Terms.—The definitions that follow are taken from ANSI/ASME B94.9 but include only the more important terms. Some tap terms are the same as screw thread terms; therefore, see *Definitions of Screw Threads* starting on page 1942.

Actual size: The measured size of an element on an individual part.

Allowance: A prescribed difference between the maximum material limits of mating parts. It is the minimum clearance or maximum interference between such parts.

Basic Size: The size from which the limits are derived by application of allowance and tolerance.

Bottom Top: A tap having a chamfer length of 1 to 2 pitches.

Chamfer: Tapering of the threads at the front end of each land or chaser of a tap by cutting away and relieving the crest of the first few teeth to distribute the cutting action over several teeth.

Chamfer Angle: Angle formed between the chamfer and the axis of the tap measured in an axial plane at the cutting edge.

Chamfer Relief: The gradual degrees in land height from cutting edge to heel on the chamfered portion of the land to provide radial clearance for the cutting edge.

Chamfer Relief Angle: Complement of the angle formed between a tangent to the relieved surface at the cutting edge and a radial line to the same point on the cutting edge.

Classes of Thread: Designation of the class that determines the specification of the size, allowance, and tolerance to which a given threaded product is to be manufactured. It is not applicable to the tools used for threading.

Concentric: Having a common center.

Crest: The surface of the thread that joins the flanks of the thread and is farthest from the cylinder or cone from which the thread projects.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cutter Sweep: The section removed by the milling cutter or the grinding wheel in entering or leaving a flute.

Cutting Edge: The intersection of cutting edge and the major diameter in the direction of rotation for cutting, which does the actual cutting.

Core Diameter: The diameter of a circle that is tangent to the bottom of the flutes at a given point on the axis.

Diameter, Major: The major cylinder on a straight thread.

Diameter, Minor: The minor cylinder on a straight thread.

Dryseal: A thread system used for both external and internal pipe threads applications designed for use where the assembled product must withstand high fluid or gas pressure without the use of sealing compound.

Eccentric: Not having a common center.

Eccentricity: One half of the total indicator variation (TIV) with respect to the tool axis.

Entry Taper: The portion of the thread forming, where the thread forming is tapered toward the front to allow entry into the hole to be tapped.

External Center: The pointed end on a tap. On bottom-chamfered taps, the point on the front end may be removed.

Flank: The flank of a thread is the surface connecting the crest with the root.

Flank Angle: Angle between the individual flank and the perpendicular to the axis of the thread, measured in an axial plane. A flank angle of a symmetrical thread is commonly termed the "half angle of thread."

Flank, Leading: 1) Flank of a thread facing toward the chamfered end of a threading tool; and 2) The leading flank of a thread is the one which, when the thread is about to be assembled with a mating thread, faces the mating thread.

Flank, Trailing: The trailing flank of a thread is the one opposite the leading flank.

Flutes: Longitudinal channels formed in a tap to create cutting edges on the thread profile and to provide chip spaces and cutting fluid passages. On a parallel or straight-thread tap, they may be straight, angular or helical; on a taper-thread tap, they may be straight, angular or spiral.

Flute Lead Angle: Angle at which a helical- or spiral-cutting edge at a given point makes with an axial plane through the same point.

Flute, Spiral: A flute with uniform axial lead in a spiral path around the axis of a conical tap.

Flute, Straight: A flute that forms a cutting edge lying in an axial plane.

Flute, Tapered: A flute lying in a plane intersecting the tool axis at an angle.

Full Indicator Movement (FIM): The total movement of an indicator where appropriately applied to a surface to measure its surface.

Functional Size: The functional diameter of an external or internal thread is the PD of the enveloping thread of perfect pitch, lead, and flank angles, having full depth of engagement but clear at crests and roots, and of a specified length of engagement.

Heel: Edge of the land opposite the cutting edge.

Height of Thread: The height of a thread is the distance, measured radially, between the major and minor cylinders or cones, respectively.

Holes, Blind: A hole that does not pass through the work piece and is not threaded to its full depth.

Holes, Bottom: A blind hole that is threaded close to the bottom.

Hook Angle: Inclination of a concave cutting face, usually specified either as Chordal Hook or Tangential Hook.

Hook, Chordal Angle: Angle between the chord passing through the root and crest of a thread form at the cutting face, and a radial line through the crest at the cutting edge.

Hook, Tangential Angle: Angle between a line tangent to a hook cutting face at the cutting edge and a radial line to the same point.

Internal Center: A countersink with clearance at the bottom, in one or both ends of a tool, which establishes the tool axis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Interrupted Thread Tap: A tap having an odd number of lands with alternate teeth in the thread helix removed. In some designs, alternate teeth are removed only for a portion of the thread length.

Land: One of the threaded sections between the flutes of a tap.

Lead: Distance a screw thread advances axially in one complete turn.

Lead Error: Deviation from prescribed limits.

Lead Deviation: Deviation from the basic nominal lead.

Progressive Lead Deviation: (1) On a straight thread, the deviation from a true helix where the thread helix advances uniformly. (2) On a taper thread, the deviation from a true spiral where the thread spiral advances uniformly.

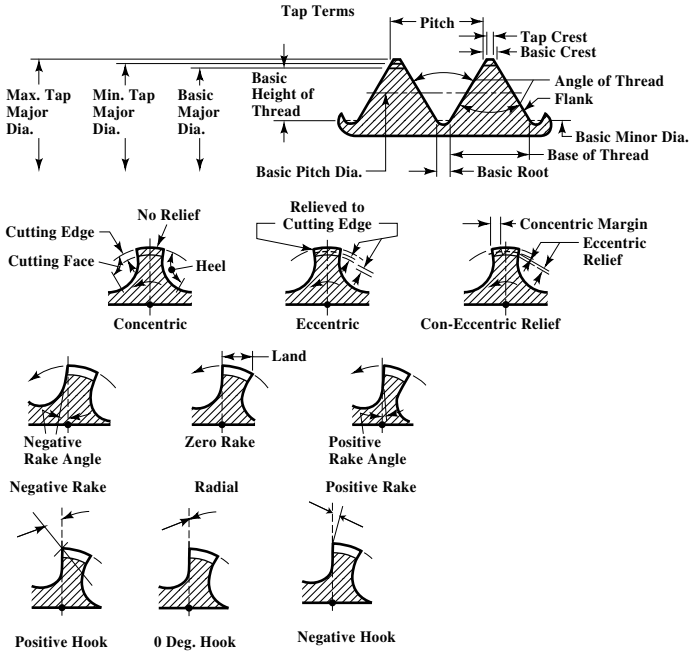


Fig. 3. Tap Terms

Left Hand Cut: Rotation in a clockwise direction from cutting when viewed from the chamfered end of a tap.

Length of Engagement: The length of engagement of two mating threads is the axial distance over which two mating threads are designed to contact.

Length of Thread: The length of the thread of the tap includes the chamfered threads and the full threads, but does not include an external center. It is indicated by the letter "B" in the illustrations at the heads of the tables.

Limits: The limits of size are the applicable maximum and minimum sizes.

Major Diameter: On a straight thread, the major diameter is that of the major cylinder. On a taper thread, the major diameter at a given position on the thread axis is that of the major cone at that position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

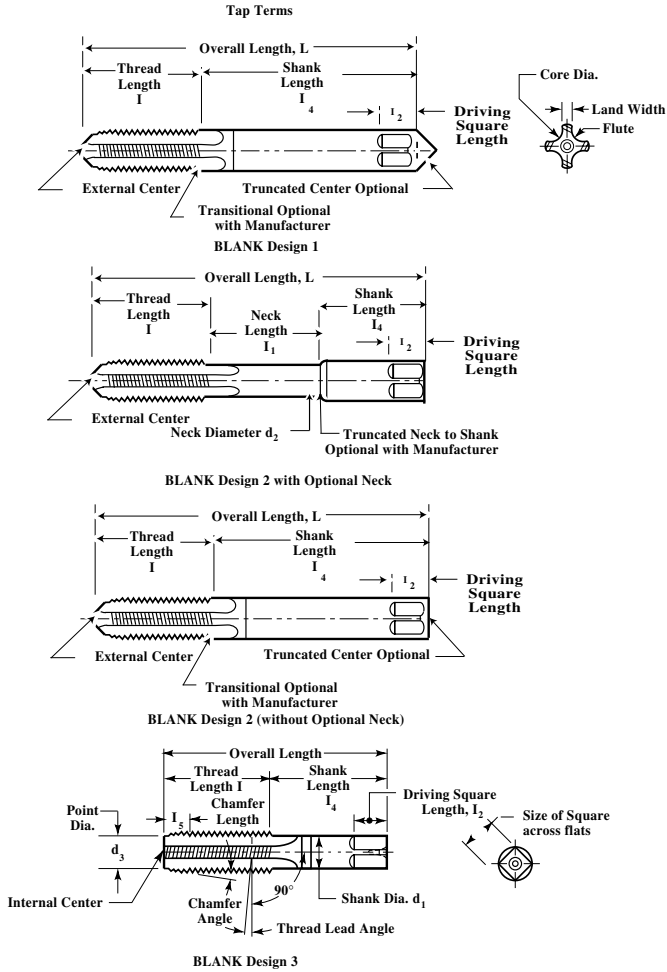


Fig. 4. Taps Terms

Minor Diameter: On a straight thread, the minor diameter is that of the minor cylinder. On a taper thread, the minor diameter at a given position on the thread axis is that of the minor cone at that position.

Neck: A section of reduced diameter between two adjacent portions of a tool.

Pitch: The distance from any point on a screw thread to a corresponding point in the next thread, measured parallel to the axis and on the same side of the axis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pitch Diameter (Simple Effective Diameter): On a straight thread, the pitch diameter is the diameter of the imaginary coaxial cylinder, the surface of which would pass through the thread profiles at such points as to make the width of the groove equal to one-half the basic pitch. On a perfect thread, this coincidence occurs at the point where the widths of the thread and groove are equal. On a taper thread, the pitch diameter at a given position on the thread axis is the diameter of the pitch cone at that position.

Point Diameter: Diameter at the cutting edge of the leading end of the chamfered section.

Plug Tap: A tap having a chamfer length of 3 to 5 pitches.

Rake: Angular relationship of the straight cutting face of a tooth with respect to a radial line through the crest of the tooth at the cutting edge. Positive rake means that the crest of the cutting face is angularly ahead of the balance of the cutting face of the tooth. Negative rake means that the crest of the cutting face is angularly behind the balance of the cutting face of the tooth. Zero rake means that the cutting face is directly on a radial line.

Relief: Removal of metal behind the cutting edge to provide clearance between the part being threaded and the threaded land.

Relief, Center: Clearance produced on a portion of the tap land by reducing the diameter of the entire thread form between cutting edge and heel.

Relief, Chamfer: Gradual decrease in land height from cutting edge to heel on the chamfered portion of the land on a tap to provide radial clearance for the cutting edge.

Relief, Con-Eccentric Thread: Radial relief in the thread form starting back of a concentric margin.

Relief, Double Eccentric Thread: Combination of a slight radial relief in the thread form starting at the cutting edge and continuing for a portion of the land width, and a greater radial relief for the balance of the land.

Relief, Eccentric Thread: Radial relief in the thread form starting at the cutting edge and continuing to the heel.

Relief, Flatted Land: Clearance produced on a portion of the tap land by truncating the thread between cutting edge and heel.

Relief, Grooved Land: Clearance produced on a tap land by forming a longitudinal groove in the center of the land.

Relief, Radial: Clearance produced by removal of metal from behind the cutting edge. Taps should have the chamfer relieved and should have back taper, but may or may not have relief in the angle and on the major diameter of the threads. When the thread angle is relieved, starting at the cutting edge and continuing to the heel, the tap is said to have "eccentric" relief. If the thread angle is relieved back of a concentric margin (usually one-third of land width), the tap is said to have "con-eccentric" relief.

Right Hand Cut: Rotation in clockwise direction for cutting when viewed from the chamfered end of a tap or die.

Roots: The surface of the thread that joins the flanks of adjacent thread forms and is identical to cone from which the thread projects.

Screw Thread: A uniform section produced by forming a groove in the form of helix on the external or the internal surface of a cylinder.

Screw Thread Inserts (STI): Screw thread bushing coiled from diamond-shape cross-section wire. They are screwed into oversized tapped holes to size nominal-size internal threads.

Screw Thread Insert (STI) Taps: These taps are over the nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the nominal size and pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shank: The portion of the tool body by which it is held and driven.

Shaving: The excessive removal of material from the product thread profile by the tool thread flanks caused by an axial advance per revolution less than or more than the actual lead in the tool.

Size, Actual: Measured size of an element on an individual part.

Size, Basic: That size from which the limits of size are derived by the application of allowances and tolerances.

Size, Functional: The functional diameter of an external or internal thread is the pitch diameter of the enveloping thread of perfect pitch, lead and flank angles, having full depth of engagement but clear at crests and roots, and of a specified length of engagement. It may be derived by adding to the pitch diameter in an external thread, or subtracting from the pitch diameter in an internal thread, the cumulative effects of deviations from specified profile, including variations in lead and flank angle over a specified length of engagement. The effects of taper, out-of-roundness, and surface defects may be positive or negative on either external or internal threads.

Size, Nominal: Designation used for the purpose of general identification.

Spiral Flute: See *Flutes*.

Spiral Point: Angular fluting in the cutting face of the land at the chamfered end. It is formed at an angle with respect to the tap axis of opposite hand to that of rotation. Its length is usually greater than the chamfer length and its angle with respect to the tap axis is usually made great enough to direct the chips ahead of the tap. The tap may or may not have longitudinal flutes.

Taper, Back: A gradual decrease in the diameter of the thread form on a tap from the chamfered end of the land towards the back, which creates a slight radial relief in the threads.

Taper per Inch: The difference in diameter in one inch measured parallel to the axis.

Taper Tap: A tap having a chamfer length of 7 to 10 pitches.

Taper Thread Tap: A tap with tapered threads for producing a tapered internal thread.

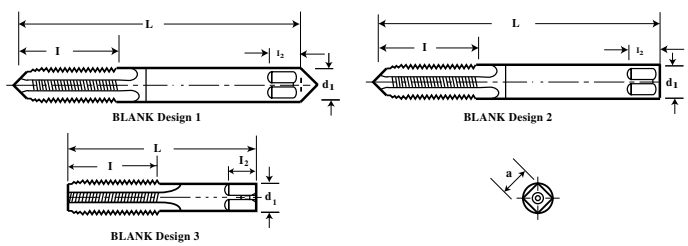
Thread, Angle of: The angle between the flanks of the thread measured in an axial plane.

Thread Lead Angle: On a straight thread, the lead angle is the angle made by the helix of the thread at the pitch line with a plane perpendicular to the axis. On a taper thread, the lead angle at a given axial position is the angle made by the conical spiral of the thread, with the plane perpendicular to the axis, at the pitch line.

Thread per Inch: The number of thread pitches in one inch of thread length.

Tolerance: The total permissible variation of size or difference between limits of size.

Total Indicator Variation (TIV): The difference between maximum and minimum indicator readings during a checking cycle.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. Standard Tap Dimensions (Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Diameter Range, inch		Nominal Diameter, inch		Nominal Metric Diameter			Tap Dimensions, inch				
Over	To	Machine Screw Size No. and Fractional Sizes	Decimal Equiv.	mm	inch	Blank Design No.	Overall Length *L*	Thread Length *l*	Square Length l_2	Shank Diameter d_1	Size of Square *a*
0.052	0.065	0	(0.0600)	M1.6	0.0630	1	1.63	0.31	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.065	0.078	1	(0.0730)	M1.8	0.0709	1	1.69	0.38	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.078	0.091	2	(0.0860)	M2.0	0.0787	1	1.75	0.44	0.19	0.141	0.110
				M2.2	0.0866						
0.091	0.104	3	(0.0990)	M2.5	0.0984	1	1.81	0.50	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.104	0.117	4	(0.1120)	…	…	1	1.88	0.56	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.117	0.130	5	(0.1250)	M3.0	0.1182	1	1.94	0.63	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.130	0.145	6	(0.1380)	M3.5	0.1378	1	2.00	0.69	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.145	0.171	8	(0.1640)	M4.0	0.1575	1	2.13	0.75	0.25	0.168	0.131
0.171	0.197	10	(0.1900)	M4.5	0.1772	1	2.38	0.88	0.25	0.194	0.152
				M5	0.1969						
0.197	0.223	12	(0.2160)	…	…	1	2.38	0.94	0.28	0.220	0.165
0.223	0.260	1/4	(0.2500)	M6	0.2363	2	2.50	1.00	0.31	0.255	0.191
0.260	0.323	5/16	(0.3125)	M7	0.2756	2	2.72	1.13	0.38	0.318	0.238
				M8	0.3150						
0.323	0.395	3/8	(0.3750)	M10	0.3937	2	2.94	1.25	0.44	0.381	0.286
0.395	0.448	7/16	(0.4375)	…	…	3	3.16	1.44	0.41	0.323	0.242
0.448	0.510	1/2	(0.5000)	M12	0.4724	3	3.38	1.66	0.44	0.367	0.275
0.510	0.573	9/16	(0.5625)	M14	0.5512	3	3.59	1.66	0.50	0.429	0.322
0.573	0.635	5/8	(0.6250)	M16	0.6299	3	3.81	1.81	0.56	0.480	0.360
0.635	0.709	11/16	(0.6875)	M18	0.7087	3	4.03	1.81	0.63	0.542	0.406
0.709	0.760	3/4	(0.7500)	…	…	3	4.25	2.00	0.69	0.590	0.442
0.760	0.823	13/16	(0.8125)	M20	0.7874	3	4.47	2.00	0.69	0.652	0.489
0.823	0.885	7/8	(0.8750)	M22	0.8661	3	4.69	2.22	0.75	0.697	0.523

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. *(Continued)* **Standard Tap Dimensions (Ground and Cut Thread)** *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Diameter Range, inch		Nominal Diameter, inch		Nominal Metric Diameter			Tap Dimensions, inch				
Over	To	Machine Screw Size No. and Fractional Sizes	Decimal Equiv.	mm	inch	Blank Design No.	Overall Length *L*	Thread Length *l*	Square Length l_2	Shank Diameter d_1	Size of Square *a*
0.885	0.948	15/16	(0.9375)	M24	0.9449	3	4.91	2.22	0.75	0.760	0.570
0.948	1.010	1	(1.0000)	M25	0.9843	3	5.13	2.50	0.81	0.800	0.600
1.010	1.073	1 1/16	(1.0625)	M27	1.0630	3	5.13	2.50	0.88	0.896	0.672
1.073	1.135	1 1/8	(1.1250)	…	…	3	5.44	2.56	0.88	0.896	0.672
1.135	1.198	1 3/16	(1.1875)	M30	1.1811	3	5.44	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766
1.198	1.260	1 1/4	(1.2500)	…	…	3	5.75	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766
1.260	1.323	1 5/16	(1.3125)	M33	1.2992	3	5.75	2.56	1.06	1.108	0.831
1.323	1.385	1 3/8	(1.3750)	…	…	3	6.06	3.00	1.06	1.108	0.831
1.358	1.448	1 7/16	(1.4375)	M36	1.4173	3	6.06	3.00	1.13	1.233	0.925
1.448	1.510	1 1/2	(1.5000)	…	…	3	6.38	3.00	1.13	1.233	0.925
1.510	1.635	1 5/8	(1.6250)	M39	1.5353	3	6.69	3.19	1.13	1.305	0.979
1.635	1.760	1 3/4	(1.7500)	M42	1.6535	3	7.00	3.19	1.25	1.430	1.072
1.760	1.885	1 7/8	(1.8750)	…	…	3	7.31	3.56	1.25	1.519	1.139
1.885	2.010	2	(2.0000)	M48	1.8898	3	7.63	3.56	1.38	1.644	1.233

Special taps greater than 1.010 inch to 1.510 inch in diameter inclusive, having 14 or more threads per inch or 1.75- mm pitch and finer, and sizes over 1.510 inch in diameter with 10 or more threads per inch or 2.5- mm pitch and finer are made to general dimensions shown in Table 10.

For standard ground thread tap limits see Table 20, and Table 21 for inch and Table 16 for metric.

For cut thread tap limits see Table 22 and Table 23.

Special ground thread tap limits are determined by using the formulas shown in Table 2 for unified inch screw threads and Table 4 for metric M profile screw threads.

Tap sizes 0.395 inch and smaller have an external center on the thread end (may be removed on bottom taps). Sizes 0.223 inch and smaller have an external center on the shank end. Sizes 0.224 inch through 0.395 inch have truncated partial cone centers on the shank end (of diameter of shank). Sizes greater than 0.395 inch have internal centers on both the thread and shank ends.

For standard thread limits and tolerances see Table 17 for unified inch screw threads and Table 19 for metric threads.

For runout tolerances of tap elements see Table 14.

For number of flutes see Table 11.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5b. Standard Tap Dimensions Tolerances (Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

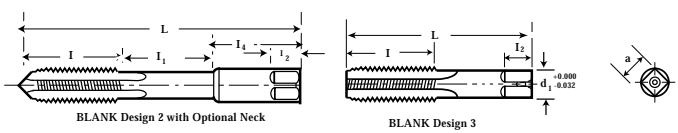
Element	Nominal Diameter Range, inch		Direction	Tolerance, inch	
	Over	To (inclusive)		Ground Thread	Cut Thread
Length overall, L	0.5200	1.0100	±	0.0300	0.0300
	1.0100	2.0000	±	0.0600	0.0600
Length of thread, I	0.0520	0.2230	±	0.0500	0.0500
	0.2230	0.5100	±	0.0600	0.0600
	0.5100	1.5100	±	0.0900	0.0900
	1.5100	2.0000	±	0.1300	0.1300
Length of thread, I_2	0.0520	1.0100	±	0.0300	0.0300
	1.0100	2.0000	±	0.0600	0.0600
Diameter of shank, d_1	0.0520	0.2230	–	0.0015	0.0040
	0.2230	0.6350	–	0.0015	0.0050
	0.6350	1.0100	–	0.0020	0.0050
	1.0100	1.5100	–	0.0020	0.0070
	1.5100	2.0000	–	0.0030	0.0070
Size of square, a	0.0520	0.5100	–	0.0040	0.0040
	0.5100	1.0100	–	0.0060	0.0060
	1.0100	2.0000	–	0.0080	0.0080

Entry Taper Length.—Entry taper length is measured on the full diameter of the thread-forming lobes and is the axial distance from the entry diameter position to the theoretical intersection of tap major diameter and entry taper angle. Beveled end threads provided on taps having internal center or incomplete threads retained when external center is removed. Whenever entry taper length is specified in terms of number of threads, this length is measured in number of pitches, P.

$$\text{Bottom length} = 1 \sim 2\frac{1}{2} \text{ pitches}$$

$$\text{Plug length} = 3 \sim 5 \text{ pitches}$$

Entry diameter measured at the thread crest nearest the front of the tap is an appropriate amount smaller than the diameter of the hole drilled for tapping.



Optional Neck and Optional Shortened Thread Length, Ground and Cut Thread (Table 6)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Optional Neck and Optional Shortened Thread Length (Tap Dimensions, Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Diameter, inch		Nominal Diameter, inch		Nominal Metric Diameter			Tap Dimensions, inch					
Over	To (inclusive)	Machine Screw Size No. and Fractional Sizes	Decimal Equiv.	mm	inch	Blank Design No.	Overall Length *L*	Thread Length *l*	Neck Length l_1	Square Length l_2	Shank Diameter d_1	Size of Square *a*
0.104	0.117	4	(0.1120)			1	1.88	0.31	0.25	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.117	0.130	5	(0.1250)	M3.0	0.1181	1	1.94	0.31	0.31	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.130	0.145	6	(0.1380)	M3.5	0.1378	1	2.00	0.38	0.31	0.19	0.141	0.110
0.145	0.171	8	(0.1640)	M4.0	0.1575	1	2.13	0.38	0.38	0.25	0.168	0.131
0.171	0.197	10	(0.1900)	M4.5	0.1772	1	2.38	0.50	0.38	0.25	0.194	0.152
…	…	…		M5.0	0.1969	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.197	0.223	12	(0.2160)	…	…	1	2.38	0.50	0.44	0.28	0.220	0.165
0.223	0.260	1/4	(0.2500)	M6.0	0.2362	2	2.50	0.63	0.38	0.31	0.255	0.191
0.260	0.323	5/16	(0.3125)	M7.0	0.2756	2	2.72	0.69	0.44	0.38	0.318	0.238
…	…	…	…	M8.0	0.3150	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.323	0.395	3/8	(0.3750)	M10.0	0.3937	2	2.94	0.75	0.50	0.44	0.381	0.286
0.395	0.448	7/16	(0.4375)	…	…	3	3.16	0.88	0.50	0.41	0.323	0.242
0.448	0.510	1/2	(0.5000)	M12.0	0.4724	3	3.38	0.94	…	0.44	0.367	0.275
0.510	0.573	9/16	(0.5625)	M14.0	0.5512	3	3.59	1.00	…	0.50	0.429	0.322
0.573	0.635	5/8	(0.6250)	M16.0	0.6299	3	3.81	1.09	…	0.56	0.480	0.360
0.635	0.709	11/16	(0.6875)	M18.0	0.7087	3	4.03	1.09	…	0.63	0.542	0.406
0.709	0.760	3/4	(0.7500)	…	…	3	4.25	1.22	…	0.69	0.590	0.442
0.760	0.823	13/16	(0.8125)	M20.0	0.7874	3	4.47	1.22	…	0.69	0.652	0.489
0.823	0.885	7/8	(0.8750)	M22.0	0.8661	3	4.69	1.34	…	0.75	0.697	0.523
0.885	0.948	15/16	(0.9375)	M24.0	0.9449	3	4.91	1.34	…	0.75	0.760	0.570
0.948	1.010	1	(1.0000)	M25.0	0.9843	3	5.13	1.50	…	0.75	0.800	0.600

Thread length, *l*, is based on a length of 12 pitches of the UNC thread series.

Thread length, *l*, is a minimum value and has no tolerance.

When thread length, *l*, is added to neck length, l_1, the total shall be no less than the minimum thread length, *l*.

Unless otherwise specified, all tolerances are in accordance with Table 5b.

For runout tolerances, see Table 14.

For number of flutes see Table 11.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Machine Screw and Fractional Size Ground Thread Dimensions for Screw Thread Insert (STI) Taps *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size (STI)	Threads per inch		Blank Design No.	Tap Dimensions, inch					Table 5a Blank Equivalent (Reference)
	NC	NF		Overall length, *L*	Thread Length, *l*	Square Length, l_2	Shank Diameter, d_1	Size of Square, *a*	
1	64	…	1	1.81	0.50	0.19	0.141	0.110	No. 3
2	56	64	1	1.88	0.56	0.19	0.141	0.110	No. 4
3	48	56	1	1.94	0.63	0.19	0.141	0.110	No. 5
4	40	48	1	2.00	0.69	0.19	0.141	0.110	No. 6
5	40	…	1	2.13	0.75	0.25	0.168	0.131	No. 8
6	32	…	1	2.38	0.88	0.25	0.194	0.152	No. 10
…	…	40	1	2.13	0.75	0.25	0.168	0.131	No. 8
8	32	36	1	2.38	0.94	0.28	0.220	0.165	No. 12
10	24	32	2	2.50	1.00	0.31	0.255	0.191	1/4
12	24	…	2	2.72	1.13	0.38	0.318	0.238	5/16
1/4	20	28	2	2.72	1.13	0.38	0.318	0.238	5/16
5/16	18	24	2	2.94	1.25	0.44	0.381	0.286	3/8
3/8	16	…	3	3.38	1.66	0.44	0.367	0.275	1/2
…	…	24	3	3.16	1.44	0.41	0.323	0.242	7/16
7/16	14	…	3	3.59	1.66	0.50	0.429	0.322	9/16
…	…	20	3	3.38	1.66	0.44	0.367	0.275	1/2
1/2	13	…	3	3.81	1.81	0.56	0.480	0.360	5/8
…	…	20	3	3.59	1.66	0.50	0.429	0.322	9/16
9/16	12	…	3	4.03	1.81	0.63	0.542	0.406	11/16
…	…	18	3	3.81	1.81	0.56	0.480	0.360	5/8
5/8	11	…	3	4.25	2.00	0.69	0.590	0.442	3/4
…	…	18	3	4.03	1.81	0.63	0.542	0.406	11/16
3/4	10	…	3	4.69	2.22	0.75	0.697	0.523	7/8
…	…	16	3	4.47	2.00	0.69	0.652	0.489	13/16
7/8	9	14	3	5.13	2.50	0.81	0.800	0.600	1
1	8	…	3	5.75	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766	1 1/4
…	…	12, 14 NS	3	5.44	2.56	0.88	0.896	0.672	1 1/8
1 1/8	7	…	3	6.06	3.00	1.06	1.108	0.831	1 3/8
…	…	12	3	5.75	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766	1 1/4
1 1/4	7	…	3	6.38	3.00	1.13	1.233	0.925	1 1/2
…	…	12	3	6.06	3.00	1.06	1.108	0.831	1 3/8
1 3/8	6	…	3	6.69	3.19	1.13	1.305	0.979	1 5/8
…	…	12	3	6.38	3.00	1.13	1.233	0.925	1 1/2
1 1/2	6	…	3	7.00	3.19	1.25	1.430	1.072	1 3/4
…	…	12	3	6.69	3.19	1.13	1.305	0.979	1 5/8

These threads are larger than nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the nominal size and pitch.

For optional necks, refer to Table 6 using dimensions for equivalent blank sizes.

Ground Thread Taps: STI sizes 5/16 inch and smaller have external center on thread end (may be removed on bottom taps); sizes 10 through 5/16 inch will have an external partial cone center on shank end, with the length of the cone center approximately 1/4 of the diameter of shank; sizes larger than 5/16 inch may have internal centers on both the thread and shank ends.

For runout tolerances of tap elements, refer to Table 14 using dimensions for equivalent blank sizes.

For number of flutes, refer to Table 11 using dimensions for equivalent blank sizes.

For general dimension tolerances, refer to Table 5b using Table 5a equivalent blank size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Standard Metric Size Tap Dimensions for Screw Thread Insert (STI) Taps *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size (STI)	Thread Pitch, mm Coarse	Fine		Blank Design No.	Tap Dimensions, inch Overall length, L	Thread Length, l	Square Length, l_2	Shank Diameter, d_1	Size of square, a	Blank Diameter
M2.2	0.45	…		1	1.88	0.56	0.19	0.141	0.110	No.4
M2.5	0.45	…		1	1.94	0.63	0.19	0.141	0.110	No.5
M3	0.50	…		1	2.00	0.69	0.19	0.141	0.110	No.6
M3.5	0.60	…		1	2.13	0.75	0.25	0.168	0.131	No.8
M4	0.70	…		1	2.38	0.88	0.25	0.194	0.152	No.10
M5	0.80	…		2	2.50	1.00	0.31	0.255	0.191	1/4
M6	1	…		2	2.72	1.13	0.38	0.318	0.238	5/16
M7	1	…		2	2.94	1.25	0.44	0.381	0.286	3/8
M8	1.25	1		2	2.94	1.25	0.44	0.381	0.286	3/8
M10	1.5	1.25		3	3.38	1.66	0.44	0.367	0.275	1/2
	…	…		3	3.16	1.44	0.41	0.323	0.242	7/16
M12	1.75	1.5	1.25	3	3.59	1.66	0.50	0.429	0.322	9/16
M14	2	…		3	4.03	1.81	0.63	0.542	0.406	11/16
	…	1.5		3	3.81	1.81	0.56	0.480	0.360	5/8
M16	2	…		3	4.25	2.00	0.69	0.590	0.442	3/4
	…	1.5		3	4.03	1.81	0.63	0.542	0.406	11/16
M18	2.5	…		3	4.69	2.22	0.75	0.697	0.523	7/8
	…	2.0	1.25	3	4.47	2.00	0.69	0.652	0.489	13/16
M20	2.5	2.0		3	4.91	2.22	0.75	0.760	0.570	15/16
	…		1.25	3	4.69	2.22	0.75	0.697	0.523	7/8
M22	2.5	2.0		3	5.13	2.50	0.81	0.800	0.600	1
	…	1.5		3	4.91	2.22	0.75	0.760	0.570	15/16
M24	3	…		3	5.44	2.56	0.88	0.896	0.672	1 1/8
	…	2		3	5.13	2.50	0.88	0.896	0.672	1 1/16
M27	3	…		3	5.75	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766	1 1/4
	…	2		3	5.44	2.56	0.88	0.896	0.672	1 1/8
M30	3.5	…		3	6.06	3.00	1.06	1.108	0.831	1 3/8
	…	2		3	5.75	2.56	1.00	1.021	0.766	1 1/4
M33	3.5	…		3	6.38	3.00	1.13	1.233	0.925	1 1/2
	…	2		3	6.06	3.00	1.06	1.108	0.831	1 3/8
M36	4	3	2	3	6.69	3.19	1.13	1.305	0.979	1 5/8
M39	4	3	2	3	7.00	3.19	1.25	1.430	1.072	1 3/4

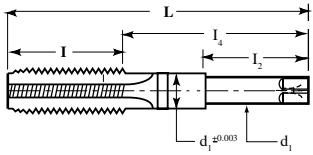
These taps are larger than nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the nominal size and pitch. For optional necks, use Table 6 and dimensions for equivalent blank sizes.

Ground Thread Taps: STI sizes M8 and smaller have external center on thread end (may be removed on bottom taps); STI sizes M5 through M10 will have an external partial cone center on shank end, with the length of the cone center approximately 1/4 of the diameter of shank; STI sizes larger than M10 inch may have internal centers on both the thread and shank ends.

For runout tolerances of tap elements, refer to Table 14 using dimensions for equivalent blank sizes. For number of flutes, refer to Table 11 using dimensions for equivalent blank sizes. For general dimension tolerances, refer to Table 5b using Table 5a equivalent blank sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Special Extension Taps *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018), Appendix*
(Tap Dimensions, Ground and Cut Threads)



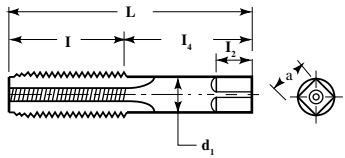
Nominal Tap Size				Nominal Tap Size			
Fractional	Machine Screw	Pipe	Shank Length I_4	Fractional	Machine Screw	Pipe	Shank Length I_4
…	0-3	…	0.88	1½	…	…	3.00
…	4	…	1.00	1⅝	…	3	3.13
…	5-6	…	1.13	1¾	…	…	3.13
…	8	…	1.25	1⅞	…	…	3.25
…	10-12	1/16 to ¼ incl.	1.38	2	…	…	3.25
¼	14	…	1.50	2⅛	…	…	3.38
5/16	…	…	1.56	2¼	…	…	3.38
⅜	…	…	1.63	2⅜	…	…	3.50
7/16	…	⅜ to ½ incl.	1.69	2½	…	…	3.50
½	…	…	1.69	2⅝	…	…	3.63
9/16	…	¾	1.88	2¾	…	…	3.63
⅝	…	1	2.00	2⅞	…	…	3.75
11/16	…	…	2.13	3	…	…	3.75
¾	…	1¼	2.25	3⅛	…	…	3.88
13/16	…	1½	2.38	3¼	…	…	3.88
⅞	…	…	2.50	3⅜	…	4	4.00
15/16	…	…	2.63	3½	…	…	4.00
1	…	…	2.63	3⅝	…	…	4.13
1⅛	…	2	2.75	3¾	…	…	4.13
1¼	…	2½	2.88	3⅞	…	…	4.25
1⅜	…	…	3.00	4	…	…	4.25

Tolerances			
For shank diameter, d_1 for I_4 length			
Fractional, Inch	Machine Screw	Pipe, Inch	Tolerances
¼ to ⅝ incl.	0 to 14 incl.	1/16 to ⅛ incl.	–0.003
11/16 to 1½ incl.	…	¼ to 1 incl.	–0.004
1⅝ to 4 incl.	…	1¼ to 4 incl.	–0.006

Unless otherwise specified, special extension taps will be furnished with dimensions and tolerances as shown for machine screw and fractional taps in Table 5a, Table 5b, and Table 6, and for pipe taps in Table 13a. Exceptions are as follows: Types of centers are optional with manufacturer. Tolerances on shank diameter d_1 and I_4 length as shown on the above Table 9. Shank runout tolerance applies only to the I_4 length shown on the above Table 9.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Special Fine Pitch Taps, Short Series *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018), Appendix* **(Taps Dimensions, Ground and Cut Threads)**



Nominal Diameter Range, inch		Nominal Fractional Diameter	Nominal Metric Diameter	Taps Dimensions, inches				
				Overall Length	Thread Length	Square Length	Shank Diameter	Size of Square
Over	To	inch	mm	*L*	*I*	l_2	d_1	*a*
1.070	1.073	1 1/16	M27	4.00	1.50	0.88	0.8960	0.672
1.073	1.135	1 1/8	…	4.00	1.50	0.88	0.8960	0.672
1.135	1.198	1 3/16	M30	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.0210	0.766
1.198	1.260	1 1/4	…	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.0210	0.766
1.260	1.323	1 5/16	M33	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.1080	0.831
1.323	1.385	1 3/8	…	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.1080	0.831
1.385	1.448	1 7/16	M36	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.2330	0.925
1.448	1.510	1 1/2	…	4.00	1.50	1.00	1.2330	0.925
1.510	1.635	1 5/8	M39	5.00	2.00	1.13	1.3050	0.979
1.635	1.760	1 3/4	M42	5.00	2.00	1.25	1.4300	1.072
1.760	1.885	1 7/8	…	5.00	2.00	1.25	1.5190	1.139
1.885	2.010	2	M48	5.00	2.00	1.38	1.6440	1.233
2.010	2.135	2 1/8	…	5.25	2.00	1.44	1.7690	1.327
2.135	2.260	2 1/4	M56	5.25	2.00	1.44	1.8940	1.420
2.260	2.385	2 3/8	…	5.25	2.00	1.50	2.0190	1.514
2.385	2.510	2 1/2	…	5.25	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
2.510	2.635	2 5/8	M64	5.50	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
2.635	2.760	2 3/4	…	5.50	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
2.760	2.885	2 7/8	M72	5.50	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
2.885	3.010	3	…	5.50	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
3.010	3.135	3 1/8	…	5.75	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
3.135	3.260	3 1/4	M80	5.75	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
3.260	3.385	3 3/8	…	5.75	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
3.385	3.510	3 1/2	…	5.75	2.00	1.50	2.1000	1.575
3.510	3.635	3 5/8	M90	6.00	2.00	1.75	2.1000	1.575
3.635	3.760	3 3/4	…	6.00	2.00	1.75	2.1000	1.575
3.760	3.885	3 7/8	…	6.00	2.00	1.75	2.1000	1.575
3.885	4.010	4	M100	6.00	2.00	1.75	2.1000	1.575

Unless otherwise specified, special taps 1.010 inches to 1.510 inches in diameter, inclusive, have 14 or more threads per inch or 1.75 mm pitch and finer. Sizes greater than 1.510 inch in diameter with 10 or more threads per inch or 2.5 mm pitch and finer will be made to the general dimensions shown above.

For tolerances, see Table 5b. For runout tolerances of tap elements, see Table 14.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

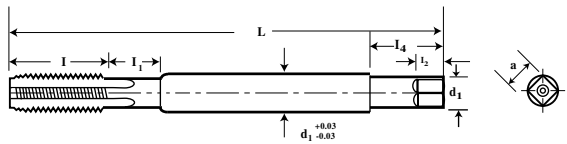
Table 11. Standard Number of Flutes (Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Machine Screw Size, Nom. Fractional Dia. inch		Nominal Metric Dia.		TPI/Pitch			Straight Flutes		Spiral Point				
		mm	inch	UNC NC	UNF NF	mm	Standard	Optional	Standard	Optional	Spiral Point Only	Reg. Spiral Flute	Fast Spiral Flute
0	(0.0600)	M1.6	0.0630	…	80	0.35	2	…	2	…	…	…	…
1	(0.0730)	…	…	64	72	…	2	…	2	…	…	…	…
2	(0.0860)	M2.0	0.0787	56	64	0.40	3	2	2	…	…	…	…
3	(0.0990)	M 2.5	0.0984	48	56	0.45	3	2	2	…	…	…	2
4	(0.1120)	…	…	40	48		3	2	2	…	2	2	2
5	(0.1250)	M3.0	0.1181	40	44	0.50	3	2	2	…	2	2	2
6	(0.1380)	M3.5	0.1378	32	40	0.60	3	2	2	…	2	2	2
8	(0.1640)	M4.0	0.1575	32	36	0.70	4	2/3	2	…	2	2	3
10	(0.1900)	M4.5	0.1772	24	32	0.75	4	2/3	2	…	2	2	3
…		M5	0.1969	…	…	0.80	4	2/3	2	…	2	2	3
12	(0.2160)	…	…	24	28	…	4	2/3	2	…	2	2	3
1/4	(0.2500)	M6	0.2362	20	28	1.00	4	2/3	2	3	2	3 (optional)	3
…		M7	0.2756	18	24	1.00	4	2/3	2	3	2	3	3
5/16	(0.3125)	M8	0.3150	18	24	1.25	4	2/3	2	3	2	3	3
3/8	(0.3750)	M10	0.3937	16	24	1.50	4	3	3	…	3	3	3
7/16	(0.4375)	…	…	14	20	…	4	3	3	…	3	3	3
1/2	(0.5000)	M12	0.4724	13	20	1.75	4	3	3	…	…	…	3
9/16	(0.5625)	M14	0.5512	12	18	2.00	4	…	3	…	…	…	…
5/8	(0.6250)	M16	0.6299	11	18	2.00	4	…	3	…	…	…	…
3/4	(0.7500)	…	…	10	16	…	4	…	3	…	…	…	…
…		M20	0.7874	…	…	2.5	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
7/8	(0.8750)	…	…	9	14	…	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
…		M24	0.9449	…	…	3.00	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	(1.0000)	…	…	8	12	…	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/8	(1.1250)	…	…	7	12	4.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
…		M30	1.1811	…	…	3.50	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/4	(1.2500)	…	…	7	…	…	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
…		…	…	…	12	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 3/8	(1.3750)	…	…	6	…	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…
…		…	…	…	12	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…
…		M36	1.4173	…	…	4.00	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 1/2	(1.5000)	…	…	6	…	…	4	…	…	…	…	…	…
		…	…	…	12	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…
1 3/4	(1.7500)	…	…	5	…	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…
2	(2.0000)	…	…	4 1/2	…	…	6	…	…	…	…	…	…

For pulley taps, see Table 12. For taper pipe, see Table 13a. For straight pipe taps, see Table 13a. For STI taps, use number of flutes for blank size equivalent on Table 5a. For optional flutes, see Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Pulley Taps, Fractional Size
(High-Speed Steel, Ground Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

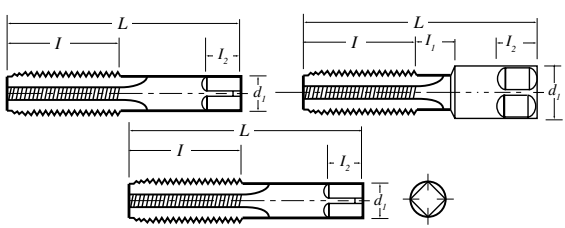


Dia. of Tap	Threads per Inch NC UNC	Number of Flutes	Length Overall, L	Thread Length, I	Neck Length, I_1	Square Length I_2	Length [d] of Shank Close Tolerance, I_4	Dia. of Shank, d_1	Size [b] of Square, a
1/4	20	4	6, 8	1.00	0.38	0.31	1.50	0.255	0.191
5/16	18	4	6, 8	1.13	0.38	0.38	1.56	0.318	0.238
3/8	16	4	6, 8, 10	1.25	0.38	0.44	1.63	0.381	0.286
7/16	14	4	6, 8	1.44	0.44	0.50	1.69	0.444	0.333
1/2	13	4	6, 8, 10, 12	1.66	0.50	0.56	1.69	0.507	0.380
5/8	11	4	6, 8,10,12	1.81	0.63	0.69	2.00	0.633	0.475
3/4	10	4	10,12	2.00	0.75	0.75	2.25	0.759	0.569

Tolerances for General Dimensions					
Element	Diameter Range	Tolerance	Element	Diameter Range	Tolerance
Overall length, L	1/4 to 3/4	±0.06	Shank Diameter, d_1 [a]	1/4 to 1/2	−0.005
Thread length, I	1/4 to 3/4	±0.06	Size of Square, a [b]	1/4 to 1/2 5/8 to 3/4	−0.004 −0.006
Square length, I_2	1/4 to 3/4	±0.03			
Neck length, I_1	1/4 to 3/4	[c]	Length of close tolerance shank, I_4	1/4 to 3/4	[d]

[a] Shank diameter, d_1, is approximately the same as the maximum major diameter for that size.
[b] Size of square, a, is equal to $0.75d_1$ to the nearest 0.001 in.
[c] Neck length, I_1, is optional with manufacturer.
[d] Length of close tolerance shank, I_4, is a min. length that is held to runout tolerances per Table 14.

These taps are standard with plug chamfer in H3 limit only. All dimensions are given in inches. These taps have an internal center in thread end. For standard thread limits, see Table 20. For runout tolerances of tap elements, see Table 14.



Straight and Taper Pipe Tap Dimensions, Ground and Cut Thread (Table 13a and Table 13b)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13a. Straight and Taper Pipe Tap Dimensions (Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size, Inch [a]	Threads per Inch	Number of Flutes		Length Overall, L	Thread Length, l	Square Length, l_2	Shank Diameter, d_1	Size of Square, a	Length Optional Neck, l_1	Ground Thread		Cut Thread Only	
		Regular Thread	Interrupted Thread							NPT, NPTF, ANPT	NPSC, NPSM, NPSF	NPT	NPSC, NPSM
1/16	27	4	…	2.13	0.69	0.38	0.3125	0.234	0.375	[b]	…	…	…
1/8	27	4	5	2.13	0.75	0.38	0.3125	0.234	…	[b,c]	[d,e]	[f,g,h]	…
1/8	27	4	5	2.13	0.75	0.38	0.4375	0.328	0.375	[b,c]	[d,e]	[f,g,h]	[a]
1/4	18	4	5	2.44	1.06	0.44	0.5625	0.421	0.375	[b,c]	[d,e]	[f,g,h]	[a]
3/8	18	4	5	2.56	1.06	0.50	0.7000	0.531	0.375	[b,c]	[d,e]	[f,g,h]	[a]
1/2	14	4	5	3.13	1.38	0.63	0.6875	0.515	…	[b,c]	[d,e]	[f,g,h]	[a]
3/4	14	5	5	3.25	1.38	0.69	0.9063	0.679	…	[b,c]	[d]	[f,g,h]	[a]
1	11 1/2	5	5	3.75	1.75	0.81	1.1250	0.843	…	[b,c]	[d]	[f,g,h]	[a]
1 1/4	11 1/2	5	5	4.00	1.75	0.94	1.3125	0.984	…	[b,c]	…	[f,g,h]	[a]
1 1/2	11 1/2	7	7	4.25	1.75	1.00	1.5000	1.125	…	[b,i]	…	[f,h]	…
2	11 1/2	7	7	4.25	1.75	1.13	1.8750	1.406	…	[b,i]	…	[f,h]	…
2 1/2	8	8	…	5.50	2.56	1.25	2.2500	1.687	…	…	…	[h]	…
3	8	8	…	6.00	2.63	1.38	2.6250	1.968	…	…	…	[h]	…

[a] Pipe taps 1/8 inch are furnished with large-size shanks unless the small shank is specified.

[b] High-speed ground thread 1/16 to 2 inches including noninterrupted (NPT, NPTF, and ANPT).

[c] High-speed ground thread 1/8 to 1 1/4 inch including interrupted (NPT, NPTF, and ANPT).

[d] High-speed ground thread 1/8 to 1 inch including noninterrupted (NPSC and NPSM).

[e] High-speed cut thread 1/8 to 1 inch including noninterrupted (NPSC and NPSM).

[f] High-speed cut thread 1/8 to 1 inch including noninterrupted (NPT).

[g] High-speed cut thread 1/8 to 1 1/4 inch including interrupted (NPT).

[h] Carbon cut thread 1/8 to 1 1/4 inch including interrupted (NPT).

[i] High-speed ground thread 1 1/2 to 2 inches including interrupted (NPT).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

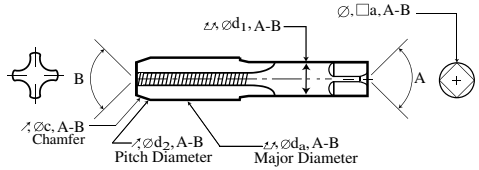
Table 13b. Straight and Taper Pipe Taps Tolerances (Ground and Cut Thread) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Ground Thread				Cut Thread			
	Nominal Diameter Range, inch				Nominal Diameter Range, inch		
Element	Over	To (inclusive)	Tolerances, inch	Element	Over	To (inclusive)	Tolerances, inch
Length overall, L	1/16	3/4	±0.031	Length overall, L	1/8	3/4	±0.031
	1	2	±0.063		1	3	±0.063
Length of thread, l	1/16	3/4	±0.063	Length of thread, l	1/8	3/4	±0.063
	1	1 1/4	±0.094		1	1 1/4	±0.094
	1 1/2	2	±0.125		1 1/2	3	±0.125
Length of square, l_2	1/16	3/4	±0.031	Length of square, l_2	1/8	3/4	±0.031
	1	2	±0.063		1	3	±0.063
Diameter of shank, d_1	1/16	1/8	−0.002	Diameter of shank, d_1	1/8	1/2	−0.007
	1/4	1	−0.002		3/4	3	−0.009
	1 1/4	2	−0.002	Size of square, a	1/8	…	−0.004
Size of square, a	1/16	1/8	−0.004		1/4	3/4	−0.006
	1/4	3/4	−0.006		1	3	−0.008
	1	2	−0.008				

All dimensions are given in inches.

The first few threads on interrupted thread pipe taps are left full. These taps have internal centers. For runout tolerances of tap elements, see Table 14. Taps marked NPS are suitable for NPSC and NPSM. These taps have 2 to 3 1/2 threads chamfer, see Table 5a. Optional neck is for manufacturing use only. For taper pipe thread limit, see Table 24a. For straight pipe thread limits, see Table 23a, Table 23b, and Table 23d.

Table 14. Runout and Locational Tolerance of Tap Elements
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)



	Range Sizes (Inclusive)			Total Runout FIM, Inch		
	Machine Screw	Metric	Pipe, Inch	Cut Thread	Ground Thread	Location, Inch
Shank, d_1	#0 to 5/16	M1.6 to M8	1/16	0.0060	0.0010	…
	11/32 to 4	M10 to M100	1/8 to 4	0.0080	0.0016	…
Major diameter, d_a	#0 to 5/16	M1.6 to M8	1/16	0.0050	0.0010	…
	11/32 to 4	M10 to M100	1/8 to 4	0.0080	0.0016	…
Pitch Diameter, d_2	#0 to 5/16	M1.6 to M8	1/16	0.0050	0.0010	…
	11/32 to 4	M10 to M100	1/8 to 4	0.0080	0.0016	…
Chamfer[a], c	#0 to 1/2	M1.6 to M12	1/16 to 1/8	0.0040	0.0020	…
	17/32 to 4	M14 to M100	1/8 to 4	0.0060	0.0030	…
Square, a	#0 to 1/2	M1.6 to M12	1/16 to 1/8	…	…	0.0060
	17/32 to 4	M14 to M100	1/8 to 4	…	…	0.0080

[a] Chamfer should preferably be inspected by light projection to avoid errors due to indicator contact points dropping into the thread groove.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Tap Thread Limits: Metric Sizes, Ground Thread (M Profile Standard Thread Limits in Inches) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nom. Dia mm	Pitch, mm	Major Diameter (Inches)			Pitch Diameter (Inches)						
						Limit #	D # Limit		Limit #	D # Limit	
		Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	D	Min.	Max.	D	Min.	Max.
1.6	0.35	0.06299	0.06409	0.06508	0.05406	3	0.05500	0.05559	…	…	…
2	0.4	0.07874	0.08000	0.08098	0.06850		0.06945	0.07004	…	…	…
2.5	0.45	0.09843	0.09984	0.10083	0.08693		0.08787	0.08846	…	…	…
3	0.5	0.11811	0.11969	0.12067	0.10531		0.10626	0.10685	5	0.10278[a,b]	0.10787[a, b]
3.5	0.6	0.13780	0.13969	0.14067	0.12244	4	0.12370	0.12449	…		
4	0.7	0.15748	0.15969	0.16130	0.13957		0.14083	0.14161	6	0.14185[a, b]	0.14264[a, b]
4.5	0.75	0.17717	0.17953	0.18114	0.15799		0.15925	0.16004	…	…	…
5	0.8	0.19685	0.19937	0.20098	0.17638		0.17764	0.17843	7	0.17917[b, c]	0.17996[b, c]
6	1	0.23622	0.23937	0.24098	0.21063	5	0.21220	0.21319	8	0.21374[b, c]	0.2147[b, c]
7	1	0.27559	0.27874	0.28035	0.25000		0.25157	0.25256	…		
8	1.25	0.31496	0.31890	0.32142	0.28299		0.28433	0.28555	9	0.2864[b, d]	0.2875[b, d]
10	1.5	0.39370	0.39843	0.40094	0.35535	6	0.35720	0.35843	10	0.3593[b, e]	0.3605[b, e]
12	1.75	0.47244	0.47795	0.48047	0.42768		0.42953	0.43075	11	0.43209[e]	0.43331[e]
14	2	0.55118	0.55748	0.56000	0.50004	7	0.50201	0.50362	…	…	…
14	1.25	0.55118	0.55500	0.55600	0.51920	4	0.52070[f]	0.52171[f]	…	…	…
16	2	0.62992	0.63622	0.63874	0.57878	7	0.58075	0.58236	…	…	…
18	1.5	0.70870	0.71350	0.71450	0.67030	4	0.67180[f]	0.67230[f]	7	0.58075	0.58236
20	2.5	0.78740	0.79528	0.79780	0.72346	7	0.72543	0.72705	…	…	…
24	3	0.94488	0.95433	0.95827	0.86815	8	0.87063	0.8722	…	…	…
30	3.5	1.18110	1.19213	1.19606	1.09161	9	1.0942	1.0962	…	…	…
36	4	1.41732	1.42992	1.43386	1.31504		1.3176	1.3197	…	…	…
42	4.5	1.65354	1.66772	1.71102	1.53846	10	1.5415	1.5436	…	…	…
48	5	1.88976	1.90552	1.98819	1.76189		1.7649	1.7670	…	…	…

[a] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.00102 larger than shown.

[b] Standard D limit for thread-forming taps.

[c] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.00154 larger than shown.

[d] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.00205 larger than shown.

[e] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.00256 larger than shown.

[f] These sizes are intended for spark plug applications; use tolerances from Table 2, column D.

All dimensions are given in inches. Not all styles of taps are available with all limits listed. For calculation of limits other than those listed, see formulas in Table 4.

Table 16. Tap Thread Limits: Metric Sizes, Ground Thread (M Profile Standard Thread Limits in Millimeters) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Size mm	Pitch	Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter						
						D #	D # Limit		D #	D # Limit	
		Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
1.6	0.35	1.60	1.628	1.653	1.373	3	1.397	1.412	…	…	…
2	0.4	2.00	2.032	2.057	1.740		1.764	1.779	…	…	…
2.5	0.45	2.50	2.536	2.561	2.208		2.232	2.247	…	…	…
3	0.5	3.00	3.040	3.065	2.675		2.699	2.714	5	2.725[a,b]	2.740[a,b]
3.5	0.6	3.50	3.548	3.573	3.110	4	3.142	3.162	…	…	…
4	0.7	4.00	4.056	4.097	3.545		3.577	3.597	6	3.603[a,b]	3.623[a,b]
4.5	0.75	4.50	4.560	4.601	4.013		4.045	4.065	…	…	…
5	0.8	5.00	5.064	5.105	4.480		4.512	4.532	7	4.551[b,c]	4.571[b,c]
6	1.00	6.00	6.121	5.351	5.391	5	5.391	5.416	8	5.429[b,c]	5.454[b,c]
7	1.00	7.00	7.121	6.351	6.391		6.391	6.416	…	…	…
8	1.25	8.00	8.10	8.164	7.188		7.222	7.253	9	7.274[b,d]	7.305[b,d]
10	1.50	10.0	10.12	10.184	9.026	6	9.073	9.104	10	9.125[b,d]	9.156[b,d]
12	1.75	12.0	12.14	12.204	10.863		10.910	10.941	11	10.975[b,e]	11.006[b,e]
14	2.00	14.0	14.01	14.164	13.188	4	7.222[f]	7.253[f]	…	…	…
14	1.25	14.0	14.16	14.224	12.701	7	12.751	12.792	…	…	…
16	2.00	16.0	16.16	16.224	14.701		14.751	14.792	…	…	…
18	1.50	18.0	18.12	18.184	17.026	4	17.063[f]	17.076[f]	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 16. *(Continued)* **Tap Thread Limits: Metric Sizes, Ground Thread (M Profile Standard Thread Limits in Millimeters)** *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Size		Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter						
							D # Limit			D # Limit	
mm	Pitch	Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	D #	Min.	Max.	D #	Min.	Max.
20	2.50	20.0	20.20	20.263	18.376	7	18.426	18.467	…	…	…
24	3.00	24.0	24.24	24.34	22.051	8	22.114	22.155	…	…	…
30	3.50	30.0	30.28	30.38	27.727	9	27.792	27.844	…	…	…
36	4.00	36.0	36.32	36.42	33.402		33.467	33.519	…	…	…
42	4.50	42.0	42.36	42.46	39.077	10	39.155	39.207	…	…	…
48	5.00	48.0	48.48	48.58	44.103		44.182	44.246	…	…	…

[a] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.026 larger than shown.
[b] Standard D limit for thread-forming taps.
[c] Minimum and major diameters are 0.039 larger than shown.
[d] Minimum and major diameters are 0.052 larger than shown.
[e] Minimum and major diameters are 0.065 larger than shown.
[f] These sizes are intended for spark plug applications; use tolerances from Table 2, column D.

Notes for Table 16: Inch translations are listed in Table 15. Limits listed in Table 16 are the most commonly used in industry. Not all styles of taps are available with all limits listed. For calculations of limits other than listed, see formulas in Table 4.

Table 17. Tap Size Recommendations for Class 6H Metric Screw Threads

Nominal Diameter, mm	Pitch, mm	Recommended Thread Limit Number	Internal Threads, Pitch Diameter			
			Min. (mm)	Max. (mm)	Min. (inch)	Max. (inch)
1.6	0.35	D3	1.373	1.458	0.05406	0.05740
2	0.4	D3	1.740	1.830	0.06850	0.07250
2.5	0.45	D3	2.208	2.303	0.08693	0.09067
3	0.5	D3	2.675	2.775	0.10537	0.10925
3.5	0.6	D4	3.110	3.222	0.12244	0.12685
4	0.7	D4	3.545	3.663	0.13957	0.14421
4.5	0.75	D4	4.013	4.131	0.15789	0.16264
5	0.8	D4	4.480	4.605	0.17638	0.18130
6	1	D5	5.350	5.500	0.201063	0.21654
7	1	D5	6.350	6.500	0.2500	0.25591
8	1.25	D5	7.188	7.348	0.28299	0.28929
10	1.5	D6	9.206	9.206	0.35535	0.36244
12	1.75	D6	10.863	11.063	0.42768	0.43555
14	2	D7	12.701	12.913	0.50004	0.50839
16	2	D7	14.701	14.913	0.57878	0.58713
20	2.5	D7	18.376	18.600	0.72346	0.73228
24	3	D8	22.051	22.316	0.86815	0.87858
30	3.5	D9	27.727	28.007	1.09161	1.10264
36	4	D9	33.402	33.702	1.31504	1.32685

The above recommended taps normally produce the class of thread indicated in average materials when used with reasonable care. However, if the tap specified does not give a satisfactory gage fit in the work, a choice of some other limit tap will be necessary.

Table 18. Standard Chamfers for Thread Cutting Taps
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)

Type of tap		Chamfer length		Type of tap	Chamfer length	
		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
Straight threads taps	Bottom	1*P*	2*P*	Taper pipe taps	2*P*	3½ *P*
	Semibottom	2*P*	3*P*			
	Plug	3*P*	5*P*			
	Taper	7*P*	10*P*			

P = pitch.

The chamfered length is measured at the cutting edge and is the axial length from the point diameter to the theoretical intersection of the major diameter and the chamfer angle. Whenever chamfer length is specified in terms of threads, this length is measured in number of pitches as shown. The point diameter is approximately equal to the basic thread minor diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. Taps Sizes for Classes 2B and 3B Unified Screw Threads
Machine Screw, Numbered, and Fractional Sizes *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Size	Threads per Inch NC UNC	Threads per Inch NF UNF	Recommended Tap For Class of Thread[a] Class 2B[b]	Recommended Tap For Class of Thread[a] Class 3B[c]	Pitch Diameter Limits For Class of Thread Min., All Classes (Basic)	Pitch Diameter Limits For Class of Thread Max. Class 2B	Pitch Diameter Limits For Class of Thread Max. Class 3B
Machine Screw Numbered-Size Taps							
0	…	80	G H2	G H1	0.0519	0.0542	0.0536
1	64	…	G H2	G H1	0.0629	0.0655	0.0648
1	…	72	G H2	G H1	0.0640	0.0665	0.0659
2	56	…	G H2	G H1	0.0744	0.0772	0.0765
2	…	64	G H2	G H1	0.0759	0.0786	0.0779
3	48	…	G H2	G H1	0.0855	0.0885	0.0877
3	…	56	G H2	G H1	0.0874	0.0902	0.0895
4	40	…	G H2	G H2	0.0958	0.0991	0.0982
4	…	48	G H2	G H1	0.0985	0.1016	0.1008
5	40	…	G H2	G H2	0.1088	0.1121	0.1113
5	…	44	G H2	G H1	0.1102	0.1134	0.1126
6	32	…	G H3	G H2	0.1177	0.1214	0.1204
6	…	40	G H2	G H2	0.1218	0.1252	0.1243
8	32	…	G H3	G H2	0.1437	0.1475	0.1465
8	…	36	G H2	G H2	0.1460	0.1496	0.1487
10	24	…	G H3	G H3	0.1629	0.1672	0.1661
10	…	32	G H3	G H2	0.1697	0.1736	0.1726
12	24	…	G H3	G H3	0.1889	0.1933	0.1922
12	…	28	G H3	G H3	0.1928	0.1970	0.1959
Fractional-Size Taps							
¼	20	…	G H5	G H3	0.2175	0.2224	0.2211
¼	…	28	G H4	G H3	0.2268	0.2311	0.2300
5/16	18	…	G H5	G H3	0.2764	0.2817	0.2803
5/16	…	24	G H4	G H3	0.2854	0.2902	0.2890
⅜	16	…	G H5	G H3	0.3344	0.3401	0.3387
⅜	…	24	G H4	G H3	0.3479	0.3528	0.3516
7/16	14	…	G H5	G H3	0.3911	0.3972	0.3957
7/16	…	20	G H5	G H3	0.4050	0.4104	0.4091
½	13	…	G H5	G H3	0.4500	0.4565	0.4548
½	…	20	G H5	G H3	0.4675	0.4731	0.4717
9/16	12	…	G H5	G H3	0.5084	0.5152	0.5135
9/16	…	18	G H5	G H3	0.5264	0.5323	0.5308
⅝	11	…	G H5	G H3	0.5660	0.5732	0.5714
⅝	…	18	G H5	G H3	0.5889	0.5949	0.5934
¾	10	…	G H5	G H5	0.6850	0.6927	0.6907
¾	…	16	G H5	G H3	0.7094	0.7159	0.7143
⅞	9	…	G H6	G H4	0.8028	0.8110	0.8089
⅞	…	14	G H6	G H4	0.8286	0.8356	0.8339
1	8	…	G H6	G H4	0.9188	0.9276	0.9254
1	…	12	G H6	G H4	0.9459	0.9535	0.9516
1	14NS	14NS	G H6	G H4	0.9536	0.9609	0.9590
1⅛	7	…	G H8	G H4	1.0322	1.0416	1.0393
1⅛	…	12	G H6	G H4	1.0709	1.0787	1.0768
1¼	7	…	G H8	G H4	1.1572	1.1668	1.1644
1¼	…	12	G H6	G H4	1.1959	1.2039	1.2019
1⅜	6	…	G H8	G H4	1.2667	1.2771	1.2745
1⅜	…	12	G H6	G H4	1.3209	1.3291	1.3270
1½	6	…	G H8	G H4	1.3917	1.4022	1.3996
1½	…	12	G H6	G H4	1.4459	1.4542	1.4522

[a] Recommended taps are for cutting threads only and are not for roll-form threads.

[b] Cut-thread taps in sizes #3 to 1½ in. NC and NF, inclusive, may be used under all normal conditions and in average materials for producing Class 2B tapped holes.

[c] Taps suited for class 3B are satisfactory for class 2B threads.

All dimensions are given in inches.

The above recommended taps normally produce the class of thread indicated in average materials when used with reasonable care. However, if the tap specified does not give a satisfactory gage fit in the work, a choice of some other limit tap will be necessary.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 20. Tap Thread Limits: Machine Screw Sizes, Ground Thread *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
(Unified and American National Thread Forms, Standard Thread Limits)

	Threads per Inch			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter															
								H1 limit		H2 limit		H3 limit		H4 limit		H5 limit		H6 limit[a]		H7 limit[b]		H8 limit[c]	
Size	NC UNF	NF UNF	NS	Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
0	…	80	…	0.0600	0.0605	0.0616	0.0519	0.0519	0.0524	0.0524	0.0529	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	64	…	…	0.0730	0.0736	0.0750	0.0629	0.0629	0.0634	0.0634	0.0639	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	…	72	…	0.0730	0.0736	0.0748	0.0640	0.064	0.0645	0.0645	0.0650	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2	56	…	…	0.0860	0.0866	0.0883	0.0744	0.0744	0.0749	0.0749	0.0754	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2		64	…	0.0860	0.0866	0.0880	0.0759	…	…	0.0764	0.0769	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3	48		…	0.0990	0.0999	0.1017	0.0855	…	…	0.086	0.0865	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3	…	56	…	0.0990	0.0997	0.1013	0.0874	0.0874	0.0879	0.0879	0.0884	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
4	40	…	…	0.1120	0.1134	0.1153	0.0958	0.0958	0.0963	0.0963	0.0968	…	…	…	…	0.0978[d]	0.0983[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
4	…	…	36	0.1120	0.1135	0.1156	0.0940	0.094	0.0945	0.0945	0.0950	…	…	…	…	0.0960[d]	0.0965[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
4	…	48	…	0.1120	0.1129	0.1147	0.0985	0.0985	0.0990	0.0990	0.0995	…	…	…	…	0.1005[d]	0.1010[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
5	40	…	…	0.1250	0.1264	0.1283	0.1088	0.1088	0.1093	0.1093	0.1098	…	…	…	…	0.1108[d]	0.1113[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
5	…	44	…	0.1250	0.1262	0.1280	0.1102	…	…	0.1107	0.1112	…	…	…	…	0.1122[d]	0.1127[d]	…	…	…	…	…	…
6	32	…	…	0.1380	0.1400	0.1421	0.1177	0.1177	0.1182	0.1182	0.1187	0.1187	0.1192	…	…	0.1197[a]	0.1202[a]	…	…	0.1207	0.1212	0.1222	0.1227
6	…	40	…	0.1380	0.1394	0.1413	0.1218	0.1218	0.1223	0.1223	0.1228	…	…	…	…	0.1238[a]	0.1243[a]	…	…	…	…	…	…
8	32	…	…	0.1640	0.1660	0.1681	0.1437	0.1437	0.1442	0.1442	0.1447	0.1447	0.1452	…	…	0.1457[a]	0.1462[a]	…	…	0.1467	0.1472	0.1482	0.1487
8	…	36	…	0.1640	0.1655	0.1676	0.1460	…	…	0.1465	0.1470	…	…	…	…	0.1480[a]	0.1485[a]	…	…	…	…	…	…
10	24	…	…	0.1900	0.1927	0.1954	0.1629	0.1629	0.1634	0.1634	0.1639	0.1639	0.1644	0.1644	0.1649	…	…	0.1654	0.1659	0.1659	0.1664	…	…
10	…	32	…	0.1900	0.1920	0.1941	0.1697	0.1697	0.1702	0.1702	0.1707	0.1707	0.1712	0.1712	0.1717	…	…	0.1722	0.1727	0.1727	0.1732	0.1742	0.1747
12	24	…	…	0.2160	0.2187	0.2214	0.1889	…	…	…	…	0.1899	0.1904	0.1904	0.1909	…	…	0.1914	0.1919	…	…	…	…
12	…	28	…	0.2160	0.2183	0.2206	0.1928	…	…	…	…	0.1938	0.1943	0.1943	0.1948	…	…	0.1953	0.1958	…	…	…	…

[a] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0010 larger than shown.

[b] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0020 larger than shown.

[c] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0035 larger than shown.

[d] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0015 larger than shown.

General notes:

Limits listed in above table are the most commonly used in the industry.

Not all styles of taps are available with all limits listed.

For calculation of limits other than those listed, see formulas and Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. Tap Thread Limits: Fractional Sizes, Ground Thread *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
(Unified and American National Thread Forms, Standard Thread Limits)

Size inch	NC UNC	NF UNF	NS	Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter															
								H1 limit		H2 limit		H3 limit		H4 limit		H5 limit		H6 limit[a]		H7 limit		H8 limit[b]	
				Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
1/4	20	…	…	0.2500	0.2532	0.2565	0.2175	0.2175	0.2180	0.2180	0.2185	0.2185	0.2190	…	…	0.2195[a]	0.2200[a]	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/4	…	28	…	0.2500	0.2523	0.2546	0.2268	0.2268	0.2273	0.2273	0.2278	0.2278	0.2283	0.2283	0.2288	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5/16	18	…	…	0.3125	0.3161	0.3197	0.2764	0.2764	0.2769	0.2769	02774	0.2774	0.2779	…	…	0.2784[a]	0.2789[a]	…	…	0.2794[c]	0.2799[c]	…	…
5/16	…	24	…	0.3125	0.3152	0.3179	0.2854	0.2854	0.2859	0.2859	0.2864	0.2864	0.2869	0.2869	0.2874	…	…	…	…	0.2884[c]	0.2889[c]	…	…
3/8	16	…	…	0.3750	0.3790	0.3831	0.3344	0.3344	0.3349	0.3349	0.3354	0.3354	0.3359	…	…	0.3364[a]	0.3369[a]	…	…	0.3374[c]	0.3379[c]	…	…
3/8	…	24	…	0.3750	0.3777	0.3804	0.3479	0.3479	0.3484	0.3484	0.3489	0.3489	0.3494	0.3494	0.3499	…	…	…	…	0.3509[c]	0.3514[c]	…	…
7/16	14	…	…	0.4375	0.4422	0.4468	0.3911	…	…	0.3916	0.3921	0.3921	0.3926	…	…	0.3931[a]	0.3936[a]	…	…	…	…	0.3946	0.3951
7/16	…	20	…	0.4375	0.4407	0.4440	0.4050	…	…	…	…	0.4060	0.4065	…	…	0.4070[a]	0.4075[a]	…	…	…	…	0.4085	0.4090
1/2	13	…	…	0.5000	0.5050	0.5100	0.4500	0.4500	0.4505	0.4505	0.4510	0.4510	0.4515	…	…	0.4520[a]	0.4525[a]	…	…	…	…	0.4535	0.4540
1/2	…	20	…	0.5000	0.5032	0.5065	0.4675	0.4675	0.4680	0.4680	0.4685	0.4685	0.4690	…	…	0.4695[a]	0.4700[a]	…	…	…	…	0.4710	0.4715
9/16	12	…	…	0.5625	0.5679	0.5733	0.5084	…	…	…	…	0.5094	0.5099	…	…	0.5104[a]	0.5109[a]	…	…	0.5114[c]	0.5119[c]	…	…
9/16	…	18	…	0.5625	0.5661	0.5697	0.5264	…	…	0.5269	0.5274	0.5274	0.5279	…	…	0.5284[a]	0.5289[a]	…	…	0.5294[c]	0.5299[c]	…	…
5/8	11	…	…	0.6250	0.6309	0.6368	0.566	…	…	0.5665	0.567	0.567	0.5675	…	…	0.5680[a]	0.5685[a]	…	…	0.5690[c]	0.5695[c]	…	…
5/8	…	18	…	0.6250	0.6286	0.6322	0.5889	…	…	0.5894	0.5899	0.5899	0.5904	…	…	0.5909[a]	0.5914[a]	…	…	0.5919[c]	0.5924[c]	…	…
11/16	…	…	11	0.6875	0.6934	0.6993	0.6285	…	…	…	…	0.6295	0.6300	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
11/16	…	…	16	0.6875	0.6915	0.6956	0.6469	…	…	…	…	0.6479	0.6484	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/4	10	…	…	0.7500	0.7565	0.7630	0.6850	…	…	0.6855	0.6860	0.6860	0.6865	…	…	0.6870	0.6875	…	…	0.6880[d]	0.6885[d]	…	…
3/4	…	16	…	0.7500	0.7540	0.7581	0.7094	0.7094	0.7099	0.7099	0.7104	0.7104	0.7109	…	…	0.7114[a]	0.1119[a]	…	…	0.7124[d]	0.4129[d]	…	…
7/8	9	…	…	0.8750	0.8822	0.8894	0.8028	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.8043	0.8048	…	…	0.8053	0.8058	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. *(Continued)* **Tap Thread Limits: Fractional Sizes, Ground Thread** *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*
(Unified and American National Thread Forms, Standard Thread Limits)

Size inch	NC UNC	NF UNF	NS	Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter															
								H1 limit		H2 limit		H3 limit		H4 limit		H5 limit		H6 limit[a]		H7 limit		H8 limit[b]	
				Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
⅞	…	14	…	0.8750	0.8797	0.8843	0.8286	…	…	0.8291	0.8296	…	…	0.8301	0.8306	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	8	…	…	1.0000	1.0082	1.0163	0.9188	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.9203	0.9208	…	…	0.9213	0.9218	…	…	…	…
1	…	12	…	1.0000	1.0054	1.0108	0.9459	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.9474	0.9479	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1	…	…	…	1.0000	1.0047	1.0093	0.9536	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.9551	0.9556	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1⅛	7		…	1.1250	1.1343	1.1436	1.0322	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.0337	1.0342	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1⅛		12	…	1.1250	1.1304	1.1358	1.0709	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.0724	1.0729	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1¼	7		…	1.2500	1.2593	1.2686	1.1572	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.1587	1.1592	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1¼		12	…	1.2500	1.2554	1.2608	1.1959	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.1974	1.1979	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1⅜	6		…	1.3750	1.3859	1.3967	1.2667	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.2682	1.2687	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1⅜		12	…	1.3750	1.3804	1.3858	1.3209	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.3224	1.3229	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1½	6		…	1.5000	1.5109	1.5217	1.3917	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.3932	1.3937	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1½		12	…	1.5000	1.5054	1.5108	1.4459	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.4474	1.4479	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1¾		5	…	1.7500	1.7630	1.7760	1.6201	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.6216	1.6221	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2		4.5	…	2.0000	2.0145	2.0289	1.8557	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.8572	1.8577	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0010 larger than shown.
[b] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0035 larger than shown.
[c] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0020 larger than shown.
[d] Minimum and maximum major diameters are 0.0015 larger than shown.
General notes:
Limits listed in Table 21 are the most commonly used in the industry.
Not all styles of taps are available with all limits listed.
For calculation of limits other than those listed, see formulas and Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 22. Tap Thread Limits: Machine Screw Sizes, Cut Thread
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018) **Unified and American National Thread Forms, Standard Thread Limits**

Size	Threads per Inch			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		
	NC UNC	NF UNF	NS UNS	Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	Min.	Max.
0	…	80	…	0.0600	0.0609	0.0624	0.0519	0.0521	0.0531
1	64	…	…	0.0730	0.0739	0.0754	0.0629	0.0631	0.0641
1	…	72	…	0.0730	0.0740	0.0755	0.0640	0.0642	0.0652
2	56	…	…	0.0860	0.0872	0.0887	0.0744	0.0746	0.0756
2	…	64	…	0.0860	0.0870	0.0885	0.0759	0.0761	0.0771
3	48	…	…	0.0990	0.1003	0.1018	0.0855	0.0857	0.0867
3	…	56	…	0.0990	0.1002	0.1017	0.0874	0.0876	0.0886
4	…	…	36	0.1120	0.1137	0.1157	0.0940	0.0942	0.0957
4	40	…	…	0.1120	0.1136	0.1156	0.0958	0.0960	0.0975
4	…	48	…	0.1120	0.1133	0.1153	0.0985	0.0987	0.1002
5	40	…	…	0.1250	0.1266	0.1286	0.1088	0.1090	0.1105
6	32	…	…	0.1380	0.1402	0.1422	0.1177	0.1182	0.1197
6	…	…	36	0.1380	0.1397	0.1417	0.1200	0.1202	0.1217
6	…	40	…	0.1380	0.1396	0.1416	0.1218	0.1220	0.1235
8	32	…	…	0.1640	0.1662	0.1682	0.1437	0.1442	0.1457
8	…	36	…	0.1640	0.1657	0.1677	0.1460	0.1462	0.1477
8	…	…	40	0.1640	0.1656	0.1676	0.1478	0.1480	0.1495
10	24	…	…	0.1900	0.1928	0.1948	0.1629	0.1634	0.1649
10	…	32	…	0.1900	0.1922	0.1942	0.1697	0.1702	0.1717
12	24	…	…	0.2160	0.2188	0.2208	0.1889	0.1894	0.1909
12	…	28	…	0.2160	0.2184	0.2204	0.1928	0.1933	0.1948
14	…	…	24	0.2420	0.2448	0.2473	0.2149	0.2154	0.2174

Angle Tolerance		
Threads per Inch	Half Angle	Full Angle
20 to 28	±0°45′	±0°65′
30 and finer	±0°60′	±0°90′

A maximum lead error of ±0.003 inch in 1 inch of thread is permitted.
All dimensions are given in inches.
Thread limits are computed from Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. Tap Thread Limits: Fractional Sizes, Cut Thread
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018) **(Unified and American National Thread Forms)**

	Threads per Inch			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		
Size	NC UNC	NF UNF	NS UNS	Basic	Min.	Max.	Basic	Min.	Max.
1/8	…	…	40	0.1250	0.1266	0.1286	0.1088	0.1090	0.1105
5/32	…	…	32	0.1563	0.1585	0.1605	0.13595	0.13645	0.1380
3/16	…	…	24	0.1875	0.1903	0.1923	0.1604	0.1609	0.1624
3/16	…	…	32	0.1875	0.1897	0.1917	0.1672	0.1677	0.1692
1/4	20	…	…	0.2500	0.2532	0.2557	0.2175	0.2180	0.2200
1/4	…	28	…	0.2500	0.2524	0.2549	0.2268	0.2273	0.2288
5/16	18	…	…	0.3125	0.3160	0.3185	0.2764	0.2769	0.2789
5/16	…	24	…	0.3125	0.3153	0.3178	0.2854	0.2859	0.2874
3/8	16	…	…	0.3750	0.3789	0.3814	0.3344	0.3349	0.3369
3/8	…	24	…	0.3750	0.3778	0.3803	0.3479	0.3484	0.3499
7/16	14	…	…	0.4375	0.4419	0.4449	0.3911	0.3916	0.3941
7/16	…	20	…	0.4375	0.4407	0.4437	0.4050	0.4055	0.4075
1/2	13	…	…	0.5000	0.5047	0.5077	0.4500	0.4505	0.4530
1/2	…	20	…	0.5000	0.5032	0.5062	0.4675	0.4680	0.4700
9/16	12	…	…	0.5625	0.5675	0.5705	0.5084	0.5089	0.5114
9/16	…	18	…	0.5625	0.5660	0.5690	0.5264	0.5269	0.5289
5/8	11	…	…	0.6250	0.6304	0.6334	0.5660	0.5665	0.5690
5/8	…	18	…	0.6250	0.6285	0.6315	0.5889	0.5894	0.5914
3/4	10	…	…	0.7500	0.7559	0.7599	0.6850	0.6855	0.6885
3/4	…	16	…	0.7500	0.7539	0.7579	0.7094	0.7099	0.7124
7/8	9	…	…	0.8750	0.8820	0.8860	0.8028	0.8038	0.8068
7/8	…	14	…	0.8750	0.8799	0.8839	0.8286	0.8296	0.8321
1	8	…	…	1.0000	1.0078	1.0118	0.9188	0.9198	0.9228
1	…	12	…	1.0000	1.0055	1.0095	0.9459	0.9469	0.9494
1	…	…	14	1.0000	1.0049	1.0089	0.9536	0.9546	0.9571
1 1/8	7	…	…	1.1250	1.1337	1.1382	1.0322	1.0332	1.0367
1 1/8	…	12	…	1.1250	1.1305	1.1350	1.0709	1.0719	1.0749
1 1/4	7	…	…	1.2500	1.2587	1.2632	1.1572	1.1582	1.1617
1 1/4	…	12	…	1.2500	1.2555	1.2600	1.1959	1.1969	1.1999
1 3/8	6	…	…	1.3750	1.3850	1.3895	1.2667	1.2677	1.2712
1 3/8	…	12	…	1.3750	1.3805	1.3850	1.3209	1.3219	1.3249
1 1/2	6	…	…	1.5000	1.5100	1.5145	1.3917	1.3927	1.3962
1 1/2	…	12	…	1.5000	1.5055	1.5100	1.4459	1.4469	1.4499
1 3/4	5	…	…	1.7500	1.7602	1.7657	1.6201	1.6216	1.6256
2	4.5	…	…	2.0000	2.0111	2.0166	1.8557	1.8572	1.8612

Threads per Inch	Half Angle	Full Angle
4 1/2 to 5 1/2	±0° 35′	±0° 53′
6 to 9	±0° 40′	±0° 60′
10 to 28	±0° 45′	±0° 68′
30 to 64	±0° 60′	±0° 90′

A maximum lead error of ±0.003 inch in 1 inch of thread is permitted.
All dimensions are given in inches.
Thread limits are computed from Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23a. Straight Pipe Thread Limits: NPS, Ground Thread
ANSI Straight Pipe Thread Form (NPSC, NPSM) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size, Inches	Threads per Inch, NPS, NPSC, NPSM	Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		
		Plug at Gaging Notch	Min. *G*	Max. *H*	Plug at Gaging Notch *E*	Min. *K*	Max. *L*
1/8	27	0.3983	0.4022	0.4032	0.3736	0.3746	0.3751
1/4	18	0.5286	0.5347	0.5357	0.4916	0.4933	0.4938
3/8	18	0.6640	0.6701	0.6711	0.6270	0.6287	0.6292
1/2	14	0.8260	0.8347	0.8357	0.7784	0.7806	0.7811
3/4	14	1.0364	1.0447	1.0457	0.9889	0.9906	0.9916
1	11 1/2	1.2966	1.3062	1.3077	1.2386	1.2402	1.2412

Formulas for NPS Ground Thread Taps[a]						
Nominal Size	Major Diameter		Minor Dia.	Threads per Inch	*A*	*B*
	Min. *G*	Max. *H*	Max.			
1/8	$H - 0.0010$	$(K + A) - 0.0010$	$M - B$	27	0.0296	0.0257
1/4 to 3/4	$H - 0.0010$	$(K + A) - 0.0020$	$M - B$	18	0.0444	0.0401
1	$H - 0.0015$	$(K + A) - 0.0021$	$M - B$	14	0.0571	0.0525
				11 1/2	0.0696	0.0647

[a] In the formulas, *M* equals the actual measured pitch diameter.
All dimensions are given in inches.

Maximum pitch diameter of tap is based upon an allowance deducted from the maximum product pitch diameter of NPSC or NPSM, whichever is smaller.

Minimum pitch diameter of tap is derived by subtracting the ground thread pitch diameter tolerance for actual equivalent size.

Lead tolerance: A maximum lead deviation pf ± 0.0005 inch within any two threads not farther apart than one inch.

Angle Tolerance: 11 1/2 to 27 threads per inch, plus or minus 30 min. in half angle.

Taps made to the specifications in Table 23a are to be marked NPS and used for NPSC and NPSM.

Table 23b. Straight Pipe Thread Limits: NPSF Ground Thread
ANSI Standard Straight Pipe Thread Form (NPSF) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size, Inches	Threads per Inch	Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter			
		Min. *G*	Max. *H*	Plug at Gaging Notch *E*	Min. *K*	Max. *L*	Minor[a] Dia. Flat, Max.
1/16	27	0.3008	0.3018	0.2812	0.2772	0.2777	0.004
1/8	27	0.3932	0.3942	0.3736	0.3696	0.3701	0.004
1/4	18	0.5239	0.5249	0.4916	0.4859	0.4864	0.005
3/8	18	0.6593	0.6603	0.6270	0.6213	0.6218	0.005
1/2	14	0.8230	0.8240	0.7784	0.7712	0.7717	0.005
3/4	14	1.0335	1.0345	0.9889	0.9817	0.9822	0.005

[a] As specified or sharper.
All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23c. ASME Standard Straight Pipe Thread Limits: NPSF Ground Thread Dryseal ANSI Standard Straight Pipe Thread Form (NPSF)
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)

Formulas For American Dryseal (NPSF) Ground Thread Taps					
Nominal Size, Inches	Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Max. Minor Dia.
	Min. *G*	Max. *H*	Min. *K*	Max. *L*	
1/16	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$
1/8	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$
1/4	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$
3/8	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$
1/2	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$
3/4	$H - 0.0010$	$K + Q - 0.0005$	$L - 0.0005$	$E - F$	$M - Q$

Values to Use in Formulas				
Threads per Inch	*E*	*F*	*M*	*Q*
27	Pitch diameter of plug at gaging notch	0.0035	Actual measured pitch diameter	0.0251
18		0.0052		0.0395
14		0.0067		0.0533

All dimensions are given in inches.

Lead Tolerance: A maximum lead deviation of ±0.0005 inch within any two threads not farther apart than one inch.

Angle Tolerance: Plus or minus 30 min. in half angle for 14 to 27 threads per inch, inclusive.

Table 23d. ANSI Standard Straight Pipe Tap Limits: (NPS) Cut Thread ANSI Straight Pipe Thread Form (NPSC) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size	Threads per Inch, NPS, NPSC	Size at Gaging Notch	Pitch Diameter		Values to Use in Formulas		
			Min.	Max.	*A*	*B*	*C*
1/8	27	0.3736	0.3721	0.3751	0.0267	0.0296	0.0257
1/4	18	0.4916	0.4908	0.4938	0.0408	0.0444	0.0401
3/8	18	0.6270	0.6257	0.6292			
1/2	14	0.7784	0.7776	0.7811	0.0535	0.0571	0.0525
3/4	14	0.9889	0.9876	0.9916			
1	11½	1.2386	1.2372	1.2412	0.0658	0.0696	0.0647

The following are approximate formulas, in which M = measured pitch diameter in inches:

Major dia., min. $= M + A$

Major dia., max. $= M + B$

Minor dia., max. $= M - C$

Maximum pitch diameter of tap is based on an allowance deducted from the maximum product pitch diameter of NPSC.

Minimum pitch diameter of tap equals maximum pitch diameter minus the tolerance.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Lead Tolerance: ± 0.003 inch per inch of thread.

Angle Tolerance: For all pitches, tolerance will be ± 45″ for half angle and ± 68″ for full angle. Taps made to these specifications are to be marked NPS and used for NPSC thread form.

Taps made to the specifications in Table 23a are to be marked NPS and used for NPSC.

As the American National Standard straight pipe thread form is to be maintained, the major and minor diameters vary with the pitch diameter. Either a flat or rounded form is allowable at both the crest and the root.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 24a. Taper Pipe Thread Limits (Ground and Cut Thread: Ground Thread For NPS, NPTF, and ANPT; Cut Thread for NPT only) *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Size	Threads per Inch	Gage Measurement			Taper per Inch on Diameter[a]				Reference Dimensions	
			Tolerance ±		Cut Thread		Ground Thread			
		Projection Inch[b]	Cut Thread	Ground Thread	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	L_1, Length[c]	Tap Drill Size NPT, ANPT, NPTF[d]
1/16	27	0.312	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0703	0.0599	0.0651	0.1600	C
1/8	27	0.312	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0703	0.0599	0.0651	0.1615	Q
1/4	18	0.459	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0703	0.0599	0.0651	0.2278	7/16
3/8	18	0.454	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0703	0.0599	0.0651	0.2400	9/16
1/2	14	0.579	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.3200	45/64
3/4	11.5	0.565	0.0625	0.0625	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.3390	29/32
1	11.5	0.678	0.0937	0.0937	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.4000	1 1/64
1 1/4	11.5	0.686	0.0937	0.0937	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.4200	1 31/64
1 1/2	11.5	0.699	0.0937	0.0937	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.4200	1 23/32
2	8	0.667	0.0937	0.0937	0.0599	0.0677	0.0599	0.0651	0.4360	2 3/16
2 1/2	8	0.925	0.0937	0.0937	0.0612	0.0664	0.0612	0.0651	0.6820	2 39/64
3	20	0.925	0.0937	0.0937	0.0612	0.0664	0.0612	0.0651	0.7660	3 15/16

[a] Taper is 0.0625 inch per 1.000 inch on diameter (1:16) (3/4 inch per 12 inches).

[b] Distance, small end of tap projects through L_1 taper ring gage.

[c] Dimension, L_1, thickness on thin ring gage; see ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 and B1.20.5.

[d] Given sizes permit direct tapping without reaming the hole, but only give full threads for approximate L_1 distance.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Lead Tolerance: ±0.003 inch per inch on cut thread, and ±0.0005 inch per inch on ground thread.

Angle Tolerance: ±40 min. in half angle and 60 min. in full angle for 8 cut threads per inch; ±45 min. in half angle and 68 min. in full angle for 11 1/2 to 27 cut threads per inch; ±25 min. in half angle for 8 ground threads per inch; and ±30 min. in half angle for 11 1/2 to 27 ground threads per inch.

Table 24b. Taper Pipe Thread — Widths of Flats at Tap Crests and Roots for Cut Thread NPT and Ground Thread NPT, ANPT, and NPTF
ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)

Threads per Inch	Tap Flat Width at	Column I		Column II	
		NPT—Cut and Ground Thread[a] ANPT—Ground Thread[a]		NPTF	Ground Thread[a]
		Min.[b]	Max.	Min.[b]	Max.
27	Major diameter	0.0014	0.0041	0.0040	0.0055
	Minor diameter	…	0.0041	…	0.0040
18	Major diameter	0.0021	0.0057	0.0050	0.0065
	Minor diameter	…	0.0057	…	0.0050
14	Major diameter	0.0027	0.0064	0.0050	0.0065
	Minor diameter	…	0.0064	…	0.0050
11 1/2	Major diameter	0.0033	0.0073	0.0060	0.0083
	Minor diameter	…	0.0073	…	0.0060
8	Major diameter	0.0048	0.0090	0.0080	0.0103
	Minor diameter	…	0.0090	…	0.0080

[a] Cut thread taps made to Column I are marked NPT but are not recommended for ANPT applications. Ground thread taps made to Column I are marked NPT and may be used for NPT and ANPT applications. Ground thread taps made to Column II are marked NPTF and used for dryseal application.

[b] Minimum minor diameter flats are not specified and may be as sharp as practicable.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 25. Tap Thread Limits for Screw Thread Inserts (STI), Ground Thread, Machine Screw, and Fractional Size *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)*

Nominal Screw Size STI	Fractional Size STI	Threads Per Inch		Tap Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter Limits					
						2B			3B		
		NC	NF	Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.
1	…	64	…	0.0948	0.0958	H2	0.0837	0.0842	H1	0.0832	0.0837
2	…	56	…	0.1107	0.1117	H2	0.0981	0.0986	H1	0.0976	0.0981
	…	…	64	0.1088	0.1088	H2	0.0967	0.0972	H1	0.0962	0.0967
3	…	48	…	0.1289	0.1289	H2	0.1131	0.1136	H1	0.1126	0.1131
	…	…	56	0.1237	0.1247	H2	0.1111	0.1116	H1	0.1106	0.1111
4	…	40	…	0.1463	0.1473	H2	0.1288	0.1293	H1	0.1283	0.1288
	…	…	48	0.1409	0.1419	H2	0.1261	0.1266	H1	0.1256	0.1261
5	…	40	…	0.1593	0.1603	H2	0.1418	0.1423	H1	0.1413	0.1418
6	…	32	…	0.1807	0.1817	H3	0.1593	0.1598	H2	0.1588	0.1593
	…	…	40	0.1723	0.1733	H2	0.1548	0.1553	H1	0.1543	0.1548
8	…	32	…	0.2067	0.2077	H3	0.1853	0.1858	H2	0.1848	0.1853
	…	…	36	0.2022	0.2032	H2	0.1826	0.1831	H1	0.1821	0.1826
10	…	24	…	0.2465	0.2475	H3	0.2180	0.2185	H2	0.2175	0.2180
	…	…	32	0.2327	0.2337	H3	0.2113	0.2118	H2	0.2108	0.2113
12	…	24	…	0.2725	0.2735	H3	0.2440	0.2445	H2	0.2435	0.2440
…	1/4	20	…	0.3177	0.3187	H3	0.2835	0.2840	H2	0.2830	0.2835
…	…	…	28	0.2985	0.2995	H3	0.2742	0.2747	H2	0.2737	0.2742
…	5/16	18	…	0.3874	0.3884	H4	0.3501	0.3506	H3	0.3496	0.3501
…	…	…	24	0.3690	0.3700	H3	0.3405	0.3410	H2	0.3400	0.3405
…	3/8	16	…	0.4592	0.4602	H4	0.4171	0.4176	H3	0.4166	0.4171
…	…	…	24	0.4315	0.4325	H3	0.4030	0.4035	H2	0.4025	0.4030
…	7/16	14	…	0.5333	0.5343	H4	0.4854	0.4859	H3	0.4849	0.4854
…	…	…	20	0.5052	0.5062	H4	0.4715	0.4720	H3	0.4710	0.4715
…	1/2	13	…	0.6032	0.6042	H4	0.5514	0.5519	H3	0.5509	0.5514
…	…	…	20	0.5677	0.5687	H4	0.5340	0.5345	H3	0.5335	0.5340
…	9/16	12	…	0.6741	0.6751	H4	0.6182	0.6187	H3	0.6117	0.6182
…	…	…	18	06374	0.6384	H4	0.6001	0.6006	H3	0.5996	0.6001
…	5/8	11	…	0.7467	0.7477	H4	0.6856	0.6861	H3	0.6851	0.6856
…	…	…	18	0.6999	0.7009	H4	0.6626	0.6631	H3	0.6621	0.6626
…	3/4	10	…	0.8835	0.8850	H5	0.8169	0.8174	H3	0.8159	0.8164
…	…	…	18	0.8342	0.8352	H4	0.7921	0.7926	H3	0.7916	0.7921
…	7/8	9	…	1.0232	1.0247	H5	0.9491	0.9496	H3	0.9481	0.9486
…	…	…	14	0.9708	0.9718	H4	0.9234	0.9239	H3	0.9224	0.9229
…	1	8	…	1.1666	1.1681	H6	1.0832	1.0842	H4	1.0822	1.0832
…	…	…	12	1.1116	1.1126	H6	1.0562	1.0572	H4	1.0552	1.0562
…	…	…	14 NS	1.0958	1.0968	H6	1.0484	1.0494	H4	1.0474	1.0484
…	1 1/8	7	…	1.3151	1.3171	H6	1.2198	1.2208	H4	1.2188	1.2198
…			12	1.2366	1.2376	H6	1.1812	1.1822	H4	1.1802	1.1812
…	1 1/4	7	…	1.4401	1.4421	H6	1.3448	1.3458	H4	1.3438	1.3448
…	…	…	12	1.3616	1.3626	H6	1.3062	1.3072	H4	1.3052	1.3062
…	1 3/8	6	…	1.5962	1.5982	H8	1.4862	1.4872	H6	1.4852	1.4862
…	…	…	12	1.4866	1.4876	H6	1.4312	1.4322	H4	1.4302	1.4312
…	1 1/2	6	…	1.7212	1.7232	H8	1.6112	1.6122	H6	1.6102	1.6112
…	…	…	12	1.6116	1.6126	H6	1.5562	1.5572	H4	1.5552	1.5562

These taps are over the nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the normal size and pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 26a. Tap Thread Limits *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)* **for Screw Thread Inserts (STI), Ground Thread, Metric Size (Inch)**

Metric Size STI	Pitch, mm	Tap Major Diameter, inch		Tap Pitch Diameter Limits, inch					
				Tolerance Class 4H			Tolerance Classes 5H and 6H		
		Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.
M2.5	0.45	0.1239	0.1229	1	0.1105	0.1100	2	0.1110	0.1105
M3	0.5	0.1463	0.1453	1	0.1314	0.1309	2	0.1319	0.1314
M3.5	0.6	0.1714	0.1704	1	0.1537	0.1532	2	0.1542	0.1537
M4	0.7	0.1971	0.1955	2	0.1764	0.1759	3	0.1769	0.1764
M5	0.8	0.2418	0.2403	2	0.2184	0.2179	3	0.2187	0.2184
M6	1	0.2922	0.2906	2	0.2629	0.2624	3	0.2634	0.2629
M7	1	0.3316	0.3300	2	0.3022	0.3017	3	0.3027	0.3022
M8	1	0.3710	0.3694	2	0.3416	0.3411	3	0.3421	0.3416
	1.25	0.3853	0.3828	2	0.3480	0.3475	3	0.3485	0.3480
M10	1	0.4497	0.4481	2	0.4203	0.4198	3	0.4208	0.4203
	1	0.4641	0.4616	2	0.4267	0.4262	3	0.4272	0.4267
	1.25	0.4776	0.4751	3	0.4336	0.4331	4	0.4341	0.4336
M12	1.25	0.5428	0.5403	3	0.5059	0.5054	4	0.5064	0.5059
	1.5	0.5564	0.5539	3	0.5123	0.5118	4	0.5128	0.5123
	1.75	0.5700	0.5675	3	0.5187	0.5182	4	0.5192	0.5187
M14	1.5	0.6351	0.6326	3	0.5911	0.5906	4	0.5916	0.5911
	2	0.6623	0.6598	3	0.6039	0.6034	4	0.6049	0.6044
M16	1.5	0.7139	0.7114	3	0.6698	0.6693	4	0.6703	0.6698
	2	0.7410	0.7385	3	0.6826	0.6821	4	0.6836	0.6831
M18	1.5	0.7926	0.7901	3	0.7485	0.7480	4	0.7490	0.7485
	2	0.8198	0.8173	3	0.7613	0.7608	4	0.7623	0.7618
	2.5	0.8470	0.8445	3	0.7741	0.7736	4	0.7751	0.7748
M20	1.5	0.8713	0.8688	3	0.8273	0.8268	4	0.8278	0.8273
	2	0.8985	0.8960	3	0.8401	0.8396	4	0.8411	0.8406
	2.5	0.9257	0.9232	3	0.8529	0.8524	4	0.8539	0.8534
M22	1.5	0.9500	0.9475	3	0.9060	0.9055	4	0.9065	0.9060
	2	0.9773	0.9748	3	0.9188	0.9183	5	0.9198	0.9193
	2.5	1.0044	1.0019	3	0.9316	0.9311	5	0.9326	0.9321
M24	2	1.0559	1.0534	4	0.9981	0.9971	6	0.9991	0.9981
	3	1.1117	1.1078	4	1.0236	1.0226	6	1.0246	1.0236
M27	2	1.1741	1.1716	4	1.1162	1.1152	6	1.1172	1.1162
	3	1.2298	1.2259	4	1.1417	1.1407	6	1.1427	1.1417
M30	2	1.2922	1.2897	4	1.2343	1.2333	6	1.2353	1.2343
	3.5	1.3750	1.3711	4	1.2726	1.2716	6	1.2736	1.2726
M33	2	1.4103	1.4078	4	1.3525	1.3515	6	1.3535	1.3525
	3	1.4931	1.4892	4	1.3907	1.3797	6	1.3917	1.3907
M36	2	1.5284	1.5259	4	1.4706	1.4696	6	1.4716	1.4706
	3	1.5841	1.5802	6	1.4971	1.4961	8	1.4981	1.4971
	4	1.6384	1.6345	6	1.5226	1.5216	8	1.5236	1.5226
M39	2	1.6465	1.6440	4	1.5887	1.5877	6	1.5897	1.5887
	3	1.7022	1.6983	6	1.6152	1.6142	8	1.6162	1.6152
	4	1.7565	1.7516	6	1.6407	1.6397	8	1.6417	1.6407

These taps are over the nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the normal size and pitch.

STI basic thread dimensions are determined by adding twice the single thread height ($2 \times 0.64952P$) to the basic dimensions of the nominal thread size.

Formulas for major and pitch diameters are presented in MIL-T-21309E.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 26b. Tap Thread Limits *ANSI/ASME B94.9-2008 (R2018)* **for Screw Thread Inserts (STI), Ground Thread, Metric Size (mm)**

Metric Size STI	Pitch, mm	Tap Major Diameter, mm		Tap Pitch Diameter Limits, mm					
				Tolerance Class 4H			Tolerance Classes 5H and 6H		
		Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.	H limit	Min.	Max.
M2.5	0.45	3.147	3.122	1	2.807	2.794	2	2.819	2.807
M3	0.5	3.716	3.691	1	3.338	3.325	2	3.350	3.338
M3.5	0.6	4.354	4.328	1	3.904	3.891	2	3.917	3.904
M4	0.7	5.006	4.966	2	4.481	4.468	3	4.493	4.481
M5	0.8	6.142	6.104	2	5.547	5.535	3	5.555	5.547
M6	1	7.422	7.381	2	6.678	6.665	3	6.690	6.678
M7	1	8.423	8.382	2	7.676	7.663	3	7.689	7.676
M8	1	9.423	9.383	2	8.677	8.664	3	8.689	8.677
	1.25	9.787	9.723	2	8.839	8.827	3	8.852	8.839
M10	1	11.422	11.382	2	10.676	10.663	3	10.688	10.676
	1	11.788	11.725	2	10.838	10.825	3	10.851	10.838
	1.25	12.131	12.068	3	11.013	11.001	4	11.026	11.013
M12	1.25	13.787	13.724	3	12.850	12.837	4	12.863	12.850
	1.5	14.133	14.069	3	13.012	13.000	4	13.025	13.012
	1.75	14.478	14.415	3	13.175	13.162	4	13.188	13.175
M14	1.5	16.132	16.068	3	15.014	15.001	4	15.027	15.014
	2	16.822	16.759	3	15.339	15.326	4	15.364	15.352
M16	1.5	18.133	18.070	3	17.013	17.000	4	17.026	17.013
	2	18.821	18.758	3	17.338	17.325	4	17.363	17.351
M18	1.5	20.132	20.069	3	19.012	18.999	4	19.025	19.012
	2	20.823	20.759	3	19.337	19.324	4	19.362	19.350
	2.5	21.514	21.450	3	19.662	19.649	4	19.688	19.675
M20	1.5	22.131	22.068	3	21.013	21.001	4	21.026	21.013
	2	22.822	22.758	3	21.339	21.326	4	21.364	21.351
	2.5	23.513	23.449	3	21.664	21.651	4	21.689	21.676
M22	1.5	24.130	24.067	3	23.012	23.000	4	23.025	23.012
	2	24.823	24.760	3	23.338	23.325	5	23.363	23.350
	2.5	25.512	25.448	3	23.663	23.650	5	23.688	23.675
M24	2	26.820	26.756	4	25.352	25.352	6	25.377	25.352
	3	28.237	28.132	4	25.999	25.974	6	26.025	25.999
M27	2	29.822	29.759	4	28.351	28.326	6	28.377	28.351
	3	31.237	31.138	4	28.999	28.974	6	29.025	28.999
M30	2	32.822	32.758	4	31.351	31.326	6	31.377	31.351
	3.5	34.925	34.826	4	32.324	32.299	6	32.349	32.324
M33	2	35.822	35.758	4	34.354	34.324	6	34.379	34.354
	3	37.925	37.826	4	35.324	35.298	6	35.349	35.324
M36	2	38.821	38.758	4	37.353	37.328	6	37.379	37.353
	3	40.236	40.137	6	38.026	38.001	8	38.052	38.026
	4	41.615	41.516	6	38.674	38.649	8	38.699	37.674
M39	2	41.821	41.758	4	40.353	40.328	6	40.378	40.353
	3	43.236	43.137	6	41.026	4 1.001	8	41.051	41.026
	4	44.615	44.516	6	41.674	41.648	8	41.699	41.674

These taps are over the nominal size to the extent that the internal thread they produce will accommodate a helical coil screw insert, which at final assembly will accept a screw thread of the normal size and pitch.

STI basic thread dimensions are determined by adding twice the single thread height ($2 \times 0.64952P$) to the basic dimensions of the nominal thread size.

Formulas for major and pitch diameters are presented in MIL-T-21309E.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Acme and Square-Threaded Taps

These taps are usually made in sets, three taps in a set being the most common. For very fine pitches, two taps in a set will be found sufficient, whereas as many as five taps in a set are used for coarse pitches. The table on the next page gives dimensions for proportioning both Acme and square-threaded taps when made in sets. In cutting the threads of square-threaded taps, one leading tap maker uses the following rules: The width of the groove between two threads is made equal to one-half the pitch of the thread, less 0.004 inch (0.102 mm), making the width of the thread itself equal to one-half of the pitch, plus 0.004 inch (0.102 mm). The depth of the thread is made equal to 0.45 times the pitch, plus 0.0025 inch (0.064 mm). This latter rule produces a thread that for all the ordinarily used pitches for square-threaded taps has a depth less than the generally accepted standard depth, this latter depth being equal to one-half the pitch. The object of this shallow thread is to ensure that if the hole to be threaded by the tap is not bored out so as to provide clearance at the bottom of the thread, the tap will cut its own clearance. The hole should, however, always be drilled out large enough so that the cutting of the clearance is not required of the tap.

The table, *Dimensions of Acme Threads Taps in Sets of Three Taps*, may also be used for the length dimensions for Acme taps. The dimensions in this table apply to single-threaded taps. For multiple-threaded taps or taps with very coarse pitch relative to the diameter, the length of the chamfered part of the thread may be increased. Square-threaded taps are made to the same table as Acme taps, with the exception of the figures in column *K*, which for square-threaded taps should be equal to the nominal diameter of the tap, no oversize allowance being customary in these taps. The first tap in a set of Acme taps (not square-threaded taps) should be turned to a taper at the bottom of the thread for a distance of about one-quarter of the length of the threaded part. The taper should be so selected that the root diameter is about $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.794 mm) smaller at the point than the proper root diameter of the tap. The first tap should preferably be provided with a short pilot at the point. For very coarse pitches, the first tap may be provided with spiral flutes at right angles to the angle of the thread. Acme and square-threaded taps should be relieved or backed off on the top of the thread of the chamfered portion on all the taps in the set. When the taps are used as machine taps, rather than as hand taps, they should be relieved in the angle of the thread, as well as on the top, for the whole length of the chamfered portion. Acme taps should also always be relieved on the front side of the thread to within $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.794 mm) of the cutting edge.

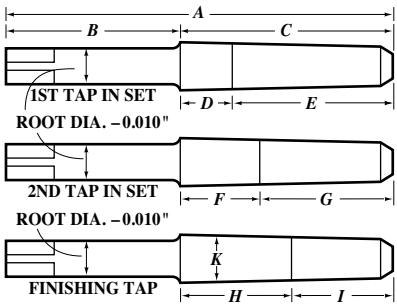
Adjustable Taps.—Many adjustable taps are now used, especially for accurate work. Some taps of this class are made of a solid piece of tool steel that is split and provided with means of expanding sufficiently to compensate for wear. Most of the larger adjustable taps have inserted blades or chasers that are held rigidly but are capable of radial adjustment. The use of taps of this general class enables standard sizes to be maintained readily.

Drill Hole Sizes for Acme Threads.—Many tap and die manufacturers and vendors make available to their customers computer programs designed to calculate drill hole sizes for all the Acme threads in their ranges from the basic dimensions. The large variety and combination of dimensions for such tools prevent inclusion of a complete set of tables of tap drills for Acme taps in this Handbook. The following formulas (dimensions in inches) for calculating drill hole sizes for Acme threads are derived from the American National Standard, ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014), Acme Screw Threads.

To select a tap drill size for an Acme thread, first calculate the maximum and minimum internal product minor diameters for the thread to be produced. (Dimensions for general purpose, centralizing, and stub Acme screw threads are given in the Threads and Threading section, starting on page 2054.) Then select a drill that will yield a finished hole somewhere between the established maximum and minimum product minor diameters. To reduce the amount of material to be removed when cutting the thread, consider staying close to the maximum product limit in selecting the hole size. If there is no standard drill size that matches the hole diameter selected, it may be necessary to drill and ream, or bore, the hole to size, to achieve the required hole diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 27. Dimensions of Acme Threads Taps in Sets of Three Taps



Nominal Dia.	*A*	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*	*I*	*K*
1/2	4 1/4	1 7/8	2 3/8	1/2	1 7/8	5/8	1 3/4	7/8	1 1/2	0.520
9/16	4 7/8	2 1/8	2 3/4	9/16	2 3/16	3/4	2	1	1 3/4	0.582
5/8	5 1/2	2 3/8	3 1/8	5/8	2 1/2	7/8	2 1/4	1 1/8	2	0.645
11/16	6	2 1/2	3 1/2	3 13/16	2 13/16	15/16	2 9/16	1 1/4	2 1/4	0.707
3/4	6 1/2	2 11/16	3 13/16	11/16	3 1/8	1	2 13/16	1 3/8	2 7/16	0.770
13/16	6 7/8	2 13/16	4 1/16	3/4	3 5/16	1 1/16	3	1 7/16	2 5/8	0.832
7/8	7 1/4	3	4 1/4	3/4	3 1/2	1 1/8	3 1/8	1 1/2	2 3/4	0.895
15/16	7 9/16	3 1/8	4 7/16	13/16	3 5/8	1 3/16	3 1/4	1 9/16	2 7/8	0.957
1	7 7/8	3 1/4	4 5/8	13/16	3 13/16	1 1/4	3 3/8	1 5/8	3	1.020
1 1/8	8 1/2	3 9/16	4 15/16	7/8	4 1/16	1 5/16	3 5/8	1 3/4	3 3/16	1.145
1 1/4	9	3 3/4	5 1/4	15/16	4 5/16	1 3/8	3 7/8	1 7/8	3 3/8	1.270
1 3/8	9 1/2	4	5 1/2	1	4 1/2	1 7/16	4 1/16	2	3 1/2	1.395
1 1/2	10	4 1/4	5 3/4	1	4 3/4	1 1/2	4 1/4	2 1/8	3 5/8	1.520
1 5/8	10 1/2	4 1/2	6	1	5	1 1/2	4 1/2	2 1/8	3 7/8	1.645
1 3/4	11	4 3/4	6 1/4	1 1/16	5 3/16	1 9/16	4 11/16	2 1/4	4	1.770
1 7/8	11 3/8	4 7/8	6 1/2	1 1/16	5 7/16	1 9/16	4 15/16	2 1/4	4 1/4	1.895
2	11 3/4	5	6 3/4	1 1/8	5 5/8	1 5/8	5 1/8	2 3/8	4 3/8	2.020
2 1/4	12 1/2	5 1/4	7 1/4	1 1/8	6 1/8	1 3/16	5 1/2	2 1/2	4 3/4	2.270
2 1/2	13 1/4	5 1/2	7 3/4	1 3/4	6 9/16	1 7/8	5 7/8	2 5/8	5 1/8	2.520
2 3/4	14	5 3/4	8 1/4	1 1/4	7	2	6 1/4	2 3/4	5 1/2	2.770
3	15	6 1/4	8 3/4	1 1/4	7 1/2	2	6 3/4	3	5 3/4	3.020

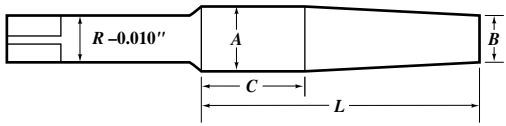
Diameters of General-Purpose Acme Screw Threads of Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G may be calculated from pitch = 1/number of threads per inch, and:

minimum diameter = basic major diameter − pitch

maximum diameter = minimum minor diameter + 0.05 × pitch

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 28. Proportions of Acme and Square-Threaded Taps Made in Sets



R **= root diameter of thread** ***D*** **= full diameter of tap**
T **= double depth of full thread**

Types of Tap	No. of Taps in Set	Order of Tap in Set	*A*	*B*	*C*
Acme Thread Taps	2	1st	$R + 0.65T$	$R + 0.010$	$\frac{1}{8}L$ to $\frac{1}{6}L$
		2d	D	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	3	1st	$R + 0.45T$	$R + 0.010$	$\frac{1}{8}L$ to $\frac{1}{6}L$
		2d	$R + 0.80T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$ to $\frac{1}{4}L$
		3d	D	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	4	1st	$R + 0.40T$	$R + 0.010$	$\frac{1}{8}L$
		2d	$R + 0.70T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$
		3d	$R + 0.90T$	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$
		4th	D	A on 3d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	5	1st	$R + 0.37T$	$R + 0.010$	$\frac{1}{8}L$
		2d	$R + 0.63T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$
		3d	$R + 0.82T$	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$
		4th	$R + 0.94T$	A on 3d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$ to $\frac{1}{4}L$
		5th	D	A on 4th tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
Square-Threaded Taps	2	1st	$R + 0.67T$	R	$\frac{1}{8}L$ to $\frac{1}{6}L$
		2d	D	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	3	1st	$R + 0.41T$	R	$\frac{1}{8}L$ to $\frac{1}{6}L$
		2d	$R + 0.080T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$ to $\frac{1}{4}L$
		3d	D	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	4	1st	$R + 0.32T$	R	$\frac{1}{8}L$
		2d	$R + 0.62T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$
		3d	$R + 0.90T$	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$
		4th	D	A on 3d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$
	5	1st	$R + 0.26T$	R	$\frac{1}{8}L$
		2d	$R + 0.50T$	A on 1st tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{6}L$
		3d	$R + 0.72T$	A on 2d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$
		4th	$R + 0.92T$	A on 3d tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{5}L$ to $\frac{1}{4}L$
		5th	D	A on 4th tap − 0.005	$\frac{1}{4}L$ to $\frac{1}{3}L$

Example: $\frac{1}{2}$-10 Acme 2G, pitch = 1/10 = 0.1
minimum diameter = 0.5 − 0.1 = 0.4

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

maximum diameter = 0.4 + (0.05 × 0.1) = 0.405

drill selected = letter X or 0.3970 + 0.0046 (probable oversize) = 0.4016

Diameters of Acme Centralizing Screw Threads of Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C may be calculated from pitch = 1/number of threads per inch, and:

minimum diameter = basic major diameter − 0.9 × pitch

maximum diameter = minimum minor diameter + 0.05 × pitch

Example: $\frac{1}{2}$-10 Acme 2C, pitch = 1/10 = 0.1

minimum diameter = 0.5 − (0.9 × 0.1) = 0.41

maximum diameter = 0.41 + (0.05 × 0.1) = 0.415

drill selected = $\frac{13}{32}$ or 0.4062 + 0.0046 (probable oversize) = 0.4108.

Diameters for Acme Centralizing Screw Threads of Classes 5C and 6C: These classes are not recommended for new designs, but may be calculated from:

minimum diameter = [basic major diameter − (0.025 √ basic major dia.)] − 0.9 × pitch

maximum diameter = minimum minor diameter + 0.05 × pitch

pitch = 1/number of threads per inch

Example: $\frac{1}{2}$-10 Acme 5C, pitch = 1/10 = 0.1

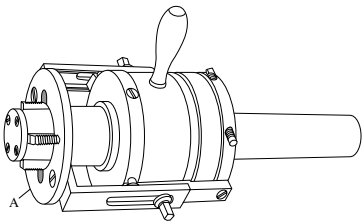
minimum diameter = [0.5 − (0.025 √ 0.5)] − (0.9 × 0.1) = 0.3923

maximum diameter = 0.3923 + (0.05 × 0.1) = 0.3973

drill selected = $\frac{25}{64}$ or 0.3906 + 0.0046 (probable oversize) = 0.3952

Tapping Square Threads.—If it is necessary to tap square threads, this should be done by using a set of taps that will form the thread by a progressive cutting action, the taps varying in size in order to distribute the work, especially for threads of comparatively coarse pitch. From three to five taps may be required in a set, depending upon the pitch. Each tap should have a pilot to steady it. The pilot of the first tap has a smooth cylindrical end from 0.003 to 0.005 inch (0.076-0.127 mm) smaller than the hole, and the pilots of following taps should have teeth.

Collapsible Taps.—The collapsing tap shown in the accompanying illustration is one of many different designs that are manufactured. These taps are often used in turret lathe practice in place of solid taps. When using this particular style of collapsing tap, the adjustable gage *A* is set for the length of thread required. When the tap has been fed to this depth, the gage comes into contact with the end of the work, which causes the chasers to collapse automatically. The tool is then withdrawn, after which the chasers are again expanded and locked in position by the handle seen at the side of the holder.



Collapsing Tap

Collapsible taps do not need to be backed out of the hole at the completion of the thread, reducing the tapping time and increasing production rates.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

STANDARD TAPERS

Certain types of small tools and machine parts, such as twist drills, end mills, arbors, lathe centers, etc., are provided with taper shanks which fit into spindles or sockets of corresponding taper, providing not only accurate alignment between the tool or other part and its supporting member, but also more or less frictional resistance for driving the tool. There are several standards for "self-holding" tapers, but the American National, the Morse, and the Brown & Sharpe are the standards most widely used by American manufacturers.

The name *self-holding* has been applied to the smaller tapers—like the Morse and the Brown & Sharpe—because, where the angle of the taper is only 2 or 3 degrees, the shank of a tool is so firmly seated in its socket that there is considerable frictional resistance to any force tending to turn or rotate the tool relative to the socket. The term "self-holding" is used to distinguish relatively small tapers from the larger or *self-releasing* type. A milling machine spindle having a taper of 3½ inches per foot is an example of a self-releasing taper. The included angle in this case is over 16 degrees and the tool or arbor requires a positive locking device to prevent slipping, but the shank may be released or removed more readily than one having a smaller taper of the self-holding type.

Tapers for Machine Tool Spindles.—Various standard tapers have been used for the taper holes in the spindles of machine tools, such as drilling machines, lathes, milling machines, or other types requiring a taper hole for receiving either the shank of a cutter, an arbor, a center, or any tool or accessory requiring a tapering seat. The Morse taper represents a generally accepted standard for drilling machines. See more on this subject, page 1024.

The headstock and tailstock spindles of lathes also have the Morse taper in most cases; but the Jarno, the Reed (which is the short Jarno), and the Brown & Sharpe have also been used. Milling machine spindles formerly had Brown & Sharpe tapers in most cases.

In 1927, the milling machine manufacturers of the National Machine Tool Builders' Association adopted a standard taper of 3½ inches per foot. This comparatively steep taper has the advantage of insuring instant release of arbors or adapters.

National Machine Tool Builders' Association Tapers

Taper Number[a]	Large End Diameter	Taper Number[a]	Large End Diameter
30	1¼	50	2¾
40	1¾	60	4¼

[a] Standard taper of 3½ inches per foot

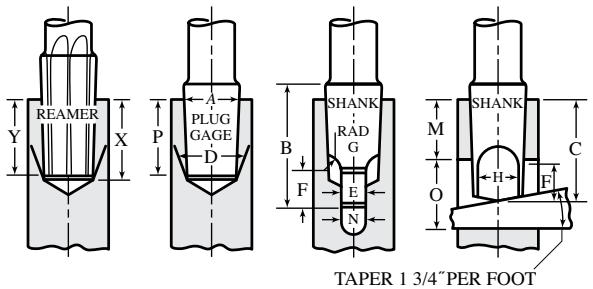
The British Standard for milling machine spindles is also 3½ inches taper per foot and includes these large end diameters: 1⅜ inches, 1¾ inches, 2¾ inches, and 3¼ inches.

Morse Taper.—Dimensions relating to Morse standard taper shanks and sockets may be found in an accompanying table. The taper for different numbers of Morse tapers is slightly different, but it is approximately ⅝ inch per foot in most cases. The table gives the actual tapers, accurate to five decimal places. Morse taper shanks are used on a variety of tools, and exclusively on the shanks of twist drills. Dimensions for *Morse Stub Taper Shanks* are given in Table 1a, and for *Morse Standard Taper Shanks* in Table 1b. Also see Table 8 and Table 9 on page 1022.

Brown & Sharpe Taper.—This standard taper is used for taper shanks on tools such as end mills and reamers, the taper being approximately ½ inch per foot for all sizes except for taper No. 10, where the taper is 0.5161 inch per foot. Brown & Sharpe taper sockets are used for many arbors, collets, and machine tool spindles, especially milling machines and grinding machines. In many cases there are a number of different lengths of sockets corresponding to the same number of taper; all these tapers, however, are of the same diameter at the small end. See Table 10, page 1023.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Morse Stub Taper Shanks



No. of Taper	Taper per Foot[a]	Taper per Inch[b]	Small End of Plug,[b] *D*	Dia. End of Socket,[a] *A*	Shank		Tang	
					Total Length, *B*	Depth, *C*	Thickness, *E*	Length, *F*
1	0.59858	0.049882	0.4314	0.475	1 5/16	1 1/8	13/64	5/16
2	0.59941	0.049951	0.6469	0.700	1 11/16	1 7/16	19/64	7/16
3	0.60235	0.050196	0.8753	0.938	2	1 3/4	25/64	9/16
4	0.62326	0.051938	1.1563	1.231	2 3/8	2 1/16	33/64	11/16
5	0.63151	0.052626	1.6526	1.748	3	2 11/16	3/4	15/16

No. of Taper	Tang		Socket				Tang Slot	
	Radius of Mill, *G*	Diameter, *H*	Plug Depth, *P*	Min. Depth of Tapered Hole: Drilled *X*	Min. Depth of Tapered Hole: Reamed *Y*	Socket End to Tang Slot, *M*	Width, *N*	Length, *O*
1	3/16	13/32	7/8	15/16	29/32	25/32	7/32	23/32
2	7/32	39/64	1 1/16	1 5/32	1 7/64	15/16	5/16	15/16
3	9/32	13/16	1 1/4	1 3/8	1 5/16	1 1/16	13/32	1 1/8
4	3/8	1 3/32	1 7/16	1 9/16	1 1/2	1 3/16	17/32	1 3/8
5	9/16	1 19/32	1 13/16	1 15/16	1 7/8	1 7/16	25/32	1 3/4

All dimensions in inches.
Radius *J* is 3/64, 1/16, 5/64, 3/32, and 1/8 inch respectively for Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 tapers.

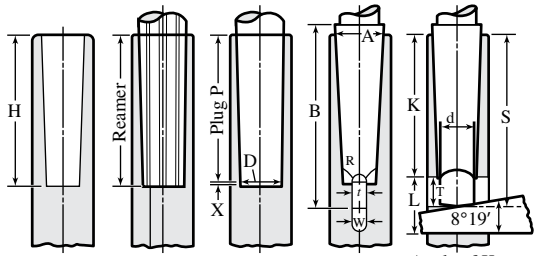
[a] These are basic dimensions.

[b] These dimensions are calculated for reference only.

Jarno Taper.—The Jarno taper was originally proposed by Oscar J. Beale of the Brown & Sharpe Mfg. Co. This taper is based on such simple formulas that practically no calculations are required when the number of taper is known. The taper per foot of all Jarno taper sizes is 0.600 inch on the diameter. The diameter at the large end is as many eighths, the diameter at the small end is as many tenths, and the length as many half inches as are indicated by the number of the taper. For example, a No. 7 Jarno taper is $\frac{7}{8}$ inch in diameter at the large end; $\frac{7}{10}$, or 0.700 inch at the small end; and $\frac{7}{2}$, or $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches long; hence, diameter at large end = No. of taper ÷ 8; diameter at small end = No. of taper ÷ 10; length of taper = No. of taper ÷ 2. The Jarno taper is used on various machine tools, especially profiling machines and die-sinking machines. It has also been used for the headstock and tailstock spindles of some lathes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Morse Standard Taper Shanks



No. of Taper	Taper per Foot	Taper per Inch	Small End of Plug *D*	Diameter End of Socket *A*	Shank		Depth of Hole *H*
					Length *B*	Depth *S*	
0	0.62460	0.05205	0.252	0.3561	2 11/32	2 7/32	2 1/32
1	0.59858	0.04988	0.369	0.475	2 9/16	2 7/16	2 5/32
2	0.59941	0.04995	0.572	0.700	3 1/8	2 15/16	2 39/64
3	0.60235	0.05019	0.778	0.938	3 7/8	3 11/16	3 1/4
4	0.62326	0.05193	1.020	1.231	4 7/8	4 5/8	4 1/8
5	0.63151	0.05262	1.475	1.748	6 1/8	5 7/8	5 1/4
6	0.62565	0.05213	2.116	2.494	8 9/16	8 1/4	7 21/64
7	0.62400	0.05200	2.750	3.270	11 5/8	11 1/4	10 5/64

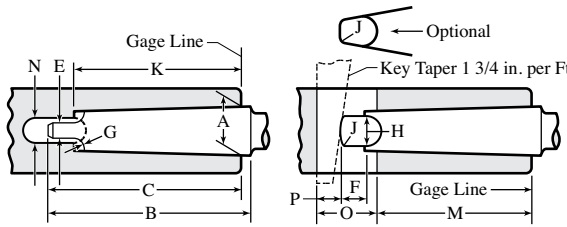
Plug Depth *P*	Tang or Tongue				Keyway		Keyway to End *K*
	Thickness *t*	Length *T*	Radius *R*	Dia. *d*	Width *W*	Length *L*	
2	0.1562	1/4	5/32	0.235	11/64	9/16	1 15/16
2 1/8	0.2031	3/8	3/16	0.343	0.218	3/4	2 1/16
2 9/16	0.2500	7/16	1/4	17/32	0.266	7/8	2 1/2
3 3/16	0.3125	9/16	9/32	23/32	0.328	1 3/16	3 1/16
4 1/16	0.4687	5/8	5/16	31/32	0.484	1 1/4	3 7/8
5 3/16	0.6250	3/4	3/8	1 13/32	0.656	1 1/2	4 15/16
7 1/4	0.7500	1 1/8	1/2	2	0.781	1 3/4	7
10	1.1250	1 3/8	3/4	2 5/8	1.156	2 5/8	9 1/2

Tolerances on rate of taper: all sizes 0.002 in. per foot. This tolerance may be applied on shanks only in the direction that increases the rate of taper, and on sockets only in the direction that decreases the rate of taper.

American National Standard Machine Tapers.—This standard includes a self-holding series (Table 2, Table 3, Table 4, Table 5 and Table 7a) and a steep taper series, Table 6. The self-holding taper series consists of 22 sizes, which are listed in Table 7a. The reference gage for the self-holding tapers is a plug gage. Table 7b gives the dimensions and tolerances for both plug and ring gages applying to this series. Table 2 through Table 5 inclusive give the dimensions for self-holding taper shanks and sockets, which are classified as to (1) means of transmitting torque from spindle to the tool shank, and (2) means of retaining the shank in the socket. The steep machine tapers consist of a preferred series (bold-face type, Table 6) and an intermediate series (light-face type). A self-holding taper is defined as "a taper with an angle small enough to hold a shank in place ordinarily by friction without holding means. (Sometimes referred to as slow taper.)" A steep taper is defined as "a taper having an angle sufficiently large to insure the easy or self-releasing feature." The term "gage line" indicates the basic diameter at or near the large end of the taper.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Taper Drive with Tang, Self-Holding Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



No. of Taper	Diameter at Gage Line (1) *A*	Shank		Tang			
		Total Length of Shank *B*	Gage Line to End of Shank *C*	Thickness *E*	Length *F*	Radius of Mill *G*	Diameter *H*
0.239	0.23922	1.28	1.19	0.125	0.19	0.19	0.18
0.299	0.29968	1.59	1.50	0.156	0.25	0.19	0.22
0.375	0.37525	1.97	1.88	0.188	0.31	0.19	0.28
1	0.47500	2.56	2.44	0.203	0.38	0.19	0.34
2	0.70000	3.13	2.94	0.250	0.44	0.25	0.53
3	0.93800	3.88	3.69	0.312	0.56	0.22	0.72
4	1.23100	4.88	4.63	0.469	0.63	0.31	0.97
4½	1.50000	5.38	5.13	0.562	0.69	0.38	1.20
5	1.74800	6.12	5.88	0.625	0.75	0.38	1.41
6	2.49400	8.25	8.25	0.750	1.13	0.50	2.00

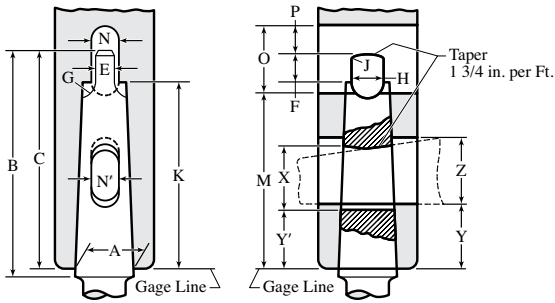
No. of Taper	Radius *J*	Socket			Tang Slot		
		Min. Depth of Hole *K*		Gage Line to Tang Slot *M*	Width *N*	Length *O*	Shank End to Back of Tang Slot *P*
		Drilled	Reamed				
0.239	0.03	1.06	1.00	0.94	0.141	0.38	0.13
0.299	0.03	1.31	1.25	1.17	0.172	0.50	0.17
0.375	0.05	1.63	1.56	1.47	0.203	0.63	0.22
1	0.05	2.19	2.16	2.06	0.218	0.75	0.38
2	0.06	2.66	2.61	2.50	0.266	0.88	0.44
3	0.08	3.31	3.25	3.06	0.328	1.19	0.56
4	0.09	4.19	4.13	3.88	0.484	1.25	0.50
4½	0.13	4.62	4.56	4.31	0.578	1.38	0.56
5	0.13	5.31	5.25	4.94	0.656	1.50	0.56
6	0.16	7.41	7.33	7.00	0.781	1.75	0.50

All dimensions are in inches. (1) See Table 7b for plug and ring gage dimensions.

Tolerances: For shank diameter *A* at gage line, +0.002, −0.000; for hole diameter *A*, +0.000, −0.002. For tang thickness *E* up to No. 5 inclusive, +0.000, −0.006; No. 6, +0.000, −0.008. For width *N* of tang slot up to No. 5 inclusive, +0.006, −0.000; No. 6, +0.008, −0.000. For centrality of tang *E* with center line of taper, 0.0025 (0.005 total indicator variation). These centrality tolerances also apply to the tang slot *N*. On rate of taper, all sizes 0.002 per foot. This tolerance may be applied on *shanks* only in the direction that *increases* the rate of taper and on *sockets* only in the direction that *decreases* the rate of taper. Tolerances for two-decimal dimensions are plus or minus 0.010, unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Taper Drive with Keeper Key Slot, Self-Holding Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



No. of Taper	Dia. at Gage Line (1) *A*	Shank		Tang					Socket		
		Total Length *B*	Gage Line to End *C*	Thickness *E*	Length *F*	Radius of Mill *G*	Diameter *H*	Radius *J*	Min. Depth of Hole *K*		Gage Line to Tang Slot *M*
									Drill	Ream	
3	0.938	3.88	3.69	0.312	0.56	0.28	0.78	0.08	3.31	3.25	3.06
4	1.231	4.88	4.63	0.469	0.63	0.31	0.97	0.09	4.19	4.13	3.88
4½	1.500	5.38	5.13	0.562	0.69	0.38	1.20	0.13	4.63	4.56	4.32
5	1.748	6.13	5.88	0.625	0.75	0.38	1.41	0.13	5.31	5.25	4.94
6	2.494	8.56	8.25	0.750	1.13	0.50	2.00	0.16	7.41	7.33	7.00
7	3.270	11.63	11.25	1.125	1.38	0.75	2.63	0.19	10.16	10.08	9.50

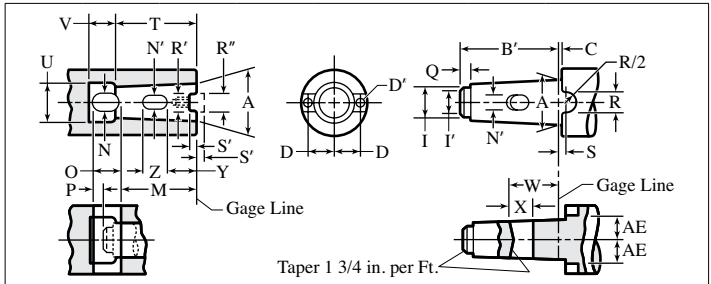
No. of Taper	Tang Slot			Keeper Slot in Shank			Keeper Slot in Socket		
	Width *N*	Length *O*	Shank End to Back of Slot *P*	Gage Line to Bottom of Slot *Y′*	Length *X*	Width *N′*	Gage Line to Front of Slot *Y*	Length *Z*	Width *N′*
3	0.328	1.19	0.56	1.03	1.13	0.266	1.13	1.19	0.266
4	0.484	1.25	0.50	1.41	1.19	0.391	1.50	1.25	0.391
4½	0.578	1.38	0.56	1.72	1.25	0.453	1.81	1.38	0.453
5	0.656	1.50	0.56	2.00	1.38	0.516	2.13	1.50	0.516
6	0.781	1.75	0.50	2.13	1.63	0.641	2.25	1.75	0.641
7	1.156	2.63	0.88	2.50	1.69	0.766	2.63	1.81	0.766

All dimensions are in inches. (1) See Table 7b for plug and ring gage dimensions.

Tolerances: For shank diameter *A* at gage line, +0.002, −0; for hole diameter *A*, +0, −0.002. For tang thickness *E* up to No. 5 inclusive, +0, −0.006; larger than No. 5, +0, −0.008. For width of slots *N* and *N′* up to No. 5 inclusive, +0.006, −0; larger than No. 5, +0.008, −0. For centrality of tang *E* with center line of taper 0.0025 (0.005 total indicator variation). These centrality tolerances also apply to slots *N* and *N′*. On rate of taper, see footnote in Table 2. Tolerances for two-decimal dimensions are ±0.010 unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Nose Key Drive with Keeper Key Slot, Self-Holding Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



Taper	*A*(1)	*B′*	*C*	*Q*	*I′*	*I*	*R*	*S*
200	2.000	5.13		0.25	1.38	1.63	1.010	0.562
250	2.500	5.88		0.25	1.38	2.06	1.010	0.562
300	3.000	6.63		0.25	1.63	2.50	2.010	0.562
350	3.500	7.44	Min. 0.003	0.31	2.00	2.94	2.010	0.562
400	4.000	8.19	Max. 0.035	0.31	2.13	3.31	2.010	0.562
450	4.500	9.00	for	0.38	2.38	3.81	3.010	0.812
500	5.000	9.75	all	0.38	2.50	4.25	3.010	0.812
600	6.000	11.31	sizes	0.44	3.00	5.19	3.010	0.812
800	8.000	14.38		0.50	3.50	7.00	4.010	1.062
1000	10.000	17.44		0.63	4.50	8.75	4.010	1.062
1200	12.000	20.50		0.75	5.38	10.50	4.010	1.062

Taper	*D*	*D*[a]	*W*	*X*	*N′*	*R′*	*S′*	*T*
200	1.41	0.375	3.44	1.56	0.656	1.000	0.50	4.75
250	1.66	0.375	3.69	1.56	0.781	1.000	0.50	5.50
300	2.25	0.375	4.06	1.56	1.031	2.000	0.50	6.25
350	2.50	0.375	4.88	2.00	1.031	2.000	0.50	6.94
400	2.75	0.375	5.31	2.25	1.031	2.000	0.50	7.69
450	3.00	0.500	5.88	2.44	1.031	3.000	0.75	8.38
500	3.25	0.500	6.44	2.63	1.031	3.000	0.75	9.13
600	3.75	0.500	7.44	3.00	1.281	3.000	0.75	10.56
800	4.75	0.500	9.56	4.00	1.781	4.000	1.00	13.50
1000	…	…	11.50	4.75	2.031	4.000	1.00	16.31
1200	…	…	13.75	5.75	2.031	4.000	1.00	19.00

Taper	*U*	*V*	*M*	*N*	*O*	*P*	*Y*	*Z*
200	1.81	1.00	4.50	0.656	1.56	0.94	2.00	1.69
250	2.25	1.00	5.19	0.781	1.94	1.25	2.25	1.69
300	2.75	1.00	5.94	1.031	2.19	1.50	2.63	1.69
350	3.19	1.25	6.75	1.031	2.19	1.50	3.00	2.13
400	3.63	1.25	7.50	1.031	2.19	1.50	3.25	2.38
450	4.19	1.50	8.00	1.031	2.75	1.75	3.63	2.56
500	4.63	1.50	8.75	1.031	2.75	1.75	4.00	2.75
600	5.50	1.75	10.13	1.281	3.25	2.06	4.63	3.25
800	7.38	2.00	12.88	1.781	4.25	2.75	5.75	4.25
1000	9.19	2.50	15.75	2.031	5.00	3.31	7.00	5.00
1200	11.00	3.00	18.50	2.531	6.00	4.00	8.25	6.00

[a] Thread is UNF-2B for hole; UNF-2A for screw. (1) See Table 7b for plug and ring gage dimensions.

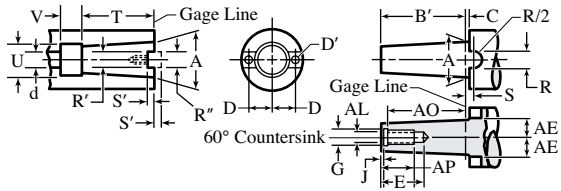
All dimensions are in inches. *AE* is 0.005 greater than one-half of *A*.

Width of drive key *R″* is 0.001 less than width *R″* of keyway.

Tolerances: For diameter *A* of hole at gage line, +0, −0.002; for diameter *A* of shank at gage line, +0.002, −0; for width of slots *N* and *N′*, +0.008, −0; for width of drive keyway *R′* in socket, +0, −0.001; for width of drive keyway *R* in shank, 0.010, −0; for centrality of slots *N* and *N′* with center line of spindle, 0.007; for centrality of keyway with spindle center line: for *R*, 0.004 and for *R′*, 0.002 T.I.V. On rate of taper, see footnote in Table 2. Two-decimal dimensions, ±0.010 unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Nose Key Drive with Drawbolt, Self-Holding Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



Sockets											
		Drive Key			Drive Keyway					
		Screw Holes								
No. of Taper	Dia. at Gage Line *A*[a]	Center Line to Center of Screw *D*	UNF 2B Hole UNF 2A Screw *D′*	Width *R″*	Width *R′*	Depth *S′*	Gage Line to Front of Relief *T*	Dia. of Relief *U*	Depth of Relief *V*	Dia. of Draw Bolt Hole *d*
200	2.000	1.41	0.38	0.999	1.000	0.50	4.75	1.81	1.00	1.00
250	2.500	1.66	0.38	0.999	1.000	0.50	5.50	2.25	1.00	1.00
300	3.000	2.25	0.38	1.999	2.000	0.50	6.25	2.75	1.00	1.13
350	3.500	2.50	0.38	1.999	2.000	0.50	6.94	3.19	1.25	1.13
400	4.000	2.75	0.38	1.999	2.000	0.50	7.69	3.63	1.25	1.63
450	4.500	3.00	0.50	2.999	3.000	0.75	8.38	4.19	1.50	1.63
500	5.000	3.25	0.50	2.999	3.000	0.75	9.13	4.63	1.50	1.63
600	6.000	3.75	0.50	2.999	3.000	0.75	10.56	5.50	1.75	2.25
800	8.000	4.75	0.50	3.999	4.000	1.00	13.50	7.38	2.00	2.25
1000	10.000	…	…	3.999	4.000	1.00	16.31	9.19	2.50	2.25
1200	12.000	…	…	3.999	4.000	1.00	19.00	11.00	3.00	2.25

[a] See Table 7b for plug and ring gage dimensions.

Shanks										
		Drawbar Hole						Drive Keyway		
No. of Taper	Length from Gage Line B[c]	Dia. UNC-2B *AL*	Depth of Drilled Hole *E*	Depth of Thread *AP*	Dia. of Counter Bore *G*	Gage Line to First Thread *AO*	Depth of 60° Chamfer *J*	Width *R*	Depth *S*	Center Line to Bottom of Keyway *AE*
200	5.13	⅞-9	2.44	1.75	0.91	4.78	0.13	1.010	0.562	1.005
250	5.88	⅞-9	2.44	1.75	0.91	5.53	0.13	1.010	0.562	1.255
300	6.63	1-8	2.75	2.00	1.03	6.19	0.19	2.010	0.562	1.505
350	7.44	1-8	2.75	2.00	1.03	7.00	0.19	2.010	0.562	1.755
400	8.19	1½-6	4.00	3.00	1.53	7.50	0.31	2.010	0.562	2.005
450	9.00	1½-6	4.00	3.00	1.53	8.31	0.31	3.010	0.812	2.255
500	9.75	1½-6	4.00	3.00	1.53	9.06	0.31	3.010	0.812	2.505
600	11.31	2-4½	5.31	4.00	2.03	10.38	0.50	3.010	0.812	3.005
800	14.38	2-4½	5.31	4.00	2.03	13.44	0.50	4.010	1.062	4.005
1000	17.44	2-4½	5.31	4.00	2.03	16.50	0.50	4.010	1.062	5.005
1200	20.50	2-4½	5.31	4.00	2.03	19.56	0.50	4.010	1.062	6.005

All dimensions in inches.

Exposed length *C* is 0.003 minimum and 0.035 maximum for all sizes.

Drive Key *D′* screw sizes are ⅜-24 UNF-2A up to taper No. 400 inclusive and ½-20 UNF-2A for larger tapers.

Tolerances: For diameter *A* of hole at gage line, +0.000, −0.002 for all sizes; for diameter *A* of shank at gage line, +0.002, −0.000; for all sizes; for width of drive keyway *R′* in socket, +0.000, −0.001; for width of drive keyway *R* in shank, +0.010, −0.000; for centrality of drive keyway *R′*, with center line of shank, 0.004 total indicator variation, and for drive keyway *R′*, with center line of spindle, 0.002. On rate of taper, see footnote in Table 2. Tolerances for two-decimal dimensions are ±0.010 unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. ANSI Standard Steep Machine Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*

No. of Taper	Taper per Foot[a]	Dia. at Gage Line[b]	Length Along Axis	No. of Taper	Taper per Foot[a]	Dia.at Gage Line[b]	Length Along Axis
5	3.500	0.500	0.6875	35	3.500	1.500	2.2500
10	**3.500**	**0.625**	**0.8750**	**40**	**3.500**	**1.750**	**2.5625**
15	3.500	0.750	1.0625	45	3.500	2.250	3.3125
20	**3.500**	**0.875**	**1.3125**	**50**	**3.500**	**2.750**	**4.0000**
25	3.500	1.000	1.5625	55	3.500	3.500	5.1875
30	**3.500**	**1.250**	**1.8750**	**60**	**3.500**	**4.250**	**6.3750**

[a] This taper corresponds to an included angle of 16°, 35′, 39.4″.
[b] The basic diameter at gage line is at large end of taper.
All dimensions given in inches.
The tapers numbered 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, and 60 that are printed in heavy-faced type are designated as the "Preferred Series." The tapers numbered 5, 15, 25, 35, 45, and 55 that are printed in light-faced type are designated as the "Intermediate Series."

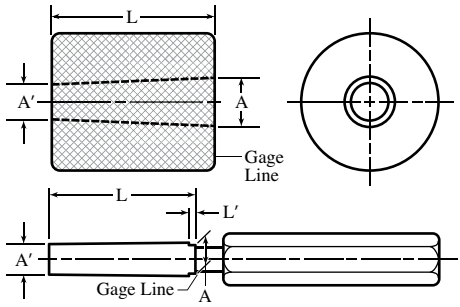
Table 7a. American National Standard Self-holding Tapers — Basic Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*

No. of Taper	Taper per Foot	Dia. at Gage Line[a] *A*	Means of Driving and Holding[a]	Origin of Series
.239	0.50200	0.23922	Tang Drive With Shank Held in by Friction (See Table 2)	Brown & Sharpe Taper Series
.299	0.50200	0.29968		
.375	0.50200	0.37525		
1	0.59858	0.47500		Morse Taper Series
2	0.59941	0.70000		
3	0.60235	0.93800		
4	0.62326	1.23100		
4½	0.62400	1.50000	Tang Drive With Shank Held in by Key (See Table 3)	
5	0.63151	1.74800		
6	0.62565	2.49400		
7	0.62400	3.27000		
200	0.750	2.000	Key Drive With Shank Held in by Key (See Table 4)	¾ Inch per Foot Taper Series
250	0.750	2.500		
300	0.750	3.000		
350	0.750	3.500		
400	0.750	4.000		
450	0.750	4.500		
500	0.750	5.000	Key Drive With Shank Held in by Draw-bolt (See Table 5)	
600	0.750	6.000		
800	0.750	8.000		
1000	0.750	10.000		
1200	0.750	12.000		

[a] See illustrations above Table 2 through Table 5.
All dimensions given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7b. American National Standard Plug and Ring Gages for the Self-Holding Taper Series *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



No. of Taper	Taper[a] per Foot	Diameter[a] at Gage Line *A*	Tolerances for Diameter *A*[b]			Diameter at Small End *A′*	Length Gage Line to End *L*	Depth of Gaging-Notch, Plug Gage *L′*
			Class X Gage	Class Y Gage	Class Z Gage			
0.239	0.50200	0.23922	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.20000	0.94	0.048
0.299	0.50200	0.29968	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.25000	1.19	0.048
0.375	0.50200	0.37525	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.31250	1.50	0.048
1	0.59858	0.47500	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.36900	2.13	0.040
2	0.59941	0.70000	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.57200	2.56	0.040
3	0.60235	0.93800	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	0.77800	3.19	0.040
4	0.62326	1.23100	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	1.02000	4.06	0.038
4½	0.62400	1.50000	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	1.26600	4.50	0.038
5	0.63151	1.74800	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	1.47500	5.19	0.038
6	0.62565	2.49400	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	2.11600	7.25	0.038
7	0.62400	3.27000	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	2.75000	10.00	0.038
200	0.75000	2.00000	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	1.703	4.75	0.032
250	0.75000	2.50000	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	2.156	5.50	0.032
300	0.75000	3.00000	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	2.609	6.25	0.032
350	0.75000	3.50000	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	3.063	7.00	0.032
400	0.75000	4.00000	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	3.516	7.75	0.032
450	0.75000	4.50000	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	3.969	8.50	0.032
500	0.75000	5.00000	0.00013	0.00019	0.00025	4.422	9.25	0.032
600	0.75000	6.00000	0.00013	0.00019	0.00025	5.328	10.75	0.032
800	0.75000	8.00000	0.00016	0.00024	0.00032	7.141	13.75	0.032
1000	0.75000	10.00000	0.00020	0.00030	0.00040	8.953	16.75	0.032
1200	0.75000	12.00000	0.00020	0.00030	0.00040	10.766	19.75	0.032

[a] The taper per foot and diameter *A* at gage line are basic dimensions. Dimensions in Column *A′* are calculated for reference only.

[b] Tolerances for diameter A are plus for plug gages and minus for ring gages.

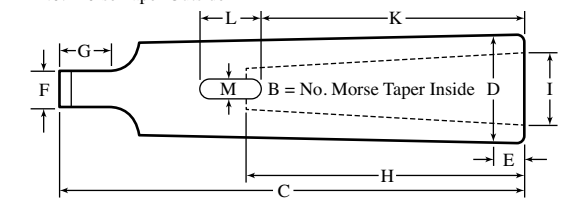
All dimensions are in inches.

The amount of taper deviation for Class X, Class Y, and Class Z gages are the same, respectively, as the amounts shown for tolerances on diameter *A*. Taper deviation is the permissible allowance from true taper at any point of diameter in the length of the gage. On taper *plug* gages, this deviation may be applied only in the direction that *decreases* the rate of taper. On taper *ring* gages, this deviation may be applied only in the direction that *increases* the rate of taper. Tolerances on two-decimal dimensions are ±0.010.

British Standard Tapers.—British Standard 1660: 1972, "Machine Tapers, Reduction Sleeves, and Extension Sockets," contains dimensions for self-holding and self-releasing tapers, reduction sleeves, extension sockets, and turret sockets for tools having Morse and metric 5 percent taper shanks. Adapters for use with $^{7}/_{24}$ tapers and dimensions for spindle noses and tool shanks with self-release tapers and cotter slots are included in this Standard.

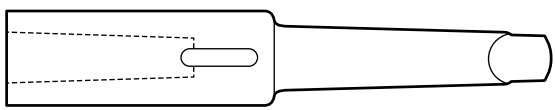
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Dimensions of Morse Taper Sleeves



A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*	*I*	*K*	*L*	*M*
2	1	3 9/16	0.700	5/8	1/4	7/16	2 3/16	0.475	2 1/16	3/4	0.213
3	1	3 15/16	0.938	1/4	5/16	9/16	2 3/16	0.475	2 1/16	3/4	0.213
3	2	4 7/16	0.938	3/4	5/16	9/16	2 5/8	0.700	2 1/2	7/8	0.260
4	1	4 7/8	1.231	1/4	15/32	5/8	2 3/16	0.475	2 1/16	3/4	0.213
4	2	4 7/8	1.231	1/4	15/32	5/8	2 5/8	0.700	2 1/2	7/8	0.260
4	3	5 3/8	1.231	3/4	15/32	5/8	3 1/4	0.938	3 1/16	1 3/16	0.322
5	1	6 1/8	1.748	1/4	5/8	3/4	2 3/16	0.475	2 1/16	3/4	0.213
5	2	6 1/8	1.748	1/4	5/8	3/4	2 5/8	0.700	2 1/2	7/8	0.260
5	3	6 1/8	1.748	1/4	5/8	3/4	3 1/4	0.938	3 1/16	1 3/16	0.322
5	4	6 5/8	1.748	3/4	5/8	3/4	4 1/8	1.231	3 7/8	1 1/4	0.478
6	1	8 5/8	2.494	3/8	3/4	1 1/8	2 3/16	0.475	2 1/16	3/4	0.213
6	2	8 5/8	2.494	3/8	3/4	1 1/8	2 5/8	0.700	2 1/2	7/8	0.260
6	3	8 5/8	2.494	3/8	3/4	1 1/8	3 1/4	0.938	3 1/16	1 3/16	0.322
6	4	8 5/8	2.494	3/8	3/4	1 1/8	4 1/8	1.231	3 7/8	1 1/4	0.478
6	5	8 5/8	2.494	3/8	3/4	1 1/8	5 1/4	1.748	4 15/16	1 1/2	0.635
7	3	11 5/8	3.270	3/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	3 1/4	0.938	3 1/16	1 3/16	0.322
7	4	11 5/8	3.270	3/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	4 1/8	1.231	3 7/8	1 1/4	0.478
7	5	11 5/8	3.270	3/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	5 1/4	1.748	4 15/16	1 1/2	0.635
7	6	12 1/2	3.270	1 1/4	1 1/8	1 3/8	7 3/8	2.494	7	1 3/4	0.760

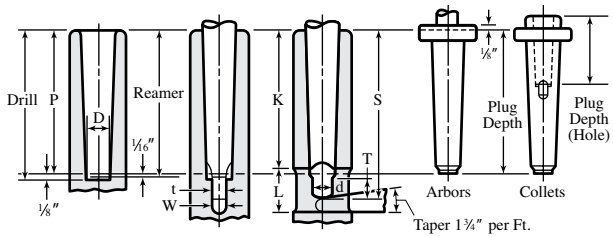
Table 9. Morse Taper Sockets — Hole and Shank Sizes



	Morse Taper			Morse Taper			Morse Taper	
Size	Hole	Shank	Size	Hole	Shank	Size	Hole	Shank
1 by 2	No. 1	No. 2	2 by 5	No. 2	No. 5	4 by 4	No. 4	No. 4
1 by 3	No. 1	No. 3	3 by 2	No. 3	No. 2	4 by 5	No. 4	No. 5
1 by 4	No. 1	No. 4	3 by 3	No. 3	No. 3	4 by 6	No. 4	No. 6
1 by 5	No. 1	No. 5	3 by 4	No. 3	No. 4	5 by 4	No. 5	No. 4
2 by 3	No. 2	No. 3	3 by 5	No. 3	No. 5	5 by 5	No. 5	No. 5
2 by 4	No. 2	No. 4	4 by 3	No. 4	No. 3	5 by 6	No. 5	No. 6

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Brown & Sharpe Taper Shanks

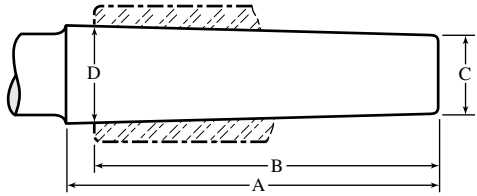


Number of Taper	Taper per Foot (inch)	Dia. of Plug at Small End D	Plug Depth, *P* B & S[b] Standard	Plug Depth, *P* Mill. Mach. Standard	Plug Depth, *P* Miscell.	Keyway from End of Spindle K	Shank Depth S	Length of Keyway[a] L	Width of Keyway W	Length of Arbor Tongue T	Diameter of Arbor Tongue d	Thickness of Arbor Tongue t
1[c]	.50200	.20000	15/16	…	…	15/16	1 3/16	3/8	.135	3/16	.170	1/8
2[c]	.50200	.25000	1 3/16	…	…	1 11/64	1 1/2	1/2	.166	1/4	.220	5/32
3[c]	.50200	.31250	1 1/2	…	…	1 15/32	1 7/8	5/8	.197	5/16	.282	3/16
			…	…	1 3/4	1 23/32	2 1/8	5/8	.197	5/16	.282	3/16
			…	…	2	1 31/32	2 3/8	5/8	.197	5/16	.282	3/16
4	.50240	.35000	…	1 1/4	…	1 13/64	2 1/32	11/16	.228	11/32	.320	7/32
			1 11/16	…	…	1 41/64	2 3/32	11/16	.228	11/32	.320	7/32
5	.50160	.45000	…	1 3/4	…	1 11/16	2 1/16	3/4	.260	3/8	.420	1/4
			…	…	2	1 15/16	2 7/16	3/4	.260	3/8	.420	1/4
			2 1/8	…	…	2 1/16	2 9/16	3/4	.260	3/8	.420	1/4
6	.50329	.50000	2 3/8	…	…	2 19/64	2 7/8	7/8	.291	7/16	.460	9/32
7	.50147	.60000	…	…	2 1/2	2 13/32	3 1/32	15/16	.322	15/32	.560	5/16
			2 7/8	…	…	2 25/32	3 13/32	15/16	.322	15/32	.560	5/16
			…	3	…	2 29/32	3 17/32	15/16	.322	15/32	.560	5/16
8	.50100	.75000	3 9/16	…	…	3 29/64	4 1/8	1	.353	1/2	.710	11/32
9	.50085	.90010	…	4	…	3 7/8	4 5/8	1 1/8	.385	9/16	.860	3/8
			4 1/4	…	…	4 1/8	4 7/8	1 1/8	.385	9/16	.860	3/8
10	.51612	1.04465	5	…	…	4 27/32	5 23/32	1 5/16	.447	21/32	1.010	7/16
			…	5 11/16	…	5 17/32	6 13/32	1 5/16	.447	21/32	1.010	7/16
			…	…	6 7/32	6 1/16	6 15/16	1 5/16	.447	21/32	1.010	7/16
11	.50100	1.24995	5 15/16	…	…	5 25/32	6 21/32	1 5/16	.447	21/32	1.210	7/16
			…	6 3/4	…	6 19/32	7 15/32	1 5/16	.447	21/32	1.210	7/16
12	.49973	1.50010	7 1/8	7 1/8	…	6 15/16	7 13/16	1 1/2	.510	3/4	1.460	1/2
			…	…	6 1/4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
13	.50020	1.75005	7 3/4	…	…	7 9/16	8 9/16	1 1/2	.510	3/4	1.710	1/2
14	.50000	2.00000	8 1/4	8 1/4	…	8 1/32	9 5/32	1 11/16	.572	27/32	1.960	9/16
15	.5000	2.25000	8 3/4	…	…	8 17/32	9 21/32	1 11/16	.572	27/32	2.210	9/16
16	.50000	2.50000	9 1/4	…	…	9	10 1/4	1 7/8	.635	15/16	2.450	5/8
17	.50000	2.75000	9 3/4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
18	.50000	3.00000	10 1/4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Special lengths of keyway are used instead of standard lengths in some places. Standard lengths need not be used when keyway is for driving only and not for admitting key to force out tool.
[b] "B & S Standard" Plug Depths are not used in all cases.
[c] Adopted by American Standards Association.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Jarno Taper Shanks



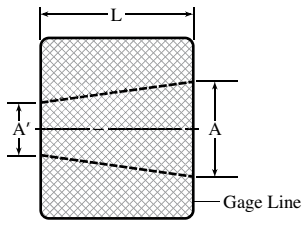
$$D = \frac{\text{No. of Taper}}{8} \qquad C = \frac{\text{No. of Taper}}{10} \qquad B = \frac{\text{No. of Taper}}{2}$$

Number of Taper	Length *A*	Length *B*	Diameter *C*	Diameter *D*	Taper per foot
2	1 1/8	1	0.20	0.250	0.600
3	1 5/8	1 1/2	0.30	0.375	0.600
4	2 3/16	2	0.40	0.500	0.600
5	2 11/16	2 1/2	0.50	0.625	0.600
6	3 3/16	3	0.60	0.750	0.600
7	3 11/16	3 1/2	0.70	0.875	0.600
8	4 3/16	4	0.80	1.000	0.600
9	4 11/16	4 1/2	0.90	1.125	0.600
10	5 1/4	5	1.00	1.250	0.600
11	5 3/4	5 1/2	1.10	1.375	0.600
12	6 1/4	6	1.20	1.500	0.600
13	6 3/4	6 1/2	1.30	1.625	0.600
14	7 1/4	7	1.40	1.750	0.600
15	7 3/4	7 1/2	1.50	1.875	0.600
16	8 5/16	8	1.60	2.000	0.600
17	8 13/16	8 1/2	1.70	2.125	0.600
18	9 5/16	9	1.80	2.250	0.600
19	9 13/16	9 1/2	1.90	2.375	0.600
20	10 5/16	10	2.00	2.500	0.600

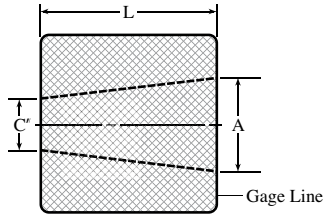
Tapers for Machine Tool Spindles.—Most lathe spindles have Morse tapers, most milling machine spindles have American Standard tapers, almost all smaller milling machine spindles have R8 tapers, page 1033, and large vertical milling machine spindles have American Standard tapers. The spindles of drilling machines and the taper shanks of twist drills are made to fit the Morse taper. For lathes, the Morse taper is generally used, but lathes may have the Jarno, the Brown & Sharpe, or a special taper. Of 33 lathe manufacturers, 20 use the Morse taper; 5, the Jarno; 3 use special tapers of their own; 2 use modified Morse (longer than the standard but the same taper); 2 use Reed (which is a short Jarno); 1 uses the Brown & Sharpe standard. For grinding machine centers, Jarno, Morse, and Brown & Sharpe tapers are used. Of ten grinding machine manufacturers, 3 use Brown & Sharpe; 3 use Morse; and 4 use Jarno. The Brown & Sharpe taper is used extensively for milling machine and dividing head spindles. The standard milling machine spindle adopted in 1927 by the milling machine manufacturers of the National Machine Tool Builders' Association (now The Association for Manufacturing Technology [AMT]) has a taper of $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches per foot. This comparatively steep taper was adopted to ensure easy release of arbors.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

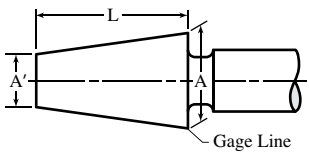
Table 12. American National Standard Plug and Ring Gages for Steep Machine Tapers *ANSI/ASME B5.10-1994 (R2013)*



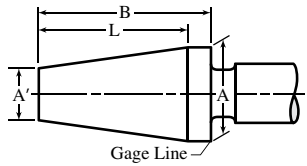
Class X Type Gage



Class Y & Z Type Gage



Class X Type Gage



Class Y & Z Type Gage

No. of Taper	Taper per Foot[a] (Basic)	Diameter at Gage Line[a] *A*	Tolerances for Diameter A[b]			Diameter at Small End[a] *A′*	Length Gage Line to Small End *L*	Overall Length of Gage Body *B*	Dia. of Opening *C*
			Class X Gage	Class Y Gage	Class Z Gage				
5	3.500	0.500	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.2995	0.6875	0.81	0.30
10	3.500	0.625	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.3698	0.8750	1.00	0.36
15	3.500	0.750	0.00004	0.00007	0.00010	0.4401	1.0625	1.25	0.44
20	3.500	0.875	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	0.4922	1.3125	1.50	0.48
25	3.500	1.000	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	0.5443	1.5625	1.75	0.53
30	3.500	1.250	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	0.7031	1.8750	2.06	0.70
35	3.500	1.500	0.00006	0.00009	0.00012	0.8438	2.2500	2.44	0.84
40	3.500	1.750	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	1.0026	2.5625	2.75	1.00
45	3.500	2.250	0.00008	0.00012	0.00016	1.2839	3.3125	3.50	1.00
50	3.500	2.750	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	1.5833	4.0000	4.25	1.00
55	3.500	3.500	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	1.9870	5.1875	5.50	1.00
60	3.500	4.250	0.00010	0.00015	0.00020	2.3906	6.3750	6.75	2.00

[a] The taper per foot and diameter *A* at gage line are basic dimensions. Dimensions in Column *A′* are calculated for reference only.

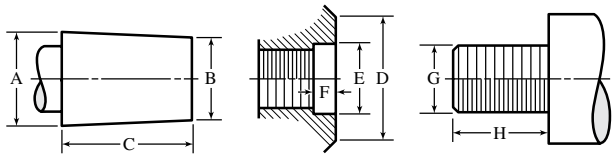
[b] Tolerances for diameter *A* are plus for plug gages and minus for ring gages.

All dimensions are in inches.

The amounts of taper deviation for Class X, Class Y, and Class Z gages are the same, respectively, as the amounts shown for tolerances on diameter *A*. Taper deviation is the permissible allowance from true taper at any point of diameter in the length of the gage. On taper *plug* gages, this deviation may be applied only in the direction that *decreases* the rate of taper. On taper *ring* gages, this deviation may be applied only in the direction that *increases* the rate of taper. Tolerances on two-decimal dimensions are ±0.010.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Jacobs Tapers and Threads for Drill Chucks and Spindles



American Standard Thread Form

Taper Series	*A*	*B*	*C*	Taper per Ft.	Taper Series	*A*	*B*	*C*	Taper per Ft.
No. 0	0.2500	0.22844	0.43750	0.59145	No. 4	1.1240	1.0372	1.6563	0.62886
No. 1	0.3840	0.33341	0.65625	0.92508	No. 5	1.4130	1.3161	1.8750	0.62010
No. 2	0.5590	0.48764	0.87500	0.97861	No. 6	0.6760	0.6241	1.0000	0.62292
No. 2[a]	0.5488	0.48764	0.75000	0.97861	No. 33	0.6240	0.5605	1.0000	0.76194
No. 3	0.8110	0.74610	1.21875	0.63898	…	…	…	…	…

[a] These dimensions are for the No. 2 "short" taper.

Thread Size	Diameter *D*		Diameter *E*		Dimension *F*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
5/16-24	0.531	0.516	0.3245	0.3195	0.135	0.115
5/16-24	0.633	0.618	0.3245	0.3195	0.135	0.115
3/8-24	0.633	0.618	0.385	0.380	0.135	0.115
1/2-20	0.860	0.845	0.510	0.505	0.135	0.115
5/8-11	1.125	1.110	0.635	0.630	0.166	0.146
5/8-16	1.125	1.110	0.635	0.630	0.166	0.146
45/64-16	1.250	1.235	0.713	0.708	0.166	0.146
3/4-16	1.250	1.235	0.760	0.755	0.166	0.146
1-8	1.437	1.422	1.036	1.026	0.281	0.250
1-10	1.437	1.422	1.036	1.026	0.281	0.250
1 1/2-8	1.871	1.851	1.536	1.526	0.343	0.312

Thread[a] Size	*G*		*H*[b]	Plug Gage Pitch Dia.		Ring Gage Pitch Dia.	
	Max.	Min.		Go	Not Go	Go	Not Go
5/16-24	0.3114	0.3042	0.437[c]	0.2854	0.2902	0.2843	0.2806
3/8-24	0.3739	0.3667	0.562[d]	0.3479	0.3528	0.3468	0.3430
1/2-20	0.4987	0.4906	0.562	0.4675	0.4731	0.4662	0.4619
5/8-11	0.6234	0.6113	0.687	0.5660	0.5732	0.5644	0.5589
5/8-16	0.6236	0.6142	0.687	0.5844	0.5906	0.5830	0.5782
45/64-16	0.7016	0.6922	0.687	0.6625	0.6687	0.6610	0.6561
3/4-16	0.7485	0.7391	0.687	0.7094	0.7159	0.7079	0.7029
1-8	1.000	0.9848	1.000	0.9188	0.9242	0.9188	0.9134
1-10	1.000	0.9872	1.000	0.9350	0.9395	0.9350	0.9305
1 1/2-8	1.500	1.4848	1.000	1.4188	1.4242	1.4188	1.4134

[a] Except for 1-8, 1-10, 1 1/2-8, all threads are now manufactured to the American National Standard Unified Screw Thread System, Internal Class 2B, External Class 2A. Effective date 1976.

[b] Tolerances for dimension *H* are as follows: 0.030 inch for thread sizes 5/16-24 to 3/4-16, inclusive, and 0.125 inch for thread sizes 1-8 to 1 1/2-8, inclusive.

[c] Length for Jacobs 0B5/16 chuck is 0.375 inch, length for 1B5/16 chuck is 0.437 inch.

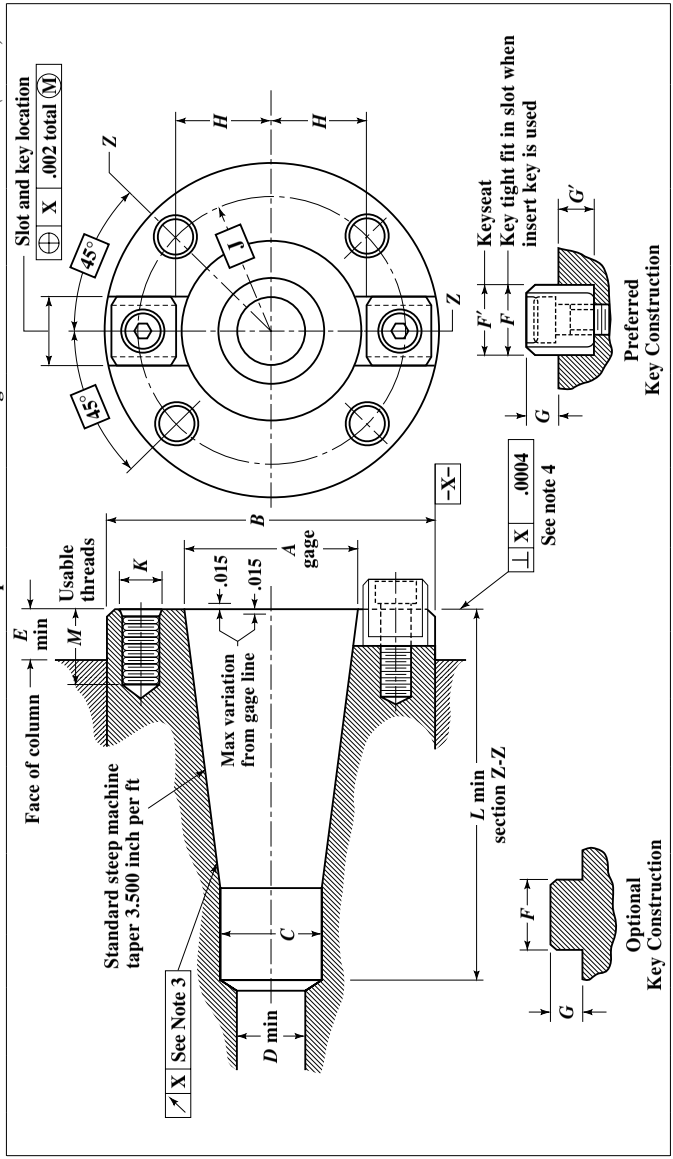
[d] Length for Jacobs No. 1BS chuck is 0.437 inch.

Usual Chuck Capacities for Different Taper Series Numbers: No. 0 taper, drill diameters, 0-5/32 inch; No. 1, 0-1/4 inch; No. 2, 0-1/2 inch; No. 2 "Short," 0-5/16 inch; No. 3, 0-1/2, 1/8-5/8, 3/16-3/4, or 1/4-13/16 inch; No. 4, 1/8-3/4 inch; No. 5, 3/8-1; No. 6, 0-1/2 inch; No. 33, 0-1/2 inch.

Usual Chuck Capacities for Different Thread Sizes: Size 5/16-24, drill diameters 0-1/4 inch; size 3/8-24, drill diameters 0-3/8, 1/16-3/8, or 5/64-1/2 inch; size 1/2-20, drill diameters 0-1/2, 1/16-3/8, or 5/64-1/2 inch; size 5/8-11, drill diameters 0-1/2 inch; size 5/8-16, drill diameters 0-1/2, 1/8- -5/8, or 3/16-3/4 inch; size 45/64-16, drill diameters 0-1/2 inch; size 3/4-16, drill diameters 0-1/2 or 3/16-3/4 .

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Essential Dimensions of American National Standard Spindle Noses for Milling Machines *ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)*



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Essential Dimensions of American National Standard Spindle Noses for Milling Machines** *ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)*

Size No.	Gage Dia.of Taper *A*	Dia.of Spindle *B*	Pilot Dia. *C*	Clearance Hole for Draw-in Bolt Min. *D*	Minimum Dimension Spindle End to Column *E*	Width of Driving Key *F*	Width of Keyseat *F′*	Maximum Height of Driving Key *G*	Minimum Depth of Keyseat *G′*	Distance from Center to Driving Keys *H*	Radius of Bolt Hole Circle *J*	Size of Threads for Bolt Holes UNC-2B *K*	Full Depth of Arbor Hole in Spindle Min. *L*	Depth of Usable Thread for Bolt Hole *M*
30	1.250	2.7493 2.7488	0.692 0.685	0.66	0.50	0.6255 0.6252	0.624 0.625	0.31	0.31	0.660 0.654	1.0625 (Note 1)	0.375-16	2.88	0.62
40	1.750	3.4993 3.4988	1.005 0.997	0.66	0.62	0.6255 0.6252	0.624 0.625	0.31	0.31	0.910 0.904	1.3125 (Note 1)	0.500-13	3.88	0.81
45	2.250	3.9993 3.9988	1.286 1.278	0.78	0.62	0.7505 0.7502	0.749 0.750	0.38	0.38	1.160 1.154	1.500 (Note 1)	0.500-13	4.75	0.81
50	2.750	5.0618 5.0613	1.568 1.559	1.06	0.75	1.0006 1.0002	0.999 1.000	0.50	0.50	1.410 1.404	2.000(Note 2)	0.625-11	5.50	1.00
60	4.250	8.7180 8.7175	2.381 2.371	1.38	1.50	1.0006 1.0002	0.999 1.000	0.50	0.50	2.420 2.414	3.500 (Note 2)	0.750-10	8.62	1.25

All dimensions are given in inches.

Tolerances:

Two-digit decimal dimensions ± 0.010 unless otherwise specified.

A—Taper: Tolerance on rate of taper to be 0.001 inch per foot applied only in direction that decreases rate of taper.

F′—Centrality of keyway with axis of taper 0.002 total at maximum material condition. (0.002 Total indicator variation)

F—Centrality of solid key with axis of taper 0.002 total at maximum material condition. (0.002 Total indicator variation)

Note 1: Holes spaced as shown and located within 0.006 inch diameter of true position.

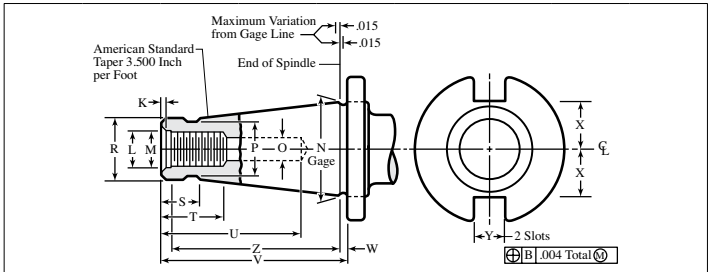
Note 2: Holes spaced as shown and located within 0.010 inch diameter of true position.

Note 3: Maximum turnout on test plug:
0.0004 at 1-inch projection from gage line.
0.0010 at 12-inch projection from gage line.

Note 4: Squareness of mounting face measured near mounting bolt-hole circle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Essential Dimensions of American National Standard Tool Shanks for Milling Machines *ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)*



Size No.	Gage Dia.of Taper *N*	Tap Drill Size for Draw-in Thread *O*	Dia.of Neck *P*	Size of Thread for Draw-in Bolt UNC-2B *M*	Pilot Dia. *R*	Length of Pilot *S*	Minimum Length of Usable Thread *T*	Minimum Depth of Clearance Hole *U*
30	1.250	0.422 0.432	0.66 0.65	0.500-13	0.675 0.670	0.81	1.00	2.00
40	1.750	0.531 0.541	0.94 0.93	0.625-11	0.987 0.980	1.00	1.12	2.25
45	2.250	0.656 0.666	1.19 1.18	0.750-10	1.268 1.260	1.00	1.50	2.75
50	2.750	0.875 0.885	1.50 1.49	1.000-8	1.550 1.540	1.00	1.75	3.50
60	4.250	1.109 1.119	2.28 2.27	1.250-7	2.360 2.350	1.75	2.25	4.25

Size. No.	Distance from Rear of Flange to End of Arbor *V*	Clearance of Flange from Gage Diameter *W*	Tool Shank Centerline to Driving Slot *X*	Width of Driving Slot *Y*	Distance from Gage Line to Bottom of C'bore *Z*	Depth of 60° Center *K*	Diameter of C'bore *L*
30	2.75	0.045 0.075	0.640 0.625	0.635 0.645	2.50	0.05 0.07	0.525 0.530
40	3.75	0.045 0.075	0.890 0.875	0.635 0.645	3.50	0.05 0.07	0.650 0.655
45	4.38	0.105 0.135	1.140 1.125	0.760 0.770	4.06	0.05 0.07	0.775 0.780
50	5.12	0.105 0.135	1.390 1.375	1.010 1.020	4.75	0.05 0.12	1.025 1.030
60	8.25	0.105 0.135	2.400 2.385	1.010 1.020	7.81	0.05 0.12	1.307 1.312

All dimensions are given in inches.

Tolerances: Two-digit decimal dimensions ± 0.010 inch unless otherwise specified.

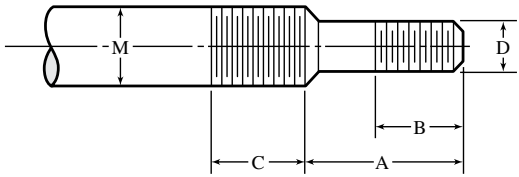
M—Permissible for Class 2B "NoGo" gage to enter five threads before interference.

N—Taper tolerance on rate of taper to be 0.001 inch per foot applied only in direction that increases rate of taper.

Y—Centrality of drive slot with axis of taper shank 0.004 inch at maximum material condition (0.004 inch total indicator variation).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

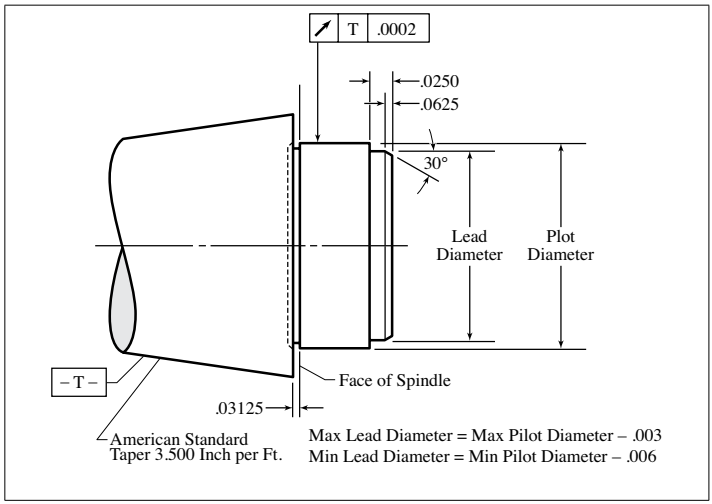
Table 3. American National Standard Draw-In Bolt Ends
ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)



Size No.	Length of Small End *A*	Length of Usable Thread at Small End *B*	Length of Usable Thread on Large Diameter *C*	Size of Thread for Large End UNC-2A *M*	Size of Thread for Small End UNC-2A *D*
30	1.06	0.75	0.75	0.500-13	0.375-16
40	1.25	1.00	1.12	0.625-11	0.500-13
45	1.50	1.12	1.25	0.750-10	0.625-11
50	1.50	1.25	1.38	1.000-8	0.625-11
60	1.75	1.37	2.00	1.250-7	1.000-8

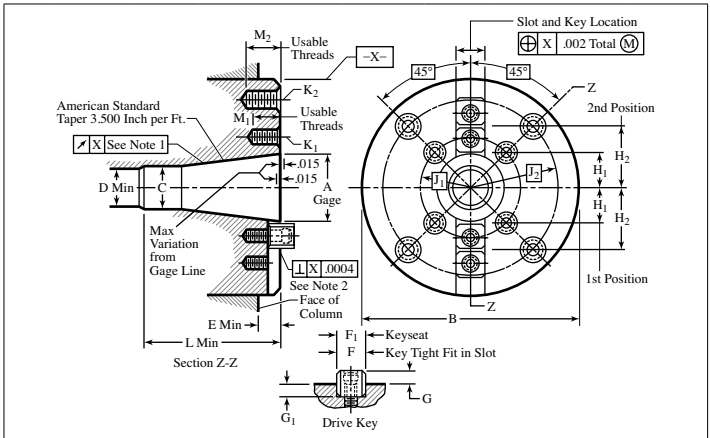
All dimensions are given in inches.

Table 4. American National Standard Pilot Lead on Centering Plugs for Flatback Milling Cutters *ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)*



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Essential Dimensions for American National Standard Spindle Nose with Large Flange *ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014)*



Size No.	Gage Dia. of Taper *A*	Dia. of Spindle Flange *B*	Pilot Dia. *C*	Clearance Hole for Draw-in Bolt Min. *D*	Min. Dim. Spindle End to Column *E*	Width of Driving Key *F*	Height of Driving Key Max. *G*	Depth of Keyseat Min. G_1	Distance from Center to Driving Keys First Position H_1
50A	2.750	8.7180 8.7175	1.568 1.559	1.06	0.75	1.0006 1.0002	0.50	0.50	1.410 1.404

Size No.	Distance from Center to Driving Keys Second Position	Radius of Bolt Hole Circles (See Note 3)		Size of Threads for Bolt Holes UNC-2B		Full Depth of Arbor Hole in Spindle Min.	Depth of Usable Thread for Bolt Holes		Width of Keyseat
		Inner	Outer						
	H_2	J_1	J_2	K_1	K_2	*L*	M_1	M_2	F_1
50A	2.420 2.410	2.000	3.500	0.625-11	0.750-10	5.50	1.00	1.25	0.999 1.000

All dimensions are given in inches.

Tolerances: Two-digit decimal dimensions ± 0.010 unless otherwise specified.

A—Tolerance on rate of taper to be 0.001 inch per foot applied only in direction that decreases rate of taper.

F—Centrality of solid key with axis of taper 0.002 inch total at maximum material condition. (0.002 inch Total indicator variation)

F_1—Centrality of keyseat with axis of taper 0.002 inch total at maximum material condition. (0.002 inch Total indicator variation)

Note 1: Maximum runout on test plug:
0.0004 at 1-inch projection from gage line.
0.0010 at 12-inch projection from gage line.

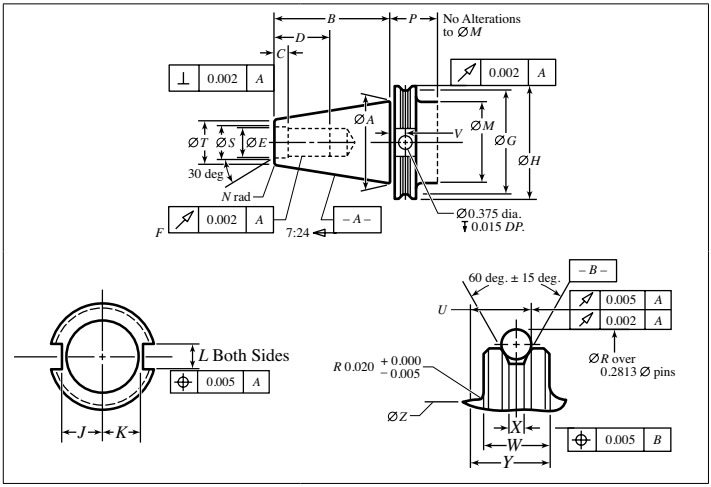
Note 2: Squareness of mounting face measured near mounting bolt-hole circle.

Note 3: Holes located as shown and within 0.010 inch diameter of true position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

V-Flange Tool Shanks and Retention Knobs.—Dimensions of ANSI/ASME B5.18-1972 (R2014) standard tool shanks and corresponding spindle noses are detailed on pages 1027 through 1030, and are suitable for spindles used in milling and associated machines. Corresponding equipment for higher-precision numerically controlled machines, using retention knobs instead of drawbars, is usually made to the ANSI/ASME B5.50-2015 standard.

Essential Dimensions of V-Flange Tool Shanks *ANSI/ASME B5.50-2015*



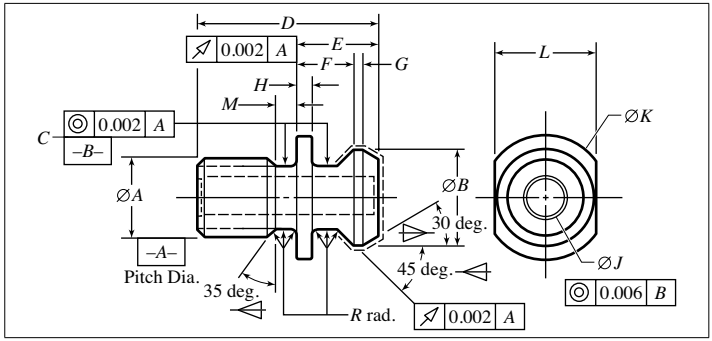
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J	K
	Tolerance	±0.005	±0.010	Min.	+0.015 −0.000	UNC 2B	±0.010	±0.002	+0.000 −0.015	+0.000 −0.015
Size	Gage Dia.									
30	1.250	1.875	0.188	1.00	0.516	0.500-13	1.531	1.812	0.735	0.640
40	1.750	2.687	0.188	1.12	0.641	0.625-11	2.219	2.500	0.985	0.890
45	2.250	3.250	0.188	1.50	0.766	0.750-10	2.969	3.250	1.235	1.140
50	2.750	4.000	0.250	1.75	1.031	1.000-8	3.594	3.875	1.485	1.390
60	4.250	6.375	0.312	2.25	1.281	1.250-7	5.219	5.500	2.235	2.140

	A	L	M	N	P	R	S	T	Z
	Tolerance	±0.001	Max.	±0.010	Min.	±0.002	±0.010	Min.	+0.000 −0.005
Size	Gage Dia.								
30	1.250	0.645	1.812	0.020	1.38	2.176	0.590	0.652	1.250
40	1.750	0.645	2.500	0.040	1.38	2.863	0.720	0.880	1.750
45	2.250	0.770	3.250	0.040	1.38	3.613	0.850	1.233	2.250
50	2.750	1.020	3.875	0.040	1.38	4.238	1.125	1.427	2.750
60	4.250	1.020	5.500	0.040	1.500	5.863	1.375	2.309	4.250

Notes: Taper tolerance to be 0.001 in. in 12 in. applied in direction that increases rate of taper. Geometric dimensions symbols are to ASME Y14.5-2018. Dimensions are in inches. Deburr all sharp edges. Unspecified fillets and radii to be $0.03 \pm 0.010R$, or $0.03 \pm 0.010 \times 45$ degrees. Data for size 60 are not part of Standard. For all sizes, the values for dimensions *U* (tol. ± 0.005) are 0.579: for *V* (tol. ± 0.010), 0.440; for *W* (tol. ± 0.002), 0.625; for *X* (tol. ± 0.005), 0.152; and for *Y* (tol. ± 0.002), 0.750.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Essential Dimensions of V-Flange Tool Shank Retention Knobs
ANSI/ASME B5.50-2015



Size	*A*	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*
30	0.500-13	0.520	0.385	1.10	0.460	0.320
40	0.625-11	0.740	0.490	1.50	0.640	0.440
45	0.750-10	0.940	0.605	1.80	0.820	0.580
50	1.000-8	1.140	0.820	2.30	1.000	0.700
60	1.250-7	1.460	1.045	3.20	1.500	1.080
Tolerances	UNC- 2A	±0.005	±0.005	±0.040	±0.005	±0.005

Size	*G*	*H*	*J*	*K*	*L*	*M*	*R*
30	0.04	0.10	0.187	0.65 0.64	0.53	0.19	0.094
40	0.06	0.12	0.281	0.94 0.92	0.75	0.22	0.094
45	0.08	0.16	0.375	1.20 1.18	1.00	0.22	0.094
50	0.10	0.20	0.468	1.44 1.42	1.25	0.25	0.125
60	0.14	0.30	0.500	2.14 2.06	1.50	0.31	0.125
Tolerances	±0.010	±0.010	±0.010		+0.000 –0.010	±0.040	+0.010 –0.005

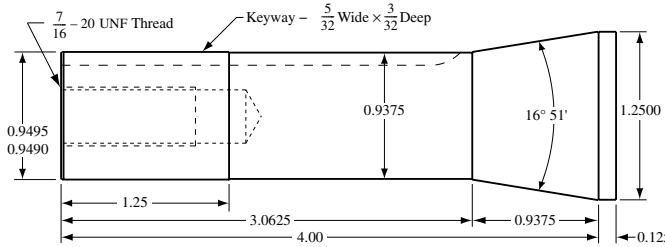
Notes: Dimensions are in inches. Material: low-carbon steel. Heat treatment: carburize and harden to 0.016 to 0.028 in. effective case depth. Hardness of noted surfaces to be 56–60 RC (Rockwell C scale); core hardness 35–45 RC. Hole *J* shall not be carburized. Surfaces *C* and *R* to be free from tool marks. Deburr all sharp edges. Geometric dimension symbols are to ASME Y14.5-2018.

Data for size 60 are not part of Standard.

Collets

R8 Collet.—The dimensions in this figure are believed reliable. However, there are variations among manufacturers of R8 collets, especially regarding the width and depth of the keyway. Some sources do not agree with all dimensions in this figure. R8 collets are not always interchangeable.

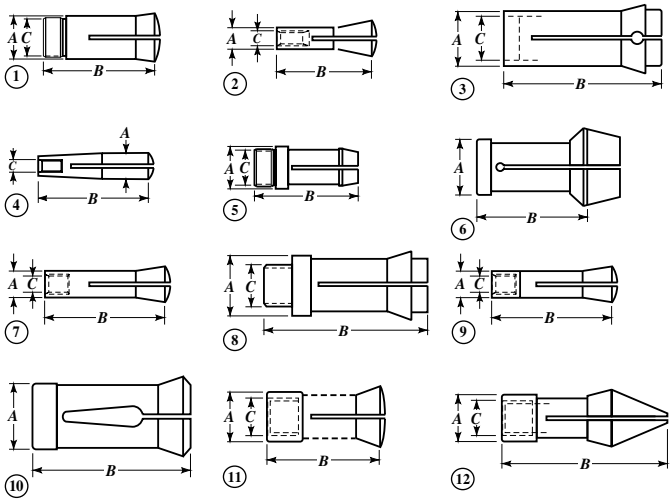
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



All dimensions in inches.

Bridgeport R8 Collet Dimensions

Collet Styles for Lathes, Mills, Grinders, and Fixtures



Collet Styles

Collets for Lathes, Mills, Grinders, and Fixtures

Collet	Style	Dimensions			Max. Capacity (inches)		
		Bearing Dia., *A*	Length, *B*	Thread, *C*	Round	Hex	Square
1A	1	0.650	2.563	0.640 × 26 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
1AM	1	1.125	3.906	1.118 × 24 RH	1.000	0.875	0.719
1B	2	0.437	1.750	0.312 × 30 RH	0.313	0.219	0.188
1C	1	0.335	1.438	0.322 × 40 RH	0.250	0.219	0.172
1J	1	1.250	3.000	1.238 × 20 RH	1.063	0.875	0.750
1K	3	1.250	2.813	None	1.000	0.875	0.719
2A	1	0.860	3.313	0.850 × 20 RH	0.688	0.594	0.469
2AB	2	0.750	2.563	0.500 × 20 RH	0.625	0.484	0.391
2AM	1	0.629	3.188	0.622 × 24 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Collets for Lathes, Mills, Grinders, and Fixtures *(Continued)*

Collet	Style	Dimensions			Max. Capacity (inches)		
		Bearing Dia., *A*	Length, *B*	Thread, *C*	Round	Hex	Square
2B	2	0.590	2.031	0.437 × 26 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
2C	1	0.450	1.812	0.442 × 30 RH	0.344	0.594	0.234
2H	1	0.826	4.250	0.799 × 20 RH	0.625	0.531	1.000
2J	1	1.625	3.250	1.611 × 18 RH	1.375	1.188	0.438
2L	1	0.950	3.000	0.938 × 20 RH	0.750	0.656	1.000
2M	4	2 Morse	2.875	0.375 × 16 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
2NS	1	0.324	1.562	0.318 × 40 RH	0.250	0.203	0.172
2OS	1	0.299	1.250	0.263 × 40 RH	0.188	0.156	0.125
2S	1	0.750	3.234	0.745 × 18 RH	0.563	0.484	0.391
2VB	2	0.595	2.438	0.437 × 26 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
3AM	1	0.750	3.188	0.742 × 24 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
3AT	1	0.687	2.313	0.637 × 26 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
3B	2	0.875	3.438	0.625 × 16 RH	0.750	0.641	0.531
3C	1	0.650	2.688	0.640 × 26 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
3H	1	1.125	4.438	1.050 × 20 RH	0.875	0.750	0.625
3J	1	2.000	3.750	1.988 × 20 RH	1.750	1.500	1.250
3NS	1	0.687	2.875	0.647 × 20 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
3OS	1	0.589	2.094	0.518 × 26 RH	0.375	0.313	0.266
3PN	1	0.650	2.063	0.645 × 24 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
3PO	1	0.599	2.063	0.500 × 24 RH	0.375	0.313	0.266
3S	1	1.000	4.594	0.995 × 20 RH	0.750	0.656	0.531
3SC	1	0.350	1.578	0.293 × 36 RH	0.188	0.156	0.125
3SS	1	0.589	2.125	0.515 × 26 RH	0.375	0.313	0.266
4C	1	0.950	3.000	0.938 × 20 RH	0.750	0.656	0.531
4NS	1	0.826	3.500	0.800 × 20 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
4OS	1	0.750	2.781	0.660 × 20 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
4PN	1	1.000	2.906	0.995 × 16 RH	0.750	0.656	0.531
4S	1	0.998	3.250	0.982 × 20 RH	0.750	0.656	0.531
5C	1	1.250	3.281	1.238 × 20 RH[a]	1.063	0.906	0.750
5M	5	1.438	3.438	1.238 × 20 RH	0.875	0.750	0.625
5NS	1	1.062	4.219	1.050 × 20 RH	0.875	0.750	0.625
5OS	1	3.500	3.406	0.937 × 18 RH	0.750	0.641	0.516
5P	1	0.812	3.687	0.807 × 24 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
5PN	1	1.312	3.406	1.307 × 16 RH	1.000	0.875	0.719
5SC	1	0.600	2.438	0.500 × 26 RH	0.375	0.328	0.266
5ST	1	1.250	3.281	1.238 × 20 RH	1.063	0.906	0.750
5V	1	0.850	3.875	0.775 × 18 RH	0.563	0.484	0.391
6H	1	1.375	4.750	1.300 × 10 RH	1.125	0.969	0.797
6K	1	0.842	3.000	0.762 × 26 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
6L	1	1.250	4.438	1.178 × 20 RH	1.000	0.875	0.719
6NS	1	1.312	5.906	1.234 × 14 RH	1.000	0.859	0.703
6R	1	1.375	4.938	1.300 × 20 RH	1.125	0.969	0.781
7B	4	7 B&S	3.125	0.375 × 16 RH	0.500	0.406	0.344
7 B&S	4	7 B&S	2.875	0.375 × 16 RH	0.500	0.406	0.344
7P	1	1.125	4.750	1.120 × 20 RH	0.875	0.750	0.625
7R	6	1.062	3.500	None	0.875	0.750	0.625
8H	1	1.500	4.750	1.425 × 20 RH	1.250	1.063	0.875
8ST	1	2.375	5.906	2.354 × 12 RH	2.125	1.844	1.500
8WN	1	1.250	3.875	1.245 × 16 RH	1.000	0.875	0.719
9B	4	9 B&S	4.125	0.500 × 13 RH	0.750	0.641	0.531
10L	1	1.562	5.500	1.490 × 18 RH	1.250	1.063	0.875
10P	1	1.500	4.750	1.495 × 20 RH	1.250	1.063	0.875
16C	1	1.889	4.516	1.875 × 1.75 mm RH[b]	1.625	1.406	1.141
20W	1	0.787	2.719	0.775 × 6-1 cm	0.563	0.484	0.391
22J	1	2.562	4.000	2.550 × 18 RH	2.250	1.938	1.563
32S	1	0.703	2.563	0.690 × 24 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Collets for Lathes, Mills, Grinders, and Fixtures *(Continued)*

Collet	Style	Dimensions			Max. Capacity (inches)		
		Bearing Dia., *A*	Length, *B*	Thread, *C*	Round	Hex	Square
35J	1	3.875	5.000	3.861 × 18 RH	3.500	3.000	2.438
42S	1	1.250	3.688	1.236 × 20 RH	1.000	0.875	0.719
50V	8	1.250	4.000	1.125 × 24 RH	0.938	0.813	0.656
52SC	1	0.800	3.688	0.795 × 20 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
115	1	1.344	3.500	1.307 × 20 LH	1.125	0.969	0.797
215	1	2.030	4.750	1.990 × 18 LH	1.750	1.500	1.219
315	1	3.687	5.500	3.622 × 16 LH	3.250	2.813	2.250
B3	7	0.650	3.031	0.437 × 20 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
D5	7	0.780	3.031	0.500 × 20 RH	0.625	0.531	0.438
GTM	7	0.625	2.437	0.437 × 20 RH	0.500	0.438	0.344
J&L	9	0.999	4.375	None	0.750	0.641	0.516
JC	8	1.360	4.000	None	1.188	1.000	0.813
LB	10	0.687	2.000	None	0.500	0.438	0.344
RO	11	1.250	2.938	0.875 × 16 RH	1.125	0.969	0.781
RO	12	1.250	4.437	0.875 × 16 RH	0.800	0.688	0.563
RO	12	1.250	4.437	0.875 × 16 RH	1.125	0.969	0.781
RO	11	1.250	2.938	0.875 × 16 RH	0.800	0.688	0.563
R8	7	0.950	4.000	0.437 × 20 RH	0.750	0.641	0.531

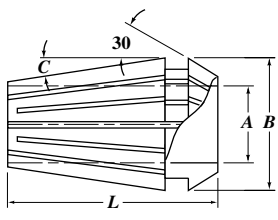
[a] Internal stop thread is 1.041 × 24 RH.

[b] Internal stop thread is 1.687 × 20 RH.

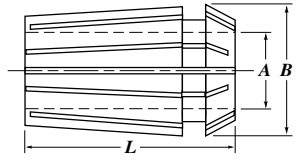
Dimensions in inches unless otherwise noted. Courtesy of Hardinge Brothers, Inc.

Additional dimensions of the R8 collet are given on page 1033.

DIN 6388, Type B, and DIN 6499, ER Type Collets



ER Type



Type B

Collet Standard	Type	Dimensions			
		B (mm)	*L* (mm)	*A* (mm)	*C*
Type B, DIN 6388	16	25.50	40	4.5-16	…
	20	29.80	45	5.5-20	…
	25	35.05	52	5.5-25	…
	32	43.70	60	9.5-32	…
ER Type, DIN 6499	ERA8	8.50	13.5	0.5-5	8°
	ERA11	11.50	18	0.5-7	8°
	ERA16	17	27	0.5-10	8°
	ERA20	21	31	0.5-13	8°
	ERA25	26	35	0.5-16	8°
	ERA32	33	40	2-20	8°
	ERA40	41	46	3-26	8°
		41	39	26-30	8°
	ERA50	52	60	5-34	8°

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ARBORS, CHUCKS, AND SPINDLES

Portable Tool Spindles

Circular Saw Arbors.—ASME B107.4-2005 (R2011) "Driving and Spindle Ends for Portable Hand, Air, and Air Electric Tools" calls for a round arbor of 5/8-inch diameter for nominal saw blade diameters of 6 to 8.5 inches, inclusive, and a 3/4-inch diameter round arbor for saw blade diameters of 9 to 12 inches, inclusive.

Spindles for Geared Chucks.—Recommended threaded and tapered spindles for portable tool geared chucks of various sizes are as given in the following table:

Recommended Spindle Sizes

Chuck Sizes, Inch	Recommended Spindles	
	Threaded	Taper[a]
3/16 and 1/4 Light	3/8-24	1
1/4 and 5/16 Medium	3/8-24 or 1/2-20	2 Short
3/8 Light	3/8-24 or 1/2-20	2
3/8 Medium	1/2-20 or 5/8-16	2
1/2 Light	1/2-20 or 5/8-16	33
1/2 Medium	5/8-16 or 3/4-16	6
5/8 and 3/4 Medium	5/8-16 or 3/4-16	3

[a] Jacobs number.

Vertical and Angle Portable Tool Grinder Spindles.—The 5/8-11 spindle with a length of 1 1/8 inches shown on page 1040 is designed to permit the use of a jam nut with threaded cup wheels. When a revolving guard is used, the length of the spindle is measured from the wheel bearing surface of the guard. For unthreaded wheels with a 7/8-inch hole, a safety sleeve nut is recommended. The unthreaded wheel with 5/8-inch hole is not recommended because a jam nut alone may not resist the inertia effect when motor power is cut off.

Straight Grinding Wheel Spindles for Portable Tools.—Portable grinders with pneumatic or induction electric motors should be designed for the use of organic bond wheels rated 9500 ft per min (48.25 m/s). Light-duty electric grinders may be designed for vitrified wheels rated 6500 ft per min (33.0 m/s). Recommended maximum sizes of wheels of both types are as given in the following table:

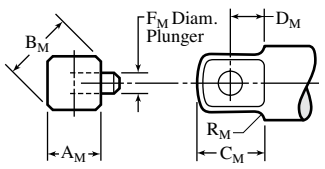
Recommended Maximum Grinding Wheel Sizes for Portable Tools

Spindle Size	Maximum Wheel Dimensions			
	9500 fpm		6500 fpm	
	Diameter *D*	Thickness *T*	Diameter *D*	Thickness *T*
3/8-24 × 1 1/8	2 1/2	1/2	4	1/2
1/2-13 × 1 3/4	4	3/4	5	3/4
5/8-11 × 2 1/8	8	1	8	1
5/8-11 × 3 1/8	6	2	…	…
5/8-11 × 3 1/8	8	1 1/2	…	…
3/4-10 × 3 1/4	8	2	…	…

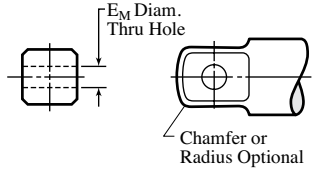
Minimum *T* with the first three spindles is about 1/8 inch to accommodate cutting off wheels. Flanges are assumed to be according to ANSI B7.1 and threads to ANSI/ASME B1.1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American Standard Square Drives for Portable Air and Electric Tools *ASA B5.38-1958*

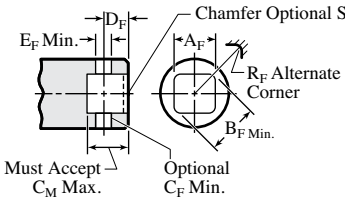


DESIGN A

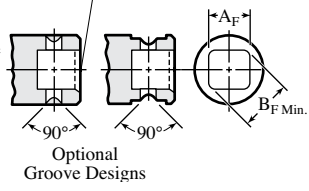


DESIGN B

Drive Size	Male End										
		A_M		B_M	C_M		D_M		E_M	F_M	R_M
	Design.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Max.
¼	A	0.252	0.247	0.330	0.312	0.265	0.165	0.153	…	0.078	0.015
⅜	A	0.377	0.372	0.500	0.438	0.406	0.227	0.215	…	0.156	0.031
½	A	0.502	0.497	0.665	0.625	0.531	0.321	0.309	…	0.187	0.031
⅝	A	0.627	0.622	0.834	0.656	0.594	0.321	0.309	…	0.187	0.047
¾	B	0.752	0.747	1.000	0.938	0.750	0.415	0.403	0.216	…	0.047
1	B	1.002	0.997	1.340	1.125	1.000	0.602	0.590	0.234	…	0.063
1½	B	1.503	1.498	1.968	1.625	1.562	0.653	0.641	0.310	…	0.094



DESIGN A



DESIGN B

Drive Size	Female End							
		A_F		B_F	D_F		E_F	R_F
	Design	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.
¼	A	0.258	0.253	0.335	0.159	0.147	0.090	…
⅜	A	0.383	0.378	0.505	0.221	0.209	0.170	…
½	A	0.508	0.503	0.670	0.315	0.303	0.201	…
⅝	A	0.633	0.628	0.839	0.315	0.303	0.201	…
¾	B	0.758	0.753	1.005	0.409	0.397	0.216	0.047
1	B	1.009	1.004	1.350	0.596	0.584	0.234	0.062
1½	B	1.510	1.505	1.983	0.647	0.635	0.310	0.125

All dimensions in inches.

Incorporating fillet radius (R_M) at shoulder of male tang precludes use of minimum diameter cross-hole in socket (E_F), unless female drive end is chamfered (shown as optional).

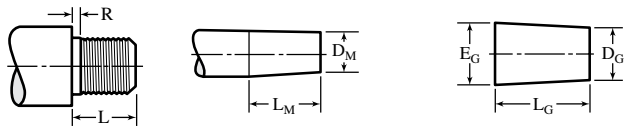
If female drive end is not chamfered, socket cross-hole diameter (E_F) is increased to compensate for fillet radius R_M, max.

Minimum clearance across flats male to female is 0.001 inch through ¾-inch size; 0.002 inch in 1- and 1½-inch sizes. For impact wrenches, A_M should be held as close to maximum as practical.

C_F, min., for both designs A and B should be equal to C_M, max.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American Standard Threaded and Tapered Spindles for Portable Air and Electric Tools *ASA B5.38-1958*



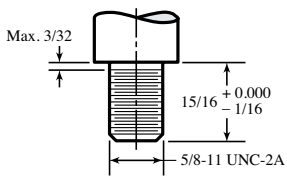
Threaded Spindle **Taper Spindle (Jacobs)** **Master Plug Gage**

Nom. Dia. and Thd.	Pitch Dia. Max.	Pitch Dia. Min.	*R*	*L*	No.[a]	D_M	L_M	E_G	D_G	L_G	Taper per Foot[b]
3/8-24	0.3479	0.3455	1/16	9/16[c]	1	0.335-0.333	0.656	0.38400	0.33341	0.65625	0.92508
1/2-20	0.4675	0.4649	1/16	9/16	2S[d]	0.490-0.488	0.750	0.54880	0.48764	0.7500	0.97861
					2	0.490-0.488	0.875	0.55900	0.48764	0.87500	0.97861
5/8-16	0.5844	0.5812	3/32	11/16	33	0.563-0.561	1.000	0.62401	0.56051	1.000	0.76194
					6	0.626-0.624	1.000	0.67600	0.62409	1.000	0.62292
3/4-16	0.7094	0.7062	3/32	11/16	3	0.748-0.746	1.219	0.81100	0.74610	1.21875	0.63898

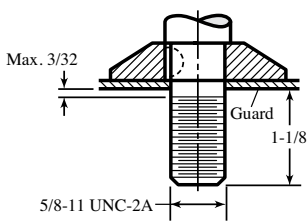
[a] Jacobs taper number.
[b] Calculated from E_G, D_G, L_G for the master plug gage.
[c] Also 7/16 inch.
[d] 2S stands for 2 Short.
All dimensions in inches. Threads are per inch and right-hand. Tolerances: On *R*, plus or minus 1/64 inch; on *L*, plus 0.000, minus 0.030 inch.

American Standard Abrasion Tool Spindles for Portable Air and Electric Tools *ASA B5.38-1958*

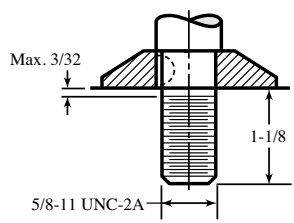
Sanders and Polishers



Vertical and Angle Grinders



With Revolving Cup Guard

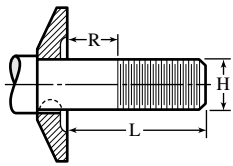


Stationary Guard

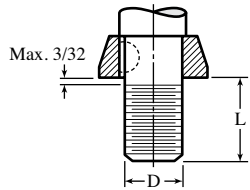
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American Standard Abrasion Tool Spindles for Portable Air and Electric Tools *ASA B5.38-1958 (Continued)*

Straight Wheel Grinders



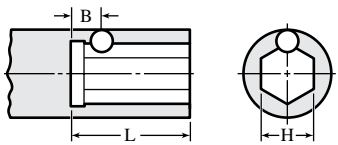
Cone Wheel Grinders



H	*R*	*L*	*D*	*L*
3/8-24 UNF-2A	1/4	1 1/8	3/8-24 UNF-2A	9/16
1/2-13 UNC-2A	3/8	1 3/4	1/2-13 UNC-2A	11/16
5/8-11 UNC-2A	1/2	2 1/8	5/8-11 UNC-2A	15/16
5/8-11 UNC-2A	1	3 1/8		
3/4-10 UNC-2A	1	3 1/4		

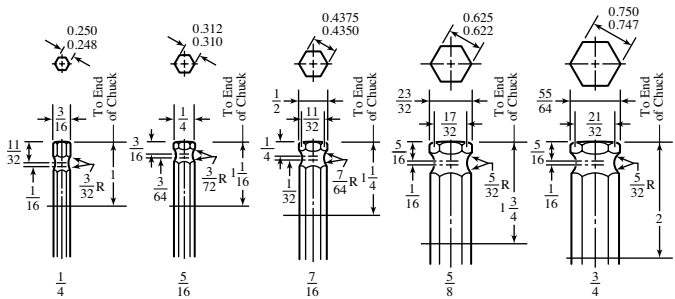
All dimensions in inches. Threads are right-hand.

American Standard Hexagonal Chucks and Shanks for Portable Air and Electric Tools *ASA B5.38-1958*



Nominal Hexagon	*H* Min.	*H* Max.	*B*	*L* Max.	Nominal Hexagon	*H* Min.	*H* Max.	*B*	*L* Max.
1/4	0.253	0.255	3/8	15/16	5/8	0.630	0.632	11/32	1 5/8
5/16	0.314	0.316	13/64	1	3/4	0.755	0.758	11/32	1 7/8
7/16	0.442	0.444	17/64	1 1/8	…	…	…	…	…

Shanks



All dimensions in inches. Tolerance on *B* is plus or minus 0.005 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Mounted Wheels and Mounted Points

These wheels and points are used in places that are hard to access and are available with a vitrified bond. The wheels are available with aluminum oxide or silicon carbide abrasive grains. The aluminum oxide wheels are used to grind tough and tempered die steels and the silicon carbide wheels, cast iron, chilled iron, bronze, and other nonferrous metals.

The illustrations on pages 1041 and 1042 give the standard shapes of mounted wheels and points as published by the Grinding Wheel Institute. A note about the maximum operating speed for these wheels is given at the bottom of the first page of illustrations. Metric sizes are given on page 1043.

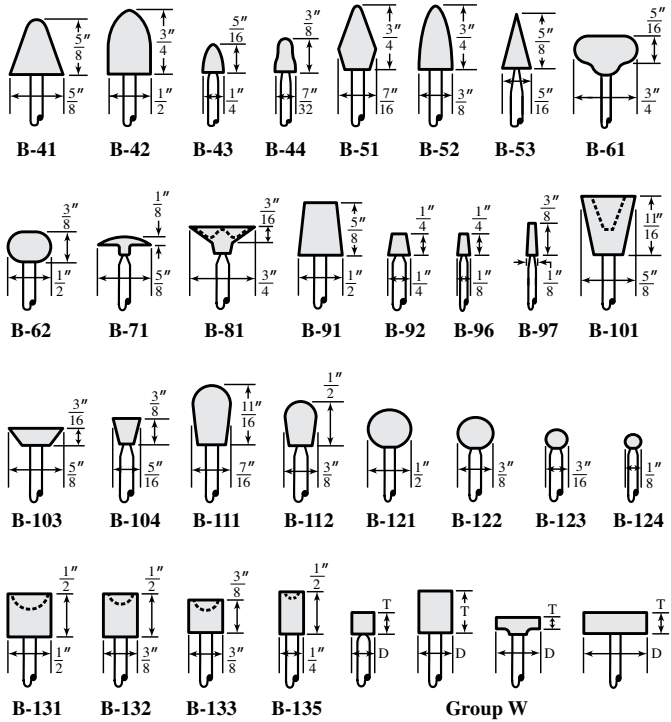


Fig. 1a. Standard Shapes and Sizes of Mounted Wheels and Points ANSI B74.2-2003

See Table 1 for inch sizes of Group W shapes and for metric sizes for all shapes.

The maximum speeds of mounted vitrified wheels and points of average grade range from about 38,000 to 152,000 rpm for diameters of 1 inch down to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch. However, the safe operating speed usually is limited by the critical speed (speed at which vibration or whip tends to become excessive), which varies according to wheel or point dimensions, spindle diameter, and overhang.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

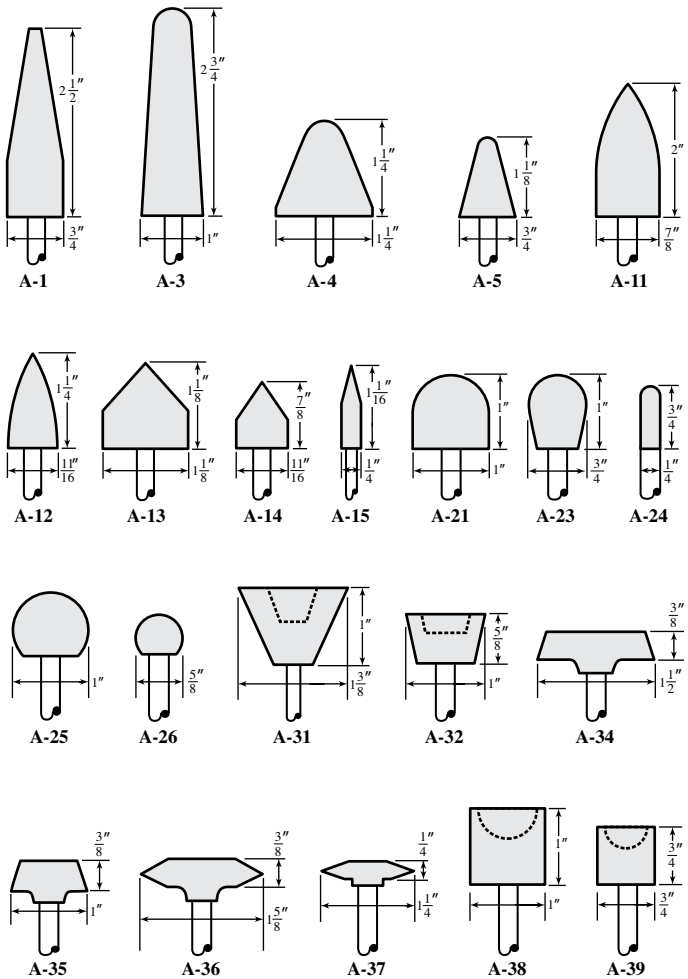


Fig. 1b. Standard Shapes and Sizes of Mounted Wheels and Points ANSI B74.2-2003

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Shapes and Sizes of Mounted Wheels and Points *ANSI B74.2-2003*

Abrasive Shape No.[a]	Abrasive Shape Size		Abrasive Shape No.[a]	Abrasive Shape Size	
	Diameter mm	Thickness mm		Diameter mm	Thickness mm
A 1	20	65	A 24	6	20
A 3	22	70	A 25	25	…
A 4	30	30	A 26	16	…
A 5	20	28	A 31	35	26
A 11	21	45	A 32	25	20
A 12	18	30	A 34	38	10
A 13	25	25	A 35	25	10
A 14	18	22	A 36	40	10
A 15	6	25	A 37	30	6
A 21	25	25	A 38	25	25
A 23	20	25	A 39	20	20
B 41	16	16	B 97	3	10
B 42	13	20	B 101	16	18
B 43	6	8	B 103	16	5
B 44	5.6	10	B 104	8	10
B 51	11	20	B 111	11	18
B 52	10	20	B 112	10	13
B 53	8	16	B 121	13	…
B 61	20	8	B 122	10	…
B 62	13	10	B 123	5	…
B 71	16	3	B 124	3	…
B 81	20	5	B 131	13	13
B 91	13	16	B 132	10	13
B 92	6	6	B 133	10	10
B 96	3	6	B 135	6	13

Abrasive Shape No.[a]	Abrasive Shape Size				Abrasive Shape No.[a]	Abrasive Shape Size			
	D mm	*T* mm	*D* inch	*T* inch		*D* mm	*T* mm	*D* inch	*T* inch
W 144	3	6	1/8	1/4	W 196	16	26	5/8	1
W 145	3	10	1/8	3/8	W 197	16	50	5/8	2
W 146	3	13	1/8	1/2	W 200	20	3	3/4	1/8
W 152	5	6	3/16	1/4	W 201	20	6	3/4	1/4
W 153	5	10	3/16	3/8	W 202	20	10	3/4	3/8
W 154	5	13	3/16	1/2	W 203	20	13	3/4	1/2
W 158	6	3	1/4	1/8	W 204	20	20	3/4	3/4
W 160	6	6	1/4	1/4	W 205	20	25	3/4	1
W 162	6	10	1/4	3/8	W 207	20	40	3/4	1 1/2
W 163	6	13	1/4	1/2	W 208	20	50	3/4	2
W 164	6	20	1/4	3/4	W 215	25	3	1	1/8
W 174	10	6	3/8	1/4	W 216	25	6	1	1/4
W 175	10	10	3/8	3/8	W 217	25	10	1	3/8
W 176	10	13	3/8	1/2	W 218	25	13	1	1/2
W 177	10	20	3/8	3/4	W 220	25	25	1	1
W 178	10	25	3/8	1	W 221	25	40	1	1 1/2
W 179	10	30	3/8	1 1/4	W 222	25	50	1	2
W 181	13	1.5	1/2	1/16	W 225	30	6	1 1/4	1/4
W 182	13	3	1/2	1/8	W 226	30	10	1 1/4	3/8
W 183	13	6	1/2	1/4	W 228	30	20	1 1/4	3/4
W 184	13	10	1/2	3/8	W 230	30	30	1 1/4	1 1/4
W 185	13	13	1/2	1/2	W 232	30	50	1 1/4	2
W 186	13	20	1/2	3/4	W 235	40	6	1 1/2	1/4
W 187	13	25	1/2	1	W 236	40	13	1 1/2	1/2
W 188	13	40	1/2	1 1/2	W 237	40	25	1 1/2	1
W 189	13	50	1/2	2	W 238	40	40	1 1/2	1 1/2
W 195	16	20	5/8	3/4	W 242	50	25	2	1

[a] See shape diagrams in Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b on pages 1041 and 1042.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BROACHES AND BROACHING

The Broaching Process

The broaching process may be applied in machining holes or other internal surfaces and also to many flat or other external surfaces. Internal broaching is applied in forming either symmetrical or irregular holes, grooves, or slots in machine parts, especially when the size or shape of the opening, or its length in proportion to diameter or width, makes other machining processes impracticable. Broaching originally was utilized for such work as cutting keyways; machining round holes into square, hexagonal, or other shapes; forming splined holes; and for a large variety of other internal operations. The development of broaching machines and broaches finally resulted in extensive application of the process to external, flat, and other surfaces. Most external or surface broaching is done on machines of vertical design, but horizontal machines are also used for some classes of work. The broaching process is very rapid and accurate, and it leaves a finish of good quality. It is employed extensively in automotive and other plants where duplicate parts must be produced in large quantities and for dimensions within small tolerances.

Types of Broaches.—A number of typical broaches and the operations for which they are intended are shown by the diagrams in Fig. 1. Broach *A* produces a round-cornered, square hole. Prior to broaching square holes, it is usually the practice to drill a round hole having a diameter *d* somewhat larger than the width of the square. Hence, the sides are not completely finished, but this unfinished part is not objectionable in most cases. In fact, this clearance space is an advantage during the broaching operation in that it serves as a channel for the broaching lubricant; moreover, the broach has less metal to remove. Broach *B* is for finishing round holes. Broaching is superior to reaming for some classes of work because the broach will hold its size for a much longer period, thus insuring greater accuracy. Broaches *C* and *D* are for cutting single and double keyways, respectively. Broach *C* is of rectangular section and, when in use, slides through a guiding bushing which is inserted in the hole. Broach *E* is for forming four integral splines in a hub. The broach at *F* is for producing hexagonal holes. Rectangular holes are finished by broach *G*. The teeth on the sides of this broach are inclined in opposite directions, which has the following advantages: The broach is stronger than it would be if the teeth were opposite and parallel to each other; thin work cannot drop between the inclined teeth, as it tends to do when the teeth are at right angles, because at least two teeth are always cutting; the inclination in opposite directions neutralizes the lateral thrust. The teeth on the edges are staggered, the teeth on one side being midway between the teeth on the other edge, as shown by the dotted line. A double-cut broach is shown at *H*. This type is for finishing, simultaneously, both sides *f* of a slot, and for similar work. Broach *I* is the style used for forming the teeth in internal gears. It is practically a series of gear-shaped cutters, the outside diameters of which gradually increase toward the finishing end of the broach. Broach *J* is for round holes but differs from style *B* in that it has a continuous helical cutting edge. Some prefer this form because it gives a shearing cut. Broach *K* is for cutting a series of helical grooves in a hub or bushing. In helical broaching, either the work or the broach is rotated to form the helical grooves as the broach is pulled through.

In addition to the typical broaches shown in Fig. 1, many special designs are now in use for performing more complex operations. Two surfaces on opposite sides of a casting or forging are sometimes machined simultaneously by twin broaches and, in other cases, three or four broaches are drawn through a part at the same time, for finishing as many duplicate holes or surfaces. Notable developments have been made in the design of broaches for external or "surface" broaching.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

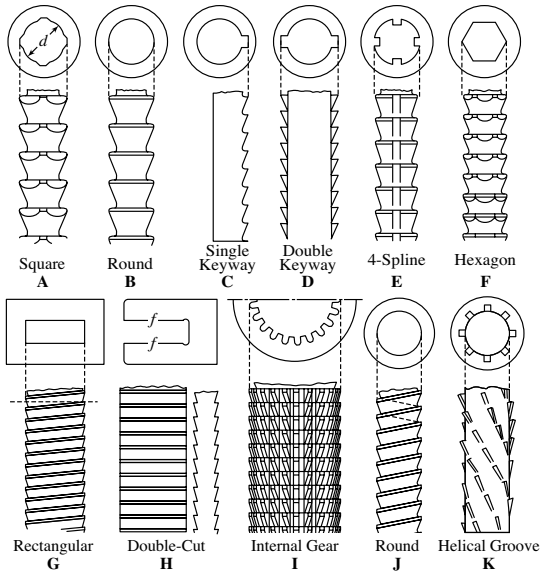


Fig. 1. Types of Broaches

Burnishing Broach: This is a broach having teeth or projections that are rounded on the top instead of being provided with a cutting edge, as in the ordinary type of broach. The teeth are highly polished, the tool being used for broaching bearings and for operations on other classes of work where the metal is relatively soft. The tool compresses the metal, thus making the surface hard and smooth. The amount of metal that can be displaced by a smooth-toothed burnishing broach is about the same as that removed by reaming. Such broaches are primarily intended for use on babbitt, white metal, and brass, but may also be satisfactorily used for producing a glazed surface on cast iron. This type of broach is also used when it is only required to accurately size a hole.

Pitch of Broach Teeth.—The pitch of broach teeth depends upon the depth of cut or chip thickness, the length of cut, the cutting force required and the power of the broaching machine. In the pitch formulas that follow

L = length, in inches (mm), of layer to be removed by broaching

d = depth of cut per tooth as shown by Table 1 (For internal broaches, d = depth of cut as measured on one side of broach or one-half difference in diameters of successive teeth in the case of a round broach.)

F = a factor (For brittle types of material, F = 3 or 4 for roughing teeth and 6 for finishing teeth. For ductile types of material, F = 4 to 7 for roughing teeth and 8 for finishing teeth.)

b = width in inches (mm) of layer to be removed by broaching

P = pressure required in tons per square inch (MPa) of an area equal to depth of cut times width of cut, in inches (mm) (Table 2)

T = usable capacity, in tons (metric tons), of broaching machine = 70 percent of maximum tonnage

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Designing Data for Surface Broaches

Material to be Broached	Depth of Cut per Tooth				Face Angle or Rake, Degrees	Clearance Angle, Degrees	
	Roughing[a]		Finishing				
	inch	mm	inch	mm		Rough	Finish
Steel, High Tensile Strength	0.0015–0.002	0.04–0.05	0.0005	0.013	10–12	1.5–3	0.5–1
Steel, Med.Tensile Strength	0.0025–0.005	0.06–0.13	0.0005	0.013	14–18	1.5–3	0.5–1
Cast Steel	0.0025–0.005	0.06–0.13	0.0005	0.013	10	1.53	0.5
Malleable Iron	0.0025–0.005	0.06–0.13	0.0005	0.013	7	1.5–3	0.5
Cast Iron, Soft	0.006–0.010	0.15–0.25	0.0005	0.013	10–15	1.5–3	0.5
Cast Iron, Hard	0.003–0.005	0.08–0.13	0.0005	0.013	5	1.5–3	0.5
Zinc Die Castings	0.005–0.010	0.13–0.25	0.0010	0.025	12[b]	5	2
Cast Bronze	0.010–0.025	0.25–0.64	0.0005	0.013	8	0	0
Wrought Aluminum Alloys	0.005–0.010	0.13–0.25	0.0010	0.025	15[b]	3	1
Cast Aluminum Alloys	0.005–0.010	0.13–0.25	0.0010	0.025	12[b]	3	1
Magnesium Die Castings	0.010–0.015	0.25–0.38	0.0010	0.025	20[b]	3	1

[a] The lower depth-of-cut values for roughing are recommended when work is not very rigid, the tolerance is small, a good finish is required, or length of cut is comparatively short.
[b] In broaching these materials, smooth surfaces for tooth and chip spaces are especially recommended.

Table 2. Broaching Pressure P for Use in Pitch Formulas (2a) and (2b)

Material to be Broached	Depth *d* of cut per tooth, inch (mm)										Side-cutting Broaches			
	0.024 (0.60)		0.01 (0.25)		0.004 (0.10)		0.002 (0.05)		0.001 (0.025)		Pressure, *P*		Cut, *d*	
	Pressure, *P*													
	Ton/in²	MPa	Ton/in²	MPa	Ton/in²	MPa	Ton/in²	MPa	Ton/in²	MPa	Ton/in²	MPa	inch	mm
Steel, High Tensile Strength	...	...	...	...			250	3447	312	4302	200	2758	0.004	0.10
Steel, Med. Tensile Strength	...	...	...	...	158	2179	185	2551	243	3351	143	1972	0.006	0.15
Cast Steel	...	...	...	...	128	1765	158	2179	...	...	115	1586	0.006	0.15
Malleable Iron	...	...	...	...	108	1489	128	1765	...	...	100	1379	0.006	0.15
Cast Iron	...	...	115	1586	115	1586	143	1972	...	...	115	1586	0.020	0.51
Cast Brass	...	...	50	689	50	689	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Brass, Hot-pressed	...	...	85	1172	85	1172	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Zinc Die Castings	...	...	70	965	70	965	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Cast Bronze	35	483	35	483	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Wrought Aluminum	...	...	70	965	70	965	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Cast Aluminum	...	...	85	1172	85	1172	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Magnesium Alloy	35	483	35	483	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

The minimum pitch shown by Formula (1) is based upon the receiving capacity of the chip space. The minimum pitch should not be less than 0.2 inch (5.0 mm) unless a smaller pitch is required for extremely short cuts to provide at least two teeth in contact simultaneously with the part being broached. A reduction below 0.2 inch (5.0 mm) is seldom required in surface broaching but may be necessary in connection with internal broaching.

$$\text{Minimum pitch} = 3\sqrt{LdF} \qquad (1)$$

Whether the minimum pitch may be used or not depends upon the power of the available machine. The factor F in the formula provides for the increase in volume as the material is broached into chips. If a broach has adjustable inserts for the finishing teeth, the pitch of the finishing teeth may be smaller than the pitch of the roughing teeth because of the smaller depth d of the cut. The higher value of F for finishing teeth prevents the pitch from becoming too small, so that the spirally curled chips will not be crowded into too small a

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

space. The pitch of the roughing and finishing teeth should be equal for broaches without separate inserts (notwithstanding the different values of d and F) so that, after wear makes this necessary, some of the finishing teeth may be ground into roughing teeth.

US Units

$$\text{Allowable pitch} = \frac{dLbP}{T} \text{ inch} \quad (2a)$$

Metric Units

$$\textbf{Allowable pitch} = \frac{\boldsymbol{dLbP}}{\boldsymbol{9810T}} \textbf{ mm} \quad (2b)$$

If the pitch obtained by Formula (2a), or Formula (2b) in metric calculations, is larger than the minimum obtained by Formula (1), this larger value should be used because it is based upon the usable power of the machine. As the notation indicates, 70 percent of the maximum tonnage T is taken as the usable capacity. The 30 percent reduction is to provide a margin for the increase in broaching load resulting from the gradual dulling of the cutting edges. The procedure in calculating both minimum and allowable pitches will be illustrated by an example.

***Example:* Determine pitch of broach for cast iron if $L = 220$ mm; $d = 0.1$ mm; and $F = 4$.**

$$\textbf{Minimum pitch} = 3\sqrt{220 \times 0.1 \times 4} = \textbf{28.14 mm}$$

Next, apply Formula (2b). Assume that $b = 75$ mm and $T = 8$ metric ton; for cast iron and depth d of 0.1 mm, $P = 1586$ MPa (Table 2). Then,

$$\textbf{Allowable pitch} = \frac{\boldsymbol{0.1 \times 220 \times 75 = 1586}}{\boldsymbol{9810(8)}} = \textbf{33.34 mm}$$

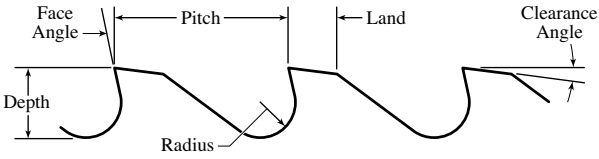
This pitch is safely above the minimum. If in this case the usable tonnage of an available machine were, say, 7 metric tons instead of 8 metric tons, the pitch as shown by Formula (2b) might be increased to about 38.1 mm, thus reducing the number of teeth cutting simultaneously and, consequently, the load on the machine; or the cut per tooth might be reduced instead of increasing the pitch, especially if only a few teeth are in cutting contact, as might be the case with a short length of cut. If the usable tonnage in the preceding example were, say, 10 metric tons, then a pitch of 26.68 mm would be obtained by Formula (2b); hence, the pitch in this case should not be less than the minimum of approximately 28.14 mm obtained from Formula (1).

Depth of Cut per Tooth.—The term "depth of cut" as applied to surface or external broaches means the difference in the heights of successive teeth. This term, as applied to internal broaches for round, hexagonal or other holes, may indicate the total increase in the diameter of successive teeth; however, to avoid confusion, the term as here used means in all cases and regardless of the type of broach, the depth of cut as measured on one side.

In broaching free-cutting steel, the Broaching Tool Institute recommends 0.003 to 0.006 inch (0.076–0.15 mm) depth of cut for surface broaching; 0.002 to 0.003 inch (0.05–0.076 mm) for multispline broaching; and 0.0007 to 0.0015 inch (0.018–0.038 mm) for round hole broaching. The accompanying table contains data from a German source and applies specifically to surface broaches. All data relating to depth of cut are intended as a general guide only. While depth of cut is based primarily upon the machinability of the material, some reduction from the depth thus established may be required, particularly when the work-supporting fixture in surface broaching is not sufficiently rigid to resist the thrust from the broaching operation. In some cases, the pitch and cutting length may be increased to reduce the thrust force. Another possible remedy in surface broaching certain classes of work is to use a side-cutting broach instead of the ordinary depth-cutting type. A broach designed for side-cutting takes relatively deep narrow cuts that extend nearly to the full depth required. The side-cutting section is followed by teeth arranged for depth cutting to obtain the required size and surface finish on the work. In general, small tolerances in surface broaching require a reduced cut per tooth to minimize

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

work deflection resulting from the pressure of the cut. See *Cutting Speed for Broaching* starting on page 1142 for broaching speeds.



Terms Commonly Used in Broach Design

Face Angle or Rake.—The face angle (see diagram) of broach teeth affects the chip flow and varies considerably for different materials. While there are some variations in practice, even for the same material, the angles given in the accompanying table are believed to represent commonly used values. Some broach designers increase the rake angle for finishing teeth in order to improve the finish on the work.

Clearance Angle.—The clearance angle (see illustration) for roughing steel varies from 1.5 to 3 degrees and for finishing steel from 0.5 to 1 degree. Some recommend the same clearance angles for cast iron, and others larger clearance angles varying from 2 to 4 or 5 degrees. Additional data will be found in Table 1.

Land Width.—The width of the land usually is about 0.25 × pitch. It varies, however, from about one-fourth to one-third of the pitch. The land width is selected so as to obtain the proper balance between tooth strength and chip space.

Depth of Broach Teeth.—The tooth depth as established experimentally and on the basis of experience usually varies from about 0.37 to 0.40 of the pitch. This depth is measured radially from the cutting edge to the bottom of the tooth fillet.

Radius of Tooth Fillet.—The "gullet" or bottom of the chip space between the teeth should have a rounded fillet to strengthen the broach, facilitate curling of the chips, and safeguard against cracking in connection with the hardening operation. One rule is to make the radius equal to one-fourth the pitch. Another is to make it equal 0.4 to 0.6 the tooth depth. A third method preferred by some broach designers is to make the radius equal one-third of the sum obtained by adding together the land width, one-half the tooth depth, and one-fourth of the pitch.

Total Length of Broach.—After the depth of cut per tooth has been determined, the total amount of material to be removed by a broach is divided by this decimal to ascertain the number of cutting teeth required. This number of teeth multiplied by the pitch gives the length of the active portion of the broach. By adding to this dimension the distance over three or four straight teeth, the length of a pilot to be provided at the finishing end of the broach, and the length of a shank which must project through the work and the faceplate of the machine to the draw-head, the overall length of the broach is found. This calculated length is often greater than the stroke of the machine, or greater than is practical for a broach of the diameter required. In such cases, a set of broaches must be used.

Chipbreakers.—The teeth of broaches frequently have rounded chipbreaking grooves located at intervals along the cutting edges. These grooves break up wide curling chips and prevent them from clogging the chip spaces, thus reducing the cutting pressure and strain on the broach. These chipbreaking grooves are on the roughing teeth only. They are staggered and applied to both round and flat or surface broaches. The grooves are formed by a round-edged grinding wheel and usually vary in width from about $\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{3}{32}$ inch (0.79 to 2.38 mm) depending upon the size of broach. The more ductile the material, the wider the chipbreaker grooves should be and the smaller the distance between

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

them. Narrow slotting broaches may have the right- and left-hand corners of alternate teeth beveled to obtain chipbreaking action.

Shear Angle.—The teeth of surface broaches ordinarily are inclined so they are not at right angles to the broaching movement. The object of this inclination is to obtain a shearing cut, which results in smoother cutting action and an improvement in surface finish. The shearing cut also tends to eliminate troublesome vibration. Shear angles for surface broaches are not suitable for broaching slots or any profiles that resist the outward movement of the chips. When the teeth are inclined, the fixture should be designed to resist the resulting thrusts unless it is practicable to incline the teeth of right- and left-hand sections in opposite directions to neutralize the thrust. The shear angle usually varies from 10 to 25 degrees.

Types of Broaching Machines.—Broaching machines may be divided into horizontal and vertical designs, and classified further according to the method of operation, as, for example, whether a broach in a vertical machine is pulled up or pulled down in forcing it through the work. Horizontal machines usually pull the broach through the work in internal broaching, but short rigid broaches may be pushed through. External surface broaching is also done on some machines of horizontal design, but usually vertical machines are employed for flat or other external broaching. Although parts usually are broached by traversing the broach itself, some machines are designed to hold the broach or broaches stationary during the actual broaching operation. This principle has been applied both to internal and surface broaching.

Vertical Duplex Type: The vertical duplex type of surface-broaching machine has two slides or rams that move in opposite directions and operate alternately. While the broach connected to one slide is moving downward on the cutting stroke, the other broach and slide is returning to the starting position, and this returning time is utilized for reloading the fixture on that side; consequently, the broaching operation is practically continuous. Each ram or slide may be equipped to perform a separate operation on the same part when two operations are required.

Pull-up Type: Vertical hydraulically-operated machines that pull the broach or broaches up through the work are used for internal broaching of holes of various shapes and for broaching bushings, splined holes, small internal gears, etc. A typical machine of this kind is so designed that all broach handling is done automatically.

Pull-down Type: The various movements in the operating cycle of a hydraulic pull-down type of machine equipped with an automatic broach-handling slide are the reverse of the pull-up type. The broaches for a pull-down type of machine have shanks on each end, an upper one for the broach-handling slide and a lower one for pulling through the work.

Hydraulic Operation: Modern broaching machines, as a general rule, are operated hydraulically rather than by mechanical means. Hydraulic operation is efficient, flexible in the matter of speed adjustments, low in maintenance cost, and the "smooth" action required for fine precision finishing may be obtained. The hydraulic pressures required, which frequently are 800 to 1000 pounds per square inch (5.5 to 6.9 MPa), are obtained from a motor-driven pump forming part of the machine. The cutting speeds of broaching machines frequently are between 20 and 30 feet per minute (6.1 to 9.1 m/min), and the return speeds often are double the cutting speed, or higher, to reduce the idle period.

Ball-Broaching.—Ball-broaching is a method of securing bushings, gears, or other components without the need for keys, pins, or splines. A series of axial grooves, separated by ridges, is formed in the bore of the workpiece by cold plastic deformation of the metal when a tool, having a row of three rotating balls around its periphery, is pressed through the parts. When the bushing is pressed into a broached bore, the ridges displace the softer material of the bushing into the grooves, thus securing the assembly. The balls can be made of high-carbon chromium steel or carbide, depending on the hardness of the component.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Broaching Difficulties.—The accompanying table has been compiled from information supplied by the National Broach and Machine Co. and presents some of the common broaching difficulties, their causes and means of correction.

Causes of Broaching Difficulties

Broaching Difficulty	Possible Causes
Stuck broach	Insufficient machine capacity; dulled teeth; clogged chip gullets; failure of power during cutting stroke. To remove a stuck broach, remove workpiece and broach from the machine as a unit; never try to back out broach by reversing machine. If broach does not loosen by tapping workpiece lightly and trying to slide it off its starting end, mount workpiece and broach in a lathe and turn down workpiece to the tool surface. Workpiece may be sawed longitudinally into several sections in order to free the broach. Check broach design; perhaps tooth relief (back off) angle is too small or depth of cut per tooth is too great.
Galling and pickup	Lack of homogeneity of material being broached—uneven hardness, porosity; improper or insufficient coolant; poor broach design, mutilated broach; dull broach; improperly sharpened broach; improperly designed or outworn fixtures. Good broach design will do away with possible chip build-up on tooth faces and excessive heating. Grinding of teeth should be accurate so that the correct gullet contour is maintained. Contour should be fair and smooth.
Broach breakage	Overloading; broach dullness; improper sharpening; interrupted cutting stroke; backing up broach with workpiece in fixture; allowing broach to pass entirely through guide hole; ill fitting and/or sharp-edged key; crooked holes; untrue locating surface; excessive hardness of workpiece; insufficient clearance angle; sharp corners on pull end of broach. When grinding bevels on pull end of broach, use wheel that is not too pointed.
Chatter	Too few teeth in cutting contact simultaneously; excessive hardness of material being broached; loose or poorly constructed tooling; surging of ram due to load variations. Chatter can be alleviated by changing the broaching speed, by using shear cutting teeth instead of right-angle teeth, and by changing the coolant and the face and relief angles of the teeth.
Drifting or misalignment of tool during cutting stroke	Lack of proper alignment when broach is sharpened in grinding machine, which may be caused by dirt in the female center of the broach; inadequate support of broach during the cutting stroke, on a horizontal machine especially; body diameter too small; cutting resistance variable around I.D. due to lack of symmetry of surfaces to be cut; variations in hardness around I.D.; too few teeth in cutting contact.
Streaks in broached surface	Lands too wide; presence of forging, casting or annealing scale; metal pickup; presence of grinding burrs and grinding and cleaning abrasives.
Rings in the broached hole	Surging resulting from uniform pitch of teeth; presence of sharpening burrs on broach; tooth clearance angle too large; locating face not smooth or square; broach not supported for all cutting teeth passing through the work. The use of differential tooth spacing or shear cutting teeth helps in preventing surging. Sharpening burrs on a broach may be removed with a wood block.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

FILES AND BURS

Files

Definitions of File Terms.—The following file terms apply to hand files but not to rotary files and burs.

Axis: Imaginary line extending the entire length of a file equidistant from faces and edges.

Back: The convex side of a file having the same or similar cross section as a half-round file.

Bastard Cut: A grade of file coarseness between coarse and second cut of American pattern files and rasps.

Blank: A file in any process of manufacture before being cut.

Blunt: A file whose cross-sectional dimensions from point to tang remain unchanged.

Coarse Cut: The coarsest of all American pattern file and rasp cuts.

Coarseness: Term describing the relative number of teeth per unit length, the coarsest having the least number of file teeth per unit length; the smoothest, the most. American pattern files and rasps have four degrees of coarseness: coarse, bastard, second and smooth. Swiss pattern files usually have seven degrees of coarseness: 00, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 (from coarsest to smoothest). Curved-tooth files have three degrees of coarseness: standard, fine and smooth.

Curved Cut: File teeth that are made in curved contour across the file blank.

Cut: Term used to describe file teeth with respect to their coarseness or their character (single, double, rasp, curved, special).

Double Cut: A file tooth arrangement formed by two series of cuts, namely the overcut followed, at an angle, by the upcut.

Edge: Surface joining faces of a file. May have teeth or be smooth.

Face: Widest cutting surface or surfaces that are used for filing.

Heel or Shoulder: That portion of a file that abuts the tang.

Hopped: A term used among file makers to represent a very wide skip or spacing between file teeth.

Length: The distance from the heel to the point.

Overcut: The first series of teeth put on a double-cut file.

Point: The front end of a file; the end opposite the tang.

Rasp Cut: A file tooth arrangement of round-topped teeth, usually not connected, that are formed individually by means of a narrow, punch-like tool.

Re-cut: A worn-out file that has been re-cut and re-hardened after annealing and grinding off the old teeth.

Safe Edge: An edge of a file that is made smooth or uncut, so that it will not injure that portion or surface of the workplace with which it may come in contact during filing.

Second Cut: A grade of file coarseness between bastard and smooth of American pattern files and rasps.

Set: To blunt the sharp edges or corners of file blanks before and after the overcut is made, in order to prevent weakness and breakage of the teeth along such edges or corners when the file is put to use.

Shoulder or Heel: See *Heel or Shoulder*.

Single Cut: A file tooth arrangement where the file teeth are composed of single unbroken rows of parallel teeth formed by a single series of cuts.

Smooth Cut: An American pattern file and rasp cut that is smoother than second cut.

Tang: The narrowed portion of a file which engages the handle.

Upcut: The series of teeth superimposed on the overcut, and at an angle to it, on a double-cut file.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

File Characteristics.—Files are classified according to their shape or cross section and according to the pitch or spacing of their teeth and the nature of the cut.

Cross Section and Outline: The cross section may be quadrangular, circular, triangular, or some special shape. The outline or contour may be tapered or blunt. In the former, the point is more or less reduced in width and thickness by a gradually narrowing section that extends for one-half to two-thirds of the length. In the latter the cross section remains uniform from tang to point.

Cut: The character of the teeth is designated as single, double, rasp or curved. The *single-cut file* (or *float* as the coarser cuts are sometimes called) has a single series of parallel teeth extending across the face of the file at an angle of from 45 to 85 degrees with the axis of the file. This angle depends upon the form of the file and the nature of the work for which it is intended. The single-cut file is customarily used with a light pressure to produce a smooth finish. The *double-cut file* has a multiplicity of small pointed teeth inclining toward the point of the file arranged in two series of diagonal rows that cross each other. For general work, the angle of the first series of rows is from 40 to 45 degrees and of the second from 70 to 80 degrees. For *double-cut finishing files,* the first series has an angle of about 30 degrees, and the second from 80 to 87 degrees. The second, or upcut, is almost always deeper than the first or overcut. Double-cut files are usually employed, under heavier pressure, for fast metal removal and where a rougher finish is permissible. The *rasp* is formed by raising a series of individual rounded teeth from the surface of the file blank with a sharp, narrow, punch-like cutting tool and is used with a relatively heavy pressure on soft substances for fast removal of material. The curved-tooth file has teeth that are in the form of parallel arcs extending across the face of the file, the middle portion of each arc being closest to the point of the file. The teeth are usually single cut and are relatively coarse. They may be formed by steel displacement but are more commonly formed by milling.

With reference to coarseness of cut, the terms *coarse, bastard, second* and *smooth cuts* are used, the coarse or bastard files for the heavier classes of work and the second- or smooth-cut files for the finishing or more exacting work. These degrees of coarseness are only comparable when files of the same length are compared, as the number of teeth per inch of length decreases as the length of the file increases. The number of teeth per inch varies considerably for different sizes and shapes and for files of different makes. The coarseness range for the curved-tooth files is given as standard, fine and smooth. In the case of Swiss pattern files, a series of numbers is used to designate coarseness instead of names; Nos. 00, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 6 being the most common with No. 00 the coarsest and No. 6 the finest.

Classes of Files.—There are five main classes of files: mill or saw files; machinists' files; curved-tooth files; Swiss pattern files; and rasps. The first two classes are commonly referred to as American pattern files.

Mill or Saw Files: These are used for sharpening mill or circular saws, and large crosscut saws; for lathe work; for draw filing; for filing brass and bronze; and for smooth filing generally. The number identifying the following files refers to the illustration in Fig. 1.

1) *Cantsaw files* have an obtuse isosceles triangular section, a blunt outline, are single cut and are used for sharpening saws having M-shaped teeth and teeth of less than 60-degree angle; 2) *Crosscut files* have a narrow triangular section with the short side rounded and a blunt outline, are single cut and are used to sharpen crosscut saws. The rounded portion is used to deepen the gullets of saw teeth, and the sides are used to sharpen the teeth themselves; 3) *Double ender files* have a triangular section, are tapered from the middle to both ends, are tangless and single cut, and are used reversibly for sharpening saws; 4) *The mill file* itself is usually single cut, tapered in width, and often has two square cutting edges in addition to the cutting sides. Either or both edges may be rounded, however, for filing the gullets of saw teeth. *The blunt mill file* has a uniform rectangular cross section from tip to tang; 5) The *triangular saw files* or *taper saw files* have an equilateral

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

triangular section, are tapered, are single cut and are used for filing saws with 60-degree angle teeth. They come in taper, slim taper, extra-slim taper and double-extra-slim taper thicknesses. *Blunt triangular* and *blunt hand-saw files* are without taper; and 6) *Web saw files* have a diamond-shaped section, a blunt outline, are single cut and are used for sharpening pulpwood or web saws.

Machinists' Files: These files are used throughout industry where metal must be removed rapidly and finish is of secondary importance. Except for certain exceptions in the round and half-round shapes, all are double cut. 7) *Flat files* have a rectangular section, are tapered in width and thickness, are cut on both sides and edges, and are used for general utility work; 8) *Half-round files* have a circular segmental section, are tapered in width and thickness, have their flat side double cut, their rounded side mostly double but sometimes single cut, and are used to file rounded holes, concave corners, etc., in general filing work; 9) *Hand files* are similar to flat files but taper in thickness only. One edge is uncut or "safe."; and 10) *Knife files* have a "knife-blade" section, are tapered in width only, are double cut, and are used by tool and die makers on work having acute angles.

Machinist's general purpose files have a rectangular section, are tapered and have single-cut teeth divided by angular serrations that produce short cutting edges. These edges help stock removal but still leave a smooth finish and are suitable for use on various materials, including aluminum, bronze, cast iron, malleable iron, mild steels and annealed tool steels.

11) *Pillar files* are similar to hand files but are thicker and not as wide; 12) *Round files* have a circular section, are tapered, single cut, and are generally used to file circular openings or curved surfaces; 13) *Square files* have a square section, are tapered, and are used for filing slots and keyways, and for general surface filing where a heavier section is preferred; 14) *Three-square files* have an equilateral triangular section and are tapered on all sides. They are double cut and have sharp corners, as contrasted with taper triangular files, which are single cut and have somewhat rounded corners. They are used for filing accurate internal angles, for clearing out square corners, and for filing taps and cutters; and 15) *Warding files* have a rectangular section, and taper in width to a narrow point. They are used for general narrow-space filing.

Wood files are made in the same sections as flat and half round files but with coarser teeth especially suited for working on wood.

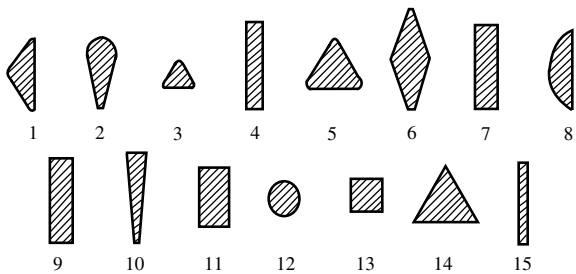


Fig. 1. Styles of Mill or Saw Files

Curved-Tooth Files: Regular curved-tooth files are made in both rigid and flexible forms. The rigid type has either a tang for a conventional handle or is made plain with a hole at each end for mounting in a special holder. The flexible type is furnished for use in special holders only. Curved-tooth files come in standard fine and smooth cuts and in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

parallel flat, square, pillar, pillar narrow, half-round and shell types. A special curved-tooth file is available with teeth divided by long angular serrations. The teeth are cut in an "off center" arc. When moved across the work toward one edge of the file a fast cutting action is provided; when moved toward the other edge, a smoothing action; thus the file is made to serve a dual purpose.

Swiss Pattern Files: These are used by tool and die makers, model makers and delicate instrument parts finishers. They are made to closer tolerances than the conventional American pattern files although with similar cross sections. The points of the Swiss pattern files are smaller, the tapers are longer, and they are available in much finer cuts. They are primarily finishing tools for removing burrs left from previous finishing operations truing up narrow grooves, notches and keyways, cleaning out corners and smoothing small parts. For very fine work, *round-* and *square-handled needle files,* available in numerous cross-sectional shapes in overall lengths from 4 to 7 $\frac{3}{4}$ inches, are used. Die sinkers use *die sinkers' files* and *die sinkers' rifflers*. The files, also made in many different cross-sectional shapes, are $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length and are available in the cut Nos. 0, 1, 2, and 4. The rifflers are from $5\frac{1}{2}$ to $6\frac{3}{4}$ inches long, have cutting surfaces on either end, and come in numerous cross-sectional shapes in cut Nos. 0, 2, 3, 4 and 6. These rifflers are used by die makers for getting into corners, crevices, holes and contours of intricate dies and molds. Used in the same fashion as die sinkers' rifflers, *silversmiths' rifflers,* that have a much heavier cross section, are available in lengths from 6 $\frac{7}{8}$ to 8 inches and in cut Nos. 0, 1, 2, and 3. *Blunt machine files* in cut Nos. 00, 0, and 2 for use in ordinary and bench filing machines are available in many different cross-sectional shapes, in lengths from 3 to 8 inches.

Rasps: Rasps are employed for work on relatively soft substances such as wood, leather, and lead where fast removal or material is required. They come in rectangular and half round cross sections, the latter with and without a sharp edge.

Special Purpose Files: Falling under one of the preceding five classes of files, but modified to meet the requirements of some particular function, are a number of special-purpose files. The *long-angle lathe file* is used for filing work that is rotating in a lathe. The long tooth angle provides a clean shear, eliminates drag or tear and is self-clearing. This file has safe or uncut edges to protect shoulders of the work which are not to be filed. The *foundry file* has especially sturdy teeth with heavy-set edges for the snagging of castings—the removing of fins, sprues, and other projections. The *die-casting file* has extra-strong teeth on corners and edges as well as sides for working on die castings of magnesium, zinc, or aluminum alloys. A special file for stainless steel is designed to stand up under the abrasive action of stainless steel alloys. *Aluminum rasps* and *files* are designed to eliminate clogging. A special tooth construction is used in one type of aluminum tile which breaks up the filings, allows the file to clear itself and overcomes chatter. A *brass file* is designed so that with a little pressure the sharp, high-cut teeth bite deep, while, with less pressure, their short uncut angle produces a smoothing effect. The *lead float* has coarse, single-cut teeth at almost right angles to the file axis. These shear away the metal under ordinary pressure and produce a smoothing effect under light pressure. The *shear-tooth file* has a coarse single cut with a long angle for soft metals or alloys, plastics, hard rubber and wood. *Chainsaw files* are designed to sharpen all types of chainsaw teeth. These files come in round, rectangular, square and diamond-shaped sections. The round- and square-sectioned files have either double- or single-cut teeth, the rectangular files have single-cut teeth, and the diamond-shaped files have double-cut teeth.

Effectiveness of Rotary Files and Burs.—There it very little difference in the efficiency of rotary files or burs when used in electric tools and when used in air tools, provided the speeds have been reasonably well selected. Flexible-shaft and other machines used as a source of power for these tools have a limited number of speeds which govern the revolutions per minute at which the tools can be operated.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The carbide bur may be used on hard or soft materials with equally good results. The principle difference in construction of the carbide bur is that its teeth or flutes are provided with a negative rather than a radial rake. Carbide burs are relatively brittle and must be treated more carefully than ordinary burs. They should be kept cutting freely, in order to prevent too much pressure, which might result in crumbling of the cutting epics.

At the same speeds, both high-speed steel and carbide burs remove approximately the same amount of metal. However, when carbide burs are used at their most efficient speeds, the rate of stock removal may be as much as four times that of ordinary burs. In certain cases, speeds much higher than those shown in the table can be used. It has been demonstrated that a carbide bur will last up to 100 times as long as a high-speed steel bur of corresponding size and shape.

Approximate Speeds of Rotary Files and Burs

Tool Diameter		Medium Cut, High-Speed Steel Bur or File					Carbide Bur	
		Mild Steel	Cast Iron	Bronze	Aluminum	Magnesium	Medium Cut	Fine Cut
inches	mm	Speed, Revolutions per Minute					Any Material	
1/8	3.2	4600	7000	15,000	20,000	30,000	45,000	30,000
1/4	6.4	3450	5250	11,250	15,000	22,500	30,000	20,000
3/8	9.5	2750	4200	9000	12,000	18,000	24,000	16,000
1/2	12.7	2300	3500	7500	10,000	15,000	20,000	13,350
5/8	15.9	2000	3100	6650	8900	13,350	18,000	12,000
3/4	19.1	1900	2900	6200	8300	12,400	16,000	10,650
7/8	22.2	1700	2600	5600	7500	11,250	14,500	9650
1	25.4	1600	2400	5150	6850	10,300	13,000	8650
1 1/8	28.6	1500	2300	4850	6500	9750	…	…
1 1/4	31.8	1400	2100	4500	6000	9000	…	…

As recommended by the Nicholson File Company.

Steel Wool.— Steel wool is made by shaving thin layers of steel from wire. The wire is pulled, by special machinery built for the purpose, past cutting tools or through cutting dies that shave off chips from the outside. Steel wool consists of long, relatively strong, and resilient steel shavings having sharp edges. This characteristic renders it an excellent abrasive. The fact that the cutting characteristics of steel wool vary with the size of the fiber, which is readily controlled in manufacture, has adapted it to many applications.

Metals other than steel have been made into wool by the same processes as steel, and when so manufactured have the same general characteristics. Thus wool has been made from copper, lead, aluminum, bronze, brass, monel metal, and nickel. The wire from which steel wool is made may be produced by either the Bessemer, or the basic or acid open-hearth processes. It should contain from 0.10 to 0.20 percent carbon; from 0.50 to 1.00 percent manganese; from 0.020 to 0.090 percent sulphur; from 0.050 to 0.120 percent phosphorus; and from 0.001 to 0.010 percent silicon. When drawn on a standard tensile-strength testing machine, a sample of the steel should show an ultimate strength of not less than 120,000 pounds per square inch (828 MPa).

Steel Wool Grades

Description	Grade	Fiber Thickness		Description	Grade	Fiber Thickness	
		Inch	Millimeter			Inch	Millimeter
Super Fine	0000	0.001	0.025	Medium	1	0.0025	0.06
Extra Fine	000	0.0015	0.035	Medium Coarse	2	0.003	0.075
Very Fine	00	0.0018	0.04	Coarse	3	0.0035	0.09
Fine	0	0.002	0.05	Extra Coarse	4	0.004	0.10

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

KNURLS AND KNURLING

Standard Knurls and Knurling.—The ANSI/ASME Standard B94.6-1984 (R2014) covers knurling tools with standardized diametral pitches and their dimensional relations with respect to the work in the production of straight, diagonal, and diamond knurling on cylindrical surfaces having teeth of uniform pitch parallel to the cylinder axis or at a helix angle not exceeding 45 degrees with the work axis.

These knurling tools and the recommendations for their use are equally applicable to general purpose and precision knurling. The advantage of this ANSI/ASME Standard system is the provision by which good tracking (the ability of teeth to mesh as the tool penetrates the work blank in successive revolutions) is obtained by tools designed on the basis of diametral pitch instead of TPI (teeth per inch) when used with work blank diameters that are multiples of $^1/_{64}$ inch for 64 and 128 diametral pitch or $^1/_{32}$ inch for 96 and 160 diametral pitch. The use of knurls and work blank diameters that will permit good tracking should improve the uniformity and appearance of knurling, eliminate costly trial and error methods, reduce the failure of knurling tools and the production of defective work, and decrease the number of tools required. Preferred sizes for cylindrical knurls are given in Table 1, and detailed specifications appear in Table 2.

Table 1. ANSI Standard Preferred Sizes for Cylindrical Type Knurls
ANSI/ASME B94.6-1984 (R2014)

Nominal Outside Diameter D_{nt}	Width of Face F	Diameter of Hole A	Standard Diametral Pitches, P			
			64	96	128	160
			Number of Teeth, N_t, for Standard Pitches			
1/2	3/16	3/16	32	48	64	80
5/8	1/4	1/4	40	60	80	100
3/4	3/8	1/4	48	72	96	120
7/8	3/8	1/4	56	84	112	140
Additional Sizes for Bench and Engine Lathe Tool Holders						
5/8	5/16	7/32	40	60	80	100
3/4	5/8	1/4	48	72	96	120
1	3/8	5/16	64	96	128	160

The 96 diametral pitch knurl should be given preference in the interest of tool simplification. Dimensions D_{nt}, F, and A are in inches.

Table 2. ANSI Standard Specifications for Cylindrical Knurls with Straight or Diagonal Teeth *ANSI/ASME B94.6-1984 (R2014)*

Diametral Pitch P	Nominal Diameter, D_{nt}					Tracking Correction Factor Q	Tooth Depth, h, +0.0015, −0.0000		Radius at Root R
	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1		Straight	Diagonal	
	Major Diameter of Knurl, D_{nt}, +0.0000, −0.0015								
64	0.4932	0.6165	0.7398	0.8631	0.9864	0.0006676	0.024	0.021	0.0070 0.0050
96	0.4960	0.6200	0.7440	0.8680	0.9920	0.0002618	0.016	0.014	0.0060 0.0040
128	0.4972	0.6215	0.7458	0.8701	0.9944	0.0001374	0.012	0.010	0.0045 0.0030
160	0.4976	0.6220	0.7464	0.8708	0.9952	0.00009425	0.009	0.008	0.0040 0.0025

All dimensions except diametral pitch are in inches.

Approximate angle of space between sides of adjacent teeth for both straight and diagonal teeth is 80 degrees. The permissible eccentricity of teeth for all knurls is 0.002 inch maximum (total indicator reading).

Number of teeth in a knurl equals diametral pitch multiplied by nominal diameter.

Diagonal teeth have 30-degree helix angle, ψ.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The term *Diametral Pitch* applies to the quotient obtained by dividing the total number of teeth in the circumference of the work by the basic blank diameter; in the case of the knurling tool, the diametrical pitch would be the total number of teeth in the circumference divided by the *nominal* diameter. In the Standard, the diametral pitch and number of teeth are always measured in a transverse plane that is perpendicular to the axis of rotation for diagonal as well as straight knurls and knurling.

Cylindrical Knurling Tools.—The cylindrical type of knurling tool is comprised of a tool holder and one or more knurls. The knurl has a centrally located mounting hole and is provided with straight or diagonal teeth on its periphery. The knurl is used to reproduce this tooth pattern on the work blank as the knurl and work blank rotate together.

**Formulas for Cylindrical Knurls*

$$P = \text{diametral pitch of knurl} = N_t \div D_{nt} \quad (1)$$

$$D_{nt} = \text{nominal diameter of knurl} = N_t \div P \quad (2)$$

$$N_t = \text{no. of teeth on knurl} = P \times D_{nt} \quad (3)$$

$$*P_{nt} = \text{circular pitch on nominal diameter} = \pi \div P \quad (4)$$

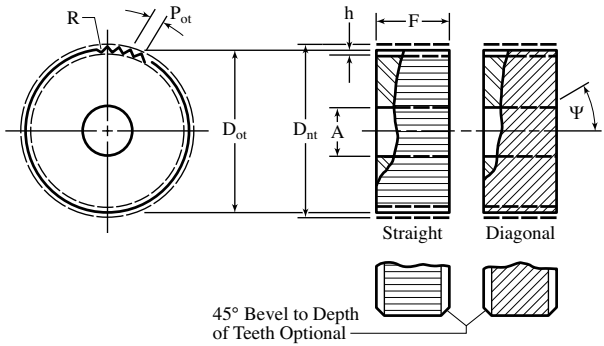
$$*P_{ot} = \text{circular pitch on major diameter} = \pi D_{ot} \div N_t \quad (5)$$

$$D_{ot} = \text{major diameter of knurl} = D_{nt} - (N_t Q \div \pi) \quad (6)$$

$$Q = P_{nt} - P_{ot} = \text{tracking correction factor in Formula} \quad (7)$$

Tracking Correction Factor Q: Use of the preferred pitches for cylindrical knurls, Table 2, results in good tracking on all fractional work-blank diameters that are multiples of $1/64$ inch for 64 and 128 diametral pitch, and $1/32$ inch for 96 and 160 diametral pitch; an indication of good tracking is evenness of marking on the work surface during the first revolution of the work.

The many variables involved in knurling practice require that an empirical correction method be used to determine what actual circular pitch is needed at the major diameter of the knurl to produce good tracking and the required circular pitch on the workpiece. The empirical tracking correction factor, Q, in Table 2 is used in the calculation of the major diameter of the knurl, Formula (6).



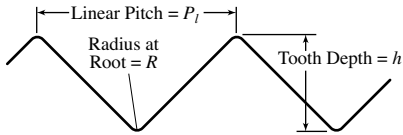
Cylindrical Knurl

* *Note:* For diagonal knurls, P_{nt} and P_{ot} are the transverse circular pitches that are measured in the plane perpendicular to the axis of rotation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flat Knurling Tools.—The flat type of tool is a knurling die, commonly used in reciprocating types of rolling machines. Dies may be made with either single or duplex faces having either straight or diagonal teeth. No preferred sizes are established for flat dies.

Flat Knurling Die with Straight Teeth:



R = radius at root

P = diametral pitch = $N_w \div D_w$ (8)

D_w = work blank (pitch) diameter = $N_w \div P$ (9)

N_w = number of teeth on work = $P \times D_w$ (10)

h = tooth depth

Q = tracking correction factor (see Table 2)

P_l = linear pitch on die

= circular pitch on work pitch diameter = $P - Q$ (11)

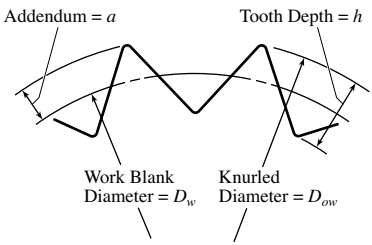
Table 3. ANSI Standard Specifications for Flat Knurling Dies

ANSI/ASME B94.6-1984 (R2014)

Diametral Pitch, P	Linear Pitch,[a] P_l	Tooth Depth, h		Radius at Root, R	Diametral Pitch, P	Linear Pitch,[a] P_l	Tooth Depth, h		Radius at Root, R
		Straight	Diagonal				Straight	Diagonal	
64	0.0484	0.024	0.021	0.0070 0.0050	128	0.0244	0.012	0.010	0.0045 0.0030
96	0.0325	0.016	0.014	0.0060 0.0040	160	0.0195	0.009	0.008	0.0040 0.0025

[a] The linear pitches are theoretical. The exact linear pitch produced by a flat knurling die may vary slightly from those shown, depending upon the rolling condition and the material being rolled.

All dimensions except diametral pitch are in inches.



Teeth on Knurled Work

Formulas Applicable to Knurled Work.—The following formulas are applicable to knurled work with straight, diagonal, and diamond knurling.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Straight or Diagonal Knurling with Straight- or Diagonal-Tooth Cylindrical Knurling Tools Set with Knurl Axis Parallel with Work Axis:

$$P = \text{diametral pitch} = N_w \div D_w \tag{12}$$

$$D_w = \text{work blank diameter} = N_w \div P \tag{13}$$

$$N_w = \text{no. of teeth on work} = P \times D_w \tag{14}$$

$$a = \text{“addendum” of tooth on work} = (D_{ow} - D_w) \div 2 \tag{15}$$

h = tooth depth (see Table 2)

$$D_{ow} = \text{knurled diameter (outside diameter after knurling)} = D_w + 2a \tag{16}$$

Formulas for Diagonal and Diamond Knurling with Straight-Tooth Knurling Tools Set at an Angle to the Work Axis:

If, ψ = angle between tool axis and work axis

P = diametral pitch on tool

P_ψ = diametral pitch produced on work blank (as measured in the transverse plane) by setting tool axis at an angle ^{y} with respect to work blank axis

D_w = diameter of work blank; and

N_w = number of teeth produced on work blank (as measured in the transverse plane)

then, $$P_\psi = P \cos \psi \tag{17}$$

and, $$N = D_w P \cos \psi \tag{18}$$

For example, if 30-degree diagonal knurling were to be produced on 1-inch diameter stock with a 160 pitch straight knurl:

$$N_w = D_w P \cos 30° = 1.000 \times 160 \times 0.86603 = 138.56 \text{ teeth}$$

Good tracking is theoretically possible by changing the helix angle as follows to correspond to a whole number of teeth (138):

$$\cos\psi = N_w \div D_w P = 138 \div (1 \times 160) = 0.8625$$

$$\psi = 30\frac{1}{2} \text{ degrees, approximately}$$

Whenever it is more practical to machine the stock, good tracking can be obtained by reducing the work blank diameter as follows to correspond to a whole number of teeth (138):

$$D_w = \frac{N_w}{P \cos\psi} = \frac{138}{160 \times 0.866} = 0.996 \text{ inch}$$

Table 4. ANSI Standard Recommended Tolerances on Knurled Diameters
ANSI/ASME B94.6-1984 (R2014)

Tolerance Class	Diametral Pitch							
	64	96	128	160	64	96	128	160
	Tolerance on Knurled Outside Diameter				Tolerance on Work-Blank Diameter Before Knurling			
I	+0.005 −0.012	+0.004 −0.010	+0.003 −0.008	+0.002 −0.006	±0.0015	±0.0010	±0.0007	±0.0005
II	+0.000 −0.010	+0.000 −0.009	+0.000 −0.008	+0.000 −0.006	±0.0015	±0.0010	±0.0007	±0.0005
III	+0.000 −0.006	+0.000 −0.005	+0.000 −0.004	+0.000 −0.003	+0.000 −0.0015	+0.0000 −0.0010	+0.000 −0.0007	+0.0000 −0.0005

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Recommended Tolerances on Knurled Outside Diameters.—The recommended applications of the tolerance classes shown in Table 4 are as follows:

Class I: Tolerances in this classification may be applied to straight, diagonal and raised diamond knurling where the knurled outside diameter of the work need not be held to close dimensional tolerances. Such applications include knurling for decorative effect, grip on thumb screws, and inserts for moldings and castings.

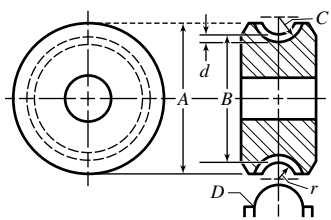
Class II: Tolerances in this classification may be applied to straight knurling only and are recommended for applications requiring closer dimensional control of the knurled outside diameter than provided for by Class I tolerances.

Class III: Tolerances in this classification may be applied to straight knurling only and are recommended for applications requiring closest possible dimensional control of the knurled outside diameter. Such applications include knurling for close fits.

Note: The width of the knurling should not exceed the diameter of the blank, and knurling wider than the knurling tool cannot be produced unless the knurl starts at the end of the work.

Marking on Knurls and Dies.—Each knurl and die should be marked as follows: *a*. when straight to indicate its diametral pitch; *b*. when diagonal, to indicate its diametral pitch, helix angle, and hand of angle.

Concave Knurls.—The radius of a concave knurl should not be the same as the radius of the piece to be knurled. If the knurl and the work are of the same radius, the material compressed by the knurl will be forced down on the shoulder *D* and spoil the appearance of the work. A design of concave knurl is shown in the accompanying illustration, and all the important dimensions are designated by letters. To find these dimensions, the pitch of the knurl required must be known, and also, approximately, the throat diameter *B*. This diameter must suit the knurl holder used and be such that the circumference contains an even number of teeth with the required pitch. When these dimensions have been decided upon, all the other unknown factors can be found by the following formulas: Let R = radius of piece to be knurled; r = radius of concave part of knurl; C = radius of cutter or hob for cutting the teeth in the knurl; B = diameter over concave part of knurl (throat diameter); A = outside diameter of knurl; d = depth of tooth in knurl; P = pitch of knurl (number of teeth per inch circumference); p = circular pitch of knurl; then $r = R + \frac{1}{2}d$; $C = r + d$; $A = B + 2r - (3d + 0.010 \text{ inch})$; and $d = 0.5 \times p \times \cot \alpha/2$, where α is the included angle of the teeth.



As the depth of the tooth is usually very slight, the throat diameter *B* will be accurate enough for all practical purposes for calculating the pitch, and it is not necessary to take into consideration the pitch circle. For example, assume that the pitch of a knurl is 32, that the throat diameter *B* is 0.5561 inch, that the radius *R* of the piece to be knurled is $\frac{1}{16}$ inch, and that the angle of the teeth is 90 degrees; find the dimensions of the knurl. Using the notation given:

$$p = \frac{1}{P} = \frac{1}{32} = 0.03125 \text{ inch} \qquad d = 0.5 \times 0.03125 \times \cot 45^\circ = 0.0156 \text{ inch}$$

$$r = \frac{1}{16} + \frac{0.0156}{2} = 0.0703 \text{ inch} \qquad C = 0.0703 + 0.0156 = 0.0859 \text{ inch}$$

$$A = 0.5561 + 0.1406 - (0.0468 + 0.010) = 0.6399 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TOOL WEAR AND SHARPENING

Metal cutting tools wear constantly when they are being used. A normal amount of wear should not be a cause for concern until the size of the worn region indicates that the tool should be replaced. Normal wear cannot be avoided and should be differentiated from abnormal tool breakage or excessively fast wear. Tool breakage and an excessive rate of wear indicate that the tool is not operating correctly, and steps should be taken to correct this situation.

There are several basic mechanisms that cause tool wear. It is generally understood that tools wear as a result of abrasion caused by hard particles of work material plowing over the surface of the tool. Wear is also caused by diffusion or alloying between the work and tool material. In regions where the conditions of contact are favorable, work material reacts with tool material, causing an attrition of the tool material. The rate of this attrition is dependent upon the temperature in the region of contact and the reactivity of the tool and work materials with each other. Diffusion or alloying also occurs where particles of the work material are welded to the surface of the tool. These welded deposits are often quite visible in the form of a built-up edge, as particles or a layer of work material inside a crater, or as small mounds attached to the face of the tool. The diffusion or alloying occurring between these deposits and the tool weakens the tool material below the weld. Frequently these deposits are again rejoined to the chip by welding, or they are simply broken away by the force of collision with the passing chip. When this happens, a small amount of the tool material may remain attached to the deposit and be plucked from the surface of the tool, to be carried away with the chip. This mechanism can cause chips to be broken from the cutting edge and cause the formation of small craters, or pull-outs, on the tool face. It can also contribute to the enlargement of the larger crater that sometimes forms behind the cutting edge. Among the other mechanisms that can cause tool wear are severe thermal gradients and thermal shocks, which cause cracks to form near the cutting edge, ultimately leading to tool failure. This condition can be caused by improper tool grinding procedures, by heavy interrupted cuts, or by the improper application of cutting fluids when machining at high cutting speeds. Chemical reactions between the active constituents in some cutting fluids sometimes accelerate the rate of tool wear. Oxidation of the heated metal near the cutting edge also contributes to tool wear, particularly when fast cutting speeds and high cutting temperatures are encountered. Breakage of the cutting edge caused by overloading, heavy shock loads, or improper tool design is not normal wear and should be corrected.

The wear mechanisms described above bring about visible manifestations of wear on the tool, which should be understood so that the proper corrective measures can be taken, when required. These visible signs of wear are described in the following paragraphs, and the corrective measures that might be required are given in the table *Tool Troubleshooting Check List* on page 1083. The best procedure when troubleshooting is to try to correct only one condition at a time. When a correction has been made, it should be checked. After one condition has been corrected, work can then be started to correct the next condition.

Flank Wear.—Tool wear occurring on the flank of the tool below the cutting edge is called flank wear. Flank wear always takes place and cannot be avoided. It should not give rise to concern unless the rate of flank wear is too fast or the flank wear land becomes too large in size. The size of the flank wear can be measured as the distance between the top of the cutting edge and the bottom of the flank wear land. In practice, a visual estimate is usually made instead of a precise measurement, although in many instances flank wear is ignored and the tool wear is "measured" by the loss of size on the part. The best measure of tool wear, however, is flank wear. When it becomes too large, the rubbing action of the wear land against the workpiece increases and the cutting edge must be replaced. Because conditions vary, it is not possible to give an exact amount of flank wear at which the tool should be replaced. Although there are many exceptions, as a rough estimate, high-speed steel tools should be replaced when the width of the flank wear land reaches 0.005 to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

0.010 inch (0.13–0.25 mm) for finish turning and 0.030 to 0.060 inch (0.76–1.52 mm) for rough turning; and for cemented carbides 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.13–0.25 mm) for finish turning and 0.020 to 0.040 inch (0.51–1.02 mm) for rough turning.

Under ideal conditions, which, surprisingly, occur quite frequently, the width of the flank wear land will be very uniform along its entire length. When the depth of cut is uneven, such as when turning out-of-round stock, the bottom edge of the wear land may become somewhat slanted, the wear land being wider toward the nose. A jagged-appearing wear land usually is evidence of chipping at the cutting edge. Sometimes, only one or two sharp depressions of the lower edge of the wear land will appear to indicate that the cutting edge has chipped above these depressions. A deep notch will sometimes occur at the "depth of cut line," or that part of the cutting opposite the original surface of the work. This can be caused by a hard surface scale on the work, by a work-hardened surface layer on the work, or when machining high-temperature alloys. Often the size of the wear land is enlarged at the nose of the tool. This can be a sign of crater breakthrough near the nose or of chipping in this region. Under certain conditions, when machining with carbides, it can be an indication of deformation of the cutting edge in the region of the nose.

When a sharp tool is first used, the initial amount of flank wear is quite large in relation to the subsequent total amount. Under normal operating conditions, the width of the flank wear land will increase at a uniform rate until it reaches a critical size, after which the cutting edge breaks down completely. This is called catastrophic failure, and the cutting edge should be replaced before this occurs. When cutting at slow speeds with high-speed steel tools, there may be long periods when no increase in the flank wear can be observed. For a given work material and tool material, the rate of flank wear is primarily dependent on the cutting speed and then on the feed rate.

Cratering.—A deep crater will sometimes form on the face of the tool, which is easily recognizable. The crater forms at a short distance behind the side cutting edge, leaving a small shelf between the cutting edge and the edge of the crater. This shelf is sometimes covered with the built-up edge and at other times it is uncovered. Often the bottom of the crater is obscured with work material that is welded to the tool in this region. Under normal operating conditions, the crater will gradually enlarge until it breaks through a part of the cutting edge. Usually this occurs on the end cutting edge just behind the nose. When this takes place, the flank wear at the nose increases rapidly and complete tool failure follows shortly. Sometimes cratering cannot be avoided, and a slow increase in the size of the crater is considered normal. However, if the rate of crater growth is rapid, leading to a short tool life, corrective measures must be taken.

Cutting Edge Chipping.—Small chips are sometimes broken from the cutting edge, which accelerates tool wear but does not necessarily cause immediate tool failure. Chipping can be recognized by the appearance of the cutting edge and the flank wear land. A sharp depression in the lower edge of the wear land is a sign of chipping, and, if this edge of the wear land has a jagged appearance, it indicates that a large amount of chipping has taken place. Often the vacancy or cleft in the cutting edge that results from chipping is filled up with work material that is tightly welded in place. This occurs very rapidly when chipping is caused by a built-up edge on the face of the tool. In this manner, the damage to the cutting edge is healed; however, the width of the wear land below the chip is usually increased and the tool life is shortened.

Deformation.—Deformation occurs on carbide cutting tools when taking a very heavy cut using a slow cutting speed and a high feed rate. A large section of the cutting edge then becomes very hot, and the heavy cutting pressure compresses the nose of the cutting edge, thereby lowering the face of the tool in the area of the nose. This reduces the relief under the nose, increases the width of the wear land in this region, and shortens tool life.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Surface Finish.—The finish on the machined surface does not necessarily indicate poor cutting tool performance unless there is a rapid deterioration. A good surface finish is, however, sometimes a requirement. The principal cause of a poor surface finish is the built-up edge that forms along the edge of the cutting tool. The elimination of the built-up edge will always result in an improvement of the surface finish. The most effective way to eliminate the built-up edge is to increase cutting speed. When cutting speed is increased beyond a certain critical limit, there will be a rather sudden and large improvement in the surface finish. Cemented carbide tools can operate successfully at higher cutting speeds, where the built-up edge does not occur and where a good surface finish is obtained. Whenever possible, cemented carbide tools should be operated at cutting speeds where a good surface finish will result. There are times when such speeds are not possible. Also, high-speed tools cannot be operated at the speed where the built-up edge does not form. In these conditions, the most effective method of obtaining a good surface finish is to employ a cutting fluid that has active sulphur or chlorine additives.

Cutting tool materials that do not alloy readily with the work material are also effective in obtaining an improved surface finish. Straight titanium carbide and diamond are the two principal tool materials that fall into this category.

The presence of feed marks can mar an otherwise good surface finish, and attention must be paid to the feed rate and the nose radius of the tool if a good surface finish is desired. Changes in tool geometry can also be helpful. A small "flat," or secondary cutting edge, ground on the end cutting edge behind the nose will sometimes provide the desired surface finish. When the tool is in operation, the flank wear should not be allowed to become too large, particularly in the region of the nose where the finished surface is produced.

Sharpening Twist Drills.—Twist drills are cutting tools designed to perform concurrently several functions, such as penetrating directly into solid material, ejecting the removed chips outside the cutting area, maintaining the essentially straight direction of the advance movement and controlling the size of the drilled hole. The geometry needed for these multiple functions is incorporated into the design of the twist drill in such a manner that it can be retained even after repeated sharpening operations. Twist drills are resharpened many times during their service life, with the practically complete restitution of their original operational characteristics. However, in order to obtain all the benefits which the design of the twist drill is capable of providing, the surfaces generated in the sharpening process must agree with the original form of the tool's operating surfaces, unless a change of shape is required for use on a different work material.

The principal elements of tool geometry essential for the adequate cutting performance of twist drills are shown in Fig. 1. The generally used values for these dimensions are the following:

Point angle: Commonly 118°, except for high strength steels, 118° to 135°; aluminum alloys, 90° to 140°; and magnesium alloys, 70° to 118°.

Helix angle: Commonly 24° to 32°, except for magnesium and copper alloys, 10° to 30°.

Lip relief angle: Commonly 10° to 15°, except for high strength or tough steels, 7° to 12°. The lower values of these angle ranges are used for drills of larger diameter, the higher values for the smaller diameters. For drills of diameters less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm), the lip relief angles are increased beyond the listed maximum values up to 24°. For soft and free machining materials, 12° to 18° except for diameters less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm), 20° to 26°.

Relief Grinding of the Tool Flanks.—In sharpening twist drills the tool flanks containing the two cutting edges are ground. Each flank consists of a curved surface, which provides the relief needed for the easy penetration and free cutting of the tool edges. In grinding the flanks, Fig. 2, the drill is swung around the axis *A* of an imaginary cone while resting in a support that holds the drill at one-half the point angle *B* with respect to the face of the grinding wheel. Feed *f* for stock removal is in the direction of the drill axis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The relief angle is usually measured at the periphery of the twist drill and is also specified by that value. It is not a constant but should increase toward the center of the drill.

The relief grinding of the flank surfaces will generate the chisel angle on the web of the twist drill. The value of that angle, typically 55°, which can be measured, for example, with the protractor of an optical projector, is indicative of the correctness of the relief grinding.

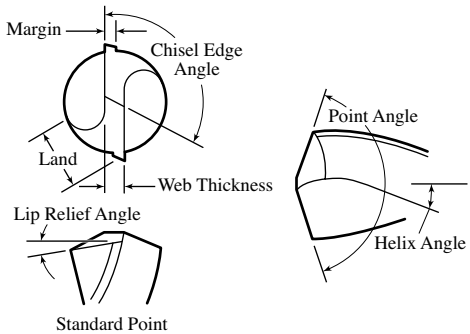


Fig. 1. The principal elements of tool geometry on twist drills.

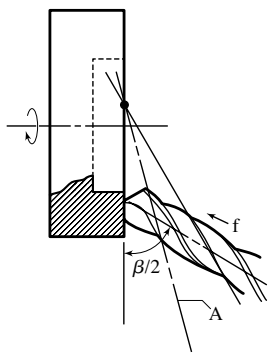


Fig. 2. In grinding the face of the twist drill, the tool is swung around the axis *A* of an imaginary cone, while resting in a support tilted by half of the point angle β with respect to the face of the grinding wheel. Feed *f* for stock removal is in the direction of the drill axis.

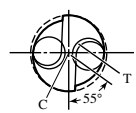


Fig. 3. The chisel edge *C* after thinning the web by grinding off area *T*.

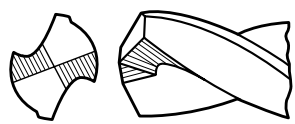


Fig. 4. Split-point or "crankshaft" type web thinning.

Drill Point Thinning.—The chisel edge is the least efficient operating surface element of the twist drill because it does not cut, but actually squeezes or extrudes, the work material. To improve the inefficient cutting conditions caused by the chisel edge, the point width is often reduced in a drill-point thinning operation, resulting in a condition such as that shown in Fig. 3. Point thinning is particularly desirable on larger size drills and also on those which become shorter in usage, because the thickness of the web increases toward the shaft of the twist drill, thereby adding to the length of the chisel edge. The extent of point thinning is limited by the minimum strength of the web needed to avoid splitting of the drill point under the influence of cutting forces.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Both sharpening operations—the relieved face grinding and the point thinning—should be carried out in special drill-grinding machines or with twist drill-grinding fixtures mounted on general-purpose tool-grinding machines designed to assure the essential accuracy of the required tool geometry. Off-hand grinding may be used for the important web thinning when a special machine is not available; however, such operations require skill and experience.

Improperly sharpened twist drills, e.g. those with unequal edge length or asymmetrical point angle, will tend to produce holes with poor diameter and directional control.

For deep holes and for drilling into stainless steel, titanium alloys, high temperature alloys, nickel alloys, very high-strength materials and in some cases tool steels, split-point grinding, resulting in a "crankshaft" type drill point, is recommended. In this type of pointing, see Fig. 4, the chisel edge is entirely eliminated, extending the positive rake cutting edges to the center of the drill, thereby greatly reducing the required thrust in drilling. Points on modified-point drills must be restored after sharpening to maintain their increased drilling efficiency.

Sharpening Carbide Tools.—Cemented carbide indexable inserts are usually not re-sharpened, but sometimes they require a special grind in order to form a contour on the cutting edge to suit a special purpose. Brazed-type carbide cutting tools are resharpened after the cutting edge has become worn. On brazed carbide tools, the cutting-edge wear should not be allowed to become excessive before the tool is re-sharpened. One method of determining when brazed carbide tools need resharpening is by periodic inspection of the flank wear and the condition of the face. Another method is to determine the amount of production normally obtained before excessive wear has taken place, or to determine the equivalent period of time. One disadvantage of this method is that slight variations in the work material will often cause the wear rate not to be uniform and the number of parts machined before regrinding will not be the same each time. Usually, sharpening should not require removal of more than 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.13–0.25 mm) of carbide.

General Procedure in Carbide-Tool Grinding: The general procedure depends upon the kind of grinding operation required. If the operation is to resharpen a dull tool, a diamond wheel of 100- to 120-grain size is recommended, although a finer wheel—up to 150-grain size—is sometimes used to obtain a better finish. If the tool is new or is a "standard" design and changes in shape are necessary, a 100-grit diamond wheel is recommended for roughing and a finer grit diamond wheel can be used for finishing. Some shops prefer to rough-grind the carbide with a vitrified silicon carbide wheel, the finish grinding being done with a diamond wheel. A final operation commonly designated as lapping may or may not be employed for obtaining an extra-fine finish.

Wheel Speeds: The speed of silicon carbide wheels usually is about 5000 feet per minute (25.4 m/s). The speeds of diamond wheels generally range from 5000–6000 fpm (25.4–30.5 m/s); yet lower speeds (550–3000 fpm or 2.8–15.2 m/s) can be effective.

Offhand Grinding: In grinding single-point tools (excepting chipbreakers), the common practice is to hold the tool by hand, press it against the wheel face and traverse it continuously across the wheel face while the tool is supported on the machine rest or table, which is adjusted to the required angle. This is known as "offhand grinding" to distinguish it from the machine grinding of cutters as in regular cutter-grinding practice. The selection of wheels adapted to carbide-tool grinding is very important.

Silicon Carbide Wheels.—The green-colored silicon carbide wheels generally are preferred to the dark gray or gray-black variety, although the latter are sometimes used.

Grain or Grit Sizes: For roughing, a grain size of 60 is very generally used. For finish grinding with silicon carbide wheels, a finer grain size of 100 or 120 is common. A silicon carbide wheel such as C60-I-7V may be used for grinding both the steel shank and carbide tip. However, for under-cutting steel shanks up to the carbide tip, it may be advantageous to use an aluminum oxide wheel suitable for grinding softer, carbon steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Grade: According to the standard system of marking, different grades from soft to hard are indicated by letters from A to Z. For carbide-tool grinding fairly soft grades such as G, H, I, and J are used. The usual grades for roughing are I or J and for finishing H, I, and J. The grade should be such that a sharp free-cutting wheel will be maintained without excessive grinding pressure. Harder grades than those indicated tend to overheat and crack the carbide.

Structure: The common structure numbers for carbide-tool grinding are 7 and 8. The larger cup-wheels (10 to 14 inches or 254–356 mm) may be of the porous type and be designated as 12P. The standard structure numbers range from 1 to 15 with progressively higher numbers indicating less density and more open wheel structure.

Diamond Wheels.—Wheels with diamond-impregnated grinding faces are fast and cool cutting and have a very low rate of wear. They are used extensively both for resharpening and for finish grinding of carbide tools when preliminary roughing is required. Diamond wheels are also adapted for sharpening multi-tooth cutters such as milling cutters, reamers, etc., which are ground in a cutter-grinding machine.

Resinoid bonded wheels are commonly used for grinding chipbreakers, milling cutters, reamers or other multi-tooth cutters. They are also applicable to precision grinding of carbide dies, gages, and various external, internal and surface grinding operations. Fast, cool cutting action is characteristic of these wheels.

Metal bonded wheels are often used for offhand grinding of single-point tools especially when durability or long life and resistance to grooving of the cutting face are considered more important than the rate of cutting. *Vitrified bonded* wheels are used both for roughing of chipped or very dull tools and for ordinary resharpening and finishing. They provide rigidity for precision grinding, a porous structure for fast cool cutting, sharp cutting action and durability.

Diamond Wheel Grit Sizes.—For roughing with diamond wheels, a grit size of 100 is the most common both for offhand and machine grinding.

Grit sizes of 120 and 150 are frequently used in offhand grinding of single-point tools 1) for resharpening; 2) for a combination roughing and finishing wheel; and 3) for chipbreaker grinding.

Grit sizes of 220 or 240 are used for ordinary finish grinding all types of tools (offhand and machine) and also for cylindrical, internal and surface finish grinding. Grits of 320 and 400 are used for "lapping" to obtain very fine finishes, and for hand hones. A grit of 500 is for lapping to a mirror finish on such work as carbide gages and boring or other tools for exceptionally fine finishes.

Diamond Wheel Grades.—Diamond wheels are made in several different grades to better adapt them to different classes of work. The grades vary for different types and shapes of wheels. Standard Norton grades are H, J, and L for resinoid-bonded wheels, grade N for metal-bonded wheels and grades J, L, N, and P for vitrified wheels. Harder and softer grades than standard may at times be used to advantage.

Diamond Concentration.—The relative amount (by carat weight) of diamond in the diamond section of the wheel is known as the "diamond concentration." Concentrations of 100 (high), 50 (medium) and 25 (low) ordinarily are supplied. A concentration of 50 represents one-half the diamond content of 100 (if the depth of the diamond is the same in each case) and 25 equals one-fourth the content of 100 or one-half the content of 50 concentration.

100 Concentration: Generally interpreted to mean 72 carats of diamond/in^3 of abrasive section. (A 75 concentration indicates 54 carats/in^3.) Recommended (especially in grit sizes up to about 220) for general machine grinding of carbides, and for grinding cutters and chipbreakers. Vitrified and metal-bonded wheels usually have 100 concentration.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

50 Concentration: In the finer grit sizes of 220, 240, 320, 400, and 500, a 50 concentration is recommended for offhand grinding with resinoid-bonded cup-wheels.

25 Concentration: A low concentration of 25 is recommended for offhand grinding with resinoid-bonded cup-wheels with grit sizes of 100, 120 and 150.

Depth of Diamond Section: The radial depth of the diamond section usually varies from $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (1.6 to 6.4 mm). The depth varies somewhat according to the wheel size and type of bond.

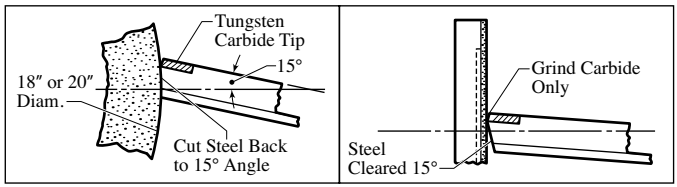
Dry Versus Wet Grinding of Carbide Tools.—In using silicon carbide wheels, grinding should be done either absolutely dry or with enough coolant to flood the wheel and tool. Satisfactory results may be obtained either by the wet or dry method. However, dry grinding is the most prevalent usually because, in wet grinding, operators tend to use an inadequate supply of coolant to obtain better visibility of the grinding operation and avoid getting wet; hence checking or cracking in many cases is more likely to occur in wet grinding than in dry grinding.

Wet Grinding with Silicon Carbide Wheels: One advantage commonly cited in connection with wet grinding is that an ample supply of coolant permits using wheels about one grade harder than in dry grinding, thus increasing the wheel life. Plenty of coolant also prevents thermal stresses and the resulting cracks, and there is less tendency for the wheel to load. A dust exhaust system also is unnecessary.

Wet Grinding with Diamond Wheels: In grinding with diamond wheels, the general practice is to use a coolant to keep the wheel face clean and promote free cutting. The amount of coolant may vary from a small stream to a coating applied to the wheel face by a felt pad.

Coolants for Carbide Tool Grinding.—In grinding either with silicon carbide or diamond wheels, a coolant that is used extensively consists of water plus a small amount either of soluble oil, sal soda, or soda ash to prevent corrosion. One prominent manufacturer recommends for silicon carbide wheels about 1 ounce of soda ash per gallon of water, and for diamond wheels kerosene. The use of kerosene is quite general for diamond wheels and is usually applied to the wheel face by a felt pad. Another coolant recommended for diamond wheels consists of 80 percent water and 20 percent soluble oil.

Peripheral Versus Flat Side Grinding.—In grinding single-point carbide tools with silicon carbide wheels, the roughing preparatory to finishing with diamond wheels may be done either by using the flat face of a cup-shaped wheel (side grinding) or the periphery of a "straight" or disk-shaped wheel. Even where side grinding is preferred, the periphery of a straight wheel may be used for heavy roughing as in grinding back-chipped or broken tools (see left-hand diagram). Reasons for preferring peripheral grinding include faster cutting with less danger of localized heating and checking especially in grinding broad surfaces. The advantages usually claimed for side grinding are that proper rake or relief angles are easier to obtain and the relief or land is ground flat. The diamond wheels used for tool sharpening are designed for side grinding. (See right-hand diagram.)



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Lapping Carbide Tools.—Carbide tools may be finished by lapping, especially if an exceptionally fine finish is required on the work as, for example, with tools used for precision boring or turning nonferrous metals. If the finishing is done by using a diamond wheel of very fine grit (such as 240, 320, or 400), the operation is often called "lapping." A second lapping method is by means of a power-driven lapping disk charged with diamond dust, Norbide powder, or silicon carbide finishing compound. A third method is by using a hand lap or hone usually of 320 or 400 grit. In many plants, the finishes obtained with carbide tools meet requirements without a special lapping operation. In all cases, any feather edge which may be left on tools should be removed, and it is good practice to bevel the edges of roughing tools at 45 degrees to leave a chamfer 0.005 to 0.010 inch wide (0.127–0.254 mm). This is done by hand honing, and the object is to prevent crumbling or flaking off at the edges when hard scale or heavy chip pressure is encountered.

Hand Honing: The cutting edge of carbide tools, and tools made from other tool materials, is sometimes hand honed before it is used in order to strengthen the cutting edge. When interrupted cuts or heavy roughing cuts are to be taken, or when the grade of carbide is slightly too hard, hand honing is beneficial because it will prevent chipping or even possibly, breakage of the cutting edge. Whenever chipping is encountered, hand honing the cutting edge before use will be helpful. It is important, however, to hone the edge lightly and only when necessary. Heavy honing will always cause a reduction in tool life. Normally, removing 0.002 to 0.004 inch (0.051–0.102 mm) from the cutting edge is sufficient. When indexable inserts are used, the use of pre-honed inserts is preferred to hand honing, although sometimes an additional amount of honing is required. Hand honing of carbide tools in between cuts is sometimes done to defer grinding or to increase the life of a cutting edge on an indexable insert. If correctly done, so as not to change the relief angle, this procedure is sometimes helpful. If improperly done, it can result in a reduction in tool life.

Chipbreaker Grinding.—For this operation a straight diamond wheel is used on a universal tool and cutter grinder, a small surface grinder, or a special chipbreaker grinder. A resinoid-bonded wheel of grade J or N commonly is used, and the tool is held rigidly in an adjustable holder or vise. The width of the diamond wheel usually varies from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (3.2–6.4 mm). A vitrified bond may be used for wheels as thick as $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm), and a resinoid bond for relatively narrow wheels.

Summary of Miscellaneous Points.—In grinding a single-point carbide tool, traverse it across the wheel face continuously to avoid localized heating. This traverse movement should be quite rapid in using silicon carbide wheels and comparatively slow with diamond wheels. A hand traversing and feeding movement, whenever practicable, is generally recommended because of greater sensitivity. In grinding, maintain a constant, moderate pressure. Manipulating the tool so as to keep the contact area with the wheel as small as possible will reduce heating and increase the rate of stock removal. Never cool a hot tool by dipping it in a liquid, as this may crack the tip. Wheel rotation should preferably be *against* the cutting edge or from the front face toward the back. If the grinder is driven by a reversing motor, opposite sides of a cup wheel can be used for grinding right-and left-hand tools and with rotation against the cutting edge. If it is necessary to grind the top face of a single-point tool, this should precede the grinding of the side and front relief, and top-face grinding should be minimized to maintain the tip thickness. In machine grinding with a diamond wheel, limit the feed per traverse to 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) for 100 to 120 grit; 0.0005 inch (0.013 mm) for 150 to 240 grit; and 0.0002 inch (0.005 mm) for 320 grit and finer.

Meshes, Sieves, and Screens

Sieving or screening is a method of categorizing powder particle size by running the powder through a specific size screen or screens. Powder can be separated into two or more size fractions by stacking the screens (Fig. 1), thereby determining the powder

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

particle size distribution. Sieves and screens are usually used for larger particle sized materials, greater than 44 micron (325 Mesh).

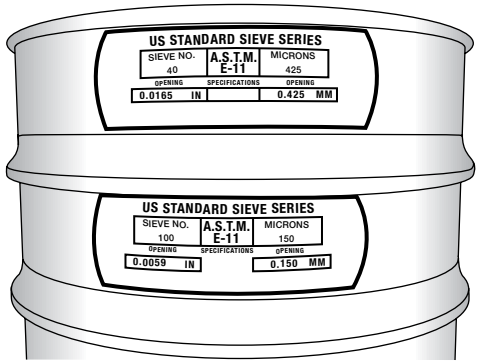


Fig. 1.

Two scales are frequently used to classify particle sizes; *US Sieve Series* and *Tyler Mesh Size*, also called *Tyler Standard Sieve Series*. The larger the mesh number the smaller the particle size of the powder. The Tyler mesh number indicates the number of openings in the screen per linear inch.

- A −6 mesh powder contains particles that pass through a 6 mesh screen. A −6 mesh powder has particles that measure less than 3360 microns.
- A powder that is −325 mesh has particles that measure less than 44 micron.

Market Grade sieves use thicker wire than other commercial grades, and are commonly used for applications where mesh strength (and therefore screen life) is important.

Mill Grade sieves use a thinner wire diameter, which provide more open area for a given mesh size. Therefore, Mill Grade sieves are used when throughput is more important than durability.

Tensile Bolting Cloth uses very fine wire diameters, and thus provides the highest fraction of open area of all sieve types; it is often used for fine sifting and screen printing.

A comparison of standard screen and sieve sizes are indicated in Table 2 and Table 5.

Example 1: A tantalum powder has the following description:

Tantalum Powder, −325 Mesh, 3N8 Purity

The minus (−) sign in the designation −325 indicates that particle sizes of less than 44 micron (μm) (Table 1) are able to pass through a 325 mesh screen. Much of the powder may be considerably smaller and still qualify as a −325 mesh powder, but the designation −325 mesh simply means that the powder will pass through a 325 mesh screen.

The 3N8 Purity indicates a purity of 99.98% relative to other rare earth powders; similarily, 2N5 indicates 99.5% purity, 5N8 indicates 99.9998%, and 6N indicates 99.9999%, etc.

Example 2: illustrates two stacked screens. If a powder is required to fall within a specified max/min range of sizes, two mesh sizes maybe specified such as in the following:

Tantalum Powder, −40+100 Mesh, 3N8 Purity

The −40 designation indicates that the powder will pass through an 40 mesh screen, and the designation +100 indicates that particles are trapped (do not pass through) by a 100 mesh screen. Thus −40+100 indicates a range of particle sizes small enough to pass the 40 mesh and too large to pass the 100 mesh screen.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Commercial Sieve Mesh Dimensions

Sieve size	Opening		Standard Mesh		Tensile Bolting Cloth			Mill Grade			Market Grade		
(mm)	(in.)	(μm)	US	Tyler	Mesh	Opening	Wire	Mesh	Opening	Wire	Mesh	Opening	Wire
11.2	0.438	11200	7/16	–	–	–	–	2	0.466	0.054	2	0.437	0.063
6.35	0.25	6350	1/4	–	–	–	–	3	0.292	0.041	3	0.279	0.054
5.6	0.223	5600	3.5	3.5	–	–	–	4	0.215	0.035	4	0.2023	0.0475
4.75	0.187	–	4	4	–	–	–	–	–	–	4	0.187	0.063
4	0.157	–	5	5	–	–	–	5	0.168	0.032	5	0.159	0.041
3.36	0.132	–	6	6	–	–	–	6	0.139	0.028	6	0.132	0.0348
2.8	0.11	–	7	7	–	–	–	7	0.115	0.028	7	0.108	0.035
2.36	0.0937	–	8	8	–	–	–	8	0.1	0.025	8	0.0964	0.0286
2	0.0787	–	10	9	–	–	–	9	0.088	0.023	10	0.0742	0.0258
1.85	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	10	0.08	0.02	11	0.073	0.018
1.7	0.0661	–	12	10	14	0.062	0.009	12	0.065	0.018	12	0.0603	0.023
1.4	0.0555	–	14	12	16	0.0535	0.009	14	0.054	0.017	14	0.051	0.0204
1.18	0.0469	–	16	14	18	0.0466	0.009	16	0.0465	0.016	16	0.0445	0.0181
1.04	–	–	–	–	20	0.041	0.009	–	–	–	–	–	–
1	0.0394	–	18	16	22	0.038	0.0075	18	0.0406	0.015	18	0.0386	0.0173
0.841	0.0331	841	20	20	24	0.0342	0.0075	20	0.036	0.014	20	0.034	0.0162
0.787	–	–	–	–	26	0.031	0.0075	22	0.032	0.0135	–	–	–
0.71	0.0278	–	25	24	28	0.0282	0.0075	24	0.0287	0.013	24	0.0277	0.014
0.681	–	–	–	–	30	0.0268	0.0065	26	0.0275	0.011	–	–	–
0.63	–	–	–	–	32	0.0248	0.0065	28	0.0275	0.01	–	–	–
0.595	0.0232	595	30	28	34	0.0229	0.0065	30	0.0238	0.0095	–	–	–
0.541	–	–	–	–	36	0.0213	0.0065	32	0.0223	0.009	–	–	–
0.5	0.0197	–	35	32	38	0.0198	0.0065	34	0.0204	0.009	30	0.0203	0.0128
0.47	–	–	–	–	40	0.0185	0.0065	36	0.0188	0.009	–	–	–
0.465	–	–	–	–	42	0.0183	0.0055	38	0.0178	0.0085	–	–	–
0.437	–	–	–	–	44	0.0172	0.0055	–	–	–	35	0.0176	0.0118
0.4	0.0165	400	40	35	46	0.0162	0.0055	40	0.0165	0.0085	–	–	–
0.389	–	–	–	–	48	0.0153	0.0055	–	–	–	40	0.015	0.0104
0.368	–	–	–	–	50	0.0145	0.0055	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.355	0.0139	–	45	42	52	0.0137	0.0055	45	0.0142	0.008	–	–	–
0.33	–	–	–	–	54	0.013	0.0055	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.323	–	–	–	–	58	0.0127	0.0045	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.31	–	–	–	–	60	0.0122	0.0045	50	0.0125	0.0075	–	–	–
0.3	0.0117	–	50	48	62	0.0116	0.0045	55	0.0112	0.007	–	–	–
0.282	–	–	–	–	64	0.0111	0.0045	–	–	–	50	0.011	0.009
0.27	–	–	–	–	70	0.0106	0.0037	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.26	–	–	–	–	72	0.0102	0.0037	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.25	0.0098	250	60	60	74	0.0098	0.0037	60	0.0102	0.0065	–	–	–
0.241	–	–	–	–	76	0.0095	0.0037	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.231	–	–	–	–	78	0.0091	0.0037	–	–	–	60	0.0092	0.0075
0.224	–	–	–	–	80	0.0088	0.0037	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.21	0.0083	210	70	65	84	0.0084	0.0035	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.2	–	–	–	–	88	0.0079	0.0035	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.193	–	–	–	–	90	0.0076	0.0035	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.177	0.007	177	80	80	94	0.0071	0.0035	–	–	–	80	0.007	0.0055
0.165	–	–	–	–	105	0.0065	0.003	–	–	–	–	–	–
0.149	0.0059	149	100	100	120	0.0058	0.0025	–	–	–	100	0.0055	0.0045
0.125	0.0049	125	120	115	145	0.0047	0.0022	–	–	–	120	0.0046	0.0037
0.105	0.0041	105	140	150	165	0.0042	0.0019	–	–	–	150	0.0041	0.0026
0.088	0.0035	88	170	170	200	0.0034	0.0016	–	–	–	180	0.0033	0.0023
0.074	0.0029	74	200	200	230	0.0029	0.0014	–	–	–	200	0.0029	0.0021
0.063	0.0024	63	230	250	–	–	–	–	–	–	250	0.0024	0.0016
0.053	0.0021	53	270	270	300	0.0021	0.0012	–	–	–	270	0.0021	0.0016
0.044	0.0017	44	325	325	–	–	–	–	–	–	325	0.0017	0.0014
0.037	0.0015	37	400	400	–	–	–	–	–	–	400	0.0015	0.001

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As indicated by the fragment below from Table 1, the specified particles are therefore smaller than 40 mesh and larger than 100 mesh. Particles trapped above the 100 mesh screen range in size from greater than 149 µm to 400 µm. Particles smaller than 149 micron are passed through the 100 mesh screen. Approximately 90 percent of the particles trapped will fit within the specified range.

Sieve size (mm)	Opening		Standard Mesh	
	(in.)	(µm)	US	Tyler
…	…	…	…	…
0.4	0.0165	400	40	35
0.149	0.0059	149	100	100

Sieves and screens are stacked with the largest opening (smallest mesh size) above, and the smallest opening (largest mesh size) below, as in Fig. 2.

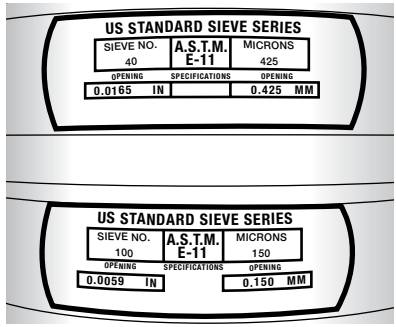


Fig. 2.

Table 2. Standard Sieves and Mesh Sizes

Mesh Size µm	TYLER Mesh	ASTM E-11 No.	BS 410 Mesh	DIN 4188 mm	Mesh Size µm	TYLER Mesh	ASTM E-11 No.	BS 410 Mesh	DIN 4188 mm
5	2500	…	2500	0.005	106	150	140	150	…
10	1250	…	1250	0.01	112	…	…	…	0.112
15	800	…	800	0.015	125	115	120	120	0.125
20	625	…	625	0.02	140	…	…	…	0.14
22	…	…	…	0.022	150	100	100	100	…
25	500	…	500	0.025	160	…	…	…	0.16
28	…	…	…	0.028	180	80	80	85	0.18
32	…	…	…	0.032	200	…	…	…	0.2
36	…	…	…	0.036	212	65	70	72	…
38	400	400	400	…	250	60	60	60	0.25
40	…	…	…	0.04	280	…	…	…	0.28
45	325	325	350	0.045	300	48	50	52	…
50	…	…	…	0.05	315	…	…	…	0.315
53	270	270	300	…	355	42	45	44	0.355
56	…	…	…	0.056	400	…	…	…	0.4
63	250	230	240	0.063	425	35	40	36	…
71	…	…	…	0.071	450	…	…	…	0.45

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Standard Sieves and Mesh Sizes**

Mesh Size µm	TYLER Mesh	ASTM E-11 No.	BS 410 Mesh	DIN 4188 mm	Mesh Size µm	TYLER Mesh	ASTM E-11 No.	BS 410 Mesh	DIN 4188 mm
75	200	200	200	…	500	32	35	30	0.5
80	…	…	…	0.08	560	…	…	…	0.56
90	170	170	170	0.09	600	28	30	25	…
100	…	…	…	0.1	…	…	…	…	…

Table 3. Typical Openings in Laboratory Sieve Series

Sieve size (mm)	BSS	Tyler (approx)	US (approx)	Sieve size (mm)	BSS	Tyler (approx)	US (approx)
4.75	-	4	4	0.354	44	42	45
3.35	5	6	6	0.297	52	48	50
2.81	6	7	7	0.251	60	60	60
2.38	7	8	8	0.211	72	65	70
2	8	9	10	0.178	85	80	80
1.68	10	10	12	0.152	100	100	100
1.4	12	12	14	0.125	120	115	120
1.2	14	14	16	0.104	150	150	140
1	16	16	18	0.089	170	170	170
0.853	18	20	20	0.075	200	200	200
0.71	22	24	25	0.066	240	250	230
0.599	25	28	30	0.053	300	270	270
0.5	30	32	35	0.044	350	325	325
0.422	36	35	40	0.037	440	400	400

BS 812-103.1:1985 Withdrawn replaced by BS EN 933-1:2011.
BS EN 933-1:2011 describes two methods for the determination of the particle size distribution of samples of aggregates and fillers by sieving.

Abrasive Grit Number.—Standard abrasive grain sizes are designated by numbers. These numbers range from number 8, which is the coarsest, to number 240, which is the finest. The allowable limits for the sizing of aluminum-oxide and silicon-carbide abrasives for grinding wheel manufacture are given in US Simplified Practice Recommendation 118. These numbers in most cases equal approximately the number of sieve openings per inch in the United States Standard Fine Sieve series. For example, a number 30 sieve has 0.0232-inch openings and a sieve wire diameter of 0.0130 inch, making the pitch equal to 0.0362 inch; hence there are 27.6 meshes per inch. The United States Standard Fine Sieve series ranges from number $3\frac{1}{2}$ to number 400.

Grading Abrasives: In the actual grading of abrasives, several standard sieves are used. To illustrate, take grit No. 10. All material must pass through the coarsest sieve—in this case the No. 7. Through the next to the coarsest sieve, termed the "control sieve"—in this case the No. 8—all material may pass, but not more than 15 percent may be retained on it. At least 45 percent must pass through No. 8, and be retained on No. 10 sieve, but it is permissible to have 100 percent pass through No. 8, and remain on No. 10 sieve, the requirement being that the grain passing through No. 8, and retained on No. 10 and No. 12 must add to at least 80 percent; consequently, if 45 percent passed through No. 8 sieve and was retained on No. 10 sieve, then at least 35 percent must be retained on the No. 12 sieve. Not more than 3 percent is permitted to pass through the No. 14 sieve.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CUTTING SPEEDS AND FEEDS

1077 Work Materials
1077 Cutting Tool Materials
1082 Cutting Speed, Feed, Depth of Cut, Tool Wear, and Tool Life
1082 Selecting Cutting Conditions
1083 Tool Troubleshooting
1084 Cutting Speed Formulas
1085 Cutting Speeds and Equivalent RPM for Drills of Number and Letter Sizes
1086 RPM for Various Cutting Speeds and Diameters

SPEEDS AND FEEDS TABLES

1090 How to Use the Speeds and Feeds Tables
1094 Speeds and Feeds Tables for Turning
1095 Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
1099 Tool Steels
1100 Stainless Steels
1101 Ferrous Cast Metals
1103 Turning Speed Adjustments
1103 Tool Life Factors
1105 Copper Alloys
1106 Titanium and Titanium Alloys
1107 Superalloys
1108 Speeds and Feeds Tables for Milling
1111 Slit Milling
1112 Aluminum Alloys
1113 Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
1117 Tool Steels
1118 Stainless Steels
1120 Ferrous Cast Metals
1122 High-Speed Steel Cutters
1124 Speed Adjustment Factors
1125 Radial Depth of Cut Adjustments
1127 Tool Life Adjustments
1128 Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading
1129 Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
1134 Tool Steels
1135 Stainless Steels
1136 Ferrous Cast Metals
1138 Light Metals
1139 Adjustment Factors for HSS
1140 Copper Alloys
1140 Tapping and Threading
1142 Cutting Speed for Broaching

ESTIMATING SPEEDS AND MACHINING POWER

1143 Estimating Planer Cutting Speeds
1143 Cutting Speed for Planing and Shaping
1143 Cutting Time for Turning, Boring, and Facing
1143 Planing Time
1143 Speeds for Metal-Cutting Saws
1143 Speeds for Turning Unusual Material
1145 Estimating Machining Power
1145 Power Constants
1148 Feed Factors
1148 Tool Wear Factors
1149 Metal Removal Rates
1151 Estimating Drilling Thrust, Torque, and Power
1151 Work Material Factor
1152 Chisel Edge Factors
1153 Feed Factors
1153 Drill Diameter Factors
1154 Boring
1154 Cutting Force
1155 Moduli of Elasticity
1155 Moment of Inertia
1155 Deflection of the Boring Bar

MICROMACHINING

1156 Introduction
1156 Machine Tool Requirements
1157 Microcutting Tools
1157 Tool Stiffness
1158 Tool Sharpness
1160 Tool Materials
1161 Tool Offset and Positioning
1164 Tool Damage
1166 Tool Life
1170 Workpiece Materials
1172 Ductile Regime Micromachining
1172 Crystallographic Directions and Planes
1173 Introduction
1173 Theory
1174 Case Study
1175 Cutting Fluids in Micromachining
1176 Safety
1176 Benefits
1177 Selection of Cutting Fluid
1177 Drop Size Measurement

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MICROMACHINING

(Continued)

1179 Contact Angle Measurement
1182 Dynamics of Microdroplets
1184 Case Studies
1186 Microfabrication Processes and Parameters
1186 Micromilling
1189 Microdrilling
1191 Microturning
1192 Speeds and Feeds

MACHINING ECONOMETRICS

1196 Tool Wear and Tool Life
1196 Equivalent Chip Thickness (*ECT*)
1197 Tool Life Relationships
1198 Taylor's Equation
1201 *G*- and *H*-Curves
1202 *V-ECT-T* Graph and the Tool Life Envelope
1205 Forces and Tool Life
1207 Surface Finish and Tool Life
1209 Shape of Tool Life Relationships
1210 Minimum Cost
1211 Production Rate
1211 The Cost Function
1212 Global Optimum
1213 Optimization Models, Economic Tool Life when Feed is Constant
1216 Determination of Machine Settings and Calculation of Costs
1217 Formulas Valid for All Operation Types Including Grinding
1217 Calculation of Cutting Time and Feed Rate
1217 Scheduling of Tool Changes
1218 Calculation of Cost of Cutting and Grinding Operations
1221 Variation of Tooling and Total Cost with the Selection of Speeds and Feeds
1222 Selection of Optimized Data
1225 High-Speed Machining Econometrics
1226 Chip Geometry in Milling
1228 Mean Chip Thickness
1228 Formulas
1230 Forces and Tool Life
1231 High-Speed Milling
1232 Econometrics Comparison

SCREW MACHINES, BAND SAWS, CUTTING FLUIDS

1234 Automatic Screw Machine Tool Operations
1234 Knurling
1234 Revolutions for Top Knurling
1234 Cams for Threading
1235 Cutting Speeds and Feeds
1237 Spindle Revolutions
1238 Practical Points on Cam and Tool Design
1239 Stock for Screw Machine Products
1241 Band Saw Blade Selection
1242 Tooth Forms
1242 Types of Blades
1243 Band Saw Speed and Feed Rate
1244 Bimetal Band Saw Speeds
1245 Band Saw Blade Break-In
1246 Cutting Fluids for Machining
1247 Cutting and Grinding Fluids
1247 Cutting Oils
1247 Water-Miscible Fluids
1248 Selection of Cutting Fluids
1249 Turning, Milling, Drilling and Tapping
1250 Machining Operations
1251 Machining Magnesium
1252 Metalworking Fluids
1252 Classes of Metalworking Fluids
1252 Occupational Exposures
1253 Fluid Selection, Use, and Application
1254 Fluid Maintenance
1255 Respiratory Protection

MACHINING NONFERROUS METALS AND NON-METALLIC MATERIALS

1256 Machining Nonferrous Metals
1256 Aluminum
1257 Magnesium
1258 Zinc Alloy Die Castings
1258 Monel and Nickel Alloys
1259 Copper Alloys
1259 Machining Non-Metals
1259 Hard Rubber
1259 Formica
1260 Micarta
1260 Ultrasonic Machining

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GRINDING FEEDS AND SPEEDS

1261 Basic Rules
1261 Wheel Life and Grinding Ratio
1262 *ECT* in Grinding
1263 Optimum Grinding Data
1265 Surface Finish, *Ra*
1266 Spark-Out Time
1267 Grinding Cutting Forces
1268 Grinding Data Selection
1269 Grindability Groups
1269 Side Feed, Roughing and Finishing
1270 Relative Grindability
1271 Grindability Overview
1271 Procedure to Determine Data
1277 Calibration of Recommendations
1279 Optimization

GRINDING AND OTHER ABRASIVE PROCESSES

1280 Grinding Wheels
1280 Abrasive Materials
1281 Bond Properties
1281 Structure
1282 ANSI Markings
1282 Sequence of Markings
1283 Standard Shapes and Sizes
1283 Selection of Grinding Wheels
1291 Grinding Wheel Faces
1293 Hardened Tool Steels
1297 Constructional Steels
1298 Cubic Boron Nitride
1299 Dressing and Truing
1301 Dressing and Truing with Single-Point Diamonds
1303 Size Selection Guide for Diamonds
1304 Diamond Wheels
1304 Shapes
1305 Core Shapes and Designations
1305 Cross Sections and Designations
1306 Designations for Location
1307 Composition
1308 Designation Letters
1309 Selection of Diamond Wheels
1309 Abrasive Specification
1310 Handling and Operation
1310 Speeds and Feeds
1311 Grinding Wheel Safety
1311 Safety in Operating
1311 Handling, Storage and Inspection
1311 Machine Conditions

GRINDING AND OTHER ABRASIVE PROCESSES

(Continued)

1312 Grinding Wheel Mounting
1312 Safe Operating Speeds
1313 Portable Grinders
1315 Cylindrical Grinding
1315 Plain, Universal, and Limited-Purpose Machines
1315 Traverse or Plunge Grinding
1315 Work Holding on Machines
1316 Work-Holding Methods
1316 Selection of Grinding Wheels
1317 Wheel Recommendations
1317 Operational Data
1318 Basic Process Data
1318 High-Speed Cylindrical Grinding
1319 Areas and Degrees of Automation
1319 Troubles and Correction
1323 Centerless Grinding
1324 Through-Feed Method of Grinding
1324 In-Feed Method
1324 End-Feed Method
1324 Automatic Centerless Method
1324 Internal Centerless Grinding
1324 Troubleshooting
1325 Surface Grinding
1325 Advantages
1326 Principal Systems
1328 Grinding Wheel Recommendations
1329 Process Data for Surface Grinding
1330 Faults and Possible Causes
1330 Vitrified Grinding Wheels
1330 Silicate Bonding Process
1330 Oilstones
1332 Offhand Grinding
1332 Floor- and Bench-Stand Grinding
1332 Portable Grinding
1332 Swing-Frame Grinding
1333 Abrasive Belt Grinding
1333 Abrasive Cutting
1334 Application of Abrasive Belts
1335 Selection of Contact Wheels
1336 Cutting-Off Difficulties
1336 Honing Process
1336 Rate of Stock Removal
1337 Formulas for Rotative Speeds
1337 Abrasive Stones for Honing
1338 Eliminating Undesirable Honing Conditions
1338 Tolerances

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GRINDING AND OTHER ABRASIVE PROCESSES

(Continued)

1338 Laps and Lapping
1338 Material for Laps
1339 Laps for Flat Surfaces
1339 Grading Abrasives
1339 Charging Laps
1340 Rotary Diamond Lap
1340 Grading Diamond Dust
1340 Cutting Properties
1341 Cutting Qualities
1341 Wear of Laps
1341 Lapping Abrasives
1341 Effect of Lapping Lubricants
1342 Lapping Pressures
1342 Wet and Dry Lapping
1342 Summary of Lapping Tests

NONTRADITIONAL MACHINING AND CUTTING

1342 Introduction
1344 Mechanical Erosion Processes
1344 Water Jet Machining
1345 Ultrasonic Machining
1345 Abrasive Flow Machining
1345 Magnetic Abrasive Finishing
1345 Electro-Thermal Processes
1345 Electrical Discharge Machining
1345 Laser Beam Machining
1348 Plasma Arc Machining
1350 Electron Beam Machining

CNC NUMERICAL CONTROL PROGRAMMING

1350 Introduction
1351 CNC Coordinate Geometry
1352 CNC Programming Process
1352 Word Address Format
1353 Program Development
1354 Control System
1355 CNC Program Data
1355 Program Structure
1358 Miscellaneous Function (M-Codes)
1359 Unit of Measurement (G20, G21)
1359 Absolute and Incremental Programming (G90, G91)
1359 Spindle Function (S-Address)
1360 Feed Rate Function (F-Address)
1360 Inverse Time Feed Rate

CNC NUMERICAL CONTROL PROGRAMMING

(Continued)

1361 Feed Rate Override
1361 Tool Function (T-Address)
1361 Tool Nose Radius Compensation
1361 Rapid Motion (G00)
1362 Linear Interpolation (G01)
1362 Circular Interpolation (G02, G03)
1363 Helical and Other Interpolation Methods
1364 Offsets for Milling
1364 Work Offset (G54 though G59)
1364 Tool Length Offset (G43, G44)
1365 Cutter Radius Offset (G41, G42)
1366 Machining Holes
1366 Fixed Cycles
1371 Contouring
1372 Turning and Boring
1374 Thread Cutting on CNC Lathes
1374 Depth of Thread Calculations
1375 Infeed Methods
1375 Radial Infeed
1375 Compound Infeed
1376 Threading Operations
1376 Threading Cycle (G32)
1376 Threading Cycle (G76)
1377 Multi-Start Threads
1377 Subprograms, Macros and Parametric Programming
1377 Subprograms
1378 Macros and Parametric Programming
1378 Basic Macro Skills
1379 Confirming Macro Capability
1379 Common Features and Applications
1379 Macro Structure
1380 Macro Definition and Call
1380 Variable Definition (G65)
1381 Types of Variables
1381 Variable Declarations and Expressions
1382 Macro Functions
1384 Branching and Looping
1385 Macro Example
1386 Axis Nomenclature
1390 Total Indicator Reading
1390 CAD/CAM
1390 Types of CAD Drawings
1392 Drawing Projections
1393 Drawing Tips and Traps
1396 Drawing Exchange Standards

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CUTTING SPEEDS AND FEEDS

Work Materials.—The large number of work materials that are commonly machined vary greatly in their basic structure and the ease with which they can be machined. Yet it is possible to group together certain materials having similar machining characteristics, for the purpose of recommending the cutting speed at which they can be cut. Most materials that are machined are metals and it has been found that the most important single factor influencing the ease with which a metal can be cut is its microstructure, followed by any cold-work that may have been done to the metal, which increases its hardness. Metals that have a similar, but not necessarily the same microstructure, will tend to have similar machining characteristics. Thus, the grouping of the metals in the accompanying tables has been done on the basis of their microstructure.

Except for a few soft and gummy metals, experience indicates that harder metals are more difficult to cut than softer metals. Also, any given metal is more difficult to cut when it is in a harder form than when it is softer. It is more difficult to penetrate the harder metal and more power is required. These factors in turn will generate a higher cutting temperature at any given cutting speed, thereby making it necessary to use a slower speed, for the cutting temperature must always be kept within the limits that can be sustained by the cutting tool without failure. Hardness, then, is an important property that must be considered when machining a given metal. Hardness alone, however, cannot be used as a measure of cutting speed. For example, if pieces of AISI 11L17 and AISI 1117 steel both have a hardness of 150 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number), their recommended cutting speeds for high-speed steel tools may be 140 fpm (0.71 m/s) and 130 fpm (0.66 m/s), respectively. In some metals, two entirely different microstructures can produce the same hardness. As an example, a fine pearlite microstructure and a tempered martensite microstructure can result in the same hardness in a steel. These microstructures will not machine alike. For practical purposes, however, information on hardness is usually easier to obtain than information on microstructure; thus, hardness alone is usually used to differentiate between different cutting speeds for machining a metal. In some situations, the hardness of a metal to be machined is not known. When the hardness is not known, the material condition can be used as a guide.

The surface of ferrous metal castings has a scale that is more difficult to machine than the metal below. Some scale is more difficult to machine than others, depending on the foundry sand used, the casting process, the method of cleaning the casting, and the type of metal cast. Special electrochemical treatments sometimes can be used that almost entirely eliminate the effect of the scale on machining, although castings so treated are not frequently encountered. Usually, when casting scale is encountered, the cutting speed is reduced approximately 5 or 10 percent. Difficult-to-machine surface scale can also be encountered when machining hot-rolled or forged steel bars.

Metallurgical differences that affect machining characteristics are often found within a single piece of metal. The occurrence of hard spots in castings is an example. Different microstructures and hardness levels may occur within a casting as a result of variations in the cooling rate in different parts of the casting. Such variations are less severe in castings that have been heat treated. Steel bar stock is usually harder toward the outside than toward the center of the bar. Sometimes there are slight metallurgical differences along the length of a bar that can affect its cutting characteristics.

Cutting Tool Materials.—The recommended cutting speeds and feeds in the accompanying tables are given for high-speed steel, coated and uncoated carbides, ceramics, cermets, and polycrystalline diamonds. More data are available for HSS and carbides because these materials are the most commonly used. Other materials that are used to make cutting tools are cemented oxides or ceramics, cermets, cast nonferrous alloys (Stellite), single-crystal diamonds, polycrystalline diamonds, and cubic boron nitride.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Carbon Tool Steel: It is used primarily to make the less expensive drills, taps, and reamers. It is seldom used to make single-point cutting tools. Hardening in carbon steels is very shallow, although some have a small amount of vanadium and chromium added to improve their hardening quality. The cutting speed to use for plain carbon tool steel should be approximately one-half of the recommended speed for high-speed steel.

High-Speed Steel: This designates a number of steels having several properties that enhance their value as cutting tool material. They can be hardened to a high initial or room-temperature hardness ranging from 63 to 65 RC (Rockwell C scale) for ordinary high-speed steels and up to 70 RC for the so-called super high-speed steels. They retain sufficient hardness at temperatures up to 1,000 or 1,100°F (573 or 593°C) to enable them to cut at cutting speeds that will generate these tool temperatures, and return to their original hardness when cooled to room temperature. They harden very deeply, enabling high-speed steels to be ground to the tool shape from solid stock and to be reground many times without sacrificing hardness at the cutting edge. High-speed steels can be made soft by annealing so that they can be machined into complex cutting tools such as drills, reamers, and milling cutters and then hardened.

The principal alloying elements of high-speed steels are tungsten (W), molybdenum (Mo), chromium (Cr), vanadium (V), together with carbon (C). There are a number of grades of high-speed steel that are divided into two types: tungsten high-speed steels and molybdenum high-speed steels. Tungsten high-speed steels are designated by the prefix T before the number that designates the grade. Molybdenum high-speed steels are designated by the prefix letter M. There is little performance difference between comparable grades of tungsten or molybdenum high-speed steel.

The addition of 5 to 12 percent cobalt to high-speed steel increases its hardness at the temperatures encountered in cutting, thereby improving its wear resistance and cutting efficiency. Cobalt slightly increases the brittleness of high-speed steel, making it susceptible to chipping at the cutting edge. For this reason, cobalt high-speed steels are primarily made into single-point cutting tools that are used to take heavy roughing cuts in abrasive materials and through rough abrasive surface scales.

The M40 series and T15 are a group of high-hardness or so-called super high-speed steels that can be hardened to 70 RC; however, they tend to be brittle and difficult to grind. For cutting applications, they are usually heat treated to 67–68 RC to reduce their brittleness and tendency to chip. The M40 series is appreciably easier to grind than T15. They are recommended for machining tough die steels and other difficult-to-cut materials; they are not recommended for applications where conventional high-speed steels perform well. High-speed steels made by the powder-metallurgy process are tougher and have an improved grindability when compared with similar grades made by the customary process. Tools made of these steels can be hardened about 1 RC higher than comparable high-speed steels made by the customary process without a sacrifice in toughness. They are particularly useful in applications involving intermittent cutting and where tool life is limited by chipping. All these steels augment rather than replace the conventional high-speed steels.

Cemented Carbides are also called sintered carbides or simply carbides. They are harder than high-speed steels and have excellent wear resistance. Information on these and other hard metal tools is included in the section *CEMENTED CARBIDES* starting on page 860.

Cemented carbides retain a very high degree of hardness at temperatures up to 1400°F (760°C) and even higher; therefore, very fast cutting speeds can be used. When used at fast cutting speeds, they produce good surface finishes on the workpiece. Carbides are more brittle than high-speed steel and, therefore, must be used with more care.

There are four distinct types of carbides:1) straight tungsten carbides; 2) crater-resistant carbides; 3) titanium carbides; and 4) coated carbides.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Straight Tungsten Carbide: This is the most abrasion-resistant cemented carbide and is used to machine gray cast iron, most nonferrous metals, and nonmetallic materials, where abrasion resistance is the primary criterion. Straight tungsten carbide will rapidly form a crater on the tool face when used to machine steel, which reduces the life of the tool. Titanium carbide is added to tungsten carbide in order to counteract the rapid formation of the crater. In addition, tantalum carbide is usually added to prevent the cutting edge from deforming when subjected to the intense heat and pressure generated in taking heavy cuts.

Crater-Resistant Carbides: These carbides, containing titanium and tantalum carbides in addition to tungsten carbide, are used to cut steels, alloy cast irons, and other materials that have a strong tendency to form a crater.

Titanium Carbides: These carbides are made entirely from titanium carbide and small amounts of nickel and molybdenum. They have an excellent resistance to cratering and to heat. Their high hot hardness enables them to operate at higher cutting speeds, but they are more brittle and less resistant to mechanical and thermal shock. Therefore, they are not recommended for taking heavy or interrupted cuts. Titanium carbides are less abrasion-resistant and not recommended for cutting through scale or oxide films on steel. Although the resistance to cratering of titanium carbides is excellent, failure caused by crater formation can sometimes occur because the chip tends to curl very close to the cutting edge, thereby forming a small crater in this region that may break through.

Coated Carbides: These are available only as indexable inserts because the coating would be removed by grinding. The principal coating materials are titanium carbide (TiC), titanium nitride (TiN), and aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3). A very thin layer approximately 0.0002 inch (5.08 μm) of coating material is deposited over a cemented carbide insert; the material below the coating is the substrate. The overall performance of the coated carbide is limited by the substrate, which provides the required toughness, resistance to deformation, and thermal shock. With an equal tool life, coated carbides can operate at higher cutting speeds than uncoated carbides. The increase may be 20 to 30 percent and sometimes up to 50 percent faster. Titanium carbide and titanium nitride coated carbides usually operate in the medium (200–800 fpm, 1.0–4.1 m/s) cutting speed range, and aluminum oxide coated carbides are used in the higher (800–1600 fpm, 4.1–8.1 m/s) cutting speed range.

Carbide Grade Selection: The selection of the best grade of carbide for a particular application is very important. An improper grade of carbide will result in a poor performance—it may even cause the cutting edge to fail before any significant amount of cutting has been done. Because of the many grades and the many variables that are involved, the carbide producers should be consulted to obtain recommendations for the application of their grades of carbide. A few general guidelines can be given that are useful to form an orientation. Metal cutting carbides usually range in hardness from about 89.5 to 93 RA (Rockwell A scale) with the exception of titanium carbide, which has a hardness range of 90.5 to 93.5 RA. Generally, the harder carbides are more wear-resistant and more brittle, whereas the softer carbides are less wear-resistant but tougher. A choice of hardness must be made to suit the given application. The very hard carbides are generally used for taking light finishing cuts. For other applications, select the carbide that has the highest hardness with sufficient strength to prevent chipping or breaking. Straight tungsten carbide grades should always be used unless cratering is encountered. Straight tungsten carbides are used to machine gray cast iron, ferritic malleable iron, austenitic stainless steel, high-temperature alloys, copper, brass, bronze, aluminum alloys, zinc alloy die castings, and plastics. Crater-resistant carbides should be used to machine plain carbon steel, alloy steel, tool steel, pearlitic malleable iron, nodular iron, other highly alloyed cast irons, ferritic stainless steel, martensitic stainless steel, and certain high-temperature alloys. Titanium carbides are recommended for taking high-speed finishing and semifinishing cuts on steel, especially the low-carbon, low-alloy steels, which are less abrasive and have a strong tendency to form a crater. They are also used to take light cuts on alloy cast iron and on some high-nickel alloys. Nonferrous materials, such as some aluminum alloys

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and brass, that are essentially nonabrasive may also be machined with titanium carbides. Abrasive materials and others that should not be machined with titanium carbides include gray cast iron, titanium alloys, cobalt- and nickel-base superalloys, stainless steel, bronze, many aluminum alloys, fiberglass, plastics, and graphite. The feed used should not exceed about 0.020 inch/rev (0.51 mm/rev).

Coated carbides can be used to take cuts ranging from light finishing to heavy roughing on most materials that can be cut with these carbides. The coated carbides are recommended for machining all free-machining steels, all plain carbon and alloy steels, tool steels, martensitic and ferritic stainless steels, precipitation-hardening stainless steels, alloy cast iron, pearlitic and martensitic malleable iron, and nodular iron. They are also recommended for taking light finishing and roughing cuts on austenitic stainless steels. Coated carbides should not be used to machine nickel- and cobalt-base superalloys, titanium and titanium alloys, brass, bronze, aluminum alloys, pure metals, refractory metals, and nonmetals such as fiberglass, graphite, and plastics.

Ceramic Cutting Tool Materials: These are made from finely powdered aluminum oxide particles sintered into a hard dense structure without a binder material. Aluminum oxide is also combined with titanium carbide to form a composite, which is called a cermet. These materials have a very high hot hardness enabling very high cutting speeds to be used. For example, ceramic cutting tools have been used to cut AISI 1040 steel at a cutting speed of 18,000 fpm (91.4 m/s) with a satisfactory tool life. However, much lower cutting speeds, in the range of 1000–4000 fpm (5.1–20.3 m/s) and lower, are more common because of limitations placed by the machine tool, cutters, and chucks. Although most applications of ceramic and cermet cutting tool materials are for turning, they have also been used successfully for milling. Ceramics and cermets are relatively brittle and a special cutting edge preparation is required to prevent chipping or edge breakage. This preparation consists of honing or grinding a narrow flat land, 0.002 to 0.006 inch (50.8–152.4 µm) wide, on the cutting edge that is made about 30 degrees with respect to the tool face. For some heavy-duty applications, a wider land is used. The setup should be as rigid as possible and the feed rate should not normally exceed 0.020 inch (508 µm), although 0.030 inch (762 µm) has been used successfully. Ceramics and cermets are recommended for roughing and finishing operations on all cast irons, plain carbon and alloy steels, and stainless steels. Materials up to a hardness of 60 RC (Rockwell C scale) can be cut with ceramic and cermet cutting tools. These tools should not be used to machine aluminum and aluminum alloys, magnesium alloys, titanium, and titanium alloys.

Cast Nonferrous Alloy: Cutting tools of this alloy are made from tungsten, tantalum, chromium, and cobalt plus carbon. Other alloying elements are also used to produce materials with high temperature and wear resistance. These alloys cannot be softened by heat treatment and must be cast and ground to shape. The room-temperature hardness of cast nonferrous alloys is lower than for high-speed steel, but the hardness and wear resistance is retained to a higher temperature. The alloys are generally marketed under trade names such as Stellite, Crobalt, and Tantung. The initial cutting speed for cast nonferrous tools can be 20 to 50 percent greater than the recommended cutting speed for high-speed steel.

Diamond Cutting Tools are available in three forms: single-crystal natural diamonds shaped to a cutting edge and mounted on a tool holder on a boring bar; polycrystalline diamond indexable inserts made from synthetic or natural diamond powders that have been compacted and sintered into a solid mass, and chemically vapor-deposited diamond. Single-crystal and polycrystalline diamond cutting tools are very wear-resistant, and recommended for machining abrasive materials that cause other cutting tool materials to wear rapidly. Typical of abrasive materials machined with single-crystal and polycrystalline diamond tools and cutting speeds used are the following: fiberglass, 300 to 1000 fpm (1.5 to 5.1 m/s); fused silica, 900 to 950 fpm (4.6 to 4.8 m/s); reinforced melamine plastics, 350 to 1000 fpm (1.8 to 5.1 m/s); reinforced phenolic plastics, 350 to 1000 fpm (1.8 to 5.1 m/s); thermosetting plastics, 300 to 2000 fpm (1.5 to 10.2 m/s); Teflon, 600 fpm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(3.0 m/s); nylon, 200 to 300 fpm (1.0 to 1.5 m/s); mica, 300 to 1000 fpm (1.5 to 5.1 m/s); graphite, 200 to 2000 fpm (1.0 to 10.1 m/s); babbitt bearing metal, 700 fpm (3.6 m/s); and aluminum-silicon alloys, 1000 to 2000 fpm (5.1 to 10.2 m/s).

Another important application of diamond cutting tools is to produce fine surface finishes on soft nonferrous metals that are difficult to finish by other methods. Surface finishes of 1 to 2 microinches (0.025 to 0.051 µm) can be readily obtained with single-crystal diamond tools, and finishes down to 10 microinches (0.25 µm) can be obtained with polycrystalline diamond tools. In addition to babbitt and the aluminum-silicon alloys, other metals finished with diamond tools include: soft aluminum, 1000 to 2000 fpm (5.1 to 10.2 m/s); all wrought and cast aluminum alloys, 600 to 1500 fpm (3.0 to 7.6 m/s); copper, 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s); brass, 500 to 1000 fpm (2.5 to 5.1 m/s); bronze, 300 to 600 fpm (1.5 to 3.0 m/s); oilite bearing metal, 500 fpm (2.5 m/s); silver, gold, and platinum, 300 to 2500 fpm (1.5 to 12.7 m/s); and zinc, 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s). Ferrous alloys, such as cast iron and steel, should not be machined with diamond cutting tools because the high cutting temperatures generated will cause the diamond to transform into carbon.

Chemically Vapor-Deposited (CVD) Diamond: This tool material offers performance characteristics well suited to highly abrasive or corrosive materials, and hard-to-machine composites. CVD diamond is available in two forms: thick-film tools, which are fabricated by brazing CVD diamond tips, approximately 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, to carbide substrates; and thin-film tools, having a pure diamond coating over the rake and flank surfaces of a ceramic or carbide substrate.

CVD is pure diamond, made at low temperatures and pressures, with no metallic binder phase. This diamond purity gives CVD diamond tools extreme hardness, high abrasion resistance, low friction, high thermal conductivity, and chemical inertness. CVD tools are generally used as direct replacements for PCD (polycrystalline diamond) tools, primarily in finishing, semifinishing, and continuous turning applications of extremely wear-intensive materials. The small grain size of CVD diamond (ranging from less than 1 µm to 50 µm) yields superior surface finishes compared with PCD, and the higher thermal conductivity and better thermal and chemical stability of pure diamond allow CVD tools to operate at faster speeds without generating harmful levels of heat. The extreme hardness of CVD tools may also result in significantly longer tool life.

CVD diamond cutting tools are recommended for the following materials:aluminum and other ductile; nonferrous alloys such as copper, brass, and bronze; and highly abrasive composite materials such as graphite, carbon-carbon, carbon-filled phenolic, fiberglass, and honeycomb materials.

Cubic Boron Nitride (CBN): Next to diamond, CBN is the hardest known material. It will retain its hardness at a temperature of 1800°F and higher, making it an ideal cutting tool material for machining very hard and tough materials at cutting speeds beyond those possible with other cutting tool materials. Indexable inserts and cutting tool blanks made from this material consist of a layer, approximately 0.020 inch thick, of polycrystalline cubic boron nitride firmly bonded to the top of a cemented carbide substrate. Cubic boron nitride is recommended for rough and finish turning hardened plain carbon and alloy steels, hardened tool steels, hard cast irons, all hardness grades of gray cast iron, and superalloys. As a class, the superalloys are not as hard as hardened steel; however, their combination of high strength and tendency to deform plastically under the pressure of the cut, or gumminess, places them in the class of hard-to-machine materials. Conventional materials that can be readily machined with other cutting tool materials should not be machined with cubic boron nitride. Round indexable CBN inserts are recommended when taking severe cuts in order to provide maximum strength to the insert. When using square or triangular inserts, a large lead angle should be used, normally 15°, and whenever possible, 45°. A negative rake angle should always be used, which for most applications is negative 5°. The relief angle should be 5° to 9°. Although cubic boron nitride cutting tools can be used without a coolant, flooding the tool with a water-soluble type coolant is recommended.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cutting Speed, Feed, Depth of Cut, Tool Wear, and Tool Life.—The cutting conditions that determine the rate of metal removal are the cutting speed, the feed rate, and the depth of cut. These cutting conditions and the nature of the material to be cut determine the power required to take the cut. The cutting conditions must be adjusted to stay within the power available on the machine tool to be used. Power requirements are discussed in *ESTIMATING SPEEDS AND MACHINING POWER* starting on page 1143.

Cutting conditions must also be considered in relation to the tool life. Tool life is defined as the cutting time to reach a predetermined amount of wear, usually flank wear. Tool life is determined by assessing the time—the tool life—at which a given predetermined flank wear is reached, 0.01 in. (0.25 mm), 0.015 in. (0.38 mm), 0.025 in. (0.64 mm), 0.03 in. (0.76 mm), for example. This amount of wear is called the tool wear criterion, and its size depends on the tool grade used. Usually, a tougher grade can be used with a bigger flank wear, but for finishing operations, where close tolerances are required, the wear criterion is relatively small. Other wear criteria are a predetermined value of the machined surface roughness and the depth of the crater that develops on the rake face of the tool.

ANSI/ASME B94.55M, specification for tool life testing with single-point tools, defines the end of tool life as a given amount of wear on the flank of a tool. This standard is followed when making scientific machinability tests with single-point cutting tools in order to achieve uniformity in testing procedures so that results from different machinability laboratories can be readily compared. It is not practicable or necessary to follow this standard in the shop; however, it should be understood that the cutting conditions and tool life are related.

Tool life is influenced most by cutting speed, then by feed rate, and least by depth of cut. When depth of cut is increased to about 10 times greater than the feed, a further increase in the depth of cut will have no significant effect on tool life. This characteristic of the cutting tool performance is very important in determining the operating or cutting conditions for machining metals. Conversely, if the cutting speed or feed is decreased, the increase in the tool life will be proportionately greater than the decrease in the cutting speed or the feed.

Tool life is reduced when either feed or cutting speed is increased. For example, the cutting speed and the feed may be increased if a shorter tool life is accepted; furthermore, the reduction in the tool life will be proportionately greater than the increase in the cutting speed or the feed. However, it is less well understood that a higher feed rate (feed/rev $\times$ speed) may result in a longer tool life if a higher feed/rev is used in combination with a lower cutting speed. This principle is well illustrated in the speed tables of this section, where two sets of speed and feed data are given (labeled *optimum* and *average*) that result in the same tool life. The *optimum* set results in a greater feed rate (i.e., increased productivity) although the feed/rev is higher and cutting speed lower than the *average* set. Complete instructions for using the speed tables and for estimating tool life are given in *How to Use the Tables* starting on page 1090.

Selecting Cutting Conditions.—The first step in establishing cutting conditions is to select depth of cut. The depth of cut will be limited by the amount of metal to be machined from the workpiece, by the power available on the machine tool, by the rigidity of the workpiece and cutting tool, and by the rigidity of the setup. Depth of cut has the least effect upon tool life, so the heaviest possible depth of cut should always be used.

The second step is to select the feed (feed/rev for turning, drilling, and reaming, or feed/tooth for milling). The available power must be sufficient to make the required depth of cut at the selected feed. The maximum feed possible that will produce an acceptable surface finish should be selected.

The third step is to select the cutting speed. Although the accompanying tables provide recommended cutting speeds and feeds for many materials, experience in machining a certain material may form the best basis for adjusting given cutting speeds to a particular job. In general, depth of cut should be selected first, followed by feed, and last cutting speed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Tool Troubleshooting Check List

Problem	Tool Material	Remedy
Excessive flank wear—tool life too short	Carbide	1. Change to harder, more wear-resistant grade 2. Reduce the cutting speed 3. Reduce the cutting speed and increase the feed to maintain production 4. Reduce the feed 5. For work-hardenable materials—increase the feed 6. Increase the lead angle 7. Increase the relief angles
	HSS	1. Use a coolant 2. Reduce the cutting speed 3. Reduce the cutting speed and increase the feed to maintain production 4. Reduce the feed 5. For work-hardenable materials—increase the feed 6. Increase the lead angle 7. Increase the relief angle
Excessive cratering	Carbide	1. Use a crater-resistant grade 2. Use a harder, more wear-resistant grade 3. Reduce the cutting speed 4. Reduce the feed 5. Widen the chip breaker groove
	HSS	1. Use a coolant 2. Reduce the cutting speed 3. Reduce the feed 4. Widen the chip breaker groove
Cutting edge chipping	Carbide	1. Increase the cutting speed 2. Lightly hone the cutting edge 3. Change to a tougher grade 4. Use negative-rake tools 5. Increase the lead angle 6. Reduce the feed 7. Reduce the depth of cut 8. Reduce the relief angles 9. If low cutting speed must be used, use a high-additive EP cutting fluid
	HSS	1. Use a high additive EP cutting fluid 2. Lightly hone the cutting edge before using 3. Increase the lead angle 4. Reduce the feed 5. Reduce the depth of cut 6. Use a negative rake angle 7. Reduce the relief angles
	Carbide and HSS	1. Check the setup for cause if chatter occurs 2. Check the grinding procedure for tool overheating 3. Reduce the tool overhang
Cutting edge deformation	Carbide	1. Change to a grade containing more tantalum 2. Reduce the cutting speed 3. Reduce the feed
Poor surface finish	Carbide	1. Increase the cutting speed 2. If low cutting speed must be used, use a high additive EP cutting fluid 4. For light cuts, use straight titanium carbide grade 5. Increase the nose radius 6. Reduce the feed 7. Increase the relief angles 8. Use positive rake tools

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Tool Troubleshooting Check List**

Problem	Tool Material	Remedy
Poor surface finish *(Continued)*	HSS	1. Use a high additive EP cutting fluid 2. Increase the nose radius 3. Reduce the feed 4. Increase the relief angles 5. Increase the rake angles
	Diamond	1. Use diamond tool for soft materials
Notching at the depth of cut line	Carbide and HSS	1. Increase the lead angle 2. Reduce the feed

Cutting Speed Formulas

Most machining operations are conducted on machine tools having a rotating spindle. Cutting speeds are usually given in feet or meters per minute and these speeds must be converted to spindle speeds, in revolutions per minute, to operate the machine. Conversion is accomplished by use of the following formulas:

US Units: **Metric Units:**

$$N = \frac{12V}{\pi D} = \frac{12 \times 252}{\pi \times 8} = 120 \text{ rpm} \qquad \mathbf{N = \frac{1000V}{\pi D} = 318.3\frac{V}{D} \text{ rpm}}$$

where N is the spindle speed in revolutions per minute (rpm); V is the cutting speed in feet per minute (fpm) for US units and meters per minute (m/min) for metric units. In turning, D is the diameter of the workpiece; in milling, drilling, reaming, and other operations that use a rotating tool, D is the cutter diameter in inches for US units and in millimeters for metric units. $\pi = 3.1416$.

Example: The cutting speed for turning a 4-inch (101.6-mm) diameter bar has been found to be 575 fpm (175.3 m/min). Using both the inch and metric formulas, calculate the lathe spindle speed.

US Units: **Metric Units:**

$$N = \frac{12V}{\pi D} = \frac{12 \times 575}{3.1416 \times 4} = 549 \text{ rpm} \qquad \mathbf{N = \frac{1000V}{\pi D} = \frac{1000 \times 175.3}{3.1416 \times 101.6} = 549 \text{ rpm}}$$

When the cutting tool or workpiece diameter and the spindle speed in rpm are known, it is often necessary to calculate the cutting speed in feet or meters per minute. In this event, the following formulas are used.

US Units: **Metric Units:**

$$V = \frac{\pi DN}{12} \text{ fpm} \qquad \mathbf{V = \frac{\pi DN}{1000} \text{ m/min}}$$

As in the previous formulas, N is the rpm and D is the diameter in inches for the US Units formula and in millimeters for the metric formula.

Example: Calculate the cutting speed in feet per minute and in meters per minute if the spindle speed of a $^3/_4$-inch (19.05-mm) drill is 400 rpm.

US Units: $V = \frac{\pi DN}{12} = \frac{\pi \times 0.75 \times 400}{12} = 78.5 \text{ fpm}$

Metric Units: $\mathbf{V = \frac{\pi DN}{1000} = \frac{\pi \times 19.05 \times 400}{1000} = 24.9 \text{ m/min}}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cutting Speeds and Equivalent RPM for Drills of Number and Letter Sizes

Size No.	Cutting Speed, Feet per Minute										
	30 ′	40 ′	50 ′	60 ′	70 ′	80 ′	90 ′	100 ′	110 ′	130 ′	150 ′
	Revolutions per Minute for Number Sizes										
1	503	670	838	1005	1173	1340	1508	1675	1843	2179	2513
2	518	691	864	1037	1210	1382	1555	1728	1901	2247	2593
4	548	731	914	1097	1280	1462	1645	1828	2010	2376	2741
6	562	749	936	1123	1310	1498	1685	1872	2060	2434	2809
8	576	768	960	1151	1343	1535	1727	1919	2111	2495	2879
10	592	790	987	1184	1382	1579	1777	1974	2171	2566	2961
12	606	808	1010	1213	1415	1617	1819	2021	2223	2627	3032
14	630	840	1050	1259	1469	1679	1889	2099	2309	2728	3148
16	647	863	1079	1295	1511	1726	1942	2158	2374	2806	3237
18	678	904	1130	1356	1582	1808	2034	2260	2479	2930	3380
20	712	949	1186	1423	1660	1898	2135	2372	2610	3084	3559
22	730	973	1217	1460	1703	1946	2190	2433	2676	3164	3649
24	754	1005	1257	1508	1759	2010	2262	2513	2764	3267	3769
26	779	1039	1299	1559	1819	2078	2338	2598	2858	3378	3898
28	816	1088	1360	1631	1903	2175	2447	2719	2990	3534	4078
30	892	1189	1487	1784	2081	2378	2676	2973	3270	3864	4459
32	988	1317	1647	1976	2305	2634	2964	3293	3622	4281	4939
34	1032	1376	1721	2065	2409	2753	3097	3442	3785	4474	5162
36	1076	1435	1794	2152	2511	2870	3228	3587	3945	4663	5380
38	1129	1505	1882	2258	2634	3010	3387	3763	4140	4892	5645
40	1169	1559	1949	2339	2729	3118	3508	3898	4287	5067	5846
42	1226	1634	2043	2451	2860	3268	3677	4085	4494	5311	6128
44	1333	1777	2221	2665	3109	3554	3999	4442	4886	5774	6662
46	1415	1886	2358	2830	3301	3773	4244	4716	5187	6130	7074
48	1508	2010	2513	3016	3518	4021	4523	5026	5528	6534	7539
50	1637	2183	2729	3274	3820	4366	4911	5457	6002	7094	8185
52	1805	2406	3008	3609	4211	4812	5414	6015	6619	7820	9023
54	2084	2778	3473	4167	4862	5556	6251	6945	7639	9028	10417
Size	Revolutions per Minute for Letter Sizes										
A	491	654	818	982	1145	1309	1472	1636	1796	2122	2448
B	482	642	803	963	1124	1284	1445	1605	1765	2086	2407
C	473	631	789	947	1105	1262	1420	1578	1736	2052	2368
D	467	622	778	934	1089	1245	1400	1556	1708	2018	2329
E	458	611	764	917	1070	1222	1375	1528	1681	1968	2292
F	446	594	743	892	1040	1189	1337	1486	1635	1932	2229
G	440	585	732	878	1024	1170	1317	1463	1610	1903	2195
H	430	574	718	862	1005	1149	1292	1436	1580	1867	2154
I	421	562	702	842	983	1123	1264	1404	1545	1826	2106
J	414	552	690	827	965	1103	1241	1379	1517	1793	2068
K	408	544	680	815	951	1087	1223	1359	1495	1767	2039
L	395	527	659	790	922	1054	1185	1317	1449	1712	1976
M	389	518	648	777	907	1036	1166	1295	1424	1683	1942
N	380	506	633	759	886	1012	1139	1265	1391	1644	1897
O	363	484	605	725	846	967	1088	1209	1330	1571	1813
P	355	473	592	710	828	946	1065	1183	1301	1537	1774
Q	345	460	575	690	805	920	1035	1150	1266	1496	1726
R	338	451	564	676	789	902	1014	1127	1239	1465	1690
S	329	439	549	659	769	878	988	1098	1207	1427	1646
T	320	426	533	640	746	853	959	1066	1173	1387	1600
U	311	415	519	623	727	830	934	1038	1142	1349	1557
V	304	405	507	608	709	810	912	1013	1114	1317	1520
W	297	396	495	594	693	792	891	989	1088	1286	1484
X	289	385	481	576	672	769	865	962	1058	1251	1443
Y	284	378	473	567	662	756	851	945	1040	1229	1418
Z	277	370	462	555	647	740	832	925	1017	1202	1387

For fractional drill sizes, use the following table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Revolutions per Minute for Various Cutting Speeds and Diameters

Dia., Inches	Cutting Speed, Feet per Minute											
	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	120	140	160	180	200
	Revolutions per Minute											
1/4	611	764	917	1070	1222	1376	1528	1834	2139	2445	2750	3056
5/16	489	611	733	856	978	1100	1222	1466	1711	1955	2200	2444
3/8	408	509	611	713	815	916	1018	1222	1425	1629	1832	2036
7/16	349	437	524	611	699	786	874	1049	1224	1398	1573	1748
1/2	306	382	459	535	611	688	764	917	1070	1222	1375	1528
9/16	272	340	407	475	543	611	679	813	951	1086	1222	1358
5/8	245	306	367	428	489	552	612	736	857	979	1102	1224
11/16	222	273	333	389	444	500	555	666	770	888	999	1101
3/4	203	254	306	357	408	458	508	610	711	813	914	1016
13/16	190	237	284	332	379	427	474	569	664	758	853	948
7/8	175	219	262	306	349	392	438	526	613	701	788	876
15/16	163	204	244	285	326	366	407	488	570	651	733	814
1	153	191	229	267	306	344	382	458	535	611	688	764
1 1/16	144	180	215	251	287	323	359	431	503	575	646	718
1 1/8	136	170	204	238	272	306	340	408	476	544	612	680
1 3/16	129	161	193	225	258	290	322	386	451	515	580	644
1 1/4	123	153	183	214	245	274	306	367	428	490	551	612
1 5/16	116	146	175	204	233	262	291	349	407	466	524	582
1 3/8	111	139	167	195	222	250	278	334	389	445	500	556
1 7/16	106	133	159	186	212	239	265	318	371	424	477	530
1 1/2	102	127	153	178	204	230	254	305	356	406	457	508
1 9/16	97.6	122	146	171	195	220	244	293	342	390	439	488
1 5/8	93.9	117	141	165	188	212	234	281	328	374	421	468
1 11/16	90.4	113	136	158	181	203	226	271	316	362	407	452
1 3/4	87.3	109	131	153	175	196	218	262	305	349	392	436
1 7/8	81.5	102	122	143	163	184	204	244	286	326	367	408
2	76.4	95.5	115	134	153	172	191	229	267	306	344	382
2 1/8	72.0	90.0	108	126	144	162	180	216	252	288	324	360
2 1/4	68.0	85.5	102	119	136	153	170	204	238	272	306	340
2 3/8	64.4	80.5	96.6	113	129	145	161	193	225	258	290	322
2 1/2	61.2	76.3	91.7	107	122	138	153	184	213	245	275	306
2 5/8	58.0	72.5	87.0	102	116	131	145	174	203	232	261	290
2 3/4	55.6	69.5	83.4	97.2	111	125	139	167	195	222	250	278
2 7/8	52.8	66.0	79.2	92.4	106	119	132	158	185	211	238	264
3	51.0	63.7	76.4	89.1	102	114	127	152	178	203	228	254
3 1/8	48.8	61.0	73.2	85.4	97.6	110	122	146	171	195	219	244
3 1/4	46.8	58.5	70.2	81.9	93.6	105	117	140	164	188	211	234
3 3/8	45.2	56.5	67.8	79.1	90.4	102	113	136	158	181	203	226
3 1/2	43.6	54.5	65.5	76.4	87.4	98.1	109	131	153	174	196	218
3 5/8	42.0	52.5	63.0	73.5	84.0	94.5	105	126	147	168	189	210
3 3/4	40.8	51.0	61.2	71.4	81.6	91.8	102	122	143	163	184	205
3 7/8	39.4	49.3	59.1	69.0	78.8	88.6	98.5	118	138	158	177	197
4	38.2	47.8	57.3	66.9	76.4	86.0	95.6	115	134	153	172	191
4 1/4	35.9	44.9	53.9	62.9	71.8	80.8	89.8	108	126	144	162	180
4 1/2	34.0	42.4	51.0	59.4	67.9	76.3	84.8	102	119	136	153	170
4 3/4	32.2	40.2	48.2	56.3	64.3	72.4	80.4	96.9	113	129	145	161
5	30.6	38.2	45.9	53.5	61.1	68.8	76.4	91.7	107	122	138	153
5 1/4	29.1	36.4	43.6	50.9	58.2	65.4	72.7	87.2	102	116	131	145
5 1/2	27.8	34.7	41.7	48.6	55.6	62.5	69.4	83.3	97.2	111	125	139
5 3/4	26.6	33.2	39.8	46.5	53.1	59.8	66.4	80.0	93.0	106	120	133
6	25.5	31.8	38.2	44.6	51.0	57.2	63.6	76.3	89.0	102	114	127
6 1/4	24.4	30.6	36.7	42.8	48.9	55.0	61.1	73.3	85.5	97.7	110	122
6 1/2	23.5	29.4	35.2	41.1	47.0	52.8	58.7	70.4	82.2	93.9	106	117
6 3/4	22.6	28.3	34.0	39.6	45.3	50.9	56.6	67.9	79.2	90.6	102	113
7	21.8	27.3	32.7	38.2	43.7	49.1	54.6	65.5	76.4	87.4	98.3	109
7 1/4	21.1	26.4	31.6	36.9	42.2	47.4	52.7	63.2	73.8	84.3	94.9	105
7 1/2	20.4	25.4	30.5	35.6	40.7	45.8	50.9	61.1	71.0	81.4	91.6	102
7 3/4	19.7	24.6	29.5	34.4	39.4	44.3	49.2	59.0	68.9	78.7	88.6	98.4
8	19.1	23.9	28.7	33.4	38.2	43.0	47.8	57.4	66.9	76.5	86.0	95.6

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Revolutions per Minute for Various Cutting Speeds and Diameters

Dia., Inches	Cutting Speed, Feet per Minute											
	225	250	275	300	325	350	375	400	425	450	500	550
	Revolutions per Minute											
1/4	3438	3820	4202	4584	4966	5348	5730	6112	6493	6875	7639	8403
5/16	2750	3056	3362	3667	3973	4278	4584	4889	5195	5501	6112	6723
3/8	2292	2546	2801	3056	3310	3565	3820	4074	4329	4584	5093	5602
7/16	1964	2182	2401	2619	2837	3056	3274	3492	3710	3929	4365	4802
1/2	1719	1910	2101	2292	2483	2675	2866	3057	3248	3439	3821	4203
9/16	1528	1698	1868	2037	2207	2377	2547	2717	2887	3056	3396	3736
5/8	1375	1528	1681	1834	1987	2139	2292	2445	2598	2751	3057	3362
11/16	1250	1389	1528	1667	1806	1941	2084	2223	2362	2501	2779	3056
3/4	1146	1273	1401	1528	1655	1783	1910	2038	2165	2292	2547	2802
13/16	1058	1175	1293	1410	1528	1646	1763	1881	1998	2116	2351	2586
7/8	982	1091	1200	1310	1419	1528	1637	1746	1855	1965	2183	2401
15/16	917	1019	1120	1222	1324	1426	1528	1630	1732	1834	2038	2241
1	859	955	1050	1146	1241	1337	1432	1528	1623	1719	1910	2101
1 1/16	809	899	988	1078	1168	1258	1348	1438	1528	1618	1798	1977
1 1/8	764	849	933	1018	1103	1188	1273	1358	1443	1528	1698	1867
1 3/16	724	804	884	965	1045	1126	1206	1287	1367	1448	1609	1769
1 1/4	687	764	840	917	993	1069	1146	1222	1299	1375	1528	1681
1 5/16	654	727	800	873	946	1018	1091	1164	1237	1309	1455	1601
1 3/8	625	694	764	833	903	972	1042	1111	1181	1250	1389	1528
1 7/16	598	664	730	797	863	930	996	1063	1129	1196	1329	1461
1 1/2	573	636	700	764	827	891	955	1018	1082	1146	1273	1400
1 9/16	550	611	672	733	794	855	916	978	1039	1100	1222	1344
1 5/8	528	587	646	705	764	822	881	940	999	1057	1175	1293
1 11/16	509	566	622	679	735	792	849	905	962	1018	1132	1245
1 3/4	491	545	600	654	709	764	818	873	927	982	1091	1200
1 13/16	474	527	579	632	685	737	790	843	895	948	1054	1159
1 7/8	458	509	560	611	662	713	764	815	866	917	1019	1120
1 15/16	443	493	542	591	640	690	739	788	838	887	986	1084
2	429	477	525	573	620	668	716	764	811	859	955	1050
2 1/8	404	449	494	539	584	629	674	719	764	809	899	988
2 1/4	382	424	468	509	551	594	636	679	721	764	849	933
2 3/8	362	402	442	482	522	563	603	643	683	724	804	884
2 1/2	343	382	420	458	496	534	573	611	649	687	764	840
2 5/8	327	363	400	436	472	509	545	582	618	654	727	800
2 3/4	312	347	381	416	451	486	520	555	590	625	694	763
2 7/8	299	332	365	398	431	465	498	531	564	598	664	730
3	286	318	350	381	413	445	477	509	541	572	636	700
3 1/8	274	305	336	366	397	427	458	488	519	549	611	672
3 1/4	264	293	323	352	381	411	440	470	499	528	587	646
3 3/8	254	283	311	339	367	396	424	452	481	509	566	622
3 1/2	245	272	300	327	354	381	409	436	463	490	545	600
3 5/8	237	263	289	316	342	368	395	421	447	474	527	579
3 3/4	229	254	280	305	331	356	382	407	433	458	509	560
3 7/8	221	246	271	295	320	345	369	394	419	443	493	542
4	214	238	262	286	310	334	358	382	405	429	477	525
4 1/4	202	224	247	269	292	314	337	359	383	404	449	494
4 1/2	191	212	233	254	275	297	318	339	360	382	424	466
4 3/4	180	201	221	241	261	281	301	321	341	361	402	442
5	171	191	210	229	248	267	286	305	324	343	382	420
5 1/4	163	181	199	218	236	254	272	290	308	327	363	399
5 1/2	156	173	190	208	225	242	260	277	294	312	347	381
5 3/4	149	166	182	199	215	232	249	265	282	298	332	365
6	143	159	174	190	206	222	238	254	270	286	318	349
6 1/4	137	152	168	183	198	213	229	244	259	274	305	336
6 1/2	132	146	161	176	190	205	220	234	249	264	293	322
6 3/4	127	141	155	169	183	198	212	226	240	254	283	311
7	122	136	149	163	177	190	204	218	231	245	272	299
7 1/4	118	131	144	158	171	184	197	210	223	237	263	289
7 1/2	114	127	139	152	165	178	190	203	216	229	254	279
7 3/4	111	123	135	148	160	172	185	197	209	222	246	271
8	107	119	131	143	155	167	179	191	203	215	238	262

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Revolutions per Minute for Various Cutting Speeds and Diameters (Metric Units)

Dia., mm	Cutting Speed, Meters per Minute											
	5	6	8	10	12	16	20	25	30	35	40	45
	Revolutions per Minute											
5	318	382	509	637	764	1019	1273	1592	1910	2228	2546	2865
6	265	318	424	530	637	849	1061	1326	1592	1857	2122	2387
8	199	239	318	398	477	637	796	995	1194	1393	1592	1790
10	159	191	255	318	382	509	637	796	955	1114	1273	1432
12	133	159	212	265	318	424	531	663	796	928	1061	1194
16	99.5	119	159	199	239	318	398	497	597	696	796	895
20	79.6	95.5	127	159	191	255	318	398	477	557	637	716
25	63.7	76.4	102	127	153	204	255	318	382	446	509	573
30	53.1	63.7	84.9	106	127	170	212	265	318	371	424	477
35	45.5	54.6	72.8	90.9	109	145	182	227	273	318	364	409
40	39.8	47.7	63.7	79.6	95.5	127	159	199	239	279	318	358
45	35.4	42.4	56.6	70.7	84.9	113	141	177	212	248	283	318
50	31.8	38.2	51	63.7	76.4	102	127	159	191	223	255	286
55	28.9	34.7	46.3	57.9	69.4	92.6	116	145	174	203	231	260
60	26.6	31.8	42.4	53.1	63.7	84.9	106	133	159	186	212	239
65	24.5	29.4	39.2	49	58.8	78.4	98	122	147	171	196	220
70	22.7	27.3	36.4	45.5	54.6	72.8	90.9	114	136	159	182	205
75	21.2	25.5	34	42.4	51	68	84.9	106	127	149	170	191
80	19.9	23.9	31.8	39.8	47.7	63.7	79.6	99.5	119	139	159	179
90	17.7	21.2	28.3	35.4	42.4	56.6	70.7	88.4	106	124	141	159
100	15.9	19.1	25.5	31.8	38.2	51	63.7	79.6	95.5	111	127	143
110	14.5	17.4	23.1	28.9	34.7	46.2	57.9	72.3	86.8	101	116	130
120	13.3	15.9	21.2	26.5	31.8	42.4	53.1	66.3	79.6	92.8	106	119
130	12.2	14.7	19.6	24.5	29.4	39.2	49	61.2	73.4	85.7	97.9	110
140	11.4	13.6	18.2	22.7	27.3	36.4	45.5	56.8	68.2	79.6	90.9	102
150	10.6	12.7	17	21.2	25.5	34	42.4	53.1	63.7	74.3	84.9	95.5
160	9.9	11.9	15.9	19.9	23.9	31.8	39.8	49.7	59.7	69.6	79.6	89.5
170	9.4	11.2	15	18.7	22.5	30	37.4	46.8	56.2	65.5	74.9	84.2
180	8.8	10.6	14.1	17.7	21.2	28.3	35.4	44.2	53.1	61.9	70.7	79.6
190	8.3	10	13.4	16.8	20.1	26.8	33.5	41.9	50.3	58.6	67	75.4
200	8	39.5	12.7	15.9	19.1	25.5	31.8	39.8	47.7	55.7	63.7	71.6
220	7.2	8.7	11.6	14.5	17.4	23.1	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
240	6.6	8	10.6	13.3	15.9	21.2	26.5	33.2	39.8	46.4	53.1	59.7
260	6.1	7.3	9.8	12.2	14.7	19.6	24.5	30.6	36.7	42.8	49	55.1
280	5.7	6.8	9.1	11.4	13.6	18.2	22.7	28.4	34.1	39.8	45.5	51.1
300	5.3	6.4	8.5	10.6	12.7	17	21.2	26.5	31.8	37.1	42.4	47.7
350	4.5	5.4	7.3	9.1	10.9	14.6	18.2	22.7	27.3	31.8	36.4	40.9
400	4	4.8	6.4	8	9.5	12.7	15.9	19.9	23.9	27.9	31.8	35.8
450	3.5	4.2	5.7	7.1	8.5	11.3	14.1	17.7	21.2	24.8	28.3	31.8
500	3.2	3.8	5.1	6.4	7.6	10.2	12.7	15.9	19.1	22.3	25.5	28.6

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Revolutions per Minute for Various Cutting Speeds and Diameters (Metric Units)

Dia., mm	Cutting Speed, Meters per Minute											
	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	200
	Revolutions per Minute											
5	3183	3501	3820	4138	4456	4775	5093	5411	5730	6048	6366	12,732
6	2653	2918	3183	3448	3714	3979	4244	4509	4775	5039	5305	10,610
8	1989	2188	2387	2586	2785	2984	3183	3382	3581	3780	3979	7958
10	1592	1751	1910	2069	2228	2387	2546	2706	2865	3024	3183	6366
12	1326	1459	1592	1724	1857	1989	2122	2255	2387	2520	2653	5305
16	995	1094	1194	1293	1393	1492	1591	1691	1790	1890	1989	3979
20	796	875	955	1034	1114	1194	1273	1353	1432	1512	1592	3183
25	637	700	764	828	891	955	1019	1082	1146	1210	1273	2546
30	530	584	637	690	743	796	849	902	955	1008	1061	2122
35	455	500	546	591	637	682	728	773	819	864	909	1818
40	398	438	477	517	557	597	637	676	716	756	796	1592
45	354	389	424	460	495	531	566	601	637	672	707	1415
50	318	350	382	414	446	477	509	541	573	605	637	1273
55	289	318	347	376	405	434	463	492	521	550	579	1157
60	265	292	318	345	371	398	424	451	477	504	530	1061
65	245	269	294	318	343	367	392	416	441	465	490	979
70	227	250	273	296	318	341	364	387	409	432	455	909
75	212	233	255	276	297	318	340	361	382	403	424	849
80	199	219	239	259	279	298	318	338	358	378	398	796
90	177	195	212	230	248	265	283	301	318	336	354	707
100	159	175	191	207	223	239	255	271	286	302	318	637
110	145	159	174	188	203	217	231	246	260	275	289	579
120	133	146	159	172	186	199	212	225	239	252	265	530
130	122	135	147	159	171	184	196	208	220	233	245	490
140	114	125	136	148	159	171	182	193	205	216	227	455
150	106	117	127	138	149	159	170	180	191	202	212	424
160	99.5	109	119	129	139	149	159	169	179	189	199	398
170	93.6	103	112	122	131	140	150	159	169	178	187	374
180	88.4	97.3	106	115	124	133	141	150	159	168	177	354
190	83.8	92.1	101	109	117	126	134	142	151	159	167	335
200	79.6	87.5	95.5	103	111	119	127	135	143	151	159	318
220	72.3	79.6	86.8	94	101	109	116	123	130	137	145	289
240	66.3	72.9	79.6	86.2	92.8	99.5	106	113	119	126	132	265
260	61.2	67.3	73.4	79.6	85.7	91.8	97.9	104	110	116	122	245
280	56.8	62.5	68.2	73.9	79.6	85.3	90.9	96.6	102	108	114	227
300	53.1	58.3	63.7	69	74.3	79.6	84.9	90.2	95.5	101	106	212
350	45.5	50	54.6	59.1	63.7	68.2	72.8	77.3	81.8	99.1	91	182
400	39.8	43.8	47.7	51.7	55.7	59.7	63.7	67.6	71.6	75.6	79.6	159
450	35.4	38.9	42.4	46	49.5	53.1	56.6	60.1	63.6	67.2	70.7	141
500	31.8	35	38.2	41.4	44.6	47.7	50.9	54.1	57.3	60.5	63.6	127

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SPEEDS AND FEEDS TABLES

How to Use the Tables

The principal tables of speed and feed values are listed in the table below. In this section, Table 1 through Table 9 give data for turning, Table 10 through Table 15e give data for milling, and Table 17 through Table 23 give data for reaming, drilling, threading.

The materials in these tables are categorized by description, and Brinell Hardness Number (BHN) range or material condition. So far as possible, work materials are grouped by similar machining characteristics. The types of cutting tools (HSS end mill, for example) are identified in one or more rows across the tops of the tables. Other important details concerning the use of the tables are contained in the footnotes to Table 1, Table 10 and Table 17. Information concerning specific cutting tool grades is given in notes at the end of each table.

Principal Speeds and Feeds Tables

Speeds and Feeds for Turning
Table 1. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
Table 2. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Tool Steels
Table 3. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Stainless Steels
Table 4a. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Ferrous Cast Metals
Table 4b. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Ferrous Cast Metals
Table 5a. Turning-Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle
Table 5b. Tool Life Factors for Turning with Carbides, Ceramics, Cermets, CBN, and Polycrystalline Diamond
Table 5c. Cutting-Speed Adjustment Factors for Turning with HSS Tools
Table 6. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Copper Alloys
Table 7. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Titanium and Titanium Alloys
Table 8. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Light Metals
Table 9. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Superalloys
Speeds and Feeds for Milling
Table 10. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Aluminum Alloys
Table 11. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
Table 12. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Tool Steels
Table 13. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Stainless Steels
Table 14. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Ferrous Cast Metals
Table 15a. Recommended Feed in Inches per Tooth (ft) for Milling with High-Speed Steel Cutters
Table 15b. End Milling (Full Slot) Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle
Table 15c. End, Slit, and Side Milling Speed Adjustment Factors for Radial Depth of Cut
Table 15d. Face Milling Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle
Table 15e. Tool Life Adjustment Factors for Face Milling, End Milling, Drilling, and Reaming
Table 16. Cutting Tool Grade Descriptions and Common Vendor Equivalents
Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading
Table 17. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels
Table 18. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Tool Steels
Table 19. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Stainless Steels
Table 20. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Ferrous Cast Metals
Table 21. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Light Metals
Table 22. Diameter Speed and Feed Adjustment Factors for HSS Twist Drills and Reamers
Table 23. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling and Reaming Copper Alloys

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Each of the cutting speed tables in this section contains two distinct types of cutting speed data. The speed columns at the left of each table contain traditional Handbook cutting speeds for use with high-speed steel (HSS) tools. For many years, this extensive collection of cutting data has been used successfully as starting speed values for turning, milling, drilling, and reaming operations. Instructions and adjustment factors for use with these speeds are given in Table 5c (feed and depth-of-cut factors) for turning, and in Table 15a (feed, depth of cut, and cutter diameter) for milling. Feeds for drilling and reaming are discussed in *Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading* on page 1128. With traditional speeds and feeds, tool life may vary greatly from material to material, making it very difficult to plan efficient cutting operations, in particular for setting up unattended jobs on CNC equipment where the tool life must exceed cutting time, or at least be predictable so that tool changes can be scheduled. This limitation is reduced by using the combined feed/speed data contained in the remaining columns of the speed tables.

The combined feed/speed portion of the speed tables gives two sets of speed and feed data for each material represented. These feed/speed pairs are the *optimum* and *average* data (identified by *Opt.* and *Avg.*); the *optimum* set is always on the left side of the column and the *average* set is on the right. The *optimum* feed/speed data are approximate values of speed and feed that achieve minimum-cost machining by combining a high productivity rate with low tooling cost at a fixed tool life. The *average* feed/speed data are expected to achieve approximately the same tool life and tooling costs, but productivity is usually lower, so machining costs are higher. The data in this portion of the tables are given in the form of two numbers, of which the first is the feed in thousandths of an inch per revolution (or per tooth, for milling) and the second is the cutting speed in feet per minute. For example, the feed/speed set 15⁄215 represents a feed of 0.015 in/rev (0.38 mm/rev) at a speed of 215 fpm (65.6 m/min). Blank cells in the data tables indicate that feed/speed data for these materials were not available at the time of publication.

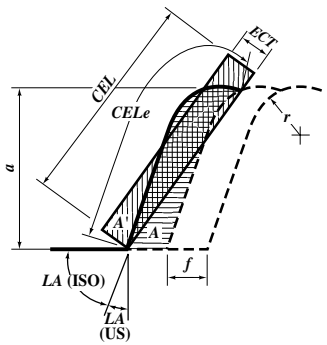
Generally, the feed given in the *optimum* set should be interpreted as the maximum safe feed for the given work material and cutting tool grade, and the use of a greater feed may result in premature tool wear or tool failure before the end of the expected tool life. The primary exception to this rule occurs in milling, where the feed may be greater than the *optimum* feed if the radial depth of cut is less than the value established in the table footnote; this topic is covered later in the milling examples. Thus, except for milling, the speed and tool life adjustment tables, to be discussed later, do not permit feeds that are greater than the *optimum* feed. On the other hand, the speed and tool life adjustment factors often result in cutting speeds that are well outside the given *optimum* to *average* speed range.

The combined feed/speed data in this section were contributed by Dr. Colding of Colding International Corp., Ann Arbor, MI. The speed, feed, and tool life calculations were made by means of a special computer program and a large database of cutting speed and tool life testing data. The COMP computer program uses tool life equations that are extensions of the F. W. Taylor tool life equation, first proposed in the early 1900s. The Colding tool life equations use a concept called equivalent chip thickness (*ECT*), which simplifies cutting speed and tool life predictions, and the calculation of cutting forces, torque, and power requirements. *ECT* is a basic metal cutting parameter that combines the four basic turning variables (depth of cut, lead angle, nose radius, and feed per revolution) into one basic parameter. For other metal cutting operations (milling, drilling, and grinding, for example), *ECT* also includes additional variables such as the number of teeth, width of cut, and cutter diameter. The *ECT* concept was first presented in 1931 by Prof. R. Woxen, who showed that equivalent chip thickness is a basic metal cutting parameter for high-speed cutting tools. Dr. Colding later extended the theory to include other tool materials and metal cutting operations, including grinding.

The equivalent chip thickness is defined by $ECT = A/CEL$, where A is the cross-sectional area of the cut (approximately equal to the feed times the depth of cut), and CEL is the cutting edge length or tool contact rubbing length. *ECT* and several other terms related to tool

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

geometry are illustrated in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2. Many combinations of feed, lead angle, nose radius and cutter diameter, axial and radial depth of cut, and numbers of teeth can give the same value of *ECT*. However, for a constant cutting speed, no matter how the depth of cut, feed, or lead angle, etc., are varied, if a constant value of *ECT* is maintained, the tool life will also remain constant. A constant value of *ECT* means that a constant cutting speed gives a constant tool life and an increase in speed results in a reduced tool life. Likewise, if *ECT* were increased and cutting speed were held constant, as illustrated in the generalized cutting speed versus *ECT* graph that follows, tool life would be reduced.



a = depth of cut
$A = A'$ = chip cross-sectional area
$CEL = CELe$ = engaged cutting edge length
ECT = equivalent chip thickness = A/CEL
f = feed/rev
r = nose radius
LA = lead angle (US)
$LA(ISO) = 90 - \text{LA}$

Fig. 1. Cutting Geometry, Equivalent Chip Thickness, and Cutting Edge Length

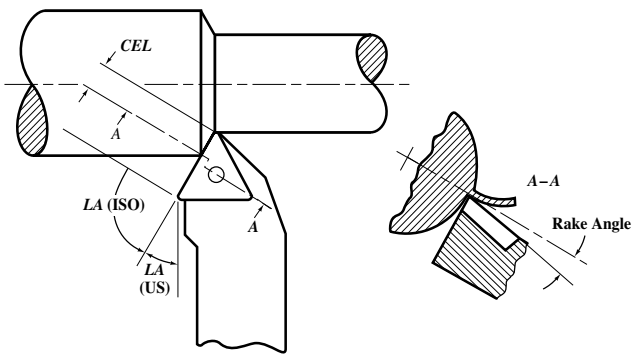


Fig. 2. Cutting Geometry for Turning

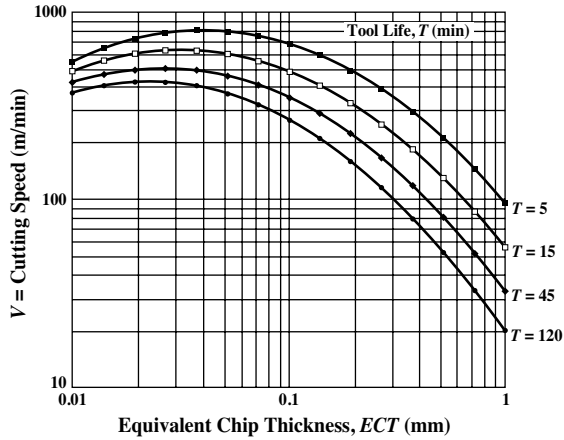
In the tables, the *optimum* feed/speed data have been calculated by COMP to achieve a fixed tool life based on the maximum *ECT* that will result in successful cutting, without premature tool wear or early tool failure. The same tool life is used to calculate the *average* feed/speed data, but these values are based on one-half of the maximum *ECT*. Because the data are not linear except over a small range of values, both *optimum* and *average* sets are required to adjust speeds for feed, lead angle, depth of cut, and other factors.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tool life is the most important factor in a machining system, so speeds and feeds cannot be selected as simple numbers, but must be considered with respect to the many parameters that influence tool life. The accuracy of the combined feed/speed data presented is believed to be very high. However, machining is a variable and complicated process and use of the speeds and feeds tables requires the user to follow the instructions carefully to achieve good predictability. The results achieved, therefore, may vary due to material condition, tool material, machine setup, and other factors, and cannot be guaranteed.

The feed values given in the tables are valid for the standard tool geometries and fixed depths of cut that are identified in the table footnotes. If the cutting parameters and tool geometry established in the table footnotes are maintained, turning operations using either the *optimum* or *average* feed/speed data (Table 1 through Table 9) should achieve a constant tool life of approximately 15 minutes; tool life for milling, drilling, reaming, and threading data (Table 10 through Table 14 and Table 17 through Table 22) should be approximately 45 minutes. The reason for the different economic tool lives is the higher tooling cost associated with milling-drilling operations than for turning. If the cutting parameters or tool geometry are different from those established in the table footnotes, the same tool life (15 or 45 minutes) still may be maintained by applying the appropriate speed adjustment factors, or tool life may be increased or decreased using tool life adjustment factors. The use of the speed and tool life adjustment factors is described in the examples that follow.

Both the *optimum* and *average* feed/speed data given are reasonable values for effective cutting. However, the *optimum* set with its higher feed and lower speed (always the left entry in each table cell) will usually achieve greater productivity. In Table 1, for example, the two entries for turning 1212 free-machining plain carbon steel with uncoated carbide are 17⁄805 and 8⁄1075. These values indicate that a feed of 0.017 in/rev and a speed of 805 ft/min, or a feed of 0.008 in/rev and a speed of 1075 ft/min can be used for this material. The tool life, in each case, will be approximately 15 minutes. If one of these speed and feed pairs is assigned an arbitrary cutting time of 1 minute, then the relative cutting time of the second pair to the first is equal to the ratio of their respective feed × speed products. Here, the same amount of material that can be cut in 1 minute, at the higher feed and lower speed (17⁄805), will require 1.6 minutes at the lower feed and higher speed (8⁄1075) because $17 \times 805/(8 \times 1075) = 1.6$ minutes.



Cutting Speed versus Equivalent Chip Thickness with Tool Life as a Parameter

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Speeds and Feeds Tables for Turning.—Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text.

Examples Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Turning: The examples that follow give instructions for determining cutting speeds for turning. In general, the same methods are also used to find cutting speeds for milling, drilling, reaming, and threading, so reading through these examples may bring some additional insight to those other metalworking processes as well. The first step in determining cutting speeds is to locate the work material in the left column of the appropriate table for turning, milling, or drilling, reaming, and threading.

Example 1, Turning: Find the cutting speed for turning SAE 1074 plain carbon steel of 225 to 275 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number), using an uncoated carbide insert, a feed of 0.015 in/rev, and a depth of cut of 0.1 inch.

In Table 1, speed and feed data for two types of uncoated carbide tools are given, one for hard tool grades, the other for tough tool grades. In general, use the speed data from the tool category that most closely matches the tool to be used because there are often significant differences in the speeds and feeds for different tool grades. From the uncoated carbide hard grade values, the *optimum* and *average* feed/speed data given in Table 1 are 17⁄615 and 8⁄815, or 0.017 in/rev at 615 ft/min and 0.008 in/rev at 815 ft/min. Because the selected feed (0.015 in/rev) is different from either of the feeds given in the table, the cutting speed must be adjusted to match the feed. The other cutting parameters to be used must also be compared with the general tool and cutting parameters given in the speed tables to determine if adjustments need to be made for these parameters as well. The general tool and cutting parameters for turning, given in the footnote to Table 1, are depth of cut = 0.1 inch, lead angle = 15°, and tool nose radius = $\frac{3}{64}$ inch.

Table 5a is used to adjust the cutting speeds for turning (from Table 1 through Table 9) for changes in feed, depth of cut, and lead angle. The new cutting speed V is found from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{opt} is the *optimum* speed from the table (always the lower of the two speeds given), and F_f and F_d are the adjustment factors from Table 5a for feed and depth of cut, respectively.

To determine the two factors F_f and F_d, calculate the ratio of the selected feed to the *optimum* feed, 0.015⁄0.017 = 0.9, and the ratio of the two given speeds V_{avg} and V_{opt}, 815⁄615 = 1.35 (approximately). The feed factor F_f = 1.07 is found in Table 5a at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column. The depth-of-cut factor F_d = 1.0 is found in the same row as the feed factor in the column for depth of cut = 0.1 inch and lead angle = 15°, or for a tool with a 45° lead angle, F_d = 1.18. The final cutting speed for a 15° lead angle is $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d = 615 \times 1.07 \times 1.0 = 658$ fpm. Notice that increasing the lead angle tends to permit higher cutting speeds; such an increase is also the general effect of increasing the tool nose radius, although nose radius correction factors are not included in this table. Increasing lead angle also increases the radial pressure exerted by the cutting tool on the workpiece, which may cause unfavorable results on long, slender workpieces.

Example 2, Turning: For the same material and feed as the previous example, what is the cutting speed for a 0.4-inch depth of cut and a 45° lead angle?

As before, the feed is 0.015 in/rev, so F_f is 1.07, but F_d = 1.03 for depth of cut equal to 0.4 inch and a 45° lead angle. Therefore, $V = 615 \times 1.07 \times 1.03 = 676$ fpm. Increasing the lead angle from 15° to 45° permits a much greater (four times) depth of cut, at the same feed and nearly constant speed. Tool life remains constant at 15 minutes. *(Continued on page 1104)*

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels

Material AISI/SAE Designation	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	Tool Material															
		HSS	Uncoated Carbide				Coated Carbide				Ceramic				Cermet		
			Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough				
		Speed (fpm)	**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min														
			Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	
Free-machining plain carbon steels (resulfurized): 1212, 1213, 1215	100-150	150	**f** 17 **s** 805	8 1075	36 405	17 555	17 1165	8 1295	28 850	13 1200	15 3340	8 4985	15 1670	8 2500	7 1610	3 2055	
	150-200	160	**f** 17 **s** 745	8 935	36 345	17 470	28 915	13 1130	28 785	13 1110	15 1795	8 2680	15 1485	8 2215	7 1490	3 1815	
1108, 1109, 1115, 1117, 1118, 1120, 1126, 1211	100-150	130	**f** 17 **s** 730	8 990	36 300	17 430	17 1090	8 1410	28 780	13 1105	15 1610	8 2780	15 1345	8 2005	7 1355	3 1695	
	150-200	120															
1132, 1137, 1139, 1140, 1144, 1146, 1151	175-225	120	**f** 17 **s** 615	8 815	36 300	17 405	17 865	8 960	28 755	13 960	13 1400	7 1965	13 1170	7 1640			
	275-325	75	**f** 17 **s** 515	8 685	36 235	17 340	17 720	8 805	28 650	13 810	10 1430	5 1745	10 1070	5 1305			
	325-375	50															
	375-425	40															
(Leaded): 11L17, 11L18, 12L13, 12L14	100-150	140	**f** 17 **s** 745	8 935	36 345	17 470	28 915	13 1130	28 785	13 1110	15 1795	8 2680	15 1485	8 2215	7 1490	3 1815	
	150-200	145															
	200-250	110	**f** 17 **s** 615	8 815	36 300	17 405	17 865	8 960	28 755	13 960	13 1400	7 1965	13 1170	7 1640			
Plain carbon steels: 1006, 1008, 1009, 1010, 1012, 1015, 1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1513, 1514	100-125	120	**f** 17 **s** 805	8 1075	36 405	17 555	17 1165	8 1295	28 850	13 1200	15 3340	8 4985	15 1670	8 2500	7 1610	3 2055	
	125-175	110	**f** 17 **s** 745	8 935	36 345	17 470	28 915	13 1130	28 785	13 1110	15 1795	8 2680	15 1485	8 2215	7 1490	3 1815	
	175-225	90	**f** 17 **s** 615	8 815	36 300	17 405	17 865	8 960	28 755	13 960	13 1400	7 1965	13 1170	7 1640			
	225-275	70															

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material AISI/SAE Designation	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	Tool Material															
		HSS	Uncoated Carbide				Coated Carbide				Ceramic				Cermet	
			Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough			
		Speed (fpm)	**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min													
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Plain carbon steels *(continued)*: 1027, 1030, 1033, 1035, 1036, 1037, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041, 1042, 1043, 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049, 1050, 1052, 1524, 1526, 1527, 1541	125-175	100	**f**	17	8	36	17	28	13	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	745	935	345	470	915	1130	785	1110	1795	2680	1485	2215	1490	1815
	175-225	85															
			f	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7		
	225-275	70	**s**	615	815	300	405	865	960	755	960	1400	1965	1170	1640		
	275-325	60															
	325-375	40	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5		
			s	515	685	235	340	720	805	650	810	1430	1745	1070	1305		
	375-425	30															
Plain carbon steels *(continued)*: 1055, 1060, 1064, 1065, 1070, 1074, 1078, 1080, 1084, 1086, 1090, 1095, 1548, 1551, 1552, 1561, 1566	125-175	100															
	175-225	80	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	730	990	300	430	1090	1410	780	1105	1610	2780	1345	2005	1355	1695
	225-275	65	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
			s	615	815	300	405	865	960	755	960	1400	1965	1170	1640	1365	1695
	275-325	50															
	325-375	35	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5		
			s	515	685	235	340	720	805	650	810	1430	1745	1070	1305		
	375-425	30															
Free-machining alloy steels, (resulfurized): 4140, 4150	175-200	110															
	200-250	90	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	525	705	235	320	505	525	685	960	1490	2220	1190	1780	1040	1310
	250-300	65	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5	7	3
			s	355	445	140	200	630	850	455	650	1230	1510	990	1210	715	915
	300-375	50															
	375-425	40	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	8	4	8	4	7	3
			s	330	440	125	175	585	790	125	220	1200	1320	960	1060	575	740

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material AISI/SAE Designation	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	Tool Material															
		HSS	Uncoated Carbide				Coated Carbide				Ceramic				Cermet		
			Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough				
		Speed (fpm)	**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min														
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Free-machining alloy steels: (leaded): 41L30, 41L40, 41L47, 41L50, 43L47, 51L32, 52L100, 86L20, 86L40	150-200	120	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	730	990	300	430	1090	1410	780	1105	1610	2780	1345	2005	1355	1695
	200-250	100	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
			s	615	815	300	405	865	960	755	960	1400	1965	1170	1640	1355	1695
	250-300	75															
	300-375	55	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5		
			s	515	685	235	340	720	805	650	810	1430	1745	1070	1305		
	375-425	50															
Alloy steels: 4012, 4023, 4024, 4028, 4118, 4320, 4419, 4422, 4427, 4615, 4620, 4621, 4626, 4718, 4720, 4815, 4817, 4820, 5015, 5117, 5120, 6118, 8115, 8615, 8617, 8620, 8622, 8625, 8627, 8720, 8822, 94B17	125-175	100															
	175-225	90	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	525	705	235	320	505	525	685	960	1490	2220	1190	1780	1040	1310
	225-275	70	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5	7	3
			s	355	445	140	200	630	850	455	650	1230	1510	990	1210	715	915
	275-325	60	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	9	5	8	5	7	3
			s	330	440	135	190	585	790	240	350	1230	1430	990	1150	655	840
	325-35	50															
	375-425	30 (20)	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	8	4	8	4	7	3
			s	330	440	125	175	585	790	125	220	1200	1320	960	1060	575	740
Alloy steels: 1330, 1335, 1340, 1345, 4032, 4037, 4042, 4047, 4130, 4135, 4137, 4140, 4142, 4145, 4147, 4150, 4161, 4337, 4340, 50B44, 50B46, 50B50, 50B60, 5130, 5132, 5140, 5145, 5147, 5150, 5160, 51B60, 6150, 81B45, 8630, 8635, 8637, 8640, 8642, 8645, 8650, 8655, 8660, 8740, 9254, 9255, 9260, 9262, 94B30 E51100, E52100 use (HSS Speeds)	175-225	85 (70)	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	525	705	235	320	505	525	685	960	1490	2220	1190	1780	1020	1310
	225-275	70 (65)	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	10	5	10	5	7	3
			s	355	445	140	200	630	850	455	650	1230	1510	990	1210	715	915
	275-325	60 (50)	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	9	5	8	5	7	3
			s	330	440	135	190	585	790	240	350	1230	1430	990	1150	655	840
	325-375	40 (30)															
	375-425	30 (20)	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	8	4	8	4	7	3
			s	330	440	125	175	585	790	125	220	1200	1320	960	1060	575	740

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material AISI/SAE Designation	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	Tool Material															
		HSS	Uncoated Carbide				Coated Carbide				Ceramic				Cermet	
			Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough		Hard		Tough			
		Speed (fpm)	**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min													
			Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Ultra-high-strength steels (not ASI): AMS alloys 6421 (98B37 Mod.), 6422 (98BV40), 6424, 6427, 6428, 6430, 6432, 6433, 6434, 6436, and 6442; 300M and D6ac	220-300	65	**f**	17	8	36	17	20	10	28	13			10	5	7	3
	300-350	50	**s**	220	295	100	150	355	525	600	865			660	810	570	740
	350-400	35	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13			8	4	7	3
			s	165	185	55†	105	325	350	175	260			660	730	445	560
	43-48 RC	25	**f**			17	8					7	3	10	5		
	48-52 RC	10	**s**			55†	90					385	645	270	500		
Maraging steels (not AISI): 18% Ni, Grades 200, 250, 300, and 350	250-325	60	**f**	17	8	36	17	20	10	28	13	660	810	10	5	7	3
			s	220	295	100	150	355	525	600	865			570	740		
	50-52 RC	10	**f**			17	8					7	3	10	5		
			s			55	90					385‡	645	270	500		
Nitriding steels (not AISI): Nitralloy 125, 135, 135 Mod., 225, and 230, Nitralloy N, Nitralloy EZ, Nitrex 1	200-250	70	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8	15	8	7	3
			s	525	705	235	320	505	525	685	960	1490	2220	1190	1780	1040	1310
	300-350	30	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	8	4	8	4	7	3
			s	330	440	125	175	585	790	125	220	1200	1320	960	1060	575	740

[a] Brinell Hardness Number given unless otherwise indicated by RC for hardness on the Rockwell C scale.

Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text.

The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbides, hard = 17, tough = 19, † = 15; coated carbides, hard = 11, tough = 14; ceramics, hard = 2, tough = 3, ‡ = 4; cermet = 7 .

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Tool Steels

Material AISI Designation	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	Tool Material: Uncoated HSS Speed (fpm)		Uncoated Carbide Hard Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Hard Avg.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Avg.	Coated Carbide Hard Opt.	Coated Carbide Hard Avg.	Coated Carbide Tough Opt.	Coated Carbide Tough Avg.	Ceramic Hard Opt.	Ceramic Hard Avg.	Ceramic Tough Opt.	Ceramic Tough Avg.	Cermet Opt.	Cermet Avg.
				f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)								*Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min					
Water hardening: W1, W2, W5	150-200	100															
Shock resisting: S1, S2, S5, S6, S7	175-225	70	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
Cold-work, oil hardening: O1, O2, O6, O7	175-225	70	**s**	455	610	210	270	830	1110	575	805	935	1310	790	1110	915	1150
Cold-work, high carbon, high chromium: D2, D3, D4, D5, D7	200-250	45															
Cold-work, air hardening: A2, A3, A8, A9, A10	200-250	70															
A4, A6	200-250	55	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
A7	225-275	45	**s**	445	490	170	235	705	940	515	770	660	925	750	1210	1150	1510
	150-200	80															
	200-250	65															
Hot-work, chromium type: H10, H11, H12, H13, H14, H19	325-375	50	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13			8	4	7	3
			s	165	185	55	105	325	350	175	260			660	730	445	560
	48-50 RC	20	**f**			17	8					7	3	10	5		
	50-52 RC	10	**s**			55†	90					385‡	645	270	500		
	52-56 RC	—															
Hot-work, tungsten type: H21, H22, H23, H24, H25, H26	150-200	60															
	200-250	50	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
Hot-work, molybdenum type: H41, H42, H43	150-200	55	**s**	445	490	170	235	705	940	515	770	660	925	750	1210	1150	1510
	200-250	45															
Special purpose, low alloy: L2, L3, L6	150-200	75	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
			s	445	610	210	270	830	1110	575	805	935	1310	790	1110	915	1150
Mold: P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P26, P21	100-150	90	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
	150-200	80	**s**	445	610	210	270	830	1110	575	805	935	1310	790	1110	915	1150
High-speed steel: M1, M2, M6, M10, T1, T2,T6	200-250	65															
M3-1, M4 M7, M30, M33, M34, M36, M41, M42, M43, M44, M46, M47, T5, T8	225-275	55	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	13	7	13	7	7	3
			s	445	490	170	235	705	940	515	770	660	925	750	1210	1150	1510
T15, M3-2	225-275	45															

[a] Brinell Hardness Number given unless otherwise indicated by RC for hardness on the Rockwell C scale.

Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbides, hard = 17, tough = 19, † = 15; coated carbides, hard = 11, tough = 14; ceramics, hard = 2, tough = 3, ‡ = 4; cermet = 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Stainless Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Tool Material: Uncoated HSS Speed (fpm)		Uncoated Carbide Hard Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Hard Avg.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Avg.	Coated Carbide Hard Opt.	Coated Carbide Hard Avg.	Coated Carbide Tough Opt.	Coated Carbide Tough Avg.	Cermet Opt.	Cermet Avg.
		f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)						*Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min					
Free-machining stainless steel (Ferritic): 430F, 430FSe	135-185	110	**f**	20	10	36	17	17	8	28	13	7	3
			s	480	660	370	395	755	945	640	810	790	995
(Austenitic): 203EZ, 303, 303Se, 303MA, 303Pb, 303Cu, 303 Plus X	135-185	100	**f**	13	7	36	17			28	13	7	3
	225-275	80	**s**	520	640	310	345			625	815	695	875
(Martensitic): 416, 416Se, 416 Plus X, 420F, 420FSe, 440F, 440FSe	135-185	110	**f**	13	7	36				28	13	7	3
	185-240	100	**s**	520	640	310				625	815	695	875
	275-325	60	**f**	13	7	36	17			28	13		
	375-425	30	**s**	210	260	85	135			130	165		
Stainless steels (Ferritic): 405, 409 429, 430, 434, 436, 442, 446, 502	135-185	90	**f**	20	10	36	17	17	8	28	13	7	3
			s	480	660	370	395	755	945	640	810	790	995
(Austenitic): 201, 202, 301, 302, 304, 304L, 305, 308, 321, 347, 348	135-185	75											
	225-275	65											
(Austenitic): 302B, 309, 309S, 310, 310S, 314, 316, 316L, 317, 330	135-185	70	**f**	13	7	36	17			28	13	7	3
			s	520	640	310	345			625	815	695	875
	135-175	95											
(Martensitic): 403, 410, 420, 501	175-225	85											
	275-325	55											
	375-425	35											
	225-275	55-60	**f**	13	7	36	17			28	13	13	7
(Martensitic): 414, 431, Greek Ascoloy, 440A, 440B, 440C	275-325	45-50	**s**	210	260	85	135			130	165	200†	230
	375-425	30											
(Precipitation hardening): 15-5PH, 17-4PH, 17-7PH, AF-71, 17-14CuMo, AFC-77, AM-350, AM-355, AM-362, Custom 455, HNM, PH13-8, PH14-8Mo, PH15-7Mo, Stainless W	150-200	60	**f**	13	7	36	17			28	13	13	7
	275-325	50	**s**	520	640	310	345			625	815	695	875
	325-375	40	**f**	13	7	36	17						
	375-450	25	**s**	195	240	85	155						

See footnote to Table 1 for more information. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbides, hard = 17, tough = 19; coated carbides, hard = 11, tough = 14; cermet = 7, † = 18.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4a. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Ferrous Cast Metals

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Tool Material: HSS Speed (fpm)		Uncoated Carbide Tough Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Avg.	Coated Carbide Hard Opt.	Coated Carbide Hard Avg.	Coated Carbide Tough Opt.	Coated Carbide Tough Avg.	Ceramic Hard Opt.	Ceramic Hard Avg.	Ceramic Tough Opt.	Ceramic Tough Avg.	Cermet Opt.	Cermet Avg.	CBN Opt.	CBN Avg.
				f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)						*Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
Gray Cast Iron																	
ASTM Class 20	120-150	120	**f**	28	13	28	13	28	13	15	8	15	8	8	4	24	11
ASTM Class 25	160-200	90	**s**	240	365	665	1040	585	945	1490	2220	1180	1880	395	510	8490	36380
ASTM Class 30, 35, and 40	190-220	80															
ASTM Class 45 and 50	220-260	60	**f**	28	13	28	13	28	13	11	6	11	6	8	4	24	11
ASTM Class 55 and 60	250-320	35	**s**	160	245	400	630	360	580	1440	1880	1200	1570	335	420	1590	2200
ASTM Type 1, 1b, 5 (Ni resist)	100-215	70	**f**	28	13			28	13	15	8	15	8	8	4		
ASTM Type 2, 3, 6 (Ni resist)	120-175	65	**s**	110	175			410	575	1060	1590	885	1320	260	325		
ASTM Type 2b, 4 (Ni resist)	150-250	50															
Malleable Iron																	
(Ferritic): 32510, 35018	110-160	130	**f**	28	13	28	13	28	13	15	8	15	8				
			s	180	280	730	940	660	885	1640	2450	1410	2110				
(Pearlitic): 40010, 43010, 45006, 45008, 48005, 50005	160-200	95	**f**	28	13	28	13	28	13	13	7	13	7				
	200-240	75	**s**	125	200	335	505	340	510	1640	2310	1400	1970				
(Martensitic): 53004, 60003, 60004	200-255	70															
(Martensitic): 70002, 70003	220-260	60	**f**	28	13			28	13	11	6	11	6				
(Martensitic): 80002	240-280	50	**s**	100	120			205	250	1720	2240	1460	1910				
(Martensitic): 90001	250-320	30															

Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust the given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text.

The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbides, tough = 15; Coated carbides, hard = 11, tough = 14; ceramics, hard = 2, tough = 3; cermet = 7; CBN = 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4b. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Ferrous Cast Metals

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Tool Material: Uncoated HSS		Uncoated Carbide Hard		Uncoated Carbide Tough		Coated Carbide Hard		Coated Carbide Tough		Ceramic Hard		Ceramic Tough		Cermet	
		f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min															
		Speed (fpm)		*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Nodular (Ductile) Iron																	
(Ferritic): 60-40-18, 65-45-12	140-190	100	**f**			28	13	28	13	28	13	15	8	15	8	8	4
			s			200	325	490	700	435	665	970	1450	845	1260	365	480
(Ferritic-Pearlitic): 80-55-06	190-225	80	**f**			28	13	28	13	28	13	11	6	11	6	8	4
	225-260	65	**s**			130	210	355	510	310	460	765	995	1260	1640	355	445
(Pearlitic-Martensitic): 100-70-03	240-300	45															
(Martensitic): 120-90-02	270-330	30	**f**			28	13			28	13	10	5	10	5	8	4
	300-400	15	**s**			40	65			145	175	615	750	500	615	120	145
Cast Steels																	
(Low-carbon): 1010, 1020	100-150	110	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8			7	3
	125-175	100	**s**	370	490	230	285	665	815	495	675	2090	3120			625	790
(Medium-carbon): 1030, 1040, 1050	175-225	9070	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8	28	13	15	8			7	3
	225-300		**s**	370	490	150	200	595	815	410	590	1460	2170			625	790
(Low-carbon alloy): 1320, 2315, 2320, 4110, 4120, 4320, 8020, 8620	150-200	90															
	200-250	80															
	250-300	60															
(Medium-carbon alloy): 1330, 1340, 2325, 2330, 4125, 4130, 4140, 4330, 4340, 8030, 80B30, 8040, 8430, 8440, 8630, 8640, 9525, 9530, 9535	175-225	80	**f**	17	8	36	17	17	8			15	8				
	225-250	70	**s**	310	415	115	150	555	760			830	1240				
	250-300	55	**f**			28	13					1544	8				
	300-350	45	**s**			70†	145					5	665				
	350-400	30	**f**			28	13			28	13			15	8		
			s			115†	355			335	345			955	1430		

The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as shown: uncoated carbides, hard = 17; tough = 19, † = 15; coated carbides, hard = 11; tough = 14; ceramics, hard = 2; tough = 3; cermet = 7. Also, see footnote to Table 4a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. Turning-Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle

Ratio of Chosen Feed to *Optimum* Feed	Ratio of the two cutting speeds given in the tables V_{avg}/V_{opt}							Depth of Cut and Lead Angle									
								1 in. (25.4 mm)		0.4 in. (10.2 mm)		0.2 in. (5.1 mm)		0.1 in. (2.5 mm)		0.04 in. (1.0 mm)	
	1.00	1.10	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.75	2.00	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°
	Feed Factor, F_f							Depth of Cut and Lead Angle Factor, F_d									
1.00	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.74	1.0	0.79	1.03	0.85	1.08	1.0	1.18	1.29	1.35
0.90	1.00	1.02	1.05	1.07	1.09	1.10	1.12	0.75	1.0	0.80	1.03	0.86	1.08	1.0	1.17	1.27	1.34
0.80	1.00	1.03	1.09	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	0.77	1.0	0.81	1.03	0.87	1.07	1.0	1.15	1.25	1.31
0.70	1.00	1.05	1.13	1.22	1.22	1.32	1.43	0.77	1.0	0.82	1.03	0.87	1.08	1.0	1.15	1.24	1.30
0.60	1.00	1.08	1.20	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.66	0.78	1.0	0.82	1.03	0.88	1.07	1.0	1.14	1.23	1.29
0.50	1.00	1.10	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.75	2.00	0.78	1.0	0.82	1.03	0.88	1.07	1.0	1.14	1.23	1.28
0.40	1.00	1.09	1.28	1.44	1.66	2.03	2.43	0.78	1.0	0.84	1.03	0.89	1.06	1.0	1.13	1.21	1.26
0.30	1.00	1.06	1.32	1.52	1.85	2.42	3.05	0.81	1.0	0.85	1.02	0.90	1.06	1.0	1.12	1.18	1.23
0.20	1.00	1.00	1.34	1.60	2.07	2.96	4.03	0.84	1.0	0.89	1.02	0.91	1.05	1.0	1.10	1.15	1.19
0.10	1.00	0.80	1.20	1.55	2.24	3.74	5.84	0.88	1.0	0.91	1.01	0.92	1.03	1.0	1.06	1.10	1.12

Use with Table 1 through Table 9. Not for HSS tools. Table 1 through Table 9 data, except for HSS tools, are based on depth of cut = 0.1 inch, lead angle = 15 degrees, and tool life = 15 minutes. For other depths of cut, lead angles, or feeds, use the two feed/speed pairs from the tables and calculate the ratio of desired (new) feed to *optimum* feed (largest of the two feeds given in the tables), and the ratio of the two cutting speeds (V_{avg}/V_{opt}). Use the value of these ratios to find the feed factor F_f at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column in the left half of the table. The depth-of-cut factor F_d is found in the same row as the feed factor in the right half of the table under the column corresponding to the depth of cut and lead angle. The adjusted cutting speed can be calculated from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{opt} is the smaller (*optimum*) of the two speeds from the speed table (from the left side of the column containing the two feed/speed pairs). See the text for examples.

Table 5b. Tool Life Factors for Turning with Carbides, Ceramics, Cermets, CBN, and Polycrystalline Diamond

Tool Life, T (minutes)	Turning with Carbides: Workpiece < 300 BHN			Turning with Carbides: Workpiece > 300 BHN; Turning with Ceramics: Any Hardness			Turning with Mixed Ceramics: Any Workpiece Hardness		
	f_s	f_m	f_l	f_s	f_m	f_l	f_s	f_m	f_l
15	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
45	0.86	0.81	0.76	0.80	0.75	0.70	0.89	0.87	0.84
90	0.78	0.71	0.64	0.70	0.63	0.56	0.82	0.79	0.75
180	0.71	0.63	0.54	0.61	0.53	0.45	0.76	0.72	0.67

Except for HSS speed tools, speeds and feeds given in Table 1 through Table 9 are based on 15-minute tool life. To adjust speeds for another tool life, multiply the cutting speed for 15-minute tool life V_{15} by the tool life factor from this table according to the following rules: for small feeds where feed $\leq \frac{1}{2}f_{opt}$, the cutting speed for desired tool life is $V_T = f_s \times V_{15}$; for medium feeds where $\frac{1}{2}f_{opt} <$ feed $< \frac{3}{4}f_{opt}$, $V_T = f_m \times V_{15}$; and for larger feeds where $\frac{3}{4}f_{opt} \leq$ feed $\leq f_{opt}$, $V_T = f_l \times V_{15}$. Here, f_{opt} is the largest (*optimum*) feed of the two feed/speed values given in the speed tables.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5c. Cutting-Speed Adjustment Factors for Turning with HSS Tools

Feed		Feed Factor	Depth of Cut		Depth-of-Cut Factor
in.	mm	F_f	in.	mm	F_d
0.002	0.05	1.50	0.005	0.13	1.50
0.003	0.08	1.50	0.010	0.25	1.42
0.004	0.10	1.50	0.016	0.41	1.33
0.005	0.13	1.44	0.031	0.79	1.21
0.006	0.15	1.34	0.047	1.19	1.15
0.007	0.18	1.25	0.062	1.57	1.10
0.008	0.20	1.18	0.078	1.98	1.07
0.009	0.23	1.12	0.094	2.39	1.04
0.010	0.25	1.08	0.100	2.54	1.03
0.011	0.28	1.04	0.125	3.18	1.00
0.012	0.30	1.00	0.150	3.81	0.97
0.013	0.33	0.97	0.188	4.78	0.94
0.014	0.36	0.94	0.200	5.08	0.93
0.015	0.38	0.91	0.250	6.35	0.91
0.016	0.41	0.88	0.312	7.92	0.88
0.018	0.46	0.84	0.375	9.53	0.86
0.020	0.51	0.80	0.438	11.13	0.84
0.022	0.56	0.77	0.500	12.70	0.82
0.025	0.64	0.73	0.625	15.88	0.80
0.028	0.71	0.70	0.688	17.48	0.78
0.030	0.76	0.68	0.750	19.05	0.77
0.032	0.81	0.66	0.812	20.62	0.76
0.035	0.89	0.64	0.938	23.83	0.75
0.040	1.02	0.60	1.000	25.40	0.74
0.045	1.14	0.57	1.250	31.75	0.73
0.050	1.27	0.55	1.250	31.75	0.72
0.060	1.52	0.50	1.375	34.93	0.71

For use with HSS tool data only from Table 1 through Table 9. Adjusted cutting speed $V = V_{HSS} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{HSS} is the tabular speed for turning with high-speed tools.

Example 3, Turning: Determine the cutting speed for turning 1055 steel of 175 to 225 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) using a hard ceramic insert, a 15° lead angle, a 0.04-inch depth of cut and 0.0075 in/rev feed.

The two feed/speed combinations given in Table 5a for 1055 steel are 15⁄1610 and 8⁄2780, corresponding to 0.015 in/rev at 1610 fpm and 0.008 in/rev at 2780 fpm, respectively. In Table 5a, the feed factor $F_f = 1.75$ is found at the intersection of the row corresponding to feed/f_{opt} = 7.5/15 = 0.5 and the column corresponding to V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 2780/1610 = 1.75 (approximately). The depth-of-cut factor $F_d = 1.23$ is found in the same row, under the column heading for a depth of cut = 0.04 inch and lead angle = 15°. The adjusted cutting speed is $V = 1610 \times 1.75 \times 1.23 = 3466$ fpm.

Example 4, Turning: The cutting speed for 1055 steel calculated in Example 3 represents the speed required to obtain a 15-minute tool life. Estimate the cutting speed needed to obtain a tool life of 45, 90, and 180 minutes using the results of Example 3.

To estimate the cutting speed corresponding to another tool life, multiply the cutting speed for 15-minute tool life V_{15} by the adjustment factor from the Table 5b, Tool Life Factors for Turning. This table gives three factors for adjusting tool life based on the feed used, f_s for feeds less than or equal to $\frac{1}{2} f_{opt}$, f_m for midrange feeds between $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{3}{4} f_{opt}$ and f_l for large feeds greater than or equal to $\frac{3}{4} f_{opt}$ and less than f_{opt}. In Example 3, f_{opt} is 0.015 in/rev and the selected feed is 0.0075 in/rev = $\frac{1}{2} f_{opt}$. The new cutting speeds for the various tool lives are obtained by multiplying the cutting speed for 15-minute tool life V_{15} by the factor for small feeds f_s from the column for turning with ceramics in Table 5b. These calculations, using the cutting speed obtained in Example 3, follow.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tool Life	*Cutting Speed*
15 min	$V_{15} = 3466$ fpm
45 min	$V_{45} = V_{15} \times 0.80 = 2773$ fpm
90 min	$V_{90} = V_{15} \times 0.70 = 2426$ fpm
180 min	$V_{180} = V_{15} \times 0.61 = 2114$ fpm

Depth of cut, feed, and lead angle remain the same as in Example 3. Notice, increasing the tool life from 15 to 180 minutes, a factor of 12, reduces the cutting speed by only about one-third of the V_{15} speed.

Table 6. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Copper Alloys

Group 1
Architectural bronze (C38500); Extra-high-headed brass (C35600); Forging brass (C37700); Free-cutting phosphor bronze, B2 (C54400); Free-cutting brass (C36000); Free-cutting Muntz metal (C37000); High-leaded brass (C33200; C34200); High-leaded brass tube (C35300); Leaded commercial bronze (C31400); Leaded naval brass (C48500); Medium-leaded brass (C34000)
Group 2
Aluminum brass, arsenical (C68700); Cartridge brass, 70% (C26000); High-silicon bronze, B (C65500); Admiralty brass (inhibited) (C44300, C44500); Jewelry bronze, 87.5% (C22600); Leaded Muntz metal (C36500, C36800); Leaded nickel silver (C79600); Low brass, 80% (C24000); Low-leaded brass (C33500); Low-silicon bronze, B (C65100); Manganese bronze, A (C67500); Muntz metal, 60% (C28000); Nickel silver, 55-18 (C77000); Red brass, 85% (C23000); Yellow brass (C26800)
Group 3
Aluminum bronze, D (C61400); Beryllium copper (C17000, C17200, C17500); Commercialbronze, 90% (C22000); Copper nickel, 10% (C70600); Copper nickel, 30% (C71500); Electrolytic tough pitch copper (C11000); Guilding, 95% (C21000); Nickel silver, 65-10 (C74500); Nickel silver, 65-12 (C75700); Nickel silver, 65-15 (C75400); Nickel silver, 65-18 (C75200); Oxygen-free copper (C10200) ; Phosphor bronze, 1.25% (C50200); Phosphor bronze, 10% D (C52400) Phosphor bronze, 5% A (C51000); Phosphor bronze, 8% C (C52100); Phosphorus deoxidized copper (C12200)

Wrought Alloys Description and UNS Alloy Numbers	Material Condition	HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Polycrystalline Diamond	
		Speed (fpm)	**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min				
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Group 1	A	300	**f**	28	13		
	CD	350	**s**	1170	1680		
Group 2	A	200	**f**	28	13		
	CD	250	**s**	715	900		
Group 3	A	100	**f**	28	13	7	13
	CD	110	**s**	440	610	1780	2080

Abbreviations designate: A, annealed; CD, cold drawn.

The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide, 15; diamond, 9. See the footnote to Table 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Titanium and Titanium Alloys

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Tool Material: HSS Speed (fpm)		Tool Material: Uncoated Carbide (Tough) **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min *Opt.*	*Avg.*
Commercially Pure and Low Alloyed					
99.5Ti, 99.5Ti-0.15Pd	110-150	100-105	**f**	28	13
			s	55	190
99.1Ti, 99.2Ti, 99.2Ti-0.15Pd, 98.9Ti-0.8Ni-0.3Mo	180-240	85-90	**f**	28	13
			s	50	170
99.0 Ti	250-275	70	**f**	20	10
			s	75	210
Alpha Alloys and Alpha-Beta Alloys					
5Al-2.5Sn, 8Mn, 2Al-11Sn-5Zr-1Mo, 4Al-3Mo-1V, 5Al-6Sn-2Zr-1Mo, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-2Mo, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-6Mo, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-2Mo-0.25Si	300-350	50	**f**	17	8
			s	95	250
6Al-4V	310-350	40			
6Al-6V-2Sn, Al-4Mo,	320-370	30			
8V-5Fe-1Al	320-380	20			
6Al-4V, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-2Mo, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-6Mo, 6Al-2Sn-4Zr-2Mo-0.25Si	320-380	40			
4Al-3Mo-1V, 6Al-6V-2Sn, 7Al-4Mo	375-420	20			
1Al-8V-5Fe	375-440	20			
Beta Alloys					
13V-11Cr-3Al, 8Mo-8V-2Fe-3Al, 3Al-8V-6Cr-4Mo-4Zr, 11.5Mo-6Zr-4.5Sn	275-350	25	**f**	17	8
	375-440	20	**s**	55	150

The speed recommendations for turning with HSS (high-speed steel) tools may be used as starting speeds for milling titanium alloys, using Table 15a to estimate the feed required. Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide, 15.

Table 8. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Light Metals

Material Description	Material Condition	Tool Material: HSS Speed (fpm)		Tool Material: Uncoated Carbide (Tough) **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min *Opt.*	*Avg.*	Tool Material: Polycrystalline Diamond *Opt.*	*Avg.*
All wrought and cast magnesium alloys	A, CD, ST, and A	800					
All wrought aluminum alloys, including 6061-T651, 5000, 6000, and 7000 series	CD	600					
	ST and A	500	**f**	36	17		
			s	2820	4570		
All aluminum sand and permanent mold casting alloys	AC	750					
	ST and A	600					
Aluminum Die-Casting Alloys							
Alloys 308.0 and 319.0	—	—	**f**	36	17	11	8
			s	865	1280	5890[a]	8270
Alloys 390.0 and 392.0	AC	80	**f**	24	11	8	4
	ST and A	60	**s**	2010	2760	4765	5755
Alloy 413	—	—	**f**	32	15	10	5
	ST and A	100	**s**	430	720	5085	6570
All other aluminum die-casting alloys including alloys 360.0 and 380.0	AC	125	**f**	36	17	11	6
			s	630	1060	7560	9930

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

[a]The speeds and feeds for turning Al alloys 308.0 and 319.0 with (polycrystalline) diamond tooling represent an expected tool life $T = 960$ minutes = 16 hours; corresponding speeds and feeds for 15-minute tool life are 11⁄28600 and 6⁄37500.

Abbreviations for material condition: A, annealed; AC, as cast; CD, cold drawn; and ST and A, solution treated and aged, respectively. Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the HSS speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. The data are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide, 15; diamond, 9.

Table 9. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Turning Superalloys

Material Description	Tool Material: HSS Turning Rough (Speed fpm)	HSS Turning Finish (Speed fpm)		Uncoated Carbide Tough Opt.	Uncoated Carbide Tough Avg.	Ceramic Hard Opt.	Ceramic Hard Avg.	Ceramic Tough Opt.	Ceramic Tough Avg.	CBN Opt.	CBN Avg.
				f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
T-D Nickel	70-80	80-100									
Discalloy	15-35	35-40									
19-9DL, W-545	25-35	30-40	**f**	24	11					20	10
16-25-6, A-286, Incoloy 800, 801, and 802, V-57	30-35	35-40	**s**	90	170					365	630
Refractaloy 26	15-20	20-25	**f**	20	10					20	10
J1300	15-25	20-30	**s**	75	135					245	420
Inconel 700 and 702, Nimonic 90 and 95	10-12	12-15									
S-816, V-36	10-15	15-20									
S-590	10-20	15-30									
Udimet 630		20-25									
N-155		15-25									
Air Resist 213; Hastelloy B, C, G and X (wrought); Haynes 25 and 188; J1570; M252 (wrought); Mar-M905 and M918; Nimonic 75 and 80	15-20	20-25	**f**	20	10	11	6	11	6	20	10
			s	75	125	1170	2590	405	900	230	400
CW-12M; Hastelloy B and C (cast); N-12M	8-12	10-15									
Rene 95 (Hot Isostatic Pressed)	—	—									
HS 6, 21, 2, 31 (X 40), 36, and 151; Haynes 36 and 151; Mar-M302, M322, and M509, WI-52	10-12	10-15									
Rene 41	10-15	12-20									
Incoloy 901	10-20	20-35									
Waspaloy	10-30	25-35	**f**	28	13	11	6	10	5	20	10
Inconel 625, 702, 706, 718 (wrought), 721, 722, X750, 751, 901, 600, and 604	15-20	20-35	**s**	20	40	895	2230	345	815	185	315
AF2-1DA, Unitemp 1753	8-10	10-15									
Colmonoy, Inconel 600, 718, K-Monel, Stellite	—	—									
Air Resist 13 and 215, FSH-H14, Nasa C-W-Re, X-45	10-12	10-15									
Udimet 500, 700, and 710	10-15	12-20									
Astroloy	5-10	5-15									
Mar-M200, M246, M421, and Rene 77, 80, and 95 (forged)		10-12	**f**	28	13	11	6	10	5	20	10
		10-15	**s**	15	15	615	1720	290	700	165	280
B-1900, GMR-235 and 235D, IN 100 and 738, Inconel 713C and 718 (cast), M252 (cast)	8-10	8-10									

The speed recommendations for rough turning may be used as starting values for milling and drilling with HSS tools. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 15; ceramic, hard = 4, tough = 3; CBN = 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Speeds for HSS (high-speed steel) tools are based on a feed of 0.012 inch/rev and a depth of cut of 0.125 inch; use Table 5c to adjust the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut. The combined feed/speed data in the remaining columns are based on a depth of cut of 0.1 inch, lead angle of 15 degrees, and nose radius of $\frac{3}{64}$ inch. Use Table 5a to adjust given speeds for other feeds, depths of cut, and lead angles; use Table 5b to adjust given speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes. Examples are given in the text.

Speeds and Feeds Tables for Milling.—Table 10 through Table 14 give speeds and feeds for milling. The data in the first speed column can be used with high-speed steel tools using the feeds given in Table 15a; these are the same speeds contained in previous editions of the Handbook. The remaining data in Table 10 through Table 14 are combined speeds and feeds for end, face, and slit, slot, and side milling that use the speed adjustment factors given in Table 15b, Table 15c, and Table 15d. Tool life for the combined feed/speed data can also be adjusted using the factors in Table 15e. Table 16 lists cutting tool grades and vendor equivalents.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $\frac{3}{64}$-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $\frac{3}{4}$). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15d to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter D of 4.0 inch, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes.

Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Milling: The basic feed for milling cutters is the feed per tooth (f), which is expressed in inches per tooth. There are many factors to consider in selecting the feed per tooth and no formula is available to resolve these factors. Among the factors to consider are the cutting tool material; the work material and its hardness; the width and the depth of the cut to be taken; the type of milling cutter to be used and its size; the surface finish to be produced; the power available on the milling machine; and the rigidity of the milling machine, the workpiece, the workpiece setup, the milling cutter, and the cutter mounting.

The cardinal principle is to always use the maximum feed that conditions will permit. Avoid, if possible, using a feed that is less than 0.001 inch per tooth because such low feeds reduce the tool life of the cutter. When milling hard materials with small-diameter end mills, such small feeds may be necessary, but otherwise use as much feed as possible. Harder materials in general will require lower feeds than softer materials. The width and the depth of cut also affect the feeds. Wider and deeper cuts must be fed somewhat more slowly than narrow and shallow cuts. A slower feed rate will result in a better surface finish; however, always use the heaviest feed that will produce the surface finish desired. Fine chips produced by fine feeds are dangerous when milling magnesium because spontaneous combustion can occur. Thus, when milling magnesium, a fast feed that will produce a relatively thick chip should be used. Cutting stainless steel produces a work-hardened layer on the surface that has been cut. Thus, when milling this material, the feed should

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be large enough to allow each cutting edge on the cutter to penetrate below the work-hardened layer produced by the previous cutting edge. The heavy feeds recommended for face milling cutters are to be used primarily with larger cutters on milling machines having an adequate amount of power. For smaller face milling cutters, start with smaller feeds and increase as indicated by the performance of the cutter and the machine.

When planning a milling operation that requires a high cutting speed and a fast feed, always check to determine if the power required to take the cut is within the capacity of the milling machine. Excessive power requirements are often encountered when milling with cemented carbide cutters. The large metal removal rates that can be attained require a high horsepower output. An example of this type of calculation is given in the section on Machining Power that follows this section. If the size of the cut must be reduced in order to stay within the power capacity of the machine, start by reducing the cutting speed rather than the feed in inches per tooth.

The formula for calculating the table feed rate, when the feed in inches per tooth is known, is as follows:

$$f_m = f_t n_t N$$

where f_m = milling machine table feed rate in inches per minute (ipm)

f_t = feed in inch per tooth (ipt)

n_t = number of teeth in the milling cutter

N = spindle speed of the milling machine in revolutions per minute (rpm)

Example: Calculate the feed rate for milling a piece of AISI 1040 steel having a hardness of 180 BHN. The cutter is a 3-inch diameter high-speed steel plain or slab milling cutter with 8 teeth. The width of the cut is 2 inches, the depth of cut is 0.062 inch, and the cutting speed from Table 11 is 85 fpm. From Table 15a, the feed rate selected is 0.008 inch per tooth.

$$N = \frac{12V}{\pi D} = \frac{12 \times 85}{3.14 \times 3} = 108 \text{ rpm}$$

$$f_m = f_t\, n_t\, N = 0.008 \times 8 \times 108$$

$$= 7 \text{ ipm (approximately)}$$

Example 1, Face Milling: Determine the cutting speed and machine operating speed for face milling an aluminum die casting (alloy 413) using a 4-inch polycrystalline diamond cutter, a 3-inch width of cut, a 0.10-inch depth of cut, and a feed of 0.006 inch/tooth.

Table 10 gives the speeds and feeds for milling aluminum alloys. The feed/speed pairs for face milling die-cast alloy 413 with polycrystalline diamond (PCD) are 8⁄2320 (0.008 in/tooth feed at 2320 fpm) and 4⁄4755 (0.004 in/tooth feed at 4755 fpm). These speeds are based on an axial depth of cut of 0.10 inch, an 8-inch cutter diameter D, a 6-inch radial depth (width) of cut ar, with the cutter approximately centered above the workpiece, i.e., eccentricity is low, as shown in Fig. 3. If the preceding conditions apply, the given speeds and feeds can be used without adjustment for a 45-minute tool life. The given speeds are valid for all cutter diameters if a radial depth of cut to cutter diameter ratio (ar/D) of $^3/_4$ is maintained (i.e., $^6/_8 = {}^3/_4$). However, if a different feed or axial depth of cut is required, or if the ar/D ratio is not equal to $^3/_4$, the cutting speed must be adjusted for the conditions. The adjusted cutting speed V is calculated from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d \times F_{ar}$, where V_{opt} is the lower of the two speeds given in the speed table, and F_f, F_d, and F_{ar} are adjustment factors for feed, axial depth of cut, and radial depth of cut, respectively, obtained from Table 15d(face milling); except, when cutting near the end or edge of the workpiece as in Fig. 4, Table 15c (side milling) is used to obtain F_f.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

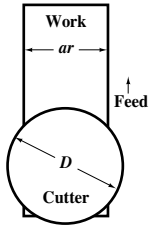


Fig. 3.

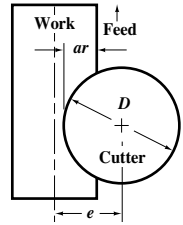


Fig. 4.

In this example, the cutting conditions match the standard conditions specified in the speed table for radial depth of cut to cutter diameter (3 in/4 in), and depth of cut (0.01 in), but the desired feed of 0.006 in/tooth does not match either of the feeds given in the speed table (0.004 or 0.008). Therefore, the cutting speed must be adjusted for this feed. As with turning, the feed factor F_f is determined by calculating the ratio of the desired feed f to maximum feed f_{opt} from the speed table, and from the ratio V_{avg}/V_{opt} of the two speeds given in the speed table. The feed factor is found at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column in Table 15d. The speed is then obtained using the following equation:

$$\frac{\text{Chosen feed}}{\text{Optimum feed}} = \frac{f}{f_{opt}} = \frac{0.006}{0.008} = 0.75 \qquad \frac{\text{Average speed}}{\text{Optimum speed}} = \frac{V_{avg}}{V_{opt}} = \frac{4755}{2320} \approx 2.0$$

$$F_f = (1.25 + 1.43)/2 = 1.3 \qquad F_d = 1.0 \qquad F_{ar} = 1.0$$

$$V = 2320 \times 1.34 \times 1.0 \times 1.0 = 3109 \text{ fpm, and } 3.82 \times 3109/4 = 2970 \text{ rpm}$$

Example 2, End Milling: What cutting speed should be used for cutting a full slot (i.e., a slot cut from the solid, in one pass, that is the same width as the cutter) in 5140 steel with hardness of 300 BHN using a 1-inch diameter coated carbide (insert) 0° lead angle end mill, a feed of 0.003 in/tooth, and a 0.2-inch axial depth of cut?

The speed and feed data for end milling 5140 steel, Brinell Hardness Number = 275–325, with a coated carbide tool are given in Table 11 as 15⁄80 and 8⁄240 for *optimum* and *average* sets, respectively. The speed adjustment factors for feed and depth of cut for full slot (end milling) are obtained from Table 15b. The calculations are the same as in the previous examples: $f/f_{opt} = 3/15 = 0.2$ and $V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 240/80 = 3.0$, therefore, $F_f = 6.86$ and $F_d = 1.0$. The cutting speed for a 45-minute tool life is $V = 80 \times 6.86 \times 1.0 = 548.8$, approximately 550 ft/min.

Example 3, End Milling: What cutting speed should be used in Example 2 if the radial depth of cut *ar* is 0.02 inch and axial depth of cut is 1 inch?

In end milling, when the radial depth of cut is less than the cutter diameter (as in Fig. 4), first obtain the feed factor F_f from Table 15c, then the axial depth of cut and lead angle factor F_d from Table 15b The radial depth of cut to cutter diameter ratio ar/D is used in Table 15c to determine the maximum and minimum feeds that guard against tool failure at high feeds and against premature tool wear caused by the tool rubbing against the work at very low feeds. The feed used should be selected so that it falls within the minimum to maximum feed range, and then the feed factor F_f can be determined from the feed factors at minimum and maximum feeds, F_{f1} and F_{f2} as explained below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The maximum feed f_{max} is found in Table 15c by multiplying the *optimum* feed from the speed table by the maximum feed factor that corresponds to the *ar*/*D* ratio, which in this instance is 0.02/1 = 0.02; the minimum feed f_{min} is found by multiplying the *optimum* feed by the minimum feed factor. Thus, $f_{max} = 4.5 \times 0.015 = 0.0675$ in/tooth and $f_{min} = 3.1 \times 0.015 = 0.0465$ in/tooth. If a feed between these maximum and minimum values is selected, 0.050 in/tooth for example, then for $ar/D = 0.02$ and $V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 3.0$, the feed factors at maximum and minimum feeds are $F_{f1} = 7.90$ and $F_{f2} = 7.01$, respectively, and by interpolation, $F_f = 7.90 + (0.050 - 0.0465)/(0.0675 - 0.0465) \times (7.01 - 7.90) = 7.75$.

The depth of cut factor F_d is obtained from Table 15b, using f_{max} from Table 15c instead of the *optimum* feed f_{opt} for calculating the feed ratio (chosen feed/*optimum* feed). In this example, the feed ratio = chosen feed/$f_{max} = 0.050/0.0675 = 0.74$, so the feed factor is $F_d = 0.93$ for a depth of cut = 1.0 inch and 0° lead angle. Therefore, the final cutting speed is 80 × 7.75 × 0.93 = 577 ft/min. Notice that f_{max} obtained from Table 15c was used instead of the *optimum* feed from the speed table, in determining the feed ratio needed to find F_d.

Slit Milling.—The tabular data for slit milling is based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle cutter with a width of 0.4 inch, a diameter *D* of 4.0 inch, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. The given speeds and feeds are valid for any diameters and tool widths, as long as sufficient machine power is available. Adjustments to cutting speeds for other feeds and depths of cut are made using Table 15c or Table 15d, depending on the orientation of the cutter to the work, as illustrated in Case 1 and Case 2 of Fig. 5. The situation illustrated in Case 1 is approximately equivalent to that illustrated in Fig. 3, and Case 2 is approximately equivalent to that shown in Fig. 4.

Case 1: If the cutter is fed directly into the workpiece, i.e., the feed is perpendicular to the surface of the workpiece, as in cutting off, then Table 15d (face milling) is used to adjust speeds for other feeds. The depth of cut portion of Table 15d is not used in this case ($F_d = 1.0$), so the adjusted cutting speed $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_{ar}$. In determining the factor F_{ar} from Table 15d, the radial depth of cut *ar* is the length of cut created by the portion of the cutter engaged in the work.

Case 2: If the cutter feed is parallel to the surface of the workpiece, as in slotting or side milling, then Table 15c (side milling) is used to adjust the given speeds for other feeds. In Table 15c, the cutting depth (slot depth, for example) is the radial depth of cut *ar* that is used to determine maximum and minimum allowable feed/tooth and the feed factor F_f. These minimum and maximum feeds are determined in the manner described previously, however, the axial depth of cut factor F_d is not required. The adjusted cutting speed, valid for cutters of any thickness (width), is given by $V = V_{opt} \times F_f$.

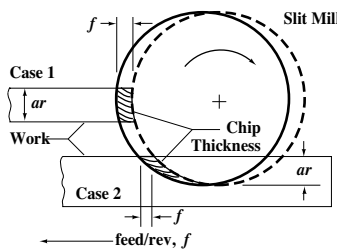


Fig. 5. Determination of Radial Depth of Cut or in Slit Milling

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Aluminum Alloys

Material	Material Condition*		End Milling HSS Opt.	End Milling HSS Avg.	End Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Opt.	End Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Avg.	Face Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Opt.	Face Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Avg.	Face Milling Polycrystalline Diamond Opt.	Face Milling Polycrystalline Diamond Avg.	Slit Milling HSS Opt.	Slit Milling HSS Avg.	Slit Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Opt.	Slit Milling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide Avg.
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min											
All wrought aluminum alloys, 6061-T651, 5000, 6000, 7000 series	CD ST and A	**f**	15	8	15	8	39	20	8	4	16	8	39	20
		s	165	850	620	2020	755	1720	3750	8430	1600	4680	840	2390
All aluminum sand and permanent mold casting alloys	CD ST and A	**f**	15	8	15	8	39	20	8	4	16	8	39	20
		s	30	100	620	2020	755	1720	3105	7845	160	375	840	2390
Aluminum Die-Casting Alloys														
Alloys 308.0 and 319.0	—	**f**	15	8	15	8	39	20			16	8	39	20
		s	30	100	620	2020	755	1720			160	375	840	2390
Alloys 360.0 and 380.0	—	**f**	15	8	15	8	39	20	8	4	16	8	39	20
		s	30	90	485	1905	555	1380	3105	7845	145	355	690	2320
Alloys 390.0 and 392.0	—	**f**					39	20						
		s					220	370						
Alloy 413	—	**f**			15	8	39	20	8	4			39	20
	ST and A	**s**			355	1385	405	665	2320	4755			500	1680
All other aluminum die-casting alloys	AC	**f**	15	8	15	8	39	20	8	4	16	8	39	20
		s	30	90	485	1905	555	1380	3105	7845	145	335	690	2320

Abbreviations designate: A, annealed; AC, as cast; CD, cold drawn; and ST and A, solution treated and aged, respectively.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $\frac{3}{64}$-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $\frac{3}{4}$). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15d to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter *D* of 4.0 inch, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 15; diamond = 9.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	HSS Speed (fpm)	End Milling							Face Milling				Slit Milling			
			HSS				Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min															
				Opt.		*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Free-machining plain carbon steels (resulfurized): 1212, 1213, 1215	100-150	140	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20
			s	45	125	465	735	800	1050	225	335	415	685	265	495	525	830
	150-200	130	**f**	7	4							39	20				
			s	35	100							215	405				
(Resulfurized): 1108, 1109, 1115, 1117, 1118, 1120, 1126, 1211	100-150	130	**f**	730	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20
	150-200	115	**s**		85	325	565	465	720	140	220	195	365	170	350	245	495
	175-225	115	**f**	7	4									39	20		
			s	30	85									185	350		
(Resulfurized): 1132, 1137, 1139, 1140, 1144, 1146, 1151	275-325	70	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20
	325-375	45	**s**	25	70	210	435	300	560	90	170	175	330	90	235	135	325
	375-425	35															
(Leaded): 11L17, 11L18, 12L13, 12L14	100-150	140	**f**	7	4							39	20				
	150-200	130	**s**	35	100							215	405				
	200-250	110	**f**	7	4							39	20				
			s	30	85							185	350				
Plain carbon steels: 1006, 1008, 1009, 1010, 1012, 1015, 1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1513, 1514	100-125	110	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20
			s	45	125	465	735	800	1050	225	335	415	685	265	495	525	830
	125-175	110	**f**	7	4							39	20				
			s	35	100							215	405				
	175-225	90	**f**	7	4							39	20				
	225-275	65	**s**	30	85							185	350				

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	HSS Speed (fpm)	End Milling						Face Milling				Slit Milling			
			HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min													
			Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Plain carbon steels: 1027, 1030, 1033, 1035, 1036, 1037, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041, 1042, 1043, 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049, 1050, 1052, 1524, 1526, 1527, 1541	125-175	100	**f** 7 **s** 35	4 100							39 215	20 405				
	175-225	85	**f** 7 **s** 30	4 85							39 185	20 350				
	225-275	70														
	275-325	55														
	325-375	35	**f** 7 **s** 25	4 70	7 210	4 435	7 300	4 560	39 90	20 170	39 175	20 330	39 90	20 235	39 135	20 325
	375-425	25														
Plain carbon steels: 1055, 1060, 1064, 1065, 1070, 1074, 1078, 1080, 1084, 1086, 1090, 1095, 1548, 1551, 1552, 1561, 1566	125-175	90	**f** 7 **s** 30	4 85	7 325	4 565	7 465	4 720	39 140	20 220	39 195	20 365	39 170	20 350	39 245	20 495
	175-225	75														
	225-275	60	**f** 7 **s** 30	4 85							39 185	20 350				
	275-325	45														
	325-375	30	**f** 7 **s** 25	4 70	7 210	4 435	7 300	4 560	39 90	20 170	39 175	20 330	39 90	20 235	39 135	20 325
	375-425	15														
Free-machining alloy steels (Resulfurized): 4140, 4150	175-200	100	**f** 15 **s** 7	8 30	15 105	8 270	15 270	8 450			39 295	20 475	39 135	20 305	7 25	4 70
	200-250	90														
	250-300	60	**f** 15 **s** 6	8 25	15 50	8 175	15 85	8 255			39 200	20 320	39 70	20 210	7 25	4 70
	300-375	45	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 20	15 40	8 155	15 75	8 225			39 175	20 280				
	375-425	35														

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	HSS Speed (fpm)	End Milling						Face Milling				Slit Milling			
			HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min													
			Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Free-machining alloy steels (Leaded): 41L30, 41L40, 41L47, 41L50, 43L47, 51L32, 52L100, 86L20, 86L40	150-200	115	**f** 7 **s** 30	4 85	7 325	4 565	7 465	4 720	39 140	20 220	39 195	20 365	39 170	20 350	39 245	20 495
	200-250	95	**f** 7 **s** 30	4 85							39 185	20 350				
	250-300	70	**f** 7 **s** 25	4 70	7 210	4 435	7 300	4 560	39 90	20 170	39 175	20 330	39 90	20 235	39 135	20 325
	300-375	50														
	375-425	40														
Alloy steels: 4012, 4023, 4024, 4028, 4118, 4320, 4419, 4422, 4427, 4615, 4620, 4621, 4626, 4718, 4720, 4815, 4817, 4820, 5015, 5117, 5120, 6118, 8115, 8615, 8617, 8620, 8622, 8625, 8627, 8720, 8822, 94B17	125-175	100	**f** 15 **s** 7	8 30	15 105	8 270	15 220	8 450			39 295	20 475	39 135	20 305	39 265	20 495
	175-225	90														
	225-275	60	**f** 15 **s** 6	8 25	15 50	8 175	15 85	8 255			39 200	20 320	39 70	20 210	39 115	20 290
	275-325	50	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 20	15 45	8 170	15 80	8 240			39 190	20 305				
	325-375	40	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 20	15 40	8 155	15 75	8 225			39 175	20 280				
	375-425	25														
Alloy steels: 1330, 1335, 1340, 1345, 4032, 4037, 4042, 4047, 4130, 4135, 4137, 4140, 4142, 4145, 4147, 4150, 4161, 4337, 4340, 50B44, 50B46, 50B50, 50B60, 5130, 5132, 5140, 5145, 5147, 5150, 5160, 51B60, 6150, 81B45, 8630, 8635, 8637, 8640, 8642, 8645, 8650, 8655, 8660, 8740, 9254, 9255, 9260, 9262, 94B30 E51100, E52100: use (HSS speeds)	175-225	75 (65)	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 30	15 105	8 270	15 220	8 450			39 295	20 475	39 135	20 305	39 265	20 495
	225-275	60	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 25	15 50	8 175	15 85	8 255			39 200	20 320	39 70	20 210	39 115	20 290
	275-325	50 (40)	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 25	15 45	8 170	15 80	8 240			39 190	20 305				
	325-375	35 (30)	**f** 15 **s** 5	8 20	15 40	8 155	15 75	8 225			39 175	20 280				
	375-425	20														

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	HSS Speed (fpm)	End Milling								Face Milling				Slit Milling			
			HSS				Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min															
				Opt.		*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Ultra-high-strength steels (not AISI): AMS 6421 (98B37 Mod.), 6422 (98BV40), 6424, 6427, 6428, 6430, 6432, 6433, 6434, 6436, and 6442; 300M, D6ac	220-300	60	**f**				8	4	8	4								
	300-350	45	**s**				165	355	300	480								
	350-400	20	**f**	8	4		8	4					39	20	39	20		
			s	15	45		150	320					130	235	75	175		
	43-52 RC	—	**f**				5	3							39	20		
			s				20†	55							5	15		
Maraging steels (not AISI): 18% Ni Grades 200, 250, 300, and 350	250-325	50	**f**				8	4	8	4								
			s				165	355	300	480								
	50-52 RC	—	**f**				5	3							39	20		
			s				20†	55							5	15		
Nitriding steels (not AISI): Nitralloy 125, 135, 135 Mod., 225, and 230, Nitralloy N, Nitralloy EZ, Nitrex 1	200-250	60	**f**	15	8		15	8	15	8			39	20	39	20	39	20
			s	7	30		105	270	220	450			295	475	135	305	265	495
	300-350	25	**f**	15	8		15	8	15	8			39	20				
			s	5	20		40	155	75	225			175	280				

[a] Brinell Hardness Number given unless otherwise indicated by RC for hardness on the Rockwell C scale.

For HSS (high-speed steel) tools in the first speed column only, use Table 15a for recommended feed in inches per tooth and depth of cut.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $\frac{3}{64}$-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $\frac{3}{4}$). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15d to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter *D* of 4.0 inches, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: end and slit milling uncoated carbide = 20 except † = 15; face milling uncoated carbide = 19; end, face, and slit milling coated carbide = 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Tool Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number [a]	HSS Speed (fpm)		End Milling						Face Milling				Slit Milling			
				HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		CBN		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
				f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min												
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Water hardening: W1, W2, W5	150-200	85															
Shock resisting: S1, S2, S5, S6, S7	175-225	55															
Cold-work, oil hardening: O1, O2, O6, O7	175-225	50	**f**	8	4	8	4	8	4	39	20			39	20	39	20
			s	25	70	235	455	405	635	235	385			115	265	245	445
Cold-work, high carbon, high chromium: D2, D3, D4, D5, D7	200-250	40															
Cold-work, air hardening: A2, A3, A8, A9, A10	200-250	50															
A4, A6	200-250	45	**f**							39	20						
A7	225-275	40	**s**							255	385						
Hot-work, chromium type: H10, H11, H12, H13, H14, H19	150-200	60															
	200-250	50															
	325-375	30	**f**	8	4	8	4			39	20			39	20		
			s	15	45	150	320			130	235			75	175		
	48-50 RC	—	**f**			5	3					39	20	39	20		
	50-52 RC	—	**s**			20†	55					50	135	5†	15		
	52-56 RC	—															
Hot-work, tungsten and molybdenum types: H21, H22, H23, H24, H25, H26, H41, H42, H43	150-200	55	**f**							39	20						
	200-250	45	**s**							255	385						
Special-purpose, low alloy: L2, L3, L6	150-200	65	**f**	8	4	8	4	8	4	39	20			39	20	39	20
Mold: P2, P3, P4, P5, P6 P20, P21	100-150	75	**s**	25	70	235	455	405	635	235	385			115	265	245	445
	150-200	60															
High-speed steel: M1, M2, M6, M10, T1, T2, T6	200-250	50															
M3-1, M4, M7, M30, M33, M34, M36, M41, M42, M43, M44, M46, M47, T5, T8	225-275	40	**f**							39	20						
			s							255	385						
T15, M3-2	225-275	30															

[a] Brinell Hardness Number given unless otherwise indicated by RC for hardness on the Rockwell C scale.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

For HSS (high-speed steel) tools in the first speed column only, use Table 15a for recommended feed in inches per tooth and depth of cut.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, 3/64-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = 3/4). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15d to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter *D* of 4.0 inches, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 20, † = 15; coated carbide = 10; CBN = 1.

Table 13. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Stainless Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	HSS Speed (fpm)		End Milling						Face Milling		Slit Milling			
				HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
				f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min											
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Free-machining stainless steels (Ferritic): 430F, 430FSe	135-185	110	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20
			s	30	80	305	780	420	1240	210	385	120	345	155	475
(Austenitic): 203EZ, 303, 303Se, 303MA, 303Pb, 303Cu, 303 Plus X	135-185	100													
	225-275	80	**f**	7	4	7	4					39	20		
	135-185	110	**s**	20	55	210	585					75	240		
(Martensitic): 416, 416Se, 416 Plus X, 420F, 420FSe, 440F, 440FSe	185-240	100													
	275-325	60													
	375-425	30													
Stainless steels (Ferritic): 405, 409, 429, 430, 434, 436, 442, 446, 502	135-185	90	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4	39	20	39	20	39	20
			s	30	80	305	780	420	1240	210	385	120	345	155	475
(Austenitic): 201, 202, 301, 302, 304, 304L, 305, 308, 321, 347, 348	135-185	75													
	225-275	65													
(Austenitic): 302B, 309, 309S, 310, 310S, 314, 316, 316L, 317, 330	135-185	70	**f**	7	4	7	4					39	20		
			s	20	55	210	585					75	240		
	135-175	95													
(Martensitic): 403, 410, 420, 501	175-225	85													
	275-325	55													
	375-425	35													

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Stainless Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	HSS Speed (fpm)	End Milling						Face Milling		Slit Milling			
			HSS			Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min											
			Opt.		*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.* *Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Stainless Steels (Martensitic): 414, 431, Greek Ascoloy, 440A, 440B, 440C	225-275	55-60												
	275-325	45-50												
	375-425	30												
(Precipitation hardening): 15-5PH, 17-4PH, 17-7PH, AF-71, 17-14CuMo, AFC-77, AM-350, AM-355, AM-362, Custom 455, HNM, PH13-8, PH14-8Mo, PH15-7Mo, Stainless W	150-200	60	**f** **s**	7 20	4 55	7 210	4 585				39 75	20 240		
	275-325	50												
	325-375	40												
	375-450	25												

For HSS (high-speed steel) tools in the first speed column only, use Table 15a for recommended feed in inches per tooth and depth of cut.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $\frac{3}{64}$-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $\frac{3}{4}$). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15dto adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter *D* of 4.0 inch, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 20; coated carbide = 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Ferrous Cast Metals

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Speed (fpm)	End Milling: HSS		End Milling: Uncoated Carbide		End Milling: Coated Carbide		Face Milling: Uncoated Carbide		Face Milling: Coated Carbide		Face Milling: Ceramic		Face Milling: CBN		Slit Milling: Uncoated Carbide		Slit Milling: Coated Carbide	
		HSS	HSS		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide		Ceramic		CBN		Uncoated Carbide		Coated Carbide	
			f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min																	
			Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Gray Cast Iron																				
ASTM Class 20	120-150	100	**f**	5	3	5	3		39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20		
ASTM Class 25	160-200	80	**s**	35	90	520	855		140	225	285	535	1130	1630	200	530	205	420		
ASTM Class 30, 35, and 40	190-220	70																		
ASTM Class 45 and 50	220-260	50	**f**	5	3	5	3		39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20	39	20		
ASTM Class 55 and 60	250-320	30	**s**	30	70	515	1100		95	160	185	395	845	1220	150	400	145	380		
ASTM Type 1, 1b, 5 (Ni resist)	100-215	50																		
ASTM Type 2, 3, 6 (Ni resist)	120-175	40																		
ASTM Type 2b, 4 (Ni resist)	150-250	30																		
Malleable Iron																				
(Ferritic): 32510, 35018	110-160	110	**f**	5	3	5	3		39	20	39	20	39	20			39	20		
			s	30	70	180	250		120	195	225	520	490	925			85	150		
(Pearlitic): 40010, 43010, 45006, 45008, 48005, 50005	160-200	80	**f**	5	3	5	3		39	20	39	20	39	20			39	20		
	200-240	65	**s**	25	65	150	215		90	150	210	400	295	645			70	125		
(Martensitic): 53004, 60003, 60004	200-255	55																		
(Martensitic): 70002, 70003	220-260	50																		
(Martensitic): 80002	240-280	45																		
(Martensitic): 90001	250-320	25																		
Nodular (Ductile) Iron																				
(Ferritic): 60-40-18, 65-45-12	140-190	75	**f**	7	4	7	4		39	20	39	20	39	20			39	20		
			s	15	35	125	240		100	155	120	255	580	920			60	135		
(Ferritic-Pearlitic): 80-55-06 {	190-225	60	**f**	7	4	7	4		39	20	39	20	39	20			39	20		
	225-260	50	**s**	10	30	90	210		95	145	150	275	170	415			40	100		
(Pearlitic-Martensitic): 100-70-03	240-300	40																		
(Martensitic): 120-90-02	270-330	25																		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Milling Ferrous Cast Metals**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	HSS Speed (fpm)		End Milling: HSS Opt.	End Milling: HSS Avg.	End Milling: Uncoated Carbide Opt.	End Milling: Uncoated Carbide Avg.	End Milling: Coated Carbide Opt.	End Milling: Coated Carbide Avg.	Face Milling: Uncoated Carbide Opt.	Face Milling: Uncoated Carbide Avg.	Face Milling: Coated Carbide Opt.	Face Milling: Coated Carbide Avg.	Face Milling: Ceramic Opt.	Face Milling: Ceramic Avg.	Face Milling: CBN Opt.	Face Milling: CBN Avg.	Slit Milling: Uncoated Carbide Opt.	Slit Milling: Uncoated Carbide Avg.	Slit Milling: Coated Carbide Opt.	Slit Milling: Coated Carbide Avg.
				f = feed (0.001 in/tooth), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min																
Cast Steels																					
(Low carbon): 1010, 1020	100-150	100	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4			39	20					39	20	39	20
	125-175	95	**s**	25	70	245†	410	420	650			265‡	430					135†	260	245	450
(Medium carbon): 1030, 1040 1050	175-225	80																			
	225-300	60	**f**	7	4	7	4	7	4			39	20					39	20	39	20
	150-200	85	**s**	20	55	160†	400	345	560			205‡	340					65†	180	180	370
(Low-carbon alloy): 1320, 2315, 2320, 4110, 4120, 4320, 8020, 8620	200-250	75																			
	250-300	50																			
(Medium-carbon alloy): 1330, 1340, 2325, 2330, 4125, 4130, 4140, 4330, 4340, 8030, 80B30, 8040, 8430, 8440, 8630, 8640, 9525, 9530, 9535	175-225	70	**f**	7	4	7	4											39	20		
	225-250	65	**s**	15	45	120†	310											45†	135		
	250-300	50	**f**							39	20										
	300-350	30	**s**							25	40										

For HSS (high-speed steel) tools in the first speed column only, use Table 15a for recommended feed in inches per tooth and depth of cut.

End Milling: Table data for end milling are based on a 3-tooth, 20-degree helix angle tool with a diameter of 1.0 inch, an axial depth of cut of 0.2 inch, and a radial depth of cut of 1 inch (full slot). Use Table 15b to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial depths of cut, and Table 15c to adjust speeds if the radial depth of cut is less than the tool diameter. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters.

Face Milling: Table data for face milling are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $\frac{3}{64}$-inch nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $\frac{3}{4}$). These speeds are valid if the cutter axis is above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). Under these conditions, use Table 15d to adjust speeds for other feeds and axial and radial depths of cut. For larger eccentricity (i.e., when the cutter axis to workpiece center line offset is one half the cutter diameter or more), use the end and side milling adjustment factors (Table 15b and Table 15c) instead of the face milling factors.

Slit and Slot Milling: Table data for slit milling are based on an 8-tooth, 10-degree helix angle tool with a cutter width of 0.4 inch, diameter *D* of 4.0 inches, and a depth of cut of 0.6 inch. Speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. See the examples in the text for adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut.

Tool life for all tabulated values is approximately 45 minutes; use Table 15e to adjust tool life from 15 to 180 minutes. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 15 except † = 20; end and slit milling coated carbide = 10; face milling coated carbide = 11 except ‡ = 10. ceramic = 6; CBN = 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15a. Recommended Feed in Inches per Tooth (f_t) for Milling with High-Speed Steel Cutters

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	End Mills							Plain or Slab Mills	Form Relieved Cutters	Face Mills and Shell End Mills	Slotting and Side Mills
		Depth of Cut, .250 inch (6.35 mm)			Depth of Cut, .050 inch (1.27 mm)							
		Cutter Diameter, inch (mm)			Cutter Diameter, inch (mm)							
		½ inch (12.7 mm)	¾ inch (25.4 mm)	1 inch and up (19.05 mm)	¼ inch (6.35 mm)	½ inch (12.7 mm)	¾ inch (19.05 mm)	1 inch and up (25.4 mm)				
		f_t = feed per tooth, inch; *Metric Units*: $f_t \times 25.4$ = mm										
Free-machining plain carbon steels	100-185	.001	.003	.004	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.005	.004-.012	.002-.008
Plain carbon steels, AISI 1006 to 1030; 1513 to 1522	100-150	.001	.003	.003	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.004	.004-.012	.002-.008
	150-200	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.002	.003	.003-.008	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
AISI 1033 to 1095; 1524 to 1566	120-180	.001	.003	.003	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.004	.004-.012	.002-.008
	180-220	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.002	.003	.003-.008	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
	220-300	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.003	.002-.006	.003	.002-.008	.002-.006
Alloy steels having less than 3% carbon. Typical examples: AISI 4012, 4023, 4027, 4118, 4320 4422, 4427, 4615, 4620, 4626, 4720, 4820, 5015, 5120, 6118, 8115, 8620 8627, 8720, 8820, 8822, 9310, 93B17	125-175	.001	.003	.003	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.004	.004-.012	.002-.008
	175-225	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.008	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
	225-275	.001	.002	.003	.001	.001	.002	.003	.002-.006	.003	.003-.008	.002-.006
	275-325	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.002	.002-.005	.003	.002-.008	.002-.005
Alloy steels having 3% carbon or more. Typical examples: AISI 1330, 1340, 4032, 4037, 4130, 4140, 4150, 4340, 50B40, 50B60, 5130, 51B60, 6150, 81B45, 8630, 8640, 86B45, 8660, 8740, 94B30	175-225	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
	225-275	.001	.002	.003	.001	.001	.002	.003	.002-.006	.003	.003-.010	.002-.006
	275-325	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.003	.002-.005	.003	.002-.008	.002-.005
	325-375	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.002	.002-.004	.002	.002-.008	.002-.005
Tool steel	150-200	.001	.002	.002	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.008	.004	.003-.010	.002-.006
	200-250	.001	.002	.002	.001	.002	.002	.003	.002-.006	.003	.003-.008	.002-.005
Gray cast iron	120-180	.001	.003	.004	.002	.003	.004	.004	.004-.012	.005	.005-.016	.002-.010
	180-225	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.010	.004	.004-.012	.002-.008
	225-300	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.002	.002-.006	.003	.002-.008	.002-.005
Free malleable iron	110-160	.001	.003	.004	.002	.003	.004	.004	.003-.010	.005	.005-.016	.002-.010

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15a. *(Continued)* **Recommended Feed in Inches per Tooth (f_t) for Milling with High-Speed Steel Cutters**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	End Mills							Plain or Slab Mills	Form Relieved Cutters	Face Mills and Shell End Mills	Slotting and Side Mills
		Depth of Cut, .250 inch (6.35 mm)			Depth of Cut, .050 inch (1.27 mm)							
		Cutter Diameter, inch (mm)			Cutter Diameter, inch (mm)							
		½ inch (12.7 mm)	¾ inch (25.4 mm)	1 inch and up (19.05 mm)	¼ inch (6.35 mm)	½ inch (12.7 mm)	¾ inch (19.05 mm)	1 inch and up (25.4 mm)				
		f_t = feed per tooth, inch; *Metric Units:* $f_t \times 25.4$ = mm										
Pearlitic-Martensitic malleable iron	160-200	.001	.003	.004	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.010	.004	.004-.012	.002-.018
	200-240	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.007	.004	.003-.010	.002-.006
	240-300	.001	.002	.002	.001	.001	.002	.002	.002-.006	.003	.002-.008	.002-.005
Cast steel	100-180	.001	.003	.003	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.008	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
	180-240	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.008	.004	.003-.010	.002-.006
	240-300	.001	.002	.002	.005	.002	.002	.002	.002-.006	.003	.003-.008	.002-.005
Zinc alloys (die castings)	…	.002	.003	.004	.001	.003	.004	.006	.003-.010	.005	.004-.015	.002-.012
Copper alloys (brasses & bronzes)	100-150	.002	.004	.005	.002	.003	.005	.006	.003-.015	.004	.004-.020	.002-.010
	150-250	.002	.003	.004	.001	.003	.004	.005	.003-.015	.004	.003-.012	.002-.008
Free cutting brasses & bronzes	80-100	.002	.004	.005	.002	.003	.005	.006	.003-.015	.004	.004-.015	.002-.010
Cast aluminum alloys—as cast	…	.003	.004	.005	.002	.004	.005	.006	.005-.016	.006	.005-.020	.004-.012
Cast aluminum alloys—hardened	…	.003	.004	.005	.002	.003	.004	.005	.004-.012	.005	.005-.020	.004-.012
Wrought aluminum alloys— cold drawn	…	.003	.004	.005	.002	.003	.004	.005	.004-.014	.005	.005-.020	.004-.012
Wrought aluminum alloys—hardened	…	.002	.003	.004	.001	.002	.003	.004	.003-.012	.004	.005-.020	.004-.012
Magnesium alloys	…	.003	.004	.005	.003	.004	.005	.007	.005-.016	.006	.008-.020	.005-.012
Ferritic stainless steel	135-185	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.002-.006	.004	.004-.008	.002-.007
Austenitic stainless steel	135-185	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.007	.004	.005-.008	.002-.007
	185-275	.001	.002	.003	.001	.002	.002	.002	.003-.006	.003	.004-.006	.002-.007
Martensitic stainless steel	135-185	.001	.002	.002	.001	.002	.003	.003	.003-.006	.004	.004-.010	.002-.007
	185-225	.001	.002	.002	.001	.002	.002	.003	.003-.006	.004	.003-.008	.002-.007
	225-300	.0005	.002	.002	.0005	.001	.002	.002	.002-.005	.003	.002-.006	.002-.005
Monel	100-160	.001	.003	.004	.001	.002	.003	.004	.002-.006	.004	.002-.008	.002-.006

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15b. End Milling (Full Slot) Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle

Cutting Speed, $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$																	
Ratio of Chosen Feed to *Optimum* Feed	Ratio of the two cutting speeds (*average*/*optimum*) given in the tables V_{avg}/V_{opt}							Depth of Cut and Lead Angle									
								1 in	(25.4 mm)	0.4 in	(10.2 mm)	0.2 in	(5.1 mm)	0.1 in	(2.4 mm)	0.04 in	(1.0 mm)
	1.00	1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00	0°	45°	0°	45°	0°	45°	0°	45°	0°	45°
	Feed Factor, F_f							Depth of Cut and Lead Angle Factor, F_d									
1.00	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.91	1.36	0.94	1.38	1.00	0.71	1.29	1.48	1.44	1.66
0.90	1.00	1.06	1.09	1.14	1.18	1.21	1.27	0.91	1.33	0.94	1.35	1.00	0.72	1.26	1.43	1.40	1.59
0.80	1.00	1.12	1.19	1.31	1.40	1.49	1.63	0.92	1.30	0.95	1.32	1.00	0.74	1.24	1.39	1.35	1.53
0.70	1.00	1.18	1.30	1.50	1.69	1.85	2.15	0.93	1.26	0.95	1.27	1.00	0.76	1.21	1.35	1.31	1.44
0.60	1.00	1.20	1.40	1.73	2.04	2.34	2.89	0.94	1.22	0.96	1.25	1.00	0.79	1.18	1.28	1.26	1.26
0.50	1.00	1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00	0.95	1.17	0.97	1.18	1.00	0.82	1.14	1.21	1.20	1.21
0.40	1.00	1.23	1.57	2.29	3.08	3.92	5.70	0.96	1.11	0.97	1.12	1.00	0.86	1.09	1.14	1.13	1.16
0.30	1.00	1.14	1.56	2.57	3.78	5.19	8.56	0.98	1.04	0.99	1.04	1.00	0.91	1.04	1.07	1.05	1.09
0.20	1.00	0.90	1.37	2.68	4.49	6.86	17.60	1.00	0.85	1.00	0.95	1.00	0.99	0.97	0.93	0.94	0.88
0.10	1.00	0.44	0.80	2.08	4.26	8.00	20.80	1.05	0.82	1.00	0.81	1.00	1.50	0.85	0.76	0.78	0.67

For HSS (high-speed steel) tool speeds in the first speed column of Table 10 through Table 14, use Table 15a to determine appropriate feeds and depths of cut.

Cutting speeds and feeds for end milling given in Table 11 through Table 14 (except those for high-speed steel in the first speed column) are based on milling a 0.20-inch deep full slot (i.e., radial depth of cut = end mill diameter) with a 1-inch diameter, 20-degree helix angle, 0-degree lead angle end mill. For other depths of cut (axial), lead angles, or feed, use the two feed/speed pairs from the tables and calculate the ratio of desired (new) feed to *optimum* feed (largest of the two feeds are given in the tables), and the ratio of the two cutting speeds (V_{avg}/V_{opt}). Find the feed factor F_f at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column in the left half of the Table. The depth of cut factor F_d is found in the same row as the feed factor, in the right half of the table under the column corresponding to the depth of cut and lead angle. The adjusted cutting speed can be calculated from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{opt} is the smaller (*optimum*) of the two speeds from the speed table (from the left side of the column containing the two feed/speed pairs). See the text for examples.

If the radial depth of cut is less than the cutter diameter (i.e., for cutting less than a full slot), the feed factor F_f in the previous equation and the maximum feed f_{max} must be obtained from Table 15c. The axial depth of cut factor F_d can then be obtained from this table using f_{max} in place of the *optimum* feed in the feed ratio. Also see the footnote to Table 15c.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15c. End, Slit, and Side Milling Speed Adjustment Factors for Radial Depth of Cut

Ratio of Radial Depth of Cut to Diameter	Cutting Speed, $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$													
	Maximum Feed/Tooth Factor	V_{avg}/V_{opt}						Minimum Feed/Tooth Factor	V_{avg}/V_{opt}					
		1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00		1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00
		Feed Factor F_f at Maximum Feed per Tooth, F_{f1}							Feed Factor F_f at Minimum Feed per Tooth, F_{f2}					
1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.70	1.18	1.30	1.50	1.69	1.85	2.15
0.75	1.00	1.15	1.24	1.46	1.54	1.66	1.87	0.70	1.24	1.48	1.93	2.38	2.81	3.68
0.60	1.00	1.23	1.40	1.73	2.04	2.34	2.89	0.70	1.24	1.56	2.23	2.95	3.71	5.32
0.50	1.00	1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00	0.70	1.20	1.58	2.44	3.42	4.51	6.96
0.40	1.10	1.25	1.55	2.17	2.83	3.51	4.94	0.77	1.25	1.55	2.55	3.72	5.08	8.30
0.30	1.35	1.20	1.57	2.28	3.05	3.86	5.62	0.88	1.23	1.57	2.64	4.06	5.76	10.00
0.20	1.50	1.14	1.56	2.57	3.78	5.19	8.56	1.05	1.40	1.56	2.68	4.43	6.37	11.80
0.10	2.05	0.92	1.39	2.68	4.46	6.77	13.10	1.44	0.92	1.29	2.50	4.66	7.76	17.40
0.05	2.90	0.68	1.12	2.50	4.66	7.75	17.30	2.00	0.68	1.12	2.08	4.36	8.00	20.80
0.02	4.50	0.38	0.71	1.93	4.19	7.90	21.50	3.10	0.38	0.70	1.38	3.37	7.01	22.20

This table is for side milling, end milling when the radial depth of cut (width of cut) is less than the tool diameter (i.e., less than full slot milling), and slit milling when the feed is parallel to the work surface (slotting). The radial depth of cut to diameter ratio is used to determine the recommended maximum and minimum values of feed/tooth, which are found by multiplying the feed/tooth factor from the appropriate column above (maximum or minimum) by feed_{opt} from the speed tables. For example, given two feed/speed pairs $^{7}/_{15}$ and $^{4}/_{45}$ for end milling cast, medium-carbon, alloy steel, and a radial depth of cut to diameter ratio ar/D of 0.10 (a 0.05-inch width of cut for a ½-inch diameter end mill, for example), the maximum feed $f_{max} = 2.05 \times 0.007 = 0.014$ in/tooth and the minimum feed $f_{min} = 1.44 \times 0.007 = 0.010$ in/tooth. The feed selected should fall in the range between f_{min} and f_{max}. The feed factor F_d is determined by interpolating between the feed factors F_{f1} and F_{f2} corresponding to the maximum and minimum feed per tooth, at the appropriate ar/D and speed ratio. In the example given, $ar/D = 0.10$ and $V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 45/15 = 3$, so the feed factor F_{f1} at the maximum feed per tooth is 6.77, and the feed factor F_{f2} at the minimum feed per tooth is 7.76. If a working feed of 0.012 in/tooth is chosen, the feed factor F_f is half way between 6.77 and 7.76 or by formula, $F_f = F_{f2} + (\text{feed} - f_{min})/(f_{max} - f_{min}) \times (F_{f1} - F_{f2}) = 7.76 + (0.012 - 0.010)/(0.014 - 0.010) \times (6.77 - 7.76) = 7.27$. The cutting speed is $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where F_d is the depth of cut and lead angle factor from Table 15b that corresponds to the feed ratio (chosen feed)/f_{max}, not the ratio (chosen feed)/*optimum* feed. For a feed ratio = 0.012/0.014 = 0.86 (chosen feed/f_{max}), depth of cut = 0.2 inch and lead angle = 45°, the depth of cut factor F_d in Table 15b is between 0.72 and 0.74. Therefore, the final cutting speed for this example is $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d = 15 \times 7.27 \times 0.73 = 80$ ft/min.

Slit and Side Milling: This table only applies when feed is parallel to the work surface, as in slotting. If feed is perpendicular to the work surface, as in cutting off, obtain the required speed-correction factor from Table 15d (face milling). The minimum and maximum feeds/tooth for slit and side milling are determined in the manner described above, however, the axial depth of cut factor F_d is not required. The adjusted cutting speed, valid for cutters of any thickness (width), is given by $V = V_{opt} \times F_f$. Examples are given in the text.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15d. Face Milling Speed Adjustment Factors for Feed, Depth of Cut, and Lead Angle

Cutting Speed $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d \times F_{ar}$																									
Ratio of Chosen Feed to *Optimum* Feed	Ratio of the two cutting speeds (*average*/*optimum*) given in the tables V_{avg}/V_{opt}							Depth of Cut, inch (mm), and Lead Angle										Ratio of Radial Depth of Cut/Cutter Diameter, *ar*/*D*						
								1 in (25.4 mm)		0.4 in (10.2 mm)		0.2 in (5.1 mm)		0.1 in (2.4 mm)		0.04 in (1.0 mm)								
	1.00	1.10	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.75	2.00	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°	15°	45°	1.00	0.75	0.50	0.40	0.30	0.20	0.10
	Feed Factor, F_f							Depth of Cut Factor, F_d										Radial Depth of Cut Factor, F_{ar}						
1.00	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.78	1.11	0.94	1.16	0.90	1.10	1.00	1.29	1.47	1.66	0.72	1.00	1.53	1.89	2.43	3.32	5.09
0.90	1.00	1.02	1.05	1.07	1.09	1.10	1.12	0.78	1.10	0.94	1.16	0.90	1.09	1.00	1.27	1.45	1.58	0.73	1.00	1.50	1.84	2.24	3.16	4.69
0.80	1.00	1.03	1.09	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	0.80	1.10	0.94	1.14	0.91	1.08	1.00	1.25	1.40	1.52	0.75	1.00	1.45	1.73	2.15	2.79	3.89
0.70	1.00	1.05	1.13	1.22	1.22	1.32	1.43	0.81	1.09	0.95	1.14	0.91	1.08	1.00	1.24	1.39	1.50	0.75	1.00	1.44	1.72	2.12	2.73	3.77
0.60	1.00	1.08	1.20	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.66	0.81	1.09	0.95	1.13	0.92	1.08	1.00	1.23	1.38	1.48	0.76	1.00	1.42	1.68	2.05	2.61	3.52
0.50	1.00	1.10	1.25	1.35	1.50	1.75	2.00	0.81	1.09	0.95	1.13	0.92	1.08	1.00	1.23	1.37	1.47	0.76	1.00	1.41	1.66	2.02	2.54	3.39
0.40	1.00	1.09	1.28	1.44	1.66	2.03	2.43	0.82	1.08	0.95	1.12	0.92	1.07	1.00	1.21	1.34	1.43	0.78	1.00	1.37	1.60	1.90	2.34	2.99
0.30	1.00	1.06	1.32	1.52	1.85	2.42	3.05	0.84	1.07	0.96	1.11	0.93	1.06	1.00	1.18	1.30	1.37	0.80	1.00	1.32	1.51	1.76	2.10	2.52
0.20	1.00	1.00	1.34	1.60	2.07	2.96	4.03	0.86	1.06	0.96	1.09	0.94	1.05	1.00	1.15	1.24	1.29	0.82	1.00	1.26	1.40	1.58	1.79	1.98
0.10	1.00	0.80	1.20	1.55	2.24	3.74	5.84	0.90	1.04	0.97	1.06	0.96	1.04	1.00	1.10	1.15	1.18	0.87	1.00	1.16	1.24	1.31	1.37	1.32

For HSS (high-speed steel) tool speeds in the first speed column, use Table 15a to determine appropriate feeds and depths of cut.

Tabular speeds and feeds data for face milling in Table 11 through Table 14 are based on a 10-tooth, 8-inch diameter face mill, operating with a 15-degree lead angle, $^{3}/_{64}$-inch cutter insert nose radius, axial depth of cut = 0.1 inch, and radial depth (width) of cut = 6 inches (i.e., width of cut to cutter diameter ratio = $^{3}/_{4}$). For other depths of cut (radial or axial), lead angles, or feed, calculate the ratio of desired (new) feed to *optimum* feed (largest of the two feeds given in the speed table), and the ratio of the two cutting speeds (V_{avg}/V_{opt}). Use these ratios to find the feed factor F_f at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column in the left third of the table. The depth of cut factor F_d is found in the same row as the feed factor, in the center third of the table, in the column corresponding to the depth of cut and lead angle. The radial depth of cut factor F_{ar} is found in the same row as the feed factor, in the right third of the table, in the column corresponding to the radial depth of cut to cutter diameter ratio *ar*/*D*. The adjusted cutting speed can be calculated from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d \times F_{ar}$, where V_{opt} is the smaller (*optimum*) of the two speeds from the speed table (from the left side of the column containing the two feed/speed pairs).

The cutting speeds as calculated above are valid if the cutter axis is centered above or close to the center line of the workpiece (eccentricity is small). For larger eccentricity (i.e., the cutter axis is offset from the center line of the workpiece by about one-half the cutter diameter or more), use the adjustment factors from Table 15b and Table 15c (end and side milling) instead of the factors from this table. Use Table 15e to adjust end and face milling speeds for increased tool life up to 180 minutes.

Slit and Slot Milling: Tabular speeds are valid for all tool diameters and widths. Adjustments to the given speeds for other feeds and depths of cut depend on the circumstances of the cut. *Case 1:* If the cutter is fed directly into the workpiece, i.e., the feed is perpendicular to the surface of the workpiece, as in cutting off, then this table (face milling) is used to adjust speeds for other feeds. The depth of cut factor is not used for slit milling ($F_d = 1.0$), so the adjusted cutting speed $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_{ar}$. For determining the factor F_{ar}, the radial depth of cut *ar* is the length of cut created by the portion of the cutter engaged in the work. *Case 2:* If the cutter is fed parallel to the surface of the workpiece, as in slotting, then Table 15b and Table 15c are used to adjust the given speeds for other feeds. See Fig. 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15e. Tool Life Adjustment Factors for Face Milling, End Milling, Drilling, and Reaming

Tool Life, T (minutes)	Face Milling with Carbides and Mixed Ceramics			End Milling with Carbides and HSS			Twist Drilling and Reaming with HSS		
	f_s	f_m	f_l	f_s	f_m	f_l	f_s	f_m	f_l
15	1.69	1.78	1.87	1.10	1.23	1.35	1.11	1.21	1.30
45	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
90	0.72	0.70	0.67	0.94	0.89	0.83	0.93	0.89	0.85
180	0.51	0.48	0.45	0.69	0.69	0.69	0.87	0.80	0.72

The speeds and feeds given in Table 11 through Table 14 and Table 17 through Table 23 (except for HSS speeds in the first speed column) are based on a 45-minute tool life. To adjust the given speeds to obtain another tool life, multiply the adjusted cutting speed for the 45-minute tool life V_{45} by the tool life factor from this table according to the following rules: for small feeds, where feed $\leq \frac{1}{2} f_{opt}$, the cutting speed for the desired tool life T is $V_T = f_s \times V_{15}$; for medium feeds, where $\frac{1}{2} f_{opt} <$ feed $< \frac{3}{4} f_{opt}$, $V_T = f_m \times V_{15}$; and for larger feeds, where $\frac{3}{4} f_{opt} \leq$ feed $\leq f_{opt}$, $V_T = f_l \times V_{15}$. Here, f_{opt} is the largest (*optimum*) feed of the two feed/speed values given in the speed tables or the maximum feed f_{max} obtained from Table 15c, if that table was used in calculating speed adjustment factors.

Table 16. Cutting Tool Grade Descriptions and Common Vendor Equivalents

Grade Description	Tool Identification Code	Approximate Vendor Equivalents			
		Sandvik Coromant	Kennametal	Seco	Valenite
Cubic boron nitride	1	CB50	KD050	CBN20	VC721
Ceramics	2	CC620	K060	480	—
	3	CC650	K090	480	Q32
	4 (Whiskers)	CC670	KYON2500	—	—
	5 (Sialon)	CC680	KYON2000	480	—
	6	CC690	KYON3000	—	Q6
Cermets	7	CT515	KT125	CM	VC605
	8	CT525	KT150	CR	VC610
Polycrystalline	9	CD10	KD100	PAX20	VC727
Coated carbides	10	GC-A	—	—	—
	11	GC3015	KC910	TP100	SV310
	12	GC235	KC9045	TP300	SV235
	13	GC4025	KC9025	TP200	SV325
	14	GC415	KC950	TP100	SV315
Uncoated carbides	15	H13A	K8, K4H	883	VC2
	16	S10T	K420, K28	CP20	VC7
	17	S1P	K45	CP20	VC7
	18	S30T	—	CP25	VC5
	19	S6	K21, K25	CP50	VC56
	20	SM30	KC710	CP25	VC35M

See Table 2 on page 866 and the section *Cemented Carbides and Other Hard Materials* for more detailed information on cutting tool grades.

The identification codes in column two correspond to the grade numbers given in the footnotes to Table 1 to Table 4b, Table 6 to Table 14, and Table 17 to Table 23.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading.—The first two speed columns in Table 17 through Table 23 give traditional Handbook speeds for drilling and reaming. The following material can be used for selecting feeds for use with the traditional speeds.

The remaining columns in Table 17 through Table 23 contain combined feed/speed data for drilling, reaming, and threading, organized in the same manner as in the turning and milling tables. Operating at the given speeds and feeds is expected to result in a tool life of approximately 45 minutes, except for indexable insert drills, which have an expected tool life of approximately 15 minutes per edge. Examples of using this data follow.

Adjustments to HSS drilling speeds for feed and diameter are made using Table 22; Table 5a is used for adjustments to indexable insert drilling speeds, where one-half the drill diameter D is used for the depth of cut. Tool life for HSS drills, reamers, and thread chasers and taps may be adjusted using Table 15e and for indexable insert drills using Table 5b.

The feed for drilling is governed primarily by the size of the drill and by the material to be drilled. Other factors that also affect selection of the feed are the workpiece configuration, the rigidity of the machine tool and the workpiece setup, and the length of the chisel edge. A chisel edge that is too long will result in a very significant increase in the thrust force, which may cause large deflections to occur on the machine tool and drill breakage.

For ordinary twist drills, the feed rate used is given in the table that follows. For additional information also see the table *Approximate Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Standard Automatic Screw Machine Tools—Brown and Sharpe* on page 1235.

Feet Rate for Twist Drills

Drill Size, inch (mm)	Feed Rate, inch/rev (mm/rev)
smaller than 1/8 inch (3.175 mm)	0.001 to 0.003 in/rev (0.025–0.08 mm/rev)
from 1/8- to 1/4-inch (3.175–6.35 mm)	0.002 to 0.006 in/rev (0.05–0.15 mm/rev)
from 1/4- to 1/2-inch (6.35–12.7 mm)	0.004 to 0.010 in/rev (0.10–0.25 mm/rev)
from 1/2- to 1-inch (12.7–25.4 mm)	0.007 to 0.015 in/rev (0.18–0.38 mm/rev)
larger than 1 inch (25.4 mm)	0.010 to 0.025 in/rev (0.25–0.64 mm/rev)

The lower values in the feed ranges should be used for hard materials such as tool steels, superalloys, and work-hardening stainless steels; the higher values in the feed ranges should be used to drill soft materials such as aluminum and brass.

Example 1, Drilling: Determine the cutting speed and feed for use with HSS drills in drilling 1120 steel.

Table 17 gives two sets of speed and feed parameters for drilling 1120 steel with HSS drills. These sets are 16⁄50 and 8⁄95, i.e., 0.016 in/rev feed at 50 ft/min and 0.008 in/rev at 95 fpm, respectively. These feed/speed sets are based on a 0.6-inch diameter drill. Tool life for either of the given feed/speed settings is expected to be approximately 45 minutes.

For different feeds or drill diameters, the cutting speeds must be adjusted and can be determined from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{opt} is the minimum speed for this material given in the speed table (50 fpm in this example) and F_f and F_d are the adjustment factors for feed and diameter, respectively, found in Table 22.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling Speed (fpm) HSS	Reaming Speed (fpm) HSS	Drilling HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)	Drilling HSS *Opt.*	Drilling HSS *Avg.*	Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide *Opt.*	Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide *Avg.*	Reaming HSS *Opt.*	Reaming HSS *Avg.*	Threading HSS *Opt.*	Threading HSS *Avg.*
								Metric Units: **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min				
Free-machining plain carbon steels (Resulfurized): 1212, 1213, 1215	100-150	120	80	**f**	21	11	8	4	36	18	83	20
				s	55	125	310	620	140	185	140	185
	150-200	125	80									
(Resulfurized): 1108, 1109, 1115, 1117, 1118, 1120, 1126, 1211	100-150	110	75	**f**	16	8	8	4	27	14	83	20
	150-200	120	80	**s**	50	95	370	740	105	115	90	115
	175-225	100	65	**f**			8	4				
				s			365	735				
(Resulfurized): 1132, 1137, 1139, 1140, 1144, 1146, 1151	275-325	70	45									
	325-375	45	30									
	375-425	35	20									
(Leaded): 11L17, 11L18, 12L13, 12L14	100-150	130	85									
	150-200	120	80									
	200-250	90	60	**f**			8	4				
				s			365	735				
Plain carbon steels: 1006, 1008, 1009, 1010, 1012, 1015, 1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1513, 1514	100-125	100	65	**f**	21	11	8	4	36	18	83	20
				s	55	125	310	620	140	185	140	185
	125-175	90	60									
	175-225	70	45	**f**			8	4				
	225-275	60	40	**s**			365	735				
Plain carbon steels: 1027, 1030, 1033, 1035, 1036, 1037, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041, 1042, 1043, 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049, 1050, 1052, 1524, 1526, 1527, 1541	125-175	90	60									
	175-225	75	50									
	225-275	60	40	**f**			8	4				
	275-325	50	30	**s**			365	735				
	325-375	35	20									
	375-425	25	15									

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. *(Continued)* **Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)	Reaming HSS Speed (fpm)		Drilling HSS		Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide		Reaming HSS		Threading HSS	
					f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
					Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Plain carbon steels *(Continued):* 1055, 1060, 1064, 1065, 1070, 1074, 1078, 1080, 1084, 1086, 1090, 1095, 1548, 1551, 1552, 1561, 1566	125-175	85	55	**f**	16	8	8	4	27	14	83	20
	175-225	70	45	**s**	50	95	370	740	105	115	90	115
	225-275	50	30	**f**			8	4				
				s			365	735				
	275-325	40	25									
	325-375	30	20									
	375-425	15	10									
Free-machining alloy steels (Resulfurized): 4140, 4150	175-200	90	60	**f**	16	8	8	4	26	13	83	20
	200-250	80	50	**s**	75	140	410	685	150	160	125	160
	250-300	55	30	**f**			8	4				
				s			355	600				
	300-375	40	25	**f**			8	4				
	375-425	30	15	**s**			310	525				
(Leaded): 41L30, 41L40, 41L47, 41L50, 43L47, 51L32, 52L100, 86L20, 86L40	150-200	100	65	**f**	16	8	8	4	27	14	83	20
				s	50	95	370	740	105	115	90	115
	200-250	90	60	**f**			8	4				
				s			365	735				
	250-300	65	40									
	300-375	45	30									
	375-425	30	15									
Alloy steels: 4012, 4023, 4024, 4028, 4118, 4320, 4419, 4422, 4427, 4615, 4620, 4621, 4626, 4718, 4720, 4815, 4817, 4820, 5015, 5117, 5120, 6118, 8115, 8615, 8617, 8620, 8622, 8625, 8627, 8720, 8822, 94B17	125-175	85	55	**f**	16	8	8	4	26	13	83	20
	175-225	70	45	**s**	75	140	410	685	150	160	125	160
	225-275	55	35	**f**			8	4				
				s			355	600				
	275-325	50	30	**f**	11	6	8	4	19	10	83	20
				s	50	85	335	570	95	135	60	95
	325-375	35	25	**f**			8	4				
	375-425	25	15	**s**			310	525				

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. *(Continued)* **Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Plain Carbon and Alloy Steels**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)		Drilling HSS		Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide		Reaming HSS		Threading HSS	
				f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Alloy steels: 1330, 1335, 1340, 1345, 4032, 4037, 4042, 4047, 4130, 4135, 4137, 4140, 4142, 4145, 4147, 4150, 4161, 4337, 4340, 50B44, 50B46, 50B50, 50B60, 5130, 5132, 5140, 5145, 5147, 5150, 5160, 51B60, 6150, 81B45, 8630, 8635, 8637, 8640, 8642, 8645, 8650, 8655, 8660, 8740, 9254, 9255, 9260, 9262, 94B30 E51100, E52100: use (HSS speeds)	175-225	75 (60)	50 (40)	**f** 16 **s** 75	8 140	8 410	4 685	26 150	13 160	83 125	20 160
	225-275	60 (50)	40 (30)	**f** **s**		8 355	4 600				
	275-325	45 (35)	30 (25)	**f** 11 **s** 50	6 85	8 335	4 570	19 95	10 135	83 60	20 95
	325-375	30 (30)	15 (20)	**f** **s**		8 310	4 525				
	375-425	20 (20)	15 (10)								
Ultra-high-strength steels (not AISI): AMS 6421 (98B37 Mod.), 6422 (98BV40), 6424, 6427, 6428, 6430, 6432, 6433, 6434, 6436, and 6442; 300M, D6ac	220-300	50	30	**f** **s**		8 325	4 545				
	300-350	35	20								
	350-400	20	10	**f** **s**		8 270	4 450				
Maraging steels (not AISI): 18% Ni Grade 200, 250, 300, and 350	250-325	50	30	**f** **s**		8 325	4 545				
Nitriding steels (not AISI): Nitralloy 125, 135, 135 Mod., 225, and 230, Nitralloy N, Nitralloy EZ, Nitrex I	200-250	60	40	**f** 16 **s** 75	8 140	8 410	4 685	26 150	13 160	83 125	20 160
	300-350	35	20	**f** **s**		8 310	4 525				

The two leftmost speed columns in this table contain traditional Handbook speeds for drilling and reaming with HSS steel tools. The section Feed Rates for Drilling and Reaming contains useful information concerning feeds to use in conjunction with these speeds.

HSS Drilling and Reaming: The combined feed/speed data for drilling are based on a 0.60-inch diameter HSS drill with standard drill point geometry (2-flute with 118° tip angle). Speed adjustment factors in Table 22 are used to adjust drilling speeds for other feeds and drill diameters. Examples of using this data are given in the text. The given speeds and feeds for reaming are based on an 8-tooth, $25\frac{1}{32}$-inch diameter, 30° lead angle reamer, and a 0.008-inch radial depth of cut. For other feeds, the correct speed can be obtained by interpolation using the given speeds if the desired feed lies in the recommended range (between the given values of *optimum* and *average* feed). If a feed lower than the given *average* value is chosen, the speed should be maintained at the corresponding *average* speed (i.e., the highest of the two speed values given). The cutting speeds for reaming do not require adjustment for tool diameters for standard ratios of radial depth of cut to reamer diameter (i.e., f_d = 1.00). Speed adjustment factors to modify tool life are found in Table 15e.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Indexable Insert Drilling: The feed/speed data for indexable insert drilling are based on a tool with two cutting edges, an insert nose radius of $^3/_{64}$ inch (1.2 mm), a 10-degree lead angle, and diameter D = 1 inch (2.54 mm). Adjustments to cutting speed for feed and depth of cut are made using Table 5a on page 1103 (Adjustment Factors) using a depth of cut of $D/2$, or one-half the drill diameter. Expected tool life at the given speeds and feeds is approximately 15 minutes for short hole drilling (i.e., where maximum hole depth is about 2D or less). Speed adjustment factors to increase tool life are found in Table 5b.

Tapping and Threading: The data in this column are intended for use with thread chasers and for tapping. The feed used for tapping and threading must be equal to the lead (feed = lead = pitch) of the thread being cut. The two feed/speed pairs given for each material, therefore, are representative speeds for two thread pitches, 12 and 50 threads per inch (1/0.083 = 12, and 1/0.020 = 50). Tool life is expected to be approximately 45 minutes at the given speeds and feeds. When cutting fewer than 12 threads per inch (pitch ≥ 0.08 inch or 2.1 mm), use the lower (*optimum*) speed; for cutting more than 50 threads per inch (pitch ≤ 0.02 inch or 0.51 mm), use the larger (*average*) speed; and, in the intermediate range between 12 and 50 threads per inch, interpolate between the given *average* and *optimum* speeds.

The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: coated carbide = 10.

Example 2, Drilling: If the 1120 steel of Example 1 is to be drilled with a 0.60-inch drill at a feed of 0.012 in/rev, what is the cutting speed in ft/min? Also, what spindle rpm of the drilling machine is required to obtain this cutting speed?

To find the feed factor F_d in Table 22, calculate the ratio of the desired feed to the *optimum* feed and the ratio of the two cutting speeds given in the speed tables. The desired feed is 0.012 in/rev and the *optimum* feed, as explained above is 0.016 in/rev, therefore, feed/f_{opt} = 0.012/0.016 = 0.75 and V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 95/50 = 1.9, approximately 2.

The feed factor F_f is found at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column. F_f = 1.40 corresponds to about halfway between 1.31 and 1.50, which are the feed factors that correspond to V_{avg}/V_{opt} = 2.0 and feed/f_{opt} ratios of 0.7 and 0.8, respectively. F_d, the diameter factor, is found on the same row as the feed factor (halfway between the 0.7 and 0.8 rows, for this example) under the column for drill diameter = 0.60 inch. Because the speed table values are based on a 0.60-inch drill diameter, F_d = 1.0 for this example, and the cutting speed is $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d = 50 \times 1.4 \times 1.0 = 70$ ft/min. The spindle speed in rpm is $N = 12 \times V/(\pi \times D) = 12 \times 70/(3.14 \times 0.6) = 445$ rpm.

Example 3, Drilling: Using the same material and feed as in the previous example, what cutting speeds are required for 0.079-inch and 4-inch diameter drills? What machine rpm is required for each?

Because the feed is the same as in the previous example, the feed factor is F_f = 1.40 and does not need to be recalculated. The diameter factors are found in Table 22 on the same row as the feed factor for the previous example (about halfway between the diameter factors corresponding to feed/f_{opt} values of 0.7 and 0.8) in the column corresponding to drill diameters 0.079 and 4.0 inches, respectively. Results of the calculations are summarized below.

Drill diameter = 0.079 inch	*Drill diameter = 4.0 inches*
$F_f = 1.40$	$F_f = 1.40$
$F_d = (0.34 + 0.38)/2 = 0.36$	$F_d = (1.95 + 1.73)/2 = 1.85$
$V = 50 \times 1.4 \times 0.36 = 25.2$ fpm	$V = 50 \times 1.4 \times 1.85 = 129.5$ fpm
$12 \times 25.2/(3.14 \times 0.079) = 1219$ rpm	$12 \times 129.5/(3.14 \times 4) = 124$ rpm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Drilling Difficulties: A drill split at the web is evidence of too much feed or insufficient lip clearance at the center due to improper grinding. Rapid wearing away of the extreme outer corners of the cutting edges indicates that the speed is too high. A drill chipping or breaking out at the cutting edges indicates that either the feed is too heavy or the drill has been ground with too much lip clearance. Nothing will "check" a high-speed steel drill quicker than to turn a stream of cold water on it after it has been heated while in use. It is equally bad to plunge it in cold water after the point has been heated in grinding. The small checks or cracks resulting from this practice will eventually chip out and cause rapid wear or breakage. Insufficient speed in drilling small holes with hand feed greatly increases the risk of breakage, especially at the moment the drill is breaking through the farther side of the work, due to the operator's inability to gage the feed when the drill is running too slowly.

Small drills have heavier webs and smaller flutes in proportion to their size than do larger drills, so breakage due to clogging of chips in the flutes is more likely to occur. When drilling holes deeper than three times the diameter of the drill, it is advisable to withdraw the drill (peck feed) at intervals to remove the chips and permit coolant to reach the tip of the drill.

Drilling Holes in Glass: The simplest method of drilling holes in glass is to use a standard, tungsten carbide-tipped masonry drill of the appropriate diameter, in a gun-drill. The edges of the carbide in contact with the glass should be sharp. Kerosene or other liquid may be used as a lubricant, and a light force is maintained on the drill until just before the point breaks through. The hole should then be started from the other side if possible, or a very light force applied for the remainder of the operation, to prevent excessive breaking of material from the sides of the hole. As the hard particles of glass are abraded, they accumulate and act to abrade the hole, so it may be advisable to use a slightly smaller drill than the required diameter of the finished hole.

Alternatively, for holes of medium and large size, use brass or copper tubing, having an outside diameter equal to the size of hole required. Revolve the tube at a peripheral speed of about 100 feet per minute (30.5 m/min), and use carborundum (80 to 100 grit) and light machine oil between the end of the pipe and the glass. Insert the abrasive under the drill with a thin piece of soft wood, to avoid scratching the glass. The glass should be supported by a felt or rubber cushion, not much larger than the hole to be drilled. If practicable, it is advisable to drill about halfway through, then turn the glass over, and drill down to meet the first cut. Any fin that may be left in the hole can be removed with a round second-cut file wetted with turpentine.

Smaller-diameter holes may also be drilled with triangular-shaped cemented carbide drills that can be purchased in standard sizes. The end of the drill is shaped into a long tapering triangular point. The other end of the cemented carbide bit is brazed onto a steel shank. A glass drill can be made to the same shape from hardened drill rod or an old three-cornered file. The location at which the hole is to be drilled is marked on the workpiece. A dam of putty or glazing compound is built up on the work surface to contain the cutting fluid, which can be either kerosene or turpentine mixed with camphor. Chipping on the back edge of the hole can be prevented by placing a scrap plate of glass behind the area to be drilled and drilling into the backup glass. This procedure also provides additional support to the workpiece and is essential for drilling very thin plates. The hole is usually drilled with an electric hand drill. When the hole is being produced, the drill should be given a small circular motion using the point as a fulcrum, thereby providing a clearance for the drill in the hole.

Very small round or intricately shaped holes and narrow slots can be cut in glass by the ultrasonic machining process or by the abrasive jet cutting process.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Tool Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)	Reaming HSS Speed (fpm)	Drilling HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)		Drilling Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)		Reaming HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)		Threading HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)	
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Water hardening: W1, W2, W5	150-200	85	55								
Shock resisting: S1, S2, S5, S6, S7	175-225	50	35								
Cold-work (oil hardening): O1, O2, O6, O7	175-225	45	30								
(High carbon, high chromium): D2, D3, D4, D5, D7	200-250	30	20								
(Air hardening): A2, A3, A8, A9, A10	200-250	50	35	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
A4, A6	200-250	45	30	**s**	45	85	360	605	90	95	75	95
A7	225-275	30	20								
Hot-work (chromium type): H10, H11, H12, H13, H14, H19	150-200	60	40								
	200-250	50	30								
	325-375	30	20	**f**			8	4				
				s			270	450				
(Tungsten type): H21, H22, H23, H24, H25, H26	150-200	55	35								
	200-250	40	25								
(Molybdenum type): H41, H42, H43	150-200	45	30								
	200-250	35	20								
Special-purpose, low alloy: L2, L3, L6	150-200	60	40								
Mold steel: P2, P3, P4, P5, P6P20, P21	100-150	75	50	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
	150-200	60	40	**s**	45	85	360	605	90	95	75	95
High-speed steel: M1, M2, M6, M10, T1, T2, T6	200-250	45	30								
M3-1, M4, M7, M30, M33, M34, M36, M41, M42, M43, M44, M46, M47, T5, T8	225-275	35	20								
T15, M3-2	225-275	25	15								

See the footnote to Table 17 for instructions concerning the use of this table. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: coated carbide = 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Stainless Steels

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)	Reaming HSS Speed (fpm)		Drilling HSS *Opt.*	Drilling HSS *Avg.*	Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide *Opt.*	Drilling Indexable Insert Coated Carbide *Avg.*	Reaming HSS *Opt.*	Reaming HSS *Avg.*	Threading HSS *Opt.*	Threading HSS *Avg.*
					f = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
Free-machining stainless steels (Ferritic): 430F, 430FSe	135-185	90	60	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
				s	25	45	320	540	50	50	40	51
(Austenitic): 203EZ, 303, 303Se, 303MA, 303Pb, 303Cu, 303 Plus X	135-185	85	55									
	225-275	70	45	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
	135-185	90	60	**s**	20	40	250	425	40	40	35	45
(Martensitic): 416, 416Se, 416 Plus X, 420F, 420FSe, 440F, 440FSe	185-240	70	45									
	275-325	40	25									
	375-425	20	10									
Stainless steels (Ferritic): 405, 409, 429, 430, 434	135-185	65	45	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
				s	25	45	320	540	50	50	40	51
(Austenitic): 201, 202, 301, 302, 304, 304L, 305, 308, 321, 347, 348	135-185	55	35									
	225-275	50	30	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
(Austenitic): 302B, 309, 309S, 310, 310S, 314, 316	135-185	50	30	**s**	20	40	250	425	40	40	35	45
	135-175	75	50									
	175-225	65	45									
(Martensitic): 403, 410, 420, 501	275-325	40	25									
	375-425	25	15									
	225-275	50	30									
(Martensitic): 414, 431, Greek Ascoloy	275-325	40	25									
	375-425	25	15									
	225-275	45	30									
(Martensitic): 440A, 440B, 440C	275-325	40	25									
	375-425	20	10									
(Precipitation hardening): 15-5PH, 17-4PH, 17-7PH, AF-71, 17-14CuMo, AFC-77, AM-350, AM-355, AM-362, Custom 455, HNM, PH13-8, PH14-8Mo, PH15-7Mo, Stainless W	150-200	50	30	**f**	15	7	8	4	24	12	83	20
				s	20	40	250	425	40	40	35	45
	275-325	45	25									
	325-375	35	20									
	375-450	20	10									

See the footnote to Table 17 for instructions concerning the use of this table. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: coated carbide = 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 20. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Ferrous Cast Metals

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)	Reaming HSS Speed (fpm)	Drilling HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min)		Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Uncoated		Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Coated		Reaming HSS		Threading HSS	
				Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
ASTM Class 20	120-150	100	65										
ASTM Class 25	160-200	90	60	**f**	16	8	11	6	11	6	26	13	83	20
ASTM Class 30, 35, and 40	190-220	80	55	**s**	80	90	85	180	235	485	85	65	90	80
ASTM Class 45 and 50	220-260	60	40	**f**	13	6	11	6	11	6	21	10	83	20
ASTM Class 55 and 60	250-320	30	20	**s**	50	50	70	150	195	405	50	30	55	45
ASTM Type 1, 1b, 5 (Ni resist)	100-215	50	30										
ASTM Type 2, 3, 6 (Ni resist)	120-175	40	25										
ASTM Type 2b, 4 (Ni resist)	150-250	30	20										
Malleable Iron													
(Ferritic): 32510, 35018	110-160	110	75	**f**	19	10	11	6	11	6	30	16	83	20
				s	80	100	85	180	270	555	95	80	100	85
(Pearlitic): 40010, 43010, 45006, 45008, 48005, 50005	160-200	80	55	**f**	14	7			11	6	22	11	83	20
	200-240	70	45	**s**	65	65			235	485	65	45	70	60
(Martensitic): 53004, 60003, 60004	200-255	55	35										
(Martensitic): 70002, 70003	220-260	50	30										
(Martensitic): 80002	240-280	45	30										
(Martensitic): 90001	250-320	25	15										
Nodular (Ductile) Iron													
(Ferritic): 60-40-18, 65-45-12	140-190	100	65	**f**	17	9	11	6	11	6	28	14	83	20
				s	70	80	85	180	235	485	80	60	80	70

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 20. *(Continued)* **Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Ferrous Cast Metals**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling HSS Speed (fpm)	Reaming HSS Speed (fpm)	Drilling HSS **f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Opt.*	Drilling HSS *Avg.*	Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Uncoated *Opt.*	Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Uncoated *Avg.*	Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Coated *Opt.*	Drilling Indexable Carbide Insert Coated *Avg.*	Reaming HSS *Opt.*	Reaming HSS *Avg.*	Threading HSS *Opt.*	Threading HSS *Avg.*
(Martensitic): 120-90-02	270-330	25	15										
	330-400	10	5										
(Ferritic-Pearlitic): 80-55-06	190-225	70	45	**f**	13	11	6	11	6	21	11	83	20
	225-260	50	30	**s**	60	70	150	195	405	55	40	60	55
(Pearlitic-Martensitic): 100-70-03	240-300	40	25										
Cast Steels													
(Low carbon): 1010, 1020	100-150	100	65	**f**	18		9			29	15	83	20
				s	35		70			75	85	65	85
(Medium carbon): 1030, 1040, 1050	125-175	90	60										
	175-225	70	45										
	225-300	55	35	**f**	15		7		8		4	24	12	83	20
				s	35		60		195†		475	65	70	55	70
(Low-carbon alloy): 1320, 2315, 2320, 4110, 4120, 4320, 8020, 8620	150-200	75	50										
	200-250	65	40										
	250-300	50	30										
(Medium-carbon alloy): 1330, 1340, 2325, 2330, 4125, 4130, 4140, 4330, 4340, 8030, 80B30, 8040, 8430, 8440, 8630, 8640, 9525, 9530, 9535	175-225	70	45	**f**					8		4				
	225-250	60	35	**s**					130†		315				
	250-300	45	30										
	300-350	30	20										
	350-400	20	10										

See the footnote to Table 17 for instructions concerning the use of this table. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated = 15; coated carbide = 11, † = 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling, Reaming, and Threading Light Metals

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	Drilling	Reaming		Drilling				Reaming		Threading	
		HSS			HSS		Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide		HSS		HSS	
		Speed (fpm)			**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min							
					Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
All wrought aluminum alloys, 6061-T651, 5000, 6000, 7000 series	CD	400	400									
	ST and A	350	350	**f**	31	16	11	6	52	26	83	20
All aluminum sand and permanent mold casting alloys	AC	500	500	**s**	390	580	3235	11370	610	615	635	565
	ST and A	350	350									
Aluminum Die-Casting Alloys												
Alloys 308.0 and 319.0	—	—	—	**f**	23	11	11	6	38	19	83	20
				s	110	145	945	3325	145	130	145	130
Alloys 360.0 and 380.0	—	—	—	**f**	27	14	11	6	45	23	83	20
				s	90	125	855	3000	130	125	130	115
Alloys 390.0 and 392.0 {	AC	300	300									
	ST and A	70	70									
Alloys 413	—	—	—	**f**	24	12	11	6	40	20	83	20
	ST and A	45	40	**s**	65	85	555	1955	85	80	85	80
All other aluminum die-casting alloys {	AC	125	100	**f**	27	14	11	6	45	23	83	20
				s	90	125	855	3000	130	125	130	115
Magnesium Alloys												
All wrought magnesium alloys	A,CD,ST and A	500	500									
All cast magnesium alloys	A,AC, ST and A	450	450									

Abbreviations designate: A, annealed; AC, as cast; CD, cold drawn; and ST and A, solution treated and aged, respectively. See the footnote to Table 17 for instructions concerning the use of this table. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows; uncoated carbide = 15.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 22. Diameter Speed and Feed Adjustment Factors for HSS Twist Drills and Reamers

Cutting Speed, $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$																
Ratio of Chosen Feed to *Optimum* Feed	Ratio of the two cutting speeds (*average*/*optimum*) given in the tables V_{avg}/V_{opt}							Tool Diameter								
	1.00	1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	4.00	0.08 in (2 mm)	0.15 in (4 mm)	0.25 in (6 mm)	0.40 in (10 mm)	0.60 in (15 mm)	1.00 in (25 mm)	2.00 in (50 mm)	3.00 in (75 mm)	4.00 in (100 mm)
	Feed Factor, F_f							Diameter Factor, F_d								
1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.30	0.44	0.56	0.78	1.00	1.32	1.81	2.11	2.29
0.90	1.00	1.06	1.09	1.14	1.18	1.21	1.27	0.32	0.46	0.59	0.79	1.00	1.30	1.72	1.97	2.10
0.80	1.00	1.12	1.19	1.31	1.40	1.49	1.63	0.34	0.48	0.61	0.80	1.00	1.27	1.64	1.89	1.95
0.70	1.00	1.15	1.30	1.50	1.69	1.85	2.15	0.38	0.52	0.64	0.82	1.00	1.25	1.52	1.67	1.73
0.60	1.00	1.23	1.40	1.73	2.04	2.34	2.89	0.42	0.55	0.67	0.84	1.00	1.20	1.46	1.51	1.54
0.50	1.00	1.25	1.50	2.00	2.50	3.00	5.00	0.47	0.60	0.71	0.87	1.00	1.15	1.30	1.34	1.94
0.40	1.00	1.23	1.57	2.29	3.08	3.92	5.70	0.53	0.67	0.77	0.90	1.00	1.10	1.17	1.16	1.12
0.30	1.00	1.14	1.56	2.57	3.78	5.19	8.56	0.64	0.76	0.84	0.94	1.00	1.04	1.02	0.96	0.90
0.20	1.00	0.90	1.37	2.68	4.49	6.86	17.60	0.83	0.92	0.96	1.00	1.00	0.96	0.81	0.73	0.66
0.10	1.00	1.44	0.80	2.08	4.36	8.00	20.80	1.29	1.26	1.21	1.11	1.00	0.84	0.60	0.46	0.38

This table is specifically for use with the combined feed/speed data for HSS twist drills in Table 17 through Table 23; use Table 5a and Table 5b to adjust speed and tool life for indexable insert drilling with carbides. The combined feed/speed data for HSS twist drilling are based on a 0.60-inch diameter HSS drill with standard drill point geometry (2-flute with 118° tip angle). To adjust the given speeds for different feeds and drill diameters, use the two feed/speed pairs from the tables and calculate the ratio of desired (new) feed to *optimum* feed (largest of the two feeds from the speed table), and the ratio of the two cutting speeds V_{avg}/V_{opt}. Use the values of these ratios to find the feed factor F_f at the intersection of the feed ratio row and the speed ratio column in the left half of the table. The diameter factor F_d is found in the same row as the feed factor, in the right half of the table, under the column corresponding to the drill diameter. For diameters not given, interpolate between the nearest available sizes. The adjusted cutting speed can be calculated from $V = V_{opt} \times F_f \times F_d$, where V_{opt} is the smaller (*optimum*) of the two speeds from the speed table (from the left side of the column containing the two feed/speed pairs). Tool life using the selected feed and the adjusted speed should be approximately 45 minutes. Speed adjustment factors to modify tool life are found in Table 15e.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. Speeds and Feeds for Drilling and Reaming Copper Alloys

Group 1
Architectural bronze(C38500); Extra-high-leaded brass (C35600); Forging brass (C37700); Free-cutting phosphor bronze (B-2) (C54400); Free-cutting brass (C36000); Free-cutting Muntz metal (C37000); High-leaded brass (C33200, C34200); High-leaded brass tube (C35300); Leaded commercial bronze (C31400); Leaded naval brass (C48500); Medium-leaded brass (C34000)
Group 2
Aluminum brass, arsenical (C68700); Cartridge brass, 70% (C26000); High-silicon bronze, B (C65500); Admiralty brass (inhibited) (C44300, C44500); Jewelry bronze, 87.5% (C22600); Leaded Muntz metal (C36500, C36800); Leaded nickel silver (C79600); Low brass, 80% (C24000); Low-leaded brass (C33500); Low-silicon bronze, B (C65100); Manganese bronze, A (C67500); Muntz metal, 60% (C28000); Nickel silver, 55-18 (C77000); Red brass, 85% (C23000); Yellow brass (C26800)
Group 3
Aluminum bronze, D (C61400); Beryllium copper (C17000, C17200, C17500); Commercial bronze, 90% (C22000); Copper nickel, 10% (C70600); Copper nickel, 30% (C71500);Electrolytic tough-pitch copper (C11000); Gilding, 95% (C21000); Nickel silver, 65-10 (C74500); Nickel silver, 65-12 (C75700); Nickel silver, 65-15 (C75400); Nickel silver, 65-18 (C75200); Oxygen-free copper (C10200); Phosphor bronze, 1.25% (C50200); Phosphor bronze, 10% D (C52400); Phosphor bronze, 5% A (C51000); Phosphor bronze, 8% C (C52100); Phosphorus deoxidized copper (C12200)

Alloy Description and UNS Alloy Numbers	Material Condition	Drilling	Reaming	Drilling				Reaming	
		HSS		HSS		Indexable Insert Uncoated Carbide		HSS	
		Speed (fpm)		**f** = feed (0.001 in/rev), **s** = speed (ft/min) *Metric Units:* **f** × 25.4 = mm/rev, **s** × 0.3048 = m/min					
					Opt.	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*	*Opt.*	*Avg.*
Wrought Alloys										
Group 1	A	160	160	**f**	21	11	11	6	36	18
	CD	175	175	**s**	210	265	405	915	265	230
Group 2	A	120	110	**f**	24	12	11	6	40	20
	CD	140	120	**s**	100	130	205	455	130	120
Group 3	A	60	50	**f**	23	11	11	6	38	19
	CD	65	60	**s**	155	195	150	340	100	175

Abbreviations designate: A, annealed; CD, cold drawn. The two leftmost speed columns in this table contain traditional Handbook speeds for HSS steel tools. The text contains information concerning feeds to use in conjunction with these speeds.

HSS Drilling and Reaming: The combined feed/speed data for drilling and Table 22 are used to adjust drilling speeds for other feeds and drill diameters. Examples are given in the text. The given speeds and feeds for reaming are based on an 8-tooth, $^{25}/_{32}$-inch diameter, 30° lead angle reamer, and a 0.008-inch radial depth of cut. For other feeds, the correct speed can be obtained by interpolation using the given speeds if the desired feed lies in the recommended range (between the given values of *optimum* and *average* feed). The cutting speeds for reaming do not require adjustment for tool diameter as long as the radial depth of cut does not become too large. Speed adjustment factors to modify tool life are found in Table 15e.

Indexable Insert Drilling: The feed/speed data for indexable insert drilling are based on a tool with two cutting edges, an insert nose radius of $^{3}/_{64}$ inch, a 10-degree lead angle, and diameter *D* of 1 inch. Adjustments for feed and depth of cut are made using Table 5a (Turning Speed Adjustment Factors) using a depth of cut of *D*/2, or one-half the drill diameter. Expected tool life at the given speeds and feeds is 15 minutes for short hole drilling (i.e., where hole depth is about 2*D* or less). Speed adjustment factors to increase tool life are found in Table 5b. The combined feed/speed data in this table are based on tool grades (identified in Table 16) as follows: uncoated carbide = 15.

Using the Speeds and Feeds Tables for Tapping and Threading.—The feed used in tapping and threading is always equal to the pitch of the screw thread being formed. The threading data contained in the tables for drilling, reaming, and threading (Table 17

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

through Table 23) are primarily for tapping and thread chasing, and do not apply to thread cutting with single-point tools.

The threading data in Table 17 through Table 23 give two sets of feed (pitch) and speed values, for 12 and 50 threads/inch, but these values can be used to obtain the cutting speed for any other thread pitches. If the desired pitch falls between the values given in the tables, i.e., between 0.020 inch (50 tpi) and 0.083 inch (12 tpi), the required cutting speed is obtained by interpolation between the given speeds. If the pitch is less than 0.020 inch (more than 50 tpi), use the *average* speed, i.e., the largest of the two given speeds. For pitches greater than 0.083 inch (fewer than 12 tpi), the *optimum* speed should be used. Tool life using the given feed/speed data is intended to be approximately 45 minutes, and should be about the same for threads between 12 and 50 threads per inch.

Example: Determine the cutting speed required for tapping 303 stainless steel with a $\frac{1}{2}$-20 coated HSS tap.

The two feed/speed pairs for 303 stainless steel, in Table 19, are 83⁄35 (0.083 in/rev at 35 fpm) and 20⁄45 (0.020 in/rev at 45 fpm). The pitch of a $\frac{1}{2}$-20 thread is 1⁄20 = 0.05 inch, so the required feed is 0.05 in/rev. Because 0.05 is between the two given feeds (Table 19), the cutting speed can be obtained by interpolation between the two given speeds as follows:

$$V = 35 + \frac{0.05 - 0.02}{0.083 - 0.02}(45 - 35) = 40 \text{ fpm}$$

The cutting speed for coarse-pitch taps must be lower than for fine-pitch taps with the same diameter. Usually, the difference in pitch becomes more pronounced as the diameter of the tap becomes larger and slight differences in the pitch of smaller-diameter taps have little significant effect on the cutting speed. Unlike all other cutting tools, the feed per revolution of a tap cannot be independently adjusted—it is always equal to the lead of the thread and is always greater for coarse pitches than for fine pitches. Furthermore, the thread form of a coarse-pitch thread is larger than that of a fine-pitch thread; therefore, it is necessary to remove more metal when cutting a coarse-pitch thread.

Taps with a long chamfer, such as starting or tapper taps, can cut faster in a short hole than short chamfer taps, such as plug taps. In deep holes, however, short chamfer or plug taps can run faster than long chamfer taps. Bottoming taps must be run more slowly than either starting or plug taps. The chamfer helps to start the tap in the hole. It also functions to involve more threads, or thread form cutting edges, on the tap in cutting the thread in the hole, thus reducing the cutting load on any one set of thread form cutting edges. In so doing, more chips and thinner chips are produced that are difficult to remove from deeper holes. Shortening the chamfer length causes fewer thread form cutting edges to cut, thereby producing fewer and thicker chips that can easily be disposed of. Only one or two sets of thread form cutting edges are cut on bottoming taps, causing these cutting edges to assume a heavy cutting load and produce very thick chips.

Spiral-pointed taps can operate at a faster cutting speed than taps with normal flutes. These taps are made with supplementary angular flutes on the end that push the chips ahead of the tap and prevent the tapped hole from becoming clogged with chips. They are used primarily to tap open or through holes although some are made with shorter supplementary flutes for tapping blind holes.

The tapping speed must be reduced as the percentage of full thread to be cut is increased. Experiments have shown that the torque required to cut a 100 percent thread form is more than twice that required to cut a 50 percent thread form. An increase in the percentage of full thread will also produce a greater volume of chips.

The tapping speed must be lowered as the length of the hole to be tapped is increased. More friction must be overcome in turning the tap and more chips accumulate in the hole. It will be more difficult to apply the cutting fluid at the cutting edges and to lubricate the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tap to reduce friction. This problem becomes greater when the hole is being tapped in a horizontal position.

Cutting fluids have a very great effect on the cutting speed for tapping. Although other operating conditions when tapping frequently cannot be changed, a free selection of the cutting fluid usually can be made. When planning the tapping operation, the selection of a cutting fluid warrants a very careful consideration and perhaps an investigation.

Taper threaded taps, such as pipe taps, must be operated at a slower speed than straight thread taps with a comparable diameter. All the thread form cutting edges of a taper threaded tap that are engaged in the work cut and produce a chip, but only those cutting edges along the chamfer length cut on straight thread taps. Pipe taps often are required to cut the tapered thread from a straight hole, adding to the cutting burden.

The machine tool used for the tapping operation must be considered in selecting the tapping speed. Tapping machines and other machines that are able to feed the tap at a rate of advance equal to the lead of the tap, and that have provisions for quickly reversing the spindle, can be operated at high cutting speeds. On machines where the feed of the tap is controlled manually—such as on drill presses and turret lathes—the tapping speed must be reduced to allow the operator to maintain safe control of the operation.

There are other special considerations in selecting the tapping speed. Very accurate threads are usually tapped more slowly than threads with a commercial grade of accuracy. Thread forms that require deep threads for which a large amount of metal must be removed, producing a large volume of chips, require special techniques and slower cutting speeds. Acme, buttress, and square threads, therefore, are generally cut at lower speeds.

Cutting Speed for Broaching.—Broaching offers many advantages in manufacturing metal parts, including high production rates, excellent surface finishes, and close dimensional tolerances. These advantages are not derived from the use of high cutting speeds; they are derived from the large number of cutting teeth that can be applied consecutively in a given period of time, from their configuration and precise dimensions, and from the width or diameter of the surface that can be machined in a single stroke. Most broaching cutters are expensive in their initial cost and are expensive to sharpen. For these reasons, a long tool life is desirable, and to obtain a long tool life, relatively slow cutting speeds are used. In many instances, slower cutting speeds are used because of the limitations of the machine in accelerating and stopping heavy broaching cutters. At other times, the available power on the machine places a limit on the cutting speed that can be used; i.e., the cubic inches of metal removed per minute must be within the power capacity of the machine.

The cutting speeds for high-speed steel broaches range from 3 to 50 feet per minute, although faster speeds have been used. In general, the harder and more difficult to machine materials are cut at a slower cutting speed and those that are easier to machine are cut at a faster speed. Some typical recommendations for high-speed steel broaches are: AISI 1040, 10 to 30 fpm; AISI 1060, 10 to 25 fpm; AISI 4140, 10 to 25 fpm; AISI 41L40, 20 to 30 fpm; 201 austenitic stainless steel, 10 to 20 fpm; Class 20 gray cast iron, 20 to 30 fpm; Class 40 gray cast iron, 15 to 25 fpm; aluminum and magnesium alloys, 30 to 50 fpm; copper alloys, 20 to 30 fpm; commercially pure titanium, 20 to 25 fpm; alpha and beta titanium alloys, 5 fpm; and the superalloys, 3 to 10 fpm. Surface broaching operations on gray iron castings have been conducted at a cutting speed of 150 fpm, using indexable insert cemented carbide broaching cutters. In selecting the speed for broaching, the cardinal principle of the performance of all metal cutting tools should be kept in mind; i.e., increasing the cutting speed may result in a proportionately larger reduction in tool life, and reducing the cutting speed may result in a proportionately larger increase in the tool life. When broaching most materials, a suitable cutting fluid should be used to obtain a good surface finish and a better tool life. Gray cast iron can be broached without using a cutting fluid although some shops prefer to use a soluble oil.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ESTIMATING SPEEDS AND MACHINING POWER

Estimating Planer Cutting Speeds.—Whereas most planers of modern design have a means of indicating the speed at which the table is traveling, or cutting, many older planers do not. The following formulas are useful for planers that do not have a means of indicating the table or cutting speed. It is not practicable to provide a formula for calculating the exact cutting speed at which a planer is operating because the time to stop and start the table when reversing varies greatly. The formulas below will provide a reasonable estimate.

$$V_c \approx S_c L \qquad \text{and} \qquad S_c \approx \frac{V_c}{L}$$

where V_c = cutting speed; fpm or m/min
S_c = number of cutting strokes per minute of planer table
L = length of table cutting stroke; ft or m

Cutting Speed for Planing and Shaping.—The traditional HSS cutting tool speeds in Table 1 through Table 4b and Table 6 through Table 9, pages 1095 through 1107, can be used for planing and shaping. The feed and depth of cut factors in Table 5c should also be used, as explained previously. Very often, other factors relating to the machine or the setup will require a reduction in the cutting speed used on a specific job.

Cutting Time for Turning, Boring, and Facing.—The time required to turn a length of metal can be determined by the following formula in which T = time in minutes, L = length of cut in inches (or mm), f = feed in inches per revolution (or mm/min), and N = lathe spindle speed in revolutions per minute.

$$T = \frac{L}{fN}$$

When making job estimates, the time required to load and to unload the workpiece on the machine, and the machine handling time, must be added to the cutting time for each length cut to obtain the floor-to-floor time.

Planing Time.—The approximate time required to plane a surface can be determined from the following formula in which T = time in minutes, L = length of stroke in feet (or meter), V_c = cutting speed in feet per minute (m/min), V_r = return speed in feet per minute (m/min); W = width of surface to be planed in inches (or mm), F = feed in inches (or mm), and 0.025 = approximate reversal time factor per stroke in minutes for most planers:

$$T = \frac{W}{F}\left[L \times \left(\frac{1}{V_c} + \frac{1}{V_r}\right) + 0.025\right]$$

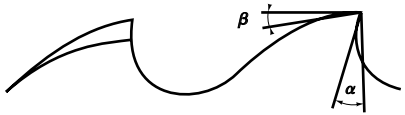
Speeds for Metal-Cutting Saws.—The table on page 1144 gives speeds and feeds for solid-tooth, high-speed steel, circular, metal-cutting saws as recommended by Saws International, Inc. (sfpm = surface feet per minute = 3.142 × blade diameter in inches × rpm of saw shaft ÷ 12). Also see page 1245 for bandsaw blade speeds.

Speeds for Turning Unusual Materials.—*Slate*, on account of its peculiarly stratified formation, is rather difficult to turn, but if handled carefully, can be machined in an ordinary lathe. The cutting speed should be about the same as for cast iron. A sheet of fiber or pressed paper should be interposed between the chuck or steadyrest jaws and the slate, to protect the latter. Slate rolls must not be centered and run on the tailstock. A satisfactory method of supporting a slate roll having journals at the ends is to bore a piece of lignum vitae to receive the turned end of the roll, and center it for the tailstock spindle.

Rubber can be turned at a peripheral speed of 200 feet per minute (61 m/min), although it is much easier to grind it with an abrasive wheel that is porous and soft. For cutting a rubber roll in two, the ordinary parting tool should not be used, but a tool shaped like a knife; such a tool severs the rubber without removing any material.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Speeds, Feeds, and Tooth Angles for Sawing Various Material with Solid-Tooth, High-Speed Steel, Circular, Metal-cutting Saws



First entry is cutting speed, second entry is feed
α = Cutting angle (Front), degree
β = Relief angle (Back), degree

Materials	Rake Angle		Stock Diameters, inches				Stock Diameters, millimeters			
	α	β	¼–¾	¾–1½	1½–2½	2½–3½	6–19	19–38	38–63	63–89
Aluminum	24	12	6500 sfpm 100 in/min	6200 sfpm 85 in/min	6000 sfpm 80 in/min	5000 sfpm, 75 in/min	1981 m/min 2540 mm/min	1890 m/min 2159 mm/min	1829 m/min 2159 mm/min	1524 m/min 2159 mm/min
Light Alloys with Cu, Mg, and Zn	22	10	3600 sfpm 70 in/min	3300 sfpm 65 in/min	3000 sfpm, 63 in/min	2600 sfpm 60 in/min	1097 m/min 1778 mm/min	1006 m/min 1651 mm/min	914 m/min 1600 mm/min	792 m/min 1524 mm/min
Light Alloys with High Si	20	8	650 sfpm 16 in/min	600 sfpm 16 in/min	550 sfpm 14 in/min	550 sfpm 12 in/min	198 m/min 406 mm/min	183 m/min 406 mm/min	168 m/min 356 mm/min	168 m/min 305 mm/min
Copper	20	10	1300 sfpm 24 in/min	1150 sfpm 24 in/min	1000 sfpm 22 in/min	800 sfpm 22 in/min	396 m/min 610 mm/min	351 m/min 610 mm/min	305 m/min 559 mm/min	244 m/min 559 mm/min
Bronze	15	8	1300 sfpm 24 in/min	1150 sfpm 24 in/min	1000 sfpm 22 in/min	800 sfpm 20 in/min	396 m/min 610 mm/min	351 m/min 610 mm/min	305 m/min 559 mm/min	244 m/min 508 mm/min
Hard Bronze	10	8	400 sfpm 6.3 in/min	360 sfpm 6 in/min	325 sfpm 5.5 in/min	300 sfpm 5.1 in/min	122 m/min 160 mm/min	110 m/min 152 mm/min	99 m/min 140 mm/min	91 m/min 130 mm/min
Cu-Zn Brass	16	8	2000 sfpm 43 in/min	2000 sfpm 43 in/min	1800 sfpm 39 in/min	1800 sfpm 35 in/min	610 m/min 1092 mm/min	610 m/min 192 mm/min	549 m/min 991 mm/min	549 m/min 889 mm/min
Gray Cast Iron	12	8	82 sfpm 4 in/min	75 sfpm 4 in/min	72 sfpm 3.5 in/min	66 sfpm 3 in/min	25 m/min 102 mm/min	23 m/min 102 mm/min	22 m/min 89 mm/min	20 m/min 76 mm/min
Carbon Steel	20	8	160 sfpm 6.3 in/min	150 sfpm 5.9 in/min	150 sfpm 5.5 in/min	130 sfpm 5.1 in/min	49 m/min 160 mm/min	46 m/min 150 mm/min	46 m/min 140 mm/min	40 m/min 130 mm/min
Medium Hard Steel	18	8	100 sfpm 5.1 in/min	100 sfpm 4.7 in/min	80 sfpm 4.3 in/min	80 sfpm 4.3 in/min	30 m/min 130 mm/min	30 m/min 119 mm/min	24 m/min 109 mm/min	24 m/min 109 mm/min
Hard Steel	15	8	66 sfpm 4.3 in/min	66 sfpm 4.3 in/min	60 sfpm 4 in/min	57 sfpm 3.5 in/min	20 m/min 109 mm/min	20 m/min 109 mm/min	18 m/min 102 mm/min	17 m/min 89 mm/min
Stainless Steel	15	8	66 sfpm 2 in/min	63 sfpm 1.75 in/min	60 sfpm 1.75 in/min	57 sfpm 1.5 in/min	20 m/min 51 mm/min	19 m/min 44 mm/min	18 m/min 44 mm/min	17 m/min 38 mm/min

Gutta percha can be turned as easily as wood, but the tools must be sharp and a good soap-and-water lubricant used.

Copper can be turned easily at 200 feet per minute (61 m/min). See also Table 6 on page 1105.

Limestone such as is used in the construction of pillars for balconies, etc., can be turned at 150 feet per minute (46 m/min), and the formation of ornamental contours is quite easy. *Marble* is a treacherous material to turn. It should be cut with a tool such as would be used for brass, but at a speed suitable for cast iron. It must be handled very carefully to prevent flaws in the surface.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

The foregoing speeds are for high-speed steel tools. Tools tipped with tungsten carbide are adapted for cutting various non-metallic products which cannot be machined readily with steel tools, such as slate, marble, synthetic plastic materials, etc. In drilling slate and marble, use flat drills; and for plastic materials, tungsten carbide-tipped twist drills. Cutting speeds ranging from 75 to 150 feet per minute (23–46 m/min) have been used for drilling slate (without coolant) and a feed of 0.025 inch per revolution (0.64 mm/rev) for drills $\frac{3}{4}$ and 1 inch (19.05 and 25.4 mm) in diameter.

Estimating Machining Power

Knowledge of the power required to perform machining operations is useful when planning new machining operations, for optimizing existing machining operations, and to develop specifications for new machine tools that are to be acquired. The available power on any machine tool places a limit on the size of the cut that it can take. When much metal must be removed from the workpiece it is advisable to estimate the cutting conditions that will utilize the maximum power on the machine. Many machining operations require only light cuts to be taken for which the machine obviously has ample power; in this event, estimating the power required is a wasteful effort. Conditions in different shops may vary and machine tools are not all designed alike, so some variations between the estimated results and those obtained on the job are to be expected. However, by using the methods provided in this section a reasonable estimate of the power required can be made, which will suffice in most practical situations.

The measure of power in customary inch units is the horsepower; in SI metric units it is the kilowatt, which is used for both mechanical and electrical power. The power required to cut a material depends upon the rate at which the material is being cut and upon an experimentally determined power constant, K_p, which is also called the unit horsepower, unit power, or specific power consumption. The power constant is equal to the horsepower required to cut a material at a rate of one cubic inch per minute; in SI metric units the power constant is equal to the power in kilowatts required to cut a material at a rate of one cubic centimeter per second, or 1000 cubic millimeters per second ($1\ cm^3 = 1000\ mm^3$). Different values of the power constant are required for inch and for metric units, which are related as follows: to obtain the SI metric power constant, multiply the inch power constant by 2.73; to obtain the inch power constant, divide the SI metric power constant by 2.73. Values of the power constant in Table 1a, and Table 1b can be used for all machining operations except drilling and grinding. Values given are for sharp tools.

Table 1a. Power Constants K_p Using Sharp Cutting Tools

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p Metric Units	Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p Metric Units
Ferrous Cast Metals							
	100-120	0.28	0.76	Malleable Iron			
	120-140	0.35	0.96	Ferritic	150-175	0.42	1.15
	140-160	0.38	1.04				
Gray Cast Iron	160-180	0.52	1.42		175-200	0.57	1.56
	180-200	0.60	1.64	Pearlitic	200-250	0.82	2.24
	200-220	0.71	1.94		250-300	1.18	3.22
	220-240	0.91	2.48				
					150-175	0.62	1.69
	150-175	0.30	0.82	Cast Steel	175-200	0.78	2.13
Alloy Cast Iron	175-200	0.63	1.72		200-250	0.86	2.35
	200-250	0.92	2.51	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Power Constants K_p Using Sharp Cutting Tools**

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p Metric Units	Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p Metric Units
High-Temperature Alloys, Tool Steel, Stainless Steel, and Nonferrous Metals							
High-Temperature Alloys					150-175	0.60	1.64
A286	165	0.82	2.24	Stainless Steel	175-200	0.72	1.97
A286	285	0.93	2.54		200-250	0.88	2.40
Chromoloy	200	0.78	3.22	Zinc Die-Cast Alloys	…	0.25	0.68
Chromoloy	310	1.18	3.00	Copper (pure)	…	0.91	2.48
Inco 700	330	1.12	3.06	Brass			
Inco 702	230	1.10	3.00	Hard	…	0.83	2.27
Hastelloy-B	230	1.10	3.00	Medium	…	0.50	1.36
M-252	230	1.10	3.00	Soft	…	0.25	0.68
M-252	310	1.20	3.28	Leaded	…	0.30	0.82
Ti-150A	340	0.65	1.77				
U-500	375	1.10	3.00	Bronze			
				Hard	…	0.91	2.48
Monel Metal	…	1.00	2.73	Medium	…	0.50	1.36
	175-200	0.75	2.05	Aluminum			
	200-250	0.88	2.40	Cast	…	0.25	0.68
Tool Steel	250-300	0.98	2.68	Rolled (hard)	…	0.33	0.90
	300-350	1.20	3.28				
	350-400	1.30	3.55	Magnesium Alloys	…	0.10	0.27

The value of the power constant is essentially unaffected by the cutting speed, the depth of cut, and the cutting tool material. Factors that do affect the value of the power constant, and thereby the power required to cut a material, include the hardness and microstructure of the work material, the feed rate, the rake angle of the cutting tool, and whether the cutting edge of the tool is sharp or dull. Values are given in the power constant tables for different material hardness levels, whenever this information is available. Feed factors for the power constant are given in Table 2. All metal cutting tools wear but a worn cutting edge requires more power to cut than a sharp cutting edge.

Factors to provide for tool wear are given in Table 3. In this table, the extra-heavy-duty category for milling and turning occurs only on operations where the tool is allowed to wear more than a normal amount before it is replaced, such as roll turning. The effect of the rake angle usually can be disregarded. The rake angle for which most of the data in the power constant tables are given is positive 14 degrees. Only when the deviation from this angle is large is it necessary to make an adjustment. Using a rake angle that is more positive reduces the power required approximately 1 percent per degree; using a rake angle that is more negative increases the power required; again approximately 1 percent per degree.

Many indexable insert cutting tools are formed with an integral chip breaker or other cutting edge modifications, which have the effect of reducing the power required to cut a material. The extent of this effect cannot be predicted without a test of each design. Cutting fluids will also usually reduce the power required, when operating in the lower range of cutting speeds. Again, the extent of this effect cannot be predicted because each cutting fluid exhibits its own characteristics.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Power Constants K_p Using Sharp Cutting Tools

Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p Metric Units	Material	Brinell Hardness Number	K_p Inch Units	K_p SI Metric Units
Wrought Steels							
Plain Carbon Steels							
All Plain Carbon Steels	80-100	0.63	1.72	All Plain Carbon Steels	220-240	0.89	2.43
	100-120	0.66	1.80		240-260	0.92	2.51
	120-140	0.69	1.88		260-280	0.95	2.59
	140-160	0.74	2.02		280-300	1.00	2.73
	160-180	0.78	2.13		300-320	1.03	2.81
	180-200	0.82	2.24		320-340	1.06	2.89
	200-220	0.85	2.32		340-360	1.14	3.11
Free Machining Steels							
AISI 1108, 1109, 1110, 1115, 1116, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1120, 1125, 1126, 1132	100-120	0.41	1.12	AISI 1137, 1138, 1139, 1140, 1141, 1144, 1145, 1146, 1148, 1151	180-200	0.51	1.39
	120-140	0.42	1.15		200-220	0.55	1.50
	140-160	0.44	1.20		220-240	0.57	1.56
	160-180	0.48	1.31		240-260	0.62	1.69
	180-200	0.50	1.36		…	…	…
Alloy Steels							
AISI 4023, 4024, 4027, 4028, 4032, 4037, 4042, 4047, 4137, 4140, 4142, 4145, 4147, 4150, 4340, 4640, 4815, 4817, 4820, 5130, 5132, 5135, 5140, 5145, 5150, 6118, 6150, 8637, 8640, 8642, 8645, 8650, 8740	140-160	0.62	1.69	AISI 4130, 4320, 4615, 4620, 4626, 5120, 8615, 8617, 8620, 8622, 8625, 8630, 8720	140-160	0.56	1.53
	160-180	0.65	1.77		160-180	0.59	1.61
	180-200	0.69	1.88		180-200	0.62	1.69
	200-220	0.72	1.97		200-220	0.65	1.77
	220-240	0.76	2.07		220-240	0.70	1.91
	240-260	0.80	2.18		240-260	0.74	2.02
	260-280	0.84	2.29		260-280	0.77	2.10
	280-300	0.87	2.38		280-300	0.80	2.18
	300-320	0.91	2.48		300-320	0.83	2.27
	320-340	0.96	2.62		320-340	0.89	2.43
	340-360	1.00	2.73		…	…	…
AISI 1330, 1335, 1340, E52100	160-180	0.79	2.16		…	…	…
	180-200	0.83	2.27		…	…	…
	200-220	0.87	2.38		…	…	…

The machine tool transmits the power from the driving motor to the workpiece, where it is used to cut the material. The effectiveness of this transmission is measured by the machine tool efficiency factor, E. Average values of this factor are given in Table 4. Formulas for calculating the metal removal rate, Q, for different machining operations are given in Table 5. These formulas are used together with others given below. The following formulas can be used with either customary inch or with SI metric units.

$$P_c = K_p CQW \tag{1}$$

$$P_m = \frac{P_c}{E} = \frac{K_p CQW}{E} \tag{2}$$

where P_c = power at the cutting tool; hp, or kW

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Feed Factors, *C*, for Power Constants

Inch Units				SI Metric Units			
Feed in.[a]	*C*	Feed in.[a]	*C*	Feed mm[b]	*C*	Feed mm[b]	*C*
0.001	1.60	0.014	0.97	0.02	1.70	0.35	0.97
0.002	1.40	0.015	0.96	0.05	1.40	0.38	0.95
0.003	1.30	0.016	0.94	0.07	1.30	0.40	0.94
0.004	1.25	0.018	0.92	0.10	1.25	0.45	0.92
0.005	1.19	0.020	0.90	0.12	1.20	0.50	0.90
0.006	1.15	0.022	0.88	0.15	1.15	0.55	0.88
0.007	1.11	0.025	0.86	0.18	1.11	0.60	0.87
0.008	1.08	0.028	0.84	0.20	1.08	0.70	0.84
0.009	1.06	0.030	0.83	0.22	1.06	0.75	0.83
0.010	1.04	0.032	0.82	0.25	1.04	0.80	0.82
0.011	1.02	0.035	0.80	0.28	1.01	0.90	0.80
0.012	1.00	0.040	0.78	0.30	1.00	1.00	0.78
0.013	0.98	0.060	0.72	0.33	0.98	1.50	0.72

[a] Turning, in/rev; milling, in/tooth; planing and shaping, in/stroke; broaching, in/tooth.
[b] Turning, mm/rev; milling, mm/tooth; planing and shaping, mm/stroke; broaching, mm/tooth.

Table 3. Tool Wear Factors, *W*

Type of Operation		*W*
For all operations with sharp cutting tools		1.00
Turning:	Finish turning (light cuts)	1.10
	Normal rough and semifinish turning	1.30
	Extra-heavy-duty rough turning	1.60-2.00
Milling:	Slab milling	1.10
	End milling	1.10
	Light and medium face milling	1.10-1.25
	Extra-heavy-duty face milling	1.30-1.60
Drilling:	Normal drilling	1.30
	Drilling hard-to-machine materials and drilling with a very dull drill	1.50
Broaching:	Normal broaching	1.05-1.10
	Heavy-duty surface broaching	1.20-1.30
Planing and Shaping	Use values given for turning	

P_m = power at the motor; hp, or kW
K_p = power constant (see Table 1a and Table 1b)
Q = metal removal rate; in^3/min or cm^3/s (see Table 5)
C = feed factor for power constant (see Table 2)
W = tool wear factor (see Table 3)
E = machine tool efficiency factor (see Table 4)
V = cutting speed, fpm, or m/min
N = cutting speed, rpm
f = feed rate for turning; in/rev or mm/rev
f = feed rate for planing and shaping; in/stroke, or mm/stroke

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

f_t = feed per tooth; in/tooth, or mm/tooth
f_m = feed rate; in/min or mm/min
d_t = maximum depth of cut per tooth: inch, or mm
d = depth of cut; inch, or mm
n_t = number of teeth on milling cutter
n_c = number of teeth engaged in work
w = width of cut; inch, or mm

Table 4. Machine Tool Efficiency Factors, *E*

Type of Drive	*E*	Type of Drive	*E*
Direct Belt Drive	0.90	Geared Head Drive	0.70-0.80
Back Gear Drive	0.75	Oil-Hydraulic Drive	0.60-0.90

Table 5. Formulas for Calculating the Metal Removal Rate, *Q*

Operation	Metal Removal Rate	
	For Inch Units Only $Q = \text{in}^3/\text{min}$	For SI Metric Units Only $Q = \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$
Single-Point Tools (Turning, Planing, and Shaping)	$12Vfd$	$\frac{V}{60}fd$
Milling	$f_m wd$	$\frac{f_m wd}{60{,}000}$
Surface Broaching	$12Vwn_c d_t$	$\frac{V}{60}un_c d_t$

Example: A 180-200 BHN AISI 4130 shaft is to be turned on a geared head lathe using a cutting speed of 350 fpm (107 m/min), a feed rate of 0.016 in/rev (0.40 mm/rev), and a depth of cut of 0.100 inch (2.54 mm). Estimate the power at the cutting tool and at the motor, using both the inch and metric data.

Inch units:

$K_p = 0.62$ (from Table 1b)
$C = 0.94$ (from Table 2)
$W = 1.30$ (from Table 3)
$E = 0.80$ (from Table 4)
$Q = 12\,Vfd = 12 \times 350 \times 0.016 \times 0.100$ (from Table 5)
$Q = 6.72\ \text{in}^3/\text{min}$
$P_c = K_p CQW = 0.62 \times 0.94 \times 6.72 \times 1.30 = 5.1\ \text{hp}$
$P_m = \frac{P_c}{E} = \frac{5}{0.80} = 6.4\ \text{hp}$

SI metric units:

$\boldsymbol{K_p = 1.69}$ **(from Table 1b)**
$\boldsymbol{C = 0.94}$ **(from Table 2)**
$\boldsymbol{W = 1.30}$ **(from Table 3)**
$\boldsymbol{E = 0.80}$ **(from Table 4)**
$\boldsymbol{Q = \frac{V}{60}fd = \frac{107}{60} \times 0.40 \times 2.54 = 1.81\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}}$ **(from Table 5)**

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

$$P_c = K_p CQW = 1.69 \times 0.94 \times 1.81 \times 1.30 = 3.74 \text{ kW}$$

$$P_m = \frac{P_c}{E} = \frac{3.74}{0.80} = 4.677 \text{ kW}$$

Whenever possible the maximum power available on a machine tool should be used when heavy cuts must be taken.

The cutting conditions for utilizing the maximum power should be selected in the following order: 1) select the maximum depth of cut that can be used; 2) select the maximum feed rate that can be used; and 3) estimate the cutting speed that will utilize the maximum power available on the machine. This sequence is based on obtaining the longest tool life of the cutting tool and at the same time obtaining as much production as possible from the machine.

The life of a cutting tool is most affected by cutting speed, then by feed rate, and least of all by depth of cut. The maximum metal removal rate that a given machine is capable of machining from a given material is used as the basis for estimating the cutting speed that will utilize all the power available on the machine.

Example: A 160–180 BHN gray iron casting that is 6 inches wide is to have $^1/_8$ inch stock removed on a 10 hp milling machine, using an 8 inch diameter, 10 tooth, indexable insert cemented carbide face milling cutter. The feed rate selected for this cutter is 0.012 in/tooth, and all the stock (0.125 inch) will be removed in one cut. Estimate the cutting speed that will utilize the maximum power available on the machine.

$K_p = 0.52$ (From Table 1a)
$C = 1.00$ (From Table 2)
$W = 1.20$ (From Table 3)
$E = 0.80$ (From Table 4)

$$Q_{max} = \frac{P_m E}{K_p CW} = \frac{10 \times 0.80}{0.52 \times 1.00 \times 1.20} = 12.82 \text{ in}^3/\text{min} \qquad \left(P_m = \frac{K_p CQW}{E}\right)$$

$$f_m = \frac{Q_{max}}{wd} = \frac{12.82}{6 \times 0.125} = 17.1 \text{ in/min} \qquad (Q = f_m wd)$$

$$N = \frac{f_{max}}{f_t n_t} = \frac{17}{0.012 \times 10} = 142.4 \text{ rpm} \qquad (f_m = f_t n_t N)$$

$$V = \frac{\pi DN}{12} = \frac{\pi \times 8 \times 142}{12} = 298.3 \text{ fpm} \qquad \left(N = \frac{12V}{\pi D}\right)$$

Calculated cutting speed of 298.3 fpm is correct, but very low for available cutting tools. Today, milling of gray irons is performed, mostly, using cubic boron nitride indexable inserts. Typical range of the cutting speed for milling with large engagement (0.8) and 0.004–0.008 inch per tooth chip load is 2700–2000 sfm. Estimating maximum productivity of cutting should be based on the recommended cutting speeds versus work materials.

***Example:* A 3.2 mm deep cut is to be taken on a 200–210 BHN AISI 1050 steel part using a 7.5 kW geared head lathe. The feed rate selected for this job is 0.45 mm/rev. Estimate the cutting speed that will utilize the maximum power available on the lathe.**

$K_p = 2.32$ (From Table 1b)
$C = 0.92$ (From Table 2)
$W = 1.30$ (From Table 3)
$E = 0.80$ (From Table 4)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$Q_{max} = \frac{P_m E}{K_p C W} = \frac{7.5 \times 0.80}{2.32 \times 0.92 \times 1.30} \qquad \left(P_m = \frac{K_p C Q W}{E}\right)$$

$$= 2.16 \text{cm}^3/\text{sec}$$

$$V = \frac{60 Q_{max}}{fd} = \frac{60 \times 2.16}{0.45 \times 3.2} \qquad \left(Q = \frac{V}{60} fd\right)$$

$$= 90.0 \text{m/min}$$

The calculated cutting speed of 90.0 m/min is correct, but too low for carbide cutting tools. Thirty years ago, recommended cutting speed for turning AISI 1050 steel, 200–210 BHN, depth of cut 4.0 mm, was 160 m/min. Currently, using advanced coated carbide inserts, the cutting speed is increased up to 300 m/min for the depth of cut of 2.5–5.0 mm and a 0.38 mm/rev feed rate.

Estimating Drilling Thrust, Torque, and Power.—Although the lips of a drill cut metal and produce a chip in the same manner as the cutting edges of other metal cutting tools, the chisel edge removes the metal by means of a very complex combination of extrusion and cutting. For this reason a separate method must be used to estimate the power required for drilling. Also, it is often desirable to know the magnitude of the thrust and the torque required to drill a hole. The formulas and tabular data provided in this section are based on information supplied by the National Twist Drill Division of Regal-Beloit Corp. The values in Table 6 through Table 9 are for sharp drills and the tool wear factors are given in Table 3. For most ordinary drilling operations 1.30 can be used as the tool wear factor. When drilling most difficult-to-machine materials and when the drill is allowed to become very dull, 1.50 should be used as the value of this factor. It is usually more convenient to measure the web thickness at the drill point than the length of the chisel edge; for this reason, the approximate *w*/*d* ratio corresponding to each *c*/*d* ratio for a correctly ground drill is provided in Table 7. For most standard twist drills the *c*/*d* ratio is 0.18, unless the drill has been ground short or the web has been thinned. The *c*/*d* ratio of split-point drills is 0.03. The formulas given below can be used for spade drills, as well as for twist drills. Separate formulas are required for use with customary inch units and for SI metric units.

Table 6. Work Material Factor, K_d, for Drilling with a Sharp Drill

Work Material	Material Constant, K_d	Work Material	Material Constant, K_d
AISI 1117 (Resulfurized free machining mild steel)	12,000	Austenitic Stainless Steel (Type 316)	24,000[a] for Torque
Steel, 200 BHN	24,000	Titanium Alloy Ti6Al4V 40R_c	18,000[a] for Torque 29,000[a] for Thrust
Steel, 300 BHN	31,000		
Steel, 400 BHN	34,000	René 41 40R_c	40,000[ab] min.
Cast Iron, 150 BHN	14,000		
Most Aluminum Alloys	7,000	Hastelloy-C	30,000[a] for Torque 37,000[a] for Thrust
Most Magnesium Alloys	4,000		
Most Brasses	14,000		
Leaded Brass	7,000		

[a] Values based upon a limited number of tests.

[b] Will increase with rapid wear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Chisel Edge Factors for Torque and Thrust

c/d	Approx. *w/d*	Torque Factor *A*	Thrust Factor *B*	Thrust Factor *J*	*c/d*	Approx. *w/d*	Torque Factor *A*	Thrust Factor *B*	Thrust Factor *J*
0.03	0.025	1.000	1.100	0.001	0.18	0.155	1.085	1.355	0.030
0.05	0.045	1.005	1.140	0.003	0.20	0.175	1.105	1.380	0.040
0.08	0.070	1.015	1.200	0.006	0.25	0.220	1.155	1.445	0.065
0.10	0.085	1.020	1.235	0.010	0.30	0.260	1.235	1.500	0.090
0.13	0.110	1.040	1.270	0.017	0.35	0.300	1.310	1.575	0.120
0.15	0.130	1.080	1.310	0.022	0.40	0.350	1.395	1.620	0.160

For drills of standard design, use $c/d = 0.18$; for split-point drills, use $c/d = 0.03$
c/d = Length of Chisel Edge ÷ Drill Diameter.
w/d = Web Thickness at Drill Point ÷ Drill Diameter.

For inch units only:

$$T = 2K_dF_fF_TBW + K_dD^2JW \quad (1)$$

$$M = K_dF_fF_MAW \quad (2)$$

$$P_c = MN/63{,}025 \quad (3)$$

For SI metric units only:

$$\boldsymbol{T = 0.05\,K_dF_fF_TBW + 0.007\,K_dD^2JW} \quad (4)$$

$$\boldsymbol{M = \frac{K_dF_fF_MAW}{40{,}000} = 0.000025\,K_dF_fF_MAW} \quad (5)$$

$$\boldsymbol{P_c = MN/9550} \quad (6)$$

Use with either inch or metric units:

$$P_m = \frac{P_c}{E} \quad (7)$$

where P_c = Power at the cutter; hp, or kW P_m = Power at the motor; hp, or kW
M = Torque; in. lb, or N.m
T = Thrust; lb, or N
K_d = Work material factor (See Table 6)
F_f = Feed factor (See Table 8)
F_T = Thrust factor for drill diameter (See Table 9)
F_M = Torque factor for drill diameter (See Table 9)
A = Chisel edge factor for torque (See Table 7)
B = Chisel edge factor for thrust (See Table 7)
J = Chisel edge factor for thrust (See Table 7)
W = Tool wear factor (See Table 3)
N = Spindle speed; rpm
E = Machine tool efficiency factor (See Table 4)
D = Drill diameter; in., or mm
c = Chisel edge length; in., or mm (See Table 7)
w = Web thickness at drill point; in., or mm (See Table 7)

Example: A standard $\frac{7}{8}$ inch drill is to drill steel parts having a hardness of 200 BHN on a drilling machine having an efficiency of 0.80. The spindle speed to be used is 350 rpm and the feed rate will be 0.008 in/rev. Calculate the thrust, torque, and power required to drill these holes:

K_d = 24,000 (From Table 6) F_f = 0.021 (From Table 8)
F_T = 0.899 (From Table 9) F_M = 0.786 (From Table 9)
A = 1.085 (From Table 7) B = 1.355 (From Table 7) J = 0.030 (From Table 7)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Feed Factors F_f for Drilling

Inch Units				SI Metric Units			
Feed, in/rev	F_f	Feed, in/rev	F_f	Feed, mm/rev	F_f	Feed, mm/rev	F_f
0.0005	0.0023	0.012	0.029	0.01	0.025	0.30	0.382
0.001	0.004	0.013	0.031	0.03	0.060	0.35	0.432
0.002	0.007	0.015	0.035	0.05	0.091	0.40	0.480
0.003	0.010	0.018	0.040	0.08	0.133	0.45	0.528
0.004	0.012	0.020	0.044	0.10	0.158	0.50	0.574
0.005	0.014	0.022	0.047	0.12	0.183	0.55	0.620
0.006	0.017	0.025	0.052	0.15	0.219	0.65	0.708
0.007	0.019	0.030	0.060	0.18	0.254	0.75	0.794
0.008	0.021	0.035	0.068	0.20	0.276	0.90	0.919
0.009	0.023	0.040	0.076	0.22	0.298	1.00	1.000
0.010	0.025	0.050	0.091	0.25	0.330	1.25	1.195

Table 9. Drill Diameter Factors: F_T for Thrust, F_M for Torque

Inch Units						SI Metric Units					
Drill Dia., in.	F_T	F_M	Drill Dia., in.	F_T	F_M	Drill Dia., mm	F_T	F_M	Drill Dia., mm	F_T	F_M
0.063	0.110	0.007	0.875	0.899	0.786	1.60	1.46	2.33	22.00	11.86	260.8
0.094	0.151	0.014	0.938	0.950	0.891	2.40	2.02	4.84	24.00	12.71	305.1
0.125	0.189	0.024	1.000	1.000	1.000	3.20	2.54	8.12	25.50	13.34	340.2
0.156	0.226	0.035	1.063	1.050	1.116	4.00	3.03	12.12	27.00	13.97	377.1
0.188	0.263	0.049	1.125	1.099	1.236	4.80	3.51	16.84	28.50	14.58	415.6
0.219	0.297	0.065	1.250	1.195	1.494	5.60	3.97	22.22	32.00	16.00	512.0
0.250	0.330	0.082	1.375	1.290	1.774	6.40	4.42	28.26	35.00	17.19	601.6
0.281	0.362	0.102	1.500	1.383	2.075	7.20	4.85	34.93	38.00	18.36	697.6
0.313	0.395	0.124	1.625	1.475	2.396	8.00	5.28	42.22	42.00	19.89	835.3
0.344	0.426	0.146	1.750	1.565	2.738	8.80	5.96	50.13	45.00	21.02	945.8
0.375	0.456	0.171	1.875	1.653	3.100	9.50	6.06	57.53	48.00	22.13	1062
0.438	0.517	0.226	2.000	1.741	3.482	11.00	6.81	74.90	50.00	22.86	1143
0.500	0.574	0.287	2.250	1.913	4.305	12.50	7.54	94.28	58.00	25.75	1493
0.563	0.632	0.355	2.500	2.081	5.203	14.50	8.49	123.1	64.00	27.86	1783
0.625	0.687	0.429	2.750	2.246	6.177	16.00	9.19	147.0	70.00	29.93	2095
0.688	0.741	0.510	3.000	2.408	7.225	17.50	9.87	172.8	76.00	31.96	2429
0.750	0.794	0.596	3.500	2.724	9.535	19.00	10.54	200.3	90.00	36.53	3293
0.813	0.847	0.689	4.000	3.031	12.13	20.00	10.98	219.7	100.00	39.81	3981

$W = 1.30$ (From Table 3)

$$T = 2K_d F_f F_T BW + K_d d^2 JW$$
$$= 2 \times 24{,}000 \times 0.021 \times 0.899 \times 1.355 \times 1.30 + 24{,}000 \times 0.875^2 \times 0.030 \times 1.30$$
$$= 2313\ lb$$

$$M = K_d F_f F_M AW$$
$$= 24{,}000 \times 0.021 \times 0.786 \times 1.085 \times 1.30 = 559 \text{ in-lb}$$

$$P_c = \frac{MN}{63{,}025} = \frac{559 \times 350}{63{,}025} = 3.1 \text{ hp} \qquad P_m = \frac{P_c}{E} = \frac{3.1}{0.80} = 3.9 \text{ hp}$$

Twist drills are generally the most highly stressed of all metal cutting tools. They must not only resist the cutting forces on the lips, but also the drill torque resulting from these forces and the very large thrust force required to push the drill through the hole. Therefore, often when drilling smaller holes, the twist drill places a limit on the power used and for very large holes, the machine may limit the power.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Boring

Boring is an internal turning operation performed with a boring bar to enlarge a previously drilled hole to form an internal shape of required dimensions. Boring operations range from semi-roughing to finishing.

An indexable boring bar has three basic elements: indexable cutting insert, shank, and anchor. The designation system for indexable inserts is the same as for turning. The anchor is the clamping portion of the shank that is held in the tool block. The minimum clamping length is approximately three to four diameters of the shank. The distance the boring bar extends beyond the tool block is the overhang; it determines the cutting depth. The overhang is the unsupported portion of the boring bar. Long overhang causes excessive deflection of the shank and generates vibration (chatter), which worsens the surface finish of the bore.

Eliminating chatter, especially in long-bore workpieces, is one of the greatest challenges faced by manufacturers and users of boring bars. Deflection of a boring bar depends on the mechanical properties of the shank material, the length of the overhang, and the cutting conditions.

The following equation is used for calculating deflection (y) of a boring bar.

$$y = \frac{FL^3}{3EI} \tag{1}$$

where F = the cutting force, lbf or N
L = unsupported length of a boring bar (overhang), in. or mm
E = the modulus of elasticity (in tension) of a boring bar material, psi or N/mm^2
I = the moment of inertia of a boring bar cross-sectional area, in^4 or mm^4.

Cutting Force.— Cutting force (F) is calculated by Formula (2) in customary US units.

$$F = 396{,}000dfK_p \tag{2}$$

where d = depth of cut, in.
f = a feed rate, ipm
K_p = a power constant, hp/in^3/min. The power constant K_p data are given on pages 1145–1147 (Table 1a and 1b). The feed rate factors, C, for power constants are given on page 1148 (Table 2).
396,000 = a conversion factor that represents a unit of power equal to 550 in-lb/min

Example 1(a): A workpiece is AISI 4140 chromium-molybdenum steel, 220 HB; depth of cut $d = 0.080$ in.; feed rate $f = 0.008$ ipr. Calculate the cutting force F in customary US units of measure.
Power constant $K_p = 0.72$ hp/ in^3/min (from Table 1b, page 1147)
Feed factor $C = 1.08$ (from Table 2, page 1148)
Adjusted power constant, $K_{pa} = K_p \times C = 0.72 \times 1.08 \cong 0.78$.
Calculating: $F = 396{,}000dfK_{pa} = 396{,}000 \times 0.08 \times 0.008 \times 0.78 = 197.7$ lbf

Cutting force (F) is calculated by Formula (3) in metric units.

$$F = 60{,}000dfK_p \tag{3}$$

where d = depth of cut, mm
f = feed rate, mm/min.
K_p = is a power constant, kW/cm^3/min. The power constant K_p data are given on pages 1145–1147 (Tables 1a and 1b). The feed rate factors, C, for power constants are given on page 1148 (Table 2).
60,000 = is a conversion factor that represents a unit of power equal to 1 kW × mm/min.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 1(b): A workpiece is AISI 4140 chromium-molybdenum steel, 220 HB; depth of cut $d = 2.03$mm; feed rate $f = 0.20$ mm/rev. Calculate the cutting force F in metric units.
Power constant $K_p = 0.0328$ kW/cm^3/min. (from Table 1b, page 1147)
Feed factor $C = 1.08$ (from Table 2, page 1148)
Adjusted power constant, $K_{pa} = K_p \times C = 0.0328 \times 1.08 \cong 0.0354$ kW/cm^3/min.
Calculating: $F = 60{,}000 df K_{pa} = 60{,}000 \times 2.03 \times 0.20 \times 0.0354 = 863.6$ N

Comparing the cutting forces calculations of Example 1(a) and 1(b), the cutting forces are approximately equivalent within about 2 percent.

Moduli of Elasticity (E) of Boring Bar Materials.—Boring bar shanks are made of steels, tungsten-base metals, or cemented carbides. Most commonly used boring bar materials are alloy steels. Some boring bar manufacturers use AISI 1144 free machining medium-carbon steel. Regardless of grades, all carbon and alloy steels have approximately the same modulus of elasticity:

Customary US units, $E = 30 \times 10^6$ psi

Metric units, $E = 20.6 \times 10^4$ N/mm^2

A common mistake is to assume that a steel shank with a higher hardness, or one made from a higher quality of steel will deflect less. As can be seen from Equation (1), the material property that determines deflection is the modulus of elasticity. Hardness does not appear in this equation.

Tungsten heavy alloys for boring bars, $E = (45–48) \times 106$ psi (customary US units) and $E = (31–33) \times 10^4$ N/mm^2 (metric units). Boring bars made of tungsten heavy alloys will deflect less than steel boring bars of the same diameter and overhang by 50 to 60 percent when cutting at the same depth of cut and feed rate.

Cemented carbides for boring bars, $E = (84–89) \times 10^6$ psi (customary US units) and $E = (52–61) \times 10^4$ N/mm^2 (metric units).

Boring bars made of cemented carbides provide minimum deflection because their moduli of elasticity are higher than those of steels and tungsten heavy alloys.

Moment of Inertia (I) of a Boring Bar Cross-Sectional Area.—Moment of inertia is a property of areas. Since boring bars are available in a variety of diameters, it is important to calculate the moment of inertia of a bar cross section using appropriate formulas. Boring bars are usually round with a solid or tubular cross section. Moments of inertia of solid or tubular cross-sectional areas are calculated by:

$$I = \frac{\pi D^4}{64} \qquad (4a) \qquad\qquad I = \frac{\pi (D_o^4 - D_i^4)}{64} \qquad (4b)$$

where D is the diameter of the bar in inches or mm, D_o is the outside diameter of the bar and D_i is the inside diameter, in inches or mm.

Example 2: A boring bar diameter is 1 inch. Moment of inertia $I = \pi \times (1)^4/64 = 0.0491$ in^4. Moments of inertia of cross sections are given starting on page 241.

Deflection (y) of the Boring Bar.—To calculate the deflection of the boring bar, it is necessary to enter one more data point in Equation (1). It is the unsupported length of the boring bar (L).

Example, Boring Bar Deflection: The unsupported length of a 1-inch diameter boring bar is 4 inches. Using F calculated in Example 1(a) and I calculated in Example 2:

$$y = \frac{FL^3}{3\,EI} = \frac{(197.7)4^3}{3\,(30 \times 10^6)\,0.0491} = 0.0028 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

MICROMACHINING

Introduction

Recent technological advancement and market need for product miniaturization demand three-dimensional (3D) microcomponents. Although microelectronic manufacturing techniques can produce pseudo 3D microdevices using silicon and other semiconducting materials, such materials are neither robust nor biocompatible for demanding applications in aerospace, medical, sensor, defense, petroleum, and transportation. Examples of robust applications include microdrilling holes for fuel or ink injection nozzles, electronic printed circuit boards, microfabrication of watch components, air bearings, cooling holes in turbomachinery, high aspect ratio features on tool steel molds and dies, etc. There are alternative nontraditional processes to produce microfeatures on robust engineering materials such as laser micromachining, electrical discharge microdrilling, electrochemical micromachining, chemical etching, electron/ion beam machining; however, these processes are either cost prohibitive, limited to conductive materials, or inferior when comparing resulting surface integrity, subsurface damage, high aspect ratio, or microfeature quality. Microfabrication with traditional processes such as micromilling, microdrilling, microturning… are still the preferred choice in most applications. There is no standard that defines micromachining, but most researchers uses cutting tools to produce components with key dimensions less than 1 mm (0.040 inch) or when depth of cut is comparable to tool sharpness or tool grain size in their micromachining studies.

Realizing the needs for traditional micromanufacturing, there are more commercially available machine tools and microtools in the market. However, costly equipment, lack of in-depth understanding of micromachining, and limited guidelines for effective use of microtools are still the bottleneck for full application of micromachining. Universities and research institutes worldwide have started theoretical investigation of micromachining and produced positive results from the academic point of view. Without practical guidelines on micromachining, technicians and machinists probably would make wrong and costly decisions when simply extending macroscale machining practices into microscale machining applications—a microtool simply breaks at even conservative macroscale parameters for speeds, feeds, and depth of cut.This section, while complementing other chapters in this Handbook, focuses on practicality, based on proven theories and published data, to help decision makers to understand the requirements for micromachining, and as a guide to people on the shop floor to quickly and confidently begin using the recommended parameters and techniques. Both US standard and SI metric units are included for convenience. Examples of how to use the data and equations are given throughout this chapter.

Machine Tool Requirements

To obtain the same surface speed as in macromachining, a machine tool must:

a) Be capable of rotating a workpiece or tool at high speeds of 25,000 rpm or above
b) Control spindle runout to submicron level
c) Have a very robust mechanical and thermal structure that is not affected by vibration or thermal drift
d) Have high resolution tool positioning and feeding mechanisms

Success in micromachining depends on tool quality and precision of the machine tool. Machine spindle runout, tool concentricity and tool positioning accuracy must be in the neighborhood of 1/100th of tool diameter or less for successful operation. Tolerance stack up for spindle runout, tool eccentricity, and wandering of a microdrill causes cyclic bending of the tool that lead to catastrophic failure. At a low rotatational speeds, the displacement of a spindle can be monitored with a sensitive mechanical indicator. However, this option is not applicable for machines that operates at or above a few thousands rpm. Other non-contact techniques using capacitance, magnetism, or light would be more appropriate. Fig. 1a shows an example of spindle runout measuring setup. A laser beam is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

pointed at a rotating precision plug gage. The spindle displacement is then recorded on a computer for further analysis and display in either frequency or time domain. Commercial laser systems can provide displacement readings to ±0.1 µm resolution.

An example of spindle runout is shown in Fig. 1b; the spindle runout of a Haas OM2 machine was measured with a Keyence laser system to be ±1.25 µm. Care must be practiced to isolate vibration of the spindle or it would affect the sensor reading, and avoid direct eye contact with the reflected laser from the shiny plug gage.

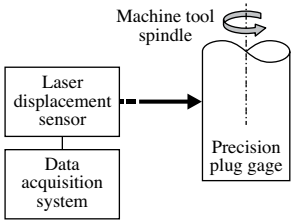


Fig. 1a. Setup for Spindle Runout Measurement.

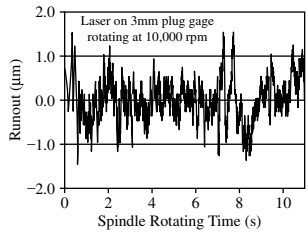


Fig. 1b. Spindle Runout of Haas OM2 CNC Micromilling Machine.

Example 1, Spindle Speed for Macro versus Micro Machining: The speed and feed table on page 1118 recommends a milling speed of 585 ft/min (178 m/min) and feed of 0.004 in/tooth (0.1 mm/tooth) for end milling 316L stainless steel using an uncoated carbide tool.

Macromachining: To have said surface speed for an Ø1/2 inch (Ø12.5 mm) end mill, the required spindle speed is

$$N = \frac{V}{\pi D} = \frac{585(\text{ft/min})}{\pi(\text{rad/rev}) \times 0.5(\text{in})} \times 12(\text{in/ft}) = 4{,}469 \text{ rpm}$$

Micromachining: To obtain the same surface speed for an Ø0.004 inch (Ø0.1 mm) micromill, the new spindle speed is

$$N = \frac{V}{\pi D} = \frac{585(\text{ft/min})}{\pi(\text{rad/rev}) \times 0.004(\text{in})} \times 12(\text{in/ft}) = 558{,}633 \text{ rpm}$$

To turn, face, or bore a stainless steel microshaft of Ø0.004 inch (Ø0.1 mm) at this cutting speed, a lathe spindle would need to rotate at 558,633 rpm too. A machine tool with spindle speed exceeding 500,000 rpm is rare or simply not commercially available at this time.

Applying the recommended macro feed of 0.004 in/tooth (0.1 mm/tooth) for an 0.004 inch (0.1 mm) diameter micromill would break the tool because the feed/tooth is as large as the microtool diameter.

Microcutting Tools

Tool Stiffness.—It is relatively easy to have a rigid turning or facing microtool, but it requires careful planning to maintain rigidity of a micromill or a microdrill. Geometries of macroscale and microscale drilling/milling tools are the same: tool diameter, number of cutting flutes, point included angle for microdrill, helix angle, web thickness, clearance angle, flute length, shank diameter, and overall length. A careful selection of microtools must consider the intended machined features and highest possible tool stiffness. The two most important geometries that affect the microtool stiffness are the tool diameter and flute length assuming the number of flutes has been chosen. It can be shown that the torsional stiffness of a mill/drill is proportional to (tool diameter)^4 and (flute length)$^{-2}$. For a specific mill/drill tool dimension, the milling/drilling strategy must be adjusted accordingly to avoid tool breakage.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 2, Stiffness of Microtools: If a drill diameter of 0.8 mm is selected instead of 1.0 mm, then the 20% reduction of diameter will result in a reduction in torsional stiffness E of:

$$\Delta E = \frac{(D_2)^4 - (D_1)^4}{(D_1)^4} = \frac{0.8^4 - 1.0^4}{1.0^4} = -59\%$$

Similarly, if a flute length of 1.2 mm is chosen instead of 1.0 mm, the 20% change in flute length will lead to a decrease in torsional stiffness E of:

$$\Delta E = \frac{(L_2)^{-2} - (L_1)^{-2}}{(L_1)^{-2}} = \frac{1.2^{-2} - 1.0^{-2}}{1.0^{-2}} = -30\%$$

Tool Sharpness.—The tool edge radius is critical in micromachining. Fig. 2a through Fig. 2d shows two scenarios for the same microcutting tools with edge radius r. The tool can be either a turning, facing, or boring microtool that linearly engages a workpiece material at a certain depth of cut. A similar tool can move in a circular path as a microdrill or micromill, and engage a workpiece at a certain chip load (feed per tooth). If the depth of cut (or chip load) is too shallow, the tool simply plows the material and pushes it away elastically. This elastic material layer just springs back after the tool passes by. If the depth of cut is substantial (recommended), then a chip is formed and a new machined surface is generated with negligible spring back.

Chip load is commonly used interchangeably with feedrate for a cutting tool with multiple cutting edges (teeth) such as in milling or drilling. Chip load is defined as tool feed distance for each tooth and represents the chip size forming for each tooth. Chip load can also be interpreted as the radial depth of cut for each tooth in milling. The following equation converts chip load of a cutting edge to feedrate of a multiple-edge cutting tool:

$$f = c_L n N$$

where f = feedrate of tool (mm/min, in/min)
c_L = chip load of a cutting edge (mm/tooth, in/tooth)
n = number of cutting flutes or cutting edges (#teeth/rev)
N = rotational speed (rpm)

Example 3: A two-flute uncoated carbide end mill with diameter Ø1 mm (Ø0.040 in) is used for micromilling pure titanium. Table 13b suggests a chip load of 17 µm/tooth and cutting speed of 90 m/min. The rotational speed is computed as:

$$N = \frac{V}{\pi D} = \frac{90\,(\text{m/min})}{\pi\left(\frac{\text{rad}}{\text{rev}}\right) \times 0.001\,(\text{m})} = 28{,}600\ \text{rpm}$$

The feedrate for this operation is:

$$f = c_L n N = 17\left(\frac{\mu\text{m}}{\text{tooth}}\right) \times 2\left(\frac{\text{teeth}}{\text{rev}}\right) \times 28{,}600\left(\frac{\text{rev}}{\text{min}}\right) = 972{,}400\,\frac{\mu\text{m}}{\text{min}} \approx 972\,\frac{\text{mm}}{\text{min}} \approx 38\,\frac{\text{in}}{\text{min}}$$

Typical fine grain carbide tools are first sintered from submicron carbide particles in a cobalt matrix, and then ground and lapped to final geometry. Optimal edge radii of 1–4 µm (39–156 µinch) are typically designed for sintered tools to balance edge sharpness and edge strength. Only single crystalline diamond tools can be ground and lapped to edge radii within the nanometer range.

The threshold for minimum depth of cut has been investigated theoretically and verified experimentally by many researchers. It varies from 5 to 40 percent of the tool edge radius depending on the workpiece material and original rake angles. The threshold depth of cut or chip load, therefore, can be conservatively set to be 50 percent of the tool edge radius. When machining below this threshold, a microtool just rubs and plows the surface with negative effective rake angle and deforms it elastically during the first pass. This results in high cutting force, high specific energy, fast tool wear, rough surface finish, and significant burrs. In subsequent passes when the cumulative depth is greater than the critical depth of cut, then a tool can remove materials as chips and the cycle repeats.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Effect of Depth of Cut (Chip Load) in Micromachining

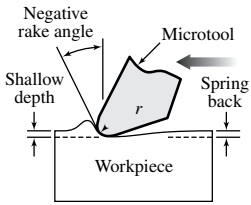


Fig. 2a. Microfacing, Depth of Cut < 0.5 *r*.

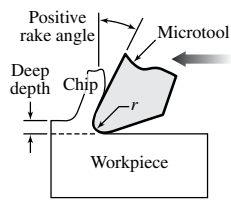


Fig. 2b. Microfacing, Depth of Cut > 0.5 *r*.

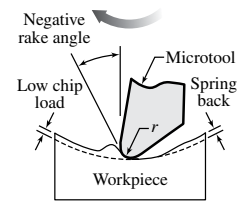


Fig. 2c. Micromilling, Chip Load < 0.5 *r*

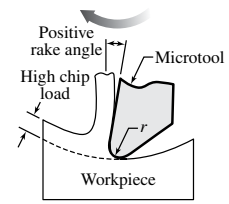


Fig. 2d. Micromilling, Chip Load > 0.5 *r*.

Fig. 2a and Fig. 2c illustrate rubbing and plowing of material with negative effective rake angle at a shallow depth of cut. Fig. 2b and Fig. 2d illustrate chip removal from material with positive effective rake angle at a deep depth of cut.

It is crucial to verify the tool edge radius before deciding on cutting parameters. Measuring of tool edge radius, however, is not trivial. A tool edge radius can be estimated from a scanning electron microscopic picture when the cutting edge is parallel to the electron beam (Fig. 6), or from a scanned image at the neighborhood of a cutting edge on an atomic force microscope (Fig. 3a and Fig. 3b), or by scanning an edge on an optical microscope profiler in different views to reconstruct a 3D image of the tool edge before finding its radius.

Tool Edge Measurement by Atomic Force Microscopy

Note the different vertical and horizontal scales.

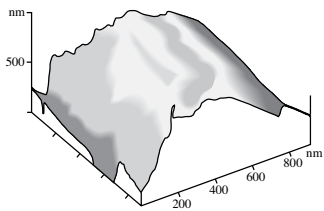


Fig. 3a. New Polycrystalline Diamond Tool with a 750 nm Edge Radius.

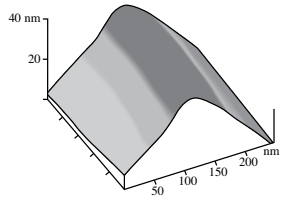


Fig. 3b. New Single Crystalline Diamond Tool with a 10 nm Edge Radius.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tool Materials.—Using the right microtool is essential for micromachining. A microtool that successfully drills through holes on a plastic printed circuit board is not necessarily able to drill deep blind holes on titanium alloys. Understanding the requirements and selecting the right microtool for each condition saves time, money, and frustration. It has been theoretically derived and experimentally proven that the smaller is the chip, then the higher is the stress to generate it. Microcutting tools, therefore, have to be designed for higher stress with extreme geometrical constraints. When depth of cut is smaller than the average grain size of a workpiece, each grain generates different stress on the cutting edge and eventually fatigues the tool.

Microtools as small as 25 μm (0.001 inch) are commercially available. Common tool materials are high-speed steel (HSS), cermet, carbide, cubic boron nitride (CBN), polycrystalline diamond (PCD), and single crystalline diamond (SCD). HSS is commonly not used in micromachining of metal since it does not have required hardness and strength to resist plastic deformation. A SCD tool is available for microturning, but not for microdrilling or micromilling. Carbide and cermet, having properties between HSS and diamond, are most suitable for microcutting tools. They are sintered from random abrasive grains in either cobalt or nickel binder with a small addition of molybdenum or chromium. A higher binder content increases the tool toughness and crack resistance, but reduces the tool bulk hardness. Using ultra fine grain (submicron size) abrasives in a lesser amount of binder is the optimal solution because a tool with submicron carbide grains can maintain a high hardness while improving its crack resistance against chattering, interrupted cuts, or cyclic deflection due to spindle runout.

Microtool failure modes include shearing, chipping, and wear. To minimize shearing and catastrophic tool failure, a tool should be made from a high hardness substrate and with a geometry suitable for micromachining, i.e., large included angle and sharp cutting edge (Fig. 4). A tool with smaller than minimum included angle will be deformed and fractured in service.

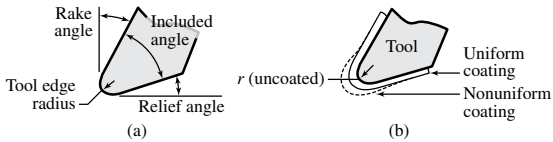


Fig. 4. (a) Tool Geometry, and (b) Change of Tool Edge Radius Due to Coating.

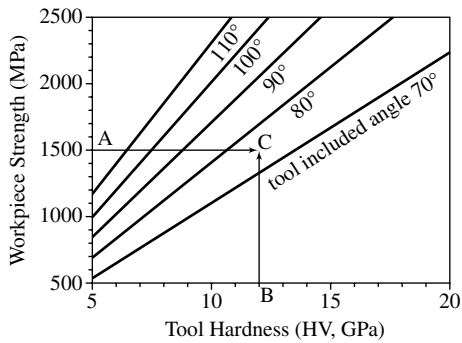


Fig. 5. Microtool Minimum Included Angles.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 4, Required Included Angle: Find the minimum included angle for an ultra-fine grain carbide tool of 12 GPa Vicker hardness to machine the F799 Co-Cr alloy of 1500 MPa (0.2 × 10^6 psi) tensile strength.

Solution: Referring to Fig. 5, locate workpiece strength at point A on the vertical axis (1500 MPa). Locate point B for tool hardness on the horizontal axis (12 GPa). The intersection at C of the horizontal line from A and the vertical line from B indicates that the minimum included tool angle should be 75°.

Coating of microtools is still a technical challenge due to conflicting constraints for tool performance. Chemical or physical vapor deposition (CVD or PVD) techniques have been developed to coat cutting tools with mono/multiple layers of intermetallic or ceramic compounds (Table 1). Criteria for acceptable tool coating are numerous: uniformity, high hardness, high toughness, low friction, high wear resistance, surface smoothness, high chemical/diffusion resistance, and high temperature stability at a reasonable cost. Although a coating thickness of 2–4 µm (79–157 µin) is acceptable for a macrotool, the coating thickness on a microtool should be thinner to minimize fracture and peeling of the coating. Both CVD and PVD processes not only add the coating thickness to the edge radius, but the extra coating also increases the radius at sharp corners (Fig. 4b). This is unfortunate since the thicker coating reduces the tool sharpness by enlarging the tool edge radius and causes an unfavorable plowing effect with negative effective rake angle. An uncoated microtool might perform satisfactorily, but the same machining parameters can be devastating to an over-coated microtool (Fig. 6). A thin coating of less than 1.5 µm following by an edge sharpening process would improve the tool performance, however, at the expense of higher tool cost. Published data indicate that micrograin carbide tools with 1.5 µm TiN coating is the best for micromilling of H13 tool steel hardened to 45 RC.

Table 1. Commercial Coatings for Microtools

Coating	Structure	Hardness GPa	Hardness 10^6 psi	Coefficient of Friction	Coating Thickness µm	Coating Thickness µinch	Maximum Temperature °C	Maximum Temperature °F
TiN	monolayer	24	3.5	0.55	1-5	39-197	600	1110
TiCN	gradient	37	5.4	0.20	1-4	39-157	400	750
TiAlCN	gradient	28	4.1	0.30	1-4	39-157	500	930
TiAlN	multilayer	28	4.1	0.60	1-4	39-157	700	1290
AlTiN	gradient	38	5.5	0.70	1-3	39-118	900	1650
ZrN	monolayer	20	2.9	0.40	1-4	39-157	550	1020
CrN	monolayer	18	2.6	0.30	1-4	39-157	700	1290
Diamond like	gradient	20	2.9	0.15	0.5-1.5	20-59	400	750
$AlTiN/Si_3N_4$	nanocomposite	45	6.5	0.45	1-4	39-157	1200	2190
$AlCrN/Si_3N_4$	nanocomposite	42	6.1	0.35	1-5	39-197	1100	2010

Tool Offset and Positioning.—Tool offset and tool positioning are crucial in micromilling and microdrilling because a tool is small and extremely fragile especially if it has a high aspect ratio (length to diameter ratio). Common shop practices to find tool offset and position often damage a tool or workpiece. Non-contact techniques using light, magnetism, capacitance, ultrasound, etc. are the preferred choice for precisely locating the relative position between tool and workpiece. Selection of a suitable sensor depends at least on following criteria:

- Better resolution compared to that of the machine tool axis
- Small working zone to cover a microtool
- Fast sampling rate for intended tool speed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

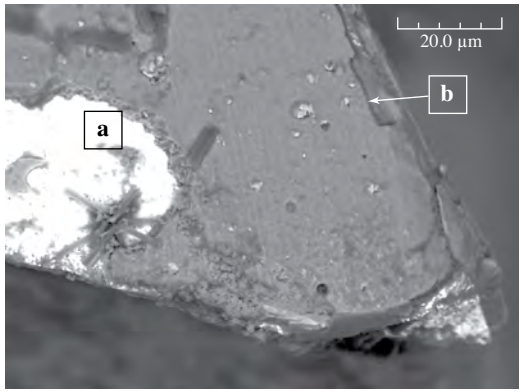


Fig. 6. Peeling (a) and cracking (b) of 4µm-thick TiN coating layer on a WC micromill. Back scattered electron technique shows high contrast of a dark TiN coating layer against the bright WC/Co substrate in the background.

Example 5, Sensor Requirement: Select a sensor for microdrilling using
Microdrill: 100 µm diameter, 1 mm flute length (Ø0.004 inch, 0.040 inch flute length).

Machine tool: 1 µm (40 µinch) repeatability and 500,000 rpm capability.

Solution: A laser displacement sensor is selected to satisfy the following specifications:
Resolution: 0.1 µm (4 µinch)

Spot size: 25–75 µm (0.001–0.003 µinch). Although most drill shanks are Ø3.175 mm (Ø0.125 inch), the working zone should be as small as possible to detect the shank center.

In order to make 6 measurements when a tool is rotating at 500,000 rpm, the time between measurements is:

$$t = \left(\frac{1\text{ rev}}{6\text{ measurements}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ min}}{500{,}000\text{ rev}}\right)\left(\frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}}\right) = 2 \times 10^{-5}\text{ s} = 20\mu\text{s}$$

A laser with minimum 20 µs sampling rate (50 kHz) would be sufficient.

A mechanical edge finder is adequate for most macromachining setups, but it is not suitable for micromachining especially with small and pliable parts. Fig. 7a shows a non-contact technique to detect part edge or find lateral tool offset. A rotating precision plug gage, mounted on a machine spindle, is positioned between a stationary laser sensor and the workpiece. The small laser beam is aimed at the plug gage center and on the part edge when the plug gage is withdrawn away from the beam path. These two laser sensor readings allow computing the tool center offset. A precision plug gage should be used instead of a cutting tool shank for better repeatability.

Example 6, Lateral Tool Offset Calculation: Use a laser displacement sensor and a Ø3.175 mm (Ø1/8 inch) plug gage to detect the edge of a ground block.

Solution:

i) Mount the plug gage on the machine spindle and rotate it at 5000 rpm.

ii) Scan a laser beam across the plug gage and stop when the distance from the laser source to the target is minimum, i.e., the beam is at the gage center. Read $L_1 = 35$ mm.

iii) Jog the plug gage away from the beam path, read distance to the part edge $L_2 = 55$ mm.

iv) The lateral offset from the spindle center to the workpiece edge is then:

$$\text{Lateral offset} = L_2 - L_1 - D/2 = 55 - 35 - (3.175/2) = 18.412\text{ mm}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

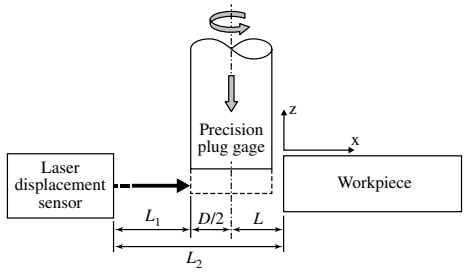


Fig. 7a. Setup for Lateral Edge Detection Using Laser Sensor.

Fig. 7b compares the accuracy and repeatability of the non-contact method shown in Fig. 7a against those of a mechanical edge finder.

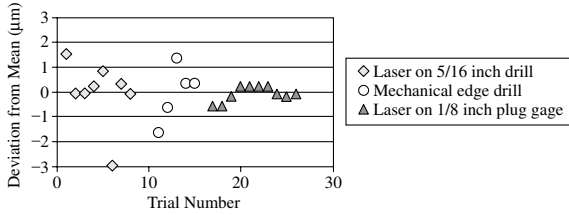


Fig. 7b. Superior Accuracy and Repeatability of Laser
Edge Detection Technique Compared to Mechanical Technique.

It is rather simple to find the lateral offset as illustrated in Example 6, but it is more difficult to find the exact vertical offset for a slender microdrill or micromill without damaging it. One can attempt to use the common "paper technique" or take a risk with an available contact sensor for z-setting. In the paper technique, one would use a hand to slide a piece of paper on top of a workpiece while gradually lowering a tool. The tool stops when a resistance on the paper is felt. The paper technique is tedious, subjective, and tool dependent. Fig. 8b shows scattering of data up to ±5 µm when finding z-offset for a center drill, but it is ±15 µm for a milling cutter with 4 teeth.

A commercial contact sensor requires a tool to move down and press against a solid surface. A pressure sensor then triggers an audible or visual signal to indicate a positive contact. The pressure level on such sensor is preset for macrotool setting and cannot be adjusted for a microtool. In both cases, the tool tip is one paper thickness or one contact sensor height above the workpiece—if the tool survives.

A non-contact sensor is more practical and reliable. The same laser displacement sensor used for lateral tool offset can also be used for vertical tool offset. Fig. 8a shows a precision ring with secured circular plastic membrane that is used for indirect measurement. The membrane center is marked with a reference (e.g., crossing lines) at which the height can be measured with the laser displacement sensor. Upon placing the fixture on top of a workpiece and then lowering a tool onto the reference mark, a slight contact of the tool and the flexible membrane is precisely detected with the laser beam pointing near the contact point. When this happens, the tool tip is at the same height as the membrane. The repeatability of tool offset using this technique is well within the positioning repeatability 3 µm of the tested Haas OM2 machine tool (Fig. 8b).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

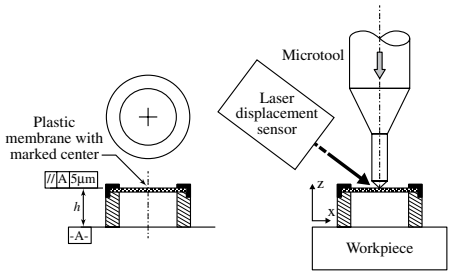


Fig. 8a. Microtool Offset and Microtool Height Detection Using Laser.

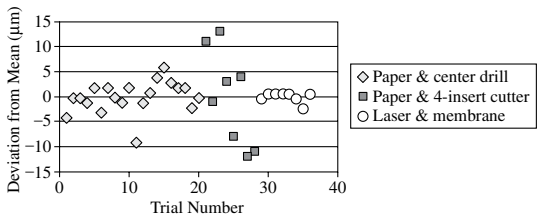


Fig. 8b. Superior Accuracy and Repeatability of Laser Offset and Height Detection Technique Compared to Paper Technique.

When a part is small or does not have a large surface for the fixture to rest on, then an indirect technique to find vertical tool offset for a microdrill or micromill is recommended. The following example illustrates this.

Example 7, Vertical Tool Offset Calculation: A vice or collet is used to clamp a micropart for drilling. The micropart protrudes upward a distance $h_1 = 0.1000$ inch. If the vice surface has been qualified as a reference, it can be used to find the vertical offset of a microdrill tip (Fig. 9).

i) Measure the fixture height at the reference mark using the laser sensor, $h_2 = 0.3500$ inch.

ii) Position the fixture on top of the vice.

iii) Lower the microdrill onto the reference mark of the membrane. Stop when the membrane is slightly deflected which can be detected easily with the laser sensor.

iv) Calculate the required drill vertical offset:

$$\text{Vertical offset} = h_2 - h_1 = 0.3500 - 0.1000 = 0.2500 \text{ inch}$$

Tool Damage.—Tool damage can be categorized by the relative size of the damage, ranging from submicron to hundreds of microns, as indicated in Table 2. The tool failure mechanisms include damages due to mechanical, thermal, and chemical effects, and adhesion. Examples of microtool damages are illustrated in Fig. 10a through Fig. 10d.

Mechanical effect is the most common source of tool damage. Abrasive wear is caused by sliding of hard particles from workpiece or tool against the cutting tool surface. Attrition wear is larger than abrasion wear; it occurs when one or a few grains of the tool are weakened at their grain boundaries and are dislodged from the tool. Microchipping and chipping are larger chunks of tool being removed due to mechanical or thermal shocks upon loading and unloading. Machining at optimal parameters and with a rigid setup will reduce vibration, shock, and mechanical damage to a microtool.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

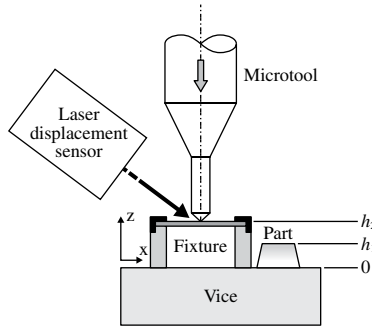


Fig. 9. Indirect Vertical Tool Offset Detection Technique.

Microtool Damages

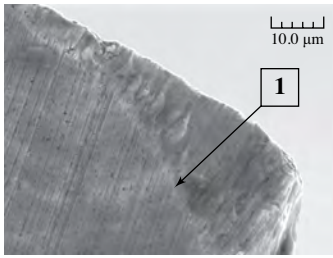


Fig. 10a. Abrasion with progressive wear from center to edge (label "1") due to different cutting speed on a microdrill.

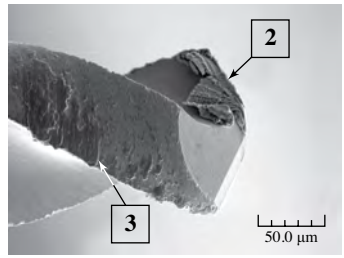


Fig. 10b. Built-up-edge at a cutting lip (label "2") and side (label "3") of a microdrill.

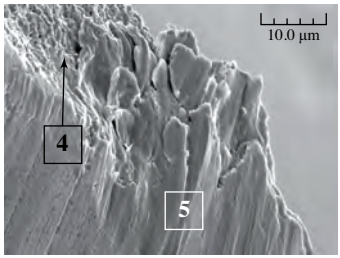


Fig. 10c. Adhesion wear (label "4") due to built-up-edge on a micromill (label "5").

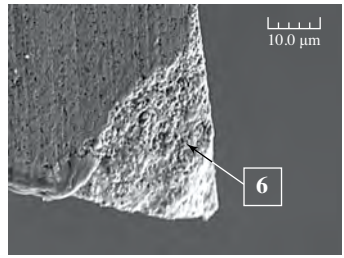


Fig. 10d. Chipping at the cutting edge of a carbide micromill due to local depletion of cobalt binder.

Thermal effect is the second cause of tool damage. A cutting tool edge is softened at high machining temperature, deformed plastically, and removed from the tool. Both high-speed steel tools and carbide tools with high cobalt content are vulnerable to thermal damage. High temperature also promotes diffusion, i.e., atoms from the tool and workpiece move

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

mutually across their interfaces, therefore degrading their properties and causing diffusion wear. Diamond with a carbon-rich matrix cannot be used with low-carbon ferrous alloys like steels or stainless steels because diamond carbonizes at temperatures exceeding 1112°F (600°C) and carbon diffuses to the steel due to its lower carbon content and high affinity to carbon. The useful life of a tool can be extended by proper application of coolant to reduce thermal damage, or by use of a protective coating that blocks undesirable thermal diffusion from/to a tool surface.

Chemical damage of a tool is due to a chemical reaction between a tool material and its environment like air, cutting fluid, or workpiece material. Tool oxidation is common when cutting in air at high speed. An oxidation reaction is accelerated with temperature, but can be eliminated when inert gas is used to shield the cutting tool from surrounding oxygen. A chain reaction can also occur and further degrade a tool. For example, iron in steel is first oxidized at high cutting temperature to form iron oxide; the iron oxide then weakens the aluminum oxide coating of a tool and leads to peeling and chipping of the coating.

Adhesion tool damage happens when a built-up-edge (BUE) welds strongly to a tool surface and then breaks away with a minute amount of tool material. When machining soft materials, a chip tends to adhere to the tool and grow in size. When the BUE is large and becomes unstable, it is removed with the chip while also shearing off part of the cutting tool due to the higher adhesion strength between BUE and tool than the intergrain binding strength of the tool. Stainless steel, nickel and titanium alloys are known for causing adhesion wear on carbide microtools. Adhesion damage can be reduced by using proper lubricant to reduce friction between chip and tool, by coating the tool with a smooth and low friction layer, by reducing tool edge radius, or by increasing cutting speed to raise the tool surface temperature and soften the BUE while reducing its weldability to the tool surface.

Microtool failures occur due to a combination of the above mechanisms. For example, peeling of tool coating might be due to coating defects, or to mechanical mechanisms when a large gradient of stress exists across a thick coating layer; the loosened coating particles then rub and cause mechanical abrasive wear on a tool. Thermal mechanisms may cause workpiece atoms to diffuse, weaken, and dislodge several tool grains as microchipping.

Table 2. Categories of Tool Damage

Microtool damage	Damage size		Mechanism
	µm	µinch	
Abrasion	< 1	< 39	Mechanical, thermal
Attrition	1–3	39–118	Mechanical, thermal
Peeling	1–3	39–118	Mechanical, chemical
Microchipping	3–10	118–394	Mechanical, adhesion
Chipping	10–30	394–1180	Mechanical
Fracture	> 100	> 3940	Mechanical

Tool Life.—Tool life criteria in macromachining are documented in ANSI/ASME B94.55M-1985 (R2019), *Tool Life Testing with Single-Point Turning Tools*. This standard suggests an end of tool life when a tool exhibits:

- An average flank wear of 300 µm (0.0118 in), or
- Any maximum flank wear land of 600 µm (0.0236 in), or
- Any tool wear notch of 1000 µm (0.0394 in), or
- A crater wear of 100 µm (0.0039 in).

It is obvious that such criteria for a macrotool cannot be applied to a microtool because (i) it would be cost prohibitive to continue testing until 300 µm flank wear, and (ii) the wear criteria are even larger than most tool dimensions.

In the absence of a microtool standard, researchers have set their own criteria based on direct observation and/or indirect monitoring of microtool tool wear effects. Published data varies on microtool wear thresholds: 5 µm flank/nose wear on diamond tools, or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

50 µm flank/nose wear on carbide tools, or chipping dimensions relative to cutting tool grain size, or peeling of tool coating, etc. A variety of techniques have been suggested for tool monitoring; the direct techniques measure the tool conditions (e.g., flank wear, crater wear) while the indirect techniques measure the consequence of tool wear (e.g., burr size, change of microhole diameter).

Table 3. Microtool Wear and Monitoring Techniques

Measurement		Metrology Equipment / Sensor
Direct	Tool wear Tool edge conditions	Microscope
	Wear particles Particle radioactivity	Spectrophotometer, scintillator
	Tool-workpiece junction resistance	Voltmeter
	Workpiece features (hole diameter, slot depth…)	Microscope Interferometer
Indirect	Cutting force, torque, power	Dynamometer Strain gage, ampere meter
	Sound emitted from tool-workpiece friction	Acoustic emission transducer Microphone
	Vibration	Accelerometer Displacement sensor
	Temperature	Thermocouple Pyrometer
	Surface roughness	Profilometer, interferometer, optical profiler…
	Burr dimension	Microscope, interferometer, optical profiler…

The importance of tool life monitoring and tool life prediction is presented in the section *MACHINING ECONOMETRICS* starting on page 1196. The following material expands from that and covers relevant information for tool life of microtools.

The general Taylor equation that relates tool life and machining parameters also applies in micromachining:

$$V^a f^b d^c T = g \tag{1}$$

where V = surface cutting speed (m/min, ft/min)

f = tool feed (mm/rev, in/rev) or chip load (mm/tooth, in/tooth)

d = depth of cut (mm, inch)

T = tool life (min)

g, a, b, c = constants

When thermal damage mechanism dominates then $a >> b, c$ in Equation (1). The term a dominates mathematically and the effects of feed and depth of cut are insignificant compared to speed. The general Taylor equation can be rewritten as:

$$V^a T = \frac{g}{f^b d^c} \tag{2}$$

If $n = 1/a$, then this equation is the same as that in the *Econometrics* section:

$$VT^n = \left(\frac{g}{f^b d^c}\right)^n = C \tag{3}$$

When tool chipping occurs then both terms $b, c >> a$, therefore the feed and depth of cut are more important than surface speed. The general tool life reduces to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$f^b d^c T = \frac{g}{V^a} = C' \tag{4}$$

Chipping is generally not acceptable since a chipped tool generates excessive burr and a very rough surface. By reducing depth of cut and feed, then chipping should be eliminated assuming micromachining with a quality tool and machine tool. When stable parameters are applied, then the only damage mechanism is thermal and tool life can be predicted with Equation (3).

It has been shown that flank wear due to abrasion is directly proportional to the magnitude of acoustic signal or feeding force. An increase of 300 percent in micromilling feeding force from an initial value was established as a threshold for reaching the tool life. A reduction in feeding force, however, might indicate gradual failure of a microtool due to fatigue crack propagation. Indirect monitoring of tool wear by monitoring feeding force for both micromilling and microdrilling would be a preferred technique since this does not interfere with the machining process and reduce productivity. In the absence of a sensitive commercial system that can reliably and accurately monitor tool force and tool life in micromachining, direct tool wear monitoring should still be a popular practice.

Traditional tests using the Taylor approach would machine at the same cutting speed until reaching the predetermined tool failure criteria. Such tests can be time consuming if a chosen speed is too low, and only applicable to turning since a constant cutting speed is required. In reality, a part must be machined with the same tool in different directions and speeds to obtain the final profile and surface finish. Several techniques were developed to accelerate the testing method since turning tests alone are tedious, expensive, and do not reflect actual part machining. The cumulative wear technique, assuming that the abrasion wear mechanism is the same at different cutting speeds, is more flexible and can reduce the testing time and cost. The proposed cumulative tool life testing technique:

- Is flexible. If an initial speed is too slow, testing speed can be increased and the cumulative time and tool wear recorded.
- Is simple. Manual machines can be used instead of CNC machines. The same rpm on a manual lathe can be used for the turning test until tool failure. Times and cutting speeds for all passes are used to calculate the equivalent time and speed.
- Is more cost-effective. Both turning and facing can be combined to completely consume an expensive workpiece material.
- Is order independent. The level of cutting speed is not important if providing the same tool wear mechanism. Experimental data for macromachining shows no difference of tool life if changing cutting speeds from low to high, or in reverse order.

Consider a tool that machines at cutting speed V and stops after machining time Δt before reaching its tool life T. The tool then cuts at different speeds and times until reaching the tool life criteria—for example, 50 µm flank wear on a carbide microendmill. The fraction of tool life when cutting at each speed and time is $\Delta t/T$, and the total tool life fraction is

$$\frac{\Delta t_1}{T_1} + \frac{\Delta t_2}{T_2} + \ldots + \frac{\Delta t_k}{T_k} = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \frac{\Delta t_i}{T_i} = Q \tag{5}$$

The theoretical value of the total tool life fraction Q should be one. Experimental values for Q were found to be in the range 1.2–1.5. When combined with Taylor Equation (3), then Equation (5) becomes

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i V_i^{1/n} = QC^{1/n} \tag{6}$$

After machining with a tool at different times and speeds in different conditions (e.g., different tool coatings), it is necessary to compare the tool performance by calculating its

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

equivalent tool life and equivalent tool speed. The equivalent tool life T_e is just the sum of all machining time periods:

$$T_e = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i \tag{7}$$

The equivalent tool speed must produce the same tool damage as a tool after cumulative machining. The total tool damage is given in Equation (6) as:

$$\frac{1}{Q}\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i V_i^{1/n} = C^{1/n} = T_e V_e^{1/n} \tag{8a}$$

Solving for the equivalent cutting speed V_e

$$V_e = \left(\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i V_i^{1/n}}{\frac{1}{Q}\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i} \right)^n \tag{8b}$$

When $Q = 1$ then, $(V_e)^{1/n}$ is the mathematical average of all $(V_i)^{1/n}$ terms, by definition.

Mathematical models for cumulative tool wear are now derived for most popular machining operations, namely turning, drilling, facing, and milling.

- For turning with different cutting speeds, Equation (6) is applied. If turning speeds are kept the same from one pass to another, substitute $V = V_i$ into Equation (6) to obtain:

$$V^{1/n} \sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i = QC^{1/n} \tag{9}$$

- For drilling, tool wear would be most substantial at the cutting lip where cutting speed is at the highest. Since cutting speed is constant during drilling as in turning, the tool wear model for drilling is the same as in Equation (6) for variable speeds, and Equation (9) for constant speed.

- For facing, the cutting speed reduces linearly from the maximum V_i at the outermost radius to zero at the spindle center. It can be shown that the cumulative tool life model for facing is:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i V_i^{1/n} = \frac{n+1}{n} QC^{1/n} \tag{10}$$

- For milling, the actual machining time is the time during which chips are produced. The chip generating time involves geometry of a tool and milling parameters. The cumulative tool life model for face milling is

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} \Delta t_i V_i^{1/n} = \frac{1}{\lambda} QC^{1/n} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda = \frac{M \cos^{-1}\left(1 - 2\frac{a}{D}\right)}{360^\circ} \tag{11}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where λ = milling factor
a = width of cut (radial depth) in milling
M = number of teeth
D = milling cutter diameter

Example 8, Cumulative Tool Life:

Turning Test: Dry turning a metal matrix composite rod (Ø18 mm, 100 mm long) at constant 256 rpm on a manual lathe, depth of cut 0.5 mm, feed 0.07 mm/rev. Carbide tool TNPR331M-H1, tool holder MTENN2020-33.

This Al-SiC composite is very abrasive and is ideal for tool life model testing since abrasive wear is the main mechanism and flank wear is clearly seen and measured on a carbide tool. In this test, a tool is turned at constant rpm until reaching 300 µm flank wear. At least two data points are required to calculate the effect of speed, or the slope n in Taylor equation. From Table 4, the speed and tool life pairs are (14.48 m/min, 3.54 min) and (9.56 m/min, 5.58 min). The slope n derived from Equation (3) for these two data points is

$$n = \frac{\log(V_2/V_1)}{\log(T_1/T_2)} = \frac{\log(9.56/14.48)}{\log(3.54/5.58)} = 0.91$$

When considering many data points, the averaged value of n is 0.94. A spreadsheet such as Table 4 is a convenient way to tabulate cumulative values of each Δt and $\Delta t V^{1/n}$ term and then use these to calculate the equivalent tool life T_e with Equation (7), and the equivalent tool speed V_e with Equation (8b). The plot for all experimental data at constant cutting speeds and cumulative speeds is shown in Fig. 11a. Having all data points fitting on the same line indicates the validity of cumulative tool life models.

Facing Test: The same material and cutting tools are used in the facing test. Tool wear and tool life plots are shown in Fig. 11b and Fig. 11c. There is no difference in tool life when machining at low then high speed or the other way around.

Table 4. Spread Sheet for Example 8, Cumulative Tool Life in Turning

RPM	Δ Length (mm)	Diameter (mm)	Speed (m/min)	Δt (min)	$\Delta t V^{1/n}$	Cumulative		Flank Wear (µm)	Feed (mm/rev)	Equivalent	
						$\Delta t V^{1/n}$	Δt (min)			V_e (m/min)	T_e (min)
256	26.5	18.0	14.48	1.48	25.39	25.39	1.48	199	0.07		
256	16.0	18.0	14.48	0.89	15.33	40.72	2.37	242	0.07		
256	21.0	18.0	14.48	1.17	20.12	60.84	3.54	300	0.07	14.48	3.54
179	18.5	17.0	9.56	1.48	16.30	16.30	1.48	160	0.07		
179	21.5	17.0	9.56	1.72	18.95	35.25	3.19	233	0.07		
179	25.0	17.0	9.56	2.00	22.03	57.28	5.19	289	0.07		
					projected	61.61	5.58	300		9.56	5.58

Workpiece Materials

Micromachining is often utilized to fabricate components for miniaturized sensors, medical, optical, and electronic devices, etc. Common engineering materials for these applications include stainless steel, aluminum, titanium, copper, and tool steel for miniature molds and dies.

Workpiece materials must meet certain conditions for successful micromachining. Unlike macromachining, a micromachining tool is subjected to fluctuating cutting force when it encounters each grain since microtool size is comparable to material grain size. A microtool is more vulnerable to fatigue fracture and the resulting surface—if the tool survives—would be rough due to different spring-back protrusion from each grain due to different crystallographic orientations of the grains, and direction-dependent properties of the material. Homogenous workpiece materials with very fine and uniform grain sizes should be chosen for micromachining. Inclusions and large precipitates should be minimized to avoid damage to a fragile tool edge.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

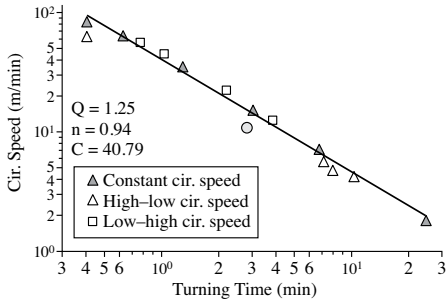


Fig. 11a. Tool life plot for turning tools. Circumference speed refers to the maximum cutting speed at the outer radius in turning.
Cast A359/SiC/20p; tool H1 WC (-8,0,9,5,60,30,0.4mm); 0.5 mm depth; 0.07 mm/rev feed; dry.

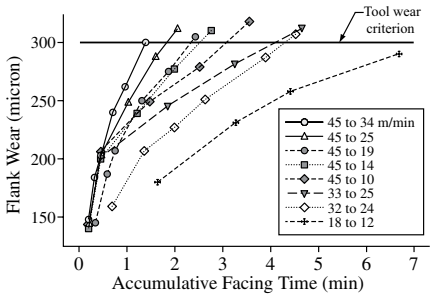


Fig. 11b. Cumulative flank wear of tool facing at high-to-low circumference speed.
Cast A359/SiC/20p; tool H1 WC (-8,0,9,5,60,30,0.4mm); 0.5 mm depth; 0.07 mm/rev feed; dry.

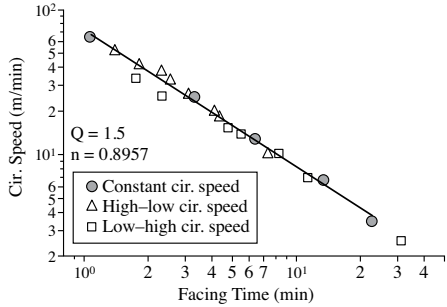


Fig. 11c. Tool life plot for facing tools. Circumference speed refers to the maximum cutting speed at the outer radius in facing.
Cast A359/SiC/20p; tool H1 WC (-8,0,9,5,60,30,0.4mm); 0.5 mm depth; 0.07 mm/rev feed; dry.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 9, Grain Size Consideration: The speed and feed table on page 1118 recommends a chip load (feed) of 0.1 mm/tooth (0.004 in/tooth) for macro-scale end milling 316L stainless steel using an uncoated carbide tool. Assume the average material grain size is 15 µm.

Macromilling: Using a Ø1/2 inch (Ø12.5 mm) end mill, the number of grains being cut by each tooth would be

$$\frac{\text{chip load}}{\text{grain size}} = \frac{0.1\text{mm}}{15\ \mu\text{m/grain}} = \frac{100\mu\text{m}}{15\ \mu\text{m/grain}} = 6.67\ \text{grains}$$

Micromilling: Selecting a Ø0.1 mm (Ø0.004 in) end mill, the recommended chip load would be 13 mm for stainless steel (see Table 13b, page 1195). The number of grains being cut by each tooth is

$$\frac{\text{chip load}}{\text{grain size}} = \frac{13\mu\text{m}}{15\ \mu\text{m/grain}} = 0.87\ \text{grains}$$

The cutting force on the macrotool and resulting surface finish are uniform due to the averaging effect from seven grains. Because a microtool shears less than one single grain at a time, the micromachined surface is irregular due to different spring-back amounts of each individual grain, and the cutting force on the microtool fluctuates depending on each grain orientation.

Ductile Regime Micromachining

Crystallographic Directions and Planes.—When machining in micro or nano scale, workpiece atom orientation affects machining performance because material properties change with crystalline orientation. Fig. 12a and Fig. 12b show blocks of the same material but with different surfaces. For example, the surface of the silicon block shown in Fig. 12a is harder, stiffer (higher elastic modulus), and is more difficult to machine than the same silicon block in Fig. 12b**.** Miller indices are commonly used to specify particular crystallographic orientations of atoms.

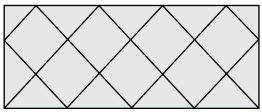


Fig. 12a. Block of Material with (110) Surface.

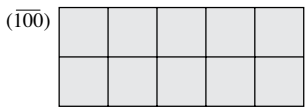


Fig. 12b. Block of Same Material with (100) Surface.

Consider a simple cubic system where atoms are located at corners (cubic as with manganese), at corners and inside (body centered cubic as with iron and chrominum), or at corners and on the surfaces (face centered cubic as with aluminum and copper) systems. For convenience, we will set a coordinate system Oxyz, as shown in Fig. 13a, and the size of the cube is set at one atomic spacing unit (OA = OC = OD = 1).

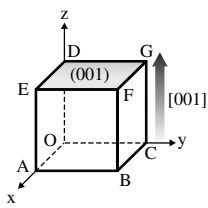


Fig. 13a.

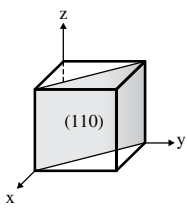


Fig. 13b.

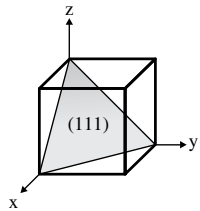


Fig. 13c.

During a micro/nano machining process, a cutting tool pushes and shears a grain. The cutting action forces some atoms to slide in certain directions and planes to form chips

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

on the tool rake face. These specific directions and planes are called slip systems. Soft materials such as copper and aluminum have more slip systems, therefore, are easier to be machined compared to harder materials such as steel with fewer slip systems.

The directional Miller index is the coordinate of a vector representing the atom sliding direction. In Fig. 13a, if the atom slides from C to G (also the same as sliding from O to D), then this vector with corresponding coordinates are given by:

$$\overrightarrow{CG} = \overrightarrow{OD} = [x_D - x_O, y_D - y_O, z_D - z_O] = [0, 0, 1] \text{ or } [001] \text{ direction}$$

Similarly, if an atom slides from B to A (or C to O) then the Miller direction is:

$$\overrightarrow{BA} = \overrightarrow{CO} = [x_O - x_C, y_O - y_C, z_O - z_C] = [0, -1, 0] \text{ or } [0\bar{1}0] \text{ direction}$$

The Miller plane represents the planes that intersect with the coordinate system. The plane DEFG in Fig. 13a, congruent with OABC, intersects the z-axis while parallel with the x and y axes. The Miller index for this plane is represented by the inverse of the axis intersection:

$$\text{Plane DEFG} = \left(\frac{1}{x\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{y\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{z\text{-intercept}}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{\infty}, \frac{1}{\infty}, \frac{1}{1}\right) = (0,0,1) \text{ or } (001) \text{ plane}$$

The plane EGCA in Fig. 13b, congruent with DFBO, intersects the x and y axes while parallel with z axis. The Miller index for this plane is:

$$\text{Plane EGCA} = \left(\frac{1}{x\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{y\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{z\text{-intercept}}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{\infty}\right) = (1,1,0) \text{ or } (110) \text{ plane}$$

The plane DCA in Fig. 13c, congruent with BEG, intersects all the x, y, and z axes. The Miller index for this plane is:

$$\text{Plane DCA} = \left(\frac{1}{x\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{y\text{-intercept}}, \frac{1}{z\text{-intercept}}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{1}\right) = (1,1,1) \text{ or } (111) \text{ plane}$$

Miller Index Nomenclature: In both direction and plane Miller indices, any minus sign is written on top of the number, for example $[\bar{1}11]$, and all commas are omitted for simplicity.

Square brackets "[ ]" are used to indicate a specific direction, and pointed brackets "<>" are used to indicate a family of directions with similar geometries. For example, the <100> family has 12 directions similar to [100], [001], …, which are all the edges of the cube in Fig. 13a.

Parentheses "( )" are used to indicate a specific plane, and curly brackets "{ }" are used to indicate a family of planes with similar geometries. For example, the {100} family has 6 planes similar to (100), (001), …, which are all the surfaces of the cube in Fig. 13a.

Introduction.—The concept of ductile-regime machining has been investigated since the 1960s for amorphous brittle materials such as glasses. Silicon, germanium, and glasses have become strategic materials that are widely used to fabricate intricate components in microelectronics, optical, defense industries, and recently as micro optical-electrical-mechanical systems. Silicon and other brittle materials are known for their low machinability unless they are machined in the ductile-regime conditions. When utilized at the optimal machining conditions, only minimum effort is required for the subsequent etching, grinding, or polishing to remove the damaged subsurface. This section summarizes the theory and provides practical guidance for ductile regime machining.

Theory.—The mechanism of ductile-regime machining has been studied by many researchers. Using a fracture mechanics approach, it can be shown that there is a threshold below which the ductile regime prevails:

$$d_c = \frac{\text{plastic flow energy}}{\text{fracture energy}} = A\left(\frac{E}{H}\right)\left(\frac{K_c}{H}\right)^2 \tag{12}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where d_c = critical depth of cut (m, inch)
A = constant
E = Young's modulus (Pa, psi)
K_c = surface fracture toughness ($Pa \cdot m^{0.5}$, $psi \cdot in^{0.5}$)
H = surface microhardness (Pa, psi)

A shallow depth of cut, therefore, would energetically promote plastic flow rather than brittle fracture in the substrate and the chips. Table 5 tabulates properties of some brittle materials and their experimental critical depths of cut.

Table 5. Selected Properties of Some Brittle Materials

Materials	Young modulus (GPa)	Fracture toughness ($MPa \cdot m^{0.5}$)	Knoop hardness (GPa)	Critical depth of cut (μm)
α-Al_2O_3	275–393	3.85–5.90	19.6–20.1	1.0
SiC	382–475	2.50–3.50	24.5–25.0	0.2
Si	168	0.6	10	0.5

The constant A in Equation (12) varies in the range 0.1–0.6 due to measuring uncertainty of surface toughness K_c, elastic modulus E, and microhardness H in a testing environment. These properties depend on crystalline orientation of the materials, surface conditions, and tool geometry.

- The critical resolved shear stress, on a crystalline plane due to the cutting action, is directly proportional to the Schmid factor $\cos\lambda\cos\phi$, where ϕ and λ are the orientations of the slip plane and slip direction. An ideal ductile mode machining would happen when the cutting shear stress is parallel to both the slip plane and the slip direction, otherwise a pseudo ductile mode with micro cleavages occurs. True ductile-regime machining happens only along certain crystalline orientations, but brittle machining occurs at other crystalline orientations. This explains why micromachining a crystalline specimen at the same speed, depth of cut, and coolant produces ductile machined surfaces in one direction but brittle machined surfaces on others.
- Cutting fluid changes the surface properties of materials (K_c, E, and H) and affects conditions for ductile regime micromachining. When micromachining the (100) germanium using a single crystalline diamond tool, the critical depth of cut changes from 0.13 μm (5 μin.) with distilled water as cutting fluid to 0.29 μm (11 μin.) in dry machining.
- Tool geometry also affects the results. Plowing and fracture of material occurs when depth of cut is less than approximately half of the tool cutting edge radius (see *Microcutting Tools* on page 1157). Tools with negative top rake angle are usually utilized because a negative rake causes a compressive zone in the workpiece ahead of and below the tool and suppresses microcrack formation.

Example 10, Mirror-finish Micromachining: Diamond tools with sharp cutting edge radii are very effective for machining brittle or ductile material with the exception of ferrous alloys such as tool steels or stainless steels. The cutting speed has minimum effect on surface finish, but a reduction of the feedrate leads to improvement of surface finish.

An optical quality surface of 1.4–1.9 nm R_{max} was obtained when turning single crystalline quartz with a diamond tool (–20° rake, 0.8 mm nose radius) at < 0.3 μm depth of cut, 3 m/s speed, and 8.1 μm/rev feedrate.

Case Study.—A study used polished (001) p-type silicon wafers of Ø100 mm (Ø4 inch). Small grooves were faced at different constant depth of cut or gradually changing depth of cut to study the ductile behavior (Fig. 14). Single crystalline diamond tools with (001) rake surface, 10–40 nm edge sharpness, +5° rake angle, and 0.51 mm or 2.00 mm nose radii were used for a facing operation. The complete tool nomenclature follows the American Standards Association (back rake angle, side rake angle, end relief angle, end clearance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

angle, side relief angle, side clearance angle, end cutting edge angle, side cutting edge angle, nose radius) with the addition of edge sharpness as (5°, 0°, 0°, 5°, 5°, 30°, 0°, 0.51–2.00 mm, 10–40 nm). The ultraprecision machining process was performed on a rigid system that has 9 nm positioning accuracy. Compressed air was used to blow chips away from the finish machined area. Surface finish of a machined wafer was measured with an atomic force microscope (AFM) and a phase-shift interferometer (PSI).

Surface finish measurements indicated ductile or brittle chip fracture on machined surfaces. As depth of cut reduced below 1 µm, the surface finish was also diminished due to a higher percentage of ductile machined surfaces. Perfect ductile regime machining was achieved when depth of cut was between 0.1–0.5 µm. A smaller depth of cut in the neighborhood of 0.05 µm (50 nm), however, worsened the surface finish because machining at such shallow depth of cut (close to the cutting tool edge radius of 40 nm) would plow and fracture the material surface. At the same cutting parameters, micromachining along the silicon <110> directions gave better surface finish while brittle chipping was seen when cutting along the silicon <100> directions (Fig. 15, Fig. 16a, and Fig. 16b).

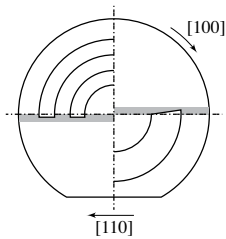


Fig. 14. Machining plan on (001) wafers. A wafer was faced at a constant depth in different zones (left) or changing cutting depth in a taper cut (right).

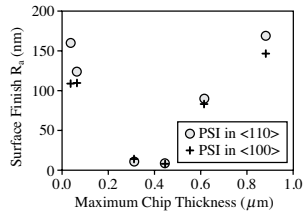


Fig. 15. Surface finish as a function of the maximum chip thickness (depth of cut) and crystalline direction of the silicon wafer. The minimum surface finish is with ductile machined surface.

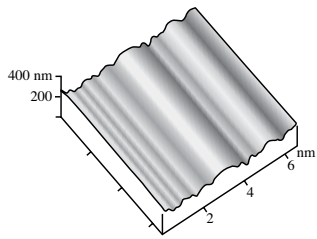


Fig. 16a. Perfect ductile regime machining of (001) silicon along [$\bar{1}$10].

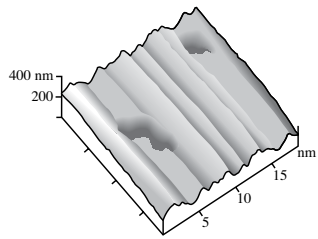


Fig. 16b. Mixed mode of ductile regime and pitting along [$\bar{1}$00].

Speed 75 m/min, feed 2.5µm/rev; depth 0.5µm; SCD tool (5°,0°,0°,5°,5°,30°, 0°, 0.5mm,10–40nm).

Cutting Fluids in Micromachining

Micromilling and microdrilling, among the most versatile manufacturing processes, can be leveraged from existing technology to produce 3D microparts or microcavities in molds and dies for mass-replication. Although macro-scale milling and drilling technology is mature, micro-scale milling/drilling technology is yet to be fully developed. Extending common practices in macromachining to micromachining often ends up with failure. Very short tool life is experienced with micromachining, and flood cooling is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

not effective in microdrilling because coolant cannot flow into a partially drilled microhole. This section recommends how to select and apply a cutting fluid for effective micro milling/drilling.

Micro milling/drilling requires high rotation speed exceeding 25,000 rpm of a small tool to achieve an acceptable surface cutting speed for material removal. When drilling steel, 50 percent of the heat generated conducts into the drill, but 80 percent of heat will go to the tool when drilling titanium. A microdrill with sharp cutting edges subjected to high temperature and high stress will fail easily if cutting fluid is not adequate. When rotating a microtool at a very high rotating speed, flood coolant is not effective since it does not have enough momentum to penetrate the boundary layer (fast moving air layer) around a fast rotating tool, or wet the bottom of a deep microhole. In addition, any unfiltered chip from recycled coolant can damage a microtool or fragile workpiece. Micromist (minimum quantity lubrication, MQL) has been studied by many researchers and is proven to provide proper cooling and lubricating in micromachining. In ideal conditions, a stream of micron-size lubricant particles in micromist:

- Does not contain any chip or solid contaminant
- Has enough momentum to penetrate the boundary layer of a fast rotating tool
- Adheres to the fast rotating tool despite high centrifugal force, and
- Wets the tool and workpiece to provide effective cooling and lubricating.

The following section discusses safety, selection of cutting fluid, application method, and recommends optimal setup for micromachining.

Safety.—The aspect of health and safety when using micromist is a concern. A mist does not only cause potential health issues for workers in the environment, but also contaminates other instruments and machines nearby. Biodegradable fluids must be used; polyol esters are superior to common vegetable oils because the former have higher biodegradability, are less "sticky" due to oxidizing, and increase in molecular weight with time and temperature. Due to the aerosol formation during mist flow at high pressure, an air purification unit or proper ventilating fan should be installed to minimize breathing of the aerosol particles by operators, and prevent damage to adjacent equipment.

Benefits.—Most conventional machining processes like turning, milling, drilling, and grinding can benefit from micromist lubrication when applied properly. Although application of micromist is limited when the mist flow is obstructed — as in gun drilling — successful microdrilling has been reported for microholes with 10:1 aspect ratio (depth/diameter). At optimal conditions, micromist significantly minimizes built-up-edges, reduces burr size and cutting force, and therefore improves tool life for both coated and uncoated tools. Depending on which cutting fluid is used and how it is applied, researchers have found the effect of micromist ranges from "the same as flood cooling" to "extending tool life 3–10 times over flood cooling." There is yet any published paper on inferior results of micromist over dry and flood cooling.

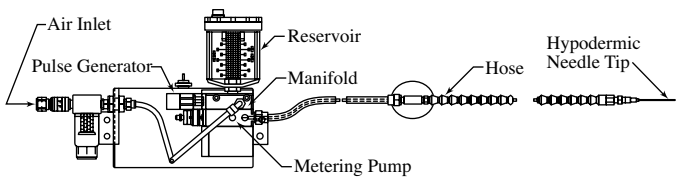


Fig. 17. Schematic of a Micromist System for Micromachining. *Courtesy of Unist, Inc.*

Systems that can generate micromist for minimum quantity lubrication machining are commercially available. A typical design (Fig. 17) includes a resevoir for biocompatible oil, feeding tubes, and an atomizing unit that mixes a compressed air flow with a controlled volume of oil. A needle is necessary to direct the mist to a predetermined location.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The resulting oil microdroplets—size and speed—should be adjustable to effectively penetrate and wet a tool/part interface. This can be done by adjusting the air pressure, type of oil, and volume of oil released into the air stream.

Selection of Cutting Fluid.—A cutting fluid is selected for both cooling and lubricating purposes in micromachining. It should be environmentally friendly, should not interact chemically at high temperature with tool or workpiece, and can be cleaned and disinfected from the machined parts. It must have low surface energy relative to the surface energy of the cutting tool and workpiece material, high thermal diffusivity, and lubricity. For micromist applications, a cutting fluid must be able to flow easily in a small tube (low viscosity) and to form microdroplets.

Complete wetting is desirable for a cutting fluid because it covers large surface areas of tool and workpiece and effectively removes heat from the source. Its self-spreading capability due to the differential surface energy allows cutting fluid to penetrate deep into the chip/tool interface to effectively lubricate and cool this zone. Wetting condition can be assessed by two methods:

Pendant drop technique: A drop of liquid is formed and suspended vertically at the end of a solid tube. The side view of a drop is analyzed to compute the liquid surface tension using a tensiometer (Fig. 18a and Fig. 18b).

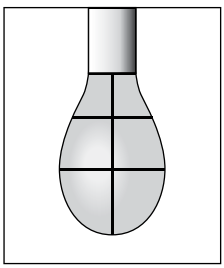


Fig. 18a. Side View of a Pendant Drop Below a Stainless Steel Tube.

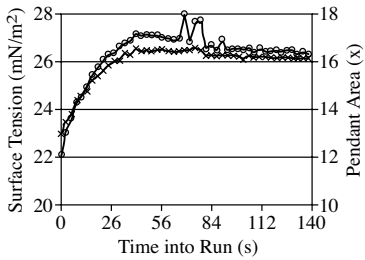


Fig. 18b. Calculated Surface Tension from Starting to Full Forming of a Droplet.

Sessile drop technique: A drop of liquid is placed on a horizontal surface. The side view of the drop is analyzed to calculate the liquid contact angle or measure it with a goniometer (Fig. 19).

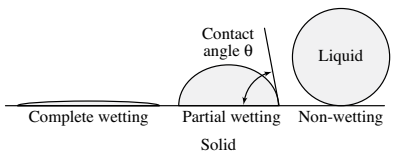


Fig. 19. Sessile Drop Technique to Assess Wetting of Cutting Fluid.

The following section presents a simpler approach to calculating the contact angle and drop size using a modified sessile drop technique. This technique uses a toolmaker's microscope, available at most manufacturing shops, to measure the top view of a drop, instead of a goniometer to measure the side view.

Drop Size Measurement.—A microdroplet must have sufficient momentum to penetrate the boundary air layer moving around a fast rotating microtool and to wet the tool afterward. Calculation of momentum and contact angle for wetting assessment requires the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

droplet dimension. Knowing the lubricant drop size allows proper calibration of a micromist system to maintain the system effectiveness. Table 6 summarizes different techniques to measure the liquid drop size. The techniques are basically intrusive and nonintrusive methods to either collect the droplets for subsequent analysis, or for in situ imaging of the in-flight droplets.

Nonintrusive techniques use dedicated laboratory research instruments to provide accurate dimensions and comprehensive statistical information of microdroplets. The effect of variables like air pressure on drop size and speed can be automatically calculated and analyzed.

Intrusive techniques use less sophisticated instruments to collect and analyze droplets directly or indirectly. These simpler techniques, however, depend on operator skills for collecting reliable data.

Table 6. Liquid Droplet Measurement Techniques

Intrusive	Nonintrusive
Slide: collect droplets on a slide for microscopic assessment.	*Light shadowing:* analyze shadows of in flight droplets.
Solidification: transform droplets to solid for sieving or weighting.	*Laser Doppler Anemometry:* analyze visibility, intensity and phase shift of scattered laser from a small sample of droplets.
Momentum: analyze droplet impact.	
Heat Transfer: analyze cooling effect of droplets with a hot wire anemometer.	*Laser Diffractometry:* scan and analyze a large group of droplets.

The slide technique is a simple way to study drop size and its wetting characteristic. The setup is shown in Fig. 20a, in which a mask and glass plate are quickly exposed to a steady stream of micromist droplets. Only a few droplets are able to pass through the mask opening and deposit on a clean glass plate behind it.

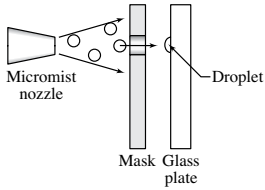


Fig. 20a. Setup for microdroplet collection.

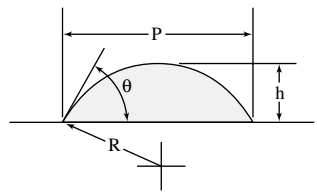


Fig. 20b. Analysis of droplet geometry.

It is assumed that (i) droplet volume remains the same before and after touching the glass plate, (ii) gravity effect on a microscale droplet is negligible, and (iii) the droplet forms part of a sphere on the plate to minimize its total surface energy. Using Equations (13) and (14) that follow, the average volume of a single droplet can be calculated by measuring the average projected droplet diameter P and its height h on a toolmaker's microscope:

$$V = \frac{\pi h^2}{2}\left(\frac{h}{3} + \frac{P^2}{4h}\right) = \frac{\pi D^3}{6} \tag{13}$$

$$D = \left(\frac{6V}{\pi}\right)^{1/3} = \left[3h^2\left(\frac{h}{3} + \frac{P^2}{4h}\right)\right]^{1/3} \tag{14}$$

where V = volume of microdroplet (mm^3, in^3)

P = projected droplet diameter (mm, in)

h = height of a microdroplet (mm, in)

D = air-borne diameter of microdroplet (mm, in)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Drop size varies with air pressure and volume of oil for atomization. In general, higher air pressure and velocity give more uniform and smaller drop size. Table 7 lists results of average drop sizes measured using this technique. Among different cutting fluids, the average diameter of in-flight droplets is approximately 1 μm for the CL2210EP lubricant, but it can be as large as 9 μm for other fluids.

Table 7. Properties of Selected Lubricants

Lubricant	2210EP	2210	2200	2300HD
Surface tension (mN/m)	26	29	34	34
Droplet diameter (μm)	0.97	2.3	6.7	8.4
Viscosity (Pa-s) @270s^{-1} shear rate	0.016	0.014	0.023	0.061
Contact angle on 316L (°)	7	14	10	18
Contact angle on WC (°)	7	7	10	12

Example 11, Drop Size Calculation: Set the Unist system at 32 strokes/min, 3.6 mm stroke length, 3.78 bar pressure. Collect droplets of CL2100EP and measure with a toolmaker's microscope.

The average projected drop size is 2 μm and average drop height is 0.3 μm. The drop volume is calculated using Equation (13) to be

$$V = \frac{\pi h^2}{2}\left(\frac{h}{3} + \frac{P^2}{4h}\right) = \frac{\pi(0.3\mu m)^2}{2}\left(\frac{0.3\mu m}{3} + \frac{(2\mu m)^2}{4 \times 0.3\mu m}\right) = 0.49\mu m^3$$

Using Equation (14), the average air-borne diameter of a droplet is

$$D = \left(\frac{6V}{\pi}\right)^{1/3} = \left(\frac{6 \times 0.49\mu m^3}{\pi}\right)^{1/3} = 0.97\mu m$$

The following practical guides will assist in obtaining reliable results using the slide technique.

- The solid surface (glass plate, workpiece, or cutting tool) should be as smooth as possible, flat and polished, clean and positioned horizontally. Any surface defect such as machining marks or burrs will distort the droplet profile.
- The solid must be cleaned thoroughly before testing to avoid contamination of the tested liquid and distorted data. Ultrasonic cleaning in alcohol or degreaser following by dry air blowing should be adequate.
- For meaningful information, about 10–20 droplets should be measured. Ignore very large drops that are coalesced from smaller droplets, and very small satellite drops that are splashed off upon impact of a droplet on the glass plate.
- A measurement should be as quick as possible, using minimum light since a tiny liquid droplet might evaporate or spread when heated in bright light.

Contact Angle Measurement.—Droplet volume is calculated in the previous section by the sessile drop technique, and the same volume can be used for calculating the droplet contact angle. Alternatively, a predetermined droplet volume can be set and dispensed on a solid surface using a micropipette. The contact angle of a sessile droplet on a flat surface can be computed from the following equation:

$$\frac{P}{V^{1/3}} = \left[\frac{24}{\pi}\frac{(1 - K\cos^2\theta)^{3/2}}{2 - 3\cos\theta + \cos^3\theta}\right]^{1/3} \quad (15)$$

where P = projected droplet diameter (mm, in)

V = droplet volume (mm^3, in^3)

θ = contact angle (°)

K = 0 for θ between 90° and 180°, K = 1 for θ between 0° and 90°

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The ratio P over $V^{1/3}$ is called the *normalized diameter* of the droplet. Using the normalized diameter, the contact angle can be calculated using Equation (15), by looking up the value in a table (Table 8), or read from a graph (Fig. 22a and Fig. 22b).

Fig. 21 shows the top view of some liquid droplets on stainless steel sheets from which contact angles are calculated and plotted for comparison. The cutting fluids are chosen from different commercially available oil-based lubricants: CL2200, CL2210, CL2210EP, and CL2300HD. Other coolants were also included for comparison: water, KM, and water-soluble coolants RL1:15, BC1:5, and CL1:30. The nomenclature x:yy indicates dilution ratio of concentrated coolant in water for the water soluble fluids.

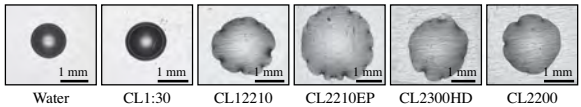


Fig. 21. Wetting of Different Cutting Fluids on 316L Stainless Steel. Constant Drop Volume = 0.25 µL.

Table 7 and Fig. 23 compare contact angles of these cutting fluids on different solids. The oil-based CL2210EP lubricant forms the lowest contact angle of 7° on 316L stainless steel, uncoated carbide, and titanium. This is in contrast to 60–70° from other water-based fluids. Surface tension of the CL2210EP lubricant is 26 mN/m, the lowest among others, thus it easily wets a carbide microtool and workpiece surfaces during machining.

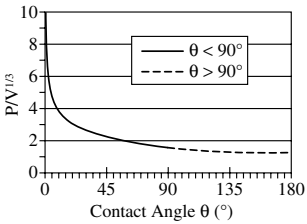


Fig. 22a. Plot of Contact Angle versus Normalized Diameter for All Angles.

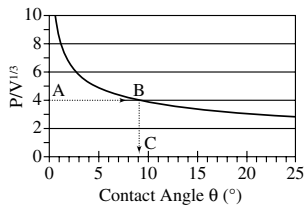


Fig. 22b. Plot of Contact Angle versus Normalized Diameter for Small Angles.

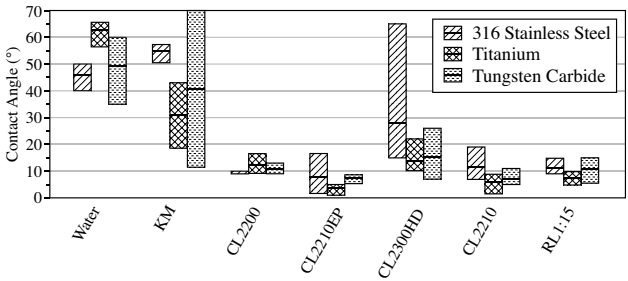


Fig. 23. Average and Range of Contact Angles for Different Cutting Fluids on 316L Stainless Steel, Tungsten Carbide, and Titanium.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Contact Angle (θ°) of Micromist Droplets for Practical Tests

Drop Size, *P*		Drop Volume, *V* (μL)																				
mm	inch	0.10	0.11	0.12	0.13	0.14	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.18	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.28	0.29	0.30
1.00	0.039	51	54	58	61	64	67	70	73	75	77	79	81	83	85	87	88	90	91	93	94	95
1.10	0.043	40	44	47	50	53	55	58	61	63	65	67	69	71	73	75	77	78	80	81	83	84
1.20	0.047	32	35	38	40	43	45	48	50	52	54	57	59	60	62	64	66	67	69	71	72	73
1.30	0.051	26	28	30	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	54	56	57	59	60	62	63
1.40	0.055	21	23	25	27	29	30	32	34	36	38	39	41	42	44	46	47	49	50	51	53	54
1.50	0.059	17	19	20	22	24	25	27	28	30	31	33	34	36	37	38	40	41	42	44	45	46
1.60	0.063	14	15	17	18	20	21	22	24	25	26	27	29	30	31	32	34	35	36	37	38	39
1.70	0.067	12	13	14	15	16	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	30	21	32	33	34
1.80	0.071	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
1.90	0.075	8.5	9.3	10	11	12	13	13	14	15	16	17	18	18	19	20	21	22	22	23	24	25
2.00	0.079	7.3	8.0	8.7	9.4	10	11	12	12	13	14	14	15	16	17	17	18	19	19	20	21	21
2.10	0.083	6.3	6.9	7.5	8.2	8.8	9.4	10	11	11	12	13	13	14	14	15	16	16	17	17	18	19
2.20	0.087	5.5	6.0	6.6	7.1	7.7	8.2	8.7	9.3	10	10	11	11	12	13	13	14	14	15	15	16	16
2.30	0.091	4.8	5.3	5.7	6.2	6.7	7.2	7.7	8.1	8.6	9.1	10	10	10	11	11	12	12	13	13	14	14
2.40	0.094	4.2	4.6	5.1	5.5	5.9	6.3	6.7	7.2	7.6	8.0	8.4	8.8	9.2	10	10	10	11	11	12	12	13
2.50	0.098	3.7	4.1	4.5	4.8	5.2	5.6	6.0	6.3	6.7	7.1	7.4	7.8	8.2	8.6	8.9	9.3	10	10	10	11	11
2.60	0.102	3.3	3.7	4.0	4.3	4.6	5.0	5.3	5.6	6.0	6.3	6.6	7.0	7.3	7.6	7.9	8.3	8.6	8.9	9.3	10	10
2.70	0.106	3.0	3.3	3.6	3.9	4.1	4.4	4.7	5.0	5.3	5.6	5.9	6.2	6.5	6.8	7.1	7.4	7.7	8.0	8.3	8.6	8.9
2.80	0.110	2.7	2.9	3.2	3.5	3.7	4.0	4.2	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.3	5.6	5.8	6.1	6.4	6.6	6.9	7.2	7.4	7.7	8.0
2.90	0.114	2.4	2.6	2.9	3.1	3.3	3.6	3.8	4.1	4.3	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.3	5.5	5.7	6.0	6.2	6.4	6.7	6.9	7.2
3.00	0.118	2.2	2.4	2.6	2.8	3.0	3.2	3.5	3.7	3.9	4.1	4.3	4.5	4.7	5.0	5.2	5.4	5.6	5.8	6.0	6.3	6.5

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 12, Contact Angle Measurement: Set volume $V = 0.25$ µL on a micropipette and then dispense several droplets of CL2100EP on a clean titanium plate. The average size of the droplets, measured on a toolmaker's microscope, is $P = 2.520$ mm. To find wetting capability of this coolant on titanium, it is necessary to calculate its contact angle.

Graphical Solution: Using 1 µL= 10^{-6} L = 1 mm^3, the normalized diameter is

$$\frac{P}{V^{1/3}} = \frac{2.520\ \text{mm}}{(0.25\ \text{mm}^3)^{1/3}} = 4.0$$

Starting at point A = 4.0 on the vertical Normalized Diameter ($P/V^{1/3}$) axis of Fig. 22b, draw a horizontal line until it intersects with the curve at B.

Draw a vertical line from point B until it intersects with the Contact Angle axis at C. Read the contact angle ~9° for this oil and titanium.

Table Look-up Solution: Locate drop volume of 0.25 µL on the first row of Table 8.

Locate projected drop size of 2.52 mm on the first column. Since 2.52 mm is not available, choose the closest number, 2.50 mm.

Read the contact angle from the intersection of row and column as 9.3°

Example 13, Contact Angle Measurement (continued from Example 11*):* In Example 11, droplets of CL2100EP were collected on a glass plate, the average projected drop size $P = 2$ µm was measured, and the average drop volume was calculated to be $V = 0.49$ μm^3. The information obtained can be used to calculate contact angle.

a) The normalized diameter is

$$\frac{P}{V^{1/3}} = \frac{2\ \mu\text{m}}{(0.49\ \mu\text{m}^3)^{1/3}} = 2.53$$

b) Use Fig. 22b with normalized diameter of 2.53, and read the contact angle of ~18°.

The same cutting fluid Cl2100EP forms different contact angles of 18° on glass and 9° on titanium. This is due to the different surface energies of glass and titanium.

Dynamics of Microdroplets.—Several models are derived to study the dynamics of a microdroplet when it approaches a fast rotating tool. To effectively wet and lubricate a rotating tool, a microdroplet must (i) have enough momentum to penetrate the boundary layer around a fast rotating tool to reach the tool surface, and then (ii) adhere and wet the tool surface despite centrifugal force acting on the microdroplet.

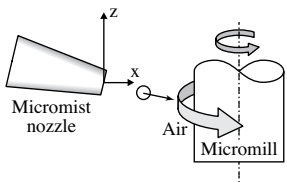


Fig. 24a. Propelling of Microdroplets Toward a Rotating Tool.

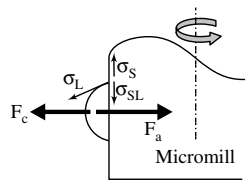


Fig. 24b. Force Balancing of a Microdroplet on the Rotating Tool.

Propelling Microdroplets Toward a Rotating Tool: The coordinates of a microdroplet after leaving a nozzle and moving toward a rotating tool can be expressed as

$$x_{pn} = V_f t + \frac{\alpha}{m}(V_0 \cos\beta - V_f)(1 - e^{-\alpha t/m}) \tag{16}$$

$$y_{pn} = \frac{\alpha}{m} V_0 \sin\beta (1 - e^{-\alpha t/m}) \tag{17}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where x_{pn}, y_{pn} = coordinates of a microdroplet from the nozzle

$\alpha = 3\mu D$

D, m = diameter and mass of a droplet

t = time

V_f = velocity of boundary air layer

V_0 = velocity of a microdroplet when leaving the mist nozzle

μ = viscosity

β = angle between microdroplet velocity and the x-axis

The distance y_{pn} away from a nozzle will reach a steady state value $(\alpha/m)V_0 \sin\beta$ after a long time ($t \to \infty$). This means if a tool and nozzle distance is closer than this steady state value, then the microdroplets will reach the tool surface.

Force Balancing of Microdroplets on a Rotating Tool: After reaching the tool surface, a microdroplet on a rotating tool is subject to adhesion force along lubricant/solid interface and centrifugal force. The work of adhesion is given by Young-Dupre equation:

$$W_a = \sigma_S + \sigma_L - \sigma_{SL} = (1 + \cos\theta)\sigma_L \tag{18a}$$

where σ_L = surface tension of lubricant/air

σ_S = surface tension of solid/air

σ_{SL} = surface tension of solid/lubricant

W_a = work of adhesion between solid/lubricant

θ = contact angle

If the adhesion force from surface tension is greater than centrifugal force, then the microdroplet will adhere and spread on the tool surface. Otherwise, the droplet will be separated from the rotating tool due to a higher centrifugal force. The condition for a microdroplet to adhere to the rotating cutting tool is given in Equation (18b) and plotted with tool surface speed and microdroplet size as two independent variables.

$$\frac{2mV_c^2}{D_t} \le P(1 + \cos\theta)\sigma_L \tag{18b}$$

where σ_L = surface tension of lubricant/air (N/m)

θ = contact angle (°)

m = mass of microdroplet (kg)

V_c = cutting tool surface speed (m/s)

P = projected drop size (m)

D_t = tool diameter (m)

The plot in Fig. 25 is for CL2210EP lubricant and uncoated carbide tool with Ø1 mm flute diameter. The curve divides the plot into two regions: the upper region where adhesion is dominating, and the lower region where centrifugal force is stronger, i.e., a microdroplet is propelled radially away and does not wet the tool. With the droplet size of 1–10 µm for all lubricants in this study, the adhesion force is dominating and a microdroplet should adhere to the rotating tool at any rotating speed of the tested machine (0–50,000 rpm or 0–150 m/min for a Ø1 mm tool). Wetting of CL2210EP microdroplets on carbide tools was also experimentally verified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

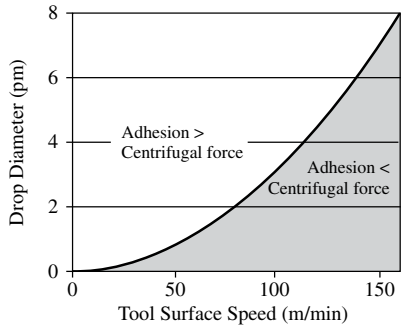


Fig. 25. Adhesion Threshold of Microdroplets on a Rotating Tool.
CL2210EP lubricant, Ø1 mm uncoated carbide tool at different speeds.
Note: 1 pm = 1 picometer = 10^{-12} meter.

Simulation using computational fluid dynamics is used to study the 2D flow of microdroplets near a rotating cutting tool. Fig. 26a shows the velocity field of microdroplets moving from left to right and around a counter-clockwise rotating cylinder. A stagnant location with zero microdroplet speed is found near the top of the cylinder (cutting tool). When micromilling in MQL condition, a workpiece should not be positioned at such a stagnant location since it would receive no lubrication. Practical setups are suggested in Fig. 26b.

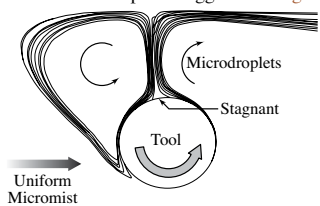


Fig. 26a. Computational Fluid Dynamic Simulation of Microdroplet Dynamics.

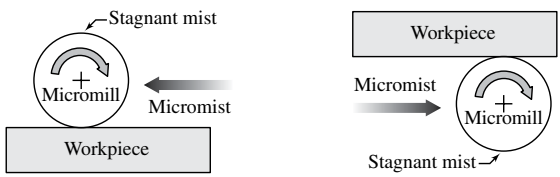


Fig. 26b. Practical Machining Setups of Tool and Workpiece to Avoid Stagnant Zone.

Case Studies.—Many researchers have applied micromist in their micro and macro machining studies. An example of each is given in this section.

Use of Micromist in Micromilling of 316L Stainless Steel: Micromilling using Ø1 mm WC tool, 10 µm/tooth chip load, 0.348 mm axial depth, 0.558 mm radial depth were performed on 316L stainless steel with different coolants. Using the cumulative tool life models (see *Tool Life* on page 1166), tool life of micromilling tools are plotted and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

compared in Fig. 27. Large scattering of data and low machinability is observed when dry micromilling of 316L stainless steel. The machinability improves with flood cooling, spray mist, and micromist respectively. Fig. 27 shows the data points start at lower left corner for dry machining then shift to the upper right corner of the graph for micromilling in MQL, i.e., a tool can be used at higher speed for longer time to reach the same flank wear of 50 µm. Scanning electron microscopy examination indicates significant built-up edges and attrition failure of dry cutting tools (Fig. 28a). In contrast, a well-defined abrasive tool wear is observed on a long lasting tool after micromilling with spray mist or in MQL conditions (Fig. 28b). Micromilling in MQL condition using CL2210EP extends tool life significantly over dry machining of 316L stainless steel.

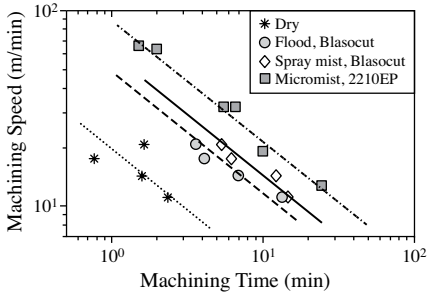


Fig. 27. Effect of Cutting Fluid Conditions on Micromilling of 316L Stainless Steel.
10 µm/tooth chip load, 0.348 mm axial depth, 0.558 mm radial depth, Ø1 mm uncoated carbide tool.

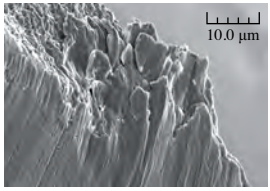


Fig. 28a. Built-Up Edge (Lower Right) and Adhesion Wear (Upper Left) on a Carbide Tool.
(dry cutting, 1.4 min @ 18 m/min)

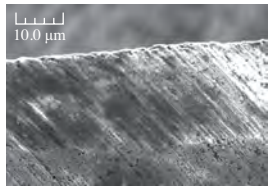


Fig. 28b. Uniform Abrasive Flank Wear on a Carbide Tool.
(micromist, 21.7 min @ 15 m/min)

Micromill Ø1 mm, 10 µm/tooth chip load, 0.348 mm axial depth, 0.558 mm radial depth.

Use of Micromist in Macrofacing of 4140 Steel: Bars of 4140 steel, 2 inch (50 mm) diameter, 6 inch (150 mm) long were faced at 54 m/min (177 ft/min) maximum surface cutting speed, 0.1 mm/rev feed (0.004 in/rev), and 0.5 mm (0.020 in.) depth of cut. Uncoated carbide inserts TNG431 were used in the study. The operation was in dry condition, flood with Rustlick 1:15 water soluble water-based coolant, and CL2210EP oil micromist. Periodic interruption of the operation was made to remove a tool for wear assessment on a toolmaker's microscope. Fig. 29 plots flank wear of all tools and Fig. 30a, Fig. 30b, and Fig. 30c compare the tool tip conditions after 75 passes. At identical machining conditions, crater, flank and nose wear are worst for dry machining. Flood cooling improves the tool wear but nose wear is still substantial. Micromist provides the best tool protection with reduced flank and crater wear, and negligible nose wear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

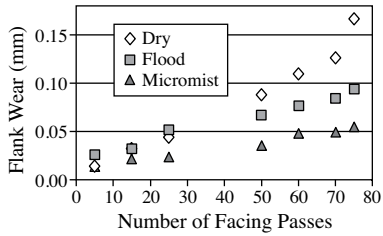
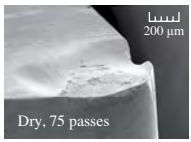
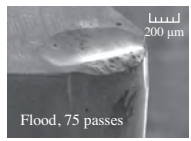


Fig. 29. Flank Wear of Uncoated Carbide Tools in Different Cutting Fluids.
Macrofacing of 4140 steel, 54 m/min, 0.1 mm/rev feed, 0.5 mm depth of cut.

Comparison of Tool Wear After 75 Facing Passes





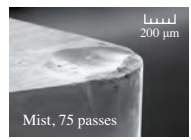


Fig. 30a. Dry Machining. Fig. 30b. Rustlick 1:15 Flood Cooling. Fig. 30c. CL2210EP Micromist.

There is negligible nose wear for machining in micromist.
Macrofacing on 4140 steel, 54 m/min, 0.1 mm/rev feed, 0.5 mm depth of cut.

Microfabrication Processes and Parameters

This section discusses three major microfabrication processes: micromilling, microdrilling, and microturning. Setup, tooling, and process parameters for common engineering materials are then recommended.

Micromilling.—Micromilling is among the most versatile of microfabrication processes. Although alternative nontraditional processes to produce microfeatures such as laser micromachining, electrical discharge micromachining, electrochemical micromachining, chemical microetching, electron/ion beam micromachining are available, these processes are either cost prohibitive, or inferior when comparing resulting surface and subsurface integrity, anisotropic aspect ratio or feature quality. Successful micromilling requires new tool geometry, tool material, machining parameters, and machining skills. It is technically incorrect and costly to perform micromilling by just scaling down a milling cutter, or parameters from macroscale milling. Commercial micromills are available for diameters of 25 µm (0.001 inch) and up, see Table 9.

- Tool material. Carbide tools should be sintered from fine grains, and ground to small cutting edge radius (see *Microcutting Tools* on page 1157).
- Milling direction. Down milling is the preferred mode since a micromill will engage a workpiece and remove a wedge shape chip with decreasing chip thickness. In contrast, a tool in upmilling would rub on the workpiece until the effective chip thickness is greater than one-half of the cutting edge radius (see *Tool Sharpness* on page 1158).
- Lubrication. Micromist should be used with all micromachining, but adequate ventilation and filtering are required to avoid inhalation of micromist. The nozzle should be as close as possible to the work and positioned to let the cutting flutes pull the mist into the cutting zone. Tool and workpiece should be arranged to avoid the stagnant zone (see Fig. 26a, Fig. 26b, Fig. 31a, and Fig. 31b).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

- Tool vibration. Avoid unnecessary disengaging then engaging of microtool and workpiece in a milling program when programing the tool path. Vibration and bending of a microtool when starting and ending a cut could fatigue and shorten the tool life of the microtool (Fig. 32).

Positioning of a Micromist Nozzle in Micromilling

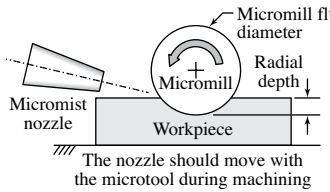


Fig. 31a. Top View.

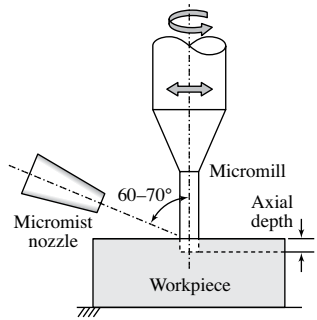


Fig. 31b. Side View.

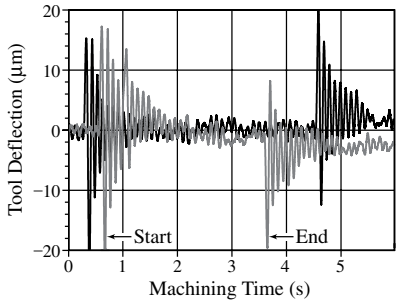


Fig. 32. Vibration of a Micromill When Engaging and Disengaging a Workpiece. Carbide mill Ø1 mm (Ø0.040 inch), 316L stainless steel, 25000 rpm, 10 µm/tooth feed, 0.348 mm axial depth, 0.558 mm radial depth.

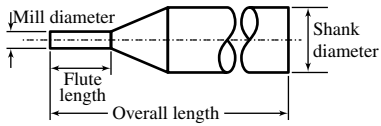


Fig. 33. Micromill Nomenclature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Commercial Micromills
(A stub flute length is about half of standard flute length)

Mill diameter		Stub flute length		Standard flute length		Overall length		Shank diameter	
(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)
0.025	0.0010	0.051	0.002	0.076	0.003	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.051	0.0020	0.076	0.003	0.152	0.006	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.076	0.0030	0.127	0.005	0.229	0.009	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.102	0.0040	0.152	0.006	0.305	0.012	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.127	0.0050	0.203	0.008	0.381	0.015	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.152	0.0060	0.254	0.010	0.457	0.018	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.178	0.0070	0.279	0.011	0.533	0.021	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.203	0.0080	0.305	0.012	0.610	0.024	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.229	0.0090	0.356	0.014	0.686	0.027	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.254	0.0100	0.381	0.015	0.762	0.030	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.279	0.0110	0.432	0.017	0.838	0.033	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.305	0.0120	0.457	0.018	0.914	0.036	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.330	0.0130	0.508	0.020	0.991	0.039	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.356	0.0140	0.533	0.021	1.067	0.042	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.381	0.0150	0.584	0.023	1.143	0.045	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.406	0.0160	0.610	0.024	1.219	0.048	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.432	0.0170	0.660	0.026	1.295	0.051	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.457	0.0180	0.686	0.027	1.372	0.054	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.483	0.0190	0.737	0.029	1.448	0.057	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.508	0.0200	0.762	0.030	1.524	0.060	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.533	0.0210	0.813	0.032	1.600	0.063	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.559	0.0220	0.838	0.033	1.676	0.066	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.584	0.0230	0.889	0.035	1.753	0.069	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.610	0.0240	0.914	0.036	1.829	0.072	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.635	0.0250	0.965	0.038	1.905	0.075	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.660	0.0260	0.991	0.039	1.981	0.078	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.686	0.0270	1.041	0.041	2.057	0.081	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.711	0.0280	1.067	0.042	2.134	0.084	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.737	0.0290	1.118	0.044	2.210	0.087	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.762	0.0300	1.143	0.045	2.286	0.090	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.792	0.0312	1.194	0.047	2.388	0.094	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.889	0.0350	1.346	0.053	2.667	0.105	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.016	0.0400	1.524	0.060	3.048	0.120	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.143	0.0450	1.727	0.068	3.429	0.135	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.194	0.0470	1.803	0.071	3.581	0.141	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.270	0.0500	1.905	0.075	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.397	0.0550	2.108	0.083	4.191	0.165	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
1.524	0.0600	2.286	0.090	4.572	0.180	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125

Optional geometries include: Flute lengths: stub, standard, or optional extended length (10–80% longer); Number of flutes: 2, 3, or 4; Helix angles: 25°, 30°, 50°; End configuration: hemisphere, flat; Units: metric and US customary.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Microdrilling.—Microdrilling is a more complex operation compared to turning or milling. Chip removal and effective supply of cutting fluid is easy with the latter, but not with microdrilling due to extremely limited space around a microdrill.

- Tool material. As with a micromill, a carbide microdrill should be sintered from fine grains, and ground to small cutting edge radius (*Tool Sharpness* on page 1158).
- Hole quality. Spindle runout, tool eccentricity, and wandering of a microdrill causes cyclic bending of the tool that leads to catastrophic failure. To control drill wandering, precision pre-drilling of a center hole can be tried, or the drilled surface must be ground to minimize deflection of a slender drill when starting on an irregular surface.
- High aspect ratio. Pecking is essential for microhole drilling since chips have to be extracted and cutting fluid must penetrate into a small and deep microhole. The pecking depth can be deep in the beginning, but it must be reduced when drilling deeper. Start with an initial pecking depth of 2 × drill diameter and gradually reduce it to 0.5 × diameter at a depth of 10 × diameter. Pecking depth and cycles can be calculated from:

$$\frac{P}{D} = \frac{1}{9}(-1.5R + 19.5) \quad \text{for} \quad R \le 10$$
$$\frac{P}{D} = 0.5 \quad \text{for} \quad R > 10 \qquad (19)$$

P = incremental pecking depth (mm, in)
D = drill diameter (mm, in)
R = drill aspect ratio = hole depth / drill diameter
See Example 14 for more on the the use of Equation (19).

- Apply micromist with a fixed nozzle pointing to the drill tip; making an angle of 60–70° with the tool axis is recommended (Fig. 34). In this way, the chip is blown away after a pecking cycle and the microdrill is re-lubricated before re-entering into the hole. Adequate ventilation and filtering are required to avoid inhaling of micromist.

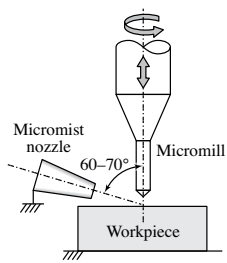


Fig. 34. Positioning of a Micromist Nozzle in Microdrilling.
The Nozzle and Workpiece should be Stationary.

Commercial microdrills are available for drill diameters of 100 µm (0.004 inch) and above (Table 10).

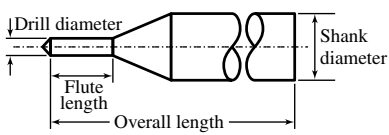


Fig. 35. Microdrill Nomenclature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Commercial Microdrills

Drill diameter		Standard flute length		Extended flute length		Overall length		Shank diameter	
(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)	(mm)	(inch)
0.102	0.0040	1.016	0.040	1.778	0.070	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.127	0.0050	1.524	0.060	2.286	0.090	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.150	0.0059	2.032	0.080	3.048	0.120	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.160	0.0063	2.032	0.080	3.048	0.120	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.170	0.0067	2.032	0.080	3.048	0.120	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.180	0.0071	2.540	0.100	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.191	0.0075	2.540	0.100	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.201	0.0079	2.540	0.100	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.211	0.0083	2.540	0.100	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.221	0.0087	2.540	0.100	3.810	0.150	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.231	0.0091	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.241	0.0095	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.249	0.0098	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.254	0.0100	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.267	0.0105	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.279	0.0110	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.292	0.0115	3.810	0.150	5.588	0.220	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.300	0.0118	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.305	0.0120	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.318	0.0125	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.330	0.0130	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.343	0.0135	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.351	0.0138	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.368	0.0145	5.715	0.225	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.396	0.0156	6.350	0.250	7.112	0.280	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.399	0.0157	6.350	0.250	7.493	0.295	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.406	0.0160	6.350	0.250	7.493	0.295	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.450	0.0177	6.350	0.250	7.493	0.295	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.457	0.0180	6.350	0.250	7.493	0.295	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.500	0.0197	6.604	0.260	7.874	0.310	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125
0.508	0.0200	6.604	0.260	7.874	0.310	38.1	1.5	3.175	0.125

Optional geometries include: Flute lengths: standard or extended length (10–80% longer); Number of flutes: 2, 3, or 4; Included angles: 118°, 130°; Helix angles: 25°, 30°, 50°; Units: metric and US customary.

Example 14: Select a microdrill and pecking cycles to drill Ø0.005 inch holes to 0.050 inch depth in titanium.

From Table 10, select the Ø0.005 inch drill with the 0.060 inch standard length. A drill with extended length of 0.090 inch is unnecessary because the extra length would decrease the drill stiffness by about 56% (see Example 2). Use micromist to lubricate the drill and blow the extracted chips away. The pecking cycle in Table 11 is recommended.

During the first pecking cycle, drill to 0.0100 inch depth then withdraw the tool. For the second pecking cycle, the incremental pecking depth P of 0.0092 inch is calculated from Equation (19). During the 2nd pecking cycle, the drill travels to a depth of 0.0192 inch, withdraws to remove chips, then continues down for pecking cycle #3. The incremental pecking in cycle #7 should be increased by 0.0003 inch so that the pecking cycle #8 will drill the hole to the required depth of 0.0500 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Pecking Cycle, Drill Dia. $D = 0.005$ inch

Pecking cycle #	Hole depth (inch)	Aspect ratio	P/D	Pecking depth, P (inch)
1	0.0100	2.00	1.83	0.0092
2	0.0192	3.83	1.53	0.0076
3	0.0268	5.36	1.27	0.0064
4	0.0332	6.63	1.06	0.0053
5	0.0385	7.70	0.88	0.0044
6	0.0429	8.58	0.74	0.0037
7	0.0466	9.32	0.61	0.0031
8	0.0497	9.93	0.51	0.0026
9	0.0522	10.44	0.43	0.0021

Microturning.—Product miniaturization and the demand for ultraprecision products drives the rapid development of micro/nano turning. This technology produces polished and high quality spherical and aspherical parts from metals, ceramics, semiconductors, and polymers that cannot be economically produced by traditional grinding, lapping, or polishing processes. Micro/nano turning also produces intricate shapes with low or no subsurface damage because it operates in the ductile-regime mode (see *Ductile Regime Micromachining* on page 1172).

Diamonds are commonly used for micro/nano turning. Polycrystalline diamond (PCD) tools are sintered from microsize diamond grains. PCD tools are less expensive but with limited capability due to large edge radius (few hundred nanometers) and lower edge strength due to attrition wear. Single crystalline diamond (SCD) tools are best for micro/nano turning because they:

- Have single crystalline structure that allows a sharp cutting edge as small as 10 nm
- Have the highest thermal conductivity among all engineering materials
- Retain high strength and hardness at high temperature
- Have high elastic and shear moduli to resist plastic deformation, and
- Have a low coefficient of friction

A diamond tool, however, is costly and brittle. A tool with zero or negative rake angle (i) improves its edge strength, and (ii) forms a hydrostatic compressive stress field in the material just in front of and below the tool, and therefore, minimizes crack initiation. Single crystal diamond typically have the (110) crystal plane as the rake face and are brazed onto a steel shanks of different shapes and sizes.

Not all materials can be successfully micro/nano turned with a diamond tool. Ferrous alloys and silicon carbide (SiC) are not suitable for diamond turning because of diffusion from the highly concentrated carbon in the diamond tool to a lower concentration zone of carbon in the workpiece materials. Other materials, although machinable with diamond, should be homogeneous and contain few if no impurities. Any hard inclusions might either damage a sharp diamond edge or be sheared off and smear against the machined surface. Fig. 36a shows hard beryllides in beryllium copper CA173 that plow and smear a mirror finish surface (Fig. 36b).

Table 12. Examples of Diamond Machinable Materials

Semiconductor	Metal	Ceramic	Plastics
Cadmium telluride	Aluminum alloys	Aluminum oxide	Acrylic
Gallium arsenide	Copper alloys	Zirconium oxide	Fluoroplastics
Germanium	Electroless nickel	Optical glasses	Nylon
Lithium niobate	Gold	Quartz	Polycarbonate
Silicon	Magnesium		Polymethylmethacrylate
Silicon nitride	Silver		Propylene
Zinc selenide	Zinc		Styrene
Zinc sulphide			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Micromist is required to lubricate and cool both the tool and the machined surface. The micromist nozzle should move with the tool while blowing the micro/nano chips away from the machined surface. Adequate ventilation and filtering of micromist are required to avoid environmental issues.

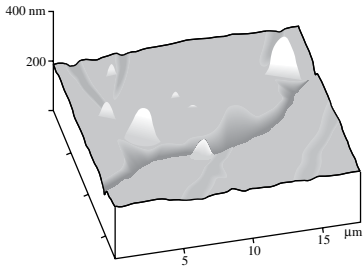


Fig. 36a. Beryllide Particles at Grain Boundaries of Diamond Turned Beryllium Copper.

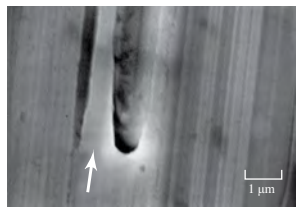


Fig. 36b. Deep Scratch on Machined Surface Caused by a Broken Beryllide. The Arrow Shows Tool Cutting Direction.

Speeds and Feeds.—In macromachining of engineering materials, the material grains are very small compared to the cutting tool dimensions and edge radius. Only bulk material properties such as material strength, hardness, and thermal conductivity affect machining performance. However, when the workpiece grain size is similar to the tool edge radius then the workpiece material will have more influence on micromachining performance (see *Workpiece Materials* on page 1170). Since plastically deformed materials are normally harder than the original material, machining feed must be (i) deeper than this hardened layer, and (ii) at least half of the tool edge radius (see *Microcutting Tools* on page 1157).

Example 15, Work Hardening of Titanium Alloy: Micromachining Ti 6Al 4V alloy with a carbide tool generates a work-hardening depth of about 1–2 µm (40–80 µinch). The microhardness increases 8–14% above the base material hardness to ~350 Vicker. Chip load for microdrilling or micromilling should be greater than this hardened zone depth.

Microturning Parameters: Criteria for selecting turning speed and feed are tool life and surface finish, and less concern on tool fracture since a turning tool is robust and rigid. Cutting speeds for single crystalline diamond are very high and depend mostly on the rigidity of the setup and the machine tool capability. Turning at 100–500 m/min (330–1650 ft/min) is common for most metals and metal matrix composites.

Selection of feed depends on the surface finish required because this is the main objective for using diamond for turning in the ductile regime mode. Models for a macromachined surface finish have been proposed which assume:

- The depth of cut is less than tool nose radius but more than cutting edge radius
- There is no built-up-edge on the tool, therefore, effect of cutting speed is negligible
- Workpiece of polycrystalline material with fine grains is used and grain orientation does not significantly affect surface finish of large areas
- Chips are completely removed without side-burr, and
- No error is introduced from imperfect machine kinematics (such as asynchronous spindle error motion).

The theoretical surface finish values are functions of feed and tool nose radius, and can be computed from Equations (20) and (21) and plotted as in Fig. 37a and Fig. 37b.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$R_t = R - \sqrt{R^2 - \frac{f^2}{4}} = R - R\sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{f}{2R}\right)^2} \approx 0.125\frac{f^2}{R} \quad (20)$$

$$R_a = k(f, R)\frac{f^2}{R} \approx 0.031553\frac{f^2}{R} \text{ for } \frac{f}{R} < 0.1 \quad (21)$$

where R_a = average surface finish (m, inch)
R_t = peak-to-valley surface finish (m, inch)
f = tool feed for each revolution (m, inch)
R = tool nose radius (m, inch)

Example 16, Turning Parameter Selection: Select tool and parameters to achieve R_a = 1 µm when turning 6061-T6 aluminum.

Solution: Use a single crystalline diamond tool with tool nose radius R = 1 mm (0.040 inch) and cutting edge radius of 80 nm (3 µin).

Depth of cut: Depth must be between the nose radius and edge radius, so choose 0.5 mm.

Cutting speed: Speed does not affect surface finish, so choose 303 m/min (1000 ft/min).

Feed: Referring to Fig. 37b, from point A (R = 1 mm), draw a vertical line to intersect with R_a = 1 µm curve at B. Draw a horizontal line at B and intersect vertical axis at C, and read the feed = 0.18 mm/rev (0.007 in/rev). Alternatively, Equation (21) can be rearranged and used to compute the feed distance for each revolution as follows:

$$f = \sqrt{\frac{R_a R}{0.031553}} = \sqrt{\frac{1\,\mu\text{m} \times 1\,\text{mm}}{0.031553} \frac{1\,\text{mm}}{1000\,\mu\text{m}}} = 0.178\,\text{mm}$$

Effect of Tool Nose Radius and Tool Feed on Surface Finish

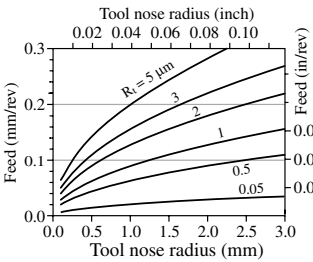


Fig. 37a. Peak-to-Valley Surface Finish R_t.

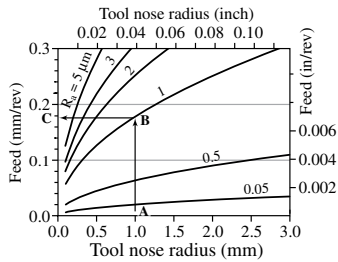


Fig. 37b. Average Surface Finish R_a.

Microdrilling/Milling Parameters: The combination of spindle runout and radial cutting force can deflect and break a tool. Finite element analysis (FEA) of a micromill shows that the critical area is the junction between the cylindrical flute and solid conical shank. Using 4.7 GPa and 93 GPa as the average values of measured flexural strength and elastic modulus of carbide, the analysis indicates that a Ø1 mm carbide micromill will break if deflected more than 34 percent of its diameter.

Fig. 38 shows crash-test and calculated data for catastrophic tool failure when micromilling 316L stainless steel. The radial depth of cut and chip load are normalized to the tool diameter for ease of comparison. The data points form a line that divides the plane into two regions: tool failure and tool safe areas. A tool will break if milling parameters are chosen to be above this threshold line. Therefore, all milling parameters should be conservatively selected below the threshold for a production run.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

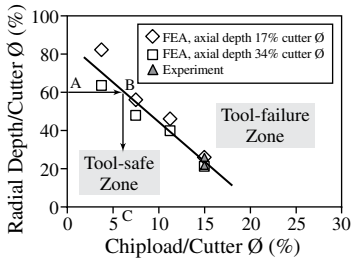


Fig. 38. Catastrophic Failure Threshold of Micro-Milling Tools as Percentage of Tool Diameter. Dry milling 316L stainless steel, Ø1 mm tool diameter, 2 flutes, 0.348 mm axial depth of cut.

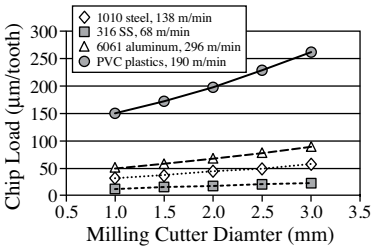


Fig. 39. Recommended Chip Load as a Function of Carbide Cutter Size for Various Materials.

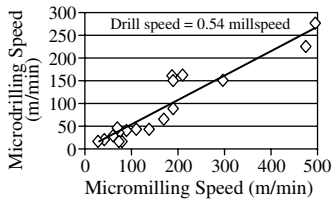


Fig. 40. Relationship of Drilling versus Milling Speed Using Carbide Tools on Different Engineering Materials.

Table 13a and Table 13b tabulate starting speeds and feeds for uncoated micrograin carbide micromilling and microdrilling tools, in US customary and metric units respectively. Drilling speed is normally reduced to approximately 50 percent of the milling speed of the same material, due to the high aspect ratio and difficulty of chip evacuation in microdrilling (Fig. 40).

Example 17, Micromill and Microdrill Selection: Select parameters to micromill and microdrill 316L stainless steel using an uncoated carbide Ø1 mm, 2 flute microtool.

Micromilling: Speed selection depends on tool life and cutting fluid. Table 13b suggests 68 m/min for micromilling. Both radial and axial depth of cut affect selection of feed. Select 35% axial depth (0.35 × tool diameter = 0.35 mm), and 60% radial depth (0.60 × tool diameter = 0.6 mm). From point A (60%) on the vertical axis of Fig. 38, draw a horizontal line that intersects the threshold line at point B, then find point C on the horizontal axis. The chip load that causes immediate tool fracture would be slightly more than 5% of tool diameter (50 µm/tooth). A conservative chip load would be 13 µm/tooth as indicated in Table 13b.

Microdrilling: Table 13b suggests 28 m/min speed and 13 µm/tooth feed for drilling. Reduction of drilling speed to only 50–60% (59% in this example) of milling speed is necessary to facilitate chip removal in microdrilling.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13a. Speeds and Feeds for Micro Milling/Drilling with Uncoated Carbide Tools (US Customary Units)

Materials	Examples	Vicker micro-hardness	Mill speed (ft/min)	Drill speed (ft/min)	Chip load (μin/tooth), D = drill or mill diameter				
					$D <$ 0.04 in.	$D <$ 0.06 in.	$D <$ 0.08 in.	$D <$ 0.10 in.	$D <$ 0.12 in.
Steel	12L14	< 120	558	213	1400	1700	2000	2300	2600
	1010	< 265	453	141	1300	1500	1700	2000	2300
	4063	< 208	361	141	1300	1500	1700	2000	2300
Stainless steel	409, 410, 446	< 318	246	125	600	600	800	900	1000
	304, 316, 316L	< 265	223	92	500	600	700	800	900
	17-7 PH	< 318	230	148	400	450	600	700	900
Nickel	Pure nickel		197	92	500	600	700	800	900
	Monel 400		138	66	500	600	700	800	900
	Inconel 718		98	56	300	300	350	400	500
Titanium	Pure titanium		295	131	650	700	850	950	1100
	Cast titanium		266	52	650	700	850	950	1100
	Ti 6Al 4V		243	52	650	700	850	950	1100
Aluminum	1100		1624	902	1500	1700	1950	2250	2550
	A356		1558	738	2100	2350	2700	3150	3600
	6061		971	492	2100	2350	2700	3150	3600
Copper	C17200 (soft Be-Cu)		617	531	1299	1457	1693	1969	2244
	C85400 (annealed brass)		689	531	1772	2047	2362	2677	3071
	C95400 (Al bronze)		623	289	1457	1732	1969	2244	2598
Plastics	ABS, PVC thermoplastics		623	492	5900	6800	7800	9000	10300

Table 13b. Speeds and Feeds for Micro Milling/Drilling with Uncoated Carbide Tools (SI Metric Units)

Materials	Examples	Vicker micro-hardness	Mill speed (m/min)	Drill speed (m/min)	Chip load (μm/tooth), D = drill or mill diameter				
					$D <$ 1.0 mm	$D <$ 1.5 mm	$D <$ 2.0 mm	$D <$ 2.5 mm	$D <$ 3.0 mm
Steel	12L14	< 120	170	65	38	43	50	57	65
	1010	< 265	138	43	33	38	43	51	58
	4063	< 208	110	43	33	38	43	51	58
Stainless steel	409, 410, 446	< 318	75	38	15	15	20	23	25
	304, 316, 316L	< 265	68	28	13	15	18	20	23
	17-7 PH	< 318	70	45	10	11	15	18	23
Nickel	Pure nickel		60	28	13	15	18	20	23
	Monel 400		42	20	13	15	18	20	23
	Inconel 718		30	17	8	8	9	10	13
Titanium	Pure titanium		90	40	17	18	22	24	28
	Cast titanium		81	16	17	18	22	24	28
	Ti 6Al 4V		74	16	17	18	22	24	28
Aluminum	1100		495	275	38	43	50	57	65
	A356		475	225	53	60	69	80	91
	6061		296	150	53	60	69	80	91
Copper	C17200 (soft Be-Cu)		188	162	33	37	43	50	57
	C85400 (annealed brass)		210	162	45	52	60	68	78
	C95400 Al bronze		190	88	37	44	50	57	66
Plastics	ABS, PVC thermoplastics		190	150	150	173	198	229	262

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MACHINING ECONOMETRICS

Tool Wear and Tool Life Relationships

Tool life is defined as the cutting time to reach a predetermined wear limit, called the *tool wear criterion*. The size of tool wear criterion depends on the grade used, usually a tougher grade can be used at bigger flank wear. For finishing operations, where close tolerances are required, the wear criterion is relatively small. Other alternative wear criteria are a predetermined value of the surface roughness, or a given depth of the crater which develops on the rake face of the tool. The most appropriate wear criteria depends on cutting geometry, grade, and materials.

Tool life is determined by assessing the time—the tool life—at which a given predetermined flank wear is reached, 0.25, 0.4, 0.6, 0.8 mm, etc. Fig. 1 depicts how flank wear varies with cutting time (approximately straight lines in a semi-logarithmic graph) for three combinations of cutting speeds and feeds. Alternatively, these curves may represent how variations of machinability impact on tool life, when cutting speed and feed are constant. All tool wear curves will sooner or later bend upwards abruptly and the cutting edge will break, i.e., catastrophic failure as indicated by the white arrows in Fig. 1.

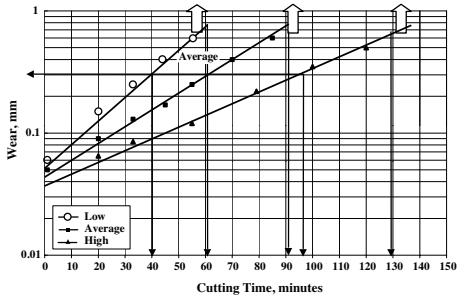


Fig. 1. Flank Wear as a Function of Cutting Time

The maximum deviation from the average tool life 60 minutes in Fig. 1 is assumed to range between 40 and 95 minutes, i.e., –33% and +58% variation. The positive deviation from the average (longer than expected tool life) is not important, but the negative one (shorter life) is, as the edge may break before the scheduled tool change after 60 minutes, when the flank wear is 0.6 mm.

It is therefore important to set the wear criterion at a safe level such that tool failures due to "normal" wear become negligible. This is the way machinability variations are mastered.

Equivalent Chip Thickness (*ECT*).—*ECT* combines the four basic turning variables, depth of cut, lead angle, nose radius and feed per revolution into one basic parameter. For all other metal cutting operations such as drilling, milling and grinding, additional variables such as number of teeth, width of cut, and cutter diameter are included in the parameter *ECT*. In turning, milling, and drilling, according to the *ECT* principle, when the product of feed times depth of cut is constant the tool life is constant no matter how the depth of cut or feed is selected, provided that the cutting speed and cutting edge length are maintained constant. By replacing the geometric parameters with *ECT*, the number of tool life tests to evaluate cutting parameters can be reduced considerably, by a factor of 4 in turning, and in milling by a factor of 7 because radial depth of cut, cutter diameter and number of teeth are additional parameters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The introduction of the *ECT* concept constitutes a major simplification when predicting tool life and calculating cutting forces, torque, and power. *ECT* was first presented in 1931 by Professor R. Woxen, who both theoretically and experimentally proved that *ECT* is a basic metal cutting parameter for high-speed cutting tools. Dr. Colding later proved that the concept also holds for carbide tools, and extended the calculation of *ECT* to be valid for cutting conditions when the depth of cut is smaller than the tool nose radius, or for round inserts. Colding later extended the concept to all other metal cutting operations, including the grinding process.

The definition of *ECT* is:

$$ECT = \frac{Area}{CEL} \text{ (mm or inch)}$$

where A = cross sectional area of cut (approximately = feed × depth of cut), (mm^2 or inch^2)

CEL = cutting edge length (tool contact rubbing length), (mm or inch), see Fig. 1 on page 1092.

An exact value of A is obtained by the product of *ECT* and *CEL*. In turning, milling, and drilling, *ECT* varies between 0.05 and 1 mm, and is always less than the feed/rev or feed/tooth; its value is usually about 0.7 to 0.9 times the feed.

Example 1: For a feed of 0.8 mm/rev, depth of cut $a = 3$ mm, and cutting edge length $CEL = 4$ mm, the value of *ECT* is approximately $ECT = 0.8 \times 3 \div 4 = 0.6$ mm.

The product of *ECT*, *CEL*, and cutting speed V (m/min or ft/min) equals the metal removal rate *MRR*, measured in terms of the volume of chips removed per minute:

$$MRR = 1000V \times Area = 1000V \times ECT \times CEL \text{ mm}^3/\text{min}$$
$$= V \times Area \text{ cm}^3/\text{min or inch}^3/\text{min}$$

The specific metal removal rate *SMRR* is the metal removal rate per mm cutting edge length *CEL*, thus:

$$SMRR = 1000V \times ECT \text{ mm}^3/\text{min}/\text{mm}$$
$$\text{and } MRR = V \times ECT \text{ cm}^3/\text{min}/\text{mm or inch}^3/\text{min}/\text{inch}$$

Example 2: Using the Example 1 data and a cutting speed of $V = 250$ m/min, the specific metal removal rate becomes $SMRR = 0.6 \times 250 = 150$ (cm^3/min/mm).

ECT in Grinding: In grinding *ECT* is defined as in the other metal cutting processes, and is approximately equal to $ECT = Vw \times ar \div V$, where Vw is the work speed, ar is the depth of cut, and $A = Vw \times ar$. Wheel life is constant no matter how depth ar, or work speed Vw, is selected at V = constant (usually the influence of grinding contact width can be neglected). This translates into the same wheel life as long as the specific metal removal rate is constant, thus:

$$SMRR = 1000Vw \times ar \text{ mm}^3/\text{min}/\text{mm}$$

In grinding, *ECT* is much smaller than in the other cutting processes, ranging from about 0.0001 to 0.001 mm (0.000004 to 0.00004 inch). The grinding process is described in a separate chapter *GRINDING FEEDS AND SPEEDS* starting on page 1261.

Tool Life Relationships.—Plotting the cutting times to reach predetermined values of wear typically results in curves similar to those shown in Fig. 2 (cutting time versus cutting speed at constant feed per tooth) and Fig. 3 (cutting time versus feed per tooth at constant cutting speed). These tests were run in 1993 with mixed ceramics turn-milling 82 RC (Rockwell C scale) hard steel at the Technische Hochschule Darmstadt.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

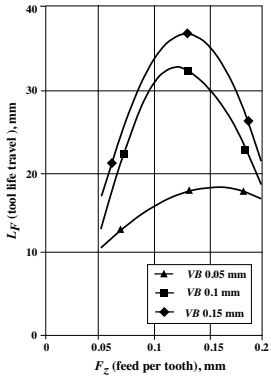


Fig. 2. Influence of Feed per Tooth on Cutting Time

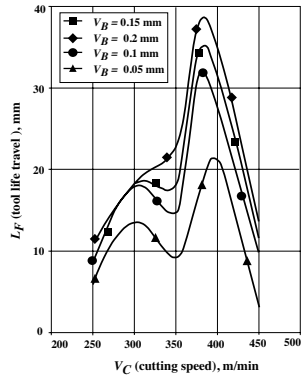


Fig. 3. Influence of Cutting Speed on Tool Life

Tool life has a maximum value at a particular setting of speed and feed. Economic and productive cutting speeds always occur on the right side of the curves in Fig. 2 and Fig. 4, which are called Taylor curves, represented by the so called Taylor's equation.

The variation of tool life with speed and feed constitute complicated relationships, illustrated in Fig. 6a, Fig. 6b, and Fig. 6c.

Taylor's Equation.—Taylor's equation is the most commonly used relationship between tool life T, and cutting speed V. It constitutes a straight line in a log-log plot, one line for each feed, nose radius, lead angle, or depth of cut, mathematically represented by:

$$V \times T^n = \mathrm{C} \tag{1a}$$

where $n =$ slope of the line

C = constant equal to the cutting speed for $T = 1$ minute

By transforming the equation to logarithmic axes, the Taylor lines become straight lines with slope = n. The constant C is the cutting speed on the horizontal (V) axis at tool life $T = 1$ minute, expressed as follows

$$\ln V + n \times \ln T = \ln \mathrm{C} \tag{1b}$$

For different values of feed or ECT, log-log plots of Equation (1a) form approximately straight lines in which the slope decreases slightly with a larger value of feed or ECT. In practice, the Taylor lines are usually drawn parallel to each other, i.e., the slope n is assumed to be constant.

Fig. 4 illustrates the Taylor equation, tool life T versus cutting speed V, plotted in log-log coordinates, for four values of $ECT = 0.1, 0.25, 0.5$ and 0.7 mm.

In Fig. 4, starting from the right, each T-V line forms a generally straight line that bends off and reaches its maximum tool life, then drops off with decreasing speed (see also Fig. 2 and Fig. 3. When operating at short tool-lives, approximately when T is less than 5 minutes, each line bends a little so that the cutting speed for 1 minute life becomes less than the value calculated by constant C.

The Taylor equation is a very good approximation of the right hand side of the real tool life curve (slightly bent). The portion of the curve to the left of the maximum tool life gives shorter and shorter tool lives when decreasing the cutting speed starting from the point of maximum tool life. Operating at the maximum point of maximum tool life, or to the left of it, causes poor surface finish, high cutting forces, and sometimes vibrations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

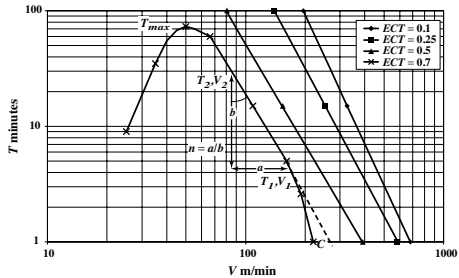


Fig. 4. Definition of Slope *n* and Constant C in Taylor's Equation

Evaluation of Slope *n*, and Constant C.—When evaluating the value of the Taylor slope based on wear tests, care must be taken in selecting the tool life range over which the slope is measured, as the lines are slightly curved.

The slope *n* can be found in three ways:

- Calculate *n* from the formula $n = (\ln C - \ln V)/\ln T$, reading the values of C and *V* for any value of *T* in the graph.
- Alternatively, using two points on the line, (V_1, T_1) and (V_2, T_2), calculate *n* using the relationship $V_1 \times T_1^{\,n} = V_2 \times T_2^{\,n}$. Then, solving for *n*,

$$n = \frac{\ln (V_1 / V_2)}{\ln (T_2 / T_1)}$$

- Graphically, *n* may be determined from the graph by measuring distances *a* and *b* using a mm scale, and *n* is the ratio of *a* and *b*, thus, $n = a/b$

Example: Using Fig. 4 and a given value of *ECT*= 0.7 mm, calculate the slope and constant of the Taylor line.

On the Taylor line for *ECT*= 0.7, locate points corresponding to tool-lives T_1 = 15 minutes and T_2 = 60 minutes. Read off the associated cutting speeds as, approximately, V_1 = 110 m/min and V_2 = 65 m/min.

The slope *n* is then found to be $n = \ln (110/65)/\ln (60/15) = 0.38$

The constant C can be then determined using the Taylor equation and either point (T_1, V_1) or point (T_2, V_2), with equivalent results, as follows:

$$C = V \times T^n = 110 \times 15^{0.38} = 65 \times 60^{0.38} = 308 \text{ m/min (1027 fpm)}$$

The Generalized Taylor Equation.—The above calculated slope and constant C define tool life at one particular value of feed *f*, depth of cut *a*, lead angle *LA*, nose radius *r*, and other relevant factors.

The generalized Taylor equation includes these parameters and is written

$$T^n = A \times f^m \times a^p \times LA^q \times r^s \qquad (2)$$

where *A* = area; and, *n*, *m*, *p*, *q*, and *s* = constants.

There are two problems with the generalized equation: 1) a great number of tests have to be run in order to establish the constants *n*, *m*, *p*, *q*, *s*, etc.; and 2) the accuracy is not very good because Equation (2) yields straight lines when plotted versus *f*, *a*, *LA*, and *r*, when in reality, they are parabolic curves.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The Generalized Taylor Equation Using Equivalent Chip Thickness (ECT): Due to the compression of the aforementioned geometrical variables (f, a, LA, r, etc.) into *ECT*, Equation (2) can now be rewritten:

$$V \times T^n = A \times ECT^m \tag{3}$$

Experimental data confirm that Equation (3) holds, approximately, within the range of the test data, but as soon as the equation is extended beyond the test results, the error can become very great because the *V-ECT* curves are represented as straight lines by Equation (3) and the real curves have a parabolic shape.

The Colding Tool Life Relationship.—This relationship contains 5 constants, H, K, L, M, and N_0, which attain different values depending on tool grade, work material, and the type of operation, such as longitudinal turning versus grooving, face milling versus end milling, etc.

This tool life relationship is proven to describe, with reasonable accuracy, how tool life varies with *ECT* and cutting speed for any metal cutting and grinding operation. It is expressed mathematically as follows either as a generalized Taylor equation (4a), or, in logarithmic coordinates (4b):

$$V \times T^{(N_0 - L \times \ln ECT)} \times ECT^{\left(-\frac{H}{2M} + \frac{\ln ECT}{4M}\right)} = e^{\left(K - \frac{H}{4M}\right)} \tag{4a}$$

$$y = K - \frac{x - H}{4M} - z(N_0 - L_x) \tag{4b}$$

where $x = \ln ECT \qquad y = \ln V \qquad z = \ln T$

$M =$ vertical distance between maximum point of cutting speed (ECT_H, V_H) for $T = 1$ minute and speed V_G at point (ECT_G, V_G), as shown in Fig. 5.

$2M =$ horizontal distance between point (ECT_H, V_G) and point (V_G, ECT_G)

H and $K =$ logarithms of coordinates of maximum speed point (ECT_H, V_H) at tool life $T =$ 1 minute, thus $H = \ln(ECT_H)$ and $K = \ln(V_H)$

N_0 and $L =$ variation of Taylor slope n with *ECT*: $n = N_0 - L \times \ln(ECT)$

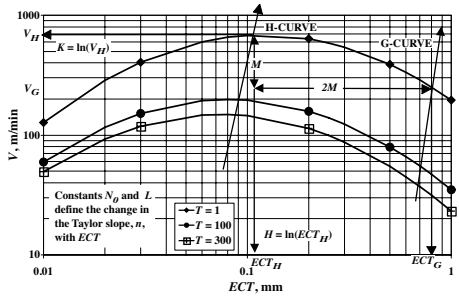


Fig. 5. Definitions of the Constants H, K, L, M, and N_0 for Tool Life Equation in the *V-ECT* Plane with Tool Life Constant

The constants L and N_0 are determined from the slopes n_1 and n_2 of two Taylor lines at ECT_1 and ECT_2, and the constant M from three *V-ECT* values at any constant tool life. Constants H and K are then solved using the tool life equation with the above-calculated values of L, N_0 and M.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The *G*- and *H*-Curves.—The *G*-curve defines the longest possible tool life for any given metal removal rate, *MRR*, or specific metal removal rate, *SMRR*. It also defines the point where the total machining cost is minimum, after the economic tool life T_E, or optimal tool life T_O, has been calculated, see *Optimization Models, Economic Tool Life when Feed is Constant* starting on page 1213.

The tool life relationship is depicted in the three planes: *T*-*V*, where *ECT* is the plotted parameter (the Taylor plane); *T*-*ECT*, where *V* is plotted; and, *V*-*ECT*, where *T* is a parameter. The latter plane is the most useful because the optimal cutting conditions are more readily understood when viewing in the *V*-*ECT* plane. Fig. 6a, Fig. 6b, and Fig. 6c show how the tool life curves look in these three planes in log-log coordinates.

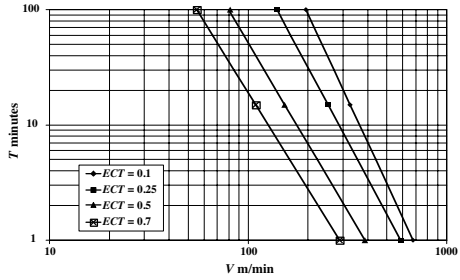


Fig. 6a. Tool Life versus Cutting Speed *T*-*V*, *ECT* Plotted

Fig. 6a shows the Taylor lines, and Fig. 6b illustrates how tool life varies with *ECT* at different values of cutting speed, and shows the *H*-curve. Fig. 6c illustrates how cutting speed varies with *ECT* at different values of tool life. The *H*- and *G*-curves are also drawn in Fig. 6c.

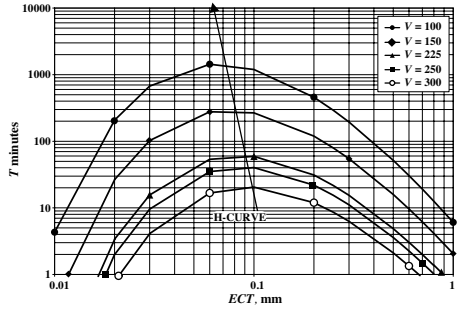


Fig. 6b. Tool Life versus *ECT*, *T*-*ECT*, Cutting Speed Plotted

A simple and practical method to ascertain that machining is not done to the left of the *H*-curve is to examine the chips. When *ECT* is too small, about 0.03-0.05 mm, the chips tend to become irregular and show up more or less as dust.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

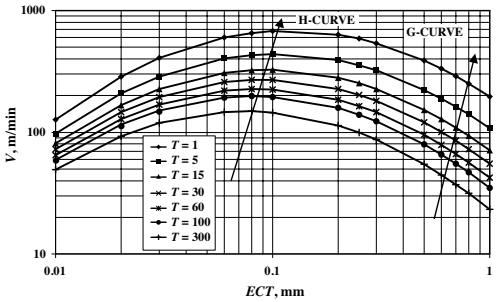


Fig. 6c. Cutting Speed versus *ECT*, *V-ECT*, Tool Life Plotted

The *V-ECT-T* Graph and the Tool Life Envelope.—The tool life envelope, in Fig. 7, is an area laid over the *V-ECT-T* graph, bounded by the points A, B, C, D, and E, within which successful cutting can be realized. The *H*- and *G*-curves represent two borders, lines $\overline{AE}$ and $\overline{BC}$. The border curve, line $\overline{AB}$, shows a lower limit of tool life, $T_{MIN} = 5$ minutes, and border curve, line $\overline{DE}$, represents a maximum tool life, $T_{MAX} = 300$ minutes.

T_{MIN} is usually 5 minutes due to the fact that tool life versus cutting speed does not follow a straight line for short tool-lives; it decreases sharply towards one minute tool life. T_{MAX} varies with tool grade, material, speed and *ECT* from 300 minutes for some carbide tools to 10,000 minutes for diamond tools or diamond grinding wheels, although systematic studies of maximum tool-lives have not been conducted.

Sometimes the metal cutting system cannot utilize the maximum values of the *V-ECT-T* envelope, that is, cutting at optimum *V-ECT* values along the *G*-curve, due to machine power or fixture constraints, or vibrations. Maximum *ECT* values, ECT_{MAX}, are related to the strength of the tool material and the tool geometry, and depend on the tool grade and material selection, and require a relatively large nose radius.

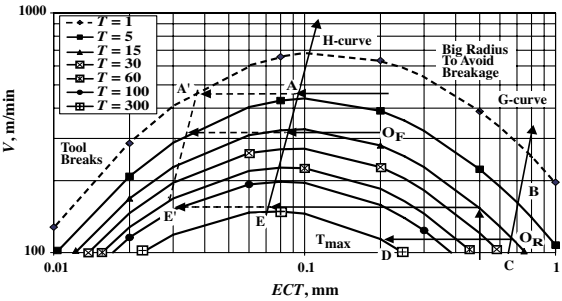


Fig. 7. Cutting Speed versus *ECT*, *V-ECT*, Tool Life Plotted

Minimum *ECT* values, ECT_{MIN}, are defined by the conditions at which surface finish suddenly deteriorates and the cutting edge begins rubbing rather than cutting. These conditions begin left of the *H*-curve, and are often accompanied by vibrations and built-up edges on the tool. If feed or *ECT* is reduced still further, excessive tool wear with sparks and tool breakage, or melting of the edge occurs. For this reason, values of *ECT* lower

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

than approximately 0.03 mm should not be allowed. In Fig. 7, the ECT_{MIN} boundary is indicated by contour line $\overline{A'E'}$.

In milling, the minimum feed/tooth depends on the ratio *ar*/*D*, of radial depth of cut *ar*, and cutter diameter *D*. For small *ar*/*D* ratios, the chip thickness becomes so small that it is necessary to compensate by increasing the feed/tooth. See *High-Speed Machining Econometrics* starting on page 1225 for more on this topic.

Fig. 7 demonstrates, in principle, minimum cost conditions for roughing at point $\mathbf{O_R}$, and for finishing at point $\mathbf{O_F}$, where surface finish or tolerances have set a limit. Maintaining the speed at $\mathbf{O_R}$, 125 m/min, and decreasing feed reaches a maximum tool life = 300 minutes at *ECT* = 0.2, and a further decrease of feed will result in shorter lives.

Similarly, starting at point X ($V = 150, ECT = 0.5, T = 15$) and reducing feed, the *H*-curve will be reached at point E ($ECT = 0.075, T = 300$). Continuing to the left, tool life will decrease and serious troubles occur at point E' ($ECT = 0.03$).

Starting at point $\mathbf{O_F}$ ($V = 300, ECT = 0.2, T = 15$) and reducing feed, the *H*-curve will be reached at point E ($ECT = 0.08, T = 15$). Continuing to the left, life will decrease and serious troubles occur at *ECT* = 0.03.

Starting at point X ($V = 400, ECT = 0.2, T = 5$) and reducing feed, the *H*-curve will be reached at point E ($ECT = 0.09, T = 7$). Continuing to the left, life will decrease and serious troubles occur at point A' ($ECT = 0.03$), where $T = 1$ minute.

Cutting Forces and Chip Flow Angle.—There are three cutting forces, illustrated in Fig. 8, that are associated with the cutting edge with its nose radius *r*, depth of cut *a*, lead angle *LA*, and feed per revolution *f*, or in milling feed per tooth f_z. There is one drawing for roughing and one for finishing operations.

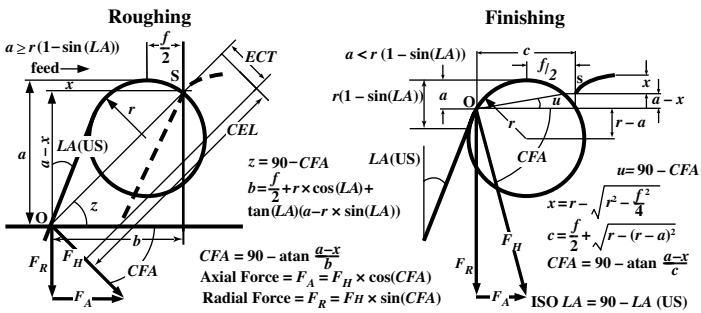


Fig. 8. Definitions of Equivalent Chip Thickness, *ECT*, and Chip Flow Angle, *CFA*.

The cutting force F_C, or tangential force, is perpendicular to the paper plane. The other two forces are the feed or axial force F_A, and the radial force F_R directed towards the work piece. The resultant of F_A and F_R is called F_H. When finishing, F_R is bigger than F_A, while in roughing F_A is usually bigger than F_R. The direction of F_H, measured by the chip flow angle *CFA*, is perpendicular to the rectangle formed by the cutting edge length *CEL* and *ECT* (the product of *ECT* and CEL constitutes the cross sectional area of cut, *A*). The important task of determining the direction of F_H, and calculation of F_A and F_R, are shown in the formulas given in the Fig. 8.

The method for calculating the magnitudes of F_H, F_A, and F_R is described in the following. The first thing is to determine the value of the cutting force F_C. Approximate formulas to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

calculate the tangential cutting force, torque and required machining power are found in the section *ESTIMATING SPEEDS AND MACHINING POWER* starting on page 1143.

Specific Cutting Force, Kc: The specific cutting force, or the specific energy to cut, Kc, is defined as the ratio between the cutting force F_C and the chip cross-sectional area A. Thus, $Kc = F_C \div A$ N/mm^2.

The value of Kc decreases when ECT increases, and when the cutting speed V increases. Usually, Kc is written in terms of its value at $ECT = 1$, called Kc_1, and neglecting the effect of cutting speed, thus $Kc = Kc_1 \times ECT^B$, where B = slope in log-log coordinates.

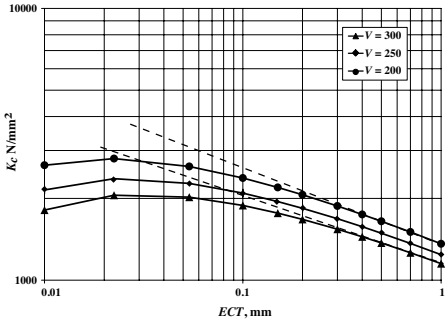


Fig. 9. Kc versus ECT, Cutting Speed Plotted

A more accurate relationship is illustrated in Fig. 9, where Kc is plotted versus ECT at three different cutting speeds. In Fig. 9, the two dashed lines represent the aforementioned equation, which each have different slopes, B. For the middle value of cutting speed, Kc varies with ECT from about 1900 to 1300 N/mm^2 when ECT increases from 0.1 to 0.7 mm. Generally the speed effect on the magnitude of Kc is approximately 5 to 15 percent when using economic speeds.

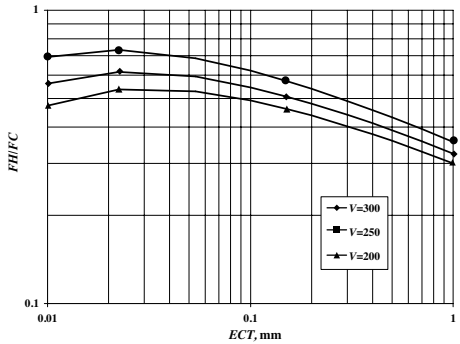


Fig. 10. F_H/F_C versus ECT, Cutting Speed Plotted

Determination of Axial, F_A, and Radial, F_R, Forces: This is done by first determining the resultant force F_H and then calculating F_A and F_R using the Fig. 8 formulas. F_H is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

derived from the ratio F_H/F_C, which varies with *ECT* and speed in a fashion similar to *Kc*. Fig. 10 shows how this relationship may vary.

As seen in Fig. 10, F_H/F_C is in the range 0.3 to 0.6 when *ECT* varies from 0.1 to 1 mm, and speed varies from 200 to 250 m/min using modern insert designs and grades. Hence, using reasonable large feeds F_H/F_C is around 0.3–0.4 and when finishing about 0.5–0.6.

Example: Determine F_A and F_R, based on the chip flow angle *CFA* and the cutting force F_C, in turning.

Using a value of $Kc = 1500$ N/mm^2 for roughing, when $ECT = 0.4$, and the cutting edge length $CEL = 5$ mm, first calculate the area $A = 0.4 \times 5 = 2$ mm^2. Then, determine the cutting force $F_C = 2 \times 1500 = 3000$ N, and an approximate value of $F_H = 0.5 \times 3000 = 1500$ N.

Using a value of $Kc = 1700$ N/mm^2 for finishing, when $ECT = 0.2$, and the cutting edge length $CEL = 2$ mm, calculate the area $A = 0.2 \times 2 = 0.4$ mm^2. The cutting force $F_C = 0.4 \times 1700 = 680$ N and an approximate value of $F_H = 0.35 \times 680 = 238$ N.

Fig. 8 can be used to estimate *CFA* for rough and finish turning. When the lead angle *LA* is 15 degrees and the nose radius is relatively large, an estimated value of the chip flow angle becomes about 30 degrees when roughing, and about 60 degrees in finishing. Using the formulas for F_A and F_R relative to F_H gives:

Roughing:

$$F_A = F_H \times \cos(CFA) = 1500 \times \cos 30 = 1299 \text{ N}$$

$$F_R = F_H \times \sin(CFA) = 1500 \times \sin 30 = 750 \text{ N}$$

Finishing:

$$F_A = F_H \times \cos(CFA) = 238 \times \cos 60 = 119 \text{ N}$$

$$F_R = F_H \times \sin(CFA) = 238 \times \sin 60 = 206 \text{ N}$$

The force ratio F_H/F_C also varies with the tool rake angle and increases with negative rakes. In grinding, F_H is much larger than the grinding cutting force F_C; generally F_H/F_C is approximately 2 to 4, because grinding grits have negative rakes of the order –35 to –45 degrees.

Forces and Tool Life.—Forces and tool life are closely linked. The ratio F_H/F_C is of particular interest because of the unique relationship of F_H/F_C with tool life.

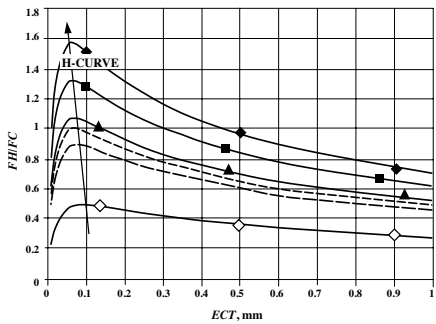


Fig. 11a. F_H/F_C versus *ECT*

The results of extensive tests at Ford Motor Company are shown in Fig. 11a and Fig. 11b, where F_H/F_C and tool life *T* are plotted versus *ECT* at different values of cutting speed *V*. For any constant speed, tool life has a maximum at approximately the same values of *ECT* as has the function F_H/F_C.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

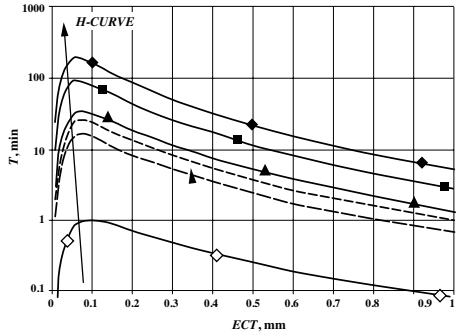


Fig. 11b. Tool Life versus *ECT*

The Force Relationship: Similar tests performed elsewhere confirm that the F_H/F_C function can be determined using the 5 tool life constants (H, K, M, L, N_0) introduced previously, and a new constant (L_F/L).

$$\ln\left(\frac{1}{a}\cdot\frac{F_H}{F_C}\right)=\frac{K-y-\dfrac{(x-H)^2}{4M}}{\dfrac{L_F}{L}(N_0-Lx)} \tag{5}$$

The constant a depends on the rake angle; in turning, a is approximately 0.25 to 0.5 and L_F/L is 10 to 20. F_C attains it maximum values versus *ECT* along the H-curve, when the tool life equation has maxima, and the relationships in the three force ratio planes look very similar to the tool life functions shown in the tool life planes in Fig. 6a, Fig. 6b, and Fig. 6c.

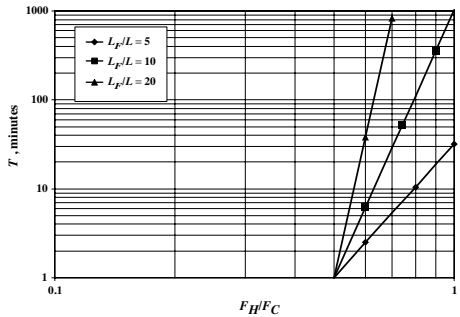


Fig. 12. Tool Life versus F_H/F_C

Tool life varies with F_H/F_C with a simple formula according to Equation (5) as follows:

$$T=\left(\frac{F_H}{aF_C}\right)^{\frac{L_F}{L}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where L is the constant in the tool life equation, Equation (4a) or (4b), and L_F is the corresponding constant in the force ratio equation, Equation (5). In Fig. 12 this function is plotted for $a = 0.5$ and for $L_F/L = 5, 10,$ and 20.

Accurate calculations of aforementioned relationships require elaborate laboratory tests, or better, the design of a special test and follow-up program for parts running in the ordinary production. A software machining program, such as Colding International Corp. *COMP* program can be used to generate the values of all three forces, torque, and power requirements both for sharp and worn tools.

Surface Finish and Tool Life.—It is well known that the surface finish in turning decreases with a bigger tool nose radius and increases with feed; usually it is assumed that the R_a (or Ra, for roughness average) value increases with the square of the feed per revolution, and decreases inversely with increasing size of the nose radius. This formula, derived from simple geometry, gives rise to great errors. In reality, the relationship is more complicated because the tool geometry must be taken into account, and the work material and the cutting conditions also have a significant influence.

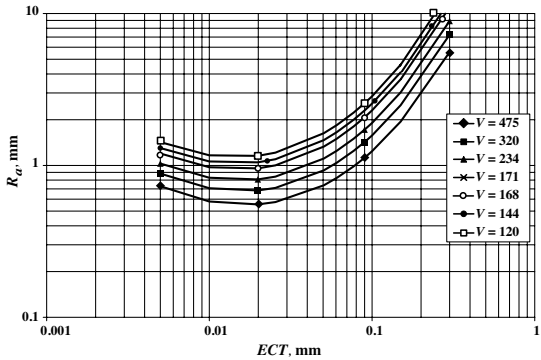


Fig. 13. R_a versus *ECT*, Nose Radius r Constant

Fig. 13 shows surface finish R_a versus *ECT* at various cutting speeds for turning cast iron with carbide tools and a nose radius $r = 1.2$ mm. Increasing the cutting speed leads to a smaller R_a value.

Fig. 14 shows how the finish improves when the tool nose radius, r, increases at a constant cutting speed (168 m/min) in cutting nodular cast iron.

In Fig. 15, R_a is plotted versus *ECT* with cutting speed V for turning a 4310 steel with carbide tools, for a nose radius $r = 1.2$ mm, illustrating that increasing the speed also leads to a smaller R_a value for steel machining.

A simple rule of thumb for the effect of increasing nose radius r on decreasing surface finish R_a, regardless of the ranges of *ECT* or speeds used, albeit within common practical values, is as follows. In finishing,

$$\frac{R_{a1}}{R_{a2}} = \left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)^{0.5} \tag{6}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

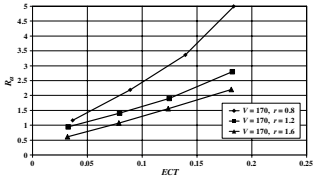


Fig. 14. R_a versus *ECT*, Cutting Speed Constant, Nose Radius *r* Varies

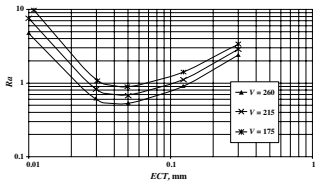


Fig. 15. R_a versus *ECT*, Cutting Speed Varies, Nose Radius *r* Constant

In roughing, multiply the finishing values found using Equation (6) by 1.5, thus, $R_{a(\text{Rough})} = 1.5 \times R_{a(\text{Finish})}$ for each *ECT* and speed.

Example 1: Find the decrease in surface roughness resulting from a tool nose radius change from $r = 0.8$ mm to $r = 1.6$ mm in finishing. Also, find the comparable effect in roughing.

For finishing, using $r_2 = 1.6$ and $r_1 = 0.8$, $R_{a1}/R_{a2} = (1.6/0.8)^{0.5} = 1.414$, thus, the surface roughness using the larger tool radius is $R_{a2} = R_{a1} \div 1.414 = 0.7R_{a1}$

In roughing, at the same *ECT* and speed, $R_a = 1.5 \times R_{a2} = 1.5 \times 0.7R_{a1} = 1.05R_{a1}$.

Example 2: Find the decrease in surface roughness resulting from a tool nose radius change from $r = 0.8$ mm to $r = 1.2$ mm.

For finishing, using $r_2 = 1.2$ and $r_1 = 0.8$, $R_{a1}/R_{a2} = (1.2/0.8)^{0.5} = 1.224$, thus, the surface roughness using the larger tool radius is $R_{a2} = R_{a1} \div 1.224 = 0.82R_{a1}$.

In roughing, at the same *ECT* and speed, $R_a = 1.5 \times R_{a2} = 1.5 \times 0.82R_{a1} = 1.23R_{a1}$.

It is interesting to note that, at a given *ECT*, the R_a curves have a minimum, see Fig. 13 and Fig. 15, while tool life shows a maximum, see Fig. 6b and Fig. 6c. As illustrated in Fig. 16, R_a increases with tool life *T* when *ECT* is constant, in principle in the same way as does the force ratio.

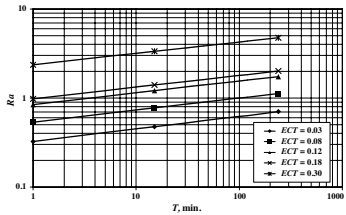


Fig. 16. R_a versus *T*, Holding *ECT* Constant

The Surface Finish Relationship: R_a is determined using the same type of mathematical relationship as tool life and force calculations:

$$y = K_{Ra} - \frac{x - H_{Ra}^2}{4M_{Ra}} - (N_{0Ra} - L_{Ra})\ln(R_a)$$

where $K_{Ra}, H_{Ra}, M_{Ra}, N_{0Ra}$, and L_{Ra} are the five surface finish constants.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shape of Tool Life Relationships for Turning, Milling, Drilling and Grinding Operations—Overview.—A summary of the general shapes of tool life curves (*V-ECT-T* graphs) for the most common machining processes, including grinding, is shown in double logarithmic coordinates in Fig. 17a through Fig. 17h.

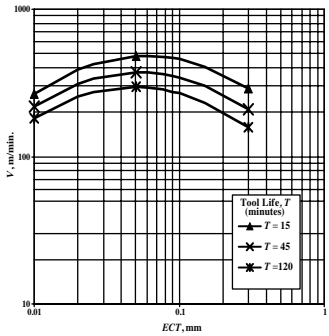


Fig. 17a. Tool Life for Turning Cast Iron Using Coated Carbide

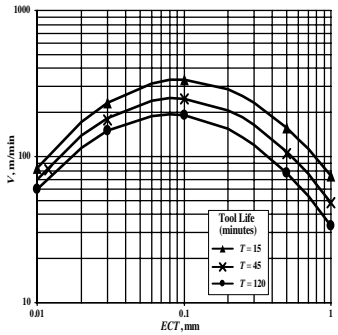


Fig. 17b. Tool Life for Turning Low-Alloy Steel Using Coated Carbide

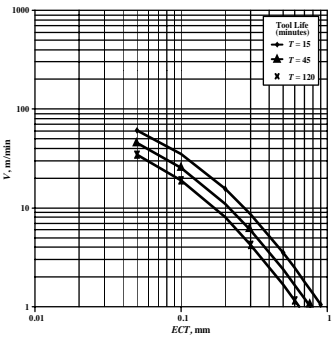


Fig. 17c. Tool Life for End-Milling AISI 4140 Steel Using High-Speed Steel

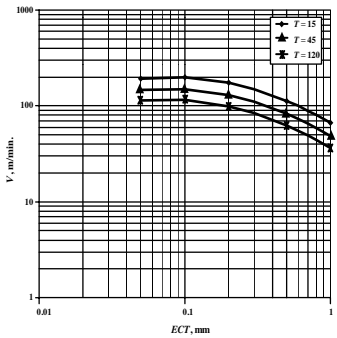


Fig. 17d. Tool Life for End-Milling Low-Alloy Steel Using Uncoated Carbide

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

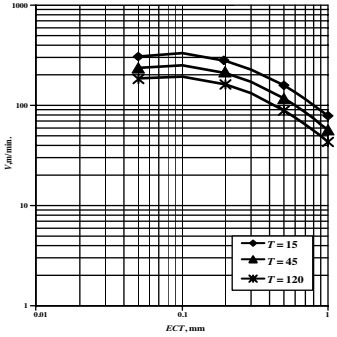


Fig. 17e. Tool Life for End-Milling Low-Alloy Steel Using Coated Carbide

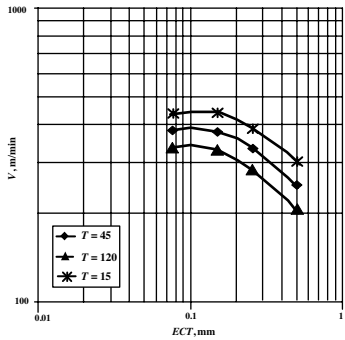


Fig. 17f. Tool Life for Face-Milling SAE 1045 Steel Using Coated Carbide

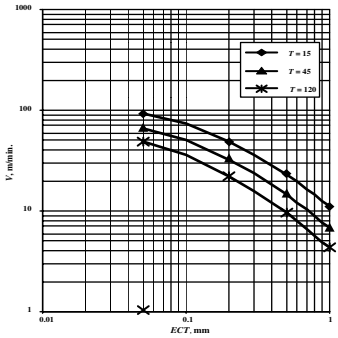


Fig. 17g. Tool Life for Solid Carbide Drill

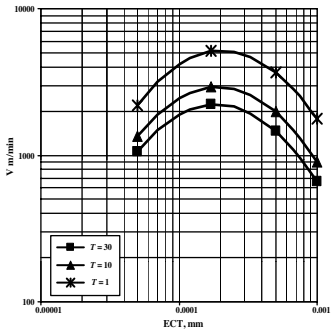


Fig. 17h. Wheel Life in Grinding M4 Tool-Steel

Calculation of Optimized Values of Tool Life, Feed and Cutting Speed

Minimum Cost.—Global optimum is defined as the absolute minimum cost considering all alternative speeds, feeds and tool-lives, and refers to the determination of optimum tool life T_O, feed f_O, and cutting speed V_O, for either minimum cost or maximum production rate. When using the tool life equation, $T = f(V, ECT)$, determine the corresponding feed, for given values of depth of cut and operation geometry, from optimum equivalent chip thickness, ECT_O. Mathematically the task is to determine minimum cost, employing the cost function C_{TOT} = cost of machining time + tool changing cost + tooling cost. Minimum cost optima occur along the so-called G-curve, identified in Fig. 6c.

Another important factor when optimizing cutting conditions involves choosing the proper cost values for cost per edge C_E, replacement time per edge T_{RPL}, and not least, the hourly rate H_R that should be applied. H_R is defined as the portion of the hourly shop rate that is applied to the operations and machines in question. If optimizing all operations in the portion of the shop for which H_R is calculated, use the full rate; if only one machine is involved, apply a lower rate, as only a portion of the general overhead rate should be used, otherwise the optimum, and anticipated savings, are erroneous.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Production Rate.—The production rate is defined as the cutting time or the metal removal rate, corrected for the time required for tool changes, but neglecting the cost of tools.

The result of optimizing production rate is a shorter tool life, higher cutting speed, and a higher feed compared to minimum cost optimization, and the tooling cost is considerably higher. Production rate optima also occur along the G-curve.

The Cost Function.—There are a number of ways the total machining cost C_{TOT} can be plotted, for example, versus feed, ECT, tool life, cutting speed or other parameter. In Fig. 18a, cost for a face milling operation is plotted versus cutting time, holding feed constant, and using a range of tool-lives, T, varying from 1 to 240 minutes.

	t_c	C_{TOOL}	C_{TOT}	T	V
	5.85	0.487	0.569	1	598
	6.91	0.192	0.288	3	506
	7.47	0.125	0.228	5	468
	8.30	0.069	0.185	10	421
	8.83	0.049	0.172	15	396
Minimum cost	**9.81**	**0.027**	**0.164**	**30**	**356**
	10.91	0.015	0.167	60	321
	11.60	0.011	0.172	90	302
	12.12	0.008	0.177	120	289
	13.47	0.005	0.192	240	260

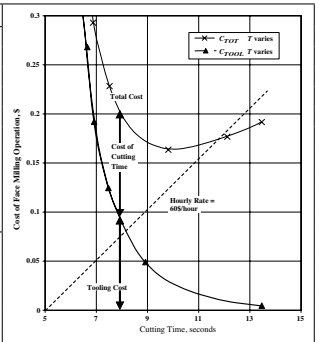


Fig. 18a. Variation of Tooling Cost C_{TOOL}, and Total Cost C_C, with Cutting Time t_c, Including Minimum Cost Cutting Time

The tabulated values show the corresponding cutting speeds determined from the tool life equation, and the influence of tooling on total cost. Tooling cost, C_{TOOL} = sum of tool cost + cost of replacing worn tools, decreases the longer the cutting time, while the total cost, C_{TOT}, has a minimum at around 10 seconds of cutting time. The dashed line in the graph represents the cost of machining time: the product of hourly rate H_R, and the cutting time t_c divided by 60. The slope of the line defines the value of H_R.

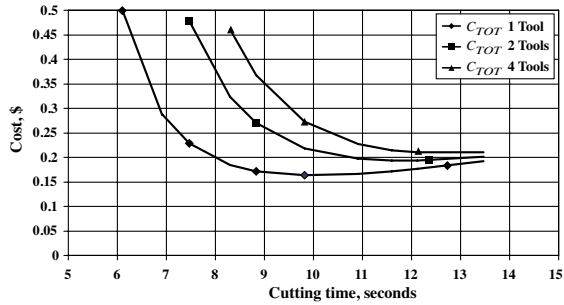


Fig. 18b. Total Cost versus Cutting Time for Simultaneously Cutting with 1, 2, and 4 Tools

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The cutting time for minimum cost varies with the ratio of tooling cost and H_R. Minimum cost moves towards a longer cutting time (longer tool life) when either the price of the tooling increases, or when several tools cut simultaneously on the same part. In Fig. 18b, this is exemplified by running 2 and 4 cutters simultaneously on the same work piece, at the same feed and depth of cut, and with a similar tool as in Fig. 18a. As the tooling cost goes up 2 and 4 times, respectively, and H_R is the same, the total costs curves move up, but also moves to the right, as do the points of minimum cost and optimal cutting times. This means that going somewhat slower, with more simultaneously cutting tools, is advantageous.

Global Optimum.—Usually, global optimum occurs for large values of feed, heavy roughing, and in many cases the cutting edge will break trying to apply the large feeds required. Therefore, true optima cannot generally be achieved when roughing, in particular when using coated and wear resistant grades; instead, use the maximum values of feed, ECT_{max}, along the tool life envelope, see Fig. 7.

As will be shown in the following, the first step is to determine the optimal tool life T_O, and then determine the optimum values of speeds and feeds.

Optimum Tool Life $T_O = 22$ minutes

	f_z	V_{22}	t_c, sec.	C_{TOOL}	C_{TOT}
	0.03	416	28.067	0.1067	0.4965
	0.08	397	11.017	0.0419	0.1949
	0.10	374	9.357	0.0356	0.1655
	0.17	301	6.831	0.0260	0.1208
	0.20	276	6.334	0.0241	0.1120
	0.40	171	5.117	0.0194	0.0905
Minimum Cost	**0.60**	**119**	**4.903**	**0.0186**	**0.0867**
	0.70	91	4.924	0.0187	0.0871

Maximum Production Rate, $T = 5$ minutes

f_z	V_5	t_c	C_{TOOL}	C_{TOT}
0.7	163	3.569	0.059	0.109

T varies between 1 and 240 minutes

$f_z = 0.10$		$ECT = 0.26$		
t_c sec.	C_{TOOL}	C_{TOT}	T	V
5.850	0.487	0.569	1	598
6.914	0.192	0.288	3	506
7.473	0.125	0.228	5	468
8.304	0.069	0.185	10	421
8.832	0.049	0.172	15	396
9.815	**0.027**	**0.164**	**30**	**357**
10.906	0.015	0.167	60	321
11.600	0.011	0.172	90	302
12.119	0.008	0.177	120	289
13.467	0.005	0.192	240	260

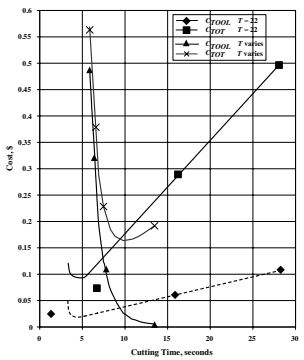


Fig. 19. Variation of Tooling and Total Cost with Cutting Time, Comparing Global Optimum with Minimum Cost at $f_z = 0.1$ mm

The example in Fig. 19 assumes that $T_O = 22$ minutes and the speed and feed optima were calculated as $f_O = 0.6$ mm/tooth, $V_O = 119$ m/min, and cutting time $t_{cO} = 4.9$ sec.

The point of maximum production rate corresponds to $f_O = 0.7$ mm/tooth, $V_O = 163$ m/min, at tool life $T_O = 5$ minutes, and cutting time $t_{cO} = 3.6$ sec. The tooling cost is approximately three times higher than at minimum cost (0.059 versus 0.0186), while the piece cost is only slightly higher: $0.109 versus $0.087.

When comparing the global optimum cost with the minimum at feed = 0.1 mm/tooth the graph shows it to be less than half (0.087 versus 0.164), but also the tooling cost is about 1⁄3 lower (0.0186 versus 0.027). The reason why tooling cost is lower depends on the tooling cost term $t_c \times C_E/T$ (see *Calculation of Cost of Cutting and Grinding Operations*

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

on page 1218). In this example, cutting times t_c = 4.9 and 9.81 seconds, at T = 22 and 30 minutes respectively, and the ratios are proportional to 4.9/22 = 0.222 and 9.81/30 = 0.327 respectively.

The portions of the total cost curve for shorter cutting times than minimum correspond to using speeds and feeds to the right of the *G*-curve, and those on the other side are left of this curve.

Optimization Models, Economic Tool Life when Feed is Constant.—Usually, optimization is performed versus the parameters tool life and cutting speed, keeping feed at a constant value. The cost of cutting as function of cutting time is a straight line with the slope = H_R = hourly rate. This cost is independent of the values of tool change and tooling. Adding the cost of tool change and tooling, gives the variation of total cutting cost which shows a minimum with cutting time that corresponds to an economic tool life, T_E. Economic tool life represents a local optima (minimum cost) at a given constant value of feed, feed/tooth, or *ECT*.

Using the Taylor Equation: $V \times T = C$ and differentiating C_{TOT} with respect to T yields:

Economic tool life:

$$T_E = T_V \times (1/n - 1), \text{minutes}$$

Economic cutting speed:

$$V_E = C/T_E{}^n, \text{m/min, or sfm}$$

In these equations, n and C are constants in the Taylor equation for the given value of feed. Values of Taylor slopes, n, are estimated using the speed and feed Table 1 through Table 23 starting on page 1095 and Handbook Table 5b on page 1103 for turning, and Table 15e on page 1127 for milling and drilling; T_V is the equivalent tooling-cost time. $T_V = T_{RPL} + 60 \times C_E \div H_R$, minutes, where T_{RPL} = time for replacing a worn insert, or a set of inserts in a milling cutter or inserted drill, or a twist drill, reamer, thread chaser, or tap. T_V is described in detail, later; C_E = cost per edge, or set of edges, or cost per regrind including amortized price of tool; and H_R = hourly shop rate, or that rate that is impacted by the changes of cutting conditions .

In two dimensions, Fig. 20a shows how economic tool life varies with feed per tooth. In this figure, the equivalent tooling-cost time T_V is constant, however the Taylor constant n varies with the feed per tooth.

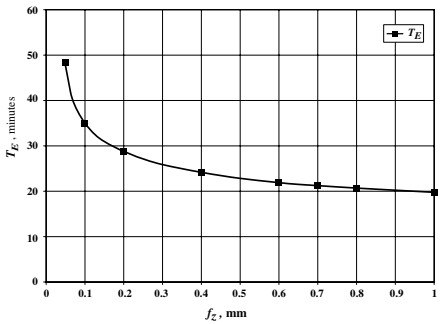


Fig. 20a. Economic Tool Life, T_E versus Feed per Tooth, f_z

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Economic tool life increases with greater values of T_V, either when T_{RPL} is longer, or when cost per edge C_E is larger for constant H_R, or when H_R is smaller and T_{RPL} and C_E are unchanged. For example, when using an expensive machine (which makes H_R bigger) the value of T_V gets smaller, as does the economic tool life, $T_E = T_V \times (1/n - 1)$. Reducing T_E results in an increase in the economic cutting speed, V_E. This means raising the cutting speed and illustrates the importance, in an expensive system, of utilizing the equipment better by using more aggressive machining data.

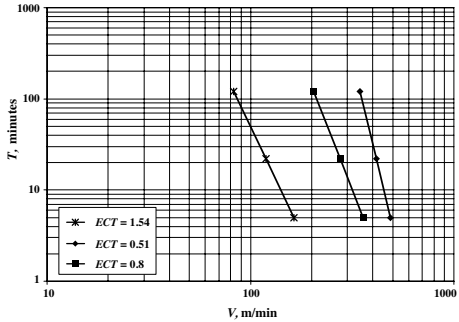


Fig. 20b. Tool Life versus Cutting Speed, Constant *ECT*

As shown in Fig. 20a for a face milling operation, economic tool life T_E varies considerably with feed/tooth f_z, in spite of the fact that the Taylor lines have only slightly different slopes ($ECT = 0.51, 0.6, 1.54$), as shown in Fig. 20b. The calculation is based on the following cost data: $T_V = 6$, hourly shop rate $H_R = \$60$/hour, cutter diameter $D = 125$ mm with number of teeth $z = 10$, and radial depth of cut $ar = 40$ mm.

The conclusion relating to the determination of economic tool life is that both hourly rate H_R and slope n must be evaluated with reasonable accuracy in order to arrive at good values. However, the method shown will aid in setting the trend for general machining economics evaluations.

Global Optimum, Graphical Method.—There are several ways to demonstrate in graphs how cost varies with the production parameters including optimal conditions. In all cases, tool life is a crucial parameter.

Cutting time t_c is inversely proportional to the specific metal removal rate, $SMRR = V \times ECT$, thus, $1/t_c = V \times ECT$. Taking the log of both sides,

$$\ln V = -\ln ECT - \ln t_c + C \tag{7}$$

where C is a constant.

Equation (7) is a straight line with slope (–1) in the *V-ECT* graph when plotted in a log-log graph. This means that a constant cutting time is a straight 45-degree line in the *V-ECT* graph, when plotted in log-log coordinates with the same scale on both axis (a square graph).

The points at which the constant cutting time lines (at 45-degree slope) are tangent to the tool life curves define the *G*-curve, along which global optimum cutting occurs.

Note: If the ratio *a*/*CEL* is not constant when *ECT* varies, the constant cutting time lines are not straight, but the cutting time deviation is quite small in most cases.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In the *V-ECT* graph, Fig. 21, 45-degree lines have been drawn tangent to each tool life curve: $T = 1, 5, 15, 30, 60, 100$ and 300 minutes. The tangential points define the *G*-curve, and the 45-degree lines represent different constant cutting times: 1, 2, 3, 10 minutes, etc. Following one of these lines and noting the intersection points with the tool life curves $T = 1, 5$, etc., many different speed and feed combinations can be found that will give the same cutting time. As tool life gets longer (tooling cost is reduced), *ECT* (feed) increases but the cutting speed has to be reduced.

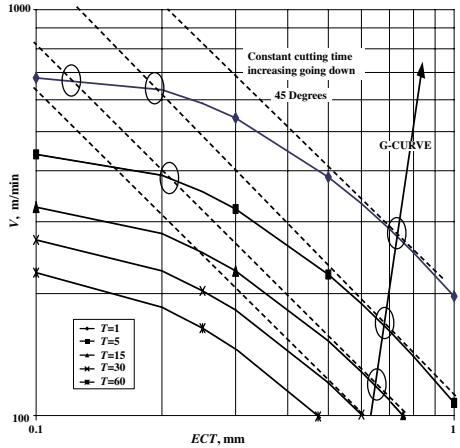


Fig. 21. Constant Cutting Time in the *V-ECT* Plane, Tool Life Constant

Global Optimum, Mathematical Method.—Global optimization is the search for extremum of C_{TOT} for the three parameters: *T*, *ECT*, and *V*. The results, in terms of the tool life equation constants, are:

Optimum tool life:

$$T_O = T_V \times \left(\frac{1}{n_O} - 1\right)$$

$$n_O = 2M \times (L \times \ln T_O)^2 + 1 - N_0 + L \times (2M + H)$$

where n_O = slope at optimum *ECT*.

The same approach is used when searching for maximum production rate, but without the term containing tooling cost.

Optimum cutting speed:

$$V_O = e^{-M + K + (H \times L - N_0) \times \ln T_O + M \times L^2 \times (\ln T_O)^2}$$

Optimum *ECT*:

$$ECT_O = e^{H + 2M \times (L \times \ln(T_O) + 1)}$$

Global optimum is not reached when face milling for very large feeds, and C_{TOT} decreases continually with increasing feed/tooth, but can be reached for a cutter with many teeth, say 20 to 30. In end milling, global optimum can often be achieved for big feeds and for 3 to 8 teeth.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Determination of Machine Settings and Calculation of Costs

Based on the rules and knowledge presented in Chapters 1 and 2, this chapter demonstrates, with examples, how machining times and costs are calculated.

Additional formulas are given, and the speed and feed tables given in *SPEEDS AND FEEDS TABLES* starting on page 1090 should be used. Finally the selection of feeds, speeds and tool-lives for optimized conditions are described with examples related to turning, end milling, and face milling.

There are an infinite number of machine settings available in the machine tool power train producing widely different results. In practice only a limited number of available settings are utilized. Often, feed is generally selected independently of the material being cut, however, the influence of material is critical in the choice of cutting speed. The tool life is normally not known or directly determined, but the number of pieces produced before the change of worn tools is better known, and tool life can be calculated using the formula for piece cutting time t_c given in this chapter.

It is well known that increasing feeds or speeds reduces the number of pieces cut between tool changes, but not how big are the changes in the basic parameter tool life. Therefore, there is a tendency to select "safe" data in order to get a long tool life. Another common practice is to search for a tool grade yielding a longer life using the current speeds and feeds, or a 10 to 20 percent increase in cutting speed while maintaining the current tool life. The reason for this old-fashioned approach is the lack of knowledge about the opportunities the metal cutting process offers for increased productivity.

For example, when somebody wants to calculate the cutting time, he/she can select a value of the feed rate (product of feed and rpm), and easily find the cutting time by dividing cutting distance by the feed rate. The number of pieces obtained out of a tool is a guesswork, however. This problem is very common and usually the engineers find desired tool-lives after a number of trial and error runs using a variety of speeds and feeds. If the user is not well familiar with the material cut, the tool life obtained could be any number of seconds or minutes, or the cutting edge might break.

There are an infinite number of speeds and feeds, giving the same feed rate, producing equal cutting time. The same cutting time per piece t_c is obtained independent of the selection of feed/rev f and cutting speed V (or rpm), as long as the feed rate F_R remains the same: $F_R = f_1 \times \text{rpm}_1 = f_2 \times \text{rpm}_2 = f_3 \times \text{rpm}_3, \ldots$, etc. However, the number of parts before tool change N_{ch} will vary considerably, including the tooling cost c_{tool} and the total cutting cost c_{tot}.

The dilemma confronting the machining-tool engineer or the process planner is how to set speeds and feeds for either desired cycle time, or number of parts between tool changes, while balancing the process versus other operations or balancing the total times in one cell with another. These problems are addressed in this section.

Nomenclature

f = feed/rev or tooth, mm f_E = economic feed f_O = optimum feed
T = tool life, minutes T_E = economic tool life T_O = optimum tool life
V = cutting speed, m/min V_E = economic cutting speed
V_O = optimum cutting speed, m/min

Similarly, economic and optimum values of:

c_{tool} = piece cost of tooling, $ C_{TOOL} = cost of tooling per batch, $
c_{tot} = piece total cost of cutting, $ C_{TOT} = total cost of cutting per batch, $
F_R = feed rate measured in the feeding direction, mm/rev
N = batch size
N_{ch} = number of parts before tool change
t_c = piece cutting time, minutes T_C = cutting time per batch, minutes
t_{cyc} = piece cycle time, minutes T_{CYC} = cycle time before tool change, minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

t_i = idle time (tool "air" motions during cycle), minutes
z = cutter number of teeth

The following variables are used for calculating the per batch cost of cutting:

C_C = cost of cutting time per batch, $
C_{CH} = cost of tool changes per batch, $
C_E = cost per edge, for replacing or regrinding, $
H_R = hourly rate, $
T_V = equivalent tooling-cost time, minutes
T_{RPL} = time for replacing worn edge(s), or tool for regrinding, minutes

Note: In the list above, when two variables use the same name, one in capital letters and one lower case, T_C and t_c for example, the variable name in capital letters refers to batch processing and lowercase letters to per piece processing, such as $T_C = N_{ch} \times t_c$, $C_{TOT} = N_{ch} \times c_{tot}$, etc.

Formulas Valid for All Operation Types Including Grinding

Calculation of Cutting Time and Feed Rate

Feed rate:

$F_R = f \times$ rpm (mm/min), where f is the feed in mm/rev along the feeding direction, rpm is defined in terms of workpiece or cutter diameter D in mm, and cutting speed V in m/min, as follows:

$$\text{rpm} = \frac{1000V}{\pi D} = \frac{318V}{D}$$

Cutting time per piece:

Note: Constant cutting time is a straight 45-degree line in the *V-ECT* graph, along which tool life varies considerably, as is shown in Fig. 21.

$$t_c = \frac{Dist}{F_R} = \frac{Dist}{f \times \text{rpm}} = \frac{Dist \times \pi D}{1000V \times f}$$

where the units of distance cut $Dist$, diameter D, and feed f are mm, and V is in m/min. In terms of ECT, cutting time per piece, t_c, is as follows:

$$t_c = \frac{Dist \times \pi D}{1000V} \times \frac{a}{CEL \times ECT}$$

where a = depth of cut, because feed × cross sectional chip area = $f \times a = CEL \times ECT$.

Example 3, Cutting Time: Given $Dist$ = 105 mm, D = 100 mm, f = 0.3 mm, V = 300 m/min, rpm = 700, F_R = 210 mm/min, find the cutting time.

Cutting time = t_c = 105 × 3.1416 × 100 ÷ (1000 × 300 × 0.3) = 0.366 minutes = 22 seconds

Scheduling of Tool Changes

Number of parts before tool change:

$N_{ch} = T \div t_c$

Cycle time before tool change:

$T_{CYC} = N_{ch} \times (t_c + t_i)$, where $t_{cyc} = t_c + t_i$, where t_c = cutting time per piece, t_i = idle time per piece

Tool life:

$T = N_{ch} \times t_c$

Example 4: Given tool life T = 90 minutes, cutting time t_c = 3 minutes, and idle time t_i = 3 minutes, find the number of parts produced before a tool change is required and the time until a tool change is required.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Number of parts before tool change = $N_{ch} = 90/3 = 30$ parts.

Cycle time before tool change = $T_{CYC} = 30 \times (3 + 3) = 180$ minutes

Example 5: Given cutting time, $t_c = 1$ minute, idle time $t_i = 1$ minute, $N_{ch} = 100$ parts, calculate the tool life T required to complete the job without a tool change, and the cycle time before a tool change is required.

Tool life = $T = N_{ch} \times t_c = 100 \times 1 = 100$ minutes.

Cycle time before tool change = $T_{CYC} = 100 \times (1 + 1) = 200$ minutes.

Calculation of Cost of Cutting and Grinding Operations.—When machining data varies, the cost of cutting, tool changing, and tooling will change, but the costs of idle and slack time are considered constant.

Cost of Cutting per Batch:

$$C_C = H_R \times T_C/60$$

T_C = cutting time per batch = (number of parts) $\times$ t_c, minutes, or when determining time for tool change $T_{ch} = N_{ch} \times t_c$ minutes = cutting time before tool change.

t_c = cutting time/part, minutes

H_R = hourly rate

Cost of Tool Changes per Batch:

$$C_{CH} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{T_{RPL}}{T} \qquad \frac{\$}{min} \cdot min = \$$$

where T = tool life, minutes, and T_{RPL} = time for replacing a worn edge(s), or tool for regrinding, minutes

Cost of Tooling per Batch:

Including cutting tools and holders, but without tool changing costs,

$$C_{TOOL} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{\dfrac{60C_E}{H_R}}{T} \qquad \frac{\$}{min} \cdot min \cdot \frac{\dfrac{min}{hr} \cdot \$ \cdot \dfrac{hr}{\$}}{min} = \$$$

Cost of Tooling + Tool Changes per Batch:

Including cutting tools, holders, and tool changing costs,

$$(C_{TOOL} + C_{CH}) = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{T_{RPL} + \dfrac{60C_E}{H_R}}{T}$$

Total Cost of Cutting per Batch:

$$C_{TOT} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \left(1 + \frac{T_{RPL} + \dfrac{60C_E}{H_R}}{T} \right)$$

Equivalent Tooling-cost Time, T_V:

The two previous expressions can be simplified by using $T_V = T_{RPL} + \dfrac{60C_E}{H_R}$ thus:

$$(C_{TOOL} + C_{CH}) = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{T_V}{T}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$C_{TOT} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \left(1 + \frac{T_V}{T}\right)$$

C_E = cost per edge(s) is determined using two alternate formulas, depending on whether tools are reground or inserts are replaced:

Cost per Edge, Tools for Regrinding:

$$C_E = \frac{\text{cost of tool} + (\text{number of regrinds} \times \text{cost/regrind})}{1 + \text{number of regrinds}}$$

Cost per Edge, Tools with Inserts:

$$C_E = \frac{\text{cost of insert(s)}}{\text{number of edges per insert}} + \frac{\text{cost of cutter body}}{\text{cutter body life in number of edges}}$$

Note: In practice allow for insert failures by multiplying the insert cost by 4⁄3, that is, assuming only 3 out of 4 edges can be effectively used.

Example 6, Cost per Edge-Tools for Regrinding: Use the data in the table below to calculate the cost per edge(s) C_E, and the equivalent tooling-cost time T_V, for a drill.

Time for cutter replacement T_{RPL}, minute	Cutter Price, $	Cost per regrind, $	Number of regrinds	Hourly shop rate, $	Batch size	Taylor slope, n	Economic cutting time, t_{cE} minute
1	40	6	5	50	1000	0.25	1.5

Using the cost per edge formula for reground tools, $C_E = (40 + 5 \times 6) \div (1 + 5) = \$6.80$

When the hourly rate is \$50/hr, $T_V = T_{RPL} + \frac{60C_E}{H_R} = 1 + \frac{60(6.8)}{50} = 9.16$ minutes

Calculate economic tool life using $T_E = T_V \times \left(\frac{1}{n} - 1\right)$ thus, $T_E = 9.17 \times (1/0.25 - 1) = 9.16 \times 3 = 27.48$ minutes.

Having determined, elsewhere, the economic cutting time per piece to be $t_{cE} = 1.5$ minutes, for a batch size = 1000 calculate:

Cost of Tooling + Tool Change per Batch:

$$(C_{TOOL} + C_{CH}) = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{T_V}{T} = \frac{50}{60} \times 1000 \times 1.5 \times \frac{9.16}{27.48} = \$417$$

Total Cost of Cutting per Batch:

$$C_{TOT} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \left(1 + \frac{T_V}{T}\right) = \frac{50}{60} \times 1000 \times 1.5 \times \left(1 + \frac{9.16}{27.48}\right) = \$1617$$

Example 7, Cost per Edge-Tools with Inserts: Use data from the table below to calculate the cost of tooling and tool changes, and the total cost of cutting.

For face milling, multiply insert price by safety factor 4⁄3 then calculate the cost per edge: $C_E = 10 \times (5/3) \times (4/3) + 750/500 = 23.72$ per set of edges

When the hourly rate is \$50, equivalent tooling-cost time is $T_V = 2 + 23.72 \times 60/50 = 30.466$ minutes (first line in table below). The economic tool life for Taylor slope $n = 0.333$ would be $T_E = 30.466 \times (1/0.333 - 1) = 30.466 \times 2 = 61$ minutes.

When the hourly rate is \$25, equivalent tooling-cost time is $T_V = 2 + 23.72 \times 60/25 = 58.928$ minutes (second line in table below). The economic tool life for Taylor slope $n = 0.333$ would be $T_E = 58.928 \times (1/0.333 - 1) = 58.928 \times 2 = 118$ minutes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Time for replacement of inserts T_{RPL}, minutes	Number of inserts	Price per insert	Edges per insert	Cutter Price	Edges per cutter	Cost per set of edges, C_E	Hourly shop rate	T_V minutes
Face mill								
2	10	5	3	750	500	23.72	50	30.466
2	10	5	3	750	500	23.72	25	58.928
End mill								
1	3	6	2	75	200	4.375	50	6.25
Turning								
1	1	5	3	50	100	2.72	30	6.44

With above data for the face mill, and after having determined the economic cutting time as $t_{cE} = 1.5$ minutes, calculate for a batch size = 1000 and $50 per hour rate:

Cost of Tooling + Tool Change per Batch:

$$(C_{TOOL} + C_{CH}) = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \times \frac{T_V}{T} = \frac{50}{60} \times 1000 \times 1.5 \times \frac{30.466}{61} = \$624$$

Total Cost of Cutting per Batch:

$$C_{TOT} = \frac{H_R}{60} \times T_C \left(1 + \frac{T_V}{T}\right) = \frac{50}{60} \times 1000 \times 1.5 \times \left(1 + \frac{30.466}{61}\right) = \$1874$$

Similarly, at the $25/hour shop rate, ($C_{TOOL}$ + C_{CH}) and C_{TOT} are $312 and $937, respectively.

Example 8, Turning: Production parts were run in the shop at feed/rev = 0.25 mm. One series was run with speed $V_1 = 200$ m/min and tool life was $T_1 = 45$ minutes. Another was run with speed $V_2 = 263$ m/min and tool life was $T_2 = 15$ minutes. Given idle time t_i = 1 minute, cutting distance $Dist$ = 1000 mm, work diameter $D = 50$ mm.

First, calculate Taylor slope, n, using Taylor's equation $V_1 \times T_1{}^n = V_2 \times T_2{}^n$, as follows:

$$n = \ln \frac{V_1}{V_2} \div \ln \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \ln \frac{200}{263} \div \ln \frac{15}{45} = 0.25$$

Economic tool life T_E is next calculated using the equivalent tooling-cost time T_V, as described previously. Assuming a calculated value of $T_V = 4$ minutes, then T_E can be calculated from

$$T_E = T_V \times \left(\frac{1}{n} - 1\right) = 4 \times \left(\frac{1}{0.25} - 1\right) = 12 \text{ minutes}$$

Economic cutting speed, V_E can be found using Taylor's equation again, this time using the economic tool life, as follows,

$$V_{E1} \times (T_E)^n = V_2 \times (T_2)^n$$

$$V_{E1} = V_2 \times \left(\frac{T_2}{T_E}\right)^n = 263 \times \left(\frac{15}{12}\right)^{0.25} = 278 \text{ m/min}$$

Using the process data, the remaining economic parameters can be calculated as follows:

Economic spindle rpm, $\text{rpm}_E = 1000V_E/\pi D = (1000 \times 278)/(3.1416 \times 50) = 1770$ rpm

Economic feed rate, $F_{RE} = f \times \text{rpm}_E = 0.25 \times 1770 = 443$ mm/min

Economic cutting time, $t_{cE} = Dist/F_{RE} = 1000/443 = 2.259$ minutes

Economic number of parts before tool change, $N_{chE} = T_E \div t_{cE} = 12 \div 2.259 = 5.31$ parts

Economic cycle time before tool change, $T_{CYCE} = N_{chE} \times (t_c + t_i) = 5.31 \times (2.259 + 1) = 17.3$ minutes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Variation of Tooling and Total Cost with the Selection of Speeds and Feeds

It is a well-known fact that tool life is reduced when either feed or cutting speed is increased. When a higher feed/rev is selected, the cutting speed must be decreased in order to maintain tool life. However, a higher feed rate (feed rate = feed/rev × rpm, mm/min) can result in a longer tool life if proper cutting data are applied. Optimized cutting data require accurate machinability databases and a computer program to analyze the options. Reasonably accurate optimized results can be obtained by selecting a large feed/rev or tooth, and then calculating the economic tool life T_E. Because the cost versus feed or *ECT* curve is shallow around the true minimum point, i.e., the global optimum, the error in applying a large feed is small compared with the exact solution.

Once a feed has been determined, the economic cutting speed V_E can be found by calculating the Taylor slope, and the time/cost calculations can be completed using the formulas described in last section.

The remainder of this section contains examples useful for demonstrating the required procedures. Global optimum may or may not be reached, and tooling cost may or may not be reduced, compared to currently used data. However, the following examples prove that significant time and cost reductions are achievable in today's industry.

Note: Starting values of reasonable feeds in mm/rev can be found in the Handbook speed and feed tables, see *Principal Speeds and Feeds Tables* on page 1090, by using the f_{avg} values converted to mm as follows: feed (mm/rev) = feed (inch/rev) × 25.4 (mm/inch), thus 0.001 inch/rev = 0.001× 25.4 = 0.0254 mm/rev. When using speed and feed Table 1 through Table 23, where feed values are given in thousandths of inch per revolution, simply multiply the given feed by 25.4/1000 = 0.0254, thus feed (mm/rev) = feed (0.001 inch/rev) × 0.0254 (mm/0.001inch).

Example 9, Converting Handbook Feed Values from Inches to Millimeters: Handbook tables give feed values f_{opt} and f_{avg} for 4140 steel as 17 and 8 × (0.001 inch/rev) = 0.017 and 0.009 inch/rev, respectively. Convert the given feeds to mm/rev.

feed = 0.017 × 25.4 = 17 × 0.0254 = 0.4318 mm/rev
feed = 0.008 × 25.4 = 8 × 0.0254 = 0.2032 mm/rev

Example 10, Using Handbook Tables to Find the Taylor Slope and Constant: Calculate the Taylor slope and constant, using cutting speed data for 4140 steel in Table 1 starting on page 1095, and for ASTM Class 20 gray cast iron using data from Table 4a on page 1101, as follows:

For the 175–250 Brinell Hardness range, and the hard tool grade,

$$n = \frac{\ln (V_1/V_2)}{\ln (T_2/T_1)} = \frac{\ln (525/705)}{\ln (15/45)} = 0.27 \qquad C = V_1 \times (T_1)^n = 1458$$

For the 175–250 Brinell Hardness range, and the tough tool grade,

$$n = \frac{\ln (V_1/V_2)}{\ln (T_2/T_1)} = \frac{\ln (235/320)}{\ln (15/45)} = 0.28 \qquad C = V_1 \times (T_1)^n = 685$$

For the 300–425 Brinell Hardness range, and the hard tool grade,

$$n = \frac{\ln (V_1/V_2)}{\ln (T_2/T_1)} = \frac{\ln (330/440)}{\ln (15/45)} = 0.26 \qquad C = V_1 \times (T_1)^n = 894$$

For the 300–425 Brinell Hardness range, and the tough tool grade,

$$n = \frac{\ln (V_1/V_2)}{\ln (T_2/T_1)} = \frac{\ln (125/175)}{\ln (15/45)} = 0.31 \qquad C = V_1 \times (T_1)^n = 401$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For ASTM Class 20 gray cast iron, using hard ceramic,

$$n = \frac{\ln(V_1/V_2)}{\ln(T_2/T_1)} = \frac{\ln(1490/2220)}{\ln(15/45)} = 0.36 \qquad C = V_1 \times T_1)^n = 5932$$

Selection of Optimized Data.—Fig. 22 illustrates cutting time, cycle time, number of parts before a tool change, tooling cost, and total cost, each plotted versus feed for a constant tool life. Approximate minimum cost conditions can be determined using the formulas previously given in this section.

First, select a large feed/rev or tooth, and then calculate economic tool life T_E, and the economic cutting speed V_E, and do all calculations using the time/cost formulas as described previously.

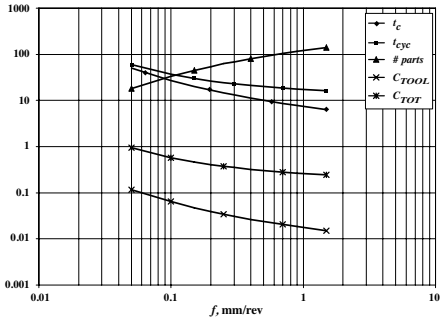


Fig. 22. Cutting Time, Cycle Time, Number of Parts Before Tool Change, Tooling Cost, and Total Cost versus Feed for Tool Life = 15 Minutes, Idle Time = 10 s, and Batch Size = 1000 Parts

Example 11, Step by Step Procedure: Turning—Facing out: 1) Select a big feed/rev, in this case $f = 0.9$ mm/rev (0.035 inch/rev). A Taylor slope n is first determined using the Handbook tables and the method described in Example 10. In this example, use $n = 0.35$ and C = 280.

2) Calculate T_V from the tooling cost parameters:

If cost of insert = $7.50; edges per insert = 2; cost of tool holder = $100; life of holder = 100 insert sets; and for tools with inserts, allowance for insert failures = cost per insert by 4/3, assuming only 3 out of 4 edges can be effectively used.

Then, cost per edge = C_E is calculated as follows:

$$C_E = \frac{\text{cost of insert(s)}}{\text{number of edges per insert}} + \frac{\text{cost of cutter body}}{\text{cutter body life in number of edges}}$$

$$= \frac{7.50 \times 4/3}{2} + \frac{100}{100} = \$6.00$$

The time for replacing a worn edge of the facing insert $= T_{RPL} = 2.24$ minutes. Assuming an hourly rate $H_R = \$50$/hour, calculate the equivalent tooling-cost time T_V

$$T_V = T_{RPL} + 60 \times C_E/H_R = 2.24 + 60 \times 6/50 = 9.44 \text{ minutes}$$

3) Determine economic tool life T_E

$$T_E = T_V \times (1/n - 1) = 9.44 \times (1/0.35 - 1) = 17.5 \text{ minutes}$$

4) Determine economic cutting speed using the Handbook tables using the method shown in Example 10,

$$V_E = \frac{C}{T_E^n} \text{ m/min} = 280 / 17.5^{0.35} = 103 \text{ m/min}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5) Determine cost of tooling per batch (cutting tools, holders and tool changing) then total cost of cutting per batch:

$$C_{TOOL} = H_R \times T_C \times (C_E/T)/60$$
$$C_{TOOL} + C_{CH} = H_R \times T_C \times (T_{RPL} + C_E/T)/60$$
$$C_{TOT} = H_R \times T_C\,(1 + (T_{RPL} + C_E)/T)$$

Example 12, Face Milling—Minimum Cost : This example demonstrates how a modern firm, using the formulas previously described, can determine optimal data. It is here applied to a face mill with 10 teeth, milling a 1045 type steel, and the radial depth versus the cutter diameter is 0.8. The *V-ECT-T* curves for tool-lives 5, 22, and 120 minutes for this operation are shown in Fig. 23a.

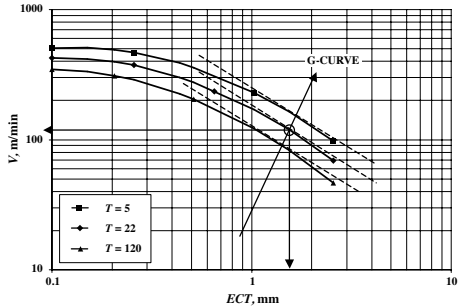


Fig. 23a. Cutting Speed versus *ECT*, Tool Life Constant

The global cost minimum occurs along the *G*-curve, see Fig. 6c and Fig. 23a, where the 45-degree lines defines this curve. Optimum *ECT* is in the range 1.5 to 2 mm.

For face and end milling operations, $ECT = z \times f_z \times ar/D \times aa/CEL \div \pi$. The ratio $aa/CEL = 0.95$ for lead angle $LA = 0$, and for $ar/D = 0.8$ and 10 teeth, using the formula to calculate the feed/tooth range gives for $ECT = 1.5$, $f_z = 0.62$ mm and for $ECT = 2$, $f_z = 0.83$ mm.

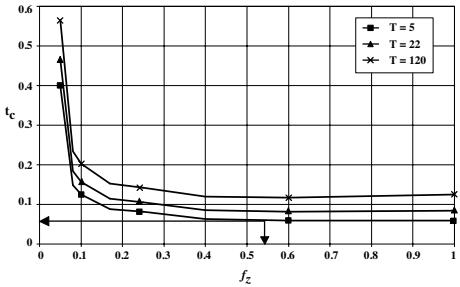


Fig. 23b. Cutting Time per Part versus Feed per Tooth

Using computer simulation, the minimum cost occurs approximately where Fig. 23a indicates it should be. Total cost has a global minimum at f_z around 0.6 to 0.7 mm and a speed of around 110 m/min. *ECT* is about 1.9 mm and the optimal cutter life is T_O = 22 minutes. Because it may be impossible to reach the optimum feed value due to tool

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

breakage, the maximum practical feed f_{max} is used as the optimal value. The difference in costs between a global optimum and a practical minimum cost condition is negligible, as shown in Fig. 23c and Fig. 23e. A summary of the results are shown in Fig. 23a through Fig. 23e, and Table 1.

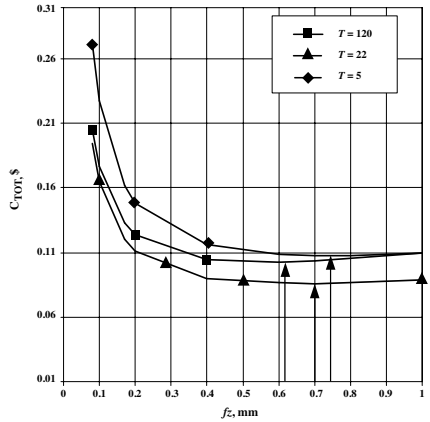


Fig. 23c. Total Cost versus Feed/Tooth

When plotting cutting time/part, t_c, versus feed/tooth, f_z, at $T = 5, 22, 120$ in Fig. 23b, tool life $T = 5$ minutes yields the shortest cutting time, but total cost is the highest; the minimum occurs for f_z about 0.75 mm, see Fig. 23c. The minimum for $T = 120$ minutes is about 0.6 mm and for $T_O = 22$ minutes around 0.7 mm.

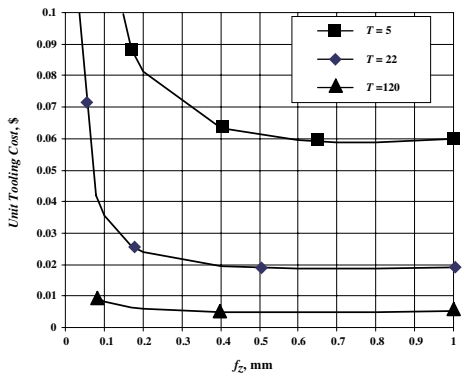


Fig. 23d. Tooling Cost versus Feed/Tooth

Fig. 23d shows that tooling cost drops off quickly when increasing feed from 0.1 to 0.3 to 0.4 mm, and then diminishes slowly and is almost constant up to 0.7 to 0.8 mm/tooth. It is generally very high at the short tool life 5 minutes, while tooling cost of optimal tool life 22 minutes is about three times higher than when going slow at T =120 minutes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

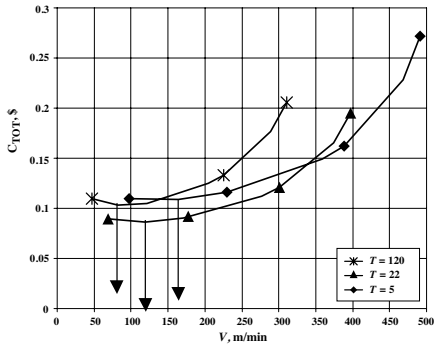


Fig. 23e. Total Cost versus Cutting Speed at 3 Constant Tool-Lives, Feed Varies

The total cost curves in Fig. 23e were obtained by varying feed and cutting speed in order to maintain constant tool-lives at 5, 22 and 120 minutes. Cost is plotted as a function of speed V instead of feed/tooth. Approximate optimum speeds are V = 150 m/min at T = 5 minutes, V = 180 m/min at T = 120 minutes, and the global optimum speed is V_O = 110 m/min for T_O = 22 minutes.

Table 1 displays the exact numerical values of cutting speed, tooling cost and total cost for the selected tool-lives of 5, 22, and 120 minutes, obtained from the software program.

Table 1. Face Milling, Total and Tooling Cost versus *ECT*, Feed/tooth *fz*, and Cutting Speed *V*, at Tool-lives 5, 22, and 120 minutes

		T = 5 minutes			T = 22 minutes			T = 120 minutes		
f_z	*ECT*	*V*	C_{TOT}	C_{TOOL}	*V*	C_{TOT}	C_{TOOL}	*V*	C_{TOT}	C_{TOOL}
0.03	0.08	489	0.72891	0.39759	416	0.49650	0.10667	344	0.49378	0.02351
0.08	0.21	492	0.27196	0.14834	397	0.19489	0.04187	311	0.20534	0.00978
0.10	0.26	469	0.22834	0.12455	374	0.16553	0.03556	289	0.17674	0.00842
0.17	0.44	388	0.16218	0.08846	301	0.12084	0.02596	225	0.13316	0.00634
0.20	0.51	359	0.14911	0.08133	276	0.11204	0.02407	205	0.12466	0.00594
0.40	1.03	230	0.11622	0.06339	171	0.09051	0.01945	122	0.10495	0.00500
0.60	1.54	164	0.10904	0.05948	119	0.08672	0.01863	83	0.10301	0.00491
0.70	1.80	141	0.10802	0.05892	102	0.08665	0.01862	70	0.10393	0.00495
0.80	2.06	124	0.10800	0.05891	89	0.08723	0.01874	60	0.10547	0.00502
1.00	2.57	98	0.10968	0.05982	69	0.08957	0.01924	47	0.10967	0.00522

High-Speed Machining Econometrics

High-Speed Machining, No Mystery.—This section describes the theory and gives the basic formulas for any milling operation and high-speed milling in particular, followed by several examples on high-speed milling econometrics. These rules constitute the basis on which selection of milling feed factors is done. Selection of cutting speeds for general milling is done using the Handbook Table 10 through Table 14, starting on page 1112.

High-speed machining is no mystery to those who understand metal cutting. Machining materials with good machinability, such as low-alloyed aluminum, has for ages been performed at cutting speeds well below the speed values at which these materials should be cut. Operating at such low speeds often results in built-up edges and poor surface finish, because the operating conditions selected are on the wrong side of the Taylor curve, i.e. to the left of the *H*-curve representing maximum tool life (see Fig. 4 on page 1199).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In the 1950's it was discovered that cutting speed could be raised by a factor of 5 to 10 when hobbing steel with HSS cutters. This is another example of being on the wrong side of the Taylor curve.

One of the first reports on high-speed end milling using high-speed steel (HSS) and carbide cutters for milling 6061-T651 and A356-T6 aluminum was reported in a study funded by Defense Advanced Research Project Agency (DARPA). Cutting speeds of up to 4400 m/min (14140 fpm) were used. Maximum tool-lives of 20 through 40 minutes were obtained when the feed/tooth was 0.2 through 0.25 mm (0.008 to 0.01 inch), or measured in terms of *ECT* around 0.07 to 0.09 mm. Lower or higher feed/tooth resulted in shorter cutter lives. The same types of previously described curves, namely *T-ECT* curves with maximum tool life along the *H*-curve, were produced.

When examining the influence of *ECT*, or feed/rev, or feed/tooth, it is found that too small values cause chipping, vibrations, and poor surface finish. This is caused by inadequate (too small) chip thickness, and as a result the material is not cut but plowed away or scratched, due to the fact that operating conditions are on the wrong (left) side of the tool life versus *ECT* curve (*T-ECT* with constant speed plotted).

There is a great difference in the thickness of chips produced by a tooth traveling through the cutting arc in the milling process, depending on how the center of the cutter is placed in relation to the workpiece centerline, in the feed direction. Although end and face milling cut in the same way, from a geometry and kinematics standpoint they are in practice distinguished by the cutter center placement away from, or close to, the work centerline, respectively, because of the effect of cutter placement on chip thickness. This is the criterion used to distinguish between the end and face milling processes in the following.

Depth of Cut/Cutter Diameter, ar/D is the ratio of the radial depth of cut *ar* and the cutter diameter *D*. In face milling when the cutter axis points approximately to the middle of the work piece axis, eccentricity is close to zero, as illustrated in Fig. 3 and Fig. 4, page 1110, and Fig. 5 on page 1111. In end milling, $ar/D = 1$ for full slot milling.

Mean Chip Thickness hm is a key parameter that is used to calculate forces and power requirements in high-speed milling. If the mean chip thickness *hm* is too small, which may occur when feed/tooth is too small (this holds for all milling operations), or when *ar*/*D* decreases (this holds for ball nose as well as for straight end mills), then cutting occurs on the left (wrong side) of the tool life versus *ECT* curve, as illustrated in Fig. 6b and Fig. 6c.

In order to maintain a given chip thickness in end milling, the feed/tooth has to be increased, up to 10 times for very small *ar*/*D* values in an extreme case with no run out and otherwise perfect conditions. A 10 times increase in feed/tooth results in 10 times bigger feed rates (F_R) compared to data for full slot milling (valid for $ar/D = 1$), yet maintains a given chip thickness. The cutter life at any given cutting speed will not be the same, however.

Increasing the number of teeth from say 2 to 6 increases equivalent chip thickness *ECT* by a factor of 3 while the mean chip thickness *hm* remains the same, but does not increase the feed rate to 30 (3×10) times bigger, because the cutting speed must be reduced. However, when the *ar*/*D* ratio matches the number of teeth, such that one tooth enters when the second tooth leaves the cutting arc, then $ECT = hm$. Hence, *ECT* is proportional to the number of teeth. Under ideal conditions, an increase in number of teeth *z* from 2 to 6 increases the feed rate by, say, 20 times, maintaining tool life at a reduced speed. In practice about 5 times greater feed rates can be expected for small *ar*/*D* ratios (0.01 to 0.02), and up to 10 times with 3 times as many teeth. So, high-speed end milling is no mystery.

Chip Geometry in End and Face Milling.—Fig. 24 illustrates how the chip forming process develops differently in face and end milling, and how mean chip thickness *hm* varies with the angle of engagement *AE*, which depends on the *ar*/*D* ratio. The pertinent chip geometry formulas are given in the text that follows.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

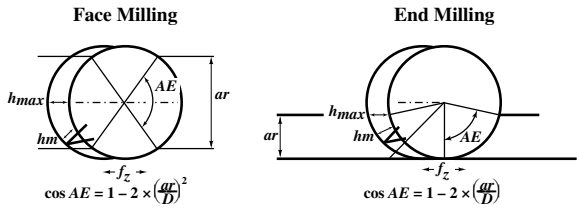


Fig. 24.

Comparison of face milling and end milling geometry: High-speed end milling refers to values of *ar*/*D* that are less than 0.5, in particular to *ar*/*D* ratios which are considerably smaller. When *ar*/*D* = 0.5 (*AE* = 90 degrees) and diminishing in end milling, the chip thickness gets so small that poor cutting action develops, including plowing or scratching. This situation is remedied by increasing the feed/tooth, as shown in Table 2a as an increasing f_z/f_{z0} ratio with decreasing *ar*/*D*. For end milling, the f_z/f_{z0} feed ratio is 1.0 for *ar*/*D* = 1 and also for *ar*/*D* = 0.5. In order to maintain the same *hm* as at *ar*/*D* = 1, the feed/tooth should be increased, by a factor of 6.38 when *ar*/*D* is 0.01 and by more than 10 when *ar*/*D* is less than 0.01. Hence high-speed end milling could be said to begin when *ar*/*D* is less than 0.5

In end milling, the ratio $f_z/f_{z0} = 1$ is set at *ar*/*D* = 1.0 (full slot), a common value in vendor catalogs and handbooks, for *hm* = 0.108 mm.

The face milling chip making process is exactly the same as end milling the side of a workpiece and *ar*/*D* = 0.5 or less. However, when face milling close to and along the work centerline (eccentricity is close to zero) chip making is quite different, as shown in Fig. 24. When *ar*/*D* = 0.74 (*AE* = 95 degrees) in face milling, the f_z/f_{z0} ratio = 1 and increases up to 1.4 when the work width is equal to the cutter diameter (*ar*/*D* = 1). The face milling f_z/f_{z0} ratio continues to diminish when the *ar*/*D* ratio decreases below *ar*/*D* = 0.74, but very insignificantly, only about 11 percent when *ar*/*D* = 0.01.

In face milling, $f_z/f_{z0} = 1$ is set at *ar*/*D* = 0.74, a common value recommended in vendor catalogs and handbooks, for *hm* = 0.151 mm.

Fig. 25 shows the variation of the feed/tooth-ratio in a graph for end and face milling.

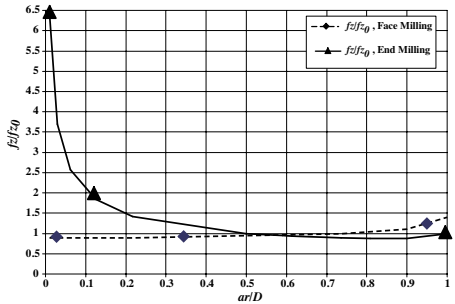


Fig. 25. Feed/Tooth versus *ar*/*D* for Face and End Milling

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Variation of Chip Thickness and f_z/f_{z0} with *ar/D*

	Face Milling					End Milling (straight)				
	eccentricity $e = 0$ $z = 8$ $f_{z0} = 0.17$ $\cos AE = 1 - 2 \times (ar/D)^2$					$z = 2$ $f_{z0} = 0.17$ $\cos AE = 1 - 2 \times (ar/D)$				
ar/D	*AE*	*hm*/f_z	*hm*	*ECT*/*hm*	f_z/f_{z0}	*AE*	*hm*/f_z	*hm*	*ECT*/*hm*	f_z/f_{z0}
1.0000	180.000	0.637	0.108	5.000	1.398	180.000	0.637	0.108	1.000	1.000
0.9000	128.316	0.804	0.137	3.564	1.107	143.130	0.721	0.122	0.795	0.884
0.8000	106.260	0.863	0.147	2.952	1.032	126.870	0.723	0.123	0.711	0.881
0.7355	94.702	0.890	0.151	2.631	1.000	118.102	0.714	0.122	0.667	0.892
0.6137	75.715	0.929	0.158	1.683	0.958	103.144	0.682	0.116	0.573	0.934
0.5000	60.000	1.025	0.162	1.267	0.932	90.000	0.674	0.115	0.558	1.000
0.3930	46.282	0.973	0.165	1.028	0.915	77.643	0.580	0.099	0.431	1.098
0.2170	25.066	0.992	0.169	0.557	0.897	55.528	0.448	0.076	0.308	1.422
0.1250	14.361	0.997	0.170	0.319	0.892	41.410	0.346	0.059	0.230	1.840
0.0625	7.167	0.999	0.170	0.159	0.891	28.955	0.247	0.042	0.161	2.574
0.0300	3.438	1.000	0.170	0.076	0.890	19.948	0.172	0.029	0.111	3.694
0.0100	1.146	1.000	0.170	0.025	0.890	11.478	0.100	0.017	0.064	6.377
0.0010	0.115	1.000	0.000	0.000	0.890	3.624	0.000	0.000	0.000	20.135

In Table 2a, a standard value $f_{z0} = 0.17$ mm/tooth (commonly recommended average feed) was used, but the f_z/f_{z0} values are independent of the value of feed/tooth, and the previously mentioned relationships are valid whether $f_{z0} = 0.17$ or any other value.

In both end and face milling, $hm = 0.108$ mm for $f_{z0} = 0.17$ mm when $ar/D = 1$. When the f_z/f_{z0} ratio = 1, $hm = 0.15$ for face milling, and 0.108 in end milling both at $ar/D = 1$ and 0.5. The tabulated data hold for perfect milling conditions, such as, zero run-out and accurate sharpening of all teeth and edges.

Mean Chip Thickness *hm* and Equivalent Chip Thickness *ECT*.—The basic formula for equivalent chip thickness *ECT* for any milling process is:

$ECT = f_z \times z/\pi \times (ar/D) \times aa/CEL$, where f_z = feed/tooth, z = number of teeth, D = cutter diameter, ar = radial depth of cut, aa = axial depth of cut, and CEL = cutting edge length. As a function of mean chip thickness *hm*:

$ECT = hm \times (z/2) \times (AE/180)$, where AE = angle of engagement.

Both terms are exactly equal when one tooth engages as soon as the preceding tooth leaves the cutting section. Mathematically, $hm = ECT$ when $z = 360/AE$; thus:

for face milling, $AE = \arccos(1 - 2 \times (ar/D)^2)$

for end milling, $AE = \arccos(1 - 2 \times (ar/D))$

Calculation of Equivalent Chip Thickness (ECT) versus Feed/tooth and Number of Teeth: Table 2b is a continuation of Table 2a, showing the values of *ECT* for face and end milling for decreasing values *ar/D*, and the resulting *ECT* when multiplied by the f_z/f_{z0} ratio $f_{z0} = 0.17$ (based on $hm = 0.108$).

Small *ar/D* ratios produce too small mean chip thickness for cutting chips. In practice, minimum values of *hm* are approximately 0.02 through 0.04 mm for both end and face milling.

Formulas.—Equivalent chip thickness can be calculated for other values of f_z and z by means of the following formulas:

Face milling: $ECT_F = ECT_{0F} \times (z/8) \times (f_z/0.17) \times (aa/CEL)$

or, if ECT_F is known calculate f_z using:

$f_z = 0.17 \times (ECT_F/ECT_{0F}) \times (8/z) \times (CEL/aa)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Variation of *ECT*, Chip Thickness and f_z/f_{z0} with *ar*/*D*

	Face Milling				End Milling (straight)			
ar/*D*	*hm*	f_z/f_{z0}	*ECT*	*ECT*0 corrected for f_z/f_{z0}	*hm*	f_z/f_{z0}	*ECT*	*ECT*0 corrected for f_z/f_{z0}
1.0000	0.108	1.398	0.411	0.575	0.108	1.000	0.103	0.103
0.9000	0.137	1.107	0.370	0.410	0.122	0.884	0.093	0.082
0.8080	0.146	1.036	0.332	0.344	0.123	0.880	0.083	0.073
0.7360	0.151	1.000	0.303	0.303	0.121	0.892	0.076	0.067
0.6137	0.158	0.958	0.252	0.242	0.116	0.934	0.063	0.059
0.5900	0.159	0.952	0.243	0.231	0.115	0.945	0.061	0.057
0.5000	0.162	0.932	0.206	0.192	0.108	1.000	0.051	0.051
0.2170	0.169	0.897	0.089	0.080	0.076	1.422	0.022	0.032
0.1250	0.170	0.892	0.051	0.046	0.059	1.840	0.013	0.024
0.0625	0.170	0.891	0.026	0.023	0.042	2.574	0.006	0.017
0.0300	0.170	0.890	0.012	0.011	0.029	3.694	0.003	0.011
0.0100	0.170	0.890	0.004	0.004	0.017	6.377	0.001	0.007
0.0010	0.170	0.890	0.002	0.002	0.005	20.135	0.001	0.005

In face milling, the approximate values of $aa/CEL = 0.95$ for lead angle $LA = 0°$ (90° in the metric system); for other values of LA, $aa/CEL = 0.95 \times \sin(LA)$, and $0.95 \times \cos(LA)$ in the metric system.

Example, Face Milling: For a cutter with $D = 250$ mm and $ar = 125$ mm, calculate ECT_F for $f_z = 0.1$, $z = 12$, and $LA = 30$ degrees. First calculate $ar/D = 0.5$, and then use Table 2b and find $ECT_{0F} = 0.2$.

Calculate ECT_F with above formula:

$ECT_F = 0.2 \times (12/8) \times (0.1/0.17) \times 0.95 \times \sin 30 = 0.084$ mm.

End milling: $ECT_E = ECT_{0E} \times (z/2) \times (f_z/0.17) \times (aa/CEL)$,

or if ECT_E is known calculate f_z from:

$f_z = 0.17 \times (ECT_E/ECT_{0E}) \times (2/z)) \times (CEL/aa)$

The approximate values of $aa/CEL = 0.95$ for lead angle $LA = 0°$ (90° in the metric system).

Example, High-Speed End Milling: For a cutter with $D = 25$ mm and $ar = 3.125$ mm, calculate ECT_E for $f_z = 0.1$ and $z = 6$. First calculate $ar/D = 0.125$, and then use Table 2b and find $ECT_{0E} = 0.0249$.

Calculate ECT_E with above formula:

$ECT_E = 0.0249 \times (6/2) \times (0.1/0.17) \times 0.95 \times 1 = 0.042$ mm.

Example, High-Speed End Milling: For a cutter with $D = 25$ mm and $ar = 0.75$ mm, calculate ECT_E for $f_z = 0.17$ and $z = 2$ and 6. First calculate $ar/D = 0.03$, and then use Table 2b and find $f_z/f_{z0} = 3.694$

Then, $f_z = 3.694 \times 0.17 = 0.58$ mm/tooth and $ECT_E = 0.0119 \times 0.95 = 0.0113$ mm and $0.0357 \times 0.95 = 0.0339$ mm for 2 and 6 teeth respectively. These cutters are marked HS2 and HS6 in Fig. 26a, Fig. 26d, and Fig. 26e.

Example, High-Speed End Milling: For a cutter with $D = 25$ mm and $ar = 0.25$ mm, calculate ECT_E for $f_z = 0.17$ and $z = 2$ and 6. First calculate $ar/D = 0.01$, and then use Table 2b and find $ECT_{0E} = 0.0069$ and 0.0207 for 2 and 6 teeth respectively. When obtaining such small values of *ECT*, there is a great danger to be far on the left side of the *H*-curve, at least when there are only 2 teeth. Doubling the feed would be the solution if cutter design and material permit.

Example, Full Slot Milling: For a cutter with $D = 25$ mm and $ar = 25$ mm, calculate ECT_E for $f_z = 0.17$ and $z = 2$ and 6. First calculate $ar/D = 1$, and then use Table 2b and find $ECT_E = 0.108 \times 0.95 = 0.103$ and $3 \times 0.108 \times 0.95 = 0.308$ for 2 and 6 teeth, respectively. These cutters are marked SL2 and SL6 in Fig. 26a, Fig. 26d, and Fig. 26e.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Physics Behind *hm* and *ECT*, Forces and Tool Life (*T*).—The *ECT* concept for all metal cutting and grinding operations says that the more energy put into the process, by increasing feed/rev, feed/tooth, or cutting speed, the life of the edge decreases. When increasing the number of teeth (keeping everything else constant) the work and the process are subjected to a higher energy input resulting in a higher rate of tool wear.

In high-speed milling when the angle of engagement *AE* is small the contact time is shorter compared to slot milling (*ar*/*D* = 1) but the chip becomes shorter as well. Maintaining the same chip thickness as in slot milling has the effect that the energy consumption to remove the chip will be different. Hence, maintaining a constant chip thickness is a good measure when calculating cutting forces (keeping speed constant), but not when determining tool wear. Depending on cutting conditions the wear rate can either increase or decrease, this depends on whether cutting occurs on the left or right side of the *H*-curve.

Fig. 26a shows an example of end milling of steel with coated carbide inserts, where cutting speed *V* is plotted versus *ECT* at 5, 15, 45 and 180 minutes tool-lives. Notice that the *ECT* values are independent of *ar*/*D* or number of teeth or feed/tooth, or whether f_z or f_{z0} is used, as long as the corresponding f_z/f_{z0}-ratio is applied to determine ECT_E. The result is one single curve per tool life. Had cutting speed been plotted versus f_{z0}, *ar*/*D*, or *z* values (number of teeth), several curves would be required at each constant tool life, one for each of these parameters This illustrates the advantage of using the basic parameter *ECT* rather than f_z, or *hm*, or *ar*/*D* on the horizontal axis.

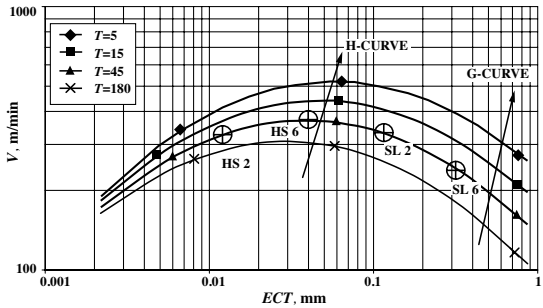


Fig. 26a. Cutting Speed versus *ECT*, Tool Life Plotted, for End Milling

Example: The points (HS2, HS6) and (SL2, SL6) on the 45-minute curve in Fig. 26a relate to the previous high-speed and full slot milling examples for 2 and 6 teeth, respectively.

Running a slot at f_{z0} = 0.17 mm/tooth (*hm* = 0.108, ECT_E = 0.103 mm) with 2 teeth and for a tool life 45 minutes, the cutting speed should be selected at *V* = 340 m/min at point SL2 and for six teeth (*hm* = 0.108 mm, ECT_E = 0.308) at *V* = 240 m/min at point SL6.

When high-speed milling for *ar*/*D* = 0.03 at f_z = 3.394 × 0.17 = 0.58 mm/tooth = 0.58 mm/tooth, *ECT* is reduced to 0.011 mm (*hm* = 0.108) the cutting speed is 290 m/min to maintain *T* = 45 minutes, point HS2. This point is far to the left of the *H*-curve in Fig. 26b, but if the number of teeth is increased to 6 (ECT_E = 3 × 0.103 = 0.3090), the cutting speed is 360 m/min at *T* = 45 minutes and is close to the *H*-curve, point HS6. Slotting data using 6 teeth are on the right of this curve at point SL6, approaching the *G*-curve, but at a lower slotting speed of 240 m/min.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Depending on the starting f_z value, and on the combination of cutter grade and work material, the location of the H-curve plays an important role when selecting high-speed end milling data.

Feed Rate and Tool Life in High-Speed Milling, Effect of *ECT* and Number of Teeth.— Calculation of feed rate is done using the formulas previously given:

Feed Rate:

$F_R = z \times f_z \times \text{rpm}$, where $z \times f_z = f$ (feed/rev of cutter). Feed is measured along the feeding direction.

$\text{rpm} = 1000 \times V/3.1416/D$, where D is diameter of cutter.

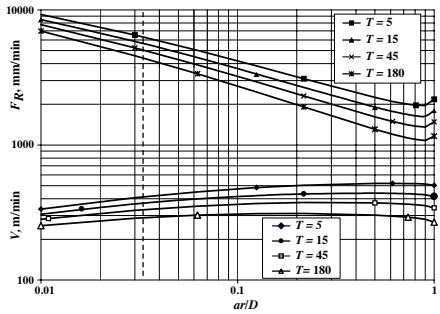


Fig. 26b. High-Speed Feed Rate and Cutting Speed versus *ar*/*D* at $T = 5, 15, 45$, and 180 Minutes

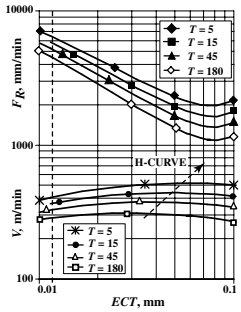


Fig. 26c. High-Speed Feed Rate and Cutting Speed versus *ECT*, *ar*/*D* Plotted at $T = 5, 15, 45$, and 180 Minutes

Fig. 26b shows the variation of feed rate F_R plotted versus *ar*/*D* for tool-lives 5, 15, 45 and 180 minutes with a 25 mm diameter cutter and 2 teeth. Fig. 26c shows the variation of feed rate F_R when plotted versus *ECT*. In both graphs the corresponding cutting speeds are also plotted. The values for $ar/D = 0.03$ in Fig. 26b correspond to $ECT = 0.011$ in Fig. 26c.

Feed rates have a minimum around values of $ar/D = 0.8$ and $ECT = 0.75$ and not along the H-curve. This is due to the fact that the f_z/f_{z0} ratio to maintain a mean chip thickness = 0.108 mm changes F_R in a different proportion than the cutting speed.

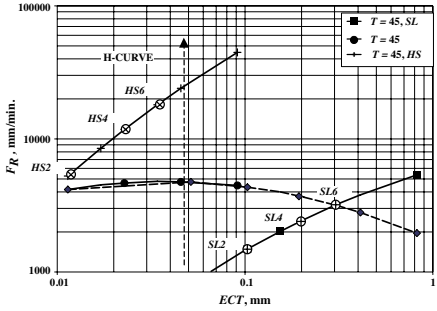


Fig. 26d. Feed Rate versus *ECT* Comparison of Slot Milling ($ar/D = 1$) and High-Speed Milling at ($ar/D = 0.03$) for 2, 4, and 6 Teeth at $T = 45$ Minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A comparison of feed rates for full slot (ar/D = 1) and high-speed end milling (ar/D = 0.03 and $f_z = 3.69 \times f_{z0} = 0.628$ mm) for tool life 45 minutes is shown in Fig. 26d. The points SL2, SL4, SL6 and HS2, HS4, HS6, refer to 2, 4, and 6 teeth (2 to 6 teeth are commonly used in practice). Feed rate is also plotted versus number of teeth z in Fig. 26e, for up to 16 teeth, still at $f_z = 0.628$ mm.

Comparing the effect of using 2 versus 6 teeth in high-speed milling shows that feed rates increase from 5250 mm/min (413 ipm) up to 18,000 mm/min (1417 ipm) at 45 minutes tool life. The effect of using 2 versus 6 teeth in full slot milling is that feed rate increases from 1480 mm/min (58 ipm) up to 3230 mm/min (127 ipm) at tool life 45 minutes. If 16 teeth could be used at ar/D = 0.03, the feed rate increases to F_R = 44,700 mm/min (1760 ipm), and for full slot milling F_R = 5350 mm/min (210 ipm).

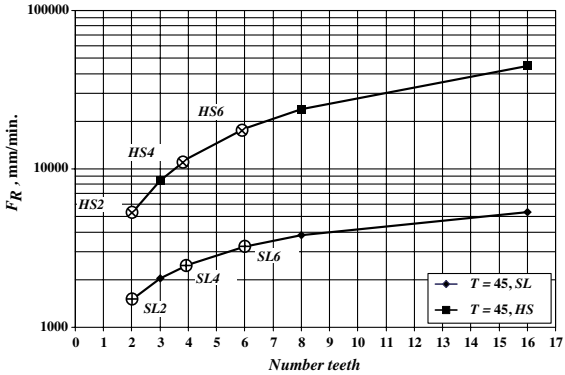


Fig. 26e. Feed Rate versus Number of Teeth Comparison of Slot Milling (ar/D = 1) and High-Speed Milling at (ar/D = 0.03) for 2, 4, and 6 Teeth at T = 45 Minutes

Comparing the feed rates that can be obtained in steel cutting with the one achieved in the earlier referred DARPA investigation, using HSS and carbide cutters milling 6061-T651 and A356-T6 aluminum, it is obvious that aluminum end milling can be run at 3 to 6 times higher feed rates. This requires 3 to 6 times higher spindle speeds (cutter diameter 25 mm, radial depth of cut ar = 12.5 mm, 2 teeth). Had these tests been run with 6 teeth, the feed rates would increase up to 150,000–300,000 mm/min, when feed/tooth = 3.4 × 0.25 = 0.8 mm/tooth at ar/D = 0.03.

Process Econometrics Comparison of High-Speed and Slot End Milling.—When making a process econometrics comparison of high-speed milling and slot end milling use the formulas for total cost c_{tot} (*Determination of Machine Settings and Calculation of Costs* starting on page 1216). Total cost is the sum of the cost of cutting, tool changing, and tooling:

$$c_{tot} = H_R \times (Dist/F_R) \times (1 + T_V/T)/60$$

where $T_V = T_{RPL} + 60 \times C_E/H_R$ = equivalent tooling-cost time, minutes

T_{RPL} = replacement time for a set of edges or tool for regrinding

C_E = cost per edge(s)

H_R = hourly rate, $

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fig. 27 compares total cost c_{tot}, using the end milling cutters of the previous examples, for full slot milling with high-speed milling at ar/D =0.03, and versus ECT at T = 45 minutes.

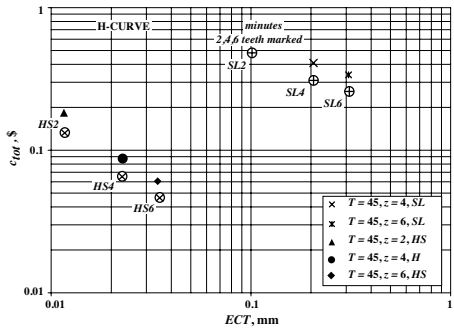


Fig. 27. Cost Comparison of Slot Milling ($ar/D = 1$) and High-Speed Milling at ($ar/D = 0.03$) for 2, 4, and 6 Teeth at $T = 45$ Minutes

The feed/tooth for slot milling is $f_{z0} = 0.17$ and for high-speed milling at $ar/D = 0.03$ the feed is $f_z = 3.69 \times f_{z0} = 0.628$ mm.

The calculations for total cost are done according to above formula using tooling cost at $T_V = 6$, 10, and 14 minutes, for $z = 2$, 4, and 6 teeth respectively. The distance cut is $Dist$ = 1000 mm. Full slot milling costs are,

at feed rate $F_R = 3230$ and $z = 6$

$$c_{tot} = 50 \times (1000/3230) \times (1 + 14/45)/60 = \$0.338 \text{ per part}$$

at feed rate F_R =1480 and $z = 2$

$$c_{tot} = 50 \times (1000/1480) \times (1 + 6/45)/60 = \$0.638 \text{ per part}$$

High-speed milling costs are,

at F_R =18000, $z = 6$

$$c_{tot} = 50 \times (1000/18000) \times (1 + 14/45)/60 = \$0.0606 \text{ per part}$$

at $F_R = 5250, z = 2$

$$c_{tot} = 50 \times (1000/5250) \times (1 + 6/45)/60 = \$0.180 \text{ per part}$$

The cost reduction using high-speed milling compared to slotting is enormous. The cost for high-speed milling with 2 teeth is 61 percent (0.208/0.338) of full slot milling with 6 teeth ($z = 6$). The cost for high-speed milling with 6 teeth is 19 percent (0.0638/0.338) of full slot for $z = 6$.

Aluminum end milling can be run at 3 to 6 times lower costs than when cutting steel. Costs of idle (non-machining) and slack time (waste) are not considered in the example. These data hold for perfect milling conditions such as zero run-out and accurate sharpening of all teeth and edges.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SCREW MACHINES, BAND SAWS, CUTTING FLUIDS

Automatic Screw Machine Tool Operations

Speeds and Feeds for Automatic Screw Machine Tools.—Approximate speeds and feeds for standard screw machine tools are given in Table 1 on page 1235.

Knurling in Automatic Screw Machines.—When knurling is done from the cross slide, it is good practice to feed the knurl gradually to the center of the work, starting to feed when the knurl touches the work and then passing off the center of the work with a quick rise of the cam. The knurl should also dwell for a certain number of revolutions, depending on the pitch of the knurl and the kind of material being knurled. See also *KNURLS AND KNURLING* starting on page 1056.

When two knurls are employed for spiral and diamond knurling from the turret, the knurls can be operated at a higher rate of feed for producing a spiral than they can for producing a diamond pattern. The reason for this is that in the first case the knurls work in the same groove, whereas in the latter case they work independently of each other.

Revolutions Required for Top Knurling.—The depth of the teeth and the feed per revolution govern the number of revolutions required for top knurling from the cross slide. If R is the radius of the stock, d is the depth of the teeth, c is the distance the knurl travels from the point of contact to the center of the work at the feed required for knurling, and r is the radius of the knurl. Inch or metric unts may be used in the following equation.

$$c = \sqrt{(R + r)^2 - (R + r - d)^2}$$

Example: If the stock radius R is $^5/_{32}$ inch (or mm), depth of teeth d is 0.0156 inch (or mm), and radius of knurl r is 0.3125 inch (or mm), then

$$c = \sqrt{(0.1562 + 0.3125)^2 - (0.1562 + 0.3125 - 0.0156)^2}$$
$$= 0.120 \text{ inch (or mm)} = \text{cam rise required}$$

Example: Assume that it is required to find the number of revolutions to knurl a piece of brass $^5/_{16}$ inch in diameter using a 32 pitch knurl. The included angle of the teeth for brass is 90 degrees, the circular pitch is 0.03125 inch, and the calculated tooth depth is 0.0156 inch. The distance c (as determined in the previous example) is 0.120 inch. Referring to Table 1 on page 1235, the feed for top knurling brass is 0.005 inch per revolution. The number of revolutions required for knurling is, therefore, 0.120 ÷ 0.005 = 24 revolutions. If conditions permit, the higher feed of 0.008 inch per revolution given in the table may be used, and 15 revolutions are then required for knurling.

Cams for Threading.—Table 2 on page 1237 gives the revolutions required for threading various lengths and pitches and the corresponding rise for the cam lobe. To illustrate the use of this table, suppose a set of cams is required for threading a screw to the length of $^3/_8$ inch in a Brown & Sharpe machine. Assume that the spindle speed is 2400 revolutions per minute; the number of revolutions to complete one piece, 400; time required to make one piece, 10 seconds; pitch of the thread, $^1/_{32}$ inch or 32 threads per inch. By referring to Table 2, under 32 threads per inch, and opposite $^3/_8$ inch (length of threaded part), the number of revolutions required is found to be 15 and the rise required for the cam, 0.413 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Approximate Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Standard Automatic Screw Machine Tools—Brown and Sharpe

Tool	Cut		Material to be Machined						
			Brass[a]	Mild or Soft Steel			Tool Steel, 0.80–1.00% C		
					Surface Speed, Feet per Min.			Surface Speed, Feet per Min.	
	Width or Depth, Inches	Dia. of Hole, Inches	Feed, Inches per Rev.	Feed, Inches per Rev.	Carbon Tools	H.S.S. Tools	Feed, Inches per Rev.	Carbon Tools	H.S.S. Tools
Boring tools	0.005	…	…	0.008	50	110	0.004	30	60
Box tools, roller rest	1/32	…	0.012	0.010	70	150	0.005	40	75
	1/16	…	0.010	0.008	70	150	0.004	40	75
Single chip finishing	1/8	…	0.008	0.007	70	150	0.003	40	75
	3/16	…	0.008	0.006	70	150	0.002	40	75
	1/4	…	0.006	0.005	70	150	0.0015	40	75
Finishing	0.005	…	0.010	0.010	70	150	0.006	40	75
Center drills	…	Under 1/8	0.003	0.0015	50	110	0.001	30	75
	…	Over 1/8	0.006	0.0035	50	110	0.002	30	75
Cutoff tools { Angular	…	…	0.0015	0.0006	80	150	0.0004	50	85
Cutoff tools { Circular	3/64–1/8	…	0.0035	0.0015	80	150	0.001	50	85
Cutoff tools { Straight	1/16–1/8	…	0.0035	0.0015	80	150	0.001	50	85
Stock diameter under 1/8 in.	…	…	0.002	0.0008	80	150	0.0005	50	85
Dies { Button	…	…	…	…	30	…	…	14	…
Dies { Chaser	…	…	…	…	30	40	…	16	20
Drills, twist cut	…	0.02	0.0014	0.001	40	60	0.0006	30	45
	…	0.04	0.002	0.0014	40	60	0.0008	30	45
	…	1/16	0.004	0.002	40	60	0.0012	30	45
	…	3/32	0.006	0.0025	40	60	0.0016	30	45
	…	1/8	0.009	0.0035	40	75	0.002	30	60
	…	3/16	0.012	0.004	40	75	0.003	30	60
	…	1/4	0.014	0.005	40	75	0.003	30	60
	…	5/16	0.016	0.005	40	75	0.0035	30	60
	…	3/8–5/8	0.016	0.006	40	85	0.004	30	60
Form tools, circular	1/8	…	0.002	0.0009	80	150	0.0006	50	85
	1/4	…	0.002	0.0008	80	150	0.0005	50	85
	3/8	…	0.0015	0.0007	80	150	0.0004	50	85
	1/2	…	0.0012	0.0006	80	150	0.0004	50	85
	5/8	…	0.001	0.0005	80	150	0.0003	50	85
	3/4	…	0.001	0.0005	80	150	0.0003	50	85
	1	…	0.001	0.0004	80	150	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Approximate Cutting Speeds and Feeds for Standard Automatic Screw Machine Tools—Brown and Sharpe**

Tool	Cut: Width or Depth, Inches	Cut: Dia. of Hole, Inches	Material to be Machined: Brass[a] Feed, Inches per Rev.	Mild or Soft Steel: Feed, Inches per Rev.	Mild or Soft Steel: Surface Speed, Feet per Min. Carbon Tools	Mild or Soft Steel: Surface Speed, Feet per Min. H.S.S. Tools	Tool Steel, 0.80–1.00% C: Feed, Inches per Rev.	Tool Steel, 0.80–1.00% C: Surface Speed, Feet per Min. Carbon Tools	Tool Steel, 0.80–1.00% C: Surface Speed, Feet per Min. H.S.S. Tools
Hollow mills and balance turning tools { Turned diam. under 5⁄32 in. {	1⁄32	…	0.012	0.010	70	150	0.008	40	85
	1⁄16	…	0.010	0.009	70	150	0.006	40	85
Turned diam. over 5⁄32 in. {	1⁄32	…	0.017	0.014	70	150	0.010	40	85
	1⁄16	…	0.015	0.012	70	150	0.008	40	85
	1⁄8	…	0.012	0.010	70	150	0.008	40	85
	3⁄16	…	0.010	0.008	70	150	0.006	40	85
	1⁄4	…	0.009	0.007	70	150	0.0045	40	85
Knee tools	1⁄32	…	…	0.010	70	150	0.008	40	85
Knurling tools { Turret {	On	…	0.020	0.015	150	…	0.010	105	…
	Off	…	0.040	0.030	150	…	0.025	105	…
Side or swing {	…	…	0.004	0.002	150	…	0.002	105	…
	…	…	0.006	0.004	150	…	0.003	105	…
Top {	…	…	0.005	0.003	150	…	0.002	105	…
	…	…	0.008	0.006	150	…	0.004	105	…
Pointing and facing tools	…	…	0.001	0.0008	70	150	0.0005	40	80
	…	…	0.0025	0.002	70	150	0.0008	40	80
Reamers and bits	0.003—0.004	1⁄8 or less	0.010—0.007	0.008—0.006	70	105	0.006—0.004	40	60
	0.004—0.008	1⁄8 or over	0.010	0.010	70	105	0.006—0.008	40	60
Recessing tools { End cut {	…	… {	0.001	0.0006	70	150	0.0004	40	75
	…	…	0.005	0.003	70	150	0.002	40	75
Inside cut	1⁄16-1⁄8	… {	0.0025	0.002	70	105	0.0015	40	60
		…	0.0008	0.0006	70	105	0.0004	40	60
Swing tools, forming	1⁄8	…	0.002	0.0007	70	150	0.0005	40	85
	1⁄4	…	0.0012	0.0005	70	150	0.0003	40	85
	3⁄8	…	0.001	0.0004	70	150	0.0002	40	85
	1⁄2	…	0.0008	0.0003	70	150	0.0002	40	85
Turning, straight and taper[b]	1⁄32	…	0.008	0.006	70	150	0.0035	40	85
	1⁄16	…	0.006	0.004	70	150	0.003	40	85
	1⁄8	…	0.005	0.003	70	150	0.002	40	85
	3⁄16	…	0.004	0.0025	70	150	0.0015	40	85
Taps	…	…	…	…	25	30	…	12	15

[a] Use maximum spindle speed on machine.
[b] For taper turning use feed slow enough for greatest depth depth of cut.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Spindle Revolutions and Cam Rise for Threading

Length of Threaded Portion, Inch	Number of Threads per Inch														
	80	72	64	56	48	40	36	32	30	28	24	20	18	16	14
	First Line: Revolutions of Spindle for Threading. Second Line: Rise on Cam for Threading, Inch														
1/16	9.50	9.00	8.50	8.00	6.00	5.50	5.50	5.00	5.00	5.00	3.00	…	…	…	…
	0.107	0.113	0.120	0.129	0.110	0.121	0.134	0.138	0.147	0.157	0.106	…	…	…	…
1/8	14.50	13.50	12.50	11.50	9.00	8.00	7.00	7.00	7.00	6.50	4.50	4.00	3.50	3.50	…
	0.163	0.169	0.176	0.185	0.165	0.176	0.171	0.193	0.205	0.204	0.159	0.170	0.165	0.186	…
3/16	19.50	18.00	16.50	15.00	12.00	10.50	10.00	9.00	8.50	8.50	6.00	5.50	5.00	4.50	4.00
	0.219	0.225	0.232	0.241	0.220	0.231	0.244	0.248	0.249	0.267	0.213	0.234	0.236	0.239	0.243
1/4	24.50	23.508	20.50	18.50	15.00	13.00	12.00	11.00	10.50	10.00	7.50	6.50	6.00	5.50	5.00
	0.276	0.294	0.288	0.297	0.275	0.286	0.293	0.303	0.308	0.314	0.266	0.276	0.283	0.292	0.304
5/16	29.50	27.00	24.50	22.00	18.00	15.50	14.50	13.00	12.50	12.00	9.00	8.00	7.00	6.50	6.00
	0.332	0.338	0.345	0.354	0.340	0.341	0.354	0.358	0.367	0.377	0.319	0.340	0.330	0.345	0.364
3/8	34.50	31.50	28.50	25.50	21.00	18.00	16.50	15.00	14.50	13.50	10.50	9.00	8.50	7.50	7.00
	0.388	0.394	0.401	0.410	0.385	0.396	0.403	0.413	0.425	0.424	0.372	0.383	0.401	0.398	0.425
7/16	39.50	36.00	32.50	29.00	24.00	20.50	19.00	17.00	16.00	15.50	12.00	10.50	9.50	8.50	7.50
	0.444	0.450	0.457	0.466	0.440	0.451	0.464	0.468	0.469	0.487	0.425	0.446	0.448	0.451	0.455
1/2	44.50	40.50	36.50	32.50	27.00	23.00	21.00	19.00	18.00	17.00	13.50	11.50	10.50	9.50	8.50
	0.501	0.506	0.513	0.522	0.495	0.506	0.513	0.523	0.528	0.534	0.478	0.489	0.496	0.504	0.516
9/16	49.50	45.00	40.50	36.00	30.00	25.50	23.50	21.00	20.00	19.00	15.00	13.00	11.50	10.50	9.50
	0.559	0.563	0.570	0.579	0.550	0.561	0.574	0.578	0.587	0.597	0.531	0.553	0.543	0.558	0.577
5/8	54.50	49.50	44.50	39.50	33.00	28.00	25.50	23.00	22.00	20.50	16.50	14.00	13.00	11.50	10.50
	0.613	0.619	0.626	0.635	0.605	0.616	0.623	0.633	0.645	0.644	0.584	0.595	0.614	0.611	0.637
11/16	59.50	54.00	48.50	43.00	36.00	30.50	28.00	25.00	23.50	22.50	18.00	15.50	14.00	12.50	11.00
	0.679	0.675	0.682	0.691	0.660	0.671	0.684	0.688	0.689	0.707	0.638	0.659	0.661	0.664	0.668
3/4	64.50	58.50	52.50	46.50	39.00	33.00	30.00	27.00	25.50	24.00	19.50	16.50	15.00	13.50	12.00
	0.726	0.731	0.738	0.747	0.715	0.726	0.733	0.743	0.748	0.754	0.691	0.701	0.708	0.717	0.728

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Threading cams are often cut on a circular milling attachment. When this method is employed, the number of minutes the attachment should be revolved for each 0.001 inch rise, is first determined. As 15 spindle revolutions are required for threading and 400 for completing one piece, that part of the cam surface required for the actual threading operation equals 15 ÷ 400 = 0.0375, which is equivalent to 810 minutes of the circumference. The total rise, through an arc of 810 minutes is 0.413 inch, so the number of minutes for each 0.001 inch rise equals 810 ÷ 413 = 1.96 or, approximately, two minutes. If the attachment is graduated to read to five minutes, the cam will be fed laterally 0.0025 inch each time it is turned through five minutes of arc.

Practical Points on Cam and Tool Design.—The following general rules are given to aid in designing cams and special tools for automatic screw machines, and apply particularly to Brown and Sharpe machines:

1) Use the highest speeds recommended for the material used that the various tools will stand.

2) Use the arrangement of circular tools best suited for the class of work.

3) Decide on the quickest and best method of arranging the operations before designing the cams.

4) Do not use turret tools for forming when the cross-slide tools can be used to better advantage.

5) Make the shoulder on the circular cutoff tool large enough so that the clamping screw will grip firmly.

6) Do not use too narrow a cutoff blade.

7) Allow 0.005 to 0.010 inch (0.127–0.254 mm) for the circular tools to approach the work and 0.003 to 0.005 inch (0.076–0.127 mm) for the cutoff tool to pass the center.

8) When cutting off work, the feed of the cutoff tool should be decreased near the end of the cut where the piece breaks off.

9) When a thread is cut up to a shoulder, the piece should be grooved or necked to make allowance for the lead on the die. An extra projection on the forming tool and an extra amount of rise on the cam will be needed.

10) Allow sufficient clearance for tools to pass one another.

11) Always make a diagram of the cross-slide tools in position on the work when difficult operations are to be performed; do the same for the tools held in the turret.

12) Do not drill a hole the depth of which is more than 3 times the diameter of the drill, but rather use two or more drills as required. If there are not enough turret positions for the extra drills needed, make provision for withdrawing the drill clear of the hole and then advancing it into the hole again.

13) Do not run drills at low speeds. Feeds and speeds recommended in Table 1 on page 1235 should be followed as far as is practicable.

14) When the turret tools operate farther in than the face of the chuck, see that they will clear the chuck when the turret is revolved.

15) See that the bodies of all turret tools will clear the side of the chute when the turret is revolved.

16) Use a balance turning tool or a hollow mill for roughing cuts.

17) The rise on the thread lobe should be reduced so that the spindle will reverse when the tap or die holder is drawn out.

18) When bringing another tool into position after a threading operation, allow clearance before revolving the turret.

19) Make provision to revolve the turret rapidly, especially when pieces are being made in from three to five seconds and when only a few tools are used in the turret. It is sometimes desirable to use two sets of tools.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

20) When using a belt-shifting attachment for threading, clearance should be allowed, as it requires extra time to shift the belt.

21) When laying out a set of cams for operating on a piece that requires to be slotted, cross-drilled or burred, allowance should be made on the lead cam so that the transferring arm can descend and ascend to and from the work without coming in contact with any of the turret tools.

22) Always provide a vacant hole in the turret when it is necessary to use the transferring arm.

23) When designing special tools allow as much clearance as possible. Do not make them so that they will just clear each other, as a slight inaccuracy in the dimensions will often cause trouble.

24) When designing special tools having intricate movements, avoid springs as much as possible, and use positive actions.

Stock for Screw Machine Products.—The amount of stock required for the production of 1000 pieces on the automatic screw machine can be obtained directly from Table 3 on page 1240. To use this table, add to the length of the work the width of the cut-off tool blade; then the number of feet of material required for 1000 pieces can be found opposite the figure thus obtained, in the column headed "Feet per 1000 Parts." Screw machine stock usually comes in bars 10 feet (3.048 m) long, and in compiling this table an allowance was made for chucking on each bar.

The table can be extended by using the following formula, in which

$F =$ number of feet required for 1000 pieces

$L =$ length of piece in inches

$W =$ width of cut-off tool blade in inches

$$F = (L + W) \times 84$$

The amount to add to the length of the work, or the width of the cut-off tool, is given in the following, which is standard in a number of machine shops:

Diameter of Stock		Width of Cut-off Tool Blade	
in	mm	in	mm
0.000–0.250	0.000–6.35	0.045	1.44
0.251–0.375	6.38–9.53	0.062	1.57
0.376–0.625	9.55–15.88	0.093	2.36
0.626–1.000	15.90–25.40	0.125	3.18
1.001–1.500	25.43–38.10	0.156	3.96

It is sometimes convenient to know the weight of a certain number of pieces, when estimating the price. The weight of round bar stock can be found by means of the following formulas, in which

$W =$ weight in pounds

$D =$ diameter of stock in inches

$F =$ length in feet

For brass stock: $W = D^2 \times 2.86 \times F$

For steel stock: $W = D^2 \times 2.675 \times F$

For iron stock: $W = D^2 \times 2.65 \times F$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Stock Required for Screw Machine Products

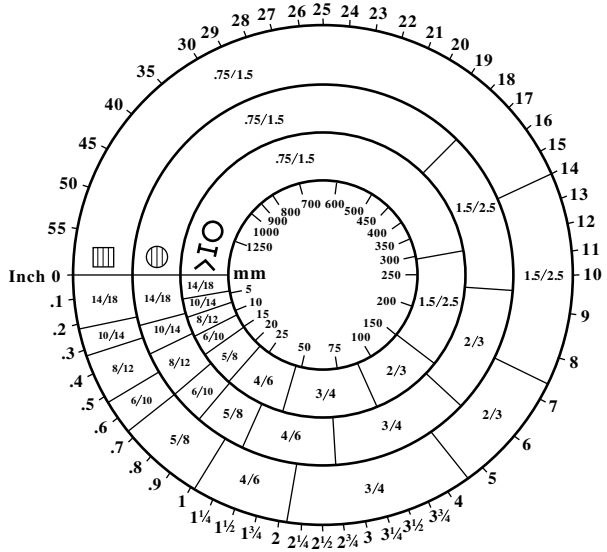
The table gives the amount of stock, in feet, required for 1000 pieces, when the length of the finished part plus the thickness of the cut-off tool blade is known. Allowance has been made for chucking. To illustrate, if length of cut-off tool and work equals 0.140 inch, 11.8 feet of stock is required for the production of 1000 parts.

Length of Piece and Cut-Off Tool	Feet per 1000 Parts	Length of Piece and Cut-Off Tool	Feet per 1000 Parts	Length of Piece and Cut-Off Tool	Feet per 1000 Parts	Length of Piece and Cut-Off Tool	Feet per 1000 Parts
0.050	4.2	0.430	36.1	0.810	68.1	1.380	116.0
0.060	5.0	0.440	37.0	0.820	68.9	1.400	117.6
0.070	5.9	0.450	37.8	0.830	69.7	1.420	119.3
0.080	6.7	0.460	38.7	0.840	70.6	1.440	121.0
0.090	7.6	0.470	39.5	0.850	71.4	1.460	122.7
0.100	8.4	0.480	40.3	0.860	72.3	1.480	124.4
0.110	9.2	0.490	41.2	0.870	73.1	1.500	126.1
0.120	10.1	0.500	42.0	0.880	73.9	1.520	127.7
0.130	10.9	0.510	42.9	0.890	74.8	1.540	129.4
0.140	11.8	0.520	43.7	0.900	75.6	1.560	131.1
0.150	12.6	0.530	44.5	0.910	76.5	1.580	132.8
0.160	13.4	0.540	45.4	0.920	77.3	1.600	134.5
0.170	14.3	0.550	46.2	0.930	78.2	1.620	136.1
0.180	15.1	0.560	47.1	0.940	79.0	1.640	137.8
0.190	16.0	0.570	47.9	0.950	79.8	1.660	139.5
0.200	16.8	0.580	48.7	0.960	80.7	1.680	141.2
0.210	17.6	0.590	49.6	0.970	81.5	1.700	142.9
0.220	18.5	0.600	50.4	0.980	82.4	1.720	144.5
0.230	19.3	0.610	51.3	0.990	83.2	1.740	146.2
0.240	20.2	0.620	52.1	1.000	84.0	1.760	147.9
0.250	21.0	0.630	52.9	1.020	85.7	1.780	149.6
0.260	21.8	0.640	53.8	1.040	87.4	1.800	151.3
0.270	22.7	0.650	54.6	1.060	89.1	1.820	152.9
0.280	23.5	0.660	55.5	1.080	90.8	1.840	154.6
0.290	24.4	0.670	56.3	1.100	92.4	1.860	156.3
0.300	25.2	0.680	57.1	1.120	94.1	1.880	158.0
0.310	26.1	0.690	58.0	1.140	95.8	1.900	159.7
0.320	26.9	0.700	58.8	1.160	97.5	1.920	161.3
0.330	27.7	0.710	59.7	1.180	99.2	1.940	163.0
0.340	28.6	0.720	60.5	1.200	100.8	1.960	164.7
0.350	29.4	0.730	61.3	1.220	102.5	1.980	166.4
0.360	30.3	0.740	62.2	1.240	104.2	2.000	168.1
0.370	31.1	0.750	63.0	1.260	105.9	2.100	176.5
0.380	31.9	0.760	63.9	1.280	107.6	2.200	184.9
0.390	32.8	0.770	64.7	1.300	109.2	2.300	193.3
0.400	33.6	0.780	65.5	1.320	110.9	2.400	201.7
0.410	34.5	0.790	66.4	1.340	112.6	2.500	210.1
0.420	35.3	0.800	67.2	1.360	114.3	2.600	218.5

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Band Saw Blade Selection

The primary factors to consider in choosing a saw blade are: the pitch, or the number of teeth per inch of blade; the tooth form; and the blade type (material and construction). Tooth pitch selection depends on the size and shape of the work, whereas tooth form and blade type depend on material properties of the workpiece and on economic considerations of the job.



Courtesy of American Saw and Manufacturing Company

The tooth selection chart above is a guide to help determine the best blade pitch for a particular job. The tooth specifications in the chart are standard variable-pitch blade sizes as specified by the Hack and Band Saw Association. The variable-pitch blades listed are designated by two numbers that refer to the approximate maximum and minimum tooth pitch. A 4⁄6 blade, for example, has a maximum tooth spacing of approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) and a minimum tooth spacing of about $\frac{1}{6}$ inch (4.2 mm). Blades are available, from most manufacturers, in sizes within about ±10 percent of the sizes listed.

To use the chart, locate the length of cut in inches on the outside circle of the table (for millimeters use the inside circle) and then find the tooth specification that aligns with the length, on the ring corresponding to the material shape. The length of cut is the distance that any tooth of the blade is in contact with the work as it passes once through the cut. For cutting solid round stock, use the diameter as the length of cut and select a blade from the ring with the solid circle. When cutting angles, channels, I-beams, tubular pieces, pipe, and hollow or irregular shapes, the length of cut is found by dividing the cross-sectional area of the cut by the distance the blade needs to travel to finish the cut. Locate the length of cut on the outer ring (inner ring for mm) and select a blade from the ring marked with the angle, I-beam, and pipe sections.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: A 4-inch pipe with a 3-inch inside diameter is to be cut. Select a variable pitch blade for cutting this material.

The area of the pipe is $\pi/4 \times (4^2 - 3^2) = 5.5$ in^2. The blade has to travel 4 inches to cut through the pipe, so the average length of cut is 5.5/4 = 1.4 inches. On the tooth selection wheel, estimate the location of 1.4 inches on the outer ring, and read the tooth specification from the ring marked with the pipe, angle, and I-beam symbols. The chart indicates that a 4/6 variable-pitch blade is the preferred blade for this cut.

Tooth Forms.—Band saw teeth are characterized by a tooth form that includes the shape, spacing (pitch), rake angle, and gullet capacity of the tooth. Tooth form affects the cutting efficiency, noise level, blade life, chip-carrying capacity, and the surface finish quality of the cut. The rake angle, which is the angle between the face of the tooth and a line perpendicular to the direction of blade travel, influences the cutting speed. In general, positive rake angles cut faster. The *standard tooth* form has conventional shape teeth, evenly spaced with deep gullets and a 0° rake angle. Standard tooth blades are used for general-purpose cutting on a wide variety of materials. The *skip tooth* form has shallow, widely spaced teeth arranged in narrow bands and a 0° rake angle. Skip tooth blades are used for cutting soft metals, wood, plastics, and composite materials. The *hook tooth* form is similar to the skip tooth, but has a positive rake angle and is used for faster cutting of large sections of soft metal, wood, and plastics, as well as for cutting some metals, such as cast iron, that form a discontinuous chip. The *variable-tooth* (variable-pitch) form has a conventional tooth shape, but the tips of the teeth are spaced a variable distance (pitch) apart. The variable pitch reduces vibration of the blade and gives smoother cutting, better surface finish, and longer blade life. The *variable positive tooth* form is a variable-pitch tooth with a positive rake angle that causes the blade to penetrate the work faster. The variable positive tooth blade increases production and gives the longest blade life.

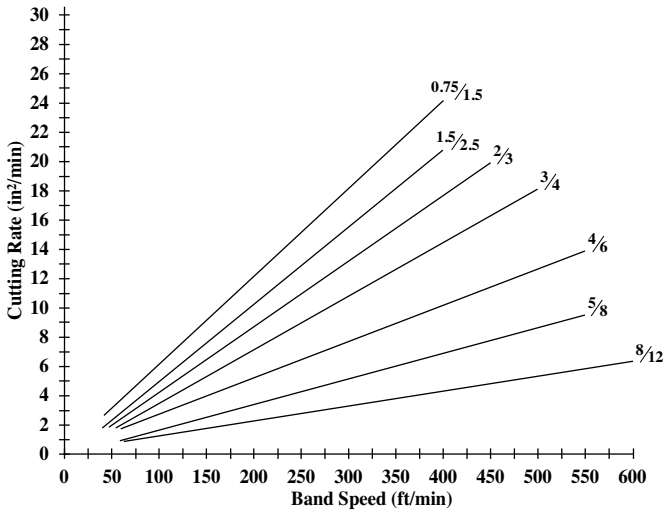
Set is the angle that the teeth are offset from the straight line of a blade. The set affects the blade efficiency (i.e., cutting rate), chip-carrying ability, and quality of the surface finish. *Alternate set* blades have adjacent teeth set alternately one to each side. Alternate set blades, which cut faster but with a poorer finish than other blades, are especially useful for rapid rough cutting. A *raker set* is similar to the alternate set, but every few teeth, one of the teeth is set to the center, not to the side (typically every third tooth, but sometimes every fifth or seventh tooth). The raker set pattern cuts rapidly and produces a good surface finish. The *vari-raker set,* or variable raker, is a variable-tooth blade with a raker set. The vari-raker is quieter and produces a better surface finish than a raker set standard tooth blade. *Wavy set* teeth are set in groups, alternately to one side, then to the other. Both wavy set and vari-raker set blades are used for cutting tubing and other interrupted cuts, but the blade efficiency and surface finish produced are better with a vari-raker set blade.

Types of Blades.—The most important band saw blade types are carbon steel, bimetal, carbide tooth, and grit blades made with embedded carbide or diamond. *Carbon steel blades* have the lowest initial cost, but they may wear out faster. Carbon steel blades are used for cutting a wide variety of materials, including mild steels, aluminum, brass, bronze, cast iron, copper, lead, and zinc, as well as some abrasive materials such as cork, fiberglass, graphite, and plastics. *Bimetal blades* are made with a high-speed steel cutting edge that is welded to a spring steel blade back. Bimetal blades are stronger and last longer, and they tend to produce straighter cuts because the blade can be tensioned higher than carbon steel blades. Because bimetal blades last longer, the cost per cut is frequently lower than when using carbon steel blades. Bimetal blades are used for cutting all ferrous and nonferrous metals, a wide range of shapes of easy to moderately machinable material, and solids and heavy wall tubing with moderate to difficult machinability. *Tungsten carbide blades* are similar to bimetal blades but have tungsten carbide teeth welded to the blade back. The welded teeth of carbide blades have greater wear and high-temperature resistance than either carbon steel or bimetal blades and produce less tooth vibration, while giving smoother, straighter, faster, and quieter cuts requiring less feed force. Carbide blades are used on tough alloys such as cobalt, nickel- and titanium-based alloys, and for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

nonferrous materials such as aluminum castings, fiberglass, and graphite. The *carbide grit blade* has tungsten carbide grit metallurgically bonded to either a gulleted (serrated) or toothless steel band. The blades are made in several styles and grit sizes. Both carbide grit and diamond grit blades are used to cut materials that conventional (carbon and bimetal) blades are unable to cut such as: fiberglass, reinforced plastics, composite materials, carbon and graphite, aramid fibers, plastics, cast iron, stellites, high-hardness tool steels, and superalloys.

Band Saw Speed and Feed Rate.—The band speed necessary to cut a particular material is measured in feet per minute (fpm) or in meters per minute (m/min), and depends on material characteristics and size of the workpiece. Typical speeds for a bimetal blade cutting 4-inch material with coolant are given in the speed selection table that follows. For other size materials or when cutting without coolant, adjust speeds according to the instructions at the bottom of the table.



Cutting Rates for Band Saws

The feed or cutting rate, usually measured in square inches or square meters per minute, indicates how fast material is being removed and depends on the speed and pitch of the blade, not on the workpiece material. The graph above, based on material provided by American Saw and Mfg., gives approximate cutting rates (in^2/min) for various variable-pitch blades and cutting speeds. Use the value from the graph as an initial starting value and then adjust the feed based on the performance of the saw. The size and character of the chips being produced are the best indicators of the correct feed force. Chips that are curly, silvery, and warm indicate the best feed rate and band speed. If the chips appear burned and heavy, the feed is too great, so reduce the feed rate, the band speed, or both. If the chips are thin or powdery, the feed rate is too low, so increase the feed rate or reduce the band speed. The actual cutting rate achieved during a cut is equal to the area of the cut divided by the time required to finish the cut. The time required to make a cut is equal to the area of the cut divided by the cutting rate in square inches per minute.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bimetal Band Saw Speeds for Cutting 4-Inch Material with Coolant

Material	Category (AISI/SAE)	Speed (fpm)	Speed (m/min)
Aluminum Alloys	1100, 2011, 2017, 2024, 3003, 5052, 5086, 6061, 6063, 6101, 6262, 7075	500	152
Cast Iron	A536 (60-40-18)	360	110
	A47	300	91
	A220 (50005), A536 (80-55-06)	240	73
	A48 (20 ksi)	230	70
	A536 (100-70-03)	185	56
	A48 (40 ksi)	180	55
	A220 (60004)	170	52
	A436 (1B)	150	46
	A220 (70003)	145	44
	A436 (2)	140	43
	A220 (80002), A436 (2B)	125	38
	A536 (120-90-02)	120	37
	A220 (90001), A48 (60 ksi)	100	30
	A439 (D-2)	80	24
	A439 (D-2B)	60	18
Cobalt	WF-11	65	20
	Astroloy M	60	18
Copper	356, 360	450	137
	353	400	122
	187, 1452	375	114
	380, 544	350	107
	173, 932, 934	315	96
	330, 365	285	87
	623, 624	265	81
	230, 260, 272, 280, 464, 632, 655	245	75
	101, 102, 110, 122, 172, 17510, 182, 220, 510, 625, 706, 715	235	72
	630	230	70
	811	215	66
Iron Base Super Alloy	Pyromet X-15	120	37
	A286, Incoloy 800 and 801	90	27
Magnesium	AZ31B	900	274
Nickel	Nickel 200, 201, 205	85	26
Nickel Alloy	Inconel 625	100	30
	Incoloy 802, 804	90	27
	Monel R405	85	26
	20CB3	80	24
	Monel 400, 401	75	23
	Hastelloy B, B2, C, C4, C22, C276, F, G, G2, G3, G30, N, S, W, X, Incoloy 825, 926, Inconel 751, X750, Waspaloy	70	21
	Monel K500	65	20
	Incoloy 901, 903, Inconel 600, 718, Ni-Span-C902, Nimonic 263, Rene 41, Udimet 500	60	18
	Nimonic 75	50	15
Stainless Steel	416, 420	190	58
	203EZ, 430, 430F, 4302	150	46
	303, 303PB, 303SE, 410, 440F, 30323	140	43
	304	120	37
	414, 30403	115	35
	347	110	34
	316, 31603	100	30
	Greek Ascoloy	95	29
	18-18-2, 309, Ferralium	90	27
	15-5PH, 17-4PH, 17-7PH, 2205, 310, AM350, AM355, Custom 450, Custom 455, PH13-8Mo, PH14-8Mo, PH15-7Mo	80	24
	22-13-5, Nitronic 50, 60	60	18

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bimetal Band Saw Speeds for Cutting 4-Inch Material with Coolant *(Continued)*

Material	Category (AISI/SAE)	Speed (fpm)	Speed (m/min)
Steel	12L14	425	130
	1213, 1215	400	122
	1117	340	104
	1030	330	101
	1008, 1015, 1020, 1025	320	98
	1035	310	94
	1018, 1021, 1022, 1026, 1513, A242 Cor-Ten A	300	91
	1137	290	88
	1141, 1144, 1144 Hi Stress	280	85
	41L40	275	84
	1040, 4130, A242 Cor-Ten B, (A36 Shapes)	270	82
	1042, 1541, 4140, 4142	250	76
	8615, 8620, 8622	240	73
	W-1	225	69
	1044, 1045, 1330, 4340, E4340, 5160, 8630	220	67
	1345, 4145, 6150	210	64
	1060, 4150, 8640, A-6, O-1, S-1	200	61
	H-11, H-12, H-13, L-6, O-6	190	58
	1095	185	56
	A-2	180	55
	E9310	175	53
	300M, A-10, E52100, HY-80, HY-100	160	49
	S-5	140	43
	S-7	125	38
	M-1	110	34
	HP 9-4-20, HP 9-4-25	105	32
	M-2, M-42, T1	100	30
	D-2	90	27
	T-15	70	21
Titanium	Pure, Ti-3Al-8V-6Cr-4Mo-4Z, Ti-8Mo-8V-2Fe-3Al	80	24
	Ti-2Al-11Sn-5Zr-1Mo, Ti-5Al-2.5Sn, Ti-6Al-2Sn-4Zr-2Mo	75	23
	Ti-6Al-4V	70	21
	Ti-7Al-4Mo, Ti-8Al-1Mo-1V	65	20

The speed figures given are for 4-in. material (length of cut) using a 3/4 variable-tooth bimetal blade and cutting fluid. For cutting dry, reduce speed 30–50%; for carbon steel band saw blades, reduce speed 50%. For other cutting lengths: increase speed 15% for $\frac{1}{4}$-in. material (10/14 blade); increase speed 12% for $\frac{3}{4}$-in. material (6/10 blade); increase speed 10% for $1\frac{1}{4}$-in. material (4/6 blade); decrease speed 12% for 8-in. material (2/3 blade).

Data are based on material provided by LENOX Blades, American Saw & Manufacturing Co.

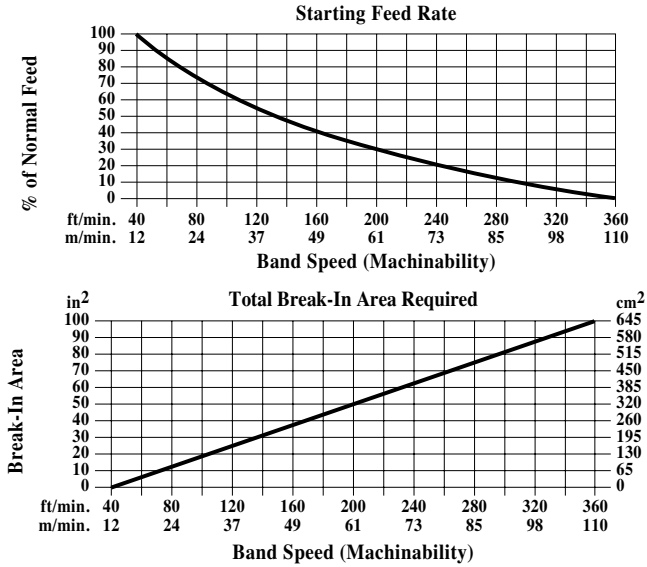
Example: Find the band speed, the cutting rate, and the cutting time if the 4-inch pipe of the previous example is made of 304 stainless steel.

The preceding blade speed table gives the band speed for 4-inch 304 stainless steel as 120 fpm (feet per minute). The average length of cut for this pipe (see the previous example) is 1.4 inches, so increase the band saw speed by about 10 percent (see table footnote on page 1245) to 130 fpm to account for the size of the piece. On the cutting rate graph above, locate the point on the 4/6 blade line that corresponds to the band speed of 130 fpm and then read the cutting rate from the left axis of the graph. The cutting rate for this example is approximately 4 in^2/min. The cutting time is equal to the area of the cut divided by the cutting rate, so cutting time = 5.5/4 = 1.375 minutes.

Band Saw Blade Break-In.— A new band saw blade must be broken in gradually before it is allowed to operate at its full recommended feed rate. Break-in relieves the blade of residual stresses caused by the manufacturing process so that the blade retains its cutting ability longer. Break-in requires starting the cut at the material cutting speed with a low feed rate and then gradually increasing the feed rate over time until enough material has been cut. A blade should be broken in with the material to be cut.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To break in a new blade, first set the band saw speed at the recommended cutting speed for the material and start the first cut at the feed indicated on the starting feed rate graph below. After the saw has penetrated the work to a distance equal to the width of the blade, increase the feed slowly. When the blade is about halfway through the cut, increase the feed again slightly and finish the cut without increasing the feed again. Start the next and each successive cut with the same feed rate that ended the previous cut, and increase the feed rate slightly again before the blade reaches the center of the cut. Repeat this procedure until the area cut by the new blade is equal to the total area required as indicated on the graph below. At the end of the break-in period, the blade should be cutting at the recommended feed rate, otherwise adjusted to that rate.



Cutting Fluids for Machining

The goal in all conventional metal-removal operations is to raise productivity and reduce costs by machining at the highest practical speed consistent with long tool life, fewest rejects, and minimum downtime, and with the production of surfaces of satisfactory accuracy and finish. Many machining operations can be performed "dry," but the proper application of a cutting fluid generally makes possible: higher cutting speeds, higher feed rates, greater depths of cut, lengthened tool life, decreased surface roughness, increased dimensional accuracy, and reduced power consumption. Selecting the proper cutting fluid for a specific machining situation requires knowledge of fluid functions, properties, and limitations. Cutting fluid selection deserves as much attention as the choice of machine tool, tooling, speeds, and feeds.

To understand the action of a cutting fluid it is important to realize that almost all the energy expended in cutting metal is transformed into heat, primarily by the deformation of the metal into the chip and, to a lesser degree, by the friction of the chip sliding against the tool face. With these factors in mind it becomes clear that the primary functions of any

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cutting fluid are: cooling of the tool, workpiece, and chip; reducing friction at the sliding contacts; and reducing or preventing welding or adhesion at the contact surfaces, which forms the "built-up edge" on the tool. Two other functions of cutting fluids are flushing away chips from the cutting zone and protecting the workpiece and tool from corrosion.

The relative importance of the functions is dependent on the material being machined, the cutting tool and conditions, and the finish and accuracy required on the part. For example, cutting fluids with greater lubricity are generally used in low-speed machining and on most difficult-to-cut materials. Cutting fluids with greater cooling ability are generally used in high-speed machining on easier-to-cut materials.

Types of Cutting and Grinding Fluids.—In recent years a wide range of cutting fluids has been developed to satisfy the requirements of new materials of construction and new tool materials and coatings.

There are four basic types of cutting fluids; each has distinctive features, as well as advantages and limitations. Selection of the right fluid is made more complex because the dividing line between types is not always clear. Most machine shops try to use as few different fluids as possible and prefer fluids that have long life, do not require constant changing or modifying, have reasonably pleasant odors, do not smoke or fog in use, and, most important, are neither toxic nor cause irritation to the skin. Other issues in selection are the cost and ease of disposal.The major divisions and subdivisions used in classifying cutting fluids are:

Cutting Oils, including straight and compounded mineral oils plus additives.

Water-Miscible Fluids, including emulsifiable oils; chemical or synthetic fluids; and semichemical fluids.

Gases.

Paste and Solid Lubricants.

Since cutting oils and water-miscible types are the most commonly used cutting fluids in machine shops, discussion will be limited primarily to these types. It should be noted, however, that compressed air and inert gases, such as carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and Freon, are sometimes used in machining. Paste, waxes, soaps, graphite, and molybdenum disulfide may also be used, either applied directly to the workpiece or as an impregnant in the tool, such as in a grinding wheel.

Cutting Oils.—Cutting oils are generally compounds of mineral oil with the addition of animal, vegetable, or marine oils to improve the wetting and lubricating properties. Sulfur, chlorine, and phosphorous compounds, sometimes called extreme pressure (EP) additives, provide for even greater lubricity. In general, these cutting oils do not cool as well as water-miscible fluids.

Water-Miscible Fluids.—*Emulsions or soluble oils* are a suspension of oil droplets in water. These suspensions are made by blending the oil with emulsifying agents (soap and soaplike materials) and other materials. These fluids combine the lubricating and rust-prevention properties of oil with water's excellent cooling properties. Their properties are affected by the emulsion concentration, with "lean" concentrations providing better cooling but poorer lubrication, and with "rich" concentrations having the opposite effect. Additions of sulfur, chlorine, and phosphorus, as with cutting oils, yield "extreme pressure" (EP) grades.

Chemical fluids are true solutions composed of organic and inorganic materials dissolved in water. Inactive types are usually clear fluids combining high rust inhibition, high cooling, and low lubricity characteristics with high surface tension. Surface-active types include wetting agents and possess moderate rust inhibition, high cooling, and moderate lubricating properties with low surface tension. They may also contain chlorine and/or sulfur compounds for extreme pressure properties.

Semichemical fluids are combinations of chemical fluids and emulsions. These fluids have a lower oil content but a higher emulsifier and surface-active-agent content than

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

emulsions, producing oil droplets of much smaller diameter. They possess low surface tension, moderate lubricity and cooling properties, and very good rust inhibition. Sulfur, chlorine, and phosphorus also are sometimes added.

Selection of Cutting Fluids for Different Materials and Operations.—The choice of a cutting fluid depends on many complex interactions including the machinability of the metal; the severity of the operation; the cutting tool material; metallurgical, chemical, and human compatibility; fluid properties, reliability, and stability; and finally cost. Other factors affect results. Some shops standardize on a few cutting fluids which have to serve all purposes. In other shops, one cutting fluid must be used for all the operations performed on a machine. Sometimes, a very severe operating condition may be alleviated by applying the "right" cutting fluid manually while the machine supplies the cutting fluid for other operations through its coolant system. Several voluminous textbooks are available with specific recommendations for the use of particular cutting fluids for almost every combination of machining operation and workpiece and tool material. In general, when experience is lacking, it is wise to consult the material supplier and/or any of the many suppliers of different cutting fluids for advice and recommendations. Another excellent source is the Machinability Data Center, one of the many information centers supported by the US Department of Defense. While the following recommendations represent good practice, they are to serve as a guide only, and it is not intended to say that other cutting fluids will not, in certain specific cases, also be effective.

Steels: Caution should be used when using a cutting fluid on steel that is being turned at a high cutting speed with cemented carbide cutting tools. See *Application of Cutting Fluids to Carbides* later. Frequently this operation is performed dry. If a cutting fluid is used, it should be a soluble oil mixed to a consistency of about 1 part oil to 20 to 30 parts water. A sulfurized mineral oil is recommended for reaming with carbide tipped reamers although a heavy-duty soluble oil has also been used successfully.

The cutting fluid recommended for machining steel with high speed cutting tools depends largely on the severity of the operation. For ordinary turning, boring, drilling, and milling on medium and low strength steels, use a soluble oil having a consistency of 1 part oil to 10 to 20 parts water. For tool steels and tough alloy steels, a heavy-duty soluble oil having a consistency of 1 part oil to 10 parts water is recommended for turning and milling. For drilling and reaming these materials, a light sulfurized mineral-fatty oil is used. For tough operations such as tapping, threading, and broaching, a sulfochlorinated mineral-fatty oil is recommended for tool steels and high-strength steels, and a heavy sulfurized mineral-fatty oil or a sulfochlorinated mineral oil can be used for medium- and low-strength steels. Straight sulfurized mineral oils are often recommended for machining tough, stringy low carbon steels to reduce tearing and produce smooth surface finishes.

Stainless Steel: For ordinary turning and milling a heavy-duty soluble oil mixed to a consistency of 1 part oil to 5 parts water is recommended. Broaching, threading, drilling, and reaming produce best results using a sulfochlorinated mineral-fatty oil.

Copper Alloys: Most brasses, bronzes, and copper are stained when exposed to cutting oils containing active sulfur and chlorine; thus, sulfurized and sulfochlorinated oils should not be used. For most operations a straight soluble oil, mixed to 1 part oil and 20 to 25 parts water is satisfactory. For very severe operations and for automatic screw machine work a mineral-fatty oil is used. A typical mineral-fatty oil might contain 5 to 10 percent lard oil with the remainder mineral oil.

Monel Metal: When turning this material, an emulsion gives a slightly longer tool life than a sulfurized mineral oil, but the latter aids in chip breakage, which is frequently desirable.

Aluminum Alloys: Aluminum and aluminum alloys are frequently machined dry. When a cutting fluid is used it should be selected for its ability to act as a coolant. Soluble oils mixed to a consistency of 1 part oil to 20 to 30 parts water can be used. Mineral oil-base

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cutting fluids, when used to machine aluminum alloys, are frequently cut back to increase their viscosity so as to obtain good cooling characteristics and to make them flow easily to cover the tool and the work. For example, a mineral-fatty oil or a mineral plus a sulfurized fatty oil can be cut back by the addition of as much as 50 percent kerosene.

Cast Iron: Ordinarily, cast iron is machined dry. Some increase in tool life can be obtained or a faster cutting speed can be used with a chemical cutting fluid or a soluble oil mixed to consistency of 1 part oil and 20 to 40 parts water. A soluble oil is sometimes used to reduce the amount of dust around the machine.

Magnesium: Magnesium may be machined dry, or with an air blast for cooling. A light mineral oil of low acid content may be used on difficult cuts. Coolants containing water should not be used on magnesium because of the danger of releasing hydrogen caused by reaction of the chips with water. Proprietary water-soluble oil emulsions containing inhibitors that reduce the rate of hydrogen generation are available.

Grinding: Soluble oil emulsions or emulsions made from paste compounds are used extensively in precision grinding operations. For cylindrical grinding, 1 part oil to 40 to 50 parts water is used. Solution type fluids and translucent grinding emulsions are particularly suited for many fine finish grinding applications. Mineral oil-base grinding fluids are recommended for many applications where a fine surface finish is required on the ground surface. Mineral oils are used with vitrified wheels but are not recommended for wheels with rubber or shellac bonds. Under certain conditions the oil vapor mist caused by the action of the grinding wheel can be ignited by the grinding sparks and explode. To quench the grinding spark a secondary coolant line to direct a flow of grinding oil below the grinding wheel is recommended.

Broaching: For steel, a heavy mineral oil such as sulfurized oil of 300 to 500 Saybolt viscosity at 100°F (38°C) can be used to provide adequate lubricating effect and a dampening of the shock loads. Soluble oil emulsions may be used for the lighter broaching operations.

Cutting Fluids for Turning, Milling, Drilling and Tapping.—The following table, *Cutting Fluids Recommended for Machining Operations*, gives specific cutting oil recommendations for common machining operations.

Soluble Oils: Types of oil paste compounds that form emulsions when mixed with water. Soluble oils are used extensively in machining both ferrous and nonferrous metals when the cooling quality is paramount and the chip-bearing pressure is not excessive. Care should be taken in selecting the proper soluble oil for precision grinding operations. Grinding coolants should be free from fatty materials that tend to load the wheel, thus affecting the finish on the machined part. Soluble coolants should contain rust preventive constituents to prevent corrosion.

Base Oils: Various types of highly sulfurized and chlorinated oils containing inorganic, animal, or fatty materials. This "base stock" usually is "cut back" or blended with a lighter oil, unless the chip-bearing pressures are high, as when cutting alloy steel. Base oils usually have a viscosity range of from 300 to 900 seconds at 100°F (38°C).

Mineral Oils: This group includes all types of oils extracted from petroleum such as paraffin oil, mineral seal oil, and kerosene. Mineral oils are often blended with base stocks, but they are generally used in the original form for light machining operations on both free-machining steels and nonferrous metals. The coolants in this class should be of a type that has a relatively high flash point. Care should be taken to see that they are nontoxic so that they will not be injurious to the operator. The heavier mineral oils (paraffin oils) usually have a viscosity of about 100 seconds at 100°F (38°C). Mineral seal oil and kerosene have a viscosity of 35 to 60 seconds at 100°F (38°C).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cutting Fluids Recommended for Machining Operations

Material to be Cut	Turning	Milling
Aluminum[a]	Mineral Oil with 10 Percent Fat (or) Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil (96 Percent Water) (or) Mineral Seal Oil (or) Mineral Oil
Alloy Steels[b]	25 Percent Sulfur base Oil[b] with 75 Percent Mineral Oil	10 Percent Lard Oil with 90 Percent Mineral Oil
Brass	Mineral Oil with 10 Percent Fat	Soluble Oil (96 Percent Water)
Tool Steels and Low-carbon Steels	25 Percent Lard Oil with 75 Percent Mineral Oil	Soluble Oil
Copper	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Monel Metal	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Cast Iron[c]	Dry	Dry
Malleable Iron	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Bronze	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Magnesium[d]	10 Percent Lard Oil with 90 Percent Mineral Oil	Mineral Seal Oil
Material to be Cut	**Drilling**	**Tapping**
Aluminum[a]	Soluble Oil (75 to 90 Percent Water) (or) 10 Percent Lard Oil with 90 Percent Mineral Oil	Lard Oil (or) Sperm Oil (or) Wool Grease (or) 25 Percent Sulfur-base Oil[b] Mixed with Mineral Oil
Alloy Steels[b]	Soluble Oil	30 Percent Lard Oil with 70 Percent Mineral Oil
Brass	Soluble Oil (75 to 90 Percent Water) (or) 30 Percent Lard Oil with 70 Percent Mineral Oil	10 to 20 Percent Lard Oil with Mineral Oil
Tool Steels and Low-carbon Steels	Soluble Oil	25 to 40 Percent Lard Oil with Mineral Oil (or) 25 Percent Sulfur-base Oil[b] with 75 Percent Mineral Oil
Copper	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Monel Metal	Soluble Oil	25 to 40 Percent Lard Oil Mixed with Mineral Oil (or) Sulfur-base Oil[b] Mixed with Mineral Oil
Cast Iron[c]	Dry	Dry (or) 25 Percent Lard Oil with 75 Percent Mineral Oil
Malleable Iron	Soluble Oil	Soluble Oil
Bronze	Soluble Oil	20 Percent Lard Oil with 80 Percent Mineral Oil
Magnesium[d]	60-second Mineral Oil	20 Percent Lard Oil with 80 Percent Mineral Oil

[a] In machining aluminum, several varieties of coolants may be used. For rough machining, where the stock removal is sufficient to produce heat, water soluble mixtures can be used with good results to dissipate the heat. Other oils that may be recommended are straight mineral seal oil; a 50-50 mixture of mineral seal oil and kerosene; a mixture of 10 percent lard oil with 90 percent kerosene; and a 100-second mineral oil cut back with mineral seal oil or kerosene.

[b] The sulfur-base oil referred to contains $4\frac{1}{2}$ percent sulfur compound. Base oils are usually dark in color. As a rule, they contain sulfur compounds resulting from a thermal or catalytic refinery process. When so processed, they are more suitable for industrial coolants than when they have had such compounds as flowers of sulfur added by hand. The adding of sulfur compounds by hand to the coolant reservoir is of temporary value only, and the non-uniformity of the solution may affect the machining operation.

[c] A soluble oil or low-viscosity mineral oil may be used in machining cast iron to prevent excessive metal dust.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

[d] When a cutting fluid is needed for machining magnesium, low or nonacid mineral seal or lard oils are recommended. Coolants containing water should not be used because of the fire danger when magnesium chips react with water, forming hydrogen gas.

[e] Sulfurized oils ordinarily are not recommended for tapping aluminum; however, for some tapping operations they have proved very satisfactory, although the work should be rinsed in a solvent right after machining to prevent discoloration.

Application of Cutting Fluids to Carbides.—Turning, boring, and similar operations on lathes using carbides are performed dry or with the help of soluble oil or chemical cutting fluids. The effectiveness of cutting fluids in improving tool life or by permitting higher cutting speeds to be used is less with carbides than with high-speed steel tools. Furthermore, the effectiveness of the cutting fluid is reduced as the cutting speed is increased. Cemented carbides are very sensitive to sudden changes in temperature and to temperature gradients within the carbide. Thermal shocks to the carbide will cause thermal cracks to form near the cutting edge, which are a prelude to tool failure. An unsteady or interrupted flow of the coolant reaching the cutting edge will generally cause these thermal cracks. The flow of the chip over the face of the tool can cause an interruption to the flow of the coolant reaching the cutting edge even though a steady stream of coolant is directed at the tool. When a cutting fluid is used and frequent tool breakage is encountered, it is often best to cut dry. When a cutting fluid must be used to keep the workpiece cool for size control or to allow it to be handled by the operator, special precautions must be used. Sometimes applying the coolant from the front and the side of the tool simultaneously is helpful. On lathes equipped with overhead shields, it is very effective to apply the coolant from below the tool into the space between the shoulder of the work and the tool flank, in addition to applying the coolant from the top. Another method is not to direct the coolant stream at the cutting tool at all but to direct it at the workpiece above or behind the cutting tool.

The danger of thermal cracking is great when milling with carbide cutters. The nature of the milling operation itself tends to promote thermal cracking because the cutting edge is constantly heated to a high temperature and rapidly cooled as it enters and leaves the workpiece. For this reason, carbide milling operations should be performed dry.

Lower cutting-edge temperatures diminish the danger of thermal cracking. The cutting-edge temperatures usually encountered when reaming with solid carbide or carbide-tipped reamers are generally such that thermal cracking is not apt to occur except when reaming certain difficult-to-machine metals. Therefore, cutting fluids are very effective when used on carbide reamers. Practically every kind of cutting fluid has been used, depending on the job material encountered. For difficult surface-finish problems in holes, heavy duty soluble oils, sulfurized mineral-fatty oils, and sulfochlorinated mineral-fatty oils have been used successfully. On some work, the grade and the hardness of the carbide also have an effect on the surface finish of the hole.

Cutting fluids should be applied where the cutting action is taking place and at the highest possible velocity without causing splashing. As a general rule, it is preferable to supply from 3 to 5 gallons per minute (11–19 liter/min) for each single-point tool on a machine such as a turret lathe or automatic. The temperature of the cutting fluid should be kept below 110°F (43°C) . If the volume of fluid used is not sufficient to maintain the proper temperature, means of cooling the fluid should be provided.

Cutting Fluids for Machining Magnesium.—In machining magnesium, it is the general but not invariable practice in the United States to use a cutting fluid. In other places, magnesium usually is machined dry except where heat generated by high cutting speeds would not be dissipated rapidly enough without a cutting fluid. This condition may exist when, for example, small tools without much heat-conducting capacity are employed on automatics.

The cutting fluid for magnesium should be an anhydrous oil having, at most, a very low acid content. Various mineral-oil cutting fluids are used for magnesium.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metalworking Fluids

The term *metalworking fluids* (MWFs) describes coolants and lubricants used during the fabrication of products from metals and metal substitutes. These fluids are used to prolong the life of machine tools, carry away debris, and protect or treat the surfaces of the material being processed. MWFs reduce friction between the cutting tool and work surfaces, reduce wear and galling, protect surface characteristics, reduce surface adhesion or welding, carry away generated heat, and flush away swarf, chips, fines, and residues. Table 1 describes the four different classes of metalworking fluids:

Table 1. Classes of Metalworking Fluids (MWFs)

MWF	Description	Dilution factor
Straight oil (neat oil or cutting oil)	Highly refined petroleum oils (lubricant-base oils) or other animal, marine, vegetable, or synthetic oils used singly or in combination with or without additives. These are lubricants, or function to improve the finish on the metal cut, and prevent corrosion.	none
Soluble oil (emulsifiable oil)	Combinations of 30 to 85% highly refined, high-viscosity lubricant-base oils and emulsifiers that may include other performance additives. Soluble oils are diluted with water before use at ratios of parts water.	1 part concentrate to 5 to 40 parts water
Semisynthetic	Contain smaller amounts of severely refined lubricant-base oil (5 to 30% in the concentrate), a higher proportion of emulsifiers that may include other performance additives, and 30 to 50% water.	1 part concentrate to 10 to 40 parts water
Synthetic[a]	Contain no petroleum oils and may be water soluble or water dispersible. The simplest synthetics are made with organic and inorganic salts dissolved in water. Offer good rust protection and heat removal but usually have poor lubricating ability. May be formulated with other performance additives. Stable, can be made bioresistant.	1 part concentrate to 10 to 40 parts water

[a] Over the last several decades major changes in the US machine tool industry have increased the consumption of MWFs. Specifically, the use of synthetic MWFs increased as tool and cutting speeds increased.

Occupational Exposures to Metalworking Fluids (MWFs).—Workers can be exposed to MWFs by inhalation of aerosols (mists) or by skin contact resulting in an increased risk of respiratory (lung) and skin disease. Health effects vary based on the type of MWF, route of exposure, concentration, and length of exposure.

Skin contact usually occurs when the worker dips his/her hands into the fluid, floods the machine tool, or handling parts, tools, equipment or workpieces coated with the fluid, without the use of personal protective equipment such as gloves and apron. Skin contact can also result from fluid splashing onto the worker from the machine if guarding is absent or inadequate.

Inhalation exposures result from breathing MWF mist or aerosol. The amount of mist generated (and the severity of the exposure) depends on a variety of factors: the type of MWF and its application process; the MWF temperature; the specific machining or grinding operation; the presence of splash guarding; and the effectiveness of the ventilation system. In general, the exposure will be higher if the worker is in close proximity to the machine, the operation involves high tool speeds and deep cuts, the machine is not enclosed, or if ventilation equipment was improperly selected or poorly maintained. In addition, high-pressure and/or excessive fluid application, contamination of the fluid with tramp oils, and improper fluid selection and maintenance will tend to result in higher exposure.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Each MWF class consists of a wide variety of chemicals used in different combinations and the risk these chemicals pose to workers may vary because of different manufacturing processes, various degrees of refining, recycling, improperly reclaimed chemicals, different degrees of chemical purity, and potential chemical reactions between components.

Exposure to hazardous contaminants in MWFs may present health risks to workers. Contamination may occur from: process chemicals and ancillary lubricants inadvertently introduced; contaminants, metals, and alloys from parts being machined; water and cleaning agents used for routine housekeeping; and, contaminants from other environmental sources at the worksite. In addition, bacterial and fungal contaminants may metabolize and degrade the MWFs to hazardous end-products as well as produce endotoxins.

The improper use of biocides to manage microbial growth may result in potential health risks. Attempts to manage microbial growth solely with biocides may result in the emergence of biocide-resistant strains from complex interactions that may occur among different member species or groups within the population. For example, the growth of one species, or the elimination of one group of organisms may permit the overgrowth of another. Studies also suggest that exposure to certain biocides can cause either allergic or contact dermatitis.

Fluid Selection, Use, and Application.—The MWFs selected should be as nonirritating and nonsensitizing as possible while remaining consistent with operational requirements. Petroleum-containing MWFs should be evaluated for potential carcinogenicity using ASTM E1687-10 (R2014), "Standard Test Method for Determining Carcinogenic Potential of Virgin Base Oils in Metalworking Fluids". If soluble oil or synthetic MWFs are used, ASTM Standard E1497-17, "Standard Practice for Selection and Safe Use of Water-Miscible and Straight Oil Metal Removal Fluids" should be consulted for safe use guidelines, including those for product selection, storage, dispensing, and maintenance. To minimize the potential for nitrosamine formation, nitrate-containing materials should not be added to MWFs containing ethanolamines.

Many factors influence the generation of MWF mists, which can be minimized through the proper design and operation of the MWF delivery system. ANSI Technical Report B11 TR2-1997, "Mist Control Considerations for the Design, Installation and Use of Machine Tools Using Metalworking Fluids" provides directives for minimizing mist and vapor generation. These include minimizing fluid delivery pressure, matching the fluid to the application, using MWF formulations with low oil concentrations, avoiding contamination with tramp oils, minimizing the MWF flow rate, covering fluid reservoirs and return systems where possible, and maintaining control of the MWF chemistry. Also, proper application of MWFs can minimize splashing and mist generation. Proper application includes: applying MWFs at the lowest possible pressure and flow volume consistent with provisions for adequate part cooling, chip removal, and lubrication; applying MWFs at the tool/workpiece interface to minimize contact with other rotating equipment; ceasing fluid delivery when not performing machining; not allowing MWFs to flow over the unprotected hands of workers loading or unloading parts; and using mist collectors engineered for the operation and specific machine enclosures.

Properly maintained filtration and delivery systems provide cleaner MWFs, reduce mist, and minimize splashing and emissions. Proper maintenance of the filtration and delivery systems includes: the selection of appropriate filters; ancillary equipment such as chip handling operations, dissolved air-flotation devices, belt-skimmers, chillers or plate and frame heat exchangers, and decantation tanks; guard coolant return trenches to prevent dumping of floor wash water and other waste fluids; covering sumps or coolant tanks to prevent contamination with waste or garbage (e.g., cigarette butts, food, etc.); and, keeping the machine(s) clean of debris. Parts washing before machining can be an important part of maintaining cleaner MWFs.

Since all additives will be depleted with time, the MWF and additives concentrations should be monitored frequently so that components and additives can be made up as

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

needed. The MWF should be maintained within the pH and concentration ranges recommended by the formulator or supplier. MWF temperature should be maintained at the lowest practical level to slow the growth of microorganisms, reduce water losses and changes in viscosity, and—in the case of straight oils—reduce fire hazards.

Fluid Maintenance.—Drums, tanks, or other containers of MWF concentrates should be stored appropriately to protect them from outdoor weather conditions and exposure to low or high temperatures. Extreme temperature changes may destabilize the fluid concentrates, especially in the case of concentrates mixed with water, and cause water to seep into unopened drums encouraging bacterial growth. MWFs should be maintained at as low a temperature as is practical. Low temperatures slow the growth of microorganisms, reduce water losses and change in viscosity, and in the case of straight oils, reduce the fire hazard risks.

To maintain proper MWF concentrations, neither water nor concentrate should be used to top off the system. The MWF mixture should be prepared by first adding the concentrate to the clean water (in a clean container) and then adding the emulsion to that mixture in the coolant tank. MWFs should be mixed just before use; large amounts should not be stored, as they may deteriorate before use.

Personal Protective Clothing: Personal protective clothing and equipment should always be worn when removing MWF concentrates from the original container, mixing and diluting concentrate, preparing additives (including biocides), and adding MWF emulsions, biocides, or other potentially hazardous ingredients to the coolant reservoir. Personal protective clothing includes eye protection or face shields, gloves, and aprons which do not react with but shed MWF ingredients and additives.

System Service: Coolant systems should be regularly serviced, and the machines should be rigorously maintained to prevent contamination of the fluids by tramp oils (e.g., hydraulic oils, gear box oils, and machine lubricants leaking from the machines or total loss slideway lubrication). Tramp oils can destabilize emulsions, cause pumping problems, and clog filters. Tramp oils can also float to the top of MWFs, effectively sealing the fluids from the air, allowing metabolic products such as volatile fatty acids, mercaptols, scatols, ammonia, and hydrogen sulfide produced by the anaerobic and facultative anaerobic species growing within the biofilm to accumulate in the reduced state.

When replacing the fluids, thoroughly clean all parts of the system to inhibit the growth of microorganisms growing on surfaces. Some bacteria secrete layers of slime that may grow in stringy configurations that resemble fungal growth. Many bacteria secrete polymers of polysaccharide and/or protein, forming a glycocalyx which cements cells together much as mortar holds bricks. Fungi may grow as masses of hyphae-forming mycelial mats. The attached community of microorganisms is called a biofilm and may be very difficult to remove by ordinary cleaning procedures.

Biocide Treatment: Biocides are used to maintain the functionality and efficacy of MWFs by preventing microbial overgrowth. These compounds are often added to the stock fluids as they are formulated, but over time the biocides are consumed by chemical and biological demands. Biocides with a wide spectrum of biocidal activity should be used to suppress the growth of the widely diverse contaminant population. Only the concentration of biocide needed to meet fluid specifications should be used since overdosing could lead to skin or respiratory irritation in workers, and under-dosing could lead to an inadequate level of microbial control.

Ventilation Systems: The ventilation system should be designed and operated to prevent the accumulation or recirculation of airborne contaminants in the workplace. The ventilation system should include a positive means of bringing in at least an equal volume of air from the outside, conditioning it, and evenly distributing it throughout the exhausted area.

Exhaust ventilation systems function through suction openings placed near a source of contamination. The suction opening or exhaust hood creates air motion sufficient to overcome room air currents and any airflow generated by the process. This airflow

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

captures the contaminants and conveys them to a point where they can either be discharged or removed from the airstream. Exhaust hoods are classified by their position relative to the process as canopy, side draft, down draft or enclosure. ANSI Technical Report B11 TR 2-1997 contains guidelines for exhaust ventilation of machining and grinding operations. Enclosures are the only type of exhaust hood recommended by the ANSI committee. They consist of physical barriers between the process and the worker's environment. Enclosures can be further classified by the extent of the enclosure: close capture (enclosure of the point of operation, total enclosure (enclosure of the entire machine), or tunnel enclosure (continuous enclosure over several machines).

If no fresh make up air is introduced into the plant, air will enter the building through open doors and windows, potentially causing cross-contamination of all process areas. Ideally, all air exhausted from the building should be replaced by tempered air from an uncontaminated location. By providing a slight excess of make up air in relatively clean areas and slight deficit of make up air in dirty areas, cross-contamination can be reduced. In addition, this air can be channeled directly to operator work areas, providing the cleanest possible work environment. Ideally, this fresh air should be supplied in the form of a low-velocity air shower (<100 ft/min or <30 m/min) to prevent interference with the exhaust hoods) directly above the worker.

Protective Clothing and Equipment: Engineering controls are used to reduce worker exposure to MWFs. But in the event of airborne exposures that exceed the NIOSH REL or dermal contact with the MWFs, the added protection of chemical protective clothing (CPC) and respirators should be provided. Maintenance staff may also need CPC because their work requires contact with MWFs during certain operations. All workers should be trained in the proper use and care of CPC. After any item of CPC has been in routine use, it should be examined to ensure that its effectiveness has not been compromised.

Selection of the appropriate respirator depends on the operation, chemical components, and airborne concentrations in the worker's breathing zone. Table 2 lists the NIOSH-recommended respiratory protection for workers exposed to MWF aerosol.

Table 2. Respiratory Protection for Workers Exposed to MWF Aerosols*

Concentration of MWF aerosol (mg/m^3)	Minimum respiratory protection[a]
#0.5 mg/m^3 (1 REL)[b]	No respiratory protection required for healthy workers[c]
#5.0 mg/m^3 (10 REL)	Any air-purifying, half-mask respirator including a disposable respirator[d,e] equipped with any P- or R-series particulate filter (P95, P99, P100, R95, R99, or R100) number
#12.5 mg/m^3 (25 REL)	Any powered, air-purifying respirator equipped with a hood or helmet and a HEPA filter[f]

[a] Respirators with higher assigned protection factors (APFs) may be substituted for those with lower APFs [NIOSH 1987a].

[b] APF times the NIOSH REL for total particulate mass. The APF [NIOSH 1987b] is the minimum anticipated level of protection provided by each type of respirator.

[c] See text for recommendations regarding workers with asthma and for other workers affected by MWF aerosols.

[d] A respirator that should be discarded after the end of the manufacturer's recommended period of use or after a noticeable increase in breathing resistance or when physical damage, hygiene considerations, or other warning indicators render the respirator unsuitable for further use.

[e] An APF of 10 is assigned to disposable particulate respirators if they have been properly fitted.

[f] High-efficiency particulate air filter. When organic vapors are a potential hazard during metalworking operations, a combination particulate and organic vapor filter is necessary.

* Only NIOSH/MSHA-approved or NIOSH-approved (effective date July 10, 1995) respiratory equipment should be used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MACHINING NONFERROUS METALS AND NON-METALLIC MATERIALS

Nonferrous Metals

Machining Aluminum.—Some of the alloys of aluminum have been machined successfully without any lubricant or cutting compound, but some form of lubricant is desirable to obtain the best results. For many purposes, a soluble cutting oil is good.

Tools for aluminum and aluminum alloys should have larger relief and rake angles than tools for cutting steel. For high-speed steel turning tools the following angles are recommended: relief angles, 14 to 16 degrees; back rake angle, 5 to 20 degrees; side rake angle, 15 to 35 degrees. For very soft alloys even larger side rake angles are sometimes used. High silicon aluminum alloys and some others have a very abrasive effect on the cutting tool. While these alloys can be cut successfully with high-speed steel tools, cemented carbides are recommended because of their superior abrasion resistance. The tool angles recommended for cemented carbide turning tools are: relief angles, 12 to 14 degrees; back rake angle, 0 to 15 degrees; side rake angle, 8 to 30 degrees.

Cut-off tools and necking tools for machining aluminum and its alloys should have from 12 to 20 degrees back rake angle and the end relief angle should be from 8 to 12 degrees. Excellent threads can be cut with single-point tools in even the softest aluminum. Experience seems to vary somewhat regarding the rake angle for single-point thread cutting tools. Some prefer to use a rather large back and side rake angle although this requires a modification in the included angle of the tool to produce the correct thread contour. When both rake angles are zero, the included angle of the tool is ground equal to the included angle of the thread. Excellent threads have been cut in aluminum with zero rake angle thread-cutting tools using large relief angles, which are 16 to 18 degrees opposite the front side of the thread and 12 to 14 degrees opposite the back side of the thread. In either case, the cutting edges should be ground and honed to a keen edge. It is sometimes advisable to give the face of the tool a few strokes with a hone between cuts when chasing the thread to remove any built-up edge on the cutting edge.

Fine surface finishes are often difficult to obtain on aluminum and aluminum alloys, particularly the softer metals. When a fine finish is required, the cutting tool should be honed to a keen edge and the surfaces of the face and the flank will also benefit by being honed smooth. Tool wear is inevitable, but it should not be allowed to progress too far before the tool is changed or sharpened. A sulphurized mineral oil or a heavy-duty soluble oil will sometimes be helpful in obtaining a satisfactory surface finish. For best results, however, a diamond cutting tool is recommended. Excellent surface finishes can be obtained on even the softest aluminum and aluminum alloys with these tools.

Although ordinary milling cutters can be used successfully in shops where aluminum parts are only machined occasionally, the best results are obtained with coarse-tooth, large helix-angle cutters having large rake and clearance angles. Clearance angles up to 10 to 12 degrees are recommended. When slab milling and end milling a profile, using the peripheral teeth on the end mill, climb milling (also called down milling) will generally produce a better finish on the machined surface than conventional (or up) milling. Face milling cutters should have a large axial rake angle. Standard twist drills can be used without difficulty in drilling aluminum and aluminum alloys although high helix-angle drills are preferred. The wide flutes and high helix-angle in these drills helps to clear the chips. Sometimes split-point drills are preferred. Carbide tipped twist drills can be used for drilling aluminum and its alloys and may afford advantages in some production applications. Ordinary hand and machine taps can be used to tap aluminum and its alloys although spiral-fluted ground thread taps give superior results. Experience has shown that such taps should have a right-hand ground flute when intended to cut right-hand threads and the helix angle should be similar to that used in an ordinary twist drill.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Machining Magnesium.—Magnesium alloys are readily machined and with relatively low power consumption per cubic inch of metal removed. The usual practice is to employ high cutting speeds with relatively coarse feeds and deep cuts. Exceptionally fine finishes can be obtained so that grinding to improve the finish usually is unnecessary. The horsepower normally required in machining magnesium varies from 0.15 to 0.30 hp per cubic inch per minute (0.41-0.82 kW/cm^3/s). While this value is low, especially in comparison with power required for cast iron and steel, the total amount of power for machining magnesium usually is high because of the exceptionally rapid rate at which metal is removed.

Carbide tools are recommended for maximum efficiency, although high-speed steel frequently is employed. Tools should be designed so as to dispose of chips readily or without excessive friction, by employing polished chip-bearing surfaces, ample chip spaces, large clearances, and small contact areas. *Keen-edged tools should always be used*.

Speeds and Feeds for Magnesium: Speeds ordinarily range up to 5000 ft/min (1524 m/min) for rough- and finish-turning, up to 3000 ft/min (915 m/min) for rough-milling, and up to 9000 ft/min (2743 m/min) for finish-milling. The following combinations of speed, feed per revolution, and depth of cut are recommended:

Process	Speed		Feed		Depth of Cut	
	ft/min	m/min	in/rev	mm/rev	inch	mm
Rough Turning	300–600	90–185	0.030–0.100	0.76–2.5	0.5	12.7
	600–1000	185–305	0.020–0.080	0.50–2.0	0.4	10
	1000–1500	305–460	0.010–0.060	0.25–1.5	0.3	7.6
	1500–2000	460–610	0.010–0.040	0.25–1.0	0.2	5.0
	2000–5000	610–1525	0.010–0.030	0.25–0.76	0.1	3.8
Rough Milling	up to 900	up to 275	0.005–0.025	0.13–0.64	up to 0.5	up to 12.7
	900–1500	275–455	0.005–0.020	0.13–0.51	up to 0.375	up to 9.5
	1500–3000	455–915	0.005–0.010	0.13–0.25	up to 0.2	up to 5.1

Lathe Tool Angles for Magnesium: The true or actual rake angle resulting from back and side rakes usually varies from 10 to 15 degrees. Back rake varies from 10 to 20, and side rake from 0 to 10 degrees. Reduced back rake may be employed to obtain better chip breakage. The back rake may also be reduced to from 2 to 8 degrees on form tools or other broad tools to prevent chatter.

Parting Tools: For parting tools, the back rake varies from 15 to 20 degrees, the front end relief 8 to 10 degrees, the side relief measured perpendicular to the top face 8 degrees, the side relief measured in the plane of the top face from 3 to 5 degrees.

Milling Magnesium: In general, the coarse-tooth type of cutter is recommended. The number of teeth or cutting blades may be one-third to one-half the number normally used; however, the two-blade fly-cutter has proved to be very satisfactory. As a rule, the land relief or primary peripheral clearance is 10 degrees followed by secondary clearance of 20 degrees. The lands should be narrow, the width being about $\frac{3}{64}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.19 to 1.59 mm). The rake, which is positive, is about 15 degrees.

Drilling Magnesium: If the depth of a hole is less than five times the drill diameter, an ordinary twist drill with highly polished flutes may be used. The included angle of the point may vary from 70 degrees to the usual angle of 118 degrees. The relief angle is about 12 degrees. The drill should be kept sharp and the outer corners rounded to produce a smooth finish and prevent burr formation. For deep hole drilling, use a drill having a helix angle of 40 to 45 degrees with large polished flutes of uniform cross section throughout the drill length to facilitate the flow of chips. A pyramid-shaped "spur" or "pilot point" at the tip of the drill will reduce the "spiraling or run-off."

Drilling speeds vary from 300 to 2000 feet per minute (90–610 m/min) with feeds per revolution ranging from 0.015 to 0.050 inch (0.38–1.27 mm).

Reaming Magnesium: Reamers up to 1 inch in diameter should have four flutes; larger sizes, six flutes. These flutes may be either parallel with the axis or have a negative helix

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

angle of 10 degrees. The positive rake angle varies from 5 to 8 degrees, the relief angle from 4 to 7 degrees, and the clearance angle from 15 to 20 degrees.

Tapping Magnesium: Standard taps may be used unless Class 3B tolerances are required, in which case the tap should be designed for use in magnesium. A high-speed steel concentric type with a ground thread is recommended. The concentric form, which eliminates the radial thread relief, prevents jamming of chips while the tap is being backed out of the hole. The positive rake angle at the front may vary from 10 to 25 degrees and the "heel rake angle" at the back of the tooth from 3 to 5 degrees. The chamfer extends over two to three threads. For holes up to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm) in diameter, two-fluted taps are recommended; for sizes from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (12.7–19.05 mm), three flutes; and for larger holes, four flutes. Tapping speeds ordinarily range from 75 to 200 feet per minute (23–61 m/min), and mineral oil cutting fluid should be used.

Threading Dies for Magnesium should have about the same cutting angles as taps. Narrow lands should be used to provide ample chip space. Either solid or self-opening dies may be used. The latter type is recommended when maximum smoothness is required. Threads may be cut at speeds up to 1000 feet per minute (305 m/min).

Grinding Magnesium: As a general rule, magnesium is ground dry. The highly inflammable dust should be formed into a sludge by means of a spray of water or low-viscosity mineral oil. Accumulations of dust or sludge should be avoided. For surface grinding, when a fine finish is desirable, a low-viscosity mineral oil may be used.

Machining Zinc Alloy Die Castings.—Machining of zinc alloy die castings is mostly done without a lubricant. For particular work, especially deep drilling and tapping, a lubricant such as lard oil and kerosene (about half and half) or a 50-50 mixture of kerosene and machine oil may be used to advantage. A mixture of turpentine and kerosene has been been found effective on certain difficult jobs.

Reaming: In reaming, tools with six straight flutes are commonly used, although tools with eight flutes irregularly spaced have been found to yield better results by one manufacturer. Many standard reamers have a land that is too wide for best results. A land about 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) wide is recommended but this may often be ground down to around 0.007 or even 0.005 inch (0.18 or even 0.127 mm) to obtain freer cutting, less tendency to loading, and reduced heating.

Turning: Tools of high-speed steel are commonly employed although the application of Stellite and carbide tools, even on short runs, is feasible. For steel or Stellite, a positive top rake of from 0 to 20 degrees and an end clearance of about 15 degrees are commonly recommended. Where side cutting is involved, a side clearance of about 4 degrees minimum is recommended. With carbide tools, the end clearance should not exceed 6 to 8 degrees and the top rake should be from 5 to 10 degrees positive. For boring, facing, and other lathe operations, rake and clearance angles are about the same as for tools used in turning.

Machining Monel and Nickel Alloys.—These alloys are machined with high-speed steel and with cemented carbide cutting tools. High-speed steel lathe tools usually have a back rake of 6 to 8 degrees, a side rake of 10 to 15 degrees, and relief angles of 8 to 12 degrees. Broad-nose finishing tools have a back rake of 20 to 25 degrees and an end relief angle of 12 to 15 degrees. In most instances, standard commercial cemented carbide tool holders and tool shanks can be used which provide an acceptable tool geometry. Honing the cutting edge lightly will help if chipping is encountered.

The most satisfactory tool materials for machining Monel and the softer nickel alloys, such as Nickel 200 and Nickel 230, are M2 and T5 for high-speed steel and crater resistant grades of cemented carbides. For the harder nickel alloys such as K Monel, Permanickel, Duranickel, and Nitinol alloys, the recommended tool materials are T15, M41, M42, M43, and for high-speed steel, M42. For carbides, a grade of crater resistant carbide is recommended when the hardness is less than 300 BHN, and when the hardness is more than

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

300 BHN, a grade of straight tungsten carbide will often work best, although some crater resistant grades will also work well.

A sulfurized oil or a water-soluble oil is recommended for rough and finish turning. A sulfurized oil is also recommended for milling, threading, tapping, reaming, and broaching. Recommended cutting speeds for Monel and the softer nickel alloys are 70 to 100 fpm (20–30 m/min) for high-speed steel tools and 200 to 300 fpm (60–90 m/min) for cemented carbide tools. For the harder nickel alloys, the recommended speed for high-speed steel is 40 to 70 fpm (12–21 m/min) for a hardness up to 300 BHN and for a higher hardness, 10 to 20 fpm (3–6 m/min); for cemented carbides, 175 to 225 fpm (55–70 m/min) when the hardness is less than 300 BHN and for a higher hardness, 30 to 70 fpm (9–21 m/min).

Nickel alloys have a high tendency to work harden. To minimize work hardening caused by machining, the cutting tools should be provided with adequate relief angles and positive rake angles. Furthermore, the cutting edges should be kept sharp and replaced when dull to prevent burnishing of the work surface. The depth of cut and feed should be sufficiently large to ensure that the tool penetrates the work without rubbing.

Machining Copper Alloys.—Copper alloys can be machined by tooling and methods similar to those used for steel, but at higher surface speeds. Machinability of copper alloys is discussed in Table 2 on page 512 and Table 3 on page 516. Machinability is based on a rating of 100 percent for the free-cutting alloy C35000, which machines with small, easily broken chips. As with steels, copper alloys containing lead have the best machining properties, with alloys containing tin and lead having machinability ratings of 80 and 70 percent. Tellurium and sulphur are added to copper alloys to increase machinability with minimum effect on conductivity. Lead additions are made to facilitate machining, as their effect is to produce easily broken chips.

Copper alloys containing silicon, aluminum, manganese and nickel become progressively more difficult to machine, and produce long, stringy chips, the latter alloys having only 20 percent of the machinability of the free-cutting alloys. Although copper is frequently machined dry, a cooling compound is recommended. Other lubricants that have been used include tallow for drilling, gasoline for turning, and beeswax for threading.

Machining Non-Metals

Machining Hard Rubber.—Tools suitable for steel may be used for hard rubber, with no top or side rake angles and 10 to 20 degree clearance angles, of high-speed steel or tungsten carbide. Without coolant, surface speeds of about 200 ft/min (60m/min) are recommended for turning, boring and facing; with coolant, increase up to 300 surface ft/min (90 m/min).

Drilling of hard rubber requires high-speed steel drills of 35 to 40 degree helix angle to obtain maximum cutting speeds and drill life. Feed rates for drilling range up to 0.015 in/rev (0.38 mm/rev). Deep-fluted taps are best for threading hard rubber, and should be 0.002 to 0.005 inch (0.05-0.13 mm) oversize if close tolerances are to be held. Machine oil is used for a lubricant. Hard rubber may be sawn with band saws having 5 to 10 teeth per inch (2–4 teeth/cm), running at about 3000 ft/min (914 m/min) or cut with abrasive wheels. Use of coolant in grinding rubber gives a smoother finish.

Piercing and blanking of sheet rubber is best performed with the rubber or dies heated. Straightening of the often-distorted blanks may be carried out by dropping them into a pan of hot water.

Formica Machining.—Blanks can be cut from sheets of "Formica" either by a band saw or by trepanning tools in a boring mill or a drill press. To saw blanks, first describe a circle as a guide line, then use a 21-gage $3\frac{1}{2}$-point saw running at a speed of 5000 ft/min (1525 m/min). The saw should be sharp, with a $\frac{1}{64}$-inch (0.4 mm) set on both sides. In drilling, use an ordinary high-speed drill whose point is ground to an included angle of 55 to 60 degrees. Another method is to grind the drill point slightly off center. The feed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

must be rapid and caution used to prevent the drill from lagging in its work, and the speed must be 1200 rpm. For all machining operations on "Formica" gear material, provision must be made in grinding for the tools to clear themselves. For reaming, the entry of the reamer and the reaming process must be rapid. There must not be a lag between the end of the reaming operation and the withdrawal of the reamer. In turning the outside diameter and the sides of blanks, the tools must be sharp and have 3 to 5 degrees more rake than is common practice for metal. A cutting speed of 750 fpm (228.6 m/min), equal to 720 rpm on a 4-inch diameter blank, is recommended. The depth of the cut can be $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (1.6–3.2 mm), but the feed should be 0.010 inch (0.25 mm), regardless of the depth of the cut. Teeth may be cut on a hobbing machine, shaper, or milling machine. The speed of the cutter should be 150 fpm (46 m/min) and the feed from 0.023 to 0.040 inch per revolution (0.59–1.02 mm/rev). It is advisable to back up the blank to prevent fraying or breaking out of the material as the cutter comes through. The backing plates can be economically made from hard wood.

Micarta Machining.—In cutting blanks from sheets of "micarta" a band saw running at a speed of 350 revolutions per minute has been found suitable. The saw should be of the bevel-tooth type, seven teeth to the inch. For large quantities a trepanning tool should be used. In trepanning blanks, the tool should be fed so as to cut part way through all of the "layouts"; then the micarta plate should be turned over, and the cutting completed from the reverse side.

Turning tools should be high-speed steel cutting at speeds similar to those for bronze or cast iron. If two cuts are taken, about 0.010 inch (0.254 mm) of stock should be left for the finishing cut.

Drilling at right angles to the layers is done with a standard drill, which should be backed off sufficiently to provide plenty of clearance. When drilling parallel to layers, a "flat" or "bottom" drill should be used. In rough-drilling, the hole should preferably be drilled partly through the material from each side to prevent possible splitting as the tool protrudes. If this is impracticable, the hole can be drilled all the way through the material, provided the material is "backed up" with wood, stiff cardboard, or any other material that is sufficiently rigid to support the under surface at the point where the drill comes through.

The methods described for drilling apply as well to tapping, except that when the tapping is done parallel to the layers, it is advisable to clamp the material to equalize the stress on the layers and prevent possible splitting.

In milling, a standard tool may be used at a speed and feed corresponding to that used in working bronze or soft steel. The cutting angle of the cutter will give better results if ground with a slight rake.

While there is a wide range of practice as to speeds and feeds in cutting gears on hobbing machines, a hob speed of not less than 140 revolutions per minute has given satisfaction. In machining gear teeth on a gear shaper, a speed of about 100 to 130 strokes per minute with a fairly fine feed has given good results. Backing-up plates should be used in machining micarta gears.

Ultrasonic Machining.—This method of cutting and engraving hard materials such as glass, precious stones, and carbides uses a transducer (vibratory unit) to obtain the necessary mechanical vibrations needed. The transducer converts the input energy, in this case electrical, into another form of energy, in this case mechanical.

A tool of the required size and shape is made of brass or other soft material and is attached to the transducer. The tool is lowered until it just barely touches the work, and current is applied. At the same time, a slurry of water and fine abrasive, usually boron carbide, is pumped over the work. The tool does not actually touch the work, but the vibrations literally hammer the particles of abrasive into the surface and chip off tiny fragments. Some wear does take place in the tool, but it is very slight and, as it is equally distributed, it does not change the shape. The method is commonly applied to cutting designs in stones of signet rings, and also applied to cutting intricately shaped holes in carbide or hardened steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GRINDING FEEDS AND SPEEDS

Grinding data are scarcely available in handbooks, which usually recommend a small range of depths and work speeds at constant wheel speed, including small variations in wheel and work material composition. Wheel life or grinding stiffness are seldom considered.

Grinding parameter recommendations typically range as follows:

- Wheel speeds are usually recommended in the 1200 to 1800 m/min (4000 to 6000 fpm) range, or in rare cases up to 3600 m/min (12000 fpm)
- Work speeds are in the range 20 to 40 m/min (70 to 140 fpm); and, depths of cut of 0.01 to 0.025 mm (0.0004 to 0.001 inch) for roughing, and around 0.005 mm (.0002 in.) for finish grinding.
- Grit sizes for roughing are around 46 to 60 for easy-to-grind materials, and for difficult-to-grind materials higher such as 80 grit. In finishing, a smaller grit size (higher grit number) is recommended. Internal grinding grit sizes for small holes are approximately 100 to 320.
- Specific metal removal rate, *SMRR*, represents the rate of material removal per unit of wheel contact width and are commonly recommended from 200 to 500 mm^3/mm width/min (0.3 to 0.75 in^3/inch width/min).
- Grinding stiffness is a major variable in determining wheel-life and spark-out time. A typical value of system stiffness in outside-diameter grinding, for 10:1 length/diameter ratio, is approximately $K_{ST} = 30–50$ N/μm. System stiffness K_{ST} is calculated from the stiffness of the part, K_w and the machine and fixtures, K_m. Machine values can be obtained from manufacturers, or can be measured using simple equipment along with the part stiffness.
- Generally a lower wheel hardness (soft wheel) is recommended when the system stiffness is poor or when a better finish is desired.

Basic Rules

The wheel speed *V* and *equivalent chip thickness* $ECT = SMRR \div V \div 1000$ are the primary parameters that determine wheel-life, forces and surface finish in grinding. The following general rules and recommendations, using *ECT*, are based on extensive laboratory and industry tests both in Europe and the United States. The relationships and shapes of curves pertaining to grinding tool life, grinding time, and cost are similar to those of any metal cutting operation such as turning, milling and drilling.

In turning and milling, the *ECT* theory says that if the product of feed times depth of cut is constant, the tool life is constant no matter how the depth of cut or feed is varied, provided that the cutting speed and cutting edge length are maintained constant.

In grinding, wheel-life *T* remains constant for constant cutting speed *V*, regardless of how depth of cut a_r or work speed V_w are selected as long as the specific metal removal rate $SMRR = V_w \times a_r$ is held constant (neglecting the influence of grinding contact width).

ECT is much smaller in grinding than in milling, ranging from about 0.0001 to 0.001 mm (0.000004 to 0.00004 inch). See the section *MACHINING ECONOMETRICS* starting on page 1196 for a detailed explanation of the role of *ECT* in conventional machining.

Wheel Life and Grinding Ratio.—A commonly used measure of relative wheel-life in grinding is the *grinding ratio*, which is used to compare grindability when varying grinding wheel composition and work material properties under otherwise constant cutting conditions.

The *grinding ratio* is defined as the slope of the wear curve versus metal removal rate: *grinding ratio* = $MRR \div W^*$, where *MRR* is the metal removal rate, and W^* is the volume wheel wear at which the wheel has to be dressed. The grinding ratio is not a measure of wheel-life, but a relationship between *grinding ratio* and wheel-life *T* can be obtained

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

from the formula *grinding ratio* = *SMRR* × *T* ÷ *W**, where *SMRR* (specific metal removal rate) is determined from *MRR* = *SMRR* × *T* or from *ECT* = *SMRR* ÷ *V* ÷ 1000.

Thus, *grinding ratio* = 1000 × *ECT* × *V* × *T* ÷ *W**, and *T* = *grinding ratio* × *W** ÷ (1000 × *ECT* × *V*), provided that the wheel wear criterion *W** is valid for all data combinations.

Example 1: If *W** in one test is found to be 500 mm^3 for *ECT* = 0.00033 mm and *V* = 3600 m/min, and *grinding ratio* = 10, then wheel-life will vary with measured grinding ratios, wheel speed, and *ECT* as follows: *T* = 500 × *grinding ratio* ÷ (*V* × *ECT*) = 4.2 minutes.

In the remainder of this section the *grinding ratio* will not used, and wheel-life is expressed in terms of *ECT* or *SMRR* and wheel speed *V*.

***ECT* in Grinding.—**In turning and milling, *ECT* is defined as the volume of chips removed per unit cutting edge length per revolution of the work or cutter. In milling specifically, *ECT* is defined as the ratio of (number of teeth *z* × feed per tooth f_z × radial depth of cut a_r × and axial depth of cut a_a) and (cutting edge length *CEL* divided by π*D*), where *D* is the cutter diameter, thus,

$$ECT = \frac{\pi D z f_z a_r a_a}{CEL}$$

In grinding, the same definition of *ECT* applies if we replace the number of teeth with the average number of grits along the wheel periphery, and replace the feed per tooth by the average feed per grit. This definition is not very practical, however, and *ECT* is better defined by the ratio of the specific metal removal rate *SMRR*, and the wheel speed *V*. Thus, *ECT* = 1000 × *SMRR* ÷ *V*. Keeping *ECT* constant when varying *SMRR* requires that the wheel speed must be changed proportionally.

In milling and turning *ECT* can also be redefined in terms of *SMRR* divided by the work and the cutter speeds, respectively, because *SMRR* is proportional to the feed rate F_R.

Work Speed and Depth of Cut Selection: Work speed V_w is determined by dividing *SMRR* by the depth of cut a_r, or by using the graph in Fig. 1.

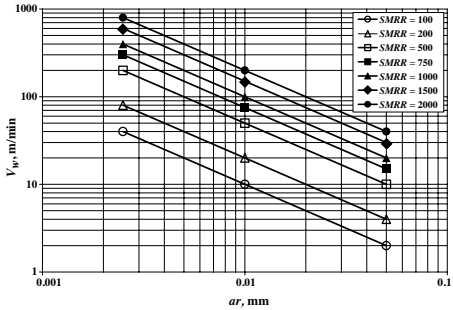


Fig. 1. Work Speed V_w versus Depth of Cut a_r

Referring to Fig. 1, for depths of cuts of 0.01 and 0.0025 mm, a specific metal removal rate *SMRR* = 1000 mm^3/mm width/min is achieved at work speeds of 100 and 400 m/min, respectively, and for *SMRR* = 100 mm^3/mm width/min at work speeds of 10 and 40 m/min, respectively.

Unfortunately, the common use of low values of work speed (20 to 40 m/min) in finishing cause thermal surface damage, disastrous in critical parts such as aircraft components. As the grains slide across the work they generate surface heat and fatigue-type loading may cause residual tensile stresses and severe surface cracks. Proper finish grinding

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

conditions are obtained by increasing the work speed 5 to 10 times higher than the above recommendations indicate. These higher work speeds will create compressive stresses that are not detrimental to the surface. The by-product of higher work speeds is much higher *SMRR* values and thereby much shorter grinding times. Compressive stresses are also obtained by reducing the depth of cut a_r.

Wheel Life Relationships and Optimum Grinding Data.—Fig. 2a, Fig. 2b, and Fig. 2c show, in three planes, the 3-dimensional variation of wheel-life *T* with wheel speed *V* and *ECT* when grinding a hardened tool steel. Fig. 2a depicts wheel-life versus wheel speed (the *T*-*V* plane) with constant *ECT* appearing as approximately straight lines when plotted in log-log coordinates.

In grinding, the wheel-life variation follows curves similar to those obtained for conventional metal cutting processes, including a bend-off of the Taylor lines (*T*-*V* graph) towards shorter life and lower cutting speeds when a certain maximum life is achieved for each value of *ECT*. In the two other planes (*T*-*ECT*, and *V*-*ECT*) we usually find smooth curves in which the maximum values of wheel-life are defined by points along a curve called the *H*-curve.

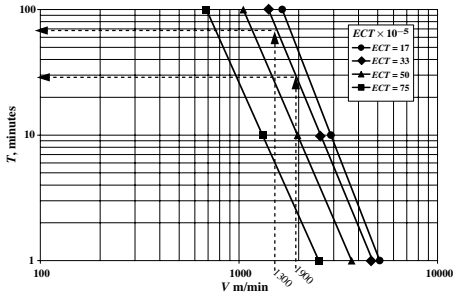


Fig. 2a. Taylor Lines: *T* versus *V*, *ECT* Plotted for Grinding M4 Tool Steel, Hardness 64 RC

Example 2: The variation of $SMRR = V \times ECT \times 1000$ and wheel-life at various wheel speeds can be obtained from Fig. 2a. Using sample values of $ECT = 33 \times 10^{-5}$ mm and $V = 1300$ and 1900 m/min, $SMRR = 1300 \times 33 \times 10^{-5} \times 1000 = 429$, and $1900 \times 33 \times 10^{-5} \times 1000 = 627$ mm^3/mm width/min, respectively; the corresponding wheel lives are read off as approximately 70 and 30 minutes, respectively.

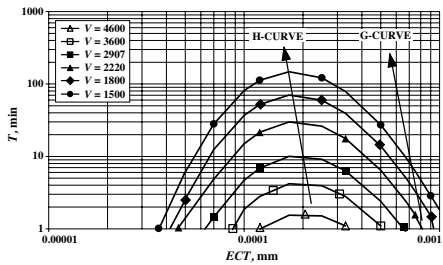


Fig. 2b. *T* versus *ECT*, *V* Plotted

Fig. 2b depicts wheel-life *T* versus *ECT* with constant wheel speed *V* shown as curves plotted in log-log coordinates, similar to those for the other cutting operations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 3: Fig. 2b shows that maximum values of wheel-life occur along the *H*-curve. For the 3 speeds 1800, 2700, and 3600 m/min, maximum wheel lives are approximately 70, 14 and 4 minutes, respectively, at *ECT* around 17×10^{-5} through 20×10^{-5} mm along the *H*-curve. Left and right of the *H*-curve wheel-life is shorter.

Fig. 2c depicts wheel speed *V* versus *ECT* with wheel-life *T* parameter shown as curves in log-log coordinates, similar to those for the other cutting operations, with the characteristic *H*- and *G*-curves.

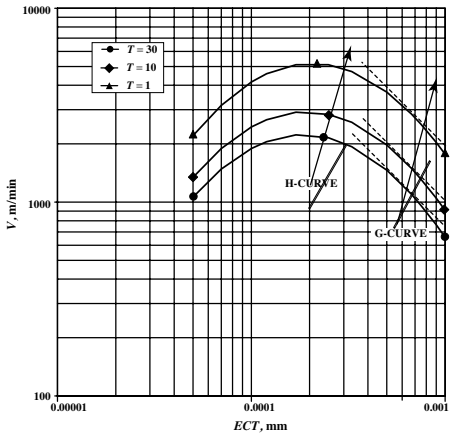


Fig. 2c. *V* versus *ECT*, *T* Plotted

Optimum grinding data for roughing occur along the *G*-curve, which is determined from the *V*-*ECT* graph by drawing 45-degree lines tangent to the *T*-curves, as shown in Fig. 2c, and drawing a line (the *G*-curve) through the points of tangency on the respective *T*-curves, thus the location and direction of the *G*-curve is determined. Globally optimum data correspond to the *T*-curve for which wheel-life is calculated using the corresponding equivalent tooling-cost time, T_V, calculated from $T_V = T_{RPL} + 60 \times C_E \div H_R$, minutes, where T_{RPL} is the time required to replace wheel, C_E = cost per wheel dressing = wheel cost + cost per dressing, and H_R is the hourly rate.

Minimum cost conditions occur along the *G*-curve; if optimum life T_O was determined at either 10 or 30 minutes then V_O = 1500 or 1100 m/min, respectively, and *ECT* is around $65 - 70 \times 10^{-5}$ mm in both cases. The corresponding optimum values of *SMRR* are $1000 \times 1500 \times 67 \times 10^{-5} = 1000$ and $1000 \times 1100 \times 67 \times 10^{-5} = 740$ mm^3/min/mm wheel contact width (1.5 to 1.1 in^3/in/min).

Using Fig. 1 we find optimum work speeds for depths of cut a_r = 0.01 and 0.005 mm to be V_w = 100 and 75 m/min, and 200 and 150 m/min (330 and 250 fpm, and 660 and 500 fpm) respectively for 10- and 30-minute wheel-life.

These high work speeds are possible using proper dressing conditions, high system stiffness, good grinding fluid quality and wheel composition.

Fig. 3 shows the variation of specific metal removal rate with wheel speed for several materials and a range of *ECT*s at 10- and 30-minutes wheel-life. *ECT* decreases when moving to the left and down along each curve. The two curves for unhardened 1020 steel have the largest values of *SMRR*, and represent the most productive grinding conditions, while the heat resistant alloy Inconel yields the least productive grinding conditions. Each

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

branch attains a maximum *SMRR* along the *G*-curve (compare with the same curve in the V-*ECT* graph, Fig. 2c) and a maximum speed region along the *H*-curve. When the *SMRR*-values are lower than the *H*-curve the *ECT* values for each branch decrease towards the bottom of the graph, then the speed for constant wheel-life must be reduced due to the fact that the *ECT* values are to the left of their respective *H*-curves in *V-ECT* graphs.

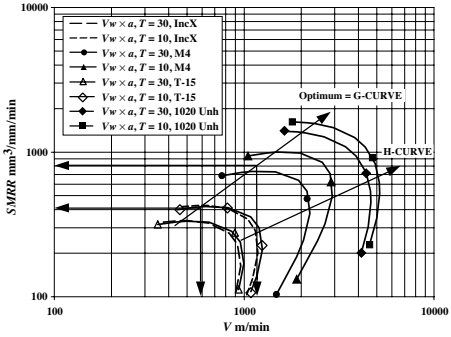

Vw × a, T = 30, IncX
Vw × a, T = 10, IncX
Vw × a, T = 30, M4
Vw × a, T = 10, M4
Vw × a, T = 30, T-15
Vw × a, T = 10, T-15
Vw × a, T = 30, 1020 Unh
Vw × a, T = 10, 1020 Unh
Optimum = G-CURVE
H-CURVE
10000
1000
100
SMRR mm3/mm/min
100
1000
10000
V m/min

Fig. 3. Specific Metal Removal Rate versus Cutting Speed at *T*=10 and 30 Minutes Wheel Life
In the figure, IncX is Inconel; M4, and T-15 are tool steels; and 1020 Unh is unhardened 1020 steel.

Surface Finish, *Ra*.—The finish is improved by decreasing the value of *ECT* as shown in Fig. 4, where the *Ra* value (or R_a, for roughness average) is plotted versus *ECT* at 3 different wheel lives 1, 10 and 30 minutes at constant wheel speed. Because *ECT* is proportional to the depth of cut, a smaller depth of cut is favorable for reducing surface roughness when the work speed is constant.

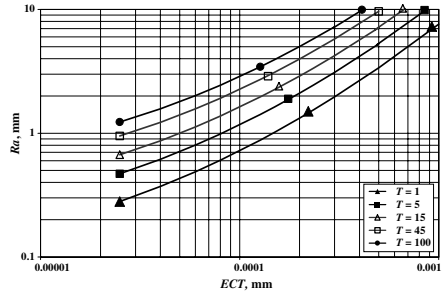


Fig. 4. Surface Finish, *Ra* versus *ECT*, Wheel-Life *T* Plotted

In Fig. 5, *Ra* is plotted versus wheel-life at 5 different *ECT*'s. Both Fig. 4 and Fig. 5 illustrate that a shorter life improves the surface finish, which means that either an increased wheel speed (wheel-life decreases) at constant *ECT*, or a smaller *ECT* at constant speed (wheel-life increases), will result in an improved finish. For a required surface finish, *ECT* and wheel-life have to be selected appropriately in order to also achieve an optimum grinding time or cost. In cylindrical grinding a reduction of side feed f_s improves *Ra* as well.

In terms of specific metal removal rate, reducing *SMRR* will improve the surface finish *Ra*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

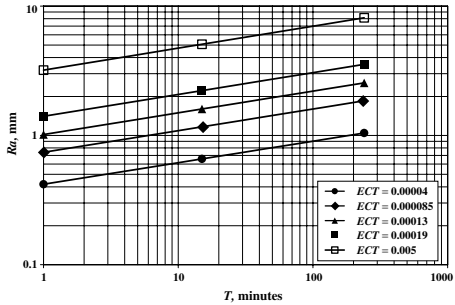


Fig. 5. Surface Roughness, *Ra* versus Wheel Life *T*, *ECT* Plotted

Example 4, Specific Metal Removal Rates and Work Speeds in Rough and Finish Grinding: The tabulated values in the following table indicate that a decreasing *ECT* combined with a higher wheel speed for 10 minutes wheel-life will decrease the metal removal rate and thereby increasing the grinding time. This change is accompanied by a better finish in both roughing and finishing operations. Note the high work speeds when finishing.

	Tool Life T = 10 minutes		Roughing Depth a_r = 0.025 mm	Finishing Depth a_r = 0.0025 mm
ECT mm	Wheel speed V_{10} m/min	Removal Rate $SMRR_{10}$ mm³/mm/ min	Work speed V_w m/min	
0.00050	1970	985	39	390
0.00033	2580	850	34	340
0.00017	2910	500	20	200

The grit size, however, is a major parameter. Fig. 6, shows that a high wheel speed, combined with a small grit size, say 320 Mesh, can achieve *Ra* values as small as 0.03 micron.

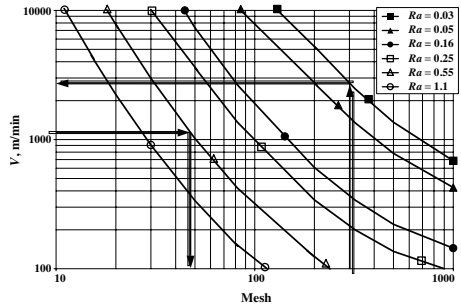


Fig. 6. Wheel Speed versus Wheel Mesh, *Ra* Plotted

Spark-Out Time.—Fig. 7 shows how spark-out time varies with system stiffness. As with surface finish, when wheel-life is short (high wear rate) the spark-out time decreases.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

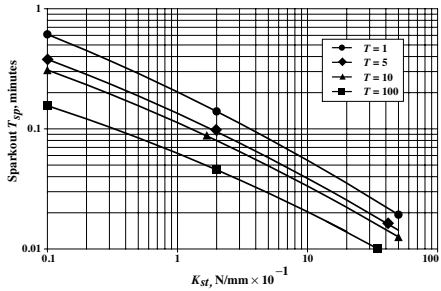


Fig. 7. Sparkout Time versus System Stiffness, Wheel-Life *T* Plotted

Equivalent Diameter (Work Conformity) Factor: The difference in curvature of the work and wheel in the contact region, determined by the equivalent diameter or work conformity formula, is an important factor for calculating spark-out time and forces, but has a negligible influence on wheel-life. Therefore, an equivalent diameter, $D_e = D/(1 \pm D/D_w)$, with the minus sign for internal grinding and the plus sign for external grinding operations, is used to consider the effect of conformity when using internal and external grinding with varying work and wheel diameters. D_e is equal to the wheel diameter in surface grinding (work flat); in internal grinding, the wheel conforms closely to the work and D_e is therefore larger than in external grinding.

Grinding Cutting Forces, Torque and Power.—Formulas to calculate the tangential cutting force, torque and required machining power are found in *Estimating Machining Power* on page 1145, but the values of K_c, specific cutting force or specific energy, are approximately 30 to 40 times higher in grinding than in turning, milling and drilling. This is primarily due to the fact that the *ECT* values in grinding are 1000 to 10000 times smaller, and also due to the negative rake angles of the grit. Average grinding rake angles are around –35 to –45 degrees. K_c for grinding unhardened steel is around 50000 to 70000 N/mm^2 and up to 150000 to 200000 N/mm^2 for hardened steels and heat resistant alloys. The grinding cutting forces are relatively small because the chip area is very small.

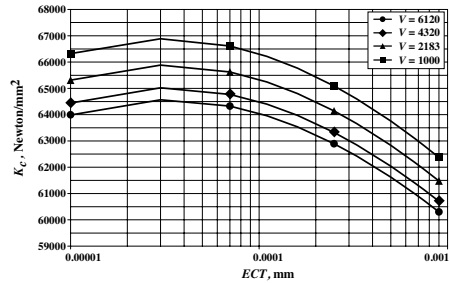


Fig. 8. Specific Grinding Force K_c versus *ECT*; *V* Plotted

As in the other metal cutting operations, the forces vary with *ECT* and to a smaller extent with the wheel speed *V*. An example is shown in Fig. 8, where K_c, specific cutting force, is plotted versus *ECT* at wheel speeds between 1000 and 6000 m/min. The material is medium unhardened carbon steel ground by an aluminum oxide wheel. The impact of wheel speed is relatively small (2 to 5 percent lower with increasing speed).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 5: Find the cutting force when $ECT = 0.00017$ mm, the cutting edge length (width of cut) CEL is 10 mm, and K_c=150000 N/mm^2.

The chip area is $ECT \times CEL = 0.0017$ mm^2. For K_c=150000, the cutting force is 0.0017 × 150000 = 255 Newton.

Another difference compared to turning is the influence of the negative rake angles, illustrated by the ratio of F_H/F_C, where F_H is the normal force and F_C the tangential grinding force acting in the wheel speed direction. F_H is much larger than the grinding cutting force, generally F_H/F_C ratio is approximately 2 to 4. An example is shown in Fig. 9, where F_H/F_C is plotted versus ECT at wheel speeds between 1000 and 6000 m/min, under the same conditions as in Fig. 8.

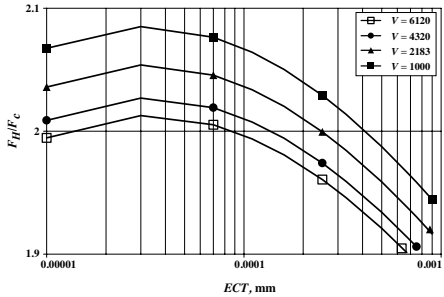


Fig. 9. F_H/F_C versus ECT; Cutting Speed Plotted

In both Fig. 8 and Fig. 9, it is apparent that both K_c and F_H/F_C attain maximum values for given small values of ECT, in this case approximately $ECT = 0.00005$ mm. This fact illustrates that forces and wheel-life are closely linked; for example, wheel speed has a maximum for constant wheel-life at approximately the same values of ECT shown in the two graphs (compare with the trends illustrated in Fig. 2a, Fig. 2b, Fig. 2c, and Fig. 3). As a matter of fact, force relationships obey the same type of relationships as those of wheel-life. Colding's force relationship uses the same 5 constants as the tool life equation, but requires values for the specific cutting force at $ECT = 0.001$ and an additional constant, obtained by a special data base generator. This requires more elaborate laboratory tests, or better, the design of a special test and follow-up program for parts running in the ordinary production.

Grinding Data Selection Including Wheel Life

The first estimate of machine settings is based on dividing work materials into 10 groups, based on grindability, as given in Table 1. Compositions of these work materials are found in the Handbook in the section *STANDARD STEELS* starting on page 393.

Grinding wheel nomenclature is described in *American National Standard Grinding Wheel Markings* starting on page 1282. The wheel compositions are selected according to the grade recommendations in the section *The Selection of Grinding Wheels* starting on page 1283. Grinding fluid recommendations are given in *Cutting Fluids for Machining* starting on page 1246.

Note: Maximum wheel speeds should always be checked using the safety standards in the section *Safe Operating Speeds* starting on page 1312, because the recommendations will sometimes lead to speeds above safety levels.

The material in this section is based on the use of a typical standard wheel composition such as 51-A-46-L-5-V-23, with wheel grade (wheel hardness) = L or above, and mesh (grit size) = 46 or above.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Grindability Groups

Group	Examples
Group 1 Unhardened Steels	
Group 2 Stainless Steels	SAE 30201-30347, 51409-51501
Group 3 Cast Iron	
Group 4 Tool Steels	M1, M8, T1, H, O, L, F, 52100
Group 5 Tool Steels	M2, T2, T5, T6, D2, H41, H42, H43, M50
Group 6 Tool Steels	M3, M4, T3, D7
Group 7 Tool Steels	T15, M15
Group 8 Heat Resistant Steels	Inconel, Rene etc.
Group 9 Carbide Materials	P30 Diamond Wheel
Group 10 Ceramic Materials	

For each grindability group there is one table and 2 graphs (one with Taylor lines and the other with *SMRR* versus wheel speed *V*) that are used to get a first estimate of standardized machine settings, assuming a good system stiffness ($K_{ST} > 30$ N/µm). These data are then calibrated with the users own data in order to refine the estimate and optimize the grinding process, as discussed in *User Calibration of Recommendations*. The recommendations are valid for all grinding processes such as plunge grinding, cylindrical, and surface grinding with periphery or side of wheel, as well as for creep feed grinding.

The grinding data machinability system is based on the basic parameters equivalent chip thickness *ECT*, and wheel speed *V*, and is used to determine specific metal removal rates *SMRR* and wheel-life *T*, including the work speed V_w after the grinding depths for roughing and finishing are specified.

For each material group, the grinding data machinability system consists of *T*-*V* Taylor lines in log-log coordinates for 3 wheel speeds at wheel lives of 1, 10 and 100 minutes wheel-life with 4 different values of equivalent chip thickness *ECT*. The wheel speeds are designated V_1, V_{10}, and V_{100} respectively. In each table the corresponding specific metal removal rates *SMRR* are also tabulated and designated as $SMRR_1$, $SMRR_{10}$ and $SMRR_{100}$ respectively. The user can select any value of *ECT* and interpolate between the Taylor lines. These curves look the same in grinding as in the other metal cutting processes and the slope is set at n = 0.26, so each Taylor line is formulated by $V \times T^{0.26} = C$, where C is a constant tabulated at four *ECT* values, *ECT* = 17, 33, 50 and 75 × 10^{-5} mm, for each material group. Hence, for each value of *ECT*, $V_1 \times 1^{0.26} = V_{10} \times 10^{0.26} = V_{100} \times 100^{0.26} = C$.

Side Feed, Roughing and Finishing.—In cylindrical grinding, the side feed, f_s = C × Width, does not impact on the values in the tables, but on the feed rate F_R, where the fraction of the wheel width C is usually selected for roughing and in finishing operations, as shown in the following table.

Work Material	Roughing, C	Finishing, C
Unhardened Steel	2/3-3/4	1/3-3/8
Stainless Steel	1/2	1/4
Cast Iron	3/4	3/8
Hardened Steel	1/2	1/4

Finishing: The depth of cut in rough grinding is determined by the allowance and usually set at a_r = 0.01 to 0.025 mm. The depth of cut for finishing is usually set at a_r = 0.0025 mm and accompanied by higher wheel speeds in order to improve surface finish. However, the most important criterion for critical parts is to increase the work speed in order to avoid thermal damage and surface cracks. In cylindrical grinding, a reduction of side feed f_s improves R_a as well. Small grit sizes are very important when very small finishes are required. See Fig. 4, Fig. 5, and Fig. 6 for reference.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Terms and Definitions

a_a = depth of cut

a_r = radial depth of cut, mm

C = fraction of grinding wheel width

CEL = cutting edge length, mm

C_U = Taylor constant

D = wheel diameter, mm

$DIST$ = grinding distance, mm

d_w = work diameter, mm

ECT = equivalent chip thickness = $f(a_r, V, V_w f_s)$, mm

$= 1 \div (V \div V_w \div a_r + 1 \div f_s) = \dfrac{V_w f_s\ (a_r + 1)}{V}$

= approximately $V_w \times a_r \div V = SMRR \div V \div 1000$

$= z \times f_z \times a_r \times a_a \div CEL \div (\pi D)$ mm

F_R = feed rate, mm/min

$= f_s \times RPM_w$ for cylindrical grinding

$= f_i \times RPM_w$ for plunge (in-feed) grinding

f_i = in-feed in plunge grinding, mm/rev of work

f_s = side feed or engaged wheel width in cylindrical grinding = $C \times Width = a_a$ approximately equal to the cutting edge length CEL

Grinding ratio = $MRR \div W^* = SMRR \times T \div W^* = 1000 \times ECT \times V \times T \div W^*$

MRR = metal removal rate = $SMRR \times T = 1000 \times f_s \times a_r \times V_w$ mm^3/min

$SMRR$ = specific metal removal rate obtained by dividing MRR by the engaged wheel width ($C \times Width$) = $1000 \times a_r \times V_w$ mm^3/mm width/min
Note: 100 mm^3/mm/min = 0.155 in^3/in/min, and 1 in^3/in/min = 645.16 mm^3/mm/min

T, T_U = wheel-life = *Grinding ratio* $\times\ W \div (1000 \times ECT \times V)$ minutes

t_c = grinding time per pass = $DIST \div F_R$ min

$= DIST \div F_R + t_{sp}$ (min) when spark-out time is included

= # Strokes $\times$ ($DIST \div F_R + t_{sp}$) (min) when spark-out time and strokes are included

t_{sp} = spark-out time, minutes

V, V_U = wheel speed, m/min

V_w, V_{wU} = work speed = $SMRR \div 1000 \div a_r$ m/min

W^* = volume wheel wear, mm^3

$Width$ = wheel width (mm)

RPM = wheel speed = $1000 \times V \div D \div \pi$ rpm

RPM_w = work speed = $1000 \times V_w \div D_w \div \pi$ rpm

Relative Grindability.—An overview of grindability of the data base, which must be based on a constant wheel wear rate, or wheel-life, is demonstrated using 10 minutes wheel-life shown in Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Grindability Overview

Material Group	$ECT \times 10^{-5}$	V_{10}	$SMRR_{10}$	V_w	
				Roughing Depth $a_r = 0.025$	*Finishing Depth* $a_r = 0.0025$
1 Unhardened	33	3827	1263	50	500
2 Stainless	33	1080	360	15	150
3 Cast Iron	33	4000	1320	53	530
4 Tool Steel	33	3190	1050	42	420
5 Tool Steel	33	2870	950	38	380
6 Tool Steel	33	2580	850	35	350
7Tool Steel	33	1080	360	15	150
8 Heat resistant	33	1045	345	14	140
9 Carbide with Diamond Wheel	5	$V_{600} = 1200$	$SMRR_{600} = 50$	2	20
10 Ceramics with Diamond Wheel	5	$V_{600} = 411$	$SMRR_{600} = 21$	0.84	84

Procedure to Determine Data.—The following wheel-life recommendations are designed for 4 values of *ECT* = 0.00017, 0.00033, 0.00050 and 0.00075 mm (shown as 17, 33, 50 and 75 in the tables). Lower values of *ECT* than 0.00010 mm (0.000004 in.) are not recommended as these may lie to the left of the *H*-curve.

The user selects any one of the *ECT* values, or interpolates between these, and selects the wheel speed for 10 or 100 minutes life, denoted by V_{10} and V_{100}, respectively. For other desired wheel lives the wheel speed can be calculated from the tabulated Taylor constants C and $n = 0.26$ as follows:

$(V \times T_{(desired)})^{0.26} =$ C, the value of which is tabulated for each *ECT* value. C is the value of cutting speed V at $T = 1$ minute, hence is the same as for the speed V_1. $V_1 \times 1^{0.26} = C$, thus $V_1 = C$

$$V_1 = C \div 1^{0.26} = C$$

$$V_{10} = C \div 10^{0.26} = C \div 1.82$$

$$V_{100} = C \div 100^{0.26} = C \div 3.31.$$

Example 6: A tool steel in material group 6 with *ECT* = 0.00033, has constant C= 4690, $V_{10} = 2578$ m/min, and $V_{100} = 1417$ m/min. From this information, find the wheel speed for desired wheel-life of $T = 15$ minutes and $T = 45$ minutes.

For $T = 15$ minutes we get $V_{15} = 4690 \div 15^{0.26} = 2319$ m/min (7730 fpm) and for $T = 45$ minutes $V_{45} = 4690 \div 45^{0.26} = 1743$ m/min (5810 fpm).

The Tables are arranged in 3 sections:

1. Speeds V_{10} and V_1 = Constant CST(standard) for 4 *ECT* values 0.00017, 0.00033, 0.00050 and 0.00075 mm. Values C_U and V_{10U} refer to user calibration of the standard values in each material group, explained in the following.

2. Speeds V_{100} (first row of 3), V_{10} and V_1 (last in row) corresponding to wheel lives 100, 10 and 1 minutes, for 4 *ECT* values 0.00017, 0.00033, 0.00050 and 0.00075 mm.

3. Specific metal removal rates $SMRR_{100}$, $SMRR_{10}$ and $SMRR_1$ corresponding to wheel lives 100, 10 and 1 minutes, for the 4 *ECT* values 0.00017, 0.00033, 0.00050, and 0.00075 mm.

The 2 Graphs show: wheel life versus wheel speed in double logarithmic coordinates (Taylor lines); and, *SMRR* versus wheel speed in double logarithmic coordinates for 4 *ECT* values: 0.00017, 0.00033, 0.00050 and 0.00075 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Group 1—Unhardened Steels

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 8925		Constant C = 6965		Constant C = 5385		Constant C = 3885	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	2695	460	2105	695	1625	815	1175	880
10	**4905**	**835**	**3830**	**1265**	**2960**	**1480**	**2135**	**1600**
1	8925	1520	6965	2300	5385	2695	3885	2915

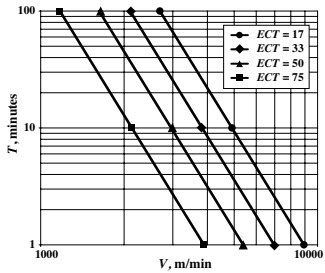


Fig. 1a. *T-V*

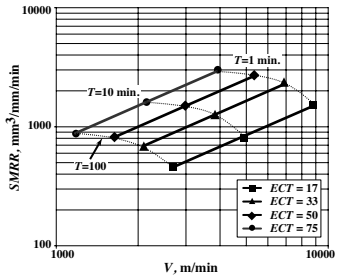


Fig. 1b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Table 2. Group 2—Stainless Steels SAE 30201—30347, SAE 51409—51501

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 2270		Constant C = 1970		Constant C = 1505		Constant C = 1010	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	685	115	595	195	455	225	305	230
10	**1250**	**210**	**1080**	**355**	**825**	**415**	**555**	**415**
1	2270	385	1970	650	1505	750	1010	760

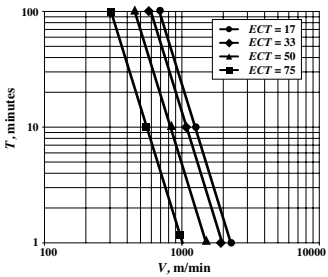


Fig. 2a. *T-V*

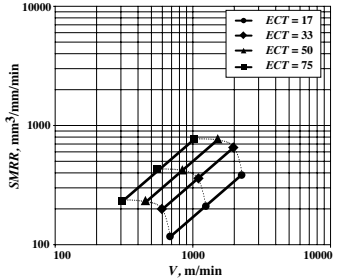


Fig. 2b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Group 3—Cast Iron

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 10710		Constant C = 8360		Constant C = 6465		Constant C = 4665	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	3235	550	2525	835	1950	975	1410	1055
10	**5885**	**1000**	**4595**	**1515**	**3550**	**1775**	**2565**	**1920**
1	10710	1820	8360	2760	6465	3230	4665	3500

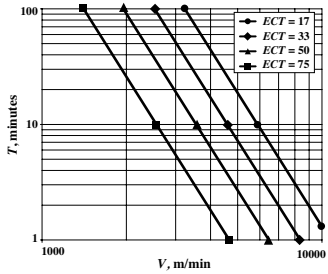


Fig. 3a. *T-V*

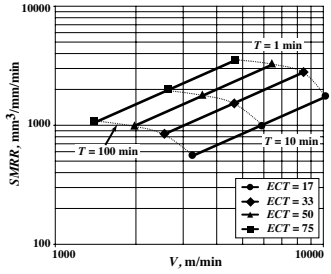


Fig. 3b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Table 4. Group 4—Tool Steels, M1, M8, T1, H, O, L, F, 52100

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 7440		Constant C = 5805		Constant C = 4490		Constant C = 3240	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	2245	380	1755	580	1355	680	980	735
10	**4090**	**695**	**3190**	**1055**	**2465**	**1235**	**1780**	**1335**
1	7440	1265	5805	1915	4490	2245	3240	2430

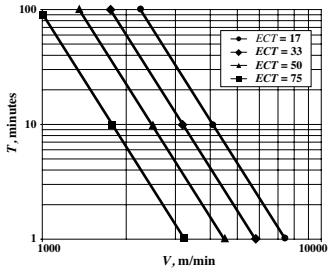


Fig. 4a. *T-V*

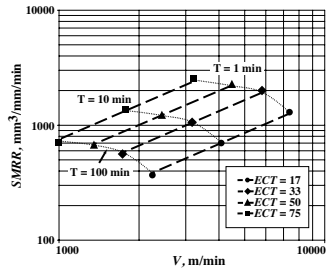


Fig. 4b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Group 5—Tool Steels, M2, T2, T5, T6, D2, D5, H41, H42, H43, M50

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 6695		Constant C = 5224		Constant C = 4040		Constant C = 2915	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	2020	345	1580	520	1220	610	880	660
10	**3680**	**625**	**2870**	**945**	**2220**	**1110**	**1600**	**1200**
1	6695	1140	5225	1725	4040	2020	2915	2185

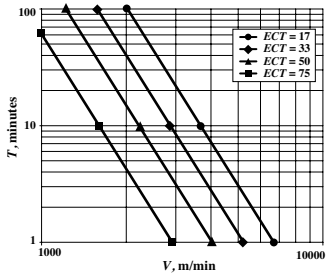


Fig. 5a. *T-V*

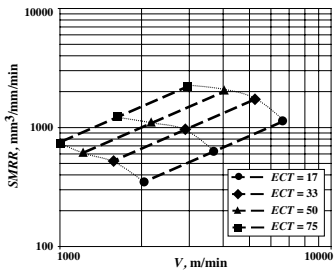


Fig. 5b. *SMRR* versus V, T = 100, 10, 1 minutes

Table 6. Group 6—Tool Steels, M3, M4, T3, D7

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 5290		Constant C = 4690		Constant C = 3585		Constant C = 2395	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	1600	270	1415	465	1085	540	725	540
10	**2910**	**495**	**2580**	**850**	**1970**	**985**	**1315**	**985**
1	5290	900	4690	1550	3585	1795	2395	1795

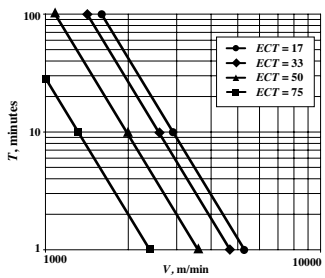


Fig. 6a. Group 6 Tool Steels *T-V*

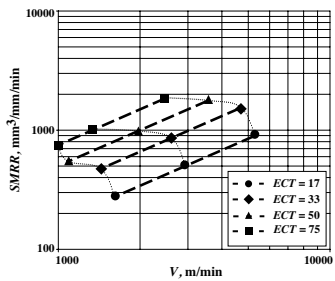


Fig. 6b. *SMRR* versus V, T = 100, 10, 1 minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Group 7—Tool Steels, T15, M15

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 2270		Constant C = 1970		Constant C = 1505		Constant C = 1010	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	685	115	595	195	455	225	305	230
10	**1250**	**210**	**1080**	**355**	**825**	**415**	**555**	**415**
1	2270	385	1970	650	1505	750	1010	760

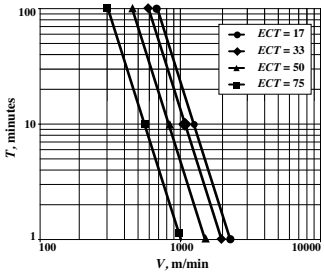


Fig. 7a. *T-V*

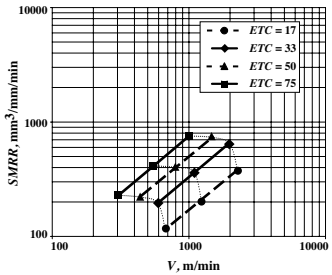


Fig. 7b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Table 8. Group 8—Heat Resistant Alloys, Inconel, Rene, etc.

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 2150		Constant C = 1900		Constant C = 1490		Constant C = 1035	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	650	110	575	190	450	225	315	235
10	**1185**	**200**	**1045**	**345**	**820**	**410**	**570**	**425**
1	2150	365	1900	625	1490	745	1035	780

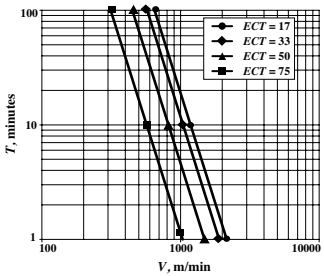


Fig. 8a. *T-V*

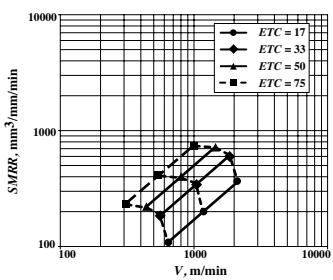


Fig. 8b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Group 9—Carbide Materials, Diamond Wheel

Tool Life T (min)	$ECT = 0.00002$ mm		$ECT = 0.00003$ mm		$ECT = 0.00005$ mm		$ECT = 0.00008$ mm	
	Constant C = 9030		Constant C = 8030		Constant C = 5365		Constant C = 2880	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
4800	1395	30	1195	35	760	40	390	30
600	2140	45	1855	55	1200	60	625	50
10	4960	100	4415	130	2950	145	1580	125

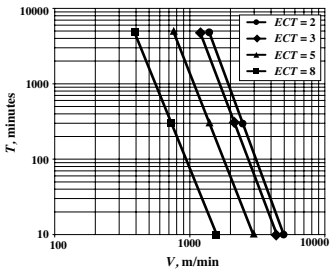


Fig. 9a. *T-V*

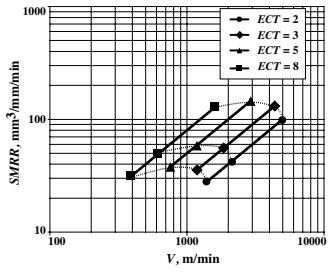


Fig. 9b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Table 10. Group 10 — Ceramic Materials, Al_2O_3, ZrO_2, SiC, Si_3N_4, Diamond Wheel

Tool Life T (min)	$ECT = 0.00002$ mm		$ECT = 0.00003$ mm		$ECT = 0.00005$ mm		$ECT = 0.00008$ mm	
	Constant C = 2460		Constant C = 2130		Constant C = 1740		Constant C = 1420	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
4800	395	8	335	10	265	13	210	17
600	595	12	510	15	410	20	330	25
10	1355	25	1170	35	955	50	780	60

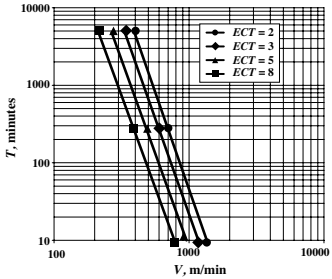


Fig. 10a. *T-V*

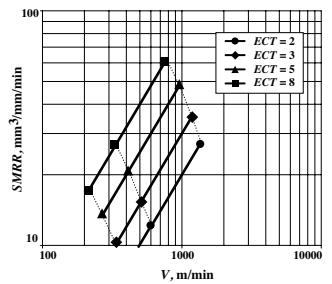


Fig. 10b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

User Calibration of Recommendations

It is recommended to copy or redraw the standard graph for any of the material groups before applying the data calibration method described below. The method is based on the user's own experience and data. The procedure is described in the following and illustrated in Table 11 and Fig. 12.

Only one shop data set is needed to adjust all four Taylor lines as shown below. The required shop data is the user's wheel-life T_U obtained at the user's wheel speed V_U, the user's work speed V_{wU}, and depth of cut a_r.

1) First the user finds out which wheel-life T_U was obtained in the shop, and the corresponding wheel speed V_U, depth of cut a_r and work speed V_{wU}.

2) Second, calculate:

a) $ECT = V_{wU} \times ar \div V_U$

b) the user Taylor constant $C_U = V_U \times T_U^{0.26}$

c) $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26}$

d) $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26}$

3) Thirdly, the user Taylor line is drawn in the pertinent graph. If the user wheel-life T_U is longer than that in the standard graph the speed values will be higher, or if the user wheel-life is shorter the speeds C_U, V_{10U}, V_{100U} will be lower than the standard values C, V_{10} and V_{100}.

The results are a series of lines moved to the right or to the left of the standard Taylor lines for $ECT = 17, 33, 50$ and 75×10^{-5} mm. Each standard table contains the values $C = V_1, V_{10}, V_{100}$ and empty spaces for filling out the calculated user values: $C_U = V_U \times T_U^{0.26}$, $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26}$ and $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26}$.

Example 7: Assume the following test results on a Group 6 material: user speed is V_U = 1800 m/min, wheel-life T_U = 7 minutes, and ECT = 0.00017 mm. The Group 6 data is repeated below for convenience.

Standard Table Data, Group 6 Material

Tool Life T (min)	ECT = 0.00017 mm		ECT = 0.00033 mm		ECT = 0.00050 mm		ECT = 0.00075 mm	
	Constant C = 5290		Constant C = 4690		Constant C = 3585		Constant C = 2395	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	1600	270	1415	465	1085	540	725	540
10	**2910**	**495**	**2580**	**850**	**1970**	**985**	**1315**	**985**
1	5290	900	4690	1550	3585	1795	2395	1795

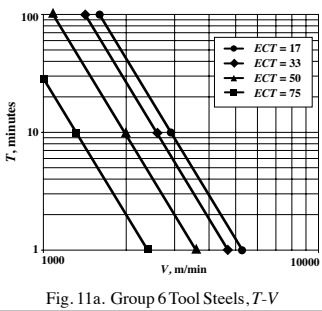


Fig. 11a. Group 6 Tool Steels, *T-V*

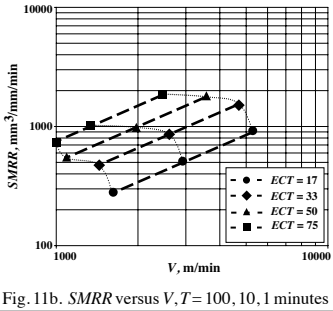


Fig. 11b. *SMRR* versus $V, T = 100, 10, 1$ minutes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calculation Procedure

1) Calculate V_{1U}, V_{10U}, V_{100U} and $SMRR_{1U}$, $SMRR_{10U}$, $SMRR_{100U}$ for $ECT = 0.00017$ mm

   a) V_{1U} = the user Taylor constant $C_U = V_U \times T_U^{0.26} = 1800 \times 7^{0.26} = 2985$ m/min, and $SMRR_{1U} = 1000 \times 2985 \times 0.00017 = 507$ mm^3/mm width/min

   b) $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26} = 2985 \div 10^{0.26} = 1640$ m/min, and $SMRR_{10U} = 1000 \times 1640 \times 0.00017 = 279$ mm^3/mm width/min

   c) $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26} = 2985 \div 100^{0.26} = 900$ m/min, and $SMRR_{100U} = 1000 \times 900 \times 0.00017 = 153$ mm^3/mm width/min

2) For $ECT = 0.00017$ mm, calculate the ratio of user Taylor constant to standard Taylor constant from the tables $= C_U \div C_{ST} = C_U \div V_1 = 2985 \div 5290 = 0.564$ (see Table 6 for the value of $C_{ST} = V_1$ at $ECT = 0.00017$ mm).

3) For $ECT = 0.00033$, 0.00050, and 0.00075 mm calculate the user Taylor constants from $C_U = C_{ST} \times$ (the ratio calculated in step 2) $= V_1 \times 0.564 = V_{1U}$. Then, calculate V_{10U} and V_{100U} and $SMRR_{1U}$, $SMRR_{10U}$, $SMRR_{100U}$ using the method in items 1b) and 1c) above.

   a) For $ECT = 0.00033$ mm

   $V_{1U} = C_U = 4690 \times 0.564 = 2645$ m/min

   $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26} = 2645 \div 10^{0.26} = 1455$ m/min

   $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26} = 2645 \div 100^{0.26} = 800$ m/min

   $SMRR_{1U}$, $SMRR_{10U}$, and $SMRR_{100U} = 876, 480$, and 264 mm^3/mm width/min

   b) For $ECT = 0.00050$ mm

   $V_{1U} = C_U = 3590 \times 0.564 = 2025$ m/min

   $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26} = 2025 \div 10^{0.26} = 1110$ m/min

   $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26} = 2025 \div 100^{0.26} = 610$ m/min

   $SMRR_{1U}$, $SMRR_{10U}$, and $SMRR_{100U} = 1013, 555$, and 305 mm^3/mm width/min

   c) For $ECT = 0.00075$ mm

   $V_{1U} = C_U = 2395 \times 0.564 = 1350$ m/min

   $V_{10U} = C_U \div 10^{0.26} = 1350 \div 10^{0.26} = 740$ m/min

   $V_{100U} = C_U \div 100^{0.26} = 1350 \div 100^{0.26} = 405$ m/min

   $SMRR_{1U}$, $SMRR_{10U}$, and $SMRR_{100U} = 1013, 555$, and 305 mm^3/mm width/min

Thus, the wheel speed for any desired wheel-life at a given ECT can be calculated from $V = C_U \div T^{0.26}$. For example, at $ECT = 0.00050$ mm and desired tool life $T = 9$, $V_9 = 2025 \div 9^{0.26} = 1144$ m/min. The corresponding specific metal removal rate is $SMRR = 1000 \times 1144 \times 0.0005 = 572$ mm^3/mm width/min (0.886 in^3/inch width/min).

Table 11. User Calculated Data, Group 6 Material

Tool Life T (min)	$ECT = 0.00017$ mm		$ECT = 0.00033$ mm		$ECT = 0.00050$ mm		$ECT = 0.00075$ mm	
	User Constant $C_U = 2985$		User Constant $C_U = 2645$		User Constant $C_U = 2025$		User Constant $C_U = 1350$	
	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*	V_T	*SMRR*
100	900	153	800	264	610	305	405	305
10	**1640**	**279**	**1455**	**480**	**1110**	**555**	**740**	**555**
1	2985	507	2645	876	2025	1013	1350	1013

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

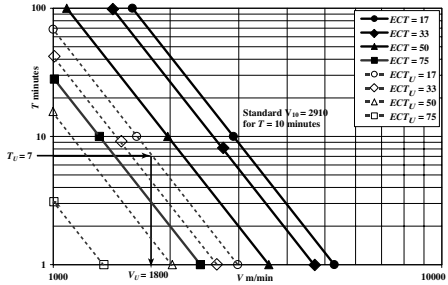


Fig. 12. Calibration of User Grinding Data to Standard Taylor Lines
User Input: $V_U = 1800$ m/min, $T_U = 7$ minutes, $ECT = 0.00017$ mm

Optimization.—As shown, a global optimum occurs along the G-curve, in selected cases for values of ECT around 0.00075, i.e. at high metal removal rates as in other machining operations. It is recommended to use the simple formula for economic life: $T_E = 3 \times T_V$ minutes. $T_V = T_{RPL} + 60 \times C_E \div H_R$, minutes, where T_{RPL} is the time required to replace wheel, C_E = cost per wheel dressing = wheel cost + cost per dressing, and H_R is the hourly rate.

In grinding, values of T_V range between 2 and 5 minutes in conventional grinders, which means that the economic wheel lives range between 6 and 15 minutes indicating higher metal removal rates than are commonly used. When wheels are sharpened automatically after each stroke as in internal grinding, or when grits are continually replaced as in abrasive grinding (machining), T_V may be less than one minute. This translates into wheel lives around one minute in order to achieve minimum cost grinding.

Grinding Cost, Optimization and Process Planning: More accurate results are obtained when the firm collects and systemizes the information on wheel lives, wheel and work speeds, and depths of cut from production runs. A computer program can be used to plan the grinding process and apply the rules and formulas presented in this chapter. A complete grinding process planning program, such as that developed by Colding International Corporation, can be used to optimize machine settings for various feed-speed preferences corresponding wheel-life requirements, minimum cost or maximum production rate grinding, required surface finish and sparkout time; machine and fixture requirements based on the grinding forces, torque and power for sharp and worn grinding wheels; and, detailed time and cost analysis per part and per batch including wheel dressing and wheel changing schedules.

Table 12 summarizes the time and cost savings per batch as it relates to tool life. The sensitivity of how grinding parameters are selected is obvious. Minimum cost conditions yield a 51 percent reduction of time and 44 percent reduction of cost, while maximum production rate reduces total time by 65 percent but, at the expense of heavy wheel consumption (continuous dressing), cost by only 18 percent.

Table 12. Wheel Life versus Cost

Preferences	Time per Batch, minutes	Cost per Batch, $		Reduction from Long Life,%	
		Tooling	Total Cost	Time	Cost
Long Life	2995	39	2412	—	—
Economic Life	2433	252	2211	19	8
Minimum Cost	1465	199	1344	51	44
Max Production Rate	1041	1244	1980	65	18

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GRINDING AND OTHER ABRASIVE PROCESSES

Processes and equipment discussed under this heading use abrasive grains for shaping workpieces by means of machining or related methods. Abrasive grains are hard crystals either found in nature or manufactured. The most commonly used materials are aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, cubic boron nitride and diamond. Other materials such as garnet, zirconia, glass and even walnut shells are used for some applications. Abrasive products are used in three basic forms by industry:

a) *Bonded* to form solid-shaped tools, such as disks (the basic shape of grinding wheels), cylinders, rings, cups, segments, or sticks to name a few.

b) *Coated* on backings made of paper or cloth, in the form of sheets, strips, or belts.

c) *Loose,* held in some liquid or solid carrier (for lapping, polishing, tumbling), or propelled by centrifugal force, air, or water pressure against the work surface (blast cleaning).

The applications for abrasive processes are multiple and varied. They include:

a) *Cleaning* of surfaces, also the coarse removal of excess material—such as rough off-hand grinding in foundries to remove gates and risers.

b) *Shaping,* such as in form grinding and tool sharpening.

c) *Sizing,* a general objective, but of primary importance in precision grinding.

d) *Surface finish improvement,* either primarily as in lapping, honing, and polishing or as a secondary objective in other types of abrasive processes.

e) *Separating,* as in cut-off or slicing operations.

The main field of application of abrasive processes is in metalworking, because of the capacity of abrasive grains to penetrate into even the hardest metals and alloys. However, the great hardness of the abrasive grains also makes the process preferred for working other hard materials, such as stones, glass, and certain types of plastics. Abrasive processes are also chosen for working relatively soft materials, such as wood, rubber, etc., for such reasons as high stock removal rates, long-lasting cutting ability, good form control, and fine finish of the worked surface.

Grinding Wheels

Abrasive Materials.—In earlier times, only natural abrasives were available. From about the beginning of this century, however, manufactured abrasives, primarily silicon carbide and aluminum oxide, have replaced the natural materials; even natural diamonds have been almost completely supplanted by synthetics. Superior and controllable properties, and dependable uniformity characterize the manufactured abrasives.

Both silicon carbide and aluminum oxide abrasives are very hard and brittle. This brittleness, called friability, is controllable for different applications. Friable abrasives break easily, thus forming sharp edges. This decreases the force needed to penetrate into the work material and the heat generated during cutting. Friable abrasives are most commonly used for precision and finish grinding. Tough abrasives resist fracture and last longer. They are used for rough grinding, snagging, and off-hand grinding.

As a general rule, although subject to variation:

1) Aluminum oxide abrasives are used for grinding plain and alloyed steel in a soft or hardened condition.

2) Silicon carbide abrasives are selected for cast iron, nonferrous metals, and nonmetallic materials.

3) Diamond is the best type of abrasive for grinding cemented carbides. It is also used for grinding glass, ceramics, and hardened tool steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4) Cubic Boron Nitride (CBN) is known by several trade names including Borazon (General Electric Co.), ABN (De Beers), Sho-bon (Showa-Denko), and Elbor (USSR). CBN is a synthetic superabrasive used for grinding hardened steels and wear-resistant superalloys. (See *Cubic Boron Nitride (CBN)* starting on page 1081.) CBN grinding wheels have long lives and can maintain close tolerances with superior surface finishes.

Bond Properties and Grinding Wheel Grades.—The four main types of bonds used for grinding wheels are the vitrified, resinoid, rubber, and metal.

Vitrified bonds are used for more than half of all grinding wheels made, and are preferred because of their strength and other desirable qualities. Being inert, glass-like materials, vitrified bonds are not affected by water or by the chemical composition of different grinding fluids. Vitrified bonds also withstand the high temperatures generated during normal grinding operations. The structure of vitrified wheels can be controlled over a wide range of strength and porosity. Vitrified wheels, however, are more sensitive to impact than those made with organic bonds.

Resinoid bonds are selected for wheels subjected to impact, or sudden loads, or very high operating speeds. They are preferred for snagging, portable grinder uses, or roughing operations. The higher flexibility of this type of bond—essentially a filled thermosetting plastic—helps it withstand rough treatment.

Rubber bonds are even more flexible than the resinoid type, and for that reason are used for producing a high finish and for resisting sudden rises in load. Rubber bonded wheels are commonly used for wet cut-off wheels because of the nearly burr-free cuts they produce, and for centerless grinder regulating wheels to provide a stronger grip and more reliable workpiece control.

Metal bonds are used in CBN and diamond wheels. In metal bonds produced by electrodeposition, a single layer of superabrasive material (diamond or CBN) is bonded to a metal core by a matrix of metal, usually nickel. The process is so controlled that about 30–40 percent of each abrasive particle projects above the deposited surface, giving the wheel a very aggressive and free-cutting action. With proper use, such wheels have remarkably long lives. When dulled, or worn down, the abrasive can be stripped off and the wheel renewed by a further deposit process. These wheels are also used in electrical discharge grinding and electrochemical grinding where an electrically conductive wheel is needed.

In addition to the basic properties of the various bond materials, each can also be applied in different proportions, thereby controlling the grade of the grinding wheel.

Grinding wheel grades commonly associated with hardness, express the amount of bond material in a grinding wheel, and hence the strength by which the bond retains the individual grains.

During grinding, the forces generated when cutting the work material tend to dislodge the abrasive grains. As the grains get dull and if they don't fracture to resharpen themselves, the cutting forces will eventually tear the grains from their supporting bond. For a "soft" wheel the cutting forces will dislodge the abrasive grains before they have an opportunity to fracture. When a "hard" wheel is used, the situation is reversed. Because of the extra bond in the wheel the grains are so firmly held that they never break loose and the wheel becomes glazed. During most grinding operations it is desirable to have an intermediate wheel where there is a continual slow wearing process composed of both grain fracture and dislodgement.

The grades of the grinding wheels are designated by capital letters used in alphabetical order to express increasing "hardness" from A to Z.

Grinding Wheel Structure.—The individual grains, which are encased and held together by the bond material, do not fill the entire volume of the grinding wheel; the intermediate open space is needed for several functional purposes such as heat dissipation, coolant application, and particularly, for the temporary storage of chips. It follows that the spacing of the grains must be greater for coarse grains which cut thicker chips and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

for large contact areas within which the chips have to be retained on the surface of the wheel before being disposed of. On the other hand, a wide spacing reduces the number of grains that contact the work surface within a given advance distance, thereby producing a coarser finish.

In general, denser structures are specified for grinding hard materials, for high-speed grinding operations, when the contact area is narrow, and for producing fine finishes and/or accurate forms. Wheels with open structure are used for tough materials, high stock removal rates, and extended contact areas, such as grinding with the face of the wheel. There are, however, several exceptions to these basic rules, an important one being the grinding of parts made by powder metallurgy, such as cemented carbides; although they represent one of the hardest industrial materials, grinding carbides requires wheels with an open structure.

Most kinds of general grinding operations, when carried out with the periphery of the wheel, call for medium spacing of the grains. The structure of the grinding wheels is expressed by numerals from 1 to 16, ranging from dense to open. Sometimes, "induced porosity" is used with open structure wheels. This term means that the grinding wheel manufacturer has placed filler material (which later burns out when the wheel is fired to vitrify the bond) in the grinding wheel mix. These fillers create large "pores" between grain clusters without changing the total volume of the "pores" in the grinding wheel. Thus, an A46-H12V wheel and an A46H12VP wheel will contain the same amounts of bond, abrasive, and air space. In the former, a large number of relatively small pores will be distributed throughout the wheel. The latter will have a smaller number of larger pores.

American National Standard Grinding Wheel Markings.—ANSI B74.13-2016 "Markings for Identifying Grinding Wheels and Other Bonded Abrasives," applies to grinding wheels and other bonded abrasives, segments, bricks, sticks, hones, rubs, and other shapes that are for removing material, or producing a desired surface or dimension. It does not apply to specialities such as sharpening stones and provides only a standard system of markings. Wheels having the same standard markings but made by different wheel manufacturers may not—and probably will not—produce exactly the same grinding action. This desirable result cannot be obtained because of the impossibility of closely correlating any measurable physical properties of bonded abrasive products in terms of their grinding action.

Symbols for designating diamond and cubic boron wheel compositions are given on page 1307.

Sequence of Markings.—The accompanying illustration taken from ANSI B74.13-2016 shows the makeup of a typical wheel or bonded abrasive marking.

Prefix	1 Abrasive Type	2 Grain Size	3 Grade	4 Structure	5 Bond Type	6 Manufacturer's Record
51	– A	– 36	– L	– 5	– V	– 23

The meaning of each letter and number in this or other markings is indicated by the following complete list.

1) *Abrasive Letters:* The letter (A) is used for aluminum oxide, (C) for silicon carbide, and (Z) for aluminum zirconium. The manufacturer may designate some particular type in any one of these broad classes, by using his own symbol as a prefix (example, 51).

2) *Grain Size:* The grain sizes commonly used and varying from coarse to very fine are indicated by the following numbers: 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 24, 30, 36, 46, 54, 60,70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 150, 180, and 220. The following additional sizes are used occasionally: 240, 280, 320, 400, 500, and 600. The wheel manufacturer may add to the regular grain number an additional symbol to indicate a special grain combination.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) *Grade:* Grades are indicated by letters of the alphabet from A to Z in all bonds or processes. Wheel grades from A to Z range from soft to hard.

4) *Structure:* The use of a structure symbol is optional. The structure is indicated by Nos. 1 to 16 (or higher, if necessary) with progressively higher numbers indicating a progressively wider grain spacing (more open structure).

5) *Bond or Process:* Bonds are indicated by the following letters: V, vitrified; S, silicate; E, shellac or elastic; R, rubber; RF, rubber reinforced; B, resinoid (synthetic resins); BF, resinoid reinforced; O, oxychloride; P, Epoxy/Polyester.

6) *Manufacturer's Record:* The sixth position may be used for manufacturer's private factory records; this is optional.

Standard Shapes and Sizes of Grinding Wheels.—ANSI B74.2-2003 which includes shapes and sizes of grinding wheels, gives a wide variety of grinding wheel shape and size combinations. These are suitable for the majority of applications. Although grinding wheels can be manufactured to shapes and dimensions different from those listed, it is advisable, for reasons of cost and inventory control, to avoid using special shapes and sizes, unless technically warranted.

Standard shapes and size ranges as given in this Standard together with typical applications are shown in Table 1a for inch dimensions and in Table 1b for metric dimensions.

The operating surface of the grinding wheel is often referred to as the wheel face. In the majority of cases it is the periphery of the grinding wheel which, when not specified otherwise, has a straight profile. However, other face shapes can also be supplied by the grinding wheel manufacturers, and also reproduced during usage by appropriate truing. ANSI B74.2-2003 standard offers 15 different shapes for grinding wheel faces, which are shown in Table 2.

The Selection of Grinding Wheels.—In selecting a grinding wheel, the determining factors are the composition of the work material, the type of grinding machine, the size range of the wheels used, and the expected grinding results, in this approximate order.

The Norton Company has developed, as the result of extensive test series, a method of grinding wheel recommendation that is more flexible and also better adapted to taking into consideration pertinent factors of the job, than are listings based solely on workpiece categories. This approach is the basis for Table 3 through Table 6, inclusive. Tool steels and constructional steels are considered in the detailed recommendations presented in these tables.

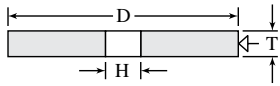
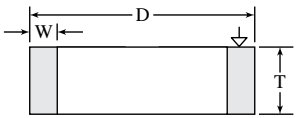
Table 3 assigns most of the standardized tool steels to five different grindability groups. The AISI-SAE tool steel designations are used.

After having defined the grindability group of the tool steel to be ground, the operation to be carried out is found in the first column of Table 4. The second column in this table distinguishes between different grinding wheel size ranges, because wheel size is a factor in determining the contact area between wheel and work, thus affecting the apparent hardness of the grinding wheel. Distinction is also made between wet and dry grinding.

Finally, the last two columns define the essential characteristics of the recommended types of grinding wheels under the headings of first and second choice, respectively. Where letters are used *preceding* A, the standard designation for aluminum oxide, they indicate a degree of friability different from the regular, thus: SF = semi friable (Norton equivalent 16A) and F = friable (Norton equivalent 33A and 38A). The suffix P, where applied, expresses a degree of porosity that is more open than the regular.

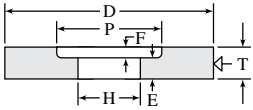
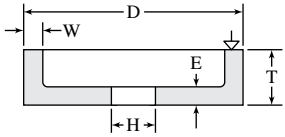
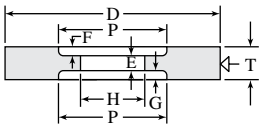
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Standard Shapes and Inch Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Inches		
	D = Dia.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
 **Type 1. Straight Wheel** For peripheral grinding.			
CUTTING OFF (Organic bonds only)	1 to 48	1/64 to 3/8	1/16 to 6
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	12 to 48	1/2 to 6	5 to 20
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless grinding wheels	14 to 30	1 to 20	5 or 12
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheels	8 to 14	1 to 12	3 to 6
INTERNAL GRINDING	1/4 to 4	1/4 to 2	3/32 to 7/8
OFFHAND GRINDING Grinding on the periphery			
General purpose	6 to 36	1/2 to 4	1/2 to 3
For wet tool grinding only	30 or 36	3 or 4	20
SAW GUMMING (F-type face)	6 to 12	1/4 to 1 1/2	1/2 to 1 1/4
SNAGGING Floor stand machines	12 to 24	1 to 3	1 1/4 to 2 1/2
SNAGGING Floor stand machines (Organic bond, wheel speed over 6500 sfpm)	20 to 36	2 to 4	6 or 12
SNAGGING Mechanical grinders (Organic bond, wheel speed up to 16,500 sfpm)	24	2 to 3	12
SNAGGING Portable machines	3 to 8	1/4 to 1	3/8 to 5/8
SNAGGING Portable machines (Reinforced organic bond, 17,000 sfpm)	6 or 8	3/4 or 1	1
SNAGGING Swing frame machines	12 to 24	2 to 3	3 1/2 to 12
SURFACE GRINDING Horizontal spindle machines	6 to 24	1/2 to 6	1 1/4 to 12
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	6 to 10	1/4 to 1/2	5/8 to 5
 **Type 2. Cylindrical Wheel** Side grinding wheel — mounted on the diameter; may also be mounted in a chuck or on a plate.			
			W = Wall
SURFACE GRINDING Vertical spindle machines	8 to 20	4 or 5	1 to 4

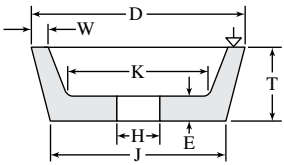
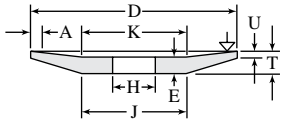
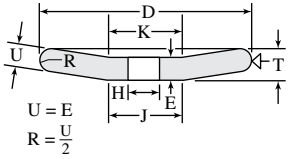
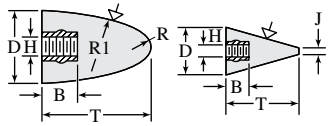
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Standard Shapes and Inch Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels**
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Inches		
	D = Dia.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
 **Type 5. Wheel,** recessed one side For peripheral grinding. Allows wider faced wheels than the available mounting thickness, also grinding clearance for the nut and flange.			
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	12 to 36	1½ to 4	5 or 12
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheel	8 to 14	3 to 6	3 or 5
INTERNAL GRINDING	⅜ to 4	⅜ to 2	⅛ to ⅞
SURFACE GRINDING Horizontal spindle machines	7 to 24	¾ to 6	1¼ to 12
 **Type 6. Straight-Cup Wheel** Side grinding wheel, in whose dimensioning the wall thickness (*W*) takes precedence over the diameter of the recess. Hole is ⅝-11UNC-2B threaded for the snagging wheels and ½ or 1¼″ for the tool grinding wheels.			
			W = Wall
SNAGGING Portable machines, organic bond only.	4 to 6	2	¾ to 1½
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	2 to 6	1 ¼ to 2	5/16 or ⅜
 **Type 7. Wheel,** recessed two sides Peripheral grinding. Recesses allow grinding clearance for both flanges and also narrower mounting thickness than overall thickness.			
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	12 to 36	1½ to 4	5 or 12
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheel	8 to 14	4 to 20	3 to 6
SURFACE GRINDING Horizontal spindle machines	12 to 24	2 to 6	5 to 12

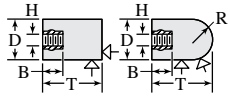
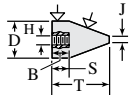
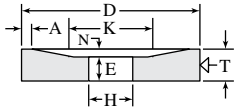
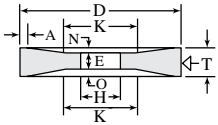
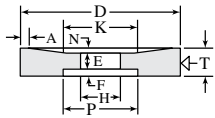
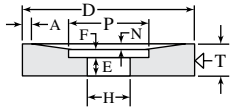
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Standard Shapes and Inch Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels**
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Inches		
	D = Dia.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
 **Type 11. Flaring-Cup Wheel** Side grinding wheel with wall tapered outward from the back; wall generally thicker in the back.			
SNAGGING Portable machines, organic bonds only, threaded hole	4 to 6	2	⅝-11 UNC-2B
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	2 to 5	1 ¼ to 2	½ to 1 ¼
 **Type 12. Dish Wheel** Grinding on the side or on the U-face of the wheel, the U-face being always present in this type.			
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	3 to 8	½ or ¾	½ to 1 ¼
 **Type 13. Saucer Wheel** Peripheral grinding wheel, resembling the shape of a saucer, with cross section equal throughout.			
SAW GUMMING Saw tooth shaping and sharpening	8 to 12	½ to 1 ¾ *U* & *E* ¼ to 1½	¾ to 1 ¼
 **Type 16. Cone, Curved Side** **Type 17. Cone, Straight Side, Square Tip** **Type 17R. Cone, Straight Side, Round Tip** (Tip Radius *R* = *J*/2)			
SNAGGING Portable machine, threaded holes	1¼ to 3	2 to 3½	⅜-24UNF-2B to ⅝-11UNC-2B

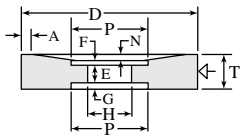
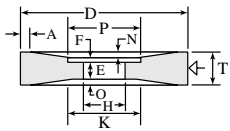
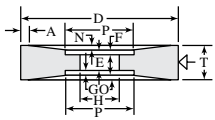
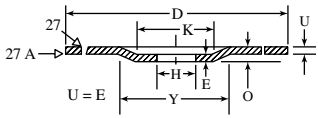
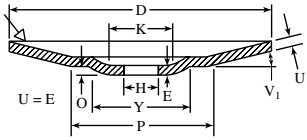
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Standard Shapes and Inch Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels**
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Inches		
	D = Dia.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
	**Type 18. Plug, Square End** **Type 18R. Plug, Round End** *R* = *D*/2		
	**Type 19. Plugs, Conical End, Square Tip** **Type 19R. Plugs, Conical End, Round Tip** (Tip Radius *R* = *J*/2)		
SNAGGING Portable machine, threaded holes	1¼ to 3	2 to 3½	⅜-24UNF-2B to ⅝-11UNC-2B
	**Type 20. Wheel, Relieved One Side** Peripheral grinding wheel, one side flat, the other side relieved to a flat.		
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	12 to 36	¾ to 4	5 to 20
	**Type 21. Wheel, Relieved Two Sides** Both sides relieved to a flat.		
	**Type 22. Wheel, Relieved One Side, Recessed Other Side** One side relieved to a flat.		
	**Type 23. Wheel, Relieved and Recessed Same Side** The other side is straight.		
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers, with wheel periphery	20 to 36	2 to 4	12 or 20

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Standard Shapes and Inch Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels**
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Inches		
	D = Dia.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
	**Type 24. Wheel, Relieved and Recessed One Side, Recessed Other Side** One side recessed, the other side is relieved to a recess.		
	**Type 25. Wheel, Relieved and Recessed One Side, Relieved Other Side** One side relieved to a flat, the other side relieved to a recess.		
	Type 26. Wheel, Relieved and Recessed Both Sides		
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers, with the periphery of the wheel	20 to 36	2 to 4	12 or 20
	**TYPES 27 & 27A. Wheel, Depressed Center** 27. *Portable Grinding:* Grinding normally done by contact with work at approx. a 15° angle with face of the wheel. 27A. *Cutting-off:* Using the periphery as grinding face.		
CUTTING OFF Reinforced organic bonds only	16 to 30	$U = E = 5/32$ to $1/4$	1 or 1 $1/2$
SNAGGING Portable machine	3 to 9	*U* = Uniform thick. $1/8$ to $3/8$	$3/8$ or $7/8$
	**Type 28. Wheel, Depressed Center (Saucer-Shaped Grinding Face)** Grinding at approx. 15° angle with wheel face.		
SNAGGING Portable machine	7 or 9	*U* = Uniform thickness $1/4$	$7/8$

Throughout table large open-head arrows indicate grinding surfaces.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Standard Shapes and Metric Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Millimeters		
	D = Diam.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
Type 1. Straight Wheel[a]			
CUTTING OFF (nonreinforced and reinforced organic bonds only)	150 to 1250	0.8 to 10	16 to 152.4
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	300 to 1250	20 to 160	127 to 508
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless grinding wheels	350 to 750	25 to 500	127 or 304.8
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheels	200 to 350	25 to 315	76.2 to 152.4
INTERNAL GRINDING	6 to 100	6 to 50	2.5 to 25
OFFHAND GRINDING Grinding on the periphery			
General purpose	150 to 900	13 to 100	20 to 76.2
For wet tool grinding only	750 or 900	80 or 100	508
SAW GUMMING (F-type face)	150 to 300	6 to 40	32
SNAGGING Floor stand machines	300 to 600	25 to 80	32 to 76.2
SNAGGING Floor stand machines(organic bond, wheel speed over 33 meters per second)	500 to 900	50 to 100	152.4 or 304.8
SNAGGING Mechanical grinders (organic bond, wheel speed up to 84 meters per second)	600	50 to 80	304.8
SNAGGING Portable machines	80 to 200	6 to 25	10 to 16
SNAGGING Swing frame machines (organic bond)	300 to 600	50 to 80	88.9 to 304.8
SURFACE GRINDING Horizontal spindle machines	150 to 600	13 to 160	32 to 304.8
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	150 to 250	6 to 20	32 to 127
Type 2. Cylindrical Wheel[a]			
			W = Wall
SURFACE GRINDING Vertical spindle machines	200 to 500	100 or 125	25 to 100

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

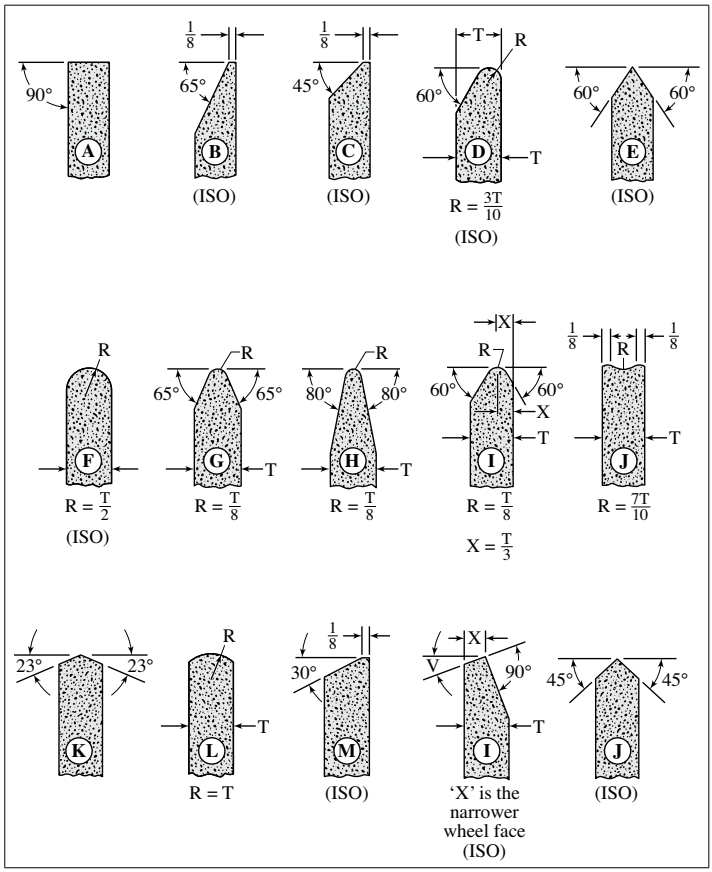
Table 1b. *(Continued)* **Standard Shapes and Metric Size Ranges of Grinding Wheels**
ANSI B74.2-2003

Applications	Size Ranges of Principal Dimensions, Millimeters		
	D = Diam.	*T* = Thick.	*H* = Hole
Type 5. Wheel, recessed one side[a]			
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	300 to 900	40 to 100	127 or 304.8
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheels	200 to 350	80 to 160	76.2 or 127
INTERNAL GRINDING	10 to 100	10 to 50	3.18 to 25
Type 6. Straight-Cup Wheel[a]			
			W = Wall
SNAGGING Portable machines, organic bond only (hole is ⅝-11 UNC-2B)	100 to 150	50	20 to 40
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc. (Hole is 13 to 32 mm)	50 to 150	32 to 50	8 or 10
Type 7. Wheel, recessed two sides[a]			
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Between centers	300 to 900	40 to 100	127 or 304.8
CYLINDRICAL GRINDING Centerless regulating wheels	200 to 350	100 to 500	76.2 to 152.4
Type 11. Flaring-Cup Wheel[a]			
SNAGGING Portable machines, organic bonds only, threaded hole	100 to 150	50	⅝-11 UNC-2B
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	50 to 125	32 to 50	13 to 32
Type 12. Dish Wheel[a]			
TOOL GRINDING Broaches, cutters, mills, reamers, taps, etc.	80 to 200	13 or 20	13 to 32
Type 27 and 27A. Wheel, depressed center[a]			
CUTTING OFF Reinforced organic bonds only	400 to 750	*U* = *E* = 6	25.4 or 38.1
SNAGGING Portable machines	80 to 230	*U* = *E* = 3.2 to 10	9.53 or 22.23

[a] See Table 1a for diagrams and descriptions of each wheel type.
All dimensions in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Standard Shapes of Grinding Wheel Faces *ANSI B74.2-2003*



Recommendations, similar in principle, yet somewhat less discriminating have been developed by the Norton Company for *constructional steels*. These materials can be ground either in their original state (soft) or in their after-hardened state (directly or following carburization). Constructional steels must be distinguished from structural steels which are used primarily by the building industry in mill shapes, without or with a minimum of machining.

Constructional steels are either plain carbon or alloy type steels assigned in the AISI-SAE specifications to different groups, according to the predominant types of alloying elements. In the following recommendations no distinction is made because of different compositions since that factor generally, has a minor effect on grinding wheel choice in constructional steels. However, separate recommendations are made for soft (Table 5) and hardened (Table 6) constructional steels. For the relatively rare instance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where the use of a single type of wheel for both soft and hardened steel materials is considered more important than the selection of the best suited types for each condition of the work materials, Table 5 lists "All Around" wheels in its last column.

For applications where cool cutting properties of the wheel are particularly important, Table 6 lists, as a second alternative, porous-type wheels. The sequence of choices as presented in these tables does not necessarily represent a second, or third best; it can also apply to conditions where the first choice did not provide optimum results and by varying slightly the composition of the grinding wheel, as indicated in the subsequent choices, the performance experience of the first choice might be improved.

Table 3. Classification of Tool Steels by their Relative Grindability

Relative Grindability Group	AISI-SAE Designation of Tool Steels
GROUP 1—Any area of work surface	W1, W2, W5
	S1, S2, S4, S5, S6, S7
High grindability tool and die steels	O1, O2, O6, O7
(Grindability index greater than 12)	H10, H11, H12, H13, H14
	L2, L6
GROUP 2—Small area of work surface	H19, H20, H21, H22, H23, H24, H26
(*as found in tools*)	P6, P20, P21
	T1, T7, T8
Medium grindability tool and die steels	M1, M2, M8, M10, M33, M50
(Grindability index 3 to 12)	D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6
	A2, A4, A6, A8, A9, A10
GROUP 3—Small area of work surface	T4, T5, T6, T8
(*as found in tools*)	M3, M6, M7, M34, M36, M41, M42, M46, M48, M52, M62
Low grindability tool and die steels	D2, D5
(Grindability index between 1.0 and 3)	A11
GROUP 4—Large area of work surface	
(as found in dies)	All steels found in Groups 2 and 3
Medium and low grindability tool and die steels	
(Grindability index between 1.0 and 12)	
GROUP 5—Any area of work surface	D3, D4, D7
	M4
Very low grindability tool and die steels	A7
(Grindability index less than 1.0)	T15

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Hardened Tool Steels According to their Grindability

Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First-Choice Specifications	Second-Choice Specifications
Group 1 Steels			
Surfacing			
Surfacing wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA46-I8V	SFA46-G12VP
	14 and smaller	Dry FA46-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	Over 14	Wet FA36-I8V	SFA36-I8V
Segments or Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA30-H8V	FA30-F12VP
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA36-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	(for rims wider than 1½ inches, go one grade softer in available specifications)		
Cutter sharpening			
Straight wheel	…	Wet FA46-K8V	FA60-K8V
	…	Dry FA46-J8V	FA46-H12VP
Dish shape	…	Dry FA60-J8V	FA60-H12VP
Cup shape	…	Dry FA46-L8V	FA60-H12VP
	…	Wet SFA46-L5V	SFA60-L5V
Form tool grinding	8 and smaller	Wet FA60-L8V to FA100-M7V	
	8 and smaller	Dry FA60-K8V to FA100-L8V	
	10 and larger	Wet FA60-L8V to FA80-M6V	
Cylindrical	14 and smaller	Wet SFA60-L5V	…
	16 and larger	Wet SFA60-M5V	…
Centerless	…	Wet SFA60-M5V	…
Internal			
Production grinding	Under ½	Wet SPA80-N6V	SFA80-N7V
	½ to 1	Wet SFA60-M5V	SFA60-M6V
	Over 1 to 3	Wet SFA54-L5V	SFA54-L6V
	Over 3	Wet SFA46-L5V	SFA46-K5V
Tool room grinding	Under ½	Dry FA80-L6V	SFA80-L7V
	½ to 1	Dry FA70-K7V	SFA70-K7V
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA60-J8V	FA60-H12VP
	Over 3	Dry FA46-J8V	FA54-H12VP
Group 2 Steels			
Surfacing			
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA46-I8V	FA46-G12VP
	14 and smaller	Dry FA46-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	Over 14	Wet FA46-H8V	SFA46-I8V
Segments or Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA30-G8V	FA36-E12VP
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA36-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	(for rims wider than 1½ inches, go one grade softer in available specifications)		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Hardened Tool Steels According to their Grindability**

Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First-Choice Specifications	Second-Choice Specifications
Cutter sharpening			
Straight wheel	…	Wet FA46-L5V	FA60-K8V
	…	Dry FA46-J8V	FA60-H12VP
Dish shape	…	Dry FA60-J5V	FA60-G12VP
Cup shape	…	Dry FA46-K5V	FA60-G12VP
	…	Wet FA46-L5V	FA60-J8V
Form tool grinding	8 and smaller	Wet FA60-K8V to FA120-L8V	
	8 and smaller	Dry FA80-K8V to FA150-K8V	
	10 and larger	Wet FA60-K8V to FA120-L8V	
Cylindrical	14 and less	Wet FA60-L5V	SFA60-L5V
	16 and larger	Wet FA60-K5V	SFA60-K5V
Centerless	…	Wet FA60-M5V	SFA60-M5V
Internal			
Production grinding	Under ½	Wet FA80-L6V	SFA80-L6V
	½ to 1	Wet FA70-K5V	SFA70-K5V
	Over 1 to 3	Wet FA60-J8V	SFA60-J7V
	Over 3	Wet FA54-J8V	SFA54-J8V
Tool room grinding	Under ½	Dry FA80-I8V	SFA80-K7V
	½ to 1	Dry FA70-J8V	SFA70-J7V
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA60-I8V	FA60-G12VP
	Over 3	Dry FA54-I8V	FA54-G12VP
Group 3 Steels			
Surfacing			
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA60-I8V	FA60-G12VP
	14 and smaller	Dry FA60-H8V	FA60-F12VP
	Over 14	Wet FA60-H8V	SFA60-I8V
Segments or Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA46-G8V	FA46-E12VP
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA46-G8V	FA46-E12VP
	(for rims wider than 1½ inches, go one grade softer in available specifications)		
Cutter grinding			
Straight wheel	…	Wet FA46-J8V	FA60-J8V
	…	Dry FA46-I8V	FA46-G12VP
Dish shape	…	Dry FA60-H8V	FA60-F12VP
Cup shape	…	Dry FA46-I8V	FA60-F12VP
	…	Wet FA46-J8V	FA60-J8V
Form tool grinding	8 and smaller	Wet FA80-K8V to FA150-L9V	
	8 and smaller	Dry FA100-J8V to FA150-K8V	
	10 and larger	Wet FA80-J8V to FA150-J8V	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Hardened Tool Steels According to their Grindability**

Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First-Choice Specifications	Second-Choice Specifications
Cylindrical	14 and less	Wet FA80-L5V	SFA80-L6V
	16 and larger	Wet FA60-L6V	SFA60-K5V
Centerless	…	Wet FA60-L5V	SFA60-L5V
Internal			
Production grinding	Under ½	Wet FA90-L6V	SFA90-L6V
	½ to 1	Wet FA80-L6V	SFA80-L6V
	Over 1 to 3	Wet FA70-K5V	SFA70-K5V
	Over 3	Wet FA60-J5V	SFA60-J5V
Tool room grinding	Under ½	Dry FA90-K8V	SFA90-K7V
	½ to 1	Dry FA80-J8V	SFA80-J7V
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA70-I8V	SFA70-G12VP
	Over 3	Dry FA60-I8V	SFA60-G12VP
Group 4 Steels			
Surfacing			
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA60-I8V	C60-JV
	14 and smaller	Wet FA60-H8V	C60-IV
	Over 14	Wet FA46-H8V	C60-HV
Segments	1½ rim or less	Wet FA46-G8V	C46-HV
Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA46-G8V	C60-HV
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA46-G6V	C60-IV
	(for rims wider than 1½ inches, go one grade softer in available specifications)		
Form tool grinding	8 and smaller	Wet FA60-J8V to FA150-K8V	
	8 and smaller	Dry FA80-I8V to FA180-J8V	
	10 and larger	Wet FA60-J8V to FA150-K8V	
Cylindrical	14 and less	Wet FA80-K8V	C60-KV
	16 and larger	Wet FA60-J8V	C60-KV
Internal			
Production grinding	Under ½	Wet FA90-L8V	C90-LV
	½ to 1	Wet FA80-K5V	C80-KV
	Over 1 to 3	Wet FA70-J8V	C70-JV
	Over 3	Wet FA60-I8V	C60-IV
Tool room grinding	Under ½	Dry FA90-K8V	C90-KV
	½ to 1	Dry FA80-J8V	C80-JV
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA70-I8V	C70-IV
	Over 3	Dry FA60-H8V	C60-HV

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Hardened Tool Steels According to their Grindability**

Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First-Choice Specifications	Second-Choice Specifications	Third-Choice Specifications
Group 5 Steels				
Surfacing				
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet SFA60-H8V	FA60-E12VP	C60-IV
	14 and smaller	Dry SFA80-H8V	FA80-E12VP	C80-HV
	Over 14	Wet SFA60-H8V	FA60-E12VP	C60-HV
Segments or Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet SFA46-G8V	FA46-E12VP	C46-GV
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet SFA60-G8V	FA60-E12VP	C60-GV
	(for rims wider than 1½ inches, go one grade softer in available specifications)			
Cutter grinding				
Straight wheels	…	Wet SFA60-I8V	SFA60-G12VP	…
	…	Dry SFA60-H8V	SFA80-F12VP	…
Dish shape	…	Dry SFA80-H8V	SFA80-F12VP	…
Cup shape	…	Dry SFA60-I8V	SFA60-G12VP	…
	…	Wet SFA60-J8V	SFA60-H12VP	…
Form tool grinding	8 and smaller	Wet FA80-J8V to FA180-J9V		…
	8 and smaller	Dry FA100-I8V to FA220-J9V		…
	10 and larger	Wet FA80-J8V to FA180-J9V		…
Cylindrical	14 and less	Wet FA80-J8V	C80-KV	FA80-H12VP
	16 and larger	Wet FA80-I8V	C80-KV	FA80-G12VP
Centerless	…	Wet FA80-J5V	C80-LV	…
Internal				
Production grinding	Under ½	Wet FA100-L8V	C90-MV	…
	½ to 1	Wet FA90-K8V	C80-LV	…
	Over 1 to 3	Wet FA80-J8V	C70-KV	FA80-H12VP
	Over 3	Wet FA70-I8V	C60-JV	FA70-G12VP
Tool room grinding	Under ½	Dry FA100-K8V	C90-KV	…
	½ to 1	Dry FA90-J8V	C80-JV	…
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA80-I8V	C70-IV	FA80-G12VP
	Over 3	Dry FA70-I8V	C60-IV	FA70-G12VP

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Constructional Steels (Soft)

Grinding Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First Choice	Alternate Choice (Porous type)	All-Around Wheel
Surfacing				
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA46-J8V	FA46-H12VP	FA46-J8V
	14 and smaller	Dry FA46-I8V	FA46-H12VP	FA46-I8V
	Over 14	Wet FA36-J8V	FA36-H12VP	FA36-J8V
Segments	1½ rim or less	Wet FA24-H8V	FA30-F12VP	FA24-H8V
Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA24-I8V	FA30-G12VP	FA24-H8V
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA24-H8V	FA30-F12VP	FA30-H8V
	(for wider rims, go one grade softer)			
Cylindrical	14 and smaller	Wet SFA60-M5V	…	SFA60-L5V
	16 and larger	Wet SFA54-M5V	…	SFA54-L5V
Centerless	…	Wet SFA54-N5V	…	SFA60-M5V
Internal	Under ½	Wet SFA60-M5V	…	SFA80-L6V
	½ to 1	Wet SFA60-L5V	…	SFA60-K5V
	Over 1 to 3	Wet SFA54-K5V	…	SFA54-J5V
	Over 3	Wet SFA46-K5V	…	SFA46-J5V

Table 6. Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Constructional Steels (Hardened or Carburized)

Grinding Operation	Wheel or Rim Diameter, Inches	First Choice	Alternate Choice (Porous Type)
Surfacing			
Straight wheels	14 and smaller	Wet FA46-I8V	FA46-G12VP
	14 and smaller	Dry FA46-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	Over 14	Wet FA36-I8V	FA36-G12VP
Segments or Cylinders	1½ rim or less	Wet FA30-H8V	FA36-F12VP
Cups	¾ rim or less	Wet FA36-H8V	FA46-F12VP
	(for wider rims, go one grade softer)		
Forms and Radius	8 and smaller	Wet FA60-L7V to FA100-M8V	
Grinding	8 and smaller	Dry FA60-K8V to FA100-L8V	
	10 and larger	Wet FA60-L7V to FA80-M7V	
Cylindrical			
Work diameter			
1 inch and smaller	14 and smaller	Wet SFA80-L6V	…
Over 1 inch	14 and smaller	Wet SFA80-K5V	…
1 inch and smaller	16 and larger	Wet SFA60-L5V	…
Over 1 inch	16 and larger	Wet SFA60-L5V	…
Centerless	…	Wet SFA80-M6V	…
Internal	Under ½	Wet SFA80-N6V	…
	½ to 1	Wet SFA60-M5V	…
	Over 1 to 3	Wet SFA54-L5V	…
	Over 3	Wet SFA46-K5V	…
	Under ½	Dry FA80-L6V	…
	½ to 1	Dry FA70-K8V	…
	Over 1 to 3	Dry FA60-J8V	FA60-H12VP
	Over 3	Dry FA46-J8V	FA54-H12VP

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cubic Boron Nitride (CBN) Grinding Wheels.—Although CBN is not quite as hard, strong, and wear-resistant as a diamond, it is far harder, stronger, and more resistant to wear than aluminum oxide and silicon carbide. As with diamond, CBN materials are available in different types for grinding workpieces of 50 RC (Rockwell C scale) and above, and for superalloys of 35 RC and harder. Microcrystalline CBN grinding wheels are suitable for grinding mild steels, medium-hard alloy steels, stainless steels, cast irons, and forged steels. Wheels with larger mesh size grains (up to 20⁄30), now available, provide for higher rates of metal removal.

Special types of CBN are produced for resin, vitrified, and electrodeposited bonds. Wheel standards and nomenclature generally conform to those used for diamond wheels (page 1304), except that the letter **B** instead of **D** is used to denote the type of abrasive. Grinding machines for CBN wheels are generally designed to take full advantage of the ability of CBN to operate at high surface speeds of 9,000–25,000 sfm (2745–7620 m/min). CBN is very responsive to changes in grinding conditions, and an increase in wheel speed from 5,000 to 10,000 sfm (1525–3050 m/min) can increase wheel life by a factor of 6 or more. A change from a water-based coolant to a coolant such as a sulfochlorinated or sulfurized straight grinding oil can increase wheel life by a factor of 10 or more.

Machines designed specifically for use with CBN grinding wheels generally use either electrodeposited wheels or have special truing systems for other CBN bond wheels, and are totally enclosed so they can use oil as a coolant. Numerical control systems are used, often running fully automatically, including loading and unloading. Machines designed for CBN grinding with electrodeposited wheels are extensively used for form and gear grinding, special systems being used to ensure rapid mounting to exact concentricity and truth in running, no truing or dressing being required. CBN wheels can produce workpieces having excellent accuracy and finish, with no truing or dressing for the life of the wheel, even over many hours or days of production grinding of hardened steel components.

Resin-, metal-, and vitrified-bond wheels are used extensively in production grinding, in standard and special machines. Resin-bonded wheels are used widely for dry tool and cutter resharpening on conventional hand-operated tool and cutter grinders. A typical wheel for such work would be designated 11V9 cup type, 100⁄120 mesh, 75 concentration, with a $\frac{1}{16}$ or $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (1.6 or 3.2 mm) rim section. Special shapes of resin-bonded wheels are used on dedicated machines for cutting tool manufacture. These types of wheels are usually self-dressing, and allow full machine control of the operation without the need for an operator to see, hear, or feel the action.

Metal-bonded CBN wheels are usually somewhat cheaper than those using other types of bond because only a thin layer of abrasive is present. Metal bonding is also used in manufacture of CBN honing stones. Vitrified-bond CBN wheels are a recent innovation, and high-performance bonds are still being developed. These wheels are used for grinding cams, internal diameters, and bearing components, and can be easily redressed.

An important aspect of grinding with CBN and diamond wheels is reduced heating of the workpiece, thought to result from their superior thermal conductivity compared with aluminum oxide, for instance. CBN and diamond grains also are harder, which means that they stay sharp longer than aluminum oxide grains. The superior ability to absorb heat from the workpiece during the grinding process reduces formation of untempered martensite in the ground surface, caused by overheating followed by rapid quenching. At the same time, a higher compressive residual stress is induced in the surface, giving increased fatigue resistance, compared with the tensile stresses found in surfaces ground with aluminum oxide abrasives. Increased fatigue resistance is of particular importance for gear grinding, especially in the root area.

Variations from General Grinding Wheel Recommendations.—Recommendations for the selection of grinding wheels are usually based on average values with regard to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

both operational conditions and process objectives. With variations from such average values, the composition of the grinding wheels must be adjusted to obtain optimum results. Although it is impossible to list and to appraise all possible variations and to define their effects on the selection of the best suited grinding wheels, some guidance is obtained from experience. The following tabulation indicates the general directions in which the characteristics of the initially selected grinding wheel may have to be altered in order to approach optimum performance. Variations in a sense opposite to those shown will call for wheel characteristic changes in reverse.

Conditions or Objectives	Direction of Change
To increase cutting rate	Coarser grain, softer bond, higher porosity
To retain wheel size and/or form	Finer grain, harder bond
For small or narrow work surface	Finer grain, harder bond
For larger wheel diameter	Coarser grain
To improve finish on work	Finer grain, harder bond, or resilient bond
For increased work speed or feed rate	Harder bond
For increased wheel speed	Generally, softer bond, except for high-speed grinding, which requires a harder bond for added wheel strength
For interrupted or coarse work surface	Harder bond
For thin walled parts	Softer bond
To reduce load on the machine drive motor	Softer bond

Dressing and Truing Grinding Wheels.—The perfect grinding wheel operating under ideal conditions will be self sharpening, i.e., as the abrasive grains become dull, they will tend to fracture and be dislodged from the wheel by the grinding forces, thereby exposing new, sharp abrasive grains. Although in precision machine grinding this ideal sometimes may be partially attained, it is almost never attained completely. Usually, the grinding wheel must be dressed and trued after mounting on the precision grinding machine spindle and periodically thereafter.

Dressing may be defined as any operation performed on the face of a grinding wheel that improves its cutting action. Truing is a dressing operation but is more precise, i.e., the face of the wheel may be made parallel to the spindle or made into a radius or special shape. Regularly applied truing is also needed for accurate size control of the work, particularly in automatic grinding. The tools and processes generally used in grinding wheel dressing and truing are listed and described in Table 1.

Table 1. Tools and Methods for Grinding Wheel Dressing and Truing

Designation	Description	Application
Rotating Hand Dressers	Freely rotating discs, either star-shaped with protruding points or discs with corrugated or twisted perimeter, supported in a fork-type handle, the lugs of which can lean on the tool rest of the grinding machine.	Preferred for bench- or floor-type grinding machines; also for use on heavy portable grinders (snagging grinders) where free-cutting properties of the grinding wheel are primarily sought and the accuracy of the trued profile is not critical.
Abrasive Sticks	Made of silicon carbide grains with a hard bond. Applied directly or supported in a handle. Less frequently abrasive sticks are also made of boron carbide.	Usually hand held and use limited to smaller-size wheels. Because it also shears the grains of the grinding wheel, or preshaping, prior to final dressing with, e.g., a diamond.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Tools and Methods for Grinding Wheel Dressing and Truing**

Designation	Description	Application
Abrasive Wheels (Rolls)	Silicon carbide grains in a hard vitrified bond are cemented on ball-bearing mounted spindles. Use either as hand tools with handles or rigidly held in a supporting member of the grinding machine. Generally freely rotating; also available with adjustable brake for diamond wheel dressing.	Preferred for large grinding wheels as a diamond saver, but also for improved control of the dressed surface characteristics. By skewing the abrasive dresser wheel by a few degrees out of parallel with the grinding wheel axis, the basic crushing action is supplemented with wiping and shearing, thus producing the desired degree of wheel surface smoothness.
Single-Point Diamonds	A diamond stone of selected size is mounted in a steel nib of cylindrical shape with or without head, dimensioned to fit the truing spindle of specific grinding machines. Proper orientation and retainment of the diamond point in the setting is an important requirement.	The most widely used tool for dressing and truing grinding wheels in precision grinding. Permits precisely controlled dressing action by regulating infeed and cross feed rate of the truing spindle when the latter is guided by cams or templates for accurate form truing.
Single-Point Form Truing Diamonds	Selected diamonds having symmetrically located natural edges with precisely lapped diamond points, controlled cone angles and vertex radius, and the axis coinciding with that of the nib.	Used for truing operations requiring very accurately controlled, and often steeply inclined wheel profiles, such as are needed for thread and gear grinding, where one or more diamond points participate in generating the resulting wheel periphery form. Dependent on specially designed and made truing diamonds and nibs.
Cluster-Type Diamond Dresser	Several, usually seven, smaller diamond stones are mounted in spaced relationship across the working surface of the nib. In some tools, more than a single layer of such clusters is set at parallel levels in the matrix, the deeper positioned layer becoming active after the preceding layer has worn away.	Intended for straight-face dressing and permits the utilization of smaller, less expensive diamond stones. In use, the holder is canted at a 3° to 10° angle, bringing two to five points into contact with the wheel. The multiple-point contact permits faster cross feed rates during truing than may be used with single-point diamonds for generating a specific degree of wheel-face finish.
Impregnated Matrix-Type Diamond Dressers	The operating surface consists of a layer of small, randomly distributed, yet rather uniformly spaced diamonds that are retained in a bond holding the points in an essentially common plane. Supplied either with straight or canted shaft, the latter being used to cancel the tilt of angular truing posts.	For the truing of wheel surfaces consisting of a single or several flat elements. The nib face should be held tangent to the grinding wheel periphery or parallel with a flat working surface. Offers economic advantages where technically applicable because of using less expensive diamond splinters presented in a manner permitting efficient utilization.
Form- Generating Truing Devices	Swiveling diamond holder post with adjustable pivot location, arm length, and swivel arc, mounted on angularly adjustable cross slides with controlled traverse movement, permits the generation of various straight and circular profile elements, kept in specific mutual locations.	Such devices are made in various degrees of complexity for the positionally controlled interrelation of several different profile elements. Limited to regular straight and circular sections, yet offers great flexibility of setup, very accurate adjustment, and unique versatility for handling a large variety of frequently changing profiles.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Tools and Methods for Grinding Wheel Dressing and Truing**

Designation	Description	Application
Contour-Duplicating Truing Devices	The form of a master, called cam or template, shaped to match the profile to be produced on the wheel, or its magnified version, is translated into the path of the diamond point by means of mechanical linkage, a fluid actuator, or a pantograph device.	Preferred single-point truing method for profiles to be produced in quantities warranting the making of special profile bars or templates. Used also in small- and medium-volume production when the complexity of the profile to be produced excludes alternate methods of form generation.
Grinding Wheel Contouring by Crush Truing	A hardened steel or carbide roll, which is free to rotate and has the desired form of the workpiece, is fed gradually into the grinding wheel, which runs at slow speed. The roll will, by crushing action, produce its reverse form in the wheel. Crushing produces a free-cutting wheel face with sharp grains.	Requires grinding machines designed for crush truing, having stiff spindle bearings, rigid construction, slow wheel speed for truing, etc. Due to the cost of crush rolls and equipment, the process is used for repetitive work only. It is one of the most efficient methods for precisely duplicating complex wheel profiles that are capable of grinding in the 8-µin. (0.2032 µm) AA range. Applicable for both surface and cylindrical grinding.
Rotating Diamond Roll-Type Grinding Wheel Truing	Special rolls made to agree with specific profile specifications have their periphery coated with a large number of uniformly distributed diamonds, held in a matrix into which the individual stones are set by hand (for larger diamonds) or bonded by a plating process (for smaller elements).	The diamond rolls must be rotated by an air, hydraulic, or electric motor at about one-fourth of the grinding wheel surface speed and in opposite direction to the wheel rotation. Whereas the initial costs are substantially higher than for single-point diamond truing the savings in truing time warrants the method's application in large-volume production of profile-ground components.
Diamond Dressing Blocks	Made as flat blocks for straight wheel surfaces, are also available for radius dressing and profile truing. The working surface consists of a layer of electroplated diamond grains, uniformly distributed and capable of truing even closely toleranced profiles.	For straight wheels, dressing blocks can reduce dressing time and offer easy installation on surface grinders, where the blocks mount on the magnetic plate. Recommended for small- and medium-volume production for truing intricate profiles on regular surface grinders, because the higher pressure developed in crush dressing is avoided.

Guidelines for Dressing and Truing with Single-Point Diamonds.—The diamond nib should be canted at an angle of 10 to 15 degrees in the direction of the wheel rotation and also, if possible, by the same amount in the direction of the cross feed traverse during the truing (see diagram). The dragging effect resulting from this "angling," combined with the occasional rotation of the diamond nib in its holder, will prolong the diamond life by limiting the extent of wear facets and will also tend to produce a pyramid shape of the diamond tip. The diamond may also be set to contact the wheel at about $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (3.2–6.4 mm) below its centerline.

Depth of Cut: This amount should not exceed 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) per pass for general work, and will have to be reduced to 0.0002 to 0.0004 inch (0.005-0.010 mm) per pass for wheels with fine grains used for precise finishing work.

Diamond crossfeed rate: This value may be varied to some extent depending on the required wheel surface: faster crossfeed for free cutting, and slower crossfeed for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

producing fine finishes. Such variations, however, must always stay within the limits set by the grain size of the wheel. Thus, the advance rate of the truing diamond per wheel revolution should not exceed the diameter of a grain or be less than half of that rate. Consequently, the diamond crossfeed must be slower for a large wheel than for a smaller wheel having the same grain size number.Typical crossfeed values for frequently used grain sizes are given in Table 2.

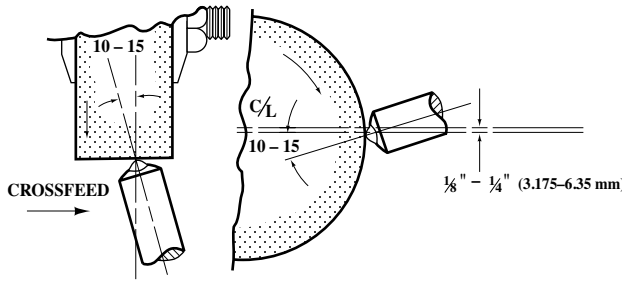


Table 2. Typical Diamond Truing and Crossfeeds

	Crossfeed per Wheel Rev.			Crossfeed per Wheel Rev.	
Grain Size	inch	mm	Grain Size	inch	mm
30	0.014–0.024	0.35–0.61	60	0.006–0.010	0.15–0.25
36	0.012–0.019	0.30–0.48	80	0.004–0.007	0.10–0.18
46	0.008–0.014	0.20–0.35	120	0.0025–0.004	0.06–0.10
50	0.007–0.012	0.18–0.30	…	…	…

These values can be easily converted into the more conveniently used inch-per-minute units, simply by multiplying the crossfeed rate in inches by the rpm of the grinding wheel.

Example: For a 20-inch diameter wheel, Grain No. 46, running at 1200 rpm: Crossfeed rate for roughing-cut truing, approximately 17 ipm; for finishing-cut truing, approximately 10 ipm.

Coolant should be applied before the diamond comes into contact with the wheel and must be continued in generous supply while truing.

The speed of the grinding wheel should be at the regular grinding rate, or not much lower. For that reason, the feed wheels of centerless grinding machines usually have an additional speed rate higher than functionally needed, that speed being provided for wheel truing only.

The initial approach of the diamond to the wheel surface must be carried out carefully to prevent sudden contact with the diamond, resulting in penetration in excess of the selected depth of cut. It should be noted that the highest point of a worn wheel is often in its center portion and not at the edge from which the crossfeed of the diamond starts.

The general conditions of the truing device are important for best truing results and for assuring extended diamond life. A rigid truing spindle, well-seated diamond nib, and firmly set diamond point are mandatory. Sensitive infeed and smooth traverse movement at uniform speed also must be maintained.

Resetting of the diamond point. Never let the diamond point wear to a degree where the grinding wheel is in contact with the steel nib. Such contact can damage the setting of the diamond point and result in its loss. Expert resetting of a worn diamond can repeatedly add to its useful life, even when applied to lighter work because of reduced size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Size Selection Guide for Single-Point Truing Diamonds.—There are no rigid rules for determining the proper size of the diamond for any particular truing application because of the very large number of factors affecting that choice. Several of these factors are related to the condition, particularly the rigidity, of the grinding machine and truing device, as well as to such characteristics of the diamond itself as purity, crystalline structure, etc. Although these factors are difficult to evaluate in a generally applicable manner, the expected effects of several other conditions can be appraised and should be considered in the selection of the proper diamond size.

The recommended sizes in Table 3 must be considered as informative only and as representing minimum values for generally favorable conditions. Factors calling for larger diamond sizes than listed are the following:

Silicon carbide wheels (Table 3 refers to aluminum oxide wheels)

Dry truing

Grain sizes coarser than No. 46

Bonds harder than M

Wheel speed substantially higher than 6500 sfm (1981 m/min).

It is advisable to consider any single or pair of these factors as justifying the selection of one size larger diamond. As an example: for truing an SiC wheel, with grain size No. 36 and hardness P, select a diamond that is two sizes larger than that shown in Table 3 for the wheel size in use.

Table 3. Recommended Minimum Sizes for Single-Point Truing Diamonds

Diamond Size in Carats[a]	Index Number (Wheel Dia. × Width, Inches)	Examples of Max. Grinding Wheel Dimensions (inches)	
		Diameter	Width
0.25	3	4	0.75
0.35	6	6	1
0.50	10	8	1.25
0.60	15	10	1.50
0.75	21	12	1.75
1.00	30	12	2.50
1.25	48	14	3.50
1.50	65	16	4.00
1.75	80	20	4.00
2.00	100	20	5.00
2.50	150	24	6.00
3.00	200	24	8.00
3.50	260	30	8.00
4.00	350	36	10.00

[a] One carat equals 0.2 gram.

Single-point diamonds are available as loose stones, but are preferably procured from specialized manufacturers supplying the diamonds set into steel nibs. Expert setting, comprising both the optimum orientation of the stone and its firm retainment, is mandatory for assuring adequate diamond life and satisfactory truing. Because the holding devices for truing diamonds are not yet standardized, the required nib dimensions vary depending on the make and type of different grinding machines. Some nibs are made with angular heads, usually hexagonal, to permit occasional rotation of the nib either manually, with a wrench, or automatically.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diamond Wheels

Diamond Wheels.—A diamond wheel is a special type of grinding wheel in which the abrasive elements are diamond grains held in a bond and applied to form a layer on the operating face of a non-abrasive core. Diamond wheels are used for grinding very hard or highly abrasive materials. Primary applications are the grinding of cemented carbides, such as the sharpening of carbide cutting tools; the grinding of glass, ceramics, asbestos, and cement products; and the cutting and slicing of germanium and silicon.

Shapes of Diamond Wheels.—The industry-wide accepted Standard (ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014) specifies ten basic diamond wheel core shapes which are shown in Table 1 with the applicable designation symbols. The applied diamond abrasive layer may have different cross-sectional shapes. Those standardized are shown in Table 2. The third aspect which is standardized is the location of the diamond section on the wheel as shown by the diagrams in Table 3. Finally, modifications of the general core shape together with pertinent designation letters are given in Table 4.

The characteristics of the wheel shape listed in these four tables make up the components of the standard designation symbol for diamond wheel shapes. An example of that symbol with arbitrarily selected components is shown in Fig. 1.

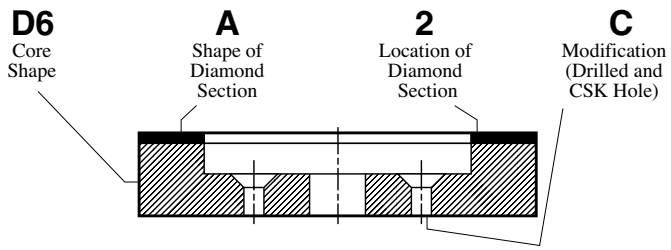


Fig. 1. A Typical Diamond Wheel Shape Designation Symbol

An explanation of these components is as follows:

Basic Core Shape: This portion of the symbol indicates the basic shape of the core on which the diamond abrasive section is mounted. The shape is actually designated by a number. The various core shapes and their designations are given in Table 1.

Diamond Cross-Sectional Shape: This, the second component, consisting of one or two letters, denotes the cross-sectional shape of the diamond abrasive section. The various shapes and their corresponding letter designations are given in Table 2.

Diamond Section Location: The third component of the symbol consists of a number which gives the location of the diamond section, i.e., periphery, side, corner, etc. An explanation of these numbers is shown in Table 3.

Modification: The fourth component of the symbol is a letter designating some modification, such as drilled and counterbored holes for mounting or special relieving of diamond section or core. This modification position of the symbol is used only when required. The modifications and their designations are given in Table 4.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Diamond Wheel Core Shapes and Designations *ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)*

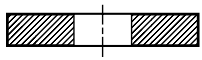
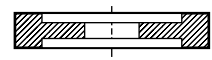
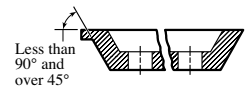
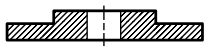
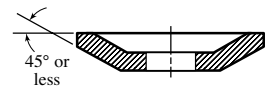
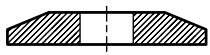
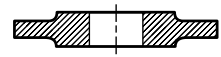
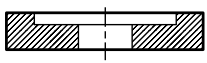
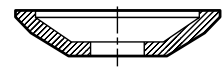
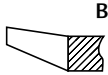
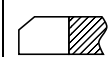
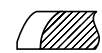
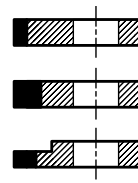
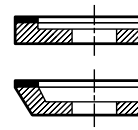
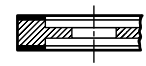
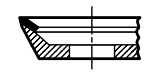
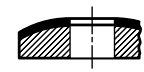
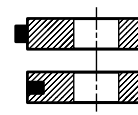
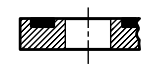
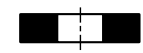
1  Typical Peripheral Grinding	9 
2 Typical Side Grinding	11 
3 	12 
4 	14 
6 	15 

Table 2. Diamond Cross Sections and Designations
ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)

A	D	F	K	QQ
AH	DD	FF	L	S
B	E	G	LL	U
BT 	EE	GN	M 	V
C	ER	H	P 	Y
CH	ET	J	Q	

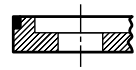
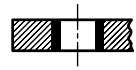
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Designations for Location of Diamond Section on Diamond Wheel *ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)*

Designation No. and Location	Description	Illustration
1 — Periphery	The diamond section shall be placed on the periphery of the core and shall extend the full thickness of the wheel. The axial length of this section may be greater than, equal to, or less than the depth of diamond, measured radially. A hub or hubs shall not be considered as part of the wheel thickness for this definition.	
2 — Side	The diamond section shall be placed on the side of the wheel and the length of the diamond section shall extend from the periphery toward the center. It may or may not include the entire side and shall be greater than the diamond depth measured axially. It shall be on that side of the wheel which is commonly used for grinding purposes.	
3 — Both Sides	The diamond sections shall be placed on both sides of the wheel and shall extend from the periphery toward the center. They may or may not include the entire sides, and the radial length of the diamond section shall exceed the axial diamond depth.	
4 — Inside Bevel or Arc	This designation shall apply to the general wheel types 2, 6, 11, 12, and 15 and shall locate the diamond section on the side wall. This wall shall have an angle or arc extending from a higher point at the wheel periphery to a lower point toward the wheel center.	
5 — Outside Bevel or Arc	This designation shall apply to the general wheel types, 2, 6, 11, and 15 and shall locate the diamond section on the side wall. This wall shall have an angle or arc extending from a lower point at the wheel periphery to a higher point toward the wheel center.	
6 — Part of Periphery	The diamond section shall be placed on the periphery of the core but shall not extend the full thickness of the wheel and shall not reach to either side.	
7 — Part of Side	The diamond section shall be placed on the side of the core and shall not extend to the wheel periphery. It may or may not extend to the center.	
8 — Throughout	Designates wheels of solid diamond abrasive section without cores.	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Designations for Location of Diamond Section on Diamond Wheel** *ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)*

Designation No. and Location	Description	Illustration
9 — Corner	Designates a location which would commonly be considered to be on the periphery except that the diamond section shall be on the corner but shall not extend to the other corner.	
10 — Annular	Designates a location of the diamond abrasive section on the inner annular surface of the wheel.	

Composition of Diamond and Cubic Boron Nitride Wheels.—According to American National Standard ANSI B74.13-2016, a series of symbols is used to designate the composition of these wheels. An example is shown below.

Prefix	Abrasive	Grain Size	Grade	Concentration	Bond Type	Bond Modification	Depth of Abrasive	Manufacturer's Identification Symbol
M	**D**	**120**	**R**	**100**	**B**	**56**	**⅛**	*

Fig. 2. Designation Symbols for Composition of Diamond and Cubic Boron Nitride Wheels

The meaning of each symbol is indicated by the following list:

1) *Prefix:* The prefix is a manufacturer's symbol indicating the exact kind of abrasive. Its use is optional.

2) *Abrasive Type:* The letter (B) is used for cubic boron nitride and (D) for diamond.

3) *Grain Size:* The grain sizes commonly used and varying from coarse to very fine are indicated by the following numbers: 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 24, 30, 36, 46, 54, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 150, 180, and 220. The following additional sizes are used occasionally: 240, 280, 320, 400, 500, and 600. The wheel manufacturer may add to the regular grain number an additional symbol to indicate a special grain combination.

4) *Grade:* Grades are indicated by letters of the alphabet from A to Z in all bonds or processes. Wheel grades from A to Z range from soft to hard.

5) *Concentration:* The concentration symbol is a manufacturer's designation. It may be a number or a symbol.

6) *Bond:* Bonds are indicated by the following letters: B, resinoid; V, vitrified; M, metal.

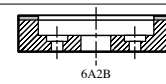
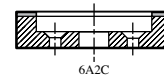
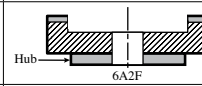
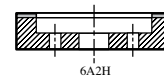
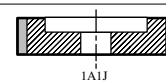
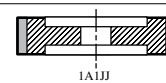
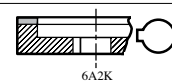
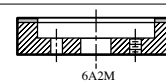
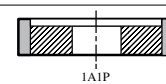
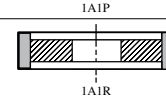
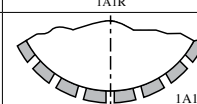
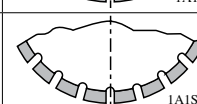
7) *Bond Modification:* Within each bond type a manufacturer may have modifications to tailor the bond to a specific application. These modifications may be identified by either letters or numbers.

8) *Abrasive Depth:* Abrasive section depth, in inches or millimeters (inches illustrated), is indicated by a number or letter which is the amount of total dimensional wear a user may expect from the abrasive portion of the product. Most diamond and CBN wheels are made with a depth of coating on the order of $\frac{1}{16}$ in., $\frac{1}{8}$ in., (1.6 mm, 3.2 mm) or more as specified. In some cases the diamond is applied in thinner layers, as thin as one thickness of diamond grains. The L is included in the marking system to identify a layered type product.

9) *Manufacturer's Identification Symbol:* The use of this symbol is optional.

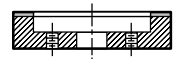
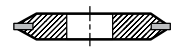
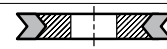
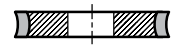
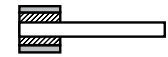
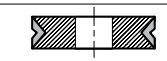
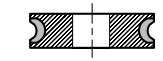
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Designation Letters for Modifications of Diamond Wheels
ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)

Designation Letter	Description	Illustration
B — Drilled and Counterbored	Holes drilled and counterbored in core.	 6A2B
C — Drilled and Countersunk	Holes drilled and countersunk in core.	 6A2C
F — Hub	Hub on basic wheel cover	 6A2F
H — Plain Hole	Straight hole drilled in core.	 6A2H
J — Recess One Side		 1A1J
JJ — Recess Two Sides		 1A1JJ
K — Keyway	Arbor hole with keyway	 6A2K
M — Holes Plain and Threaded	Mixed holes, some plain, some threaded, are in core.	 6A2M
N — Nonsteel Core	Nonsteel core for 1A1R and related shapes	
P — Relieved One Side	Core relieved on one side of wheel. Thickness of core is less than wheel thickness.	 1A1P
R — Relieved Two Sides	Core relieved on both sides of wheel. Thickness of core is less than wheel thickness.	 1A1R
S — Segmented-Diamond Section	Wheel has segmental diamond section mounted on core. (Clearance between segments has no bearing on definition.)	 1A1S
SS — Segmental and Slotted	Wheel has separated segments mounted on a slotted core.	 1A1SS

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Designation Letters for Modifications of Diamond Wheels**
ANSI B74.3-2003 (R2014)

Designation Letter	Description	Illustration
T — Threaded Holes	Threaded holes are in core.	 6A2T
Q — Diamond Inserted	Three surfaces of the diamond section are partially or completely enclosed by the core.	 1A6Q
V — Diamond Inverted	Any diamond cross section that is mounted on the core so that the interior point of any angle, or the concave side of any arc, is exposed shall be considered inverted. *Exception:* Diamond cross section AH shall be placed on the core with the concave side of the arc exposed.	 1EE1V  1FF1V
W — Wheels Affixed on a Mandrel		1A8W  1A1W
Y — Diamond Inserted and Inverted	See definitions for Q and V.	 1EE6Y  1FF6Y

The Selection of Diamond Wheels.—Two general aspects must be defined: (a) The shape of the wheel, also referred to as the basic wheel type and (b) The specification of the abrasive portion.

Table 5. General Diamond Wheel Recommendations for Wheel Type and Abrasive Specification

Typical Applications or Operation	Basic Wheel Type	Abrasive Specification	
Single Point Tools (offhand grinding)	D6A2C	*Rough:*	MD100-N100-B1⁄8
		Finish:	MD220-P75-B1⁄8
Single Point Tools (machine ground)	D6A2H	*Rough:*	MD180-J100-B1⁄8
		Finish:	MD320-L75-B1⁄8
Chip Breakers	D1A1		MD150-R100-B1⁄8
Multitooth Tools and Cutters (face mills, end mills, reamers, broaches, etc.)	D11V9	*Rough:*	MD100-R100-B1⁄8
		Combination:	MD150-R100-B1⁄8
Sharpening and Backing off		*Finish:*	MD220-R100-B1⁄8
Fluting	D12A2		MD180-N100-B1⁄8
Saw Sharpening	D12A2		MD180-R100-B1⁄8
Surface Grinding (horizontal spindle)	D1A1	*Rough:*	MD120-N100-B1⁄8
		Finish:	MD240-P100-B1⁄8
Surface Grinding (vertical spindle)	D2A2T		MD80-R75-B1⁄8

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **General Diamond Wheel Recommendations for Wheel Type and Abrasive Specification**

Typical Applications or Operation	Basic Wheel Type	Abrasive Specification
Cylindrical or Centertype Grinding	D1A1	MD120-P100-B⅛
Internal Grinding	D1A1	MD150-N100-B⅛
Slotting and Cutoff	D1A1R	MD150-R100-B¼
Lapping	Disc	MD400-L50-B1/16
Hand Honing	DH1, DH2	*Rough:* MD220-B1/16 *Finish:* MD320-B⅛

General recommendations for the dry grinding, with resin bond diamond wheels, of most grades of cemented carbides of average surface to ordinary finishes at normal rates of metal removal with average size wheels, as published by Cincinnati Milacron, are listed in Table 5.

A further set of variables are *the dimensions of the wheel*, which must be adapted to the available grinding machine and, in some cases, to the configuration of the work.

The general abrasive specifications in Table 5 may be modified to suit operating conditions by the following suggestions:

Use softer wheel grades for harder grades of carbides, for grinding larger areas or larger or wider wheel faces.

Use harder wheel grades for softer grades of carbides, for grinding smaller areas, for using smaller and narrower face wheels and for light cuts.

Use fine grit sizes for harder grades of carbides and to obtain better finishes.

Use coarser grit sizes for softer grades of carbides and for roughing cuts.

Use higher diamond concentration for harder grades of carbides, for larger diameter or wider face wheels, for heavier cuts, and for obtaining better finish.

Guidelines for the Handling and Operation of Diamond Wheels.—Grinding machines used for grinding with diamond wheels should be of the precision type, in good service condition, with true running spindles and smooth slide movements.

Mounting of Diamond Wheels: Wheel mounts should be used which permit the precise centering of the wheel, resulting in a runout of less than 0.001 inch (0.0254 mm) axially and 0.0005 inch (0.0127 mm) radially. These conditions should be checked with a 0.0001-inch (0.001 mm) type dial indicator. Once mounted and centered, the diamond wheel should be retained on its mount and stored in that condition when temporarily removed from the machine.

Truing and Dressing: Resinoid bonded diamond wheels seldom require dressing, but when necessary a soft silicon carbide stick may be hand-held against the wheel. Peripheral and cup type wheels may be sharpened by grinding the cutting face with a 60 to 80 grit silicon carbide wheel. This can be done with the diamond wheel mounted on the spindle of the machine, and with the silicon carbide wheel driven at a relatively slow speed by a specially designed table-mounted grinder or by a small table-mounted tool post grinder. The diamond wheel can be mounted on a special arbor and ground on a lathe with a tool post grinder; peripheral wheels can be ground on a cylindrical grinder or with a special brake-controlled truing device with the wheel mounted on the machine on which it is used. Cup and face type wheels are often lapped on a cast iron or glass plate using a 100 grit silicon carbide abrasive. Care must be used to lap the face parallel to the back, otherwise they must be ground to restore parallelism. Peripheral diamond wheels can be trued and dressed by grinding a silicon carbide block or a special diamond impregnated bronze block in a manner similar to surface grinding. Conventional diamonds must not be used for truing and dressing diamond wheels.

Speeds and Feeds in Diamond Grinding.—General recommendations are as follows:

Wheel Speeds: The generally recommended wheel speeds for diamond grinding are in the range of 5000 to 6000 surface feet per minute (1525–1830 m/min), with this upper limit as a maximum to avoid harmful "overspeeding." Exceptions from that general rule are diamond wheels with coarse grains and high concentration (100 percent) where the wheel wear in dry surface grinding can be reduced by lowering the speed to 2500–3000 sfpm (760–915 m/min). However, this lower speed range can cause rapid wheel breakdown in finer grit wheels or in those with reduced diamond concentration.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Work Speeds: In diamond grinding, work rotation and table traverse are usually established by experience, adjusting these values to the selected infeed so as to avoid excessive wheel wear.

Infeed per Pass: Often referred to as downfeed and usually a function of the grit size of the wheel. The following are general values which may be increased for raising the productivity, or lowered to improve finish or to reduce wheel wear.

Wheel Grit Size Range	Infeed per Pass
100 to 120	0.001 inch (0.025 mm)
150 to 220	0.0005 inch (0.013 mm)
250 and finer	0.00025 inch (0.006 mm)

Grinding Wheel Safety

Safety in Operating Grinding Wheels.—Grinding wheels, although capable of exceptional cutting performance due to hardness and wear resistance, are prone to damage caused by improper handling and operation. Vitrified wheels, comprising the major part of grinding wheels used in industry, are held together by an inorganic bond which is actually a type of pottery product and therefore brittle and breakable. Although most of the organic bond types are somewhat more resistant to shocks, it must be realized that all grinding wheels are conglomerates of individual grains joined by a bond material whose strength is limited by the need of releasing the dull, abrasive grains during use.

It must also be understood that during the grinding process very substantial forces act on the grinding wheel, including the centrifugal force due to rotation, the grinding forces resulting from the resistance of the work material, and shocks caused by sudden contact with the work. To be able to resist these forces, the grinding wheel must have a substantial minimum strength throughout that is well beyond that needed to hold the wheel together under static conditions.

Finally, a damaged grinding wheel can disintegrate during grinding, liberating dormant forces which normally are constrained by the resistance of the bond, thus presenting great hazards to both operator and equipment.

To avoid breakage of the operating wheel and, should such a mishap occur, to prevent damage or injury, specific precautions must be applied. These safeguards have been formulated into rules and regulations and are set forth in the American National Standard ANSI B7.1-2017, entitled the American National Standard Safety Requirements for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels.

Handling, Storage and Inspection.—Grinding wheels should be hand carried, or transported, with proper support, by truck or conveyor. A grinding wheel must not be rolled around on its periphery.

The storage area, positioned not far from the location of the grinding machines, should be free from excessive temperature variations and humidity. Specially built racks are recommended on which the smaller or thin wheels are stacked lying on their sides and the larger wheels in an upright position on two-point cradle supports consisting of appropriately spaced wooden bars. Partitions should separate either the individual wheels, or a small group of identical wheels. Good accessibility to the stored wheels reduces the need of undesirable handling.

Inspection will primarily be directed at detecting visible damage, mostly originating from handling and shipping. Cracks which are not obvious can usually be detected by "ring testing," which consists of suspending the wheel from its hole and tapping it with a non-metallic implement. Heavy wheels may be allowed to rest vertically on a clean, hard floor while performing this test. A clear metallic tone, a "ring", should be heard; a dead sound being indicative of a possible crack or cracks in the wheel.

Machine Conditions.—The general design of the grinding machines must ensure safe operation under normal conditions. The bearings and grinding wheel spindle must be dimensioned to withstand the expected forces and ample driving power should be provided to ensure maintenance of the rated spindle speed. For the protection of the operator, stationary machines used for dry grinding should have a provision made for connection to an exhaust system and when used for off-hand grinding, a work support must be available.

Wheel guards are particularly important protection elements and their material specifications, wall thicknesses and construction principles should agree with the Standard's specifications. The exposure of the wheel should be just enough to avoid interference with the grinding operation. The need for access of the work to the grinding wheel will define the boundary of guard opening, particularly in the direction of the operator.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Grinding Wheel Mounting.—The mass and speed of the operating grinding wheel makes it particularly sensitive to imbalance. Vibrations that result from such conditions are harmful to the machine, particularly the spindle bearings, and they also affect the ground surface, i.e., wheel imbalance causes chatter marks and interferes with size control. Grinding wheels are shipped from the manufacturer's plant in a balanced condition, but retaining the balanced state after mounting the wheel is quite uncertain. Balancing of the mounted wheel is thus required, and is particularly important for medium and large size wheels, as well as for producing accurate and smooth surfaces. The most common way of balancing mounted wheels is by using balancing flanges with adjustable weights. The wheel and balancing flanges are mounted on a short balancing arbor, the two concentric and round stub ends of which are supported in a balancing stand.

Such stands are of two types: 1) the parallel straight-edged, which must be set up precisely level; and 2) the disk type having two pairs of ball bearing mounted overlapping disks, which form a V for containing the arbor ends without hindering the free rotation of the wheel mounted on that arbor.

The wheel will then rotate only when it is out of balance and its heavy spot is not in the lowest position. Rotating the wheel by hand to different positions will move the heavy spot, should such exist, from the bottom to a higher location where it can reveal its presence by causing the wheel to turn. Having detected the presence and location of the heavy spot, its effect can be cancelled by displacing the weights in the circular groove of the flange until a balanced condition is accomplished.

Flanges are commonly used means for holding grinding wheels on the machine spindle. For that purpose, the wheel can either be mounted directly through its hole or by means of a sleeve which slips over a tapered section of the machine spindle. Either way, the flanges must be of equal diameter, usually not less than one-third of the new wheel's diameter. The purpose is to securely hold the wheel between the flanges without interfering with the grinding operation even when the wheel becomes worn down to the point where it is ready to be discarded. Blotters or flange facings of compressible material should cover the entire contact area of the flanges.

One of the flanges is usually fixed while the other is loose and can be removed and adjusted along the machine spindle. The movable flange is held against the mounted grinding wheel by means of a nut engaging a threaded section of the machine spindle. The sense of that thread should be such that the nut will tend to tighten as the spindle revolves. In other words, to remove the nut, it must be turned in the direction that the spindle revolves when the wheel is in operation.

Safe Operating Speeds.—Safe grinding processes are predicated on the proper use of the previously discussed equipment and procedures, and are greatly dependent on the application of adequate operating speeds.

The Standard establishes maximum speeds at which grinding wheels can be operated, assigning the various types of wheels to several classification groups. Different values are listed according to bond type and to wheel strength, distinguishing between low, medium and high strength wheels.

For the purpose of general information, the accompanying Table 1 shows an abbreviated version of the Standard's specification. However, for the governing limits, the authoritative source is the manufacturer's tag on the wheel which, particularly for wheels of lower strength, might specify speeds below those of the table.

All grinding wheels of 6 inches or greater diameter must be test run in the wheel manufacturer's plant at a speed that for all wheels having operating speeds in excess of 5000 sfpm is 1.5 times the maximum speed marked on the tag of the wheel.

The table shows the permissible wheel speeds in surface feet per minute (sfpm) units, whereas the tags on the grinding wheels state, for the convenience of the user, the maximum operating speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). The sfpm unit has the advantage of remaining valid for worn wheels whose rotational speed may be increased to the applicable sfpm value. The conversion from either one to the other of these two kinds of units is a matter of simple calculation using the formulas:

$$\text{sfpm} = \text{rpm} \times \frac{D}{12} \times \pi \qquad \text{or} \qquad \text{rpm} = \frac{\text{sfpm} \times 12}{D \times \pi}$$

where D = maximum diameter of the grinding wheel, in inches. Table 2, showing the conversion values from surface speed into rotational speed, can be used for the direct reading of the rpm values corresponding to several different wheel diameters and surface speeds.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Special Speeds: Continuing progress in grinding methods has led to the recognition of certain advantages that can result from operating grinding wheels above, sometimes even higher than twice, the speeds considered earlier as the safe limits of grinding wheel operations. Advantages from the application of high speed grinding are limited to specific processes, but the Standard admits, and offers code regulations for the use of wheels at special high speeds. These regulations define the structural requirements of the grinding machine and the responsibilities of the grinding wheel manufacturers, as well as of the users. High speed grinding should not be applied unless the machines, particularly guards, spindle assemblies, and drive motors, are suitable for such methods. Also, appropriate grinding wheels expressly made for special high speeds must be used and, of course, the maximum operating speeds indicated on the wheel's tag must never be exceeded.

Portable Grinders.—The above discussed rules and regulations, devised primarily for stationary grinding machines apply also to portable grinders. In addition, the details of various other regulations, specially applicable to different types of portable grinders are discussed in the Standard, which should be consulted, particularly for safe applications of portable grinding machines.

Table 1. Maximum Peripheral Speeds for Grinding Wheels *(Based on ANSI 7.1-2017)*

Maximum Operating Speeds Depending on Strength of Bond					
Classification No and Types of Wheels[a]		Inorganic Bonds		Organic Bonds	
		sfpm	m/min	sfpm	m/min
1	Straight wheels—Type 1, except classifications 6, 9, 11, and 12, 13 and 14 below Recessed Wheels—Types 5 and 7 Type 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26	5500–8500	1675–2590	6500–9500	1980–2895
2	Taper Side Wheels—Type 4[b] Dish wheels—Type 12 Saucer wheels—Type 13 Cones and plugs—Types 16, 17, 18, 19	5000–6500	1525–1980	6500–9500	1980–2895
	Cylinder wheels—Type 2 Segments	5000–6000	1525–1830	5000–7000	1525–2135
3	Cup shape tool grinding wheels—Types 6 and 11 (for fixed base machines)	4500–6000	1370–1830	6000–8500	1830–2590
4	Cup shape snagging wheels—Types 6 and 11 (for portable machines)	4500–6500	1370–1980	6000–9500	1830–2895
5	Abrasive disks and Cylinder Type Discs Solid and Segmental	5500–6500	1675–1980	5500–8500	1675–2590
6	Reinforced wheels—except cutting-off wheels (depending on diameter and thickness)	…	…	9500–16000	2895–4875
7	Type 1 wheels for Bench and Pedestal Grinders, Types 1, 5 and 7 also in certain sizes for surface grinders	5500–7550	1675–2300	6500–9500	1980–2895
8	Diamond and cubic boron nitride wheels Metal bond Steel centered cutting off	to 6500 … to 16000	to 1980 to 3660 to 4875	to 9500 … to 16000	to 2895 … to 4875
9	Cutting-off wheels—Maximum 4-inch diameter (including reinforced organic)	…	…	14200–20000	4330–6100
	Cutting-off wheels—Maximum 16-inch diameter (including reinforced organic)	…	…	9500–16000	2895–4875
	Cutting-off wheels—Larger than 16-inch diameter (incl. reinforced organic)	…	…	9500–14200	2895–4330
	Non-Reinforced All Diameters	…	…	9500–14200	2895–4330
10	Thread and Flute Grinding Wheels	8000–12000	2440–3660	10000–12000	3050–3660
11	Crankshaft and Camshaft Grinding Wheels	8500–12000	2590–3660	6500–9500	1980–2895
12	Snagging Wheels 16 inch or larger, (including reinforced organic)—Used on swing frame grinders	…	…	12500	3810
	Snagging Wheels 16 inch or larger, (including reinforced organic)—Used on semi-automatic snagging grinders	…	…	16500	5030
13	Internal Wheels—Type 1 and 4, Maximum diameter 6 inch	5500–8500	1675–2590	6500–9500	1980–2895
14	Mounted Wheels	10000	3050	10000	3050

[a] See Table 1a and Table 1b starting on pages 1284.

[b] Non-standard shape. For snagging wheels, 16 inches and larger—Type 1, internal wheels—Types 1 and 5, and mounted wheels, see ANSI B7.1–2017. Under no conditions should a wheel be operated faster than the maximum operating speed established by the manufacturer.

Values in this table are for general information only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Revolutions per Minute for Various Grinding Speeds and Wheel Diameters *(Based on ANSI B7.1-2017)*

Wheel Diameter, Inch	Peripheral (Surface) Speed, Feet per Minute																		Wheel Diameter, Inch
	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000	6500	7000	7500	8000	8500	9000	9500	10000	12000	14200	16000	16500	17000	
	Revolutions per Minute																		
1	15279	17189	19099	21008	22918	24828	26738	28648	30558	32468	34377	36287	38197	45837	54240	61115	63025	64935	1
2	7639	8594	9549	10504	11459	12414	13369	14324	15279	16234	17189	18144	19099	22918	27120	30558	31513	32468	2
3	5093	5730	6366	7003	7639	8276	8913	9549	10186	10823	11459	12096	12732	15279	18080	20372	21008	21645	3
4	3820	4297	4775	5252	5730	6207	6685	7162	7639	8117	8594	9072	9549	11459	13560	15279	15756	16234	4
5	3056	3438	3820	4202	4584	4966	5348	5730	6112	6494	6875	7257	7639	9167	10848	12223	12605	12987	5
6	2546	2865	3183	3501	3820	4138	4456	4775	5093	5411	5730	6048	6366	7639	9040	10186	10504	10823	6
7	2183	2456	2728	3001	3274	3547	3820	4093	4365	4638	4911	5184	5457	6548	7749	8731	9004	9276	7
8	1910	2149	2387	2626	2865	3104	3342	3581	3820	4058	4297	4536	4775	5730	6780	7639	7878	8117	8
9	1698	1910	2122	2334	2546	2759	2971	3183	3395	3608	3820	4032	4244	5093	6027	6791	7003	7215	9
10	1528	1719	1910	2101	2292	2483	2674	2865	3056	3247	3438	3629	3820	4584	5424	6112	6303	6494	10
12	1273	1432	1592	1751	1910	2069	2228	2387	2546	2706	2865	3024	3183	3820	4520	5093	5252	5411	12
14	1091	1228	1364	1501	1637	1773	1910	2046	2183	2319	2456	2592	2728	3274	3874	4365	4502	4638	14
16	955	1074	1194	1313	1432	1552	1671	1790	1910	2029	2149	2268	2387	2865	3390	3820	3939	4058	16
18	849	955	1061	1167	1273	1379	1485	1592	1698	1804	1910	2016	2122	2546	3013	3395	3501	3608	18
20	764	859	955	1050	1146	1241	1337	1432	1528	1623	1719	1814	1910	2292	2712	3056	3151	3247	20
22	694	781	868	955	1042	1129	1215	1302	1389	1476	1563	1649	1736	2083	2465	2778	2865	2952	22
24	637	716	796	875	955	1035	1114	1194	1273	1353	1432	1512	1592	1910	2260	2546	2625	2706	24
26	588	661	735	808	881	955	1028	1102	1175	1249	1322	1396	1469	1763	2086	2351	2424	2498	26
28	546	614	682	750	819	887	955	1023	1091	1160	1228	1296	1364	1637	1937	2183	2251	2319	28
30	509	573	637	700	764	828	891	955	1019	1082	1146	1210	1273	1528	1808	2037	2101	2165	30
32	477	537	597	657	716	776	836	895	955	1015	1074	1134	1194	1432	1695	1910	1970	2029	32
34	449	506	562	618	674	730	786	843	899	955	1011	1067	1123	1348	1595	1798	1854	1910	34
36	424	477	531	584	637	690	743	796	849	902	955	1008	1061	1273	1507	1698	1751	1804	36
38	402	452	503	553	603	653	704	754	804	854	905	955	1005	1206	1427	1608	1659	1709	38
40	382	430	477	525	573	621	668	716	764	812	859	907	955	1146	1356	1528	1576	1623	40
42	364	409	455	500	546	591	637	682	728	773	819	864	909	1091	1291	1455	1500	1546	42
44	347	391	434	477	521	564	608	651	694	738	781	825	868	1042	1233	1389	1432	1476	44
46	332	374	415	457	498	540	581	623	664	706	747	789	830	996	1179	1329	1370	1412	46
48	318	358	398	438	477	517	557	597	637	676	716	756	796	955	1130	1273	1313	1353	48
53	288	324	360	396	432	468	504	541	577	613	649	685	721	865	1023	1153	1189	1225	53
60	255	286	318	350	382	414	446	477	509	541	573	605	637	764	904	1019	1050	1082	60
72	212	239	265	292	318	345	371	398	424	451	477	504	531	637	753	849	875	902	72

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cylindrical Grinding

Cylindrical grinding designates a general category of various grinding methods that have the common characteristic of rotating the workpiece around a fixed axis while grinding outside surface sections in controlled relation to that axis of rotation.

The form of the part or section being ground in this process is frequently cylindrical, hence the designation of the general category. However, the shape of the part may be tapered or of curvilinear profile; the position of the ground surface may also be perpendicular to the axis; and it is possible to grind concurrently several surface sections, adjacent or separated, of equal or different diameters, located in parallel or mutually inclined planes, etc., as long as the condition of a common axis of rotation is satisfied.

Size Range of Workpieces and Machines: Cylindrical grinding is applied in the manufacture of miniature parts, such as instrument components and, at the opposite extreme, for grinding rolling mill rolls weighing several tons. Accordingly, there are cylindrical grinding machines of many different types, each adapted to a specific work-size range. Machine capacities are usually expressed by such factors as maximum work diameter, work length and weight, complemented, of course, by many other significant data.

Plain, Universal, and Limited-Purpose Cylindrical Grinding Machines.—The plain cylindrical grinding machine is considered the basic type of this general category, and is used for grinding parts with cylindrical or slightly tapered form.

The universal cylindrical grinder can be used, in addition to grinding the basic cylindrical forms, for the grinding of parts with steep tapers, of surfaces normal to the part axis, including the entire face of the workpiece, and for internal grinding independently or in conjunction with the grinding of the part's outer surfaces. Such variety of part configurations requiring grinding is typical of work in the tool room, which constitutes the major area of application for universal cylindrical grinding machines.

Limited-purpose cylindrical grinders are needed for special work configurations and for high-volume production, where productivity is more important than flexibility of adaptation. Examples of limited-purpose cylindrical grinding machines are crankshaft and camshaft grinders, polygonal grinding machines, roll grinders, etc.

Traverse or Plunge Grinding.—In traverse grinding, the machine table carrying the work performs a reciprocating movement of specific travel length for transporting the rotating workpiece along the face of the grinding wheel. At each or at alternate stroke ends, the wheel slide advances for the gradual feeding of the wheel into the work. The length of the surface that can be ground by this method is generally limited only by the stroke length of the machine table. In large roll grinders, the relative movement between work and wheel is accomplished by the traverse of the wheel slide along a stationary machine table.

In plunge grinding, the machine table, after having been set, is locked and, while the part is rotating, the wheel slide continually advances at a preset rate, until the finish size of the part is reached. The width of the grinding wheel is a limiting factor of the section length that can be ground in this process. Plunge grinding is required for profiled surfaces and for the simultaneous grinding of multiple surfaces of different diameters or located in different planes.

When the configuration of the part does not make use of either method mandatory, the choice may be made on the basis of the following general considerations: traverse grinding usually produces a better finish, and the productivity of plunge grinding is generally higher.

Work Holding on Cylindrical Grinding Machines.—The manner in which the work is located and held in the machine during the grinding process determines the configuration of the part that can be adapted for cylindrical grinding and affects the resulting accuracy of the ground surface. The method of work holding also affects the attainable production rate, because the mounting and dismounting of the part can represent a substantial portion of the total operating time.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Whatever method is used for holding the part on cylindrical types of grinding machines, two basic conditions must be satisfied: 1) the part should be located with respect to its correct axis of rotation; and 2) the work drive must cause the part to rotate, at a specific speed, around the established axis.

The lengthwise location of the part, although controlled, is not too critical in traverse grinding; however, in plunge grinding, particularly when shoulder sections are also involved, it must be assured with great accuracy.

Table 1 presents a listing, with brief discussions, of work-holding methods and devices that are most frequently used in cylindrical grinding.

Table 1. Work-Holding Methods and Devices for Cylindrical Grinding

Designation	Description	Discussion
Centers, nonrotating ("dead"), with drive plate	Headstock with nonrotating spindle holds the center. Around the spindle, an independently supported sleeve carries the drive plate for rotating the work. Tailstock for opposite center.	The simplest method of holding the work between two opposite centers is also the potentially most accurate, as long as correctly prepared and located center holes are used in the work.
Centers, driving type	Word held between two centers obtains its rotation from the concurrently applied drive by the live headstock spindle and live tailstock spindle.	Eliminates the drawback of the common center-type grinding with driver plate, which requires a dog attached to the workpiece. Driven spindles permit the grinding of the work up to both ends.
Chuck, geared, or cam-actuated	Two, three, or four jaws moved radially through mechanical elements, hand-, or power-operated, exert concentrically acting clamping force on the workpiece.	Adaptable to workpieces of different configurations and within a generally wide capacity of the chuck. Flexible in uses that, however, do not include high-precision work.
Chuck, diaphragm	Force applied by hand or power of a flexible diaphragm causes the attached jaws to deflect temporarily for accepting the work, which is held when force is released.	Rapid action and flexible adaptation to different work configurations by means of special jaws offer varied uses for the grinding of disk-shaped and similar parts.
Collets	Holding devices with externally or internally acting clamping force, easily adaptable to power actuation, assuring high centering accuracy.	Limited to parts with previously machined or ground holding surfaces, because of the small range of clamping movement of the collet jaws.
Faceplate	Has four independently actuated jaws, any or several of which may be used, or entirely removed, using the base plate for supporting special clamps.	Used for holding bulky parts, or those of awkward shape, which are ground in small quantities not warranting special fixtures.
Magnetic plate	Flat plates, with pole distribution adapted to the work, are mounted on the spindle like chucks and may be used for work with the locating face normal to the axis.	Applicable for light cuts such as are frequent in tool making, where the rapid clamping action and easy access to both the O.D. and the exposed face are sometimes of advantage.
Steady rests	Two basic types are used: (a) the two-jaw type supporting the work from the back (back rest), leaving access by the wheel; (b) the three-jaw type (center rest).	A complementary work-holding device, used in conjunction with primary work holders, to provide additional support, particularly to long and/or slender parts.
Special fixtures	Single-purpose devices, designed for a particular workpiece, primarily for providing special locating elements.	Typical workpieces requiring special fixturing are, as examples, crankshafts where the holding is combined with balancing functions; or internal gears located on the pitch circle of the teeth for O.D. grinding.

Selection of Grinding Wheels for Cylindrical Grinding.—For cylindrical grinding, as for grinding in general, the primary factor to be considered in wheel selection is the work material. Other factors are the amount of excess stock and its rate of removal (feeds and speeds), the desired accuracy and surface finish, the ratio of wheel and work diameter, wet or dry grinding, etc. In view of these many variables, it is not practical to set up a complete

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

list of grinding wheel recommendations with general validity. Instead, examples of recommendations embracing a wide range of typical applications and assuming common practices are presented in Table 2. This is intended as a guide for the starting selection of grinding wheel specifications which, in case of a not entirely satisfactory performance, can be refined subsequently. The content of the table is a version of the grinding wheel recommendations for cylindrical grinding by the Norton Company using, however, non-proprietary designations for the abrasive types and bonds.

Table 2. Wheel Recommendations for Cylindrical Grinding

Material	Wheel Marking	Material	Wheel Marking
Aluminum	SFA46-18V	Forgings	A46-M5V
Armatures (laminated)	SFA100-18V	Gages (plug)	SFA80-K8V
Axles (auto & railway)	A54-M5V	General-purpose grinding	SFA54-L5V
Brass	C36-KV	Glass	BFA220-011V
Bronze		Gun barrels	
Soft	C36-KV	Spotting and O.D.	BFA60-M5V
Hard	A46-M5V	Nitralloy	
Bushings (hardened steel)	BFA60-L5V	Before nitriding	A60-K5V
Bushings (cast iron)	C36-JV	After nitriding	
Cam lobes (cast alloy)		Commercial finish	SFA60-18V
Roughing	BFA54-N5V	High finish	C100-1V
Finishing	A70-P6B	Reflective finish	C500-19E
Cam lobes (hardened steel)		Pistons (aluminum)	SFA46-18V
Roughing	BFA54-L5V	(cast iron)	C36-KV
Finishing	BFA80-T8B	Plastics	C46-JV
Cast iron	C36-JV	Rubber	
Chromium plating		Soft	SFA20-K5B
Commercial finish	SFA60-J8V	Hard	C36-KB
High finish	A150-K5E	Spline shafts	SFA60-N5V
Reflective finish	C500-I9E	Sprayed metal	C60-JV
Commutators (copper)	C60-M4E	Steel	
Crankshafts (airplane)		Soft	
Pins	BFA46-K5V	1 in. dia. and smaller	SFA60-M5V
Bearings	A46-L5V	over 1 in dia.	SFA46-L5V
Crankshafts (automotive		Hardened	
pins and bearings)		1 in. dia. and smaller	SFA80-L8V
Finishing	A54-N5V	over 1 in. dia.	SFA60-K5V
Roughing & finishing	A54-O5V	300 series stainless	SFA46-K8V
Regrinding	A54-M5V	Stellite	BFA46-M5V
Regrinding, sprayed		Titanium	C60-JV
metal	C60-JV	Valve stems (automative)	BFA54-N5V
Drills	BFA54-N5V	Valve tappets	BFA54-M5V

Note: Prefixes to the standard designation "A" of aluminum oxide indicate modified abrasives as follows: BFA = Blended friable (a blend of regular and friable), SFA = Semifriable.

Operational Data for Cylindrical Grinding.—In cylindrical grinding, similarly to other metalcutting processes, the applied speed and feed rates must be adjusted to the operational conditions as well as to the objectives of the process. Grinding differs, however, from other types of metalcutting methods in regard to the cutting speed of the tool which, in grinding, is generally not a variable; it should be maintained at, or close to the optimum rate, commonly 6500 feet per minute (1980 m/min) peripheral speed.

In establishing the proper process values for grinding, of prime consideration are the work material, its condition (hardened or soft), and the type of operation (roughing or finishing). Other influencing factors are the characteristics of the grinding machine (stability, power), the specifications of the grinding wheel, the material allowance, the rigidity and balance of the workpiece, as well as several grinding process conditions, such as wet or dry grinding, the manner of wheel truing, etc.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Variables of the cylindrical grinding process, often referred to as *grinding data*, comprise the speed of work rotation (measured as the surface speed of the work); the infeed (in inches per pass for traverse grinding, or in inches per minute for plunge grinding); and, in the case of traverse grinding, the speed of the reciprocating table movement (expressed either in feet per minute, or as a fraction of the wheel width for each revolution of the work).

For the purpose of starting values in setting up a cylindrical grinding process, a brief listing of basic data for common cylindrical grinding conditions and involving frequently used materials, is presented in Table 3.

Table 3. Basic Process Data for Cylindrical Grinding

Traverse Grinding								Traverse for Each Work Revolution, In Fractions of the Wheel Width	
Work Material	Material Condition	Work Surface Speed,		Infeed per Pass					
				inch		mm			
		fpm	m/min	Rough	Finish	Rough	Finish	Rough	Finish
Plain Carbon Steel	Annealed	100	30.5	0.002	0.0005	0.05	0.013	1/2	1/6
	Hardened	70	21	0.002	0.0003–0.0005	0.05	0.007–0.013	1/4	1/8
Alloy Steel	Annealed	100	30.5	0.002	0.0005	0.05	0.013	1/2	1/6
	Hardened	70	21	0.002	0.0002–0.0005	0.05	0.005–0.013	1/4	1/8
Tool Steel	Annealed	60	18	0.002	0.0005 max.	0.05	0.013 max.	1/2	1/6
	Hardened	50	15	0.002	0.0001–0.0005	0.05	0.003–0.013	1/4	1/8
Copper Alloys	Annealed or Cold Drawn	100	30.5	0.002	0.0005 max.	0.05	0.013 max.	1/3	1/6
Aluminum Alloys	Cold Drawn or Solution Treated	150	45.7	0.002	0.0005 max.	0.05	0.013 max.	1/3	1/6

Plunge Grinding, Infeed per Revolution of the Work				
Work Material	Inch		Millimeter	
	Roughing	Finishing	Roughing	Finishing
Steel, soft	0.0005	0.0002	0.013	0.005
Plain carbon steel, hardened	0.0002	0.000050	0.005	0.0013
Alloy and tool steel, hardened	0.0001	0.000025	0.003	0.00064

These data, which are, in general, considered conservative, are based on average operating conditions and may be modified subsequently by: a) reducing the values in case of unsatisfactory quality of the grinding or the occurrence of failures; and b) increasing the rates for raising the productivity of the process, particularly for rigid workpieces, substantial stock allowance, etc.

High-Speed Cylindrical Grinding.—The maximum peripheral speed of the wheels in regular cylindrical grinding is generally 6500 feet per minute (1980 m/min); the commonly used grinding wheels and machines are designed to operate efficiently at this speed. Recently, efforts were made to raise the productivity of different grinding methods, including cylindrical grinding, by increasing the peripheral speed of the grinding wheel to a substantially higher than traditional level, such as 12,000 feet per minute (3658 m/min) or more. Such methods are designated by the distinguishing term of high-speed grinding.

For high-speed grinding, special grinding machines have been built with high dynamic stiffness and static rigidity, equipped with powerful drive motors, extra-strong spindles and bearings, reinforced wheel guards, etc., and using grinding wheels expressly made and tested for operating at high peripheral speeds. The higher stock-removal rate accomplished by high-speed grinding represents an advantage when the work configuration and material permit, and the removable stock allowance warrants its application.

CAUTION: High-speed grinding must *not* be applied on standard types of equipment, such as general types of grinding machines and regular grinding wheels. Operating

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

grinding wheels, even temporarily, at higher than approved speed constitutes a grave safety hazard.

Areas and Degrees of Automation in Cylindrical Grinding.—Power drive for the work rotation and for the reciprocating table traverse are fundamental machine movements that, once set for a certain rate, will function without requiring additional attention. Loading and removing the work, starting and stopping the main movements, and applying infeed by hand wheel are carried out by the operator on cylindrical grinding machines in their basic degree of mechanization. Such equipment is still frequently used in tool room and jobbing-type work.

More advanced levels of automation have been developed for cylindrical grinders and are being applied in different degrees, particularly in the following principal respects:

a) *Infeed*, in which different rates are provided for rapid approach, roughing and finishing, followed by a spark-out period, with presetting of the advance rates, the cutoff points, and the duration of time-related functions.

b) *Automatic cycling* actuated by a single lever to start work rotation, table reciprocation, grinding-fluid supply, and infeed, followed at the end of the operation by wheel slide retraction, the successive stopping of the table movement, the work rotation, and the fluid supply.

c) *Table traverse dwells* (tarry) in the extreme positions of the travel, over preset periods, to assure uniform exposure to the wheel contact of the entire work section.

d) *Mechanized work loading*, clamping, and, after termination of the operation, unloading, combined with appropriate work-feeding devices such as indexing-type drums.

e) *Size control* by in-process or post-process measurements. Signals originated by the gage will control the advance movement or cause automatic compensation of size variations by adjusting the cutoff points of the infeed.

f) *Automatic wheel dressing* at preset frequency, combined with appropriate compensation in the infeed movement.

g) *Numerical control* obviates the time-consuming setups for repetitive work performed on small- or medium-size lots. As an application example: shafts with several sections of different lengths and diameters can be ground automatically in a single operation, grinding the sections in consecutive order to close dimensional limits, controlled by an in-process gage, which is also automatically set by means of the program.

The choice of the grinding machine functions to be automated and the extent of automation will generally be guided by economic considerations, after a thorough review of the available standard and optional equipment. Numerical control of partial or complete cycles is being applied to modern cylindrical and other grinding machines.

Cylindrical Grinding Troubles and Their Correction.—Troubles that may be encountered in cylindrical grinding may be classified as work defects (chatter, checking, burning, scratching, and inaccuracies), improperly operating machines (jumpy infeed or traverse), and wheel defects (too hard or soft action, loading, glazing, and breakage). The Landis Tool Company has listed some of these troubles, their causes, and corrections as follows:

Chatter: Sources of chatter include: 1) faulty coolant; 2) wheel out of balance; 3) wheel out of round; 4) wheel too hard; 5) improper dressing; 6) faulty work support or rotation; 7) improper operation; 8) faulty traverse; 9) work vibration; 10) outside vibration transmitted to machine; 11) interference; 12) wheel base; and 13) headstock.

Suggested procedures for correction of these troubles are:

1) *Faulty coolant:* Clean tanks and lines. Replace dirty or heavy coolant with correct mixture.

2) *Wheel out of balance:* Rebalance on mounting before and after dressing. Run wheel without coolant to remove excess water. Store a removed wheel on its side to keep retained water from causing a false heavy side. Tighten wheel mounting flanges. Make sure wheel center fits spindle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) *Wheel out of round:* True before and after balancing. True sides to face.

4) *Wheel too hard:* Use coarser grit, softer grade, more open bond. See *Wheel Defects* on page 1322.

5) *Improper dressing:* Use sharp diamond and hold rigidly close to wheel. It must not overhang excessively. Check diamond in mounting.

6) *Faulty work support or rotation:* Use sufficient number of work rests and adjust them more carefully. Use proper angles in centers of work. Clean dirt from footstock spindle and be sure spindle is tight. Make certain that work centers fit properly in spindles.

7) *Improper operation:* Reduce rate of wheel feed.

8) *Faulty traverse:* See *Uneven Traverse or Infeed of Wheel Head* on page 1322.

9) *Work vibration:* Reduce work speed. Check workpiece for balance.

10) *Outside vibration transmitted to machine:* Check and make sure that machine is level and sitting solidly on foundation. Isolate machine or foundation.

11) *Interference:* Check all guards for clearance.

12) *Wheel base:* Check spindle bearing clearance. Use belts of equal lengths or uniform cross section on motor drive. Check drive motor for unbalance. Check balance and fit of pulleys. Check wheel feed mechanism to see that all parts are tight.

13) *Headstock:* Put belts of same length and cross section on motor drive; check for correct work speeds. Check drive motor for unbalance. Make certain that headstock spindle is not loose. Check work center fit in spindle. Check wear of faceplate and jackshaft bearings.

Spirals on Work (traverse lines with same lead on work as rate of traverse): Sources of spirals include: 1) machine parts out of line; and 2) truing.

Suggested procedures for correction of these troubles are:

1) *Machine parts out of line:* Check wheel base, headstock, and footstock for proper alignment.

2) *Truing:* Point truing tool down 3 degrees at the workwheel contact line. Round off wheel edges.

Check Marks on Work: Sources of check marks include: 1) improper operation; 2) improper heat treatment; 3) improper size control; 4) improper wheel; and 5) improper dressing.

Suggested procedures for correction of these troubles are:

1) *Improper operation:* Make wheel act softer. See *Wheel Defects*. Do not force wheel into work. Use greater volume of coolant and a more even flow. Check the correct positioning of coolant nozzles to direct a copious flow of clean coolant at the proper location.

2) *Improper heat treatment:* Take corrective measures in heat-treating operations.

3) *Improper size control:* Make sure that engineering establishes reasonable size limits. See that they are maintained.

4) *Improper wheel:* Make wheel act softer. Use softer-grade wheel. Review the grain size and type of abrasive. A finer grit or more friable abrasive or both may be called for.

5) *Improper dressing:* Check that the diamond is sharp, of good quality, and well set. Increase speed of the dressing cycle. Make sure diamond is not cracked.

Burning and Discoloration of Work: Sources of burning and discoloration are improper operation, and improper wheel.

Suggested procedures for correction of these troubles are:

1) *Improper operation:* Decrease rate of infeed. Don't stop work while in contact with wheel.

2) *Improper wheel:* Use softer wheel or obtain softer effect. See *Wheel Defects*. Use greater volume of coolant.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Isolated Deep Marks on Work: Source of trouble is an unsuitable wheel. Use a finer wheel and consider a change in abrasive type.

Fine Spiral or Thread on Work: Sources of this trouble are: 1) improper operation; and 2) faulty wheel dressing.

Suggested procedures for corrections of these troubles are:

1) *Improper operation:* Reduce wheel pressure. Use more work rests. Reduce traverse with respect to work rotation. Use different traverse rates to break up pattern when making numerous passes. Prevent edge of wheel from penetrating by dressing wheel face parallel to work.

2) *Faulty wheel dressing:* Use slower or more even dressing traverse. Set dressing tool at least 3 degrees down and 30 degrees to the side from time to time. Tighten holder. Don't take too deep a cut. Round off wheel edges. Start dressing cut from wheel edge.

Narrow and Deep Regular Marks on Work: Source of trouble is that the wheel is too coarse. Use finer grain size.

Wide, Irregular Marks of Varying Depth on Work: Source of trouble is too soft a wheel. Use a harder grade wheel. See *Wheel Defects*.

Widely Spaced Spots on Work: Sources of trouble are oil spots or glazed areas on wheel face. Balance and true wheel. Keep oil from wheel face.

Irregular "Fish-tail" Marks of Various Lengths and Widths on Work: Source of trouble is dirty coolant. Clean tank frequently. Use filter for fine finish grinding. Flush wheel guards after dressing or when changing to finer wheel.

Wavy Traverse Lines on Work: Source of trouble is wheel edges. Round off. Check for loose thrust on spindle and correct if necessary.

Irregular Marks on Work: Cause is loose dirt. Keep machine clean.

Deep, Irregular Marks on Work: Source of trouble is loose wheel flanges. Tighten and make sure blotters are used.

Isolated Deep Marks on Work: Sources of trouble are: 1) grains pull out; 2) coolant too strong; coarse grains or foreign matter in wheel face; and 3) improper dressing.

Respective suggested procedures for corrections of these troubles are: 1) decrease soda content in coolant mixture; 2) dress wheel; and 3) use sharper dressing tool.

Brush wheel after dressing with stiff bristle brush.

Grain Marks on Work: Sources of trouble are: 1) improper finishing cut; 2) grain sizes of roughing and finishing wheels differ too much; 3) dressing too coarse; and 4) wheel too coarse or too soft.

Respective suggested procedures for corrections of these troubles are: start with high work and traverse speeds; finish with high work speed and slow traverse, letting wheel "spark-out" completely; finish out better with roughing wheel or use finer roughing wheel; use shallower and slower cut; and use finer grain size or harder-grade wheel.

Inaccuracies in Work: Work out-of-round, out-of-parallel, or tapered.

Sources of trouble are: 1) misalignment of machine parts; 2) work centers; 3) improper operation; 4) coolant; 5) wheel; 6) improper dressing; 7) spindle bearings; and 8) work.

Suggested procedures for corrections of these troubles are:

1) *Misalignment of machine parts:* Check headstock and tailstock for alignment and proper clamping.

2) *Work centers:* Centers in work must be deep enough to clear center point. Keep work centers clean and lubricated. Check play of footstock spindle and see that footstock spindle is clean and tightly seated. Regrind work centers if worn. Work centers must fit taper of work-center holes. Footstock must be checked for proper tension.

3) *Improper operation:* Don't let wheel traverse beyond end of work. Decrease wheel pressure so work won't spring. Use harder wheel or change speeds and feeds to make wheel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

act harder. Allow work to "spark-out." Decrease feed rate. Use proper number of work rests. Allow proper amount of tarry. Workpiece must be balanced if it is an odd shape.

4) *Coolant:* Use greater volume of coolant.

5) *Wheel:* Rebalance wheel on mounting before and after truing.

6) *Improper dressing:* Use same positions and machine conditions for dressing as in grinding.

7) *Spindle bearings:* Check clearance.

8) *Work:* Work must come to machine in reasonably accurate form.

Inaccurate Work Sizing (when wheel is fed to same position, it grinds one piece to correct size, another oversize, and still another undersize): Sources of trouble are: 1) improper work support or rotation; 2) wheel out of balance; 3) loaded wheel; 4) improper infeed; 5) improper traverse; 6) coolant; 7) misalignment; and 8) work.

Suggested procedures for corrections of these troubles are:

1) *Improper work support or rotation:* Keep work centers clean and lubricated. Regrind work-center tips to proper angle. Be sure footstock spindle is tight. Use sufficient work rests, properly spaced.

2) *Wheel out of balance:* Balance wheel on mounting before and after truing.

3) *Loaded wheel:* See *Wheel Defects*.

4) *Improper infeed:* Check forward stops of rapid feed and slow feed. When readjusting position of wheel base by means of the fine feed, move the wheel base back after making the adjustment and then bring it forward again to take up backlash and relieve strain in feed-up parts. Check wheel spindle bearings. Don't let excessive lubrication of wheel base slide cause "floating." Check and tighten wheel feed mechanism. Check parts for wear. Check pressure in hydraulic system. Set infeed cushion properly. Check to see that pistons are not sticking.

5) *Improper traverse:* Check traverse hydraulic system and the operating pressure. Prevent excessive lubrication of carriage ways with resultant "floating" condition. Check to see if carriage traverse piston rods are binding. Carriage rack and driving gear must not bind. Change length of tarry period.

6) *Coolant:* Use greater volume of clean coolant.

7) *Misalignment:* Check level and alignment of machine.

8) *Work:* Workpieces may vary too much in length, permitting uneven center pressure.

Uneven Traverse or Infeed of Wheel Head: Sources of uneven traverse or infeed of wheel head are: carriage and wheel head, hydraulic system, interference, unbalanced conditions, and wheel out of balance. Suggested procedures for correction of these troubles are:

1) *Carriage and wheel head:* Ways may be scored. Be sure to use recommended oil for both lubrication and hydraulic system. Make sure ways are not so smooth that they press out oil film. Check lubrication of ways. Check wheel feed mechanism, traverse gear, and carriage rack clearance. Prevent binding of carriage traverse cylinder rods.

2) *Hydraulic systems:* Remove air and check pressure of hydraulic oil. Check pistons and valves for oil leakage and for gumminess caused by incorrect oil. Check worn valves or pistons that permit leakage.

3) *Interference:* Make sure guard strips do not interfere.

4) *Unbalanced conditions:* Eliminate loose pulleys, unbalanced wheel drive motor, uneven belts, or high spindle keys.

5) *Wheel out of balance:* Balance wheel on mounting before and after truing.

Wheel Defects: When *wheel is acting too hard,* such defects as glazing, some loading, lack of cut, chatter, and burning of work result.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Suggested procedures for correction of these faults are: 1) Increase work and traverse speeds as well as rate of in-feed; 2) decrease wheel speed, diameter, or width; 3) dress more sharply; 4) use thinner coolant; 5) don't tarry at end of traverse; 6) select softer wheel grade and coarser grain size; 7) avoid gummy coolant; and 8) on hardened work select finer grit, more fragile abrasive or both to get penetration. Use softer grade.

When *wheel is acting too soft*, such defects as wheel marks, tapered work, short wheel life, and not-holding-cut result.

Suggested procedures for correction of these faults are: 1) Decrease work and traverse speeds as well as rate of in-feed; 2) increase wheel speed, diameter, or width; 3) dress with little in-feed and slow traverse; 4) use heavier coolants; 5) don't let wheel run off work at end of traverse; and 6) select harder wheel or less fragile grain or both.

Wheel Loading and Glazing: Sources of the trouble of wheel loading or glazing are: 1) Incorrect wheel; 2) improper dress; 3) faulty operation; 4) faulty coolant; and 5) gummy coolant.

Suggested procedures for correction of these faults are:

1) *Incorrect wheel:* Use coarser grain size, more open bond, or softer grade.

2) *Improper dressing:* Keep wheel sharp with sharp dresser, clean wheel after dressing, use faster dressing traverse, and deeper dressing cut.

3) *Faulty operation:* Control feeds and speeds to soften action of wheel. Use less in-feed to prevent loading; more in-feed to stop glazing.

4) *Faulty coolant:* Use more, cleaner and thinner coolant, and less oily coolant.

5) *Gummy coolant:* To stop wheel glazing, increase soda content and avoid the use of soluble oils if water is hard. In using soluble oil coolant with hard water a suitable conditioner or "softener" should be added.

Wheel Breakage: Suggested procedures for the correction of a radial break with three or more pieces are: 1) Reduce wheel speed to or below rated speed; 2) mount wheel properly, use blotters, tight arbors, even flange pressure and be sure to keep out dirt between flange and wheel; 3) use plenty of coolant to prevent over-heating; 4) use less in-feed; and 5) don't allow wheel to become jammed on work.

A radial break with two pieces may be caused by excessive side strain. To prevent an irregular wheel break, don't let wheel become jammed on work; don't allow striking of wheel; and never use wheels that have been damaged in handling. In general, do not use a wheel that is too tight on the arbor since the wheel is apt to break when started. Prevent excessive hammering action of wheel. Follow rules of the American National Standard Safety Requirements for the Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels (ANSI B7.1-2017).

Centerless Grinding

In centerless grinding the work is supported on a work rest blade and is between the grinding wheel and a regulating wheel. The regulating wheel generally is a rubber bonded abrasive wheel. In the normal grinding position the grinding wheel forces the work downward against the work rest blade and also against the regulating wheel. The latter imparts a uniform rotation to the work giving it its same peripheral speed which is adjustable.

The higher the work center is placed above the line joining the centers of the grinding and regulating wheels the quicker the rounding action. Rounding action is also increased by a high work speed and a slow rate of traverse (if a through-feed operation). It is possible to have a higher work center when using softer wheels, as their use gives decreased contact pressures and the tendency of the workpiece to lift off the work rest blade is lessened.

Long rods or bars are sometimes ground with their centers below the line-of-centers of the wheels to eliminate the whipping and chattering due to slight bends or kinks in the rods or bars, as they are held more firmly down on the blade by the wheels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

There are three general methods of centerless grinding which may be described as through-feed, in-feed, and end-feed methods.

Through-Feed Method of Grinding.—The through-feed method is applied to straight cylindrical parts. The work is given an axial movement by the regulating wheel and passes between the grinding and regulating wheels from one side to the other. The rate of feed depends upon the diameter and speed of the regulating wheel and its inclination which is adjustable. It may be necessary to pass the work between the wheels more than once, the number of passes depending upon such factors as the amount of stock to be removed, the roundness and straightness of the unground work, and the limits of accuracy required.

The work rest fixture also contains adjustable guides on either side of the wheels that directs the work to and from the wheels in a straight line.

In-Feed Method of Centerless Grinding.—When parts have shoulders, heads or some part larger than the ground diameter, the in-feed method usually is employed. This method is similar to "plungecut" form grinding on a center type of grinder. The length or sections to be ground in any one operation are limited by the width of the wheel. As there is no axial feeding movement, the regulating wheel is set with its axis approximately parallel to that of the grinding wheel, there being a slight inclination to keep the work tight against the end stop.

End-Feed Method of Grinding.—The end-feed method is applied only to taper work. The grinding wheel, regulating wheel, and the work rest blade are set in a fixed relation to each other and the work is fed in from the front mechanically or manually to a fixed end stop. Either the grinding or regulating wheel, or both, are dressed to the proper taper.

Automatic Centerless Grinding.—The grinding of relatively small parts may be done automatically by equipping the machine with a magazine, gravity chute, or hopper feed, provided the shape of the part will permit using these feed mechanisms.

Internal Centerless Grinding.—Internal grinding machines based upon the centerless principle utilize the outside diameter of the work as a guide for grinding the bore which is concentric with the outer surface. In addition to straight and tapered bores, interrupted and "blind" holes can be ground by the centerless method. When two or more grinding operations such as roughing and finishing must be performed on the same part, the work can be rechucked in the same location as often as required.

Centerless Grinding Troubleshooting.—A number of troubles and some corrective measures compiled by a manufacturer are listed here for the through-feed and in-feed methods of centerless grinding.

Chattermarks are caused by having the work center too high above the line joining the centers of the grinding and regulating wheels; using too hard or too fine a grinding wheel; using too steep an angle on the work support blade; using too thin a work support blade; "play" in the set-up due to loosely clamped members; having the grinding wheel fit loosely on the spindle; having vibration either transmitted to the machine or caused by a defective drive in the machine; having the grinding wheel out-of-balance; using too heavy a stock removal; and having the grinding wheel or the regulating wheel spindles not properly adjusted.

Feed lines or spiral marks in through-feed grinding are caused by too sharp a corner on the exit side of the grinding wheel which may be alleviated by dressing the grinding wheel to a slight taper about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (1.27 mm) from the edge, dressing the edge to a slight radius, or swiveling the regulating wheel a bit.

Scored work is caused by burrs, abrasive grains, or removed material being imbedded in or fused to the work support blade. This condition may be alleviated by using a coolant with increased lubricating properties and if this does not help a softer grade wheel should be used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Work not ground round may be due to the work center not being high enough above the line joining the centers of the grinding and regulating wheels. Placing the work center higher and using a softer grade wheel should help to alleviate this condition.

Work not ground straight in through-feed grinding may be due to an incorrect setting of the guides used in introducing and removing the work from the wheels, and the existence of convex or concave faces on the regulating wheel. For example, if the work is tapered on the front end, the work guide on the entering side is deflected toward the regulating wheel. If tapered on the back end, then the work guide on the exit side is deflected toward the regulating wheel. If both ends are tapered, then both work guides are deflected toward the regulating wheel. The same barrel-shaped pieces are also obtained if the face of the regulating wheel is convex at the line of contact with the work. Conversely, the work would be ground with hollow shapes if the work guides were deflected toward the grinding wheel or if the face of the regulating wheel were concave at the line of contact with the work. The use of a warped work rest blade may also result in the work not being ground straight and the blade should be removed and checked with a straight edge.

In in-feed grinding, in order to keep the wheel faces straight which will insure straightness of the cylindrical pieces being ground, the first item to be checked is the straightness and the angle of inclination of the work rest blade. If this is satisfactory then one of three corrective measures may be taken: the first might be to swivel the regulating wheel to compensate for the taper, the second might be to true the grinding wheel to that angle that will give a perfectly straight workpiece, and the third might be to change the inclination of the regulating wheel (this is true only for correcting very slight tapers up to 0.0005 inch or 0.0127 mm).

Difficulties in sizing the work in in-feed grinding are generally due to a worn in-feed mechanism and may be overcome by adjusting the in-feed nut.

Flat spots on the workpiece in in-feed grinding usually occur when grinding heavy work and generally when the stock removal is light. This condition is due to insufficient driving power between the work and the regulating wheel which may be alleviated by equipping the work rest with a roller that exerts a force against the workpiece; and by feeding the workpiece to the end stop using the upper slide.

Surface Grinding

The term surface grinding implies, in current technical usage, the grinding of surfaces which are essentially flat. Several methods of surface grinding, however, are adapted and used to produce surfaces characterized by parallel straight line elements in one direction, while normal to that direction the contour of the surface may consist of several straight line sections at different angles to each other (e.g., the guideways of a lathe bed); in other cases the contour may be curved or profiled (e.g., a thread cutting chaser).

Advantages of Surface Grinding.—Alternate methods for machining work surfaces similar to those produced by surface grinding are milling and, to a much more limited degree, planing. Surface grinding, however, has several advantages over alternate methods that are carried out with metal-cutting tools. Examples of such potential advantages are as follows:

1) Grinding is applicable to very hard and/or abrasive work materials, without significant effect on the efficiency of the stock removal.

2) The desired form and dimensional accuracy of the work surface can be obtained to a much higher degree and in a more consistent manner.

3) Surface textures of very high finish and—when the appropriate system is utilized—with the required lay, are generally produced.

4) Tooling for surface grinding as a rule is substantially less expensive, particularly for producing profiled surfaces, the shapes of which may be dressed into the wheel, often with simple devices, in processes that are much more economical than the making and the maintenance of form cutters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5) Fixturing for work holding is generally very simple in surface grinding, particularly when magnetic chucks are applicable, although the mechanical holding fixture can also be simpler, because of the smaller clamping force required than in milling or planing.

6) Parallel surfaces on opposite sides of the work are produced accurately, either in consecutive operations using the first ground surface as a dependable reference plane or, simultaneously, in double face grinding, which usually operates without the need for holding the parts by clamping.

7) Surface grinding is well adapted to process automation, particularly for size control, but also for mechanized work handling in the large volume production of a wide range of component parts.

Principal Systems of Surface Grinding.—Flat surfaces can be ground with different surface portions of the wheel, by different arrangements of the work and wheel, as well as by different interrelated movements. The various systems of surface grinding, with their respective capabilities, can best be reviewed by considering two major distinguishing characteristics:

1) *The operating surface of the grinding wheel,* which may be the periphery or the face (the side);

2) *The movement of the work during the process,* which may be traverse (generally reciprocating) or rotary (continuous), depending on the design of a particular category of surface grinders.

The accompanying Table 1 and the text that follows provides a concise review of the principal surface grinding systems, defined by the preceding characteristics. It should be noted that many surface grinders are built for specific applications, and do not fit exactly into any one of these major categories.

Operating Surface, Periphery of Wheel: Movement of Work, Reciprocating: Work is mounted on the horizontal machine table that is traversed in a reciprocating movement at a speed generally selected from a steplessly variable range. The transverse movement, called cross feed of the table or of the wheel slide, operates at the end of the reciprocating stroke and assures the gradual exposure of the entire work surface, which commonly exceeds the width of the wheel. The depth of the cut is controlled by the downfeed of the wheel, applied in increments at the reversal of the transverse movement.

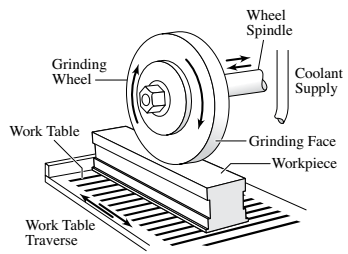
Operating Surface, Periphery of Wheel: Movement of Work, Rotary: Work is mounted, usually on the full-diameter magnetic chuck of the circular machine table that rotates at a preset constant or automatically varying speed, the latter maintaining an approximately equal peripheral speed of the work surface area being ground. The wheelhead, installed on a cross slide, traverses over the table along a radial path, moving in alternating directions, toward and away from the center of the table. Infeed is by vertical movement of the saddle along the guideways of the vertical column, at the end of the radial wheelhead stroke. The saddle contains the guideways along which the wheelhead slide reciprocates.

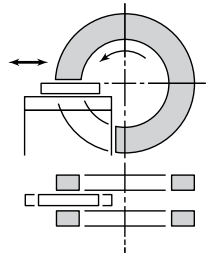
Operating Surface, Face of Wheel: Movement of Work,Reciprocating: Operation is similar to the reciprocating table-type peripheral surface grinder, but grinding is with the face, usually with the rim of a cup-shaped wheel, or a segmental wheel for large machines. Capable of covering a much wider area of the work surface than the peripheral grinder, thus frequently no need for cross feed. Provides efficient stock removal, but is less adaptable than the reciprocating table-type peripheral grinder.

Operating Surface, Face of Wheel: Movement of Work, Rotary: The grinding wheel, usually of segmental type, is set in a position to cover either an annular area near the periphery of the table or, more commonly, to reach beyond the table center. A large circular magnetic chuck generally covers the entire table surface and facilitates the mounting of workpieces, even of fixtures, when needed. The uninterrupted passage of the work in contact with the large wheel face permits a very high rate of stock removal and the machine, with single or double wheelhead, can be adapted also to automatic operation with continuous part feed by mechanized work handling.

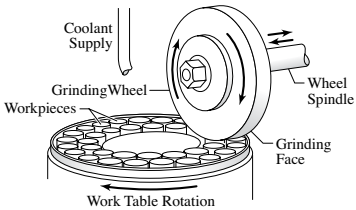
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

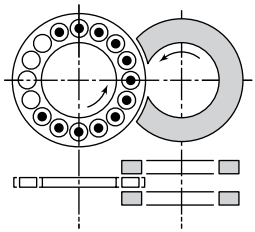
Table 1. Principal Systems of Surface Grinding — Diagrams



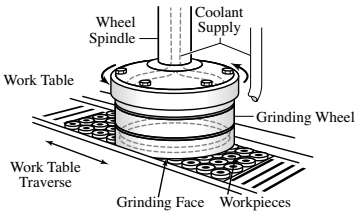


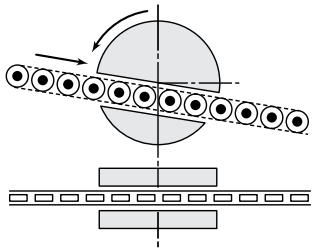
Reciprocating — Periphery of Wheel





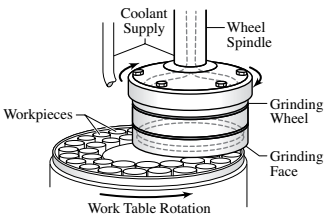
Rotary — Periphery of Wheel





Reciprocating — Face (Side) of Wheel

Traverse Along Straight Line or Arcuate Path — Face (Side) of Wheel



Rotary — Face (Side) of Wheel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Operating Surface, Face of Wheel: Movement of Work, Traverse Along Straight or Arcuate Path: The grinding wheel, usually of segmental type, is set in a position to cover either an annular area near the periphery of the table or, more commonly, to reach beyond the table center. A large circular magnetic chuck generally covers the entire table surface and facilitates the mounting of workpieces, even of fixtures, when needed. The uninterrupted passage of the work in contact with the large wheel face permits a very high rate of stock removal and the machine, with single or double wheelhead, can be adapted also to automatic operation with continuous part feed by mechanized work handling.

Selection of Grinding Wheels for Surface Grinding.—The most practical way to select a grinding wheel for surface grinding is to base the selection on the work material. Table 2a gives the grinding wheel recommendations for Types 1, 5, and 7 straight wheels used on reciprocating and rotary table surface grinders with horizontal spindles. Table 2b gives the grinding wheel recommendations for Type 2 cylinder wheels, Type 6 cup wheels, and wheel segments used on vertical spindle surface grinders.

The last letters (two or three) that may follow the bond designation V (vitrified) or B (resinoid) refer to: 1) bond modification, "BE" being especially suitable for surface grinding; 2) special structure, "P" type being distinctively porous; and 3) for segments made of 23A type abrasives, the term 12VSM implies porous structure, and the letter "P" is not needed.

The wheel markings in Table 2a and Table 2b are those used by the Norton Co., complementing the basic standard markings with Norton symbols. The complementary symbols used in these tables, that is, those preceding the letter designating A (aluminum oxide) or C (silicon carbide), indicate the special type of basic abrasive that has the friability best suited for particular work materials. Those preceding A (aluminum oxide) are

57—a versatile abrasive suitable for grinding steel in either a hard or soft state.

38—the most friable abrasive.

32—the abrasive suited for tool steel grinding.

23—an abrasive with intermediate grinding action, and

19—the abrasive produced for less heat-sensitive steels.

Those preceding C (silicon carbide) are

37—a general application abrasive, and

39—an abrasive for grinding hard cemented carbide.

Table 2a. Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Surface Grinding—Using Straight Wheel Types 1, 5, and 7

Material	Horizontal-spindle, reciprocating-table surface grinders		Horizontal-spindle, rotary-table surface grinders
	Wheels less than 16 inches diameter	Wheels 16 inches diameter and over	Wheels of any diameter
Cast iron	37C36-K8V or 23A46-I8VBE	23A36-I8VBE	37C36-K8V or 23A46-I8VBE
Nonferrous metal	37C36-K8V	37C36-K8V	37C36-K8V
Soft steel	23A46-J8VBE	23A36-J8VBE	23A46-J8VBE
Hardened steel, broad contact	32A46-H8VBE or 32A60-F12VBEP	32A36-H8VBE or 32A36-F12VBEP	32A46-I8VBE
Hardened steel, narrow contact or interrupted cut	32A46-I8VBE	32A36-J8VBE	32A46-J8VBE
General-purpose wheel	23A46-H8VBE	23A36-I8VBE	23A46-I8VBE
Cemented carbides	Diamond wheels[a]	Diamond wheels[a]	Diamond wheels[a]

[a] General diamond wheel recommendations are listed in Table 5 on page 1309.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Grinding Wheel Recommendations for Surface Grinding—Using Type 2 Cylinder Wheels, Type 6 Cup Wheels, and Wheel Segments

Material	Type 2 Cylinder Wheels	Type 6 Cup Wheels	Wheel Segments
High tensile cast iron and nonferrous metals	37C24-HKV	37C24-HVK	37C24-HVK
Soft steel, malleable cast iron, steel castings, boiler plate	23A24-I8VBE or 23A30-G12VBEP	23A24-I8VBE	23A24-I8VSM or 23A30-H12VSM
Hardened steel—broad contact	32A46-G8VBE or 32A36-E12VBEP	32A46-G8VBE or 32A60-E12VBEP	32A36-G8VBE or 32A46-E12VBEP
Hardened steel—narrow contact or interrupt cut	32A46-H8VBE	32A60-H8VBE	32A46-G8VBE or 32A60-G12VBEP
General-purpose use	23A30-H8VBE or 23A30-E12VBEP	…	23A30-H8VSM or 23A30-G12VSM

Process Data for Surface Grinding.— In surface grinding, similarly to other metal-cutting processes, the speed and feed rates that are applied must be adjusted to the operational conditions as well as to the objectives of the process. Grinding differs, however, from other types of metal cutting methods in regard to the cutting speed of the tool; the peripheral speed of the grinding wheel is maintained within a narrow range, generally 5500 to 6500 surface feet per minute. Speed ranges different from the common one are used in particular processes which require special wheels and equipment.

Table 3. Basic Process Data for Peripheral Surface Grinding on Reciprocating Table Surface Grinders

Work Material	Hardness (Brinell/ Rockwell)	Material Condition	Wheel Speed, fpm	Table Speed, fpm	Downfeed, in. per pass		Crossfeed per pass, fraction of wheel width
					Rough	Finish, max.	
Plain carbon steel	52 RC max.	Annealed, cold drawn	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.0005	1/4
	52-65 RC	Carburized and/or quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.0005	1/10
Alloy steels	52 RC max.	Annealed or quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/4
	52-65 RC	Carburized and/or quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.0005	1/10
Tool steels	150-275 BHN	Annealed	5500-6500	50-100	0.002	0.0005	1/5
	56-65 RC	Quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.002	0.0005	1/10
Nitriding steels	200-350 BHN	Normalized, annealed	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/4
	60-65 RC	Nitrided	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.0005	1/10
Cast steels	52 RC max.	Normalized, annealed	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/4
	Over 52 RC	Carburized and/or quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.0005	1/10
Gray irons	52 RC max.	As cast, annealed, and/or quenched and tempered	5000-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/5
Ductile irons	52 RC max.	As cast, annealed or quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/5
Stainless steels, martensitic	135-235 BHN	Annealed or cold drawn	5500-6500	50-100	0.002	0.0005	1/4
	Over 275 BHN	Quenched and tempered	5500-6500	50-100	0.001	0.0005	1/8
Aluminum alloys	30-150 BHN	As cast, cold drawn or treated	5500-6500	50-100	0.003	0.001	1/3

In establishing the proper process values for grinding, of prime consideration are the work material, its condition, and the type of operation (roughing or finishing). Table 3 gives basic process data for peripheral surface grinding on reciprocating table surface

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

grinders. For different work materials and hardness ranges data are given regarding table speeds, downfeed (infeed) rates and cross feed, the latter as a function of the wheel width.

Common Faults and Possible Causes in Surface Grinding.—Approaching the ideal performance with regard to both the quality of the ground surface and the efficiency of surface grinding, requires the monitoring of the process and the correction of conditions adverse to the attainment of that goal.

Defective, or just not entirely satisfactory surface grinding may have any one or more of several causes. Exploring and determining the cause for eliminating its harmful effects is facilitated by knowing the possible sources of the experienced undesirable performance. Table 4, associating the common faults with their possible causes, is intended to aid in determining the actual cause, the correction of which should restore the desired performance level.

While the table lists the more common faults in surface grinding, and points out their frequent causes, other types of improper performance and/or other causes, in addition to those indicated, are not excluded.

Vitrified Grinding Wheels.—The term "vitrified" denotes the type of bond used in these grinding wheels. The bond in a grinding wheel is the material which holds the abrasive grains together and supports them while they cut. With a given type of bond, it is the *amount* of bond that determines the "hardness" or softness" of wheels. The abrasive itself is extremely hard in all wheels, and the terms "hard" and "soft" refer to the *strength of bonding*; the greater the percentage of bond with respect to the abrasive, the heavier the coating of bond around the abrasive grains and the stronger the bond posts, the "harder" the wheel.

Most wheels are made with a vitrified bond composed of clays and feldspar selected for their fusibility. During the "burning" process in grinding wheel manufacture, the clays are fused into a molten glass condition. Upon cooling, a span or post of this glass connects each abrasive grain to its neighbors to make a rigid, strong, grinding wheel. These wheels are porous, free cutting and unaffected by water, acids, oils, heat, or cold. Vitrified wheels are extensively used for cylindrical grinding, surface grinding, internal grinding and cutter grinding.

Silicate Bonding Process.—Silicate grinding wheels derive their name from the fact that silicate of soda or water glass is the principal ingredient used in the bond. These wheels are also sometimes referred to as *semi-vitrified* wheels. Ordinarily, they cut smoothly and with comparatively little heat, and for grinding operations requiring the lowest wheel wear, compatible with cool cutting, silicate wheels are often used. Their grade is also dependable and much larger wheels can be made by this bonding process than by the vitrified process. Some of the grinding operations for which silicate wheels have been found to be especially adapted are as follows: for grinding high-speed steel machine shop tools, such as reamers, milling cutters, etc.; for hand-grinding lathe and planer tools; for surface grinding with machines of the vertical ring-wheel type; and for operations requiring dish-shaped wheels and cool cutting. These wheels are unequaled for wet grinding on hardened steel and for wet tool grinding. They are easily recognized by their light gray color.

Oilstones.—The natural oilstones commonly used are the *Washita* and *Arkansas*. The Washita is a coarser and more rapidly cutting stone, and is generally considered the most satisfactory for sharpening woodworkers' tools. There are various grades of Washita rock, varying from the perfect crystallized and porous whetstone grit, to vitreous flint and hard sandstone. The best whetstones are porous and uniform in texture and are composed entirely of silica crystals. The poorer grades are less porous, making them vitreous or "glassy." They may also have hard spots or sand holes, or contain grains of sand among the crystals. For general work, a soft, free-grit, quick-cutting stone is required, although a fine-grit medium-hard stone is sometimes preferable. These are commonly furnished in three grits: fine, medium, and coarse, and in all required shapes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Common Faults and Possible Causes in Surface Grinding

CAUSES	FAULTS	WORK DIMENSION			METALLURGICAL DEFECTS		SURFACE QUALITY				WHEEL CONDITION			WORK RETAINMENT	
		Work not flat	Work not parallel	Poor size holding	Burnishing of work	Burning or checking	Feed lines	Chatter marks	Scratches on surface	Poor finish	Wheel loading	Wheel glazing	Rapid wheel wear	Not firmly seated	Work sliding on chuck
WORK CONDITION	Heat-treatment stresses	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Work too thin	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Work warped	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..
	Abrupt section changes	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
GRINDING WHEEL	Grit too fine	..	..	..	●	●	..	..	..	..	●	●	..	..	..
	Grit too coarse	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..
	Grade too hard	●	..	..	●	●	..	●	..	..	●	●	..	..	..
	Grade too soft	..	..	●	..	..	..	●	●	..	..	..	●	..	..
	Wheel not balanced	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Dense structure	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	●	..	..	..
TOOLING AND COOLANT	Improper coolant	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..
	Insufficient coolant	●	●	..	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..
	Dirty coolant	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	●	..	..	..	..
	Diamond loose or chipped	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Diamond dull	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	●	●	●	..	..	..
	No or poor magnetic force	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	●	●
	Chuck surface worn or burred	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	●	..
MACHINE AND SETUP	Chuck not aligned	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Vibrations in machine	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Plane of movement out of parallel	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
OPERATIONAL CONDITIONS	Too low work speed	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..
	Too light feed	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..
	Too heavy cut	●	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..
	Chuck retained swarf	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●
	Chuck loading improper	●	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●
	Insufficient blocking of parts	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Wheel runs off the work	..	●	●	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..
	Wheel dressing too fine	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Wheel edge not chamfered	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
	Loose dirt under guard	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	●	..	..	..	..	..	..

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Offhand Grinding

Offhand grinding consists of holding the wheel to the work or the work to the wheel and grinding to broad tolerances and includes such operations as certain types of tool sharpening, weld grinding, snagging castings and other rough grinding. Types of machines that are used for rough grinding in foundries are floor- and bench-stand machines. Wheels for these machines vary from 6 to 30 inches in diameter. Portable grinding machines (electric, flexible shaft, or air-driven) are used for cleaning and smoothing castings.

Many rough grinding operations on castings can be best done with shaped wheels, such as cup wheels (including plate mounted) or cone wheels, and it is advisable to have a good assortment of such wheels on hand to do the odd jobs the best way.

Floor- and Bench-Stand Grinding.—The most common method of rough grinding is on double-end floor and bench stands. In machine shops, welding shops, and automotive repair shops, these grinders are usually provided with a fairly coarse grit wheel on one end for miscellaneous rough grinding and a finer grit wheel on the other end for sharpening tools. The pressure exerted is a very important factor in selecting the proper grinding wheel. If grinding is to be done mostly on hard sharp fins, then durable, coarse and hard wheels are required, but if grinding is mostly on large gate and riser pads, then finer and softer wheels should be used for best cutting action.

Portable Grinding.—Portable grinding machines are usually classified as air grinders, flexible shaft grinders, and electric grinders. The electric grinders are of two types; namely, those driven by standard 60 cycle current and so-called high-cycle grinders. Portable grinders are used for grinding down and smoothing weld seams; cleaning metal before welding; grinding out imperfections, fins and parting lines in castings and smoothing castings; grinding punch press dies and patterns to proper size and shape; and grinding manganese steel castings.

Wheels used on portable grinders are of three bond types; namely, resinoid, rubber, and vitrified. By far the largest percentage is resinoid. Rubber bond is used for relatively thin wheels and where a good finish is required. Some of the smaller wheels such as cone and plug wheels are vitrified bonded.

Grit sizes most generally used in wheels from 4 to 8 inches (102–203 mm) in diameter are 16, 20, and 24. In the still smaller diameters, finer sizes are used, such as 30, 36, and 46.

The particular grit size to use depends chiefly on the kind of grinding to be done. If the work consists of sharp fins and the machine has ample power, a coarse grain size combined with a fairly hard grade should be used. If the job is more in the nature of smoothing or surfacing and a fairly good finish is required, then finer and softer wheels are called for.

Swing-Frame Grinding.—This type of grinding is employed where a considerable amount of material is to be removed as on snagging large castings. It may be possible to remove 10 times as much material from steel castings using swing-frame grinders as with portable grinders; and 3 times as much material as with high-speed floor-stand grinders.

The largest field of application for swing-frame machines is on castings which are too heavy to handle on a floor stand; but often it is found that comparatively large gates and risers on smaller castings can be ground more quickly with swing-frame grinders, even if fins and parting lines have to be ground on floor stands as a second operation.

In foundries, the swing-frame machines are usually suspended from a trolley on a jib that can be swung out of the way when placing the work on the floor with the help of an overhead crane. In steel mills when grinding billets, a number of swing-frame machines are usually suspended from trolleys on a line of beams which facilitate their use as required.

The grinding wheels used on swing-frame machines are made with coarser grit sizes and harder grades than wheels used on floor stands for the same work. The reason is that greater grinding pressures can be obtained on the swing-frame machines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Abrasive Belt Grinding

Abrasive belts are used in the metalworking industry for removing stock, light cleaning up of metal surfaces, grinding welds, deburring, breaking and polishing hole edges, and finish grinding of sheet steel. The types of belts that are used may be coated with aluminum oxide (the most common coating) for stock removal and finishing of all alloy steels, high-carbon steel, and tough bronzes; and silicon carbide for use on hard, brittle, and low-tensile strength metals which would include aluminum and cast irons.

Table 1 is a guide to the selection of the proper abrasive belt, lubricant, and contact wheel. This table is entered on the basis of the material used and type of operation to be done and gives the abrasive belt specifications (type of bonding and abrasive grain size and material), the range of speeds at which the belt may best be operated, the type of lubricant to use, and the type and hardness of the contact wheel to use. Table 2 serves as a guide in the selection of contact wheels. This table is entered on the basis of the type of contact wheel surface and the contact wheel material. The table gives the hardness and/or density, the type of abrasive belt grinding for which the contact wheel is intended, the character of the wheel action and such comments as the uses, and hints for best use. Both tables are intended only as guides for general shop practice; selections may be altered to suit individual requirements.

There are three types of abrasive belt grinding machines. One type employs a contact wheel behind the belt at the point of contact of the workpiece to the belt and facilitates a high rate of stock removal. Another type uses an accurate parallel ground platen over which the abrasive belt passes and facilitates the finishing of precision parts. A third type which has no platens or contact wheel is used for finishing parts having uneven surfaces or contours. In this type there is no support behind the belt at the point of contact of the belt with the workpiece. Some machines are so constructed that besides grinding against a platen or a contact wheel the workpiece may be moved and ground against an unsupported portion of the belt, thereby in effect making it a dual machine.

Although abrasive belts at the time of their introduction were used dry, since the advent of the improved waterproof abrasive belts, they have been used with coolants, oil-mists, and greases to aid the cutting action. The application of a coolant to the area of contact retards loading, resulting in a cool, free cutting action, a good finish and a long belt life.

Abrasive Cutting

Abrasive cut-off wheels are used for cutting steel, brass and aluminum bars and tubes of all shapes and hardnesses, ceramics, plastics, insulating materials, glass and cemented carbides. Originally a tool or stock room procedure, this method has developed into a high-speed production operation. While the abrasive cut-off machine and cut-off wheel can be said to have revolutionized the practice of cutting off materials, the metal saw continues to be the more economical method for cutting off large cross sections of certain materials. However, there are innumerable materials and shapes that can be cut with much greater speed and economy by the abrasive wheel method. On conventional chop-stroke abrasive cutting machines using 16-inch (406.4 mm) diameter wheels, 2-inch (50.8 mm) diameter bar stock is the maximum size that can be cut with satisfactory wheel efficiency, but bar stock up to 6 inches (152.4 mm) in diameter can be cut efficiently on oscillating-stroke machines. Tubing up to $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches (88.9 mm) in diameter can also be cut efficiently.

Abrasive wheels are commonly available in four types of bonds: Resinoid, rubber, shellac and fiber or fabric reinforced. In general, resinoid bonded cut-off wheels are used for dry cutting where burrs and some burn are not objectionable and rubber bonded wheels are used for wet cutting where cuts are to be smooth, clean and free from burrs. Shellac bonded wheels have a soft, free cutting quality which makes them particularly useful in the tool room where tool steels are to be cut without discoloration. Fiber reinforced bonded wheels are able to withstand severe flexing and side pressures and fabric reinforced bonded wheels which are highly resistant to breakage caused by extreme side pressures, are fast cutting and have a low rate of wear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Guide to the Selection and Application of Abrasive Belts

Material	Type of Operation	Abrasive Belt[a]	Grit	Belt Speed		Type of Grease Lubricant	Contact Wheel	
				fpm	m/min		Type	Durometer Hardness
Hot-and Cold-Rolled Steel	Roughing	R/R Al_2O_3	24–60	4000–6500	1219–1981	Light-body or none	Cog-tooth, serrated rubber	70–90
	Polishing	R/G or R/R Al_2O_3	80–150	4500–7000	1372–2134	Light-body or none	Plain or serrated rubber, sectional or finger-type cloth wheel, free belt	20–60
	Fine Polishing	R/G or electro-coated Al_2O_3 cloth	180–500	4500–7000	1372–2134	Heavy or with abrasive compound	Smooth-faced rubber or cloth	20–40
Stainless Steel	Roughing	R/R Al_2O_3	50–80	3500–5000	1067–1524	Light-body or none	Cog-tooth, serrated rubber	70–90
	Polishing	R/G or R/R Al_2O_3	80–120	4000–5500	1219–1676	Light-body or none	Plain or serrated rubber, sectional or finger-type cloth wheel, free belt	30–60
	Fine Polishing	Closed-coat SiC	150–280	4500–5500	1372–1676	Heavy or oil mist	Smooth-faced rubber or cloth	20–40
Aluminum, Cast or Fabricated	Roughing	R/R SiC or Al_2O_3	24–80	5000–6500	1524–1981	Light	Cog-tooth, serrated rubber	70–90
	Polishing	R/G SiC or Al_2O_3	100–180	4500–6500	1372–1981	Light	Plain or serrated rubber, sectional or finger-type cloth wheel, free belt	30–50
	Fine Polishing	Closed-coat SiC or electro-coated Al_2O_3	220–320	4500–6500	1372–1981	Heavy or with abrasive compound	Plain faced rubber, finger-type cloth or free belt	20–50
Copper Alloys or Brass	Roughing	R/R SiC or Al_2O_3	36–80	2200–4500	671–1372	Light-body	Cog-tooth, serrated rubber	70–90
	Polishing	Closed-coat SiC or electro-coated Al_2O_3 or R/G SiC or Al_2O_3	100–150	4000–6500	1219–1981	Light-body	Plain or serrated rubber, sectional or finger-type cloth wheel, free belt	30–50
	Fine Polishing	Closed-coat SiC or electro-coated Al_2O_3	180–320	4000–6500	1219–1981	Light or with abrasive compound	Same as for polishing	20–30
Nonferrous Die-Castings	Roughing	R/R SiC or Al_2O_3	24–80	4500–6500	1372–1981	Light-body	Hard wheel depending on application	50–70
	Polishing	R/G SiC or Al_2O_3	100–180	4500–6500	1372–1981	Light-body	Plain rubber, cloth or free belt	30–50
	Fine Polishing	Electro-coated Al_2O_3 or closed-coat SiC	220–320	4500–6500	1372–1981	Heavy or with abrasive compound	Plain or finger-type cloth wheel, or free belt	20–30
Cast Iron	Roughing	R/R Al_2O_3	24–60	2000–4000	610–1219	None	Cog-tooth, serrated rubber	70–90
	Polishing	R/R Al_2O_3	80–150	4000–5500	1219–1676	None	Serrated rubber	30–70
	Fine Polishing	R/R Al_2O_3	120–240	4000–5500	1219–1676	Light-body	Smooth-faced rubber	30–40
Titanium	Roughing	R/R SiC or Al_2O_3	36–50	700–1500	213–457	Sulfur-chlorinated	Small-diameter, cog-tooth serrated rubber	70–80
	Polishing	R/R SiC	60–120	1200–2000	366–610	Light-body	Standard serrated rubber	50
	Fine Polishing	R/R SiC	120–240	1200–2000	366–610	Light-body	Smooth-faced rubber or cloth	20–40

[a] R/R indicates that both the making and sizing bond coats are resin. R/G indicates that the making coat is glue and the sizing coat is resin. The abbreviations Al_2O_3 for aluminum oxide and SiC for silicon carbide are used. Almost all R/R and R/G Al_2O_3 and SiC belts have a heavy-drill weight cloth backing. Most electro-coated Al_2O_3 and closed-coat SiC belts have a jeans weight cloth backing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Guide to the Selection and Application of Contact Wheels

Surface	Material	Hardness and Density	Purposes	Wheel Action	Comments
Cog-tooth	Rubber	70 to 90 durometer	Roughing	Fast cutting, allows long belt life.	For cutting down projections on castings and weld beads.
Standard serrated	Rubber	40 to 50 durometer, medium density	Roughing	Leaves rough- to medium-ground surface.	For smoothing projections and face defects.
X-shaped serra-tions	Rubber	20 to 50 durometer	Roughing and polishing	Flexibility of rubber allows entry into contours. Medium polishing, light removal.	Same as for standard serrated wheels but preferred for soft nonferrous metals.
Plain face	Rubber	20 to 70 durometer	Roughing and polishing	Plain wheel face allows controlled penetration of abrasive grain. Softer wheels give better finishes.	For large or small flat faces.
Flat flexible	Com-pressed canvas	About nine densities from very hard to very soft	Roughing and polishing	Hard wheels can remove metal, but not as quickly as cog-tooth rubber wheels. Softer wheels polish well.	Good for medium-range grinding and polishing.
Flat flexible	Solid sectional canvas	Soft, medium, and hard	Polishing	Uniform polishing. Avoids abrasive pattern on work. Adjusts to contours. Can be performed for contours.	A low-cost wheel with uniform density at the face. Handles all types of polishing.
Flat flexible	Buff section canvas	Soft	Contour polishing	For fine polishing and finishing.	Can be widened or narrowed by adding or removing sections. Low cost.
Flat flexible	Sponge rubber inserts	5 to 10 durometer, soft	Polishing	Uniform polishing and finishing. Polishes and blends contours.	Has replaceable segments. Polishes and blends contours. Segments allow density changes.
Flexible	Fingers of canvas attached to hub	Soft	Polishing	Uniform polishing and finishing.	For polishing and finishing.
Flat flexible	Rubber segments	Varies in hardness	Roughing and polishing	Grinds or polishes depending on density and hardness of inserts.	For portable machines. Uses replaceable segments that save on wheel costs and allow density changes.
Flat flexible	Inflated rubber	Air pressure controls hardness	Roughing and polishing	Uniform finishing.	Adjusts to contours.

The types of abrasives available in cut-off wheels are: Aluminum oxide, for cutting steel and most other metals; silicon carbide, for cutting non-metallic materials such as carbon, tile, slate, ceramics, etc.; and diamond, for cutting cemented carbides. The method of denoting abrasive type, grain size, grade, structure and bond type by using a system of markings is the same as for grinding wheels (see page 1282). Maximum wheel speeds given in the ANSI Standard "Safety Requirements for The Use, Care, and Protection of Abrasive Wheels" (ANSI B7.1-2017) range from 9500 to 14,200 sfpm (2896–4328 m/min) for organic bonded cut-off wheels larger than 16 inches (40.6 cm) in diameter and from 9500 to 16,000 sfpm (2896–4877 m/min) for organic bonded cut-off wheels 16 inches in diameter and smaller. Maximum wheel speeds specified by the manufacturer should never be exceeded even though they may be lower than those given in the B7.1 Standard.

There are four basic types of abrasive cutting machines: Chop-stroke, oscillating stroke, horizontal stroke and work rotating. Each of these four types may be designed for dry cutting or for wet cutting (includes submerged cutting).

The accompanying table based upon information made available by The Carborundum Co. gives some of the probable causes of cutting off difficulties that might be experienced when using abrasive cut-off wheels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Probable Causes of Cutting-Off Difficulties

Difficulty	Probable Cause
Angular Cuts and Wheel Breakage	(1) Inadequate clamping which allows movement of work while the wheel is in the cut. The work should be clamped on both sides of the cut. (2) Work vise higher on one side than the other causing wheel to be pinched. (3) Wheel vibration resulting from worn spindle bearings. (4) Too fast feeding into the cut when cutting wet.
Burning of Stock	(1) Insufficient power or drive allowing wheel to stall. (2) Cuts too heavy for grade of wheel being used. (3) Wheel fed through the work too slowly. This causes a heating up of the material being cut. This difficulty encountered chiefly in dry cutting.
Excessive Wheel Wear	(1) Too rapid cutting when cutting wet. (2) Grade of wheel too hard for work, resulting in excessive heating and burning out of bond. (3) Inadequate coolant supply in wet cutting. (4) Grade of wheel too soft for work. (5) Worn spindle bearings allowing wheel vibration.
Excessive Burring	(1) Feeding too slowly when cutting dry. (2) Grit size in wheel too coarse. (3) Grade of wheel too hard. (4) Wheel too thick for job.

Honing Process

The hone-abrading process for obtaining cylindrical forms with precise dimensions and surfaces can be applied to internal cylindrical surfaces with a wide range of diameters such as engine cylinders, bearing bores, pin holes, etc. and also to some external cylindrical surfaces. The process is used to: 1) eliminate inaccuracies resulting from previous operations by generating a true cylindrical form with respect to roundness and straightness within minimum dimensional limits; 2) generate final dimensional size accuracy within low tolerances, as may be required for interchangeability of parts; 3) provide rapid and economical stock removal consistent with accomplishment of the other results; and 4) generate surface finishes of a specified degree of surface smoothness with high surface quality.

Amount and Rate of Stock Removal.—Honing may be employed to increase bore diameters by as much as 0.100 inch (2.5 mm) or as little as 0.001 inch (0.25 mm). The amount of stock removed by the honing process is entirely a question of processing economy. If other operations are performed before honing then the bulk of the stock should be taken off by the operation that can do it most economically. In large diameter bores that have been distorted in heat treating, it may be necessary to remove as much as 0.030 to 0.040 inch (0.76–1.02 mm) from the diameter to make the bore round and straight. For out-of-round or tapered bores, a good "rule of thumb" is to leave twice as much stock (on the diameter) for honing as there is error in the bore. Another general rule is: For bores over 1 inch (25.4 mm) in diameter, leave 0.001 to 0.0015 inch stock per inch of diameter (0.025–0.038 mm stock/mm). For example, 0.002 to 0.003 inch (0.05–0.08 mm) of stock is left in 2-inch bores (50.8 mm) and 0.010 to 0.015 inch (0.25–0.38 mm) in 10-inch (254 mm) bores. Where parts are to be honed for finish only, the amount of metal to be left for removing tool marks may be as little as 0.0002 to 0.015 inch (0.005–0.38 mm) on the diameter.

In general, the honing process can remove stock from bore diameters at the rate of 0.009 to 0.012 inch per minute (0.23–0.30 mm/min) on cast-iron parts and from 0.005 to 0.008 inch per minute (0.13–0.20 mm/min) on steel parts having a hardness of 60 to 65 RC (Rockwell C scale). These rates are based on parts having a length equal to three or four times the diameter. Stock has been removed from long parts such as gun barrels, at the rate of 65 cubic inches per hour (17.75 cc/s). Recommended honing speeds for cast iron range from 110 to 200 surface feet per minute (34–61 m/min) of rotation and from 50 to 110 lineal feet per minute (15–34 m/min) of reciprocation. For steel, rotating surface speeds range from 50 to 110 feet per minute (15–34 m/min) and reciprocation speeds from 20 to 90 lineal feet per minute (6–27 m/min) . The rotation and reciprocation speeds to be used depend on the size of the work, the amount and characteristics of the material to be removed, and the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

quality of the finish desired. In general, the harder the material to be honed, the lower the speed. Interrupted bores are usually honed at faster speeds than plain bores.

Formulas for Rotative Speeds.—Empirical formulas for determining rotative speeds for honing have been developed by the Micromatic Hone Corp. These formulas take into consideration the type of material being honed, its hardness and its surface characteristics; the abrasive area; and the type of surface pattern and degree of surface roughness desired. Because of the wide variations in material characteristics, abrasives available, and types of finishes specified, these formulas should be considered as a guide only in determining which of the available speeds (pulley or gear combinations) should be used for any particular application.

The formula for rotative speed, S, in surface feet per minute is: $S = \frac{K \times D}{W \times N}$

The formula for rotative speed in revolutions per minute is: $\text{R.P.M} = \frac{R}{W \times N}$

where, K and R are factors taken from the table on the following page, D is the diameter of the bore in inches, W is the width of the abrasive stone or stock in inches, and N is the number of stones.

Although the actual speed of the abrasive is the resultant of both the rotative speed and the reciprocation speed, this latter quantity is seldom solved for or used. The reciprocation speed is not determined empirically but by testing under operating conditions. Changing the reciprocation speed affects the dressing action of the abrasive stones, therefore, the reciprocation speed is adjusted to provide for a desired surface finish which is usually a well lubricated bearing surface that will not scuff.

Table of Factors for Use in Rotative Speed Formulas

Character of Surface[a]	Material	Hardness[b]					
		Soft		Medium		Hard	
		Factors					
		K	*R*	*K*	*R*	*K*	*R*
Base Metal	Cast Iron	110	420	80	300	60	230
	Steel	80	300	60	230	50	190
Dressing Surface	Cast Iron	150	570	110	420	80	300
	Steel	110	420	80	300	60	230
Severe Dressing	Cast Iron	200	760	150	570	110	420
	Steel	150	570	110	420	80	300

[a] The character of the surface is classified according to its effect on the abrasive; *Base Metal* being a honed, ground or fine bored section that has little dressing action on the grit; *Dressing Surface* being a rough bored, reamed or broached surface or any surface broken by cross holes or ports; *Severe Dressing* being a surface interrupted by keyways, undercuts or burrs that dress the stones severely. If over half of the stock is to be removed after the surface is cleaned up, the speed should be computed using the *Base Metal* factors for *K* and *R*.

[b] Hardness designations of soft, medium, and hard cover the following ranges on the Rockwell C hardness scale, respectively: 15 to 45, 45 to 60, and 60 to 70.

Abrasive Stones for Honing.—Honing stones consist of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, CBN or diamond abrasive grits, held together in stick form by a vitrified clay, resinoid or metal bond. CBN metal-bond stones are particularly suitable and widely used for honing. The grain and grade of abrasive to be used in any particular honing operation depend upon the quality of finish desired, the amount of stock to be removed, the material being honed and other factors.

The following general rules may be followed in the application of abrasive for honing: 1) Silicon-carbide abrasive is commonly used for honing cast iron, while aluminum-oxide abrasive is generally used on steel; 2) The harder the material being honed, the softer the abrasive stick used; 3) A rapid reciprocating speed will tend to make the abrasive cut

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

fast because the dressing action on the grits will be severe; and 4) To improve the finish, use a finer abrasive grit, incorporate more multi-direction action, allow more "run-out" time after honing to size, or increase the speed of rotation.

Possible Adjustments for Eliminating Undesirable Honing Conditions

Undesirable Condition	Adjustment Required to Correct Condition[a]								
	Abrasive[b]				Other				
	Friability	Grain Size	Hardness	Structure	Feed Pressure	Reciprocation	R.P.M.	Runout Time	Stroke Length
Abrasive Glazing	+	– –	– –	+	+ +	+ +	– –	–	0
Abrasive Loading	0	– –	–	–	+ +	+	– –	0	0
Too Rough Surface Finish	0	+ +	+ +	–	–	–	+ +	+	0
Too Smooth Surface Finish	0	– –	– –	+	+	+	– –	–	0
Poor Stone Life	–	+	+ +	–	–	–	+	0	0
Slow Stock Removal	+	– –	–	+	+ +	+ +	– –	0	0
Taper — Large at Ends	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	–
Taper — Small at Ends	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	+

[a] The + and + + symbols generally indicate that there should be an increase or addition while the – and – – symbols indicate that there should be a reduction or elimination. In each case, the double sym- bol indicates that the contemplated change would have the greatest effect. The 0 symbol means that a change would have no effect.

[b] For the abrasive adjustments the + and + + symbols indicate a more friable grain, a finer grain, a harder grade or a more open structure and the – and – – symbols just the reverse.

Compiled by Micromatic Hone Corp.

Surface roughnesses ranging from less than 1 micro-inch rms (0.0254 µm rms) to a relatively coarse roughness can be obtained by judicious choice of abrasive and honing time but the most common range is from 3 to 50 micro-inches rms (0.0762–1.27 µm rms).

Adjustments for Eliminating Undesirable Honing Conditions.—The accompanying table indicates adjustments that may be made to correct certain undesirable conditions encountered in honing. Only one change should be made at a time and its effect noted before making other adjustments.

Tolerances.—For bore diameters above 4 inches (101.6 mm) the tolerance of honed surfaces with respect to roundness and straightness ranges from 0.0005 to 0.001 inch (0.0127–0.0254 mm); for bore diameters from 1 to 4 inches (25.4–101.6 mm), 0.0003 to 0.0005 inch (0.0076–0.0127 mm); and for bore diameters below 1 inch (25.4 mm), 0.00005 to 0.0003 inch (0.0013–0.0076 mm).

Laps and Lapping

Material for Laps.—Laps are usually made of soft cast iron, copper, brass or lead. In general, the best material for laps to be used on very accurate work is soft, close-grained cast iron. If the grinding, prior to lapping, is of inferior quality, or an excessive allowance has been left for lapping, copper laps may be preferable. They can be charged more easily and cut more rapidly than cast iron, but do not produce as good a finish. Whatever material is used, the lap should be softer than the work, as, otherwise, the latter will become charged with the abrasive and cut the lap, the order of the operation being reversed. A common and inexpensive form of lap for holes is made of lead which is cast around a tapering steel arbor. The arbor usually has a groove or keyway extending lengthwise, into which the lead flows, thus forming a key that prevents the lap from turning. When the lap has worn slightly smaller than the hole and ceases to cut, the lead is expanded or stretched a little by the driving in of the arbor. When this expanding operation has been repeated two or three times, the lap usually must be trued or replaced with a new one, owing to distortion.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The tendency of lead laps to lose their form is an objectionable feature. They are, however, easily molded, inexpensive, and quickly charged with the cutting abrasive. A more elaborate form for holes is composed of a steel arbor and a split cast-iron or copper shell which is sometimes prevented from turning by a small dowel pin. The lap is split so that it can be expanded to accurately fit the hole being operated upon. For hardened work, some toolmakers prefer copper to either cast iron or lead. For holes varying from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (6.35–12.7 mm) in diameter, copper or brass is sometimes used; cast iron is used for holes larger than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) in diameter. The arbors for these laps should have a taper of about $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{8}$ inch per foot (20.83 or 31.25 mm/m). The length of the lap should be somewhat greater than the length of the hole, and the thickness of the shell or lap proper should be from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{6}$ its diameter.

External laps are commonly made in the form of a ring, with an outer ring or holder and an inner shell which forms the lap proper. This inner shell is made of cast iron, copper, brass, or lead. Ordinarily the lap is split and screws are provided in the holder for adjustment. The length of an external lap should at least equal the diameter of the work, and may be longer. Large ring laps usually have a handle for moving them across the work.

Laps for Flat Surfaces.—Laps for producing plane surfaces are made of cast iron. In order to secure accurate results, the lapping surface must be a true plane. A flat lap that is used for roughing or "blocking down" will cut better if the surface is scored by narrow grooves. These are usually located about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) apart and extend both lengthwise and crosswise, thus forming a series of squares similar to those on a checker-board. An abrasive of No. 100 or 120 emery and lard oil can be used for charging the roughing lap. For finer work, a lap having an unscored surface is used, and the lap is charged with a finer abrasive. After a lap is charged, all loose abrasive should be washed off with gasoline, for fine work, and when lapping, the surface should be kept moist, preferably with kerosene. Gasoline will cause the lap to cut a little faster, but it evaporates so rapidly that the lap soon becomes dry and the surface caked and glossy in spots. Loose emery should not be applied while lapping, for if the lap is well charged with abrasive in the beginning, is kept well moistened and not crowded too hard, it will cut for a considerable time. The pressure upon the work should be just enough to insure constant contact. The lap can be made to cut only so fast, and if excessive pressure is applied it will become "stripped" in places. The causes of scratches are: Loose abrasive on the lap; too much pressure on the work, and poorly graded abrasive. To produce a perfectly smooth surface free from scratches, the lap should be charged with a very fine abrasive.

Grading Abrasives for Lapping.—For high-grade lapping, abrasives can be evenly graded as follows: A quantity of flour-emery or other abrasive is placed in a heavy cloth bag, which is gently tapped, causing very fine particles to be sifted through. When a sufficient quantity has been obtained in this way, it is placed in a dish of lard or sperm oil. The largest particles will then sink to the bottom and in about one hour the oil should be poured into another dish, care being taken not to disturb the sediment at the bottom. The oil is then allowed to stand for several hours, after which it is poured again, and so on, until the desired grade is obtained.

Charging Laps.—To charge a flat cast-iron lap, spread a very thin coating of the prepared abrasive over the surface and press the small cutting particles into the lap with a hard steel block. There should be as little rubbing as possible. When the entire surface is apparently charged, clean and examine for bright spots; if any are visible, continue charging until the entire surface has a uniform gray appearance. When the lap is once charged, it should be used without applying more abrasive until it ceases to cut. If a lap is over-charged and an excessive amount of abrasive is used, there is a rolling action between the work and lap which results in inaccuracy. The surface of a flat lap is usually finished true, prior to charging, by scraping and testing with a standard surface-plate, or by the well-known method of scraping-in three plates together, in order to secure a plane surface. In any case, the bearing marks or spots should be uniform and close together. These spots can be blended by covering the plates evenly with a fine abrasive and rubbing them together. While the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

plates are being ground in, they should be carefully tested and any high spots which may form should be reduced by rubbing them down with a smaller block.

To charge cylindrical laps for internal work, spread a thin coating of prepared abrasive over the surface of a hard steel block, preferably by rubbing lightly with a cast-iron or copper block; then insert an arbor through the lap and roll the latter over the steel block, pressing it down firmly to embed the abrasive into the surface of the lap. For external cylindrical laps, the inner surface can be charged by rolling-in the abrasive with a hard steel roller that is smaller in diameter than the lap. The taper cast-iron blocks sometimes used for lapping taper holes can also be charged by rolling-in the abrasive, as described; there is usually one roughing and one finishing lap, and when charging the former, it may be necessary to vary the charge according to any error that might exist in the taper.

Rotary Diamond Lap.—This style of lap is used for accurately finishing very small holes, which, because of their size, cannot be ground. While the operation is referred to as lapping, it is, in reality, a grinding process, the lap being used the same as a grinding wheel. Laps employed for this work are made of mild steel, soft material being desirable because it can be charged readily. Charging is usually done by rolling the lap between two hardened steel plates. The diamond dust and a little oil is placed on the lower plate, and as the lap revolves, the diamond is forced into its surface. After charging, the lap should be washed in benzine. The rolling plates should also be cleaned before charging with dust of a finer grade. It is very important not to force the lap when in use, especially if it is a small size. The lap should just make contact with the high spots and gradually grind them off. If a diamond lap is lubricated with kerosene, it will cut freer and faster. These small laps are run at very high speeds, the rate depending upon the lap diameter. Soft work should never be ground with diamond dust because the dust will leave the lap and charge the work.

When using a diamond lap, it should be remembered that such a lap will not produce sparks like a regular grinding wheel; hence, it is easy to crowd the lap and "strip" some of the diamond dust. To prevent this, a sound intensifier or "harker" should be used. This is placed against some stationary part of the grinder spindle, and indicates when the lap touches the work, the sound produced by the slightest contact being intensified.

Grading Diamond Dust.—The grades of diamond dust used for charging laps are designated by numbers, the fineness of the dust increasing as the numbers increase. The diamond, after being crushed to powder in a mortar, is thoroughly mixed with high-grade olive oil. This mixture is allowed to stand 5 minutes and then the oil is poured into another receptacle. The coarse sediment is left is removed and labeled No. 0, according to one system. The oil poured from No. 0 is again stirred and allowed to stand 10 minutes, after which it is poured into another receptacle and the sediment remaining is labeled No. 1. This operation is repeated until practically all of the dust has been recovered from the oil, the time the oil is allowed to stand being increased as shown by the following table. This is done to obtain the smaller particles that require a longer time for precipitation:

To obtain No. 1 — 10 minutes	To obtain No. 4 — 2 hours
To obtain No. 2 — 30 minutes	To obtain No. 5 — 10 hours
To obtain No. 3 — 1 hour	To obtain No. 6 — until oil is clear

The No. 0 or coarse diamond which is obtained from the first settling is usually washed in benzine, and re-crushed unless very coarse dust is required. This No. 0 grade is sometimes known as "ungraded" dust. In some places the time for settling, in order to obtain the various numbers, is greater than that given in the table.

Cutting Properties of Laps and Abrasives.—In order to determine the cutting properties of abrasives when used with different lapping materials and lubricants, a series of tests was conducted, the results of which were given in a paper by W. A. Knight and A. A. Case, presented before the American Society of Mechanical Engineers. In connection with these tests, a special machine was used, the construction being such that quantitative results could be obtained with various combinations of abrasive, lubricant, and lap material. These tests were confined to surface lapping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

It was not the intention to test a large variety of abrasives, three being selected as representative; namely, Naxos emery, carborundum, and alundum. Abrasive No. 150 was used in each case, and seven different lubricants, five different pressures, and three different lap materials were employed. The lubricants were lard oil, machine oil, kerosene, gasoline, turpentine, alcohol, and soda water.

These tests indicated throughout that there is, for each combination of lap and lubricant, a definite size of grain that will give the maximum amount of cutting. With all the tests, except when using the two heavier lubricants, some reduction in the size of the grain below that used in the tests (No. 150) seemed necessary before the maximum cutting rate was reached. This reduction was continuous and soon passed below that which gave the maximum cutting rate.

Cutting Qualities with Different Laps.—The surfaces of the steel and cast-iron laps were finished by grinding. The hardness of the different laps, as determined by the scleroscope was, for cast-iron, 28; steel, 18; copper, 5. The total amount ground from the test-pieces with each of the three laps showed that, taking the whole number of tests as a standard, there is scarcely any difference between the steel and cast iron, but that copper has somewhat better cutting qualities, although, when comparing the laps on the basis of the highest and lowest values obtained with each lap, steel and cast iron are as good for all practical purposes as copper, when the proper abrasive and lubricant are used.

Wear of Laps.—The wear of laps depends upon the material from which they are made and the abrasive used. The wear on all laps was about twice as fast with carborundum as with emery; with alundum the wear was about one and one-fourth times that with emery. On an average, the wear of the copper lap was about three times that of the cast-iron lap. This is not absolute wear, but wear in proportion to the amount ground from the test-pieces.

Lapping Abrasives.—As to the qualities of the three abrasives tested, it was found that carborundum usually began at a lower rate than the other abrasives, but, when once started, its rate was better maintained. The performance gave a curve that was more nearly a straight line. The charge or residue as the grinding proceeded remained cleaner and sharper and did not tend to become pasty or mucklike, as is so frequently the case with emery. When using a copper lap, carborundum shows but little gain over the cast-iron and steel laps, whereas, with emery and alundum, the gain is considerable.

Effect of Different Lapping Lubricants.—The action of the different lubricants, when tested, was found to depend upon the kind of abrasive and the lap material.

Lard and Machine Oil: The test showed that lard oil, without exception, gave the higher rate of cutting, and that, in general, the initial rate of cutting is higher with the lighter lubricants, but falls off more rapidly as the test continues. The lowest results were obtained with machine oil, when using an emery-charged, cast-iron lap. When using lard oil and a carborundum-charged steel lap, the highest results were obtained.

Gasoline and Kerosene: On the cast-iron lap, gasoline was superior to any of the lubricants tested. Considering all three abrasives, the relative value of gasoline, when applied to the different laps, is as follows: Cast iron, 127; copper, 115; steel, 106. Kerosene, like gasoline, gives the best results on cast iron and the poorest on steel. The values obtained by carborundum were invariably higher than those obtained with emery, except when using gasoline and kerosene on a copper lap.

Turpentine and Alcohol: Turpentine was found to do good work with carborundum on any lap. With emery, turpentine did fair work on the copper lap, but, with the emery on cast-iron and steel laps, it was distinctly inferior. Alcohol gives the lowest results with emery on the cast-iron and steel laps.

Soda Water: Soda water gives medium results with almost any combination of lap and abrasives, the best work being on the copper lap and the poorest on the steel lap. On the cast-iron lap, soda water is better than machine or lard oil, but not so good as gasoline or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

kerosene. Soda water when used with alundum on the copper lap, gave the highest results of any of the lubricants used with that particular combination.

Lapping Pressures.—Within the limits of the pressures used, that is, up to 25 pounds per square inch (172 kPa), the rate of cutting was found to be practically proportional to the pressure. The higher pressures of 20 and 25 pounds per square inch (138 and 172 kPa) are not so effective on the copper lap as on the other materials.

Wet and Dry Lapping.—With the "wet method" of using a surface lap, there is a surplus of oil and abrasive on the surface of the lap. As the specimen being lapped is moved over it, there is more or less movement or shifting of the abrasive particles. With the "dry method," the lap is first charged by rubbing or rolling the abrasive into its surface. All surplus oil and abrasive are then washed off, leaving a clean surface, but one that has embedded uniformly over it small particles of the abrasive. It is then like the surface of a very fine oilstone and will cut away hardened steel that is rubbed over it. While this has been termed the dry method, in practice, the lap surface is kept moistened with kerosene or gasoline.

Experiments on dry lapping were carried out on the cast-iron, steel, and copper laps used in the previous tests, and on one of tin made expressly for the purpose. Carborundum alone was used as the abrasive and a uniform pressure of 15 pounds per square inch (103 kPa) was applied to the specimen throughout the tests. In dry lapping, much depends upon the manner of charging the lap. The rate of cutting decreased more rapidly after the first 100 revolutions than with the wet method. Considering the amounts ground off during the first 100 revolutions, and the best result obtained with each lap taken for comparison, it was found that with a tin lap, charged by rolling No. 150 carborundum into the surface, the rate of cutting, when dry, approached that obtained with the wet method. With the other lap materials, the rate with the dry method was about one-half that of the wet method.

Summary of Lapping Tests.—The initial rate of cutting does not greatly differ for different abrasives. There is no advantage in using an abrasive coarser than No. 150. The rate of cutting is practically proportional to the pressure. The wear of the laps is in the following proportions: cast iron, 1.00; steel, 1.27; copper, 2.62. In general, copper and steel cut faster than cast iron, but, where permanence of form is a consideration, cast iron is the superior metal. Gasoline and kerosene are the best lubricants to use with a cast-iron lap. Machine and lard oil are the best lubricants to use with copper or steel laps. They are, however, least effective on a cast-iron lap. In general, wet lapping is from 1.2 to 6 times as fast as dry lapping, depending upon the material of the lap and the manner of charging.

NONTRADITIONAL MACHINING AND CUTTING

Introduction.—Manufacturers are constantly pursuing new methods to machine complex features faster, with more accuracy, and without imposing significant cutting forces on sensitive or thin parts. In addition, use of advanced composites and harder and brittle materials is increasing. These challenges create a growing need for nontraditional machining processes, which can be categorized by material removal processes: chemical, electrochemical, mechanical erosion, and electro-thermal. Such modern methods tend to be automated, with sophisticated systems and software often used to control process variables.

Shown in Table 1 are characteristics of some of the most commonly used nontraditional machining methods discussed in this section. Equipment improvements are ongoing and capabilities vary, so values given are representative rather than absolute. Table 2 contains some examples of cutting speeds for metals from industry literature. Actual speeds will vary, depending on equipment, setup, materials processed, and other factors.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Typical Characteristics of Some Nontraditional Machining Methods

	Water Jet (WJM/AWJM)	Laser (LBM)	Plasma (PAM)	Electrical Discharge (EDM/WEDM)
Process Used	Erosion	Melting/Vaporization	Melting	Vaporization/Erosion
Materials Processed	Most	Many	Conductive	Conductive
Materials Not Processed	Diamond	Some Reflective	Non-Conductive	Non-Conductive
	Tempered Glass	Non-Homogeneous	Non-Homogeneous	Non-Homogeneous
Feature Detail Level	High	Very High	Medium	Very High
Maximum Part Thickness (Rough Cut)	12 in. (305 mm)	1.5 in. (38.1 mm)	6 in. (152.4 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)
Maximum Part Thickness (High-Quality Cut)	2 in. (50.8 mm)	1 in. (25.4 mm)	2 in. (50.8 mm)	12 in. (305 mm)
Typical Accuracy (Thin Stock)	±0.001 in. (0.03 mm)	±0.001 in. (0.03 mm)	±0.01 in. (0.25 mm)	±0.001 in. (0.03 mm)
Typical Accuracy (Thick Stock)	±0.005 in. (0.13 mm)	±0.005 in. (0.13 mm)	±0.03 in. (0.76 mm)	±0.001 in. (0.03 mm)
Minimum Kerf Width (Thin Stock)	Pure Water: 0.003 in. (0.08 mm)	0.001 in. (0.03 mm)	0.02 in. (0.5 mm)	Wire EDM: 0.0008 in. (0.02 mm)
	Abrasive Jet: 0.015 in. (0.38 mm)			Typical: 0.013 in. (0.34 mm)
Cut Speed	Slow to Moderate	Fast to Very Fast	Very Fast	Slow
Cut Surface Quality	Very Good	Excellent	Good	Excellent
Cut Characteristics to be Managed	Kerf Taper, Exit Burr	Kerf Taper, Dross	Kerf Taper, Dross, Slag	True to Form
Heat Affected Zone on Cut Surfaces	None	Narrow Zone	Yes	Narrow Zone
Post-Processing Needed	Sometimes: Deburr	Sometimes: HAZ and Dross Removal	Sometimes: Stress Relieve, Straighten, Slag/Dross/HAZ Removal	None
				Wire EDM: Pre-Processing is Required to Add Pierce Holes

Table 2. Examples of Cutting Speeds for Metals

Material	Thickness in (mm)	Laser Assist Gas	High-Quality Cut Feed Rate, in/min (mm/s)				Plasma Process Gas/ Shield Gas
			CO_2 Laser 4kW	Fiber Laser 4kW	Abrasive Waterjet 60 HP, 60 ksi	High-Definition Plasma, 260A	
Aluminum	0.04 (1.0)	Nitrogen	420 (178)	1457 (617)	225 (95)	—	—
	0.25 (6.4)		40 (17)	100 (42)	32 (14)	60 (25)	Air/Air
	0.5 (12.7)		—	21 (9)	14 (6)	190 (80)	H35/Nitrogen
Carbon Steel	0.04 (1.0)	Oxygen	280 (119)	319 (135)	80 (34)	215 (91)	Oxygen/Air
	0.25 (6.4)		100 (42)	110 (47)	10 (4)	200 (85)	
	0.5 (12.7)		56 (24)	60 (25)	3 (1)	115 (49)	
	0.75 (19.1)		33 (14)	33 (14)	2 (0.8)	90 (38)	
Stainless Steel	0.04 (1.0)	Nitrogen	400 (170)	1456 (616)	75 (32)	—	—
	0.25 (6.4)		80 (34)	138 (58)	11 (5)	60 (25)	F5/Nitrogen
	0.5 (12.7)		16 (7)	39 (17)	4 (2)	65 (28)	H35/Nitrogen
Brass	0.04 (1.0)	Nitrogen	N/A	1338 (566)	162 (69)	N/A	N/A
	0.25 (6.4)			42 (18)	23 (10)		
Copper	0.04 (1.0)	Oxygen	N/A	1181 (500)	146 (62)	N/A	N/A
	0.2 (5.0)			48 (20)	21 (9)		
	0.5 (12.7)			—	5 (2)		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Mechanical Erosion Processes

Many conductive and non-conductive materials can be machined or cut using mechanical erosion processes that exert relatively low force on the workpiece or part and do not introduce thermal effects. Currently, the most prevalent of these processes are water jet machining (WJM) and abrasive water jet machining (AWJM). Other mechanical erosion processes include ultrasonic machining (USM), abrasive jet machining (AJM), abrasive flow machining (AFM), and magnetic abrasive finishing (MAF).

Water Jet Machining (WJM).— Conductive, non-conductive, reflective, thin, and very thick materials can be cut using water jet machining technology, also known as hydrodynamic machining, which includes both abrasive water jet machining and pure water jet machining. In both processes, a pump or intensifier pressurizes water and drives it through a small orifice to form a supersonic jet that exerts force on the workpiece. A typical system pressure is 60 ksi (414 MPa); some systems are capable of up to 90 ksi (620 MPa); and with some pump and orifice combinations, jet velocity can be as high as three times the speed of sound, or 2952 fps (900 m/s). The jet orifice normally is made of jewel, often sapphire or ruby; as the orifice can crack or chip from use, diamond may be used to extend tool life.

One limitation of water jet cutting is its inability to cut into hollow sections without special precautions. Upon cutting through the first wall of the section, the jet will spread rapidly and either just gouge or cut a wide path through the far wall. A sacrificial part can be placed inside the hollow to absorb the jet force, but if the inserted part does not completely fill the space, some blasting damage will occur inside the hollow due to ricochet.

Water Jet Cut Quality: Water jet systems can create relatively smooth cuts that require no secondary finishing. Cut quality typically decreases with decreasing speed. Subjective cut quality designations typically used in industry range from Q1 to Q5 and refer to surface quality. Q1 cuts, suitable for rapid separations or roughing, have a heavily striated surface, with curved striations, due to stream lag induced by head travel. Q2 is appropriate for general-purpose through cuts, often producing heavy striations toward the bottom. Q3 cuts are commonly used for general-purpose clean cuts, while Q4 cuts produce a finer surface finish. Q5 cuts have the best surface finish, often targeting a roughness average (Ra) of 80 µin. (2 µm).

Additional cut characteristics, such as accuracy, kerf width, taper (bevel), entrance rounding, and exit burr, are managed through process and maintenance. (Refer to Table 1 and Table 2 for some typical performance characteristics of precision water jet systems.) Obtaining a straight cut edge may require optimizing process parameters or employing a tilting head to compensate. Head component wear affects accuracy and is of particular concern in abrasive water jet processes.

Kerf width, or the width of material removed in cutting, is a function of jet diameter, standoff distance, cutting speed, and taper. With increased standoff distance, kerf width and taper increase. Standoff distance between the nozzle and workpiece typically ranges from 0.063 in. (1.6 mm) to 0.125 in. (3.2 mm). Excessive rounding of the entrance often occurs at standoff distances beyond this range.

Taper angle grows with increasing cutting speed; it is possible to produce a cut with negligible taper, but the process is likely to be slow. High speeds also will produce a tapered cut that is wider at the entrance than it is at the exit. Taper tends to increase in workpieces less than 0.125 in. (3.2 mm) thick, so stacking parts may be used to decrease taper.

Very slow speeds or very soft workpieces can result in a reverse tapered cut that is narrower at the entrance than it is at the exit; minimizing standoff distance can reduce this taper. When the workpiece is very thick, cuts may exhibit barrel taper, where the kerf is widest halfway through the cut, and narrowest at both entrance and exit. When cutting through ductile materials, the presence of a small burr at the cut exit is likely, but can be minimized through speed and standoff reduction.

Abrasive Water Jet Machining (AWJM): This process is appropriate for cutting hard and/or thick materials, including certain metals, ceramics, and stone. Metal workpieces less than 2 in. (50.8 mm) thick are well suited for abrasive water jet machining, and even

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

thicker metals in excess of 12 in. (305 mm) thick can be cut slowly. Supersonic water jets pull in metered, abrasive particles just after the orifice, and this solution travels down the mixing tube to the nozzle outlet.

The abrasive material often is garnet or similar material, with a particle size selected according to the nozzle opening, workpiece, and process. Grit sizes commonly used range from 50 mesh to 220 mesh (higher numbers indicate finer particles) in the Tyler Mesh Sizes (see *Meshes, Sieves, and Screens*, beginning on page 1068). An 80-mesh sieve size (0.007 in. or 0.177 mm) is most commonly used. The orifice and mixing tube combination determines the abrasive water jet stream diameter, which can be as small as 0.015 in. (0.38 mm), though 0.03–0.04 in. (0.76–1 mm) is more common. Nozzle mixing tubes wear rapidly with use; this can affect jet size and location.

Pure Water Jet Machining: Use of this process is limited to low-strength materials such as foam, fabric, and some plastics. The food industry often uses pure water jet cutting because it can be run as a sanitary process. As the jet contains no particles, very small jet sizes are possible. Typical orifices range from 0.003 in. to 0.015 in. (0.08 mm to 0.38 mm).

Ultrasonic Machining (USM).—Also referred to as ultrasonic vibration machining, this abrasive method makes cuts in material or changes its surface texture using a transducer that vibrates a tool at low amplitude (25 to 100 microns) and high frequency (15 to 30 kHz) and in a slurry containing fine abrasive particles. The vibrations force the particles against the material surface, removing material to the desired depth. For further information, see page 1260.

Abrasive Flow Machining (AFM).—Often used for deburring, smoothing, or polishing an interior part surface, but also applicable to final shaping, breakthrough, and drilling holes, this process forces a viscous fluid, containing abrasive material, through a workpiece.

Magnetic Abrasive Finishing (MAF).—This finishing process can be used to create a high surface quality, even on freeform parts. It involves adding micron-sized iron particulates to a flexible magnetic abrasive brush that can easily deform, based on the magnetic field strength, matching and honing a part, regardless of the complexity of the shape.

Electro-Thermal Processes

These processes use melting, burning, or vaporization to remove material from a workpiece. Included are electrical discharge machining (EDM), laser beam machining (LBM), plasma arc cutting (PAM), and electron beam machining (EBM). The heat of these cutting methods can cause distortion, discoloration, changes in surface hardness or composition, and introduction of residual stresses in the workpiece.

To specify and evaluate quality and tolerances of cuts made with oxyfuel flame systems, plasma arc systems, and laser cutting systems, refer to ISO 9013, "Classification of thermal cuts – Geometrical product specification and quality tolerances." Below are the most commonly used electro-thermal processes. Additional information on some of these processes is included in the *ELECTRICAL DISCHARGE MACHINING* on page 1469 and the *WELDING* section, starting on page 1575.

Electrical Discharge Machining (EDM).—This process vaporizes conductive materials in contact with an electrode in a dielectric fluid bath. Both through-cutting wire systems and three-dimensional die-sinking systems are widely available and highly accurate. Refer to Table 1 for some typical performance characteristics of EDM processes. For detailed information, see page 1471.

Laser Beam Machining (LBM).—Lasers can cut both metals and non-metals through a process of vaporization, fusion (melt and blow), burning, or thermal stress cracking. Shallow engraving, blind features, and through cuts are all possible. Lasers can cut delicate parts, since there is no contact; however, laser processes generally use gas jets to create a reactive environment or eject material, and that may produce some pressure on the part in the area of the cut.

Material, geometry, and type of cut determine the best type of laser to use. CO_2 (gas) laser systems and Nd:YAG (rod crystal, solid state) laser systems have been used in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

industry for many years. Fiber lasers are a newer solid-state technology that uses an Yb-doped optical fiber to amplify, contain, and direct a diode-generated laser beam; when the amplified light exits the fiber, a lens system collimates and focuses the beam. Thin disk (Yb:YAG) lasers are another new solid-state technology that provides power and beam quality comparable to fiber lasers. Most laser cutting systems in industry today use either fiber lasers or CO_2 lasers, and thin disk lasers are gaining in popularity.

Fiber and disk laser systems have the advantage of providing efficiency typically around 30 percent, while CO_2 lasers typically operate at 6 to 8 percent efficiency. Additional advantages of fiber and disk lasers are that they are made of solid-state components and do not require the high-speed turbines used in CO_2 laser systems, reducing periodic maintenance costs. However, CO_2 lasers often are preferred for cutting non-metals, such as ceramics, plastics, and various composites, due to their longer wavelength.

Most laser systems operate within an interlocked enclosure capable of blocking harmful light emissions, enclosing moving parts, and managing cutting fumes. Unlike CO_2 systems, fiber and disk laser light is delivered through an optical fiber, eliminating the need for periodic cleaning and alignment of the delivery system.

Wavelengths for common industrial lasers are as follows: CO_2 = 10.6µm, Nd:YAG = 1.06 µm, thin disk Yb:YAG = 1.03 µm, and fiber = 1.07 µm. Due to increased absorptivity of the laser beam at shorter wavelengths, high cutting speeds are possible when cutting steel less than 0.2 in. (5 mm) thick with solid state lasers. For example, fiber-delivered systems can cut up to three times faster than CO_2 systems at the same power level.

Laser Cutting Reflective Materials: Laser cutters, CO_2 systems in particular, are vulnerable to damage due to back-reflection when processing reflective workpieces. Back-reflections that reach the laser cavity can cause instabilities in laser output or even destroy laser components. Most high-power CO_2 laser manufacturers do not warranty their equipment for processing highly reflective metals, and devices available to protect CO_2 lasers from unwanted back-reflection are bulky, expensive, and impractical for high-powered industrial uses.

For fiber-delivered lasers, both the forward- and backward-traveling light is confined to the optical fiber. So back-reflection isolators designed to protect the laser can be compact fiber components, incorporated either near the output of the delivery fiber or at the output of the laser.

When the workpiece is reflective, some portion of laser light is reflected instead of being absorbed to supply cutting energy. Metals reflect laser light at increasing percentages with increasing laser wavelength. Increasing laser power or using a shorter wavelength can help overcome reflectivity problems.

Laser Cutting Assist Gas: A gas jet emitting from the laser head is used to eject molten material from the cut, protect the cutting head from splatter, and either react with the material or shield it. Oxygen assist gas reacts with the workpiece material and leaves an oxidized cut edge. The exothermic reaction adds energy to the cutting process and can enhance the depth or cutting speed; however, secondary operations may be necessary to remove an oxide layer if the laser-cut metal part is to be welded or painted.

Low-pressure oxygen assist gas can be used when cutting carbon steel. It performs this function economically due to the low flow rates and increased thickness capability afforded by the exothermic reaction. Oxygen assist can make cuts in stainless steel or aluminum possible with power levels that would be inadequate without oxygen. This facilitated initial development of industrial laser cutting, when laser power was limited and very expensive. However, use of oxygen assist to cut stainless steel has some disadvantages: cut edge discoloration (which may be unacceptable for cosmetic reasons), reduced corrosion resistance (due to the formation of chromium oxides), and dross formation (due to the higher melting point and surface tension of chromium oxide). For these reasons, and with the increased viability of higher laser power, the use of oxygen in laser cutting of stainless steel is no longer common.

In current practice, high-pressure nitrogen is the most commonly used assist gas for cutting stainless steels and aluminum with high-power lasers. This inert gas's shielding

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

effect results in a higher-quality cut than can be obtained with oxygen. Nitrogen-assisted cut edges suffer no discoloration and are oxide-free, so they are ready for subsequent welding or painting. Since the assist gas is inert, there is no addition of energy to the process, and achievable cutting speeds are lower than with oxygen. The high viscosity of molten steel (compared to that of iron oxide) can lead to dross adhesion at the bottom of the cut. This can be addressed by using very high assist gas pressures, resulting in high consumption of pure nitrogen and increased operating costs.

Air-assisted cutting is often used with aluminum, but the air must meet high cleanliness and pressure requirements. The presence of reactive oxygen in air can enhance cutting speed, while still producing a clean cut edge in aluminum; however, this technique can require high investment costs for a setup that delivers clean air at elevated pressure and high flow rates. Instead, laser cutting with shop air, which is both inexpensive and commonly available in industrial settings, can be used to cut relatively thin steel (both carbon and stainless steel) far more economically than using pure oxygen or nitrogen.

Assist gas flow, pressure, purity, and delivery (standoff distance and jet shape) all affect cut characteristics, necessitating careful selection and monitoring of gas pressure, nozzle size, feed rate, laser power, and material thickness. For nitrogen-assisted cutting, high gas volumes and pressures are needed to successfully cut narrow kerfs, and selection of the gas nozzle size will directly affect volume capability. In many cases, a larger nozzle diameter is needed to cut a narrower kerf. For oxygen-assisted cutting, gas pressure plays a key role in determining cut quality: low pressure can result in incomplete cuts, while high pressure can lead to uncontrolled burning and a rough cut edge.

Laser cutting equipment manufacturers provide a variety of nozzle types designed to provide assist gas flow characteristics tailored for optimal performance. Performance requirements and user preferences determine system priorities, such as cut edge quality (roughness, angle), cutting speed, gas consumption, and so on. Fig. 1 shows a laser cutting head with a commonly used double-nozzle design, which can accommodate two assist gas streams: an inner, primary assist gas stream and an outer, shield gas stream. These two streams could be fed by different gases, or by different supply pressures of the same assist gas to produce the desired outcome.

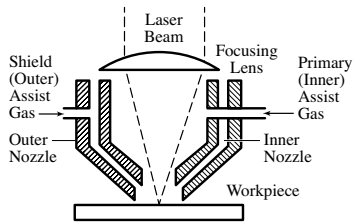


Fig. 1. Laser Cutting Nozzle with Two Assist Gas Pathways

Laser Cutting Heat Effects: Laser cutting and machining normally exposes workpieces to high thermal energy for a brief period. This leads to formation of a narrow heat-affected zone (HAZ) and minor heat effects in the part. Plastics and composites generally are much more vulnerable to heat effects than metals; some materials, such as PVC, will give off hazardous fumes, and others may discolor, warp, or char.

The thickness of the HAZ for a laser cut in thin material is small, often under 0.005 in. (0.13 mm), and is based on beam focus, assist gas, speed, and part material and thickness. The HAZ will be thicker around a cut in thicker material than in a thinner piece. Pulsing the laser can help to reduce HAZ thickness and other heat effects. Ultra-short pulse laser systems, sometimes called femtosecond lasers, are available that create no HAZ in applicable materials.

Efficiency loss during laser cutting occurs primarily due to heat conduction in the workpiece. In thermally conductive materials, a portion of the absorbed laser energy is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

conducted away from the cut zone. This diverted energy performs no useful work and only serves to heat the material. As a result, efficiency may dictate reduced cutting speeds and cut depths for highly thermally conductive metals, such as aluminum, brass, and copper.

Laser Cutting Performance Characteristics: Modern laser systems in the 6–8 kW range can cut through 1.5 in. (38 mm) steel, 0.75 in. (19 mm) aluminum, or 0.38 in. (9.6 mm) copper. The depth of cut is proportional to laser power and inversely proportional to speed. While fiber lasers are much more efficient and usually faster for cutting thin materials, CO_2 lasers usually are as fast as fiber systems when oxygen (flame) cutting materials over 0.2 in. (5 mm) thick. The cutting tolerance of a typical system on 0.5 in. (12.7 mm) thick carbon steel is ±0.005 in. (0.13 mm). Higher precision is possible in some cases. Table 1, Table 2, and Fig. 2 provide some examples of expected performance characteristics.

In thin workpieces, laser systems can create extremely small holes and fine features with a great deal of precision. Cut patterns can be as close as one beam diameter apart, if the cutting process is accurate and material thin. Kerf width will depend on wavelength, setup (spot size), process, and workpiece characteristics. A fiber laser has a wavelength ten times smaller than that of a CO_2 laser. As a result, a fiber laser can focus on a much smaller spot size, and kerf widths of 0.001 in. (0.025 mm) are achievable. Deeper cuts require a larger beam and wider kerf.

Beam shape is not cylindrical, so cuts will tend to have a wider entrance than exit. A 2 degree taper angle is typical. Reduction of this taper angle is possible by changing head angle, process parameters, standoff distance, or material thickness. Zero taper can be achieved in some cases.

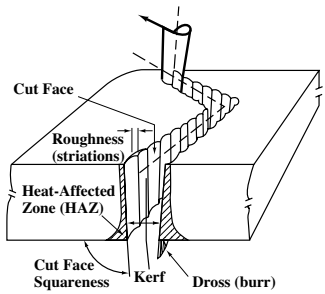


Fig. 2. Characteristics of Laser Cuts

Laser Hole Cutting and Drilling: Laser drilling can create holes that are blind or pierce through. The holes will tend to have taper, with the entrance being larger than the exit. When drilling, molten material rapidly expands in the hole and ejects upward. Some of this material can cling to the sides of the hole and form a recast layer.

In some cases, a single-shot direct drilling process can rapidly create a shallow drilled hole with minimal recast. A low-power pulsed beam can create holes of greater depth, smaller holes, and higher precision holes. Called percussion drilling, this method is slower than direct drilling and more prone to form a recast layer.

Helical drilling and trepanning can produce large diameter holes with high precision, minimal recast, and controllable taper. These methods require more sophisticated equipment and take longer than direct or percussion drilling. Helical drilling involves moving a pulsing laser along the circumference of the desired hole, while increasing the cut depth on each pass. Trepanning starts with percussion drilling a pilot hole, and then moving the pulsing laser in a spiral pattern, until it reaches the target diameter. Unlike the other drilling methods, trepanning begins with a through hole, allowing downward ejection of molten material.

Plasma Arc Machining (PAM).— Conductive metals, including expanded metal, cast iron, and rusted or painted parts, can be plasma cut. In this electro-thermal process, an

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

electric arc is generated between the plasma torch and workpiece. The plasma arc melts the material and a high velocity gas jet removes the molten material.

A plasma cutting torch consists of an electrode that serves as an attachment point of the arc and a nozzle used to confine the plasma arc and direct the high velocity gas jet toward the workpiece. This gas jet further confines or constricts the arc and protects the nozzle from the high temperature plasma. The core of the plasma arc is made of ionized gas atoms and electrons, which exit the torch nozzle at temperatures near 40,000°F (22,000°C). The plasma arc transfers energy via electrons re-entering the conductive workpiece, thermal conduction, and recombination of the plasma ions.

Some plasma torches may use a secondary or shield gas flow to protect the nozzle from spatter, electrically isolate the nozzle from the workpiece, and improve the cutting process. Other plasma torch enhancements include liquid cooling of torch components, high-precision nozzles to enhance confinement of the plasma jet via additional gases or nozzle geometry, or use of magnetic fields and the resulting Lorentz forces to constrict the arc. Efforts to constrict the arc as much as possible are meant to narrow the plasma jet to produce a narrow kerf, as well as increase the energy density of the plasma to allow a higher range of cutting speeds.

Some plasma torch components wear out and need to be replaced periodically to maintain cut quality and reliable operation. Such consumable items include the electrode, nozzle and shield.

Plasma Cutting Performance Characteristics: Plasma cutting is a highly flexible method of cutting metal. Small portable systems are available for large or difficult-to-access workpieces. Some plasma cutting processes can operate on materials submerged in water to reduce noise, fumes, and light emission. Plasma torches also can be used in multiple orientations, enabling three-dimensional cutting.

Plasma systems can make both through cuts and non-through gouges. It is possible to cut some materials up to 6 in. (152 mm) thick, but cut quality tends to suffer for thicknesses beyond 2 in. (50.8 mm). Since this is a thermal process, an HAZ will surround each cut. Depending on material and process parameters, an HAZ less than 0.01 in. (0.25 mm) thick is possible with little edge hardening. Cut quality characteristics, including cut smoothness, bevel angle, kerf width, and the presence of slag or dross on the bottom of the cut, are highly dependent on material and process parameters. Smoothness of the cut is generally good but can deteriorate at very high speeds or for thicknesses above 2 in. (50.8 mm).

A plasma cut usually has a positive bevel angle, where the entrance to the cut is larger than the cut exit. Plasma cuts also have two different bevel angles on the two sides of the cut kerf. This difference is a result of the plasma gas flow swirl component relative to the direction of torch motion. As a result, the plasma torch produces a "good" cut side, with a typical bevel angle of 2 degrees, and a "bad" cut side, with an angle close to 5 degrees. Cutting speed and standoff are the most direct ways to influence bevel angle. High cutting speed and standoff distances increase bevel angle, while lower speed and standoff lower the angle. Other factors include type and pressure of the gas, arc current, and nozzle characteristics. Precision systems with the right process settings can improve on this, in some cases, providing a straight cut (0 degree bevel).

While kerf width is process and workpiece dependent, it often is estimated as 1.5 times the nozzle orifice diameter. Kerf width is typically larger than 0.02 in. (0.5 mm) and often near 0.1 in. (2.5 mm). High standoff, low speed, and high amperage will widen the kerf.

Holes cut with a standard plasma torch should be larger in diameter than 1.5 times the material thickness, and larger than 3/16 in. (4.8 mm). State-of-the-art automated plasma systems can produce holes that are cylindrical and accurate enough to rival drilled holes, with a diameter to thickness ratio as low as 1:1. Some automated table systems also can tilt the torch relative to the workpiece, allowing additional control of the cut bevel angle or produce angled cuts.

Dross formation depends primarily on cutting speed. Speeds that are too slow will produce thick dross on the bottom of the cut; speeds that are too fast will produce a fine, beady

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

dross. For a given application, there usually is a speed range for dross-free cutting, though there may be no dross-free speed for very thick workpieces.

Gouges are made with plasma systems by tilting the torch relative to the workpiece, so the molten material is blown away on the top of the plate. This technique may be used to remove material in preparation for repair or re-work.

Plasma Cutting Assist Gas: Plasma cutting gas selection for best cut quality depends on material type and thickness. Oxygen is the best gas for cutting mild steel, because it allows the highest cutting speed for a high-quality cut. Air also can be used to cut mild steel, but nitriding can occur and should be considered if the cut edge is to be welded.

Stainless steel can be cut with good speed and bevel angle using air, but the cut edges will be rough and black because of oxidation and may require secondary cleanup operations. Using nitrogen plasma gas on stainless steel reduces oxidation and gives a smooth cut surface but still adds dark color, especially with material thicker than 0.25 in. (6 mm). Adding a water shield flow when using nitrogen plasma gas can give an edge color that is close to the base material color and improve the taper and rounding of the cut edge.

Plasma gases containing hydrogen provide a further improvement in the appearance of the cut edge. F5 plasma gas (95 percent nitrogen, 5 percent hydrogen) can give bright silver cut edges in stainless steel up to 0.375 in. (9.5 mm) thick, while H35 (65 percent argon, 35 percent hydrogen) improves the edge color for thicknesses greater than 0.5 in. (12.7 mm). Nitrogen is the most common shield gas when cutting with hydrogen-containing plasma gases. Aluminum cutting can be done with air, nitrogen, or hydrogen-containing gases. Edge quality is often rougher with the oxygen-containing gases and smoother with the hydrogen gas processes. Some modern systems can mix gases, such as argon, hydrogen and/or nitrogen to improve results on both stainless steel and aluminum.

Electron Beam Machining (EBM).—This non-contact machining method employs a beam of high-velocity electrons, usually applied in a vacuum, to make cuts and gouges. As the electrons collide with the workpiece, their kinetic energy produces heat and vaporization of material. This process is often chosen to perforate thin materials at high speeds. Almost any material up to 0.4 in. (10mm) can be machined with this method, usually without burr, and with relatively minor thermal effects. Tapered holes and cuts occur when part thickness exceeds 0.005 in. (0.13 mm). The finish and speed of electron beam hole drilling are superior to most other methods, but the capital equipment cost is high. Electron beams also are used in hardening, diffusion bonding, powder bed fusion, and welding processes.

CNC NUMERICAL CONTROL PROGRAMMING

Numerical control programming—better known as CNC programming—is an integral part of technology known as Numerical Control (NC), or its modern equivalent—Computerized Numerical Control (CNC). This technology can be defined as an operation of machine tools by means of specifically coded sequential instructions to be processed by the control system. These instructions are combinations of letters of the English alphabet "A-Z", all ten digits "0–9", and a few selected symbols, such as a decimal point ".", negative sign "-", parentheses "( )", forward slash "/", and several others. The main purpose of a CNC program is to provide detailed instructions necessary to machine a part (also called a workpiece) for a given machine setup—with minimal human interaction. All instructions to the control system must be written in a logical order and in a specified format called the program structure. The resulting CNC Program or a Part Program can be stored on various media for the future and used repeatedly to achieve identical machining results at any time.

A completed part program is processed by the CNC unit—commonly called the control system—and individual program instructions are carried out to complete desired actions of the CNC machine. These actions include all required machine activities, such as motion control, spindle speed, cutting feed rates, coolant functions, program flow control, various adjustments, etc. In order to develop a CNC program, a qualified person—typically called a CNC Programmer—is assigned to the task.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As a key person in the production environment, the CNC programmer has the responsibility for developing safe, efficient, and error free programs for CNC machines installed in the machine shop. Many CNC programmers have machining skills and hands-on experience as machine operators working on manual or CNC machines. Typical skills of a CNC programmer include the ability to interpret drawings, mathematical aptitude, knowledge of setup and tooling, and the very important understanding of "*how to machine a part*". The programmer has to be able to visualize all tool motions and recognize any restricting factors that may be involved. The programmer collects, analyzes, processes, and logically integrates all data into a single, production ready, part program. Equally important skills include knowledge of mathematics, particularly the ability to solve equations and trigonometry. The knowledge of manual programming is absolutely essential even in the age of computers and computer based programming software. Another important quality of a professional CNC programmer is his or her ability to listen to and work with other people such as engineers, operators, customers, and managers.

CNC Coordinate Geometry

A basic step in understanding CNC principles is to understand the geometry of machine tools. This term covers the relationship between the machine data, part data, and tool data, which includes setup.

As with all CAD/CAM systems (see *CAD/CAM* on page 1390), CNC is based on the same principles of a system of coordinates that define the location of a point in three dimensional space (3-D). A system of coordinates is founded on the concept of two perpendicular lines (named axes "X" and "Y"), intersecting at a point called *origin*, where both coordinates have a value of zero (X0, Y0). Both lines are divided into equal units of measurement.

A point can be defined in a plane (any two axes = 2D) or in space (three axes = 3D). For CNC work, the *rectangular coordinate system*—also known as the *Cartesian coordinate system*—is the most commonly used system. It is based on three standard axes: X,Y,Z. *Points* are defined as locations with a distance from the origin defined by projecting a line at 90 degrees to each axis, forming a visual rectangle. For example, in Fig. 2, P1 is defined as X3.0, Y2.0, P2 is defined as X-4.0, Y1.0, P3 as X-2.0,Y-3.0, and P4 as X2.0, Y-2.0.

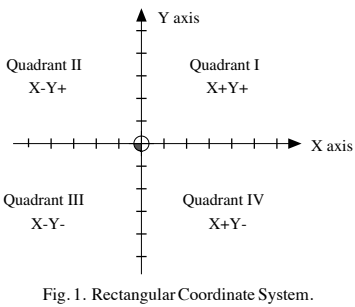


Fig. 1. Rectangular Coordinate System.

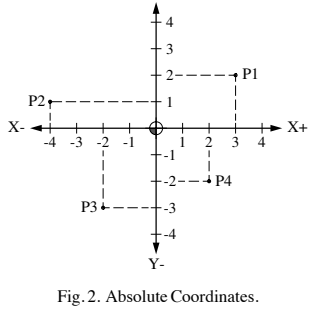


Fig. 2. Absolute Coordinates.

Once the point locations are established, the programmer can use them as points representing the center of individual holes to be machined or as endpoints for a continuous contour. The points can also be connected by providing specific motion instructions, as a toolpath between given points. Fig. 3 shows a linear motion from P1 to P2 to P3 to P4 and back to P1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

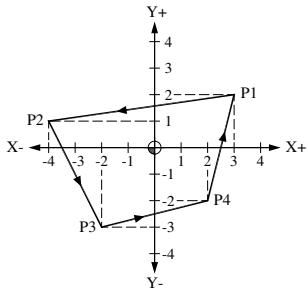


Fig. 3. Incremental Motions.

CNC Programming Process

CNC program (also called *part program*) development starts with an engineering drawing and material stock. Initial decisions include tasks to be done and goals to be achieved. The part program has to provide a safe and efficient method of machining a part, it should have a consistent structure (method of data entry), and be as portable as possible. Program portability allows the same program to run on machines that have similar characteristics. Typical logical process of program development can be summarized in a short, general list shown below. In actual use, specific steps will vary:

Program Development List

a) Evaluation of initial drawing and material.
b) Sequence of machining operations.
c) Tooling selection and arrangement of cutting tools.
d) Part setup method.
e) Technological data selection (speeds, feed rates, depths, etc.)
f) Toolpath determination.
g) Mathematical calculations.
h) Program writing and preparation for transfer to CNC.
i) Program testing.
j) Program documentation.

Word Address Format.—Writing any data to be processed by a computer requires a certain input format called a program. CNC program instructions are written in a special coded form obeying strict rules required by the programming language. These alphanumerical instructions are called *words*. Where a single letter is followed by one or more digits—the letter must always be first. Special symbols, such as a decimal point or a negative sign may also be used, if required. Each letter, digit, or symbol represents one program character as well as one character in the control memory. A *character* is the basic unit of a a CNC program. CNC programs only use characters that are readily available on a standard computer keyboard, without any multi-key combinations. A *word* in CNC program consists of two or more characters and is a single instruction to the control system. It can be used individually or it can be grouped into a series of combined instructions (words), to be performed at the same time. A program word is the *unit of instruction* to the control system. Instructions performed simultaneously are called a *block*, which is always represented by one line of the program. Individual instructions (blocks) are written in sequential order. Some typical words used in a block are:

M08 D14 X7.875 H03 /M01 Y0 G01 S850 Z-2.5 N49 T0707 T05 F10.0

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Within a word, there cannot be any spaces, but spaces are allowed in a block, between words only. The numeric value that immediately follows the address (letter) has to be entered in a format specific for that address. Using some of the words above, a meaningful block can be constructed:

N49 G01 Z- 2.5 F10.0 M08

where:

N49 = Block number (sequence number)
G01 = Linear motion selected
Z-2.5 = Z-axis motion only
F10.0 = Feed rate specification
M08 = Coolant ON function

An early standard of *Electronic Industry Association* (EIA) RS-274 from the 1960's defines various commands and functions for part programming. It was last updated in February 1980 to RS-274D but has never fully succeeded in its attempt to provide a uniform CNC programming environment for different control systems, mainly because of competitive forces in industry. However, many features of this standard have become common practice in programming and are used to this day.

Program Development.—There are several methods of programming CNC equipment that will generate a working part program:

a) Manual programming (also known as G-code programming)
b) Computer based programming (also known as CAM programming)
c) Shop-floor programming (also known as Conversational programming)
d) Macro programming

Manual (G-code) Programming requires the most effort, is time consuming, and prone to errors. The programmer writes every instruction separately, typically using a text editor on a computer to enter programming instructions. All calculations are done with the use of a pocket calculator. In spite of its disadvantages, manual programming has two major advantages—it offers complete human control over every detailed aspect of toolpath development and all related activities. Also, it provides important learning ground for part programming using computer methods.

Originally, all manual programming was done all by hand and written on paper. Now, any computer can be used to write the program using a keyboard, several software based calculators can be used instead of hand-held devices, and simulation software can verify the toolpath graphically, on a computer screen.

Computer Based Programming: Computer generated programs are based on graphical input, and typically require development of part geometry (point, lines, arcs, etc.). The final edited geometry serves as the toolpath geometry and can be assigned machining parameters. Specifying tool definition, spindle speeds and cutting feeds, and various cutting conditions is part of the programming process. A good knowledge of manual programming provides may necessary skills for computer based part programming.

Computer based programming is sometimes called (incorrectly) "CAM programming", because of the multitude of CNC software that uses the "cam" in the product title. It has nothing to do with a mechanical motion control device of the same name.

Any CAD/CAM system that provides CNC capabilities also has to provide precise formatting of the final program output. This output is always based on a particular machine tool and control system combination. Software vendors offering program development software are very much aware of this need, yet face the extremely difficult task to cover every machine tool design with every control system available. When the toolpath is initially processed, it is generic—it has no connection to any particular control or machine specifications. The same toolpath has to be processed again (post processed) for a

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

specific type of formatting, unique to a particular machine and control. The majority of post processors are customizable by the users who have thorough knowledge of manual programming methods, as well as a various machine and control systems.

The major advantage of computer based program generation is elimination of tedious calculations, minimizing errors, and providing a program in much shorter time than using the manual approach. Graphical interfaces quickly allow obvious errors to be detected visually. For more on this topic, see *CAD/CAM* on page 1390.

Shop-floor Programming: Shop-floor programming, sometimes called conversational programming, is performed at the machine by the CNC operator using programming software built into the control system. Using the keyboard and control display screen, the programmer/operator interactively defines tools, material, setup, toolpath, cutting conditions, etc. Virtually all work is completed at the display screen. The resulting program can be stored externally, to be used at another time. Although relatively fast, visual, and easy to edit, the built-in programming software adds to the overall cost of the machine. If not managed efficiently, it does not offer the same flexibility in toolpath control as other methods. It may also tie up the machine from production and is not as portable as some alternatives.

Depending on the control system, conversational programming software ranges from some software having only minimum basic features to others with very advanced features. In addition to defining points, lines, and arcs, typical features include various patterns of holes, pocketing cycles, automatic roughing, corner rounding and chamfering, threading, and other operations.

Typically, the programming method selected is also the most convenient programming method available. Type and complexity of the job is always a major factor. The choice between manual and computer based programming has become rather narrow. Complex parts always benefit from a computer generated programs, while simple parts will typically benefit from a manual program.

Macro Programming: Macro programming is the highest level of manual programming. It requires thorough knowledge of manual programming concepts at all levels. In principle, the single purpose of a macro program is to develop a generic toolpath or other activity for a particular purpose. Once the macro program is stored in the control memory, it can be used many times in the future—with variable data supplied for a specific job. Typical examples include a bolt circle or a rectangular pocket—in both cases the basic input features remain the same, but the actual dimensions change from part to part. All basic shapes of a bolt circle or pocket are retained while their sizes change—the macro itself does not change. See page 1377 for detailed information on macro programming.

Control System.—The control system, the actual computer controlling a CNC machine, is the main core of any CNC machine activity. It has many features that are important not only to the machine operator, but to the programmer as well. Some features are unique to a particular type of control system (mill, lathe, wire, etc.), while others are optional and may not be available on all controls.

Typical features of various CNC systems include:

ON / OFF switch: Power switch for the main power and the control unit.
Cycle start: Starts program execution or an MDI command.
Emergency stop: Stops all machine activity and turns off power to the control unit.
Feedhold: Temporarily stops motion of all axes.
Single block: Allows program to run one block at a time.
Optional stop: Temporarily stops the program execution (requires M01).
Block skip: Ignores blocks preceded with a forward slash (/) in the program.
Dry run: Enables program testing at fast feed rates (without a mounted part).
Spindle override: Overrides programmed spindle speed within 50–120% range.
Feed rate override: Overrides the programmed feed rate, within 0–200% range.
Chuck clamp: Displays current status of chuck clamping (Outside / Inside).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table clamp: Shows current status of table clamping.
Coolant switch: Coolant control ON / OFF / AUTO.
Gear selection: Shows current status of working gear range selection.
Spindle rotation: Spindle rotation direction indicator (CW or CCW).
Spindle orientation: Manual spindle orientation.
Tool change: Switch allowing a manual tool change.
Reference position: Switches and lights relating to machine zero position (HOME).
Tailstock switch: Tailstock and/or quill switch to manually position tailstock.
Index table switch: Manually indexes machine table during setup.
M-S-T lock: Disables machine, spindle, and tool functions in the program.
Machine lock: Disables all machine motions.
Manual absolute: Coordinate system update on/off.
Z-axis neglect: Milling Z-axis can be turned off during program verification.
MDI mode: Manual Data Input mode.
AUTO mode: Allows automatic operations.
MEMORY mode: Allows program execution from memory of the CNC unit.
DNC mode: Allows program execution from an external device.
EDIT mode: Allows changes to programs stored in the CNC memory.
MANUAL mode: Allows manual operations during setup.
HOME mode: Allows manual return to machine zero.
HANDLE mode: Manual Pulse Generator (MPG) for manual axis movement.
JOG mode: Selects the jog mode for setup (manual feed rate motion).
RAPID mode: Selects the rapid mode for setup.
Memory access: Key (switch) to allow program editing.
Lube light: Indicates low level of slide lubrication.
Error lights: Red light indicating an error.
Optional stop and block skip: Switches function only if the part program supports their use. For optional stop, part program must contain M01 function, and for block skip, the slash (/) symbol.

Manual Data Input (MDI): This is a feature of the control panel that allows quick entry of program data. An operating mode can be selected as MDI, which allows program data to be entered by the machine operator. MDI is not intended to enter complete machining programs, but allows the operator a great deal of flexibility during setup. Typical applications include position data for setup, tool motion to a given location, machine functions control, even some special settings of machine parameters. Knowledge of basic programming principles in necessary, as MDI requires the use of normal programming methods.

CNC Program Data

The program data is a collection of all the program entries that will be accepted by the CNC system. Although the basic program principles are the same, the actual methods of inputting will always vary to a certain extent with different control models.

Program Structure.—A CNC program structure is a method of developing a part program that is well designed and written. This means that the program should be easy to read on paper or computer screen and written in a consistent manner. Program initialization should be logical; repetition of any tool should be made easy (without manual interaction); it should include important comments; and be as short as possible. A part program should always be designed with the machine operator in mind.

Comments and Messages: Various comments and other messages can be included in the program, provided they are enclosed with a single set of matching parentheses. An abundance of comments may strain the CNC memory, but when used in moderation,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

comments are an excellent way to inform the machine operator about key issues relating to the job at hand.

Typical comments should be in capital letters (for best compatibility between programs) and contain a short message, description, or caution. Comments may be used as separate blocks or at the end of a block—for example, both the following comments are valid:

Comment as a whole block: (CHECK HOLE DEPTH)
Comment as part of a block: N55 M00 (CHECK HOLE DEPTH)

Program Number (O-address): In most cases, a program number can be assigned at the machine, by the CNC operator. Only special program numbers can be selected by the programmer, typically, for subprograms. Program number requires the letter "O" to be followed by four or five numeric digits (O1 to O9999 or O99999), depending on the control.

Block Number (N-address): One or more instructions can be programmed in a single program sequence (block). A typical program may only require a very small number of blocks for a simple machining job, but—literally—hundreds or thousands of blocks for complex work. To distinguish one instruction (one block) from another, a simple numbering system can be used for each block sequence. Depending on the control system, the block numbers can be ascending, descending, or even mixed. Most control systems offer all these options, and it is up to the programmer to choose the most advantageous ones.

The address "N" is used for block numbering. The smallest block number is N1 (N0 is usually not allowed), the largest is either N9999 or N99999, depending on the control system. Block numbers can be used for each program sequence, or they can be used selectively, to enable more efficient search.

A forward slash symbol "/" placed in front of the N-address identifies a block that can be selectively skipped during processing. This block skip function is activated or deactivated from the operation panel of the CNC machine.

Preparatory Commands (G-address, G-codes): Preparatory commands are commonly known as G-codes. The address "G" identifies a preparatory command, which has one and only objective—to preset or to prepare the control system for a certain desired condition, or to a certain mode or a state of operation. For example, the address G00 presets (prepares or selects) a rapid motion mode, G01 selects a linear motion, G81 selects the drilling cycle, etc. The term *preparatory command* indicates its meaning—a G-code will prepare the control to correctly interpret the programming instructions following the G-code in a specific way.

Standard G-codes are programmed in the range of G00 to G99, although not all numbers are available. G-codes with three digits usually apply to special machine functions provided by the control manufacturers. Most—but not all—of G-codes are standard for various controls, and most—but not all—are *modal*. A modal G-code in one that is programmed only once and remains in effect until changed or canceled. Non-modal G-codes have to be repeated anytime they are used. On the majority of controls, one or more G-codes can be programmed in a single block, providing there is no conflict between them. It is customary to program a G-code or G-codes at the beginning of the block, after the sequence number.

Table 1. Typical Turning G-Codes

G-Code	Description	G -Code	Description
G00	Rapid positioning	G57	Work coordinate offset 4
G01	Linear interpolation	G58	Work coordinate offset 5
G02	Circular interpolation clockwise	G59	Work coordinate offset 6
G03	Circular interpolation counterclockwise	G61	Exact stop mode
G04	Dwell (as a separate block)	G62	Automatic corner override mode
G09	Exact stop check—one block only	G64	Cutting mode
G10	Programmable data input (Data setting)	G65	Custom macro call
G11	Data setting mode—cancel	G66	Custom macro modal call

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Typical Turning G-Codes**

G-Code	Description	G -Code	Description
G20	US customary units of input	G67	Custom macro modal call—cancel
G21	Metric units of input	G68	Mirror image for double turrets
G22	Stored stroke check ON	G69	Mirror image for double turrets—cancel
G23	Stored stroke check OFF	G70	Profile finishing cycle
G25	Spindle speed fluctuation detection ON	G71	Profile roughing cycle—Z axis direction
G26	Spindle speed fluctuation detection OFF	G72	Profile roughing cycle—X axis direction
G27	Machine zero position check	G73	Pattern repetition cycle
G28	Machine zero return (reference point 1)	G74	Drilling cycle
G29	Return from machine zero	G75	Grooving cycle
G30	Machine zero return (reference point 2)	G76	Threading cycle
G31	Skip function	G90	Cutting cycle A (Group type A)
G32	Threading—constant lead	G90	Absolute command (Group type B)
G35	Circular threading CW	G91	Incremental command (Group type B)
G36	Circular threading CCW	G92	Thread cutting cycle (Group type A)
G40	Cutter radius—cancel (Tool nose radius offset cancel)	G92	Tool position register (Group type B)
G41	Cutter radius—left (Tool nose radius offset left)	G94	Cutting cycle B (Group type A)
G42	Cutter radius—right (Tool nose radius compensation right)	G94	Feed rate per minute (Group type B)
G50	Tool position register (obsolete) / Maximum r/min preset	G95	Feed rate per revolution (Group type B)
G52	Local coordinate system setting	G96	Constant surface speed
G53	Machine coordinate system setting	G97	Constant spindle speed (r/min)
G54	Work coordinate offset 1	G98	Feed rate per minute (Group type A)
G55	Work coordinate offset 2	G99	Feed rate per revolution (Group type A)
G56	Work coordinate offset 3		

Note that some G-codes are optional and some will vary from one control system to another.

Typical list includes Group type A and Group type B—where some G-codes are different. For example, Group A uses addresses U and W to identify incremental motion, while Group B uses G91 and G92. There are other differences as well. Group A is the most common.

Table 2. Typical Milling G-Codes

G-Code	Description	G-Code	Description
G00	Rapid positioning	G52	Local coordinate system setting
G01	Linear interpolation	G53	Machine coordinate system
G02	Circular interpolation clockwise	G54	Work coordinate offset 1
G03	Circular interpolation counterclockwise	G55	Work coordinate offset 2
G04	Dwell (as a separate block)	G56	Work coordinate offset 3
G09	Exact stop check—one block only	G57	Work coordinate offset 4
G10	Programmable data input (Data setting)	G58	Work coordinate offset 5
G11	Data setting mode—cancel	G59	Work coordinate offset 6
G15	Polar coordinate command—cancel	G60	Single direction positioning
G16	Polar coordinate command	G61	Exact stop mode
G17	XY plane designation	G62	Automatic corner override mode
G18	ZX plane designation	G63	Tapping mode
G19	YZ plane designation	G64	Cutting mode

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Typical Milling G-Codes**

G-Code	Description	G-Code	Description
G20	US customary units of input (G70 on some controls)	G65	Custom macro call
G21	Metric units of input (G71 on some controls)	G66	Custom macro modal call
G22	Stored stroke check ON	G67	Custom macro modal call—cancel
G23	Stored stroke check OFF	G68	Coordinate system rotation
G25	Spindle speed fluctuation detection ON	G69	Coordinate system rotation—cancel
G26	Spindle speed fluctuation detection OFF	G73	High speed peck drilling cycle (deep hole)
G27	Machine zero position check	G74	Left hand threading cycle
G28	Machine zero return (reference point 1)	G76	Fine boring cycle
G29	Return from machine zero	G80	Fixed cycle—cancel
G30	Machine zero return (reference point 2)	G81	Drilling cycle
G31	Skip function	G82	Spot-drilling cycle
G40	Cutter radius offset—cancel	G83	Peck-drilling cycle (deep hole drilling cycle)
G41	Cutter radius offset—left	G84	Right hand threading cycle
G42	Cutter radius offset—right	G85	Boring cycle
G43	Tool length offset—positive	G86	Boring cycle
G44	Tool length offset—negative	G87	Back boring cycle
G45	Position compensation—single increase (obsolete)	G88	Boring cycle
G46	Position compensation—single decrease (obsolete)	G89	Boring cycle
G47	Position compensation—double increase (obsolete)	G90	Absolute dimensioning mode
G48	Position compensation—double decrease (obsolete)	G91	Incremental dimensioning mode
G49	Tool length offset cancel	G92	Tool position register
G50	Scaling function cancel	G98	Return to initial level in a fixed cycle
G51	Scaling function	G99	Return to R level in a fixed cycle

Note that some G-codes are optional and some will vary from one control system to another.

A typical example of using G-codes is a simple program entry, such as X18.0. X-address is mainly used as a dimension, but not exclusively. The amount of 18.0 could be in millimeters or inches, it can be an absolute location from part zero or an incremental distance and direction from current point. In addition, the same address can be a dwell time in seconds (a pause). Using one or more G-codes will narrow down the options to only those required by the program. Here are some examples:

G21 G90 G00 X18.0 … rapid to absolute location of 18 mm

G20 G91 G01 X18.0 F10.0 … feed by the distance of 18 inches in positive direction

G04 X18.0 … dwell for 18 seconds

Miscellaneous Function (M-Codes).—Along with G-codes (preparatory commands), a CNC program requires a number of miscellaneous functions, called M-codes or M-functions. These auxiliary functions fall into two groups—those that control various machine functions and those that control program flow. Miscellaneous functions are the least standard words in CNC applications and vary greatly between control systems. Those that are typical to most controls are:

Three-digit M-codes are normally specific to a particular machine and various functions associated with it.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. M-codes

M-Code	Description	M-Code	Description
M00	Program stop	M09	Coolant OFF
M01	Optional program stop	M19	Spindle orientation
M03	Spindle rotation normal (clockwise)	M30	Program end
M04	Spindle rotation reverse (counterclockwise)	M60	Automatic Pallet Change (APC)
M05	Spindle stop	M98	Subprogram call
M06	Automatic Tool Change (ATC)	M99	Subprogram end
M08	Coolant ON		

Units of Measurement (G20, G21).—Dimension words in CNC programming are data that contain a location, distance, radius or feed rate. In all cases, such data is dependent on the active units of measurement. For CNC work, either metric or US customary units can be selected by the program or by manual setting. US customary units can be set by G20 (G70 for older controls) command, metric units by G21 (G71 for older controls) command, and each command cancels the other. US customary mode is specified in inches, metric mode in millimeters. In some cases, feet/min or m/min are also used.

Dimensions measured along an axis can be programmed up to four decimal places in inches, and three decimal places in millimeters. Minimum increment (i.e., amount of motion) possible is 0.0001 inch or 0.001 mm. Maximum programmable motion amount is typically 9999.9999 inches or 99999.999 mm. Note that there is no actual unit conversion involved, just a shift in decimal point position.

Absolute and Incremental Programming (G90, G91).—A motion dimension along X, Y, Z axes (as well as any parallel or rotary axis) can be programmed in two ways—as an absolute location measured from part zero (origin) or as an incremental distance and direction measured from the current tool position.

The *absolute* method of programming is selected by the G90 command, the *incremental* method by the G91 command. One command cancels the other. The benefit of the absolute programming method is that one change of a point location requires only one change in the program. The same change in incremental program will require two changes. The main benefit of incremental programming method is that it can be used for a toolpath repetition, typically in the form of subprograms or macros.

Spindle Function (S-Address).—The *spindle* function programmed with the S-address causes the machine spindle to rotate at a defined rate in revolutions per minute (r/min). Its programmable range is set by the machine manufacturer in increments of one revolution. The major difference between machining centers and some lathe operations defines the meaning of the S-address used in the program:

1) Milling—direct spindle speed in r/min (all operations)
2) Turning, Boring, Facing, and Grooving—cutting speed in ft/min or m/min
3) Threading and Centerline Operations—direct spindle speed in r/min

In all three application groups, spindle rotation direction must also be specified, using M03 or M04 miscellaneous functions.

Example: For milling, the programming is straightforward:
S800 M03—normal spindle rotation (CW) at 800 revolutions per minute
S750 M04—reverse spindle rotation (CCW) at 750 revolutions per minute

CNC Lathes: For CNC lathes, the situation is somewhat different, because the part itself is rotating and cutting diameters change constantly, particularly during turning and boring operations. To select the required spindle speed mode, two G-codes are available:
G96—constant cutting speed—programmed in ft/min or m/min
G97—constant spindle speed—programmed in r/min

Example: G96 S300 M03 is 300 ft /min in G20 mode, or 300 m/min in G21 mode.
G97 S1200 M03 is 1200 r/min, regardless of the measuring units selected.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cutting Speed: The purpose of cutting speed, (*CS*), also known as peripheral speed or surface speed, is to increase or decrease the spindle speed with each change in cutting diameter. The speed will be slowed down for increasing diameters, and speeded up for decreasing diameters. These changes are automatically adjusted by the control system in very fine increments.

In order to limit the spindle speed from increasing to potentially dangerous levels at very small diameters, the programmer can limit the maximum spindle speed by using the G50 command.

Example: G50 S2500 limit r/min to 2500 in cutting speed mode

Example: (G96) G96 S300 M03 cutting speed of 300 ft/min or 300 m/min.

G50 is only applicable in G96 mode and has no effect in G97 mode. Its setting should always be less than the maximum spindle speed of the machine.

Cutting speed, "CS", can be converted to spindle speed using the following formulas:

US customary units: $r/min = (ft/min \times 12) / (3.14 \times \text{diameter in inches})$

Metric units: r/min = (m/min × 1000) / (3.14 × diameter in mm)

The mathematical constant of 3.14 represents mathematical function *pi* (π), rounded to two decimal places, is more than suitable for such calculations. An even shorter formula can be used for US customary units, also suitable for most applications, particularly without a calculator:

$$r/min = (ft/min \times 4) / \text{Diameter in inches}$$

Spindle Override: Spindle override is a feature of CNC machines that allows temporary adjustments to the programmed spindle speed during program execution, without changing the program itself. For this purpose, a spindle override switch is provided at the operation panel. Usually a rotary switch, it is graduated in 10 percent increments, typically between 50 and 120 percent. Permanent changes to the speed must be made in the program itself.

Feed Rate Function (F-Address).—Cutting motions are defined as motions of a cutter that is in contact with the material, including clearances. Non-cutting motions are typically rapid motions without a physical contact with the material. Programming the feed rate address depends on the type of machine and the units of measurement. Milling machines and machining centers generally use feed rate per minute (inch/min or mm/min), while lathes and turning centers use feed rate per revolution (inch/rev or mm/rev). For lathes, preparatory commands G94 and G95 determine whether feed rate per minute is selected (G94) or feed rate per revolution is selected (G95). G94 mode—feed rate per revolution—is the default for lathe work. Feed rate specification is always modal, and remains in effect until a different feed rate is selected.

Feed rate per revolution (feed/rev) can be converted to feed rate per minute (feed/min) by multiplying spindle speed in revolutions per minute (r/min) by the feed rate per revolution:

$$Feed/min = r/min \times feed/rev$$

For multi-edge cutters, feed rate is also given as "per tooth" or "per flute." This feed rate per edge is also generally called "chipload," specified in inches or millimeters. Feed per tooth (fpt) can be converted to cutting feed rate:

$$Feed/rev = \text{feed per tooth} \times \text{number of teeth}$$

Once the feed/rev is known, feed rate per minute can be calculated, if desired.

Inverse Time Feed Rate.—One type of feed rate that may be required in some special applications is the *inverse time* feed rate. This feed rate represents the reciprocal of the time in minutes required to complete a programmed motion. The feed command is indicated by a G93 command followed by an F-address value found by dividing the feed rate, in inches (millimeters) or degrees per minute, by the distance moved in the block:

$$\text{Inverse time feed command} = \text{feed rate} / \text{distance} = (\text{distance} / \text{time}) / \text{distance} = 1 / \text{time}$$

The inverse time feed rate has been used in some rotary and multi-axis applications.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Feed Rate Override.—The *feed rate override* is a feature of CNC machines that allows temporary adjustments to the programmed cutting feed rate during program execution, without changing the program itself. For this purpose, a feed rate override switch is provided at the operation panel. Usually a rotary switch, it is graduated in 10 percent increments, typically with a range of 0 to 150 or 200 percent. Permanent changes to the feed rate must be made in the program itself.

Tool Function (T-Address).—Both CNC milling and turning machine groups use automatic tool change (ATC). In the program, each tool has to be numbered using the T-address. On machining centers, tools are stored in a special tool magazine, located on a side of the machine. On lathes, tools are stored in an indexing turret, located within the machining area. There is a difference in programming each group. In both groups, the T-address indicates the tool number of the next tool. For example, on a machining center, T06 is tool number six. Tools can be stored in any magazine position, but must be registered in the control system prior to use. On lathes, the four-digit tool number is determined by the turret station number, followed by a wear offset number. The turret station number is also equivalent to the geometry offset for the stored tool. Wear offset is used for fine-tuning. For example T0313 calls a tool located in turret station three, activates geometry offset three as well as work offset thirteen.

Tool offset screens (geometry and wear) are special tables visible on the control display panel that show the setting information about each tool. Such information includes the XZ setting, tool nose radius (R), and the tool tip number (T) which should not to be confused with tool number.

Tool Nose Radius Compensation.—A typical manually generated program uses both coordinate points read directly from drawings and calculated on the basis of drawing dimensions. In both cases, these calculated coordinate points represent a toolpath along the part edge suitable only for a cutter that has a radius of zero. Since a zero tool radius is not practical, the tool's actual radius has to be considered. This is achieved by using a powerful control feature called cutter radius offset (compensation) or—for lathe terms—tool nose radius compensation.

During program development, the programmer ignores the cutter radius, and uses drawing based dimensions. In order to allow for radius compensation at the machine, two preparatory commands are used—G41 for the compensation to left, and G42 for the compensation to the right. In both cases, the direction is determined by viewing along the cutter path direction.

At the control, the operator sets not only the XZ geometry and wear offsets, but also enters the tool nose radius (R-column) and the tool tip number (T-column). The purpose of the tool tip number is to establish the location of the tool nose radius center point.

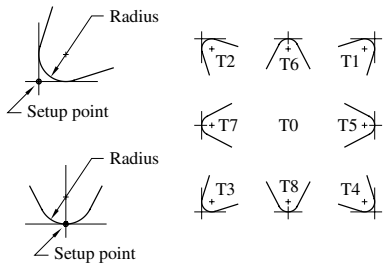


Fig. 4. Tool Tip Numbers—Rear Lathe.

Rapid Motion (G00).—In basic terms, machine motions are divided into two groups, noncutting motions (unproductive) and cutting motions (productive). Rapid motion is the only

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

non-cutting and non-productive motion available to the CNC programmer. Its single purpose is to move the cutter from one location to another at the highest speed possible, typically between actual cuts. CNC manufacturers determine the maximum rapid motion rate.

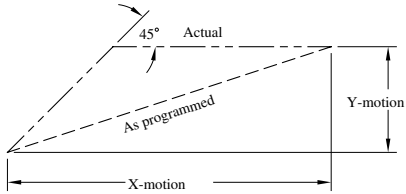


Fig. 5. Rapid Motion G00.

Fig. 5 shows the effect of programmed and actual rapid motion applied on a machining center. As both X and Y axes have the same rapid rate—and the actual toolpath is not important—the resulting motion starts at 45 degrees. When one axis reaches its destination, the other axis continues as a single axis motion. Some machines can produce rapid motion as programmed.

Linear Interpolation (G01).—In *linear interpolation mode* (programmed in G01 mode with a cutting feed rate in effect), the tool moves along a linear path, directly from one point to the next (traversing the shortest distance). This is a major departure from the rapid motion mode (programmed in G00 mode), where the shortest distance is disregarded and the result is the fastest motion available. The word *interpolation* defines a mathematical process that translates into synchronized feed rate for all programmed axes. This is done by the control system automatically.

The programming command for linear interpolation is G01 (modal), which cancels any other active motion command. Feed Rate is required with G01 and its selection is based on cutting conditions.

Circular Interpolation (G02, G03).—*Circular interpolation* applies to a cutting toolpath moving along an arc or a circle. An arc (circle) can be programmed directly, without linear approximation. The cutting motion along an arc is two-dimensional and always takes place in a single plane. No arc or circle exists as a three-dimensional entity (it becomes a helix). Depending on the required outcome, the desired plane can be defined using one of three specific G-codes (Fig. 6- Fig. 8):

G17 = XY plane—arc/circle uses XY coordinates at a given Z-depth

G18 = ZX plane—arc/circle uses ZX coordinates at a given Y-depth

G19 = YZ plane—arc/circle uses YZ coordinates at a given X-depth

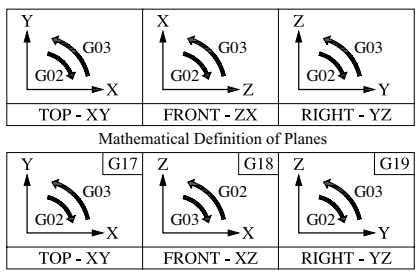


Fig. 6. Planes on a CNC Vertical Machining Center.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

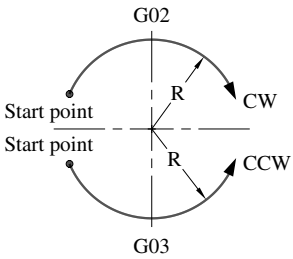


Fig. 7. Circular Interpolation.

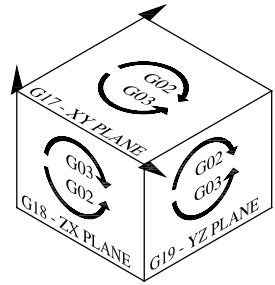


Fig. 8. Circular Interpolation in Planes.

It is very important to understand that the G18 mathematical plane does not correspond to the machine axes orientation and that the arc direction appears to be incorrect. Programming an arc requires a direction of motion in the plane (G02 = CW, G03 = CCW), a start point (typically the current block), an end point (typically the target point, the end of motion), as well as the arc radius. The arc radius can be specified directly (for example R1.5), or it can be defined by special vectors, using IJK addresses.

When using direct radius R, there are some limitations. Radius R (positive) can only be programmed for arcs up to and including 180 degree arc sweep angle. If the sweep angle exceeds 180 degrees but is less than 360 degrees, R- (negative) must be used. For a full circle (360 degrees arc sweep angle), the address R cannot be used at all and a two-vector combination must be used. There is no need to break arc motion at the quadrants.

The definition of IJK vectors is the same for all three axes, where X and I, Y and J, Z and K are related (paired): The I-J-K vector is the distance and direction from the start point of the arc to the arc center, measured along X-Y-Z axis respectively.

A typical milling application in the XY plane is shown in Fig. 9. Current plane selection determines the arc vectors. Some controls use I-J-K as an absolute location. The start point of the arc is defined as the endpoint of the previous motion.

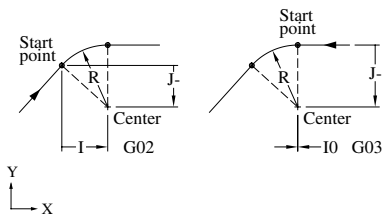


Fig. 9. Arc Vectors.

Helical and Other Interpolation Methods.—Most milling controls offer another motion—helical interpolation (either as a standard feature or as an option), but only very few specialized controls offer parabolic or hyperbolic interpolation. Helical interpolation produces a helix. Two axes (typically XY) form the circle while the third axis (typically Z-axis) provides synchronized linear motion. The selected plane (G17, G18, or G19) determines the circular axes, while the remaining axis is linear motion. Helical interpolation is most commonly used for thread milling—a method of thread development that offers many advantages over tapping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Offsets for Milling

In CNC terms, the word *offset* means an adjustment. The primary purpose of offsets is to provide a link between the known information at the time of programming and the unknown situation at the time of setup and machining. The single most important purpose of offsets is to provide adjustments necessary to keep precise part dimensions. Such adjustments allow corrections for tool wear, cutter length, or radius at the machine. Offsets can also be used for machining applications, for example, to use the same program for a roughing contour and a finishing contour, or to use a tool with a different diameter or length. Offsets allow the programmer to virtually ignore tool dimensions.There are three groups of offsets for milling applications:

Work Offset = Offset to link machine zero and part zero.

Tool Length Offset = Offset to link tool tip and part zero.

Cutter Radius Offset = Offset to link tool radius and drawing dimensions.

Work Offset (G54 through G59).—Every CNC machine has a built-in location called the machine reference point (also known as machine zero or home position). By default, this location has coordinates of X0Y0Z0. The purpose of *work offset* is to establish the difference between machine zero and part zero. All machine axes can be set, although only X and Y axes are normally used.

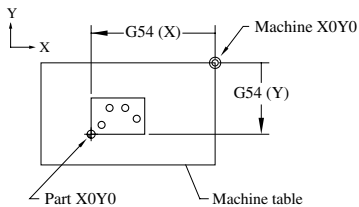


Fig. 10. Work Offset Using G54.

Work offset allows the programmer to use the dimensions from the drawing without considering the actual position of the part on the machine table. There are six standard work offsets defined by G54 through G59 commands, with additional sets available optionally. Fig. 10 shows the most commonly used work offset, G54. Note the direction is from machine zero to part zero, along an axis. A typical program entry combines the work offset with other data, for example:

N3 G90 G54 G00 X__ Y__ S__ M03 T__

Tool Length Offset (G43, G44).—The *tool length offset* is a setting that specifies the distance between the tool reference point and part zero, along the Z-axis. Two methods are available—the *preset method* and the *touch-off method*. The preset method requires additional equipment and is used off-machine. The touch-off method is much simpler, and is done at the CNC machine. Each tool used in the program normally requires one tool length offset. A specific offset number is necessary to include with the G43 command. For example,

N5 G43 Z0.1 H01 M08

G44 is used by only a very few programmers, for specific applications only. Fig. 11 shows typical tool length offset measurement using the touch-off method with G43 command.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

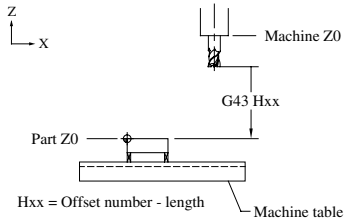


Fig. 11. Tool Length of Offset.

Cutter Radius Offset (G41, G42).—The *cutter radius offset* is an adjustment of the contour toolpath from the part edge to the cutter center. It is also known as *cutter radius compensation* or *tool nose radius compensation for lathes* (see page 1361).

Point calculations based on the drawing dimensions are far more convenient and practical than programming coordinates to the center of a cutter. Fig. 12 illustrates a toolpath offset by the cutter radius. The toolpath generated on the basis of drawing dimensions may only be suitable for holes where the spindle centerline and hole centerline match. Such a toolpath cannot be used on a contour because the cutter centerline must be shifted—offset—away from the contour by the cutter radius. The purpose of the cutter radius offset is to provide automatic adjustment for the toolpath. This toolpath shifts the cutter center in such a way that the cutter edge is in constant contact with the programmed contour. This control generated toolpath is called an *equidistant toolpath*.

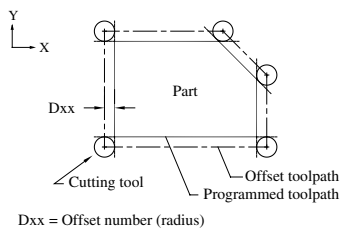


Fig. 12. Cutter Radius Offset.

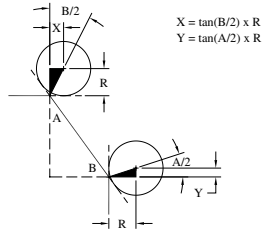


Fig. 13. Manually Calculated Radius Offset.

Programming to the center of the cutter requires tedious calculations for every point on the contour. Fig. 13 shows such a typical calculation. In addition, manually calculated center toolpaths cannot be adjusted at the machine.

To activate a cutter radius offset, two preparatory commands are available—G41 (offset to the left) and G42 (offset to the right)—both left and right offsets are determined by the cutting direction. As more than one tool can use cutter radius offset, G41 or G42 has to be programmed together with corresponding offset number, using the D-address. Many control systems use only a single offset registry for both tool length offset and cutter radius offset. In such cases, the D-address must have a distinct number from the tool length offset, even if the addresses are different.

Example: Tool 1 will be programmed as T01, using G43 H01 as the tool length offset, and G41 D51 as the cutter radius offset. G40 command cancels the cutter radius offset.

Programming the cutter radius offset is relatively simple, but several rules have to be observed. The most important rule requires the G41/G42 command to be applied after completing the Z-depth motion and in G00 or G01 mode only (not on an arc).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: N44 G01 Z-0.5 F15.0; N45 G41 X0.25 D51 F20.0; N46 Y__

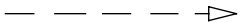
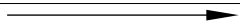
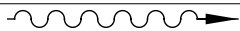
Cutter radius offset uses a so called look-ahead type of radius compensation. During program execution, the control stores the next motion block in the buffer—it "looks ahead" in the program in order to compensate correctly and consistently.

Machining Holes

Virtually all applications of CNC machining include machining holes. Regardless of what type of machining takes place at a single hole location, there are similarities important to CNC programming, particularly for CNC milling machines and machining centers. In the majority of applications, machining holes is not a complicated procedure. The only cutting tool motion that takes place is along the Z axis, after a required XY location has been applied. This type of machining is commonly known as point-to-point machining and is applied to operations such as drilling, spot drilling, spot facing, counter-boring, counter-sinking, tapping, boring, and reaming.

Each toolpath step relating to a particular machining operation on a hole is always consistent and can be preset within the control system software (built-in software routine). This is the basis for shortening programming holes by using fixed cycles. As the name suggests, these cycles contain an internal set order of tool motions and cannot be changed. Table 4 shows symbols and abbreviations used in the following cycle descriptions.

Table 4. Fixed Cycle Descriptions

Symbol	Description
	Rapid Motion and Direction
	Cutting Motion and Direction
	Manual Motion and Direction
	Boring Bar Shift and Direction
	Programmed Coordinate (XY)
Q	Depth of Peck / Shift Amount
d	Clearance Value (built in)
CW / CCW	Spindle Rotation Direction
OSS	Oriented Spindle Stop
DWELL	Dwell Function Executed

Fixed Cycles.—"Fixed cycles" sometimes called canned cycles, are series of preset sequences of toolpath motions, allowing consecutive motions to be performed with a single block of program. Typical fixed cycles are:

Table 5. Fixed Cycle Codes

G-Code	Description	G-Code	Description
G81	Drilling cycle	G86	Boring cycle
G82	Drilling cycle with dwell (spot drilling cycle)	G76	Fine boring cycle
G83	Deep hole drilling cycle (peck drilling cycle)	G87	Back boring cycle
G73	Chip-breaking cycle	G88	Boring cycle (with manual action)
G84	Right hand tapping cycle	G89	Boring cycle
G74	Left hand tapping cycle	G80	Fixed cycle cancel
G85	Boring cycle		
In addition, two preparatory commands are also used with fixed cycles see Fig. 14:			
G98	Retract to initial level	G99	Retract to R-level

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

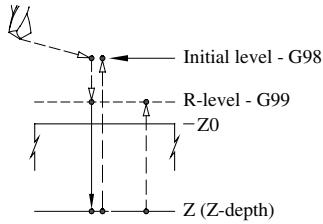


Fig. 14. Initial Level and R-level.

All cycles are modal and are typically canceled by G80. Between the cycle call and the cycle cancel block, only the data that changed is programmed, usually the XY position, occasionally the R-level, or the Z-depth. The general and most commonly used format for all fixed cycles is:

N__ G98 (G99) G__ X__ Y__ R__ Z__ P__ Q__ F__

where:

N__ = block number,
G__ = cycle number,
X__ Y__ = hole location,
R__ = start position from where feed rate mode starts,
Z__ = final depth,
P__ = amount time delay (dwell) for G82 and G89,
Q__ = either the depth of each peck for G83 and G73, or the shift amount for G76 and G87,
F__ = cutting feed rate in feed per minute mode.

Fixed Cycle (G81): The G81 code is used mainly for drilling, and has the following format see Fig. 15:

N__ G99 (G98) G81 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ F__

In the G81 cycle, the tool rapids to XY location first, than to the R-level (feed plane). From that position it feeds to the depth, followed by a rapid retract to the R-level in G99 mode or the initial level, in G98 mode.

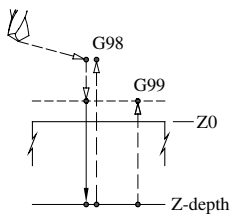


Fig. 15. G81 Fixed Cycle.

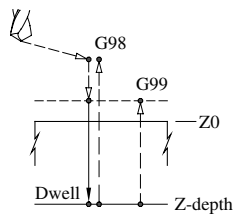


Fig. 16. G82 Fixed Cycle.

Spot Drilling, Facing, Counterboring-sinking (G82): The G82 fixed cycle is used for spot drilling, spot facing, counter boring, countersinking, and any other operation where a dwell at the bottom of the hole is required. It has the following format Fig. 16:

N__ G99 (G98) G82 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ P__ F__

All tool motions are identical to G81 cycle, with the added pause P__ (dwell). Pause is programmed in milliseconds (ms), without decimal a point. Its purpose is to smooth out

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the bottom of the hole. The dwell period should be a minimum of two spindle revolutions to allow for a full clean-up in case 50 percent spindle speed override is in effect. To calculate minimum dwell, divide 60 by the spindle revolutions (r/min):

$$\text{Minimum Dwell (seconds)} = \frac{60}{r/min}$$

To convert to milliseconds, multiply the result by 1000.

Example: For 750 r/min, the minimum dwell will be 60 / 750 × 1000 = 80 ms.

Deep Hole Drilling (G83): The G83 fixed cycle is used mainly for deep hole drilling using the following format:

N__ G99 (G98) G83 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ Q__ F__

From the R-level, the drill will cut by the amount of Q__, which specifies the depth of each peck. When the peck depth Q__ is completed, the drill retract to R-level, than rapids back to cut another depth—there is small non-programmable clearance between the cuts, that is part of the cycle (See Fig. 17).

A general rule of peck drilling is that the greater the Q__ amount is, the fewer pecks will be generated and vice versa. Some controls allow programming of the actual number of pecks required. No peck motion will ever exceed the final Z__ depth.

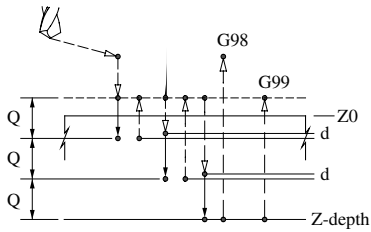


Fig. 17. G83 Fixed Cycle.

Chip Breaking (G73): The G73 fixed cycle is used mainly for chip breaking and has the following format

N__ G99 (G98) G73 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ Q__ F__

Its basic function is the same as for G83, but the drill does not retract after each peck, only after the last peck. In both cases, the G98 or G99 retract method will be applied for the last peck only (see Fig. 18).

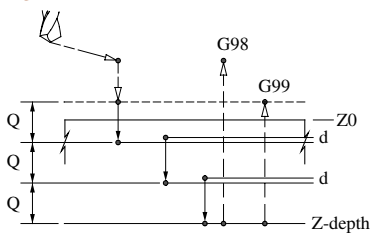


Fig. 18. G73 Fixed Cycle.

Right Hand Thread (G84): The G84 fixed cycle is used for cutting a right hand thread and has the following format

N__ G99 (G98) G84 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ F__

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The cycle will start feeding from the R-level to the Z-depth, where the tap stops, reverses its rotation and feeds back to the R-level, where it stops again and resumes normal spindle rotation (see Fig. 19).

G84 cycle must be programmed with spindle rotation CW (normal), typical in M03 mode.

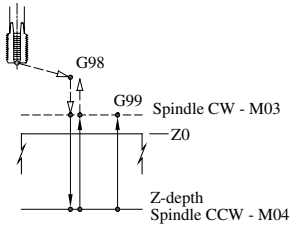


Fig. 19. G84 Fixed Cycle.

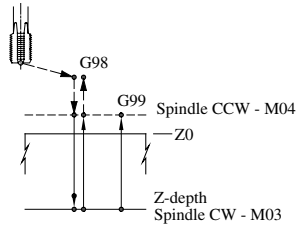


Fig. 20. G74 Fixed Cycle.

Left Hand Thread (G74): The G74 fixed cycle is used for cutting a left hand thread and has the following format

N__ G99 (G98) G74 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ F__

G74 cycle must be programmed with spindle rotation CCW (reverse), typical in M04 mode. In all other respects, G74 is identical to G84 (see Fig. 20).

Boring Cycle (G85): The G85 fixed cycle is used for boring and has the following format

N__ G99 (G98) G85 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ F__

From the R-level, the boring bar will feed to the Z-depth, than feeds back to R-level, both at the programmed feed rate F__. A similar cycle G89 has a dwell at the bottom of the hole. Either one of these cycles is commonly used for reaming (see Fig. 21).

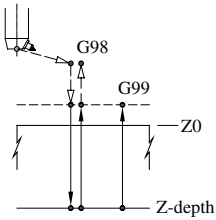


Fig. 21. G85 Fixed Cycle.

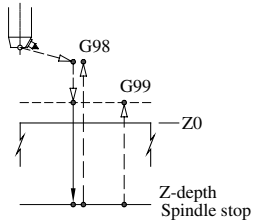


Fig. 22. G86 Fixed Cycle.

Boring Cycle (G86): The G86 fixed cycle is used for boring and has the following format:

N__ G99 (G98) G86 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ F__

In G86 mode, the boring bar will feed from the R-level to the Z-depth, where the spindle stops rotating and the tool is retracted at a rapid rate. Note that a straight line (tool mark) will be generated on the bored hole (see Fig. 22).

Boring Cycle (G76): The G76 fixed cycle is used for fine boring and has the following format:

N__ G99 (G98) G76 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ Q__ F__

This cycle is called a "*fine*" boring cycle, because it does not leave any tool marks on the bored hole. The Q__ in the block is the amount of shift away from the hole centerline that

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

takes place before tool retraction. Typically, the amount of Q__ is very small, usually in the range of 0.005-0.010 inches or 0.125-0.250 mm.

In this internally complex cycle, the tool starts at the R-level and feeds to the Z-depth. When the depth is reached, the spindle stops and orients (so called OSS—oriented spindle stop). When oriented, the tool moves away by the Q__ amount, then retracts to the R-level. Once outside of the hole, it moves back by the Q__ amount and the spindle resumes normal rotation (see Fig. 23).

When setting a boring bar used with G76 at the machine, the operator has to align the cutting tip in such a way that it is aimed in the opposite direction of the shift motion. This is done in oriented spindle mode, using the M19 command in MDI.

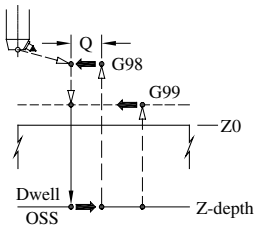


Fig. 23. G76 Fixed Cycle.

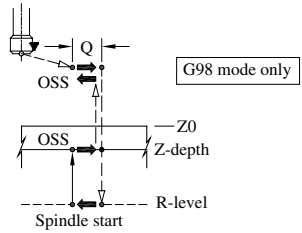


Fig. 24. G87 Fixed Cycle.

Back Boring (G87): The G87 fixed cycle is used for *back boring* and has the following format:

N__ G98 G87 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ Q__ F__

As the name suggests, this cycle is used to bore upwards, starting at the bottom of an existing hole. The R-level is below the part, and only G98 retract method can be used with this cycle. The Q__ amount is also the amount of shift away from the centerline.

When the tool reaches X__ Y__ hole location at the initial level, the spindle stops, tool orients and shifts away from hole centerline by the amount of Q__. Then, it rapids to the R-level, shifts back, and feeds to the Z-depth. When the depth is reached, the tool stops again, orients, and shifts by the Q__ amount. The following retract will be to the initial level, where the tool shifts back, and the spindle resumes normal rotation (see Fig. 24).

This cycle can only be used if the boring bar can move clearly through the existing hole. The shift amount Q__ must be greater that one half of the difference between the back bore diameter and the existing hole diameter. Note that G99 retract mode cannot be used.

Manual Boring (G88): The G88 fixed cycle is used for boring with manual intervention and has the following format:

N__ G99 (G98) G88 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ P__ F__

The G88 fixed cycle is rather rare. Its use is limited to boring operations with special tools that require manual interference at the bottom of a hole. When such a operation is completed, the tool is moved out of the hole for safety reasons. This cycle may be used by some tool manufactures for certain special operations (see Fig. 25).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

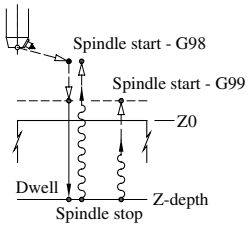


Fig. 25. G88 Fixed Cycle.

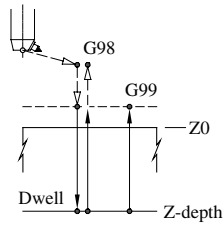


Fig. 26. G89 Fixed Cycle.

Boring with Dwell (G89): The G89 fixed cycle is used for boring with dwell and has the following format:

N__ G99 (G98) G89 X__ Y__ R__ Z__ P__ F__

From the R-level, the boring bar will feed to the Z-depth, dwells for the number of milliseconds specified by P__, than feeds back to R-level, both at the programmed feed rate F__. G85, a similar cycle, does not have a dwell. Either one of these cycles is commonly used for reaming (see Fig. 26).

Fixed Cycle Cancellation (G80) : The G80 fixed cycle cancel is used to cancel any fixed cycle and has the following format:

N__ G80

G80 is the recommended method for fixed cycle cancellation, although programming any motion command (G00, G01, G02, G03) will also cancel any active cycle.

General Notes on Fixed Cycles: Except G87, all fixed cycles can retract to either the R-level (using G99) or the initial level (using G98). The R-level is often called the feed plane and is the Z-position from where the feed rate mode begins. In the cycle, the Z-address is used for depth and the R-address is used for the feed plane to avoid a conflict of two identical addresses. The initial level is the last Z-address programmed before a fixed cycle is called. Although the initial level can be equivalent of the R-level, it usually is higher. Its purpose is to provide means for special clearance setting to bypass obstacles between holes.

Fixed cycles for boring can be applied to either single point or double point boring bars, with the exception of G76 and G87 cycles, which require a shift. In all cases, boring bars must be preset to the diameter of the hole machined.

Contouring.—Contouring is the most common semi-finishing and finishing toolpath for both machining centers and lathes. The programmer has to calculate every single point of the part in the order of machining. Using a cutter radius offset, the toolpath is based on the drawing dimensions. Not every point is identified in the drawing and its coordinates have to be calculated manually. For vertical and horizontal lines the calculations are quite simple, but for angular lines and partial arcs trigonometric calculations are necessary.

Fig. 27 shows typical calculations for start and end points of an arc tangent to two lines, a common situation in programming. As in any calculations, certain features must be known. For the calculations shown, point P, radius R, and angle A (as shown) must be known.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

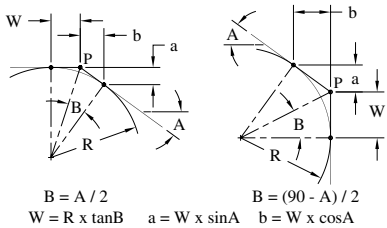


Fig. 27. Calculation of Tangent Points.

Turning and Boring.—With the advancement of computer technology, control manufacturers have developed cutting cycles capable of complex lathe operations and made them an integral part of the lathe control systems. These special cycles are called *Multiple Repetitive Cycles*. Their main attraction is their excellent flexibility. Some of these advanced cycles cover turning and boring, others grooving and threading. These cycles are only complex in the mathematical sense and even then, only within the control system. In practice, these advanced machining cycles are easy to program. Their other benefit is that they can be easily changed at the control terminal to be optimized for best performance.

The most common multiple repetitive cycles are:

Table 6. Multiple Repetitive Cycles

G-Code	Description	G-Code	Description
G70	Contour finishing cycle (used after G71, G72, and G73)	G74	Peck drilling cycle—along the Z-axis
G71	Roughing cycle—horizontal direction	G75	Peck grooving cycle—along the X-axis
G72	Roughing cycle—vertical direction	G76	Single point threading cycle (straight or tapered)
G73	Pattern repeating roughing cycle		

For turning and boring operations, G71 cycle is the most common, along with G76 cycle for threading (described separately).

Roughing Cycle (G71): The most common roughing cycle is G71. Its purpose is to remove stock by horizontal cutting, primarily along the Z axis, typically from the right to the left. It is used for roughing out material out of a solid cylinder. It is available in two formats—a one-block and a two-block format, depending on the control system.

Older controls use a one-block format:

N__ G71 P__ Q__ I__ K__ U__ W__ D__ F__ S__

where:

*P*__ = first block number of the finishing profile,
*Q*__ = last block number of the finishing profile,
*I*__ = distance and direction of rough semi finishing in the X axis—per side,
*K*__ = distance and direction of rough semi finishing in the Z axis,
*U*__ = stock amount for finishing on the X axis diameter,
*W*__ = stock left for finishing on the Z axis,
*D*__ = depth of roughing cut,
*F*__ = cutting feed rate per revolution,
*S*__ = spindle speed in ft/min or m/min (cutting speed).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The I and K parameters are not available on all machines. They control the amount of cut for semi finishing, the last continuous cut before final roughing motions.

Newer controls require a two-block data entry for the G71 cycle, and the programming format is:

G71 U__ R__; G71 P__ Q__ U__ W__ F__ S__

where the parameters in the first block are:

U__ = depth of roughing cut,

R__ = amount of retract from each cut.

where the parameters in the second block are:

P__ = first block number of the finishing profile,

Q__ = last block number of the finishing profile,

U__ = stock amount for finishing on the X axis diameter,

W__ = stock left for finishing on the Z axis,

F__ = cutting feed rate per revolution,

S__ = spindle speed in ft/min or m/min (cutting speed).

The U-address in the first block is independent of the U-address in the second block. The I and K parameters may be used only on some controls and the retract amount R is set by a system parameter.

G71 cycle can be used for external roughing (turning) as well as for internal roughing (boring). The control system determines the type of machining by comparing the start point SP with the point P.

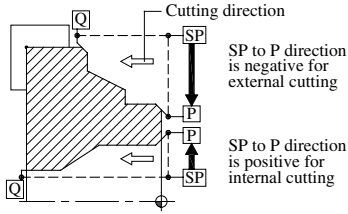


Fig. 28. G71 Roughing Cycle.

A typical program segment will have the following structure (tool 01 used):

N1 G20 T0100; N2 G96 S__ M03;
N3 G00 X__ Z__ T0101 M08 (START POINT SP); N4 G71 U0.15 R0.04;
N5 G71 P6 Q11 U0.06 W0.005 F0.015; N6 G00 X__ (POINT P BLOCK); N7 ..;
N8 …
N9 …
N10 …
N11 U0.2 (POINT Q BLOCK); N12 G28 U0 W0; N13 M30; %;
G72 Roughing cycle is similar, but applies for vertical direction of cut.

There are two types of G71 and G72—Type I and Type II. Type I does not allow for a change of direction, whereby Type II allows for a change in one axis only.

Repeated Finish Counting (G73): G73 pattern repeating cycle is used to machine a finishing contour repeatedly, by a given distance, in specified number of steps.

Finish Cycle (G70): G70 is programmed after G71, G72, and G73 as a finishing cycle, and has a simple format:

N__ G70 P__ Q__ F__ S__

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where:

*P*__ = the first block number of the finishing profile,

*Q*__ = the last block number of the finishing profile,

*F*__ = the cutting feed rate per revolution,

*S*__ = the spindle speed in ft/min or m/min (cutting speed).

In all the examples, the spindle speed or feed rate can be omitted in the cycle, if already active (declared previously).The program example for G70 will use the data from the roughing operation:

N__ G70 P6 Q11 F0.01 S400

Basic Rules for G71, G73 Cycles: It is important to observe some general rules, in order to make the multiple repetitive safe and efficient. Here are some more important rules:

a) Apply a tool nose radius offset before the stock removal cycle is called.

b) Cancel the tool nose radius offset after the stock removal cycle is completed.

c) Return motion to the start point is automatic and must not be programmed.

d) The P block in G71 should not include the Z-axis value for cycle Type I.

e) Change of direction is allowed only for Type II G71 cycle and along one axis only.

f) Stock amount U is programmed on a diameter (U+ for turning, U- for boring.)

g) The Feed Rate programmed between the P and Q points will be ignored during roughing.

h) Multiple repetitive cycles can be optimized at the machine by changing one or more settings. G72 and G73 are programmed in a similar way. G74 and G75 are used much less frequently and have a simpler format.

Thread Cutting on CNC Lathes

The method of thread cutting on CNC lathes is called *single point threading* using an indexable threading insert. As a threading operation is both a cutting and a forming operation, the shape and size of the threading insert must correspond to the shape and size of the finished thread. By definition, a single point threading is a machining process of cutting a helical groove of a specific shape with a uniform advancement per spindle revolution. The uniformity of the thread is controlled by the programmed feed rate in feed rate per revolution. Feed rate for threading is always the lead of the thread, never the pitch. For single start threads, the lead and the pitch are identical. As single point threading is a multi-pass operation, the CNC system provides spindle synchronization for each threading pass.

Depth of Thread Calculations.—Regardless of the threading method used, the depth of a thread will be required for various calculations. It can be calculated from these common formulas (*TPI* is the number of threads per inch):

External V-threads (60-degrees for metric or US customary units):

$$\text{Depth of Thread} = \frac{0.61343}{TPI} = 0.61343 \times Pitch \quad (1)$$

Internal V-threads (60-degrees for metric or US customary units):

$$\text{Depth of Thread} = \frac{0.54127}{TPI} = 0.54127 \times Pitch \quad (2)$$

Thread Pitch = the distance between two corresponding points of adjacent threads.

$$Pitch = \frac{1}{TPI} \quad (3)$$

In metric drawings, the pitch is specified as part of the thread designation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thread Lead = the distance the threading tool will advance along an axis in one revolution of the spindle

$$\text{Feed Rate} = \text{Lead} = \frac{\text{Number of Starts}}{TPI} = \text{Number of Starts} \times \text{Pitch} \quad (4)$$

Spindle speed is always programmed in direct r/min mode (G97) not in the constant surface speed mode G96.

Infeed Methods.—The way a threading tool enters into the material can be programmed in several ways, using two infeed methods available. Infeed is the type of motion from one pass to the next. Three basic thread infeed methods are shown in Fig. 29:

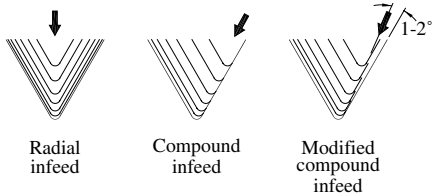


Fig. 29. Thread Infeed Methods.

1) Plunge method—also known as the radial infeed
2) Angular method—also known as the compound or flank infeed
3) Modified angular method—also known as the modified compound (flank) infeed

Specified infeed is typically selected to achieve the best cutting conditions for the insert edge in a given material. With the exception of some very fine leads and soft material, the majority of threading cuts will benefit from a compound infeed or modified compound infeed (angular method), providing the thread geometry allows this method. For example, a square thread will require a radial infeed, while an Acme thread will benefit from compound infeed. Four methods can be applied for compound infeed threading:

1) Constant cutting amount
2) Constant cutting depth
3) One edge cutting
4) Both edges cutting

Radial Infeed.—Radial infeed is one of the more common threading methods, if the conditions are suitable. It is applied to a cutting motion that is perpendicular to the diameter being cut. Each threading pass diameter is specified as the X-axis, while the Z-axis start point remains unchanged. This infeed method is suitable for soft materials, such as brass, certain aluminum grades, etc. In harder materials it could damage the thread integrity and is not recommended.

The inevitable outcome of a radial infeed motion is that both insert edges are working simultaneously. Since the insert edges are opposite of each other, the chips are formed at both edges at the same time, causing problems that can be traced to high temperatures, lack of coolant access, and tool wear problems. If the radial infeed results in a poor quality thread, a compound infeed method will usually solve the problem.

Compound Infeed.—Compound infeed method—also known as a flank infeed method—works on a different principle. Instead of feeding the threading tool perpendicularly towards the part diameter, the position for each pass is shifted by trigonometric calculation to a new Z-position. This approach results in a threading pass where most of the cutting takes place at one edge. As only one insert edge does most of the work, the generated heat can dissipate away from the tool edge while the cutting chips curl away, which extends the tool life.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Using the compound threading method, a heavier pass depth with fewer passes can be used for majority of threads. Compound infeed can be modified by providing 1 to 2 degrees of clearance on one edge to prevent rubbing. The angle of the thread will be maintained by the angle of the threading insert.

Threading Operations.—There are many threading operations that can be programmed for a typical CNC lathe. Several operations require a special type of threading insert and some operations can only be programmed if the control system is equipped with special (optional) features:

a) Constant lead single start threads (typically using G32 or G76)
b) Variable lead threads—increasing or decreasing (special option) (G34 and G35)
c) External and internal threading
d) Tapered threads (conical threads)
e) Right hand (R/H) and left hand (L/H) threads
f) Face threads (scroll threads)
g) Multi-start threads
h) Circular threads (special option)
i) Multi-block threads (so called long-hand threading, block-by-block) (G32)

The most common threading modes use either G32 (G33 on some controls) and G76.

Threading Cycle (G32).—The G32 command is sometimes called "long-hand threading," because each tool motion is programmed as one block. Programs using G32 can be quite long and virtually impossible to edit without major reprogramming. On the other hand, G32 method offers great flexibility and often is the only method that can be used, particularly for special threads. The programming format for G32 requires at least four blocks of input for a single thread pass from a start position:

	N__ G00 X__ Z__
N__ (G00) X__	Current threading pass diameter
N__ G32 Z__ F__	Actual thread cutting (X__ Z__ for taper threads)
N__ G00 X__	Retract to X-start position
N__ Z__	Return to Z-start position

Threading Cycle (G76).—G76 is a multiple repetitive cycle for threading, and is the most common method used to generate most of thread forms. Similar to roughing cycles, G76 is programmed in two versions, depending on the control system used. For older controls, a one-block format is used, for newer controls a two-block format is used. The two-block format offers additional settings that are not available in the one-block method.

The G76 threading cycle requires information about the thread and the cutting method.

One-Block Cycle: For a one-block G76 cycle, the format is:

N__ G76 X__ Z__ I__ K__ D__ A__ (P__) F__

Where:

X = the diameter of the last threading pass
Z = the end of thread along the Z axis
I = the amount of taper over the total length (per side)
K = the single depth of the thread
D = the depth of the first threading pass
A = the included insert angle (only A0, A29, A30, A55, A60, and A80 allowed)
P = the infeed method adjustment—positive (not available on all controls)
F = the feed rate (thread lead)

Two-Block Cycle: The two-block G76 format includes several additional programmable features that make the cycle more flexible. For a two-block G76 cycle, the format is:

N__ G76 P__ Q__ R__
N__ G76 X__ Z__ R__ P__ Q__ F__

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Where the first block:

P = a six-digit data entry in three pairs:
Digits 1 and 2—number of finishing cuts (01–99)
Digits 3 and 4—number of leads for gradual pull-out (0.0–9.9 times lead), no decimal point used (00–99)
Digits 5 and 6—angle of thread (00, 29, 30, 55, 60, 80 degrees only)
Q = the minimum cutting depth (positive radial value—no decimal point)
R = the fixed amount for finish allowance (decimal point allowed)

Where the second block:

X = the diameter of the last threading pass
Z = the end of thread along the Z axis
R = the amount of taper over the total length (per side)
P = the single depth of the thread (positive radial value—no decimal point)
Q = the depth of the first threading pass (positive radial value—no decimal point)
F = the feed rate (thread lead)

The P/Q/R addresses of the first block are not related to the P/Q/R addresses of the second block. They have their own meaning, applied within each block only.

The G76 threading cycle is used to program the majority of CNC thread cutting operations. Several of parameters of the G76 cycle can be changed at the machine to optimize the threading operation.

Example: The code block for cutting an external thread on 2 inch diameter, 12 threads per inch, using tool number 6 to the length of 1.5 inches (thread ends in a recess) would be:

N31 T0600; N32 G97 S800 M03; N33 G00 X2.2 Z0.3 T0606 M08 (START POINT FOR THE THREAD); N34 G76 P010060 Q0040 R0.002; N35 G76 X1.8978 Z-1.5 R0 P0511 Q0100 F0.083333; N36 G00 X8.0 Z5.0 T0600; N37 M01;

Multi-Start Threads.—Threads with more than one start can be programmed using either G32 or G76 threading commands. The lead (and feed rate) for multi-start threads is always the number of starts times the pitch. For example, a triple start thread with the pitch of 0.0625 (16 TPI) will be 0.1875 (F0.1875). In order to achieve proper distribution of each start around the cylinder, each thread has to start at an equal angle, determined by the following calculation:

$$\text{Thread cylindrical spacing angle} = 360 / \text{Number of starts}$$

To achieve this angular spacing, the Z-axis point for each start must be one pitch further than the previous start:

$$\text{Shift amount} = \text{Pitch}$$

$$\text{Number of shifts} = \text{Number of starts} - 1$$

Subprograms, Macros and Parametric Programming

CNC programs use several techniques to allow the programmer to create complex pieces of code using CNC code building blocks.

Subprograms.—*Subprograms* (also known as subroutines), are specially designed programs that can be called on demand by another program and repeated as desired. Such repetition can take place in one program or in several programs. The content of standard subprograms is fixed and can be used only for the intended, specific purpose. For variable type subprograms—called macros—a special control option is required (see page 1378).

The main advantages of subprograms include transportability between programs (even machines), shorter programs, and easier editing. Any repetitive toolpath or machine activity is suitable to be developed as a subprogram.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Any subprogram has to have a number (for example O6001), in the same format as the main program (or other program of origin). The end of subprogram uses the M99 function, which transfers the processing put of the subprogram back to the program of origin. Another miscellaneous function—M98—is used to call a previously stored subprogram, for example M98 P6001. The address O is used for storing the subprogram, address P is used for calling the subprogram.

If required, a subprogram can be repeated, up to 9999 times. That is achieved in three ways, depending on the control system:

Method 1: M98 P6001 L5 will repeat subprogram O6001 five times

Method 2: M98 P6001 K5 will repeat subprogram O6001 five times

Method 3: M98 P00056001 will repeat subprogram O6001 five times

Subprograms can be nested. Nesting is a feature that allows one subprogram to call another subprogram up to four levels deep.

In the example of a simple subprogram application Fig. 30, a complete toolpath is developed for one pocket, stored as a subprogram, and called at the equivalent location of the three remaining pockets. Typical programming methods will use a incremental method of dimensioning.

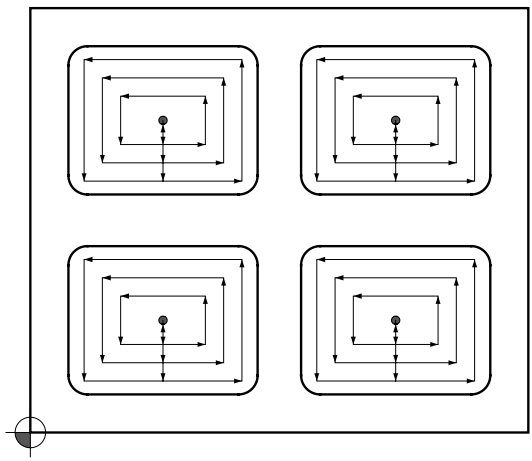


Fig. 30. Typical Subprogram Application.

Macros and Parametric Programming.— In this general introduction to the subject of macros and parametric programming, the most common development tool is known as Fanuc Custom Macros B. In spite of the great advancement of CAD/CAM software, macros still have their special place. In addition to manual or computer assisted programming., macros are used to provide a special solution to a special requirement. Macro programming is a method using variable data is a special subprogram (now called a macro), with actual values defined in the main program. This method provides a single 'master' program that can be used many times with different numerical values. A typical example is a bolt circle, where only a few values change. The main purpose of a macro program is to save programming time.

Basic Macro Skills.— Depending on the complexity of the macro to be developed, some basic knowledge and skills are required. The following list identifies the most important items:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

a) Understanding various methods of data settings
b) CNC machines and controls—operation and programming
c) Machining skills—how to machine a part
d) Basic mathematics skills—calculations, formulas
e) Program structure development skills—convenience and consistency
f) Offsets and compensations applications skills—various adjustments
g) Fixed cycles in depth—how they work, in detail
h) Subprograms in depth, including multi nesting applications
i) System parameters, their purpose and functions

In addition, if a macro is written for a particular function of the machine, knowledge of that function as it relates to the machine is also very important. If the macro is developed for probing or in-process gauging, the programmer has to understand the full process as well as the objective of the macro development.

Confirming Macro Capability.—A macro is a control option, and may not be automatically available to the user. There is a simple way to find out if a macro is active. Set the control to MDI mode (Manual Data Input) and enter this command:

#1=1

After pressing the "Cycle Start" button, the control will either accept the statement or reject it. The # symbol identifies the subsequent number as a variable number 1 with an assigned value of 1. A statement using the # symbol is unique to macros. If the control rejects it, or it is impossible to enter the symbols, that means the control does not support macro functions.

Common Features and Applications.—Typical features found in macros are:

1) Arithmetic and algebraic calculations
2) Trigonometric calculations
3) Variable data storage
4) Logical operations
5) Branching
6) Looping
7) Error detection
8) Alarm generation
9) Input and Output
10) Miscellaneous features

A macro program looks like a regular CNC program, but includes many other features. A macro program is structured as a subprogram—it is stored under its own program number (O-), and it is usually called by the main program, using the G65 preparatory command. In a simple form, macro features can be used in the main program, without the macro call. The following list highlights some of the most common applications of macros:

1) Groups of similar parts (parametric programming)
2) Offset control
3) Custom cycles
4) Non-standard tool motions (simulating curves)
5) Special G-codes and M-codes
6) Alarm and message generation
7) Hiding and protecting macro programs
8) Probing and gauging
9) Various shortcuts and utilities

Macro Structure.—There are three basic areas to understand for successful macro development. These three areas offer many special functions that are used within the macro.

Variables are the key element of all macros. They provide flexibility by easily storing changeable data. When a value is assigned to a variable, it is stored for future use. Stored values are called *Defined Variables*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Functions and Constants are also an important part of macros. Functions calculate something—they solve a mathematical calculation or a formula. For example, a "+" (plus) function will sum two or more values together. In addition to functions, constants can be defined in a macro as well, for example the pi (π) with the value of 3.14159265359

Logical Functions are used for branching and looping purposes. Looping and branching provide a change in the program flow that is based on a certain condition that has been previously defined. The given condition may be tested (evaluated), using the comparison functions, such as 'greater than' (), 'equal to', 'less than or equal to', and several others, used together with the IF function. They are called Boolean or logical operators. The given condition can be tested only once, using the IF checking function or it may be evaluated repeatedly, using the loop function WHILE—while the given condition is true, the loop is repeated. The result of the evaluation will determine further flow of the program.

Macro Definition and Call.—Macros are defined in a similar way as subprograms, but they are called or invoked by the G65 command:

O7001 (MACRO)

...

...

M99

%

Variable Definition (G65).—The G65 macro command accepts variable definitions, called arguments. Arguments are actual program values required for a particular macro only. They are passed to the macro. Variable data in the macro is then replaced with the supplied arguments. A typical program sample of a G65 macro using three arguments may have the following format: G65 P7001 A6.0 B8.5 F10.0

G65… Macro call command

P7001… Program number containing the macro—stored as O7001

A6.0… Assignment of local variable A (#1) argument to be passed to macro

B8.5… Assignment of local variable B (#2) argument to be passed to macro F10.0… Assignment of a local variable F (#9) argument to be passed to macro

The illustration Fig. 31 shows graphically the flow between the main program and a macro, as well as the definition and use of the three variables (defined as arguments). In the example, a macro linear motion command will be replaced with the defined amounts:

G01 X#1 Y#2 F#9 = G01 X6.0 Y8.5 F10.0

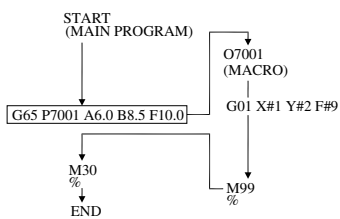


Fig. 31. Macro Call From Main Program.

Assignment of macro variables as arguments is one of the most important parts of developing any macro. Macro B has an arbitrary list of variables (called *Argument List 1*) and their meaning, shown in the following table:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Macro B Argument List

Argument List 1	Macro Local Variable	Argument List 1	Macro Local Variable	Argument List 1	Macro Local Variable	Argument List 1	Macro Local Variable
A	1	H	11	O	Not assigned	V	22
B	2	I	4	P	Not assigned	W	23
C	3	J	5	Q	17	X	24
D	7	K	6	R	18	Y	25
E	8	L	Not assigned	S	19	Z	26
F	9	M	13	T	20		
G	Not assigned	N	Not assigned	U	21		

The above variables are LOCAL variables and can be used in arguments or in the macro.

Note that there are five letters missing (not assigned)—they are G N O P L. These letters are reserved and cannot be used as arguments. The letter L is used for the number of macro repetitions.

Variables #10, #12, #14, #15, #16, #27, #28, #29, #30, #31, #32 and #33 can only be used in a macro, not as an argument.

Types of Variables.—There are four types of variables available for macros:

Null Variable: Variable identified as #0 is a null variable. A null variable has no value—it is an empty variable, often called a vacant variable. This variable can be read by the macro program, but it cannot be assigned a value, which means data cannot be assigned to it.

Local Variables: Local variables are temporary only—they are used in macro body and hold certain data. When the macro is called, the local variables are set to their assigned values. When the macro is completed and exits (using the miscellaneous function M99), or the control power is turned off, all local variables are set to null values—they will no longer exist.

Common Variables: Common—or global—variables are still stored in the control memory when macro is completed. These variables are maintained by the system and they can be shared by several other macro programs. This group of variables is normally cleared by a specially designed macro program.

System Variables: System variables are used for setting and/or changing default conditions and can read and write different CNC data, for example, a current status of a G-code mode, the current work offset, etc. Their numbers are assigned by the control system manufacturer.

Variable Declarations and Expressions.—Variable data is not only defined in the argument section of the G65 macro call, variables can also be defined—or declared—in the macro body itself. Compare the two following declarations:

#19 = 800	A value of 800 is assigned to variable number 19—it can be spindle speed (r/min)
#9 = 15.0	A value of 15.0 is assigned to variable number 9—it can be a feed rate (mm/min, m/min, ft/min, in/min, etc.)

Both declarations store values—the value of "800" is stored into the variable #19 and the value of "15.0" into the variable #9. Both values shown in the example are numbers, but they are two different types of a number. 800 is an integer, 15.0 is a real number. In macros, this distinction is important. Variables may also use special expressions. For example, the variable definition #9 = 15.0 can be redefined later, as #9 = #9 * 1.1, which returns 16.5. If #9 defines the cutting feed rate, the new feed rate will be F16.5. Expressions can also be nested, following the standard mathematical hierarchy of the order of calculations:

#1 = 5.0

#2 = 8.5

#3 = 10.0

#4 = [#3 * #2] / #1; which returns 17.0

Note that brackets are used for nesting, not parentheses. Parentheses indicate a program comment or a message:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

#19 = 800(SPINDLE SPEED DEFINED)

#9 = 15.0(CUTTING FEEDRATE DEFINED)

If a macro feature is available, variables can be defined and used in the main program directly, for example:

#19 = 800

N4 G90 G54 G00 X24.0 Y13.5 S#19 M03

Many variations and applications are possible.

Macro Functions.—The available macro functions can be divided into six groups:

1) ARITHMETIC functions
2) TRIGONOMETRIC functions
3) ROUNDING functions
4) MISCELLANEOUS functions
5) LOGICAL functions and operations
6) CONVERSION functions

Macro Arithmetic Functions: There are four arithmetic functions:

+	Addition	*	Multiplication
-	Subtraction	/	Division

Example:

#1 = 3.5	3.5	Returned value of variable #1 is 3.5
#2 = 4.25	4.25	Returned value of variable #2 is 4.25
#3 = 2.0 + 5.0	7.0	Returned value of variable #3 is a sum of 2+5
#4 = #3 + 1	8.0	Add 1 to the result of variable #3
#5 = #2—0.8	3.45	Subtract 0.8 from the current value of variable #2
#6 = #1—#3	-3.5	Subtract contents of #3 from the contents of #1
#7 = #2 * 6	25.5	Multiply contents of #2 by 6
#8 = 7.0 / 8.0	0.875	Divide 7 by 8 as real numbers
#9 = 7 / 8	0.875	Divide 7 by 8 as integer numbers

Trigonometric Functions: The following trigonometric functions are generally available for macros:

SIN	Sine	COS	Cosine	TAN	Tangent
ASIN	arcsine	ACOS	arccosine	ATAN	arctangent

All inputs for SIN, COS, and TAN are in degrees and the output of the inverse functions ATAN, ASIN and ACOS is also in degrees. Inverse functions are usually marked as $\tan^{-1}$, $\sin^{-1}$, and $\cos^{-1}$ on the calculator.

Example:

#1 = SIN[38]	0.6156615	Actual value must be in brackets
#2 = 23.7	23.7	
#3 = COS[#2]	0.9156626	Reference to a variable must be in brackets
#4 = TAN[12.86]	0.2282959	

The inverse trigonometric functions accept the length of two sides of a triangle, both enclosed in brackets, "[ ]", and separated by the slash symbol, "/", standing alone between them. The acceptable range is within $0 \leq \text{RESULT} < 360$:

Example:

#5 = ATAN[0.25]/[0.5]	26.5650512	Position of the slash symbol is important

ASIN and ACOS functions are not available on all controls.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rounding Functions: Rounding functions control how decimal places are handled. There are three rounding functions:

1) ROUND
2) FIX
3) UP

(1) ROUND: The ROUND function rounds off a value to the nearest whole number. The function disregards fractions that are less than 0.5. For fractions that are equal to or greater than 0.5, the next whole number is the rounded value:

ROUND[0.00001]	Returns 0.0
ROUND[0.5]	Returns 1.0
ROUND[0.99999]	Returns 1.0
ROUND[1.0]	Returns 1.0

There is one very important difference between using the ROUND function directly in a program statement or in a variable definition. Consider the following two blocks:

```
#101 = 27/32
G91 G00 X[ROUND[#101]]
```

The incremental motion will be X0.8438 (US customary) or X0.844 (metric). However, if the ROUND function is used in a variable definition, the result will be different:

```
#101 = [ROUND[27/32]]Returns 1.0
G91 G00 X[#101]
```

The incremental motion will be X1.0

Rounding can also be performed to a given number of decimal places, but it is a two step process. In the first step, the given value must be multiplied by the factor of:

10... to round off to one decimal place
100... to round off to two decimal places
1000... to round off to three decimal places (typical for metric system)
10000... to round off to four decimal places (typical for US customary system)

The second step is to use the ROUND function together with the multiplier. For example, to round 123.56789 to three decimal places:

```
#101 = 123.456789
#101 = #101*1000Returns 123456.789
#101 = ROUND[#101]Returns 123457.0 (nearest whole number)
#101 = #101/1000Returns 123.457
```

Note that only a single variable has been used for all four calculations. If the original value is not required later, this is a very efficient method of defining variables in the macro body.

The remaining two rounding functions FIX and FUP are used to round a given value up or down only, regardless of whether the decimal portion is over or under 0.5. The FIX and FUP functions are commonly used for counting rather than calculations.

(2) FIX: The FIX function is designed to round down the given value (discard fractions less than 1.0) i.e., strip all values after decimal point.

ROUND[0.00001]	Returns 0.0
ROUND[0.5]	Returns 0.0
ROUND[0.99999]	Returns 0.0
ROUND[1.0]	Returns 1.0

(3) FUP: The FUP function is designed to round up the given value (raise fractions less than 1.0).

ROUND[0.00001]	Returns 1.0
ROUND[0.5]	Returns 1.0
ROUND[0.99999]	Returns 1.0
ROUND[1.0]	Returns 1.0

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Miscellaneous Functions: There are two common miscellaneous functions, SQRT and ABS. Several others exist but are not available on all control models.

(1) SQRT: The SQRT function calculates the square root of a number supplied between brackets:

SQRT[25.0]	Returns 5.0

(2) ABS: The ABS function (absolute function) always returns a positive value of a given number:

ABS[−1.3]	Returns 1.3
ABS[1.3]	Returns 1.3

Using the ABS function is very useful in many applications, for example, to guarantee a positive or a negative value:

#26 = 1.3	Positive input
G01 Z−[ABS[#26]]	The motion will be equivalent to Z−1.3
#26 = −1.3	Negative input
G01 Z−[ABS[#26]]	The motion will be equivalent to Z−1.3

Logical Functions: Logical functions consist of Boolean operators and bitwise or binary functions:

Boolean functions (operators) compare two values and return a true or false condition:

EQ	Equal to	GT	Greater than	GE	Greater than or equal to
NE	Not equal to	LT	Less than	LE	Less than or equal to

Bitwise functions provide a means of combining comparisons.

AND	And	OR	Or	XOR	Exclusive Or

The AND, OR, and XOR functions compare two defined conditions simultaneously. The compared conditions are evaluated, and return either a TRUE value or a FALSE value. In English language, it is easy to understand the difference between the AND and the OR functions, because they follow the basic logic of everyday language. Function XOR is not used with the same frequency in machining macros. Examples of usage:

Example 1, (OR) #33 = [#1 EQ #2] OR [#3 EQ #4]

Variable #33 returns true (return value is 1) if #1 equals #2 OR #3 equals #4—otherwise it returns zero (false).

Example 2, (AND) : #33 = [#1 EQ 1] AND [#2 EQ 2]

Variable #33 returns 1 (true) if #1 equals 1 AND #2 equals 2—otherwise it returns 0 (false).

Example 3, (XOR) #33 = [#1 EQ 1] XOR [#2 EQ 2]

Variable #33 returns 0 (false) if both expressions are true or both expressions are false. If only one expression is true and the other is expression false, #33 returns 1 (true). XOR function is also known as the "exclusive or" function.

Branching and Looping.—Both branches and loops (iterations) are based on the return value of an evaluated condition. There are three macro functions available: "IF", "GOTOn", and WHILE (also IF-THEN on some controls).

IF function: The "IF" function evaluates a given condition and branches to a specified block number providing the condition is true. If the condition is false, the macro processing continues in the next block. This function is commonly used when choosing between two alternatives. Effectively, the IF function bypasses one or more blocks if a certain condition is true. The programming format is:

IF [<*this condition is true*>] GOTOn

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GOTOn Function: The "GOTOn" function is an unconditional branch and is programmed by itself in the block. the "n" is replaced by the block number to branch to. For example, GOTO901 will branch to block N901. The programming format is:

GOTO901

WHILE function: The "WHILE" function is for looping—it also requires a specified condition to be true for the loop to be processed. The word "while" can be interpreted as meaning "as long as". Its programming format is:

WHILE [<*this condition is true*>] DOn

The "ENDn" is the end of loop identification. There can be up to three levels of loop nesting. Each nested loop will have is own WHILE-ENDn. For a single loop, the ENDn is END1.

Note—there is also IF-THEN method available on some control systems. If available, the programming is much more streamlined. The programming format is:

IF [<*this condition is true*>] THEN [<*argument*>]

The 'THEN' argument is a statement, normally a definition based on the condition being true:

Example: IF [#1 EQ 1] THEN #33 = 0

All branching and looping functions are extremely powerful and are a fundamental part of effective use of macros.

Macro Example.—A classic example of macro development is an equally spaced arrangement of holes along a circle—a bolt circle pattern, see Fig. 32. Many versions can be developed, depending on the actual needs

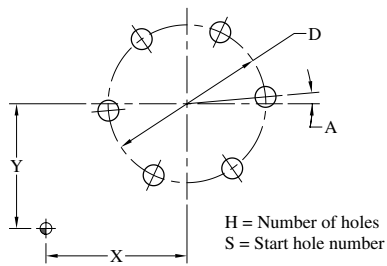


Fig. 32. Bolt Circle Macro Sample

(MAIN PROGRAM—CALLS MACRO **O7051**)

```
N1 G20
N2 G90 G00 G54 X0 Y0 S900 M03
N3 G43 Z1.0 H01 M08
N4 G99 G81 R0.1 Z-0.6 P250 F12.0 L0
N5 G65 P7051 X3.0 Y6.5 D4.5 H6 A5.0 S1
N6 G80 Z10.0 M09
N7 G28 Z10.0 M05
N8 M01
...
%
```

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

```
O7051 (BOLT HOLE CIRCLE MACRO)
#10 = #4003 (STORE CURRENT G90 OR G91)
IF [#7 LE 0] GOTO 9101
IF [#11 NE FUP[#11]] GOTO 9102
IF [#11 LE 0] GOTO 9103
IF [#19 EQ #0] THEN #19 = 1
IF [#19 NE FUP[#19]] GOTO 9102
IF [#19 LT 1] GOTO 9104
IF [#19 GT #11] GOTO 9105
#7 = #7/2 (BOLT CIRCLE RADIUS)
WHILE [#19 LE #11] DO1
 #30 = [#19 — 1] * 360 / #11 + #1
 X[COS[#30] * #7 + #24] Y[SIN[#30] * #7 + #25]
 #19 = #19 + 1
END1
GOTO 9999
N9101 #3000=101 (DIA MUST BE POSITIVE)
N9102 #3000=102 (ONLY INTEGER NUMBER ALLOVED)
N9103 #3000=103 (ONLY POSITIVE NUMBER OF HOLES)
N9104 #3000=104 (START HOLE MUST BE AN INTEGER)
N9105 #3000=105 (START HOLE NUMBER IS TOO HIGH)
N9999 G#10 (RESTORE ORIGINAL G90 OR G91)
M99
%
```

The macro call in block N5 includes six arguments that will be passed to the macro:

X = #24 = Bolt circle center distance from X0 (X3.0)

Y = #25 = Bolt circle center distance from Y0 (Y6.5)

D = #7 = Bolt circle diameter (D4.5)

H = #11 = Number of EQSP holes (H6)

A = #1 = Bolt circle angular orientation (default is 0) (A5.0)

S = #19 = Start hole number (default is 1) (S1)

Axis Nomenclature

To distinguish among the different motions, or axes, of a machine tool, a system of letter addresses has been developed. A letter is assigned, for example, to the table of the machine, another to the saddle, and still another to the spindle head. These letter addresses, or axis designations, are necessary for the electronic control system to assign movement instructions to the proper machine element. The assignment of these letter addresses has been standardized on a worldwide basis and is contained in three standards, all of which are in agreement. These standards are EIA RS-267-B, issued by the Electronics Industries Association; AIA NAS-938, issued by the Aerospace Industries Association; and ISO/R 841, issued by the International Organization for Standardization.

The standards are based on a "right-hand rule," which describes the orientation of the motions as well as whether the motions are positive or negative. If a right hand is laid palm up on the table of a vertical milling machine, as shown in Fig. 1, for example, the thumb will point in the positive *X*-direction, the forefinger in the positive *Y*-direction, and the erect middle finger in the positive *Z*-direction, or up. The direction signs are based on the motion of the cutter relative to the workpiece. The movement of the table shown in Fig. 2 is therefore positive, even though the table is moving to the left, because the motion of the cutter relative to the workpiece is to the right, or in the positive direction. The motions are considered from the part programmer's viewpoint, which assumes that the cutter always moves around the part, regardless of whether the cutter or the part moves. The right-hand

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

rule also holds with a horizontal-spindle machine and a vertical table, or angle plate, as shown in Fig. 3. Here, spindle movement back and away from the angle plate, or workpiece, is a positive *Z*-motion, and movement toward the angle plate is a negative *Z*-motion.

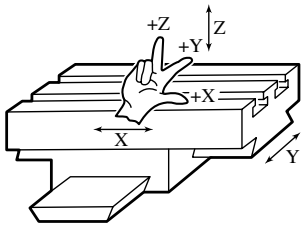


Fig. 1.

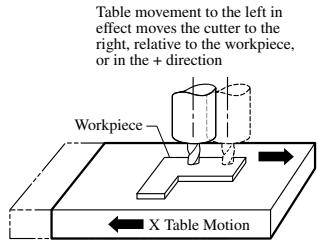


Table movement to the left in effect moves the cutter to the right, relative to the workpiece, or in the + direction
Workpiece
X Table Motion

Fig. 2.

Rotary motions also are governed by a right-hand rule, but the fingers are joined and the thumb is pointed in the positive direction of the axis. Fig. 4 shows the designations of the rotary motions about the three linear axes, *X*, *Y*, and *Z*. Rotary motion about the *X*-axis is designated as *A*; rotary motion about the *Y*-axis is *B*; and rotary motion about the *Z*-axis is *C*. The fingers point in the positive rotary directions. Movement of the rotary table around the *Y*-axis shown in Fig. 4 is a *B* motion and is common with horizontal machining centers. Here, the view is from the spindle face looking toward the rotary table. Referring, again, to linear motions, if the spindle is withdrawn axially from the work, the motion is a positive *Z*. A move toward the work is a negative *Z*.

When a second linear motion is parallel to another linear motion, as with the horizontal boring mill seen in Fig. 5, the horizontal motion of the spindle, or quill, is designated as *Z* and a parallel motion of the angle plate is *W*. A movement parallel to the *X*-axis is *U* and a movement parallel to the *Y*-axis is *V*. Corresponding motions are summarized as follows:

Linear	Rotary	Linear and Parallel
X	*A*	*U*
Y	*B*	*V*
Z	*C*	*W*

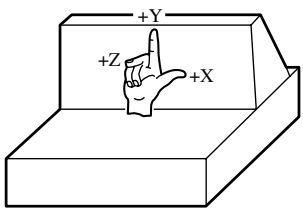


Fig. 3.

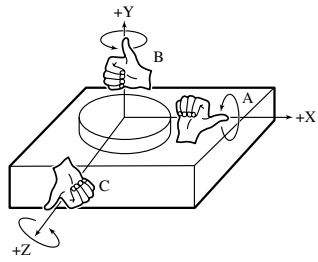


Fig. 4.

Axis designations for a lathe are shown in Fig. 6. Movement of the cross-slide away from the workpiece, or the centerline of the spindle, is noted as a plus *X*. Movement toward the workpiece is a minus *X*. The middle finger points in the positive *Z*-direction; therefore,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

movement away from the headstock is positive and movement toward the headstock is negative. Generally, there is no *Y*-movement.

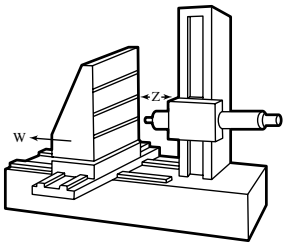


Fig. 5.

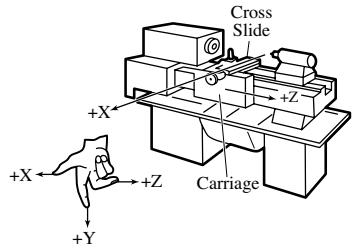


Fig. 6.

The machine shown in Fig. 6 is of conventional design, but most NC lathes look more like that shown in Fig. 7. The same right-hand rule applies to this four-axis lathe, on which each turret moves along its own two independent axes. Movement of the outside-diameter or upper turret, up and away from the workpiece, or spindle centerline, is a positive *X*-motion, and movement toward the workpiece is a negative *X*-motion. The same rules apply to the *U*-movement of the inside-diameter, or boring, turret. Movement of the lower turret parallel to the *Z*-motion of the outside-diameter turret is called the *W*-motion. A popular lathe configuration is to have both turrets on one slide, giving a two-axis system rather than the four-axis system shown. *X*-and *Z*-motions may be addressed for either of the two heads. Upward movement of the boring head therefore is a positive *X*-motion.

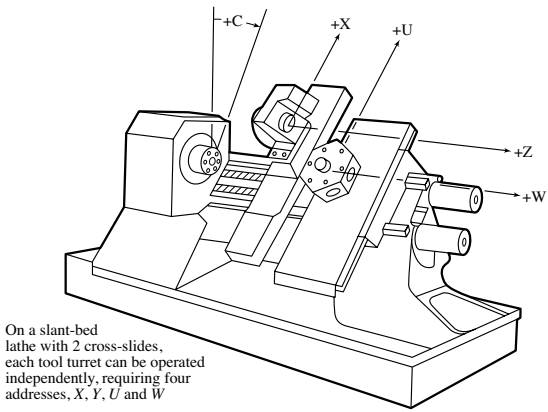
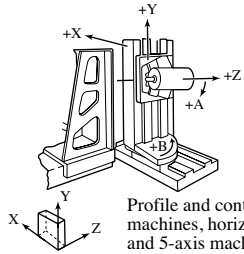


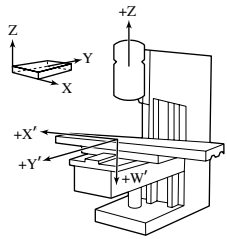
Fig. 7.

Axis nomenclature for other machine configurations is shown in Fig. 8. The letters with the prime notation (e.g., X', Y', Z', W', A', and B') mean that the motion shown is positive, because the movement of the cutter with respect to the work is in a positive direction. In these instances, the workpiece is moving rather than the cutter.

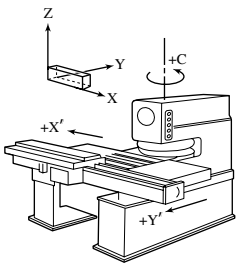
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



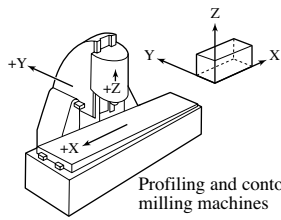
Profile and contour milling machines, horizontal spindle and 5-axis machines



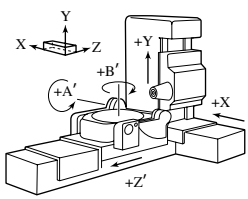
Vertical knee-type milling, drilling, or jig-boring machines



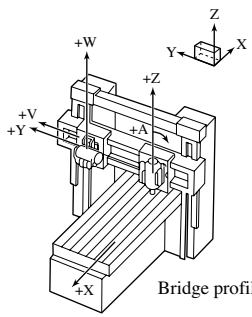
Turret type punch press



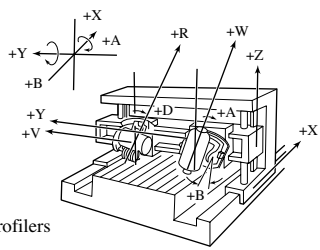
Profiling and contour milling machines



Titling table, profile and contour milling and 5-axis machines



Bridge profilers



Gantry profilers

Fig. 8.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Total Indicator Reading (TIR).—Total indicator reading is used as a measure of the range of machine tool error. TIR is particularly useful for describing the error in a machine tool spindle, referred to as runout. As shown in Fig. 9, there are two types of runout: axial and radial, which can be measured with a dial indicator. Axial runout refers to the wobble of a spindle and is measured at the spindle face. Radial runout is the range of movement of the spindle centerline and is measured on the side of the spindle or quill.

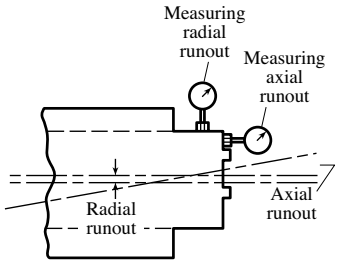


Fig. 9.

CAD/CAM

CAD in engineering means *computer-aided design* using a computer graphics system to develop mechanical, electrical/electronic, and architectural designs. A second D (CADD) is sometimes added for *computer-aided drafting and design* to indicate use of a computerized drafting or drawing program. CAD technology is the foundation for a wide variety of engineering, design, drafting, analysis, and manufacturing activities. Often a set of drawings initially developed in the design phase of a project is also used for analyzing and optimizing the design, creating mechanical drawings of parts and assemblies and for generating NC/CNC part programs that control machining operations.

Formerly, after a component had been designed with CAD, the design was passed to a part programmer, who developed a program for machining the components, either manually or directly on a computer (graphic) screen, but the process often required redefining and reentering part geometry. This procedure is often regarded as the CAM part of CAD/CAM, although CAM (for computer-aided manufacturing) has a much broader meaning and involves the computer in many other manufacturing activities, such as factory simulation and planning analyses. Improvements in the speed and capability of computers, operating systems, and programs have simplified the process of integrating the manufacturing process and passing drawings (revised, modified, and translated, as necessary) through the design, analysis, simulation, and manufacturing stages.

A CAD drawing is a graphic representation of part geometry data stored in a drawing database file. The drawing database generally contains the complete list of entity (line, arc, etc.) and coordinate information required to build the item drawn. This may include additional information required to define solid surfaces and other model characteristics.

Types of CAD Drawings.—The simplest CAD drawings are two-dimensional (2D) and conform to normal engineering drafting practice showing orthographic (front, top, and side views, for example), exploded, isometric, or other views of a component. Depending on the complexity of the part and machining requirements, 2D drawings are often sufficient for use in developing NC/CNC part programs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

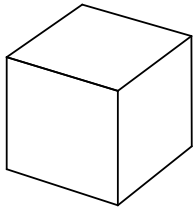


Fig. 1. Simple Wireframe Cube with Hidden Lines Removed

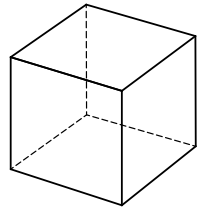


Fig. 2. Simple Wireframe Cube with Hidden Lines Shown

Wireframes are the simplest two- and three-dimensional forms of drawing images and are created by defining all edges of a part, with, where required, lines defining surfaces. Wireframe drawing elements consist primarily of lines and arcs that can be used in practically any combination. Hidden lines can be shown dashed or can be omitted from the view; hidden-line removal can be used to indicate relative elevations of the elements.

A wireframe drawing of a cube, as in Fig. 1, consists of twelve lines of equal length (some are hidden and thus not shown), each perpendicular to the others. Fig. 2 shows the same wireframe drawing of a cube but with the hidden lines shown. Information about the interior of the cube and the character of the surfaces is not included in the drawing. With such a system, if a 1-inch cube is drawn and a 0.5-inch cylinder is required to intersect the cube's surface at the center of one of its faces, the intersection points cannot be determined, because nothing is known about the area between the edges. A wireframe model of this type is ambiguous if the edges overlap or do not meet where they should.

Two-dimensional drawing elements, such as lines, arcs, and circles, are constructed by specifying point coordinates, usually x and y, to identify the location, size, and orientation of these elements. Three-dimensional (3D) drawings are also made up of a collection of lines, arcs, circles, and other drawing elements and are stored in a similar manner. A third point coordinate, z, indicates the elevation of a point in 3D drawings. On the drawing screen, working in the x–y plane, the elevation is commonly thought of as the distance of a point or object into the viewing screen (away from the observer) or out of the viewing screen (toward the observer). Coordinate axes are orientated according to the right-hand rule: If the fingers of the right hand point in the direction from the positive x axis to the positive y axis, the thumb of the right hand points in the direction of the positive z axis.

Assigning a thickness (or extruding) to objects drawn in two dimensions gives some 3D characteristics to an object and can be used to create simple prismatic 3D shapes, such as cubes and cylinders. Usually, the greatest difficulty in creating 3D drawings is in picking and visualizing the 3D points in a 2D workspace (the computer display screen). To assist in the selection of 3D points, many CAD programs use a split or windowed screen drawing area that can simultaneously show different views of a drawing. Changes made in the current or active window are reflected in the other windows. A typical window setup might show three orthogonal (mutually perpendicular) views of the drawing and a perspective or 3D view. Usually, the views can be changed as required to suit the needs of the operator.

Surface Images: A surface image defines not only the edges of the part, but also the "skin" of each face or surface. Surface models are necessary for designing free-form objects such as automotive body panels and plastics injection moldings used in consumer goods. For a surface model, the computer must be provided with the x, y, z coordinates defining each point, as in a wireframe drawing, plus much more information about the part. This may include tangent vectors, surface, and weighting information that determines how much influence one point has on another, twists, and other mathematical data that define abstract curves. For instance, Fig. 3 shows a typical 3D surface patch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

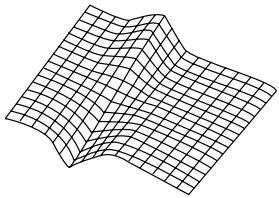


Fig. 3. A 3D Surface Patch

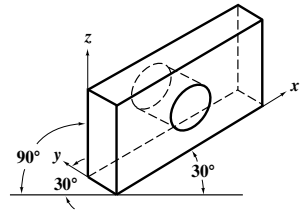


Fig. 4. Isometric Drawing Showing Orientation of Principle Drawing Axis

Solid Images: A solid image is the ultimate electronic representation of a part, containing all the necessary information about edges, surfaces, and the interior. Most solid-imaging programs can calculate volume, center of mass, centroid, and moment of inertia. Solid images may be sliced or sectioned on the screen to provide a view of the interior. This type of image is also useful for checking fit and assembly of parts.

One method for building a solid model is to perform Boolean operations on simple shapes such as cylinders, cones, cubes, and blocks. Boolean operations are used to union (join), difference (subtract one from another), and intersect (find the common volume between two objects). Thus, making a hole in a part requires subtracting a cylinder from a rectangular block, in a process called constructive solid geometry (CSG). The boundary representation type of imaging program uses profiles of 2D shapes that it extrudes, rotates, and otherwise translates in 3D space to create the required solid.

Solid images provide complete, unambiguous representation of a part, but the programs require large amounts of computer memory. Each time a Boolean operation is performed, the list of calculations to define the model becomes longer, so computation time increases. The greater the precision, the more time is needed for calculations, so compromises may be required to maintain reasonable productivity. Sometimes, combinations of different programs are used to attain a blend of flexibility, accuracy, and performance.

Drawing Projections.—Different techniques are used to display objects to give an accurate 3D appearance. Several methods are commonly used in CAD drawings.

Isometric drawings, as in Fig. 4, can be used to good effect for visualizing a part, because they give the impression of a 3D view and are often much faster to create. Isometric drawings are created in 2D space, with the *x* and *y* axes being inclined at 30 degrees to the horizontal, as shown in Fig. 4, and the *z* axis as vertical. Holes and cylinders in isometric drawings become elliptical. Because of the orientation of the *x, y,* and *z* axes, the true length of lines may not be accurately represented in isometric drawings, so dimensions should not be taken directly from a print. Some CAD programs have a special set of predefined drawing axes to facilitate creating isometric drawings.

In *parallel projections*, lines that are parallel in an object, assembly, or part being portrayed remain parallel in the drawing. Parallel projections show 3D objects in a dimensionally correct manner. Though the resulting drawing may not appear as realistic as an isometric or perspective view, it can be used for accurate relative and scaled dimensions.

A characteristic of *perspective drawings* is that parallel lines converge (see Fig. 5) so that objects that are farther away from the observer appear smaller. Perspective drawing techniques are used in some 3D drawings to convey the true look of an object, or group of objects. Because objects are not drawn to scale, dimensional information cannot be extracted from a perspective drawings. Some 3D drawing packages have a true perspective drawing capability; others use a simulation technique to portray a 3D perspective.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

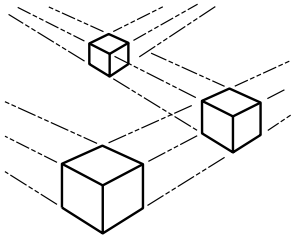


Fig. 5. Perspective Drawing of Three Equal-Size Cubes and Construction Lines

An *axonometric projection* is a 3D perpendicular projection of an object onto a surface, such that the object is tilted relative to its normal orientation. An axonometric projection of a cube, as in Fig. 1, shows three faces of the cube. Today's CAD systems are adept at using this type of view, making it easy to see an object from any angle.

Drawing Tips and Traps.—Exact decimal values should be used when entering point coordinates from the keyboard, if possible. Fractional sizes should be entered as fractions, not truncated decimals. For example, $^{5}/_{16}$ should be entered as 0.3125 or $^{5}/_{16}$, not 0.313. Accumulated rounding errors and surprises later on when parts do not fit are thus reduced. However, drawing dimensions should not have more significant digits or be more precise than necessary. Unnecessary precision in dimensioning leads to increased difficulty in production, because the part has to be made according to the accuracy level of the drawing.

Snap and *object snap* commands make selecting lines, arcs, circles, or other drawing entities faster, easier, and more accurate when picking and placing objects on the screen. Snap permits only points that are even multiples of the snap increment to be selected by the pointer. A $^{1}/_{8}$-inch snap setting, for example, will allow points to be picked at exactly $^{1}/_{8}$-inch intervals. It is important to set the *snap increment* to the smallest distance increment ($^{1}/_{4}$ inch, 1 foot, etc.) being used in the area of the drawing under construction. It also is useful to reset the snap increment frequently. The snap feature can be turned off during a command to override the setting or to select points at a smaller interval than the snap increment allows. Some systems permit setting a different snap value for each coordinate axis.

The *object snap* selection mode is designed to select points on a drawing entity according to predefined characteristics of the entity. For example, if end-point snap is in effect, picking a point anywhere along a line will select the end point of the line nearest the point picked. Other object snap modes include point, intersection, midpoint, center and quadrants of circles, tangency point (allows picking a point on an arc or circle that creates a tangent to a line), and perpendicular point (picks a point that makes a perpendicular from the base point to the object selected). When two or more object snap modes are used together, the nearest point that meets the selection criteria will be chosen.

Create Blocks of Frequently Used Objects: Once created, complete drawings or parts of drawings can be saved and later recalled into another drawing. Such objects can be scaled, copied, stretched, mirrored, rotated, or otherwise modified without changing the original. When shapes are initially drawn in unit size (i.e., fitting within a 1×1 square) and saved, they can be inserted into any drawing and easily scaled. One or more drawing elements can be saved as a group element, or *block*. Block properties vary, depending on the drawing program, but are among the most powerful features of CAD.

Typically, blocks are uniquely named and, as with simple objects, may be saved in a file. (Blocks are ideal for creating libraries of frequently used drawing symbols.) Blocks can be copied, moved, scaled, rotated, arrayed, and inserted as many times as is required in a drawing and manipulated in a drawing as one element. When scaled, each object within the block is scaled to the same degree.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Once blocked, the individual components of a block (lines, arcs, circles, surfaces, and text, for example) cannot be changed or edited. To edit them, a copy (instance) of the block must be *exploded* (unblocked) to divide it into its original components. Once exploded, all of the elements of the block (except other blocks) can be edited. When the required changes have been made, the block must be redefined (redeclared as a block by giving it a name and identifying its components). If the block is redefined using the same name, previous references to the block in the drawing will be updated to match the redefined block.

For example, an assembly drawing is needed that shows a mechanical frame with 24 similar control panels attached to it. Once one of the panels is drawn and defined as a block (using the name *PANEL*, for instance), the block can be inserted (or copied) into the drawing 24 times. Later, if changes need to be made to the panel design, one instance of the block *PANEL* can be exploded, modified, and redefined with the name *PANEL*. When *PANEL* is redefined, every other copy of the *PANEL* block in the drawing is also redefined, so every copy of *PANEL* in the drawing is updated. On the other hand, if the block was redefined with a different name, say, *PANEL1*, existing copies of *PANEL* would remain unchanged. When redefining a block that already exists in the drawing, be sure to use the same insertion point that was used for the original definition of the block; otherwise, the positions of existing blocks with the same name also will be changed.

It is worth noting that many manufacturers distribute drawings of their products in libraries of CAD drawings, usually as DWG or DXF files that can be incorporated into existing drawings. The suitability of such drawings depends on the CAD program, drawing format being used, skill of the technician who created the drawings, and accuracy of the drawings. An example, Fig. 6, shows a sewage pump assembly drawing. Libraries of frequently used drawing symbols and blocks are also available from commercial sources.

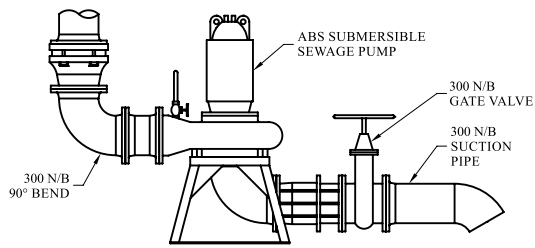


Fig. 6. Available CAD Drawing of a Sewage Pump Assembly

Use of Text Attributes to Request Drawing Information Automatically: Text attributes are a useful method for attaching textual information to a particular part or feature of a drawing. An attribute is basically a text variable that has a name and can be assigned a value. Attributes are created by defining attribute characteristics such as a name, location in the drawing, text size and style, and default value.

Fig. 7 shows two views of a title block for size A, B, C, and G drawing sheets. The top view includes the title block dimensions per ASME Y14.1-2012, with the names and locations of the attributes (COMPANY, TITLE1, TITLE2, etc.). The first step for creating this title block is to draw the frame of the title block and define the attributes (name, location, and default value for: company name and address, drawing titles [2 lines], drawing size, drawing number, revision number, scale, and sheet number). Then the block must be created and named with the title frame and the attribute definitions.

When the block is inserted into a drawing, the operator is asked to enter the attribute values (company name, drawing title, etc.). The bottom view in Fig. 7 shows a completed title block as it might appear in a drawing. A complete drawing sheet could include several

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

blocks: a sheet frame, a revision block, a parts list block, and any others needed. Some might be combined into a single block for insertion into a drawing at one time.

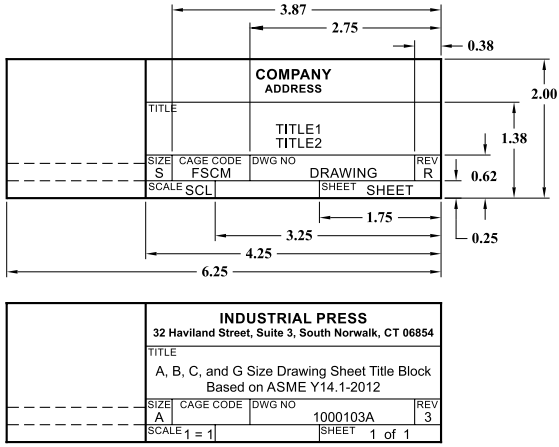


Fig. 7. Top: Title Block for A, B, C and G Drawing Sheets Showing Placement of Text Attributes with ASME Standard Dimensions for Creating this Block. Bottom: Completed Title Block

Define a Default Drawing Configuration: Drawing features used in a particular type of drawing can be set up in a template file so that default settings, such as text and dimension styles, text size, drawing limits, and initial view, are set up when a new drawing is started. Different configurations can be defined for each drawing type, such as assembly, parts, or circuit drawings. When creating a new drawing, you can use a template file as a pattern or open a template file and use it to create the new drawing.

Use Appropriate Detail: Excessive detail may reduce the effectiveness of the drawing, increase the drawing time on individual commands and the overall time spent on a drawing, and reduce performance and speed of the CAD program. Wherever possible, symbolic drawing elements should be used to represent more complicated parts of a drawing unless the appearance of that particular component is essential to the drawing.

Scaling Text on Drawing Sheets: It is usually desirable that text, dimensions, and a few other features on drawings stay a consistent size on each sheet, even when the drawing size is different. The following procedure ensures that text and dimensions (other features as well, if desired) will be the same size from drawing to drawing, without resorting to scaling the drawing to fit onto the drawing sheet.

Example: Create a drawing sheet having the dimensions of the actual sheet to be output (A, B, C, D, or E size, for example). Use text attributes, such as the title block illustrated in Fig. 7, to include text that needs to be entered each time the drawing sheet is used. Create a block of the drawing sheet, including the text attributes, and save the block to disk. Repeat for each size drawing sheet required. Establish the text and dimension size requirements for the drawing sheet when it is plotted full size (1:1 scale). Use Table 1 as a guide to recommended text sizes. Test the sheet by placing text and dimensions on the drawing sheet. Plot a copy of the sheet to check that text and dimensions are the expected size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Standard Sizes of Mechanical Drawing Lettering *ANSI/ASME Y14.2-2014*

Use For	Inch		Metric	
	Min. Letter Heights, (in.)	Drawing Size	Min. Letter Heights, (mm)	Drawing Size
Drawing title, drawing size, CAGE Code, drawing number, and revision letter[a]	0.24	D, E, F, H, J, K	6	A0, A1
	0.12	A, B, C, G	3	A2, A3, A4
Section and view letters	0.24	All	6	All
Zone letters and numerals in borders	0.24	All	6	All
Drawing block headings	0.10	All	2.5	All
All other characters	0.12	All	3	All

[a] When used within the title block.

Drawing Exchange Standards.—The ability to transfer working data between different CAD, CAD/CAM, design analysis, and NC/CNC programs is one of the most important requirements of engineering drawing programs. Once an engineer, designer, draftsman, or machinist enters relevant product data into his or her machine (computer or machine tool), the information defining the characteristics of the product should be available to the others involved in the project without recreating or reentering it. In view of manufacturing goals of reducing lead time and increasing productivity, concurrent engineering, and improved product performance, interchangeable data are a critical component in a CAD/CAM program.

DXF stands for *Drawing Exchange Format* and is a pseudo-standard file format used for exchanging drawings and associated information between different CAD and design analysis programs. Nearly all 2D and 3D CAD programs support some sort of drawing exchange through the use of DXF files, and most can read and export DXF files. There are, however, differences in the drawing features supported and the manner the DXF files are handled by each program. For example, if a 3D drawing is exported in the DXF format and imported into a 2D CAD program, some loss of information results, because all the 3D features are not supported by the 2D program. Most common drawing entities (lines, arcs, etc.) will transfer, although other problems may occur. For example, entities treated as a single object (such as blocks, hatch patterns, and symbols) may be divided into hundreds of components when converted into a DXF file, making the drawing more difficult to edit.

IGES stands for *Initial Graphics Exchange Specification* and is a means of exchanging or converting drawings and CAD file for use in a different computer graphics system. Normally, a drawing prepared on the computer graphics system used by company A would have to be redrawn before it would operate on a different computer graphics system used by company B. However, with IGES, the drawing can be passed through a software package called a preprocessor, which converts it into a standardized IGES format that can be saved on a storage device, such as a portable hard drive or memory stick. A postprocessor at company B is then used to convert the standard IGES format to that required for their graphics system. Most graphics software companies have or can assist with IGES programs for file conversion.

STEP stands for *Standard for the Exchange of Product Model Data* and is a series of existing and proposed ISO standards written to allow access to all the data surrounding a product. It extends the IGES idea of providing a geometric data transfer to include all the other data that would need to be communicated about a product over its lifetime, and facilitates the use and accessibility of the product data. Although STEP is a new standard, software tools have been developed for converting data between IGES and STEP formats.

STL, an abbreviation for *standard tessellation language,* is the format primarily used to send CAD drawings to additive manufacturing machines. Many full-featured CAD systems support translation of drawing files into STL format. CAD programs without STL file format capability can use the IGES or DXF file format, but this process can be time-consuming and expensive, because added steps may be needed to recreate features lost in conversion; also unwanted changes may occur. The safest route, reducing unexpected errors, is to create a CAD model and export it directly into the STL format. Reverse STL generators are available to display a file saved in STL format or convert it into a form that can be imported into a CAD program. For more on this topic, see *Metal Additive Manufacturing* on page 1555.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SHEET METAL WORKING AND PRESSES

1401 Basic Theory of Metal Working
1402 Stress-Strain Relationship
1404 Designing Parts for Production
1406 Shearing
1406 Shearing Forces
1408 Clearance
1408 Cutoff and Parting
1409 Blanking and Punching
1410 Clearance
1412 Die Opening Profile
1412 Deformation Force, Work, and Force of Press
1413 Stripper Force
1413 Blanking Pressure
1414 Fine Blanking
1416 Shaving
1417 Bending
1417 Inside Bend Radius
1423 Three-Roll Bending
1423 Two-Roll Bending
1424 Drawing
1424 Mechanics of Deep Drawing
1427 Blanks for Cylindrical Shells
1430 Ironing Process
1431 Stretch Forming
1432 Spinning
1434 Rubber Pad and Hydroforming
1435 Superplastic Forming and Diffusion Bonding
1439 High-Energy Rate Metal Forming
1439 Explosive
1440 Electromagnetic
1441 Electrohydraulic
1442 Lubricants and Their Effects on Press Work
1443 Joining and Edging
1444 Sheet Metal Joints
1446 Other Types of Duct Connections
1447 Flanged Duct Connections
1448 Sheet Metal Mill Finishes
1453 Sheet Metal Gauge Sizes
1454 Classification of Dies
1454 Single-Station
1454 Multiple-Station
1455 Steel Rule
1458 Pipe and Tube Bending
1459 Press Bending
1460 Rotary Draw

SHEET METAL WORKING AND PRESSES

(Continued)

1461 Compression
1461 Roll
1461 Use of Filling Material
1462 Presses for Sheet Metal Working
1462 Mechanical
1464 Gap-Frame
1465 Straight Side
1465 Hydraulic
1466 Mechanical versus Hydraulic
1467 Lubrication System
1468 Press Selection

ELECTRICAL DISCHARGE MACHINING

1469 EDM Terms
1471 EDM Process
1474 Electrical Control Adjustments
1475 Workpiece Materials
1475 Characteristics of Materials
1475 Electrode Materials
1476 Types of Electrodes
1477 Making Electrodes
1479 Wire EDM

METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION

1480 Material Properties for Iron and Steel Casting
1480 Gray Cast Iron
1480 White Cast Iron
1480 Chilled Cast Iron
1480 Alloy Cast Iron
1481 Malleable-Iron Castings
1481 Ductile Cast Iron
1482 Steel Castings
1482 Carbon Steel Castings
1483 Alloy Steel Castings
1484 Heat-Resistant Steel Castings
1485 Corrosion-Resistant Steel Castings
1486 Nonferrous Casting Metals
1486 Aluminum
1487 Copper
1488 Magnesium
1488 Casting of Metals
1489 Heating and Pouring the Metal
1490 Fluid Flow

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION

(Continued)

1491 Fluidity of Molten Metal
1492 Test for Fluidity
1492 Heat Transfer
1492 Solidification and Cooling of Metals
1493 Pure Metal
1493 Alloys
1494 Time
1494 Shrinkage
1495 Defects in Casting
1496 Metal Casting and Molding Processes
1497 Sand Casting
1497 Sands
1497 Types of Sand Molds
1498 Features of Sand Molds
1498 Patterns
1499 Cores
1499 Sand Molding Techniques
1500 Sand Casting Operation
1501 Rammed Graphite Molding
1501 Shell Molding
1502 Expendable-Pattern Casting
1503 Plaster Mold Casting
1503 Ceramic Mold Casting
1504 Precision Investment Casting
1504 Materials That May Be Cast
1504 General Procedure
1504 Master Mold
1505 Shrinkage Allowances for Patterns
1505 Dimensions and Tolerances
1505 Investment Materials
1505 Casting Operations
1506 Investment Removal
1506 Accuracy
1506 Casting Weights and Sizes
1506 Design for Investment Casting
1506 Casting Milling Cutters
1506 Hard Mold Casting
1507 Vacuum Casting
1508 Slush Casting
1508 Pressure Casting
1509 Die Casting
1509 Hot-Chamber Process
1510 Cold-Chamber Process
1510 Centrifugal Casting
1511 True Centrifugal Casting
1512 Semicentrifugal Casting
1512 Centrifuge Casting

METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION

(Continued)

1513 Squeeze Casting
1514 Design Considerations for Casting
1516 Joint Design
1516 Parting Line
1517 Gating System
1518 Using Computer Modeling to Optimize Casting Processes
1519 Extrusion of Metals

POWDER METALLURGY

1522 Introduction
1523 Characteristics of Metal Powders
1523 Particle Size Measurement and Distribution
1525 Particle Shape and Internal Structure
1526 Friction and Flow Characteristics of Particles
1527 Packing, Density, and Porosity
1529 Production of Metallic Powder
1529 Atomization
1531 Mechanical Processes
1532 Chemical Processes
1533 Electrolytic Deposition
1533 Hybrid Atomization
1534 Powder Manufacturing Processes for Metal Parts
1534 Blending and Mixing Powders
1535 Compaction of Metallic Powder
1537 Sintering
1539 Liquid Phase Sintering
1539 Isostatic Pressing
1541 Powder Injection Molding
1542 Powder Rolling, Extrusion, and Forging
1544 Powder Metallurgy Materials
1544 Conventional Materials
1546 Advanced Materials
1548 Design Considerations in Powder Metallurgy
1548 Sizes and Shapes
1549 Design Details
1551 Design of Typical Parts
1552 Economics of Powder Metallurgy
1553 Powder Metallurgy Standards
1553 ISO Standards
1554 ASTM Standards
1554 MPIF Standards

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

POWDER METALLURGY

(Continued)

1555 Metal Additive Manufacturing (AM)
1555 Additive Manufacturing Workflow
1556 Powder Bed Fusion
1559 Binder Jetting
1560 Directed Energy Deposition
1561 Comparing AM with Conventional Processes
1563 Unique Capabilities of Metal AM
1565 Standards for Additive Manufacturing

SOLDERING AND BRAZING

1566 Soldering
1566 Forms Available
1566 Fluxes for Soldering
1566 Methods of Application
1568 Ultrasonic Fluxless Soldering
1568 Brazing
1568 Filler Metals
1569 Selection of Filler Metals
1571 Brazing Filler Metals
1572 Fluxes for Brazing
1573 Methods of Steadying Work
1573 Methods of Supplying Heat
1573 Brazing Symbol Application

WELDING

1575 Electrodes, Fluxes, and Processes
1575 Processes
1576 Heat Input and Weld Distortion
1576 Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW)
1577 Electrode Diameters
1577 Maximum Deposition Rates
1577 GMAW Welding of Sheet Steel
1578 Shielding Gases
1580 Welding Controls
1581 GMAW Spray Transfer
1581 Deposition Rates of Electrodes
1583 Optimum Settings for GMAW
1583 Spray Transfer Voltage
1584 Flux-Cored Arc Welding
1584 Flux-Cored Welding Electrodes
1584 Gas-Shielded Electrodes
1585 Settings for FCAW Electrodes
1585 Weld Requirements
1585 Selecting an FCAW Electrode

WELDING

(Continued)

1586 FCAW Welding of Low-Carbon Steels
1586 Settings for Gas-Shielded, All-Position, FCAW Electrodes
1587 Contact Tip Recess
1587 Porosity and Worm Tracks
1587 Welding with Various Diameters
1588 High-Deposition, All-Position Electrodes
1589 Electrode Diameters and Deposition Rates
1591 Shielding Gases and FCAW Electrodes
1591 Shielded Metal Arc Welding
1591 ANSI/AWS Standard
1592 AWS E60XX Electrodes
1594 AWS E70XX Electrodes
1595 Gas Tungsten Arc Welding
1595 GTAW Welding Current
1597 Tungsten Electrode-Type
1598 Electrode and Current Selection
1598 Current Ranges
1600 Filler Metals
1600 Shielding Gases
1600 Plasma Arc Welding (PAW)
1600 Gases for Welding
1601 Shielding Gases
1601 PAW Welding Equipment
1601 Applications
1602 Welding Aluminum
1603 Plasma Arc Surface Coating
1604 Plasma Arc Cutting of Metals
1604 Cutting Metals with an Oxidizing Flame
1604 Arc Cutting
1604 Cutting Torch
1604 Adjustment of Cutting Torch
1605 Metals That Can Be Cut
1605 Cutting Stainless Steel
1605 Cutting Cast Iron
1605 Mechanically Guided Torches
1605 Cutting Steel Castings
1605 Thickness of Metal
1606 Hard Facing
1606 Hard-Facing Materials
1606 High-Speed Steels
1606 Austenitic Manganese Steels

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

WELDING

(Continued)

1607 Austenitic High-Chromium Irons
1607 Cobalt-Base Alloys
1608 Copper-Base Alloys
1608 Nickel-Chromium-Boron Alloys
1609 Chromium Plating
1610 Electron-Beam (EB) Welding
1611 Pipe Welding
1613 Use of Flux-Cored Electrodes
1614 Complete Weld Fusion
1615 Other Methods
1615 Pipe Welding Procedure
1615 Thick-Walled, Carbon-Steel Pipes for Root Welding
1616 Fill and Cover Welds
1617 Thin-Walled Carbon Steel Pipes, Root, Fill and Cover Pass
1618 Weld and Welding Symbols
1618 Standard Weld and Welding Symbols
1619 Basic Weld Symbols
1620 Supplementary Weld Symbols
1620 Welding Codes, Rules, Regulations, and Specifications
1621 Letter Designations for Welding
1622 ANSI Welding Symbols
1627 Nondestructive Testing
1627 Methods
1629 Other NDT Methods
1630 Symbol Application

FINISHING OPERATIONS

1632 Power Brush Finishing
1632 Description of Brushes
1632 Use of Brushes
1632 Deburring and Producing a Radius
1633 Adjustments for Eliminating Undesirable Conditions
1633 Polishing and Buffing
1633 Polishing Wheels
1636 Polishing Operations and Abrasives
1636 Buffing Wheels
1636 Speed of Polishing Wheels
1637 Grain Numbers of Emery
1637 Grades of Emery Cloth
1637 Mixture for Cementing Emery Cloth to a Lapping Wheel
1637 Etching and Etching Fluids
1638 Conversion Coatings and the Coloring of Metals
1638 Passivation of Copper
1638 Coloring of Copper Alloys
1639 Coloring of Iron and Steel
1639 Anodizing Aluminum Alloys
1640 Magnesium Alloys
1640 Titanium Alloys
1640 Plating
1640 Surface Coatings
1648 Flame Spraying Process

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SHEET METAL WORKING AND PRESSES

Basic Theory of Metal Working

Metal working theory provides a background from which reasonable evaluations may be made of the deformations obtainable without instability and fracture. The fundamental principles, rules, and laws of metal working theory are used to describe the plastic flow or deformation of solid materials when subjected to external loads. For this purpose, such materials are considered as homogeneous, continuous, isotropic media. Understanding the theory underlying metal working is important for both the design and production engineer.

Solid materials may be subjected to forces that may be classified as either volume forces or surface forces. In this discussion, only surface forces acting on the surface as external forces are considered.

In analyzing design situations for either dimensioning purposes or forming processes, it is most appropriate to use force per unit area as a measure of the load rather than the total force distributed over the area.

The force per unit area is called the *stress* (σ) and is described as follows:

$$\sigma = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}} \tag{1}$$

Common ways of loading solid bodies include compression, tension, shear, torsion, or a combination of these stresses, such as fatigue. Fig. 1 shows a tensile specimen loaded with force F. The stress on a cross section A perpendicular to the longitudinal axis is defined

$$\sigma = \frac{F}{A} \tag{2}$$

where F = force (lb) and A = cross-sectional area (in^2).

If a cross section is inclined at an angle to the longitudinal axis, the mean oblique stress may be defined by

$$\sigma_m = \frac{F}{A_\theta} = \frac{F}{A}\sin\theta \tag{3}$$

where A_θ = inclined cross-sectional area of specimen (in^2); and, θ = inclined angle cross-sectional area of specimen (°).

The mean oblique stress lies in the direction of the longitudinal axis of the specimen. Force F can be divided into components F_n, which is perpendicular to cross section A_θ and F_t, which is parallel to cross section A_θ, so that the state of the stresses can be defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_\theta &= \frac{F_n}{A_\theta} = \frac{F}{A}\sin^2\theta \\ \tau_\theta &= \frac{F_t}{A_\theta} = \frac{F}{2A}\sin 2\theta \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

where σ_θ = normal stress—stress normal to cross section A_θ (lb/in^2); and τ_θ= shear stress—stress parallel to cross section A_θ (lb/in^2).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

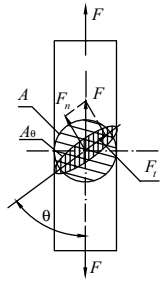


Fig. 1. A Tensile Specimen with Cross-Sectional Area *A* Subjected to the Load *F*

Stress-Strain Relationship.—When solid materials are subjected to stress, they usually respond in an elastic fashion; that is, the strain produced by the stress is reversible (the strain goes back to zero when the stress is removed), and the magnitude of the strain is directly proportional to the magnitude of the stress. This relationship between stress and strain is usually referred to as *Hooke's Law* and can be written

$$\frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} = E = \text{constant} \tag{5}$$

where E = modulus of elasticity (lb/in^2).

The most common procedure for describing the various relationships between stress and strain is the tensile test, which is used to determine the modulus of elasticity, the elastic limit, the elongation, the proportional limit, the reduction area, the tensile strength, the yield point, the yield strength, and other tensile properties. The stress (σ), calculated from the load, and the strain (ε), calculated from the extension, can either be plotted as

1) nominal (engineering) stress-strain, or

2) true stress-strain

The first is more important in design, and the second is more important in manufacturing. The graphs used in each case will be different.

Nominal Stress-Strain: Nominal stress, also called engineering stress, is defined as the ratio of the applied load F to the original cross-sectional area A of the specimen:

$$\sigma_n = \frac{F}{A_0} \tag{6}$$

where σ_n = nominal stress (lb/in^2); F = applied load in the test (lb); and, A_0 = original cross-section area of specimen (in^2).

Nominal strain is defined as

$$\varepsilon_n = \frac{l - l_0}{l} = \frac{\Delta l}{l} \tag{7}$$

where ε_n = nominal strain (in./in.); l_0 = original gauge length (in.); and l = instantaneous length of the specimen (in.).

True Stress-Strain: A nominal stress-strain curve does not give a true indication of the deformation characteristic of a solid because it is based on the original cross-sectional area A_0 of the specimen, and this dimension changes continuously during the test. In the solution of technical problems in metalworking, true stress and true strain are much more important.

True stress σ is defined as the ratio of the load F to the actual stress-section area A of the specimen:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\sigma = \frac{F}{A} \tag{8}$$

where σ = true stress (lb/in^2); F = applied load in the test (lb); A = actual area (instantaneous) area resisting the load (in^2).

True strain in a tensile test can be defined by dividing the total elongation into small increments of actual change in length. Then, using calculus, it can be shown that true strain is defined by the equation

$$\varepsilon = \ln\left(\frac{l}{l_0}\right) \tag{9}$$

where ε = true strain (in./in.); and l = instantaneous length at any moment during elongation (in.).

If the true stress, based on the actual (instantaneous) cross section area of the specimen, is used, it is found that the stress-strain curve increases continuously up to fracture. If the strain measurement is also based on instantaneous measurements, the curve obtained is known as a true stress-strain curve (Fig. 2).

The stress-strain curve in Fig. 2(a) can be represented by the equation

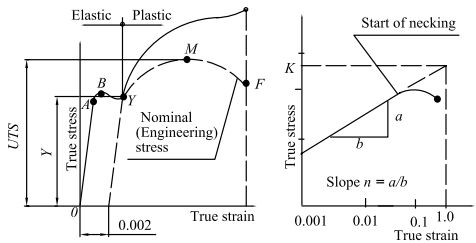
$$\sigma = K\varepsilon^n \tag{10}$$

where K = the strength coefficient (lb/in^2), and n = strain-hardening (work-hardening) exponent.

This equation is called the *flow curve*, and it represents the behavior of metals in the plastic zone, including their capacity for cold strain hardening.

When the curve shown in Fig. 2(a) is plotted on a logarithmic graph as in Fig. 2(b), it is found that the curve is a straight line, and the slope of the line is equal to the exponent n. The value of constant K equals the value of true stress at a true strain value to 1.

The strain-hardening exponent may have a value from $n = 0$ (perfectly plastic solid) to $n = 1$ (elastic solid). For most metals, n has values between 0.10 and 0.50.



a) Nonlogarithmic b) Logarithmic

Fig. 2. True Stress-Strain Curve for Medium Steel

Ductility is most commonly defined as the ability of a metal to plastically deform easily upon application of a tensile force without breaking or fracturing. Ductility may be expressed as either percentage of elongation or percentage of area reduction in the specimen.

Elongation can be defined as

$$\delta = \frac{l_f - l_0}{l_0} \times 100 \tag{11}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Reduction can be defined as

$$\psi = \frac{A_0 - A_f}{A_0} \times 100 \tag{12}$$

where l_f = length at the fracture (in.); l_0 = the original specimen's gauge length (in.); A_0 = original specimen's gauge cross-sectional area, (in^2); A_f = cross-sectional area of the specimen at the fracture, (in^2). *Note:* l_f length is measured between the original gauge marks after the pieces of the broken specimen are placed together.

Elongation ranges between about 8 and 60 percent for most metals, and typical measurements for reduction of area range from about 20 to 90 percent. Ductile materials such as thermoplastic and superplastic materials show large deformation before fracture, and of course, exhibit much higher ductility, but brittle materials have little or no ductility.

Designing Sheet Metal Parts for Production

Sheet metal parts should be designed to satisfy the following criteria:

The parts should allow high productivity rates.

They should make highly efficient use of the materials involved.

The production machines should be easy to service.

Machines should be usable by workers with relatively basic skills.

Unfortunately, very few product designers concern themselves with suitability of production; their prime concern is usually the function of the part.

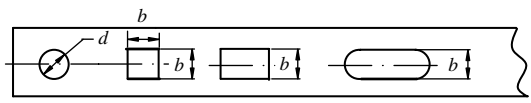
Design rules for parts to be produced by blanking and punching:

Avoid part design with complex configurations.

Use minimum dimensions of punched openings relative to material thickness given in Table 1.

Use minimum distances between punched opening and rounded radius relative to material thickness given in Table 2.

Table 1. Minimal Dimensions of Punched Openings

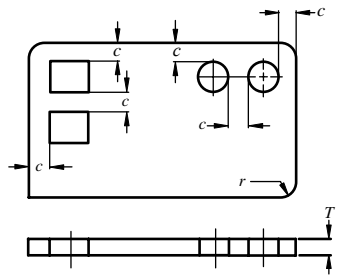
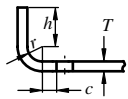
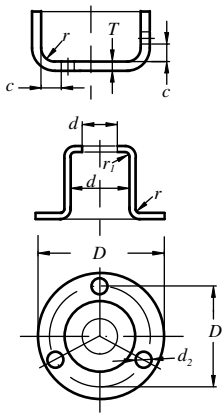


Material	Form of opening			
	Circle d_{min} =	Square b_{min} =	Rectangular b_{min} =	Oval b_{min} =
Stainless steel	1.50 *T*	1.40 *T*	1.20 *T*	1.10 *T*
High-carbon steel	1.20 *T*	1.10 *T*	0.90 *T*	0.80 *T*
Medium-carbon steel	1.00 *T*	0.90 *T*	0.70 *T*	0.60 *T*
Low-carbon steel	0.90 *T*	0.80 *T*	0.60 *T*	0.55 *T*
Brass and copper	0.80 *T*	0.70 *T*	0.60 *T*	0.55 *T*
Magnesium alloy at 500° F	0.25 *T*	0.45 *T*	0.35 *T*	0.30 *T*

Note: With fine punching process, minimal diameter of punched hole is (0.50 - 0.70) *T*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Minimum Distance between Punched Opening and Edges and Rounded Radius

Part is	Form of opening	Minimum Distance	Sketch
Blanked	Circle	$c \geq T$ $r \geq 0.5T$	
	Rectangle	$c \geq 1.2T$ $r \geq 0.5T$	
Bent	Circle	$c \geq 2T$ $r \geq (0.5 - 1.0)T$ [a] $r \geq (1.0 - 2.0)T$ [b] $r \geq (2.0 - 3.0)T$ [c]	
Drawn	Circle	$d \leq (d_1 - 2r)$ $D_1 \geq (d_1 - 2r)$ $D \geq (D_1 + 3T + d_2)$ $c \geq r + 0.5T$	

[a] Al and brass
[b] Steel
[c] Al-alloy 6000 series

Design rules for parts produced by bending:

Minimum bend radius should be used only if it is necessary for correct function of part.
The bend radius should be larger than the thickness of the material.
Use minimum distances between punched opening and bend radius given in Table 2.
Flange length as shown in Table 2 needs to be $h \geq 2T$.
If a part has more than one bend, it is necessary to define technological data.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design rules of parts produced by drawing:

Avoid very complicated parts.

Make diameter of flange D less than three times the diameter of shell ($D < 3d$), if height h of shell is greater than twice the diameter of shell ($h > 2d$) as shown in Table 2.

Avoid design of rectangular and square shells with bottom radii less than the corner radius in the junction area.

The shortest distance between corner radii should be no less than the depth of shell.

Shearing

Shearing involves the cutting of flat material such as metal sheets, plates, or strips. To be classified as shearing, the cutting action must be along a straight line. The piece of sheet metal sheared off may or may not be called a blank. Shearing is performed in a special machine with different types of blades or cutters. The machines may be foot-, hand-, or power-operated. The shear is equipped with long or rotary blades for cutting. The upper blade of power shears is often inclined to reduce the required cutting force.

During shearing operations, three phases (Fig. 3) may be noted:

Phase I - Plastic Deformation: As the upper blade begins to push into the work material, plastic deformation occurs in the surfaces of the sheet, and the stress on the material is lower than the yield stress.

Phase II - Penetration: As the blade moves downward, penetration occurs, in which the blade compresses the work material and cuts into the metal. In this phase, the stress on the material is higher than the yield stress but lower than the ultimate tensile strength (*UTS*).

Phase III - Fracture: As the blade continues to travel into the work material, fracture begins in the material at the two cutting edges. The stress on the work material is equal to the shearing stress. If the clearance between the blades is correct, the two fracture lines meet, resulting in a separation of the work material into two parts.

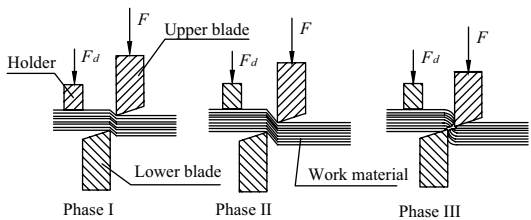


Fig. 3. Schematic Illustration of the Phases of Shearing

Shearing is the preferred way to cut blanks whenever the blank shape permits its use. In most cases, however, the limitation of straight lines in the shape of the blank eliminates the use of shears. Shearing is economical because no expensive dies have to be made for cutting out the blanks. Shearing is used for the following purposes:

1) To cut strip or coiled stock into blanks

2) To cut strip or coiled stock into smaller strips to feed into a blanking or drawing die

3) To trim large sheets, squaring the edges of the sheet.

Shearing Forces.—Calculating the force and power involved in shearing operations varies according to the types of blades. There are three types of blades:

a) straight parallel blades; b) straight inclined blades; and c) rotary cutters.

Shearing with Straight Parallel Blades: The shearing force with straight parallel cutters can be calculated approximately as

$$F = \tau A \tag{13}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where F = shearing force (lb); τ = shear strength of the material (lb/in^2); and A = cutting area (in^2). The cutting area is calculated as

$$A = bT \tag{13a}$$

where b = length of the cutting material (in.), and T = thickness of material (in.).

This calculated shearing force needs to be increased by 20 to 40 percent, depending on whether the following conditions exist: an enlarged clearance between the blades, variations in the thickness of the material, the obtuseness of the cutting edge angles, and other unpredictable factors.

The real force of the shearing machine is

$$F_M = 1.3F \tag{14}$$

Shearing with Straight Inclined Blades: Shears with straight inclined blades are used for cutting material of relatively small thickness compared with the width of cutting. Using inclined blades reduces the shearing force and increases the range of movement necessary to disjoin the material. The penetration of the upper blade into the material is gradual and as a result, the shearing force is lower.

The shearing force can be calculated as

$$F = n \cdot k \cdot UTS \cdot \lambda \frac{T^2}{\tan \phi} \tag{15}$$

where n = 0.75 to 0.85 (for most materials); k = 0.7 to 0.8 (ratio UTS/τ); λ = the relative amount of penetration of the upper blade into material (Table 3); and, ϕ = angle of inclination of the upper blade.

Table 3. Relative Amount of Penetration of the Blade into the Material

Material	Thickness of material T, inch (mm)			
	< 0.04 in. (< 1.0 mm)	0.04–0.08 in. (1.0–2.0 mm)	0.08–0.16 in. (2–4 mm)	> 0.16 in. (> 4 mm)
Plain carbon steel	0.75 to 0.70	0.70 to 0.65	0.65 to 0.55	0.50 to 0.40
Medium steel	0.65 to 0.60	0.60 to 0.55	0.55 to 0.48	0.45 to 0.35
Hard steel	0.50 to 0.47	0.47 to 0.45	0.44 to 0.38	0.35 to 0.25
Aluminum and copper (annealed)	0.80 to 0.75	0.75 to 0.70	0.70 to 0.60	0.60 to 0.50

The real force of the shearing machine is

$$F_M = 1.3F \tag{16}$$

Shearing with Rotary Cutters: The rotary shearing operation is much like shearing with straight inclined blades because the straight blade may be thought of as a rotary cutter with an endless radius. It is possible to make straight line cuts as well as to produce circular blanks and irregular shapes by this method. Fig. 4 illustrates the conventional arrangement of the cutters in a rotary shearing machine for the production of a perpendicular edge. Only the upper cutter is rotated by the power drive system. The upper cutter pinches the material and causes it to rotate between the two cutters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

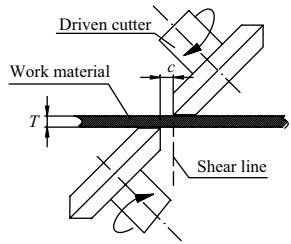


Fig. 4. Schematic Illustration of Shearing with Rotary Cutters

Shearing force with rotary cutters can be calculated approximately as

$$F = n \cdot k \cdot UTS \cdot \lambda \frac{T^2}{2 \tan \phi} \tag{17}$$

where $\phi = \text{acos}\left[1 - \frac{\mu + T}{D}\right]$; μ = lap of cutters (in.); T = thickness of material (in.); D = diameter of cutter (in.); n = 0.75 to 0.85 (for most materials); k = 0.7 to 0.8 (ratio UTS/τ); and, λ = relative amount of penetration of the cutters (Table 3).

The real force of a shearing machine with rotary cutter is

$$F_M = 1.3F \tag{18}$$

Rotary shearing machines are equipped with special holding fixtures that rotate the work material to generate the desired circle.

Clearance.—Clearance is defined as the space between the upper and lower blades. Without proper clearance, the cutting action no longer progresses. With too little clearance, a defect known as "secondary shear" is produced. If too much clearance is used, extreme plastic deformation will occur. Proper clearance may be defined as that clearance which causes no secondary shear and a minimum of plastic deformation.

The clearance between straight blades (parallel and inclined) is: $c = (0.02 \text{ to } 0.05)$, mm.

The clearance between rotary cutters with parallel inclined axes is

$$c = (0.1 \text{ to } 0.2)T \tag{19}$$

where T = material thickness (in.).

Cutoff and Parting

Cutoff.—Cutoff is a shearing operation in which the shearing action must be along a line. The pieces of sheet metal cutoff are the blanks. Fig. 5 shows several types of cutoff operations. As seen in the illustration, a cutoff is made by one or more single line cuts. The line of cutting may be straight, curved, or angular. The blanks need to be nested on the strip in such a way that scrap is avoided. Some scrap may be produced at the start of a new strip or coil of sheet metal in certain cases. This small amount is usually negligible.

The use of cutoff operations is limited by the shape of a blank. Only blanks that nest perfectly may be produced by this operation. Cutoff is performed in a die and therefore may be classified as a stamping operation. With each cut, a new part is produced. More blanks may be produced per stroke of the press ram by adding more single-line cutting edges.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

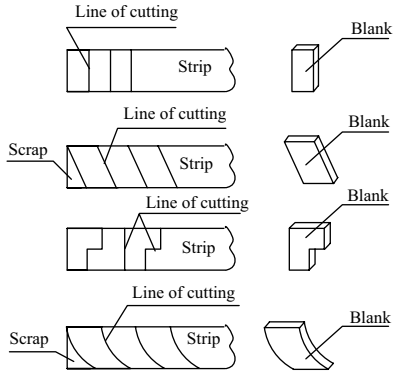


Fig. 5. Types of Cutoff

Parting.—Parting is a cutting operation of a sheet metal strip by a die with cutting edges on two opposite sides. During parting, some amount of scrap is produced, as shown in Fig. 6. This might be required when the blank outline is not a regular shape and is precluded from perfectly nesting on the strip. Thus, parting is not as efficient an operation as cutoff.

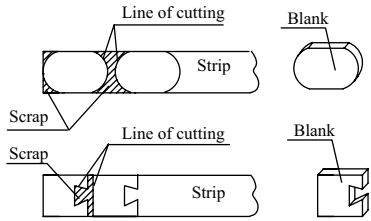


Fig. 6. Types of Parting

Blanking and Punching

Blanking and punching are fabricating processes used to cut materials into forms by the use of a die. Major variables in these processes are as follows: the punch force, the speed of the punch, the surface condition and materials of the punch and die, the condition of the blade edge of the punch and die, the lubricant, and the amount of clearance.

In blanking, a workpiece is removed from the primary material strip or sheet when it is punched. The material that is removed is the new workpiece or blank. Punching is a fabricating process that removes a scrap slug from the workpiece each time a punch enters the punching die. This process leaves a hole in the workpiece (Fig. 7).

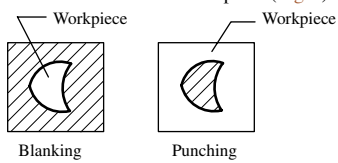


Fig. 7. Blanking and Punching

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Characteristics of the blanking process include:

1) Ability to produce workpieces in both strip and sheet material during medium and mass production.

2) Removal of the workpiece from the primary material stock as a punch enters a die.

3) Control of the quality by the punch and die clearance.

4) Ability to produce holes of varying shapes quickly.

Characteristics of the punching process include:

1) Ability to produce holes in both strip and sheet material during medium and mass production.

2) Ability to produce holes of varying shapes quickly.

There are three phases in the process of shearing during blanking and punching as illustrated in Fig. 8.

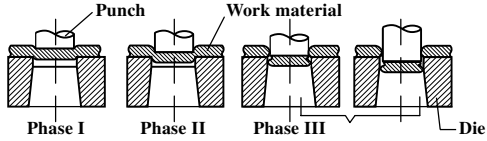


Fig. 8. Phases in the Process of Shearing

In Phase I, work material is compressed across and slightly deformed between the punch and die, but the stress and deformation in the material does not exceed the plastic limit. This phase is known as the elastic phase.

In Phase II, the work material is pushed farther into the die opening by the punch; at this point in the operation the material has been obviously deformed at the rim, between the cutting edges of the punch and the die. The concentration of outside forces causes plastic deformation at the rim of the material. At the end of this phase, the stress in the work material close to the cutting edges reaches a value corresponding to the material shear strength, but the material resists fracture. This phase is called the plastic phase.

During Phase III, the strain in the work material reaches the fracture limit, and microcracks appear, which turn into macro-cracks, followed by separation of the parts of the workpiece. The cracks in the material start at the cutting edge of the punch on the upper side of the work material, and at the die edge on the lower side of the material; the crack propagates along the slip planes until complete separation of the part from the sheet occurs. A slight burr is generally left at the bottom of the hole and at the top of the slug. The slug is then pushed farther into the die opening. The slug burnish zone expands and is held in the die opening. The whole burnish zone contracts and clings to the punch.

Blanking and Punching Clearance.—*Clearance, c,* is the space (per side) between the punch and the die opening shown in Fig. 9, such that: $c = \frac{D_d - d_p}{2}$

Ideally, proper clearance between the cutting edges enables the fractures to start at the cutting edge of the punch and the die. The fractures will proceed toward each other until they meet. The fractured portion of the sheared edge then has a clean appearance. For optimum finish of a cut edge, correct clearance is necessary. This clearance is a function of the type, thickness, and temper of the material.

When clearance is not sufficient, additional layers of the material must be cut before complete separation is accomplished. With correct clearance, the angle of the fracture will permit a clean break below the burnish zone because the upper and lower fractures will extend toward one another. Excessive clearance will result in a tapered cut edge, because for any cutting operation, the opposite side of the material that the punch enters after cutting will be the same size as the die opening.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

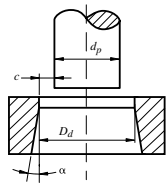


Fig. 9. Punch and Die Clearance

Where Clearance is Applied: Whether clearance is deducted from the dimensions of the punch or added to the dimensions of the die opening depends upon the nature of the workpiece. In the blanking process (a blank of given size is required), the die opening is made to that size and the punch is made smaller. Conversely, in the punching process (when holes of a given size are required), the punch is made to the dimensions and the die opening is made larger. Therefore, for blanking, the clearance is deducted from the size of the punch, and for piercing the clearance is added to the size of the die opening.

Value for Clearance: Clearance is generally expressed as a percentage of the material thickness, although an absolute value is sometimes specified.

Table 4 shows the value of the shear clearance in percentages, depending on the type and thickness of the material.

Table 4. Values for Clearance as a Percentage of the Thickness of the Material

Material	Material Thickness, *T*				
	< 0.040 in. (< 1.0 mm)	0.040-0.080 in. (1.0-2.0 mm)	0.082-0.118 in. (2.1- 3.0 mm)	0.122-0.197 in. (3.1-5.0 mm)	0.200-0.275 in. (5.1-7.0 mm)
Low carbon steel	5.0	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0
Copper and soft brass	5.0	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0
Medium carbon steel 0.20% to 0.25% carbon	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0
Hard brass	6.0	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0
Hard steel, 0.40% to 0.60% carbon	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0	12.0

Table 5 shows absolute values for the blanking and punching clearance for high-carbon steel (0.60% to 1.0% carbon) depending on the thickness of the work material.

Table 5. Absolute Values of Clearance for Blanking and Punching High-Carbon Steel

Material Thickness, *T*		Clearance, *c*		Material Thickness, *T*		Clearance, *c*	
(in.)	(mm)	(in.)	(mm)	(in.)	(mm)	(in.)	(mm)
0.012	0.3048	0.00006	0.001524	0.157	3.9878	0.0095	0.24130
0.020	0.5004	0.0009	0.02286	0.177	4.4958	0.0116	0.29464
0.032	0.8001	0.0013	0.03302	0.197	5.0038	0.0138	0.35052
0.040	1.0160	0.0016	0.04064	0.236	5.9944	0.0177	0.44958
0.047	1.1938	0.0020	0.05080	0.275	6.9850	0.0226	0.57404
0.060	1.5240	0.0026	0.06604	0.315	8.0010	0.0285	0.72390
0.078	1.9812	0.0035	0.08890	0.394	10.0076	0.0394	1.00076
0.098	2.4892	0.0047	0.11938	0.472	11.9888	0.0502	1.27508
0.118	2.9972	0.0059	0.14986	0.590	14.9860	0.0689	1.75006
0.138	3.5052	0.0077	0.19558	0.748	18.9992	0.0935	2.37490

Effect of Clearance: Manufacturers have performed many studies on the effect of clearance on punching and blanking. Clearance affects not only the smoothness of the fracture, but also the deformation force and work. A tighter blanking and punching clearance generates more heat on the cutting edge and the bulging area tightens around the punch. These effects produce a faster breakdown of the cutting edge. If the clearance increases, the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

bulging area disappears and the roll-over surface is stretched and will retract after the slug breaks free. Less heat is generated with increases in the blanking and punching clearance, and the edge breakdown rate is reduced. The deformation force is greatest when the punch diameter is small compared to the thickness of the work material. In one example, a punching force of about 142 kN was required to punch 19 mm holes into 8 mm mild steel when the clearance was about 10 percent. With a clearance of about 4.5 percent, the punching force increased to 147 kN, and a clearance of 2.75 percent resulted in a force of 153.5 kN.

Die Opening Profile.—Die opening profiles depend on the purpose and required tolerance of the workpiece. Two opening profiles are shown in Fig. 10a and Fig. 10b.

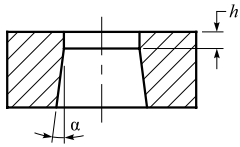


Fig. 10a. Opening Profile for High Quality Part

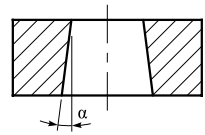


Fig. 10b. Opening for Low Accuracy Part

The profile in Fig. 10a gives the highest quality workpiece. To allow a die block to be sharpened more times, the height *h* of the block needs to be greater than the thickness of the workpiece. The value of *h* is given in Table 6. The die opening profile in Fig. 10b is used for making a small part with low accuracy from very soft material, such as soft thin brass. The angle of the cone $\alpha = 15'$ to $45'$.

Table 6. Value of Dimension *h* Based on Material Thickness

	Work material thickness, *T*		
	< 0.04 in. (< 1 mm)	> 0.04 to 0.2 in. (>1 to 5 mm)	> 0.2 to 0.4 in. (> 5 to 10 mm)
Height *h*	0.14 in (3.5 mm)	0.26 in (6.5 mm)	0.45 in (11.5 mm)

Angle $\alpha = 3°$ to $5°$

Deformation Force, Deformation Work, and Force of Press.—Deformation force *F* for punching and blanking with flat face of punch is defined by the following equation:

$$F = LT\tau_m = 0.8LT(UTS) \tag{20}$$

where F = deformation force, lb (N)
L = the total length of cutting, in. (mm)
T = thickness of the material, in. (mm)
τ_m = shear stress, lb/in^2 (MPa)
UTS = the ultimate tensile strength of the work material, lb/in^2 (MPa)

Force of Press: Such variables as unequal thickness of the material, friction between the punch and workpiece, or dull cutting edges, can increase the necessary force by up to 30 percent, so these variables must be considered in selecting the power requirements of the press. That is, the force requirement of the press, F_p is

$$F_p = 1.3F \tag{21}$$

The blanking and punching force can be reduced if the punch or die has bevel-cut edges. In blanking operations, bevel shear angles should be used on the die to ensure workpiece remains flat. In punching operations, bevel shear angles should be used on the punch.

Deformation Work W for punching and blanking with flat face of punch is defined by the following equation:

$$W = kFT \tag{22}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where k = a coefficient that depends on the shear strength of the material and the thickness of the material
F = deformation force (lb)
T = material thickness (in.)

Table 7. Values for Coefficient *k* for Some Materials

Material	Shear Strength lb/in² (MPa)	Material Thickness, inch (mm)			
		<0.040 in. <(1.0 mm)	0.040–0.078 in. (1.0–2.0 mm)	0.078–0.157 in. (2.0–4.0 mm)	>0.157 in. >4.0 mm
Low carbon steel	35,000–50,000 (240–345)	0.70–0.65	0.64–0.60	0.58–0.50	0.45–0.35
Medium carbon steel 0.20 to 0.25% carbon	50,000–70,000 (345–483)	0.60–0.55	0.54–0.50	0.49–0.42	0.40–0.30
Hard steel 0.40 to 0.60% carbon	70,000–95,000 (483–655)	0.45–0.42	0.41–0.38	0.36–0.32	0.30–0.20
Copper, annealed	21,000 (145)	0.75–0.69	0.70–0.65	0.64–0.55	0.50–0.40

Stripper Force.—*Elastic Stripper:* When spring strippers are used, it is necessary to calculate the amount of force required to effect stripping. This force may be calculated by the following equation:

$$F_s = \frac{1}{0.00117}PT = 855PT \quad (23a)$$

where F_s = stripping force (lb)
P = sum of the perimeters of all the punching or blanking faces (in.)
T = thickness of material (in.)

$$F_s = 5.9PT \quad (23b)$$

where F_s = stripping force (N)
P = sum of the perimeters of all the punching or blanking faces (mm)
T = thickness of material (mm)

This formula has been used for many years by a number of manufacturers and has been found to be satisfactory for most punching and blanking operations.

After the total stripping force has been determined, the stripping force per spring must be found in order to establish the number and dimensions of springs required. Maximum force per spring is usually listed in the manufacturer's catalog.

The correct determined force per spring must satisfy the following relationship:

$$F_{\max} > F_{so} > \frac{F_s}{n} \quad (24)$$

where F_{max} = maximum force per spring, lb (newton)
F_{SO} = stripping force per spring, lb (newton)
F_s = total stripping force, lb (newton)
n = number of springs

Blanking Pressure.—When designing parts that are to be blanked in a press, it is often necessary to work out the pressure required. A press of sufficient tonnage, providing the necessary blanking force, must be used. Otherwise, the press is likely to stall. To calculate the pressure required in tons for blanking various materials, use the following formula:

$$P = A \times T \times S$$

where P = pressure required (tons)
A = perimeter of blank (in.)
T = thickness of material (in.)
S = shear strength of material (tons per in^2)

Example: Calculate the pressure required in tons for the blank illustrated by Fig. 11. Soft sheet brass is to be used with a thickness of 0.125 inch and a shear strength of 17 tons per square inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

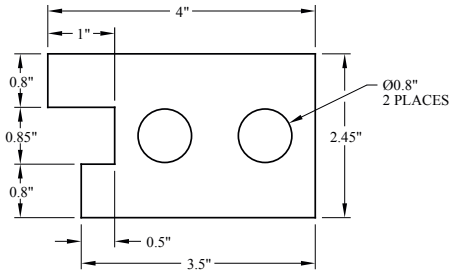


Fig. 11. Dimensioned Drawing of Part to be Blanked

Perimeter of blank = 4 + 2.45 + 3.5 + 0.8 + 0.5 + 0.85 + 1 + 0.8 = 13.9 in.
Circumference of holes = 2(π × 0.8) = 5.026 in.
Total perimeter = 13.9 + 5.026 = 18.926 in.
Pressure required = $P = A \times T \times S = 18.926 \times 0.125 \times 17 = 40.22$ tons

When metric dimensions are used, the same formula applies:

where P = pressure required (kg)
A = perimeter of blank (mm)
T = thickness of material (mm)
S = shear strength of material (kg per mm^2)

Note: The general rule for punches that have a shear, where the cutting faces are ground at an angle, is to halve the tonnage for material thicknesses of up to 0.25 inch or 6 mm. For material thicknesses over 0.25 inch or 6 mm, two-thirds of the tonnage should be used.

Fine Blanking.—This process uses special presses and tooling to produce flat components from sheet metal or plate, with high dimensional accuracy. According to Hydrel A. G., Romanshorn, Switzerland, fine-blanking presses can be powered hydraulically or mechanically, or by a combination of these methods, but they must have three separate and distinct movements. These movements clamp the work material, perform the blanking operation, and eject the finished part from the tool. Forces of 1.5–2.5 times those used in conventional stamping are needed for fine blanking, so machines and tools must be designed accordingly. In mechanical fine-blanking presses, clamping and ejection forces are exerted hydraulically. Such presses generally are of toggle-type design and are limited to total forces of up to about 280 tons. Higher forces usually require all-hydraulic designs. These presses are also suited to embossing, coining, and impact extrusion work.

Cutting elements of tooling for fine blanking generally are made from 12 percent chromium steel, although high-speed steel and tungsten carbide also are used for long runs or improved quality. Cutting clearances between the punch and die as a percentage of the thickness of material are given in Table 8.

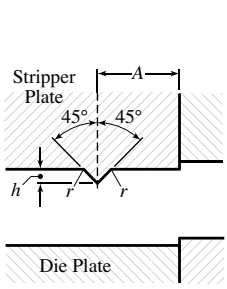
Table 8. Values for Clearances Used in Fine-Blanking Tools as a Percentage of the Thickness of the Material

Material Thickness		Clearance, %	
(in.)	(mm)	Inside Contour	Outside Contour
<0.040	<1.016	2.0	1.0
0.040–0.063	1.016–1.600	1.5	
0.063–0.098	1.600–2.489	1.25	
0.098–0.125	2.489–3.175	1.0	
0.125–0.197	3.175–5.004	0.8	0.5
0.197–0.315	5.004–8.001	0.7	
0.315–0.630	8.001–16.002	0.5	

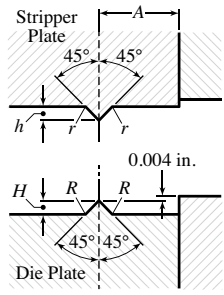
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The clamping elements are sharp projections of 90-degree V-section that follow the outline of the workpiece and are incorporated into each tool as part of the stripper plate with thin material and also as part of the die plate when material thicker than 0.15 inch (3.81 mm) is to be blanked. Pressure applied to the elements containing the V-projections prior to the blanking operation causes the sharp edges to enter the material surface, preventing sideways movement of the blank. The pressure applied as the projections bite into the work surface near the contour edges also squeezes the material, causing it to flow toward the cutting edges, reducing the usual rounding effect at the cut edge. When small details such as gear teeth are to be produced, V-projections are often used on both sides of the work, even with thin materials, to enhance the flow effect. With suitable tooling, workpieces can be produced with edges that are perpendicular to top and bottom surfaces within 0.004 inch (0.1mm) on thicknesses of 0.2 inch (5.0 mm), for instance. V-projection dimensions for various material thicknesses are shown in Table 9.

Table 9. Dimensions for V-projections Used in Fine-Blanking Tools



V-Projections on Stripper Plate Only



V-Projections on Both Stripper and Die Plate

Material Thickness	*A*	*h*	*r*	*H*	*R*
V-Projections on Stripper Plate Only					
0.040–0.063	0.040	0.012	0.008	…	…
0.063–0.098	0.055	0.015	0.008	…	…
0.098–0.125	0.083	0.024	0.012	…	…
0.125–0.157	0.098	0.028	0.012	…	…
0.157–0.197	0.110	0.032	0.012	…	…
V-Projections on Both Stripper and Die Plate					
0.157–0.197	0.098	0.020	0.008	0.032	0.032
0.197–0.248	0.118	0.028	0.008	0.040	0.040
0.248–0.315	0.138	0.032	0.008	0.047	0.047
0.315–0.394	0.177	0.040	0.020	0.060	0.060
0.394–0.492	0.217	0.047	0.020	0.070	0.080
0.492–0.630	0.276	0.063	0.020	0.087	0.118

All units are in inches.

Fine-blanked edges are free from the fractures that result from conventional tooling and can have surface finishes down to 80 µin. (2.0 µm) Ra with suitable tooling. Close tolerances can be held on inner and outer forms and on hole center distances. Flatness of fine-blanked components is better than that of parts made by conventional methods but distortion may occur with thin materials due to release of internal stresses. Widths must be slightly greater than are required for conventional press working. Generally, the strip width must be 2–3 times the thickness, plus the width of the part measured transverse to the feed direction. Other factors are shape, material quality, size and shape of the V-projection

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

in relation to the die outline, and spacing between adjacent blanked parts. Holes and slots can be produced with ratios of width to material thickness down to 0.7, compared with the 1:1 ratio normally specified for conventional tooling. Operations such as countersinking, coining, and bending up to 60 degrees can be incorporated in fine-blanking tooling.

The cutting force in pounds, lb (Newton, N) exerted in fine blanking is 0.9 times the length of the cut in inches (mm) times the material thickness in inches (mm), times the tensile strength in lb_f/in^2 (MPa). Pressure in lb (N) exerted by the clamping element(s) carrying the V-projections is calculated by multiplying the length of the V-projection, which depends on its shape, in inches (mm) by its height (h), times the material tensile strength in lb_f/in^2 (MPa), times an empirical factor f. Factor f has been determined to be 2.4–4.4 for a tensile strength of 28,000–113,000 lb_f/in^2 (193–779 MPa). The clamping pressure is about 30 percent of the cutting force, as calculated. Dimensions and positioning of the V-projection(s) are related to the material thickness, quality, and tensile strength. A small V-projection close to the line of cut has about the same effect as a large V-projection spaced away from the cut. But if the V-projection is too close to the cut, it may move out of the material at the start of the cutting process, reducing its effectiveness. Positioning the V-projection at a distance from the line of cut increases both material and blanking force requirements; its location relative to the line of cut also affects tool life.

Shaving.—The edges of punched and blanked parts are generally rough and uneven. Shaving is the process of removing a thin layer of material, from the inside or outside contour of a workpiece or from both sides with a sharp punch and die, to achieve precise, clean parts.

Shaving a Punched Workpiece: It is necessary to provide a small amount of stock on the punched or blanked workpiece for subsequent shaving. This amount, δ, is the difference between diameters of the hole after shaving and before shaving.

$$\delta = d - d_o \tag{25}$$

where d = diameter of hole after shaving (inch or mm)and, d_o = diameter of hole before shaving (inch or mm).

The value of δ is 0.006 to 0.0098 inch (0.15 to 0.25 mm) for a previously-punched hole, and 0.004 to 0.006 inch (0.10 to 0.15 mm) for a previously-drilled hole.

The diameter of punch d_p can be calculated from the formula:

$$d_p = d + \varepsilon + i \tag{26}$$

where d = diameter of hole after shaving (inch or mm)
ε = production tolerance of the hole (inch or mm)
i = amount of compensation for tightening of the hole after shaving (inch or mm) (i = 0.0002 to 0.00067 in. or 0.005-0.017 mm)

The diameter of the die D_d is

$$D_d = (1.20 \text{ to } 1.30)\, d_p \tag{27}$$

Shaving a Blanked Workpiece: Thin layers of material can be removed from a blanked surface by a process similar to punching. If the workpiece after shaving needs to have a diameter D, the punch diameter for the blanking operation is

$$d_p = D + \delta \tag{28}$$

The die diameter for the blanking operation is

$$d_d = d_p + 2c = D + \delta + 2c \tag{29}$$

where D = diameter of final piece (inch or mm)
c = clearance between die and punch (inch or mm)
δ = amount of material for shaving (inch or mm)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bending

One of the most common processes for sheet metal forming is bending, which is used to form pieces such as L, U, or V-profiles, and also to improve the stiffness of a piece by increasing its moment of inertia. Bending metal is a uniform straining process that plastically deforms the material and changes its shape. The material is stressed above the yield strength but below the ultimate tensile strength. The surface area of the material changes only in the bending zone. "Bending" usually refers to linear deformation about one axis. Bending may be performed by air bending, bottoming bending, or coining.

Air Bending: Air bending is done with the punch touching the workpiece but not bottoming it in the lower die. The profile of a die for air bending can have a right angle or an acute angle. The edges of the die with which the workpiece is in contact are rounded, and the radius of the punch will always be smaller than the bending radius.

Bottoming Bending and Coining: Bottoming or coining bending is the process by which the punch and the workpiece bottom on the die. It is necessary to flatten the bottom bend area of the workpiece between the tip of the punch and bottom on the die in order to avoid springback. The tonnage required on this type of press is higher than in air bending.

Inside Bend Radius.—Fig. 12 shows the terminology used in the bending process.

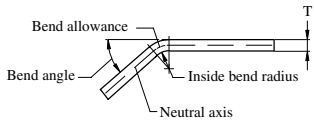


Fig. 12. Schematic Illustration of Terminology Used in the Bending Process

One of the most important factors influencing the quality of bent workpieces is the inside bend radius which must be within defined limits.

Minimum Bend Radius: If the bend radius is less than R_{min} given in Equation (30), particularly in harder materials, the material at the outside of the bend will tend to "orange peel." If this orange peeling, or opening of the grain, is severe enough, the metal will fracture or crack off completely in extreme cases.

The minimum bend radius, R_{min} is given by the following formula:

$$R_{\min} = T\left(\frac{50}{r} - 1\right) \tag{30}$$

where T = material thickness (inch or mm)and, r = percentage reduction in a tensile test for a given material (%).

Maximum Bend Radius: If the bend radius is greater than R_{max} given in Equation (31), the bend will be very hard to control and will spring back erratically. The amount of springback will worsen on thinner materials. When large radius bends are required, an allowance should always be made for this in the tolerance of the part.

To achieve permanent plastic deformation in the outer fibers of the bent workpiece the maximum bend radius must be

$$R_{\max} \leq \frac{TE}{2(YS)} \tag{31}$$

where E = modulus of elasticity, lb/in^2 (N/mm^2); YS = yield strength, lb/in^2 (N/mm^2); and, T = thickness of material, inches (mm).

Neutral Axis: When material is formed, the deformation in the inside fibers of the material will compress during forming and the fibers of the material on the outside of the bend will expand. The material between these two regions remains neutral during forming and is referred to as the neutral axis of the material. The length of fibers along the neutral axis of the bend does not change during forming. This neutral axis is used when figuring the bend allowance for flat blank layouts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Lengths of Straight Stock Required for 90-Degree Bends in Soft Copper and Soft Brass

Radius *R* of Bend, Inches	Thickness *T* of Material, Inch												
	1/64	1/32	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	9/32	5/16
1/32	0.058	0.066	0.075	0.083	0.092	0.101	0.118	0.135	0.152	0.169	0.187	0.204	0.221
3/64	0.083	0.091	0.100	0.108	0.117	0.126	0.143	0.160	0.177	0.194	0.212	0.229	0.246
1/16	0.107	0.115	0.124	0.132	0.141	0.150	0.167	0.184	0.201	0.218	0.236	0.253	0.270
3/32	0.156	0.164	0.173	0.181	0.190	0.199	0.216	0.233	0.250	0.267	0.285	0.302	0.319
1/8	0.205	0.213	0.222	0.230	0.239	0.248	0.265	0.282	0.299	0.316	0.334	0.351	0.368
5/32	0.254	0.262	0.271	0.279	0.288	0.297	0.314	0.331	0.348	0.365	0.383	0.400	0.417
3/16	0.303	0.311	0.320	0.328	0.337	0.346	0.363	0.380	0.397	0.414	0.432	0.449	0.466
7/32	0.353	0.361	0.370	0.378	0.387	0.396	0.413	0.430	0.447	0.464	0.482	0.499	0.516
1/4	0.401	0.409	0.418	0.426	0.435	0.444	0.461	0.478	0.495	0.512	0.530	0.547	0.564
9/32	0.450	0.458	0.467	0.475	0.484	0.493	0.510	0.527	0.544	0.561	0.579	0.596	0.613
5/16	0.499	0.507	0.516	0.524	0.533	0.542	0.559	0.576	0.593	0.610	0.628	0.645	0.662
11/32	0.549	0.557	0.566	0.574	0.583	0.592	0.609	0.626	0.643	0.660	0.678	0.695	0.712
3/8	0.598	0.606	0.615	0.623	0.632	0.641	0.658	0.675	0.692	0.709	0.727	0.744	0.761
13/32	0.646	0.654	0.663	0.671	0.680	0.689	0.706	0.723	0.740	0.757	0.775	0.792	0.809
7/16	0.695	0.703	0.712	0.720	0.729	0.738	0.755	0.772	0.789	0.806	0.824	0.841	0.858
15/32	0.734	0.742	0.751	0.759	0.768	0.777	0.794	0.811	0.828	0.845	0.863	0.880	0.897
1/2	0.794	0.802	0.811	0.819	0.828	0.837	0.854	0.871	0.888	0.905	0.923	0.940	0.957
9/16	0.892	0.900	0.909	0.917	0.926	0.935	0.952	0.969	0.986	1.003	1.021	1.038	1.055
5/8	0.990	0.998	1.007	1.015	1.024	1.033	1.050	1.067	1.084	1.101	1.119	1.136	1.153
11/16	1.089	1.097	1.106	1.114	1.123	1.132	1.149	1.166	1.183	1.200	1.218	1.235	1.252
3/4	1.187	1.195	1.204	1.212	1.221	1.230	1.247	1.264	1.281	1.298	1.316	1.333	1.350
13/16	1.286	1.294	1.303	1.311	1.320	1.329	1.346	1.363	1.380	1.397	1.415	1.432	1.449
7/8	1.384	1.392	1.401	1.409	1.418	1.427	1.444	1.461	1.478	1.495	1.513	1.530	1.547
15/16	1.481	1.489	1.498	1.506	1.515	1.524	1.541	1.558	1.575	1.592	1.610	1.627	1.644
1	1.580	1.588	1.597	1.605	1.614	1.623	1.640	1.657	1.674	1.691	1.709	1.726	1.743
1 1/16	1.678	1.686	1.695	1.703	1.712	1.721	1.738	1.755	1.772	1.789	1.807	1.824	1.841
1 1/8	1.777	1.785	1.794	1.802	1.811	1.820	1.837	1.854	1.871	1.888	1.906	1.923	1.940
1 3/16	1.875	1.883	1.892	1.900	1.909	1.918	1.935	1.952	1.969	1.986	2.004	2.021	2.038
1 1/4	1.972	1.980	1.989	1.997	2.006	2.015	2.032	2.049	2.066	2.083	2.101	2.118	2.135

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Lengths of Straight Stock Required for 90-Degree Bends in Half-Hard Brass and Sheet Copper, Soft Steel, and Aluminum

Radius *R* of Bend, Inches	Thickness *T* of Material, Inch												
	1/64	1/32	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	9/32	5/16
1/32	0.059	0.069	0.079	0.089	0.099	0.109	0.129	0.149	0.169	0.189	0.209	0.229	0.249
3/64	0.084	0.094	0.104	0.114	0.124	0.134	0.154	0.174	0.194	0.214	0.234	0.254	0.274
1/16	0.108	0.118	0.128	0.138	0.148	0.158	0.178	0.198	0.218	0.238	0.258	0.278	0.298
5/32	0.157	0.167	0.177	0.187	0.197	0.207	0.227	0.247	0.267	0.287	0.307	0.327	0.347
1/8	0.206	0.216	0.226	0.236	0.246	0.256	0.276	0.296	0.316	0.336	0.356	0.376	0.396
5/32	0.255	0.265	0.275	0.285	0.295	0.305	0.325	0.345	0.365	0.385	0.405	0.425	0.445
3/16	0.305	0.315	0.325	0.335	0.345	0.355	0.375	0.395	0.415	0.435	0.455	0.475	0.495
7/32	0.354	0.364	0.374	0.384	0.394	0.404	0.424	0.444	0.464	0.484	0.504	0.524	0.544
1/4	0.403	0.413	0.423	0.433	0.443	0.453	0.473	0.493	0.513	0.533	0.553	0.573	0.593
9/32	0.452	0.462	0.472	0.482	0.492	0.502	0.522	0.542	0.562	0.582	0.602	0.622	0.642
5/16	0.501	0.511	0.521	0.531	0.541	0.551	0.571	0.591	0.611	0.631	0.651	0.671	0.691
11/32	0.550	0.560	0.570	0.580	0.590	0.600	0.620	0.640	0.660	0.680	0.700	0.720	0.740
3/8	0.599	0.609	0.619	0.629	0.639	0.649	0.669	0.689	0.709	0.729	0.749	0.769	0.789
13/32	0.648	0.658	0.668	0.678	0.688	0.698	0.718	0.738	0.758	0.778	0.798	0.818	0.838
7/16	0.697	0.707	0.717	0.727	0.737	0.747	0.767	0.787	0.807	0.827	0.847	0.867	0.887
15/32	0.746	0.756	0.766	0.776	0.786	0.796	0.816	0.836	0.856	0.876	0.896	0.916	0.936
1/2	0.795	0.805	0.815	0.825	0.835	0.845	0.865	0.885	0.905	0.925	0.945	0.965	0.985
17/32	0.844	0.854	0.864	0.874	0.884	0.894	0.914	0.934	0.954	0.974	0.994	1.014	1.034
9/16	0.894	0.904	0.914	0.924	0.934	0.944	0.964	0.984	1.004	1.024	1.044	1.064	1.084
5/8	0.992	1.002	1.012	1.022	1.032	1.042	1.062	1.082	1.102	1.122	1.42	1.162	1.182
11/16	1.090	1.100	1.110	1.120	1.130	1.140	1.160	1.180	1.200	1.220	1.240	1.260	1.280
3/4	1.188	1.198	1.208	1.218	1.228	1.238	1.258	1.278	1.298	1.318	1.338	1.358	1.378
13/16	1.286	1.296	1.306	1.316	1.326	1.336	1.356	1.376	1.396	1.416	1.436	1.456	1.476
7/8	1.384	1.394	1.404	1.414	1.424	1.434	1.454	1.474	1.494	1.514	1.534	1.554	1.574
15/16	1.483	1.493	1.503	1.513	1.523	1.553	1.553	1.573	1.693	1.613	1.633	1.653	1.673
1	1.581	1.591	1.601	1.611	1.621	1.631	1.651	1.671	1.691	1.711	1.731	1.751	1.771
1 1/16	1.697	1.689	1.699	1.709	1.719	1.729	1.749	1.769	1.789	1.809	1.829	1.849	1.869
1 1/8	1.777	1.787	1.797	1.807	1.817	1.827	1.847	1.867	1.887	1.907	1.927	1.947	1.967
1 3/16	1.875	1.885	1.895	1.905	1.915	1.925	1.945	1.965	1.985	1.005	2.025	2.045	2.065
1 1/4	1.973	1.983	1.993	1.003	2.013	2.023	2.043	2.063	2.083	2.103	2.123	2.143	2.163

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Lengths of Straight Stock Required for 90-Degree Bends in Hard Copper, Bronze, Cold-Rolled Steel, and Spring Steel

Radius *R* of Bend, Inches	Thickness *T* of Material, Inch												
	1/64	1/32	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	9/32	5/16
1/32	0.060	0.071	0.082	0.093	0.104	0.116	0.138	0.160	0.182	0.204	0.227	0.249	0.271
3/64	0.085	0.096	0.107	0.118	0.129	0.141	0.163	0.185	0.207	0.229	0.252	0.274	0.296
1/16	0.109	0.120	0.131	0.142	0.153	0.165	0.187	0.209	0.231	0.253	0.276	0.298	0.320
3/32	0.158	0.169	0.180	0.191	0.202	0.214	0.236	0.258	0.280	0.302	0.325	0.347	0.369
1/8	0.207	0.218	0.229	0.240	0.251	0.263	0.285	0.307	0.329	0.351	0.374	0.396	0.418
5/32	0.256	0.267	0.278	0.289	0.300	0.312	0.334	0.356	0.378	0.400	0.423	0.445	0.467
3/16	0.305	0.316	0.327	0.338	0.349	0.361	0.383	0.405	0.427	0.449	0.472	0.494	0.516
7/32	0.355	0.366	0.377	0.388	0.399	0.411	0.433	0.455	0.477	0.499	0.522	0.544	0.566
1/4	0.403	0.414	0.425	0.436	0.447	0.459	0.481	0.503	0.525	0.547	0.570	0.592	0.614
9/32	0.452	0.463	0.474	0.485	0.496	0.508	0.530	0.552	0.574	0.596	0.619	0.641	0.663
5/16	0.501	0.512	0.523	0.534	0.545	0.557	0.579	0.601	0.623	0.645	0.668	0.690	0.712
11/32	0.551	0.562	0.573	0.584	0.595	0.607	0.629	0.651	0.673	0.695	0.718	0.740	0.762
3/8	0.600	0.611	0.622	0.633	0.644	0.656	0.678	0.700	0.722	0.744	0.767	0.789	0.811
13/32	0.648	0.659	0.670	0.681	0.692	0.704	0.726	0.748	0.770	0.792	0.815	0.837	0.859
7/16	0.697	0.708	0.719	0.730	0.741	0.753	0.775	0.797	0.819	0.841	0.864	0.886	0.908
15/32	0.736	0.747	0.758	0.769	0.780	0.792	0.814	0.836	0.858	0.880	0.903	0.925	0.947
1/2	0.796	0.807	0.818	0.829	0.840	0.852	0.874	0.896	0.918	0.940	0.963	0.985	1.007
9/16	0.894	0.905	0.916	0.927	0.938	0.950	0.972	0.994	1.016	1.038	1.061	1.083	1.105
5/8	0.992	1.003	1.014	1.025	1.036	1.048	1.070	1.092	1.114	1.136	1.159	1.181	1.203
11/16	1.091	1.102	1.113	1.124	1.135	1.147	1.169	1.191	1.213	1.235	1.258	1.280	1.302
3/4	1.189	1.200	1.211	1.222	1.233	1.245	1.267	1.289	1.311	1.333	1.356	1.378	1.400
13/16	1.288	1.299	1.310	1.321	1.332	1.344	1.366	1.388	1.410	1.432	1.455	1.477	1.499
7/8	1.386	1.397	1.408	1.419	1.430	1.442	1.464	1.486	1.508	1.530	1.553	1.575	1.597
15/16	1.483	1.494	1.505	1.516	1.527	1.539	1.561	1.583	1.605	1.627	1.650	1.672	1.694
1	1.582	1.593	1.604	1.615	1.626	1.638	1.660	1.682	1.704	1.726	1.749	1.771	1.793
1 1/16	1.680	1.691	1.702	1.713	1.724	1.736	1.758	1.780	1.802	1.824	1.847	1.869	1.891
1 1/8	1.779	1.790	1.801	1.812	1.823	1.835	1.857	1.879	1.901	1.923	1.946	1.968	1.990
1 3/16	1.877	1.888	1.899	1.910	1.921	1.933	1.955	1.977	1.999	2.021	2.044	2.066	2.088
1 1/4	1.974	1.985	1.996	2.007	2.018	2.030	2.052	2.074	2.096	2.118	2.141	2.163	2.185

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Allowances for Bending Sheet Metal: In bending steel, brass, bronze, or other metals, the problem is to find the length of straight stock required for each bend; these lengths are added to the straight section lengths to obtain the total length of material before bending.

If L = length (inch or mm) of straight stock required before bending; T = thickness (inch or mm); and R = inside radius of bend (inch or mm):

For 90° bends in soft brass and soft copper see Table 10 or:

$$L = (0.55 \times T) + (1.57 \times R) \tag{32}$$

For 90° bends in half-hard copper and brass, soft steel, and aluminum see Table 11 or:

$$L = (0.64 \times T) + (1.57 \times R) \tag{33}$$

For 90° bends in bronze, hard copper, cold-rolled steel, and spring steel see Table 12 or:

$$L = (0.71 \times T) + (1.57 \times R) \tag{34}$$

Example, Showing Application of Formulas 32–34: Find the length before bending of the part illustrated by Fig. 13. Soft steel is to be used.

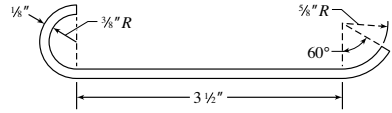


Fig. 13.

For bend at left-hand end (180-degree bend):

$$L = [(0.64 \times 0.125) + (1.57 \times 0.375)] \times \frac{180}{90} = 1.338$$

For bend at right-hand end (60-degree bend):

$$L = [(0.64 \times 0.125) + (1.57 \times 0.625)] \times \frac{60}{90} = 0.707$$

Total length before bending = 3.5 + 1.338 + 0.707 = 5.545 inches

Angle of Bend Other Than 90 Degrees: For angles other than 90 degrees, find length L, using tables or formulas, and multiply L by angle of bend, in degrees, divided by 90 to find length of stock before bending. In using this rule, note that *angle of bend* is the angle through which the material has actually been bent; hence, it is not always the angle as given on a drawing. To illustrate, in Fig. 14, the angle on the drawing is 60 degrees, but the angle of bend A is 120 degrees (180 – 60 = 120); in Fig. 15, the angle of bend A is 60 degrees; in Fig. 16, angle A is 90 – 30 = 60 degrees. Formulas (32), (33), and (34) apply to parts bent with simple tools or on the bench, where limits of $\pm \frac{1}{64}$ inch are specified. If a part has two or more bends of the same radius, it is, of course, only necessary to obtain the length required for one of the bends and then multiply by the number of bends, to obtain the total allowance for the bent sections.

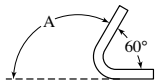


Fig. 14.

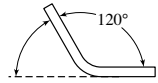


Fig. 15.

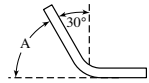


Fig. 16.

Springback: Every plastic deformation is followed by elastic recovery. As a consequence of this phenomenon, which occurs when a flat-rolled metal or alloy is cold-worked, upon release of the forming force, the material has a tendency to partially return to its original shape. This effect is called springback and is influenced not only by the tensile and yield strengths, but also by the thickness, bend radius, and bend angle. To estimate springback, an approximate formula in terms of the bend radius before springback R_i and bend radius after springback R_f is as follows

$$\frac{R_i}{R_f} = 4\left(\frac{R_i(YS)}{ET}\right)^3 - 3\left(\frac{R_i(YS)}{ET}\right) + 1 \tag{35}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where R_i = bend radius before springback, inch (mm); R_f = bend radius after springback, inch (mm); YS = yield strength of the material, lb/in^2 (MPa); E = modulus of elasticity of the material lb/in^2 (MPa); and, T = material thickness, inch (mm).

Other Bending Allowance Formulas: When bending sheet steel or brass, add from $\frac{1}{3}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ the thickness of the stock, for *each bend*, to the sum of the inside dimensions of the finished piece, to get the length of the straight blank. The harder the material the greater the allowance ($\frac{1}{3}$ of the thickness is added for soft stock and $\frac{1}{2}$ of the thickness for hard material). The data given in Table 13 refer to the bending of sheet metal for counters, bank fittings, and general office fixtures, for which purpose it is not essential to have the sections of the bends within very close limits. Absolutely accurate data for this work cannot be deduced as the hardness and other mechanical properties vary considerably. The values given in the table apply to sheet steel, aluminum, brass and bronze. Experience has demonstrated that for semi-square corners, such as those formed in a V-die, the amount to be deducted from the sum of the outside bend dimensions, shown in Fig. 17 as the sum of the letters from *a* to *e*, is as follows: $X = 1.67\,BG$, where X = the amount to be deducted; B = the number of bends; and G = the decimal equivalent of the gage thickness of the stock. The values of X for different gages and numbers of bends are given in the table.

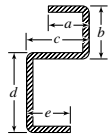


Fig. 17.

Table 13. Allowances for Square Bends in Sheet Metal

Square Bends	Gage	Thickness Inches	Amount to be deducted from the sum of the outside bend dimensions, (in.)						
			1 Bend	2 Bends	3 Bends	4 Bends	5 Bends	6 Bends	7 Bends
Formed in a Press by a V-die	18	0.0500	0.083	0.166	0.250	0.333	0.416	0.500	0.583
	16	0.0625	0.104	0.208	0.312	0.416	0.520	0.625	0.729
	14	0.0781	0.130	0.260	0.390	0.520	0.651	0.781	0.911
	13	0.0937	0.156	0.312	0.468	0.625	0.781	0.937	1.093
	12	0.1093	0.182	0.364	0.546	0.729	0.911	1.093	1.276
	11	0.1250	0.208	0.416	0.625	0.833	1.041	1.250	1.458
	10	0.1406	0.234	0.468	0.703	0.937	1.171	1.406	1.643
Rolled or Drawn in a Draw-bench	18	0.0500	0.066	0.133	0.200	0.266	0.333	0.400	0.466
	16	0.0625	0.083	0.166	0.250	0.333	0.416	0.500	0.583
	14	0.0781	0.104	0.208	0.312	0.416	0.521	0.625	0.729
	13	0.0937	0.125	0.250	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875
	12	0.1093	0.145	0.291	0.437	0.583	0.729	0.875	1.020
	11	0.1250	0.166	0.333	0.500	0.666	0.833	1.000	1.166
	10	0.1406	0.187	0.375	0.562	0.750	0.937	1.125	1.312

Approximate values for sheet steel, aluminum, brass, and bronze.

The lower part of the table applies to square bends that are either drawn through a block of steel made to the required shape, or are drawn through rollers in a drawbench. The pressure applied not only gives a much sharper corner, but it also elongates the material more than in the V-die process. In this example, the deduction is $X = 1.33\,BG$.

Example: The following further illustrates this type of calculation. A strip having two bends is to have outside dimensions of 2, 1$\frac{1}{2}$ and 2 inches, and is made of stock 0.125 inch thick. The sum of the outside dimensions is thus 5$\frac{1}{2}$ inches, and from Table 13 the amount to be deducted is found to be 0.416; hence, the blank will be 5.5 – 0.416 = 5.084 inches long.

Bending Force: The bending force is a function of the strength of the material, the length of the workpiece, and the die opening. A good approximation of the required force F is

$$F = \frac{LT^2(UTS)}{W} \tag{36}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where F = bending force (lb or N)
L = length of the workpiece (inch or mm)
T = material thickness (inch or mm)
UTS = ultimate tensile strength of the material (lb/in^2 or MPa)
W = die opening (inch or mm)

Three-Roll Bending.—Many curved sheet metal parts, such as rings, cylinders, truncated cones, or segments of these shapes, are impractical to produce by press forming. Such parts are best produced by a process called roll bending. In this process, the workpiece is produced from a flat blank by passing it between three staggered rolls. Depending upon such variables as the composition of the work material, machine capability, or workpiece size, the shape may be formed in a single pass or a series of passes, with roll adjustments needed after each pass. Fig. 18 illustrates the basic setup for three-roll bending on pyramid-type machines.

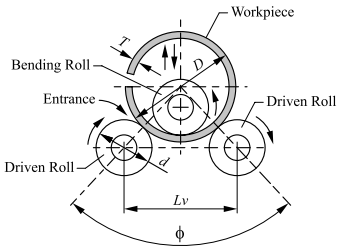


Fig. 18. Three-Roll Bending

To achieve permanent deformation in the outside and inside fibers of the material, the following relationship must apply:

$$\frac{D}{T} < \frac{E}{YS} + 1 \tag{37}$$

where D = outer diameter of the workpiece, inch (mm)
T = material thickness, inch (mm)
E = modulus of elasticity, lb/in^2 (MPa)
YS = yield stress, lb/in^2 (MPa)

Three-roll bending is one of the bending operations most used in industrial manufacturing. With only one set of rolls and by setting only one axis, it is possible to achieve different radii or a distribution of radii along the profile length within the bending plane. In addition to the high flexibility and thus economy of this process, it can achieve high quality standards, too, if suitable measures are used.

Two-Roll Bending.—Traditionally, roll-bending machines have used three rolls to form the curve. As shown in Fig. 18, the blank passes between or is supported by a third roll, whose position can be adjusted to control the bend. The two-roll bending process shown in Fig. 19 is an alternate method that often is the best choice for high-volume production. Soft to hard materials can be used, thin-gauge material can be rolled to reasonably small diameters, and round workpieces can be made even if the blank has cutouts or holes.

Two-roll bending machines have two basic frame designs: vertical and horizontal. Major parts of both designs include one urethane-covered roll, another steel roll, and an overarm that can be opened and closed to facilitate removal of a finished workpieces. On horizontal machines, the lower urethane-covered roll deforms under the pressure of the upper steel roll to impact the desired shape and size to the blank in a single pass. The diameter of the rolled workpiece is controlled by the diameter of the upper steel roll; a slip-on tube is used to change the desired diameter. The operation of vertical roll-bending machines is basically the same as that of the horizontal one, except that workpieces are loaded and unloaded vertically.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

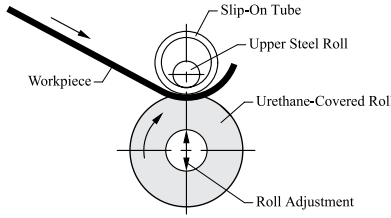


Fig. 19. Two-Roll Bending

When sheet metal is inserted between the two rolls, the urethane roll wraps the blank tightly against the steel roll. The urethane transmits applied force in all directions, as does hydraulic fluid in a hydroforming presses, exerting high pressure; since the urethane roll is driven, true curvature of the sheet metal is obtained. This radius remains uniform, whether the shape being formed is a complete circle or only a segment. Variations in diameter of the final workpiece are due to variations in and natural spring-back of the material.

Since the workpiece is completely controlled, flatting and kinking are eliminated. In most applications, there is no need for pre-forming or cutting off blank ends; flat spots on leading and trailing edges are minimal: one to four material thicknesses, depending on the material.

Drawing

The drawing of metal, or deep drawing, is the process by which a punch is used to force sheet metal to flow between the surfaces of a punch and a die. Many products made from sheet metals are given the required shape by using a drawing operation. A blank is first cut from flat stock, and then a shell of cylindrical, conical or special shape is produced from this flat blank by means of one or more drawing dies. Most drawn parts are of cylindrical shape, but rectangular, square, and specialized shapes are sometimes produced. With this process, it is possible to get a final part, using minimal operations and generating minimal scrap, that can be assembled without further operations.

Mechanics of Deep Drawing.—As the material is drawn into the die by the punch, it flows into a three-dimensional shape. The blank is held in place with a blank holder using a fixed force. High compressive stresses act upon the metal, which without the offsetting effect of a blank holder, would result in a severely wrinkled workpiece.

Wrinkling is one of the major defects in deep drawing; it can damage the dies and adversely affect part assembly and function. The prediction and prevention of wrinkling is very important. There are a number of different analytical and experimental methods that can help to predict and prevent flange wrinkling, including finite element modeling (FEM).

There are many important variables in the deep drawing process, but they can be classified as either material and friction factors, or tooling and equipment factors.

Important material properties such as the strain-hardening coefficient (n) and normal anisotropy (R) affect deep-drawing operations. Friction and lubrication at the punch, die, and workpiece interfaces are very important in a successful deep drawing process.

Unlike bending operations, in which metal is plastically deformed in a relatively small area, drawing operations impose plastic deformation over large areas, and stress states are different in different regions of the part. As a starting point, consider what appear to be three zones undergoing types of deformation:

1) The flat portion of the blank that has not yet entered the die cavity (the flange)
2) The portion of the blank that is in the die cavity (the wall)
3) The zone of contact between the punch and the blank (bottom)

The radial tensile stress is due to the blank being pulled into the female die, and the compressive stress, normal in the blank sheet, is due to the blank holder pressure. The punch transmits force F to the bottom of the cup, so the part of the blank that is formed into the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

bottom of the cup is subjected to radial and tangential tensile stress. From the bottom, the punch transmits the force through the walls of the cup to the flange. In this stressed state, the walls tend to elongate in a longitudinal direction. Elongation causes the cup wall to become thinner, which can cause the workpiece to tear.

If a drawing die radius in a deep drawing operation is too small, it will cause fracture of the cup in the zone between the wall and the flange. If a punch corner radius is too small, it may cause fracture in the zone between a wall and the bottom of a cup. Fracture can also result from high longitudinal tensile stresses in the bottom cup, due to a high ratio between the blank diameter and the punch diameter. Parts made by deep drawing usually require several successive draws. One or more annealing operations may be required to reduce work hardening by restoring the ductile grain structure.

Number of Draws: The number of successive draws n required is a function of the ratio of the part height h to the part diameter d, and is given by this formula:

$$n = \frac{h}{d} \tag{38}$$

where n = number of draws; h = part height; and, d = part diameter.

The value of n for the cylindrical cup draw is given in Table 14.

Table 14. Number of Draws (n) for a Cylindrical Cup Draw

h/d	< 0.6	0.6 to 1.4	1.4 to 2.5	2.5 to 4.0	4.0 to 7.0	7.0 to 12.0
n	1	2	3	4	5	6

Deep Drawability : Deep drawability is the ability of a sheet metal to be formed, or drawn, into a cupped or cavity shape without cracking or otherwise failing. The depth to which metal can be drawn in one operation depends upon the quality and kind of material, its thickness, and the amount that the work material is thinned in drawing.

Drawing a Cylindrical Cup Without a Flange: A general rule for determining the depth to which a cylindrical cup without a flange can be drawn in one operation is defined as the ratio of the mean diameter d_m of the drawn cup to the blank diameter D. This relation is known as the drawing ratio m. The value of the drawing ratio for the first and succeeding operations is given by:

$$m_1 = \frac{d_{m_1}}{D} \qquad m_2 = \frac{d_{m_2}}{D_{m_1}} \qquad m_3 = \frac{d_{m_3}}{D_{m_2}} \qquad \ldots \qquad m_n = \frac{d_{m_n}}{D_{m_{n-1}}}$$

The magnitude of these ratios determines the following parameters:

1) the stresses and forces of the deep drawing processes
2) the number of successive draws
3) the blank holder force
4) the quality of the final drawn parts.

Table 15 shows optimal drawing ratios for cylindrical cups of sheet steel and brass without a flange.

Table 15. Optimal Ratios M for Drawing a Cylindrical Cup Without Flanges

	Relative Thickness of the Material $T_r = \frac{T}{D}100\,(\%)$					
Drawing ratio m	2.0–1.5	1.5–1.0	1.0–0.6	0.6–0.3	0.3–0.15	0.15–0.08
m_1	0.48–0.50	0.50–0.53	0.53–0.55	0.55–0.58	0.58–0.60	0.60–0.63
m_2	0.73–0.75	0.75–0.76	0.76–0.78	0.78–0.79	0.79–0.80	0.80–0.82
m_3	0.76–0.78	0.78–0.79	0.79–0.80	0.81–0.82	0.81–0.82	0.82–0.84
m_4	0.78–0.80	0.80–0.81	0.81–0.82	0.82–0.83	0.83–0.85	0.85–0.86
m_5	0.80–0.82	0.82–0.84	0.84–0.85	0.85–0.86	0.86–0.87	0.78–0.90

Diameters of drawing workpieces for the first and succeeding operations are given by:

$$d_1 = m_1 D \qquad d_2 = m_2 d_1 \qquad \ldots \qquad d_i = m_i d_{i-1}$$

Drawing a Cylindrical Cup With a Flange: Table 16 gives values of the drawing ratio m for the first and succeeding operations for drawing a cylindrical cup with flange.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diameters of drawing workpiece for the first and succeeding operations are given by

$$d_1 = m_1 D \qquad d_2 = m_2 d_1 \qquad \ldots \qquad d_i = m_i d_{i-1}$$

However, diameter D_f needs to be accomplished in the first drawing operation if possible.

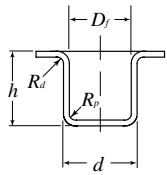
Diameters of Shell Blanks: The diameters of blanks for drawing plain cylindrical shells can be obtained from Table 17, which gives a very close approximation for thin stock. The blank diameters given in this table are for sharp-cornered shells and are found by the following formula

$$D = \sqrt{d^2 + 4dh} \tag{39}$$

where D = diameter of flat blank (inch or mm); d = diameter of finished shell (inch or mm); and, h = height of finished shell (inch or mm).

Example 1: If the diameter of the finished shell d, is to be 1.5 inches (mm), and the height h, 2 inches (mm), the trial diameter of the blank D, would be found as follows:

Table 16. Values of Ratio *m* for Drawing a Cylindrical Cup With Flange



Drawing ratio m	$\frac{D_f}{d}$	Relative thickness of the material $T_r = \frac{T}{D}100$ (%)				
		2.0–1.5	1.5–1.0	1.0–0.6	0.6–0.3	0.3–0.15
m_1	1.1	0.51	0.53	0.55	0.57	0.59
	1.3	0.49	0.51	0.53	0.54	0.55
	1.5	0.47	0.49	0.50	0.51	0.52
	1.8	0.45	0.46	0.47	0.48	0.48
	2.0	0.42	0.43	0.44	0.45	0.45
	2.5	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38
	3.0	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33
m_2	…	0.73	0.75	0.76	0.78	0.80
m_3	…	0.75	0.78	0.79	0.80	0.82
m_4	…	0.78	0.80	0.82	0.83	0.84
m_5	…	0.80	0.82	0.84	0.85	0.86

$$D = \sqrt{1.5^2 + 4 \times 1.5 \times 2} = \sqrt{14.25} = 3.78 \text{ inches (mm)}$$

For a round-cornered cup, the following formula, in which r equals the radius of the corner, will give fairly accurate diameters, provided the radius does not exceed, say, $\frac{1}{4}$ the height of the shell:

$$D = \sqrt{d^2 + 4dh} - r \tag{40}$$

These formulas are based on the assumption that the thickness of the drawn shell is to be the same as the original thickness of the stock and that the blank is so proportioned that its area will equal the area of the drawn shell. This method of calculating the blank diameter is quite accurate for thin material, when there is only a slight reduction in the thickness of the metal incident to drawing; but when heavy stock is drawn and the thickness of the finished shell is much less than the original thickness of the stock, the blank diameter obtained from Formulas (39) or (40) will be too large, because when the stock is drawn thinner, there is an increase in area. When an appreciable reduction in thickness is to be made, the blank diameter can be obtained by first determining the "mean height" of the drawn shell by the following formula, which is only approximately correct, but will give results sufficiently accurate for most work:

$$M = \frac{ht}{T} \tag{41}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Diameters of Blanks for Drawn Cylindrical Shells

Dia. of Shell, inch	Height of Shell, inch																			
	¼	½	¾	1	1 ¼	1 ½	1 ¾	2	2 ¼	2 ½	2 ¾	3	3 ¼	3 ½	3 ¾	4	4 ½	5	5 ½	6
¼	0.56	0.75	0.90	1.03	1.14	1.25	1.35	1.44	1.52	1.60	1.68	1.75	1.82	1.89	1.95	2.01	2.14	2.25	2.36	2.46
½	0.87	1.12	1.32	1.50	1.66	1.80	1.94	2.06	2.18	2.29	2.40	2.50	2.60	2.69	2.78	2.87	3.04	3.21	3.36	3.50
¾	1.14	1.44	1.68	1.89	2.08	2.25	2.41	2.56	2.70	2.84	2.97	3.09	3.21	3.33	3.44	3.54	3.75	3.95	4.13	4.31
1	1.41	1.73	2.00	2.24	2.45	2.65	2.83	3.00	3.16	3.32	3.46	3.61	3.74	3.87	4.00	4.12	4.36	4.58	4.80	5.00
1 ¼	1.68	2.01	2.30	2.56	2.79	3.01	3.21	3.40	3.58	3.75	3.91	4.07	4.22	4.37	4.51	4.64	4.91	5.15	5.39	5.62
1 ½	1.94	2.29	2.60	2.87	3.12	3.36	3.57	3.78	3.97	4.15	4.33	4.50	4.66	4.82	4.98	5.12	5.41	5.68	5.94	6.18
1 ¾	2.19	2.56	2.88	3.17	3.44	3.68	3.91	4.13	4.34	4.53	4.72	4.91	5.08	5.26	5.41	5.58	5.88	6.17	6.45	6.71
2	2.45	2.83	3.16	3.46	3.74	4.00	4.24	4.47	4.69	4.90	5.10	5.29	5.48	5.66	5.83	6.00	6.32	6.63	6.93	7.21
2 ¼	2.70	3.09	3.44	3.75	4.04	4.31	4.56	4.80	5.03	5.25	5.46	5.66	5.86	6.05	6.23	6.41	6.75	7.07	7.39	7.69
2 ½	2.96	3.36	3.71	4.03	4.33	4.61	4.87	5.12	5.36	5.59	5.81	6.02	6.22	6.42	6.61	6.80	7.16	7.50	7.82	8.14
2 ¾	3.21	3.61	3.98	4.31	4.62	4.91	5.18	5.44	5.68	5.92	6.15	6.37	6.58	6.79	6.99	7.18	7.55	7.91	8.25	8.58
3	3.46	3.87	4.24	4.58	4.90	5.20	5.48	5.74	6.00	6.25	6.48	6.71	6.93	7.14	7.35	7.55	7.94	8.31	8.66	9.00
3 ¼	3.71	4.13	4.51	4.85	5.18	5.48	5.77	6.04	6.31	6.56	6.80	7.04	7.27	7.49	7.70	7.91	8.31	8.69	9.06	9.41
3 ½	3.97	4.39	4.77	5.12	5.45	5.77	6.06	6.34	6.61	6.87	7.12	7.36	7.60	7.83	8.05	8.26	8.67	9.07	9.45	9.81
3 ¾	4.22	4.64	5.03	5.39	5.73	6.05	6.35	6.64	6.91	7.18	7.44	7.69	7.92	8.16	8.38	8.61	9.03	9.44	9.83	10.20
4	4.47	4.90	5.29	5.66	6.00	6.32	6.63	6.93	7.21	7.48	7.75	8.00	8.25	8.49	8.72	8.94	9.38	9.80	10.20	10.58
4 ¼	4.72	5.15	5.55	5.92	6.27	6.60	6.91	7.22	7.50	7.78	8.05	8.31	8.56	8.81	9.04	9.28	9.72	10.15	10.56	10.96
4 ½	4.98	5.41	5.81	6.19	6.54	6.87	7.19	7.50	7.79	8.08	8.35	8.62	8.87	9.12	9.37	9.60	10.06	10.50	10.92	11.32
4 ¾	5.22	5.66	6.07	6.45	6.80	7.15	7.47	7.78	8.08	8.37	8.65	8.92	9.18	9.44	9.69	9.93	10.40	10.84	11.27	11.69
5	5.48	5.92	6.32	6.71	7.07	7.42	7.75	8.06	8.37	8.66	8.94	9.22	9.49	9.75	10.00	10.25	10.72	11.18	11.62	12.04
5 ¼	5.73	6.17	6.58	6.97	7.33	7.68	8.02	8.34	8.65	8.95	9.24	9.52	9.79	10.05	10.31	10.56	11.05	11.51	11.96	12.39
5 ½	5.98	6.42	6.84	7.23	7.60	7.95	8.29	8.62	8.93	9.23	9.53	9.81	10.08	10.36	10.62	10.87	11.37	11.84	12.30	12.74
5 ¾	6.23	6.68	7.09	7.49	7.86	8.22	8.56	8.89	9.21	9.52	9.81	10.10	10.38	10.66	10.92	11.18	11.69	12.17	12.63	13.08
6	6.48	6.93	7.35	7.75	8.12	8.49	8.83	9.17	9.49	9.80	10.10	10.39	10.68	10.95	11.23	11.49	12.00	12.49	12.96	13.42

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

where M = approximate mean height of drawn shell (inch or mm); h = height of drawn shell (inch or mm); t = thickness of shell (inch or mm); and T = thickness of metal (inch or mm) before drawing.

After determining the mean height, the blank diameter for the required shell diameter is obtained from Table 16, the mean height being used instead of the actual height.

Example 2: Suppose a shell 2 inches (mm) in diameter and $3\frac{3}{4}$ inches (mm) high is to be drawn, and that the original thickness of the stock is 0.050 inch (mm) and the thickness of the drawn shell, 0.040 inch (mm). To what diameter should the blank be cut? Obtain the mean height from Formula (41):

$$M = \frac{ht}{T} = \frac{3.75 \times 0.040}{0.050} = 3 \text{ inches (mm)}$$

According to Table 16, the blank diameter for a shell 2 inches (mm) in diameter and 3 inches (mm) high is 5.29 inches (mm). Formula (41) is accurate enough for all practical purposes, unless the reduction in the thickness of the metal is greater than about one-fifth of the original thickness. When there is considerable reduction, a blank calculated by this formula produces a shell that is too long. However, the error is in the right direction, as the edges of drawn shells are ordinarily trimmed.

If the shell has a rounded corner, the radius of the corner should be deducted from the figures given in the table. For example, if the shell referred to in Example 2 had a corner of $\frac{1}{4}$-inch (mm) radius, the blank diameter would equal 5.29 – 0.25 = 5.04 inches (mm).

Another formula sometimes used for obtaining blank diameters for shells, when there is a reduction in the thickness of the stock, is as follows:

$$D = \sqrt{a^2 + (a^2 - b^2)\frac{h}{t}} \tag{42}$$

where D = blank diameter (inch or mm); a = outside diameter (inch or mm); b = inside diameter (inch or mm); t = thickness of shell at bottom (inch or mm); and, h = depth of shell (inch or mm).

Equation (42) is based on the volume of metal in the drawn shell. It is assumed that the shells are cylindrical, and no allowance is made for a rounded corner at the bottom, or for trimming the shell after drawing. To allow for trimming, add required amount to depth h.

When a shell is of irregular cross section, if its weight is known, the blank diameter (D) can be determined by the following formula:

$$D = 1.1284\sqrt{\frac{W}{wt}} \tag{43}$$

where D = blank diameter, inches (mm)
W = weight of shell, lbs (kg)
w = weight of metal, lb/in^3 (kg/mm^3)
t = thickness of the shell, inch (mm)

In the construction of dies for producing shells, especially of irregular form, a common method to be used is to make the drawing tool first. The required blank diameter then can be determined by trial. One method is to cut a trial blank as near to size and shape as can be estimated. The outline of this blank is then scribed on a flat sheet, after which the blank is drawn. If the finished shell shows that the blank is not of the right diameter or shape, a new trial blank is cut either larger or smaller than the size indicated by the line previously scribed, this line acting as a guide. If a model shell is available, the blank diameter can also be determined as follows:

First, cut a blank somewhat large and from the same material used for making the model; then, reduce the size of the blank until its weight equals the weight of the model.

Forces: The punch force for drawing a cylindrical shell needs to supply the various types of work required in deep drawing, such as the work of deformation, redundant work, friction work, and the work required for ironing (if required).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Force for the First Drawing Operation: The calculation of the punch force for the first drawing operation (neglecting friction) is given by the following formula:

$$F_1 = \pi d_{m_1} T(UTS) \tag{44}$$

where d_{m1} = mean diameter of shell after the first operation, (inch or mm)
T = material thickness, (inch or mm)
UTS = ultimate tensile strength of the material, (lb/in^2 or N/mm^2)

Force for Subsequent Drawing Operations: Subsequent drawing operations are different from the first operation: as in the deep-drawing process, the flange diameter decreases but the zone of the plastic deformation does not change. The punch force for the next drawing operation can be calculated by the approximate empirical formula as follows:

$$F_i = \pi d_p T(UTS) \cdot \left(\frac{D}{d_p} - 0.7\right) \tag{45}$$

where d_p = punch diameter (inch or mm)
D = blank diameter (inch or mm)
T = material thickness (inch or mm)
UTS = ultimate tensile strength of the material (lb/in^2 or MPa)

Shapes of Blanks for Rectangular Shells: There is no formula for determining the shape of the blank for rectangular drawing that will produce the part as drawn to print. All corner contours must be developed. However, the following conservative procedure will get the die in the final design ballpark with a minimum of trials. When laying out a blank by this method, first draw a plan view of the finished shell or lines representing the shape of the part at the bottom, the corners being given the required radius, as shown in Fig. 20. Next, insert the sides and ends, making the length L and the width W equal to the length and width of the drawn part minus twice the radius r at the corners. To provide just the right amount of material for the corners, the first step is to find what blank diameter will be required to draw a cylindrical shell having a radius r. This diameter can be calculated by the formula for the blank diameter (D) of the cylindrical shell:

$$D = \sqrt{d^2 - 4dh} \tag{46}$$

where D = blank diameter (inch or mm)
d = diameter of drawn shell (inch or mm)
h = height of shell (inch or mm)

After determining the diameter D, scribe arcs at each corner having radius R equal to one-half of diameter D. The outline of the blank for the rectangular part is then obtained by drawing curved lines between the ends and the sides, as shown in Fig. 20. These curves should touch the arcs R.

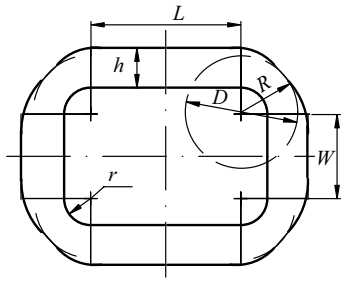


Fig. 20. Layout Design for Deep Drawn Rectangular Shell

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When laying out the blank it is usually advisable to plan for a form that will produce corners a little higher than the sides. The wear of the die is at the corners, and when it occurs, the material will thicken and the drawn part will be low at the corners if no allowance for this wear has been made on the blank.

Blank for Rectangular Flanged Shells: The shape of the blank for a rectangular flanged shell may be determined in practically the same way as described in the foregoing, except that the width of the flange must be considered. Referring to Fig. 20, the dimension h in the flat blank is made equal to the height of the drawn part plus the width of the flange; however, the blank diameter D for a cylindrical shell having a flange can be determined by the formula

$$D = \sqrt{d^2 + 4dh} \tag{47}$$

where D = blank diameter (inch or mm)

d = diameter of drawn shell (inch or mm)

d_1 = diameter measured across the flange (inch or mm)

h = height of shell (inch or mm)

After determining diameter D and the corresponding radius R, the outline of the blank is drawn the same as for a rectangular shell without the flange.

Ironing Process.—The ironing process is the reduction in thickness of drawn shell walls by pulling them through tight dies. Ironing is a very useful process when employed in combination with deep drawing to produce a uniform wall thickness and to increase the wall height. It is done to obtain a wall that is thin compared with the shell bottom or merely to correct natural wall thickening toward the top edge of a drawn shell.

Basically, in the ironing processes, a previously deep-drawn shell is placed on a punch and pushed through one or more ironing die rings that have a smaller inside diameter than the outside diameter of the shell (Fig. 21). Hence, the clearance between the ironing rings and the punch is less than the shell's wall thickness, so the shell after ironing has a constant wall thickness equal to the clearance. The theoretical maximum reduction in wall thickness per operation due to ironing is approximately 60 percent.

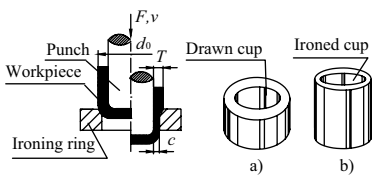


Fig. 21. Ironing of Drawn Cup: a) Cup Before Ironing; b) Cup After Ironing.

Ironing Force: Ironing involves the compression and additional work hardening of the metal. The stress on the sidewall can be quite severe, creating the additional possibility of cup failure.

The force required to iron a cylindrical workpiece can be calculated as

$$F_{ir} = S_c \pi d_0 (T - c) \tag{48}$$

where F_{ir} = ironing force (lb); d_0 = outside diameter of cylindrical cup (in.); S_c = compressive strength of metal (lb/in^2); T = thickness of material (in.); and, c = clearance between punch and die (in.).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Stretch Forming

Stretch forming is a metal forming process in which a blank of sheet metal is formed by the simultaneous application of tensile loads to the material over a die in order to form large contoured parts in the required shape.

During stretch forming, the sheet blank is subjected to both *elastic* and *plastic deformation*. The most appropriate measure of formability for stretch forming is the strain-hardening exponent, or *n* value:

$$c = k\varepsilon^n \tag{49}$$

where k = a constant.

A high value of *n* is desired if the sheet is to show good stretch formability. In assessing the formability of sheet metals while forming a workpiece, a technique called circle grade analysis (CGA) is used to construct a forming limit diagram of the sheet metal to be used.

Two methods are used in stretch forming: simple stretch forming, also called the *block method*, and stretch-wrap forming, also called *tangential stretch forming*.

Simple Stretch Forming.—In the simple stretch forming process, the sheet blank to be formed is clamped between two gripping jaws located on opposite ends, and the tool moves into the clamped sheet blank as shown in Fig. 22.

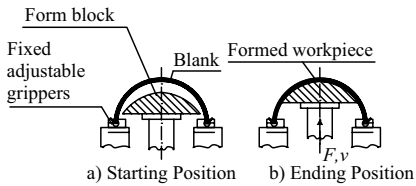


Fig. 22. Simple Stretch Forming.

The most common stretch presses are oriented vertically; the form die rests on a press table that can be raised to the sheet by a hydraulic ram. As the form die is driven into the sheet, the tensile forces increase and the sheet plastically deforms into a new shape.

At the beginning of the process, the sheet blank first drapes itself around the form block, following its contours. Due to the large contact area between form block and blank, the frictional forces prevent a deformation of the sheet in this region.

Stretch-Wrap Forming.—In this method also, a sheet blank is gripped from two opposite ends and stretched into the plastic region before being wrapped over a punch, so that the whole cross section of the material undergoes a uniform plastic deformation; then the die is brought down to complete the operation. The main difference from the simple stretch forming process is that both the form block and the gripping jaws are movable (Fig. 23).

Stretch formed parts are typically large and possess large radial bends. The shapes that can be produced range from a simple curved surface to complex non-uniform cross sections. Stretch forming is capable of shaping parts with very high accuracy and smooth surfaces. Ductile materials are preferable, the most commonly used being aluminum, steel, and titanium. Typical stretch formed parts are large curved panels such as door panels in cars or wing panels on aircraft.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

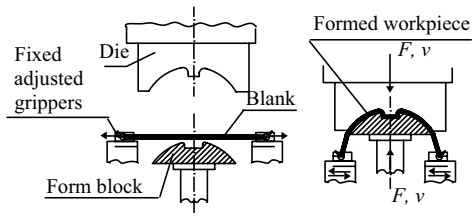


Fig. 23. Stretch Draw Forming.

The advantages of this process are the following:

a) The tensile forces applied always act tangentially to the body of the blank

b) The lack of springback in the finished part

c) Flexible low-cost tooling

d) Increase of yield stress up to 10 percent

e) Less forming pressure required

f) The die can be made of inexpensive material

The disadvantages are these:

a) More material required for gripping

b) Difficulty of adaptation to modern high-speed automated lines

c) Reduction of material thickness by 5 to 7 percent

Spinning

Metal spinning is the process of forming various seamless and axially symmetrical parts from flat circles of sheet metal (blanks) or from a length of tubing over a mandrel with tools or rollers. There are three types of metal spinning processes: conventional spinning, shear spinning, and tube spinning.

Conventional Spinning.—In conventional metal spinning, a disc of metal is rotated at controlled speeds on a specialized machine similar in design to a machine lathe. Instead of the clamping chuck common on a machine lathe, a wood or metal spinning mandrel is used, the form of which corresponds with the internal contour of the part to be produced. The blank is clamped between the spinning mandrel and a follower on the tailstock spindle, as shown in Fig. 24.

The mandrel, blank, and holder are then set in rotation. Spinning tools or spinning rollers are forced against the rotating blank by hand or by a computer controlled hydraulic mechanism. The process requires a series of crossing steps, as indicated in Fig. 24, to complete the shaping of the workpiece. With this forming technique, a material's thickness generally does not change from the blank to the finished component. If the spinning forces applied with the hydraulic mechanism are higher in comparison to hand spinning, mandrels made of a harder material have to be used, e.g., boiler plate, chilled cast iron, or hardened tool steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

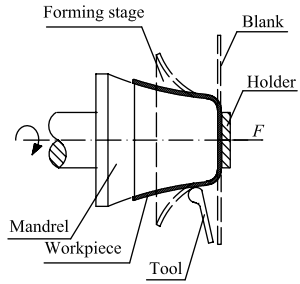


Fig. 24. Conventional Spinning

Shear Spinning.—Shear spinning is the process of forming complex shapes such as cones with tapering walls or symmetrical-axis curvilinear shapes such as the nose cones of missiles. This process achieves a deliberate and controlled reduction in blank thickness (Fig. 25), as opposed to a limited reduction of blank thickness in conventional spinning.

The shear forming roller or rollers achieve local metal flow, which applies a pressure on the blank against the support from the steel mandrel. Special shear forming rollers control the material's flow, and they move the free material parallel to the axis of the mandrel. The remaining portion of the blank, which does not take part in the actual deformation, remains always at right angles with respect to the axis of rotation and does not change its external diameter. The material flow takes place in the axial direction. The wall of the workpiece is produced from the reduction in blank thickness, but the diameter of the blank stays constant, as shown in Fig. 25. The thickness of the initial blank depends on the angle of the final part and the finished wall requirements and can be calculated by the formula:

$$T = \frac{T_w}{\sin \alpha} \tag{50}$$

where T = thickness of the initial blank (inch or mm); T_w = wall thickness of the spun part (inch or mm); and, α = half angle of cone.

The bottom and the flange maintain their original thickness. A particular advantage is that the surface finishes achieved are comparable to those achieved with grinding or fine turning. The accuracy of the shape and the dimensional repeatability are excellent.

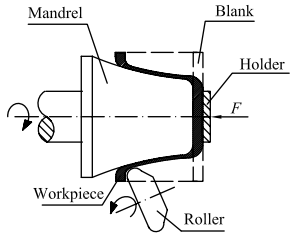


Fig. 25. Shear Spinning

Tube Spinning.—Tube spinning is used to reduce the wall thickness of a hollow cylindrical blank while it is spinning on a cylindrical mandrel using spinning tools (Fig. 26). Applying the spinning tool to the cylindrical blank internally or externally achieves reduction of the workpiece wall, and this reduction in turn results in an increase in the workpiece's length. Workpieces may be spun either forward or backward.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The ideal tangential force in forward tube spinning may be calculated by the following formula:

$$F_t = \sigma_{f(m)}(T - T_w)f \tag{51}$$

where F_t = ideal tangential force (lb or N); $\sigma_{f(m)}$ = average flow stress of the material (lb/in^2 or MPa); T = thickness of the initial blank (inch or mm); T_w = wall thickness of the spun part (inch or mm); and, f = feed (inch or mm).

Because of friction and other influencing factors, the force exerted is about twice that of the ideal force.

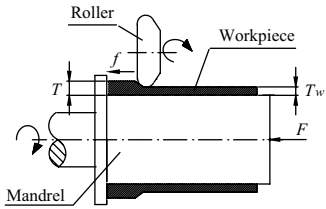
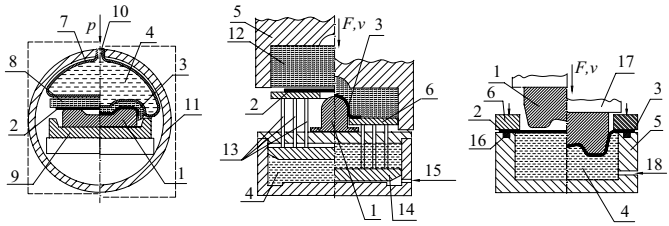


Fig. 26. Tube Spinning

Rubber Pad and Hydroforming Processes

In the rubber pad forming process, one of the dies in a set (punch or die) is replaced with a flexible material such as rubber or polyurethane. Polyurethane is widely used because of its resistance to abrasion and its long fatigue life. Several processes utilize rubber pad forming techniques. Fig. 27 schematically illustrates the Verson-Wheelon, Marform, and hydroforming processes.



a) Verson-Wheelon b) Marform c) Hydroforming

1. Form block
2. Blank
3. Workpiece
4. Hydraulic fluid
5. Container
6. Blankholder
7. Flexible fluid cell
8. Trown rubber pad
9. Loading tray
10. Hydraulic inlet
11. Body of press
12. Rubber pad
13. Support rods
14. Piston
15. Pressure control valve
16. Seal
17. Press ram
18. Hydraulic servo valve

Fig. 27. Rubber Pad Forming Processes: a) Verson-Wheelon; b) Marform; c) Hydroforming

Guerin Process.—Fig. 28 shows the Guerin process, synonymous with the term "rubber pad forming," in which a rigid forming block is placed on the lower bed of the press; on top of this block, the blank is positioned and a soft die of rubber or polyurethane (hardness 50 to 70 Shore) is forced over the rigid block and blank into its required shape. The thickness of the rubber pad, which is held in a sturdy cast-iron or steel container, is usually three times the height of the formed block, but it must be a minimum of 1.5 times thicker than the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

height of a rigid form block. During the process cycle, the rubber pad deforms elastically over the form block and the blank, applying a strong pressure. The pressure that the soft die exerts on the blank is uniform, so that the forming process creates no thinning of the material, but the radii are more shallow than those produced in conventional dies.

The following formula can be used to determine total pad forming pressure:

$$p = \frac{F}{A} \times 2000$$

where p = total rubber pad pressure (psi); F = capacity of press (tons); and A = area of pad (in^2).

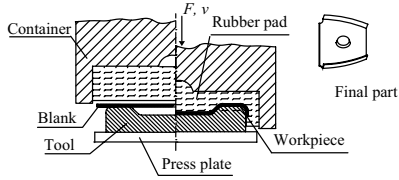


Fig. 28. Guerin Forming Process

An improvement over the Guerin process is the Marform process (see Fig. 27), which features the addition of a blankholder and die cushion to make this process suitable for deeper draws and to alleviate the wrinkling problems common to the Guerin process.

The advantages of the rubber pad forming processes compared to conventional forming processes are the following:

a) For forming a workpiece, only one part of the tool (punch or die) is necessary.
b) One rubber pad or diaphragm takes the place of many different shapes, thicknesses, and kinds of tools, returning to its original shape when the pressure is released.
c) Tool material is low cost and easy to machine.
d) No tool marks are created during forming, so parts with very fine surfaces can be formed.
e) Set-up time is usually shorter than in conventional forming operations.

However, these processes also have some disadvantages:

a) The rubber pad and diaphragm have limited lifetimes.
b) The production rate is relatively slow.
c) Rubber pads or diaphragms exert less pressure than conventional die, resulting in less sharply formed workpieces that usually need some hand finishing.

Superplastic Forming and Diffusion Bonding

Conventional metals and alloys will extend in tension no more than 120 percent, regardless of the temperature or speed with which the metal is pulled. However, it has been known since the 1920s that some materials could endure enormous tensile strains without necking. This phenomenon, called "superplasticity," has been scientifically investigated. In the beginning, activities were primarily concentrated in research laboratories and were entirely directed towards the exploration of basic material science. The materials investigated appeared not to be sufficiently attractive for real production. But this changed with the development of supersonic aircraft with high requirements for power density and skin temperature.

A general definition of the term "superplasticity" was formulated for the first time in 1991 during the International World Conference on Superplasticity of Advanced Materials: "Superplasticity is the ability of a polycrystalline material to exhibit, in a generally isotropic manner, very high tensile elongations prior to failure."

Some materials developed for superplastic forming include

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

- titanium (Ti-6Al-N)
- aluminum (2004, 2419, 7475)
- aluminum-lithium (2090, 2091, 8090)
- stainless steel (2205 series).

In general, the alloys chosen for superplastic forming should have a grain size below 10 microns in diameter. The grain size must not increase if it is kept at temperatures 90 percent of melting for a few hours, and the alloys must have strain rate sensitivity parameters of $0.35 < m <= 0.85$.

High strain rate sensitivity is necessary for reducing the rate of flow localization, i.e., necking. A low rate of damage accumulation, e.g., cavitation, is necessary to allow large plastic strains to be reached.

Superplastic Forming.—Superplastic forming (SPF) is a metal forming process that takes advantage of the high extendability of certain materials in order to form components whose shapes might be otherwise very difficult to obtain. Today, superplastic forming of titanium and aluminum alloys is a standard industrial practice accepted worldwide. Due to the high temperatures and simultaneously relatively low gas pressure (typically less than 200 psi), superplastic forming has found widespread application. Because of titanium's (and some other alloys') high affinity with oxygen and hydrogen, inert gases are exclusively used as the pressure medium. Fig. 29 schematically illustrates the SPF process in four steps.

Typically, the closed die and the blank with created seal are heated to the same temperature in a special hydraulic hot-press (Step 1). Inert gas pressure is introduced at a controlled rate using a sophisticated gas management system until the sheet is fully formed against the die surface (Steps 2 and 3). Each workpiece's geometry is unique and requires a unique pressure/time profile to maintain the appropriate strain rate. As the sheet thins, it requires less forming pressure. However, as the workpiece radius decreases, more pressure is required.

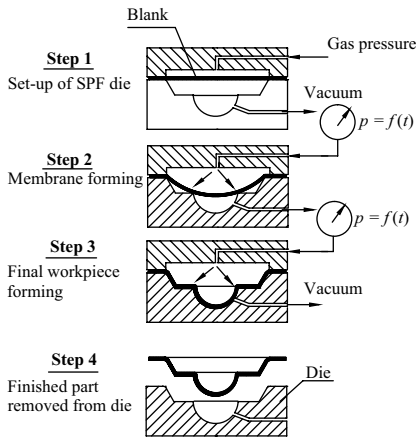


Fig. 29. Schematic Illustration of Superplastic Forming Process

The advantages of the superplastic process are the following:

a) Using one of the alloys with superplastic capabilities means getting to the finished product in fewer steps, which means lower costs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

b) Products that are usually formed in several parts separately can be integrally formed as a single part through superplastic forming. The single piece forming minimizes the number of parts and joints, and thus leads to weight savings.
c) Since the forming needs only the female die, the investment cost for the die is reduced.
d) Little or no residual stress develops in the formed parts.
e) Superior transferability of the die surface to the workpiece is provided.
f) Material waste is minimized.

Disadvantages are these:

a) There is low productivity because of low strain rates, typically 10^{-4} to 10^{-2}/s
b) Material costs are high.

Although the process is increasingly being applied in the aerospace and automotive industries as a way of manufacturing very complex geometries at a fraction of the cost of conventional stamping, some practical problems are still of concern, the main ones being predicting the final thickness distribution of the formed parts, determining the optimum pressure cycles, and learning more about the microstructure of superplastic material and how it changes during such dramatic elongation.

Diffusion Bonding.—The International Institute of Welding (IIW) has accepted the definition of solid state diffusion bonding proposed by Kazakov. This definition is: "Diffusion bonding of materials in the solid state is a process for making a monolithic joint through the formation of bonds at atomic level, as a result of closure of plastic deformation at elevated temperature, which aids interdiffusion at the surface layers of the materials being joined."

The process is dependent on a number of parameters, such as time, applied pressure, bonding temperature, and the method of heat application. The process allows bonding of homogeneous or heterogeneous materials. Hence, structures can be manufactured from two or three metal sheets. Diffusion bonding generally occurs in three stages:

a) The deformation process results in the surfaces to be joined coming into intimate contact, but not enough to produce gross deformation.

b) Bonds are formed by diffusion-controlled mechanisms where the diffusion grain boundary predominates. At this stage, pores are eliminated and the grain boundary arrangement finally ensues.

c) In the third stage, volume diffusion dominates and the joining process is completed.

The mechanism of diffusion bonding involves holding together sheet metal components under moderate pressure, about 10 MPa (1450 psi), at an elevated temperature of (0.5–0.8) T_m (where T_m is the melting temperature in K), usually in a protective atmosphere or vacuum to protect oxidation during bonding. The length of time the materials are held at this temperature depends upon the materials being bonded, the joint properties required, and the remaining bonding parameters.

The aim in diffusion bonding is to bring the surfaces of two or more pieces being joined sufficiently close so that interdiffusion can result in bond formation. To form a high quality bond, surface roughness must be limited to minimum values (Ra < 4 microns); cleanliness must be absolute; and flat surfaces' waviness must be held to less than 400 microns.

A minimum of deformation and an almost complete lack of residual stresses are characteristics of the process, except possibly when two different metals being diffusion-bonded together have large differences in their coefficients of thermal expansion (CTE). This can cause strains to develop at the interface, which can cause premature failure of the bond.

The process is most commonly used for titanium in the aerospace industry, and sometimes it is combined with superplastic forming. Titanium is the easiest of all common engineering materials to join by diffusion bonding, due to its ability to dissolve its own oxide at bonding temperatures (bonding of Ti alloys takes place at 925ºC).

The more conventional form of diffusion bonding usually takes place in a uniaxial loading press. Pressure and heat can be applied by different means. More complex geometries than are possible by the uniaxial process can be handled by hot isocratic pressing, which

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

involves the application of high-temperature, high-pressure argon gas to components. A hot isostatic press consists of a furnace within a gas pressure vessel. The components must be encapsulated in a sealed can to prevent the gas from entering the site of the bond.

The advantages of diffusion bonding include the following:

a) Limited microstructural changes.
b) The ability to join dissimilar alloys.
c) The ability to fabricate very complex shapes, especially using superplastic forming.
d) Minimal deformation.
e) A highly automated process that does not require highly skilled workers
f) The ability to produce high quality joints so that neither metallurgical discontinuities nor porosity exist across the interface.
g) Diffusion bonding is free from ultraviolet radiation and gas emission, so there is no direct detrimental effect on the environment and health and safety standards are maintained.

Disadvantages:

a) Slowness of the process.
b) Protective atmosphere required.
c) Expensive equipment.
d) Smooth surface finish requirements.
e) Need for exceptional cleanliness.

Electron beam diffusion bonding is a variant of diffusion bonding in which only the interface region is heated, resulting in considerable energy savings. The heating source is an electron beam that is swept over the area of the joint at such a speed that fusion of the titanium or aluminum alloy is prevented. A force is applied across the joint. As the heated area is very limited, higher forces can be used without the risk of plastic collapse of the components being bonded, resulting in a significant reduction of bonding time.

Combined DB/SPF.—Diffusion bonding (DB) is often combined with superplastic forming (SPF) in the manufacture of complex structures in aerospace industry. This process is probably the most spectacular near-net shape process that has been developed specifically within the aerospace industry, and its industrial importance is such that it should be considered separately. The process is used commercially for titanium and its alloys.

The most common DB/SPF approaches are 2-sheet (hat-stiffened structures), 3-sheet (truss-core structures) and 4-sheet (rib-stiffed structures).

The processing conditions for superplastic forming and diffusion bonding are similar, both requiring an elevated temperature and benefiting from the fine grain size. Therefore, these two processes have been combined into one manufacturing process known as DB/SPF, which produces parts of greater complexity than sheet forming alone can. Fig. 30 schematically illustrates how combining diffusion bonding with superplastic forming creates a more complicated part shape in the same die.

The combined DB/SPF process generally occurs in two steps:

Step 1: The sheets have a stop-off material, such as boron nitride, placed on them in locations where no bonding is to occur in order to prevent diffusion bonding. Sheets are put down in layers, with stop-off areas into the die, heated together at an elevated temperature, and then bonded together by the use of pressure.

Step 2: In the same die, the SPF process is used to shape the outside of the laminated sheets. Pressure is applied by blowing gas between the sheets, usually in two phases. In the first phase, gas pressure is applied to cause a plastic stretching of the sheets, which eventually contact the die cavity and take a shape like that of the membrane. In the second phase, the pressure is increased to make the final shape of the part. This process generates a part that is very well bonded in the required locations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

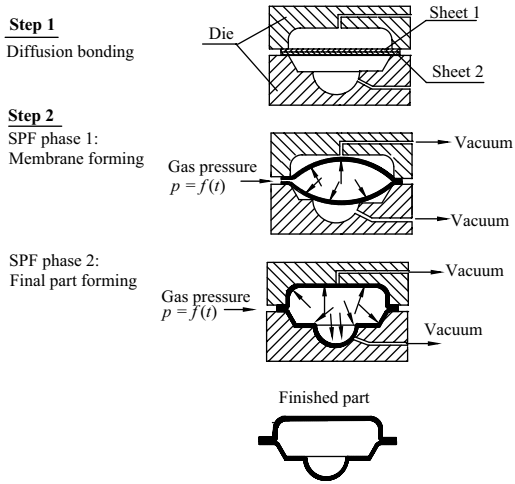


Fig. 30. Schematic Illustration of DB/SPF Process

However, this process also has its challenges. One of these involves how to apply the stop-off material in the proper location using the most cost-effective process. Historically, silk screening has been used to define the required pattern for the stop-off material. This process requires several pieces of equipment, including a wash booth, since the screen needs to be cleaned after each part. A masking paper and laser scribing process has also been developed for defining the stop-off pattern.

There are a number of commercial applications of superplastic forming and diffusion bonding, including aerospace, ground transportation, and numerous miscellaneous other uses. Examples are wing access panels in the Airbus A310 and A320; bathroom sinks in the Boeing 737; turbo fan engine-cooling duct components in the B-1, the T-38, the C-17, and the F-15E; and external window frames in the space shuttle.

High-Energy Rate Metal Forming Processes

The term "high-energy rate forming processes" (HERF) refers to dynamic metal forming processes that form workpieces at very high velocities and extremely high pressure. HERF processes involve a short, sharp forming energy input usually of microsecond duration that is transmitted to the workpiece surface through a medium such as air or water. The resulting shockwave accelerates the workpiece to high velocity and, with its significant kinetic energy, impacts the die, which has the desired shape of the finished part.

High-energy rate metal forming was studied fairly extensively as early as the 1950s. Several processes have been developed, including explosive forming and two-capacitor, discharge-based forming methods; they are *electrohydraulic* and *electromagnetic forming*.

Explosive Forming.—Explosive forming is a manufacturing process that uses explosions to force sheet metal into dies. In this method, the explosive charge is located at some predetermined distance from the workpiece, and the energy is transmitted through an intervening medium such as air, oil, or water. The maximum pressure at the workpiece may range from a few thousand psi to several hundred thousand psi, depending on the parameters of the operation. Fig. 31 shows a typical explosive forming operation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The workpiece is clamped and sealed over the die cavity. A vacuum is then created in the die cavity. The die assembly is put together at the bottom of the tank. The explosive charge is placed in the intervening medium at a certain distance above the workpiece. After the detonation of the charge, the liquid buffer is instantaneously converted from a fluid of low density, low temperature, and low pressure to a fluid of high density, high temperature, and high pressure, causing the rapid forming of the blank into the cavity die. The extremely high forming velocity of explosive forming minimizes material springback, but it does not completely eliminate it. If the relative elongation of material is more than 10 percent, it can be formed without the chance of fracturing.

The distance between the charge and the blank is called the "standoff distance." The standoff distance and the amount of charge determine the amount of pressure transmitted to the workpiece. Other factors, such as the explosive type, the explosive's shape, and the type of buffer medium, also affect the pressure.

An understanding of the compression waves and rarefactions developed in detonation is extremely important in predicting the forming metal's reaction. In the aviation and aerospace industries, the explosive method of forming has been used since the 1980s.

Explosive: Explosives are substances that undergo rapid chemical reaction, during which heat and large quantities of gaseous products are evolved. Explosives can be solid (TNT-trinitro toluene), liquid (nitroglycerine), or gaseous (oxygen-acetylene mixtures).

Die Material: Different materials are used for the explosive forming process. For instance: kirksite and fiberglass are used for low pressure and few parts; epoxy and concrete are used for low pressure and larger numbers of parts; and ductile iron, tool steel, and cast steel are used for high pressure and many parts.

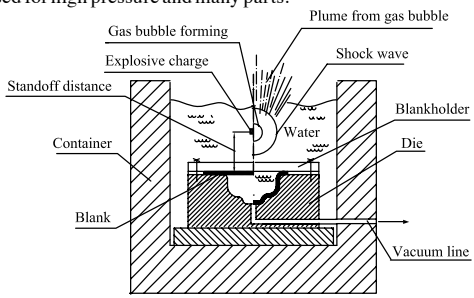


Fig. 31. Explosive Forming Set-Up

Explosive forming has the following characteristic features: a) very large sheets with relatively complex shapes, although usually axisymmetric; b) low tooling costs, but high labor costs; c) long cycle times; d) suitability for low-quantity production; e) maintenance of precise tolerances; and controllable smoothness of contours.

An exceptionally interesting development in the field of explosive method forming is the fabrication of spherical pressure vessels with diameters up to 13 ft, and thickness from 0.12 to 0.79 in. of high strength steel designed for water or oil storage in the chemical industry, and other uses.

Electromagnetic Forming.—Electromagnetic metal forming (EMF) is a high-energy rate cold forming process that can deform metal workpieces without contact. This process uses ultrastrong pulsed magnetic fields to form metal parts rapidly. A capacitor bank is suddenly discharged by means of a switch through a coil in which the workpiece is placed.

Basically, whenever an electrical current is rapidly sent through an electrical conductor, it will develop a magnetic field. This change in magnetic field will induce eddy currents in the workpiece that generally run in a direction opposite to the current in the coil (Lenz's

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

law). The two antiparallel currents repel each other, supplying energy to the workpiece in the form of kinetic energy, which accelerates in the workpiece up to a certain velocity, such as 650 to 1000 ft/s. This kinetic energy drives the material into the die, causing forming on impact. This method is quite useful for general applications and suitable for any workpiece made from a good conductor, provided the current pulse is of a sufficiently high frequency.

There are two very broad ways in which this technique can be employed:

Radial forming, in which a round part such as a tube or ring is compressed or expanded. The forming can be done either inward or outward onto a die to give the tube a more complex shape (Fig. 32). One of the most common applications of electromagnetic forming is the compression crimp sealing and assembly of axis-symmetric components such as automotive oil filter canisters.

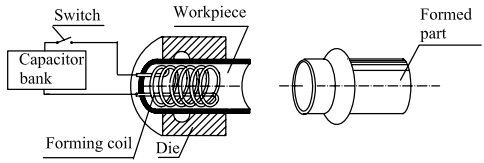


Fig. 32. Schematic Illustration of Electromagnetic Radial Forming of Tube

Sheet metal forming, in which using the flat coil configuration shown in Fig. 33 forms a sheet metal. The velocity of the workpiece is sufficient to cause its impact against a die to give it a more complex shape. The workpiece material should have an electrical resistance of less than 38 μΩ/in. The die needs to be made of either nonmetallic materials or of poor electric conductors.

Advantages of electromagnetic metal forming include: a) reduced number of operations needed; b) narrow tolerances; c) improved strain distribution; d) high repeatability; e) high productivity; f) less reliance on lubricants; and g) lower energy cost.

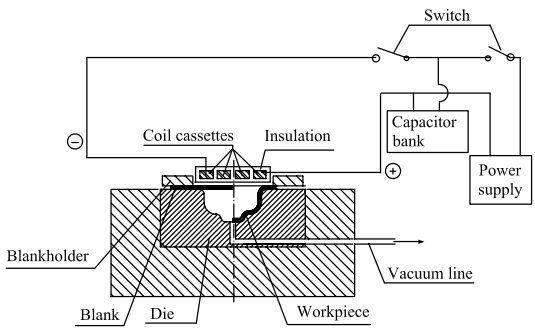


Fig. 33. Schematic Illustration of Electromagnetic Sheet Metal Forming

Electrohydraulic Forming.—Electrohydraulic forming is also known as electric spark forming or electric discharge forming. In this process an electric arc's discharge is used to convert electrical energy to mechanical energy. Electrical energy is stored in large capacitors, and then a pulse of high current is delivered across two electrodes positioned a short distance apart while submerged in a transfer medium (water or oil). Capacitor banks have typically stored 55 to 58 BTU at a charged voltage of 20 kV. This creates a sudden release of steam, which, along with ionization, causes the development of a high pressure shock wave within the transfer medium. The die cavity containing the blank to be formed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is immersed in the tank as well. When exposed to the shock wave, the blank is forced to take on the shape of the die. A schematic illustration of the process is shown in Fig. 34.

Electrohydraulic forming is a hybrid between explosive forming and electromagnetic forming. The liquid-based shock is very similar to what would be produced by the explosive method. However, this method uses essentially the same equipment (capacitor banks) that produces the current in electromagnetic forming. Electrohydraulic forming methods are adapted for use in the production of smaller part sizes. On the other hand, these methods are more favorable for automation because of the fine control of energy discharges and the compactness of the system.

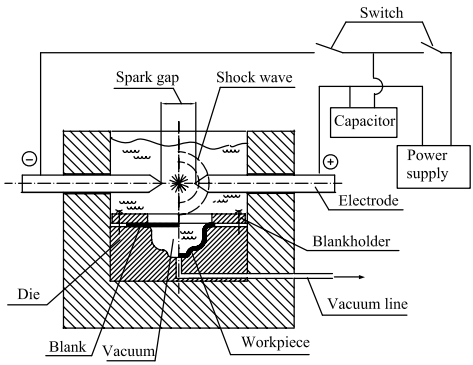


Fig. 34. Electrohydraulic Forming Set-Up

Lubricants and Their Effects on Press Work

Most sheet metal forming operations use lubricants to protect the die and part from excessive wear caused by scratching, scoring, welding, and galling. The physical characteristics of the lubricant and metal-forming operation involved determine the application method to be used.

Methods for applying lubricant to sheet metal include dips, swabs, brushes, wipers, rollers, or recirculation. Of these, the three most common are the following: 1) manually wiping lubricant onto a surface with a rag; 2) roll coating, during which metal blanks pass through rollers that apply the compound; and 3) flooding, during which tooling and metal sheets are drenched with lubricant and the excess liquid is recovered via a filtration and recirculation system.

Lubricants for Blanking Operations.—Blanking dies used for carbon and low-alloy steels are often run with only mill lubricant, but will last longer if lightly oiled. Higher alloy steels and stainless steels require thicker lubricants. Kerosene is usually used with aluminum. Lubricant thickness needs to be about 0.0001 inch (0.0025 mm). During successive strokes, metal debris adheres to the punch and may accelerate wear, but damage may be reduced by application of the lubricant to the sheet or strip. High-speed blanking may require heavier applications of lubrication. For sheets thicker than 1/8 inch (3.18 mm) and for stainless steel, high-pressure lubricants containing sulfurs and chlorines are often used.

Lubricants for Drawing Operations.—Shallow drawing and forming of steel can be done with low-viscosity oils and soap solutions, but during deep drawing, different lubrication requirements exist, from hydrodynamic lubrication in the blank holder to boundary lubrication at the drawing radius, where breakdown of the film very often occurs. Characteristic of deep drawing is the high pressure involved in the operation, on the order of 100,000 pounds per square inch (690 MPa). To deal with such force, the choice of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

lubricant is critical to the success of the operation. Under such pressure, the drawing lubricant should cool the die and the workpiece, provide boundary lubrication between the die and the workpiece, prevent metal-to-metal adhesion or welding, and cushion the die during the drawing operation.

Lubricants work by forming lubricating films between two sliding surfaces in contact with each other. When these metal surfaces are viewed under magnification, peaks and valleys become apparent, even on finely-ground surfaces.

The lubricating film needs to prevent the asperities (peaks) on the two surfaces in sliding contact with each other from damaging the mating surface. Under hydrodynamic or full-film lubrication, two surfaces are completely separated by a fluid film, with no contact between the asperities. This condition could change as speeds vary during start-and-stop modes or if the pressure and temperature increase beyond the lubricant's film strength. Boundary lubricants work up to a certain temperature and pressure, and then the boundary additive breaks down and metal contacts metal. The working temperature varies with the type and amount of additive used and its interaction with other additives.

Three types of drawing lubricants are used: 1) drawing oils; 2) emulsions; and 3) lubricants containing both oil and solid substances.

Drawing oils become an absorbed film, and they take the form of light or soluble oils such as straight mineral oil or emulsions of soluble oil and soap, or of heavy oils, fats, and greases such as tallow or lard oil. Aqueous solutions of non-oily lubricants containing some suspended solids are called emulsions. These lubricants are not widely used in deep drawing because they contain little or no oil.

Lubricants containing both oil and solid substances are used in applications involving severe drawing; these lubricants contain oily components that reduce friction and heat. The combination of the oil and the solids produces enough lubrication for severe drawing applications such as deep drawing. Deep drawing often involves ironing or thinning the wall by up to 35 percent, and lubricant containing high proportions of chemically-active components. Dry soaps and polymer films are frequently used for these purposes. Aluminum can be shallow drawn with oils of low to medium viscosity, and for deep drawing, tallow may be added, as well as wax or soap suspensions for very large reductions.

Lubricant Removal.—Removing lubricant from a formed part after the deep drawing operation is important because any lubricant left behind can interfere with subsequent steps in the manufacturing of the part. Mineral oils, animal fat, and vegetable oils can be removed with an organic solvent by emulsification or saponification, or with an aqueous alkaline cleaner. Greases can also be removed from sheet metal with an organic solvent or an alkaline cleaner. Solids are more difficult to remove because they are not readily soluble. The presence of solids often requires that additional cleaning methods be used. Petroleum oils can raise special issues from removal through disposal. These oils require the use of alkaline cleaners for removal, which can then contaminate cleaner tanks with oil, leading to potential disposal challenges. Vegetable oils can be removed with hot water if the parts are cleaned immediately, and with mildly to moderately alkaline cleaners if the parts have been left standing for a few days.

Joining and Edging

A duct system is an assembly whose main function is to convey air. Elements of the duct system are sheets, transverse joints, longitudinal seams, and reinforcements. The sheets must be able to withstand deflection caused by both internal pressure and vibration due to turbulent air flow. Transverse joints must be able to withstand 1.5 times the maximum operating pressure without failure. Transverse joint designs should be consistent with the static pressure class, sealing requirements, materials involved, and support interval distances. Notching, bending, folding, and fit up tolerances shall be appropriate for the proper class. Longitudinal seams also must be able to withstand 1.5 times the operating pressure without deformation. Seams must be formed and assembled with proper dimension and proportion for tight and secure fit up. Seams may be a butt, corner, plug, or spot

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

weld design. Seam types must be selected based on material and pressure. A duct section between adjacent hangers must be able to carry its own weight and to resist the external loads for which it is constructed. Reinforcing members must be able to resist the external deflection of the sheet and their own deflection.

There is a relationship between duct width, reinforcement spacing, reinforcement size, pressure, and sheet thickness. For constant pressure and constant duct size, the thicker sheet allows more distance between reinforcements. The higher the pressure the shorter the spacing between reinforcements. Joints and intermediate reinforcements are labor-intensive and may be more costly than the savings gained by a reduction in wall thickness. Thicker duct wall and stronger joints are more cost-effective than using more reinforcement. The following material illustrates various joint designs, used both in duct work and other sheet metal assemblies.

Sheet Metal Joints

Plain Lap and Flush Lap:

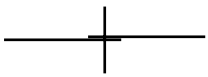


Fig. 35. Plain Lap

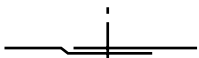


Fig. 36. Flush Lap

The *plain lap* (Fig. 35) and *flush lap* (Fig. 36) are both used for various materials such as galvanized or black iron, copper, stainless steel, aluminum, or other metals, and may be soldered, and/or riveted, as well as spot, tack, or solid-welded. Lap dimensions vary with the particular application, and since it is the duty of the drafter to specify straight joints in lengths that use full-sheet sizes, transverse lap dimensions must be known.

Raw and Flange Corner:

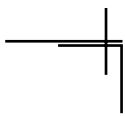


Fig. 37. Raw and Flange Corner

The *raw and flange corner* (Fig. 37) is generally spot-welded, but may be riveted or soldered. For heavy gages it is tack-welded or solid-welded.

Flange and Flange Corner:

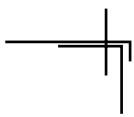


Fig. 38. Flange and Flange Corner

The *flange and flange corner* (Fig. 38) is a refinement of the raw and flange corner. It is particularly useful for heavy-gage duct sections that require flush outside corners and must be field-erected.

Standing Seam:

Fig. 39. Standing Seam

The *standing seam* (Fig. 39) is often used for large plenums, or casings. Before the drafter is able to lay out a casing drawing, the seam allowance measurements are needed, so that panel sizes can be detailed for economical use of standard sheets. Considering velocity levels, standing seams are considered for duct interiors: 1-inch (25.4 mm) seam is normally applied for duct widths up to 42-inch (1067 mm) and 1½-inch (38 mm) for bigger ducts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Groove Seam:

Fig. 40. Groove Seam

The *groove seam* (Fig. 40) is often used for rectangular or round duct straight joints, or to join some sheets for fittings that are too large to be cut out from standard sheets. It is also known as the pipelock, or flat lock seam.

Corner Standing Seam:

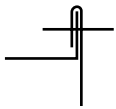


Fig. 41. Corner Standing Seam

The *corner standing seam* (Fig. 41) has applications similar to the standing seam, and also can be used for straight-duct sections. This type of seam is mostly applied at the ends at 8 inches (203 mm) intervals.

Double Seam:

Fig. 42. Double Corner Seam

The *double corner seam* (Fig. 42) at one time was the most commonly used method for duct fabrication. However, although it is seldom used because of the hand operations required for assembly, the double seam can be used advantageously for duct fittings with compound curves. It is called the slide lock seam. Machines are available to automatically close this seam.

Slide-Corner:

Fig. 43. Slide Corner

The *slide-corner* (Fig. 43) is a large version of the double seam. It is often used for field assembly of straight joints, such as in an existing ceiling space, or other restricted working area where ducts must be built in place. To assemble the duct segments, opposite ends of each seam are merely "entered" and then pushed into position. Ducts are sent to job sites "knocked-down" for more efficient use of shipping space.

Button Punch Snap Lock:

Fig. 44. Button Punch Snap Lock

The *button punch snap lock* (Fig. 44) is a flush-type seam that may be soldered or caulked. This seam can be modified slightly for use as a "snap lock". This type of seam is not applicable for aluminum or other soft metals. This seam may be used up to 4" (10.2 cm) w.g. by using screws at the ends. The pocket depth should not be smaller than $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (15.88 mm) for 20-, 22- and 26-gage material (0.91- 0.45 mm).

Pittsburg:

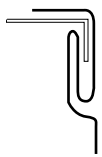


Fig. 45. Pittsburgh

The *Pittsburgh* (Fig. 45) is the most commonly used seam for standard-gage duct construction. The common pocket depths are $\frac{5}{16}$ inch (7.94 mm) and $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (15.88 mm) depending on the thickness of the sheet.

Flange:

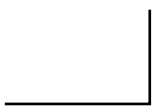


Fig. 46. Flange

The *flange* (Fig. 46) is an end edge stiffener. The drafter must indicate size of flange, direction of bend, degree of bend (if other than 90°) and when full corners are desired. Full corners are generally advisable for collar connections to concrete or masonry wall openings at louvers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hem:

Fig. 47. Hem

The *hem edge* (Fig. 47) is a flat, finished edge. As with the flange, this hem must be designated by the drafter. For example, drawing should show: ¾ inch (19 mm) hem out.

Flat Drive Slip:

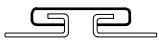


Fig. 48. Drive Slip

The drive slip is one of the simplest transverse joints. It is applicable where pressure is less than 2 inches (50.8 mm) w.g. This is a slide-type connection generally used on small ducts in combination with "S" slips, but should not be used above 2 inches w.g.

Standing Drive Slip:

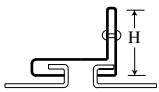


Fig. 49. Standing Drive Slip

This slip is also a slide type connection. It is made by elongating the flat drive slip and fastening standing portions 2 inches (50.8 mm) from each end. The design is applicable for any length in 2 inches w.g, 36 inches (914 mm) for 3 inches w.g., and 30 inches (762 mm) at 4 inches w.g. service.

Flat Drive Slip Reinforced:

Fig. 50. Drive Slip Reinforced

This reinforcement on the flat drive slip is made by adding a transverse angle section after a fixed interval.

Double "S" Slip Reinforced:

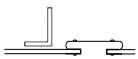


Fig. 51. Double "S" Slip

The double "S" slip is used to eliminate the problem of notching and bending, especially for large ducts. Use 24 gage sheet for 30 inches (762 mm) width or less, and 22 gage sheet over 30 inches-width. (22 gage = 0.76 mm, 24 gage= 0.60 mm)

Flat "S" Slip:

Fig. 52. Plain "S" Slip

Normally the "S" slip is used for small ducts. However, it is also useful if the connection of a large duct is tight to a beam, column or other object, and an "S" slip is substituted for the shop standard slip. Service above 2 inches w.g. is not applicable. Gage shall not be less than 24, and shall not be less than the duct gage. When it is applied on all four edges, fasten within 2 inches of the corners and at 12-inch (305 mm) maximum intervals.

Hemmed "S" Slip:

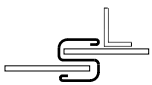


Fig. 53. Hemmed "S" Slip

This modified "S" slip is made by adding hem and an angle for reinforcing. The hem edge is a flat and finished edge. Hemmed "S" slip is mostly applied with angle. The drive is generally 16 gage (0.76 mm), forming a 1 inch height slip pocket and screws at the end. Notching and bending operations on "S" slip joints can be cumbersome and costly, especially for large sizes. Tie each section of the duct within 2 inches (50 mm) from the corner at maximum 6-inch (152.4 mm) intervals.

Other Types of Duct Connections

Clinch-bar Slip and Flange:

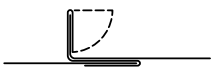


Fig. 54. Clinch-bar Slip and Flange

The *clinch-bar slip and flange* (Fig. 54) uses the principle of the standing seam, but with a duct lap in the direction of airflow. These slips are generally assembled as a framed unit with full corners either riveted or spot-welded, which adds to the duct cross section rigidity. Reinforcement may be accomplished by spot welding the flat-bar to the flange of the large end. Accessibility to all four sides of the duct is required because the flange of the slip must be folded over the flange on the large end after the ducts are connected.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Clinch-bar Slip and Angle :

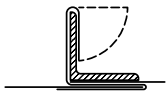


Fig. 55. Clinch-bar Slip and Angle

The *clinch-bar slip and angle* (Fig. 55), is similar to clinch bar slip (Fig. 54), but it has a riveted or spot-welded angle on the large end. This connection can also have a raw large end that is inserted into the space between the angle and the shop-fabricated slip. Matched angles, minimum of 16-gage (1.52 mm), are riveted or spot-welded to the smaller sides of the ducts to pull the connection "home."

Flanged Duct Connections

Angle Frame, or Ring:

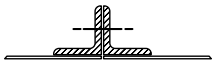


Fig. 56. Raw Ends and Matched ∠s

Any of the following flanged connections may have gaskets. The drafter should not allow for gasket thicknesses in calculations for running length dimensions, nor indicate angle sizes, bolt centers, etc., as these items are established in job specifications and approved shop standards. Generally, angles are fastened to duct sections in the shop. If conditions at the job site require consideration for length contingencies, the drafter should specify "loose angles" such as at a connection to equipment that may be located later. The most common matched angle connection is the *angle frame*, or *ring* (Fig. 56). The angles are fastened flush to the end of the duct.

Flanged End and Angle:

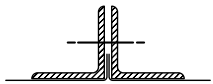


Fig. 57. Flanged Ends and Matched ∠s

The *flanged end and angle* (Fig. 57), is often used for ducts 16 gage or lighter, as the flange provides a metal-to-metal gasket and holds the angle frame or ring on the duct without additional fastening. The drafter may indicate in a field note that a round-duct fitting is to be "rotated as required". This type of angle-ring-connection is convenient for such a condition.

Formed Flanges:

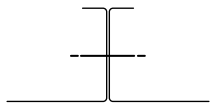


Fig. 58. Formed Flanges

Double flanges (Fig. 58), are similar to Fig. 46, except that the connecting flange has a series of matched bolt holes. This connection, caulked airtight, is ideal for single-wall apparatus casings or plenums. The flanges are formed at the ends of the duct; after assembly they will form a T shape. Mating flanges shall be locked together by long clips. In order to form an effective seal, gaskets with suitable density and resiliency are used. At the corners 16 gage (1.5 mm) thickness steel corners are used with $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) diameter bolts.

Double Flanges and Cleat:

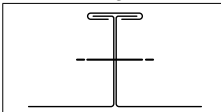


Fig. 59. Double Flanges and Cleat

Double Flanges and Cleat (Fig. 59) is identical to (Fig. 58), but has an air seal cleat. The reinforcements are attached to the duct wall on both sides of the joint.

Clinch-type Flanged Connections:

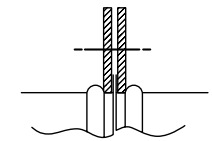


Fig. 60. Bead Clinch and Z Rings

Clinch-type flanged connections for round ducts, 16 gage or lighter, are shown in Fig. 60. The angles or rings can be loose, as explained in *Flanged End and Angle*, (Fig. 57). The drafter should indicate flange sizes, bend direction, and type of assembly. An example such as the flange lap for a field assembly of a 10 gage (3.4 mm) casing corner would be written: 1½ inches (38 mm) flange out square on side with $\frac{9}{32}$ inch (7 mm) ∅ bolt holes 12 inches (30 cm) CC. At the beginning and ending, angles are connected by rivets or welding. The bolt will be $\frac{5}{16}$ inch (8 mm) ∅ at 6 inch (152 mm) maximum spacing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sheet Metal Mill Finishes

Mill finish is the natural surface texture of sheet metal after it exits a rolling mill, with no external mechanical or chemical finishing. This surface can be rough and lack sheen. It also may show oxidation or contamination with mill oil. Most mill finish surfaces are treated with polishing, industrial etching, or some other surface finishing process before being considered complete. Typical sheet metal mill finishes can be identified as:

Unspecified: This is the natural finish provided by hot-rolling or cold-rolling using unpolished rolls. Ranging from dull to bright, the finished surface may retain stains or a light film of oil.

Specular as Fabricated: Produced on one or both sides of a sheet by passing it through highly polished cold rolls, this is a mirror-like finish.

Non-Specular as Fabricated: Refers to a finish that is more uniform than the "unspecified" process but without the reflective properties of a "specular as fabricated" finish.

The quality and characteristics of various mill finishing processes can vary widely from one mill to another and even between lots (sets of similar parts, processed consecutively or in a short time). Hot-rolled sheets usually have dark, dull surfaces, oxidized from being hot-worked. But it is possible for a mill to influence the finish of produced stock. Carefully maintained and polished rollers can increase surface smoothness and luster; some mills will follow rolling with an annealing process to give stock a matte finish.

Surface Finishes of Aluminum Sheets.—A light metal, aluminum has good tensile strength over a wide range of temperatures and excellent corrosion resistance. These properties and aluminum's appearance can be improved by alloying it with other metals.

Mill finish is the natural state of the aluminum sheet as it comes from the rolling mill, with no additional finishing. When aluminum is exposed to air, a thin, glass-hard oxidized film forms on the surface. This film clings tenaciously, presenting an effective surface barrier against the elements. Generally, a rolled sheet develops a thinner oxide film than hot extruded aluminum.

With little care, aluminum sheets in mill finish state will maintain their original appearance for a long time. Surface coating can increase the effectiveness of aluminum's corrosion resistance. Types of aluminum surface treatment are shown in Table 18.

Table 18. Types of Surface Treatment

Type of Treatment	Technique	Characteristics
Mechanical	Grinding/brushing	Produces a flat, even surface with a silk or matte appearance. Leaves fine lines in direction of grinding.
	Polishing and buffing	Reduces or removes grinding lines, die lines, tool marks, surface blemishes, and "stress risers."
	Vibration polishing	Yields a matte-to-shiny surface. Suited to small batches and mass-produced parts.
	High-finish polishing	Creates a mirror-like finish. Usually followed by bright anodizing.
Chemical	Milling	Removes surface to desired depth. Can be selectively applied for sign writing and other etched products.
	Etching	Leaves a matte or silky appearance. Usually a pretreatment for other finishing processes. Different etchants leave different textures that may show in anodizing sheen.
	Brightening	Removes surface texture for a mirror-like finish. Residual film is usually less than 0.000591 in. or 15 µm.
	Chromating/phosphating	Pretreatment applied prior to powder coating or other coating processes.
	Electrochemically plating with copper, tin, nickel, or silver	Improves corrosion resistance. Can provide a good soldering surface, conductivity, and reflectivity.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. *(Continued)* **Types of Surface Treatment**

Electrochemical	Decorative anodizing	Deposits a hard, natural, or colored oxide layer up to 0.0009842 in. or 25 µm. Mainly for decoration, resists pitting and corrosion, while adding wear resistance and electrical insulation.
	Hard anodizing	Adds a gray to brown hard oxide layer of 0.0029528 to 0.0049213 in. or 75 to 125 µm. Mainly used for engineering purposes to resist abrasion and wear.
	Electrolytic polishing	Creates a smooth surface with high reflectivity.
Organic surface coating	Powder coating	Provides various degrees of protective and decorative finishes that can withstand heavy chemical attack (if surface coating remains unbroken).
	Screen printing	Used for printing text, decorative patterns, and so on.
	Coating with protective foils	Added for decoration, protection, or other properties.
	Wet coating	Used in capital-intensive operations for coil coating. Effective, efficient, and common in the building industry.

Mechanical Finishes: Mechanical finishing is done before chemical finishing or anodizing to remove surface defects and irregularities and/or add desired texture. While the resulting surface appearance can vary, most mechanical processes result in a directional or nondirectional sanded finish, uniform matte finish, or a specular (mirror-like) finish. The mechanical finish will show through anodic oxides, because uncolored anodic oxides are transparent or translucent; anodized finishes also conform to surface textures.

Grinding requires a rotary grinder with a bonded adhesive cup wheel or canvas wheel, faced with suitable abrasives. Low-speed grinding at 59 in/min (1,500 mm/min) using aluminum oxide is preferred to avoid overheating the surface.

Machine polishing involves wheels or belts with abrasives either bonded to them or sprayed on at regular intervals. Methods include both contact and mush polishing (where only the polishing compound touches the metal surface), the latter being more common. Polishing can include final buffing to remove emery marks.

Chemical Finishes: Many types of chemical treatment are used on aluminum sheets as finishing processes, but few are final finishes. Most are intermediate steps in an overall finishing process, requiring subsequent application of some form of protective coating.

There are numerous methods of providing intermediate process finishes on sheet metals that involve washing or dipping fabricated product in chemical solutions; many are proprietary processes. Such treatments have various purposes but in general are used to: a) clean the surface, without otherwise affecting it; b) create a clean, matte, textured surface for applying a smooth, bright finish; or c) chemically add a film to provide a substrate for organic coatings.

Conversion Coatings: Although chemical conversion coatings generally are used on aluminum to prepare surfaces for painting, some can be used as a final finish. Since the natural oxide film present on aluminum surfaces does not always provide a good bond for paints, other organic coatings, and laminates, the chemical nature of the film is often converted to improve adhesion and undercoating protection. Such conversion films or coatings usually are applied using phosphate or chromate solutions, many of which are proprietary in nature.

One of the simplest methods for improving adhesion of organic coatings is etching surfaces with a phosphoric acid solution to provide a good mechanical bond. Finishes of this type, such as acid-chromate fluoride treatments, usually are governed by ASTM B449, "Specifications for Chromates on Aluminum."

Anodic Coatings: These economical, electrolytically formed oxides in sulfuric or phosphoric acid coatings impart excellent, comparatively thick 0.0003 to 0.002 in. (8 to 50 µm), transparent, durable, protective coatings to aluminum surfaces. Color anodic coatings are formed by: impregnating the coating with organic dyes or pigments; using alloys and processes that produce integral color; or electrolytically depositing pigments in the anodic film.

Quality control tests after anodizing are performed on representative samples taken at random from rack loads to determine whether the coating meets the specified thickness and weight and is properly sealed. Test methods for checking thickness and weight are specified in: 1) ASTM B244, "Test Method for Measurement of Thickness of Anodic

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coatings on Aluminum and of Other Nonconductive Coatings on Nonmagnetic Basis Metals with Eddy Current Instruments": This nondestructive method determines coating thickness using the lift-off effect of a probe coil, which contacts the coating and generates measurable eddy currents in the aluminum substrate; 2) ASTM B137, "Test Method for Measurement of Weight of Coating Mass per Unit Area on Anodically Coated Aluminum": This test involves weighing a small sample of known surface area on an analytical balance, dissolving the coating in a solution that does not attack aluminum, and then reweighing the specimen and comparing weights.

Surface Finishes of Stainless Steel Sheet.—Finishes for stainless steel include standard mill and polished, proprietary, electropolished, blasted, rolled, textured, colored, or etched, or any combination of these.

Specific finishes for stainless steel sheet and strip products are defined in ASTM A480/ASTM A480M, "Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip" (see Table 19). These finishes are identified by a system of numbers and letters: unpolished or "mill" finishes are No. 1, No. 2D, and BA for bright annealed (usually 2BA); polished finishes are No. 3, No. 4, No. 6, No. 7, and No. 8. Temper-rolled (TR) finishes are used when strong mechanical properties are needed. Also specified are additional architectural finishes, which may be described as No. 5 and form a separate category, as there are numerous techniques and finish variations available worldwide. Other finishes, such as embossing, coining, and special rolled finishes, also are applied mechanically; non-mechanical options include coloring and etching.

Table 19. Standard Mechanical Finishes for Stainless Steel Sheet, *ASTM A480/A480M*

Finish Designation	DEFINITION	NOTES
	Unpolished Finishes (Mill Finishes)	
No. 1	Hot-rolled, annealed and pickled, and descaled	This is a dull, nonreflective finish.
No. 2D	Cold-rolled, dull finish	A smooth, nonreflective, cold-rolled, annealed, and pickled or descaled finish. This nondirectional finish is effective in retaining lubricants in deep drawing applications.
No. 2B	Cold-rolled, bright finish	A smooth, moderately reflective, cold-rolled and annealed and pickled or descaled finish typically produced with a final, light, cold-rolled pass using polished rolls. This general-purpose finish is more readily polished than No. 1 or No. 2D. Product with No. 2B finish is normally supplied in annealed plus lightly cold-rolled condition, unless a tensile-rolled product is specified.
BA (bright annealed)	Bright, cold-rolled finish, retained by final annealing in a controlled atmosphere furnace	This smooth, bright, reflective finish is usually produced by cold-rolling, followed by annealing in a protective atmosphere to prevent oxidation and scaling during annealing.
	Polished Finishes	
No. 3	Intermediate polished finish, one or both sides	A linearly textured finish, produced by either mechanical polishing or rolling, with surface roughness average generally up to 40 µin. or 1.016 µm Ra. Surface roughness differs with various instruments, laboratories, and skilled operators, who may blend this finish. There can be overlap in surface roughness measurements for No. 3 and No. 4 finishes.
No. 4	General purpose polished finish, one or both sides	A linearly textured finish produced by either mechanical polishing or rolling, with surface roughness average generally up to 25 µin. or 0.635 µm Ra. Surface roughness differs with various instruments, laboratories, and skilled operators, who may blend this finish. There can be overlap in surface roughness measurements for No. 3 and No. 4 finishes.
No. 6	Dull, satin finish, Tampico brushed, one or both sides	Has a soft, satin appearance, typically produced by Tampico brushing a No. 4 finished sheet.
No. 7	High-luster finish	Has a high degree of reflectivity, produced by buffing a finely ground surface, but grit lines are not removed. Chiefly used for architectural or ornamental purposes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. *(Continued)* **Standard Mechanical Finishes for Stainless Steel Sheet,** *ASTM A480/A480M*

No. 8	Mirror-like finish	A highly reflective, smooth finish typically produced by polishing with successively finer grit abrasives, then buffing. Faint polish lines may be visible on the final product. Blending after part assembly can be done with buffing.
TR (temper-rolled)	Cold-worked to obtain specified properties	Results from the cold-rolling of an annealed and descaled or bright annealed product to obtain mechanical properties higher than that seen in the annealed condition. Appearance will vary, depending on the alloy, starting finish, and amount of cold work.

Standard Rolled Mill Finishes: Standard rolled mill finishes are created when a stainless steel coil is passed through a set of rolls, and the finish on the rolls is transferred to the surface of the coil.

No. 1 is the standard rolled mill finish and least expensive. Produced by hot-rolling, annealing, and descaling by pickling, it is dull with uneven color and texture. Grinding marks and similar blemishes are common. Heavy sheet and plate for structural applications are supplied with this finish. When components will be visible, it is common to apply a secondary finish, such as polishing or abrasive blasting, for a uniform appearance.

No. 2D, No. 2B, and 2BA are standard mill sheet and strip finishes. They start with a cold-rolled coil that is annealed and pickled.

No. 2D is a uniform, dull, low-reflectivity sheet and strip finish. The dull appearance is produced by pickling or descaling. This is the preferred finish for deep drawing applications, as it holds lubricants well.

No. 2B finish is more reflective, resembling a smooth, cloudy mirror. The final finish is produced by a light pass through polished rolls. Heavier passes can be used if higher tensile strengths are required. This is a common starting finish for polishing and embossing.

A 2BA finish is a bright, reflective, mirror-like surface, ranging from hazy to clear. It is used as a lower cost alternative to highly polished stainless for architectural trim, panels, and fascia, though it is less uniform. When the final annealing is done in a furnace with a controlled atmosphere, it is referred to as bright annealing (BA); to produce a 2BA finish, the bright-annealed coil is given a light pass through highly polished rolls to flatten the coil and enhance finish uniformity. Buffing can produce a consistent mirror finish; it is not unusual for buffed BA to be specified for aesthetic applications where consistency is important. 2BA also can be the starting finish for embossing, coining, selective polishing, or etching. It is slightly more expensive than a No. 2D or No. 2B finish.

For all of these finishes, the rolling direction should be marked on the back of cut panels to facilitate installing them in the same direction. Or a protective strippable film can be applied to the front, with printed arrows indicating the rolling direction. As there can be differences in appearance from one end of the coil to the other, due to roller wear, numbering panels as they are cut from the coil enables adjacent installation of consecutive panels, optimizing uniformity. If more than one coil is needed for a project, ideally all coils should come from the same producer off the same line.

Polished Finishes: These finishes for stainless steel are produced by using successively finer polishing belts or by passing a stainless steel coil through special rollers that simulate a No. 3 or No. 4 polish. No common stainless steel specification requires that a finish meet specific surface roughness requirements, but surface roughness influences appearance and corrosion performance. Therefore, it can be important to specify a range or maximum for surface roughness. No. 7 and No. 8 finishes are produced by polishing with successively finer belts and then buffing, with cost based on the number of operations involved and degree of smoothness desired. These finishes can be applied to sheet, strip, tube, pipe, and any of the other stainless steel shapes.

No. 3 and No. 4 polished finishes are produced by belt or wheel polishing with fine grit abrasives or by rolling, and they are characterized by very fine parallel "grit lines." When a piece is mechanically finished, No. 3 involves abrasives between 80 and 150 grit; applied to sheets or strips, this finish typically produces an average surface roughness of up to 40 µin. or 1.016 µm Ra. No. 4 is commonly used as an architectural finish and can be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

produced by mechanical polishing or rolling. If mechanical polishing is used, the final pass can be between 120 and 320 grit; average surface roughness on sheets or strips is typically up to 25 µin. or 0.635 µm Ra. There may be overlap between the surface roughness measurements and grit ranges for the No. 3 and No. 4 finishes. Either finish can be polished wet or dry. Wet polishing produces a smoother, finer finish.

A soft, satin, directional finish, No. 6 was used for the columnar features on the exterior walls of the Empire State Building and other early stainless steel projects. It is typically produced by Tampico brushing a No. 4 finish with an oil and abrasive mixture, for a silver-white appearance; however, the high wear rate of Tampico brushes makes it difficult for workers to obtain a uniform appearance, and this finish is known for having fingerprint problems. ASTM A480/A480M allows other polishing methods to be substituted if they produce a finish with the same surface roughness, reflectivity, and an appearance that a stainless steel surface finish expert considers visually identical. Polishing lines should be soft and the resultant finish much less reflective than a No. 4. A finished surface sample that acts as a visual standard is particularly important when specifying this finish, because a wide range of visually different finishes may be called a No. 6.

Still smoother and more reflective sheet finishes are obtained by buffing polished surfaces. The semi-bright No. 7 is polished to a finely ground surface and buffed to a mirror-like finish, with residual grit lines still visible. The highly reflective, mirror-like No. 8 is progressively polished and buffed so only faint polishing grit lines show on final products.

Surface Finishes of Stainless Steel Strips.—Five mill finishes are defined by ASTM A480/A480M for stainless steel strips. Within each of these finish categories, some variation is expected, due to the characteristics of different alloys and differences in metal thickness and methods of processing.

No.1 strip finish is similar to a No. 2D sheet finish, which is produced by cold-rolling to the specified thickness, followed by annealing and pickling. It varies in appearance from dull gray matte to fairly reflective.

No. 2 strip finish is produced the same way as a No. 1 finish, except that it is followed by a final cold roll pass, often on highly polished rolls. It is a smoother, more reflective finish than a No. 1 strip finish. If the rolls are highly polished, it is equivalent to a No. 2B sheet finish.

BA (bright-annealed), TR (temper-rolled), and No. 3 and No. 4 polished finishes also can be used on stainless steel strips and follow the requirements for sheet finishes. No. 5 is a separate category and may be negotiated between buyer and seller.

Surface Films.—When stainless steel arrives from the mill or processor, it generally has a protective passive film on the surface. As long as the surface is clean and exposed to oxygen, the passive film automatically forms when the surface is abraded or machined. If the surface is protected from contamination and scratching during fabrication, transit, and installation, and there is no welding, then chemical passivation of the surface after fabrication is not required. Washing with a mild, chloride-free detergent and water solution or an ammonia and water solution still may be necessary.

Protective Plastic Films: These can be applied by the producer, processor, fabricator, or finisher to protect stainless steel surfaces. The use of strippable protective plastic film during forming operations that do not require heat helps protect surfaces from contamination by other metals and light scratching and also acts as a lubricant. Film also can help prevent damage from light scratching during shipping, storage, or installation. If an appropriate protective film is specified, it can be left in place until just prior to turnover, eliminating or reducing the need for final cleaning.

Commonly used protective films are porous and do not prevent corrosion from saltwater, water containing deicing salt, swimming pool atmospheres, corrosive acids, and other substances that can be corrosive to some stainless steels. Where there is exposure to such elements, a film can even accelerate corrosion by acting as a crevice, so protective strippable films should be removed immediately after installation.

If film is applied to a component that will be stored or installed in an exterior location, a UV-rated film should be specified. Film life takes into consideration the total time a film is to be used, including potential project delays. Film left in place past its warranted life

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

or exposed to conditions for which it was not designed can be difficult to remove, leave residual adhesive, or be a factor in corrosion.

If an improper film type is selected or if film is left in place too long, the film supplier should be contacted to identify an appropriate water-based cleaner or solvent for removal of residual adhesive, based on the type of adhesive. If a solvent is needed, rubbing alcohol or citric cleaners often are tried before resorting to more aggressive solutions.

Sheet Metal Gauge Sizes

Gauge sizes are numbers that indicate the thickness of a piece of sheet metal. The larger the gauge number, the thinner the sheet metal specification. Gauge differs between ferrous (iron-based) metals and nonferrous metals, such as aluminum or copper. Sheet metal thickness conversion for various metals is shown in Table 20.

Table 20. Sheet Metal Gauge Conversion Cart

Gauge Number	Nominal Thickness					
	Stainless Steel		Mild Steel		Aluminum	
	Inches	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters
3	0.250	6.350	0.2391	6.073	0.2294	5.823
4	0.2343	5.953	0.2242	5.695	0.2043	5.182
5	0.2118	5.556	0.2092	5.314	0.1819	4.620
6	0.2031	5.159	0.1943	4.935	0.1620	4.115
7	0.1875	4.762	0.1793	4.551	0.1443	3.665
8	0.1719	4.366	0.1644	4.176	0.1285	3.264
9	0.1562	3.967	0.1495	3.787	0.1144	2.906
10	0.1406	3.572	0.1395	3.416	0.1019	2.588
11	0.1250	3.175	0.1196	3.038	0.0907	2.304
12	0.1094	2.778	0.1046	2.657	0.0808	2.052
13	0.0937	2.381	0.0897	2.278	0.0720	1.829
14	0.0781	1.984	0.0747	1.897	0.0641	1.628
15	0.0703	1.785	0.0673	1.709	0.0571	1.450
16	0.0625	1.587	0.0598	1.519	0.0508	1.290
17	0.0562	1.429	0.0538	1.367	0.0453	1.150
18	0.0500	1.270	0.0478	1.214	0.0403	1.024
19	0.0437	1.111	0.0418	1.062	0.0359	0.912
20	0.0375	0.952	0.0359	0.912	0.0320	0.813
21	0.0244	0.873	0.0329	0.836	0.0285	0.724
22	0.0312	0.793	0.0299	0.759	0.0253	0.643
23	0.0281	0.715	0.0269	0.683	0.0226	0.574
24	0.0250	0.635	0.0239	0.607	0.0201	0.510
25	0.0219	0.556	0.0209	0.531	0.0179	0.455
26	0.0187	0.476	0.0179	0.455	0.0159	0.404
27	0.0172	0.436	0.0164	0.417	0.0142	0.361
28	0.0156	0.397	0.0149	0.378	0.0126	0.320
29	0.0141	0.357	0.0135	0.343	0.0113	0.287
30	0.0125	0.317	0.0120	0.305	0.0100	0.254
31	0.0109	0.278	0.0105	0.267	0.0089	0.261
32	0.0102	0.258	0.0097	0.246	0.0080	0.203
33	0.0094	0.238	0.0090	0.229	0.0071	0.180
34	0.0085	0.218	0.0082	0.208	0.0063	0.160
35	0.0078	0.198	0.0075	0.191	0.0056	0.142
36	0.0070	0.178	0.0067	0.170	0.0050	0.127
37	0.0066	0.168	0.0064	0.163	0.0045	0.114
38	0.0062	0.158	0.0060	0.152	0.0040	0.101

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Classification of Dies

Dies may be classified according to a variety of elements and in keeping with the diversity of die design. According to the number of stations involved, dies for sheet metal working may be classified as: a) single-station dies (either compound dies or combination dies) or b) multiple-station dies (progressive dies and transfer dies).

Single-Station Dies.—Single-station dies may be compound dies or combination dies.

Compound Die: This is a die in which two or more cutting operations are performed to produce a part in a single press stroke. A die that produces washers is a good example of a compound die (Fig. 61).

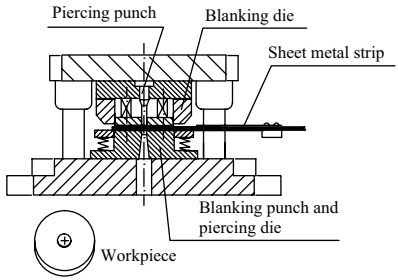


Fig. 61. Compound Die

Combination Die: This is a die in which both cutting and noncutting operations are performed to produce a part at one stroke of the press. A combination die is economical, and a more accurate part is obtained because it eliminates the problem of relocating the workpiece. However, a combination die is not always desirable; for example, when the punching hole is too close to the edge of the blank, the cutting edge would be so weak that failure would result. A die that produces cups with flanges is a good example of the suitable use of combination dies (Fig. 62).

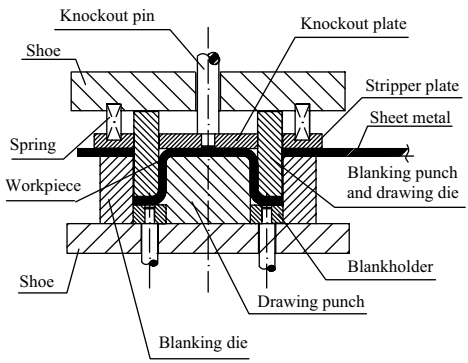


Fig. 62. Combination Die

Multiple-Station Dies.—Multiple-station dies are arranged so that a series of sequential operations is performed with each press stroke. Two die types are used:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Progressive Die: A progressive die (Fig. 63) is used to transform coil stock or strips into a finished part. This transformation is performed progressively by a series of stations aligned in a row; the workpiece is fed from station to station with each stroke, by being attached to the scrap skeleton. Force for the movement is applied to the incoming sheet metal strip or coil and outgoing scrap skeleton by means of rolls.

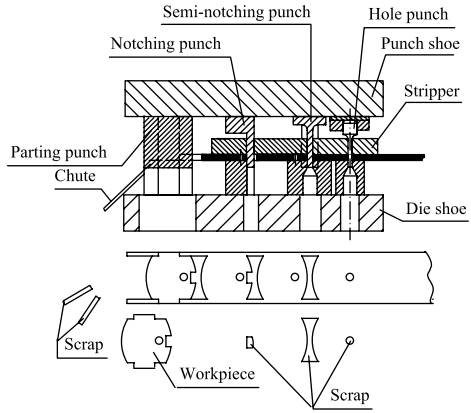


Fig. 63. Progressive Die

The cost of a progressive die is high, so it is best used for high-volume production.

Transfer Die: In transfer die operations, individual stock blanks are mechanically moved from die station to die station within a single die set. Large workpieces are done with tandem press lines, in which the stock is moved from press to press where specific operations are performed.

Steel Rule Dies.—Steel rule dies (or knife dies) were patented by Robert Gair in 1879, and, as the name implies, have cutting edges made from steel strips of about the same proportions as the steel strips used in making graduated rules for measuring purposes. According to J. A. Richards, Sr., of the J. A. Richards Co., Kalamazoo, MI, a pioneer in the field, these dies were first used in the printing and shoemaking industries for cutting out shapes in paper, cardboard, leather, rubber, cork, felt, and similar soft materials. Steel rule dies were later adopted for cutting upholstery material for the automotive and other industries, and for cutting out simple to intricate shapes in sheet metal, including copper, brass, and aluminum. A typical steel rule die, partially cut away to show the construction, is shown in Fig. 64, and is designed for cutting a simple circular shape. Such dies generally cost 25 to 35 percent of the cost of conventional blanking dies, and can be produced in much less time. The die shown also cuts a rectangular opening in the workpiece, and pierces four holes, all in one press stroke.

The die blocks that hold the steel strips on edge on the press platen or in the die set may be made from plaster, hot lead or type metal, or epoxy resin, all of which can be poured to shape. However, the material most widely used for light work is $\frac{3}{4}$-in. (19.05 mm) thick, five- or seven-ply maple or birch wood. Narrow slots are cut in this wood with a jig saw to hold the strips vertically. Where greater forces are involved, as with operations on metal sheets, the blocks usually are made from Lignostone densified wood or from metal. In the $\frac{3}{4}$-in. thickness mostly used, medium- and high-density grades of Lignostone are available. The $\frac{3}{4}$-in. thickness is made from about 35 plies of highly compressed lignite wood, bonded with phenolformaldehyde resin, which imparts great density and strength. The material is made in thicknesses up to 6 in. (15.24 cm), and in various widths and lengths.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

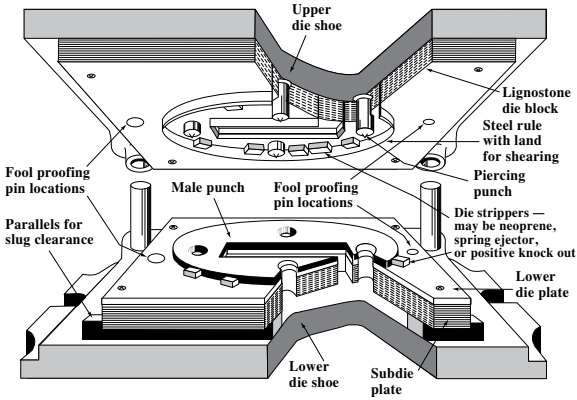


Fig. 64. Steel Rule Die for Cutting a Circular Shape, Sectioned to Show the Construction

Steel rule die blocks can carry punches of various shapes to pierce holes in the stock, also projections designed to form strengthening ribs and other shapes in material such as aluminum, at the same time as the die cuts the component to shape. Several dies can be combined or nested, and operated together in a large press, to produce various shapes simultaneously from one sheet of material.

As shown in Fig. 64, the die steel is held in the die block slot on its edge, usually against the flat platen of a die set attached to the moving slide of the press. The sharp, free end of the rule faces toward the workpiece, which is supported by the face of the other die half. This other die half may be flat or may have a punch attached to it, as shown, and it withstands the pressure exerted in the cutting or forming action when the press is operated. The closed height of the die is adjusted to permit the cutting edge to penetrate into the material to the extent needed, or, if there is a punch, to carry the cutting edges just past the punch edges for the cutting operation. After the sharp edge has penetrated it, the material often clings to the sides of the knife. Ejector inserts made from rubber, combinations of cork and rubber, and specially compounded plastics material, or purpose-made ejectors, either spring- or positively actuated, are installed in various positions alongside the steel rules and the punch. These ejectors are compressed as the dies close, and when the dies open, they expand, pushing the material clear of the knives or the punch.

The cutting edges of the steel rules can be of several shapes, as shown in profile in Fig. 65, to suit the material to be cut, or the type of cutting operation. Shape *A* is used for shearing in the punch in making tools for blanking and piercing operations, the sharp edge later being modified to a flat, producing a 90° cutting edge, *B*. The other shapes in Fig. 65 are used for cutting various soft materials that are pressed against a flat surface for cutting. The shape at *C* is used for thin, and the shape at *D* for thicker materials.

Steel rule die steel is supplied in lengths of 30 and 50 in., or in coils of any length, with the edges ground to the desired shape, and heat treated, ready for use. The rule material width is usually referred to as the height, and material can be obtained in heights of 0.95, 1, 1⅛, 1¼, and 1½ in. Rules are available in thicknesses of 0.055, 0.083, 0.11, 0.138, 0.166, and 0.25 in. (4 to 18 points in printers' measure of 72 points = 1 in.). Generally, stock thicknesses of 0.138 or 0.166 in. (10 and 12 points) are preferred, the thinner rules being used mainly for dies requiring intricate outlines. The stock can be obtained in soft or hard temper. The standard edge bevel is 46°, but bevels of 40 to 50° can be used. Thinner rule stock is easiest to form to shape and is often used for short runs of 50 pieces or thereabouts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

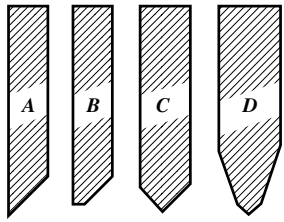


Fig. 65. Cutting Edges for Steel Rule Dies

The thickness and hardness of the material to be blanked also must be considered when choosing rule thickness.

Making of Steel Rule Dies: Die making begins with a drawing of the shape required. Saw cutting lines may be marked directly on the face of the die block in a conventional layout procedure using a height gage, or a paper drawing may be pasted to or drawn on the die board. Because paper stretches and shrinks, Mylar or other nonshrink plastics sheets may be preferred for the drawing. A hole is drilled off the line to allow a jig saw to be inserted, and jig saw or circular saw cuts are then made under manual control along the drawing lines to produce the slots for the rules. Jig saw blades are available in a range of sizes to suit various thicknesses of rule and for sawing medium-density Lignostone, a speed of 300 strokes/min is recommended, the saw having a stroke of about 2 inch (50.8 mm). To make sure the rule thickness to be used will be a tight fit in the slot, trials are usually carried out on scrap pieces of die block before cuts are made on a new block.

During slot cutting, the saw blade must always be maintained vertical to the board being cut, and magnifying lenses are often used to keep the blade close to the line. Carbide or carbide-tipped saw blades are recommended for clean cuts as well as for long life. To keep any "islands" (such as the center of a circle) in position, various places in the sawn line are cut to less than full depth for lengths of $\frac{1}{4}$–$\frac{1}{2}$ in. (6.4–12.7 mm), and to heights of $\frac{5}{8}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (16–19 mm) to bridge the gaps. Slots of suitable proportions must be provided in the steel rules, on sides away from cutting edges, to accommodate these die block bridges.

Rules for steel rule dies are bent to shape to fit the contours called for on the drawing by means of small, purpose-built bending machines, fitted with suitable tooling. For bends of small radius, the tooling on these machines is arranged to perform a peening or hammering action to force the steel rule into close contact with the radius-forming component of the machine so that quite small radii, as required for jig saw puzzles, for instance, can be produced with good accuracy. Some forms are best made in two or more pieces, then joined by welding or brazing. The edges to be joined are mitered for a perfect fit, and are clamped securely in place for joining. Electrical resistance or a gas heating torch is used to heat the joint. Wet rags are applied to the steel at each side of the joint to keep the material cool and the hardness at the preset level, as long as possible.

When shapes are to be blanked from sheet metal, the steel rule die is arranged with flat, 90° edges (*B*, in Fig. 65), which cut by pushing the work past a close-fitting counter-punch. This counterpunch, shown in Fig. 64, may be simply a pad of steel or other material, and has an outline corresponding to the shape of the part to be cut. Sometimes the pad may be given a gradual, slight reduction in height to provide a shearing action as the moving tool pushes the work material past the pad edges. As shown in Fig. 64, punches can be incorporated in the die to pierce holes, cut slots, or form ribs and other details during the blanking operation. These punches are preferably made from high-carbon, high-vanadium, alloy steel, heat treated to 61 to 63 RC (Rockwell C scale), with the head tempered to 45 to 50 RC.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Heat treatment of the high-carbon-steel rules is designed to produce a hardness suited to the application. Rules in dies for cutting cartons and similar purposes, with mostly straight cuts, are hardened to 51 to 58 RC. For dies requiring many intricate bends, lower-carbon material is used, and is hardened to 38 to 45 RC. And for dies to cut very intricate shapes, a steel in dead-soft condition with hardness of about 95 RB is recommended. After the intricate bends are made, this steel must be carburized before it is hardened and tempered. For this material, heat treatment uses an automatic cycle furnace, and consists of carburizing in a liquid compound heated to 1500°F (816°C) and quenching in oil, followed by "tough" tempering at 550°F (288°C) and cooling in the furnace.

After the hardened rule has been reinstalled in the die block, the tool is loaded into the press and the sharp die is used with care to shear the sides of the pad to match the die contours exactly. A close fit, with clearances of about half those used in conventional blanking dies, is thus ensured between the steel rule and the punch. Adjustments to the clearances can be made at this point by grinding the die steel or the punch. After the adjustment work is done, the sharp edges of the rule steel are ground flat to produce a land of about $1/64$ in. (0.40 mm) wide (*B* in Fig. 65), for the working edges of the die. Clearances for piercing punches should be similar to those used on conventional piercing dies.

Pipe and Tube Bending

The difference between a pipe and a tube is how they are measured, and ultimately what they are used for. A pipe is a vessel; a tube is structural. A pipe is measured by the inner diameter; a tube is measured by the outer diameter.

Generally, a tube will have a consistent outer diameter and its inner diameter may have varying wall thicknesses to increase its strength. However, a pipe will have a consistent inner diameter and its outer diameter may have varying wall thicknesses.

The terms used in tube bending are defined in Fig. 66a, and those used in pipe bending are defined in Fig. 66b.

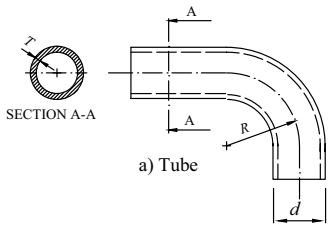


Fig. 66a. Dimension and Terms: Tube

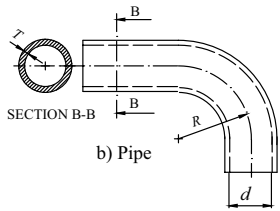


Fig. 66b. Dimension and Terms: Pipe

The radius of the bend *R* is defined with respect to the centerline of the tube or pipe. When the tube or pipe is bent, fibers at the outside wall are in tension and fibers at the wall on the inside bend are in compression. This condition of tensile stress causes thinning and elongation of the wall at the outside, and the compression stress causes thickening and shortening of the inner wall. As a result, the cross section of the bent section of the tube is flattened. The oval distortions grow stronger if thinner tube/pipe walls and smaller bending radii of the workpiece have been selected. Ovality can be calculated by the following formula:

$$u = \frac{D_{max} - D_{min}}{D} 100\% \quad (52)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where u = percent ovality of tube
D_{max} = maximum outer tube diameter after bending (inch or mm)
D_{min} = minimum outer tube diameter after bending (inch or mm)
D = initial outside tube diameter (inch or mm)

When the ratio of the tube diameter to the wall thickness is small enough, the tube can be bent on a relatively small radius. The material-specific diagram in Fig. 67 may be used for a first proposition to determine whether a tube or pipe with defined dimensions (outer diameter and wall thickness) can be bent at all.

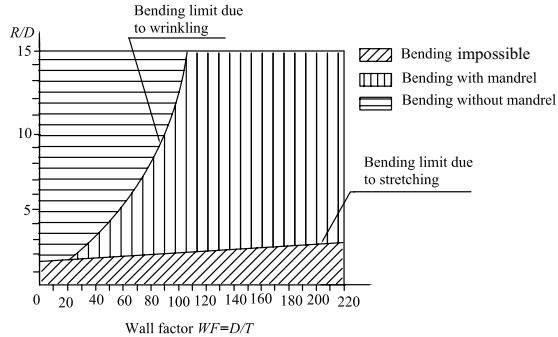


Fig. 67. Technical Limits of the Tube/Pipe Bending Process

Bending without workpiece failure is impossible below the bending limit determined by stretching. The bending limit due to wrinkling separates the range where bending with mandrel and wiper shoe is possible from the range in which the tubes/pipes can also be bent without a mandrel.

Due to the elastic-plastic behavior of metallic materials, the tube/pipe will spring back by a certain angle after every bending attempt because of the phenomenon of elasticity. While in the valid range of Hooke's law (elastic line), the shaping energy is completely given back as work of elastic strain in the form of resiliency. But after the external strain has been removed, it is partly dissipated as work of plasticity when performing the elastic-plastic shaping. In this case, the extent of springback is only caused by the elastic (reversible) part of the shaping workpiece that is stored in the tube/pipe as potential energy during the bending process. Springback is an inevitable phenomenon of bending and can only be compensated for by overbending the workpiece.

Different methods can be used for bending tubes/pipes, depending on the material in use and the required finishing precision. The most common processes for bending tubes or pipes include press bending (ram tube bending), rotary draw bending (round bending), compression bending, and 3-roll bending.

Press Bending.—Press bending, also called *ram tube bending*, was probably the first tube/pipe bending method used to cold-form materials. When press bending is applied, the bending tool with the inwrought bending radius is pressed against two counter rollers, either manually or by means of hydraulics. This motion forces the tube/pipe inserted between the radius block (die) and the counter-rollers to bend around the die radius (Fig. 68). The tube/pipe cannot be supported by the mandrel. This tube-bending method creates some cross-sectional ovality; therefore, this method is suitable for thick-walled pipes and large bending radii where high levels of cross-sectional ovality are acceptable, such as in furniture tubing and handrails. Large sweeping curves can be bent in small increments, moving the tube/pipe for each bend.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

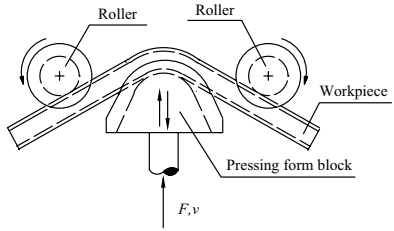
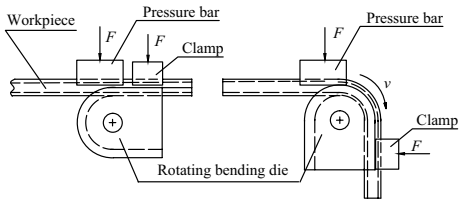


Fig. 68. Press Bending

Rotary Draw Bending.—Today, rotary draw bending is the most widely used method of bending tube and pipe, particularly for tight radii, good finishes, and thin-walled tubes. When rotary draw bending is used, the tube/pipe is inserted in the bending machine and fastened between the bend die and the clamp die. The rotation of both tools (the bending die and the clamp) around the bending axis bend the tube/pipe according to the radius of the bend die (Fig. 69).



a) Starting Position b) Ending Position

Fig. 69. Rotary Draw Bending.

The pressure bar serves the purpose of receiving the radial stress generated during the forming process, and in addition it supports the straight tube/pipe end from outside. If a mandrel and a wiper shoe are applied additionally (mandrel bending), high workpiece quality can be achieved even in thin-walled pipes and tight-bending radii.

The steel plug, or mandrel, fits inside the tube during rotary draw bending. The plug or mandrel supports the tube internally to reduce the amount of tube cross-sectional flattening during tube bending. After the tube has been bent, the operator extracts the mandrel from the tube, releases the clamp, and then removes the workpiece from the machine.

With modern mandrel bending machines, almost any kind of cold formable tube/pipe, depending on the material, can be safely bent to bending radii of approximately 1.5*D* with the desired precision. The forming possibilities are not at all limited to bending only round pipes. Oval pipes and flat and mono-block material can be formed just as well by bending as square or other open profiles. Depending on the shape of the workpiece, the required forming tools are adapted accordingly.

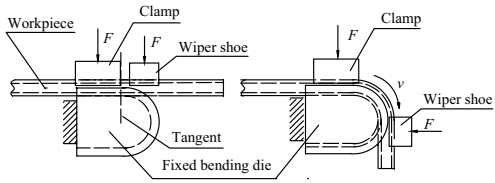
This method of bending tube/pipe is used in the manufacture of exhaust pipes, custom exhaust pipes, turbocharger exhaust and intake tubing, dairy tubing and process tubing, heat exchanger tubing, and all stainless and aluminum tubing where a nondeformed diameter finish is critical.

The main differences among rotary-draw-bending machines are the maximum workable outside pipe diameter and the degree of automation of the various functions. Only the bending function of the so-called “1-axis controlled bending machines” is automatic; in them, feeding and contortion are carried out manually. For the user of CNC

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

or bending machines with fully automatic control, however, all functions are available automatically. These bending machines can be supplemented with automatic feeding and unloading systems for the production of large series without any problems.

Compression Bending.—Compression bending is a process whereby pipe or tube is bent to a reasonably tight radius, usually without the use of mandrel or precision tooling. It is accomplished by clamping the tube/pipe behind the rear tangent point and then by a wiper shoe on a rotary arm rolling or compressing the material around and onto a bending die (Fig. 70).



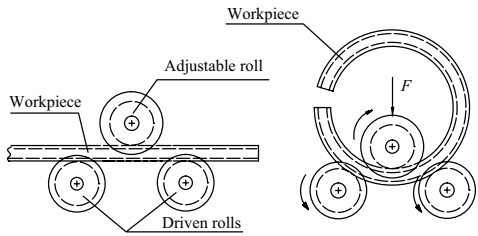
a) Starting Position b) Ending Position

Fig. 70. Compression Bending

Roll Bending.—Roll bending is used for bending tube/pipe to a large radius (i.e., to a large circumference). Pipe and tube roll benders comprise three rolls on separate shafts; the tube or pipe is rolled through the rolls while the top roller exerts downward pressure on the top roll to deform the tube or pipe (Fig. 71). Roll pipe and tube benders are available in 2- or 3-driven roll machines, with either manual or hydraulic adjustment of the top roll.

This tube/pipe bending process is ideal for forming helical pipe coils for heat transfer applications, as well as for making long sweeping sections such as those used in steel construction-curved trusses and roof components for structures requiring large open spaces. Pipe cross sections are defined very little when such sweeping sections are formed.

The oldest method of bending a tube/pipe consists of first packing it with loose particles (usually sand) and then bending it into a suitable tool. The filler functions to prevent the tube from buckling inward. After the tube has been bent, the sand is shaken out.



a) Starting Position b) Ending Position

Fig. 71. Roll Bending

Use of Filling Material in Bending.—A simple method of preventing distortion consists of using filling material inside the pipe, supporting the walls to prevent flattening at the bend. Dry sand is often used. Materials such as resin, tar, or lead are also sometimes employed. The pipe is first filled with the molten resin, lead, or low-melting-point alloy, and then after bending, the pipe is heated to melt and remove the filling material. Resin has often been used for bending small brass and copper pipes, and lead or other alloys for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

small iron and steel pipes. Before bending copper or brass pipe or tubing, the latter should be annealed.

Alloy of Low Melting Point Used as Filler: Filling tubes with lead may result in satisfactory bends, but the comparatively high melting point of lead often negatively effects the physical properties of the tube. Commercial alloys such as "Cerrobend" and "Bendalloy" have melting points of about 160 degrees F. They are composed of bismuth, lead, tin, and cadmium. With these materials, tubes having a wall as thin as 0.007 inch have been bent to small radii. The metal filler conforms to the inside of the tube so closely that the tube can be bent just as though it were a solid rod.

This method has been applied to the bending of copper, brass, duralumin, plain steel, and stainless steel tubes with uniform success. Tubes plated with chromium or nickel can be bent without danger of the plate flaking off. The practice usually is economical for tubes up to 2 inches in diameter. The method is considered ideal when the number of tubes of a given size or kind is more or less limited or when the bend is especially severe.

When a tube-bending operation has been completed, removal of the metal filler is accomplished by heating the tube in steam, in a bath of boiling water, or in air of about the same temperature. The metal can then be drained out and used again and again.

Presses for Sheet Metal Working

A stamping press is a metal working machine tool that utilizes the force and speed of a moving ram to transmit force, or an amount of tonnage, to a specific die in order to achieve a workpiece's final shape, often with little or no scrap, and whenever possible, with minimal operator intervention. There are two major types of press brakes, which are classified by the nature of their drive systems: mechanical and hydraulic. Mechanical and hydraulic sheet metal working presses are available in several basic designs and a wide range of sizes, tonnage capacities, and operating speeds. The moving forces of the presses are generated by either mechanical or hydraulic mechanisms that are mounted in the frame. The two most common types of frames are the gap-frame (C-frame) and the straight side frame. Each has its advantages and disadvantages. Frames may be fabricated by casting or by welding heavy rolled steel plates. Both mechanical and hydraulic sheet metal stamping presses are classified by the following main characteristics: frame, drive, action, tonnage, stroke, and strokes per minute.

Mechanical Presses.—Mechanical presses are manufacturing devices designed and built to operate all types of dies. Mechanical presses typically store energy in a rotating flywheel driven by an electric motor. The flywheel revolves around a crankshaft until engaged by a clutch device. The energy of the rotating flywheel is transmitted to the vertical movement of the ram by the use of a press drive mechanism.

Drive: The press drive refers to the style of mechanism used to obtain the ram movement. The most common press drive mechanisms for mechanical presses are the crankshaft, the eccentric, the screw, and the knuckle.

The *crankshaft* is a mechanical element for translating the rotational motion of the electrical drive motor to the linear motion of the ram assembly in an up-and-down motion. In the press, each revolution of the crankshaft drives the ram through one complete up-and-down cycle of the machine. In a flywheel press, the flywheel is connected directly to the crankshaft, and each revolution of the flywheel completes one ram movement. The function of the flywheel is to store the necessary energy to carry out a pressing operation.

Eccentric—many of the newer presses are made using an eccentric for translating the rotational motion of the electric drive motor to the linear motion of the ram. The main disadvantage of the eccentric press drive is the limitation of press strokes. To obtain more press strokes, the eccentric offset must be increased in diameter.

The *screw* drive press is not as widely used, but the unique characteristics of the screw press have driven an increase in its use. As the name suggests, this type of press drive

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

uses a mechanical screw to translate rotational motion into the linear motion of the ram. Briefly, the ram acts as the nut on a rotating screw shaft, moving up or down depending on the screw rotation. Energy is either delivered from a flywheel, which is usually coupled with a torque-limiting (slipping) clutch, or by a direct drive reversing electric motor.

The *knuckle*—the knuckle press is a modified version of the crankshaft style. The crankshaft is behind the press frame in this type of press. The knuckle crankshaft runs from left to right in relation to the press frame. The knuckle is a group of three levers, one lever or connector of which joins the crankshaft throw to the other two levers. The upper lever or knuckle is fixed to a pivot point in the press crown at one end. The lower knuckle is fixed to a pivot point on the press ram at one end. The knuckle press is used for dies that coin, or when heavy sheet metal is drawn or formed. Because of the knuckle, the stroke of the press is limited. Fig. 72 schematically illustrates a knuckle drive mechanism.

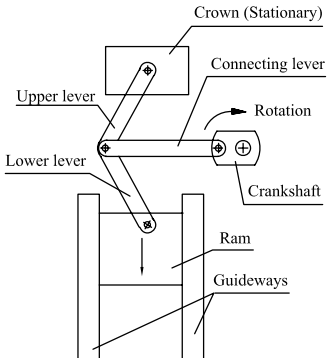


Fig. 72. Knuckle Drive Mechanism

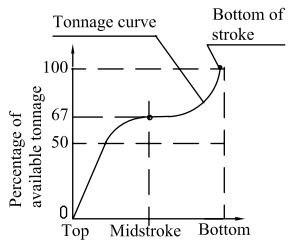


Fig. 73. Available Tonnage Curve for a Mechanical Press

Tonnage: The tonnage of a press is the force that a press ram is able to exert. In actual practice, press rams can and do exert forces greater than the rated tonnage. A safety factor is designed into the frame and drive mechanism. The tonnage of a mechanical press is calculated when the ram is near the bottom of its stroke. Thus, the tonnage of a mechanical press is constant and cannot be varied as in the hydraulic press.

The tonnage of a mechanical press when the ram is not near the bottom of its stroke is greatly reduced. Most press manufacturers will supply curves showing the tonnage available for each inch of stroke. Fig. 73 illustrates the available tonnage curve for a mechanical press. Mechanical presses have forces that typically range from 20 to 5,000 tons. A few specially designed large capacity presses with ratings up to 6,000 tons are in operation.

Stroke: The stroke of a press is the distance of ram movement from its up position to its down position. The offset on a crankshaft determines the press stroke. The stroke is constant for the crankshaft and eccentric drives. Strokes on mechanical presses range from 0.2 to 45 inches.

Strokes per Minute: Strokes per minute (press speed) is a self-explanatory term. The C-frame low tonnage presses (15 to 30 tons) have the highest stroke per minute of all press types. They run at up to 1,800 strokes per minute and typically involve light forming, such as electrical connectors; when cutting dies are operated, the speeds usually range from around 20 to 800 strokes per minute.

Action: The term "action" simply means the number of rams on the press. Types of press actions include the following:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Single action: One ram operated by a mechanism located in the crown or bed of a press. These presses are used for blanking, bending, forming, and other operations. They perform a single action with each cycle of the press.

Double action: One inner ram and one outer ram are operated by a mechanism located in the crown or bed on the press. The rams move from the crown towards the bed on the downstroke. They are used for severe forming and drawing operations.

Triple action: Same as double action with the addition of a third ram located in the bed of the press. The third ram moves upward in the bed soon after the other two rams lower.

Large presses (like those used in the automotive industry) have a die cushion integrated in the bolster plate to apply the blank holder force. This is necessary when a single acting press is used for deep drawing.

Fig. 74 schematically illustrates a mechanical press with its basic components.

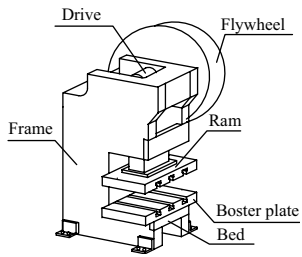


Fig. 74. Schematic Illustration of Mechanical Drive Presses with Basic Components

Gap-Frame Presses.—The most noticeable characteristic of a press is the frame's style of construction. The frame is the supporting element of a press. All of the shafts and bearings, as well as the ram and gearing, are mounted in the frame. Frames may be fabricated by casting or by welding heavy rolled steel plates.

The cast frame has excellent rigidity but is expensive. The welded frame is lower in cost in most cases. Due to the greater toughness of rolled steel, welded frames have more resistance to shock loading.

The C-frame press gets its name from its shape. The most common types of C-frame are the inclinable or open-back inclinable (OBI), the solid frame or open-back stationary (OBS), the open-end press, and the adjustable bed or knee frame press.

Inclinable-frame press: The frame of an inclinable press can be tilted backward to an angle of around 30°. This inclination permits finished parts, slugs, or both, to slide to the rear of the machine upon completion. As the name implies, a fixed-position, or noninclinable machine does not tilt, and parts and/or slugs must either drop vertically or be removed by some other means.

Solid-frame press: Because of the more rigid base and solid construction, solid frame presses or OBS presses are built in higher tonnages than inclinable presses. These presses have larger beds and frame openings than inclinable presses and can handle larger dies.

Adjustable-bed press: The third type of C-frame press is the adjustable bed or knee press. The lower leg of the C-frame forms an adjustable table or bed, and thus a wide range of shut heights may be obtained. Because of possible lack of rigidity, only smaller tonnages are made with this style of frame. The adjustable bed press is one of the most versatile presses.

Open-end press: This press has the unusual feature of having the driveshaft located from front to back. Most presses of the C-frame type have the driveshaft from right to left. The

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

advantage gained in the open-end press is great accessibility. All of the large gears and flywheel are at the back and out of the way. Only smaller tonnage presses are made in this style, however.

Straight Side Presses.—Straight side presses are so named because of the vertical columns on either side of the machine. This design eliminates the problem of angular deflection. Also, die life and part accuracy are enhanced. Straight side presses have frames consisting of a crown member, two upright side members, a bed or fundament of the press, and the bolster, which mounts on the press bed and accommodates the die while strengthening the bed. These components are often secured in a preloaded position by four tie rods. They may also be bolted and keyed together or welded into one piece. As a result, straight side presses are stiffer vertically than gap frame units, and any deflection under load tends to be symmetrical.

Straight side presses are suitable for progressive die and transfer die applications and cover an enormous range of types, sizes, and speeds.

Hydraulic Presses.—Hydraulic presses are manufacturing devices designed and built to operate dies using hydraulic drive systems to deliver a controlled force.

Drive System: These systems are relatively less complex, and are comprised of a motor, a pump, a valving system, and a hydraulic cylinder with the piston connected to the ram. The cylinder is usually double-acting so that hydraulic fluid (oil or water) is pumped under pressure into the top, above the piston, to make the ram move down; to make it come up, fluid is pumped into the bottom, under the piston. The pressure of the fluid under the piston is generally held between 10 to 15 percent of the pressure of the fluid above the piston. This is done to keep the ram from dropping by force of gravity, and also to help control the ram throughout the stroke.

Valving System: The valving system ensures the desired control and direction of flow either into or out of the cylinder. Fig. 75 schematically illustrates a hydraulic press drive system with its basic components.

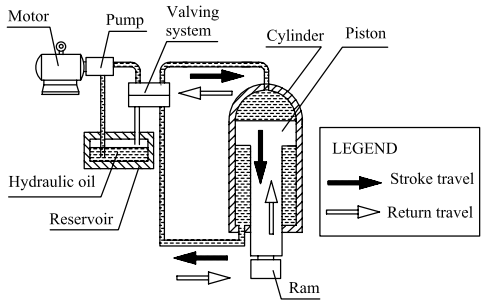


Fig. 75. Schematic Illustration of Hydraulic Press Drive System

Frame: Hydraulic presses have various frame types, including C-frames, straight-sided frames, H-frames, four-column frames, and other shapes depending on the application.

Tonnage: The tonnage of a hydraulic press is easily calculated: the piston area times the hydraulic pressure in the cylinder. By changing the pressure, the tonnage may be varied. The tonnage of a hydraulic press ranges from about 50 tons to 50,000 tons.

Stroke: The stroke is variable on the hydraulic press and can vary from 0.4 in. to 48 in.

Strokes per Minute: Hydraulic presses are faster and more reliable than ever. The technology has undergone constant change. Improvements in seals, more efficient pumps, and stronger hoses and couplings have virtually eliminated leaks and minimized

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

maintenance. So, for operations requiring very short strokes, such as punching and blanking, a hydraulic press can achieve speeds that compare favorably with those of mechanical presses, especially when the material is hand fed. Because drawing and forming operations must be run more slowly to allow time for the metal to flow, press speeds usually range from around 5 to 100 strokes per minute, depending on the part size and the severity of the operation being performed.

Mechanical and Hydraulic Presses, Advantages and Disadvantages.—The mechanical press has been the first choice of many press users for years. Training of tool and die makers and tool designers has been oriented toward applying mechanical presses to sheet metal pressworking. However, modern hydraulic presses also offer good performance and reliability. Factors that may favor the use of hydraulic presses over their mechanical counterparts may include the following:

a) Full power during the stroke: Maximum power is maintained during the entire stroke of a hydraulic press. This allows for rapid movement to a position just above the part, when the stroke is slowed for the working stroke and an adjustable slowdown speed during forming. The result is more strokes per minute.

b) Overload protection: Because the pressure is pre-adjusted, if the pressure exceeds a limit, such as might occur when a part is not properly ejected, the machine shuts down, eliminating catastrophic results to tooling or to the machine.

c) Cost: Depending on the application, a hydraulic press may cost less than an equivalent mechanical press.

d) Lower operating costs: Hydraulic presses have fewer operating parts; therefore, there are fewer things to break. Automatic lubrication of moving parts helps eliminate maintenance problems.

e) Flexibility: Owing primarily to electronic controls and robotics, hydraulic presses fit well into such areas as flexible manufacturing systems (FMS) and factory automation.

f) No design limitations: The principles of hydraulic force allow for creative engineering. Presses can be designed for traditional down-acting, up-acting, side-acting and multi-action operation. Power systems can be placed above, below, or away from the press and force actuators. Large bed presses can be designed for low tonnage applications and small bed presses can be designed for high tonnage requirements.

g) Unlimited control options: The hydraulic press can be controlled in a variety of ways, ranging from basic relays to more sophisticated PLC or PC control systems. Operator interfaces can be added to press systems to facilitate ease of job set by storing individual job parameters for each die. Presses can be controlled for precise pressure and position, including pressure holding, speed control, and dynamic adjustments to real-time operating variances. Ram force and speed can be controlled in any direction with various levels of precision.

h) Small footprint: Hydraulics allow for generation of high pressure over a small surface area. This reduces the overall structure required for support of the force actuators. When compared to mechanical presses, hydraulic presses consume almost 50 percent less space for the same tonnage capability. This size advantage results in lower manufacturing costs and a faster return on investment by requiring less long-term overhead expense.

i) Hydroforming: Hydroforming is one of the areas in which hydraulic presses have no competition. The hydraulic press ram moves down to close the die and the hydroforming high-pressure fluid fills and acts onto the inside tubular parts and expands it to fill the die. The mechanical presses are not capable of carrying out the hydroforming operation, as they do not have the speed control or the ability to stay on the bottom for performing high-pressure-forming operations.

Although hydraulic presses have many advantages, they also suffer from some disadvantages when compared to mechanical presses. Some of these include:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

a) Tolerances: While some hydraulic presses do maintain high tolerances, most of them are limited to approximately 0.020 inch. When closer tolerances are required on these machines, they are usually accounted for in the tooling, which increases the cost of the die or other tooling.

b) Speed: Although high speed is attainable in hydraulic presses, generally, a mechanical press will produce parts faster. This is especially true when short strokes are used.

c) Automatic feeding: Because of fewer moving parts, there is less equipment on which to attach automatic feed mechanisms. Therefore, most automatic feed equipment must be integrated into the process via electronic components, which increases cost.

Factors that favor the use of mechanical presses over their hydraulic counterparts may include these:

- The mechanical press is faster than the hydraulic press.
- The mechanical press is by far the most suitable for blanking and punching.
- Mechanical presses do not require as large a motor as hydraulic presses because they can store energy in the flywheel and then dissipate the energy throughout the press stroke.
- Mechanical presses can be easily adapted to use different rolls and transfer feeds for progressive dies.
- Mechanical presses with short strokes are more economical than hydraulic presses.

Lubrication System.—The lubrication systems of mechanical and hydraulic presses are very important. If the lubricating system should fail, not only will the press stop, but also many of the parts are likely to be damaged beyond repair. Therefore, when lubrication failure occurs, the press can seldom be run again without a major overhaul.

The lubricating system delivers oil to the moving parts of the press to reduce friction and to assist in keeping the parts cool. Most newer and more modern presses are equipped with a pressure re-circulating lubricating system that delivers the oil under pressure to the bearings and bushings, and other lubricant points.

After selection of the correct lubricant, the next most critical factors to long machine and lubricant life are keeping the lubricant clean and dry. Details such as machine criticality, operating environment, and component clearances as well as lubricant type, viscosity, flow rate, and economic issues must be carefully considered for optimum lubricant contamination control.

In any press application, the most important aspect for insuring maximum press and lubricant life is the selection of the correct lubricant. This process includes choosing the correct base oil, the correct oil viscosity, and the correct additives for the application. Next in importance is keeping the oil clean and dry. Particulate and water contamination can have devastating effects on machine and lubricant life. The primary source of particulate contamination in lubricants is ambient dust and dirt. While the composition can vary, in general, dust and dirt will contain materials such as silicon oxides and aluminum oxides. Elemental indicators of dirt ingression would be silicon (Si), aluminum (Al), and in some cases calcium (Ca) and magnesium (Mg). If a contaminant particle is larger than the clearance between two slide surfaces, the particle will grind against them, removing metal from the slide surfaces in a process called abrasive wear. The resultant wear particles can cause a chain reaction by increasing the total number of particulates in the lubricant. Additionally, this newly generated abrasive wear material can get broken into smaller particles and become harder due to the process of work hardening. These more numerous and harder particles combine with the original solid contaminants to increase the amount of abrasive material in the lubricant. Under conditions of high velocity or high pressure or both, small particles can impinge on a press surface and result in erosive wear. In this case, particles can be much smaller than the machine clearances and still cause extensive damage due to the velocities and pressures involved. Particles generated during erosive wear also add to the overall contamination of the system and further increase machine

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

wear. Erosive wear most commonly occurs in hydraulic systems that contain servo or proportional devices. Two of the most commonly used lubricant systems are:

Lost Lubricant Systems: Lost lubricant systems are used on smaller gap presses. Older presses are usually lubricated by grease, and newer ones by oil. A hand pump is often used in lost lubricant systems. The major disadvantages of this system are that used lubricant must be cleaned periodically, and if a hand pump is used, lubrication of the machine depends on the reliability of the operator.

Re-circulating Lubricant Systems: In these, oil is pumped from a reservoir, filtered, and then distributed to all lubrication points. The pump is powered by an electric motor or by a press-driven mechanical device. The circulating oil lubricates, cools, and flushes small particles from the bearing and friction surfaces.

If the failure of the lubrication system is not detected early, serious damage to the machine will occur. Thermo-chromatic indicators are often used for early detection of lubrication system failure. By the use of thermo-chromatic indicators, mechanical or electrical problems can be detected immediately by the operator or maintenance person. The machine can then be inspected and repaired before serious damage occurs. A few dollars invested in thermo-chromatic indicators can save thousands of dollars on expensive repairs and production losses.

Another sign of lubrication system failure is the presence of bronze particles around the bearing. In this case, it is usually too late for inexpensive repairs because serious damage of the bearing or friction surfaces has already occurred.

Press Selection.—When selecting a press, compromises must be made if more than just one type of stamping operation is desired; there is not a single universal type of press that provides productive and efficient operation. Such compromises include consideration of the following primary factors: tonnage; energy capacity; press size and frame design; speed; and control system for press.

Other factors can be considered as well, such as the number of operations to be performed, quantities and production rates, size, geometry and accuracy of workpieces, and equipment costs.

A press-rated tonnage for mechanical presses is the maximum force that should be exerted by the slide against the workpiece at a given distance above the bottom of the stroke. The higher the rating, the greater the torque capacity of its drive members and its capability of delivering more flywheel energy. Presses with flywheel-type drives are basically used for light blanking and piercing operations. The energy requirements of these machines are small and the machines operate at relatively high speeds. Single-geared presses are mostly used for shallow drawn workpieces and require more energy than flywheel types. Double-geared presses are used for deeper draw operations when a larger amount of energy is needed.

As stamping operations become more automated, the use of CNC system and various electro-mechanical systems to feed material to the press must also be factored in. There are mechanical blank handing systems where manual handling is not practical due to speed and size. High volume feeding is done with coil stock, which also requires an investment in additional feeding equipment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ELECTRICAL DISCHARGE MACHINING

Generally called EDM, electrical discharge machining uses an electrode to remove metal from a workpiece by generating electric sparks between conducting surfaces. The two main types of EDM are termed sinker or plunge, used for making mold or die cavities, and wire, used to cut shapes such as are needed for stamping dies. For die sinking, the electrode usually is made from copper or graphite and is shaped as a positive replica of the shape to be formed on or in the workpiece. A typical EDM sinker machine, shown diagrammatically in Fig. 1, resembles a vertical milling machine, with the electrode attached to the vertical slide. The slide is moved down and up by an electronic, servo-controlled drive unit that controls the spacing between the electrode and the workpiece on the table. The table can be adjusted in three directions, often under numerical control, to positions that bring a workpiece surface to within 0.0005-0.030 inch (0.013–0.76 mm) from the electrode surface, where a spark is generated.

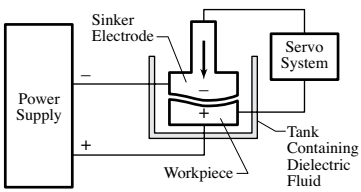


Fig. 1. Sinker or Plunge Type EDM Machines are Used to Sink Cavities in Molds and Dies.

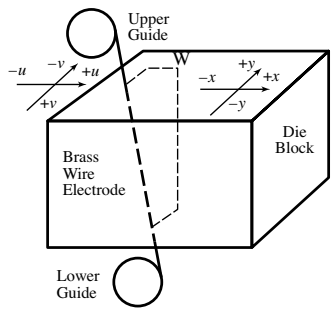


Fig. 2. Wire Type EDM Machines are Used to Cut Stamping Die Profiles.

Wire EDM, shown diagrammatically in Fig. 2, are numerically controlled and somewhat resemble a bandsaw with the saw blade replaced by a fine brass or copper wire, which forms the electrode. This wire is wound off one reel, passed through tensioning and guide rollers, then through the workpiece and through lower guide rollers before being wound onto another reel for storage and eventual recycling. One set of guide rollers, usually the lower, can be moved on two axes at 90 degrees apart under numerical control to adjust the angle of the wire when profiles of varying angles are to be produced. The table also is movable in two directions under numerical control to adjust the position of the workpiece relative to the wire. Provision must be made for the cut-out part to be supported when it is freed from the workpiece so that it does not pinch and break the wire.

EDM applied to grinding machines is termed EDG. The process uses a graphite wheel as an electrode, and wheels can be up to 12 inches (30.48 cm) in diameter by 6 inches (15.24 cm) wide. The wheel periphery is dressed to the profile required on the workpiece, and the wheel profile can then be transferred to the workpiece as it is traversed past the wheel, which rotates but does not touch the work. EDG machines are highly specialized and are mainly used for producing complex profiles on polycrystaline diamond cutting tools and for shaping carbide tooling such as form tools, thread chasers, dies, and crushing rolls.

EDM Terms*.—*Anode:* The positive terminal of an electrolytic cell or battery. In EDM, incorrectly applied to the tool or electrode.

* *Source:* Hansvedt Industries

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Barrel effect: In wire EDM, a condition where the center of the cut is wider than the entry and exit points of the wire, due to secondary discharges caused by particles being pushed to the center by flushing pressure from above and beneath the workpiece.

Capacitor: An electrical component that stores an electric charge. In some EDM power supplies, several capacitors are connected across the machining gap and the current for the spark comes directly from the capacitors when they are discharged.

Cathode: The negative terminal in an electrolytic cell or battery. In EDM incorrectly applied to the workpiece.

Colloidal suspension: Particles suspended in a liquid that are too fine to settle out. In EDM, the tiny particles produced in the sparking action form a colloidal suspension in the dielectric fluid.

Craters: Small cavities left on an EDM surface by the sparking action, also known as pits.

Dielectric filter: A filter that removes particles from 5 µm (0.00020 inch) down to as fine as 1 µm (0.00004 inch) in size, from dielectric fluid.

Dielectric fluid: The non-conductive fluid that circulates between the electrode and the workpiece to provide the dielectric strength across which an arc can occur, to act as a coolant to solidify particles melted by the arc, and to flush away the solidified particles.

Dielectric strength: In EDM, the electrical potential (voltage) needed to break down (ionize) the dielectric fluid in the gap between the electrode and the workpiece.

Discharge channel: The conductive pathway formed by ionized dielectric and vapor between the electrode and the workpiece.

Dither: A slight up and down movement of the machine ram and attached electrode, used to improve cutting stability.

Duty cycle: The percentage of a pulse cycle during which the current is turned on (on time), relative to the total duration of the cycle.

EDG: Electrical discharge grinding using a machine that resembles a surface grinder but has a wheel made from electrode material. Metal is removed by an EDM process rather than by grinding.

Electrode growth: A plating action that occurs at certain low-power settings, whereby workpiece material builds up on the electrode, causing an increase in size.

Electrode wear: Amount of material removed from the electrode during the EDM process. This removal can be end wear or corner wear, and is measured linearly or volumetrically but is most often expressed as end wear percent, measured linearly.

Electro-forming: An electro-plating process used to make metal EDM electrodes.

Energy: Measured in joules, is the equivalent of volt-coulombs or volt-ampere-seconds.

Farad: Unit of electrical capacitance, or the energy-storing capacity of a capacitor.

Gap: The closest point between the electrode and the workpiece where an electrical discharge will occur. (See *Overcut*)

Gap current: The average amperage flowing across the machining gap.

Gap voltage: The voltage across the gap while current is flowing. The voltage across the electrode/workpiece before current flows is called the open gap voltage.

Heat-affected zone: The layer below the recast layer, which has been subjected to elevated temperatures that have altered the properties of the workpiece metal.

Ion: An atom or group of atoms that has lost or gained one or more electrons and is therefore carrying a positive or negative electrical charge, and is described as being ionized.

Ionization: The change in the dielectric fluid that is subjected to a voltage potential whereby it becomes electrically conductive, allowing it to conduct the arc.

Low-wear: An EDM process in which the volume of electrode wear is between 2 and 15 percent of the volume of workpiece wear. Normal negative polarity wear ratios are 15 to 40 percent.

Negative electrode: The electrode voltage potential is negative relative to the workpiece.

No-wear: An EDM process in which electrode wear is virtually eliminated and the wear ratio is usually less than 2 percent by volume.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Orbit: A programmable motion between the electrode and the workpiece, produced by a feature built in to the machine, or an accessory, that produces a cavity or hole larger than the electrode. The path can be planetary (circular), vectorial, or polygonal (trace). These motions can often be performed in sequence, and combined with x-axis movement of the electrode.

Overcut: The distance between one side of an electrode and the adjacent wall of the workpiece cavity.

Overcut taper: The difference between the overcut dimensions at the top (entrance) and at the bottom of the cavity.

Plasma: A superheated, highly ionized gas that forms in the discharge channel due to the applied voltage.

Positive electrode: The electrode voltage potential is positive with respect to the workpiece. *Negative electrode* is the opposite of this condition.

Power parameters: A set of power supply, servo, electrode material, workpiece material, and flushing settings that are selected to produce a desired metal removal rate and surface finish.

Quench: The rapid cooling of the EDM surface by the dielectric fluid, which is partially responsible for metallurgical changes in the recast layer and in the heat- affected zone.

Recast layer: A layer created by the solidification of molten metal on the workpiece surface after it has been melted by the EDM process.

Secondary discharge: A discharge that occurs as conductive particles are carried out along the side of the electrode by the dielectric fluid.

Spark in: A method of locating an electrode with respect to the workpiece, using high frequency, low amperage settings so that there is no cutting action. The electrode is advanced toward the workpiece until contact is indicated and this point is used as the basis for setting up the job.

Spark out: A technique used in orbiting, which moves the electrode in the same path until sparking ceases.

Square wave: An electrical wave shape generated by a solid state power supply.

Stroke: The distance the ram travels under servo control.

UV axis: A mechanism that provides for movement of the upper head of a wire EDM machine to allow inclined surfaces to be generated.

White layer: The surface layer of an EDM cut that is affected by the heat generated during the process. The characteristics of the layer depend on the material, and may be extremely hard martensite or an annealed layer.

Wire EDM: An EDM machine or process in which the electrode is a continuously unspooling, conducting wire that moves in preset patterns in relation to the workpiece.

Wire guide: A replaceable precision round diamond insert, sized to match the wire, that guides the wire at the entrance and exit points of a wire cut.

Wire speed: The rate at which the wire is fed axially through the workpiece (not the rate at which cutting takes place), adjusted so that clean wire is maintained in the cut slowly enough to minimize waste.

The EDM Process.—During the EDM process, energy from the sparks created between the electrode and the workpiece is dissipated by the melting and vaporizing of the workpiece material preferentially, only small amounts of material being lost from the electrode. When current starts to flow between the electrode and the work, the dielectric fluid in the small area in which the gap is smallest, and in which the spark will occur, is transformed into a plasma of hydrogen, carbon, and various oxides. This plasma forms a conducting passageway, consisting of ionized or electrically charged particles, through which the spark can form between the electrode and the workpiece. After current starts to flow, to heat and vaporize a tiny area, the striking voltage is reached, the voltage drops, and the field of ionized particles loses its energy, so that the spark can no longer be sustained. As the voltage then begins to rise again with the increase in resistance, the electrical

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

supply is cut off by the control, causing the plasma to implode and creating a low-pressure pulse that draws in dielectric fluid to flush away metallic debris and cool the impinged area. Such a cycle typically lasts a few microseconds (millionths of a second, or μs), and is repeated continuously in various places on the workpiece as the electrode is moved into the work by the control system.

Flushing: An insulating dielectric fluid is made to flow in the space between the workpiece and the electrode to prevent premature spark discharge, cool the workpiece and the electrode, and flush away the debris. For sinker machines, this fluid is paraffin, kerosene, or a silicon-based dielectric fluid, and for wire machines, the dielectric fluid is usually deionized water. The dielectric fluid can be cooled in a heat exchanger to prevent it from rising above about 100°F (38°C), at which cooling efficiency may be reduced. The fluid must also be filtered to remove workpiece particles that would prevent efficient flushing of the spark gaps. Care must be taken to avoid the possibility of entrapment of gases generated by sparking. These gases may explode, endangering life, breaking a valuable electrode or workpiece, or causing a fire.

Flushing away of particles generated during the process is vital to successful EDM operations. A secondary consideration is the heat transferred to the side walls of a cavity, which may cause the workpiece material to expand and close in around the electrode, leading to formation of dc arcs where conductive particles are trapped. Flushing can be done by forcing the fluid to pass through the spark gap under pressure, by sucking it through the gap, or by directing a side nozzle to move the fluid in the tank surrounding the workpiece. In pressure flushing, fluid is usually pumped through strategically placed holes in the electrode or in the workpiece. Vacuum flushing is used when side walls must be accurately formed and straight, and is seldom needed on numerically controlled machines because the table can be programmed to move the workpiece sideways.

Flushing needs careful consideration because of the forces involved, especially where fluid is pumped or sucked through narrow passageways, and large hydraulic forces can easily be generated. Excessively high pressures can lead to displacement of the electrode, the workpiece, or both, causing inaccuracy in the finished product. Many low-pressure flushing holes are preferable to a few high-pressure holes. Pressure-relief valves in the system are recommended.

Electronic Controls: The electrical circuit that produces the sparks between the electrode and the workpiece is controlled electronically, the length of the extremely short on and off periods being matched by the operator or the programmer to the materials of the electrode and the workpiece, the dielectric, the rate of flushing, the speed of metal removal, and the quality of surface finish required. The average current flowing between the electrode and the workpiece is shown on an ammeter on the power source, and is the determining factor in machining time for a specific operation. The average spark gap voltage is shown on a voltmeter.

EDM machines can incorporate provision for orbiting the electrode so that flushing is easier, and cutting is faster and increased on one side. Numerical control can also be used to move the workpiece in relation to the electrode with the same results. Numerical control can also be used for checking dimensions and changing electrodes when necessary. The clearance on all sides between the electrode and the workpiece, after the machining operation, is called the overcut or overburn. The overcut becomes greater with increases in the on time, the spark energy, or the amperage applied, but its size is little affected by voltage changes. Allowances must be made for overcut in the dimensioning of electrodes. Sidewall encroachment and secondary discharge can take up parts of these allowances, and electrodes must always be made smaller to avoid making a cavity or hole too large.

Polarity: Polarity can affect processing speed, finish, wear, and stability of the EDM operation. On sinker machines, the electrode is generally made positive to protect the electrode from excessive wear and preserve its dimensional accuracy. This arrangement

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

removes metal at a slower rate than electrode negative, which is mostly used for high-speed metal removal with graphite electrodes. Negative polarity is also used for machining carbides, titanium, and refractory alloys using metallic electrodes. Metal removal with graphite electrodes can be as much as 50 percent faster with electrode negative polarity than with electrode positive, but negative polarity results in much faster electrode wear, so it is generally restricted to electrode shapes that can be redressed easily.

Newer generators can provide less than 1 percent wear with either copper or graphite electrodes during roughing operations. Roughing is typically done with a positive-polarity electrode using elevated on times. Some electrodes, particularly micrograin graphites, have a high resistance to wear. Fine-grain, high-density graphites provide better wear characteristics than coarser, less dense grades, and copper-tungsten resists wear better than pure copper electrodes.

Machine Settings: For vertical machines, a rule of thumb for power selection on graphite and copper electrodes is 50 to 65 amps per square inch of electrode engagement. For example, an electrode that is $\frac{1}{2}$ in^2 (3.2 cm^2) might use $0.5 \times 0.5 \times 50 = 12.5$ amps. Although each square inch of electrode surface may be able to withstand higher currents, lower settings should be used with very large jobs or the workpiece may become overheated and it may be difficult to clean up the recast layer. Lower amperage settings are required for electrodes that are thin or have sharp details. The voltage applied across the arc gap between the electrode and the workpiece is ideally about 35 volts, but should be as small as possible to maintain stability of the process.

Spark Frequency: Spark frequency is the number of times per second that the current is switched on and off. Higher frequencies are used for finishing operations and for work on cemented carbide, titanium, and copper alloys. The frequency of sparking affects the surface finish produced, low frequencies being used with large spark gaps for rapid metal removal with a rough finish, and higher frequencies with small gaps for finer finishes. High frequency usually increases, and low frequency reduces electrode wear.

The Duty Cycle: Electronic units on modern EDM machines provide extremely close control of each stage in the sparking cycle, down to millionths of a second (μs). A typical EDM cycle might last 100 μs. Of this time, the current might be on for 40 μs and off for 60 μs. The relationship between the lengths of the on and off times is called the duty cycle, and it indicates the degree of efficiency of the operation. The duty cycle states the on time as a percentage of the total cycle time, and in the previous example it is 40 percent. Although reducing the off time will increase the duty cycle, factors such as flushing efficiency, electrode and workpiece material, and dielectric condition control the minimum off time. Some EDM units incorporate sensors and fuzzy logic circuits that provide for adaptive control of cutting conditions for unattended operation. Efficiency is also reported as the amount of metal removed, expressed as in^3/hr.

In the EDM process, work is done only during the on time, and the longer the on time, the more material is removed in each sparking cycle. Roughing operations use extended on time for high metal-removal rates, resulting in fewer cycles per second, or lower frequency. The resulting craters are broader and deeper so that the surface is rougher and the heat-affected zone (HAZ) on the workpiece is deeper. With positively charged electrodes, the spark moves from the electrode toward the workpiece and the maximum material is removed from the workpiece. However, every spark takes a minute particle from the electrode so that the electrode also is worn away. Finishing electrodes tend to wear much faster than roughing electrodes because more sparks are generated in unit time.

The part of the cycle needed for reionizing the dielectric (the off time) greatly affects the operating speed. Although increasing the off time slows the process, longer off times can increase stability by providing more time for the ejected material to be swept away by the flow of the dielectric fluid, and for deionization of the fluid, so that erratic cycling of the servo-mechanisms that advance and retract the electrode is avoided. In any vertical

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

EDM operation, if the overcut, wear, and finish are satisfactory, machining speed can best be adjusted by slowly decreasing the off time setting in small increments of 1 to 5 µs until machining becomes erratic, then returning to the previous stable setting. As the off time is decreased, the machining gap or gap voltage will slowly fall and the working current will rise. The gap voltage should not be allowed to drop below 35 to 40 volts.

Metal Removal Rates (MRR): The amount of metal removed in any EDM process depends largely on the length of the on time, the energy/spark, and the number of sparks/second. The following data were provided by Poco Graphite, Inc., in their *EDM Technical Manual*. For a typical roughing operation using electrode positive polarity on high-carbon steel, a 67 percent duty cycle removed 0.28 in^3/hr (4.59 cm^3/hr). For the same material, a 50 percent duty cycle removed 0.15 in^3/hr (2.46 cm^3/hr), and a 33 percent duty cycle for finishing removed 0.075 in^3/hr (1.23 cm^3/hr).

In another example, shown in the top data row in Table 1, a 40 percent duty cycle with a frequency of 10 kHz and peak current of 50 amps was run for 5 minutes of cutting time. Metal was removed at the rate of 0.8 in^3/hr (13.11 cm^3/hr) with electrode wear of 2.5 percent and a surface finish of 400 µinch Ra. When the on and off times in this cycle were halved, as shown in the second data row in Table 1, the duty cycle remained at 40 percent, but the frequency doubled to 20 kHz. The result was that the peak current remained unaltered, but with only half the on time the MRR was reduced to 0.7 in^3/hr (11.47 cm^3/hr), the electrode wear increased to 6.3 percent, and the surface finish improved to 300 µinch Ra. The third and fourth rows in Table 1 show other variations in the basic cycle and the results.

Table 1. Effect of Electrical Control Adjustments on EDM Operations

On Time (µs)	Off Time (µs)	Frequency (kHz)	Peak Current (Amps)	Metal Removal Rate		Electrode Wear (%)	Surface Finish (µin Ra)
				(in^3/hr)	(cm^3/hr)		
40	60	10	50	0.8	13.1	2.5	400
20	30	20	50	0.7	11.47	6.3	300
40	10	20	50	1.2	19.66	1.4	430
40	60	10	25	0.28	4.59	2.5	350

The Recast Layer: One drawback of the EDM process when used for steel is the recast layer, which is created wherever sparking occurs. The oil used as a dielectric fluid causes the EDM operation to become a random heat-treatment process in which the metal surface is heated to a very high temperature, then quenched in oil. The heat breaks down the oil into hydrocarbons, tars, and resins, and the molten metal draws out the carbon atoms and traps them in the resolidified metal to form the very thin, hard, brittle surface called the recast layer that covers the heat-affected zone (HAZ). This recast layer has a white appearance and consists of particles of material that have been melted by the sparks, enriched with carbon, and drawn back to the surface or retained by surface tension. The recast layer is harder than the parent metal and can be as hard as glass, and must be reduced or removed by vapor blasting with glass beads, polishing, electrochemical or abrasive flow machining, after the shaping process is completed, to avoid cracking or flaking of surface layers that may cause failure of the part in service.

Beneath the thin recast layer, the HAZ, in steel, consists of martensite that usually has been hardened by the heating and cooling sequences coupled with the heat-sink cooling effect of a thick steel workpiece. This martensite is hard and its rates of expansion and contraction are different from those of the parent metal. If the workpiece is subjected to heating and cooling cycles in use, the two layers are constantly stressed and these stresses may cause formation of surface cracks. The HAZ is usually much deeper in a workpiece cut on a sinker than on a wire machine, especially after roughing, because of the increased heating effect caused by the higher amounts of energy applied.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The depth of the HAZ depends on the amperage and the length of the on time, increasing as these values increase, to about 0.012-0.015 inch (0.30–0.38 mm) deep. Residual stress in the HAZ can range up to 650 N/mm^2. As the HAZ cannot be removed easily, it is best avoided by programming the series of cuts taken on the machine so that most of the HAZ produced by one cut is removed by the following cut. If time is available, cut depth can be reduced gradually until the finishing cuts produce an HAZ having a thickness of less than 0.0001 inch (2.54 mm).

Workpiece Materials.—Most homogeneous materials used in metalworking can be shaped by the EDM process. Some data on typical workpiece materials are given in Table 2. Sintered materials present some difficulties caused by the use of a cobalt or other binder used to hold the carbide or other particles in the matrix. The binder usually melts at a lower temperature than the tungsten, molybdenum, titanium, or other carbides, so it is preferentially removed by the sparking sequence, and the carbide particles are thus loosened and freed from the matrix. The structures of sintered materials based on tungsten, cobalt, and molybdenum require higher EDM frequencies with very short on times, so that there is less danger of excessive heat buildup, leading to melting. Copper-tungsten electrodes are recommended for EDM of tungsten carbides. When used with high frequencies for powdered metals, graphite electrodes often suffer from excessive wear.

Workpieces of aluminum, brass, and copper should be processed with metallic electrodes of low melting points such as copper or copper-tungsten. Workpieces of carbon and stainless steel that have high melting points should be processed with graphite electrodes. The melting points and specific gravities of the electrode material and of the workpiece should preferably be similar.

Table 2. Characteristics of Common Workpiece Materials for EDM

Material	Specific Gravity	Melting Point		Vaporization Temperature		Conductivity (Silver = 100)
		°F	°C	°F	°C	
Aluminum	2.70	1220	660	4442	2450	63.00
Brass	8.40	1710	930	…		…
Cobalt	8.71	2696	1480	5520	2900	16.93
Copper	8.89	1980	1082	4710	2595	97.61
Graphite	2.07	N/A		6330	3500	70.00
Inconel	…	2350	1285	…		…
Magnesium	1.83	1202	650	2025	1110	39.40
Manganese	7.30	2300	1260	3870	2150	15.75
Molybdenum	10.20	4748	2620	10,040	5560	17.60
Nickel	8.80	2651	1455	4900	2730	12.89
Carbon Steel	7.80	2500	1371	…		12.00
Tool Steel	…	2730	1500	…		…
Stainless Steel	…	2750	1510	…		…
Titanium	4.50	3200	1700	5900	3260	13.73
Tungsten	18.85	6098	3370	10,670	5930	14.00
Zinc	6.40	790	420	1663	906	26.00

Electrode Materials.—Most EDM electrodes are made from graphite, which provides a much superior rate of metal removal than copper because of the ability of graphite to resist thermal damage. Graphite has a density of 1.55 to 1.85 g/cm^3, lower than most metals. Instead of melting when heated, graphite sublimates, that is, it changes directly from a solid to a gas without passing through the liquid stage. Sublimation of graphite occurs at a temperature of 3350°C (6062°F). EDM graphite is made by sintering a compressed mixture of fine graphite powder (1 to 100 micron particle size) and coal tar pitch in a furnace. The open structure of graphite means that it is eroded more rapidly than metal in the EDM process. The electrode surface is also reproduced on the surface of the workpiece. The sizes of individual surface recesses may be reduced during sparking when the work is moved under numerical control of workpiece table movements.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The fine grain sizes and high densities of graphite materials that are specially made for high-quality EDM finishing provide high wear resistance, better finish, and good reproduction of fine details, but these fine grades cost more than graphite of larger grain sizes and lower densities. Premium grades of graphite cost up to five times as much as the least expensive and about three times as much as copper, but the extra cost often can be justified by savings during machining or shaping of the electrode.

Graphite has a high resistance to heat and wear at lower frequencies, but will wear more rapidly when used with high frequencies or with negative polarity. Infiltrated graphites for EDM electrodes are also available as a mixture of copper particles in a graphite matrix, for applications where good machinability of the electrode is required. This material presents a trade-off between lower arcing and greater wear with a slower metal-removal rate, but costs more than plain graphite.

EDM electrodes are also made from copper, tungsten, silver-tungsten, brass, and zinc, all of which have good electrical and thermal conductivity. However, because these metals have melting points below those encountered in the spark gap, they wear rapidly. Copper with 5 percent tellurium, added for better machining properties, is the most commonly used metal alloy. Tungsten resists wear better than brass or copper and is more rigid when used for thin electrodes but is expensive and difficult to machine. Metal electrodes, with their more even surfaces and slower wear rates, are often preferred for finishing operations on work that requires a smooth finish. In fine-finishing operations, the arc gap between the surfaces of the electrode and the workpiece is very small, and there is a danger of dc arcs being struck, causing pitting of the surface when particles dislodged from a graphite electrode during fine-finishing cuts are not flushed from the gap. If struck by a spark, such a particle may provide a path for a continuous discharge of current that will mar the almost completed work surface.

Some combinations of electrode and workpiece material, electrode polarity, and likely amounts of corner wear are listed in Table 3. Corner wear rates indicate the ability of the electrode to maintain its shape and reproduce fine detail. The column headed Capacitance refers to the use of capacitors in the control circuits to increase the impact of the spark without increasing the amperage. Such circuits can accomplish more work in a given time, at the expense of surface-finish quality and increased electrode wear.

Table 3. Types of Electrodes Used for Various Workpiece Materials

Electrode	Electrode Polarity	Workpiece Material	Corner Wear (%)	Capacitance
Copper	+	Steel	2–10	No
Copper	+	Inconel	2–10	No
Copper	+	Aluminum	<3	No
Copper	–	Titanium	20–40	Yes
Copper	–	Carbide	35–60	Yes
Copper	–	Copper	34–45	Yes
Copper	–	Copper-tungsten	40–60	Yes
Copper-tungsten	+	Steel	1–10	No
Copper-tungsten	–	Copper	20–40	Yes
Copper-tungsten	–	Copper-tungsten	30–50	Yes
Copper-tungsten	–	Titanium	15–25	Yes
Copper-tungsten	–	Carbide	35–50	Yes
Graphite	+	Steel	<1	No
Graphite	–	Steel	30–40	No
Graphite	+	Inconel	<1	No
Graphite	–	Inconel	30–40	No
Graphite	+	Aluminum	<1	No
Graphite	–	Aluminum	10–20	No
Graphite	–	Titanium	40–70	No
Graphite	–	Copper	N/A	Yes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Electrode Wear: Wear of electrodes can be reduced by leaving the smallest amounts of finishing stock possible on the workpiece and using no-wear or low-wear settings to remove most of the remaining material so that only a thin layer remains for finishing with the redressed electrode. The material left for removal in the finishing step should be only slightly more than the maximum depth of the craters left by the previous cut. Finishing operations should be regarded as only changing the quality of the finish, not removing metal or sizing. Low power with very high frequencies and minimal amounts of offset for each finishing cut are recommended.

On manually adjusted machines, fine finishing is usually carried out by several passes of a full-size finishing electrode. Removal of a few thousandths of an inch from a cavity with such an arrangement requires the leading edge of the electrode to recut the cavity over the entire vertical depth. By the time the electrode has been sunk to full depth, it is so worn that precision is lost. This problem sometimes can be avoided on a manual machine by use of an orbiting attachment that will cause the electrode to traverse the cavity walls, providing improved speed, finish, and flushing, and reducing corner wear on the electrode.

Selection of Electrode Material: Factors that affect selection of electrode material include metal-removal rate, wear resistance (including volumetric, corner, end, and side, with corner wear being the greatest concern), desired surface finish, costs of electrode manufacture and material, and characteristics of the material to be machined. A major factor is the ability of the electrode material to resist thermal damage, but the electrode's density, the polarity, and the frequencies used are all important factors in wear rates. Copper melts at about 1085°C (1985°F) and spark-gap temperatures must generally exceed 3800°C (6872°F), so use of copper may be made unacceptable because of its rapid wear rates. Graphites have good resistance to heat and wear at low frequencies, but will wear more with high frequency, negative polarity, or a combination of these.

Making Electrodes.—Electrodes made from copper and its alloys can be machined conventionally by lathes, and milling and grinding machines, but copper acquires a burr on run-off edges during turning and milling operations. For grinding copper, the wheel must often be charged with beeswax or similar material to prevent loading of the surface. Flat grinding of copper is done with wheels having open grain structures (46-J, for instance) to contain the wax and to allow room for the soft, gummy, copper chips. For finish grinding, wheels of at least 60 and up to 80 grit should be used for electrodes requiring sharp corners and fine detail. These wheels will cut hot and load up much faster, but are necessary to avoid rapid breakdown of sharp corners.

Factors to be considered in selection of electrode materials are:the electrode material cost/in^3; the time to manufacture electrodes; difficulty of flushing; the number of electrodes needed to complete the job; speed of the EDM; amount of electrode wear during EDM; and workpiece surface-finish requirements.

Copper electrodes have the advantage over graphite in their ability to be discharge-dressed in the EDM, usually under computer numerical control (CNC). The worn electrode is engaged with a premachined dressing block made from copper-tungsten or carbide. The process renews the original electrode shape, and can provide sharp, burr-free edges. Because of its higher vaporization temperature and wear resistance, discharge dressing of graphite is slow, but graphite has the advantage that it can be machined conventionally with ease.

Machining Graphite: Graphites used for EDM are very abrasive, so carbide tools are required for machining them. Graphite does not shear away and flow across the face of the tool as metal does, but fractures or is crushed by the tool pressure and floats away as a fine powder or dust. Graphite particles have sharp edges and, if allowed to mix with the machine lubricant, will form an abrasive slurry that causes rapid wear of machine guiding surfaces. Dust may also cause respiratory problems and allergic reactions, especially if the graphite is infiltrated with copper, so an efficient exhaust system is needed for machining.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Compressed air can be used to flush out the graphite dust from blind holes, for instance, but provision must be made for vacuum removal of the dust to avoid hazards to health and problems with wear caused by the hard, sharp-edged particles. Air velocities of at least 500 ft/min (152 m/min) are recommended for flushing, and of 2000 ft/min (610 m/min) in collector ducts to prevent settling out. Fluids can also be used, but small-pore filters are needed to keep the fluid clean. High-strength graphite can be clamped or chucked tightly but care must be taken to avoid crushing. Collets are preferred for turning because of the uniform pressure they apply to the workpiece. Sharp corners on electrodes made from less dense graphite are liable to chip or break away during machining.

For conventional machining of graphite, tools of high-quality tungsten carbide or polycrystaline diamond are preferred and must be kept sharp. Recommended cutting speeds for high-speed steel tools are 100–300 ft/min (30–91 m/min), tungsten carbide 500–750 ft/min (152–229 m/min), and polycrystaline diamond, 500–2000 surface ft/min (152–610 m/min). Tools for turning should have positive rake angles and nose radii of $\frac{1}{64}$ to $\frac{1}{32}$ inch. Depths of cut of 0.015 to 0.020 inch produce a better finish than light cuts such as 0.005 inch because of the tendency of graphite to chip away rather than flow across the tool face. Low feed rates of 0.005 inch/rev for rough- and 0.001 to 0.003 inch/rev for finish-turning are preferred. Cutting off is best done with a tool having an angle of 20°.

For bandsawing graphite, standard carbon steel blades can be run at 2100–3100 surface ft/min (640–945 m/min). Use low power feed rates to avoid overloading the teeth and the feed rate should be adjusted until the saw has a very slight speed up at the breakthrough point. Milling operations require rigid machines, short tool extensions, and firm clamping of parts. Milling cutters will chip the exit side of the cut, but chipping can be reduced by use of sharp tools, positive rake angles, and low feed rates to reduce tool pressure. Feed/tooth for two-flute end mills is 0.003 to 0.005 inch (0.076 to 0.13 mm) for roughing and 0.001 to 0.003 inch (0.025 to 0.076 mm) for finishing.

Standard high-speed steel drills can be used for drilling holes but will wear rapidly, causing holes that are tapered or undersized, or both. High-spiral, tungsten carbide drills should be used for large numbers of holes over $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.59 mm) diameter, but diamond-tipped drills will last longer. Pecking cycles should be used to clear dust from the holes. Compressed air can be passed through drills with through coolant holes to clear dust. Feed rates for drilling are 0.0015 to 0.002 inch/rev for drills up to $\frac{1}{32}$, 0.001 to 0.003 inch/rev for $\frac{1}{32}$- to $\frac{1}{8}$-inch drills, and 0.002 to 0.005 inch/rev for larger drills. Standard taps without fluid are best used for through holes, and for blind holes, tapping should be completed as far as possible with a taper tap before the bottoming tap is used.

For surface grinding of graphite, a medium (60) grade, medium-open structure, vitreous-bond, green-grit, silicon-carbide wheel is most commonly used. The wheel speed should be 5300–6000 surface ft/min (1615–1829 m/min), with traversing feed rates at about 56 ft/min (17.1 m/min). Roughing cuts are taken at 0.005 to 0.010 inch/pass (0.13–0.25 mm/pass), and finishing cuts at 0.001 to 0.003 inch/pass (0.025–0.076 mm/pass). Surface finishes in the range of 18 to 32 µinch (0.457–0.813 micron) Ra are normal, and can be improved by longer spark-out times and finer grit wheels, or by lapping. Graphite can be centerless ground using a silicon-carbide, resinoid-bond work wheel and a regulating wheel speed of 195 ft/min (59.4 m/min).

Wire EDM, orbital abrading, and ultrasonic machining are also used to shape graphite electrodes. Orbital abrading uses a die containing hard particles to remove graphite, and can produce a fine surface finish. In ultrasonic machining, a water-based abrasive slurry is pumped between the die attached to the ultrasonic transducer and the graphite workpiece on the machine table. Ultrasonic machining is rapid and can reproduce small details down to 0.002 inch (0.05 mm) in size, with surface finishes down to 8 µin (0.203 micron) Ra. If coolants are used, the graphite should be dried for 1 hour at over 400°F (204°C) (but not in a microwave oven) to remove liquids before use.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wire EDM.—In the wire EDM process, with deionized water as the dielectric fluid, carbon is extracted from the recast layer, rather than added to it. When copper-base wire is used, copper atoms migrate into the recast layer, softening the surface slightly so that wire-cut surfaces are sometimes softer than the parent metal. On wire EDM machines, very high amperages are used with very short on times, so that the heat-affected zone (HAZ) is quite shallow. With proper adjustment of the on and off times, the depth of the HAZ can be held below 1 micron (0.00004 inch).

The cutting wire is used only once, so that the portion in the cut is always cylindrical and has no spark-eroded sections that might affect the cut accuracy. The power source controls the electrical supply to the wire and to the drive motors on the table to maintain the preset arc gap within 0.1 micron (0.000004 inch) of the programmed position. On wire EDM machines, the water used as a dielectric fluid is deionized by a deionizer included in the cooling system, to improve its properties as an insulator. Chemical balance of the water is also important for good dielectric properties.

Drilling Holes for Wire EDM: Before an aperture can be cut in a die plate, a hole must be provided in the workpiece. Such holes are often "drilled" by EDM, and the wire threaded through the workpiece before starting the cut. The "EDM drill" does not need to be rotated, but rotation will help in flushing and reduce electrode wear. The EDM process can drill a hole 0.04 inch (1 mm) in diameter through 4-inch (101 mm) thick steel in about 3 minutes, using an electrode made from brass or copper tubing. Holes of smaller diameter can be drilled, but the practical limit is 0.012 inch (0.3 mm) because of the overcut, the lack of rigidity of tubing in small sizes, and the excessive wear on such small electrodes. The practical upper size limit on holes is about 0.12 inch (3 mm) because of the comparatively large amounts of material that must be eroded away for larger sizes. However, EDM is commonly used for making large or deep holes in such hard materials as tungsten carbide. For instance, a 0.2-inch (5 mm) hole has been made in carbide 2.9 inch (74 mm) thick in 49 minutes by EDM. Blind holes are difficult to produce with accuracy, and must often be made with cut-and-try methods.

Deionized water is usually used for drilling and is directed through the axial hole in the tubular electrode to flush away the debris created by the sparking sequence. Because of the need to keep the extremely small cutting area clear of metal particles, the dielectric fluid is often not filtered but is replaced continuously by clean fluid that is pumped from a supply tank to a disposal tank on the machine.

Wire Electrodes: Wire for EDM generally is made from yellow brass containing copper 63 and zinc 37 percent, with a tensile strength of 50,000–145,000 lb_f/in^2 (345–1000 MPa), and may be from 0.002–0.012 inch (0.05–0.30 mm) diameter.

In addition to yellow brass, electrode wires are also made from brass alloyed with aluminum or titanium for tensile strengths of 140,000–160,000 lb_f/in^2 (965–1103 MPa). Wires with homogeneous, uniform electrolytic coatings of alloys such as brass or zinc are also used. Zinc is favored as a coating on brass wires because it gives faster cutting and reduced wire breakage due to its low melting temperature of 419°C, and vaporization temperature of 906°C. The layer of zinc can boil off while the brass core, which melts at 930°C, continues to deliver current.

Some wires for EDM are made from steel for strength, with a coating of brass, copper, or other metal. Most wire machines use wire negative polarity (the wire is negative) because the wire is constantly renewed and is used only once, so wear is not important. Important qualities of wire for EDM include smooth surfaces, free from nicks, scratches and cracks, precise diameters to ±0.00004 inch (±1 micron) for drawn and ±0.00006 inch (±2 μm) for plated, high tensile strength, consistently good ductility, uniform spooling, and good protective packaging.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION

Material Properties for Iron and Steel Casting

Cast irons and cast steels encompass a large family of ferrous alloys, which, as the name implies, are cast to shape rather than being formed by working in the solid state. In general, cast irons contain more than 2 percent carbon and from 1 to 3 percent silicon. Varying the balance between carbon and silicon, alloying with different elements, and changing melting, casting, and heat-treating practices can produce a broad range of properties. In most cases, the carbon exists in two forms: free carbon in the form of graphite and combined carbon in the form of iron carbide (cementite). Mechanical and physical properties depend strongly on the shape and distribution of the free graphite and the type of matrix surrounding the graphite particles.

The four basic types of cast iron are white iron, gray iron, malleable iron, and ductile iron. In addition to these basic types, there are other specific forms of cast iron to which special names have been applied, such as chilled iron, alloy iron, and compacted graphite cast iron.

Gray Cast Iron.—Gray cast iron may easily be cast into any desirable form and it may also be machined readily. It usually contains from 1.7 to 4.5 percent carbon, and from 1 to 3 percent silicon. The excess carbon is in the form of graphite flakes, which impart to the material the dark-colored fracture that gives it its name. Gray iron castings are widely used for such applications as machine tools, automotive cylinder blocks, cast-iron pipe and fittings, and agricultural implements.

The American National Standard Specifications for Gray Iron Castings—ANSI/ASTM A48-76 groups the castings into two categories. Gray iron castings in Classes 20A, 20B, 20C, 25A, 25B, 25C, 30A, 30B, 30C, 35A, 35B, and 35C are characterized by excellent machinability, high damping capacity, low modulus of elasticity, and comparative ease of manufacture. Castings in Classes 40B, 40C, 45B, 45C, 50B, 50C, 60B, and 60C are usually more difficult to machine, have lower damping capacity, higher modulus of elasticity, and are more difficult to manufacture. The prefix number indicates minimum tensile strength in pounds per square inch, e.g., 20 is 20,000 psi (138 MPa), 25 is 25,000 psi (172 MPa), 30 is 30,000 psi (207 MPa), etc.

High-strength iron castings produced by the Meehanite-controlled process may have various combinations of physical properties to meet different requirements. In addition to a number of general engineering types, there are heat-resisting, wear-resisting and corrosion-resisting Meehanite castings.

White Cast Iron.—When nearly all of the carbon in a casting is in the combined or cementite form, it is known as white cast iron. It is so named because it has a silvery-white fracture. White cast iron is very hard and also brittle; its ductility is practically zero. Castings of this material need particular attention with respect to design since sharp corners and thin sections result in material failures at the foundry. These castings are less resistant to impact loading than gray iron castings, but they have a compressive strength that is usually higher than 200,000 psi (1379 MPa) as compared to 65,000–160,000 psi (448–1103 MPa) for gray iron castings. Some white iron castings are used for applications that require maximum wear resistance but most of them are used in the production of malleable iron castings.

Chilled Cast Iron.—Many gray iron castings have wear-resisting surfaces of white cast iron. These surfaces are designated by the term "chilled cast iron" since they are produced in molds having metal chills for cooling the molten metal rapidly. This rapid cooling results in the formation of cementite and white cast iron.

Alloy Cast Iron.—This term designates castings containing alloying elements such as nickel, chromium, molybdenum, copper, and manganese in sufficient amounts to appreciably change the physical properties. These elements may be added either to increase the strength or to obtain special properties such as higher wear resistance, corrosion resistance,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

or heat resistance. Alloy cast irons are used extensively for such parts as automotive cylinders, pistons, piston rings, crankcases, and brake drums; for certain machine tool castings; for certain types of dies; for parts of crushing and grinding machinery; and for applications where the casting must resist scaling at high temperatures. Machinable alloy cast irons having tensile strengths up to 70,000 psi (483 MPa) or even higher may be produced.

Malleable-Iron Castings.—Malleable iron is produced by the annealing or graphitization of white iron castings. The graphitization in this case produces temper carbon which is graphite in the form of compact rounded aggregates. Malleable castings are used for many industrial applications where strength, ductility, machinability, and resistance to shock are important factors. In manufacturing these castings, the usual procedure is to first produce a hard, brittle white iron from a charge of pig iron and scrap. These hard white-iron castings are then placed in stationary batch-type furnaces or car-bottom furnaces and the graphitization (malleablizing) of the castings is accomplished by means of a suitable annealing heat treatment. During this annealing period the temperature is slowly (50 hours) increased to as much as 1650 or 1700°F (899 or 927°C), after which time it is slowly (60 hours) cooled. The American National Standard Specifications for Malleable Iron Castings—ANSI/ASTM A47-77 specifies the following grades and their properties: No. 32520, having a minimum tensile strength of 50,000 psi (345 MPa), a minimum yield strength of 32,500 psi (224 MPa), and a minimum elongation in 2 inches (50.8 mm) of 10 percent; and No. 35018, having a minimum tensile strength of 53,000 psi (365 MPa), a minimum yield strength of 35,000 psi (241 MPa), and a minimum elongation in 2 inches of 18 percent.

Cupola Malleable Iron: Another method of producing malleable iron involves initially the use of a cupola or a cupola in conjunction with an air furnace. This type of malleable iron, called cupola malleable iron, exhibits good fluidity and will produce sound castings. It is used in the making of pipe fittings, valves, and similar parts and possesses the useful property of being well suited to galvanizing. The American National Standard Specifications for Cupola Malleable Iron — ANSI/ASTM 197-79 calls for a minimum tensile strength of 40,000 pounds per square inch (276 MPa); a minimum yield strength of 30,000 psi (207 MPa); and a minimum elongation in 2 inches of 5 percent.

Pearlitic Malleable Iron: This type of malleable iron contains some combined carbon in various forms. It may be produced either by stopping the heat treatment of regular malleable iron during production before the combined carbon contained therein has all been transformed to graphite or by reheating regular malleable iron above the transformation range. Pearlitic malleable irons exhibit a wide range of properties and are used in place of steel castings or forgings or to replace malleable iron when a greater strength or wear resistance is required. Some forms are made rigid to resist deformation while others will undergo considerable deformation before breaking. This material has been used in axle housings, differential housings, camshafts, and crankshafts for automobiles; machine parts; ordnance equipment; and tools. Tension test requirements of pearlitic malleable iron castings called for in ASTM Standard A220-99 (R2018) are given in the accompanying table.

Tension Test Requirements of Pearlitic Malleable Iron Castings *ASTM A220-99 (R2018)*

Casting Grade Numbers		40010	45008	45006	50005	60004	70003	80002	90001
Min. Tensile Strength	psi	60000	65000	65000	70000	80000	85000	95000	105000
	MPa	414	448	448	483	552	586	655	724
Min. Yield Strength	psi	40000	45000	45000	50000	60000	70000	80000	90000
	MPa	276	310	310	345	414	483	552	621
Min. Elongation in 2 Inch, %		10	8	6	5	4	3	2	1

Ductile Cast Iron.—A distinguishing feature of this widely used type of cast iron, also known as spheroidal graphite iron or nodular iron, is that the graphite is present in ball-like form instead of in flakes as in ordinary gray cast iron. The addition of small amounts of magnesium- or cerium-bearing alloys together with special processing produces this spheroidal graphite structure and results in a casting of high strength and appreciable

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ductility. Its toughness is intermediate between that of cast iron and steel, and its shock resistance is comparable to ordinary grades of mild carbon steel. Melting point and fluidity are similar to those of the high-carbon cast irons. It exhibits good pressure tightness under high stress and can be welded and brazed. It can be softened by annealing or hardened by normalizing and air cooling or oil quenching and drawing.

Five grades of this iron are specified in ASTM A536-84 (R2014), "Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings." The grades and their corresponding matrix microstructures and heat treatments are as follows: Grade 60-40-18, ferritic, may be annealed; Grade 65-45-12, mostly ferritic, as-cast or annealed; Grade 80-55-06, ferritic/pearlitic, as-cast; Grade 100-70-03, mostly pearlitic, may be normalized; Grade 120-90-02, martensitic, oil quenched and tempered. The grade nomenclature identifies the minimum tensile strength, on percent yield strength, and percent elongation in 2 inches. Thus, Grade 60-40-18 has a minimum tensile strength of 60,000 psi, a minimum 0.2 percent yield strength of 40,000 psi, and minimum elongation in 2 inches of 18 percent. Several other types are commercially available to meet specific needs. The common grades of ductile iron can also be specified by just the Brinell Hardness Number, although the appropriate microstructure for the indicated hardness is also a requirement. This method is used in SAE Specification J434C for automotive castings and similar applications. Other specifications not only specify tensile properties but also have limitations in composition. Austenitic types with high nickel content, high corrosion resistance, and good strength at elevated temperatures, are specified in ASTM A439-18.

Ductile cast iron can be cast in molds containing metal chills if wear-resisting surfaces are desired. Hard carbide areas will form in a manner similar to the forming of areas of chilled cast iron in gray iron castings. Surface hardening by flame or induction methods is also feasible. Ductile cast iron can be machined with the same ease as gray cast iron. It finds use as crankshafts, pistons, and cylinder heads in the automotive industry; forging hammer anvils, cylinders, guides, and control levers in the heavy machinery field; and wrenches, clamp frames, faceplates, chuck bodies, and dies for forming metals in the tool and die field. The production of ductile iron castings involves complex metallurgy, the use of special melting stock, and close process control. The majority of applications of ductile iron have been made to utilize its excellent mechanical properties in combination with the castability, machinability, and corrosion resistance of gray iron.

Steel Castings.—Steel castings are especially adapted for machine parts that must withstand shocks or heavy loads. They are stronger than wrought iron, cast iron, or malleable iron, and are very tough. The steel used for making steel castings may be produced either by the open-hearth, electric arc, side-blow converter, or electric induction methods. The raw materials used are steel scrap, pig iron, and iron ore, the materials and their proportions varying according to the process and the type of furnace used. The open-hearth method is used when large tonnages are continually required, while a small electric furnace might be used for steels of widely differing analyses, which are required in small lot production. The high frequency induction furnace is used for small quantity production of expensive steels of special composition such as high-alloy steels. Steel castings are used for such parts as hydroelectric turbine wheels, forging presses, gears, railroad car frames, valve bodies, pump casings, mining machinery, marine equipment, engine casings, etc.

Steel castings can generally be made from any of the many types of carbon and alloy steels produced in wrought form and respond similarly to heat treatment; they also do not exhibit directionality effects that are typical of wrought steel. Steel castings are classified into two general groups: carbon steel and alloy steel.

Carbon Steel Castings.—Carbon steel castings may be designated as low-carbon medium-carbon, and high-carbon. Low-carbon steel castings have a carbon content of less than 0.20 percent (most are produced in the 0.16 to 0.19 percent range). Other elements present are: manganese, 0.50 to 0.85 percent; silicon, 0.25 to 0.70 percent; phosphorus, 0.05 percent max.; and sulfur, 0.06 percent max. Their tensile strengths (annealed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

condition) range from 40,000 to 70,000 pounds per square inch (276–483 MPa). Medium-carbon steel castings have a carbon content of from 0.20 to 0.50 percent. Other elements present are manganese, 0.50 to 1.00 percent; silicon, 0.20 to 0.80 percent; phosphorus, 0.05 percent max.; and sulfur, 0.06 percent max. Their tensile strengths range from 65,000 to 105,000 pounds per square inch (448–724 MPa) depending, in part, upon heat treatment. High-carbon steel castings have a carbon content of more than 0.50 percent and also contain: manganese, 0.50 to 1.00 percent; silicon, 0.20 to 0.70 percent; and phosphorus and sulfur, 0.05 percent max. each. Fully annealed high-carbon steel castings exhibit tensile strengths of from 95,000 to 125,000 pounds per square inch (655–125 MPa). See Table 1 for grades and properties of carbon steel castings.

Table 1. Mechanical Properties of Steel Castings

Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Yield Point, ksi (MPa)	Elongation in 2 Inch, Percent	Brinell Hardness Number	Type of Heat Treatment	Application Indicating Properties
Structural Grades of Carbon Steel Castings					
60 (414)	30 (207)	32	120	Annealed	Low electric resistivity. Desirable magnetic properties. Carburizing and case hardening grades. Weldability.
65 (448)	35 (241)	30	130	Normalized	Good weldability. Medium strength with good machinability and high ductility.
70 (483)	38 (262)	28	140	Normalized	
80 (552)	45 (310)	26	160	Normalized and tempered	High strength carbon steels with good machinability, toughness and good fatigue resistance.
85 (586)	50 (345)	24	175		
100 (689)	70 (483)	20	200	Quenched and tempered	Wear resistance. Hardness.
Engineering Grades of Low-Alloy Steel Castings					
70 (483)	45 (310)	26	150	Normalized and tempered	Good weldability. Medium strength with high toughness and good machinability. For high temperature service.
80 (552)	50 (345)	24	170		
90 (621)	60 (414)	22	190	Normalized and tempered[a]	Certain steels of these classes have good high temperature properties and deep hardening properties. Toughness.
100 (689)	68 (469)	20	209		
110 (758)	85 (586)	20	235	Quenched and tempered	Impact resistance. Good low temperature properties for certain steels. Deep hardening. Good combination of strength and toughness.
120 (827)	95 (655)	16	245		
150 (1034)	125 (862)	12	300	Quenched and tempered	Deep hardening. High strength. Wear and fatigue resistance.
175 (1207)	148 (1020)	8	340	Quenched and tempered	High strength and hardness. Wear resistance. High fatigue resistance.
200 (1379)	170 (1172)	5	400		

[a] Quench and temper heat treatments may also be employed for these classes.

ksi = kips per square inch = 1000s of pounds per square inch; MPa = megapascals.

The data in the table above is for general information purposes only and not for use as design or specification limit values. The values listed above have been compiled by the Steel Founders' Society of America as those normally expected in the production of steel castings. The castings are classified according to tensile strength values which are given in the first column. Specifications covering steel castings are prepared by the American Society for Testing and Materials, the Association of American Railroads, the Society of Automotive Engineers, the United States government (federal and military specifications), etc. Refer to publications issued by these organizations for these specifications.

Alloy Steel Castings.— Alloy cast steels are those in which special alloying elements such as manganese, chromium, nickel, molybdenum, or vanadium have been added in sufficient quantities to obtain or increase certain desirable properties. Alloy cast steels are comprised of two groups—the low-alloy steels with their alloy content totaling less than 8 percent and the high-alloy steels with their alloy content totaling 8 percent or more. The addition of these various alloying elements in conjunction with suitable heat treatments, makes it possible to secure steel castings having a wide range of properties. The three accompanying tables give information on these steels. The lower portion of Table 1 gives the engineering grades of low-alloy cast steels grouped according to tensile strengths and gives properties normally expected in the production of steel castings. Table 2 and Table 3 give the standard

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

designations and nominal chemical composition ranges of high-alloy castings which may be classified according to heat or corrosion resistance. The grades given in these tables are recognized in whole or in part by the Alloy Casting Institute (ACI), the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), and the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE).

Table 2. Nominal Chemical Composition and Mechanical Properties of Heat-Resistant Steel Castings *ASTM A297-17*

Grade	Nominal Chemical Composition, Percent[a]	Tensile Strength, min		0.2 Percent Yield Strength, min		Percent Elongation in 2 inch, or 50 mm, min.
		ksi	MPa	ksi	MPa	
HF	19 Chromium, 9 Nickel	70	485	35	240	25
HH	25 Chromium, 12 Nickel	75	515	35	240	10
HI	28 Chromium, 15 Nickel	70	485	35	240	10
HK	25 Chromium, 20 Nickel	65	450	35	240	10
HE	29 Chromium, 9 Nickel	85	585	40	275	9
HT	15 Chromium, 35 Nickel	65	450	…	…	4
HU	19 Chromium, 39 Nickel	65	450	…	…	4
HW	12 Chromium, 60 Nickel	60	415	…	…	…
HX	17 Chromium, 66 Nickel	60	415	…	…	…
HC	28 Chromium	55	380	…	…	…
HD	28 Chromium, 5 Nickel	75	515	35	240	8
HL	29 Chromium, 20 Nickel	65	450	35	240	10
HN	20 Chromium, 25 Nickel	63	435	…	…	8
HP	26 Chromium, 35 Nickel	62.5	430	34	235	4.5
HG 10 MNN	19 Chromium, 12 Nickel, 4 Manganese	76	525	33	225	20
CT15C	20 Chromium, 33 Nickel, 1 Niobium	63	435	25	170	20

ksi = kips per square inch = 1000s of pounds per square inch; MPa = megapascals.
[a] Remainder is iron.

The specifications committee of the Steel Founders Society issues a *Steel Castings Handbook* with supplements. Supplement 1 provides design rules and data based on the fluidity and solidification of steel, mechanical principles involved in production of molds and cores, cleaning of castings, machining, and functionality and weight aspects. Data and examples are included to show how these rules are applied. Supplement 2 summarizes the standard steel castings specification issued by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), Association of American Railroads (AAR), American Bureau of Shipping (ABS), and Federal authorities, and provides guidance as to their applications. Information is included for carbon and alloy cast steels, high alloy cast steels, and centrifugally cast steel pipe. Details are also given of standard test methods for steel castings, including mechanical, non-destructive (visual, liquid penetrant, magnetic particle, radiographic, and ultrasonic), and testing of qualifications of welding procedures and personnel. Other supplements cover such subjects as tolerances, drafting practices, properties, repair and fabrication welding, of carbon, low alloy and high alloy castings, foundry terms, and hardenability and heat treatment.

Austenitic Manganese Cast Steel: Austenitic manganese cast steel is an important high-alloy cast steel which provides a high degree of shock and wear resistance. Its composition normally falls within the following ranges: carbon, 1.00 to 1.40 percent; manganese, 10.00 to 14.00 percent; silicon, 0.30 to 1.00 percent; sulfur, 0.06 percent max.; phosphorus, 0.10 percent, max. In the as-cast condition, austenitic manganese steel is quite brittle. In order to strengthen and toughen the steel, it is heated to between 1830 and 1940°F (999 and 1060°C) and quenched in cold water. Physical properties of quenched austenitic manganese steel that has been cast to size are as follows: tensile strength, 80,000–100,000 psi (552–689 MPa); shear strength (single shear), 84,000 psi (579 MPa); elongation in 2 inches (50.8 mm), 15 to 35 percent; reduction in area, 15 to 35 percent; and 180 to 220 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number). When cold-worked, the surface of such a casting increases to a hardness of 450 to 550 BHN. In many cases the surfaces are cold-worked to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

maximum hardness to ensure immediate hardness in use. Heat-treated austenitic manganese steel is machined only with great difficulty since it hardens at and slightly ahead of the point of contact of the cutting tool. Grinding wheels mounted on specially adapted machines are used for boring, planing, keyway cutting, and similar operations on this steel. Where grinding cannot be employed and machining must be resorted to, high-speed tool steel or cemented carbide tools are used with heavy, rigid equipment and slow, steady operation. In any event, this procedure tends to be both tedious and expensive. Austenitic manganese cast steel can be arc-welded with manganese-nickel steel welding rods containing from 3 to 5 percent nickel, 10 to 15 percent manganese, and, usually, 0.60 to 0.80 percent carbon.

Table 3. Nominal Chemical Composition and Mechanical Properties of Corrosion-Resistant Steel Castings *ASTM A743-17*

Grade	Nominal Chemical Composition, Percent[a]	Tensile Strength, min		0.2% Yield Strength, min		Percent Elongation in 2 inch, or 50 mm, min	Percent Reduction of Area, min
		ksi	MPa	ksi	MPa		
CA6N	11 Chromium, 7 Nickel	140	965	135	930	15	50
CA6NM	12 Chromium, 4 Nickel	110	755	80	550	15	35
CA15 and CA15M	12 Chromium	90	620	65	450	18	30
CA28MWV[b]	12 Chromium, with Molybdenum, Tungsten, and Vanadium	140	965	110	760	10	24
CA40	12 Chromium	100	690	70	485	15	25
CA40F	12 Chromium, Free Machining	100	690	70	485	12	…
CB6	16 Chromium, 4 Nickel	115	790	85	580	16	35
CB6	20 Chromium	65	450	30	205	…	…
CC50	28 Chromium	55	380	…	…	…	…
CE30	29 Chromium, 9 Nickel	80	550	40	275	10	…
CF3	19 Chromium, 9 Nickel	70	485	30	205	35	…
CF3M	19 Chromium, 10 Nickel, with Molybdenum	70	485	30	205	30	…
CF3MN	19 Chromium, 10 Nickel, with Molybdenum and Nitrogen	75	515	37	255	35	…
CF8	19 Chromium, 9 Nickel	70[c]	485[c]	30[c]	205[c]	25	…
CF8C	19 Chromium, 10 Nickel, with Columbium	70	485	30	205	30	…
CF8M	19 Chromium, 10 Nickel, with Molybdenum	70	485	30	205	30	…
CF10SMnN	17 Chromium, 8.5 Nickel with Nitrogen, 9 Nickel	85	585	42	290	30	…
CF16F and CF16Fa	19 Chromium, 9 Nickel, Free Machining	70	485	30	205	25	…
CF20	19 Chromium, 9 Nickel	70	485	30	205	30	…
CG3M	19 Chromium, 11 Nickel, with Molybdenum	75	515	35	240	25	…
CG6MMN	Chromium-Nickel-Manganese-Molybdenum[d]	85	585	42	290	30	…
CG8M	19 Chromium, 11 Nickel, with Molybdenum	75	520	35	240	25	…
CG12	22 Chromium, 12 Nickel	70	485	28	195	35	…
CH10 and CH20	25 Chromium,12 Nickel	70	485	30	205	30	…
CK3MCuN	20 Chromium, 18 Nickel, with Copper and Molybdenum	80	550	38	260	35	…
CK35MN	23 Chromium, 21 Nickel, with Molybdenum and Nitrogen	83	570	41	280	35	…
CK20	25 Chromium, 20 Nickel	65	450	28	195	30	…
CN3M[e]	---	63	435	25	170	30	…
CN3MN	21 Chromium, 24 Nickel, with Molybdenum and Nitrogen	80	550	38	260	35	…
CN7M	20 Chromium, 29 Nickel, with Copper and Molybdenum	62	425	25	170	35	…
CN7MS	19 Chromium, 24 Nickel, with Copper and Molybdenum	70	485	30	205	35	…
HG10MNN	19 Chromium, 12 Nickel, 4 Manganese	76	525	33	225	20	…

[a] Remainder is iron.

[b] These mechanical properties apply only when this material is heated to 1875–1925°F (1025–1050°C), quenched in air or oil, and tempered at 1150°F (620°C) minimum, or when annealed at 1400°F (760°C) minimum.

[c] For low ferrite or non-magnetic castings of this grade, the following values shall apply: tensile strength, min, 65 ksi (450 MPa); yield point, min, 28 ksi (195 MPa).

[d] Nominal Chemical Composition for CG6MMN as noted in the ASME standard. Other industry data indicates 20.5–23.5% Chromium, 11.5–13.5% Nickel, with 4–6% Manganese, 1.5–3% Molybdenum.

[e] Nominal Chemical Composition for this grade is not noted in the ASME standard. Other industry data indicates 20–22% Chromium, 23–27% Nickel, with 4.5–5.5% Molybdenum.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Nonferrous Casting Metals

Nonferrous metals include metal elements and alloys not based on iron. Offering a wide variety of material characteristics and mechanical properties, these casting materials are commonly specified for structural applications that require reduced weight, increased strength, higher melting points, nonmagnetic properties, and/or resistance to chemical and atmospheric corrosion. They also are suitable for electrical and electronic applications. Such metals include aluminum, copper, magnesium, nickel, titanium, zinc, refractory metals (molybdenum and tungsten), and noble metals.

Important considerations in selecting material for a specific mechanical or structural application include how easily the material can be shaped into a finished part and how its properties may be altered in the process—either intentionally or inadvertently. Depending on the end use, metal can be cast into a part and finished. Or it can be cast into an intermediate form (such as ingots), worked, or wrought, by forging, extruding, rolling, or applying other deformation processes, and then finished as needed. Following are the primary nonferrous metals and alloys used in casting. For more information on specific alloys, see *NONFERROUS ALLOYS* starting on page 510.

Aluminum (Al).—Aluminum, also spelled aluminium, is a lightweight, silvery-white metal. It has a melting point of 1220°F (660°C) and a density of 163.55 lb/ft^3 (2700 kg/m^3). The most abundant metallic element in the Earth's crust, aluminum is the most widely used nonferrous metal. While it is thermodynamically the least stable of the main engineering metals, it has the advantage of forming a dense, highly protective alumina film only 20 µin.–60 µin. (0.5 µm–1.5 µm) thick. This film can be reinforced by anodizing and destroyed by salt.

Aluminum is one of the few metals that can be cast by all of the processes. When alloyed with other metals, numerous properties are obtained that make such alloys useful over a broad range of applications. Many organizations publish specific standards for the manufacture of aluminum alloy, including ASTM International and SAE International (specifically, its aerospace standards subgroups). Alloys composed mostly of aluminum have been important in aerospace manufacturing since the introduction of metal-skinned aircraft.

Classification of cast aluminum alloys is developed by the Aluminum Association of the United States. Each cast alloy is designated by a four-digit number with a decimal point separating the third and fourth digits:

1. The first digit indicates the alloy group, according to the major alloying element:
   1xx.x aluminum (99.0% minimum)
   2xx.x copper (4% to 4.6%)
   3xx.x silicon (5% to 17%) with added copper and/or magnesium
   4xx.x silicon (5% to 12%)
   5xx.x magnesium (4% to 10%)
   7xx.x zinc (6.2% to 7.5%)
   8xx.x tin
   9xx.x others
2. The next two digits indicate the alloy purity or identify the alloy: In the alloys of the 1xx.x series, these digits indicate the level of purity of the alloy—the same as the two digits to the right of the decimal point in the minimum concentration of aluminum (in percent): 150.0 means a minimum 99.50% of aluminum in the alloy, 120.1 means a minimum 99.20% of aluminum. In all other groups of aluminum alloys (2xx.x through 9xx.x), the second and third digits together signify different alloys in the group.
3. The last digit indicates the product form: casting (designated by 0) or ingot (designated by 1 or 2, depending on chemical composition limits). A modification of the original alloy or impurity limits is indicated by a serial letter before the numerical designation. The serial letters are assigned in alphabetical order, starting with A, but omitting I, O, Q, and X. (The letter X is reserved for experimental alloys.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Aluminum-Copper (Al-Cu) Cast Alloys (2xx.x series): These alloys contain 4–4.6% copper, along with small impurities of iron, silicon, and magnesium. Characteristics are heat-treatable, high strength, low fluidity, low ductility, susceptibility to hot cracks, and low corrosion resistance. Aluminum-copper cast alloys are used for cylinder heads for automotive and aircraft engines, pistons for diesel engines, and exhausting system parts.

Aluminum-Silicon-Copper (Al-Si-Cu) Cast Alloys (3xx.x series): Aluminum-silicon-copper alloys contain 5–17% silicon and 2–4.5% copper. Characteristics of these alloys are heat-treatable, high strength, good fluidity, low ductility, good machinability, good wear resistance, and decreased corrosion resistance. The copper contributes to strength, and the silicon improves castability and reduces hot shortness; thus, higher silicon alloys are suitable for more complex castings and for permanent mold and die casting processes, which cannot tolerate hot-short alloys. They are used for automotive cylinder blocks and heads, car wheels, aircraft fittings, casings, and other parts of compressors and pumps.

Aluminum-Silicon (Al-Si) Cast Alloys (4xx.x series): These alloys contain 5–12% silicon but no copper. Characteristics are non-heat-treatable, moderate strength, moderate ductility, very good cast properties, and good wear and corrosion resistance. Rapid cooling to increase strength and ductility can refine the microstructure. These alloys are used for pump casings, thin wall castings, and cookware.

Aluminum-Magnesium (Al-Mg) Cast Alloys (5xx.x series): Containing 4–10% magnesium, characteristics of these alloys are non-heat-treatable, good machinability, and good appearance when anodized. The moderate to relatively poor castability of such alloys and the tendency of magnesium to oxidize increase handling difficulties and, therefore, cost. In general, these alloys are used for sand cast parts.

Aluminum-Tin (Al-Sn) Cast Alloys (8xx.x series): Aluminum-tin alloys usually contain about 6% tin and a small amount of copper and nickel to improve strength. Though these compounds are not heat treatable, castability and machinability are good, and wear resistance is very good. They are used for cast bearings, due to tin's excellent lubrication characteristics.

Aluminum-Zinc (Al-Zn) Cast Alloys (7xx.x series): With the addition of 6.2–7.5% zinc, these alloys can be heat treated and have good dimensional stability, good machinability (if the alloy contains copper), and good corrosion resistance. They are used for abrasion-resistant parts under various operating conditions, such as axle bushes, shaft sleeves, and worm gears.

Copper (Cu).—Copper is a reddish-yellow material with a melting point of 1984.6°F (1084.6°C) and a density of 556.85 lb/ft^3 (8920 kg/m^3). Usually a good conductor of electricity and heat, copper is one of the most ductile metals, but it is not especially strong or hard. Pure copper is extremely difficult to cast. As copper forms alloys more freely than most metals, casting and other characteristics can be improved by adding small amounts of various elements, including beryllium, chromium, nickel, silicon, silver, tin, and zinc.

Brass: This generic term refers to a range of copper-zinc (Cu-Zn) alloys with differing combinations of properties, including strength, hardness, ductility, machinability, resistance to wear and corrosion, and electrical and thermal conductivity.

Bronze: Bronze made from copper and tin (Cu-Sn) was the first manmade alloy used thousands of years ago. In modern times, wrought bronzes have been developed with 4–8% tin. These alloys are harder, stronger, and stiffer than wrought brasses and, in strip and wire form, produce a combination of high yield strength and good corrosion resistance.

Copper-Nickel (Cu-Ni) Alloys: This combination offers high conductivity, excellent resistance to marine corrosion, and low susceptibility to attachment of marine macro-organisms. The addition of nickel to copper improves strength and corrosion resistance, but good ductility is retained. The two main alloys are 90/10 (90% copper, 10% nickel) and 70/30 (70% copper, 30% nickel).

Copper-Nickel-Silver (Cu-Ni-Zn) Alloys: Made from copper, nickel, and zinc but no silver, these alloys can be regarded as special brasses. Containing 10–20% nickel, they

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

polish to an attractive silvery color, rather than the typical brassy color, which accounts for common use over several centuries.

Beryllium-Copper (Be-Cu) Alloys: In the fully heat treated and cold-worked condition, this is the hardest and strongest copper alloy. It is similar in mechanical properties to many high-strength alloy steels but, compared to steels, has better corrosion resistance.

Magnesium (Mg).—A shiny gray, solid, lightweight metal, magnesium has a melting point of 1202°F (650°C) and a density of 108.3 lb/ft^3 (1740 kg/m^3). As the world's lightest metal, with good strength-to-weight ratio, magnesium and its alloys are prevalent in the automotive, airplane, and missile industries. Its compounds also are used as refractory material in furnace linings for producing iron, steel, other nonferrous metals, glass, and cement.

Magnesium is the most electrochemically active metal. Care must be taken in processing to avoid fire hazards, and small particles of the metal, such as metal cutting chips, oxidize rapidly. Magnesium and its alloys are available in both wrought and cast forms.

Magnesium Alloys: These light alloys have received renewed interest as substitutes for some conventional structural materials to reduce weight in vehicles. Cast alloys, widely used in interior and power-train components, account for more than 99 percent of magnesium alloys used today, while only a small number of wrought products are used. This is because magnesium alloys lack formability for wrought applications; their high cost also discourages use for some automotive applications.

Rare earth (RE) elements, such as cerium (Ce), gadolinium (Gd), neodymium (Nd), and yttrium (Y), often are used as major alloying elements because of their relatively high solubility in magnesium and effectiveness in precipitation hardening and creep resistance. Commercial wrought magnesium alloys, such as ZK60 and AZ61, are based on magnesium-zinc (Mg-Zn) and magnesium-zinc-aluminum (Mg-Zn-Al) compounds, both of which are age-hardenable. ZK and AZ alloys attain good strength with hot extrusion or rolling; however, age-hardening processes, such as T6 (solution heat treatment and aging) and T8 (cold-work and subsequent aging), do not add strengthening due to softening by recrystallization at the temperature for artificial aging.

CASTING OF METALS

Casting is an age-old manufacturing process in which a liquid material usually is poured into a mold that contains a hollow cavity of the desired shape. As a result of new technological advances, this traditional form of manufacturing has become more essential than ever.

In metal casting, the mold generally includes runners and risers that facilitate metal filling the cavity. The mold and metal are cooled until the metal solidifies, then the solidified part (*casting*) is recovered from the mold. Subsequent operations are used to remove excess material caused by the casting process (such as the runners and risers), after which the part may solidify further. Metal casting processes are divided into two broad types: expendable-mold casting processes and nonexpendable-mold casting processes.

Expendable-mold casting includes sand, plastic, shell, plaster, and investment (lost-wax technique) molding processes, all of which rely on gravity to move the liquid material into casting cavities. The molds in which the molten material solidifies usually are made of nonmetallic materials and are temporary—that is, they must be destroyed to remove the casting.

Nonexpendable-mold casting refers to casting processes involving a reusable mold. Such molds are designed with two or more sections for easy, precise closing (for molding) and opening (to remove the casting) and can be used for multiple castings. For metal casting, the mold, also called a *die*, is commonly made of metal or ceramic.

Permanent mold casting refers to all casting technologies in which the mold cavity is reused many times and is made of a metallic material or graphite. This is the predominant casting method for manufacturing metal shapes. Specifically, about 90 percent of all aluminum castings produced use metal molds, including gravity-fed, low-pressure, and high-pressure die castings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Permanent metal molds are commonly made of steel or cast iron, with metal or sand cores, though it is desirable and generally more economical to use permanent steel cores to form cavities. When the casting has re-entrant surfaces or cavities from which one-piece permanent metal cores cannot be withdrawn, destructive cores made of sand, shell, plaster, or other materials may be used. This process is called *semipermanent mold casting*. Sectional steel cores also may be used in some instances.

An advantage of permanent metal molds is that they heat up and expand during the pour, so the cavity does not need to be expanded as much as in sand castings. Therefore, the cavity, with the gating system included, can be machined into halves that produce more precise parts with closer dimensional tolerances and smoother surfaces. Permanent mold castings also usually have better mechanical properties than sand castings, as solidification is more rapid and fill is more laminar.

Permanent mold casting is used mostly for aluminum, copper alloys, magnesium, and gray iron, because of their generally lower melting points. Typical parts include automobile pistons, cylinder heads, gears, and kitchenware. Parts that can be made economically generally weigh less than 55 lb (25 kg), though special castings weighing a few hundred kilograms have been made using this process. It may not be economical for small, unique production runs (due to the cost of permanent molds) and generally is not suitable for casting intricate shapes (because of difficulty of removing the part from the mold).

Disadvantages of different types of castings include poor finish; wide tolerance (sand casting); limited workpiece size (shell molds and ceramic molds); patterns with low strength (expendable-pattern casting); expensive, limited shapes (centrifugal casting); porosity (all types); and environmental problems (all types).

Heating and Pouring the Metal

Pouring is the process by which molten metal is transferred to the mold for cooling and solidification to be converted into the intended shape. *Pouring temperature* (T_p) is the temperature to which the molten metal must be heated before being poured into molds for cooling and setting.

The heat energy required for heating metal to a pouring temperature is the sum of 1) the heat needed to raise the temperature of a unit mass solid to its melting point; 2) the heat of fusion required to convert it from a solid at its melting point to a liquid without an increase in temperature (see Fig. 1); and 3) the heat needed to raise the molten metal to the desired temperature for pouring. The pouring temperature must take into account heat lost in the transfer of metal through ladles, due both to the heat absorbed by the ladles and to the distance between the furnace and the mold.

Molten metal must be poured carefully to avoid casting defects. For example, too rigorous a stream could cause mold erosion; highly turbulent flows could result in air and inclusion entrapments; and relatively slow filling might generate cold shuts. Thus, design of the gating and venting overflow systems must take into consideration proper control of the liquid metal as it fills the mold.

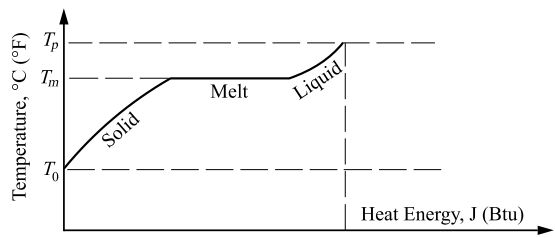


Fig. 1. Phase Change Diagram of Process of Heating Metal Casting to Pouring Temperature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Whether the casting process takes place by expendable-mold casting (such as sand casting) or nonexpendable-mold casting (using a permanent metal mold), the basic terminology of the casting process is the same.

Fluid Flow

Fluid flow is very important in casting. The molten metal is poured through a pouring basin. It then flows through the gating system (comprising sprue, risers, runners, and gates) to fill the mold cavity. (See the gravity casting system shown in Fig. 2.)

The *sprue* is the vertical part of the gating system that connects the *pouring cup* or *pouring basin* and runners; liquid metal enters the mold through the sprue. The *cope* is the top half of the mold. The *runners,* which are cut in the *drag* (the lower part of the mold), form the horizontal portion of the gating system that connects the sprue to the gates. The *gate* is the portion of the runners through which molten metal enters the mold cavity; there may be one or more gates. The *core* is designed to leave an unfilled space in the part. *Risers* are the part of the gating system used to identify when enough liquid material has been poured to fill the mold; it also acts as a reservoir of extra material to compensate for shrinkage during solidification. The *flask* is the molding box or outside of the mold.

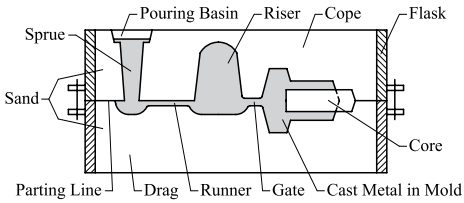


Fig. 2. Cross Section of Typical Two-Part Sand Mold

Gating Design: Successful casting requires proper design and control of the solidification process to ensure adequate fluid flow in the system. For example, an important function of the gating system in sand casting is to trap contaminants (oxides and other inclusions) in the molten metal by having such contaminants adhere to the walls of the gating system, thereby preventing them from reaching the mold cavity. A properly designed gating system also avoids or minimizes problems such as premature cooling, turbulence, and gas entrapment. Two basic principles of fluid flow are relevant to gating design: Bernoulli's theorem and the law of mass continuity.

Bernoulli's theorem states that the sum of the energies in a flowing liquid is constant at any two points. This can be written as:

$$h + \frac{p}{\rho g} + \frac{v^2}{2g} = \text{constant} \tag{1}$$

where h = elevation above a certain preference plane (datum); p = pressure at that elevation; v = velocity of the liquid at that elevation; ρ = density of the fluid; and g = gravitation constant.

This concept of conservation of energy requires that (between two different elevations) the following relationship be satisfied as:

$$h_1 + \frac{p_1}{\rho g} + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = h_2 + \frac{p_2}{\rho g} + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + f \tag{2}$$

where f = frictional losses in the liquid as it travels downward through the system.

The *law of mass continuity* states that for incompressible liquids and in a system with impermeable walls, the volume rate of flow remains constant throughout the liquid. So, considering two different locations in the system:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$Q = A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2 \tag{3}$$

where Q = volume rate of flow; A = cross-sectional area of the liquid stream; v = the average velocity of the liquid at that cross-sectional location; and subscripts 1 and 2 indicate two different locations in the liquid flow.

Sprue Design: The shape of the sprue can be calculated using Equation (2) and Equation (3). Assuming that pressure at the top of the sprue is equal to pressure at the bottom and that there are no frictional losses, the relationship between height and cross-sectional area at any point in the sprue is given by the parabolic relationship:

$$\frac{A_1}{A_2} = \sqrt{\frac{h_1}{h_2}} \tag{4}$$

Flow Characteristics: A molten metal's flow characteristics are an important consideration in the gating system because of the possible consequences of turbulence. There are two types of real fluid flow: laminar and turbulent.

In *laminar flow*, fluid moves in layers called *laminas*. Laminar flow need not be in a straight line; the flow may follow curved surfaces. The fluid layers slide smoothly over one another, without fluid being exchanged between the layers.

In *turbulent flow*, secondary random motions are superimposed on the principal flow, and there is an exchange of fluid from one adjacent sector to another. More important, there is an exchange of momentum: slow-moving fluid particles speed up, while fast-moving particles give up their momentum to slower-moving particles and are slowed down.

The factor that determines which type of flow is present is the ratio of the inertial forces to the viscous forces within the fluid. This ratio is expressed by the dimensionless Reynolds number as:

$$R_e = \frac{\rho v L}{\mu} \tag{5}$$

where R_e = Reynolds number; v = mean fluid velocity; L = characteristic length (equal to diameter if cross section is a circle); μ = dynamic fluid viscosity; ρ = density of the fluid.

The higher the R_e, the greater the tendency for turbulent flow to occur in the gating system: (1) laminar flow: $0 = R_e < 2000$; (2) transition flow: $20 < R_e < 20{,}000$; (3) turbulent flow: $R_e > 20{,}000$. Turbulent flow leads to inclusions, and therefore a reduction in fluidity.

Fluidity of Molten Metal

The phrase *fluidity of molten metal* describes the capability of molten metal to fill mold cavities, based on two factors: characteristics of the molten metal and casting parameters. The following characteristics of molten metal influence fluidity:

Viscosity: If viscosity (a measure of the metal's deformation in a molten state) and sensitivity to temperature (viscosity index) increase, fluidity decreases.

Surface Tension: High surface tension of the liquid metal reduces fluidity. Oxide films that develop on the surface of molten metal increase surface tension and thus can significantly reduce fluidity. Fluxing processes (treating metal with flux to promote melting) in the heating of metals are used to reduce or eliminate oxidation and to improve fluidity of metal surface layers.

Inclusions: Metallic and non-metallic inclusions have long been recognized as one of the most important quality issues in metal casting. As insoluble particles, inclusions can have a significant adverse effect on fluidity; the presence of inclusions often is the cause of decreased fluidity.

Solidification Pattern of the Alloy: Fluidity is inversely proportional to the freezing temperature range. In general, pure metals and alloys of eutectic composition have the highest values of fluidity. Solid-solution and other alloys have lower fluidity.

Superheat: The difference between the melting temperature and the pouring temperature also influences fluidity. For given alloy compositions, if the melt temperature is higher, fluidity increases. The pouring temperature is often specified, rather than the superheat temperature, because it is easier to do so.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Test for Fluidity.—Although none is accepted universally, several tests have been developed to quantify fluidity. One such test is the spiral test (Fig. 3a), where the molten metal is made to flow along a channel at room temperature. The distance the metal flows before it solidifies (and stops flowing) is a measure of its fluidity. Obviously, this distance is a function of the thermal properties of both the metal and mold, as well as the design of the channel. Another test for fluidity is the vacuum test (Fig. 3b), which measures the length the metal flows inside a narrow channel when sucked from a crucible by a vacuum pump. Such tests can be useful in simulating casting situations.

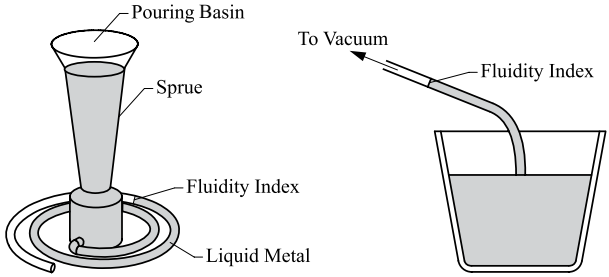


Fig. 3. Test Method for Fluidity: a) Spiral Method; b) Vacuum Method

Heat Transfer

An important consideration in casting is heat transfer during the complete cycle from pouring to solidification and cooling to ambient temperature. Heat flow at different locations in the system is a complex phenomenon that depends on many factors relating to the casting material and mold and process parameters. For instance, when casting thin sections, metal flow rates must be high enough to avoid premature chilling and solidification. However, the flow rate must not be so fast as to cause excessive turbulence, which can have detrimental effects.

Solidification and Cooling of Metals

At the macro level, *solidification* refers to the phase change of metal from liquid to solid. At the micro level, changes occur in the material as the disordered structure of the liquid transforms into an orderly arrangement of crystals.

Once molten metal has been poured into the mold, it cools rapidly. When the temperature of the liquid drops below the melting point of that metal or alloy, the solidification process begins. This usually takes less than a few minutes. As the temperature drops further, the molten metal loses energy, and crystals begin to form. (This process starts near the mold walls, where cooling occurs first.) These crystals eventually become grains within the final structure.

Grain size refers to crystals (*dendrites*) formed during the solidification process. If the metal solidifies slowly, the grains are longer. If it cools quickly, the grains are visibly shorter. Crystals continue to form and harden, until the entire melt is solidified.

Throughout the solidification process, the metal shrinks. It is important to compensate for such shrinking to ensure castings are free of voids and shrink defects. This is accomplished by using risers.

The cooling rate of a casting affects its microstructure, quality, and properties. The cooling curve illustrates how molten metals solidify. There is a fundamental difference between the cooling curve observed during solidification of a pure metal and that of an alloy.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

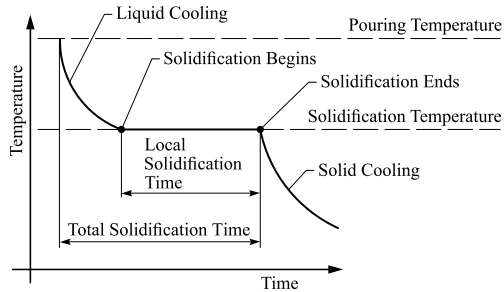


Fig. 4. Cooling Curve for a Poured Pure Metal During Casting

Solidification of Pure Metal.—Pure metal solidifies at constant temperature. It has a clearly defined melting (or freezing) point. Fig. 4 shows the cooling curve for a poured pure metal during casting.

After the temperature of the molten pure metal drops to its freezing point, the temperature remains constant while the latent heat of fusion is given off. The *solidification front* (solid–liquid interface) moves through the molten metal, solidifying from the mold walls toward the center.

At the mold walls, the molten metal cools rapidly and first produces a solidified shell of fine, approximately equal-dimension-in-all-direction (equiaxed) grains. Starting with these grains, the grains grow upon themselves, in the opposite direction of the heat transfer out through the mold. Those with favorable orientations—that is, away from the surface of the mold—are columnar in shape; as the driving force of the heat transfer is reduced (farther from the mold walls), the grains again become equiaxed, as well as coarse. Those grains that have substantially different orientations are blocked from further growth.

When the heat is segregated rapidly during solidification, it leads to fine structures due to a decrease in diffusion rates.

Solidification of Alloys.—Solidification begins when the temperature of the alloy drops below the point of liquidus, and it is complete when it reaches solidus. A phase diagram and a cooling curve for alloys during casting are shown in Fig. 5.

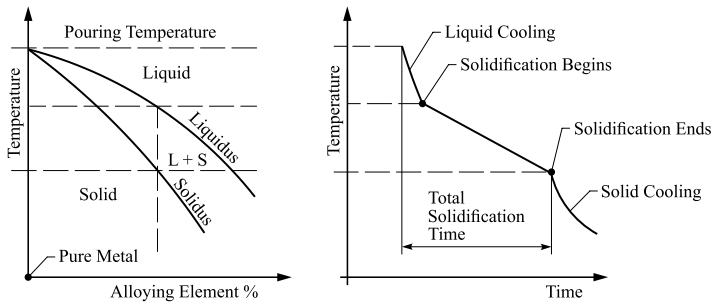


Fig. 5. Phase Diagram and Cooling Curve for Alloy Composition During Casting

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Within the temperature range where solidification begins (T_l) and solidification ends (T_S) the alloy is in a "mushy" state, with columnar dendrites. The mushy metal is present between the dendrite arms. The width of this mushy zone is an important factor during solidification. It is described by the freezing range as:

$$\text{Freezing range} = T_l - T_S \tag{6}$$

Pure metals have no freezing range, and the solidification front moves in a plane without forming a mushy zone.

In alloys with a nearly symmetrical phase diagram, the structure generally is lamellar, with two or more solid phases present, depending on the alloy system. For alloys, a short freezing range generally involves a temperature difference less than 122°F (50°C) and a long freezing range higher than 230°F (110°C). Ferrous castings generally have narrow mushy zones, whereas aluminum and magnesium alloys have wide mushy zones. Slow cooling rates approximately 10^2 K/s result in coarse dendritic structures with large spacing between the dendrite arms. For higher cooling rates, from 10^6 to 10^8 K/s, the structures developed are amorphous.

Solidification Time.—Total solidification time is the time required for the casting to solidify from molten metal after pouring. Casting geometry, material, and process determine solidification time.

Chvorinov's rule states that under the same conditions, a casting with a large surface area and small volume will cool more rapidly than a casting with a small surface area and large volume. Therefore, a large sphere solidifies and cools to ambient temperature at a much slower rate than a smaller sphere. The reason is that the volume of a sphere is proportional to the cube of its diameter, and its surface area is proportional to the square of its diameter. Similarly, molten metal in a cube-shaped mold will solidify faster than in a spherical mold of the same volume. According to this rule, solidification time is a function of the volume of a casting and its surface area:

$$\text{Solidification time} = k(V/A)^n \tag{7}$$

where V is the volume of the casting; A is the surface area of the casting; k is the mold constant; and n is the exponent ($1.5 < n \leq 2$, but usually taken as 2). The mold constant k depends on the properties of the cast metal (heat of fusion, specific heat, and thermal conductivity), mold material, and pouring temperature. The value of k for a given casting operation can be based on experimental data from previous operations carried out using the same mold material, metal, and pouring temperature, even though the shape of the workpiece might be complex.

During the early stages of solidification, a thin, solidified skin begins to form at the cool mold walls; as times passes, the skin thickens. With flat mold walls, this thickness is proportional to the square root of time.

Shrinkage.—Most materials contract or shrink during solidification and cooling. Shrinkage is the result of contraction of the liquid as it cools prior to solidification; contraction during the phase change from liquid to solid; and contraction of the solid as it continues to cool to ambient temperature.

Sometimes, shrinkage can cause cracking in a component as it solidifies. Since the coolest area of a volume of liquid is where it contacts a mold or die, solidification usually begins first at this surface. As the crystals grow inward, the material continues to shrink. If the solid surface is too rigid and will not deform to accommodate the internal shrinkage, the stresses can exceed the tensile strength of the material and cause a crack to form. Shrinkage cavitation also may occur as a material solidifies inward and shrinks to such an extent that not enough atoms are present to fill the available space, and a void is left.

The amount of contraction during the solidification of metals is shown in Table 1. Note that gray cast iron expands, because graphite has a relatively high specific volume, and when it precipitates as graphite flakes during solidification, it causes a net expansion of the metal.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Volumetric Solidification Contraction or Expansion for Various Metals

Metals	Volumetric Contraction due to:		Solidus Temperature °F (°C)
	Solidification Shrinkage (%)	Cooling Shrinkage (%)	
Aluminum (Al)	7.1	5.1	1220 (660)
Aluminum (Al), 4.5% Copper (Cu)	6.3	5.3	1058 (570)
Aluminum (Al), 12% Silicone (Si)	3.8	4.8	1076 (580)
Gold (Au)	5.1	5.2	1945 (1063)
Bismuth (Bi)	–3.3 (expansion)	1.0	520 (271)
Copper (Cu)	5.1	6.4	1981 (1083)
Iron (Pure) (FE)	3.1	6.0 to 7.5	2795 (1535)
Steel (Various)	2.5 to 3.0	4.2 to 6.0	2732 (1500)
Gray Cast Iron, 2% Carbon (C)	4.0	3.0	2111 (1155)
Gray Cast Iron, 5% Carbon (C)	–2.5 (expansion)	3.0	2098 (1148)
White Cast Iron, 5% Carbon (C)	5.0	3.0	2111 (1155)
Germanium (Ge)	–5.1 (expansion)	1.6	1719 (937)
Magnesium (Mg)	4.2	5.4	1200 (649)
Nickel (Ni)	5.1	7.0	2647 (1453)
Lead (Pb)	2.7	2.8	621 (327)
Tin (Sn)	2.3	1.5	450 (232)
Zinc (Zn)	4.7	4.0	788 (420)

Defects in Casting

The International Committee of Foundry Technical Associations has developed a standardized nomenclature, consisting of eight basic categories of casting defects:

Metallic Projections: Such defects can include fins, flash, or massive projections, such as swells and rough surfaces.

Cavities: Variously rounded or rough internal or exposed cavities include blowholes, pinholes, and shrinkage cavities.

Discontinuities: These can include cracks, cold or hot tearing, and cold shuts. If the solidifying metal is constrained from shrinking freely, cracking and tearing can occur. Coarse grain size and the presence of low-melting-point segregates along the grain boundaries (intergranular) increase the tendency for hot tearing. Cold shut is an interface in a casting that lacks complete fusion because two streams of liquid metal meet from different gates and do not completely fuse.

Defective Surface: Surface defects include folds, laps, scars, adhering sand layers, and oxide scale.

Incomplete Casting: Misruns can occur due to premature solidification, the molten metal being at too low a temperature, pouring metal too slowly, insufficient volume of metal being poured, or runout (loss of metal from a mold after pouring).

Incorrect Dimensions or Shape: These undesirable results may be caused by factors such as an improper shrinkage allowance, pattern-mounting error, deformed pattern, irregular contraction, or warped casting.

Inclusions: Inclusions form during melting, solidification, and molding and generally are non-metallic. They increase stress and reduce strength of the casting. Inclusions may form during melting, when the molten metal reacts with the environment (usually oxygen) or with crucible or mold material. Chemical reactions among components in the molten metal itself may produce inclusions. Spalling of the mold and core surfaces also produces inclusions, indicating the importance of the quality and maintenance of molds.

Porosity: Porosity may be caused by shrinkage or gases or both. Thin sections in a casting solidify sooner than thicker regions. As a result, molten metal can flow into thicker

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

regions that have not yet solidified, and porous regions may develop at their centers due to contraction as the surfaces of the thicker region begin to solidify. Micro-porosity can develop when the liquid metal solidifies and shrinks between dendrites or between dendrite branches.

Porosity caused by shrinkage can be reduced or eliminated by various means. Adequate liquid metal should be provided to avoid cavities caused by shrinkage. Internal or external chills used in sand casting also are an effective means of reducing shrinkage porosity by increasing the rate of solidification in critical regions. Internal chills usually are made of the same material as the casting and are left in the casting; external chills may be made of the same material or of iron, copper, or graphite. With alloys, porosity also may be reduced or eliminated by making the temperature gradient steep. For example, mold materials with higher thermal conductivity may be used. Subjecting the casting to hot isostatic pressing is another method of reducing porosity.

Most obvious porosity defects are caused by entrapment of gases within the molten solution. Because liquid metals have much greater solubility for gases than solid metals, when a metal begins to solidify, dissolved gases are expelled from the solution. Typically, hydrogen precipitates into melt because of contact with the atmosphere or excessive moisture in the flux. Since hydrogen is highly soluble in molten metal, it is best to avoid superheating metals beyond their melting temperature and to avoid holding the material in a molten state any longer than necessary.

To reduce absorption of gases from the atmosphere, which may leave slag or dross, cover molten metal until just prior to pouring it into the mold. Gases also may result from reactions of the molten metal with the mold materials, either accumulating in regions of existing porosity or causing micro-porosity in the casting, particularly in cast iron, aluminum, and copper. Dissolved gases may be removed from the molten metal by flushing or purging with an inert gas or by melting and pouring metal in a vacuum. If the dissolved gas is oxygen, the molten metal can be deoxidized. Steel is usually deoxidized with aluminum, copper-based alloys with phosphorus, silicon, titanium, and zirconium-bearing materials.

If the porosity is spherical and the walls are smooth, porosity usually is the result of gases. If the walls are rough and angular, porosity is likely the result of shrinkage between dendrites. Gross porosity is caused by shrinkage and usually is called a *shrinkage cavity*.

The loss in casting properties measured by a tensile test may reflect the amount of porosity in a casting; because imperfections become areas of higher stress concentration, the percentage of property loss becomes greater when the strength requirement is higher. Porosity also is detrimental to the ductility of a casting and its surface finish, making it permeable and thus affecting the pressure tightness of a cast pressure vessel. A metallographic examination can determine whether porosity exists in a casting. X-ray techniques also are used for nondestructive evaluations of porosity.

METAL CASTING AND MOLDING PROCESSES

Metal casting processes may be classified in four different ways:

According to the Mold Type: (1) expendable mold (destroyed after each casting); or (2) permanent mold (reused many times).

According to the Type of Pattern Used for Making a Sand Mold: (1) expendable pattern (melted for each mold), using wax as the pattern material; or (2) permanent pattern (reused for many molds), using wood or metal as the pattern material.

According to the Type of Core Used for Producing a Hole in Casting: (1) expendable core (used in both sand and metal molds), using sand as the core material; or (2) permanent core (used with a permanent mold only), using metal as the core material.

According to the Method by Which the Mold is Filled: (1) gravity (sand casting, gravity die casting); (2) pressure (low- and high-pressure die casting); or (3) vacuum (vacuum investment casting).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sand Casting

Sand casting uses natural or synthetic sand in forming molds. Larger-sized molds use green sand (a mixture of sand, clay, and some water).

Advantages of Sand Casting: Ferrous, nonferrous, and even non-metal materials can be cast in this process. Sand can be reused; excess metal poured is cut off and reused as well. Simple, inexpensive tools are required. Intricate shapes can be made by this process, as molten metal flows into small sections. Finally, this process can be used to produce many small components, with no limit on the size or weight of castings.

Disadvantages of Sand Casting: Accuracy and surface finish are lacking, requiring additional processing and finishing of parts. Overall, sand casting is a labor-intensive process. However, since sand casting usually is the least expensive way of making a component, its cost advantage over other methods makes it an attractive molding method.

Sands.—Most sand casting operations use a refractory material called silica (SiO_2). Sand is inexpensive and has high melting point of 3110°F (1710°C). Sand can be naturally bonded (bank sand) or synthetic (lake sand). Because its composition can be controlled more accurately, synthetic sand is preferred by most foundries.

Several factors affect the selection of sand for molds. The grains of the sand must be small enough so that it can be packed densely; sand having fine, round grains can be closely packed and form a smooth mold surface. Fine-grained sand enhances mold strength, but fine grains also lower mold permeability. The sand grains must be large enough for good permeability of molds (and cores), which allows the gases and steam that evolve during casting to escape through the pores of the mold.

For proper functioning, mold sand must be clean and preferably new. And the sand mold should have good collapsibility to allow the casting to shrink while cooling, thus avoiding defects such as hot tearing and cracking.

Types of Sand Molds.—Sand molds are characterized by the types of sand that compose them and by the methods used to make the molds.

Green-Sand Molds: Clay sand is the mixture of natural silica sand, clay, additives, and water. It is the least expensive method of making sand molds, and the sand can be recycled for the next use. Bentonite clay is used to make wet clay sand. Sand in these molds is kept moist or damp while the metal is being poured. As the wet sand has a high moisture content, good air permeability, and low strength, castings can have issues with porosity, coarse, sticky sand, and sand expansion defects.

Green-sand molds are commonly used in hand molding and machine molding. In hand molding, dimensional accuracy is low, so it is generally used only for production of small and medium-sized iron castings and nonferrous alloy castings. But in mechanical molding, the castings have much higher dimensional accuracy, so it is widely used for high-volume production of castings.

Skin-Dried Method: In this case, the mold surfaces need to be sprayed with a mixture of 10 percent water to one part molasses or lignin sulfonate after the surfaces are dried, either by storing the mold in air or by using torches.

Cold-Box Mold: Various organic and inorganic binders are blended into the sand to bond the grains chemically for greater strength. These molds are dimensionally more accurate than green-sand molds, but they are more expensive.

No-Bake Mold: A synthetic liquid resin is mixed with the sand; the mixture hardens at room temperature. Because bonding of the mold in this and in the cold-box process takes place without heat, these processes are called *cold-setting processes*. This type of mold has good dimensional control in high-production applications.

Dried Molds: Sand molds that are oven dried (baked) prior to pouring the molten metal are stronger than green-sand molds and impart better dimensional accuracy and surface finish to the casting. However, this method has drawbacks: (a) distortion of the mold is greater; (b) castings are more susceptible to hot tearing because of the lower collapsibility of the mold; and (c) production rates are slower due to the drying time required.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Features of Sand Molds.—Major features of sand molds (most shown in Fig. 2) are:

Cope: The top half of the flask, mold, or core.

Drag: The bottom half of the flask, mold, or core.

Core: A core part is inserted into the mold cavity to produce a hole within the mold.

Core Print: The region added to the pattern, core, or mold to locate and support the core. The prints are made of such a size and shape that it would be impossible to set the core in any position except the proper one.

Mold Cavity: The combined open area in the molding material and core, where the liquid metal solidifies to produce the casting.

Gating System: The network of connected channels that allows molten material to flow into the mold cavity; it includes the sprue, riser, runners, and gates.

Pouring Cup or Basin: The part of the gating system that initially receives the molten metal from the pouring vessels and controls its delivery to the rest of the mold.

Sprue: The vertical part of the gating system that connects the pouring cup and runners. The liquid metal enters into the mold cavity through the sprue.

Runners: The horizontal portion of the gating system, cut into the drab part of the mold, which connects the sprues to the gates.

Riser: This part of the gating system normally is used to identify the filling position of the liquid metal in the mold. It also acts as a reservoir for extra molten metal to compensate for shrinkage during solidification.

Gates: The controlled entrances from the runners into the mold cavities. Properly designed gates admit liquid metal into the mold cavity without turbulence.

Vents: These small holes, in all parts of the mold, provide passage for gases to escape during pouring and solidification of mold metals.

Parting Line or Parting Surface: The interface line between the cope and drag halves of the mold or flask.

Draft: The taper on the pattern that allows it to be easily withdrawn from the mold.

Core Box: This is the mold or die used to produce the cores.

Patterns.—Patterns are used to mold the sand mixture into the shape of casting. They may be made of wood, plastic, or metal. Because patterns are used repeatedly to make molds, the strength and durability of the materials selected must reflect the number of castings that the mold will produce. Patterns usually are coated with a parting agent to facilitate their removal from the molds. There are four types of patterns: solid one-piece patterns, split patterns, match-plate patterns, and cope-and-drag patterns.

One-Piece Patterns: Also called *loose* or *solid patterns*, one-piece patterns are used for simple shapes and low-quantity production. They usually are made of wood and are inexpensive.

Split Patterns: These two-piece patterns are made so that each part forms a portion of the cavity for the casting, enabling casting of complicated shapes.

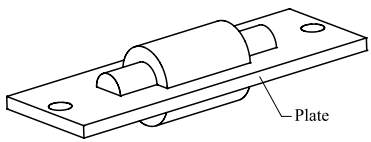


Fig. 6. Match-Plate Pattern

Match-Plate Patterns: These two-piece patterns are constructed by securing each half of one or more split patterns to the opposite sides of a single plate (Fig. 6). The gating system can be mounted on the drag side of the pattern.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

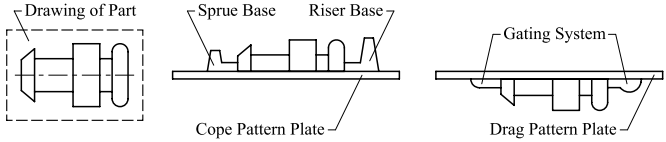


Fig. 7. Cope-and-Drag Pattern

Cope-and-Drag Patterns: These are similar to match-plate patterns. Except each half of the split pattern is assembled with separate plates, so separate patterns, and possibly separate machines, can be used to make the mold halves. Cope-and-drag patterns (Fig. 7) include a gating and riser system.

Cores.—Many cast parts have interior holes (hollow parts) or other cavities in their shape that are not directly accessible from either piece of the mold. Such interior surfaces are formed using inserts called *cores*, which are placed in the mold cavity before casting and removed from the finished part during shakeout and further processing. Like molds, cores must possess strength, permeability, collapsibility, and ability to withstand heat. Hence, cores are made of sand aggregates.

Cores are anchored and supported by *core prints*, recesses added to the pattern that also provide vents for gases to escape. To keep cores from shifting, metal supports (*chaplets*) may be used to anchor the cores.

On pouring and solidification, *chaplets* are integrated into the casting. The portions of the chaplets protruding from the castings are cut off. Fig. 8 illustrates how a core is held in the mold cavity with and without chaplets.

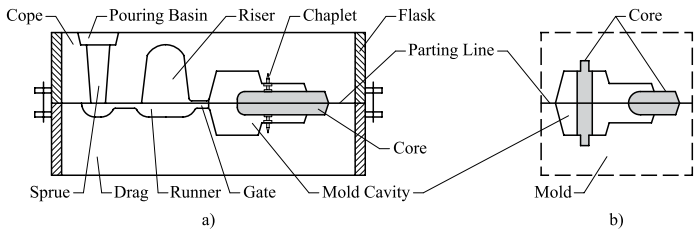


Fig. 8. Core Held in Place in the Mold Cavity: a) Core Held in with Chaplets; b) Core Held without Chaplets

Sand Molding Techniques.—These are the steps involved in the traditional technique of making a simple sand mold:

1) The drag flask is placed on the board.

2) Dry facing sand is sprinkled over the board to provide a nonstick layer.

3) The drag half of the pattern is located on the mold board.

4) Molding sand is poured in to cover the pattern with the fingers; the drag is filled completely.

5) Sand is tightly packed in the drag using *hand rammers*, *peen hammers* (used first close to the drag pattern), and *butt hammers* (used for surface ramming).

6) Ramming must be proper (neither too hard nor too soft). Too soft ramming will generate a weak mold and poor imprint of the pattern. Too hard ramming will not allow gases and air to escape, creating bubbles in castings, resulting in defects called *blows*. Also, the making of runners and gates will be difficult.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

7) After the ramming is finished, excess sand is leveled and removed with a straight bar (*strike rod*).

8) Vent holes are made in the drag, using a *vent rod*, to the full depth of the flask and the pattern to facilitate removal of gases during pouring and solidification.

9) The finished drag flask is turned upside down, exposing the pattern.

10) The cope half of the pattern is placed on the drag pattern, using locating pins. The cope flask also is located with the help of pins. Dry parting sand is sprinkled all over the drag surface and on the pattern.

11) A sprue pin, used in making the sprue passage, is located some distance from the pattern edge. A riser pin is placed at an appropriate place.

12) Filling, ramming, and venting of the cope are done in the same manner.

13) The sprue and riser are removed. A pouring cup or basin is made at the top to pour the liquid metal.

14) The pattern is removed from the cope and drag.

15) Runners and gates are made by cutting the parting surface with a gate cutter (a piece of sheet metal bent to the desired radius).

16) The core for making a central hole is placed into the mold cavity in the drag, where it is anchored and supported by core prints.

17) The mold is now assembled and ready for pouring.

Sand Casting Operation.—After the mold has been shaped and the cores have been placed in position, the two halves (cope and drag) are closed, clamped, and weighed down to prevent separation of the mold sections. The flasks are then subjected to pressure to counteract the force of buoyancy. (Buoyancy results from the weight of liquid metal being displaced by the core, according to Archimedes' law.)

The force tending to lift the cope is equal to the weight of the displaced liquid less the weight of the core. This can be expressed as:

$$F_b = W_m - W_c \tag{8}$$

where F_b represents the force of buoyancy; W_m is the weight of molten metal displaced; and W_c is the weight of the core.

The order of sand casting operation is as follows:

1) A suitable flask or molding box is selected, and space is allowed for ramming in sand.

2) The drag is placed on the molding board upside down. Then the lower part of the pattern is placed on the board inside the flask. Space is left for cutting.

3) Sand is added to fill in the flask and cover the pattern; it is firmly packed using hammers. After properly ramming in sand, the excess is leveled off with straight strike-off bar.

4) Using a vent rod, the vent holes are made in the drag to the full depth of flask to allow gases or air to escape during pouring and solidification.

5) The cope half of pattern is placed over the drag and positioned with locating pins. The cope flask is placed on the drag. The sprue pin is provided for sprue passage, located at a distance from the pattern. And the riser pin is positioned on the pattern.

6) The ramming, filling, and venting processes are repeated.

7) The cope is filled with sand and proper ramming force applied.

8) Excess sand is cut off from mold surface. The riser pin and sprue pin are removed.

9) The molding box is opened, and the pattern is removed from the cope and drag. One or more dry sand cores are mounted in position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

10) The mold is closed by placing the cope on top of the drag and securing the assembly with pins. The flasks are subjected to pressure to counteract buoyant forces in the liquid, which might lift the cope.

11) Molten metal is poured through the riser into the mold cavity.

12) After pouring and solidification, the part is removed with the required pattern shape.

13) The sprue and risers are cut off and recycled.

14) The casting is cleaned, inspected, and heat treated (when necessary).

15) The final casting is inspected using nondestructive testing and destructive methods in accordance with standards.

Rammed Graphite Molding.—A rammed graphite mold typically is used for large industrial casting for reactive metals such as titanium and zirconium. It uses graphite instead of sand in a process similar to sand casting. Traditionally, a mixture of properly size-fractioned graphite powder, pitch, corn syrup, and water are rammed against a wooden or fiberglass pattern to form each mold section. The mold sections are air dried, baked at 350°F (177°C), and then fired in a furnace for 24 hours at 1877°F (1025°C), causing the mold to carbonize and harden. Rammed graphite molds must be stored under controlled humidity and temperature.

Mold ramming is a labor-intensive process that cannot be easily mechanized, and the graphite mold is so hard that it must be chiseled off the cast parts. Castings made with this process usually are cleaned in an acid bath, followed, if necessary, by chemical milling, to remove any reaction zone; weld-repaired as needed; and then sandblasted for a good surface appearance.

Shell Molding

Shell molding is a foundry process in which the molds are made in the form of thin shells. This process can produce many types of castings with close dimensional tolerance and good surface finish at relatively low cost. Shell molding applications include small mechanical parts requiring high precision, including gear housings, cylinder heads, connecting rods, and close-tolerance molding cores.

Advantages of Shell Molding: Rigidly bonded sand provides great reproducibility and produces castings near to net shape with intricate detail and high dimensional accuracy of ± 0.010 in. (± 0.25 mm). Castings can range from 1 oz to 25 lb (28 g to 11 kg). The resin-bond strength of the mold allows for smaller draft angles, deep draws, and built-in mold locators that prevent mold shift mismatch.

Because mold shells are thin, permeability for gas escape is increased, allowing use of finer sands. Finer sand and excellent flowability produce dense mold surfaces and contribute to producing complex casting with high-quality finishes with a roughness average of 50 µin (1.25 µm) Ra. The virtual absence of moisture eliminates moisture-related defects, and the burning resin provides a favorable anti-oxidizing atmosphere for the casting surface. In addition, heat from burning slows the casting-cooling rate, yielding a more machinable structure.

Disadvantages of Shell Molding: Since the tooling requires heat to cure the mold, pattern costs and pattern wear can be high. Material costs are higher than for green-sand molding, and energy costs are higher than for other processes.

Shell molds are made in the following operations:

1) A pattern made of a ferrous metal or aluminum is heated to 347–698°F (175–370°C).

2) The pattern is coated with a parting agent, such as silicone.

3) It is clamped to a box or chamber that contains fine sand, mixed with 2.5–4% thermosetting resin binder (such as phenol-formaldehyde) that coats the sand particles.

4) Either the box/chamber is rotated upside down, or the sand mixture is blown over the pattern to coat it.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5) The assembly is placed in an oven for a short period of time to complete curing of the resin.

6) The shell mold hardens around the pattern.

7) The mold is removed from the pattern using built-in ejector pins.

8) The second half of the shell mold is made, using the same steps.

9) Once complete, the two half shells are bonded or clamped together to form the mold. Support is provided by sand or metal shot in the flask when pouring the molten metal.

10) After casting and cooling, the part is cleaned and trimmed.

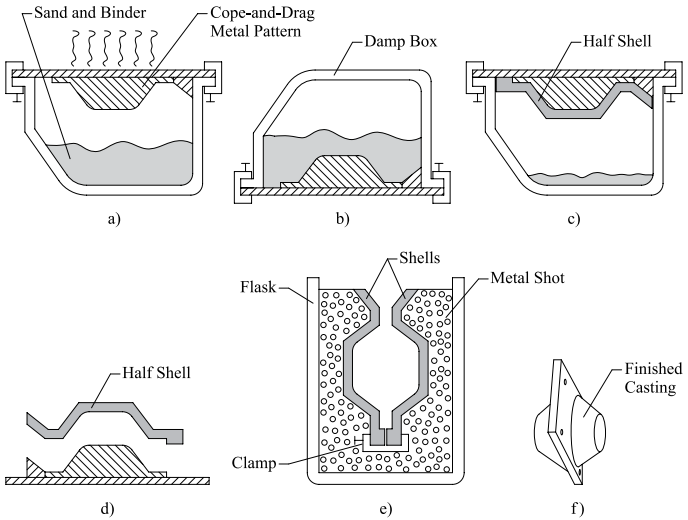


Fig. 9. Shell Molding Process, also called Dump-Box Technique: a) Pattern Heated and Clamped over a Box; b) Box Inverted; c) Box Repositioned; d) Half Shell Stripped from the Pattern; e) Shell Mold, Supported by Metal Shot in Flask, Ready for Poured Metal; f) Finished Casting

Expendable-Pattern Casting

Sometimes referred to as a *lost foam* process, expendable-pattern casting involves using a unique mold and pattern that must be produced for every casting. The pattern used in this process is made from polystyrene foam, which is 95 percent air bubbles; the material evaporates when liquid metal is poured on it.

The pattern is made by molding. Polystyrene beads and pentane are put inside an aluminum mold and heated. The material expands to fill the mold, taking the shape of the cavity. Then the pattern is removed from the mold and used for the casting processes as follows:

1) The pattern is dipped in a slurry of water and clay (or other refractory grains). It is dried to form a hard shell around the pattern.

2) The shell-covered pattern is placed in a container with sand for support.

3) Liquid metal is poured into a hole at the top.

4) The foam evaporates as the metal fills the shell.

5) Upon cooling and solidification, the part is removed by breaking the shell.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

This process is useful since it is very cheap, can produce complex geometry, and yields good surface finish. There are no runners, risers, gating, or parting lines. Thus, the design process is simplified. This method is used to manufacture crankshafts for engines, aluminum engine blocks, manifolds, and other parts.

Plaster Mold Casting

Plaster mold casting produces parts with good surface finish and dimensional accuracy, and provide the capability to make parts with thin cross sections. The mold is made by mixing plaster of Paris or simple "plaster" ($CaSO_4$) with talc and silica flour. This produces a fine white powder that, when mixed with water, forms a clay-like consistency and can be shaped around pattern halves in a flask and allowed to set. The mold halves are extracted carefully from the pattern and then dried in an oven at a temperature range of 248–500°F (120–260°C) to remove moisture.

The mold halves are carefully assembled to form the mold cavity and used for the casting process as follows:

1) The mold is preheated to about 248°F (120°C).

2) Molten metal is poured in the mold cavity.

3) After the metal is solidified and cooled, the plaster mold is broken away from the finished casting.

Plaster casts are relatively soft and not strong enough at temperatures above 2192°F (1200°C). So this method is mainly used to make castings from nonferrous metals, such as aluminum, magnesium, zinc, and copper-based alloys. It cannot be used to cast ferrous materials, because the sulfur in gypsum slowly reacts with iron. Since plaster has lower thermal conductivity, the casting cools slowly, and therefore has more uniform grain structure, with the advantages of less warpage and less residual stresses.

Ceramic Mold Casting

Ceramic mold casting also is called *cope-and-drag investment casting*. It is similar to the plaster mold process, and the metal is cast the same way, but it uses refractory materials suitable for high-temperature applications. Ceramic mold casting uses a permanent pattern made of plastic, wood, or metal. To make the slurries for molding, fine-grained zircon ($ZrSiO_4$), aluminum oxide, and fused silica are mixed with bonding agents and poured over the pattern, which has been placed in a flask.

With this process, parts may be cast that weigh as much as 1,540 lb (700 kg). Typically, it is used for impellers, cutters for machining operations, dies for metalworking, and molds for making plastic and rubber components.

The sequence of operations in making a ceramic mold is:

1) A pattern is placed in a flask.

2) A slurry is poured over the pattern to create the mold.

3) It is dried in a low temperature oven, and the pattern is removed.

4) The mold is backed by clay for strength and baked in a high-temperature oven to burn off any volatile substances.

5) The all-ceramic mold is firmly clamped for use in casting.

The metal is cast the same way as in plaster casting. Although this process is somewhat expensive, it is used because castings can be made that feature good dimensional accuracy and surface finish over a wide range of sizes and intricate shapes. It can be used to make very good quality castings of steel or even stainless steel and parts such as impeller blades for turbines or pumps and rotors for motorboats.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Precision Investment Casting

Investment casting is a highly developed process that is capable of great casting accuracy and can form extremely intricate contours. The process may be utilized when metals are too hard to machine or otherwise fabricate; when it is the only practical method of producing a part; or when it is more economical than any other method of obtaining work of the quality required. Precision investment casting is especially applicable in producing either exterior or interior contours of intricate form with surfaces so located that they could not be machined readily if at all. The process provides efficient, accurate means of producing such parts as turbine blades, airplane or other parts made from alloys that have high melting points and must withstand exceptionally high temperatures, and many other products. The accuracy and finish of precision investment castings may either eliminate machining entirely or reduce it to a minimum. The quantity that may be produced economically may range from a few to thousands of duplicate parts.

Investment casting uses an expendable pattern, usually of wax or injection-molded plastics. Several wax replicas or patterns are usually joined together or to bars of wax that are shaped to form runner channels in the mold. Wax shapes that will produce pouring funnels also are fastened to the runner bars. The mold is formed by dipping the wax assembly (tree) into a thick slurry containing refractory particles. This process is known as investing. After the coating has dried, the process is repeated until a sufficient thickness of material has been built up to form a one-piece mold shell. Because the mold is in one piece, undercuts, apertures, and hollows can be produced easily. As in shell molding, this invested shell is baked to increase its strength, and the wax or plastics pattern melts and runs out or evaporates (lost-wax casting). Some molds are backed up with solid refractory material that is also dried and baked to increase the strength. Molds for lighter castings are often treated similarly to shell molds described before. Filling of the molds may take place in the atmosphere, in a chamber filled with inert gas or under vacuum, to suit the metal being cast.

Materials That May Be Cast.—The precision investment process may be applied to a wide range of both ferrous and nonferrous alloys. In industrial applications, these include alloys of aluminum and bronze, Stellite, Hastelloys, stainless and other alloy steels, and iron castings, especially where thick and thin sections are encountered. In producing investment castings, it is possible to control the process in various ways so as to change the porosity or density of castings, obtain hardness variations in different sections, and vary the corrosion resistance and strength by special alloying.

General Procedure in Making Investment Castings.—Precision investment casting is similar in principle to the "lost-wax" process that has long been used in manufacturing jewelry, ornamental pieces, and individual dentures, inlays, and other items required in dentistry, which is not discussed here. When this process is employed, both the pattern and mold used in producing the casting are destroyed after each casting operation, but they may both be replaced readily. The "dispensable patterns" (or cluster of duplicate patterns) is first formed in a permanent mold or die and is then used to form the cavity in the mold or "investment" in which the casting (or castings) is made. The investment or casting mold consists of a refractory material contained within a reinforcing steel flask. The pattern is made of wax, plastics, or a mixture of the two. The material used is evacuated from the investment to form a cavity (without parting lines) for receiving the metal to be cast. Evacuation of the pattern (by the application of sufficient heat to melt and vaporize it) and the use of a master mold or die for reproducing it quickly and accurately in making duplicate castings are distinguishing features of this casting process. Modern applications of the process include many developments such as variations in the preparation of molds, patterns, investments, etc., as well as in the casting procedure. Application of the process requires specialized knowledge and experience.

Master Mold for Making Dispensable Patterns.—Duplicate patterns for each casting operation are made by injecting the wax, plastics, or other pattern material into a master

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

mold or die that usually is made either of carbon steel or of a soft metal alloy. Rubber, alloy steels, and other materials may also be used. The mold cavity commonly is designed to form a cluster of patterns for multiple castings. The mold cavity is not, as a rule, an exact duplicate of the part to be cast because it is necessary to allow for shrinkage and perhaps to compensate for distortion that might affect the accuracy of the cast product. In producing master pattern molds there is considerable variation in practice. One general method is to form the cavity by machining; another is by pouring a molten alloy around a master pattern that usually is made of monel metal or of a high-alloy stainless steel. If the cavity is not machined, a master pattern is required. Sometimes, a sample of the product itself may be used as a master pattern, when, for example, a slight reduction in size due to shrinkage is not objectionable. The dispensable pattern material, which may consist of waxes, plastics, or a combination of these materials, is injected into the mold by pressure, by gravity, or by the centrifugal method. The mold is made in sections to permit removal of the dispensable pattern. The mold while in use may be kept at the correct temperature by electrical means, by steam heating, or by a water jacket.

Shrinkage Allowances for Patterns.—The shrinkage allowance varies considerably for different materials. In casting accurate parts, experimental preliminary casting operations may be necessary to determine the required shrinkage allowance and possible effects of distortion. Shrinkage allowances, in inches per inch, usually average about 0.022 for steel, 0.012 for gray iron, 0.016 for brass, 0.012 to 0.022 for bronze, 0.014 for aluminum and magnesium alloys. (See also *Shrinkage* on page 1494.)

Casting Dimensions and Tolerances.—Generally, dimensions on investment castings can be held to ±0.005 in. and on specified dimensions to as low as ±0.002 in. Many factors, such as the grade of refractory used for the initial coating on the pattern, the alloy composition, and the pouring temperature, affect the cast surface finish. Surface discontinuities on the as-cast products therefore can range from 30–300 μin (0.76–7.6 μm) in height.

Investment Materials.—For investment casting of materials having low melting points, a mixture of plaster of Paris and powdered silica in water may be used to make the molds, the silica forming the refractory and the plaster acting as the binder. To cast materials having high melting points, the refractory may be changed to sillimanite, an alumina-silicate material having a low coefficient of expansion that is mixed with powdered silica as the binder. Powdered silica is then used as the binder. The interior surfaces of the mold are reproduced on the casting so, when fine finishes are needed, a first coating of fine sillimanite sand and a silicon ester such as ethyl silicate with a small amount of piperidine, is applied and built up to a thickness of about 0.06 in. (1.5 mm). This investment is covered with a coarser grade of refractory that acts to improve bonding with the main refractory coatings, before the back up coatings are applied.

With light castings, the invested material may be used as a shell, without further reinforcement. With heavy castings the shell is placed in a larger container which may be of thick waxed paper or card, and further slurry is poured around it to form a thicker mold of whatever proportions are needed to withstand the forces generated during pouring and solidification. After drying in air for several hours, the invested mold is passed through an oven where it is heated to a temperature high enough to cause the wax to run out. When pouring is to take place, the mold is pre-heated to between 700 and 1000°C (1292 and 1832°F), to get rid of any remaining wax, to harden the binder and prepare for pouring the molten alloy. Pouring metal into a hot mold helps to ensure complete filling of intricate details in the castings. Pouring may be done under gravity, under a vacuum under pressure, or with a centrifuge. When pressure is used, attention must be paid to mold permeability to ensure gases can escape as the metal enters the cavities.

Casting Operations.—The temperature of the flask for casting may range all the way from a chilled condition up to 2000°F (1093°C) or higher, depending upon the metal to be cast, the size and shape of the casting or cluster, and the desired metallurgical conditions. During casting, metals are nearly always subjected to centrifugal force vacuum, or other

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

pressure. The procedure is governed by the kind of alloy, the size of the investment cavity, and its contours or shape.

Investment Removal.—When the casting has solidified, the investment material is removed by destroying it. Some investments are soluble in water, but those used for ferrous castings are broken by using pneumatic tools, hammers, or by shot or abrasive blasting and tumbling to remove all particles. Gates, sprues, and runners may be removed from the castings by an abrasive cutting wheel or a band saw according to the shape of the cluster and machinability of the material.

Accuracy of Investment Castings.—The accuracy of precision investment castings may, in general, compare favorably with that of many machined parts. The overall tolerance varies with the size of the work, the kind of metal and the skill and experience of the operators. Under normal conditions, tolerances may vary from ±0.005 or ±0.006 inch per inch (or mm/mm), down to ±0.0015 to ±0.002 inch per inch (or mm/mm), and even smaller tolerances are possible on very small dimensions. Where tolerances applying to a lengthwise dimension must be smaller than would be normal for the casting process, the casting gate may be placed at one end to permit controlling the length by a grinding operation when the gate is removed.

Casting Weights and Sizes.—Investment castings may vary in weight from a fractional part of an ounce up to 75 lb (34 kg) or more. Although the range of weights representing the practice of different firms specializing in investment casting may vary from about ½ pound up to 10 or 20 lb (4.5 or 9.1 kg), a practical limit of 10 or 15 lb (4.5 or 6.8 kg) is common. The length of investment castings ordinarily does not exceed 12 or 15 in. (30 or 38 cm), but much longer parts may be cast. It is possible to cast sections having a thickness of only a few thousandths of an inch, but the preferred minimum thickness, as a general rule, is about 0.020 in. (0.50 mm) for alloys of high castability and 0.040 in. (1 mm) for alloys of low castability.

Design for Investment Casting.—As with most casting processes, best results from investment casting are achieved when uniform wall thicknesses between 0.040 and 0.375 in. (1 and 10 mm) are used for both cast components and channels forming runners in the mold. Gradual transition from thick to thin sections is also desirable. It is important that molten metal should not have to pass through a thin section to fill a thick part of the casting. Thin edges should be avoided because of the difficulty of producing them in the wax pattern. Fillets should be used in all internal corners to avoid stress concentrations that usually accompany sharp angles. Thermal contraction usually causes distortion of the casting, and should be allowed for if machining is to be minimized. Machining allowances vary from 0.010 in. (0.25 mm) on small, to 0.04 in. (1 mm) on large parts. With proper arrangement of castings in the mold, grain size and orientation can be controlled and directional solidification can often be used to advantage to ensure desired physical properties in the finished components.

Casting Milling Cutters by Investment Method.—Possible applications of precision investment casting in tool manufacture and in other industrial applications are indicated by its use in producing high-speed steel milling cutters of various forms and sizes. Removal of the risers, sand blasting to improve the appearance, and grinding the cutting edges are the only machining operations required. The bore is used as cast. Numerous tests have shown that the life of these cutters compares favorably with high-speed steel cutters made in the usual way.

Hard Mold Casting

Hard mold casting is permanent mold casting. Two halves of a mold are made from materials such as cast iron, steel, bronze, graphite, or refractory metal alloys. The mold cavity and gating system are machined into the mold and become an integral part of it.

To produce castings with internal cavities, cores made of metal or sand aggregate are placed in the mold prior to casting. Typical core materials are oil-bonded or resin-bonded sand, plaster, graphite, gray iron, low-carbon steel, and hot-work die steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To increase life of permanent molds, surfaces of the mold cavity usually are coated with refractory slurry (such as sodium silicate and clay) or sprayed with graphite every few castings. These coatings also serve as parting agents, as well as thermal barriers, controlling the rate of cooling of the casting.

The molds are clamped together by mechanical means and heated to about 302–392°F (150–200°C) to facilitate metal flow and reduce thermal damage to the dies due to high temperature gradients. Then molten metal is poured through the gating system. After solidification, the molds are opened, and the casting is removed. Water or fins may be used in cooling the mold, and mechanical ejectors may be needed for removal of complex castings.

Hard mold casting is used mostly for aluminum, magnesium, copper alloys, and gray iron because of their generally lower melting points. Steels also can be cast using graphite or heat-resistant metal molds. This process produces castings with good surface finish, close dimensional tolerances, and uniform and good mechanical properties, and supports high production rates. Typical parts made are automotive pistons, cylinder heads, connecting rods, gear blanks for appliances, and kitchenware.

Vacuum Casting

Vacuum permanent mold casting (not to be confused with vacuum molding) is similar to low-pressure permanent mold casting, except for the step of filling the mold. In this case, molten metal is sucked upward into the mold by a vacuum pump (Fig. 10).

The permanent mold is enclosed in an airtight bell housing with two openings: the sprue at the bottom, through which molten metal enters the mold, and the vacuum outlet at the top. The sprue opening is submerged below the surface of the molten metal, and the vacuum is drawn within the housing, creating a pressure differential between the mold cavity and the molten metal in the crucible. This pressure differential causes the molten metal to flow up the sprue and into the mold cavity, where it solidifies. The mold is removed from the housing and opened, and the casting is ejected.

By controlling the vacuum, the pressure differential between the mold cavity and the molten metal can be varied, allowing for different fill rates necessitated by certain part designs and gating requirements. This results in tight control of the fill rate, which directly influences soundness of the casting. Because the sprue opening is submerged beneath the surface of the molten metal, only pure alloy, free from oxides and dross, can enter the die cavity. This helps to produce clean, sound castings with minimal foreign materials that detract from strength, appearance, and machinability. With proper part and mold design, this process can greatly reduce or eliminate issues such as voids, shrinks, and gas pockets in critical areas. Typical parts made by vacuum casting include vacuum pump covers, turbine wheels, intake manifolds, and train accessories.

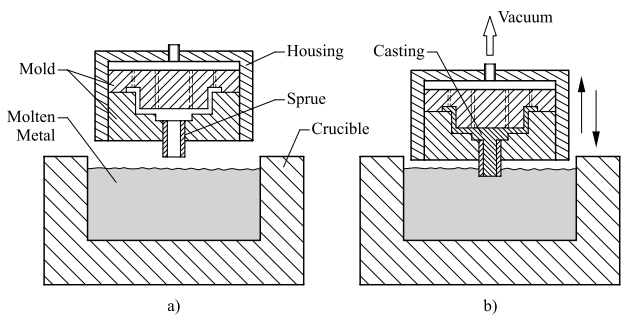


Fig. 10. Vacuum Casting Process a) Before Flow Up of Molten Metal into Cavity; b) After Flow Up of Molten Metal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Slush Casting

Slush casting is a traditional method of permanent mold casting process in which the molten metal is not allowed to completely solidify in the mold. When the desired thickness is obtained, the remaining molten metal is poured out. This permanent mold casting process can be used to create hollow castings with thin walls, based on the principle that a solidified skin develops first in a casting and becomes thicker with time.

A disadvantage of slush casting is that the casting internal geometry cannot be effectively controlled. But good surface finish and accurate external geometry are possible. Suitable for small production runs, slush casting generally is used for making ornamental and decorative objects, including lamp bases and stems, and toys from metals with low melting temperatures, such as zinc, tin, and lead alloys.

The sequence of operations in slush casting is as follows:

1) The molten metal is poured into the metal mold.

2) After the desired thickness of the solidified skin is obtained, the mold is inverted, and the remaining molten metal is poured out.

3) Upon solidification and cooling, the mold halves are opened, and the casting is removed.

Pressure Casting

Another variation of permanent mold casting is pressure casting, also known in industry as *low-pressure casting* or *pressure pouring* (Fig. 11). Instead of pouring molten metal into the mold and gravity distributing it throughout the mold, pressure casting uses air (gas) pressure to force the liquid metal through the gating system and the metal casting's cavity.

As in other permanent mold methods, the mold needs to be able to open and close for removal of the workpiece, so complicated casting geometry is limited. However, since the refractory tube is submerged in the molten metal and the metal drawn up into the casting comes from well below the surface, the risk of gas entrapment in the metal and oxidation are greatly reduced. The sequence of operations in pressure casting is as follows:

1) The molten metal is forced upward by gas pressure into the graphite or metal mold through the refractory tube, using an overpressure by air of about 12 to 15 psi (0.08 to 0.1 MPa).

2) Pressure is maintained until the metal has solidified completely in the mold.

Pressure casting can be used to produce metal castings with superior mechanical properties, good surface finish, and close dimensional accuracy. High setup costs make pressure casting inefficient for mass runs, but excellent productivity rates make it suitable for batch manufacture. This process can be used to cast high-quality manufactured parts. Steel castings, such as railroad car wheels, often are cast in graphite molds using this method.

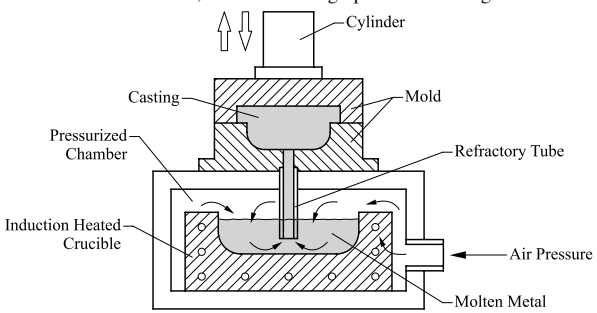


Fig. 11. Low-Pressure Casting Process

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Die Casting

Die casting is a commonly used type of permanent mold casting process used for producing many components of home appliances, such as stoves, fans, washing machines, dryers, refrigerators; various kinds of motors; toys; and hand tools. Die casting molds, commonly called *dies*, are expensive and require significant lead time to fabricate. However, surface finish and tolerance of die cast parts are so good that there is almost no post-processing required. There are two common types of die casting: hot- and cold-chamber die casting.

Advantages of Die Casting: Depending on the casting material, excellent dimensional accuracy can be achieved—typically within 0.005 in. for the first inch (0.127 mm for the first 25 cm) and 0.002 in. for each additional inch (0.051 mm for additional 25 cm). Compared with sand and permanent mold casting, parts can have thinner walls (approximately 0.030 in. or 0.76 mm). Inserts, such as threaded inserts, heating elements, and high-strength bearing surfaces, can be cast in. Casting tensile strength may be as high 60 ksi (414 MPa). Smooth cast surfaces of 40–100 µin (1–2.5 µm) Ra reduce or eliminate secondary machining operations. And rapid production rates can be achieved.

Disadvantages of Die Casting: Both the casting equipment required and the die components are very costly, so large production volume is needed to make this process economical. The process is limited to high-fluidity metals. Casting weight must be under 24 in. (600 mm) in size and weight between 1 oz (28 g) and 20 lb (9 kg). Parts that need to be hardened and tempered cannot be cast in dies.

Another consideration of the standard die casting process is that the final casting will have a small amount of porosity. This does not accommodate heat treatment or welding, because heat causes gas in the pores to expand, which causes micro-cracks inside the part and exfoliation of the surface. Thus, a related disadvantage of die casting is that it is only suitable for parts in which softness is acceptable.

Hot-Chamber Process.—Hot-chamber die casting is one of the two main techniques in the manufacturing process of die casting. A characteristic common to both die casting processes is the use of high pressure to force molten metal through a mold. Advantageous characteristics of manufacturing by die casting, such as a smooth casting surface, can be attributed to the use of pressure to ensure the flow of metal through the die. In hot-chamber die casting (Fig. 12), the die is attached to the casting machine and an integral part of the casting equipment.

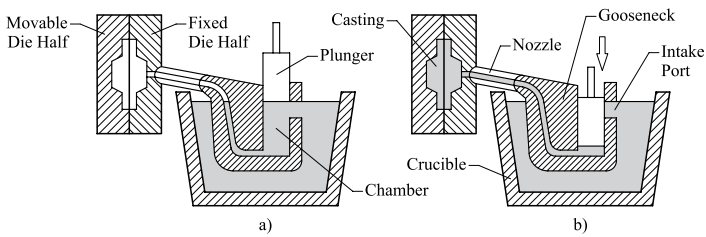


Fig. 12. Hot-Chamber Die Casting Process: a) Die Is Closed, Plunger Is in Contact with Molten Metal in Start Position; b) Plunger Forces Metal in Chamber to Flow into Die Cavity, Maintaining Pressure During Solidification; After Plunger Is Withdrawn, Die Is Opened, and Casting Is Ejected

The hydraulic cylinder of the casting machine over the plunger rod provides power to the plunger, which is in contact with the molten metal. At the start of the casting cycle, the plunger is at the top of the hot chamber. As the cycle begins, the hot chamber is filled with liquid metal through the intake port. When the casting machine's hydraulic cylinder forces the plunger downward, it travels past the intake port, cutting off the flow of molten metal to the hot chamber and ensuring the correct amount of molten metal is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

in the chamber to fill the cavity of the mold. In preparation for the next cycle of casting, the plunger travels back upward and opens the intake port in the hot chamber, again allowing the chamber to fill with molten metal. Hot-chamber die casting has a high rate of productivity.

Typical materials used in hot-chamber die casting are zinc, lead, and magnesium alloys and other low melting alloys. Common applications of hot-chamber die casting parts include housings with thin walls, often requiring many ribs.

Cold-Chamber Process.—Cold-chamber die casting is a permanent mold casting process. Large, robust machines are used to exert the great clamping force necessary to hold the mold closed against very high pressure during the manufacturing process. A metal cold chamber is located at the entrance of the mold. A piston is connected to this chamber, which, in turn, is connected to a power cylinder. At the start of the process, the correct amount of molten metal for a single part is poured into the shot chamber from an external source holding the metal for the cast.

When the power cylinder forces the piston forward in the chamber, it cuts off the intake port. The piston forward forces molten metal into the casting mold cavity with high pressure, which is maintained during solidification. After solidification, the pressure is released, the mold is opened, and the casting is removed using ejector pins.

In comparison with hot-chamber die casting, cold-chamber die casting uses higher pressure to force molten metal into the die cavity. Pressures as high as 3000–50000 psi (21 MPa–345 MPa) may be used. Fig. 13 illustrates the cold-chamber die casting process.

Cold-chamber die casting is ideal for metals with high melting points and corrosive properties, such as aluminum alloys and other alloys with high melting points. This process is used for several automobile components, including pistons, cylinder heads, and engine blocks. Other common die cast parts are propellers, gears, bushings, pumps, and valves.

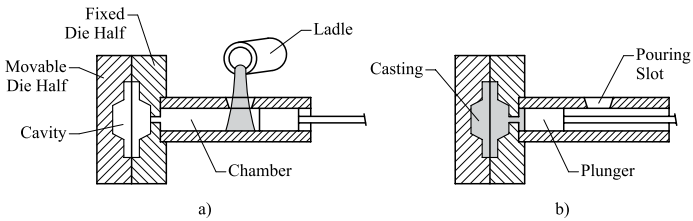


Fig. 13. Cold-Chamber Die Casting Process: a) Die is Closed, Plunger Withdrawn, and Molten Metal is Poured into Chamber; b) Plunger Forces Metal in Chamber to Flow into Die Cavity, Maintaining Pressure During Solidification; After Plunger is Withdrawn, Die is Opened, and Casting is Ejected

Centrifugal Casting

As the name suggests, this process involves using a centrifugal force (high-velocity spinning action) to exert pressure on molten metal as it is poured into a die. The die can be set to spinning on a horizontal or vertical axis, depending on the structure required. Usually, a horizontal axis machine is used for long, thin cylinders, and vertical axis machines are used for rings.

This method of casting, also known as liquid forging, is used to manufacture high-integrity cylindrical components, and therefore is a technology of choice for pipes, tube, bearings, rolls, bushes, ball valves, and cylinder liners. Notably, it is used to cast cylinder liners and sleeve valves for piston engines, parts that cannot reliably be manufactured otherwise. Wall thickness of parts can be varied to suit specific needs; this thickness is controlled by the amount of molten metal that is poured, making the centrifugal casting system highly flexible to individual requirements.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

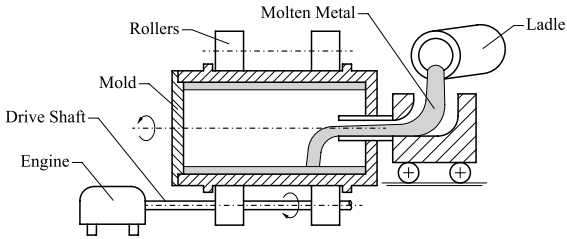


Fig. 14. True Centrifugal Casting

There are numerous advantages of centrifugal casting. The force used to distribute the molten metal as it is poured is so strong that it displaces lighter oxides and impurities to the center of the hollow cylinder; it is then easy to remove these impurities during machining. Blowholes, sand residue, hard spots, cavities, and porosity are virtually eliminated, and the resulting uniformity means machining time and material waste are significantly reduced. Due to the finer grain and denser structure of parts cast with centrifugal force, the part's usage life, endurance, and ability to withstand impact without fracturing are increased. The centrifugal process also allows economical production of a wide range of sizes, shapes, and quantities.

Thus, centrifugal casting produces quality parts, reduces manufacturing costs, and provides production flexibility. There are three types of centrifugal casting: true centrifugal casting, semicentrifugal casting, and centrifuge casting.

True Centrifugal Casting.—In this technique, molten metal is poured into a rotating mold. The axis of rotation usually is horizontal but can be vertical for short workpieces. (One setup is illustrated in Fig. 14.) Molds are made of steel, iron, or graphite and may be coated with a refractory lining to increase mold life. Mold surfaces can be shaped so that pipes with various external designs can be cast. Cylindrical parts ranging from 0.6 in. to 10 ft. (15 mm to 3 m) in diameter and 52 ft. (16 m) in length can be cast centrifugally, with wall thicknesses ranging from 0.24 to 5 in. (6 to 127 mm).

True centrifugal casting produces parts of good quality, dimensional accuracy, and external surface detail; better mechanical properties can be achieved than in conventional static casting. Non-metallic impurities segregate toward the bore and can be machined off. There is less loss of metal as compared with conventional sand casting. The casting is relatively free from defects, there are no parting lines, and production rates are high. This process is used to produce hollow cylindrical parts, such as pipes, gun barrels, bushings, bearing rings, and streetlamp posts; bimetallic tubes can be made.

Consider how fast the mold must rotate in horizontal centrifugal casting for the process to work successfully. Centrifugal force acting on a rotating body is defined by the following equation:

$$F_c = \frac{mv^2}{R} \tag{9}$$

where F_c = centrifugal force; m = mass; v = velocity; and R = inside radius of the mold.

Gravitational force is its weight:

$$F_g = mg \tag{10}$$

where F_g = gravitation force; m = mass; and g = acceleration of gravity.

Velocity v can be expressed as:

$$v = \frac{2\pi RN}{60} = \frac{\pi RN}{30} \tag{11}$$

where N = rotation speed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The G-factor is the ratio of centrifugal force divided by gravitation force:

$$GF = \frac{F_c}{F_g} = \frac{mv^2}{R \cdot mg} = \frac{v^2}{Rg} \tag{12}$$

where GF = gravitation factor.

Solving further, we get:

$$N = \frac{30}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{2gGF}{D}} = 42.3\sqrt{\frac{GF}{D}} \tag{13}$$

where D = inside diameter of the mold.

If the G-factor is too low in centrifugal casting, the liquid metal will not remain forced against the mold wall during the upper half of the circular path but will drop inside the cavity. Too high a speed results in excessive stresses and hot tears in the outside surface of the casting. On an empirical basis, GF = 50 to 100 for a metal mold, and GF = 25 to 50 for a sand cast mold.

Semicentrifugal Casting.—During semicentrifugal casting (Fig. 15), the mold is rotated around its axis of symmetry. The molds used can be permanent or expendable and may contain cores. The detailed shape is given by the shape cavity of the rotating mold. The mold is designed with risers in the center to supply the feed metal.

Centrifugal force is utilized for refilling of melt metal, increase of the filling power in order to cast parts with thin walls, and slag separation. In general, the rotational speed is lower than speeds used in true centrifugal casting—usually it is set so that a G-factor of around 15 is obtained. As this process produces parts in which the central zone (near the axis of rotation) usually has inclusion defects, it is suitable only for parts where these can be machined away, such as cogwheels.

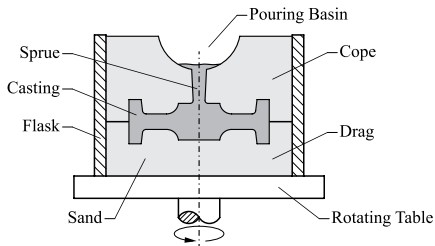


Fig. 15. Semicentrifugal Casting

Centrifuge Casting.—The third type of centrifugal casting, centrifuge casting (see Fig. 16) involves molds arranged about the central sprue at the same distance from the center of the axis of rotation. These molds contain all necessary geometry for the cast part, as well as the gating system. During the pouring phase, molten metal is introduced into the central sprue and then travels via runners to the entrance of each mold.

When an object is rotated, force is produced that acts directly away from the center of the axis of rotation. As the centrifuge spins, centrifugal force pushes the metal outward from the center, through the runners into the molds. Once the correct amount of molten metal for the casting is poured and distributed into the molds, the apparatuses continue to rotate while solidification occurs. After the castings have completely solidified, the apparatuses will stop rotating, and the parts can be removed.

Use of centrifugal force helps controls specific properties of the cast parts. The method is extensively used for casting smaller parts, including casting gold crowns for teeth in the dental industry.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

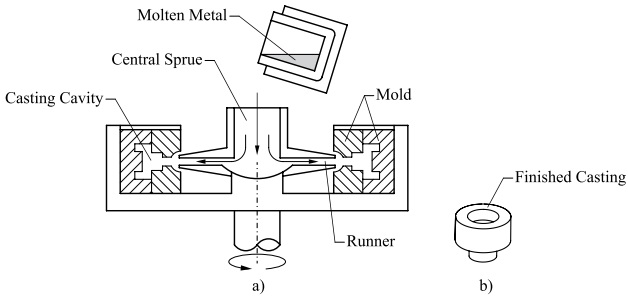


Fig. 16. Centrifuge Casting: a) Mold; b) Final Casting

Squeeze Casting

Squeeze casting (Fig. 17) combines casting and forging technologies. In contrast to other casting techniques in which a molten metal is poured or injected into the mold cavity after the two parts of the mold are assembled, a squeeze casting mold is closed *after* a portion of molten metal has been poured into the preheated bottom die. The applied pressure and instant contact of the molten metal with the die surface produce a rapid heat transfer condition that yields a pore-free, fine-grain casting with mechanical properties approaching those of a wrought product. Squeeze casting is easily automated to produce near-net to net shape high-quality components.

Because of the high pressure applied during solidification, porosities caused by both gas and shrinkage can be prevented or eliminated. The cooling rate of the casting can be increased by applying high pressure during solidification, since that contact between the casting and the die is improved by pressurization, which results in the formation of fine-grained structures.

With the current emphasis on reducing materials consumption through virtually net shape processing and the demand for higher-strength parts for weight savings, the emergence of squeeze casting as a production process has given materials and process engineers an alternative to traditional approaches to casting and forging. By pressurizing liquid metals while they solidify, near-net shapes can be achieved in sound, dense castings. Squeeze casting is simple and economical, efficient in its use of raw material, has excellent potential for automated operation at high rates of production, and achieves the highest mechanical properties attainable in a cast product. The microstructural refinement and integrity of squeeze cast products are desirable for many critical applications.

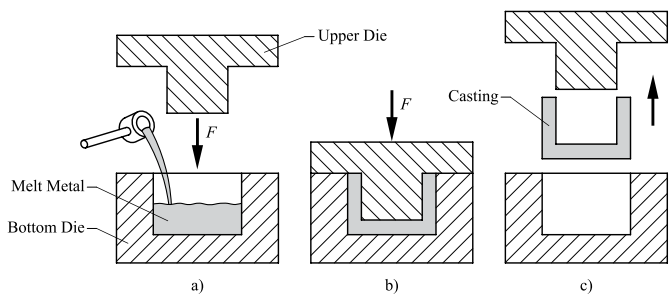


Fig. 17. Sequence of Operations in Squeeze Casting Process: a) Pouring Molten Metal in Die; b) Closing Die and Applying Pressure; c) Casting Ejecting

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The origins of squeeze casting can be traced back to squeeze forming, which is a process structured in three phases:

1) Pouring a known amount of molten metal in a preheated die cavity placed at a lower plate of a press.

2) Closing the die, pressurizing the liquid metal, and maintaining the pressure until complete solidification.

3) Casting ejecting and handling are done in much the same way as in closed die forging.

As shown in Fig. 17, squeeze casting consists of liquid metal entering a preheated, lubricated die and pressurizing the metal while it solidifies. The load is applied shortly after the metal begins to set and is maintained until the entire casting has solidified. A number of variables can be controlled to influence the soundness of the castings.

Design Considerations for Casting

When designing cast metal components, several characteristics are inherent in the pouring and solidification of the alloy and its interaction with the mold. These characteristics define the parameters within which the designer can work and affect the casting method chosen, design of casting sections and junctions between sections, surface integrity and appearance, internal integrity of the cast alloy, and dimensional accuracy.

Carefully planned casting geometry allows the foundry to work with the known pouring and solidification characteristics to produce high-quality castings that perform to required specifications, while avoiding costly and time-consuming problems. By understanding the interaction between casting geometry, the material (in both liquid and solid forms), and the casting process, design engineers can anticipate and avoid many iterations to their product design that could otherwise interfere with and delay progress of a project. The following geometry/material/process interactions dictate good casting design.

Fluid Life: This refers to the liquid characteristics of the material that give it the ability to flow freely throughout the mold, along narrow sections and into fine surface detail. Fluid life depends on temperature and the unique chemical and metallurgical properties of each metal. At least in part, it determines minimum wall thickness and how long a thin section can be. So, the designer's choice of alloy, with its associated fluid life, will dictate certain structural and aesthetic elements of the design.

Solidification Shrinkage: As molten metal cools, shrinkage occurs in three distinct stages: liquid shrinkage, liquid-to-solid shrinkage, and solid shrinkage. Solid shrinkage is the continued shrinkage that occurs as the metal casting cools to ambient temperature in its solid state. Known as "patternmaker's shrinkage," it must be compensated for within the tooling or mold design to ensure that specified final overall dimensions are achieved.

Slag/Dross Formation: Some metals are more susceptible to slag and dross formation than others, so are more likely to have small, rounded, non-metallic inclusions within the casting. Design, along with quality and process control, can reduce the quantity and effect of inclusions. Where buoyant slag/dross is likely, a designer may ensure that important surfaces or those to be machined sit low in the mold. With awareness of the likelihood of slag/dross formation for a specific alloy, the foundry engineer can set up the running system (sprues, runners, and gates) to minimize oxidation caused by turbulent flow or entrained air.

Pouring Temperature: Pouring temperature can have a significant effect, particularly when the molten metal approaches the mold material's refractory limit. It is important to note that the concentration of heat in one area can cause problems even with some lower temperature alloys. Better geometry design can help heat dissipate into the mold and alleviate such issues.

Fluid Flow: Designers should take in account the flow rate of molten metal entering the mold and issues this can cause. A balance needs to be struck between the need to get

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the alloy into the mold quickly to avoid oxidization and dross formation, while avoiding turbulence, wall erosion, and core displacement that can occur at higher fluid speeds. Although not altogether preventable in the manufacturing process, turbulence can be reduced by using a gating system that promotes a more laminar flow of the liquid metal. Turbulence caused by sharp corners and abrupt changes in sections within the casting may be mitigated by employing radii (Fig. 18).

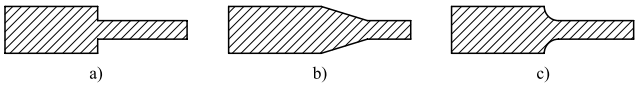


Fig. 18. Design Modification to Avoid Abrupt Changes in Sections within Metal Casting: a) Incorrect; b) and c) Correct

The designer also must be aware that fluid flow can introduce unacceptable thermal gradients, particularly if metal flows around a core and rejoins elsewhere in the mold. Designing the casting geometry and running system at the same time can help identify and eradicate these issues.

Heat Transfer Considerations: Management of heat within a mold is an important part of the geometry design. At high pouring temperatures, considerable heat must be transferred into the mold in a way that avoids creation of localized hot spots, where the heat cannot efficiently dissipate. This can occur on narrow peninsulas or tight corners, where molten metal surrounds thin areas of the mold. The retained heat slows solidification in that area that can lead to hot tears or pulls—particularly if the geometry design has introduced stress buildup during solid shrinkage, as the softer metal in the hot spot will have lower tensile strength.

As mentioned earlier, directional solidification is important to the manufacture of a part during the metal casting process, in order to ensure that no area of the casting is cut off from the flow of liquid material before it solidifies. To achieve directional solidification within the casting, it is important to control the flow of molten metal and the solidification rate of the different areas of the metal casting. Regulation of thermal gradients is key.

Sometimes there is an area of a metal casting that needs to solidify at a faster rate to ensure proper directional solidification. Planning sections effectively and regulating flow rates within the mold may not be sufficient. To accelerate solidification of a particular section, it may be necessary to employ the use of chills, which act as heat sinks, increasing the cooling rate in the vicinity where they are placed.

Chills are solid geometric shapes of material, manufactured for this purpose. Chills are of two basic types. Internal chills are located inside the mold cavity and usually are made of the same material as the casting. When the metal solidifies, internal chills are fused into the metal casting itself. External chills are located just outside the casting. They are made of a material that can remove heat from the metal casting faster than the surrounding mold material. Possible materials for external chills include iron, copper, and graphite. Fig. 19 demonstrates the use of the two types of chills to solve a hot-spot problem in cross and T junctions.

Designers should remember that thermal inequalities also can occur in the opposite direction if a sharp corner is surrounded by mold material. In this case, rather than a hot spot forming, the area will cool rapidly, which can cause cold cracking and other issues.

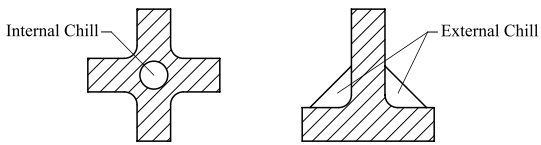


Fig. 19. Two Types of Chills: a) Cross Junction with Internal Chill; b) "T" Junction with External Chill

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

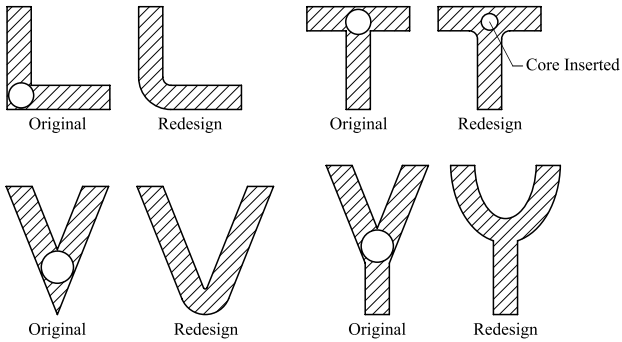


Fig. 20. Redesigned Casting Parts to Avoid Hot Spot and Fillet

Joint Design Consideration.—The design of a junction in a casting can cause shrinkage cavities to form. In Fig. 20, L, T, V, and Y junctions are shown. The thickness of the casting here is consistent, though at the center of the junction, there is an area where the casting's solidification is slower than the rest of the junction. These hot spots, circled in the figure, are located such that the material around them, which will undergo solidification first, will cut off the hot spots from the flow of molten metal.

The flow of casting material must be carefully considered when manufacturing such junctions. If there is flexibility in the design of the casting, the designer may want to think about redesigning the junction. Some possible design alternatives are shown in Fig. 20 that should reduce formation of hot spots and shrinkage porosity.

Location of the Parting Line.—A parting line in industrial casting of molds is the borderline in which draft angles change direction. That is, it is the dividing line that splits the core and cavity halves of a molded part and is sometimes a starting point for the mold parting surface. In engineering drawings, a parting line is often abbreviated as PL; ASME's Y14.8 standard specifies a symbol.

The parting line of a casting must be determined early in the design processes. In deciding on its location, the part designer and die cast engineer should work together to consider its influence on part functionality, draft angle, wall thickness, metal flow, casting integrity, and tolerances. Often, it is useful to have most geometry in the ejector half; this prevents the casting from sticking in the cover half. Cosmetic surfaces typically are placed on the cover side.

Gates, overflows, and vents will connect to the casting at the parting line. Also, flash will form at the parting line when the pressure from the injected metal tries to force the die halves apart. During the trimming process, the gates, overflows, vents, and flash will have to be removed by the trim die; a well-designed parting line will ease the trimming process.

When flash occurs, it increases the thickness of the parting line, altering dimensions measured across this line. For critical dimensions, it is important to have measurements in only one die half to reduce dimensional tolerance.

The parting line also can affect the life of the die. Metal injected straight onto a surface will erode that surface faster. Designating a parting line that follows the contours of the design and so that metal will flow more smoothly helps to optimize die life, casting quality, and aesthetics of a die cast part.

Since parting lines will be noticeable as a bump on the surface of the part, they should not be located on a sliding surface. Similarly, parting lines should not be located on a sealing surface, where a bump or mismatch would prevent the seal from making complete

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

contact. The placement of the parting line and orientation of the part determine the number of cores needed, and it is preferable to avoid using cores when possible.

Location and Design of a Gating System.—The gating system must be designed to accomplish extremely careful transport of the liquid metal to the mold cavity. Gating system location is defined based on the geometry of the mold, method of casting, and economic aspects. The gating system includes the pouring cup, sprue, risers, runners, and gates. Fig. 21 shows a schematic illustration of a typical gating system in gravity casting.

Pouring Cup Design: At the top of the sprue, a *pouring cup* or *pouring basin* is often used to minimize splash and turbulence as metal flows into the sprue. The design of the pouring cup, for an optimal casting process, needs to be such that it can keep the sprue full of molten metal throughout the pour. A constant level of molten metal in the pouring cup is important for a successful casting process; also, if the level of molten metal is maintained in the pouring cup during pouring, then any dross will float and will not enter the mold cavity.

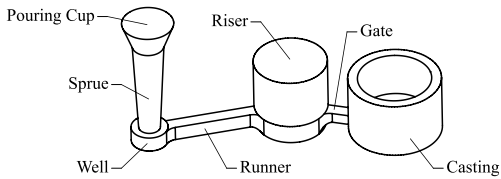


Fig. 21. Typical Riser-Gated Casting

Sprue Design: The design of the pouring cup and sprue can affect turbulence. For best results, these should be designed so that the sprue is kept full of molten metal throughout pour. A sprue tapered to a smaller size at its bottom will create a choke, which will help keep the sprue full of molten metal. If a non-tapered sprue is used, a choke can be added when making the runners; it is necessary to have the choke as close as possible to the bottom of the sprue.

A choke also will increase the speed of the molten metal, which is undesirable. To address this problem, an enlarged area at the bottom of the sprue, called a *sprue base,* can be added to decrease the speed of the molten metal. There are two basic types of sprue bases, *enlargement* and *well*. The general rules of thumb for enlargement bases are: the diameter is roughly 2.5 times the width of the runners; the depth is equal to the depth of the runners. The general rules for well bases are: the depth of a well base is twice that of the runners; the cross-sectional area of the base is 5 times the cross-sectional area of the sprue. The bottom of the sprue base should be flat, not rounded like a bowl, or it will cause turbulence in the metal.

Runner Design: One of the most important things to keep in mind when designing runners and gates is to avoid sharp edges. Any changes in direction or cross-sectional area should make use of rounded corners. Also make sure the runners and gates are well rammed and smooth; this helps avoid sand erosion and turbulence.

To ensure that metal is not flowing too fast in the runners, the cross-sectional area of the runners should be greater than the area of the choke. And the walls of the runners should be as smooth as possible to avoid causing turbulence. The runners should be filled with metal before the gates; one way to ensure this happens is to put the runners in the drag and the gates in the cope. If a choke is needed in the runner to restrict flow, it should be at least 6 in. (152 mm) from the first gate. The cross-sectional area of runners should decrease as the gates come off them to keep the same gating ratio.

For example, a good gating ratio for aluminum is 1:4:4. The 1 is the cross-sectional area of the choke; the first 4 is the total cross-sectional area of the runners (measured after the choke but before the first gate); and the final 4 is total cross-sectional area of the gates. For example, for a tapered sprue with an exit area of 0.5 in^2 (322 mm^2) and two runners with

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

two gates from each runner, the total runner area should be 2 in^2 (1290 mm^2), so that each runner would be 1 in^2 (645 mm^2). The total gate area should be 2 in^2 (1290 mm^2), and there are four gates, so each gate would have an area of 0.5 in^2 (322 mm^2). The gate calculation only works this way if there are an equal number of gates on each runner; if not, divide the area of the runner by the number of gates on that runner to get the area of each gate.

The area of the runners should be reduced just after a gate by an amount equal to the area of that gate. This ensures that each gate in the system will have the same flow of metal, even if it is farther from the sprue. The first bit of metal poured is most likely to be contaminated by air and sand entrapment. A runner extension can be used to prevent this metal from going into the mold cavity; this extension will have the same area as that of the last gate on that runner.

Riser Design: Risers are important to ensure a flow of molten metal to the part being cast as it is starting to solidify. Basically, a riser is a vertical portion of the gating system (similar to a straight sprue) that stores the molten metal until it is needed by the casting.

As molten metal solidifies, it shrinks. If it does not have a source of more molten metal to feed it as it shrinks, there will be defects in casting; a riser's purpose is to provide that extra molten metal. This means the metal in the riser must stay liquid longer than metal in the part being cast. Without a riser, heavier parts of the casting will have shrinkage defects, either on the surface or internally.

A riser may be required for every hot spot in a cast part. (In other words, the part of the casting that solidifies last, usually an area with a larger volume of metal.) The risers can be attached to the top or the side of a part. They also may be *blind risers*, which are completely contained in the mold and not open to the air; blind risers cool slower and thus will stay liquid longer. No matter where it is located, any gate that connects a riser to the casting must not be too small; however, it should be as short as possible (preferably half the diameter of the riser), else the material in the gate will solidify too soon and prevent metal in the riser from reaching the casting.

Risers may be upstream from the casting in the runner/gate system. In this case, the metal must flow through the riser prior to reaching the casting. After the pour is completed, the metal in the riser will be hotter than the metal in the casting.

Risers also may be placed downstream, after the casting. Metal flows through the casting to get to the riser, so the metal in the riser will be cooler than the metal in the casting. This could cause a problem if the metal in the casting feeds the riser as it cools.

It is necessary for the metal in the riser to solidify last. Since the more surface area something has, the faster it cools, the surface area of the riser should be minimized for a given volume. The optimum shape for a riser would be a sphere, but that is not an easy shape to mold; next best is a cylinder, which is easier. Ideally, the cylinder's height should be somewhere between one-half and one-and-a-half times the diameter. If possible, the bottom (and top if it is a blind riser) should be spherical or bowl-shaped to help the metal stay molten longer.

Using Computer Modeling to Optimize Casting Processes

In today's global manufacturing environment, time is money. Casting buyers want foundries to deliver quality cast components with short lead times, regardless of the number of steps in the component's production cycle. To this end, foundries must take a greater role in the initial design of cast components, as well as gating/riser design. The one tool that has become indispensable to foundries when working with their customers to achieve an optimized casting design with minimal lead times is computer modeling. Using solid models, finite element and fatigue analysis, and casting process modeling, foundry workers can make numerous no-cost design revisions on the computer screen.

For most foundries, computer modeling focuses on casting process modeling. This analysis ensures proper mold filling and solidification of the component. However, as foundries have begun to embrace casting process modeling, uses of this analytic tool have expanded.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Modeling Optimization at Design Conception.—Some foundries become involved in the design of cast components at conception. In such cases, the foundry is able to optimize a cast component's structure and manufacturability from the beginning of the process, instead of reengineering later in the process. Two computer-aided engineering analysis methods used to optimize the structure of cast components and process of metal casting from conception are topology optimization and multidisciplinary response surface optimization. Both methods utilize casting modeling as the foundation for design iterations.

Topology Optimization: This method of layout optimization is most effectively employed in early stages of the design process, ideally at the start. In topology, the only input required is a layout of the package space, a definition of the loads and constraints on the structure, and a mass target. The optimization process starts with a uniform topology (uniform mass distribution) and then modifies the topology to minimize the compliance of the structure. In other words, the mass is moved around in the package structure to achieve the stiffest design for a given mass target. Multiple loading conditions can be input, as well as weighing factors.

Topology optimization can quickly provide information to the design engineer as to the optimal layout of the mass, before concept designs are even developed. This can reduce the number of iterations significantly during design, since optimal part configuration will be known in the beginning. If used on existing designs, the process may be used to reduce structural weight and optimize performance while maintaining mass.

Multidisciplinary Response Surface Optimization: This optimization method is used in the conceptual design stage to ensure manufacturability of design. Using solidification modeling, it can increase the quality of casting and productivity of foundries. The steps involved are:

1) Set up the optimization problem, including the definition of the baseline problem and a description of the component geometry (finite element, finite difference mesh, material properties, etc.).

2) Define process variables and constraints, including fill rates, mold temperatures, etc.

3) Define shape variables and constraints.

4) Define the objective function (such as minimizing porosity or solidification time)—the key to optimization.

5) Set the input parameters, including a solidification modeling input deck.

6) Submit the analysis to the solver system (software) and perform an initial run.

7) Compare the results of this analysis with the objective function.

In the last step, if the convergence criteria for the objective function are met, the result will be an optimized process. If the criteria are not met, the process will repeat itself. The optimization software then will reconfigure the input and launch a new analysis. The software controls the input of the analysis each time after checking the results of the previous run. The greater the number of variables, the greater number of iterations are required.

The goal of computer modeling is to make the casting right the first time. By first making design changes on a computer, foundries save time and production costs. As the demand for shorter lead times continues, foundries taking the "cast and see" approach without computer modeling analysis will find it difficult to compete.

Extrusion of Metals

Extrusion is a metalworking process used to produce long, straight semifinished products such as bars, tubes, solid and hollow sections, wire and strips by squeezing a solid slug of metal, either cast or wrought, from a closed container through a die. An analogy to the process is the dispensing of toothpaste from a collapsible tube.

During extrusion, compressive and shear, but no tensile, forces are developed in the stock, thus allowing the material to be heavily deformed without fracturing. The extrusion

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

process can be performed at either room or high temperature, depending on the alloy and method. Cross sections of varying complexity can also be produced, depending on the materials and dies used.

In the specially constructed presses used for extrusion, the load is transmitted by a ram through an intermediate dummy block to the stock. The press container is usually fitted with a wear-resistant liner and is constructed to withstand high radial loads. The die stack consists of the die, die holder, and die backer, all of which are supported in the press end housing or platen, which resists the axial loads.

The following are characteristics of different extrusion methods and presses:

1) The movement of the extrusion relative to the ram. In "direct extrusion," the ram is advanced toward the die stack; in "indirect extrusion," the die moves down the container bore
2) The position of the press axis, which is either horizontal or vertical
3) The type of drive, which is either hydraulic or mechanical
4) The method of load application, which is either conventional or hydrostatic

In forming a hollow extrusion, such as a tube, a mandrel integral with the ram is pushed through the previously pierced raw billet.

Cold Extrusion: Cold extrusion has often been considered a separate process from hot extrusion; however, the only real difference is that cold or only slightly warm billets are used as starting stock. Cold extrusion is not limited to certain materials; the only limiting factor is the stresses in the tooling. In addition to the soft metals such as lead and tin, aluminum alloys, copper, zirconium, titanium, molybdenum, beryllium, vanadium, niobium, and steel can be extruded cold or at low deformation temperatures. Cold extrusion has many advantages, such as no oxidation or gas/metal reactions; high mechanical properties due to cold-working if the heat of deformation does not initiate recrystallization; narrow tolerances; good surface finish if optimum lubrication is used; fast extrusion speeds can be used with alloys subject to hot shortness. Examples of cold extruded parts are collapsible tubes, aluminum cans, fire extinguisher cases, shock absorber cylinders, automotive pistons, and gear blanks.

Hot Extrusion: Most hot extrusion is performed in horizontal hydraulic presses rated in size from 250 to 12,000 tons. The extrusions are long pieces of uniform cross sections, but complex cross sections are also produced. Most types of alloys can be hot extruded.

Owing to the temperatures and pressures encountered in hot extrusion, the major problems are the construction and the preservation of the equipment. The following are approximate temperature ranges used to extrude various types of alloys:

magnesium, 650–850°F (343–454°C)	aluminum, 650–900°F (343–482°C)	copper, 1200–2000°F (649–1093°C)
steel, 2200–2400°F (1204–1316°C)	titanium, 1300–2100°F (704–1149°C)	
refractory alloys, up to 4000°F (2204°C).	nickel 1900–2200°F (1038–1204°C)	

In addition, pressures range from as low as 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) to over 100,000 psi (690 MPa). Therefore, lubrication and protection of the chamber, ram, and die are generally required. The use of oil and graphite mixtures is often sufficient at the lower temperatures; while at higher temperatures, glass powder, which becomes a molten lubricant, is used.

Extrusion Applications: The stress conditions in extrusion make it possible to work materials that are brittle and tend to crack when deformed by other primary metalworking processes. The most outstanding feature of the extrusion process, however, is its ability to produce a wide variety of cross-sectional configurations; shapes can be extruded that have complex,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

nonuniform, and nonsymmetrical sections that would be difficult or impossible to roll or forge. Extrusions in many instances can take the place of bulkier, more costly assemblies made by welding, bolting, or riveting. Many machining operations may also be reduced through the use of extruded sections. However, as extrusion temperatures increase, processing costs also increase, and the range of shapes and section sizes that can be obtained becomes narrower.

While many asymmetrical shapes are produced, symmetry is the most important factor in determining extrudability. Adjacent sections should be as nearly equal as possible to permit uniform metal flow through the die. The length of their protruding legs should not exceed 10 times their thickness.

The size and weight of extruded shapes are limited by the section configuration and properties of the material extruded. The maximum size that can be extruded on a press of a given capacity is determined by the "circumscribing circle," which is defined as the smallest diameter circle that will enclose the shape. This diameter controls the die size, which in turn is limited by the press size. For instance, the larger presses are generally capable of extruding aluminum shapes with a 25 in. (63.5 cm) diameter circumscribing circle and steel and titanium shapes with about 22 in. (55.9 cm) diameter circle.

The minimum cross-sectional area and minimum thickness that can be extruded on a given size press are dependent on the properties of the material, the extrusion ratio (ratio of the cross-sectional area of the billet to the extruded section), and the complexity of shape. As a rule, thicker sections are required with increased section size. The table gives approximate minimum cross section and thickness of some commonly extruded metals.

Material	Minimum Cross Section		Minimum Thickness	
	in^2	mm^2	in	mm
Carbon and alloy steels	0.40	258	0.120	3
Stainless steels	0.45 - 0.70	290 - 452	0.120 - 0.187	3.0 - 4.8
Titanium	0.50	323	0.150	3.8
Aluminum, Magnesium	< 0.40	< 258	0.040	1.0

Extruded shapes minimize and sometimes eliminate the need for machining; however, they do not have the dimensional accuracy of machined parts. Smooth surfaces with finishes better than 30 µin. (0.762 µm) rms are attainable in magnesium and aluminum; an extruded finish of 125 µin. (3.175 µm) rms is generally obtained with most steels and titanium alloys. Minimum corner and fillet radii of $\frac{1}{64}$ in. (0.39 mm) are preferred for aluminum and magnesium alloys; while for steel, minimum corner radii of 0.030 in. (0.76 mm) and fillet radii of 0.125 in. (3.175 mm) are typical.

Extrusion of Tubes: In tube extrusion, the metal passes through a die, which determines its outer diameter, and around a central mandrel, which determines its inner diameter. Either solid or hollow billets may be used, with the solid billet being used most often. When a solid billet is extruded, the mandrel must pierce the billet by pushing axially through it before the metal can pass through the annular gap between the die and the mandrel. Special presses are used in tube extrusion to increase the output and improve the quality compared to what is obtained using ordinary extrusion presses. These special hydraulic presses independently control ram and mandrel positioning and movement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

POWDER METALLURGY

Introduction

Powder metallurgy (PM) is a process for forming metal parts by heating compacted metal powders to just below their melting points. The heating treatment is called sintering. Although the modern field of powder metallurgy dates to the early 19th century, over the past quarter century, it has become widely recognized as a superior way of producing high quality parts for a variety of important applications.

Powder metallurgy actually comprises several different technologies for fabricating semidense and fully dense components. The conventional PM process, referred to as press-and-sinter, has been used to produce many complex parts, such as the planetary carrier, helical gears and blades, piston rings, connecting rods, cams, brake pads, bushings, tool steels, tungsten carbides, cermets tool and die materials, magnetic materials, graphite brushes impregnated with copper for electric motors, surgical implants, and many other parts for aerospace, nuclear, and industrial applications.

PM's popularity is due to a number of attributes: a) the advantage that the process offers over other metal-forming technologies such as forging and metal casting, b) its advantages in material utilization, c) shape complexity, d) near-net-shape dimensional control, and others. PM's benefits add up to cost-effectiveness, shape and material flexibility, application versatility, and part-to-part uniformity for improved product quality.

Advantages that make powder metallurgy an important commercial technology include the following:

- eliminates or minimizes machining by producing parts at or close to final dimensions
- eliminates or minimizes scrap losses by typically using more than 97 percent of the starting raw material in the finished part
- permits a wide variety of alloy systems
- produces good surface finishes and tolerances of ±0.005 in. (±0.13 mm)
- provides materials that may be heat treated for increased strength or increased wear resistance
- relatively low processing temperatures
- provides controlled porosity for self-lubrication or filtration
- facilitates manufacture of complex or unique shapes that would be impractical or impossible with other metalworking processes
- is suited to moderate- to high-volume component production requirements
- offers long-term performance reliability in critical applications
- is cost-effective and environmentally friendly
- can be automated.

There are some disadvantages associated with PM processing. These include:

- high tooling and equipment cost
- expense of metal powder
- difficulties with storing and handing metal powders (degradation of the metal over time and fire hazards with particular metals)
- variations in material density can cause problems, especially for complex geometries
- limitations on part geometry because metal powders do not readily flow laterally in the die during pressing.

Most parts weigh less than 5.5 lb (2.5 kg), although parts weighing as much as 110 lb (50 kg) can be produced using conventional powder metallurgy equipment. While many of the early powder metallurgy parts, such as bushings and bearings, were very simple shapes, today's sophisticated powder metallurgy process produces components with complex contours and multiple levels and does so quite economically.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Characteristics of Metal Powders

A powder is defined as a finely divided solid, smaller than 0.039 in. (1 mm) in its maximum dimension. In most cases the powders will be metal, although in many instances they are combined with other materials such as ceramics or polymers. Powders exhibit behavior that is intermediate between that of a solid and a liquid. Powders will flow under gravity to fill containers or die cavities, so in this sense they behave like liquids. They are compressible like a gas. But the compression of a metal powder is essentially irreversible, like the plastic deformation of a metal. Thus, a metal powder is easily shaped, but it has the desirable behavior of a solid after it is processed.

When one deal with powders, the properties of both the individual particles and the collective (bulk) properties of the powder must be considered. The properties of single particles include size, shape, and microstructure, which can be determined by optical or scanning electron microscopic observations. In order to characterize a bulk powder, it is necessary to be able to determine at least the following properties:

Basic Chemical Composition: The minimum percentage of the base metal or the percentages of main elements in case of metal alloy powders.

Impurities: The percentage of impurities.

Particle Size Distribution: (see next section).

Apparent Density: The weight per unit volume of a simply poured metal powder, which is always less than the density of the metal itself. It is measured by letting the powder drop freely through a funnel to fill a 1.52 in^3 (25 cm^3) cylindrical container. The ratio between mass and volume, that is, the apparent density, is provided through leveling and weighing and is expressed in kg/m^3. The apparent density depends on a series of factors, the more important of which are the metal's true density, powder shape and structure, particle size distribution, corrosion resistance, etc.).

Flowability: To assess the speed, standardized funnels with varying calibrated openings are used. A certain amount of powder is poured in the funnel and the flow time is recorded.

Particle Size Measurement and Distribution.—The size, distribution, and shape of the powder metal particles influence the physical properties of the parts created. A particle is defined as the smallest unit of a powder. The particles of many metal powders are 0.001 to 0.0078 in. (0.025 to 0.2 mm) in size.

Describing a three-dimensional particle is often a more complex matter than it first appears. For simplicity, it is convenient to describe particle size in terms of one single number. The sphere is the only shape that can be described by one dimension, its diameter (*D*). However, a particle is rarely a perfect sphere. Over the years, particle size analyses of metal powders have been performed using various techniques, including microscope, sieves, aerodynamic time of flight, and laser diffraction. At present, the most popular technique for measuring the size distribution of metal powders is screening and laser diffraction, typically measuring powders in their natural dry state.

Screening Method: The most common method used for measured particle size is the use of screens (sieves) of different mesh sizes. The term *mesh count* is used to refer to the number of openings per linear inch of screen.

The basic principle of sieving techniques is as follows. A representative sample of a known weight of particles is passed through a set of sieves of known mesh sizes. The sieves are arranged in downwardly decreasing mesh diameters. The higher the mesh size number, the smaller is the opening in the screen. For example, a mesh size No. 200 has an opening of 0.003 in. (0.074 mm), size No. 100 has an opening of 0.006 in. (0.149 mm), size No. 10 has an opening of 0.078 in. (2 mm). The sieves are mechanically vibrated for a fixed period of time. The weight of particles retained on each sieve is measured and converted into a percentage of the total sample. This method is quick and sufficiently accurate for most purposes.

Laser Diffraction Method: Laser diffraction, alternatively referred to as low-angle laser light scattering (LALLS), can be used for the nondestructive analysis of wet or dry

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

samples, with particles in the size range from microscopic up to 0.080 in. (2 mm). This method has inherent advantages that make it preferable to other options for many different materials.

Laser diffraction-based particle size analysis relies on the fact that particles passing through a laser beam will scatter light at an angle that is directly related to the particles' size. Typically, an He-Ne laser (l = 632.8nm) in the 5 mW to 10 mW range is used as the coherent light source. As particle size decreases, the observed scattering angle increases logarithmically. Scattering intensity is also dependent on particle size, diminishing with particle volume. Large particles, therefore, scatter light at narrow angles with high intensity, whereas small particles scatter light at wider angles but with low intensity.

A typical system consists of: a laser, to provide a source of coherent, intense light of fixed wavelength; a series of detectors to measure the light pattern produced over a wide range of angles; and some kind of sample presentation system to ensure that the material being tested passes through the laser beam as a homogeneous stream of particles in a known, reproducible state of dispersion. The dynamic range of the measurement is directly related to the angular range of the scattering measurement, with modern instruments making measurements from around 0.02 degree to beyond 140 degrees (Fig. 1). The wavelength of light used for the measurements is also important, with smaller wavelengths (e.g., blue light sources) providing improved sensitivity to sub-micron particles.

In laser diffraction, particle size distributions are calculated by comparing a sample's scattering pattern with an appropriate optical model. Traditionally, two different models are used: the Mie theory and Fraunhofer approximation.

The Mie theory describes scattering by homogeneous spheres of arbitrary size, and provides a more rigorous solution for the calculation of particle size distributions from light-scattering data. It predicts scattering intensities for all particles, small or large, transparent or opaque. The Mie theory allows for primary scattering from the surface of the particle, with the intensity predicted by the refractive index difference between the particle and the dispersion medium. It also predicts the secondary scattering caused by light refraction within the particle. This is especially important for particles below 0.002 in. (0.05 mm) in diameter, as stated in the international standard for laser diffraction measurements. The Mie approach does not work well for extremely fine particulates in the range below 100 nm, possibly because of increased sensitivity to changes in the refractive index that occur with these materials.

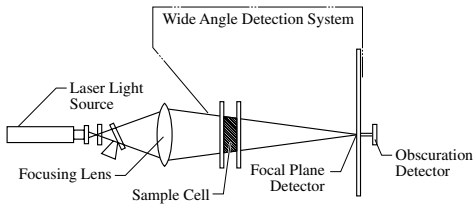


Fig. 1. Typical Laser Diffraction Instrument Layout

Fraunhofer Diffraction: For very large particles (relative to the wavelength of light), the diffraction effect can be exploited without reference to the Mie theory or the complex index of refraction. Diffracted light is concentrated in the forward direction, forming the so-called Fraunhofer diffraction rings.

The intensity and distribution of diffracted light around the central beam can be related to particle size, again assuming spherical geometry. The benefit of using Fraunhofer diffraction is that the interpretation is not dependent on the absorptive or refractive properties of the material. On the other hand, the particles being measured are opaque and scatter light at narrow angles. As a result, it is only applicable to large particles and will give an incorrect assessment of fine-particle fractions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Since laser diffraction is such a popular method of measuring the size of metal powders, an ASTM standard was written to guide proper technique. ASTM B822-02, "Standard Test Method for Particle Size Distribution of Metal Powders and Related Compounds by Light Scattering," provides guidance on the use of laser diffraction for measuring metal powders. The ASTM standard notes the requirement for a representative sample and suggests a micro-sample splitter to minimize sampling errors. When powder in a liquid suspension is measured, the standard points out that it is important to create a stable dispersion.

Laser diffraction is a nondestructive, nonintrusive method that can be used for either dry or wet samples. As it derives particle size data using fundamental scientific principles there is no need for external calibration; well-designed instruments are easy to set up and run, and they require very little maintenance.

Particle Shape and Internal Structure.—There are various types of metal powder particle shapes, several of which are illustrated in Fig. 2. The choice depends on the requirements of the final product. The microstructure, bulk and surface properties, and porosity depend on the particle shape. There will be a variety of particle shapes in a collection of metal powders, just as the particle size will vary.

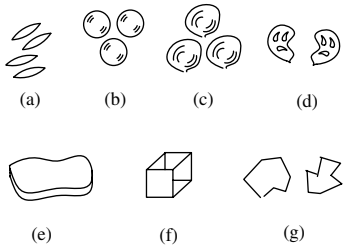


Fig. 2. Schematic Illustration of Several Particle Shapes in Metal Powders:
a) Acicular; b) Spherical; c) Rounded; d) Spongy; e) Flakey; f) Cubic; g) Angular

The particle shape is widely accepted as important if process operation is to be optimized. One of the simple and most useful measuring techniques is *digital imaging*.

By this technique, particle shape is quantified in two ways. First, the aspect ratio determination is made.

Aspect Ratio: In general, the aspect ratio is the ratio of the maximum dimension to the minimum dimension for a given particle and is defined more specifically in this method as the ratio of the maximum and minimum particle dimension that passes through the geometric center of the particle. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.

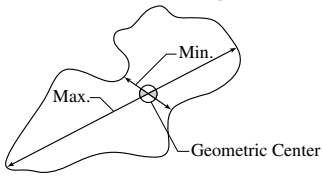


Fig. 3. Particle Aspect Ratio Definition

The aspect ratio for a spherical particle is 1.0, but for another grain, like a needle-shaped grain (acicular), the ratio might be up to 4. Any amount of loose powder contains pores between the particles. These are cooled open pores but in some cases might be voids in the structure of individual particles (closed pores) and their influence on powder characteristics is minor.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shape Factor: The second determination is defined as a shape factor that attempts to quantify the particle shape as a single number. This is not easy; and there have been many attempts to employ shape factor in the past. However, combining the flatness ratio and elongation ratio allows the shape of the particle to be described by a shape factor.

Flatness ratio p is the ratio of the short length (thickness T) to the intermediate length w:

$$p = \frac{T}{w} \tag{1}$$

The elongation ratio q is the ratio of the intermediate length w to the longest length l:

$$q = \frac{w}{l} \tag{2}$$

where T = thickness of particle, in. (mm)

w = intermediate length of particle, in. (mm)

l = longest length of particle, in. (mm)

$$S_f = \frac{p}{q} = \frac{\frac{T}{w}}{\frac{w}{l}} = \frac{lT}{w^2} \tag{3}$$

where S_f = shape factor

p = flatness ratio

q = elongation ratio

If $S_f = 1$, the particle is spherical or cubical

$S_f < 1$, the particle is more elongated and thin (4)

$S_f > 1$, the particle is blade-shaped

Sphericity: Sphericity is, naturally, a measure of how spherical an object is. Defined by Wadell in 1932, the sphericity y of a particle is the ratio of the surface area of a sphere with the same volume as the given particle to the surface area of the particle:

$$\Psi = \frac{\pi^{\frac{1}{3}}(6V_p)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{A_p} \tag{5}$$

where V_p = volume of the particle

A_p = the surface area of the particle

A particle that is a perfect sphere has sphericity value of $\Psi = 1$.

Friction and Flow Characteristics of Particles.—The friction characteristics of particles play a very important rule in the ability of a powder to flow readily and pack tightly. The friction of particle aggregates basically involves two aspects: inter-particle friction and friction between the aggregate and the walls of the container. Both aspects constitute challenging topics, and often both must be considered in dealing with practical problems related to powder materials. Particle mechanics is the branch of knowledge that deals with the mechanics properties and flow of particles and particle aggregates. Friction is a critical aspect of many particle mechanics problems. The most common way to quantify inter-particle friction is by measuring the angle of repose.

Angle of Repose: Angle of repose, in general, is an engineering property of granular material. When powders are poured from a narrow funnel onto a horizontal surface, a conical pile will form (Fig. 4).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

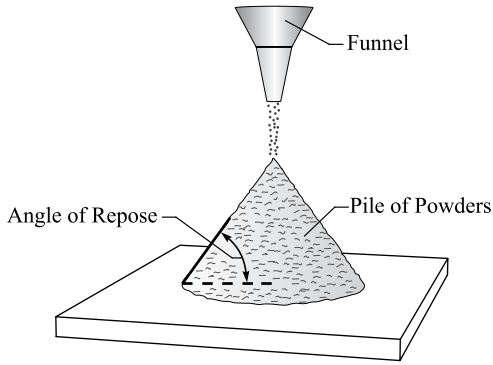


Fig. 4. Inter-Particle Friction as Indicated by the Angle of Repose

The angle between the horizontal surface and the surface of the pile is known as the angle of repose and is related to the density, surface area, and coefficient of friction of the particles. Materials with a higher angle of repose have greater friction between particles, while smaller angles suggest less friction. Smaller particle size generally indicates greater friction and steeper angles.

Powder Flow: A simple definition of powder flowability is the ability of a powder to flow. Flowability is the result of a number of factors and for convenience they may be grouped under the following headings:

- Physical properties of the powder particles, such as their size, shape, hardness, elasticity, porosity, mass, interactions between particles, and so on.
- Environmental factors that affect the powder's bulk properties, such as air or moisture content, external pressure, vibration, etc. These factors modify the physical distribution and arrangement of the particles in the powder mass.
- Individual particle changes caused by factors such as attrition, chemical charge, etc.

Powders will flow under gravity to fill containers or die cavities, so in this sense they behave like liquids. As particles in powders get smaller, they have a greater tendency to adhere to one another rather than to fall away under the influence of gravity. This is due to the fact that the surface area of the particles becomes large in proportion to the mass. Therefore, the surface forces of friction and cohesion begin to dominate gravitational forces as particle size decreases. Increasing interparticle friction and cohesion reduce the flowability of the powder. To reduce interparticle friction and facilitate flow during pressing, lubricants are added to the powders in small amounts.

Particle shape also greatly affects the flow characteristics of powders. Depending on the fabrication method, particles can take on many different shapes, including spherical, rounded, and angular.

The flowability of a powder can be quantified by measuring its gravity-driven flow rate through a calibrated orifice. The conventional method measures the time required for a 50-gram sample to flow through a standardized funnel.

Packing, Density, and Porosity.—Packing, density and porosity are based on how much the metal powder will pack down when pressed. A packing of particles is an assemblage of particles and is widely encountered in many industries. Packing characteristics depend on two density measures: true density and bulk density.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

True Density: True density of the material would be density of the mass if the powder particles were melted and formed into a single piece. During the compression stage the particles are reshuffled, becoming generally closer together as inter-particular pores are eliminated. As the powder is compressed, its density increases. In order to process to its true density, all porosities, open and closed, must be eliminated.

True density of a solid material is defined as the ratio of its mass to its true volume; the true density value is given in many tables as one property of engineering materials. The true density value is calculated as:

$$\rho_t = \frac{M_s}{V_t} \tag{6}$$

where ρ_t = true density, lb/in^3 (g/cm^3)
M_s = mass of solid material, lb (g)
V_t = true volume, in^3 (cm^3)

Bulk Density: Bulk density is the density of the powder in its loose uncompressed form. A container of known volume is filled with the powder. The powder is then weighed and the density is determined as:

$$\rho_b = \frac{M_p}{V_p} \tag{7}$$

where ρ_b = bulk density, lb/in^3 (g/cm^3)
M_p = powder mass, lb (g)
V_p = volume of powder in uncompressed form, in^3 (cm^3)

Major factors determining bulk density of a powder are particle size, particle size distribution, particle shape, and cohesiveness. Bulk density is an important property in packaging and powder handling.

Packing Factor: The packing factor value is determined as:

$$PF = \frac{\rho_b}{\rho_t} \tag{8}$$

Typical packing factor values are 0.5 to 0.7, meaning that the material will compact 30 to 50 percent.

The packing factor depends on the particle shape, the distribution of the particle sizes, and external pressure applied during compacting of the particle. Vibration of the powders can also increase packing.

Porosity: Porosity is the ratio of volume of the pores (empty spaces) in the powder to the bulk volume. This ratio can be expressed as:

$$\varphi = \frac{V_p}{V_b} \tag{9}$$

where φ = porosity; V_p = volume of pores, in^3 (cm^3); and V_b = bulk volume, in^3 (cm^3).

Pores, or spaces within the powder, are in large part determined by particle shape and size, since the shape dictates how particles will contact each other. Spaces that exist between particles of a powder and are open to the outside are called open pores. Those spaces expose the external surfaces of powder particles. During compaction of powder, these spaces are eliminated. If any amount of this space remains after pressing, it will result in porosity in the manufactured part. These open pores are permeable to the atmosphere, and they are permeable to fluids such as liquid lubricants and water. The other type of empty spaces that exist in a powder material are called closed pores. These pores are not open to the outside atmosphere. Closed pores can develop during pressing and sintering if the open-pore region becomes closed off. Another type of closed pore exists within the material of powder particles themselves.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In principle:

$$\text{Porosity} + \text{Packing factor} = 1 \tag{10}$$

The issue is complicated by the possible existence of closed pores in some of the particles. If internal pore volumes are included in the above porosity value, then the equation is exact.

Production of Metallic Powder

A powder can be defined as a finely divided particulate solid. It can be produced in the form of sponges or atomized powders. Generally, any metal can be made into a powder. There are three basic methods for producing metallic powder: atomization, chemical, and electrolytic. Each method can be further subdivided, and powders can also be made by various combinations from each group. As a result, there is a wide range of production routes available, each producing powders with their own particular characteristics.

Which powder production process is used depends on the required production rate, the desired powder properties, and the properties desired in the final part. Chemical and electrolytic methods are used to produce high-purity powders. Mechanical milling is widely used for the production of hard metals and oxides.

Atomization.—Atomization involves either spraying or smashing molten metal into smaller particles.

It is the most versatile method for metal powder production. The main operational parameters and physical conditions for a suitable atomization process for different applications in powder production are the following:

- melting (surface tension, viscosity, and temperature range–solidification temperature)
- process type (aimed throughput, energy efficiency)
- product type (particle size distribution).

Atomization is the dominant method for producing metal and pre-alloying powders from aluminum, brass, iron, low-alloy steel, stainless steel, superalloy, titanium alloy, and other alloys. Atomization is the best method because it yields high production rates and favors economies of scale, and because pre-alloying powders can only be produced by atomization.

There are many different processes employed industrially for atomization, several of which are:

- water atomization
- gas/air atomization
- centrifugal atomization.

Water Atomization: In water atomization (Fig. 5) the raw material is melted, and then the liquid metal is broken into individual particles. To accomplish this, the melt stock, in the form of elemental, multi-element metallic alloys, is melted in an induction, arc, or other type of furnace. After the metal is molten and homogenous, it is transferred to a tundish, which is a reservoir used to supply a constant, controlled flow of metal into the atomizing chamber. As the metal stream exits the tundish, it is struck by a high-velocity stream of the water.

The water is sprayed at pressures that range from 145 to 1450 psi (1 MPa to 10 MPa). The molten metal stream is disintegrated into fine droplets, which solidify and cool during their fall through the atomizing tank. Particles are collected at the bottom of the tank. Water atomization cools the metal very rapidly, and the process can cause the formation of irregular particles. It can also corrode some metals.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

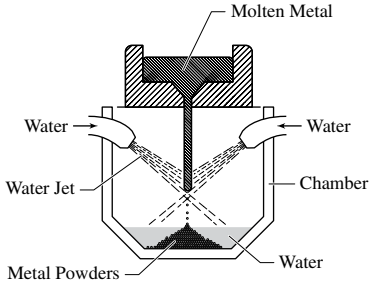


Fig. 5. Water Atomization Method for Producing Metal Powder

Gas Atomization: In the area of metal powder production by atomization of molten metal, twin-fluid atomization by means of inert gases is typically used. The main reasons for using this specific atomization technique are:

- the possibility of high throughputs and disintegration of high mass flow rates
- the greater amount of heat transfer between gas and particles for rapid partial cooling of the particles
- the direct delivery of kinetic energy to accelerate the particles towards the substrate/deposit for compaction
- the minimization of oxidation risks of the atomized materials within the spray process by use of inert gases.

In this process, atomization is accomplished by forcing a molten metal stream through an orifice at moderate pressures (Fig. 6). An inert gas at pressures from 29 to 290 psi (0.2 to 2.0 MPa) is introduced into the metal stream just before it leaves the nozzle, serving to create turbulence as the entrained gas expands (due to heating) and exits into a large collection volume exterior to the orifice. The collection volume is filled with gas to promote further turbulence of the molten metal jet.

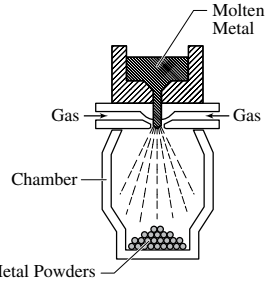


Fig. 6. Gas Atomization Method for Producing Metal Powder

This process as compared to water atomization makes a similarly broad distribution and produce very fine powders. However, the process must be operated more slowly than water atomization and the energy needed to compress the gas is far higher than that needed to pump water. Because this cools the metal at a slower rate, it creates a more circular particle. The advantage of the inert gas process is better control of oxygen levels in oxygen-sensitive materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Centrifugal Atomization: Centrifugal atomization of molten metals is a cost-effective process for powder production and spray deposition. The properties of the powder and deposit produced by this method are determined primarily by the characteristics of the atomized droplets, which in turn are largely dependent on the flow development of the melt on the atomizer.

There are basically two types of centrifugal atomization processes: the rotating disk process and the rotating electrode process.

Rotating Disk Process: In this process, the molten metal stream drops onto a rapidly rotating disk or cup on a vertical axis so that centrifugal forces break up the molten metal stream to form, first, a film of molten metal and then to generate particles (Fig. 7a).

Naturally, the material of which the spinning disk or cup is made takes a lot of punishment. Particle sizes are not very fine, unless very high speeds (over 10,000 rpm) are used. An advantage of this process is that it can produce much narrower distributions than gas or water atomization. Thus, excessively fine or oversized particles can be minimized.

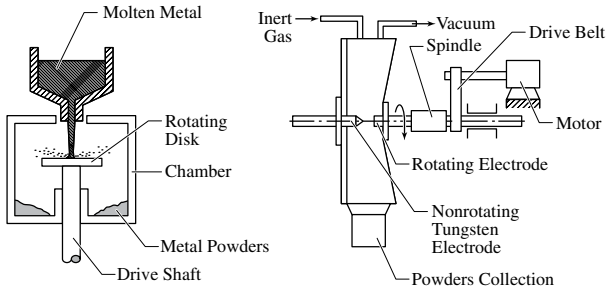


Fig. 7. Centrifugal Atomization: (left) Rotating Disk Method; (right) Rotating Electrode Method

Rotating Electrode Process: In the rotating electrode process (REP), an arc is struck between a horizontal tungsten cathode and a spinning electrode of the desired metal for pulverization (Fig. 7b). The electric arc (or plasma in later versions) melts the spinning workplace electrode tip, which throws off a shower of the molten metal droplets by centrifugal forces. The droplets solidify as they pass through a cooling gas or vacuum and are collected in a concentric chamber.

A salient characteristic of REP powder particles is their perfectly spherical shape and freedom from satellite particles adhering to them.

Mechanical Processes.—There are basically two types of mechanical processes for the production of metal powders: the mechanical comminution process and the mechanical alloying process.

Mechanical Comminution Process: Brittle materials such as ferro-alloys (ferro-chromium, ferro-silicon, etc.) are pulverized mechanically in ball mills (Fig. 8). A process known as the coldstream process is finding increasing application for the production of very fine powders such as are required for injection molding.

Milling is the primary method for reducing the size of large particles and particle agglomerates. Ball, hammer, vibratory, attrition, and tumbler mills are some of the commercially available comminuting devices. During milling, forces act on the feed metal to modify the resultant particles. Impact, attrition, shear, and compression all influence powder particle size and shape. Lathe turning is a technique used for materials such as magnesium for creating coarse particles from billets. These particles then are reduced in size by milling or grinding.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

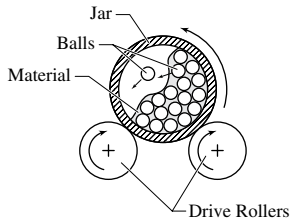


Fig. 8. Method of Mechanical Comminution to Obtain Fine Particles

Mechanical Alloying: Mechanical alloying is a process for the production of new materials. It takes place in a high-energy mill where two powders of different origin are mixed. By the conversion of mechanical into chemical energy, nanocrystalline structures emerge that cannot be produced by conventional melting methods.

In general, the process can be viewed as a means of assembling metal constituents with a controlled microstructure. If two metals will form a solid solution, mechanical alloying can be used to achieve this state without the need for an excursion into high temperatures. Conversely, if the two metals are insoluble in the liquid or solid state, an extremely fine dispersion of one of the metals in the other can be accomplished. The dispersed phase can result in strengthening of the particles or can impart special electrical or magnetic properties to the powder. The process of mechanical alloying was originally developed as a means of overcoming the disadvantages associated with using powder metallurgy to alloy elements that are difficult to combine.

Some oxides are insoluble in molten metals. Mechanical alloying provides a means of dispersing these oxides into the metals. Examples are nickel-based superalloys strengthened with dispersed thorium oxide (ThO_2) or yttrium oxide (Y_2O_3). These superalloys have excellent strength and corrosion resistance at elevated temperatures, making them attractive candidate materials for use in applications such as jet engine turbine blades, vanes, and combustors.

Chemical Processes.—There are numerous chemical methods for producing powders. Generally, chemical methods result in very fine powder particle sizes.

The most common chemical powder treatments involve oxide reduction, precipitation from solutions, and thermal decomposition. Chemical reduction involves a variety of chemical reactions that reduce the metal into elemental powders. A common process involves liberating metals from their oxides by the use of reducing agents, which attach to the oxygen in the oxide and render metal powders. The powders produced in this way have great variation in properties and yet have closely controlled particle sizes and shapes. Oxide-reduced powders are often characterized as "spongy," due to pores present within individual particles. Solution-precipitated powders can provide narrow particle size distributions and high purity. Thermal decomposition is most often used to process carbonyls. These powders, once milled and annealed, exceed 99.5 percent purity.

Mill scale and oxidized metallic products are annealed to reduce both the oxygen and carbon contents. FeO, Fe_2O_3, or Fe_3O_4, are reduced in the presence of a reducing atmosphere. In addition, the carbon within the particles is removed via the formation of CO and CO_2.

Hydrometallurgical manufacturing followed by thermal decomposition constitutes another chemical method. Precipitation of a metal from a solution can be accomplished by using electrolysis, cementation, or chemical reduction. This is done either from a solution containing an ore, or by means of precipitation of a metal hydroxide followed by heating which results in decomposition and reduction.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Electrolytic Deposition.—Electrolytic deposition is often categorized as a fourth mode of powder fabrication.

In this process, an electrolytic cell is set up in which the source of the desired metal is the anode. The process involves the precipitation of a metallic element at the cathode of an electrolytic cell (Fig. 9).

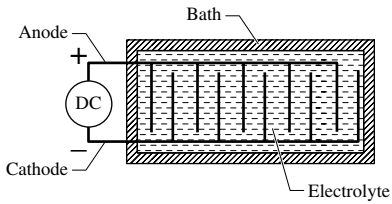


Fig. 9. Electrolytic Cell Operation for Deposition of Powder

By the choice of suitable conditions, composition and strength of the electrolyte, temperature, current density, and so on, many metals can be deposited in a spongy or powdery state. Extensive further processing—washing, drying, reducing, annealing, and crushing—may be required. Copper is the main metal produced in this way, but chromium and manganese powders are also produced by electrolysis. In these cases, however, a dense and normally brittle deposit is formed and needs to be crushed to powder. Electrolytic iron was at one time produced on a substantial scale but it has been largely superseded by powders made by less costly processes. Electrolytic powders are of high purity with a dendritic morphology.

Hybrid Atomization.—There is increasing demand for fine spherical powder with uniform particle size applicable to advanced powder metallurgy such as metal injection molding, solder for electronics parts, and joining and conductive inks. However, conventional technologies cannot easily produce powders that satisfy such requirements, so a new powder production technology is needed.

The National Institute for Materials Science (NIMS) developed the world's first powder production method, *hybrid atomization* (Fig. 10), which can easily produce powder having 0.0004 in. (0.01 mm) or smaller spherical particles, with uniform size and low oxygen content. Such powders cannot be produced by conventional powder production technology.

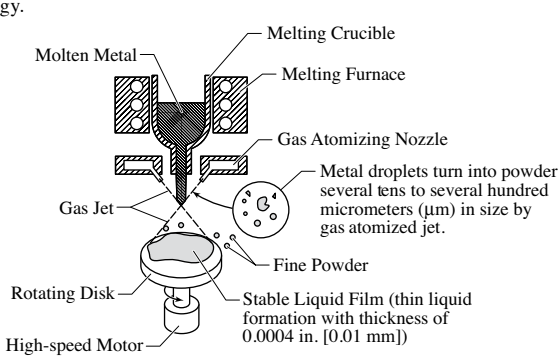

Melting Crucible
Molten Metal
Melting Furnace
Gas Atomizing Nozzle
Metal droplets turn into powder several tens to several hundred micrometers (μm) in size by gas atomized jet.
Gas Jet
Fine Powder
Rotating Disk
Stable Liquid Film (thin liquid formation with thickness of 0.0004 in. [0.01 mm])
High-speed Motor

Fig. 10. Schematic Illustration of Hybrid Atomization

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hybrid atomization efficiently combines gas atomization with centrifugal atomization. The gas atomization breaks molten metal into pieces of several tens to several hundred micrometers in size using a gas jet. A rotating disk located beneath the spray is driven at high speed up to 66,000 rpm, and the molten metal is spread uniformly over the rotating disk using a gas spray flow, thereby forming a thin liquid film of 0.0004 in. (0.01 mm) or less in thickness. Then, the fine droplets are scattered from the edge of the rotating disk to result in a fine spherical powder.

Powder Manufacturing Processes for Metal Parts

The first modern PM product, the tungsten filament used in electric light bulbs, was developed in the early 1900s. It was followed by tungsten carbide cutting tool materials in the 1930s, automobile parts in the 1960s and 1970s, aircraft turbine engine parts in the 1980s, and, finally, parts made by powder forging, metal injection molding, and warm compacting in the 1990s.

An outline of the manufacturing processes and operations involved in making metal powder parts is shown in Fig. 11.

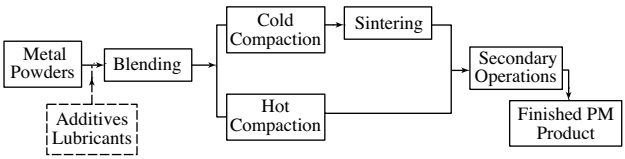


Fig. 11. Outline of Manufacturing Processes of Metal Parts.

After metallic powder is produced, it can be converted to a solid in different ways. But there are three basic steps in producing PM components that are common to most techniques. Whether the final result is sintered brass, sintered stainless steel, sintered bronze, or any other powder-based element, the three production steps are the same:

1) blending and mixing of the powders

2) compaction

3) sintering.

Blending and Mixing of the Powders.—Blending and mixing is carried out for the following purposes: 1) powders made by various processes have different sizes and shapes, so they must be mixed to obtain uniformity; 2) powder of different metals and other materials can be mixed in order to impart special physical and mechanical properties and characteristics to the PM parts; 3) lubricants can be mixed within powders to improve their flow characteristics (reducing friction between metal particles, improving flow of powder materials into the dies, and lengthening die life).

Many of the alloy powders are available premixed—the powder already has the correct material characteristics. Additives, such as admixed lubricants, which coat each powder particle and reduce interparticle friction, usually are added to the mix.

Mixing time depends upon the results desired, and overmixing should be prevented; otherwise the size of particles will be decreased, and they will be hardened. This makes the subsequent compacting operation more difficult. The mixing operation can be carried out in air-inert atmospheres or in liquids, which act as lubricants and make the mixture more uniform.

Blending and mixing is done in a mixer device; some of these are schematically illustrated in Fig. 12; they include the horizontal rotating drum, the rotating double cone, the screw mixer, and the blade mixer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

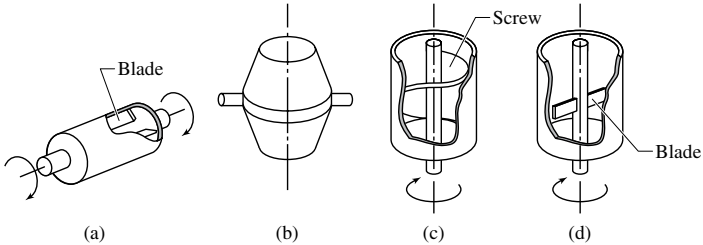


Fig. 12. Blending and Mixing Devices:
a) Rotating Drum; b) Rotating Double Cone; c) Screw Mixer; d) Blade Mixer

In the drum and double cone methods, the container has bafflers inside to prevent the mixture from the free falling, an action that separates the particles by mass. This is the point at which other materials can be added to the mixture. The other materials consist of lubricants (used to lower the friction between the powder and the die), binders (used to hold some metals together between pressing and sintering), and deflocculants (used to allow for better powder flow in the die). Lubricants typically are stearic acid or zinc stearate in a proportion of 0.25 to 5 percent by weight. Because of their high surface area-to-volume ratio, metal powders are explosive; this is particularly true of aluminum (Al), magnesium (Mg), titanium (Ti), zirconium (Zr), and thorium (Th). For that reason, great care must be exercised to protect both workers' health and the general environment during blending and handling.

Compaction of Metallic Powder.—After the metallic powders have been blended, compacting is the next step. The purposes of the compacting operation are to obtain the required shape, ensure particle-to-particle interlocking, and make the part sufficiently strong for further processing.

In compaction, the powder is fed into a die cavity, either automatically or by hand by a feed shoe. At the start the powder is at about 2.5 times the final part volume.

The process generally is carried out at room temperature (cold compacting), although it can be done at elevated temperatures (hot compacting). After pressing, the part, which is called a *green compact*, is ejected from the die. Green parts are very frail and can crumble or be damaged very easily. To obtain higher green strengths, the powder must be fed properly into the die cavity, and proper pressure must be developed throughout the part. Fig. 13 shows various stage metallic powder compacting process.

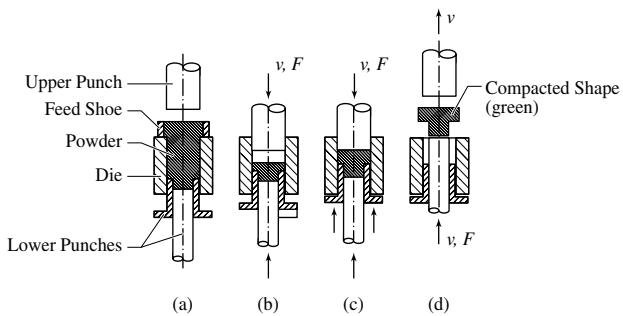


Fig. 13. Compacting Metallic Powder: a) Filled Die Cavity with Powder; b) Initial Position of Upper and Lower Punches; c) Final Position of Upper and Lower Punches; d) Ejection of Part (Green)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The amount of pressure necessary for a compaction operation is to a large degree based on the material. For example, compacting aluminum powder generally requires lower pressure, while compacting iron powder requires relatively higher pressure. The compaction pressure also depends upon the powder characteristics, additives, and the desired density of the green compact. The density of the green compact depends on the applied pressure and the size distribution of the particles. If all particles are of the same size, there will always be some porosity when they are packed together.

Friction force will oppose the movement of particles during processing; therefore, lubrication can reduce the required compaction pressure and also will cause a more uniform distribution of particles during pressing. Lubricant should be applied in the correct quantities.

As the compaction pressure increases, the density of the green compact increases, and the individual particles are pressed together to plastically deform them, increasing their contact and friction but decreasing the pore size. The higher density increases the strength and elastic modulus of a part. Fig. 14 shows density of the powders as a function of pressure.

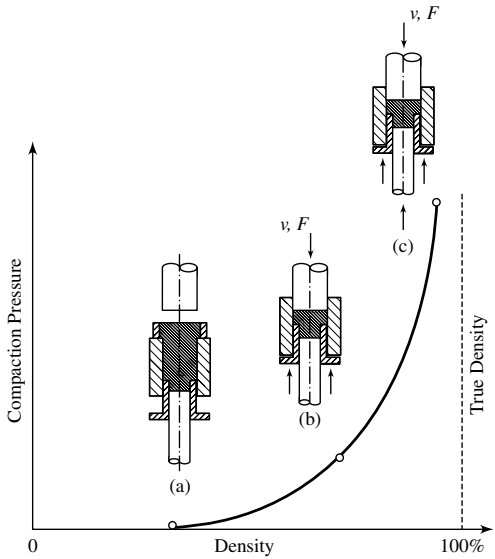


Fig. 14. Density of the Powders as a Function of Pressure: a) Filled Die Cavity with Powder; b) Initial Position of Upper and Lower Punches; c) Final Position of Upper and Lower Punches

Typical pressed densities for soft iron components would be, e.g., about 85 percent of theoretical density. Compaction pressure rises significantly if higher pressed densities are required, and this practice becomes uneconomical due to higher costs for the larger presses and stronger tools to withstand the higher pressures.

One disadvantage of this technique involves the differences in pressed density that can occur in different parts. Because of friction between metal particles in the powder and friction between the punches and die walls, the density within the part can vary considerably. Density variation can be minimized by proper punch and die design, by control of friction, and by keeping low the length-to-diameter ratio of the part.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pressing Force: The required force for pressing depends on the cross-sectional area of the PM part (area in the horizontal plane for a vertical press) and the pressure needed to compact given metal powders. This force may be calculated by the following formula:

$$F = A_p p_c \tag{11}$$

where F = required force, lb (N)
A_p = cross-sectional area, in^2 (m^2)
p_c = compaction pressure, psi (MPa)

Compaction pressures typically range from 1007 to 116030 psi (69 MPa to 800 MPa); however, 20305 to 60191 psi (140 to 415 MPa) is the most common range. Table 1 shows compaction pressures for various metal powders.

Table 1. Compaction Pressure for Various Metal Powders

Material	Compaction Pressures	
	psi	MPa
Porous metals and filters	5802–10153	40–70
Refractory metals and carbides	10298–29008	70–200
Porous bearings	21030–50763	145–350
Machine parts (medium-density iron and steel)	39885–100076	275–690
High-density copper and aluminum parts	36259–39885	250–275
High-density iron and steel parts	100076–239312	690–1650

Most conventional PM compacting is done with mechanical presses, although hydraulic and hybrid (combinations of mechanical, hydraulic, or pneumatic) presses are often used. The mechanical presses may be of the eccentric or crank type. Most presses have capacities of less than 100 tons. Mechanical presses with capacities of the magnitude of a few hundred tons are usually adequate for most PM processing operations. Hydraulic presses with a capacity of several thousand tons are sometimes used for compacting parts that require more force. Double action presses are commonly used; for more complex parts, multiple action presses may be employed. Punch speed must be regulated. Faster compaction of the workpiece can result in higher productivity; however, if the punch speed is too high, air may become trapped in the parts and prevent the parts from compacting correctly.

Die: Punch and die surfaces are very important in the powder compacting operation. Some clearance between the punch and die must exist in order for the punch to move within the die. However, in a die with a large clearance, powder particles can become stuck in this clearance, causing problems with the proper movement of the punch. In order to prevent this problem, clearance is designed to be extremely low, typically less than the size of the powder particle.

Most punches and dies are made from hardened tool steels, and the surfaces of the die and punch in the direction of the punch movement are grounded and polished or lapped.

Sintering.—Sintering is the final step in the PM process. Green powder compacts are heated in a controlled-atmosphere furnace so that adjacent particles fuse together, thus resulting in a solid part with improved mechanical strength compared to the powder compact. The nature and strength of the bond between the particles and the sintered compact depend on the mechanisms of diffusion, the plastic flow, the evaporation of volatile materials in the compact, the recrystallization, the grain growth, and the pore shrinkage. The main variables in sintering are:

- temperature
- time
- furnace atmosphere.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sintering temperature is below melting point (generally within 70 to 90 percent of the melting point of the metal or alloy), and the metal remains unmelted. The temperature in the furnace is high enough to get metal into the recrystallization zone. In this temperature zone, the metal particles begin to recrystallize into each other. Sintering times average from 1 to 1.5 hours for small parts, such as bushings, to 3 hours for average-size ferrous parts. However, for tungsten parts, average sintering time may go to 8 hours.

Sintering furnaces have three sections: first is a burn-off section for volatilizing the lubricants in the green compact in order to improve bond strength and prevent cracking; second is a high-temperature section for sintering; third is a cooling section.

Hardening sintered parts involves applying a controlled cooling rate in a separate cooling section of the sintering furnace. In the cooling section of the sintering furnace the parts are cooled in a protective atmosphere in order not to be oxidized in contact with air. Dissociated ammonia or nitrogen-based atmospheres are commonly used. Vacuum atmospheres are used for certain metals, such as stainless steel, titanium, and tungsten.

The cooling speed, especially in the temperature range of 1560 to 930°F (850 to 500°C) also affects the mechanical properties, due to phase transformations in the material. During the sintering, a moderate dimensional change takes place. Most materials shrink, but some alloying elements, such as copper, cause material growth. The design of the die must compensate for any anticipated dimensional change. In Fig. 15 is shown a typical heat-treatment cycle in a PM sintering operation.

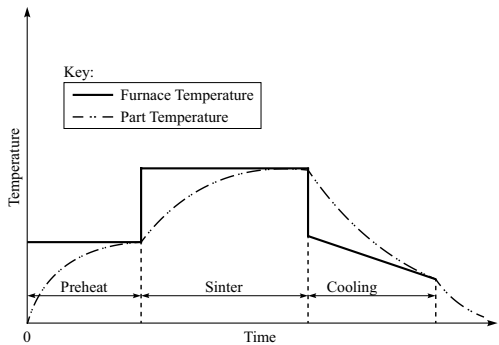


Fig. 15. Typical Heat-Treatment Cycle in Sintering Operation

Secondary Operations: Although PM parts can be used as finished parts, they also may need some additional operations after sintering to improve their properties or to impart special characteristics to the parts.

Repressing: A second pressing operation (wherein the part is squeezed in a closed die) serves to decrease porosity (i.e., improve density) for applications where density is very important to achieve the required mechanical or other physical properties. After repressing, the parts are sintered a second time.

Sizing: Sizing is forcing the part through a finish die to provide dimensional accuracy.

Coining: Coining is a pressworking operation on a sintered part to improve the surface finish by further densification or to press details into its surface.

Finishing Operations: Some powder metal parts require additional finishing operations that may include: machining to produce holes or threaded holes, and various other geometric features by milling or other processes; grinding to improve dimensional accordance and surface finish; plating to improve resistance to wear and corrosion and sometimes to improve appearance; and heat treating for hardness and other mechanical properties.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Joining: Larger parts and very complex shapes can be obtained by joining. Several techniques exist for joining, such as diffusion bonding, sinter brazing, and laser welding.

Infiltration: The interconnected porosity is filled with an alloy having a melting point lower than the sintering temperature of the metal of which the component is made, e.g., copper-based alloys infiltrate ferrous parts, usually during the sintering phase. Infiltration makes the components impermeable, and there is some increase in mechanical properties, but at the expense of dimensional accuracy. Infiltration simplifies some heat treatments. For instance, it is easier to obtain a defined case depth without interconnected porosity.

Impregnation: Oil or other fluid is permeated into the parts of a sintered PM part. Sintered parts achieve greater protection against corrosion by being impregnated by oil or another nonmetallic material such as polymer resins that seep into the pore spaces in liquid form and then solidify to create a pressure-tight part. Common products are gears and bearings. Self-lubricating bearings are manufactured by impregnating porous sintered bearings with lubricants; these bearings can only be produced by powder metallurgy.

Liquid Phase Sintering.—Liquid phase sintering (LPS) is a subclass of the sintering process and can be defined as sintering involving a coexisting liquid and particulate solid during some part of the thermal cycle. The most common way to obtain the liquid phase is to use a system involving a mixture of two powder metals in which there is a difference in the melting temperatures between the metals. The interaction of the two powders leads to formation of a liquid during sintering. The melted metal thoroughly wets the solid particles, leading to rapid consolidation and giving rapid compact densification without the need for an external force. It is, of course, essential to restrict the amount of liquid phase in order to avoid impairing the shape of the part. Depending on the metals involved, prolonged heating may lead to diffusion of the liquid metal into the solid or the dissolution of solid particles into the liquid melt. In either case, the resulting part is fully dense (having no pores) and strong.

Isostatic Pressing.—Isostatic pressing is generally used to produce large PM parts to near-net shapes of varied complexity. Unlike conventional PM, in which the powder is compacted uniaxially through direct contact with tooling, isostatic pressing confines the metal powder within a flexible membrane or hermetic metal or glass container, which acts as a pressure barrier between the powder and the pressurizing medium, whether liquid or gas, that surrounds it. The use of this pressurizing system ensures a uniform compaction pressure from all directions and the absence of die wall friction; it produces a fully homogeneous and uniform grain structure and density irrespective of the shape of the final parts. Other advantages of isostatic pressing are that parts with high length-to-diameter ratios have been produced with very uniform density, strength, toughness, and good surface detail; and that it is possible to compact much larger parts than are possible with other compacting processes. Limitations of isostatic pressing include wider dimensional tolerances than are caused by other compacting processes; greater cost and time than are required by other processes; applicability only to relatively small production quantities (fewer than 10,000). Two of the most commonly used methods are cold isostatic pressing and hot isostatic pressing.

Cold Isostatic Pressing: In cold isostatic pressing (CIP), metal powders are contained in a flexible mold that is typically made of rubber or another elastomer material and pressed to the green compact by a fluid. Water or oil is usually used to provide hydrostatic pressure against the mold inside the chamber. The most common pressure is 58,000 psi (400 MPa). As the pressure is isostatic, the resulting pressed component is of uniform density. In CIP processing, the part must be sintered after removal from the mold. Fig. 16 illustrates the processing sequence in cold isostatic pressing.

The advantages of CIP include more uniform density, less expensive tooling, and greater applicability to shorter production runs, typically fewer than 10,000 parts per year.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

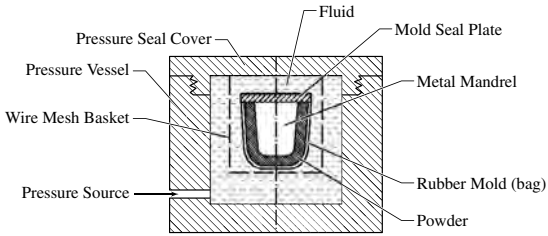


Fig. 16. Cold Isostatic Pressing

Good dimensional accuracy is difficult to achieve in isostatic pressing, due to the flexible mold. Normally, this technique is only used for roughly shaped components, all of which require considerable secondary operations to produce the final, accurately dimensioned component

Hot Isostatic Pressing: Hot isostatic pressing (HIP) is a manufacturing process that uniquely combines pressure and temperature to produce materials and parts with substantially better properties than other techniques. The pressure medium is an inert gas, usually argon. Powders are usually encapsulated in a sheet metal container (mold), which is assembled of steel sheets and optionally pipes and metallic inserts by TIG welding. The container is tested to make sure it is leak-free and is designed to give the part its full density and desired shape. Once the container is leak-free, the powders are filled into it via a fill tube. In order to achieve maximum and uniform packing of the powders, which is necessary to ensure a predictable and consistent shrinking, a vibration table is used. In special cases such as critical aerospace applications, the filling operation is done under inert gas or vacuum to minimize contamination of the powders. The next step is outgassing to remove adsorbed gases and water vapor. After outgassing, the fill tube is welded to seal the container. The absence of leaking is critical. Otherwise, when the HIP vessel is pressurized, argon will enter the container and become entrapped in the powder mass, creating argon-filled pores, with damaging effects on the mechanical properties.

The container is then placed in a hot isostatic vessel. The HIP vessel is evacuated to eliminate the air. Then, during heating, argon gas pressure is increased in the vessel. After the calculated pressure is reached, further increase in pressure will occur through gas thermal expansion. During the holding time, gas pressure and temperature are kept constant. After this, a rapid cooling takes place, with decreasing pressure and temperature.

The hot isostatic pressing parameters of pressure, temperature and time are predetermined to give the material full density. Chosen temperatures are below solidus (approximately 0.8 T solidus) to avoid a liquid phase.

Modern HIP systems can feature uniform rapid cooling (URC) that circulates a lower temperature gas to cool the part at a controlled rate of up to 212° F/min (100° C). The HIP quenching technique cuts cycle time dramatically by shortening the cooling stage by as much as 80 percent. It also provides the benefit of combining heat treatment with HIP in a single step. The uniform rapid cooling restricts grain growth and thermal distortion of the parts and avoids surface contamination by using high purity argon gas.

A HIP unit consists mainly of a pressure vessel, a heating system and an argon gas system. Various HIP constructions are available. Fig. 17 schematically illustrates one type of hot isostatic pressure unit.

Molybdenum furnaces are used for temperatures up to 2462° F (1350° C) and 14500 to 43511 psi (100 to 300 MPa).

The sheet metal container remains on the part after the hot isostatic pressing and heat treatment, and it is removed by machining or by chemical milling. After the container has been removed, depending on the type of material and the application, the PM HIP part will be heat treated, machined, and subjected to various types of quality control, such as ultrasonic inspection, dimensional control, and testing of mechanical properties.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

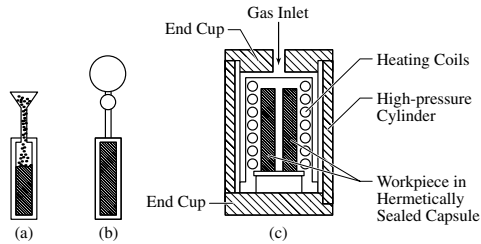


Fig. 17. Hot Isostatic Pressing: a) Container is Filled; b) Container is Evacuated and Sealed Hermetically; c) Schematic Illustration of Hot Isostatic Pressing

The main advantages of HIP are that it improves mechanical properties, produces compaction with almost 100 percent density, and increases workability, and that, when incorporated as an integral part of the manufacturing process, it reduces scrap and allows frequent replacement of wrought components.

Further, it maximizes material utilization by improving material properties, so processed parts exhibit higher reliability and longer service life, and parameters can be established to minimize subsequent heat-treatment operations.

Disadvantages of HIP include that it is a relatively expensive process and that good dimensional accuracy of parts is not easy to achieve with this method.

HIP applications include defect healing of castings, consolidation of metal powder (preform on near-net-shaped parts); improving the structural properties of premium investment castings, primarily for aerospace applications, for which the process was initially used; sintering of diamond and carbide tools; and fabrication of metal matrix composites in the aircraft industry.

Powder Injection Molding.—Powder injection molding (PIM) refers to the processing of both metal and ceramic powders. When one is dealing with metals or alloying powders, the term *metal injection molding* (MIM) is used. Powder injection molding is an innovative and cost-effective manufacturing process commonly used for complex, high-quality medical and dental components. It is a high-volume, high-quality, cost-effective process that helps eliminate secondary machining operations for metal part production. PIM is very efficient for manufacturing small, intricate, and complex parts with good mechanical properties and geometrical accordance.

The most common used materials for MIM are stainless steel, chrome-nickel steel, iron, and titanium.

The process is generally best suited to parts measuring less than 0.25 in. (6 mm) thick and weighing less than 100 grams. Typical parts are components for watches, precise mechanic instruments, surgical knives, and automobiles. Powder injection molding is a multi-stage process. A general outline of the process is illustrated in Fig. 18.

In MIM, very fine powders (≤ 10 μm) are processed as follows:

Mixing: Metallic powders are mixed with an organic binder. Regarding the maximum powder content, 60 percent is typically powder and 40 percent is binder. Powder content can be slightly increased by blending different binder particle sizes.

Pelletizing: Granular pellets are formed from the mixture into feedstock.

Molding: The feedstock then undergoes a process similar to die casting; it is injected into the mold at a temperature of 284–400°F (140–200°C) and under pressure of 445–725 psi (3–5 MPa). High pressure powder injection molding at pressures of 5,000 psi (34 MPa) allows molding of thinner features, albeit with increased mold wear.

Debinding: The molded green parts are heated at a low temperature to burn off the binder, or a chemical catalytic is used to remove the binder.

Sintering: The parts are sintered in a furnace at sintering temperature (generally within 70 to 90 percent of the melting point of the metal or alloy).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Secondary operations are performed as appropriate. Major advantages of MIM over conventional compaction are that complex shapes can be produced having wall thicknesses as small as 0.1 in. (2.5 mm) and features as small as 0.02 in. (0.5 mm); they can be molded and then easily removed from the dies, and their mechanical properties are nearly equal to those of wrought parts; there is good dimensional tolerance, and high production rates can be achieved using multi-cavity dies.

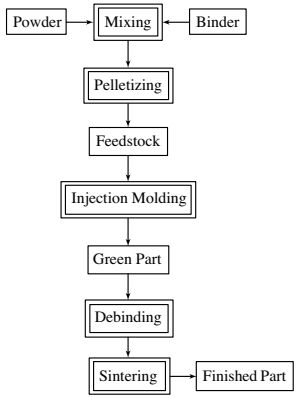


Fig. 18. Outline of the Powder Injection Molding Process

The major limitations of MIM are the limited availability of fine metal powders and the relatively high cost of production.

Powder Rolling, Extrusion, and Forging.—Rolling, extruding, and forging are plastic deformation metal-forming processes. In this section, these processes are described in the context of powder metallurgy.

Powder Rolling: This term is applied to the process, now established on an industrial scale, wherein a metal powder is fed continuously into a rolling mill (Fig. 19), which may be heated, and compacted between the rolls into strip at speeds of up to 1.6 ft/s (0.5 m/s). This strip is passed through a sintering furnace and rerolled to the finished size. In general, the product does not have any advantage over strip produced by conventional metal-rolling from bulk, although in some cases superior homogeneity can be demonstrated, as well as freedom from laminations that can arise from bulk defects.

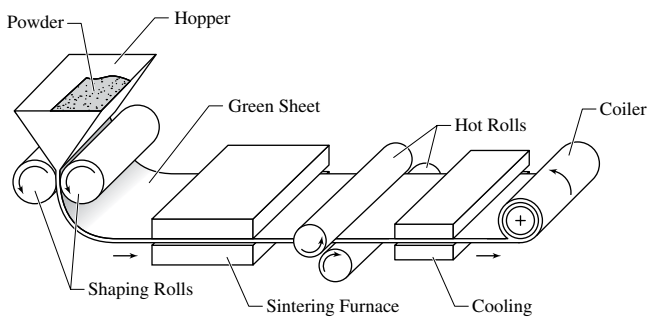


Fig. 19. Powder Rolling Illustration

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The main advantages of the process are: low capital cost compared to traditional melting, forging, etc.; fewer operational steps compared with conventional rolling; availability of low-cost row materials; precision control of composition and ability to use high-purity metals; applicability to composite type mixtures or immiscible components that currently cannot be produced by the conventional methods; and adaptability and versatility, including the ability to roll multilayer structure.

Sheet metal for controlled expansion properties of products such as for alkaline batteries, fuel cell electrodes; and for coins can be made by this process.

Powder Extrusion: Extrusion, in general, is a process that forces metal to flow through a shape-forming die. (see *Extrusion of Metals* on page 1519). The powder is placed in a vacuum-tight sheet metal container, then heated and extruded, generally through a cylindrical die. As powder particles pass through the extrusion die, they undergo intense deformation and pressure, which bonds them together and removes porosity between the particles. Because there is a limit to the amount of reduction in cross-sectional area that can be achieved by extrusion, often the billet extruded from one die is then further extruded through a die of smaller diameter to eliminate any trace of porosity. The full-density billets produced in this way can then be cut to length, reheated, and used in a closed forging die to produce complex-shaped parts.

This method is particularly useful in production of aluminum and titanium parts for aircraft. Extrusion of powder also is used to produce billets of specialty alloys of copper and tool steels, which are then machined or formed into finished products.

Powder Forging: The purpose of forging, whether performed hot or cold, is to improve part performance. Densification is an essential part of the powder forging process. The powder forging (PF) process is performed in three steps, with the first two similar to normal powder metallurgy processing. A form is pressed as a conventional PM compact, called a *preform*. The mass, density, and shape of the preform are controlled closely to ensure consistency in the characteristics of the final forged part. The preform is sintered with particular attention paid to the reducing of nonmetallic inclusions. The sintered preform can be forged to full density in two ways: direct forging the preforms from the sintering temperature, or forging sintered preforms after reheating to forging temperature. The amount of deformation involved is sufficient to give a final density approaching very closely that of the solid material, and consequently, the mechanical properties are comparable with those of material forged from wrought bar.

Advantages of powder metal forging include the following: improved strength and density; high level static and dynamic properties; material flexibility, from low- to high-alloy steel; minimum weight fluctuations and reduced burr waste; high cost-effectiveness; lower tooling cost; and good dimensional accordance of forged parts.

The powder forging process is used mainly in making parts for the automotive industry. Such parts can have inside and outside spline forms, cam forms, and other forms that require extensive machining. In addition to the well-known connecting rod, other applications include bearing races, torque converter hubs, and differential gear sets.

Additive Manufacturing with Metal Powder: Another approach to making parts from metal powders is by additive manufacturing (AM). Additive manufacturing processes use an energy beam, such as a laser, or material jetted from an inkjet print head to bond powder particles into the desired shape, as described in a CAD file, usually layer upon layer. AM processes for metal are derived from rapid prototyping with plastics, described in the section *Additive Manufacturing Plastics* on page 611. With this approach, parts can be made into shapes that cannot be made by conventional processes. For example, AM parts may have internal channels that are not straight or round in cross section. Also, parts can be made with details that are too fine or nested to be reached by conventional machining tools. Another advantage is that multiple parts can be consolidated into one part. Also, most of the powdered material is included in the part, so there is minimal material waste. For a discussion of metal AM processes, see *METAL CASTING, MOLDING, AND EXTRUSION* on page 1480.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Powder Metallurgy Materials

As precision-engineered materials, metal powders are available in a great variety for fabricating a wide range of products through the PM process. Generally, powder mixes for compacting are prepared from three powder types. The first type is admixed powder, in which elemental alloying powders (such as copper, nickel, graphite, and tin) are added to base element powders (such as iron or copper). The second type is partially alloyed powder, composed of two or more elements with alloying additives that are diffusion-bonded to the base powder during the powder manufacturing process. These powders produce a heterogeneous microstructure with good dimensional control and excellent as-sintered mechanical properties. The third type is prealloyed powder, which is atomized from alloyed furnace melts such that each powder particle has the same nominal composition throughout. Prealloyed powders yield homogeneous phase constituents in the microstructure.

Conventional Materials.—For an overview of the scope of conventional materials, refer to Table 2, Table 3, Table 4, and Table 5 that follow. Table 2 lists basic materials for ferrous structural parts. Full specifications for a variety of ferrous PM structural materials are covered in ASTM Standard B783-19 and MPIF Standard 35.

Table 2. PM Materials for Ferrous Structural Parts

Material	MPIF Designation Code[a] Composition	Density[b] g/cm^3	Tensile Strength MPa	Comments
Carbon steel	F-0008 0.8C	6.9	370	Cost-effective
	F-0008-HT 0.8C	6.9	390	
Copper steel	FC-0208 2Cu, 0.8C	6.7	410	Good sintered strength
	FC-0208-HT 2Cu, 0.8C	6.7	590	
Nickel steel	FN-0205 2Ni, 0.5C	7.1	390	Good heat-treated strength, impact energy
	FN-0205-HT 2Ni, 0.5C	7.1	1000	
Low-alloy steel	FL-4405 0.85Mo, 0.5C	7.1	460	Good hardenability, consistency in heat treatment
	FL-4405-HT 0.85Mo, 0.5C	7.1	1100	
Hybrid low-alloy steel	FNL-4405 2Ni, 0.85Mo, 0.5C	7.05	550	Best heat-treated strength, impact energy
	FNL-4405-HT 2Ni, 0.85Mo, 0.5C	7.05	1170	
Diffusion-alloyed steel	FD-0205 1.75Ni, 1.5Cu, 0.5Mo, 0.5C	6.95	540	Best sintered strength
	FD-0205-HT 1.75Ni, 1.5Cu, 0.5Mo, 0.5C	6.95	900	
Sinter hardened steel	FLC-4608-HT 1.35Ni, 1.5Cu, 0.5Mo, 0.8C	7.0	690	Hardenable in sintering
Stainless steel	SS-316N2 17Cr, 12Ni, 2.5Mo SS-430N2 17Cr	6.57.1	410 410	Good corrosion resistance, appearance

[a] Reference: MPIF Standard 35, "Materials Standards for PM Structural Parts."

[b] Density is given as typical values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3 shows basic materials for soft magnetic parts. Complete standard specifications for iron-phosphorous powder metallurgy parts for soft magnetic applications are covered in ASTM Standard A839-15 and MPIF Standard 35.

Table 3. PM Materials for Soft Magnetic Parts

Material	MPIF Designation Code[a] Composition	Density[b] g/cm^3	Magnetic Properties	
			Induction (kG)	Maximum Permeability H/m
Iron	FF-0000 <0.03C	6.6	9.0	1700
Phosphorus iron	FY-4500 0.45P	6.8	10.5	2300
Silicon iron	FS-0300 3Si	7.2	13.0	5000
Nickel iron	FN-5000	7.5	12.0	12000

[a] Reference: MPIF Standard 35, "Materials Standards for PM Structural Parts."
[b] Density is given as typical values.

Some powder materials (PM) for nonferrous structural parts are given in Table 4. ASTM Standard B823-15 and MPIF Standard 35 give complete information on nonferrous powder metallurgy (PM) materials for structural parts.

Table 4. PM Materials for Nonferrous Parts

Material	MPIF Designation Code[a] Composition	Density[b] g/cm^3	Usage and Characteristics
Copper	C-0000 0.2 max. other	8.0	Electrical parts, conductivity 85% IACS
Bronze	CTG-1001 10Sn, 1 Graphite	6.2	Self-lubricating bearings, 22% minimum oil content
Red brass	CZ-1000 10Zn	7.9	Hardware items, yield strength 76MPa.
Yellow brass	CZ-3000 30Zn	7.6	Hardware items, yield strength 110MPa
Nickel silver	CNZ-1818 18Ni, 18Zn	7.9	Appearance, corrosion resistance, yield strength 138MPa
Aluminum	4Cu, 0.5Mg, 1Si	2.6	Light weight, corrosion resistance, good electrical, thermal conductivity, T4 condition tensile strength 220MPa.

[a] Reference: MPIF Standard 35, "Materials Standards for PM Structural Parts."
[b] Density is given as typical values.

Table 5 shows materials used for self-lubricating bearings. More information about these materials, and other PM materials for self-lubricating bearings are given in ASTM Standard B438-17, ASTM B439-18, and MPIF Standard 35.

Table 5. Materials for Self-Lubricating Bearings

Material	MPIF Designation Code[a]	Density[b] g/cm^3	Oil Content Volume%	K Strength MPa
Bronze	CT-1000	6.0–6.4	24	130
	CTG1001-K	6.4–6.8	17	160
Diluted bronze	FCTG-3604-K	6.0–6.4	17	150
Iron graphite	FG-0303-K	5.6–6.0	18	70

[a] Reference: MPIF Standard 35, "Materials Standards for PM Structural Parts."
[b] Density is given as typical values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Advanced Materials.—Advanced materials outperform conventional materials with superior properties such as toughness, hardness, durability, and elasticity. There is always a real need for better materials; the questions are how much better and at what cost? An applied scientist, with a particular application in mind, will scour lists of known materials looking for one that meets his or her needs. The development of advanced materials can even lead to the design of completely new products, including medical implants and computers.

If existing materials are unsuitable, applied and basic scientists must work together to develop new materials. The area of advanced materials research is very broad in scope and potential applications, and synergism between what is available and what needs to be developed reflects the important and complementary roles of the basic and applied sciences in materials science.

While some advanced materials are already well known, it will take a few more years for others to appear in products. Here, we describe some advanced PM materials that are manufactured using advanced processes such as pressing, metal injection molding, and spray forming. In addition, certain alloys are produced nearly exclusively by PM techniques.

Superalloys : A superalloy, or high-performance alloy, is an alloy that exhibits specific desirable properties related to mechanical strength, stability at high temperatures, and surface resistance to oxidization and corrosion. Superalloys typically have a matrix with an austenitic face-centered cubic crystal structure. The use of high alloy PM materials, notably superalloys, is most common in the production of near-net shapes and the forging of preforms for aircraft turbine engines. Economic benefits have been the prime driving force in the use of PM for the manufacture of these high cost alloys.

These superalloys are processed from highly controlled metallurgically alloying elements, usually nickel, cobalt, or nickel-iron. Clean powders are produced by inert gas atomization methods that minimize surface oxidation during processing. After powder screening and cleaning, the powder is compacted using hot isostatic pressing (see *Isostatic Pressing* on page 1539). Thermochemical processing may be performed to enhance mechanical properties or microstructure. Hot extrusion of the atomized powder is an alternate consolidation method (see *Powder Extrusion* on page 1543).

PM processing offers the advantages of a homogeneous microstructure and near-net-shape configuration for a lower cost. As a result, countless pounds of PM superalloy components are now flying in both military and commercial aircraft engines.

Additional applications of superalloys include parts for space vehicles, submarines, nuclear reactors, military electric motors, racing and high-performance vehicles, chemical processing vessels, and heat exchanger tubing.

Tool Steels: Tool steel refers to a variety of carbon and alloy steels that are particularly well suited to be made into tools. Their suitability comes from their distinctive hardness, resistance to abrasion, their ability to hold a cutting edge, and their resistance to deformation at elevated temperatures.

It is well known that powder metallurgy provides a means of making new alloys and composites of tool materials, which cannot be made by conventional metallurgy, casting and hot-working methods. Powder metallurgy processing of high-speed steels has gained considerable significance over conventional ingot metallurgy processing.

High-performance tool steels and high-speed steels are produced in mill shapes using PM process techniques. PM tool steels offer these advantages:

- finer grain structures
- improved homogeneity and distribution of secondary and carbide phases
- elimination of secondary stringers
- less distortion in heat treatment
- improved grindability
- greater wear resistance
- improved toughness and fracture strength.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The hot isostatic process has also been used in the production of PM tool steels to near-net tool shapes, such as hobs and shaper cutters. Tool steel parts can also be made by conventional cold compacting combined with high-temperature sintering.

Refractory Metals: Refractory metals are a class of metals that are extraordinarily resistant to heat and wear. The expression is mostly used in the contexts of materials science, metallurgy, and engineering. The definition of the elements that belong to this group differs. By one definition, a melting point above 4000°F (2200°C) is necessary to qualify an element as refractory. Five elements, niobium, molybdenum, tantalum, tungsten and rhenium, are included in all definitions. The refractory metals, alloys, and composites are produced using powder metallurgy techniques. Powders of the pure metal are compacted into rectangular bars, sintered by heating using electric current, and further fabricated by cold-working with annealing steps. Refractory metals can be worked into wire, ingots, sheets, or foil.

Some of their applications include tools for working metals at high temperatures, casting molds, chemical-reaction vessels for corrosive environments, nuclear reaction control rods, tantalum capacitors, and tungsten-silver composite circuit breaker contacts. Refractory metals are stable against creep deformation to very high temperatures.

Beryllium: As a free element, beryllium is a steel-gray, strong, lightweight and brittle metal. Beryllium increases hardness and resistance to corrosion when alloyed with aluminum, cobalt, copper, iron, and nickel.

Powder metallurgy is the main processing route to produce beryllium components. The vacuum hot processing method results in a fine-grained machinable form of the material. The random orientation and fine grain size of powder metallurgy ingots enable beryllium to be used in structural applications with relatively uniform mechanical properties in all directions.

Vacuum hot pressing has been a standard consolidation technique throughout the development of beryllium technology, and hot isostatic pressing powder is the major form of beryllium in use today. Sometimes, hot isostatic pressing is substituted for the hot pressing step. Due to its light weight, beryllium is used in structural applications; its high flexural rigidity, thermal stability, thermal conductivity, and low density make beryllium a quality aerospace material for high-speed aircraft, missiles, spacecraft, and communication satellites. Because of its low density and atomic mass, beryllium is relatively transparent to X-rays and other forms of ionizing radiation; therefore, it is the most common window material for X-ray equipment and in particle physics experiments. The high thermal conductivities of beryllium and beryllium oxide have led to their use in heat transport and heat sinking applications.

Beryllium is used commercially in the manufacture of telecommunications infrastructure equipment, computers, and cellular phones, thereby helping people around the world to keep in touch. Also, medical lasers made with beryllia ceramics help ophthalmologists to restore or improve eyesight for millions. Beryllium ceramic is the only material that offers the thermal conductivity, strength, and dielectric properties required to contain and control these tiny, high-powered gas laser bores. Copper beryllium connectors transmit precise electrical signals to the delicate surgical instruments and monitoring devices used in the newest, non-invasive surgical techniques. Such techniques reduce patient trauma and infection risk, while speeding the process of healing and recovery.

Titanium: Titanium alloys are among the most important of the advanced materials that are key to improved performance in aerospace and conventional systems. This is because of the excellent combination of specific mechanical properties and outstanding corrosion behavior exhibited by titanium alloys. However, discouraging widespread use is the high cost of titanium alloys compared to competing materials. This has led to numerous investigations of various potentially lower cost processes, including powder metallurgy (PM). Titanium powder metallurgy can be divided into categories such as powder injection molding (use of a binder to produce complex small parts); near-net shaping (use of pre-alloyed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and blended elementals in die pressing or isostatic pressing); spraying (high-speed projecting of powder onto a substrate); and laser melting (powder feed or powder layer melted with a laser.

Titanium PM alloys have a combination of low density 2.6 oz/in^3 (4.5 g/cm^3) and high strength. The strengths vary from 70,000 psi (480 MPa) for some grades of commercial titanium to about 160,000 psi (1100 MPa) for structural titanium alloy products and over 250,000 psi (1725 MPa) for special forms such as wires and springs. Another important characteristic of titanium-based materials is the reversible transformation of the crystal structure from alpha (hexagonal close-packed) structure to beta (body-centered cubic) structure when the temperature exceeds 1634°F (890°C).

The use of PM titanium metal and its alloys continues to increase since PM provides a near-net shape product as compared to more expensive cast, forged, and machined processing. Depending on the application and production quantities, titanium PM near-net products are processed either by conventional press-and-sinter techniques or by hot isostatic pressing. The latter exceeds the minimum wrought alloy specifications.

If the final product is made net-shape by application of hot isostatic pressing (HIP), a lack of texture can result, thus giving equal properties in all directions. Product applications include aerospace/aircraft components, sporting goods, chemical processing equipment, and biomedical systems.

Design Considerations in Powder Metallurgy

The powder metallurgy manufacturer is often confronted by a drawing for a component designed with a conventional manufacturing process in mind. It is not desirable for the powder metallurgy component manufacturer or designer to attempt to follow these drawings; it is far better to redesign the component so that it can fulfill its design function, while taking full advantage of the powder metallurgy process, in particular the cost-effective manufacture to near-net shape with close dimensional tolerances.

The PM part and the complexity of tooling used to produce it are closely related. Two major factors in the compacting operation influence or control part design: the flow characteristic in the die and the degree of brittleness of the green parts.

Although powder metallurgy industry standards (MPIF Standard 35) provide useful physical and mechanical property design data for engineers familiar with the PM process, those less experienced with this manufacturing process may benefit from additional guidance. In this section, design considerations are divided into three broad areas: size and shapes, design details, and design of typical parts.

Sizes and Shapes.—*Part Sizes:* The size limitation of PM parts is based on powder compressibility and press tonnage. Since compaction occurs in the vertical direction, using only top and bottom motions, part lengths in the pressing direction are limited. The compression ratio—the ratio of the height of the loose powder filling the die to the height of the compacted part—also tends to limit vertical part lengths. A length-to-wall thickness ratio greater than 8:1 is difficult to press, and density variations are virtually unavoidable.

Shapes: The shape of the part must permit ejection from the die. Part geometry must be compatible with a uniaxial compaction motion in the vertical direction. Significant variations in part length in the cross section require different tooling motions in the compaction press. Cam, gears, and sprockets are readily made. The shape of the part should permit the construction of strong tooling. The part should be designed with as few changes in section thickness as possible: the number of levels in the part should not exceed the number of pressing actions available in the compacting press. With too many levels, density varies considerably and part quality becomes a problem. Face forms on upper or lower punches can provide bosses, pads, lettering, countersinks, and other features. Parts weighing a few grams to about 26 lb (around 12 kg) or more are possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design Details.—Successful design for PM rests on an understanding of how the unique aspects of the technology affect the countless details that make up the design of any structural part.

Holes: Holes in the pressing direction can be round. Tooling members, which create holes, are called core rods. Lightening holes are frequently added to large parts to reduce projected pressing area, thus making parts lighter and easier to press. Blind holes, blind steps in holes, and tapered holes are readily produced. Side holes have to be produced after a sintering operation, usually by machining.

Wall Thickness: Die fill is all-important. As a general rule, walls should not be made any thinner than 0.057 in. (1.45 mm). One should avoid designing long thin walls; they require tooling that is complicated, and the parts themselves have a tendency toward density variation.

Flatness: Total measured flatness depends on part thickness and surface area. Thin parts tend to distort more than thick parts during sintering or heat treatment. Repressing improves flatness. Projection basses are easier to flatten than entire face areas.

Taper and Draft: Drafts are generally not required or desired on sides of parts. While drafts on outer sections for ejection are sometimes helpful, producing one demands careful timing of the tools and slower production rates.

Fillet and Radii: Generous fillet radii are most desirable. Tooling with such fillets is more economical and longer lasting. Parts made with fillets have greater structural integrity (Fig. 20). Parts with generous radii are more easily and more quickly made.

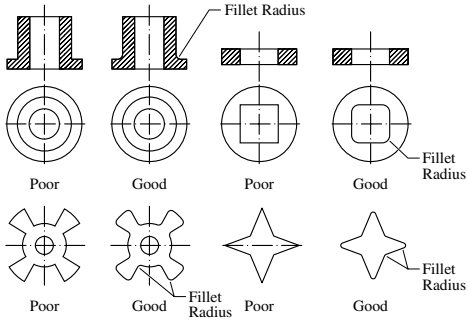
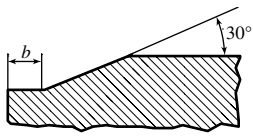


Fig. 20. Examples of PM Parts Showing Poor and Good Designs (*Source:* Metal Powder Federation)

Chamfers and Bevels: Chamfers are necessary on front edges to prevent burring. For example, on bushings (Fig. 21) a 30° to 45° chamber and 0.005 to 0.015 in. (0.13 to 0.38 mm) flat to eliminate feature edges are the preferred.



b = 0.13 to 0.38 mm (0.005 to 0.015 in.)

Fig. 21. Chamfers are Preferred on Parts Edges (*Source:* Metal Powder Federation)

Countersinks: A countersink is a chamfer around a hole for a screw or bolt head (Fig. 22). When the countersink is formed by a punch, a 0.010 in. (0.25 mm) nominal flat is essential in order to avoid sharp, flanged edges on the punch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

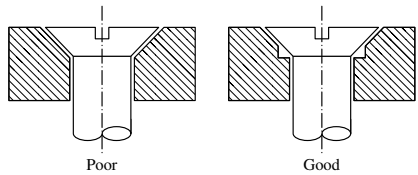


Fig. 22. Countersink in Clearance (*Source:* Metal Powder Federation)

Flanges: Flanges or overhands can be produced by step in the die. Too long flanges a causes ejection difficulties. A long flange should incorporate a draft around the flange, a radius at the bottom edge, and radius at the juncture of the flange and component body to reduce stress concentrations and the likelihood of fracture.

Hubs: The PM process can readily produce hubs, which are complementary part sections to gears, sprockets, or cams. It is important to include a generous radius between the hub and flange section and to maximize space between the hub and the root diameter of the gear or sprocket.

Slots and Grooves: Grooves can be pressed into either end of a part from projections on the punch face, with the following general caveats (Fig. 23). Curved or semicircular grooves are limited to maximum depth of 20 percent of the overall part length. Rectangular grooves are limited to a maximum depth of 15 percent of thickness of the workpiece in the pressing direction, surfaces parallel to the pressing direction have up to 12° draft, and all corners are radiused. Deep narrow slots and grooves require fragile tool members and should thus be avoided.

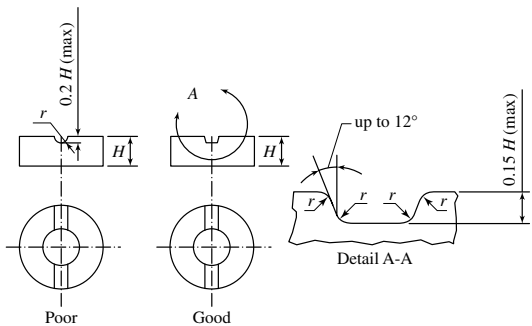


Fig. 23. Semicircular and Rectangular Groove (*Source:* Metal Powder Federation)

Undercuts: Undercuts on the horizontal plane (perpendicular to the pressing direction) cannot be made since they prevent part ejection from the die. Annular grooves must be machined as a second operation (Fig. 24a).

For a part such as that shown in Fig. 24b, where a juncture undercut is needed to allow fit-up to a "dead corner", an alternative approach is shown in Fig. 24c.

Tolerances: For reasons of economics, tolerances no closer than necessary should be specified. Table 6 illustrates tolerances characteristic of PM and competitive near-net-shape forming methods.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

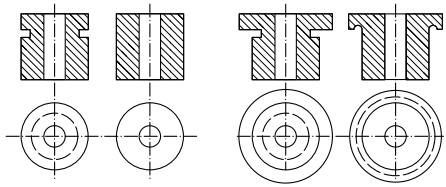


Fig. 24. Undercuts: a) Annular Groves Cannot Be Molded; b) Undercuts Cannot Be Molded; c) Undercut Can Be Molded (*Source:* Metal Powder Federation)

Table 6. Tolerances that Can Be Produced in PM Process

Forming Method	Typical Dimensional Tolerances (±) (in/in) (mm/100 mm)	Critical Dimensional Tolerances (±) (in/in) (mm/100 mm)
PM	0.002 (0.203)	0.001 (0.102)
PM (secondary forming)	0.001 (0.102)	0.0005 (0.051)
Cold forming	0.010 (1.016)	0.002 (0.203)
Hot extrusion	0.010 (1.016)	0.003 (0.305)
Fine blanking (single level)	0.0005 (0.013)	0.0002 (0.020)
Die casting[a]		
Magnesium and Aluminum	0.002 (0.203)	0.0010 (0.107)
Zinc	0.0025 (0.254)	0.0010 (0.107)
Hot closed-die forging		
Conventional	0.02 (2.032)	0.015 (1.524)
PM perpendicular to press axis	0.0032 (0.325)	0.0025 (0.254)[b]
PM parallel to press axis	0. 010 (1.016)	0.005 (0.508)

[a] Die parting line tolerance will be two to three times greater than the data shown.
[b] Fixture-quenched forgings, i.e., forgings clamped for quenching during heat treatment immediately after hot forging, can hold tighter tolerance.

Design of Typical Parts.— Although PM is used for a whole host of parts in many different applications, most parts (typical categories include gears, cams, assemblies, and bearings) have their own unique design considerations.

Gears: Gears are well-suited to PM production. Carbide dies for production gears provide long life and good accordance. PM gears can be made with blind corners, thus eliminating the need for undercut relief. PM gears can be comminuted with other configuration such as cams, and various other components. PM helical gears are possible; copper infiltration is sometimes used to improve teeth density. Since tooth and shape is not a problem, true involve gear forms are more easily produced through PM than with other fabrication methods. One should keep in mind when designing PM gears that hubs or pinions should be located as far as possible from gear root diameters.

Cams: Cams are well-suited to PM production: The process provides excellent surface finishing and part-to-part consistency; the natural finish of a self-lubricating PM cam will often outwear a ground cam surface; for radial cams, the shape is formed in the die; for face cams, the shape is formed in the punch faces.

Assemblies: Two or more PM parts can often be joined from a unit that is difficult, if not impossible, to make as a single structure. Capitalizing on PM's flexibility, it is feasible to make assemblies of very difficult materials such as a bronze bearing in a ferrous structural part. PM parts can be joined by conventional methods and also by sintering together

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

materials of appropriately different characteristics. Copper infiltration during sintering can be used to bond steel parts.

Bearings: Bearings are natural products for PM because of its controlled porosity and the resulting self-contained lubricant. Plane bearings, flanged bearings, spherical bearings, and thrust washers are commonly produced with PM technology. The operation environment should be carefully considered: external lubrication, cooling, and hardened or chromium-plated shafts tend to increase permissible loads. Repeated start-stop operation, oscillatory or reciprocating motion, high speed, and temperature extremes tend to decrease permissible loads.

Economics of Powder Metallurgy

Powder metallurgy is a continually and rapidly evolving technology that embraces most metallic and alloy materials and a wide variety of shapes. PM is a highly developed method of manufacturing reliable ferrous and nonferrous products. The growth of the PM industry during the past few decades is largely attributable to the cost savings associated with net- or near-net-shape processing compared to other metalworking methods such as casting or forging.

The following will explain why powder metallurgy is competitive against alternative production processes. There are two principal reasons for using a powder metallurgy product:

1) cost savings

2) unique properties attainable only by the PM method

In the automotive sector, which accounts for about 80 percent of structural PM production, the reason for choosing PM is, in the majority of cases, an economic one. Why then is PM more cost-effective?

- A sintered PM part of comparable quality may be cheaper than a cast of wrought component.
- It provides better material utilization with close dimensional tolerances.
- It is suited to high-volume parts production requirements.
- It provides long-term performance reliability in critical applications.

Conventional metal forming or shaping processes, against which PM competes, generally involve significant machining operations from bar stock or from forged or cast blanks. These machining operations can be costly and are wasteful of material and energy. This fact is illustrated in Table 7, which shows that material utilization in excess of 95 percent can be achieved with close dimensional tolerances.

Table 7. Raw Material Utilization and Energy Requirements of Various Manufacturing Processes

Manufacturing Process	Raw Material Utilization %	Energy Requirement per kg Finished Part MJ (BTU)
Casting	90	30–38 (23,434–36,017)
Sintering	95	29 (27,486)
Cold or warm extrusion	85	41 (38,860)
Hot-drop forging	75–80	46–49 (43,599–45,495)
Machining process	40–50	66–82 (66,555–77,721)

The example in Table 7 compiles data for a comparison for a production of notch segments for track transmission. The PM process (sintering) has the highest raw material utilization (95 percent) and the lowest energy requirement per kg of finished part compared with other manufacturing processes. The energy savings alone contribute significantly to the economic advantage offered by PM. Compared with forging, machining, and a number of other processes, PM consumes only around 45 to 50 percent of the energy and the number of process steps is greatly reduced.

Equipment costs for conventional PM processing are somewhat similar to those for bulk forging, but the cost increases significantly for HIP methods. Labor costs are not as high in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

other processes because operations are primarily performed on highly automated equipment, and the skills required are not as high.

Powder Metallurgy Standards

Why are PM standards important? Powder metallurgy is a rather young industrial technology. The first local industries were started in the middle of the 20th century. During the next 30–40 years, business expanded primarily within the various continents, but since the last decade, the rate of expansion has accelerated and today the business is truly global.

This global business requires new modern tools to support further growth and sharpening of the weapons to compete with other manufacturing technologies. In this context, ISO standards, ASTM, and MPIF standards support confidence in powder metallurgy and guides end users, often with global presence, to make the right choices in using components and solutions based on metal powder.

ISO Standards.—International Powder Metallurgy standards are generated by the ISO technical committee, ISO/TC 119. The five sub-committees of this technical committee have created a range of standards that address sintered metals and hard metals as well as MIM standards. These sub-committees have created the following standards:

ISO 3252:1999 – Terminology
ISO 3923-1 and-2 – Apparent density measurement
ISO 3953 – Tap Density measurement
ISO 4490 – Flow Rate
ISO 18549-1 and-2 – Apparent density and rate at elevated temperatures
ISO 3927 + Corrigendum 1 – Compressibility and uniaxial compression
ISO 3954 – Powder sampling
ISO 3995 – Green strength
ISO 4491-1, -2, -3 and -4 – Oxygen content
ISO 4496 – Acid insoluble content in iron, copper, tin, and bronze powders
ISO 4497 – Particle sizing by dry sieving
ISO 10076 – Particle sizing by sedimentation analysis
ISO 10070 – Specific surface area
ISO 13944 – Lubricant content
ISO 13947 – Non-metallic inclusion content using powder forged specimen
ISO 14167 – Testing of copper infiltration powders
ISO 4492 – Dimensional changes in compaction and sintering
ISO 2738 – Permeable sintered metal materials-density, oil content, open porosity
ISO 4003 – Permeable sintered metal materials-bubble test pore size
ISO 4022 – Permeable sintered metal materials-fluid permeability
ISO 3369 – Density of impermeable sintered materials
ISO 2739 – Radial crushing strength of sintered bushes
ISO 2740 – Tensile test pieces
ISO 3928 – Fatigue test pieces
ISO 5754 – Unnotched impact test pieces
ISO 3312 – Young's modulus measurement
ISO 3325 + Amendment – Transverse rupture strength
ISO 4498 – Apparent hardness and microhardness
ISO 14317 – Compressive Yield Strength
ISO/TR 14321 – Metallographic preparation and examination
ISO 4507 – Case-hardening depth measurement
ISO 7625 – Sample preparation for chemical analysis of carbon content
ISO 23519 – Sintered metal materials, excluding hard metals
ISO 28279 – Sintered metal materials
ISO 3326 – Magnetization coercivity
ISO 3327 – Transverse rupture strength

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO 3738-1 and-2 – Rockwell hardness testing
ISO 3878 – Vickers hardness testing
ISO 3907 – Total carbon content
ISO 3908 – Insoluble carbon content
ISO 3909 – Cobalt content
ISO 4489 – Sampling and testing of sintered hardmetals
ISO 4499-1 and-2 – Metallography
ISO 4501 – Titanium content
ISO 4503 and 4883 – X-ray fluorescence analysis
ISO 4505 – Metallographic assessment of porosity and uncombined carbon
ISO 4506 – Compression testing
ISO 4884 – Sampling and testing of powders using sintered test pieces
ISO 7627-1,-2,-3,-4,-5, and -6 – Chemical analysis by frame atomic spectrometry
ISO 11877 and 17352 – Silicon in cobalt metal powders
ISO 28079 – Palmqvist toughness testing
ISO 28080 – Abrasion tests for hard metals
ISO 26482 – Lead and cadmium content
ISO 22394 – Knoop hardness test
ISO 11876 – Calcium, copper, iron, magnesium, manganese, sodium, nickel, and zinc in cobalt metal powder
ISO 11873 – Sulfur and carbon contents in cobalt metal powders
ISO 5755:2012 – Sintered metal materials specifications
ISO 22068 – Sintered-metal injection-mounded material specifications

The participation of the United States in ISO/TC119 is through the member body, the American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

ASTM Standards.—The ASTM international committee with the responsibility for development of PM standards is Committee B09 within the general subject Metal Powders and Metal Powders Products. This committee is composed of sub-committees that address specific segments as follows:

B09.01 – Terminology
B09.02 – Base Metal Powders
B09.03 – Refractory Metal Powders
B09.04 – Bearings
B09.05 – Structural Parts
B09.06 – Cemented Carbides
B09.11 – Near Full Density Powder Metallurgy Materials
B09.98 – Long Range Planning and Awards

Standards can be found by searching the catalog of each subject area of the sub-committee.

MPIF Standards.—The Metal Powder Industry Federation (MPIF) Standard 35 is a family of publications that comprises four separate publications dealing with materials for conventional PM structural parts, PM self-lubricating bearings, powder forged (PF) steel, and metal injection molded parts (MIM). The same materials may appear in more than one publication or section of the standard depending upon their common use, e.g., some structural materials may also be used in bearing applications and vice versa, and stainless steel materials may be manufactured by more than one PM process, such as conventional PM or MIM, dependent upon part design and use.

Powder metallurgy standards available from MPIF include:

MPIF Standard 35 – Materials Standards for PM Structural Parts
MPIF Standard 35 – Material Standards for PM Self-Lubricating Bearings
MPIF Standard 35 – Materials Standards for PM Steel Parts
MPIF Standard 35 – Materials Standards for PM Metal Injection Molding Parts

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metal Additive Manufacturing

Additive manufacturing (AM), also known as 3D printing, is a group of processes in which materials are joined selectively to transform information in computer-aided design (CAD) files into three-dimensional (3D) parts. The term "additive" is used to distinguish these processes from "subtractive" (machining, grinding, and chemical or electrical erosion) or forming (casting, rolling, and forging).

ASTM Committee F-42 was organized in 2009 to develop standards for AM. One of the committee's first actions was to define standard terminology, embodied in ASTM Standard F2792 (withdrawn); the current standard is ISO/ASTM 52900:2015. (For more on AM standards, see *Standards for Additive Manufacturing* on page 1565.) This standard groups AM processes into seven categories (listed here alphabetically):

Binder Jetting: A liquid bonding agent is selectively deposited to join powdered material, layer by layer, until a 3D shape is formed. The binder is deposited as fine droplets through the jets, or orifices, of an ink-jet printer onto a layer of powder.

Directed Energy Deposition: This process fuses material, which may be in the form of metal powder or wire, by melting as it is deposited into the focal point of a directed thermal energy source (laser, electron beam, or plasma arc).

Material Extrusion: In this AM process, material is selectively dispensed through a nozzle or orifice. A wide range of extruded materials may be used, from plastics to concrete to food.

Material Jetting: Through controlled jetting, droplets of material are selectively deposited to build a form. Materials, which may incorporate photopolymer and wax, are deposited through the orifices of an inkjet printer.

Powder Bed Fusion: This AM process uses thermal energy to selectively fuse areas of a powder bed. The energy source—a laser or electron beam—focuses to fuse each layer of powder that builds up the part.

Sheet Lamination: In this process, sheets of material are stacked and bonded across their planar interfaces to form an object.

Vat Photopolymerization: A specialized liquid photopolymer in a vat is selectively cured by light-activated polymerization. The light source may be a continuously moving laser or a digital array of simultaneous light projections.

Reviewing this list, it can be seen that the material feed stock may be a liquid, powder, wire or filament, or sheet. In all cases, AM machines selectively convert material in one of these simple forms into a complex, 3D part, generally by adding layer upon layer.

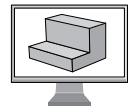
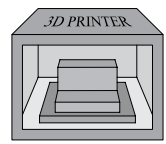
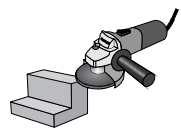
Additive Manufacturing Workflow.—Additive manufacturing processes, involving metals or other materials, follow the same basic workflow, as summarized in Table 8. A three-dimensional (3D) model is created using CAD software. (For more on this topic, see *CAD/CAM* on page 1390.) This model is converted into a surface model made up of interfacing triangles, resulting in an STL (Standard Tessellation Language) file. The build file is then sliced into two-dimensional (2D) layers. Each layer profile is used to control the AM machine's motions, which add material in that profile and build the 3D model (Table 8). Typically, the layer thickness is 0.004 in. (0.102 mm), but it can range from 0.0007 to 0.010 in. (0.0178 to 0.254 mm).

AM processes have been adapted for commercial use under various trade names and are used to produce parts in metals, polymers, ceramics, and various composites. For example, the section *Additive Manufacturing Plastics* on page 611 describes processes used for plastics: stereolithography (SLA), which is defined by ASTM as *vat polymerization*; selective laser sintering (SLS), which is an example of *powder bed fusion*; fused deposition modeling (FDM), which is an example of *extrusion*; binder jetting (BJ); and material jetting (MJ).

This section discusses AM processes used to produce metal parts: powder bed fusion (PBF), including selective laser melting (SLM) and electron beam melting (EBM), binder jetting (BJ), and powder- and wire-fed directed energy deposition (DED).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Additive Manufacturing Workflow

Solid Computer Model: A solid model of the part to be produced by an additive manufacturing (AM) process can be imported from an existing file or created using CAD (computer-aided design) software. The model may be reverse engineered, using a laser scanner or other coordinate measuring device to replicate an existing part. In biomedical applications, a CAT (computer-aided tomography) or MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) scan may be used to design a model for a custom-fit implant.	
STL File: One of the output formats of CAD software is an STL (Standard Tessellation Language) file. This surface representation of the solid part consists of interconnected triangles generated by algorithms within the CAD software to precisely represent the surface of the solid part without gaps or overlaps. The more complex and curved the surface of the part, the more triangles are needed to represent it.	
Virtual Slices: The STL file is positioned and oriented electronically on the 3D printer's build platform. The resulting build file is separated into slices by geometric algorithms in the printer that determine the intersecting points of each horizontal plane with the sides of the triangles in the STL file. These points outline the cross-sections to be printed in each 2D layer that will build up the 3D part.	
Additive Manufacturing: CAM (computer-aided manufacturing) software in the AM machine converts the cross-section of each layer into machine instructions that control the motion of a material conversion device. In the *powder bed fusion* process, this conversion device would be a laser beam that selectively fuses metal powder into a solid layer. In *fused deposition modeling*, the device would be an extrusion head that deposits a polymer in layers corresponding to cross-sections of the part.	
Post-Processing: The completed 3D part is extracted from the build plate, and any supports are removed. If necessary, the part may be heat treated for material strength; in some cases, it may undergo hot isostatic pressing (HIP) to close up porosity. Surfaces requiring a precision fit can be machined or ground. The last step is finishing the part using such standard processes as sanding, shot or grit blasting, and coating.	

Powder Bed Fusion (PBF).—Powder bed fusion is ASTM's term for an additive manufacturing process in which a point heat source selectively fuses or melts a region of a powder bed. There are two types of PBF technology; each system has advantages and disadvantages compared to the other.

Selective Laser Melting (SLM): In the original ASTM Standard F2792, *laser sintering* AM is defined as a "powder bed fusion process used to produce objects from powdered materials using one or more lasers to selectively fuse or melt particles at the surface, layer by layer, in an enclosed chamber." The definition goes further to note that "sintering" is a historical term and a misnomer, because the process involves full or partial melting, as opposed to traditional powdered metal sintering, in which a compacted powder part is heated below its melting point. For this reason, the term *selective laser melting* is widely used and accurately describes the process. It is similar in principle to *selective laser sintering* (SLS) described in *Additive Manufacturing Plastics* on page 611.

The SLM system is an important technical innovation, with roots dating to the 1990s. Early systems used a gas or disk laser and processed primarily low-melting-point bronze powder, mixed with stainless steel powder that had a higher melting point. Today, SLM systems use a fiber laser as the fusion heat source to completely melt the powder. Typical laser power in metal SLM systems ranges between 100 and 1000 W, and some modern systems have two or four lasers operating simultaneously to increase production rates. Of the metal AM processes, SLM is one of the most widely used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

After the heat source, the most important components of SLM systems are beam deflection optics, which provide scanning capability for selectively melting areas of the powder bed. With scan speeds of up to 23 ft/s (7 m/s), the scanning mirror must be fast, accurate, and reliable.

The final significant optical element is the correction lens, which ensures that the beam is round as it traverses the build platform at different angles. Most systems use an f-theta lens design with anti-reflection coatings to prevent damage from the beam reflecting back into the laser. A schematic illustration of the laser-beam powder bed fusion process is shown in Fig. 25.

The system consists of a powder bed build area on a build plate that moves in the Z-direction. For each printed slice (see Table 8), the plate moves down by one layer thickness. The powder deposition system then spreads a new layer of powder, and the laser traces the profile of that part slice on the layer of powder. This sequence is repeated until the full 3D part is completed.

Because the laser melts the metal powder, to prevent oxidation, the SLM mechanism is enclosed in a gas-tight chamber containing argon or other nonreactive gases. Typically, powder particle size used in SLM processes is between 0.0008 and 0.0024 in. (0.02 and 0.06 mm). Titanium, stainless steel, and nickel-base superalloys are commonly processed by SLM; aluminum, copper, and gold are more challenging, but some newer machines feature lasers with colors in a green range (~500 nm) that are more readily absorbed by these metals.

Laser spot size is typically 0.0027 in. (0.07 mm) in diameter but may be up to 0.006 in. (0.15 mm) in diameter. At any given instant, metal particles within the laser spot are melted, forming a small pool of molten metal. This pool quickly solidifies, as heat transfers to the solid metal build plate on the first layer or to the previously solidified material in the layers below the current one. Thus, the molten metal pool within the laser spot zone continuously forms and solidifies as the laser spot moves rapidly across the powder layer, much like a mini-welding process.

The high rate of solidification of the molten pool results in very fine microstructure and excellent mechanical properties. Strength of SLM-processed material is often greater than for the same alloy in conventional casting due to this fine microstructure. On the other hand, because the process involves melting and solidification, gas porosity and solidification porosity may form, leading to fine pores throughout the material. Such defects significantly reduce fatigue and impact strengths, though without reducing the final part's yield and tensile strength.

One advantage of AM, and SLM in particular, is that the processes can produce overhangs and internal channels or cavities. In SLM, when material is printed in an overhang, the molten pool sits on loose powder from previously created layers.

Even though molten metal in such an overhang cools and solidifies rapidly, some of the metal seeps down into the spaces between the loose particles, leaving a rough surface on

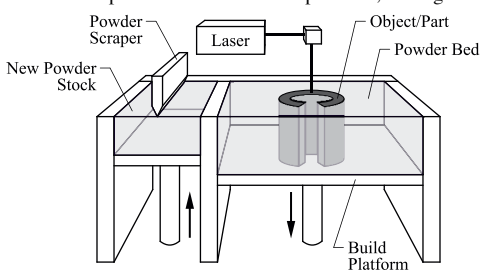


Fig. 25. Schematic Illustration of Laser Beam Powder Bed Fusion, also known as Selective Laser Melting (SLM)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the bottom of the overhang. This roughness is particularly high if the angle of the overhang, relative to horizontal, is less than 45 degrees. As a result, the as-printed finish of up-facing surfaces will be better than down-facing overhang surfaces. (Surface finish in SLM material may be improved by subsequent shot peening.) Typical surface finishes of up-facing and side-facing surfaces are equivalent to those of investment castings, so only bearing or mounting surfaces may need to be machined.

Since the rate of heat transfer into loose powder is much less than the rate into solid metal, heat transfer from overhangs is reduced and the cooling rate is lower than in layers in the body of a part. Structural supports printed beneath overhangs (Fig. 26) and connected to the base plate provide a path for increased heat transfer from overhangs. Supports also anchor the printed part to the base and reduce distortion due to differences in temperature throughout the part as it is printed. Without such supports, overhanging layers of the printed parts would deflect upward due to thermal stress. A downside of such supports is that they can interfere with printing more than one layer of parts in one build.

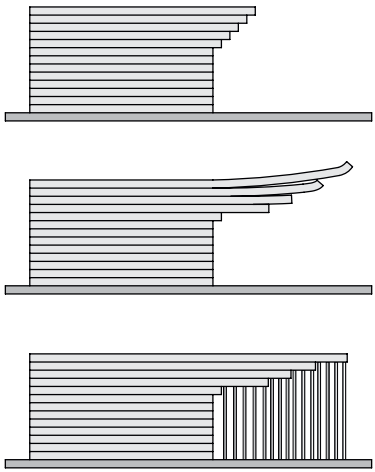

Where 3D printed layers overhang loose powder instead of solid layers, more heat is retained, changing the cooling rate.
When these overhanging layers are longer, they can bend upward during cooling, as a result of thermal stress.
This distortion can be prevented with added structures (to be removed later) to reduce thermal stress, support the overhangs, and anchor the part.

Fig. 26. Use of Supports to Anchor Parts in SLM Process

After the part is completed, the unused powder is collected for future use, and the base plate with the parts attached is removed from the SLM machine. Parts usually are cut from the plate using a band saw or wire electrical discharge machining (EDM), supports are removed, and any surfacing is completed.

Electron Beam Melting (EBM): Powerful electron beams have been used for welding since the late 1950s. At the beginning of the twenty-first century, this energy source was adapted to powder bed fusion (PBF) as the electron beam melting (EBM) process. EBM is commonly used to process titanium and superalloy powders into net-shaped parts—providing significant material savings over traditional manufacturing processes.

In EBM, a tungsten filament emits electrons at a high voltage of 60,000 V (60 kV). A focusing coil or electromagnetic lens produces a converging Gaussian beam with a spot size of 0.008–0.04 in. (0.203–1.02 mm) and a power of up to 6,000 W; a deflection coil directs the scanning beam over the surface of the powder layer at a speed of 26,000 ft/s (8,000 m/s). These focus and deflection coils are the electronic counterparts of the f-theta and scanning optics of the laser beam systems in SLM. Schematically, the EBM system is similar to that of SLM; however, while the laser beam is moved optically by deflection

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

mirrors in SLM, the electron beam is moved by electromagnetic coils with no moving parts in EBM, facilitating high-speed scanning.

EBM machines require a vacuum in the build chamber of $<1 \times 10^{-4}$ mbar in order to prevent obstruction of the focused beam. Similar to SLM machines, EBM machines have a build platform that moves downward one layer thickness for each build cycle, and a powder distribution system, sometimes called a *recoater*, to spread a new layer of powder. But unlike SLM systems, the electron beam repulses powder particles in the build layer. To prevent powder dispersion, each layer of powder in the build box is first partially sintered by rapidly scanning the total surface with the electron beam at low power; this causes the powder particles to adhere to the previous layer and adjoining particles. Then the electron beam power is increased, and the layer profile is scanned, melting powder particles within the beam spot. Because EBM power is much greater than the laser power in SLM, the particle size used is larger, between 0.002 and 0.004 in. (0.055 and 0.105 mm).

Because each layer is partially sintered by quick scan of the electron beam over each powder layer, it is generally not necessary to print support structures for overhangs. Therefore, unlike SLM, the EBM process allows the production of multiple layers of parts in one build. In addition, because each layer is preheated—with the temperature of powder in the build box reaching temperatures around 1300°F (700°C)—temperature variation throughout the build box is very low and distortion due to thermal stress is negligible.

Unlike the SLM process, the unused powder in the EBM process is not loose but is lightly sintered into a cake surrounding the finished part. After the build box cools down, which takes 12–18 hours, the powder cake is removed. An air gun, using the same-sized powder particles as those in the build, is used to impact the cake and break up the unused powder cake into fragments. Particles of the fragmented cake are reused in a future build.

Binder Jetting (BJ).—Like SLM and EBM, binder jetting begins with an STL CAD file that is sliced in preparation for layer-by-layer printing (see Table 8), the part is built in a powder bed in which a build plate is lowered one layer thickness for each slice, and a recoater spreads a new layer of metal powder. Unlike the SLM and EBM processes, a printhead with one or more jets passes over the powder surface and deposit binder droplets within the 2D slice profile defined by the CAD file of the 3D part. This sequence is repeated layer by layer, until the 3D part is completed.

In BJ, powder layer thickness ranges between 0.001 and 0.005 in. (0.0254 and 0.127 mm). A useful analogy is to think of the process as an inkjet printhead in a paper printer and each layer of metal powder as the paper sheet. Because binder jetting occurs at room temperature, there are no issues of heat transfer and supports are not needed. Therefore, as with EBM, multiple layers of parts can be made in each build box, increasing productivity.

In BJ, each binder droplet agglomerates powder particles into a building block called a *volume element* or *voxel*—the 3D equivalent of a 2D picture element or pixel. The binder serves as an adhesive, bonding particles in the new powder layer into a voxel and to material in the previous layer (Fig. 27). This bond is not enough to transmit useful loads, but it is sufficient to handle the part during removal of excess power surrounding the part, removal of the part from the build box, and setup for the next process step. Printed parts are then sent to a sintering furnace, where the binder burns off and the powder particles sinter together at a temperature below the melting point.

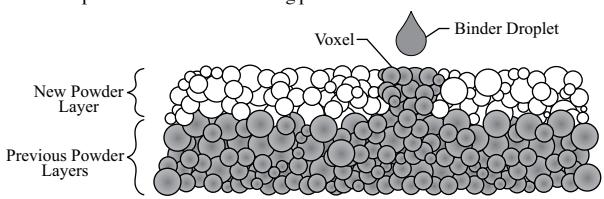


Fig. 27. Binder Jetting Process

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In one version of this process, the part is lightly sintered, and the remaining volume between particles is filled by infiltration with a lower-melting-point alloy. In such cases, the printed powder is typically stainless steel and the infiltrating material bronze. Average particle size for this method is 0.001–0.002 in. (0.030–0.060 mm). The resulting material is useful for making functional prototypes, because it has properties comparable to high-strength steel.

In another variation, the printed material is sintered to full density. In this case, the materials used may be stainless steel, Inconel, or another high-strength metal. To promote sintering to full density, very small particle size is used, typically 0.0004–0.0006 in. (0.010–0.015 mm).

Metals produced by BJ processes may have residual porosity as high as 2 percent. Because these processes do not use a laser, they can be used to produce parts of copper, gold, and other metals that would reflect laser light. In addition, BJ can be used for ceramic materials. Typical print resolutions are 1200 dots per inch, corresponding to a voxel length of 0.0077 in. (0.196 mm).

Directed Energy Deposition (DED).—In this metal AM process, the energy source may be a laser, electron beam, or plasma arc. The material source may be metal powder or metal wire. Unlike the powder bed processes described above, DED processes the powder or feed wire into the focal point of the energy source. Typically, the substrate and part are fitted to a 5-axis motion system, while the energy and powder nozzles remain stationary.

Powder-Fed DED: In the most common application of directed energy deposition (Fig. 28), metal powder flows through nozzles at high speed into the focal point of a laser. The powder melts and is deposited layer upon layer onto a substrate or a previously built part. As in powder bed fusion processes, liquid metal in this molten pool solidifies very quickly.

To prevent oxidation of the molten metal, an inert shield gas (argon or nitrogen) engulfs the metal deposition region. Alternately, the entire build system may be enclosed in a chamber containing inert gas. In one typical system, the 5-axis motion and powder application systems are enclosed in a chamber measuring 31 by 31 by 24 in. (800 by 800 by 600 mm) in length, width, and height.

A major advantage of this process is that it does not involve spreading a layer of powder; therefore, it can be used to apply a material surface to an existing part or substrate. DED processes, as a result, are widely used for cladding and repair of existing parts. Another advantage of DED is the high build rate of up to 2.2 lb (1 kg) per hour.

Unlike powder bed processes, powder-fed DED processes have multiple nozzles, each of which can supply a different material. Therefore, material can be deposited with varying composition. For example, if one nozzle applies stainless steel and another supplies

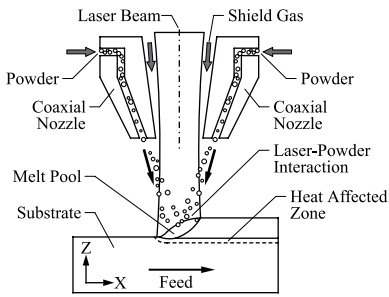


Fig. 28. Directed Energy Deposition with Powder Feed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

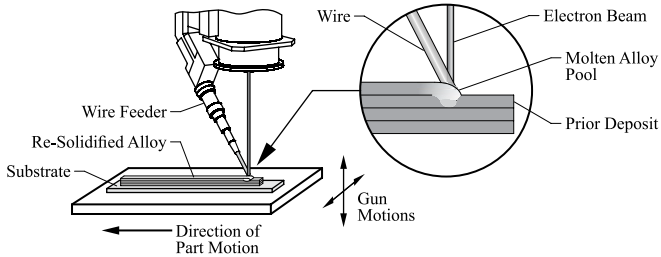


Fig. 29. Directed Energy Deposition with Wire Feed

Inconel nickel-based superalloy, a part could be built with a relatively low-cost stainless steel base that transitions to the higher cost Inconel surface where greater heat resistance is required.

A major disadvantage of this process is rough surface finish. In addition, because the powder is blown onto the surface, not all of the powder becomes melted, and material losses can range from 20 to 60 percent.

Wire-Fed DED: Another approach to DED involves feeding a metal wire from a spool into the focal point of an electron beam (Fig. 29). Energy from an electron beam continuously melts wire fed from a coil into the beam focal point. The motion of the base plate beneath the beam and wire feed builds up the part as directed by the CAD file.

In this case, the process must be carried out in a vacuum chamber, because any gas in the environment would interfere with the electron beam. Wire-fed electron beam DED processes are capable of very high build rates, up to 25 lb (11.3 kg) per hour, and do not result in any direct metal loss. But since such processes essentially involve weld metal build-up, the finish is rough; machining the entire surface is needed to reach desired dimensions and surface finish.

Hybrid Processes: Both wire-fed and powder-fed approaches to DED provide the basis for hybrid manufacturing, or combined additive/subtractive manufacturing. The basic form of the part to be produced is made by one of the DED processes, and the finished dimensions and surface finish are achieved by material removal, usually cutting. This sequence of operations can be carried out in one machine with one setup to ensure accuracy. The metal addition device (powder deposition or wire deposition) is attached to the CNC tool disk or carriage and is used to add metal where it is needed, while the usual cutting tools are then used to carry out the subsequent machining and finishing operations.

One way to use such hybrid systems is to fix a conventionally manufactured (by forging or casting) base shape in the hybrid machine, and then add features, such as nozzles or fins, that would be impossible or difficult to form in the conventional process. Then, the overall part can be finish-machined in the same setup.

Hybrid additive/subtractive manufacturing offers a convenient approach for machine shops to enter into additive manufacturing. Some hybrid equipment providers offer retrofit systems—including powder feed, laser, and software in one package—to convert a standard 5-axis CNC system into a hybrid additive/subtractive manufacturing cell.

Comparing AM with Conventional Processes.—AM technology is just a few decades old, but great progress has been made in applying these processes to production of tailored, one-of-a-kind or limited-production parts. The majority of current applications involve specialized materials used in aerospace and medical fields. However, serial (mass) production of other manufactured items is economically feasible in some cases—increasingly so as rapid development of AM processes, materials, and applications continues.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

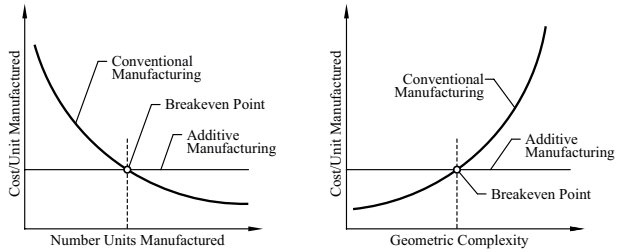


Fig. 30. a) Cost as a Function of Number of Units Manufactured; b) Cost as a Function of Geometric Complexity of a Part

Advantages of AM technology include:

- Short lead time and fast prototyping can be achieved using a 3D file.
- Design changes easily can be made, facilitating product development.
- New designs are possible that are not doable with conventional processes.
- Complex assemblies can be combined into a single part.
- Flexibility enables production of customized single- and short-run parts.
- Multiple 3D files for different parts/customers can be handled simultaneously.

Many metal parts currently being made by AM would be cost-prohibitive, difficult, or impossible to produce using conventional manufacturing methods, such as casting or machining. This gives AM an advantage, but only if the right types of parts are selected. Quality requirements play a major role. With most AM processes, good feature detail and surface finish are possible and comparable to metal castings, but surface quality is not comparable to CNC-machined parts, and additional surfacing adds processing time and expense. If a metal part can be produced by conventional processes at a reasonable cost and the number of units to be produced is relatively high, it usually is best to go that route at the present time.

Fig. 30a illustrates cost per unit as a function of number of units manufactured, comparing AM and traditional manufacturing methods. The initial cost of traditional methods is high due to the cost of tooling (molds or dies) or CNC machines and programming, but cost per unit manufactured decreases as these costs are shared over each part produced. Meanwhile, the cost of parts by AM remains the same, regardless of the number of units manufactured. Breakeven between the two production approaches occurs where these curves cross. AM is cost-efficient for small quantities, but traditional production methods yield cost advantages at higher volumes, as suggested by the declining cost curve. The breakeven point may be on the order of 100 to 1,000, with this number being higher for complex shapes.

Geometric complexity of a part has a significant influence on the cost per unit manufactured. Increasing complexity leads to exponentially increasing cost of conventional production technologies for small series production, as shown in Fig. 30b. By contrast with conventional production technologies, manufacturing costs for AM technologies do not increase with higher geometric complexity.

Additive manufacturing also is efficient in terms of energy and materials. In addition to not wasting quantities of expensive metals, the efficiency of AM processes opens the opportunity to produce lightweight components with a buy-to-fly ratio close to 1. (Buy-to-fly ratio is the ratio of the weight of raw material used for a component to the weight of the component itself.)

Fig. 31 illustrates comparative data on energy and material efficiency for production of high-performance parts by conventional CNC machining and AM. (This example is based on using electron beam powder bed fusion to produce a specialized aircraft bracket.) Material waste is extensive in CNC machining, with a buy-to-fly ratio of 8:1, compared to 1.5:1 for AM.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

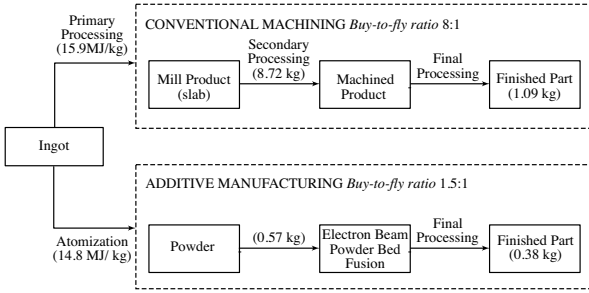


Fig. 31. Comparative Date for Conventional Machining and Additive Manufacturing of a Titanium Aircraft Bracket *(Source: MFT and LIGHTEnUp Team)*

Unique Capabilities of Metal AM.—For a given metal alloy, the cost of material in powder or wire form for additive manufacturing generally is much higher than the cost of bar stock used in conventional manufacturing. In addition, the cost of AM equipment is high and production rate is low, so production costs for AM are high. On the other hand, AM processes do not require tooling and associated production delays, and usually little material is lost. More important, AM can easily make much more complicated designs than can be made by conventional processes.

Conventional manufacturing processes, such as machining, sheet forming, and casting, impose constraints on the design of parts to be made by those processes, as is well known by designers. These constraints control possible configurations when designing a new component. Additive manufacturing processes remove many of those design constraints, though, despite the hype surrounding these technologies, AM also has limitations. Most limitations currently involve feature size and resolution: hole diameter and depth, wall height and thickness, and surface finish. In addition, at a practical level, for most metal AM processes, part features must be such that unused powder can be removed; that is, a completely enclosed hollow chamber must be provided with a hole for removal of internal powder. Nevertheless, AM processes provide great opportunity for expanding the designer's vision. Table 9 compares capabilities of SLM, EBM, BJ, and DED processes for producing metal parts by additive manufacturing.

Within the constraints shown, complex configurations can be conceived that would be difficult or impossible to achieve by conventional manufacturing processes. Four prominent shapes classes are discussed here, though many other complexities can be explored.

Table 9. Comparison of the Capabilities of AM Processes for Producing Metal Parts

Feature	Selective Laser Melting (SLM)	Electron Beam Melting (EBM)	Directed Energy Deposition (DED)	Binder Jetting (BJ)
Overhang angle (°)	>45	No limit	>45	No limit
Machining stock (mm)	0.1–0.5	0.5–2.0	1.0–2.0	0.05–0.1
Wall thickness (mm)	0.3–0.5	0.6–1.0	3	0.3
Hole diameter (vertical) (mm)	0.5	1–2	—	0.4
Hole diameter (horizontal) (mm)	8.0	8.0	—	0.4
Clearance (mm)	1	1	—	1
Surface finish upfacing	10–15	20–30	40–50	2
Surface finish downfacing	90–100	130–150	—	2
Porosity (%)	0–0.5	0.1–0.3	—	2–3
Screw threads	Vertical axis	No	No	Yes
Powder recovery	Vacuum	Blast/vacuum	No	Vacuum
Layer thickness (μm)	50–100	150–300	500	25–75
Build rate (kg/hr)	0.05	0.1	1.0	2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Complex Fins and Blades: Axisymmetric parts, such as impellers made up of fins or blades on a flat or cone shape, are costly and time-consuming to machine by CNC but are relatively easy using AM. This is one of the rare cases when it is cost-effective to produce an existing design by AM rather than a conventional process. As part complexity is on the extreme right side of the curve, the cost of production by AM will be lower, as shown in Fig. 30b.

Internal Channels: Internal fluid flow paths, in parts such as heat exchangers, fuel injectors, and sensors, normally are accomplished by assembling tubes, or by drilling and capping internal passages. These internal pathways usually are round and straight, because tubing is most easily produced with round tubes, and drilling uses cutting surfaces in circular motion. Use of AM processes enables formation of channels in any cross section and along non-straight paths. As a result, heat exchanger configurations can be designed and made by AM that allow for more effective and thus efficient heat transfer between hot and cold fluids.

A notable example of AM for flow control—and one of the first examples of AM used in serial production quantities—is a fuel injector produced by GE for the LEAP gas turbine engine; nineteen fuel injectors are required for each engine. Redesigning the component for AM reduced flow losses and, at the same time, reduced the parts count from twenty to one.

Another example of the benefits of producing internal channels by AM is injection mold tooling. Rapid removal of heat from the injected polymer is key in improving production rate of injection molded parts, as this step takes up about half of the total time for each injection cycle. Internal cooling channels frequently are used to increase heat removal rates; however, such channels are made by drilling straight channels that intersect internally and capping holes that penetrate the outside of the mold. With conformal cooling channels (channels that conform to the outline of the part), heat can be removed more quickly, decreasing the injection cycle time.

In one test of injection molding a non-symmetric part in polyethylene and polycarbonate, the cooling time was reduced by 30 percent, resulting in a 15 percent reduction in cycle time. While this seems a small saving for each cycle, consider the cumulative effect over millions of cycles typically used in injection molding of plastic consumer goods.

Internal Structures and Topological Optimization: One of the unique capabilities of AM processes is the ability to produce lattice structures, cellular structures, and organic geometries. Lattice structures involve a network of struts inside a part that remove a large amount of material yet maintain strength of the part. Cellular structures build up a part as an assembly of cells, usually hexagonal in shape. Organic structures are unusual shapes that appear similar to natural materials, such as bone or trees. Such geometries can be developed using *topological optimization* computer programs to analyze stresses in the part under load and remove sections that transmit little or no stress.

Assemblies and Part Integration: Part count reduction can be accomplished by designing assemblies as one component. This reduces the need for assembly operations, such as brazing or riveting. In addition, by producing the part in one piece, blend radii can be made at joining surfaces, reducing stress concentrations and potential sources of fatigue failure. While the cost of each part of the assembly may be small, the cumulative cost of tooling for each part, keeping an inventory of each part, plus the cost of assembly, can be greater than the cost of producing the assembly as one component by AM.

Reasons to Choose AM: Current AM processes cannot be expected to compete economically with traditional metal manufacturing methods, unless: (1) you absolutely need it as soon as possible without waiting for tooling fabrication or CNC programming, and cost is not an issue; (2) complexity of the part is so great that it actually is less expensive to make by AM than by conventional processes; (3) AM processes provide unique geometric or material characteristics, such as internal conformal cooling channels or part consolidation, that improve performance, so lifecycle cost savings by AM exceed its premium production cost.

To take advantage of opportunities afforded by metal AM processes, it is necessary to consider the entire system, rather than each individual part, for part reduction possibilities and/or potential improvements in system performance. As continuous improvements are made in AM materials, machines, and software, this innovative manufacturing method will become increasingly viable for large-scale production of automobile components and other commodity items.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Standards for Additive Manufacturing.—Commercial additive manufacturing is less than four decades old but is expanding at an extremely rapid rate and has attracted business interest worldwide. To support this growth and provide confidence in AM technologies to compete with existing manufacturing technologies, ASTM committee F42 was initiated in 2009 for the purpose of developing standards of practice. The following standards have been developed to date:

Design Standards:

ISO/ASTM 52900-15 Standard Terminology for Additive Manufacturing–General Principles–Terminology

ISO/ASTM 52910-18 Additive manufacturing–Design–Requirements, guidelines and recommendations

ISO/ASTM 52915-16 Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing File Format (AMF) Version 1.2

ISO/ASTM 52921-13 Standard Terminology for Additive Manufacturing–Coordinate Systems and Test Methodologies

Materials and Processes:

ASTM F2924-14 Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing Titanium-6 Aluminum-4 Vanadium with Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3001-14 Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing Titanium-6 Aluminum-4 Vanadium ELI (Extra Low Interstitial) with Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3049-14 Standard Guide for Characterizing Properties of Metal Powders Used for Additive Manufacturing Processes

ASTM F3055-14a Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing Nickel Alloy (UNS N07718) with Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3056-14e1 Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing Nickel Alloy (UNS N06625) with Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3187-16 Standard Guide for Directed Energy Deposition of Metals

ASTM F3213-17 Standard for Additive Manufacturing–Finished Part Properties–Standard Specification for Cobalt-28 Chromium-6 Molybdenum via Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3301-18a Standard for Additive Manufacturing–Post Processing Methods–Standard Specification for Thermal Post-Processing Metal Parts Made Via Powder Bed Fusion

ASTM F3091/F3091M-14 Standard Specification for Powder Bed Fusion of Plastic Materials

ASTM F3184-16 Standard Specification for Additive Manufacturing Stainless Steel Alloy (UNS S31603) with Powder Bed Fusion

Test Methods:

ASTM F2971-13 Standard Practice for Reporting Data for Test Specimens Prepared by Additive Manufacturing

ASTM F3122-14 Standard Guide for Evaluating Mechanical Properties of Metal Materials Made via Additive Manufacturing Processes

A Partner Standards Developing Organization (PSDO) agreement between ASTM International and the International Organization for Standardization (ISO), signed in 2011, paved the way to create joint AM standards. The agreement's goal was to respond to this burgeoning industry's need for a set of AM standards that would be recognized worldwide. To do this, these organizations began to develop a common roadmap and organizational structure for AM standards, which was announced in 2016. These standards have been approved under the agreement:

ISO/ASTM 52900 Terminology for AM–General Principles–Terminology

ISO/ASTM 52901 Guide for AM–General Principles–Requirements for Purchased AM Parts

ISO/ASTM 52910 Guidelines for Design for AM

ISO/ASTM 52915) Specification for AM File Format (AMF) Version 1.2 (originally published as F2915-11)

ISO/ASTM 52921 Terminology for Additive Manufacturing–Coordinate Systems and Test Methodologies (originally published as F2921-11).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SOLDERING AND BRAZING

Metals may be joined without using fasteners by employing soldering, brazing, and welding. Soldering and brazing utilize capillary action to join two or more adjoined faying (in contact) surfaces of a component; only the filler material melts and solidifies to create a strong bond. Soldering involves the use of a nonferrous metal whose melting point is below that of the base metal and in all cases below 840°F (450°C). Brazing entails the use of a nonferrous filler metal with a melting point below that of the base metal but above 840°F (450°C). In fusion welding, abutting metal surfaces are made molten, are joined in the molten state, and then allowed to cool. The use of a filler metal and the application of pressure are considered optional in the practice of fusion welding.

Soldering

Soldering is used to provide a convenient joint that does not require any great mechanical strength. It is used in a great many instances in combination with mechanical staking, crimping, or folding, the solder being used only to seal against leakage or to assure electrical contact. Soldering employs lead- or tin-base alloys with melting points below 840°F (450°C) and is commonly referred to as soft soldering. Use of hard solders, silver solders and spelter solders which have silver, copper, or nickel bases and have melting points above 840° F (450°C) is known as brazing. The accompanying table, page 1567, gives some of the properties and uses of various solders that are generally available.

Forms Available.—Soft solders can be obtained in bar, cake, wire, pig, slab ingot, ribbon, segment, powder, and foil form, depending on what is needed for the specific use. In bar form they are commonly used for hand soldering. The pigs, ingots, and slabs are used in operations that employ melting kettles. Ribbon, segment, powder, and foil forms are used for special applications, and the cake form is used for wiping. Wire forms are either solid or they contain acid or rosin cores for fluxing. These wire forms, both solid and core-containing, are used in hand and automatic machine applications. Prealloyed powders, suspended in a fluxing medium, are frequently applied by brush and, upon heating, consistently wet the solderable surfaces to produce a satisfactory joint.

Fluxes for Soldering.—The surfaces of the metals being joined in the soldering operation must be clean in order to obtain an efficient joint. Fluxes clean the surfaces of the metal in the joint area by removing the oxide coating present, keep the area clean by preventing formation of oxide films, and lower the surface tension of the solder, thereby increasing its wetting properties. Rosin, tallow, and stearin are mild fluxes that prevent oxidation but are not too effective in removing oxides present. Rosin is used for electrical applications, since the residue is non-corrosive and non-conductive. Zinc chloride and ammonium chloride (sal ammoniac), used separately or in combination, are common fluxes that remove oxide films readily.

The residue from these fluxes may in time cause trouble, due to their corrosive effects, if they are not removed or neutralized. Two methods of inactivating and removing this residue are washing with water containing about 5 ounces (142 g) of sodium citrate (for nonferrous soldering) or 1 ounce (28.35 g) of trisodium phosphate (for ferrous and nonferrous soldering) per gallon (1 US gallon = 3.754 liters) followed by a clear water rinse, or washing with commercial water-soluble detergents.

Methods of Application.—Solder is applied using a soldering iron, a torch, a solder bath, electric induction or resistance heating, a stream of hot neutral gas, or by wiping. Clean surfaces that are hot enough to melt the solder being applied or accept molten solder are necessary to obtain a good clean bond. Parts being soldered should be free of oxides, dirt, oil, and scale. Scraping and the use of abrasives as well as fluxes are techniques for preparing surfaces for soldering. The procedures followed in soldering aluminum, magnesium, and stainless steel differ somewhat from conventional soldering techniques and are indicated in the material that follows.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Properties of Soft Solder Alloys *Appendix, ASTM B32-08 (R2014)*

Nominal Composition[a] Percent				Specific Gravity[b]	Melting Ranges,[c] Degrees Fahrenheit		Uses
Sn	Pb	Sb	Ag		Solidus	Liquidus	
70	30	…	…	8.32	361	377	For soldering zinc and coating metals.
63	37	…	…	8.40	361	361	For soldering printed circuit boards where temperature limitations are critical and in applications where an extremely short melting range is required.
62	36	…	2	8.44	354	372	For soldering silver-coated surfaces.
60	40	…	…	8.65	361	374	"Fine solder" for soldering electrical and electronic connections and for coating metals.
50	50	…	…	8.85	361	421	For general purposes. Most popular of all. Can be used for noncritical electrical soldering and applications such as joining sheet metal, pipe, tubing, and other structural shapes.
45	55	…	…	8.97	361	441	For general purposes. Can be used for noncritical electrical soldering and applications such as joining sheet metal, pipe, tubing, and other structural shapes.
40	60	…	…	9.30	361	460	For dip soldering and as a wiping solder for joining lead pipes and cable sheaths.
35	65	…	…	9.50	361	447	A plumber's solder, but with a lower antimony content.
30	70	…	…	9.70	361	491	For automobile-body solder and for removing heat-strippable insulation during high-temperature (700 to 900°F) [370 to 480°C] tinning of wires.
25	75	…	…	10.00	361	511	For automobile-body solder.
20	80	…	…	10.20	361	531	For automobile-body solder with a lower antimony than alloy Sn20 below.
15	85	…	…	10.50	437[d]	554	For coating and joining metals.
10	90	…	…	10.80	514[d]	576	For coating and joining metals.
5	95	…	…	11.30	586	594	For coating and joining metals.
2	98	…	…	11.22	601	611	For soldering automobile radiator cores.
40	58	2	…	9.23	365	448	Similar to Sn40 above, but not recommended for use on galvanized iron.
35	63.2	1.8	…	9.44	365	470	For wiping solders promoting finer grain size and greater strength.
30	68.4	1.6	…	9.65	364	482	For automobile-body solder for filling dents and seams.
25	73.7	1.3	…	9.96	365	504	For automobile-body solder.
20	79	1	…	10.17	363	517	Used for automobile-body solder for filling dents and seams, and for general purposes such as protective coatings on steel sheet where a high tin content alloy is not required.
95	…	5	…	7.25	452	464	For joints on copper in electrical, plumbing, and heating work.
…	94.5	…	5.5	11.3	580	716	This alloy will develop a shearing strength of 1500 psi at 350 °F [177°C]. When soldering hard-drawn brass or copper, the application temperature should not exceed 850 °F [455°C]. Used on thermocouples for aircraft engines, where relatively high operating temperatures will not affect strength of the solder.
…	97.5	…	2.5	11.35	580	580	For use on copper, brass, and similar metals with torch heating. Not recommended in humid environments due to its known susceptibility to corrosion.
1	97.5	…	1.5	11.28	588	588	For use on copper, brass, and similar metals with torch heating. This alloy is used interchangeably with the above alloy Ag2.5, but it has a better shelf life and does not develop a black surface deposit when stored under humid environmental conditions.

[a] Abbreviations of alloying elements are as follows: Sn, tin; Pb, lead; Sb, antimony; and Ag, silver.

[b] The specific gravity multiplied by 0.0361 equals the density in pounds per cubic inch.

[c] The alloys are completely solid below the lower point given, designated "solidus," and completely liquid above the higher point given, designated "liquidus." In the range of temperatures between these two points the alloys are partly solid and partly liquid.

[d] For some engineering design purposes, it is well to consider these alloys as having practically no mechanical strength above 360°F (182°C).

Soldering Aluminum: Two properties of aluminum which tend to make it more difficult to solder are its high thermal conductivity and the tenacity of its ever-present oxide film. Aluminum soldering is performed in a temperature range of from 550–770°F (288–410°C), compared to 375–400°F (191–204°C) temperature range for ordinary metals, because of the metal's high thermal conductivity. Two methods can be used, one using flux and one using abrasion. The flux method is most widely used and is known as flow

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

soldering. In this method flux dissolves the aluminum oxide and keeps it from re-forming. The flux should be fluid at soldering temperatures so the solder can displace it in the joint. In the friction method the oxide film is mechanically abraded with a soldering iron, wire brush, or multi-toothed tool while being covered with molten solder. The molten solder keeps the oxygen in the atmosphere from reacting with the newly exposed aluminum surface; thus, wetting of the surface can take place.

The alloys that are used in soldering aluminum generally contain from 50 to 75 percent tin, with the remainder being zinc. The following aluminum alloys are listed in order of ease of soldering: commercial and high-purity aluminum; wrought alloys containing not more than 1 percent manganese or magnesium; and finally, the heat-treatable alloys, which are the most difficult.

Cast and forged aluminum parts are not generally soldered.

Soldering Magnesium: Magnesium is not ordinarily soldered to itself or other metals. Soldering is generally used for filling small surface defects, voids, or dents in castings or sheets where the soldered area is not to be subjected to a load. Two solders can be used: one with a composition of 60 percent cadmium, 30 percent zinc, and 10 percent tin has a melting point of 315° F (157°C); the other has a melting point of 500°F (260°C) and has a nominal composition of 90 percent cadmium and 10 percent zinc.

The surfaces to be soldered are cleaned to a bright metallic luster by abrasive methods before soldering. The parts are preheated with a torch to the approximate melting temperature of the solder being used. The solder is applied and the surface under the molten solder is rubbed vigorously with a sharp pointed tool or wire brush. This action results in the wetting of the magnesium surface. To completely wet the surface, the solder is kept molten and the rubbing action continued. The use of flux is not recommended.

Soldering Stainless Steel: Stainless steel is somewhat more difficult to solder than other common metals because of a tightly adhering oxide film on the surface of the metal and because of its low thermal conductivity. The surface of the stainless steel must be thoroughly cleaned. This can be done by abrasion or by clean white pickling with acid. Mixtures that may be used as fluxes for soldering stainless steel include: muriatic (hydrochloric) acid saturated with zinc, or this mixture combined with 25 percent additional muriatic acid, or with 10 percent additional acetic acid, or with 10 to 20 percent additional water solution of orthophosphoric acid. Tin-lead solder can be used successfully. Because of the low thermal conductivity of stainless steel, a large soldering iron is needed to bring the surfaces to the proper temperature, which is reached when the solder flows freely into the area of the joint. Removal of the corrosive flux is important in order to prevent joint failure. Soap and water or a commercial detergent may be used to remove the flux residue.

Ultrasonic Fluxless Soldering.—This more recently introduced method of soldering makes use of ultrasonic vibrations, which facilitates the penetration of surface films by the molten solder thus eliminating the need for flux. The equipment offered by one manufacturer consists of an ultrasonic generator and ultrasonic soldering head, which includes a transducer coupling, soldering tip, tip heater, and heating platen. Metals that can be soldered by this method include aluminum, copper, brass, silver, magnesium, germanium, and silicon.

Brazing

Brazing is a metal joining process that uses a nonferrous filler metal with a melting point below that of the base metals but above 840°F (450°C). The filler metal wets the base metal when molten in a manner similar to that of a solder and its base metal. There is a slight diffusion of the filler metal into the hot, solid base metal or a surface alloying of the base and filler metal. The molten metal flows between the close-fitting metals because of capillary forces.

Filler Metals for Brazing Applications.—Brazing filler metals have melting points that are lower than those of the base metals being joined and have the ability when molten to flow readily into closely fitted surfaces by capillary action. The commonly used brazing

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Brazing Filler Metals, *Based on Specifications and Appendix of American Welding Society AWS A5.8–1981*

AWS Classification[a]	Nominal Composition,[b] Percent						Temperature, Degrees F			Standard Form[c]	Uses
	Ag	Cu	Zn	Al	Ni	Other	Solidus	Liquidus	Brazing Range		
BAlSi-2	…	…	…	92.5	…	Si, 7.5	1070	1135	1110–1150	7	For joining the following aluminum alloys: 1060, EC, 1100, 3003, 3004, 5005, 5050, 6053, 6061, 6062, 6063, 6951 and cast alloys A612 and C612. All of these filler metals are suitable for furnace and dip brazing. BAlSi-3, -4 and -5 are suitable for torch brazing. Used with lap and tee joints rather than butt joints. Joint clearances run from .006 to .025 inch.
BAlSi-3	…	4	…	86	…	Si, 10	970	1085	1160–1120	2, 3, 5	
BAlSi-4	…	…	…	88	…	Si, 12	1070	1080	1080–1120	2, 3, 4, 5	
BAlSi-5	…	…	…	90	…	Si, 10	1070	1095	1090–1120	7	
BAlSi-6	…	…	…	90	…	Si, 7.5; Mg, 2.5	1038	1125	1110–1150	7	BAlSi-6 through -11 are vacuum brazing filler metals. Magnesium is present as an O_2 getter. When used in vacuum, solidus & liquidus temperatures are different from those shown.
BAlSi-7	…	…	…	88.5	…	Si, 10; Mg, 1.5	1038	1105	1090–1120	7	
BAlSi-8	…	…	…	86.5	…	Si, 12; Mg, 1.5	1038	1075	1080–1120	2, 7	
BAlSi-9	…	…	…	87	…	Si, 12; Mg, 0.3	1044	1080	1080–1120	7	
BAlSi-10	…	…	…	86.5	…	Si, 11; Mg, 2.5	1038	1086	1080–1120	2	
BAlSi-11	…	…	…	88.4	…	Si, 10; Mg, 1.5; Bi, 0.1	1038	1105	1090–1120	7	
BCuP-1	…	95	…	…	…	P, 5	1310	1695	1450–1700	1	For joining copper and its alloys with some limited use on silver, tungsten and molybdenum. Not for use on ferrous or nickel-base alloys. Are used for cupro-nickels but caution should be exercised when nickel content is greater than 30 percent. Suitable for all brazing processes. Lap joints recommended but butt joints may be used. Clearances used range from .001 to .005 inch.
BCuP-2	…	93	…	…	…	P, 7	1310	1460	1350–1550	2, 3, 4	
BCuP-3	5	89	…	…	…	P, 6	1190	1485	1300–1500	2, 3, 4	
BCuP-4	6	87	…	…	…	P, 7	1190	1335	1300–1450	2, 3, 4	
BCuP-5	15	80	…	…	…	P, 5	1190	1475	1300–1500	1, 2, 3, 4	
BCuP-6	2	91	…	…	…	P, 7	1190	1450	1350–1500	2, 3, 4	
BCuP-7	5	88	…	…	…	P, 6.8	1190	1420	1300–1500	2, 3, 4	
BAg-1	45	15	16	…	…	Cd, 24	1125	1145	1145–1400	1, 2, 4	For joining most ferrous and nonferrous metals except aluminum and magnesium. These filler metals have good brazing properties and are suitable for preplacement in the joint or for manual feeding into the joint. All methods of heating may be used. Lap joints are generally used; however, butt joints may be used. Joint clearances of .002 to .005 inch are recommended. Flux is generally required.
BAg-1a	50	15.5	16.5	…	…	Cd, 18	1160	1175	1175–1400	1, 2, 4	
BAg-2	35	26	21	…	…	Cd, 18	1125	1295	1295–1550	1, 2, 4, 7	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. *(Continued)* **Brazing Filler Metals,** *Based on Specifications and Appendix of American Welding Society AWS A5.8–1981*

AWS Classification[a]	Nominal Composition,[b] Percent						Temperature, Degrees F			Standard Form[c]	Uses
	Ag	Cu	Zn	Al	Ni	Other	Solidus	Liquidus	Brazing Range		
BAg-2a	30	27	23	…	…	Cd, 20	1125	1310	1310–1550	1, 2, 4	For joining most ferrous and nonferrous metals except aluminum and magnesium. These filler metals have good brazing properties and are suitable for preplacement in the joint or for manual feeding into the joint. All methods of heating may be used. Lap joints are generally used; however, butt joints may be used. Joint clearances of .002 to .005 inch are recommended. Flux is generally required.
BAg-3	50	15.5	15.5	…	3	Cd, 16	1170	1270	1270–1500	1, 2, 4, 7	
BAg-4	40	30	28	…	2	…	1240	1435	1435–1650	1, 2	
BAg-5	45	30	25	…	…	…	1250	1370	1370–1550	1, 2	
BAg-6	50	34	16	…	…	…	1270	1425	1425–1600	1, 2	
BAg-7	56	22	17	…	…	Sn, 5	1145	1205	1205–1400	1, 2	
BAg-8	72	28	…	…	…	…	1435	1435	1435–1650	1, 2, 4	
BAg-8a	72	27.8	…	…	…	Li, 2.	1410	1410	1410–1600	1, 2	
BAg-13	54	40	5	…	1	…	1325	1575	1575–1775	1, 2	
BAg-13a	56	42	…	…	2	…	1420	1640	1600–1800	1, 2	
BAg-18	60	30	…	…	…	Sn, 10	1115	1325	1325–1550	1, 2	
BAg-19	92.5	7.3	…	…	…	Li, 2	1435	1635	1610–1800	1, 2	
BAg-20	30	38	32	…	…	…	1250	1410	1410–1600	1, 2, 4	
BAg-21	63	28.5	…	…	2.5	Sn, 6	1275	1475	1475–1650	1, 2, 4	
BAg-22	49	16	23	…	4.5	Mn, 7.5	1260	1290	1290–1525	1, 2, 4, 7	
BAg-23	85	…	…	…	…	Mn, 15	1760	1780	1780–1900	1, 2, 4	
BAg-24	50	20	28	…	2	…	1220	1305	1305–1550	1, 2	
BAg-25	20	40	35	…	…	Mn, 5	1360	1455	1455–1555	2, 4	
BAg-26	25	38	33	…	2	Mn, 2	1305	1475	1475–1600	1, 2, 4, 7	
BAg-27	25	35	26.5	…	…	Cd, 13.5	1125	1375	1375–1575	1, 2, 4	
BAg-28	40	30	28	…	…	Sn, 2	1200	1310	1310–1550	1, 2, 4	

[a] These classifications contain chemical symbols preceded by "B" which stands for brazing filler metal.

[b] These are nominal compositions. Trace elements may be present in small amounts and are not shown. Abbreviations used are: Ag, silver; Cu, copper; Zn, zinc; Al, aluminum; Ni, nickel; Ot, other; Si, silicon; P, phosphorus; Cd, cadmium; Sn, tin; Li, lithium; Cr, chromium; B, boron; Fe, iron; O, oxygen; Mg, magnesium; W, tungsten; Pd, palladium; and Au, gold.

[c] Numbers specify standard forms as follows: 1, strip; 2, wire; 3, rod; 4, powder; 5, sheet; 6, paste; 7, clad sheet or strip; and 8, transfer tape.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Brazing Filler Metals, *Based on Specifications and Appendix of American Welding Society AWS A5.8–1981*

AWS Classification[a]	Nominal Composition,[b] Percent						Temperature, Degrees F			Standard Form[c]	Uses
	Ni	Cu	Cr	B	Si	Other	Solidus	Liquidus	Brazing Range		
BNi-1	74	…	14	3.5	4	Fe, 4.5	1790	1900	1950–2200	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	For brazing AISI 300 and 400 series stainless steels, and nickel- and cobalt-base alloys. Particularly suited to vacuum systems and vacuum tube applications because of their very low vapor pressure. The limiting element is chromium in those alloys in which it is employed. Special brazing procedures required with filler metal containing manganese.
BNi-2	82.5	…	7	3	4.5	Fe, 3	1780	1830	1850–2150	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-3	91	…	…	3	4.5	Fe, 1.5	1800	1900	1850–2150	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-4	93.5	…	…	1.5	3.5	Fe, 1.5	1800	1950	1850–2150	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-5	71	…	19	…	10	…	1975	2075	2100–2200	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-6	89	…	…	…	…	P, 11	1610	1610	1700–1875	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-7	77	…	13	…	…	P, 10	1630	1630	1700–1900	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BNi-8	65.5	4.5	…	…	7	Mn, 23	1800	1850	1850–2000	1, 2, 3, 4, 8	
BCu-1	…	100	…	…	…	…	1980	1980	2000–2100	1, 2	For joining various ferrous and nonferrous metals. They can also be used with various brazing processes. Avoid overheating the Cu-Zn alloys. Lap and butt joints are commonly used.
BCu-1a	…	99	…	…	…	Ot, 1	1980	1980	2000–2100	4	
BCu-2	…	86.5	…	…	…	O, 13.5	1980	1980	2000–2100	6	
RBCuZn-A	…	59	…	…	…	Zn, 41	1630	1650	1670–1750	1, 2, 3	
RBCuZn-C	…	58	…	…	0.1	Zn, 40; Fe, 0.7; Mn, 0.3; Sn, 1	1590	1630	1670–1750	2	
RBCuZn-D	10	48	…	…	0.2	Zn, 42	1690	1715	1720–1800	1, 2, 3	
BCuZn-E	…	50	…	…	…	Zn, 50	1595	1610	1610–1725	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	
BCuZn-F	…	50	…	…	…	Zn, 46.5; Sn, 3.5	1570	1580	1580–1700	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	
BCuZn-G	…	70	…	…	…	Zn, 30	1680	1750	1750–1850	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	
BCuZn-H	…	80	…	…	…	Zn, 20	1770	1830	1830–1950	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	
BMg-1	…	…	…	…	…	[d]	830	1100	1120–1160	2, 3	BMg-1 is used for joining AZ10A, K1A, and M1A magnesium-base metals.
BAu-1	…	63	…	…	…	Au, 37	1815	1860	1860–2000	1, 2, 4	For brazing of iron, nickel, and cobalt-base metals where resistance to oxidation or corrosion is required. Low rate of interaction with base metal facilitates use on thin base metals. Used with induction, furnace, or resistance heating in a reducing atmosphere or in a vacuum and with no flux. For other applications, a borax-boric acid flux is used.
BAu-2	…	20.5	…	…	…	Au, 79.5	1635	1635	1635–1850	1, 2, 4	
BAu-3	3	62.5	…	…	…	Au, 34.5	1785	1885	1885–1995	1, 2, 4	
BAu-4	18.5	…	…	…	…	Au, 81.5	1740	1740	1740–1840	1, 2, 4	
BAu-5	36	…	…	…	…	Au, 30; Pd, 34	2075	2130	2130–2250	1, 2, 4	
BAu-6	22	…	…	…	…	Au, 70; Pd, 8	1845	1915	1915–2050	1, 2, 4	
BCo-1	17	…	…	…	8	Cr, 19; W, 4; B, 0.8; C, 0.4; Co, 59	2050	2100	2100–2250	1, 3, 4, 8	Generally used for high temperature properties and compatability with cobalt-base metals.

[a] Al, 9; Zn, 2; Mg, 89.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Guide to Selection of Brazing Filler Metals and Fluxes

Base Metals Being Brazed	Filler Metals Recommended[a]	AWS Brazing Flux Type No.	Effective Temperature Range, °F (°C)	Flux Ingredients	Flux Supplied As	Flux Method of Use[b]
All brazeable aluminum alloys	BA1Si	1	700–1190 (371–643)	Chlorides, Fluorides	Powder	1, 2 3, 4
All brazeable magnesium alloys	BMg	2	900–1200 (482–649)	Chloides, Fluorides	Powder	3, 4
Alloys such as aluminum-bronze; aluminum- brass containing additions of aluminum of 0.5 percent or more	BCuZn, BCuP	4[c]	1050–1800 (566–982)	Chlorides, Fluorides, Borates, Wetting agent	Paste or Powder	1, 2, 3
Titanium and zirconium in base alloys	BAg	6	700–1600 (371–871)	Chlorides, Fluorides, Wetting agent	Paste or Powder	1, 2, 3
Any other brazeable alloys not listed above	All brazing filler metals except BA1Si and BMg	3	700–2000 (371–1093)	Boric acid, Borates, Fluorides, Fluorates, Wetting agent *Must contain fluorine compound*	Paste, Powder, or Liquid	1, 2, 3
	All brazing filler metals except BA1Si, BMg, and BAg 1 through BAg 7	5	1000–2200 (538–1204)	Borax, Boric acid Borates, Wetting agent *No fluorine in any form*	Paste, Powder, or Liquid	1, 2, 3

[a] Abbreviations used in this column are as follows: B, brazing filler metal; Al, aluminum; Si, silicon; Mg, magnesium; Cu, copper; Zn, zinc; P, phosphorus; and Ag, silver.

[b] Explanation of numbering system used is as follows: 1—dry powder is sprinkled in joint region; 2—heated metal filler rod is dipped into powder or paste; 3—flux is mixed with alcohol, water, monochlorobenzene, etc., to form a paste or slurry; 4—flux is used molten in a bath.

[c] Types 1 and 3 fluxes, alone or in combination, may be used with some of these base metals also.

metals may be considered as grouped into the seven standard classifications shown in Table 1a and Table 1b. These are aluminum-silicon; copper-phosphorus; silver; nickel; copper and copper-zinc; magnesium; and precious metals.

To avoid confusion, Table 1a and Table 1b give the filler metal's solidus and liquidus temperatures, rather than the melting and flow points. The solidus is the highest temperature at which the metal is completely solid or, in other words, the temperature above which the melting starts. The liquidus is the lowest temperature at which the metal is completely liquid, that is, the temperature below which the solidification starts.

Fluxes for Brazing.— In order to obtain a sound joint the surfaces within and adjacent to the joint must be free from dirt, oil, and oxides or other foreign matter at the time of brazing. Cleaning may be achieved by chemical or mechanical means. Some of the mechanical means employed are filing, grinding, scratch brushing and machining. The chemical means include the use of trisodium phosphate, carbon tetrachloride, and trichloroethylene for removing oils and greases.

Fluxes are used mainly to prevent the formation of oxides and to remove any oxides on the base and filler metals. They also promote free flow of the filler metal during the course of the brazing operation.

They are made available in the following forms: powders; pastes or solutions; gases or vapors; and as coatings on the brazing rods.

In the powder form a flux can be sprinkled along the joint, provided that the joint has been preheated sufficiently to permit the sprinkled flux to adhere and not be blown away by the torch flame during brazing. A thin paste or solution is easily applied and when spread on evenly, with no bare spots, gives a very satisfactory flux coating. Gases or vapors are used in controlled atmosphere furnace brazing where large amounts of assemblies are mass-brazed. Coatings on the brazing rods protect the filler metal from becoming oxidized and eliminate the need for dipping rods into the flux, but it is recommended that flux be applied to the base metal since it may

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

become oxidized in the heating operation. No matter which flux is used, it performs its task only if it is chemically active at the brazing temperature.

Chemical compounds incorporated into brazing fluxes include borates (sodium, potassium, lithium, etc.), fused borax, fluoborates (potassium, sodium, etc.), fluorides (sodium, potassium, lithium, etc.), chlorides (sodium, potassium, lithium), acids (boric, calcined boric acid), alkalies (potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide), wetting agents, and water (either as water of crystallization or as an addition for paste fluxes). Table 2 provides a guide which will aid in the selection of brazing fluxes that are available commercially.

Methods of Steadying Work for Brazing.—Pieces to be joined by brazing after being properly jointed may be held in a stable position by means of clamping devices, spot welds, or mechanical means such as crimping, staking, or spinning. When using clamping devices care must be taken to avoid the use of devices containing springs for applying pressure because springs tend to lose their properties under the influence of heat. Care must also be taken to be sure that the clamping devices are no larger than is necessary for strength considerations, because a large metal mass in contact with the base metal near the brazing area would tend to conduct heat away from the area too quickly and result in an inefficient braze. Thin sections that are to be brazed are frequently held together by spot welds. It must be remembered that these spot welds may interfere with the flow of the molten brazing alloy and appropriate steps must be taken to be sure that the alloy is placed where it can flow into all portions of the joint.

Methods of Supplying Heat for Brazing.—The methods of supplying heat for brazing form the basis of the classification of the different brazing methods and are as follows.

Torch or Blowpipe Brazing: Air-gas, oxy-acetylene, air-acetylene, and oxy-other fuel gas blowpipes are used to bring the areas of the joint and the filler material to the proper heat for brazing. The flames should generally be neutral or slightly reducing but in some instances some types of bronze welding require a slightly oxidizing flame.

Dip Brazing: Baths of molten alloy, covered with flux, or baths of molten salts are used for dip brazing. The parts to be brazed are first assembled, usually with the aid of jigs, and are dipped into the molten metal, then raised and allowed to drain. The molten alloy enters the joint by capillary action. When the salt bath is used, the filler metal is first inserted between the parts being joined, or, in the form of wire, is wrapped around the area of the joint. The brazing metal melts and flows into the joint, again by capillary action.

Furnace Brazing: Furnaces that are heated electrically or by gas or oil with auxiliary equipment that maintains a reducing or protective atmosphere and controlled temperatures therein are used for brazing large numbers of units, usually without flux.

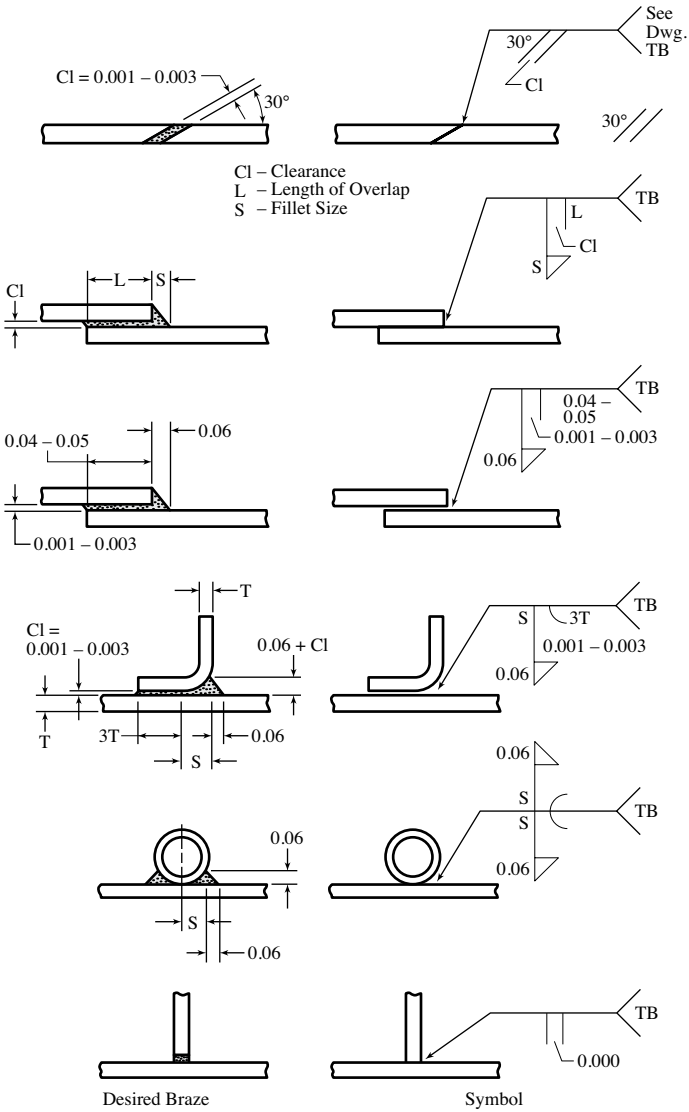
Resistance Brazing: Heat is supplied by means of hot or incandescent electrodes. The heat is produced by the resistance of the electrodes to the flow of electricity and the filler metal is frequently used as an insert between the parts being joined.

Induction Brazing: Parts to be joined are heated by being placed near a coil carrying an electric current. Eddy current losses of the induced electric current are dissipated in the form of heat raising the temperature of the work to a point higher than the melting point of the brazing alloy. This method is both quick and clean.

Vacuum Furnace Brazing: Cold-wall vacuum furnaces, with electrical-resistance radiant heaters, and pumping systems capable of evacuating a conditioned chamber to moderate vacuum (about 0.01 micron) in 5 minutes are recommended for vacuum brazing. Metals commonly brazed in vacuum are the stainless steels, heat-resistant alloys, titanium, refractory metals, and aluminum. Fluxes and filler metals containing alloying elements with low boiling points or high vapor pressure are not used.

Brazing Symbol Application.—ANSI/AWS A2.4-2012 symbols for brazing are also used for welding with the exception of the symbol for a scarf joint (see the diagram at the top of page 1574, and the symbol for a scarf joint in the table *Basic Weld Symbols* on page 1619, for applications of brazing symbols). The second, third and fourth figures from the top of the next page show how joint clearances are indicated. If no special joint preparation is required, only the arrow is used with the brazing process indicated in the tail.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Typical Applications of Standard Brazing Symbols

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

WELDING

A number of variables set welding and related processes apart from mechanical fastening methods used to join material. However, practically all welding and related processes currently in use involve heat input and/or upset in the areas where materials are being joined. Modern welding methods may employ manual, machine, semi-automatic, automatic, or robotic controls to deliver welding energy at the point of fusion.

Welding of metals generally requires that materials be heated to a molten state so they can be fused together. The method of applying heat or upset to produce the desired results may involve just a simple flame. The autogenous method—where a torch burns a mixture of (usually) acetylene and oxygen gases to heat the components—is still used for certain work. However, most welding operations today use an electric arc and/or pressure, or they involve the application of complex electric waveforms. In arc welding, a low-voltage, high-current arc is struck between the end of an electrode and the work, generating intense heat that immediately melts the surfaces. Lasers and electrons are also used as the heating medium for some welding operations.

In the welding process, a filler wire or rod is held in the heated zone to add material that replaces the metal consumed by the process. (This usually produces a slightly raised area, which subsequently can be dressed down to a level surface if needed.) Most, if not all, metals are weldable, and the majority can make capable connections. Some welds make joints that are stronger than the base materials being joined, while other welds weaken the workpiece's overall mechanical properties. Though typically the welded joint has properties similar to the base materials.

Metals that can be welded include: carbon and low-alloy steels, stainless steels, tool and die steels, high-alloy steels, cast iron, nickel and cobalt alloys, copper alloys, aluminum alloys, magnesium alloys, titanium, zirconium, hafnium, tantalum, columbium, and others. Dissimilar welds—joining two different metal types (for example, carbon steel to stainless steel)—can be made but may prove difficult or produce undesirable results.

Electrodes, Fluxes, and Processes

Electrodes for welding may be made of a tungsten or other alloy that does not melt at welding temperatures (nonconsumable) or of an alloy similar to that of the work so that it melts and acts as the filler wire (consumable). In welding with a nonconsumable electrode, filler metal is added to the pool as welding proceeds. Filler metals that will produce welds having strength properties similar to those of the work are used where high-strength welds are specified.

Briefly, the effects of the main alloying elements in welding filler wires and electrodes are: carbon adds strength but may cause brittle weld metal if cooling is rapid, so low-carbon wire is preferred; silicon adds strength and reduces oxidation, changes fluidity, and gives a flatter weld bead; manganese strengthens and assists deoxidation, plus it reduces effects of sulfur, lowering the risk of hot cracking; sulfur may help form iron sulfide, which increases the risk of hot cracking; and phosphorus, may contribute to hot cracking.

Fluxes in (usually) granular form are added to the weld zone, as coatings on the filler wire or as a core in the tube that forms the (consumable) electrode. The flux melts and flows in the weld zone, shielding the arc from the oxygen in the atmosphere, and often contains materials that clean impurities from the molten metal and prevent grain growth during recrystallization.

Processes.—There are approximately 100 welding and allied welding processes but the four manual arc welding processes: gas metal arc welding (GMAW) (which is also commonly known as MIG for metal inert gas), flux-cored arc (FCAW), shielded metal arc (SMAW), gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW), account for over 90 percent of the arc welding used in production, fabrication, structural, and repair applications. FCAW and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SMAW use fluxes to shield the arc and FCAW uses fluxes and gases to protect the weld from oxygen and nitrogen. GMAW and GTAW use mixtures of gases to protect the weld.

There are two groups of weld types, groove and fillet, which are self-explanatory. Each type of weld may be made with the work at any angle from horizontal (flat) to inverted (overhead). In a vertical orientation, the electrode tip may move down the groove or fillet (vertical down), or up (vertical up). In any weld other than flat, skill is needed to prevent the molten metal falling from the weld area.

Because of the many variables, such as material to be welded and its thickness, equipment, fluxes, gases, electrodes, degree of skill, and strength requirements for the finished welds, it is not practicable to set up a complete list of welding recommendations that would have general validity. Instead, examples embracing a wide range of typical applications, and assuming common practices, are presented here for the most-used welding processes. The recommendations given are intended as a guide to finding the best approach to any welding job, and are to be varied by the user to fit the conditions encountered in the specific welding situation.

Heat Input and Weld Distortion.—When metals are joined in a welding process, a great amount of heat is generated. As this heat melts, coalesces, and joins two or more members at the point of connection, it often changes the position and dimensions of the welded structure to some extent.

When a weld joint is fit-up for welding, the gap between the parts to be welded is filled in with filler metal and/or base metal. As the metal in the gap cools, shrinkage occurs, drawing adjacent surfaces together and strengthening the connection, but also causing movement.

In jobs where part alignment and dimensional tolerances must be maintained, the effect of such weld distortion should be taken into consideration. Tactics to limit or compensate for these factors include heat input control, using welding fixtures, post-weld stress relief, and finish machining and processing operations.

Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW)

The two most cost-effective manual arc welding processes are GMAW and FCAW. These two welding processes are used with more than 50 percent of the arc welding consumable electrodes purchased. Gas metal arc welding modes extend from short-circuit welding, where the consumable electrode wire is melted into the molten pool in a rapid succession of short circuits during which the arc is extinguished, to pulsed and regular spray transfer, where a stream of fine drops and vaporized weld metal is propelled across the continuous arc gap by electromagnetic forces in the arc.

GMAW is the most-used welding process and the two most common GMAW low-carbon steel electrodes used for production welding in North America are the E70S-3 and E70S-6 from the ANSI/AWS Standard A5 series of specifications for arc welding. The E70S-3 contains manganese and silicon as deoxidants and is mainly used for welding low-carbon steels, using argon mixtures as shielding gases. The wire used in E70S-6 electrodes has more silicon than wire used for E70S-3 electrodes, and is preferred where straight CO_2 or argon mixes are used as the shielding gas or if the metal to be welded is contaminated. The deoxidizing properties of the E70S-6 electrode also may be beneficial for high-current, deep-penetration welds, and welds in which higher than normal impact-strength properties are required.

E80S-D2 wire contains more manganese and silicon, plus 0.5 percent molybdenum for welding such steels as AISI 4130, and steels for high-temperature service. The argon + CO_2 mixture is preferred to exert the influence of argon's inertness over the oxidizing action of CO_2. E70S-2 electrodes contain aluminum, titanium, and zirconium to provide greater deoxidation action and are valuable for welding contaminated steel plate.

When the GMAW welding process is used for galvanized steels, minute welding cracks may be caused by the reaction of the zinc coating on the work with silicon in the electrode. Galvanized steel should be welded with an electrode having the lowest possible silicon

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

content such as the E70S-3. For welding low-carbon and low-alloy steels with conventional argon mixture shielding gases, there is little difference between the E70S-3 and E70S-6.

Electrode Diameters.—One of the most important welding decisions is selecting the optimum GMAW electrode diameter, which should be based on the material thickness, as shown for carbon and stainless steels in Table 1, the compatibility of the electrode current requirements with the material thickness, the mode of weld metal transfer, and the deposition rate potential shown in Table 2. The two most popular GMAW electrode sizes are 0.035 inch (1.0 mm) and 0.045 inch (1.2 mm). Diameters of electrodes used for GMAW exert a strong influence on cost of welding. Table 2 also shows how the weld deposition rate varies in short-circuit and spray transfer modes in welding carbon and stainless steels.

Table 1. GMAW Electrode Sizes for Welding Carbon and Stainless Steels

Material Thickness	Electrode Diameter			
	0.030 inch (0.8 mm)	0.035 inch (1.0 mm)	0.045 inch (1.2 mm)	0.062 inch (1.6 mm)
25 to 21 gage (0.020 to 0.032 inch)	yes	…	…	…
20 gage to 1/4 inch (0.036 to 0.25 inch)	…	yes	…	…
3/16 to 7/16 inch flat and horizontal	…	…	yes	…
1/2 inch and up	…	…	…	yes

The table is based on suitability of the electrode size to mode of weld transfer, material thickness, and cost-effectiveness. If a smaller electrode size is selected, the lower deposition rates could increase welding costs by 20 to 60 percent.

Table 2. Typical Maximum GMAW Deposition Rates for Carbon and Stainless Steels. Constant-Voltage 450-amp Power Source and Standard Wire Feeder

Weld transfer mode	Electrode Diameter			
	0.030 inch (0.8 mm)	0.035 inch (1.0 mm)	0.045 inch (1.2 mm)	0.062 inch (1.6 mm)
Short circuit	5 lb/h (2.3 kg/h)	7 lb/h (3.2 kg/h)	9 lb/h (4 kg/h)	…
Spray transfer	9 lb/h (4 kg/h)	11 lb/h (5 kg/h)	19 lb/h (8.6 kg/h)	21 lb/h (9.5 kg/h)

For the lowest-cost welds with GMAW electrodes larger than 0.030 inch in diameter, the power source should provide a minimum of 350 amps. The compatibility of the optimum current range of the 0.035-inch (1.0-mm) electrode and its deposition potential make it the first choice for welding of 20 gage to 1/4 inch (0.88 to 6.4 mm) thicknesses. For welding thinner sheet metals of 25 to 21 gage, the optimum electrode diameter is 0.030 inch (0.8 mm). The 0.045-inch (1.2-mm) electrode is the most practical choice for spray transfer applications on materials over 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick and thicker.

As an example, when welding 1/4-in. (6.4-mm) thick steel, with 100 percent arc-on time and a labor cost of $15/h, the deposition rate with a 0.035-in. (0.9-mm) electrode is approximately 11 lb/h (5 kg/h). The labor cost per lb at $15/h ÷ 11 lb/h = $1.36/lb ($3.00/kg). If an electrode of 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter is used for the same application, the deposition rate is 16 lb/h (7.2 kg/h) and at a $15/h labor rate, the cost of weld metal deposited = $15/h ÷ 16 lb/h = $0.93/lb ($2.00/kg). The 0.045-in. diameter electrode would also cost less per pound than a smaller wire, and the weld time with the 0.045-in. electrode would be reduced, so less shielding gas also would be consumed.

GMAW Welding of Sheet Steel.—In GMAW, the short-circuit transfer mode is used to weld carbon steel, low-alloy steel, and stainless steel sheet of 24 gage (0.023 in., or 0.6 mm) to 11 gage (0.12 in., or 3 mm). The most common gage sizes welded with short-circuit transfer are 20 gage to 11 gage (0.88 to 3 mm) and the best GMAW electrode for these thin, sheet

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

metal gages is the 0.035-in. (1-mm) diameter electrode. The short-circuit current requirements for these operations are typically 50 to 200 amps with voltages in the range of 14 to 22 volts. The optimum short-circuit voltage for the majority of applications is 16 to 18 volts.

Shielding Gases for Welding Carbon and Low-Alloy Steels.—With more than 40 GMAW gas mixtures available for welding carbon steels, low-alloy steels, and stainless steels, selection is often confusing. Reactive oxygen and carbon dioxide (CO_2) are added to argon to stabilize the arc and add energy to the weld. CO_2 can provide more energy to the weld than oxygen. As the CO_2 content in a shielding gas mixture is increased to certain levels, the voltage requirements are increased. Argon + oxygen mixtures will require lower voltages than mixtures containing argon with 10 to 25 percent CO_2. Helium may also be added to argon if increased weld energy is required.

Shielding Gases for Short-Circuit Welding of Carbon Steels.—GMAW short-circuit transfer (SCT) is used mainly for welding thin metals of less than 10 gage, and gaps. With the SCT mode of weld metal transfer, the arc short circuits many times each second. The numerous short circuits switch the arc energy on and off. The short circuits and low current cause the transferred weld to freeze rapidly. Short-circuit transfer on carbon steel gage metals thicker than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) requires a shielding gas that will provide substantial weld energy. For these applications, argon with 15–25 percent CO_2 is recommended.

If short-circuit transfer is used on metals thinner than 18 gage (0.047 in., 1.2 mm), melt-through and distortion often occur. Melt-through and distortion can be reduced on very thin-gage carbon and low-alloy steels by using a shielding gas that provides less weld energy than argon + 15 to 25 percent CO_2 mixes. Argon + oxygen mixtures can utilize lower voltages to sustain the arc. Argon mixed with 2 to 5 percent oxygen is a practical mixture for thin carbon steel of less than 16 gage, where there is sensitivity to heat.

Shielding Gases for Spray Transfer Welding of Carbon Steels.—With GMAW spray transfer, all traditional argon gas mixtures will provide spatter-free spray weld transfer, depending on the electrode diameter and welding parameters used. The electrode diameter and the electrode current density influence the formation of the weld metal to be transferred. For example, with a 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) diameter electrode using a mixture containing argon 75 + CO_2 25 percent, a small globular weld droplet is formed on the end of the electrode tip in the conventional spray transfer parameter range. With the same gas mixture, a 0.045-inch (1.14-mm) diameter electrode, and current above 330 amps, the globular formation disappears and the metal transfers in the spray mode.

Spatter potential stemming from shielding gas, with 0.035 inch (0.90 mm) and smaller diameter electrodes can be controlled by reducing the CO_2 content in the argon mixture to less than 21 percent. Each different shielding gas will primarily influence the open arc spray transfer mode by variations in the weld energy provided through the welding voltage requirements.

Gas selection in spray transfer must be given careful consideration. In welding of clean cold-rolled carbon steel or low-alloy steel less than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) thick, the energy potential of the arc is less important than it is for welding of steels thicker than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (13 mm) or steels with mill scale. The energy level of the arc is also a key factor in welding steels for which higher than normal impact properties are specified.

A simple, practical multipurpose gas mixture for carbon and low-alloy steels is argon + 15 to 20 percent CO_2, and a mixture of argon + 17 percent CO_2 would be ideal. This two-part argon/CO_2 mixture provides higher weld energy than two-component argon + CO_2 mixtures having less than 10 percent CO_2, argon + oxygen mixtures, or argon + CO_2 + oxygen tri-component mixtures. The argon + 17 percent CO_2 mixture will provide an arc slightly less sensitive to mill scale than the other mixtures mentioned.

The argon + 17 percent CO_2 mixture also has practical benefits in that it provides sufficient weld energy for all GMAW short-circuit and spray transfer applications with cylinder or bulk gases. The argon + 17 percent CO_2 mixture may also be used for all-position FCAW electrodes in welding carbon steels, low-alloy steels, and stainless steels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shielding Gases for GMAW Welding of Stainless Steels.—The major problems encountered when using GMAW on stainless steels of thinner than 14 gage include controlling potential melt-through, controlling distortion, and black oxidation on the weld surface. These three welding problems have a common denominator, which is heat. The key to welding thin stainless steel is to minimize the potential heat when welding, by appropriate choice of gas mixture.

A popular gas mixture that is often recommended for GMAW welding of thin-gage stainless steel is the three-part helium gas mixture containing helium 90 + argon 7.5 + CO_2 2.5 percent. In contrast to gas mixtures without helium, the helium tri-mixture requires the use of higher voltages to sustain the arc, which adds unnecessary heat to the heat-sensitive thin-gage welds.

A practical and lower-cost alternative for GMAW short-circuit transfer on stainless steels is an argon mixture with 2 to 4 percent CO_2. The argon + CO_2 mixture allows use of lower voltages than is practical with argon/helium mixtures, and the lower voltages resulting from the argon + CO_2 mixture will help to reduce distortion and oxidation, and decrease the melt-through potential. The mixture that works with short-circuit transfer is also a logical practical choice for spray transfer welding of stainless steel because it is less oxidizing than argon/oxygen mixtures. Table 3 provides practical gas mixture recommendations for specific applications.

Table 3. Shielding Gases for Welding Carbon Steels and Stainless Steels

Application	Gas mixtures					
	Argon + Oxygen	Argon + CO_2 + Oxygen	Argon + 2–4% CO_2	Argon + 6–10% CO_2	Argon + 13–20% CO_2	Argon + 25% CO_2
Short-circuit melt-through problems; less than 20 gage	1	1	1	1	2	3
Short-circuit 18 to 11 gage	…	…	…	…	1	1
Spray if mill scale or surface problems; carbon steels	…	…	…	…	1	2
Spray if low energy required; carbon steel	1	1	1	1	…	…
Spray, best impact strengths, lowest porosity; carbon steels	…	…	…	…	1	…
Best single gas mixture for carbon steels	…	…	…	…	1	…
Short-circuit; stainless steels	…	…	1	…	…	…
Spray; stainless steels	2	…	1	…	…	…
Best single gas mixture for stainless and duplex steels	…	…	1	…	…	…

Preferred choice of shielding gas is 1, followed by 2 and 3.

For GMAW spray transfer welding of stainless steels thicker than 11 gage, the traditional GMAW shielding gas has been argon 98 + oxygen 2 percent. The argon + oxygen mixture provides excellent, stable, spray transfer, but the oxygen promotes oxidation, leaving the weld with a black surface. To reduce the oxidation, the 2 percent oxygen can be replaced with the less oxidizing 2–4 percent CO_2.

Shielding Gases for GMAW Welding of Aluminum.—For GMAW welding of aluminum, helium is added to argon to provide additional weld energy, increasing penetration

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

width, and reducing porosity potential. A gas mixture that has worked well in practice and can be used on the majority of aluminum applications is argon + 25 to 35 percent helium. Mixtures with higher helium content, of 50 to 90 percent, require voltages and flow rates that may be excessive for many established aluminum applications.

Welding Controls.—The two primary controls for welding with GMAW are the electrode wire feed control on the wire feeder and the voltage control on the power source. As shown in Fig. 1, these controls typically consist of switches and knobs but do not have the scales, seen enlarged at the upper left, that indicate combinations of wire feed rate, wire gage, volts, and amps. These scales have been added here to allow clearer explanation of the functioning of the wire feed control.

The typical wire feed unit provides maximum feed rates of 600 to 800 in/min (15.2–20.3 m/min). The scale surrounding the setting knob on a wire feed control unit usually has only 10 unnumbered graduations, somewhat like the hour markers on a clock face. On most machines, each of these graduations represents an adjustment of the feed rate of approximately 70 in/min (1.8 m/min). For each increase in the wire feed rate of 70 in/min (1.8 m/min), depending on the voltage, the welding current increases by approximately 20 to 40 amps, depending on the wire diameter and wire feed positions.

In Fig. 1, a black sector has been drawn in on the wire feed rate adjustment knob to indicate the range of wire feed rates usable with the gas mixture and the electrode diameter (gage) specified. The wire feed and voltage settings shown are for welding thin-gage carbon, low-alloy, or stainless steels with a 0.030 or 0.035 inch (0.76 or 0.89 mm) diameter electrode. The left edge of the sector on the wire feed knob is set to the eight o'clock position, corresponding to 70 in/min (1.8 m/min). The optimum voltage for this wire feed rate is 15. If a setting is too low, the knob is turned to the second (nine o'clock) or third (ten o'clock) position to increase the current. The voltage typically increases or decreases by 1 volt for each graduation of the wire feed quadrant.

The short-circuit transfer current range of 50 to 200 amps corresponds to a wire feed rate of 70 to 420 in/min (1.8–10.7 m/min), and is typically found between the eight and one o'clock positions on the scale, as indicated by the black sector on the knob in Fig. 1.

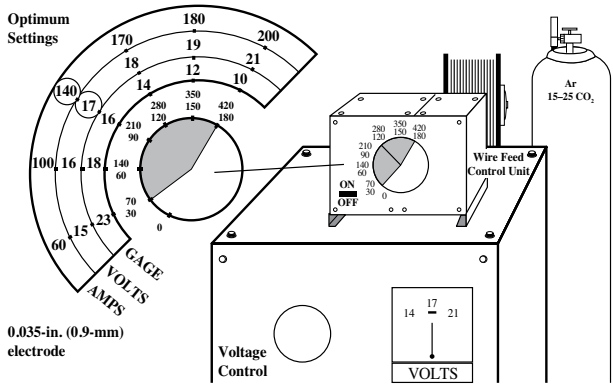


Fig. 1. Wire Feed Settings for Short-Circuit Welding of Carbon, Low-Alloy, and Stainless Steel Sheet

Diagrammatic quadrants have been added at the left in Fig. 1, to show the material thickness, voltage, and current that correspond to the setting of the wire feed rate adjustment knob. Optimum settings are easily made for short-circuit welding of sheet metals. When

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

using a 0.030-in. (0.8-mm) or 0.035-in. (1-mm) diameter GMAW electrode, for instance, to weld 16-gage carbon or stainless steel with a conventional 200-to 450-amp constant-voltage power source and wire feeder, the wire feed control is set to the ten o'clock position for a feed rate of 210 in/min (5.3 m/min). With digital wire feed units, the short-circuit current range is typically between 100 and 400 in/min (2.54 and 10.16 m/min), so a good starting point is to set the wire feeder at 210 in/min (5.3 m/min). The welding voltage is set to 17.

Many welders set their parameters by an established mark on the equipment or by the sound of the arc as the weld is being made. The sound of the arc, influenced by the optimum current and voltage set, should be a consistent, smooth, crackling noise. If the SCT sound is harsh, the voltage should be increased slightly. If the sound is soft, the voltage should be decreased in volt increments until the sound becomes a smooth crackle. For welding metals thicker than 16 gage but less than 10 gage, the wire feed control should be moved to the eleven o'clock position (280 in/min, or 7.1 m/min), and the voltage reset to 18.

Welding of thicknesses less than 16 gage should be started with the wire feed control at the nine o'clock position (140 in/min, or 3.6 m/min) and the voltage control set to 16. The parameters discussed above apply when using argon mixtures containing 15 to 25 percent CO_2.

GMAW Spray Transfer.—In the spray transfer mode, spatter is often caused by the voltage being set so low that the electrode runs into the weld, resulting in expulsion of molten metal from the weld pool. GMAW spray transfer is normally used for welding carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels of a minimum thickness of $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.2 mm).

In Table 4, typical deposition rates with a 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) carbon steel electrode are compared with rates for larger carbon steel GMAW and flux-cored electrodes. These welds are typically carried out in the flat and horizontal positions. The practical GMAW electrode diameters commonly used for spray transfer are 0.035-in. (1-mm), 0.045-in. (1.2-mm), and 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter. The most cost-effective GMAW electrode that also has the greatest range of applications on metals over $\frac{3}{16}$ in. thick is the 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter size.

Table 4. Typical Deposition Rates for Carbon Steel Welding Electrodes

Electrode Diameter				Deposit Rates	
inch	mm	Electrode Type	Amperage	lb/h	kg/h
0.035	1.0	GMAW	350	11	5
0.045	1.2	GMAW	380	13	6
0.062	1.6	GMAW	400	14	6.4
$\frac{1}{16}$	1.6	FCAW	350	15	7
$\frac{3}{32}$	2.4	FCAW	450	16	7.3

GMAW Spray Transfer Welding of Metal Thicknesses Less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm).— The most versatile GMAW electrode for a welding shop that welds carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels from 20 gage to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm) thick is the 0.035 in. (1.0 mm) diameter electrode. The traditional practical spray transfer current range of between 200 and 350 amps for the 0.035 in. electrode is well suited for welding thicknesses from 10 gage to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm).

The correct parameters for a 0.035 in. (1 mm) electrode and spray transfer welding are found on the wire feed unit between the one and five o'clock positions, or, on a digital wire feeder, between 420 and 700 in/min (10.7 and 17.8 m/min). In the drawing at the left in Fig. 2, the spray transfer wire feed range is shaded. When the wire feed rate has been set, the voltage should be fine-tuned so that the electrode wire tip is just touching the weld and a smooth crackling sound without spatter is produced.

An optimum single spray transfer mode current setting for a 0.035-in. (1-mm) diameter electrode for most welding applications is approximately 280 amps with the wire feed set at the three o'clock position for 560 in/min. Manual or high-speed mechanized welds on material of 10 gage to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thick can be made at the three o'clock wire feed position with

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

only an adjustment for voltage, which should be set initially at 31 volts, when using an argon + CO_2 mixture.

GMAW Spray Transfer for Metal Thicknesses $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm) and Up.—The 0.45-in. (1.2-mm) diameter is the most cost-effective GMAW electrode for spray transfer welding of carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels $\frac{1}{4}$ in. and thicker. A $\frac{7}{16}$-in. (11.2-mm) single-pass, no-weave, fillet weld can be produced with this electrode. If larger single-pass welds are required, use of flux-cored electrodes should be considered.

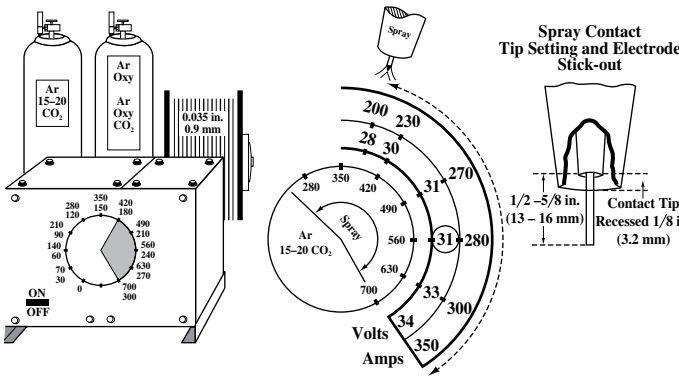


Fig. 2. GMAW Spray Transfer Parameters with 0.035-inch (0.9-mm) Diameter Electrodes

A 400-amp power source is a practical cost-effective unit to use with the 0.045-in. diameter electrode. Globular spray transfer, obtained at the ten o'clock position on the wire feed adjustment knob, starts at current levels of approximately 230 amps and requires a wire feed rate of approximately 210 in/min (90 mm/s). Most spray applications are carried out in the higher-energy, deeper-penetrating 270- to 380-amp range, or between twelve and two o'clock wire feed positions giving 350 to 490 in/min (150 to 210 mm/s). In this range, in which there is minimum weld spatter, the weld deposits are in the form of minute droplets and vaporized weld metal.

The quadrants at the top in Fig. 3 show some typical settings for feed rate, voltage, and current, with different shielding gases. An ideal starting point with a 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter electrode is to set the wire feed rate knob at the one o'clock position, or 420 in/min, at which rate the current drawn, depending on the power source used, should be about 320 to 350 amps. The best starting voltage for the 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) electrode is 30 volts. The arc length should then be set as indicated in Fig. 4. With current over 400 amps at 560 in/min, the 0.045-in. diameter electrode may produce a turbulent weld puddle and a digging arc, which can lead to lack of fusion, porosity, and cracks.

GMAW Spray Transfer with 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) Diameter Electrodes.—Electrode wire of 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter is the largest size in normal use and is often chosen for its high deposition rates. Due to the high-current requirements for the spray transfer mode, use of these thicker electrodes is generally restricted to metal thicknesses of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) and thicker. The high-current requirement reduces ease of welding. This electrode size is suitable for mechanized welding in which fillet welds greater than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.6 mm) are required.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As indicated at the lower left in Fig. 3, the current range for 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) electrodes is narrow and most welds are made in the range of 360 to 420 amps, or between the ten and eleven o'clock positions on the wire feed control unit for 210 to 280 in/min (90 to 120 mm/s). The quadrants at the lower center and lower right in Fig. 3 show deposition rates in lb/h and kg/h for 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) and 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter electrodes.

Some optimum settings for GMAW welding with a mixture of argon + 15 to 20 percent CO_2 gases are given in Table 5.

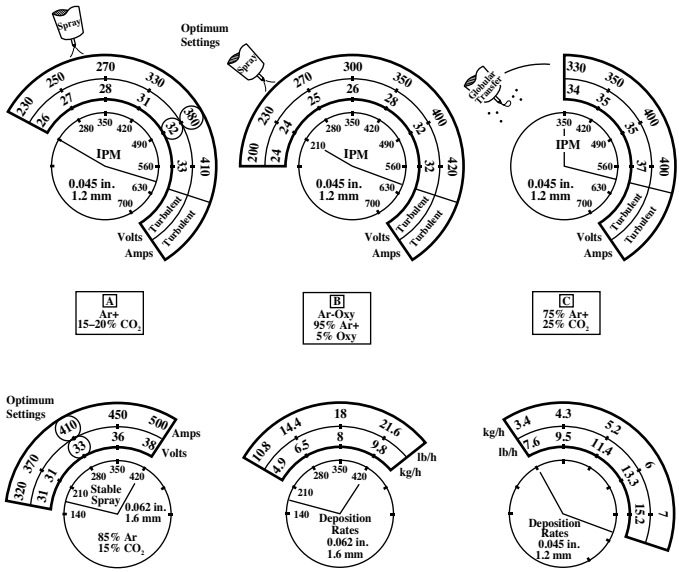


Fig. 3. GMAW Spray Transfer Parameters for Various Electrodes and Gases

Table 5. Optimum Settings for GMAW with Argon + 15–20 percent CO_2

Diameters			Wire Feed Rates			
inch	mm	Mode	in/min	m/min	Amps	Volts
0.035	1.0	short circuit	210	5.3	140	17
		spray transfer	560	14.2	280	29–30
0.045	1.2	short circuit	210	5.3	190	18
		spray transfer	420	10.7	380	30–31
0.052	1.4	spray transfer	280	7.1	370	31–32
0.062	1.6	spray transfer	280	7.1	410	31–32

Note: If argon + oxygen gas mixtures are used, voltage should be lowered by 1 to 4 volts for the spray transfer mode. The faster the weld travel speed, the lower the voltage required.

Spray Transfer Voltage.—The usual setting for spray transfer welding with commonly used electrode diameters is between 25 and 35 volts (see Fig. 4A). To set the optimum voltage for GMAW spray transfer, set the voltage initially so that it is too high, usually between

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

30 and 35 volts. With excess voltage, there should be a visible gap between the tip of the electrode and the weld, and the arc sound should be free from crackle. With the sequence shown in Fig. 4, the voltage should now be reduced until a consistent smooth crackle sound is produced. If the voltage is lowered too much, the electrode will run into the weld, making a harsh crackling sound, and the resulting weld expulsion will cause spatter.

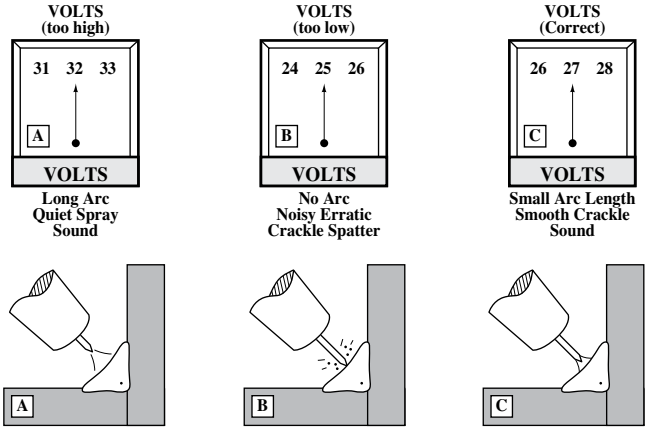


Fig. 4. Setting Optimum Voltage for GMAW Spray Transfer Welding

Flux-Cored Arc Welding

FCAW welding offers unique benefits for specific applications, but flux-cored consumable electrodes cost more than the solid electrodes used in gas metal arc welding, so users need to be aware of FCAW benefits and disadvantages compared with those of GMAW welding. Generally, flux-cored electrodes designed for use without a shielding gas are intended for welding outdoors. Most indoor FCAW welding is done with gas-shielded FCAW welding electrode wire. Some Standards for gas-shielded FCAW electrodes for various countries are listed in Table 6.

Table 6. Standards for Gas-Shielded, Flux-Cored Welding Electrodes

Steel Type	Country	Standard
Low-Carbon Steels	United States	AWS A5.20
	Canada	CSA W48.5
	Japan	JIS Z3313
	Germany	DIN 8559
Low-Alloy Steels	United States	AWS A5.29
	Canada	CSA W48.3-M
	United Kingdom	BS 639-2492
Stainless Steels	United States	AWS A5.22

All-Position, Gas-Shielded Electrodes.—The term "all-position" does not necessarily mean that these electrodes are the best choice for all positions. Also, flux-cored electrodes may meet all standard specifications, but there will inevitably be subtle differences

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

in weld transfer characteristics and recommended current, voltage, and other settings between electrodes made by different manufacturers. The chemistry and slag of the electrodes developed for welding in the flat and horizontal positions (E70T-X) typically provide superior results when they are used for flat and horizontal applications where the surface conditions of the plate are suspect or large, deep-penetrating welds are required. All-position electrodes are intended for, and best used in, vertical and overhead welds. For extensive welding in flat or horizontal positions, the welder is better served with the electrodes designed for these specific positions.

All-position, gas-shielded FCAW electrodes provide unique benefits and potential for cost savings. In contrast with short-circuit GMAW, or pulsed GMAW, the all-position FCAW electrodes used for vertical up welding of carbon, low-alloy, or stainless steels are simpler to operate, are capable of greater weld quality, and will provide two to three times the rate of weld deposition. The electrode most commonly used in the United States for vertical up welding on carbon steels is the type E71T-1. The equivalent to the E71T-1 standardized electrode specification now in use in other countries include: Canada, E4801T9; Germany, SGR1; and Japan, YFW 24.

If the end user selects the correct all-position electrode diameter, the routine weaving of the electrode during vertical up and overhead applications may be minimized. Keeping the weld weave to a minimum reduces the skill level needed by the welder and increases the potential for consistent side-wall fusion and minimum porosity. If weaving is necessary, a straight-line oscillation technique is often preferred. Typical settings for welding with various sizes of gas-shielded FCAW electrodes are shown in Table 7.

Table 7. Typical Settings for Welding with Gas-Shielded FCAW Electrodes

Electrode Diameter		Vertical Up Welds	Flat and Horizontal Welds
inch	(mm)		
0.035	(1)	Feed rate 450 ipm (11.4 m/min) Current 165 amps Voltage 28 volts	Feed rate 630 ipm (16.0 m/min) Current 250 amps Voltage 30 volts
0.045	(1.2)	Feed rate 350 ipm (8.9 m/min) Current 200 amps Voltage 25 volts	Feed rate 560 ipm (14.2 m/min) Current 280 amps Voltage 26 Volts
0.052	(1.4)	Feed rate 240 ipm (6.1 m/min) Current 200 amps Voltage 25 volts	Feed rate 520 ipm (13.2 m/min) Current 300 amps Voltage 30 volts
0.062	(1.6)	Feed rate 210 ipm (5.3 m/min) Current 240 amps Voltage 25 volts	Feed rate 350 ipm (8.9 m/min) Current 340 amps Voltage 29 volts
3⁄32	(2.4)	…	Feed rate 210 ipm (5.3 m/min) Current 460 amps Voltage 32 volts

Material Condition and Weld Requirements.—Practical considerations for selecting a gas-shielded, flux-cored electrode depend on the material condition and weld requirements. FCAW electrodes are beneficial if the surface of the material to be welded is contaminated with mill scale, rust, oil, or paint; the fillet weld size is to be over 3⁄8 in. (9.6 mm) wide (a GMAW single-pass fillet weld with an electrode size of 0.045 in. is typically 3⁄8 in. wide); the weld is vertical up, or overhead; the required impact strengths and other mechanical properties are above normal levels; crack resistance needs to be high; and increased penetration is required.

Selecting an FCAW Electrode.—Selection of FCAW electrodes is simplified by matching the characteristics of flux-cored types with the material and weld requirements listed above. Once the correct electrode type is selected, the next step is to choose the optimum size. In selecting an all-position, flux-cored electrode for vertical up or overhead welding, the steel thickness is the prime consideration. Selecting the optimum electrode diameter allows the high current capability of the electrode to be fully used to attain maximum

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

deposition rates and allows use of the highest penetrating current without concern for excessive heat-related problems during welding. When used in the optimum current range, the deposited filler metal matches the required amount of filler metal for the specific size of the weld, determined by the plate thickness.

The following suggestions and recommendations are made for FCAW welding of carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels having flat surfaces. For vertical up welds on steels of thicknesses from 1/8 to 3/16 in. (3.2 to 4.8 mm) and for vertical up welds on pipe in the thickness range of 1/4 to 1/2 in. (6.4 to 13 mm), consider the 0.035-in. (1.0-mm) diameter E71T-1 electrode. For vertical up welds on steels in the range of 1/4 to 3/8 in. (6.4 to 9.6 mm) thickness, consider the 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter E71T-1 electrode or, in nonheat-sensitive applications, the 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter E71T-1 electrode. For vertical up welds on steels of over 3/8 in. (9.6 mm) thickness, consider the 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter E71T-1 electrodes for optimum deposition rates. For flat and horizontal welds on steels of 3/8 to 3/4 in. (9.6 to 19 mm) thickness, consider the 1/16-in. (1.6-mm) diameter E70T-X electrodes. For flat and horizontal welds on steels over 3/4 in. (19 mm) in thickness, consider the 3/32-in. (2.4-mm) E70T-X electrodes.

FCAW Welding of Low-Carbon Steels.—Low-carbon steel is usually called carbon steel or mild steel. The most-used FCAW electrode for welding carbon steels in the flat or horizontal welding positions is the type E70T-1, which is suited to welding of reasonably clean steel using single-pass or multi-pass welds. Type E70T-2 has added deoxidizers and is suited to surfaces with mill scale or other contamination. This type is used when no more than two layers of weld are to be applied. Type E70T-5 is used for single-pass or multi-pass welds where superior impact properties or improved crack resistance are required. The E70T-X electrodes typically range in size from 0.045 to 3/32 in. (1.2 to 2.4 mm) in diameter. Type E71T-1 all-position electrodes are available in diameters of 0.035 in. (1 mm) to 0.062 in. (1.6 mm). With the FCAW process, multi-pass welds are defined as a condition where three or more weld passes are placed on top of each other.

Settings for Gas-Shielded, All-Position, FCAW Electrodes.—The optimum setting range (volts and amps) for vertical up welding with all-position FCAW electrodes is rather narrow. The welder usually obtains the greatest degree of weld puddle control at the recommended low to medium current settings. The electrode manufacturers' recommended current range for an E71T-1 electrode of 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter for vertical up welding may be approximately 130 to 250 amps. Using the 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter electrode at 250 amps for a vertical up weld in 1/4-in. (6.4-mm) thick steel, the welder may find that after 3 to 4 inches (75–100 mm) of weld, the weld heat built up in the steel being welded is sufficient to make the weld puddle fluidity increasingly difficult to control. Reducing the current to 160–220 amps will make it possible to maintain control over the weld puddle.

A typical optimum setting for a vertical up weld with an E71T-1, 0.035-in. (1.2-mm) diameter, all-position electrode is as follows. First, set the wire feed rate. If the wire feeder maximum rate is 650 to 750 in/min (16.5–19.0 m/min), the setting mark on the adjustment knob should be set between the one and two o'clock positions on the dial to obtain a feed rate of 450 in/min (11 m/min). If the wire feeder has a digital readout, the rate setting should be the same. At the 450-in/min setting, the welding current with the 0.035-in. all-position electrode should be optimized at between 160 and 170 amps. The welding voltage should be set at 27 to 28 volts with the electrode tip just touching the weld. If there is a gap causing the weld puddle to become too fluid, the voltage should be lowered. If the electrode runs into the weld, causing spatter, the voltage needs to be increased.

With the above conditions, welding steel of 1/8 to 1/4 in. thickness will deposit 5 to 7 lb/h (2.2 to 3 kg/h). The 0.035-in. electrode is also ideal for welding steel pipe with wall thicknesses of less than 1/2 in. (13 mm). The thickness of the pipe after bevelling controls the size of electrode to be used. The 0.035-in. (6.4-mm) electrode can produce a 1/4 -in. (6.4-mm) vertical up fillet weld on such a pipe without weaving.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Contact Tip Recess.—The dimension labeled contact tip recess in Fig. 2, and indicated as $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm), should be about $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) for a minimum electrode extension of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm), for FCAW welding. This dimension is critical for obtaining high-quality welds with all-position electrodes because they have a fast-freezing slag and operate with low to medium current and voltage. If the recess dimension is less than the optimum, the voltage may be lower than the minimum recommended, and if the settings are less than the minimum, the fast-freezing slag may solidify too rapidly, causing excess porosity or "worm tracks" on the weld surface.

The recommended length of electrode extension for all-position FCAW, E71T-1 electrodes is $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 in. (19 to 25 mm). The size of this extension not only affects the minimum required parameters, but a long electrode extension also ensures preheating of the electrode and allows lower current to be used. Preheating the electrode is further beneficial as it reduces moisture on the electrode surface, and in the electrode flux. When a change is made from the GMAW to the FCAW process, welders must be aware of the influence on weld quality of the electrode extension in the FCAW process.

Porosity and Worm Tracks.—As mentioned above, porosity and worm tracks typically result from a combination of incorrect electrode extension, incorrect welding settings, humidity, electrode moisture, refill scale, rust, paint, oils, or poor welding technique. Where humidity levels are high, potential for porosity and worm tracks increases. The FCAW process is less sensitive to mill scale than the GMAW spray transfer mode but mill scale will often cause excess weld porosity. The best way to avoid the effects of mill scale, rust, oil, and surface contaminants is to grind the area to be welded.

Another way to reduce porosity is to keep weaving to a minimum. If the correct size flux-cored electrode is used, weaving can be kept to a minimum for most flux-cored applications. The forehand technique produces the best weld bead surface on fillet weld beads up to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) steel thickness in the flat and horizontal weld positions. On larger single-pass fillet welds, the backhand technique is beneficial because the voltage directed at the weld provides additional weld puddle control to the fluid welds. The backhand technique used for flat and horizontal welds produces a more convex weld bead, reduces potential for porosity, and increases penetration.

If porosity or worm tracks occur, the prime solution is in weld practices that increase heat at the weld, but the following remedies can also be tried. Grind clean the surface to be welded; use recommended electrode extensions; increase current (wire feed rate) decrease voltage; use the backhand welding technique; slow down travel speed, consider use of a different electrode formulation containing increased deoxidizers, avoid weaving; change from argon + CO_2 mixture to straight CO_2; and provide a protective cover to keep the electrode spool clean and dry.

Welding with 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) Diameter All-Position Electrodes.—Fig. 5 shows wire feed settings for welding of steel with 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter, E71T-1 all-position electrodes using a mixture of argon + 15 to 25 percent CO_2 as the shielding gas, and an electrode extension of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (18 mm). Parameters for vertical up welding, shown at the left in Fig. 5, include setting the wire feed rate at the twelve o'clock position, or about 350 in/min, using 200 to 190 amps, and setting the voltage between 24 and 25 volts. Optimum parameters for flat welding, shown at the right in Fig. 5 include setting the wire feed rate at three o'clock position, or 560 in/min (240 mm/s), and 270 amps at 25 to 27 volts.

Welding with 0.052-in. (1.3-mm) Diameter All-Position Electrodes.—Settings for vertical up and flat welding with all-position E71T-1 electrodes of 0.052-in. (1.3-mm) diameter are seen at the left in Fig. 6. These electrodes are suited to welding steel having thicknesses of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) and thicker. For vertical up welding, the wire feed rate is set between the ten and eleven o'clock positions, or 250 in/min (106 mm/s), with about 200 amps at 25 volts. Flat welding with these electrodes is best done with the wire feed rate set between the two and three o'clock positions, or 490 to 560 in/min (207 to 237 mm/s), giving approximately 300 amps at 28 volts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

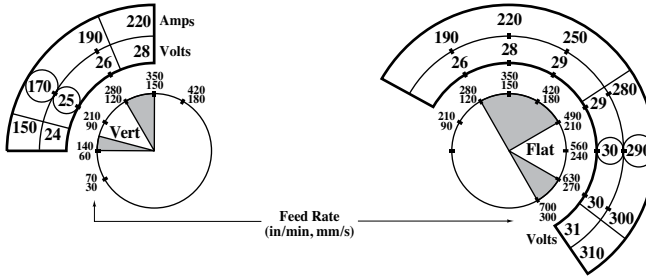


Fig. 5. Wire Feed and Voltage Settings for FCAW Welding with 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) Diameter E71T-1 Electrodes, with Optimum Settings Circled.

Settings for all-position E71T-1 electrodes of 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter, shown at the right in Fig. 6, for vertical up welding are just before the ten o'clock position, or 190 in/min, giving 230 to 240 amps with voltage adjusted to 24–25 volts. For flat welding, the wire feed is set to the twelve o'clock position, giving 340–350 amps with a voltage of 29–30 volts.

High-Deposition, All-Position Electrodes.—Vertical up weld deposition rates of 10 to 14 lb/h can be achieved with the E71T-1, 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) and 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) flux-cored electrodes. Settings are shown in Fig. 6 for E71T-1, FCAW electrodes of 0.052- and 0.062-in. (1.4- and 1.6-mm) diameter. These electrodes are suited to applications in which the steel thickness is $\frac{1}{4}$ in. and thicker, and are the most cost-effective diameter for all-position welds on carbon and stainless steels of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.35 mm) thickness and thicker. In contrast, vertical up welds, using GMAW or SMAW, may deposit an average of 2 to 4 lb/h (1 to 2 kg/h). Deposition rates are based on welding 60 minutes of each hour. Pulsed GMAW provides deposition rates of 3 to 6 lb/h (1.3–2.7 kg/h). Average rates for vertical up welding with all-position, flux-cored electrodes are shown in Table 8.

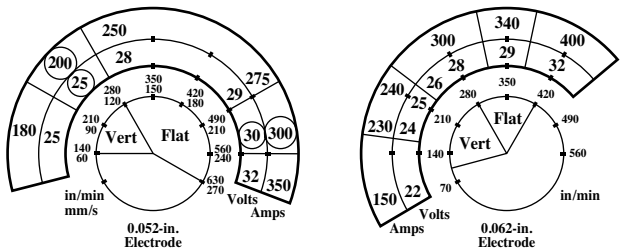


Fig. 6. Wire Feed and Voltage Settings for Vertical Up Welding with 0.052- and 0.062-in. Diameter Electrodes

The average deposition rates in Table 9 are to be expected with FCAW electrodes available today. Special electrodes are also available that are specifically designed to provide higher deposition rates. A typical manual welder, welding on steel of $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{8}$ in. thickness for 30 minutes of each hour with an all-position flux-cored 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) or 0.045-in. (1.2-mm) diameter electrode would deposit about 4–5 lb/h.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Deposition Rates for Vertical Up Welding with All-Position, Flux-Cored Electrodes (ET71T-1)

Electrode Diameter		Typical Deposition Rate Range		Average Deposition Rate	
inch	(mm)	lb/h	(kg/h)	lb/h	(kg/h)
0.035	(1)	2.7–6.5	(1.2–3)	5	(2.3)
0.045	(1.2)	5–11	(2.3–5)	8	(3.6)
0.052	(1.4)	4–8	(1.8–3.6)	6.5	(3)
0.062	(1.6)	4–11	(1.8–5)	8.5	(4)

Table 9. Average Deposition Rates for Flat and Horizontal Welds

Process	Electrode Size inch	(mm)	Cost-Effective Current Range (amps)	Optimum Current (amps)	Deposition Rate lb/h	(kg/h)
GMAW spray transfer	0.035	(1)	250–350	285	9	(4)
	0.045	(1.2)	300–400	385	13	(5.9)
	0.052	(1.4)	350–470	410	11	(5)
	0.062	(1.6)	375–500	450	17	(7.7)
FCAW	0.045	(1.2)	225–310	300	14	(6.4)
	0.052	(1.4)	260–350	310	15	(6.8)
	0.062	(1.6)	300–400	340	15	(6.8)
	3/32	(2.4)	380–560	460	17	(7.7)

The average deposition rates of pulsed GMAW and FCAW for vertical up welds are similar for applications where the steel thickness is 1/8 in. (3.2 mm) or less. On steels thicker than 1/8 in., where the current may be increased, and larger-diameter all-position FCAW electrodes may be used, deposition rates will be much greater than with pulsed GMAW. Compared with GMAW electrodes for pulsed welding, FCAW all-position electrodes require less costly equipment, less welding skill, and have potential for increased weld fusion with less porosity than with GMAW pulsed techniques.

Electrode Diameters and Deposition Rates.—A cost-effective welding shop can achieve deposition rates on flat and horizontal welds of 12 to 15 lb/h (5 to 7 kg/h) with both the GMAW 0.045-in. wire and the 0.062-in. flux-cored wire electrodes, without welder discomfort, and with welds of consistent quality.

The first consideration in selecting the optimum size of gas-shielded FCAW E70T-X electrode for manual flat and horizontal welds on steels thicker than 1/4 in. (6.4 mm) is the current requirements needed to achieve deposition rates of 12 to 15 lb/h (5 to 7 kg/h). Large-size electrodes of 3/32-in. (2.4-mm) diameter require 500 amps or more to attain optimum deposition rates. These 3/32-in. diameter electrodes are often used with power sources in the 300–400 amp range, but even when the power source provides 500 to 600 amps, welding is often performed at the low end of the electrode's current requirements. With the large, 3/32-in. diameter electrodes, welder appeal is low, smoke is often excessive, and deposition rates are often only comparable with smaller, easier-to-operate FCAW electrodes.

Typical deposition rates for flat and horizontal welds with various electrode sizes and weld settings are shown in Table 9. In connection with this table, it may be noted that high deposition rates in welding steel plate thicker than 1/4 in. require use of currents above the minimum shown for the various sizes of electrodes. The optimum current requirements for the most popular electrode sizes indicate that a 450-amp power source is the most suitable for welding steel of more than 1/4 in. thickness. The two most cost-effective and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

versatile consumables for thin and thick steel sections are the 0.045 in. for GMAW and the 0.062 in. for FCAW electrodes.

The approach to a welding application is critical to achievement of optimum weld quality at minimum cost. In many applications, minimal consideration is given to weld costs. Half of every man-hour of welding in many shops could be saved with selection of the correct electrode diameter used with optimum parameter settings. A practical point that is often overlooked in selection of FCAW electrodes is that the larger the electrode diameter, the more restricted is the application thickness range. Large FCAW electrodes such as the $\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.4 mm) are neither suitable nor cost-effective for the common steel thickness range of $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (6.4 to 13 mm). Smaller FCAW electrodes such as the $\frac{1}{16}$-in. (1.6-mm) diameter, are suitable for both thin and thick applications. A $\frac{1}{16}$-in. diameter FCAW electrode used in the 300- to 350-amp range provides excellent deposition rates with superior welder appeal and negligible smoke.

Large-diameter $\frac{3}{32}$-in. (2.4-mm) electrodes are popular for manual applications. However, from a practical point of view, this electrode size is often better suited to mechanized high-current welding in which the high currents required for optimum deposition rates may be safely used without health risks. Use of an electrode at 60 to 80 percent of its welding current capability indicates that the correct diameter electrode has been selected for the application. When an electrode is used at its maximum-current capability, it shows that the next size larger electrode should be preferred, and when the low end of the current capability is in use, the electrode selected is typically too large.

The 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) Diameter, E70T-X Electrode.—The 0.062-in. (1.6-mm) diameter FCAW electrode is the most practical size of its type and will provide excellent deposition rate potential with a practical current range and the broadest application range. Settings for the common $\frac{1}{16}$-in. diameter E70T-1 electrode are shown in Fig. 7. With the GMAW process, a $\frac{3}{8}$- to $\frac{7}{16}$-in. (9.6- to 11-mm) minimum-weave fillet weld is typically the maximum size that can be made in a single pass. The 0.062-in. ($\frac{1}{16}$-in, 1.6-mm) FCAW electrode can easily produce a $\frac{3}{4}$-in. (19-mm), nonweave, single-pass fillet weld. This size of electrode is also a practical choice for welding steel of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm) or greater thickness. From a cost perspective, FCAW consumable electrodes should be used whenever the GMAW process is not suitable.

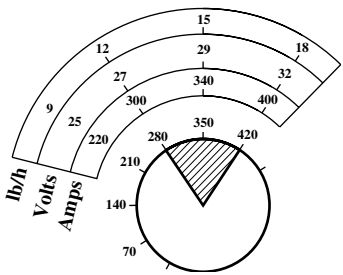


Fig. 7. Settings for $\frac{1}{16}$-in. (1.6-mm) FCAW, E70T-X Electrodes

The average deposition efficiency of a flux-cored electrode is 85 percent, which means that for every 100 lb or kg of electrode material used, 85 lb or kg ends up as weld material. In contrast, the average deposition efficiency of a GMAW electrode used with argon mixtures and correct equipment settings should be a minimum of 99 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shielding Gases and FCAW Electrodes.—The E70T-X flux-cored electrodes that are recommended for flat and horizontal welds use CO_2 gas shielding. Because of new OSHA welding smoke restrictions, manufacturers of FCAW electrodes now provide E70T-X consumable electrodes that can be used with less reactive argon + CO_2 mixtures to reduce smoke levels. The fast-freezing slag, all-position, E71T-1 flux-cored electrodes can use either CO_2 or argon + 15 to 25 percent CO_2 mixtures for welding carbon, low-alloy, or stainless steels. The argon + CO_2 mixture is often selected because it provides the highest energy from a reactive gas mixture with a compatible voltage range.

Instead of CO_2, welders often prefer the arc characteristics, lower smoke levels, and lower voltage requirements of the argon + CO_2 mixtures for all-position welding. However, if lower reactive argon mixtures such as argon + oxygen, or argon with less than 13 percent CO_2, are used, the weld voltage requirements and the arc plasma energy are reduced, adding to the possibility of changing the mechanical properties significantly, increasing the porosity, and raising the potential for forming worm tracks.

Shielded Metal Arc Welding

With the shielded metal arc welding (SMAW) process, commonly known as stick welding, it is most important to select an electrode that is suited to the application. For welding austenitic stainless or high-alloy steels, the electrode is first selected to match the mechanical and chemical requirements of the metal to be welded. Secondary requirements such as the welding position, penetration potential, deposition capabilities, and ease of slag removal are then considered. Many electrodes for SMAW welding of low- to medium-carbon steels have unique characteristics making them the most suitable and cost-effective for a specific welding application.

In interpreting the ANSI/AWS Standard specification code for SMAW electrodes shown in Table 10, for example, E60XX, the E stands for a low-carbon steel, metal arc welding electrode. The next two digits, such as 60 or 70, indicate the approximate tensile strength of the weld deposit in thousands of psi.

Of the last two digits, the next (second to last) number indicates the positions in which the electrode can be used: 1 = indicates the electrode is suitable for use in flat, horizontal, vertical, and overhead positions; 2 = the electrode can be used in the flat position for all welding types, and in the horizontal position for fillet welds only; 4 = the electrode is suitable for use in the flat, horizontal, vertical-down, and overhead positions. Note that number "3" is no longer used as a position designation.

The final digit, combined with the above, indicates the type of flux coating, as shown in Table 10.

Table 10. Significance of Digits, *ANSI/AWS A5.18-1979*

Third and Fourth Digits	Flux Type and Characteristics, SMAW Electrodes
10	High-cellulose coating bonded with sodium silicate. Deep penetration, energetic spray-type arc. All-positional, DCEP[a] only
11	Similar to 10 but bonded with potassium silicate to permit use with AC or DCEP
12	High-rutile coating, bonded with sodium silicate. Quiet arc, medium penetration, all-positional, AC or DCEN
13	Similar to 12 but bonded with sodium silicate and with easily ionized materials added. Gives steady arc on low voltage. All-positional, AC or DCEN
14	Similar to 12 with addition of medium amount of iron powder. All-positional, AC or DC
15	Lime-fluoride coating (basic low-hydrogen) bonded with sodium silicate. All-positional. For welding high-tensile steels. DCEP only

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **Significance of Digits,** *ANSI/AWS A5.18-1979*

Third and Fourth Digits	Flux Type and Characteristics, SMAW Electrodes
16	Similar to 15 but bonded with potassium silicate. AC or DCEP
18	Similar to 15 but with addition of iron powder. All-positional, AC or DC
20	High iron-oxide coating bonded with sodium silicate. Flat or HV positions. Good X-ray quality. AC or DC
24	Heavy coating containing high percentage of iron powder for fast deposition rates. Flat and horizontal positions only. AC or DC
27	Very heavy coating with ingredients similar to 20 and high percentage of iron powder. Flat or horizontal positions. High X-ray quality. AC or DC
28	Similar to 18 but heavier coating and suited for use in flat and HV positions only. AC or DC
30	High-iron-oxide-type coating but produces less fluid slag than 20. For use in flat position only (primarily narrow-groove butt welds). Good X-ray quality. AC or DC

[a] DC = direct current, AC = alternating current, EP = electrode positive, EN = electrode negative.

British Standard BS 639:1986 defines requirements for covered carbon- and carbon-manganese-steel electrodes for manual metal arc welding, depositing weld metal having a tensile strength of not more than 650 N/mm^2. Appendix A of this standard lists minimum mandatory and optional characteristics of these electrodes. The extensive classifications provide for electrodes to be rated for strength, toughness, and covering (STC), with codes such as E 51 5 4 BB [160 3 0 H]. In this series, E indicates that the electrode is covered and is for manual metal arc welding. The next two digits (51) indicate the strength (tensile, yield, and elongation) properties. The next digits (5 and 4) give the temperatures at which minimum average impact strengths of 28J (at −40°C) and 47J (at −30°C), using Charpy V-notch test specimens, are required. The next group is for the covering and the BB stands for basic, high efficiency. Other letters are B for basic; C for cellulosic; R for rutile, RR for rutile, heavy coated; and S for other.

The letters in brackets are optional, and the first group indicates the efficiency, which is the ratio of the mass of weld metal to the mass of nominal diameter core wire consumed with the largest diameter electrode, rounded up to the nearest multiple of 10. The next digit (3) is the maker's advice for the position(s) to be used. Codes for this category include 1, all positions; 2, all positions except vertical down; 3, flat, and for fillet welds, horizontal/vertical; 4, flat; 5, flat, vertical/down; and for fillet welds, horizontal/vertical; and 9, other. The digit at (0), which may have numbers from 0 to 9, shows the polarity, and the minimum open-circuit voltage to be used for that electrode. A 0 here indicates that the electrode is not suited for use with AC. The (H) is included only for hydrogen-controlled electrodes that will deposit not more than 15 ml of diffusible hydrogen for each 100 g of deposited weld metal. The corresponding ISO Standard for BS 639 is ISO 2560. Low-alloy steel electrodes and chromium and chromium nickel steel electrodes are covered in BS 2493 and BS 2926.

The most common electrodes used for the SMAW process are the AWS types E60XX and E70XX. SMAW welding electrode Standards are issued by the American Welding Society (AWS), the British Standards Institute (BS), Canada (CSA), Germany (DIN), and Japan (JIS) and are shown in Table 11.

AWS E60XX Electrodes.—Characteristics of the E60XX electrodes influence the weld position capability, ease of slag removal, penetration potential, weld travel speed capability, and weld deposition rates. These electrodes are designed for welding low-carbon steels and they provide welds with typical tensile strength in the range of 58,000–65,000 lb$_f$/in^2 (400–448 MPa), depending on the specific electrode utilized, the base metal condition and chemistry, and the amount of weld dilution. In selecting an electrode for SMAW welding, knowing that the mechanical and chemical requirements have been matched, it is necessary to choose electrodes with characteristics that influence the features required, as shown in Table 11.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Characteristics of SMAW Welding Electrodes Made to Standards of Various Countries

Standard	Description
AWS E6010 CSA E41010 BS E4343C10 DIN E4343C4 JIS D3410	Designed for welding pipe and general structures. Excellent for all-position and vertical down welding. Slag is light and easy to remove. Deep, penetrating arc. Low deposition rates. Polarity DC + (electrode positive).
AWS E6011 CSA E41011 BS E4343C13 DIN E4343C4 JIS D4311	Similar to E6010 but modified to allow use of AC. Excellent for welding sheet metal corner joints vertical down. Polarity AC or DC + (electrode positive).
AWS 6012 CSA E41012 BS E4332R12 DIN E4332R(C) JIS D4313	Designed for welding sheet metal and light structural steels. Medium penetration suitable for gaps or where minimum weld dilution is needed. Ideal for flat, horizontal, or vertical down welding. Will weld faster than the E6010-11 electrode. Polarity AC or DC—(electrode negative).
AWS E6013 CSA E41013 BS E4332R21 DIN E4332R3 JIS D4313	Excellent AC or DC—performance. All-position. Shallow penetration. Good choice for low open-circuit welding machines. AC or DC both excellent on thin structural applications. Polarity AC or DC (DC both polarities).
AWS 6027 CSA 41027 BSE4343A13035 DIN 4343AR11 JIS D4327	Iron powder is added to the flux to provide higher deposition rates. Ideal for multipass groove and fillet welding in flat and horizontal positions. Polarity AC or DC (both polarities).

Table 12 shows approximate current requirements for AWS E60XX electrodes for welding sheet metal carbon steels. The current ranges specified vary slightly with different electrode manufacturers. For welding sheet metal start at the low end of the given current requirements with electrodes of $\frac{3}{16}$-in (5-mm) diameter or smaller. For metals thicker than 10 gage (0.134 in.), start in the center of the current range, then adjust to suit. A high DC current may result in arc blow, and improved results may then be obtained with AC.

Table 12. Diameters of AWS E6010/E6011 SMAW Electrodes for Welding Low-Carbon Steel Sheet Metal

SWG of Sheet Metal to be Welded	Electrode Diameter		Current Starting Level
	in.	(mm)	(amps)
18	$\frac{3}{32}$	(2.5)	45–60
16–14	$\frac{1}{8}$	(3.2)	80–110
12	$\frac{5}{32}$	(4)	125–135
10	$\frac{3}{16}$	(5)	135–150

For welding thicker materials, a good starting setting is in the middle of the current range shown in Table 12. In welding material less than $\frac{1}{4}$-in. (6.4-mm) thick, vertically, with an E6010 electrode, try a $\frac{1}{8}$-in. (3.2-mm) electrode at 90 to 100 amps. For welding thicknesses between $\frac{3}{16}$ and $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (5 and 8 mm) with the E6010 electrode, vertically, try the $\frac{5}{16}$-in. (8-mm) diameter electrode at 100 to 125 amps. For thicknesses of $\frac{3}{8}$ to 1 in. (9.5 to 25 mm), try a $\frac{3}{16}$-in. (5-mm) diameter electrode at 155 to 165 amps.

Recommended current ranges, shown in Table 13 for the various sizes of AWS E60XX electrodes most commonly used for welding carbon steel, will give optimum results with SMAW electrodes. An ideal starting point for the current setting for any SMAW electrode diameter is in the middle of the range. The current ranges shown are average values taken from literature of electrode manufacturers in three different countries.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Current Ranges for AWS E60XX SMAW Electrodes

Electrode Diameter		E6010/E6011	E6012	E6013	E6027
in.	(mm)	(amps)	(amps)	(amps)	(amps)
1/16	(1.6)	…	25–50	20–40	…
3/32	(2.5)	40–75	40–100	50–100	…
1/8	(3.2)	75–130	85–140	75–135	120–180
5/32	(4)	90–170	115–185	110–185	155–245
3/16	(5)	135–220	145–240	150–235	200–300
1/4	(6.4)	205–325	250–390	240–340	300–410
5/16	(8)	260–420	290–480	310–425	370–480

AWS E70XX Electrodes.—Information on the most commonly used AWS E70XX electrodes is given in Table 15. For critical welding applications, low-hydrogen electrodes are typically used. It is most important that manufacturers' instructions regarding storage requirements for keeping low-hydrogen electrodes free from moisture are followed. Current ranges for welding low-carbon steel sheet metal with E70XX electrodes of diameters from 3/32 to 3/16 in. (2.5 to 5 mm) are shown in Table 14. The optimum starting point is in the middle of the current range indicated.

Table 14. Current Ranges for SMAW E70XX Welding Electrodes

Electrode Diameter		E7014	E7018	E7024
in.	(mm)	(amps)	(amps)	(amps)
3/32	(2.5)	75–120	70–105	85–135
1/8	(3.2)	110–155	110–160	130–180
5/32	(4)	145–210	150–215	175–240
3/16	(5)	190–280	180–275	230–315
7/32	(5.5)	255–335	255–350	280–370
1/4	(6.4)	330–415	295–360	325–450
5/16	(8)	380–490	370–480	390–530

In using AWS E7018 electrodes for vertical up welding of plate thicknesses of 3/16 to 5/16 in. (5 to 8 mm), try a 1/8-in. (3.2-mm) diameter electrode. For vertical up welding of thicknesses greater than 5/16 in. (8 mm), try a 5/32-in. (4-mm) electrode. With AWS E7018 electrodes, to make horizontal fillet welds in plate thicknesses of 10 swg (0.135 in., 3.4 mm), try a 3/16-in. (5-mm) electrode, for 1/4-in. (6.4-mm) plate, try the 7/32-in. (5.5-mm) electrode, and for steel plate thicker than 1/4 in., try the 1/4-in. (6.4-mm) diameter electrode.

Table 15. Characteristics of AWS Electrodes for SMAW Welding

Standard	Description
AWS E7014 CSA E48014 BS E5121RR11011 DIN E5121RR8 JIS D4313	An iron-powder, all-position electrode for shallow penetration. Excellent for vertical down and applications with poor fit. Similar to AWS E6012-E6013 with added iron powder. For welding mild and low-alloy steels. Polarity AC or DC, + or −.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. *(Continued)* **Characteristics of AWS Electrodes for SMAW Welding**

Standard	Description
AWS E7018 CSA E48018 BS E5154B11026(H) DIN E5154B(R)10 JIS D5016	An iron-powder, low-hydrogen, all-position electrode. Excellent for rigid, highly stressed structures of low- to medium-carbon steel. Can also be used for welding mild and high-strength steels, high-carbon steels, and alloy steels. Polarity AC or DC + reverse polarity.
AWS 7024 CSA E48024 BS E5122RR13034 DIN E5122RR11 JIS D4324	An iron-powder electrode with low hydrogen, usable in all positions. Excellent for high-amperage, large, fillet welds in flat and horizontal positions. Polarity AC or DC, + or –.
AWS E7028 CSA E48028 BS E514B12036(H) DIN E5143B(R)12 JIS D5026	An iron-powder, low-hydrogen electrode suitable for horizontal fillets and grooved flat position welding. Higher deposition rates. More cost-effective than the AWS E7018 electrode. Polarity AC or DC + reverse polarity.

The E7024 electrode is suggested for horizontal fillet welds. For 10-gage (0.135-in, 3.4-mm) material, try the $\frac{1}{8}$-in. (3.2-mm) diameter electrode; for above 10-gage to $\frac{3}{16}$-in. (5-mm) material, try the $\frac{5}{32}$-in. (4-mm) diameter electrode. For plate of $\frac{3}{16}$- to $\frac{1}{4}$-in. thickness, try the $\frac{3}{16}$-in. size, and for plate thicker than $\frac{1}{4}$ in., try the $\frac{1}{4}$-in. (6.4-mm) electrode.

Gas Tungsten Arc Welding

Often called TIG (for tungsten inert gas) welding, gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW) uses a nonconsumable tungsten electrode with a gas shield, and was, until the development of plasma arc welding (PAW), the most versatile of all common manual welding processes. Plasma arc welding is a modified GTAW process. In contrast to GTAW, plasma arc welding has less sensitivity to arc length variations, superior low-current arc stability, greater potential tungsten life, and the capability for single-pass, full-penetration welds on thick sections.

In examining a potential welding application, the three primary considerations are: achieving a quality weld, ease of welding, and cost. Selecting the optimum weld process becomes more complex as sophisticated electronic technology is applied to conventional welding equipment and consumable electrodes. Rapid advances in gas metal arc and PAW welding power source technology, and the development of many new flux-cored electrodes, have made selection of the optimum welding process or weld consumable more difficult. When several manual welding processes are available, the logical approach in considering GTAW for production welding is to first examine whether the job can be welded by gas metal arc or flux-cored methods.

GTAW Welding Current.—A major benefit offered by GTAW, compared with GMAW, FCAW, or SMAW, is the highly concentrated, spatter-free, inert heat from the tungsten arc, which is beneficial for many applications. The GTAW process can use any of three types of welding current, including direct-current straight polarity, electrode negative (DC–), direct-current reverse polarity, electrode positive (DC+), and alternating current with high frequency for arc stabilization (ACHF). Each of the different current types provides benefits that can be used for a specific application.

GTAW Direct-Current Straight Polarity (DC–): The most common GTAW current is straight polarity, where the electrode is connected to the negative terminal on the power source and the ground is connected to the positive terminal. Gas tungsten arc welding is used with inert gases such as argon, and argon + helium to weld most metals. During a DC– straight-polarity weld, electrons flow from the negative tungsten electrode tip and pass through the electric field in the arc plasma to the positive workpiece, as shown in Fig. 8.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Plasma is a high-temperature, ionized, gaseous column that is formed when electrons in the arc collide with the shielding gas molecules. The gas atoms lose one or more electrons, leaving them positively charged. The electrons and the resulting plasma are concentrated at the electrode tip, where they cause the plasma pressure to be at its greatest. The electron density thins out as the electrons travel from the straight-polarity, negatively charged, tungsten electrode across the open arc. As the electrons traverse the arc to the work, the resulting arc column width increases slightly, controlled in part by the electromagnetic forces generated by the current. With the increase in the arc column width, the density and pressure of the plasma decrease. The electrons collide with the work, liberating much heat. The downward pressure of the plasma is exerted against the surface of the weld pool. The gas ions in the plasma are positively charged and greater in mass than the electrons.

In DC–, straight-polarity welding, the positive gas ions are drawn to the negative electrode. The electron flow to the weld ensures that most of the arc heat is generated at the positive work side of the arc. This current setup provides maximum penetration potential, as indicated in Fig. 8. With DC–, straight polarity, the tungsten electrode can carry a higher current and operate at lower temperatures than with the other current arrangements.

Direct-Current Reverse Polarity (DC+): With direct-current positive polarity (DC+), the tungsten electrode is connected to the power-source positive terminal so that the electrons flow from the negative work to the positive electrode. As illustrated in Fig. 9, the electrons impinging on the electrode tip reverse the direction of the heat concentration that occurs with straight polarity, as described above. Approximately two-thirds of the heat generated with DC+ reverse polarity is at the electrode tip, and the electrode becomes very hot, even with low current levels. DC+ reverse polarity requires large-diameter electrodes.

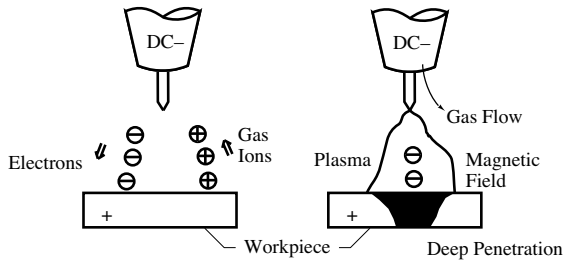


Fig. 8. Straight Polarity (DC–) Provides Highest Electrode Current Capacity and Deepest Penetration Potential

In the current range of 100 to 150 amps, DC+ reverse polarity requires a $\frac{1}{4}$-in. (6.4-mm) diameter electrode. This larger electrode produces a weld puddle almost twice as wide as that produced by a 120-amp, $\frac{1}{16}$-in. (1.6-mm) diameter, DC– straight polarity electrode. Most of the heat is generated at the electrode tip with DC+ reverse polarity, so penetration is much less than with DC– straight polarity. With DC+ reverse polarity, the positive gas ions in the arc plasma are drawn to the negative workpiece where they bombard and break up the surface oxides that form on metals such as aluminum and magnesium. However, the best welding method for aluminum and magnesium is to use alternating current (AC), which combines the benefits of DC– straight and DC+ reverse polarity.

Alternating Current (AC): The surface oxides formed on metals such as aluminum and magnesium disturb the arc and reduce the weld quality. Welding of these metals requires DC+ reverse or AC polarity to break up the surface oxides. An alternating current (AC) cycle consists of one-half cycle of straight polarity and one-half cycle of reverse polarity. With alternating current, the cleaning action benefits of the reverse-polarity arc can be combined with the electrode current-carrying capacity of the straight-polarity

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

arc. In welding aluminum and magnesium, the half cycles of AC polarity may become unbalanced. During the AC cycle, the reverse electrode-positive portion of the cycle is restricted by the oxides on the surfaces of these materials. The surface oxides are poor conductors and make it difficult for the electrons generated by the reverse-polarity part of the cycle to flow from the work to the electrode tip, but they do not upset the straight polarity in which the electrons flow from the electrode to the work.

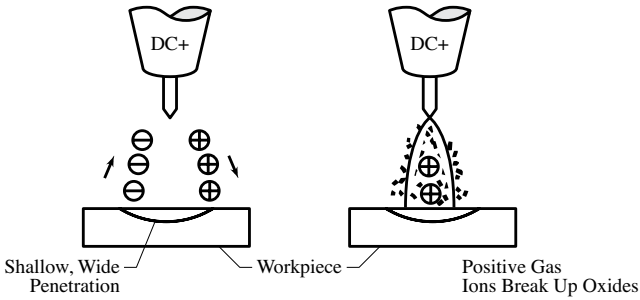


Fig. 9. Direct-Current (DC+) Reverse Polarity Provides a Shallow, Wide, Weld Pool

DC Component: The part of the reverse-polarity cycle of alternating current (AC) that is upset by the poor conductivity of the oxides is changed into direct-current, straight polarity (DC–) and is directed back to the power source where it may cause overheating. The feedback is referred to as the DC component and its characteristics are important in deciding which process to use because, if an AC power source designed for shielded metal arc welding is to be used to weld aluminum by the GTAW process, the power source must be derated to protect the equipment. The power-source manufacturer will provide information on the level of derating required.

Power sources are available for GTAW that provide a balanced AC wave, and manufacturers will provide information about the benefits of balanced wave versus unbalanced wave, GTAW power sources, and equipment to protect against the DC component.

High Frequency and AC: To maintain the stability of the alternating-current (AC) arc when the positive cycle of the arc is upset by the aluminum oxide, and to avoid contamination of the tungsten electrode, high-frequency current is used to assist in arc ignition during each AC cycle. In direct-current, straight-polarity (DC–) welding of carbon and stainless steels, the high-frequency current is typically selected by the HF arc start-only switch. During AC welding of steels without oxide problems, the HF switch may be left on the arc start-only setting. When AC is used on aluminum, magnesium, or other metals with poor electron-conductive oxides, the HF switch should be moved to the continuous setting.

High-frequency current is also beneficial in that it promotes gas ionization. The more positively charged molecules produced, the more cleaning action takes place in the direct-current, reverse-polarity (DCRP) cycle.

Selecting the Tungsten Electrode-Type.—Use of the correct tungsten electrode composition is vital to producing good-quality GTAW welds. Tungsten has the highest melting temperature of all metals. Pure tungsten provides a low-current capacity and requires addition of such alloying elements as thorium or zirconium to increase the current-carrying capability. The electrode diameter and the electrode tip configuration also require consideration as both have a great influence on the performance and application potential of GTAW welding.

Table 17 shows typical compositions of commonly used GTAW tungsten electrode materials from the American Welding Society AWS A5.12 Standard. New electrode

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

compositions have been designed that utilize other alloys and rare-earth metals. These electrodes are designed for longer lives in both GTAW and plasma welding.

Pure Tungsten: Pure tungsten electrode material provides good arc stability with alternating current (AC). Tungsten has low current capacity and low resistance to electrode contamination. Pure tungsten is good for low-amperage welding of aluminum and magnesium alloys. On medium- to high-current ferrous applications, there is a potential for tungsten inclusions in the weld.

With DC, the current capacity of pure tungsten is lower than with the alloyed tungsten electrodes. During AC welding, a molten ball shape forms at the pure tungsten electrode tip, and this formation is desirable for welding aluminum.

Table 16. Selection of Gas Tungsten Arc Welding (GTAW) Electrodes

Base Metal	Electrode	Current	Recommendations
Carbon, low-alloy, stainless, and nickel steels	Thoriated	DCEN	Use EWZr electrodes with AC on thin materials
Aluminum	Zirconium or pure tungsten	AC	Use EWZr on critical applications
Aluminum	Thoriated zirconium	DCEP	Use EWZr or EWP electrodes with DCEP on thin sections
Copper and copper alloys	Thoriated	DCEN	Use EWZr or EWP with AC on thin sections
Magnesium	Zirconium	AC	Use DCEP with same electrode on thin sections
Titanium	Thoriated	DCEN	…

Table 17. Common Tungsten Electrode Compositions

Classification	Color	Tungsten (%)	Thorium Oxide (%)	Zirconium Oxide (%)
EWP	Green	99.50	…	…
EWTh-1	Yellow	98.50	0.8–1.2	…
EWTh-2	Red	97.50	1.7–2.2	…
EWTh-3	Blue	98.95	0.35–0.55	…
EWZr	Brown	99.20	…	0.15–0.4

In the classification column, E = electrode; W = tungsten; P = pure; Th = thoriated (thorium oxide); Zr = zirconiated (zirconium oxide). The colors are codes used by manufacturers to identify the material. Tungsten percentages are minimum requirements. The EWTh-3 is also called striped tungsten because it is made with a strip of thoriated material along the length. This electrode needs to be preheated by striking an arc to melt the tip, providing for the thorium and the tungsten to combine before welding is started.

The electrode recommendations in Table 16 are a guide to attaining good-quality GTAW welds from the venous types of polarities available.

Electrode and Current Selection.—Table 18 and Table 19 show approximate current recommendations for common electrode types and diameters. The GTAW electrode size should be selected so that its midrange current provides the energy required for the intended application. If the electrode is too thin, excess current may be required, causing the electrode to wear too quickly or melt and contaminate the weld. If the electrodes used are found to be constantly at the top end of the current range, a change should be made to the next larger size. Table 20 and Table 21 show recommended sizes of electrodes and filler metal rods or wires for welding various thicknesses of carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels and aluminum.

Table 18. Recommended Current Ranges for Thoriated GTAW Electrodes

Electrode		Current Range (amps)
1/16 in.	(1.6 mm)	60–150
3/32 in.	(2.4 mm)	150–250
1/8 in.	(3.2 mm)	250–400
5/32 in.	(4 mm)	400–500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The electrode selected must suit the application and the current capacity of the power source.

Table 19. Current Ranges for EWP and EWZr GTAW Electrodes

Electrode		Ampere Range AC Balanced		Ampere Range AC Unbalanced	
in.	(mm)	EWP	EWZr	EWP	EWZr
1/16	(1.6)	30–80	60–120	50–100	70–150
3/32	(2.4)	60–130	100–180	100–160	140–235
1/8	(3.2)	100–180	160–250	150–210	225–325
5/32	(4)	160–240	200–320	200–275	300–400

Table 20. Electrode and Current Recommendations for Carbon, Low-Alloy, and Stainless Steels

Material Thickness		Electrode Diameter		Filler Rod Diameter		Current Range (amps)
in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)	DCEN EWTh
1/16	(1.6)	1/16	(1.6)	1/16	(1.6)	60–100
1/8	(3.2)	3/32	(2.4)	3/32	(2.4)	150–170
3/16	(4.8)	3/32	(2.4)	1/8	(3.2)	180–220
1/4	(6.4)	1/8	(3.2)	5/32	(7.2)	260–300

Note: The shielding gas is argon at 15 to 20 cu ft/h (CFH). For stainless steel, reduce the current by approximately 10 percent.

Table 21. Recommendations for GTAW Welding of Aluminum with EWP Electrodes Using AC and High-Frequency Current

Material Thickness		Electrode Diameter		Filler Rod Diameter		AC Current Range
in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)	in.	(mm)	(amps)
1/16	(1.6)	1/16	(1.6)	1/16	(1.6)	40–70
1/8	(3.2)	3/32	(2.4)	3/32	(2.4)	70–125
3/16	(4.8)	1/8	(3.2)	1/8	(3.2)	110–170
1/4	(6.4)	5/32	(4)	3/16	(4.8)	170–220

Thoriated Electrodes: In contrast with the pure EWP electrodes, thoriated electrodes have a higher melting temperature and up to about 50 percent more current-carrying capacity, with superior arc starting and arc stability. These electrodes are typically the first choice for critical DC welding applications, but do not have the potential to maintain a rounded ball shape at the tip. The best welding mode for these electrodes is with the tip ground to a tapered or fine point.

Zirconiated Electrodes: Tungsten electrodes with zirconium are practical for critical applications and have less sensitivity to contamination and superior current capacity than pure tungsten electrodes.

Protecting and Prolonging Electrode Life: To improve tungsten electrode life, the tip should be tapered in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. There must also be preflow, postflow shielding gas coverage to protect the electrode before and after the weld. When possible, high frequency should be used to avoid scratch starts, which contaminate the electrode. The shortest possible electrode extension should be employed, to avoid the possibility of the electrode touching the filler or weld metal. The grinding wheel used to sharpen the tungsten must not be contaminated from grinding other metals or with dirt.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Filler Metals.—Specifications covering composition and mechanical properties for GTAW filler metal are published by the American Welding Society under the following classifications:A5.7, copper and copper alloys; A5.9, chromium and chromium nickel; A5.10, aluminum; A5.14, nickel; A5.16, titanium; A5.18, carbon steels; A5.19, magnesium; and A5.28, low-alloy steels.

Filler metals must be kept dry and clean if they are to be used satisfactorily.

Shielding Gases.—Inert gases such as argon, and argon + helium mixtures are most commonly used for GTAW. Helium provides greater thermal conductivity and additional arc voltage potential than argon, and is normally added to argon when more weld energy is required for improved penetration and increased mechanized welding travel speeds. Argon gas mixtures containing 30 to 75 percent helium provide benefits for manual welding of aluminum over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (9.6 mm) thick; mechanized welding of aluminum where high speeds are required; mechanized welding of carbon and stainless steels where good penetration is needed; mechanized welding of stainless steel where good penetration and faster speeds are required; and for copper of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.4 mm) thickness and thicker.

Shielding gas purity for GTAW welding is important. Welding-grade argon is supplied at a purity of at least 99.996 percent and helium is produced to a minimum purity of 99.995 percent. However, shielding gases may be contaminated due to poor cylinder filling practices. If impure gas is suspected, the following test is suggested. With the HF and power on, create an arc without welding and hold the arc for about 30 seconds. Examine the electrode tip for signs of unusual coloration, oxidation, or contamination, which result from impurities in the shielding gas.

PLASMA ARC WELDING (PAW)

When an electric current passes between two electrodes through certain gases, the energy of the gas molecules is increased so that they accelerate and collide with each other more often. With increases in energy, the binding forces between the nuclei and the electrons are exceeded, and electrons are released from the nuclei. The gas now consists of neutral molecules, positively charged atoms, and negatively charged electrons. The plasma gas is said to be ionized, so that it is capable of conducting electric current. Plasma forms in all welding arcs but in plasma arc welding it is generated by a series of events that begins with inert gas passing through the welding torch nozzle. High-frequency current is then generated between the tungsten electrode (cathode) and the torch nozzle (anode), forming a low-current pilot arc. The ionized path of this nontransferred arc is then transferred from the tungsten electrode to the work, and a preset plasma current is generated.

The above sequence of events provides the ionized path for the plasma current between the electrode and the work so that arcing between the electrode and the nozzle ceases. (Nontransferred arcs may be used for metal spraying or nonmetallic welds.) Forcing the ionized gas through the small orifice in the nozzle increases both the level of ionization and the arc velocity, and arc temperatures between 30,000 and 50,000°F (16,650 and 27,760°C) are generated.

Gases for Welding.—Argon is the preferred gas for plasma arc welding (PAW) as it is easily ionized and the plasma column formed by argon can be sustained by a low voltage. The low thermal conductivity of argon produces a plasma column with a narrow, concentrated hot core surrounded by a cooler outer zone. Argon plasmas are suited to welding steel up to $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.2 mm). For thicker materials, requiring a hotter arc and using higher current melt-in technique, a mixture of argon 25 + helium 75 percent may be used. Additions of helium and hydrogen to the gas mixture improve heat transfer, reduce porosity, and increase weld travel speed. For welding materials thinner than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thick by the plasma gas keyhole method (full penetration welds), gases may contain up to 15 percent hydrogen with the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

remainder argon. Good results are obtained with argon + 5 percent hydrogen in welding stainless and nickel steels over $\frac{1}{8}$ in. thick.

Shielding Gases.—A shielding gas is needed to protect the narrow plasma arc column and the weld pool, and generally is provided by mixtures of argon, argon + hydrogen, argon + helium, or argon + O_2 + CO_2, depending on compatibility with the material being welded. Shielding gas flow rates vary from 5 to 35 cu ft/h (2.4 to 17 l/min). However, if argon is used for both plasma and shielding, the plasma gas will become less concentrated. The normally tight plasma arc column will expand in contact with the colder shielding gas, reducing ionization and thus concentration and intensity of the plasma column. With no shielding gas, the tight column is unaffected by the surrounding oxygen and nitrogen of the atmosphere, which are not easily ionized.

Hydrogen is added to the shielding gas when welding low-alloy steels of less than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) thickness, or stainless and nickel steels, with many benefits. The hydrogen molecules dissociate in contact with the arc at temperatures of about 7,000°F (3,870°C) and the energy thus created is released when the hydrogen molecules recombine on contact with the work surface. The diatomic molecular action creates a barrier around the plasma, maintaining column stiffness. Hydrogen in the shielding gas combines with oxygen in the weld zone, releasing it into the atmosphere and keeping the weld clean. Hydrogen reduces the surface tension of the weld pool, increasing fluidity, and the added energy increases penetration.

Helium mixed with the argon shielding gas is beneficial for all metals as it increases the ionization potential, allowing use of higher voltages that give increased welding temperatures. Flow rates are in the range of 15 to 50 cu ft/h (7 to 24 l/min). Arc-starting efficiency is reduced with pure helium, but adding 25 percent of argon helps both arc starting and stability. Helium additions of 25 to 75 percent are made to obtain increased thermal benefits.

Argon + CO_2 shielding gas mixtures are beneficial in fusion welding of carbon steels. A mixture of argon with 20 to 30 percent CO_2 improves weld fluidity. Shielding gas mixtures of argon + CO_2 with an argon + 5 percent hydrogen plasma should be considered for welding carbon steel of $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thickness. Steels with higher amounts of carbon have higher heat conductivity and need application of more heat than is needed with stainless steels. Manufacturers usually make recommendations on types of gas mixtures to use with their equipment.

PAW Welding Equipment.—The PAW process uses electrode negative (DCEN) polarity in a current range from 25 to 400 amps, and equipment is offered by many manufacturers. Solid-state inverter units are available with nonmechanical contactors. Most PAW units contain a high-frequency generator, a small DC power supply, controls for welding and shielding gas mixtures, and a torch coolant control. A weld sequencer is recommended, especially for keyhole mode welding, but it is also useful in automated fusion welding. The sequencer provides control of up-slope and down-slope conditions for gas mixtures and current, so that it is possible to make welds without run-on and run-off tabs, as is necessary with circumferential welds.

Generally, plasma arc torches are liquid-cooled using deionized water in the coolant lines to the torch to avoid effects of electrolysis. Electrodes are usually tungsten with 2 percent thorium. If the welding shop already has a constant-current power supply and a coolant recirculator, plasma arc welding may be used by addition of a pilot arc welding console and a torch.

Applications.—Fusion welding is the main use for plasma arc welding. The process is used for high-volume, repetitive, high-duty cycle, manual and automated operations on lap, flange, butt, and corner fusion welds, in all positions. Joint design for materials less than 0.01 in. (0.254 mm) thick may require a flange type joint for rigidity and to allow use of extra, weld metal reinforcement. Filler metal may be added during fusion welding,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and automated hot or cold wire feeders can be used. Fusion welding uses a soft, less-restricted arc with low gas flows, and the current level may vary from approximately 25 to 200 amps. The soft arc is obtained by setting the end of the tungsten electrode level with the face of the torch nozzle, in which position lower currents and gas flows are required. With these conditions, the weld bead is slightly wider than a bead produced with a recessed electrode.

Low-Current Plasma Fusion Welding: With the reduced consumption of gas and electric current, the low-current plasma fusion welding method is ideal for welding metals down to 0.001 in. (0.025 mm) in thickness, as the low-current plasma pilot arc allows arcs to be started consistently with currents of less than 1 amp. With currents below 1 amp, the pilot arc is usually left in the continuous mode to maintain the arc. In the conditions described, arc stability is improved and the process is much less sensitive to variations in the distance of the torch from the workpiece. Given this height tolerance, setting up is simplified, and with the smaller torches required, it is often easier to see the weld pool than with the GTAW process. Some plasma welding units incorporate gas flow meters that are designed for low flow rates, and currents in the range of 0.1 to 15 amps can be selected.

Low-current plasma arc welding is more economical than other gas tungsten arc welding methods, especially with solid-state inverter systems and smaller torches. The process is useful for sealing type welds where joint access is good, and for welding components of office furniture, household items, electronic and aerospace parts, metallic screening, and thin-wall tubing.

Keyhole mode welding describes a method whereby abutting edges of two plates are melted simultaneously, forming a vapor capillary (or keyhole) and the resulting molten-walled hole moves along the joint line. This method requires the end of the tungsten electrode to be positioned well back inside the torch nozzle to produce a high-velocity, restricted arc column with sufficient energy to pierce the workpiece. This mode is also used for the plasma cutting process, but the major difference is that welding uses very low plasma flow rates of the order of 1 to 3 cu ft/h (0.5 to 1.4 l/min) for work thicknesses of $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{5}{32}$ in. (1.6 to 4 mm). These low rates avoid unwanted displacement of the weld metal. After the arc pierces the workpiece, the torch moves along the weld line and the thin layer of molten metal is supported by surface tension as it flows to the rear of the line of movement, where it solidifies and forms the weld.

As it passes through the keyhole, the high-velocity plasma gas column flushes the molten weld pool and carries away trapped gases and contaminants that otherwise would be trapped in the weld. Plasma arc keyhole welding is affected less by surface and internal defects in the work material than is the GTAW process. Most metals that can be welded by the gas tungsten arc method can be plasma arc welded with the conventional DC electrode, negative keyhole method, except aluminum, which requires a variable polarity keyhole method.

Plasma keyhole welding is usually automated because it requires consistent travel speed and torch height above the work. A typical operation is welding steel with square abutting edges (no bevels) in thicknesses of 0.09 to 0.375 in. (2.3 to 9 mm), where 100 percent penetration in a single pass is required. Producing square-groove butt welds in materials thicker than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. by the plasma arc keyhole process requires some edge preparation and several filler passes. The finished weld is uniformly narrow and the even distribution of heat means that distortion is minimized.

Welding Aluminum.—The variable polarity plasma arc (VPPA) process was developed for welding metals that form an oxide skin, such as aluminum. Electrode negative (straight) polarity is necessary for the plasma arc to provide sufficient heat to the workpiece and minimize heat buildup in the tungsten electrode. With electrode negative polarity, electrons move rapidly from the negative cathode tungsten electrode to the positive anode workpiece, generating most of the heat in the workpiece. Because of the oxide skin

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

on aluminum, however, straight polarity produces an erratic arc, poor weld fluidity, and an irregularly shaped weld bead. The oxide skin must be broken up if the metal flow is to be controlled, and this breakup is effected by a power supply that constantly switches from negative to positive polarity.

A typical cycle uses a 20-ms pulse of electrode negative polarity and a 3-ms pulse of electrode positive polarity. The pulses are generated as square waves and the positive (cleaning) pulse is set at 30 to 80 amps higher than the negative pulse for greater oxide-breaking action. The tenacious oxide skin is thus broken constantly and the rapid cycle changes result in optimum cathode cleaning with minimum deterioration of the tungsten electrode and consistent arc stability. Varying polarity has advantages in both gas metal arc and plasma arc welding, but with the keyhole process it allows single-pass, square-groove, full-penetration welds in materials up to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm) thick.

The VPPA process ensures extremely low levels of porosity in weld areas in aluminum. VPPA welding is often used in the vertical up position for aluminum because it provides superior control of root reinforcement, which tends to be excessive when welding is done in the flat position. Pulsing in the VPPA process when welding aluminum of $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. thickness in the flat position gives satisfactory root profiles. Pulsing gives improved arc control in keyhole welds in both ferrous and nonferrous metals and is beneficial with melt-in fusion welding of thin materials as it provides better control of heat input to the workpiece.

Plasma Arc Surface Coating

Plasma Arc Surfacing uses an arc struck between the electrode and the workpiece, or transferred arc, to apply coatings of other metals or alloys to the workpiece surface. This high-temperature process produces homogeneous welds in which the ionized plasma gas stream melts both the work surface and a stream of powdered alloy or filler wire fed into the arc. Dilution of the base metal can be held below 5 percent if required. With arc temperatures between 25,000 and 50,000°F (14,000 and 28,000°C), deposition occurs rapidly, and a rate of 15 lb/h (6.8 kg/h) of powdered alloy is not unusual. Deposition from wire can be performed at rates up to 28 lb/h (12.7 kg/h), much higher than with oxygen/fuel or gas metal/arc methods.

In the nontransferred arc process used for coating of surfaces, the arc is struck between the electrode and the torch nozzle so that it does not attach to the work surface. This process is sometimes called metal spraying, and is used for building up surfaces for hard facing and for application of anticorrosion and barrier layers. Argon is frequently used as the plasma gas. As the coating material in the form of powder or wire enters the plasma, it is melted thoroughly by the plasma column and is propelled toward the work at high velocity to form a mechanical bond with the work surface. Some 500 different powder combinations are available for this process so that a variety of requirements can be fulfilled and deposition rates up to 100 lb/h (45 kg/h) can be achieved.

The plasma arc process allows parts to be modified or recovered if worn, and surfaces with unique properties can be provided on new or existing components. Low levels of porosity in the deposited metal can be achieved. Metal spraying can be performed manually or automatically, and its use depends primarily on whether a mechanical bond is acceptable. Other factors include the volume of parts to be treated, the time needed for the process and for subsequent finishing, the quality requirements for the finished parts, rejection rates, and costs of consumable materials and energy.

Some systems are available that can use either metal powder or wire as the spray material, and can be operated at higher voltage settings that result in longer plasma arc lengths at temperatures over 10,000°F (5,537°C). With these systems, the plasma velocity is increased to about 12,000 ft/s (3,658 m/s), giving an extremely dense coating with less than 1 percent porosity. Current ranges of 30 to 500 amps are available, and nitrogen is frequently used as the plasma gas, coupled with CO_2, nitrogen, or compressed air

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

as the shielding gas. Gas flow rates are between 50 and 350 cubic feet per hour (24 and 165 l/min). Large or small surface areas can be coated at low cost, with minimum heat input, if other aspects of the process are compatible with the product being made.

Plasma Arc Cutting of Metals

Higher current and gas flow rates than for plasma arc welding are used for the plasma arc cutting (PAC) process, which operates on DC straight polarity, and uses a transferred arc to melt through the material to be cut. The nozzle is positioned close to the work surface and the velocity of the plasma jet is greatly increased by a restricting nozzle orifice so that it blows away the metal as it is melted to make the cut.

The higher energy level makes the process much faster than cutting with an oxygen/fuel torch on cutting steel of less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (12.7 mm) thick, but the process produces kerfs with some variation in the width and in the bevel angle, affecting the precision of the part. Some of the molten metal may recast itself on the edges of the cut and may be difficult to remove.

For more information on plasma arc cutting, refer to *NONTRADITIONAL MACHINING AND CUTTING* starting on page 1342.

Cutting Metals with an Oxidizing Flame

The oxyhydrogen and oxyacetylene flames are especially adapted to cutting metals. When iron or steel is heated to a high temperature, it has a great affinity for oxygen and readily combines with it to form various oxides, and causing the metal to be disintegrated and burned with great rapidity. The metal-cutting or burning torch operates on this principle. A torch tip is designed to preheat the metal, which is then burned or oxidized by a jet of pure oxygen. The kerf or path left by the flame is suggestive of a saw cut when the cutting torch has been properly adjusted and used. The traversing motion of the torch along the work may be controlled either by hand or mechanically.

Arc Cutting.—According to the *Procedure Handbook of Arc-Welding Design & Practice*, published by The Lincoln Electric Co., a steel may be cut easily, and with great accuracy by means of the oxyacetylene torch. All metals, however, do not cut as easily as steel. Cast iron, stainless steels, manganese steels, and nonferrous materials are not as readily cut and shaped with the oxyacetylene cutting process because of their reluctance to oxidize. For these materials, arc cutting is often used to good advantage.

The cutting of steel is a chemical action. The oxygen combines readily with the iron to form iron oxide. In cast iron, this action is hindered by the presence of carbon in graphite form. Thus, cast iron cannot be cut as readily as steel; higher temperatures are necessary and cutting is slower. In steel, the action starts at bright red heat, whereas in cast iron, the temperature must be nearer to the melting point to obtain a sufficient reaction.

The Cutting Torch.—The ordinary cutting torch consists of a heating jet using oxygen and acetylene, oxygen and hydrogen, or, in fact, any other gas that, when combined with oxygen, will produce sufficient heat. By the use of this heating jet, the metal is first brought to a sufficiently high temperature, and an auxiliary jet of pure oxygen is then turned onto the red-hot metal, and the action just referred to takes place. Some cutting torches have a number of preheating flame ports surrounding the central oxygen port, so that a preheating flame will precede the oxygen regardless of the direction in which the torch is moved. This arrangement has been used to advantage in mechanically guided torches. The rate of cutting varies with the thickness of the steel, the size of the tip, and the oxygen pressure.

Adjustment and Use of Cutting Torch.—When using the cutting torch for the cutting of steel plate, the preheating flame first comes into contact with the edge of the plate and quickly raises it to a white-hot temperature. The oxygen valve is then opened, and as the pure oxygen comes into contact with the heated metal, the latter is burned or oxidized.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metals That Can Be Cut.—Metals such as wrought iron and steels of comparatively low-carbon content can be cut readily with the cutting torch. High-carbon steels may be cut successfully if preheated to a temperature that depends somewhat on the carbon content. The higher the carbon content, the greater the degree of preheating required. A black heat is sufficient for ordinary tool steel, but a low red heat may be required for some alloy tool steels. Brass and bronze plates have been cut by interposing them between steel plates.

Cutting Stainless Steel.—Stainless steel can be cut readily by the flux-injection method. The elements that give stainless steels their desirable properties produce oxides that reduce the flame cutting operation to a slow melting-away process when the conventional oxyacetylene cutting equipment is used. By injecting a suitable flux directly into the stream of cutting oxygen before it enters the torch, the obstructing oxides can be removed. Portable flux feeding units are designed to inject a predetermined amount of the flux powder. The rate of flux flow is accurately regulated by a vibrator type of dispenser with rheostat control. The flux-injection method is applicable either to machine cutting or to a hand-controlled torch. The operating procedure and speed of cutting are practically the same as in cutting mild steel.

Cutting Cast Iron.—The cutting of cast iron with the oxyacetylene torch is practicable, although it cannot be cut as readily as steel. The ease of cutting seems to depend largely on the physical character of the cast iron, very soft cast iron being more difficult to cut than harder varieties. The cost is much higher than that for cutting the same thickness of steel, because of the larger preheating flame necessary and the larger oxygen consumption. In spite of this extra cost, however, this method is often economical. The slag from a cast-iron cut contains considerable melted cast iron, whereas in steel, the slag is practically free from particles of the metal, indicating that cast-iron cutting is partly a melting operation. Increased speed and decreased cost often can be obtained by feeding a steel rod, about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm) in diameter, into the top of the cut, beneath the torch tip. This rod furnishes a large amount of slag that flows over the cut and increases the temperature of the cast iron. Special tips are used because of the larger amounts of heat and oxygen required.

Mechanically Guided Torches.—Cutting torches used for cutting openings in plates or blocks or for cutting parts to some definite outline are often guided mechanically or by numerical control. Torches guided by pantograph mechanisms are especially adapted for tracing the outline to be cut from a pattern or drawing. Other designs are preferable for straight-line cutting and one type is designed for circular cutting.

Cutting Steel Castings.—When cutting steel castings, care should be taken to prevent burning pockets in the metal when the flame strikes a blowhole. If a blowhole is penetrated, the molten oxide will splash into the cavity and the flame will be diverted. The presence of the blowhole is generally indicated by excessive sparks. The operator should immediately move the torch back along the cut and direct it at an angle so as to strike the metal beneath the blowhole and burn it away if possible beyond the cavity. Cutting in the normal position then may be resumed.

Thickness of Metal That Can Be Cut.—The maximum thickness of metal that can be cut by these high-temperature flames depends largely upon the gases used and the pressure of the oxygen, which may be as high as 150 lb/in^2 (1034 kPa). The thicker the metal, the higher the pressure required. When using an oxyacetylene flame, it might be practicable to cut iron or steel up to 12 or 14 inches (30.5 or 35.6 cm) in thickness, whereas an oxyhydrogen flame has been used to cut steel plates 24 inches (61 cm) thick. The oxyhydrogen flame will cut thicker material principally because it is longer than the oxyacetylene flame and can penetrate to the full depth of the cut, thus keeping all the oxide in a molten condition so that it can be easily blown out by the oxygen cutting jet. A mechanically guided torch will cut thick material more satisfactorily than a hand-guided torch, because the flame is directed straight into the cut and does not wobble, as it tends to do when the torch is held by hand. With any flame, the cut is less accurate and the kerf wider, as the thickness of the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

metal increases. When cutting light material, the kerf might be $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.59 mm) wide, whereas for heavy stock, it might be $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (6.35 or 9.5 mm) wide.

Hard Facing

Hard facing is a method of adding a coating, edge, or point, of a metal or alloy capable of resisting abrasion, corrosion, heat, or impact, to a metal component. The process can be applied equally well to new parts or old worn parts. The most common welding methods used to apply hard-facing materials include the oxyacetylene gas, shielded-metal arc, submerged arc, plasma arc, and inert-gas-shielded arc (consuming and nonconsuming electrode). Such coatings can also be applied by a spraying process, using equipment designed to handle the coating material in the form of a wire or a powder.

Hard-Facing Materials.—The first thing to be considered in the selection of a hard-facing material is the type of service the part in question is to undergo. Other considerations include machinability, cost of hard-facing material, porosity of the deposit, appearance in use, and ease of application. Only generalized information can be given here to guide the selection of a material as the choice is dependent upon experience with a particular type of service. Generally, the greater the hardness of the facing material, the greater is its resistance to abrasion and shock or impact wear. Many hardenable materials may be used for hard facing such as carbon steels, low-alloy steels, medium-alloy steels, and medium-high alloys but none of these is outstanding. Some of the materials that might be considered to be preferable are high-speed steel, austenitic manganese steel, austenitic high-chromium iron, cobalt-chromium alloy, copper-base alloy, and nickel-chromium-boron alloy.

High-Speed Steels.—These steels are available in the form of welding rods (RFe5) and electrodes (EFe5) for hard facing where hardness is required at service temperatures up to 1100°F (593°C) and where wear resistance and toughness are also required. Typical surfacing operations are done on cutting tools, shear blades, reamers, forming dies, shearing dies, guides, ingot tongs, and broaches using these metals.

Hardness: These steels have a hardness of 55 to 60 on the Rockwell C scale in the as-welded condition and a hardness of 30 Rockwell C in the annealed condition. At a temperature of 1100°F (593°C), the as-deposited hardness of 60 Rockwell C falls off very slowly to 47 Rockwell C. At about 1200°F (649°C), the maximum Rockwell C hardness is 30.

Resistance Properties: As deposited, the alloys can withstand only medium impact, but when tempered, the impact resistance is increased appreciably. Deposits of these alloys will oxidize readily because of their high molybdenum content but can withstand atmospheric corrosion. They do not withstand liquid corrosives.

Other Properties or Characteristics: The metals are well suited for metal-to-metal wear especially at elevated temperatures. They retain their hardness at elevated temperatures and can take a high polish. For machining, these alloys must first be annealed. Full hardness may be regained by a subsequent heat treatment of the metal.

Austenitic Manganese Steels.—These metals are available in the form of electrodes (EFeMn) for hard facing when dealing with metal-to-metal wear and impact. Uses include facing rock-crushing equipment and railway frogs and crossings.

Hardness: Hardness of the as-deposited metals are 170 to 230 BHN, but they can be work-hardened to 450 to 550 BHN very readily. For all practical purposes, these metals have no hot hardness as they become brittle when reheated above 500–600 °F (260–316 °C).

Resistance Properties: These metals have high impact resistance. Their corrosion and oxidation resistance are similar to those of ordinary carbon steels. Their resistance to abrasion is only mediocre compared with hard abrasives like quartz.

Other Properties or Characteristics: The yield strength of the deposited metal in compression is low, but any compressive deformation rapidly raises it until plastic flow ceases.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

This property is an asset in impact wear situations. Machining is difficult with ordinary tools and equipment; finished surfaces are usually ground.

Austenitic High-Chromium Irons.—These metals are available in rod (RFeCr-A) and electrode (EFeCr-A) form and are used for facing agricultural machinery parts, coke chutes, steel mill guides, sand-blasting equipment, and brick-making machinery.

Hardness: The as-welded deposit ranges in hardness from 51 to 62 Rockwell C. Under impact, the deposit work hardens somewhat, but the resulting deformation also leads to cracking and impact service is therefore avoided. Hot hardness decreases slowly at temperatures up to 800 and 900°F (427 and 482°C). At 900°F (482°C), the instantaneous hardness is 43 Rockwell C. In 3 minutes under load, the hardness drops to 37 Rockwell C. At 1200°F (649°C), the instantaneous hardness is 5 Rockwell C. The decrease in hardness during hot testing is practically recovered on cooling to ambient temperatures.

Resistance Properties: Deposits will withstand only light impact without cracking. Dynamic compression stresses above 60,000 psi (414 MPa) should be avoided. These metals exhibit good oxidation resistance up to 1800°F (982°C) and can be considered for hot wear applications where hot plasticity is not objectionable. They are not very resistant to corrosion from liquids and will rust in moist air, but are more stable than ordinary iron and steel. Resistance to low-stress scratching is outstanding and is related to the amount of hard carbides present. However, under high-stress grinding abrasion, performance is only mediocre and they are not deemed suitable for such service.

Other Properties or Characteristics: The deposited metals have a yield strength (0.1 percent offset) of between 80,000 and 140,000 pounds per square inch (552 and 965 MPa) in compression and an ultimate strength of from 150,000 to 280,000 psi (1034–1930 MPa). Their tensile strength is low and therefore tension uses are avoided in design. These deposits are considered to be commercially unmachinable and are also very difficult to grind. When ground, a grinding wheel of aluminum oxide abrasive with a 24-grit size and a hard (Q) and medium-spaced resinoid bond is recommended for off-hand high-speed work and a slightly softer (P) vitrified bond for off-hand low-speed work.

Cobalt-Base Alloys.—These metals are available in both rod (RCoCr) and electrode (ECoCr) form and are frequently used to surface the contact surfaces of exhaust valves in aircraft, truck, and bus engines. Other uses include parts such as valve trim in steam engines, and on pump shafts, where conditions of corrosion and erosion are encountered. Several metals with a greater carbon content are available (CoCr-B, CoCr-C) and are used in applications requiring greater hardness and abrasion resistance but where impact resistance is not mandatory or expected to be a factor.

Hardness: Hardness ranges on the Rockwell C scale for gas-welded deposits are as follows: CoCr-A, 38 to 47; CoCr-B, 45 to 49; and CoCr-C, 48 to 58. For arc-welded deposits, hardness ranges (Rockwell C) as follows: CoCr-A, 23 to 47; CoCr-B, 34 to 47; and CoCr-C, 43 to 58. The values for arc-weld deposits depend for the most part on the base metal dilution. The greater the dilution, the lower the hardness. Many surfacing alloys are softened permanently by heating to elevated temperatures, however, these metals are exceptional. They do exhibit lower hardness values when hot but return to their approximate original hardness values upon cooling. Elevated-temperature strength and hardness are outstanding properties of this group. Their use at 1200 °F (649 °C) and above is considered advantageous but between 1000 and 1200 °F (538–649 °C), their advantages are not definitely established, and at temperatures below 1000 °F (538 °C), other surfacing metals may prove better.

Resistance Properties: In the temperature range from 1000 to 1200 degrees F (538–649 °C), weld deposits of these metals have a great resistance to creep. Tough martensitic steel deposits are considered superior to cobalt-base deposits in both flow resistance and toughness. The chromium in the deposited metal promotes the formation of a thin, tightly adherent scale that provides a scaling resistance to combustion products of internal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

combustion engines, including deposits from leaded fuels. These metals are corrosion-resistant in such media as air, food, and certain acids. It is advisable to conduct field tests to determine specific corrosion resistance for the application being considered.

Other Properties or Characteristics: Deposits are able to take a high polish and have a low coefficient of friction and therefore are well suited for metal-to-metal wear resistance. Machining of these deposits is difficult; the difficulty increases in proportion to the increase in carbon content. CoCr-A alloys are preferably machined with sintered carbide tools. CoCr-C deposits are finished by grinding.

Copper-Base Alloys.—These metals are available in rod (RCuA1-A2, RCuA1-B, RCuA1-C, RCuA1-D, RCuA1-E, RCuSi-A, RCuSn, RCuSn-D, RCuSn-E, and RCuZn-E) and electrode (ECuA1-A2, ECuA1-B, ECuA1-C, ECuA1-D, ECuA1-E, ECuSi, ECuSn-A, ECuSn-C, ECuSn-E, and ECuZn-E) forms and are used in depositing overlays and inlays for bearing, corrosion-resistant, and wear-resistant surfaces. The CuA1-A2 rods and electrodes are used for surfacing bearing surfaces between the hardness ranges of 130 to 190 BHN as well as for corrosion-resistant surfaces. The CuA1-B and CuA1-C rods and electrodes are used for surfacing bearing surfaces of hardness ranges 140 to 290 BHN. The CuA1-D and CuA1-E rods and electrodes are used on bearing and wear-resistant surfaces requiring the higher hardnesses of 230 to 390 BHN such as are found on gears, cams, wear plates, and dies. The copper-tin (CuSn) metals are used where a lower hardness is required for surfacing, for corrosion-resistant surfaces, and sometimes for wear-resistant applications.

Hardness: Hardness of a deposit depends upon the welding process employed and the manner of depositing the metal. Deposits made by the inert-gas metal-arc process (both consumable and nonconsumable electrode) will be higher in hardness than deposits made with the gas, metal-arc, and carbon-arc processes because lower losses of aluminum, tin, silicon, and zinc are achieved due to the better shielding from oxidation. Copper-base alloys are not recommended for use at elevated temperatures because their hardness and mechanical properties decrease consistently as the temperature goes above 400°F (204°C).

Resistance Properties: The highest impact resistance of the copper-base alloy metals is exhibited by CuA1-A2 deposits. As the aluminum content increases, the impact resistance decreases markedly. CuSi weld deposits have good impact properties. CuSn metals as deposited have low impact resistance and CuZn-E deposits have a very low impact resistance. Deposits of the CuA1 filler metals form a protective oxide coating upon exposure to the atmosphere. Oxidation resistance of CuSi deposits is fair and that of CuSn deposits are comparable to pure copper. With the exception of the CuSn-E and CuZn-E alloys, these metals are widely used to resist many acids, mild alkalies, and salt water. Copper-base alloy deposits are not recommended for use where severe abrasion is encountered in service. CuA1 filler metals are used to overlay surfaces subjected to excessive wear from metal-to-metal contact such as gears, cams, sheaves, wear plates, and dies.

Other Properties or Characteristics: All copper-base alloy metals are used for overlays and inlays for bearing surfaces with the exception of the CuSi metals. Metals selected for bearing surfaces should have a Brinell hardness of 50 to 75 units below that of the mating metal surface. Slight porosity is generally acceptable in bearing service as a porous deposit is able to retain oil for lubricating purposes. CuA1 deposits in compression have elastic limits ranging from 25,000 to 65,000 (172 to 448 MPa) and ultimate strengths of 120,000 to 171,000 (827 to 1179 MPa). The elastic limit and ultimate strength of CuSi deposits in compression are 22,000 and 60,000 (152 to 414 MPa), respectively. CuZn-E deposits in compression have an elastic limit of only about 5000 (34 MPa) and an ultimate strength of 20,000 (138 MPa). All copper-base alloy deposits can be machined.

Nickel-Chromium-Boron Alloys.—These metals are available in both rod (RNiCr) and electrode (ENiCr) form and their deposits have good metal-to-metal wear resistance, good low-stress, scratch-abrasion resistance, corrosion resistance, and retention of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

hardness at elevated temperatures. These properties make the alloys suitable for use on seal rings, cement pump screws, valves, screw conveyors, and cams. Three different formulations of these metals are recognized (NiCr-A, NiCr-B, and NiCr-C).

Hardness: Hardness of the deposited NiCr-A from rods range from 35 to 40 Rockwell C; of NiCr-B rods, 45 to 50 Rockwell C; of NiCr-C rods, 56 to 62 Rockwell C. Hardness of the deposited NiCr-A from electrodes ranges from 24 to 35 Rockwell C; of NiCr-B from electrodes, 30 to 45 Rockwell C; and of NiCr-C electrodes, 35 to 56. The lower hardness values and greater ranges of hardness values of the electrode deposits are attributed to the dilution of deposit and base metals. Hot Rockwell C hardness values of NiCr-A electrode deposits range from 30 to 19 in the temperature range from 600–1000°F (316–538°C) from instantaneous loading to a 3-minute loading interval. NiCr-A rod deposits range from 34 to 24 in the same temperature range and under the same load conditions. Hot Rockwell C hardness values of NiCr-B electrode deposits range from 41 to 26 in the temperature range from 600 to 1000°F (315–538°C) from instantaneous loading to a 3-minute loading interval. NiCr-B rod deposits range from 46 to 37 in the same temperature range and under the same load conditions. Hot Rockwell C hardness values of NiCr-C electrode deposits range from 49 to 31 in the temperature range from 600 to 1000 degrees F from instantaneous loading to a 3-minute loading interval. NiCr-C rod deposits range from 55 to 40 in the same temperature range and under the same load conditions.

Resistance Properties: Deposits of these metal alloys will withstand light impact fairly well. When plastic deformation occurs, cracks are more likely to appear in the NiCr-C deposit than in the NiCr-A and NiCr-B deposits. NiCr deposits are oxidation-resistant up to 1800°F (982°C). Their use above 1750°F (954°C) is not recommended because fusion may begin near this temperature. NiCr deposits are completely resistant to atmospheric, steam, salt water, and salt spray corrosion and to the milder acids and many common corrosive chemicals. It is advisable to conduct field tests when a corrosion application is contemplated. These metals are not recommended for high-stress grinding abrasion. NiCr deposits have good metal-to-metal wear resistance, take a high polish under wearing conditions, and are particularly resistant to galling. These properties are especially evident in the NiCr-C alloy.

Other Properties or Characteristics: In compression, these alloys have an elastic limit of 42,000 psi (290 MPa). Their yield strength in compression is 92,000 psi (634 MPa) (0.01 percent offset), 150,000 psi (1034 MPa) (0.10 percent offset), and 210,000 psi (1448 MPa) (0.20 percent offset). Deposits of NiCr filler metals may be machined with tungsten carbide tools using slow speeds, light feeds, and heavy tool shanks. They are also finished by grinding using a soft-to-medium vitrified silicon carbide wheel.

Chromium Plating.—Chromium plating is an electrolytic process of depositing chromium on metals either as a protection against corrosion or to increase the surface-wearing qualities. The value of chromium-plating plug and ring gages has probably been more thoroughly demonstrated than any other single application of this treatment. Chromium-plated gages not only wear longer, but when worn, the chromium may be removed and the gage replated and reground to size.

In general, chromium-plated tools have operated well, giving greatly improved performance on nearly all classes of materials such as brass, bronze, copper, nickel, aluminum, cast iron, steel, plastics, asbestos compositions, and similar materials. Increased cutting life has been obtained with chromium-plated drills, taps, reamers, files, broaches, tool tips, saws, thread chasers, and the like. Dies for stamping, drawing, hot forging, die casting, and for molding plastics materials have shown greatly increased life after being plated with hard chromium.

Special care is essential in grinding and lapping tools preparatory to plating the cutting edges, because the chromium deposit is influenced materially by the grain structure and hardness of the base metal. The thickness of the plating may vary from 0.0001 to 0.001 or 0.002 inch, the thicker platings being used to build up undersize tools such as taps and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

reamers. A common procedure in the hard chromium plating of tools, as well as for parts to be salvaged by depositing chromium to increase diameters, is as follows:

1) Degrease with solvent; 2) Mount the tools on racks; 3) Clean in an anodic alkali bath held at a temperature of 82°C (180°F) for 3 to 5 minutes; 4) Rinse in boiling water; 5) Immerse in a 20 percent hydrochloric acid solution for 2 to 3 seconds; 6) Rinse in cold water; 7) Rinse in hot water; 8) Etch in a reverse-current chromic acid bath for 2 to 5 minutes; 9) Place work immediately in the chromium plating bath; and 10) Remove hydrogen embrittlement, if necessary, by immersing the plated tools for 2 hours in an oil bath maintained at 177°C (350°F).

Chromium has a very low coefficient of friction. The static coefficient of friction for steel on chromium-plated steel is 0.17, and the sliding coefficient of friction is 0.16. This value may be compared with the static coefficient of friction for steel on steel of 0.30 and a sliding coefficient of friction of 0.20. The static coefficient of friction for steel on babbitt is 0.25, and the sliding coefficient of friction 0.20, whereas for chromium-plated steel on babbitt, the static coefficient of friction is 0.15, and the sliding coefficient of friction is 0.13. These figures apply to highly polished bearing surfaces. Articles that are to be chromium plated in order to resist frictional wear should be highly polished before plating so that full advantage can be taken of the low coefficient of friction that is characteristic of chromium. Chromium resists attack by almost all organic and inorganic compounds, except muriatic and sulfuric acids. The melting point of chromium is 2930°F (1610°C), and it remains bright up to 1200°F (649°C). Above 1200 degrees F, a light adherent oxide forms and does not readily become detached. For this reason, chromium has been used successfully for protecting articles that must resist high temperatures, even above 2000°F (1093°C).

Electron-Beam (EB) Welding

Heat for melting of metals in electron-beam welding is obtained by generating electrons, concentrating them into a beam, and accelerating them to between 30 and 70 percent of the speed of light, using voltages between 25 and 200 kV. The apparatus used is called an electron-beam gun, and it is provided with electrical coils to focus and deflect the beam as needed for the welding operation. Energy input depends on the number of electrons impinging on the work in unit time, their velocity, the degree of concentration of the beam, and the traveling speed of the workpiece being welded. Some 6.3×10^{15} electrons/s are generated in a 1-mA current stream. With beam diameters of 0.01 to 0.03 in. (0.25 to 0.76 mm), beam power can reach 100 kW and power density can be as high as 10^7 W/in^2 (1.55×10^4 W/mm^2), higher than most arc welding levels.

At these power densities, an electron beam can penetrate steel up to 4 in thick and form a vapor capillary or keyhole, as described earlier. Although patterns can be traced by deflecting the beam, the method used in welding is to move the electron gun or the workpiece. A numerical control, or computer numerical control, program is used because of the accuracy required to position the narrow beam in relation to the weld line.

Equipment is available for electron-beam welding under atmospheric pressure or at various degrees of vacuum. The process is most efficient (produces the narrowest width and deepest penetration welds) at high levels of vacuum, of the order of 10^{-6} to 10^{-3} torr or lower (standard atmospheric pressure is about 760 torr, or 760 mm of mercury), so that a vacuum chamber large enough to enclose the work is needed. Operation in a vacuum minimizes contamination of the molten weld material by oxygen and nitrogen. Gases produced during welding are also extracted rapidly by the vacuum pump so that welding of reactive metals is eased. However, the pumping time and the size of many workpieces restrict the use of high-vacuum enclosures.

At atmospheric pressures, scattering of the beam electrons by gas molecules is increased in relation to the number of stray molecules and the distance traveled, so that penetration depth is less and the beam spread is greater. In the atmosphere, the gun-to-work distance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

must be less than about 1.5 in. (38 mm). Electron-beam welding at atmospheric pressure requires beam-accelerating voltages above 150 kV, but lower values can be used with a protective gas. Helium is preferred because it is lighter than air and permits greater penetration. Argon, which is heavier than air and allows less penetration, can also be used to prevent contamination.

Required safety precautions, such as radiation shields to guard workers against the effects of X-rays when the electron beam strikes the work, are essential when electron-beam welding is done at atmospheric pressure. Such barriers are usually built into enclosures that are designed specifically for electron-beam welding in a partial vacuum. Adequate ventilation is also required to remove ozone and other gases generated when the process is used in the atmosphere.

Carbon, low-alloy, and stainless steels; high-temperature and refractory alloys; copper and aluminum alloys can be electron-beam welded, and single-pass, reasonably square, butt welds can be made in materials up to 1 in. (25.4 mm) thick at good speeds with nonvacuum equipment rated at 60 kW. Edges of thick material to be electron-beam welded require precision machining to provide good joint alignment and minimize the joint gap. Dissimilar metals usually may be welded without problems.

Because of the heat-sink effect, electron-beam welds solidify and cool very rapidly, causing cracking in certain materials such as low-ferrite stainless steel. Although capital costs for electron-beam welding are generally higher than for other methods, welding of large numbers of parts and the high welding travel rates make the process competitive.

Pipe Welding

Pipe Welding.—Welding of (usually steel) pipe is commonly performed manually, with the pipe joint stationary, or held in a fixture whereby rotation can be used to keep the weld location in a fixed, downhand, position. Alternatively, pipe may need to be welded on site, without rotation, and the welder then has to exert considerable skill to produce a satisfactory, pressure-tight joint. Before welding stationary pipe, a welder must be proficient in welding in the four basic positions: 1G flat, 2G horizontal, 3G vertical, and 4G overhead, depicted in Fig. 1 at the top in Fig. 1a, Fig. 1b, Fig. 1c, and Fig. 1d.

Positioning of Joint Components in Pipe Welding

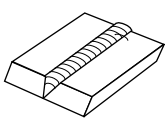


Fig. 1a. Flat Position 1G

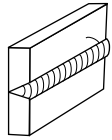


Fig. 1b. Horizontal Position 2G

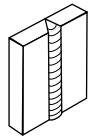


Fig. 1c. Vertical Position 3G

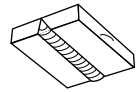


Fig. 1d. Overhead Position 4G

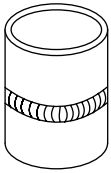


Fig. 1e. Horizontal Position 2G Pipe Axis Vertical

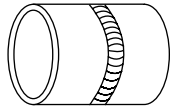


Fig. 1f. Position 5G Pipe Fixed, Axis Horizontal

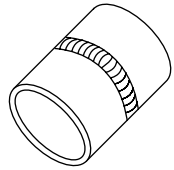


Fig. 1g. Position 6G Pipe Fixed, Axis Inclined

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

At the bottom of Fig. 1 are pipe joints in three positions, the first of which, Fig. 1e, corresponds to the 2G horizontal (non-rotational) position in the upper row. The remaining two are respectively 5G, Fig. 1f, representing pipe with the weld in a fixed vertical (non-rotational) position; and 6G, Fig. 1g, that typifies pipe to be welded at an angle and not rotated during welding.

For satisfactory pipe welding, consideration must be given to the chemical composition and thickness of the metal to be welded; selection of a suitable electrode material composition and size; determination of the current, voltage and wire feed rate to be used; preparation of the joint or edges of the pipes; and ways of holding the pipes in the positions needed while welding is carried out. High-quality tack welds, each about 1.5 inches (38 mm) long, and projecting about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) beyond the inner wall of the pipe, are usually made to hold the parts of the assembly in position during welding.

SMAW (stick) welding was used almost exclusively for pipe welding until the advent of MIG welding with its potential for much greater rates of deposition. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that practices suitable for SMAW cannot be transferred to MIG welding, for which greater expertise is required if satisfactory welds are to be produced. MIG short-circuit, globular, and spray transfer, and pulsed MIG, with flux or metal-cored consumables (electrodes) can now all be used for pipe welding. Use of all-position, flux-cored, MIG consumables in particular, can reduce skill requirements, improve weld quality, and hold down costs in pipe welding.

Among the important items involved in the change to the MIG process is the automatic wire feeder. With today's wire feeding equipment, an increase of one increment on the dial, say from the 9 to the 10 o'clock position, can increase the wire feed rate by 70 in/min (1.8 m/min). As an example, such an increase could raise the weld current from 110 to 145 amps and the weld voltage from 16 to 17, resulting in an increase of 40 percent in the energy supplied to the weld. Another vital parameter is the amount that the wire sticks out from the contact tip. In low-parameter, short-circuit welding, a small change in the wire stick-out can alter the energy supplied to the weld by 20 to 30 percent.

Root passes: Whatever welding process is selected, the most important step in pipe welding, as in other types of welding, is the root pass, which helps to determine the degree of penetration of the weld metal, and affects the amount of lack of fusion in the finished weld. During the root pass, the action of the arc in the weld area should reshape the gap between the adjacent sides of the joint into a pear-shaped opening, often called a "keyhole." As the work proceeds, this keyhole opening is continuously being filled, on the trailing side of the weld, by the metal being deposited from the electrode. The keyhole travels along with the weld so that the root pass produces a weld that penetrates slightly through the inner wall of the pipe.

MIG short-circuit root welding of carbon steel pipe requires a gap of $\frac{5}{32} \pm \frac{1}{32}$ inch (4 ± 0.8 mm), between the ends of the pipe, and the width of the root faces (at the base of the bevels) should be $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{3}{32}$ inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm). The recommended bevel angle for MIG pipe welding is 40° (80° included angle) and the maximum root gap is $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (4.8 mm). The root pass in 1G welds should be made in the vertical-down direction with the electrode held between the 2 and 3 o'clock positions. When an 0.035-inch (0.9-mm) diameter E70S-3 MIG wire is used with the above root dimensions, weaving is not needed for the root pass except when welding over tack welds.

Fill Passes: In welding carbon steel pipe in the 1G position with an 0.035-inch diameter electrode wire, MIG short circuit fill passes should use a minimum of 135 amps and be done in the vertical-up position. Fill passes should deposit a maximum thickness of no more than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm). Inclusion of CO_2 gas in the mixture will improve weld

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

fusion. With flux-cored electrodes, the minimum amount of wire stick out is $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19 mm). Weld fusion can be improved in welding pipe of 0.4 inch (10 mm) wall thickness and thicker by preheating the work to a temperature between 400 and 500°F (204 and 260 °C).

Horizontal Pipe Welding: In 1G welds (see Fig. 1a), the pipe should be rotated in the direction that moves the solidifying area away from the wire tip, to minimize penetration and resulting breakthrough. Welding of pipe in the 2G, horizontal position is made more difficult by the tendency for the molten metal to drip from the weld pool. Such dripping may cause an excessively large keyhole to form during the root-welding pass, and in subsequent passes electrode metal may be lost. Metal may also be lost from the edge of the upper pipe, causing an undercut at that side of the weld.

Vertical-down Welding: With the pipe axis horizontal (as in the 5G position in Fig. 1f), vertical-down welding is usually started at the top or 12 o'clock location, and proceeds until the 6 o'clock location is reached. Welding then starts again at the 12 o'clock location and continues in the opposite direction until the 6 o'clock location is reached. Vertical-down welding is mainly used for thin-walled, low-carbon steel pipe of $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{5}{16}$ inch (3.2 to 7.9 mm) wall thickness, which has low heat-retaining capacity so that the weld metal cools slowly, producing a soft and ductile structure. The slow rate of cooling also permits faster weld deposition, and, when several beads are deposited, causes an annealing effect that may refine the entire weld structure.

Vertical-up Welding: In the 5G position, vertical-up welding normally begins at the 6 o'clock location and continues up to the 12 o'clock location, the weld then being completed by starting at the 6 o'clock location on the other side of the pipe and traversing up to the 12 o'clock location again. Vertical-up welding is more suited to pipe with thick walls and to alloy steels. However, the greater heat sink effect of the heavy-walled pipe may result in a faster cooling rate and embrittlement of the material, especially in alloy steels. The cooling rate can be reduced by slowing the rate of traverse and depositing a heavier bead of metal, both facilitated by welding in the vertical-up direction.

Using a thicker electrode and higher current for thicker-walled pipe to reduce the number of beads required may result in dripping from the molten puddle of metal. Defects such as pin holes, lack of fusion, and cold lap, may then appear in the weld. Vertical-up welding of pipe in the 5G, fixed, horizontal position, Fig. 1f, used for thick-walled pipe, is probably the most difficult for a welder, but once mastered will form the basis for other methods of pipe welding. Starting at the 6 o'clock location, the arc for the root pass is struck overhead, with the electrode at an angle of 5 to 10° from the vertical, on the joint, not on the tack weld. A long arc should be maintained for a short-period while weaving the electrode to pre-heat the area ahead of the weld. Only small amounts of filler metal will be transferred while this long arc is maintained in the overhead position. The electrode tip is then advanced to establish the correct arc length and held in position long enough for the keyhole to form before starting to lay down the root bead, moving up toward the 12 o'clock location.

Thin-wall Pipe: The optimum globular/spray parameters for welding rotated, (1G position) thin-wall pipe of less than 12 inch (305 mm) diameter are 0.035-inch (1 mm) electrode wire fed at 380–420 in/min (9.7–10.7 m/min) with a protective gas mixture of argon 80 to 85, CO_2 15 to 20 percent, and current of 190 to 210 amps. These conditions will provide deposition rates of about 6 lb/hr (3 kg/hr).

Use of Flux-Cored Electrodes.—Small diameter, flux cored electrodes developed in the eighties are still a rarity in many pipe welding shops, but flux cored welding can produce

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

consistent, high-quality, low-cost welds on carbon steel or stainless pipe. Flux cored E71T-1, 0.035-inch (1 mm) diameter wire provides a continuous, medium energy, open arc, with a practical current range of 135 to 165 amps for welding pipe. This current range is similar to the optimum MIG short-circuit current range, and is 25 to 30 percent less current than the minimum open arc spray transfer current for an 0.035-inch (1 mm) diameter MIG wire.

In contrast to MIG short circuit welding, FCAW works with an open arc and no short circuits. The FCAW arc energy is continuous, and, in contrast to short-circuit transfer, provides increased weld fusion potential. The weld metal from the flux-cored tubular wire is transferred from the periphery and the center of the wire, resulting in broad coverage of the weld. The plasma in the flux cored arc is wider than MIG plasma, and the flux-cored arc is less focused and easier to control than the MIG spray arc.

Open arc, gas shielded, flux-cored welding can produce spray type transfer at lower currents than open arc MIG spray transfer. With FCAW, the current density is high because the electrode wire cross-sectional area is less than that of the same size MIG solid wire due to the central core of flux. This higher density provides for improved weld penetration potential. The FCAW process produces slag, which serves as a mold to hold the fluid molten metal in place, an ideal arrangement for vertical-up and overhead welds.

All position, flux-cored wires require less operator skill for vertical-up and overhead welds than MIG, SMAW, and TIG processes. Fill passes can also be completed in 30 to 50 percent less time with all-position, flux-cored wires than with MIG short circuit and SMAW wires.

For good quality FCAW, welders need to know the best root and bevel dimensions, and the importance of maintaining those dimensions for continuous weld fusion; the preferred direction of pipe rotation; the diameter of flux cored electrode best suited for welding thin wall pipe; the optimum parameter range for that electrode on 1G and 5G welds; the preferred amount of wire stick out (typically 0.7 inch or 18 mm); and how to fine tune the voltage. When flux-cored welding is to be used for the fill passes, MIG short circuit welding is recommended for the root welds to reduce the possibility of slag from the flux being trapped in the weld. Higher weld deposit rates are provided with flux-cored, vertical-up welding, and there is the temptation to weld faster with a process that's easy to use. Conservative wire feed settings are recommended unless the high deposition rates are shown to provide consistent weld fusion. Wire feed settings should allow the welder time to control and direct the weave into the critical groove locations.

Complete Weld Fusion.—It is essential that new weld metal deposits be completely fused with the pipe components, and with metal laid down in successive passes. Factors that can prevent complete fusing are too numerous to list here. Some basic rules that, if followed, will improve weld fusion and quality in MIG welding in the 1G and 5G positions are:

1) The maximum gap at the root should be $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (5 mm).
2) The root land should be $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{3}{32}$ inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm) wide.
3) A bevel angle of 80° inclusive should be used for MIG and flux-cored welding of pipe to provide width for weaving and improve fusion.
4) An 0.035-in MIG electrode should have a minimum short circuit current of 135 amps for fill passes.
5) Tack and root welds should be made in the vertical-down position.
6) Tack welds should be about 1.5 in (38 mm) long by $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{3}{32}$ inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm) thick.
7) Short circuit fill passes should be made in the vertical-up position.
8) With flux-cored electrodes, a minimum of 0.7 inch (18 mm) wire stick out from the contact tip must be maintained.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9) Current and voltage must be related to the pipe wall thickness.

10) Argon + 25 percent CO_2 is recommended for short circuit welding of pipe roots.

11) Use of undiluted CO_2 gas will improve MIG weld fusion in fill passes because of the "digging" action of the arc, and the increased weld energy.

12) With pipe wall thicknesses of 0.4 inch (10 mm) or greater, preheating to between 400 and 500°F (205 and 260°C) will help make fusion complete.

Other Methods.—Pulsed MIG is a viable alternative to flux-cored for all-position welds on 5G pipe, but requires more costly equipment. The pulsed MIG process however, has few advantages over conventional MIG and flux-cored when the latter are used correctly. Pulsed MIG may have some advantage on mechanized 5G welds and on welding of stainless steel pipe in the 5G position.

Metal-cored electrode wire also has few advantages for pipe welds because they work best with low-energy gas welds, which cancels out the increased current density claimed for them.

On most manual pipe welds, the welder needs time to control and direct the weave to ensure even heating and avoid lack of fusion. Satisfactory welds are often performed at travel speeds of 4 to 12 in/min (0.10–0.31 m/min) giving deposit rates of 3–5 lb/hr (1.36–2.27 kg/hr).

Pipe Welding Procedure

Because of the variety of parameter combinations that can be used in pipe welding, it is suggested that charts be prepared and displayed in welding booths to remind welders of the basic settings to be used. Examples of such charts for tack, root, fill and cover passes, are included in what follows:

FCAW 5G (Non-Rotated) MIG Welding of Thick-Walled, Carbon Steel Pipes, Procedure for Root Welding.—This procedure can be applied to most pipe sizes, and should be given special consideration for 5G (non-rotated) welds on carbon steel pipe with $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (10 mm) wall thickness and thicker.

Pipe and Weld Data

Pipe bevel included angle = 80

Root face land = $\frac{3}{32} \pm \frac{1}{32}$ inch (2.4 ± 0.8 mm)

Root gap between faces = $\frac{5}{32} \pm \frac{1}{32}$ inch (4 ± 0.8 mm)

Electrode for root weld = 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) diameter, E70S-3 flux-cored

Gas = argon with 15–25% CO_2

Gas flow rates = 30 to 40 cubic ft/hr (0.85–1.13 m^3/hr)

Set wire feeder to 210–280 in/min (10 to 11 o'clock position on many feeders) for current of 140–170 amps, 17–18 volts.

Wire extension: For MIG root weld, set contact tip to stick outside the nozzle, $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (1.6 to 3 mm). Maintain $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (10 to 16 mm) maximum wire stick out from contact tip.

Tack Welding Procedures for FCAW 5G Pipe Welds: Make tack welds 1.5 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) long. After welding, grind full length of tack to thickness of approximately $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.6 mm). Feather tack ends back $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inches (9.5 to 13 mm).

On pipes of less than 6 inches (15 cm) outside diameter, use three tack welds, equally spaced, starting at 12 o'clock.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

On pipes over 6 inches outside diameter use 4 tack welds. Locate tack welds at 12, 3, 6, and 9 o'clock.

Root Welding Procedures for FCAW 5G Pipe Welds: Root weld MIG vertical-down. Weld sequence: 12 to 3, 9 to 6, 3 to 6, and 12 to 9 o'clock positions.

Start and finish MIG root welds at tack centers. Use slight weave oscillation over tacks. No weave necessary if $\frac{1}{8}$- to $\frac{5}{32}$-inch root gap is maintained. Weaving may be required if root gap is less than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3 mm). Weaving is also beneficial for root welds between 7 and 6 o'clock, and between 5 and 6 o'clock. After each root pass, blend the starts and stops back to the original tack thickness.

To complete the root, ensure that the weld stops and starts on the last tack, and that the root weld center is ground flat or slightly concave. Remove any slag islands.

FCAW 5G (Non-rotated) MIG Welding of Thick-Walled, Carbon-steel Pipes, Procedure for Fill and Cover Welds.—This procedure can be applied to most common pipe sizes, and should be given special consideration for 5G (non-rotated) welds on carbon steel pipe with $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (10 mm) wall thickness and thicker.

Pipe and Weld Data

Electrode for fill and cover passes = 0.035 inch (0.9 mm) diameter, 71T-1 flux-cored

Gas = argon with 15–25% CO_2

Gas flow rates = 30 to 40 cubic ft/hr

Set an initial wire feed rate of 350 to 450 in/min (12 to 1 o'clock position on typical wire feed unit), 135–165 amps, 25–28 volts. Alternatively, use a wire feed setting of 350 in/min (12 o'clock on wire feed unit), which should result in about 135–145 amps, 25–26 volts. If the weld pool and weld heat build up permit, increase the wire feed rate to 380 in/min (between the 12 and 1 o'clock positions), 150 amps, 27 volts. Try also a wire feed setting of 420 in/min (1 o'clock on the wire feeder), 165 amps, 28 volts. Determine the low and maximum wire feed rates to be used by examination of the weld fusion obtained in sectioned test samples.

Wire extension: Adjust contact tip so it is recessed $\frac{1}{2}$ inch within the nozzle to provide a total wire stick out from the contact tip of 0.7 to 1 inch (18 to 25 mm).

Fill and Cover Pass Procedures for FCAW 5G Pipe Welds: Weld vertical-up. If the pipe diameter allows the fill pass to be made in two passes, start at the 7 o'clock position and weld to the 1 o'clock position. This approach is preferable to starting and finishing on the root tacks. Starting at the 7 o'clock position will ensure that optimum weld energy is achieved as the first pass welds over the initial 6 o'clock root tack location. Use the grinder to feather the first 1 inch (25 mm) of the weld start and stop of the first pass, before applying the second vertical-up weld pass. Use a slight weave action for the fill pass.

Remove all flux-cored slag between weld passes. Make sure no fill pass is greater in depth than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3 mm). Use a straight weave across the root face. At the bevel edge use a slight upward motion with the gun. The motion should be no greater than the wire diameter. Then use a slight back step for added bevel fusion and to avoid undercuts.

Leave $\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (0.8 to 1.6 mm) of the groove depth to provide for the optimum cover pass profile. The bevel edge will act as a guide for the cover pass weld. If more weld fusion is required for pipe thicker than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (10 mm), after the root weld is complete, preheat the pipe to between 400 and 600°F (200–300°C) before welding. Preheating is typically not necessary for a cover pass.

For pipe diameters on which the welder needs more than two passes for the vertical-up welds, the recommended sequence for vertical-up welding is:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1) First pass, weld from the 7 to the 4 o'clock position. Start with a slight forehand nozzle angle. At the 4 o'clock position, the gun should be at the same angle as the pipe.

2) Second pass, weld from the 10 to the 1 o'clock position, then grind all stops and start again at the 1-inch (25 mm) position.

3) Third pass, weld from the 4 to the 1 o'clock position.

4) Fourth pass, weld from the 7 to the 10 o'clock position.

FCAW 5G (Non-rotated) Welding of Thin-Walled Carbon Steel Pipes, Procedure for Root, Fill and Cover Pass Welding.—This procedure can be applied to most common pipe sizes, and should be given special consideration for 5G (non-rotated) welding of carbon steel pipe with wall thicknesses up to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (10 mm).

Pipe and Weld Data

Electrode for root weld = 0.035 inch diameter, E70S-6 flux cored

Gas = argon with 15–25% CO_2

Gas flow rates = 30 to 40 cubic ft/hr

Root Welding Procedure for 5G Welds: Use root welding data from *Root Welding Procedures for FCAW 5G Pipe Welds*, above.

Fill and Cover Pass Procedures for 5G Welds: Use MIG short-circuit, vertical-up for fill and cover passes. Electrode wire and gas, same as for root weld.

Weld vertical-up. If the vertical-up fill pass can be made in two passes, weld from the 7 to the 1 o'clock position, to avoid starting and finishing on the root tacks. Starting just past 6 o'clock ensures that optimum weld energy is achieved as the first pass welds over the initial 6 o'clock root tack location. Feather 1 inch (25 mm) of the weld start and stop on the first pass with the grinder before applying the second vertical-up weld pass. Use a slight weave action.

Use MIG short-circuit wire feed, 200–230 in/min 125–135 amps, 19–22 volts. Start at optimum 210 in/min (10 o'clock on the wire feeder) for 130 amps, 21–22 volts. Fine tune voltage by listening to arc sound to obtain a consistent rapid crackle sound.

Electrode sticks out $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{5}{8}$ inch, contact tip flush with nozzle end.

Remove MIG surface slag islands between weld passes. No fill pass should be thicker than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3 mm). Use straight weave across the root face. At the bevel, use a slight upward motion with the gun. The motion should be no greater than the wire diameter. Then use a slight back step for added bevel fusion and to avoid possibility of undercut.

For the cover pass, leave $\frac{1}{32}$ to $\frac{1}{16}$ inch of the groove depth for the optimum cover pass profile. The bevel edge will act as a guide for the cover pass weld.

If more weld fusion is required after the root is complete and between fill passes, preheat pipe to 200–400°F (93–204°C).

For pipe diameters on which more than two passes are required for the circumference the weld sequence is:

1) First pass, weld from the 7 to the 4 o'clock position. Start with a slight forehand nozzle angle. At the 4 o'clock position the gun should point straight at the joint; 2) Second pass, weld from the 10 to the 1 o'clock position, then grind all stops and starts for at least 1 inch (25 mm); 3) Third pass, weld from the 4 to the 1 o'clock position; and 4) Fourth pass, weld from the 7 to the 10 o'clock position.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Weld and Welding Symbols

American National Standard Weld and Welding Symbols.—Graphical symbols for welding provide a means of conveying complete welding information from the designer to the welder by means of drawings. The symbols and their method of use (examples of which are given in the table following this section) are part of the American National Standard ANSI/AWS A2.4-2012 sponsored by the American Welding Society.

In the Standard a distinction is made between the terms *weld symbol* and *welding symbol*. Weld symbols, shown in the table *Basic Weld Symbols*, are ideographs used to indicate the type of weld desired, whereas welding symbol denotes a symbol made up of as many as eight elements conveying explicit welding instructions.

The eight elements which may appear in a welding symbol are: reference line; arrow; basic weld symbols; dimensions and other data; supplementary symbols; finish symbols; tail and specification; and process or other reference.

The standard location of elements of a welding symbol are shown in Fig. 1.

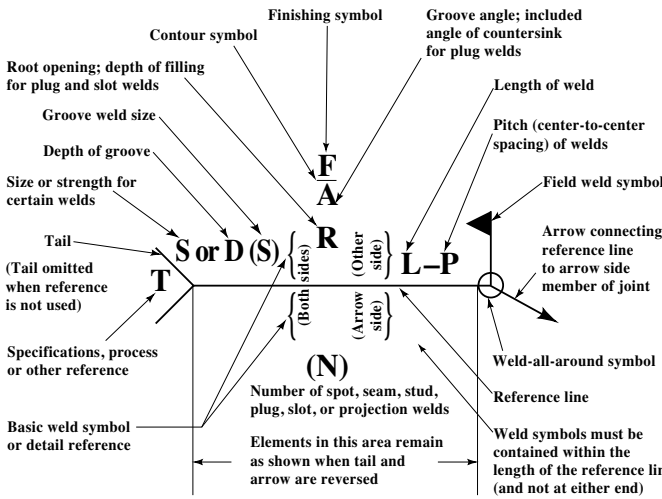

Finishing symbol
Contour symbol
Groove angle; included angle of countersink for plug welds
Root opening; depth of filling for plug and slot welds
Length of weld
Groove weld size
Pitch (center-to-center spacing) of welds
Depth of groove
F
A
Size or strength for certain welds
Field weld symbol
Tail
S or D (S)
R
(Other side)
L–P
Arrow connecting reference line to arrow side member of joint
(Tail omitted when reference is not used)
T
(Both sides)
(Arrow side)
Specifications, process or other reference
(N)
Weld-all-around symbol
Number of spot, seam, stud, plug, slot, or projection welds
Reference line
Basic weld symbol or detail reference
Elements in this area remain as shown when tail and arrow are reversed
Weld symbols must be contained within the length of the reference line (and not at either end)

Fig. 1. Standard Location of Elements of a Welding Symbol

Reference Line: This is the basis of the welding symbol. All other elements are oriented with respect to this line. The arrow is affixed to one end and a tail, when necessary, is affixed to the other. Weld symbols should be contained within the length of this line.

Arrow: This connects the reference line to one side of the joint in the case of groove, fillet, flange, and flash or upset welding symbols. This side of the joint is known as the *arrow side* of the joint. The opposite side is known as the *other side* of the joint. In the case of plug, slot, projection, and seam welding symbols, the arrow connects the reference line to the outer surface of one of the members of the joint at the center line of the weld. In this case the member to which the arrow points is the *arrow side* member: the other member is the *other side* member. In the case of bevel and J-groove weld symbols, a two-directional arrow pointing toward a member indicates that the member is to be chamfered.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Basic Weld Symbols: These designate the type of welding to be performed. The basic symbols which are shown in the table *Basic Weld Symbols* are placed approximately in the center of the reference line, either above or below it or on both sides of it as shown in Fig. 1. Welds on the arrow side of the joint are shown by placing the weld symbols on the side of the reference line towards the reader (lower side). Welds on the other side of the joint are shown by placing the weld symbols on the side of the reference line away from the reader (upper side).

Supplementary Symbols: These convey additional information relative to the extent of the welding, where the welding is to be performed, and the contour of the weld bead. The "weld-all-around" and "field" symbols are placed at the end of the reference line at the base of the arrow as shown in Fig. 1 and the table *Supplementary Weld Symbols*.

Dimensions: These include the size, length, spacing, etc., of the weld or welds. The size of the weld is given to the left of the basic weld symbol and the length to the right. If the length is followed by a dash and another number, this number indicates the center-to-center spacing of intermittent welds. Other pertinent information such as groove angles, included angle of countersink for plug welds and the designation of the number of spot or projection welds are also located above or below the weld symbol. The number designating the number of spot or projection welds is always enclosed in parentheses.

Contour and Finish Symbols: The contour symbol is placed above or below the weld symbol. The finish symbol always appears above or below the contour symbol (see Fig. 1).

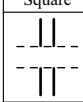
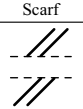
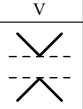
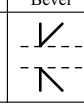
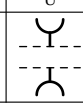
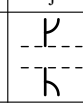
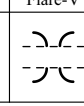
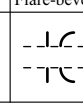
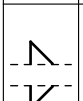
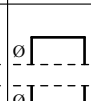
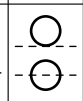
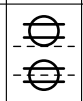
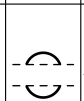
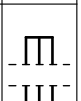
The following finish symbols indicate the method, not the degrees of finish: C—chipping; G—grinding; M—machining; R—rolling; and H—hammering.

For indication of surface finish refer to the section *SURFACE TEXTURE* starting on page 808.

Tail: The tail which appears on the end of the reference line opposite to the arrow end is used when a specification, process, or other reference is made in the welding symbol. When no specification, process, or other reference is used with a welding symbol, the tail may be omitted.

Melt-Thru Symbol: The melt-thru symbol is used only where 100 percent joint or member penetration plus reinforcement are required.

Table 1. Basic Weld Symbols

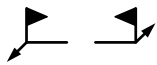
Groove Symbols							
Square	Scarf	V	Bevel	U	J	Flare-V	Flare-bevel
							
Other Weld Symbols							
Fillet	Plug [a]	Slot	Stud	Spot or projection	Seam	Back or backing	Surfacing	Edge
								

[a] Ø designates a round hole for a plug.

For examples of basic weld symbol applications see *Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols* starting on page 1622.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Supplementary Weld Symbols

Weld all around	Field weld	Melt-thru	Backing or spacer material	Contour		
				Flush	Convex	Concave
						

Specification, Process, or Other Designation: These are placed in the tail of the welding symbol and are in accordance with the American National Standard. They do not have to be used if a note is placed on the drawing indicating that the welding is to be done to some specification or that instructions are given elsewhere as to the welding procedure to be used.

Letter Designations: American National Standard letter designations for welding and allied processes are shown in the table on page 1621.

Further Information: For complete information concerning welding specification by the use of standard symbols, reference should be made to American National Standard ANSI/AWS A2.4-2012, which may be obtained from either the American National Standards Institute or the American Welding Society listed below.

Welding Codes, Rules, Regulations, and Specifications.—Codes recommending procedures for obtaining specified results in the welding of various structures have been established by societies, institutes, bureaus, and associations, as well as state and federal departments.

The latest codes, rules, etc., may be obtained from these agencies, whose names and addresses are listed as follows: PV = Pressure Vessels; P = Piping; T = Tanks; SB = Structural and Bridges; S = Ships; AC = Aircraft Construction; and EWM = Electrical Welding Machinery.

American Bureau of Shipping, ABS Plaza, 1701 City Plaza Drive, Spring, TX 77389, ww2.eagle.org. (S)

American Institute of Steel Construction, 130 East Randolph, Suite 2000, Chicago, IL, 60601, www.aisc.org. (SB)

American National Standards Institute, 25 W. 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036, www.ansi.org. (PV, P, EWM)

American Petroleum Institute, 1220 L Street NW, Washington, DC 20005, www.api.org. (PV)

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016, www.asme.org. (PV)

American Welding Society, 8669 NW 36 Street, #130, Miami, FL 33166, www.aws.org. (T, S, SB, AC)

Federal Aviation Administration, 800 Independence Avenue SW, Washington DC 20591, www.faa.gov. (AC)

Insurance Services Office, 545 Washington Boulevard, Jersey City, NJ 07310, www.verisk.com/insurance/brands/iso. (PV)

Lloyd's Register of North America, 1330 Enclave Parkway, Suite 200, Houston, TX 77077, www.lrqausa.com. (S)

Mechanical Contractors Association of America, 1385 Piccard Drive, Rockville, MD 20850, www.mcaa.org. (P)

National Electrical Manufacturers Association, 1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900, Arlington, VA 22209, www.nema.org. (EWM)

US Air Force, 1690 Air Force, Pentagon, Washington, DC 20330, www.af.mil. (AC)

US Government Printing Office, 732 N. Capitol Street NW, Washington, DC 20401, www.gpo.gov. (PV)

US Naval Facilities Engineering Command, 1322 Patterson Avenue SE, Suite 1000, Washington Navy Yard, Washington, DC 20374, www.navfac.navy.mil. (SB)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Letter Designations for Welding and Allied Processes

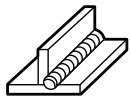
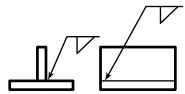
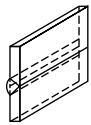
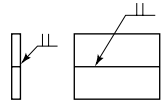
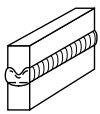
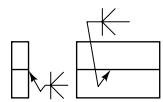
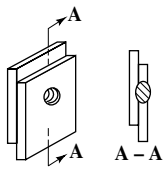
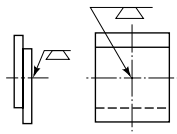
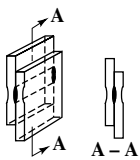
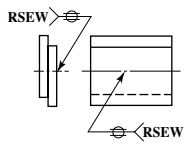
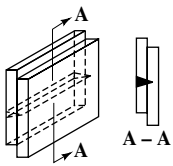
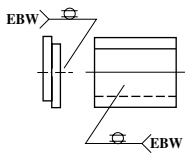
AWS A3.0M/A3.0-2010 **and** *AWS A2.4-2012*

- **adhesive bonding (AB)**
- **arc welding (AW)**
  - arc stud welding (SW)
  - atomic hydrogen welding (AHW)
  - bare metal arc welding (BMAW)
  - carbon arc welding (CAW)
    - gas carbon arc welding (CAW-G)
    - shielded carbon arc welding (CAW-S)
    - twin carbon arc welding (CAW-T)
  - electrogas welding (EGW)
  - flux cored arc welding (FCAW)
    - gas-shielded flux cored arc welding (FCAW-G)
    - self-shielded flux cored arc welding (FCAW-S)
  - gas metal arc welding (GMAW)
    - pulsed gas metal arc welding (GMAW-P)
    - short circuit gas metal arc welding (GMAW-S)
  - gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW)
    - pulsed gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW-P)
  - magnetically impelled arc welding (MIAW)
  - plasma arc welding (PAW)
  - shielded metal arc welding (SMAW)
  - submerged arc welding (SAW)
    - series submerged arc welding (SAW-S)
- **brazing (B)**
  - block brazing (BB)
  - carbon arc brazing (CAB)
    - twin carbon arc brazing (TCAB)
  - diffusion brazing (DFB)
  - dip brazing (DB)
  - electron beam brazing (EBB)
  - exothermic brazing (EXB)
  - furnace brazing (FB)
  - induction brazing (IB)
  - infrared brazing (IRB)
  - laser beam brazing (LBB)
  - resistance brazing (RB)
  - torch brazing (TB)
- **braze welding (BW)**
  - arc braze welding (ABW)
  - carbon arc braze welding (CABW)
  - electron beam braze welding (EBBW)
  - exothermic braze welding (EXBW)
  - flow brazing (FLB)
  - flow welding (FLOW)
  - laser beam braze welding (LBBW)
- **consumable guide electroslag welding (ESW-CG)**
- **electroslag welding (ESW)**
- **high energy beam welding (HEBW)**
  - electron beam welding (EBW)
    - high vacuum electron beam welding (EBW-HV)
    - medium vacuum electron beam welding (EBW-MV)
    - nonvacuum electron beam welding (EBW-NV)
  - laser beam welding (LBW)
- **induction welding (IW)**
- **oxyfuel gas welding (OFW)**
  - air acetylene welding (AAW)
  - oxyacetylene welding (OAW)
  - oxyhydrogen welding (OHW)
  - pressure gas welding (PGW)
- **percussion welding (PEW)**
- **resistance welding (RW)**
  - flash welding (FW)
  - pressure-controlled resistance welding (RW-PC)
  - projection welding (PW)
  - resistance seam welding (RSEW)
    - high-frequency seam welding (RSEW-HF)
    - induction seam welding (RSEW-I)
    - mash seam welding (RSEW-MS)
  - resistance spot welding (RSW)
  - upset welding (UW)
    - high-frequency upset welding (UW-HF)
    - induction upset welding (UW-I)
- **soldering (S)**
  - dip soldering (DS)
  - furnace soldering (FS)
  - induction soldering (IS)
  - infrared soldering (IRS)
  - iron soldering (INS)
  - resistance soldering (RS)
  - torch soldering (TS)
  - ultrasonic soldering (USS)
  - wave soldering (WS)
- **solid-state welding (SSW)**
  - coextrusion welding (CEW)
  - cold welding (CW)
  - diffusion welding (DFW)
    - hot isostatic pressure welding (HIPW)
  - explosion welding (EXW)
  - forge welding (FOW)
  - friction welding (FRW)
    - direct drive friction welding (FRW-DD)
    - friction stir welding (FSW)
    - inertia friction welding (FRW-I)
  - hot pressure welding (HPW)
  - roll welding (ROW)
  - ultrasonic welding (USW)
- **thermal cutting (TC)**
  - arc cutting (AC)
    - carbon arc cutting (CAC)
      - air carbon arc cutting (CAC-A)
    - gas metal arc cutting (GMAC)
    - gas tungsten arc cutting (GTAC)
    - plasma arc cutting (PAC)
    - shielded metal arc cutting (SMAC)
  - high energy beam cutting (HEBC)
    - electron beam cutting (EBC)
    - laser beam cutting (LBC)
      - laser beam air cutting (LBC-A)
      - laser beam evaporative cutting (LBC-EV)
      - laser beam inert gas cutting (LBC-IG)
      - laser beam oxygen cutting (LBC-0)
  - oxygen cutting (OC)
    - flux cutting (OC-F)
    - metal powder cutting (OC-P)
    - oxyfuel gas cutting (OFC)
      - oxyacetylene cutting (OFC-A)
      - oxyhydrogen gas cutting (OFC-H)
      - oxynatural gas cutting (OFC-N)
      - oxypropane cutting (OFC-P)
    - oxygen arc cutting (OAC)
    - oxygen lance cutting (OLC)
- **thermal gouging (TG)**
  - carbon arc gouging (CAG)
  - oxygen gouging (OG)
  - plasma arc gouging (PAG)
- **thermal spraying (THSP)**
  - arc spraying (ASP)
    - flame spraying (FLSP)
      - wire flame spraying (FLSP-W)
  - high velocity oxyfuel spraying (HVOF)
    - plasma spraying (PSP)
    - vacuum plasma spraying (VPSP)
- **thermite welding (TW)**

Sources: ANSI/AWS A3.0M/ A3.0-2010, *Standard Welding Terms and Definitions: Including Terms for Adhesive Bonding, Brazing, Soldering, Thermal Cutting, and Thermal Spraying*; ANSI/AWS A2.4-2012, *Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination*. Courtesy of the American Welding Society.

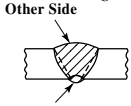
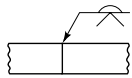
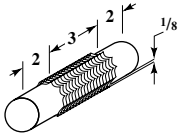
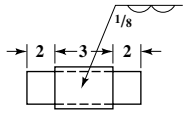
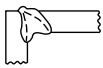
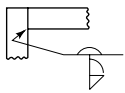
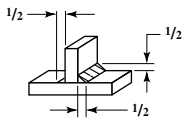
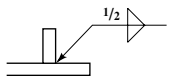
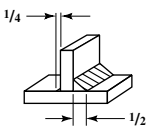
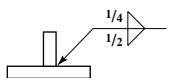
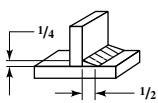
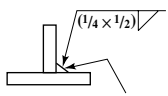
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols

Desired Weld	Symbol	Symbol Meaning
		Symbol indicates fillet weld on *arrow side* of the joint.
		Symbol indicates square-groove weld on *other side* of the joint.
		Symbol indicates bevel-groove weld on both sides of joint. Breaks in arrow indicate bevels on upper member of joint. Breaks in arrows are used on symbols designating bevel and J-groove welds.
		Symbol indicates plug weld on *arrow side* of joint.
		Symbol indicates resistance-seam weld. Weld symbol appears on both sides of reference line, indicating that *arrow* and *other side* of joint references have no significance.
		Symbol indicates electron beam seam weld on *other side* of joint.

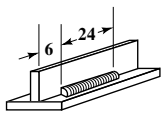
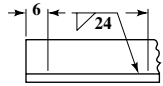
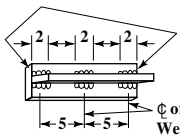
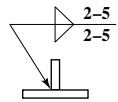
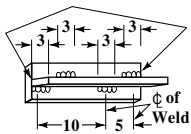
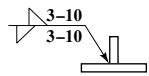
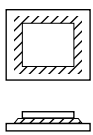
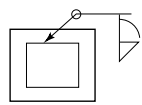
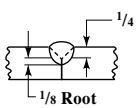
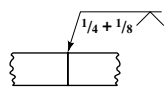
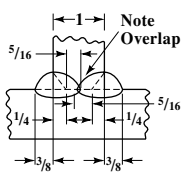
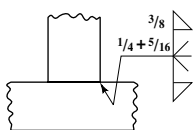
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols *(Continued)*

Desired Weld	Symbol	Symbol Meaning
Groove Weld Made Before Welding Other Side  **Back Weld**		Symbol indicates single-pass back weld.
		Symbol indicates a built-up surface 1/8 inch thick.
		Symbol indicates a bead-type back weld on the *other side* of joint, and a J-groove grooved horizontal member (shown by break in arrow) and fillet weld on *arrow side* of the joint.
		Symbol indicates two fillet welds, both with 1/2-inch leg dimensions.
		Symbol indicates a 1/2-inch fillet weld on *arrow side* of the joint and a 1/4-inch fillet weld on *far side* of the joint.
	 **Orientation Shown on Drawing**	Symbol indicates a fillet weld on *arrow side* of joint with 1/4- and 1/2-inch legs. Orientation of legs must be shown on drawing.

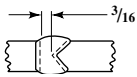
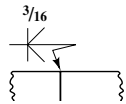
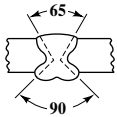
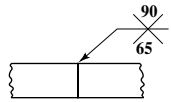
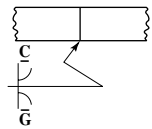
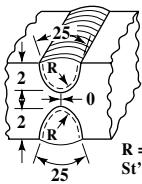
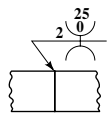
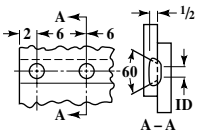
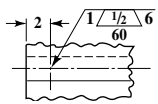
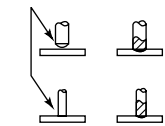
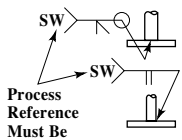
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols *(Continued)*

Desired Weld	Symbol	Symbol Meaning
		Symbol indicates a 24-inch long fillet weld on the *arrow side* of the joint.
Locate Welds at Ends of Joint 		Symbol indicates a series of intermittent fillet welds each 2 inches long and spaced 5 inches apart on centers directly opposite each other on both sides of the joint.
Locate Welds at Ends of Joint 		Symbol indicates a series of intermittent fillet welds each 3 inches long and spaced 10 inches apart on centers. The centers of the welds on one side of the joint are displaced from those on the other.
		Symbol indicates a fillet weld around the perimeter of the member.
		Symbol indicates a 1/4-inch V-groove weld with a 1/8-inch root penetration.
		Symbol indicates a 1/4-inch bevel weld with a 5/16-inch root penetration plus a subsequent 3/8-inch fillet weld.

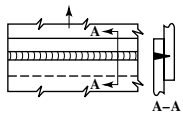
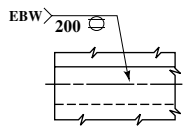
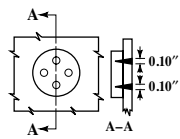
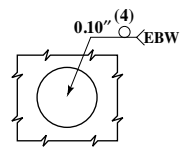
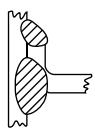
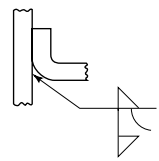
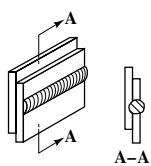
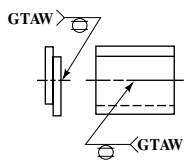
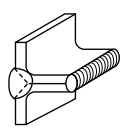
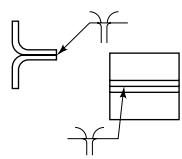
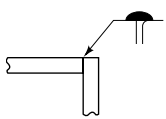
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols *(Continued)*

Desired Weld	Symbol	Symbol Meaning
		Symbol indicates a bevel weld with a root opening of $\frac{3}{16}$ inch.
		Symbol indicates a V-groove weld with a groove angle of 65 degrees on the *arrow side* and 90 degrees on the *other side*.
		Symbol indicates a flush surface with the reinforcement removed by chipping on the *other side* of the joint and a smooth grind on the *arrow side*. The symbols *C* and *G* should be the user's standard finish symbols.
		Symbol indicates a 2-inch U-groove weld with a 25-degree groove angle and no root opening for both sides of the joint.
		Symbol indicates plug welds of 1-inch diameter, a depth of filling of ½ inch and a 60-degree angle of countersink spaced 6 inches apart on centers.
		Symbol indicates all-around bevel and square-groove weld of these studs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application of American National Standard Welding Symbols *(Continued)*

Desired Weld	Symbol	Symbol Meaning
Min. Acceptable Shear Strength 200 lb/lin. in. 		Symbol indicates an electron beam seam weld with a minimum acceptable joint strength of 200 pounds per linear inch.
		Symbol indicates four 0.10-inch diameter electron beam spot welds located at random.
		Symbol indicates a fillet weld on the *other side* of joint and a flare-bevel-groove weld and a fillet weld on the *arrow side* of the joint.
		Symbol indicates gas tungsten-arc seam weld on *arrow side* of joint.
		Symbol indicates edge-flange weld on *arrow side* of joint and flare-V-groove weld on *other side* of joint.
		Symbol indicates melt-thru weld. By convention, this symbol is placed on the opposite side of the reference line from the corner-flange symbol.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Nondestructive Testing

Nondestructive testing (NDT) methods are used to examine a material, component, or assembly to measure thickness, determine structure, and/or search for surface or internal cracks, material flaws, or other nonhomogeneities. "Nondestructive" refers to a method of examination that does not affect or impair the use of the subject for its intended purpose. NDT is particularly useful in the welding process.

Nondestructive Testing Methods.—The primary NDT methods, introduced below, include ultrasonic, radiography, magnetic particle, penetrant, and eddy current. Excellent references, including books and standards, as well as certification and qualification programs, provide in-depth information on the principles and applications of each approach.

Ultrasonic Testing (UT): The workhorse of NDT, ultrasonic testing utilizes high-frequency sound waves. An electronic pulser/receiver drives a transducer, which sends ultrasonic sound waves through a test subject. These waves travel at the same distinct speed for any given material or medium that has matter (see Table 1). The time and distance that sound waves travel through a substance and echo off a reflecting surface can be analyzed to determine medium characteristics, measure thickness, and detect and evaluate flaws.

Table 1. Material Velocities

Medium	Velocity		Time/Distance Traveled		Distance/Time Traveled	
	in/second	cm/second	second/mile	second/km	mile/second	km/second
Air (68°F/20°C)	14,016	35,601	4.5	2.80		
Water (68°F/20°C)	57,992	147,300	1.09	0.68		
Steel 1020	232,008	589,300			3.7	5.95
Aluminum 6061-T6	247,992	629,900			3.9	6.27
Beryllium	507,000	1,287,780			8.0	12.87

The calibration of the instrumentation is critical and must be carried out with reference blocks of the same material and velocity. This allows accurate measurement of the time and distance that a sound wave has traveled to and from a reflecting surface. Whether measuring a backwall for thickness or locating the depth and size of discontinuities, the accuracy of test results is only as reliable as the calibration. For the plate shown in Fig. 1, calculation of the angle, thickness, and sound path distance are required; these are obtained with formulas frequently used for ultrasonic testing.

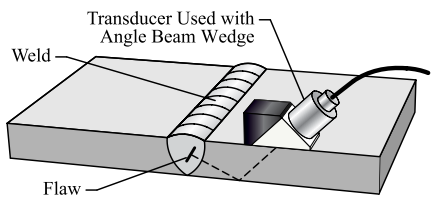


Fig. 1. Shear Wave Welding Inspection

Standard formulas use the refracted angle, thickness, and sound path distance to calculate the flaw depth and location. Other formulas are used to calculate acoustic impedance, nearfield, wavelength, and angular relationships. For instance, a formula developed from Snell's law is used to calculate incident and refracted angles.

Radiographic Testing (RT): Favored by many industries, due to the insight provided, radiographic testing is another method of detecting subsurface discontinuities and other material variations. It involves transmission of radiation through the material being tested, with the results recorded on photographic film or the digital equivalent. In general, areas of reduced thickness or lower-density material absorb less radiation, and more is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

transmitted to the film or digital sensors. As shown in Fig. 2, this produces relatively darker regions in the resulting imagery, as compared to thicker and/or denser areas.

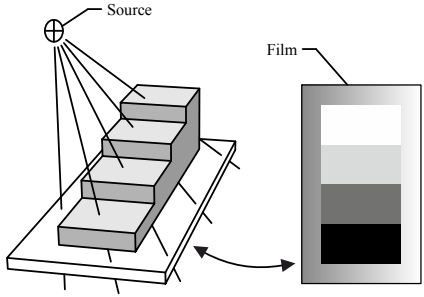


Fig. 2. Radiographic Absorption Effect on a Steel Step Wedge

RT can detect voids, such as porosity, slag, and tungsten inclusions, that indicate weld discontinuities. Critical flaws, including cracks and incomplete fusion, are more difficult to see unless the radiation source is oriented at a suitable direction with respect to the flaw. A key advantage of using radiographic film or digital media is that a permanent record of the testing can be stored.

A disadvantage of RT (unlike UT) is that it requires access to both sides of the material: one for the transmission source and the other for the film. Another issue is the danger posed to humans by exposure to radiation, particularly when using portable X-ray equipment involving isotopes such as iridium-192 and cobalt-60. Training in radiation safety is mandatory, along with safeguards to protect personnel in the test vicinity.

Magnetic Particle Testing (MT): Used to detect surface and near-surface discontinuities that are primarily linear in nature, magnetic particle testing is relatively easy to use, is low in cost, and provides immediate results. However, it is only effective on ferromagnetic materials.

Magnetization is achieved by passing an electric current through the material, or by using an external magnetizing coil; permanent magnets also may be used. Finely divided magnetic particles—either as a dry powder or suspended in liquid carrier—are applied to and removed from the part during magnetization. An example of longitudinal magnetization is shown below in Fig. 3a. If there are no discontinuities interrupting the flow of the current, the magnetic particles are easily removed. However, if there is an interruption in the flow of current, as shown in Fig. 3b, flux leakage occurs, creating new north and south poles, and the particles remain fixed at the discontinuity.

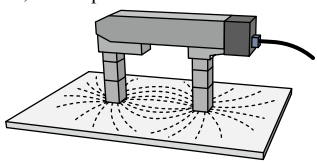


Fig. 3a. Magnetic Flux Lines

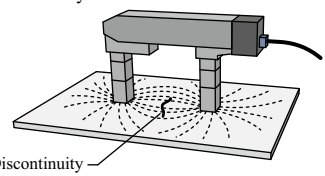


Fig. 3b. Interruption of Flow

Evaluation of test results is arguably the most critical stage of MT and requires distinguishing among false, nonrelevant, and relevant indications. Experience and familiarity with codes and specifications, application of proper techniques, stringent equipment performance checks, and adherence to the detailed and qualified procedure are essential.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Penetrant Testing (PT): Widely used to reveal surface discontinuities on numerous materials—all metals (including aluminum, titanium, magnesium, and other nonferrous compounds), glass, ceramics, and various composites—penetrant testing works on the principle of capillary attraction. This surface tension phenomenon permits liquids to be drawn into tight crevices, regardless of orientation or gravitational forces.

After the test area is cleaned, a dye concentrate is applied to and left on the material for a specific (dwell) time. When the penetrant is removed, the part usually is dried, and a developer is applied. The developer acts as an absorbent, drawing the remaining penetrant out of discontinuities open to the surface. Observing the test surface under appropriate lighting *immediately* after application of the developer assists proper interpretation of indications, though the final evaluation cannot be performed before the minimum developer dwell time has elapsed.

Utilizing the appropriate method as shown in Table 2, very large parts can be tested, or numerous small parts, such as turbine and compressor blades, can be processed simultaneously.

Table 2. Classification of Penetrant Materials and Processes

Type I	Fluorescent penetrants	May be used with all developers
Type II	Visible (color contrast) penetrants	Nonaqueous and aqueous developers
Method A	Water-washable visible dye penetrants	Water-washable fluorescent penetrants
Method B	Post-emulsified visible or fluorescent	Lipophilic emulsifier (oil-based)
Method C	Solvent removable	Visible or fluorescent penetrants
Method D	Post-emulsified fluorescent penetrants	Hydrophilic emulsifier (water-based)
Developers	Dry powder, nonaqueous	Water suspended, water soluble

Note: Sensitivity levels available are 1, 2, 3, and 4 (4 is the highest).

PT is versatile enough to be used in the field with or without electricity, is relatively low cost, and is easy to use. However, it is time-consuming and usually requires additional cleaning of the part after testing is complete.

Eddy Current Testing (ET): This sophisticated NDT method can be used to detect conductivity variations; discontinuities; material thickness, including plating or cladding on a base material; and spacing between conductive layers. Based on the principle of electromagnetism, ET uses the inductive properties of alternating current flowing through a primary coil to develop an alternating magnetic field. Interruption of this magnetic field causes an impedance change in the coil, recorded as a phase change by the instrumentation.

In theory, ET is much more complex; it was not until the early 1980s that explanatory material was produced that made this process understandable to laypersons. While ET is a high-speed process, it has a limited depth of penetration, depending on such factors as the test frequency, type of coil, and conductivity of materials being tested.

Other NDT Methods.—In addition to the five primary NDT methods discussed above, there are six other methods recognized by the American Society of Nondestructive Testing (ASNT), including visual testing. Each has unique advantages and limitations.

Visual Testing (VT): Being the first inspection, visual acuity examination generally is required for NDT certification. Many factors can affect VT, including cleanliness, brightness, glare, surface condition, shape, size, and temperature of an object. While the most important instrument in visual testing is the human eye, direct visual aids, such as light sources, magnifiers, cameras, and measuring devices are commonly used to verify conformance to industry codes, standards, and specification requirements.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thermal/Infrared Testing (IR): The laws of thermodynamics can be applied to the detection of many anomalies in metals, cements, and composites, as well as in the chemical industries. When there is a difference of temperature between two objects, or when an object changes temperature, the net flow energy is transferred from warmer areas to cooler areas or vice versa, until thermal equilibrium is reached. For example, IR can detect moisture that has intruded into the insulation of buildings and liquid CO_2 storage tanks.

Acoustic Emission Testing (AE): This NDT method is commonly used to detect and locate faults in mechanically loaded components or structures. When a material is subjected to mechanical loading or stress, such discontinuities release energy in the form of stress waves that can be detected by strategically placing sensors, which pick up these signals and convert the energy into voltage. The voltage is then electronically amplified and timing circuits are used to process the AE signal data and identify the fault.

Leak Testing (LT): Leak testing detects a flow of gas or liquid through the wall of a vessel, via a discontinuity (such as a hole, crack, or bad seal). Leaks require a pressure difference and travel from higher to lower pressure, whether from inside an object with greater pressure than the surrounding atmospheric pressure, or from the atmosphere to inside a vessel under a vacuum. Techniques for LT include mass spectrometer, halogen diode, pressure change, and bubble testing.

Neutron Radiography (NRT): This technique is often used with conventional radiographic testing. But neutrons interact with the nucleus of the atom, rather than with the electrons, and are absorbed by matter very differently than X-rays and gamma rays. NRT is ideal for imaging light elements with low atomic numbers (such as hydrogen, water, carbon, and plastics) and penetrating heavy elements with high atomic numbers (such as aluminum, lead, steel, and titanium). Thus, neutron radiographs can show organic materials or water, with many structural materials being nearly transparent.

Magnetic Flux Leakage (MFL): This method uses a direct current (DC) magnetizing field to create flux density to bring a material to near saturation. Surface or internal discontinuities, such as cracks, pits, and other defects, interrupt the flux field, causing it to leak beyond the test surface. The longitudinal and transverse magnetizing fields enable identification of defects in both directions. Sensors and configured inspection devices gather and transmit data for processing and analysis.

Nondestructive Testing Symbol Application.—The application of NDT symbols is covered in American National Standard ANSI/AWS A2.4-2012. This standard also includes the letters used to indicate each basic testing method: Acoustic Emission (AET), Eddy Current (ET), Leak (LT), Magnetic Particle (MT), Neutron Radiographic (NRT), Penetrant (PT), Proof (PRT), Radiographic (RT), Ultrasonic (UT), and Visual (VT).

Testing Symbol Elements: The testing symbol consists of the following elements: number of tests (N), length of section to be tested (L), reference line, test in field, test-all-around symbol, tail, arrow, and specification or other reference. The standard locations of the testing symbol elements are shown in Fig. 4.

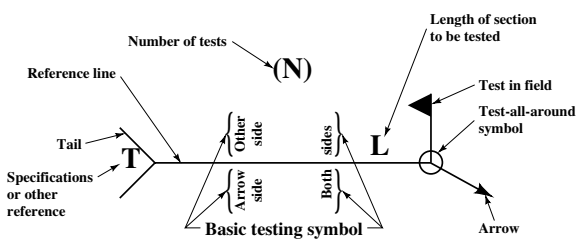


Fig. 4. Locations of Testing Symbol Elements

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The arrow connects the reference line to the part to be tested. The side of the part that the arrow points to is considered the *arrow side*. The side opposite the arrow side is considered the *other side*.

Location of Testing Symbol: Tests to be made on the arrow side of the part are indicated by positioning the testing symbol on the side of the reference line toward the reader (Fig. 5a).

Tests to be made on the other side of the part are indicated by the testing symbol being on the side of the reference line away from the reader (Fig. 5b).

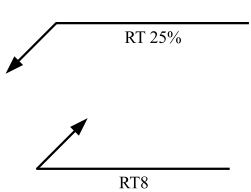


Fig. 5a. Position of Testing Symbols Indicates Tests to Be Made on the Arrow Side

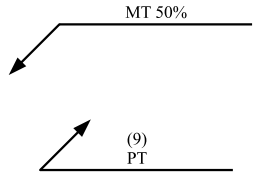


Fig. 5b. Position of Testing Symbols Indicates Tests to Be Made on the Other Side

To specify where only a certain length of a section is to be considered, the actual length or percentage of length to be tested is shown to the right of the test symbol. To specify the number of tests to be taken on a joint or part, the number of tests is shown in parentheses.

Tests to be made on both sides of the part are indicated by test symbols on both sides of the reference line. Where nondestructive symbols have no arrow or other significance, the testing symbols are centered in the reference line.

Direction of Radiation: When specified, the direction of radiation may be shown, in conjunction with the radiographic or neutron radiographic basic testing symbols, by means of a radiation symbol located on the drawing at the desired angle.

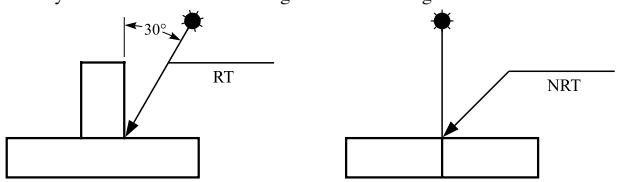


Fig. 6. Indicating Direction of Radiation

Tests Made All Around the Joint: To specify tests to be made all around a joint a circular test-all-around symbol is used.

Fig. 7. Specifying Circular Testing

Areas of Revolution: For NDT of areas of revolution, the area is indicated by the test-all-around symbol and appropriate dimensions.

Plane Areas: The area to be examined is enclosed by straight broken lines having a small circle around the angle apex at each change in direction.

Combination of Symbols: Various nondestructive basic testing symbols may be combined. Also, NDT and welding symbols may be combined.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

FINISHING OPERATIONS

Power Brush Finishing

Power brush finishing is a production method of metal finishing that employs wire, elastomer bonded wire, or non-metallic (cord, natural fiber or synthetic) brushing wheels in automatic machines, semi-automatic machines and portable air tools to smooth or roughen surfaces, remove surface oxidation and weld scale or remove burrs.

Description of Brushes.—Brushes work in the following ways: the wire points of a brush can be considered to act as individual culling tools so that the brush, in effect, is a multiple-tipped cutting tool. The fill material, as it is rotated, contacts the surface of the work and imparts an impact action which produces a coldworking effect. The type of finish produced depends upon the wheel material, wheel speed, and how the wheel is applied.

Brushes differ in the following ways: 1) fill material (wire—carbon steel, stainless steel; synthetic; Tampico; and cord); 2) length of fill material (or trim); and 3) the density of the fill material.

To aid in wheel selection and use, the accompanying table made up from information supplied by *The Osborn Manufacturing Company* lists the characteristics and major uses of brushing wheels.

Use of Brushes.—The brushes should be located so as to bring the full face of the brush in contact with the work. Full face contact is necessary to avoid grooving the brush. Operations that are set up with the brush face not in full contact with the work require some provision for dressing the brush face. When the tips of a brush, used with full face contact, become dull during use with subsequent loss of working clearance, reconditioning and resharpening is necessary. This is accomplished simply and efficiently by alternately reversing the direction of rotation during use.

Deburring and Producing a Radius on the Tooth Profile of Gears.—The brush employed for deburring and producing a radius on the tooth profile of gears is a short trim, dense, wire-fill radial brush. The brush should be set up so as to brush across the edge as shown in Fig. 1A. Line contact brushing, as shown in Fig. 1B should be avoided because the Crisis face will wear non-uniformly; and the wire points, being flexible, tend to flare to the side, thus minimizing the effectiveness of the brushing operation. When brushing gears, the brushes are spaced and contact the tooth profile on the center line of the gear as shown in Fig. 2. This facilitates using brush reversal to maintain the wire brushing points at their maximum cutting efficiency.

The setup for brushing spline bores differs from brushing gears in that the brushes are located off-center, as illustrated in Fig. 3. When helical gears are brushed, it is sometimes necessary to favor the acute side of the gear tooth to develop a generous radius prior to shaving. This can be accomplished by locating the brushes as shown in Fig. 4. Elastomer bonded wire-filled brushes are used for deburring fine pitch gears. These brushes remove the burrs without leaving any secondary roll. The use of bonded brushes is necessary when the gears are not shaved after hobbing or gear shaping.

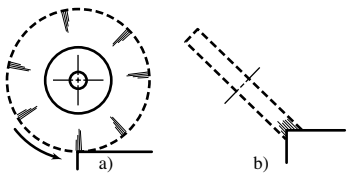


Fig. 1. Methods of Brushing an Edge:
a) Correct, b) Incorrect

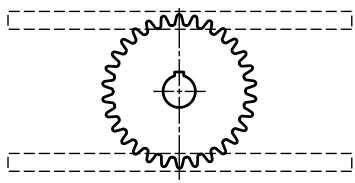


Fig. 2. Setup for Deburring Gears

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

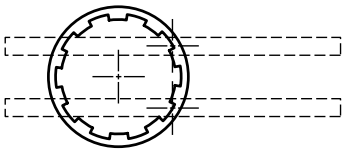


Fig. 3. Setup for Brushing Broached Splines

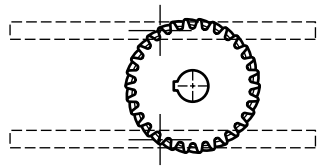


Fig. 4. Setup for Finishing Helical Gears

Adjustments for Eliminating Undesirable Conditions in Power Brush Finishing

Undesirable Condition	Possible Adjustments for Eliminating Condition
Brush works too slowly	(1) Decrease trim length and increase fill density. (2) Increase filament diameter. (3) Increase surface speed by increasing R.P.M. or outside diameter.
Brush works too fast	(1) Reduce filament diameter. (2) Reduce surface speed by reducing R.P.M. or outside diameter. (3) Reduce fill density. (4) Increase trim length.
Action of brush peens burr to adjacent surface	(1) Decrease trim length and increase fill density. (2) If wire brush tests indicate metal too ductile (burr is peened rather than removed), change to nonmetallic brush such as a treated Tampico brush used with a burring compound.
Finer or smoother finish required	(1) Decrease trim length and increase fill density. (2) Decrease filament diameter. (3) Try treated Tampico or cord brushes with suitable compounds at recommended speeds. (4) Use auxiliary buffing compound with brush.
Finish too smooth and lustrous	(1) Increase trim length. (2) Reduce brush fill density. (3) Reduce surface speed. (4) Increase filament diameter.
Brushing action not sufficiently uniform	(1) Devise hand-held or mechanical fixture or machine which will avoid irregular off-hand manipulation. (2) Increase trim length and decrease fill density.

Polishing and Buffing

The terms “polishing” and “buffing” are sometimes applied to similar classes of work in different plants, but according to approved usage of the terms, there is the following distinction: Polishing is any operation performed with wheels having abrasive glued to the working surfaces, whereas buffing is done with wheels having the abrasive applied loosely instead of imbedding it into glue; moreover, buffing is not so harsh an operation as ordinary polishing, and it is commonly utilized to obtain very fine surfaces having a “grainless finish.”

Polishing Wheels.—The principal materials from which polishing wheels are made are wood, leather, canvas, cotton cloth, plastics, felt, paper, sheepskin, impregnated rubber, canvas composition, and wool. Leather and canvas are the materials most commonly used in polishing wheel construction. Wooden wheels covered with material to which emery or some other abrasive is glued are employed extensively for polishing flat surfaces,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Characteristics and Applications of Brushes Used in Power Finishing

Brush Type	Description	Operating Speed Range, sfpm	Uses	Remarks
Radial, short trim dense wire fill	Develops very little impact action but maximum cutting action.	6500	Removal of burrs from gear teeth and sprockets. Produces blends and radii at juncture of intersecting surfaces.	Brush should be set up so as to brush across any edge. Reversal of rotation needed to maintain maximum cutting efficiency of brush points.
Radial, medium to long trim twisted knot wire fill	Normally used singly and on portable tools. Brush is versatile and provides high impact action.	7500-9500 for high speeds. 1200 for slow speeds.	For cleaning welds in the automotive and pipeline industries. Also for cleaning surfaces prior to painting, stripping rubber flash from molded products and cleaning mesh-wire conveyor belts.	Surface speed plays an important role since at low speeds the brush is very flexible and at high speeds it is extremely hard and fast cutting.
Radial, medium to long trim crimped wire fill	With the 4- to 8-inch diameter brush, part is hand held. With the 10- to 15-inch diameter brush, part is held by machine.	4500-6000	Serves as utility tool on bench grinder for removing feather grinding burrs, machining burrs, and for cleaning and producing a satin or matte finish.	Good for hand held parts as brush is soft enough to conform to irregular surfaces and hard-to-reach areas. Smaller diameter brushes are not recommended for high-production operations.
Radial, sectional, non-metallic fill (treated and untreated Tampico or cord)	Provides means for improving finish or improving surface for plating. Works best with grease base deburring or buffing compound.	5500-6500 7500 for polishing	For producing radii and improving surface finish. Removes the sharp peaks that fixed abrasives leave on a surface so that surface will accept a uniform plating. Polishing marks and draw marks can be successfully blended.	Brush is selective to an edge which means that it removes metal from an edge but not from adjoining surfaces. It will produce a very uniform radius without peening or rolling any secondary metal.
Radial, wide-face, nonmetallic fill (natural fibers or synthetics)	Can be used with flow-through mounting which facilitates feeding of cold water and hot alkaline solutions through brush face to prevent buildup.	750-1200 for cleaning steel. 600 when used with slurries	For cleaning steel. Used in electrolytic tinplate lines, continuous galvanizing and annealing lines, and cold reduction lines. Used to produce dull or matte-type finishes on stainless steel and synthetics.	Speeds above 3600 sfpm will not appreciably improve operation as brush wear will be excessive. Avoid excessive pressures. Ammeters should be installed in drive-motor circuit to indicate brushing pressure.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Characteristics and Applications of Brushes Used in Power Finishing *(Continued)*

Brush Type	Description	Operating Speed Range, sfpm	Uses	Remarks
Radial, wide face, metallic fill	This brush is made to customer's specifications. It is dynamically balanced at the speed at which it will operate.	2000-4000	Removes buildup of aluminum oxide from work rolls in aluminum mill. Removes lime or magnesium coatings from certain types of steel. Burnishes hot-dipped galvanized steel to produce a minimum spangled surface.	Each brush should have its own drive. An ammeter should be present in drive-motor circuit to measure brushing pressure. If strip is being brushed, a steel backup roll should be opposite the brush roll.
Radial, wide face, strip (interrupted brush face)	Performs cleaning operations that would cause a solid face brush to become loaded and unusable.	When cleaning conveyor belts, brush speed is 2 to 3 times that of conveyer belt.	Need for cleaning rubber and fabric conveyor belts of carry-back material which would normally foul snubber pulley and return idlers.	Designed for medium- to light-duty work. Brush face does not load.
Radial, Cup, Flared End, and Straight End, wire fill elastomer bonded	Extremely fast cutting with maximum operator safety. No loss of wire through fatigue. Always has uniform face.	3600-9000	For removing oxide weld scale, burrs, and insulation from wire.	Periodic reversing of brush direction will result in a brush life ten times greater than non-bonded wheels. Fast cutting action necessitates precise holding of part with respect to brush.
Cup, twisted knot wire fill	Fast cutting wheel used on portable tools to clean welds, scale, rust, and other oxides.	8000-10,000 4500-6500 for deburring and producing a radius around periphery of holes.	Used in shipyards and in structural steel industry. For cleaning outside diameter of pipe and removing burrs and producing radii on heat exchanger tube sheets and laminations for stator cores.	Fast acting brush cleans large areas economically. Setup time is short.
Radial, wire or treated Tampico or cord	For use with standard centerless grinders. Brush will not remove metal from a cylindrical surface. Parts must be ground to size before brushing.	…	For removing feather grinding burrs and improving surface finish. Parts of 24 microinches can be finished down to 15 to 10 microinches. Parts of 10 to 12 microinches can be finished down to 7 to 4 microinches.	Follows centerless grinding principles, except that accuracy in pressure and adjustment is not critical. A machine no longer acceptable for grinding can be used for brushing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

especially when good edges must be maintained. Cloth wheels are made in various ways; wheels having disks that are cemented together are very hard and used for rough, coarse work, whereas those having sewn disks are made of varying densities by sewing together a larger or smaller number of disks into sections and gluing them.

Wheels in which the disks are held together by thread or metal stitches and which are not stiffened by the use of glue usually require metal side plates to support the canvas disks. Muslin wheels are made from sewed or stapled buffs glued together, but the outer edges of a wheel frequently are left open or free from glue to provide an open face of any desired depth. Wool felt wheels are flexible and resilient, and the density may be varied by sewing two or more disks together and then cementing to form a wheel. Solid felt wheels are quite popular for fine finishing but have little value as general utility wheels. Paper wheels are made from strawboard paper disks and are cemented together under pressure to form a very hard wheel for rough work. Softer wheels are similarly made from felt paper. The "compress" canvas wheel has a cushion of polishing material formed by pieces of leather, canvas, or felt, that are held in a crosswise radial position by two side plates attached to the wheel hub. This cushion of polishing material may be varied in density to suit the requirements; it may be readily shaped to conform to the curvature of the work and this shape can be maintained. Sheepskin polishing wheels and paper wheels are little used.

Polishing Operations and Abrasives.—Polishing operations on such parts as chisels, hammers, screwdrivers, wrenches, and similar parts that are given a fine finish but are not plated, usually require four operations, which are "roughing," "dry fining," "greasing," and "coloring." Roughing is frequently regarded as a solid grinding wheel job. Sometimes there are two steps to the greasing operation—rough and fine greasing. For some hardware, such as the cheaper screwdrivers, wrenches, etc., the operations of roughing and dry fining are considered sufficient. For knife blades and cutlery, the roughing operation is performed with solid grinding wheels and the polishing is known as fine or blue glazing, but these terms are never used when referring to the polishing of hardware parts, plumbers' supplies, etc. A term used in finishing German silver, white metal, and similar materials is "sand-buffing," which, in distinction from the ordinary buffing operation that is used only to produce a very high finish, actually removes considerable metal, as in rough polishing or flexible grinding. For sand-buffing, pumice and other abrasive powders are loosely applied.

Aluminum oxide abrasives are widely used for polishing high-tensile-strength metals such as carbon and alloy steels, tough iron, and nonferrous alloys. Silicon carbide abrasives are recommended for hard, brittle substances such as gray iron, cemented carbide tools, and materials of low tensile strength such as brass, aluminum, and copper.

Buffing Wheels.—Buffing wheels are manufactured from disks (either whole or pieced) of bleached or unbleached cotton or woolen cloth, and they are used as the agent for carrying abrasive powders, such as tripoli, crocus, rouge, lime, etc., which are mixed with waxes or greases as a bond. There are two main classes of buffs, one of which is known as the "pieced-sewed" buffs, and is made from various weaves and weights of cloth. The other is the "full-disk" buffs, which are made from specially woven material. Bleached cloth is harder and stiffer than unbleached cloth, and is used for the faster cutting buffs. Coarsely woven unbleached cloth is recommended for highly colored work on soft metals, and the finer woven unbleached cloths are better adapted for harder metals. When working at the usual speed, a stiff buff is not suitable for "cutting down" soft metal or for light plated ware, but is used on harder metals and for heavy nickel-plated articles.

Speed of Polishing Wheels.—The proper speed for polishing is governed to some extent by the nature of the work, but for ordinary operations, the polishing wheel should have a peripheral speed of about 7500 ft/min (2286 m/min). If run at a lower speed, the work tends to tear the polishing material from the wheel too readily, and the work is not as good in quality. Muslin, felt, or leather polishing wheels having wood or iron centers should be run at peripheral speeds varying from 300 to 7000 ft/min (91–2133 m/min). It is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

rarely necessary to exceed 6000 ft/min (1829 m/min), and for most purposes, 4000 ft/min (1219 m/min) is sufficient. If the wheels are kept in good condition, in perfect balance, and are suitably mounted on substantial buffing lathes, they can be used safely at speeds within the limits given. However, manufacturers' recommendations concerning wheel speeds should be followed, where they apply.

Grain Numbers of Emery.—The numbers commonly used in designating the different grains of emery, corundum, and other abrasives are 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, 36, 40, 46, 54, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 120, 150, 180, and 200, ranging from coarse to fine, respectively. These numbers represent the number of meshes per linear inch in the grading sieve. An abrasive finer than No. 200 is known as "flour" and the degree of fineness is designated by the letters CF, F, FF, FFF, FFFF, and PCF or SF, ranging from coarse to fine. The methods of grading flour-emery adopted by different manufacturers do not exactly agree, the letters differing somewhat for the finer grades. Again, manufacturers' recommendations should be followed.

Grades of Emery Cloth.—The coarseness of emery cloth is indicated by letters and numbers corresponding to the grain number of the loose emery used in the manufacture of the cloth. The letters and numbers for grits ranging from fine to coarse are as follows: FF, F, 120, 100, 90, 80, 70, 60, 54, 46, and 40. For large work roughly filed, use coarse cloth such as numbers 46 or 54, and then finer grades to obtain the required polish. If the work has been carefully filed, a good polish can be obtained with numbers 60 and 90 cloth, and a brilliant polish can be achieved by finishing with number 120 and flour-emery.

Mixture for Cementing Emery Cloth to a Lapping Wheel.—Many proprietary adhesives are available for application of emery cloth to the periphery of a buffing or lapping wheel, and generally are supplied with application instructions. In the absence of such instructions, clean the wheel thoroughly before applying the adhesive, and then rub the emery cloth down so as to exclude all air from between the surface of the wheel and the cloth.

Etching and Etching Fluids

Etching Fluids for Different Metals.—A common method of etching names or simple designs upon steel is to apply a thin, even coating of beeswax or some similar substance which will resist acid; then mark the required lines or letters in the wax with a sharp-pointed scriber, thus exposing the steel (where the wax has been removed by the scriber point) to the action of an acid, which is finally applied. To apply a very thin coating of beeswax, place the latter in a silk cloth, warm the piece to be etched, and tub the pad over it. Regular coach varnish is also used instead of wax, as a "resist."

An etching fluid ordinarily used for carbon steel consists of nitric acid, 1 part; water, 4 parts. It may be necessary to vary the amount of water, as the exact proportion depends upon the carbon content and whether the steel is hard or soft. For hard steel, use nitric acid, 2 parts; acetic acid, 1 part. For high-speed steel, nickel or brass, use nitro-hydrochloric acid (nitric, 1 part; hydrochloric, 4 parts). For high-speed steel it is sometimes better to add a little more nitric acid. For etching bronze, use nitric acid, 100 parts; muriatic acid, 5 parts. For brass, nitric acid, 16 parts; water, 160 parts. Dissolve 6 parts potassium chlorate in 100 parts of water; then mix the two solutions and apply.

A fluid which may be used either for producing a frosted effect or for deep etching (depending upon the time it is allowed to act) is composed of 1 ounce sulphate of copper (blue vitriol); $\frac{1}{4}$ ounce alum; $\frac{1}{2}$ teaspoonful of salt; 1 gill of vinegar, and 20 drops of nitric acid. For aluminum, use a solution composed of alcohol, 4 ounces; acetic acid, 6 ounces; antimony chloride, 4 ounces; water, 40 ounces (1 ounce = 0.02957 liter).

Various acid-resisting materials are used for covering the surfaces of steel rules etc., prior to marking off the lines on a graduating machine. When the graduation lines are fine and very closely spaced, as on machinists' scales which are divided into hundredths or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

sixty-fourths, it is very important to use a thin resist that will cling to the metal and prevent any under-cutting of the acid: the resist should also enable fine lines to be drawn without tearing or crumbling as the tool passes through it. One resist that has been extensively used is composed of about 50 percent of asphaltum, 25 percent of beeswax, and, in addition, a small percentage of Burgundy pitch, black pitch, and turpentine. A thin covering of this resisting material is applied to the clean polished surface to be graduated and, after it is dry, the work is ready for the graduating machine. For some classes of work, paraffin is used for protecting the surface surrounding the graduation lines which are to be etched. The method of application consists in melting the paraffin and raising its temperature high enough so that it will flow freely; then the work is held at a slight angle and the paraffin is poured on its upper surface. The melted paraffin forms a thin protective coating.

Conversion Coatings and the Coloring of Metals

Conversion Coatings.—Conversion coatings are thin, adherent chemical compounds that are produced on metallic surfaces by chemical or electrochemical treatment. These coatings are insoluble, passive, and protective, and are divided into two basic systems: oxides or mixtures of oxides with other compounds, usually chromates or phosphates. Conversion coatings are used for corrosion protection, as an adherent paint base; and for decorative purposes because of their inherent color and because they can absorb dyes and colored sealants.

Conversion coatings are produced in three or four steps. Pretreatment often involves mechanical surface preparation followed by decreasing and/or chemical or electrochemical cleaning or etching. Then thermal, chemical, or electrochemical surface conversion processes take place in acid or alkaline solutions applied by immersion spraying, or brushing. A post treatment follows, which includes rinsing and drying, and may also include sealing or dyeing. If coloring is the main purpose of the coating, then oiling, waxing, or lacquering may be required.

Passivation of Copper.—The blue-green patina that forms on copper alloys during atmospheric exposure is a passivated film; i.e., it prevents corrosion. This patina may be produced artificially or its growth may be accelerated by a solution of ammonium sulfate, 6 pounds (2.7 kg); copper sulfate, 3 ounces (85 g); ammonia (technical grade, 0.90 specific gravity), 1.34 fluid ounces (39.6 cc); and water, 6.5 gallons (24.6 liters). This solution is applied as a fine spray to a chemically cleaned surface and is allowed to dry between each of five or six applications. In about 6 hours a patina somewhat bluer than natural begins to develop and continues after exposure to weathering.

Small copper parts can be coated with a passivated film by immersion in or brushing with a solution consisting of the following weight proportions: copper, 30; nitric acid, concentrated, 60; acetic acid (6%), 600; ammonium chloride, 11; and ammonium hydroxide (technical grade, 0.90 specific gravity), 20. To prepare the solution, the copper is dissolved in the nitric acid before the remaining chemicals are added, and the solution is allowed to stand for several days before use. A coating of linseed oil is applied to the treated parts.

Coloring of Copper Alloys.—Metals are colored to enhance their appearance, to produce an undercoat for an organic finish, or to reduce light reflection. Copper alloys can be treated to produce a variety of colors, with the final color depending on the base metal composition, the coloring solution's composition, the immersion time, and the operator's skill. Cleaning is an important part of the pretreatment; nitric and sulfuric acid solutions are used to remove oxides and to activate the surface.

The following solutions are used to color alloys that contain 85 percent or more of copper. A dark red color is produced by immersing the parts in molten potassium nitrate, at 1200–1300°F (649–704°C), for up to 20 seconds, followed by a hot water quench. The parts must then be lacquered. A steel black color can be obtained by immersing the parts in a 180°F (82°C) solution of arsenious oxide (white arsenic), 4 ounces (113 g); hydrochloric acid

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(1.16 specific gravity), 8 fluid ounces (23.6 cc); and water, 1 gallon (3.9 liters). The parts are immersed until a uniform color is obtained; they are scratch brushed while wet, and then dried and lacquered. A light brown color is obtained using a room-temperature solution of barium sufate, 0.5 ounce (14g); ammonium carbonate, 0.25 ounce (7g); and water, 1 gallon (3.8 liters).

The following solutions are used to color alloys that contain less than 85 percent copper. To color brass black, parts are placed in an oblique tumbling barrel made of stainless steel and covered with 3 to 5 gallons (11.2 to 19.8 liters) of water. Three ounces (85 g) of copper sulfate and 6 ounces (170 g) of sodium thiosulfate are dissolved in warm water and added to the barrel's contents. After tumbling for 15 to 30 minutes to obtain the finish, the solution is drained from the barrel, and the parts are washed thoroughly in clean water, dried in sawdust or air-blasted and, if necessary, lacquered. To produce a blue-black color, the parts are immersed in a 130–175°F (54–79°C) solution of copper carbonate 1 pound (450 g); ammonium hydroxide (0.89 specific gravity), 1 quart (940 cc); and water, 3 quarts. Excess copper carbonate should be present. The proper color is obtained in 1 minute. To color brass a hardware green, immerse the parts in a 160°F (71°C) solution of ferric nitrate, 1 ounce (28 g); sodium thiosulfate, 6 ounces; and water, 1 gallon. To color brass a light brown, immerse the parts in a 195–212°F (91–100°C) solution of potassium chlorate, 5.5 ounces; nickel sulfate, 2.75 ounces (170 g); copper sulfate, 24 ounces (680 g); and water, 1 gallon (3.8 liters).

Post treatment: The treated parts should be scratch brushed to remove any excess or loose deposits. A contrast of colors may be obtained by brushing with a slurry of fine pumice, hand nabbing with an abrasive paste, mass finishing, or buffing to remove the color from the highlights. In order to prolong the life of parts used for outdoor decorative purposes, a clear lacquer should be applied. Parts intended for indoor purposes are often used without additional protection.

Coloring of Iron and Steel.—Thin black oxide coatings are applied to steel by immersing the parts to be coated in a boiling solution of sodium hydroxide and mixtures of nitrates and nitrites. These coatings serve as paint bases and, in some cases, as final finishes. When the coatings are impregnated with oil or wax, they furnish fairly good corrosion resistance. These finishes are relatively inexpensive compared to other coatings.

Phosphate Coatings are applied to iron and steel parts by reacting them with a dilute solution of phosphoric acid and other chemicals. The surface of the metal is converted into an integral, mildly protective layer of insoluble crystalline phosphate. Small items are coated in tumbling barrels; large items are spray coated on conveyors.

The three types of phosphate coatings in general use are zinc, iron, and manganese. Zinc phosphate coatings vary from light to dark gray. The color depends on the carbon content and pretreatment of the steel's surface, as well as the composition of the solution. Zinc phosphate coatings are generally used as a base for paint or oil, as an aid in cold-working, for increased wear resistance, or for rustproofing. Iron phosphate coatings were the first type to be used; they produce dark gray coatings and their chief application is as a paint base. Manganese phosphate coatings are usually dark gray; however, since they are used almost exclusively as an oil base, for break in and to prevent galling, they become black in appearance. In general, stainless steels and certain alloy steels cannot be phosphated. Most cast irons and alloy steels accept coating with various degrees of difficulty depending on alloy content.

Anodizing Aluminum Alloys.—In the anodizing process, the aluminum object to be treated is immersed as the anode in an acid electrolyte, and a direct current is applied. Oxidation of the surface occurs, producing a greatly thickened, hard, porous film of aluminum oxide. The object is then immersed in boiling water to seal the porosity and render the film impermeable. Before sealing, the film can be colored by impregnation with dyes or pigments. Special electrolytes may also be used to produce colored anodic films directly

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

in the anodizing bath. The anodic coatings are used primarily for corrosion protection and abrasion resistance, and as a paint base.

The three principal types of anodizing processes are: chromic, in which the active agent is chromic acid; sulfuric, in which the active agent is sulfuric acid, and hard anodizing, in which sulfuric acid is used by itself or with additives in a low-temperature electrolyte bath. Most of the anodic coatings range in thickness from 0.2 to 0.7 mil. The hard anodizing process can produce coatings up to 2 mils. The chromic acid coating is less brittle than the sulfuric, and, since the chromic electrolyte does not attack aluminum, it does not present a corrosion problem when it is trapped in crevices. The chromic coating is less resistant to abrasion than the sulfuric, but it cannot be used with alloys containing more than 5 percent copper due to corrosion of the base metal.

Chemical Conversion Coatings for Aluminum: Chemical conversion coatings for aluminum alloys are adherent surface layers of low volubility oxide, phosphate, or chromate compounds produced by the reaction of the metal surface with suitable reagents. The conversion coatings are much thinner and softer than anodic coatings but they are less expensive and serve as an excellent paint base.

Magnesium Alloys.—Chemical treatment of magnesium alloys is used to provide a paint base and to improve corrosion resistance. The popular conversion "dip" coatings are chrome pickle and dichromate treatments, and they are very thin. Anodic coatings are thicker and harder, and, after sealing, give the same protection against corrosion, although painting is still desirable.

Titanium Alloys.—Chemical conversion coatings are used on titanium alloys to improve lubricity by acting as a base for the retention of lubricants. The coatings are applied by immersion, spraying, or brushing. A popular coating bath is an aqueous solution of phosphates, fluorides, and hydrofluoric acid. The coating is composed primarily of titanium and potassium fluorides and phosphates.

Plating

Surface Coatings.—The following is a list of military plating and coating specifications.

Anodize (Chromic and Sulfuric), MIL-A-8625F: Conventional Types I, IB, and II anodic coatings are intended to improve surface corrosion protection under severe conditions or as a base for paint systems. Coatings can be colored with a large variety of dyes and pigments. Class 1 is non-dyed; Class 2 dyed. Color is to be specified on the contract. Prior to dying or sealing, coatings shall meet the weight requirements.

Type I and IB coatings should be used on fatigue critical components (due to thinness of coating). Type I unless otherwise specified shall not be applied to aluminum alloys with over 5% copper or 7% silicon or total alloying constituents over 7.5%. Type IC is a mineral or mixed mineral/organic acid that anodizes. It provides a non-chromate alternative for Type I and IB coatings where corrosion resistance, paint adhesion, and fatigue resistance are required. Type IIB is a thin sulfuric anodizing coating for use as non-chromate alternatives for Type I and IB coatings where corrosion resistance, paint adhesion, and fatigue resistance are required. Be sure to specify the class of anodic coating and any special sealing requirements.

Types I, IB, IC, and IIB shall have a thickness between 0.00002 and 0.0007 inch (0.5 and 17.78 μm). Type II shall be between 0.0007 and 0.0010 inch (17.8 and 25.4 μm).

Black Chrome, MIL-C-14538C: A hard, non-reflective, abrasion, heat and corrosion resistant coating approximately 0.0002 in. (5.08 μm) thick. Provides limited corrosion protection, but added protection can be obtained by specifying underplate such as nickel. Color is a dull dark gray, approaching black and may be waxed or oiled to darken.

Black chromium has poor throwing power, and conforming anodes are necessary for intricate shapes. Apply coating after heat treating and all mechanical operations are performed. Steel parts with hardness in excess of 40 RC (Rockwell C scale) shall be stress

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

relieved prior to plating by baking one hour or more, 300–500°F (149–260°C) and baked after plating, 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) for 3 hours.

Black Oxide Coating, MIL-C-13924C: A uniform, mostly decorative black coating for ferrous metals used to decrease light reflection. Only very limited corrosion protection under mild corrosion conditions. Black oxide coatings should normally be given a supplementary treatment.

Used for moving parts that cannot tolerate the dimensional change of a more corrosion resistant finish. Use alkaline oxidizing for wrought iron, cast and malleable irons, plain carbon, low alloy steel and corrosion resistant steel alloys. Alkaline-chromite oxidizing may be used on certain corrosion resistant steel alloys tempered at less than 900°F (482°C). Salt oxidizing is suitable for corrosion resistant steel alloys that are tempered at 900°F or higher.

Cadmium, QQ-P-416F: Cadmium plating is required to be smooth, adherent, uniform in appearance, free from blisters, pits, nodules, burning, and other defects when examined visually without magnification. Unless otherwise specified in the engineering or procurement documentation, the use of brightening agents in the plating solution to modify luster is prohibited on components with a specified heat treatment of 180 ksi (1241 MPa) minimum tensile strength (or 40 RC) and higher. Either a bright (not caused by brightening agents) or dull luster shall be acceptable. Baking on Types II and III shall be done prior to application of supplementary coatings. For Classes 1, 2, and 3 the minimum thicknesses shall be 0.0005, 0.0003, and 0.0002 inch (12.7, 7.62, and 5.08 µm) respectively.

Type I is to be used as plated. Types II and III require supplementary chromate and phosphate treatment respectively. Chromate treatment required for type II may be colored iridescent bronze to brown including olive drab, yellow and forest green. Type II is recommended for corrosion resistance. Type III is used as a paint base and is excellent for plating stainless steels that are to be used in conjunction with aluminum to prevent galvanic corrosion. For Types II and III the minimum cadmium thickness requirement shall be met after the supplementary treatment.

Chemical Films, MIL-C-5541E: The materials that qualify produce coatings that range in color from clear to iridescent yellow or brown. Inspection difficulties may arise with clear coatings because of their invisibility.

Class 1A chemical conversion coatings are intended to provide corrosion prevention when left unpainted as well as to improve adhesion of paint finish systems on aluminum and aluminum alloys. May be used on tanks, tubings, and component structures where paint finishes are not required for the exterior surfaces but are required for the interior surfaces.

Class 3 chemical conversion coatings are intended for use as a corrosive film for electrical and electronic applications where lower resistant contacts are required. The primary difference between Class 1A and Class 3 coating is thickness.

Chemical Finish: Black, MIL-F-495E: A uniform black corrosion retardant for copper. Coating has no abrasion resistance. Used to blacken color and reduce gloss on copper-alloy surfaces other than food service and water supply items. Also used as a base for subsequent coatings such as lacquer, varnish, oil, and wax.

Chrome, QQ-C-320B: Has excellent hardness, wear resistance, and erosion resistance. In addition chrome has a low coefficient of friction, is resistant to heat, and can be rendered porous for lubrication purposes.

Types I and II have bright and satin appearances respectively.

Class 1 is used as plating for corrosion protection and Class 2, for engineering plating. Class 1 and 2 both shall have a minimum thickness of 0.00001 in. (0.25 µm) on all visible surfaces. If thickness is not specified use 0.002 in (50.8 µm).

Class 2a will be plated to specified dimensions or processed to specified dimensions after plating. Class 2b will be used on parts below 40 RC and subject to static loads or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

designed for limited life under dynamic loads. Class 2c will be used on parts below 40 RC and designed for unlimited life under dynamic loads. Class 2d parts have hardness of 40 RC or above, which are subject to static loads or designed for unlimited life under dynamic loads. Class 2e parts have hardness of 40 RC or above, which are designed for unlimited life under dynamic loads.

All coated steel parts having a hardness of 36 RC and higher shall be baked at a minimum of 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) per the following conditions.With a tensile strength of 160–180 ksi (1103–1241 MPa), the time at temperature will be 3 hr.; at 181–220 ksi (1248–1517 MPa), the time will be 8 hr.; and at 221 ksi (1524 MPa) and above, the time will be 12 hr.

Copper, MIL-C-14550B: Has good corrosion resistance when used as an undercoat. A number of copper processes are available, each designed for a specific purpose such as, to improve brightness (to eliminate the need for buffing), high speed (for electro-forming), and fine grain (to prevent case-hardening).

All steel parts having a hardness of 35 RC and higher shall be baked at 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) for 24 hours, within 4 hours after plating to provide hydrogen embrittlement relief. Plated springs and other parts subject to flexure shall not be flexed prior to baking operations.

Class 0 will have a thickness 0.001 - 0.005 in. (25.4–127 µm) and is used for heat-treatment stop-off; Class 1 is 0.001 in. (25.4 µm) and is used to provide carburizing shield, also for plated through printed circuit boards. Class 2 is 0.0005 in. (12.7 µm) thick and is used as an undercoat for nickel and other platings. Class 3 is 0.0002 in. (5.08 µm) thick and is used to prevent basis metal migration into tin (prevents poisoning solderability). Class 4 is 0.0001 in. (2.54 µm) thick.

Tin Lead, MIL-P-81728A: It has excellent solderability. Either a matte or bright luster is acceptable. For electronics components, use only parts with a matte or flow brightened finish.

For brightened electronic components, the maximum thickness will be 0.0003 in. (7.62 µm) Tin 50 to 70% by weight and with a lead remainder, 0.0003-0.0005 in (7.62–12.7 µm).

Magnesium Process, MIL-M-3171C: Process #1-A chrome pickle treatment for magnesium. Color varies from matte gray to yellow-red. Has only fair corrosion resistance (< 24 hours, 20 percent salt spray resistance).

#7-A dichromate treatment for magnesium. Color varies from light brown to gray depending on alloy. Only fair corrosion resistance (< 24 hours, 20 percent salt spray resistance).

#9-A galvanic anodize treatment for magnesium. Produces a dark brown to black coating. Designed to give a protective film on alloys which do not react to Dow No. 7 treatment. Only fair corrosion resistance (< 24 hours, 20 percent salt spray resistance).

Type/Class	Thickness (inch)	Comments
Type 1	Removes metal. (approx. 0.0006 for wrought, less for die castings.) No dimensional change	Used for protecting magnesium during shipment, storage and machining. Can be used as a paint base. NOTE: Must remove Type I coating before applying Type III and Type IV treatments.
Type III	…	*Note:* precleaning and pickling may result in dimensional changes due to metal loss.
Type IV	No dimensional change	Can be used as a paint base, and is applicable to all magnesium alloys. Used where optical properties (black) are required on close tolerance parts. NOTE: Precleaning and pickling may result in dimensional changes due to metal loss.

Magnesium Anodic Treatment, MIL-M-45202C: The HAE anodic finish is probably the hardest coating currently available for magnesium. It exhibits stability at high temperatures and has good dielectric strength. It serves as an excellent paint base. It requires resin seal or paint for maximum corrosion protection.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coatings range from thin clear to light gray-green, to thick dark-green coatings. The clear coatings are used as a base for subsequent clear lacquers or paints to produce a final appearance similar to clear anodizing on aluminum. The light gray-green coatings are used in most applications which are to be painted. The thick, dark-green coating offers the best combination of abrasion resistance, protective value and paint base characteristics.

Type/Class	Typical Thickness	Comments
Type I, Light coating.		
Class A	0.2 mil	Tan coating (HAE)
Grade 1	…	Without post treatment (dyed)
Grade 2	…	With biflouride-dichromate post treatment
Class C	0.3 mil	Light green coating (Dow #17)
Type II, Heavy coating		
Class A	1.5 mil	Hard brown coating (HAE)
Grade 1	…	Without post treatment
Grade 3	…	With biflouride-dichromate post treatment
Grade 4	…	With biflouride-dichromate post treatment including moist heat aging
Grade 5		With double application of biflouride-dichromate post treatment including moist heat aging.
Class D	1.2 mil	Dark green coating (Dow #17)

Electroless Nickel, AMS 2404C, AMS 2405B, AMS 2433B: Is typically used as a coating to provide a hard-ductile, wear-resistant, and corrosion-resistant surface for operation in service up to 1000F, to provide uniform build-up on complex shapes.

AMS 2404C, is deposited directly on the basis metal without a flash coating of other metal, unless otherwise specified. AMS 2405B, is deposited directly on the basis metal except where parts fabricated from corrosion resistant steels or alloys where a "strike" coating of nickel or other suitable metal is required, unless otherwise specified. AMS 2433B, is a type of electroless nickel typically used to enhance the solderability of surfaces, but usage is not limited to such applications. Generally, the plate shall be placed directly on the basis metal. However, aluminum alloys shall be zinc immersion coated per ASTM B253 followed by copper flash; corrosion resistant steels and nickel and cobalt alloys or other basis metals may use a nickel or copper flash undercoat when the purchaser permits.

Electroless Nickel Preparation: Parts having a hardness higher than 40 RC and have been machined or ground after heat treatment shall be suitably stress-relieved before cleaning and plating.

After treatment, parts having a hardness of 33 RC and over shall be heated to 375 ± 15°F (190.5 ± 8.5°C) for 3 hours. If such treatment is injurious to the parts, bake at 275 ±15°F (135 ± 8.5°C) for 4 hours.

Electroless Nickel, Low-Phosphorous, Note: If permitted by drawing, the maximum hardness and wear resistance are obtained by heating parts for 30–60 minutes, preferably in an inert atmosphere, at 750°F ± 15°F (399 ± 8°C) except aluminum parts shall be baked at 450 ± 15°F (231.5 ± 8.5°C) for 4 hours. If such heating is not specified, bake at 375 ± 15°F (190.5 ± 8.5°C) for 3 hours. If this treatment is injurious to parts or assemblies, bake at 275°F (135°C) for 5 hours.

Plating: nickel-thallium-boron (Electroless Deposition) and nickel-boron (Electroless Deposition)

Preparation: All fabrication-type operations shall be completed.

Post-treatment: Cold-worked or heat-treated parts and aluminum alloys and other parts requiring special thermal treatment shall be post treated as agreed upon by purchaser and vendor. Other plated parts within 4 hours after plating shall be heat treated for 90 ± 10 minutes at 675°F ± 15°F (357.5 ± 8.5°C).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Electropolishing, ASTM B912-02 (2018): This process electrolytically removes or diminishes scratches, burrs, and unwanted sharp edges from most metals. Electropolishing can be expected to reduce roughness average (Ra) by approximately 10 to 35 percent, with 50 percent improvement possible in some cases. By eliminating microscopic defects and impurities, electropolishing can improve both corrosion resistance and fatigue life of parts.

In addition, this process passivates exposed surfaces, with results superior to chemical passivation methods. Finishes from satin to mirror-bright are produced by controlling time, temperature, or both. Stainless steels are the most commonly electropolished materials, but many metals are good candidates for the process.

Material thickness loss during electropolishing typically is 0.0002–0.0007 in. (5–18 μm) but may be as much as 0.003 inch (76 μm). The amount removed depends on desired surface improvement and usually can be controlled to within 0.0001 in. (2.5 μm). Parts with tight tolerances can be electropolished if process parameters are well planned and controlled.

Parts to be electropolished must be placed on racks. Features such as deep bores may require additional cathodes, and complex parts may need custom process tooling.

Gold, MIL-G-45204C: Has a yellow to orange color depending on the proprietary process used. Will range from matte to bright finish depending on basis metal. It has good corrosive resistance and a high tarnish resistance. It provides a low contact resistance, is a good conductor of electricity, and has excellent solderability. If the hardness grade for the gold coating is not specified, Type I shall be furnished at a hardness of Grade A, and Type II furnished at a hardness of Grade C.

For soldering, a thin pure soft gold coating is preferred. A minimum and maximum thickness 0.00005 and 0.00010 inch (1.27 and 2.54 μm), respectively, shall be plated.

Unless otherwise specified, gold over silver underplate combinations shall be excluded from electronics hardware. Silver or copper plus silver may not be used as an underplate unless required by the item specification. When gold is applied to brass bronze or beryllium copper, or a copper plate or strike, an antidiffusion underplate such as nickel shall be applied.

Type I is 99.7% gold minimum (Grades A, B, or C); Type II is 99.0% (Grades B, C, or D); and Type III is 99.9% (Grade A only).

Grade A is 90 Knoop maximum; Grade B is 91-129 Knoop; Grade C is 130–200 Knoop; and Grade D is 201 Knoop and over.

Class 00 has a thickness of 0.00002 inch (0.5 μm) minimum; Class 0, 0.00003 inch (0.76 μm); Class 1, 0.00005 inch (1.3 μm); Class 2, 0.0001 inch (2.5 μm); Class 3, 0.0002 inch (5 μm); Class 4, 0.0003 inch (7.6 μm); Class 5, 0.0005 inch (12.7 μm); and Class 6, 0.0015 inch (38.1 μm).

Hard Anodize, MIL-A-8625F: The color will vary from light tan to black depending on alloy and thickness. Can be dyed in darker colors depending on the thickness. Coating penetrates base metal as much as builds up on the surface. The term thickness includes both the buildup and penetration. It provides a very hard ceramic type coating. Abrasion resistance will vary with alloy and thickness of coating. Has good dielectric properties.

Do not seal coatings where the main function is to obtain maximum abrasion or wear resistance. When used for exterior applications requiring corrosion resistance but permitting reduced abrasion, the coating shall be sealed (boiling deionized water or hot 5% sodium dichromate solution, or other suitable chemical solutions).

Type III will have a thickness specified on the contract or applicable drawing. If not specified use a nominal thickness of 0.002 inch (50.8 μm). Hard coatings may vary in thickness by 0.0005–0.0045 inch (12.7–114.3 μm).

Class 1 shall not be dyed or pigmented. Class 2 shall be dyed and the color specified on the contract. The process can be controlled to very close thickness tolerances. Where maximum serviceability or special properties are required, consult metal finisher for best alloy choice. Thick coatings, those over 0.004 inch (101 μm), will tend to break down sharp edges. Can be used as an electrical insulation coating. "Flash" hard anodize may be used instead of conventional anodize for corrosion resistance and may be more economical in conjunction with other hard anodized areas.

Lubrication, Solid Film MIL-L-46010D: The Military Plating Specification establishes the requirements for three types of heat cured solid film lubricants that are intended to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

reduce wear and prevent galling, corrosion, and seizure of metals. For use on aluminum, copper, steel, stainless steel, titanium, and chromium, and nickel bearing surfaces.

Types I, II, and III have a thicknesses of 0.008 - 0.013 mm. No single reading less than 0.005 mm or greater than 0.018 mm.

Type I has a curing temperature of 150 ± 15°C and an endurance life of 250 minutes; Type II, 204 ± 15°C and 450 minutes; and Type III is a low volatile organic compound (VOC) content lubricant with cure cycles of 150 ± 15°C for 2 hours, or 204 ± 15°C for 1 hour with an endurance life of 450 minutes. Color 1 has a natural product color and Color 2 has a black color.

Nickel, QQ-N-290A: There is a nickel finish for almost any need. Nickel can be deposited soft, hard-dull, or bright, depending on process used and conditions employed in plating. Thus, hardness can range from 150–500 HV (Vickers). Nickel can be similar to stainless steel in color, or can be a dull gray (almost white) color. Corrosion resistance is a function of thickness. Nickel has a low coefficient of thermal expansion. All steel parts having a tensile strength of 220,000 or greater shall not be a nickel plate without specific approval of procuring agency.

Class 1 is used for corrosion protection. Plating shall be applied over an underplating of copper or yellow brass on zinc and zinc based alloys. In no case, shall the copper underplate be substituted for any part of the specified nickel thickness. Class 2 is used in engineering applications.

Grade A has a thickness of 0.0016 inch (41 µm); Grade B, 0.0012 in. (30.48 µm); Grade C, 0.001 in. (25.4 µm); Grade D, 0.0008 in. (20.32 µm); Grade E, 0.0006 in. (15.24 µm); Grade F, 0.0004 in. (10.16 µm); and Grade G, 0.002 in (50.8 µm).

Palladium, MIL-P-45209B: A gray, dense deposit good for undercoats. Has good wear characteristics, corrosion resistance, catalytic properties, and good conductivity. The thickness shall be 0.00005 in. (1.27 µm) unless otherwise specified.

Steel springs and other steel parts subject to flexure or repeated impact and of hardness greater than 40 RC are heated to 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) for 3 hours after plating.

Chemical Passivation, ASTM A967: This process aims to improve the corrosion resistance of parts by removing contaminants from surfaces and facilitating formation of a passive oxide layer. Commercial passivation is performed on austenitic, ferritic, and martensitic stainless steels of the 200, 300, and 400 series, and related variants such as precipitation-hardening stainless steels.

Passivation methods included in the standard are nitric acid immersion, citric acid immersion, and electrochemical treatment (See *Electropolishing, ASTM B912-02 (2018)* on page 1644). Nitric acid has long been used for chemical passivation, but safety and environmental concerns have led to the increasing use of citric acid, when possible. Various grades of stainless steel respond to passivation and related chemistry differently, so care must be taken when specifying a process.

The efficacy of chemical passivation depends on the amount of dynamic contact between the fluid and critical part surfaces. For parts with complex geometry, deep bores, or blind holes, the process may require agitation, repositioning, and use of fixtures.

Phosphate Coating: Light, TT-C-490D: This specification covers cleaning methods and pretreatment processes.

Methods / Types	Typical Thickness (in.)	Comments
Cleaning Methods		
	…	Light coating for use as a paint base.
Method I	…	Mechanical or abrasive cleaning (for ferrous surfaces only).
Method II	…	Used for solvent cleaning.
Method III	…	Used for hot alkalines (for ferrous surfaces only).
Method IV	…	Emulsion.
Method V	…	Used for alkaline derusting (for ferrous surfaces only).
Method VI	…	Phosphoric acid.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Methods / Types	Typical Thickness (in.)	Comments
Pretreatment Coatings		
Type I	…	Zinc phosphate. Class 1-spray application: Class 2A and 2B-Immersion or Dip application
Type II	…	Aqueous Iron Phosphate
Type III	0.0003 – 0.0005	Organic pretreatment coating
Type IV	…	Non-aqueous iron phosphate
Type V	…	Zinc phosphate

Type I is intended as a general all-purpose pretreatment prior to painting. Type II and IV are intended primarily for use where metal parts are to be formed after painting. Type III is intended for use where size and shape preclude using Type I, II, or IV and where items containing mixed metal components are assembled prior to treatment.

Phosphate Coating: Heavy, DOD-P-16232-F: The primary differences are that Type M is used as a heavy manganese phosphate coating for corrosion and wear resistance and Type Z is used as a zinc phosphate coating.

Type M has a thickness from 0.0002-0.0004 in. (5–10 µm) and Type Z, 0.0002-0.0006 in. (5–15 µm) Class 1, for both types has a supplementary preservative treatment or coating as specified; Class 2, has a supplementary treatment with lubricating oil; and Class 3, no supplementary treatment is required. For Type M, Class 4 is chemically converted (may be dyed to color as specified) with no supplementary coating or supplementary coating as specified. For Type Z, Class 4 is the same as Class 3.

This coating is for medium and low alloy steels. The coatings range from gray to black in color. The "heavy" phosphate coatings covered by this specification are intended as a base for holding/retaining supplemental coatings which provide the major portion of the corrosion resistance. "Light" phosphate coatings used for a paint base are covered by other specifications. Heavy zinc phosphate coatings may be used when paint and supplemental oil coatings are required on various parts or assemblies.

Rhodium, MIL-R-46085B: Rhodium is metallic and similar to stainless steel in color, has excellent corrosion and abrasion resistance, is almost as hard as chromium, and has a high reflectivity. Thicker coatings of Rhodium are very brittle.

Class/Types	Thickness (in.)	Comments
Type I	…	Over nickel, silver, gold, or platinum.
Type II	…	Over other metals, requires nickel undercoat.
Class 1	0.000002	Used on silver for tarnish resistance.
Class 2	0.00001	Applications range from electronic to nose cones — wherever wear, corrosion resist solderability and reflectivity are important.
Class 3	0.00002	
Class 4	0.00010	
Class 5	0.00025	

Parts having a hardness of 33 RC or above shall be baked at 375°F (191°C) for 3 hours prior to cleaning. Parts having hardness of 40 RC and above shall be baked within 4 hours after plating at 375°F (191°C) for 3 hours.

Silver, QQ-S-365D: Silver has an increasing use in both decorative and engineering fields, including electrical and electronic fields.

Silver is white matte to very bright in appearance. Has good corrosion resistance, depending on base metal and will tarnish easily. Its hardness varies from about 90–135 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) depending on process and plating conditions. Solderability is excellent, but decreases with age. Silver is the best conductor of electricity. Has excellent lubricity and smear characteristics for antigalling uses on static seals, bushing, etc. Stress

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

relief steel parts at a minimum 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) or more prior to cleaning and plating if they contain or are suspected of having damaging residual tensile stresses.

All types and grades will have a minimum thickness of 0.0005 in.(12.7 μm) unless otherwise specified. Type I is matte, Type II is semi-bright, and Type III is bright. Grade A has a chromate post-treatment to improve tarnish resistance. In contrast Grade B has no supplementary treatment.

Tin, MIL-T-10727C: There are two different types of coating methods used, electrodeposited (based on Use ASTM B545 standard specification for electrodeposited coatings of tin) and hot dipped.

Thickness as specified on drawing (thickness is not part of the specification) is 0.0001-0.0025 inch (2.5–63.5 μm), flash for soldering; 0.0002–0.0004 inch (5.08–10.16 μm), to prevent galling and seizing; 0.0003 inch (7.62 μm) minimum, where corrosion resistance is important; and 0.0002–0.0006 inch (5.08–15.24 μm) to prevent formation of case during nitriding.

Color is a gray-white color in plated condition. Tin is soft, but very ductile. It has good corrosion resistance, and has excellent solderability. Tin is not good for low temperature applications.

If a bright finish is desired to be used in lieu of fused tin, specify Bright Tin plate. Thickness can exceed that of fused tin and deposit shows excellent corrosion resistance and solderability.

Vacuum Cadmium, MIL-C-8837B: Is used primarily to provide corrosion resistance to ferrous parts free from hydrogen contamination and possible embrittlement. Recommended on steels with a strength of 2.2×10^5 psi (1517 MPa) or above.

Coating is applied after all machining, brazing, welding, and forming has been completed. Prior to coating, all steel parts shall be stress relieved by baking at 375 ± 25°F (190 ± 14°C) for 3 hours if suspected of having residual tensile stresses. Immediately prior to coating, lightly dry abrasive blast areas are to be coated.

Type I shall be as plated; and Types II and III require supplementary chromate and phosphate treatments respectively.

Classes 1, 2, and 3 have thicknesses of 0.0005, 0.0003, and 0.0002 inch (12.7, 7.62, and 5.08 μm) respectively.

Cadmium coating shall not be used, if in service, temperature reaches 450°F (232°C).

A salt spray test is required for type II and is 96 hours.

Zinc, ASTM B633: This specification covers requirements for electrodeposited zinc coatings applied to iron or steel articles to protect them from corrosion. It does not cover zinc-coated wire or sheets.

Type I will be as plated; Type II will have colored chromate conversion coatings; Type III will have colorless chromate conversion coatings; and Type IV will have phosphate conversion coatings.

High strength steels (tensile strength over 1700 MPa or 246,500 psi) shall not be electroplated.

Stress relief: All parts with ultimate tensile strength 1000 MPa (145,000 psi) and above at minimum 190°C (374°F) for 3 hours or more before cleaning and plating.

Hydrogen embrittlement relief: All electroplated parts 1200 MPa (174,000 psi) or higher shall be baked at 190°C (374°F) for 3 hours or more within 4 hours after electroplating.

Corrosion Resistance Requirements	
Types	Test Period Hr.
II	96
III	12

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flame Spraying Process

In this process, the forerunner of which was called the metal spraying process, metals, alloys, ceramics, and cermets are deposited on metallic or other surfaces. The object may be to build up worn or undersize parts, provide wear-resisting or corrosion-resisting surfaces, correct defective castings, etc.

Different types of equipment are available that provide the means of depositing the coatings on the surfaces. In one, wire is fed automatically through the nozzle of the spray gun; then a combustible gas, oxygen and compressed air serve to melt and blow the atomized metal against the surface to be coated. The gas usually used is acetylene but other gases may be used. Any desired thickness of metal may be deposited and the metals include steels, ranging from low to high carbon content, various brass and bronze compositions, babbitt metal, tin, zinc, lead, nickel, copper, and aluminum. The movement of the spray gun, in covering a given surface, is controlled either mechanically or by hand. In enlarging worn or undersize shafts, spindles, etc., it is common practice to clamp the gun in a lathe toolholder and use the feed mechanism to traverse the gun at a uniform rate while the metal is being deposited upon the rotating workpiece. The spraying operation may be followed by machining or grinding to obtain a more precise dimension.

Some typical production applications using the wire process are the coating of automotive exhaust valves, refinishing of transfer ink rollers for the printing industry and the rebuilding of worn truck clutch plates. Other production applications include the metallizing of glass meter box windows, the spraying of aluminum onto cloth gauze to produce electrolytic condenser plates, and the spraying of zinc or copper for coating ceramic insulators.

With another type of equipment, metal, refractory, and ceramic powder are used instead of wire. Ordinarily this equipment employs the use of two gases, oxygen and a fuel gas. The fuel gas is usually acetylene but in some instances hydrogen may be used. When hand-held, a small reservoir supplies the powder to the equipment but a larger reservoir is used for lathe-mounted equipment or for large-scale production work. The four basic types of coating powders used with this equipment are ceramics, oxidation-resistant metals and alloys, self-bonding alloys, and alloys for fused coatings. These powders are used to produce wear-resistant, corrosion-resistant, heat-resistant, and electrically conductive coatings.

Still other equipment employs the use of plasma flame with which vapors of materials are raised to a higher energy level than the ordinary gaseous state. Its use raises the temperature ceiling and provides a controlled atmosphere by permitting employment of an inert or chemically inactive gas so that chemical action, such as oxidation, during the heating and application of the spray material can be controlled. The temperatures that can be obtained with commercially available plasma equipment often exceed 30,000°F (16,650°C) but for most plasma flame spray processes the temperature range of from 12,000 to 20,000°F (6650–11,093°C) is optimum. Plasma flame spray materials include alumina, zirconia, tungsten, molybdenum, tantalum, copper, aluminum, carbides, and nickel-base alloys.

Regardless of the equipment used, what is important is the proper preparation of the surface that will receive the sprayed coating. Preparation activities include the degreasing or solvent cleaning of the surface, undercutting of the surface to provide room for the proper coating thickness, abrasive or grit blasting the substrate to provide a roughened surface, grooving (in the case of flat surfaces) or rough threading (in the case of cylindrical work) the surface to be coated, preheating the base metal. Methods of obtaining a bond between the sprayed material and the substrate are: heating the base, roughening the base, or spraying a “self-bonding” material onto a smooth surface; however, heating alone is seldom used in machine element work as the elevated temperatures required to obtain the proper bond causes problems of warpage and surface corrosion.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TORQUE AND TENSION IN FASTENERS

1653 Tightening Bolts
1654 Wrench Torque
1654 Preload for Bolts in Loaded Joints
1654 Preload for Bolts in Shear
1655 General Application of Preload
1656 Preload Adjustments
1656 Coefficients of Friction
1657 Preload Relaxation
1657 Methods of Applying and Measuring Preload
1658 Bolt Preload Application Methods
1658 Elongation Measurement
1660 Thread Tensile-Stress Area
1661 Torque and Clamping Force
1663 Torque and Friction Coefficients
1664 Torque-Tension Relationships
1666 Grade Marks and Material Properties
1666 Grade Identification Marks
1667 Detecting Counterfeit Fasteners
1667 Mechanical Properties of Nuts
1667 Working Strength of Bolts
1668 Stress Areas and Lengths of Engagement
1669 Breaking Force
1669 Lock Wire Procedure Detail

INCH THREADED FASTENERS

1670 Bolts, Screws, and Nuts
1670 Unified Square and Hexagon Bolts, Screws, and Nuts
1670 Differentiation between Bolt and Screw
1671 Square and Hex Bolts, Screws, and Nuts
1672 ANSI Hex and Heavy Hex Bolts
1674 Heavy Hex Screws
1675 Square Lag Screws
1676 Hex Lag Screws
1677 Hex Nuts and Jam Nuts
1678 Heavy Hex Flat Nuts
1679 Heavy Hex Slotted Nuts
1680 Square Nuts
1681 Low and High Crown Nuts
1683 Round Head and Round Head Square Neck Bolts

INCH THREADED FASTENERS

(Continued)

1683 T-Head Bolts
1684 Round Head Square Neck Bolts
1684 Round Head Fin Neck Bolts
1685 Round Head Ribbed Neck Bolts
1686 Countersunk Square Neck Bolts
1687 Countersunk Bolts
1687 Wrench Clearance Dimensions
1694 Type A Plain Washer
1695 ANSI Standard Plain Washers
1696 Type B Plain Washers
1697 Helical Spring and Tooth Lock Washers
1700 Tooth Lock Washers
1702 Fasteners for Structural Applications
1702 Heavy Hex Structural Bolts
1705 Heavy Hex Nuts
1708 Hardened Steel Washers
1708 Flat Washers
1708 Circular and Clipped Washers
1709 Beveled Washers
1711 Compressible Tension Indicators

METRIC THREADED FASTENERS

1713 Comparison with ISO Standards
1714 Metric Hex Cap Screws
1715 Metric Formed Hex Screws
1716 Metric Heavy Hex Screws
1716 Metric Screw and Bolt Diameters
1717 Metric Hex Screws and Bolts
1718 Metric Hex Lag Screws
1719 Metric Socket Head Shoulder Screws
1720 Heavy Hex Flange Screws
1721 Hex Flange Screws
1721 Round Head Square Neck Bolts
1723 Heavy Hex Bolts
1723 Heavy Hex Structural Bolts
1724 Hex Bolts
1724 Materials and Mechanical Properties
1725 Metric Screw and Bolt Identification Symbols
1725 Designation
1725 Metric Screw and Bolt Thread Lengths

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

METRIC THREADED FASTENERS

(Continued)

1726 Socket Head Cap Screws
1726 Diameter-Length Combinations
1726 Metric Hex Lag Screws
1727 Cap, Heavy, Hex Flange Screws
1728 Heavy Hex Structural Bolts
1728 Round Head Square Neck Bolts
1729 Socket Head Cap Screws Lengths
1730 Socket Head Cap Screws Sizes
1731 Drilled Head Dimensions
1731 Metric Nuts
1731 Comparison with ISO Standards
1733 Tops and Bearing Surfaces
1733 Slotted Hex Nuts
1733 Mechanical Properties
1734 Hex Nuts
1735 Hex Flange Nuts
1735 Metric Nut Thread Series
1735 Prevailing-Torque Type Nuts
1736 Metric Hex Flange Nuts
1736 Metric Nut Identification Symbols
1736 Metric Nut Designation
1739 Metric Washers
1739 Metric Plain Washers
1739 Comparison with ISO Standards
1739 Types of Metric Plain Washers
1739 Materials and Finish
1739 Metric Plain Washer Designation
1741 Clearance Holes for Bolts, Screws, and Studs
1741 Inch Fasteners
1742 Metric Fasteners
1742 Recommended Substitute Drills
1744 Metric Socket Head Cap Screws

HELICAL COIL SCREW THREAD INSERTS

1745 Introduction
1745 Tolerance Classes
1745 STI-Tapped Hole
1746 Helical Coil Insert
1746 Material
1746 Properties
1746 Coatings
1746 Configuration and Dimensions
1747 Screw Thread Insert Threaded Hole Data
1749 Inspection and Quality Assurance

HELICAL COIL SCREW THREAD INSERTS

(Continued)

1749 Inspection (Nondestructive)
1750 Self-Locking Torque (Destructive)
1756 Torque Test Spacer
1756 Insert Length Selection
1756 Engaged Length of Bolt
1756 Material Strengths
1757 Hardness Number Conversion
1757 Screw Thread Insert Taps

BRITISH FASTENERS

1758 British Standard Square and Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts
1758 British Standard Screwed Studs
1759 Whitworth and Fine Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws
1762 ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts
1763 Hexagon Bolts and Screws
1764 Hexagon Nuts and Thin Nuts
1765 Hexagon Slotted Nuts
1766 Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts
1766 Nominal Lengths
1768 Strength Grade Designations
1768 Bolt and Nut Combinations
1769 British Standard Studs
1770 British Standard Washers
1771 Double Coil Washers
1772 Square Section Spring Washers
1772 British Standard Metric Washers

MACHINE SCREWS AND NUTS

1775 Standard Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts
1775 Threads
1775 Length of Thread
1775 Square and Hexagon Nuts
1776 Diameter of Body
1776 Designation
1776 Slotted Flat Countersunk Head
1778 Washer Head Machine Screws
1779 Slotted Truss Head
1780 Slotted Pan Head
1781 Slotted Fillister
1782 Slotted Oval Countersunk Head
1783 Slotted Binding Head
1784 Slotted Round Head
1784 Machine Screw Cross Recesses

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MACHINE SCREWS AND NUTS
(Continued)

1785 Slotted Head Miniature Screws
1785 Head Types
1785 Fillister Head Dimensions
1786 Pan Head Dimensions
1787 100° Flat Head Dimensions
1787 Specifications
1788 Binding Head Dimensions
1789 Standard Lengths
1790 Standard Metric Machine Screws
1791 Thread Lengths
1792 Square Recessed Flat Countersunk Head
1793 Oval Countersunk Head
1794 Square Recessed Pan Head
1795 Hex and Hex Flange Head
1797 Nominal Screw Lengths
1798 British Machine Screws
1799 Whitworth and Fine Machine Screws
1799 Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts, Metric Series
1801 Slotted Countersunk Head
1802 Slotted Raised Countersunk Head
1804 Machine Screw Nuts
1805 Slotted Pan Head
1806 Slotted Cheese Head
1808 Unified Machine Screws
1811 Whitworth and Fine Machine Screws Table

CAP AND SET SCREWS

1812 Cap Screws
1813 Slotted Round
1814 Hexagon and Spline Socket
1815 Drill and Counterbore Sizes
1816 Hexagon and Spline Socket
1818 Socket Head Shoulder Screws
1819 Slotted Headless Set Screws
1820 Screw Optional Cup Points
1821 Hexagon and Spline Sockets
1822 Square Head Set Screws
1824 Hexagon and Spline Keys and Bits
1825 Hexagon Socket Screws
1826 British Standard Hexagon Socket Screws—Metric Series
1830 Button Head Screws
1831 Hexagon Socket Set Screws
1831 Holding Power of Set Screws
1832 Bright Square Head Set Screws

SELF-THREADING SCREWS

1833 Sheet Metal, Self-Tapping, and Metallic Drive Screws
1834 Method of Designation
1835 Self-Tapping Screws
1836 Threads and Points
1836 Cross Recesses
1837 Thread Forming Tapping Screws
1838 B and BP Thread
1839 Thread and Point Dimensions
1840 D, F, G, and T Thread
1841 Hole Sizes
1842 Types AB, B, and BP Screws
1844 Types D, F, G, and T Screws
1847 Types B, BP, BF, and BT Screws
1848 Type U Hardened Screws
1848 Torsional Strength
1848 Self-Tapping Thread Inserts
1848 Screw Thread Inserts
1848 Thread Forming and Cutting Tapping Screws
1849 Threads and Points
1850 Head Types
1850 Method of Designation
1851 Nominal Screw Lengths
1852 Types BF, BT, D, F, and T Screws
1852 Material and Heat Treatment
1853 Clearance Holes
1854 Clean-Punched Hole Sizes
1857 BF and BT Metric Thread

T-SLOTS, BOLTS, AND NUTS

1858 T-Slots
1859 T-Bolts
1860 T-Nuts

RIVETS AND RIVETED JOINTS

1861 Riveted Joint Design
1861 Classes and Types of Joints
1861 General Design Considerations
1862 Failure of Riveted Joints
1863 Allowable Stresses
1863 Analysis of Joint Strength
1864 Formulas for Riveted Joint Design

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

RIVETS AND RIVETED JOINTS

(Continued)

1866 American Standard Rivets
1866 Large Rivets
1866 Small Solid Rivets
1867 Rivet Lengths for Forming Heads
1868 British Standard Rivets
1874 Range of Lengths for Rivets
1874 Small Rivets for General Purposes
1874 Dimensions of Rivets
1875 Rivets for General Engineering Purposes
1876 Small Rivets for General Purposes
1877 Head Dimensions and Diameters

PINS AND STUDS

1878 Cotter Pins
1878 Clevis Pins
1879 Dowel-Pins
1879 Metric Series Dowel Pins
1880 Steel Dowel Pins
1881 Hardened Ground Machine
1883 Unhardened Ground Dowel Pins
1885 Assembly with Dowel Pins
1886 Standard Straight Pins
1887 Standard Taper Pins
1888 Drilling Specifications
1890 Standard Grooved Pins
1891 T-Head Cotter Pins and Round Head Grooved Drive Studs
1894 Grooved T-Head Cotter Pins
1894 Grooved Drive Studs
1895 Slotted-Type Spring Pins
1895 Spring Pins
1896 Coiled-Type Spring Pins

RETAINING RINGS

1897 Retaining Rings
1897 Tapered
1900 Reduced Cross Section
1903 Basic Internal Series
1905 E-Type External Series
1910 Heavy Duty Internal Spiral
1912 Heavy Duty External Spiral
1914 Dimensions
1920 Inch Series Self-Locking
1922 Failure
1923 Standards

WING NUTS, WING SCREWS, AND THUMB SCREWS

1925 Wing Nuts
1928 Specification
1928 Threads
1929 Materials and Finish
1929 Wing and Thumb Screws
1930 Types A and B Wing Screws
1931 Types C and D Wing Screws
1931 Wing Screw and Thumb Screw Designation
1932 Types A and B Thumb Screws
1932 Lengths of Wing and Thumb Screws
1933 Threads for Wing Screws and Thumb Screws
1933 Points for Wing and Thumb Screws

NAILS, SPIKES, AND WOOD SCREWS

1934 Standard Wire Nails and Spikes
1935 Flat, Pan, and Oval Head Wood Screws
1935 Pilot Hole Drill Sizes for Wood Screws

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TORQUE AND TENSION IN FASTENERS

Tightening Bolts.—Bolts are often tightened by applying torque to the head or nut, which causes the bolt to stretch. The stretching results in bolt tension or preload, which is the force that holds a joint together. Torque is relatively easy to measure with a torque wrench, so it is the most frequently used indicator of bolt tension. Unfortunately, a torque wrench does not measure bolt tension accurately, mainly because it does not take friction into account. The friction depends on bolt, nut, and washer material, surface smoothness, machining accuracy, degree of lubrication, and the number of times a bolt has been installed. Fastener manufacturers often provide information for determining torque requirements for tightening various bolts, accounting for friction and other effects. If this information is not available, the methods described in what follows give general guidelines for determining how much tension should be present in a bolt, and how much torque may need to be applied to arrive at that tension.

High preload tension helps keep bolts tight, increases joint strength, creates friction between parts to resist shear, and improves the fatigue resistance of bolted connections. The recommended preload F_i, which can be used for either static (stationary) or fatigue (alternating) applications, can be determined from: $F_i = 0.75 \times A_t \times S_p$ for reusable connections, and $F_i = 0.9 \times A_t \times S_p$ for permanent connections. In these formulas, F_i is the bolt preload, A_t is the tensile stress area of the bolt, and S_p is the proof strength of the bolt. Determine A_t from screw-thread tables or by means of formulas in this section. Proof strength S_p of commonly used ASTM and SAE steel fasteners is given in this section and in the section on metric screws and bolts for those fasteners. For other materials, an approximate value of proof strength can be obtained from: $S_p = 0.85 \times S_y$, where S_y is the yield strength of the material. Soft materials should not be used for threaded fasteners.

Once the required preload has been determined, one of the best ways to be sure that a bolt is properly tensioned is to measure its tension directly with a strain gage. Next best is to measure the change in length (elongation) of the bolt during tightening, using a micrometer or dial indicator. Each of the following two formulas calculates the required change in length of a bolt needed to make the bolt tension equal to the recommended preload. The change in length δ of the bolt is given by:

$$\delta = F_i \times \frac{A_d \times l_t + A_t \times l_d}{A_d \times A_t \times E} \quad (1) \qquad \text{or} \qquad \delta = \frac{F_i \times l}{A \times E} \quad (2)$$

In Equation (1), F_i is the bolt preload; A_d is the major-diameter area of the bolt; A_t is the tensile-stress area of the bolt; E is the bolt modulus of elasticity; l_t is the length of the threaded portion of the fastener within the grip; and l_d is the length of the unthreaded portion of the grip. Here, the grip is defined as the total thickness of the clamped material. Equation (2) is a simplified formula for use when the area of the fastener is constant, and gives approximately the same results as Equation (1). In Equation (2), l is the bolt length; A is the bolt area; and δ, F_i, and E are as described before.

If measuring bolt elongation is not possible, the torque necessary to tighten the bolt must be estimated. If the recommended preload is known, use the following general relation for the torque: $T = K \times F_i \times d$, where T is the wrench torque, K is a constant that depends on the bolt material and size, F_i is the preload, and d is the nominal bolt diameter. A value of $K = 0.2$ may be used in this equation for mild-steel bolts in the size range of $^1/_4$ to 1 inch (6.35–25.4 mm). For other steel bolts, use the following values of K: nonplated black finish, 0.3; zinc-plated, 0.2; lubricated, 0.18; cadmium-plated, 0.16. Check with bolt manufacturers and suppliers for values of K to use with bolts of other sizes and materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The proper torque to use for tightening bolts in sizes up to about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) may also be determined by trial. Test a bolt by measuring the amount of torque required to fracture it (use bolt, nut, and washers equivalent to those chosen for the real application). Then, use a tightening torque of about 50 to 60 percent of the fracture torque determined by the test. The tension in a bolt tightened using this procedure will be about 60 to 70 percent of the elastic limit (yield strength) of the bolt material.

The table that follows can be used to get a rough idea of the torque necessary to properly tension a bolt by using the bolt diameter d and the coefficients b and m from the table; the approximate tightening torque T in ft-lb for the listed fasteners is obtained by solving the equation $T = 10^{b+m \log d}$. This equation is approximate, for use with unlubricated fasteners as supplied by the mill. See the notes at the end of the table for more details on using the equation.

Wrench Torque $T = 10^{b+m \log d}$ for Steel Bolts, Studs, and Cap Screws (*see notes*)

Fastener Grade(s)	Bolt Diameter d (in.)	m	b
SAE 2, ASTM A307	¼ to 3	2.940	2.533
SAE 3	¼ to 3	3.060	2.775
ASTM A449, A354-BB, SAE 5	¼ to 3	2.965	2.759
ASTM A325[a]	½ to 1½	2.922	2.893
ASTM A354-BC	¼ to ⅝	3.046	2.837
SAE 6, SAE 7	¼ to 3	3.095	2.948
SAE 8	¼ to 3	3.095	2.983
ASTM A354-BD, ASTM A490[a]	⅜ to 1¾	3.092	3.057
Socket Head Cap Screws	¼ to 3	3.096	3.014

[a] Values for permanent fastenings on steel structures.

Usage: Values calculated using the preceding equation are for standard, unplated industrial fasteners as received from the manufacturer; for cadmium-plated cap screws, multiply the torque by 0.9; for cadmium-plated nuts and bolts, multiply the torque by 0.8; for fasteners used with special lubricants, multiply the torque by 0.9; for studs, use cap screw values for equivalent grade.

Preload for Bolts in Loaded Joints.—The following recommendations are based on MIL-HDBK-60, a subsection of FED-STD-H28, Screw Thread Standards for Federal Service. Generally, bolt preload in joints should be high enough to maintain joint members in contact and in compression. Loss of compression in a joint may result in leakage of pressurized fluids past compression gaskets, loosening of fasteners under conditions of cyclic loading, and reduction of fastener fatigue life.

The relationship between fastener fatigue life and fastener preload is illustrated by Fig. 1. An axially loaded bolted joint in which there is no bolt preload is represented by line OAB, that is, the bolt load is equal to the joint load. When joint load varies between P_a and P_b, the bolt load varies accordingly between P_{Ba} and P_{Bb}. However, if preload $P_{B1'}$ is applied to the bolt, the joint is compressed and bolt load changes more slowly than the joint load (indicated by line $P_{B1'}$A, whose slope is less than line OAB) because some of the load is absorbed as a reduction of compression in the joint. Thus, the axial load applied to the joint varies between $P_{Ba'}$ and $P_{Bb'}$ as joint load varies between P_a and P_b. This condition results in a considerable reduction in cyclic bolt-load variation and thereby increases the fatigue life of the fastener.

Preload for Bolts in Shear.—In shear-loaded joints, with members that slide, the joint members transmit shear loads to the fasteners in the joint and the preload must be sufficient to hold the joint members in contact. In joints that do not slide (i.e., there is no relative motion between joint members), shear loads are transmitted within the joint by frictional forces that mainly result from the preload. Therefore, preload must be great enough for the resulting friction forces to be greater than the applied shear force. With high applied shear loads, the shear stress induced in the fastener during application of the preload must also

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

be considered in the bolted-joint design. Joints with combined axial and shear loads must be analyzed to ensure that the bolts will not fail in either tension or shear.

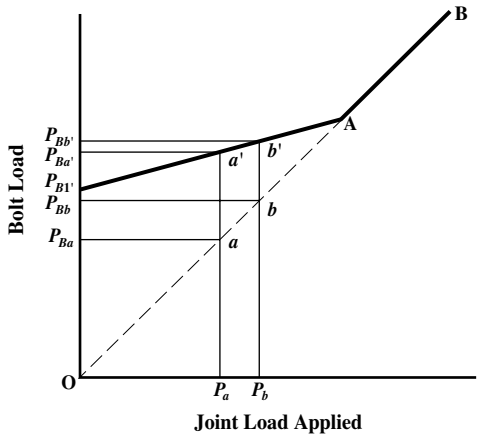


Fig. 1. Bolt Load in a Joint with Applied Axial Load

General Application of Preload.—Preload values should be based on joint requirements, as outlined before. Fastener applications are generally designed for maximum utilization of the fastener material; that is to say, the fastener size is the minimum required to perform its function and a maximum safe preload is generally applied to it. However, if a low-strength fastener is replaced by one of higher strength, for the sake of convenience or standardization, the preload in the replacement should not be increased beyond that required in the original fastener.

To utilize the maximum amount of bolt strength, bolts are sometimes tightened to or beyond the yield point of the material. This practice is generally limited to ductile materials, where there is considerable difference between the yield strength and the ultimate (breaking) strength, because low-ductility materials are more likely to fail due to unexpected overloads when preloaded to yield. Joints designed for primarily static load conditions that use ductile bolts, with a yield strain that is relatively far from the strain at fracture, are often preloaded above the yield point of the bolt material. Methods for tightening up to and beyond the yield point include tightening by feel without special tools, and the use of electronic equipment designed to compare the applied torque with the angular rotation of the fastener and detect changes that occur in the elastic properties of fasteners at yield.

Bolt loads are maintained below the yield point in joints subjected to cyclic loading and in joints using bolts of high-strength material where the yield strain is close to the strain at fracture. For these conditions, the maximum preloads generally fall within the following ranges: 50 to 80 percent of the minimum tensile ultimate strength; 75 to 90 percent of the minimum tensile yield strength or proof load; or 100 percent of the observed proportional limit or onset of yield.

Bolt heads, driving recesses (in socket screws, for example), and the juncture of head and shank must be sufficiently strong to withstand the preload and any additional stress encountered during tightening. There must also be sufficient thread to prevent stripping (generally, at least three fully engaged threads). Materials susceptible to stress-corrosion cracking may require further preload limitations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Preload Adjustments.—Preloads may be applied directly by axial loading or indirectly by turning of the nut or bolt. When preload is applied by turning of nuts or bolts, a torsion load component is added to the desired axial bolt load. This combined loading increases the tensile stress on the bolt. It is frequently assumed that the additional torsion load component dissipates quickly after the driving force is removed and, therefore, can be largely ignored. This assumption may be reasonable for fasteners loaded near to or beyond yield strength, but for critical applications where bolt tension must be maintained below yield, it is important to adjust the axial tension requirements to include the effects of the preload torsion. For this adjustment, the combined tensile stress (*von Mises* stress) F_{tc} in psi (MPa) can be calculated from the following:

$$F_{tc} = \sqrt{F_t^2 + 3F_s^2} \tag{3}$$

where F_t is the axial applied tensile stress in psi (MPa), and F_s is the shear stress in psi (MPa) caused by the torsion load application.

Some of the torsion load on a bolt, acquired when applying a preload, may be released by springback when the wrenching torque is removed. The amount of relaxation depends on the friction under the bolt head or nut. With controlled back turning of the nut, the torsional load may be reduced or eliminated without loss of axial load, reducing bolt stress and lowering creep and fatigue potential. However, calculation and control of the back-turn angle is difficult, so this method has limited application and cannot be used for short bolts because of the small angles involved.

For relatively soft work-hardenable materials, tightening bolts in a joint slightly beyond yield will work-harden the bolt to some degree. Back turning of the bolt to the desired tension will reduce embedment and metal flow and improve resistance to preload loss.

The following formula for use with single-start Unified inch screw threads calculates the combined tensile stress, F_{tc}:

$$F_{tc} = F_t \sqrt{1 + 3\left(\frac{1.96 + 2.31\mu}{1 - 0.325P/d_2} - 1.96\right)^2} \tag{4}$$

Single-start UNJ screw threads in accordance with MIL-S-8879 have a thread stress diameter equal to the bolt pitch diameter. For these threads, F_{tc} can be calculated from:

$$F_{tc} = F_t \sqrt{1 + 3\left(\frac{0.637P}{d_2} + 2.31\mu\right)^2} \tag{5}$$

where μ is the coefficient of friction between threads, P is the thread pitch ($P = 1/n$, and n is the number of threads per inch), and d_2 is the bolt-thread pitch diameter in inches. Both Equations (2) and (3) are derived from Equation (1); thus, the quantity within the radical ($\sqrt{\ }$) represents the proportion of increase in axial bolt tension resulting from preload torsion. In these equations, tensile stress due to torsion load application becomes most significant when the thread friction, μ, is high.

Coefficients of Friction for Bolts and Nuts.—Table 1 gives examples of coefficients of friction that are frequently used in determining torque requirements. Dry threads, indicated by the words "None added" in the Lubricant column, are assumed to have some residual machine oil lubrication. Table 1 values are not valid for threads that have been cleaned to remove all traces of lubrication because the coefficient of friction of these threads may be very much higher unless a plating or other film is acting as a lubricant.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Coefficients of Friction of Bolts and Nuts

Bolt/Nut Materials	Lubricant	Coefficient of Friction, μ ± 20%
Steel[a]	Graphite in petrolatum or oil	0.07
	Molybdenum disulfide grease	0.11
	Machine oil	0.15
Steel,[a] cadmium-plated	None added	0.12
Steel,[a] zinc-plated	None added	0.17
Steel[a]/bronze	None added	0.15
Corrosion-resistant steel or nickel-base alloys/silver-plated materials	None added	0.14
Titanium/steel[a]	Graphite in petrolatum	0.08
Titanium	Molybdenum disulfide grease	0.10

[a] "Steel" includes carbon and low-alloy steels but not corrosion-resistant steels.
Where two materials are separated by a slash (/), either may be the bolt material; the other is the nut material.

Preload Relaxation.—Local yielding, due to excess bearing stress under nuts and bolt heads (caused by high local spots, rough surface finish, and lack of perfect squareness of bolt and nut bearing surfaces), may result in preload relaxation after preloads are first applied to a bolt. Bolt tension also may be unevenly distributed over the threads in a joint, so thread deformation may occur, causing the load to be redistributed more evenly over the threaded length. Preload relaxation occurs over a period of minutes to hours after the application of the preload, so retightening after several minutes to several days may be required. As a general rule, an allowance for loss of preload of about 10 percent may be made when designing a joint.

Increasing the resilience of a joint will make it more resistant to local yielding, that is, there will be less loss of preload due to yielding. When practical, a joint-length to bolt-diameter ratio of 4 or more is recommended; for example, a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch (6.35 mm) bolt and a 1-inch (25.4 mm) or greater joint length. Through bolts, far-side tapped holes, spacers, and washers can be used in the joint design to improve the joint-length to bolt-diameter ratio.

Over an extended period of time, preload may be reduced or completely lost due to vibration; temperature cycling, including changes in ambient temperature; creep; joint load; and other factors. An increase in the initial bolt preload or the use of thread-locking methods that prevent relative motion of the joint may reduce the problem of preload relaxation due to vibration and temperature cycling. Creep is generally a high-temperature effect, although some loss of bolt tension can be expected even at normal temperatures. Harder materials and creep-resistant materials should be considered if creep is a problem or high-temperature service of the joint is expected.

Mechanical properties of fastener materials vary significantly with temperature, and allowance must be made for these changes when ambient temperatures range beyond 30 to 200°F (−1 to 93°C). Mechanical properties that may change include tensile strength, yield strength, and modulus of elasticity. Where bolts and flange materials are generically dissimilar, such as carbon steel and corrosion-resistant steel, or steel and brass, differences in thermal expansion that might cause preload to increase or decrease must be taken into consideration.

Methods of Applying and Measuring Preload.—Depending on the tightening method, the accuracy of preload application may vary up to 25 percent or more. Care must be taken to maintain the calibration of torque and load indicators. Allowance should be made for uncertainties in bolt load to prevent overstressing the bolts or failing to obtain sufficient preload. The method of tensioning should be based on required accuracy and relative costs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The most common methods of bolt tension control are indirect because it is usually difficult or impractical to measure the tension produced in each fastener during assembly. Table 2 lists the most frequently used methods of applying bolt preload and the approximate accuracy of each method. For many applications, fastener tension can be satisfactorily controlled within certain limits by applying a known torque to the fastener. Laboratory tests have shown that whereas a satisfactory torque tension relationship can be established for a given set of conditions, a change of any of the variables, such as fastener material, surface finish, and the presence or absence of lubrication, may severely alter the relationship. Because most of the applied torque is absorbed in intermediate friction, a change in the surface roughness of the bearing surfaces or a change in the lubrication will drastically affect the friction and thus the torque tension relationship. Regardless of the method or accuracy of applying the preload, tension will decrease in time if the bolt, nut, or washer seating faces deform under load, if the bolt stretches or creeps under tensile load, or if cyclic loading causes relative motion between joint members.

Table 2. Accuracy of Bolt Preload Application Methods

Method	Accuracy	Method	Accuracy
By feel	±35%	Computer-controlled wrench	
Torque wrench	±25%	below yield (turn-of-nut)	±15%
Turn-of-nut	±15%	yield-point sensing	±8%
Preload indicating washer	±10%	Bolt elongation	±3–5%
Strain gages	±1%	Ultrasonic sensing	±1%

Tightening methods using power drivers are similar in accuracy to equivalent manual methods.

Elongation Measurement.—Bolt elongation is directly proportional to axial stress when the applied stress is within the elastic range of the material. If both ends of a bolt are accessible, a micrometer measurement of bolt length made before and after the application of tension will ensure the required axial stress is applied. The elongation δ in inches (mm) can be determined from the formula $\delta = F_t \times L_B \div E$, given the required axial stress F_t in psi (MPa), the bolt modulus of elasticity E in psi (MPa), and the effective bolt length L_B in inches (mm). L_B, as indicated in Fig. 2, includes the contribution of bolt area and ends (head and nut) and is calculated from:

$$L_B = \left(\frac{d_{ts}}{d}\right)^2 \times \left(L_s + \frac{H_B}{2}\right) + L_J - L_S + \frac{H_N}{2} \qquad (6)$$

where d_{ts} is the thread stress diameter, d is the bolt diameter, L_s is the unthreaded length of the bolt shank, L_j is the overall joint length, H_B is the height of the bolt head, and H_N is the height of the nut.

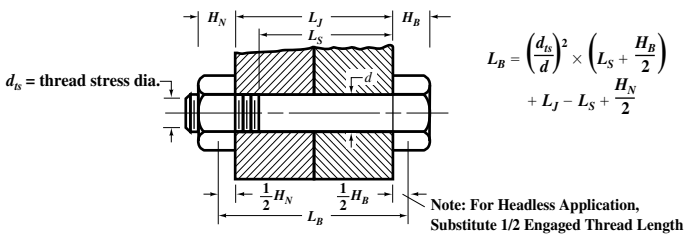


Fig. 2. Effective Length Applicable in Elongation Formulas

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The micrometer method is most easily and accurately applied to bolts that are essentially uniform throughout the bolt length, that is, threaded along the entire length or that have only a few threads in the bolt grip area. If the bolt geometry is complex, such as tapered or stepped, the elongation is equal to the sum of the elongations of each section with allowances made for transitional stresses in bolt head height and nut engagement length.

The direct method of measuring elongation is practical only if both ends of a bolt are accessible. Otherwise, if the diameter of the bolt or stud is sufficiently large, an axial hole can be drilled, as shown in Fig. 3, and a micrometer depth gage or other means used to determine the change in length of the hole as the fastener is tightened. A similar method uses a special indicating bolt that has a blind axial hole containing a pin fixed at the bottom. The pin is usually made flush with the bolt head surface before load application. As the bolt is loaded, the elongation causes the end of the pin to move below the reference surface. The displacement of the pin can be converted directly into unit stress by means of a calibrated gage. In some bolts of this type, the pin is set a distance above the bolt so that the pin is flush with the bolt head when the required axial load is reached.

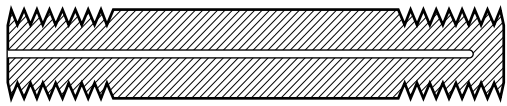


Fig. 3. Hole Drilled to Measure Elongation When One End of Stud or Bolt Is Not Accessible

The *ultrasonic method* of measuring elongation uses a sound pulse, generated at one end of a bolt, that travels the length of a bolt, bounces off the far end, and returns to the sound generator in a measured period of time. The time required for the sound pulse to return depends on the length of the bolt and the speed of sound in the bolt material. The speed of sound in the bolt depends on the material, the temperature, and the stress level. The ultrasonic measurement system can compute the stress, load, or elongation of the bolt at any time by comparing the pulse travel time in the loaded and unstressed conditions. In a similar method, measuring round-trip transit times of longitudinal and shear wave sonic pulses allows calculation of tensile stress in a bolt without consideration of bolt length. This method permits checking bolt tension at any time and does not require a record of the ultrasonic characteristics of each bolt at zero load.

To ensure consistent results, the ultrasonic method requires that both ends of the bolt be finished square to the bolt axis. The accuracy of ultrasonic measurement compares favorably with strain gage methods, but is limited by sonic velocity variations between bolts of the same material and by corrections that must be made for unstressed portions of the bolt heads and threads.

The *turn-of-nut method* applies preload by turning a nut through an angle that corresponds to a given elongation. The elongation of the bolt is related to the angle turned by the formula: $\delta_B = \theta \times l \div 360$, where δ_B is the elongation in inches (mm), θ is the turn angle of the nut in degrees, and l is the lead of the thread helix in inches (mm). Substituting $F_t \times L_B \div E$ for elongation δ_B in this equation gives the turn-of-nut angle required to attain preload F_t:

$$\theta = 360 \frac{F_t L_B}{El} \tag{7}$$

where L_B is given by Equation (6), and E is the modulus of elasticity.

Accuracy of the turn-of-nut method is affected by elastic deformation of the threads, by roughness of the bearing surfaces, and by the difficulty of determining the starting point for measuring the angle. The starting point is usually found by tightening the nut enough to seat the contact surfaces firmly, and then loosening it just enough to release

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

any tension and twisting in the bolt. The nut-turn angle will be different for each bolt size, length, material, and thread lead. The preceding method of calculating the nut-turn angle also requires elongation of the bolt without a corresponding compression of the joint material. The turn-of-nut method, as just outlined, is not valid for joints with compressible gaskets or other soft material, or if there is a significant deformation of the nut and joint material relative to that of the bolt. The nut-turn angle would then have to be determined empirically using a simulated joint and a tension-measuring device.

The Japanese Industrial Standards (JIS) Handbook, *Fasteners and Screw Threads*, indicates that the turn-of-nut tightening method is applicable in both elastic and plastic region tightening. Refer to JIS B 1083 for more detail on this subject.

Heating causes a bolt to expand at a rate proportional to its coefficient of expansion. When a hot bolt and nut are fastened in a joint and cooled, the bolt shrinks and tension is developed. The temperature necessary to develop an axial stress, F_t (when the stress is below the elastic limit) can be found as follows:

$$T = \frac{F_t}{Ee} + T_o \tag{8}$$

In this equation, T is the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit needed to develop the axial tensile stress F_t in psi, E is the bolt material modulus of elasticity in psi, e is the coefficient of linear expansion in in/in-°F, and T_o is the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit to which the bolt will be cooled. $T - T_o$ is, therefore, the temperature change of the bolt. In finite-element simulations, heating and cooling are frequently used to preload mesh elements in tension or compression. Equation (8) can be used to determine required temperature changes in such problems.

Example: A tensile stress of 40,000 psi is required for a steel bolt in a joint operating at 70°F. If E is 30×10^6 psi and e is 6.2×10^{-6} in/in-°F, determine the temperature of the bolt needed to develop the required stress on cooling.

$$T = \frac{40{,}000}{(30 \times 10^6)(6.2 \times 10^{-6})} + 70 = 285°\text{F}$$

In practice, the bolt is heated slightly above the required temperature (to allow for some cooling while the nut is screwed down) and the nut is tightened snugly. Tension develops as the bolt cools. In another method, the nut is tightened snugly on the bolt, and the bolt is heated in place. When the bolt has elongated sufficiently, as indicated by inserting a thickness gage between the nut and the bearing surface of the joint, the nut is tightened. The bolt develops the required tension as it cools; however, preload may be lost if the joint temperature increases appreciably while the bolt is being heated.

Calculating Thread Tensile-Stress Area.—The tensile-stress area for Unified threads is based on a diameter equivalent to the mean of the pitch and minor diameters. The pitch and the minor diameters for Unified screw threads can be found from the major (nominal) diameter, d, and the screw pitch, $P = 1/n$, where n is the number of threads per inch, by use of the following formulas: the pitch diameter $d_p = d - 0.649519 \times P$; the minor diameter $d_m = d - 1.299038 \times P$. The tensile stress area, A_s, for Unified threads can then be found as follows:

$$A_s = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(\frac{d_m + d_p}{2}\right)^2 \tag{9}$$

UNJ threads in accordance with MIL-S-8879 have a tensile thread area that is usually considered to be at the basic bolt pitch diameter; for these threads, $A_s = (\pi d_p^2)/4$. The tensile stress area for Unified screw threads is smaller than this area, so the required tightening torque for UNJ threaded bolts is greater than for an equally stressed Unified threaded bolt in an equivalent joint. To convert tightening torque for a Unified fastener to the equivalent torque required with a UNJ fastener, use the following relationship:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\text{UNJ}_{\text{torque}} = \left(\frac{d \times n - 0.6495}{d \times n - 0.9743}\right)^2 \times \text{Unified}_{\text{torque}} \tag{10}$$

where d is the basic thread major diameter, and n is the number of threads per inch.

The tensile stress area for metric threads is based on a diameter equivalent to the mean of the pitch diameter and a diameter obtained by subtracting $\frac{1}{6}$ the height of the fundamental thread triangle from the external-thread minor diameter. The Japanese Industrial Standard JIS B 1082 (see also ISO 898/1) defines the stress area of metric screw threads as follows:

$$A_s = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(\frac{d_2 + d_3}{2}\right)^2 \tag{11}$$

In Equation (11), A_s is the stress area of the metric screw thread in mm^2; d_2 is the pitch diameter of the external thread in mm, given by $d_2 = d - 0.649515 \times P$; and d_3 is defined by $d_3 = d_1 - H/6$. Here, d is the nominal bolt diameter; P is the thread pitch; $d_1 = d - 1.082532 \times P$ is the minor diameter of the external thread in mm; and $H = 0.866025 \times P$ is the height of the fundamental thread triangle. Substituting the formulas for d_2 and d_3 into Equation (11) results in $A_s = 0.7854(d - 0.9382P)^2$.

The stress area, A_s, of Unified threads in mm^2 is given in JIS B 1082 as:

$$A_s = 0.7854\left(d - \frac{0.9743}{n} \times 25.4\right)^2 \tag{12}$$

Relation between Torque and Clamping Force.—The Japanese Industrial Standard JIS B 1803 defines fastener tightening torque T_f as the sum of the bearing surface torque T_w and the shank (threaded) portion torque T_s. The relationship between the applied tightening torque and bolt preload F_{ft} is as follows: $T_f = T_s + T_w = K \times F_f \times d$. In the preceding, d is the nominal diameter of the screw thread, and K is the torque coefficient defined as follows:

$$K = \frac{1}{2d}\left(\frac{P}{\pi} + \mu_s d_2 \sec\alpha' + \mu_w D_w\right) \tag{13}$$

where P is the screw thread pitch; μ_s is the coefficient of friction between threads; d_2 is the pitch diameter of the thread; μ_w is the coefficient of friction between bearing surfaces; D_w is the equivalent diameter of the friction torque bearing surfaces; and α' is the flank angle at the ridge perpendicular section of the thread ridge, defined by $\tan\alpha' = \tan\alpha \cos\beta$, where α is the thread half angle (30°, for example), and β is the thread helix, or lead, angle. β can be found from $\tan\beta = l \div 2\pi r$, where l is the thread lead, and r is the thread radius (i.e., one-half the nominal diameter d). When the bearing surface contact area is circular, D_w can be obtained as follows:

$$D_w = \frac{2}{3} \times \frac{D_o^3 - D_i^3}{D_o^2 - D_i^2} \tag{14}$$

where D_o and D_i are the outside and inside diameters, respectively, of the bearing surface contact area.

The torques attributable to the threaded portion of a fastener, T_s, and bearing surfaces of a joint, T_w, are as follows:

$$T_s = \frac{F_f}{2}\left(\frac{P}{\pi} + \mu_s d_2 \sec\alpha'\right) \tag{15}$$

$$T_w = \frac{F_f}{2}\mu_w D_w \tag{16}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where $F_f, P, \mu, d_2, \alpha', \mu_w$, and D_w are as previously defined.

Table 3 and Table 4 give values of torque coefficient K for coarse- and fine-pitch metric screw threads corresponding to various values of μ_s and μ_w. When a fastener material yields according to the shearing-strain energy theory, the torque corresponding to the yield clamping force (see Fig. 4) is $T_{fy} = K \times F_{fy} \times d$, where the yield clamping force F_{fy} is given by:

$$F_{fy} = \frac{\sigma_y A_s}{\sqrt{1 + 3\left[\frac{2}{d_A}\left(\frac{P}{\pi} + \mu_s d_2 \sec\alpha'\right)\right]^2}} \tag{17}$$

Table 3. Torque Coefficients *K* for Metric Hexagon Head Bolt and Nut Coarse Screw Threads

Between Threads, μ_s	Coefficient of Friction Between Bearing Surfaces, μ_w									
	0.08	0.10	0.12	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45
0.08	0.117	0.130	0.143	0.163	0.195	0.228	0.261	0.293	0.326	0.359
0.10	0.127	0.140	0.153	0.173	0.206	0.239	0.271	0.304	0.337	0.369
0.12	0.138	0.151	0.164	0.184	0.216	0.249	0.282	0.314	0.347	0.380
0.15	0.153	0.167	0.180	0.199	0.232	0.265	0.297	0.330	0.363	0.396
0.20	0.180	0.193	0.206	0.226	0.258	0.291	0.324	0.356	0.389	0.422
0.25	0.206	0.219	0.232	0.252	0.284	0.317	0.350	0.383	0.415	0.448
0.30	0.232	0.245	0.258	0.278	0.311	0.343	0.376	0.409	0.442	0.474
0.35	0.258	0.271	0.284	0.304	0.337	0.370	0.402	0.435	0.468	0.500
0.40	0.285	0.298	0.311	0.330	0.363	0.396	0.428	0.461	0.494	0.527
0.45	0.311	0.324	0.337	0.357	0.389	0.422	0.455	0.487	0.520	0.553

Values in the table are average values of torque coefficient calculated using: Equations (13) and (14) for K and D_w; diameters d of 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16, 20, 24, 30, and 36 mm; and selected corresponding pitches P and pitch diameters d_2 according to JIS B 0205 (ISO 724) thread standard. Dimension D_i was obtained for a Class 2 fit without chamfer from JIS B 1001, Diameters of Clearance Holes and Counterbores for Bolts and Screws (equivalent to ISO 273-1979). The value of D_o was obtained by multiplying the reference dimension from JIS B 1002, width across the flats of the hexagon head, by 0.95.

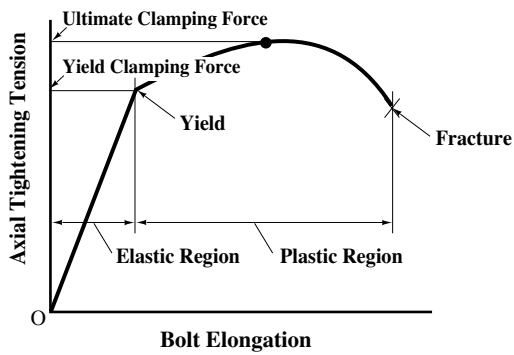


Fig. 4. Relationship between Bolt Elongation and Axial Tightening Tension

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Torque Coefficients *K* for Metric Hexagon Head Bolt and Nut Fine Screw Threads

Coefficient of Friction										
Between Threads, μ_s	Between Bearing Surfaces, μ_w									
	0.08	0.10	0.12	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45
0.08	0.106	0.118	0.130	0.148	0.177	0.207	0.237	0.267	0.296	0.326
0.10	0.117	0.129	0.141	0.158	0.188	0.218	0.248	0.278	0.307	0.337
0.12	0.128	0.140	0.151	0.169	0.199	0.229	0.259	0.288	0.318	0.348
0.15	0.144	0.156	0.168	0.186	0.215	0.245	0.275	0.305	0.334	0.364
0.20	0.171	0.183	0.195	0.213	0.242	0.272	0.302	0.332	0.361	0.391
0.25	0.198	0.210	0.222	0.240	0.270	0.299	0.329	0.359	0.389	0.418
0.30	0.225	0.237	0.249	0.267	0.297	0.326	0.356	0.386	0.416	0.445
0.35	0.252	0.264	0.276	0.294	0.324	0.353	0.383	0.413	0.443	0.472
0.40	0.279	0.291	0.303	0.321	0.351	0.381	0.410	0.440	0.470	0.500
0.45	0.306	0.318	0.330	0.348	0.378	0.408	0.437	0.467	0.497	0.527

Values in the table are average values of torque coefficient calculated using Equations (13) and (14) for K and D_w; diameters d of 8, 10, 12, 16, 20, 24, 30, and 36 mm; and selected respective pitches P and pitch diameters d_2 according to JIS B 0207 thread standard (ISO 724). Dimension D_i was obtained for a Class 1 fit without chamfer from JIS B 1001, Diameters of Clearance Holes and Counterbores for Bolts and Screws (equivalent to ISO 273-1979). The value of D_o was obtained by multiplying the reference dimension from JIS B 1002 (small type series), width across the flats of the hexagon head, by 0.95.

In Equation (17), σ_y is the yield point or proof stress of the bolt, A_s is the stress area of the thread, and $d_A = (4A_s/\pi)^{1/2}$ is the diameter of a circle having an area equal to the stress area of the thread. The other variables have been identified previously.

Example: Find the torque required to tighten a 10-mm coarse-threaded ($P = 1.5$) grade 8.8 bolt to yield assuming that both the thread- and bearing-friction coefficients are 0.12.

Solution: From Equation (17), calculate F_{fy} and then solve $T_{fy} = KF_{fy}d$ to obtain the torque required to stress the bolt to the yield point.

$\sigma_y = 640$ N/mm^2 (MPa) (minimum, based on 8.8 grade rating)

$A_s = 0.7854(10 - 0.9382 \times 1.5)^2 = 57.99$ mm^2

$d_A = (4A_s/\pi)^{1/2} = 8.6$ mm

$d_2 = 9.026$ mm (see JIS B 0205 or ISO 724)

Find α' from $\tan\alpha' = \tan\alpha\cos\beta$ using:

$\alpha = 30°$; $\tan\beta = l \div 2\pi r$; $l = P = 1.5$; and $r = d \div 2 = 5$ mm

$\tan\beta = 1.5 \div 10\pi = 0.0477$, therefore $\beta = 2.73°$

$\tan\alpha' = \tan\alpha\cos\beta = \tan 30° \times \cos 2.73° = 0.577$, and $\alpha' = 29.97°$

Solving Equation (17) gives the yield clamping force as follows:

$$F_{fy} = \frac{640 \times 57.99}{\sqrt{1 + 3\left[\frac{2}{8.6}\left(\frac{1.5}{\pi} + 0.12 \times 9.026 \times \sec 29.97°\right)\right]^2}} = 30{,}463\text{N}$$

K can be determined from Table 3 (coarse thread) and Table 4 (fine thread) or from Equations (13) and (14). From Table 3, for μ_s and μ_w equal to 0.12, $K = 0.164$. The yield-point tightening torque can then be found from $T_{fy} = K \times F_{fy} \times d = 0.164 \times 30{,}463 \times 10 = 49.9 \times 10^3$ N-mm = 49.9 N-m.

Obtaining Torque and Friction Coefficients.— Given suitable test equipment, the torque coefficient K and friction coefficients between threads μ_s or between bearing surfaces μ_w can be determined experimentally as follows: Measure the value of the axial tightening

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tension and the corresponding tightening torque at an arbitrary point in the 50 to 80 percent range of the bolt yield point or proof stress (for steel bolts, use the minimum value of the yield point or proof stress multiplied by the stress area of the bolt). Repeat this test several times and average the results. The tightening torque may be considered as the sum of the torque on the threads plus the torque on the bolt head- or nut-to-joint bearing surface. The torque coefficient can be found from $K = T_f \div F_f \times d$, where F_f is the measured axial tension, and T_f is the measured tightening torque.

To measure the coefficient of friction between threads or bearing surfaces, obtain the total tightening torque and that portion of the torque due to the thread or bearing surface friction. If only tightening torque and the torque on the bearing surfaces can be measured, then the difference between these two measurements can be taken as the thread-tightening torque. Likewise, if only the tightening torque and threaded-portion torque are known, the torque due to bearing can be taken as the difference between the known torques. The coefficients of friction between threads and bearing surfaces, respectively, can be obtained from the following:

$$\mu_s = \frac{2T_s \cos\alpha'}{d_2 F_f} - \cos\alpha' \tan\beta \qquad (18)$$

$$\mu_w = \frac{2T_w}{D_w F_f} \qquad (19)$$

As before, T_s is the torque attributable to the threaded portion of the screw, T_w is the torque due to bearing, D_w is the equivalent diameter of friction torque on bearing surfaces according to Equation (14), and F_f is the measured axial tension.

Torque-Tension Relationships.—Torque is usually applied to develop an axial load in a bolt. To achieve the desired axial load in a bolt, the torque must overcome friction in the threads and friction under the nut or bolt head. In Fig. 5, the axial load P_B is a component of the normal force developed between threads. The normal-force component perpendicular to the thread helix is $P_{N\beta}$ and the other component of this force is the torque load $P_B \tan\beta$ that is applied in tightening the fastener. Assuming the turning force is applied at the pitch diameter of the thread, the torque T_1 needed to develop the axial load is $T_1 = P_B \times \tan\beta \times d_2/2$. Substituting $\tan\beta = l \div \pi d_2$ into the previous expression gives $T_1 = P_B \times l \div 2\pi$.

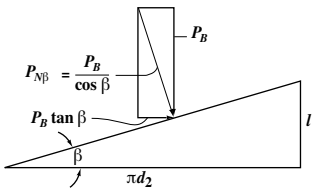


Fig. 5. Free Body Diagram of Thread Helix Forces

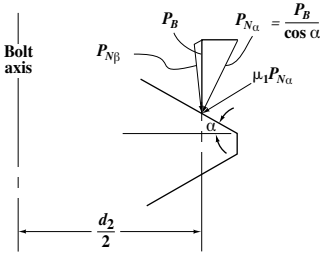


Fig. 6. Thread Friction Force

In Fig. 6, the normal-force component perpendicular to the thread flanks is $P_{N\alpha}$. With a coefficient of friction μ_1 between the threads, the friction load is equal to $\mu_1 P_{N\alpha}$, or $\mu_1 P_B \div \cos\alpha$. Assuming the force is applied at the pitch diameter of the thread, the torque T_2 to overcome thread friction is given by:

$$T_2 = \frac{d_2 \mu_1 P_B}{2\cos\alpha} \qquad (20)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

With the coefficient of friction μ_2 between a nut or bolt-head pressure face and a component face, as in Fig. 7, the friction load is equal to $\mu_2 P_B$. Assuming the force is applied midway between the nominal (bolt) diameter d and the pressure-face diameter b, the torque T_3 to overcome the nut or bolt underhead friction is:

$$T_3 = \frac{d+b}{4}\mu_2 P_B \tag{21}$$

The total torque, T, required to develop axial bolt load, P_B, is equal to the sum of the torques T_1, T_2, and T_3 as follows:

$$T = P_B\left(\frac{l}{2\pi} + \frac{d_2\mu_1}{2\cos\alpha} + \frac{(d+b)\mu_2}{4}\right) \tag{22}$$

For a fastener system with 60° threads, $\alpha = 30°$ and d_2 is approximately $0.92d$. If no loose washer is used under the rotated nut or bolt head, b is approximately $1.5d$ and Equation (22) reduces to:

$$T = P_B\left[0.159 \times l + d(0.531\mu_1 + 0.625\mu_2)\right] \tag{23}$$

In addition to the conditions of Equation (23), if the thread and bearing friction coefficients, μ_1 and μ_2, are equal (which is not necessarily so), then $\mu_1 = \mu_2 = \mu$, and the previous equation reduces to:

$$T = P_B\left(0.159l + 1.156\mu d\right) \tag{24}$$

Example: Estimate the torque required to tighten a UNC ½-13 grade 8 steel bolt to a preload equivalent to 55 percent of the minimum tensile bolt strength. Assume that the bolt is unplated and both the thread and bearing friction coefficients equal 0.15.

Solution: The minimum tensile strength for SAE grade 8 bolt material is 150,000 psi (from page 1666). To use Equation (24), find the stress area of the bolt using Equation (9) with $P = 1/13$, $d_m = d - 1.2990P$, and $d_p = d - 0.6495P$, and then calculate the necessary preload, P_B, and the applied torque, T.

$$A_s = \frac{\pi}{4}\left(\frac{0.4500 + 0.4001}{2}\right)^2 = 0.1419 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$P_B = \sigma_{\text{allow}} \times A_s = 0.55 \times 150000 \times 0.1419 = 11707 \text{ lb}_\text{f}$$

$$T = 11707\left(\frac{0.159}{13} + 1.156 \times 0.15 \times 0.500\right) = 1158 \text{ lb-in.} = 96.51 \text{lb-ft}$$

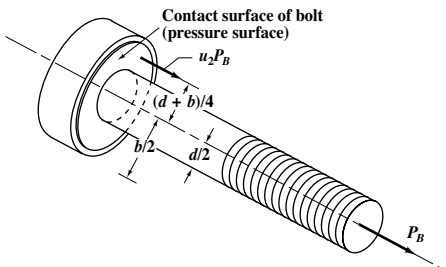
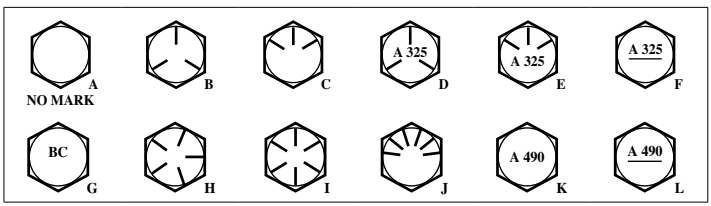


Fig. 7. Nut or Bolt Head Friction Force

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Grade Marks and Material Properties for Bolts and Screws.—Bolts, screws, and other fasteners are marked on the head with a symbol that identifies the grade of the fastener. The grade specification establishes the minimum mechanical properties that the fastener must meet. Additionally, industrial fasteners must be stamped with a registered head mark that identifies the manufacturer. The grade identification table identifies the grade markings and gives mechanical properties for some commonly used ASTM and SAE steel fasteners. Metric fasteners are identified by property grade marks, which are specified in ISO and SAE standards. These marks are discussed with metric fasteners.

Grade Identification Marks and Mechanical Properties of Bolts and Screws



Identifier	Grade	Size (in.)	Min. Strength (10^3 psi)			Material & Treatment
			Proof	Tensile	Yield	
A	SAE Grade 1	¼ to 1½	33	60	36	1
	ASTM A307	¼ to 1½	33	60	36	3
	SAE Grade 2	¼ to ¾	55	74	57	1
		⅞ to 1½	33	60	36	
	SAE Grade 4	¼ to 1½	65	115	100	2, a
B	SAE Grade 5, ASTM A449	¼ to 1	85	120	92	2,b
	ASTM A449	1⅛ to 1½	74	105	81	
	ASTM A449	1¾ to 3	55	90	58	
C	SAE Grade 5.2	¼ to 1	85	120	92	4, b
D	ASTM A325, Type 1	½ to 1	85	120	92	2,b
		1⅛ to 1½	74	105	81	
E	ASTM A325, Type 2	½ to 1	85	120	92	4, b
		1⅛ to 1½	74	105	81	
F	ASTM A325, Type 3	½ to 1	85	120	92	5, b
		1⅛ to 1½	74	105	81	
G	ASTM A354, Grade BC	¼ to 2½	105	125	109	5, b
		2⅝ to 4	95	115	99	
H	SAE Grade 7	¼ to 1½	105	133	115	7, b
I	SAE Grade 8	¼ to 1½	120	150	130	7, b
	ASTM A354, Grade BD	¼ to 2½	120	150	130	6, b
		2⅝ to 4	105	140	115	
J	SAE Grade 8.2	¼ to 1	120	150	130	4, b
K	ASTM A490, Type 1	½ to 1½	120	150	130	6, b
L	ASTM A490, Type 3					5, b

Material Steel: 1—low or medium carbon; 2—medium carbon; 3—low carbon; 4—low-carbon martensite; 5—weathering steel; 6—alloy steel; 7—medium-carbon alloy. Treatment: a—cold drawn; b—quench and temper.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Detecting Counterfeit Fasteners.—Fasteners that have markings identifying them as belonging to a specific grade or property class are counterfeit if they do not meet the standards established for that class. Counterfeit fasteners may break unexpectedly at smaller loads than expected. Generally, these fasteners are made from the wrong material or they are not properly strengthened during manufacture. Either way, counterfeit fasteners can lead to dangerous failures in assemblies. The law now requires testing of fasteners used in some critical applications. Detection of counterfeit fasteners is difficult because the counterfeits look genuine. The only sure way to determine if a fastener meets its specification is to test it. However, reputable distributors will assist in verifying the authenticity of the fasteners they sell. For important applications, fasteners can be checked to determine whether they perform according to the standard. Typical laboratory checks used to detect fakes include testing hardness, elongation, and ultimate loading, and a variety of chemical tests.

Mechanical Properties and Grade Markings of Nuts.—Three grades of hex and square nuts designated Grades 2, 5, and 8 are specified by the SAE J995 standard covering nuts in the $\frac{1}{4}$- to $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch diameter range. Grades 2, 5, and 8 nuts roughly correspond to the SAE specified bolts of the same grade. Additional specifications are given for miscellaneous nuts such as hex jam nuts, hex slotted nuts, heavy hex nuts, etc. Generally speaking, use nuts of a grade equal to or greater than the grade of the bolt being used. Grade 2 nuts are not required to be marked, however, all Grades 5 and 8 nuts in the $\frac{1}{4}$- to $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch range must be marked in one of three ways: Grade 5 nuts may be marked with a dot on the face of the nut and a radial or circumferential mark at 120° counterclockwise from the dot; or a dot at one corner of the nut and a radial line at 120° clockwise from the nut, or one notch at each of the six corners of the nut. Grade 8 nuts may be identified by a dot on the face of the nut with a radial or circumferential mark at 60° counterclockwise from the dot; or a dot at one corner of the nut and a radial line at 60° clockwise from the nut, or two notches at each of the six corners of the nut.

Working Strength of Bolts.—When the nut on a bolt is tightened, an initial tensile load is placed on the bolt that must be taken into account in determining its safe working strength or external load-carrying capacity. The total load on the bolt theoretically varies from a maximum equal to the sum of the initial and external loads (when the bolt is absolutely rigid and the parts held together are elastic) to a minimum equal to either the initial or external loads, whichever is the greater (where the bolt is elastic and the parts held together are absolutely rigid). No material is absolutely rigid, so in practice the total load values fall somewhere between these maximum and minimum limits, depending upon the relative elasticity of the bolt and joint members.

Some experiments made at Cornell University to determine the initial stress due to tightening nuts on bolts sufficiently to make a packed joint steam-tight showed that experienced mechanics tighten nuts with a pull roughly proportional to the bolt diameter. It was also found that the stress due to nut tightening was often sufficient to break a $\frac{1}{2}$-inch (12.7-mm) bolt, but not larger sizes, assuming that the nut is tightened by an experienced mechanic. It may be concluded, therefore, that bolts smaller than $\frac{5}{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) should not be used for holding cylinder heads or other parts requiring a tight joint. As a result of these tests, the following empirical formula was established for the working strength of bolts used for packed joints or joints where the elasticity of a gasket is greater than the elasticity of the studs or bolts.

$$W = S_t\,(0.55d^2 - 0.25d)$$

In this formula, W = working strength of bolt or permissible load, in pounds, after allowance is made for initial load due to tightening; S_t = allowable working stress in tension, pounds per square inch; and d = nominal outside diameter of stud or bolt, inches. A somewhat more convenient formula, and one that gives approximately the same results, is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$W = S_t(A - 0.25d)$$

In this formula, W, S_t, and d are as previously given, and A = area at the root of the thread, square inches.

Example: What is the working strength of a 1-inch bolt that is screwed tightly in a packed joint when the allowable working stress is 10,000 psi?

$$W = 10{,}000(0.55 \times 1^2 - 0.25 \times 1) = 3000 \text{ pounds approx.}$$

Formulas for Stress Areas and Lengths of Engagement of Screw Threads.—The critical areas of stress of mating screw threads are: 1) The effective cross-sectional area, or tensile-stress area, of the external thread; 2) the shear area of the external thread, which depends principally on the minor diameter of the tapped hole; and 3) the shear area of the internal thread, which depends principally on the major diameter of the external thread. The relation of these three stress areas to each other is an important factor in determining how a threaded connection will fail, whether by breakage in the threaded section of the screw (or bolt) or by stripping of either the external or internal thread.

If failure of a threaded assembly should occur, it is preferable for the screw to break rather than have either the external or internal thread strip. In other words, the length of engagement of mating threads should be sufficient to carry the full load necessary to break the screw without the threads stripping.

If mating internal and external threads are manufactured of materials having equal tensile strengths, then to prevent stripping of the external thread, the length of engagement should be not less than that given by Formula (1):

$$L_e = \frac{2 \times A_t}{3.1416 K_n \text{max}\left[\frac{1}{2} + 0.57735n(E_s \text{min} - K_n \text{max})\right]} \quad (1)$$

In this formula, the factor of 2 means that it is assumed that the area of the screw in shear must be twice the tensile-stress area to attain the full strength of the screw (this value is slightly larger than required and thus provides a small factor of safety against stripping); L_e = length of engagement, in inches; n = number of threads per inch; K_n max = maximum minor diameter of internal thread; E_s min = minimum pitch diameter of external thread for the class of thread specified; and A_t = tensile-stress area of screw thread given by Formula (2a) or (2b) or the thread tables for Unified threads, Table 4a through Table 5h starting on page 1978, which are based on Formula (2a).

For steels of up to 180,000 psi ultimate tensile strength,

$$A_t = 3.1416\left(\frac{E}{2} - \frac{3H}{16}\right)^2 \quad \text{or} \quad A_t = 0.7854\left(D - \frac{0.9743}{n}\right)^2 \quad (2a)$$

For steels of over 180,000 psi ultimate tensile strength,

$$A_t = 3.1416\left(\frac{E_s \text{min}}{2} - \frac{0.16238}{n}\right)^2 \quad (2b)$$

In these formulas, D = basic major diameter of the thread, E = basic pitch diameter, and the other symbols have the same meanings as before.

Stripping of Internal Thread: If the internal thread is made of material of lower strength than the external thread, stripping of the internal thread may take place before the screw breaks. To determine whether this condition exists, it is necessary to calculate the factor J for the relative strength of the external and internal threads given by Formula (3):

$$J = \frac{A_s \times \text{tensile strength of external thread material}}{A_n \times \text{tensile strength of internal thread material}} \quad (3)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If J is less than or equal to 1, the length of engagement determined by Formula (1) is adequate to prevent stripping of the internal thread; if J is greater than 1, the required length of engagement Q to prevent stripping of the internal thread is obtained by multiplying the length of engagement L_e, Formula (1), by J:

$$Q = JL_e \tag{4}$$

In Formula (3), A_s and A_n are the shear areas of the external and internal threads, respectively, given by Formulas (5) and (6):

$$A_s = 3.1416nL_eK_n\text{max}\left[\frac{1}{2n} + 0.57735(E_s\,\text{min} - K_n\text{max})\right] \tag{5}$$

$$A_n = 3.1416nL_eD_s\,\text{min}\left[\frac{1}{2n} + 0.57735(D_s\,\text{min} - E_n\text{max})\right] \tag{6}$$

In these formulas, n = threads per inch; L_e = length of engagement from Formula (1); K_n max = maximum minor diameter of internal thread; E_s min = minimum pitch diameter of the external thread for the class of thread specified; D_s min = minimum major diameter of the external thread; and E_n max = maximum pitch diameter of internal thread.

Load to Break Threaded Portion of Screws and Bolts.—The direct tensile load P to break the threaded portion of a screw or bolt (assuming that no shearing or torsional stresses are acting) can be determined from the following formula:

$$P = SA_t$$

where P = load in pounds to break screw; S = ultimate tensile strength of material of screw or bolt in pounds per square inch; and A_t = tensile-stress area in square inches from Formula (2a), (2b), or from the screw thread tables.

Lock Wire Procedure Detail.—Wire ties are frequently used as a locking device for bolted connections to prevent loosening due to vibration and loading conditions, or tampering. The use of safety wire ties is illustrated in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 below. The illustrations assume the use of right-hand threaded fasteners and the following additional rules apply:

1) No more that three bolts may be tied together; 2) bolt heads may be tied as shown only when the female thread receiver is captive; 3) pre-drilled nuts may be tied in a fashion similar to that illustrated with the following conditions: a) Nuts must be heat treated; and b) nuts are factory drilled for use with lock wire; 4) lock wire must fill a minimum of 75 percent of the drilled hole provided for the use of lock wire; and 5) lock wire must be aircraft quality stainless steel of 0.508 mm (0.020 inch) diameter, 0.8128 mm (0.032 inch) diameter, or 1.067 mm (0.042 inch) diameter. Diameter of lock wire is determined by the thread size of the fastener to be safe-tied: a) Thread sizes of 6 mm (0.25 inch) and smaller use 0.508 mm (0.020 inch) wire; b) thread sizes of 6 mm (0.25 inch) to 12 mm (0.5 inch) use 0.8128 mm (0.032 inch) wire; c) thread sizes > 12 mm (0.5 inch) use 1.067 mm (0.042 inch) wire; and d) the larger wire may be used in smaller bolts in cases of convenience, but smaller wire must not be used in larger fastener sizes.

Fig. 1. Three Bolt Procedure

Fig. 2. Two Bolt Procedure

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

INCH THREADED FASTENERS

Dimensions of bolts, screws, nuts, and washers used in machine construction are given here. For data on thread forms, see the section *SCREW THREAD SYSTEMS* starting on page 1940.

American Square and Hexagon Bolts, Screws, and Nuts.—The 1941 American Standard ASA B18.2 covered head dimensions only. In 1952 and 1955 the Standard was revised to cover the entire product. Some bolt and nut classifications were simplified by elimination or consolidation in agreements reached with the British and Canadians. In 1965 ASA B18.2 was redesignated into two standards: B18.2.1 covering square and hexagon bolts and screws including hexagon cap screws and lag screws and B18.2.2 covering square and hexagon nuts. In B18.2.1-1965, hexagon head cap screws and finished hexagon bolts were consolidated into a single product; heavy semifinished hexagon bolts and heavy finished hexagon bolts were consolidated into a single product; regular semifinished hexagon bolts were eliminated; a new tolerance pattern for all bolts and screws and a positive identification procedure for determining whether an externally threaded product should be designated as a bolt or screw were established. Also included in this standard are heavy hexagon bolts and heavy hexagon structural bolts. In B18.2.2-1965, regular semifinished nuts were discontinued; regular hexagon and heavy hexagon nuts in sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ through 1 inch, finished hexagon nuts in sizes larger than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, washer-faced semifinished style of finished nuts in sizes $\frac{5}{8}$-inch and smaller and heavy series nuts in sizes $\frac{7}{16}$-inch and smaller were eliminated.

Further revisions and refinements include the addition of a skew head bolts and hex head lag screws and the specifying of countersunk diameters for the various hex nuts. Heavy hex structural bolts and heavy hex nuts were moved to a new structural applications standard, ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019, *Fasteners for Use in Structural Applications*. Additionally, B18.2.1 has been revised to allow easier conformance to Public Law 101-592. All these changes are reflected in ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012, and ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015.

Unified Square and Hexagon Bolts, Screws, and Nuts.—Items that are recognized in the Standard as "unified" dimensionally with British and Canadian standards are shown in bold-face in certain tables.

The other items in the same tables are based on formulas accepted and published by the British for sizes outside the ranges listed in their standards which, as a matter of information, are BS 1768:1963 (obsolescent) for Precision (Normal Series) Unified Hexagon Bolts, Screws, Nuts (UNC and UNF Threads) and BS 1769 and amendments for Black (Heavy Series) Unified Hexagon Bolts, etc. Tolerances applied to comparable dimensions of American and British Unified bolts and nuts may differ because of rounding off practices and other factors.

Differentiation between Bolt and Screw.—A bolt is an externally threaded fastener designed for insertion through holes in assembled parts, and is normally intended to be tightened or released by torquing a nut.

A screw is an externally threaded fastener capable of being inserted into holes in assembled parts, of mating with a preformed internal thread or forming its own thread and of being tightened or released by torquing the head.

An externally threaded fastener which is prevented from being turned during assembly, and which can be tightened or released only by torquing a nut is a *bolt*. (*Example:* round head bolts, track bolts, plow bolts.)

An externally threaded fastener that has a thread form which prohibits assembly with a nut having a straight thread of multiple pitch length is a *screw*. (*Example:* wood screws, tapping screws.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

An externally threaded fastener that must be assembled with a nut to perform its intended service is a *bolt*. (*Example:* heavy hex structural bolt.)

An externally threaded fastener that must be torqued by its head into a tapped or other preformed hole to perform its intended service is a *screw*. (*Example:* square head set screw.)

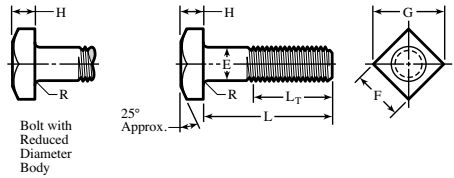


Fig. 1. Square Bolts (Table 1)

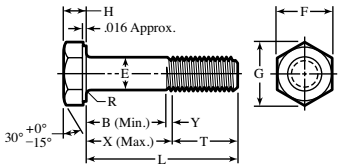


Fig. 2. Heavy Hex Structural Bolts (Table 2)

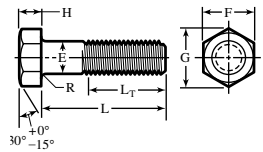


Fig. 3. Hex Bolts, Heavy Hex Bolts (Table 3)

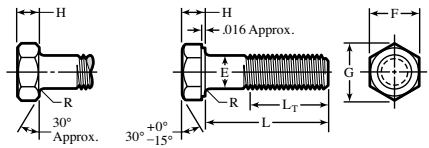


Fig. 4. Hex Cap Screws, Heavy Hex Screws (Table 4)

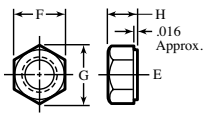


Fig. 5. Hex Nuts, Heavy Hex Nuts (Table 7)

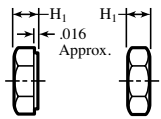


Fig. 6. Hex Jam Nuts, Heavy Hex Jam Nuts (Table 7)

Square and Hex Bolts, Screws, and Nuts.—The dimensions for square and hex bolts and screws given in the following tables have been taken from American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012 and for nuts from American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015. Reference should be made to these Standards for information or data not found in the following text and tables:

Designation: Bolts and screws should be designated by the following data in the sequence shown: nominal size (fractional and decimal equivalent); threads per inch (omit for lag screws); product length for bolts and screws (fractional or two-place decimal equivalent); product name; material, including specification, where necessary; and protective finish, if required. Examples: (1) $\frac{3}{8}$-16 × 1$\frac{1}{2}$ Square Bolt, Steel, Zinc Plated; (2) $\frac{1}{2}$-13 × 3 Hex Cap

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Screw, SAE Grade 8 Steel; and (3) .75 × 5.00 Hex Lag Screw, Steel. (4) 1/2-13 Square Nut, Steel, Zinc Plated; (5) 3/4-16 Heavy Hex Nut, SAE J995 Grade 5 Steel; and (6) 1000-8 Hex Thick Slotted Nut, ASTM F594 (Alloy Group 1) Corrosion-Resistant Steel.

Table 1. American National Standard and Unified Standard Square Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012

SQUARE BOLTS (Fig. 1)											
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Product Dia.		Body Dia.[b] *E*	Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Head Height *H*			Thread Length[c] L_T
		Max.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Nom.
1/4	**0.2500**	**0.260**	3/8	**0.375**	**0.362**	**0.530**	**0.498**	11/64	**0.188**	**0.156**	0.750
5/16	**0.3125**	**0.324**	1/2	**0.500**	**0.484**	**0.707**	**0.665**	13/64	**0.220**	**0.186**	0.875
3/8	**0.3750**	**0.388**	9/16	**0.562**	**0.544**	**0.795**	**0.747**	1/4	**0.268**	**0.232**	1.000
7/16	**0.4375**	**0.452**	5/8	**0.625**	**0.603**	**0.884**	**0.828**	19/64	**0.316**	**0.278**	1.125
1/2	**0.5000**	**0.515**	3/4	**0.750**	**0.725**	**1.061**	**0.995**	21/64	**0.348**	**0.308**	1.250
5/8	**0.6250**	**0.642**	15/16	**0.938**	**0.906**	**1.326**	**1.244**	27/64	**0.444**	**0.400**	1.500
3/4	**0.7500**	**0.768**	1 1/8	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.591**	**1.494**	1/2	**0.524**	**0.476**	1.750
7/8	**0.8750**	**0.895**	1 5/16	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.856**	**1.742**	19/32	**0.620**	**0.568**	2.000
1	**1.0000**	**1.022**	1 1/2	**1.500**	**1.450**	**2.121**	**1.991**	21/32	**0.684**	**0.628**	2.250
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1.149**	1 11/16	**1.688**	**1.631**	**2.386**	**2.239**	3/4	**0.780**	**0.720**	2.500
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1.277**	1 7/8	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.652**	**2.489**	27/32	**0.876**	**0.812**	2.750
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**1.404**	2 1/16	**2.602**	**1.994**	**2.917**	**2.738**	29/32	**0.940**	**0.872**	3.000
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**1.531**	2 1/4	**2.250**	**2.175**	**3.182**	**2.986**	**1**	**1.036**	**0.964**	3.250

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros before the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] See *Body Diameter* footnote in Table 3.

[c] Thread lengths, L_T, shown are for bolt lengths 6 inches and shorter. For longer bolt lengths add 0.250 inch to thread lengths shown.

Table 2. American National Standard Heavy Hex Structural Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-1981 (R1992)[a]

HEAVY HEX STRUCTURAL BOLTS (Fig. 2)													
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Product Dia.		Body Dia. *E*		Width Across Flats *F*		Width Across Corners *G*		Height *H*		Radius of Fillet *R*		Thread Length L_T	Trans. Thread *Y*
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.
1/2	0.5000	0.515	0.482	0.875	0.850	1.010	0.969	0.323	0.302	0.031	0.009	1.00	0.19
5/8	0.6250	0.642	0.605	1.062	1.031	1.227	1.175	0.403	0.378	0.062	0.021	1.25	0.22
3/4	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1.250	1.212	1.443	1.383	0.483	0.455	0.062	0.021	1.38	0.25
7/8	0.8750	0.895	0.852	1.438	1.394	1.660	1.589	0.563	0.531	0.062	0.031	1.50	0.28
1	1.0000	1.022	0.976	1.625	1.575	1.876	1.796	0.627	0.591	0.093	0.062	1.75	0.31
1 1/8	1.1250	1.149	1.098	1.812	1.756	2.093	2.002	0.718	0.658	0.093	0.062	2.00	0.34
1 1/4	1.2500	1.277	1.223	2.000	1.938	2.309	2.209	0.813	0.749	0.093	0.062	2.00	0.38
1 3/8	1.3750	1.404	1.345	2.188	2.119	2.526	2.416	0.878	0.810	0.093	0.062	2.25	0.44
1 1/2	1.5000	1.531	1.470	2.375	2.300	2.742	2.622	0.974	0.902	0.093	0.062	2.25	0.44

[a] The table has been included for reference only. Heavy hex structural bolts have been removed from ANSI/ASME B18.2.1 and are now included in ANSI/ASME B18.2.6.

All dimensions are in inches. **Bold type shows bolts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.** Threads, when rolled, shall be Unified Coarse, Fine, or 8-thread series (UNRC, UNRF, or 8 UNR Series), Class 2A. Threads produced by other methods may be Unified Coarse, Fine, or 8-thread series (UNC, UNF, or 8 UN Series), Class 2A.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard and Unified Standard Hex and Heavy Hex Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012*

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Dia.		Full Size Body Dia. *E*	Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Head Height *H*			Thread Length[b] L_T
		Max.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Nom.
HEX BOLTS (Fig. 3)											
1/4	**0.2500**	**0.260**	7/16	**0.438**	**0.425**	**0.505**	**0.484**	11/64	**0.188**	**0.150**	0.750
5/16	**0.3125**	**0.324**	1/2	**0.500**	**0.484**	**0.577**	**0.552**	7/32	**0.235**	**0.195**	0.875
3/8	**0.3750**	**0.388**	9/16	**0.562**	**0.544**	**0.650**	**0.620**	1/4	**0.268**	**0.226**	1.000
7/16	**0.4375**	**0.452**	5/8	**0.625**	**0.603**	**0.722**	**0.687**	19/64	**0.316**	**0.272**	1.125
1/2	**0.5000**	**0.515**	3/4	**0.750**	**0.725**	**0.866**	**0.826**	11/32	**0.364**	**0.302**	1.250
5/8	**0.6250**	**0.642**	15/16	**0.938**	**0.906**	**1.083**	**1.033**	27/64	**0.444**	**0.378**	1.500
3/4	**0.7500**	**0.768**	1 1/8	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.299**	**1.240**	1/2	**0.524**	**0.455**	1.750
7/8	**0.8750**	**0.895**	1 5/16	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.516**	**1.447**	37/64	**0.604**	**0.531**	2.000
1	**1.0000**	**1.022**	1 1/2	**1.500**	**1.450**	**1.732**	**1.653**	43/64	**0.700**	**0.591**	2.250
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1.149**	1 11/16	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	3/4	**0.780**	**0.658**	2.500
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1.277**	1 7/8	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	27/32	**0.876**	**0.749**	2.750
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**1.404**	2 1/16	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	29/32	**0.940**	**0.810**	3.000
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**1.531**	2 1/4	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	**1**	**1.036**	**0.902**	3.250
1 5/8	**1.6250**	**1.658**	2 7/16	**2.438**	**2.356**	**2.815**	**2.616**	1 3/32	**1.116**	**0.978**	3.500
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**1.785**	2 5/8	**2.625**	**2.538**	**3.031**	**2.893**	1 5/32	**1.196**	**1.054**	3.750
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**1.912**	2 13/16	**2.812**	**2.719**	**3.248**	**3.099**	1 1/4	**1.276**	**1.130**	4.000
2	**2.0000**	**2.039**	**3**	**3.000**	**2.900**	**3.464**	**3.306**	1 11/32	**1.388**	**1.175**	4.250
2 1/4	2.2500	2.305	3 3/8	3.375	3.262	3.897	3.719	1 1/2	1.548	1.327	4.750
2 1/2	2.5000	2.559	3 3/4	3.750	3.625	4.330	4.133	1 21/32	1.708	1.479	5.250
2 3/4	2.7500	2.827	4 1/8	4.125	3.988	4.763	4.546	1 13/16	1.869	1.632	5.750
3	3.0000	3.081	4 1/2	4.500	4.350	5.196	4.959	2	2.060	1.815	6.250
3 1/4	3.2500	3.335	4 7/8	4.875	4.712	5.629	5.372	2 3/16	2.251	1.936	6.750
3 1/2	3.5000	3.589	5 1/4	5.250	5.075	6.062	5.786	2 5/16	2.380	2.057	7.250
3 3/4	3.7500	3.858	5 5/8	5.625	5.437	6.495	6.198	2 1/2	2.572	2.241	7.750
4	4.0000	4.111	6	6.000	5.800	6.928	6.612	2 11/16	2.764	2.424	8.250
HEAVY HEX BOLTS (Fig. 3)											
3/8	**0.3750**	**0.388**	1 1/16	**0.688**	**0.669**	**0.794**	**0.763**	1/4	0.268	0.226	1.000
1/2	**0.5000**	**0.515**	7/8	**0.875**	**0.850**	**1.010**	**0.969**	11/32	0.364	0.302	1.250
5/8	**0.6250**	**0.642**	1 1/16	**1.062**	**1.031**	**1.227**	**1.175**	27/64	0.444	0.378	1.500
3/4	**0.7500**	**0.768**	1 1/4	**1.250**	**1.212**	**1.443**	**1.383**	1/2	0.524	0.455	1.750
7/8	**0.8750**	**0.895**	1 7/16	**1.438**	**1.394**	**1.660**	**1.589**	37/64	0.604	0.531	2.000
1	**1.0000**	**1.022**	1 5/8	**1.625**	**1.575**	**1.876**	**1.796**	43/64	0.700	0.591	2.250
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1.149**	1 13/16	**1.812**	**1.756**	**2.093**	**2.002**	3/4	0.780	0.658	2.500
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1.277**	**2**	**2.000**	**1.938**	**2.309**	**2.209**	27/32	0.876	0.749	2.750
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**1.404**	2 3/16	**2.188**	**2.119**	**2.526**	**2.416**	29/32	0.940	0.810	3.000
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**1.531**	2 3/8	**2.375**	**2.300**	**2.742**	**2.622**	1	1.036	0.902	3.250
1 5/8	**1.6250**	**1.658**	2 9/16	**2.562**	**2.481**	**3.959**	**2.829**	1 3/32	1.116	0.978	3.500
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**1.785**	2 3/4	**2.750**	**2.662**	**3.175**	**3.035**	1 5/32	1.196	1.054	3.750
1 7/8	**1.8750**	**1.912**	2 15/16	**2.938**	**2.844**	**3.392**	**3.242**	1 1/4	1.276	1.130	4.000
2	**2.0000**	**2.039**	3 1/8	**3.125**	**3.025**	**3.608**	**3.449**	1 11/32	1.388	1.175	4.250
2 1/4	2.2500	2.305	3 1/2	3.500	3.388	4.041	3.862	1 1/2	1.548	1.327	4.750
2 1/2	2.5000	2.559	3 7/8	3.875	3.750	4.474	4.275	1 21/32	1.708	1.479	5.250
2 3/4	2.7500	2.827	4 1/4	4.250	4.112	4.907	4.688	1 13/16	1.869	1.632	5.750
3	3.0000	3.081	4 5/8	4.625	4.475	5.340	5.102	2	2.060	1.815	6.250

[a] *Nominal Size:* Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Thread lengths, L_T, shown are for bolt lengths 6 inches and shorter. For longer bolt lengths add 0.250 inch to thread lengths shown.

All dimensions are in inches.

Bold type shows bolts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.

Threads: Threads, when rolled, are Unified Coarse, Fine, or 8-thread series (UNRC, UNRF, or 8 UNR Series), Class 2A. Threads produced by other methods may be Unified Coarse, Fine or 8-thread series (UNC, UNF, or 8 UN Series), Class 2A.

Body Diameter: Bolts may be obtained in "reduced diameter body." Where "reduced diameter body" is specified, the body diameter may be reduced to approximately the pitch diameter of the thread. A shoulder of full body diameter under the head may be supplied at the option of the manufacturer.

Material: Unless otherwise specified, chemical and mechanical properties of steel bolts conform to ASTM A307, Grade A. Other materials are as agreed upon by manufacturer and purchaser.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard and Unified Standard Heavy Hex Screws and Hex Cap Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012*

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Product Dia.	Body Dia. *E*		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Height *H*			Thread Length[b] L_T
	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Basic
HEAVY HEX SCREWS (Fig. 4)											
3/8	**0.3750**	**0.360**	11/16	**0.688**	**0.669**	**0.794**	**0.763**	15/64	0.243	0.226	1.000
1/2	**0.5000**	**0.482**	7/8	**0.875**	**0.850**	**1.010**	**0.969**	5/16	0.323	0.302	1.250
5/8	**0.6250**	**0.605**	1 1/16	**1.062**	**1.031**	**1.227**	**1.175**	25/64	0.403	0.378	1.500
3/4	**0.7500**	**0.729**	1 1/4	**1.250**	**1.212**	**1.443**	**1.383**	15/32	0.483	0.455	1.750
7/8	**0.8750**	**0.852**	1 7/16	**1.438**	**1.394**	**1.660**	**1.589**	35/64	0.563	0.531	2.000
1	**1.0000**	**0.976**	1 5/8	**1.625**	**1.575**	**1.876**	**1.796**	39/64	0.627	0.591	2.250
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1.098**	1 13/16	**1.812**	**1.756**	**2.093**	**2.002**	11/16	0.718	0.658	2.500
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1.223**	**2**	**2.000**	**1.938**	**2.309**	**2.209**	25/32	0.813	0.749	2.750
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**1.345**	2 3/16	**2.188**	**2.119**	**2.526**	**2.416**	27/32	0.878	0.810	3.000
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**1.470**	2 5/8	**2.375**	**2.300**	**2.742**	**2.622**	15/16	0.974	0.902	3.250
1 5/8	**1.6250**	**1.591**	2 9/16	**2.562**	**2.481**	**2.959**	**2.829**	1	1.038	0.962	3.500
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**1.716**	2 3/4	**2.750**	**2.662**	**3.175**	**3.035**	1 3/32	1.134	1.054	3.750
1 7/8	**1.8750**	**1.839**	2 15/16	**2.938**	**2.844**	**3.392**	**3.242**	1 5/32	1.198	1.114	4.000
2	**2.0000**	**1.964**	3 1/8	**3.125**	**3.025**	**3.608**	**3.449**	1 7/32	1.263	1.175	4.250
2 1/4	2.2500	2.214	3 1/2	3.500	3.388	4.041	3.862	1 3/8	1.423	1.327	5.000[c]
2 1/2	2.5000	2.461	3 7/8	3.875	3.750	4.474	4.275	1 17/32	1.583	1.479	5.500[c]
2 3/4	2.7500	2.711	4 1/4	4.250	41.112	4.907	4.688	1 11/16	1.744	1.632	6.000[c]
3	3.0000	2.961	4 5/8	4.625	4.475	5.340	5.102	1 7/8	1.935	1.815	6.500[c]
3 1/4	3.2500	3.210	5	5.000	4.838	5.774	5.515	2	2.126	1.998	7.000[c]
3 1/2	3.5000	3.461	5 3/8	5.375	5.200	6.207	5.928	2 1/4	2.256	2.120	7.500[c]
3 3/4	3.7500	3.711	5 3/4	5.750	5.562	6.640	6.341	2 3/8	2.447	2.303	8.000[c]
4	4.0000	3.961	6 1/8	6.125	5.925	7.073	6.755	2 1/2	2.576	2.424	8.500[c]
4 1/4	4.2500	4.223	6 1/2	6.500	6.288	7.506	7.168	2 3/4	2.768	2.608	9.000[c]
4 1/2	4.5000	4.473	6 7/8	6.875	6.650	7.939	7.581	2 7/8	2.896	2.728	9.500[c]
4 3/4	4.7500	4.723	7 1/4	7.250	7.012	8.372	7.994	3	3.088	2.912	10.000[c]
5	5.0000	4.973	7 5/8	7.625	7.375	8.805	8.408	3 1/8	3.217	3.033	10.500[c]
5 1/4	5.2500	5.223	8	8.000	7.738	9.238	8.821	3 3/8	3.408	3.216	11.000[c]
5 1/2	5.5000	5.473	8 3/8	8.375	8.100	9.671	9.234	3 1/2	3.538	3.338	11.500[c]
5 3/4	5.7500	5.723	8 3/4	8.750	8.462	10.104	9.647	3 5/8	3.729	3.521	12.000[c]
6	5.0000	5.973	9 1/8	9.125	8.825	10.537	10.060	3 3/4	3.858	3.642	12.500[c]
HEX CAP SCREWS (Finished Hex Bolts) (Fig. 4)											
1/4	**0.2500**	**0.2450**	7/16	**0.438**	**0.428**	**0.505**	**0.488**	5/32	**0.163**	**0.150**	0.750
5/16	**0.3125**	**0.3065**	1/2	**0.500**	**0.489**	**0.577**	**0.557**	13/64	**0.211**	**0.195**	0.875
3/8	**0.3750**	**0.3690**	9/16	**0.562**	**0.551**	**0.650**	**0.628**	15/64	**0.243**	**0.226**	1.000
7/16	**0.4375**	**0.4305**	5/8	**0.625**	**0.612**	**0.722**	**0.698**	9/32	**0.291**	**0.272**	1.125
1/2	**0.5000**	**0.4930**	3/4	**0.750**	**0.736**	**0.866**	**0.840**	5/16	**0.323**	**0.302**	1.250
9/16	**0.5625**	**0.5545**	13/16	**0.812**	**0.798**	**0.938**	**0.910**	23/64	**0.371**	**0.348**	1.375
5/8	**0.6250**	**0.6170**	15/16	**0.938**	**0.922**	**1.083**	**1.051**	25/64	**0.403**	**0.378**	1.500
3/4	**0.7500**	**0.7410**	1 1/8	**1.125**	**1.100**	**1.299**	**1.254**	15/32	**0.483**	**0.455**	1.750
7/8	**0.8750**	**0.8660**	1 5/16	**1.312**	**1.285**	**1.516**	**1.465**	35/64	**0.563**	**0.531**	2.000
1	**1.0000**	**0.9900**	1 1/2	**1.500**	**1.469**	**1.732**	**1.675**	39/64	**0.627**	**0.591**	2.250
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1.1140**	1 11/16	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	11/16	**0.718**	**0.658**	2.500
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1.2390**	1 7/8	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	25/32	**0.813**	**0.749**	2.750
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**1.3630**	2 1/16	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	27/32	**0.878**	**0.810**	3.000
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**1.4880**	2 1/4	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	15/16	**0.974**	**0.902**	3.250
1 5/8	**1.6250**	**1.6130**	2 7/16	**2.438**	**2.356**	**2.815**	**2.686**	**1**	**1.038**	**0.962**	3.500
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**1.7380**	2 5/8	**2.625**	**2.538**	**3.031**	**2.893**	1 3/32	**1.134**	**1.054**	3.750
1 7/8	**1.8750**	**1.8630**	2 13/16	**2.812**	**2.719**	**3.248**	**3.099**	1 5/32	**1.198**	**1.114**	4.000
2	**2.0000**	**1.9880**	**3**	**3.000**	**2.900**	**3.464**	**3.306**	1 7/32	**1.263**	**1.175**	4.250
2 1/4	2.2500	2.2380	3 3/8	3.375	3.262	3.897	3.719	1 3/8	1.423	1.327	5.000[c]
2 1/2	2.5000	2.4880	3 3/4	3.750	3.625	4.330	4.133	1 17/32	1.583	1.479	5.500[c]
2 3/4	2.7500	2.7380	4 1/4	4.125	3.988	4.763	4.546	1 11/16	1.744	1.632	6.000[c]
3	3.0000	2.9880	4 1/2	4.500	4.350	5.196	4.959	1 7/8	1.935	1.815	6.500[c]

[a] *Nominal Size:* Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Thread lengths, L_T, shown are for bolt lengths 6 inches and shorter. For longer bolt lengths add 0.250 inch to thread lengths shown.

[c] Thread lengths, L_T, shown are for bolt lengths over 6 inches.

All dimensions are in inches.

Unification: **Bold type indicates product features unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.** Unification of fine thread products is limited to sizes 1 inch and smaller.

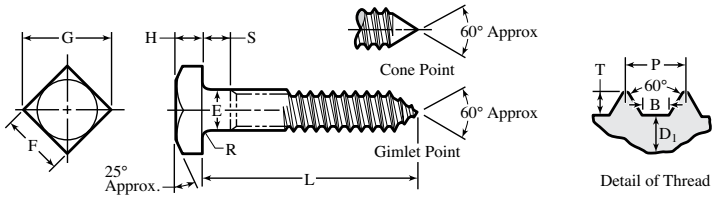
Bearing Surface: Bearing surface is flat and washer faced. Diameter of bearing surface is equal to the maximum width across flats within a tolerance of minus 10 percent.

Threads Series: Threads, when rolled, are Unified Coarse, Fine, or 8-thread series (UNRC, UNRF, or 8 UNR Series), Class 2A. Threads produced by other methods shall preferably be UNRC, UNRF or 8 UNR but, at manufacturer's option, may be Unified Coarse, Fine or 8-thread series (UNC, UNF, or 8 UN Series), Class 2A.

Material: Chemical and mechanical properties of steel screws normally conform to Grades 2, 5, or 8 of SAE J429, ASTM A449 or ASTM A354 Grade BD. Where specified, screws may also be made from brass, bronze, corrosion-resisting steel, aluminum alloy or other materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Square Lag Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012*



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Product Dia.		Body or Shoulder Dia. *E*		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Height *H*			Shoulder Length *S*	Radius of Fillet *R*	Thds. per Inch	Thread Dimensions			
		Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.		Pitch *P*	Flat at Root *B*	Depth of Thd. *T*	Root Dia. D_1
No. 10	0.1900	0.199	0.178	9/32	0.281	0.271	0.398	0.372	1/8	0.140	0.110	0.094	0.03	11	0.091	0.039	0.035	0.120
1/4	0.2500	0.260	0.237	3/8	0.375	0.362	0.530	0.498	11/64	0.188	0.156	0.094	0.03	10	0.100	0.043	0.039	0.173
5/16	0.3125	0.324	0.298	1/2	0.500	0.484	0.707	0.665	13/64	0.220	0.186	0.125	0.03	9	0.111	0.048	0.043	0.227
3/8	0.3750	0.388	0.360	9/16	0.562	0.544	0.795	0.747	1/4	0.268	0.232	0.125	0.03	7	0.143	0.062	0.055	0.265
7/16	0.4375	0.452	0.421	5/8	0.625	0.603	0.884	0.828	19/64	0.316	0.278	0.156	0.03	7	0.143	0.062	0.055	0.328
1/2	0.5000	0.515	0.482	3/4	0.750	0.725	1.061	0.995	21/64	0.348	0.308	0.156	0.03	6	0.167	0.072	0.064	0.371
5/8	0.6250	0.642	0.605	15/16	0.938	0.906	1.326	1.244	27/64	0.444	0.400	0.312	0.06	5	0.200	0.086	0.077	0.471
3/4	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1 1/8	1.125	1.088	1.591	1.494	1/2	0.524	0.476	0.375	0.06	4 1/2	0.222	0.096	0.085	0.579
7/8	0.8750	0.895	0.852	1 5/16	1.312	1.269	1.856	1.742	19/32	0.620	0.568	0.375	0.06	4	0.250	0.108	0.096	0.683
1	1.0000	1.022	0.976	1 1/2	1.500	1.450	2.121	1.991	21/32	0.684	0.628	0.625	0.09	3 1/2	0.286	0.123	0.110	0.780
1 1/8	1.1250	1.149	1.098	1 11/16	1.688	1.631	2.386	2.239	3/4	0.780	0.720	0.625	0.09	3 1/4	0.308	0.133	0.119	0.887
1 1/4	1.2500	1.277	1.223	1 7/8	1.875	1.812	2.652	2.489	27/32	0.876	0.812	0.625	0.09	3 1/4	0.308	0.133	0.119	1.012

[a] When specifying decimal nominal size, zeros before decimal point and in fourth decimal place are omitted.

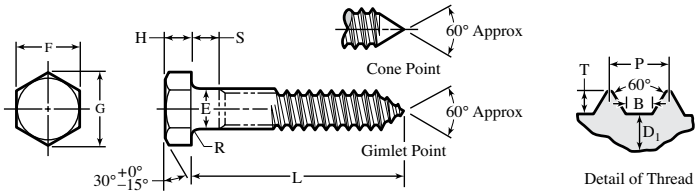
All dimensions in inches.

Minimum thread length is 1/2 length of screw plus 0.50 inch, or 6.00 inches, whichever is shorter. Screws too short for the formula thread length shall be threaded as close to the head as practicable.

Thread formulas: Pitch = 1 ÷ threads per inch. Flat at root = 0.4305 × pitch. Depth of single thread = 0.385 × pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Hex Lag Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012*



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Product Dia.		Body or Shoulder Dia. *E*		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Height *H*			Shoulder Length *S*	Radius of Fillet *R*	Thds. per Inch	Thread Dimensions			
		Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.		Pitch *P*	Flat at Root *B*	Depth of Thd. *T*	Root Dia. D_1
No. 10	0.1900	0.199	0.178	9/32	0.281	0.271	0.323	0.309	1/8	0.140	0.110	0.094	0.03	11	0.091	0.039	0.035	0.120
1/4	0.2500	0.260	0.237	3/8	0.438	0.425	0.505	0.484	11/64	0.188	0.150	0.094	0.03	10	0.100	0.043	0.039	0.173
5/16	0.3125	0.324	0.298	1/2	0.500	0.484	0.577	0.552	7/32	0.235	0.195	0.125	0.03	9	0.111	0.048	0.043	0.227
3/8	0.3750	0.388	0.360	9/16	0.562	0.544	0.650	0.620	1/4	0.268	0.226	0.125	0.03	7	0.143	0.062	0.055	0.265
7/16	0.4375	0.452	0.421	5/8	0.625	0.603	0.722	0.687	19/64	0.316	0.272	0.156	0.03	7	0.143	0.062	0.055	0.328
1/2	0.5000	0.515	0.482	3/4	0.750	0.725	0.866	0.826	11/32	0.364	0.302	0.156	0.03	6	0.167	0.072	0.064	0.371
5/8	0.6250	0.642	0.605	15/16	0.938	0.906	1.083	1.033	27/64	0.444	0.378	0.312	0.06	5	0.200	0.086	0.077	0.471
3/4	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1 1/8	1.125	1.088	1.299	1.240	1/2	0.524	0.455	0.375	0.06	4 1/2	0.222	0.096	0.085	0.579
7/8	0.8750	0.895	0.852	1 5/16	1.312	1.269	1.516	1.447	37/64	0.604	0.531	0.375	0.06	4	0.250	0.108	0.096	0.683
1	1.0000	1.022	0.976	1 1/2	1.500	1.450	1.732	1.653	43/64	0.700	0.591	0.625	0.09	3 1/2	0.286	0.123	0.110	0.780
1 1/8	1.1250	1.149	1.098	1 11/16	1.688	1.631	1.949	1.859	3/4	0.780	0.658	0.625	0.09	3 1/4	0.308	0.133	0.119	0.887
1 1/4	1.2500	1.277	1.223	1 7/8	1.875	1.812	2.165	2.066	27/32	0.876	0.749	0.625	0.09	3 1/4	0.308	0.133	0.119	1.012

[a] When specifying decimal nominal size, zeros before decimal point and in fourth decimal place are omitted.

All dimensions in inches.

Minimum thread length is 1/2 length of screw plus 0.50 inch, or 6.00 inches, whichever is shorter. Screws too short for the formula thread length shall be threaded as close to the head as practicable.

Thread formulas: Pitch = 1 ÷ thds. per inch. Flat at root = 0.4305 × pitch. Depth of single thread = 0.385 × pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. American National Standard and Unified Standard Hex Nuts and Jam Nuts and Heavy Hex Nuts and Jam Nuts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015*

Nominal Size or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Thickness, Nuts *H*			Thickness, Jam Nuts H_1		
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.
Hex Nuts (Fig. 5) and Hex Jam Nuts (Fig. 6)												
1/4	**0.2500**	**7/16**	**0.438**	**0.428**	**0.505**	**0.488**	**7/32**	**0.226**	**0.212**	**5/32**	**0.163**	**0.150**
5/16	**0.3125**	**1/2**	**0.500**	**0.489**	**0.577**	**0.557**	**17/64**	**0.273**	**0.258**	**3/16**	**0.195**	**0.180**
3/8	**0.3750**	**9/16**	**0.562**	**0.551**	**0.650**	**0.628**	**21/64**	**0.337**	**0.320**	**7/32**	**0.227**	**0.210**
7/16	**0.4375**	**11/16**	**0.688**	**0.675**	**0.794**	**0.768**	**3/8**	**0.385**	**0.365**	**1/4**	**0.260**	**0.240**
1/2	**0.5000**	**3/4**	**0.750**	**0.736**	**0.866**	**0.840**	**7/16**	**0.448**	**0.427**	**5/16**	**0.323**	**0.302**
9/16	**0.5625**	**7/8**	**0.875**	**0.861**	**1.010**	**0.982**	**31/64**	**0.496**	**0.473**	**5/16**	**0.324**	**0.301**
5/8	**0.6250**	**15/16**	**0.938**	**0.922**	**1.083**	**1.051**	**35/64**	**0.559**	**0.535**	**3/8**	**0.387**	**0.363**
3/4	**0.7500**	**1 1/8**	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.299**	**1.240**	**41/64**	**0.665**	**0.617**	**27/64**	**0.446**	**0.398**
7/8	**0.8750**	**1 5/16**	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.516**	**1.447**	**3/4**	**0.776**	**0.724**	**31/64**	**0.510**	**0.458**
1	**1.0000**	**1 1/2**	**1.500**	**1.450**	**1.732**	**1.653**	**55/64**	**0.887**	**0.831**	**35/64**	**0.575**	**0.519**
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1 11/16**	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	**31/32**	**0.999**	**0.939**	**39/64**	**0.639**	**0.579**
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1 7/8**	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	**1 1/16**	**1.094**	**1.030**	**23/32**	**0.751**	**0.687**
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**2 1/16**	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	**1 11/64**	**1.206**	**1.138**	**25/32**	**0.815**	**0.747**
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**2 1/4**	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	**1 9/32**	**1.317**	**1.245**	**27/32**	**0.880**	**0.808**
Heavy Hex Nuts (Fig. 5) and Heavy Hex Jam Nuts (Fig. 6)												
1/4	0.2500	1/2	0.500	0.488	0.577	0.556	15/64	0.250	0.218	11/64	0.188	0.156
5/16	0.3125	9/16	0.562	0.546	0.650	0.622	19/64	0.314	0.280	13/64	0.220	0.186
3/8	0.3750	11/16	0.688	0.669	0.794	0.763	23/64	0.377	0.341	15/64	0.252	0.216
7/16	0.4375	3/4	0.750	0.728	0.866	0.830	27/64	0.441	0.403	17/64	0.285	0.247
1/2	**0.5000**	**7/8**	**0.875**	**0.850**	**1.010**	**0.969**	**31/64**	**0.504**	**0.464**	**19/64**	**0.317**	**0.277**
9/16	0.5625	15/16	0.938	0.909	1.083	1.037	35/64	0.568	0.526	21/64	0.349	0.307
5/8	**0.6250**	**1 1/16**	**1.062**	**1.031**	**1.227**	**1.1175**	**39/64**	**0.631**	**0.587**	**23/64**	**0.381**	**0.337**
3/4	**0.7500**	**1 1/4**	**1.250**	**1.212**	**1.443**	**1.382**	**47/64**	**0.758**	**0.710**	**27/64**	**0.446**	**0.398**
7/8	**0.8750**	**1 7/16**	**1.438**	**1.394**	**1660**	**1.589**	**55/64**	**0.885**	**0.833**	**31/64**	**0.510**	**0.458**
1	**1.0000**	**1 5/8**	**1.625**	**1.575**	**1.876**	**1.796**	**63/64**	**1.012**	**0.956**	**35/64**	**0.575**	**0.519**
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1 13/16**	**1.812**	**1.756**	**2.093**	**2.002**	**1 7/64**	**1.139**	**1.079**	**39/64**	**0.639**	**0.579**
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**2**	**2.000**	**1.938**	**2.309**	**2.209**	**1 7/32**	**1.251**	**1.187**	**23/32**	**0.751**	**0.687**
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**2 1/16**	**2.188**	**2.119**	**2.526**	**2.416**	**1 11/32**	**1.378**	**1.310**	**25/32**	**0.815**	**0.747**
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**2 3/8**	**2.375**	**2.300**	**2.742**	**2.622**	**1 15/32**	**1.505**	**1.433**	**27/32**	**0.880**	**0.808**
1 5/8	1.6250	2 9/16	2.562	2.481	2.959	2.828	1 19/32	1.632	1.556	29/32	0.944	0.868
1 3/4	**1.7500**	**2 3/4**	**2.750**	**2.662**	**3.175**	**3.035**	**1 23/32**	**1.759**	**1.679**	**31/32**	**1.009**	**0.929**
1 7/8	1.8750	2 15/16	2.938	2.844	3.392	3.242	1 27/32	1.886	1.802	1 1/32	1.073	0.989
2	**2.0000**	**3 1/8**	**3.125**	**3.025**	**3.608**	**3.449**	**1 31/32**	**2.013**	**1.925**	**1 3/32**	**1.138**	**1.050**
2 1/4	2.2500	3 1/2	3.500	3.388	4.041	3.862	2 13/64	2.251	2.155	1 13/64	1.251	1.155
2 1/2	2.5000	3 7/8	3.875	3.750	4.474	4.275	2 29/64	2.505	2.401	1 29/64	1.505	1.401
2 3/4	2.7500	4 1/4	4.250	4.112	4.907	4.688	2 45/64	2.759	2.647	1 37/64	1.634	1.522
3	3.0000	4 5/8	4.625	4.475	5.340	5.102	2 61/64	3.013	2.893	1 45/64	1.763	1.643
3 1/4	3.2500	5	5.000	4.838	5.774	5.515	3 3/16	3.252	3.124	1 13/16	1.876	1.748
3 1/2	3.5000	5 3/8	5.375	5.200	6.207	5.928	3 7/16	3.506	3.370	1 15/16	2.006	1.870
3 3/4	3.7500	5 3/4	5.750	5.562	6.640	6.341	3 11/16	3.760	3.616	2 1/16	2.134	1.990
4	4.0000	6 1/8	6.125	5.925	7.073	6.755	3 15/16	4.014	3.862	2 3/16	2.264	2.112

All dimensions are in inches.

Bold type shows nuts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.

Threads are Unified Coarse-, Fine-, or 8-thread series (UNC, UNF or 8UN), Class 2B. Unification of fine-thread nuts is limited to sizes 1 inch and under.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. American National Standard and Unified Standard Hex Flat Nuts and Flat Jam Nuts and Heavy Hex Flat Nuts and Flat Jam Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015

Nominal Size or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Thickness, Flat Nuts *H*			Thickness, Flat Jam Nuts H_1		
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.
Hex Flat Nuts and Hex Flat Jam Nuts (Fig. 7)												
1⅛	**1.1250**	**1 11/16**	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	**1**	**1.030**	**0.970**	**⅝**	**0.655**	**0.595**
1¼	**1.2500**	**1⅞**	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	**1 3/32**	**1.126**	**1.062**	**¾**	**0.782**	**0.718**
1⅜	**1.3750**	**2 1/16**	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	**1 13/64**	**1.237**	**1.169**	**13/16**	**0.846**	**0.778**
1½	**1.5000**	**2¼**	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	**1 5/16**	**1.348**	**1.276**	**⅞**	**0.911**	**0.839**
Heavy Hex Flat Nuts and Heavy Hex Flat Jam Nuts (Fig. 7)												
1⅛	**1.1250**	**1 13/16**	**1.812**	**1.756**	**2.093**	**2.002**	**1⅛**	**1.155**	**1.079**	**⅝**	**0.655**	**0.579**
1¼	**1.2500**	**2**	**2.000**	**1.938**	**2.309**	**2.209**	**1¼**	**1.282**	**1.187**	**¾**	**0.782**	**0.687**
1⅜	**1.3750**	**2 1/16**	**2.188**	**2.119**	**2.526**	**2.416**	**1⅜**	**1.409**	**1.310**	**13/16**	**0.846**	**0.747**
1½	**1.5000**	**2⅜**	**2.375**	**2.300**	**2.742**	**2.622**	**1½**	**1.536**	**1.433**	**⅞**	**0.911**	**0.808**
1¾	**1.7500**	**2¾**	**2.750**	**2.662**	**3.175**	**3.035**	**1¾**	**1.790**	**1.679**	**1**	**1.040**	**0.929**
2	**2.0000**	**3⅛**	**3.125**	**3.025**	**3.608**	**3.449**	**2**	**2.044**	**1.925**	**1⅛**	**1.169**	**1.050**
2¼	2.2500	3½	3.500	3.388	4.041	3.862	2¼	2.298	2.155	1¼	1.298	1.155
2½	2.5000	3⅞	3.875	3.750	4.474	4.275	2½	2.552	2.401	1½	1.552	1.401
2¾	2.7500	4¼	4.250	4.112	4.907	4.688	2¾	2.806	2.647	1⅝	1.681	1.522
3	3.0000	4⅝	4.625	4.475	5.340	5.102	3	3.060	2.893	1¾	1.810	1.643
3¼	3.2500	5	5.000	4.838	5.774	5.515	3¼	3.314	3.124	1⅞	1.939	1.748
3½	3.5000	5⅜	5.375	5.200	6.207	5.928	3½	3.568	3.370	2	2.068	1.870
3¾	3.7500	5¾	5.750	5.562	6.640	6.341	3¾	3.822	3.616	2⅛	2.197	1.990
4	4.0000	6⅛	6.125	5.925	7.073	6.755	4	4.076	3.862	2¼	2.326	2.112

All dimensions are in inches.
Bold type indicates nuts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.
Threads are Unified Coarse-thread series (UNC), Class 2B.

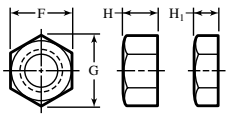


Fig. 7. Hex Flat Nuts, Heavy Hex Flat Nuts, Hex Flat Jam Nuts, and Heavy Hex Flat Jam Nuts (Table 8)

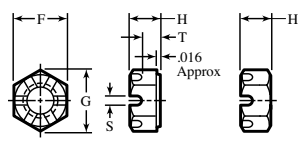


Fig. 8. Hex Slotted Nuts, Heavy Hex Slotted Nuts, and Hex Thick Slotted Nuts (Table 9)

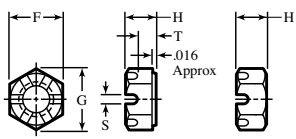


Fig. 9. Hex Thick Nuts (Table 10)

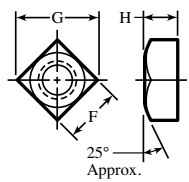


Fig. 10. Square Nuts, Heavy Square Nuts (Table 10)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. American National and Unified Standard Hex Slotted Nuts, Heavy Hex Slotted Nuts, and Hex Thick Slotted Nuts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015*

Nominal Size or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Thickness *H*			Unslotted Thickness *T*		Width of Slot *S*	
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Hex Slotted Nuts (Fig. 8)													
1/4	**0.2500**	7/16	**0.438**	**0.428**	**0.505**	**0.488**	7/32	**0.226**	**0.212**	0.14	0.12	0.10	0.07
5/16	**0.3125**	1/2	**0.500**	**0.489**	**0.577**	**0.577**	17/64	**0.273**	**0.258**	0.18	0.16	0.12	0.09
3/8	**0.3750**	9/16	**0.562**	**0.551**	**0.650**	**0.628**	21/64	**0.337**	**0.320**	0.21	0.19	0.15	0.12
7/16	**0.4375**	11/16	**0.688**	**0.675**	**0.794**	**0.768**	3/8	**0.385**	**0.365**	0.23	0.21	0.15	0.12
1/2	**0.5000**	3/4	**0.750**	**0.736**	**0.866**	**0.840**	7/16	**0.448**	**0.427**	0.29	0.27	0.18	0.15
9/16	**0.5625**	7/8	**0.875**	**0.861**	**1.010**	**0.982**	31/64	**0.496**	**0.473**	0.31	0.29	0.18	0.15
5/8	**0.6250**	15/16	**0.938**	**0.922**	**1.083**	**1.051**	35/64	**0.559**	**0.535**	0.34	0.32	0.24	0.18
3/4	**0.7500**	1 1/8	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.299**	**1.240**	41/64	**0.665**	**0.617**	0.40	0.38	0.24	0.18
7/8	**0.8750**	1 5/16	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.516**	**1.447**	3/4	**0.776**	**0.724**	0.52	0.49	0.24	0.18
1	**1.0000**	1 1/2	**1.500**	**1.450**	**1.732**	**1.653**	55/64	**0.887**	**0.831**	0.59	0.56	0.30	0.24
1 1/8	**1.1250**	1 11/16	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	31/32	**0.999**	**0.939**	0.64	0.61	0.33	0.24
1 1/4	**1.2500**	1 7/8	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	1 1/16	**1.094**	**1.030**	0.70	0.67	0.40	0.31
1 3/8	**1.3750**	2 1/16	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	1 11/64	**1.206**	**1.138**	0.82	0.78	0.40	0.31
1 1/2	**1.5000**	2 1/4	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	1 9/32	**1.317**	**1.245**	0.86	0.82	0.46	0.37
Heavy Hex Slotted Nuts (Fig. 8)													
1/4	0.2500	1/2	0.500	0.488	0.577	0.556	15/64	0.250	0.218	0.15	0.13	0.10	0.07
5/16	0.3125	9/16	0.562	0.546	0.650	0.622	19/64	0.314	0.280	0.21	0.19	0.12	0.09
3/8	0.3750	11/16	0.688	0.669	0.794	0.763	23/64	0.377	0.341	0.24	0.22	0.15	0.12
7/16	0.4375	3/4	0.750	0.728	0.866	0.830	27/64	0.441	0.403	0.28	0.26	0.15	0.12
1/2	**0.5000**	7/8	**0.875**	**0.850**	**1.010**	**0.969**	31/64	**0.504**	**0.464**	0.34	0.32	0.18	0.15
9/16	0.5625	15/16	0.938	0.909	1.083	1.037	35/64	0.568	0.526	0.37	0.35	0.18	0.15
5/8	**0.6250**	1 1/16	**1.062**	**1.031**	**1.227**	**1.175**	39/64	**0.631**	**0.587**	0.40	0.38	0.24	0.18
3/4	**0.7500**	1 1/4	**1.250**	**1.212**	**1.443**	**1.382**	47/64	**0.758**	**0.710**	0.49	0.47	0.24	0.18
7/8	**0.8750**	1 7/16	**1.438**	**1.394**	**1.660**	**1.589**	55/64	**0.885**	**0.833**	0.62	0.59	0.24	0.18
1	**1.0000**	1 5/8	**1.625**	**1.575**	**1.876**	**1.796**	63/64	**1.012**	**0.956**	0.72	0.69	0.30	0.24
1 1/8	**1.1250**	1 13/16	**1.812**	**1.756**	**2.093**	**2.002**	1 7/64	**1.139**	**1.079**	0.78	0.75	0.33	0.24
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**2**	**2.000**	**1.938**	**2.309**	**2.209**	1 7/32	**1.251**	**1.187**	0.86	0.83	0.40	0.31
1 3/8	**1.3750**	2 3/16	**2.188**	**2.119**	**2.526**	**2.416**	1 11/32	**1.378**	**1.310**	0.99	0.95	0.40	0.31
1 1/2	**1.5000**	2 3/8	**2.375**	**2.300**	**2.742**	**2.622**	1 15/32	**1.505**	**1.433**	1.05	1.01	0.46	0.37
1 3/4	**1.7500**	2 3/4	**2.750**	**2.662**	**3.175**	**3.035**	1 23/32	**1.759**	**1.679**	1.24	1.20	0.52	0.43
2	**2.0000**	3 1/8	**3.125**	**3.025**	**3.608**	**3.449**	1 31/32	**2.013**	**1.925**	1.43	1.38	0.52	0.43
2 1/4	2.2500	3 1/2	3.500	3.388	4.041	3.862	2 13/64	2.251	2.155	1.67	1.62	0.52	0.43
2 1/2	2.5000	3 7/8	3.875	3.750	4.474	4.275	2 29/64	2.505	2.401	1.79	1.74	0.64	0.55
2 3/4	2.7500	4 1/4	4.250	4.112	4.907	4.688	2 45/64	2.759	2.647	2.05	1.99	0.64	0.55
3	3.0000	4 5/8	4.625	4.475	5.340	5.102	2 61/64	3.013	2.893	2.23	2.17	0.71	0.62
3 1/4	3.2500	5	5.000	4.838	5.774	5.515	3 3/16	3.252	3.124	2.47	2.41	0.71	0.62
3 1/2	3.5000	5 3/8	5.375	5.200	6.207	5.928	3 7/16	3.506	3.370	2.72	2.65	0.71	0.62
3 3/4	3.7500	5 3/4	5.750	5.562	6.640	6.341	3 11/16	3.760	3.616	2.97	2.90	0.71	0.62
4	4.0000	6 1/8	6.125	5.925	7.073	6.755	3 15/16	4.014	3.862	3.22	3.15	0.71	0.62
Hex Thick Slotted Nuts (Fig. 8)													
1/4	**0.2500**	7/16	**0.438**	**0.428**	**0.505**	**0.488**	9/32	**0.288**	**0.274**	0.20	0.18	0.10	0.07
5/16	**0.3125**	1/2	**0.500**	**0.489**	**0.577**	**0.557**	21/64	**0.336**	**0.320**	0.24	0.22	0.12	0.09
3/8	**0.3750**	9/16	**0.562**	**0.551**	**0.650**	**0.628**	13/32	**0.415**	**0.398**	0.29	0.27	0.15	0.12
7/16	**0.4375**	11/16	**0.688**	**0.675**	**0.794**	**0.768**	29/64	**0.463**	**0.444**	0.31	0.29	0.15	0.12
1/2	**0.5000**	3/4	**0.750**	**0.736**	**0.866**	**0.840**	9/16	**0.573**	**0.552**	0.42	0.40	0.18	0.15
9/16	**0.5625**	7/8	**0.875**	**0.861**	**1.010**	**0.982**	39/64	**0.621**	**0.598**	0.43	0.41	0.18	0.15
5/8	**0.6250**	15/16	**0.938**	**0.922**	**1.083**	**1.051**	23/32	**0.731**	**0.706**	0.51	0.49	0.24	0.18
3/4	**0.7500**	1 1/8	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.299**	**1.240**	13/16	**0.827**	**0.798**	0.57	0.55	0.24	0.18
7/8	**0.8750**	1 5/16	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.516**	**1.447**	29/32	**0.922**	**0.890**	0.67	0.64	0.24	0.18
1	**1.0000**	1 1/2	**1.500**	**1.450**	**1.732**	**1.653**	**1**	**1.018**	**0.982**	0.73	0.70	0.30	0.24
1 1/8	**1.1250**	1 11/16	**1.688**	**1.631**	**1.949**	**1.859**	1 5/32	**1.176**	**1.136**	0.83	0.80	0.33	0.24
1 1/4	**1.2500**	1 7/8	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.165**	**2.066**	1 1/4	**1.272**	**1.228**	0.89	0.86	0.40	0.31
1 3/8	**1.3750**	2 1/16	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.382**	**2.273**	1 3/8	**1.399**	**1.351**	1.02	0.98	0.40	0.31
1 1/2	**1.5000**	2 1/4	**2.250**	**2.175**	**2.598**	**2.480**	1 1/2	**1.526**	**1.474**	1.08	1.04	0.46	0.37

All dimensions are in inches.

Bold type indicates nuts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.

Threads are Unified Coarse-, Fine-, or 8-thread series (UNC, UNF, or 8UN), Class 2B.

Unification of fine-thread nuts is limited to sizes 1 inch and under.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. American National and Unified Standard Square Nuts and Heavy Square Nuts and American National Standard Hex Thick Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015

Nominal Size or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats *F*			Width Across Corners *G*		Thickness *H*		
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.
Square Nuts[a] (Fig. 10)									
1/4	**0.2500**	**7/16**	**0.438**	**0.425**	**0.619**	**0.554**	**7/32**	**0.235**	**0.203**
5/16	**0.3125**	**9/16**	**0.562**	**0.547**	**0.795**	**0.721**	**17/64**	**0.283**	**0.249**
3/8	**0.3750**	**5/8**	**0.625**	**0.606**	**0.884**	**0.802**	**21/64**	**0.346**	**0.310**
7/16	**0.4375**	**3/4**	**0.750**	**0.728**	**1.061**	**0.970**	**3/8**	**0.394**	**0.356**
1/2	**0.5000**	**13/16**	**0.812**	**0.788**	**1.149**	**1.052**	**7/16**	**0.458**	**0.418**
5/8	**0.6250**	**1**	**1.000**	**0.969**	**1.414**	**1.300**	**35/64**	**0.569**	**0.525**
3/4	**0.7500**	**1 1/8**	**1.125**	**1.088**	**1.591**	**1.464**	**21/32**	**0.680**	**0.632**
7/8	**0.8750**	**1 5/16**	**1.312**	**1.269**	**1.856**	**1.712**	**49/64**	**0.792**	**0.740**
1	**1.0000**	**1 1/2**	**1.500**	**1.450**	**2.121**	**1.961**	**7/8**	**0.903**	**0.847**
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**1 11/16**	**1.688**	**1.631**	**2.386**	**2.209**	**1**	**1.030**	**0.970**
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**1 7/8**	**1.875**	**1.812**	**2.652**	**2.458**	**1 3/32**	**1.126**	**1.062**
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**2 1/16**	**2.062**	**1.994**	**2.917**	**2.708**	**1 13/64**	**1.237**	**1.169**
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**2 1/4**	**2.250**	**2.175**	**3.182**	**2.956**	**1 5/16**	**1.348**	**1.276**
Heavy Square Nuts[a] (Fig. 10)									
1/4	0.2500	1/2	0.500	0.488	0.707	0.640	1/4	0.266	0.218
5/16	0.3125	9/16	0.562	0.546	0.795	0.720	5/16	0.330	0.280
3/8	0.3750	11/16	0.688	0.669	0.973	0.889	3/8	0.393	0.341
7/16	0.4375	3/4	0.750	0.728	1.060	0.970	7/16	0.456	0.403
1/2	0.5000	7/8	0.875	0.850	1.237	1.137	1/2	0.520	0.464
5/8	0.6250	1 1/16	1.062	1.031	1.503	1.386	5/8	0.647	0.587
3/4	0.7500	1 1/4	1.250	1.212	1.768	1.635	3/4	0.774	0.710
7/8	0.8750	1 7/16	1.438	1.394	2.033	1.884	7/8	0.901	0.833
1	1.0000	1 5/8	1.625	1.575	2.298	2.132	1	1.028	0.956
1 1/8	1.1250	1 13/16	1.812	1.756	2.563	2.381	1 1/8	1.155	1.079
1 1/4	1.2500	2	2.000	1.938	2.828	2.631	1 1/4	1.282	1.187
1 3/8	1.3750	2 3/16	2.188	2.119	3.094	2.879	1 3/8	1.409	1.310
1 1/2	1.5000	2 3/8	2.375	2.300	3.359	3.128	1 1/2	1.536	1.433
Hex Thick Nuts[b] (Fig. 10)									
1/4	0.2500	7/16	0.438	0.428	0.505	0.488	9/32	0.288	0.274
5/16	0.3125	1/2	0.500	0.489	0.577	0.557	21/64	0.336	0.320
3/8	0.3750	9/16	0.562	0.551	0.650	0.628	13/32	0.415	0.398
7/16	0.4375	11/16	0.688	0.675	0.794	0.768	29/64	0.463	0.444
1/2	0.5000	3/4	0.750	0.736	0.866	0.840	9/16	0.573	0.552
9/16	0.5625	7/8	0.875	0.861	1.010	0.982	39/64	0.621	0.598
5/8	0.6250	15/16	0.938	0.922	1.083	1.051	23/32	0.731	0.706
3/4	0.7500	1 1/8	1.125	1.088	1.299	1.240	13/16	0.827	0.798
7/8	0.8750	1 5/16	1.312	1.269	1.516	1.447	29/32	0.922	0.890
1	1.0000	1 1/2	1.500	1.450	1.732	1.653	1	1.018	0.982
1 1/8	1.1250	1 11/16	1.688	1.631	1.949	1.859	1 5/32	1.176	1.136
1 1/4	1.2500	1 7/8	1.875	1.812	2.165	2.066	1 1/4	1.272	1.228
1 3/8	1.3750	2 1/16	2.062	1.994	2.382	2.273	1 3/8	1.399	1.351
1 1/2	1.5000	2 1/4	2.250	2.175	2.598	2.480	1 1/2	1.526	1.474

[a] Coarse-thread series, Class 2B.

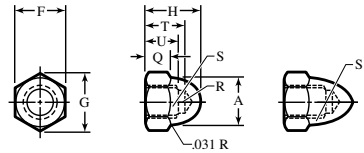
[b] Unified Coarse-, Fine-, or 8-thread series (8 UN), Class 2B.

All dimensions are in inches.

Bold type indicates nuts unified dimensionally with British and Canadian Standards.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Low and High Crown (Blind, Acorn) Nuts *SAE Recommended Practice J483a*



Low Crown

Nom. Size[a] or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats, *F*			Width Across Corners, *G*		Body Dia., *A*	Overall Height, *H*	Hexagon Height, *Q*	Nose Radius, *R*	Body Radius, *S*	Drill Dep., *T*	Full Thd., *U*
		Max.	(Basic)	Min.	Max.	Min.						Max.	Min.
6	0.1380	5⁄16	0.3125	0.302	0.361	0.344	0.30	0.34	0.16	0.08	0.17	0.25	0.16
8	0.1640	5⁄16	0.3125	0.302	0.361	0.344	0.30	0.34	0.16	0.08	0.17	0.25	0.16
10	0.1900	3⁄8	0.3750	0.362	0.433	0.413	0.36	0.41	0.19	0.09	0.22	0.28	0.19
12	0.2160	3⁄8	0.3750	0.362	0.433	0.413	0.36	0.41	0.19	0.09	0.22	0.31	0.22
1⁄4	0.2500	7⁄16	0.4375	0.428	0.505	0.488	0.41	0.47	0.22	0.11	0.25	0.34	0.25
5⁄16	0.3125	1⁄2	0.5000	0.489	0.577	0.557	0.47	0.53	0.25	0.12	0.28	0.41	0.31
3⁄8	0.3750	9⁄16	0.5625	0.551	0.650	0.628	0.53	0.62	0.28	0.14	0.33	0.45	0.38
7⁄16	0.4375	5⁄8	0.6250	0.612	0.722	0.698	0.59	0.69	0.31	0.16	0.36	0.52	0.44
1⁄2	0.5000	3⁄4	0.7500	0.736	0.866	0.840	0.72	0.81	0.38	0.19	0.42	0.59	0.50
9⁄16	0.5625	7⁄8	0.8750	0.861	1.010	0.982	0.84	0.94	0.44	0.22	0.50	0.69	0.56
5⁄8	0.6250	15⁄16	0.9375	0.922	1.083	1.051	0.91	1.00	0.47	0.23	0.53	0.75	0.62
3⁄4	0.7500	1 1⁄16	1.0625	1.045	1.227	1.191	1.03	1.16	0.53	0.27	0.59	0.88	0.75
7⁄8	0.8750	1 1⁄4	1.2500	1.231	1.443	1.403	1.22	1.36	0.62	0.31	0.70	1.00	0.88
1	1.0000	1 7⁄16	1.4375	1.417	1.660	1.615	1.41	1.55	0.72	0.36	0.81	1.12	1.00
1 1⁄8	1.1250	1 5⁄8	1.6250	1.602	1.876	1.826	1.59	1.75	0.81	0.41	0.92	1.31	1.12
1 1⁄4	1.2500	1 13⁄16	1.8125	1.788	2.093	2.038	1.78	1.95	0.91	0.45	1.03	1.44	1.25

High Crown

Nom. Size[a] or Basic Major Dia. of Thread		Width Across Flats, *F*			Width Across Corners, *G*		Body Dia., *A*	Overall Height, *H*	Hexagon Height, *Q*	Nose Radius, *R*	Body Radius, *S*	Drill Dep., *T*	Full Thd., *U*
		Max.	(Basic)	Min.	Max.	Min.						Max.	Min.
6	0.1380	5⁄16	0.3125	0.302	0.361	0.344	0.30	0.42	0.17	0.05	0.25	0.28	0.19
8	0.1640	5⁄16	0.3125	0.302	0.361	0.344	0.30	0.42	0.17	0.05	0.25	0.28	0.19
10	0.1900	3⁄8	0.3750	0.362	0.433	0.413	0.36	0.52	0.20	0.06	0.30	0.34	0.25
12	0.2160	3⁄8	0.3750	0.362	0.433	0.413	0.36	0.52	0.20	0.06	0.30	0.38	0.28
1⁄4	0.2500	7⁄16	0.4375	0.428	0.505	0.488	0.41	0.59	0.23	0.06	0.34	0.41	0.31
5⁄16	0.3125	1⁄2	0.5000	0.489	0.577	0.557	0.47	0.69	0.28	0.08	0.41	0.47	0.38
3⁄8	0.3750	9⁄16	0.5625	0.551	0.650	0.628	0.53	0.78	0.31	0.09	0.44	0.56	0.47
7⁄16	0.4375	5⁄8	0.6250	0.612	0.722	0.698	0.59	0.88	0.34	0.09	0.50	0.62	0.53
1⁄2	0.5000	3⁄4	0.7500	0.736	0.866	0.840	0.72	1.03	0.42	0.12	0.59	0.75	0.62
9⁄16	0.5625	7⁄8	0.8750	0.861	1.010	0.982	0.84	1.19	0.48	0.16	0.69	0.81	0.69
5⁄8	0.6250	15⁄16	0.9375	0.922	1.083	1.051	0.91	1.28	0.53	0.16	0.75	0.91	0.78
3⁄4	0.7500	1 1⁄16	1.0625	1.045	1.227	1.191	1.03	1.45	0.59	0.17	0.84	1.06	0.94
7⁄8	0.8750	1 1⁄4	1.12500	1.231	1.443	1.403	1.22	1.72	0.70	0.20	0.98	1.22	1.09
1	1.0000	1 7⁄16	1.4375	1.417	1.660	1.615	1.41	1.97	0.81	0.23	1.14	1.38	1.25
1 1⁄8	1.1250	1 5⁄8	1.6250	1.602	1.876	1.826	1.59	2.22	0.92	0.27	1.28	1.59	1.41
1 1⁄4	1.2500	1 13⁄16	1.8125	1.788	2.093	2.038	1.78	2.47	1.03	0.28	1.44	1.75	1.56

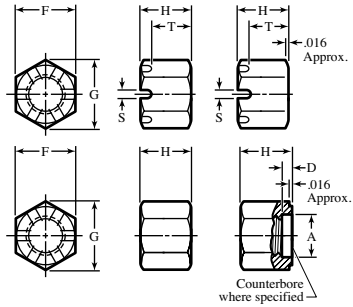
[a] When specifying a nominal size in decimals, any zero in the fourth decimal place is omitted.

Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990, Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.

All dimensions are in inches. Threads are Unified Standard Class 2B, UNC or UNF Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hex High and Hex Slotted High Nuts *SAE Standard J482a*



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Major Diameter of Thread		Width Across Flats, *F*			Width Across Corners, *G*		Slot Width, *S*	
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.
1/4	0.2500	7/16	0.4375	0.428	0.505	0.488	0.07	0.10
5/16	0.3125	1/2	0.5000	0.489	0.577	0.557	0.09	0.12
3/8	0.3750	9/16	0.5625	0.551	0.650	0.628	0.12	0.15
7/16	0.4375	11/16	0.6875	0.675	0.794	0.768	0.12	0.15
1/2	0.5000	3/4	0.7500	0.736	0.866	0.840	0.15	0.18
9/16	0.5625	7/8	0.8750	0.861	1.010	0.982	0.15	0.18
5/8	0.6250	15/16	0.9375	0.922	1.083	1.051	0.18	0.24
3/4	0.7500	1 1/8	1.1250	1.088	1.299	1.240	0.18	0.24
7/8	0.8750	1 5/16	1.3125	1.269	1.516	1.447	0.18	0.24
1	1.0000	1 1/2	1.5000	1.450	1.732	1.653	0.24	0.30
1 1/8	1.1250	1 11/16	1.6875	1.631	1.949	1.859	0.24	0.33
1 1/4	1.2500	1 7/8	1.8750	1.812	2.165	2.066	0.31	0.40

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Major Diameter of Thread		Thickness, *H*			Unslotted Thickness, *T*		Counterbore (Optional)	
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Dia., *A*	Depth, *D*
1/4	0.2500	3/8	0.382	0.368	0.29	0.27	0.266	0.062
5/16	0.3125	29/64	0.461	0.445	0.37	0.35	0.328	0.078
3/8	0.3750	1/2	0.509	0.491	0.38	0.36	0.391	0.094
7/16	0.4375	39/64	0.619	0.599	0.46	0.44	0.453	0.109
1/2	0.5000	21/32	0.667	0.645	0.51	0.49	0.516	0.125
9/16	0.5625	49/64	0.778	0.754	0.59	0.57	0.594	0.141
5/8	0.6250	27/32	0.857	0.831	0.63	0.61	0.656	0.156
3/4	0.7500	1	1.015	0.985	0.76	0.73	0.781	0.188
7/8	0.8750	1 5/32	1.172	1.140	0.92	0.89	0.906	0.219
1	1.0000	1 5/16	1.330	1.292	1.05	1.01	1.031	0.250
1 1/8	1.1250	1 1/2	1.520	1.480	1.18	1.14	1.156	0.281
1 1/4	1.2500	1 11/16	1.710	1.666	1.34	1.29	1.281	0.312

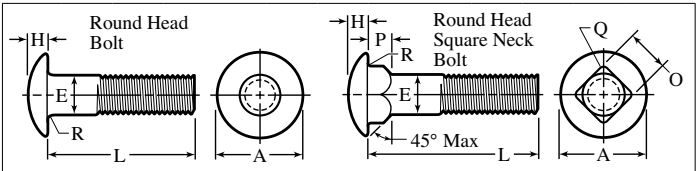
[a] When specifying a nominal size in decimals, any zero in the fourth decimal place is omitted.

Reprinted with permission. Copyright © 1990, *Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc. All rights reserved.*

All dimensions are in inches. Threads are Unified Standard Class 2B, UNC or UNF Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Round Head and Round Head Square Neck Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)



Nominal Size	Body Dia., *E*		Dia. of Head, *A*		Height of Head, *H*		Fillet Rad., *R*	Width of Square, *O*		Depth of Square, *P*		Corner Rad. on Square, *Q*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
No. 10	0.199	.182	.469	.438	.114	.094	.031	.199	.185	.125	.094	.031
¼	0.260	.237	.594	.563	.145	.125	.031	.260	.245	.156	.125	.031
5/16	0.324	.298	.719	.688	.176	.156	.031	.324	.307	.187	.156	.031
⅜	0.388	.360	.844	.782	.208	.188	.031	.388	.368	.219	.188	.047
7/16	0.452	.421	.969	.907	.239	.219	.031	.452	.431	.250	.219	.047
½	0.515	.483	1.094	1.032	.270	.250	.031	.515	.492	.281	.250	.047
⅝	0.642	.605	1.344	1.219	.344	.313	.062	.642	.616	.344	.313	.078
¾	0.768	.729	1.594	1.469	.406	.375	.062	.768	.741	.406	.375	.078
⅞	0.895	.852	1.844	1.719	.469	.438	.062	.895	.865	.469	.438	.094
1	1.022	.976	2.094	1.969	.531	.500	.062	1.022	.990	.531	.500	.094

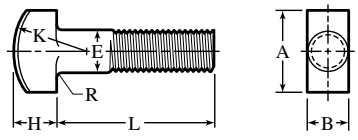
All dimensions are in inches unless otherwise specified.

Threads are Unified Standard, Class 2A, UNC Series, in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.1. For threads with additive finish, the maximum diameters of Class 2A shall apply before plating or coating, whereas the basic diameters (Class 2A maximum diameters plus the allowance) shall apply to a bolt after plating or coating.

Bolts are designated in the sequence shown: nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name; material; and protective finish, if required.

i.e.: ½-13 × 3 Round Head Square Neck Bolt, Steel .375-16 × 2.50 Step Bolt, Steel, Zinc Plated

American National Standard T-Head Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)*



Nom. Size[a] or Basic Bolt Dia.		Body Dia., *E*		Head Length, *A*		Head Width, *B*		Head Height, *H*		Head Rad., *K*	Fillet Rad., *R*
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.
¼	0.2500	.260	.237	.500	.488	.280	.245	.204	.172	.438	.031
5/16	0.3125	.324	.298	.625	.609	.342	.307	.267	.233	.500	.031
⅜	0.3750	.388	.360	.750	.731	.405	.368	.331	.295	.625	.031
7/16	0.4375	.452	.421	.875	.853	.468	.431	.394	.356	.875	.031
½	0.5000	.515	.483	1.000	.975	.530	.492	.458	.418	.875	.031
⅝	0.6250	.642	.605	1.250	1.218	.675	.616	.585	.541	1.062	.062
¾	0.7500	.768	.729	1.500	1.462	.800	.741	.649	.601	1.250	.062
⅞	0.8750	.895	.852	1.750	1.706	.938	.865	.776	.724	1.375	.062
1	1.0000	1.022	.976	2.000	1.950	1.063	.990	.903	.847	1.500	.062

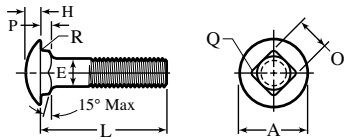
[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted. For information as to threads and method of bolt designation, see footnotes to preceding table.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Round Head Short Square Neck Bolts

ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)



Nominal Size	Body Dia., *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Square Width, *O*		Square Depth, *P*		Cor. Rad. on Sq., *Q*	Fillet Rad., *R*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.
1/4	0.260	0.213	0.594	0.563	0.145	0.125	0.260	0.245	0.124	0.093	0.031	0.031
5/16	0.324	0.272	0.719	0.688	0.176	0.156	0.324	0.307	0.124	0.093	0.031	0.031
3/8	0.388	0.329	0.844	0.782	0.208	0.188	0.388	0.368	0.156	0.125	0.047	0.031
7/16	0.452	0.385	0.969	0.907	0.239	0.219	0.452	0.431	0.156	0.125	0.047	0.031
1/2	0.515	0.444	1.094	1.032	0.270	0.250	0.515	0.492	0.156	0.125	0.047	0.031
5/8	0.642	0.559	1.344	1.219	0.344	0.313	0.642	0.616	0.218	0.187	0.078	0.062
3/4	0.768	0.678	1.594	1.469	0.406	0.375	0.768	0.741	0.218	0.187	0.078	0.062

All dimensions are given in inches.

Threads are Unified Standard, Class 2A, UNC Series, in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.1. For threads with additive finish, the maximum diameters of Class 2A apply before plating or coating, whereas the basic diameters (Class 2A maximum diameters plus the allowance) apply to a bolt after plating or coating.

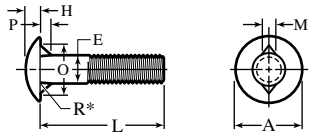
Bolts are designated in the sequence shown: nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name; material; and protective finish, if required. For example,

1/2-13 × 3 Round Head Short Square Neck Bolt, Steel

.375-16 × 2.50 Round Head Short Square Neck Bolt, Steel, Zinc Plated

American National Standard Round Head Fin Neck Bolts

ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)



Nominal Size	Body Dia., *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Fin Thick., *M*		Dist.Across Fins, *O*		Fin Depth, *P*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
No. 10	0.199	0.182	0.469	0.438	0.114	0.094	0.098	0.078	0.395	0.375	0.088	0.078
1/4	0.260	0.237	0.594	0.563	0.145	0.125	0.114	0.094	0.458	0.438	0.104	0.094
5/16	0.324	0.298	0.719	0.688	0.176	0.156	0.145	0.125	0.551	0.531	0.135	0.125
3/8	0.388	0.360	0.844	0.782	0.208	0.188	0.161	0.141	0.645	0.625	0.151	0.141
7/16	0.452	0.421	0.969	0.907	0.239	0.219	0.192	0.172	0.739	0.719	0.182	0.172
1/2	0.515	0.483	1.094	1.032	0.270	0.250	0.208	0.188	0.833	0.813	0.198	0.188

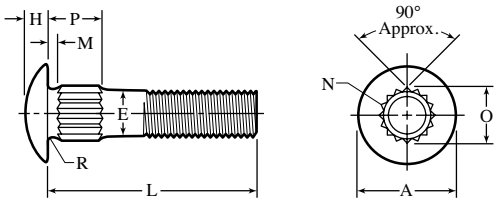
All dimensions are given in inches unless otherwise specified.

*Maximum fillet radius *R* is 0.031 inch for all sizes.

For information as to threads and method of bolt designation, see footnotes to the preceding table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Round Head Ribbed Neck Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)*



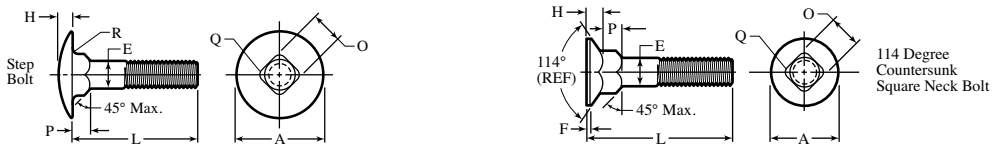
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Bolt Diameter		Body Diameter, *E*		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Head to Ribs, *M* For Lengths of		Number of Ribs, *N*	Dia. Over Ribs, *O*	Depth Over Ribs, *P* For Lengths of			Fillet Radius, *R*
								⅞ in. and Shorter	1 in. and Longer			⅞ in. and Shorter	1 in. and 1⅛ in.	¼ in. and Longer	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	±0.031[b]		Approx.	Min.	±0.031			Max.[c]
No. 10	0.1900	0.199	0.182	0.469	0.438	0.114	0.094	0.031†	0.063	9	0.210	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
¼	0.2500	0.260	0.237	0.594	0.563	0.145	0.125	0.031†	0.063	10	0.274	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
5⁄16	0.3125	0.324	0.298	0.719	0.688	0.176	0.156	0.031†	0.063	12	0.340	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
⅜	0.3750	0.388	0.360	0.844	0.782	0.208	0.188	0.031†	0.063	12	0.405	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
7⁄16	0.4375	0.452	0.421	0.969	0.907	0.239	0.219	0.031†	0.063	14	0.470	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
½	0.5000	0.515	0.483	1.094	1.032	0.270	0.250	0.031†	0.063	16	0.534	0.250	0.407	0.594	0.031
⅝	0.6250	0.642	0.605	1.344	1.219	0.344	0.313	0.094	0.094	19	0.660	0.313	0.438	0.625	0.062
¾	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1.594	1.469	0.406	0.375	0.094	0.094	22	0.785	0.313	0.438	0.625	0.062

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place shall be omitted.
[b] Tolerance on the No. 10 through ½ in. sizes for nominal lengths ⅞ in. and shorter shall be + 0.031 and – 0.000.
[c] The minimum radius is one half of the value shown.
All dimensions are given in inches unless otherwise specified.
For information as to threads and method of designating bolts, see following table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Step and 114 Degree Countersunk Square Neck Bolts

ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)



Nominal Size	Step & 114° Countersunk Bolts					Step Bolts							114° Countersunk Square Neck Bolts						
	Body Dia., *E*		Corner Rad. on Square, *Q*	Width of Square, *O*		Depth of Square, *P*		Dia. of Head, *A*		Height of Head, *H*		Fillet Radius, *R*	Depth of Square, *P*		Dia. of Head, *A*		Flat on Head, *F*	Height of Head, *H*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.
No. 10	0.199	0.182	0.031	0.199	0.185	0.125	0.094	0.656	0.625	0.114	0.094	0.031	0.125	0.094	0.548	0.500	0.015	0.131	0.112
¼	0.260	0.237	0.031	0.260	0.245	0.156	0.125	0.844	0.813	0.145	0.125	0.031	0.156	0.125	0.682	0.625	0.018	0.154	0.135
5/16	0.324	0.298	0.031	0.324	0.307	0.187	0.156	1.031	1.000	0.176	0.156	0.031	0.219	0.188	0.821	0.750	0.023	0.184	0.159
⅜	0.388	0.360	0.047	0.388	0.368	0.219	0.188	1.219	1.188	0.208	0.188	0.031	0.250	0.219	0.960	0.875	0.027	0.212	0.183
7/16	0.452	0.421	0.047	0.452	0.431	0.250	0.219	1.406	1.375	0.239	0.219	0.031	0.281	0.250	1.093	1.000	0.030	0.235	0.205
½	0.515	0.483	0.047	0.515	0.492	0.281	0.250	1.594	1.563	0.270	0.250	0.031	0.312	0.281	1.233	1.125	0.035	0.265	0.229
5/8[a]	0.642	0.605	0.078	0.642	0.616	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.406	0.375	1.495	1.375	0.038	0.316	0.272
¾[a]	0.768	0.729	0.078	0.768	0.741	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.500	0.469	10.754	1.625	0.041	0.368	0.314

[a] These sizes pertain to 114 degree countersunk square neck bolts only. Dimensions given in last seven columns to the right are for these bolts only.

All dimensions are in inches unless otherwise specified.

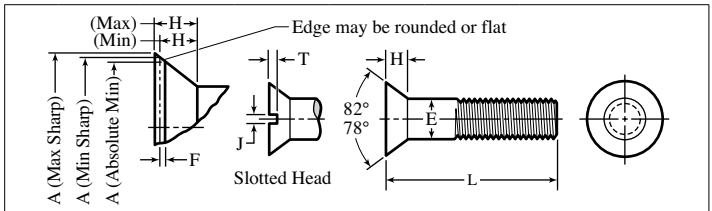
Threads are Unified Standard, Class 2A, UNC Series, in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.1. For threads with additive finish, the maximum diameters of Class 2A shall apply before plating or coating, whereas the basic diameters (Class 2A maximum diameters plus the allowance) shall apply to a bolt after plating or coating.

Bolts are designated in the sequence shown: nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name; material; and protective finish, if required. For example

1/2-13 × 3 Round Head Square Neck Bolt, Steel .375-16 × 2.50 Step Bolt, Steel, Zinc Plated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Countersunk Bolts and Slotted Countersunk Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.5-2012 (R2017)



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Bolt Diameter		Body Diameter, *E*		Head Diameter, *A*			Flat on Min. Dia., Head, *F*[b]
		Max.	Min.	Max. Edge Sharp	Min. Edge Sharp	Absolute Min. Edge Rounded or Flat	Max.
¼	0.2500	0.260	0.237	0.493	0.477	0.445	0.018
5⁄16	0.3125	0.324	0.298	0.618	0.598	0.558	0.023
⅜	0.3750	0.388	0.360	0.740	0.715	0.668	0.027
7⁄16	0.4375	0.452	0.421	0.803	0.778	0.726	0.030
½	0.5000	0.515	0.483	0.935	0.905	0.845	0.035
⅝	0.6250	0.642	0.605	1.169	1.132	1.066	0.038
¾	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1.402	1.357	1.285	0.041
⅞	0.8750	0.895	0.852	1.637	1.584	1.511	0.042
1	1.0000	1.022	0.976	1.869	1.810	1.735	0.043
1⅛	1.1250	1.149	1.098	2.104	2.037	1.962	0.043
1¼	1.2500	1.277	1.223	2.337	2.262	2.187	0.043
1⅜	1.3750	1.404	1.345	2.571	2.489	2.414	0.043
1½	1.5000	1.531	1.470	2.804	2.715	2.640	0.043

Nom. Size or Basic Bolt Dia.		Head Height, *H*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.[c]	Min.[d]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
¼	0.2500	0.150	0.131	0.075	0.064	0.068	0.045
5⁄16	0.3125	0.189	0.164	0.084	0.072	0.086	0.057
⅜	0.3750	0.225	0.196	0.094	0.081	0.103	0.068
7⁄16	0.4375	0.226	0.196	0.094	0.081	0.103	0.068
½	0.5000	0.269	0.233	0.106	0.091	0.103	0.068
⅝	0.6250	0.336	0.292	0.133	0.116	0.137	0.091
¾	0.7500	0.403	0.349	0.149	0.131	0.171	0.115
⅞	0.8750	0.470	0.408	0.167	0.147	0.206	0.138
1	1.0000	0.537	0.466	0.188	0.166	0.240	0.162
1⅛	1.1250	0.604	0.525	0.196	0.178	0.257	0.173
1¼	1.2500	0.671	0.582	0.211	0.193	0.291	0.197
1⅜	1.3750	0.738	0.641	0.226	0.208	0.326	0.220
1½	1.5000	0.805	0.698	0.258	0.240	0.360	0.244

[a] Where specifying size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in fourth decimal place omitted.

[b] Flat on minimum diameter head calculated on minimum sharp and absolute minimum head diameters and 82° head angle.

[c] Maximum head height calculated on maximum sharp head diameter, basic bolt diameter, and 78° head angle.

[d] Minimum head height calculated on minimum sharp head diameter, basic bolt diameter, and 82° head angle.

All dimensions are given in inches. For thread information and method of bolt designation see footnotes to previous table. Heads are unslotted unless otherwise specified. For slot dimensions see Table 1 in *Slotted Head Cap Screws* on page 1812.

Wrench Clearance Dimensions.—Wrench openings for nuts are given in Table 1, clearances for open end engineers wrenches in Table 2, clearances for single and double hexagon socket wrenches in Table 3a (inch) and Table 3b (metric), clearances for 12-point box wrenches (inch and metric) are given in Table 4. They are based on the dimensions across the flats of the fastener.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Wrench Openings for Nuts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015, Appendix*

Max.[a] Width Across Flats of Nut	Wrench Opening[b]		Max.[a] Width Across Flats of Nut	Wrench Opening[b]		Max.[a] Width Across Flats of Nut	Wrench Opening[b]	
	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
5/32	0.158	0.163	1 1/4	1.257	1.267	2 15/16	2.954	2.973
3/16	0.190	0.195	1 5/16	1.320	1.331	*3*	*3.016*	*3.035*
7/32	0.220	0.225	*1 3/8*	*1.383*	*1.394*	3 1/8	3.142	3.162
1/4	0.252	0.257	1 7/16	1.446	1.457	*3 3/8*	*3.393*	*3.414*
9/32	0.283	0.288	1 1/2	1.508	1.520	3 1/2	3.518	3.540
5/16	0.316	0.322	1 5/8	1.634	1.646	*3 3/4*	*3.770*	*3.793*
11/32	0.347	0.353	1 11/16	1.696	1.708	3 7/8	3.895	3.918
3/8	0.378	0.384	1 13/16	1.822	1.835	*4 1/8*	*4.147*	*4.172*
7/16	0.440	0.446	1 7/8	1.885	1.898	4 1/4	4.272	4.297
1/2	0.504	0.510	2	2.011	2.025	4 1/2	4.524	4.550
9/16	0.566	0.573	2 1/16	2.074	2.088	4 5/8	4.649	4.676
5/8	0.629	0.636	2 3/16	2.200	2.215	*4 7/8*	*4.900*	*4.928*
11/16	0.692	0.699	2 1/4	2.262	2.277	5	5.026	5.055
3/4	0.755	0.763	2 3/8	2.388	2.404	*5 1/4*	*5.277*	*5.307*
13/16	0.818	0.826	*2 7/16*	*2.450*	*2.466*	5 3/8	5.403	5.434
7/8	0.880	0.888	2 9/16	2.576	2.593	*5 5/8*	*5.654*	*5.686*
15/16	0.944	0.953	*2 5/8*	*2.639*	*2.656*	5 3/4	5.780	5.813
1	1.006	1.015	2 3/4	2.766	2.783	*6*	*6.031*	6.157
1 1/16	1.068	1.077	*2 13/16*	*2.827*	*2.845*	6 1/8	6.065	6.192
1 1/8	1.132	1.142						

[a] Wrenches are marked with the "Nominal Size of Wrench," which is equal to the basic or maximum width across flats of the corresponding nut. Minimum wrench opening is (1.005W + 0.001). Tolerance on wrench opening is (0.005W + 0.004) from minimum, where W equals nominal size of wrench.

[b] Openings for 5/32 to 3/8 widths from old ASA B18.2-1960 and italic values are from former ANSI B18.2.2-1972.

All dimensions given in inches.

Table 2. Clearances for Open End Engineers Wrench (15°)

Nominal Wrench Size		*A* Min. (in.)	*B*[a] Max. (in.)	*C* Min. (in.)	*D* Min. (in.)	*E* Min. (in.)	*F*[b] Max. (in.)	*G* Ref. (in.)	*H*[c] Max. (in.)	*J* Min.[d] in.-lbf
5/32	0.156	0.220	0.250	0.390	0.160	0.250	0.200	0.030	0.094	35
3/16	0.188	0.250	0.280	0.430	0.190	0.270	0.230	0.030	0.172	45
1/4	0.250	0.280	0.340	0.530	0.270	0.310	0.310	0.030	0.172	67
5/16	0.313	0.380	0.470	0.660	0.280	0.390	0.390	0.050	0.203	138
11/32	0.344	0.420	0.500	0.750	0.340	0.450	0.450	0.050	0.203	193
3/8	0.375	0.420	0.500	0.780	0.360	0.450	0.520	0.050	0.219	275
7/16	0.438	0.470	0.590	0.890	0.420	0.520	0.640	0.050	0.250	413
1/2	0.500	0.520	0.640	1.000	0.470	0.580	0.660	0.050	0.266	550
9/16	0.563	0.590	0.770	1.130	0.520	0.660	0.700	0.050	0.297	770
5/8	0.625	0.640	0.830	1.230	0.550	0.700	0.700	0.050	0.344	1100
11/16	0.688	0.770	0.920	1.470	0.660	0.880	0.800	0.060	0.375	1375
3/4	0.750	0.770	0.920	1.510	0.670	0.880	0.800	0.060	0.375	1650
13/16	0.813	0.910	1.120	1.660	0.720	0.970	0.860	0.060	0.406	2200
7/8	0.875	0.970	1.150	1.810	0.800	1.060	0.910	0.060	0.438	2475
15/16	0.938	0.970	1.150	1.850	0.810	1.060	0.950	0.060	0.438	3025
1	1.000	1.050	1.230	2.000	0.880	1.160	1.060	0.060	0.500	3575
1 1/16	1.063	1.090	1.250	2.100	0.970	1.200	1.200	0.080	0.500	3850
1 1/8	1.125	1.140	1.370	2.210	1.000	1.270	1.230	0.080	0.500	4400
1 1/4	1.250	1.270	1.420	2.440	1.080	1.390	1.310	0.080	0.562	5775
1 3/16	1.313	1.390	1.690	2.630	1.170	1.520	1.340	0.080	0.562	6600
1 7/16	1.438	1.470	1.720	2.800	1.250	1.590	1.340	0.090	0.641	8250
1 1/2	1.500	1.470	1.720	2.840	1.270	1.590	1.450	0.090	0.641	8500
1 5/8	1.625	1.560	1.880	3.100	1.380	1.750	1.560	0.090	0.641	9000

[a] *B* = arc radius created by the swing of the wrench.

[b] *F* = inside arc radius of part.

[c] *H* = thickness of wrench head. (Dimension line not shown.)

[d] *J* = torque that wrench will withstand in inch-pounds. Values updated from ANSI/ASME B107.100-2010, Wrenches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fig. 1. Clearances for Open End Engineers Wrench (See Table 2)

Fig. 2. Clearance Dimensions for Single and Double Hexagon Socket Wrenches (See Table 3a and Table 3b)

Table 3a. Clearance for Single and Double Hexagon Socket Wrenches, Regular Length - Inch Series

See Fig. 2, page 1689 for Dimensions																						
			1/4 in. Square Drive, Q					3/8 in. Square Drive, Q					1/2 in. Square Drive, Q					3/4 in. Square Drive, Q				
Nominal Opening		Radial Clearance C Ref.[a]	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	C-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf·in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf·in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf·in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf·in.) Min.
1/8	(0.125)	0.030	1.010	0.250	0.510	0.540	35	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5/32	(0.156)	0.030	1.010	0.281	0.510	0.540	60	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/16	(0.188)	0.030	1.010	0.338	0.510	0.540	95	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
7/32	(0.219)	0.030	1.010	0.382	0.510	0.540	135	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
1/4	(0.250)	0.030	1.010	0.425	0.510	0.540	190	1.260	0.472	0.690	0.720	270	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
9/32	(0.281)	0.030	1.010	0.457	0.510	0.540	250	1.260	0.496	0.690	0.720	350	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5/16	(0.313)	0.030	1.010	0.510	0.510	0.540	320	1.260	0.521	0.690	0.720	440	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
11/32	(0.344)	0.030	1.010	0.547	0.547	0.577	400	1.260	0.567	0.690	0.720	550	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3/8	(0.375)	0.030	1.010	0.597	0.597	0.627	500	1.260	0.613	0.690	0.720	660	1.525	0.655	0.940	0.970	1100	…	…	…	…	…
7/16	(0.438)	0.030	1.010	0.683	0.683	0.713	500	1.260	0.683	0.690	0.720	930	1.525	0.730	0.940	0.970	1500	…	…	…	…	…
1/2	(0.500)	0.030	1.010	0.697	0.697	0.727	500	1.260	0.751	0.880	0.910	1240	1.525	0.775	0.940	0.970	2000	…	…	…	…	…
9/16	(0.563)	0.030	1.010	0.778	0.778	0.808	500	1.260	0.814	0.880	0.910	1610	1.572	0.845	0.940	0.970	2600	…	…	…	…	…
5/8	(0.625)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.260	0.890	0.890	0.920	200	1.572	0.942	0.970	1.000	3300	…	…	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3a. *(Continued)* **Clearance for Single and Double Hexagon Socket Wrenches, Regular Length - Inch Series**

See Fig. 2, page 1689 for Dimensions																						
		1/4 in. Square Drive, Q					3/8 in. Square Drive, Q					1/2 in. Square Drive, Q					3/4 in. Square Drive, Q				
Nominal Opening	Radial Clearance C Ref.[a]	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	C-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf-in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf-in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf-in.) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (lbf-in.) Min.
11/16 (0.688)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.260	0.968	0.968	0.998	2200	1.572	1.010	1.010	1.040	4100	…	…	…	…	…
3/4 (0.750)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.260	1.110	1.110	1.140	2200	1.572	1.080	1.080	1.110	5000	2.000	1.285	1.450	1.480	6000
13/16 (0.813)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.406	1.141	1.141	1.171	2200	1.635	1.145	1.145	1.175	5000	2.000	1.300	1.450	1.480	6800
7/8 (0.875)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.406	1.250	1.250	1.280	2200	1.760	1.218	1.218	1.248	5000	2.010	1.385	1.575	1.605	7700
15/16 (0.938)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.650	1.310	1.310	1.340	2200	1.760	1.300	1.300	1.330	5000	2.010	1.450	1.575	1.605	8700
1 (1.000)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	1.650	1.380	1.380	1.410	2200	1.760	1.375	1.375	1.405	5000	2.072	1.520	1.575	1.605	9700
1 1/16 (1.063)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.853	1.480	1.480	1.510	5000	2.200	1.595	1.595	1.625	10,800
1 1/8 (1.125)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.947	1.540	1.540	1.570	5000	2.322	1.600	1.680	1.710	11,900
1 3/16 (1.188)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1.947	1.675	1.675	1.705	5000	2.322	1.735	1.735	1.765	13,000
1 1/4 (1.250)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.015	1.750	1.750	1.780	5000	2.385	1.870	1.870	1.900	14,200
1 5/16 (1.313)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.015	1.820	1.820	1.850	5000	2.510	1.920	1.920	1.950	15,400
1 3/8 (1.375)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.155	1.885	1.885	1.915	5000	2.635	1.980	1.980	2.010	16,700
1 7/16 (1.438)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.295	1.955	1.955	1.985	5000	2.635	2.075	2.075	2.105	18,000
1 1/2 (1.500)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.295	2.025	2.025	2.055	5000	2.635	2.145	2.145	2.175	18,000
1 5/8 (1.625)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.760	2.260	2.260	2.290	18,000
1 3/4 (1.750)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	2.760	2.325	2.325	2.355	18,000
1 13/16 (1.813)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.135	2.400	2.400	2.430	18,000
1 7/8 (1.875)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.135	2.510	2.510	2.540	18,000
2 (2.000)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.260	2.575	2.575	2.605	18,000
2 1/16 (2.063)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.385	2.695	2.695	2.725	18,000
2 1/8 (2.125)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.510	2.885	2.885	2.915	18,000
2 3/16 (2.188)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.697	3.025	3.025	3.055	18,000
2 1/4 (2.250)	0.030	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3.697	3.075	3.075	3.105	18,000

[a] From the SAE Aeronautical Drafting Manual

All dimensions are in inches. For details not shown and additional socket sizes, see ANSI/ASME B107.1-2002, Socket Wrenches, Hand (Inch Series).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3b. Single and Double Hexagon Socket, Regular Length - Metric Series

(See Fig. 2, page 1689 for Dimensions)																					
		6.3 mm Square Drive Q					10 mm Square Drive Q					12.5 mm Square Drive Q					20 mm Square Drive Q				
Nominal Opening	Radial Clearance C Ref.[a]	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	C-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.
3.2	0.762	26	6.10	12.95	14.47	7	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
4	0.762	26	7.10	12.95	14.47	8	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
4.5	0.762	26	7.60	12.95	14.47	9	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5	0.762	26	8.15	12.95	14.47	10	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
5.5	0.762	26	8.90	12.95	14.47	14	32	10.10	17.60	19.124	270	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
6	0.762	26	9.90	12.95	14.47	16	32	10.10	17.60	19.124	350	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
6.3	0.762	26	9.90	12.95	14.47	21	32	10.10	17.60	19.124	440	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
7	0.762	26	10.90	12.95	14.47	27	32	11.05	17.60	19.124	550	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
8	0.762	26	12.20	12.95	14.47	38	32	12.20	17.60	19.124	660	39	14.00	23.87	25.39	80	…	…	…	…	…
9	0.762	26	13.45	13.45	14.97	49	32	13.60	17.60	19.124	930	39	15.10	23.87	25.39	110	…	…	…	…	…
10	0.762	26	14.75	14.75	16.27	63	32	15.00	17.60	19.124	1240	39	16.80	23.87	25.39	153	…	…	…	…	…
11	0.762	26	16.00	16.00	17.52	68	32	16.75	17.60	19.124	1610	39	18.20	23.87	25.39	170	…	…	…	…	…
12	0.762	26	17.30	17.30	18.82	68	32	17.80	22.40	23.924	200	39	18.70	23.87	25.39	203	…	…	…	…	…
13	0.762	26	18.55	18.55	20.07	68	32	18.80	22.40	23.924	2200	39	20.25	23.87	25.39	249	…	…	…	…	…
14	0.762	26	19.80	19.80	21.32	68	32	20.00	22.40	23.924	2200	39	21.80	23.87	25.39	282	…	…	…	…	…
15	0.762	26	21.50	21.50	23.02	68	32	22.40	22.40	23.924	2200	40	22.40	23.87	25.39	339	…	…	…	…	…
16	0.762	26	22.00	22.00	23.52	68	32	22.50	22.50	24.024	2200	40	23.87	23.87	25.39	407	…	…	…	…	…
17	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	32	23.80	23.80	25.324	2200	40	24.75	24.75	26.27	475	…	…	…	…	…
18	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	32	24.60	24.60	26.124	2200	40	26.14	26.14	27.66	542	…	…	…	…	…
19	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	32	25.70	25.70	27.224	…	40	27.20	27.20	28.72	575	51	30.50	33.00	33.76	780
20	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	32	27.76	27.76	29.284	…	42	27.95	27.95	29.47	570	…	…	…	…	…
21	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	34	28.80	28.80	30.324	…	42	28.95	28.95	30.47	570	51	33.00	33.00	33.76	930
22	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	34	30.00	30.00	31.524	…	45	30.20	30.20	31.72	570	51	35.05	38.10	38.86	972
23	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	35	31.30	31.30	32.824	…	45	31.25	31.25	32.77	570	51	36.10	39.10	39.86	1015

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

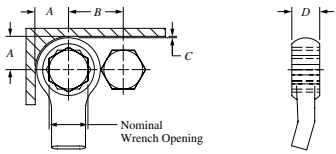
Table 3b. *(Continued)* **Single and Double Hexagon Socket, Regular Length - Metric Series**

(See Fig. 2, page 1689 for Dimensions)																					
		6.3 mm Square Drive Q					10 mm Square Drive Q					12.5 mm Square Drive Q					20 mm Square Drive Q				
Nominal Opening	Radial Clearance C Ref.[a]	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	C-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.	Length L Max.	Nut End Dia. D1 Max.	Drive End Dia. D2 Max.	Counter-Bore Dia. K Min.	Proof Torque P (N-m) Min.
24	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	36	32.50	32.50	34.024	…	45	32.15	32.15	33.67	570	51	37.00	40.00	40.76	1085
25	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	38	33.00	33.00	34.524	…	45	33.40	33.40	34.92	570	52	37.85	40.00	40.76	1160
26	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	38	35.00	35.00	36.524	…	48	35.05	35.05	36.57	570	53	38.85	40.00	40.76	1240
27	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	48	36.75	36.75	38.27	570	54	41.00	41.00	41.76	1330
28	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	50	37.80	37.80	39.32	570	57	41.00	41.00	41.76	1420
29	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	50	39.50	39.50	41.02	570	59	42.10	42.10	42.86	1520
30	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	50	42.40	42.40	43.92	570	59	43.00	43.00	43.76	1640
31	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	50	43.20	43.20	44.72	570	60	45.10	45.10	45.86	1730
32	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	51	44.05	44.05	45.57	570	60	47.05	47.05	47.81	1820
34	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	64	49.00	49.00	49.76	2000
35	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	67	50.40	50.40	51.16	2030
36	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	67	51.80	51.80	52.56	2030
38	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	67	54.10	54.10	54.86	2030
40	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	70	57.65	57.65	58.41	2030
41	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	70	58.80	58.80	59.56	2030
42	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	70	58.80	58.80	59.56	2030
46	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	83	65.40	65.40	66.16	2030
50	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	89	72.15	72.15	72.91	2030
54	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	94	78.10	78.10	78.86	2030
55	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	95	79.10	79.10	79.86	2030
58	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	97	80.00	80.00	80.76	2030
60	0.762	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	100	84.45	84.45	85.21	2030

[a] Converted from inch dimensions given in the SAE Aeronautical Drafting Manual.
All dimensions are in mm. For details not shown and additional socket sizes, see ANSI/ASME B107.5M-2002, Socket Wrenches, Hand (Metric Series).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Clearances for Box Wrenches - 12 Point Inch and Metric Series



US Customary (inch)							Metric (mm)					
Nominal Wrench Opening (in.)		A Min. (in.)	B Min. (in.)	C Ref.[a] (in.)	Head Thickness D Max., (in.)	Proof Torque (lbf-in.)	Nominal Wrench Opening (mm)	A Min. (mm)	B Min. (mm)	C Ref.,[b] (mm)	Head Thickness D Max., (mm)	Proof Torque (N-m)
1/8	(0.125)	0.179	0.219	0.030	0.172	60	4	4.56	6.03	0.762	4.0	12
5/32	(0.156)	0.187	0.244	0.030	0.172	90	5	5.26	7.29	0.762	4.6	17
3/16	(0.188)	0.218	0.301	0.030	0.203	150	5.5	6.66	8.97	0.762	6.0	18
7/32	(0.219)	0.233	0.325	0.030	0.234	165	6	7.11	9.69	0.762	7.4	20
1/4	(0.250)	0.269	0.378	0.030	0.295	220	7	7.91	11.05	0.762	7.7	27
9/32	(0.281)	0.280	0.407	0.030	0.280	248	8	8.26	11.98	0.762	8.2	30
5/16	(0.313)	0.316	0.461	0.030	0.330	275	9	9.46	13.76	0.762	9.0	40
11/32	(0.344)	0.336	0.499	0.030	0.335	275	10	10.16	15.04	0.762	9.0	71
3/8	(0.375)	0.362	0.543	0.030	0.344	605	11	10.71	16.15	0.762	10.0	80
7/16	(0.438)	0.395	0.612	0.030	0.391	715	12	11.46	17.47	0.762	10.0	91
1/2	(0.500)	0.442	0.694	0.030	0.394	1020	13	12.31	18.89	0.762	10.5	115
9/16	(0.563)	0.492	0.779	0.030	0.425	1500	14	12.96	20.10	0.762	11.5	158
5/8	(0.625)	0.530	0.853	0.030	0.500	2200	15	13.76	21.46	0.762	11.5	200
11/16	(0.688)	0.577	0.935	0.030	0.535	2640	16	14.26	22.53	0.762	12.1	248
3/4	(0.750)	0.618	1.012	0.030	0.594	2860	17	15.41	24.25	0.762	12.7	267
13/16	(0.813)	0.702	1.132	0.030	0.609	3300	18	15.41	24.83	0.762	12.7	304
7/8	(0.875)	0.718	1.183	0.030	0.688	3630	19	16.36	26.35	0.762	14.8	323
15/16	(0.938)	0.765	1.266	0.030	0.701	4510	20	17.21	27.77	0.762	14.8	347
1	(1.000)	0.796	1.330	0.030	0.719	5390	21	17.66	28.79	0.762	16.3	372
1 1/16	(1.063)	0.874	1.445	0.030	0.790	5940	22	18.56	30.27	0.762	16.3	408
1 1/8	(1.125)	0.892	1.498	0.030	0.860	6430	23	19.41	31.69	0.762	16.5	455
1 3/16	(1.188)	0.937	1.579	0.030	0.890	7200	24	19.81	32.65	0.762	17.8	509
1 1/4	(1.250)	0.983	1.661	0.030	0.940	7920	25	20.86	34.24	0.762	17.9	559
1 5/16	(1.313)	1.062	1.775	0.030	0.940	8400	26	12.86	26.79	0.762	18.0	608
1 3/8	(1.375)	1.087	1.836	0.030	0.940	8970	27	22.86	37.37	0.762	19.8	671
1 7/16	(1.438)	1.144	1.929	0.030	0.953	9240	28	23.41	38.49	0.762	19.8	710
1 1/2	(1.500)	1.228	2.049	0.030	1.008	10,365	29	23.41	39.06	0.762	19.8	750
1 9/16	(1.563)	1.249	2.104	0.030	1.031	11,495	30	24.51	40.73	0.762	20.0	795
1 5/8	(1.625)	1.351	2.241	0.030	1.063	12,800	31	25.06	41.85	0.762	20.5	850
1 11/16	(1.688)	1.425	2.351	0.030	1.063	13,570	32	25.66	43.03	0.762	22.0	905
1 3/4	(1.750)	1.499	2.461	0.030	1.125	14,300	33	25.91	43.84	0.762	22.3	950
1 13/16	(1.813)	1.499	2.496	0.030	1.125	15,100	34	26.76	45.26	0.762	23.2	994
1 7/8	(1.875)	1.593	2.625	0.030	1.125	15,900	36	28.81	48.47	0.762	25.1	1165
2	(2.000)	1.593	2.696	0.030	1.125	17,400	41	32.21	54.68	0.762	25.3	1579
2 1/16	(2.063)	1.687	2.825	0.030	1.234	18,200	46	34.76	60.06	0.762	25.8	2067
2 1/8	(2.125)	1.687	2.861	0.030	1.234	19,000	50	38.76	66.33	0.762	27.6	2512
2 3/16	(2.188)	1.687	2.896	0.030	1.234	19,700	…	…	…	…	…	…
2 1/4	(2.250)	1.687	2.931	0.030	1.234	20,500	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] From SAE Aeronautical Drafting Manual

[b] Converted from SAE Aeronautical Drafting Manual. For details not shown, including material, see ANSI/ASME B107.100-2010 Wrenches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. American National Standard Type A Plain Washers—Preferred Sizes *ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)*

Nominal Washer Size[a]		Series	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness		
				Tolerance			Tolerance				
			Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Max.	Min.
No. 0	—		0.078	0.000	0.005	0.188	0.000	0.005	0.020	0.025	0.016
No. 2	—		0.094	0.000	0.005	0.250	0.000	0.005	0.020	0.025	0.016
No. 4	—		0.125	0.008	0.005	0.312	0.008	0.005	0.032	0.040	0.025
No. 6	0.138		0.156	0.008	0.005	0.375	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
No. 8	0.164		0.188	0.008	0.005	0.438	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
No. 10	0.190		0.219	0.008	0.005	0.500	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
3/16	0.188		0.250	0.015	0.005	0.562	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
No. 12	0.216		0.250	0.015	0.005	0.562	0.015	0.005	0.065	0.080	0.051
1/4	0.250	N	0.281	0.015	0.005	0.625	0.015	0.005	0.065	0.080	0.051
1/4	0.250	W	0.312	0.015	0.005	0.734[b]	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
5/16	0.312	N	0.344	0.015	0.005	0.688	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
5/16	0.312	W	0.375	0.015	0.005	0.875	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
3/8	0.375	N	0.406	0.015	0.005	0.812	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
3/8	0.375	W	0.438	0.015	0.005	1.000	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
7/16	0.438	N	0.469	0.015	0.005	0.922	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
7/16	0.438	W	0.500	0.015	0.005	1.250	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
1/2	0.500	N	0.531	0.015	0.005	1.062	0.030	0.007	0.095	0.121	0.074
1/2	0.500	W	0.562	0.015	0.005	1.375	0.030	0.007	0.109	0.132	0.086
9/16	0.562	N	0.594	0.015	0.005	1.156[b]	0.030	0.007	0.095	0.121	0.074
9/16	0.562	W	0.625	0.015	0.005	1.469[b]	0.030	0.007	0.109	0.132	0.086
5/8	0.625	N	0.656	0.030	0.007	1.312	0.030	0.007	0.095	0.121	0.074
5/8	0.625	W	0.688	0.030	0.007	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
3/4	0.750	N	0.812	0.030	0.007	1.469	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
3/4	0.750	W	0.812	0.030	0.007	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.148	0.177	0.122
7/8	0.875	N	0.938	0.030	0.007	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
7/8	0.875	W	0.938	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1	1.000	N	1.062	0.030	0.007	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
1	1.000	W	1.062	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 1/8	1.125	N	1.250	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
1 1/8	1.125	W	1.250	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 1/4	1.250	N	1.375	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 1/4	1.250	W	1.375	0.030	0.007	3.000	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 3/8	1.375	N	1.500	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 3/8	1.375	W	1.500	0.045	0.010	3.250	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1 1/2	1.500	N	1.625	0.030	0.007	3.000	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1 1/2	1.500	W	1.625	0.045	0.010	3.500	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1 5/8	1.625		1.750	0.045	0.010	3.750	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1 3/4	1.750		1.875	0.045	0.010	4.000	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1 7/8	1.875		2.000	0.045	0.010	4.250	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
2	2.000		2.125	0.045	0.010	4.500	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
2 1/4	2.250		2.375	0.045	0.010	4.750	0.045	0.010	0.220	0.248	0.193
2 1/2	2.500		2.625	0.045	0.010	5.000	0.045	0.010	0.238	0.280	0.210
2 3/4	2.750		2.875	0.065	0.010	5.250	0.065	0.010	0.259	0.310	0.228
3	3.000		3.125	0.065	0.010	5.500	0.065	0.010	0.284	0.327	0.249

[a] Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal screw or bolt sizes.

[b] The 0.734-inch, 1.156-inch, and 1.469-inch outside diameters avoid washers which could be used in coin operated devices.

All dimensions are in inches.

Preferred sizes are for the most part from series previously designated "Standard Plate" and "SAE." Where common sizes existed in the two series, the SAE size is designated "N" (narrow) and the Standard Plate "W" (wide). These sizes as well as all other sizes of Type A Plain Washers are to be ordered by ID, OD, and thickness dimensions.

Additional selected sizes of Type A Plain Washers are shown in Table 1b.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. American National Standard Type A Plain Washers.—Additional Selected Sizes *ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)*

Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness		
	Tolerance			Tolerance				
Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Max.	Min.
0.094	0.000	0.005	0.219	0.000	0.005	0.020	0.025	0.016
0.125	0.000	0.005	0.250	0.000	0.005	0.022	0.028	0.017
0.156	0.008	0.005	0.312	0.008	0.005	0.035	0.048	0.027
0.172	0.008	0.005	0.406	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.188	0.008	0.005	0.375	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.203	0.008	0.005	0.469	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.219	0.008	0.005	0.438	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.234	0.008	0.005	0.531	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.250	0.015	0.005	0.500	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.266	0.015	0.005	0.625	0.015	0.005	0.049	0.065	0.036
0.312	0.015	0.005	0.875	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
0.375	0.015	0.005	0.734[a]	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
0.375	0.015	0.005	1.125	0.015	0.007	0.065	0.080	0.051
0.438	0.015	0.005	0.875	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
0.438	0.015	0.005	1.375	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
0.500	0.015	0.005	1.125	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
0.500	0.015	0.005	1.625	0.030	0.007	0.083	0.104	0.064
0.562	0.015	0.005	1.250	0.030	0.007	0.109	0.132	0.086
0.562	0.015	0.005	1.875	0.030	0.007	0.109	0.132	0.086
0.625	0.015	0.005	1.375	0.030	0.007	0.109	0.132	0.086
0.625	0.015	0.005	2.125	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
0.688	0.030	0.007	1.469[a]	0.030	0.007	0.134	0.160	0.108
0.688	0.030	0.007	2.375	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
0.812	0.030	0.007	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.148	0.177	0.122
0.812	0.030	0.007	2.875	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
0.938	0.030	0.007	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
0.938	0.030	0.007	3.375	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1.062	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1.062	0.045	0.010	3.875	0.045	0.010	0.238	0.280	0.210
1.250	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1.375	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.165	0.192	0.136
1.500	0.045	0.010	3.000	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1.625	0.045	0.010	3.250	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1.688	0.045	0.010	3.500	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1.812	0.045	0.010	3.750	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
1.938	0.045	0.010	4.000	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153
2.062	0.045	0.010	4.250	0.045	0.010	0.180	0.213	0.153

[a] The 0.734-inch and 1.469-inch outside diameters avoid washers which could be used in coin operated devices.

All dimensions are in inches.

The above sizes are to be ordered by ID, OD, and thickness dimensions.

Preferred Sizes of Type A Plain Washers are shown in Table 1a.

ANSI Standard Plain Washers.—The Type A plain washers were originally developed in a light, medium, heavy and extra heavy series. These series have been discontinued and the washers are now designated by their nominal dimensions.

The Type B plain washers are available in a narrow, regular and wide series with proportions designed to distribute the load over larger areas of lower strength materials.

Plain washers are made of ferrous or nonferrous metal, plastic or other material as specified. The tolerances indicated in the tables are intended for metal washers only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Type B Plain Washers

Nominal Washer Size[a]		Series[b]	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness		
				Tolerance			Tolerance				
			Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Max.	Min.
No. 0	0.060	N	0.068	0.000	0.005	0.125	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		R	0.068	0.000	0.005	0.188	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		W	0.068	0.000	0.005	0.250	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
No. 1	0.073	N	0.084	0.000	0.005	0.156	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		R	0.084	0.000	0.005	0.219	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		W	0.084	0.000	0.005	0.281	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
No. 2	0.086	N	0.094	0.000	0.005	0.188	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		R	0.094	0.000	0.005	0.250	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
		W	0.094	0.000	0.005	0.344	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
No. 3	0.099	N	0.109	0.000	0.005	0.219	0.000	0.005	0.025	0.028	0.022
		R	0.109	0.000	0.005	0.312	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
		W	0.109	0.008	0.005	0.406	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
No. 4	0.112	N	0.125	0.000	0.005	0.250	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
		R	0.125	0.008	0.005	0.375	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		W	0.125	0.008	0.005	0.438	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
No. 5	0.125	N	0.141	0.000	0.005	0.281	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
		R	0.141	0.008	0.005	0.406	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		W	0.141	0.008	0.005	0.500	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
No. 6	0.138	N	0.156	0.000	0.005	0.312	0.000	0.005	0.032	0.036	0.028
		R	0.156	0.008	0.005	0.438	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		W	0.156	0.008	0.005	0.562	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
No. 8	0.164	N	0.188	0.008	0.005	0.375	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		R	0.188	0.008	0.005	0.500	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		W	0.188	0.008	0.005	0.625	0.015	0.005	0.063	0.071	0.056
No. 10	0.190	N	0.203	0.008	0.005	0.406	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		R	0.203	0.008	0.005	0.562	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		W	0.203	0.008	0.005	0.734[c]	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
No. 12	0.216	N	0.234	0.008	0.005	0.438	0.008	0.005	0.040	0.045	0.036
		R	0.234	0.008	0.005	0.625	0.015	0.005	0.063	0.071	0.056
		W	0.234	0.008	0.005	0.875	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
1/4	0.250	N	0.281	0.015	0.005	0.500	0.015	0.005	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.281	0.015	0.005	0.734[c]	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		W	0.281	0.015	0.005	1.000	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
5/16	0.312	N	0.344	0.015	0.005	0.625	0.015	0.005	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.344	0.015	0.005	0.875	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		W	0.344	0.015	0.005	1.125	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
3/8	0.375	N	0.406	0.015	0.005	0.734[c]	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.406	0.015	0.005	1.000	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		W	0.406	0.015	0.005	1.250	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
7/16	0.438	N	0.469	0.015	0.005	0.875	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.469	0.015	0.005	1.125	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		W	0.469	0.015	0.005	1.469[c]	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
1/2	0.500	N	0.531	0.015	0.005	1.000	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.531	0.015	0.005	1.250	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		W	0.531	0.015	0.005	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
9/16	0.562	N	0.594	0.015	0.005	1.125	0.015	0.007	0.063	0.071	0.056
		R	0.594	0.015	0.005	1.469[c]	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		W	0.594	0.015	0.005	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
5/8	0.625	N	0.656	0.030	0.007	1.250	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		R	0.656	0.030	0.007	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		W	0.656	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Type B Plain Washers.**

Nominal Washer Size[a]		Series[b]	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness		
				Tolerance			Tolerance				
			Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Plus	Minus	Basic	Max.	Min.
¾	0.750	N	0.812	0.030	0.007	1.375	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		R	0.812	0.030	0.007	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		W	0.812	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
⅞	0.875	N	0.938	0.030	0.007	1.469[c]	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		R	0.938	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		W	0.938	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
1	1.000	N	1.062	0.030	0.007	1.750	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		R	1.062	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		W	1.062	0.030	0.007	3.000	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
1⅛	1.125	N	1.188	0.030	0.007	2.000	0.030	0.007	0.100	0.112	0.090
		R	1.188	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		W	1.188	0.030	0.007	3.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
1¼	1.250	N	1.312	0.030	0.007	2.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		R	1.312	0.030	0.007	3.000	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		W	1.312	0.045	0.010	3.500	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
1⅜	1.375	N	1.438	0.030	0.007	2.500	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		R	1.438	0.030	0.007	3.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		W	1.438	0.045	0.010	3.750	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
1½	1.500	N	1.562	0.030	0.007	2.750	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		R	1.562	0.045	0.010	3.500	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		W	1.562	0.045	0.010	4.000	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
1⅝	1.625	N	1.750	0.030	0.007	3.000	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		R	1.750	0.045	0.010	3.750	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		W	1.750	0.045	0.010	4.250	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
1¾	1.750	N	1.875	0.030	0.007	3.250	0.030	0.007	0.160	0.174	0.146
		R	1.875	0.045	0.010	4.000	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		W	1.875	0.045	0.010	4.500	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
1⅞	1.875	N	2.000	0.045	0.010	3.500	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		R	2.000	0.045	0.010	4.250	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		W	2.000	0.045	0.010	4.750	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
2	2.000	N	2.125	0.045	0.010	3.750	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		R	2.125	0.045	0.010	4.500	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234
		W	2.125	0.045	0.010	5.000	0.045	0.010	0.250	0.266	0.234

[a] Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal screw or bolt sizes.

[b] N indicates Narrow; R, Regular; and W, Wide Series.

[c] The 0.734-inch and 1.469-inch outside diameter avoids washers which could be used in coin operated devices.

All dimensions are in inches.

Inside and outside diameters shall be concentric within at least the inside diameter tolerance.

Washers shall be flat within 0.005-inch for basic outside diameters up through 0.875-inch and within 0.010 inch for larger outside diameters.

For 2¼-, 2½-, 2¾-, and 3-inch sizes see ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016).

American National Standard Helical Spring and Tooth Lock Washers ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016).—This standard covers helical spring lock washers of carbon steel; boron steel; corrosion resistant steel, Types 302 and 305; aluminum-zinc alloy; phosphor-bronze; silicon-bronze; and K-Monel; in various series. Tooth lock washers of carbon steel having internal teeth, external teeth, and both internal and external teeth, of two constructions, designated as Type A and Type B. Washers intended for general industrial application are also covered. American National Standard Lock Washers (Metric Series) ANSI/ASME B18.21.2M-1999 (R2014) covers metric sizes for helical spring and tooth lock washers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Helical Spring Lock Washers: These washers are used to provide: 1) good bolt tension per unit of applied torque for tight assemblies; 2) hardened bearing surfaces to create uniform torque control; 3) uniform load distribution through controlled radii—section—cut-off; and 4) protection against looseness resulting from vibration and corrosion.

Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal screw or bolt sizes. These washers are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Product name; nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); series; material; and protective finish, if required. For example: Helical Spring Lock Washer, 0.375 Extra Duty, Steel, Phosphate Coated.

Helical spring lock washers are available in four series: Regular, heavy, extra duty and hi-collar as given in Table 2 and Table 1. Helical spring lock washers made of materials other than carbon steel are available in the regular series as given in Table 2.

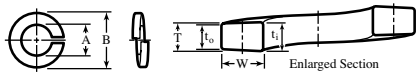
Table 1. American National Standard High Collar Helical Spring Lock Washers
ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)

Nominal Washer Size		Inside Diameter		Outside Diameter	Washer Section	
					Width	Thickness[a]
		Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Min.
No. 4	0.112	0.114	0.120	0.173	0.022	0.022
No. 5	0.125	0.127	0.133	0.202	0.030	0.030
No. 6	0.138	0.141	0.148	0.216	0.030	0.030
No. 8	0.164	0.167	0.174	0.267	0.042	0.047
No. 10	0.190	0.193	0.200	0.294	0.042	0.047
1/4	0.250	0.252	0.260	0.363	0.047	0.078
5/16	0.3125	0.314	0.322	0.457	0.062	0.093
3/8	0.375	0.377	0.385	0.550	0.076	0.125
7/16	0.4375	0.440	0.450	0.644	0.090	0.140
1/2	0.500	0.502	0.512	0.733	0.103	0.172
5/8	0.625	0.628	0.641	0.917	0.125	0.203
3/4	0.750	0.753	0.766	1.105	0.154	0.218
7/8	0.875	0.878	0.894	1.291	0.182	0.234
1	1.000	1.003	1.024	1.478	0.208	0.250
1 1/8	1.125	1.129	1.153	1.663	0.236	0.313
1 1/4	1.250	1.254	1.280	1.790	0.236	0.313
1 3/8	1.375	1.379	1.408	2.031	0.292	0.375
1 1/2	1.500	1.504	1.534	2.159	0.292	0.375
1 3/4	1.750	1.758	1.789	2.596	0.383	0.469
2	2.000	2.008	2.039	2.846	0.383	0.469
2 1/4	2.250	2.262	2.293	3.345	0.508	0.508
2 1/2	2.500	2.512	2.543	3.595	0.508	0.508
2 3/4	2.750	2.762	2.793	4.095	0.633	0.633
3	3.000	3.012	3.043	4.345	0.633	0.633

[a] Mean section thickness = (inside thickness + outside thickness) ÷ 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Helical Spring Lock Washers *ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)*



Nominal Washer Size		Inside Diameter, *A*		Regular			Heavy			Extra Duty		
		Max.	Min.	O.D., *B* Max.	Section Width, *W*	Section Thickness, *T*[a]	O.D., *B* Max.	Section Width, *W*	Section Thickness, *T*[a]	O.D., *B* Max.	Section Width, *W*	Section Thickness, *T*[a]
No. 2	0.086	0.094	0.088	0.172	0.035	0.020	0.182	0.040	0.025	0.208	0.053	0.027
No. 3	0.099	0.107	0.101	0.195	0.040	0.025	0.209	0.047	0.031	0.239	0.062	0.034
No. 4	0.112	0.120	0.114	0.209	0.040	0.025	0.223	0.047	0.031	0.253	0.062	0.034
No. 5	0.125	0.133	0.127	0.236	0.047	0.031	0.252	0.055	0.040	0.300	0.079	0.045
No. 6	0.138	0.148	0.141	0.250	0.047	0.031	0.266	0.055	0.040	0.314	0.079	0.045
No. 8	0.164	0.174	0.167	0.293	0.055	0.040	0.307	0.062	0.047	0.375	0.096	0.057
No. 10	0.190	0.200	0.193	0.334	0.062	0.047	0.350	0.070	0.056	0.434	0.112	0.068
No. 12	0.216	0.227	0.220	0.377	0.070	0.056	0.391	0.077	0.063	0.497	0.130	0.080
1/4	0.250	0.260	0.252	0.487	0.109	0.062	0.489	0.110	0.077	0.533	0.132	0.084
5/16	0.3125	0.322	0.314	0.583	0.125	0.078	0.593	0.130	0.097	0.619	0.143	0.108
3/8	0.375	0.385	0.377	0.680	0.141	0.094	0.688	0.145	0.115	0.738	0.170	0.123
7/16	0.4375	0.450	0.440	0.776	0.156	0.109	0.784	0.160	0.133	0.836	0.186	0.143
1/2	0.500	0.512	0.502	0.869	0.171	0.125	0.879	0.176	0.151	0.935	0.204	0.162
9/16	0.5625	0.574	0.564	0.965	0.188	0.141	0.975	0.193	0.170	1.035	0.223	0.182
5/8	0.625	0.641	0.628	1.073	0.203	0.156	1.087	0.210	0.189	1.151	0.242	0.202
11/16	0.6875	0.704	0.691	1.170	0.219	0.172	1.186	0.227	0.207	1.252	0.260	0.221
3/4	0.750	0.766	0.753	1.265	0.234	0.188	1.285	0.244	0.226	1.355	0.279	0.241
13/16	0.8125	0.832	0.816	1.363	0.250	0.203	1.387	0.262	0.246	1.458	0.298	0.261
7/8	0.875	0.894	0.878	1.459	0.266	0.219	1.489	0.281	0.266	1.571	0.322	0.285
15/16	0.9375	0.958	0.941	1.556	0.281	0.234	1.590	0.298	0.284	1.684	0.345	0.308
1	1.000	1.024	1.003	1.656	0.297	0.250	1.700	0.319	0.306	1.794	0.366	0.330
1 1/16	1.0625	1.087	1.066	1.751	0.312	0.266	1.803	0.338	0.326	1.905	0.389	0.352
1 1/8	1.125	1.153	1.129	1.847	0.328	0.281	1.903	0.356	0.345	2.013	0.411	0.375
1 3/16	1.1875	1.217	1.192	1.943	0.344	0.297	2.001	0.373	0.364	2.107	0.431	0.396
1 1/4	1.250	1.280	1.254	2.036	0.359	0.312	2.104	0.393	0.384	2.222	0.452	0.417
1 5/16	1.3125	1.344	1.317	2.133	0.375	0.328	2.203	0.410	0.403	2.327	0.472	0.438
1 3/8	1.375	1.408	1.379	2.219	0.391	0.344	2.301	0.427	0.422	2.429	0.491	0.458
1 7/16	1.4375	1.472	1.442	2.324	0.406	0.359	2.396	0.442	0.440	2.530	0.509	0.478
1 1/2	1.500	1.534	1.504	2.419	0.422	0.375	2.491	0.458	0.458	2.627	0.526	0.496

[a] T = mean section thickness = $(t_i + t_o) \div 2$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

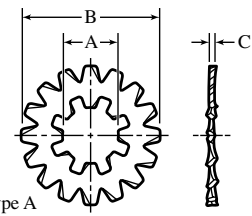
All dimensions are given in inches.*See ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016) standard for sizes over 1½ to 3, inclusive, for regular and heavy helical spring lock washers and over 1½ to 2, inclusive, for extra-duty helical spring lock washers.

When carbon steel helical spring lock washers are to be hot-dipped galvanized for use with hot-dipped galvanized bolts or screws, they are to be coiled to limits onto inch in excess of those specified in Table 2 and Table 1 for minimum inside diameter and maximum outside diameter. Galvanizing washers under ¼ inch nominal size are not recommended.

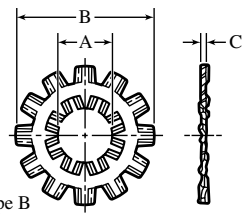
Tooth Lock Washers: These washers serve to lock fasteners, such as bolts and nuts, to the component parts of an assembly, or increase the friction between the fasteners and the assembly. They are designated in a manner similar to helical spring lock washers, and are available in carbon steel. Dimensions are given in Table 3 and Table 4.

Table 3. American National Standard Internal-External Tooth Lock Washers
ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)

All dimensions are given in inches except whole numbers under "Size"



Type A



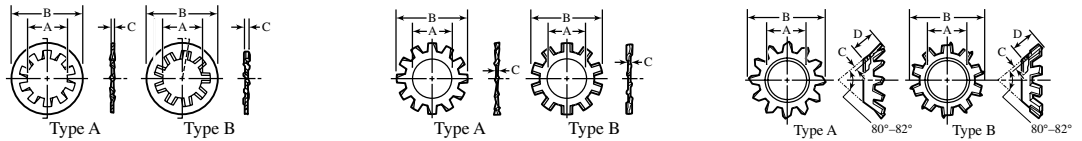
Type B

Size	A Inside Diameter Max.	A Inside Diameter Min.	B Outside Diameter Max.	B Outside Diameter Min.	C Thickness Max.	C Thickness Min.
No. 4 (0.112)	0.123	0.115	0.475	0.460	0.021	0.016
			0.510	0.495	0.021	0.017
			0.610	0.580	0.021	0.017
No. 6 (0.138)	.150	.0141	0.510	0.495	0.028	0.023
			0.610	0.580	0.028	0.023
			0.690	0.670	0.028	0.023
No. 8 (0.164)	0.176	0.168	0.610	0.580	0.034	0.028
			0.690	0.670	0.034	0.028
			0.760	0.740	0.034	0.028
No. 10 (0.190)	0.204	0.195	0.610	0.580	0.034	0.028
			0.690	0.670	0.040	0.032
			0.760	0.740	0.040	0.032
			0.900	0.880	0.040	0.032
No. 12 (0.216)	0.231	0.221	0.690	0.670	0.040	0.032
			0.760	0.725	0.040	0.032
			0.900	0.880	0.040	0.032
			0.985	0.965	0.045	0.037
¼ (0.250)	0.267	0.256	0.760	0.725	0.040	0.032
			0.900	0.880	0.040	0.032
			0.985	0.965	0.045	0.037
			1.070	1.045	0.045	0.037
5/16 (0.312)	0.332	0.320	0.900	0.865	0.040	0.032
			0.985	0.965	0.045	0.037
			1.070	1.045	0.050	0.042
			1.155	1.130	0.050	0.042
3/8 (0.375)	0.398	0.384	.985	.965	0.045	0.037
			1.070	1.045	0.050	0.042
			1.155	1.130	0.050	0.042
			1.260	1.220	0.050	0.042
7/16 (0.438)	0.464	0.448	1.070	1.045	0.050	0.042
			1.155	1.130	0.050	0.042
			1.260	1.220	0.055	0.047
			1.315	1.290	0.055	0.047
½ (0.500)	0.530	0.512	1.260	1.220	0.055	0.047
			1.315	1.290	0.055	0.047
			1.410	1.380	0.060	0.052
			1.620	1.590	0.067	0.059
9/16 (0.562)	.596	.576	1.315	1.290	0.055	0.047
			1.430	1.380	0.060	0.052
			1.620	1.590	0.067	0.059
			1.830	1.797	0.067	0.059
5/8 (0.625)	.663	.640	1.410	1.380	0.060	0.052
			1.620	1.590	0.067	0.059
			1.830	1.797	0.067	0.059
			1.975	1.935	0.067	0.059

All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Internal and External Tooth Lock Washers *ANSI/ASME B18.21.1-2009 (R2016)*



Internal Tooth | External Tooth | Countersunk External Tooth

Internal Tooth Lock Washers

	Size	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#8	#10	#12	¼	5⁄16	⅜	7⁄16	½	9⁄16	⅝	11⁄16	¾	13⁄16	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼
A	Max.	0.095	0.109	0.123	0.136	0.150	0.176	0.204	0.231	0.267	0.332	0.398	0.464	0.530	0.596	0.663	0.728	0.795	0.861	0.927	1.060	1.192	1.325
	Min.	0.089	0.102	0.115	0.129	0.141	0.168	0.195	0.221	0.256	0.320	0.384	0.448	0.512	0.576	0.640	0.704	0.769	0.832	0.894	1.019	1.144	1.275
B	Max.	0.200	0.232	0.270	0.280	0.295	0.340	0.381	0.410	0.478	0.610	0.692	0.789	0.900	0.985	1.071	1.166	1.245	1.315	1.410	1.637	1.830	1.975
	Min.	0.175	0.215	0.245	0.255	0.275	0.325	0.365	0.394	0.460	0.594	0.670	0.740	0.867	0.957	1.045	1.130	1.220	1.290	1.364	1.590	1.799	1.921
C	Max.	0.016	0.016	0.018	0.020	0.022	0.023	0.024	0.027	0.028	0.034	0.040	0.040	0.045	0.045	0.050	0.050	0.055	0.055	0.060	0.067	0.067	0.067
	Min.	0.010	0.010	0.012	0.014	0.016	0.018	0.018	0.020	0.023	0.028	0.032	0.032	0.037	0.037	0.042	0.042	0.047	0.047	0.052	0.059	0.059	0.059

External Tooth Lock Washers

A	Max.	…	0.109	0.123	0.136	0.150	0.176	0.204	0.231	0.267	0.332	0.398	0.464	0.530	0.596	0.663	0.728	0.795	0.861	0.927	1.060	…	…
	Min.	…	0.102	0.115	0.129	0.141	0.168	0.195	0.221	0.256	0.320	0.384	0.448	0.513	0.576	0.641	0.704	0.768	0.833	0.897	1.025	…	…
B	Max.	…	0.235	0.260	0.285	0.320	0.381	0.410	0.475	0.510	0.610	0.694	0.760	0.900	0.985	1.070	1.155	1.260	1.315	1.410	1.620	…	…
	Min.	…	0.220	0.245	0.270	0.305	0.365	0.395	0.460	0.494	0.588	0.670	0.740	0.880	0.960	1.045	1.130	1.220	1.290	1.380	1.590	…	…
C	Max.	…	0.016	0.018	0.020	0.022	0.023	0.024	0.027	0.028	0.034	0.040	0.040	0.045	0.045	0.050	0.050	0.055	0.055	0.060	0.067	…	…
	Min.	…	0.010	0.012	0.014	0.016	0.018	0.018	0.020	0.023	0.028	0.032	0.032	0.037	0.037	0.042	0.042	0.047	0.047	0.052	0.059	…	…

Heavy Internal Tooth Lock Washers

	Size	¼	5⁄16	⅜	7⁄16	½	9⁄16	⅝	¾	⅞
A	Max.	0.267	0.332	0.398	0.464	0.530	0.596	0.663	0.795	0.927
	Min.	0.256	0.320	0.384	0.448	0.512	0.576	0.640	0.768	0.894
B	Max.	0.536	0.607	0.748	0.858	0.924	1.034	1.135	1.265	1.447
	Min.	0.500	0.590	0.700	0.800	0.880	0.990	1.100	1.240	1.400
C	Max.	0.045	0.050	0.050	0.067	0.067	0.067	0.067	0.084	0.084
	Min.	0.035	0.040	0.042	0.050	0.055	0.055	0.059	0.070	0.075

Countersunk External Tooth Lock Washers[a]

	Size	#4	#6	#8	#10	#12	¼	#16	5⁄16	⅜	7⁄16	½
A	Max.	0.123	0.150	0.177	0.205	0.231	0.267	0.287	0.333	0.398	0.463	0.529
	Min.	0.113	0.140	0.167	0.195	0.220	0.255	0.273	0.318	0.383	0.448	0.512
C	Max.	0.019	0.021	0.021	0.025	0.025	0.025	0.028	0.028	0.034	0.045	0.045
	Min.	0.015	0.017	0.017	0.020	0.020	0.020	0.023	0.023	0.028	0.037	0.037
D	Max.	0.065	0.092	0.099	0.105	0.128	0.128	0.147	0.192	0.255	0.270	0.304
	Min.	0.050	0.082	0.083	0.088	0.118	0.113	0.137	0.165	0.242	0.260	0.294

[a] Starting with #4, approx. O.D.'s are: 0.213, 0.289, 0.322, 0.354, 0.421 0.454, 0.505, 0.599, 0.765, 0.867, and 0.976.
All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fasteners for Use in Structural Applications

The ANSI/ASME B18.2.6 standard covers the complete general and dimensional data for four products in the inch series recognized as American National Standard. Heavy hex nut thickness formulas and those for width across flats and width across corners are found in the Appendix of ANSI/ASME B18.2.2. The inclusion of dimensional data in this standard is not intended to imply that all products described herein are stock production sizes. Fasteners intended for use in structural applications and purchased for government use shall conform to this standard. All dimensions in ANSI/ASME B18.2.6 are in inches unless stated otherwise, and apply to unplated or uncoated product.

Symbols specifying geometric characteristics are in accord with ASME Y14.5, *Dimensioning and Tolerancing*. Standards for chemical and mechanical requirements for structural bolts are included in ASTM A325 and ASTM A490. Heavy hex nuts are included in ASTM A563. Hardened steel washers are included in ASTM F436, and compressible washer type direct tension indicators in ASTM F 959.

Heavy Hex Structural Bolts.—*Head Width Across Flats:* The width across flats of heads shall be the distance measured perpendicular to the axis of product, overall between two opposite sides of the head in accordance with the notes in the dimensional table.

Head Height: The head height shall be that overall distance measured parallel to the axis of the product from the top of the head to the bearing surface and shall include the thickness of the washer face. Raised grade and manufacturer's identification are excluded from head height.

Bolt Length: The bolt length shall be the distance measured parallel to the axis of the product from the bearing surface of the head to the extreme end of the bolt including point.

Threads: Threads shall be cut or rolled in accordance with ASME B 1.1. When specified, 8 thread series may be used on bolts over 1 inch in diameter. Structural bolts shall not be undersized to accommodate heavy coatings. Threads which have been hot-dipped or mechanically zinc coated shall meet the requirements specified in ASTM A325.

Body Diameter: The body diameter limits are shown in Table 5.

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, bolts shall be supplied with a plain (as processed) finish. Bolts to ASTM A490 shall not be metallic coated.

Materials: Chemical and mechanical properties of steel bolts shall conform to ASTM A325 or ASTM A490.

Workmanship: Bolts shall be free from burrs, seams, laps, loose scale, irregular surfaces, and any defects affecting serviceability. When control of surface discontinuities is required, the purchaser shall specify conformance to ASTM F 788/F 788M, surface discontinuities of bolts, screws, and studs, inch and metric series.

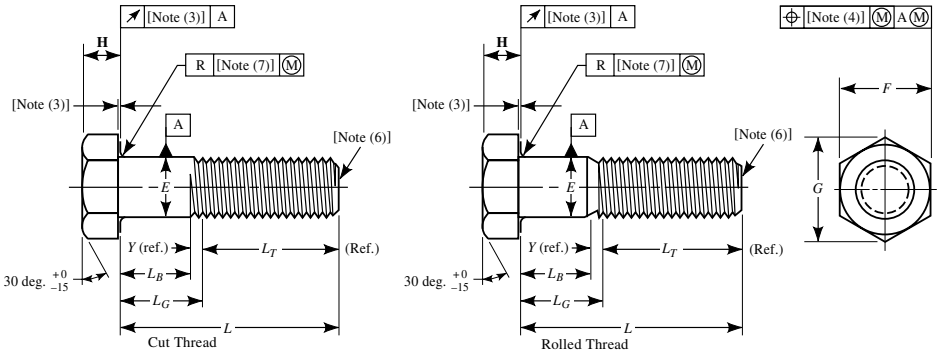
Designation: Heavy hex structural bolts shall be designated by the following data in the sequence shown: product name, nominal size (fractional or decimal equivalent), threads per inch, material (including specification and type where necessary), and protective finish (if required). See example below:

Example: Heavy Hex Structural Bolt, $\frac{3}{4}$-10 × 2 $\frac{1}{4}$, ASTM A325, Type 1, hot dipped zinc coated.

Identification Grade Symbols: Each bolt shall be marked in accordance with the requirements of the applicable specification; ASTM A325 or ASTM A490 and requirements of Table 5, Note (13).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Dimensions of Heavy Hex Structural Bolts *ASME B18.2.6-2019*



Nominal Size or Basic Product Diameter Note (15)		Body Diameter, *E* Note (5)		Width Across Flats *F* Note (2)			Width Across Corners *G*		Head Height *H*			Radius of Fillet *R*		Thread Length *LT* Note (10)	Transition Thread Length *Y* Note (10)	Total Runout of Bearing Surface FIM Note (3)
[No a (15)]		Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max., Ref.	Max.
1/2	0.5000	0.515	0.482	7/8	0.875	0.850	1.010	0.969	5/16	0.323	0.302	0.031	0.009	1.00	0.19	0.016
5/8	0.6250	0.642	0.605	1 1/16	1.062	1.031	1.227	1.175	25/64	0.403	0.378	0.062	0.021	1.25	0.22	0.019
3/4	0.7500	0.768	0.729	1 1/4	1.250	1.212	1.443	1.383	15/32	0.483	0.455	0.062	0.021	1.38	0.25	0.022
7/8	0.8750	0.895	0.852	1 7/16	1.438	1.394	1.660	1.589	35/64	0.563	0.531	0.062	0.031	1.50	0.28	0.025
1	1.0000	1.022	0.976	1 5/8	1.625	1.575	1.876	1.796	39/64	0.627	0.591	0.093	0.062	1.75	0.31	0.028
1 1/8	1.1250	1.149	1.098	1 13/16	1.812	1.756	2.093	2.002	11/16	0.718	0.658	0.093	0.062	2.00	0.34	0.032
1 1/4	1.2500	1.277	1.223	2	2.000	1.938	2.309	2.209	25/32	0.813	0.749	0.093	0.062	2.00	0.38	0.035
1 3/8	1.3750	1.404	1.345	2 3/16	2.188	2.119	2.526	2.416	27/32	0.878	0.810	0.093	0.062	2.25	0.44	0.038
1 1/2	1.5000	1.531	1.470	2 3/8	2.375	2.300	2.742	2.622	1 5/16	0.974	0.902	0.093	0.062	2.25	0.44	0.041

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

(1) *Top of Head*: Top of head shall be full form and chamfered or rounded with the diameter of chamfer circle or start of rounding being equal to the maximum width across flats within a tolerance of –15%.

(2) *Head Taper*: Maximum width across flats shall not be exceeded. No transverse section through the head between 25 and 75 percent of actual head height, as measured from the bearing surface, shall be less than the minimum width across flats.

(3) *Bearing Surface*: Bearing surface shall be flat and washer faced. Diameter of washer face shall be equal to the maximum width across flats within a tolerance of –10%.

Thickness of the washer face shall be not less than 0.015 inch nor greater than 0.025 inch for bolt sizes ¾ inch and smaller; and not less than 0.015 inch nor greater than 0.035 inch for sizes larger than ¾ inch.

The plane of the bearing surface shall be perpendicular to the axis of the body within the FIM limits specified for total runout. Measurement of FIM shall extend as close to the periphery of the bearing surface as possible while the bolt is being held in a collet or other gripping device at a distance of one bolt diameter from the underside of the head.

(4) *True Position of Head*: The axis of the head shall be located at true position with respect to the axis of the body (determined over a distance under the head equal to one diameter) within a tolerance zone having a diameter equivalent to 6 percent of the maximum width across flats at maximum material condition.

(5) *Body Diameter*: Any swell or fin under the head or any die seam on the body should not exceed the basic bolt diameter by the following: 0.030 in, for sizes ½ inch; 0.050 inch for sizes ⅝ and ¾ inch; 0.060 inch for sizes over ¾ inch to 1¼ inch; 0.090 inch for sizes over 1¼ inch.

(6) *Point*: Point shall be chamfered or rounded at the manufacturer's option from approximately 0.016 inch below the minor diameter of the thread. The first full formed thread at major diameter is located a distance no greater than 2 times the pitch measured from the end of the screw. This distance is to be determined by measuring how far the point enters into a cylindrical NOT GO major diameter ring gage.

(7) *Straightness*: Shanks of bolts shall be straight within the following limits at MMC; for bolts with nominal lengths to and including 12 inches the maximum camber shall be 0.006 inch per inch (0.006L) of bolt length, and for bolts with nominal lengths over 12 inches to and including 24 inches the maximum camber shall be 0.008 inch per inch (0.008L) of length.

(8) *Bolt Length*: Bolts are normally supplied in ¼ inch length increments, all lengths.

(9) *Length Tolerance*: Bolt length tolerances shall be as tabulated below:

Nominal Bolt Size	½	⅝	¾ through 1	1⅛ through 1½
Nominal Bolt Length	Tolerance of Length			
Through 6 inches	–0.12	–0.12	–0.19	–0.25
Over 6 inches	–0.19	–0.25	–0.25	–0.25

(10) *Thread Length*: The length of thread on bolts shall be controlled by the grip gaging length, LG, max., and the body length, L_B, min., as follows.

Grip gaging length, L_G, max., is the distance measured parallel to the axis of bolt from the underhead bearing surface to the face of a noncounterbored or noncountersunk standard G0 thread ring gage assembled by hand as far as the thread will permit. It shall be used as the criterion for inspection. The maximum grip gaging length, as calculated and rounded to two decimal places for any bolt not threaded full length, shall be equal to the nominal bolt length minus the basic thread length (L_G, max. = $L_{nom} - L_T$). For bolts which are threaded full length, L_G, max. defines the unthreaded length under the head and shall not exceed the length of 2.5 times the thread pitch for sizes up to and including 1 inch, and 3.5 times the thread pitch for sizes larger than 1 inch, L_G, max. represents the minimum design grip length of the bolt and may be used for determining thread availability when selecting bolt lengths even though usable threads may extend beyond this point.

Basic thread length, L_T, is a reference dimension, intended for calculation purposes only, which represents the distance from the extreme end of the bolt to the last complete (full form) thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Body length, L_B, min., is the distance measured parallel to the axis of bolt from the underhead bearing surface to the last scratch of thread or to the top of the extrusion angle. It shall be used as a criterion for inspection. The minimum body length, as calculated and rounded to two decimal places, shall be equal to the maximum grip gaging length minus the maximum transition thread length ($L_{B,min} = L_{G,max} - Y_{max}$). Bolts of nominal lengths which have a calculated $L_{B,min}$ length equal to or shorter than 2.5 times the thread pitch for sizes 1 inch and smaller, and 3.5 times the thread pitch for sizes larger than 1 inch shall be threaded for full length.

Transition thread length Y is a reference dimension, intended for calculation purposes only, which represents the length of incomplete threads and tolerance on grip gaging length.

(11) *Incomplete Thread Diameter*: The major diameter of incomplete thread shall not exceed the actual major diameter of the full form thread.

(12) *Threads*: Threads, when rolled, shall be in the Unified inch coarse or 8 thread series (UNRC or 8 UNR Series), Class 2A. Threads produced by other methods may be Unified inch coarse or 8 thread series (UNC or 8 UN Series), Class 2A. Acceptability of screw threads shall be determined based on System 21, ANSI/ASME B1.3, screw thread gaging systems for dimensional acceptability, unless otherwise specified.

(13) *Identification Symbols*: Identification marking symbols on the tops of heads for bolt sizes 5/8 inch and smaller shall project not less than 0.005 inch above the surface nor more than 0.015 inch over the specified maximum head height. Bolt sizes larger than 5/8 inch shall project not less than the equivalent in inches of 0.0075 times the basic bolt diameter above the surface nor more than 0.030 inch over the specified maximum head height.

(14) *Material*. Chemical and mechanical properties of steel bolts shall conform to ASTM A325 or ASTM A490.

(15) *Nominal Size*. Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal and in the fourth decimal place shall be omitted.

(16) *Dimensional Conformance*. Heavy hex structural bolts shall have the following characteristics inspected to ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 to the inspection level C: threads, width across comers, head height, grip length, visual.

If verifiable in-process inspection is used, see *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1705.

Identification Source Symbols: Each bolt shall be marked to identify its source (manufacturer, or private label distributor) accepting the responsibility for conformance to this and other applicable specifications.

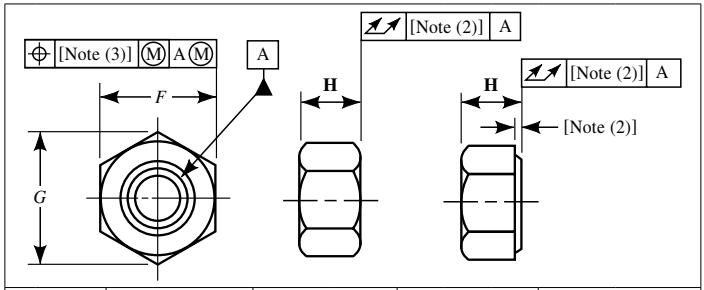
Quality Assurance: Unless otherwise specified, products shall be furnished in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 as noted as below.

Dimensional Characteristics: Bolts shall conform to the dimensions indicated in Table 5. The designated characteristics defined in Table 5, Note (16) shall be inspected in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18. For nondesignated characteristics, the provisions of ANSI/ASME B18.18 shall apply. Should a nondesignated dimension be determined to have a variance, it shall be deemed conforming to this Standard if the user, who is the installer, accepts the variance based on fit, form, and function considerations. Where verifiable in-process inspection is used in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017, the final inspection level sample sizes of those respective standards shall apply.

Heavy Hex Nuts.—*Width Across Flats:* The width across flats of heavy hex nuts shall be the overall distance measured, perpendicular to the axis of the nut, between two opposite sides of the nut in accordance with the notes of Table 6. For milled-from-bar hex nuts, the nominal bar size used shall be the closest commercially available size to the specified basic width across flats of the nut.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Dimensions of Heavy Hex Nuts for Use with Structural Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019*



Nominal Size or Basic Product Diameter		*F* Width Across Flats Basic	*F* Width Across Flats Max.	*F* Width Across Flats Min.	*G* Width Across Corners Max.	*G* Width Across Corners Min.	*H* Thickness Basic	*H* Thickness Max.	*H* Thickness Min.	Runout of Bearing Face FIM Heavy Hex Nuts Specified Proof Load Up to 150,000 psi	Runout of Bearing Face FIM Heavy Hex Nuts Specified Proof Load 150,000 psi and Greater
[Note (1)]		[Note (6)]			[Note (5)]					[Note (2)]	
1/2	0.5000	7/8	0.875	0.850	1.010	0.969	31/64	0.504	0.464	0.023	0.016
5/8	0.6250	1 1/16	1.062	1.031	1.227	1.175	39/64	0.631	0.587	0.025	0.018
3/4	0.7500	1 1/4	1.250	1.212	1.443	1.382	47/64	0.758	0.710	0.027	0.020
7/8	0.8750	1 7/16	1.438	1.394	1.660	1.589	55/64	0.885	0.833	0.029	0.022
1	1.0000	1 5/8	1.625	1.575	1.876	1.796	63/64	1.012	0.956	0.031	0.024
1 1/8	1.1250	1 13/16	1.812	1.756	2.093	2.002	1 7/64	1.139	1.079	0.033	0.027
1 1/4	1.2500	2	2.000	1.938	2.309	2.209	1 7/32	1.215	1.187	0.035	0.030
1 3/8	1.3750	2 3/16	2.188	2.119	2.526	2.416	1 11/32	1.378	1.310	0.038	0.033
1 1/2	1.5000	2 3/8	2.375	2.300	2.742	2.622	1 15/32	1.505	1.433	0.041	0.036

Note: Complete table included in B18.2.2 Square and Hex Nuts (Inch Series)

(1) *Unification*: Only the 9/16 size is not unified dimensionally with British and Canadian standards. Unification of fine thread products is limited to sizes 1 inch and under.

(2) *Tops and Bearing Surfaces of Nuts*: Nuts may be double chamfered or have washer faced bearing surface and chamfered top.

The diameter of chamfer circle on double chamfered nuts and diameter of washer face shall be within the limits of the maximum width across flats and 95 percent of the minimum width across flats.

The tops of washer faced nuts shall be flat and the diameter of chamfer circle shall be equal to the maximum width across flats within a tolerance of –15%. The length of chamfer at hex corners shall be 5 to 15 percent of the basic thread diameter.The surface of chamfer may be slightly convex or rounded.

Bearing surfaces shall be flat and, unless otherwise specified, shall be perpendicular to the axis of the threaded hole within the total runout (FIM) tabulated for the respective nut size, type, and strength level.

(3) *True Position of Tapped Hole*: At maximum material condition, the axis of nut body shall be located at true position with respect to the axis of the tapped hole within a tolerance zone having a diameter equivalent to 4 percent of the maximum width across flats for $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch nominal size nuts or smaller.

(4) *Countersink*: Tapped hole shall be countersunk on the bearing face or faces. The maximum countersink diameter shall be 1.08 times the thread basic (nominal) major diameter. No part of the threaded portion shall project beyond the bearing surface.

(5) *Corner Fill*: A rounding or lack of fill at junction of hex corners with chamfer shall be permissible provided the width across corners is within specified limits at and beyond a distance equal to 17.5% of the basic thread diameter from the chamfered faces.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(6) *Width Across Flats*: Maximum width across flats shall not be exceeded (see exception in *Heavy Hex Nuts.—Width Across Flats*). No transverse section through the nut between 25 and 75 percent of the actual nut thickness, as measured from the bearing surface, shall be less than the minimum width across flats. For milled-from-bar nuts, *Heavy Hex Nuts.—Width Across Flats*, pertaining to the nominal bar size to be used.

(7) *Threads*: Threads shall be UNC or 8 UN Class 2B in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.1, Unified Inch Screw Threads. When specified, 8 thread series may be used on nuts over 1 inch in diameter.

(8) *Dimensional Conformance*: Heavy hex nuts shall have the following characteristics inspected to ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 to the inspection levels as follows: Width across corners, inspection level C; Thickness, inspection level B; Visual, inspection level C.

If verifiable in-process inspection is used, see *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1707.

Nut Thickness: The nut thickness shall be the overall distance measured parallel to the axis of nut, from the top of the nut to the bearing surface, and shall include the thickness of the washer face where provided.

Threads: Threads shall be in accordance with Table 6, Note (7).

Thread Gaging: Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, gaging for screw thread dimensional acceptability shall be in accordance with Gaging System 21 as specified in ANSI/ASME B1.3 Screw Thread Gaging Systems for Acceptability: Inch and Metric Screw Threads (UN, UNR, UNJ, M, and MJ).

Overtapping: When nuts are zinc coated, they shall be overtapped after coating in accordance with the provisions of ASTM A563.

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, nuts shall be supplied with a plain (as-processed) finish, unplated or uncoated.

Materials: Chemical and mechanical properties of heavy hex nuts shall conform to ASTM A563.

Workmanship: Nuts shall be free from burrs, seams, laps, loose scale, irregular surfaces, and any defects affecting their serviceability. When control of surface discontinuities is required, the purchaser shall specify conformance to ASTM F 812/F 812M, Surface Discontinuities of Nuts—Inch and Metric Series.

Designation: Nuts shall be designated by the following data in sequence shown: product name, nominal size (fraction or decimal), threads per inch, material (including specification where necessary), protective finish (if required). See example below:

Example: Heavy Hex Nut, $\frac{1}{2}$-13, ASTM A563 Grade C, Plain Finish

Identification Grade Symbols: Each nut shall be marked in accordance with the requirements of the applicable specification: ASTM A563 or ASTM A194.

Identification Source Symbols: Each nut shall be marked to identify its source (manufacturer, or private label distributor) accepting the responsibility for conformance to this and other applicable specifications.

Quality Assurance: Unless otherwise specified, products shall be furnished in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18 as noted in *Dimensional Characteristics*.

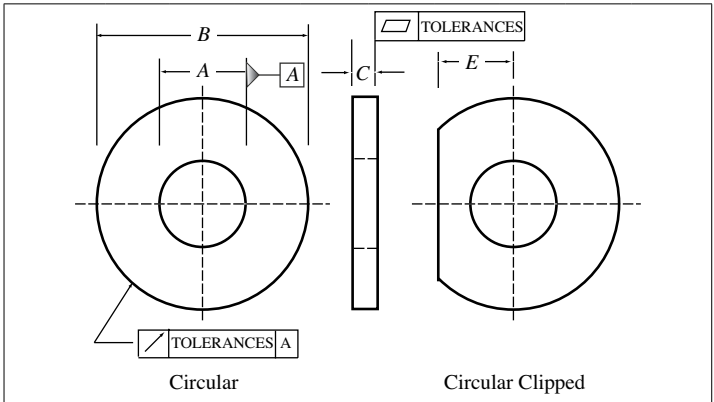
Dimensional Characteristics: Products shall conform to the dimensions indicated for the heavy hex nut in Table 6. The designated characteristics defined in Table 6, Note (8) shall be inspected in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18. For nondesignated characteristics, the provision of ANSI/ASME B18.18 shall apply. Should a nondesignated dimension be determined to have a variance, it shall be deemed conforming to this Standard if the user, who is the installer, accepts the variance based on fit, form, and function considerations. Where verifiable in-process inspection is used in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017, the final inspection level sample sizes of those respective standards shall apply.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hardened Steel Washers

Flat Washers.—*Flat Washers Dimensions:* All circular and circular clipped washers shall conform to the dimensions shown in Table 7.

Table 7. Dimensions for Hardened Steel Circular and Circular Clipped Washers *ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019*



Bolt Size or Nominal[a] Washer Size, Inch	Inside Diameter *A*			Outside Diameter *B*			Thickness *C*		Minimum Edge Distance *E*
	Basic Washer	Tolerance			Tolerance				
		Plus	Minus	Basic	Plus	Minus	Min.	Max.	
1/2	0.531	0.0313	0	1.063	0.0313	0.0313	0.097	0.177	0.438
5/8	0.688	0.0313	0	1.313	0.0313	0.0313	0.122	0.177	0.547
3/4	0.813	0.0313	0	1.469	0.0313	0.0313	0.122	0.177	0.656
7/8	0.938	0.0313	0	1.750	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	0.766
1	1.125	0.0313	0	2.000	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	0.875
1 1/8	1.250	0.0313	0	2.250	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	0.984
1 1/4	1.375	0.0313	0	2.500	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	1.094
1 3/8	1.500	0.0313	0	2.750	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	1.203
1 1/2	1.625	0.0313	0	3.000	0.0313	0.0313	0.136	0.177	1.313

[a] Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal bolt diameters.

General Notes:

(1) *Dimensional Conformance*: Circular and circular clipped washers shall have the following characteristics inspected to ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 to the inspection levels as follows: Width across corners, inspection level B; Visual, inspection level C.

If verifiable in-process inspection is used, see *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1709.

(2) Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal bolt diameters.

(3) Additional requirements are in *Beveled Washers* on page 1709.

Flat Washers Tolerances: Washer inside diameter, outside diameter, thickness, and edge distance shall be in accordance with Table 7. The deviation from flatness shall not exceed 0.010 inch as the maximum deviation from a straight edge placed on the cut side. Circular runout of the outside diameter with respect to the hole shall not exceed 0.030 FIM. Burrs shall not project above immediately adjacent washer surface more than 0.010 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, washers shall be supplied with a plain (as processed) finish. If zinc coatings are required, they shall be in accordance with ASTM F 436.

Materials: Materials shall conform to the requirements established by ASTM F 436.

Workmanship: Washers shall be free from burrs, seams, laps, loose scale, irregular surfaces, and any defects affecting serviceability.

Designation: Washers shall be designated by the following data in the sequence shown: product name, nominal size (fraction or decimal), material specification, protective finish. See example below:

Example: Hardened Steel Circular Washer, $1\frac{1}{8}$ ASTM F 436, Hot-Dip Galvanized in Accordance with ASTM A153 Class C.

Identification Symbols: Grade and source marking and symbols shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F436. The source marking is intended to identify the source accepting the responsibility for the conformance to this and other applicable specifications.

Quality Assurance: Unless otherwise specified, products shall be furnished in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 as noted in *Dimensional Characteristics*.

Dimensional Characteristics: Washers shall conform to the dimensions indicated in Table 7. The designated characteristics defined in Table 7, Note (1) shall be inspected in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017. For nondesignated characteristics, the provisions of ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 shall also apply. Should a nondesignated dimension be determined to have a variance, it shall be deemed conforming to this Standard if the user, who is the installer, accepts the variance based on fit, form, and function considerations. Where verifiable in-process inspection is used in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017, the final inspection level sample sizes of those respective standards shall apply.

Beveled Washers.—*Dimensions:* All square beveled and clipped square beveled washers shall conform to the dimensions shown in Table 8.

Tolerances: Tolerances for inside diameter for beveled washers shall be in accordance with Table 8. The flatness shall not exceed 0.010 inch as the maximum deviation from a straight edge placed on the cut side. Burrs shall not project above immediately adjacent washer surface more than 0.010 inch.

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, washers shall be supplied with a plain (as-processed) finish. If zinc coatings are required, they shall be in accordance with ASTM F 436.

Materials and Mechanical Properties: Materials and properties shall conform to the requirements established by ASTM F 436.

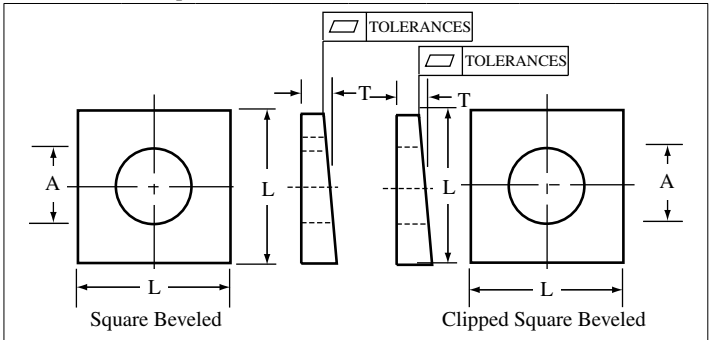
Workmanship: Washers shall be free from burrs, seams, laps, loose scale, irregular surfaces, and any defects affecting serviceability.

Designation: Washers shall be designated by the following data in the sequence shown: product name, nominal washer size (fraction or decimal), material specification, protective finish. See example below:

Example: Square Beveled Washer, $1\frac{1}{4}$ ASTM F 436, hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153 Class C.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Dimensions for Hardened Beveled Washers with Slope or Taper in Thickness 1:6 *ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019*



Nominal Washer Size [Note (3)]		Inside Diameter *A*			Minimum Side Length *L*	Thickness *T*	Minimum Edge Distance *E*
			Tolerance				
		Basic	Plus	Minus			
1/2	0.500	0.531	0.0313	0	1.750	0.313	0.438
5/8	0.625	0.688	0.0313	0	1.750	0.313	0.547
3/4	0.750	0.813	0.0313	0	1.750	0.313	0.656
7/8	0.875	0.938	0.0313	0	1.750	0.313	0.766
1	1.000	1.125	0.0313	0	1.750	0.313	0.875
1 1/8	1.125	1.250	0.0313	0	2.250	0.313	0.984
1 1/4	1.250	1.375	0.0313	0	2.250	0.313	1.094
1 3/8	1.375	1.500	0.0313	0	2.250	0.313	1.203
1 1/2	1.500	1.625	0.0313	0	2.250	0.313	1.313

General notes for Table 8:

(1) *Dimensional Conformance*: Beveled washers shall have the following characteristics inspected to ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 to the inspection levels as follows: Width across corners, inspection level B; Visual, inspection level C.

If verifiable in-process inspection is used, see *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1709.

(2) Nonclipped washers may be rectangular providing neither side dimension is less than *L*.

(3) Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal bolt diameters.

(4) Additional requirements are in *Beveled Washers* on page 1709.

Identification Symbols: Grade and source marking and symbols shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 436. The source marking is intended to identify the source accepting the responsibility for conformance to this and other applicable specifications.

Quality Assurance: Unless otherwise specified, products shall be furnished in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18 as noted in *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1710.

Dimensional Characteristics: Washers shall conform to the dimensions specified in Table 8. The designated characteristics defined in Table 8, Note (1) shall be inspected in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18. For nondesignated characteristics, the provisions of ANSI/ASME B18.18 shall apply. Should a nondesignated dimension be determined to have a variance, it shall be deemed conforming to this Standard if the user, who is the installer, accepts the variance based on fit, form, and function considerations. Where

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

verifiable in-process inspection is used in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017, the final inspection level sample sizes of these respective standards shall apply.

Compressible Washer-type Direct Tension Indicators.—*Dimensions:* The dimensions for the two washer types of direct tension indicators, Type A 325 and A 490, shall be in accordance with Table 9.

Finish: Unless otherwise specified, direct tension indicators shall be supplied with a plain (as-processed) finish, tinplated, or uncoated. If zinc coatings are required, they shall be in accordance with ASTM F 959.

Materials and Performance: Direct tension indicators shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 959.

Workmanship: The workmanship shall be smooth and free of burrs, laps, seams, excess mill scale, and foreign material on bearing surfaces or in protrusion welds, or other defects which would make them unsuitable for intended application.

Designation: Compressible washer-type direct tension indicators shall be designated by the following data in the sequence shown: product name, nominal size (fractional or decimal equivalent), type (325 or 490), finish (plain, zinc, or epoxy). See example below:

Example: DTI, $\frac{1}{2}$ Type 325, Plain Finish

Identification Symbols: Grade and source marking and symbols shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F 959.

Lot Number: Each direct tension indicator shall be marked with a lot number in accordance with ASTM F 959.

Quality Assurance: Unless otherwise specified, products shall be furnished in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18 as noted in *Dimensional Characteristics*.

Dimensional Characteristics: Direct tension indicators shall conform to the dimensions indicated in Table 9. The designated characteristics defined in Table 9, Note (1) shall be inspected in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18. For nondesignated characteristics, the provisions of ANSI/ASME B18.18 shall apply. Should a nondesignated dimension be determined to have a variance, it shall be deemed conforming to this Standard if the user, who is the installer, accepts the variance based on fit, form, and function considerations. Where verifiable in-process inspection is used in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017, the final inspection level sample sizes of these respective standards shall apply.

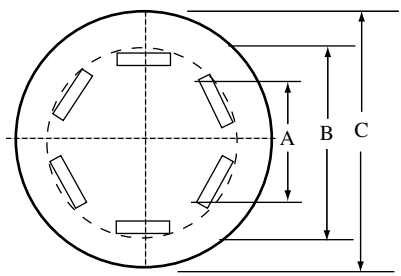


Fig. 3. Compressible Washer Dimensions

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Dimensions for Compressible Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators *ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019*

	All Types					Type A 325			Type A 490		
Bolt Size, inch	Inside Diameter, inch		Protrusion Tangential Diameter, inch *B*, Max.	Thickness, inch		Outside Diameter, inch *C*		Number of Protrusions (Equally Spaced)	Outside Diameter, inch		Number of Protrusions (Equally Spaced)
				Without Protrusion	With Protrusion						
	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.	
1/2	0.520	0.527	0.788	0.104	0.180	1.031	1.187	4	1.031	1.375	5
5/8	0.651	0.658	0.956	0.126	0.220	1.281	1.375	4	1.281	1.625	5
3/4	0.783	0.790	1.125	0.126	0.240	1.437	1.625	5	1.437	1.750	6
7/8	0.914	0.921	1.294	0.142	0.260	1.718	1.875	5	1.718	2.000	6
1	1.043	1.052	1.463	0.158	0.270	1.937	2.000	6	1.937	2.250	7
1 1/8	1.174	1.183	1.631	0.158	0.280	2.187	2.250	6	2.187	2.500	7
1 1/4	1.306	1.315	1.800	0.158	0.280	2.437	2.500	7	2.437	2.750	8
1 3/8	1.437	1.446	1.969	0.158	0.280	2.687	2.750	7	2.687	3.000	8
1 1/2	1.568	1.577	2.138	0.158	0.280	2.937	3.000	8	2.937	3.250	9

General Notes:

(1) *Dimensional Conformance*: Direct tension indicators shall have the following characteristics inspected to ANSI/ASME B18.18-2017 to the inspection levels as follows: Inside diameter and Width across corners, inspection level B; Visual, inspection level C.

If verifiable in-process inspection is used, *Dimensional Characteristics* on page 1709.

(2) Nonclipped washers may be rectangular providing neither side dimension is less than *L*.

(3) Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable nominal bolt diameters.

(4) Additional requirements are in *Compressible Washer-type Direct Tension Indicators* on page 1711.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

METRIC THREADED FASTENERS

A number of American National Standards covering metric bolts, screws, nuts, and washers have been established in cooperation with the Department of Defense in such a way that they could be used by the government for procurement purposes. Extensive information concerning these metric fasteners is given in the following text and tables, but for additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications reference should be made to the respective Standards which may be obtained by nongovernmental agencies from the American National Standards Institute, 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036, www.ansi.org. These Standards are:

ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.1M-1999 (Withdrawn) Metric Hex Cap Screws	Table 1
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.2M-2005 (Withdrawn) Metric Formed Hex Screws	Table 2
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.3M-2007 (R2014) Metric Heavy Hex Screws	Table 3
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.8M-1981 (Withdrawn) Metric Hex Lag Screws	Table 5
ANSI/ASME B18.3.3M-1986 (Withdrawn) Metric Socket Hd. Shldr. Screws	Table 6a
ASME B18.2.3.9M-2001 (R2014) Metric Heavy Hex Flange Screws	Table 7
ASME B18.2.3.4M-2001 (Withdrawn) Metric Hex Flange Screws	Table 8
ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982 Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts	Table 10
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.6M-1979 (Withdrawn) Metric Heavy Hex Bolts	Table 11
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012 Metric Fasteners for Use in Structural Applications	Table 12
ASME B18.2.3.5M-1979 (R2016) Metric Hex Bolts	Table 13
ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M-1986 (Withdrawn) Socket Head Cap Screws (Metric Series)	Table 21
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012 Metric Fasteners for Use in Structural Applications (For section on Metric Hex Nuts, Style)	Table 25
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019 Metric Hex Nuts, Style 2	Table 25
ANSI/ASME B18.2.4.3M-1979 (R2017) Metric Slotted Hex Nuts	Table 24
ANSI/ASME B18.2.4.4M-1982 (Withdrawn) Metric Hex Flange Nuts	Table 26
ANSI/ASME B18.16M-2004 (R2016) Prevailing-Torque Type Steel Metric Hex Nuts and Hex Flange Nuts	Table 29
ANSI/ASME B18.16M-2004 (R2016) Prevailing-Torque Type Steel Metric Hex Nuts and Hex Flange Nuts	Table 27
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6-2019 Metric Hex Jam Nuts	Table 28
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012 Metric Fasteners for Use in Structural Applications (For section on Metric Heavy Hex Nuts)	Table 28
ANSI/ASME B18.22M-1981 (R2017) Metric Plain Washers	Table 30

Manufacturers should be consulted concerning items and sizes in stock production.

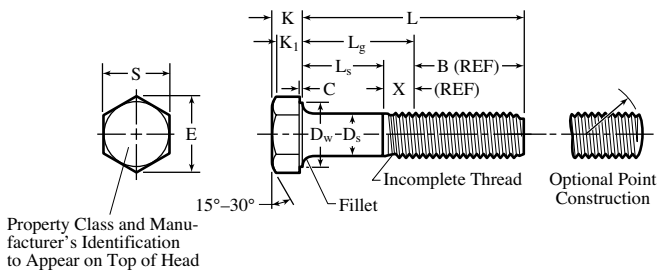
Comparison with ISO Standards.—American National Standards for metric bolts, screws and nuts have been coordinated to the extent possible with the comparable ISO Standards or proposed Standards. The dimensional differences between the ANSI and the comparable ISO Standards or proposed Standards are few, relatively minor, and none will affect the functional interchangeability of bolts, screws, and nuts manufactured to the requirements of either.

Where no comparable ISO Standard had been developed, as was the case when the ANSI Standards for Metric Heavy Hex Screws, Metric Heavy Hex Bolts, and Metric Hex Lag Screws were adopted, nominal diameters, thread pitches, body diameters, widths across flats, head heights, thread lengths, thread dimensions, and nominal lengths are in accord with ISO Standards for related hex head screws and bolts. At the time of ANSI adoption (1982) there was no ISO Standard for round head square neck bolts.

The following functional characteristics of hex head screws and bolts are in agreement between the respective ANSI Standard and the comparable ISO Standard or proposed Standard: diameters and thread pitches, body diameters, widths across flats (see exception below), bearing surface diameters (except for metric hex bolts), flange diameters (for metric hex flange screws), head heights, thread lengths, thread dimensions, and nominal lengths.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. American National Standard Metric Hex Cap Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.1M-1999 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Screw Diameter, *D* and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1	Washer Face Thick., *C*		Washer Face Dia., D_w
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.82	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	3.65	3.35	2.4	0.5	0.2	7.0
M6 × 1	6.00	5.82	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	4.15	3.85	2.8	0.5	0.2	8.9
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.78	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	5.50	5.10	3.7	0.6	0.3	11.6
[a]M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	6.63	6.17	4.5	0.6	0.3	13.6
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	6.63	6.17	4.5	0.6	0.3	14.6
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	7.76	7.24	5.2	0.6	0.3	16.6
M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	9.09	8.51	6.2	0.6	0.3	19.6
M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	10.32	9.68	7.0	0.8	0.4	22.49
M20 × 2.5	20.00	19.67	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	12.88	12.12	8.8	0.8	0.4	27.7
M24 × 3	24.00	23.67	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	15.44	14.56	10.5	0.8	0.4	33.2
M30 × 3.5	30.00	29.67	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	19.48	17.92	13.1	0.8	0.4	42.7
M36 × 4	36.00	35.61	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	23.38	21.62	15.8	0.8	0.4	51.1
M42 × 4.5	42.00	41.38	65.00	62.90	75.06	71.71	26.97	25.03	18.2	1.0	0.5	59.8
M48 × 5	48.00	47.38	75.00	72.60	86.60	82.76	31.07	28.93	21.0	1.0	0.5	69.0
M56 × 5.5	56.00	55.26	85.00	82.20	98.15	93.71	36.20	33.80	24.5	1.0	0.5	78.1
M64 × 6	64.00	63.26	95.00	91.80	109.70	104.65	41.32	38.68	28.0	1.0	0.5	87.2
M72 × 6	72.00	71.26	105.00	101.40	121.24	115.60	46.45	43.55	31.5	1.2	0.6	96.3
M80 × 6	80.00	79.26	115.00	111.00	132.72	126.54	51.58	48.42	35.0	1.2	0.6	105.4
M90 × 6	90.00	89.13	130.00	125.50	150.11	143.07	57.75	54.26	39.2	1.2	0.6	119.2
M100 × 6	100.00	99.13	145.00	140.00	167.43	159.60	63.90	60.10	43.4	1.2	0.6	133.0

[a] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. M10 screws with 15 mm width across flats are commonly produced in United States and other countries. The width across flats for all M10's should be specified. All sizes except the following are included in ISO 4014 and ISO 4017:M10 × 1.5 with 15 mm width across flats, and M72 through M100.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

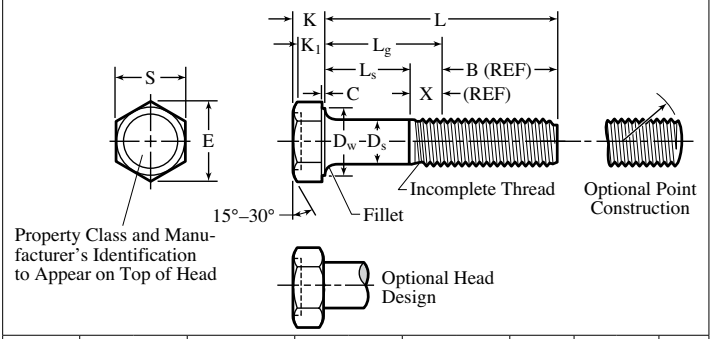
Basic thread lengths, *B*, are the same as given in Table 13.

Transition thread length, *X*, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on grip gaging length and body length. It is intended for calculation purposes.

For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.1M-1999 (Withdrawn).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Metric Formed Hex Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.2M-2005 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Screw Dia., D, and Thread Pitch	Body Dia., D_s		Width Across Flats, S		Width Across Corners, E		Head Height, K		Wrenching Height, K_1	Washer Face Thick., C		Washer Face Dia., D_w
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.82	8.00	7.64	9.24	8.56	3.65	3.35	2.4	0.5	0.2	6.9
M6 × 1	6.00	5.82	10.00	9.64	11.55	10.80	4.15	3.85	2.0	0.5	0.2	8.9
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.78	13.00	12.57	15.01	14.08	5.50	5.10	3.7	0.6	0.3	11.6
[a]M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	15.00	14.57	17.32	16.32	6.63	6.17	4.5	0.6	0.3	13.6
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	16.00	15.57	18.48	17.43	6.63	6.17	4.5	0.6	0.3	14.6
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	18.00	17.57	20.78	19.68	7.76	7.24	5.2	0.6	0.3	16.6
M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	21.00	20.16	24.25	22.58	9.09	8.51	6.2	0.6	0.3	19.6
M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	24.00	23.16	27.71	25.94	10.32	9.68	7.0	0.8	0.4	22.5
M20 × 2.5	20.00	19.67	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.66	12.88	12.12	8.8	0.8	0.4	27.7
M24 × 3	24.00	23.67	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.20	15.44	14.46	10.5	0.8	0.4	33.2

[a] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. Unless specifically ordered, M10 formed hex screws with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

†Basic thread lengths, B, are the same as given in Table 13.

‡Transition thread length, X, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on the grip gaging length and body length. It is intended for calculation purposes.

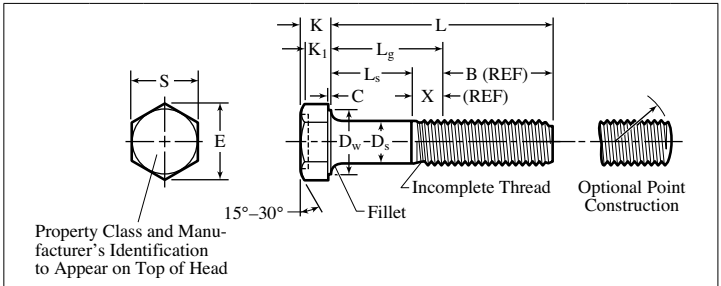
For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the Standard.

Socket head cap screws ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M-1986 (Withdrawn) are functionally interchangeable with screws which conform to ISO R861-1968 or ISO 4762-1977. However, the thread lengths specified in the ANSI Standard are equal to or longer than required by either ISO Standard. Consequently the grip lengths also vary on screws where the North American thread length practice differs. Minor variations in head diameter, head height, key engagement and wall thickness are due to diverse tolerancing practice and will be found documented in the ANSI Standard.

One exception with respect to width across flats for metric hex cap screws, formed hex screws, and hex bolts is the M10 size. These are currently being produced in the United States with a width across flats of 15 mm. This size, however, is not an ISO Standard. Unless these M10 screws and bolts with 15 mm width across flats are specifically ordered, the M10 size with 16 mm across flats will be furnished.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Metric Heavy Hex Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.3M-2007 (R2014)



Nominal Screw Dia., *D*, and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1	Washer Face Thickness, *C*		Washer Face Dia., D_w
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.
M12×1.75	12.00	11.73	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	7.76	7.24	5.2	0.6	0.3	19.6
M14×2	14.00	13.73	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	9.09	8.51	6.2	0.6	0.3	22.5
M16×2	16.00	15.73	27.00	26.67	31.18	30.14	10.32	9.68	7.0	0.8	0.4	25.3
M20×2.5	20.00	19.67	34.00	33.00	39.26	37.29	12.88	12.12	8.8	0.8	0.4	31.4
M24×3	24.00	23.67	41.00	40.00	47.34	45.20	15.44	14.56	10.5	0.8	0.4	38.0
M30×3.5	30.00	29.67	50.00	49.00	57.74	55.37	19.48	17.92	13.1	0.8	0.4	46.6
M36×4	36.00	35.61	60.00	58.80	69.28	66.44	23.38	21.72	15.8	0.8	0.4	55.9

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Basic thread lengths, *B*, are the same as given in Table 13.

Transition thread length, *X*, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on grip gaging length and body length. It is intended for calculation purposes.

For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the Standard.

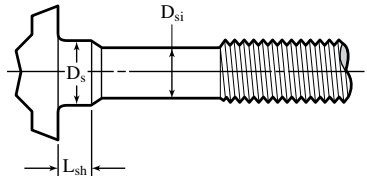
ANSI letter symbols designating dimensional characteristics are in accord with those used in ISO Standards except capitals have been used for data processing convenience instead of the lower case letters used in the ISO Standards.

Metric Screw and Bolt Diameters.—Metric screws and bolts are furnished with full diameter body within the limits shown in the respective dimensional tables, or are threaded to the head (see *Metric Screw and Bolt Thread Lengths* on page 1725) unless the purchaser specifies "reduced body diameter." Metric formed hex screws (Table 4), hex flange screws (Table 4), hex bolts (Table 4), heavy hex bolts (Table 4), hex lag screws (Table 5), heavy hex flange screws (Table 7), and round head square neck bolts (Table 9) may be obtained with reduced diameter body, if so specified; however, formed hex screws, hex flange screws, heavy hex flange screws, hex bolts, or heavy hex bolts with nominal lengths shorter than 4*D*, where *D* is the nominal diameter, are not recommended. Metric formed hex screws, hex flange screws, heavy hex flange screws, and hex lag screws with reduced body diameter will be furnished with a shoulder under the head. For metric hex bolts and heavy hex bolts this is optional with the manufacturer.

For bolts and lag screws there may be a reasonable swell, fin, or die seam on the body adjacent to the head not exceeding the nominal bolt diameter by: 0.50 mm for M5, 0.65 mm for M6, 0.75 mm for M8 through M14, 1.25 mm for M16, 1.50 mm for M20 through M30, 2.30 mm for M36 through M48, 3.00 mm for M56 through M72, and 4.80 mm for M80 through M100.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Metric Hex Screws and Bolts — Reduced Body Diameters



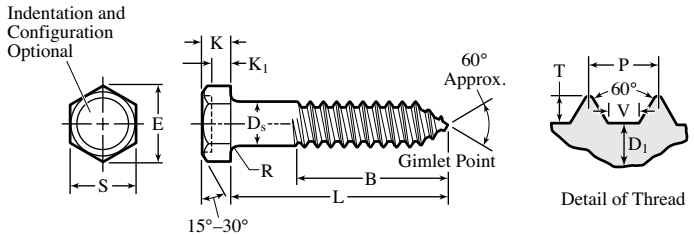
Nominal Dia., *D*, and Thread Pitch	Shoulder Diameter,[a] D_s		Body Diameter, D_{si}		Shoulder Length,[a] L_{sh}		Nominal Dia., *D*, and Thread Pitch	Shoulder Diameter,[a] D_s		Body Diameter, D_{si}		Shoulder Length,[a] L_{sh}	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Metric Formed Hex Screws (ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.2M-2005 [Withdrawn])													
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.82	4.46	4.36	3.5	2.5	M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	12.77	12.50	8.0	7.0
M6 × 1	6.00	5.82	5.39	5.21	4.0	3.0	M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	14.77	14.50	9.0	8.0
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.78	7.26	7.04	5.0	4.0	M20 × 2.5	20.00	19.67	18.49	18.16	11.0	10.0
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	9.08	8.86	6.0	5.0	M24 × 3	24.00	23.67	22.13	21.80	13.0	12.0
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	10.95	10.68	7.0	6.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Metric Hex Flange Screws (ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.4M-2001 [Withdrawn])													
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.82	4.54	4.36	3.5	2.5	M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	10.95	10.68	7.0	6.0
M6 × 1	6.00	5.82	5.39	5.21	4.0	3.0	M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	12.77	12.50	8.0	7.0
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.78	7.26	7.04	5.0	4.0	M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	14.77	14.50	9.0	8.0
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	9.08	8.86	6.0	5.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Metric Hex Bolts (ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.5M-1979 [R2016])													
M5 × 0.8	5.48	4.52	4.46	4.36	3.5	2.5	M14 × 2	14.70	13.30	12.77	12.50	8.0	7.0
M6 × 1	6.48	5.52	5.39	5.21	4.0	3.0	M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	14.77	14.50	9.0	8.0
M8 × 1.25	8.58	7.42	7.26	7.04	5.0	4.0	M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	18.49	18.16	11.0	10.0
M10 × 1.5	10.58	9.42	9.08	8.86	6.0	5.0	M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	22.13	21.80	13.0	12.0
M12 × 1.75	12.70	11.30	10.95	10.68	7.0	6.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Metric Heavy Hex Bolts (ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.6M-1979 [Withdrawn])													
M12 × 1.75	12.70	11.30	10.95	10.68	7.0	6.0	M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	18.49	18.16	11.0	10.0
M14 × 2	14.70	13.30	12.77	12.50	8.0	7.0	M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	22.13	21.80	13.0	12.0
M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	14.77	14.50	9.0	8.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Metric Heavy Hex Flange Screws (ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.9M-2001 [R2014])													
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	9.08	8.86	6.0	5.0	M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	14.77	14.50	9.0	8.0
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	10.95	10.68	7.0	6.0	M20 × 2.5	20.00	19.67	18.49	18.16	11.0	10.0
M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	12.77	12.50	8.0	7.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Shoulder is mandatory for formed hex screws, hex flange screws, and heavy hex flange screws. Shoulder is optional for hex bolts and heavy hex bolts.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

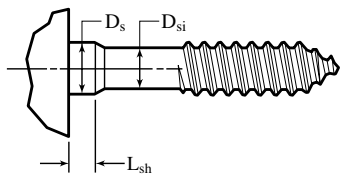
Table 5. American National Standard Metric Hex Lag Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.8M-1981 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Screw Dia., *D*	Body Diameter, D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.
5	5.48	4.52	8.00	7.64	9.24	8.63	3.9	3.1	2.4
6	6.48	5.52	10.00	9.64	11.55	10.89	4.4	3.6	2.8
8	8.58	7.42	13.00	12.57	15.01	14.20	5.7	4.9	3.7
10	10.58	9.42	16.00	15.57	18.48	17.59	6.9	5.9	4.5
12	12.70	11.30	18.00	17.57	20.78	19.85	8.0	7.0	5.2
16	16.70	15.30	24.00	23.16	27.71	26.17	10.8	9.3	7.0
20	20.84	19.16	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	13.4	11.6	8.8
24	24.84	23.16	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	15.9	14.1	10.5

Nominal Screw Dia., *D*	Thread Dimensions				Nominal Screw Dia., *D*	Thread Dimensions			
	Thread Pitch, *P*	Flat at Root, *V*	Depth of Thread, *T*	Root Dia., D_1		Thread Pitch, *P*	Flat at Root, *V*	Depth of Thread, *T*	Root Dia., D_1
5	2.3	1.0	0.9	3.2	12	4.2	1.8	1.6	8.7
6	2.5	1.1	1.0	4.0	16	5.1	2.2	2.0	12.0
8	2.8	1.2	1.1	5.8	20	5.6	2.4	2.2	15.6
10	3.6	1.6	1.4	7.2	24	7.3	3.1	2.8	18.1

REDUCED BODY DIAMETER



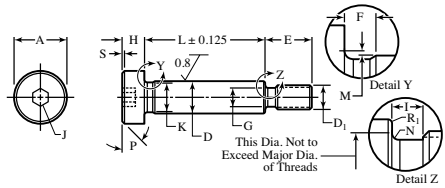
Nominal Screw Dia., *D*	Shoulder Diameter, D_s		Shoulder Length, L_{sh}		Nominal Screw Dia., *D*	Shoulder Diameter, D_s		Shoulder Length, L_{sh}	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
5	5.48	4.52	3.5	2.5	12	12.70	11.30	7.0	6.0
6	6.48	5.52	4.0	3.0	16	16.70	15.30	9.0	8.0
8	8.58	7.42	5.0	4.0	20	20.84	19.16	11.0	10.0
10	10.58	9.42	6.0	5.0	24	24.84	23.16	13.0	12.0

All dimensions are in millimeters. Reduced body diameter, D_{si}, is the blank diameter before rolling. Shoulder is mandatory when body diameter is reduced.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6a. Hexagon Socket Head Shoulder Screws - Metric Series

ANSI/ASME B18.3.3M-1986 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Shoulder, Dia.	Shoulder Diameter[a], *D*		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Chamfer or Radius, *S*	Nominal Thread Size, *D*1	Thread Length, *E*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		Max.
6.5	6.487	6.451	10.00	9.78	4.50	4.32	0.6	M5 × 0.8	9.75
8.0	7.987	7.951	13.00	12.73	5.50	5.32	0.8	M6 × 1	11.25
10.0	9.987	9.951	16.00	15.73	7.00	6.78	1.0	M8 × 1.25	13.25
13.0	12.984	12.941	18.00	17.73	9.00	8.78	1.2	M10 × 1.5	16.40
16.0	15.984	15.941	24.00	23.67	11.00	10.73	1.6	M12 × 1.75	18.40
20.0	19.980	19.928	30.00	29.67	14.00	13.73	2.0	M16 × 2	22.40
25.0	24.980	24.928	36.00	35.61	16.00	15.73	2.4	M20 × 2.5	27.40

Nominal Shoulder Diameter	Thread Neck Dia., *G*		Thread Neck Width, *I*	Shoulder Neck Dia, *K*	Shoulder Neck Width, *F*	Thread Neck Fillet, *N*		Head Fillet Extension above *D*, *M*	Hexagon Socket Size, *J*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	
6.5	3.86	3.68	2.4	5.92	2.5	0.66	0.50	7.5	3
8.0	4.58	4.40	2.6	7.42	2.5	0.69	0.53	9.2	4
10.0	6.25	6.03	2.8	9.42	2.5	0.80	0.64	11.2	5
13.0	7.91	7.69	3.0	12.42	2.5	0.93	0.77	15.2	6
16.0	9.57	9.35	4.0	15.42	2.5	1.03	0.87	18.2	8
20.0	13.23	12.96	4.8	19.42	2.5	1.30	1.14	22.4	10
25.0	16.57	16.30	5.6	14.42	3.0	1.46	1.30	27.4	12

[a] The shoulder is the enlarged, unthreaded portion of the screw.

Table 6b. Standard Sizes and Socket Dimensions

ANSI/ASME B18.3.3M-1986 (Withdrawn)

Standard Sizes for Government Use

Nominal Shoulder Length	Nominal Shoulder Diameter						
	6.5	8	10	13	16	20	25
10.0	065010	080010	100010				
12.0				130012			
16.0							
20.0							
25.0							
30.0					160030		
40.0	065040					200040	
50.0		080050					250050
60.0							
70.0							
80.0							
90.0							
100.0			100100				
110.0							
120.0				130120	160120	200120	250120

Range of standard diameter and length combinations and their part numbers. (PIN)

Dimensions Hexagon Sockets - Metric

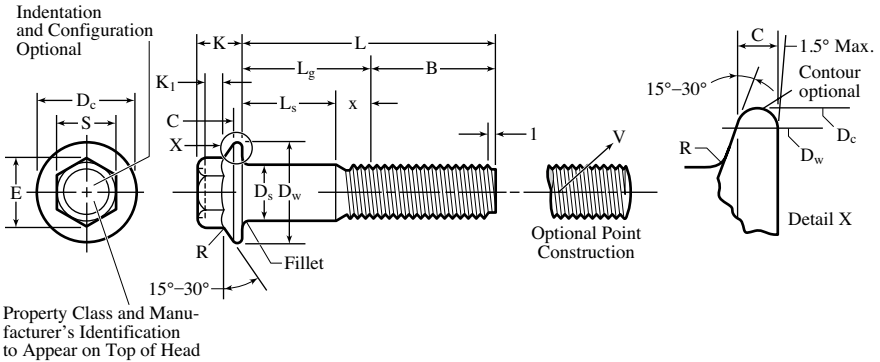
Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats *J*		Socket Width Across Corners, *C*
	Max.	Min.	Min.
3	3.071	3.020	3.44
4	4.084	4.020	4.58
5	5.084	5.020	5.72
6	6.095	6.020	6.86
8	8.115	8.025	9.15
10	10.127	10.025	11.50
12	12.146	12.032	13.80

All dimensions are in millimeters.

R_1 rounded or chamfered: $R_1 \le 0.15$ mm for M5, M6, M10; $R_1 \le 0.20$ mm for M12, M16, M20 Unless specified otherwise, threads are metric coarse series in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.13M, Metric Screw Threads - M Profile. Tolerances for threads are to ISO Tolerance Class 4g6g. Standard length and diameter combinations are shown in the lower chart. The government encourages the general use of the part number system (PIN) to achieve maximum parts standardization. For details not shown, including material and complete PIN system, see ANSI/ASME B18.3.3M-1986 (Withdrawn).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. American National Standard Metric Heavy Hex Flange Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.9M-2001 (R2014)*

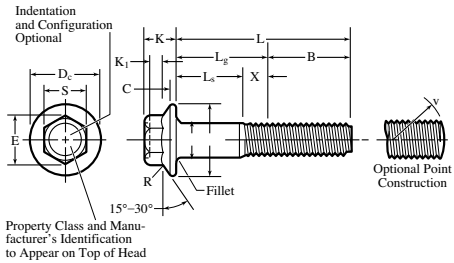


Nominal Screw Dia., D, and Thread Pitch	Body Dia., D_s		Width Across Flats, S		Width Across Corners, E		Flange Dia., D_c	Bearing Circle Dia., D_w	Flange Edge Thickness, C	Head Height, K	Wrenching Height K_1	Fillet Radius, R
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	15.00	14.57	17.32	16.32	22.3	19.6	1.5	10.4	4.6	0.6
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	18.00	17.57	20.78	19.68	26.6	23.8	1.8	11.8	5.2	0.7
M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	21.00	20.16	24.25	22.58	30.5	27.6	2.1	13.7	6.3	0.9
M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	24.00	23.16	27.71	25.94	35.0	31.9	2.4	15.4	7.1	1.0
M20 × 2.5	20.00	19.67	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.66	43.0	39.9	3.0	18.9	8.8	1.2

All dimensions are in millimeters. Basic thread lengths, B, are as given in Table 13. Transition thread length, x, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on grip gaging length and body length. It is intended for calculation purposes. For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.9M-2001 (R2014) standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

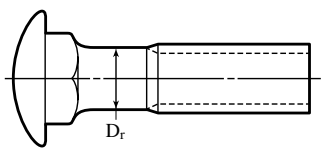
Table 8. American National Standard Metric Hex Flange Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.4M-2001 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Screw Dia., *D*, and Thread Pitch	Body Dia., D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Flange Dia., D_c	Bearing Circle Dia., D_w	Flange Edge Thickness, *C*	Head Height, *K*	Wrenching Height, K_1	Fillet Radius, *R*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.82	7.00	6.64	8.08	7.44	11.4	9.4	1.0	5.6	2.30	0.3
M6 × 1	6.00	5.82	8.00	7.64	9.24	8.56	13.6	11.6	1.1	6.8	2.90	0.4
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.78	10.00	9.64	11.55	10.80	17.0	14.9	1.2	8.5	3.80	0.5
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.78	13.00	12.57	15.01	14.08	20.8	18.7	1.5	9.7	4.30	0.6
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.73	15.00	14.57	17.32	16.32	24.7	22.0	1.8	11.9	5.40	0.7
M14 × 2	14.00	13.73	18.00	17.57	20.78	19.68	28.6	25.9	2.1	12.9	5.60	0.8
M16 × 2	16.00	15.73	21.00	20.48	24.25	22.94	32.8	30.1	2.4	15.1	6.70	1.0

All dimensions are in millimeters. Basic thread lengths, *B*, are the same as given in Table 13. Transition thread length, *X*, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on grip gaging length and body length. This dimension is intended for calculation purposes only. For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.4M-2001 standard.

Table 9. American National Standard Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts Reduced Body Diameters *ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982*

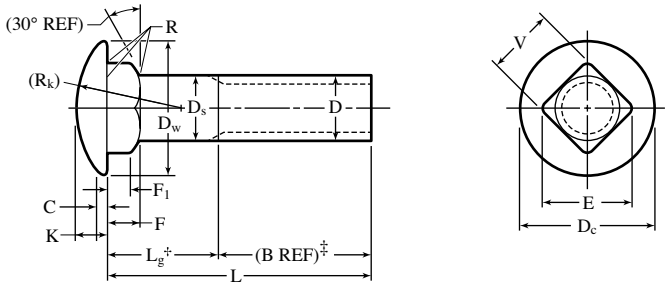


Nominal Bolt Dia., *D* and Thread Pitch	Diameter of Reduced Body D_r		Nominal Bolt Dia., *D* and Thread Pitch	Diameter of Reduced Body D_r	
	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.36	M14 × 2	14.00	12.50
M6 × 1	6.00	5.21	M16 × 2	16.00	14.50
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.04	M20 × 2.5	20.00	18.16
M10 × 1.5	10.00	8.86	M24 × 3	24.00	21.80
M12 × 1.75	12.00	10.68	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. American National Standard Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982 (Withdrawn)*

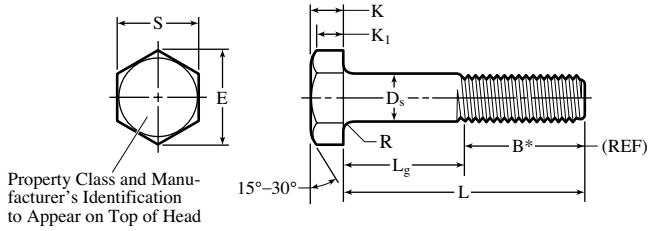


Nominal Bolt Dia., *D* and Thread Pitch	Diameter of Full Body, *Ds*		Head Radius, (*Rk*)	Head height, *K*		Head Edge Thickness, *C*		Head Dia., *Dc*	Bearing Surface Dia., *Dw*	Square Depth, *F*		Square Corner Depth, *F1*	Square Width Across Flats, *V*		Square Width Across Corners, *E*	
	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M5 × 0.8	5.48	4.52	8.8	3.1	2.5	1.8	1.0	11.8	9.8	3.1	2.5	1.6	5.48	4.88	7.75	6.34
M6 × 1	6.48	5.52	10.7	3.6	3.0	1.9	1.1	14.2	12.2	3.6	3.0	1.9	6.48	5.88	9.16	7.64
M8 × 1.25	8.58	7.42	12.5	4.8	4.0	2.2	1.2	18.0	15.8	4.8	4.0	2.5	8.58	7.85	12.13	10.20
M10 × 1.5	10.58	9.42	15.5	5.8	5.0	2.5	1.5	22.3	19.6	5.8	5.0	3.2	10.58	9.85	14.96	12.80
M12 × 1.75	12.70	11.30	19.0	6.8	6.0	2.8	1.8	26.6	23.8	6.8	6.0	3.8	12.70	11.82	17.96	15.37
M14 × 2	14.70	13.30	21.9	7.9	7.0	3.3	2.1	30.5	27.6	7.9	7.0	4.4	14.70	13.82	20.79	17.97
M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	25.5	8.9	8.0	3.6	2.4	35.0	31.9	8.9	8.0	5.0	16.70	15.82	23.62	20.57
M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	31.9	10.9	10.0	4.2	3.0	43.0	39.9	10.9	10.0	6.3	20.84	19.79	29.47	25.73
M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	37.9	13.1	12.0	5.1	3.6	51.0	47.6	13.1	12.0	7.6	24.84	23.79	35.13	30.93

All dimensions are in millimeters.
†L_g is the grip gaging length which controls the length of thread B.
‡B is the basic thread length and is a reference dimension (see Table 14).
For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, see ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

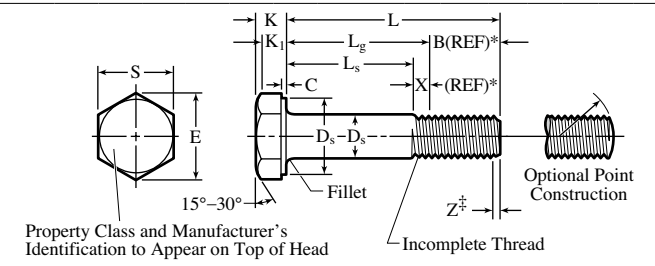
Table 11. ANSI Heavy Hex Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.6M-1979 (Withdrawn)*



Nominal Dia., *D* and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.
M12 × 1.75	12.70	11.30	21.00	20.16	24.25	22.78	7.95	7.24	5.2
M14 × 2	14.70	13.30	24.00	23.16	27.71	26.17	9.25	8.51	6.2
M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	27.00	26.16	31.18	29.56	10.75	9.68	7.0
M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	34.00	33.00	39.26	37.29	13.40	12.12	8.8
M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	41.00	40.00	47.34	45.20	15.90	14.56	10.5
M30 × 3.5	30.84	29.16	50.00	49.00	57.74	55.37	19.75	17.92	13.1
M36 × 4	37.00	35.00	60.00	58.80	69.28	66.44	23.55	21.72	15.8

All dimensions are in millimeters. *Basic thread lengths, *B*, are the same as given in Table 13. For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.6M-1979 (Withdrawn) standard.

Table 12. Metric Heavy Hex Structural Bolts *ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012*



Dia. *D*, and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1	Washer Face Dia., D_w	Washer Face Thickness, *C*		Thread Length, B[a]		Transition Thread Length, X[b]
													Lengths ≤ 100	Lengths > 100	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic		Max.
M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	27.00	26.16	31.18	29.56	10.75	9.25	6.5	24.9	0.8	0.4	31	38	6.0
M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	34.00	33.00	39.26	37.29	13.40	11.60	8.1	31.4	0.8	0.4	36	43	7.5
M22 × 2.5	22.84	21.16	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	14.90	13.10	9.2	33.3	0.8	0.4	38	45	7.5
M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	41.00	40.00	47.34	45.20	15.90	14.10	9.9	38.0	0.8	0.4	41	48	9.0
M27 × 3	27.84	26.16	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	17.90	16.10	11.3	42.8	0.8	0.4	44	51	9.0
M30 × 3.5	30.84	29.16	50.00	49.00	57.74	55.37	19.75	17.65	12.4	46.5	0.8	0.4	49	56	10.5
M36 × 4	37.00	35.00	60.00	58.80	69.28	66.44	23.55	21.45	15.0	55.9	0.8	0.4	56	63	12.0

[a] Basic thread length, *B*, is a reference dimension.

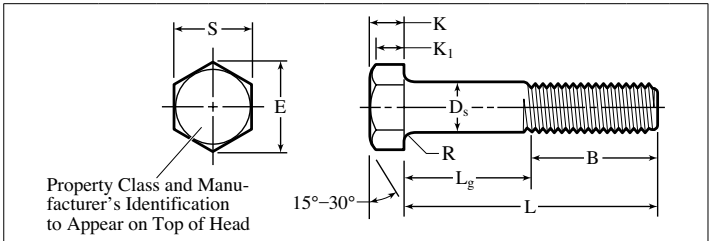
[b] Transition thread length, *X*, includes the length of incomplete threads and tolerances on grip gaging length and body length. It is intended for calculation purposes.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012 standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. American National Standard Metric Hex Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.5M-1979 (R2016)



Nominal Bolt Dia., *D* and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, D_s		Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Head Height, *K*		Wrenching Height, K_1	For Bolt Lengths		
										< 125 mm	> 125 and < 200 mm	> 200 mm
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Basic Thread Length,[a] *B*		
M5 × 0.8	5.48	4.52	8.00	7.64	9.24	8.63	3.58	3.35	2.4	16	22	35
M6 × 1	6.19	5.52	10.00	9.64	11.55	10.89	4.38	3.55	2.8	18	24	37
M8 × 1.25	8.58	7.42	13.00	12.57	15.01	14.20	5.68	5.10	3.7	22	28	41
[b]M10 × 1.5	10.58	9.42	15.00	14.57	17.32	16.46	6.85	6.17	4.5	26	32	45
M10 × 1.5	10.58	9.42	16.00	15.57	18.48	17.59	6.85	6.17	4.5	26	32	45
M12 × 1.75	12.70	11.30	18.00	17.57	20.78	19.85	7.95	7.24	5.2	30	36	49
M14 × 2	14.70	13.30	21.00	20.16	24.25	22.78	9.25	8.51	6.2	34	40	53
M16 × 2	16.70	15.30	24.00	23.16	27.71	26.17	10.75	9.68	7.0	38	44	57
M20 × 2.5	20.84	19.16	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	13.40	12.12	8.8	46	52	65
M24 × 3	24.84	23.16	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	15.90	14.56	10.5	54	60	73
M30 × 3.5	30.84	29.16	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.55	19.75	17.92	13.1	66	72	85
M36 × 4	37.00	35.00	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	23.55	21.72	15.8	78	84	97
M42 × 4.5	43.00	41.00	65.00	62.90	75.06	71.71	27.05	25.03	18.2	90	96	109
M48 × 5	49.00	47.00	75.00	72.60	86.60	82.76	31.07	28.93	21.0	102	108	121
M56 × 5.5	57.20	54.80	85.00	82.20	98.15	93.71	36.20	33.80	24.5	…	124	137
M64 × 6	65.52	62.80	95.00	91.80	109.70	104.65	41.32	38.68	28.0	…	140	153
M72 × 6	73.84	70.80	105.00	101.40	121.24	115.60	46.45	43.55	31.5	…	156	169
M80 × 6	82.16	78.80	115.00	111.00	132.79	126.54	51.58	48.42	35.0	…	172	185
M90 × 6	92.48	88.60	130.00	125.50	150.11	143.07	57.74	54.26	39.2	…	192	205
M100 × 6	102.80	98.60	145.00	140.00	167.43	159.60	63.90	60.10	43.4	…	212	225

[a] Basic thread length, *B*, is a reference dimension.

[b] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. Unless specifically ordered, M10 hex bolts with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the ASME B18.2.3.5M-1979 (R2016) standard.

Materials and Mechanical Properties.—Unless otherwise specified, steel metric screws and bolts, with the exception of heavy hex structural bolts, hex lag screws, and socket head cap screws, conform to the requirements specified in SAE J1199 or ASTM F568. Steel heavy hex structural bolts conform to ASTM A325M or ASTM A490M. Alloy steel socket head cap screws conform to ASTM A574M, property class 12.9, where the numeral 12 represents approximately one-hundredth of the minimum tensile strength in megapascals and the decimal .9 approximates the ratio of the minimum yield stress to the minimum tensile stress. This is in accord with ISO designation practice. Screws and bolts

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of other materials, and all materials for hex lag bolts, have properties as agreed upon by the purchaser and the manufacturer.

Except for socket head cap screws, metric screws and bolts are furnished with a natural (as processed) finish, unplated or uncoated unless otherwise specified.

Alloy steel socket head cap screws are furnished with an oiled black oxide coating (thermal or chemical) unless a protective plating or coating is specified by the purchaser.

Metric Screw and Bolt Identification Symbols.—Screws and bolts are identified on the top of the head by property class symbols and manufacturer's identification symbol.

Metric Screw and Bolt Designation.—Metric screws and bolts with the exception of socket head cap screws are designated by the following data, preferably in the sequence shown: product name, nominal diameter and thread pitch (except for hex lag screws), nominal length, steel property class or material identification, and protective coating, if required.

Example: Hex cap screw, M10 × 1.5 × 50, class 9.8, zinc plated
Heavy hex structural bolt, M24 × 3 × 80, ASTM A490M
Hex lag screw, 6 × 35, silicon bronze.

Socket head cap screws (metric series) are designated by the following data in the order shown: ANSI Standard number, nominal size, thread pitch, nominal screw length, name of product (may be abbreviated SHCS), material and property class (alloy steel screws are supplied to property class 12.9 as specified in ASTM A574M: corrosion-resistant steel screws are specified to the property class and material requirements in ASTM F837M), and protective finish, if required.

Example: B18.3.1M—6 × 1 × 20 Hexagon Socket Head Cap Screw, Alloy Steel
B18.3.1M—10 × 1.5 × 40 SHCS, Alloy Steel Zinc Plated.

Metric Screw and Bolt Thread Lengths.—The length of thread on metric screws and bolts (except for metric lag screws) is controlled by the grip gaging length, L_g max. This is the distance measured parallel to the axis of the screw or bolt, from under the head bearing surface to the face of a noncounterbored or noncountersunk standard GO thread ring gage assembled by hand as far as the thread will permit. The maximum grip gaging length, as calculated and rounded to one decimal place, is equal to the nominal screw length, L, minus the basic thread length, B, or in the case of socket head cap screws, minus the minimum thread length L_T. B and L_T are reference dimensions intended for calculation purposes only and will be found in Table 13 and Table 15, respectively.

Table 14. Basic Thread Lengths for Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts
ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982 (R2010)

Nom. Bolt Dia., D and Thread Pitch	Bolt Length, L			Nom. Bolt Dia., D and Thread Pitch	Bolt Length, L		
	≤ 125	> 125 and ≤ 200	> 200		≤ 125	> 125 and ≤ 200	> 200
	Basic Thread Length, B				Basic Thread length, B		
M5 × 0.8	16	22	35	M14 × 2	34	40	53
M6 × 1	18	24	37	M16 × 2	38	44	57
M8 × 1.25	22	28	41	M20 × 2.5	46	52	65
M10 × 1.5	26	32	45	M24 × 3	54	60	73
M12 × 1.75	30	36	49	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters

Basic thread length B is a reference dimension intended for calculation purposes only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Socket Head Cap Screws (Metric Series)—Length of Complete Thread
ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M-1986 (Withdrawn)

Nominal Size	Length of Complete Thread, L_T	Nominal Size	Length of Complete Thread, L_T	Nominal Size	Length of Complete Thread, L_T
M1.6	15.2	M6	24.0	M20	52.0
M2	16.0	M8	28.0	M24	60.0
M2.5	17.0	M10	32.0	M30	72.0
M3	18.0	M12	36.0	M36	84.0
M4	20.0	M14	40.0	M42	96.0
M5	22.0	M16	44.0	M48	108.0

Grip length, L_G equals screw length, L, minus L_T. Total length of thread L_{TT} equals L_T plus 5 times the pitch of the coarse thread for the respective screw size. Body length L_B equals L minus L_{TT}.

The minimum thread length for hex lag screws is equal to one-half the nominal screw length plus 12 mm, or 150 mm, whichever is shorter. Screws too short for this formula to apply are threaded as close to the head as practicable.

Metric Screw and Bolt Diameter-Length Combinations.—For a given diameter, the recommended range of lengths of metric cap screws, formed hex screws, heavy hex screws, hex flange screws, and heavy hex flange screws can be found in Table 17, for heavy hex structural bolts in Table 18, for hex lag screws in Table 16, for round head square neck bolts in Table 19, and for socket head cap screws in Table 20. No recommendations for diameter-length combinations are given in the Standards for hex bolts and heavy hex bolts.

Hex bolts in sizes M5 through M24 and heavy hex bolts in sizes M12 through M24 are standard only in lengths longer than 150 mm or 10*D*, whichever is shorter. When shorter lengths of these sizes are ordered, hex cap screws are normally supplied in place of hex bolts and heavy hex screws in place of heavy hex bolts. Hex bolts in sizes M30 and larger and heavy hex bolts in sizes M30 and M36 are standard in all lengths; however, at manufacturer's option, hex cap screws may be substituted for hex bolts and heavy hex screws for heavy hex bolts for any diameter-length combination.

Table 16. Recommended Diameter-Length Combinations for Metric Hex Lag Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.2.3.8M-1981 (Withdrawn)*

Nominal Length, L	Nominal Screw Diameter								Nominal Length, L	Nominal Screw Diameter				
	5	6	8	10	12	16	20	24		10	12	16	20	24
8	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	90	●	●	●	●	●
10	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	100	●	●	●	●	●
12	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	110	…	●	●	●	●
14	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	120	…	●	●	●	●
16	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	130	…	…	●	●	●
20	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	140	…	…	●	●	●
25	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	150	…	…	●	●	●
30	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	160	…	…	●	●	●
35	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	180	…	…	…	●	●
40	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	200	…	…	…	●	●
45	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	220	…	…	…	…	●
50	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	240	…	…	…	…	●
60	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	260	…	…	…	…	●
70	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	280	…	…	…	…	●
80	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	300	…	…	…	…	●

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Recommended diameter-length combinations are indicated by the symbol ●.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Rec'd Diameter-Length Combinations for Metric Hex Cap Screws, Formed Hex and Heavy Hex Screws, Hex Flange and Heavy Hex Flange Screws

Nominal Length[a]	Diameter—Pitch										
	M5 ×0.8	M6 ×1	M8 ×1.25	M10 ×1.5	M12 ×1.75	M14 ×2	M16 ×2	M20 ×2.5	M24 ×3	M30 ×3.5	M36 ×4
8	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
10	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
12	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
14	●	●	●	●[b]	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
16	●	●	●	●	●[b]	●[b]	…	…	…	…	…
20	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…
25	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	…
30	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	…
35	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…
40	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…
45	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…
50	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(55)	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
60	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(65)	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
70	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(75)	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
80	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(85)	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
90	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
100	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
110	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
120	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
130	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
140	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
150	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
160	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
(170)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
180	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
(190)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
200	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
220	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●
240	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●
260	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
280	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
300	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●

[a] Lengths in parentheses are not recommended. Recommended lengths of formed hex screws, hex flange screws, and heavy hex flange screws do not extend above 150 mm. Recommended lengths of heavy hex screws do not extend below 20 mm. Standard sizes for government use. Recommended diameter-length combinations are indicated by the symbol ●. Screws with lengths above heavy cross lines are threaded full length.

[b] Does not apply to hex flange screws and heavy hex flange screws.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

For available diameters of each type of screw, see respective dimensional table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. Recommended Diameter-Length Combinations for Metric Heavy Hex Structural Bolts

Nominal Length, *L*	Nominal Diameter and Thread Pitch						
	M16 × 2	M20 × 2.5	M22 × 2.5	M24 × 3	M27 × 3	M30 × 3.5	M36 × 4
45	●	…	…	…	…	…	…
50	●	●	…	…	…	…	…
55	●	●	●	…	…	…	…
60	●	●	●	●	…	…	…
65	●	●	●	●	●	…	…
70	●	●	●	●	●	●	…
75	●	●	●	●	●	●	…
80	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
85	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
90	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
95	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
100	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
110	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
120	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
130	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
140	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
150	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
160	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
170	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
180	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
190	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
200	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
210	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
220	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
230	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
240	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
250	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
260	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
270	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
280	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
290	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
300	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

All dimensions are in millimeters.
Recommended diameter-length combinations are indicated by the symbol ●.
Bolts with lengths above the heavy cross lines are threaded full length.

Table 19. Recommended Diameter-Length Combinations for Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts

Nominal Length,[a] *L*	Nominal Diameter and Thread Pitch								
	M5 × 0.8	M6 × 1	M8 × 1.25	M10 × 1.5	M12 × 1.75	M14 × 2	M16 × 2	M20 × 2.5	M24 × 3
10	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
12	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
(14)	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
16	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…	…
20	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	…	…
25	●	●	●	●	●	…	…	…	…
30	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…
35	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…	…
40	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	…
45	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
50	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(55)	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
60	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(65)	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
70	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
(75)	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
80	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. *(Continued)* **Recommended Diameter-Length Combinations for Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts**

Nominal Length,[a] *L*	Nominal Diameter and Thread Pitch								
	M5 ×0.8	M6 ×1	M8 ×1.25	M10 ×1.5	M12 ×1.75	M14 ×2	M16 ×2	M20 ×2.5	M24 ×3
(85)	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
90	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
100	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
110	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
120	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
130	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
140	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
150	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●
160	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●
(170)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
180	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
(190)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
200	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●
220	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●
240	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●

[a] Bolts with lengths above the heavy cross lines are threaded full length. Lengths in ( ) are not recommended.

All dimensions are in millimeters. Recommended diameter-length combinations are indicated by the symbol ●. Standard sizes for government use.

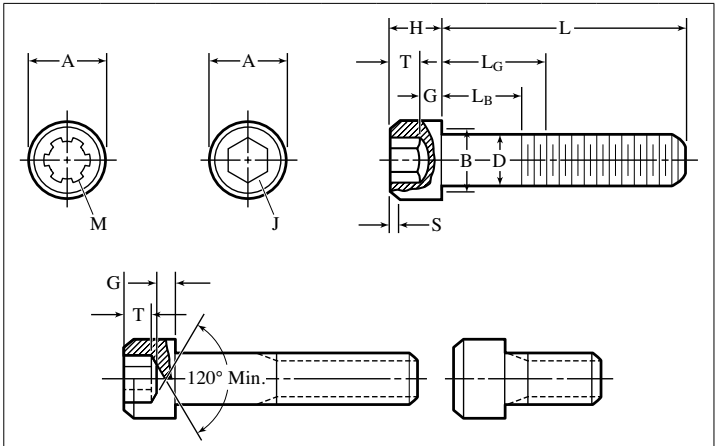
Table 20. Diameter-Length Combinations for Socket Head Cap Screws (Metric Series)

Nominal Length, *L*	Nominal Size													
	M1.6	M2	M2.5	M3	M4	M5	M6	M8	M10	M12	M14	M16	M20	M24
20	●	●												
25	●	●	●	●										
30	●	●	●	●	●									
35	…	●	●	●	●	●	●							
40	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●						
45	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●					
50	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●				
55	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●				
60	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			
65	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●			
70	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		
80	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		
90	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
100	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
110	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
120	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
130	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
140	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
150	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
160	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
180	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
200	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●	●
220	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
240	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●	●
260	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●	●
300	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	●	●	●

All dimensions are in millimeters. Screws with lengths above heavy cross lines are threaded full length. Diameter-length combinations are indicated by the symbol ●. Standard sizes for government use. In addition to the lengths shown, the following lengths are standard: 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, and 16 mm. No diameter-length combinations are given in the Standard for these lengths. Screws larger than M24 with lengths equal to or shorter than L_{TT} (see Table 15 footnote) are threaded full length.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. American National Standard Socket Head Cap Screws
Metric Series *ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M-1986 (Withdrawn)*



Nom. Size and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, *D*		Head Diameter *A*		Head Height *H*		Chamfer or Radius *S*	Hexagon Socket Size[a] *J*	Spline Socket Size[a] *M*	Key Engagement *T*	Transition Dia. *B*[a]
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Nom.	Nom.	Min.	Max.
M1.6×0.35	1.60	1.46	3.00	2.87	1.60	1.52	0.16	1.5	1.829	0.80	2.0
M2×0.4	2.00	1.86	3.80	3.65	2.00	1.91	0.20	1.5	1.829	1.00	2.6
M2.5×0.45	2.50	2.36	4.50	4.33	2.50	2.40	0.25	2.0	2.438	1.25	3.1
M3×0.5	3.00	2.86	5.50	5.32	3.00	2.89	0.30	2.5	2.819	1.50	3.6
M4×0.7	4.00	3.82	7.00	6.80	4.00	3.88	0.40	3.0	3.378	2.00	4.7
M5×0.8	5.00	4.82	8.50	8.27	5.00	4.86	0.50	4.0	4.648	2.50	5.7
M6×1	6.00	5.82	10.00	9.74	6.00	5.85	0.60	5.0	5.486	3.00	6.8
M8×1.25	8.00	7.78	13.00	12.70	8.00	7.83	0.80	6.0	7.391	4.00	9.2
M10×1.5	10.00	9.78	16.00	15.67	10.00	9.81	1.00	8.0	…	5.00	11.2
M12×1.75	12.00	11.73	18.00	17.63	12.00	11.79	1.20	10.0	…	6.00	14.2
M14×2[b]	14.00	13.73	21.00	20.60	14.00	13.77	1.40	12.0	…	7.00	16.2
M16×2	16.00	15.73	24.00	23.58	16.00	15.76	1.60	14.0	…	8.00	18.2
M20×2.5	20.00	19.67	30.00	29.53	20.00	19.73	2.00	17.0	…	10.00	22.4
M24×3	24.00	23.67	36.00	35.48	24.00	23.70	2.40	19.0	…	12.00	26.4
M30×3.5	30.00	29.67	45.00	44.42	30.00	29.67	3.00	22.0	…	15.00	33.4
M36×4	36.00	35.61	54.00	53.37	36.00	35.64	3.60	27.0	…	18.00	39.4
M42×4.5	42.00	41.61	63.00	62.31	42.00	41.61	4.20	32.0	…	21.00	45.6
M48×5	48.00	47.61	72.00	71.27	48.00	47.58	4.80	36.0	…	24.00	52.6

[a] See also Table 23.

[b] The M14×2 size is not recommended for use in new designs.

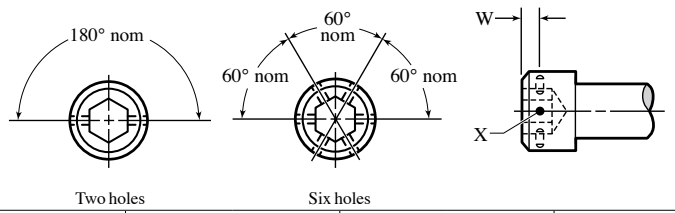
All dimensions are in millimeters

L_G is grip length and L_B is body length (see Table 15). For length of complete thread, see Table 15.

For additional manufacturing and acceptance specifications, see ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M (Withdrawn).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 22. Drilled Head Dimensions for Metric Hex Socket Head Cap Screws



Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter	Hole Center Location, *W*		Drilled Hole Diameter, *X*		Hole Alignment Check Plug Diameter
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic
M3	1.20	0.80	0.95	0.80	0.75
M4	1.60	1.20	1.35	1.20	0.90
M5	2.00	1.50	1.35	1.20	0.90
M6	2.30	1.80	1.35	1.20	0.90
M8	2.70	2.20	1.35	1.20	0.90
M10	3.30	2.80	1.65	1.50	1.40
M12	4.00	3.50	1.65	1.50	1.40
M16	5.00	4.50	1.65	1.50	1.40
M20	6.30	5.80	2.15	2.00	1.80
M24	7.30	6.80	2.15	2.00	1.80
M30	9.00	8.50	2.15	2.00	1.80
M36	10.50	10.00	2.15	2.00	1.80

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Drilled head metric hexagon socket head cap screws normally are not available in screw sizes smaller than M3 nor larger than M36. The M3 and M4 nominal screw sizes have two drilled holes spaced 180 degrees apart. Nominal screw sizes M5 and larger have six drilled holes spaced 60 degrees apart unless the purchaser specifies two drilled holes. The positioning of holes on opposite sides of the socket should be such that the hole alignment check plug will pass completely through the head without any deflection. When so specified by the purchaser, the edges of holes on the outside surface of the head will be chamfered 45 degrees to a depth of 0.30 to 0.50 mm.

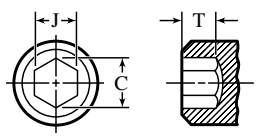
Metric Nuts

The American National Standards covering metric nuts have been established in cooperation with the Department of Defense in such a way that they could be used by the government for procurement purposes. Extensive information concerning these nuts is given in the following text and tables, but for more complete manufacturing and acceptance specifications, reference should be made to the respective Standards, which may be obtained by non-governmental agencies from the American National Standards Institute, 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036, www.ansi.org. Manufacturers should be consulted concerning items and sizes which are in stock production.

Comparison with ISO Standards.—American National Standards for metric nuts have been coordinated to the extent possible with comparable ISO Standards or proposed Standards, thus: ANSI B18.2.4.1M Metric Hex Nuts, Style 1 with ISO 4032; B18.2.4.2M Metric Hex Nuts, Style 2 with ISO 4033; B18.2.4.4M Metric Hex Flange Nuts with ISO 4161; B18.2.4.5M Metric Hex Jam Nuts with ISO 4035; and B18.2.4.3M Metric Slotted Hex Nuts, B18.2.4.6M Metric Heavy Hex Nuts in sizes M12 through M36, and B18.16M Prevailing-Torque Type Steel Metric Hex Nuts and Hex Flange Nuts with comparable draft ISO Standards. The dimensional differences between each ANSI Standard and the comparable ISO Standard or draft Standard are very few, relatively minor, and none will affect the interchangeability of nuts manufactured to the requirements of either.

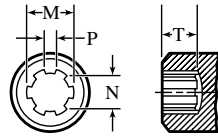
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. American National Standard Hexagon and Spline Sockets for Socket Head Cap Screws—Metric Series *ANSI/ASME B18.3.1M-1986 (Withdrawn)*



METRIC HEXAGON SOCKETS

See Table 21



METRIC SPLINE SOCKET

See Table 21

Nominal Hexagon Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats, *J*		Socket Width Across Corners, *C*	Nominal Hexagon Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats, *J*		Socket Width Across Corners, *C*
Metric Hexagon Sockets							
	Max.	Min.	Min.		Max.	Min.	Min.
1.5	1.545	1.520	1.73	12	12.146	12.032	13.80
2	2.045	2.020	2.30	14	14.159	14.032	16.09
2.5	2.560	2.520	2.87	17	17.216	17.050	19.56
3	3.071	3.020	3.44	19	19.243	19.065	21.87
4	4.084	4.020	4.58	22	22.319	22.065	25.31
5	5.084	5.020	5.72	24	24.319	24.065	27.60
6	6.095	6.020	6.86	27	27.319	27.065	31.04
8	8.115	8.025	9.15	32	32.461	32.080	36.80
10	10.127	10.025	11.50	36	36.461	36.080	41.38

Metric Spline Sockets[a]						
Nominal Spline Socket Size	Socket Major Diameter, *M*		Socket Minor Diameter, *N*		Width of Tooth, *P*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1.829	1.8796	1.8542	1.6256	1.6002	0.4064	0.3810
2.438	2.4892	2.4638	2.0828	2.0320	0.5588	0.5334
2.819	2.9210	2.8702	2.4892	2.4384	0.6350	0.5842
3.378	3.4798	3.4290	2.9972	2.9464	0.7620	0.7112
4.648	4.7752	4.7244	4.1402	4.0894	0.9906	0.9398
5.486	5.6134	5.5626	4.8260	4.7752	1.2700	1.2192
7.391	7.5692	7.5184	6.4516	6.4008	1.7272	2.6764

[a] The tabulated dimensions represent direct metric conversions of the equivalent inch size spline sockets shown in American National Standard Socket Cap, Shoulder and Set Screws.—Inch Series ANSI/ASME B18.3. Therefore, the spline keys and bits shown therein are applicable for wrenching the corresponding size metric spline sockets.

At its meeting in Varna, May 1977, ISO/TC2 studied several technical reports analyzing design considerations influencing determination of the best series of widths across flats for hex bolts, screws, and nuts. A primary technical objective was to achieve a logical ratio between under head (nut) bearing surface area (which determines the magnitude of compressive stress on the bolted members) and the tensile stress area of the screw thread (which governs the clamping force that can be developed by tightening the fastener). The series of widths across flats in the ANSI Standards agree with those which were selected by ISO/TC2 to be ISO Standards.

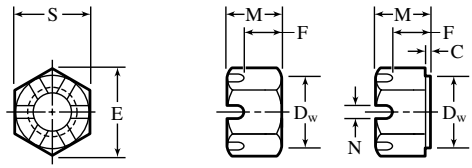
One exception for width across flats of metric hex nuts, styles 1 and 2, metric slotted hex nuts, metric hex jam nuts, and prevailing-torque metric hex nuts is the M10 size. These nuts in M10 size are currently being produced in the United States with a width across flats of 15 mm. This width, however, is not an ISO Standard. Unless these M10 nuts with width across flats of 15 mm are specifically ordered, the M10 size with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In ANSI Standards for metric nuts, letter symbols designating dimensional characteristics are in accord with those used in ISO Standards, except capitals have been used for data processing convenience instead of lower case letters used in ISO Standards.

Metric Nut Tops and Bearing Surfaces.—Metric hex nuts, styles 1 and 2, slotted hex nuts, and hex jam nuts are double chamfered in sizes M16 and smaller and in sizes M20 and larger may either be double chamfered or have a washer-faced bearing surface and a chamfered top at the option of the manufacturer. Metric heavy hex nuts are optional either way in all sizes. Metric hex flange nuts have a flange bearing surface and a chamfered top and prevailing-torque type metric hex nuts have a chamfered bearing surface. Prevailing-torque type metrix hex flange nuts have a flange bearing surface. All types of metric nuts have the tapped hole countersunk on the bearing face and metric slotted hex nuts, hex flange nuts, and prevailing-torque type hex nuts and hex flange nuts may be countersunk on the top face.

Table 24. American National Standard Metric Slotted Hex Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.4.3M-1979 (R2017)



Nominal Nut Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Thickness, *M*		Bearing Face Dia., D_w	Unslotted Thickness, *F*		Width of Slot, *N*		Washer Face Thickness *C*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	5.10	4.80	6.9	3.2	2.9	2.0	1.4	…	…
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	5.70	5.40	8.9	3.5	3.2	2.4	1.8	…	…
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	7.50	7.14	11.6	4.4	4.1	2.9	2.3	…	…
[a]M10 × 1.5	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	10.0	9.6	13.6	5.7	5.4	3.4	2.8	0.6	0.3
M10 × 1.5	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	9.30	8.94	14.6	5.2	4.9	3.4	2.8	…	…
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	12.00	11.57	16.6	7.3	6.9	4.0	3.2	…	…
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	14.10	13.40	19.6	8.6	8.0	4.3	3.5	…	…
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	16.40	15.70	22.5	9.9	9.3	5.3	4.5	…	…
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	20.30	19.00	27.7	13.3	12.2	5.7	4.5	0.8	0.4
M24 × 3	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	23.90	22.60	33.2	15.4	14.3	6.7	5.5	0.8	0.4
M30 × 3.5	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	28.60	27.30	42.7	18.1	16.8	8.5	7.0	0.8	0.4
M36 × 4	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	34.70	33.10	51.1	23.7	22.4	8.5	7.0	0.8	0.4

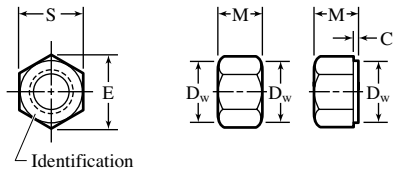
[a] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. Unless specifically ordered, M10 slotted hex nuts with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Materials and Mechanical Properties.—Non-heat-treated carbon steel metric hex nuts, style 1 and slotted hex nuts conform to material and property class requirements specified for property class 5 nuts; hex nuts, style 2 and hex flange nuts to property class 9 nuts; hex jam nuts to property class 4 nuts, and non-heat-treated carbon and alloy steel heavy hex nuts to property classes 5, 9, 8S, or 8S3 nuts; all as covered in ASTM A563M. Carbon steel metric hex nuts, style 1 and slotted hex nuts that have specified heat treatment conform to material and property class requirements specified for property class 10 nuts; hex nuts, style 2 to property class 12 nuts; hex jam nuts to property class 05 nuts; hex flange nuts to property classes 10 and 12 nuts; and carbon or alloy steel heavy hex nuts to property classes 10S, 10S3, or 12 nuts, all as covered in ASTM A563M. Carbon steel prevailing-torque type hex nuts and hex flange nuts conform to mechanical and property class requirements as given in ANSI/ASME B18.16M-2004 (R2016).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 25. American National Standard Metric Hex Nuts, Styles 1 and 2
ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012 and B18.2.6-2019



Nominal Nut Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats,[a] *S*		Width Across Corners,[b] *E*		Thickness,[c] *M*		Bearing Face Dia.,[d] D_w	Washer Face Thickness,[d] *C*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Metric Hex Nuts.—Style 1									
M1.6 × 0.35	3.20	3.02	3.70	3.41	1.30	1.05	2.3	…	…
M2 × 0.4	4.00	3.82	4.62	4.32	1.60	1.35	3.1	…	…
M2.5 × 0.45	5.00	4.82	5.77	5.45	2.00	1.75	4.1	…	…
M3 × 0.5	5.50	5.32	6.35	6.01	2.40	2.15	4.6	…	…
M3.5 × 0.6	6.00	5.82	6.93	6.58	2.80	2.55	5.1	…	…
M4 × 0.7	7.00	6.78	8.08	7.66	3.20	2.90	6.0	…	…
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	4.70	4.40	7.0	…	…
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	5.20	4.90	8.9	…	…
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	6.80	6.44	11.6	…	…
[e]M10 × 1.5	**15.00**	**14.73**	**17.32**	**16.64**	**9.1**	**8.7**	**13.6**	**…**	**…**
[f]M10 × 1.5	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	8.40	8.04	14.6	…	…
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	10.80	10.37	16.6	…	…
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.36	12.80	12.10	19.4	…	…
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	14.80	14.10	22.4	…	…
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	18.00	16.90	27.9	0.8	0.4
M24 × 3	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	21.50	20.20	32.5	0.8	0.4
M30 × 3.5	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	25.60	24.30	42.5	0.8	0.4
M36 × 4	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	31.00	29.40	50.8	0.8	0.4
Metric Hex Nuts.—Style 2									
M3 × 0.5	5.50	5.32	6.35	6.01	2.90	2.65	4.6	…	…
M3.5 × 0.6	6.00	5.82	6.93	6.58	3.30	3.00	5.1	…	…
M4 × 0.7	7.00	6.78	8.08	7.66	3.80	3.50	5.9	…	…
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	5.10	4.80	6.9	…	…
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	5.70	5.40	8.9	…	…
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	7.50	7.14	11.6	…	…
[e]M10 × 1.5	**15.00**	**14.73**	**17.32**	**16.64**	**10.0**	**9.6**	**13.6**	**…**	**…**
[f]M10 × 1.5	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	9.30	8.94	14.6	…	…
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	12.00	11.57	16.6	…	…
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	14.10	13.40	19.6	…	…
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	16.40	15.70	22.5	…	…
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	20.30	19.00	27.7	0.8	0.4
M24 × 3	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	23.90	22.60	33.2	0.8	0.4
M30 × 3.5	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	28.60	27.30	42.7	0.8	0.4
M36 × 4	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	34.70	33.10	51.1	0.8	0.4

[a] The width across flats shall be the distance, measured perpendicular to the axis of the nut, between two opposite wrenching flats.

[b] A rounding or lack of fill at the junction of hex corners with the chamfer shall be permissible.

[c] The nut thickness shall be the overall distance, measured parallel to the axis of the nut, from the top of the nut to the bearing surface, and shall include the thickness of the washer face where provided.

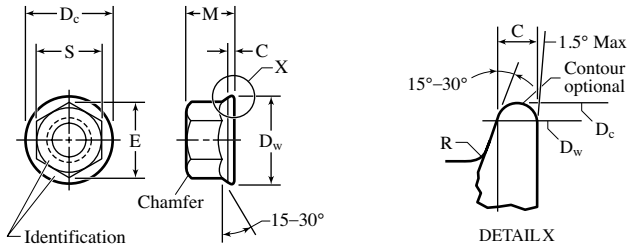
[d] M16 and smaller nuts shall be double chamfered. M20 and larger nuts shall be either double chamfered or have a washer faced bearing surface and a chamfered top.

[e] Dimensional requirements shown in bold type are in addition to or differ from ISO 4032.

[f] When M10 hex nuts are ordered, nuts with 16 mm width across flats shall be furnished unless 15 mm width across flats is specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 26. American National Standard Metric Hex Flange Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.2.4.4M-1982 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Nut Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Flange Dia., D_c	Bearing Circle Dia., D_w	Flange Edge Thickness, *C*	Thickness, *M*		Flange Top Fillet Radius, *R*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	11.8	9.8	1.0	5.00	4.70	0.3
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	14.2	12.2	1.1	6.00	5.70	0.4
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	17.9	15.8	1.2	8.00	7.60	0.5
M10 × 1.5	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	21.8	19.6	1.5	10.00	9.60	0.6
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	26.0	23.8	1.8	12.00	11.60	0.7
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	29.9	27.6	2.1	14.00	13.30	0.9
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	34.5	31.9	2.4	16.00	15.30	1.0
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	42.8	39.9	3.0	20.00	18.90	1.2

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Metric nuts of other materials, such as stainless steel, brass, bronze, and aluminum alloys, have properties as agreed upon by the manufacturer and purchaser. Properties of nuts of several grades of nonferrous materials are covered in ASTM F467M.

Unless otherwise specified, metric nuts are furnished with a natural (unprocessed) finish, unplated or uncoated.

Metric Nut Thread Series.—Metric nuts have metric coarse threads with class 6H tolerances in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.13M (see *Metric Screw and Bolt Diameter-Length Combinations* on page 1726). For prevailing-torque type metric nuts this condition applies before introduction of the prevailing torque feature. Nuts intended for use with externally threaded fasteners which are plated or coated with a plating or coating thickness (e.g., hot dip galvanized) requiring overtapping of the nut thread to permit assembly, have over-tapped threads in conformance with requirements specified in ASTM A563M.

Types of Metric Prevailing-Torque Type Nuts.—There are three basic designs for prevailing-torque type nuts:

1) All-metal, one-piece construction nuts which derive their prevailing-torque characteristics from controlled distortion of the nut thread and/or body.

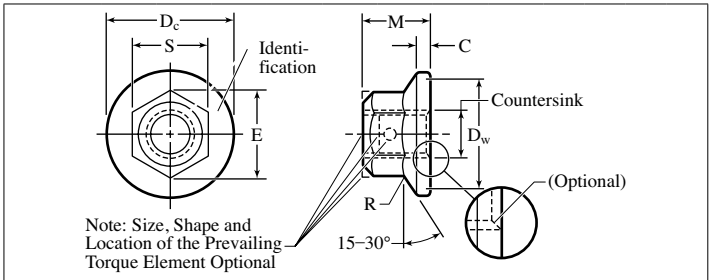
2) Metal nuts which derive their prevailing-torque characteristics from addition or fusion of a nonmetallic insert, plug or patch in their threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) Top insert, two-piece construction nuts which derive their prevailing-torque characteristics from an insert, usually a full ring of non-metallic material, located and retained in the nut at its top surface.

The first two designs are designated in Table 29 and Table 27 as "all-metal" type and the third design as "top-insert" type.

Table 27. American National Standard Prevailing-Torque Metric Hex Flange Nuts *ANSI/ASME B18.16M-2004 (R2016)*



Nominal Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		All Metal Type[a] Thickness, *M* (All Nut Property Classes)		Top Insert Type Thickness, *M* (All Nut Property Classes)		Flange Dia., D_c	Bearing Circle Dia., D_w	Flange Edge Thickness, *C*	Flange Top Fillet Radius, *R*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	7.30	5.70	8.80	8.00	14.2	12.2	1.1	0.4
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	9.40	7.60	10.70	9.70	17.9	15.8	1.2	0.5
M10 × 1.5	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	11.40	9.60	13.50	12.50	21.8	19.6	1.5	0.6
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	13.80	11.60	16.10	15.10	26.0	23.8	1.8	0.7
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	15.90	13.30	18.20	17.00	29.9	27.6	2.1	0.9
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	18.30	15.30	20.30	19.10	34.5	31.9	2.4	1.0
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	22.40	18.90	24.80	23.50	42.8	39.9	3.0	1.2

[a] Also includes metal nuts with nonmetallic inserts, plugs, or patches in their threads.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

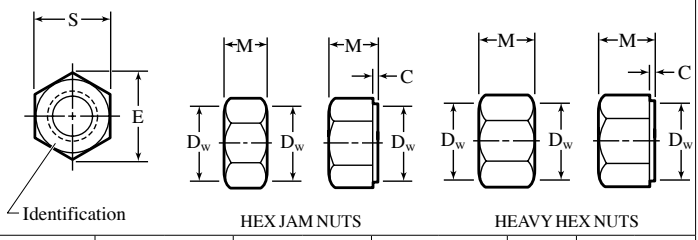
Metric Nut Identification Symbols.—Carbon steel hex nuts, styles 1 and 2, hex flange nuts, and carbon and alloy steel heavy hex nuts are marked to identify the property class and manufacturer in accordance with requirements specified in ASTM A563M. The aforementioned nuts when made of other materials, as well as slotted hex nuts and hex jam nuts, are marked to identify the property class and manufacturer as agreed upon by manufacturer and purchaser. Carbon steel prevailing-torque type hex nuts and hex flange nuts are marked to identify property class and manufacturer as specified in ANSI/ASME B18.16M. Prevailing-torque type nuts of other materials are identified as agreed upon by the manufacturer and purchaser.

Metric Nut Designation.—Metric nuts are designated by the following data, preferably in the sequence shown: product name, nominal diameter and thread pitch, steel property class or material identification, and protective coating, if required. (Note: It is common practice in ISO Standards to omit thread pitch from the product designation when the nut threads are the metric coarse thread series, e.g., M10 stands for M10 × 1.5).

Example: Hex nut, style 1, M10 × 1.5, ASTM A563M class 10, zinc plated
Heavy hex nut, M20 × 2.5, silicon bronze, ASTM F467, grade 651
Slotted hex nut, M20, ASTM A563M class 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 28. American National Standard Metric Hex Jam Nuts and Heavy Hex Nuts
ASME B18.2.6-2019 and ANSI/ASME B18.2.6M-2012



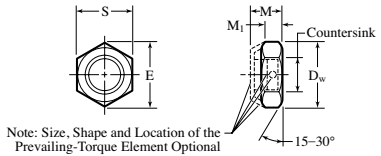
Nominal Nut Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Thickness, *M*		Bearing Face Dia., D_w	Washer Face Thickness, *C*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Metric Hex Jam Nuts									
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	2.70	2.45	6.9	…	…
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	3.20	2.90	8.9	…	…
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	4.00	3.70	11.6	…	…
[a]M10 × 1.5	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	5.00	4.70	13.6	…	…
M10 × 1.5	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	5.00	4.70	14.6	…	…
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	6.00	5.70	16.6	…	…
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	7.00	6.42	19.6	…	…
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	8.00	7.42	22.5	…	…
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	10.00	9.10	27.7	0.8	0.4
M24 × 3	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	12.00	10.90	33.2	0.8	0.4
M30 × 3.5	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	15.00	13.90	42.7	0.8	0.4
M36 × 4	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	18.00	16.90	51.1	0.8	0.4
Metric Heavy Hex Nuts									
M12 × 1.75	21.00	20.16	24.25	22.78	12.3	11.9	19.2	0.8	0.4
M14 × 2	24.00	23.16	27.71	26.17	14.3	13.6	22.0	0.8	0.4
M16 × 2	27.00	26.16	31.18	29.56	17.1	16.4	24.9	0.8	0.4
M20 × 2.5	34.00	33.00	39.26	37.29	20.7	19.4	31.4	0.8	0.4
M22 × 2.5	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	23.6	22.3	33.3	0.8	0.4
M24 × 3	41.00	40.00	47.34	45.20	24.2	22.9	38.0	0.8	0.4
M27 × 3	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	27.6	26.3	42.8	0.8	0.4
M30 × 3.5	50.00	49.00	57.74	55.37	30.7	29.1	46.6	0.8	0.4
M36 × 4	60.00	58.80	69.28	66.44	36.6	35.0	55.9	0.8	0.4
M42 × 4.5	70.00	67.90	80.83	77.41	42.0	40.4	64.5	1.0	0.5
M48 × 5	80.00	77.60	92.38	88.46	48.0	46.4	73.7	1.0	0.5
M56 × 5.5	90.00	87.20	103.92	99.41	56.0	54.1	82.8	1.0	0.5
M64 × 6	100.00	96.80	115.47	110.35	64.0	62.1	92.0	1.0	0.5
M72 × 6	110.00	106.40	127.02	121.30	72.0	70.1	101.1	1.2	0.6
M80 × 6	120.00	116.00	138.56	132.24	80.0	78.1	110.2	1.2	0.6
M90 × 6	135.00	130.50	155.88	148.77	90.0	87.8	124.0	1.2	0.6
M100 × 6	150.00	145.00	173.21	165.30	100.0	97.8	137.8	1.2	0.6

[a] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. Unless specifically ordered, M10 hex jam nuts with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 29. American National Standard Prevailing-Torque Metric Hex Nuts—Property Classes 5, 9, and 10 *ANSI/ASME B18.16M-2004 (R2016)*



Nominal Nut Dia. and Thread Pitch	Width Across Flats, *S*		Width Across Corners, *E*		Property Classes 5 and 10 Nuts				Property Class 9 Nuts				Property Class		Bearing Face Dia., D_w
					All Metal[a] Type		Top Insert Type		All Metal Type		Top Insert Type		5 and 10 Nuts	9 Nuts	
					Thickness, *M*								Wrenching Height, M_1		
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.	Min.
M3 × 0.5	5.50	5.32	6.35	6.01	3.10	2.65	4.50	3.90	3.10	2.65	4.50	3.90	1.4	1.4	4.6
M3.5 × 0.6	6.00	5.82	6.93	6.58	3.50	3.00	5.00	4.30	3.50	3.00	5.00	4.30	1.7	1.7	5.1
M4 × 0.7	7.00	6.78	8.08	7.66	4.00	3.50	6.00	5.30	4.00	3.50	6.00	5.30	1.9	1.9	5.9
M5 × 0.8	8.00	7.78	9.24	8.79	5.30	4.80	6.80	6.00	5.30	4.80	7.20	6.40	2.7	2.7	6.9
M6 × 1	10.00	9.78	11.55	11.05	5.90	5.40	8.00	7.20	6.70	5.40	8.50	7.70	3.0	3.0	8.9
M8 × 1.25	13.00	12.73	15.01	14.38	7.10	6.44	9.50	8.50	8.00	7.14	10.20	9.20	3.7	4.3	11.6
[b]M10 × 1.5	15.00	14.73	17.32	16.64	9.70	8.70	12.50	11.50	11.20	9.60	13.50	12.50	5.6	6.2	13.6
M10 × 1.5	16.00	15.73	18.48	17.77	9.00	8.04	11.90	10.90	10.50	8.94	12.80	11.80	4.8	5.6	14.6
M12 × 1.75	18.00	17.73	20.78	20.03	11.60	10.37	14.90	13.90	13.30	11.57	16.10	15.10	6.7	7.7	16.6
M14 × 2	21.00	20.67	24.25	23.35	13.20	12.10	17.00	15.80	15.40	13.40	18.30	17.10	7.8	8.9	19.6
M16 × 2	24.00	23.67	27.71	26.75	15.20	14.10	19.10	17.90	17.90	15.70	20.70	19.50	9.1	10.5	22.5
M20 × 2.5	30.00	29.16	34.64	32.95	19.00	16.90	22.80	21.50	21.80	19.00	25.10	23.80	10.9	12.7	27.7
M24 × 3	36.00	35.00	41.57	39.55	23.00	20.20	27.10	25.60	26.40	22.60	29.50	28.00	13.0	15.1	33.2
M30 × 3.5	46.00	45.00	53.12	50.85	26.90	24.30	32.60	30.60	31.80	27.30	35.60	33.60	15.7	18.2	42.7
M36 × 4	55.00	53.80	63.51	60.79	32.50	29.40	38.90	36.90	38.50	33.10	42.60	40.60	19.0	22.1	51.1

[a] Also includes metal nuts with non-metallic inserts, plugs, or patches in their threads.
[b] This size with width across flats of 15 mm is not standard. Unless specifically ordered, M10 slotted hex nuts with 16 mm width across flats will be furnished.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metric Washers

Metric Plain Washers.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.22M-1981 (R2017) covers general specifications and dimensions for flat, round-hole washers, both soft (as fabricated) and hardened, intended for use in general-purpose applications. Dimensions are given in the following table. Manufacturers should be consulted for current information on stock sizes.

Comparison with ISO Standards.—The washers covered by this ASME Standard are nominally similar to those covered in various ISO documents. Outside diameters were selected, where possible, from ISO/TC2/WG6/N47 "General Plan for Plain Washers for Metric Bolts, Screws, and Nuts." The thicknesses given in the ASME Standard are similar to the nominal ISO thicknesses, however the tolerances differ. Inside diameters also differ.

ISO metric washers are currently covered in ISO 887, "Plain Washers for Metric Bolts, Screws, and Nuts - General Plan."

Types of Metric Plain Washers.—Soft (as fabricated) washers are generally available in nominal sizes 1.6 mm through 36 mm in a variety of materials. They are normally used in low-strength applications to distribute bearing load, to provide a uniform bearing surface, and to prevent marring of the work surface.

Hardened steel washers are normally available in sizes 6 mm through 36 mm in the narrow and regular series. They are intended primarily for use in high-strength joints to minimize embedment, to provide a uniform bearing surface, and to bridge large clearance holes and slots.

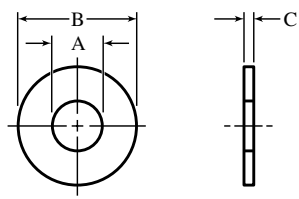
Metric Plain Washer Materials and Finish.—Soft (as fabricated) washers are made of nonhardened steel unless otherwise specified by the purchaser. Hardened washers are made of through-hardened steel tempered to a hardness of 38 to 45 RC (Rockwell C scale).

Unless otherwise specified, washers are furnished with a natural (as fabricated) finish, unplated or uncoated with a light film of oil or rust inhibitor.

Metric Plain Washer Designation.—When specifying metric plain washers, the designation should include the following data in the sequence shown: description, nominal size, series, material type, and finish, if required.

Example: Plain washer, 6 mm, narrow, soft, steel, zinc plated

Plain washer, 10 mm, regular, hardened steel.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 30. American National Standard Metric Plain Washers
ANSI/ASME B18.22M-1981 (R2017)

Nominal Washer Size[a]	Washer Series	Inside Diameter, *A*		Outside Diameter, *B*		Thickness, *C*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1.6	Narrow	2.09	1.95	4.00	3.70	0.70	0.50
	Regular	2.09	1.95	5.00	4.70	0.70	0.50
	Wide	2.09	1.95	6.00	5.70	0.90	0.60
2	Narrow	2.64	2.50	5.00	4.70	0.90	0.60
	Regular	2.64	2.50	6.00	5.70	0.90	0.60
	Wide	2.64	2.50	8.00	7.64	0.90	0.60
2.5	Narrow	3.14	3.00	6.00	5.70	0.90	0.60
	Regular	3.14	3.00	8.00	7.64	0.90	0.60
	Wide	3.14	3.00	10.00	9.64	1.20	0.80
3	Narrow	3.68	3.50	7.00	6.64	0.90	0.60
	Regular	3.68	3.50	10.00	9.64	1.20	0.80
	Wide	3.68	3.50	12.00	11.57	1.40	1.00
3.5	Narrow	4.18	4.00	9.00	8.64	1.20	0.80
	Regular	4.18	4.00	10.00	9.64	1.40	1.00
	Wide	4.18	4.00	15.00	14.57	1.75	1.20
4	Narrow	4.88	4.70	10.00	9.64	1.20	0.80
	Regular	4.88	4.70	12.00	11.57	1.40	1.00
	Wide	4.88	4.70	16.00	15.57	2.30	1.60
5	Narrow	5.78	5.50	11.00	10.57	1.40	1.00
	Regular	5.78	5.50	15.00	14.57	1.75	1.20
	Wide	5.78	5.50	20.00	19.48	2.30	1.60
6	Narrow	6.87	6.65	13.00	12.57	1.75	1.20
	Regular	6.87	6.65	18.80	18.37	1.75	1.20
	Wide	6.87	6.65	25.40	24.88	2.30	1.60
8	Narrow	9.12	8.90	18.80[b]	18.37[b]	2.30	1.60
	Regular	9.12	8.90	25.40[b]	24.48[b]	2.30	1.60
	Wide	9.12	8.90	32.00	31.38	2.80	2.00
10	Narrow	11.12	10.85	20.00	19.48	2.30	1.60
	Regular	11.12	10.85	28.00	27.48	2.80	2.00
	Wide	11.12	10.85	39.00	38.38	3.50	2.50
12	Narrow	13.57	13.30	25.40	24.88	2.80	2.00
	Regular	13.57	13.30	34.00	33.38	3.50	2.50
	Wide	13.57	13.30	44.00	43.38	3.50	2.50
14	Narrow	15.52	15.25	28.00	27.48	2.80	2.00
	Regular	15.52	15.25	39.00	38.38	3.50	2.50
	Wide	15.52	15.25	50.00	49.38	4.00	3.00
16	Narrow	17.52	17.25	32.00	31.38	3.50	2.50
	Regular	17.52	17.25	44.00	43.38	4.00	3.00
	Wide	17.52	17.25	56.00	54.80	4.60	3.50
20	Narrow	22.32	21.80	39.00	38.38	4.00	3.00
	Regular	22.32	21.80	50.00	49.38	4.60	3.50
	Wide	22.32	21.80	66.00	64.80	5.10	4.00
24	Narrow	26.12	25.60	44.00	43.38	4.60	3.50
	Regular	26.12	25.60	56.00	54.80	5.10	4.00
	Wide	26.12	25.60	72.00	70.80	5.60	4.50
30	Narrow	33.02	32.40	56.00	54.80	5.10	4.00
	Regular	33.02	32.40	72.00	70.80	5.60	4.50
	Wide	33.02	32.40	90.00	88.60	6.40	5.00
36	Narrow	38.92	38.30	66.00	64.80	5.60	4.50
	Regular	38.92	38.30	90.00	88.60	6.40	5.00
	Wide	38.92	38.30	110.00	108.60	8.50	7.00

[a] Nominal washer sizes are intended for use with comparable screw and bolt sizes.

[b] The 18.80/18.37 and 25.40/24.48 mm outside diameters avoid washers which could be used in coin-operated devices.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Clearance Holes for Bolts, Screws, and Studs

The Standard ANSI/ASME B18.2.8-1999 (R2017) covers the recommended clearance hole sizes for #0 through 1.5 inch and M1.6 through M100 metric fasteners in three classes of clearance using a close-, normal-, and loose-fit category.

The clearance hole tolerances for both inch and metric holes are based on ISO 286, *ISO System of Limits and Fits*, using tolerance class H12 for close-fit, H13 for normal-fit, and H14 for loose-fit clearance holes. The clearances provided by the three classes of fit are based on regularly stepped clearances as listed in Table 1a for inch and Table 2b for metric.

Inch Fasteners.—The hole sizes for inch fasteners are patterned after US common usage and the general clearances translated from the metric standard. The hole tolerances are based on the *ISO System of Limits and Fits*, as required by ISO 273.

The tabulated drill and hole sizes, Table 1a, lists the inch fastener clearance hole recommendations. The recommended drill sizes for inch fasteners are tabulated by nominal drill designation as letter, numbers, or fractional sizes. The drill sizes were selected to provide as nearly as practical a step-patterned clearance size for the minimum recommended hole (Table 1b). The maximum recommended hole size is based on standard hole tolerances.

Table 1a. Clearance Holes for Inch Fasteners *ANSI/ASME B18.2.8-1999 (R2017)*

Nominal Screw Size	Normal			Close			Loose		
	Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter		Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter		Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter	
		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
#0	#48	0.076	0.082	#51	0.067	0.071	3/32	0.094	0.104
#1	#43	0.089	0.095	#46	0.081	0.085	#37	0.104	0.114
#2	#38	0.102	0.108	3/32	0.094	0.098	#32	0.116	0.126
#3	#32	0.116	0.122	#36	0.106	0.110	#30	0.128	0.140
#4	#30	0.128	0.135	#31	0.120	0.124	#27	0.144	0.156
#5	9/64	0.156	0.163	9/64	0.141	0.146	11/64	0.172	0.184
#6	#18	0.170	0.177	#23	0.154	0.159	#13	0.185	0.197
#8	#9	0.196	0.203	#15	0.180	0.185	#3	0.213	0.225
#10	#2	0.221	0.228	#5	0.206	0.211	B	0.238	0.250
1/4	9/32	0.281	0.290	17/64	0.266	0.272	19/64	0.297	0.311
5/16	11/32	0.344	0.354	21/64	0.328	0.334	23/64	0.359	0.373
3/8	13/32	0.406	0.416	25/64	0.391	0.397	27/64	0.422	0.438
7/16	15/32	0.469	0.479	29/64	0.453	0.460	31/64	0.484	0.500
1/2	9/16	0.562	0.572	17/32	0.531	0.538	39/64	0.609	0.625
5/8	11/16	0.688	0.698	21/32	0.656	0.663	47/64	0.734	0.754
3/4	13/16	0.812	0.824	25/32	0.781	0.789	29/32	0.906	0.926
7/8	15/16	0.938	0.950	29/32	0.906	0.914	1 1/32	1.031	1.051
1	1 3/32	1.094	1.106	1 1/32	1.031	1.039	1 5/32	1.156	1.181
1 1/8	1 7/32	1.219	1.235	1 5/32	1.156	1.164	1 5/16	1.312	1.337
1 1/4	1 11/32	1.344	1.360	1 9/32	1.281	1.291	1 7/16	1.438	1.463
1 3/8	1 1/2	1.500	1.516	1 7/16	1.438	1.448	1 39/64	1.609	1.634
1 1/2	1 5/8	1.625	1.641	1 9/16	1.562	1.572	1 47/64	1.734	1.759

Table 1b. Inch Clearance Hole Allowances

Nominal Screw Size	Fit Classes			Nominal Screw Size	Fit Classes		
	Normal	Close	Loose		Normal	Close	Loose
#0 – #4	1/64	0.008	1/32	1	3/32	1/32	5/32
#5 – 7/16	1/32	1/64	3/64	1 1/8 , 1 1/4	3/32	1/32	3/16
1/2 , 5/8	1/16	1/32	7/64	1 3/8 , 1 1/2	1/8	1/16	15/64
3/4 , 7/8	1/16	1/32	5/32	…	…	…	…

Dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metric Fasteners.—The recommended drill and hole sizes for metric fasteners are tabulated in Table 2a. The minimum recommended hole is the drill size and the maximum recommended hole size is based on standard tolerances. The hole sizes for metric fasteners are in agreement with ISO 273, *Fasteners-Clearance Holes for Bolts and Screws*, except that ISO 273 covers fastener sizes M1 through M150.

Table 2a. Clearance Holes for Metric Fasteners *ANSI/ASME B18.2.8-1999 (R2017)*

Nominal Screw Size	Normal			Close			Loose		
	Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter		Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter		Nominal Drill Size	Hole Diameter	
		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.
M1.6	1.8	1.8	1.94	1.7	1.7	1.8	2	2	2.25
M2	2.4	2.4	2.54	2.2	2.2	2.3	2.6	2.6	2.85
M2.5	2.9	2.9	3.04	2.7	2.7	2.8	3.1	3.1	3.4
M3	3.4	3.4	3.58	3.2	3.2	3.32	3.6	3.6	3.9
M4	4.5	4.5	4.68	4.3	4.3	4.42	4.8	4.8	5.1
M5	5.5	5.5	5.68	5.3	5.3	5.42	5.8	5.8	6.1
M6	6.6	6.6	6.82	6.4	6.4	6.55	7	7	7.36
M8	9	9	9.22	8.4	8.4	8.55	10	10	10.36
M10	11	11	11.27	10.5	10.5	10.68	12	12	12.43
M12	13.5	13.5	13.77	13	13	13.18	14.5	14.5	14.93
M14	15.5	15.5	15.77	15	15	15.18	16.5	16.5	16.93
M16	17.5	17.5	17.77	17	17	17.18	18.5	18.5	19.02
M20	22	22	22.33	21	21	21.21	24	24	24.52
M24	26	26	26.33	25	25	25.21	28	28	28.52
M30	33	33	33.39	31	31	31.25	35	35	35.62
M36	39	39	39.39	37	37	37.25	42	42	42.62
M42	45	45	45.39	43	43	43.25	48	48	48.62
M48	52	52	52.46	50	50	50.25	56	56	56.74
M56	62	62	62.46	58	58	58.3	66	66	66.74
M64	70	70	70.46	66	66	66.3	74	74	74.74
M72	78	78	78.46	74	74	74.3	82	82	82.87
M80	86	86	86.54	82	82	82.35	91	91	91.87
M90	96	96	96.54	93	93	93.35	101	101	101.87
M100	107	107	107.54	104	104	104.35	112	112	112.87

Table 2b. Metric Clearance Hole Allowances

Nominal Screw Size	Fit Classes			Nominal Screw Size	Fit Classes		
	Normal	Close	Loose		Normal	Close	Loose
M1.6	0.2	0.1	0.25	M20, M24	2	1	4
M2	0.4	0.1	0.3	M30	3	1	5
M2.5	0.4	0.1	0.3	M36, M42	3	1	6
M3	0.4	0.2	0.6	M48	4	2	8
M4, M5	0.5	0.3	0.8	M56-M72	6	2	10
M6	0.6	0.4	1	M80	6	2	11
M8	1	0.4	2	M90	6	3	11
M10	1	0.5	2	M100	7	4	12
M12-M16	1.5	1	2.5	…	…	…	…

Dimensions are in millimeters.

Recommended Substitute Drills.—If the clearance hole application is dimensioned in metric drill sizes for inch fasteners, or inch drill sizes for metric fasteners, Table 3a and Table 3b list the nearest standard drill size translations for the designated drills of Table 1a and Table 2a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

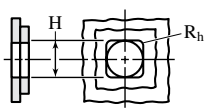
Table 3a. Standard Metric Drills For Inch Fasteners
ANSI/ASME B18.2.8-1999 (R2017)

Nominal Screw Size, inch	Nominal Drill Size, mm			Nominal Screw Size, inch	Nominal Drill Size, mm		
	Fit Classes				Fit Classes		
	Normal	Close	Loose		Normal	Close	Loose
#0	1.9	1.7	2.4	3/8	10.2	9.9	10.5
#1	2.25	2.05	2.6	7/16	11.8	11.5	12.2
#2	2.6	2.4	2.9	1/2	14.25	13.5	15.5
#3	2.9	2.7	3.3	5/8	17.5	16.75	19
#4	3.3	3	3.7	3/4	20.5	20	23
#5	4	3.6	4.4	7/8	24	23	26
#6	4.3	3.9	4.7	1	27.5	26	29.5
#8	5	4.6	5.4	1 1/8	31	29.5	33.5
#10	5.6	5.2	6	1 1/4	34	32.5	36.5
1/4	7.1	6.7	7.5	1 3/8	38	36.5	41
5/16	8.7	8.3	9.1	1 1/2	41	39.5	44

Table 3b. Standard Inch Drills For Metric Fasteners
ANSI/ASME B18.2.8-1999 (R2017)

Nominal Screw Size, mm	Nominal Drill Size, inch			Nominal Screw Size, mm	Nominal Drill Size, inch		
	Fit Classes				Fit Classes		
	Normal	Close	Loose		Normal	Close	Loose
M1.6	#50	#51	#47	M16	11/16	43/64	47/64
M2	3/32	#44	#38	M20	55/64	53/64	15/16
M2.5	#33	#36	#31	M24	1 1/32	63/64	1 7/64
M3	#29	1/8	9/64	M30	1 9/32	1 7/32	1 3/8
M4	#16	#19	#12	M36	1 17/32	1 15/32	1 21/32
M5	7/32	#4	#1	M42	1 25/32	1 11/16	1 29/32
M6	G	1/4	J	M48	2 1/32	1 31/32	2 3/16
M8	T	Q	25/64	M56	2 7/16	2 5/16	2 5/8
M10	7/16	Z	31/64	M64	2 3/4	2 5/8	2 15/16
M12	17/32	33/64	37/64	M72	3 1/8	2 15/16	3 1/4
M14	39/64	19/32	21/32	…	…	…	…

Table 4. Recommended Clearance Holes for Metric Round Head Square Neck Bolts



Close Clearance: Close clearance should be specified only for square holes in very thin and/or soft material, or for slots, or where conditions such as critical alignment of assembled parts, wall thickness, or other limitations necessitate use of a minimal hole. Allowable swell or fins on the bolt body and/or fins on the corners of the square neck may interfere with close clearance round or square holes.

Normal Clearance: Normal clearance hole sizes are preferred for general purpose applications and should be specified unless special design considerations dictate the need for either a close or loose clearance hole.

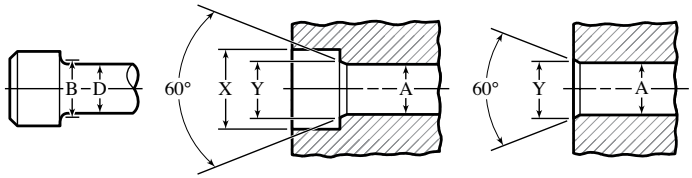
Nom. Bolt Dia., *D* and Thd. Pitch	Clearance			Corner Radius R_h	Nom. Bolt Dia., *D* and Thd. Pitch	Clearance			Corner Radius R_h
	Close	Normal	Loose			Close	Normal	Loose	
	Min. Hole Diameter or Square Width, *H*					Min. Hole Diameter or Square Width, *H*			
M5 × 0.8	5.5	…	5.8	0.2	M14 × 2	15.0	15.5	16.5	0.6
M6 × 1	6.6	…	7.0	0.3	M16 × 2	17.0	17.5	18.5	0.6
M8 × 1.25	…	9.0	10.0	0.4	M20 × 2.5	21.0	22.0	24.0	0.8
M10 × 1.5	…	11.0	12.0	0.4	M24 × 3	25.0	26.0	28.0	1.0
M12 × 1.75	13.0	13.5	14.5	0.6	…	…	…	…	…

Loose Clearance: Loose clearance hole sizes should be specified only for applications where maximum adjustment capability between components being assembled is necessary. Loose clearance square hole or slots may not prevent bolt turning during wrenching.

All dimensions are in millimeters. Source: ANSI/ASME B18.5.2.2M-1982, Appendix II

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Drill and Counterbore Sizes for Metric Socket Head Cap Screws



Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter	Nominal Drill Size, *A*		Counterbore Diameter, *X*	Countersink Diameter,[a] *Y*
	Close Fit[b]	Normal Fit[c]		
M1.6	1.80	1.95	3.50	2.0
M2	2.20	2.40	4.40	2.6
M2.5	2.70	3.00	5.40	3.1
M3	3.40	3.70	6.50	3.6
M4	4.40	4.80	8.25	4.7
M5	5.40	5.80	9.75	5.7
M6	6.40	6.80	11.25	6.8
M8	8.40	8.80	14.25	9.2
M10	10.50	10.80	17.25	11.2
M12	12.50	12.80	19.25	14.2
M14	14.50	14.75	22.25	16.2
M16	16.50	16.75	25.50	18.2
M20	20.50	20.75	31.50	22.4
M24	24.50	24.75	37.50	26.4
M30	30.75	31.75	47.50	33.4
M36	37.00	37.50	56.50	39.4
M42	43.00	44.00	66.00	45.6
M48	49.00	50.00	75.00	52.6

[a] *Countersink:* It is considered good practice to countersink or break the edges of holes which are smaller than *B* Max. (see Table 21, page 1730) in parts having a hardness which approaches, equals, or exceeds the screw hardness. If such holes are not countersunk, the heads of screws may not seat properly or the sharp edges on holes may deform the fillets on screws, thereby making them susceptible to fatigue in applications involving dynamic loading. The countersink or corner relief, however, should not be larger than is necessary to ensure that the fillet on the screw is cleared. Normally, the diameter of countersink does not have to exceed *B* Max. Countersinks or corner reliefs in excess of this diameter reduce the effective bearing area and introduce the possibility of embedment where the parts to be fastened are softer than the screws or of brinnelling or flaring the heads of the screws where the parts to be fastened are harder than the screws.

[b] *Close Fit:* The close fit is normally limited to holes for those lengths of screws which are threaded to the head in assemblies where only one screw is to be used or where two or more screws are to be used and the mating holes are to be produced either at assembly or by matched and coordinated tooling.

[c] *Normal Fit:* The normal fit is intended for screws of relatively long length or for assemblies involving two or more screws where the mating holes are to be produced by conventional tolerancing methods. It provides for the maximum allowable eccentricity of the longest standard screws and for certain variations in the parts to be fastened, such as: deviations in hole straightness, angularity between the axis of the tapped hole and that of the hole for shank, differences in center distances of the mating holes, etc.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HELICAL COIL SCREW THREAD INSERTS

Introduction

The ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M standard delineates the dimensional, mechanical, and performance data for the metric series helical coil screw thread insert and threaded hole into which it is installed. Appendices that describe insert selection, STI (screw thread insert) taps, insert installation, and removal tooling are also included.

Helical coil inserts are screw thread bushings coiled from wire of diamond-shape cross section. Inserts are screwed into STI-tapped holes to form nominal size internal threads. Inserts are installed by torquing through a diametral tang. This tang is notched for removal after installation. In the free state, they are larger in diameter than the tapped hole into which they are installed. In the assembly operation, the torque applied to the tang reduces the diameter of the leading coil and permits it to enter the tapped thread. The remaining coils are reduced in diameter as they, in turn, are screwed into the tapped hole. When the torque or rotation is stopped, the coils expand with a spring-like action anchoring the insert in place against the tapped hole.

Dimensions.—Dimensions in this standard are in millimeters and apply before any coating. Symbols specifying geometric characteristics are in accordance with ASME Y14.5.

Tolerance Classes 4H5H and 5H.—Because helical coil inserts are flexible, the class of fit of the final assembly is a function of the size of the tapped hole. Helical coil STI taps are available for both tolerance class 4H5H (or class 4H6H) and class 5H tapped holes. Tolerance class 5H tapped holes provide maximum production tolerances but result in lower locking torques when screw-locking inserts are used. The higher and more consistent torques given in Table 5 are met by the screw-locking inserts when assembled and tested in tolerance class 4H5H (or class 4H6H) tapped holes.

Compatibility.—Assembled helical coil inserts will mate properly with items that have M Profile external threads in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.13M. Also, due to the radius on the crest of the insert at the minor diameter, the assembled insert will mate with MJ Profile externally threaded parts with controlled radius root threads per ANSI/ASME B1.21M.

Types of Inserts.—*Free-running* inserts provides a smooth, hard, and free-running thread. *Screw-locking* inserts provides a resilient locking thread produced by a series of chords on one or more of the insert coils.

STI-Tapped Hole.—The tapped hole into which the insert is installed shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.13M, except that diameters are larger to accommodate the wire cross section of the insert (See Fig. 1). Dimensions of the STI-tapped hole are shown in Table 1 and are calculated per General Note (c) to Table 1.

Screw Thread Designation for Tapped Hole: The drawing note for the STI-threaded hole per Table 1 to accept the helical coil insert shall be in accordance with the following:

Example 1: MS ×1.25-5H STI; 23.5 T per ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M.

Designation for a Helical Coil Insert: Helical coil inserts shall be designated by the following data, in the sequence shown:

a) product name; b) designation of the standard; c) nominal diameter and thread pitch (4) nominal length; and d) insert type (free-running or screw-locking).

Example 2: Helical Coil insert, ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M, M8 × 1.25 × 12.0 free-running.

Helical Coil insert, ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M, M5 × 0.8 × 7.5 screw-locking.

The recommended B18 part number (PIN) code system for helical coil inserts is included in ANSI/ASME B18.24. This system may be used by user needing definitive part-numbering.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

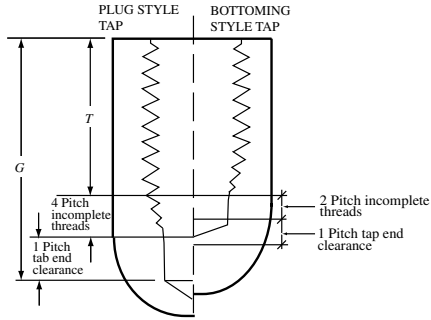


Fig. 1. Tapping Depth

Designation for STI-Threaded Hole Including Installed Helical Coil Insert: The drawing note for the STI-threaded hole per Table 1 having a helical coil insert installed shall be in accordance with this example.

Example 3: M8 × 1.25 STI 23.5 deep;

Helical Coil insert, ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M, M8 × 1.25 × 12.0, free running

Gages and Gaging: Acceptance of the threaded hole is determined by gaging with STI GO, NOT GO (HI), and plain cylindrical gages designed and applied in accordance with System 21 of ANSI/ASME B1.3 and with ANSI/ASME B1.16M.

Helical Coil Insert

Material.—Chemical composition of the inserts is austenitic corrosion-resistant (stainless) steel material within the limits of Table 2.

Properties.—Wire, before coiling into inserts, shall have tensile strength not lower than 1035 MPa, determined in accordance with ASTM A370. Wire shall withstand, without cracking, bending in accordance with ASTM E 290 at room temperature through an angle of 180° around a diameter equal to twice the cross-sectional dimension of the wire in the plane of the bend. The formed wire shall be of uniform quality and temper; it shall be smooth, clean, and free from kinks, waviness, splits, cracks, laps, seams, scale, segregation, and other defects that may impair the serviceability of the insert.

Coatings.—At the option of the user, dry film lubricant coating can be applied to helical coil inserts.The color of dry film-lubricated inserts is dark gray to black. Lubricant shall meet requirements of Aerospace Standard SAE AS5272, type I, lubricant, solid film heat cured, and corrosion inhibiting. Coating shall be uniformly deposited on the insert with the minimum thickness being complete coverage. Maximum thickness shall be the avoidance of bridging between coils. Slight fill in between closely wound coils, which immediately separates as the coils are axially pulled apart by hand, shall not be considered bridging.

Configuration and Dimensions.—Insert configurations shall be in accordance with Fig. 2, and dimensions shall be in accordance with Table 3 and Table 4. Each nominal insert size is standardized in five lengths, which are multiples of the insert's nominal diameter. These are 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5, and 3 times nominal diameter. Each nominal length is the minimum through-hole length (material thickness), without countersink, into which that insert can be installed. The nominal insert length is a reference value and cannot be measured. Actual assembled length of the insert equals nominal length minus 0.5 pitch to minus 0.75 pitch, with insert installed in a basic STI threaded hole. Assembled length cannot be measured in the insert's free state.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Screw Thread Insert Threaded Hole Data *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	Minimum Drilling Depth for Each Insert Length, *G*										Countersink Diameter, *M* (120°±5° included angle)		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter				Min. Major Diam.	Minimum Tapping Depth, *T*				
	Plug Taps					Bottoming Taps														Insert Length				
	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	4H Max.	5H Max.	6H Max.	All Classes	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*
M2 × 0.4	5.40	6.40	7.40	8.40	9.40	3.60	4.60	5.60	6.60	7.60	2.30	2.70	2.087	2.199	2.260	2.295	2.310	2.329	2.520	2.40	3.40	4.40	5.40	6.40
M2.5 × 0.45	6.45	7.70	8.95	10.20	11.45	4.30	5.55	6.80	8.05	9.30	2.90	3.40	2.597	2.722	2.792	2.832	2.847	2.867	3.084	2.95	4.20	5.45	6.70	7.95
M3 × 0.5	7.50	9.00	10.50	12.00	13.50	5.00	5.00	8.00	9.50	11.00	3.40	4.00	3.108	3.248	3.326	3.367	3.384	3.404	3.650	3.50	5.00	6.50	8.00	9.50
M3.5 × 0.6	8.86	10.60	12.35	14.10	15.85	5.90	7.65	9.40	11.15	12.90	4.10	4.70	3.630	3.790	3.890	3.940	3.959	3.981	4.280	4.10	5.85	7.60	9.35	11.10
M4 × 0.7	10.20	12.20	14.20	16.20	18.20	6.80	8.80	10.80	12.80	14.80	4.70	5.30	4.162	4.332	4.455	4.508	4.529	4.552	4.910	4.70	6.70	8.70	10.70	12.70
M5 × 0.8	12.30	14.80	17.30	19.80	22.30	8.20	10.70	13.20	15.70	18.20	5.80	6.40	5.174	5.374	5.520	5.577	5.597	5.622	6.040	5.80	8.30	10.80	13.30	15.80
M6 × 1	15.00	18.00	21.00	24.00	27.00	10.00	13.00	16.00	19.00	22.00	7.10	7.70	6.217	6.407	6.650	6.719	6.742	6.774	7.300	7.00	10.00	13.00	16.00	19.00
M7 × 1	16.50	20.00	23.50	27.00	30.50	11.00	14.50	18.00	21.50	25.00	8.10	8.70	7.217	7.407	7.650	7.719	7.742	7.774	8.300	8.00	11.50	15.00	18.50	22.00
M8 × 1	18.00	22.00	26.00	30.00	34.00	12.00	16.00	28.00	20.00	24.00	0.10	9.70	8.217	8.407	8.650	8.719	8.742	8.774	9.300	9.00	13.00	17.00	21.00	25.00
M8 × 1.25	19.50	23.60	27.50	31.50	35.50	13.00	17.00	29.00	21.00	25.00	9.50	10.10	8.271	8.483	8.812	8.886	8.911	8.946	9.624	9.26	13.25	17.26	21.25	25.25
M10 × 1	16.00	21.00	26.00	31.00	36.00	14.00	19.00	34.00	24.00	29.00	11.10	11.70	10.217	10.407	10.650	10.719	10.742	10.774	11.300	11.00	16.00	21.00	26.00	31.00
M30 × 1.25	17.50	22.60	27.50	32.50	37.50	15.00	20.00	35.00	25.00	30.00	11.50	12.10	10.271	10.483	10.812	10.886	10.911	10.946	11.624	11.26	16.25	21.26	26.25	31.25
M10 × 1.5	19.00	24.00	29.00	34.00	39.00	16.00	21.00	38.00	26.00	31.00	11.80	12.40	10.324	10.580	10.974	11.061	11.089	11.129	11.948	11.50	16.50	21.50	26.50	31.50
M12 × 1.25	19.50	25.50	31.50	37.50	43.50	17.00	23.00	29.00	35.00	41.00	13.50	14.10	12.271	12.483	12.812	12.896	12.926	12.966	13.624	13.25	19.25	25.25	31.25	37.25
M12 × 1.5	21.00	27.00	33.00	39.00	45.00	18.00	24.00	30.00	36.00	42.00	13.00	14.40	12.324	12.560	12.974	13.067	13.099	13.139	13.948	13.50	19.50	25.50	31.50	37.60
M12 × 1.75	22.50	28.50	34.50	40.50	48.50	19.00	25.00	31.00	37.00	43.00	14.20	14.80	12.379	12.644	13.137	13.236	13.271	13.311	14.274	13.75	19.75	25.75	31.75	37.75
M14 × 1.5	23.00	30.00	37.00	44.00	51.00	20.00	27.00	34.00	41.00	48.00	15.80	16.40	14.324	14.560	14.974	15.067	15.099	15.139	15.940	15.50	22.50	29.50	38.50	43.50
M14 × 2	26.00	33.00	40.00	47.00	54.00	22.00	29.00	36.00	43.00	50.00	16.50	17.10	14.433	14.733	15.299	15.406	15.444	15.486	16.958	16.00	23.00	30.00	37.00	44.00
M16 × 1.5	25.00	33.00	41.00	49.00	57.00	22.00	30.00	38.00	46.00	50.00	17.80	18.40	16.324	16.560	16.974	17.067	17.099	17.139	17.948	17.50	25.50	33.50	41.50	49.50
M16 × 2	28.00	36.00	44.00	52.00	60.00	24.00	32.00	40.00	48.00	56.00	18.50	19.10	16.433	16.733	17.299	17.406	17.444	17.486	18.598	18.00	26.00	34.00	42.00	50.00
M18 × 1.5	27.00	36.00	45.00	54.00	63.00	24.00	33.00	42.00	51.00	60.00	19.80	20.40	18.324	18.560	18.974	19.067	19.099	19.139	19.948	19.50	28.50	37.50	46.50	55.50
M18 × 2	30.00	39.00	48.00	57.00	66.00	26.00	35.00	44.00	53.00	62.00	20.50	21.10	18.433	18.733	19.299	19.406	19.444	19.486	20.598	20.00	29.00	38.00	47.00	56.00
M18 × 2.5	33.00	42.00	51.00	60.00	69.00	28.00	37.00	46.00	55.00	64.00	21.20	21.80	18.541	18.896	19.624	19.738	19.778	19.822	21.248	20.50	29.50	38.50	47.50	56.50
M20 × 1.5	29.00	39.00	49.00	59.00	69.00	26.00	36.00	46.00	56.00	66.00	21.80	22.40	20.324	20.560	20.974	21.067	21.099	21.139	21.940	21.50	31.50	41.50	51.50	61.50
M20 × 2	32.00	42.00	52.00	62.00	72.00	28.00	38.00	48.00	58.00	68.00	22.50	23.10	20.433	20.733	21.299	21.406	21.444	21.486	22.598	22.00	32.00	42.00	52.00	62.00
M20 × 2.5	35.00	45.00	55.00	65.00	75.00	30.00	40.00	50.00	60.00	70.00	23.20	23.80	20.541	20.896	21.624	21.738	21.778	21.822	23.248	22.50	32.50	42.50	52.50	62.50
M22 × 1.5	31.00	42.00	53.00	64.00	75.00	28.00	39.00	50.00	61.00	72.00	23.80	24.40	22.324	22.560	22.974	23.067	23.099	23.139	23.948	23.50	34.50	45.50	56.50	67.50
M22 × 2	34.00	45.00	56.00	67.00	78.00	30.00	41.00	52.00	63.00	74.00	24.50	25.10	22.433	22.733	23.299	23.406	23.444	23.486	24.598	24.00	35.00	46.00	57.00	68.00
M22 × 2.5	37.00	48.00	59.00	70.00	81.00	32.00	43.00	54.00	65.00	76.00	25.20	25.80	22.541	22.896	23.624	23.738	23.778	23.822	25.248	24.50	35.50	46.50	57.50	68.50
M24 × 2	38.00	48.00	60.00	72.00	84.00	32.00	44.00	56.00	68.00	80.00	26.50	27.10	24.433	24.733	25.299	25.414	15.454	25.498	26.598	26.00	38.00	50.00	62.00	74.00
M24 × 3	42.00	54.00	66.00	78.00	90.00	36.00	48.00	60.00	72.00	84.00	27.90	28.50	24.649	25.049	25.948	26.093	26.135	26.188	27.897	27.00	39.00	51.00	63.00	75.00
M27 × 2	39.00	52.50	66.00	79.50	93.00	35.00	48.50	62.00	75.50	89.00	29.50	30.10	27.433	27.733	28.299	28.414	28.454	28.498	29.598	29.00	42.50	58.00	69.50	83.00

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Screw Thread Insert Threaded Hole Data** *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	Minimum Drilling Depth for Each Insert Length, *G*										Countersink Diameter, *M* (120°±5° included angle)		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter				Min. Major Diam.	Minimum Tapping Depth, *T*				
	Plug Taps					Bottoming Taps														Insert Length				
	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	4H Max.	5H Max.	6H Max.	All Classes	1*D*	1.5*D*	2*D*	2.5*D*	3*D*
M27×3	45.00	68.50	72.00	85.50	99.00	39.00	52.50	66.00	79.50	93.00	30.90	31.50	27.649	28.049	28.948	29.093	29.135	29.188	30.897	30.00	43.50	57.00	70.50	84.00
M30×2	42.00	67.00	72.00	87.00	102.00	38.00	53.00	68.00	83.00	98.00	32.50	33.10	30.433	30.733	31.299	31.414	31.454	31.489	32.598	32.00	47.00	62.00	77.00	92.00
M30×3	48.00	63.00	78.00	93.00	108.00	42.00	57.00	72.00	87.00	102.00	33.90	34.50	30.649	31.049	31.948	32.093	32.136	32.188	33.897	33.00	48.00	63.00	78.00	93.00
M30×3.5	51.00	66.00	81.00	96.00	111.00	44.00	59.00	74.00	89.00	104.00	34.60	35.20	30.767	31.207	32.273	32.428	32.472	32.628	34.546	33.50	48.50	63.50	78.50	93.50
M33×2	45.00	61.60	78.00	94.50	111.00	41.00	57.50	74.00	90.50	107.00	35.50	36.10	33.433	33.733	34.299	34.414	34.454	34.498	35.598	35.00	51.50	68.00	84.50	101.00
M33×3	51.00	67.60	84.00	104.50	117.00	45.00	61.50	78.00	94.50	111.00	36.90	37.50	33.649	34.049	34.948	35.093	35.135	36.188	36.897	36.00	52.50	69.00	85.50	102.00
M36×2	48.00	66.00	84.00	102.00	120.00	44.00	62.00	80.00	98.00	116.00	38.50	39.10	36.433	36.733	37.299	37.414	37.464	37.498	38.598	38.00	58.00	74.00	92.00	110.00
M36×3	54.00	72.00	90.00	108.00	126.00	48.00	66.00	84.00	102.00	120.00	39.90	40.50	36.649	37.049	37.948	38.093	38.135	38.188	39.897	39.00	57.00	75.00	93.00	111.00
M36×4	60.00	78.00	96.00	114.00	132.00	52.00	70.00	88.00	106.00	124.00	41.30	41.90	36.866	37.341	28.598	38.763	38.809	38.873	41.196	40.00	58.00	76.00	94.00	112.00
M39×2	51.00	70.50	90.00	109.50	129.00	47.00	66.50	88.00	105.50	125.00	41.50	42.10	39.433	39.733	40.299	40.414	40.454	40.498	41.598	41.00	60.50	80.00	99.50	119.00
M39×3	57.00	76.50	96.00	115.50	135.00	51.00	70.50	90.00	109.50	129.00	42.90	43.50	39.649	40.049	40.948	41.093	41.136	41.188	42.897	42.00	61.50	81.00	100.50	120.00

Notes:

(1) The minimum drilling depths allow for

a) countersinking the drilled hole to prevent a feather edge at the start of the tapped hole.

b) 0.75 to 1.5 pitch of insert set-down to allow for maximum production tolerance.

c) Dimensions are shown for both plug and bottoming taps. Plug taps 8 mm and smaller have a male center, and the drilled hole depth dimensions allow for this length (one-half of the diameter of the bolt). Calculation of minimum drilling depth dimension *G* is as follows:

Plug taps 8 mm and smaller, *G* = insert nominal length + 0.5 × nominal bolt diameter + 4 pitchs for tap chamfer + 1 pitch for tap end clearance + 1 pitch allowance for countersink and maximum insert set-down.

Plug taps larger than 8 mm, *G* = insert nominal length + 4 pitchs for tap chamfer + 1 pitch for tap end clearance + 1 pitch allowance for countersink and maximum insert set-down.

Bottoming taps, *G* = insert nominal length + 2 pitchs for tap chamfer + 1 pitch for tap end clearance + 1 pitch allowance for countersink and maximum insert set-down.

(2) The minimum tapping depth (dimension *T*) is the minimum for countersink holes with insert set-down of 1.5 pitch maximum (See Fig. 1). The dimension *T* = insert nominal length + 1 pitch.

(3) Thread diameters are calculated as follows:

$$\text{Pitch diameter, min.} = \text{Pitch diameter, min. of nominal thread} + 2 \times H_{max}$$

$$\text{Pitch diameter, max.} = \text{Pitch diameter, max. of nominal thread} + 2 \times H_{min}$$

$$\text{Major diameter, min.} = \text{Pitch diameter, min.} + 0.649519 \times P$$

$$\text{Minor diameter, min.} = \text{Pitch diameter min.} - 0.433013 \times P$$

$$\text{Minor diameter, max.} = \text{Minor diameter min.} + \text{tolerance}$$

where H_{max} and H_{min} are from Table 14, and tolerance is selected from the appropriate table in ANSI/ASME B1.13M with basic major diameter equal to the minimum major diameter of the STI thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

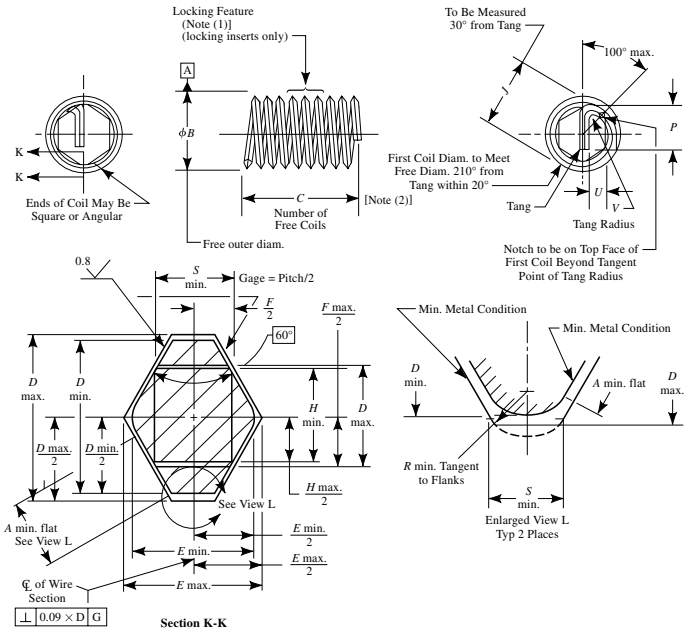


Fig. 2. Insert Configuration

General Notes for Fig. 2*:*

(a) Assembled length of insert to be measured from notch.

(b) Dimensions apply before supplementary coating (see Table 3 and Table 4).

(c) Surface texture; symbols per ASME Y14.35, requirements per ANSI/ASME B46.1.

(d) Dimensions and tolerancing; ASME Y14.5.

Notes:

(1) Number of locking coils, spacing of locking coils, number of locking deformations, shape and orientation optional locking feature for 1, 1.5, and 2 diam. length inserts symmetrically positioned about the center of insert, and for 2.5 and 3 diam. length inserts at 1 diam. from tang end of insert.

(2) Number of free coils to be counted from notch.

Inspection and Quality Assurance

The inspection of inserts shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18, with inspection level 3 for the 15 cycle torque test.

Inspection (Nondestructive).—Inserts shall be visually examined for conformance with drawings and workmanship requirements in accordance with ANSI/ASME B18.18.

Threads: The inserts, when assembled in STI threaded holes conforming to Table 1, shall form threads conforming to ANSI/ASME B1.13M tolerance class 4H5H or 5H except for the locking feature of screw-locking inserts. The assembled insert, both types, shall accept and function with parts having external MJ threads per ANSI/ASME B1.21M.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Screw Thread Insert Chemical Composition
ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)

Element	Analysis, %	Check Analysis	
		Under, Min.	Over, Max.
Carbon	0.15 max.	…	0.01
Manganese	2.00 max.	…	0.04
Silicon	1.00 max.	…	0.05
Phosphorous	0.045 max.	…	0.01
Sulphur	0.035 max.	…	0.005
Chromium	17.00 to 20.00	0.20	0.20
Nickel	8.00 to 10.50	0.15	0.15
Molybdenum	0.75 max.	…	0.05
Copper	0.75 max.	…	0.05
Iron	Remainder	…	…

The accuracy of the finished thread when the insert is installed depends on the accuracy of the tapped hole. If the finished tapped hole gages satisfactorily, the installed insert will be within the thread tolerance when the insert meets the requirements of the Standard. It is, therefore, not necessary to gage the installed insert. After the insert is installed, the GO thread plug gage may not enter freely because the insert may not have been fully seated in the tapped hole. However, the insert should become seated after a bolt or screw is installed and tightened.

Tang Removal Notch: The tang removal notch shall be located as shown in Fig. 2 and of such depth that the part may be installed without failure of the tang and that the tang may be removed, after assembly, without affecting the function of the installed insert.

Torque Test Bolts: Assembled screw-locking inserts shall be torque tested with bolts in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.13M or ANSI/ASME B1.21M, cadmium plated, or having other coating with a similar coefficient of friction and hardness of 36 to 44 RC (Rockwell C scale). The bolts selected for this test shall be of sufficient length so the thread runout does not enter the insert and that a minimum of one full thread extends past the end of the insert when the bolt is fully seated. Acceptability of bolt threads shall be determined based on System 22 of ANSI/ASME B1.3.

Until a replacement for cadmium plating on the torque test bolts is found, and test data completed, an alternate coating/lubricant can be used to perform the torque test.

Self-Locking Torque (Destructive).—The screw-locking insert, when assembled in threaded holes conforming to Table 1 and tested in accordance with the following paragraphs, shall provide a frictional lock to retain the bolt threads within the torque limits specified in Table 5.

Torque Test Block and Spacer: The insert to be tested shall be installed in a tolerance class 4H5H or 4H6H threaded hole conforming to Table 1 in a test block made from 2024-T4 (SAE AMS4120 or ASTM B209M) aluminum alloy. After installation, the tang shall be removed. The surface of the test block from which the insert is assembled shall be marked "TOP" and shall be marked to indicate the radial location where the assembled insert begins. A steel spacer meeting the requirements of Fig. 3 and Table 6 shall be used for developing the bolt load.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Screw Thread Insert Length Data *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	1 × Diam.				1½ × Diam.				2 × Diam.				2 ½ × Diam.				3 × Diam.			
	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*
		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)
M2 × 0.4	2.00	1.80	1.70	3.250	3.00	2.80	2.70	5.500	4.00	3.80	3.70	7.750	5.00	4.80	4.70	10.125	6.00	5.80	5.70	12.375
M2.5 × 0.45	2.50	2.28	2.16	3.575	3.80	3.52	3.41	5.750	5.00	4.78	4.66	8.125	6.30	6.02	5.91	10.500	7.50	7.28	7.16	12.750
M3 × 0.5	3.00	2.75	2.62	3.750	4.50	4.25	4.12	6.375	6.00	5.75	5.62	8.875	7.50	7.25	7.12	11.375	9.00	8.75	8.62	13.875
M3.5 × 0.6	3.50	3.20	3.05	3.750	5.30	5.00	4.80	6.375	7.00	6.70	6.55	8.750	8.80	8.50	8.30	11.375	10.50	10.20	10.05	13.750
M4 × 0.7	4.00	3.65	3.47	3.625	6.00	5.65	5.47	6.125	8.00	7.65	7.47	8.625	10.00	9.65	9.47	11.125	12.00	11.65	11.47	13.625
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.60	4.40	4.125	7.50	7.10	6.90	6.875	10.00	9.60	9.40	9.625	12.50	12.10	11.90	12.375	15.00	14.60	14.40	15.125
M6 × 1	6.00	5.50	5.25	4.000	9.00	8.50	8.25	6.750	12.00	11.50	11.25	9.500	15.00	14.50	14.25	12.125	18.00	17.50	17.25	14.875
M7 × 1	7.00	6.50	6.25	4.875	10.50	10.00	9.75	8.000	14.00	13.50	13.25	11.125	17.50	17.00	16.75	14.125	21.00	20.50	20.25	17.250
M8 × 1	8.00	7.50	7.25	5.875	12.00	11.50	11.25	9.375	16.00	15.50	15.25	13.000	20.00	19.50	19.25	16.500	24.00	23.50	23.25	20.125
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.38	7.06	4.500	12.00	11.38	11.06	7.375	16.00	15.38	15.06	10.250	20.00	19.38	19.06	13.250	24.00	23.38	23.06	16.125
M10 × 1	10.00	9.50	9.25	7.625	15.00	14.50	14.25	12.000	20.00	19.50	19.25	16.500	25.00	24.50	24.25	21.000	30.00	29.50	29.25	25.500
M10 × 1.25	10.00	9.38	9.06	5.875	15.00	14.38	14.06	9.500	20.00	19.38	19.06	13.125	25.00	24.38	24.06	16.750	30.00	29.38	29.06	20.375
M10 × 1.5	10.00	9.25	8.87	4.875	15.00	14.25	13.87	8.000	20.00	19.25	18.87	11.125	25.00	24.25	23.87	14.250	30.00	29.25	28.87	17.375
M12 × 1.25	12.00	11.38	11.06	7.250	18.00	17.38	17.06	11.625	24.00	23.38	23.06	15.875	30.00	29.38	29.06	20.250	36.00	35.38	35.06	24.500
M12 × 1.5	12.00	11.25	10.87	6.000	18.00	17.25	16.87	9.625	24.00	23.25	22.87	13.375	30.00	29.25	28.87	17.000	36.00	35.25	34.87	20.750
M12 × 1.75	12.00	11.12	10.68	5.000	18.00	17.12	16.68	8.250	24.00	23.12	22.68	11.500	30.00	29.12	28.68	14.625	36.00	35.12	34.68	17.875
M14 × 1.5	14.00	13.25	12.87	7.125	21.00	20.25	19.87	11.375	28.00	27.25	26.87	15.625	35.00	4.25	33.87	20.000	42.00	41.25	40.87	24.250
M14 × 2	14.00	13.00	12.50	5.125	21.00	20.00	19.50	8.500	28.00	27.00	26.50	11.750	35.00	34.00	33.50	15.000	42.00	41.00	40.50	18.375
M16 × 1.5	16.00	15.25	14.87	8.250	24.00	23.25	22.87	13.125	32.00	31.25	30.87	18.000	40.00	39.25	38.87	22.750	48.00	47.25	46.87	27.625
M16 × 2	16.00	15.00	14.50	6.125	24.00	23.00	22.50	9.750	32.00	31.00	30.50	13.500	40.00	39.00	38.50	17.250	48.00	47.00	46.50	21.000
M18 × 1.5	18.00	17.25	16.87	9.500	27.00	26.25	25.87	15.000	36.00	35.25	34.87	20.375	45.00	44.25	43.87	25.875	54.00	53.25	52.87	31.375
M18 × 2	18.00	17.00	16.50	7.000	27.00	26.00	25.50	11.125	36.00	35.00	34.50	15.375	45.00	44.00	43.50	19.500	54.00	53.00	52.50	23.625

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Screw Thread Insert Length Data** *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	1 × Diam.				1½ × Diam.				2 × Diam.				2 ½ × Diam.				3 × Diam.			
	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*	Nominal	Assembled		*C*
		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)		Max.	Min.	(Ref.)
M18 × 2.5	18.00	16.75	16.12	5.375	27.00	25.75	25.12	8.875	36.00	34.75	34.12	12.250	45.00	43.75	43.12	15.625	54.00	52.75	52.12	19.000
M20 × 1.5	20.00	19.25	18.87	10.750	30.00	29.25	28.87	16.875	40.00	39.25	38.87	22.875	50.00	49.25	48.87	28.875	60.00	59.25	58.87	35.000
M20 × 2	20.00	19.00	18.50	7.875	30.00	29.00	28.50	12.500	40.00	39.00	38.50	17.250	50.00	49.00	48.50	21.875	60.00	59.00	58.50	26.500
M20 × 2.5	20.00	18.75	18.12	6.125	30.00	28.75	28.12	9.875	40.00	38.75	38.12	13.625	50.00	48.75	48.12	17.375	60.00	58.75	58.12	21.125
M22 × 1.5	22.00	21.25	20.87	11.875	33.00	32.25	31.87	18.500	44.00	43.25	42.87	25.125	55.00	54.25	53.87	31.625	66.00	65.25	64.87	38.250
M22 × 2	22.00	21.00	20.50	8.750	33.00	32.00	31.50	13.750	44.00	43.00	42.50	18.875	55.00	54.00	53.50	23.875	66.00	65.00	64.50	29.000
M22 × 2.5	22.00	20.75	20.12	6.750	33.00	31.75	31.12	10.875	44.00	42.75	42.12	14.875	55.00	53.75	53.12	19.000	66.00	64.75	64.12	23.125
M24 × 2	24.00	23.00	22.50	9.500	36.00	35.00	34.50	15.000	48.00	47.00	16.50	20.375	60.00	59.00	58.50	25.875	72.00	71.00	70.50	31.250
M24 × 3	24.00	22.50	21.75	6.125	36.00	34.50	33.75	10.000	48.00	46.50	45.75	13.750	60.00	58.50	57.75	17.500	72.00	70.50	69.75	21.375
M27 × 2	27.00	26.00	25.50	10.875	40.50	39.50	39.00	17.000	54.00	53.00	52.50	23.250	67.50	66.50	66.00	29.375	81.00	80.00	79.50	35.500
M27 × 3	27.00	25.50	24.75	7.000	40.50	39.00	38.25	11.250	54.00	52.50	51.75	15.500	67.50	66.50	65.25	19.750	81.00	79.50	78.75	24.000
M30 × 2	30.00	29.00	28.50	12.250	45.00	44.00	43.50	19.125	60.00	59.00	58.50	25.875	75.00	74.00	73.50	32.750	90.00	89.00	88.50	39.500
M30 × 3	30.00	28.50	27.75	7.875	45.00	43.50	42.75	12.500	60.00	58.50	57.75	17.125	75.00	73.50	72.75	21.875	90.00	88.50	87.75	26.500
M30 × 3.5	30.00	28.25	27.37	6.750	45.00	43.25	42.37	10.750	60.00	58.25	57.37	14.875	75.00	73.25	72.37	18.875	90.00	88.25	87.37	23.000
M33 × 2	33.00	32.00	31.50	13.625	49.50	48.50	48.00	21.125	66.00	65.00	64.50	28.625	82.50	81.50	81.00	35.000	99.00	98.00	97.50	43.500
M33 × 3	33.00	32.50	30.75	8.750	49.50	48.00	47.25	13.875	66.00	64.50	63.75	19.000	82.50	81.00	80.25	24.125	99.00	97.50	96.75	29.250
M36 × 2	36.00	35.00	34.50	15.000	54.00	53.00	52.50	23.250	72.00	71.00	70.50	31.375	90.00	89.00	88.50	39.500	108.00	107.00	106.50	47.750
M36 × 3	36.00	34.50	33.75	9.750	54.00	52.50	51.75	15.250	72.00	70.50	69.75	20.875	90.00	88.50	87.75	26.500	108.00	106.50	105.75	32.000
M36 × 4	36.00	34.00	33.00	7.125	54.00	52.00	51.00	11.375	72.00	70.00	69.00	15.625	90.00	88.00	87.00	19.875	108.00	106.00	105.00	24.250
M39 × 2	39.00	38.00	37.50	16.375	58.50	57.50	57.00	25.250	78.00	77.00	76.50	34.125	97.50	96.50	96.00	43.000	117.00	116.00	115.50	51.875
M39 × 3	39.00	37.50	36.75	10.750	58.50	57.00	56.25	15.750	78.00	76.50	75.75	22.750	97.50	96.00	95.25	28.875	117.00	115.50	114.75	34.875

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Screw Thread Insert Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	*A*, Min.	*B*		*D*		*E*		Gage, *F*	*H*		*J*		*P*		*R*, Min.	*S*, Min.	*U*		*V*, Max.
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.	
M2 × 0.4	0.074	2.50	2.70	0.389	0.433	0.274	0.350	0.200	0.2495	0.2600	2.50	2.70	1.30	1.90	0.072	0.125	0.66	0.37	0.22
M2.5 × 0.45	0.082	3.20	3.70	0.437	0.487	0.318	0.394	0.225	0.2820	0.2920	3.05	3.65	1.60	2.25	0.081	0.141	1.22	0.81	0.30
M3 × 0.5	0.105	3.80	4.35	0.482	0.541	0.352	0.438	0.250	0.3145	0.3250	3.60	4.30	1.95	2.80	0.090	0.156	1.33	0'.56	0.30
M3.5 × 0.6	1.160	4.40	4.95	0.586	0.650	0.449	0.525	0.300	0.3795	0.3900	4.25	4.90	2.20	3.00	0.108	0.158	1.47	0.92	0.30
M4 × 0.7	0.163	5.05	5.60	0.683	0.758	0.510	0.612	0.350	0.4445	0.4550	4.90	5.55	2.50	3.55	0.126	0.219	1.67	1.02	0.45
M5 × 0.8	0.209	6.25	6.80	0.775	0.866	0.598	0.700	0.400	0.5085	0.5200	6.10	6.75	3.15	4.55	0.144	0.250	2.09	1.41	0.60
M6 × 1	0.267	7.40	7.95	0.975	1.083	0.748	0.875	0.500	0.6370	0.6500	7.25	7.90	3.70	4.85	0.180	0.312	2.55	1.65	0.60
M7 × 1	0.267	8.65	9.20	0.975	1.083	0.748	0.875	0.500	0.6370	0.6500	8.40	9.15	4.30	5.50	0.180	0.312	3.10	2.09	0.75
M8 × 1	0.267	9.70	10.25	0.975	1.083	0.748	0.875	0.500	0.6370	0.6500	9.20	9.65	4.75	6.50	0.180	0.312	3.58	2.27	0.75
M8 × 1.25	0.415	9.80	10.35	1.251	1.353	0.967	1.094	0.625	0.7990	0.8120	9.50	9.90	4.75	6.50	0.226	0.391	3.60	2.02	0.75
M10 × 1	0.267	11.95	12.50	0.975	1.083	0.748	0.875	0.500	0.6370	0.6500	11.10	11.55	5.50	8.00	0.180	0.312	4.90	2.95	0.75
M10 × 1.25	0.415	12.10	12.65	1.251	1.353	0.967	1.094	0.625	0.7990	0.8120	11.50	11.95	5.50	8.00	0.226	0.391	4.77	2.56	0.75
M10 × 1.5	0.511	11.95	12.50	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	11.80	12.25	5.50	8.00	0.271	0.469	4.54	2.56	0.75
M12 × 1.25	0.415	14.30	15.00	1.251	1.353	0.967	1.094	0.625	0.7990	0.8120	13.50	14.00	6.70	9.75	0.226	0.391	5.84	3.77	1.00
M12 × 1.5	0.511	14.25	14.95	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	13.80	14.30	6.70	9.75	0.271	0.469	5.58	3.50	1.20
M12 × 1.75	0.654	14.30	15.00	1.792	1.894	1.379	1.531	0.875	1.1240	1.1370	14.10	14.60	6.70	9.75	0.316	0.547	5.36	3.23	1.40
M14 × 1.5	0.511	16.55	17.25	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	15.80	16.30	7.20	11.25	0.271	0.469	6.76	4.34	1.15
M14 × 2	0.799	16.65	17.35	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	16.40	16.90	7.20	11.25	0.361	0.625	6.26	3.79	1.40
M16 × 1.5	0.511	18.90	19.60	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	17.80	18.30	8.30	12.75	0.271	0.469	7.78	5.32	1.45
M16 × 2	0.799	18.90	19.60	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	18.40	18.90	8.30	12.75	0.361	0.625	7.30	4.76	2.70
M18 × 1.5	0.511	21.05	21.75	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	19.80	20.35	9.30	14.00	0.271	0.469	8.83	6.26	1.75
M18 × 2	0.799	21.15	21.85	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	20.40	20.95	9.30	14.00	0.361	0.625	8.30	5.74	2.70

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Screw Thread Insert Dimensions** *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	*A*, Min.	*B*		*D*		*E*		Gage, *F*	*H*		*J*		*P*		*R*, Min.	*S*, Min.	*U*		*V*, Max.
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.	
M18 × 2.5	1.017	21.30	22.00	2.604	2.706	1.998	2.188	1.250	1.6110	1.6240	20.90	21.45	9.30	14.00	0.451	0.781	7.79	5.20	2.85
M20 × 1.5	0.511	23.15	24.00	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	21.80	22.50	10.40	14.50	0.271	0.469	9.77	7.19	2.85
M20 × 2	0.799	23.20	24.05	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	22.40	23.10	10.40	14.50	0.361	0.625	9.40	6.65	2.85
M20 × 2.5	1.017	23.55	24.40	2.604	2.706	1.998	2.188	1.250	1.6110	1.6240	22.90	23.60	10.40	14.50	0.451	0.781	8.89	6.11	2.85
M20 × 1.5	0.511	23.15	24.00	1.522	1.624	1.160	1.312	0.750	0.9615	0.9740	24.10	24.80	11.40	16.00	0.271	0.469	11.10	8.01	2.85
M22 × 2	0.799	25.60	26.50	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	24.40	25.10	11.40	16.00	0.361	0.625	10.45	7.61	2.85
M22 × 2.5	1.017	25.90	26.90	2.604	2.706	1.998	2.188	1.250	1.6110	1.6240	24.90	25.60	11.40	16.00	0.451	0.781	9.94	7.07	2.85
M24 × 2	0.799	28.10	29.10	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	26.40	27.10	12.50	16.50	0.361	0.625	11.48	8.60	2.85
M24 × 3	1.234	28.00	29.00	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	27.50	28.20	12.50	16.50	0.541	0.938	10.45	7.51	2.85
M27 × 2	0.799	31.30	32.30	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	29.40	30.10	14.00	17.50	0.361	0.625	13.14	9.93	2.85
M27 × 3	1.234	31.40	32.40	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	30.50	31.20	14.00	17.50	0.541	0.938	12.13	8.85	2.85
M30 × 2	0.799	34.50	35.70	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	32.50	33.20	15.00	19.00	0.361	0.625	14.81	11.26	2.85
M30 × 3	1.234	34.90	36.10	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	33.50	34.20	15.00	19.00	0.541	0.938	13.65	10.32	2.85
M30 × 3.5	1.451	34.90	36.10	3.687	3.789	2.833	3.062	1.750	2.2605	2.2750	34.10	34.60	15.00	19.00	0.631	1.094	13.13	9.65	2.85
M33 × 2	0.799	37.80	39.20	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	35.80	36.50	17.00	21.00	0.361	0.625	16.35	12.74	2.85
M33 × 3	1.234	38.10	39.50	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	36.50	37.20	17.00	21.00	0.541	0.938	15.19	11.78	2.85
M36 × 2	0.799	41.00	42.40	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	39.00	39.70	18.50	22.50	0.361	0.625	17.77	14.29	2.85
M36 × 3	1.234	41.30	42.70	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	39.50	40.20	18.50	22.50	0.541	0.938	16.73	13.23	2.85
M36 × 4	1.688	41.50	42.90	4.228	4.330	3.271	3.500	2.000	2.5855	2.5980	40.60	41.10	18.50	22.50	0.722	1.250	15.57	12.12	2.85
M39 × 2	0.799	44.30	45.70	2.063	2.165	1.598	1.750	1.000	1.2865	1.2990	42.30	43.00	20.00	24.00	0.361	0.625	19.28	15.77	2.85
M39 × 3	1.234	44.40	45.80	3.146	3.248	2.396	2.625	1.500	1.9360	1.9485	42.50	43.20	20.00	24.00	0.541	0.938	18.28	14.68	2.85

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Torque Test Method: The torque test shall consist of a 15-cycle, room temperature test. A new bolt or screw and new tapped hole shall be used for each complete 15-cycle test For each of the 15 cycles, bolts shall be assembled and seated to the assembly torque specified in Table 5. Bolts shall be completely disengaged from the locking coils of the insert at the end of each cycle. The test shall be run at less than 40 rpm to yield a dependable measure of torque and avoid heating of the bolt.

Maximum Locking Torque: Maximum locking torque shall be the highest torque value encountered on any installation or removal cycle and shall not exceed the values specified in Table 5. Maximum locking torque readings shall be taken on the first and seventh installation cycles before the assembly torque is applied and on the 15th removal cycle.

Table 5. Self-Locking Torque *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Nominal Thread Size	Maximum Locking Torque Installation or Removal, N-m	Minimum Breakaway Torque, N-m	Nominal Thread Size	Maximum Locking Torque Installation or Removal, N-m	Minimum Breakaway Torque, N-m
M2 × 0.4	0.12	0.03	M18 × 1.5	42	5.5
M2.5 × 0.45	0.22	0.06	M18 × 2	42	5.5
M3 × 0.5	0.44	0.1	M18 × 2.5	42	5.5
M3.5 × 0.6	0.68	0.12	M20 × 1.5	54	7
M4 × 0.7	0.9	0.16	M20 × 2	54	7
M5 × 0.8	1.6	0.3	M20 × 2.5	54	7
M6 × 1	3	0.4	M22 × 1.5	70	9
M7 × 1	4.4	0.6	M22 × 2	70	9
M8 × 1	6	0.8	M22 × 2.5	70	9
M8 × 1.25	6	0.8	M24 × 2	80	11
M10 × 1	10	1.4	M24 × 3	80	11
M10 × 1.25	10	1.4	M27 × 2	95	12
M10 × 1.5	10	1.4	M27 × 3	95	12
M12 × 1.25	15	2.2	M30 × 2	110	14
M12 × 1.5	15	2.2	M30 × 3	110	14
M12 × 1.75	15	2.2	M30 × 3.5	110	14
M14 × 1.5	23	3	M33 × 2	125	16
M14 × 2	23	3	M33 × 3	125	16
M16 × 1.5	32	4.2	M36 × 2	140	18
M16 × 2	32	4.2	M36 × 3	140	18
…	…	…	M36 × 4	140	18
…	…	…	M39 × 2	150	20
…	…	…	M39 × 3	150	20

Minimum Breakaway Torque: Minimum breakaway torque shall be the torque required to overcome static friction when 100 percent of the locking feature is engaged and the bolt or screw is not seated (no axial load). It shall be recorded at the start of the 15th removal cycle. The torque value for any cycle shall be not less than the applicable value shown in Table 5.

Acceptance: The inserts shall be considered to have failed if, at the completion of any of the tests and inspection, any of the following conditions exist:

a) any break or crack in the insert

b) installation or removal torque exceeds the maximum locking torque value in Table 5

c) breakaway torque less than the values in Table 5

d) movement of the insert beyond 90° relative to the top surface when installing or removing the test bolt

e) seizure or galling of the insert or test bolt

f) tang not broken off, which interferes with the test bolt at installation

g) tang breaks off during insert installation

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Torque Test Spacer Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

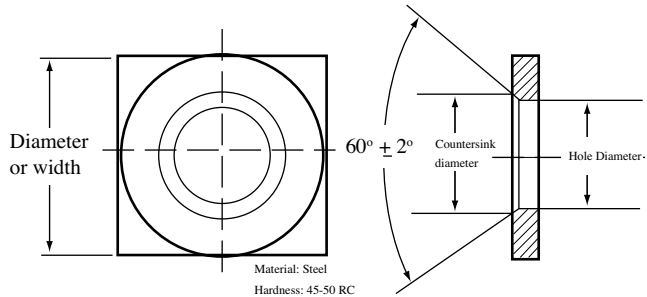


Fig. 3. Torque Test Spacer

Nominal Insert Size	Minimum Diameter or Width	Hole Diameter		Countersink Diameter		Minimum Thickness
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
2	7.0	2.3	2.1	2.7	2.5	1.5
2.5	8.0	2.8	2.6	3.3	3.1	1.5
3	9.0	3.5	3.3	3.8	3.6	2.0
3.5	10.0	4.0	3.8	4.3	4.1	2.0
4	11.0	4.5	4.3	4.9	4.7	3.0
5	12.0	5.5	5.3	5.9	5.7	3.0
6	14.0	6.5	6.3	7.0	6.8	3.5
7	17.0	7.6	7.3	8.4	8.2	3.5
8	19.0	8.6	8.3	9.5	9.2	4.0
10	23.0	10.7	10.4	11.5	11.2	4.0
12	27.0	12.7	12.4	14.5	14.2	4.5
14	31.0	14.8	14.4	16.5	16.2	4.5
16	35.0	16.8	16.4	18.5	18.2	4.5
18	39.0	18.8	18.4	20.7	20.4	4.5
20	43.0	20.8	20.4	22.7	22.4	5.0
22	47.0	22.8	22.4	24.7	24.4	5.0
24	51.0	24.8	24.4	26.7	26.4	5.0
27	56.0	28.3	27.9	29.8	29.4	5.0
30	62.0	31.3	30.9	33.8	33.4	6.0
33	67.0	34.3	33.9	36.8	36.4	6.0
36	72.0	37.3	36.9	39.8	39.4	6.0
39	77.0	40.3	39.9	42.8	42.4	6.0

Insert Length Selection

Engaged Length of Bolt.—Normally, the engaged length of bolt in an insert is determined by strength considerations.

Material Strengths.—The standard engineering practice of balancing the tensile strength of the bolt material against the shear strength of the parent or boss material also applies to helical coil inserts. Table 7 and Table 8 will aid in developing the full load value of the bolt rather than stripping the parent or tapped material.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In using this table, the following factors must be considered:

a) The parent material shear strengths are for room temperature. Elevated temperatures call for significant shear value reductions; compensation should be made when required. Shear values are appropriate because the parent material is subject to shearing stress at the major diameter of the tapped threads.

b) When parent material shear strength falls between two tabulated values, use the lower of the two.

c) Bolt thread length; overall length, insert length, and full tapped thread depth must be adequate to ensure full-thread engagement when assembled to comply with its design function.

Table 7. Insert Length Selection *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Parent Material Shear Strength, MPa	Bolt Property Class						
	4.6	4.8	5.8	8.8	9.8	10.9	12.9
	Insert Length in Terms of Diameters						
70	3	3	3	…	…	…	…
100	2	2	2	3	…	…	…
150	1.5	1.5	1.5	2	2.5	2.5	3
200	1.5	1.5	1.5	2	2	2	2
250	1	1	1	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
300	1	1	1	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
350	1	1	1	1	1	1.5	1.5

Table 8. Hardness Number Conversion *ANSI/ASME B18.29.2M-2005 (R2017)*

Bolt Property Class	Max. Rockwell Hardness	Max. Tensile Strength, MPa	Bolt Property Class	Max. Rockwell Hardness	Max. Tensile Strength, MPa
4.6	95 RB	705	9.8	36 RC	1115
4.8	95 RB	705	10.9	39 RC	1215
5.8	95 RB	705	12.9	44 RC	1435
8.8	34 RC	1055			

Bolt strength upon which insert length recommendations are based is developed by taking the maximum hardness per ASTM F568M *Carbon and Alloy Steel Externally Threaded Metric Fasteners* and the equivalent tensile strength from SAE J417 *Hardness Tests and Hardness Number Conversions*.

Screw Thread Insert Taps.—ANSI/ASME B94.9 covers design and dimensions for taps for producing Metric Series STI-threaded holes required for the installation of helical coil screw thread inserts. Threaded hole dimensions are shown in Table 1 of this standard. Helical coil screw thread insert taps are identified by the designation STI. Various types and styles of STI taps are available. General dimensions and tolerances are in accordance with ANSI/ASME B94.9.

Tap Thread Limits: Ground thread taps are recommended for screw thread inserts. Tap thread limits are in accordance with ANSI/ASME B94.9. Basic pitch diameter used for determining values is the "Pitch Diameter, min." from Table 1.

Marking: Taps are marked in accordance with ANSI/ASME B94.9.

Example: M6 ×1 STI HS G H2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BRITISH FASTENERS

British Standard Square and Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts.—Important dimensions of precision hexagon bolts, screws and nuts (BSW and BSF threads) as covered by British Standard 1083:1965 are given in Table 1 and Table 2. The use of fasteners in this standard will decrease as fasteners having Unified inch and ISO metric threads come into increasing use.

Dimensions of Unified precision hexagon bolts, screws and nuts (UNC and UNF threads) are given in BS 1768:1963 (obsolescent); of Unified black hexagon bolts, screws and nuts (UNC and UNF threads) in BS 1769:1951 (obsolescent); and of Unified black square and hexagon bolts, screws and nuts (UNC and UNF threads) in BS 2708:1956 (withdrawn). Unified nominal and basic dimensions in these British Standards are the same as the comparable dimensions in the American Standards, but the tolerances applied to these basic dimensions may differ because of rounding-off practices and other factors. For Unified dimensions of square and hexagon bolts and nuts as given in ANSI/ASME B18.2.1-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.2.2-2015 see Table 1 through Table 4 starting on page 1672, and Table 7 to Table 10 starting on page 1677.

ISO metric precision hexagon bolts, screws and nuts are specified in the British Standard BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent) (see *British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts* starting on page 1766), and ISO metric black hexagon bolts, screws and nuts are covered by British Standard BS 4190:1967 (obsolescent).

See the section *MACHINE SCREWS AND NUTS* starting on page 1775 for information on British Standard metric, Unified, Whitworth, and BSF machine screws and nuts.

British Standard Screwed Studs.—General purpose screwed studs are covered in British Standard 2693: Part 1:1956. The aim in this standard is to provide for a stud having tolerances which would not render it expensive to manufacture and which could be used in association with standard tapped holes for most purposes. Provision has been made for the use of both Unified Fine threads, Unified Coarse threads, British Standard Fine threads, and British Standard Whitworth threads as shown in the table on page 1761.

Designations: The *metal end* of the stud is the end which is screwed into the component. The *nut end* is the end of the screw of the stud which is not screwed into the component. The *plain portion* of the stud is the unthreaded length.

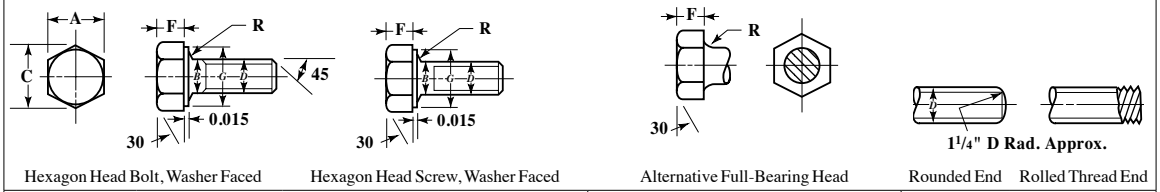
Recommended Fitting Practices for Metal End of Stud: It is recommended that holes tapped to Class 3B limits (see Table 3, page 1951) in accordance with BS 1580 "Unified Screw Threads" or to Close Class limits in accordance with BS 84 "Screw Threads of Whitworth Form" as appropriate, be used in association with the metal end of the stud specified in this standard. Where fits are not critical, however, holes may be tapped to Class 2B limits (see table on page 1951) in accordance with BS 1580 or Normal Class limits in accordance with BS 84.

It is recommended that the B.A. stud specified in this standard be associated with holes tapped to the limits specified for nuts in BS 93, 1919 edition. Where fits for these studs are not critical, holes may be tapped to limits specified for nuts in the current edition of BS 93.

In general, it will be found that the amount of oversize specified for the studs will produce a satisfactory fit in conjunction with the standard tapping as above. Even when interference is not present, locking will take place on the thread runout which has been carefully controlled for this purpose. Where it is considered essential to assure a true interference fit, higher grade studs should be used. It is recommended that standard studs be used even under special conditions where selective assembly may be necessary.

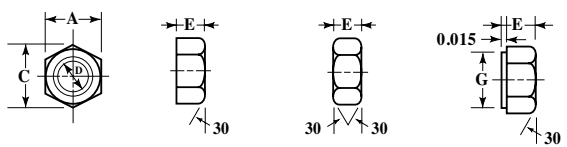
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws, and Nuts

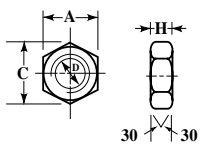


Hexagon Head Bolt, Washer Faced | Hexagon Head Screw, Washer Faced | Alternative Full-Bearing Head | Rounded End | Rolled Thread End

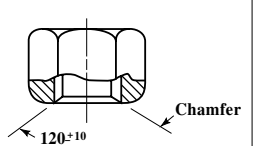
Alternative Hexagon Ordinary Nuts



Hexagon Nut, Full | Ordinary Bearing | Double Chamfered | Washer Faced

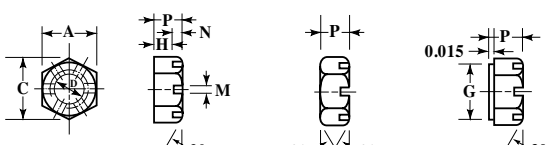


Hexagon Lock-Nut



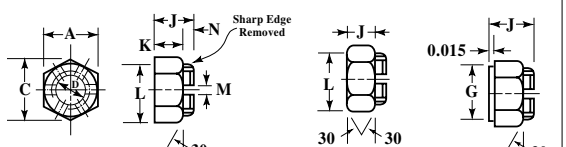
Enlarged View of Nut Countersink

Alternative Hexagon Slotted Nuts



Hexagon Slotted Nut, Full Bearing | Double Chamfered | Washer Faced

Alternate Hexagon Castle Nuts



Hexagon Castle Nut, Full Bearing | Double Chamfered | Washer Faced

For dimensions, see Table 1 and Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Precision Hexagon Slotted and Castle Nuts *BS 1083:1965 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size *D*	Number of Threads per Inch		Bolts, Screws, and Nuts					Bolts and Screws						Nuts			
			Width			Diameter of Washer Face *G*		Radius Under Head *R*		Diameter of Unthreaded Portion of Shank *B*		Thickness		Thickness			
			Across Flats *A*		Across Corners *C*							Head *F*		Ordinary *E*		Lock *H*	
	BSW	BSF	Max.	Min.[a]	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1/4	20	26	0.445	0.438	0.51	0.428	0.418	0.025	0.015	0.2500	0.2465	0.176	0.166	0.200	0.190	0.185	0.180
5/16	18	22	0.525	0.518	0.61	0.508	0.498	0.025	0.015	0.3125	0.3090	0.218	0.208	0.250	0.240	0.210	0.200
3/8	16	20	0.600	0.592	0.69	0.582	0.572	0.025	0.015	0.3750	0.3715	0.260	0.250	0.312	0.302	0.260	0.250
7/16	14	18	0.710	0.702	0.82	0.690	0.680	0.025	0.015	0.4375	0.4335	0.302	0.292	0.375	0.365	0.275	0.265
1/2	12	16	0.820	0.812	0.95	0.800	0.790	0.025	0.015	0.5000	0.4960	0.343	0.333	0.437	0.427	0.300	0.290
9/16	12	16	0.920	0.912	1.06	0.900	0.890	0.045	0.020	0.5625	0.5585	0.375	0.365	0.500	0.490	0.333	0.323
5/8	11	14	1.010	1.000	1.17	0.985	0.975	0.045	0.020	0.6250	0.6190	0.417	0.407	0.562	0.552	0.375	0.365
3/4	10	12	1.200	1.190	1.39	1.175	1.165	0.045	0.020	0.7500	0.7440	0.500	0.480	0.687	0.677	0.458	0.448
7/8	9	11	1.300	1.288	1.50	1.273	1.263	0.065	0.040	0.8750	0.8670	0.583	0.563	0.750	0.740	0.500	0.490
1	8	10	1.480	1.468	1.71	1.453	1.443	0.095	0.060	1.0000	0.9920	0.666	0.636	0.875	0.865	0.583	0.573
1 1/8	7	9	1.670	1.640	1.93	1.620	1.610	0.095	0.060	1.1250	1.1170	0.750	0.710	1.000	0.990	0.666	0.656
1 1/4	7	9	1.860	1.815	2.15	1.795	1.785	0.095	0.060	1.2500	1.2420	0.830	0.790	1.125	1.105	0.750	0.730
1 3/8[b]	…	8	2.050	2.005	2.37	1.985	1.975	0.095	0.060	1.3750	1.3650	0.920	0.880	1.250	1.230	0.833	0.813
1 1/2	6	8	2.220	2.175	2.56	2.155	2.145	0.095	0.060	1.5000	1.4900	1.000	0.960	1.375	1.355	0.916	0.896
1 3/4	5	7	2.580	2.520	2.98	2.495	2.485	0.095	0.060	1.7500	1.7400	1.170	1.110	1.625	1.605	1.083	1.063
2	4.5	7	2.760	2.700	3.19	2.675	2.665	0.095	0.060	2.0000	1.9900	1.330	1.270	1.750	1.730	1.166	1.146

[a] When bolts from 1/4 to 1 inch are hot forged, the tolerance on the width across flats shall be two and a half times the tolerance shown in the table and shall be unilaterally minus from maximum size. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1759.

[b] Noted standard with BSW thread.

All dimensions in inches except where otherwise noted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Precision Hexagon Slotted and Castle Nuts *BS 1083:1965 (obsolescent)*

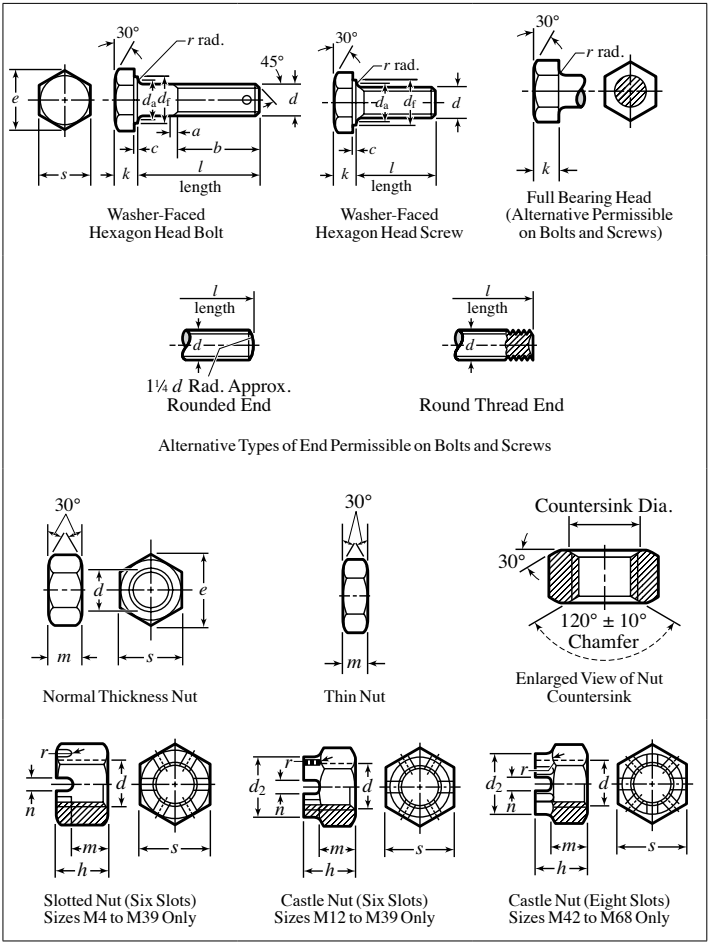
Nominal Size *D*	Number of Threads per Inch		Slotted Nuts				Castle Nuts						Slotted and Castle Nuts		
			Thickness *P*		Lower Face to Bottom of Slot *H*		Total Thickness *J*		Lower Face to Bottom of Slot *K*		Castellated Portion Diameter *L*		Slots Width *M*		Slots Depth *N*
	BSW	BSF	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Approx.
1/4	20	26	0.200	0.190	0.170	0.160	0.290	0.280	0.200	0.190	0.430	0.425	0.100	0.090	0.090
5/16	18	22	0.250	0.240	0.190	0.180	0.340	0.330	0.250	0.240	0.510	0.500	0.100	0.090	0.090
3/8	16	20	0.312	0.302	0.222	0.212	0.402	0.392	0.312	0.302	0.585	0.575	0.100	0.090	0.090
7/16	14	18	0.375	0.365	0.235	0.225	0.515	0.505	0.375	0.365	0.695	0.685	0.135	0.125	0.140
1/2	12	16	0.437	0.427	0.297	0.287	0.577	0.567	0.437	0.427	0.805	0.795	0.135	0.125	0.140
9/16	12	16	0.500	0.490	0.313	0.303	0.687	0.677	0.500	0.490	0.905	0.895	0.175	0.165	0.187
5/8	11	14	0.562	0.552	0.375	0.365	0.749	0.739	0.562	0.552	0.995	0.985	0.175	0.165	0.187
3/4	10	12	0.687	0.677	0.453	0.443	0.921	0.911	0.687	0.677	1.185	1.165	0.218	0.208	0.234
7/8	9	11	0.750	0.740	0.516	0.506	0.984	0.974	0.750	0.740	1.285	1.265	0.218	0.208	0.234
1	8	10	0.875	0.865	0.595	0.585	1.155	1.145	0.875	0.865	1.465	1.445	0.260	0.250	0.280
1 1/8	7	9	1.000	0.990	0.720	0.710	1.280	1.270	1.000	0.990	1.655	1.635	0.260	0.250	0.280
1 1/4	7	9	1.125	1.105	0.797	0.777	1.453	1.433	1.125	1.105	1.845	1.825	0.300	0.290	0.328
1 3/8[a]	…	8	1.250	1.230	0.922	0.902	1.578	1.558	1.250	1.230	2.035	2.015	0.300	0.290	0.328
1 1/2	6	8	1.375	1.355	1.047	1.027	1.703	1.683	1.375	1.355	2.200	2.180	0.300	0.290	0.328
1 3/4	5	7	1.625	1.605	1.250	1.230	2.000	1.980	1.625	1.605	2.555	2.535	0.343	0.333	0.375
2	4.5	7	1.750	1.730	1.282	1.262	2.218	2.198	1.750	1.730	2.735	2.715	0.426	0.416	0.468

[a] Not standard with BSW thread. For widths across flats, widths across corners, and diameter of washer face see Table 1. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1759.

All dimensions in inches except where otherwise noted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts
BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent)



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Bolts and Screws *BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nom.Size and Thread Dia.[a] *d*	Pitch of Thread (Coarse PitchSeries)	Thread Runout *a*	Dia. of Unthreaded Shank *d*		Width Across Flats *s*		Width Across Corners *e*		Dia. of Washer Face d_t		Depth of Washer Face *c*	Transition Dia.[b] d_a	Radius Under Head[b] *r*		Height of Head *k*		Eccentricity of Head	Eccentricity of Shank and Split Pin Hole to the Thread
		Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.
M1.6	0.35	0.8	1.6	1.46	3.2	3.08	3.7	3.48	…	…	…	2.0	0.2	0.1	1.225	0.975	0.18	0.14
M2	0.4	1.0	2.0	1.86	4.0	3.88	4.6	4.38	…	…	…	2.6	0.3	0.1	1.525	1.275	0.18	0.14
M2.5	0.45	1.0	2.5	2.36	5.0	4.88	5.8	5.51	…	…	…	3.1	0.3	0.1	2.125	1.875	0.18	0.14
M3	0.5	1.2	3.0	2.86	5.5	5.38	6.4	6.08	5.08	4.83	0.1	3.6	0.3	0.1	2.125	1.875	0.18	0.14
M4	0.7	1.6	4.0	3.82	7.0	6.85	8.1	7.74	6.55	6.30	0.1	4.7	0.35	0.2	2.925	2.675	0.22	0.18
M5	0.8	2.0	5.0	4.82	8.0	7.85	9.2	8.87	7.55	7.30	0.2	5.7	0.35	0.2	3.650	3.35	0.22	0.18
M6	1	2.5	6.0	5.82	10.0	9.78	11.5	11.05	9.48	9.23	0.3	6.8	0.4	0.25	4.15	3.85	0.22	0.18
M8	1.25	3.0	8.0	7.78	13.0	12.73	15.0	14.38	12.43	12.18	0.4	9.2	0.6	0.4	5.65	5.35	0.27	0.22
M10	1.5	3.5	10.0	9.78	17.0	16.73	19.6	18.90	16.43	16.18	0.4	11.2	0.6	0.4	7.18	6.82	0.27	0.22
M12	1.75	4.0	12.0	11.73	19.0	18.67	21.9	21.10	18.37	18.12	0.4	14.2	1.1	0.6	8.18	7.82	0.33	0.27
(M14)	2	5.0	14.0	13.73	22.0	21.67	25.4	24.49	21.37	21.12	0.4	16.2	1.1	0.6	9.18	8.82	0.33	0.27
M16	2	5.0	16.0	15.73	24.0	23.67	27.7	26.75	23.27	23.02	0.4	18.2	1.1	0.6	10.18	9.82	0.33	0.27
(M18)	2.5	6.0	18.0	17.73	27.0	26.67	31.2	30.14	26.27	26.02	0.4	20.2	1.1	0.6	12.215	11.785	0.33	0.27
M20	2.5	6.0	20.0	19.67	30.0	29.67	34.6	33.53	29.27	28.80	0.4	22.4	1.2	0.8	13.215	12.785	0.33	0.33
(M22)	2.5	6.0	22.0	21.67	32.0	31.61	36.9	35.72	31.21	30.74	0.4	24.4	1.2	0.8	14.215	13.785	0.39	0.33
M24	3	7.0	24.0	23.67	36.0	35.38	41.6	39.98	34.98	34.51	0.5	26.4	1.2	0.8	15.215	14.785	0.39	0.33
(M27)	3	7.0	27.0	26.67	41.0	40.38	47.3	45.63	39.98	39.36	0.5	30.4	1.7	1.0	17.215	16.785	0.39	0.33
M30	3.5	8.0	30.0	29.67	46.0	45.38	53.1	51.28	44.98	44.36	0.5	33.4	1.7	1.0	19.26	18.74	0.39	0.33
(M33)	3.5	8.0	33.0	32.61	50.0	49.38	57.7	55.80	48.98	48.36	0.5	36.4	1.7	1.0	21.26	20.74	0.39	0.39
M36	4	10.0	36.0	35.61	55.0	54.26	63.5	61.31	53.86	53.24	0.5	39.4	1.7	1.0	23.26	22.74	0.46	0.39
(M39)	4	10.0	39.0	38.61	60.0	59.26	69.3	66.96	58.86	58.24	0.6	42.4	1.7	1.0	25.26	24.74	0.46	0.39
M42	4.5	11.0	42.0	41.61	65.0	64.26	75.1	72.61	63.76	63.04	0.6	45.6	1.8	1.2	26.26	25.74	0.46	0.39
(M45)	4.5	11.0	45.0	44.61	70.0	69.26	80.8	78.26	68.76	68.04	0.6	48.6	1.8	1.2	28.26	27.74	0.46	0.39
M48	5	12.0	48.0	47.61	75.0	74.26	86.6	83.91	73.76	73.04	0.6	52.6	2.3	1.6	30.26	29.74	0.46	0.39
(M52)	5	12.0	52.0	51.54	80.0	79.26	92.4	89.56	…	…	…	56.6	2.3	1.6	33.31	32.69	0.46	0.46
M56	5.5	19.0	56.0	55.54	85.0	84.13	98.1	95.07	…	…	…	63.0	3.5	2.0	35.31	34.69	0.54	0.46
(M60)	5.5	19.0	60.0	59.54	90.0	89.13	103.9	100.72	…	…	…	67.0	3.5	2.0	38.31	37.69	0.54	0.46
M64	6	21.0	64.0	63.54	95.0	94.13	109.7	106.37	…	…	…	71.0	3.5	2.0	40.31	39.69	0.54	0.46
(M68)	6	21.0	68.0	67.54	100.0	99.13	115.5	112.02	…	…	…	75.0	3.5	2.0	43.31	42.69	0.54	0.46

[a] Sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.

[b] A true radius is not essential provided that the curve is smooth and lies wholly within the maximum radius, determined from the maximum transitional diameter, and the minimum radius specified.

All dimensions are in millimeters. For illustration of bolts and screws see Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Nuts and Thin Nuts *BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size and Thread Diameter[a] *d*	Pitch of Thread (Coarse Pitch Series)	Width Across Flats *s*		Width Across Corners *e*		Thickness of Normal Nut *m*		Tolerance on Squareness of Thread to Face of Nut[b]	Eccentricity of Hexagon	Thickness of Thin Nut *t*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Min.
M1.6	0.35	3.20	3.08	3.70	3.48	1.30	1.05	0.05	0.14	…	…
M2	0.4	4.00	3.88	4.60	4.38	1.60	1.35	0.06	0.14	…	…
M2.5	0.45	5.00	4.88	5.80	5.51	2.00	1.75	0.08	0.14	…	…
M3	0.5	5.50	5.38	6.40	6.08	2.40	2.15	0.09	0.14	…	…
M4	0.7	7.00	6.85	8.10	7.74	3.20	2.90	0.11	0.18	…	…
M5	0.8	8.00	7.85	9.20	8.87	4.00	3.70	0.13	0.18	…	…
M6	1	10.00	9.78	11.50	11.05	5.00	4.70	0.17	0.18	…	…
M8	1.25	13.00	12.73	15.00	14.38	6.50	6.14	0.22	0.22	5.0	4.70
M10	1.5	17.00	16.73	19.60	18.90	8.00	7.64	0.29	0.22	6.0	5.70
M12	1.75	19.00	18.67	21.90	21.10	10.00	9.64	0.32	0.27	7.0	6.64
(M14)	2	22.00	21.67	25.4	24.49	11.00	10.57	0.37	0.27	8.0	7.64
M16	2	24.00	23.67	27.7	6.75	13.00	12.57	0.41	0.27	8.0	7.64
(M18)	2.5	27.00	26.67	31.20	30.14	15.00	14.57	0.46	0.27	9.0	8.64
M20	2.5	30.00	29.67	34.60	33.53	16.00	15.57	0.51	0.33	9.0	8.64
(M22)	2.5	32.00	31.61	36.90	35.72	18.00	17.57	0.54	0.33	10.0	9.64
M24	3	36.00	35.38	41.60	39.98	19.00	18.48	0.61	0.33	10.0	9.64
(M27)	3	41.00	40.38	47.3	45.63	22.00	21.48	0.70	0.33	12.0	11.57
M30	3.5	46.00	45.38	53.1	51.28	24.00	23.48	0.78	0.33	12.0	11.57
(M33)	3.5	50.00	49.38	57.70	55.80	26.00	25.48	0.85	0.39	14.0	13.57
M36	4	55.00	54.26	63.50	61.31	29.00	28.48	0.94	0.39	14.0	13.57
(M39)	4	60.00	59.26	69.30	66.96	31.00	30.38	1.03	0.39	16.0	15.57
M42	4.5	65.00	64.26	75.10	72.61	34.00	33.38	1.11	0.39	16.0	15.57
(M45)	4.5	70.00	69.26	80.80	78.26	36.00	35.38	1.20	0.39	18.0	17.57
M48	5	75.00	74.26	86.60	83.91	38.00	37.38	1.29	0.39	18.0	17.57
(M52)	5	80.00	79.26	92.40	89.56	42.00	41.38	1.37	0.46	20.0	19.48
M56	5.5	85.00	84.13	98.10	95.07	45.00	44.38	1.46	0.46	…	…
(M60)	5.5	90.00	89.13	103.90	100.72	48.00	47.38	1.55	0.46	…	…
M64	6	95.00	94.13	109.70	106.37	51.00	50.26	1.63	0.46	…	…
(M68)	6	100.00	99.13	115.50	112.02	54.00	53.26	1.72	0.46	…	…

[a] Sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
[b] As measured with the nut squareness gage described in the text and illustrated in Appendix A of the Standard and a feeler gage.
All dimensions are in millimeters. For illustration of hexagon nuts and thin nuts see Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Slotted Nuts and Castle Nuts *BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size and Thread Diameter[a] *d*	Width Across Flats *s*		Width Across Corners *e*		Diameter d_2		Thickness *h*		Lower Face of Nut to Bottom of Slot *m*		Width of Slot *n*		Radius (0.25 *n*) *r*	Eccentricity of the Slots
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.
M4	7.00	6.85	8.10	7.74	…	…	5	4.70	3.2	2.90	1.45	1.2	0.3	0.18
M5	8.00	7.85	9.20	8.87	…	…	6	5.70	4.0	3.70	1.65	1.4	0.35	0.18
M6	10.00	9.78	11.50	11.05	…	…	7.5	7.14	5	4.70	2.25	2	0.5	0.18
M8	13.00	12.73	15.00	14.38	…	…	9.5	9.14	6.5	6.14	2.75	2.5	0.625	0.22
M10	17.00	16.73	19.60	18.90	…	…	12	11.57	8	7.64	3.05	2.8	0.70	0.22
M12	19.00	18.67	21.90	21.10	17	16.57	15	14.57	10	9.64	3.80	3.5	0.875	0.27
(M14)	22.00	21.67	25.4	24.49	19	18.48	16	15.57	11	10.57	3.80	3.5	0.875	0.27
M16	24.00	23.67	27.7	26.75	22	21.48	19	18.48	13	12.57	4.80	4.5	1.125	0.27
(M18)	27.00	26.67	31.20	30.14	25	24.48	21	20.48	15	14.57	4.80	4.5	1.125	0.27
M20	30.00	29.67	34.60	33.53	28	27.48	22	21.48	16	15.57	4.80	4.5	1.125	0.33
(M22)	32.00	31.61	36.90	35.72	30	29.48	26	25.48	18	17.57	5.80	5.5	1.375	0.33
M24	36.00	35.38	41.60	39.98	34	33.38	27	26.48	19	18.48	5.80	5.5	1.375	0.33
(M27)	41.00	40.38	47.3	45.63	38	37.38	30	29.48	22	21.48	5.80	5.5	1.375	0.33
M30	46.00	45.38	53.1	51.28	42	41.38	33	32.38	24	23.48	7.36	7	1.75	0.33
(M33)	50.00	49.38	57.70	55.80	46	45.38	35	34.38	26	25.48	7.36	7	1.75	0.39
M36	55.00	54.26	63.50	61.31	50	49.38	38	37.38	29	28.48	7.36	7	1.75	0.39
(M39)	60.00	59.26	69.30	66.96	55	54.26	40	39.38	31	30.38	7.36	7	1.75	0.39
M42	65.00	64.26	75.10	72.61	58	57.26	46	45.38	34	33.38	9.36	9	2.25	0.39
(M45)	70.00	69.26	80.80	78.26	62	61.26	48	47.38	36	35.38	9.36	9	2.25	0.39
M48	75.00	74.26	86.60	83.91	65	64.26	50	49.38	38	37.38	9.36	9	2.25	0.39
(M52)	80.00	79.26	92.40	89.56	70	69.26	54	53.26	42	41.38	9.36	9	2.25	0.46
M56	85.00	84.13	98.10	95.07	75	74.26	57	56.26	45	44.38	9.36	9	2.25	0.46
(M60)	90.00	89.13	103.90	100.72	80	79.26	63	62.26	48	47.38	11.43	11	2.75	0.46
M64	95.00	94.13	109.70	106.37	85	84.13	66	65.26	51	50.26	11.43	11	2.75	0.46
(M68)	100.00	99.13	115.50	112.02	90	89.13	69	68.26	54	53.26	11.43	11	2.75	0.46

[a] Sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
All dimensions are in millimeters. For illustration of hexagon slotted nuts and castle nuts see Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

After several years of use of BS 2693:Part 1:1956 (obsolescent), it was recognized that it would not meet the requirements of all stud users. The thread tolerances specified could result in clearance of interference fits because locking depended on the run-out threads. Thus, some users felt that true interference fits were essential for their needs. As a result, the British Standards Committee has incorporated the Class 5 interference fit threads specified in American Standard ASA B1.12 into the BS 2693:Part 2:1964, "Recommendations for High Grade Studs."

British Standard ISO Metric Precision Hexagon Bolts, Screws and Nuts.—This British Standard BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent) gives the general dimensions and tolerances of precision hexagon bolts, screws and nuts with ISO metric threads in diameters from 1.6 to 68 mm. It is based on the following ISO recommendations and draft recommendations: R 272, R 288, DR 911, DR 947, DR 950, DR 952 and DR 987. Mechanical properties are given only with respect to carbon or alloy steel bolts, screws and nuts, which are not to be used for special applications such as those requiring weldability, corrosion resistance or ability to withstand temperatures above 300°C or below −50°C. The dimensional requirements of this standard also apply to nonferrous and stainless steel bolts, screws and nuts.

Finish: Finishes may be dull black which results from the heat-treating operation or may be bright finish, the result of bright drawing. Other finishes are possible by mutual agreement between purchaser and producer. It is recommended that reference be made to BS 3382 "Electroplated Coatings on Threaded Components" in this respect.

General Dimensions: The bolts, screws and nuts conform to the general dimensions given in Table 3, Table 4, Table 5 and Table 6.

Nominal Lengths of Bolts and Screws: The nominal length of a bolt or screw is the distance from the underside of the head to the extreme end of the shank including any chamfer or radius. Standard nominal lengths and tolerances thereon are given in Table 7.

Table 7. British Standard ISO Metric Bolt and Screw Nominal Lengths
BS 3692:1967 (obsolescent)

Nominal Length[a] *l*	Tolerance	Nominal Length[a] *l*	Tolerance	Nominal Length[a] *l*	Tolerance	Nominal Length[a] *l*	Tolerance
5	±0.24	30	±0.42	90	±0.70	200	±0.925
6	±0.24	(32)	±0.50	(95)	±0.70	220	±0.925
(7)	±0.29	35	±0.50	100	±0.70	240	±0.925
8	±0.29	(38)	±0.50	(105)	±0.70	260	±1.05
(9)	±0.29	40	±0.50	110	±0.70	280	±1.05
10	±0.29	45	±0.50	(115)	±0.70	300	±1.05
(11)	±0.35	50	±0.50	120	±0.70	325	±1.15
12	±0.35	55	±0.60	(125)	±0.80	350	±1.15
14	±0.35	60	±0.60	130	±0.80	375	±1.15
16	±0.35	65	±0.60	140	±0.80	400	±1.15
(18)	±0.35	70	±0.60	150	±0.80	425	±1.25
20	±0.42	75	±0.60	160	±0.80	450	±1.25
(22)	±0.42	80	±0.60	170	±0.80	475	±1.25
25	±0.42	85	±0.70	180	±0.80	500	±1.25
(28)	±0.42	…	…	190	±0.925	…	…

[a] Nominal lengths shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Bolt and Screw Ends: The ends of bolts and screws may be finished with either a 45-degree chamfer to a depth slightly exceeding the depth of thread or a radius approximately equal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

to $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the nominal diameter of the shank. With rolled threads, the lead formed at the end of the bolt by the thread rolling operation may be regarded as providing the necesssary chamfer to the end; the end being reasonably square with the center line of the shank.

Screw Thread Form: The form of thread and diameters and associated pitches of standard ISO metric bolts, screws, and nuts are in accordance with BS 3643:Part 1:1981 (2004), "Principles and Basic Data." The screw threads are made to the tolerances for the medium class of fit (*6H*/*6g*) as specified in BS 3643:Part 2:1981 (1998), "Specification for Selected Limits of Size."

Length of Thread on Bolts: The length of thread on bolts is the distance from the end of the bolt (including any chamfer or radius) to the leading face of a screw ring gage which has been screwed as far as possible onto the bolt by hand. Standard thread lengths of bolts are $2d + 6$ mm for a nominal length of bolt up to and including 125 mm, $2d + 12$ mm for a nominal bolt length over 125 mm up to and including 200 mm, and $2d + 25$ mm for a nominal bolt length over 200 mm. Bolts that are too short for minimum thread lengths are threaded as screws and designated as screws. The tolerance on bolt thread lengths are plus two pitches for all diameters.

Length of Thread on Screws: Screws are threaded to permit a screw ring gage being screwed by hand to within a distance from the underside of the head not exceeding two and a half times the pitch for diameters up to and including 52 mm and three and a half times the pitch for diameters over 52 mm.

Angularity and Eccentricity of Bolts, Screws and Nuts: The axis of the thread of the nut is square to the face of the nut subject to the "squareness tolerance" given in Table 5.

In gaging, the nut is screwed by hand onto a gage, having a truncated taper thread, until the thread of the nut is tight on the thread of the gage. A sleeve sliding on a parallel extension of the gage, which has a face of diameter equal to the minimum distance across the flats of the nut and exactly at 90 degrees to the axis of the gage, is brought into contact with the leading face of the nut. With the sleeve in this position, it should not be possible for a feeler gage of thickness equal to the "squareness tolerance" to enter anywhere between the leading nut face and sleeve face.

The hexagon flats of bolts, screws and nuts are square to the bearing face, and the angularity of the head is within the limits of 90 degrees, plus or minus 1 degree. The eccentricity of the hexagon flats of nuts relative to the thread diameter should not exceed the values given in Table 5 and the eccentricity of the head relative to the width across flats and eccentricity between the shank and thread of bolts and screws should not exceed the values given in Table 4.

Chamfering, Washer Facing and Countersinking: Bolt and screw heads have a chamfer of approximately 30 degrees on their upper faces and, at the option of the manufacturer, a washer face or full bearing face on the underside. Nuts are countersunk at an included angle of 120 degrees plus or minus 10 degrees at both ends of the thread. The diameter of the countersink should not exceed the nominal major diameter of the thread plus 0.13 mm up to and including 12 mm diameter, and plus 0.25 mm above 12 mm diameter. This stipulation does not apply to slotted, castle or thin nuts.

Strength Grade Designation System for Steel Bolts and Screws: This Standard includes a strength grade designation system consisting of two figures. The first figure is one tenth of the minimum tensile strength in kgf/mm^2, and the second figure is one tenth of the ratio between the minimum yield stress (or stress at permanent set limit, $R_{0.2}$) and the minimum tensile strength, expressed as a percentage. For example with the strength designation grade 8.8, the first figure 8 represents $\frac{1}{10}$ the minimum tensile strength of 80 kgf/mm^2 and the second figure 8 represents $\frac{1}{10}$ the ratio

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\frac{\text{stress at permanent set limit } R_{0.2}\%}{\text{minimum tensile strength}} = \frac{1}{10} \times \frac{64}{80} \times \frac{100}{1}$$

the numerical values of stress and strength being obtained from the accompanying table.

Strength Grade Designations of Steel Bolts and Screws

Strength Grade Designation	4.6	4.8	5.6	5.8	6.6	6.8	8.8	10.9	12.9	14.9
Tensile Strength (R_m), Min.	40	40	50	50	60	60	80	100	120	140
Yield Stress (R_e), Min.	24	32	30	40	36	48	…	…	…	…
Stress at Permanent Set Limit ($R_{0.2}$), Min.	…	…	…	…	…	…	64	90	108	126
All stress and strength values are in kgf/mm^2 units.										

Strength Grade Designation System for Steel Nuts: The strength grade designation system for steel nuts is a number which is one-tenth of the specified proof load stress in kgf/mm^2. The proof load stress corresponds to the minimum tensile strength of the highest grade of bolt or screw with which the nut can be used.

Strength Grade Designations of Steel Nuts

Strength Grade Designation	4	5	6	8	12	14
Proof Load Stress (kgf/mm^2)	40	50	60	80	120	140

Recommended Bolt and Nut Combinations

Grade of Bolt	4.6	4.8	5.6	5.8	6.6	6.8	8.8	10.9	12.9	14.9
Recommended Grade of Nut	4	4	5	5	6	6	8	12	12	14
Note: Nuts of a higher strength grade may be substituted for nuts of a lower strength grade.										

Marking: The marking and identification requirements of this Standard are only mandatory for steel bolts, screws and nuts of 6 mm diameter and larger; manufactured to strength grade designations 8.8 (for bolts or screws) and 8 (for nuts) or higher. Bolts and screws are identified as ISO metric by either of the symbols "ISO M" or "M", embossed or indented on top of the head. Nuts may be indented or embossed by alternative methods depending on their method of manufacture.

Designation: Bolts 10 mm diameter, 50 mm long manufactured from steel of strength grade 8.8, would be designated:

"Bolts M10 × 50 to BS 3692.—8.8."

Brass screws 8 mm diameter, 20 mm long would be designated:

"Brass screws M8 × 20 to BS 3692."

Nuts 12 mm diameter, manufactured from steel of strength grade 6, cadmium plated could be designated:

"Nuts M12 to BS 3692.—6, plated to BS 3382: Part 1."

Miscellaneous Information: The Standard also gives mechanical properties of steel bolts, screws and nuts [i.e., tensile strengths; hardnesses (Brinell, Rockwell, Vickers); stresses (yield, proof load); etc.], material and manufacture of steel bolts, screws and nuts; and information on inspection and testing. Appendices to the Standard give information on gaging; chemical composition; testing of mechanical properties; examples of marking of bolts, screws and nuts; and a table of preferred standard sizes of bolts and screws, to name some.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard General Purpose Studs *BS 2693:Part 1:1956 (obsolescent)*

Nom. Dia. *D*	Limits for End Screwed into Component (All threads except BA)												
	Major Dia.	Thds. per In.	Major Dia.	Effective Diameter		Minor Diameter		Thds. per In.	Major Dia.	Effective Diameter		Minor Dia.	
	Max.		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
UN THREADS			UNF THREADS						UNC THREADS				
¼	0.2500	28	0.2435	0.2294	0.2265	0.2088	0.2037	20	0.2419	0.2201	0.2172	0.1913	0.1849
5⁄16	0.3125	24	0.3053	0.2883	0.2852	0.2643	0.2586	18	0.3038	0.2793	0.2762	0.2472	0.2402
⅜	0.3750	24	0.3678	0.3510	0.3478	0.3270	0.3211	16	0.3656	0.3375	0.3343	0.3014	0.2936
7⁄16	0.4375	20	0.4294	0.4084	0.4050	0.3796	0.3729	14	0.4272	0.3945	0.3911	0.3533	0.3447
½	0.5000	20	0.4919	0.4712	0.4675	0.4424	0.4356	13	0.4891	0.4537	0.4500	0.4093	0.4000
9⁄16	0.5625	18	0.5538	0.5302	0.5264	0.4981	0.4907	12	0.5511	0.5122	0.5084	0.4641	0.4542
⅝	0.6250	18	0.6163	0.5929	0.5889	0.5608	0.5533	11	0.6129	0.5700	0.5660	0.5175	0.5069
¾	0.7500	16	0.7406	0.7137	0.7094	0.6776	0.6693	10	0.7371	0.6893	0.6850	0.6316	0.6200
⅞	0.8750	14	0.8647	0.8332	0.8286	0.7920	0.7828	9	0.8611	0.8074	0.8028	0.7433	0.7306
1	1.0000	12	0.9886	0.9510	0.9459	0.9029	0.8925	8	0.9850	0.9239	0.9188	0.8517	0.8376
1⅛	1.1250	12	1.1136	1.0762	1.0709	1.0281	1.0176	7	1.1086	1.0375	1.0322	0.9550	0.9393
1¼	1.2500	12	1.2386	1.2014	1.1959	1.1533	1.1427	7	1.2336	1.1627	1.1572	1.0802	1.0644
1⅜	1.3750	12	1.3636	1.3265	1.3209	1.2784	1.2677	6	1.3568	1.2723	1.2667	1.1761	1.1581
1½	1.5000	12	1.4886	1.4517	1.4459	1.4036	1.3928	6	1.4818	1.3975	1.3917	1.3013	1.2832
BS THREADS			BSF THREADS						BSW THREADS				
¼	0.2500	26	0.2455	0.2280	0.2251	0.2034	0.1984	20	0.2452	0.2206	0.2177	0.1886	0.1831
5⁄16	0.3125	22	0.3077	0.2863	0.2832	0.2572	0.2517	18	0.3073	0.2798	0.2767	0.2442	0.2383
⅜	0.3750	20	0.3699	0.3461	0.3429	0.3141	0.3083	16	0.3695	0.3381	0.3349	0.0981	0.2919
7⁄16	0.4375	18	0.4320	0.4053	0.4019	0.3697	0.3635	14	0.4316	0.3952	0.3918	0.3495	0.3428
½	0.5000	16	0.4942	0.4637	0.4600	0.4237	0.4172	12	0.4937	0.4503	0.4466	0.3969	0.3897
9⁄16	0.5625	16	0.5566	0.5263	0.5225	0.4863	0.4797	12	0.5560	0.5129	0.5091	0.4595	0.4521
⅝	0.6250	14	0.6187	0.5833	0.5793	0.5376	0.5305	11	0.6183	0.5708	0.5668	0.5126	0.5050
¾	0.7500	12	0.7432	0.7009	0.6966	0.6475	0.6398	10	0.7428	0.6903	0.6860	0.6263	0.6182
⅞	0.8750	11	0.8678	0.8214	0.8168	0.7632	0.7551	9	0.8674	0.8085	0.8039	0.7374	0.7288
1	1.0000	10	0.9924	0.9411	0.9360	0.8771	0.8686	8	0.9920	0.9251	0.9200	0.8451	0.8360
1⅛	1.1250	9	1.1171	1.0592	1.0539	0.9881	0.9792	7	1.1164	1.0388	1.0335	0.9473	0.9376
1¼	1.2500	9	1.2419	1.1844	1.1789	1.1133	1.1042	7	1.2413	1.1640	1.1585	1.0725	1.0627
1⅜	1.3750	8	1.3665	1.3006	1.2950	1.2206	1.2110	6	1.4906	1.3991	1.3933	1.2924	1.2818
1½	1.5000	8	1.4913	1.4258	1.4200	1.3458	1.3360	…	…	…	…	…	…

Designation No.	Pitch	Limits for End Screwed into Component (BA Threads)[a]					
		Major Diameter		Effective Diameter		Minor Diameter	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
2	0.8100 mm 0.03189 in.	4.700 mm 0.1850 in.	4.580 mm 0.1803 in.	4.275 mm 0.1683 in.	4.200 mm 0.1654 in.	3.790 mm 0.1492 in.	3.620 mm 0.1425 in.
4	0.6600 mm 0.2598 in.	3.600 mm 0.1417 in.	3.500 mm 0.1378 in.	3.260 mm 0.1283 in.	3.190 mm 0.1256 in.	2.865 mm 0.1128 in.	2.720 mm 0.1071 in.

[a] Approximate inch equivalents are shown below the dimensions given in mm.

Nom. Stud. Dia.	Minimum Nominal Lengths of Studs[a]								
	For Thread Length (Component End) of		Nom. Stud. Dia.	For Thread Length (Component End) of		Nom. Stud Dia.	For Thread Length (Component End) of	
	1*D*	1.5*D*		1*D*	1.5*D*		1*D*	1.5*D*
¼	⅞	1	9⁄16	2	2⅜	1⅛	4	4⅜
5⁄16	1⅛	1⅜	⅝	2¼	2⅝	1¼	4¾	5½
⅜	1⅜	1⅝	¾	2⅝	3	1⅜	5	5¾
7⁄16	1⅝	1⅞	⅞	3⅛	3⅝	1½	5¼	6
½	1¾	2	1	3½	4	…	…	…

[a] The standard also gives preferred and standard lengths of studs: *Preferred* lengths of studs: ⅞, 1, 1⅛, 1¼, 1⅜, 1½, 1¾, 2, 2¼, 2½, 2¾, 3, 3¼, 3½ and for lengths above 3½ the preferred increment is ½.

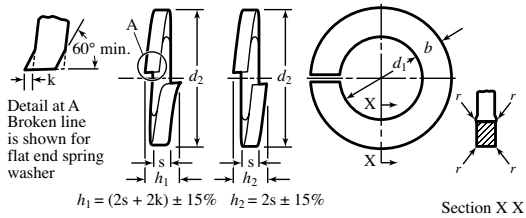
Standard lengths of studs: ⅞, 1, 1⅛, 1¼, 1⅜, 1½, 1⅝, 1¾, 1⅞, 2, 2⅛, 2¼, 2⅜, 2½, 2⅝, 2¾, 2⅞, 3, 3⅛, 3¼, 3⅜, 3½ and for lengths above 3½ the standard increment is ¼.

All dimensions are in inches except where otherwise noted.

See page 2106 for interference-fit threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Single Coil Rectangular Section Spring Washers Metric Series.—Types B and BP *BS 4464:1969 (2004)*



$h_1 = (2s + 2k) \pm 15\%$ $h_2 = 2s \pm 15\%$

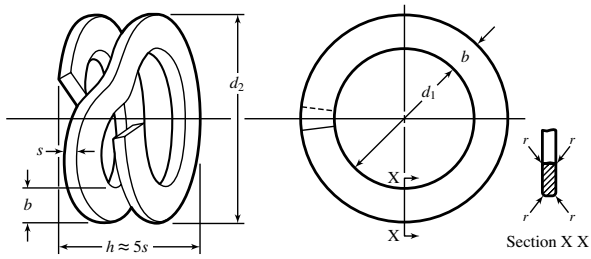
Type BP Type B

Nom. Size &Thread Dia., d	Inside Dia., d_1		Width, b	Thickness, s	Outside Dia., d_2 Max.	Radius, r Max.	k (Type BP Only)
	Max.	Min.					
M1.6	1.9	1.7	0.7 ± 0.1	0.4 ± 0.1	3.5	0.15	…
M2	2.3	2.1	0.9 ± 0.1	0.5 ± 0.1	4.3	0.15	…
(M2.2)	2.5	2.3	1.0 ± 0.1	0.6 ± 0.1	4.7	0.2	…
M2.5	2.8	2.6	1.0 ± 0.1	0.6 ± 0.1	5.0	0.2	…
M3	3.3	3.1	1.3 ± 0.1	0.8 ± 0.1	6.1	0.25	…
(M3.5)	3.8	3.6	1.3 ± 0.1	0.8 ± 0.1	6.6	0.25	0.15
M4	4.35	4.1	1.5 ± 0.1	0.9 ± 0.1	7.55	0.3	0.15
M5	5.35	5.1	1.8 ± 0.1	1.2 ± 0.1	9.15	0.4	0.15
M6	6.4	6.1	2.5 ± 0.15	1.6 ± 0.1	11.7	0.5	0.2
M8	8.55	8.2	3 ± 0.15	2 ± 0.1	14.85	0.65	0.3
M10	10.6	10.2	3.5 ± 0.2	2.2 ± 0.15	18.0	0.7	0.3
M12	12.6	12.2	4 ± 0.2	2.5 ± 0.15	21.0	0.8	0.4
(M14)	14.7	14.2	4.5 ± 0.2	3 ± 0.15	24.1	1.0	0.4
M16	16.9	16.3	5 ± 0.2	3.5 ± 0.2	27.3	1.15	0.4
(M18)	19.0	18.3	5 ± 0.2	3.5 ± 0.2	29.4	1.15	0.4
M20	21.1	20.3	6 ± 0.2	4 ± 0.2	33.5	1.3	0.4
(M22)	23.3	22.4	6 ± 0.2	4 ± 0.2	35.7	1.3	0.4
M24	25.3	24.4	7 ± 0.25	5 ± 0.2	39.8	1.65	0.5
(M27)	28.5	27.5	7 ± 0.25	5 ± 0.2	43.0	1.65	0.5
M30	31.5	30.5	8 ± 0.25	6 ± 0.25	48.0	2.0	0.8
(M33)	34.6	33.5	10 ± 0.25	6 ± 0.25	55.1	2.0	0.8
M36	37.6	36.5	10 ± 0.25	6 ± 0.25	58.1	2.0	0.8
(M39)	40.8	39.6	10 ± 0.25	6 ± 0.25	61.3	2.0	0.8
M42	43.8	42.6	12 ± 0.25	7 ± 0.25	68.3	2.3	0.8
(M45)	46.8	45.6	12 ± 0.25	7 ± 0.25	71.3	2.3	0.8
M48	50.0	48.8	12 ± 0.25	7 ± 0.25	74.5	2.3	0.8
(M52)	54.1	52.8	14 ± 0.25	8 ± 0.25	82.6	2.65	1.0
M56	58.1	56.8	14 ± 0.25	8 ± 0.25	86.6	2.65	1.0
(M60)	62.3	60.9	14 ± 0.25	8 ± 0.25	90.8	2.65	1.0
M64	66.3	64.9	14 ± 0.25	8 ± 0.25	93.8	2.65	1.0
(M68)	70.5	69.0	14 ± 0.25	8 ± 0.25	99.0	2.65	1.0

All dimensions are given in millimeters. Sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred, and are not usually stock sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Double Coil Rectangular Section Spring Washers; Metric Series.—Type D *BS 4464:1969 (2004)*

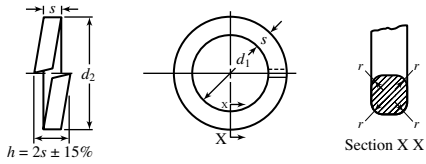


Nom. Size, d	Inside Dia., d_1		Width, b	Thickness, s	O.D., d_2 Max.	Radius, r Max.
	Max.	Min.				
M2	2.4	2.1	0.9 ± 0.1	0.5 ± 0.05	4.4	0.15
(M2.2)	2.6	2.3	1.0 ± 0.1	0.6 ± 0.05	4.8	0.2
M2.5	2.9	2.6	1.2 ± 0.1	0.7 ± 0.1	5.5	0.23
M3.0	3.6	3.3	1.2 ± 0.1	0.8 ± 0.1	6.2	0.25
(M3.5)	4.1	3.8	1.6 ± 0.1	0.8 ± 0.1	7.5	0.25
M4	4.6	4.3	1.6 ± 0.1	0.8 ± 0.1	8.0	0.25
M5	5.6	5.3	2 ± 0.1	0.9 ± 0.1	9.8	0.3
M6	6.6	6.3	3 ± 0.15	1 ± 0.1	12.9	0.33
M8	8.8	8.4	3 ± 0.15	1.2 ± 0.1	15.1	0.4
M10	10.8	10.4	3.5 ± 0.20	1.2 ± 0.1	18.2	0.4
M12	12.8	12.4	3.5 ± 0.2	1.6 ± 0.1	20.2	0.5
(M14)	15.0	14.5	5 ± 0.2	1.6 ± 0.1	25.4	0.5
M16	17.0	16.5	5 ± 0.2	2 ± 0.1	27.4	0.65
(M18)	19.0	18.5	5 ± 0.2	2 ± 0.1	29.4	0.65
M20	21.5	20.8	5 ± 0.2	2 ± 0.1	31.9	0.65
(M22)	23.5	22.8	6 ± 0.2	2.5 ± 0.15	35.9	0.8
M24	26.0	25.0	6.5 ± 0.2	3.25 ± 0.15	39.4	1.1
(M27)	29.5	28.0	7 ± 0.25	3.25 ± 0.15	44.0	1.1
M30	33.0	31.5	8 ± 0.25	3.25 ± 0.15	49.5	1.1
(M33)	36.0	34.5	8 ± 0.25	3.25 ± 0.15	52.5	1.1
M36	40.0	38.0	10 ± 0.25	3.25 ± 0.15	60.5	1.1
(M39)	43.0	41.0	10 ± 0.25	3.25 ± 0.15	63.5	1.1
M42	46.0	44.0	10 ± 0.25	4.5 ± 0.2	66.5	1.5
M48	52.0	50.0	10 ± 0.25	4.5 ± 0.2	72.5	1.5
M56	60.0	58.0	12 ± 0.25	4.5 ± 0.2	84.5	1.5
M64	70.0	67.0	12 ± 0.25	4.5 ± 0.2	94.5	1.5

All dimensions are given in millimeters. Sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred, and are not usually stock sizes. The free height of double coil washers before compression is normally approximately five times the thickness but, if required, washers with other free heights may be obtained by arrangement with manufacturer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Single Coil Square Section Spring Washers; Metric Series.—Type A-1 *BS 4464:1969 (2004)*



British Standard Single Coil Square Section Spring Washers; Metric Series.—Type A-2 *BS 4464:1969 (2004)*

Nom. Size, d	Inside Dia., d_1		Thickness & Width, s	O.D., d_2 Max.	Radius, r Max.
	Max.	Min.			
M3	3.3	3.1	1 ± 0.1	5.5	0.3
(M3.5)	3.8	3.6	1 ± 0.1	6.0	0.3
M4	4.35	4.1	1.2 ± 0.1	6.95	0.4
M5	5.35	5.1	1.5 ± 0.1	8.55	0.5
M6	6.4	6.1	1.5 ± 0.1	9.6	0.5
M8	8.55	8.2	2 ± 0.1	12.75	0.65
M10	10.6	10.2	2.5 ± 0.15	15.9	0.8
M12	12.6	12.2	2.5 ± 0.15	17.9	0.8
(M14)	14.7	14.2	3 ± 0.2	21.1	1.0
M16	16.9	16.3	3.5 ± 0.2	24.3	1.15
(M18)	19.0	18.3	3.5 ± 0.2	26.4	1.15
M20	21.1	20.3	4.5 ± 0.2	30.5	1.5
(M22)	23.3	22.4	4.5 ± 0.2	32.7	1.5
M24	25.3	24.4	5 ± 0.2	35.7	1.65
(M27)	28.5	27.5	5 ± 0.2	38.9	1.65
M30	31.5	30.5	6 ± 0.2	43.9	2.0
(M33)	34.6	33.5	6 ± 0.2	47.0	2.0
M36	37.6	36.5	7 ± 0.25	52.1	2.3
(M39)	40.8	39.6	7 ± 0.25	55.3	2.3
M42	43.8	42.6	8 ± 0.25	60.3	2.65
(M45)	46.8	45.6	8 ± 0.25	63.3	2.65
M48	50.0	48.8	8 ± 0.25	66.5	2.65

All dimensions are in millimeters. Sizes shown in parentheses are nonpreferred and are not usually stock sizes.

British Standard for Metric Series Metal Washers.—BS 4320:1968 (1998) specifies bright and black metal washers for general engineering purposes.

Bright Metal Washers: These washers are made from either CS4 cold-rolled strip steel BS 1449:Part 3B or from CZ 108 brass strip BS 2870: 1980, both in the hard condition. However, by mutual agreement between purchaser and supplier, washers may be made available with the material in any other condition, or they may be made from another material, or may be coated with a protective or decorative finish to some appropriate British Standard. Washers are reasonably flat and free from burrs and are normally supplied unchamfered. They may, however, have a 30-degree chamfer on one edge of the external diameter. These washers are made available in two size categories, normal and large diameter, and in two thicknesses, normal (Form A or C) and light (Form B or D). The thickness of a light-range washer is from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$ the thickness of a normal range washer.

Black Metal Washers: These washers are made from mild steel, and can be supplied in three size categories designated normal, large, and extra large diameters. The normal-diameter series is intended for bolts ranging from M5 to M68 (Form E washers), the large-diameter series for bolts ranging from M8 to M39 (Form F washers), and the extra large series for bolts from M5 to M39 (Form G washers). A protective finish can be specified by the purchaser in accordance with any appropriate British Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Washer Designations: The Standard specifies the details that should be given when ordering or placing an inquiry for washers. These details are the general description, namely, bright or black washers; the nominal size of the bolt or screw involved, for example, M5; the designated form, for example, Form A or Form E; the dimensions of any chamfer required on bright washers; the number of the Standard BS 4320:1968 (1998), and coating information if required, with the number of the appropriate British Standard and the coating thickness needed. As an example, in the use of this information, the designation for a chamfered, normal-diameter series washer of normal-range thickness to suit a 12-mm diameter bolt would be: Bright washers M12 (Form A) chamfered to BS 4320.

British Standard Bright Metal Washers.—Metric Series *BS 4320:1968 (1998)*

NORMAL DIAMETER SIZES												
Nominal Size of Bolt or Screw	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness					
							Form A (Normal Range)			Form B (Light Range)		
	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.
M 1.0	1.1	1.25	1.1	2.5	2.5	2.3	0.3	0.4	0.2	…	…	…
M 1.2	1.3	1.45	1.3	3.0	3.0	2.8	0.3	0.4	0.2	…	…	…
(M 1.4)	1.5	1.65	1.5	3.0	3.0	2.8	0.3	0.4	0.2	…	…	…
M 1.6	1.7	1.85	1.7	4.0	4.0	3.7	0.3	0.4	0.2	…	…	…
M 2.0	2.2	2.35	2.2	5.0	5.0	4.7	0.3	0.4	0.2	…	…	…
(M 2.2)	2.4	2.55	2.4	5.0	5.0	4.7	0.5	0.6	0.4	…	…	…
M 2.5	2.7	2.85	2.7	6.5	6.5	6.2	0.5	0.6	0.4	…	…	…
M3	3.2	3.4	3.2	7	7	6.7	0.5	0.6	0.4	…	…	…
(M 3.5)	3.7	3.9	3.7	7	7	6.7	0.5	0.6	0.4	…	…	…
M4	4.3	4.5	4.3	9	9	8.7	0.8	0.9	0.7	…	…	…
(M 4.5)	4.8	5.0	4.8	9	9	8.7	0.8	0.9	0.7	…	…	…
M 5	5.3	5.5	5.3	10	10	9.7	1.0	1.1	0.9	…	…	…
M 6	6.4	6.7	6.4	12.5	12.5	12.1	1.6	1.8	1.4	0.8	0.9	0.7
(M 7)	7.4	7.7	7.4	14	14	13.6	1.6	1.8	1.4	0.8	0.9	0.7
M 8	8.4	8.7	8.4	17	17	16.6	1.6	1.8	1.4	1.0	1.1	0.9
M 10	10.5	10.9	10.5	21	21	20.5	2.0	2.2	1.8	1.25	1.45	1.05
M 12	13.0	13.4	13.0	24	24	23.5	2.5	2.7	2.3	1.6	1.80	1.40
(M 14)	15.0	15.4	15.0	28	28	27.5	2.5	2.7	2.3	1.6	1.8	1.4
M 16	17.0	17.4	17.0	30	30	29.5	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
(M 18)	19.0	19.5	19.0	34	34	33.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
M 20	21	21.5	21	37	37	36.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
(M 22)	23	23.5	23	39	39	38.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
M24	25	25.5	25	44	44	43.2	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
(M 27)	28	28.5	28	50	50	49.2	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
M30	31	31.6	31	56	56	55.0	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
(M 33)	34	34.6	34	60	60	59.0	5.0	5.6	4.4	3.0	3.3	2.7
M 36	37	37.6	37	66	66	65.0	5.0	5.6	4.4	3.0	3.3	2.7
(M 39)	40	40.6	40	72	72	71.0	6.0	6.6	5.4	3.0	3.3	2.7
LARGE DIAMETER SIZES												
Nominal Size of Bolt or Screw	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness					
							Form C (Normal Range)			Form D (Light Range)		
	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.
M 4	4.3	4.5	4.3	10.0	10.0	9.7	0.8	0.9	0.7	…	…	…
M 5	5.3	5.5	5.3	12.5	12.5	12.1	1.0	1.1	0.9	…	…	…
M 6	6.4	6.7	6.4	14	14	13.6	1.6	1.8	1.4	0.8	0.9	0.7
M 8	8.4	8.7	8.4	21	21	20.5	1.6	1.8	1.4	1.0	1.1	0.9
M 10	10.5	10.9	10.5	24	24	23.5	2.0	2.2	1.8	1.25	1.45	1.05
M 12	13.0	13.4	13.0	28	28	27.5	2.5	2.7	2.3	1.6	1.8	1.4
(M 14)	15.0	15.4	15	30	30	29.5	2.5	2.7	2.3	1.6	1.8	1.4
M 16	17.0	17.4	17	34	34	33.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
(M 18)	19.0	19.5	19	37	37	36.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
M 20	21	21.5	21	39	39	38.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
(M 22)	23	23.5	23	44	44	43.2	3.0	3.3	2.7	2.0	2.2	1.8
M 24	25	25.5	25	50	50	49.2	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
(M 27)	28	28.5	28	56	56	55	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
M 30	31	31.6	31	60	60	59	4.0	4.3	3.7	2.5	2.7	2.3
(M 33)	34	34.6	34	66	66	65	5.0	5.6	4.4	3.0	3.3	2.7
M 36	37	37.6	37	72	72	71	5.0	5.6	4.4	3.0	3.3	2.7
(M 39)	40	40.6	40	77	77	76	6.0	6.6	5.4	3.0	3.3	2.7

All dimensions are in millimeters.
Nominal bolt or screw sizes shown in parentheses are nonpreferred.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Black Metal Washers.—Metric Series *BS 4320:1968 (1998)*

Nom Bolt or Screw Size	Inside Diameter			Outside Diameter			Thickness		
	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.
NORMAL DIAMETER SIZES (Form E)									
M 5	5.5	5.8	5.5	10.0	10.0	9.2	1.0	1.2	0.8
M 6	6.6	7.0	6.6	12.5	12.5	11.7	1.6	1.9	1.3
(M 7)	7.6	8.0	7.6	14.0	14.0	13.2	1.6	1.9	1.3
M 8	9.0	9.4	9.0	17	17	16.2	1.6	1.9	1.3
M 10	11.0	11.5	11.0	21	21	20.2	2.0	2.3	1.7
M 12	14	14.5	14	24	24	23.2	2.5	2.8	2.2
(M 14)	16	16.5	16	28	28	27.2	2.5	2.8	2.2
M 16	18	18.5	18	30	30	29.2	3.0	3.6	2.4
(M 18)	20	20.6	20	34	34	32.8	3.0	3.6	2.4
M 20	22	22.6	22	37	37	35.8	3.0	3.6	2.4
(M 22)	24	24.6	24	39	39	37.8	3.0	3.6	2.4
M 24	26	26.6	26	44	44	42.8	4	4.6	3.4
(M 27)	30	30.6	30	50	50	48.8	4	4.6	3.4
M 30	33	33.8	33	56	56	54.5	4	4.6	3.4
(M 33)	36	36.8	36	60	60	58.5	5	6.0	4.0
M 36	39	39.8	39	66	66	64.5	5	6.0	4.0
(M 39)	42	42.8	42	72	72	70.5	6	7.0	5.0
M 42	45	45.8	45	78	78	76.5	7	8.2	5.8
(M 45)	48	48.8	48	85	85	83	7	8.2	5.8
M 48	52	53	52	92	92	90	8	9.2	6.8
(M 52)	56	57	56	98	98	96	8	9.2	6.8
M 56	62	63	62	105	105	103	9	10.2	7.8
(M 60)	66	67	66	110	110	108	9	10.2	7.8
M 64	70	71	70	115	115	113	9	10.2	7.8
(M 68)	74	75	74	120	120	118	10	11.2	8.8
LARGE DIAMETER SIZES (Form F)									
M 8	9	9.4	9.0	21	21	20.2	1.6	1.9	1.3
M 10	11	11.5	11	24	24	23.2	2	2.3	1.7
M 12	14	14.5	14	28	28	27.2	2.5	2.8	2.2
(M 14)	16	16.5	16	30	30	29.2	2.5	2.8	2.2
M 16	18	18.5	18	34	34	32.8	3	3.6	2.4
(M 18)	20	20.6	20	37	37	35.8	3	3.6	2.4
M 20	22	22.6	22	39	39	37.8	3	3.6	2.4
(M 22)	24	24.6	24	44	44	42.8	3	3.6	2.4
M 24	26	26.6	26	50	50	48.8	4	4.6	3.4
(M 27)	30	30.6	30	56	56	54.5	4	4.6	3.4
M 30	33	33.8	33	60	60	58.5	4	4.6	3.4
(M 33)	36	36.8	36	66	66	64.5	5	6.0	4
M 36	39	39.8	39	72	72	70.5	5	6.0	4
(M 39)	42	42.8	42	77	77	75.5	6	7	5
EXTRA LARGE DIAMETER SIZES (Form G)									
M 5	5.5	5.8	5.5	15	15	14.2	1.6	1.9	1.3
M 6	6.6	7.0	6.6	18	18	17.2	2	2.3	1.7
(M 7)	7.6	8.0	7.6	21	21	20.2	2	2.3	1.7
M 8	9	9.4	9.0	24	24	23.2	2	2.3	1.7
M 10	11	11.5	11.0	30	30	29.2	2.5	2.8	2.2
M 12	14	14.5	14.0	36	36	34.8	3	3.6	2.4
(M 14)	16	16.5	16.0	42	42	40.8	3	3.6	2.4
M 16	18	18.5	18	48	48	46.8	4	4.6	3.4
(M 18)	20	20.6	20	54	54	52.5	4	4.6	3.4
M 20	22	22.6	22	60	60	58.5	5	6.0	4
(M 22)	24	24.6	24	66	66	64.5	5	6.0	4
M 24	26	26.6	26	72	72	70.5	6	7	5
(M 27)	30	30.6	30	81	81	79	6	7	5
M 30	33	33.8	33	90	90	88	8	9.2	6.8
(M 33)	36	36.8	36	99	99	97	8	9.2	6.8
M 36	39	39.8	39	108	108	106	10	11.2	8.8
(M39)	42	42.8	42	117	117	115	10	11.2	8.8

All dimensions are in millimeters.
Nominal bolt or screw sizes shown in parentheses are nonpreferred.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MACHINE SCREWS AND NUTS

American National Standard Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts

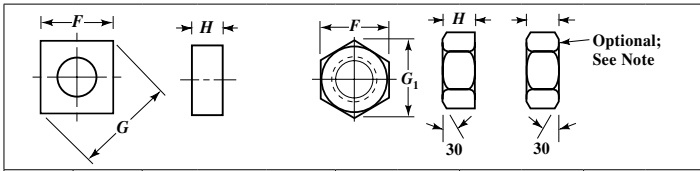
This Standard ANSI/ASME B18.6.3 covers both slotted and recessed head machine screws. Dimensions of various types of slotted machine screws, machine screw nuts, and header points are given in Table 1 through Table 12. The Standard also covers flat trim head, oval trim head and drilled fillister head machine screws and gives cross recess dimensions and gaging dimensions for all types of machine screw heads. Information on metric machine screws B18.6.7M (Withdrawn) is given beginning on page 1790.

Threads.—Except for sizes 0000, 000, and 00, machine screw threads may be either Unified Coarse (UNC) and Fine thread (UNF) Class 2A (see *American Standard for Unified Screw Threads* starting on page 1947) or UNRC and UNRF Series, at option of manufacturer. Thread dimensions for sizes 0000, 000, and 00 are given in Table 7 on page 1780.

Threads for hexagon machine screw nuts may be either UNC or UNF, Class 2B, and for square machine screw nuts are UNC Class 2B.

Length of Thread.—Machine screws of sizes No. 5 and smaller with nominal lengths equal to 3 diameters and shorter have full form threads extending to within 1 pitch (thread) of the bearing surface of the head, or closer, if practicable. Nominal lengths greater than 3 diameters, up to and including $1\frac{1}{8}$ inch, have full form threads extending to within two pitches (threads) of the bearing surface of the head, or closer, if practicable. Unless otherwise specified, screws of longer nominal length have a minimum length of full form thread of 1.00 inch. Machine screws of sizes No. 6 and larger with nominal length equal to 3 diameters and shorter have full form threads extending to within 1 pitch (thread) of the bearing surface of the head, or closer, if practicable. Nominal lengths greater than 3 diameters, up to and including 2 inches, have full form threads extending to within 2 pitches (threads) of the bearing surface of the head, or closer, if practicable. Screws of longer nominal length, unless otherwise specified, have a minimum length of full form thread of 1.50 inches.

Table 1. Square and Hexagon Machine Screw Nuts *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-1972 (R1991)*



Nom. Size	Basic Dia.	Basic F	Max. F	Min. F	Max. G	Min. G	Max. G1	Min. G1	Max. H	Min. H
0	0.0600	5/32	0.156	0.150	0.221	0.206	0.180	0.171	0.050	0.043
1	0.0730	5/32	0.156	0.150	0.221	0.206	0.180	0.171	0.050	0.043
2	0.0860	3/16	0.188	0.180	0.265	0.247	0.217	0.205	0.066	0.057
3	0.0990	3/16	0.188	0.180	0.265	0.247	0.217	0.205	0.066	0.057
4	0.1120	1/4	0.250	0.241	0.354	0.331	0.289	0.275	0.098	0.087
5	0.1250	5/16	0.312	0.302	0.442	0.415	0.361	0.344	0.114	0.102
6	0.1380	5/16	0.312	0.302	0.442	0.415	0.361	0.344	0.114	0.102
8	0.1640	11/32	0.344	0.332	0.486	0.456	0.397	0.378	0.130	0.117
10	0.1900	3/8	0.375	0.362	0.530	0.497	0.433	0.413	0.130	0.117
12	0.2160	7/16	0.438	0.423	0.619	0.581	0.505	0.482	0.161	0.148
1/4	0.2500	7/16	0.438	0.423	0.619	0.581	0.505	0.482	0.193	0.178
5/16	0.3125	9/16	0.562	0.545	0.795	0.748	0.650	0.621	0.225	0.208
3/8	0.3750	5/8	0.625	0.607	0.884	0.833	0.722	0.692	0.257	0.239

All dimensions in inches. Hexagon machine screw nuts have tops flat and chamfered. Diameter of top circle should be the maximum width across flats within a tolerance of minus 15 percent. Bottoms are flat but may be chamfered if so specified. Square machine screw nuts have tops and bottoms flat without chamfer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diameter of Body.—The diameter of machine screw bodies is not less than Class 2A thread minimum pitch diameter nor greater than the basic major diameter of the thread. Cross-recessed trim head machine screws not threaded to the head have an 0.062 in. minimum length shoulder under the head with diameter limits as specified in the dimensional tables in the standard.

Designation.—Machine screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (number, fraction, or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name, including head type and driving provision; header point, if desired; material; and protective finish, if required. For example:

$\frac{1}{4}-20\times 1\frac{1}{4}$ Slotted Pan Head Machine Screw, Steel, Zinc Plated

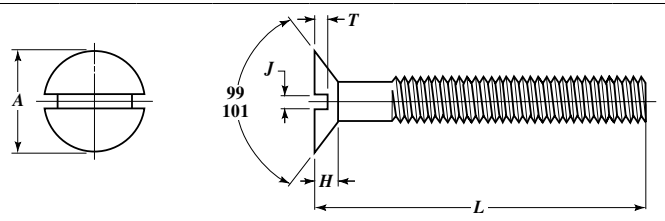
$6-32\times\frac{3}{4}$ Type IA Cross Recessed Fillister Head Machine Screw, Brass

Machine screw nuts are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (number, fraction, or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; product name; material; and protective finish, if required. For example:

10 – 24 Hexagon Machine Screw Nut, Steel, Zinc Plated

0.138 – 32 Square Machine Screw Nut, Brass

Table 2. American National Standard Slotted 100-Degree Flat Countersunk Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



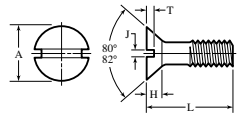
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	0.040	0.035	0.009	0.008	0.005	0.008	0.004
000	0.0340	0.060	0.055	0.014	0.012	0.008	0.011	0.007
00	0.0470	0.087	0.080	0.020	0.017	0.010	0.013	0.008
0	0.0600	0.112	0.095	0.026	0.023	0.016	0.013	0.008
1	0.0730	0.137	0.118	0.031	0.026	0.019	0.016	0.010
2	0.0860	0.162	0.142	0.037	0.031	0.023	0.019	0.012
3	0.0990	0.187	0.165	0.043	0.035	0.027	0.022	0.014
4	0.1120	0.212	0.188	0.049	0.039	0.031	0.024	0.017
6	0.1380	0.262	0.235	0.060	0.048	0.039	0.030	0.022
8	0.1640	0.312	0.282	0.072	0.054	0.045	0.036	0.027
10	0.1900	0.362	0.329	0.083	0.060	0.050	0.042	0.031
$\frac{1}{4}$	0.2500	0.477	0.437	0.110	0.075	0.064	0.055	0.042
$\frac{5}{16}$	0.3125	0.597	0.550	0.138	0.084	0.072	0.069	0.053
$\frac{3}{8}$	0.3750	0.717	0.662	0.165	0.094	0.081	0.083	0.065

[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

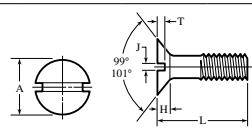
Table 3. American National Standard Slotted Flat Countersunk Head and Close Tolerance 100-Degree Flat Countersunk Head Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013



SLOTTED FLAT COUNTERSUNK HEAD TYPE

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Max., *L*[b]	Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
			Max.	Min.[c]	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	…	0.040	0.035	0.011	0.008	0.004	0.007	0.003
000	0.0340	…	0.060	0.055	0.016	0.011	0.007	0.009	0.005
00	0.0470	…	0.087	0.080	0.028	0.017	0.010	0.014	0.009
0	0.0600	1/8	0.112	0.096	0.035	0.023	0.016	0.015	0.010
1	0.0730	1/8	0.137	0.120	0.043	0.026	0.019	0.019	0.012
2	0.0860	1/8	0.162	0.144	0.051	0.031	0.023	0.023	0.015
3	0.0990	1/8	0.187	0.167	0.059	0.035	0.027	0.027	0.017
4	0.1120	3/16	0.212	0.191	0.067	0.039	0.031	0.030	0.020
5	0.1250	3/16	0.237	0.215	0.075	0.043	0.035	0.034	0.022
6	0.1380	3/16	0.262	0.238	0.083	0.048	0.039	0.038	0.024
7	0.1510	…	0.287	0.262	0.091	0.048	0.039	0.041	0.027
8	0.1640	1/4	0.312	0.285	0.100	0.054	0.045	0.045	0.029
10	0.1900	5/16	0.362	0.333	0.116	0.060	0.050	0.053	0.034
12	0.2160	3/8	0.412	0.380	0.132	0.067	0.056	0.060	0.039
14	0.2420	…	0.462	0.427	0.148	0.075	0.064	0.068	0.044
1/4	0.2500	7/16	0.477	0.442	0.153	0.075	0.064	0.070	0.046
16	0.2680	…	0.512	0.475	0.164	0.075	0.064	0.075	0.049
18	0.2940	…	0.561	0.522	0.180	0.084	0.072	0.083	0.054
5/16	0.3125	1/2	0.597	0.556	0.191	0.084	0.072	0.088	0.058
20	0.3200	…	0.611	0.569	0.196	0.084	0.072	0.090	0.059
24	0.3720	…	0.711	0.664	0.228	0.094	0.081	0.105	0.069
3/8	0.3750	9/16	0.717	0.670	0.230	0.094	0.081	0.106	0.070
7/16	0.4375	5/8	0.760	0.715	0.223	0.094	0.081	0.103	0.066
1/2	0.5000	3/4	0.815	0.765	0.223	0.106	0.091	0.103	0.065
9/16	0.5625	…	0.932	0.878	0.260	0.118	0.102	0.120	0.077
5/8	0.6250	…	1.050	0.990	0.298	0.133	0.116	0.137	0.088
3/4	0.7500	…	1.285	1.215	0.372	0.149	0.131	0.171	0.111

[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.
[b] These lengths or shorter are undercut.
[c] May be rounded or flat.



CLOSE TOLERANCE 100-DEGREE FLAT COUNTERSUNK HEAD TYPE

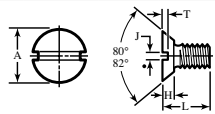
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.[c]	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
4	0.1120	0.212	0.188	0.049	0.039	0.031	0.024	0.017
6	0.1380	0.262	0.235	0.060	0.048	0.039	0.030	0.022
8	0.1640	0.312	0.282	0.072	0.054	0.045	0.036	0.027
10	0.1900	0.362	0.329	0.083	0.060	0.050	0.042	0.031
1/4	0.2500	0.477	0.437	0.110	0.075	0.064	0.055	0.042
5/16	0.3125	0.597	0.550	0.138	0.084	0.072	0.069	0.053
3/8	0.3750	0.717	0.662	0.165	0.094	0.081	0.083	0.065
7/16	0.4375	0.837	0.774	0.193	0.094	0.081	0.097	0.076
1/2	0.5000	0.957	0.887	0.221	0.106	0.091	0.111	0.088
9/16	0.5625	1.077	1.000	0.249	0.118	0.102	0.125	0.099
5/8	0.6250	1.197	1.112	0.276	0.133	0.116	0.139	0.111

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Slotted Undercut Flat Countersunk Head and Plain and Slotted Hex Washer Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*

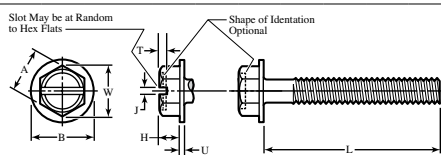
SLOTTED UNDERCUT FLAT COUNTERSUNK HEAD TYPE



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Max., *L*[b]	Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
			Max., Edge Sharp	Min., Edge Rounded or Flat	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0	0.0600	1/8	0.112	0.096	0.025	0.018	0.023	0.016	0.011	0.007
1	0.0730	1/8	0.137	0.120	0.031	0.023	0.026	0.019	0.014	0.009
2	0.0860	1/8	0.162	0.144	0.036	0.028	0.031	0.023	0.016	0.011
3	0.0990	1/8	0.187	0.167	0.042	0.033	0.035	0.027	0.019	0.012
4	0.1120	3/16	0.212	0.191	0.047	0.038	0.039	0.031	0.022	0.014
5	0.1250	3/16	0.237	0.215	0.053	0.043	0.043	0.035	0.024	0.016
6	0.1380	3/16	0.262	0.238	0.059	0.048	0.048	0.039	0.027	0.017
7	0.1510	…	0.287	0.262	0.064	0.053	0.048	0.039	0.030	0.019
8	0.1640	1/4	0.312	0.285	0.070	0.058	0.054	0.045	0.032	0.021
10	0.1900	5/16	0.362	0.333	0.081	0.068	0.060	0.050	0.037	0.024
12	0.2160	3/8	0.412	0.380	0.092	0.078	0.067	0.056	0.043	0.028
14	0.2420	…	0.462	0.427	0.103	0.089	0.086	0.064	0.047	0.032
1/4	0.2500	7/16	0.477	0.442	0.107	0.092	0.075	0.064	0.050	0.032
16	0.2680	…	0.512	0.475	0.114	0.099	0.075	0.064	0.053	0.035
18	0.2940	…	0.581	0.522	0.126	0.109	0.084	0.072	0.058	0.039
5/16	0.3125	1/2	0.597	0.556	0.134	0.116	0.084	0.072	0.062	0.041
20	0.3200	…	0.611	0.569	0.137	0.119	0.084	0.072	0.063	0.042
24	0.3720	…	0.711	0.664	0.159	0.139	0.094	0.081	0.074	0.049
3/8	0.3750	9/16	0.717	0.670	0.161	0.140	0.094	0.081	0.075	0.049
7/16	0.4375	5/8	0.760	0.715	0.156	0.133	0.094	0.081	0.072	0.045
1/2	0.5000	3/4	0.815	0.765	0.156	0.130	0.106	0.091	0.072	0.046

[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.
[b] These lengths or shorter are undercut.

PLAIN AND SLOTTED HEX WASHER HEAD TYPES



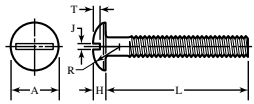
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Width Across Flats, *A*		Width Across-Corners, *W*	Head Height, *H*		Washer Dia., *B*		Washer Thick., *U*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot[a] Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
2	0.0860	0.125	0.120	0.134	0.050	0.040	0.166	0.154	0.016	0.010	….	….	….	….
3	0.0990	0.125	0.120	0.134	0.055	0.044	0.177	0.163	0.016	0.010	….	….	….	….
4	0.1120	0.188	0.181	0.202	0.060	0.049	0.243	0.225	0.019	0.011	0.039	0.031	0.042	0.025
5	0.1250	0.188	0.181	0.202	0.070	0.058	0.260	0.240	0.025	0.015	0.043	0.035	0.049	0.030
6	0.1380	0.250	0.244	0.272	0.093	0.080	0.328	0.302	0.025	0.015	0.048	0.039	0.053	0.033
8	0.1640	0.250	0.244	0.272	0.110	0.096	0.348	0.322	0.031	0.019	0.054	0.045	0.074	0.052
10	0.1900	0.312	0.305	0.340	0.120	0.105	0.414	0.384	0.031	0.019	0.060	0.050	0.080	0.057
12	0.2160	0.312	0.305	0.340	0.155	0.139	0.432	0.398	0.039	0.022	0.067	0.056	0.103	0.077
1/4	0.2500	0.375	0.367	0.409	0.190	0.172	0.520	0.480	0.050	0.030	0.075	0.064	0.111	0.083
5/16	0.3125	0.500	0.489	0.545	0.230	0.208	0.676	0.624	0.055	0.035	0.084	0.072	0.134	0.100
3/8	0.3750	0.562	0.551	0.614	0.295	0.270	0.780	0.720	0.063	0.037	0.094	0.081	0.168	0.131

[a] Unless otherwise specified, hexagon washer head machine screws are not slotted.
All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Slotted Truss Head and Plain and Slotted Hexagon Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*

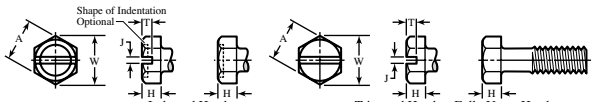
SLOTTED TRUSS HEAD TYPE



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Head Radius, *R*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	0.049	0.043	0.014	0.010	0.032	0.009	0.005	0.009	0.005
000	0.0340	0.077	0.071	0.022	0.018	0.051	0.013	0.009	0.013	0.009
00	0.0470	0.106	0.098	0.030	0.024	0.070	0.017	0.010	0.018	0.012
0	0.0600	0.131	0.119	0.037	0.029	0.087	0.023	0.016	0.022	0.014
1	0.0730	0.164	0.149	0.045	0.037	0.107	0.026	0.019	0.027	0.018
2	0.0860	0.194	0.180	0.053	0.044	0.129	0.031	0.023	0.031	0.022
3	0.0990	0.226	0.211	0.061	0.051	0.151	0.035	0.027	0.036	0.026
4	0.1120	0.257	0.241	0.069	0.059	0.169	0.039	0.031	0.040	0.030
5	0.1250	0.289	0.272	0.078	0.066	0.191	0.043	0.035	0.045	0.034
6	0.1380	0.321	0.303	0.086	0.074	0.211	0.048	0.039	0.050	0.037
7	0.1510	0.352	0.333	0.094	0.081	0.231	0.048	0.039	0.054	0.041
8	0.1640	0.384	0.364	0.102	0.088	0.254	0.054	0.045	0.058	0.045
10	0.1900	0.448	0.425	0.118	0.103	0.283	0.060	0.050	0.068	0.053
12	0.2160	0.511	0.487	0.134	0.118	0.336	0.067	0.056	0.077	0.061
14	0.2420	0.557	0.530	0.146	0.129	0.375	0.075	0.064	0.085	0.068
1/4	0.2500	0.573	0.546	0.150	0.133	0.375	0.075	0.064	0.087	0.070
16	0.2680	0.609	0.580	0.159	0.141	0.410	0.075	0.064	0.093	0.074
18	0.2940	0.661	0.630	0.173	0.153	0.446	0.084	0.072	0.100	0.080
5/16	0.3125	0.698	0.666	0.183	0.162	0.457	0.084	0.072	0.106	0.085
20	0.3200	0.713	0.680	0.186	0.165	0.484	0.084	0.072	0.108	0.087
24	0.3720	0.817	0.780	0.213	0.190	0.557	0.081	0.081	0.123	0.100
3/8	0.3750	0.823	0.787	0.215	0.191	0.538	0.094	0.081	0.124	0.100
7/16	0.4375	0.948	0.907	0.248	0.221	0.619	0.094	0.081	0.142	0.116
1/2	0.5000	1.073	1.028	0.280	0.250	0.701	0.106	0.091	0.161	0.131
9/16	0.5625	1.198	1.149	0.312	0.279	0.783	0.118	0.102	0.179	0.146
5/8	0.6250	1.323	1.269	0.345	0.309	0.863	0.133	0.116	0.196	0.162
3/4	0.7500	1.573	1.511	0.410	0.368	1.024	0.149	0.131	0.234	0.182

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal points and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

PLAIN AND SLOTTED HEXAGON HEAD TYPES

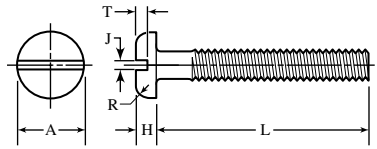


Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Regular Head			Large Head			Head Height, *H*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot[a] Depth, *T*	
		Width Across Flats, *A*		Across Corners, *W*	Width Across Flats, *A*		Across Corners, *W*						
		Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1	0.0730	.125	.120	.134	…	…	…	.044	.036	…	…	…	…
2	0.0860	.125	.120	.134	…	…	…	.050	.040	…	…	…	…
3	0.0990	.188	.181	.202	…	…	…	.055	.044	…	…	…	…
4	0.1120	.188	.181	.202	.219	.213	.238	.060	.049	.039	.031	.036	.02
5	0.1250	.188	.181	.202	.250	.244	.272	.070	.058	.043	.035	.042	.03
6	0.1380	.250	.244	.272	…	…	…	.093	.080	.048	.039	.046	.03
8	0.1640	.250	.244	.272	.312	.305	.340	.110	.096	.054	.045	.066	.05
10	0.1900	.312	.305	.340	…	…	…	.120	.105	.060	.050	.072	.057
12	0.2160	.312	.305	.340	.375	.367	.409	.155	.139	.067	.056	.093	.07
1/4	0.2500	.375	.367	.409	.438	.428	.477	.190	.172	.075	.064	.101	.08
5/16	0.3125	.500	.489	.545	…	…	…	.230	.208	.084	.072	.122	.10
3/8	0.3750	.562	.551	.614	…	…	…	.295	.270	.094	.081	.156	.13

[a] Unless otherwise specified, hexagon head machine screws are not slotted.
All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Slotted Pan Head Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Head Radius, *R*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	.042	.036	.016	.010	.007	.008	.004	.008	.004
000	0.0340	.066	.060	.023	.017	.010	.012	.008	.012	.008
00	0.0470	.090	.082	.032	.025	.015	.017	.010	.016	.010
0	0.0600	.116	.104	.039	.031	.020	.023	.016	.022	.014
1	0.0730	.142	.130	.046	.038	.025	.026	.019	.027	.018
2	0.0860	.167	.155	.053	.045	.035	.031	.023	.031	.022
3	0.0990	.193	.180	.060	.051	.037	.035	.027	.036	.026
4	0.1120	.219	.205	.068	.058	.042	.039	.031	.040	.030
5	0.1250	.245	.231	.075	.065	.044	.043	.035	.045	.034
6	0.1380	.270	.256	.082	.072	.046	.048	.039	.050	.037
7	0.1510	.296	.281	.089	.079	.049	.048	.039	.054	.041
8	0.1640	.322	.306	.096	.085	.052	.054	.045	.058	.045
10	0.1900	.373	.357	.110	.099	.061	.060	.050	.068	.053
12	0.2160	.425	.407	.125	.112	.078	.067	.056	.077	.061
14	0.2420	.476	.457	.139	.126	.087	.075	.064	.085	.068
1/4	0.2500	.492	.473	.144	.130	.087	.075	.064	.087	.070
16	0.2680	.528	.508	.153	.139	.094	.075	.064	.093	.074
18	0.2940	.579	.558	.168	.153	.099	.084	.072	.100	.080
5/16	0.3125	.615	.594	.178	.162	.099	.084	.072	.106	.085
20	0.3200	.631	.608	.182	.166	.121	.084	.072	.108	.087
24	0.3720	.734	.709	.211	.193	.143	.094	.081	.123	.100
3/8	0.3750	.740	.716	.212	.195	.143	.094	.081	.124	.100
7/16	0.4375	.863	.837	.247	.228	.153	.094	.081	.142	.116
1/2	0.5000	.987	.958	.281	.260	.175	.106	.091	.161	.131
9/16	0.5625	1.041	1.000	.315	.293	.197	.118	.102	.179	.146
5/8	0.6250	1.172	1.125	.350	.325	.219	.133	.116	.197	.162
3/4	0.7500	1.435	1.375	.419	.390	.263	.149	.131	.234	.192

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 7. Nos. 0000, 000 and 00 Threads *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013 Appendix*

Nominal Size[a] and Threads Per Inch	Series Designat.	External[b]						Internal[c]				
		Class	Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter			Minor Dia.	Class	Pitch Diameter			Major Dia.
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Tol.			Min.	Max.	Tol.	Min.
0000-160 or 0.0210-160	NS	2	.0210	.0195	.0169	.0158	.0011	.0128	2	.0169	.0181	.0012	.0210
000-120 or 0.0340-120	NS	2	.0340	.0325	.0286	0.272	.0014	.0232	2	.0286	.0300	.0014	.034
00-90 or 0.0470-90	NS	2	.0470	.0450	.0398	.0382	.0016	.0326	2	.0398	.0414	.0016	.047
00-96 or 0.0470-96	NS	2	.0470	.0450	.0402	.0386	.0016	.0334	2	.0402	.0418	.0016	.047

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

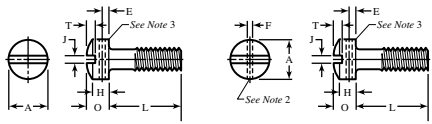
[b] There is no allowance provided on the external threads.

[c] The minor diameter limits for internal threads are not specified, they being determined by the amount of thread engagement necessary to satisfy the strength requirements and tapping performance in the intended application.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. American National Standard Slotted Fillister and Slotted Drilled Fillister Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



SLOTTED FILLISTER HEAD TYPE											
Nominal Size[1] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Head Side Height, *H*		Total Head Height, *O*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	.038	.032	.019	.011	.025	.015	.008	.004	.012	.006
000	0.0340	.059	.053	.029	.021	.035	.027	.012	.006	.017	.011
00	0.0470	.082	.072	.037	.028	.047	.039	.017	.010	.022	.015
0	0.0600	.096	.083	.043	.038	.055	.047	.023	.016	.025	.015
1	0.0730	.118	.104	.053	.045	.066	.058	.026	.019	.031	.020
2	0.0860	.140	.124	.062	.053	.083	.066	.031	.023	.037	.025
3	0.0990	.161	.145	.070	.061	.095	.077	.035	.027	.043	.030
4	0.1120	.183	.166	.079	.069	.107	.088	.039	.031	.048	.035
5	0.1250	.205	.187	.088	.078	.120	.100	.043	.035	.054	.040
6	0.1380	.226	.208	.096	.086	.132	.111	.048	.039	.060	.045
8	0.1640	.270	.250	.113	.102	.156	.133	.054	.045	.071	.054
10	0.1900	.313	.292	.130	.118	.180	.156	.060	.050	.083	.064
12	0.2160	.357	.334	.148	.134	.205	.178	.067	.056	.094	.074
¼	0.2500	.414	.389	.170	.155	.237	.207	.075	.064	.109	.087
5/16	0.3125	.518	.490	.211	.194	.295	.262	.084	.072	.137	.110
⅜	0.3750	.622	.590	.253	.233	.355	.315	.094	.081	.164	.133
7/16	0.4375	.625	.589	.265	.242	.368	.321	.094	.081	.170	.135
½	0.5000	.750	.710	.297	.273	.412	.362	.106	.091	.190	.151
9/16	0.5625	.812	.768	.336	.308	.466	.410	.118	.102	.214	.172
⅝	0.6250	.875	.827	.375	.345	.521	.461	.133	.116	.240	.193
¾	0.7500	1.000	.945	.441	.406	.612	.542	.149	.131	.281	.226

SLOTTED DRILLED FILLISTER HEAD TYPE												
Nominal Size[1] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Head Side Height, *H*		Total Head Height, *O*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*		Drilled Hole Locat., *E*	Drilled Hole. Dia., *F*
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Basic
2	0.0860	.140	.124	.062	.055	.083	.070	.031	.023	.030	.022	.026	.031
3	0.0990	.161	.145	.070	.064	.095	.082	.035	.027	.034	.026	.030	.037
4	0.1120	.183	.166	.079	.072	.107	.094	.039	.031	.038	.030	.035	.037
5	0.1250	.205	.187	.088	.081	.120	.106	.043	.035	.042	.033	.038	.046
6	0.1380	.226	.208	.096	.089	.132	.118	.048	.039	.045	.035	.043	.046
8	0.1640	.270	.250	.113	.106	.156	.141	.054	.045	.065	.054	.043	.046
10	0.1900	.313	.292	.130	.123	.180	.165	.060	.050	.075	.064	.043	.046
12	0.2160	.357	.334	.148	.139	.205	.188	.067	.056	.087	.074	.053	.046
¼	0.2500	.414	.389	.170	.161	.237	.219	.075	.064	.102	.087	.062	.062
5/16	0.3125	.518	.490	.211	.201	.295	.276	.084	.072	.130	.110	.078	.070
⅜	0.3750	.622	.590	.253	.242	.355	.333	.094	.081	.154	.134	.094	.070

All dimensions are in inches.

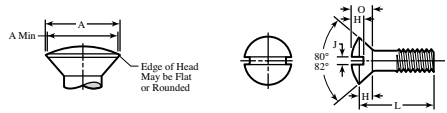
[1] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal points and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[2] Drilled hole shall be approximately perpendicular to the axis of slot and may be permitted to break through bottom of the slot. Edges of the hole shall be free from burrs.

[3] A slight rounding of the edges at periphery of head is permissible provided the diameter of the bearing circle is equal to no less than 90 percent of the specified minimum head diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. American National Standard Slotted Oval Countersunk Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



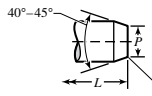
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Max L^b	Head Dia., A		Head Side Height, H	Total Head Height, O		Slot Width, J		Slot Depth, T	
			Max., Edge Sharp	Min., Edge Rounded or Flat	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
00	0.0470	…	.087	.080	.028	.042	.034	.017	.010	.023	.016
0	0.0600	1/8	.112	.096	.035	.056	.041	.023	.016	.030	.025
1	0.0730	1/8	.137	.120	.043	.068	.052	.026	.019	.038	.031
2	0.0860	1/8	.162	.144	.051	.080	.063	.031	.023	.045	.037
3	0.0990	1/8	.187	.167	.059	.092	.073	.035	.027	.052	.043
4	0.1120	3/16	.212	.191	.067	.104	.084	.039	.031	.059	.049
5	0.1250	3/16	.237	.215	.075	.116	.095	.043	.035	.067	.055
6	0.1380	3/16	.262	.238	.083	.128	.105	.048	.039	.074	.060
7	0.1510	…	.287	.262	.091	.140	.115	.048	.039	.081	.066
8	0.1640	1/4	.312	.285	.100	.152	.126	.054	.045	.088	.072
10	0.1900	5/16	.362	.333	.116	.176	.148	.060	.050	.103	.084
12	0.2160	3/8	.412	.380	.132	.200	.169	.067	.056	.117	.096
14	0.2420	…	.462	.427	.148	.224	.190	.075	.064	.132	.108
1/4	0.2500	7/16	.477	.442	.153	.232	.197	.075	.064	.136	.112
16	0.2680	…	.512	.475	.164	.248	.212	.075	.064	.146	.120
18	0.2940	…	.561	.522	.180	.272	.233	.084	.072	.160	.132
5/16	0.3125	1/2	.597	.556	.191	.290	.248	.084	.072	.171	.141
20	0.3200	…	.611	.569	.196	.296	.254	.094	.072	.175	.144
24	0.3720	…	.711	.664	.228	.344	.297	.094	.081	.204	.168
3/8	0.3750	9/16	.717	.670	.230	.347	.300	.094	.081	.206	.170
7/16	0.4375	5/8	.760	.715	.223	.345	.295	.094	.081	.210	.174
1/2	0.5000	3/4	.815	.765	.223	.354	.299	.106	.091	.216	.176
9/16	0.5625	…	.932	.878	.260	.410	.350	.118	.102	.250	.207
5/8	0.6250	…	1.050	.990	.298	.467	.399	.133	.116	.285	.235
3/4	0.7500	…	1.285	1.215	.372	.578	.497	.149	.131	.353	.293

[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal points and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] These lengths or shorter are undercut.

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 10. American National Standard Header Points for Machine Screws before Threading *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*

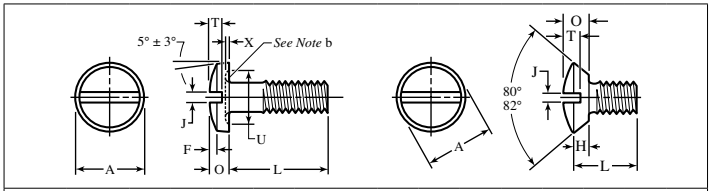


Nom. Size.	Threads per Inch	Max. P	Min. P	Max. L	Nom. Size	Threads per Inch	Max. P	Min. P	Max. L
2	56	0.057	0.050	1/2	10	24	0.125	0.112	1 1/4
	64	0.060	0.053			32	0.138	0.124	
4	40	0.074	0.065	1/2	12	24	0.149	0.134	1 3/8
	48	0.079	0.070			28	0.156	0.141	
5	40	0.086	0.076	1/2	1/4	20	0.170	0.153	1 1/2
	44	0.088	0.079			28	0.187	0.169	
6	32	0.090	0.080	3/4	5/16	18	0.221	0.200	1 1/2
	40	0.098	0.087			24	0.237	0.215	
8	32	0.114	0.102	1	3/8	16	0.270	0.244	1 1/2
	36	0.118	0.106			24	0.295	0.267	
					7/16	14	0.316	0.287	1 1/2
						20	0.342	0.310	
					1/2	13	0.367	0.333	1 1/2
						20	0.399	0.362	

All dimensions in inches. Edges of point may be rounded and end of point need not be flat nor perpendicular to shank. Machine screws normally have plain sheared ends but when specified may have header points, as shown above.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. American National Standard Slotted Binding Head and Slotted Undercut Oval Countersunk Head Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Dia., *A*		Total Head Height, *O*		Head Oval Height, *F*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*		Undercut[b] Dia., *U*		Undercut[b] Depth, *X*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
SLOTTED BINDING HEAD TYPE															
0000	0.0210	.046	.040	.014	.009	.006	.003	.008	.004	.009	.005	…	…	…	…
000	0.0340	.073	.067	.021	.015	.008	.005	.012	.006	.013	.009	…	…	…	…
00	0.0470	.098	.090	.028	.023	.011	.007	.017	.010	.018	.012	…	…	…	…
0	0.0600	.126	.119	.032	.026	.012	.008	.023	.016	.018	.009	.098	.086	.007	.002
1	0.0730	.153	.145	.041	.035	.015	.011	.026	.019	.024	.014	.120	.105	.008	.003
2	0.0860	.181	.171	.050	.043	.018	.013	.031	.023	.030	.020	.141	.124	.010	.005
3	0.0990	.208	.197	.059	.052	.022	.016	.035	.027	.036	.025	.162	.143	.011	.006
4	0.1120	.235	.223	.068	.061	.025	.018	.039	.031	.042	.030	.184	.161	.012	.007
5	0.1250	.263	.249	.078	.069	.029	.021	.043	.035	.048	.035	.205	.180	.014	.009
6	0.1380	.290	.275	.087	.078	.032	.024	.048	.039	.053	.040	.226	.199	.015	.010
8	0.1640	.344	.326	.105	.095	.039	.029	.054	.045	.065	.050	.269	.236	.017	.012
10	0.1900	.399	.378	.123	.112	.045	.034	.060	.050	.077	.060	.312	.274	.020	.015
12	0.2160	.454	.430	.141	.130	.052	.039	.067	.056	.089	.070	.354	.311	.023	.018
1/4	0.2500	.525	.498	.165	.152	.061	.046	.075	.064	.105	.084	.410	.360	.026	.021
5/16	0.3125	.656	.622	.209	.194	.077	.059	.084	.072	.134	.108	.513	.450	.032	.027
3/8	0.3750	.788	.746	.253	.235	.094	.071	.094	.081	.163	.132	.615	.540	.039	.034

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal points and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Unless otherwise specified, slotted binding head machine screws are not undercut.

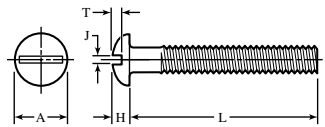
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Max. *L*[a]	Head Dia., *A*		Head Side Height, *H*	Total Head Height, *O*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
			Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
SLOTTED UNDERCUT OVAL COUNTERSUNK HEAD TYPES											
0	0.0600	1/8	.112	.096	.025	.046	.033	.023	.016	.028	.022
1	0.0730	1/8	.137	.120	.031	.056	.042	.026	.019	.034	.027
2	0.0860	1/8	.162	.144	.036	.065	.050	.031	.023	.040	.033
3	0.0990	1/8	.187	.167	.042	.075	.059	.035	.027	.047	.038
4	0.1120	3/16	.212	.191	.047	.084	.067	.039	.031	.053	.043
5	0.1250	3/16	.237	.215	.053	.094	.076	.043	.035	.059	.048
6	0.1380	3/16	.262	.238	.059	.104	.084	.048	.039	.065	.053
7	0.1510	…	.287	.262	.064	.113	.093	.048	.039	.071	.059
8	0.1640	1/4	.312	.285	.070	.123	.101	.054	.045	.078	.064
10	0.1900	5/16	.362	.333	.081	.142	.118	.060	.050	.090	.074
12	0.2160	3/8	.412	.380	.092	.161	.135	.067	.056	.103	.085
14	0.2420	…	.462	.427	.104	.180	.153	.075	.064	.115	.096
1/4	0.2500	7/16	.477	.442	.107	.186	.158	.075	.064	.119	.098
16	0.2680	…	.512	.475	.115	.199	.170	.075	.064	.127	.106
18	0.2940	…	.561	.522	.126	.218	.187	.084	.072	.140	.116
5/16	0.3125	1/2	.597	.556	.134	.232	.198	.084	.072	.149	.124
20	0.3200	…	.611	.569	.137	.237	.204	.084	.072	.152	.127
24	0.3720	…	.711	.664	.160	.275	.238	.094	.081	.177	.148
3/8	0.3750	9/16	.717	.670	.161	.278	.239	.094	.081	.179	.149
7/16	0.4375	5/8	.760	.715	.156	.279	.239	.094	.081	.184	.154
1/2	0.5000	3/4	.815	.765	.156	.288	.244	.106	.091	.204	.169

[a] These lengths or shorter are undercut.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Slotted Round Head Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013 Appendix



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0000	0.0210	.041	.035	.022	.016	.008	.004	.017	.013
000	0.0340	.062	.056	.031	.025	.012	.008	.018	.012
00	0.0470	.089	.080	.045	.036	.017	.010	.026	.018
0	0.0600	.113	.099	.053	.043	.023	.016	.039	.029
1	0.0730	.138	.122	.061	.051	.026	.019	.044	.033
2	0.0860	.162	.146	.069	.059	.031	.023	.048	.037
3	0.0990	.187	.169	.078	.067	.035	.027	.053	.040
4	0.1120	.211	.193	.086	.075	.039	.031	.058	.044
5	0.1250	.236	.217	.095	.083	.043	.035	.063	.047
6	0.1380	.260	.240	.103	.091	.048	.039	.068	.051
7	0.1510	.285	.264	.111	.099	.048	.039	.072	.055
8	0.1640	.309	.287	.120	.107	.054	.045	.077	.058
10	0.1900	.359	.334	.137	.123	.060	.050	.087	.065
12	0.2160	.408	.382	.153	.139	.067	.056	.096	.073
14	0.2420	.457	.429	.170	.155	.075	.064	.106	.080
1/4	0.2500	.472	.443	.175	.160	.075	.064	.109	.082
16	0.2680	.506	.476	.187	.171	.075	.064	.115	.087
18	0.2940	.555	.523	.204	.187	.084	.072	.125	.094
5/16	0.3125	.590	.557	.216	.198	.084	.072	.132	.099
20	0.3200	.604	.570	.220	.203	.084	.072	.134	.101
24	0.3720	.702	.664	.254	.235	.094	.081	.154	.116
3/8	0.3750	.708	.670	.256	.237	.094	.081	.155	.117
7/16	0.4375	.750	.707	.328	.307	.094	.081	.196	.148
1/2	0.5000	.813	.766	.355	.332	.106	.091	.211	.159
9/16	0.5625	.938	.887	.410	.385	.118	.102	.242	.183
5/8	0.6250	1.000	.944	.438	.411	.133	.116	.258	.195
3/4	0.7500	1.250	1.185	.547	.516	.149	.131	.320	.242

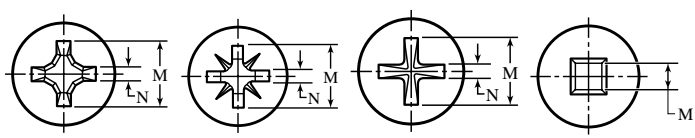
[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

All dimensions are in inches.

Not recommended, use Pan Head machine screws.

Machine Screw Cross Recesses.—Four cross recesses, Types I, IA, II, and III, may be used in lieu of slots in machine screw heads. Dimensions for recess diameter *M*, width *N*, and depth *T* (not shown above) together with recess penetration gaging depths are given in American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013 for machine screws, and in ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn) for metric machine screws.

ANSI/ASME Cross Recesses for Machine Screws and Metric Machine Screw



Type I Cross Recess Type IA Cross Recess Type II Cross Recess Type III Square Center

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Slotted Head Miniature Screws

The ASA B18.11 standard establishes head types, their dimensions, and lengths of slotted head miniature screws, threaded in conformance with American Standard Unified Miniature Screw Threads, ASA B1.10. The standard covers threads of a nominal diameter from 0.0118 inch (0.3 mm) to 0.0551 inch (1.4 mm). Preferred diameter pitch combinations for general use are shown in bold type in the tables.

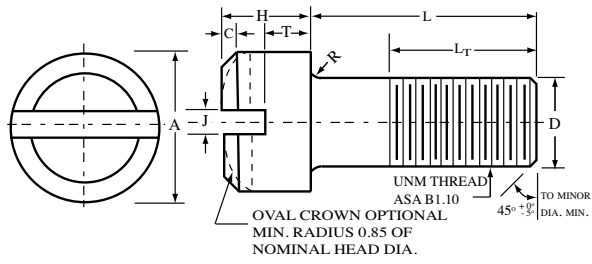
Head Types.—*Fillister Head:* The fillister head has a flat top surface (oval crown optional) with cylindrical sides and a flat bearing surface. The head proportions are given in Table 1.

Pan Head: The pan head has a flat top surface, cylindrical sides, and a flat bearing surface. The head height is less than the fillister but the head diameter is slightly larger. Head proportions are given in Table 2.

Flat Head: The flat head has a flat top surface and a conical bearing surface with an included angle of approximately 100°. Head proportions are given in Table 3.

Binding Head: The head height is less than the pan head but the head diameter is greater, and is intended for applications which would otherwise require washers. Head proportions are given in Table 4.

Table 1. Miniature Screws - Fillister Head *ASA B18.11-1961, R2010*



Size Designation	Thds per Inch	*D* Basic Major Dia.	Fillister Head Dimensions									
			A Head Dia.		*H* Head Hgt		*J* Slot Width		*T* Slot Depth [a]		*C* Chamfer	*R* Radius[b]
		Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0 UNM	**318**	**0.0118**	**0.021**	**0.019**	**0.012**	**0.010**	**0.004**	**0.003**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.002**	**0.002**
0 UNM	282	0.0138	0.023	0.021	0.014	0.012	0.004	0.003	0.007	0.005	0.002	0.002
1 UNM	**254**	**0.0157**	**0.025**	**0.023**	**0.016**	**0.013**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.002**	**0.002**
1 UNM	254	0.0177	0.029	0.027	0.018	0.015	0.005	0.003	0.009	0.007	0.002	0.002
2 UNM	**203**	**0.0197**	**0.033**	**0.031**	**0.020**	**0.017**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.003**	**0.002**
2 UNM	203	0.0217	0.037	0.035	0.022	0.019	0.006	0.004	0.011	0.008	0.003	0.002
3 UNM	**169**	**0.0236**	**0.041**	**0.039**	**0.025**	**0.021**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.012**	**0.009**	**0.004**	**0.003**
3 UNM	145	0.0276	0.045	0.043	0.028	0.024	0.008	0.005	0.014	0.011	0.004	0.003
4 UNM	**127**	**0.0315**	**0.051**	**0.049**	**0.032**	**0.028**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.005**	**0.004**
4 UNM	113	0.0354	0.056	0.054	0.036	0.032	0.010	0.007	0.018	0.014	0.005	0.004
5 UNM	**102**	**0.0394**	**0.062**	**0.058**	**0.040**	**0.035**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.020**	**0.016**	**0.006**	**0.005**
5 UNM	102	0.0433	0.072	0.068	0.045	0.040	0.012	0.008	0.022	0.018	0.006	0.005
6 UNM	**102**	**0.0472**	**0.082**	**0.078**	**0.050**	**0.045**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.025**	**0.020**	**0.008**	**0.006**
6 UNM	85	0.0551	0.092	0.088	0.055	0.050	0.016	0.012	0.028	0.023	0.008	0.006

Bold face type indicates preferred sizes. See *Notes for Table 1 through Table 4* on page 1786.

[a] *T* measured from bearing surface.

[b] Relative to maximum major diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Notes for Table 1 through Table 4

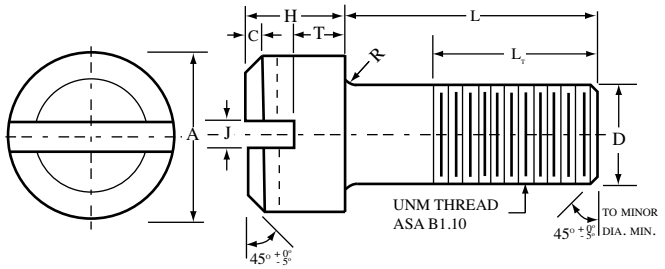
Material:
Corrosion resistant steels: ASTM Designation A276
CLASS 303, COND A
CLASS 416, COND A, heat treat to approx 120,000–150,000 PSI (28–34 on Rockwell C scale)
CLASS 420, COND A, heat treat to approx 220,000–240,000 PSI (50–53 on Rockwell C scale)
Brass: Temper half hard ASTM Designation B16
Nickel Silver: Temper hard ASTM Designation B151, Alloy C

Machine Finish:
Machined surface roughness of heads shall be approximately 63 µin. arithmetical average determined by visual comparison.

Applied coatings:
Corrosion resistant steel: passivate; Brass: bare, black oxide, or nickel flash.
Nickel silver: none

Notes:
1) The diameter of the unthreaded body shall not be more than the maximum major diameter nor less than the minimum pitch diameter of the thread.
2) For screw lengths four times the major diameter or less, thread length (*Lt*) shall extend to within two threads of the head bearing surface. Screws of greater length shall have complete threads for a minimum of four major diameters.
3) Screws shall be free of all projecting burrs, observed at 3× magnification.
4) All dimensions are in inches.

Table 2. Miniature Screws - Pan Head *ASA B18.11-1961, R2010*



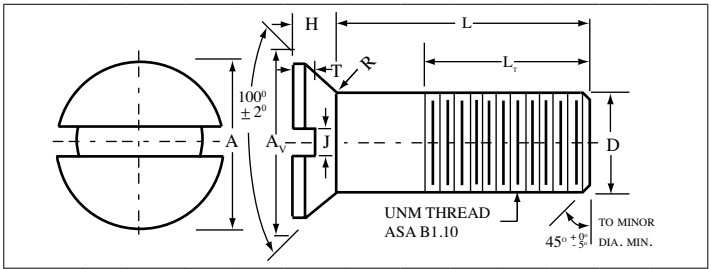
Size Designation	Thds per Inch	*D* Basic Major Dia., Max.	Pan Head Dimensions									
			A Head Dia.		*H* Head Hgt		*J* Slot Width		*T* Slot Depth[a]		*C* Chamfer	*R* Radius[b]
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
30 UNM	**318**	**0.0118**	**0.025**	**0.023**	**0.010**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.002**	**0.002**
35 UNM	282	0.0138	0.029	0.027	0.011	0.009	0.005	0.003	0.006	0.004	0.002	0.002
40 UNM	**254**	**0.0157**	**0.033**	**0.031**	**0.012**	**0.010**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.002**	**0.002**
45 UNM	254	0.0177	0.037	0.035	0.014	0.012	0.006	0.004	0.007	0.005	0.002	0.002
50 UNM	**203**	**0.0197**	**0.041**	**0.039**	**0.016**	**0.013**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.003**	**0.002**
55 UNM	203	0.0217	0.045	0.043	0.018	0.015	0.008	0.005	0.009	0.007	0.003	0.002
60 UNM	**169**	**0.0236**	**0.051**	**0.049**	**0.020**	**0.017**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.004**	**0.003**
70 UNM	145	0.0276	0.056	0.054	0.022	0.019	0.010	0.007	0.011	0.008	0.004	0.003
80 UNM	**127**	**0.0315**	**0.062**	**0.058**	**0.025**	**0.021**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.012**	**0.009**	**0.005**	**0.004**
90 UNM	113	0.0354	0.072	0.068	0.028	0.024	0.012	0.008	0.014	0.011	0.005	0.004
100 UNM	**102**	**0.0394**	**0.082**	**0.078**	**0.032**	**0.028**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.018**	**0.014**	**0.006**	**0.005**
110 UNM	102	0.0433	0.092	0.088	0.036	0.032	0.016	0.012	0.018	0.014	0.006	0.005
120 UNM	**102**	**0.0472**	**0.103**	**0.097**	**0.040**	**0.035**	**0.020**	**0.015**	**0.020**	**0.016**	**0.008**	**0.006**
140 UNM	85	0.0551	0.113	0.107	0.045	0.040	0.020	0.015	0.022	0.018	0.008	0.006

Bold face type indicates preferred sizes. See *Notes for Table 1 through Table 4* on page 1786.

[a] *T* measured from bearing surface.
[b] Relative to maximum major diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Miniature Screws - 100° Flat Head *ASA B18.11-1961, R2010*



Size Designation	Thds per Inch	*D* Basic Major Dia.	Head Dimensions										
			A Head Dia.		*Av* at Full Cone[a] at max. *H*	*H* Head Hgt		*J* Slot Width		*T* Slot Depth		*R* Radius[b]
		Max.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
30 UNM	**318**	**0.0118**	**0.023**	**0.021**	**0.0285**	**0.007**	**0.005**	**0.004**	**0.003**	**0.004**	**0.002**	**0.005**
35 UNM	282	0.0138	0.025	0.023	0.0305	0.007	0.005	0.004	0.003	0.004	0.002	0.005
40 UNM	**254**	**0.0157**	**0.029**	**0.027**	**0.0348**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.006**
45 UNM	254	0.0177	0.033	0.031	0.0392	0.009	0.007	0.005	0.003	0.005	0.003	0.006
50 UNM	**203**	**0.0197**	**0.037**	**0.035**	**0.0459**	**0.011**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.008**
55 UNM	203	0.0217	0.041	0.039	0.0503	0.012	0.009	0.006	0.004	0.006	0.004	0.008
60 UNM	**169**	**0.0236**	**0.045**	**0.043**	**0.0546**	**0.013**	**0.010**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.010**
70 UNM	145	0.0276	0.051	0.049	0.0610	0.014	0.011	0.008	0.005	0.008	0.005	0.010
80 UNM	**127**	**0.0315**	**0.056**	**0.054**	**0.0696**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.010**	**0.006**	**0.012**
90 UNM	113	0.0354	0.062	0.058	0.0759	0.017	0.013	0.010	0.007	0.010	0.006	0.012
100 UNM	**102**	**0.0394**	**0.072**	**0.068**	**0.0847**	**0.019**	**0.015**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.016**
110 UNM	102	0.0433	0.082	0.078	0.0957	0.022	0.018	0.012	0.008	0.012	0.008	0.016
120 UNM	**102**	**0.0472**	**0.092**	**0.088**	**0.1068**	**0.025**	**0.020**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.016**	**0.010**	**0.020**
140 UNM	85	0.0551	0.103	0.097	0.1197	0.027	0.022	0.016	0.012	0.016	0.010	0.020

Bold face type indicates preferred sizes. See *Notes for Table 1 through Table 4* on page 1786.

[a] *Av* derived from maximum *D*, maximum *H*, and mean angle.

[b] Relative to maximum major diameter.

Specifications.—*Head Height:* The head heights given in the dimensional tables represent the metal measurement (after slotting).

Depth of Slots: The depth of slots on fillister, pan and binding head screws is measured from the bearing surface to the intersection of the bottom of the slot with the head diameter. On heads with a conical bearing surface, the depth of slots is measured parallel to the axis of the screw from the flat top surface to the intersection of the bottom of the slot with the bearing surface. The maximum permissible concavity of the slot shall not exceed 3 percent of the mean head diameter.

Bearing Surface: The bearing surface of fillister, pan and binding head screws shall be at right angles to the axis of the body within 2°.

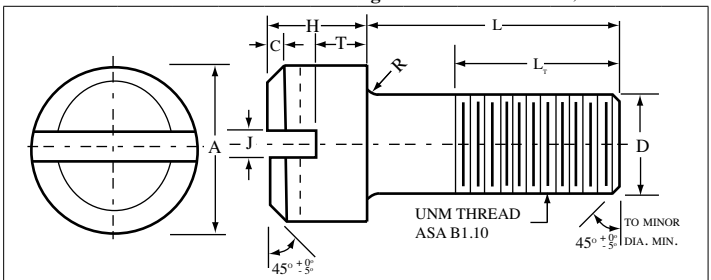
Eccentricity: Eccentricity is defined as one half of the total indicator reading.

Head Eccentricity: The heads of miniature fastening screws shall not be eccentric with the screw bodies by more than 2 percent of the maximum head diameter or 0.001 inch, whichever is the greater.

Eccentricity of Slots: Slots in miniature fastening screw heads shall not be eccentric with screw bodies by more than 5 percent of the nominal body diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Miniature Screws - Binding Head *ASA B18.11-1961, R2010*



Size Designation	Thds per Inch	*D* Basic Major Dia	Binding Head Dimensions										
			A Head Dia.		*H* Head Hgt		*J* Slot Width		*T* Slot Depth[a]		*C* Chamfer	*R* Radius	
		Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.
40 UNM	**254**	**0.0157**	**0.041**	**0.039**	**0.010**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.005**	**0.003**	**0.002**	**0.004**	**0.002**
45 UNM	254	0.0177	0.045	0.043	0.011	0.009	0.006	0.004	0.006	0.004	0.002	0.004	0.002
50 UNM	**203**	**0.0197**	**0.051**	**0.049**	**0.012**	**0.010**	**0.008**	**0.005**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.003**	**0.004**	**0.002**
55 UNM	203	0.0217	0.056	0.054	0.014	0.012	0.008	0.005	0.007	0.005	0.003	0.004	0.002
60 UNM	**169**	**0.0236**	**0.062**	**0.058**	**0.016**	**0.013**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.008**	**0.006**	**0.004**	**0.006**	**0.003**
70 UNM	145	0.0276	0.072	0.068	0.018	0.015	0.010	0.007	0.009	0.007	0.004	0.006	0.003
80 UNM	**127**	**0.0315**	**0.082**	**0.078**	**0.020**	**0.017**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.010**	**0.007**	**0.005**	**0.008**	**0.004**
90 UNM	113	0.0354	0.092	0.088	0.022	0.019	0.012	0.008	0.011	0.008	0.005	0.008	0.004
100 UNM	**102**	**0.0394**	**0.103**	**0.097**	**0.025**	**0.021**	**0.016**	**10.012**	**0.012**	**0.009**	**0.006**	**0.010**	**0.005**
110 UNM	102	0.0433	0.113	0.107	0.028	0.024	0.016	0.012	0.014	0.011	0.006	0.010	0.005
120 UNM	**102**	**0.0472**	**0.124**	**0.116**	**0.032**	**0.028**	**0.020**	**0.015**	**0.016**	**0.012**	**0.008**	**0.012**	**0.006**
140 UNM	85	0.0551	0.144	0.136	0.036	0.032	0.020	0.015	0.018	0.014	0.008	0.012	0.006

Bold face type indicates preferred sizes. See *Notes for Table 1 through Table 4* below.

[a] *T* measured from bearing surface.

Underhead Fillets: The radius of the fillet under perpendicular bearing surface type heads shall not exceed ½ times the pitch of the thread. The radius of the fillet under conical bearing surface type heads shall not exceed 2 times the pitch of the thread. The radius of the fillet under the binding head is given in Table 4.

Unthreaded Diameter: On miniature fastening screws not threaded to the head, the diameter of the unthreaded body shall not be more than the maximum major diameter of the thread nor less than the minimum pitch diameter of the thread.

Length: The length of miniature screws having perpendicular bearing surface type heads shall be measured from the bearing surface to the extreme end in a line parallel to the axis of the screw. The length of screws with conical bearing surface type heads shall be measured from the top of the head to the extreme end in a line parallel to the axis of the screw. Preferred lengths are those listed in Table 5.

Tolerance on Length: The length tolerance of miniature screws shall conform to the limits given in Table 5.

Length of Thread: On all miniature screws having a length four times the nominal body diameter or less the threaded length shall extend to within two threads of the bearing surface of the head. Screws of greater length shall possess complete threads for a minimum of four diameters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Miniature Screw Standard Lengths - Fillister Head, Pan Head, Binding Head, and 100° Flat Head *ASA B18.11*

Length (In.)		**30 UNM** [a]	35 UNM [a]	**40 UNM**	45 UNM	**50 UNM**	55 UNM	**60 UNM**	70 UNM	**80 UNM**	90 UNM	**100 UNM**	110 UNM	**120 UNM**	140 UNM
Min.	Max.	(0.0118)	(0.0138)	(0.0157)	(0.0177	(0.0197)	(0.0217)	(0.0236)	(0.0276)	(0.0315)	(0.0354)	(0.0394)	(0.0433)	(0.0472)	(0.0551)
0.016	0.020	**30-020** [b]													
0.020	0.025	**30-025**	35-025	**40-025**											
0.021	0.025	**30-025**	35-025	**40-025**											
0.027	0.032	**30-032**	35-032	**40-032**	45-032	**50-032**									
0.035	0.040	**30-040**	35-040	**40-040**	45-040	**50-040**	55-040	**60-040**							
0.044	0.050	**30-050**	35-050	**40-050**	45-050	**50-050**	50-050	**60-050**	70-050	**80-050**					
0.054	0.060	**30-060**	35-060	**40-060**	45-060	**50-060**	55-060	**60-060**	70-060	**80-060**	90-060	**100-060**			
0.072	0.080	**30-080**	35-080	**40-080**	45-080	**50-080**	55-080	**60-080**	70-080	**80-080**	90-080	**100-080**	110-080	**120-080**	
0.092	0.100	**30-100**	35-100	**40-100**	45-100	**50-100**	55-100	**60-100**	70-100	**80-100**	90-100	**100-100**	110-100	**120-100**	140-100
0.110	0.120	**30-120**	35-120	**40-120**	45-120	**50-120**	55-120	**60-120**	70-120	**80-120**	90-120	**100-120**	110-120	**120-120**	140-120
0.150	0.160	30-160	35-160	**40-160**	45-160	**50-160**	55-160	**60-160**	70-160	**80-160**	90-160	**100-160**	110-160	**120-160**	140-160
0.188	0.200		35-200	**40-200**	45-200	**50-200**	55-200	**60-200**	70-200	**80-200**	90-200	**100-200**	110-200	**120-200**	140-200
0.238	0.250				45-250	50-250	55-250	**60-250**	70-250	**80-250**	90-250	**100-250**	110-250	**120-250**	140-250
0.304	0.320						55-320	60-320	70-320	**80-320**	90-320	**100-320**	110-320	**120-320**	140-320
0.384	0.400								70-400	80-400	90-400	**100-400**	110-400	**120-400**	140-400
0.480	0.500										90-500	100-500	110-500	**120-500**	140-500
0.580	0.600												110-600	120-600	140-600

[a] Sizes 30 UMN and 35 UMN are not specified for Binding Head.
[b] Does not apply to 100° Flat Head.
Bold face type indicates preferred sizes. Sizes surrounded by heavy line apply to 100° Flat Head only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

End of Body: Miniature fastening screws shall be regularly supplied with flat ends having a chamfer of approximately 45° extending to the minor diameter of the thread as a minimum depth.

Thread Series and Tolerances: The screw threads of miniature screws shall be in conformance with American Standard Unified Miniature Screw Threads, ASA B1.10-1958.

Material and Finish: Miniature screws are generally supplied in ferrous and nonferrous materials, coatings, and heat treatments which must be specified by the user. Coatings, when required, are limited to those of electro-plating or chemical oxidation.

Designation: Screws in conformance with this standard shall be identified by the designation for thread size in conformance with American Standard ASA B1.10 followed by the nominal length in units of $^{1}/_{1000}$ inch (omitting the decimal point) and the head type. Typical examples are:

60 UNM × 040 FIL HD

100 UNM × 080 PAN HD

120 UNM × 120 FLAT HD

140 UNM × 250 BIND HD

Machined Finish: Roughness of the machined surfaces of heads shall not exceed 63 micro-inches arithmetical average (per ASA B46.1, Surface Texture) determined by visual comparison with roughness comparison specimens.

American National Standard Metric Machine Screws

This Standard B18.6.7M (Withdrawn) covers metric flat and oval countersunk and slotted and recessed pan head machine screws and metric hex head and hex flange head machine screws. Dimensions are given in Table 1 through Table 4 and Table 5.

Threads: Threads for metric machine screws are coarse M profile threads, as given in ANSI/ASME B1.13M (see page 2012), unless otherwise specified.

Length of Thread: The lengths of threads on metric machine screws are given in Table 1 for the applicable screw type, size, and length. Also see Table 6.

Diameter of Body: The body diameters of metric machine screws are within the limits specified in the dimensional tables (Table 3 through Table 4 and Table 5).

Designation: Metric machine screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size and thread pitch; nominal length; product name, including head type and driving provision; header point if desired; material (including property class, if steel); and protective finish, if required. For example:

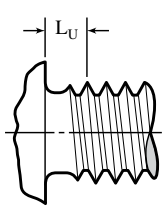
M8 × 1.25 × 30 Slotted Pan Head Machine Screw, Class 4.8 Steel, Zinc Plated

M3.5 × 0.6 × 20 Type IA Cross Recessed Oval Countersunk Head Machine Screw, Header Point, Brass

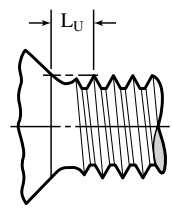
It is common ISO practice to omit the thread pitch from the product size designation when screw threads are the metric coarse thread series, e.g., M10 stands for M10 × 1.5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

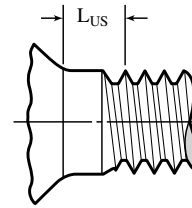
Table 1. American National Standard Thread Lengths for Metric Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)



Pan, Hex, and Hex Flange Head Screws



Flat and Oval Countersunk Head Screws



Heat-Treated Recessed Flat Countersunk Head Screws

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	L	L_{US}	L_U	L		L_{US}	L_UL	L	B
	Nominal Screw Length Equal to or Shorter than[a]	Unthreaded Length[b]		Nominal Screw Length[a]		Unthreaded Length[b]		Nominal Screw Length Longer than[a]	Full Form Thread Length[c]
		Max[d]	Max[e]	Over	To and Including	Max[d]	Max[e]		Min
M2 × 0.4	6	1.0	0.4	6	30	1.0	0.8	30	25.0
M2.5 × 0.45	8	1.1	0.5	8	30	1.1	0.9	30	25.0
M3 × 0.5	9	1.2	0.5	9	30	1.2	1.0	30	25.0
M3.5 × 0.6	10	1.5	0.6	10	50	1.5	1.2	50	38.0
M4 × 0.7	12	1.8	0.7	12	50	1.8	1.4	50	38.0
M5 × 0.8	15	2.0	0.8	15	50	2.0	1.6	50	38.0
M6 × 1	18	2.5	1.0	18	50	2.5	2.0	50	38.0
M8 × 1.25	24	3.1	1.2	24	50	3.1	2.5	50	38.0
M10 × 1.5	30	3.8	1.5	30	50	3.8	3.0	50	38.0
M12 × 1.75	36	4.4	1.8	36	50	4.4	3.5	50	38.0

[a] The length tolerances for metric machine screws are: up to 3 mm, incl., ± 0.2 mm; over 3 to 10 mm, incl., ± 0.3 mm; over 10 to 16 mm, incl., ± 0.4 mm; over 16 to 50 mm, incl., ± 0.5 mm; over 50 mm, ± 1.0 mm.

[b] Unthreaded lengths L_U and L_{US} represent the distance, measured parallel to the axis of screw, from the underside of the head to the face of a nonchamfered or noncounterbored standard GO thread ring gage assembled by hand as far as the thread will permit.

[c] Refer to the illustrations for respective screw head styles.

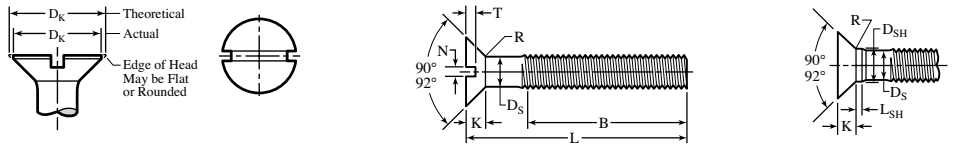
[d] The L_{US} values apply only to heat-treated recessed flat countersunk head screws.

[e] The L_U values apply to all screws except heat-treated recessed flat countersunk head screws.

All dimensions in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Slotted, Cross and Square Recessed Flat Countersunk Head Metric Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Slotted and Style A		Style B															
	D_S		D_{SH}[a]		D_S	L_{SH}[a]		D_K			K	R		N		T	
	Body Diameter		Body and Shoulder Diameter	Shoulder Diameter	Body Diameter	Shoulder Length		Head Diameter			Head Height	Underhead Fillet Radius		Slot Width		Slot Depth	
								Theoretical Sharp		Actual							
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max. Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M2 × 0.4[b]	2.00	1.65	2.00	1.86	1.65	0.50	0.30	4.4	4.1	3.5	1.2	0.8	0.4	0.7	0.5	0.6	0.4
M2.5 × 0.45	2.50	2.12	2.50	2.36	2.12	0.55	0.35	5.5	5.1	4.4	1.5	1.0	0.5	0.8	0.6	0.7	0.5
M3 × 0.5	3.00	2.58	3.00	2.86	2.58	0.60	0.40	6.3	5.9	5.2	1.7	1.2	0.6	1.0	0.8	0.9	0.6
M3.5 × 0.6	3.50	3.00	3.50	3.32	3.00	0.70	0.50	8.2	7.7	6.9	2.3	1.4	0.7	1.2	1.0	1.2	0.9
M4 × 0.7	4.00	3.43	4.00	3.82	3.43	0.80	0.60	9.4	8.9	8.0	2.7	1.6	0.8	1.5	1.2	1.3	1.0
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.36	5.00	4.82	4.36	0.90	0.70	10.4	9.8	8.9	2.7	2.0	1.0	1.5	1.2	1.4	1.1
M6 × 1	6.00	5.21	6.00	5.82	5.21	1.10	0.90	12.6	11.9	10.9	3.3	2.4	1.2	1.9	1.6	1.6	1.2
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.04	8.00	7.78	7.04	1.40	1.10	17.3	16.5	15.4	4.6	3.2	1.6	2.3	2.0	2.3	1.8
M10 × 1.5	10.00	8.86	10.00	9.78	8.86	1.70	1.30	20.0	19.2	17.8	5.0	4.0	2.0	2.8	2.5	2.6	2.0

[a] All recessed head heat-treated steel screws of property class 9.8 or higher strength have the Style B head form. Recessed head screws other than those specifically designated to be Style B have the Style A head form. The underhead shoulder on the Style B head form is mandatory and all other head dimensions are common to both the Style A and Style B head forms.

[b] This size is not specified for Type III square recessed flat countersunk heads; Type II cross recess is not specified for any size.

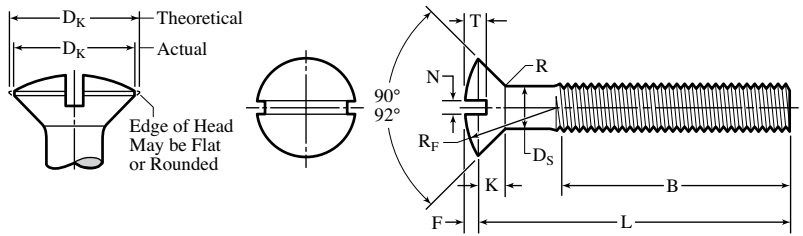
All dimensions in millimeters.

For dimension *B*, see Table 1.

For dimension *L*, see Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Slotted, Cross and Square Recessed Oval Countersunk Head Metric Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)

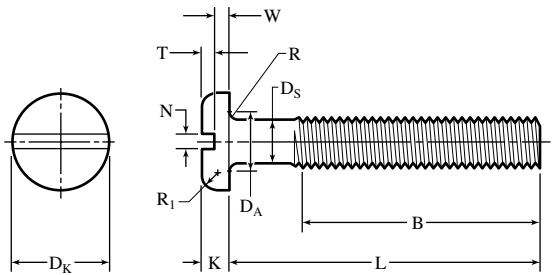


Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	D_S		D_K			K	F	R_F	R		N		T	
	Body Diameter		Head Diameter			Head Side Height	Raised Head Height	Head Top Radius	Underhead Fillet Radius		Slot Width		Slot Depth	
			Theoretical Sharp		Actual									
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max. Ref.	Max.	Approx.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M2 × 0.4[a]	2.00	1.65	4.4	4.1	3.5	1.2	0.5	5.0	0.8	0.4	0.7	0.5	1.0	0.8
M2.5 × 0.45	2.50	2.12	5.5	5.1	4.4	1.5	0.6	6.6	1.0	0.5	0.8	0.6	1.2	1.0
M3 × 0.5	3.00	2.58	6.3	5.9	5.2	1.7	0.7	7.4	1.2	0.6	1.0	0.8	1.5	1.2
M3.5 × 0.6	3.50	3.00	8.2	7.7	6.9	2.3	0.8	10.9	1.4	0.7	1.2	1.0	1.7	1.4
M4 × 0.7	4.00	3.43	9.4	8.9	8.0	2.7	1.0	11.6	1.6	0.8	1.5	1.2	1.9	1.6
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.36	10.4	9.8	8.9	2.7	1.2	11.9	2.0	1.0	1.5	1.2	2.4	2.0
M6 × 1	6.00	5.21	12.6	11.9	10.9	3.3	1.4	14.9	2.4	1.2	1.9	1.6	2.8	2.4
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.04	17.3	16.5	15.4	4.6	2.0	19.7	3.2	1.6	2.3	2.0	3.7	3.2
M10 × 1.5	10.00	8.86	20.0	19.2	17.8	5.0	2.3	22.9	4.0	2.0	2.8	2.5	4.4	3.8

[a] This size is not specified for Type III square recessed oval countersunk heads; Type II cross recess is not specified for any size.
All dimensions in millimeters.
For dimension *B*, see Table 1.
For dimension *L*, see Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Slotted and Cross and Square Recessed Pan Head Metric Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)



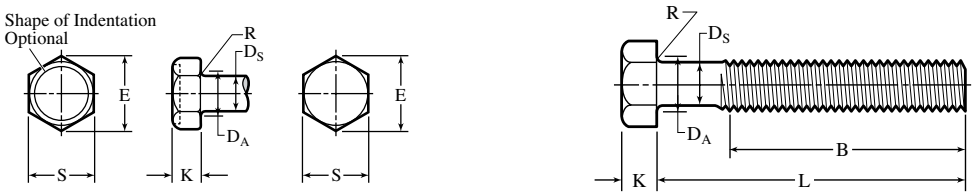
Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	D_s Body Diameter		D_K Head Diameter		Slotted K Head Height		Slotted R_1 Head Radius	Cross and Square Recess K Head Height		Cross and Square Recess R_1 Head Radius	D_A Underhead Fillet Transition Dia.	R Underhead Fillet Radius	N Slot Width		T Slot Depth	W Unslotted Head Thickness
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.
M2×0.4[a]	2.00	1.65	4.0	3.7	1.3	1.1	0.8	1.6	1.4	3.2	2.6	0.1	0.7	0.5	0.5	0.4
M2.5×0.45	2.50	2.12	5.0	4.7	1.5	1.3	1.0	2.1	1.9	4.0	3.1	0.1	0.8	0.6	0.6	0.5
M3×0.5	3.00	2.58	5.6	5.3	1.8	1.6	1.2	2.4	2.2	5.0	3.6	0.1	1.0	0.8	0.7	0.7
M3.5×0.6	3.50	3.00	7.0	6.6	2.1	1.9	1.4	2.6	2.3	6.0	4.1	0.1	1.2	1.0	0.8	0.8
M4×0.7	4.00	3.43	8.0	7.6	2.4	2.2	1.6	3.1	2.8	6.5	4.7	0.2	1.5	1.2	1.0	0.9
M5×0.8	5.00	4.36	9.5	9.1	3.0	2.7	2.0	3.7	3.4	8.0	5.7	0.2	1.5	1.2	1.2	1.2
M6×1	6.00	5.21	12.0	11.5	3.6	3.3	2.5	4.6	4.3	10.0	6.8	0.3	1.9	1.6	1.4	1.4
M8×1.25	8.00	7.04	16.0	15.5	4.8	4.5	3.2	6.0	5.6	13.0	9.2	0.4	2.3	2.0	1.9	1.9
M10×1.5	10.00	8.86	20.0	19.4	6.0	5.7	4.0	7.5	7.1	16.0	11.2	0.4	2.8	2.5	2.4	2.4

[a] This size not specified for Type III square recessed pan heads; Type II cross recess is not specified for any size.
All dimensions in millimeters.
For dimension *B*, see Table 1.
For dimension *L*, see Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Hex and Hex Flange Head Metric Machine Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)*

Hex Head



Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	D_S		S^a		E^a	K		D_A	R
	Body Diameter		Hex Width Across Flats		Hex Width Across Corners	Head Height		Underhead Fillet	
								Transition Dia.	Radius
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M2 × 0.4	2.00	1.65	3.20	3.02	3.38	1.6	1.3	2.6	0.1
M2.5 × 0.45	2.50	2.12	4.00	3.82	4.28	2.1	1.8	3.1	0.1
M3 × 0.5	3.00	2.58	5.00	4.82	5.40	2.3	2.0	3.6	0.1
M3.5 × 0.6	3.50	3.00	5.50	5.32	5.96	2.6	2.3	4.1	0.1
M4 × 0.7	4.00	3.43	7.00	6.78	7.59	3.0	2.6	4.7	0.2
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.36	8.00	7.78	8.71	3.8	3.3	5.7	0.2
M6 × 1	6.00	5.21	10.00	9.78	10.95	4.7	4.1	6.8	0.3
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.04	13.00	12.73	14.26	6.0	5.2	9.2	0.4
M10 × 1.5	10.00	8.86	16.00	15.73	17.62	7.5	6.5	11.2	0.4
M12 × 1.75	12.00	10.68	18.00	17.73	19.86	9.0	7.8	13.2	0.4
M10 × 1.5[b]	10.00	8.86	15.00	14.73	16.50	7.5	6.5	11.2	0.4

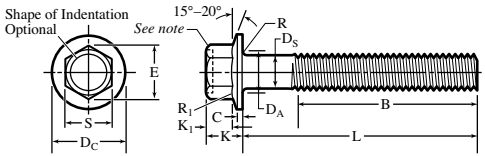
[a] Dimensions across flats and across corners of the head are measured at the point of maximum metal. Taper of sides of head (angle between one side and the axis) shall not exceed 2° or 0.10 mm, whichever is greater, the specified width across flats being the large dimension.

[b] The M10 size screws having heads with 15 mm width across flats are not ISO Standard. Unless M10 size screws with 15 mm width across flats are specifically ordered, M10 size screws with 16 mm width across flats shall be furnished.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Hex and Hex Flange Head Metric Machine Screws** *ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)*

Hex Flange Head



Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Body Diameter, D_S		Hex Width Across Flats, S[a]		Hex Width Across Corners, E[a] Min.	Flange Diameter, D_C		Overall Head Height, K	Hex Height, K_1 Min.	Flange Edge Thickness, C[b] Min.	Flange Top Fillet Radius, R_1 Max.	Underhead Fillet	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.					Max. Transition Dia., D_A	Min. Radius, R
M2 × 0.4	2.00	1.65	3.00	2.84	3.16	4.5	4.1	2.2	1.3	0.3	0.1	2.6	0.1
M2.5 × 0.45	2.50	2.12	3.20	3.04	3.39	5.4	5.0	2.7	1.6	0.3	0.2	3.1	0.1
M3 × 0.5	3.00	2.58	4.00	3.84	4.27	6.4	5.9	3.2	1.9	0.4	0.2	3.6	0.1
M3.5 × 0.6	3.50	3.00	5.00	4.82	5.36	7.5	6.9	3.8	2.4	0.5	0.2	4.1	0.1
M4 × 0.7	4.00	3.43	5.50	5.32	5.92	8.5	7.8	4.3	2.8	0.6	0.2	4.7	0.2
M5 × 0.8	5.00	4.36	7.00	6.78	7.55	10.6	9.8	5.4	3.5	0.7	0.3	5.7	0.2
M6 × 1	6.00	5.21	8.00	7.78	8.66	12.8	11.8	6.7	4.2	1.0	0.4	6.8	0.3
M8 × 1.25	8.00	7.04	10.00	9.78	10.89	16.8	15.5	8.6	5.6	1.2	0.5	9.2	0.4
M10 × 1.5	10.00	8.86	13.00	12.72	14.16	21.0	19.3	10.7	7.0	1.4	0.6	11.2	0.4
M12 × 1.75	12.00	10.68	15.00	14.72	16.38	24.8	23.3	13.7	8.4	1.8	0.7	13.2	0.4

[a] Dimensions across flats and across corners of the head are measured at the point of maximum metal. Taper of sides of head (angle between one side and the axis) shall not exceed 2° or 0.10 mm, whichever is greater, the specified width across flats being the large dimension.

[b] The contour of the edge at periphery of flange is optional provided the minimum flange thickness is maintained at the minimum flange diameter. The top surface of flange may be straight or slightly rounded (convex) upward.

All dimensions in millimeters.

A slight rounding of all edges of the hexagon surfaces of indented hex heads is permissible provided the diameter of the bearing circle is not less than the equivalent of 90 percent of the specified minimum width across flats dimension.

Heads may be indented, trimmed, or fully upset at the option of the manufacturer.

For dimension *B*, see Table 1.

For dimension *L*, see Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Recommended Nominal Screw Lengths for Metric Machine Screws

Nominal Screw Length	Nominal Screw Size									
	M2	M2.5	M3	M3.5	M4	M5	M6	M8	M10	M12
2.5	PH									
3	A	PH								
4	A	A	PH							
5	A	A	A	PH	PH					
6	A	A	A	A	A	PH				
8	A	A	A	A	A	A	A			
10	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A		
13	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	
16	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	H
20	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	H
25		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	H
30			A	A	A	A	A	A	A	H
35				A	A	A	A	A	A	H
40					A	A	A	A	A	H
45						A	A	A	A	H
50						A	A	A	A	H
55							A	A	A	H
60							A	A	A	H
65								A	A	H
70								A	A	H
80								A	A	H
90									A	H

All dimensions in millimeters.

[1]The nominal screw lengths included between the heavy lines are recommended for the respective screw sizes and screw head styles as designated by the symbols.

A—Signifies screws of all head styles covered in this standard.

P—Signifies pan head screws.

H—Signifies hex and hex flange head screws.

Table 7. Clearance Holes for Metric Machine Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn), Appendix

Nominal Screw Size	Basic Clearance Hole Diameter[a]		
	Close Clearance[b]	Normal Clearance (Preferred)[b]	Loose Clearance[b]
M2	2.20	2.40	2.60
M2.5	2.70	2.90	3.10
M3	3.20	3.40	3.60
M3.5	3.70	3.90	4.20
M4	4.30	4.50	4.80
M5	5.30	5.50	5.80
M6	6.40	6.60	7.00
M8	8.40	9.00	10.00
M10	10.50	11.00	12.00
M12	13.00	13.50	14.50

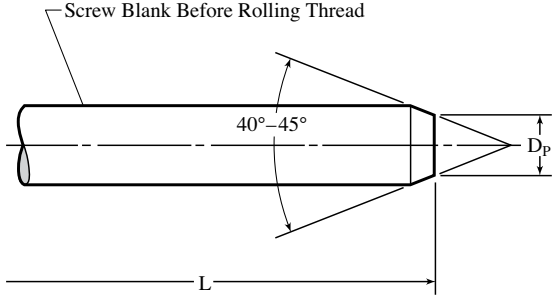
[a] The values given in this table are minimum limits. The recommended plus tolerances are as follows: for clearance hole diameters over 1.70 to and including 5.80 mm, plus 0.12, 0.20, and 0.30 mm for close, normal, and loose clearances, respectively; for clearance hole diameters over 5.80 to 14.50 mm, plus 0.18, 0.30, and 0.45 mm for close, normal, and loose clearances, respectively.

[b] Normal clearance hole sizes are preferred. Close clearance hole sizes are for situations such as critical alignment of assembled components, wall thickness, or other limitations which necessitate the use of a minimal hole. Countersinking or counterboring at the fastener entry side may be necessary for the proper seating of the head. Loose clearance hole sizes are for applications where maximum adjustment capability between the components being assembled is necessary.

All dimensions in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. American National Standard Header Points for Metric Machine Screws Before Threading *ANSI/ASME B18.6.7M-1999 (Withdrawn)*



Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	D_P Point Diameter		L^a Nominal Screw Length
	Max.	Min.	Max.
M2 × 0.4	1.33	1.21	13
M2.5 × 0.45	1.73	1.57	13
M3 × 0.5	2.12	1.93	16
M3.5 × 0.6	2.46	2.24	20
M4 × 0.7	2.80	2.55	25
M5 × 0.8	3.60	3.28	30
M6 × 1	4.25	3.85	40
M8 × 1.25	5.82	5.30	40
M10 × 1.5	7.36	6.71	40
M12 × 1.75	8.90	8.11	45

[a] Header points apply to these nominal lengths or shorter. The pointing of longer lengths may require machining to the dimensions specified.

All dimensions in millimeters.

The edge of the point may be rounded and the end of point need not be flat nor perpendicular to the axis of screw shank.

British Machine Screws

Many of these classifications of fasteners are covered in British Standards BS 57:1951, "B.A. Screws, Bolts and Nuts"; BS 450:1958 (obsolescent), "Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts (BSW and BSF Threads)"; BS 1981:1953, "Unified Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts"; BS 2827:1957 (obsolescent):1957, "Machine Screw Nuts, Pressed Type (B.A. and Whitworth Form Threads)"; BS 3155:1960, "American Machine Screws and Nuts in Sizes Below $\frac{1}{4}$ inch Diameter"; and BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent), "Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts, Metric Series." At a conference organized by the British Standards Institution in 1965 at which the major sectors of British industry were represented, a policy statement was approved that urged British firms to regard the traditional screw thread systems—Whitworth, B.A. and BSF—as obsolescent, and to make the internationally-agreed ISO metric thread their first choice (with ISO Unified thread as second choice) for all future designs. It is recognized that some sections of British industry already using ISO inch (Unified) screw threads may find it necessary, for various reasons, to continue with their use for some time: Whitworth and B.A. threads should, however, be superseded by ISO metric threads in preference to an

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

intermediate change to ISO inch threads. Fasteners covered by BS 57, BS 450 and BS 2827:1957(obsolescent)eventuallywouldbesupersededandreplacedbyfastenersspecified by BS 4183.

British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Machine Screws.—British Standard BS 450:1958 (obsolescent) covers machine screws and nuts with British Standard Whitworth and British Standard Fine threads. All the various heads in common use in both slotted and recessed forms are covered. Head shapes are shown on page 1809 and dimensions on page 1811. It is intended that this standard will eventually be superseded by BS 4183, "Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts, Metric Series."

British Standard Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts, Metric Series.—British Standard BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent) gives dimensions and tolerances for: countersunk head, raised countersunk head, and cheese head slotted head screws in a diameter range from M1 (1 mm) to M20 (20 mm); pan head slotted head screws in a diameter range from M2.5 (2.5 mm) to M10 (10 mm); countersunk head and raised countersunk head recessed head screws in a diameter range from M2.5 (2.5 mm) to M12 (12 mm); pan head recessed head screws in a diameter range from M2.5 (2.5 mm) to M10 (10 mm); and square and hexagon machine screw nuts in a diameter range from M1.6 (1.6 mm) to M10 (10 mm). Mechanical properties are also specified for steel, brass and aluminum alloy machine screws and machine screw nuts in this standard.

Material: The materials from which the screws and nuts are manufactured have a tensile strength not less than the following: steel, 40 kgf/mm^2 (392 N/mm^2); brass, 32 kgf/mm^2 (314 N/mm^2); and aluminum alloy, 32 kgf/mm^2 (314 N/mm^2). The unit, kgf/mm^2 is in accordance with ISO DR 911 and the unit in parentheses has the relationship, 1 kgf = 9.80665 newtons. These minimum strengths are applicable to the finished products. Steel machine screws conform to the requirements for strength grade designation 4.8. The strength grade designation system for machine screws consists of two figures, the first is $^1/_{10}$ of the minimum tensile strength in kgf/mm^2, the second is $^1/_{10}$ of the ratio between the yield stress and the minimum tensile strength expressed as a percentage: $^1/_{10}$ minimum tensile strength of 40 kgf/mm^2 gives the symbol "4"; $^1/_{10}$ ratio $\frac{\text{yield stress}}{\text{minimum tensile strength}}\%$ = $^1/_{10} \times {}^{32}/_{40} \times 100/1$ = "8"; giving the strength grade designation "4.8." Multiplication of these two figures gives the minimum yield stress in kgf/mm^2.

Coating of Screws and Nuts: It is recommended that the coating comply with the appropriate part of BS 3382. "Electroplated Coatings on Threaded Components."

Screw Threads: Screw threads are ISO metric coarse pitch series threads in accordance with BS 3643. "ISO Metric Screw Threads," Part 1, "Thread Data and Standard Thread Series." The external threads used for screws conform to tolerance Class 6g limits (medium fit) as given in BS 3643, "ISO Metric Screw Threads," Part 2, "Limits and Tolerances for Coarse Pitch Series Threads." The internal threads used for nuts conform to tolerance Class 6H limits (medium fit) as given in BS 3643: Part 2.

Nominal Lengths of Screws: For countersunk head screws the nominal length is the distance from the upper surface of the head to the extreme end of the shank, including any chamfer, radius, or cone point. For raised countersunk head screws the nominal length is the distance from the upper surface of the head (excluding the raised portion) to the extreme end of the shank, including any chamfer, radius, or cone point. For pan and cheese head screws the nominal length is the distance from the underside of the head to the extreme end of the shank, including any chamfer, radius, or cone point. Standard nominal lengths and tolerances are given in Table 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Lengths of Thread on Screws: The length of thread is the distance from the end of the screw (including any chamfer, radius, or cone point) to the leading face of a nut without countersink which has been screwed as far as possible onto the screw by hand. The minimum thread length is shown in the following table:

Nominal Thread Dia., *d*[a]	M1	M1.2	(M1.4)	M1.6	M2	(M2.2)	M2.5	M3	(M3.5)	M4
Thread Length *b* (Min.)	[b]	[b]	[b]	15	16	17	18	19	20	22
Nominal Thread Dia., *d*[a]	(M4.5)	M5	M6	M8	M10	M12	(M14)	M16	(M18)	M20
Thread Length *b* (Min.)	24	25	28	34	40	46	52	58	64	70

[a] Items shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
[b] Threaded up to the head.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Screws of nominal thread diameter M1, M1.2 and M1.4 and screws of larger diameters that are too short for the above thread lengths are threaded as far as possible up to the head.

In these screws the length of unthreaded shank under the head does not exceed 1½ pitches for lengths up to twice the diameter and 2 pitches for longer lengths, and is defined as the distance from the leading face of a nut that has been screwed as far as possible onto the screw by hand to: 1) the junction of the basic major diameter and the countersunk portion of the head on countersunk and raised countersunk heads; and 2) the underside of the head on other types of heads.

Diameter of Unthreaded Shank on Screws: The diameter of the unthreaded portion of the shank on screws is not greater than the basic major diameter of the screw thread and not less than the minimum effective diameter of the screw thread. The diameter of the unthreaded portion of shank is closely associated with the method of manufacture; it will generally be nearer the major diameter of the thread for turned screws and nearer the effective diameter for those produced by cold heading.

Radius Under the Head of Screws: The radius under the head of pan and cheese head screws runs smoothly into the face of the head and shank without any step or discontinuity. A true radius is not essential providing that the curve is smooth and lies wholly within the maximum radius. Any radius under the head of countersunk head screws runs smoothly into the conical bearing surface of the head and the shank without any step or discontinuity. The radius values given in Table 1 and Table 2 are regarded as the maximum where the shank diameter is equal to the major diameter of the thread and minimum where the shank diameter is approximately equal to the effective diameter of the thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. British Standard Slotted Countersunk Head Machine Screws — Metric Series *BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size d[a]	Head Diameter D		Head Height k		Radius r[b]	Thread Length b	Thread Run-out a	Flushness Tolerance[c]	Slot Width n		Slot Depth t	
	Max. (Theor. Sharp) $2d$	Min. $1.75d$	Max. $0.5d$	Min. $0.45d$		Min.	Max. $2p$[d]	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max. $0.3d$	Min. $0.2d$
M1	2.00	1.75	0.50	0.45	0.1	[e]	0.50	…	0.45	0.31	0.30	0.20
M1.2	2.40	2.10	0.60	0.54	0.1	[e]	0.50	…	0.50	0.36	0.36	0.24
(M1.4)	2.80	2.45	0.70	0.63	0.1	[e]	0.60	…	0.50	0.36	0.42	0.28
M1.6	3.20	2.80	0.80	0.72	0.1	15.0	0.70	…	0.60	0.46	0.48	0.32
M2.0	4.00	3.50	1.00	0.90	0.1	16.0	0.80	…	0.70	0.56	0.60	0.40
(M2.2)	4.40	3.85	1.10	0.99	0.1	17.0	0.90	…	0.80	0.66	0.66	0.44
M2.5	5.00	4.38	1.25	1.12	0.1	18.0	0.90	0.10	0.80	0.66	0.75	0.50
M3	6.00	5.25	1.50	1.35	0.1	19.0	1.00	0.12	1.00	0.86	0.90	0.60
(M3.5)	7.00	6.10	1.75	1.57	0.2	20.0	1.20	0.13	1.00	0.86	1.05	0.70
M4	8.00	7.00	2.00	1.80	0.2	22.0	1.40	0.15	1.20	1.06	1.20	0.80
(M4.5)	9.00	7.85	2.25	2.03	0.2	24.0	1.50	0.17	1.20	1.06	1.35	0.90
M5	10.00	8.75	2.50	2.25	0.2	25.0	1.60	0.19	1.51	1.26	1.50	1.00
M6	12.00	10.50	3.00	2.70	0.25	28.0	2.00	0.23	1.91	1.66	1.80	1.20
M8	16.00	14.00	4.00	3.60	0.4	34.0	2.50	0.29	2.31	2.06	2.40	1.60
M10	20.00	17.50	5.00	4.50	0.4	40.0	3.00	0.37	2.81	2.56	3.00	2.00
M12	24.00	21.00	6.00	5.40	0.6	46.0	3.50	0.44	3.31	3.06	3.60	2.40
(M14)	28.00	24.50	7.00	6.30	0.6	52.0	4.00	0.52	3.31	3.06	4.20	2.80
M16	32.00	28.00	8.00	7.20	0.6	58.0	4.00	0.60	4.37	4.07	4.80	3.20
(M18)	36.00	31.50	9.00	8.10	0.6	64.0	5.00	0.67	4.37	4.07	5.40	3.60
M20	40.00	35.00	10.00	9.00	0.8	70.0	5.00	0.75	5.37	5.07	6.00	4.00

[a] Nominal sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
[b] See *Radius Under the Head of Screws* description in text.
[c] See *Dimensions of 90-Degree Countersunk Head Screws* description in text.
[d] See text following table in *Lengths of Thread on Screws* description in text.
[e] Threaded up to head.

All dimensions are given in millimeters. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1804. Recessed head screws are also standard and are available. For dimensions see British Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. British Standard Slotted Raised Countersunk Head Machine Screws—Metric Series *BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size d[a]	Head Diameter D		Head Height k		Radius Under Head r[b]	Thread Length b	Thread Run-out a	Height of Raised Portion f	Head Radius R	Slot Width n		Slot Depth t	
	Max. (Theor. Sharp) $2d$	Min. $1.75d$	Max. $0.5d$	Min. $0.45d$		Min.	Max. $2p$[c]	Nom. $0.25d$	Nom.	Max.	Min.	Max. $0.5d$	Min. $0.4d$
M1	2.00	1.75	0.50	0.45	0.1	[d]	0.50	0.25	2.0	0.45	0.31	0.50	0.40
M1.2	2.40	2.10	0.60	0.54	0.1	[d]	0.50	0.30	2.5	0.50	0.36	0.60	0.48
(M1.4)	2.80	2.45	0.70	0.63	0.1	[d]	0.60	0.35	2.5	0.50	0.36	0.70	0.56
M1.6	3.20	2.80	0.80	0.72	0.1	15.0	0.70	0.40	3.0	0.60	0.46	0.80	0.64
M2.0	4.00	3.50	1.00	0.90	0.1	16.0	0.80	0.50	4.0	0.70	0.56	1.00	0.80
(M2.2)	4.40	3.85	1.10	0.99	0.1	17.0	0.90	0.55	4.0	0.80	0.66	1.10	0.88
M2.5	5.00	4.38	1.25	1.12	0.1	18.0	0.90	0.60	5.0	0.80	0.66	1.25	1.00
M3	6.00	5.25	1.50	1.35	0.1	19.0	1.00	0.75	6.0	1.00	0.86	1.50	1.20
(M3.5)	7.00	6.10	1.75	1.57	0.2	20.0	1.20	0.90	6.0	1.00	0.86	1.75	1.40
M4	8.00	7.00	2.00	1.80	0.2	22.0	1.40	1.00	8.0	1.20	1.06	2.00	1.60
(M4.5)	9.00	7.85	2.25	2.03	0.2	24.0	1.50	1.10	8.0	1.20	1.06	2.25	1.80
M5	10.00	8.75	2.50	2.25	0.2	25.0	1.60	1.25	10.0	1.51	1.26	2.50	2.00
M6	12.00	10.50	3.00	2.70	0.25	28.0	2.00	1.50	12.0	1.91	1.66	3.00	2.40
M8	16.00	14.00	4.00	3.60	0.4	34.0	2.50	2.00	16.0	2.31	2.06	4.00	3.20
M10	20.00	17.50	5.00	4.50	0.4	40.0	3.00	2.50	20.0	2.81	2.56	5.00	4.00
M12	24.00	21.00	6.00	5.40	0.6	46.0	3.50	3.00	25.0	3.31	3.06	6.00	4.80
(M14)	28.00	24.50	7.00	6.30	0.6	52.0	4.00	3.50	25.0	3.31	3.06	7.00	5.60
M16	32.00	28.00	8.00	7.20	0.6	58.0	4.00	4.00	32.0	4.37	4.07	8.00	6.40
(M18)	36.00	31.50	9.00	8.10	0.6	64.0	5.00	4.50	32.0	4.37	4.07	9.00	7.20
M20	40.00	35.00	10.00	9.00	0.8	70.0	5.00	5.00	40.0	5.37	5.07	10.00	8.00

[a] Nominal sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
[b] See *Radius Under the Head of Screws* description in text.
[c] See text following table in *Lengths of Thread on Screws* description in text.
[d] Threaded up to head.

All dimensions are given in millimeters. For dimensional notation see diagram on page 1804. Recessed head screws are also standard and available. For dimensions see British Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ends of Screws: When screws are made with rolled threads, the "lead" formed by the thread rolling operation is normally regarded as providing the necessary chamfer and no other machining is necessary. The ends of screws with cut threads are normally finished with a chamfer conforming to the dimension in Fig. 1a through Fig. 1d. At the option of the manufacturer, the ends of screws smaller than M6 (6-mm diameter) may be finished with a radius approximately equal to $1\frac{1}{4}$ times the nominal diameter of the shank. When cone point ends are required, they should have the dimensions given in Fig. 1a through Fig. 1d.

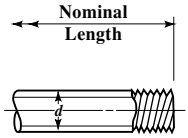
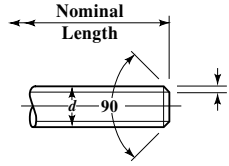


Fig. 1a. Rolled Thread End (Approximate Form as Rolled)



Cut Thread Chamfered End

Fig. 1b. Chamfer to Extend to Slightly Below the Minor Diameter

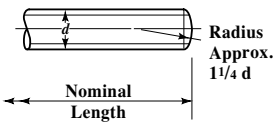


Fig. 1c. Cut Thread Radiused End (Permissible on Sizes Below M6 Diameter)

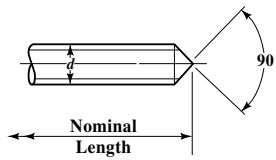


Fig. 1d. Cone Pointed End (Permissible on Cut or Rolled Thread Screws, but Regarded as "Special")

Dimensions of 90-Degree Countersunk Head Screws: One of the appendices to this British Standard states that countersunk head screws should fit into the countersunk hole with as great a degree of flushness as possible. To achieve this condition, it is necessary for the dimensions of both the head of the screw and the countersunk hole to be controlled within prescribed limits. The maximum or design size of the head is controlled by a theoretical diameter to a sharp corner and the minimum head angle of 90 degrees. The minimum head size is controlled by a minimum head diameter, the maximum head angle of 92 degrees and a flushness tolerance (see Fig. 2). The edge of the head may be flat or rounded, as shown in Fig. 3.

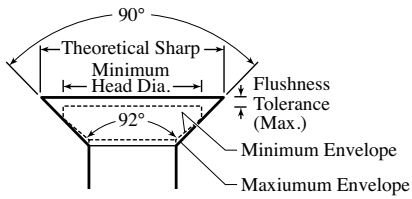


Fig. 2. Head Configuration

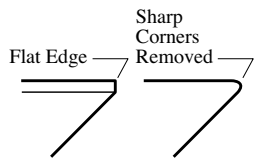
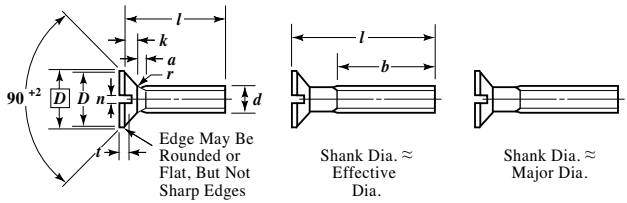


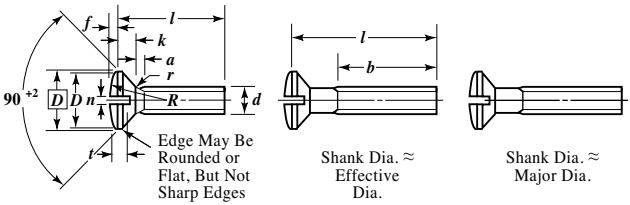
Fig. 3. Edge Configuration

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

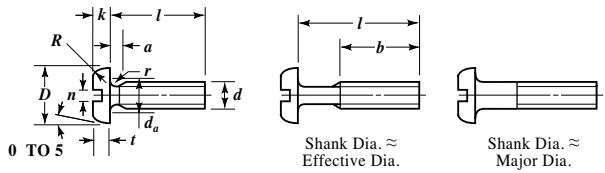
British Standard Machine Screws and Machine Screw Nuts—Metric Series



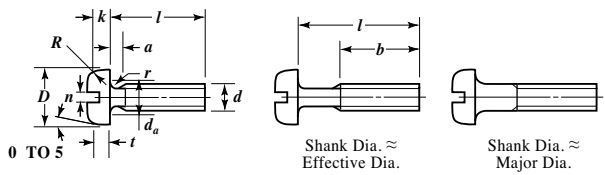
Slotted Countersunk Head Machine Screws



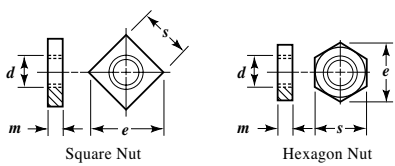
Slotted Raised Countersunk Head Machine Screws



Slotted Pan Head Machine Screws



Slotted Cheese Head Machine Screws



Machine Screw Nuts, Pressed Type, Square and Hexagon

For dimensions, see Table 1 through Table 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. British Standard Slotted Pan Head Machine Screws — Metric Series *BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size d[a]	Head Diameter D		Head Height k		Head Radius R	Radius Under Head r	Transition Diameter d_a
	Max. $2d$	Min.	Max. $0.6d$	Min.	Max $0.4d$	Min.	Max.
M2.5	5.00	4.70	1.50	1.36	1.00	0.10	3.10
M3	6.00	5.70	1.80	1.66	1.20	0.10	3.60
(M3.5)	7.00	6.64	2.10	1.96	1.40	0.20	4.30
M4	8.00	7.64	2.40	2.26	1.60	0.20	4.70
(M4.5)	9.00	8.64	2.70	2.56	1.80	0.20	5.20
M5	10.00	9.64	3.00	2.86	2.00	0.20	5.70
M6	12.00	11.57	3.60	3.42	2.50	0.25	6.80
M8	16.00	15.57	4.80	4.62	3.20	0.40	9.20
M10	20.00	19.48	6.00	5.82	4.00	0.40	11.20

[a] Nominal sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.

Nominal Size d[a]	Thread Length b	Thread Run-out a	Slot Width n		Slot Depth t	
	Min.	Max. $2p$[b]	Max.	Min.	Max. $0.6k$	Min. $0.4k$
M2.5	18.00	0.90	0.80	0.66	0.90	0.60
M3	19.00	1.00	1.00	0.86	1.08	0.72
(M3.5)	20.00	1.20	1.00	0.86	1.26	0.84
M4	22.00	1.40	1.20	1.06	1.44	0.96
(M4.5)	24.00	1.50	1.20	1.06	1.62	1.08
M5	25.00	1.60	1.51	1.26	1.80	1.20
M6	28.00	2.00	1.91	1.66	2.16	1.44
M8	34.00	2.50	2.31	2.06	2.88	1.92
M10	40.00	3.00	2.81	2.56	3.60	2.40

[a] Nominal sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.

[b] See *Lengths of Thread on Screws* on page 1800.

All dimensions are in millimeters. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1804. Recessed head screws are also standard and available. For dimensions, see British Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. British Standard Slotted Cheese Head Machine Screws—Metric Series *BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent)*

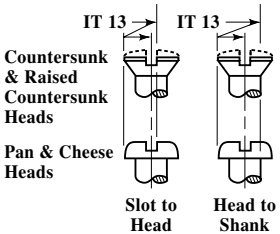
Nominal Size *d*[a]	Head Diameter *D*		Head Height *k*		Radius *r*[b]	Transition Diameter d_a	Thread Length *b*	Thread Run-out *a*	Slot Width *n*		Slot Depth *t*	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.[c]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
M1	2.00	1.75	0.70	0.56	0.10	1.30	[b]	0.50	0.45	0.31	0.44	0.30
M1.2	2.30	2.05	0.80	0.66	0.10	1.50	[b]	0.50	0.50	0.36	0.49	0.35
(M1.4)	2.60	2.35	0.90	0.76	0.10	1.70	[b]	0.60	0.50	0.36	0.60	0.40
M1.6	3.00	2.75	1.00	0.86	0.10	2.00	15.00	0.70	0.60	0.46	0.65	0.45
M2	3.80	3.50	1.30	1.16	0.10	2.60	16.00	0.80	0.70	0.56	0.85	0.60
(M2.2)	4.00	3.70	1.50	1.36	0.10	2.80	17.00	0.90	0.80	0.66	1.00	0.70
M2.5	4.50	4.20	1.60	1.46	0.10	3.10	18.00	0.90	0.80	0.66	1.00	0.70
M3	5.50	5.20	2.00	1.86	0.10	3.60	19.00	1.00	1.00	0.86	1.30	0.90
(M3.5)	6.00	5.70	2.40	2.26	0.10	4.10	20.00	1.20	1.00	0.86	1.40	1.00
M4	7.00	6.64	2.60	2.46	0.20	4.70	22.00	1.40	1.20	1.06	1.60	1.20
(M4.5)	8.00	7.64	3.10	2.92	0.20	5.20	24.00	1.50	1.20	1.06	1.80	1.40
M5	8.50	8.14	3.30	3.12	0.20	5.70	25.00	1.60	1.51	1.26	2.00	1.50
M6	10.00	9.64	3.90	3.72	0.25	6.80	28.00	2.00	1.91	1.66	2.30	1.80
M8	13.00	12.57	5.00	4.82	0.40	9.20	34.00	2.50	2.31	2.06	2.80	2.30
M10	16.00	15.57	6.00	5.82	0.40	11.20	40.00	3.00	2.81	2.56	3.20	2.70
M12	18.00	17.57	7.00	6.78	0.60	14.20	46.00	3.50	3.31	3.06	3.80	3.20
(M14)	21.00	20.48	8.00	7.78	0.60	16.20	52.00	4.00	3.31	3.06	4.20	3.60
M16	24.00	23.48	9.00	8.78	0.60	18.20	58.00	4.00	4.37	4.07	4.60	4.00
(M18)	27.00	26.48	10.00	9.78	0.60	20.20	64.00	5.00	4.37	4.07	5.10	4.50
M20	30.00	29.48	11.00	10.73	0.80	22.40	70.00	5.00	5.27	5.07	5.60	5.00

[a] Nominal sizes shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
[b] Threaded up to head.
[c] See text following table in *Lengths of Thread on Screws* description in text.
All dimensions are given in millimeters. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1804.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. British Standard Machine Screws and Nuts.—Metric Series *BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent)*

Concentricity Tolerances



Nominal Size d^a	Head to Shank and Slot to Head (IT 13)	
	Countersunk, Raised Csk., and Pan Heads	Cheese Heads
M1, M1.2, (M1.4)	0.14	0.14
M1.6	0.18	0.14
M2, (M2.2), M2.5, M3	0.18	0.18
(M3.5)	0.22	0.18
M4, (M4.5), M5	0.22	0.22
M6	0.27	0.22
M8	0.27	0.27
M10, M12	0.33	0.27
(M14)	0.33	0.33
M16, (M18), M20	0.39	0.33

Nominal Lengths and Tolerances on Length for Machine Screws

Nominal Length[a]	Tolerance	Nominal Length[a]	Tolerance
1.5	±0.12	45	±0.50
2	±0.12	50	±0.060
2.5	±0.20	55	±0.60
3	±0.20	60	±0.60
4	±0.24	65	±0.60
5	±0.24	70	±0.60
6	±0.24	75	±0.60
(7)	±0.29	80	±0.60
8	±0.29	85	±0.70
(9)	±0.29	90	±0.70
10	±0.29	(95)	±0.70
(11)	±0.35	100	±0.70
12	±0.35	(105)	±0.70
14	±0.35	110	±0.70
16	±0.35	(115)	±0.70
(18)	±0.35	120	±0.70
20	±0.42	(125)	±0.70
(22)	±0.42	130	±0.80
25	±0.42	140	±0.80
(28)	±0.42	150	±0.80
30	±0.42	160	±0.80
(38)	±0.50	190	±0.925
40	±0.50	200	±0.925

Dimensions of Machine Screw Nuts, Pressed Type, Square and Hexagon

Nominal Size d^a	Width Across		
	Flats s		Corners e
	Max.	Min.	Square
M1.6	3.2	3.02	4.5
M2	4.0	3.82	5.7
(M2.2)	4.5	4.32	6.4
(M2.5)	5.0	4.82	7.1
M3	5.5	5.32	7.8
(M3.5)	6.0	5.82	8.5
M4	7.0	6.78	9.9
M5	8.0	7.78	11.3
M6	10.0	9.78	14.1
M8	13.0	12.73	18.4
M10	17.0	16.73	24.0

Nominal Size d^a	Width Across Corners e	Thickness m	
	Hexagon	Max.	Min
M1.6	3.7	1.0	0.75
M2	4.6	1.2	0.95
(M2.2)	5.2	1.2	0.95
M2.5	5.8	1.6	1.35
M3	6.4	1.6	1.35
(M3.5)	6.9	2.0	1.75
M4	8.1	2.0	1.75
M5	9.2	2.5	2.25
M6	11.5	3.0	2.75
M8	15.0	4.0	3.70
M10	19.6	5.0	4.70
M8	13.0	12.73	18.4
M10	17.0	16.73	24.0

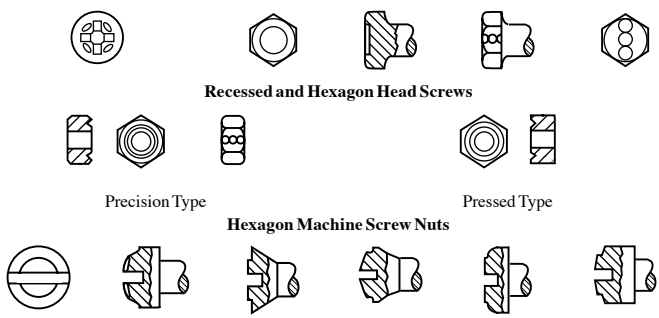
[a] Nominal sizes and lengths shown in parentheses are non-preferred.
All dimensions are given in millimeters. For dimensional notation, see diagram on page 1804.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

General Dimensions: The general dimensions and tolerances for screws and nuts are given in the accompanying tables. Although slotted screw dimensions are given, recessed head screws are also standard and available. Dimensions of recessed head screws are given in BS 4183:1967 (obsolescent).

British Unified Machine Screws and Nuts.—British Standard BS 1981:1953 covers certain types of machine screws and machine screw nuts for which agreement has been reached with the United States and Canada as to general dimensions for interchangeability. These types are: countersunk, raised-countersunk, pan, and raised-cheese head screws with slotted or recessed heads; small hexagon head screws; and precision and pressed nuts. All have Unified threads. Head shapes are shown on page 1809 and dimensions are given on page 1810.

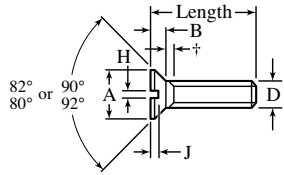
Identification: As revised by Amendment No. 1 in February 1955, this standard now requires that the above-mentioned screws and nuts that conform to this standard should have a distinguishing feature applied to identify them as Unified. All recessed head screws are to be identified as Unified by a groove in the form of four arcs of a circle in the upper surface of the head. All hexagon head screws are to be identified as Unified by: 1) a circular recess in the upper surface of the head; 2) a continuous line of circles indented on one or more of the flats of the hexagon and parallel to the screw axis; and 3) at least two contiguous circles indented on the upper surface of the head. All *machine screw* nuts of the pressed type shall be identified as Unified by means of the application of a groove indented in one face of the nut approximately midway between the major diameter of the thread and flats of the square or hexagon. *Slotted head screws* shall be identified as Unified either by a circular recess or by a circular platform or raised portion on the upper surface of the head. *Machine screw nuts* of the *precision type* shall be identified as Unified by either a groove indented on one face of the front approximately midway between the major diameter of the thread and the flats of the hexagon or a continuous line of circles indented on one or more of the flats of the hexagon and parallel to the nut axis.



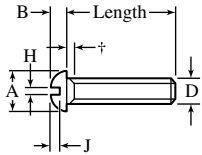
Identification Markings for British Standard Unified Machine Screws

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

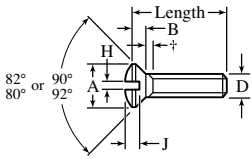
British Standard Machine Screws and Nuts
BS 450:1958 (obsolescent) and BS 1981:1953



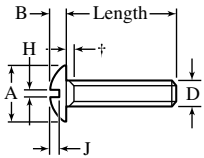
80° Countersunk head screw (Unified)
90° Countersink head screw (BSW & BSF)



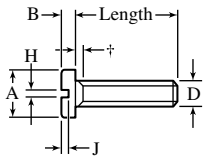
Round head screw (BSW & BSF)



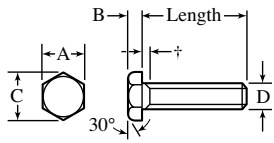
80° Raised countersunk head screw (Unified)
90° Raised countersunk head screw (BSW & BSF)



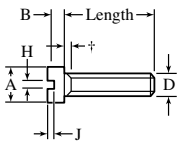
Mushroom head screw (BSW & BSF)



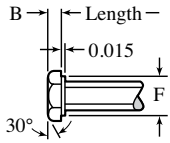
Pan head screw (Unified, BSW & BSF)



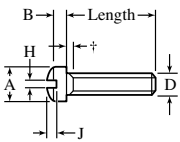
Hexagon head screw (Unified)



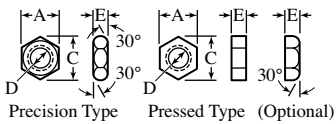
Cheese head screw (BSW & BSF)



Hexagon head screw (Unified) alternate design



Raised cheese head screw (Unified)



Hexagon machine screw nut (Unified)

*Countersinks to suit the screws should have a maximum angle of 80° (Unified) or 90° (BSF and BSW) with a negative tolerance.

†Unified countersunk and raised countersunk head screws 2 inches long and under are threaded right up to the head. Other Unified, BSW and BSF machine screws 2 inches long and under have an unthread shank equal to twice the pitch. All Unified, BSW and BSF machine screws longer than 2 inches have a minimum thread length of $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Unified Machine Screws and Nuts *BS 1981:1953 (R2004)*

Nom. Size of Screw	Basic Dia. *D*	Threads per Inch		Dia. of Head *A*		Depth of Head *B*		Width of Slot *H*		Depth of Slot *J*
		UNC	UNF	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
80° Countersunk Head Screws[a,b]										
4	0.112	40	…	0.211	0.194	0.067	…	0.039	0.031	0.025
6	0.138	32	…	0.260	0.242	0.083	…	0.048	0.039	0.031
8	0.164	32	…	0.310	0.291	0.100	…	0.054	0.045	0.037
10	0.190	24[c]	32	0.359	0.339	0.116	…	0.060	0.050	0.044
¼	0.250	20	28	0.473	0.450	0.153	…	0.075	0.064	0.058
5/16	0.3125	18	24	0.593	0.565	0.191	…	0.084	0.072	0.073
⅜	0.375	16	24	0.712	0.681	0.230	…	0.094	0.081	0.086
7/16	0.4375	14	20	0.753	0.719	0.223	…	0.094	0.081	0.086
½	0.500	13	20	0.808	0.770	0.223	…	0.106	0.091	0.086
⅝	0.625	11	18	1.041	0.996	0.298	…	0.133	0.116	0.113
¾	0.750	10	16	1.275	1.223	0.372	…	0.149	0.131	0.141
Pan Head Screws[b]										
4	0.112	40	…	0.219	0.205	0.068	0.058	0.039	0.031	0.036
6	0.138	32	…	0.270	0.256	0.082	0.072	0.048	0.039	0.044
8	0.164	32	…	0.322	0.306	0.096	0.085	0.054	0.045	0.051
10	0.190	24[c]	32	0.373	0.357	0.110	0.099	0.060	0.050	0.059
¼	0.250	20	28	0.492	0.473[d]	0.144	0.130	0.075	0.064	0.079
5/16	0.3125	18	24	0.615	0.594	0.178	0.162	0.084	0.072	0.101
⅜	0.375	16	24	0.740	0.716	0.212	0.195	0.094	0.081	0.122
7/16	0.4375	14	20	0.863	0.838	0.247	0.227	0.094	0.081	0.133
½	0.500	13	20	0.987	0.958	0.281	0.260	0.106	0.091	0.152
⅝	0.625	11	18	1.125	1.090	0.350	0.325	0.133	0.116	0.189
¾	0.750	10	16	1.250	1.209	0.419	0.390	0.149	0.131	0.226
Raised Cheese-Head Screws[b]										
4	0.112	40	…	0.183	0.166	0.107	0.088	0.039	0.031	0.042
6	0.138	32	…	0.226	0.208	0.132	0.111	0.048	0.039	0.053
8	0.164	32	…	0.270	0.250	0.156	0.133	0.054	0.045	0.063
10	0.190	24[c]	32	0.313	0.292	0.180	0.156	0.060	0.050	0.074
¼	0.250	20	28	0.414	0.389	0.237	0.207	0.075	0.064	0.098
5/16	0.3125	18	24	0.518	0.490	0.295	0.262	0.084	0.072	0.124
⅜	0.375	16	24	0.622	0.590	0.355	0.315	0.094	0.081	0.149
7/16	0.4375	14	20	0.625	0.589	0.368	0.321	0.094	0.081	0.153
½	0.500	13	20	0.750	0.710	0.412	0.362	0.106	0.091	0.171
⅝	0.625	11	18	0.875	0.827	0.521	0.461	0.133	0.116	0.217
¾	0.750	10	16	1.000	0.945	0.612	0.542	0.149	0.131	0.254

[a] All dimensions, except *J*, given for the No. 4 to ⅜-inch sizes, incl., also apply to all the 80° Raised Countersunk Head Screws given in the Standard.

[b] Also available with recessed heads.

[c] Non-preferred.

[d] By arrangement may also be 0.468.

Nom. Size	Basic Dia. *D*	Threads per Inch		Width Across Flats *A*		Width Across Corners *C*	Head Depth *B* Nut Thick. *E*		Washer Face Dia. *F*	
		UNC	UNF	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Hexagon Head Screws										
4	0.112	40	…	0.1875	0.1835	0.216	0.060	0.055	0.183	0.173
6	0.138	32	…	0.2500	0.2450	0.289	0.080	0.074	0.245	0.235
8	0.164	32	…	0.2500	0.2450	0.289	0.110	0.104	0.245	0.235
10	0.190	24[c]	32	0.3125	0.3075	0.361	0.120	0.113	0.307	0.297
Hexagon Machine Screw Nuts—Precision Type										
4	0.112	40	…	0.1875	0.1835	0.216	0.098	0.087	…	…
6	0.138	32	…	0.2500	0.2450	0.269	0.114	0.102	…	…
8	0.164	32	…	0.3125	0.3075	0.361	0.130	0.117	…	…
10	0.190	24[c]	…	0.3125	0.3075	0.361	0.130	0.117	…	…
Hexagon Machine Screw Nuts—Pressed Type										
4	0.112	40	…	0.2500	0.2410	0.289	0.087	0.077	…	…
6	0.138	32	…	0.3125	0.3020	0.361	0.114	0.102	…	…
8	0.164	32	…	0.3438	0.3320	0.397	0.130	0.117	…	…
10	0.190	24[c]	32	0.3750	0.3620	0.433	0.130	0.117	…	…
¼	0.250	20	28	0.4375	0.4230	0.505	0.193	0.178	…	…
5/16	0.3125	18	24	0.5625	0.5450	0.649	0.225	0.208	…	…
⅜	0.375	16	24	0.6250	0.6070	0.722	0.257	0.239	…	…

All dimensions in inches. See page 1809 for a pictorial representation and letter dimensions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Machine Screws

BS 450:1958 (obsolescent)

	Nom. Size of Screw	Basic Dia. *D*	Threads per Inch		Dia. of Head *A*		Depth of Head *B*		Width of Slot *H*		Depth of Slot *J*
			BSW	BSF	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
90° Countersunk Head Screws[a,b]	1/8	0.1250	40	…	0.219	0.201	0.056	…	0.039	0.032	0.027
	3/16	0.1875	24	32[c]	0.328	0.307	0.084	…	0.050	0.042	0.041
	7/32	0.2188	…	28[c]	0.383	0.360	0.098	…	0.055	0.046	0.048
	1/4	0.2500	20	26	0.438	0.412	0.113	…	0.061	0.051	0.055
	5/16	0.3125	18	22	0.547	0.518	0.141	…	0.071	0.061	0.069
	3/8	0.3750	16	20	0.656	0.624	0.169	…	0.082	0.072	0.083
	7/16	0.4375	14	18	0.766	0.729	0.197	…	0.093	0.082	0.097
	1/2	0.5000	12	16	0.875	0.835	0.225	…	0.104	0.092	0.111
	9/16	0.5625	12[c]	16[c]	0.984	0.941	0.253	…	0.115	0.103	0.125
	5/8	0.6250	11	14	1.094	1.046	0.281	…	0.126	0.113	0.138
	3/4	0.7500	10	12	1.312	1.257	0.338	…	0.148	0.134	0.166
Round Head Screws[b]	1/8	0.1250	40	…	0.219	0.206	0.087	0.082	0.039	0.032	0.048
	3/16	0.1875	24	32[c]	0.328	0.312[d]	0.131	0.124	0.050	0.042	0.072
	7/32	0.2188	…	28[c]	0.383	0.365	0.153	0.145	0.055	0.046	0.084
	1/4	0.2500	20	26	0.438	0.417	0.175	0.165	0.061	0.051	0.096
	5/16	0.3125	18	22	0.547	0.524	0.219	0.207	0.071	0.061	0.120
	3/8	0.3750	16	20	0.656	0.629	0.262	0.249	0.082	0.072	0.144
	7/16	0.4375	14	18	0.766	0.735	0.306	0.291	0.093	0.082	0.168
	1/2	0.5000	12	16	0.875	0.840	0.350	0.333	0.104	0.092	0.192
	9/16	0.5625	12[c]	16[c]	0.984	0.946	0.394	0.375	0.115	0.103	0.217
	5/8	0.6250	11	14	1.094	1.051	0.437	0.417	0.126	0.113	0.240
	3/4	0.7500	10	12	1.312	1.262	0.525	0.500	0.148	0.134	0.288
Pan Head Screws[b]	1/8	0.1250	40	…	0.245	0.231	0.075	0.065	0.039	0.032	0.040
	3/16	0.1875	24	32[c]	0.373	0.375	0.110	0.099	0.050	0.042	0.061
	7/32	0.2188	…	28[c]	0.425	0.407	0.125	0.112	0.055	0.046	0.069
	1/4	0.2500	20	26	0.492	0.473[e]	0.144	0.130	0.061	0.051	0.078
	5/16	0.3125	18	22	0.615	0.594	0.178	0.162	0.071	0.061	0.095
	3/8	0.3750	16	20	0.740	0.716	0.212	0.195	0.082	0.072	0.112
	7/16	0.4375	14	18	0.863	0.838	0.247	0.227	0.093	0.082	0.129
	1/2	0.5000	12	16	0.987	0.958	0.281	0.260	0.104	0.092	0.145
	9/16	0.5625	12[c]	16[c]	1.031	0.999	0.315	0.293	0.115	0.103	0.162
	5/8	0.6250	11	14	1.125	1.090	0.350	0.325	0.126	0.113	0.179
	3/4	0.7500	10	12	1.250	1.209	0.419	0.390	0.148	0.134	0.213
Cheese Head Screws[b]	1/8	0.1250	40	…	0.188	0.180	0.087	0.082	0.039	0.032	0.039
	3/16	0.1875	24	32[c]	0.281	0.270	0.131	0.124	0.050	0.042	0.059
	7/32	0.2188	…	28[c]	0.328	0.315	0.153	0.145	0.055	0.046	0.069
	1/4	0.2500	20	26	0.375	0.360	0.175	0.165	0.061	0.051	0.079
	5/16	0.3125	18	22	0.469	0.450	0.219	0.207	0.071	0.061	0.098
	3/8	0.3750	16	20	0.562	0.540	0.262	0.249	0.082	0.072	0.118
	7/16	0.4375	14	18	0.656	0.630	0.306	0.291	0.093	0.082	0.138
	1/2	0.5000	12	16	0.750	0.720	0.350	0.333	0.104	0.092	0.157
	9/16	0.5625	12[c]	16[c]	0.844	0.810	0.394	0.375	0.115	0.103	0.177
	5/8	0.6250	11	14	0.938	0.900	0.437	0.417	0.126	0.113	0.197
	3/4	0.7500	10	12	1.125	1.080	0.525	0.500	0.148	0.134	0.236
Mushroom Head Screws[b]	1/8	0.1250	40	…	0.289	0.272	0.078	0.066	0.043	0.035	0.040
	3/16	0.1875	24	32[c]	0.448	0.425	0.118	0.103	0.060	0.050	0.061
	1/4	0.2500	20	26	0.573	0.546	0.150	0.133	0.075	0.064	0.079
	5/16	0.3125	18	22	0.698	0.666	0.183	0.162	0.084	0.072	0.096
	3/8	0.3750	16	20	0.823	0.787	0.215	0.191	0.094	0.081	0.112

[a] All dimensions, except *J*, given for the 1/8- through 3/8-inch sizes also apply to all the 90° Raised Countersunk Head Screw dimensions given in the Standard.

[b] These screws are also available with recessed heads; dimensions of recess are not given here but may be found in the Standard.

[c] Non-preferred size; avoid use whenever possible.

[d] By arrangement may also be 0.309.

[e] By arrangement may also be 0.468.

All dimensions in inches.

See diagram on page 1809 for a pictorial representation of screws and letter dimensions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

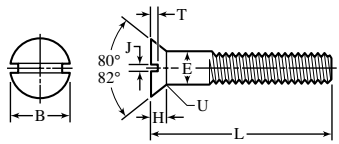
CAP AND SET SCREWS

Slotted Head Cap Screws.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010) is intended to cover the complete general and dimensional data for the various styles of slotted head cap screws as well as square head and slotted headless set screws (see page 1819). Reference should be made to this Standard for information or data not found in the following text or tables.

Length of Thread: The length of complete (full form) thread on cap screws is equal to twice the basic screw diameter plus 0.250 in. with a plus tolerance of 0.188 in. or an amount equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the pitch of the thread, whichever is greater. Cap screws of lengths too short to accommodate the minimum thread length have full form threads extending to within a distance equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ pitches (threads) of the head.

Designation: Slotted head cap screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; screw length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name; material; and protective finish, if required. Examples: ½-13 × 3 Slotted Round Head Cap Screw, SAE Grade 2 Steel, Zinc Plated. .750-16 × 2.25 Slotted Flat Countersunk Head Cap Screw, Corrosion Resistant Steel.

Table 1. American National Standard Slotted Flat Countersunk Head Cap Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Body Dia., *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Hgt., *H*	Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*		Fillet Rad., *U*
				Edge Sharp	Edge Rnd'd. or Flat						
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
¼	0.2500	.2500	.2450	.500	.452	.140	.075	.064	.068	.045	.100
5⁄16	0.3125	.3125	.3070	.625	.567	.177	.084	.072	.086	.057	.125
⅜	0.3750	.3750	.3690	.750	.682	.210	.094	.081	.103	.068	.150
7⁄16	0.4375	.4375	.4310	.812	.736	.210	.094	.081	.103	.068	.175
½	0.5000	.5000	.4930	.875	.791	.210	.106	.091	.103	.068	.200
9⁄16	0.5625	.5625	.5550	1.000	.906	.244	.118	.102	.120	.080	.225
⅝	0.6250	.6250	.6170	1.125	1.020	.281	.133	.116	.137	.091	.250
¾	0.7500	.7500	.7420	1.375	1.251	.352	.149	.131	.171	.115	.300
⅞	0.8750	.8750	.8660	1.625	1.480	.423	.167	.147	.206	.138	.350
1	1.0000	1.0000	.9900	1.875	1.711	.494	.188	.166	.240	.162	.400
1⅛	1.1250	1.1250	1.1140	2.062	1.880	.529	.196	.178	.257	.173	.450
1¼	1.2500	1.2500	1.2390	2.312	2.110	.600	.211	.193	.291	.197	.500
1⅜	1.3750	1.3750	1.3630	2.562	2.340	.665	.226	.208	.326	.220	.550
1½	1.5000	1.5000	1.4880	2.812	2.570	.742	.258	.240	.360	.244	.600

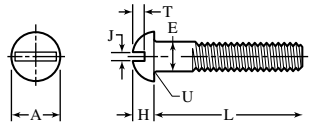
[a] When specifying a nominal size in decimals, the zero preceding the decimal point is omitted as is any zero in the fourth decimal place.

All dimensions are in inches.

Threads: Threads are Unified Standard Class 2A; UNC, UNF and 8 UN Series or UNRC, UNRF, and 8 UNR Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Slotted Round Head Cap Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



Nom. Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter		Body Diameter, *E*		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
¼	0.2500	.2500	.2450	.437	.418	.191	.175	.075	.064	.117	.097
5⁄16	0.3125	.3125	.3070	.562	.540	.245	.226	.084	.072	.151	.126
⅜	0.3750	.3750	.3690	.625	.603	.273	.252	.094	.081	.168	.138
7⁄16	0.4375	.4375	.4310	.750	.725	.328	.302	.094	.081	.202	.167
½	0.5000	.5000	.4930	.812	.786	.354	.327	.106	.091	.218	.178
9⁄16	0.5625	.5625	.5550	.937	.909	.409	.378	.118	.102	.252	.207
⅝	0.6250	.6250	.6170	1.000	.970	.437	.405	.133	.116	.270	.220
¾	0.7500	.7500	.7420	1.250	1.215	.546	.507	.149	.131	.338	.278

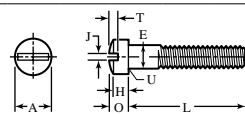
[a] When specifying a nominal size in decimals, the zero preceding the decimal point is omitted as is any zero in the fourth decimal place.

All dimensions are in inches.

Fillet Radius, U: For fillet radius see foonote to table below.

Threads: Threads are Unified Standard Class 2A; UNC, UNF and 8 UN Series or UNRC, UNRF and 8 UNR Series.

Table 3. American National Standard Slotted Fillister Head Cap Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



Nom. Size[a] or Basic Screw Dia.		Body Dia., *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Side Height, *H*		Total Head Height, *O*		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
¼	0.2500	.2500	.2450	.375	.363	.172	.157	.216	.194	.075	.064	.097	.077
5⁄16	0.3125	.3125	.3070	.437	.424	.203	.186	.253	.230	.084	.072	.115	.090
⅜	0.3750	.3750	.3690	.562	.547	.250	.229	.314	.284	.094	.081	.142	.112
7⁄16	0.4375	.4375	.4310	.625	.608	.297	.274	.368	.336	.094	.081	.168	.133
½	0.5000	.5000	.4930	.750	.731	.328	.301	.413	.376	.106	.091	.193	.153
9⁄16	0.5625	.5625	.5550	.812	.792	.375	.346	.467	.427	.118	.102	.213	.168
⅝	0.6250	.6250	.6170	.875	.853	.422	.391	.521	.478	.133	.116	.239	.189
¾	0.7500	.7500	.7420	1.000	.976	.500	.466	.612	.566	.149	.131	.283	.223
⅞	0.8750	.8750	.8660	1.125	1.098	.594	.556	.720	.668	.167	.147	.334	.264
1	1.0000	1.0000	.9900	1.312	1.282	.656	.612	.803	.743	.188	.166	.371	.291

[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, the zero preceding the decimal point is omitted as is any zero in the fourth decimal place.

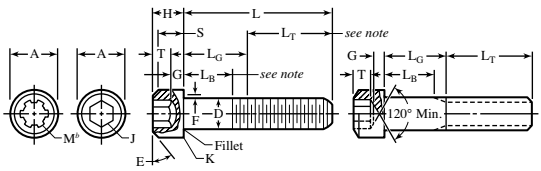
All dimensions are in inches.

Fillet Radius, U: The fillet radius is as follows: For screw sizes ¼ to ⅜ incl., .031 max. and .016 min.; 7⁄16 to 9⁄16, incl., .047 max., .016 min.; and for ⅝ to 1, incl., .062 max., .031 min.

Threads: Threads are Unified Standard Class 2A; UNC, UNF and 8 UN Series or UNRC, UNRF and 8 UNR Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Hexagon and Spline Socket Head Cap Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012*



Nominal Size	Body Diameter, *D* Max.	Body Diameter, *D* Min.	Head Diameter, *A* Max.	Head Diameter, *A* Min.	Head Height, *H* Max.	Head Height, *H* Min.	Spline Socket[a] Size, *M*[b]	Nom. Hex. Socket Size, *J*		Fillet Ext., *F* Max.	Key Engagement,[a] *T*
0	0.0600	0.0568	0.096	0.091	0.060	0.057	0.060	0.050		0.007	0.025
1	0.0730	0.0695	0.118	0.112	0.073	0.070	0.072	1/16	0.062	0.007	0.031
2	0.0860	0.0822	0.140	0.134	0.086	0.083	0.096	5/64	0.078	0.008	0.038
3	0.0990	0.0949	0.161	0.154	0.099	0.095	0.096	5/64	0.078	0.008	0.044
4	0.1120	0.1075	0.183	0.176	0.112	0.108	0.111	3/32	0.094	0.009	0.051
5	0.1250	0.1202	0.205	0.198	0.125	0.121	0.111	3/32	0.094	0.010	0.057
6	0.1380	0.1329	0.226	0.218	0.138	0.134	0.133	7/64	0.109	0.010	0.064
8	0.1640	0.1585	0.270	0.262	0.164	0.159	0.168	9/64	0.141	0.012	0.077
10	0.1900	0.1840	0.312	0.303	0.190	0.185	0.183	3/32	0.156	0.014	0.090
1/4	0.2500	0.2435	0.375	0.365	0.250	0.244	0.216	3/16	0.188	0.014	0.120
5/16	0.3125	0.3053	0.469	0.457	0.312	0.306	0.291	1/4	0.250	0.017	0.151
3/8	0.3750	0.3678	0.562	0.550	0.375	0.368	0.372	5/16	0.312	0.020	0.182
7/16	0.4375	0.4294	0.656	0.642	0.438	0.430	0.454	3/8	0.375	0.023	0.213
1/2	0.5000	0.4919	0.750	0.735	0.500	0.492	0.454	3/8	0.375	0.026	0.245
5/8	0.6250	0.6163	0.938	0.921	0.625	0.616	0.595	1/2	0.500	0.032	0.307
3/4	0.7500	0.7406	1.125	1.107	0.750	0.740	0.620	5/8	0.625	0.039	0.370
7/8	0.8750	0.8647	1.312	1.293	0.875	0.864	0.698	3/4	0.750	0.044	0.432
1	1.0000	0.9886	1.500	1.479	1.000	0.988	0.790	3/4	0.750	0.050	0.495
1 1/8	1.1250	1.1086	1.688	1.665	1.125	1.111	…	7/8	0.875	0.055	0.557
1 1/4	1.2500	1.2336	1.875	1.852	1.250	1.236	…	7/8	0.875	0.060	0.620
1 3/8	1.3750	1.3568	2.062	2.038	1.375	1.360	…	1	1.000	0.065	0.682
1 1/2	1.5000	1.4818	2.250	2.224	1.500	1.485	…	1	1.000	0.070	0.745
1 3/4	1.7500	1.7295	2.625	2.597	1.750	1.734	…	1 1/4	1.250	0.080	0.870
2	2.0000	1.9780	3.000	2.970	2.000	1.983	…	1 1/2	1.500	0.090	0.995
2 1/4	2.2500	2.2280	3.375	3.344	2.250	2.232	…	1 3/4	1.750	0.100	1.120
2 1/2	2.5000	2.4762	3.750	3.717	2.500	2.481	…	1 3/4	1.750	0.110	1.245
2 3/4	2.7500	2.7262	4.125	4.090	2.750	2.730	…	2	2.000	0.120	1.370
3	3.0000	2.9762	4.500	4.464	3.000	2.979	…	2 1/4	2.250	0.130	1.495
3 1/4	3.2500	3.2262	4.875	4.837	3.250	3.228	…	2 1/4	2.250	0.140	1.620
3 1/2	3.5000	3.4762	5.250	5.211	3.500	3.478	…	2 3/4	2.750	0.150	1.745
3 3/4	3.7500	3.7262	5.625	5.584	3.750	3.727	…	2 3/4	2.750	0.160	1.870
4	4.0000	3.9762	6.000	5.958	4.000	3.976	…	3	3.000	0.170	1.995

[a] Key engagement depths are minimum. Spline socket sizes are nominal.

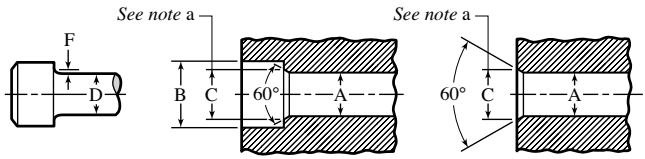
[b] Spline driven fasteners are removed from the latest revision. For additional information on these fasteners, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998.

All dimensions in inches. The body length L_B of the screw is the length of the unthreaded cylindrical portion of the shank. The length of thread, L_T, is the distance from the extreme point to the last complete (full form) thread. Standard length increments for screw diameters up to 1 inch are 1/16 inch for lengths 1/8 through 1/4 inch, 1/8 inch for lengths 1/4 through 1 inch, 1/4 inch for lengths 1 through 3 1/2 inches, 1/2 inch for lengths 3 1/2 through 7 inches, 1 inch for lengths 7 through 10 inches and for diameters over 1 inch are 1/2 inch for lengths 1 through 7 inches, 1 inch for lengths 7 through 10 inches, and 2 inches for lengths over 10 inches.

Heads may be plain or knurled, and chamfered to an angle *E* of 30 to 45 degrees with the surface of the flat. The thread conforms to the Unified Standard with radius root, Class 3A UNRC and UNRF for screw sizes No. 0 through 1 inch inclusive, Class 2A UNRC and UNRF for over 1 inch through 1 1/2 inches inclusive, and Class 2A UNRC for larger sizes. Socket dimensions are given in Table 11. For details not shown, including materials, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Drill and Counterbore Sizes For Socket Head Cap Screws (1960 Series)



Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter		Nominal Drill Size				Counterbore Diameter	Countersink Diameter[a]
		Close Fit[b]		Normal Fit[c]			
		Number or Fractional Size	Decimal Size	Number or Fractional Size	Decimal Size		
		A				*B*	*C*
0	0.0600	51	0.067	49	0.073	1/8	0.074
1	0.0730	46	0.081	43	0.089	5/32	0.087
2	0.0860	3/32	0.094	36	0.106	3/16	0.102
3	0.0990	36	0.106	31	0.120	7/32	0.115
4	0.1120	1/8	0.125	29	0.136	7/32	0.130
5	0.1250	9/64	0.141	23	0.154	1/4	0.145
6	0.1380	23	0.154	18	0.170	9/32	0.158
8	0.1640	15	0.180	10	0.194	5/16	0.188
10	0.1900	5	0.206	2	0.221	3/8	0.218
1/4	0.2500	17/64	0.266	9/32	0.281	7/16	0.278
5/16	0.3125	21/64	0.328	11/32	0.344	17/32	0.346
3/8	0.3750	25/64	0.391	13/32	0.406	5/8	0.415
7/16	0.4375	29/64	0.453	15/32	0.469	23/32	0.483
1/2	0.5000	33/64	0.516	17/32	0.531	13/16	0.552
5/8	0.6250	41/64	0.641	21/32	0.656	1	0.689
3/4	0.7500	49/64	0.766	25/32	0.781	1 3/16	0.828
7/8	0.8750	57/64	0.891	29/32	0.906	1 3/8	0.963
1	1.0000	1 1/64	1.016	1 1/32	1.031	1 5/8	1.100
1 1/4	1.2500	1 9/32	1.281	1 5/16	1.312	2	1.370
1 1/2	1.5000	1 17/32	1.531	1 9/16	1.562	2 3/8	1.640
1 3/4	1.7500	1 25/32	1.781	1 13/16	1.812	2 3/4	1.910
2	2.0000	2 1/32	2.031	2 1/16	2.062	3 1/8	2.180

[a] *Countersink:* It is considered good practice to countersink or break the edges of holes which are smaller than (*D* Max + 2*F* Max) in parts having a hardness which approaches, equals or exceeds the screw hardness. If such holes are not countersunk, the heads of screws may not seat properly or the sharp edges on holes may deform the fillets on screws thereby making them susceptible to fatigue in applications involving dynamic loading. The countersink or corner relief, however, should not be larger than is necessary to insure that the fillet on the screw is cleared.

[b] *Close Fit:* The close fit is normally limited to holes for those lengths of screws which are threaded to the head in assemblies where only one screw is to be used or where two or more screws are to be used and the mating holes are to be produced either at assembly or by matched and coordinated tooling.

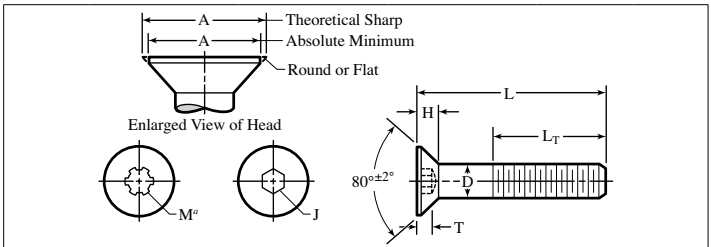
[c] *Normal Fit:* The normal fit is intended for screws of relatively long length or for assemblies involving two or more screws where the mating holes are to be produced by conventional tolerancing methods. It provides for the maximum allowable eccentricity of the longest standard screws and for certain variations in the parts to be fastened, such as: deviations in hole straightness, angularity between the axis of the tapped hole and that of the hole for the shank, differences in center distances of the mating holes, etc.

All dimensions in inches.

Source: Appendix to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Hexagon and Spline Socket Flat Countersunk Head Cap Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012*



Nominal Size	Body Diameter		Head Diameter		Head Height	Spline Socket Size	Hexagon Socket Size	Key Engagement
			Theoretical Sharp	Abs. Min.				
	Max.	Min.	Max.		Reference		Nom.	Min.
	D		*A*		*H*	*M*[a]	*J*	*T*
0	0.0600	0.0568	0.138	0.117	0.044	0.048	0.035	0.025
1	0.0730	0.0695	0.168	0.143	0.054	0.060	0.050	0.031
2	0.0860	0.0822	0.197	0.168	0.064	0.060	0.050	0.038
3	0.0990	0.0949	0.226	0.193	0.073	0.072	1/16	0.044
4	0.1120	0.1075	0.255	0.218	0.083	0.072	1/16	0.055
5	0.1250	0.1202	0.281	0.240	0.090	0.096	5/64	0.061
6	0.1380	0.1329	0.307	0.263	0.097	0.096	5/64	0.066
8	0.1640	0.1585	0.359	0.311	0.112	0.111	3/32	0.076
10	0.1900	0.1840	0.411	0.359	0.127	0.145	1/8	0.087
1/4	0.2500	0.2435	0.531	0.480	0.161	0.183	5/32	0.111
5/16	0.3125	0.3053	0.656	0.600	0.198	0.216	3/16	0.135
3/8	0.3750	0.3678	0.781	0.720	0.234	0.251	7/32	0.159
7/16	0.4375	0.4294	0.844	0.781	0.234	0.291	1/4	0.159
1/2	0.5000	0.4919	0.938	0.872	0.251	0.372	5/16	0.172
5/8	0.6250	0.6163	1.188	1.112	0.324	0.454	3/8	0.220
3/4	0.7500	0.7406	1.438	1.355	0.396	0.454	1/2	0.220
7/8	0.8750	0.8647	1.688	1.604	0.468	…	9/16	0.248
1	1.0000	0.9886	1.938	1.841	0.540	…	5/8	0.297
1 1/8	1.1250	1.1086	2.188	2.079	0.611	…	3/4	0.325
1 1/4	1.2500	1.2336	2.438	2.316	0.683	…	7/8	0.358
1 3/8	1.3750	1.3568	2.688	2.553	0.755	…	7/8	0.402
1 1/2	1.5000	1.4818	2.938	2.791	0.827	…	1	0.435

[a] Spline driven fasteners are removed from the latest revision. For additional information on these fasteners, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998.

All dimensions in inches.

The body of the screw is the unthreaded cylindrical portion of the shank where not threaded to the head; the shank being the portion of the screw from the point of juncture of the conical bearing surface and the body to the flat of the point. The length of thread L_T is the distance measured from the extreme point to the last complete (full form) thread.

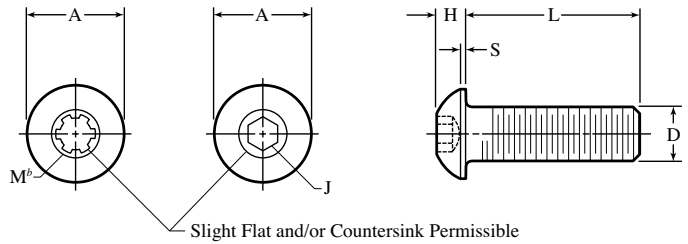
Standard length increments of No. 0 through 1-inch sizes are as follows: 1/16 inch for nominal screw lengths of 1/8 through 1/4 inch; 1/8 inch for lengths of 1/4 through 1 inch; 1/4 inch for lengths of 1 inch through 3 1/2 inches; 1/2 inch for lengths of 3 1/2 through 7 inches; and 1 inch for lengths of 7 through 10 inches, incl. For screw sizes over 1 inch, length increments are: 1/2 inch for nominal screw lengths of 1 inch through 7 inches; 1 inch for lengths of 7 through 10 inches; and 2 inches for lengths over 10 inches.

Threads shall be Unified external threads with radius root; Class 3A UNRC and UNRF series for sizes No. 0 through 1 inch and Class 2A UNRC and UNRF series for sizes over 1 inch to 1 1/2 inches, incl.

For manufacturing details not shown, including materials, see American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners). Socket dimensions are given in Table 11.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. American National Standard Hexagon Socket and Spline Socket Button Head Cap Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012*



Nominal Size	Screw Diameter	Head Diameter		Head Height		Head Side Height	Spline Socket Size[a]	Hexagon Socket Size[a]	Standard Length
	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Nom.	Nom.	Max.
	D	*A*		*H*		*S*	*M*[b]	*J*	*L*
0	0.0600	0.114	0.104	0.032	0.026	0.010	0.048	0.035	1/2
1	0.0730	0.139	0.129	0.039	0.033	0.010	0.060	0.050	1/2
2	0.0860	0.164	0.154	0.046	0.038	0.010	0.060	0.050	1/2
3	0.0990	0.188	0.176	0.052	0.044	0.010	0.072	1/16	1/2
4	0.1120	0.213	0.201	0.059	0.051	0.015	0.072	1/16	1/2
5	0.1250	0.238	0.226	0.066	0.058	0.015	0.096	5/64	1/2
6	0.1380	0.262	0.250	0.073	0.063	0.015	0.096	5/64	5/8
8	0.1640	0.312	0.298	0.087	0.077	0.015	0.111	3/32	3/4
10	0.1900	0.361	0.347	0.101	0.091	0.020	0.145	1/8	1
1/4	0.2500	0.437	0.419	0.132	0.122	0.031	0.183	5/32	1
5/16	0.3125	0.547	0.527	0.166	0.152	0.031	0.216	3/16	1
3/8	0.3750	0.656	0.636	0.199	0.185	0.031	0.251	7/32	1 1/4
1/2	0.5000	0.875	0.851	0.265	0.245	0.046	0.372	5/16	2
5/8	0.6250	1.000	0.970	0.331	0.311	0.062	0.454	3/8	2

[a] Socket dimensions are given in Table 11.

[b] Spline driven fasteners are removed from the latest revision. For additional information on these fasteners, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998.

All dimensions in inches.

These cap screws have been designed and recommended for light fastening applications. They are not suggested for use in critical high-strength applications where socket head cap screws should normally be used.

Standard length increments for socket button head cap screws are as follows: 1/16 inch for nominal screw lengths of 1/8 through 1/4 inch, 1/8 inch for nominal screw lengths of 1/4 through 1 inch, and 1/4 inch for nominal screw lengths of 1 inch through 2 inches. Tolerances on lengths are –0.03 inch for lengths up to 1 inch inclusive. For lengths from 1 through 2 inches, inclusive, length tolerances are –0.04 inch.

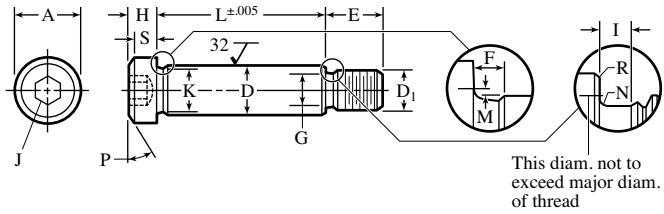
The thread conforms to the Unified standard, Class 3A, with radius root, UNRC and UNRF.

To prevent interference, American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3.4M-1986 gives metric dimensional and general requirements for a lower head profile hexagon socket button head cap screw. Because of its design, wrenchability and other design factors are reduced; therefore, B18.3.4M should be reviewed carefully. Available only in metric sizes and with metric threads.

For manufacturing details, including materials, not shown, see American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. American National Standard Hexagon Socket Head Shoulder Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012



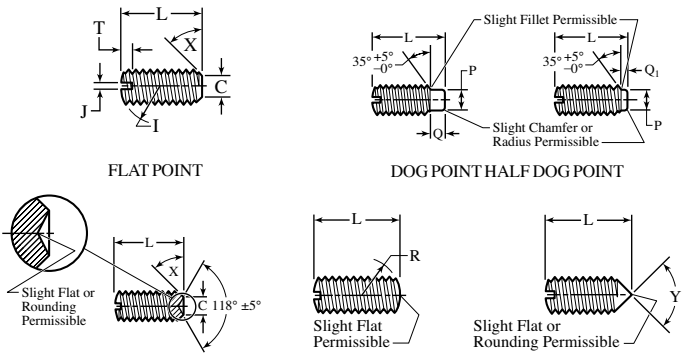
Nominal Size	Shoulder Diameter Max.	Shoulder Diameter Min.	Head Diameter Max.	Head Diameter Min.	Head Height Max.	Head Height Min.	Head Side Height Min.	Nominal Thread Size	Thread Length
	D		*A*		*H*		*S*	D_1	*E*
¼	0.2480	0.2460	0.375	0.357	0.188	0.177	0.157	10-24	0.375
5⁄16	0.3105	0.3085	0.438	0.419	0.219	0.209	0.183	¼-20	0.438
⅜	0.3730	0.3710	0.562	0.543	0.250	0.240	0.209	5⁄16-18	0.500
½	0.4980	0.4960	0.750	0.729	0.312	0.302	0.262	⅜-16	0.625
⅝	0.6230	0.6210	0.875	0.853	0.375	0.365	0.315	½-13	0.750
¾	0.7480	0.7460	1.000	0.977	0.500	0.490	0.421	⅝-11	0.875
1	0.9980	0.9960	1.312	1.287	0.625	0.610	0.527	¾-10	1.000
1¼	1.2480	1.2460	1.750	1.723	0.750	0.735	0.633	⅞-9	1.125
1½	1.4980	1.4960	2.125	2.095	1.000	0.980	0.842	1⅛-7	1.500
1¾	1.7480	1.7460	2.375	2.345	1.125	1.105	0.948	1¼-7	1.750
2	1.9980	1.9960	2.750	2.720	1.250	1.230	1.054	1½-6	2.000

Nominal Size	Thread Neck Diameter Max.	Thread Neck Diameter Min.	Thread Neck Width Max.	Shoulder Neck Dia. Min.	Shoulder Neck Width Max.	Thread Neck Fillet Max.	Thread Neck Fillet Min.	Head Fillet Extension Above *D* Max.	Hexagon Socket Size Nom.
	G		*I*	*K*	*F*	*N*		*M*	*J*
¼	0.142	0.133	0.083	0.227	0.093	0.023	0.017	0.014	⅛
5⁄16	0.193	0.182	0.100	0.289	0.093	0.028	0.022	0.017	5⁄32
⅜	0.249	0.237	0.111	0.352	0.093	0.031	0.025	0.020	3⁄16
½	0.304	0.291	0.125	0.477	0.093	0.035	0.029	0.026	¼
⅝	0.414	0.397	0.154	0.602	0.093	0.042	0.036	0.032	5⁄16
¾	0.521	0.502	0.182	0.727	0.093	0.051	0.045	0.039	⅜
1	0.638	0.616	0.200	0.977	0.125	0.055	0.049	0.050	½
1¼	0.750	0.726	0.222	1.227	0.125	0.062	0.056	0.060	⅝
1½	0.964	0.934	0.286	1.478	0.125	0.072	0.066	0.070	⅞
1¾	1.089	1.059	0.286	1.728	0.125	0.072	0.066	0.080	1
2	1.307	1.277	0.333	1.978	0.125	0.102	0.096	0.090	1¼

All dimensions are in inches. The shoulder is the enlarged, unthreaded portion of the screw. Standard length increments for shoulder screws are: ⅛ inch for nominal screw lengths of ¼ through ¾ inch; ¼ inch for lengths above ¾ through 5 inches; and ½ inch for lengths over 5 inches. The thread conforms to the Unified Standard Class 3A, UNC. Hexagon socket sizes for the respective shoulder screw sizes are the same as for set screws of the same nominal size (see Table 7) except for shoulder screw size 1 inch, socket size is ½ inch, for screw size 1 ½ inches, socket size is ⅞ inch, and for screw size 2 inches, socket size is 1 ¼ inches. For details not shown, including materials, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. American National Standard Slotted Headless Set Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter		Slot Width, *J*		Slot Depth, *T*		Cup and Flat Point Dia., *C*		Dog Point Dia., *P*		Point Length			
										Dog, *Q*		Half Dog, *Q*1	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
0	0.0600	.014	.010	.020	.016	.033	.027	.040	.037	.032	.028	.017	.013
1	0.0730	.016	.012	.020	.016	.040	.033	.049	.045	.040	.036	.021	.017
2	0.0860	.018	.014	.025	.019	.047	.039	.057	.053	.046	.042	.024	.020
3	0.0990	.020	.016	.028	.022	.054	.045	.066	.062	.052	.048	.027	.023
4	0.1120	.024	.018	.031	.025	.061	.051	.075	.070	.058	.054	.030	.026
5	0.1250	.026	.020	.036	.026	.067	.057	.083	.078	.063	.057	.033	.027
6	0.1380	.028	.022	.040	.030	.074	.064	.092	.087	.073	.067	.038	.032
8	0.1640	.032	.026	.046	.036	.087	.076	.109	.103	.083	.077	.043	.037
10	0.1900	.035	.029	.053	.043	.102	.088	.127	.120	.095	.085	.050	.040
12	0.2160	.042	.035	.061	.051	.115	.101	.144	.137	.115	.105	.060	.050
1/4	0.2500	.049	.041	.068	.058	.132	.118	.156	.149	.130	.120	.068	.058
5/16	0.3125	.055	.047	.083	.073	.172	.156	.203	.195	.161	.151	.083	.073
3/8	0.3750	.068	.060	.099	.089	.212	.194	.250	.241	.193	.183	.099	.089
7/16	0.4375	.076	.068	.114	.104	.252	.232	.297	.287	.224	.214	.114	.104
1/2	0.5000	.086	.076	.130	.120	.291	.270	.344	.334	.255	.245	.130	.120
9/16	0.5625	.096	.086	.146	.136	.332	.309	.391	.379	.287	.275	.146	.134
5/8	0.6250	.107	.097	.161	.151	.371	.347	.469	.456	.321	.305	.164	.148
3/4	0.7500	.134	.124	.193	.183	.450	.425	.562	.549	.383	.367	.196	.180

[a] When specifying a nominal size in decimals a zero preceding the decimal point or any zero in the fourth decimal place is omitted.

All dimensions are in inches.

Crown Radius, I: The crown radius has the same value as the basic screw diameter to three decimal places.

Oval Point Radius, R: Values of the oval point radius according to nominal screw size are: For a screw size of 0, a radius of .045; 1, .055; 2, .064; 3, .074; 4, .084; 5, .094; 6, .104; 8, .123; 10, .142; 12, .162; 1/4, .188; 5/16, .234; 3/8, .281; 7/16, .328; 1/2, .375; 9/16, .422; 5/8, .469; and for 3/4, .562.

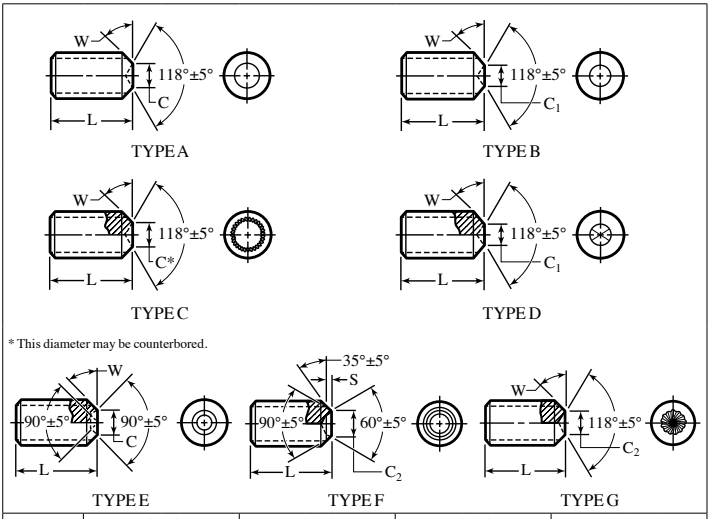
Cone Point Angle, Y: The cone point angle is 90° ± 2° for the following nominal lengths, or longer, shown according to screw size: For nominal size 0, a length of 5/64; 1, 3/32; 2, 7/64; 3, 1/8; 4, 5/32; 5, 3/16; 6, 3/16; 8, 1/4; 10, 1/4; 12, 5/16; 1/4, 5/16; 5/16, 3/8; 3/8, 7/16; 7/16, 1/2; 1/2, 9/16; 9/16, 5/8; 5/8, 3/4; and for 3/4, 7/8. For shorter screws, the cone point angle is 118° ± 2°.

Point Angle X: The point angle is 45°, + 5°, − 0°, for screws of nominal lengths, or longer, as given just above for cone point angle, and 30°, min. for shorter screws.

Threads: are Unified Standard Class 2A; UNC and UNF Series or UNRC and UNRF Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. American National Standard Hexagon and Spline Socket Set Screw Optional Cup Points *ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012* and *ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners)*.

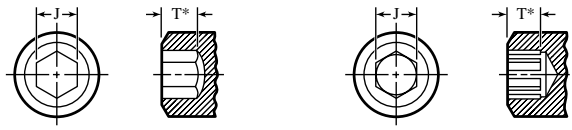


Nom. Size	Point Dia.		Point Dia.		Point Dia.		Point Length	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
	C		*C*1		*C*2		*S*	
0	0.033	0.027	0.032	0.027	0.027	0.022	0.007	0.004
1	0.040	0.033	0.038	0.033	0.035	0.030	0.008	0.005
2	0.047	0.039	0.043	0.038	0.043	0.038	0.010	0.007
3	0.054	0.045	0.050	0.045	0.051	0.046	0.011	0.007
4	0.061	0.051	0.056	0.051	0.059	0.054	0.013	0.008
5	0.067	0.057	0.062	0.056	0.068	0.063	0.014	0.009
6	0.074	0.064	0.069	0.062	0.074	0.068	0.017	0.012
8	0.087	0.076	0.082	0.074	0.090	0.084	0.021	0.016
10	0.102	0.088	0.095	0.086	0.101	0.095	0.024	0.019
¼	0.132	0.118	0.125	0.114	0.156	0.150	0.027	0.022
5/16	0.172	0.156	0.156	0.144	0.190	0.185	0.038	0.033
⅜	0.212	0.194	0.187	0.174	0.241	0.236	0.041	0.036
7/16	0.252	0.232	0.218	0.204	0.286	0.281	0.047	0.042
½	0.291	0.270	0.250	0.235	0.333	0.328	0.054	0.049
⅝	0.371	0.347	0.312	0.295	0.425	0.420	0.067	0.062
¾	0.450	0.425	0.375	0.357	0.523	0.518	0.081	0.076
⅞	0.530	0.502	0.437	0.418	…	…	…	…
1	0.609	0.579	0.500	0.480	…	…	…	…
1⅛	0.689	0.655	0.562	0.542	…	…	…	…
1¼	0.767	0.733	0.625	0.605	…	…	…	…
1⅜	0.848	0.808	0.687	0.667	…	…	…	…
1½	0.926	0.886	0.750	0.730	…	…	…	…
1¾	1.086	1.039	0.875	0.855	…	…	…	…
2	1.244	1.193	1.000	0.980	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches.
The cup point types shown are those available from various manufacturers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

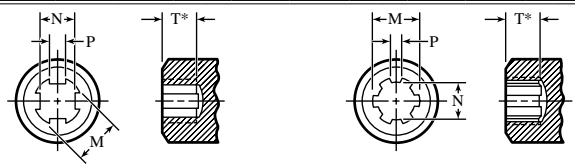
Table 11. American National Standard Hexagon and Spline Sockets
ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012



BROACHED SOCKET

HEXAGON SOCKETS

Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats		Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats		Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats		Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats	
	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.
	J			*J*			*J*			*J*	
0.028	0.0285	0.0280	9/64	0.1426	0.1406	7/16	0.4420	0.4375	1 1/4	1.2750	1.2500
0.035	0.0355	0.0350	5/32	0.1587	0.1562	1/2	0.5050	0.5000	1 1/2	1.5300	1.5000
0.050	0.0510	0.0500	3/16	0.1900	0.1875	9/16	0.5680	0.5625	1 3/4	1.7850	1.7500
1/16	0.0635	0.0625	7/32	0.2217	0.2187	5/8	0.6310	0.6250	2	2.0400	2.0000
5/64	0.0791	0.0781	1/4	0.2530	0.2500	3/4	0.7570	0.7500	2 1/4	2.2950	2.2500
3/32	0.0952	0.0937	5/16	0.3160	0.3125	7/8	0.8850	0.8750	2 3/4	2.8050	2.7500
7/64	0.1111	0.1094	3/8	0.3790	0.3750	1	1.0200	1.0000	3	3.0600	3.0000
1/8	0.1270	0.1250	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…



SPLINE SOCKETS[a]

Nominal Socket Size	Number of Teeth	Socket Major Diameter		Socket Minor Diameter		Width of Tooth	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
		M		*N*		*P*	
0.033	4	0.0350	0.0340	0.0260	0.0255	0.0120	0.0115
0.048	6	0.050	0.049	0.041	0.040	0.011	0.010
0.060	6	0.062	0.061	0.051	0.050	0.014	0.013
0.072	6	0.074	0.073	0.064	0.063	0.016	0.015
0.096	6	0.098	0.097	0.082	0.080	0.022	0.021
0.111	6	0.115	0.113	0.098	0.096	0.025	0.023
0.133	6	0.137	0.135	0.118	0.116	0.030	0.028
0.145	6	0.149	0.147	0.128	0.126	0.032	0.030
0.168	6	0.173	0.171	0.150	0.147	0.036	0.033
0.183	6	0.188	0.186	0.163	0.161	0.039	0.037
0.216	6	0.221	0.219	0.190	0.188	0.050	0.048
0.251	6	0.256	0.254	0.221	0.219	0.060	0.058
0.291	6	0.298	0.296	0.254	0.252	0.068	0.066
0.372	6	0.380	0.377	0.319	0.316	0.092	0.089
0.454	6	0.463	0.460	0.386	0.383	0.112	0.109
0.595	6	0.604	0.601	0.509	0.506	0.138	0.134
0.620	6	0.631	0.627	0.535	0.531	0.149	0.145
0.698	6	0.709	0.705	0.604	0.600	0.168	0.164
0.790	6	0.801	0.797	0.685	0.681	0.189	0.185

[a] Spline driven fasteners are removed from the latest revision. For additional information on these fasteners, see ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998.

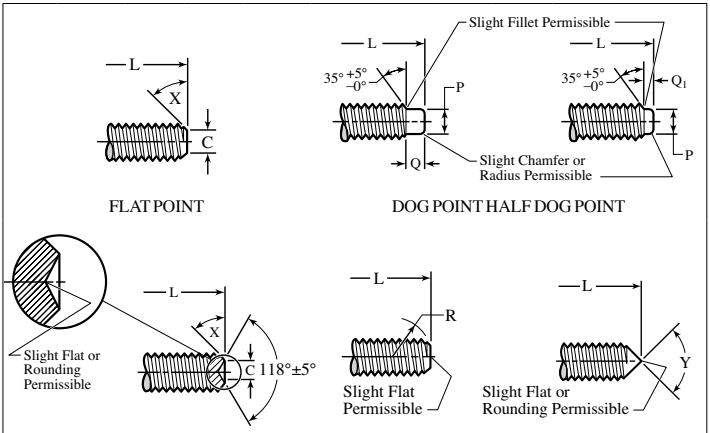
All dimensions are in inches.

* Socket depths, *T*, for various screw types are given in the standard but are not shown here.

Where sockets are chamfered, the depth of chamfer shall not exceed 10 percent of the nominal socket size for sizes up to and including 1/16 inch for hexagon sockets and 0.060 for spline sockets, and 7.5 percent for larger sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. American National Standard Square Head Set Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



Nominal Size* or Basic Screw Diameter		Cup and Flat Point Diams., *C*		Dog and Half Dog Point Diams., *P*		Point Length				Oval Point Rad., *R*
						Dog, *Q*		Half Dog, *Q*1		+.031 −.000
		Max.	Min	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
10	0.1900	.102	.088	.127	.120	.095	.085	.050	.040	.142
¼	0.2500	.132	.118	.156	.149	.130	.120	.068	.058	.188
5⁄16	0.3125	.172	.156	.203	.195	.161	.151	.083	.073	.234
⅜	0.3750	.212	.194	.250	.241	.193	.183	.099	.089	.281
7⁄16	0.4375	.252	.232	.297	.287	.224	.214	.114	.104	.328
½	0.500	.291	.270	.344	.334	.255	.245	.130	.120	.375
9⁄16	0.5625	.332	.309	.391	.379	.287	.275	.146	.134	.422
⅝	0.6250	.371	.347	.469	.456	.321	.305	.164	.148	.469
¾	0.7500	.450	.425	.562	.549	.383	.367	.196	.180	.562
⅞	0.8750	.530	.502	.656	.642	.446	.430	.227	.211	.656
1	1.0000	.609	.579	.750	.734	.510	.490	.260	.240	.750
1⅛	1.1250	.689	.655	.844	.826	.572	.552	.291	.271	.844
1¼	1.2500	.767	.733	.938	.920	.635	.615	.323	.303	.938
1⅜	1.3750	.848	.808	1.031	1.011	.698	.678	.354	.334	1.031
1½	1.5000	.926	.886	1.125	1.105	.760	.740	.385	.365	1.125

All dimensions are in inches.

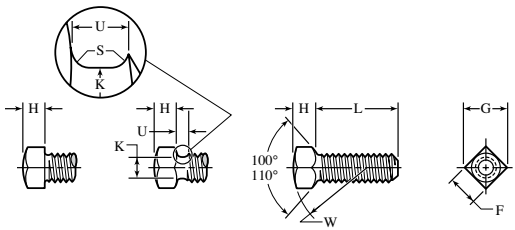
**Threads:* Threads are Unified Standard Class 2A; UNC, UNF and 8 UN Series or UNRC, UNRF and 8 UNR Series.

Length of Thread: Square head set screws have complete (full form) threads extending over that portion of the screw length which is not affected by the point. For the respective constructions, threads extend into the neck relief, to the conical underside of head, or to within one thread (as measured with a thread ring gage) from the flat underside of the head. Threads through angular or crowned portions of points have fully formed roots with partial crests.

* When specifying a nominal size in decimals, the zero preceding the decimal point is omitted as is any zero in the fourth decimal place.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. American National Standard Square Head Set Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.2-1998 (R2010)



OPTIONAL HEAD CONSTRUCTIONS

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter		Width Across Flats, *F*		Width Across Corners, *G*		Head Height, *H*		Neck Relief Diameter, *K*		Neck Relief Fillet Rad., *S*	Neck Relief Width, *U*	Head Rad., *W*
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.
10	0.1900	.188	.180	.265	.247	.148	.134	.145	.140	.027	.083	0.48
1/4	0.2500	.250	.241	.354	.331	.196	.178	.185	.170	.032	.100	0.62
5/16	0.3125	.312	.302	.442	.415	.245	.224	.240	.225	.036	.111	0.78
3/8	0.3750	.375	.362	.530	.497	.293	.270	.294	.279	.041	.125	0.94
7/16	0.4375	.438	.423	.619	.581	.341	.315	.345	.330	.046	.143	1.09
1/2	0.5000	.500	.484	.707	.665	.389	.361	.400	.385	.050	.154	1.25
9/16	0.5625	.562	.545	.795	.748	.437	.407	.454	.439	.054	.167	1.41
5/8	0.6250	.625	.606	.884	.833	.485	.452	.507	.492	.059	.182	1.56
3/4	0.7500	.750	.729	1.060	1.001	.582	.544	.620	.605	.065	.200	1.88
7/8	0.8750	.875	.852	1.237	1.170	.678	.635	.731	.716	.072	.222	2.19
1	1.0000	1.000	.974	1.414	1.337	.774	.726	.838	.823	.081	.250	2.50
1 1/8	1.1250	1.125	1.096	1.591	1.505	.870	.817	.939	.914	.092	.283	2.81
1 1/4	1.2500	1.250	1.219	1.768	1.674	.966	.908	1.064	1.039	.092	.283	3.12
1 3/8	1.3750	1.375	1.342	1.945	1.843	1.063	1.000	1.159	1.134	.109	.333	3.44
1 1/2	1.5000	1.500	1.464	2.121	2.010	1.159	1.091	1.284	1.259	.109	.333	3.75

Designation: Square head set screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; screw length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name; point style; material; and protective finish, if required. Examples: 1/4 - 20 × 3/4 Square Head Set Screw, Flat Point, Steel, Cadmium Plated. .500 – 13 × 1.25 Square Head Set Screw, Cone Point, Corrosion Resistant Steel.

Cone Point Angle, Y: For the following nominal lengths, or longer, shown according to nominal size, the cone point angle is 90° ± 2°: For size No. 10, 1/4; 1/4, 5/16; 5/16, 3/8; 3/8, 7/16; 7/16, 1/2; 1/2, 9/16, 5/8; 5/8, 3/4; 3/4, 7/8; 7/8, 1; 1, 1 1/8; 1 1/8, 1 1/4; 1 1/4, 1 1/2; 1 3/8, 1 5/8; and for 1 1/2, 1 3/4. For shorter screws the cone point angle is 118° ± 2°.

Point Types: Unless otherwise specified, square head set screws are supplied with cup points. Cup points as furnished by some manufacturers may be externally or internally knurled. Where so specified by the purchaser, screws have cone, dog, half-dog, flat or oval points as given on the following page.

Point Angle, X: The point angle is 45°, + 5°, – 0° for screws of the nominal lengths, or longer, given just above for cone point angle, and 30° min. for shorter lengths.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

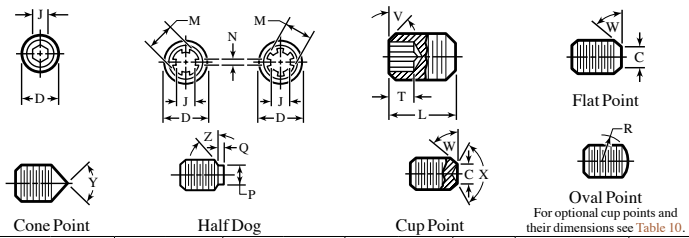
Table 14. Applicability of Hexagon and Spline Keys and Bits

Nominal Key or Bit Size		Cap Screws 1960 Series	Flat Countersunk Head Cap Screws	Button Head Cap Screws	Shoulder Screws	Set Screws
		Nominal Screw Sizes				
HEXAGON KEYS AND BITS						
	0.028	…	…	…	…	0
	0.035	…	0	0	…	1 & 2
	0.050	0	1 & 2	1 & 2	…	3 & 4
1/16	0.062	1	3 & 4	3 & 4	…	5 & 6
5/64	0.078	2 & 3	5 & 6	5 & 6	…	8
3/32	0.094	4 & 5	8	8	…	10
7/64	0.109	6	…	…	…	…
1/8	0.125	…	10	10	1/4	1/4
9/64	0.141	8	…	…	…	…
5/32	0.156	10	1/4	1/4	5/16	5/16
3/16	0.188	1/4	5/16	5/16	3/8	3/8
7/32	0.219	…	3/8	3/8	…	7/16
1/4	0.250	5/16	7/16	…	1/2	1/2
5/16	0.312	3/8	1/2	1/2	5/8	5/8
3/8	0.375	7/16 & 1/2	5/8	5/8	3/4	3/4
7/16	0.438	…	…	…	…	…
1/2	0.500	5/8	3/4	…	1	7/8
9/16	0.562	…	7/8	…	…	1 & 1 1/8
5/8	0.625	3/4	1	…	1 1/4	1 1/4 & 1 3/8
3/4	0.750	7/8 & 1	1 1/8	…	…	1 1/2
7/8	0.875	1 1/8 & 1 1/4	1 1/4 & 1 3/8	…	1 1/2	…
1	1.000	1 3/8 & 1 1/2	1 1/2	…	1 3/4	1 3/4 & 2
1 1/4	1.250	1 3/4	…	…	2	…
1 1/2	1.500	2	…	…	…	…
1 3/4	1.750	2 1/4 & 2 1/2	…	…	…	…
2	2.000	2 3/4	…	…	…	…
2 1/4	2.250	3 & 3 1/4	…	…	…	…
2 3/4	2.750	3 1/2 & 3 3/4	…	…	…	…
3	3.000	4	…	…	…	…
SPLINE KEYS AND BITS						
	0.033	…	…	…	…	0 & 1
	0.048	…	0	0	…	2 & 3
	0.060	0	1 & 2	1 & 2	…	4
	0.072	1	3 & 4	3 & 4	…	5 & 6
	0.096	2 & 3	5 & 6	5 & 6	…	8
	0.111	4 & 5	8	8	…	10
	0.133	6	…	…	…	…
	0.145	…	10	10	…	1/4
	0.168	8	…	…	…	…
	0.183	10	1/4	1/4	…	5/16
	0.216	1/4	5/16	5/16	…	3/8
	0.251	…	3/8	3/8	…	7/16
	0.291	5/16	7/16	…	…	1/2
	0.372	3/8	1/2	1/2	…	5/8
	0.454	7/16 & 1/2	5/8 & 3/4	5/8	…	3/4
	0.595	5/8	…	…	…	7/8
	0.620	3/4	…	…	…	…
	0.698	7/8	…	…	…	…
	0.790	1	…	…	…	…

Source: Appendix to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for spline driven fasteners).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. ANSI Hexagon and Spline Socket Set Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012* and *ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners)*.



For optional cup points and their dimensions see Table 10.

Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter		Socket Size Hex. Nom. *J*	Socket Size Spl. Nom. *M*	Cup and Flat Point Diameters *C* Max.	Cup and Flat Point Diameters *C* Min.	Half Dog Point Dia. Max. *P*	Half Dog Point Lgth. Max. *Q*	Oval Point Radius Basic *R*	Min. Key Engagement Depth Hex. T_H[a]	Min. Key Engagement Depth Spl. T_S[a]	Lgth. Limit for Angle Y[b]
0	0.0600	0.028	0.033	0.033	0.027	0.040	0.017	0.045	0.050	0.026	0.09
1	0.0730	0.035	0.033	0.040	0.033	0.049	0.021	0.055	0.060	0.035	0.09
2	0.0860	0.035	0.048	0.047	0.039	0.057	0.024	0.064	0.060	0.040	0.13
3	0.0990	0.050	0.048	0.054	0.045	0.066	0.027	0.074	0.070	0.040	0.13
4	0.1120	0.050	0.060	0.061	0.051	0.075	0.030	0.084	0.070	0.045	0.19
5	0.1250	1/16	0.072	0.067	0.057	0.083	0.033	0.094	0.080	0.055	0.19
6	0.1380	1/16	0.072	0.074	0.064	0.092	0.038	0.104	0.080	0.055	0.19
8	0.1640	5/64	0.096	0.087	0.076	0.109	0.043	0.123	0.090	0.080	0.25
10	0.1900	3/32	0.111	0.102	0.088	0.127	0.049	0.142	0.100	0.080	0.25
1/4	0.2500	1/8	0.145	0.132	0.118	0.156	0.067	0.188	0.125	0.125	0.31
5/16	0.3125	5/32	0.183	0.172	0.156	0.203	0.082	0.234	0.156	0.156	0.38
3/8	0.3750	3/16	0.216	0.212	0.194	0.250	0.099	0.281	0.188	0.188	0.44
7/16	0.4375	7/32	0.251	0.252	0.232	0.297	0.114	0.328	0.219	0.219	0.50
1/2	0.5000	1/4	0.291	0.291	0.270	0.344	0.130	0.375	0.250	0.250	0.57
5/8	0.6250	5/16	0.372	0.371	0.347	0.469	0.164	0.469	0.312	0.312	0.75
3/4	0.7500	3/8	0.454	0.450	0.425	0.562	0.196	0.562	0.375	0.375	0.88
7/8	0.8750	1/2	0.595	0.530	0.502	0.656	0.227	0.656	0.500	0.500	1.00
1	1.0000	9/16	…	0.609	0.579	0.750	0.260	0.750	0.562	…	1.13
1 1/8	1.1250	9/16	…	0.689	0.655	0.844	0.291	0.844	0.562	…	1.25
1 1/4	1.2500	5/8	…	0.767	0.733	0.938	0.323	0.938	0.625	…	1.50
1 3/8	1.3750	5/8	…	0.848	0.808	1.031	0.354	1.031	0.625	…	1.63
1 1/2	1.5000	3/4	…	0.926	0.886	1.125	0.385	1.125	0.750	…	1.75
1 3/4	1.7500	1	…	1.086	1.039	1.312	0.448	1.321	1.000	…	2.00
2	2.0000	1	…	1.244	1.193	1.500	0.510	1.500	1.000	…	2.25

[a] Reference should be made to the Standard for shortest optimum nominal lengths to which the minimum key engagement depths T_H and T_S apply.

[b] Cone point angle *Y* is 90 degrees plus or minus 2 degrees for these nominal lengths or longer and 118 degrees plus or minus 2 degrees for shorter nominal lengths.

All dimensions are in inches. The thread conforms to the Unified Standard, Class 3A, UNC and UNF series. The socket depth *T* is included in the Standard and some are shown here. The nominal length *L* of all socket type set screws is the total or overall length. For nominal screw lengths of 1/16 through 3/16 inch (0 through 3 sizes incl.) the standard length increment is 0.06 inch; for lengths 1/8 through 1 inch the increment is 1/8 inch; for lengths 1 through 2 inches the increment is 1/4 inch; for lengths 2 through 6 inches the increment is 1/2 inch; for lengths 6 inches and longer the increment is 1 inch. Socket dimensions are given in Table 11.

Length Tolerance: The allowable tolerance on length *L* for all set screws of the socket type is ± 0.01 inch for set screws up to 5/8 inch long; ± 0.02 inch for screws over 5/8 to 2 inches long; ± 0.03 inch for screws over 2 to 6 inches long and ± 0.06 inch for screws over 6 inches long. Socket dimensions are given in Table 11.

For manufacturing details, including materials, not shown, see American National Standard ANSI/ASME B18.3-2012 and ANSI/ASME B18.3-1998 (for Spline driven fasteners).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Hexagon Socket Screws—Metric Series.—The first five parts of British Standard BS 4168: 1981 provide specifications for hexagon socket head cap screws and hexagon socket set screws.

Hexagon Socket Head Cap Screws: The dimensional data in Table 1 are based upon BS 4168: Part 1: 1981. These screws are available in stainless steel and alloy steel, the latter having class 12.9 properties as specified in BS 6104:Part 1. When ordering these screws, the designation "Hexagon socket head cap screw BS 4168 M5 × 20-12.9" would mean, as an example, a cap screw having a thread size of d = M5, nominal length l = 20 mm, and property class 12.9. Alloy steel cap screws are furnished with a black oxide finish (thermal or chemical); stainless steel cap screws with a plain finish. Combinations of thread size, nominal length, and length of thread are shown in Table 2; the screw threads in these combinations are in the ISO metric coarse pitch series specified in BS 3643 with tolerances in the 5g6g class. (See Metric Screw Threads in Index.)

Hexagon Socket Set Screws: Part 2 of BS 4168:1981 specifies requirements for hexagon socket set screws with flat point having ISO metric threads, and diameters from 1.6 mm up to and including 24 mm. The dimensions of these set screws along with those of cone-point, dog-point, and cup-point set screws in accord, respectively, with Parts 3, 4, and 5 of the Standard are given in Table 3 and the accompanying illustration. All of these set screws are available in either steel processed to mechanical properties class 45H BS 6104:Part 3; or stainless steel processed to mechanical properties described in BS 6105. Steel set screws are furnished with black oxide (thermal or chemical) finish; stainless steel set screws are furnished plain. The tolerances applied to the threads of these set screws are for ISO product grade A, based on ISO 4759/1-1978 "Tolerances for fasteners.—Part 1: Bolts, screws, and nuts with thread diameters greater than or equal to 1.6 mm and less than or equal to 150 mm and product grades A, B, and C."

Hexagon socket set screws are designated by the type, the thread size, nominal length, and property class. As an example, for a flat-point set screw of thread size d = M6, nominal length l = 12 mm, and property class 45H:

Hexagon socket set screw flat point BS 4168 M6 × 12-45H

British Standard Hexagon Socket Countersunk and Button Head Screws.—Metric Series: British Standard BS 4168:1967 provides a metric series of hexagon socket countersunk and button head screws. The dimensions of these screws are given in Table 4. The revision of this Standard will constitute Parts 6 and 8 of BS 4168.

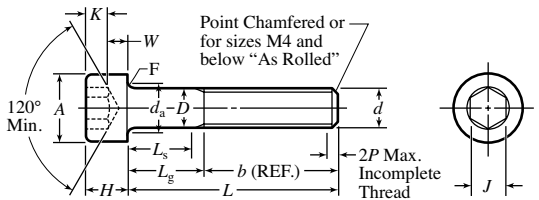
British Standards for Mechanical Properties of Fasteners: BS 6104: Part 1:1981 specifies mechanical properties for bolts, screws, and studs with nominal diameters up to and including 39 mm of any triangular ISO thread and made of carbon or alloy steel. It does not apply to set screws and similar threaded fasteners. Part 2 of this Standard specifies the mechanical properties of set screws and similar fasteners, not under tensile stress, in the range from M1.6 up to and including M39 and made of carbon or alloy steel.

BS 6105:1981 provides specifications for bolts, screws, studs, and nuts made from austenitic, ferritic, and martensitic grades of corrosion-resistant steels. This Standard applies only to fastener components after completion of manufacture with nominal diameters from M1.6 up to and including M39. These Standards are not described further here. Copies may be obtained from the British Standards Institution, 389 Chiswick High Road, London, W4 4AL, www.bsigroup.com, and also from the American National Standards Institute, 25 West 43rd Street, New York, NY 10036, www.ansi.org.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. British Standard Hexagon Socket Head Cap Screws—Metric Series

BS 4168:Part 1:1981 (obsolescent)



Nominal Size,[a] d	Body Diameter, D		Head Diameter, A			Head Height, H		Hexagon Socket Size, J[b]	Key Engagement, K	Wall Thickness, W	Fillet	
	Max.	Min.	Max.[c]	Max.[d]	Min.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Min.	Min.	Rad., F Min.	Dia., d_a Max.
M1.6	1.6	1.46	3	3.14	2.86	1.6	1.46	1.5	0.7	0.55	0.1	2
M2	2	1.86	3.8	3.98	3.62	2	1.86	1.5	1	0.55	0.1	2.6
M2.5	2.5	2.36	4.5	4.68	4.32	2.5	2.36	2	1.1	0.85	0.1	3.1
M3	3	2.86	5.5	5.68	5.32	3	2.86	2.5	1.3	1.15	0.1	3.6
M4	4	3.82	7	7.22	6.78	4	3.82	3	2	1.4	0.2	4.7
M5	5	4.82	8.5	8.72	8.28	5	4.82	4	2.5	1.9	0.2	5.7
M6	6	5.82	10	10.22	9.78	6	5.70	5	3	2.3	0.25	6.8
M8	8	7.78	13	13.27	12.73	8	7.64	6	4	3.3	0.4	9.2
M10	10	9.78	16	16.27	15.73	10	9.64	8	5	4	0.4	11.2
M12	12	11.73	18	18.27	17.73	12	11.57	10	6	4.8	0.6	14.2
(M14)	14	13.73	21	21.33	20.67	14	13.57	12	7	5.8	0.6	16.2
M16	16	15.73	24	24.33	23.67	16	15.57	14	8	6.8	0.6	18.2
M20	20	19.67	30	30.33	29.67	20	19.48	17.	10	8.6	0.8	22.4
M24	24	23.67	36	36.39	35.61	24	23.48	19	12	10.4	0.8	26.4
M30	30	29.67	45	45.39	44.61	30	29.48	22	15.5	13.1	1	33.4
M36	36	35.61	54	54.46	53.54	36	35.38	27	19	15.3	1	39.4

[a] The size shown in ( ) is non-preferred.

[b] See Table 2 for min/max.

[c] For plain heads.

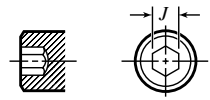
[d] For knurled heads.

All dimensions are given in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. British Standard Hexagon Socket Screws.—Metric Series
BS 4168:Part 1:1981 (obsolescent)

Dimensions of Hexagon Sockets



Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats, *J*		Nominal Socket Size	Socket Width Across Flats, *J*	
	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.
1.5	1.545	1.52	6	6.095	6.02
2.0	2.045	2.02	8	8.115	8.025
2.5	2.56	2.52	10	10.115	10.025
3	3.08	3.02	12	12.142	12.032
4	4.095	4.02	14	14.142	14.032
5	5.095	5.02	17	17.23	17.05
…	…	…	19	19.275	19.065

Association of Nominal and Thread Lengths for Each Thread Size

Nominal Length, *L*	Nominal Thread Size, *D*								Nominal Length, *L*	Nominal Thread Size, *D*							
	M1.6	M2	M2.5	M3	M4	M5	M6	M8		M10	M12	(M14)	M16	M20	M24	M30	M36
2.5									16								
3									20								
4									25								
5									30								
6									35								
8									40								
10									45								
12									50								
16									55								
20									60								
25									65								
30									70								
35									80								
40									90								
45									100								
50									110								
55									120								
60									130								
65									140								
70									150								
80									160								
…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	180								
…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	200								
b (ref)	15	16	17	18	20	22	24	28	*b* (ref)	32	36	40	44	52	60	72	84

All dimensions are in millimeters.

The popular lengths are those between the stepped solid lines. Lengths above the shaded areas are threaded to the head within 3 pitch lengths (3*P*). Lengths within and below the shaded areas have values of L_g and L_s (see Table 1) given by the formulas: $L_g\text{max} = L\text{ nom} - b\text{ ref}$, and $L_s\text{min} = L_g\text{max} - 5P$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. British Standard Hexagon Socket Set Screws.—Metric Series
BS 4168:Parts 2, 3, 4, and 5:1994

Nom. Size, *d*	Pitch, *P*	Socket Size, *s*	Depth of Key Engagement, *t*[a]		Range of Popular Lengths				Length of Dog on Dog Point Screws[b]					End Diameters			
					Flat Point	Cone Point	Dog Point	Cup Point	Short Dog, *z*		Long Dog, *z*			Flat Point, d_z	Cone Point d_t	Dog Point, d_p	Cup Point, d_z
		Nom.	Min.	Min.	*l*	*l*	*l*	*l*	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	* [b]	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.
M1.6	0.35	0.7	0.7	1.5	2-8	2-8	2-8	2-8	0.4	0.65	0.8	1.05	2.5	0.8	0	0.8	0.8
M2	0.4	0.9	0.8	1.7	2-10	2-10	2.5-10	2-10	0.5	0.75	1.0	1.25	3.0	1.0	0	1.0	1.0
M2.5	0.45	1.3	1.2	2.0	2-12	2.5-12	3-12	2-12	0.63	0.88	1.25	1.5	4	1.5	0	1.5	1.2
M3	0.5	1.5	1.2	2.0	2-16	2.5-16	4-16	2.5-16	0.75	1.0	1.5	1.75	5	2.0	0	2.0	1.4
M4	0.7	2.0	1.5	2.5	2.5-20	3-20	5-20	3-20	1.0	1.25	2.0	2.25	6	2.5	0	2.5	2.0
M5	0.8	2.5	2.0	3.0	3-25	4-25	6-25	4-25	1.25	1.5	2.5	2.75	6	3.5	0	3.5	2.5
M6	1.0	3.0	2.0	3.5	4-30	5-30	8-30	5-30	1.5	1.75	3.0	3.25	8	4.0	1.5	4.0	3.0
M8	1.25	4.0	3.0	5.0	5-40	6-40	8-40	6-40	2.0	2.25	4.0	4.3	10	5.5	2.0	5.5	5.0
M10	1.5	5.0	4.0	6.0	6-50	8-50	10-50	8-50	2.5	2.75	5.0	5.3	12	7.0	2.5	7.0	6.0
M12	1.75	6.0	4.8	8.0	8-60	10-60	12-60	10-60	3.0	3.25	6.0	6.3	16	8.5	3.0	8.5	8.0
M16	2.0	8.0	6.4	10.0	10-60	12-60	16-60	12-60	4.0	4.3	8.0	8.36	20	12.0	4.0	12.0	10.0
M20	2.5	10.0	8.0	12.0	12-60	16-60	20-60	16-60	5.0	5.3	10.0	10.36	25	15.0	5.0	15.0	14.0
M24	3.0	12.0	10.0	15.0	16-60	20-60	25-60	20-60	6.0	6.3	12.0	12.43	30	18.0	6.0	18.0	16.0

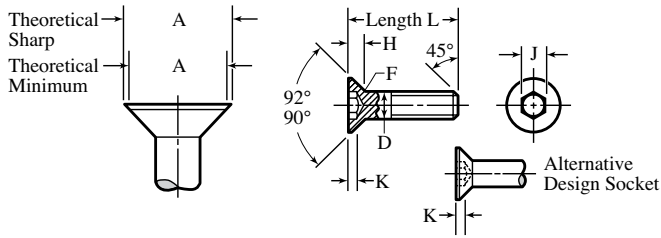
[a] The smaller of the two *t* min. values applies to certain short-length set screws. These short-length screws are those whose length is approximately equal to the diameter of the screw. The larger *t* min. values apply to longer-length screws.

[b] A dog point set screw having a nominal length equal to or less than the length shown in the (*) column of the table is supplied with length *z* shown in the short dog column. For set screws of lengths greater than shown in the (*) column, *z* for long dogs applies.

All dimensions are in millimeters. For dimensional notation, see diagram, page 1831.

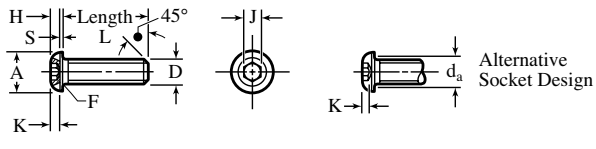
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. British Standard Hexagon Socket Countersunk and Button Head Screws.—Metric Series *BS 4168:1967*



COUNTERSUNK HEAD SCREWS

Nom. Size	Body Diameter, *D*		Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Hexagon Socket Size, *J*	Key Engagement, *K*	Fillet Radius, *F*
	Max.	Min.	Theor. Sharp Max.	Absolute Min.	Ref.	Flushness Tolerance	Nom.	Min.	Max.
M3	3.00	2.86	6.72	5.82	1.86	0.20	2.00	1.05	0.40
M4	4.00	3.82	8.96	7.78	2.48	0.20	2.50	1.49	0.40
M5	5.00	4.82	11.20	9.78	3.10	0.20	3.00	1.86	0.40
M6	6.00	5.82	13.44	11.73	3.72	0.20	4.00	2.16	0.60
M8	8.00	7.78	17.92	15.73	4.96	0.24	5.00	2.85	0.70
M10	10.00	9.78	22.40	19.67	6.20	0.30	6.00	3.60	0.80
M12	12.00	11.73	26.88	23.67	7.44	0.36	8.00	4.35	1.10
(M14)	14.00	13.73	30.24	26.67	8.12	0.40	10.00	4.65	1.10
M16	16.00	15.73	33.60	29.67	8.80	0.45	10.00	4.89	1.10
(M18)	18.00	17.73	36.96	32.61	9.48	0.50	12.00	5.25	1.10
M20	20.00	19.67	40.32	35.61	10.16	0.54	12.00	5.45	1.10



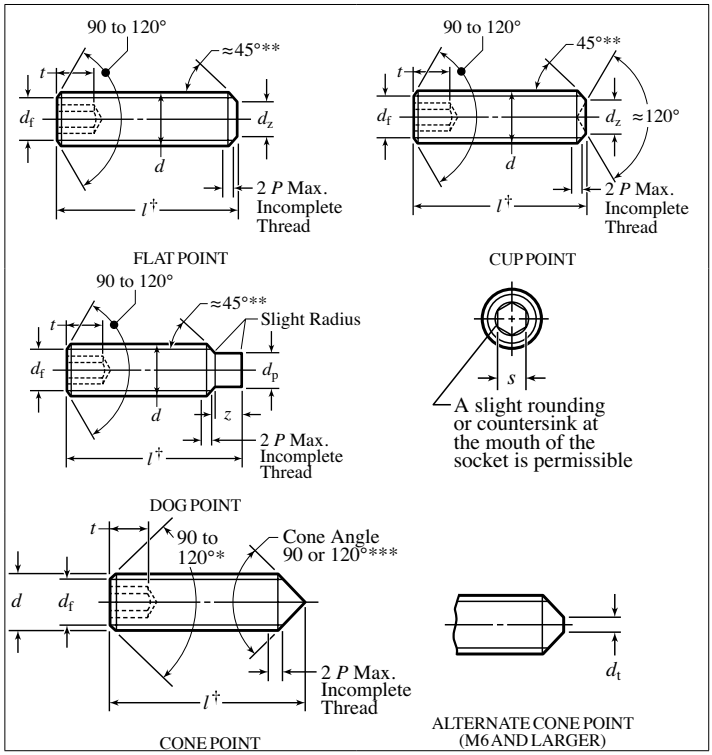
BUTTON HEAD SCREWS

Nom. Size, *D*	Head Diameter, *A*		Head Height, *H*		Head Side Height, *S*	Hexagon Socket Size, *J*	Key Engagement, *K*	Fillet Radius	
								F	d_a
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Nom.	Min.	Min.	Max.
M3	5.50	5.32	1.60	1.40	0.38	2.00	1.04	0.10	3.60
M4	7.50	7.28	2.10	1.85	0.38	2.50	1.30	0.20	4.70
M5	9.50	9.28	2.70	2.45	0.50	3.00	1.56	0.20	5.70
M6	10.50	10.23	3.20	2.95	0.80	4.00	2.08	0.25	6.80
M8	14.00	13.73	4.30	3.95	0.80	5.00	2.60	0.40	9.20
M10	18.00	17.73	5.30	4.95	0.80	6.00	3.12	0.40	11.20
M12	21.00	20.67	6.40	5.90	0.80	8.00	4.16	0.60	14.20

All dimensions are given in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Hexagon Socket Set Screws.—Metric Series
BS 4168:Parts 2, 3, 4, and 5:1994



*The 120° angle is mandatory for short-length screws shown in the Standard. Short-length screws are those whose length is, approximately, equal to the diameter of the screw.

**The 45° angle applies only to that portion of the point below the root diameter, *df*, of the thread.

***The cone angle applies only to the portion of the point below the root diameter, *df*, of the thread and shall be 120° for certain short lengths listed in the Standard. All other lengths have a 90° cone angle.

†The popular length ranges of these set screws are listed in Table 3. These lengths have been selected from the following nominal lengths: 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, and 60 millimeters.

Holding Power of Set Screws.—While the amount of power a set screw of given size will transmit without slipping (when used for holding a pulley, gear, or other part from turning relative to a shaft) varies somewhat according to the physical properties of both set screw and shaft and other variable factors, experiments have shown that the safe holding force in pounds for different diameters of set screws should be approximately as follows: For $\frac{1}{4}$-inch (6.35 mm) diameter set screws the safe holding force is 100 pounds (445 N), for $\frac{3}{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) diameter set screws the safe holding force is 250 pounds (1112 N), for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

½-inch (12.7 mm) diameter set screws the safe holding force is 500 pounds (2224 N), for ¾-inch (19 mm) diameter set screws the safe holding force is 1300 pounds (5783 N), and for 1-inch (25.4 mm) diameter set screws the safe holding force is 2500 pounds (11121 N).

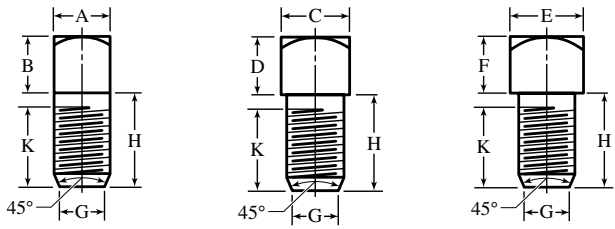
The power or torque that can be safely transmitted by a set screw may be determined from the formulas, $P = (DNd^{2.3}) \div 50$; or $T = 1250Dd^{2.3}$ in which P is the horsepower transmitted; T is the torque in inch-pounds transmitted; D is the shaft diameter in inches; N is the speed of the shaft in revolutions per minute; and d is the diameter of the set screw in inches.

Example: How many ½-inch diameter set screws would be required to transmit 3 horsepower at a shaft speed of 1000 rpm if the shaft diameter is 1 inch?

Using the first formula given above, the power transmitted by a single ½-inch diameter set screw is determined: $P = [1 \times 1000 \times (\frac{1}{2})^{2.3}] \div 50 = 4.1$ hp. Therefore a single ½-inch diameter set screw is sufficient.

Example: In the previous example, how many ⅜-inch diameter set screws would be required? $P = [1 \times 1000 \times (\frac{3}{8})^{2.3}] \div 50 = 2.1$ hp. Therefore two ⅜-inch diameter set screws are required.

Table 5. British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and British Standard Fine (BSF) Bright Square Head Set Screws (With Flat Chamfered Ends)



Nominal Size and Max. Dia., Inches	Number of Threads per Inch		No. 1 Standard		No. 2 Standard		No. 3 Standard	
	BSW	BSF	Width Across Flats *A*	Depth of Head *B*	Width Across Flats *C*	Depth of Head *D*	Width Across Flats *E*	Depth of Head *F*
¼	20	26	0.250	0.250	0.313	0.250	0.375	0.250
5/16	18	22	0.313	0.313	0.375	0.313	0.438	0.313
⅜	16	20	0.375	0.375	0.438	0.375	0.500	0.375
7/16	14	18	0.438	0.438	0.500	0.438	0.625	0.438
½	12	16	0.500	0.500	0.563	0.500	0.750	0.500
⅝	11	14	0.625	0.625	0.750	0.625	0.875	0.625
¾	10	12	0.750	0.750	0.875	0.750	1.000	0.750
⅞	9	11	0.875	0.875	1.000	0.875	1.125	0.875
1	8	10	1.000	1.000	1.125	1.000	1.250	1.000

* Depth of Head *B*, *D* and *F* same as for Width Across Flats, No. 1 Standard.

Dimensions *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, *E*, and *F* are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SELF-THREADING SCREWS

ANSI Standard Sheet Metal, Self-Tapping, and Metallic Drive Screws.—Table 1 shows the various types of "self-tapping" screw threads covered by the ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013 standard. (Metric thread forming and thread cutting tapping screws are discussed beginning on page 1848). ANSI designations are also shown. Types A, AB, B, BP and C when turned into a hole of proper size form a thread by a displacing action. Types D, F, G, T, BF and BT when turned into a hole of proper size form a thread by a cutting action. Type U when driven into a hole of proper size forms a series of multiple threads by a displacing action. These screws have the following descriptions and applications:

Type A: Spaced-thread screw with gimlet point primarily for use in light sheet metal, resin-impregnated plywood, and asbestos compositions. This type is no longer recommended. Use Type AB in new designs and whenever possible substitute for Type A in existing designs.

Type AB: Spaced-thread screw with same pitches as Type B but with gimlet point, primarily for similar uses as for Type A.

Type B: Spaced-thread screw with a blunt point with pitches generally somewhat finer than Type A. Used for thin metal, nonferrous castings, plastics, resin-impregnated plywood, and asbestos compositions.

Type BP: Spaced-thread screw, the same as Type B but having a conical point extending beyond incomplete entering threads. Used for piercing fabrics or in assemblies where holes are misaligned.

Type C: Screws having machine screw diameter-pitch combinations with threads approximately Unified Form and with blunt tapered points. Used where a machine screw thread is preferable to the spaced-thread types of thread forming screws. Also useful when chips from machine screw thread-cutting screws are objectionable. In view of the declining use of Type C screws, which in general require high driving torques, in favor of more efficient designs of thread tapping screws, they are not recommended for new designs.

Types D, F, G, and T: Thread-cutting screws with threads approximating machine screw threads, with blunt point, and with tapered entering threads having one or more cutting edges and chip cavities. The tapered threads of the Type F may be complete or incomplete at the producer's option; all other types have incomplete tapered threads. These screws can be used in materials such as aluminum, zinc, and lead die castings; steel sheets and shapes; cast iron; brass; and plastics.

Types BF and BT: Thread-cutting screws with spaced threads as in Type B, with blunt points, and one or more cutting grooves. Used in plastics, asbestos, and other similar compositions.

Type U: Multiple-threaded drive screw with large helix angle, having a pilot point, for use in metal and plastics. This screw is forced into the work by pressure and is intended for making permanent fastenings.

ANSI Standard Head Types for Tapping and Metallic Drive Screws: Many of the head types used with "self-tapping" screw threads are similar to the head types of American National Standard machine screws shown in the section with that heading.

Round Head: The round head has a semi-elliptical top surface and a flat bearing surface. Because of the superior slot driving characteristics of pan head screws over round head screws, and the overlap in dimensions of cross recessed pan heads and round heads, it is recommended that pan head screws be used in new designs and wherever possible substituted in existing designs.

Undercut Flat and Oval Countersunk Heads: For short lengths, 82-degree and oval countersunk head tapping screws have heads undercut to 70 percent of normal side height to afford greater length of thread on the screws.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flat Countersunk Head: The flat countersunk head has a flat top surface and a conical bearing surface with a head angle for one design of approximately 82 degrees and for another design of approximately 100 degrees. Because of its limited usage and in the interest of curtailing product varieties, the 100-degree flat countersunk head is considered non-preferred.

Oval Countersunk Head: The oval countersunk head has a rounded top surface and a conical bearing surface with a head angle of approximately 82 degrees.

Flat and Oval Countersunk Trim Heads: Flat and oval countersunk trim heads are similar to the 82-degree flat and oval countersunk heads except that the size of head for a given size screw is one (large trim head) or two (small trim head) sizes smaller than the regular flat and oval countersunk head size. Oval countersunk trim heads have a definite radius where the curved top surface meets the conical bearing surface. Trim heads are furnished only in cross recessed types.

Pan Head: The slotted pan head has a flat top surface rounded into cylindrical sides and a flat bearing surface. The recessed pan head has a rounded top and a flat bearing surface. This head type is now preferred to the round head.

Fillister Head: The fillister head has a rounded top surface, cylindrical sides, and a flat bearing surface.

Hex Head: The hex head has a flat or indented top surface, six flat sides, and a flat bearing surface. Because the slotted hex head requires a secondary operation in manufacture which often results in burrs at the extremity of the slot that interfere with socket wrench engagement and the wrenching capability of the hex far exceeds that of the slot, it is not recommended for new designs.

Hex Washer Head: The hex washer head has an indented top surface and six flat sides formed integrally with a flat washer that projects beyond the sides and provides a flat bearing surface. Because the slotted hex washer head requires a secondary operation in manufacture, which often results in burrs at the extremity of the slot that often interferes with socket wrench engagement, and because the wrenching capability of the hex far exceeds that of the slot in the indented head, it is not recommended for new designs.

Truss Head: The truss head has a low rounded top surface with a flat bearing surface, the diameter of which for a given screw size is larger than the diameter of the corresponding round head. In the interest of product simplification and recognizing that the truss head is an inherently weak design, it is not recommended for new designs.

Method of Designation.—Tapping screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent); threads per inch; nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); point type; product name, including head type and driving provision; material; and protective finish, if required. Examples:

$\frac{1}{4}$-14 × 1$\frac{1}{2}$ Type AB Slotted Pan Head Tapping Screw, Steel, Nickel Plated

6-32 × $\frac{3}{4}$ Type T, Type 1A Cross Recessed Pan Head Tapping Screw, Corrosion Resistant Steel

0.375-16 × 1.50 Type D, Washer Head Tapping Screw, Steel

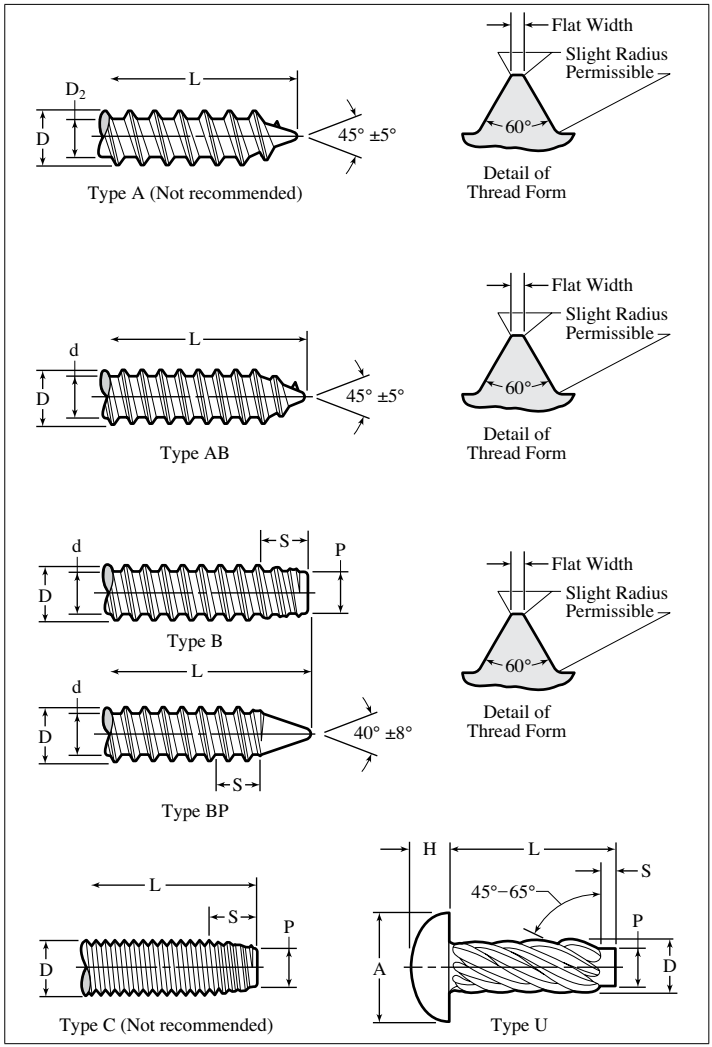
Metallic Drive Screws: Type U metallic drive screws are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Nominal size (number, fraction, or decimal equivalent); nominal length (fraction or decimal equivalent); product name, including head type; material; and protective finish, if required. Examples:

10 × $\frac{5}{16}$ Round Head Metallic Drive Screw, Steel

0.312 × 0.50 Round Head Metallic Drive Screw, Steel, Zinc Plated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

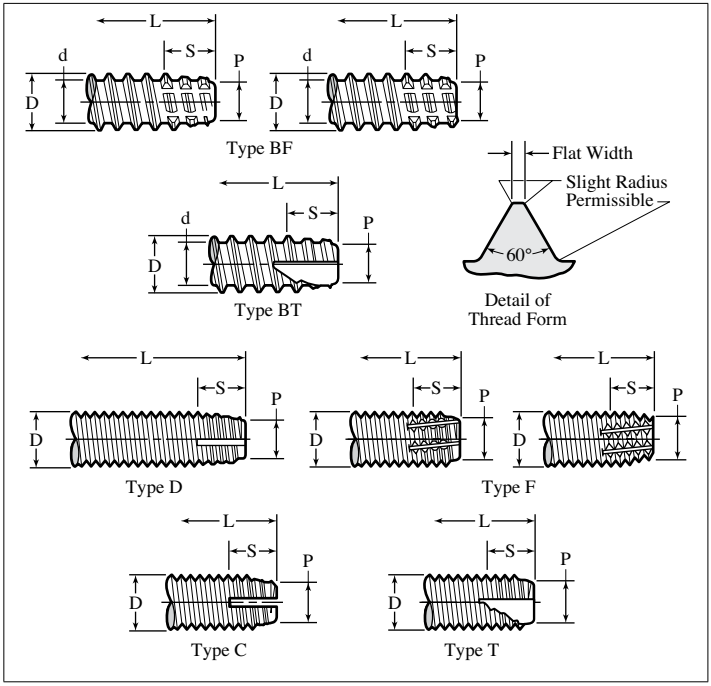
Table 1. ANSI Standard Threads and Points for Thread Forming Self-Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



See Table 3, Table 5, and Table 6 for thread data.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

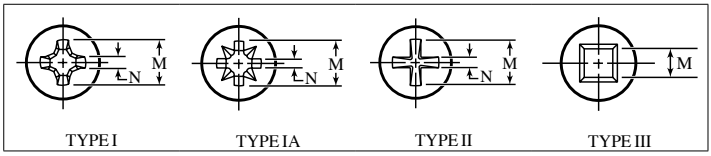
Table 2. ANSI Standard Threads and Points for Thread Cutting Self-Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*



See Table 5 and Table 7 for thread data.

Cross Recesses.—Type I cross recess has a large center opening, tapered wings, and blunt bottom, with all edges relieved or rounded. Type IA cross recess has a large center opening, wide straight wings, and blunt bottom, with all edges relieved or rounded. Type II consists of two intersecting slots with parallel sides converging to a slightly truncated apex at the bottom of the recess. Type III has a square center opening, slightly tapered side walls, and a conical bottom, with top edges relieved or rounded.

Table 3. ANSI Standard Cross Recesses for Self-Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013* **and Metric Thread Forming and Thread Cutting Tapping Screws** *ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn)*



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ANSI Standard Thread and Point Dimensions for Types AB, A and U Thread Forming Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*

Type AB (Formerly BA)							
Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter	Threads per inch	D Major Diameter		d Minor Diameter		L Minimum Practical Screw Lengths	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk. Heads
0 0.0600	48	0.060	0.054	0.036	0.033	1/8	5/32
1 0.0730	42	0.075	0.069	0.049	0.046	5/32	3/16
2 0.0860	**32**	**0.088**	**0.082**	**0.064**	**0.060**	3/16	7/32
3 0.0990	28	0.101	0.095	0.075	0.071	3/16	1/4
4 0.1120	**24**	**0.114**	**0.108**	**0.086**	**0.082**	7/32	9/32
5 0.1250	20	0.130	0.123	0.094	0.090	1/4	5/16
6 0.1380	**20**	**0.139**	**0.132**	**0.104**	**0.099**	9/32	11/32
7 0.1510	19	0.154	0.147	0.115	0.109	5/16	3/8
8 0.1640	**18**	**0.166**	**0.159**	**0.122**	**0.116**	5/16	3/8
10 0.1900	**16**	**0.189**	**0.182**	**0.141**	**0.135**	3/8	7/16
12 0.2160	14	0.215	0.208	0.164	0.157	7/16	21/32
1/4 0.2500	**14**	**0.246**	**0.237**	**0.192**	**0.185**	1/2	19/32
5/16 0.3125	12	0.315	0.306	0.244	0.236	5/8	3/4
3/8 0.3750	12	0.380	0.371	0.309	0.299	3/4	29/32
7/16 0.4375	10	0.440	0.429	0.359	0.349	7/8	1 1/32
1/2 0.5000	10	0.504	0.493	0.423	0.413	1	1 5/32
Type A							
Nominal Size[a] Basic Screw Diameter	Threads per inch	D Major Diameter		d Minor Diameter		L These Lengths or Shorter —Use Type AB	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk. Heads
0 0.0600	40	0.060	0.057	0.042	0.039	1/8	3/16
1 0.0730	32	0.075	0.072	0.051	0.048	1/8	3/16
2 0.0860	32	0.088	0.084	0.061	0.056	5/32	3/16
3 0.0990	28	0.101	0.097	0.076	0.071	3/16	7/32
4 0.1120	24	0.114	0.110	0.083	0.078	3/16	1/4
5 0.1250	20	0.130	0.126	0.095	0.090	3/16	1/4
6 0.1380	18	0.141	0.136	0.102	0.096	1/4	5/16
7 0.1510	16	0.158	0.152	0.114	0.108	5/16	3/8
8 0.1640	15	0.168	0.162	0.123	0.116	3/8	7/16
10 0.1900	12	0.194	0.188	0.133	0.126	3/8	1/2
12 0.2160	11	0.221	0.215	0.162	0.155	7/16	9/16
14 0.2420	10	0.254	0.248	0.185	0.178	1/2	5/8
16 0.2680	10	0.280	0.274	0.197	0.189	9/16	3/4
18 0.2940	9	0.306	0.300	0.217	0.209	5/8	13/16
20 0.3200	9	0.333	0.327	0.234	0.226	11/16	13/16
24 0.3720	9	0.390	0.383	0.291	0.282	3/4	1

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in fourth place are omitted.

Type U Metallic Drive Screws											
Nom. Size	No. of Starts	Out. Dia.		Pilot Dia.		Nom. Size	No. of Starts	Out. Dia.		Pilot Dia.	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
00	6	0.060	0.057	0.049	0.046	8	8	0.167	0.162	0.136	0.132
0	6	0.075	0.072	0.063	0.060	10	8	0.182	0.177	0.150	0.146
2	8	0.100	0.097	0.083	0.080	12	8	0.212	0.206	0.177	0.173
4	7	0.116	0.112	0.096	0.092	14	9	0.242	0.236	0.202	0.198
6	7	0.140	0.136	0.116	0.112	5/16	11	0.315	0.309	0.272	0.267
7	8	0.154	0.150	0.126	0.122	3/8	12	0.378	0.371	0.334	0.329

All dimensions are in inches. See Table 1 for thread diagrams.

Sizes shown in bold face type are preferred. Type A screws are no longer recommended.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. ANSI Standard Thread and Point Dimensions for B and BP Thread Forming and BF and BT Thread Cutting Tapping Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013

THREAD FORMING TYPES B AND BP													
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter		Thds per Inch[b]	D		d		P		S		L		
			Major Diameter		Minor Diameter		Point Diameter[c]		Point Taper Length[d]		Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Lengths		
											Type B		Type BP
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk Heads	90° Heads	Csk Heads
0	0.0600	48	0.060	0.054	0.036	0.033	0.031	0.027	0.042	0.031	1/8	1/8	5/32	3/16
1	0.0730	42	0.075	0.069	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.048	0.036	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32
2	0.0860	32	0.088	0.082	0.064	0.060	0.058	0.054	0.062	0.047	5/32	3/16	1/4	9/32
3	0.0990	28	0.101	0.095	0.075	0.071	0.068	0.063	0.071	0.054	3/16	7/32	9/32	5/16
4	0.1120	24	0.114	0.108	0.086	0.082	0.079	0.074	0.083	0.063	3/16	1/4	5/16	11/32
5	0.1250	20	0.130	0.123	0.094	0.090	0.087	0.082	0.100	0.075	7/32	9/32	11/32	13/32
6	0.1380	20	0.139	0.132	0.104	0.099	0.095	0.089	0.100	0.075	1/4	9/32	3/8	7/16
7	0.1510	19	0.154	0.147	0.115	0.109	0.105	0.099	0.105	0.079	1/4	5/16	13/32	15/32
8	0.1640	18	0.166	0.159	0.122	0.116	0.112	0.106	0.111	0.083	9/32	11/32	7/16	1/2
10	0.1900	16	0.189	0.182	0.141	0.135	0.130	0.123	0.125	0.094	5/16	3/8	1/2	19/32
12	0.2160	14	0.215	0.208	0.164	0.157	0.152	0.145	0.143	0.107	11/32	7/16	9/16	21/32
1/4	0.2500	14	0.246	0.237	0.192	0.185	0.179	0.171	0.143	0.107	3/8	1/2	21/32	3/4
5/16	0.3125	12	0.315	0.306	0.244	0.236	0.230	0.222	0.167	0.125	15/32	19/32	27/32	31/32
3/8	0.3750	12	0.380	0.371	0.309	0.299	0.293	0.285	0.167	0.125	17/32	11/16	15/16	1 1/8
7/16	0.4375	10	0.440	0.429	0.359	0.349	0.343	0.335	0.200	0.150	5/8	25/32	1 1/8	1 1/4
1/2	0.5000	10	0.504	0.493	0.423	0.413	0.407	0.399	0.200	0.150	11/16	27/32	1 1/4	1 13/32

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place shall be omitted.

[b] The width of flat at crest of thread shall not exceed 0.004 inch for sizes up to No. 8, inclusive, and 0.006 inch for larger sizes.

[c] Point diameters specified apply to screw threads before roll threading.

[d] Points of screws are tapered and fluted or slotted. The flute on Type BT screws has an included angle of 90 to 95 degrees and the thread cutting edge is located above the axis of the screw. Flutes and slots extend through first full form thread beyond taper except for Type BF screw on which tapered threads may be complete at manufacturer's option and flutes may be one pitch short of first full form thread.

THREAD CUTTING TYPES BF AND BT[d]												
Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter		Thds per Inch[b]	D		d		P		S		L	
			Major Diameter		Minor Diameter		Point Diameter[c]		Point Taper Length[d]		Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Lengths	
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk Heads
0	0.0600	48	0.060	0.054	0.036	0.033	0.031	0.027	0.042	0.031	1/8	1/8
1	0.0730	42	0.075	0.069	0.049	0.046	0.044	0.040	0.048	0.036	1/8	5/32
2	0.0860	32	0.088	0.082	0.064	0.060	0.058	0.054	0.062	0.047	5/32	3/16
3	0.0990	28	0.101	0.095	0.075	0.071	0.068	0.063	0.071	0.054	3/16	7/32
4	0.1120	24	0.114	0.108	0.086	0.082	0.079	0.074	0.083	0.063	3/16	1/4
5	0.1250	20	0.130	0.123	0.094	0.090	0.087	0.082	0.100	0.075	7/32	9/32
6	0.1380	20	0.139	0.132	0.104	0.099	0.095	0.089	0.100	0.075	1/4	9/32
7	0.1510	19	0.154	0.147	0.115	0.109	0.105	0.099	0.105	0.079	1/4	5/16
8	0.1640	18	0.166	0.159	0.122	0.116	0.112	0.106	0.111	0.083	9/32	11/32
10	0.1900	16	0.189	0.182	0.141	0.135	0.130	0.123	0.125	0.094	5/16	3/8
12	0.2160	14	0.215	0.208	0.164	0.157	0.152	0.145	0.143	0.107	11/32	7/16
1/4	0.2500	14	0.246	0.237	0.192	0.185	0.179	0.171	0.143	0.107	3/8	1/2
5/16	0.3125	12	0.315	0.306	0.244	0.236	0.230	0.222	0.167	0.125	15/32	19/32
3/8	0.3750	12	0.380	0.371	0.309	0.299	0.293	0.285	0.167	0.125	17/32	11/16
7/16	0.4375	10	0.440	0.429	0.359	0.349	0.343	0.335	0.200	0.150	5/8	25/32
1/2	0.5000	10	0.504	0.493	0.423	0.413	0.407	0.399	0.200	0.150	11/16	27/32

All dimensions are in inches. See Table 1 and Table 2 for thread diagrams.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Thread and Point Dimensions for Type C Thread Forming Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013, Appendix*

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter	Threads per inch	D		P		S				L			
		Major Diameter		Point Diameter[b]		Point Taper Length[c]				Determinant Lengths for Point Taper[c]		Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Lengths	
						For Short Screws		For Long Screws					
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk Heads	90° Heads	Csk Heads
2 0.0860	56	0.0860	0.0813	0.068	0.061	0.062	0.045	0.080	0.062	5/32	3/16	5/32	3/16
2 0.0860	64	0.0860	0.0816	0.070	0.064	0.055	0.039	0.070	0.055	1/8	3/16	1/8	5/32
3 0.0990	48	0.0990	0.0938	0.078	0.070	0.073	0.052	0.094	0.073	3/16	7/32	5/32	7/32
3 0.0990	56	0.0990	0.0942	0.081	0.074	0.062	0.045	0.080	0.062	5/32	3/16	5/32	3/16
4 0.1120	40	0.1120	0.1061	0.087	0.078	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	1/4	3/16	1/4
4 0.1120	48	0.1120	0.1068	0.091	0.083	0.073	0.052	0.094	0.073	3/16	7/32	5/32	7/32
5 0.1250	40	0.1250	0.1191	0.100	0.091	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	9/32	3/16	1/4
5 0.1250	44	0.1250	0.1195	0.102	0.094	0.080	0.057	0.102	0.080	3/16	1/4	3/16	1/4
6 0.1380	32	0.1380	0.1312	0.107	0.096	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	5/16	1/4	5/16
6 0.1380	40	0.1380	0.1321	0.113	0.104	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	9/32	3/16	1/4
8 0.1640	32	0.1640	0.1571	0.132	0.122	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	11/32	1/4	5/16
8 0.1640	36	0.1640	0.1577	0.136	0.126	0.097	0.069	0.125	0.097	7/32	5/16	7/32	9/32
10 0.1900	24	0.1900	0.1818	0.148	0.135	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	7/16	5/16	13/32
10 0.1900	32	0.1900	0.1831	0.158	0.148	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	11/32	1/4	5/16
12 0.2160	24	0.2160	0.2078	0.174	0.161	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	7/16	5/16	13/32
12 0.2160	28	0.2160	0.2085	0.180	0.168	0.125	0.089	0.161	0.125	5/16	13/32	9/32	3/8
1/4 0.2500	20	0.2500	0.2408	0.200	0.184	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	17/32	3/8	1/2
1/4 0.2500	28	0.2500	0.2425	0.214	0.202	0.125	0.089	0.161	0.125	5/16	13/32	9/32	3/8
5/16 0.3125	18	0.3125	0.3026	0.257	0.239	0.194	0.139	0.250	0.194	15/32	19/32	7/16	9/16
5/16 0.3125	24	0.3125	0.3042	0.271	0.257	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	15/32	5/16	15/32
3/8 0.3750	16	0.3750	0.3643	0.312	0.293	0.219	0.156	0.281	0.219	1/2	11/16	15/32	5/8
3/8 0.3750	24	0.3750	0.3667	0.333	0.319	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	1/2	5/16	1/2
7/16 0.4375	14	0.4375	0.4258	0.366	0.344	0.250	0.179	0.321	0.250	19/32	3/4	9/16	23/32
7/16 0.4375	20	0.4375	0.4281	0.387	0.371	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	9/16	3/8	17/32
1/2 0.5000	13	0.5000	0.4876	0.423	0.399	0.269	0.192	0.346	0.269	5/8	25/32	19/32	3/4
1/2 0.5000	20	0.5000	0.4906	0.450	0.433	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	9/16	3/8	17/32

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place shall be omitted.
[b] The tabulated values apply to screw blanks before roll threading.
[c] Screws of these nominal lengths and shorter shall have point taper length specified above for short screws. Longer lengths shall have point taper length specified for long screws.

All dimensions are in inches. See Table 1 for thread diagrams. Type C is not recommended for new designs.
Tapered threads shall have unfinished crests.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. ANSI Standard Thread and Point Dimensions for Types D, F, G, and T Thread Cutting Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013*

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Screw Diameter	Threads per inch	D		P		S				L			
		Major Diameter		Point Diameter[b]		Point Taper Length[c]				Determinant Lengths for Point Taper[c]		Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Lengths	
						For Short Screws		For Long Screws					
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	90° Heads	Csk Heads	90° Heads	Csk Heads
2 0.0860	56	0.0860	0.0813	0.068	0.061	0.062	0.045	0.080	0.062	5/32	3/16	5/32	3/16
2 0.0860	64	0.0860	0.0816	0.070	0.064	0.055	0.039	0.070	0.055	1/8	3/16	1/8	5/32
3 0.0990	48	0.0990	0.0938	0.078	0.070	0.073	0.052	0.094	0.073	3/16	7/32	5/32	7/32
3 0.0990	56	0.0990	0.0942	0.081	0.074	0.062	0.045	0.080	0.062	5/32	3/16	5/32	3/16
4 0.1120	40	0.1120	0.1061	0.087	0.078	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	1/4	3/16	1/4
4 0.1120	48	0.1120	0.1068	0.091	0.083	0.073	0.052	0.094	0.073	3/16	7/32	5/32	7/32
5 0.1250	40	0.1250	0.1191	0.100	0.091	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	9/32	3/16	1/4
5 0.1250	44	0.1250	0.1195	0.102	0.094	0.080	0.057	0.102	0.080	3/16	1/4	3/16	1/4
6 0.1380	32	0.1380	0.1312	0.107	0.096	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	5/16	1/4	5/16
6 0.1380	40	0.1380	0.1321	0.113	0.104	0.088	0.062	0.112	0.088	7/32	9/32	3/16	1/4
8 0.1640	32	0.1640	0.1571	0.132	0.122	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	11/32	1/4	5/16
8 0.1640	36	0.1640	0.1577	0.136	0.126	0.097	0.069	0.125	0.097	7/32	5/16	7/32	9/32
10 0.1900	24	0.1900	0.1818	0.148	0.135	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	7/16	5/16	13/32
10 0.1900	32	0.1900	0.1831	0.158	0.148	0.109	0.078	0.141	0.109	1/4	11/32	1/4	5/16
12 0.2160	24	0.2160	0.2078	0.174	0.161	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	7/16	5/16	13/32
12 0.2160	28	0.2160	0.2085	0.180	0.168	0.125	0.089	0.161	0.125	5/16	13/32	9/32	3/8
1/4 0.2500	20	0.2500	0.2408	0.200	0.184	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	17/32	3/8	1/2
1/4 0.2500	28	0.2500	0.2425	0.214	0.202	0.125	0.089	0.161	0.125	5/16	13/32	9/32	3/8
5/16 0.3125	18	0.3125	0.3026	0.257	0.239	0.194	0.139	0.250	0.194	15/32	19/32	7/16	9/16
5/16 0.3125	24	0.3125	0.3042	0.271	0.257	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	15/32	5/16	15/32
3/8 0.3750	16	0.3750	0.3643	0.312	0.293	0.219	0.156	0.281	0.219	1/2	11/16	15/32	5/8
3/8 0.3750	24	0.3750	0.3667	0.333	0.319	0.146	0.104	0.188	0.146	11/32	1/2	5/16	1/2
7/16 0.4375	14	0.4375	0.4258	0.366	0.344	0.250	0.179	0.321	0.250	19/32	3/4	9/16	23/32
7/16 0.4375	20	0.4375	0.4281	0.387	0.371	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	9/16	3/8	17/32
1/2 0.5000	13	0.5000	0.4876	0.423	0.399	0.269	0.192	0.346	0.269	5/8	25/32	19/32	3/4
1/2 0.5000	20	0.5000	0.4906	0.450	0.433	0.175	0.125	0.225	0.175	13/32	9/16	3/8	17/32

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place shall be omitted.

[b] The tabulated values apply to screw blanks before roll threading.

[c] Screws of these nominal lengths and shorter shall have point taper length specified above for short screws. Longer lengths shall have point taper length specified for long screws.

All dimensions are in inches. See Table 2 for thread diagrams.

"Type D" otherwise designated "Type 1."

"Type T" otherwise designated "Type 23."

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Approximate Hole Sizes for Type A Steel Thread Forming Screws

In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel Metal, Brass, and Aluminum Sheet Metal									
Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size: Pierced or Extruded	Hole Size: Drilled or Clean Punched	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size: Pierced or Extruded	Hole Size: Drilled or Clean Punched	Drill Size
4	0.015	…	0.086	44	8	0.024	0.136	0.125	1/8
	0.018	…	0.086	44		0.030	0.136	0.125	1/8
	0.024	0.098	0.094	42		0.036	0.136	0.125	1/8
	0.030	0.098	0.094	42		0.048	0.136	0.128	30
	0.036	0.098	0.098	40	10	0.018	…	0.136	29
6	0.015	…	0.104	37		0.024	0.157	0.136	29
	0.018	…	0.104	37		0.030	0.157	0.136	29
	0.024	0.111	0.104	37		0.036	0.157	0.136	29
	0.030	0.111	0.104	37		0.048	0.157	0.149	25
	0.036	0.111	0.106	36	12	0.024	…	0.161	20
7	0.015	…	0.116	32		0.030	0.185	0.161	20
	0.018	…	0.116	32		0.036	0.185	0.161	20
	0.024	0.120	0.116	32		0.048	0.185	0.161	20
	0.030	0.120	0.116	32	14	0.024	…	0.185	13
	0.036	0.120	0.116	32		0.030	0.209	0.189	12
	0.048	0.120	0.120	31		0.036	0.209	0.191	11
8	0.018	…	0.125	1/8		0.048	0.209	0.196	9

In Plywood (Resin Impregnated)						In Asbestos Compositions					
Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Min. Mat'l Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes: Min.	Penetration in Blind Holes: Max.	Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Min. Mat'l Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes: Min.	Penetration in Blind Holes: Max.
4	0.098	40	0.188	0.250	0.750	4	0.094	42	0.188	0.250	0.750
6	0.110	35	0.188	0.250	0.750	6	0.106	36	0.188	0.250	0.750
7	0.128	30	0.250	0.312	0.750	7	0.125	1/8	0.250	0.312	0.750
8	0.140	28	0.250	0.312	0.750	8	0.136	29	0.250	0.312	0.750
10	0.170	18	0.312	0.375	1.000	10	0.161	20	0.312	0.375	1.000
12	0.189	12	0.312	0.375	1.000	12	0.185	13	0.312	0.375	1.000
14	0.228	1	0.438	0.500	1.000	14	0.213	3	0.438	0.500	1.000

Type A is not recommended, use Type AB.
See footnote at bottom of Table 9.

Table 9. Approximate Hole Sizes for Type C Steel Thread Forming Screws

In Sheet Steel											
Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size
4-40	0.037	0.094	42	10-24	0.037	0.154	23	1/4-20	0.037	0.221	2
	0.048	0.094	42		0.048	0.161	20		0.048	0.221	2
	0.062	0.096	41		0.062	0.166	19		0.062	0.228	1
	0.075	0.100	39		0.075	0.170	18		0.075	0.234	A
	0.105	0.102	38		0.105	0.173	17		0.105	0.234	A
	0.134	0.102	38		0.134	0.177	16		0.134	0.236	6 mm
6-32	0.037	0.113	33	10-32	0.037	0.170	18	1/4-28	0.037	0.224	5.7 mm
	0.048	0.116	32		0.048	0.170	18		0.048	0.228	1
	0.062	0.116	32		0.062	0.170	18		0.062	0.232	5.9 mm
	0.075	0.122	3.1 mm		0.075	0.173	17		0.075	0.234	A
	0.105	0.125	1/8		0.105	0.177	16		0.105	0.238	B
	0.134	0.125	1/8		0.134	0.177	16		0.134	0.238	B
8-32	0.037	0.136	29	12-24	0.037	0.189	12	5/16-18	0.037	0.290	L
	0.048	0.144	27		0.048	0.194	10		0.048	0.290	L
	0.062	0.144	27		0.062	0.194	10		0.062	0.290	L
	0.075	0.147	26		0.075	0.199	8		0.075	0.295	M
	0.105	0.150	25		0.105	0.199	8		0.105	0.295	M
	0.134	0.150	25		0.134	0.199	8		0.134	0.295	M

All dimensions are in inches except drill sizes. It may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application.
Type C is not recommended for new designs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Approximate Pierced or Extruded Hole Sizes for Types AB, B, and BP Steel Thread Forming Screws

Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Pierced or Extruded Hole Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Pierced or Extruded Hole Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Pierced or Extruded Hole Size
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel Metal, and Brass Sheet Metal								
4	0.015	0.086	7	0.024	0.120	10	0.030	0.157
	0.018	0.086		0.030	0.120		0.036	0.157
	0.024	0.098		0.036	0.120		0.048	0.157
	0.030	0.098		0.048	0.120	12	0.024	0.185
	0.036	0.098	8	0.018	0.136		0.030	0.185
6	0.015	0.111		0.024	0.136		0.036	0.185
	0.018	0.111		0.030	0.136		0.048	0.185
	0.024	0.111		0.036	0.136	¼	0.030	0.209
	0.030	0.111		0.048	0.136		0.036	0.209
	0.036	0.111	10	0.018	0.157		0.048	0.209
7	0.018	0.120		0.024	0.157	…	…	…
In Aluminum Alloy Sheet Metal								
4	0.024	0.086	6	0.048	0.111	8	0.036	0.136
	0.030	0.086	7	0.024	0.120		0.048	0.136
	0.036	0.086		0.030	0.120	10	0.024	0.157
	0.048	0.086		0.036	0.120		0.030	0.157
6	0.024	0.111		0.048	0.120		0.036	0.157
	0.030	0.111	8	0.024	0.136		0.048	0.157
	0.036	0.111		0.030	0.136	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches except whole number screw and drill sizes.

Since conditions differ widely, it may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application.

Table 11. Drilled Hole Sizes for Types AB, B, and BP Steel Thread Forming Screws

Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Min. Mat'l Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes		Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Min. Mat'l Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes	
				Min.	Max.					Min.	Max.
In Plywood (Resin Impregnated)						In Asbestos Compositions					
2	0.073	49	0.125	0.188	0.500	2	0.076	48	0.125	0.188	0.500
4	0.100	39	0.188	0.250	0.625	4	0.101	38	0.188	0.250	0.625
6	0.125	⅛	0.188	0.250	0.625	6	0.120	31	0.188	0.250	0.625
7	0.136	29	0.188	0.250	0.750	7	0.136	29	0.250	0.312	0.750
8	0.144	27	0.188	0.250	0.750	8	0.147	26	0.312	0.375	0.750
10	0.173	17	0.250	0.312	1.000	10	0.166	19	0.312	0.375	1.000
12	0.194	10	0.312	0.375	1.000	12	0.196	9	0.312	0.375	1.000
¼	0.228	1	0.312	0.375	1.000	¼	0.228	1	0.438	0.500	1.000
In Aluminum, Magnesium, Zinc, Brass, and Bronze Castings[a]						In Phenol Formaldehyde Plastics[a]					
2	0.078	47	…	0.125	…	2	0.078	47	…	0.188	…
4	0.104	37	…	0.188	…	4	0.100	39	…	0.250	…
6	0.128	30	…	0.250	…	6	0.128	30	…	0.250	…
7	0.144	27	…	0.250	…	7	0.136	29	…	0.250	…
8	0.152	24	…	0.250	…	8	0.150	25	…	0.312	…
10	0.177	16	…	0.250	…	10	0.177	16	…	0.312	…
12	0.199	8	…	0.281	…	12	0.199	8	…	0.375	…
¼	0.234	15⁄64	…	0.312	…	¼	0.234	15⁄64	…	0.375	…
In Cellulose Acetate and Nitrate, and Acrylic and Styrene Resins[a]											
2	0.078	47	…	0.188	…	8	0.144	27	…	0.312	…
4	0.094	42	…	0.250	…	10	0.170	18	…	0.312	…
6	0.120	31	…	0.250	…	12	0.191	11	…	0.375	…
7	0.128	30	…	0.250	…	¼	0.221	2	…	0.375	…

[a] Data below apply to Types B and BP only.

All dimensions are in inches except whole number screw and drill sizes.

Since conditions differ widely, it may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12a. Approximate Drilled or Clean-Punched Hole Sizes for Types AB, B, and BP Steel Thread Forming Screws

Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel Metal, and Brass Sheet Metal											
2	0.015	0.064	52	7	0.018	0.116	32	10	0.125	0.170	18
	0.018	0.064	52		0.024	0.116	32		0.135	0.170	18
	0.024	0.067	51		0.030	0.116	32		0.164	0.173	17
	0.030	0.070	50		0.036	0.116	32	12	0.024	0.166	19
	0.036	0.073	49		0.048	0.120	31		0.030	0.166	19
	0.048	0.073	49		0.060	0.128	30		0.036	0.166	19
	0.060	0.076	48		0.075	0.136	29		0.048	0.170	18
4	0.015	0.086	44		0.105	0.140	28		0.060	0.177	16
	0.018	0.086	44	8	0.024	0.125	1/8		0.075	0.182	14
	0.024	0.089	43		0.030	0.125	1/8		0.105	0.185	13
	0.030	0.094	42		0.036	0.125	1/8		0.125	0.196	9
	0.036	0.094	42		0.048	0.128	30		0.135	0.196	9
	0.048	0.096	41		0.060	0.136	29		0.164	0.201	7
	0.060	0.100	39		0.075	0.140	28	1/4	0.030	0.194[a]	10[a]
	0.075	0.102	38		0.105	0.150	25		0.036	0.194[a]	10[a]
6	0.015	0.104	37		0.125	0.150	25		0.048	0.194[a]	10[a]
	0.018	0.104	37		0.135	0.152	24		0.060	0.199[a]	8[a]
	0.024	0.106	36	10	0.024	0.144	27		0.075	0.204[a]	6[a]
	0.030	0.106	36		0.030	0.144	27		0.105	0.209	4
	0.036	0.110	35		0.036	0.147	26		0.125	0.228	1
	0.048	0.111	34		0.048	0.152[a]	24[a]		0.135	0.228	1
	0.060	0.116	32		0.060	0.152[a]	24[a]		0.164	0.234	15/64
	0.075	0.120	31		0.075	0.157	22		0.187	0.234	15/64
	0.105	0.128	30		0.105	0.161	20		0.194	0.234	15/64
In Aluminum Alloy Sheet Metal											
2	0.024	0.064	52	7	0.060	0.120	31	10	0.164	0.159	21
	0.030	0.064	52		0.075	0.128	30		0.200		
	0.036	0.064	52		0.105	0.136	29		to	0.166	19
	0.048	0.067	51		0.128				0.375		
	0.060	0.070	50		to	0.136	29	12	0.048	0.161	20
4	0.030	0.086	44		0.250				0.060	0.166	19
	0.036	0.086	44	8	0.030	0.116	32		0.075	0.173	17
	0.048	0.086	44		0.036	0.120	31		0.105	0.180	15
	0.060	0.089	43		0.048	0.128	30		0.125	0.182	14
	0.075	0.089	43		0.060	0.136	29		0.135	0.182	14
	0.105	0.094	42		0.075	0.140	28		0.164	0.189	12
6	0.030	0.104	37		0.105	0.147	26		0.200		
	0.036	0.104	37		0.125	0.147	26		to	0.196	9
	0.048	0.104	37		0.135	0.149	25		0.375		
	0.060	0.106	36		0.162			1/4	0.060	0.199	8
	0.75	0.110	35		to	0.152	24		0.075	0.201	7
	0.105	0.111	34		0.375				0.105	0.204	6
	0.128			10	0.036	0.144	27		0.125	0.209	4
	to	120	31		0.048	0.144	27		0.135	0.209	4
	250				0.060	0.144	27		0.164	0.213	3
7	0.030	0.113	33		0.075	0.147	26		0.187	0.213	3
	0.036	0.113	33		0.105	0.147	26		0.194	0.221	2
	0.048	0.116	32		0.125	0.154	23		0.200		
					0.135	0.154	23		to	228	1
									0.375		

[a] For Types B and BP only; for Type AB see concluded Table 12b following.

Since conditions differ widely, it may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application. Hole sizes for metal thicknesses above 0.075 inch are for Types B and BP only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12b. Supplementary Data for Types AB Thread Forming Screws in Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel Metal, and Brass Sheet Metal

Screw Size	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel Metal, and Brass Sheet Metal											
10	0.018	0.144	27	¼	0.018	0.196	9	¼	0.048	0.205	5
10	0.048	0.149	25	¼	0.024	0.196	9	¼	0.060	0.228	1
10	0.060	0.154	23	¼	0.030	0.196	9	¼	0.075	0.232	5.9 mm
…	…	…	…	¼	0.036	0.196	9	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches except numbered screw and drill sizes.

Table 13. Approximate Hole Sizes for Types D, F, G, and T Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Sheet Metals

Screw Size	Thick-ness	Steel		Aluminum Alloy		Screw Size	Thick-ness	Steel		Aluminum Alloy	
		Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size			Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size
2-56	0.050	0.073	49	0.070	50	8-32	0.187	0.150	25	0.147	26
	0.060	0.073	49	0.073	49		0.250	0.150	25	0.150	25
	0.083	0.073	49	0.073	49		0.312	0.150	25	0.150	25
	0.109	0.073	49	0.073	49	10-24	0.050	0.152	24	0.150	25
	0.125	0.076	48	0.073	49		0.060	0.154	23	0.152	24
	0.140	0.076	48	0.073	49		0.083	0.161	20	0.154	23
3-48	0.050	0.081	46	0.078	5/64		0.109	0.161	20	0.157	22
	0.060	0.081	46	0.081	46		0.125	0.166	19	0.159	21
	0.083	0.082	45	0.082	45		0.140	0.170	18	0.161	20
	0.109	0.086	44	0.082	45		0.187	0.173	17	0.166	19
	0.125	0.086	44	0.082	45		0.250	0.173	17	0.172	11/64
	0.140	0.086	44	0.086	44		0.312	0.173	17	0.173	17
	0.187	0.089	43	0.086	44		0.375	0.173	17	0.173	17
4-40	0.050	0.089	43	0.089	43	10-32	0.050	0.159	21	0.161	20
	0.060	0.089	43	0.089	43		0.060	0.166	19	0.161	20
	0.083	0.094	42	0.089	43		0.083	0.166	19	0.161	20
	0.109	0.096	41	0.094	42		0.109	0.170	18	0.166	19
	0.125	0.098	40	0.094	42		0.125	0.170	18	0.166	19
	0.140	0.098	40	0.094	3/32		0.140	0.170	18	0.166	19
	0.187	0.102	38	0.098	40		0.187	0.177	16	0.172	11/64
5-40	0.050	0.106	36	0.102	38		0.250	0.177	16	0.177	16
	0.060	0.106	36	0.102	38		0.312	0.177	16	0.177	16
	0.083	0.106	36	0.104	37		0.375	0.177	16	0.177	16
	0.109	0.106	36	0.104	37	12-24	0.060	0.180	15	0.177	16
	0.125	0.109	7/64	0.106	36		0.083	0.182	14	0.180	15
	0.140	0.110	35	0.106	36		0.109	0.188	3/16	0.182	14
	0.187	0.116	32	0.110	35		0.125	0.191	11	0.185	13
	0.250	0.116	32	0.113	33		0.140	0.191	11	0.188	3/16
6-32	0.050	0.110	35	0.109	7/64		0.187	0.199	8	0.191	11
	0.060	0.113	33	0.109	7/64		0.250	0.199	8	0.199	8
	0.083	0.116	32	0.111	34		0.312	0.199	8	0.199	8
	0.109	0.116	32	0.113	33		0.375	0.199	8	0.199	8
	0.125	0.116	32	0.116	32		0.500	0.199	8	0.199	8
	0.140	0.120	31	0.116	32	¼-20	0.083	0.213	3	0.206	5
	0.187	0.125	1/8	0.120	31		0.109	0.219	7/32	0.209	4
	0.250	0.125	1/8	0.125	1/8		0.125	0.221	2	0.213	3
8-32	0.050	0.136	29	0.136	29		0.140	0.221	2	0.213	3
	0.060	0.140	28	0.136	29		0.187	0.228	1	0.221	2
	0.083	0.140	28	0.136	29		0.250	0.228	1	0.228	1
	0.109	0.144	27	0.140	28		0.312	0.228	1	0.228	1
	0.125	0.144	27	0.140	28		0.375	0.228	1	0.228	1
	0.140	0.147	26	0.144	27		0.500	0.228	1	0.228	1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **Approximate Hole Sizes for Types D, F, G, and T Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Sheet Metals**

Screw Size	Thick-ness	Steel		Aluminum Alloy		Screw Size	Thick-ness	Steel		Aluminum Alloy	
		Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size			Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size
1/4-28	0.083	0.221	2	0.219	7/32	5/16-24	0.187	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.109	0.228	1	0.221	2		0.250	0.295	M	0.295	M
	0.125	0.228	1	0.221	2		0.312	0.295	M	0.295	M
	0.140	0.234	A	0.221	2		0.375	0.295	M	0.295	M
	0.187	0.234	15/64	0.228	1		0.500	0.295	M	0.295	M
	0.250	0.234	15/64	0.234	15/64	3/8-16	0.125	0.339	R	0.328	21/64
	0.312	0.234	15/64	0.234	15/64		0.140	0.339	R	0.332	Q
	0.375	0.234	15/64	0.234	15/64		0.187	0.348	S	0.339	R
	0.500	0.234	15/64	0.234	15/64		0.250	0.358	T	0.348	S
5/16-18	0.109	0.277	J	0.266	H		0.312	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.125	0.277	J	0.272	I		0.375	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.140	0.281	9/32	0.272	I		0.500	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.187	0.290	L	0.281	K	3/8-24	0.125	0.348	S	0.344	11/32
	0.250	0.290	L	0.290	L		0.140	0.348	S	0.344	11/32
	0.312	0.290	L	0.290	L		0.187	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.375	0.290	L	0.290	L		0.250	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.500	0.290	L	0.290	L		0.312	0.358	T	0.358	T
5/16-24	0.109	0.290	L	0.281	K		0.375	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.125	0.290	L	0.281	9/32		0.500	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.140	0.290	L	0.281	9/32		…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches except numbered drill and screw sizes. It may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application.

Table 14. Approximate Hole Sizes for Types D, F, G, and T Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Cast Metals and Plastics

Screw Size	Thick-ness	Cast Iron		Zinc and Aluminum[a]		Screw Size	Thick-ness	Cast Iron		Zinc and Aluminum[a]	
		Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size			Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size
2-56	0.050	0.076	48	0.073	49	5-40	0.083	0.113	33	0.106	36
	0.060	0.076	48	0.073	49		0.109	0.113	33	0.110	35
	0.083	0.076	48	0.076	48		0.125	0.116	32	0.110	35
	0.109	0.078	5/64	0.076	48		0.140	0.116	32	0.110	35
	0.125	0.078	5/64	0.076	48		0.187	0.116	32	0.111	34
	0.140	0.078	5/64	0.076	48		0.250	0.116	32	0.113	33
3-48	0.050	0.089	43	0.082	45	6-32	0.050	0.120	31	0.116	32
	0.060	0.089	43	0.082	45		0.060	0.120	31	0.120	31
	0.083	0.089	43	0.082	45		0.083	0.125	1/8	0.120	31
	0.109	0.089	43	0.086	44		0.109	0.125	1/8	0.120	31
	0.125	0.089	43	0.089	43		0.125	0.125	1/8	0.120	31
	0.140	0.094	42	0.089	43		0.140	0.125	1/8	0.120	31
	0.187	0.094	42	0.089	43		0.187	0.128	30	0.120	31
4-40	0.050	0.100	39	0.090	41		0.250	0.128	30	0.120	31
	0.060	0.100	39	0.096	41	8-32	0.050	0.147	26	0.144	27
	0.083	0.102	38	0.096	41		0.060	0.150	25	0.144	27
	0.109	0.102	38	0.096	41		0.083	0.150	25	0.144	27
	0.125	0.102	38	0.100	39		0.109	0.150	25	0.144	27
	0.140	0.102	38	0.100	39		0.125	0.150	25	0.147	26
	0.187	0.104	37	0.100	39		0.140	0.150	25	0.147	26
5-40	0.050	0.111	34	0.106	36		0.187	0.154	23	0.147	26
	0.060	0.111	34	0.106	36		0.250	0.154	23	0.150	25
							0.312	0.154	23	0.150	25

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Approximate Hole Sizes for Types D, F, G, and T Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Cast Metals and Plastics**

Screw Size	Thick-ness	Cast Iron		Zinc and Aluminum[a]		Screw Size	Thick-ness	Cast Iron		Zinc and Aluminum[a]	
		Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size			Hole Size	Drill Size	Hole Size	Drill Size
10-24	0.050	0.170	18	0.161	20	¼-28	0.083	0.234	A	0.228	1
	0.060	0.170	18	0.166	19		0.109	0.234	15/64	0.228	1
	0.083	0.172	11/64	0.166	19		0.125	0.234	15/64	0.228	1
	0.109	0.173	17	0.166	19		0.140	0.234	15/64	0.228	1
	0.125	0.173	17	0.166	19		0.187	0.238	B	0.228	1
	0.140	0.173	17	0.166	19		0.250	0.238	B	0.234	A
	0.187	0.177	16	0.170	18		0.312	0.238	B	0.234	A
	0.250	0.177	16	0.170	18		0.375	0.238	B	0.234	15/64
	0.312	0.177	16	0.172	11/64		0.500	0.238	B	0.234	15/64
	0.375	0.177	16	0.172	11/64	5/16-18	0.109	0.290	L	0.277	J
10-32	0.050	0.173	17	0.170	18		0.125	0.290	L	0.281	K
	0.060	0.173	17	0.170	18		0.140	0.290	L	0.281	K
	0.083	0.177	16	0.172	11/64		0.187	0.295	M	0.281	9/32
	0.109	0.177	16	0.172	11/64		0.250	0.295	M	0.281	9/32
	0.125	0.177	16	0.172	11/64		0.312	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.140	0.177	16	0.172	11/64		0.375	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.187	0.180	15	0.172	11/64		0.500	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.250	0.180	15	0.173	17	5/16-24	0.109	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.312	0.180	15	0.173	17		0.125	0.295	M	0.290	L
	0.375	0.180	15	0.177	16		0.140	0.295	M	0.290	L
12-24	0.060	0.196	9	0.189	12		0.187	0.302	N	0.290	L
	0.083	0.199	8	0.191	11		0.250	0.302	N	0.290	L
	0.109	0.199	8	0.191	11		0.312	0.302	N	0.295	M
	0.125	0.199	8	0.191	11		0.375	0.302	N	0.295	M
	0.140	0.199	8	0.194	10		0.500	0.302	N	0.295	M
	0.187	0.203	13/64	0.194	10	3/8-16	0.125	0.348	S	0.339	R
	0.250	0.204	6	0.196	9		0.140	0.348	S	0.339	R
	0.312	0.204	6	0.196	9		0.187	0.348	S	0.339	R
	0.375	0.204	6	0.199	8		0.250	0.348	S	0.344	11/32
	0.500	0.204	6	0.199	8		0.312	0.348	S	0.344	11/32
¼-20	0.083	0.228	1	0.219	7/32		0.375	0.348	S	0.348	S
	0.109	0.228	1	0.219	7/32		0.500	0.348	S	0.348	S
	0.125	0.228	1	0.221	2	3/8-24	0.125	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.140	0.228	1	0.221	2		0.140	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.187	0.234	15/64	0.221	2		0.187	0.358	T	0.348	S
	0.250	0.234	15/64	0.228	1		0.250	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.312	0.234	15/64	0.228	1		0.312	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.375	0.234	15/64	0.228	1		0.375	0.358	T	0.358	T
	0.500	0.234	15/64	0.228	1		0.500	0.358	T	0.358	T

[a] Die Castings

Screw Size	Phenol Formaldehyde[a]				Cellulose Acetate, Cellulose Nitrate, Acrylic Resin, and Styrene Resin[a]			
	Hole Size	Drill Size	Depth of Penetration		Hole Size	Drill Size	Depth of Penetration	
			Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.
2-56	0.078	5/64	0.219	0.375	0.076	48	0.219	0.375
3-48	0.089	43	0.219	0.375	0.086	44	0.219	0.375
4-40	0.098	40	0.250	0.312	0.093	42	0.250	0.312
5-40	0.113	33	0.250	0.438	0.110	35	0.250	0.438
6-32	0.116	32	0.250	0.312	0.116	32	0.250	0.312
8-32	0.144	27	0.312	0.500	0.144	27	0.312	0.500
10-24	0.161	20	0.375	0.500	0.161	20	0.375	0.500
10-32	0.166	19	0.375	0.500	0.166	19	0.375	0.500
¼-20	0.228	1	0.375	0.625	0.228	1	0.375	1.000

[a] Plastics

For footnotes see Table 13.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Approximate Hole Sizes for Types BF and BT Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Cast Metals

In Die-Cast Zinc and Aluminum							
Screw Size	Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size
2	0.060	0.073	49	10	0.125	0.166	19
	0.083	0.073	49		0.140	0.166	19
	0.109	0.076	48		0.188	0.166	19
	0.125	0.076	48		0.250	0.170	18
	0.140	0.076	48		0.312	0.172	11/64
3	0.060	0.086	44		0.375	0.172	11/64
	0.083	0.086	44	12	0.125	0.191	11
	0.109	0.086	44		0.140	0.191	11
	0.125	0.086	44		0.188	0.191	11
	0.140	0.089	43		0.250	0.196	9
	0.188	0.089	43		0.312	0.196	9
4	0.109	0.098	40		0.375	0.196	9
	0.125	0.100	39	1/4	0.125	0.221	2
	0.140	0.100	39		0.140	0.221	2
	0.188	0.100	39		0.188	0.221	2
	0.250	0.102	38		0.250	0.228	1
5	0.109	0.111	34		0.312	0.228	1
	0.125	0.111	34		0.375	0.228	1
	0.140	0.113	33	5/16	0.125	0.281	K
	0.188	0.113	33		0.140	0.281	K
	0.250	0.116	32		0.188	0.281	K
6	0.125	0.120	31		0.250	0.281	K
	0.140	0.120	31		0.312	0.290	L
	0.188	0.120	31		0.375	0.290	L
	0.250	0.125	1/8	3/8	0.125	0.344	11/32
	0.312	0.125	1/8		0.140	0.344	11/32
8	0.125	0.149	25		0.188	0.344	11/32
	0.140	0.149	25		0.250	0.344	11/32
	0.188	0.149	25		0.312	0.348	S
	0.250	0.152	24		0.375	0.348	S
	0.312	0.152	24		…	…	…

All dimensions are in inches except numbered drill and screw sizes. It may be necessary to vary the hole size to suit a particular application.

Table 16. Approximate Hole Size for Types BF and BT Steel Thread Cutting Screws in Plastics

Screw Size	Phenol Formaldehyde				Cellulose Acetate, Cellulose Nitrate, Acrylic Resin and Styrene Resin			
	Hole Size	Drill Size	Depth of Penetration		Hole Size	Drill Size	Depth of Penetration	
			Min.	Max.			Min.	Max.
2	0.078	5/64	0.094	0.250	0.076	48	0.094	0.250
3	0.089	43	0.125	0.312	0.089	43	0.125	0.312
4	0.104	37	0.125	0.312	0.100	39	0.125	0.312
5	0.116	32	0.188	0.375	0.113	33	0.188	0.375
6	0.125	1/8	0.188	0.375	0.120	31	0.188	0.375
8	0.147	26	0.250	0.500	0.144	27	0.250	0.500
10	0.170	18	0.312	0.625	0.166	19	0.312	0.625
12	0.194	10	0.375	0.625	0.189	12	0.375	0.625
1/4	0.228	1	0.375	0.750	0.221	2	0.375	0.750

For footnotes see above table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Approximate Hole Sizes for Type U Hardened Steel Metallic Drive Screws

In Ferrous and Nonferrous Castings, Sheet Metals, Plastics, Plywood (Resin-Impregnated) and Fiber								
Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size	Screw Size	Hole Size	Drill Size
00	.052	55	6	.120	31	12	.191	11
0	.067	51	7	.136	29	14	.221	2
2	.086	44	8	.144	27	5/16	.295	M
4	.104	37	10	.161	20	3/8	.358	T

All dimensions are in inches except whole number screw and drill sizes and letter drill sizes.

Table 18. ANSI Standard Torsional Strength Requirements for Tapping Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.3-2013

Nom. Screw Size	Type A	Types AB, B, BF, BP, and BT	Types C, D, F, G, and T		Nom-Screw Size	Type A	Types AB, B, BF, BP, and BT	Types C, D, F, G, and T	
			Coarse Thread	Fine Thread				Coarse Thread	Fine Thread
2	4	4	5	6	1/4	…	142	140	179
3	9	9	9	10	16	152	…	…	…
4	12	13	13	15	18	196	…	…	…
5	18	18	18	20	5/16	…	290	306	370
6	24	24	23	27	20	250	…	…	…
7	30	30	…	…	24	492	…	…	…
8	39	39	42	47	3/8	…	590	560	710
10	48	56	56	74	7/16	…	620	700	820
12	83	88	93	108	1/2	…	1020	1075	1285
14	125	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

Torsional strength data are in pound-inches.

Self-Tapping Thread Inserts.—Self-tapping screw thread inserts are essentially hard bushings with internal and external threads. The internal threads conform to Unified and American standard classes 2B and 3B, depending on the type of insert used. The external thread has cutting edges on the end that provide the self-tapping feature. These inserts may be used in magnesium, aluminum, cast iron, zinc, plastics, and other materials. Self-tapping inserts are made of case-hardened carbon steel, stainless steel, and brass, the brass type being designed specifically for installation in wood.

Screw Thread Inserts.—Screw thread inserts are helically formed coils of diamond-shaped stainless steel or phosphor bronze wire that screw into a threaded hole to form a mating internal thread for a screw or stud. These inserts provide a convenient means of repairing stripped-out threads and are also used to provide stronger threads in soft materials such as aluminum, zinc die castings, wood, magnesium, etc. than can be obtained by direct tapping of the base metal involved.

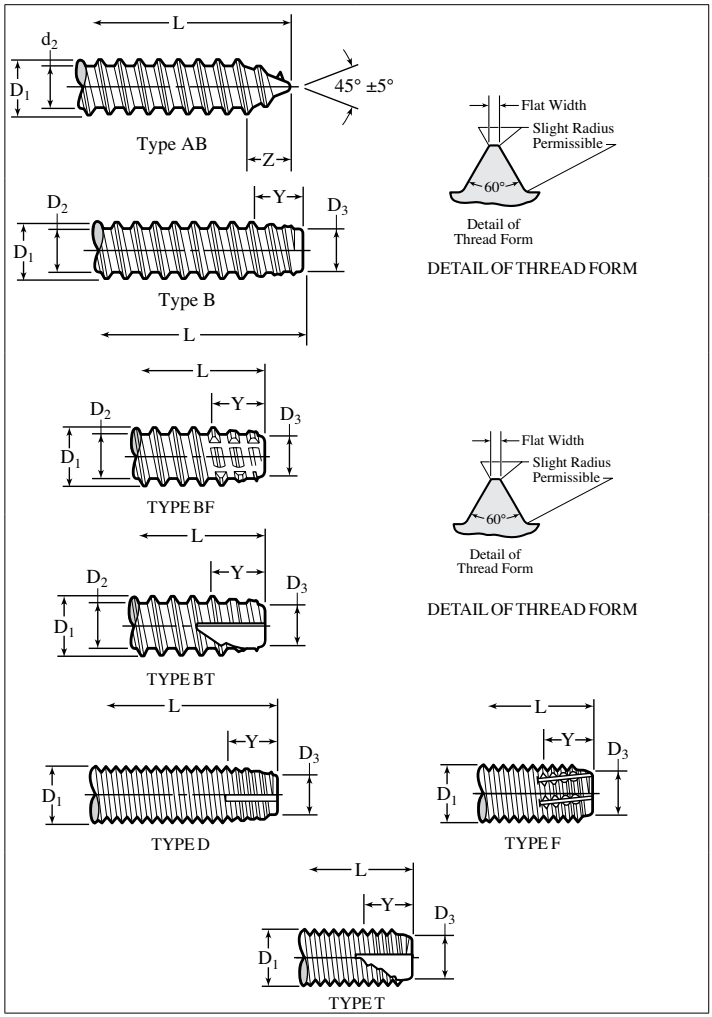
According to the Heli-Coil Corp., conventional design practice in specifying boss diameters or edge distances can usually be applied since the major diameter of a hole tapped to receive a thread insert is not much larger than the major diameter of thread the insert provides.

Screw thread inserts are available in thread sizes from 4-40 to $1\frac{1}{2}$-6 inch National and Unified Coarse Thread Series and in 6-40 to $1\frac{1}{2}$-12 sizes in the fine-thread series. When used in conjunction with appropriate taps and gages, screw thread inserts will meet requirements of 2, 2B, 3, and 3B thread classes.

ANSI Standard Metric Thread Forming and Thread Cutting Tapping Screws.—Table 1 shows the various types of metric thread forming and thread cutting screw threads covered by the standard ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn). The designations of the American National Standards Institute are shown.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. ANSI Standard Threads and Points for Metric Thread Forming and Thread Cutting Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn)*



See Table 3 and Table 4 for thread data.

Thread Forming Tapping Screws: These types are generally for application in materials where large internal stresses are permissible or desirable, to increase resistance to loosening. These screws have the following descriptions and applications:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type AB: Spaced thread screw with gimlet point primarily intended for use in thin metal, resin impregnated plywood, and asbestos compositions.

Type B: Spaced thread screw with a blunt point that has tapered entering threads with unfinished crests and same pitches as Type AB. Used for thin metal, nonferrous castings, resin impregnated plywood, certain resilient plastics, and asbestos compositions.

Thread Cutting Tapping Screws: These screws are generally for application in materials where disruptive internal stresses are undesirable or where excessive driving torques are encountered with thread forming tapping screws. These screws have the following descriptions and applications:

Types BF and BT: Spaced threads with blunt point and tapered entering threads having unfinished crests, as on Type B, with one or more cutting edges or chip cavities, intended for use in plastics, asbestos compositions, and other similar materials.

Types D, F, and T: Tapping screws with threads of machine screw diameter-pitch combinations (metric coarse thread series) approximating a 60 degree basic thread form (not necessarily conforming to any standard thread profile) with a blunt point and tapered entering threads with unfinished crests and having one or more cutting edges and chip cavities, intended for use in materials such as aluminum, zinc, and lead die castings; steel sheets and shapes; cast iron; brass; and plastics.

ANSI Standard Head Types for Metric Thread Forming and Cutting Tapping Screws.—The head types covered by ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn) include those commonly applicable to metric tapping screws and are described as follows:

Flat Countersunk Head: The flat countersunk head has a flat top surface and a conical bearing surface with a head angle of 90 to 92 degrees.

Oval Countersunk Head: The oval countersunk head has a rounded top surface and a conical bearing surface with a head angle of 90 to 92 degrees.

Pan Head: The slotted pan head has a flat top surface rounding into cylindrical sides and a flat bearing surface. The recessed pan head has a rounded top surface blending into cylindrical sides and a flat bearing surface.

Hex Head: The hex head has a flat or indented top surface, six flat sides, and a flat bearing surface.

Hex Flange Head: The hex flange head has a flat or indented top surface and six flat sides formed integrally with a frustroconical or slightly rounded (convex) flange that projects beyond the sides and provides a flat bearing surface.

Method of Designation.—Metric tapping screws are designated with the following data, preferably in the sequence shown: Nominal size; thread pitch; nominal length; thread and point type; product name, including head style and driving provision; material; and protective finish, if required.

Examples:

$6.3 \times 1.8 \times 30$ Type AB, Slotted Pan Head Tapping Screw, Steel, Zinc Plated

$6 \times 1 \times 20$ Type T, Type 1A Cross Recessed Pan Head Tapping Screw, Corrosion Resistant Steel

$4.2 \times 1.4 \times 13$ Type BF, Type 1 Cross Recessed Oval Countersunk Head Tapping Screw, Steel, Chromium Plated

$10 \times 1.5 \times 40$ Type D, Hex Flange Head Tapping Screw, Steel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Recommended Nominal Screw Lengths for Metric Tapping Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn)

Nominal Screw Length	Nominal Screw Size for Types AB, B, BF, and BT									
	2.2	-	2.9	3.5	4.2	4.8	5.5	6.3	8	9.5
	Nominal Screw Size for Types D, F, and T									
	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	5	-	6	8	10
4	PH	PH								
5	PH	PH								
6	A	A	PH							
8	A	A	A	PH	PH					
10	A	A	A	A	A	PH				
13	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	PH		
16		A	A	A	A	A	A	A	PH	
20				A	A	A	A	A	A	PH
25				A	A	A	A	A	A	A
30						A	A	A	A	A
35						A	A	A	A	A
40							A	A	A	A
45									A	A
50									A	A
55										A
60										A

Table 3. ANSI Standard Thread and Point Dimensions for Types AB and B Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn)*

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch[a]	Basic Screw Diameter	Basic Thread Pitch	D_1		D_2		D_3		Y		Z	L			
			Thread Major Diameter		Thread Minor Diameter		Point Diameter[b]		Point Taper Length Type B[c]		Point Length Factor TypeAB	Min. Practical Nominal Screw Length[d]			
												Type AB		Type B	
	Ref.[e]	Ref.[e]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.[f]	Note 7	Note 8	Note 7	Note 8
2.2×0.8	2.184	0.79	2.24	2.10	1.63	1.52	1.47	1.37	1.6	1.2	2.0	4	6	4	5
2.9×1	2.845	1.06	2.90	2.76	2.18	2.08	2.01	1.88	2.1	1.6	2.6	6	7	5	7
3.5×1.3	3.505	1.27	3.53	3.35	2.64	2.51	2.41	2.26	2.5	1.9	3.2	7	9	6	8
4.2×1.4	4.166	1.41	4.22	4.04	3.10	2.95	2.84	2.69	2.8	2.1	3.7	8	10	7	10
4.8×1.6	4.826	1.59	4.80	4.62	3.58	3.43	3.30	3.12	3.2	2.4	4.3	9	12	8	11
5.5×1.8	5.486	1.81	5.46	5.28	4.17	3.99	3.86	3.68	3.6	2.7	5.0	11	14	9	12
6.3×1.8	6.350	1.81	6.25	6.03	4.88	4.70	4.55	4.34	3.6	2.7	6.0	12	16	10	13
8×2.1	7.938	2.12	8.00	7.78	6.20	5.99	5.84	5.64	4.2	3.2	7.5	16	20	12	17
9.5×2.1	9.525	2.12	9.65	9.43	7.85	7.59	7.44	7.24	4.2	3.2	8.0	19	24	14	19

[a] The body diameter (unthreaded portion) is not less than the minimum minor diameter nor greater than the maximum major diameter of the thread.

[b] The tabulated values shall apply to screw blanks prior to roll threading.

[c] The tabulated maximum limits are equal to approximately two times the thread pitch.

[d] Lengths shown are theoretical minimums and are intended to assist the user in the selection of appropriate short screw lengths. Refer to Table 2 for recommended diameter-length combinations.

[e] Basic screw diameter and basic thread pitch shall be used for calculation purposes wherever these factors appear in formulations for dimensions.

[f] The minimum effective grip length on Type AB tapping screws shall be determined by subtracting the point length factor from the minimum screw length.

All dimensions are in millimeters. See Table 1 for thread diagrams.

[7] Pan, hex, and hex flange heads.

[8] Flat and oval countersunk heads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ANSI Standard Thread and Point Dimensions for Types BF, BT, D, F, and T Metric Thread Cutting Tapping Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn)*

Types BF and BT												
Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Basic Screw Diameter	Basic Thread Pitch	D_1 Thread Major Diameter		D_2 Thread Minor Diameter		D_3 Point Diameter[a]		Y Point Taper Length Type B[b]		L Minimal Practical Nominal Screw Length[c]	
	Ref.[d]	Ref.[d]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Pan, Hex and Hex Flange Heads	Flat and Oval Countersunk Heads
2.2×0.8	2.184	0.79	2.24	2.10	1.63	1.52	1.47	1.37	1.6	1.2	4	5
2.9×1	2.845	1.06	2.90	2.76	2.18	2.08	2.01	1.88	2.1	1.6	5	7
3.5×1.3	3.505	1.27	3.53	3.35	2.64	2.51	2.41	2.26	2.5	1.9	6	8
4.2×1.4	4.166	1.41	4.22	4.04	3.10	2.95	2.84	2.69	2.8	2.1	7	10
4.8×1.6	4.826	1.59	4.80	4.62	3.58	3.43	3.30	3.12	3.2	2.4	8	11
5.5×1.8	5.486	1.81	5.46	5.28	4.17	3.99	3.86	3.68	3.6	2.7	9	12
6.3×1.8	6.350	1.81	6.25	6.03	4.88	4.70	4.55	4.34	3.6	2.7	10	13
8×2.1	7.938	2.12	8.00	7.78	6.20	5.99	5.84	5.64	4.2	3.2	12	17
9.5×2.1	9.525	2.12	9.65	9.43	7.85	7.59	7.44	7.24	4.2	3.2	14	19

[a] The tabulated values apply to screw blanks prior to roll threading.

[b] The tabulated maximum limits are equal to approximately two times the thread pitch.

[c] Lengths shown are theoretical minimums and are intended to assist in the selection of appropriate short screw lengths. See Table 2 for recommended length-diameter combinations. For Types D, F, and T, shorter screws are available with the point length reduced to the limits tabulated for short screws.

[d] Basic screw diameter and basic thread pitch are used for calculation purposes whenever these factors appear in formulations for dimensions.

Types D, F, T										
Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	D_1 Thread Major Diameter		D_3 Point Diameter[a]		D_S Body Diameter[a]	Y Point Taper Length For Short Screws		Y Point Taper Length For Long Screws[b]		L Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Length[c] Pan, Hex and Hex Flange Heads	L Minimum Practical Nominal Screw Length[c] Flat and Oval Countersunk Heads
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		
2×0.4	2.00	1.88	1.45	1.39	1.65	1.4	1.0	1.8	1.4	4	5
2.5×0.45	2.50	2.37	1.88	1.82	2.12	1.6	1.1	2.0	1.6	4	6
3×0.5	3.00	2.87	2.32	2.26	2.58	1.8	1.3	2.3	1.8	5	6
3.5×0.6	3.50	3.35	2.68	2.60	3.00	2.1	1.5	2.7	2.1	5	8
4×0.7	4.00	3.83	3.07	2.97	3.43	2.5	1.8	3.2	2.5	6	9
5×0.8	5.00	4.82	3.94	3.84	4.36	2.8	2.0	3.6	2.8	7	10
6×1	6.00	5.79	4.69	4.55	5.21	3.5	2.5	4.5	3.5	9	12
8×1.25	8.00	7.76	6.40	6.24	7.04	4.4	3.1	5.6	4.4	11	16
10×1.5	10.00	9.73	8.08	7.88	8.86	5.3	3.8	6.8	5.3	13	18

[a] Minimum limits for body diameter (unthreaded portion) are tabulated for convenient reference. For Types BF and BT, the body diameter is not less than the minimum minor diameter nor greater than the maximum major diameter of the thread.

[b] Long screws are screws of nominal lengths equal to or longer than those listed under L.

All dimensions are in millimeters. See Table 1 for thread diagrams.

Material and Heat Treatment.—Tapping screws are normally fabricated from carbon steel and are suitably processed to meet the performance and test requirements outlined in the standard, B18.6.5M. Tapping screws may also be made from corrosion resistant steel, Monel, brass, and aluminum alloys. The materials, properties, and performance characteristics applicable to such screws should be mutually agreed upon between the manufacturer and the purchaser.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Clearance Holes for Metric Tapping Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.6.5M-2000 (Withdrawn), Appendix

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Basic Clearance Hole Diameter[a]			Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Basic Clearance Hole Diameter[a]		
	Close Clearance[b]	Normal Clearance (Preferred)[b]	Loose Clearance[b]		Close Clearance[b]	Normal Clearance (Preferred)[b]	Loose Clearance[b]
Types AB, B, BF, and BT				Types D, F, and T			
2.2×0.8	2.40	2.60	2.80	2×0.4	2.20	2.40	2.60
2.9×1	3.10	3.30	3.50	2.5×0.45	2.70	2.90	3.10
3.5×1.3	3.70	3.90	4.20	3×0.5	3.20	3.40	3.60
4.2×1.4	4.50	4.70	5.00	3.5×0.6	3.70	3.90	4.20
4.8×1.6	5.10	5.30	5.60	4×0.7	4.30	4.50	4.80
5.5×1.8	5.90	6.10	6.50	5×0.8	5.30	5.50	5.80
6.3×1.8	6.70	6.90	7.30	6×1	6.40	6.60	7.00
8×2.1	8.40	9.00	10.00	8×1.25	8.40	9.00	10.00
9.5×2.1	10.00	10.50	11.50	10×1.5	10.50	11.00	12.00

[a] The values given in this table are minimum limits. The recommended plus tolerances are as follows: for clearance hole diameters over 1.70 to and including 5.80 mm, plus 0.12, 0.20, and 0.30 mm for close, normal, and loose clearances, respectively; over 5.80 to and including 14.50 mm, plus 0.18, 0.30, and 0.45 mm for close, normal, and loose clearances, respectively.

[b] Normal clearance hole sizes are preferred. Close clearance hole sizes are for situations such as critical alignment of assembled components, wall thickness, or other limitations that necessitate the use of a minimal hole. Countersinking or counterboring at the fastener entry side may be necessary for the proper seating of the head. Loose clearance hole sizes are for applications where maximum adjustment capability between the components being assembled is necessary.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Approximate Installation Hole Sizes for Metric Tapping Screws.—The approximate hole sizes given in Table 7 through Table 9 provide general guidance in selecting holes for installing the respective types of metric thread forming and thread cutting tapping screws in various commonly used materials. Types AB, B, BF, and BT metric tapping screws are covered in these tables; hole sizes for Types D, F, and T metric thread cutting tapping screws are still under development.

Table 6. Approximate Pierced or Extruded Hole Sizes for Steel Types AB and B Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel, and Brass Sheet Metal								
2.9×1	0.38	2.18	4.2×1.4	0.46	3.45	5.5×1.8	0.61	4.70
	0.46	2.18		0.61	3.45		0.76	4.70
	0.61	2.49		0.76	3.45		0.91	4.70
	0.76	2.49		0.91	3.45		1.22	4.70
	0.91	2.49		1.22	3.45		…	…
3.5×1.3	0.38	2.82	4.8×1.6	0.46	3.99	6.3×1.8	0.76	5.31
	0.46	2.82		0.61	3.99		0.91	5.31
	0.61	2.82		0.76	3.99		1.22	5.31
	0.76	2.82		0.91	3.99		…	…
	0.91	2.82		1.22	3.99		…	…
In Aluminum Alloy								
2.9×1	0.61	2.18	3.5×1.3	0.91	2.82	4.8×1.6	0.61	3.99
	0.76	2.18		1.22	2.82		0.76	3.99
	0.91	2.18	4.2×1.4	0.61	3.45		0.91	3.99
	1.22	2.18		0.76	3.45		1.22	3.99
3.5×1.3	0.61	2.82		0.91	3.45		…	…
	0.76	2.82		1.22	3.45		…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Approximate Drilled or Clean-Punched Hole Sizes for Steel Type AB Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws in Sheet Metal

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thick-ness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel, and Brass Sheet Metal											
2.2 × 0.8	0.38	1.63	52	3.5 × 1.3	0.61	2.69	36	4.8 × 1.6	1.22	3.78	25
	0.46	1.63	52		0.76	2.69	36		1.52	3.91	23
	0.61	1.70	51		0.91	2.79	35		1.90	3.99	22
	0.76	1.78	50		1.22	2.82	34	5.5 × 1.8	0.46	…	…
	0.91	1.85	49		1.52	2.95	32		0.61	4.22	19
	1.22	1.85	49		1.90	3.05	31		0.76	4.22	19
	1.52	1.93	48	4.2 × 1.4	0.46	…	…		0.91	4.22	19
2.9 × 1	0.38	2.18	44		0.61	3.18	…		1.22	4.32	18
	0.46	2.18	44		0.76	3.18	…		1.52	4.50	16
	0.61	2.26	43		0.91	3.18	…		1.90	4.62	14
	0.76	2.39	42		1.22	3.25	30	6.3 × 1.8	0.46	4.98	9
	0.91	2.39	42		1.52	3.45	29		0.61	4.98	9
	1.22	2.44	41		1.90	3.56	28		0.76	4.98	9
	1.52	2.54	39	4.8 × 1.6	0.46	3.66	27		0.91	4.98	9
	1.90	2.59	38		0.61	3.66	27		1.22	5.21	W
3.5 × 1.3	0.38	2.64	37		0.76	3.66	27		1.52	5.79	1
	0.46	2.64	37		0.91	3.73	26		1.90	5.89	…
In Aluminum Alloy Sheet Metal											
2.2 × 0.8	0.38	…	…	3.5 × 1.3	0.61	…	…	4.8 × 1.6	1.22	3.66	27
	0.46	…	…		0.76	2.64	37		1.52	3.66	27
	0.61	1.63	52		0.91	2.64	37		1.90	3.73	26
	0.76	1.63	52		1.22	2.64	37	5.5 × 1.8	0.46	…	…
	0.91	1.63	52		1.52	2.69	36		0.61	…	…
	1.22	1.70	51		1.90	2.79	35		0.76	…	…
	1.52	1.78	50	4.2 × 1.4	0.46	…	…		0.91	…	…
2.9 × 1	0.38	…	…		0.61	…	…		1.22	4.09	20
	0.46	…	…		0.76	2.95	32		1.52	4.22	19
	0.61	…	…		0.91	3.05	31		1.90	4.39	17
	0.76	2.18	44		1.22	3.25	30	6.3 × 1.8	0.46	…	…
	0.91	2.18	44		1.52	3.45	29		0.61	…	…
	1.22	2.18	44		1.90	3.56	28		0.76	…	…
	1.52	2.26	43	4.8 × 1.6	0.46	…	…		0.91	…	…
	1.90	2.26	43		0.61	…	…		1.22	…	…
3.5 × 1.3	0.38	…	…		0.76	…	…		1.52	5.05	8
	0.46	…	…		0.91	3.66	27		1.90	5.11	7

[a] Customary drill size references have been retained where the metric hole diameters are direct conversions of their decimal inch equivalents.

All dimensions are in millimeters except drill sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Approximate Hole Sizes for Steel Type AB Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws in Plywoods and Asbestos

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Mat. Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes		Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Mat. Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes	
				Min.	Max.				Min.	Max.
In Plywood (Resin Impregnated)						In Asbestos Compositions				
2.2×0.8	1.85	49	3.18	4.78	12.70	1.93	48	3.18	4.78	12.70
2.9×1	2.54	39	4.78	6.35	15.88	2.57	38	4.78	6.35	15.88
3.5×1.3	3.18	…	4.78	6.35	15.88	3.05	31	4.78	6.35	15.88
4.2×1.4	3.66	27	4.78	6.35	19.05	3.73	26	7.92	9.52	19.05
4.8×1.6	4.39	17	6.35	7.92	25.40	4.22	19	7.92	9.52	25.40
5.5×1.8	4.93	10	7.92	9.52	25.40	4.98	9	7.92	9.52	25.40
6.3×1.8	5.79	1	7.92	9.52	25.40	5.79	1	11.13	12.70	25.40

[a] Customary drill size references have been retained where the metric hole diameters are direct conversions of their decimal inch equivalents.

All dimensions are in millimeters except drill sizes.

Table 9. Approximate Hole Sizes for Steel Type B Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws in Plywoods, Asbestos, and Plastics

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Mat. Thick-ness	Penetration in Blind Holes		Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Mat. Thick-ness	Penetration in Blind Holes	
				Min.	Max.					Min.	Max.
In Plywood (Resin Impregnated)											
2.2×0.8	1.85	49	3.18	4.78	12.70	4.8×1.6	4.39	17	6.35	7.92	25.40
2.9×1	2.54	39	4.78	6.35	15.88	5.5×1.8	4.93	10	7.92	9.52	25.40
3.5×1.3	3.18	…	4.78	6.35	15.88	6.3×1.8	5.79	1	7.92	9.52	25.40
4.2×1.4	3.66	27	4.78	6.35	19.05	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Customary drill size references have been retained where the metric hole diameters are direct conversions of their decimal inch equivalents.

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Mat. Thickness	Penetration in Blind Holes	
				Min.	Max.
In Asbestos Compositions					
2.2×0.8	1.93	48	3.18	4.78	12.70
2.9×1	2.57	38	4.78	6.35	15.88
3.5×1.3	3.05	31	4.78	6.35	15.88
4.2×1.4	3.73	26	7.92	9.52	19.05
4.8×1.6	4.22	19	7.92	9.52	25.40
5.5×1.8	4.98	9	7.92	9.52	25.40
6.3×1.8	5.79	1	11.13	12.70	25.40

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Penetration in Blind Holes	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Penetration in Blind Holes
In Phenol Formaldehyde				In Cellulose Acetate and Nitrate, Acrylic and Styrene Resins		
2.2×0.8	1.98	47	4.78	1.98	47	4.78
2.9×1	2.54	39	6.35	2.39	42	6.35
3.5×1.3	3.25	30	6.35	3.05	32	6.35
4.2×1.4	3.81	25	7.92	3.66	27	7.92
4.8×1.6	4.50	16	7.92	4.32	18	7.92
5.5×1.8	5.05	8	9.52	4.85	11	9.52
6.3×1.8	5.94	…	9.52	5.61	2	9.52

All dimensions are in millimeters except drill sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Approximate Drilled or Clean-Punched Hole Sizes for Steel Type B Metric Thread Forming Tapping Screws in Sheet Metal and Cast Metals

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Metal Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]
In Steel, Stainless Steel, Monel, and Brass Sheet Metal											
	0.38	1.63	52	3.5×1.3	1.90	3.05	31		0.61	4.22	19
	0.46	1.63	52		2.67	3.25	30		0.76	4.22	19
	0.61	1.70	51		0.61	3.18	…		0.91	4.22	19
2.2×0.8	0.76	1.78	50		0.76	3.18	…		1.22	4.32	18
	0.91	1.85	49		0.91	3.18	…	5.5×1.8	1.52	4.50	16
	1.22	1.85	49		1.22	3.25	30		1.90	4.62	14
	1.52	1.93	48	4.2×1.4	1.52	3.45	29		2.67	4.70	13
	0.38	2.18	44		1.90	3.56	28		3.18	4.98	9
	0.46	2.18	44		2.67	3.81	25		3.43	4.98	9
	0.61	2.26	43		3.18	3.81	25		4.17	5.11	7
	0.76	2.39	42		3.43	3.86	24		0.76	4.93	10
2.9×1	0.91	2.39	42		0.61	3.66	27		0.91	4.93	10
	1.22	2.44	41		0.76	3.66	27		1.22	4.93	10
	1.52	2.54	39		0.91	3.73	26		1.52	5.05	8
	1.90	2.59	38		1.22	3.86	24		1.90	5.18	6
	0.38	2.64	37		1.52	3.86	24	6.3×1.8	2.67	5.31	4
	0.46	2.64	37	4.8×1.6	1.90	3.99	22		3.18	5.79	1
	0.61	2.69	36		2.67	4.09	20		3.43	5.79	1
3.5×1.3	0.76	2.69	36		3.18	4.32	18		4.17	5.94	…
	0.91	2.79	35		3.43	4.32	18		4.75	5.94	…
	1.22	2.82	34		4.17	4.39	17		4.93	5.94	…
	1.52	2.95	32								
In Aluminum Alloy Sheet Metal											
	0.61	1.63	52		0.76	2.95	32		1.22	4.09	20
	0.76	1.63	52		0.91	3.05	31		1.52	4.22	19
2.2×0.8	0.91	1.63	52		1.22	3.25	30		1.90	4.39	17
	1.22	1.70	51		1.52	3.45	29		2.67	4.57	15
	1.52	1.78	50		1.90	3.56	28	5.5×1.8	3.18	4.62	14
	0.76	2.18	44	4.2×1.4	2.67	3.73	26		3.43	4.62	14
	0.91	2.18	44		3.18	3.73	26		4.17	4.80	12
	1.22	2.18	44		3.43	3.78	25		5.08		
2.9×1	1.52	2.26	43		4.11				to		
	1.90	2.26	43		to				9.52	4.98	9
	2.67	2.39	42		9.52	3.86	24		1.52	5.05	8
	0.76	2.64	37		0.91	3.66	27		1.90	5.11	7
	0.91	2.64	37		1.22	3.66	27		2.67	5.18	6
	1.22	2.64	37		1.52	3.66	27		3.18	5.31	4
	1.52	2.69	36		1.90	3.73	26		3.43	5.31	4
	1.90	2.79	35		2.67	3.73	26		4.17	5.41	3
3.5×1.3	2.67	2.82	34	4.8×1.6	3.18	3.91	23	6.3×1.8	4.75	5.41	3
	3.25				3.43	3.91	23		4.93	5.61	2
	to				4.17	4.04	21		5.08		
	6.25	3.05	31		5.08				to		
					to				9.52	5.79	1
					9.52	4.22	19				

[a] Customary drill size references have been retained where the metric hole diameters are direct conversions of their decimal inch equivalents.

In Aluminum, Magnesium, Zinc, Brass, and Bronze Cast Metals							
Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Penetration in Blind Holes	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Min. Penetration in Blind Holes
2.2×0.8	1.98	47	3.18	4.8×1.6	4.50	16	6.35
2.9×1	2.64	37	4.78	5.5×1.8	5.05	8	7.14
3.5×1.3	3.25	30	6.35	6.3×1.8	5.94	4	7.92
4.2×1.4	3.86	24	6.35	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters, except drill sizes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Approximate Hole Sizes for Steel Types BF and BT Metric Thread Cutting Tapping Screws for Cast Metals and Plastics

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Material Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Material Thickness	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]
In Die-Cast Zinc and Aluminum							
2.2 × 0.8	1.52	1.85	49	3.5 × 1.3	3.18	3.05	31
	2.11	1.85	49		3.56	3.05	31
	2.77	1.93	48		4.78	3.05	31
	3.18	1.93	48		6.35	3.18	…
	3.56	1.93	48		7.92	3.18	…
2.9 × 1	2.77	2.49	40	4.2 × 1.4	3.18	3.78	25
	3.18	2.54	39		3.56	3.78	25
	3.56	2.54	39		4.78	3.78	25
	4.78	2.54	39		6.35	3.86	24
	6.35	2.59	38		7.92	3.86	24
4.8 × 1.6	3.18	4.22	19	6.3 × 1.8	6.35	5.79	1
	3.56	4.22	19		7.92	5.79	1
	4.78	4.22	19		9.52	5.79	1
	6.35	4.32	18	8 × 2.1	3.18	7.14	K
	7.92	4.37	…		3.56	7.14	K
	9.52	4.37	…		4.78	7.14	K
5.5 × 1.8	3.18	4.85	11		6.35	7.14	K
	3.56	4.85	11		7.92	7.37	L
	4.78	4.85	11		9.52	7.37	L
	6.35	4.98	9	9.5 × 2.1	3.18	8.74	…
	7.92	4.98	9		3.56	8.74	…
	9.52	4.98	9		4.78	8.74	…
6.3 × 1.8	3.18	5.61	2		6.35	8.74	…
	3.56	5.61	2		7.92	8.84	S
	4.78	5.61	2		9.52	8.84	S

Nominal Screw Size and Thread Pitch	Hole Size	Drill Size[a]	Depth of Penetration	
			Min.	Max.
In Phenol Formaldehyde				
2.2 × 0.8	1.98	…	2.39	6.35
2.9 × 1.0	2.64	37	3.18	7.92
3.5 × 1.3	3.18	…	4.78	9.52
4.2 × 1.4	3.73	26	6.35	12.70
4.8 × 1.6	4.32	18	7.92	15.88
5.5 × 1.8	4.93	10	9.52	15.88
6.3 × 1.8	5.79	1	9.52	19.05
In Cellulose Acetate and Nitrate, Acrylic and Styrene Resins				
2.2 × 0.8	1.93	48	2.39	6.35
2.9 × 1.0	2.54	39	3.18	7.92
3.5 × 1.3	3.05	31	4.78	9.52
4.2 × 1.4	3.66	27	6.35	12.70
4.8 × 1.6	4.22	19	7.92	15.88
5.5 × 1.8	4.80	12	9.52	15.88
6.3 × 1.8	5.61	2	9.52	19.05

[a] Customary drill size references have been retained where the metric hole sizes are direct conversions of their decimal inch equivalents.

All dimensions are in millimeters except drill sizes.

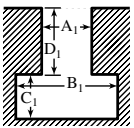
The finish (plating or coating) on metric tapping screws and the material composition and hardness of the mating component are factors that affect assembly torques in individual applications. Although the recommended installation hole sizes given in Table 7 through Table 9 were based on the use of plain unfinished carbon steel metric tapping screws, experience has shown that the specified holes are also suitable for screws having most types of commercial finishes. However, owing to various finishes providing different degrees of lubricity, some adjustment of installation torques may be necessary to suit individual applications. Also, where exceptionally heavy finishes are involved or screws are to be assembled into materials of higher hardness, some deviation from the specified hole sizes may be required to provide optimum assembly. The necessity and extent of such deviations can best be determined by experiment in the particular assembly environment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

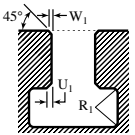
T-SLOTS, BOLTS, AND NUTS

Table 1. American National Standard T-Slots *ANSI/ASME B5.1M-1985 (R2014)*

T-SLOTS



Basic Dimensions



Suggested Approximate Dimensions for Rounding or Breaking of Corners

Nominal T-Bolt Size[a]		Width of Throat A_1[b]		Width of Headspace B_1				Depth of Headspace C_1				Depth of Throat D_1				Rounding or Breaking of Corners[c]					
				inch		mm		inch		mm		inch		mm		inch			mm		
inch	mm	inch	mm	Min.	Max.	Man.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	R_1 Max.	W_1 Max.	U_1 Max.	R_1 Max.	W_1 Max.	U_1 Max.
	4		5			10	11			3	3.5			4.5	7				0.5	0.8	0.8
	5		6			11	12.5			5	6			5	8				0.5	0.8	0.8
0.250	6	0.282	8	0.500	0.562	14.5	16	0.203	0.234	7	8	0.125	0.375	7	11	0.02	0.02	0.03	0.5	0.8	0.8
0.312	8	0.344	10	0.594	0.656	16	18	0.234	0.266	7	8	0.156	0.438	9	14	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.5	0.8	0.8
0.375	10	0.438	12	0.719	0.781	19	21	0.297	0.328	8	9	0.219	0.562	11	17	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.5	0.8	0.8
0.500	12	0.562	14	0.906	0.969	23	25	0.359	0.391	9	11	0.312	0.688	12	19	0.02	0.03	0.03	0.5	0.8	0.8
0.625	16	0.688	18	1.188	1.250	30	32	0.453	0.484	12	14	0.438	0.875	16	24	0.03	0.03	0.05	0.8	0.8	1.3
0.750	20	0.812	22	1.375	1.469	37	40	0.594	0.625	16	18	0.562	1.062	20	29	0.03	0.03	0.05	0.8	0.8	1.3
1.000	24	1.062	28	1.750	1.844	46	50	0.781	0.828	20	22	0.750	1.250	26	36	0.03	0.06	0.05	0.8	1.5	1.3
1.250	30	1.312	36	2.125	2.219	56	60	1.031	1.094	25	28	1.000	1.562	33	46	0.03	0.06	0.05	0.8	1.5	1.3
1.500	36	1.562	42	2.562	2.656	68	72	1.281	1.344	32	35	1.250	1.938	39	53	0.03	0.06	0.05	0.8	1.5	1.3
	42		48			80	85			36	40			44	59				1.5	2.5	2
	48		54			90	95			40	44			50	66				1.5	2.5	2

[a] Width of tongue (tenon) to be used with the above T-Slots will be found in the complete standard, B5.1M.

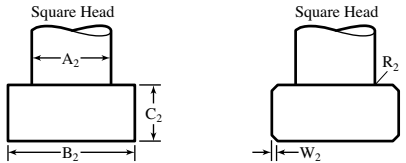
[b] Throat dimensions are basic. When slots are intended to be used for holding only, tolerances can be 0.0 + 0.010 inch or H12 Metric (ISO/R286); when intended for location, tolerance can be 0.0 + 0.001 inch or H8 Metric (see page 665).

[c] Corners of T-Slots may be square or may be rounded or broken to the indicated maximum dimensions at the manufacturer's option.

For the dimensions of tongue seats, inserted tongues, and solid tongues refer to the complete standard, B5.1M.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard T-Bolts *ANSI/ASME B5.1M-1985 (R2014)*

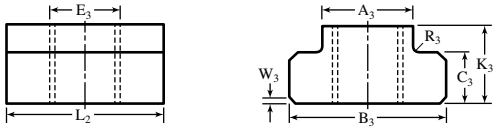


Nominal T-Bolt Size and Thread A_2[a,b]		Bolt Head Dimensions										Rounding of Corners[c]			
		Width Across Flats B_2				Width Across Corners		Height C_2				R_2		W_2	
		inch		mm		inch	mm	inch		mm		inch	mm	inch	mm
inch UNC-2A	metric ISO[d]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Min	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.
	M4			9	8.5		12.7			2.5	2.1		0.3		0.5
	M5			10	9.5		14.1			4	3.6		0.3		0.5
0.250-20	M6	0.469	0.438	13	12	0.663	18.4	0.156	0.141	6	5.6	0.02	0.5	0.03	0.8
0.312-18	M8	0.562	0.531	15	14	0.796	21.2	0.188	0.172	6	5.6	0.02	0.5	0.03	0.8
0.375-16	M10	0.688	0.656	18	17	0.972	25.5	0.250	0.234	7	6.6	0.02	0.5	0.03	0.8
0.500-13	M12	0.875	0.844	22	21	1.238	31.1	0.312	0.297	8	7.6	0.02	0.5	0.06	1.5
0.625-11	M16	1.125	1.094	28	27	1.591	39.6	0.406	0.391	10	9.6	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
0.750-10	M20	1.312	1.281	34	33	1.856	48.1	0.531	0.500	14	13.2	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.000-8	M24	1.688	1.656	43	42	2.387	60.8	0.688	0.656	18	17.2	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.250-7	M30	2.062	2.031	53	52	2.917	75	0.938	0.906	23	22.2	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.500-6	M36	2.500	2.469	64	63	3.536	90.5	1.188	1.156	28	27.2	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
	M42			75	74		106.1			32	30.5		1		2
	M48			85	84		120.2			36	34.5		1		2

[a] For inch tolerances for thread diameters of bolts or studs and for threads see page 1951.
[b] T-slots to be used with these bolts will be found in Table 1.
[c] Corners of T-bolts may be square or may be rounded or broken to the indicated maximum dimensions at the manufacturer's option.
[d] Metric thread grade and tolerance position is 5g 6g (see page 2019).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard T-Nuts *ANSI/ASME B5.1M-1985 (R2014)*



Nominal T-Bolt Size[a]		Width of Tongue A_3				Tap for Stud[b] E_3		Width of Nut B_3				Height of Nut C_3				Total Thickness Including Tongue[c] K_3		Length of Nut[c] L_3		Rounding of Corners			
		inch		mm				inch		mm		inch		mm						R_3		W_3	
inch	mm	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	UNC-3B	ISO[d]	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
	4		…		…		…		…	…	…			…	…		…		…		…		…
	5		…		…		…		…	…	…			…	…		…		…		…		…
0.250	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.312	8	0.330	0.320	8.7	8.5	0.250-20	M6	0.562	0.531	15	14	0.188	0.172	6	5.6	0.281	9	0.562	18	0.02	0.5	0.03	0.8
0.375	10	0.418	0.408	11	10.75	0.312-18	M8	0.688	0.656	18	17	0.250	0.234	7	6.6	0.375	10.5	0.688	20	0.02	0.5	0.03	0.8
0.500	12	0.543	0.533	13.5	13.25	0.375-16	6M10	0.875	0.844	22	21	0.312	0.297	8	7.6	0.531	12	0.875	23	0.02	0.5	0.06	1.5
0.625	16	0.668	0.658	17.25	17	0.500-13	M12	1.125	1.094	28	27	0.406	0.391	10	9.6	0.625	15	1.125	27	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
0.750	20	0.783	0.773	20.5	20.25	0.625-11	M16	1.312	1.281	34	33	0.531	0.500	14	13.2	0.781	21	1.312	35	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.000	24	1.033	1.018	26.5	26	0.750-10	M20	1.688	1.656	43	42	0.688	0.656	18	17.2	1.000	27	1.688	46	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.250	30	1.273	1.258	33	32.5	1.000-8	M24	2.062	2.031	53	52	0.938	0.906	23	22.2	1.312	34	2.062	53	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
1.500	36	1.523	1.508	39.25	38.75	1.250-7	M30	2.500	2.469	64	63	1.188	1.156	28	27.2	1.625	42	2.500	65	0.03	0.8	0.06	1.5
	42			46.75	46.25		M36			75	74			32	30.5		48		75		1		2
	48			52.5	51.75		M42			85	84			36	34.5		54		85		1		2

[a] T-slot dimensions to fit the above nuts will be found in Table 1.
[b] For tolerances of inch threads see page 1951.
[c] No tolerances are given for "Total Thickness" or "Nut Length" as they need not be held to close limits.
[d] Metric tapped thread grade and tolerance position is 5H (see page 2019).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

RIVETS AND RIVETED JOINTS

Riveted Joint Design

Classes and Types of Riveted Joints.—Riveted joints may be classified by application as: 1) pressure vessel; 2) structural; and 3) machine member.

For information and data concerning joints for pressure vessels such as boilers, reference should be made to standard sources such as the ASME Boiler Code. The following sections will cover only structural and machine-member riveted joints.

Basically there are two kinds of riveted joints, the *lap-joint* and the *butt-joint*. In the ordinary *lap-joint*, the plates overlap each other and are held together by one or more rows of rivets. In the *butt-joint*, the plates being joined are in the same plane and are joined by means of a cover plate or butt strap, which is riveted to both plates by one or more rows of rivets. The term *single riveting* means one row of rivets in a lap-joint or one row on each side of a butt-joint; *double riveting* means two rows of rivets in a lap-joint or two rows on each side of the joint in butt riveting. Joints are also triple and quadruple riveted. Lap-joints may also be made with inside or outside cover plates. Types of lap and butt joints are illustrated in the tables on starting at page 1865.

General Design Considerations for Riveted Joints.—Factors to be considered in the design or specification of a riveted joint are: type of joint; spacing of rivets; type and size of rivet; type and size of hole; and rivet material.

Spacing of Rivets: The spacing between rivet centers is called *pitch* and between row center lines, *back pitch* or *transverse pitch*. The distance between centers of rivets nearest each other in adjacent rows is called *diagonal pitch*. The distance from the edge of the plate to the center line of the nearest row of rivets is called *margin*.

Examination of a riveted joint made up of several rows of rivets will reveal that after progressing along the joint a given distance, the rivet pattern or arrangement is repeated. (For a butt joint, the length of a *repeating section* is usually equal to the *long pitch* or pitch of the rivets in the outer row, that is the row farthest from the edge of the joint.) For structural and machine-member joints, the proper pitch may be determined by making the tensile strength of the plate over the length of the repeating section, that is the distance between rivets in the outer row, equal to the total shear strength of the rivets in the repeating section. Minimum pitch and diagonal pitch are also governed by the clearance required for the hold-on (Dolly bar) and rivet set. Dimensions for different sizes of hold-ons and rivet sets are given in the table on page 1870.

When fastening thin plate, it is particularly important to maintain accurate spacing to avoid buckling.

Size and Type of Rivets: The rivet diameter d commonly falls between $d = 1.2\sqrt{t}$ and $d = 1.4\sqrt{t}$, where t is the thickness of the plate. Dimensions for various types of American Standard large ($\frac{1}{2}$-inch diameter and up) rivets and small solid rivets are shown in tables that follow. It may be noted that countersunk heads are not as strong as other types.

Size and Type of Hole: Rivet holes may be punched, punched and reamed, or drilled. Rivet holes are usually made $\frac{1}{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) larger in diameter than the nominal diameter of the rivet although in some classes of work in which the rivet is driven cold, as in automatic machine riveting, the holes are reamed to provide minimum clearance so that the rivet fills the hole completely.

When holes are punched in heavy steel plate, there may be considerable loss of strength unless the holes are reamed to remove the inferior metal immediately surrounding them. This results in the diameter of the punched hole being increased by from $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (1.6 to 3.2 mm). Annealing after punching tends to restore the strength of the plate in the vicinity of the holes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rivet Material: Rivets for structural and machine-member purposes are usually made of wrought iron or soft steel, but for aircraft and other applications where light weight or resistance to corrosion is important, copper, aluminum alloy, Monel, Inconel, etc., may be used as rivet material.

Simplified Design Assumptions: In the design of riveted joints, a simplified treatment is frequently used in which the following assumptions are made:

1) The load is carried equally by the rivets.
2) No combined stresses act on a rivet to cause failure.
3) The shearing stress in a rivet is uniform across the cross section under question.
4) The load that would cause failure in single shear would have to be doubled to cause failure in double shear.
5) The bearing stress of rivet and plate is distributed equally over the projected area of the rivet.
6) The tensile stress is uniform in the section of metal between the rivets.

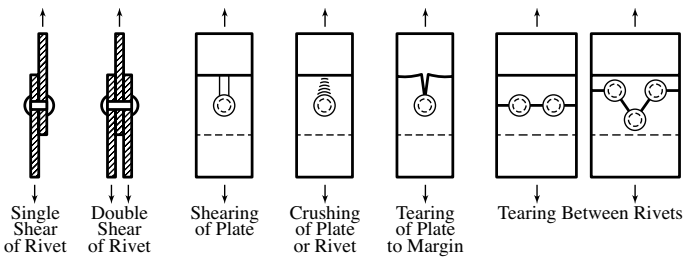
Failure of Riveted Joints.—Rivets may fail by:

1) Shearing through one cross section (single shear)
2) Shearing through two cross sections (double shear)
3) Crushing

Plates may fail by:

4) Shearing along two parallel lines extending from opposite sides of the rivet hole to the edge of the plate
5) Tearing along a single line from middle of rivet hole to edge of plate
6) Crushing
7) Tearing between adjacent rivets (tensile failure) in the same row or in adjacent rows

Types 4 and 5 failures are caused by rivets being placed too close to the edge of the plate. These types of failure are avoided by placing the center of the rivet at a minimum of one and one-half times the rivet diameter away from the edge.


Single Shear of Rivet
Double Shear of Rivet
Shearing of Plate
Crushing of Plate or Rivet
Tearing of Plate to Margin
Tearing Between Rivets

Types of Rivet and Plate Failure

Failure due to tearing on a diagonal between rivets in adjacent rows when the pitch is four times the rivet diameter or less is avoided by making the transverse pitch one and three-quarters times the rivet diameter.

Theoretical versus Actual Riveted Joint Failure: If it is assumed that the rivets are placed the suggested distance from the edge of the plate and each row the suggested distance from another row, then the failure of a joint is most likely to occur as a result of shear failure of the rivets, bearing failure (crushing) of the plate or rivets, or tensile failure of the plate, alone or in combination depending on the makeup of the joints.

Joint failure in actuality is more complex than this. Rivets do not undergo pure shear especially in lap-joints where rivets are subjected to single shear. The rivet, in this instance,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

would be subject to a combination of tensile and shearing stresses and it would fail because of combined stresses, not a single stress. Furthermore, the shearing stress is usually considered to be distributed evenly over the cross section, which is also not the case.

Rivets that are usually driven hot contract on cooling. This contraction in the length of the rivet draws the plates together and sets up a stress in the rivet estimated to be equal in magnitude to the yield point of the rivet steel. The contraction in the diameter of the rivet results in a little clearance between the rivet and the hole in the plate. The tightness in the plates caused by the contraction in length of the rivet gives rise to a condition in which quite a sizeable frictional force would have to be overcome before the plates would slip over one another and subject the rivets to a shearing force. It is European practice to design joints for resistance to this slipping. It has been found, however, that the strength-basis designs obtained in American and English practice are not very different from European designs.

Allowable Stresses.—The design stresses for riveted joints are usually set by codes, practices, or specifications. The American Institute of Steel Construction issues specifications for the design, fabrication, and erection of structural steel for buildings in which the allowable stress permitted in tension for structural steel and rivets is specified at 20,000 pounds per square inch, the allowable bearing stress for rivets is 40,000 psi in double shear and 32,000 psi in single shear, and the allowable shearing stress for rivets is 15,000 psi. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers in its Boiler Code lists the following ultimate stresses: tensile, 55,000 psi; shearing, 44,000 psi; compressive or bearing, 95,000 psi. The design stresses usually are one-fifth of these, that is tensile, 11,000 psi; shearing, 8800 psi; compressive or bearing, 19,000 psi. In machine design work, values close to these or somewhat lower are commonly used.

Analysis of Joint Strength.—The following examples and strength analyses of riveted joints are based on the six previously outlined *Simplified Design Assumptions*.

Example 1: Consider a 12-inch section of single-riveted lap-joint made up with plates of $^1/_4$-inch thickness and six rivets, $^5/_8$ inch in diameter. Assume that rivet holes are $^1/_{16}$ inch larger in diameter than the rivets. In this joint, the entire load is transmitted from one plate to the other by means of the rivets. Each plate and the six rivets carry the entire load. The safe tensile load L and the efficiency η may be determined in the following way: Design stresses of 8500 psi for shear, 20,000 psi for bearing, and 10,000 psi for tension are arbitrarily assigned and it is assumed that the rivets will not tear or shear through the plate to the edge of the joint.

a) The safe tensile load L based on single shear of the rivets is equal to the number of rivets n times the cross-sectional area of one rivet A_r times the allowable shearing stress S_s or

$$L = n \times A_r \times S_s = 6 \times \frac{\pi}{4}(0.625)^2 \times 8500 = 15{,}647 \text{ pounds}$$

b) The safe tensile load L based on bearing stress is equal to the number of rivets n times the projected bearing area of the rivet A_b (diameter times thickness of plate) times the allowable bearing stress S_c or

$$L = n \times A_b \times S_c = 6 \times (0.625 \times 0.25) \times 20{,}000 = 18{,}750 \text{ pounds}$$

c) The safe load L based on the tensile stress is equal to the net cross-sectional area of the plate between rivet holes A_p times the allowable tensile stress S_t or

$$L = A_p \times S_t = 0.25[12 - 6(0.625 + 0.0625)] \times 10{,}000 = 19{,}688 \text{ pounds}$$

The safe tensile load for the joint would be the least of the three loads just computed or 15,647 pounds, and the efficiency η would be equal to this load divided by the tensile strength of the section of plate under consideration if it were unperforated, or

$$\eta = \frac{15{,}647}{12 \times 0.25 \times 10{,}000} \times 100 = 52.2 \text{ percent}$$

Example 2: Under consideration is a 12-inch section of double-riveted butt-joint with main plates $^1/_2$ inch thick and two cover plates each $^5/_{16}$ inch thick. There are 3 rivets in the inner row and 2 on the outer and their diameters are $^7/_8$ inch. Assume that the diameter of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the rivet holes is $^1/_{16}$ inch larger than that of the rivets. The rivets are so placed that the main plates will not tear diagonally from one rivet row to the others nor will they tear or fail in shear out to their edges. The safe tensile load L and the efficiency η may be determined in the following way: Design stresses for 8500 psi for shear, 20,000 psi for bearing, and 10,000 psi for tension are arbitrarily assigned.

a) The safe tensile load L based on double shearing of the rivets is equal to the number of rivets n times the number of shearing planes per rivet times the cross-sectional area of one rivet A_r times the allowable shearing stress S_s or

$$L = n \times 2 \times A_r \times S_s = 5 \times 2 \times \frac{\pi}{4}(0.875)^2 \times 8500 = 51{,}112 \text{ pounds}$$

b) The safe tensile load L based on bearing stress is equal to the number of rivets n times the projected bearing area of the rivet A_b (diameter times thickness of plate) times the allowable bearing stress S_c or $L = n \times A_b \times S_c = 5 \times (0.875 \times 0.5) \times 20{,}000 = 43{,}750$ pounds. (Cover plates are not considered since their combined thickness is $^1/_4$ inch greater than the main plate thickness.)

c) The safe tensile load L based on the tensile stress is equal to the net cross-sectional area of the plate between the two rivets in the outer row A_p times the allowable tensile stress S_t or $L = A_p \times S_t = 0.5[12 - 2(0.875 + 0.0625)] \times 10{,}000 = 50{,}625$ pounds.

In completing the analysis, the sum of the load that would cause tearing between rivets in the three-hole section plus the load carried by the two rivets in the two-hole section is also investigated. The sum is necessary because if the joint is to fail, it must fail at both sections simultaneously. The least safe load that can be carried by the two rivets of the two-hole section is based on the bearing stress (see the foregoing calculations).

1) The safe tensile load L based on the bearing strength of two rivets of the two-hole section is $L = n \times A_b \times S_c = 2 \times (0.875 \times 0.5) \times 20{,}000 = 17{,}500$ pounds.

2) The safe tensile load L based on the tensile strength of the main plate between holes in the three-hole section is $L \times A_p \times S_t = 0.5[12 - 3(0.875 + 0.0625)] \times 10{,}000 = 45{,}938$ pounds.

The total safe tensile load based on this combination is $17{,}500 + 45{,}938 = 63{,}438$ pounds, which is greater than any of the other results obtained.

The safe tensile load for the joint would be the least of the loads just computed or 43,750 pounds and the efficiency η would be equal to this load divided by the tensile strength of the section of plate under consideration if it were unperforated or

$$\eta = \frac{43{,}750}{0.5 \times 12 \times 10{,}000} \times 100 = 72.9 \text{ percent}$$

Formulas for Riveted Joint Design.—A riveted joint may fail by shearing through the rivets (single or double shear), crushing the rivets, tearing the plate between the rivets, crushing the plate or by a combination of two or more of the foregoing causes. Rivets placed too close to the edge of the plate may tear or shear the plate out to the edge but this type of failure is avoided by placing the center of the rivet 1.5 times the rivet diameter away from the edge.

The efficiency of a riveted joint is equal to the strength of the joint divided by the strength of the unriveted plate, expressed as a percentage.

In the following formulas, let

d = diameter of holes t = thickness of plate t_c = thickness of cover plates

p = pitch of inner row of rivets P = pitch of outer row of rivets

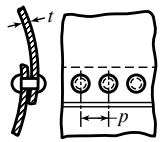
S_s = shear stress for rivets S_t = tensile stress for plates

S_c = compressive or bearing stress for rivets or plates

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In the joint examples that follow, dimensions are usually specified in inches and stresses in pounds per square inch. See page 1863 for a discussion of allowable stresses that may be used in calculating the strengths given by the formulas. The design stresses are usually set by codes, practices, or specifications.

Single-Riveted Lap-Joint

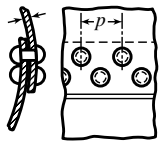


(1) Resistance to shearing one rivet = $\frac{\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

(2) Resistance to tearing plate between rivets = $(p - D)tS_t$

(3) Resistance to crushing rivet or plate = dtS_c

Double-Riveted Lap-Joint



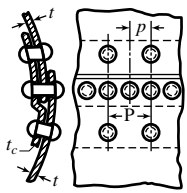
(1) Resistance to shearing two rivets = $\frac{2\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

(2) Resistance to tearing between two rivets = $(p - D)tS_t$

(3) Resistance to crushing in front of two rivets = $2dtS_c$

Single-Riveted Lap-Joint with Inside Cover Plate

(1) Resistance to tearing between outer row of rivets = $(P - D)tS_t$



(2) Resistance to tearing between inner row of rivets, and shearing outer row of rivets = $(P - 2D)tS_t + \frac{\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

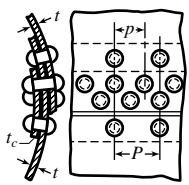
(3) Resistance to shearing three rivets = $\frac{3\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

(4) Resistance to crushing in front of three rivets = $3tdS_c$

(5) Resistance to tearing at inner row of rivets, and crushing in front of one rivet in outer row = $(P - 2D)tS_t + tdS_c$

Double-Riveted Lap-Joint with Inside Cover Plate

(1) Resistance to tearing at outer row of rivets = $(P - D)tS_t$



(2) Resistance to shearing four rivets = $\frac{4\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

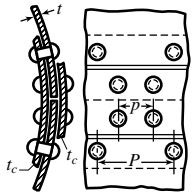
(3) Resistance to tearing at inner row and shearing outer row of rivets = $\left(P - 1\frac{1}{2}D\right)tS_t + \frac{\pi d^2}{4} S_s$

(4) Resistance to crushing in front of four rivets = $4tdS_c$

(5) Resistance to tearing at inner row of rivets, and crushing in front of one rivet = $\left(P - 1\frac{1}{2}D\right)tS_t + tdS_c$

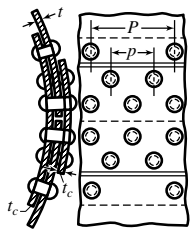
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Double-Riveted Butt-Joint



(1) Resistance to tearing at outer row of rivets =	$(P-D)tS_t$
(2) Resistance to shearing two rivets in double shear and one in single shear =	$\frac{5\pi d^2}{4}S_s$
(3) Resistance to tearing at inner row of rivets and shearing one rivet of the outer row =	$(P-2D)tS_t + \frac{\pi d^2}{4}S_s$
(4) Resistance to crushing in front of three rivets =	$3tdS_c$
(5) Resistance to tearing at inner row of rivets, and crushing in front of one rivet in outer row =	$(P-2D)\,tS_t + tdS_c$

Triple-Riveted Butt-Joint



(1) Resistance to tearing at outer row of rivets =	$(P-D)tS_t$
(2) Resistance to shearing four rivets in double shear and one in single shear =	$\frac{9\pi d^2}{4}S_s$
(3) Resistance to tearing at middle row of rivets and shearing one rivet =	$(P-2D)tS_t + \frac{\pi d^2}{4}S_s$
(4) Resistance to crushing in front of four rivets and shearing one rivet =	$4dtS_c + \frac{\pi d^2}{4}S_s$
(5) Resistance to crushing in front of five rivets =	$4dtS_c + dt_cS_c$

American National Standard Rivets

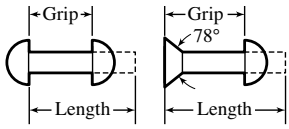
Standards for rivets published by the American National Standards Institute and the British Standards Institution are as follows:

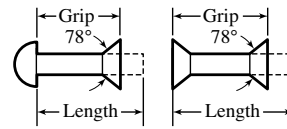
American National Standard Large Rivets.—The types of rivets covered by this standard, ANSI/ASME B18.1.2-1972 (R2016), are shown on pages 1868, 1869, and 1870. It may be noted, however, that when specified, the swell neck included in this standard is applicable to all standard large rivets except the flat countersunk head and oval countersunk head types. Also shown are the hold-on (dolly bar) and rivet set impression dimensions (see page 1870). All standard large rivets have fillets under the head not exceeding a 0.062-inch radius. The length tolerances for these rivets are given as follows: through 6 inches in length, $\frac{1}{2}$- and $\frac{5}{8}$-inch diameters, ±0.03 inch; $\frac{3}{4}$- and $\frac{7}{8}$-inch diameters, ±0.06-inch; and 1- through $1\frac{3}{4}$-inch diameters, ±0.09 inch. For rivets over 6 inches in length, $\frac{1}{2}$- and $\frac{5}{8}$-inch diameters, ±0.06 inch; $\frac{3}{4}$- and $\frac{7}{8}$-inch diameters, ±0.12 inch; and 1- through $1\frac{3}{4}$-inch diameters, ±0.19 inch. Steel and wrought iron rivet materials appear in ASTM Specifications A31, A131, A152, and A502.

American National Standard Small Solid Rivets.—The types of rivets covered by this standard, ANSI/ASME B18.1.1-1972 (R2016), are shown on pages 1871 through 1873. In addition, the standard gives the dimensions of 60-degree flat countersunk head rivets used to assemble ledger plates and guards for mower cutter bars, but these are not shown. As the heads of standard rivets are not machined or trimmed, the circumference may be somewhat irregular and edges may be rounded or flat. Rivets other than countersunk types are furnished with a definite fillet under the head, whose radius should not exceed 10 percent of the maximum shank diameter or 0.03 inch, whichever is the smaller. With regard to head dimensions, tolerances shown in the dimensional tables are applicable to rivets produced by the normal cold heading process. Unless otherwise specified, rivets should have plain sheared ends that should be at right angles within 2 degrees to the axis of the rivet and be reasonably flat. When so specified by the user, rivets may have the standard header points shown on page 1868. Rivets may be made of ASTM Specification A31, Grade A steel; or may adhere to SAE Recommended Practice, Mechanical and Chemical Requirements for Nonthreaded Fasteners—SAE J430, Grade 0. When specified, rivets may be made of other materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rivet Lengths for Forming Round and Countersunk Heads[a]





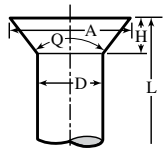
Grip in Inches	To Form Round Head — Diameter of Rivet in Inches: ½	⅝	¾	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼ — Length of Rivet in Inches
½	1⅝	1⅞	1⅞	2	2⅛	…	…
⅝	1¾	2	2	2⅛	2¼	…	…
¾	1⅞	2⅛	2⅛	2¼	2⅜	…	…
⅞	2	2¼	2¼	2⅜	2½	…	…
1	2¼	2⅜	2⅜	2½	2⅝	2¾	2⅞
1⅛	2⅜	2½	2½	2⅝	2¾	2⅞	3
1¼	2½	2⅝	2⅝	2¾	2⅞	3	3⅛
1⅜	2⅝	2¾	2¾	2⅞	3	3⅛	3¼
1½	2⅞	3	3	3⅛	3¼	3⅜	3½
1⅝	3	3⅛	3⅛	3¼	3⅜	3½	3½
1¾	3⅛	3¼	3¼	3½	3⅝	3¾	3¾
1⅞	3¼	3⅜	3⅜	3⅝	3¾	3⅞	3⅞
2	3½	3½	3⅝	3¾	3⅞	4	4
2⅛	3⅝	3⅝	3¾	3⅞	4	4⅛	4⅛
2¼	3¾	3⅞	3⅞	4	4⅛	4¼	4¼
2⅜	4	4	4	4⅛	4¼	4⅜	4⅜
2½	4⅛	4⅛	4⅛	4¼	4⅜	4½	4½
2⅝	4¼	4¼	4¼	4⅜	4½	4⅝	4⅝
2¾	4⅜	4⅜	4⅜	4½	4⅝	4¾	4¾
2⅞	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝	4¾	4⅞	5
3	…	4¾	4¾	4⅞	5	5	5⅛
3⅛	…	4⅞	4⅞	5	5⅛	5¼	5¼
3¼	…	5	5	5⅛	5¼	5⅜	5⅜
3⅜	…	5⅛	5⅛	5¼	5⅜	5½	5½
3½	…	5⅜	5⅜	5⅜	5½	5⅝	5⅝
3⅝	…	5½	5½	5½	5⅝	5¾	5¾
3¾	…	5⅝	5⅝	5⅝	5¾	5⅞	5⅞
3⅞	…	5¾	5¾	5¾	5⅞	6	6
4	…	…	5⅞	6	6	6⅛	6¼
4⅛	…	…	6	6⅛	6¼	6⅜	6⅜
4¼	…	…	6⅛	6¼	6½	6½	6½
4⅜	…	…	6⅜	6½	6½	6⅝	6⅝
4½	…	…	6½	6⅝	6⅝	6¾	6¾
4⅝	…	…	6⅝	6¾	6¾	6¾	6⅞
4¾	…	…	6¾	6⅞	6⅞	7	7
4⅞	…	…	6⅞	7	7	7⅛	7⅛
5	…	…	…	7⅛	7⅛	7¼	7¼
5⅛	…	…	…	7¼	7¼	7⅜	7⅜
5¼	…	…	…	7⅜	7⅜	7½	7½
5⅜	…	…	…	7⅝	7⅝	7¾	7⅝
5½	…	…	…	7¾	7¾	7⅞	7⅞
5⅝	…	…	…	7⅞	7⅞	8	8
5¾	…	…	…	8	8	8⅛	8⅛
5⅞	…	…	…	8⅛	8⅛	8¼	8¼

Grip in Inches	To Form Countersunk Head — Diameter of Rivet in Inches: ½	⅝	¾	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼ — Length of Rivet in Inches
½	1	1	1⅛	1¼	1¼	…	…
⅝	1⅛	1¼	1¼	1⅜	1⅜	…	…
¾	1⅜	1⅜	1⅜	1½	1½	…	…
⅞	1½	1½	1½	1⅝	1⅝	…	…
1	1⅝	1⅝	1⅝	1¾	1¾	1⅞	1⅞
1⅛	1¾	1¾	1⅞	1⅞	1⅞	2	2
1¼	2	2	2	2	2	2⅛	2⅛
1⅜	2⅛	2⅛	2⅛	2¼	2¼	2⅜	2⅜
1½	2¼	2¼	2¼	2⅜	2⅜	2½	2½
1⅝	2⅜	2⅜	2⅜	2½	2½	2⅝	2⅝
1¾	2⅝	2⅝	2⅝	2⅝	2⅝	2¾	2¾
1⅞	2¾	2¾	2¾	2¾	2¾	2⅞	2⅞
2	2⅞	2⅞	2⅞	2⅞	2⅞	3	3
2⅛	3⅛	3	3	3	3	3⅛	3⅛
2¼	3¼	3⅛	3⅛	3⅛	3¼	3¼	3¼
2⅜	3⅜	3⅜	3⅜	3⅜	3⅜	3⅜	3⅜
2½	3½	3½	3½	3½	3½	3⅝	3⅝
2⅝	3¾	3⅝	3⅝	3⅝	3⅝	3¾	3¾
2¾	3⅞	3¾	3¾	3¾	3¾	3⅞	3⅞
2⅞	4	3⅞	3⅞	3⅞	3⅞	4	4
3	…	4⅛	4⅛	4⅛	4⅛	4⅛	4⅛
3⅛	…	4¼	4¼	4¼	4¼	4¼	4¼
3¼	…	4⅜	4⅜	4⅜	4⅜	4⅜	4⅜
3⅜	…	4½	4½	4½	4½	4½	4½
3½	…	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝	4⅝
3⅝	…	4¾	4¾	4¾	4¾	4⅞	4⅞
3¾	…	5	5	5	5	5	5
3⅞	…	5⅛	5⅛	5⅛	5⅛	5⅛	5⅛
4	…	…	5¼	5¼	5¼	5¼	5¼
4⅛	…	…	5⅜	5⅜	5⅜	5⅜	5⅜
4¼	…	…	5½	5½	5½	5½	5½
4⅜	…	…	5⅝	5⅝	5⅝	5⅝	5⅝
4½	…	…	5¾	5¾	5¾	5¾	5¾
4⅝	…	…	6	6	6	6	6
4¾	…	…	6⅛	6⅛	6⅛	6⅛	6⅛
4⅞	…	…	6¼	6¼	6¼	6¼	6¼
5	…	…	…	6⅜	6⅜	6⅜	6⅜
5⅛	…	…	…	6½	6½	6½	6½
5¼	…	…	…	6⅝	6⅝	6⅝	6⅝
5⅜	…	…	…	6¾	6¾	6¾	6¾
5½	…	…	…	6⅞	6⅞	6⅞	6⅞
5⅝	…	…	…	7	7	7	7
5¾	…	…	…	7¼	7¼	7¼	7¼
5⅞	…	…	…	7⅜	7⅜	7⅜	7⅜

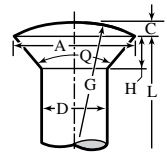
[a] As given by the American Institute of Steel Construction. Values may vary from standard practice of individual fabricators and should be checked against the fabricator's standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. American National Standard Large Rivets
ANSI/ASME B18.1.2-1972 (R2016)



Flat Countersunk Head



Oval Countersunk Head

Flat and Oval Countersunk Head								
Body Diameter[a] *D*				Head Dia. *A*		Head Depth *H*	Oval Crown Height[a] *C*	Oval Crown Radius[a] *G*
Nominal[a]		Max.	Min.	Max.[b]	Min.[c]	Ref.		
½	0.500	0.520	0.478	0.936	0.872	0.260	0.095	1.125
⅝	0.625	0.655	0.600	1.194	1.112	0.339	0.119	1.406
¾	0.750	0.780	0.725	1.421	1.322	0.400	0.142	1.688
⅞	0.875	0.905	0.850	1.647	1.532	0.460	0.166	1.969
1	1.000	1.030	0.975	1.873	1.745	0.520	0.190	2.250
1⅛	1.125	1.160	1.098	2.114	1.973	0.589	0.214	2.531
1¼	1.250	1.285	1.223	2.340	2.199	0.650	0.238	2.812
1⅜	1.375	1.415	1.345	2.567	2.426	0.710	0.261	3.094
1½	1.500	1.540	1.470	2.793	2.652	0.771	0.285	3.375
1⅝	1.625	1.665	1.588	3.019	2.878	0.831	0.309	3.656
1¾	1.750	1.790	1.713	3.262	3.121	0.901	0.332	3.938

[a] All dimensions are given in inches. Basic dimension as manufactured. For tolerances see table footnote on page 1866. The following formulas give basic dimensions for manufactured shapes: *Flat Countersunk Head,* $A = 1.810D$; $H = 1.192(\text{Max } A - D)/2$; included angle Q of head = 78 degrees. *Oval Countersunk Head,* $A = 1.810D$; $H = 1.192(\text{Max } A - D)/2$; included angle of head = 78 degrees. Length L is measured parallel to the rivet axis, from the extreme end to the intersection of the head top surface with the head diameter for countersunk head-type rivets.

[b] Sharp edged head.

[c] Rounded or flat edged irregularly shaped head (heads are not machined or trimmed).

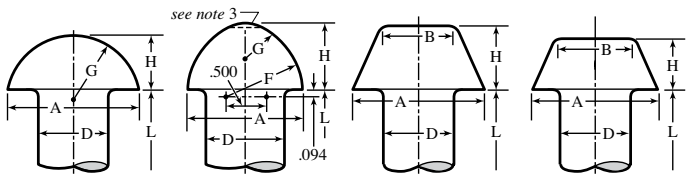
ANSI/ASME B18.1.3M-1983 (R2016), Metric Small Solid Rivets, provides data for small, solid rivets with flat, round, and flat countersunk heads in metric dimensions. The main series of rivets has body diameters, in millimeters, of 1.6, 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, and 12. A secondary series (nonpreferred) consists of sizes, 1, 1.2, 1.4, 3.5, 7, 9, and 11 millimeters.

British Standard Rivets

British Standard Rivets for General Engineering.— Dimensions in metric units of rivets for general engineering purposes are given in this British Standard, BS 4620;1970, which is based on ISO Recommendation ISO/R 1051. The snap head rivet dimensions of 14 millimeters and above are taken from the German Standard DIN 124, Round Head Rivets for Steel Structures. The shapes of heads have been restricted to those in common use in the United Kingdom. Table 3b shows the rivet dimensions. Table 3a shows a tentative range of preferred nominal lengths as given in an appendix to the Standard. It is stated that these lengths will be reviewed in the light of usage. The rivets are made by cold or hot forging methods from mild steel, copper, brass, pure aluminum, aluminum alloys, or other suitable metal. It is stated that the radius under the head of a rivet shall run smoothly into the face of the head and shank without step or discontinuity.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. American National Standard Large Rivet
ANSI/ASME B18.1.2-1972 (R2016)



Nom. Body Dia. *D*[a]	Head Dia. *A*		Height *H*		Head Dia. *A*		Height *H*	
	Mfd.[b]	Driven[c]	Mfd.[b]	Driven[c]	Mfd.[b]	Driven[c]	Mfd.[b,d]	Driven[c,d]
	Button Head				**High Button Head (Acorn)**			
½	0.875	0.922	0.375	0.344	0.781	0.875	0.500	0.375
⅝	1.094	1.141	0.469	0.438	0.969	1.062	0.594	0.453
¾	1.312	1.375	0.562	0.516	1.156	1.250	0.688	0.531
⅞	1.531	1.594	0.656	0.609	1.344	1.438	0.781	0.609
1	1.750	1.828	0.750	0.688	1.531	1.625	0.875	0.688
1⅛	1.969	2.062	0.844	0.781	1.719	1.812	0.969	0.766
1¼	2.188	2.281	0.938	0.859	1.906	2.000	1.062	0.844
1⅜	2.406	2.516	1.031	0.953	2.094	2.188	1.156	0.938
1½	2.625	2.734	1.125	1.031	2.281	2.375	1.250	1.000
1⅝	2.844	2.969	1.219	1.125	2.469	2.562	1.344	1.094
1¾	3.062	3.203	1.312	1.203	2.656	2.750	1.438	1.172
	Cone Head				**Pan Head**			
½	0.875	0.922	0.438	0.406	0.800	0.844	0.350	0.328
⅝	1.094	1.141	0.547	0.516	1.000	1.047	0.438	0.406
¾	1.312	1.375	0.656	0.625	1.200	1.266	0.525	0.484
⅞	1.531	1.594	0.766	0.719	1.400	1.469	0.612	0.578
1	1.750	1.828	0.875	0.828	1.600	1.687	0.700	0.656
1⅛	1.969	2.063	0.984	0.938	1.800	1.891	0.788	0.734
1¼	2.188	2.281	1.094	1.031	2.000	2.094	0.875	0.812
1⅜	2.406	2.516	1.203	1.141	2.200	2.312	0.962	0.906
1½	2.625	2.734	1.312	1.250	2.400	2.516	1.050	0.984
1⅝	2.844	2.969	1.422	1.344	2.600	2.734	1.138	1.062
1¾	3.062	3.203	1.531	1.453	2.800	2.938	1.225	1.141

[a] Tolerance for diameter of body is plus and minus from nominal and for ½-in. size equals +0.020, −0.022; for sizes ⅝ to 1-in., incl., equals +0.030, −.025; for sizes 1⅛ and 1¼-in. equals +0.035; −0.027; for sizes 1⅜ and 1½-in. equals +0.040, −0.030; for sizes 1⅝ and 1¾-in. equals +0.040, −0.037.

[b] Note 1. Basic dimensions of head as manufactured. All dimensions are given in inches. The following formulas give the basic dimensions for manufactured shapes: *Button Head*, $A = 1.750D$; $H = 0.750D$; $G = 0.885D$. *High Button Head*, $A = 1.500D + 0.031$; $H = 0.750D + 0.125$; $F = 0.750D + 0.281$; $G = 0.750D - 0.281$. *Cone Head*, $A = 1.750D$; $B = 0.938D$; $H = 0.875D$. *Pan Head*, $A = 1.600D$; $B = 1.000D$; $H = 0.700D$. Length L is measured parallel to the rivet axis, from the extreme end to the bearing surface plane for flat bearing surface head type rivets, or to the intersection of the head top surface with the head diameter for countersunk head-type rivets.

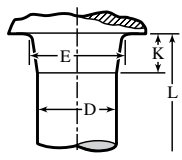
[c] Note 2. Dimensions of manufactured head after driving and also of driven head.

[d] Note 3. Slight flat permissible within the specified head-height tolerance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1c. American National Standard Large Rivets

ANSI/ASME B18.1.2-1972 (R2016)



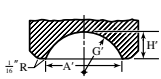
Swell Neck

Swell Neck[a]						
Body Diameter *D*				Diameter Under Head *E*		Neck Length *K*[b]
Nominal[b]		Max.	Min.	Max. (Basic)	Min.	
½	0.500	0.520	0.478	0.563	0.543	0.250
⅝	0.625	0.655	0.600	0.688	0.658	0.312
¾	0.750	0.780	0.725	0.813	0.783	0.375
⅞	0.875	0.905	0.850	0.938	0.908	0.438
1	1.000	1.030	0.975	1.063	1.033	0.500
1⅛	1.125	1.160	1.098	1.188	1.153	0.562
1¼	1.250	1.285	1.223	1.313	1.278	0.625
1⅜	1.375	1.415	1.345	1.438	1.398	0.688
1½	1.500	1.540	1.470	1.563	1.523	0.750
1⅝	1.625	1.665	1.588	1.688	1.648	0.812
1¾	1.750	1.790	1.713	1.813	1.773	0.875

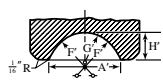
[a] The swell neck is applicable to all standard forms of large rivets except the flat countersunk and oval countersunk head types.

[b] All dimensions are given in inches. The following formulas give basic dimensions for manufactured shapes: *Swell Neck*, $E = D + 0.063$; $K = 0.500D$. Length *L* is measured parallel to the rivet axis, from the extreme end to the bearing surface plane for flat bearing surface head-type rivets. Basic dimension as manufactured. For tolerances see table footnote on page 1866.

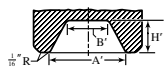
American National Standard Dimensions for Hold-On (Dolly Bar) and Rivet Set Impression *ANSI/ASME B18.1.2-1972 (R2016)*



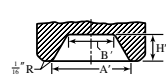
Button Head



High Button Head



Cone Head



Pan Head

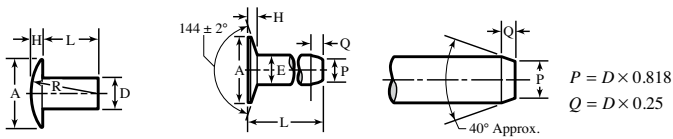
Rivet Body Dia.[a]	Button Head			High Button Head				Cone Head			Pan Head		
	A′	*H′*	*G′*	*A′*	*H′*	*F′*	*G′*	*A′*	*B′*	*H′*	*A′*	*B′*	*H′*
½	0.906	0.312	0.484	0.859	0.344	0.562	0.375	0.891	0.469	0.391	0.812	0.500	0.297
⅝	1.125	0.406	0.594	1.047	0.422	0.672	0.453	1.109	0.594	0.484	1.031	0.625	0.375
¾	1.344	0.484	0.719	1.234	0.500	0.797	0.531	1.328	0.703	0.578	1.234	0.750	0.453
⅞	1.578	0.562	0.844	1.422	0.578	0.922	0.609	1.562	0.828	0.688	1.438	0.875	0.531
1	1.812	0.641	0.953	1.609	0.656	1.031	0.688	1.781	0.938	0.781	1.641	1.000	0.609
1⅛	2.031	0.719	1.078	1.797	0.719	1.156	0.766	2.000	1.063	0.875	1.844	1.125	0.688
1¼	2.250	0.797	1.188	1.984	0.797	1.266	0.844	2.219	1.172	0.969	2.047	1.250	0.766
1⅜	2.469	0.875	1.312	2.172	0.875	1.406	0.938	2.453	1.297	1.078	2.250	1.375	0.844
1½	2.703	0.953	1.438	2.344	0.953	1.500	1.000	2.672	1.406	1.172	2.453	1.500	0.906
1⅝	2.922	1.047	1.547	2.531	1.031	1.641	1.094	2.891	1.531	1.266	2.656	1.625	0.984
1¾	3.156	1.125	1.672	2.719	1.109	1.750	1.172	3.109	1.641	1.375	2.875	1.750	1.063

[a] All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. American National Standard Small Solid Rivets

ANSI/ASME B18.1.1-1972 (R2016) and Appendix



Truss Head Rivets | Coopers Rivets | Point Dimensions

Truss Head Rivets[a]

Shank Dia.,[b] *D* Nominal		Head Dimensions: Dia., *A* Max.	Dia., *A* Min.	Height, *H* Max.	Height, *H* Min.	Rad. *R* Approx.	Shank Dia.,[b] *D* Nominal		Head Dimensions: Dia., *A* Max.	Dia., *A* Min.	Height, *H* Max.	Height, *H* Min.	Rad. *R* Approx.
3/32	0.094	0.226	0.206	0.038	0.026	0.239	9/32	0.281	0.661	0.631	0.103	0.085	0.706
1/8	0.125	0.297	0.277	0.048	0.036	0.314	5/16	0.312	0.732	0.702	0.113	0.095	0.784
5/32	0.156	0.368	0.348	0.059	0.045	0.392	11/32	0.344	0.806	0.776	0.124	0.104	0.862
3/16	0.188	0.442	0.422	0.069	0.055	0.470	3/8	0.375	0.878	0.848	0.135	0.115	0.942
7/32	0.219	0.515	0.495	0.080	0.066	0.555	13/32	0.406	0.949	0.919	0.145	0.123	1.028
1/4	0.250	0.590	0.560	0.091	0.075	0.628	7/16	0.438	1.020	0.990	0.157	0.135	1.098

[a] All dimensions in inches except where otherwise noted. Length tolerance of rivets is + or – .016 inch. Approximate proportions of rivets: $A = 2.300 \times D$, $H = 0.330 \times D$, $R = 2.512 \times D$.

[b] Tolerances on the nominal shank diameter in inches are given for the following body diameter ranges: 3/32. to 5/32, plus 0.002, minus 0.004; 3/16 to 1/4, plus 0.003, minus 0.006; 9/32 to 11/32, plus 0.004, minus 0.008; and 3/8 to 7/16, plus 0.005, minus 0.010.

Coopers Rivets

Size No.[a]	Shank Diameter, *E* Max.	Shank Diameter, *E* Min.	Head Diameter, *A* Max.	Head Diameter, *A* Min.	Head Height, *H* Max.	Head Height, *H* Min.	Point Dimensions[b] Dia., *P* Nom.	Point Dimensions[b] Length, *Q* Nom.	Length, *L* Max.	Length, *L* Min.
1 lb	0.111	0.105	0.291	0.271	0.045	0.031	Not Pointed		0.249	0.219
1¼ lb	0.122	0.116	0.324	0.302	0.050	0.036	Not Pointed		0.285	0.255
1½ lb	0.132	0.126	0.324	0.302	0.050	0.036	Not Pointed		0.285	0.255
1¾ lb	0.136	0.130	0.324	0.302	0.052	0.034	Not Pointed		0.318	0.284
2 lb	0.142	0.136	0.355	0.333	0.056	0.038	Not Pointed		0.322	0.288
3 lb	0.158	0.152	0.386	0.364	0.058	0.040	0.123	0.062	0.387	0.353
4 lb	0.168	0.159	0.388	0.362	0.058	0.040	0.130	0.062	0.418	0.388
5 lb	0.183	0.174	0.419	0.393	0.063	0.045	0.144	0.062	0.454	0.420
6 lb	0.206	0.197	0.482	0.456	0.073	0.051	0.160	0.094	0.498	0.457
7 lb	0.223	0.214	0.513	0.487	0.076	0.054	0.175	0.094	0.561	0.523
8 lb	0.241	0.232	0.546	0.516	0.081	0.059	0.182	0.094	0.597	0.559
9 lb	0.248	0.239	0.578	0.548	0.085	0.063	0.197	0.094	0.601	0.563
10 lb	0.253	0.244	0.578	0.548	0.085	0.063	0.197	0.094	0.632	0.594
12 lb	0.263	0.251	0.580	0.546	0.086	0.060	0.214	0.094	0.633	0.575
14 lb	0.275	0.263	0.611	0.577	0.091	0.065	0.223	0.094	0.670	0.612
16 lb	0.285	0.273	0.611	0.577	0.089	0.063	0.223	0.094	0.699	0.641
18 lb	0.285	0.273	0.642	0.608	0.108	0.082	0.230	0.125	0.749	0.691
20 lb	0.316	0.304	0.705	0.671	0.128	0.102	0.250	0.125	0.769	0.711
3/8 in.	0.380	0.365	0.800	0.762	0.136	0.106	0.312	0.125	0.840	0.778

[a] All dimensions in inches except where otherwise noted. Size numbers in pounds refer to the approximate weight of 1000 rivets.

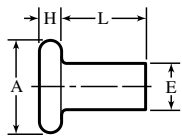
[b] When specified American National Standard Small Solid Rivets may be obtained with points. Point dimensions for belt and coopers rivets are given in the accompanying tables. Formulas for calculating point dimensions of other rivets are given alongside the right diagram in Table 2a.

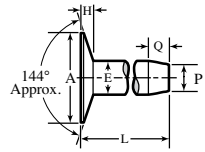
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. American National Standard Small Solid Rivets

ANSI/ASME B18.1.1-1972 (R2016)

Tinners Rivets





Belt Rivets

Size No.[a]	Shank Diameter, *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Length, *L*		
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Nom.	Max.	Min.
6 oz.	0.081	0.075	0.213	0.193	0.028	0.016	1/8	0.135	0.115
8 oz.	0.091	0.085	0.225	0.205	0.036	0.024	5/32	0.166	0.146
10 oz.	0.097	0.091	0.250	0.230	0.037	0.025	11/64	0.182	0.162
12 oz.	0.107	0.101	0.265	0.245	0.037	0.025	3/16	0.198	0.178
14 oz.	0.111	0.105	0.275	0.255	0.038	0.026	3/16	0.198	0.178
1 lb	0.113	0.107	0.285	0.265	0.040	0.028	13/64	0.213	0.193
1 ¼ lb	0.122	0.116	0.295	0.275	0.045	0.033	7/32	0.229	0.209
1 ½ lb	0.132	0.126	0.316	0.294	0.046	0.034	15/64	0.244	0.224
1 ¾ lb	0.136	0.130	0.331	0.309	0.049	0.035	1/4	0.260	0.240
2 lb	0.146	0.140	0.341	0.319	0.050	0.036	17/64	0.276	0.256
2 ½ lb	0.150	0.144	0.311	0.289	0.069	0.055	9/32	0.291	0.271
3 lb	0.163	0.154	0.329	0.303	0.073	0.059	5/16	0.323	0.303
3 ½ lb	0.168	0.159	0.348	0.322	0.074	0.060	21/64	0.338	0.318
4 lb	0.179	0.170	0.368	0.342	0.076	0.062	11/32	0.354	0.334
5 lb	0.190	0.181	0.388	0.362	0.084	0.070	3/8	0.385	0.365
6 lb	0.206	0.197	0.419	0.393	0.090	0.076	25/64	0.401	0.381
7 lb	0.223	0.214	0.431	0.405	0.094	0.080	13/32	0.416	0.396
8 lb	0.227	0.218	0.475	0.445	0.101	0.085	7/16	0.448	0.428
9 lb	0.241	0.232	0.490	0.460	0.103	0.087	29/64	0.463	0.443
10 lb	0.241	0.232	0.505	0.475	0.104	0.088	15/32	0.479	0.459
12 lb	0.263	0.251	0.532	0.498	0.108	0.090	1/2	0.510	0.490
14 lb	0.288	0.276	0.577	0.543	0.113	0.095	33/64	0.525	0.505
16 lb	0.304	0.292	0.597	0.563	0.128	0.110	17/32	0.541	0.521
18 lb	0.347	0.335	0.706	0.668	0.156	0.136	19/32	0.603	0.583

[a] All dimensions in inches. Size numbers refer to the approximate weight of 1000 rivets.

Belt Rivets[a]

Size No.[b]	Shank Diameter, *E*		Head Dia., *A*		Head Height, *H*		Point Dimensions[c]	
							Dia., *P*	Length, *Q*
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Nominal	Nominal
14	0.085	0.079	0.260	0.240	0.042	0.030	0.065	0.078
13	0.097	0.091	0.322	0.302	0.051	0.039	0.073	0.078
12	0.111	0.105	0.353	0.333	0.054	0.040	0.083	0.078
11	0.122	0.116	0.383	0.363	0.059	0.045	0.097	0.078
10	0.136	0.130	0.417	0.395	0.065	0.047	0.109	0.094
9	0.150	0.144	0.448	0.426	0.069	0.051	0.122	0.094
8	0.167	0.161	0.481	0.455	0.072	0.054	0.135	0.094
7	0.183	0.174	0.513	0.487	0.075	0.056	0.151	0.125
6	0.206	0.197	0.606	0.580	0.090	0.068	0.165	0.125
5	0.223	0.214	0.700	0.674	0.105	0.083	0.185	0.125
4	0.241	0.232	0.921	0.893	0.138	0.116	0.204	0.141

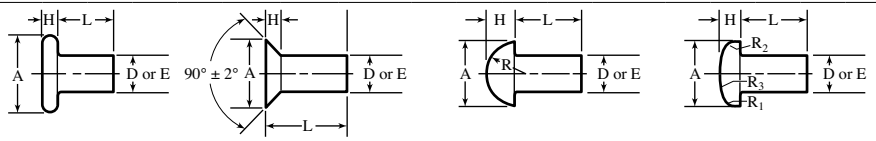
[a] All dimensions in inches. Length tolerance on belt rivets is plus 0.031 inch, minus 0 inch.

[b] Size number refers to the Stub's iron wire gage number of the stock used in the shank of the rivet.

[c] *Note:* American National Standard Small Solid Rivets may be obtained with or without points. Point proportions are given in the diagram in Table 2a.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. American National Standard Small Solid Rivets *ANSI/ASME B18.1.1-1972 (R2016) and Appendix*



Shank Diameter				Flat Head[a]				Flat Countersunk Head[a]			Button Head[a]					Pan Head[a]						
				Head Dimensions																		
D		*E*		Dia., *A*		Height, *H*		Dia., *A* Sharp		Height[b] *H*	Dia., *A*		Height, *H*		Radius, *R*	Dia., *A*		Height, *H*		Radii		
Nominal		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.[c]	Min.[d]	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Approx.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	*R*1	*R*2	*R*3
																				Approximate		
1/16	0.062	0.064	0.059	0.140	0.120	0.027	0.017	0.118	0.110	0.027	0.122	0.102	0.052	0.042	0.055	0.118	0.098	0.040	0.030	0.019	0.052	0.217
3/32	0.094	0.096	0.090	0.200	0.180	0.038	0.026	0.176	0.163	0.040	0.182	0.162	0.077	0.065	0.084	0.173	0.153	0.060	0.048	0.030	0.080	0.326
1/8	0.125	0.127	0.121	0.260	0.240	0.048	0.036	0.235	0.217	0.053	0.235	0.215	0.100	0.088	0.111	0.225	0.205	0.078	0.066	0.039	0.106	0.429
5/32	0.156	0.158	0.152	0.323	0.301	0.059	0.045	0.293	0.272	0.066	0.290	0.268	0.124	0.110	0.138	0.279	0.257	0.096	0.082	0.049	0.133	0.535
3/16	0.188	0.191	0.182	0.387	0.361	0.069	0.055	0.351	0.326	0.079	0.348	0.322	0.147	0.133	0.166	0.334	0.308	0.114	0.100	0.059	0.159	0.641
7/32	0.219	0.222	0.213	0.453	0.427	0.080	0.065	0.413	0.384	0.094	0.405	0.379	0.172	0.158	0.195	0.391	0.365	0.133	0.119	0.069	0.186	0.754
1/4	0.250	0.253	0.244	0.515	0.485	0.091	0.075	0.469	0.437	0.106	0.460	0.430	0.196	0.180	0.221	0.444	0.414	0.151	0.135	0.079	0.213	0.858
9/32	0.281	0.285	0.273	0.579	0.545	0.103	0.085	0.528	0.491	0.119	0.518	0.484	0.220	0.202	0.249	0.499	0.465	0.170	0.152	0.088	0.239	0.963
5/16	0.312	0.316	0.304	0.641	0.607	0.113	0.095	0.588	0.547	0.133	0.572	0.538	0.243	0.225	0.276	0.552	0.518	0.187	0.169	0.098	0.266	1.070
11/32	0.344	0.348	0.336	0.705	0.667	0.124	0.104	0.646	0.602	0.146	0.630	0.592	0.267	0.247	0.304	0.608	0.570	0.206	0.186	0.108	0.292	1.176
3/8	0.375	0.380	0.365	0.769	0.731	0.135	0.115	0.704	0.656	0.159	0.684	0.646	0.291	0.271	0.332	0.663	0.625	0.225	0.205	0.118	0.319	1.286
13/32	0.406	0.411	0.396	0.834	0.790	0.146	0.124	0.763	0.710	0.172	0.743	0.699	0.316	0.294	0.358	0.719	0.675	0.243	0.221	0.127	0.345	1.392
7/16	0.438	0.443	0.428	0.896	0.852	0.157	0.135	0.823	0.765	0.186	0.798	0.754	0.339	0.317	0.387	0.772	0.728	0.261	0.239	0.137	0.372	1.500

[a] All dimensions in inches. Length tolerance of all rivets is plus or minus 0.016 inch. Approximate proportions of rivets: flat head, $A = 2.00 \times D$, $H = 0.33\ D$; flat countersunk head, $A = 1.850 \times D$, $H = 0.425 \times D$; button head, $A = 1.750 \times D$, $H = 0.750 \times D$, $R = 0.885 \times D$; pan head, $A = 1.720 \times D$, $H = 0.570 \times D$, $R1 = 0.314 \times D$, $R2 = 0.850 \times D$, $R3 = 3.430 \times D$. *Note:* ANSI Small Solid Rivets may be obtained with or without points. Point proportions are given in the diagram in Table 2a.

[b] Given for reference purposes only. Variations in this dimension are controlled by the head and shank diameters and the included angle of the head.

[c] Tabulated maximum values calculated on basic diameter of rivet and 92° included angle extended to a sharp edge.

[d] Minimum of rounded or flat-edged irregularly shaped head. Rivet heads are not machined or trimmed and the circumference may be irregular and edges rounded or flat.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

In this Standard, Table 3a and Table 3b, the following definitions apply: 1) *Nominal diameter:* The diameter of the shank; 2) *Nominal length of rivets other than countersunk or raised countersunk rivets:* The length from the underside of the head to the end of the shank; 3) *Nominal length of countersunk and raised countersunk rivets:* The distance from the periphery of the head to the end of the rivet measured parallel to the axis of the rivet; and 4) *Manufactured head:* The head on the rivet as received from the manufacturer.

Table 3a. Tentative Range of Lengths for Rivets *Appendix to BS 4620:1970 (1998)*

Nom. Shank Dia.	Nominal Length																				
	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	14	16	(18)	20	(22)	25	(28)	30	(32)	35	(38)	40	45	...
1	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
1.2	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
1.6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
2	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
2.5	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
3	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
(3.5)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
4	...	...	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
5	...	...	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	...	...
6	...	...	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	●	...

Nom. Shank Dia.	Nominal Length																				
	10	12	14	16	(18)	20	(22)	25	(28)	30	(32)	35	(38)	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75
(7)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
8	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	...	●	●	...	...	...	...	...
10	...	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●	●	●	●	●	...	...	...	...	...
12	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	●	●	...	...	...	●
(14)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
16	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	●	●	●	●	●	●	...	●

Nom. Shank Dia.	Nominal Length																				
	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	(95)	100	(105)	110	(115)	120	(125)	130	140	150	160
(18)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
20	●	...	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
(22)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
24	...	...	...	...	●	...	●	...	●	●	...	●	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
(27)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
30	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	●	●	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	...	...	...	...
(33)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
36	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	●	...	...	...
(39)	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	●	...	●	●	●	●

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Note: Sizes and lengths shown in parenthesis are nonpreferred and should be avoided if possible.

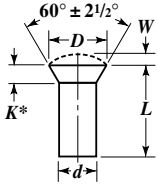
British Standard Small Rivets for General Purposes.—Dimensions of small rivets for general purposes are given in British Standard 641:1951 and are shown in Table 4 on page 1876. In addition, the standard lists the standard lengths of these rivets, gives the dimensions of washers to be used with countersunk head rivets (140°), indicates that the rivets may be made from mild steel, copper, brass, and a range of aluminum alloys and pure aluminum specified in BS 1473, and gives the dimensions of Coopers' flat head rivets $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter and below, in an appendix. In all types of rivets, except those with countersunk heads, there is a small radius or chamfer at the junction of the head and the shank.

British Standard Dimensions of Rivets ($\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{3}{4}$ inch diameter).—The dimensions of rivets covered in BS 275:1927 (obsolescent) are given on page 1877 and do not apply to boiler rivets. With regard to this standard the terms "nominal diameter" and "standard diameter" are synonymous. The term "tolerance" refers to the variation from the nominal diameter of the rivet and not to the difference between the diameter under the head and the diameter near the point.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

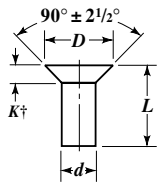
Table 3b. British Standard Rivets for General Engineering Purposes
BS 4620:1970 (1998)

60° Csk. and Raised Csk. Head



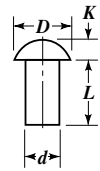
K = 0.43 *d
(for ref. only)

60° Csk. Head

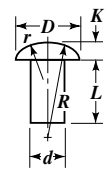


†*K* = 0.5 *d*
(for ref. only)

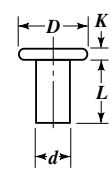
Snap Head



Universal Head



Flat Head



Hot Forged Rivets

Nom. Shank Dia.[a] *d*	Tol. on Dia. *d*	60° Csk. and Raised Csk. Head		Snap Head		Universal Head			
		Head Dimensions							
		Nom. Dia. *D*	Height of Raise *W*	Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Depth *K*	Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Depth *K*	Rad. *R*	Rad. *r*
(14)	±0.43	21	2.8	22	9	28	5.6	42	8.4
16		24	3.2	25	10	32	6.4	48	9.6
(18)		27	3.6	28	11.5	36	7.2	54	11
20	±0.52	30	4.0	32	13	40	8.0	60	12
(22)		33	4.4	36	14	44	8.8	66	13
24		36	4.8	40	16	48	9.6	72	14
(27)	±0.62	40	5.4	43	17	54	10.8	81	16
30		45	6.0	48	19	60	12.0	90	18
(33)		50	6.6	53	21	66	13.2	99	20
36		55	7.2	58	23	72	14.4	108	22
(39)		59	7.8	62	25	78	15.6	117	23

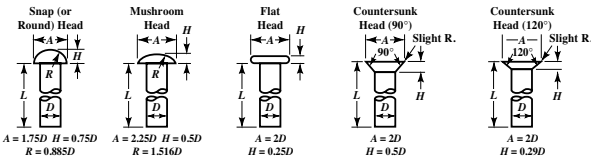
Cold Forged Rivets

Nom. Shank Dia.[a] *d*	Tol. on Dia. *d*	90° Csk. Head	Snap Head		Universal Head				Flat Head	
		Head Dimensions								
		Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Dia. *K*	Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Depth *K*	Rad. *R*	Rad. *r*	Nom. Dia. *D*	Nom. Depth *K*
1	±0.07	2	1.8	0.6	2	0.4	3.0	0.6	2	0.25
1.2		2.4	2.1	0.7	2.4	0.5	3.6	0.7	2.4	0.3
1.6		3.2	2.8	1.0	3.2	0.6	4.8	1.0	3.2	0.4
2		4	3.5	1.2	4	0.8	6.0	1.2	4	0.5
2.5		5	4.4	1.5	5	1.0	7.5	1.5	5	0.6
3		6	5.3	1.8	6	1.2	9.0	1.8	6	0.8
(3.5)	±0.09	7	6.1	2.1	7	1.4	10.5	2.1	7	0.9
4		8	7	2.4	8	1.6	12	2.4	8	1.0
5		10	8.8	3.0	10	2.0	15	3.0	10	1.3
6		12	10.5	3.6	12	2.4	18	3.6	12	1.5
(7)	±0.11	14	12.3	4.2	14	2.8	21	4.2	14	1.8
8		16	14	4.8	16	3.2	24	4.8	16	2
10		20	18	6.0	20	4.0	30	6	20	2.5
12	±0.14	24	21	7.2	24	4.8	36	7.2	…	…
(14)		…	25	8.4	28	5.6	42	8.4	…	…
16		…	28	9.6	32	6.4	48	9.6	…	…

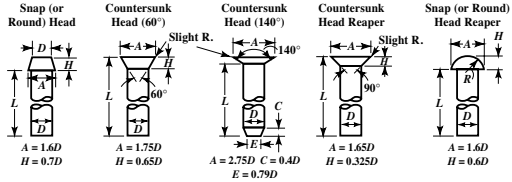
[a] All dimensions are in millimeters. Sizes shown in parentheses are nonpreferred.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. British Standard Small Rivets for General Purposes
BS 641:1951 (obsolescent)



Nom. Dia.[a] *D*	Snap (or Round Head)			Mushroom Head			Flat Head		Countersunk Head (90°)		Countersunk Head (120°)	
	Head Dimensions											
	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Rad. *R*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Rad *R*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*
1/16	0.109	0.047	0.055	0.141	0.031	0.095	0.125	0.016	0.125	0.031	…	…
3/32	0.164	0.070	0.083	0.211	0.047	0.142	0.188	0.023	0.188	0.047	…	…
1/8	0.219	0.094	0.111	0.281	0.063	0.189	0.250	0.031	0.250	0.063	0.250	0.036
5/32	0.273	0.117	0.138	0.352	0.078	0.237	0.313	0.039	0.313	0.078	…	…
3/16	0.328	0.141	0.166	0.422	0.094	0.284	0.375	0.047	0.375	0.094	0.375	0.054
1/4	0.438	0.188	0.221	0.563	0.125	0.379	0.500	0.063	0.500	0.125	0.500	0.073
5/16	0.547	0.234	0.277	0.703	0.156	0.474	0.625	0.078	0.625	0.156	0.625	0.091
3/8	0.656	0.281	0.332	0.844	0.188	0.568	0.750	0.094	0.750	0.188	0.750	0.109
7/16	0.766	0.328	0.387	0.984	0.219	0.663	0.875	0.109	0.875	0.219	…	…

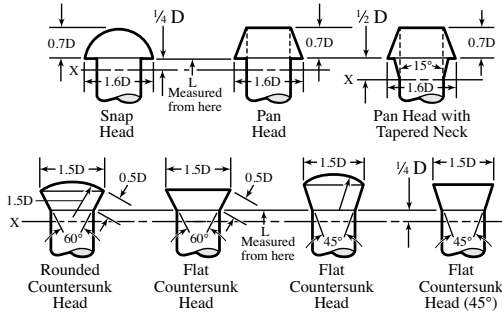


Nominal Diameter *D*		Pan Head		Countersunk Head (60°)		Countersunk Head (140°)			Countersunk Head Reaper		Snap (or Round) Head Reaper	
		Head Dimensions										
Inch	Gage No.[b]	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *C*	Dia. *E*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*	Dia. *A*	Ht. *H*
0.104	12	…	…	…	…	0.286	0.042	0.082	…	…	…	…
0.116	11	…	…	…	…	0.319	0.046	0.092	…	…	…	…
0.128	10	…	…	…	…	0.352	0.051	0.101	…	…	…	…
0.144	9	…	…	…	…	0.396	0.058	0.114	…	…	…	…
0.160	8	…	…	…	…	0.440	0.064	0.126	…	…	…	…
0.176	7	…	…	…	…	0.484	0.070	0.139	…	…	…	…
3/16	…	0.300	0.131	0.328	0.122	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.192	6	…	…	…	…	0.528	0.077	0.152	0.317	0.062	0.307	0.115
0.202	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.333	0.066	0.323	0.121
0.212	5	…	…	…	…	0.583	0.085	0.167	0.350	0.069	0.339	0.127
0.232	4	…	…	…	…	0.638	0.093	0.183	0.383	0.075	0.371	0.139
1/4	…	0.400	0.175	0.438	0.162	0.688	0.100	0.198	…	…	…	…
0.252	3	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.416	0.082	0.403	0.151
5/16	…	0.500	0.219	0.547	0.203	0.859	0.125	0.247	…	…	…	…
3/8	…	0.600	0.263	0.656	0.244	10.031	0.150	0.296	…	…	…	…
7/16	…	0.700	0.306	0.766	0.284	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] All dimensions in inches unless specified otherwise.
[b] Gage numbers are British Standard Wire Gage (S.W.G.) numbers.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Head Dimensions and Diameters of British Standard Rivets
BS 275:1927 (obsolescent)



Nominal Rivet Diameter,[a] *D*	Shank Diameter[b]				
	At Position *X*[c]		At Position *Y*[c]		At Position *Z*[c]
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1/2	1/2	17/32	31/64	1/2	31/64
9/16[d]	9/16	19/32	35/64	9/16	35/64
5/8	5/8	21/32	39/64	5/8	39/64
11/16[d]	11/16	23/32	43/64	11/16	43/64
3/4	3/4	25/32	47/64	3/4	47/64
13/16[d]	13/16	27/32	51/64	13/16	51/64
7/8	7/8	29/32	55/64	7/8	55/64
15/16[d]	15/16	31/32	59/64	15/16	59/64
1	1	1 1/32	63/64	1	63/64
1 1/16[d]	1 1/16	1 3/32	1 3/64	1 1/16	1 3/64
1 1/8	1 1/8	1 5/32	1 7/64	1 1/8	1 7/64
1 3/16[d]	1 3/16	1 7/32	1 11/64	1 3/16	1 11/64
1 1/4	1 1/4	1 9/32	1 15/64	1 1/4	1 15/64
1 5/16[d]	1 5/16	1 11/32	1 19/64	1 5/16	1 19/64
1 3/8	1 3/8	1 13/32	1 23/64	1 3/8	1 23/64
1 7/16[d]	1 7/16	1 15/32	1 27/64	1 7/16	1 27/64
1 1/2	1 1/2	1 17/32	1 31/64	1 1/2	1 31/64
1 9/16[d]	1 9/16	1 19/32	1 35/64	1 9/16	1 35/64
1 5/8	1 5/8	1 21/32	1 39/64	1 5/8	1 39/64
1 11/16[d]	1 11/16	1 23/32	1 43/64	1 11/16	1 43/64
1 3/4	1 3/4	1 25/32	1 47/64	1 3/4	1 47/64

[a] All dimensions that are tabulated are given in inches. This standard does not apply to Boiler Rivets

[b] Tolerances of the rivet diameter are as follows: at position *X*, plus 1/32 inch, minus zero; at position *Y*, plus zero, minus 1/64 inch; at position *Z*, minus 1/64 inch but in no case shall the difference between the diameters at positions *X* and *Y* exceed 1/32 inch, nor shall the diameter of the shank between positions *X* and *Y* be less than the minimum diameter specified at position *Y*.

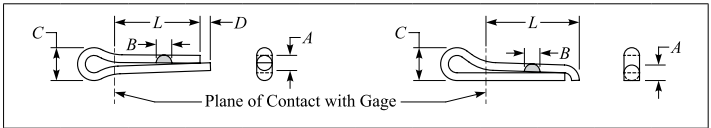
[c] The location of positions *Y* and *Z* are as follows: Position *Y* is located 1/2 *D* from the end of the rivet for rivet lengths 5 diameters long and under. For longer rivets, position *Y* is located 4 1/2 *D* from the head of the rivet. Position *Z* (found only on rivets longer than 5*D*) is located 1/2 *D* from the end of the rivet.

[d] At the recommendation of the British Standards Institution, these sizes are to be dispensed with wherever possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PINS AND STUDS

American National Standard Cotter Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.1-2014*

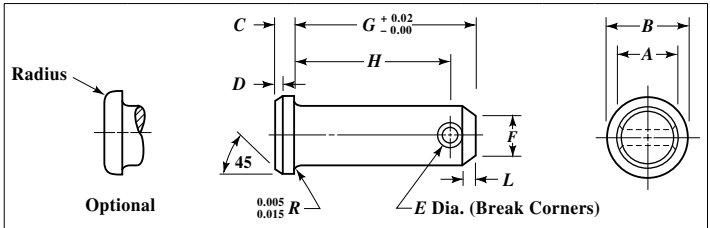


Nom. Size	Dia. A^a & Width B Max.	Wire Width B Min.	Head Dia. C Min.	Prong Length D Min.	Hole Size	Nom. Size	Dia. A^a & Width B Max.	Wire Width B Min.	Head Dia. C Min.	Prong Length D Min.	Hole Size
1/32	0.032	0.022	0.06	0.01	0.047	3/16	0.176	0.137	0.38	0.09	0.207
3/64	0.048	0.035	0.09	0.02	0.062	7/32	0.207	0.161	0.44	0.10	0.241
1/16	0.060	0.044	0.12	0.03	0.078	1/4	0.225	0.176	0.50	0.11	0.275
5/64	0.076	0.057	0.16	0.04	0.094	5/16	0.280	0.220	0.62	0.14	0.343
3/32	0.090	0.069	0.19	0.04	0.109	3/8	0.335	0.263	0.75	0.16	0.413
7/64	0.104	0.080	0.22	0.05	0.125	7/16	0.406	0.320	0.88	0.20	0.482
1/8	0.120	0.093	0.25	0.06	0.141	1/2	0.473	0.373	1.00	0.23	0.550
9/64	0.134	0.104	0.28	0.06	0.156	5/8	0.598	0.472	1.25	0.30	0.688
5/32	0.150	0.116	0.31	0.07	0.172	3/4	0.723	0.572	1.50	0.36	0.825

[a] Tolerances are: −0.004 inch for the 1/32- to 3/16-inch sizes, incl.; −0.005 inch for the 7/32- to 5/16-inch sizes, incl.; −0.006 inch for the 3/8- to 1/2-inch sizes, incl.; and −0.008 inch for the 5/8- and 3/4-inch sizes. *Note:* Tolerances for length are: up to 1 inch ± 0.030 inch, over 1 inch ±0.060 inch.

All dimensions are in inches.

American National Standard Clevis Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.1-2014*



Nom.Size (Basic Pin Dia.)	Shank Dia. A Max	Head Dia. B Max.	Head Hgt. C Max.	Head Chamfer D Nom.	Hole Dia. E Max.	Point Dia. F Max.	Pin Lgth. G Basic[a]	Head to Hole Center H Max.	Point Length L Max.	Point Length L Min.	Cotter Pin Size for Hole
3/16	0.186	0.32	0.07	0.02	0.088	0.15	0.58	0.504	0.055	0.035	1/16
1/4	0.248	0.38	0.10	0.03	0.088	0.21	0.77	0.692	0.055	0.035	1/16
5/16	0.311	0.44	0.10	0.03	0.119	0.26	0.94	0.832	0.071	0.049	3/32
3/8	0.373	0.51	0.13	0.03	0.119	0.33	1.06	0.958	0.071	0.049	3/32
7/16	0.436	0.57	0.16	0.04	0.119	0.39	1.19	1.082	0.071	0.049	3/32
1/2	0.496	0.63	0.16	0.04	0.151	0.44	1.36	1.223	0.089	0.063	1/8
5/8	0.621	0.82	0.21	0.06	0.151	0.56	1.61	1.473	0.089	0.063	1/8
3/4	0.746	0.94	0.26	0.07	0.182	0.68	1.91	1.739	0.110	0.076	5/32
7/8	0.871	1.04	0.32	0.09	0.182	0.80	2.16	1.989	0.110	0.076	5/32
1	0.996	1.19	0.35	0.10	0.182	0.93	2.41	2.239	0.110	0.076	5/32
Tolerance	...	−0.05 in.	−0.02 in.	±0.01 in.	−0.015 in.	−0.01 in.	...	−0.020 in.	...	...	...

[a] Lengths tabulated are intended for use with standard clevises, without spacers. When other lengths are required, it is recommended that they be limited wherever possible to nominal lengths in 0.06-inch increments.

All dimensions are in inches. For sizes, greater than 1-inch, refer to ANSI/ASME B18.8.1-2014.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dowel-Pins.—Dowel-pins are used either to retain parts in a fixed position or to preserve alignment. Under normal conditions a properly fitted dowel-pin is subjected solely to shearing strain, and this strain occurs only at the junction of the surfaces of the two parts which are being held by the dowel-pin. It is seldom necessary to use more than two dowel-pins for holding two pieces together and frequently one is sufficient. For parts that have to be taken apart frequently, and where driving out of the dowel-pins would tend to wear the holes, and also for very accurately constructed tools and gages that have to be taken apart, or that require to be kept in absolute alignment, the taper dowel-pin is preferable. The taper dowel-pin is most commonly used for average machine work, but the straight type is given the preference on tool and gage work, except where extreme accuracy is required, or where the tool or gage is to be subjected to rough handling.

The size of the dowel-pin is governed by its application. For locating nests, gage plates, etc., pins from $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{3}{16}$ inch (3.2–4.8 mm) in diameter are satisfactory. For locating dies, the diameter of the dowel-pin should never be less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.35 mm); the general rule is to use dowel-pins of the same size as the screws used in fastening the work. The length of the dowel-pin should be about $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 times its diameter in each plate or part to be doweled.

When hardened cylindrical dowel-pins are inserted in soft parts, ream the hole about 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) smaller than the dowel-pin. If the doweled parts are hardened, grind (or lap) the hole 0.0002 to 0.0003 inch (0.005–0.0076 mm) under size. The hole should be ground or lapped straight, that is, without taper or "bell-mouth."

Assembly with Dowel Pins starting on page 1885.

British Standard for Metric Series Dowel Pins.—Steel parallel dowel pins specified in British Standard 1804:Part 2:1968 are divided into three grades which provide different degrees of pin accuracy.

Grade 1 is a precision ground pin made from En 32A or En 32B low carbon steel (BS 970) or from high carbon steel to BS 1407 or BS 1423. Pins below 4 mm diameter are unhardened. Those of 4 mm diameter and above are hardened to a minimum of 750 HV 30 in accordance with BS 427, but if they are made from steels to BS 1407 or BS 1423 then the hardness shall be within the range 600 to 700 HV 30, in accordance with BS 427. The values of other hardness scales may be used in accordance with BS 860.

Grade 2 is a ground pin made from any of the steels used for Grade 1. The pins are normally supplied unhardened, unless a different condition is agreed on between the purchaser and supplier.

Grade 3 pins are made from En 1A free cutting steel (BS 970) and are supplied with a machined, bright rolled or drawn finish. They are normally supplied unhardened unless a different condition is agreed on between the purchaser and supplier.

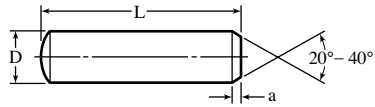
Pins of any grade may be made from different steels in accordance with BS 970, by mutual agreement between the purchaser and manufacturer. If steels other than those in the standard range are used, the hardness of the pins shall also be decided on by mutual agreement between purchaser and supplier. As shown in the illustration at the head of the accompanying table, one end of each pin is chamfered to provide a lead. The other end may be similarly chamfered, or domed.

If a dowel pin is driven into a blind hole where no provision is made for releasing air, the worker assembling the pin may be endangered, and damage may be caused to the associated component, or stresses may be set up. The appendix of the Standard describes one method of overcoming this problem by providing a small flat surface along the length of a pin to permit the release of air.

For purposes of marking, the Standard states that each package or lot of dowel pins shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark, the BS number, and the grade of pin.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard Parallel Steel Dowel Pins.—Metric Series *BS 1804: Part 2: 1968*



Nom. Length *L*, mm	Nominal Diameter *D*, mm													
	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	4	5	6	8	10	12	16	20	25
	Chamfer *a* Max., mm													
	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.45	0.6	0.75	0.9	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.5	3	4
	Standard Sizes													
4	●	●												
6	●	●	●	●										
8	●	●	●	●	●									
10		●	●	●	●	●								
12		●	●	●	●	●	●							
16			●	●	●	●	●	●	●					
20				●	●	●	●	●	●	●				
25					●	●	●	●	●	●	●			
30						●	●	●	●	●	●	●		
35							●	●	●	●	●	●		
40							●	●	●	●	●	●	●	
45								●	●	●	●	●	●	
50									●	●	●	●	●	●
60									●	●	●	●	●	●
70										●	●	●	●	●
80										●	●	●	●	●
90											●	●	●	●
100												●	●	●
110												●	●	●
120													●	●

Limits of Tolerance on Diameter							
Grade[a]		1		2		3	
Tolerance Zone		m5		h7		h11	
Nom. Dia., mm							
Over	To & Incl.	Limits of Tolerance, 0.001 mm					
	3	+7	+2	0	–12[b]	0	–60
3	6	+9	+4	0	–12	0	–75
6	10	+12	+6	0	–15	0	–90
10	14	+15	+7	0	–18	0	–110
14	18	+15	+7	0	–18	0	–110
18	24	+17	+8	0	–21	0	–130
24	30	+17	+8	0	–21	0	–130

[a] The limits of tolerance for grades 1 and 2 dowel pins have been chosen to provide satisfactory assembly when used in standard reamed holes (H7 and H8 tolerance zones). If the assembly is not satisfactory, refer to BS 1916: Part 1, Limits and Fits for Engineering, and select a different class of fit.

[b] This tolerance is larger than that given in BS 1916, and has been included because the use of a closer tolerance would involve precision grinding by the manufacturer, which is uneconomic for a grade 2 dowel pin.

The tolerance limits on the overall length of all grades of dowel pin up to and including 50 mm long are +0.5, –0.0 mm, and for pins over 50 mm long are +0.8, –0.0 mm. The Standard specifies that the roughness of the cylindrical surface of grades 1 and 2 dowel pins, when assessed in accordance with BS 1134, shall not be greater than 0.4 µm CLA (16 CLA).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Hardened Ground Machine Dowel Pins.—Hardened ground machine dowel pins are furnished in two diameter series: Standard Series having basic diameters 0.0002 inch over the nominal diameter, intended for initial installations; and Oversize Series having basic diameters 0.001 inch over the nominal diameter, intended for replacement use.

Preferred Lengths and Sizes: The preferred lengths and sizes in which these pins are normally available are given in Table 1. Other sizes and lengths are produced as required by the purchaser.

Effective Length: The effective length, L_e, must not be less than 75 percent of the overall length of the pin.

Shear Strength: Single shear strength values are listed in Table 1. Prior versions of ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010) had listed double shear load minimum values and had specified a minimum single shear strength of 130,000 psi. See ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010), Appendix B for a description of the double shear test.

Designation: These pins are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Product name (noun first), including pin series, nominal pin diameter (fraction or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or decimal equivalent), material, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pins, Hardened Ground Machine Dowel.—Standard Series, $^3/_8 \times 1^1/_2$, Steel, Phosphate Coated.

Pins, Hardened Ground Machine Dowel.—Oversize Series, 0.625 × 2.500, Steel

Installation Precaution: Pins should not be installed by striking or hammering and when installing with a press, a shield should be used and safety glasses worn.

American National Standard Hardened Ground Production Dowel Pins.—Hardened ground production dowel pins have basic diameters that are 0.0002 inch over the nominal pin diameter.

Preferred Lengths and Sizes: The preferred lengths and sizes in which these pins are available are given in Table 2. Other sizes and lengths are produced as required by the purchaser.

Shear Strength: Single shear strength values are listed in Table 2. Prior versions of ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010) had listed double shear load minimum values and had specified a minimum single shear strength of 102,000 psi. See ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010), Appendix B for a description of the double shear test.

Ductility: These standard pins are sufficiently ductile to withstand being pressed into holes 0.0005 inch smaller than the nominal pin diameter in hardened steel without cracking or shattering.

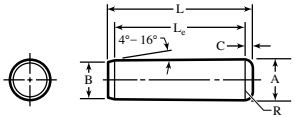
Designation: These pins are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Product name (noun first), nominal pin diameter (fraction or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or decimal equivalent), material, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pins, Hardened Ground Production Dowel, $^1/_8 \times ^3/_4$, Steel, Phosphate Coated

Pins, Hardened Ground Production Dowel, 0.375 × 1.500, Steel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. American National Standard Hardened Ground Machine Dowel Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)*



Nominal Size[a] or Nominal Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*						Point Diameter, *B*		Crown Height, *C*	Crown Radius, *R*	Range of Preferred Lengths,[b] *L*	Single Shear Load, for Carbon or Alloy Steel, Calculated, lb	Suggested Hole Diameter[c]	
		Standard Series Pins			Oversize Series Pins										
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.			Max.	Min.
1/16	0.0625	0.0627	0.0628	0.0626	0.0635	0.0636	0.0634	0.058	0.048	0.020	0.008	3/16-3/4	400	0.0625	0.0620
5/64[d]	0.0781	0.0783	0.0784	0.0782	0.0791	0.0792	0.0790	0.074	0.064	0.026	0.010	…	620	0.0781	0.0776
3/32	0.0938	0.0940	0.0941	0.0939	0.0948	0.0949	0.0947	0.089	0.079	0.031	0.012	5/16-1	900	0.0937	0.0932
1/8	0.1250	0.1252	0.1253	0.1251	0.1260	0.1261	0.1259	0.120	0.110	0.041	0.016	3/8-2	1,600	0.1250	0.1245
5/32[d]	0.1562	0.1564	0.1565	0.1563	0.1572	0.1573	0.1571	0.150	0.140	0.052	0.020	…	2,500	0.1562	0.1557
3/16	0.1875	0.1877	0.1878	0.1876	0.1885	0.1886	0.1884	0.180	0.170	0.062	0.023	1/2-2	3,600	0.1875	0.1870
1/4	0.2500	0.2502	0.2503	0.2501	0.2510	0.2511	0.2509	0.240	0.230	0.083	0.031	1/2-2 1/2	6,400	0.2500	0.2495
5/16	0.3125	0.3127	0.3128	0.3126	0.3135	0.3136	0.3134	0.302	0.290	0.104	0.039	1/2-2 1/2	10,000	0.3125	0.3120
3/8	0.3750	0.3752	0.3753	0.3751	0.3760	0.3761	0.3759	0.365	0.350	0.125	0.047	1/2-3	14,350	0.3750	0.3745
7/16	0.4375	0.4377	0.4378	0.4376	0.4385	0.4386	0.4384	0.424	0.409	0.146	0.055	7/8-3	19,550	0.4375	0.4370
1/2	0.5000	0.5002	0.5003	0.5001	0.5010	0.5011	0.5009	0.486	0.471	0.167	0.063	3/4, 1-4	25,500	0.5000	0.4995
5/8	0.6250	0.6252	0.6253	0.6251	0.6260	0.6261	0.6259	0.611	0.595	0.208	0.078	1 1/4-5	39,900	0.6250	0.6245
3/4	0.7500	0.7502	0.7503	0.7501	0.7510	0.7511	0.7509	0.735	0.715	0.250	0.094	1 1/2-6	57,000	0.7500	0.7495
7/8	0.8750	0.8752	0.8753	0.8751	0.8760	0.8761	0.8759	0.860	0.840	0.293	0.109	2, 2 1/2-6	78,000	0.8750	0.8745
1	1.0000	1.0002	1.0003	1.0001	1.0010	1.0011	1.0009	0.980	0.960	0.333	0.125	2, 2 1/2-5, 6	102,000	1.0000	0.9995

[a] Where specifying nominal size as basic diameter, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Lengths increase in 1/16-inch steps up to 3/8 inch, in 1/8-inch steps from 3/8 inch to 1 inch, in 1/4-inch steps from 1 inch to 2 1/2 inches, and in 1/2-inch steps above 2 1/2 inches. Tolerance on length is ±0.010 inch.

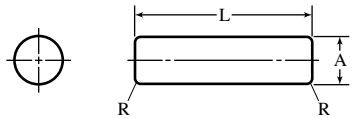
[c] These hole sizes have been commonly used for press fitting Standard Series machine dowel pins into materials such as mild steels and cast iron. In soft materials such as aluminum or zinc die castings, hole size limits are usually decreased by 0.0005 inch to increase the press fit.

[d] Nonpreferred sizes, not recommended for use in new designs.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Hardened Ground Production Dowel Pins
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)



Nominal Size[a] or Nominal Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*			Corner Radius, *R*		Range of Preferred Lengths,[b] *L*	Single Shear Load, Calculated, lb	Suggested Hole Diameter[c]	
		Basic	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.			Max.	Min.
1/16	0.0625	0.0627	0.0628	0.0626	0.020	0.010	3/16-1	395	0.0625	0.0620
3/32	0.0938	0.0939	0.0940	0.0938	0.020	0.010	3/16-2	700	0.0937	0.0932
7/64	0.1094	0.1095	0.1096	0.1094	0.020	0.010	3/16-2	950	0.1094	0.1089
1/8	0.1250	0.1252	0.1253	0.1251	0.020	0.010	3/16-2	1,300	0.1250	0.1245
5/32	0.1562	0.1564	0.1565	0.1563	0.020	0.010	3/16-2	2,050	0.1562	0.1557
3/16	0.1875	0.1877	0.1878	0.1876	0.020	0.010	3/16-2	2,950	0.1875	0.1870
7/32	0.2188	0.2189	0.2190	0.2188	0.020	0.010	1/4-2	3,800	0.2188	0.2183
1/4	0.2500	0.2502	0.2503	0.2501	0.020	0.010	1/4-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	5,000	0.2500	0.2495
5/16	0.3125	0.3127	0.3128	0.3126	0.020	0.010	5/16-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	8,000	0.3125	0.3120
3/8	0.3750	0.3752	0.3753	0.3751	0.020	0.010	3/8-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-3	11,500	0.3750	0.3745

[a] Where specifying nominal pin size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Lengths increase in 1/16-inch steps up to 1 inch, in 1/8-inch steps from 1 inch to 2 inches; and then are 2 1/4, 2 1/2, and 3 inches.

[c] These hole sizes have been commonly used for press fitting production dowel pins into materials such as mild steels and cast iron. In soft materials such as aluminum or zinc die castings, hole size limits are usually decreased by 0.0005 inch to increase the press fit.

All dimensions are in inches.

American National Standard Unhardened Ground Dowel Pins.—Unhardened ground dowel pins are normally produced by grinding the outside diameter of commercial wire or rod material to size. Consequently, the maximum diameters of the pins, as specified in Table 3, are below the minimum commercial stock sizes by graduated amounts from 0.0005 inch on the 1/16-inch nominal pin size to 0.0028 inch on the 1-inch nominal pin size.

Preferred Lengths and Sizes: The preferred lengths and sizes in which unhardened ground pins are normally available are given in Table 3. Other sizes and lengths are produced as required by the purchaser.

Shear Strength: These pins must have a single shear strength of 64,000 psi minimum for pins made from steel and 40,000 psi minimum for pins made from brass and must be capable of withstanding the minimum double shear loads given in Table 3 when tested in accordance with the procedure outlined in ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010), Appendix B.

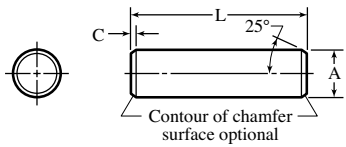
Designation: These pins are designated by the following data in the order shown: Product name (noun first), nominal pin diameter (fraction or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or decimal equivalent), material, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pins, Unhardened Ground Dowel, 1/8 × 3/4, Steel

Pins, Unhardened Ground Dowel, 0.250 × 2.500, Steel, Zinc Plated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Unhardened Ground Dowel Pins
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*		Chamfer Length, *C*		Range of Preferred Lengths,[b] *L*	Suggested Hole Diameter[c]		Double Shear Load Min., lb.	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	Carbon-Steel	Brass
1/16	0.0625	0.0600	0.0595	0.025	0.005	1/4-1	0.0595	0.0580	350	220
3/32	0.0938	0.0912	0.0907	0.025	0.005	1/4-1 1/2	0.0907	0.0892	820	510
[d]7/64	0.1094	0.1068	0.1063	0.025	0.005	…	0.1062	0.1047	1,130	710
1/8	0.1250	0.1223	0.1218	0.025	0.005	1/4-2	0.1217	0.1202	1,490	930
5/32	0.1562	0.1535	0.1530	0.025	0.005	1/4-2	0.1528	0.1513	2,350	1,470
3/16	0.1875	0.1847	0.1842	0.025	0.005	1/4-2	0.1840	0.1825	3,410	2,130
7/32	0.2188	0.2159	0.2154	0.025	0.005	1/4-2	0.2151	0.2136	4,660	2,910
1/4	0.2500	0.2470	0.2465	0.025	0.005	1/4-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	0.2462	0.2447	6,120	3,810
5/16	0.3125	0.3094	0.3089	0.040	0.020	5/16-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	0.3085	0.3070	9,590	5,990
3/8	0.3750	0.3717	0.3712	0.040	0.020	3/8-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	0.3708	0.3693	13,850	8,650
7/16	0.4375	0.4341	0.4336	0.040	0.020	7/16-5/8, 3/4, 7/8-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-2 1/2	0.4331	0.4316	18,900	11,810
1/2	0.5000	0.4964	0.4959	0.040	0.020	1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 7/8, 1-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-3	0.4954	0.4939	24,720	15,450
5/8	0.6250	0.6211	0.6206	0.055	0.035	5/8, 3/4, 7/8, 1-1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2, 2 1/2-4	0.6200	0.6185	38,710	24,190
3/4	0.7500	0.7458	0.7453	0.055	0.035	3/4, 7/8, 1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2, 2 1/2-4	0.7446	0.7431	55,840	34,900
7/8	0.8750	0.8705	0.8700	0.070	0.050	7/8, 1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2, 2 1/2-4	0.8692	0.8677	76,090	47,550
1	1.0000	0.9952	0.9947	0.070	0.050	1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2, 2 1/2-4	0.9938	0.9923	99,460	62,160

[a] Where specifying pin size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Lengths increase in 1/16-inch increments from 1/4 to 1 inch, in 1/8-inch increments from 1 inch to 2 inches, and in 1/4-inch increments from 2 to 2 1/2 inches, and in 1/2-inch increments from 2 1/2 to 4 inches.

[c] These hole sizes have been found to be satisfactory for press fitting pins into mild steel and cast and malleable irons. In soft materials such as aluminum alloys or zinc die castings, hole size limits are usually decreased by 0.0005 inch to increase the press fit.

[d] Nonpreferred size, not recommended for use in new designs.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Assembly with Dowel Pins.— Hardened and ground dowel pins are made to a high degree of accuracy. Dowel pins are used to position and align machine components, provide a positive stop, add structural rigidity to an assembly, or to create a part nest.

When components are assembled with dowel pins, the dowel is a very close fit with its mating part. Machines or tools made with dowel pin construction can be disassembled for maintenance, engineering changes or repair, and reassembled, maintaining the original positional accuracy. Holes for dowel pins are carefully produced to obtain either a close sliding fit or a press fit for the dowel. When using dowels with fasteners, proper machine shop practice dictates that the sizes should be the same whenever possible. For example, if $\frac{3}{8}$-inch socket head cap screws are used, $\frac{3}{8}$-inch diameter dowels should also be used.

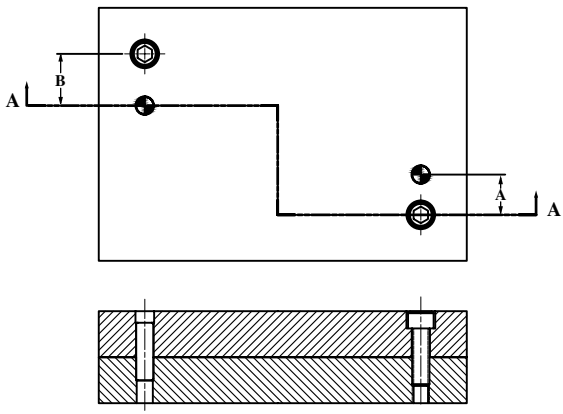


Fig. 1.

Fig. 1 is a typical example of an assembly using socket head cap screws and dowels. The fasteners and dowels are positioned as far apart as possible for rigidity and locational stability. Engineering drawings often show dowel locations as a circle with a partly filled-in cross. The dowel holes on this assembly are relieved in the top plate and have a smaller knockout hole in the bottom plate. The hole for the socket head cap screw is counterbored deep enough so that the screw is recessed 0.03 inch below the surface of the plate. Making dimension "A" different from dimension "B" prevents the plates from being assembled backwards.

When dowels are used for positioning:

- Position dowel pins as far apart as possible.
- Length of engagement for the dowel should be twice the dowel diameter in each component.
- Avoid pressing a dowel into a blind hole. If options are limited, pull dowels have a threaded hole that can be used to remove the dowel from a blind hole.
- Avoid pressing a dowel into a hardened part.
- Provide a knock out hole.
- Relieve deep holes.
- Dowels should be a press fit in one component and a slip fit in the other.

Fig. 2 shows a cross section of two plates with four different assembly possibilities for dowels.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

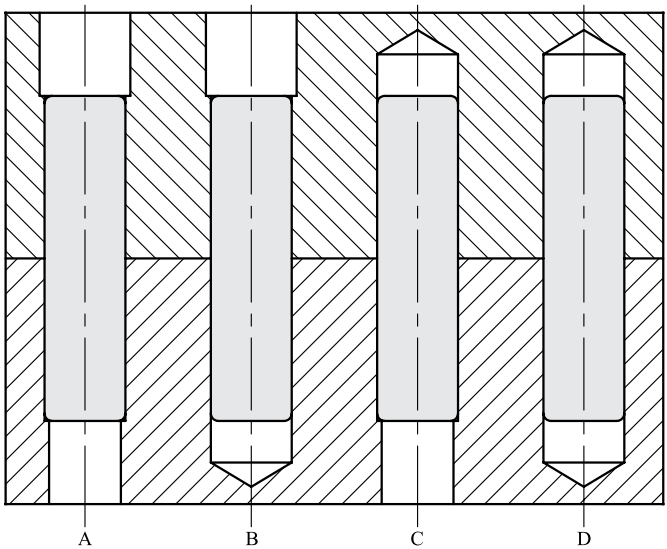


Fig. 2. Four Options for Dowel Pin Installation

Option A: In the lower plate the dowel is a light press fit which means that there is 0.0002 to 0.0005 inch interference between the dowel and the hole. The hole in the bottom part of the lower plate is made 0.03 inch smaller than the dowel hole to prevent the dowel from falling out while providing a knockout hole for a punch. The top plate also has a stepped hole that is 0.0002 to 0.0005 inch larger than the dowel for a slip fit, and a larger diameter for a relief. The relief is 0.03 inch larger than the dowel. It is a good practice to relieve portions of the hole that are not used for locating. Dowels should be installed with two times their diameter as a bearing surface. In other words, a $\frac{3}{8}$-inch diameter dowel should contact the hole for $\frac{3}{4}$ of its length in each component. A $\frac{1}{4}$-inch dowel should contact each plate for $\frac{1}{2}$ inch of the dowel's length in each component.

Option B: In this example the design does not permit the dowel hole to go through the lower plate. Since pressing dowels into blind (dead end) holes is not recommended, the dowel is a slip fit in the lower plate and a press fit in the top plate. Again, the top plate is relieved allowing the dowel the proper amount of effective engagement.

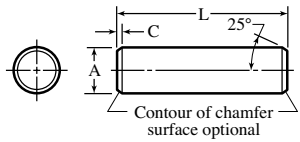
Option C: This example is the opposite of Option B. A knockout hole which is 0.03 inch smaller than the dowel is provided in the lower plate. The press fit is in the lower plate, the slip fit is in the top plate because it is very difficult to remove a dowel that is pressed in a blind hole.

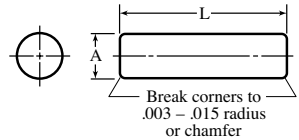
Option D: In the event that through holes are not permitted in either plate, both sides are made to a slip fit for the dowel.

American National Standard Straight Pins.—The diameter of both chamfered and square end straight pins is that of the commercial wire or rod from which the pins are made. The tolerances shown in Table 4 are applicable to carbon steel and some deviations in the diameter limits may be necessary for pins made from other materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Chamfered and Square End Straight Pins
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)





CHAMFERED STRAIGHT PIN

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*		Chamfer Length, *C*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1/16	0.062	0.0625	0.0605	0.025	0.005
3/32	0.094	0.0937	0.0917	0.025	0.00
7/64	0.109	0.1094	0.1074	0.025	0.005
1/8	0.125	0.1250	0.1230	0.025	0.005
5/32	0.156	0.1562	0.1542	0.025	0.005
3/16	0.188	0.1875	0.1855	0.025	0.005
7/32	0.219	0.2187	0.2167	0.025	0.005
1/4	0.250	0.2500	0.2480	0.025	0.005

SQUARE END STRAIGHT PIN

Nominal Size[b] or Basic Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*		Chamfer Length, *C*	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
5/16	0.312	0.3125	0.3105	0.040	0.020
3/8	0.375	0.3750	0.3730	0.040	0.020
7/16	0.438	0.4375	0.4355	0.040	0.020
1/2	0.500	0.5000	0.4980	0.040	0.020
5/8	0.625	0.6250	0.6230	0.055	0.035
3/4	0.750	0.7500	0.7480	0.055	0.035
7/8	0.875	0.8750	0.8730	0.055	0.035
1	1.000	1.0000	0.9980	0.055	0.035

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point are omitted.
[b] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point are omitted.
All dimensions are in inches.

Length Increments: Lengths are as specified by the purchaser; however, it is recommended that nominal pin lengths be limited to increments of not less than 0.062 inch.

Material: Straight pins are normally made from cold drawn steel wire or rod having a maximum carbon content of 0.28 percent. Where required, pins may also be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass, or other metals.

Designation: Straight pins are designated by the following data, in the sequence shown: Product name (noun first), nominal size (fraction or decimal equivalent), material, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pin, Chamfered Straight, $\frac{1}{8} \times 1.500$, Steel

Pin, Square End Straight, 0.250×2.250, Steel, Zinc Plated

American National Standard Taper Pins.—Taper pins have a uniform taper over the pin length with both ends crowned. Most sizes are supplied in commercial and precision classes, the latter having generally tighter tolerances and being more closely controlled in manufacture.

Diameters: The major diameter of both commercial and precision classes of pins is the diameter of the large end and is the basis for pin size. The diameter at the small end is computed by multiplying the nominal length of the pin by the factor 0.02083 and subtracting the result from the basic pin diameter. See also Table 5.

Taper: The taper on commercial class pins is 0.250 ± 0.006 inch per foot and on the precision class pins is 0.250 ± 0.004 inch per foot of length.

Materials: Unless otherwise specified, taper pins are made from SAE 1211 steel or cold drawn SAE 1212 or 1213 steel or equivalents, and no mechanical property requirements apply.

Hole Sizes: Under most circumstances, holes for taper pins require taper reaming. Sizes and lengths of taper pins for which standard reamers are available are given in Table 6. Drilling specifications for taper pins are given below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Designation: Taper pins are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Product name (noun first), class, size number (or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or three-place decimal equivalent), material, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pin, Taper (Commercial Class) No. $0 \times {}^{3}/_{4}$, Steel

Pin, Taper (Precision Class) 0.219×1.750, Steel, Zinc Plated

Table 5. Nominal Diameter at Small Ends of Standard Taper Pins

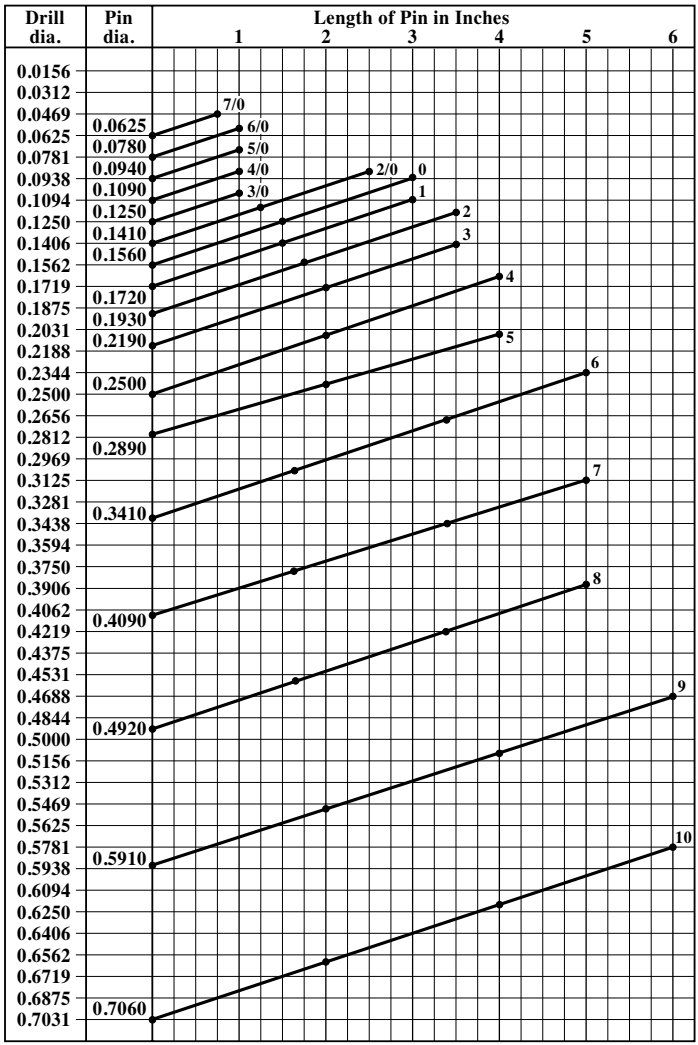
Pin Length in inches	Pin Number and Small End Diameter for Given Length										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
¾	0.140	0.156	0.177	0.203	0.235	0.273	0.325	0.393	0.476	0.575	0.690
1	0.135	0.151	0.172	0.198	0.230	0.268	0.320	0.388	0.471	0.570	0.685
1¼	0.130	0.146	0.167	0.192	0.224	0.263	0.315	0.382	0.466	0.565	0.680
1½	0.125	0.141	0.162	0.187	0.219	0.258	0.310	0.377	0.460	0.560	0.675
1¾	0.120	0.136	0.157	0.182	0.214	0.252	0.305	0.372	0.455	0.554	0.669
2	0.114	0.130	0.151	0.177	0.209	0.247	0.299	0.367	0.450	0.549	0.664
2¼	0.109	0.125	0.146	0.172	0.204	0.242	0.294	0.362	0.445	0.544	0.659
2½	0.104	0.120	0.141	0.166	0.198	0.237	0.289	0.356	0.440	0.539	0.654
2¾	0.099	0.115	0.136	0.161	0.193	0.232	0.284	0.351	0.434	0.534	0.649
3	0.094	0.110	0.131	0.156	0.188	0.227	0.279	0.346	0.429	0.528	0.643
3¼	…	…	…	0.151	0.182	0.221	0.273	0.340	0.424	0.523	0.638
3½	…	…	…	0.146	0.177	0.216	0.268	0.335	0.419	0.518	0.633
3¾	…	…	…	0.141	0.172	0.211	0.263	0.330	0.414	0.513	0.628
4	…	…	…	0.136	0.167	0.206	0.258	0.326	0.409	0.508	0.623
4¼	…	…	…	0.131	0.162	0.201	0.253	0.321	0.403	0.502	0.617
4½	…	…	…	0.125	0.156	0.195	0.247	0.315	0.398	0.497	0.612
5	…	…	…	…	0.146	0.185	0.237	0.305	0.389	0.487	0.602
5½	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.294	0.377	0.476	0.591
6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.284	0.367	0.466	0.581

Drilling Specifications for Taper Pins.—When helically fluted taper pin reamers are used, the diameter of the through hole drilled prior to reaming is equal to the diameter at the small end of the taper pin. (See Table 5.) However, when straight fluted taper reamers are to be used, it may be necessary, for long pins, to step drill the hole before reaming, the number and sizes of the drills to be used depending on the depth of the hole (pin length).

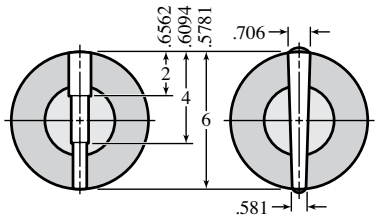
To determine the number and sizes of step drills required: Find the length of pin to be used at the top of the chart on page 1889 and follow this length down to the intersection with that heavy line which represents the size of taper pin (see taper pin numbers at the right-hand end of each heavy line). If the length of pin falls between the first and second dots, counting from the left, only one drill is required. Its size is indicated by following the nearest horizontal line from the point of intersection (of the pin length) on the heavy line over to the drill diameter values at the left. If the intersection of pin length comes between the second and third dots, then two drills are required. The size of the smaller drill then corresponds to the intersection of the pin length and the heavy line and the larger is the corresponding drill diameter for the intersection of one-half this length with the heavy line. Should the pin length fall between the third and fourth dots, three drills are required. The smallest drill will have a diameter corresponding to the intersection of the total pin length with the heavy line, the next in size will have a diameter corresponding to the intersection of two-thirds of this length with the heavy line, and the largest will have a diameter corresponding to the intersection of one-third of this length with the heavy line. Where the intersection falls between two drill sizes, use the smaller.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chart to Facilitate Selection of Number and Sizes of Drills for Step-Drilling Prior to Taper Reaming



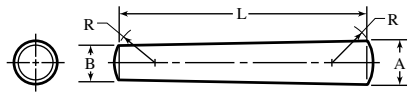
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Examples: For a No. 10 taper pin 6-inches long, three drills would be used, of the sizes and for the depths shown in the accompanying diagram.

For a No. 10 taper pin 3-inches long, two drills would be used because the 3-inch length falls between the second and third dots. The first or through drill will be 0.6406 inch and the second drill, 0.6719 inch for a depth of 1½ inches.

Table 6. American National Standard Taper Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)*



Pin Size Number and Basic Pin Dia.[a]		Major Diameter (Large End), *A*				End Crown Radius, *R*		Range of Lengths,[b] *L*	
		Commercial Class		Precision Class					
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Stand. Reamer Avail.[c]	Other
7/0	0.0625	0.0638	0.0618	0.0635	0.0625	0.072	0.052	…	¼-1
6/0	0.0780	0.0793	0.0773	0.0790	0.0780	0.088	0.068	…	¼-½
5/0	0.0940	0.0953	0.0933	0.0950	0.0940	0.104	0.084	¼-1	1¼, 1½
4/0	0.1090	0.1103	0.1083	0.1100	0.1090	0.119	0.099	¼-1	1¼-2
3/0	0.1250	0.1263	0.1243	0.1260	0.1250	0.135	0.115	¼-1	1¼-2
2/0	0.1410	0.1423	0.1403	0.1420	0.1410	0.151	0.131	½-1¼	1½-2½
0	0.1560	0.1573	0.1553	0.1570	0.1560	0.166	0.146	½-1¼	1½-3
1	0.1720	0.1733	0.1713	0.1730	0.1720	0.182	0.162	¾-1¼	1½-3
2	0.1930	0.1943	0.1923	0.1940	0.1930	0.203	0.183	¾-1½	1¾-3
3	0.2190	0.2203	0.2183	0.2200	0.2190	0.229	0.209	¾-1¾	2-4
4	0.2500	0.2513	0.2493	0.2510	0.2500	0.260	0.240	¾-2	2¼-4
5	0.2890	0.2903	0.2883	0.2900	0.2890	0.299	0.279	1-2½	2¾-6
6	0.3410	0.3423	0.3403	0.3420	0.3410	0.351	0.331	1¼-3	3¼-6
7	0.4090	0.4103	0.4083	0.4100	0.4090	0.419	0.399	1¼-3¾	4-8
8	0.4920	0.4933	0.4913	0.4930	0.4920	0.502	0.482	1¼-4½	4¾-8
9	0.5910	0.5923	0.5903	0.5920	0.5910	0.601	0.581	1¼-5¼	5½-8
10	0.7060	0.7073	0.7053	0.7070	0.7060	0.716	0.696	1½-6	6¼-8
11	0.8600	0.8613	0.8593	…	…	0.870	0.850	…	2-8
12	1.0320	1.0333	1.0313	…	…	1.042	1.022	…	2-9
13	1.2410	1.2423	1.2403	…	…	1.251	1.231	…	3-11
14	1.5230	1.5243	1.5223	…	…	1.533	1.513	…	3-13

[a] When specifying nominal pin size in decimals, zeros preceding the decimal and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Lengths increase in ⅛-inch steps up to 1 inch and in ¼-inch steps above 1 inch.

[c] Standard reamers are available for pin lengths in this column.

All dimensions are in inches.

For nominal diameters, B, see Table 5.

American National Standard Grooved Pins.—These pins have three equally spaced longitudinal grooves and an expanded diameter over the crests of the ridges formed by the material displaced when the grooves are produced. The grooves are aligned with the axes of the pins. There are seven types of grooved pins as shown in the illustration on page 1892.

Standard Sizes and Lengths: The standard sizes and lengths in which grooved pins are normally available are given in Table 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Materials: Grooved pins are normally made from cold drawn low carbon steel wire or rod. Where additional performance is required, carbon steel pins may be supplied surface hardened and heat treated to a hardness consistent with the performance requirements. Pins may also be made from alloy steel, corrosion resistant steel, brass, Monel and other nonferrous metals having chemical properties as agreed upon between manufacturer and purchaser.

Performance Requirements: Grooved pins are required to withstand the minimum double shear loads given in Table 7 for the respective materials shown, when tested in accordance with the Double Shear Testing of Pins as set forth in ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010), Appendix B.

Hole Sizes: To obtain maximum product retention under average conditions, it is recommended that holes for the installation of grooved pins be held as close as possible to the limits shown in Table 7. The minimum limits correspond to the drill size, which is the same as the basic pin diameter. The maximum limits are generally suitable for length-diameter ratios of not less than 4 to 1 nor greater than 10 to 1. For smaller length-to-diameter ratios, the hole should be held closer to the minimum limits where retention is critical. Conversely for larger ratios where retention requirements are less important, it may be desirable to increase the hole diameters beyond the maximum limits shown.

Designation: Grooved pins are designated by the following data in the sequence shown: Product name (noun first) including type designation, nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or decimal equivalent), material, including specification or heat treatment where necessary, protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pin, Type A Grooved, $\frac{3}{32} \times \frac{3}{4}$, Steel, Zinc Plated

Pin, Type F Grooved, 0.250×1.500, Corrosion Resistant Steel

American National Standard Grooved T-Head Cotter Pins and Round Head Grooved Drive Studs.—The cotter pins have a T-head and the studs a round head. Both pins and studs have three equally spaced longitudinal grooves and an expanded diameter over the crests of the raised ridges formed by the material displaced when the grooves are formed.

Standard Sizes and Lengths: The standard sizes and range of standard lengths are given in Table 8 and Table 9.

Material: Unless otherwise specified these pins are made from low carbon steel. Where so indicated by the purchaser they may be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass or other nonferrous alloys.

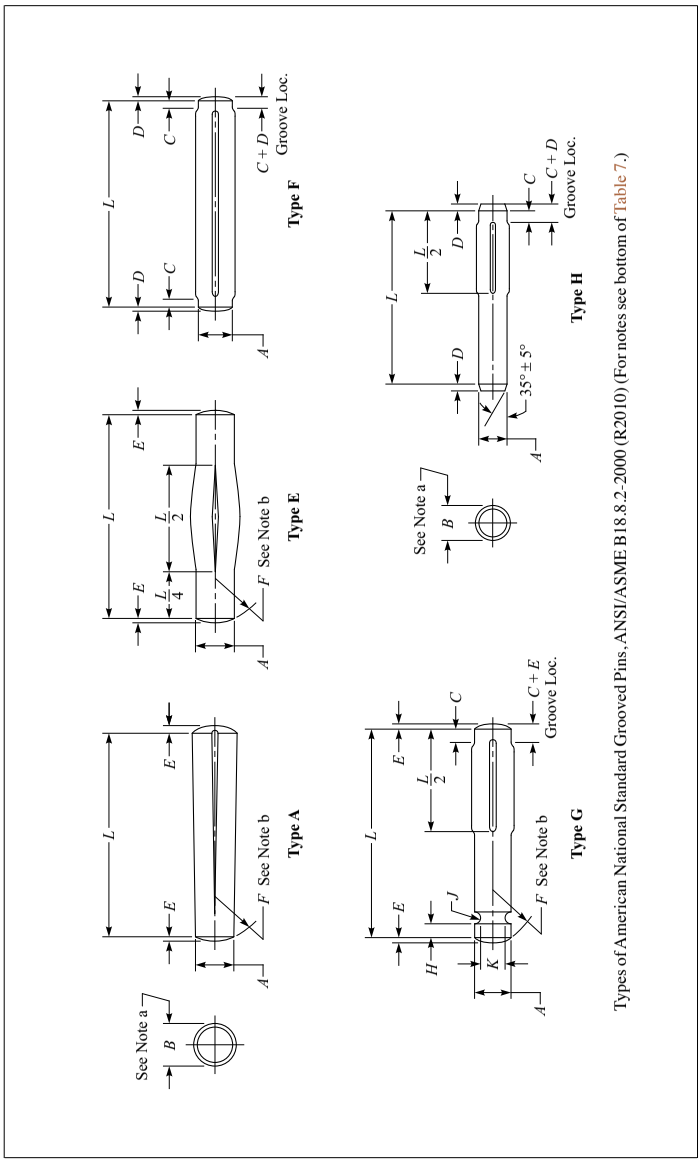
Hole Sizes: To obtain optimum product retention under average conditions, it is recommended that holes for the installation of grooved T-head cotter pins and grooved drive studs be held as close as possible to the limits tabulated. The minimum limits given correspond to the drill size, which is equivalent to the basic shank diameter. The maximum limits shown are generally suitable for length-diameter ratios of not less than 4 to 1 and not greater than 10 to 1. For smaller length-to-diameter ratios, the holes should be held closer to minimum limits where retention is critical. Conversely, for larger length-to-diameter ratios or where retention requirements are not essential, it may be desirable to increase the hole diameter beyond the maximum limits shown.

Designation: Grooved T-head cotter pins and round head grooved drive studs are designated by the following data, in the order shown: Product name (noun first), nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent), length (fraction or decimal equivalent), material including specification or heat treatment where necessary, and protective finish, if required.

Examples: Pin, Grooved T-Head Cotter, $\frac{1}{4} \times 1\frac{1}{4}$, Steel, Zinc Plated

Drive Stud, Round Head Grooved, No. $10 \times \frac{1}{2}$, Corrosion Resistant Steel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Types of American National Standard Grooved Pins, ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010) (For notes see bottom of Table 7.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. American National Standard Grooved Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)*

Nominal Size or Basic Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter,[a] *A*		Pilot Length, *C*	Chamfer Length,[b] *D*	Crown Height,[b] *E*		Crown Radius,[b] *F*		Neck Width, *G*		Shoulder Length, *H*		Neck Radius, *J*	Neck Diameter, *K*		Range of Standard Lengths[c]
		Max.	Min.	Ref.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	
1/32[d]	0.0312	0.0312	0.0297	0.015	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1/8-1/2
3/64[d]	0.0469	0.0469	0.0454	0.031	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1/8-5/8
1/16	0.0625	0.0625	0.0610	0.031	0.005	0.0115	0.0015	0.088	0.068	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1/8-1
5/64[d]	0.0781	0.0781	0.0766	0.031	0.005	0.0137	0.0037	0.104	0.084	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	1/4-1
3/32	0.0938	0.0938	0.0923	0.031	0.005	0.0141	0.0041	0.135	0.115	0.038	0.028	0.041	0.031	0.016	0.067	0.057	1/4-1 1/4
7/64[d]	0.1094	0.1094	0.1074	0.031	0.005	0.0160	0.0060	0.150	0.130	0.038	0.028	0.041	0.031	0.016	0.082	0.072	1/4-1 1/4
1/8	0.1250	0.1250	0.1230	0.031	0.005	0.0180	0.0080	0.166	0.146	0.069	0.059	0.041	0.031	0.031	0.088	0.078	1/4-1 1/2
5/32	0.1563	0.1563	0.1543	0.062	0.005	0.0220	0.0120	0.198	0.178	0.069	0.059	0.057	0.047	0.031	0.109	0.099	3/8-2
3/16	0.1875	0.1875	0.1855	0.062	0.016	0.0230	0.0130	0.260	0.240	0.069	0.059	0.057	0.047	0.031	0.130	0.120	3/8-2 1/4
7/32	0.2188	0.2188	0.2168	0.062	0.016	0.0270	0.0170	0.291	0.271	0.101	0.091	0.072	0.062	0.047	0.151	0.141	1/2-3
1/4	0.2500	0.2500	0.2480	0.062	0.016	0.0310	0.0210	0.322	0.302	0.101	0.091	0.072	0.062	0.047	0.172	0.162	1/2-3 1/4
5/16	0.3125	0.3125	0.3105	0.094	0.031	0.0390	0.0290	0.385	0.365	0.132	0.122	0.104	0.094	0.062	0.214	0.204	5/8-3 1/2
3/8	0.3750	0.3750	0.3730	0.094	0.031	0.0440	0.0340	0.479	0.459	0.132	0.122	0.135	0.125	0.062	0.255	0.245	3/4-4 1/4
7/16	0.4375	0.4375	0.4355	0.094	0.031	0.0520	0.0420	0.541	0.521	0.195	0.185	0.135	0.125	0.094	0.298	0.288	7/8-4 1/2
1/2	0.5000	0.5000	0.4980	0.094	0.031	0.0570	0.0470	0.635	0.615	0.195	0.185	0.135	0.125	0.094	0.317	0.307	1-4 1/2

[a] For expanded diameters, *B*, see ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

[b] Pins in 1/32- and 3/64-inch sizes of any length and all sizes of 1/4-inch nominal length or shorter are not crowned or chamfered.

[c] Standard lengths increase in 1/8-inch steps from 1/8 to 1 inch, and in 1/4-inch steps above 1 inch. Standard lengths for the 1/32-, 3/64-, 1/16-, and 5/64-inch sizes and the 1/4-inch length for the 3/32-, 7/64-, and 1/8-inch sizes do not apply to Type G grooved pins.

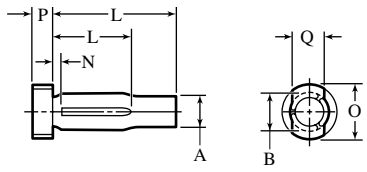
[d] Non-stock items, not recommended for new designs.

Pin Material	Nominal Pin Size														
	1/32	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	7/64	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	5/16	3/8	7/16	1/2
Steels	Double Shear Load, Min, lb														
Low Carbon	100	220	410	620	890	1,220	1,600	2,300	3,310	4,510	5,880	7,660	11,000	15,000	19,600
Alloy (hardness 40 - 48 RC)	180	400	720	1,120	1,600	2,180	2,820	4,520	6,440	8,770	11,500	17,900	26,000	35,200	46,000
Corrosion Resistant	140	300	540	860	1,240	1,680	2,200	3,310	4,760	6,480	8,460	12,700	18,200	24,800	32,400
Brass	60	140	250	390	560	760	990	1,540	2,220	3,020	3,950	6,170	9,050	12,100	15,800
	Recommended Hole Sizes for Unplated Pins (The minimum drill size is the same as the pin size. See also text on page 1891.)														
Maximum Diameter	0.0324	0.0482	0.0640	0.0798	0.0956	0.1113	0.1271	0.1587	0.1903	0.2219	0.2534	0.3166	0.3797	0.4428	0.5060
Minimum Diameter	0.0312	0.0469	0.0625	0.0781	0.0938	0.1094	0.1250	0.1563	0.1875	0.2188	0.2500	0.3125	0.3750	0.4375	0.5000

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. American National Standard Grooved T-Head Cotter Pins
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)



Nominal Size[a] or Basic Shank Dia.		Shank Diameter, *A*		Length, *N*	Head Dia., *O*		Head Height, *P*		Head Width, *Q*		Range of Standard Lengths,[b] *L*	Recommended Hole Size	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.
5/32	0.156	0.154	0.150	0.08	0.26	0.24	0.11	0.09	0.18	0.15	3/4-1 1/8	0.161	0.156
3/16	0.187	0.186	0.182	0.09	0.30	0.28	0.13	0.11	0.22	0.18	3/4-1 1/4	0.193	0.187
1/4	0.250	0.248	0.244	0.12	0.40	0.38	0.17	0.15	0.28	0.24	1-1 1/2	0.257	0.250
5/16	0.312	0.310	0.305	0.16	0.51	0.48	0.21	0.19	0.34	0.30	1 1/8-2	0.319	0.312
23/64	0.359	0.358	0.353	0.18	0.57	0.54	0.24	0.22	0.38	0.35	1 1/4-2	0.366	0.359
1/2	0.500	0.498	0.493	0.25	0.79	0.76	0.32	0.30	0.54	0.49	2-3	0.508	0.500

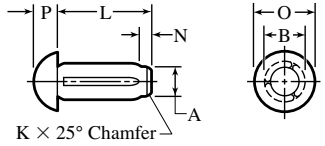
[a] When specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Lengths increase in 1/8-inch steps from 3/4 to 1 1/4 inch and in 1/4-inch steps above 1 1/4 inches. For groove length, *M*, dimensions see ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

All dimensions are in inches.

For expanded diameter, *B*, dimensions, see ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

Table 9. American National Standard Round Head Grooved Drive Studs
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)



Stud Size Number and Basic Shank Diameter[a]		Shank Diameter, *A*		Head Diameter, *O*		Head Height, *P*		Range of Standard Lengths,[b] *L*	Recommended Hole Size		Drill Size
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.		Max.	Min.	
0	0.067	0.067	0.065	0.130	0.120	0.050	0.040	1/8-1/4	0.0686	0.0670	51
2	0.086	0.086	0.084	0.162	0.146	0.070	0.059	1/8-1/4	0.0877	0.0860	44
4	0.104	0.104	0.102	0.211	0.193	0.086	0.075	3/16-5/16	0.1059	0.1040	37
6	0.120	0.120	0.118	0.260	0.240	0.103	0.091	1/4-3/8	0.1220	0.1200	31
7	0.136	0.136	0.134	0.309	0.287	0.119	0.107	5/16-1/2	0.1382	0.1360	29
8	0.144	0.144	0.142	0.309	0.287	0.119	0.107	3/8-5/8	0.1463	0.1440	27
10	0.161	0.161	0.159	0.359	0.334	0.136	0.124	3/8-5/8	0.1636	0.1610	20
12	0.196	0.196	0.194	0.408	0.382	0.152	0.140	1/2 3/4	0.1990	0.1960	9
14	0.221	0.221	0.219	0.457	0.429	0.169	0.156	1/2-3/4	0.2240	0.2210	2
16	0.250	0.250	0.248	0.472	0.443	0.174	0.161	1/2	0.2534	0.2500	1/4

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point and in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

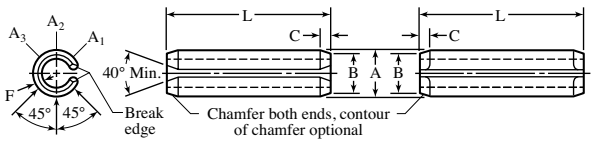
[b] Lengths increase in 1/16-inch steps from 1/8 to 3/8 inch and in 1/8-inch steps above 3/8 inch.

All dimensions are in inches.

For pilot length, *M*, and expanded diameter, *B*, dimensions see ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. American National Standard Slotted-Type Spring Pins
ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)



Style 1 **Style 2**

Nominal Size[a] or Basic Pin Diameter		Average Pin Diameter, *A*		Chamfer Dia., *B*	Chamfer Length, *C*		Stock Thickness, *F*	Recommended Hole Size		Material: Double Shear Load, Min., lb			Range of Practical Lengths[b]
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Basic	Max.	Min.	SAE 1070, 1095, and SAE 51420	SAE 30302 and 30304	Beryllium Copper	
1/16	0.062	0.069	0.066	0.059	0.028	0.007	0.012	0.065	0.062	430	250	270	3/16-1
5/64	0.078	0.086	0.083	0.075	0.032	0.008	0.018	0.081	0.078	800	460	500	3/16-1 1/2
3/32	0.094	0.103	0.099	0.091	0.038	0.008	0.022	0.097	0.094	1,150	670	710	3/16-1 1/2
1/8	0.125	0.135	0.131	0.122	0.044	0.008	0.028	0.129	0.125	1,875	1,090	1,170	5/16-2
9/64	0.141	0.149	0.145	0.137	0.044	0.008	0.028	0.144	0.140	2,175	1,260	1,350	3/8-2
5/32	0.156	0.167	0.162	0.151	0.048	0.010	0.032	0.160	0.156	2,750	1,600	1,725	7/16-2 1/2
3/16	0.188	0.199	0.194	0.182	0.055	0.011	0.040	0.192	0.187	4,150	2,425	2,600	1/2-2 1/2
7/32	0.219	0.232	0.226	0.214	0.065	0.011	0.048	0.224	0.219	5,850	3,400	3,650	1/2-3
1/4	0.250	0.264	0.258	0.245	0.065	0.012	0.048	0.256	0.250	7,050	4,100	4,400	1/2-3 1/2
5/16	0.312	0.330	0.321	0.306	0.080	0.014	0.062	0.318	0.312	10,800	6,300	6,750	3/4-4
3/8	0.375	0.395	0.385	0.368	0.095	0.016	0.077	0.382	0.375	16,300	9,500	10,200	3/4, 7/8, 1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-4
7/16	0.438	0.459	0.448	0.430	0.095	0.017	0.077	0.445	0.437	19,800	11,500	12,300	1, 1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-4
1/2	0.500	0.524	0.513	0.485	0.110	0.025	0.094	0.510	0.500	27,100	15,800	17,000	1 1/4, 1 1/2, 1 3/4, 2-4
5/8	0.625	0.653	0.640	0.608	0.125	0.030	0.125	0.636	0.625	46,000	18,800	…	2-6
3/4	0.750	0.784	0.769	0.730	0.150	0.030	0.150	0.764	0.750	66,000	23,200	…	2-6

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros preceding decimal point are omitted.

[b] Length increments are 1/16 inch from 1/8 to 1 inch; 1/8 from 1 inch to 2 inches; and 1/4 inch from 2 inches to 6 inches.

All dimensions are in inches.

American National Standard Spring Pins.—These pins are made in two types: one type has a slot throughout its length; the other is shaped into a coil.

Preferred Lengths and Sizes: The preferred lengths and sizes in which these pins are normally available are given in Table 10 and Table 11.

Materials: Spring pins are normally made from SAE 1070-1095 carbon steel, SAE 6150H alloy steel, SAE types 51410 through 51420, 30302 and 30304 corrosion resistant steels, and beryllium copper alloy, heat treated or cold-worked to attain the hardness and performance characteristics set forth in ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

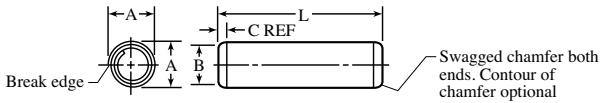
Designation: Spring pins are designated by the following data in the sequence shown:

Examples: Pin, Coiled Spring, $1/4 \times 1\,1/4$, Standard Duty, Steel, Zinc Plated

Pin, Slotted Spring, $1/2 \times 3$, Steel, Phosphate Coated

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. American National Standard Coiled-Type Spring Pins *ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010)*



Nominal Size or Basic Pin Diameter		Pin Diameter, *A*						Chamfer		Recommended Hole Size		SAE Material Number					
		Standard Duty		Heavy Duty		Light Duty		Dia., *B*	Length, *C*			1070-1095 and 51420	30302 and 30304	1070-1095 and 51420	30302 and 30304	1070-1095 and 51420	30302 and 30304
												Double Shear Load, Min., lb					
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Ref.	Max.	Min.	Standard Duty		Heavy Duty		Light Duty	
1/32	0.031	0.035	0.033	…	…	…	…	0.029	0.024	0.032	0.031	90[a]	65	…	…	…	…
	0.039	0.044	0.041	…	…	…	…	0.037	0.024	0.040	0.039	135[a]	100	…	…	…	…
3/64	0.047	0.052	0.049	…	…	…	…	0.045	0.024	0.048	0.046	190[a]	145	…	…	…	…
	0.052	0.057	0.054	…	…	…	…	0.050	0.024	0.053	0.051	250[a]	190	…	…	…	…
1/16	0.062	0.072	0.067	0.070	0.066	0.073	0.067	0.059	0.028	0.065	0.061	330	265	475	360	205	160
5/64	0.078	0.088	0.083	0.086	0.082	0.089	0.083	0.075	0.032	0.081	0.077	550	425	800	575	325	250
3/32	0.094	0.105	0.099	0.103	0.098	0.106	0.099	0.091	0.038	0.097	0.093	775	600	1,150	825	475	360
7/64	0.109	0.120	0.114	0.118	0.113	0.121	0.114	0.106	0.038	0.112	0.108	1,050	825	1,500	1,150	650	500
1/8	0.125	0.138	0.131	0.136	0.130	0.139	0.131	0.121	0.044	0.129	0.124	1,400	1,100	2,000	1,700	825	650
5/32	0.156	0.171	0.163	0.168	0.161	0.172	0.163	0.152	0.048	0.160	0.155	2,200	1,700	3,100	2,400	1,300	1,000
3/16	0.188	0.205	0.196	0.202	0.194	0.207	0.196	0.182	0.055	0.192	0.185	3,150	2,400	4,500	3,500	1,900	1,450
7/32	0.219	0.238	0.228	0.235	0.226	0.240	0.228	0.214	0.065	0.224	0.217	4,200	3,300	5,900	4,600	2,600	2,000
1/4	0.250	0.271	0.260	0.268	0.258	0.273	0.260	0.243	0.065	0.256	0.247	5,500	4,300	7,800	6,200	3,300	2,600
5/16	0.312	0.337	0.324	0.334	0.322	0.339	0.324	0.304	0.080	0.319	0.308	8,700	6,700	12,000	9,300	5,200	4,000
3/8	0.375	0.403	0.388	0.400	0.386	0.405	0.388	0.366	0.095	0.383	0.370	12,600	9,600	18,000	14,000	…	…
7/16	0.438	0.469	0.452	0.466	0.450	0.471	0.452	0.427	0.095	0.446	0.431	17,000	13,300	23,500	18,000	…	…
1/2	0.500	0.535	0.516	0.532	0.514	0.537	0.516	0.488	0.110	0.510	0.493	22,500	17,500	32,000	25,000	…	…
5/8	0.625	0.661	0.642	0.658	0.640	…	…	0.613	0.125	0.635	0.618	35,000[b]	…	48,000[b]	…	…	…
3/4	0.750	0.787	0.768	0.784	0.766	…	…	0.738	0.150	0.760	0.743	50,000[b]	…	70,000[b]	…	…	…

[a] Sizes 1/32 inch through 0.052 inch are not available in SAE 1070-1095 carbon steel.

[b] Sizes 5/8 inch and larger are produced from SAE 6150H alloy steel, not SAE 1070-1095 carbon steel. Practical lengths, *L*, for sizes 1/32 through 0.052 inch are 1/8 through 5/8 inch and for the 7/64-inch size, 1/4 through 1 3/4 inches. For lengths of other sizes see Table 10.

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

RETAINING RINGS

Retaining Rings.—The purpose of a retaining ring is to act as an artificial shoulder that will retain an object in a housing (internal ring), as shown in Fig. 1, or on a shaft (external ring). Two types of retaining ring are common, the stamped ring and the spiral-wound ring. The stamped-type of retaining ring, or snap ring, is stamped from tempered sheet metal and has a nonuniform cross section. The typical spiral-wound retaining ring has a uniform cross section and is made up of two or more turns of coiled, spring-tempered steel, although one-turn spiral-wound rings are common. Spiral-wound retaining rings provide a continuous gapless shoulder to a housing or shaft. Most stamped rings can only be installed at or near the end of a shaft or housing. The spiral-wound design generally requires installation from the end of a shaft or housing. Both types, stamped and spiral, are usually installed into grooves on the shaft or housing.

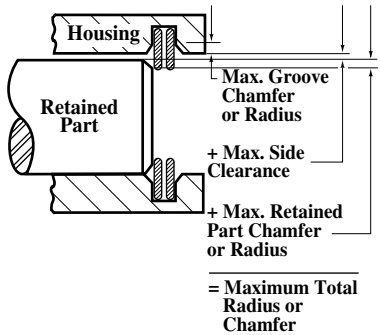
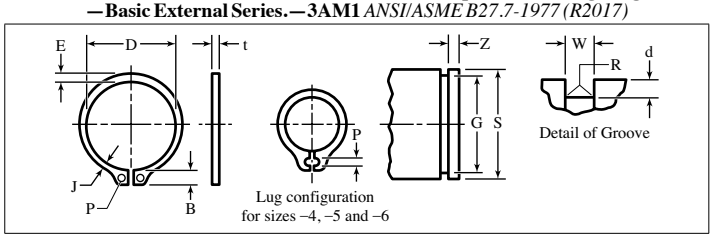

Housing
Retained Part
Max. Groove Chamfer or Radius
+ Max. Side Clearance
+ Max. Retained Part Chamfer or Radius
= Maximum Total Radius or Chamfer

Fig. 1. Typical Retaining Ring Installation Showing Maximum Total Radius or Chamfer (*Courtesy Spirolox Retaining Rings*)

In the section that follows, Table 1 through Table 6 give dimensions and data on general-purpose tapered and reduced-cross-section metric retaining rings (stamped-type) covered by ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017). Table 1 and Table 4 cover Type 3AM1 tapered external retaining rings, Table 2 and Table 5 cover Type 3BM1 tapered internal rings, and Table 3 and Table 6 cover Type 3CM1 reduced-cross-section external rings. Table 7 through Table 10 cover inch sizes of internal and external spiral retaining rings corresponding to MIL-R-27426 Types A (external) and B (internal), Class 1 (medium duty) and Class 2 (heavy duty). Table 11 through Table 17 cover stamped retaining rings in inch sizes.

Table 1. American National Standard Metric Tapered Retaining Rings —Basic External Series.—3AM1 *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Metric Tapered Retaining Rings —Basic External Series.—3AM1** *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*

Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove				Shaft Diam	Ring		Groove			
	Free Dia.	Thick-ness	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin		Free Dia.	Thick-ness	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin
S	*D*	*t*	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.	*S*	*D*	*t*	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.
4	3.60	0.25	3.80	0.32	0.1	0.3	36	33.25	1.3	33.85	1.4	1.06	3.2
5	4.55	0.4	4.75	0.5	0.13	0.4	38	35.20	1.3	35.8	1.4	1.10	3.3
6	5.45	0.4	5.70	0.5	0.15	0.5	40	36.75	1.6	37.7	1.75	1.15	3.4
7	6.35	0.6	6.60	0.7	0.20	0.6	42	38.80	1.6	39.6	1.75	1.20	3.6
8	7.15	0.6	7.50	0.7	0.25	0.8	43	39.65	1.6	40.5	1.75	1.25	3.8
9	8.15	0.6	8.45	0.7	0.28	0.8	45	41.60	1.6	42.4	1.75	1.30	3.9
10	9.00	0.6	9.40	0.7	0.30	0.9	46	42.55	1.6	43.3	1.75	1.35	4.0
11	10.00	0.6	10.35	0.7	0.33	1.0	48	44.40	1.6	45.2	1.75	1.40	4.2
12	10.85	0.6	11.35	0.7	0.33	1.0	50	46.20	1.6	47.2	1.75	1.40	4.2
13	11.90	0.9	12.30	1.0	0.35	1.0	52	48.40	2.0	49.1	2.15	1.45	4.3
14	12.90	0.9	13.25	1.0	0.38	1.2	54	49.9	2.0	51.0	2.15	1.50	4.5
15	13.80	0.9	14.15	1.0	0.43	1.3	55	50.6	2.0	51.8	2.15	1.60	4.8
16	14.70	0.9	15.10	1.0	0.45	1.4	57	52.9	2.0	53.8	2.15	1.60	4.8
17	15.75	0.9	16.10	1.0	0.45	1.4	58	53.6	2.0	54.7	2.15	1.65	4.9
18	16.65	1.1	17.00	1.2	0.50	1.5	60	55.8	2.0	56.7	2.15	1.65	4.9
19	17.60	1.1	17.95	1.2	0.53	1.6	62	57.3	2.0	58.6	2.15	1.70	5.1
20	18.35	1.1	18.85	1.2	0.58	1.7	65	60.4	2.0	61.6	2.15	1.70	5.1
21	19.40	1.1	19.80	1.2	0.60	1.8	68	63.1	2.0	64.5	2.15	1.75	5.3
22	20.30	1.1	20.70	1.2	0.65	1.9	70	64.6	2.4	66.4	2.55	1.80	5.4
23	21.25	1.1	21.65	1.2	0.67	2.0	72	66.6	2.4	68.3	2.55	1.85	5.5
24	22.20	1.1	22.60	1.2	0.70	2.1	75	69.0	2.4	71.2	2.55	1.90	5.7
25	23.10	1.1	23.50	1.2	0.75	2.3	78	72.0	2.4	74.0	2.55	2.00	6.0
26	24.05	1.1	24.50	1.2	0.75	2.3	80	74.2	2.4	75.9	2.55	2.05	6.1
27	24.95	1.3	25.45	1.4	0.78	2.3	82	76.4	2.4	77.8	2.55	2.10	6.3
28	25.80	1.3	26.40	1.4	0.80	2.4	85	78.6	2.4	80.6	2.55	2.20	6.6
30	27.90	1.3	28.35	1.4	0.83	2.5	88	81.4	2.8	83.5	2.95	2.25	6.7
32	29.60	1.3	30.20	1.4	0.90	2.7	90	83.2	2.8	85.4	2.95	2.30	6.9
34	31.40	1.3	32.00	1.4	1.00	3.0	95	88.1	2.8	90.2	2.95	2.40	7.2
35	32.30	1.3	32.90	1.4	1.05	3.1	100	92.5	2.8	95.0	2.95	2.50	7.5

All dimensions are in millimeters. Sizes –4, –5, and –6 are available in beryllium copper only.

These rings are designated by series symbol and shaft diameter, thus: for a 4 mm diameter shaft, 3AM1-4; for a 20 mm diameter shaft, 3AM1-20; etc.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes –4 through –6, +0.05, –0.10 mm; for sizes –7 through –12, +0.05, –0.15 mm; for sizes –13 through – 26, +0.15, –0.25 mm; for sizes –27 through –38, +0.25, –0.40 mm; for sizes –40 through –50, +0.35, –0.50 mm; for sizes –52 through –62, +0.35, –0.65 mm; and for sizes –65 through –100, +0.50, –0.75 mm.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes –4 through –6, –0.08 mm; for sizes –7 through –10, –0.10 mm; for sizes –11 through –15, –0.12 mm; for sizes –16 through –26, –0.15 mm; for sizes –27 through – 36, –0.20 mm; for sizes –38 through –55, –0.30 mm; and for sizes –57 through –100, –0.40 mm.

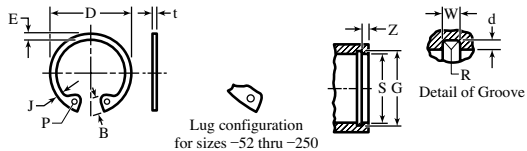
Groove Diameter F.I.M. (full indicator movement) or maximum allowable deviation of concentricity between groove and shaft: For ring sizes –4 through –6, 0.03 mm; for ring sizes –7 through –12, 0.05 mm; for sizes –13 through –28, 0.10 mm; for sizes –30 through –55, 0.15 mm; and for sizes –57 through – 00, 0.20 mm.

Groove Width Tolerances: For ring size –4, +0.05 mm; for sizes –5 and –6, +0.10 mm, for sizes –7 through –38, +0.15 mm; and for sizes –40 through – 100, +0.20 mm.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii, R: For ring sizes –4 through –6, none; for sizes –7 through –18, 0.1 mm; for sizes –19 through –30, 0.2 mm; for sizes –32 through –50, 0.3 mm; and for sizes –52 through –100, 0.4 mm. For manufacturing details not shown, including materials, see ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Metric Tapered Retaining Rings.—Basic Internal Series.—3BM1 *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*



Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove				Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove			
	Free Dia.	Thickness	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin		Free Dia.	Thickness	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin
S	*D*	*t*	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.	*S*	*D*	*t*	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.
8	8.80	0.4	8.40	0.5	0.2	0.6	65	72.2	2.4	69.0	2.55	2.00	6.0
9	10.00	0.6	9.45	0.7	0.23	0.7	68	75.7	2.4	72.2	2.55	2.10	6.3
10	11.10	0.6	10.50	0.7	0.25	0.8	70	77.5	2.4	74.4	2.55	2.20	6.6
11	12.20	0.6	11.60	0.7	0.3	0.9	72	79.6	2.4	76.5	2.55	2.25	6.7
12	13.30	0.6	12.65	0.7	0.33	1.0	75	83.3	2.4	79.7	2.55	2.35	7.1
13	14.25	0.9	13.70	1.0	0.35	1.1	78	86.8	2.8	82.8	2.95	2.40	7.2
14	15.45	0.9	14.80	1.0	0.40	1.2	80	89.1	2.8	85.0	2.95	2.50	7.5
15	16.60	0.9	15.85	1.0	0.43	1.3	82	91.1	2.8	87.2	2.95	2.60	7.8
16	17.70	0.9	16.90	1.0	0.45	1.4	85	94.4	2.8	90.4	2.95	2.70	8.1
17	18.90	0.9	18.00	1.0	0.50	1.5	88	97.9	2.8	93.6	2.95	2.80	8.4
18	20.05	0.9	19.05	1.0	0.53	1.6	90	100.0	2.80	95.7	2.95	2.85	8.6
19	21.10	0.9	20.10	1.0	0.55	1.7	92	102.2	2.8	97.8	2.95	2.90	8.7
20	22.25	0.9	21.15	1.0	0.57	1.7	95	105.6	2.8	101.0	2.95	3.00	9.0
21	23.30	0.9	22.20	1.0	0.60	1.8	98	109.0	2.8	104.2	2.95	3.10	9.3
22	24.40	1.1	23.30	1.2	0.65	1.9	100	110.7	2.8	106.3	2.95	3.15	9.5
23	25.45	1.1	24.35	1.2	0.67	2.0	102	112.4	2.8	108.4	2.95	3.20	9.6
24	26.55	1.1	25.4	1.2	0.70	2.1	105	115.8	2.8	111.5	2.95	3.25	9.8
25	27.75	1.1	26.6	1.2	0.80	2.4	108	119.2	2.8	114.6	2.95	3.30	9.9
26	28.85	1.1	27.7	1.2	0.85	2.6	110	120.8	2.8	116.7	2.95	3.35	10.1
27	29.95	1.3	28.8	1.4	0.90	2.7	115	126.0	2.8	121.9	2.95	3.45	10.4
28	31.10	1.3	29.8	1.4	0.90	2.7	120	132.4	2.8	127.0	2.95	3.50	10.5
30	33.40	1.3	31.9	1.4	0.95	2.9	125	137.1	2.8	132.1	2.95	3.55	10.7
32	35.35	1.3	33.9	1.4	0.95	2.9	130	142.5	2.8	137.2	2.95	3.60	10.8
34	37.75	1.3	36.1	1.4	1.05	3.2	135	148.5	3.2	142.3	3.40	3.65	11.0
35	38.75	1.3	37.2	1.4	1.10	3.3	140	154.1	3.2	147.4	3.40	3.70	11.1
36	40.00	1.3	38.3	1.4	1.15	3.5	145	159.5	3.2	152.5	3.40	3.75	11.3
37	41.05	1.3	39.3	1.4	1.15	3.5	150	164.5	3.2	157.6	3.40	3.80	11.4
38	42.15	1.3	40.4	1.4	1.20	3.6	155	168.8	3.2	162.7	3.40	3.85	11.6
40	44.25	1.6	42.4	1.75	1.20	3.6	160	175.1	4.0	167.8	4.25	3.90	11.7
42	46.60	1.6	44.5	1.75	1.25	3.7	165	180.3	4.0	172.9	4.25	3.95	11.9
45	49.95	1.6	47.6	1.75	1.30	3.9	170	185.6	4.0	178.0	4.25	4.00	12.0
46	51.05	1.6	48.7	1.75	1.35	4.0	175	191.3	4.0	183.2	4.25	4.10	12.3
47	52.15	1.6	49.8	1.75	1.40	4.2	180	196.6	4.0	188.4	4.25	4.20	12.6
48	53.30	1.6	50.9	1.75	1.45	4.3	185	202.7	4.8	193.6	5.10	4.30	12.9
50	55.35	1.6	53.1	1.75	1.55	4.6	190	207.7	4.8	198.8	5.10	4.40	13.2
52	57.90	2.0	55.3	2.15	1.65	5.0	200	217.8	4.8	209.0	5.10	4.50	13.5
55	61.10	2.0	58.4	2.15	1.70	5.1	210	230.3	4.8	219.4	5.10	4.70	14.1
57	63.25	2.0	60.5	2.15	1.75	5.3	220	240.5	4.8	230.0	5.10	5.00	15.0
58	64.4	2.0	61.6	2.15	1.80	5.4	230	251.4	4.8	240.6	5.10	5.30	15.9
60	66.8	2.0	63.8	2.15	1.90	5.7	240	262.3	4.8	251.0	5.10	5.50	16.5
62	68.6	2.0	65.8	2.15	1.90	5.7	250	273.3	4.8	261.4	5.10	5.70	17.1
63	69.9	2.0	66.9	2.15	1.95	5.9	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

These rings are designated by series symbol and shaft diameter, thus: for a 9 mm diameter shaft, 3BM1-9; for a 22 mm diameter shaft, 3BM1-22; etc.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes −8 through −20, +0.25, −0.13 mm; for sizes −21 through −26, +0.40, −0.25 mm; for sizes −27 through −38, +0.65, −0.50 mm; for sizes −40 through

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

–50, +0.90, –0.65 mm; for sizes –52 through –75, +1.00, –0.75 mm; for sizes –78 through –92, +1.40, –1.40 mm; for sizes –95 through –155, +1.65, –1.65 mm; for sizes –160 through –180, +2.05, –2.05 mm; and for sizes –185 through –250, +2.30, –2.30 mm.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes –8 and –9, +0.06 mm; for sizes –10 through –18, +0.10 mm; for sizes –19 through –28, +0.15 mm; for sizes –30 through –50, +0.20 mm; for sizes –52 through –98, +0.30; for sizes –100 through –160, +0.40 mm; and for sizes –165 through –250, +0.50 mm.

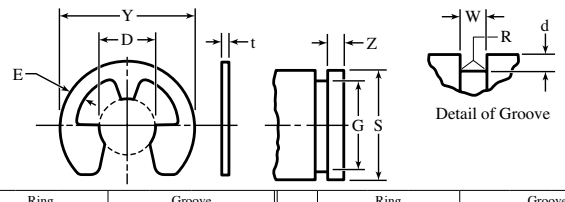
Groove Diameter F.I.M. (Full Indicator Movement) or maximum allowable deviation of concentricity between groove and shaft: For ring sizes –8 through –10, 0.03 mm; for sizes –11 through –15, 0.05 mm; for sizes –16 through –25, 0.10 mm; for sizes –26 through –45, 0.15 mm; for sizes –46 through –80, 0.20 mm; for sizes –82 through –150, 0.25 mm; and for sizes –155 through –250, 0.30 mm.

Groove Width Tolerances: For ring size –8, +0.10 mm; for sizes –9 through –38, +0.15 mm; for sizes –40 through –130, +0.20 mm; and for sizes –135 through –250, +0.25 mm.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii: For ring sizes –8 through –17, 0.1 mm; for sizes –18 through –30, 0.2 mm; for sizes –32 through –55, 0.3 mm; and for sizes –56 through –250, 0.4 mm.

For manufacturing details not shown, including materials, see ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Table 3. American National Standard Metric Reduced Cross Section Retaining Rings.—E Ring External Series —3CM1 *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*



Shaft Dia.	Ring			Groove				Shaft Dia.	Ring			Groove			
	Free Dia.	Thickness	Outer Dia.	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin		Free Dia.	Thickness	Outer Dia.	Dia.	Width	Depth	Edge Margin
S	*D*	*t*	*Y* nom	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.	*S*	*D*	*t*	*Y* nom	*G*	*W*	*d* ref.	*Z* min.
1	0.64	0.25	2.0	0.72	0.32	0.14	0.3	11	8.55	0.9	17.4	8.90	1.0	1.05	2.1
2	1.30	0.25	4.0	1.45	0.32	0.28	0.6	12	9.20	1.1	18.6	9.60	1.2	1.20	2.4
3	2.10	0.4	5.6	2.30	0.5	0.35	0.7	13	9.95	1.1	20.3	10.30	1.2	1.35	2.7
4	2.90	0.6	7.2	3.10	0.7	0.45	0.9	15	11.40	1.1	22.8	11.80	1.2	1.60	3.2
5	3.70	0.6	8.5	3.90	0.7	0.55	1.1	16	12.15	1.1	23.8	12.50	1.2	1.75	3.5
6	4.70	0.6	11.1	4.85	0.7	0.58	1.2	18	13.90	1.3	27.2	14.30	1.4	1.85	3.7
7	5.25	0.6	13.4	5.55	0.7	0.73	1.5	20	15.60	1.3	30.0	16.00	1.4	2.00	4.0
8	6.15	0.6	14.6	6.40	0.7	0.80	1.6	22	17.00	1.3	33.0	17.40	1.4	2.30	4.6
9	6.80	0.9	15.8	7.20	1.0	0.90	1.8	25	19.50	1.3	37.1	20.00	1.4	2.50	5.0
10	7.60	0.9	16.8	8.00	1.0	1.00	2.0	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters. Size –1 is available in beryllium copper only.

These rings are designated by series symbol and shaft diameter, thus: for a 2 mm diameter shaft, 3CM1-2; for a 13 mm shaft, 3CMI -13; etc.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes –1 through –7, +0.03, –0.08 mm; for sizes –8 through –13, +0.05, –0.10 mm; and for sizes –15 through –25, +0.10, –0.15 mm.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For ring sizes –1 and –2, –0.05 mm; for sizes –3 through –6, –0.08; for sizes –7 through –11, –0.10 mm; for sizes –12 through –18, – 0.15 mm; and for sizes –20 through –25, – 0.20 mm.

Groove Diameter F.I.M. (Full Indicator Movement) or maximum allowable deviation of concentricity between groove and shaft: For ring sizes –1 through –3, 0.04 mm; for –4 through –6, 0.05 mm; for –7 through –10, 0.08 mm; for –11 through –25, 0.10 mm.

Groove Width Tolerances: For ring sizes – 1 and –2, +0.05 mm; for size –3, +0.10 mm; and for sizes –4 through – 25, +0.15 mm.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii: For ring sizes –1 and –2, 0.05 mm; for –3 through –7, 0.15 mm; for –8 through –13, 0.25 mm; and for –15 through –25, 0.4 mm.

For manufacturing details not shown, including materials, see ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

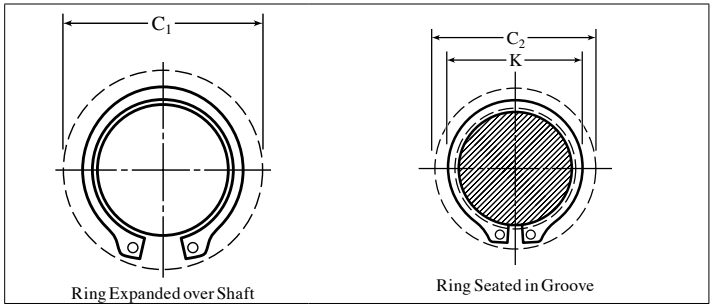


Table 4. American National Standard Metric Basic External Series 3AM1 Retaining Rings, Checking and Performance Data *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*

Ring Series and Size No.	Clearance Dia.		Gaging Diameter[a]	Allowable Thrust Loads Sharp Corner Abutment		Maximum Allowable Corner Radii and Chamfers		Allowable Assembly Speed[b]
	Ring Over Shaft	Ring in Groove						
3AM1	C_1	C_2	K max.	P_f[c]	P_g[d]	R max.	Ch max.	…
No.	mm	mm	mm	kN	kN	mm	mm	rpm
–4[a]	7.0	6.8	4.90	0.6	0.2	0.35	0.25	70 000
–5[a]	8.2	7.9	5.85	1.1	0.3	0.35	0.25	70 000
–6[a]	9.1	8.8	6.95	1.4	0.4	0.35	0.25	70 000
–7	12.3	11.8	8.05	2.6	0.7	0.45	0.3	60 000
–8	13.6	13.0	9.15	3.1	1.0	0.5	0.35	55 000
–9	14.5	13.8	10.35	3.5	1.2	0.6	0.35	48 000
–10	15.5	14.7	11.50	3.9	1.5	0.7	0.4	42 000
–11	16.4	15.6	12.60	4.3	1.8	0.75	0.45	38 000
–12	17.4	16.6	13.80	4.7	2.0	0.8	0.45	34 000
–13	19.7	18.8	15.05	7.5	2.2	0.8	0.5	31 000
–14	20.7	19.7	15.60	8.1	2.6	0.9	0.5	28 000
–15	21.7	20.6	17.20	8.7	3.2	1.0	0.6	27 000
–16	22.7	21.6	18.35	9.3	3.5	1.1	0.6	25 000
–17	23.7	22.6	19.35	9.9	4.0	1.1	0.6	24 000
–18	26.2	25.0	20.60	16.0	4.4	1.2	0.7	23 000
–19	27.2	25.9	21.70	16.9	4.9	1.2	0.7	21 500
–20	28.2	26.8	22.65	17.8	5.7	1.2	0.7	20 000
–21	29.2	27.7	23.80	18.6	6.2	1.3	0.7	19 000
–22	30.3	28.7	24.90	19.6	7.0	1.3	0.8	18 500
–23	31.3	29.6	26.00	20.5	7.6	1.3	0.8	18 000
–24	34.1	32.4	27.15	21.4	8.2	1.4	0.8	17 500
–25	35.1	33.3	28.10	22.3	9.2	1.4	0.8	17 000
–26	36.0	34.2	29.25	23.2	9.6	1.5	0.9	16 500
–27	37.8	35.9	30.35	28.4	10.3	1.5	0.9	16 300
–28	38.8	36.9	31.45	28.4	11.0	1.6	1.0	15 800
–30	40.8	38.8	33.6	31.6	12.3	1.6	1.0	15 000
–32	42.8	40.7	35.9	33.6	14.1	1.7	1.0	14 800

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Metric Basic External Series 3AM1 Retaining Rings, Checking and Performance Data** *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*

Ring Series and Size No.	Clearance Dia.		Gaging Diameter[a]	Allowable Thrust Loads Sharp Corner Abutment		Maximum Allowable Corner Radii and Chamfers		Allowable Assembly Speed[b]
	Ring Over Shaft	Ring in Groove						
3AM1	C_1	C_2	K max.	P_r[c]	P_g[d]	R max.	Ch max.	…
No.	mm	mm	mm	kN	kN	mm	mm	rpm
–34	44.9	42.5	37.9	36	16.7	1.7	1.1	14 000
–35	45.9	43.4	39.0	37	18.1	1.8	1.1	13 500
–36	48.6	46.1	40.2	38	18.9	1.9	1.2	13 300
–38	50.6	48.0	42.5	40	20.5	2.0	1.2	12 700
–40	54.0	51.3	44.5	52	22.6	2.1	1.2	12 000
–42	56.0	53.2	46.9	54	24.8	2.2	1.3	11 000
–43	57.0	54.0	47.9	55	26.4	2.3	1.4	10 800
–45	59.0	55.9	50.0	58	28.8	2.3	1.4	10 000
–46	60.0	56.8	50.9	59	30.4	2.4	1.4	9 500
–48	62.4	59.1	53.0	62	33	2.4	1.4	8 800
–50	64.4	61.1	55.2	64	35	2.4	1.4	8 000
–52	67.6	64.1	57.4	84	37	2.5	1.5	7 700
–54	69.6	66.1	59.5	87	40	2.5	1.5	7 500
–55	70.6	66.9	60.4	89	44	2.5	1.5	7 400
–57	72.6	68.9	62.7	91	45	2.6	1.5	7 200
–58	73.6	69.8	63.6	93	46	2.6	1.6	7 100
–60	75.6	71.8	65.8	97	49	2.6	1.6	7 000
–62	77.6	73.6	67.9	100	52	2.7	1.6	6 900
–65	80.6	76.6	71.2	105	54	2.8	1.7	6 700
–68	83.6	79.5	74.5	110	58	2.9	1.7	6 500
–70	88.1	83.9	76.4	136	62	2.9	1.7	6 400
–72	90.1	85.8	78.5	140	65	2.9	1.7	6 200
–75	93.1	88.7	81.7	147	69	3.0	1.8	5 900
–78	95.4	92.1	84.6	151	76	3.0	1.8	5 600
–80	97.9	93.1	87.0	155	80	3.1	1.9	5 400
–82	100.0	95.1	89.0	159	84	3.2	1.9	5 200
–85	103.0	97.9	92.1	165	91	3.2	1.9	5 000
–88	107.0	100.8	95.1	199	97	3.2	1.9	4 800
–90	109.0	103.6	97.1	204	101	3.2	1.9	4 500
–95	114.0	108.6	102.7	215	112	3.4	2.1	4 350
–100	119.5	113.7	108.0	227	123	3.5	2.1	4 150

[a] For checking when ring is seated in groove.

[b] These values have been calculated for steel rings.

[c] These values apply to rings made from SAE 1060-1090 steels and PH 15-7 Mo stainless steel used on shafts hardened to 50 RC minimum, with the exception of sizes –4, –5, and –6 which are supplied in beryllium copper only. Values for other sizes made from beryllium copper can be calculated by multiplying the listed values by 0.75. The values listed include a safety factor of 4.

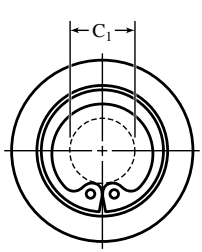
[d] These values are for all standard rings used on low carbon steel shafts. They include a safety factor of 2.

Maximum allowable assembly loads with R max or Ch max are: For rings sizes –4, 0.2 kN; for sizes –5 and –6, 0.5 kN; for sizes –7 through –12, 2.1 kN; for sizes –13 through –17, 4.0 kN; for sizes –18 through –26, 6.0 kN; for sizes –27 through –38, 8.6 kN; for sizes –40 through – 50, 13.2 kN; for sizes –52 through –68, 22.0 kN; for sizes –70 through –85, 32 kN; and for sizes –88 through –100, 47 kN.

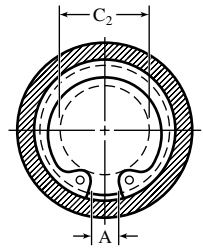
Source: Appendix to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

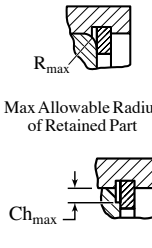
Table 5. American National Standard Metric Basic Internal Series 3BMI Retaining Rings—Checking and Performance Data *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*



Ring Compressed in Bore



Ring Seated in Groove



Ring Series and Size No.	Clearance Dia.		Gaging Diameter[a]	Allowable Thrust Loads Sharp Corner Abutment		Maximum Allowable Corner Radii and Chamfers	
	Ring in Bore	Ring in Groove					
3BMI	C_1	C_2	A min.	P_t[b]	P_s[c]	R max.	Ch max.
No.	mm	mm	mm	kN	kN	mm	mm
–8	4.4	4.8	1.40	2.4	1.0	0.4	0.3
–9	4.6	5.0	1.50	4.4	1.2	0.5	0.35
–10	5.5	6.0	1.85	4.9	1.5	0.5	0.35
–11	5.7	6.3	1.95	5.4	2.0	0.6	0.4
–12	6.7	7.3	2.25	5.8	2.4	0.6	0.4
–13	6.8	7.5	2.35	8.9	2.6	0.7	0.5
–14	6.9	7.7	2.65	9.7	3.2	0.7	0.5
–15	7.9	8.7	2.80	10.4	3.7	0.7	0.5
–16	8.8	9.7	2.80	11.0	4.2	0.7	0.5
–17	9.8	10.8	3.35	11.7	4.9	0.75	0.6
–18	10.3	11.3	3.40	12.3	5.5	0.75	0.6
–19	11.4	12.5	3.40	13.1	6.0	0.8	0.65
–20	11.6	12.7	3.8	13.7	6.6	0.9	0.7
–21	12.6	13.8	4.2	14.5	7.3	0.9	0.7
–22	13.5	14.8	4.3	22.5	8.3	0.9	0.7
–23	14.5	15.9	4.9	23.5	8.9	1.0	0.8
–24	15.5	16.9	5.2	24.8	9.7	1.0	0.8
–25	16.5	18.1	6.0	25.7	11.6	1.0	0.8
–26	17.5	19.2	5.7	26.8	12.7	1.2	1.0
–27	17.4	19.2	5.9	33	14.0	1.2	1.0
–28	18.2	20.0	6.0	34	14.6	1.2	1.0
–30	20.0	21.9	6.0	37	16.5	1.2	1.0
–32	22.0	23.9	7.3	39	17.6	1.2	1.0
–34	24.0	26.1	7.6	42	20.6	1.2	1.0
–35	25.0	27.2	8.0	43	22.3	1.2	1.0
–36	26.0	28.3	8.3	44	23.9	1.2	1.0
–37	27.0	29.3	8.4	45	24.6	1.2	1.0
–38	28.0	30.4	8.6	46	26.4	1.2	1.0
–40	29.2	31.6	9.7	62	27.7	1.7	1.3
–42	29.7	32.2	9.0	65	30.2	1.7	1.3
–45	32.3	34.9	9.6	69	33.8	1.7	1.3
–46	33.3	36.0	9.7	71	36	1.7	1.3
–47	34.3	37.1	10.0	72	38	1.7	1.3
–48	35.0	37.9	10.5	74	40	1.7	1.3
–50	36.9	40.0	12.1	77	45	1.7	1.3
–52	38.6	41.9	11.7	99	50	2.0	1.6
–55	40.8	44.2	11.9	105	54	2.0	1.6
–57	42.2	45.7	12.5	109	58	2.0	1.6

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **American National Standard Metric Basic Internal Series 3BMI Retaining Rings.—Checking and Performance Data** *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*

Ring Series and Size No.	Clearance Dia.		Gaging Diameter[a]	Allowable Thrust Loads Sharp Corner Abutment		Maximum Allowable Corner Radii and Chamfers	
	Ring in Bore	Ring in Groove					
3BMI	C_1	C_2	A min.	P_r[b]	P_s[c]	R max.	Ch max.
No.	mm	mm	mm	kN	kN	mm	mm
–58	43.2	46.8	13.0	111	60	2.0	1.6
–60	45.5	49.3	12.7	115	66	2.0	1.6
–62	47.0	50.8	14.0	119	68	2.0	1.6
–63	47.8	51.7	14.2	120	71	2.0	1.6
–65	49.4	53.4	14.2	149	75	2.0	1.6
–68	52.0	56.2	14.4	156	82	2.3	1.8
–70	53.8	58.2	16.1	161	88	2.3	1.8
–72	55.9	60.4	17.4	166	93	2.3	1.8
–75	58.2	62.9	16.8	172	101	2.3	1.8
–78	61.2	66.0	17.6	209	108	2.5	2.0
–80	63.0	68.0	17.2	215	115	2.5	2.0
–82	63.5	68.7	18.8	220	122	2.6	2.1
–85	66.8	72.2	19.1	228	131	2.6	2.1
–88	69.6	75.2	20.4	236	141	2.8	2.2
–90	71.6	77.3	21.4	241	147	2.8	2.2
–92	73.6	79.4	22.2	247	153	2.9	2.4
–95	76.7	82.7	22.6	255	164	3.0	2.5
–98	78.3	84.5	22.6	263	174	3.0	2.5
–100	80.3	86.6	24.1	269	181	3.1	2.5
–102	82.2	88.6	25.5	273	187	3.2	2.6
–105	85.1	91.6	26.0	281	196	3.3	2.6
–108	88.1	94.7	26.4	290	205	3.5	2.7
–110	88.4	95.1	27.5	295	212	3.6	2.8
–115	93.2	100.1	29.4	309	227	3.7	2.9
–120	98.2	105.2	27.2	321	241	3.9	3.1
–125	103.1	110.2	30.3	335	255	4.0	3.2
–130	108.0	115.2	31.0	349	269	4.0	3.2
–135	110.4	117.7	30.4	415	283	4.3	3.4
–140	115.3	122.7	30.4	429	298	4.3	3.4
–145	120.4	127.9	31.6	444	313	4.3	3.4
–150	125.3	132.9	33.5	460	327	4.3	3.4
–155	130.4	138.1	37.0	475	343	4.3	3.4
–160	133.8	141.6	35.0	613	359	4.5	3.6
–165	138.7	146.6	33.1	632	374	4.6	3.7
–170	143.6	151.6	38.2	651	390	4.6	3.7
–175	146.0	154.2	37.7	670	403	4.8	3.8
–180	151.4	159.8	39.0	690	434	5.0	4.0
–185	154.7	163.3	37.3	851	457	5.1	4.1
–190	159.5	168.3	35.0	873	480	5.3	4.3
–200	169.2	178.2	43.9	919	517	5.4	4.3
–210	177.5	186.9	40.6	965	566	5.8	4.6
–220	184.1	194.1	38.3	1000	608	6.1	4.9
–230	194.0	204.6	49.0	1060	686	6.3	5.1
–240	200.4	211.4	45.4	1090	725	6.6	5.3
–250	210.0	221.4	53.0	1150	808	6.7	5.4

[a] For checking when ring is seated in groove.

[b] These values apply to rings made from SAE 1060-1090 steels and PH 15-7 Mo stainless steel used in bores hardened to 50 RC minimum. Values for rings made from beryllium copper can be calculated by multiplying the listed values by 0.75. The values listed include a safety factor of 4.

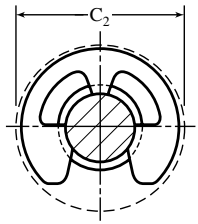
[c] These values are for standard rings used in low carbon steel bores. They include a safety factor of 2.

Maximum allowable assembly loads for R max or Ch max are: For ring size –8, 0.8 kN; for sizes –9 through –12, 2.0 kN; for sizes –13 through –21, 4.0 kN; for sizes –22 through –26, 7.4 kN; for sizes –27 through –38, 10.8 kN; for sizes –40 through –50, 17.4 kN; for sizes –52 through –63, 27.4 kN; for size –65, 42.0 kN; for sizes –68 through –72, 39 kN; for sizes –75 through –130, 54 kN; for sizes –135 through –155, 67 kN; for sizes –160 through –180, 102 kN; and for sizes –185 through –250, 151 kN.

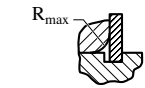
Source: Appendix to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

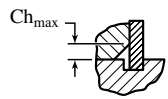
Table 6. American National Standard Metric E-Type External Series 3CM1 Retaining Rings.—Checking and Performance Data *ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017)*



Ring Seated in Groove



Max. Allowable Radius of Retained Part



Max. Allowable Chamfer of Retained Part

Ring Series and Size No.	Clearance Diameter Ring in Groove	Allowable Thrust Loads Sharp Corner Abutment		Maximum Allowable Corner Radii and Chamfers		Allowable Assembly Speed[a]
3CM1	C_2	P_t[b]	P_g[c]	R max	Ch max	…
No.	mm	kN	kN	mm	mm	rpm
–1	2.2	0.06	0.02	0.4	0.25	40 000
–2	4.3	0.13	0.09	0.8	0.5	40 000
–3	6.0	0.3	0.17	1.1	0.7	34 000
–4	7.6	0.7	0.3	1.6	1.2	31 000
–5	8.9	0.9	0.4	1.6	1.2	27 000
–6	11.5	1.1	0.6	1.6	1.2	25 000
–7	14.0	1.2	0.8	1.6	1.2	23 000
–8	15.1	1.4	1.0	1.7	1.3	21 500
–9	16.5	3.0	1.3	1.7	1.3	19 500
–10	17.5	3.4	1.6	1.7	1.3	18 000
–11	18.0	3.7	1.9	1.7	1.3	16 500
–12	19.3	4.9	2.3	1.9	1.4	15 000
–13	21.0	5.4	2.9	2.0	1.5	13 000
–15	23.5	6.2	4.0	2.0	1.5	11 500
–16	24.5	6.6	4.5	2.0	1.5	10 000
–18	27.9	8.7	5.4	2.1	1.6	9 000
–20	30.7	9.8	6.5	2.2	1.7	8 000
–22	33.7	10.8	8.1	2.2	1.7	7 000
–25	37.9	12.2	10.1	2.4	1.9	5 000

[a] These values have been calculated for steel rings.

[b] These values apply to rings made from SAE 1060-1090 steels and PH 15-7 Mo stainless steel used on shafts hardened to 50 RC minimum, with the exception of size –1 which is supplied in beryllium copper only. Values for other sizes made from beryllium copper can be calculated by multiplying the listed values by 0.75. The values listed include a safety factor of 4.

[c] These values apply to all standard rings used on low carbon steel shafts. They include a safety factor of 2.

Maximum allowable assembly loads with R max or Ch max are as follows:

Ring Size No.	Maximum Allowable Load, kN	Ring Size No.	Maximum Allowable Load, kN	Ring Size No.	Maximum Allowable Load, kN
–1	0.06	–8	1.4	–16	6.6
–2	0.13	–9	3.0	–18	8.7
–3	0.3	–10	3.4	–20	9.8
–4	0.7	–11	3.7	–22	10.8
–5	0.9	–12	4.9	–25	12.2
–6	1.1	–13	5.4	…	…
–7	1.2	–15	6.2	…	…

Source: Appendix to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B27.7-1977 (R2017).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

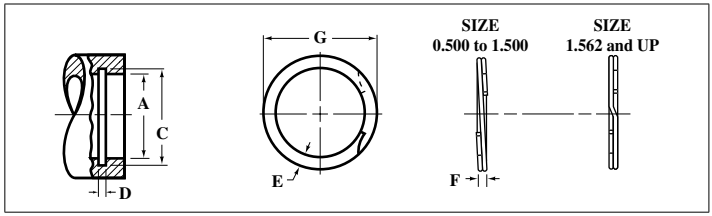


Table 7. Medium Duty Internal Spiral Retaining Rings *MIL-R-27426*

Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
0.500	0.532	0.045	0.526	0.030	2000	405	3.437	3.574	0.188	3.543	0.068	27660	18240
0.512	0.544	0.045	0.538	0.030	2050	420	3.500	3.636	0.188	3.606	0.068	28170	18575
0.531	0.564	0.045	0.557	0.030	2130	455	3.543	3.684	0.198	3.653	0.068	28520	19515
0.562	0.594	0.045	0.588	0.030	2250	495	3.562	3.703	0.198	3.672	0.068	28670	19620
0.594	0.626	0.045	0.619	0.030	2380	535	3.625	3.769	0.198	3.737	0.068	29180	20330
0.625	0.658	0.045	0.651	0.030	2500	610	3.687	3.832	0.198	3.799	0.068	29680	20675
0.656	0.689	0.045	0.682	0.030	2630	670	3.740	3.885	0.198	3.852	0.068	30100	20975
0.687	0.720	0.045	0.713	0.030	2750	725	3.750	3.894	0.198	3.862	0.068	30180	21030
0.718	0.751	0.045	0.744	0.030	2870	790	3.812	3.963	0.208	3.930	0.068	30680	22525
0.750	0.790	0.065	0.782	0.036	3360	800	4.437	4.611	0.238	4.573	0.068	35710	30215
0.777	0.817	0.065	0.808	0.036	3480	835	4.500	4.674	0.238	4.636	0.068	36220	30645
0.781	0.821	0.065	0.812	0.036	3500	840	4.527	4.701	0.238	4.663	0.068	36440	30830
0.812	0.853	0.065	0.843	0.036	3640	915	4.562	4.737	0.238	4.698	0.079	36720	31065
0.843	0.889	0.065	0.880	0.036	3780	1155	4.625	4.803	0.250	4.765	0.079	43940	32420
0.866	0.913	0.065	0.903	0.036	3880	1250	4.687	4.867	0.250	4.827	0.079	44530	32855
0.875	0.922	0.065	0.912	0.036	3920	1250	4.724	4.903	0.250	4.864	0.079	44880	33115
0.906	0.949	0.065	0.939	0.036	4060	1335	4.750	4.930	0.250	4.890	0.079	45130	33300
0.938	0.986	0.065	0.975	0.036	4200	1430	4.812	4.993	0.250	4.952	0.079	45710	33735
0.968	1.025	0.075	1.015	0.042	4340	1950	4.875	5.055	0.250	5.015	0.079	46310	34175
0.987	1.041	0.075	1.030	0.042	4420	1865	4.921	5.102	0.250	5.061	0.079	46750	34495
1.000	1.054	0.075	1.043	0.042	4480	1910	4.937	5.122	0.250	5.081	0.079	46900	35595
1.023	1.078	0.075	1.066	0.042	5470	1660	5.000	5.185	0.250	5.144	0.079	47500	36050
1.031	1.084	0.075	1.074	0.042	5510	1650	5.118	5.304	0.250	5.262	0.079	48620	36905
1.062	1.117	0.075	1.104	0.042	5680	1745	5.125	5.311	0.250	5.269	0.079	48690	36955
1.093	1.147	0.075	1.135	0.042	5840	1820	5.250	5.436	0.250	5.393	0.079	49880	37590
1.125	1.180	0.075	1.167	0.042	6010	1935	5.375	5.566	0.250	5.522	0.079	51050	39565
1.156	1.210	0.075	1.198	0.042	6180	2020	5.500	5.693	0.250	5.647	0.079	52250	40485
1.188	1.249	0.085	1.236	0.048	7380	2115	5.511	5.703	0.250	5.658	0.079	52350	40565
1.218	1.278	0.085	1.266	0.048	7570	2195	5.625	5.818	0.250	5.772	0.079	53440	41405
1.250	1.312	0.085	1.298	0.048	7770	2510	5.708	5.909	0.250	5.861	0.079	54230	43730
1.281	1.342	0.085	1.329	0.048	7960	2425	5.750	5.950	0.250	5.903	0.079	54630	44050
1.312	1.374	0.085	1.360	0.048	8150	2532	5.875	6.077	0.250	6.028	0.079	55810	45010
1.343	1.408	0.085	1.395	0.048	8340	2875	5.905	6.106	0.250	6.058	0.079	56100	45240
1.375	1.442	0.095	1.427	0.048	8540	3070	6.000	6.202	0.312	6.153	0.079	57000	45965
1.406	1.472	0.095	1.458	0.048	8740	3180	6.125	6.349	0.312	6.297	0.094	69500	52750
1.437	1.504	0.095	1.489	0.048	8930	3330	6.250	6.474	0.312	6.422	0.094	70920	53825
1.456	1.523	0.095	1.508	0.048	9050	3410	6.299	6.524	0.312	6.471	0.094	71480	54250
1.468	1.535	0.095	1.520	0.048	9120	3460	6.375	6.601	0.312	6.547	0.094	72340	54905
1.500	1.567	0.095	1.552	0.048	9320	3605	6.500	6.726	0.312	6.672	0.094	73760	55980
1.562	1.634	0.108	1.617	0.056	10100	3590	6.625	6.863	0.312	6.807	0.094	75180	60375
1.574	1.649	0.108	1.633	0.056	10180	3640	6.692	6.931	0.312	6.874	0.094	75940	60985
1.625	1.701	0.108	1.684	0.056	10510	3875	6.750	6.987	0.312	6.932	0.094	76590	61515
1.653	1.730	0.108	1.712	0.056	10690	4020	6.875	7.114	0.312	7.057	0.094	78010	62655
1.687	1.768	0.118	1.750	0.056	10910	4510	7.000	7.239	0.312	7.182	0.094	79430	63790
1.750	1.834	0.118	1.813	0.056	11310	4895	7.086	7.337	0.312	7.278	0.094	80410	68125
1.813	1.894	0.118	1.875	0.056	11720	5080	7.125	7.376	0.312	7.317	0.094	80850	68500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. *(Continued)* **Medium Duty Internal Spiral Retaining Rings** *MIL-R-27426*

Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
1.850	1.937	0.118	1.917	0.056	11960	5735	7.250	7.501	0.312	7.442	0.094	82270	69700
1.875	1.960	0.118	1.942	0.056	12120	5825	7.375	7.628	0.312	7.567	0.094	83690	70900
1.938	2.025	0.118	2.005	0.056	12530	6250	7.480	7.734	0.312	7.672	0.094	84880	71910
2.000	2.091	0.128	2.071	0.056	12930	7090	7.500	7.754	0.312	7.692	0.094	85110	72105
2.047	2.138	0.128	2.118	0.056	13230	7275	7.625	7.890	0.312	7.827	0.094	86520	77125
2.062	2.154	0.128	2.132	0.056	13330	7225	7.750	8.014	0.312	7.952	0.094	87940	78390
2.125	2.217	0.128	2.195	0.056	13740	7450	7.875	8.131	0.312	8.077	0.094	89360	79655
2.165	2.260	0.138	2.239	0.056	14000	8020	8.000	8.266	0.312	8.202	0.094	90780	80920
2.188	2.284	0.138	2.262	0.056	14150	8105	8.250	8.528	0.375	8.462	0.094	93620	87575
2.250	2.347	0.138	2.324	0.056	14550	8335	8.267	8.546	0.375	8.479	0.094	93810	87755
2.312	2.413	0.138	2.390	0.056	14950	9030	8.464	8.744	0.375	8.676	0.094	96040	89850
2.375	2.476	0.138	2.453	0.056	15350	9275	8.500	8.780	0.375	8.712	0.094	96450	90230
2.437	2.543	0.148	2.519	0.056	15760	10005	8.750	9.041	0.375	8.972	0.094	99290	97265
2.440	2.546	0.148	2.522	0.056	15780	10015	8.858	9.151	0.375	9.080	0.094	100520	98465
2.500	2.606	0.148	2.582	0.056	16160	10625	9.000	9.293	0.375	9.222	0.094	102130	100045
2.531	2.641	0.148	2.617	0.056	16360	10900	9.055	9.359	0.375	9.287	0.094	102750	105190
2.562	2.673	0.148	2.648	0.056	16560	11030	9.250	9.555	0.375	9.482	0.094	104960	107455
2.625	2.736	0.148	2.711	0.056	16970	11305	9.448	9.755	0.375	9.680	0.094	107210	109755
2.677	2.789	0.158	2.767	0.056	17310	12065	9.500	9.806	0.375	9.732	0.094	107800	110360
2.688	2.803	0.158	2.778	0.056	17380	12115	9.750	10.068	0.375	9.992	0.094	110640	118145
2.750	2.865	0.158	2.841	0.056	17780	12530	10.000	10.320	0.375	10.242	0.094	113470	121175
2.813	2.929	0.158	2.903	0.056	18190	12675	10.250	10.582	0.375	10.502	0.094	116310	129340
2.834	2.954	0.168	2.928	0.056	18320	13340	10.500	10.834	0.375	10.752	0.094	119150	132490
2.875	2.995	0.168	2.969	0.056	18590	13530	10.750	11.095	0.375	11.012	0.094	121980	141030
2.937	3.058	0.168	3.031	0.056	18990	13825	11.000	11.347	0.375	11.262	0.094	124820	144310
2.952	3.073	0.168	3.046	0.056	19090	13890	3.875	4.025	0.208	3.993	0.068	30680	22525
3.000	3.122	0.168	3.096	0.068	24150	14420	3.938	4.089	0.208	4.056	0.068	31700	23265
3.062	3.186	0.168	3.158	0.068	24640	14720	4.000	4.157	0.218	5.124	0.068	32190	24835
3.125	3.251	0.178	3.223	0.068	25150	15335	4.063	4.222	0.218	4.187	0.068	32700	25225
3.149	3.276	0.178	3.247	0.068	25340	15450	4.125	4.284	0.218	4.249	0.068	33200	25610
3.187	3.311	0.178	3.283	0.068	25650	15640	4.188	4.347	0.218	4.311	0.068	33710	25795
3.250	3.379	0.178	3.350	0.068	26160	16270	4.250	4.416	0.228	4.380	0.068	34210	27665
3.312	3.446	0.188	3.416	0.068	26660	17245	4.312	4.479	0.228	4.442	0.068	34710	28065
3.346	3.479	0.188	3.450	0.068	26930	17425	4.330	4.497	0.228	4.460	0.068	34850	28185
3.375	3.509	0.188	3.479	0.068	27160	17575	4.375	4.543	0.228	4.505	0.068	32210	28475

Source: Spirolox Retaining Rings, RR Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (C - A)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1070-1090).

Ring Thickness, F: For shaft sizes 0.500 through 0.718, 0.025; for sizes 0.750 through 0.938, 0.031; for sizes 0.968 through 1.156, 0.037; for sizes 1.188 through 1.500, 0.043; for sizes 1.562 through 2.952, 0.049; for sizes 3.000 through 4.562, 0.061; for sizes 4.625 through 6.000, 0.072; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, 0.086.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.031, +0.013, −0.000; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, +0.015, −0.000; for sizes 1.562 through 2.047, +0.020, −0.000; for sizes 2.062 through 3.000, +0.025, −0.000; for sizes 3.062 through 4.063, +0.030, −0.000; for sizes 4.125 through 5.125, +0.035, −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.125, +0.045, −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 7.125, +0.055, −0.000; for sizes 7.250 through 11.000, +0.065, −0.000.

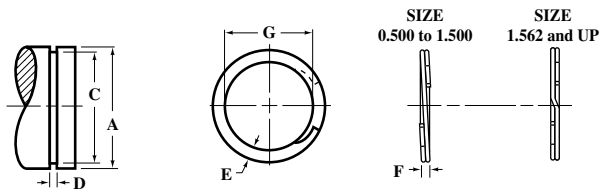
Ring Thickness Tolerances: Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; add 0.002 to upper thickness tolerance for plated rings. For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.500, ±0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 4.562, ±0.003; for sizes 4.625 through 11.000, ±0.004.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 0.750, ±0.002; for sizes 0.777 through 1.031, ±0.003; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, ±0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.047, ±0.005; for sizes 2.062 through 5.125, ±0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.007; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, ±0.008.

Groove Width Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.156, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.188 through 2.952, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 3.000 through 6.000, +0.005, −0.000; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, +0.006, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Medium Duty External Spiral Retaining Rings *MIL-R-27426*



Shaft Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Shaft Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
0.500	0.467	0.045	0.474	0.030	2000	550	3.343	3.210	0.188	3.239	0.068	26910	17410
0.531	0.498	0.045	0.505	0.030	2130	640	3.375	3.242	0.188	3.271	0.068	27160	17570
0.551	0.518	0.045	0.525	0.030	2210	700	3.437	3.301	0.188	3.331	0.068	27660	18240
0.562	0.529	0.045	0.536	0.030	2250	730	3.500	3.363	0.188	3.394	0.068	28170	18580
0.594	0.561	0.045	0.569	0.030	2380	740	3.543	3.402	0.198	3.433	0.068	28520	19510
0.625	0.585	0.055	0.594	0.030	2500	970	3.562	3.422	0.198	3.452	0.068	28670	19620
0.656	0.617	0.055	0.625	0.030	2630	1020	3.625	3.483	0.198	3.515	0.068	29180	19970
0.669	0.629	0.055	0.638	0.030	2680	1040	3.687	3.543	0.198	3.575	0.068	29680	20680
0.687	0.647	0.055	0.656	0.030	2750	1060	3.740	3.597	0.198	3.628	0.068	30100	20970
0.718	0.679	0.055	0.687	0.030	2870	1110	3.750	3.606	0.198	3.638	0.068	30180	21030
0.750	0.710	0.065	0.719	0.036	3360	1100	3.812	3.668	0.198	3.700	0.068	30680	21380
0.781	0.741	0.065	0.750	0.036	3500	1210	3.875	3.724	0.208	3.757	0.068	31190	22890
0.812	0.771	0.065	0.781	0.036	3640	1260	3.938	3.784	0.208	3.820	0.068	31700	23270
0.843	0.803	0.065	0.812	0.036	3780	1310	4.000	3.842	0.218	3.876	0.068	32190	24840
0.875	0.828	0.065	0.838	0.036	3920	1620	4.063	3.906	0.218	3.939	0.068	32700	25230
0.906	0.860	0.065	0.869	0.036	4060	1680	4.125	3.967	0.218	4.000	0.068	33200	25820
0.937	0.889	0.065	0.900	0.036	4200	1740	4.134	3.975	0.218	4.010	0.068	33270	25670
0.968	0.916	0.075	0.925	0.042	5180	2080	4.188	4.030	0.218	4.058	0.068	33710	27260
0.984	0.930	0.075	0.941	0.042	5260	2120	4.250	4.084	0.228	4.120	0.068	34210	27660
1.000	0.946	0.075	0.957	0.042	5350	2150	4.312	4.147	0.218	4.182	0.068	34710	28070
1.023	0.968	0.075	0.980	0.042	5470	2200	4.331	4.164	0.218	4.200	0.068	34860	28410
1.031	0.978	0.075	0.988	0.042	5510	2220	4.375	4.208	0.218	4.245	0.068	35210	28480
1.062	1.007	0.075	1.020	0.042	5680	2230	4.437	4.271	0.218	4.307	0.068	35710	28880
1.093	1.040	0.075	1.051	0.042	5840	2300	4.500	4.326	0.238	4.364	0.068	36220	30640
1.125	1.070	0.075	1.083	0.042	6010	2370	4.562	4.384	0.250	4.422	0.079	43340	31980
1.156	1.102	0.075	1.114	0.042	6180	2430	4.625	4.447	0.250	4.485	0.079	43940	32420
1.188	1.127	0.085	1.140	0.048	7380	2850	4.687	4.508	0.250	4.457	0.079	44530	32860
1.218	1.159	0.085	1.170	0.048	7570	2930	4.724	4.546	0.250	4.584	0.079	44880	33120
1.250	1.188	0.085	1.202	0.048	7770	3000	4.750	4.571	0.250	4.610	0.079	45130	33300
1.281	1.221	0.085	1.233	0.048	7960	3080	4.812	4.633	0.250	4.672	0.079	45710	33730
1.312	1.251	0.095	1.264	0.048	8150	3150	4.875	4.695	0.250	4.735	0.079	46310	34170
1.343	1.282	0.095	1.295	0.048	8340	3230	4.937	4.757	0.250	4.797	0.079	46900	34610
1.375	1.308	0.095	1.323	0.048	8540	3580	5.000	4.820	0.250	4.856	0.079	47500	36050
1.406	1.340	0.095	1.354	0.048	8740	3660	5.118	4.934	0.250	4.974	0.079	48620	36900
1.437	1.370	0.095	1.385	0.048	8930	3740	5.125	4.939	0.250	4.981	0.079	48690	36950
1.468	1.402	0.095	1.416	0.048	9120	3820	5.250	5.064	0.250	5.107	0.079	49880	37590
1.500	1.433	0.095	1.448	0.048	9320	3910	5.375	5.187	0.250	5.228	0.079	51060	39560
1.562	1.490	0.108	1.507	0.056	10100	4300	5.500	5.308	0.250	5.353	0.079	52250	40480
1.575	1.503	0.108	1.520	0.056	10190	4340	5.511	5.320	0.250	5.364	0.079	52350	40560
1.625	1.549	0.108	1.566	0.056	10510	4800	5.625	5.433	0.250	5.478	0.079	53440	41400
1.687	1.610	0.118	1.628	0.056	10910	4980	5.750	5.550	0.250	5.597	0.079	54630	44050

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. *(Continued)* **Medium Duty External Spiral Retaining Rings** *MIL-R-27426*

Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia.	Wall	Dia.	Width				Dia.	Wall	Dia.	Width		
A	G	E	C	D	Ring	Groove	A	G	E	C	D	Ring	Groove
1.750	1.673	0.118	1.691	0.056	11310	5170	5.875	5.674	0.250	5.722	0.079	55810	45010
1.771	1.690	0.118	1.708	0.056	11450	5590	5.905	5.705	0.250	5.752	0.079	56100	45240
1.813	1.730	0.118	1.749	0.056	11720	5810	6.000	5.798	0.250	5.847	0.079	57000	45970
1.875	1.789	0.128	1.808	0.056	12120	6290	6.125	5.903	0.312	5.953	0.094	69500	52750
1.938	1.844	0.128	1.861	0.056	12530	7470	6.250	6.026	0.312	6.078	0.094	70920	53830
1.969	1.882	0.128	1.902	0.056	12730	6610	6.299	6.076	0.312	6.127	0.094	71480	54250
2.000	1.909	0.128	1.992	0.056	12930	7110	6.375	6.152	0.312	6.203	0.094	72340	54900
2.062	1.971	0.128	2.051	0.056	13330	7870	6.500	6.274	0.312	6.328	0.094	73760	55980
2.125	2.029	0.128	2.082	0.056	13740	7990	6.625	6.390	0.312	6.443	0.094	75180	60380
2.156	2.060	0.138	2.091	0.056	13940	8020	6.750	6.513	0.312	6.568	0.094	76590	61515
2.188	2.070	0.138	2.113	0.056	14150	8220	6.875	6.638	0.312	6.693	0.094	78010	62650
2.250	2.092	0.138	2.176	0.056	14550	8340	7.000	6.761	0.312	6.818	0.094	79430	63790
2.312	2.153	0.138	2.234	0.056	14950	9030	7.125	6.877	0.312	6.933	0.094	80850	68500
2.362	2.211	0.138	2.284	0.056	15270	9230	7.250	6.999	0.312	7.058	0.094	82270	69700
2.375	2.273	0.138	2.297	0.056	15350	9280	7.375	7.125	0.312	7.183	0.094	83690	70900
2.437	2.331	0.148	2.355	0.056	15760	10000	7.500	7.250	0.312	7.308	0.094	85110	72100
2.500	2.394	0.148	2.418	0.056	16160	10260	7.625	7.363	0.312	7.423	0.094	86520	77120
2.559	2.449	0.148	2.473	0.056	16540	11020	7.750	7.486	0.312	7.548	0.094	87940	78390
2.562	2.452	0.148	2.476	0.056	16560	11030	7.875	7.611	0.312	7.673	0.094	89360	79650
2.625	2.514	0.148	2.539	0.056	16970	11300	8.000	7.734	0.312	7.798	0.094	90780	80920
2.688	2.572	0.158	2.597	0.056	17380	12250	8.250	7.972	0.375	8.038	0.094	93620	87580
2.750	2.635	0.158	2.660	0.056	17780	12390	8.500	8.220	0.375	8.288	0.094	96450	90230
2.813	2.696	0.168	2.722	0.056	18190	12820	8.750	8.459	0.375	8.528	0.094	99290	97270
2.875	2.755	0.168	2.781	0.056	18590	13530	9.000	8.707	0.375	8.778	0.094	102130	100050
2.937	2.817	0.168	2.843	0.056	18990	13820	9.250	8.945	0.375	9.018	0.094	104960	107560
2.952	2.831	0.168	2.858	0.056	19090	13890	9.500	9.194	0.375	9.268	0.094	107800	110360
3.000	2.877	0.168	2.904	0.068	24150	14420	9.750	9.432	0.375	9.508	0.094	110640	118150
3.062	2.938	0.168	2.966	0.068	24640	14720	10.000	9.680	0.375	9.758	0.094	113470	121180
3.125	3.000	0.178	3.027	0.068	25150	15335	10.250	9.918	0.375	9.998	0.094	116310	129340
3.149	3.023	0.178	3.051	0.068	25340	15450	10.500	10.166	0.375	10.248	0.094	119150	132490
3.187	3.061	0.178	3.089	0.068	25650	15640	10.750	10.405	0.375	10.488	0.094	121980	141030
3.250	3.121	0.178	3.150	0.068	26160	16270	11.000	10.653	0.375	10.738	0.094	124820	144310
3.312	3.180	0.188	3.208	0.068	26660	17250							

Source: Spirolox Retaining Rings, RS Series. All dimensions are in inches.

Depth of groove $d = (A - C)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1070-1090).

Ring Thickness, F: For shaft sizes 0.500 through 0.718, 0.025; for sizes 0.750 through 0.937, 0.031; for sizes 0.968 through 1.156, 0.037; for sizes 1.188 through 1.500, 0.043; for sizes 1.562 through 2.952, 0.049; for sizes 3.000 through 4.500, 0.061; for sizes 4.562 through 6.000, 0.072; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, 0.086.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.500 through 1.031, +0.000, + 0.000, −0.013; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, +0.000, −0.015; for sizes 1.562 through 2.125, +0.000, −0.020; for sizes 2.156 through 2.688, +0.000, −0.025; for sizes 2.750 through 3.437, +0.000, −0.030; for sizes 3.500 through 5.125, +0.000, −0.040; for sizes 5.250 through 6.125, +0.000, −0.050; for sizes 6.250 through 7.375, +0.000, −0.060; for sizes 7.500 through 11.000, +0.000, −0.070.

Ring Thickness Tolerances: Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; add 0.002 to upper tolerance for plated rings. For shaft sizes 0.500 through 1.500, ± 0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 4.500, ± 0.003; for sizes 4.562 through 11.000, ± 0.004.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.500 through 0.562, ±0.002; for sizes 0.594 through 1.031, ± 0.003; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, ± 0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, ± 0.005; for sizes 2.062 through 5.125, ±0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ± 0.007; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, ± 0.008.

Groove Width Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.500 through 1.156, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.188 through 2.952, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 3.000 through 6.000, +0.005, −0.000; for sizes 6.125 through 11.000, +0.006, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

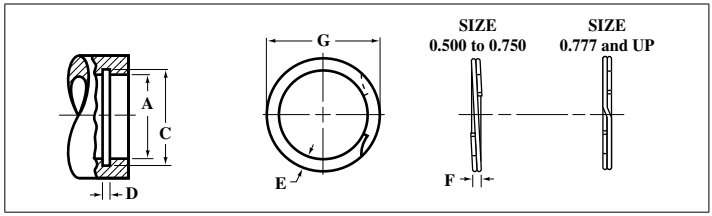


Table 9. Heavy Duty Internal Spiral Retaining Rings *MIL-R-27426*

Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
0.500	0.538	0.045	0.530	0.039	2530	310	3.543	3.781	0.281	3.755	0.120	49420	28250
0.512	0.550	0.045	0.542	0.039	2590	325	3.562	3.802	0.281	3.776	0.120	49680	28815
0.562	0.605	0.055	0.596	0.039	2840	455	3.625	3.868	0.281	3.841	0.120	50560	30160
0.625	0.675	0.055	0.655	0.039	3160	655	3.750	4.002	0.312	3.974	0.120	52310	33720
0.688	0.743	0.065	0.732	0.039	3480	965	3.875	4.136	0.312	4.107	0.120	54050	37250
0.750	0.807	0.065	0.796	0.039	3790	1065	3.938	4.203	0.312	4.174	0.120	54930	39045
0.777	0.836	0.075	0.825	0.046	4720	1026	4.000	4.270	0.312	4.240	0.120	55790	41025
0.812	0.873	0.075	0.862	0.046	4930	1150	4.125	4.369	0.312	4.339	0.120	57540	38495
0.866	0.931	0.075	0.920	0.046	5260	1395	4.250	4.501	0.312	4.470	0.120	59280	41955
0.875	0.943	0.085	0.931	0.046	5310	1520	4.330	4.588	0.312	4.556	0.120	60400	44815
0.901	0.972	0.085	0.959	0.046	5470	1675	4.500	4.768	0.312	4.735	0.120	62770	50290
0.938	1.013	0.085	1.000	0.046	5690	1925	4.625	4.899	0.312	4.865	0.120	64510	54155
1.000	1.080	0.085	1.066	0.046	6070	2310	4.750	5.030	0.312	4.995	0.120	66260	58270
1.023	1.105	0.085	1.091	0.046	6210	2480	5.000	5.297	0.312	5.260	0.120	69740	65095
1.062	1.138	0.103	1.130	0.056	7010	1940	5.250	5.559	0.350	5.520	0.139	83790	68315
1.125	1.205	0.103	1.197	0.056	7420	2280	5.375	5.690	0.350	5.650	0.139	85780	72840
1.188	1.271	0.103	1.262	0.056	7840	2615	5.500	5.810	0.350	5.770	0.139	87780	74355
1.250	1.339	0.103	1.330	0.056	8250	3110	5.750	6.062	0.350	6.020	0.139	91770	77735
1.312	1.406	0.118	1.396	0.056	8650	3650	6.000	6.314	0.350	6.270	0.139	95760	81120
1.375	1.471	0.118	1.461	0.056	9070	4075	6.250	6.576	0.380	6.530	0.174	122520	80655
1.439	1.539	0.118	1.528	0.056	9490	4670	6.500	6.838	0.380	6.790	0.174	127420	90295
1.456	1.559	0.118	1.548	0.056	9600	4890	6.625	6.974	0.380	6.925	0.174	129870	92060
1.500	1.605	0.118	1.594	0.056	9900	5275	6.750	7.105	0.380	7.055	0.174	132320	102475
1.562	1.675	0.128	1.658	0.068	12780	4840	7.000	7.366	0.380	7.315	0.174	137220	110410
1.625	1.742	0.128	1.725	0.068	13290	5415	7.250	7.628	0.418	7.575	0.209	170370	103440
1.653	1.772	0.128	1.755	0.068	13520	5695	7.500	7.895	0.418	7.840	0.209	176240	115780
1.688	1.810	0.128	1.792	0.068	13810	6070	7.750	8.157	0.418	8.100	0.209	182120	127270
1.750	1.876	0.128	1.858	0.068	14320	7635	8.000	8.419	0.418	8.360	0.209	187990	139370
1.812	1.940	0.128	1.922	0.068	14820	7305	8.250	8.680	0.437	8.620	0.209	193870	152695
1.850	1.981	0.158	1.962	0.068	15130	7960	8.500	8.942	0.437	8.880	0.209	199740	161735
1.875	2.008	0.158	1.989	0.068	15340	8305	8.750	9.209	0.437	9.145	0.209	205620	173065
1.938	2.075	0.158	2.056	0.068	15850	9125	9.000	9.471	0.437	9.405	0.209	211490	182515
2.000	2.142	0.158	2.122	0.068	16360	10040	9.250	9.737	0.437	9.669	0.209	217370	194070
2.062	2.201	0.168	2.186	0.086	21220	8280	9.500	10.000	0.500	9.930	0.209	223240	204550

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Heavy Duty Internal Spiral Retaining Rings** *MIL-R-27426*

Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Bore Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
2.125	2.267	0.168	2.251	0.086	21870	8935	9.750	10.260	0.500	10.189	0.209	229120	214325
2.188	2.334	0.168	2.318	0.086	22520	9745	10.000	10.523	0.500	10.450	0.209	234990	225330
2.250	2.399	0.168	2.382	0.086	23160	10455	10.250	10.786	0.500	10.711	0.209	240870	236605
2.312	2.467	0.200	2.450	0.086	23790	11700	10.500	11.047	0.500	10.970	0.209	246740	247110
2.357	2.535	0.200	2.517	0.086	24440	12715	10.750	11.313	0.500	11.234	0.209	252620	260530
2.440	2.602	0.200	2.584	0.086	25110	13550	11.000	11.575	0.500	11.495	0.209	258490	272645
2.500	2.667	0.200	2.648	0.086	25730	14640	11.250	11.838	0.500	11.756	0.209	264360	285040
2.531	2.700	0.200	2.681	0.086	26050	15185	11.500	12.102	0.562	12.018	0.209	270240	298285
2.562	2.733	0.225	2.714	0.103	29940	12775	11.750	12.365	0.562	12.279	0.209	276120	311240
2.625	2.801	0.225	2.781	0.103	30680	13780	12.000	12.628	0.562	12.540	0.209	281990	324475
2.688	2.868	0.225	2.848	0.103	31410	14775	12.250	12.891	0.562	12.801	0.209	287860	337980
2.750	2.934	0.225	2.914	0.103	32140	15790	12.500	13.154	0.562	13.063	0.209	293740	352390
2.813	3.001	0.225	2.980	0.103	32870	16845	12.750	13.417	0.562	13.324	0.209	299610	366460
2.834	3.027	0.225	3.006	0.103	33120	17595	13.000	13.680	0.662	13.585	0.209	305490	380805
2.875	3.072	0.225	3.051	0.103	33600	18505	13.250	13.943	0.662	13.846	0.209	311360	395430
3.000	3.204	0.225	3.182	0.103	35060	20795	13.500	14.207	0.662	14.108	0.209	317240	411000
3.062	3.271	0.281	3.248	0.120	42710	18735	13.750	14.470	0.662	14.369	0.209	323110	426185
3.125	3.338	0.281	3.315	0.120	43590	19865	14.000	14.732	0.662	14.630	0.209	328990	441645
3.157	3.371	0.281	3.348	0.120	44020	20345	14.250	14.995	0.662	14.891	0.209	334860	457380
3.250	3.470	0.281	3.446	0.120	45330	22120	14.500	15.259	0.750	15.153	0.209	340740	474120
3.346	3.571	0.281	3.546	0.120	46670	23905	14.750	15.522	0.750	15.414	0.209	346610	490415
3.469	3.701	0.281	3.675	0.120	48390	26405	15.000	15.785	0.750	15.675	0.209	352490	506990
3.500	3.736	0.281	3.710	0.120	48820	27370							

Source: Spirolox Retaining Rings, RRN Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (C - A)/2$. Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; add 0.002 to upper thickness tolerance for plated rings. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1070-1090).

Ring Thickness, F: For housing sizes 0.500 through 0.750, 0.035; for sizes 0.777 through 1.023, 0.042; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, 0.050; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, 0.062; for sizes 2.062 through 2.531, 0.078; for sizes 2.562 through 3.000, 0.093; for sizes 3.062 through 5.000, 0.111; for sizes 5.250 through 7.000, 0.156; for sizes 7.250 through 15.000, 0.187.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.500, +0.013, −0.000; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, +0.020, −0.000; for sizes 2.062 through 2.531, + 0.025, −0.000; for sizes 2.562 through 3.000, +0.030, −0.000; for sizes 3.062 through 5.000, +0.035, −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.050, −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 7.000, +0.055. −0.000; for sizes 7.250 through 10.500, +0.070, −0.000; for sizes 10.750 through 12.750, +0.120, −0.000; for sizes 13.000 through 15.000, +0.140, −0.000.

Ring Thickness Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.500, ± 0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 5.000, ± 0.003; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ± 0.004; for sizes 6.250 through 15.000, ± 0.005.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 0.750, ± 0.002; for sizes 0.777 through 1.023, ± 0.003; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, ± 0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, ± 0.005; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, ± 0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ± 0.007; for sizes 6.250 through 10.500, ± 0.008; for sizes 10.750 through 12.500, ± 0.010; for sizes 12.750 through 15.000, ± 0.012.

Groove Width Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.500 through 1.023, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.062 through 2.000, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, +0.005, −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.006, −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 7.000, +0.008, −0.000; for sizes 7.250 through 15.000, +0.008, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

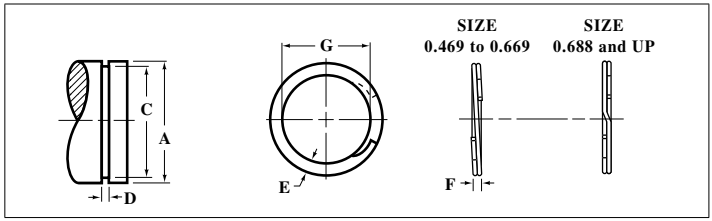


Table 10. Heavy Duty External Spiral Retaining Rings *MIL-R-27426*

Shaft Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Shaft Dia. A	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove		Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
0.469	0.439	0.045	0.443	0.029	1880	510	3.500	3.293	0.270	3.316	0.120	48820	32250
0.500	0.464	0.050	0.468	0.039	2530	440	3.543	3.333	0.270	3.357	0.120	49420	33000
0.551	0.514	0.050	0.519	0.039	2790	540	3.625	3.411	0.270	3.435	0.120	50560	34490
0.562	0.525	0.050	0.530	0.039	2840	560	3.687	3.469	0.270	3.493	0.120	51430	35820
0.594	0.554	0.050	0.559	0.039	3000	700	3.750	3.527	0.270	3.552	0.120	52310	37180
0.625	0.583	0.055	0.588	0.039	3160	820	3.875	3.647	0.270	3.673	0.120	54050	39190
0.669	0.623	0.055	0.629	0.039	3380	1070	3.938	3.708	0.270	3.734	0.120	54930	40230
0.688	0.641	0.065	0.646	0.046	4170	960	4.000	3.765	0.270	3.792	0.120	55790	41660
0.750	0.698	0.065	0.704	0.046	4550	1250	4.250	4.037	0.270	4.065	0.120	59280	39370
0.781	0.727	0.065	0.733	0.046	4740	1430	4.375	4.161	0.270	4.190	0.120	61020	40530
0.812	0.756	0.065	0.762	0.046	4930	1620	4.500	4.280	0.270	4.310	0.120	62770	42810
0.875	0.814	0.075	0.821	0.046	5310	2000	4.750	4.518	0.270	4.550	0.120	66260	47570
0.938	0.875	0.075	0.882	0.046	5690	2440	5.000	4.756	0.270	4.790	0.120	69740	52580
0.984	0.919	0.085	0.926	0.046	5970	2790	5.250	4.995	0.350	5.030	0.139	83790	57830
1.000	0.932	0.085	0.940	0.046	6070	2950	5.500	5.228	0.350	5.265	0.139	87780	64720
1.023	0.953	0.085	0.961	0.046	6210	3170	5.750	5.466	0.350	5.505	0.139	91770	70540
1.062	0.986	0.103	0.998	0.056	7010	2810	6.000	5.705	0.350	5.745	0.139	95760	76610
1.125	1.047	0.103	1.059	0.056	7420	2890	6.250	5.938	0.418	5.985	0.174	122520	82930
1.188	1.105	0.103	1.118	0.056	7840	3450	6.500	6.181	0.418	6.225	0.174	127420	89510
1.250	1.163	0.103	1.176	0.056	8250	4110	6.750	6.410	0.418	6.465	0.174	132320	96330
1.312	1.218	0.118	1.232	0.056	8650	4810	7.000	6.648	0.418	6.705	0.174	137220	103400
1.375	1.277	0.118	1.291	0.056	9070	5650	7.250	6.891	0.418	6.942	0.174	142130	111810
1.438	1.336	0.118	1.350	0.056	9490	6340	7.500	7.130	0.437	7.180	0.209	176240	120170
1.500	1.385	0.118	1.406	0.056	9900	7060	7.750	7.368	0.437	7.420	0.209	182120	128060
1.562	1.453	0.128	1.468	0.068	12780	6600	8.000	7.606	0.437	7.660	0.209	187990	136200
1.625	1.513	0.128	1.529	0.068	13290	7330	8.250	7.845	0.437	7.900	0.209	193870	144590
1.687	1.573	0.128	1.589	0.068	13800	8190	8.500	8.083	0.437	8.140	0.209	199740	153220
1.750	1.633	0.128	1.650	0.068	14320	8760	8.750	8.324	0.437	8.383	0.209	205620	160800
1.771	1.651	0.128	1.669	0.068	14490	9040	9.000	8.560	0.500	8.620	0.209	211490	171250
1.812	1.690	0.128	1.708	0.068	14820	9440	9.250	8.798	0.500	8.860	0.209	217370	180640
1.875	1.751	0.158	1.769	0.068	15340	9950	9.500	9.036	0.500	9.100	0.209	223240	190280
1.969	1.838	0.158	1.857	0.068	16110	11040	9.750	9.275	0.500	9.338	0.209	229120	201140
2.000	1.867	0.158	1.886	0.068	16360	11420	10.000	9.508	0.500	9.575	0.209	234990	212810
2.062	1.932	0.168	1.946	0.086	21220	11820	10.250	9.745	0.500	9.814	0.209	240870	223780
2.125	1.989	0.168	2.003	0.086	21870	12980	10.500	9.984	0.500	10.054	0.209	246740	234490
2.156	2.018	0.168	2.032	0.086	22190	13390	10.750	10.221	0.500	10.293	0.209	252620	246000
2.250	2.105	0.168	2.120	0.086	23160	14650	11.000	10.459	0.500	10.533	0.209	258490	257230
2.312	2.163	0.168	2.178	0.086	23790	15510	11.250	10.692	0.500	10.772	0.209	264360	269270
2.375	2.223	0.200	2.239	0.086	24440	16170	11.500	10.934	0.562	11.011	0.209	270240	281590
2.437	2.283	0.200	2.299	0.086	25080	16840	11.750	11.171	0.562	11.250	0.209	276120	294180
2.500	2.343	0.200	2.360	0.086	25730	17530	12.000	11.410	0.562	11.490	0.209	281990	306450
2.559	2.402	0.200	2.419	0.086	26340	17940	12.250	11.647	0.562	11.729	0.209	287860	319580
2.625	2.464	0.200	2.481	0.086	27020	18930	12.500	11.885	0.562	11.969	0.209	293740	332360
2.687	2.523	0.200	2.541	0.086	27650	19640	12.750	12.124	0.562	12.208	0.209	299610	346030

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **Heavy Duty External Spiral Retaining Rings** *MIL-R-27426*

Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)		Shaft Dia.	Ring		Groove		Static Thrust Load (lb)	
A	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove	A	Dia. G	Wall E	Dia. C	Width D	Ring	Groove
2.750	2.584	0.225	2.602	0.103	32140	20380	13.000	12.361	0.662	12.448	0.209	305490	359330
2.875	2.702	0.225	2.721	0.103	33600	22170	13.250	12.598	0.662	12.687	0.209	311360	373530
2.937	2.760	0.225	2.779	0.103	34320	23240	13.500	12.837	0.662	12.927	0.209	317240	387340
3.000	2.818	0.225	2.838	0.103	35060	24340	13.750	13.074	0.662	13.166	0.209	323110	402090
3.062	2.878	0.225	2.898	0.103	35780	25140	14.000	13.311	0.662	13.405	0.209	328990	417110
3.125	2.936	0.225	2.957	0.103	36520	26290	14.250	13.548	0.662	13.644	0.209	334860	432410
3.156	2.965	0.225	2.986	0.103	36880	26860	14.500	13.787	0.750	13.884	0.209	340740	447250
3.250	3.054	0.225	3.076	0.103	37980	28320	14.750	14.024	0.750	14.123	0.209	346610	463090
3.344	3.144	0.225	3.166	0.103	39080	29800	15.000	14.262	0.750	14.363	0.209	352490	478450
3.437	3.234	0.225	3.257	0.103	40170	30980							

Source: Spirolox Retaining Rings, RSN Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (A - C)/2$. Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; add 0.002 to upper tolerance for plated rings. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1070-1090).

Ring Thickness, F: For shaft size 0.469, 0.025; for sizes 0.500 through 0.669, 0.035; for sizes 0.688 through 1.023, 0.042; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, 0.050; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, 0.062; for sizes 2.062 through 2.687, 0.078; for sizes 2.750 through 3.437, 0.093; for sizes 3.500 through 5.000, 0.111; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, 0.127; for sizes 6.250 through 7.250, 0.156; for sizes 7.500 through 15.000, 0.187.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.469 through 1.500, +0.000, −0.013; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, +0.000, −0.020; for sizes 2.062 through 2.687, + 0.000, −0.025; for sizes 2.750 through 3.437, +0.000, −0.030; for sizes 3.500 through 5.000, +0.000, −0.035; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.000, −0.050; for sizes 6.250 through 7.000, +0.000, −0.060; for sizes 7.250 through 10.000, +0.000, −0.070; for sizes 10.250 through 12.500, +0.000, −0.090; for sizes 12.750 through 15.000, +0.000, −0.110.

Ring Thickness Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.469 through 1.500, ±0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 5.000, ±0.003; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.004; for sizes 6.250 through 15.000, ±0.005.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.469 through 0.562, ±0.002; for sizes 0.594 through 1.023, ±0.003; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, ±0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, ±0.005; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, ±0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.007; for sizes 6.250 through 10.000, ±0.008; for sizes 10.250 through 12.500, ±0.010; for sizes 12.750 through 15.000, ±0.012.

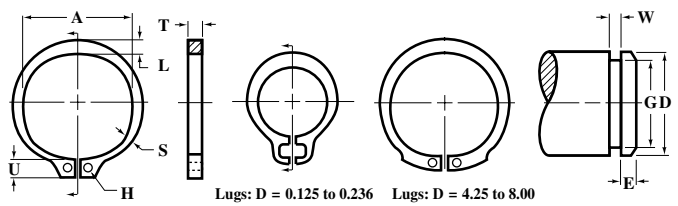
Groove Width Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.469 through 1.023, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.062 through 2.000, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, +0.005, −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.006; −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 7.250, + 0.008, −0.000; for sizes 7.500 through 15.000, +0.008, −0.000.

Thrust Load Capacity: The most important criterion in determining which ring is best suited for a specific application is thrust load capacity. The strength of the retaining ring and groove must both be considered when analyzing the thrust load capacity of an application to determine whether the groove or the retaining ring is likely to fail first. When a retaining ring application fails, the fault will usually be with the groove, unless the groove material is of very high strength.

Ring Material: The standard materials for spiral-wound retaining rings are SAE 1070 to 1090 carbon spring steels and 18-8 type 302 stainless steels. The 1070 to 1090 carbon spring steels provide high-strength retaining rings at low cost. Type 302 stainless steel withstands ordinary rusting. Other materials are used for specialized applications, such as the type 316 stainless frequently used in the food industry. For high-temperature use, superalloy A286 rings can be used at up to 900°F (482 °C) and Inconel X-750 at up to 1200°F (649 °C). Other materials, such as 316 stainless steel, 17-7PH and Inconel stainless steels are sometimes used for special-purpose and custom-made rings. Standard ring are typically supplied uncoated, however, special finishes such as cadmium, phosphate, zinc, or black oxide coatings for carbon spring steel rings and passivation of stainless steel rings are available.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Important Dimensions of Inch Series External Retaining Rings
MS 16624



Lugs: D = 0.125 to 0.236 **Lugs: D = 4.25 to 8.00**

Shaft Dia. D	Ring		Groove			Shaft Dia. D	Ring		Groove		
	Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E		Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E
0.125	0.112	0.010	0.117	0.012	0.012	1.812	1.675	0.062	1.708	0.068	0.156
0.156	0.142	0.010	0.146	0.012	0.015	1.875	1.735	0.062	1.769	0.068	0.159
0.188	0.168	0.015	0.175	0.018	0.018	1.969	1.819	0.062	1.857	0.068	0.168
0.197	0.179	0.015	0.185	0.018	0.018	2.000	1.850	0.062	1.886	0.068	0.171
0.219	0.196	0.015	0.205	0.018	0.021	2.062	1.906	0.078	1.946	0.086	0.174
0.236	0.215	0.015	0.222	0.018	0.021	2.125	1.964	0.078	2.003	0.086	0.183
0.250	0.225	0.025	0.230	0.029	0.030	2.156	1.993	0.078	2.032	0.086	0.186
0.276	0.250	0.025	0.255	0.029	0.030	2.250	2.081	0.078	2.120	0.086	0.195
0.281	0.256	0.025	0.261	0.029	0.030	2.312	2.139	0.078	2.178	0.086	0.201
0.312	0.281	0.025	0.290	0.029	0.033	2.375	2.197	0.078	2.239	0.086	0.204
0.344	0.309	0.025	0.321	0.029	0.033	2.438	2.255	0.078	2.299	0.086	0.207
0.354	0.320	0.025	0.330	0.029	0.036	2.500	2.313	0.078	2.360	0.086	0.210
0.375	0.338	0.025	0.352	0.029	0.036	2.559	2.377	0.078	2.419	0.086	0.210
0.394	0.354	0.025	0.369	0.029	0.036	2.625	2.428	0.078	2.481	0.086	0.216
0.406	0.366	0.025	0.382	0.029	0.036	2.688	2.485	0.078	2.541	0.086	0.219
0.438	0.395	0.025	0.412	0.029	0.039	2.750	2.543	0.093	2.602	0.103	0.222
0.469	0.428	0.025	0.443	0.029	0.039	2.875	2.659	0.093	2.721	0.103	0.231
0.500	0.461	0.035	0.468	0.039	0.048	2.938	2.717	0.093	2.779	0.103	0.237
0.551	0.509	0.035	0.519	0.039	0.048	3.000	2.775	0.093	2.838	0.103	0.243
0.562	0.521	0.035	0.530	0.039	0.048	3.062	2.832	0.093	2.898	0.103	0.246
0.594	0.550	0.035	0.559	0.039	0.051	3.125	2.892	0.093	2.957	0.103	0.252
0.625	0.579	0.035	0.588	0.039	0.054	3.156	2.920	0.093	2.986	0.103	0.255
0.669	0.621	0.035	0.629	0.039	0.060	3.250	3.006	0.093	3.076	0.103	0.261
0.672	0.621	0.035	0.631	0.039	0.060	3.346	3.092	0.093	3.166	0.103	0.270
0.688	0.635	0.042	0.646	0.046	0.063	3.438	3.179	0.093	3.257	0.103	0.270
0.750	0.693	0.042	0.704	0.046	0.069	3.500	3.237	0.109	3.316	0.120	0.276
0.781	0.722	0.042	0.733	0.046	0.072	3.543	3.277	0.109	3.357	0.120	0.279
0.812	0.751	0.042	0.762	0.046	0.075	3.625	3.352	0.109	3.435	0.120	0.285
0.844	0.780	0.042	0.791	0.046	0.080	3.688	3.410	0.109	3.493	0.120	0.291
0.875	0.810	0.042	0.821	0.046	0.081	3.750	3.468	0.109	3.552	0.120	0.297
0.938	0.867	0.042	0.882	0.046	0.084	3.875	3.584	0.109	3.673	0.120	0.303
0.984	0.910	0.042	0.926	0.046	0.087	3.938	3.642	0.109	3.734	0.120	0.306
1.000	0.925	0.042	0.940	0.046	0.090	4.000	3.700	0.109	3.792	0.120	0.312
1.023	0.946	0.042	0.961	0.046	0.093	4.250	3.989	0.109	4.065	0.120	0.276
1.062	0.982	0.050	0.998	0.056	0.096	4.375	4.106	0.109	4.190	0.120	0.276
1.125	1.041	0.050	1.059	0.056	0.099	4.500	4.223	0.109	4.310	0.120	0.285
1.188	1.098	0.050	1.118	0.056	0.105	4.750	4.458	0.109	4.550	0.120	0.300
1.250	1.156	0.050	1.176	0.056	0.111	5.000	4.692	0.109	4.790	0.120	0.315
1.312	1.214	0.050	1.232	0.056	0.120	5.250	4.927	0.125	5.030	0.139	0.330
1.375	1.272	0.050	1.291	0.056	0.126	5.500	5.162	0.125	5.265	0.139	0.351
1.438	1.333	0.050	1.350	0.056	0.132	5.750	5.396	0.125	5.505	0.139	0.366
1.500	1.387	0.050	1.406	0.056	0.141	6.000	5.631	0.125	5.745	0.139	0.381
1.562	1.446	0.062	1.468	0.068	0.141	6.250	5.866	0.156	5.985	0.174	0.396
1.625	1.503	0.062	1.529	0.068	0.144	6.500	6.100	0.156	6.225	0.174	0.411
1.687	1.560	0.062	1.589	0.068	0.147	6.750	6.335	0.156	6.465	0.174	0.426
1.750	1.618	0.062	1.650	0.068	0.150	7.000	6.570	0.156	6.705	0.174	0.441
1.772	1.637	0.062	1.669	0.068	0.153	7.500	7.009	0.187	7.180	0.209	0.480

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 3100 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (D - G)/2$. Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; for most plated rings, the maximum ring thickness will not exceed the minimum groove width (W) minus 0.0002 inch. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090).

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.250, +0.002, −0.004; for sizes 0.276 through 0.500, +0.002, −0.005; for sizes 0.551 through 1.023, +0.005, −0.010; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, +0.010, −0.015; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, +0.013, −0.020; for sizes 2.062 through 2.500, +0.015, −0.025; for sizes 2.559 through 5.000, +0.020, −0.030; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.020, −0.040; for sizes 6.250 through 6.750, +0.020, −0.050; for sizes 7.000 and 7.500, +0.050, −0.130.

Ring Thickness Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 and 0.156, ±0.001; for sizes 0.188 through 1.500, ±0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 5.000, ±0.003; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.004; for sizes 6.250 through 7.500, ±0.005.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.250, ±0.0015; for sizes 0.276 through 0.562, ±0.002; for sizes 0.594 through 1.023, ±0.003; for sizes 1.062 though 1.500, ±0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, ±0.005; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, ±0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.007; for sizes 6.250 through 7.500, ±0.008.

Groove Width Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.236, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.250 through 1.023, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.062 through 2.000, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 2.062 through 5.000, +0.005, −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.006, −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 7.500, +0.008, −0.000.

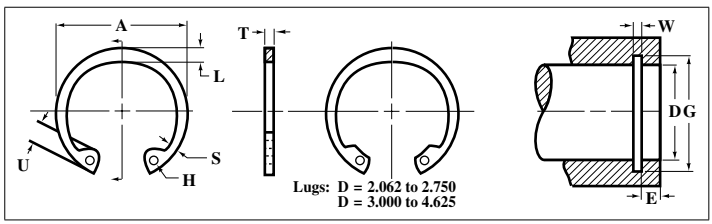


Table 12. Important Dimensions of Inch Series Internal Retaining Rings

Housing Dia. D	Ring		Groove			Housing Dia. D	Ring		Groove		
	Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E		Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E
0.250	0.280	0.015	0.268	0.018	0.027	2.500	2.775	0.078	2.648	0.086	0.222
0.312	0.346	0.015	0.330	0.018	0.027	2.531	2.775	0.078	2.681	0.086	0.225
0.375	0.415	0.025	0.397	0.029	0.033	2.562	2.844	0.093	2.714	0.103	0.228
0.438	0.482	0.025	0.461	0.029	0.036	2.625	2.910	0.093	2.781	0.103	0.234
0.453	0.498	0.025	0.477	0.029	0.036	2.677	2.980	0.093	2.837	0.103	0.240
0.500	0.548	0.035	0.530	0.039	0.045	2.688	2.980	0.093	2.848	0.103	0.240
0.512	0.560	0.035	0.542	0.039	0.045	2.750	3.050	0.093	2.914	0.103	0.246
0.562	0.620	0.035	0.596	0.039	0.051	2.812	3.121	0.093	2.980	0.103	0.252
0.625	0.694	0.035	0.665	0.039	0.060	2.835	3.121	0.093	3.006	0.103	0.255
0.688	0.763	0.035	0.732	0.039	0.066	2.875	3.191	0.093	3.051	0.103	0.264
0.750	0.831	0.035	0.796	0.039	0.069	2.953	3.325	0.093	3.135	0.103	0.273
0.777	0.859	0.042	0.825	0.046	0.072	3.000	3.325	0.093	3.182	0.103	0.273
0.812	0.901	0.042	0.862	0.046	0.075	3.062	3.418	0.109	3.248	0.120	0.279
0.866	0.961	0.042	0.920	0.046	0.081	3.125	3.488	0.109	3.315	0.120	0.285
0.875	0.971	0.042	0.931	0.046	0.084	3.149	3.523	0.109	3.341	0.120	0.288
0.901	1.000	0.042	0.959	0.046	0.087	3.156	3.523	0.109	3.348	0.120	0.288
0.938	1.041	0.042	1.000	0.046	0.093	3.250	3.623	0.109	3.446	0.120	0.294
1.000	1.111	0.042	1.066	0.046	0.099	3.346	3.734	0.109	3.546	0.120	0.300
1.023	1.136	0.042	1.091	0.046	0.102	3.469	3.857	0.109	3.675	0.120	0.309
1.062	1.180	0.050	1.130	0.056	0.102	3.500	3.890	0.109	3.710	0.120	0.315

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **Important Dimensions of Inch Series Internal Retaining Rings**

Housing Dia. D	Ring		Groove			Housing Dia. D	Ring		Groove		
	Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E		Dia. A	Thick. T	Dia. G	Width W	Margin E
1.125	1.249	0.050	1.197	0.056	0.108	3.543	3.936	0.109	3.755	0.120	0.318
1.181	1.319	0.050	1.255	0.056	0.111	3.562	3.936	0.109	3.776	0.120	0.321
1.188	1.319	0.050	1.262	0.056	0.111	3.625	4.024	0.109	3.841	0.120	0.324
1.250	1.388	0.050	1.330	0.056	0.120	3.740	4.157	0.109	3.964	0.120	0.336
1.259	1.388	0.050	1.339	0.056	0.120	3.750	4.157	0.109	3.974	0.120	0.336
1.312	1.456	0.050	1.396	0.056	0.126	3.875	4.291	0.109	4.107	0.120	0.348
1.375	1.526	0.050	1.461	0.056	0.129	3.938	4.358	0.109	4.174	0.120	0.354
1.378	1.526	0.050	1.464	0.056	0.129	4.000	4.424	0.109	4.240	0.120	0.360
1.438	1.596	0.050	1.528	0.056	0.135	4.125	4.558	0.109	4.365	0.120	0.360
1.456	1.616	0.050	1.548	0.056	0.138	4.250	4.691	0.109	4.490	0.120	0.360
1.500	1.660	0.050	1.594	0.056	0.141	4.331	4.756	0.109	4.571	0.120	0.360
1.562	1.734	0.062	1.658	0.068	0.144	4.500	4.940	0.109	4.740	0.120	0.360
1.575	1.734	0.062	1.671	0.068	0.144	4.625	5.076	0.109	4.865	0.120	0.360
1.625	1.804	0.062	1.725	0.068	0.150	4.724	5.213	0.109	4.969	0.120	0.366
1.653	1.835	0.062	1.755	0.068	0.153	4.750	5.213	0.109	4.995	0.120	0.366
1.688	1.874	0.062	1.792	0.068	0.156	5.000	5.485	0.109	5.260	0.120	0.390
1.750	1.942	0.062	1.858	0.068	0.162	5.250	5.770	0.125	5.520	0.139	0.405
1.812	2.012	0.062	1.922	0.068	0.165	5.375	5.910	0.125	5.650	0.139	0.405
1.850	2.054	0.062	1.962	0.068	0.168	5.500	6.066	0.125	5.770	0.139	0.405
1.875	2.054	0.062	1.989	0.068	0.171	5.750	6.336	0.125	6.020	0.139	0.405
1.938	2.141	0.062	2.056	0.068	0.177	6.000	6.620	0.125	6.270	0.139	0.405
2.000	2.210	0.062	2.122	0.068	0.183	6.250	6.895	0.156	6.530	0.174	0.420
2.047	2.280	0.078	2.171	0.086	0.186	6.500	7.170	0.156	6.790	0.174	0.435
2.062	2.280	0.078	2.186	0.086	0.186	6.625	7.308	0.156	6.925	0.174	0.450
2.125	2.350	0.078	2.251	0.086	0.189	6.750	7.445	0.156	7.055	0.174	0.456
2.165	2.415	0.078	2.295	0.086	0.195	7.000	7.720	0.156	7.315	0.174	0.471
2.188	2.415	0.078	2.318	0.086	0.195	7.250	7.995	0.187	7.575	0.209	0.486
2.250	2.490	0.078	2.382	0.086	0.198	7.500	8.270	0.187	7.840	0.209	0.510
2.312	2.560	0.078	2.450	0.086	0.207	7.750	8.545	0.187	8.100	0.209	0.525
2.375	2.630	0.078	2.517	0.086	0.213	8.000	8.820	0.187	8.360	0.209	0.540
2.440	2.702	0.078	2.584	0.086	0.216	8.250	9.095	0.187	8.620	0.209	0.555

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 3000 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (G - D)/2$. Thickness indicated is for unplated rings. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090).

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.250 through 0.777, +0.010, −0.005; for sizes 0.812 through 1.023, +0.015, − 0.010; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, + 0.025, − 0.020; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, +0.035, −0.025; for sizes 2.047 through 3.000, +0.040, −0.030; for sizes 3.062 through 3.625, ±0.055; for sizes 3.740 through 6.000, ±0.065; for sizes 6.250 through 7.000, ±0.080; for sizes 7.250 through 8.250, ±0.090.

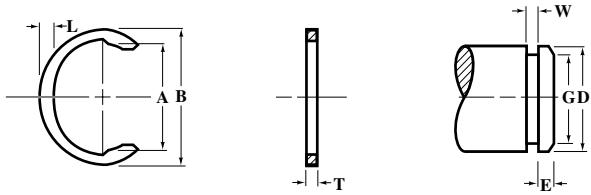
Ring Thickness Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.250 through 1.500, ±0.002; for sizes 1.562 through 5.000, ±0.003; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.004; for sizes 6.250 through 8.250, ±0.005.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.250 and 0.312, ±0.001; for sizes 0.375 through 0.750, ±0.002; for sizes 0.777 through 1.023, ±0.003; for sizes 1.062 through 1.500, ±0.004; for sizes 1.562 through 2.000, ±0.005; for sizes 2.047 through 5.000, ±0.006; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, ±0.007; for sizes 6.250 through 8.250, ±0.008.

Groove Width Tolerances: For housing sizes 0.250 and 0.312, +0.002, − 0.000; for sizes 0.375 through 1.023, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.062 through 2.000, +0.004, −0.000; for sizes 2.047 through 5.000, +0.005; −0.000; for sizes 5.250 through 6.000, +0.006, −0.000; for sizes 6.250 through 8.250, +0.008, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Important Dimensions of Inch Series External Retaining Rings *MS16632*



Shaft Diameter D	Ring			Groove			[a]Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Free Dia. A	Thickness T	Diameter B	Diameter G	Width W	Margin E	Ring	Groove
0.125	0.102	0.015	0.164	0.106	0.018	0.020	85	40
0.156	0.131	0.015	0.205	0.135	0.018	0.020	110	55
0.188	0.161	0.015	0.245	0.165	0.018	0.022	130	70
0.219	0.187	0.025	0.275	0.193	0.029	0.026	260	100
0.236	0.203	0.025	0.295	0.208	0.029	0.028	280	115
0.250	0.211	0.025	0.311	0.220	0.029	0.030	295	130
0.281	0.242	0.025	0.344	0.247	0.029	0.034	330	170
0.312	0.270	0.025	0.376	0.276	0.029	0.036	370	200
0.375	0.328	0.025	0.448	0.335	0.029	0.040	440	265
0.406	0.359	0.025	0.485	0.364	0.029	0.042	480	300
0.437	0.386	0.025	0.516	0.393	0.029	0.044	515	340
0.500	0.441	0.035	0.581	0.450	0.039	0.050	825	440
0.562	0.497	0.035	0.653	0.507	0.039	0.056	930	550
0.625	0.553	0.035	0.715	0.563	0.039	0.062	1030	690
0.687	0.608	0.042	0.780	0.619	0.046	0.068	1700	820
0.750	0.665	0.042	0.845	0.676	0.046	0.074	1850	985
0.812	0.721	0.042	0.915	0.732	0.046	0.080	2010	1150
0.875	0.777	0.042	0.987	0.789	0.046	0.086	2165	1320
0.937	0.830	0.042	1.054	0.843	0.046	0.094	2320	1550
1.000	0.887	0.042	1.127	0.900	0.046	0.100	2480	1770
1.125	0.997	0.050	1.267	1.013	0.056	0.112	3300	2200
1.188	1.031	0.050	1.321	1.047	0.056	0.140	3500	2900
1.250	1.110	0.050	1.410	1.126	0.056	0.124	3600	2700
1.375	1.220	0.050	1.550	1.237	0.056	0.138	4000	3300
1.500	1.331	0.050	1.691	1.350	0.056	0.150	4400	4000
1.750	1.555	0.062	1.975	1.576	0.068	0.174	6400	5300
2.000	1.777	0.062	2.257	1.800	0.068	0.200	7300	7000

[a] *Thrust Load Safety Factors:* Ring, 4; groove, 2. Groove wall thrust loads are for grooves machined in cold-rolled steel with a tensile yield strength of 45,000 psi; for other shaft materials, the thrust load varies proportionally with the yield strength.

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 2000 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (D - G)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090). Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; for most plated rings with shaft sizes less than 1.000 inch, the maximum thickness will not exceed the minimum groove width (W) minus 0.0002 inch; for larger rings, the ring thickness may increase by 0.002 inch.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii: For shaft diameters less than 0.500 inch, 0.005 inch; for shaft sizes 0.500 through 1.000 inch, 0.010 inch; all larger sizes, 0.015 inch.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.188, +0.002, −0.004; for sizes 0.219 through 0.437, +0.003, −0.005; for sizes 0.500 through 0.625, ±0.006; for sizes 0.687 through 1.000, ±0.007; for sizes 1.125 through 1.500, ±0.008; for sizes 1.750 and 2.000, ±0.010.

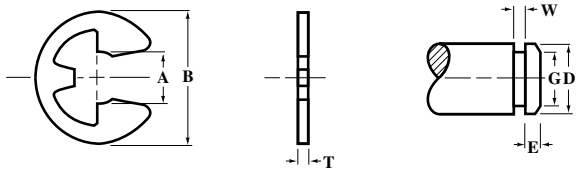
Ring Thickness Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 1.500, ±0.002; for sizes 1.750 and 2.000, ±0.003.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.188, ±0.0015; for sizes 0.219 through 0.437, ±0.002; for sizes 0.500 through 1.000, ±0.003; for sizes 1.125 through 1.500, ±0.004; for sizes 1.750 and 2.000, ±0.005.

Groove Width Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.125 through 0.188, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.219 through 1.000, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.125 through 2.000, +0.004, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Important Dimensions of Inch Series External Retaining Rings *MS16633*



Shaft Diameter D	Ring			Groove			[a]Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Free Dia. A	Thickness T	Diameter B	Diameter G	Width W	Margin E	Ring	Groove
0.040	0.025	0.010	0.079	0.026	0.012	0.014	13	7
0.062	0.051	0.010	0.140	0.052	0.012	0.010	20	7
0.062[a]	0.051	0.010	0.156	0.052	0.012	0.010	20	7
0.062[b]	0.051	0.020	0.187	0.052	0.023	0.010	40	7
0.094	0.073	0.015	0.187	0.074	0.018	0.020	45	20
0.094	0.069	0.015	0.230	0.074	0.018	0.020	45	20
0.110	0.076	0.015	0.375	0.079	0.018	0.030	55	40
0.125	0.094	0.015	0.230	0.095	0.018	0.030	65	45
0.140	0.100	0.015	0.203	0.102	0.018	0.038	70	60
0.140[c]	0.108	0.015	0.250	0.110	0.018	0.030	70	45
0.140[d]	0.102	0.025	0.270	0.105	0.029	0.034	150	55
0.156	0.114	0.025	0.282	0.116	0.029	0.040	165	70
0.172	0.125	0.025	0.312	0.127	0.029	0.044	180	90
0.188	0.145	0.025	0.335	0.147	0.029	0.040	195	90
0.188	0.122	0.025	0.375	0.125	0.029	0.062	195	135
0.218	0.185	0.025	0.437	0.188	0.029	0.030	225	75
0.250	0.207	0.025	0.527	0.210	0.029	0.040	260	115
0.312	0.243	0.025	0.500	0.250	0.029	0.062	325	225
0.375	0.300	0.035	0.660	0.303	0.039	0.072	685	315
0.437	0.337	0.035	0.687	0.343	0.039	0.094	800	485
0.437	0.375	0.035	0.600	0.380	0.039	0.058	800	290
0.500	0.392	0.042	0.800	0.396	0.046	0.104	1100	600
0.625	0.480	0.042	0.940	0.485	0.046	0.140	1370	1040
0.744	0.616	0.050	1.000	0.625	0.056	0.118	1940	1050
0.750	0.616	0.050	1.000	0.625	0.056	0.124	1960	1100
0.750	0.574	0.050	1.120	0.580	0.056	0.170	1960	1500
0.875	0.668	0.050	1.300	0.675	0.056	0.200	2200	2050
0.985	0.822	0.050	1.500	0.835	0.056	0.148	2570	1710
1.000	0.822	0.050	1.500	0.835	0.056	0.164	2620	1900
1.188	1.066	0.062	1.626	1.079	0.068	0.108	3400	1500
1.375	1.213	0.062	1.875	1.230	0.068	0.144	4100	2300

[a] *Thrust Load Safety Factors:* Ring 3; groove, 2.

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 1000 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (D - G)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060 -1090). Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; for most plated rings with shaft sizes less than 0.625, the maximum ring thickness will not exceed the minimum groove width (W) minus 0.0002 inch; for larger rings, the thickness may increase by 0.002 inch.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii: For shaft sizes 0.040 and 0.062, 0.003 inch; for sizes 0.094 through 0.250, 0.005 inch; for sizes 0.312 through 0.437, 0.010 inch; for sizes 0.500 through 1.375, 0.015 inch.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.040 through 0.250, +0.001, −0.003; for sizes 0.312 through 0.500, +0.002, −0.004; for sizes 0.625 through 1.000, +0.003, −0.005; for sizes 1.188 and 1.375, +0.006, −0.010.

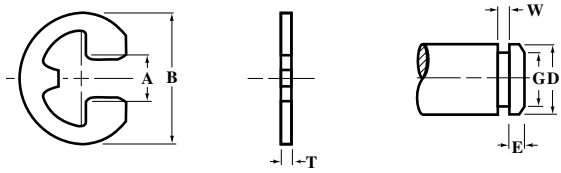
Ring Thickness Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.040 and 0.062, ±0.001; for sizes 0.062 through 1.000, ±0.002; for sizes 1.188 and 1.375, ±0.003.

Groove Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.040 through 0.218, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.250 through 1.000, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.188 and 1.375, +0.005, −0.000.

Grove Width Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.040 through 0.140, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.140 through 1.000, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 1.188 and 1.375, +0.004, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Dimensions of Inch Series External Retaining Rings *MS3215*



Shaft Diameter D	Ring			Groove			[a]Static Thrust Load (lb)	
	Free Dia. A	Thickness T	Diameter B	Diameter G	Width W	Margin E	Ring	Groove
0.094	0.072	0.015	0.206	0.074	0.018	0.020	55	13
0.125	0.093	0.015	0.270	0.095	0.018	0.030	75	25
0.156	0.113	0.025	0.335	0.116	0.029	0.040	150	40
0.188	0.143	0.025	0.375	0.147	0.029	0.040	180	50
0.219	0.182	0.025	0.446	0.188	0.029	0.031	215	50
0.250	0.204	0.025	0.516	0.210	0.029	0.040	250	75
0.312	0.242	0.025	0.588	0.250	0.029	0.062	300	135
0.312	0.242	0.035	0.588	0.250	0.039	0.062	420	135
0.375	0.292	0.035	0.660	0.303	0.039	0.072	520	190
0.438	0.332	0.035	0.746	0.343	0.039	0.096	600	285
0.500	0.385	0.042	0.810	0.396	0.046	0.104	820	360
0.562	0.430	0.042	0.870	0.437	0.046	0.124	930	480

[a] *Thrust Load Safety Factors:* Ring, 3; groove, 2.

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 1200 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (D - G)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090). Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; for most plated rings the maximum thickness will not exceed the minimum groove width (W) minus 0.0002 inch.

Groove Maximum Bottom Radii: For shaft sizes 0.250 and smaller, 0.005 inch; for sizes 0.312 through 0.438, 0.010 inch; for sizes 0.500 and 0.562, 0.015 inch. *Ring Free Diameter Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.094 through 0.156, +0.001, −0.003; for sizes 0.188 through 0.312, ±0.003; for sizes 0.375 through 0.562, ±0.004. *Ring Thickness Tolerances:* For all shaft sizes, ±0.002. *Groove Diameter Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.094 through 0.188, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.219 and 0.250, ±0.002; for sizes 0.312 through 0.562, ±0.003. *Groove Width Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.094 and 0.125, +0.002, −0.000; for sizes 0.156 through 0.562, +0.003, −0.000.

Thrust Load Capacity: The thrust load capacities shown in the tables of this section include safety factors. Usually, a safety factor of 2 is used for groove thrust load calculations when the load is applied through a retained part and groove with both having sharp corners and where the minimum side clearance exists between the retained part and the shaft or bore. Groove thrust load values in the tables of this section are based on these conditions. A safety factor of 3 is usual for calculations of thrust load capacity based on ring shear.

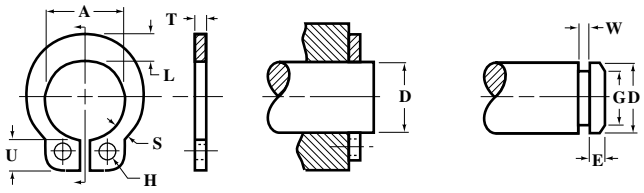
Ideally, the corner of a retained part in contact with a retaining ring should have square corners and contact the ring as closely as possible to the shaft or housing. The tabulated thrust capacities assume that minimum clearances exist between the retained part and shaft or housing, that the groove and retained part have square corners, and that contact between the retained part and the ring occurs close to the shaft or housing. If these conditions apply, the tabulated thrust loads apply. If the application does not meet the previous conditions but the side clearances, radii, and chamfers are less than the maximum total radius or chamfer of Fig. 1, then the thrust load capacity must be reduced by dividing the tabulated value by 2. The maximum total radius is given by $0.5(b - d)$ and the maximum total chamfer by $0.375(b - d)$, where b is the radial wall thickness, and d is the groove depth. The recommended maximum total radius or chamfer specifications are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

intended to be used as guidelines by the designer, and to ensure the ring application will withstand published and calculated values of static thrust loads.

In analyzing the retaining ring loading conditions, a static, uniformly applied load is usually assumed. Dynamic and eccentric loads, however, are frequently encountered. Eccentric loading occurs when the load is concentrated on a small portion of the ring, such as may be caused by incorrectly machined surfaces, cocking of the retained part, and axial misalignment of parts. Conditions leading to eccentric loading on the ring should be avoided. In addition to the factors that affect the static thrust capacity, applications in which shock or impact loading occurs must be evaluated very carefully and tested in service to assess the effect of the mass and velocity of the retained part striking the ring. Vibration caused by impact loading can also cause the ring to fail if the resonant frequency of the system (retaining ring application) coincides with the resonant frequency of the retaining ring.

Table 16. Dimensions of Inch Series Self-Locking External Retaining Rings



Shaft Diameter		Ring		Optical Groove			[a]Static Thrust Load (lb)	
Min. D	Max. D	Free Dia. A	Thickness T	Diameter G	Width W	Margin E	Ring	Groove
0.078	0.080	0.074	0.025	The use of grooves with these shaft sizes is not suggested.			10	0
0.092	0.096	0.089	0.025				10	0
0.123	0.127	0.120	0.025				20	0
0.134	0.138	0.130	0.025				20	0
0.154	0.158	0.150	0.025				22	0
0.185	0.189	0.181	0.035				25	0
0.248	0.252	0.238	0.035	0.240	0.041	0.030	35	90
0.310	0.316	0.298	0.042	0.303	0.048	0.030	50	110
0.373	0.379	0.354	0.042	0.361	0.048	0.030	55	185
0.434	0.440	0.412	0.050	0.419	0.056	0.030	60	280
0.497	0.503	0.470	0.050	0.478	0.056	0.040	65	390
0.622	0.628	0.593	0.062	0.599	0.069	0.045	85	570
0.745	0.755	0.706	0.062	0.718	0.069	0.050	90	845

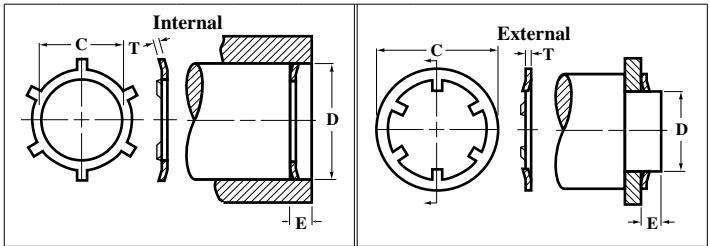
[a] *Thrust Load Safety Factors:* Ring, 1; groove, 2.

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 7100 Series. All dimensions are in inches. Depth of groove $d = (D - G)/2$. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090). Thickness indicated is for unplated rings; for plated, phosphate coated, and stainless steel rings, the maximum ring thickness may be exceeded by 0.002 inch.

Ring Free Diameter Tolerances: For shaft sizes 0.078 through 0.138, +0.002, −0.003; for sizes 0.154 through 0.252, +0.002, −0.004; for sizes 0.310 through 0.440, +0.003, −0.005; for sizes 0.497 through 0.755, +0.004, −0.006. *Ring Thickness Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.078 through 0.158, ±0.002; for sizes 0.185 through 0.503, ±0.003; for sizes 0.622 through 0.755, ±0.004. *Groove Diameter Tolerances:* For shaft sizes less than 0.248, grooves are not recommended; for other sizes, grooves are optional. For shaft sizes 0.248 through 0.316, +0.005, −0.0015; for sizes 0.373 through 0.628, +0.001, −0.002; for sizes 0.745 and 0.755, +0.002, −0.003. *Groove Width Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.248 through 0.379, +0.003, −0.000; for sizes 0.434 through 0.755, +0.004, −0.000.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Inch Series Internal and External Self-Locking Retaining Rings



Housing		Ring Dimensions			Static Thrust Load	Shaft		Ring Dimensions			Static Thrust Load
Min. D	Max. D	Thick. T	Dia. D	Margin E		Min. D	Max. D	Thick. T	Dia. D	Margin E	
0.311	0.313	0.010	0.136	0.040	80	0.093	0.095	0.010	0.250	0.040	15
0.374	0.376	0.010	0.175	0.040	75	0.124	0.126	0.010	0.325	0.040	20
0.437	0.439	0.010	0.237	0.040	70	0.155	0.157	0.010	0.356	0.040	25
0.498	0.502	0.010	0.258	0.040	60	0.187	0.189	0.010	0.387	0.040	35
0.560	0.564	0.010	0.312	0.040	50	0.218	0.220	0.010	0.418	0.040	35
0.623	0.627	0.010	0.390	0.040	45	0.239	0.241	0.015	0.460	0.060	35
0.748	0.752	0.015	0.500	0.060	75	0.249	0.251	0.010	0.450	0.040	40
0.873	0.877	0.015	0.625	0.060	70	0.311	0.313	0.010	0.512	0.040	40
0.936	0.940	0.015	0.687	0.060	70	0.374	0.376	0.010	0.575	0.040	40
0.998	1.002	0.015	0.750	0.060	70	0.437	0.440	0.015	0.638	0.060	50
1.248	1.252	0.015	0.938	0.060	60	0.498	0.502	0.015	0.750	0.060	50
1.436	1.440	0.015	1.117	0.060	60	0.560	0.564	0.015	0.812	0.060	50
1.498	1.502	0.015	1.188	0.060	60	0.623	0.627	0.015	0.875	0.060	50
						0.748	0.752	0.015	1.000	0.060	50
						0.873	0.877	0.015	1.125	0.060	55
						0.998	1.002	0.015	1.250	0.060	60

Source: Industrial Retaining Rings, 6000 Series (internal) and 6100 Series (external). All dimensions are in inches, thrust loads are in pounds. Thickness indicated is for unplated rings. Standard material: carbon spring steel (SAE 1060-1090).

Internal Rings: Thrust loads are for rings made of standard material inserted into cold-rolled, low-carbon housing. *Ring Thickness Tolerances:* For housing sizes 0.311 through 0.627, ±0.001; for sizes 0.748 through 1.502, ±0.002. *Ring Diameter Tolerances:* For housing sizes 0.311 through 0.439, ±0.005; for sizes 0.498 through 1.502, ±0.010.

External Rings: Thrust loads are for rings made of standard material installed onto cold-rolled, low-carbon shafts. *Ring Thickness Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.093 through 0.220, ±0.001; for size 0.239, ±0.002; for sizes 0.249 through 0.376, ±0.001; for sizes 0.437 through 1.002, ±0.002. *Ring Diameter Tolerances:* For shaft sizes 0.093 through 0.502, ±0.005; for sizes 0.560 through 1.002, ±0.010.

Centrifugal Capacity: Proper functioning of a retaining ring depends on the ring remaining seated on the groove bottom. External rings "cling" to the groove bottom because the ring ID is slightly smaller than the diameter at the bottom of the groove. Ring speed should be kept below the allowable steady-state speed of the ring, or self-locking rings specially designed for high-speed applications should be used, otherwise an external ring can lose its grip on the groove. Applications of large retaining rings that tend to spin in their grooves when subjected to sudden acceleration or deceleration of the retained part can benefit from a ring with more "cling" (i.e., a smaller interior diameter) as long as the stress of installation is within permissible limits. Special rings are also available that lock into a hole in the bottom of the groove, thereby preventing rotation. The following equation can be used to determine the allowable steady-state speed N of an external spiral retaining ring:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$N = \sqrt{\frac{0.466 C_1 E^3 \times 10^{12}}{R_n^3 \ (1 + C_1)(R_o^3 - R_i^3)}} \quad (1)$$

where the speed N is in revolutions per minute, C_1 is the minimum ring cling to groove bottom, E is the ring radial wall, R_n is the free neutral ring radius, R_o is the free outside ring radius, and R_i is the free inside ring radius, all in inches. For external spiral rings, the minimum ring cling is given by: $C_1 = (C - G)/G$, where C is the mean groove diameter in inches, and G is the maximum ring free ID in inches.

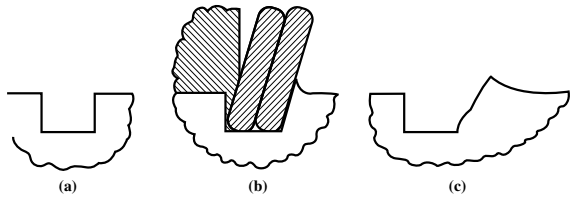


Fig. 2. Localized Groove Yielding under Load. (a) Groove Profile before Loading; (b) Localized Yielding of Retained Part and Groove under Load; (c) Groove Profile after Loading beyond Thrust Capacity (*Courtesy Spirolox Retaining Rings*)

Rotation between Parts: The use of spiral-wound rings to retain a rotating part should be limited to applications with rotation in only one direction. The ring should be matched so that the rotation tends to wind the spring into the groove. External rings should be wound in the direction of rotation of the retained part but internal rings should be wound against the direction of rotation of the rotating part. Failure to observe these precautions will cause the ring to wind out of the groove. Spiral-wound rings can be obtained with either right-hand (normal rotation) or left-hand (reverse rotation) wound configurations. Stamped retaining rings do not have these limitations, and may be used for applications that require rotation of the retained part, regardless of the direction of rotation.

Retaining Ring Failure.—Failure of a retaining ring application can result from failure of the ring itself, failure of the groove, or both. If a ring fails, the cause is likely to be from shearing of the ring. Shear failure occurs when a ring is installed in a groove and loaded by a retained part with both the groove and the retained part having a compressive yield strength greater than 45,000 psi (310 MPa); or when the load is applied through a retained part and groove, both having sharp corners and line-to-line contact; or when the ring is too thin in section compared with its diameter. To examine the possibility of ring shear, the allowable thrust P_s, based on the shear strength of the ring material, is given by

$$P_s = \frac{\pi D t S_s}{K} \quad (2)$$

where P_s is in lb_f (N), D is the shaft or housing diameter in inches (mm), t is the ring thickness in inches (mm), S_s is the shear strength of the ring material in lb/in^2 (N/mm^2), and K is the factor of safety.

Groove Failure: The most common type of groove failure is yielding of the groove material that occurs when the thrust load, applied through the retaining ring against the corner of the groove, exceeds the compressive yield strength of the groove. This yielding of the groove results from a low compressive yield strength of the groove material, and allows the ring to tilt and come out of the groove, as illustrated in Fig. 2(b).

When dishing of a ring occurs as a result of yielding in the groove material, a bending moment across the cross section of the ring generates a tensile stress that is highest at the interior diameter of the ring. If the maximum stress is greater than the yield strength of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the ring material, the ring ID will grow and the ring will become permanently dished in shape. To determine the thrust load capacity of a ring based on groove deformation, the allowable angle of ring deflection must be calculated, then the thrust load based on groove yield can be determined. However, for spiral-wound rings, the thrust load P_G that initiates the onset of groove deformation can be estimated from the following:

$$P_G = \frac{\pi D d S_y}{K} \tag{3}$$

where P_G is given in lb_f (N), D is the shaft or housing diameter in inches (mm), d is the groove depth in inches (mm), S_y is the yield strength of the groove material in lb/in^2 (N/mm^2), and K is the safety factor. For stamped rings, estimate P_G by multiplying Equation (3) by the fraction of the groove circumference that contacts the ring.

The thrust load capacity of a particular retaining ring application can be increased by changing the workpiece material that houses the groove. Increasing the yield strength of the groove material increases the thrust load capacity of the retaining ring application. However, increasing the strength of the groove material may cause the failure mechanism to shift from groove deformation to ring shear. Therefore, use the lower of the values obtained from Equations (2) and (3) for the allowable thrust load.

Groove Design and Machining: In most applications, grooves are located near the end of a shaft or housing bore to facilitate installation and removal of the rings. The groove is normally located a distance at least two to three times the groove depth from the end of the shaft or bore. If the groove is too close to the end of the shaft or bore, the groove may shear or yield. The following equation can be used to determine the minimum safe distance Y of a groove from the end of a shaft or housing:

$$Y = \frac{K P_t}{\pi D S_c} \tag{4}$$

where K is the factor of safety, P_t is the thrust load on the groove in pounds (N), S_c is the shear strength of the groove material in lb/in^2 (N/mm^2), and D is the shaft or housing diameter in inches (mm).

A properly designed and machined groove is just as important in a retaining ring application as the ring itself. The walls of grooves should be perpendicular to the shaft or bore diameter; the grooves should have square corners on the top edges, and radii at the bottom, within the tolerances specified by the manufacturers, as shown in Fig. 1 (page 1897). Test data indicate that the ultimate thrust capacity for both static and dynamic loading conditions is greatly affected if these groove requirements are not met. For spiral-wound rings, the maximum bottom groove radius is 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) for rings up to 1.000 inch (25.4 mm) free diameter, and 0.010 inch (0.254 mm) for larger rings, internal or external. For stamped rings, the maximum bottom groove radius varies with ring size and style.

Table 18. Retaining Ring Standards

Military	
MIL-R-21248B	MS-16633 Open-type external uniform cross-section
	MS-16634 Open-type external uniform cross-section cylindrically
	MS-3215 Open-type external tapered cross-section
	MS-16632 Crescent-type external
	MS-16625 Internal
	MS-16629 Internal cylindrically bowed
	MS-16624 Closed-type external tapered cross-section

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. *(Continued)* **Retaining Ring Standards**

Military	
MIL-R-21248B	MS-16628 Closed-type external tapered cross-section cylindrically bowed
	MS-16627 Internal inverted
	MS-16626 Closed-type external tapered cross-section
	MS-90707 Self-locking external tapered cross-section
	MS-3217 External heavy-duty tapered cross-section
MIL-R-27426	Uniform cross-section spiral retaining rings, Type 1-External, Type 2-Internal
Aerospace Standard	
AS 3215	Ring, Retaining—Spiral, Internal, Heavy Duty, Stainless Steel
AS 3216	Ring, Retaining—Spiral, External, Heavy Duty, Stainless Steel
AS 3217	Ring, Retaining—Spiral, Internal, Light Duty, Stainless Steel
AS 3218	Ring, Retaining—Spiral, External, Light Duty, Stainless Steel
AS 3219	Ring, Wound, Dimensional and Acceptance Standard for Spiral Wound Retaining Rings
ASME	
B27.6-1972 (R2017)	General Purpose Uniform Cross-Section Spiral Retaining Rings
B27.7-1977 (R2017)	General Purpose Tapered and Reduced Cross-Section Retaining Rings (Metric)
B27.8M-1977 (Withdrawn)	General Purpose Metric Tapered and Reduced Cross-Section Retaining Rings
	Type 3DM1—Heavy Duty External Rings
	Type 3EM1—Reinforced "E" Rings
	Type 3FM1—"C" Type Rings
ANSI/SAE	
MA4016	Ring, Retaining—External Spiral Wound, Heavy and Medium Duty, Crescent, Metric
MA4017	Ring, Retaining—External Spiral Wound, Heavy and Medium Duty, Crescent, Metric
MA4020	Ring, Retaining—External Tapered, Type 1, Class 2, AMS 5520, Metric
MA4021	Ring, Retaining—Internal Tapered, Type 1, Class 1, AMS 5520, Metric
MA4029	Ring, Retaining—Internal, Beveled, Tapered, Type 2, Class 1, AMS 5520, Metric
MA4030	Ring, Retaining—External, Reinforced E-Ring, Type 1, Class 3, AMS 5520, Metric
MA4035	Rings, Retaining—Spiral Wound, Uniform Section, Corrosion Resistant, Procurement Specification for, Metric
MA4036	Ring, Retaining—Tapered Width, Uniform Thickness, Corrosion Resistant, Procurement Specification for, Metric
DIN	
DIN 471, 472, 6799, 984, 5417, 7993	Standards for normal and heavy type, internal and external retaining rings and retaining washers
LN 471, 472, 6799	Aerospace standards for internal and external retaining rings

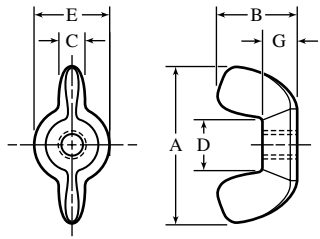
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

WING NUTS, WING SCREWS, AND THUMB SCREWS

Wing Nuts.—A wing nut is a nut having wings designed for manual turning without driver or wrench. As covered by ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn) wing nuts are classified first, by type on the basis of the method of manufacture; and second, by style on the basis of design characteristics. They consist of:

Type A: Type A wing nuts are cold forged or cold formed solid nuts having wings of moderate height. In some sizes they are produced in regular, light, and heavy series to best suit the requirements of specific applications. Dimensions are given in Table 1.

Table 1. American National Standard Type A Wing Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Size or Basic Major Diameter of Thread[a]		Thds. per Inch	Series[b]	Nut Blank Size (Ref)	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*D* Between Wings		*E* Boss Dia.		*G* Boss Height	
					Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
3	(0.0990)	48, 56	Hvy.	AA	0.72	0.59	0.41	0.28	0.11	0.07	0.21	0.17	0.33	0.29	0.14	0.10
4	(0.1120)	40, 38	Hvy.	AA	0.72	0.59	0.41	0.28	0.11	0.07	0.21	0.17	0.33	0.29	0.14	0.10
5	(0.1250)	40, 44	**Lgt.**	**AA**	**0.72**	**0.59**	**0.41**	**0.28**	**0.11**	**0.07**	**0.21**	**0.17**	**0.33**	**0.29**	**0.14**	**0.10**
			Hvy.	A	0.91	0.78	0.47	0.34	0.14	0.10	0.27	0.22	0.43	0.39	0.18	0.14
6	(0.1380)	32, 40	Lgt.	AA	0.72	0.59	0.41	0.28	0.11	0.07	0.21	0.17	0.33	0.29	0.14	0.10
			Hvy.	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.27**	**0.22**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**
8	(0.1640)	32, 36	**Lgt.**	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.27**	**0.22**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**
			Hvy.	B	1.10	0.97	0.57	0.43	0.18	0.14	0.33	0.26	0.50	0.45	0.22	0.17
10	(0.1900)	24, 32	**Lgt.**	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.27**	**0.22**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**
			Hvy.	B	1.10	0.97	0.57	0.43	0.18	0.14	0.33	0.26	0.50	0.45	0.22	0.17
12	(0.2160)	24, 28	**Lgt.**	**B**	**1.10**	**0.97**	**0.57**	**0.43**	**0.18**	**0.14**	**0.33**	**0.26**	**0.50**	**0.45**	**0.22**	**0.17**
			Hvy.	C	1.25	1.12	0.66	0.53	0.21	0.17	0.39	0.32	0.58	0.51	0.25	0.20
¼	(0.2500)	20, 28	**Lgt.**	**B**	**1.10**	**0.97**	**0.57**	**0.43**	**0.18**	**0.14**	**0.39**	**0.26**	**0.50**	**0.45**	**0.22**	**0.17**
			Reg.	C	1.25	1.12	0.66	0.53	0.21	0.17	0.39	0.32	0.58	0.51	0.25	0.20
			Hvy.	D	1.44	1.31	0.79	0.65	0.24	0.20	0.48	0.42	0.70	0.64	0.30	0.26
5/16	(0.3125)	18, 24	**Lgt.**	**C**	**1.25**	**1.12**	**0.66**	**0.53**	**0.21**	**0.17**	**0.39**	**0.32**	**0.58**	**0.51**	**0.25**	**0.20**
			Reg.	D	1.44	1.31	0.79	0.65	0.24	0.20	0.48	0.42	0.70	0.64	0.30	0.26
			Hvy.	E	1.94	1.81	1.00	0.87	0.33	0.26	0.65	0.54	0.93	0.86	0.39	0.35
⅜	(0.3750)	16, 24	**Lgt.**	**D**	**1.44**	**1.31**	**0.79**	**0.65**	**0.24**	**0.20**	**0.48**	**0.42**	**0.70**	**0.64**	**0.30**	**0.26**
			Reg.	E	1.94	1.81	1.00	0.87	0.33	0.26	0.65	0.54	0.93	0.86	0.39	0.35
7/16	(0.4375)	14, 20	**Lgt.**	**E**	**1.94**	**1.81**	**1.00**	**0.87**	**0.33**	**0.26**	**0.65**	**0.54**	**0.93**	**0.86**	**0.39**	**0.35**
			Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	0.90	0.80	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51
½	(0.5000)	13, 20	**Lgt.**	**E**	**1.94**	**1.81**	**1.00**	**0.87**	**0.33**	**0.26**	**0.65**	**0.54**	**0.93**	**0.86**	**0.39**	**0.35**
			Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	0.90	0.80	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51
9/16	(0.5625)	12, 18	Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	0.90	0.80	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51
⅝	(0.6250)	11, 18	Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	0.90	0.80	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51
¾	(0.7500)	10, 16	Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	0.90	0.80	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51

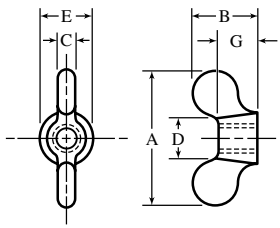
[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.
[b] Lgt. = Light; Hvy. = Heavy; Reg. = Regular. Sizes shown in **bold face** are preferred.

All dimensions in inches.

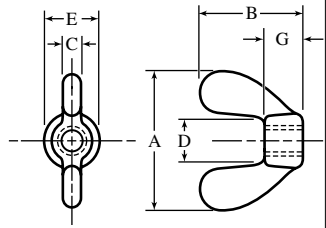
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Type B: Type B wing nuts are hot forged solid nuts available in two wing styles: Style 1, having wings of moderate height; and Style 2, having high wings. Dimensions are given in Table 2.

Table 2. American National Standard Type B Wing Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



STYLE 1



STYLE 2

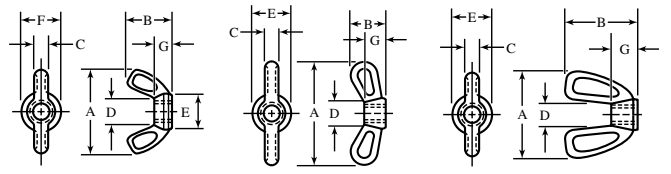
Nominal Size or Basic Major Diameter of Thread[a]	Thds. per Inch	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*D* Between Wings		*E* Boss Dia.		*G* Boss Height	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type B, Style 1													
5 (0.1250)	40	0.78	0.72	0.36	0.30	0.13	0.10	0.28	0.22	0.31	0.28	0.22	0.16
10 (0.1900)	24	0.97	0.91	0.45	0.39	0.15	0.12	0.34	0.28	0.39	0.36	0.28	0.22
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.16	1.09	0.56	0.50	0.17	0.14	0.41	0.34	0.47	0.44	0.34	0.28
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.44	1.38	0.67	0.61	0.18	0.15	0.50	0.44	0.55	0.52	0.41	0.34
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.72	1.66	0.80	0.73	0.20	0.17	0.59	0.53	0.63	0.60	0.47	0.41
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	2.00	1.94	0.91	0.84	0.21	0.18	0.69	0.62	0.71	0.68	0.53	0.47
½ (0.5000)	13	2.31	2.22	1.06	0.94	0.23	0.20	0.78	0.69	0.79	0.76	0.62	0.50
9⁄16 (0.5625)	12	2.59	2.47	1.17	1.05	0.25	0.21	0.88	0.78	0.88	0.84	0.69	0.56
⅝ (0.6250)	11	2.84	2.72	1.31	1.19	0.27	0.23	0.94	0.84	0.96	0.92	0.75	0.62
¾ (0.7500)	10	3.31	3.19	1.52	1.39	0.29	0.25	1.10	1.00	1.12	1.08	0.88	0.75
Type B, Style 2													
5 (0.1250)	40	0.81	0.75	0.62	0.56	0.12	0.09	0.28	0.22	0.31	0.28	0.22	0.16
10 (0.1900)	24	1.01	0.95	0.78	0.72	0.14	0.11	0.35	0.29	0.39	0.36	0.28	0.22
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.22	1.16	0.94	0.88	0.16	0.13	0.41	0.35	0.47	0.44	0.34	0.28
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.43	1.37	1.09	1.03	0.17	0.14	0.48	0.42	0.55	0.52	0.41	0.34
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.63	1.57	1.25	1.19	0.18	0.15	0.55	0.49	0.63	0.60	0.47	0.41
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	1.90	1.84	1.42.	1.36	0.19	0.16	0.62	0.56	0.71	0.68	0.53	0.47
½ (0.5000)	13	2.13	2.04	1.58	1.45	0.20	0.17	0.69	0.60	0.79	0.76	0.62	0.50
9⁄16 (0.5625)	12	2.40	2.28	1.75	1.62	0.22	0.18	0.76	0.67	0.88	0.84	0.69	0.56
⅝ (0.6250)	11	2.60	2.48	1.91	1.78	0.23	0.19	0.83	0.74	0.96	0.92	0.75	0.62
¾ (0.7500)	10	3.02	2.90	2.22	2.09	0.24	0.20	0.97	0.88	1.12	1.08	0.88	0.75

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Type C Wing Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



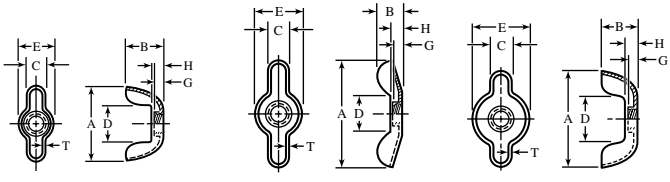
Nominal Size or Basic Major Diameter of Thread[a]	Thds. per Inch	Series	Nut Blank Size (Ref)	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*D* Between Wings		*E* Boss Dia.		*F* Boss Dia.		*G* Boss Height	
				Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type C, Style 1																	
4 (0.1120)	40	Reg.	AA	0.66	0.64	0.36	0.35	0.11	0.09	0.18	0.16	0.27	0.25	0.32	0.30	0.16	0.14
5 (0.1250)	40	Reg.	AA	0.66	0.64	0.36	0.35	0.11	0.09	0.18	0.16	0.27	0.25	0.32	0.30	0.16	0.14
6 (0.1380)	32	**Reg.**	**AA**	**0.66**	**0.64**	**0.36**	**0.35**	**0.11**	**0.09**	**0.18**	**0.16**	**0.27**	**0.25**	**0.32**	**0.30**	**0.16**	**0.14**
		Hvy.	A	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.29	0.27	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18
8 (0.1640)	32	Reg.	A	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.29	0.27	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	Reg.	A	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.29	0.27	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18
12 (0.2160)	24	**Reg.**	A	**0.85**	**0.83**	**0.43**	**0.42**	**0.14**	**0.12**	**0.29**	**0.27**	**0.38**	**0.36**	**0.41**	**0.40**	**0.20**	**0.18**
		Hvy.	B	1.08	1.05	0.57	0.53	0.16	0.14	0.32	0.30	0.44	0.42	0.48	0.46	0.23	0.21
¼ (0.2500)	20, 28	Reg.	B	1.08	1.05	0.57	0.53	0.16	0.14	0.32	0.30	0.44	0.42	0.48	0.46	0.23	0.21
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18, 24	Reg.	C	1.23	1.20	0.64	0.62	0.20	0.18	0.39	0.35	0.50	0.49	0.57	0.55	0.26	0.24
⅜ (0.3750)	16, 24	Reg.	D	1.45	1.42	0.74	0.72	0.23	0.21	0.46	0.42	0.62	0.60	0.69	0.67	0.29	0.27
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14, 20	**Reg.**	**E**	**1.89**	**1.86**	**0.91**	**0.90**	**0.29**	**0.28**	**0.67**	**0.65**	**0.75**	**0.73**	**0.83**	**0.82**	**0.38**	**0.37**
		Hvy.	EH	1.89	1.86	0.93	0.91	0.34	0.33	0.63	0.62	0.81	0.79	0.89	0.87	0.42	0.40
½ (0.5000)	13, 20	**Reg.**	**E**	**1.89**	**1.86**	**0.91**	**0.90**	**0.29**	**0.28**	**0.67**	**0.65**	**0.75**	**0.73**	**0.83**	**0.82**	**0.38**	**0.37**
		Hvy.	EH	1.89	1.86	0.93	0.91	0.34	0.33	0.63	0.62	0.81	0.79	0.89	0.87	0.42	0.40
Type C, Style 2																	
5 (0.1250)	40	…	…	0.82	0.80	0.25	0.23	0.09	0.08	0.21	0.19	0.26	0.24	…	…	0.17	0.15
6 (0.1380)	32	…	…	0.82	0.80	0.25	0.23	0.09	0.08	0.21	0.19	0.26	0.24	…	…	0.17	0.15
8 (0.1640)	32	…	…	1.01	0.99	0.28	0.27	0.11	0.09	0.29	0.28	0.36	0.34	…	…	0.19	0.18
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	…	…	1.01	0.99	0.28	0.27	0.11	0.09	0.29	0.28	0.36	0.34	…	…	0.19	0.18
12 (0.2160)	24	…	…	1.20	1.18	0.32	0.31	0.12	0.11	0.38	0.37	0.44	0.43	…	…	0.22	0.20
¼ (0.2500)	20	…	…	1.20	1.18	0.32	0.31	0.12	0.11	0.38	0.37	0.44	0.43	…	…	0.22	0.20
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	…	…	1.51	1.49	0.36	0.35	0.14	0.12	0.44	0.43	0.51	0.49	…	…	0.24	0.23
⅜ (0.3750)	16	…	…	1.89	1.86	0.58	0.55	0.20	0.17	0.44	0.43	0.63	0.62	…	…	0.37	0.35
Type C, Style 3																	
5 (0.1250)	40	…	…	0.92	0.89	0.70	0.67	0.16	0.15	0.26	0.24	0.38	0.36	…	…	0.25	0.24
6 (0.1380)	32	…	…	0.92	0.89	0.70	0.67	0.16	0.15	0.26	0.24	0.38	0.36	…	…	0.25	0.24
8 (0.1640)	32	…	…	0.92	0.89	0.70	0.67	0.16	0.15	0.26	0.24	0.38	0.36	…	…	0.25	0.24
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	…	…	1.14	1.12	0.85	0.83	0.19	0.17	0.32	0.30	0.44	0.42	…	…	0.29	0.27
12 (0.2160)	24	…	…	1.14	1.12	0.85	0.83	0.19	0.17	0.32	0.30	0.44	0.42	…	…	0.29	0.27
¼ (0.2500)	20	…	…	1.14	1.12	0.85	0.83	0.19	0.17	0.32	0.30	0.44	0.42	…	…	0.29	0.27
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	…	…	1.29	1.27	1.04	1.02	0.23	0.22	0.39	0.36	0.50	0.49	…	…	0.35	0.34
⅜ (0.3750)	16	…	…	1.51	1.49	1.20	1.18	0.27	0.25	0.45	0.42	0.62	0.60	…	…	0.43	0.42

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.
All dimensions in inches. Sizes shown in **bold face** are preferred.

Type C: Type C wing nuts are die-cast solid nuts and are available in three wing styles: Style 1, having wings of moderate height; Style 2, having low wings; and Style 3, having high wings. In some sizes, the Style 1 nuts are produced in regular, light, and heavy series to best suit the requirements of specific applications. Dimensions are given in Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Type D Wing Nuts
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Size or Basic Major Diameter of Thread[a]	Thds. per Inch	Series[b]	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*D* Between Wings	*E* Boss Dia.		*G* Boss Hgt.	*H* Wall Hgt.	*T* Stock Thick.	
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type D, Style 1															
8 (0.1640)	32, 36	…	0.78	0.72	0.40	0.34	0.18	0.14	0.25	0.41	0.35	0.08	0.12	0.04	0.03
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	…	0.91	0.85	0.47	0.41	0.21	0.17	0.34	0.53	0.47	0.10	0.12	0.04	0.03
12 (0.2160)	24, 28	…	1.09	1.03	0.47	0.41	0.21	0.17	0.34	0.53	0.47	0.10	0.12	0.05	0.04
¼ (0.2500)	20, 28	…	1.11	1.05	0.50	0.44	0.25	0.21	0.34	0.62	0.56	0.11	0.12	0.05	0.04
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18, 24	…	1.30	1.24	0.59	0.53	0.30	0.26	0.46	0.73	0.67	0.14	0.18	0.06	0.05
⅜ (0.3750)	16, 24	…	1.41	1.34	0.67	0.61	0.34	0.30	0.69	0.83	0.77	0.16	0.18	0.06	0.05
Type D, Style 2															
5 (0.1250)	40	Reg.	1.03	0.97	0.25	0.19	0.19	0.13	0.30	0.40	0.34	0.07	0.09	0.04	0.03
6 (0.1380)	32	Reg.	1.03	0.97	0.25	0.19	0.19	0.13	0.30	0.40	0.34	0.08	0.09	0.04	0.03
8 (0.1640)	32	Reg.	1.03	0.97	0.25	0.19	0.19	0.13	0.30	0.40	0.34	0.08	0.09	0.04	0.03
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	Reg.	1.40	1.34	0.34	0.28	0.25	0.18	0.32	0.53	0.47	0.09	0.16	0.05	0.04
		Hvy.	1.21	1.16	0.28	0.26	0.31	0.25	0.60	0.61	0.55	0.09	0.13	0.05	0.04
12 (0.2160)	24	Reg.	1.21	1.16	0.28	0.26	0.31	0.25	0.60	0.61	0.55	0.11	0.13	0.05	0.04
¼ (0.2500)	20	Reg.	1.21	1.16	0.28	0.26	0.31	0.25	0.60	0.61	0.55	0.11	0.13	0.05	0.04
Type D, Style 3															
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	Lgt.	1.31	1.25	0.48	0.42	0.29	0.23	0.47	0.65	0.59	0.08	0.12	0.04	0.03
		Reg.	1.40	1.34	0.53	0.47	0.25	0.19	0.50	0.75	0.69	0.08	0.14	0.04	0.03
12 (0.2160)	24	Reg.	1.28	1.22	0.40	0.34	0.23	0.17	0.59	0.73	0.67	0.11	0.12	0.04	0.03
¼ (0.2500)	20	Lgt.	1.28	1.22	0.40	0.34	0.23	0.17	0.59	0.73	0.67	0.11	0.12	0.04	0.03
		Reg.	1.78	1.72	0.66	0.60	0.31	0.25	0.70	1.03	0.97	0.14	0.17	0.06	0.04
		Hvy.	1.47	1.40	0.50	0.44	0.37	0.31	0.66	1.03	0.97	0.14	0.14	0.08	0.06
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	Reg.	1.78	1.72	0.66	0.60	0.31	0.25	0.70	1.03	0.97	0.14	0.17	0.06	0.04
		Hvy.	1.47	1.40	0.50	0.44	0.37	0.31	0.66	1.03	0.97	0.14	0.14	0.08	0.06

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.
[b] Lgt. = Light; Hvy. = Heavy; Reg. = Regular.
All dimensions in inches.

Type D: Type D wing nuts are stamped sheet metal nuts and are available in three styles: Style 1, having wings of moderate height; Style 2, having low wings; and Style 3, having wings of moderate height and a larger bearing surface. In some sizes, Styles 2 and 3 are produced in regular, light, and heavy series to best suit the requirements of specific applications. Dimensions are given in Table 4.

Specification of Wing Nuts.—When specifying wing nuts, the following data should be included in the designation and should appear in the following sequence: nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent), threads per inch, type, style and/or series, material, and finish.

Examples: 10–32 Type A Wing Nut, Regular Series, Steel, Zinc Plated.
0.250–20 Type C Wing Nut, Style 1, Zinc Alloy, Plain.

Threads for Wing Nuts.—Threads are in conformance with the ANSI Standard Unified Thread, Class 2B for all types of wing nuts except type D which have a modified Class 2B thread. Because of the method of manufacture, the minor diameter of the thread in type D

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

nuts may be somewhat larger than the Unified Thread Class 2B maximum but shall in no case exceed the minimum pitch diameter.

Materials and Finish for Wing Nuts.—Types A, B, and D wing nuts are normally supplied as specified by the user in carbon steel, brass or corrosion resistant steel of good quality and adaptable to the manufacturing process. Type C wing nuts are made from die-cast zinc alloy. Unless otherwise specified, wing nuts are supplied with a plain (unplated or uncoated) finish.

Wing Screws.—A wing screw is a screw having a wing-shaped head designed for manual turning without a driver or wrench. As covered by ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn) wing screws are classified first, by type on the basis of the method of manufacture, and second, by style on the basis of design characteristics. They consist of the following:

Type A: Type A wing screws are of two-piece construction having cold formed or cold forged wing portions of moderate height. In some sizes they are produced in regular, light, and heavy series to best suit the requirements of specific applications. Dimensions are given in Table 5.

Type B: Type B wing screws are of hot forged one-piece construction available in two wing styles: Style 1, having wings of moderate height; and Style 2, having high wings. Dimensions are given in Table 5.

Type C: Type C wing screws are available in two styles: Style 1, of a one-piece die-cast construction having wings of moderate height; and Style 2, of a two-piece construction having a die-cast wing portion of moderate height. Dimensions are given in Table 6.

Type D: Type D wing screws are of two-piece welded construction having stamped sheet metal wing portions of moderate height. Dimensions are given in Table 6.

Materials for Wing Screws and Thumb Screws: Type A wing screws are normally supplied in carbon steel with the shank portion case hardened. When so specified, they also may be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass or other materials as agreed upon by the manufacturer and user.

Type B wing screws are normally made from carbon steel but also may be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass or other materials.

Type C, Style 1, wing screws are supplied only in die-cast zinc alloy. Type C, Style 2, wing screws have the wing portion made from die-cast zinc alloy with the shank portion normally made from carbon steel. Where so specified, the shank portion may be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass or other materials as agreed upon by the manufacturer and user.

Type D wing screws are normally supplied in carbon steel but also may be made from corrosion resistant steel, brass or other materials.

Thumb screws of all types are normally made from a good commercial quality of carbon steel having a maximum ultimate tensile strength of 48,000 psi (331 MPa). Where so specified, carbon steel thumb screws are case hardened. They are also made from corrosion resistant steel, brass, and other materials as agreed upon by the manufacturer and user.

Unless otherwise specified, wing screws and thumb screws are supplied with a plain (unplated or uncoated) finish.

Thumb Screws.—A thumb screw is a screw having a flattened head designed for manual turning without a driver or wrench. As covered by ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn) thumb screws are classified by type on the basis of design characteristics. They consist of the following:

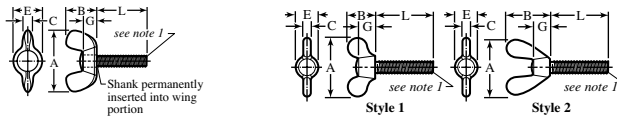
Type A: Type A thumb screws are forged one-piece screws having a shoulder under the head and are available in two series: regular and heavy. Dimensions are given in Table 7.

Type B: Type B thumb screws are forged one-piece screws without a shoulder and are available in two series: regular and heavy. Dimensions are given in Table 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Types A and B Wing Screws

ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



TYPE A TYPE B

Nominal Size or Basic Major Diameter[a]	Thds. per Inch	Series[b]	Head Blank size (Ref)	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*E* Boss Dia.		*G* Boss Height.		*L* Practical Screw Lengths	
				Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type A															
4 (0.1120)	40	Hvy.	AA	0.72	0.59	0.41	0.28	0.11	0.07	0.33	0.29	0.14	0.10	0.75	0.25
6 (0.1380)	32	Lgt.	AA	0.72	0.59	0.41	0.28	0.11	0.07	0.33	0.29	0.14	0.10	} 0.75	0.25
		Hvy.	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**		
8 (0.1640)	32	**Lgt.**	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**	} 0.75	0.38
		Hvy.	B	1.10	0.97	0.57	0.43	0.18	0.14	0.50	0.45	0.22	0.17		
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	**Lgt.**	**A**	**0.91**	**0.78**	**0.47**	**0.34**	**0.14**	**0.10**	**0.43**	**0.39**	**0.18**	**0.14**	} 1.00	0.38
		Hvy.	B	1.10	0.97	0.57	0.43	0.18	0.14	0.50	0.45	0.22	0.17		
12 (0.2160)	24	**Lgt.**	**B**	**1.10**	**0.97**	**0.57**	**0.43**	**0.18**	**0.14**	**0.50**	**0.45**	**0.22**	**0.17**	} 1.00	0.38
		Hvy.	C	1.25	1.12	0.66	0.53	0.21	0.17	0.58	0.51	0.25	0.20		
¼ (0.2500)	20	**Lgt.**	**B**	**1.10**	**0.97**	**0.57**	**0.43**	**0.18**	**0.14**	**0.50**	**0.45**	**0.22**	**0.17**	} 1.50	0.50
		Reg.	C	1.25	1.12	0.66	0.53	0.21	0.17	0.58	0.51	0.25	0.20		
		Hvy.	D	1.44	1.31	0.79	0.65	0.24	0.20	0.70	0.64	0.30	0.26		
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	**Lgt.**	**C**	**1.25**	**1.12**	**0.66**	**0.53**	**0.21**	**0.17**	**0.58**	**0.51**	**0.25**	**0.20**	} 1.50	0.50
		Reg.	D	1.44	1.31	0.79	0.65	0.24	0.20	0.70	0.64	0.30	0.26		
		Hvy.	E	1.94	1.81	1.00	0.87	0.33	0.26	0.93	0.86	0.39	0.35		
⅜ (0.3750)	16	**Lgt.**	**D**	**1.44**	**1.31**	**0.79**	**0.65**	**0.24**	**0.20**	**0.70**	**0.64**	**0.30**	**0.26**	} 2.00	0.75
		Reg.	E	1.94	1.81	1.00	0.87	0.33	0.26	0.93	0.86	0.39	0.35		
		Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51		
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	**Lgt.**	**E**	**1.94**	**1.81**	**1.00**	0.87	**0.33**	**0.26**	**0.93**	**0.86**	**0.39**	**0.35**	} 4.00	1.00
		Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51		
½ (0.5000)	13	**Lgt.**	**E**	**1.94**	**1.81**	**1.00**	**0.87**	**0.33**	**0.26**	**0.93**	**0.86**	**0.39**	**0.35**	} 4.00	1.00
		Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51		
5⁄8 (0.6250)	11	Hvy.	F	2.76	2.62	1.44	1.31	0.40	0.34	1.19	1.13	0.55	0.51	4.00	1.25
Type B, Style 1															
10 (0.1900)	24	…	…	0.97	0.91	0.45	0.39	0.15	0.12	0.39	0.36	0.28	0.22	2.00	0.50
¼ (0.2500)	20	…	…	1.16	1.09	0.56	0.50	0.17	0.14	0.47	0.44	0.34	0.28	3.00	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	…	…	1.44	1.38	0.67	0.61	0.18	0.15	0.55	0.52	0.41	0.34	3.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	…	…	1.72	1.66	0.80	0.73	0.20	0.17	0.63	0.60	0.47	0.41	4.00	0.50
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	…	…	2.00	1.94	0.91	0.84	0.21	0.18	0.71	0.68	0.53	0.47	3.00	1.00
½ (0.5000)	13	…	…	2.31	2.22	1.06	0.94	0.23	0.20	0.79	0.76	0.62	0.50	3.00	1.00
5⁄8 (0.6250)	11	…	…	2.84	2.72	1.31	1.19	0.27	0.23	0.96	0.92	0.75	0.62	2.50	1.00
Type B, Style 2															
10 (0.1900)	24	…	…	1.01	0.95	0.78	0.72	0.14	0.11	0.39	0.36	0.28	0.22	1.25	0.50
¼ (0.2500)	20	…	…	1.22	1.16	0.94	0.88	0.16	0.13	0.47	0.44	0.34	0.28	2.00	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	…	…	1.43	1.37	1.09	1.03	0.17	0.14	0.55	0.52	0.41	0.34	2.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	…	…	1.63	1.57	1.25	1.19	0.18	0.15	0.63	0.60	0.47	0.41	2.00	0.50

All dimensions in inches. Sizes shown in **bold face** are preferred.

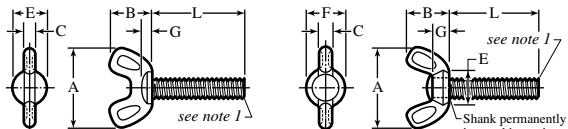
[1]Plain point, unless alternate point from styles shown in Table 8 is specified by user.

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] Hvy. = Heavy; Lgt. = Light; Reg. = Regular.

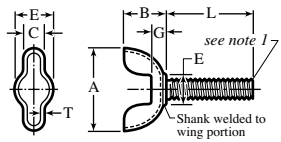
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Types C and D Wing Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



Style 1 **Style 2**

TYPE C



TYPE D

Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter[a]	Thds. per Inch	*A* Wing Spread		*B* Wing Height		*C* Wing Thick.		*E* Boss Dia.		*F* Boss Dia.		*G* Height		*L* Practical Screw Lengths	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type C, Style 1															
6 (0.1380)	32	0.85	0.83	0.45	0.43	0.15	0.12	…	…	0.41	0.39	0.12	0.07	0.75	0.25
8 (0.1640)	32	0.85	0.83	0.45	0.43	0.15	0.12	…	…	0.41	0.39	0.12	0.07	1.00	0.38
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	0.85	0.83	0.45	0.43	0.15	0.12	…	…	0.41	0.39	0.12	0.07	1.25	0.38
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.08	1.05	0.56	0.53	0.17	0.14	…	…	0.46	0.44	0.12	0.07	1.50	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.23	1.20	0.64	0.62	0.22	0.19	…	…	0.51	0.49	0.14	0.10	1.50	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.45	1.42	0.74	0.72	0.24	0.21	…	…	0.63	0.62	0.15	0.12	1.50	0.50
Type C, Style 2															
6 (0.1380)	32	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18	1.00	0.25
8 (0.1640)	32	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18	1.00	0.38
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	0.85	0.83	0.43	0.42	0.14	0.12	0.38	0.36	0.41	0.40	0.20	0.18	2.00	0.38
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.08	1.05	0.57	0.53	0.16	0.14	0.44	0.42	0.48	0.46	0.23	0.21	2.50	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.23	1.20	0.64	0.62	0.20	0.18	0.50	0.49	0.57	0.55	0.26	0.24	3.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.45	1.42	0.74	0.72	0.23	0.21	0.62	0.60	0.69	0.67	0.29	0.27	3.00	0.75
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	1.89	1.86	0.91	0.90	0.29	0.28	0.75	0.73	0.83	0.82	0.38	0.37	4.00	1.00
½ (0.5000)	13	1.89	1.86	0.91	0.90	0.29	0.28	0.75	0.73	0.83	0.82	0.38	0.37	4.00	1.00
Type D															
6 (0.1380)	32	0.78	0.72	0.40	0.34	0.18	0.12	0.35	0.31	0.40	0.34	0.21	0.14	0.75	0.25
8 (0.1640)	32	0.78	0.72	0.40	0.34	0.18	0.12	0.35	0.31	0.40	0.34	0.21	0.14	0.75	0.38
10 (0.1900)	24	0.90	0.84	0.46	0.40	0.21	0.15	0.35	0.31	0.53	0.47	0.22	0.16	1.00	0.38
12 (0.2160)	24	1.09	1.03	0.46	0.40	0.26	0.20	0.44	0.39	0.61	0.55	0.24	0.18	1.00	0.38
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.09	1.03	0.46	0.40	0.26	0.20	0.47	0.43	0.61	0.55	0.24	0.18	1.50	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.31	1.25	0.62	0.56	0.29	0.23	0.57	0.53	0.68	0.62	0.29	0.23	1.50	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.31	1.25	0.62	0.56	0.29	0.23	0.63	0.59	0.68	0.62	0.29	0.23	2.00	0.75

All dimensions in inches.

[1]Plain point, unless alternate point from styles shown in Table 8 is specified by user.

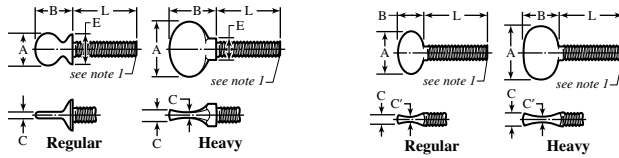
[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

Wing Screw and Thumb Screw Designation.—When specifying wing and thumb screws, the following data should be included in the designation and should appear in the following sequence: nominal size (number, fraction or decimal equivalent), threads per inch, length (fractions or decimal equivalents), type, style and/or series, point (if other than plain point), materials, and finish.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples: 10–32 × 1¼, Thumb Screw, Type A, Regular, Steel, Zinc Plated.
0.375–16 × 2.00, Wing Screw, Type B, Style 2, Steel, Cadmium Plated.
0.250–20 × 1.50, Wing Screw, Type C, Style 2, Zinc Alloy Wings, Steel Shank, Brass Plated.

Table 7. American National Standard Types A and B Thumb Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter[a]	Thds. per Inch	TYPE A						TYPE B					
		A Head Width		*B* Head Height		*C* Head Thick.		*C′* Head Thick.		*E* Shoulder Diameter		*L* Practical Screw Lengths	
		Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Type A, Regular													
6 (0.1380)	32	0.31	0.29	0.33	0.31	0.05	0.04	…	…	0.25	0.23	0.75	0.25
8 (0.1640)	32	0.36	0.34	0.38	0.36	0.06	0.05	…	…	0.31	0.29	0.75	0.38
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	0.42	0.40	0.48	0.46	0.06	0.05	…	…	0.35	0.32	1.00	0.38
12 (0.2160)	24	0.48	0.46	0.54	0.52	0.06	0.05	…	…	0.40	0.38	1.00	0.38
¼ (0.2500)	20	0.55	0.52	0.64	0.61	0.07	0.05	…	…	0.47	0.44	1.50	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	0.70	0.67	0.78	0.75	0.09	0.07	…	…	0.59	0.56	1.50	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	0.83	0.80	0.95	0.92	0.11	0.09	…	…	0.76	0.71	2.00	0.75
Type A, Heavy													
10 (0.1900)	24	0.89	0.83	0.84	0.72	0.18	0.16	0.10	0.08	0.33	0.31	2.00	0.50
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.05	0.99	0.94	0.81	0.24	0.22	0.10	0.08	0.40	0.38	3.00	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.21	1.15	1.00	0.88	0.27	0.25	0.11	0.09	0.46	0.44	4.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.41	1.34	1.16	1.03	0.30	0.28	0.11	0.09	0.55	0.53	4.00	0.50
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	1.59	1.53	1.22	1.09	0.36	0.34	0.13	0.11	0.71	0.69	2.50	1.00
½ (0.5000)	13	1.81	1.72	1.28	1.16	0.40	0.38	0.14	0.12	0.83	0.81	3.00	1.00
Type B, Regular													
6 (0.1380)	32	0.45	0.43	0.28	0.26	0.08	0.06	0.03	0.02	…	…	1.00	0.25
8 (0.1640)	32	0.51	0.49	0.32	0.30	0.09	0.07	0.04	0.02	…	…	1.00	0.38
10 (0.1900)	24, 32	0.58	0.54	0.39	0.36	0.10	0.08	0.05	0.03	…	…	2.00	0.38
12 (0.2160)	24	0.71	0.67	0.45	0.43	0.11	0.09	0.05	0.03	…	…	2.00	0.38
¼ (0.2500)	20	0.83	0.80	0.52	0.48	0.16	0.14	0.06	0.03	…	…	2.50	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	0.96	0.91	0.64	0.60	0.17	0.14	0.09	0.06	…	…	3.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.09	1.03	0.71	0.67	0.22	0.18	0.11	0.08	…	…	3.00	0.75
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	1.40	1.35	0.96	0.91	0.27	0.24	0.14	0.11	…	…	4.00	1.00
½ (0.5000)	13	1.54	1.46	1.09	1.03	0.33	0.29	0.15	0.11	…	…	4.00	1.00
Type B, Heavy													
10 (0.1900)	24	0.89	0.83	0.78	0.66	0.18	0.16	0.08	0.06	…	…	2.00	0.50
¼ (0.2500)	20	1.05	0.99	0.81	0.72	0.24	0.22	0.11	0.09	…	…	3.00	0.50
5⁄16 (0.3125)	18	1.21	1.15	0.88	0.78	0.27	0.25	0.11	0.09	…	…	4.00	0.50
⅜ (0.3750)	16	1.41	1.34	0.94	0.84	0.30	0.28	0.14	0.12	…	…	4.00	0.50
7⁄16 (0.4375)	14	1.59	1.53	1.00	0.91	0.36	0.34	0.14	0.12	…	…	3.00	1.00
½ (0.5000)	13	1.81	1.72	1.09	0.97	0.40	0.38	0.18	0.16	…	…	3.00	1.00

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeroes in fourth decimal place are omitted.
All dimensions in inches.
[1] Plain point, unless alternate point from styles shown in Table 8 is specified by user.

Lengths of Wing and Thumb Screws.—The length of wing or thumb screws is measured parallel to the axis of the screw from the intersection of the head or shoulder with the shank to the extreme point of the screw. Standard length increments are as follows: For

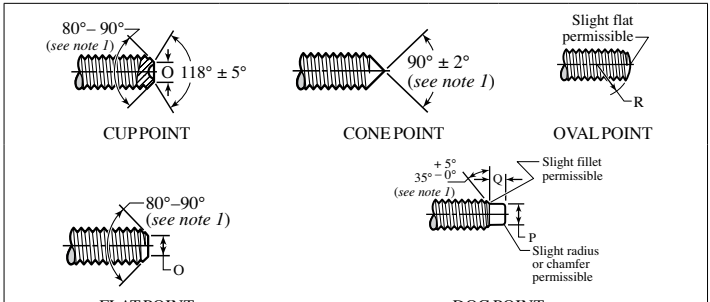
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

sizes No. 4 through $\frac{1}{4}$ inch and for nominal lengths of 0.25 to 0.75 inch, 0.12-inch increments; from 0.75- to 1.50-inch lengths, 0.25-inch increments; and for 1.50- to 3.00-inch lengths, 0.50-inch increments. For sizes $\frac{5}{16}$ through $\frac{1}{2}$ inch and for 0.50- to 1.50-inch lengths, 0.25-inch increments; for 1.50- to 3.00-inch lengths, 0.50-inch increments; and for 3.00- to 4.00-inch lengths, 1.00-inch increments.

Threads for Wing Screws and Thumb Screws.—Threads for all types of wing screws and thumb screws are in conformance with ANSI Standard Unified Thread, Class 2A. For threads with an additive finish the Class 2A maximum diameters apply to an unplated screw or to a screw before plating, whereas the basic diameters (Class 2A maximum diameters plus the allowance) apply to a screw after plating. All types of wing and thumb screws should have complete (full form) threads extending as close to the head or shoulder as practicable.

Points for Wing and Thumb Screws.—Wing and thumb screws are normally supplied with plain points (sheared ends). Where so specified, these screws may be obtained with cone, cup, dog, flat or oval points as shown in Table 8.

Table 8. American National Standard Alternate Points for Wing and Thumb Screws
ANSI/ASME B18.17-1968 (Withdrawn)



Nominal Size or Basic Screw Diameter[a]	*O*		*P*		*Q*		*R*	
	Cup and Flat Point Diameter		Dog Point[b]				Oval Point Radius	
			Diameter		Length			
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
4 (0.1120)	0.061	0.051	0.075	0.070	0.061	0.051	0.099	0.084
6 (0.1380)	0.074	0.064	0.092	0.087	0.075	0.065	0.140	0.109
8 (0.1640)	0.087	0.076	0.109	0.103	0.085	0.075	0.156	0.125
10 (0.1900)	0.102	0.088	0.127	0.120	0.095	0.085	0.172	0.141
12 (0.2160)	0.115	0.101	0.144	0.137	0.115	0.105	0.188	0.156
¼ (0.2500)	0.132	0.118	0.156	0.149	0.130	0.120	0.219	0.188
5⁄16 (0.3125)	0.172	0.156	0.203	0.195	0.161	0.151	0.256	0.234
⅜ (0.3750)	0.212	0.194	0.250	0.241	0.193	0.183	0.312	0.281
7⁄16 (0.4375)	0.252	0.232	0.297	0.287	0.224	0.214	0.359	0.328
½ (0.5000)	0.291	0.270	0.344	0.334	0.255	0.245	0.406	0.375
5⁄8 (0.6250)	0.371	0.347	0.469	0.456	0.321	0.305	0.500	0.469

[a] Where specifying nominal size in decimals, zeros in the fourth decimal place are omitted.

[b] The axis of dog points shall not be eccentric with the axis of the screw by more than 3 percent of the basic screw diameter or 0.005 in., whichever is the smaller.

All dimensions in inches.

[1] The external point angles specified shall apply to those portions of the angles which lie below the thread root diameter, it being recognized the angle within the thread profile may be varied due to the manufacturing processes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

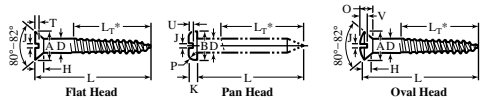
NAILS, SPIKES, AND WOOD SCREWS

Standard Wire Nails and Spikes (Size, Length and Approximate Number to Pound)

Size of Nail	Length, Inches	Gage	Num/lb	Gage	Num/lb	Gage	Num/lb	Gage	Num/lb	Gage	Num/lb
		Common Wire Nails and Brads		Flooring Brads		Fence Nails		Casing, Smooth and Barbed Box		Finishing Nails	
2 *d*	1	15	876	…	…	…	…	15 ½	1010	16 ½	1351
3 *d*	1 ¼	14	568	…	…	…	…	14 ½	635	15 ½	807
4 *d*	1 ½	12 ½	316	…	…	…	…	14	473	15	584
5 *d*	1 ¾	12 ½	271	…	…	10	142	14	406	15	500
6 *d*	2	11 ½	181	11	157	10	124	12 ½	236	13 ½	309
7 *d*	2 ¼	11 ½	161	11	139	9	92	12 ½	210	13	238
8 *d*	2 ½	10 ¼	106	10	99	9	82	11 ½	145	12 ½	189
9 *d*	2 ¾	10 ¼	96	10	90	8	62	11 ½	132	12 ½	172
10 *d*	3	9	69	9	69	7	50	10 ½	94	11 ½	121
12 *d*	3 ¼	9	64	8	54	6	40	10 ½	87	11 ½	113
16 *d*	3 ½	8	49	7	43	5	30	10	71	11	90
20 *d*	4	6	31	6	31	4	23	9	52	10	62
30 *d*	4 ½	5	24	…	…	…	…	9	46	…	…
40 *d*	5	4	18	…	…	…	…	8	35	…	…
50 *d*	5 ½	3	16	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
60 *d*	6	2	11	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
Size and Length		Hinge Nails, Heavy		Hinge Nails, Light		Clinch Nails		Barbed Car Nails, Heavy		Barbed Car Nails, Light	
2 *d*	1	…	…	…	…	14	710	…	…	…	…
3 *d*	1 ¼	…	…	…	…	13	429	…	…	…	…
4 *d*	1 ½	3	50	6	82	12	274	10	165	12	274
5 *d*	1 ¾	3	38	6	62	12	235	9	118	10	142
6 *d*	2	3	30	6	50	11	157	9	103	10	124
7 *d*	2 ¼	00	12	3	25	11	139	8	76	9	92
8 *d*	2 ½	00	11	3	23	10	99	8	69	9	82
9 *d*	2 ¾	00	10	3	22	10	90	7	54	8	62
10 *d*	3	00	9	3	19	9	69	7	50	8	57
12 *d*	3 ¼	…	…	…	…	9	62	6	42	7	50
16 *d*	3 ½	…	…	…	…	8	49	6	35	7	43
20 *d*	4	…	…	…	…	7	37	5	26	6	31
30 *d*	4 ½	…	…	…	…	…	…	5	24	6	28
40 *d*	5	…	…	…	…	…	…	4	18	5	21
50 *d*	5 ½	…	…	…	…	…	…	3	15	4	17
60 *d*	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	3	13	4	15
Size and Length		Boat Nails, Heavy		Boat Nails, Light		Slating Nails		Spikes			
2 *d*	1	…	…	…	…	12	411				
3 *d*	1 ¼	…	…	…	…	10 ½	225				
4 *d*	1 ½	¼	44	3/16	82	10 ½	187	Size and Length		Gage	No. to Lb
5 *d*	1 ¾	…	…	…	…	10	142	10 *d*	3	6	41
6*d*	2	¼	32	3/16	62	9	103	12 *d*	3 ¼	6	38
7 *d*	2 ¼	…	…	…	…	…	…	16 *d*	3 ½	5	30
8 *d*	2 ½	¼	26	3/16	50	…	…	20 *d*	4	4	23
9 *d*	2 ¾	…	…	…	…	…	…	30 *d*	4 ½	3	17
10 *d*	3	⅜	14	¼	22	…	…	40 *d*	5	2	13
12 *d*	3 ¼	⅜	13	¼	20	…	…	50 *d*	5 ½	1	10
16 *d*	3 ½	⅜	12	¼	18	…	…	60 *d*	6	1	8
20 *d*	4	⅜	10	¼	16	…	…	…	7	0	7
30 *d*	4 ½	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	8	00	6
40 *d*	5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	9	00	5
50 *d*	5 ½	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	10	⅜	4
60 *d*	6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	12	⅜	3

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI Flat, Pan, and Oval Head Wood Screws *ANSI/ASME B18.6.1-1981 (R2016)*



Nominal Size	Threads per inch	*D* Basic Dia. of Screw	*J* Width of Slot Max.	*J* Width of Slot Min.	*A* Head Diameter Max., Sharp Edge	*A* Head Diameter Min., Edge Rounded or Flat	*B* Head Diameter Max.	*B* Head Diameter Min.	*P* Head Radius Max.	*H* Height of Head Ref.
0	32	.060	.023	.016	.119	.099	.116	.104	.020	.035
1	28	.073	.026	.019	.146	.123	.142	.130	.025	.043
2	26	.086	.031	.023	.172	.147	.167	.155	.035	.051
3	24	.099	.035	.027	.199	.171	.193	.180	.037	.059
4	22	.112	.039	.031	.225	.195	.219	.205	.042	.067
5	20	.125	.043	.035	.252	.220	.245	.231	.044	.075
6	18	.138	.048	.039	.279	.244	.270	.256	.046	.083
7	16	.151	.048	.039	.305	.268	.296	.281	.049	.091
8	15	.164	.054	.045	.332	.292	.322	.306	.052	.100
9	14	.177	.054	.045	.358	.316	.348	.331	.056	.108
10	13	.190	.060	.050	.385	.340	.373	.357	.061	.116
12	11	.216	.067	.056	.438	.389	.425	.407	.078	.132
14	10	.242	.075	.064	.507	.452	.492	.473	.087	.153
16	9	.268	.075	.064	.544	.485	.528	.508	.094	.164
18	8	.294	.084	.072	.635	.568	.615	.594	.099	.191
20	8	.320	.084	.072	.650	.582	.631	.608	.121	.196
24	7	.372	.094	.081	.762	.685	.740	.716	.143	.230

Nominal Size	Threads per Inch	*O* Tot. Hgt. of Head Max.	*O* Tot. Hgt. of Head Min.	*K* Height of Head Max.	*K* Height of Head Min.	*T* Depth of Slot Max.	*T* Depth of Slot Min.	*U* Depth of Slot Max.	*U* Depth of Slot Min.	*V* Depth of Slot Max.	*V* Depth of Slot Min.
0	32	.056	.041	.039	.031	.015	.010	.022	.014	.030	.025
1	28	.068	.052	.046	.038	.019	.012	.027	.018	.038	.031
2	26	.080	.063	.053	.045	.023	.015	.031	.022	.045	.037
3	24	.092	.073	.060	.051	.027	.017	.035	.027	.052	.043
4	22	.104	.084	.068	.058	.030	.020	.040	.030	.059	.049
5	20	.116	.095	.075	.065	.034	.022	.045	.034	.067	.055
6	18	.128	.105	.082	.072	.038	.024	.050	.037	.074	.060
7	16	.140	.116	.089	.079	.041	.027	.054	.041	.081	.066
8	15	.152	.126	.096	.085	.045	.029	.058	.045	.088	.072
9	14	.164	.137	.103	.092	.049	.032	.063	.049	.095	.078
10	13	.176	.148	.110	.099	.053	.034	.068	.053	.103	.084
12	11	.200	.169	.125	.112	.060	.039	.077	.061	.117	.096
14	10	.232	.197	.144	.130	.070	.046	.087	.070	.136	.112
16	9	.248	.212	.153	.139	.075	.049	.093	.074	.146	.120
18	8	.290	.249	.178	.162	.083	.054	.106	.085	.171	.141
20	8	.296	.254	.182	.166	.090	.059	.108	.087	.175	.144
24	7	.347	.300	.212	.195	.106	.070	.124	.100	.204	.168

All dimensions in inches. The edge of flat and oval head screws may be flat or rounded. Wood screws are also available with Types I, IA, and II recessed heads. Consult the standard for recessed head dimensions. *The length of the thread, L_T, on wood screws having cut threads shall be equivalent to approximately two-thirds of the nominal length of the screw. For rolled threads, L_T shall be at least four times the basic screw diameter or two-thirds of the nominal screw length, whichever is greater. Screws of nominal lengths that are too short to accommodate the minimum thread length shall have threads extending as close to the underside of the head as practicable.

Pilot Hole Drill Sizes for Wood Screws

Work Material	Wood Screw Size 2	4	6	8	10	12	14
Hardwood	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	7/64	1/8	9/64
Softwood	1/32	3/64	1/16	5/64	3/32	7/64	1/8

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

THREADS AND THREADING

SCREW THREAD SYSTEMS

1940 Screw Thread Forms
1940 V-Thread, Sharp V-Thread
1940 US Standard Screw Thread
1940 Unified Screw Thread Forms
1941 International Metric Thread
1942 ISO Metric Thread System
1942 Definitions of Screw Threads

UNIFIED SCREW THREADS

1947 American Standard for Unified Screw Threads
1947 Revised Standard
1947 Thread Form
1948 Internal and External Screw Thread Design Profiles
1948 Thread Series
1949 Inch Screw Thread Form Data
1950 Diameter-Pitch Combinations
1951 Standard Series Combinations
1978 Coarse-Thread Series
1979 Fine-Thread Series
1980 Extra-Fine-Thread Series
1980 Constant Pitch Series
1981 4-Thread Series
1982 6-Thread Series
1983 8-Thread Series
1984 12-Thread Series
1985 16-Thread Series
1986 20-Thread Series
1987 28-Thread Series
1988 Thread Classes
1988 Coated 60-Degree Threads
1990 Screw Thread Selection
1990 Pitch Diameter Tolerances
1990 Screw Thread Designation
1991 Coated Threads
1991 UNS Threads
1991 Multiple Start Threads
1991 Other Special Designations
1991 Hole Sizes for Tapping
1991 Internal Thread Minor Diameter Tolerances
1992 Unified Miniature Screw Threads
1992 Basic Form of Thread
1992 Design Forms of Threads
1994 Formulas for Basic Dimensions
1995 Limits of Size and Tolerances
1996 Minimum Root Flats
1997 UNJ Basic Profile

UNIFIED SCREW THREADS *(Continued)*

1997 British Standard UNJ Threads
1997 ASME UNJ Thread Form
1998 UNJ Basic Profile Dimensions

CALCULATING THREAD DIMENSIONS

1999 Introduction
1999 Metric Application
1999 Purpose
2000 Calculating and Rounding
2000 Rounding of Decimal Values
2000 Calculations from Formulas
2001 Examples
2001 Inch Screw Threads
2001 Metric Screw Threads
2001 Thread Form Constants

METRIC SCREW THREADS

2012 American National Standard Metric Screw Threads M Profile
2012 Metric Compared with Inch Threads
2012 Interchangeability
2012 Definitions
2013 Basic M Profile
2013 Design M Profile for Internal and External Threads
2013 M Crest and Root Form
2014 General Symbols
2014 M Profile Screw Thread Series
2014 Mechanical Fastener Coarse Pitch
2015 M Profile Data
2016 Limits and Fits
2020 Limits for Coated Threads
2022 Dimensional Effect of Coating
2022 Formulas for M Profile
2026 Tolerance Grade Comparisons
2026 Standard M Profile Screw Threads, Limits of Size
2027 Internal Metric Thread
2029 External Metric Thread
2033 Metric Designations
2034 Metric Screw Threads—MJ Profile
2034 Diameter-Pitch Combinations
2037 Trapezoidal Metric Thread
2037 Comparison of ISO and DIN
2044 ISO Miniature Screw Threads
2044 British Standard ISO Threads

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

METRIC SCREW THREADS

(Continued)

2044 Basic Profile
2045 Tolerance System
2045 Fundamental Deviations
2046 Tolerance Grades, Positions, and Classes
2047 Lengths of Thread Engagements
2047 Design Profiles
2047 Designation
2048 Fundamental Deviation Formulas
2049 Crest Diameter Tolerance Formulas
2052 Diameter/Pitch Combinations
2052 Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads

ACME SCREW THREADS

2054 American National Standard Acme Screw Threads
2054 General Purpose
2055 Acme Thread Form
2056 Abbreviations
2056 Designation
2056 Multiple Start
2057 Basic Dimensions
2057 Formulas for Diameters
2058 Limiting Dimensions
2060 Single-Start Screw Thread Data
2061 Pitch Diameter Allowances
2061 Centralizing
2062 Pitch Diameter Tolerances
2064 Basic Dimensions
2066 Formulas for Diameters
2066 Designation
2067 Limiting Dimensions
2069 Screw Thread Data
2070 Pitch Diameter Allowances and Tolerances
2072 Minor Diameter Centralizing
2072 Stub Acme Threads
2073 Basic Dimensions
2073 Formulas for Diameters
2074 Limiting Dimensions
2075 Alternate Stub Acme Threads
2075 Former 60-Degree Stub Thread
2077 Square Thread

BUTTRESS THREADS

2078 Threads of Buttress Form
2078 British Standard Buttress Threads
2078 Buttress Inch Screw Threads
2079 7°/45° Buttress Thread Form
2079 Pitch Combinations
2079 Basic Dimensions
2080 Buttress Thread Form
2081 Symbols and Form
2082 Buttress Thread Tolerances
2082 Allowances for Easy Assembly
2084 Buttress Thread Designations

WHITWORTH THREADS

2086 British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and Fine (BSF) Threads
2086 Whitworth Standard Thread Form
2086 Tolerance Formulas
2087 Basic Dimensions

PIPE AND HOSE THREADS

2089 Standard Pipe Threads
2089 Thread Designation and Notation
2089 Taper Pipe Threads
2090 Basic Dimensions
2091 Engagement Between External and Internal Taper Threads
2091 Tolerances on Thread Elements
2092 Limits on Crest and Root
2093 Pipe Couplings
2093 Railing Joint
2093 Straight Pipe Threads
2093 Mechanical Joints
2095 Dryseal Pipe Threads
2095 Limits on Crest and Root Truncation
2095 Types of Dryseal Pipe Thread
2097 Tap Drill Sizes
2097 Special Dryseal Threads
2098 Assembly Limitations for Special Combinations
2098 British Standard Pipe Threads
2098 Non-Pressure-Tight Joints
2099 Basic Sizes
2099 Pressure-Tight Joints
2100 Limits of Size

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

PIPE AND HOSE THREADS

(Continued)

2101 Hose Coupling Screw Threads
2103 Screw Thread Lengths
2103 Fire Hose Connection
2104 Basic Dimensions
2105 Limits of Size

OTHER THREADS

2106 Interference-Fit Threads
2107 Design and Application Data
2108 External and Internal Thread Dimensions
2109 Engagement Lengths
2110 Allowances and Tolerances for Coarse Thread Series
2111 Variations in Lead and Diameter
2112 Spark Plug Threads
2113 Lamp Base and Electrical Fixture Threads
2113 Lamp Base and Socket Shell Threads
2114 Electric Fixture Thread
2114 Instrument and Microscope Threads
2114 British Association Thread
2115 Instrument Makers' Screw Thread
2115 Microscope Objective Thread
2118 Lowenherz or Löwenherz Thread
2119 Swiss Screw Thread
2119 Historical and Miscellaneous Threads
2119 Aero-Thread
2120 Briggs Pipe Thread
2120 Casing Thread
2120 Cordeaux Thread
2120 Dardelet Thread
2120 "Drunken" Thread
2120 Echols Thread
2120 French Thread (SF)
2121 Harvey Grip Thread
2121 Lloyd & Lloyd Thread
2121 Lock-Nut Pipe Thread
2121 Philadelphia Carriage Bolt Thread
2121 SAE Standard Screw Thread
2121 Sellers Screw Thread
2121 Worm Threads

MEASURING SCREW THREADS

2122 Measuring Screw Threads
2122 Pitch and Lead of Screw Threads
2122 Thread Micrometers
2123 Ball-Point Micrometers
2123 Three-Wire Method
2124 Classes of Formulas
2124 Screw Thread Profiles
2124 Accuracy of Formulas
2125 Best Wire Sizes
2126 Measuring Wire Accuracy
2126 Measuring or Contact Pressure
2126 Three-Wire Formulas
2127 NIST General Formula
2127 Formulas for Pitch Diameters
2128 Effect of Small Thread Angle
2130 Dimensions Over Wires
2130 Buckingham Simplified Formula
2131 Measuring Whitworth Threads
2132 Buckingham Exact Formula
2133 Accuracy of Formulas
2134 Three-Wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Thread Pitch Diameter
2134 Acme Screw Threads
2134 Checking Pitch Diameter
2134 Checking Thread Thickness
2135 Wire Sizes
2135 Testing Thread Angle
2136 Best Wire Diameters
2138 Measuring Taper Screw Threads by Three-Wire Method
2139 Three-Wire Method Applied to Buttress Threads
2140 Thread Gages
2140 Gaging Unified Screw Threads
2143 Thread Forms of Gages
2143 Building Up Worn Plug Gages
2143 Thread Gage Tolerances
2145 Tolerances for Cylindrical Gages
2147 Formulas for Limits

TAPPING AND THREAD CUTTING

2148 Selection of Taps
2150 Tap Rake Angles
2150 Cutting Speed
2150 Tapping Specific Materials
2153 Other Tapping Lubricants

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

TAPPING AND THREAD CUTTING
(Continued)

2153 Diameter of Tap Drill
2154 Reaming Allowance
2155 Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Thread)
2160 Hole Size Limits
2168 Tap Drill Sizes
2169 Tap and Clearance Drills
2169 Tolerances of Tapped Holes
2170 Hole Sizes before Tapping
2171 Miniature Screw Threads
2172 Tapping Drill Sizes for Screw and Pipe Threads
2172 ISO Metric Threads
2173 Clearance Holes
2174 Cold Form Tapping
2175 Core Hole Sizes
2176 Tap Drill Sizes
2176 Removing a Broken Tap
2176 Tap Drills for Pipe Taps
2176 Power for Pipe Taps
2177 High-Speed CNC Tapping
2178 Coolant for Tapping
2178 Combined Drilling and Tapping
2179 Relief Angles for Cutting Tools
2181 Lathe Change Gears
2181 Change Gears for Thread Cutting
2181 Compound Gearing
2181 Fractional Threads
2182 Change Gears for Metric Pitches
2182 Threads per Inch Obtained with a Given Combination of Gears
2182 Change Gears for Fractional Ratios
2183 Quick-Change Gearbox Output
2185 Finding Accurate Gear Ratios
2185 Lathe Change-Gears
2186 Relieving Helical-Fluted Hobs

THREAD ROLLING

2187 Flat-Die Type Machine
2187 Cylindrical-Die Type Machine

THREAD ROLLING
(Continued)

2187 Rate of Production
2188 Precision Thread Rolling
2188 Steels for Thread Rolling
2188 Diameter of Blank
2189 Automatic Screw Machines
2189 Factors Governing the Diameter
2189 Diameter of Threading Roll
2189 Kind of Thread on Roll
2190 Application of Thread Roll
2190 Tolerances on Wire for Thread Rolling
2190 Speeds and Feeds for Thread Rolling

THREAD GRINDING

2192 Accuracy Obtainable
2192 Wheels for Thread Grinding
2192 Single-Edge Wheel
2193 Edges for Roughing and Finishing
2193 Multi-Ribbed Wheels
2194 Alternate-Ribbed Wheel for Fine Pitches
2194 Grinding Threads “from the Solid”
2194 Number of Wheel Passes
2194 Wheel and Work Rotation
2195 Wheel Speeds
2195 Work Speeds
2195 Truing Grinding Wheels
2195 Wheel Hardness or Grade
2196 Grain Size
2196 Grinding by Centerless Method
2196 Principle of Centerless Grinding

THREAD MILLING

2197 Single-Cutter Method
2197 Multiple-Cutter Method
2198 Planetary Method
2198 Classes of Work
2199 Max. Pitches of Die-Cut Threads
2199 Changing Pitch of Screw Threads
2199 Helix
2200 Helix Angles

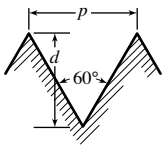
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SCREW THREAD SYSTEMS

Screw Thread Forms

Of the various screw thread forms which have been developed, the most used are those having symmetrical sides inclined at equal angles with a vertical center line through the thread apex. Present-day examples of such threads would include the Unified, the Whitworth and the Acme forms. One of the early forms was the Sharp V which is now used only occasionally. Symmetrical threads are relatively easy to manufacture and inspect and hence are widely used on mass-produced general-purpose threaded fasteners of all types. In addition to general-purpose fastener applications, certain threads are used to repeatedly move or translate machine parts against heavy loads. For these so-called translation threads a stronger form is required. The most widely used translation thread forms are the square, the Acme, and the buttress. Of these, the square thread is the most efficient, but it is also the most difficult to cut owing to its parallel sides and it cannot be adjusted to compensate for wear. Although less efficient, the Acme form of thread has none of the disadvantages of the square form and has the advantage of being somewhat stronger. The buttress form is used for translation of loads in one direction only because of its non-symmetrical form and combines the high efficiency and strength of the square thread with the ease of cutting and adjustment of the Acme thread.

V-Thread, Sharp V-Thread.—The sides of the thread form an angle of 60 degrees with each other. The top and bottom or root of this thread form are theoretically sharp, but in actual practice the thread is made with a slight flat, owing to the difficulty of producing a perfectly sharp edge and because of the tendency of such an edge to wear away or become battered. This flat is usually equal to about one twenty-fifth of the pitch, although there is no generally recognized standard.



Owing to the difficulties connected with the V-thread, the tap manufacturers agreed in 1909 to discontinue the making of sharp V-thread taps, except when ordered. One advantage of the V-thread is that the same cutting tool may be used for all pitches, whereas, with the American Standard form, the width of the point or the flat varies according to the pitch.

The V-thread is regarded as a good form where a steam-tight joint is necessary, and many of the taps used on locomotive work have this form of thread. Some modified V-threads, for locomotive boiler taps particularly, have a depth of $0.8 \times$ pitch.

The American Standard screw thread is used largely in preference to the sharp V-thread because it has several advantages; see *American Standard for Unified Screw Threads*. If p = pitch of thread, and d depth of thread, then

$$d = p \times \cos 30 \text{ deg.} = 0.866 \times p = \frac{0.866}{\text{No. of threads per inch}}$$

United States Standard Screw Thread.—William Sellers of Philadelphia, in a paper read before the Franklin Institute in 1864, originally proposed the screw thread system that later became known as the US Standard system for screw threads. A report was made to the United States Navy in May, 1868, in which the Sellers system was recommended as a standard for the Navy Department, which accounts for the name of US Standard. The American Standard Screw Thread system is a further development of the United States Standard. The thread form which is known as the American (National) form is the same as the United States Standard form. See *American Standard for Unified Screw Threads*.

American National and Unified Screw Thread Forms.—The American National form (formerly known as the United States Standard) was used for many years for most screws, bolts, and miscellaneous threaded products produced in the United States. The American National Standard for Unified Screw Threads now in use includes certain modifications

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of the former standard as is explained below and on page 1947. The basic profile is shown in Fig. 1 and is identical for both UN and UNR screw threads. In this figure H is the height of a sharp V-thread, P is the pitch, D and d are the basic major diameters, D_2 and d_2 are the basic pitch diameters, and D_1 and d_1 are the basic minor diameters. Capital letters are used to designate the internal thread dimensions (D, D_2, D_1), and lowercase letters to designate the external thread dimensions (d, d_2, d_1). Definitions of *Basic Size* and *Basic Profile of Thread* are given on page 1942.

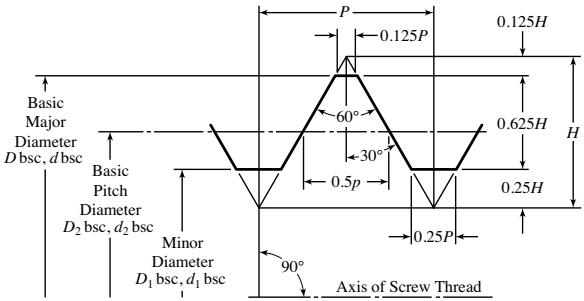
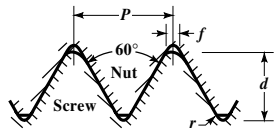


Fig. 1. Basic Profile of UN and UNF Screw Threads

In the past, other symbols were used for some of the thread dimensions illustrated above. These symbols were changed to conform with current practice in nomenclature as defined in ANSI/ASME B1.7, "Screw Threads: Nomenclature, Definitions, and Letter Symbols." The symbols used above are also in accordance with terminology and symbols used for threads of the ISO metric thread system.

International Metric Thread System.—The Système Internationale (S.I.) Thread was adopted at the International Congress for the standardization of screw threads held in Zurich in 1898. The thread form is similar to the American standard (formerly US Standard), excepting the depth which is greater. There is a clearance between the root and mating crest fixed at a maximum of $^1/_{16}$ the height of the fundamental triangle or 0.054 × pitch. A rounded root profile is recommended. The angle in the plane of the axis is 60 degrees and the crest has a flat like the American standard equal to 0.125 × pitch. This system formed the basis of the normal metric series (ISO threads) of many European countries, Japan, and many other countries, including metric thread standards of the United States.

Depth $d = 0.7035\,P$ max.; $0.6855\,P$ min.
Flat $f = 0.125\,P$
Radius $r = 0.0633\,P$ max.; $0.054\,P$ min.
Tap drill dia = major dia.– pitch



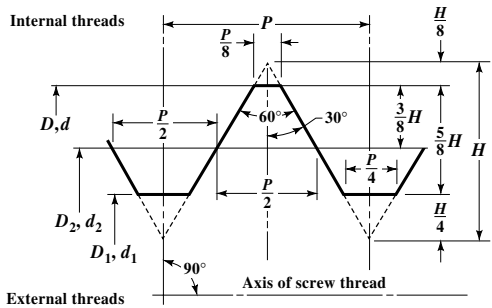
International Metric Fine Thread: The International Metric Fine Thread form of thread is the same as the International system but the pitch for a given diameter is smaller.

German Metric Thread Form: The German metric thread form is like the International Standard but the thread depth = 0.6945 P. The root radius is the same as the maximum for the International Standard or 0.0633 P.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO Metric Thread System.—ISO refers to the International Organization for Standardization, a worldwide federation of national standards bodies (for example, the American National Standards Institute is the ISO national body representing the United States) that develops standards on a very wide variety of subjects.

The basic profile of ISO metric threads is specified in ISO 68 and shown in Fig. 2. The basic profile of this thread is very similar to that of the Unified thread, and as previously discussed, H is the height of a sharp V-thread, P is the pitch, D and d are the basic major diameters, D_2 and d_2 are the basic pitch diameters, and D_1 and d_1 are the basic minor diameters. Here also, capital letters designate the internal thread dimensions (D, D_2, D_1), and lowercase letters designate the external thread dimensions (d, d_2, d_1). This metric thread is discussed in detail in the section *METRIC SCREW THREADS* starting on page 2012.



$$H = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times P = 0.866025404P$$

$$0.125H = 0.108253175P \quad 0.250H = 0.216506351P \quad 0.375H = 0.324759526P \quad 0.625H = 0.541265877P$$

Fig. 2. ISO 68 Basic Profile

Definitions of Screw Threads

The following definitions are based on American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.7-2006 (R2016) "Screw Threads: Nomenclature, Definitions, and Letter Symbols," and refer to both straight and taper threads.

Actual Size: An actual size is a measured size.

Allowance: An allowance is the prescribed difference between the design (maximum material) size and the basic size. It is numerically equal to the absolute value of the ISO term *fundamental deviation*.

Axis of Thread: Thread axis is coincident with the axis of its pitch cylinder or cone.

Basic Profile of Thread: The basic profile of a thread is the cyclical outline, in an axial plane, of the permanently established boundary between the provinces of the external and internal threads. All deviations are with respect to this boundary.

Basic Size: The basic size is that size from which the limits of size are derived by the application of allowances and tolerances.

Bilateral Tolerance: This is a tolerance in which variation is permitted in both directions from the specified dimension.

Black Crest Thread: This is a thread whose crest displays an unfinished cast, rolled, or forged surface.

Blunt Start Thread: "Blunt start" designates the removal of the incomplete thread at the starting end of the thread. This is a feature of threaded parts that are repeatedly assembled

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

by hand, such as hose couplings and thread plug gages, to prevent cutting of hands and crossing of threads. It was formerly known as a Higbee cut.

Chamfer: This is a conical surface at the starting end of a thread.

Class of Thread: The class of a thread is an alphanumerical designation to indicate the standard grade of tolerance and allowance specified for a thread.

Clearance Fit: This is a fit having limits of size so prescribed that a clearance always results when mating parts are assembled at their maximum material condition.

Complete Thread: The complete thread is that thread whose profile lies within the size limits. (See also *Effective Thread* and *Length of Complete Thread*.) *Note:* Formerly in pipe thread terminology this was referred to as "the perfect thread" but that term is no longer considered desirable.

Crest: This is that surface of a thread which joins the flanks of the thread and is farthest from the cylinder or cone from which the thread projects.

Crest Truncation: This is the radial distance between the sharp crest (crest apex) and the cylinder or cone that would bound the crest.

Depth of Thread Engagement: The depth (or height) of thread engagement between two coaxially assembled mating threads is the radial distance by which their thread forms overlap each other.

Design Size: This is the basic size with allowance applied, from which the limits of size are derived by the application of a tolerance. If there is no allowance, the design size is the same as the basic size.

Deviation: Deviation is a variation from an established dimension, position, standard, or value. In ISO usage, it is the algebraic difference between a size (actual, maximum, or minimum) and the corresponding basic size. The term deviation does not necessarily indicate an error. (See also *Error*.)

Deviation, Fundamental (ISO term): For standard threads, the fundamental deviation is the upper or lower deviation closer to the basic size. It is the upper deviation *es* for an external thread and the lower deviation *EI* for an internal thread. (See also *Allowance* and *Tolerance Position*.)

Deviation, Lower (ISO term): The algebraic difference between the minimum limit of size and the basic size. It is designated *EI* for internal and *ei* for external thread diameters.

Deviation, Upper (ISO term): The algebraic difference between the maximum limit of size and the basic size. It is designated *ES* for internal and *es* for external thread diameters.

Dimension: A numerical value expressed in appropriate units of measure and indicated on drawings along with lines, symbols, and notes to define the geometrical characteristic of an object.

Effective Size: See *Pitch Diameter, Functional Diameter*.

Effective Thread: The effective (or useful) thread includes the complete thread, and those portions of the incomplete thread which are fully formed at the root but not at the crest (in taper pipe threads it includes the so-called black crest threads); thus excluding the vanish thread.

Error: The algebraic difference between an observed or measured value beyond tolerance limits, and the specified value.

External Thread: A thread on a cylindrical or conical external surface.

Fit: Fit is the relationship resulting from the designed difference, before assembly, between the sizes of two mating parts which are to be assembled.

Flank: The flank of a thread is either surface connecting the crest with the root. The flank surface intersection with an axial plane is theoretically a straight line.

Flank Angle: The flank angles are the angles between the individual flanks and the perpendicular to the axis of the thread, measured in an axial plane. A flank angle of a symmetrical thread is commonly termed the half-angle of thread.

Flank Diametral Displacement: In a boundary profile defined system, flank diametral displacement is twice the radial distance between the straight thread flank segments of the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

maximum and minimum boundary profiles. The value of flank diametral displacement is equal to pitch diameter tolerance in a pitch line reference thread system.

Height of Thread: The height (or depth) of thread is the distance, measured radially, between the major and minor cylinders or cones, respectively.

Helix Angle: On a straight thread, the helix angle is the angle made by the helix of the thread and its relation to the thread axis. On a taper thread, the helix angle at a given axial position is the angle made by the conical spiral of the thread with the axis of the thread. The helix angle is the complement of the lead angle. (See also page 2200 for diagram.)

Higbee Cut: See *Blunt Start Thread*.

Imperfect Thread: See *Incomplete Thread*.

Included Angle: This is the angle between the flanks of the thread measured in an axial plane.

Incomplete Thread: A threaded profile having either crests or roots or both, not fully formed, resulting from their intersection with the cylindrical or end surface of the work or the vanish cone. It may occur at either end of the thread.

Interference Fit: A fit having limits of size so prescribed that an interference always results when mating parts are assembled.

Internal Thread: A thread on a cylindrical or conical internal surface.

Lead: Lead is the axial distance between two consecutive points of intersection of a helix by a line parallel to the axis of the cylinder on which it lies, i.e., the axial movement of a threaded part rotated one turn in its mating thread.

Lead Angle: On a straight thread, the lead angle is the angle made by the helix of the thread at the pitch line with a plane perpendicular to the axis. On a taper thread, the lead angle at a given axial position is the angle made by the conical spiral of the thread with the perpendicular to the axis at the pitch line.

Lead Thread: That portion of the incomplete thread that is fully formed at the root but not fully formed at the crest that occurs at the entering end of either an external or internal thread.

Left-hand Thread: A thread is a left-hand thread if, when viewed axially, it winds in a counterclockwise and receding direction. Left-hand threads are designated LH.

Length of Complete Thread: The axial length of a thread section having full form at both crest and root but also including a maximum of two pitches at the start of the thread which may have a chamfer or incomplete crests.

Length of Thread Engagement: The length of thread engagement of two mating threads is the axial distance over which the two threads, each having full form at both crest and root, are designed to contact. (See also *Length of Complete Thread*.)

Limits of Size: The applicable maximum and minimum sizes.

Major Clearance: The radial distance between the root of the internal thread and the crest of the external thread of the coaxially assembled designed forms of mating threads.

Major Cone: The imaginary cone that would bound the crests of an external taper thread or the roots of an internal taper thread.

Major Cylinder: The imaginary cylinder that would bound the crests of an external straight thread or the roots of an internal straight thread.

Major Diameter: On a straight thread the major diameter is that of the major cylinder. On a taper thread the major diameter at a given position on the thread axis is that of the major cone at that position. (See also *Major Cylinder* and *Major Cone*.)

Maximum Material Condition: (*MMC*): The condition where a feature of size contains the maximum amount of material within the stated limits of size. For example, minimum internal thread size or maximum external thread size.

Minimum Material Condition: (*Least Material Condition* (*LMC*)): The condition where a feature of size contains the least amount of material within the stated limits of size. For example, maximum internal thread size or minimum external thread size.

Minor Clearance: The radial distance between the crest of the internal thread and the root of the external thread of the coaxially assembled design forms of mating threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Minor Cone: The imaginary cone that would bound the roots of an external taper thread or the crests of an internal taper thread.

Minor Cylinder: The imaginary cylinder that would bound the roots of an external straight thread or the crests of an internal straight thread.

Minor Diameter: On a straight thread the minor diameter is that of the minor cylinder. On a taper thread the minor diameter at a given position on the thread axis is that of the minor cone at that position. (See also *Minor Cylinder* and *Minor Cone*.)

Multiple-Start Thread: A thread in which the lead is an integral multiple, other than one, of the pitch.

Nominal Size: Designation used for general identification.

Parallel Thread: See *Screw Thread*.

Partial Thread: See *Vanish Thread*.

Pitch: The pitch of a thread having uniform spacing is the distance measured parallel with its axis between corresponding points on adjacent thread forms in the same axial plane and on the same side of the axis. Pitch is equal to the lead divided by the number of thread starts.

Pitch Cone: The pitch cone is an imaginary cone of such apex angle and location of its vertex and axis that its surface would pass through a taper thread in such a manner as to make the widths of the thread ridge and the thread groove equal. It is, therefore, located equidistantly between the sharp major and minor cones of a given thread form. On a theoretically perfect taper thread, these widths are equal to one-half the basic pitch. (See also *Axis of Thread* and *Pitch Diameter*.)

Pitch Cylinder: The pitch cylinder is an imaginary cylinder of such diameter and location of its axis that its surface would pass through a straight thread in such a manner as to make the widths of the thread ridge and groove equal. It is, therefore, located equidistantly between the sharp major and minor cylinders of a given thread form. On a theoretically perfect thread these widths are equal to one-half the basic pitch. (See also *Axis of Thread* and *Pitch Diameter*.)

Pitch Diameter: On a straight thread the pitch diameter is the diameter of the pitch cylinder. On a taper thread the pitch diameter at a given position on the thread axis is the diameter of the pitch cone at that position. *Note:* When the crest of a thread is truncated beyond the pitch line, the pitch diameter and pitch cylinder or pitch cone would be based on a theoretical extension of the thread flanks.

Pitch Diameter, Functional Diameter: The functional diameter is the pitch diameter of an enveloping thread with perfect pitch, lead, and flank angles and having a specified length of engagement. It includes the cumulative effect of variations in lead (pitch), flank angle, taper, straightness, and roundness. Variations at the thread crest and root are excluded. Other, nonpreferred terms are *virtual diameter, effective size, virtual effective diameter,* and *thread assembly diameter.*

Pitch Line: The generator of the cylinder or cone specified in *Pitch Cylinder* and *Pitch Cone*.

Right-hand Thread: A thread is a fight-hand thread if, when viewed axially, it winds in a clockwise and receding direction. A thread is considered to be right-hand unless specifically indicated otherwise.

Root: That surface of the thread which joins the flanks of adjacent thread forms and is immediately adjacent to the cylinder or cone from which the thread projects.

Root Truncation: The radial distance between the sharp root (root apex) and the cylinder or cone that would bound the root. See also *Sharp Root (Root Apex)*.

Runout: As applied to screw threads, unless otherwise specified, runout refers to circular runout of major and minor cylinders with respect to the pitch cylinder. Circular runout, in accordance with ASME Y14.5, controls cumulative variations of circularity and coaxiality. Runout includes variations due to eccentricity and out-of-roundness. The amount of runout is usually expressed in terms of full indicator movement (FIM).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Screw Thread: A screw thread is a continuous and projecting helical ridge usually of uniform section on a cylindrical or conical surface.

Sharp Crest (Crest Apex): The apex formed by the intersection of the flanks of a thread when extended, if necessary, beyond the crest.

Sharp Root (Root Apex): The apex formed by the intersection of the adjacent flanks of adjacent threads when extended, if necessary, beyond the root.

Standoff: The axial distance between specified reference points on external and internal taper thread members or gages, when assembled with a specified torque or under other specified conditions.

Straight Thread: A straight thread is a screw thread projecting from a cylindrical surface.

Taper Thread: A taper thread is a screw thread projecting from a conical surface.

Tensile Stress Area: The tensile stress area is an arbitrarily selected area for computing the tensile strength of an externally threaded fastener so that the fastener strength is consistent with the basic material strength of the fastener. It is typically defined as a function of pitch diameter and/or minor diameter to calculate a circular cross section of the fastener correcting for the notch and helix effects of the threads.

Thread: A thread is a portion of a screw thread encompassed by one pitch. On a single-start thread it is equal to one turn. (See also *Threads per Inch* and *Turns per Inch*.)

Thread Angle: See *Included Angle*.

Thread Runout: See *Vanish Thread*.

Thread Series: Thread Series are groups of diameter/pitch combinations distinguished from each other by the number of threads per inch applied to specific diameters.

Thread Shear Area: The thread shear area is the total ridge cross-sectional area intersected by a specified cylinder with diameter and length equal to the mating thread engagement. Usually the cylinder diameter for external thread shearing is the minor diameter of the internal thread and for internal thread shearing it is the major diameter of the external thread.

Threads per Inch: The number of threads per inch is the reciprocal of the axial pitch in inches.

Tolerance: The total amount by which a specific dimension is permitted to vary. The tolerance is the difference between the maximum and minimum limits.

Tolerance Class: (*metric*): The tolerance class (metric) is the combination of a tolerance position with a tolerance grade. It specifies the allowance (fundamental deviation), pitch diameter tolerance (flank diametral displacement), and the crest diameter tolerance.

Tolerance Grade: (*metric*): The tolerance grade (metric) is a numerical symbol that designates the tolerances of crest diameters and pitch diameters applied to the design profiles.

Tolerance Limit: The variation, positive or negative, by which a size is permitted to depart from the design size.

Tolerance Position: (*metric*): The tolerance position (metric) is a letter symbol that designates the position of the tolerance zone in relation to the basic size. This position provides the allowance (fundamental deviation).

Total Thread: Includes the complete and all the incomplete thread, thus including the vanish thread and the lead thread.

Transition Fit: A fit having limits of size so prescribed that either a clearance or an interference may result when mating parts are assembled.

Turns per Inch: The number of turns per inch is the reciprocal of the lead in inches.

Unilateral Tolerance: A tolerance in which variation is permitted in one direction from the specified dimension.

Vanish Thread: (*Partial Thread*, *Washout Thread*, or *Thread Runout*): That portion of the incomplete thread which is not fully formed at the root or at crest and root. It is produced by the chamfer at the starting end of the thread forming tool.

Virtual Diameter: See *Pitch Diameter, Functional Diameter*.

Washout Thread: See *Vanish Thread*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

UNIFIED SCREW THREADS

American Standard for Unified Screw Threads

American Standard B1.1-1949 was the first American standard to cover those Unified Thread Series agreed upon by the United Kingdom, Canada, and the United States to obtain screw thread interchangeability among these three nations. These Unified threads are now the basic American standard for fastening types of screw threads. In relation to previous American practice, Unified threads have substantially the same thread form and are mechanically interchangeable with the former American National threads of the same diameter and pitch.

The principal differences between the two systems lie in: 1) application of allowances; 2) variation of tolerances with size; 3) difference in amount of pitch diameter tolerance on external and internal threads; and 4) differences in thread designation.

In the Unified system an allowance is provided on both the Classes 1A and 2A external threads whereas in the American National system only the Class I external thread has an allowance. Also, in the Unified system, the pitch diameter tolerance of an internal thread is 30 percent greater than that of the external thread, whereas they are equal in the American National system.

The Unified standard is designed to correct certain production difficulties resulting from the former standard. Often, under the old system, the tolerances of the product were practically absorbed by the combined tool and gage tolerances, leaving little for a working tolerance in manufacture. Somewhat greater tolerances are now provided for nut threads. As contrasted with the old "classes of fit" 1, 2, and 3, for each of which the pitch diameter tolerance on the external and internal threads were equal, the Classes 1B, 2B, and 3B (internal) threads in the new standard have, respectively, a 30 percent larger pitch diameter tolerance than the 1A, 2A, and 3A (external) threads. Relatively more tolerance is provided for fine threads than for coarse threads of the same pitch. Where previous tolerances were more liberal than required, they were reduced.

Revised Standard.—The revised screw thread standard ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018) is much the same as that of ANSI B1.1-1982. The latest symbols in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.7-2006 (R2016) Nomenclature, are used. Acceptability criteria are described in ANSI/ASME B1.3-2007 (R2017) Screw Thread Gaging Systems for Acceptability: Inch and Metric Screw Threads (UN, UNR, UNJ, M, and MJ).

Where the letters U, A or B do not appear in the thread designations, the threads conform to the outdated American National screw threads.

Thread Form.—The Design Profiles for Unified screw threads, shown on page 1948, define the maximum material condition for external and internal threads with no allowance and are derived from the Basic Profile, shown on page 1941.

UN External Screw Threads: A flat root contour is specified, but it is necessary to provide for some threading tool crest wear, hence a rounded root contour cleared beyond the 0.25*P* flat width of the Basic Profile is optional.

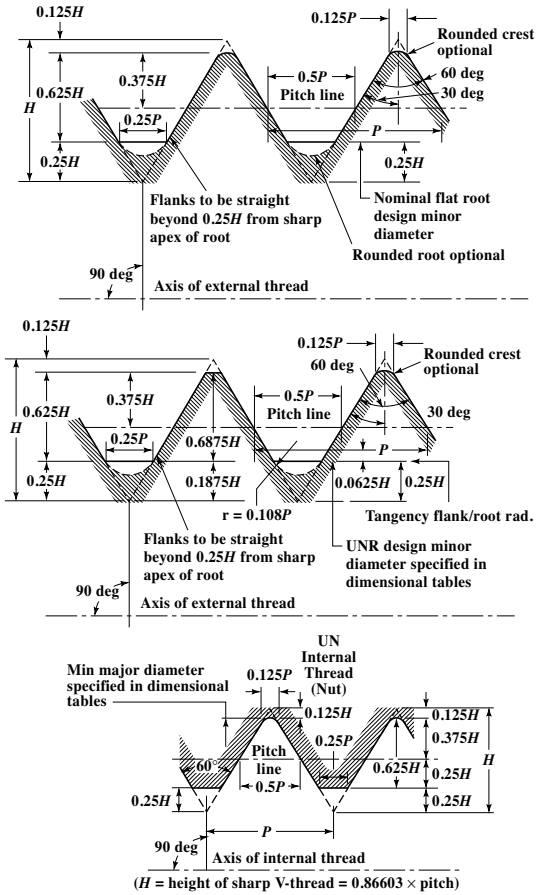
UNR External Screw Threads: To reduce the rate of threading tool crest wear and to improve fatigue strength of a flat root thread, the Design Profile of the UNR thread has a smooth, continuous, non-reversing contour with a radius of curvature not less than 0.108*P* at any point and blends tangentially into the flanks and any straight segment. At the maximum material condition, the point of tangency is specified to be at a distance not less than 0.625*H* (where *H* is the height of a sharp V-thread) below the basic major diameter.

UN and UNR External Screw Threads: The Design Profiles of both UN and UNR external screw threads have flat crests. However, in practice, product threads are produced with partially or completely rounded crests. A rounded crest tangent at 0.125*P* flat is shown as an option on page 1948.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

UN Internal Screw Thread: In practice it is necessary to provide for some threading tool crest wear, therefore the root of the Design Profile is rounded and cleared beyond the 0.125*P* flat width of the Basic Profile. There is no internal UNR screw thread.

American National Standard Unified Internal and External Screw Thread Design Profiles (Maximum Material Condition)



Thread Series.—Thread series are groups of diameter-pitch combinations distinguished from each other by the numbers of threads per inch applied to a specific diameter. The various diameter-pitch combinations of eleven standard series are shown in Table 2. The limits of size of threads in the eleven standard series together with certain selected combinations of diameter and pitch, as well as the symbols for designating the various threads, are given in Table 3. *(Text continues on page 1978)*

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. American Standard Unified Inch Screw Thread Form Data

Threads per Inch	Pitch	Depth of Sharp V-Thread	Depth of Int. Thd. and UN Ext. Thd.[a]	Depth of UNR Ext. Thd.	Truncation of Ext. Thd. Root	Truncation of UNR Ext. Thd. Root[b]	Truncation of Ext. Thd. Crest	Truncation of Int. Thd. Root	Truncation of Int. Thd. Crest	Flat at Ext. Thd. Crest and Int. Thd. Root	Basic Flat at Int. Thd. Crest[c]	Maximum Ext. Thd. Root Radius	Addendum of Ext. Thd.
n	*P*	0.86603*P*	0.54127*P*	0.59539*P*	0.21651*P*	0.16238*P*	0.10825*P*	0.10825*P*	0.2165*P*	0.125*P*	0.25*P*	0.14434*P*	0.32476*P*
80	0.01250	0.01083	0.00677	0.00744	0.00271	0.00203	0.00135	0.00135	0.00271	0.00156	0.00312	0.00180	0.00406
72	0.01389	0.01203	0.00752	0.00827	0.00301	0.00226	0.00150	0.00150	0.00301	0.00174	0.00347	0.00200	0.00451
64	0.01563	0.01353	0.00846	0.00930	0.00338	0.00254	0.00169	0.00169	0.00338	0.00195	0.00391	0.00226	0.00507
56	0.01786	0.01546	0.00967	0.01063	0.00387	0.00290	0.00193	0.00193	0.00387	0.00223	0.00446	0.00258	0.00580
48	0.02083	0.01804	0.01128	0.01240	0.00451	0.00338	0.00226	0.00226	0.00451	0.00260	0.00521	0.00301	0.00677
44	0.02273	0.01968	0.01230	0.01353	0.00492	0.00369	0.00246	0.00246	0.00492	0.00284	0.00568	0.00328	0.00738
40	0.02500	0.02165	0.01353	0.01488	0.00541	0.00406	0.00271	0.00271	0.00541	0.00312	0.00625	0.00361	0.00812
36	0.02778	0.02406	0.01504	0.01654	0.00601	0.00451	0.00301	0.00301	0.00601	0.00347	0.00694	0.00401	0.00902
32	0.03125	0.02706	0.01691	0.01861	0.00677	0.00507	0.00338	0.00338	0.00677	0.00391	0.00781	0.00451	0.01015
28	0.03571	0.03093	0.01933	0.02126	0.00773	0.00580	0.00387	0.00387	0.00773	0.00446	0.00893	0.00515	0.01160
27	0.03704	0.03208	0.02005	0.02205	0.00802	0.00601	0.00401	0.00401	0.00802	0.00463	0.00926	0.00535	0.01203
24	0.04167	0.03608	0.02255	0.02481	0.00902	0.00677	0.00451	0.00451	0.00902	0.00521	0.01042	0.00601	0.01353
20	0.05000	0.04330	0.02706	0.02977	0.01083	0.00812	0.00541	0.00541	0.01083	0.00625	0.01250	0.00722	0.01624
18	0.05556	0.04811	0.03007	0.03308	0.01203	0.00902	0.00601	0.00601	0.01203	0.00694	0.01389	0.00802	0.01804
16	0.06250	0.05413	0.03383	0.03721	0.01353	0.01015	0.00677	0.00677	0.01353	0.00781	0.01562	0.00902	0.02030
14	0.07143	0.06186	0.03866	0.04253	0.01546	0.01160	0.00773	0.00773	0.01546	0.00893	0.01786	0.01031	0.02320
13	0.07692	0.06662	0.04164	0.04580	0.01655	0.01249	0.00833	0.00833	0.01665	0.00962	0.01923	0.01110	0.02498
12	0.08333	0.07217	0.04511	0.04962	0.01804	0.01353	0.00902	0.00902	0.01804	0.01042	0.02083	0.01203	0.02706
11½	0.08696	0.07531	0.04707	0.05177	0.01883	0.01412	0.00941	0.00941	0.01883	0.01087	0.02174	0.01255	0.02824
11	0.09091	0.07873	0.04921	0.05413	0.01968	0.01476	0.00984	0.00984	0.01968	0.01136	0.02273	0.01312	0.02952
10	0.10000	0.08660	0.05413	0.05954	0.02165	0.01624	0.01083	0.01083	0.02165	0.01250	0.02500	0.01443	0.03248
9	0.11111	0.09623	0.06014	0.06615	0.02406	0.01804	0.01203	0.01203	0.02406	0.01389	0.02778	0.01604	0.03608
8	0.12500	0.10825	0.06766	0.07442	0.02706	0.02030	0.01353	0.01353	0.02706	0.01562	0.03125	0.01804	0.04059
7	0.14286	0.12372	0.07732	0.08506	0.03093	0.02320	0.01546	0.01546	0.03093	0.01786	0.03571	0.02062	0.04639
6	0.16667	0.14434	0.09021	0.09923	0.03608	0.02706	0.01804	0.01804	0.03608	0.02083	0.04167	0.02406	0.05413
5	0.20000	0.17321	0.10825	0.11908	0.04330	0.03248	0.02165	0.02165	0.04330	0.02500	0.05000	0.02887	0.06495
4½	0.22222	0.19245	0.12028	0.13231	0.04811	0.03608	0.02406	0.02406	0.04811	0.02778	0.05556	0.03208	0.07217
4	0.25000	0.21651	0.13532	0.14885	0.05413	0.04059	0.02706	0.02706	0.05413	0.03125	0.06250	0.03608	0.08119

[a] Also depth of thread engagement.
[b] Design profile.
[c] Also basic flat at external UN thread root.
All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Diameter-Pitch Combinations for Standard Series of Threads (UN/UNR)

Sizes[a] No. or Inches	Basic Major Dia. Inches	Threads per Inch									
		Series with Graded Pitches			Series with Uniform (Constant) Pitches						
		Coarse UNC	Fine[b] UNF	Extra fine[c] UNEF	4-UN	6-UN	8-UN	12-UN	16-UN	20-UN	28-UN	32-UN
0	0.0600	…	80	Series designation shown indicates the UN thread form; however, the UNR thread form may be specified by substituting UNR in place of UN in all designations for external threads.								
(1)	0.0730	64	72									
2	0.0860	56	64									
(3)	0.0990	48	56									
4	0.1120	40	48									
5	0.1250	40	44	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
6	0.1380	32	40	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	UNC
8	0.1640	32	36	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	UNC
10	0.1900	24	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	UNF
(12)	0.2160	24	28	32	…	…	…	…	…	…	UNF	UNEF
1/4	0.2500	20	28	32	…	…	…	…	…	UNC	UNF	UNEF
5/16	0.3125	18	24	32	…	…	…	…	…	20	28	UNEF
3/8	0.3750	16	24	32	…	…	…	…	UNC	20	28	UNEF
7/16	0.4375	14	20	28	…	…	…	…	16	UNF	UNEF	32
1/2	0.5000	13	20	28	…	…	…	…	16	UNF	UNEF	32
9/16	0.5625	12	18	24	…	…	…	UNC	16	20	28	32
5/8	0.6250	11	18	24	…	…	…	12	16	20	28	32
(11/16)	0.6875	…	…	24	…	…	…	12	16	20	28	32
3/4	0.7500	10	16	20	…	…	…	12	UNF	UNEF	28	32
(13/16)	0.8125	…	…	20	…	…	…	12	16	UNEF	28	32
7/8	0.8750	9	14	20	…	…	…	12	16	UNEF	28	32
(15/16)	0.9375	…	…	20	…	…	…	12	16	UNEF	28	32
1	1.0000	8	12	20	…	…	UNC	UNF	16	UNEF	28	32
(1 1/16)	1.0625	…	…	18	…	…	8	12	16	20	28	…
1 1/8	1.1250	7	12	18	…	…	8	UNF	16	20	28	…
(1 3/16)	1.1875	…	…	18	…	…	8	12	16	20	28	…
1 1/4	1.2500	7	12	18	…	…	8	UNF	16	20	28	…
1 5/16	1.3125	…	…	18	…	…	8	12	16	20	28	…
1 3/8	1.3750	6	12	18	…	UNC	8	UNF	16	20	28	…
(1 7/16)	1.4375	…	…	18	…	6	8	12	16	20	28	…
1 1/2	1.5000	6	12	18	…	UNC	8	UNF	16	20	28	…
(1 9/16)	1.5625	…	…	18	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
1 5/8	1.6250	…	…	18	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(1 11/16)	1.6875	…	…	18	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
1 3/4	1.7500	5	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(1 13/16)	1.8125	…	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
1 7/8	1.8750	…	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(1 15/16)	1.9375	…	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
2	2.0000	4½	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(2 1/8)	2.1250	…	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
2 1/4	2.2500	4 ½	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(2 3/8)	2.3750	…	…	…	…	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
2 1/2	2.5000	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(2 5/8)	2.6250	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
2 3/4	2.7500	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(2 7/8)	2.8750	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
3	3.0000	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	20	…	…
(3 1/8)	3.1250	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
3 1/4	3.2500	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
(3 3/8)	3.3750	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
3 1/2	3.5000	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
(3 5/8)	3.6250	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
3 3/4	3.7500	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
(3 7/8)	3.8750	…	…	…	4	6	8	12	16	…	…	…
4	4.0000	4	…	…	UNC	6	8	12	16	…	…	…

[a] Sizes shown in parentheses are secondary sizes. Primary sizes of $4\frac{1}{4}, 4\frac{1}{2}, 4\frac{3}{4}, 5, 5\frac{1}{4}, 5\frac{1}{2}, 5\frac{3}{4}$ and 6 inches also are in the 4, 6, 8, 12, and 16 thread series; secondary sizes of $4\frac{1}{8}, 4\frac{3}{8}, 4\frac{5}{8}, 4\frac{7}{8}, 5\frac{1}{8}, 5\frac{3}{8}, 5\frac{5}{8}$, and $5\frac{7}{8}$ also are in the 4, 6, 8, 12, and 16 thread series.

[b] For diameters over $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, use 12-thread series.

[c] For diameters over $1\frac{11}{16}$ inches, use 16-thread series.

For UNR thread form substitute UNR for UN for external threads only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
0-80 UNF	2A	0.0005	0.0595	0.0563	—	0.0514	0.0496	0.0446	2B	0.0465	0.0514	0.0519	0.0542	0.0600
	3A	0.0000	0.0600	0.0568	—	0.0519	0.0506	0.0451	3B	0.0465	0.0514	0.0519	0.0536	0.0600
1-64 UNC	2A	0.0006	0.0724	0.0686	—	0.0623	0.0603	0.0538	2B	0.0561	0.0622	0.0629	0.0655	0.0730
	3A	0.0000	0.0730	0.0692	—	0.0629	0.0614	0.0544	3B	0.0561	0.0622	0.0629	0.0648	0.0730
1-72 UNF	2A	0.0006	0.0724	0.0689	—	0.0634	0.0615	0.0559	2B	0.0580	0.0634	0.0640	0.0665	0.0730
	3A	0.0000	0.0730	0.0695	—	0.0640	0.0626	0.0565	3B	0.0580	0.0634	0.0640	0.0659	0.0730
2-56 UNC	2A	0.0006	0.0854	0.0813	—	0.0738	0.0717	0.0641	2B	0.0667	0.0737	0.0744	0.0772	0.0860
	3A	0.0000	0.0860	0.0819	—	0.0744	0.0728	0.0647	3B	0.0667	0.0737	0.0744	0.0765	0.0860
2-64 UNF	2A	0.0006	0.0854	0.0816	—	0.0753	0.0733	0.0668	2B	0.0691	0.0752	0.0759	0.0786	0.0860
	3A	0.0000	0.0860	0.0822	—	0.0759	0.0744	0.0674	3B	0.0691	0.0752	0.0759	0.0779	0.0860
3-48 UNC	2A	0.0007	0.0983	0.0938	—	0.0848	0.0825	0.0735	2B	0.0764	0.0845	0.0855	0.0885	0.0990
	3A	0.0000	0.0990	0.0945	—	0.0855	0.0838	0.0742	3B	0.0764	0.0845	0.0855	0.0877	0.0990
3-56 UNF	2A	0.0007	0.0983	0.0942	—	0.0867	0.0845	0.0770	2B	0.0797	0.0865	0.0874	0.0902	0.0990
	3A	0.0000	0.0990	0.0949	—	0.0874	0.0858	0.0777	3B	0.0797	0.0865	0.0874	0.0895	0.0990
4-40 UNC	2A	0.0008	0.1112	0.1061	—	0.0950	0.0925	0.0814	2B	0.0849	0.0939	0.0958	0.0991	0.1120
	3A	0.0000	0.1120	0.1069	—	0.0958	0.0939	0.0822	3B	0.0849	0.0939	0.0958	0.0982	0.1120
4-48 UNF	2A	0.0007	0.1113	0.1068	—	0.0978	0.0954	0.0865	2B	0.0894	0.0968	0.0985	0.1016	0.1120
	3A	0.0000	0.1120	0.1075	—	0.0985	0.0967	0.0872	3B	0.0894	0.0968	0.0985	0.1008	0.1120
5-40 UNC	2A	0.0008	0.1242	0.1191	—	0.1080	0.1054	0.0944	2B	0.0979	0.1062	0.1088	0.1121	0.1250
	3A	0.0000	0.1250	0.1199	—	0.1088	0.1069	0.0952	3B	0.0979	0.1062	0.1088	0.1113	0.1250
5-44 UNF	2A	0.0007	0.1243	0.1195	—	0.1095	0.1070	0.0972	2B	0.1004	0.1079	0.1102	0.1134	0.1250
	3A	0.0000	0.1250	0.1202	—	0.1102	0.1083	0.0979	3B	0.1004	0.1079	0.1102	0.1126	0.1250
6-32 UNC	2A	0.0008	0.1372	0.1312	—	0.1169	0.1141	0.1000	2B	0.104	0.114	0.1177	0.1214	0.1380
	3A	0.0000	0.1380	0.1320	—	0.1177	0.1156	0.1008	3B	0.1040	0.1139	0.1177	0.1204	0.1380
6-40 UNF	2A	0.0008	0.1372	0.1321	—	0.1210	0.1184	0.1074	2B	0.111	0.119	0.1218	0.1252	0.1380
	3A	0.0000	0.1380	0.1329	—	0.1218	0.1198	0.1082	3B	0.1110	0.1186	0.1218	0.1243	0.1380
8-32 UNC	2A	0.0009	0.1631	0.1571	—	0.1428	0.1399	0.1259	2B	0.130	0.139	0.1437	0.1475	0.1640
	3A	0.0000	0.1640	0.1580	—	0.1437	0.1415	0.1268	3B	0.1300	0.1388	0.1437	0.1465	0.1640
8-36 UNF	2A	0.0008	0.1632	0.1577	—	0.1452	0.1424	0.1301	2B	0.134	0.142	0.1460	0.1496	0.1640
	3A	0.0000	0.1640	0.1585	—	0.1460	0.1439	0.1309	3B	0.1340	0.1416	0.1460	0.1487	0.1640

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
10-24 UNC	2A	0.0010	0.1890	0.1818	—	0.1619	0.1586	0.1394	2B	0.145	0.155	0.1629	0.1672	0.1900
	3A	0.0000	0.1900	0.1828	—	0.1629	0.1604	0.1404	3B	0.1450	0.1555	0.1629	0.1661	0.1900
10-28 UNS	2A	0.0010	0.1890	0.1825	—	0.1658	0.1625	0.1465	2B	0.151	0.160	0.1668	0.1711	0.1900
10-32 UNF	2A	0.0009	0.1891	0.1831	—	0.1688	0.1658	0.1519	2B	0.156	0.164	0.1697	0.1736	0.1900
	3A	0.0000	0.1900	0.1840	—	0.1697	0.1674	0.1528	3B	0.1560	0.1641	0.1697	0.1726	0.1900
10-36 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.1891	0.1836	—	0.1711	0.1681	0.1560	2B	0.160	0.166	0.1720	0.1759	0.1900
10-40 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.1891	0.1840	—	0.1729	0.1700	0.1593	2B	0.163	0.169	0.1738	0.1775	0.1900
10-48 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.1892	0.1847	—	0.1757	0.1731	0.1644	2B	0.167	0.172	0.1765	0.1799	0.1900
10-56 UNS	2A	0.0007	0.1893	0.1852	—	0.1777	0.1752	0.1680	2B	0.171	0.175	0.1784	0.1816	0.1900
12-24 UNC	2A	0.0010	0.2150	0.2078	—	0.1879	0.1845	0.1654	2B	0.171	0.181	0.1889	0.1933	0.2160
	3A	0.0000	0.2160	0.2088	—	0.1889	0.1863	0.1664	3B	0.1710	0.1807	0.1889	0.1922	0.2160
12-28 UNF	2A	0.0010	0.2150	0.2085	—	0.1918	0.1886	0.1725	2B	0.177	0.186	0.1928	0.1970	0.2160
	3A	0.0000	0.2160	0.2095	—	0.1928	0.1904	0.1735	3B	0.1770	0.1857	0.1928	0.1959	0.2160
12-32 UNEF	2A	0.0010	0.2150	0.2090	—	0.1947	0.1915	0.1778	2B	0.182	0.190	0.1957	0.1998	0.2160
	3A	0.0000	0.2160	0.2100	—	0.1957	0.1933	0.1788	3B	0.1820	0.1895	0.1957	0.1988	0.2160
12-36 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.2151	0.2096	—	0.1971	0.1941	0.1820	2B	0.186	0.193	0.1980	0.2019	0.2160
12-40 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.2151	0.2100	—	0.1989	0.1960	0.1853	2B	0.189	0.195	0.1998	0.2036	0.2160
12-48 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.2152	0.2107	—	0.2017	0.1990	0.1904	2B	0.193	0.198	0.2025	0.2060	0.2160
12-56 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.2152	0.2111	—	0.2036	0.2011	0.1939	2B	0.197	0.201	0.2044	0.2077	0.2160
¼-20 UNC	1A	0.0011	0.2489	0.2367	—	0.2164	0.2108	0.1894	1B	0.196	0.207	0.2175	0.2248	0.2500
	2A	0.0011	0.2489	0.2408	0.2367	0.2164	0.2127	0.1894	2B	0.196	0.207	0.2175	0.2224	0.2500
	3A	0.0000	0.2500	0.2419	—	0.2175	0.2147	0.1905	3B	0.1960	0.2067	0.2175	0.2211	0.2500
¼-24 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.2489	0.2417	—	0.2218	0.2181	0.1993	2B	0.205	0.215	0.2229	0.2277	0.2500
¼-27 UNS	2A	0.0010	0.2490	0.2423	—	0.2249	0.2214	0.2049	2B	0.210	0.219	0.2259	0.2304	0.2500
¼-28 UNF	1A	0.0010	0.2490	0.2392	—	0.2258	0.2208	0.2065	1B	0.211	0.220	0.2268	0.2333	0.2500
	2A	0.0010	0.2490	0.2425	—	0.2258	0.2225	0.2065	2B	0.211	0.220	0.2268	0.2311	0.2500
	3A	0.0000	0.2500	0.2435	—	0.2268	0.2243	0.2075	3B	0.2110	0.2190	0.2268	0.2300	0.2500
¼-32 UNEF	2A	0.0010	0.2490	0.2430	—	0.2287	0.2255	0.2118	2B	0.216	0.224	0.2297	0.2339	0.2500
	3A	0.0000	0.2500	0.2440	—	0.2297	0.2273	0.2128	3B	0.2160	0.2229	0.2297	0.2328	0.2500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1/4-36 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.2491	0.2436	—	0.2311	0.2280	0.2160	2B	0.220	0.227	0.2320	0.2360	0.2500
1/4-40 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.2491	0.2440	—	0.2329	0.2300	0.2193	2B	0.223	0.229	0.2338	0.2376	0.2500
1/4-48 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.2492	0.2447	—	0.2357	0.2330	0.2244	2B	0.227	0.232	0.2365	0.2401	0.2500
1/4-56 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.2492	0.2451	—	0.2376	0.2350	0.2279	2B	0.231	0.235	0.2384	0.2417	0.2500
5/16-18 UNC	1A	0.0012	0.3113	0.2982	—	0.2752	0.2691	0.2451	1B	0.252	0.265	0.2764	0.2843	0.3125
	2A	0.0012	0.3113	0.3026	0.2982	0.2752	0.2712	0.2451	2B	0.252	0.265	0.2764	0.2817	0.3125
	3A	0.0000	0.3125	0.3038	—	0.2764	0.2734	0.2463	3B	0.2520	0.2630	0.2764	0.2803	0.3125
5/16-20 UN	2A	0.0012	0.3113	0.3032	—	0.2788	0.2747	0.2518	2B	0.258	0.270	0.2800	0.2853	0.3125
	3A	0.0000	0.3125	0.3044	—	0.2800	0.2770	0.2530	3B	0.2580	0.2680	0.2800	0.2840	0.3125
5/16-24 UNF	1A	0.0011	0.3114	0.3006	—	0.2843	0.2788	0.2618	1B	0.267	0.277	0.2854	0.2925	0.3125
	2A	0.0011	0.3114	0.3042	—	0.2843	0.2806	0.2618	2B	0.267	0.277	0.2854	0.2902	0.3125
	3A	0.0000	0.3125	0.3053	—	0.2854	0.2827	0.2629	3B	0.2670	0.2754	0.2854	0.2890	0.3125
5/16-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.3114	0.3047	—	0.2873	0.2837	0.2673	2B	0.272	0.281	0.2884	0.2930	0.3125
5/16-28 UN	2A	0.0010	0.3115	0.3050	—	0.2883	0.2848	0.2690	2B	0.274	0.282	0.2893	0.2938	0.3125
	3A	0.0000	0.3125	0.3060	—	0.2893	0.2867	0.2700	3B	0.2740	0.2807	0.2893	0.2927	0.3125
5/16-32 UNEF	2A	0.0010	0.3115	0.3055	—	0.2912	0.2879	0.2743	2B	0.279	0.286	0.2922	0.2965	0.3125
	3A	0.0000	0.3125	0.3065	—	0.2922	0.2897	0.2753	3B	0.2790	0.2846	0.2922	0.2954	0.3125
5/16-36 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.3116	0.3061	—	0.2936	0.2905	0.2785	2B	0.282	0.289	0.2945	0.2986	0.3125
5/16-40 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.3116	0.3065	—	0.2954	0.2924	0.2818	2B	0.285	0.291	0.2963	0.3002	0.3125
5/16-48 UNS	2A	0.0008	0.3117	0.3072	—	0.2982	0.2954	0.2869	2B	0.290	0.295	0.2990	0.3026	0.3125
3/8-16 UNC	1A	0.0013	0.3737	0.3595	—	0.3331	0.3266	0.2993	1B	0.307	0.321	0.3344	0.3429	0.3750
	2A	0.0013	0.3737	0.3643	0.3595	0.3331	0.3287	0.2993	2B	0.307	0.321	0.3344	0.3401	0.3750
	3A	0.0000	0.3750	0.3656	—	0.3344	0.3311	0.3006	3B	0.3070	0.3182	0.3344	0.3387	0.3750
3/8-18 UNS	2A	0.0013	0.3737	0.3650	—	0.3376	0.3333	0.3075	2B	0.315	0.328	0.3389	0.3445	0.3750
3/8-20 UN	2A	0.0012	0.3738	0.3657	—	0.3413	0.3372	0.3143	2B	0.321	0.332	0.3425	0.3479	0.3750
	3A	0.0000	0.3750	0.3669	—	0.3425	0.3394	0.3155	3B	0.3210	0.3297	0.3425	0.3465	0.3750

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3/8-24 UNF	1A	0.0011	0.3739	0.3631	—	0.3468	0.3411	0.3243	1B	0.330	0.340	0.3479	0.3553	0.3750
	2A	0.0011	0.3739	0.3667	—	0.3468	0.3430	0.3243	2B	0.330	0.340	0.3479	0.3528	0.3750
	3A	0.0000	0.3750	0.3678	—	0.3479	0.3450	0.3254	3B	0.3300	0.3372	0.3479	0.3516	0.3750
3/8-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.3739	0.3672	—	0.3498	0.3462	0.3298	2B	0.335	0.344	0.3509	0.3556	0.3750
3/8-28 UN	2A	0.0011	0.3739	0.3674	—	0.3507	0.3471	0.3314	2B	0.336	0.345	0.3518	0.3564	0.3750
	3A	0.0000	0.3750	0.3685	—	0.3518	0.3491	0.3325	3B	0.3360	0.3426	0.3518	0.3553	0.3750
3/8-32 UNEF	2A	0.0010	0.3740	0.3680	—	0.3537	0.3503	0.3368	2B	0.341	0.349	0.3547	0.3591	0.3750
	3A	0.0000	0.3750	0.3690	—	0.3547	0.3522	0.3378	3B	0.3410	0.3469	0.3547	0.3580	0.3750
3/8-36 UNS	2A	0.0010	0.3740	0.3685	—	0.3560	0.3528	0.3409	2B	0.345	0.352	0.3570	0.3612	0.3750
3/8-40 UNS	2A	0.0009	0.3741	0.3690	—	0.3579	0.3548	0.3443	2B	0.348	0.354	0.3588	0.3628	0.3750
0.390-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.3889	0.3822	—	0.3648	0.3612	0.3448	2B	0.350	0.359	0.3659	0.3706	0.3900
7/16-14 UNC	1A	0.0014	0.4361	0.4206	—	0.3897	0.3826	0.3510	1B	0.360	0.376	0.3911	0.4003	0.4375
	2A	0.0014	0.4361	0.4258	0.4206	0.3897	0.3850	0.3510	2B	0.360	0.376	0.3911	0.3972	0.4375
	3A	0.0000	0.4375	0.4272	—	0.3911	0.3876	0.3524	3B	0.3600	0.3717	0.3911	0.3957	0.4375
7/16-16 UN	2A	0.0014	0.4361	0.4267	—	0.3955	0.3909	0.3617	2B	0.370	0.384	0.3969	0.4029	0.4375
	3A	0.0000	0.4375	0.4281	—	0.3969	0.3934	0.3631	3B	0.3700	0.3800	0.3969	0.4014	0.4375
7/16-18 UNS	2A	0.0013	0.4362	0.4275	—	0.4001	0.3957	0.3700	2B	0.377	0.390	0.4014	0.4071	0.4375
7/16-20 UNF	1A	0.0013	0.4362	0.4240	—	0.4037	0.3974	0.3767	1B	0.383	0.395	0.4050	0.4131	0.4375
	2A	0.0013	0.4362	0.4281	—	0.4037	0.3995	0.3767	2B	0.383	0.395	0.4050	0.4104	0.4375
	3A	0.0000	0.4375	0.4294	—	0.4050	0.4019	0.3780	3B	0.3830	0.3916	0.4050	0.4091	0.4375
7/16-24 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.4363	0.4291	—	0.4092	0.4053	0.3867	2B	0.392	0.402	0.4104	0.4154	0.4375
7/16-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.4364	0.4297	—	0.4123	0.4086	0.3923	2B	0.397	0.406	0.4134	0.4182	0.4375
7/16-28 UNEF	2A	0.0011	0.4364	0.4299	—	0.4132	0.4096	0.3939	2B	0.399	0.407	0.4143	0.4190	0.4375
	3A	0.0000	0.4375	0.4310	—	0.4143	0.4116	0.3950	3B	0.3990	0.4051	0.4143	0.4178	0.4375
7/16-32 UN	2A	0.0010	0.4365	0.4305	—	0.4162	0.4128	0.3993	2B	0.404	0.411	0.4172	0.4216	0.4375
	3A	0.0000	0.4375	0.4315	—	0.4172	0.4146	0.4003	3B	0.4040	0.4094	0.4172	0.4205	0.4375

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
½-12 UNS	2A	0.0016	0.4984	0.4870	—	0.4443	0.4389	0.3992	2B	0.410	0.428	0.4459	0.4529	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4886	—	0.4459	0.4419	0.4008	3B	0.4100	0.4185	0.4459	0.4511	0.5000
½-13 UNC	1A	0.0015	0.4985	0.4822	—	0.4485	0.4411	0.4069	1B	0.417	0.434	0.4500	0.4597	0.5000
	2A	0.0015	0.4985	0.4876	0.4822	0.4485	0.4435	0.4069	2B	0.417	0.434	0.4500	0.4565	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4891	—	0.4500	0.4463	0.4084	3B	0.4170	0.4284	0.4500	0.4548	0.5000
½-14 UNS	2A	0.0015	0.4985	0.4882	—	0.4521	0.4471	0.4134	2B	0.423	0.438	0.4536	0.4601	0.5000
½-16 UN	2A	0.0014	0.4986	0.4892	—	0.4580	0.4533	0.4242	2B	0.432	0.446	0.4594	0.4655	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4906	—	0.4594	0.4559	0.4256	3B	0.4320	0.4420	0.4594	0.4640	0.5000
½-18 UNS	2A	0.0013	0.4987	0.4900	—	0.4626	0.4582	0.4325	2B	0.440	0.453	0.4639	0.4697	0.5000
½-20 UNF	1A	0.0013	0.4987	0.4865	—	0.4662	0.4598	0.4392	1B	0.446	0.457	0.4675	0.4759	0.5000
	2A	0.0013	0.4987	0.4906	—	0.4662	0.4619	0.4392	2B	0.446	0.457	0.4675	0.4731	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4919	—	0.4675	0.4643	0.4405	3B	0.4460	0.4537	0.4675	0.4717	0.5000
½-24 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.4988	0.4916	—	0.4717	0.4678	0.4492	2B	0.455	0.465	0.4729	0.4780	0.5000
½-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.4989	0.4922	—	0.4748	0.4711	0.4548	2B	0.460	0.469	0.4759	0.4807	0.5000
½-28 UNEF	2A	0.0011	0.4989	0.4924	—	0.4757	0.4720	0.4564	2B	0.461	0.470	0.4768	0.4816	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4935	—	0.4768	0.4740	0.4575	3B	0.4610	0.4676	0.4768	0.4804	0.5000
½-32 UN	2A	0.0010	0.4990	0.4930	—	0.4787	0.4752	0.4618	2B	0.466	0.474	0.4797	0.4842	0.5000
	3A	0.0000	0.5000	0.4940	—	0.4797	0.4771	0.4628	3B	0.4660	0.4719	0.4797	0.4831	0.5000
9/16-12 UNC	1A	0.0016	0.5609	0.5437	—	0.5068	0.4990	0.4617	1B	0.472	0.490	0.5084	0.5186	0.5625
	2A	0.0016	0.5609	0.5495	0.5437	0.5068	0.5016	0.4617	2B	0.472	0.490	0.5084	0.5152	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5511	—	0.5084	0.5045	0.4633	3B	0.4720	0.4843	0.5084	0.5135	0.5625
9/16-14 UNS	2A	0.0015	0.5610	0.5507	—	0.5146	0.5096	0.4759	2B	0.485	0.501	0.5161	0.5226	0.5625
9/16-16 UN	2A	0.0014	0.5611	0.5517	—	0.5205	0.5158	0.4867	2B	0.495	0.509	0.5219	0.5280	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5531	—	0.5219	0.5184	0.4881	3B	0.4950	0.5041	0.5219	0.5265	0.5625
9/16-18 UNF	1A	0.0014	0.5611	0.5480	—	0.5250	0.5182	0.4949	1B	0.502	0.515	0.5264	0.5353	0.5625
	2A	0.0014	0.5611	0.5524	—	0.5250	0.5205	0.4949	2B	0.502	0.515	0.5264	0.5323	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5538	—	0.5264	0.5230	0.4963	3B	0.5020	0.5106	0.5264	0.5308	0.5625

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
9/16-20 UN	2A	0.0013	0.5612	0.5531	—	0.5287	0.5244	0.5017	2B	0.508	0.520	0.5300	0.5356	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5544	—	0.5300	0.5268	0.5030	3B	0.5080	0.5161	0.5300	0.5342	0.5625
9/16-24 UNEF	2A	0.0012	0.5613	0.5541	—	0.5342	0.5302	0.5117	2B	0.517	0.527	0.5354	0.5405	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5553	—	0.5354	0.5324	0.5129	3B	0.5170	0.5244	0.5354	0.5393	0.5625
9/16-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.5614	0.5547	—	0.5373	0.5335	0.5173	2B	0.522	0.531	0.5384	0.5433	0.5625
9/16-28 UN	2A	0.0011	0.5614	0.5549	—	0.5382	0.5345	0.5189	2B	0.524	0.532	0.5393	0.5441	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5560	—	0.5393	0.5365	0.5200	3B	0.5240	0.5301	0.5393	0.5429	0.5625
9/16-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.5614	0.5554	—	0.5411	0.5376	0.5242	2B	0.529	0.536	0.5422	0.5468	0.5625
	3A	0.0000	0.5625	0.5565	—	0.5422	0.5396	0.5253	3B	0.5290	0.5344	0.5422	0.5456	0.5625
5/8-11 UNC	1A	0.0017	0.6233	0.6051	—	0.5643	0.5560	0.5150	1B	0.527	0.546	0.5660	0.5767	0.6250
	2A	0.0017	0.6233	0.6112	0.6052	0.5643	0.5588	0.5150	2B	0.527	0.546	0.5660	0.5732	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6129	—	0.5660	0.5619	0.5167	3B	0.5270	0.5391	0.5660	0.5714	0.6250
5/8-12 UN	2A	0.0016	0.6234	0.6120	—	0.5693	0.5639	0.5242	2B	0.535	0.553	0.5709	0.5780	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6136	—	0.5709	0.5668	0.5258	3B	0.5350	0.5463	0.5709	0.5762	0.6250
5/8-14 UNS	2A	0.0015	0.6235	0.6132	—	0.5771	0.5720	0.5384	2B	0.548	0.563	0.5786	0.5852	0.6250
5/8-16 UN	2A	0.0014	0.6236	0.6142	—	0.5830	0.5782	0.5492	2B	0.557	0.571	0.5844	0.5906	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6156	—	0.5844	0.5808	0.5506	3B	0.5570	0.5662	0.5844	0.5890	0.6250
5/8-18 UNF	1A	0.0014	0.6236	0.6105	—	0.5875	0.5805	0.5574	1B	0.565	0.578	0.5889	0.5980	0.6250
	2A	0.0014	0.6236	0.6149	—	0.5875	0.5828	0.5574	2B	0.565	0.578	0.5889	0.5949	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6163	—	0.5889	0.5854	0.5588	3B	0.5650	0.5730	0.5889	0.5934	0.6250
5/8-20 UN	2A	0.0013	0.6237	0.6156	—	0.5912	0.5869	0.5642	2B	0.571	0.582	0.5925	0.5981	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6169	—	0.5925	0.5893	0.5655	3B	0.5710	0.5786	0.5925	0.5967	0.6250
5/8-24 UNEF	2A	0.0012	0.6238	0.6166	—	0.5967	0.5927	0.5742	2B	0.580	0.590	0.5979	0.6031	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6178	—	0.5979	0.5949	0.5754	3B	0.5800	0.5869	0.5979	0.6018	0.6250
5/8-27 UNS	2A	0.0011	0.6239	0.6172	—	0.5998	0.5960	0.5798	2B	0.585	0.594	0.6009	0.6059	0.6250
5/8-28 UN	2A	0.0011	0.6239	0.6174	—	0.6007	0.5969	0.5814	2B	0.586	0.595	0.6018	0.6067	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6185	—	0.6018	0.5990	0.5825	3B	0.5860	0.5926	0.6018	0.6055	0.6250

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
5/8-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.6239	0.6179	—	0.6036	0.6000	0.5867	2B	0.591	0.599	0.6047	0.6093	0.6250
	3A	0.0000	0.6250	0.6190	—	0.6047	0.6020	0.5878	3B	0.5910	0.5969	0.6047	0.6082	0.6250
11/16-12 UN	2A	0.0016	0.6859	0.6745	—	0.6318	0.6263	0.5867	2B	0.597	0.615	0.6334	0.6405	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6761	—	0.6334	0.6293	0.5883	3B	0.5970	0.6085	0.6334	0.6387	0.6875
11/16-16 UN	2A	0.0014	0.6861	0.6767	—	0.6455	0.6407	0.6117	2B	0.620	0.634	0.6469	0.6532	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6781	—	0.6469	0.6433	0.6131	3B	0.6200	0.6284	0.6469	0.6516	0.6875
11/16-20 UN	2A	0.0013	0.6862	0.6781	—	0.6537	0.6493	0.6267	2B	0.633	0.645	0.6550	0.6607	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6794	—	0.6550	0.6517	0.6280	3B	0.6330	0.6411	0.6550	0.6593	0.6875
11/16-24 UNEF	2A	0.0012	0.6863	0.6791	—	0.6592	0.6552	0.6367	2B	0.642	0.652	0.6604	0.6657	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6803	—	0.6604	0.6574	0.6379	3B	0.6420	0.6494	0.6604	0.6643	0.6875
11/16-28 UN	2A	0.0011	0.6864	0.6799	—	0.6632	0.6594	0.6439	2B	0.649	0.657	0.6643	0.6692	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6810	—	0.6643	0.6614	0.6450	3B	0.6490	0.6551	0.6643	0.6680	0.6875
11/16-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.6864	0.6804	—	0.6661	0.6625	0.6492	2B	0.654	0.661	0.6672	0.6719	0.6875
	3A	0.0000	0.6875	0.6815	—	0.6672	0.6645	0.6503	3B	0.6540	0.6594	0.6672	0.6707	0.6875
3/4-10 UNC	1A	0.0018	0.7482	0.7288	—	0.6832	0.6744	0.6291	1B	0.642	0.663	0.6850	0.6965	0.7500
	2A	0.0018	0.7482	0.7353	0.7288	0.6832	0.6773	0.6291	2B	0.642	0.663	0.6850	0.6927	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7371	—	0.6850	0.6806	0.6309	3B	0.6420	0.6545	0.6850	0.6907	0.7500
3/4-12 UN	2A	0.0017	0.7483	0.7369	—	0.6942	0.6887	0.6491	2B	0.660	0.678	0.6959	0.7031	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7386	—	0.6959	0.6918	0.6508	3B	0.6600	0.6707	0.6959	0.7013	0.7500
3/4-14 UNS	2A	0.0015	0.7485	0.7382	—	0.7021	0.6970	0.6634	2B	0.673	0.688	0.7036	0.7103	0.7500
3/4-16 UNF	1A	0.0015	0.7485	0.7343	—	0.7079	0.7004	0.6741	1B	0.682	0.696	0.7094	0.7192	0.7500
	2A	0.0015	0.7485	0.7391	—	0.7079	0.7029	0.6741	2B	0.682	0.696	0.7094	0.7159	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7406	—	0.7094	0.7056	0.6756	3B	0.6820	0.6909	0.7094	0.7143	0.7500
3/4-18 UNS	2A	0.0014	0.7486	0.7399	—	0.7125	0.7079	0.6824	2B	0.690	0.703	0.7139	0.7199	0.7500
3/4-20 UNEF	2A	0.0013	0.7487	0.7406	—	0.7162	0.7118	0.6892	2B	0.696	0.707	0.7175	0.7232	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7419	—	0.7175	0.7142	0.6905	3B	0.6960	0.7036	0.7175	0.7218	0.7500
3/4-24 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.7488	0.7416	—	0.7217	0.7176	0.6992	2B	0.705	0.715	0.7229	0.7282	0.7500
3/4-27 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.7488	0.7421	—	0.7247	0.7208	0.7047	2B	0.710	0.719	0.7259	0.7310	0.7500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3/4-28 UN	2A	0.0012	0.7488	0.7423	—	0.7256	0.7218	0.7063	2B	0.711	0.720	0.7268	0.7318	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7435	—	0.7268	0.7239	0.7075	3B	0.7110	0.7176	0.7268	0.7305	0.7500
3/4-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.7489	0.7429	—	0.7286	0.7250	0.7117	2B	0.716	0.724	0.7297	0.7344	0.7500
	3A	0.0000	0.7500	0.7440	—	0.7297	0.7270	0.7128	3B	0.7160	0.7219	0.7297	0.7333	0.7500
13/16-12 UN	2A	0.0017	0.8108	0.7994	—	0.7567	0.7511	0.7116	2B	0.722	0.740	0.7584	0.7656	0.8125
	3A	0.0000	0.8125	0.8011	—	0.7584	0.7542	0.7133	3B	0.7220	0.7329	0.7584	0.7638	0.8125
13/16-16 UN	2A	0.0015	0.8110	0.8016	—	0.7704	0.7655	0.7366	2B	0.745	0.759	0.7719	0.7783	0.8125
	3A	0.0000	0.8125	0.8031	—	0.7719	0.7682	0.7381	3B	0.7450	0.7534	0.7719	0.7767	0.8125
13/16-20 UNEF	2A	0.0013	0.8112	0.8031	—	0.7787	0.7743	0.7517	2B	0.758	0.770	0.7800	0.7858	0.8125
	3A	0.0000	0.8125	0.8044	—	0.7800	0.7767	0.7530	3B	0.7580	0.7661	0.7800	0.7843	0.8125
13/16-28 UN	2A	0.0012	0.8113	0.8048	—	0.7881	0.7842	0.7688	2B	0.774	0.782	0.7893	0.7943	0.8125
	3A	0.0000	0.8125	0.8060	—	0.7893	0.7864	0.7700	3B	0.7740	0.7801	0.7893	0.7931	0.8125
13/16-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.8114	0.8054	—	0.7911	0.7874	0.7742	2B	0.779	0.786	0.7922	0.7970	0.8125
	3A	0.0000	0.8125	0.8065	—	0.7922	0.7894	0.7753	3B	0.7790	0.7844	0.7922	0.7958	0.8125
7/8-9 UNC	1A	0.0019	0.8731	0.8523	—	0.8009	0.7914	0.7408	1B	0.755	0.778	0.8028	0.8151	0.8750
	2A	0.0019	0.8731	0.8592	0.8523	0.8009	0.7946	0.7408	2B	0.755	0.778	0.8028	0.8110	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8611	—	0.8028	0.7981	0.7427	3B	0.7550	0.7681	0.8028	0.8089	0.8750
7/8-10 UNS	2A	0.0018	0.8732	0.8603	—	0.8082	0.8021	0.7541	2B	0.767	0.788	0.8100	0.8179	0.8750
7/8-12 UN	2A	0.0017	0.8733	0.8619	—	0.8192	0.8136	0.7741	2B	0.785	0.803	0.8209	0.8282	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8636	—	0.8209	0.8167	0.7758	3B	0.7850	0.7952	0.8209	0.8264	0.8750
7/8-14 UNF	1A	0.0016	0.8734	0.8579	—	0.8270	0.8189	0.7883	1B	0.798	0.813	0.8286	0.8392	0.8750
	2A	0.0016	0.8734	0.8631	—	0.8270	0.8216	0.7883	2B	0.798	0.813	0.8286	0.8356	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8647	—	0.8286	0.8245	0.7899	3B	0.7980	0.8067	0.8286	0.8339	0.8750
7/8-16 UN	2A	0.0015	0.8735	0.8641	—	0.8329	0.8280	0.7991	2B	0.807	0.821	0.8344	0.8408	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8656	—	0.8344	0.8307	0.8006	3B	0.8070	0.8159	0.8344	0.8392	0.8750
7/8-18 UNS	2A	0.0014	0.8736	0.8649	—	0.8375	0.8328	0.8074	2B	0.815	0.828	0.8389	0.8450	0.8750
7/8-20 UNEF	2A	0.0013	0.8737	0.8656	—	0.8412	0.8367	0.8142	2B	0.821	0.832	0.8425	0.8483	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8669	—	0.8425	0.8391	0.8155	3B	0.8210	0.8286	0.8425	0.8469	0.8750

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
7/8-24 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.8738	0.8666	—	0.8467	0.8425	0.8242	2B	0.830	0.840	0.8479	0.8533	0.8750
7/8-27 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.8738	0.8671	—	0.8497	0.8457	0.8297	2B	0.835	0.844	0.8509	0.8561	0.8750
7/8-28 UN	2A	0.0012	0.8738	0.8673	—	0.8506	0.8467	0.8313	2B	0.836	0.845	0.8518	0.8569	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8685	—	0.8518	0.8489	0.8325	3B	0.8360	0.8426	0.8518	0.8556	0.8750
7/8-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.8739	0.8679	—	0.8536	0.8499	0.8367	2B	0.841	0.849	0.8547	0.8595	0.8750
	3A	0.0000	0.8750	0.8690	—	0.8547	0.8519	0.8378	3B	0.8410	0.8469	0.8547	0.8583	0.8750
15/16-12 UN	2A	0.0017	0.9358	0.9244	—	0.8817	0.8761	0.8366	2B	0.847	0.865	0.8834	0.8907	0.9375
	3A	0.0000	0.9375	0.9261	—	0.8834	0.8792	0.8383	3B	0.8470	0.8575	0.8834	0.8889	0.9375
15/16-16 UN	2A	0.0015	0.9360	0.9266	—	0.8954	0.8904	0.8616	2B	0.870	0.884	0.8969	0.9033	0.9375
	3A	0.0000	0.9375	0.9281	—	0.8969	0.8932	0.8631	3B	0.8700	0.8784	0.8969	0.9017	0.9375
15/16-20 UNEF	2A	0.0014	0.9361	0.9280	—	0.9036	0.8991	0.8766	2B	0.883	0.895	0.9050	0.9109	0.9375
	3A	0.0000	0.9375	0.9294	—	0.9050	0.9016	0.8780	3B	0.8830	0.8911	0.9050	0.9094	0.9375
15/16-28 UN	2A	0.0012	0.9363	0.9298	—	0.9131	0.9092	0.8938	2B	0.899	0.907	0.9143	0.9194	0.9375
	3A	0.0000	0.9375	0.9310	—	0.9143	0.9113	0.8950	3B	0.8990	0.9051	0.9143	0.9181	0.9375
15/16-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.9364	0.9304	—	0.9161	0.9123	0.8992	2B	0.904	0.911	0.9172	0.9221	0.9375
	3A	0.0000	0.9375	0.9315	—	0.9172	0.9144	0.9003	3B	0.9040	0.9094	0.9172	0.9209	0.9375
1-8 UNC	1A	0.0020	0.9980	0.9755	—	0.9168	0.9067	0.8492	1B	0.865	0.890	0.9188	0.9320	1.0000
	2A	0.0020	0.9980	0.9830	0.9755	0.9168	0.9101	0.8492	2B	0.865	0.890	0.9188	0.9276	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9850	—	0.9188	0.9137	0.8512	3B	0.8650	0.8797	0.9188	0.9254	1.0000
1-10 UNS	2A	0.0018	0.9982	0.9853	—	0.9332	0.9270	0.8791	2B	0.892	0.913	0.9350	0.9430	1.0000
1-12 UNF	1A	0.0018	0.9982	0.9810	—	0.9441	0.9353	0.8990	1B	0.910	0.928	0.9459	0.9573	1.0000
	2A	0.0018	0.9982	0.9868	—	0.9441	0.9382	0.8990	2B	0.910	0.928	0.9459	0.9535	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9886	—	0.9459	0.9415	0.9008	3B	0.9100	0.9198	0.9459	0.9516	1.0000
1-14 UNS[f]	1A	0.0017	0.9983	0.9828	—	0.9519	0.9435	0.9132	1B	0.923	0.938	0.9536	0.9645	1.0000
	2A	0.0016	0.9894	0.9881	—	0.9520	0.9467	0.9133	2B	0.923	0.938	0.9536	0.9605	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9897	—	0.9536	0.9496	0.9149	3B	0.9230	0.9315	0.9536	0.9588	1.0000
1-16 UN	2A	0.0015	0.9985	0.9891	—	0.9579	0.9529	0.9241	2B	0.932	0.946	0.9594	0.9659	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9906	—	0.9594	0.9557	0.9256	3B	0.9320	0.9409	0.9594	0.9643	1.0000
1-18 UNS	2A	0.0014	0.9986	0.9899	—	0.9625	0.9578	0.9324	2B	0.940	0.953	0.9639	0.9701	1.0000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1-20 UNEF	2A	0.0014	0.9986	0.9905	—	0.9661	0.9616	0.9391	2B	0.946	0.957	0.9675	0.9734	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9919	—	0.9675	0.9641	0.9405	3B	0.9460	0.9536	0.9675	0.9719	1.0000
1-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	0.9987	0.9915	—	0.9716	0.9674	0.9491	2B	0.955	0.965	0.9729	0.9784	1.0000
1-27 UNS	2A	0.0012	0.9988	0.9921	—	0.9747	0.9707	0.9547	2B	0.960	0.969	0.9759	0.9811	1.0000
1-28 UN	2A	0.0012	0.9988	0.9923	—	0.9756	0.9716	0.9562	2B	0.961	0.970	0.9768	0.9820	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9935	—	0.9768	0.9738	0.9575	3B	0.9610	0.9676	0.9768	0.9807	1.0000
1-32 UN	2A	0.0011	0.9989	0.9929	—	0.9786	0.9748	0.9617	2B	0.966	0.974	0.9797	0.9846	1.0000
	3A	0.0000	1.0000	0.9940	—	0.9797	0.9769	0.9628	3B	0.9660	0.9719	0.9797	0.9834	1.0000
1 1/16-8 UN	2A	0.0020	1.0605	1.0455	—	0.9793	0.9725	0.9117	2B	0.927	0.952	0.9813	0.9902	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0475	—	0.9813	0.9762	0.9137	3B	0.9270	0.9422	0.9813	0.9880	1.0625
1 1/16-12 UN	2A	0.0017	1.0608	1.0494	—	1.0067	1.0010	0.9616	2B	0.972	0.990	1.0084	1.0158	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0511	—	1.0084	1.0041	0.9633	3B	0.9720	0.9823	1.0084	1.0139	1.0625
1 1/16-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.0610	1.0516	—	1.0204	1.0154	0.9866	2B	0.995	1.009	1.0219	1.0284	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0531	—	1.0219	1.0181	0.9881	3B	0.9950	1.0034	1.0219	1.0268	1.0625
1 1/16-18 UNEF	2A	0.0014	1.0611	1.0524	—	1.0250	1.0202	0.9949	2B	1.002	1.015	1.0264	1.0326	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0538	—	1.0264	1.0228	0.9963	3B	1.0020	1.0105	1.0264	1.0311	1.0625
1 1/16-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.0611	1.0530	—	1.0286	1.0240	1.0016	2B	1.008	1.020	1.0300	1.0359	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0544	—	1.0300	1.0266	1.0030	3B	1.0080	1.0161	1.0300	1.0345	1.0625
1 1/16-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.0613	1.0548	—	1.0381	1.0341	1.0188	2B	1.024	1.032	1.0393	1.0445	1.0625
	3A	0.0000	1.0625	1.0560	—	1.0393	1.0363	1.0200	3B	1.0240	1.0301	1.0393	1.0432	1.0625
1 1/8-7 UNC	1A	0.0022	1.1228	1.0982	—	1.0300	1.0191	0.9527	1B	0.970	0.998	1.0322	1.0463	1.1250
	2A	0.0022	1.1228	1.1064	1.0982	1.0300	1.0228	0.9527	2B	0.970	0.998	1.0322	1.0416	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1086	—	1.0322	1.0268	0.9549	3B	0.9700	0.9875	1.0322	1.0393	1.1250
1 1/8-8 UN	2A	0.0021	1.1229	1.1079	1.1004	1.0417	1.0348	0.9741	2B	0.990	1.015	1.0438	1.0528	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1100	—	1.0438	1.0386	0.9762	3B	0.9900	1.0047	1.0438	1.0505	1.1250
1 1/8-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.1231	1.1102	—	1.0581	1.0519	1.0040	2B	1.017	1.038	1.0600	1.0681	1.1250
1 1/8-12 UNF	1A	0.0018	1.1232	1.1060	—	1.0691	1.0601	1.0240	1B	1.035	1.053	1.0709	1.0826	1.1250
	2A	0.0018	1.1232	1.1118	—	1.0691	1.0631	1.0240	2B	1.035	1.053	1.0709	1.0787	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1136	—	1.0709	1.0664	1.0258	3B	1.0350	1.0448	1.0709	1.0768	1.1250

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1⅛-14 UNS	2A	0.0016	1.1234	1.1131	—	1.0770	1.0717	1.0383	2B	1.048	1.063	1.0786	1.0855	1.1250
1⅛-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.1235	1.1141	—	1.0829	1.0779	1.0491	2B	1.057	1.071	1.0844	1.0910	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1156	—	1.0844	1.0806	1.0506	3B	1.0570	1.0659	1.0844	1.0893	1.1250
1⅛-18 UNEF	2A	0.0014	1.1236	1.1149	—	1.0875	1.0827	1.0574	2B	1.065	1.078	1.0889	1.0951	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1163	—	1.0889	1.0853	1.0588	3B	1.0650	1.0730	1.0889	1.0936	1.1250
1⅛-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.1236	1.1155	—	1.0911	1.0865	1.0641	2B	1.071	1.082	1.0925	1.0985	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1169	—	1.0925	1.0890	1.0655	3B	1.0710	1.0786	1.0925	1.0970	1.1250
1⅛-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	1.1237	1.1165	—	1.0966	1.0923	1.0741	2B	1.080	1.090	1.0979	1.1035	1.1250
1⅛-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.1238	1.1173	—	1.1006	1.0966	1.0813	2B	1.086	1.095	1.1018	1.1070	1.1250
	3A	0.0000	1.1250	1.1185	—	1.1018	1.0988	1.0825	3B	1.0860	1.0926	1.1018	1.1057	1.1250
1¾16-8 UN	2A	0.0021	1.1854	1.1704	—	1.1042	1.0972	1.0366	2B	1.052	1.077	1.1063	1.1154	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1725	—	1.1063	1.1011	1.0387	3B	1.0520	1.0672	1.1063	1.1131	1.1875
1¾16-12 UN	2A	0.0017	1.1858	1.1744	—	1.1317	1.1260	1.0866	2B	1.097	1.115	1.1334	1.1409	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1761	—	1.1334	1.1291	1.0883	3B	1.0970	1.1073	1.1334	1.1390	1.1875
1¾16-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.1860	1.1766	—	1.1454	1.1403	1.1116	2B	1.120	1.134	1.1469	1.1535	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1781	—	1.1469	1.1431	1.1131	3B	1.1200	1.1284	1.1469	1.1518	1.1875
1¾16-18 UNEF	2A	0.0014	1.1861	1.1774	—	1.1500	1.1452	1.1199	2B	1.127	1.140	1.1514	1.1577	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1788	—	1.1514	1.1478	1.1213	3B	1.1270	1.1355	1.1514	1.1561	1.1875
1¾16-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.1861	1.1780	—	1.1536	1.1490	1.1266	2B	1.133	1.145	1.1550	1.1610	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1794	—	1.1550	1.1515	1.1280	3B	1.1330	1.1411	1.1550	1.1595	1.1875
1¾16-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.1863	1.1798	—	1.1631	1.1590	1.1438	2B	1.149	1.157	1.1643	1.1696	1.1875
	3A	0.0000	1.1875	1.1810	—	1.1643	1.1613	1.1450	3B	1.1490	1.1551	1.1643	1.1683	1.1875
1¼-7 UNC	1A	0.0022	1.2478	1.2232	—	1.1550	1.1439	1.0777	1B	1.095	1.123	1.1572	1.1716	1.2500
	2A	0.0022	1.2478	1.2314	1.2232	1.1550	1.1476	1.0777	2B	1.095	1.123	1.1572	1.1668	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2336	—	1.1572	1.1517	1.0799	3B	1.0950	1.1125	1.1572	1.1644	1.2500
1¼-8 UN	2A	0.0021	1.2479	1.2329	1.2254	1.1667	1.1597	1.0991	2B	1.115	1.140	1.1688	1.1780	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2350	—	1.1688	1.1635	1.1012	3B	1.1150	1.1297	1.1688	1.1757	1.2500
1¼-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.2481	1.2352	—	1.1831	1.1768	1.1290	2B	1.142	1.163	1.1850	1.1932	1.2500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1¼-12 UNF	1A	0.0018	1.2482	1.2310	—	1.1941	1.1849	1.1490	1B	1.160	1.178	1.1959	1.2079	1.2500
	2A	0.0018	1.2482	1.2368	—	1.1941	1.1879	1.1490	2B	1.160	1.178	1.1959	1.2039	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2386	—	1.1959	1.1913	1.1508	3B	1.1600	1.1698	1.1959	1.2019	1.2500
1¼-14 UNS	2A	0.0016	1.2484	1.2381	—	1.2020	1.1966	1.1633	2B	1.173	1.188	1.2036	1.2106	1.2500
1¼-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.2485	1.2391	—	1.2079	1.2028	1.1741	2B	1.182	1.196	1.2094	1.2160	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2406	—	1.2094	1.2056	1.1756	3B	1.1820	1.1909	1.2094	1.2144	1.2500
1¼-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.2485	1.2398	—	1.2124	1.2075	1.1823	2B	1.190	1.203	1.2139	1.2202	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2413	—	1.2139	1.2103	1.1838	3B	1.1900	1.1980	1.2139	1.2186	1.2500
1¼-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.2486	1.2405	—	1.2161	1.2114	1.1891	2B	1.196	1.207	1.2175	1.2236	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2419	—	1.2175	1.2140	1.1905	3B	1.1960	1.2036	1.2175	1.2220	1.2500
1¼-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	1.2487	1.2415	—	1.2216	1.2173	1.1991	2B	1.205	1.215	1.2229	1.2285	1.2500
1¼-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.2488	1.2423	—	1.2256	1.2215	1.2063	2B	1.211	1.220	1.2268	1.2321	1.2500
	3A	0.0000	1.2500	1.2435	—	1.2268	1.2237	1.2075	3B	1.2110	1.2176	1.2268	1.2308	1.2500
1⅝-8 UN	2A	0.0021	1.3104	1.2954	—	1.2292	1.2221	1.1616	2B	1.177	1.202	1.2313	1.2405	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.2975	—	1.2313	1.2260	1.1637	3B	1.1770	1.1922	1.2313	1.2382	1.3125
1⅝-12 UN	2A	0.0017	1.3108	1.2994	—	1.2567	1.2509	1.2116	2B	1.222	1.240	1.2584	1.2659	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.3011	—	1.2584	1.2540	1.2133	3B	1.2220	1.2323	1.2584	1.2641	1.3125
1⅝-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.3110	1.3016	—	1.2704	1.2653	1.2366	2B	1.245	1.259	1.2719	1.2786	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.3031	—	1.2719	1.2681	1.2381	3B	1.2450	1.2534	1.2719	1.2769	1.3125
1⅝-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.3110	1.3023	—	1.2749	1.2700	1.2448	2B	1.252	1.265	1.2764	1.2828	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.3038	—	1.2764	1.2727	1.2463	3B	1.2520	1.2605	1.2764	1.2812	1.3125
1⅝-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.3111	1.3030	—	1.2786	1.2739	1.2516	2B	1.258	1.270	1.2800	1.2861	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.3044	—	1.2800	1.2765	1.2530	3B	1.2580	1.2661	1.2800	1.2846	1.3125
1⅝-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.3113	1.3048	—	1.2881	1.2840	1.2688	2B	1.274	1.282	1.2893	1.2947	1.3125
	3A	0.0000	1.3125	1.3060	—	1.2893	1.2862	1.2700	3B	1.2740	1.2801	1.2893	1.2933	1.3125
1⅜-6 UNC	1A	0.0024	1.3726	1.3453	—	1.2643	1.2523	1.1741	1B	1.195	1.225	1.2667	1.2822	1.3750
	2A	0.0024	1.3726	1.3544	1.3453	1.2643	1.2563	1.1741	2B	1.195	1.225	1.2667	1.2771	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3568	—	1.2667	1.2607	1.1765	3B	1.1950	1.2146	1.2667	1.2745	1.3750

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]								Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	(Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1⅜-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.3728	1.3578	1.3503	1.2916	1.2844	1.2240	2B	1.240	1.265	1.2938	1.3031	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3600	—	1.2938	1.2884	1.2262	3B	1.2400	1.2547	1.2938	1.3008	1.3750
1⅜-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.3731	1.3602	—	1.3081	1.3018	1.2540	2B	1.267	1.288	1.3100	1.3182	1.3750
1⅜-12 UNF	1A	0.0019	1.3731	1.3559	—	1.3190	1.3096	1.2739	1B	1.285	1.303	1.3209	1.3332	1.3750
	2A	0.0019	1.3731	1.3617	—	1.3190	1.3127	1.2739	2B	1.285	1.303	1.3209	1.3291	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3636	—	1.3209	1.3162	1.2758	3B	1.2850	1.2948	1.3209	1.3270	1.3750
1⅜-14 UNS	2A	0.0016	1.3734	1.3631	—	1.3270	1.3215	1.2883	2B	1.298	1.313	1.3286	1.3357	1.3750
1⅜-16 UN	2A	0.0015	1.3735	1.3641	—	1.3329	1.3277	1.2991	2B	1.307	1.321	1.3344	1.3411	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3656	—	1.3344	1.3305	1.3006	3B	1.3070	1.3159	1.3344	1.3394	1.3750
1⅜-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.3735	1.3648	—	1.3374	1.3325	1.3073	2B	1.315	1.328	1.3389	1.3453	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3663	—	1.3389	1.3352	1.3088	3B	1.3150	1.3230	1.3389	1.3437	1.3750
1⅜-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.3736	1.3655	—	1.3411	1.3364	1.3141	2B	1.321	1.332	1.3425	1.3486	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3669	—	1.3425	1.3390	1.3155	3B	1.3210	1.3286	1.3425	1.3471	1.3750
1⅜-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	1.3737	1.3665	—	1.3466	1.3422	1.3241	2B	1.330	1.340	1.3479	1.3536	1.3750
1⅜-28 UN	2A	0.0012	1.3738	1.3673	—	1.3506	1.3465	1.3313	2B	1.336	1.345	1.3518	1.3572	1.3750
	3A	0.0000	1.3750	1.3685	—	1.3518	1.3487	1.3325	3B	1.3360	1.3426	1.3518	1.3558	1.3750
1⁷⁄₁₆-6 UN	2A	0.0024	1.4351	1.4169	—	1.3268	1.3188	1.2366	2B	1.257	1.288	1.3292	1.3396	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4193	—	1.3292	1.3232	1.2390	3B	1.2570	1.2771	1.3292	1.3370	1.4375
1⁷⁄₁₆-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.4353	1.4203	—	1.3541	1.3469	1.2865	2B	1.302	1.327	1.3563	1.3657	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4225	—	1.3563	1.3509	1.2887	3B	1.3020	1.3172	1.3563	1.3634	1.4375
1⁷⁄₁₆-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.4357	1.4243	—	1.3816	1.3757	1.3365	2B	1.347	1.365	1.3834	1.3910	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4261	—	1.3834	1.3790	1.3383	3B	1.3470	1.3573	1.3834	1.3891	1.4375
1⁷⁄₁₆-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.4359	1.4265	—	1.3953	1.3901	1.3615	2B	1.370	1.384	1.3969	1.4036	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4281	—	1.3969	1.3930	1.3631	3B	1.3700	1.3784	1.3969	1.4020	1.4375
1⁷⁄₁₆-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.4360	1.4273	—	1.3999	1.3950	1.3698	2B	1.377	1.390	1.4014	1.4078	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4288	—	1.4014	1.3977	1.3713	3B	1.3770	1.3855	1.4014	1.4062	1.4375
1⁷⁄₁₆-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.4361	1.4280	—	1.4036	1.3989	1.3766	2B	1.383	1.395	1.4050	1.4112	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4294	—	1.4050	1.4014	1.3780	3B	1.3830	1.3911	1.4050	1.4096	1.4375

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[e]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1 7/16-28 UN	2A	0.0013	1.4362	1.4297	—	1.4130	1.4088	1.3937	2B	1.399	1.407	1.4143	1.4197	1.4375
	3A	0.0000	1.4375	1.4310	—	1.4143	1.4112	1.3950	3B	1.3990	1.4051	1.4143	1.4184	1.4375
1 1/2-6 UNC	1A	0.0024	1.4976	1.4703	—	1.3893	1.3772	1.2991	1B	1.320	1.350	1.3917	1.4075	1.5000
	2A	0.0024	1.4976	1.4794	1.4703	1.3893	1.3812	1.2991	2B	1.320	1.350	1.3917	1.4022	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4818	—	1.3917	1.3856	1.3015	3B	1.3200	1.3396	1.3917	1.3996	1.5000
1 1/2-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.4978	1.4828	1.4753	1.4166	1.4093	1.3490	2B	1.365	1.390	1.4188	1.4283	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4850	—	1.4188	1.4133	1.3512	3B	1.3650	1.3797	1.4188	1.4259	1.5000
1 1/2-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.4981	1.4852	—	1.4331	1.4267	1.3790	2B	1.392	1.413	1.4350	1.4433	1.5000
1 1/2-12 UNF	1A	0.0019	1.4981	1.4809	—	1.4440	1.4344	1.3989	1B	1.410	1.428	1.4459	1.4584	1.5000
	2A	0.0019	1.4981	1.4867	—	1.4440	1.4376	1.3989	2B	1.410	1.428	1.4459	1.4542	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4886	—	1.4459	1.4411	1.4008	3B	1.4100	1.4198	1.4459	1.4522	1.5000
1 1/2-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	1.4983	1.4880	—	1.4519	1.4464	1.4132	2B	1.423	1.438	1.4536	1.4608	1.5000
1 1/2-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.4984	1.4890	—	1.4578	1.4526	1.4240	2B	1.432	1.446	1.4594	1.4662	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4906	—	1.4594	1.4555	1.4256	3B	1.4320	1.4409	1.4594	1.4645	1.5000
1 1/2-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.4985	1.4898	—	1.4624	1.4574	1.4323	2B	1.440	1.453	1.4639	1.4704	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4913	—	1.4639	1.4602	1.4338	3B	1.4400	1.4480	1.4639	1.4687	1.5000
1 1/2-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.4986	1.4905	—	1.4661	1.4613	1.4391	2B	1.446	1.457	1.4675	1.4737	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4919	—	1.4675	1.4639	1.4405	3B	1.4460	1.4536	1.4675	1.4721	1.5000
1 1/2-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	1.4987	1.4915	—	1.4716	1.4672	1.4491	2B	1.455	1.465	1.4729	1.4787	1.5000
1 1/2-28 UN	2A	0.0013	1.4987	1.4922	—	1.4755	1.4713	1.4562	2B	1.461	1.470	1.4768	1.4823	1.5000
	3A	0.0000	1.5000	1.4935	—	1.4768	1.4737	1.4575	3B	1.4610	1.4676	1.4768	1.4809	1.5000
1 9/16-6 UN	2A	0.0024	1.5601	1.5419	—	1.4518	1.4436	1.3616	2B	1.382	1.413	1.4542	1.4648	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5443	—	1.4542	1.4481	1.3640	3B	1.3820	1.4021	1.4542	1.4622	1.5625
1 9/16-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.5603	1.5453	—	1.4791	1.4717	1.4115	2B	1.427	1.452	1.4813	1.4909	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5475	—	1.4813	1.4758	1.4137	3B	1.4270	1.4422	1.4813	1.4885	1.5625
1 9/16-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.5607	1.5493	—	1.5066	1.5007	1.4615	2B	1.472	1.490	1.5084	1.5161	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5511	—	1.5084	1.5040	1.4633	3B	1.4720	1.4823	1.5084	1.5142	1.5625

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1 9/16-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.5609	1.5515	—	1.5203	1.5151	1.4865	2B	1.495	1.509	1.5219	1.5287	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5531	—	1.5219	1.5180	1.4881	3B	1.4950	1.5034	1.5219	1.5270	1.5625
1 9/16-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.5610	1.5523	—	1.5249	1.5199	1.4948	2B	1.502	1.515	1.5264	1.5329	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5538	—	1.5264	1.5227	1.4963	3B	1.5020	1.5105	1.5264	1.5313	1.5625
1 9/16-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.5611	1.5530	—	1.5286	1.5238	1.5016	2B	1.508	1.520	1.5300	1.5362	1.5625
	3A	0.0000	1.5625	1.5544	—	1.5300	1.5264	1.5030	3B	1.5080	1.5161	1.5300	1.5347	1.5625
1 5/8-6 UN	2A	0.0025	1.6225	1.6043	—	1.5142	1.5060	1.4240	2B	1.445	1.475	1.5167	1.5274	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6068	—	1.5167	1.5105	1.4265	3B	1.4450	1.4646	1.5167	1.5247	1.6250
1 5/8-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.6228	1.6078	1.6003	1.5416	1.5342	1.4740	2B	1.490	1.515	1.5438	1.5535	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6100	—	1.5438	1.5382	1.4762	3B	1.4900	1.5047	1.5438	1.5510	1.6250
1 5/8-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.6231	1.6102	—	1.5581	1.5517	1.5040	2B	1.517	1.538	1.5600	1.5683	1.6250
1 5/8-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.6232	1.6118	—	1.5691	1.5632	1.5240	2B	1.535	1.553	1.5709	1.5786	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6136	—	1.5709	1.5665	1.5258	3B	1.5350	1.5448	1.5709	1.5767	1.6250
1 5/8-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	1.6233	1.6130	—	1.5769	1.5714	1.5382	2B	1.548	1.563	1.5786	1.5858	1.6250
1 5/8-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.6234	1.6140	—	1.5828	1.5775	1.5490	2B	1.557	1.571	1.5844	1.5912	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6156	—	1.5844	1.5805	1.5506	3B	1.5570	1.5659	1.5844	1.5895	1.6250
1 5/8-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.6235	1.6148	—	1.5874	1.5824	1.5573	2B	1.565	1.578	1.5889	1.5954	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6163	—	1.5889	1.5851	1.5588	3B	1.5650	1.5730	1.5889	1.5938	1.6250
1 5/8-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.6236	1.6155	—	1.5911	1.5863	1.5641	2B	1.571	1.582	1.5925	1.5987	1.6250
	3A	0.0000	1.6250	1.6169	—	1.5925	1.5889	1.5655	3B	1.5710	1.5786	1.5925	1.5972	1.6250
1 5/8-24 UNS	2A	0.0013	1.6237	1.6165	—	1.5966	1.5921	1.5741	2B	1.580	1.590	1.5979	1.6037	1.6250
1 11/16-6 UN	2A	0.0025	1.6850	1.6668	—	1.5767	1.5684	1.4865	2B	1.507	1.538	1.5792	1.5900	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6693	—	1.5792	1.5730	1.4890	3B	1.5070	1.5271	1.5792	1.5873	1.6875
1 11/16-8 UN	2A	0.0022	1.6853	1.6703	—	1.6041	1.5966	1.5365	2B	1.552	1.577	1.6063	1.6160	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6725	—	1.6063	1.6007	1.5387	3B	1.5520	1.5672	1.6063	1.6136	1.6875
1 11/16-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.6857	1.6743	—	1.6316	1.6257	1.5865	2B	1.597	1.615	1.6334	1.6411	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6761	—	1.6334	1.6289	1.5883	3B	1.5970	1.6073	1.6334	1.6392	1.6875

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[e]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
$1\frac{11}{16}$-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.6859	1.6765	—	1.6453	1.6400	1.6115	2B	1.620	1.634	1.6469	1.6538	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6781	—	1.6469	1.6429	1.6131	3B	1.6200	1.6284	1.6469	1.6520	1.6875
$1\frac{11}{16}$-18 UNEF	2A	0.0015	1.6860	1.6773	—	1.6499	1.6449	1.6198	2B	1.627	1.640	1.6514	1.6579	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6788	—	1.6514	1.6476	1.6213	3B	1.6270	1.6355	1.6514	1.6563	1.6875
$1\frac{11}{16}$-20 UN	2A	0.0014	1.6861	1.6780	—	1.6536	1.6488	1.6266	2B	1.633	1.645	1.6550	1.6613	1.6875
	3A	0.0000	1.6875	1.6794	—	1.6550	1.6514	1.6280	3B	1.6330	1.6411	1.6550	1.6597	1.6875
$1\frac{3}{4}$-5 UNC	1A	0.0027	1.7473	1.7165	—	1.6174	1.6040	1.5091	1B	1.533	1.567	1.6201	1.6375	1.7500
	2A	0.0027	1.7473	1.7268	1.7165	1.6174	1.6085	1.5091	2B	1.533	1.567	1.6201	1.6317	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7295	—	1.6201	1.6134	1.5118	3B	1.5330	1.5575	1.6201	1.6288	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-6 UN	2A	0.0025	1.7475	1.7293	—	1.6392	1.6309	1.5490	2B	1.570	1.600	1.6417	1.6525	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7318	—	1.6417	1.6354	1.5515	3B	1.5700	1.5896	1.6417	1.6498	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-8 UN	2A	0.0023	1.7477	1.7327	1.7252	1.6665	1.6590	1.5989	2B	1.615	1.640	1.6688	1.6786	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7350	—	1.6688	1.6631	1.6012	3B	1.6150	1.6297	1.6688	1.6762	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-10 UNS	2A	0.0019	1.7481	1.7352	—	1.6831	1.6766	1.6290	2B	1.642	1.663	1.6850	1.6934	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.7482	1.7368	—	1.6941	1.6881	1.6490	2B	1.660	1.678	1.6959	1.7037	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7386	—	1.6959	1.6914	1.6508	3B	1.6600	1.6698	1.6959	1.7017	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	1.7483	1.7380	—	1.7019	1.6963	1.6632	2B	1.673	1.688	1.7036	1.7109	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.7484	1.7390	—	1.7078	1.7025	1.6740	2B	1.682	1.696	1.7094	1.7163	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7406	—	1.7094	1.7054	1.6756	3B	1.6820	1.6909	1.7094	1.7146	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-18 UNS	2A	0.0015	1.7485	1.7398	—	1.7124	1.7073	1.6823	2B	1.690	1.703	1.7139	1.7205	1.7500
$1\frac{3}{4}$-20 UN	2A	0.0015	1.7485	1.7404	—	1.7160	1.7112	1.6890	2B	1.696	1.707	1.7175	1.7238	1.7500
	3A	0.0000	1.7500	1.7419	—	1.7175	1.7139	1.6905	3B	1.6960	1.7036	1.7175	1.7222	1.7500
$1\frac{13}{16}$-6 UN	2A	0.0025	1.8100	1.7918	—	1.7017	1.6933	1.6115	2B	1.632	1.663	1.7042	1.7151	1.8125
	3A	0.0000	1.8125	1.7943	—	1.7042	1.6979	1.6140	3B	1.6320	1.6521	1.7042	1.7124	1.8125
$1\frac{13}{16}$-8 UN	2A	0.0023	1.8102	1.7952	—	1.7290	1.7214	1.6614	2B	1.677	1.702	1.7313	1.7412	1.8125
	3A	0.0000	1.8125	1.7975	—	1.7313	1.7256	1.6637	3B	1.6770	1.6922	1.7313	1.7387	1.8125
$1\frac{13}{16}$-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.8107	1.7993	—	1.7566	1.7506	1.7115	2B	1.722	1.740	1.7584	1.7662	1.8125
	3A	0.0000	1.8125	1.8011	—	1.7584	1.7539	1.7133	3B	1.7220	1.7323	1.7584	1.7642	1.8125

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
1 13/16-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.8109	1.8015	—	1.7703	1.7650	1.7365	2B	1.745	1.759	1.7719	1.7788	1.8125
	3A	0.0000	1.8125	1.8031	—	1.7719	1.7679	1.7381	3B	1.7450	1.7534	1.7719	1.7771	1.8125
1 13/16-20 UN	2A	0.0015	1.8110	1.8029	—	1.7785	1.7736	1.7515	2B	1.758	1.770	1.7800	1.7863	1.8125
	3A	0.0000	1.8125	1.8044	—	1.7800	1.7763	1.7530	3B	1.7580	1.7661	1.7800	1.7847	1.8125
1 7/8-6 UN	2A	0.0025	1.8725	1.8543	—	1.7642	1.7558	1.6740	2B	1.695	1.725	1.7667	1.7777	1.8750
	3A	0.0000	1.8750	1.8568	—	1.7667	1.7604	1.6765	3B	1.6950	1.7146	1.7667	1.7749	1.8750
1 7/8-8 UN	2A	0.0023	1.8727	1.8577	1.8502	1.7915	1.7838	1.7239	2B	1.740	1.765	1.7938	1.8038	1.8750
	3A	0.0000	1.8750	1.8600	—	1.7938	1.7881	1.7262	3B	1.7400	1.7547	1.7938	1.8013	1.8750
1 7/8-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	1.8730	1.8601	—	1.8080	1.8015	1.7539	2B	1.767	1.788	1.8100	1.8185	1.8750
1 7/8-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.8732	1.8618	—	1.8191	1.8131	1.7740	2B	1.785	1.803	1.8209	1.8287	1.8750
	3A	0.0000	1.8750	1.8636	—	1.8209	1.8164	1.7758	3B	1.7850	1.7948	1.8209	1.8268	1.8750
1 7/8-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	1.8733	1.8630	—	1.8269	1.8213	1.7882	2B	1.798	1.813	1.8286	1.8359	1.8750
1 7/8-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.8734	1.8640	—	1.8328	1.8275	1.7990	2B	1.807	1.821	1.8344	1.8413	1.8750
	3A	0.0000	1.8750	1.8656	—	1.8344	1.8304	1.8006	3B	1.8070	1.8159	1.8344	1.8396	1.8750
1 7/8-18 UNS	2A	0.0015	1.8735	1.8648	—	1.8374	1.8323	1.8073	2B	1.815	1.828	1.8389	1.8455	1.8750
1 7/8-20 UN	2A	0.0015	1.8735	1.8654	—	1.8410	1.8361	1.8140	2B	1.821	1.832	1.8425	1.8489	1.8750
	3A	0.0000	1.8750	1.8669	—	1.8425	1.8388	1.8155	3B	1.8210	1.8286	1.8425	1.8473	1.8750
1 15/16-6 UN	2A	0.0026	1.9349	1.9167	—	1.8266	1.8181	1.7364	2B	1.757	1.788	1.8292	1.8403	1.9375
	3A	0.0000	1.9375	1.9193	—	1.8292	1.8228	1.7390	3B	1.7570	1.7771	1.8292	1.8375	1.9375
1 15/16-8 UN	2A	0.0023	1.9352	1.9202	—	1.8540	1.8463	1.7864	2B	1.802	1.827	1.8563	1.8663	1.9375
	3A	0.0000	1.9375	1.9225	—	1.8563	1.8505	1.7887	3B	1.8020	1.8172	1.8563	1.8638	1.9375
1 15/16-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.9357	1.9243	—	1.8816	1.8756	1.8365	2B	1.847	1.865	1.8834	1.8912	1.9375
	3A	0.0000	1.9375	1.9261	—	1.8834	1.8789	1.8383	3B	1.8470	1.8573	1.8834	1.8893	1.9375
1 15/16-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.9359	1.9265	—	1.8953	1.8899	1.8615	2B	1.870	1.884	1.8969	1.9039	1.9375
	3A	0.0000	1.9375	1.9281	—	1.8969	1.8929	1.8631	3B	1.8700	1.8784	1.8969	1.9021	1.9375
1 15/16-20 UN	2A	0.0015	1.9360	1.9279	—	1.9035	1.8986	1.8765	2B	1.883	1.895	1.9050	1.9114	1.9375
	3A	0.0000	1.9375	1.9294	—	1.9050	1.9013	1.8780	3B	1.8830	1.8911	1.9050	1.9098	1.9375

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
2-4½ UNC	1A	0.0029	1.9971	1.9641	—	1.8528	1.8385	1.7325	1B	1.759	1.795	1.8557	1.8743	2.0000
	2A	0.0029	1.9971	1.9751	1.9641	1.8528	1.8433	1.7325	2B	1.759	1.795	1.8557	1.8681	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9780	—	1.8557	1.8486	1.7354	3B	1.7590	1.7861	1.8557	1.8650	2.0000
2-6 UN	2A	0.0026	1.9974	1.9792	—	1.8891	1.8805	1.7989	2B	1.820	1.850	1.8917	1.9028	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9818	—	1.8917	1.8853	1.8015	3B	1.8200	1.8396	1.8917	1.9000	2.0000
2-8 UN	2A	0.0023	1.9977	1.9827	1.9752	1.9165	1.9087	1.8489	2B	1.865	1.890	1.9188	1.9289	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9850	—	1.9188	1.9130	1.8512	3B	1.8650	1.8797	1.9188	1.9264	2.0000
2-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	1.9980	1.9851	—	1.9330	1.9265	1.8789	2B	1.892	1.913	1.9350	1.9435	2.0000
2-12 UN	2A	0.0018	1.9982	1.9868	—	1.9441	1.9380	1.8990	2B	1.910	1.928	1.9459	1.9538	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9886	—	1.9459	1.9414	1.9008	3B	1.9100	1.9198	1.9459	1.9518	2.0000
2-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	1.9983	1.9880	—	1.9519	1.9462	1.9132	2B	1.923	1.938	1.9536	1.9610	2.0000
2-16 UN	2A	0.0016	1.9984	1.9890	—	1.9578	1.9524	1.9240	2B	1.932	1.946	1.9594	1.9664	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9906	—	1.9594	1.9554	1.9256	3B	1.9320	1.9409	1.9594	1.9646	2.0000
2-18 UNS	2A	0.0015	1.9985	1.9898	—	1.9624	1.9573	1.9323	2B	1.940	1.953	1.9639	1.9706	2.0000
2-20 UN	2A	0.0015	1.9985	1.9904	—	1.9660	1.9611	1.9390	2B	1.946	1.957	1.9675	1.9739	2.0000
	3A	0.0000	2.0000	1.9919	—	1.9675	1.9638	1.9405	3B	1.9460	1.9536	1.9675	1.9723	2.0000
2 1/16-16 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.0609	2.0515	—	2.0203	2.0149	1.9865	2B	1.995	2.009	2.0219	2.0289	2.0625
	3A	0.0000	2.0625	2.0531	—	2.0219	2.0179	1.9881	3B	1.9950	2.0034	2.0219	2.0272	2.0625
2⅛-6 UN	2A	0.0026	2.1224	2.1042	—	2.0141	2.0054	1.9239	2B	1.945	1.975	2.0167	2.0280	2.1250
	3A	0.0000	2.1250	2.1068	—	2.0167	2.0102	1.9265	3B	1.9450	1.9646	2.0167	2.0251	2.1250
2⅛-8 UN	2A	0.0024	2.1226	2.1076	2.1001	2.0414	2.0335	1.9738	2B	1.990	2.015	2.0438	2.0540	2.1250
	3A	0.0000	2.1250	2.1100	—	2.0438	2.0379	1.9762	3B	1.9900	2.0047	2.0438	2.0515	2.1250
2⅛-12 UN	2A	0.0018	2.1232	2.1118	—	2.0691	2.0630	2.0240	2B	2.035	2.053	2.0709	2.0788	2.1250
	3A	0.0000	2.1250	2.1136	—	2.0709	2.0663	2.0258	3B	2.0350	2.0448	2.0709	2.0768	2.1250
2⅛-16 UN	2A	0.0016	2.1234	2.1140	—	2.0828	2.0774	2.0490	2B	2.057	2.071	2.0844	2.0914	2.1250
	3A	0.0000	2.1250	2.1156	—	2.0844	2.0803	2.0506	3B	2.0570	2.0659	2.0844	2.0897	2.1250
2⅛-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.1235	2.1154	—	2.0910	2.0860	2.0640	2B	2.071	2.082	2.0925	2.0990	2.1250
	3A	0.0000	2.1250	2.1169	—	2.0925	2.0888	2.0655	3B	2.0710	2.0786	2.0925	2.0973	2.1250

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
2 3/16-16 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.1859	2.1765	—	2.1453	2.1399	2.1115	2B	2.120	2.134	2.1469	2.1540	2.1875
	3A	0.0000	2.1875	2.1781	—	2.1469	2.1428	2.1131	3B	2.1200	2.1284	2.1469	2.1522	2.1875
2 1/4-4 1/2 UNC	1A	0.0029	2.2471	2.2141	—	2.1028	2.0882	1.9825	1B	2.009	2.045	2.1057	2.1247	2.2500
	2A	0.0029	2.2471	2.2251	2.2141	2.1028	2.0931	1.9825	2B	2.009	2.045	2.1057	2.1183	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2280	—	2.1057	2.0984	1.9854	3B	2.0090	2.0361	2.1057	2.1152	2.2500
2 1/4-6 UN	2A	0.0026	2.2474	2.2292	—	2.1391	2.1303	2.0489	2B	2.070	2.100	2.1417	2.1531	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2318	—	2.1417	2.1351	2.0515	3B	2.0700	2.0896	2.1417	2.1502	2.2500
2 1/4-8 UN	2A	0.0024	2.2476	2.2326	2.2251	2.1664	2.1584	2.0988	2B	2.115	2.140	2.1688	2.1792	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2350	—	2.1688	2.1628	2.1012	3B	2.1150	2.1297	2.1688	2.1766	2.2500
2 1/4-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	2.2480	2.2351	—	2.1830	2.1764	2.1289	2B	2.142	2.163	2.1850	2.1936	2.2500
2 1/4-12 UN	2A	0.0018	2.2482	2.2368	—	2.1941	2.1880	2.1490	2B	2.160	2.178	2.1959	2.2039	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2386	—	2.1959	2.1913	2.1508	3B	2.1600	2.1698	2.1959	2.2019	2.2500
2 1/4-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	2.2483	2.2380	—	2.2019	2.1961	2.1632	2B	2.173	2.188	2.2036	2.2111	2.2500
2 1/4-16 UN	2A	0.0016	2.2484	2.2390	—	2.2078	2.2023	2.1740	2B	2.182	2.196	2.2094	2.2165	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2406	—	2.2094	2.2053	2.1756	3B	2.1820	2.1909	2.2094	2.2147	2.2500
2 1/4-18 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.2484	2.2397	—	2.2123	2.2071	2.1822	2B	2.190	2.203	2.2139	2.2207	2.2500
2 1/4-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.2485	2.2404	—	2.2160	2.2110	2.1890	2B	2.196	2.207	2.2175	2.2240	2.2500
	3A	0.0000	2.2500	2.2419	—	2.2175	2.2137	2.1905	3B	2.1960	2.2036	2.2175	2.2223	2.2500
2 5/16-16 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.3109	2.3015	—	2.2703	2.2648	2.2365	2B	2.245	2.259	2.2719	2.2790	2.3125
	3A	0.0000	2.3125	2.3031	—	2.2719	2.2678	2.2381	3B	2.2450	2.2534	2.2719	2.2772	2.3125
2 3/8-6 UN	2A	0.0027	2.3723	2.3541	—	2.2640	2.2551	2.1738	2B	2.195	2.225	2.2667	2.2782	2.3750
	3A	0.0000	2.3750	2.3568	—	2.2667	2.2601	2.1765	3B	2.1950	2.2146	2.2667	2.2753	2.3750
2 3/8-8 UN	2A	0.0024	2.3726	2.3576	—	2.2914	2.2833	2.2238	2B	2.240	2.265	2.2938	2.3043	2.3750
	3A	0.0000	2.3750	2.3600	—	2.2938	2.2878	2.2262	3B	2.2400	2.2547	2.2938	2.3017	2.3750
2 3/8-12 UN	2A	0.0018	2.3732	2.3618	—	2.3191	2.3129	2.2740	2B	2.285	2.303	2.3209	2.3289	2.3750
	3A	0.0000	2.3750	2.3636	—	2.3209	2.3163	2.2758	3B	2.2850	2.2948	2.3209	2.3269	2.3750
2 3/8-16 UN	2A	0.0016	2.3734	2.3640	—	2.3328	2.3273	2.2990	2B	2.307	2.321	2.3344	2.3415	2.3750
	3A	0.0000	2.3750	2.3656	—	2.3344	2.3303	2.3006	3B	2.3070	2.3159	2.3344	2.3398	2.3750

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
2⅜-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.3735	2.3654	—	2.3410	2.3360	2.3140	2B	2.321	2.332	2.3425	2.3491	2.3750
	3A	0.0000	2.3750	2.3669	—	2.3425	2.3387	2.3155	3B	2.3210	2.3286	2.3425	2.3474	2.3750
2⁷⁄₁₆-16 UNS	2A	0.0017	2.4358	2.4264	—	2.3952	2.3897	2.3614	2B	2.370	2.384	2.3969	2.4041	2.4375
	3A	0.0000	2.4375	2.4281	—	2.3969	2.3928	2.3631	3B	2.3700	2.3784	2.3969	2.4023	2.4375
2½-4 UNC	1A	0.0031	2.4969	2.4612	—	2.3345	2.3190	2.1992	1B	2.229	2.267	2.3376	2.3578	2.5000
	2A	0.0031	2.4969	2.4731	2.4612	2.3345	2.3241	2.1992	2B	2.229	2.267	2.3376	2.3511	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4762	—	2.3376	2.3298	2.2023	3B	2.2290	2.2594	2.3376	2.3477	2.5000
2½-6 UN	2A	0.0027	2.4973	2.4791	—	2.3890	2.3800	2.2988	2B	2.320	2.350	2.3917	2.4033	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4818	—	2.3917	2.3850	2.3015	3B	2.3200	2.3396	2.3917	2.4004	2.5000
2½-8 UN	2A	0.0024	2.4976	2.4826	2.4751	2.4164	2.4082	2.3488	2B	2.365	2.390	2.4188	2.4294	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4850	—	2.4188	2.4127	2.3512	3B	2.3650	2.3797	2.4188	2.4268	2.5000
2½-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	2.4980	2.4851	—	2.4330	2.4263	2.3789	2B	2.392	2.413	2.4350	2.4437	2.5000
2½-12 UN	2A	0.0019	2.4981	2.4867	—	2.4440	2.4378	2.3989	2B	2.410	2.428	2.4459	2.4540	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4886	—	2.4459	2.4413	2.4008	3B	2.4100	2.4198	2.4459	2.4519	2.5000
2½-14 UNS	2A	0.0017	2.4983	2.4880	—	2.4519	2.4461	2.4132	2B	2.423	2.438	2.4536	2.4612	2.5000
2½-16 UN	2A	0.0017	2.4983	2.4889	—	2.4577	2.4522	2.4239	2B	2.432	2.446	2.4594	2.4666	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4906	—	2.4594	2.4553	2.4256	3B	2.4320	2.4409	2.4594	2.4648	2.5000
2½-18 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.4984	2.4897	—	2.4623	2.4570	2.4322	2B	2.440	2.453	2.4639	2.4708	2.5000
2½-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.4985	2.4904	—	2.4660	2.4609	2.4390	2B	2.446	2.457	2.4675	2.4741	2.5000
	3A	0.0000	2.5000	2.4919	—	2.4675	2.4637	2.4405	3B	2.4460	2.4536	2.4675	2.4725	2.5000
2⅝-6 UN	2A	0.0027	2.6223	2.6041	—	2.5140	2.5050	2.4238	2B	2.445	2.475	2.5167	2.5285	2.6250
	3A	0.0000	2.6250	2.6068	—	2.5167	2.5099	2.4265	3B	2.4450	2.4646	2.5167	2.5255	2.6250
2⅝-8 UN	2A	0.0025	2.6225	2.6075	—	2.5413	2.5331	2.4737	2B	2.490	2.515	2.5438	2.5545	2.6250
	3A	0.0000	2.6250	2.6100	—	2.5438	2.5376	2.4762	3B	2.4900	2.5047	2.5438	2.5518	2.6250
2⅝-12 UN	2A	0.0019	2.6231	2.6117	—	2.5690	2.5628	2.5239	2B	2.535	2.553	2.5709	2.5790	2.6250
	3A	0.0000	2.6250	2.6136	—	2.5709	2.5662	2.5258	3B	2.5350	2.5448	2.5709	2.5770	2.6250
2⅝-16 UN	2A	0.0017	2.6233	2.6139	—	2.5827	2.5771	2.5489	2B	2.557	2.571	2.5844	2.5916	2.6250
	3A	0.0000	2.6250	2.6156	—	2.5844	2.5802	2.5506	3B	2.5570	2.5659	2.5844	2.5898	2.6250

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
2⅝-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.6235	2.6154	—	2.5910	2.5859	2.5640	2B	2.571	2.582	2.5925	2.5991	2.6250
	3A	0.0000	2.6250	2.6169	—	2.5925	2.5887	2.5655	3B	2.5710	2.5786	2.5925	2.5975	2.6250
2¾-4 UNC	1A	0.0032	2.7468	2.7111	—	2.5844	2.5686	2.4491	1B	2.479	2.517	2.5876	2.6082	2.7500
	2A	0.0032	2.7468	2.7230	2.7111	2.5844	2.5739	2.4491	2B	2.479	2.517	2.5876	2.6013	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7262	—	2.5876	2.5797	2.4523	3B	2.4790	2.5094	2.5876	2.5979	2.7500
2¾-6 UN	2A	0.0027	2.7473	2.7291	—	2.6390	2.6299	2.5488	2B	2.570	2.600	2.6417	2.6536	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7318	—	2.6417	2.6349	2.5515	3B	2.5700	2.5896	2.6417	2.6506	2.7500
2¾-8 UN	2A	0.0025	2.7475	2.7325	2.7250	2.6663	2.6580	2.5987	2B	2.615	2.640	2.6688	2.6796	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7350	—	2.6688	2.6625	2.6012	3B	2.6150	2.6297	2.6688	2.6769	2.7500
2¾-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	2.7480	2.7351	—	2.6830	2.6762	2.6289	2B	2.642	2.663	2.6850	2.6938	2.7500
2¾-12 UN	2A	0.0019	2.7481	2.7367	—	2.6940	2.6877	2.6489	2B	2.660	2.678	2.6959	2.7040	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7386	—	2.6959	2.6912	2.6508	3B	2.6600	2.6698	2.6959	2.7020	2.7500
2¾-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	2.7482	2.7379	—	2.7018	2.6959	2.6631	2B	2.673	2.688	2.7036	2.7113	2.7500
2¾-16 UN	2A	0.0017	2.7483	2.7389	—	2.7077	2.7021	2.6739	2B	2.682	2.696	2.7094	2.7167	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7406	—	2.7094	2.7052	2.6756	3B	2.6820	2.6909	2.7094	2.7148	2.7500
2¾-18 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.7484	2.7397	—	2.7123	2.7070	2.6822	2B	2.690	2.703	2.7139	2.7209	2.7500
2¾-20 UN	2A	0.0015	2.7485	2.7404	—	2.7160	2.7109	2.6890	2B	2.696	2.707	2.7175	2.7242	2.7500
	3A	0.0000	2.7500	2.7419	—	2.7175	2.7136	2.6905	3B	2.6960	2.7036	2.7175	2.7225	2.7500
2⅞-6 UN	2A	0.0028	2.8722	2.8540	—	2.7639	2.7547	2.6737	2B	2.695	2.725	2.7667	2.7787	2.8750
	3A	0.0000	2.8750	2.8568	—	2.7667	2.7598	2.6765	3B	2.6950	2.7146	2.7667	2.7757	2.8750
2⅞-8 UN	2A	0.0025	2.8725	2.8575	—	2.7913	2.7829	2.7237	2B	2.740	2.765	2.7938	2.8048	2.8750
	3A	0.0000	2.8750	2.8600	—	2.7938	2.7875	2.7262	3B	2.7400	2.7547	2.7938	2.8020	2.8750
2⅞-12 UN	2A	0.0019	2.8731	2.8617	—	2.8190	2.8127	2.7739	2B	2.785	2.803	2.8209	2.8291	2.8750
	3A	0.0000	2.8750	2.8636	—	2.8209	2.8162	2.7758	3B	2.7850	2.7948	2.8209	2.8270	2.8750
2⅞-16 UN	2A	0.0017	2.8733	2.8639	—	2.8327	2.8271	2.7989	2B	2.807	2.821	2.8344	2.8417	2.8750
	3A	0.0000	2.8750	2.8656	—	2.8344	2.8302	2.8006	3B	2.8070	2.8159	2.8344	2.8399	2.8750
2⅞-20 UN	2A	0.0016	2.8734	2.8653	—	2.8409	2.8357	2.8139	2B	2.821	2.832	2.8425	2.8492	2.8750
	3A	0.0000	2.8750	2.8669	—	2.8425	2.8386	2.8155	3B	2.8210	2.8286	2.8425	2.8475	2.8750

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3-4 UNC	1A	0.0032	2.9968	2.9611	—	2.8344	2.8183	2.6991	1B	2.729	2.767	2.8376	2.8585	3.0000
	2A	0.0032	2.9968	2.9730	2.9611	2.8344	2.8237	2.6991	2B	2.729	2.767	2.8376	2.8515	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9762	—	2.8376	2.8296	2.7023	3B	2.7290	2.7594	2.8376	2.8480	3.0000
3-6 UN	2A	0.0028	2.9972	2.9790	—	2.8889	2.8796	2.7987	2B	2.820	2.850	2.8917	2.9038	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9818	—	2.8917	2.8847	2.8015	3B	2.8200	2.8396	2.8917	2.9008	3.0000
3-8 UN	2A	0.0026	2.9974	2.9824	2.9749	2.9162	2.9077	2.8486	2B	2.865	2.890	2.9188	2.9299	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9850	—	2.9188	2.9124	2.8512	3B	2.8650	2.8797	2.9188	2.9271	3.0000
3-10 UNS	2A	0.0020	2.9980	2.9851	—	2.9330	2.9262	2.8789	2B	2.892	2.913	2.9350	2.9439	3.0000
3-12 UN	2A	0.0019	2.9981	2.9867	—	2.9440	2.9377	2.8989	2B	2.910	2.928	2.9459	2.9541	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9886	—	2.9459	2.9412	2.9008	3B	2.9100	2.9198	2.9459	2.9521	3.0000
3-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	2.9982	2.9879	—	2.9518	2.9459	2.9131	2B	2.923	2.938	2.9536	2.9613	3.0000
3-16 UN	2A	0.0017	2.9983	2.9889	—	2.9577	2.9521	2.9239	2B	2.932	2.946	2.9594	2.9667	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9906	—	2.9594	2.9552	2.9256	3B	2.9320	2.9409	2.9594	2.9649	3.0000
3-18 UNS	2A	0.0016	2.9984	2.9897	—	2.9623	2.9569	2.9322	2B	2.940	2.953	2.9639	2.9709	3.0000
3-20 UN	2A	0.0016	2.9984	2.9903	—	2.9659	2.9607	2.9389	2B	2.946	2.957	2.9675	2.9743	3.0000
	3A	0.0000	3.0000	2.9919	—	2.9675	2.9636	2.9405	3B	2.9460	2.9536	2.9675	2.9726	3.0000
3⅛-6 UN	2A	0.0028	3.1222	3.1040	—	3.0139	3.0045	2.9237	2B	2.945	2.975	3.0167	3.0289	3.1250
	3A	0.0000	3.1250	3.1068	—	3.0167	3.0097	2.9265	3B	2.9450	2.9646	3.0167	3.0259	3.1250
3⅛-8 UN	2A	0.0026	3.1224	3.1074	—	3.0412	3.0326	2.9736	2B	2.990	3.015	3.0438	3.0550	3.1250
	3A	0.0000	3.1250	3.1100	—	3.0438	3.0374	2.9762	3B	2.9900	3.0047	3.0438	3.0522	3.1250
3⅛-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.1231	3.1117	—	3.0690	3.0626	3.0239	2B	3.035	3.053	3.0709	3.0792	3.1250
	3A	0.0000	3.1250	3.1136	—	3.0709	3.0661	3.0258	3B	3.0350	3.0448	3.0709	3.0771	3.1250
3⅛-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.1233	3.1139	—	3.0827	3.0770	3.0849	2B	3.057	3.071	3.0844	3.0918	3.1250
	3A	0.0000	3.1250	3.1156	—	3.0844	3.0801	3.0506	3B	3.0570	3.0659	3.0844	3.0899	3.1250
3¼-4 UNC	1A	0.0033	3.2467	3.2110	—	3.0843	3.0680	2.9490	1B	2.979	3.017	3.0876	3.1088	3.2500
	2A	0.0033	3.2467	3.2229	3.2110	3.0843	3.0734	2.9490	2B	2.979	3.017	3.0876	3.1017	3.2500
	3A	0.0000	3.2500	3.2262	—	3.0876	3.0794	2.9523	3B	2.9790	3.0094	3.0876	3.0982	3.2500
3¼-6 UN	2A	0.0028	3.2472	3.2290	—	3.1389	3.1294	3.0487	2B	3.070	3.100	3.1417	3.1540	3.2500
	3A	0.0000	3.2500	3.2318	—	3.1417	3.1346	3.0515	3B	3.0700	3.0896	3.1417	3.1509	3.2500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]								Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	(Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3¼-8 UN	2A	0.0026	3.2474	3.2324	3.2249	3.1662	3.1575	3.0986	2B	3.115	3.140	3.1688	3.1801	3.2500
	3A	0.0000	3.2500	3.2350	—	3.1688	3.1623	3.1012	3B	3.1150	3.1297	3.1688	3.1773	3.2500
3¼-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	3.2479	3.2350	—	3.1829	3.1760	3.1288	2B	3.142	3.163	3.1850	3.1939	3.2500
3¼-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.2481	3.2367	—	3.1940	3.1876	3.1489	2B	3.160	3.178	3.1959	3.2042	3.2500
	3A	0.0000	3.2500	3.2386	—	3.1959	3.1911	3.1508	3B	3.1600	3.1698	3.1959	3.2021	3.2500
3¼-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	3.2482	3.2379	—	3.2018	3.1958	3.1631	2B	3.173	3.188	3.2036	3.2114	3.2500
3¼-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.2483	3.2389	—	3.2077	3.2020	3.1739	2B	3.182	3.196	3.2094	3.2168	3.2500
	3A	0.0000	3.2500	3.2406	—	3.2094	3.2051	3.1756	3B	3.1820	3.1909	3.2094	3.2150	3.2500
3¼-18 UNS	2A	0.0016	3.2484	3.2397	—	3.2123	3.2068	3.1823	2B	3.190	3.203	3.2139	3.2210	3.2500
3⅜-6 UN	2A	0.0029	3.3721	3.3539	—	3.2638	3.2543	3.1736	2B	3.195	3.225	3.2667	3.2791	3.3750
	3A	0.0000	3.3750	3.3568	—	3.2667	3.2595	3.1765	3B	3.1950	3.2146	3.2667	3.2760	3.3750
3⅜-8 UN	2A	0.0026	3.3724	3.3574	—	3.2912	3.2824	3.2236	2B	3.240	3.265	3.2938	3.3052	3.3750
	3A	0.0000	3.3750	3.3600	—	3.2938	3.2872	3.2262	3B	3.2400	3.2547	3.2938	3.3023	3.3750
3⅜-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.3731	3.3617	—	3.3190	3.3126	3.2739	2B	3.285	3.303	3.3209	3.3292	3.3750
	3A	0.0000	3.3750	3.3636	—	3.3209	3.3161	3.2758	3B	3.2850	3.2948	3.3209	3.3272	3.3750
3⅜-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.3733	3.3639	—	3.3327	3.3270	3.2989	2B	3.307	3.321	3.3344	3.3419	3.3750
	3A	0.0000	3.3750	3.3656	—	3.3344	3.3301	3.3006	3B	3.3070	3.3159	3.3344	3.3400	3.3750
3½-4 UNC	1A	0.0033	3.4967	3.4610	—	3.3343	3.3177	3.1990	1B	3.229	3.267	3.3376	3.3591	3.5000
	2A	0.0033	3.4967	3.4729	3.4610	3.3343	3.3233	3.1990	2B	3.229	3.267	3.3376	3.3519	3.5000
	3A	0.0000	3.5000	3.4762	—	3.3376	3.3293	3.2023	3B	3.2290	3.2594	3.3376	3.3484	3.5000
3½-6 UN	2A	0.0029	3.4971	3.4789	—	3.3888	3.3792	3.2986	2B	3.320	3.350	3.3917	3.4042	3.5000
	3A	0.0000	3.5000	3.4818	—	3.3917	3.3845	3.3015	3B	3.3200	3.3396	3.3917	3.4011	3.5000
3½-8 UN	2A	0.0026	3.4974	3.4824	3.4749	3.4162	3.4074	3.3486	2B	3.365	3.390	3.4188	3.4303	3.5000
	3A	0.0000	3.5000	3.4850	—	3.4188	3.4122	3.3512	3B	3.3650	3.3797	3.4188	3.4274	3.5000
3½-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	3.4979	3.4850	—	3.4329	3.4260	3.3788	2B	3.392	3.413	3.4350	3.4440	3.5000
3½-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.4981	3.4867	—	3.4440	3.4376	3.3989	2B	3.410	3.428	3.4459	3.4543	3.5000
	3A	0.0000	3.5000	3.4886	—	3.4459	3.4411	3.4008	3B	3.4100	3.4198	3.4459	3.4522	3.5000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]								Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter		UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	(Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3½-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	3.4982	3.4879	—	3.4518	3.4457	3.4131	2B	3.423	3.438	3.4536	3.4615	3.5000
3½-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.4983	3.4889	—	3.4577	3.4519	3.4239	2B	3.432	3.446	3.4594	3.4669	3.5000
	3A	0.0000	3.5000	3.4906	—	3.4594	3.4551	3.4256	3B	3.4320	3.4409	3.4594	3.4650	3.5000
3½-18 UNS	2A	0.0017	3.4983	3.4896	—	3.4622	3.4567	3.4321	2B	3.440	3.453	3.4639	3.4711	3.5000
3⅝-6 UN	2A	0.0029	3.6221	3.6039	—	3.5138	3.5041	3.4236	2B	3.445	3.475	3.5167	3.5293	3.6250
	3A	0.0000	3.6250	3.6068	—	3.5167	3.5094	3.4265	3B	3.4450	3.4646	3.5167	3.5262	3.6250
3⅝-8 UN	2A	0.0027	3.6223	3.6073	—	3.5411	3.5322	3.4735	2B	3.490	3.515	3.5438	3.5554	3.6250
	3A	0.0000	3.6250	3.6100	—	3.5438	3.5371	3.4762	3B	3.4900	3.5047	3.5438	3.5525	3.6250
3⅝-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.6231	3.6117	—	3.5690	3.5625	3.5239	2B	3.535	3.553	3.5709	3.5793	3.6250
	3A	0.0000	3.6250	3.6136	—	3.5709	3.5661	3.5258	3B	3.5350	3.5448	3.5709	3.5772	3.6250
3⅝-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.6233	3.6139	—	3.5827	3.5769	3.5489	2B	3.557	3.571	3.5844	3.5919	3.6250
	3A	0.0000	3.6250	3.6156	—	3.5844	3.5801	3.5506	3B	3.5570	3.5659	3.5844	3.5900	3.6250
3¾-4 UNC	1A	0.0034	3.7466	3.7109	—	3.5842	3.5674	3.4489	1B	3.479	3.517	3.5876	3.6094	3.7500
	2A	0.0034	3.7466	3.7228	3.7109	3.5842	3.5730	3.4489	2B	3.479	3.517	3.5876	3.6021	3.7500
	3A	0.0000	3.7500	3.7262	—	3.5876	3.5792	3.4523	3B	3.4790	3.5094	3.5876	3.5985	3.7500
3¾-6 UN	2A	0.0029	3.7471	3.7289	—	3.6388	3.6290	3.5486	2B	3.570	3.600	3.6417	3.6544	3.7500
	3A	0.0000	3.7500	3.7318	—	3.6417	3.6344	3.5515	3B	3.5700	3.5896	3.6417	3.6512	3.7500
3¾-8 UN	2A	0.0027	3.7473	3.7323	3.7248	3.6661	3.6571	3.5985	2B	3.615	3.640	3.6688	3.6805	3.7500
	3A	0.0000	3.7500	3.7350	—	3.6688	3.6621	3.6012	3B	3.6150	3.6297	3.6688	3.6776	3.7500
3¾-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	3.7479	3.7350	—	3.6829	3.6759	3.6288	2B	3.642	3.663	3.6850	3.6941	3.7500
3¾-12 UN	2A	0.0019	3.7481	3.7367	—	3.6940	3.6875	3.6489	2B	3.660	3.678	3.6959	3.7043	3.7500
	3A	0.0000	3.7500	3.7386	—	3.6959	3.6910	3.6508	3B	3.6600	3.6698	3.6959	3.7022	3.7500
3¾-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	3.7482	3.7379	—	3.7018	3.6957	3.6631	2B	3.673	3.688	3.7036	3.7115	3.7500
3¾-16 UN	2A	0.0017	3.7483	3.7389	—	3.7077	3.7019	3.6739	2B	3.682	3.696	3.7094	3.7170	3.7500
	3A	0.0000	3.7500	3.7406	—	3.7094	3.7050	3.6756	3B	3.6820	3.6909	3.7094	3.7151	3.7500
3¾-18 UNS	2A	0.0017	3.7483	3.7396	—	3.7122	3.7066	3.6821	2B	3.690	3.703	3.7139	3.7211	3.7500

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
3⅞-6 UN	2A	0.0030	3.8720	3.8538	—	3.7637	3.7538	3.6735	2B	3.695	3.725	3.7667	3.7795	3.8750
	3A	0.0000	3.8750	3.8568	—	3.7667	3.7593	3.6765	3B	3.6950	3.7146	3.7667	3.7763	3.8750
3⅞-8 UN	2A	0.0027	3.8723	3.8573	—	3.7911	3.7820	3.7235	2B	3.740	3.765	3.7938	3.8056	3.8750
	3A	0.0000	3.8750	3.8600	—	3.7938	3.7870	3.7262	3B	3.7400	3.7547	3.7938	3.8026	3.8750
3⅞-12 UN	2A	0.0020	3.8730	3.8616	—	3.8189	3.8124	3.7738	2B	3.785	3.803	3.8209	3.8294	3.8750
	3A	0.0000	3.8750	3.8636	—	3.8209	3.8160	3.7758	3B	3.7850	3.7948	3.8209	3.8273	3.8750
3⅞-16 UN	2A	0.0018	3.8732	3.8638	—	3.8326	3.8268	3.7988	2B	3.807	3.821	3.8344	3.8420	3.8750
	3A	0.0000	3.8750	3.8656	—	3.8344	3.8300	3.8006	3B	3.8070	3.8159	3.8344	3.8401	3.8750
4-4 UNC	1A	0.0034	3.9966	3.9609	—	3.8342	3.8172	3.6989	1B	3.729	3.767	3.8376	3.8597	4.0000
	2A	0.0034	3.9966	3.9728	3.9609	3.8342	3.8229	3.6989	2B	3.729	3.767	3.8376	3.8523	4.0000
	3A	0.0000	4.0000	3.9762	—	3.8376	3.8291	3.7023	3B	3.7290	3.7594	3.8376	3.8487	4.0000
4-6 UN	2A	0.0030	3.9970	3.9788	—	3.8887	3.8788	3.7985	2B	3.820	3.850	3.8917	3.9046	4.0000
	3A	0.0000	4.0000	3.9818	—	3.8917	3.8843	3.8015	3B	3.8200	3.8396	3.8917	3.9014	4.0000
4-8 UN	2A	0.0027	3.9973	3.9823	3.9748	3.9161	3.9070	3.8485	2B	3.865	3.890	3.9188	3.9307	4.0000
	3A	0.0000	4.0000	3.9850	—	3.9188	3.9120	3.8512	3B	3.8650	3.8797	3.9188	3.9277	4.0000
4-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	3.9979	3.9850	—	3.9329	3.9259	3.8788	2B	3.892	3.913	3.9350	3.9441	4.0000
4-12 UN	2A	0.0020	3.9980	3.9866	—	3.9439	3.9374	3.8988	2B	3.910	3.928	3.9459	3.9544	4.0000
	3A	0.0000	4.0000	3.9886	—	3.9459	3.9410	3.9008	3B	3.9100	3.9198	3.9459	3.9523	4.0000
4-14 UNS	2A	0.0018	3.9982	3.9879	—	3.9518	3.9456	3.9131	2B	3.923	3.938	3.9536	3.9616	4.0000
4-16 UN	2A	0.0018	3.9982	3.9888	—	3.9576	3.9517	3.9238	2B	3.932	3.946	3.9594	3.9670	4.0000
	3A	0.0000	4.0000	3.9906	—	3.9594	3.9550	3.9256	3B	3.9320	3.9409	3.9594	3.9651	4.0000
4¼-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	4.2479	4.2350	—	4.1829	4.1758	4.1288	2B	4.142	4.163	4.1850	4.1942	4.2500
4¼-12 UN	2A	0.0020	4.2480	4.2366	—	4.1939	4.1873	4.1488	2B	4.160	4.178	4.1959	4.2045	4.2500
	3A	0.0000	4.2500	4.2386	—	4.1959	4.1910	4.1508	3B	4.1600	4.1698	4.1959	4.2023	4.2500
4¼-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	4.2481	4.2378	—	4.2017	4.1955	4.1630	2B	4.173	4.188	4.2036	4.2117	4.2500
4¼-16 UN	2A	0.0018	4.2482	4.2388	—	4.2076	4.2017	4.1738	2B	4.182	4.196	4.2094	4.2171	4.2500
	3A	0.0000	4.2500	4.2406	—	4.2094	4.2050	4.1756	3B	4.1820	4.1909	4.2094	4.2152	4.2500
4½-10 UNS	2A	0.0021	4.4979	4.4850	—	4.4329	4.4258	4.3788	2B	4.392	4.413	4.4350	4.4443	4.5000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter				Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
4½-12 UN	2A	0.0020	4.4980	4.4866	—	4.4439	4.4373	4.3988	2B	4.410	4.428	4.4459	4.4545	4.5000
	3A	0.0000	4.5000	4.4886	—	4.4459	4.4409	4.4008	3B	4.4100	4.4198	4.4459	4.4524	4.5000
4½-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	4.4981	4.4878	—	4.4517	4.4454	4.4130	2B	4.423	4.438	4.4536	4.4617	4.5000
4½-16 UN	2A	0.0018	4.4982	4.4888	—	4.4576	4.4516	4.4238	2B	4.432	4.446	4.4594	4.4672	4.5000
	3A	0.0000	4.5000	4.4906	—	4.4594	4.4549	4.4256	3B	4.4320	4.4409	4.4594	4.4652	4.5000
4¾-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	4.7478	4.7349	—	4.6828	4.6756	4.6287	2B	4.642	4.663	4.6850	4.6943	4.7500
4¾-12 UN	2A	0.0020	4.7480	4.7366	—	4.6939	4.6872	4.6488	2B	4.660	4.678	4.6959	4.7046	4.7500
	3A	0.0000	4.7500	4.7386	—	4.6959	4.6909	4.6508	3B	4.6600	4.6698	4.6959	4.7024	4.7500
4¾-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	4.7481	4.7378	—	4.7017	4.6954	4.6630	2B	4.673	4.688	4.7036	4.7118	4.7500
4¾-16 UN	2A	0.0018	4.7482	4.7388	—	4.7076	4.7016	4.6738	2B	4.682	4.696	4.7094	4.7172	4.7500
	3A	0.0000	4.7500	4.7406	—	4.7094	4.7049	4.6756	3B	4.6820	4.6909	4.7094	4.7153	4.7500
5.00-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	4.9978	4.9849	—	4.9328	4.9256	4.8787	2B	4.892	4.913	4.9350	4.9444	5.0000
5.00-12 UN	2A	0.0020	4.9980	4.9866	—	4.9439	4.9372	4.8988	2B	4.910	4.928	4.9459	4.9546	5.0000
	3A	0.0000	5.0000	4.9886	—	4.9459	4.9409	4.9008	3B	4.9100	4.9198	4.9459	4.9525	5.0000
5.00-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	4.9981	4.9878	—	4.9517	4.9454	4.9130	2B	4.923	4.938	4.9536	4.9619	5.0000
5.00-16 UN	2A	0.0018	4.9982	4.9888	—	4.9576	4.9515	4.9238	2B	4.932	4.946	4.9594	4.9673	5.0000
	3A	0.0000	5.0000	4.9906	—	4.9594	4.9549	4.9256	3B	4.9320	4.9409	4.9594	4.9653	5.0000
5¼-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	5.2478	5.2349	—	5.1828	5.1755	5.1287	2B	5.142	5.163	5.1850	5.1944	5.2500
5¼-12 UN	2A	0.0020	5.2480	5.2366	—	5.1939	5.1871	5.1488	2B	5.160	5.178	5.1959	5.2047	5.2500
	3A	0.0000	5.2500	5.2386	—	5.1959	5.1908	5.1508	3B	5.1600	5.1698	5.1959	5.2025	5.2500
5¼-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	5.2481	5.2378	—	5.2017	5.1953	5.1630	2B	5.173	5.188	5.2036	5.2119	5.2500
5¼-16 UN	2A	0.0018	5.2482	5.2388	—	5.2076	5.2015	5.1738	2B	5.182	5.196	5.2094	5.2173	5.2500
	3A	0.0000	5.2500	5.2406	—	5.2094	5.2048	5.1756	3B	5.1820	5.1909	5.2094	5.2153	5.2500
5½-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	5.4978	5.4849	—	5.4328	5.4255	5.3787	2B	5.392	5.413	5.4350	5.4445	5.5000
5½-12 UN	2A	0.0020	5.4980	5.4866	—	5.4439	5.4371	5.3988	2B	5.410	5.428	5.4459	5.4548	5.5000
	3A	0.0000	5.5000	5.4886	—	5.4459	5.4408	5.4008	3B	5.4100	5.4198	5.4459	5.4525	5.5000
5½-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	5.4981	5.4878	—	5.4517	5.4453	5.4130	2B	5.423	5.438	5.4536	5.4620	5.5000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Standard Series and Selected Combinations—Unified Screw Threads**

Nominal Size, Threads per Inch, and Series Designation[a]	External[b]							Internal[b]					
			Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Major Diameter
	Class	Allowance	Max[d]	Min	Min[c]	Max[d]	Min	UNR Minor Dia.,[c] Max (Ref.)	Class	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min
5½-16 UN	2A	0.0018	5.4982	5.4888	—	5.4576	5.4515	5.4238	2B	5.432	5.446	5.4594	5.4674	5.5000
	3A	0.0000	5.5000	5.4906	—	5.4594	5.4548	5.4256	3B	5.4320	5.4409	5.4594	5.4654	5.5000
5¾-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	5.7478	5.7349	—	5.6828	5.6755	5.6287	2B	5.642	5.663	5.6850	5.6945	5.7500
5¾-12 UN	2A	0.0021	5.7479	5.7365	—	5.6938	5.6870	5.6487	2B	5.660	5.678	5.6959	5.7048	5.7500
	3A	0.0000	5.7500	5.7386	—	5.6959	5.6908	5.6508	3B	5.6600	5.6698	5.6959	5.7026	5.7500
5¾-14 UNS	2A	0.0019	5.7481	5.7378	—	5.7017	5.6952	5.6630	2B	5.673	5.688	5.7036	5.7120	5.7500
5¾-16 UN	2A	0.0019	5.7481	5.7387	—	5.7075	5.7013	5.6737	2B	5.682	5.696	5.7094	5.7174	5.7500
	3A	0.0000	5.7500	5.7406	—	5.7094	5.7048	5.6756	3B	5.6820	5.6909	5.7094	5.7154	5.7500
6-10 UNS	2A	0.0022	5.9978	5.9849	—	5.9328	5.9254	5.8787	2B	5.892	5.913	5.9350	5.9446	6.0000
6-14 UNS	2A	0.0020	5.9980	5.9877	—	5.9516	5.9451	5.9129	2B	5.923	5.938	5.9536	5.9621	6.0000
6-12 UN	2A	0.0021	5.9979	5.9865	—	5.9438	5.9369	5.8987	2B	5.910	5.928	5.9459	5.9549	6.0000
	3A	0.0000	6.0000	5.9886	—	5.9459	5.9407	5.9008	3B	5.9100	5.9198	5.9459	5.9526	6.0000
6-16 UN	2A	0.0019	5.9981	5.9887	—	5.9575	5.9513	5.9237	2B	5.932	5.946	5.9594	5.9675	6.0000
	3A	0.0000	6.0000	5.9906	—	5.9594	5.9547	5.9256	3B	5.9320	5.9409	5.9594	5.9655	6.0000

[a] Use UNR designation instead of UN wherever UNR thread form is desired for external use.
[b] Regarding combinations of thread classes, see text on page 1988.
[c] UN series external thread maximum minor diameter is basic for Class 3A and basic minus allowance for Classes 1A and 2A.
[d] For Class 2A threads having an additive finish the maximum is increased, by the allowance, to the basic size, the value being the same as for Class 3A.
[e] For unfinished hot-rolled material not including standard fasteners with rolled threads.
[f] Formerly NF, tolerances and allowances are based on one diameter length of engagement.
All dimensions in inches.
Use UNS threads only if Standard Series do not meet requirements (see pages 1948, 1980, and 1991). For additional sizes above 4 inches see ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coarse-Thread Series: This series, UNC/UNRC, is the one most commonly used in the bulk production of bolts, screws, nuts and other general engineering applications. It is also used for threading into lower tensile strength materials such as cast iron, mild steel and softer materials (bronze, brass, aluminum, magnesium and plastics) to obtain the optimum resistance to stripping of the internal thread. It is applicable for rapid assembly or disassembly, or if corrosion or slight damage is possible.

Table 4a. Coarse-Thread Series, UNC and UNRC—Basic Dimensions

Sizes No. or Inches	Basic Major Dia., D	Thds. per Inch, n	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at D-$2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
				Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
	Inches		Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
1 (0.073)[e]	**0.0730**	**64**	**0.0629**	**0.0544**	**0.0561**	**4**	**31**	0.00218	0.00263
2 (0.086)	**0.0860**	**56**	**0.0744**	**0.0648**	**0.0667**	**4**	**22**	0.00310	0.00370
3 (0.099)[c]	**0.0990**	**48**	**0.0855**	**0.0741**	**0.0764**	**4**	**26**	0.00406	0.00487
4 (0.112)	**0.1120**	**40**	**0.0958**	**0.0822**	**0.0849**	**4**	**45**	0.00496	0.00604
5 (0.125)	**0.1250**	**40**	**0.1088**	**0.0952**	**0.0979**	**4**	**11**	0.00672	0.00796
6 (0.138)	**0.1380**	**32**	**0.1177**	**0.1008**	**0.1042**	**4**	**50**	0.00745	0.00909
8 (0.164)	**0.1640**	**32**	**0.1437**	**0.1268**	**0.1302**	**3**	**58**	0.01196	0.0140
10 (0.190)	**0.1900**	**24**	**0.1629**	**0.1404**	**0.1449**	**4**	**39**	0.01450	0.0175
12 (0.216)[c]	**0.2160**	**24**	**0.1889**	**0.1664**	**0.1709**	**4**	**1**	0.0206	0.0242
¼	**0.2500**	**20**	**0.2175**	**0.1905**	**0.1959**	**4**	**11**	0.0269	0.0318
5⁄16	**0.3125**	**18**	**0.2764**	**0.2464**	**0.2524**	**3**	**40**	0.0454	0.0524
⅜	**0.3750**	**16**	**0.3344**	**0.3005**	**0.3073**	**3**	**24**	0.0678	0.0775
7⁄16	**0.4375**	**14**	**0.3911**	**0.3525**	**0.3602**	**3**	**20**	0.0933	0.1063
½	**0.5000**	**13**	**0.4500**	**0.4084**	**0.4167**	**3**	**7**	0.1257	0.1419
9⁄16	**0.5625**	**12**	**0.5084**	**0.4633**	**0.4723**	**2**	**59**	0.162	0.182
⅝	**0.6250**	**11**	**0.5660**	**0.5168**	**0.5266**	**2**	**56**	0.202	0.226
¾	**0.7500**	**10**	**0.6850**	**0.6309**	**0.6417**	**2**	**40**	0.302	0.334
⅞	**0.8750**	**9**	**0.8028**	**0.7427**	**0.7547**	**2**	**31**	0.419	0.462
1	**1.0000**	**8**	**0.9188**	**0.8512**	**0.8647**	**2**	**29**	0.551	0.606
1⅛	**1.1250**	**7**	**1.0322**	**0.9549**	**0.9704**	**2**	**31**	0.693	0.763
1¼	**1.2500**	**7**	**1.1572**	**1.0799**	**1.0954**	**2**	**15**	0.890	0.969
1⅜	**1.3750**	**6**	**1.2667**	**1.1766**	**1.1946**	**2**	**24**	1.054	1.155
1½	**1.5000**	**6**	**1.3917**	**1.3016**	**1.3196**	**2**	**11**	1.294	1.405
1¾	**1.7500**	**5**	**1.6201**	**1.5119**	**1.5335**	**2**	**15**	1.74	1.90
2	**2.0000**	**4½**	**1.8557**	**1.7353**	**1.7594**	**2**	**11**	2.30	2.50
2¼	**2.2500**	**4½**	**2.1057**	**1.9853**	**2.0094**	**1**	**55**	3.02	3.25
2½	**2.5000**	**4**	**2.3376**	**2.2023**	**2.2294**	**1**	**57**	3.72	4.00
2¾	**2.7500**	**4**	**2.5876**	**2.4523**	**2.4794**	**1**	**46**	4.62	4.93
3	**3.0000**	**4**	**2.8376**	**2.7023**	**2.7294**	**1**	**36**	5.62	5.97
3¼	**3.2500**	**4**	**3.0876**	**2.9523**	**2.9794**	**1**	**29**	6.72	7.10
3½	**3.500**	**4**	**3.3376**	**3.2023**	**3.2294**	**1**	**22**	7.92	8.33
3¾	**3.7500**	**4**	**3.5876**	**3.4523**	**3.4794**	**1**	**16**	9.21	9.66
4	**4.0000**	**4**	**3.8376**	**3.7023**	**3.7294**	**1**	**11**	10.61	11.08

[a] British: Effective Diameter.
[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.
[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948.)
[d] Basic minor diameter.
[e] Secondary sizes.

Fine-Thread Series: This series, UNF/UNRF, is suitable for the production of bolts, screws, and nuts and for other applications where the Coarse series is not applicable. External threads of this series have greater tensile stress area than comparable sizes of the Coarse series. The Fine series is suitable when the resistance to stripping of both external

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and mating internal threads equals or exceeds the tensile load carrying capacity of the externally threaded member (see page 1668). It is also used where the length of engagement is short, where a smaller lead angle is desired, where the wall thickness demands a fine pitch, or where finer adjustment is needed.

Table 4b. Fine-Thread Series, UNF and UNRF — Basic Dimensions

Sizes No. or Inches	Basic Major Dia., D	Thds. per Inch, n	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at D-$2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
				Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
	Inches		Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
0 (0.060)	**0.0600**	**80**	**0.0519**	**0.0451**	**0.0465**	**4**	**23**	0.00151	0.00180
1 (0.073)[e]	**0.0730**	**72**	**0.0640**	**0.0565**	**0.0580**	**3**	**57**	0.00237	0.00278
2 (0.086)	**0.0860**	**64**	**0.0759**	**0.0674**	**0.0691**	**3**	**45**	0.00339	0.00394
3 (0.099)[c]	**0.0990**	**56**	**0.0874**	**0.0778**	**0.0797**	**3**	**43**	0.00451	0.00523
4 (0.112)	**0.1120**	**48**	**0.0985**	**0.0871**	**0.0894**	**3**	**51**	0.00566	0.00661
5 (0.125)	**0.1250**	**44**	**0.1102**	**0.0979**	**0.1004**	**3**	**45**	0.00716	0.00830
6 (0.138)	**0.1380**	**40**	**0.1218**	**0.1082**	**0.1109**	**3**	**44**	0.00874	0.01015
8 (0.164)	**0.1640**	**36**	**0.1460**	**0.1309**	**0.1339**	**3**	**28**	0.01285	0.01474
10 (0.190)	**0.1900**	**32**	**0.1697**	**0.1528**	**0.1562**	**3**	**21**	0.0175	0.0200
12 (0.216)[e]	**0.2160**	**28**	**0.1928**	**0.1734**	**0.1773**	**3**	**22**	0.0226	0.0258
1/4	**0.2500**	**28**	**0.2268**	**0.2074**	**0.2113**	**2**	**52**	0.0326	0.0364
5/16	**0.3125**	**24**	**0.2854**	**0.2629**	**0.2674**	**2**	**40**	0.0524	0.0580
3/8	**0.3750**	**24**	**0.3479**	**0.3254**	**0.3299**	**2**	**11**	0.0809	0.0878
7/16	**0.4375**	**20**	**0.4050**	**0.3780**	**0.3834**	**2**	**15**	0.1090	0.1187
1/2	**0.5000**	**20**	**0.4675**	**0.4405**	**0.4459**	**1**	**57**	0.1486	0.1599
9/16	**0.5625**	**18**	**0.5264**	**0.4964**	**0.5024**	**1**	**55**	0.189	0.203
5/8	**0.6250**	**18**	**0.5889**	**0.5589**	**0.5649**	**1**	**43**	0.240	0.256
3/4	**0.7500**	**16**	**0.7094**	**0.6763**	**0.6823**	**1**	**36**	0.351	0.373
7/8	**0.8750**	**14**	**0.8286**	**0.7900**	**0.7977**	**1**	**34**	0.480	0.509
1	**1.0000**	**12**	**0.9459**	**0.9001**	**0.9098**	**1**	**36**	0.625	0.663
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**12**	**1.0709**	**1.0258**	**1.0348**	**1**	**25**	0.812	0.856
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**12**	**1.1959**	**1.1508**	**1.1598**	**1**	**16**	1.024	1.073
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**12**	**1.3209**	**1.2758**	**1.2848**	**1**	**9**	1.260	1.315
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**12**	**1.4459**	**1.4008**	**1.4098**	**1**	**3**	1.521	1.581

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on 1948.)

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] Secondary sizes.

Extra-Fine-Thread Series: This series, UNEF/UNREF, is applicable where even finer pitches of threads are desirable, as for short lengths of engagement and for thin-walled tubes, nuts, ferrules, or couplings. It is also generally applicable under the conditions stated above for the fine threads. See Table 4c.

Fine Threads for Thin-Wall Tubing: Dimensions for a 27-thread series, ranging from 1/4- to 1-inch nominal size, also are included in Table 3. These threads are recommended for general use on thin-wall tubing. The minimum length of complete thread is one-third of the basic major diameter plus 5 threads (+ 0.185 in.).

Selected Combinations: Thread data are tabulated in Table 3 for certain additional selected special combinations of diameter and pitch, with pitch diameter tolerances based on a length of thread engagement of 9 times the pitch. The pitch diameter limits are applicable to a length of engagement of from 5 to 15 times the pitch. (This provision should not be confused with the lengths of thread on mating parts, as they may exceed the length of engagement by a considerable amount.) Thread symbols are UNS and UNRS.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4c. Extra-Fine-Thread Series, UNEF and UNREF — Basic Dimensions

Sizes No. or Inches	Basic Major Dia., D	Thds. per Inch, n	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
				Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
	Inches		Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
12 (0.216)[e]	**0.2160**	**32**	**0.1957**	**0.1788**	**0.1822**	**2**	**55**	0.0242	0.0270
1/4	**0.2500**	**32**	**0.2297**	**0.2128**	**0.2162**	**2**	**29**	0.0344	0.0379
5/16	**0.3125**	**32**	**0.2922**	**0.2753**	**0.2787**	**1**	**57**	0.0581	0.0625
3/8	**0.3750**	**32**	**0.3547**	**0.3378**	**0.3412**	**1**	**36**	0.0878	0.0932
7/16	**0.4375**	**28**	**0.4143**	**0.3949**	**0.3988**	**1**	**34**	0.1201	0.1274
1/2	**0.5000**	**28**	**0.4768**	**0.4574**	**0.4613**	**1**	**22**	0.162	0.170
9/16	**0.5625**	**24**	**0.5354**	**0.5129**	**0.5174**	**1**	**25**	0.203	0.214
5/8	**0.6250**	**24**	**0.5979**	**0.5754**	**0.5799**	**1**	**16**	0.256	0.268
11/16[e]	**0.6875**	**24**	**0.6604**	**0.6379**	**0.6424**	**1**	**9**	0.315	0.329
3/4	**0.7500**	**20**	**0.7175**	**0.6905**	**0.6959**	**1**	**16**	0.369	0.386
13/16[e]	**0.8125**	**20**	**0.7800**	**0.7530**	**0.7584**	**1**	**10**	0.439	0.458
7/8	**0.8750**	**20**	**0.8425**	**0.8155**	**0.8209**	**1**	**5**	0.515	0.536
15/16[e]	**0.9375**	**20**	**0.9050**	**0.8780**	**0.8834**	**1**	**0**	0.598	0.620
1	**1.0000**	**20**	**0.9675**	**0.9405**	**0.9459**	**0**	**57**	0.687	0.711
1 1/16[e]	**1.0625**	**18**	**1.0264**	**0.9964**	**1.0024**	**0**	**59**	0.770	0.799
1 1/8	**1.1250**	**18**	**1.0889**	**1.0589**	**1.0649**	**0**	**56**	0.871	0.901
1 3/16[e]	**1.1875**	**18**	**1.1514**	**1.1214**	**1.1274**	**0**	**53**	0.977	1.009
1 1/4	**1.2500**	**18**	**1.2139**	**1.1839**	**1.1899**	**0**	**50**	1.090	1.123
1 5/16[e]	**1.3125**	**18**	**1.2764**	**1.2464**	**1.2524**	**0**	**48**	1.208	1.244
1 3/8	**1.3750**	**18**	**1.3389**	**1.3089**	**1.3149**	**0**	**45**	1.333	1.370
1 7/16[e]	**1.4375**	**18**	**1.4014**	**1.3714**	**1.3774**	**0**	**43**	1.464	1.503
1 1/2	**1.5000**	**18**	**1.4639**	**1.4339**	**1.4399**	**0**	**42**	1.60	1.64
1 9/16[e]	**1.5625**	**18**	**1.5264**	**1.4964**	**1.5024**	**0**	**40**	1.74	1.79
1 5/8	**1.6250**	**18**	**1.5889**	**1.5589**	**1.5649**	**0**	**38**	1.89	1.94
1 11/16[e]	**1.6875**	**18**	**1.6514**	**1.6214**	**1.6274**	**0**	**37**	2.05	2.10

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948.)

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] Secondary sizes.

Other Threads of Special Diameters, Pitches, and Lengths of Engagement: Thread data for special combinations of diameter, pitch, and length of engagement not included in selected combinations are also given in the Standard but are not given here. Also, when design considerations require non-standard pitches or extreme conditions of engagement not covered by the tables, the allowance and tolerances should be derived from the formulas in the Standard. The thread symbol for such special threads is UNS.

Constant Pitch Series.—The various constant-pitch series, UN, with 4, 6, 8, 12, 16, 20, 28 and 32 threads per inch, given in Table 3, offer a comprehensive range of diameter-pitch combinations for those purposes where the threads in the Coarse, Fine, and Extra-Fine series do not meet the particular requirements of the design.

When selecting threads from these constant-pitch series, preference should be given wherever possible to those tabulated in the 8-, 12-, or 16-thread series.

8-Thread Series: The 8-thread series (8-UN) is a uniform-pitch series for large diameters. Although originally intended for high-pressure-joint bolts and nuts, it is now widely used as a substitute for the Coarse-Thread Series for diameters larger than 1 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

12-Thread Series: The 12-thread series (12-UN) is a uniform pitch series for large diameters requiring threads of medium-fine pitch. Although originally intended for boiler practice, it is now used as a continuation of the Fine-Thread Series for diameters larger than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

16-Thread Series: The 16-thread series (16-UN) is a uniform pitch series for large diameters requiring fine-pitch threads. It is suitable for adjusting collars and retaining nuts, and also serves as a continuation of the Extra-fine Thread Series for diameters larger than $1\frac{11}{16}$ inches.

4-, 6-, 20-, 28-, and 32-Thread Series: These thread series have been used more or less widely in industry for various applications where the Standard Coarse, Fine or Extra-fine Series were not as applicable. They are now recognized as Standard Unified Thread Series in a specified selection of diameters for each pitch (see Table 2).

Whenever a thread in a constant-pitch series also appears in the UNC, UNF, or UNEF series, the symbols and tolerances for limits of size of UNC, UNF, or UNEF series are applicable, as will be seen in Table 2 and Table 3. *(Text continues on page 1988)*

Table 5a. 4-Thread Series, 4-UN and 4-UNR — Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.[c] d_{3s} (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
2½[e]		**2.5000**	**2.3376**	**2.2023**	**2.2294**	**1**	**57**	3.72	4.00
	2⅝	**2.6250**	**2.4626**	**2.3273**	**2.3544**	**1**	**51**	4.16	4.45
2¾[e]		**2.7500**	**2.5876**	**2.4523**	**2.4794**	**1**	**46**	4.62	4.93
	2⅞	**2.8750**	**2.7126**	**2.5773**	**2.6044**	**1**	**41**	5.11	5.44
3[e]		**3.0000**	**2.8376**	**2.7023**	**2.7294**	**1**	**36**	5.62	5.97
	3⅛	**3.1250**	**2.9626**	**2.8273**	**2.8544**	**1**	**32**	6.16	6.52
3¼[e]		**3.2500**	**3.0876**	**2.9523**	**2.9794**	**1**	**29**	6.72	7.10
	3⅜	**3.3750**	**3.2126**	**3.0773**	**3.1044**	**1**	**25**	7.31	7.70
3½[e]		**3.5000**	**3.3376**	**3.2023**	**3.2294**	**1**	**22**	7.92	8.33
	3⅝	**3.6250**	**3.4626**	**3.3273**	**3.3544**	**1**	**19**	8.55	9.00
3¾[e]		**3.7500**	**3.5876**	**3.4523**	**3.4794**	**1**	**16**	9.21	9.66
	3⅞	**3.8750**	**3.7126**	**3.5773**	**3.6044**	**1**	**14**	9.90	10.36
4[e]		**4.0000**	**3.8376**	**3.7023**	**3.7294**	**1**	**11**	10.61	11.08
	4⅛	**4.1250**	**3.9626**	**3.8273**	**3.8544**	**1**	**9**	11.34	11.83
4¼		**4.2500**	**4.0876**	**3.9523**	**3.9794**	**1**	**7**	12.10	12.61
	4⅜	**4.3750**	**4.2126**	**4.0773**	**4.1044**	**1**	**5**	12.88	13.41
4½		**4.5000**	**4.3376**	**4.2023**	**4.2294**	**1**	**3**	13.69	14.23
	4⅝	**4.6250**	**4.4626**	**4.3273**	**4.3544**	**1**	**1**	14.52	15.1
4¾		**4.7500**	**4.5876**	**4.4523**	**4.4794**	**1**	**0**	15.4	15.9
	4⅞	**4.8750**	**4.7126**	**4.5773**	**4.6044**	**0**	**58**	16.3	16.8
5		**5.0000**	**4.8376**	**4.7023**	**4.7294**	**0**	**57**	17.2	17.8
	5⅛	**5.1250**	**4.9626**	**4.8273**	**4.8544**	**0**	**55**	18.1	18.7
5¼		**5.2500**	**5.0876**	**4.9523**	**4.9794**	**0**	**54**	19.1	19.7
	5⅜	**5.3750**	**5.2126**	**5.0773**	**5.1044**	**0**	**52**	20.0	20.7
5½		**5.5000**	**5.3376**	**5.2023**	**5.2294**	**0**	**51**	21.0	21.7
	5⅝	**5.6250**	**5.4626**	**5.3273**	**5.3544**	**0**	**50**	22.1	22.7
5¾		**5.7500**	**5.5876**	**5.4523**	**5.4794**	**0**	**49**	23.1	23.8
	5⅞	**5.8750**	**5.7126**	**5.5773**	**5.6044**	**0**	**48**	24.2	24.9
6		**6.0000**	**5.8376**	**5.7023**	**5.7294**	**0**	**47**	25.3	26.0

[a] British: Effective Diameter.
[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.
[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).
[d] Basic minor diameter.
[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5b. 6-Thread Series, 6-UN and 6-UNR — Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
				Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Primary	Secondary								
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
1⅜[e]		1.3750	1.2667	1.1766	1.1946	2	24	1.054	1.155
	1 7/16	1.4375	1.3292	1.2391	1.2571	2	17	1.171	1.277
1½[e]		1.5000	1.3917	1.3016	1.3196	2	11	1.294	1.405
	1 9/16	1.5625	1.4542	1.3641	1.3821	2	5	1.423	1.54
1⅝		1.6250	1.5167	1.4271	1.4446	2	0	1.56	1.68
	1 11/16	1.6875	1.5792	1.4891	1.5071	1	55	1.70	1.83
1¾		1.7500	1.6417	1.5516	1.5696	1	51	1.85	1.98
	1 13/16	1.8125	1.7042	1.6141	1.6321	1	47	2.00	2.14
1⅞		1.8750	1.7667	1.6766	1.6946	1	43	2.16	2.30
	1 15/16	1.9375	1.8292	1.7391	1.7571	1	40	2.33	2.47
2		2.0000	1.8917	1.8016	1.8196	1	36	2.50	2.65
	2⅛	2.1250	2.0167	1.9266	1.9446	1	30	2.86	3.03
2¼		2.2500	2.1417	2.0516	2.0696	1	25	3.25	3.42
	2⅜	2.3750	2.2667	2.1766	2.1946	1	20	3.66	3.85
2½		2.5000	2.3917	2.3016	2.3196	1	16	4.10	4.29
	2⅝	2.6250	2.5167	2.4266	2.4446	1	12	4.56	4.76
2¾		2.7500	2.6417	2.5516	2.5696	1	9	5.04	5.26
	2⅞	2.8750	2.7667	2.6766	2.6946	1	6	5.55	5.78
3		3.0000	2.8917	2.8016	2.8196	1	3	6.09	6.33
	3⅛	3.1250	3.0167	2.9266	2.9446	1	0	6.64	6.89
3¼		3.2500	3.1417	3.0516	3.0696	0	58	7.23	7.49
	3⅜	3.3750	3.2667	3.1766	3.1946	0	56	7.84	8.11
3½		3.5000	3.3917	3.3016	3.3196	0	54	8.47	8.75
	3⅝	3.6250	3.5167	3.4266	3.4446	0	52	9.12	9.42
3¾		3.7500	3.6417	3.5516	3.5696	0	50	9.81	10.11
	3⅞	3.8750	3.7667	3.6766	3.6946	0	48	10.51	10.83
4		4.0000	3.8917	3.8016	3.8196	0	47	11.24	11.57
	4⅛	4.1250	4.0167	3.9266	3.9446	0	45	12.00	12.33
4¼		4.2500	4.1417	4.0516	4.0696	0	44	12.78	13.12
	4⅜	4.3750	4.2667	4.1766	4.1946	0	43	13.58	13.94
4½		4.5000	4.3917	4.3016	4.3196	0	42	14.41	14.78
	4⅝	4.6250	4.5167	4.4266	4.4446	0	40	15.3	15.6
4¾		4.7500	4.6417	4.5516	4.5696	0	39	16.1	16.5
	4⅞	4.8750	4.7667	4.6766	4.6946	0	38	17.0	17.5
5		5.0000	4.8917	4.8016	4.8196	0	37	18.0	18.4
	5⅛	5.1250	5.0167	4.9266	4.9446	0	36	18.9	19.3
5¼		5.2500	5.1417	5.0516	5.0696	0	35	19.9	20.3
	5⅜	5.3750	5.2667	5.1766	5.1946	0	35	20.9	21.3
5½		5.5000	5.3917	5.3016	5.3196	0	34	21.9	22.4
	5⅝	5.6250	5.5167	5.4266	5.4446	0	33	23.0	23.4
5¾		5.7500	5.6417	5.5516	5.5696	0	32	24.0	24.5
	5⅞	5.8750	5.7667	5.6766	5.6946	0	32	25.1	25.6
6		6.0000	5.8917	5.8016	5.8196	0	31	26.3	26.8

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5c. 8-Thread Series, 8-UN and 8-UNR—Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext.Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int.Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
1[e]		**1.0000**	**0.9188**	**0.8512**	**0.8647**	**2**	**29**	0.551	0.606
	1 1/16	**1.0625**	**0.9813**	**0.9137**	**0.9272**	**2**	**19**	0.636	0.695
1 1/8		**1.1250**	**1.0438**	**0.9792**	**0.9897**	**2**	**11**	0.728	0.790
	1 3/16	**1.1875**	**1.1063**	**1.0387**	**1.0522**	**2**	**4**	0.825	0.892
1 1/4		**1.2500**	**1.1688**	**1.1012**	**1.1147**	**1**	**57**	0.929	1.000
	1 5/16	**1.3125**	**1.2313**	**1.1637**	**1.1772**	**1**	**51**	1.039	1.114
1 3/8		**1.3750**	**1.2938**	**1.2262**	**1.2397**	**1**	**46**	1.155	1.233
	1 7/16	**1.4375**	**1.3563**	**1.2887**	**1.3022**	**1**	**41**	1.277	1.360
1 1/2		**1.5000**	**1.4188**	**1.3512**	**1.3647**	**1**	**36**	1.405	1.492
	1 9/16	**1.5625**	**1.4813**	**1.4137**	**1.4272**	**1**	**32**	1.54	1.63
1 5/8		**1.6250**	**1.5438**	**1.4806**	**1.4897**	**1**	**29**	1.68	1.78
	1 11/16	**1.6875**	**1.6063**	**1.5387**	**1.5522**	**1**	**25**	1.83	1.93
1 3/4		**1.7500**	**1.6688**	**1.6012**	**1.6147**	**1**	**22**	1.98	2.08
	1 13/16	**1.8125**	**1.7313**	**1.6637**	**1.6772**	**1**	**19**	2.14	2.25
1 7/8		**1.8750**	**1.7938**	**1.7262**	**1.7397**	**1**	**16**	2.30	2.41
	1 15/16	**1.9375**	**1.8563**	**1.7887**	**1.8022**	**1**	**14**	2.47	2.59
2		**2.0000**	**1.9188**	**1.8512**	**1.8647**	**1**	**11**	2.65	2.77
	2 1/8	**2.1250**	**2.0438**	**1.9762**	**1.9897**	**1**	**7**	3.03	3.15
2 1/4		**2.2500**	**2.1688**	**2.1012**	**2.1147**	**1**	**3**	3.42	3.56
	2 3/8	**2.3750**	**2.2938**	**2.2262**	**2.2397**	**1**	**0**	3.85	3.99
2 1/2		**2.5000**	**2.4188**	**2.3512**	**2.3647**	**0**	**57**	4.29	4.44
	2 5/8	**2.6250**	**2.5438**	**2.4762**	**2.4897**	**0**	**54**	4.76	4.92
2 3/4		**2.7500**	**2.6688**	**2.6012**	**2.6147**	**0**	**51**	5.26	5.43
	2 7/8	**2.8750**	**2.7938**	**2.7262**	**2.7397**	**0**	**49**	5.78	5.95
3		**3.0000**	**2.9188**	**2.8512**	**2.8647**	**0**	**47**	6.32	6.51
	3 1/8	**3.1250**	**3.0438**	**2.9762**	**2.9897**	**0**	**45**	6.89	7.08
3 1/4		**3.2500**	**3.1688**	**3.1012**	**3.1147**	**0**	**43**	7.49	7.69
	3 3/8	**3.3750**	**3.2938**	**3.2262**	**3.2397**	**0**	**42**	8.11	8.31
3 1/2		**3.5000**	**3.4188**	**3.3512**	**3.3647**	**0**	**40**	8.75	8.96
	3 5/8	**3.6250**	**3.5438**	**3.4762**	**3.4897**	**0**	**39**	9.42	9.64
3 3/4		**3.7500**	**3.6688**	**3.6012**	**3.6147**	**0**	**37**	10.11	10.34
	3 7/8	**3.8750**	**3.7938**	**3.7262**	**3.7397**	**0**	**36**	10.83	11.06
4		**4.0000**	**3.9188**	**3.8512**	**3.8647**	**0**	**35**	11.57	11.81
	4 1/8	**4.1250**	**4.0438**	**3.9762**	**3.9897**	**0**	**34**	12.34	12.59
4 1/4		**4.2500**	**4.1688**	**4.1012**	**4.1147**	**0**	**33**	13.12	13.38
	4 3/8	**4.3750**	**4.2938**	**4.2262**	**4.2397**	**0**	**32**	13.94	14.21
4 1/2		**4.5000**	**4.4188**	**4.3512**	**4.3647**	**0**	**31**	14.78	15.1
	4 5/8	**4.6250**	**4.5438**	**4.4762**	**4.4897**	**0**	**30**	15.6	15.9
4 3/4		**4.7500**	**4.6688**	**4.6012**	**4.6147**	**0**	**29**	16.5	16.8
	4 7/8	**4.8750**	**4.7938**	**4.7262**	**4.7397**	**0**	**29**	17.4	17.7
5		**5.0000**	**4.9188**	**4.8512**	**4.8647**	**0**	**28**	18.4	18.7
	5 1/8	**5.1250**	**5.0438**	**4.9762**	**4.9897**	**0**	**27**	19.3	19.7
5 1/4		**5.2500**	**5.1688**	**5.1012**	**5.1147**	**0**	**26**	20.3	20.7
	5 3/8	**5.3750**	**5.2938**	**5.2262**	**5.2397**	**0**	**26**	21.3	21.7
5 1/2		**5.5000**	**5.4188**	**5.3512**	**5.3647**	**0**	**25**	22.4	22.7
	5 5/8	**5.6250**	**5.5438**	**5.4762**	**5.4897**	**0**	**25**	23.4	23.8
5 3/4		**5.7500**	**5.6688**	**5.6012**	**5.6147**	**0**	**24**	24.5	24.9
	5 7/8	**5.8750**	**5.7938**	**5.7262**	**5.7397**	**0**	**24**	25.6	26.0
6		**6.0000**	**5.9188**	**5.8512**	**5.8647**	**0**	**23**	26.8	27.1

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] This is a standard size of the UNC series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5d. 12-Thread series, 12-UN and 12-UNR — Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D - 2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
9/16[e]		**0.5625**	**0.5084**	**0.4633**	**0.4723**	**2**	**59**	0.162	0.182
5/8		**0.6250**	**0.5709**	**0.5258**	**0.5348**	**2**	**40**	0.210	0.232
	11/16	**0.6875**	**0.6334**	**0.5883**	**0.5973**	**2**	**24**	0.264	0.289
3/4		**0.7500**	**0.6959**	**0.6508**	**0.6598**	**2**	**11**	0.323	0.351
	13/16	**0.8125**	**0.7584**	**0.7133**	**0.7223**	**2**	**0**	0.390	0.420
7/8		**0.8750**	**0.8209**	**0.7758**	**0.7848**	**1**	**51**	0.462	0.495
	15/16	**0.9375**	**0.8834**	**0.8383**	**0.8473**	**1**	**43**	0.540	0.576
1[e]		**1.0000**	**0.9459**	**0.9008**	**0.9098**	**1**	**36**	0.625	0.663
	1 1/16	**1.0625**	**1.0084**	**0.9633**	**0.9723**	**1**	**30**	0.715	0.756
1 1/8[e]		**1.1250**	**1.0709**	**1.0258**	**1.0348**	**1**	**25**	0.812	0.856
	1 3/16	**1.1875**	**1.1334**	**1.0883**	**1.0973**	**1**	**20**	0.915	0.961
1 1/4[e]		**1.2500**	**1.1959**	**1.1508**	**1.1598**	**1**	**16**	1.024	1.073
	1 5/16	**1.3125**	**1.2584**	**1.2133**	**1.2223**	**1**	**12**	1.139	1.191
1 3/8		**1.3750**	**1.3209**	**1.2758**	**1.2848**	**1**	**9**	1.260	1.315
	1 7/16	**1.4375**	**1.3834**	**1.3383**	**1.3473**	**1**	**6**	1.388	1.445
1 1/2[e]		**1.5000**	**1.4459**	**1.4008**	**1.4098**	**1**	**3**	1.52	1.58
	1 9/16	**1.5625**	**1.5084**	**1.4633**	**1.4723**	**1**	**0**	1.66	1.72
1 5/8		**1.6250**	**1.5709**	**1.5258**	**1.5348**	**0**	**58**	1.81	1.87
	1 11/16	**1.6875**	**1.6334**	**1.5883**	**1.5973**	**0**	**56**	1.96	2.03
1 3/4		**1.7500**	**1.6959**	**1.6508**	**1.6598**	**0**	**54**	2.12	2.19
	1 13/16	**1.8125**	**1.7584**	**1.7133**	**1.7223**	**0**	**52**	2.28	2.35
1 7/8		**1.8750**	**1.8209**	**1.7758**	**1.7848**	**0**	**50**	2.45	2.53
	1 15/16	**1.9375**	**1.8834**	**1.8383**	**1.8473**	**0**	**48**	2.63	2.71
2		**2.0000**	**1.9459**	**1.9008**	**1.9098**	**0**	**47**	2.81	2.89
	2 1/8	**2.1250**	**2.0709**	**2.0258**	**2.0348**	**0**	**44**	3.19	3.28
2 1/4		**2.2500**	**2.1959**	**2.1508**	**2.1598**	**0**	**42**	3.60	3.69
	2 3/8	**2.3750**	**2.3209**	**2.2758**	**2.2848**	**0**	**39**	4.04	4.13
2 1/2		**2.5000**	**2.4459**	**2.4008**	**2.4098**	**0**	**37**	4.49	4.60
	2 5/8	**2.6250**	**2.5709**	**2.5258**	**2.5348**	**0**	**35**	4.97	5.08
2 3/4		**2.7500**	**2.6959**	**2.6508**	**2.6598**	**0**	**34**	5.48	5.59
	2 7/8	**2.8750**	**2.8209**	**2.7758**	**2.7848**	**0**	**32**	6.01	6.13
3		**3.0000**	**2.9459**	**2.9008**	**2.9098**	**0**	**31**	6.57	6.69
	3 1/8	**3.1250**	**3.0709**	**3.0258**	**3.0348**	**0**	**30**	7.15	7.28
3 1/4		**3.2500**	**3.1959**	**3.1508**	**3.1598**	**0**	**29**	7.75	7.89
	3 3/8	**3.3750**	**3.3209**	**3.2758**	**3.2848**	**0**	**27**	8.38	8.52
3 1/2		**3.5000**	**3.4459**	**3.4008**	**3.4098**	**0**	**26**	9.03	9.18
	3 5/8	**3.6250**	**3.5709**	**3.5258**	**3.5348**	**0**	**26**	9.71	9.86
3 3/4		**3.7500**	**3.6959**	**3.6508**	**3.6598**	**0**	**25**	10.42	10.57
	3 7/8	**3.8750**	**3.8209**	**3.7758**	**3.7848**	**0**	**24**	11.14	11.30
4		**4.0000**	**3.9459**	**3.9008**	**3.9098**	**0**	**23**	11.90	12.06
	4 1/8	**4.1250**	**4.0709**	**4.0258**	**4.0348**	**0**	**22**	12.67	12.84
4 1/4		**4.2500**	**4.1959**	**4.1508**	**4.1598**	**0**	**22**	13.47	13.65
	4 3/8	**4.3750**	**4.3209**	**4.2758**	**4.2848**	**0**	**21**	14.30	14.48
4 1/2		**4.5000**	**4.4459**	**4.4008**	**4.4098**	**0**	**21**	15.1	15.3
	4 5/8	**4.6250**	**4.5709**	**4.5258**	**4.5348**	**0**	**20**	16.0	16.2
4 3/4		**4.7500**	**4.6959**	**4.6508**	**4.6598**	**0**	**19**	16.9	17.1
	4 7/8	**4.8750**	**4.8209**	**4.7758**	**4.7848**	**0**	**19**	17.8	18.0
5		**5.0000**	**4.9459**	**4.9008**	**4.9098**	**0**	**18**	18.8	19.0
	5 1/8	**5.1250**	**5.0709**	**5.0258**	**5.0348**	**0**	**18**	19.8	20.0
5 1/4		**5.2500**	**5.1959**	**5.1508**	**5.1598**	**0**	**18**	20.8	21.0
	5 3/8	**5.3750**	**5.3209**	**5.2758**	**5.2848**	**0**	**17**	21.8	22.0
5 1/2		**5.5000**	**5.4459**	**5.4008**	**5.4098**	**0**	**17**	22.8	23.1
	5 5/8	**5.6250**	**5.5709**	**5.5258**	**5.5348**	**0**	**16**	23.9	24.1
5 3/4		**5.7500**	**5.6959**	**5.6508**	**5.6598**	**0**	**16**	25.0	25.2
	5 7/8	**5.8750**	**5.8209**	**5.7758**	**5.7848**	**0**	**16**	26.1	26.4
6		**6.0000**	**5.9459**	**5.9008**	**5.9098**	**0**	**15**	27.3	27.5

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC or UNF series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5e. 16-Thread Series, 16-UN and 16-UNR — Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
3/8 [e]		**0.3750**	**0.3344**	**0.3005**	**0.3073**	**3**	**24**	0.0678	0.0775
7/16		**0.4375**	**0.3969**	**0.3630**	**0.3698**	**2**	**52**	0.0997	0.1114
1/2		**0.5000**	**0.4594**	**0.4255**	**0.4323**	**2**	**29**	0.1378	0.151
9/16		**0.5625**	**0.5219**	**0.4880**	**0.4948**	**2**	**11**	0.182	0.198
5/8		**0.6250**	**0.5844**	**0.5505**	**0.5573**	**1**	**57**	0.232	0.250
	11/16	**0.6875**	**0.6469**	**0.6130**	**0.6198**	**1**	**46**	0.289	0.308
3/4 [e]		**0.7500**	**0.7094**	**0.6755**	**0.6823**	**1**	**36**	0.351	0.373
	13/16	**0.8125**	**0.7719**	**0.7380**	**0.7448**	**1**	**29**	0.420	0.444
7/8		**0.8750**	**0.8344**	**0.8005**	**0.8073**	**1**	**22**	0.495	0.521
	15/16	**0.9375**	**0.8969**	**0.8630**	**0.8698**	**1**	**16**	0.576	0.604
1		**1.0000**	**0.9594**	**0.9255**	**0.9323**	**1**	**11**	0.663	0.693
	1 1/16	**1.0625**	**1.0219**	**0.9880**	**0.9948**	**1**	**7**	0.756	0.788
1 1/8		**1.1250**	**1.0844**	**1.0505**	**1.0573**	**1**	**3**	0.856	0.889
	1 3/16	**1.1875**	**1.1469**	**1.1130**	**1.1198**	**1**	**0**	0.961	0.997
1 1/4		**1.2500**	**1.2094**	**1.1755**	**1.1823**	**0**	**57**	1.073	1.111
	1 5/16	**1.3125**	**1.2719**	**1.2380**	**1.2448**	**0**	**54**	1.191	1.230
1 3/8		**1.3750**	**1.3344**	**1.3005**	**1.3073**	**0**	**51**	1.315	1.356
	1 7/16	**1.4375**	**1.3969**	**1.3630**	**1.3698**	**0**	**49**	1.445	1.488
1 1/2		**1.5000**	**1.4594**	**1.4255**	**1.4323**	**0**	**47**	1.58	1.63
	1 9/16	**1.5625**	**1.5219**	**1.4880**	**1.4948**	**0**	**45**	1.72	1.77
1 5/8		**1.6250**	**1.5844**	**1.5505**	**1.5573**	**0**	**43**	1.87	1.92
	1 11/16	**1.6875**	**1.6469**	**1.6130**	**1.6198**	**0**	**42**	2.03	2.08
1 3/4		**1.7500**	**1.7094**	**1.6755**	**1.6823**	**0**	**40**	2.19	2.24
	1 13/16	**1.8125**	**1.7719**	**1.7380**	**1.7448**	**0**	**39**	2.35	2.41
1 7/8		**1.8750**	**1.8344**	**1.8005**	**1.8073**	**0**	**37**	2.53	2.58
	1 15/16	**1.9375**	**1.8969**	**1.8630**	**1.8698**	**0**	**36**	2.71	2.77
2		**2.0000**	**1.9594**	**1.9255**	**1.9323**	**0**	**35**	2.89	2.95
	2 1/8	**2.1250**	**2.0844**	**2.0505**	**2.0573**	**0**	**33**	3.28	3.35
2 1/4		**2.2500**	**2.2094**	**2.1755**	**2.1823**	**0**	**31**	3.69	3.76
	2 3/8	**2.3750**	**2.3344**	**2.3005**	**2.3073**	**0**	**29**	4.13	4.21
2 1/2		**2.5000**	**2.4594**	**2.4255**	**2.4323**	**0**	**28**	4.60	4.67
	2 5/8	**2.6250**	**2.5844**	**2.5505**	**2.5573**	**0**	**26**	5.08	5.16
2 3/4		**2.7500**	**2.7094**	**2.6755**	**2.6823**	**0**	**25**	5.59	5.68
	2 7/8	**2.8750**	**2.8344**	**2.8005**	**2.8073**	**0**	**24**	6.13	6.22
3		**3.0000**	**2.9594**	**2.9255**	**2.9323**	**0**	**23**	6.69	6.78
	3 1/8	**3.1250**	**3.0844**	**3.0505**	**3.0573**	**0**	**22**	7.28	7.37
3 1/4		**3.2500**	**3.2094**	**3.1755**	**3.1823**	**0**	**21**	7.89	7.99
	3 3/8	**3.3750**	**3.3344**	**3.3005**	**3.3073**	**0**	**21**	8.52	8.63
3 1/2		**3.5000**	**3.4594**	**3.4255**	**3.4323**	**0**	**20**	9.18	9.29
	3 5/8	**3.6250**	**3.5844**	**3.5505**	**3.5573**	**0**	**19**	9.86	9.98
3 3/4		**3.7500**	**3.7094**	**3.6755**	**3.6823**	**0**	**18**	10.57	10.69
	3 7/8	**3.8750**	**3.8344**	**3.8005**	**3.8073**	**0**	**18**	11.30	11.43
4		**4.0000**	**3.9594**	**3.9255**	**3.9323**	**0**	**17**	12.06	12.19
	4 1/8	**4.1250**	**4.0844**	**4.0505**	**4.0573**	**0**	**17**	12.84	12.97
4 1/4		**4.2500**	**4.2094**	**4.1755**	**4.1823**	**0**	**16**	13.65	13.78
	4 3/8	**4.3750**	**4.3344**	**4.3005**	**4.3073**	**0**	**16**	14.48	14.62
4 1/2		**4.5000**	**4.4594**	**4.4255**	**4.4323**	**0**	**15**	15.34	15.5
	4 5/8	**4.6250**	**4.5844**	**4.5505**	**4.5573**	**0**	**15**	16.2	16.4
4 3/4		**4.7500**	**4.7094**	**4.6755**	**4.6823**	**0**	**15**	17.1	17.3
	4 7/8	**4.8750**	**4.8344**	**4.8005**	**4.8073**	**0**	**14**	18.0	18.2
5		**5.0000**	**4.9594**	**4.9255**	**4.9323**	**0**	**14**	19.0	19.2
	5 1/8	**5.1250**	**5.0844**	**5.0505**	**5.0573**	**0**	**13**	20.0	20.1
5 1/4		**5.2500**	**5.2094**	**5.1755**	**5.1823**	**0**	**13**	21.0	21.1
	5 3/8	**5.3750**	**5.3344**	**5.3005**	**5.3073**	**0**	**13**	22.0	22.2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5e. *(Continued)* **16-Thread Series, 16-UN and 16-UNR — Basic Dimensions**

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
5½		**5.5000**	**5.4594**	**5.4255**	**5.4323**	**0**	**13**	23.1	23.2
	5⅝	**5.6250**	**5.5844**	**5.5505**	**5.5573**	**0**	**12**	24.1	24.3
5¾		**5.7500**	**5.7094**	**5.6755**	**5.6823**	**0**	**12**	25.2	25.4
	5⅞	**5.8750**	**5.8344**	**5.8005**	**5.8073**	**0**	**12**	26.4	26.5
6		**6.0000**	**5.9594**	**5.9255**	**5.9323**	**0**	**11**	27.5	27.7

[a] British: Effective Diameter.
[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.
[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).
[d] Basic minor diameter.
[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC or UNF series.

Table 5f. 20-Thread Series, 20-UN and 20-UNR — Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angle λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at $D-2h_b$	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
¼[e]		**0.2500**	**0.2175**	**0.1905**	**0.1959**	**4**	**11**	0.0269	0.0318
5/16		**0.3125**	**0.2800**	**0.2530**	**0.2584**	**3**	**15**	0.0481	0.0547
⅜		**0.3750**	**0.3425**	**0.3155**	**0.3209**	**2**	**40**	0.0755	0.0836
7/16[e]		**0.4375**	**0.4050**	**0.3780**	**0.3834**	**2**	**15**	0.1090	0.1187
½[e]		**0.5000**	**0.4675**	**0.4405**	**0.4459**	**1**	**57**	0.1486	0.160
9/16		**0.5625**	**0.5300**	**0.5030**	**0.5084**	**1**	**43**	0.194	0.207
⅝		**0.6250**	**0.5925**	**0.5655**	**0.5709**	**1**	**32**	0.246	0.261
	11/16	**0.6875**	**0.6550**	**0.6280**	**0.6334**	**1**	**24**	0.304	0.320
¾[e]		**0.7500**	**0.7175**	**0.6905**	**0.6959**	**1**	**16**	0.369	0.386
	13/16[e]	**0.8125**	**0.7800**	**0.7530**	**0.7584**	**1**	**10**	0.439	0.458
⅞[e]		**0.8750**	**0.8425**	**0.8155**	**0.8209**	**1**	**5**	0.515	0.536
	15/16[e]	**0.9375**	**0.9050**	**0.8780**	**0.8834**	**1**	**0**	0.598	0.620
1[e]		**1.0000**	**0.9675**	**0.9405**	**0.9459**	**0**	**57**	0.687	0.711
	1 1/16	**1.0625**	**1.0300**	**1.0030**	**1.0084**	**0**	**53**	0.782	0.807
1⅛		**1.1250**	**1.0925**	**1.0655**	**1.0709**	**0**	**50**	0.882	0.910
	1 3/16	**1.1875**	**1.1550**	**1.1280**	**1.1334**	**0**	**47**	0.990	1.018
1¼		**1.2500**	**1.2175**	**1.1905**	**1.1959**	**0**	**45**	1.103	1.133
	1 5/16	**1.3125**	**1.2800**	**1.2530**	**1.2584**	**0**	**43**	1.222	1.254
1⅜		**1.3750**	**1.3425**	**1.3155**	**1.3209**	**0**	**41**	1.348	1.382
	1 7/16	**1.4375**	**1.4050**	**1.3780**	**1.3834**	**0**	**39**	1.479	1.51
1½		**1.5000**	**1.4675**	**1.4405**	**1.4459**	**0**	**37**	1.62	1.65
	1 9/16	**1.5625**	**1.5300**	**1.5030**	**1.5084**	**0**	**36**	1.76	1.80
1⅝		**1.6250**	**1.5925**	**1.5655**	**1.5709**	**0**	**34**	1.91	1.95
	1 11/16	**1.6875**	**1.6550**	**1.6280**	**1.6334**	**0**	**33**	2.07	2.11
1¾		**1.7500**	**1.7175**	**1.6905**	**1.6959**	**0**	**32**	2.23	2.27
	1 13/16	**1.8125**	**1.7800**	**1.7530**	**1.7584**	**0**	**31**	2.40	2.44
1⅞		**1.8750**	**1.8425**	**1.8155**	**1.8209**	**0**	**30**	2.57	2.62
	1 15/16	**1.9375**	**1.9050**	**1.8780**	**1.8834**	**0**	**29**	2.75	2.80
2		**2.0000**	**1.9675**	**1.9405**	**1.9459**	**0**	**28**	2.94	2.99
	2⅛	**2.1250**	**2.0925**	**2.0655**	**2.0709**	**0**	**26**	3.33	3.39
2¼		**2.2500**	**2.2175**	**2.1905**	**2.1959**	**0**	**25**	3.75	3.81
	2⅜	**2.3750**	**2.3425**	**2.3155**	**2.3209**	**0**	**23**	4.19	4.25
2½		**2.5000**	**2.4675**	**2.4405**	**2.4459**	**0**	**22**	4.66	4.72
	2⅝	**2.6250**	**2.5925**	**2.5655**	**2.5709**	**0**	**21**	5.15	5.21
2¾		**2.7500**	**2.7175**	**2.6905**	**2.6959**	**0**	**20**	5.66	5.73
	2⅞	**2.8750**	**2.8425**	**2.8155**	**2.8209**	**0**	**19**	6.20	6.27
3		**3.0000**	**2.9675**	**2.9405**	**2.9459**	**0**	**18**	6.77	6.84

[a] British: Effective Diameter.
[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.
[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).
[d] Basic minor diameter.
[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC, UNF, or UNEF Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5g. 28-Thread Series, 28-UN and 28-UNR—Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angel λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at D-2h_b	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext. Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int. Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
	12 (0.216)[e]	**0.2160**	**0.1928**	**0.1734**	**0.1773**	**3**	**22**	0.0226	0.0258
¼[e]		**0.2500**	**0.2268**	**0.2074**	**0.2113**	**2**	**52**	0.0326	0.0364
5⁄16		**0.3125**	**0.2893**	**0.2699**	**0.2738**	**2**	**15**	0.0556	0.0606
⅜		**0.3750**	**0.3518**	**0.3324**	**0.3363**	**1**	**51**	0.0848	0.0909
7⁄16[e]		**0.4375**	**0.4143**	**0.3949**	**0.3988**	**1**	**34**	0.1201	0.1274
½[e]		**0.5000**	**0.4768**	**0.4574**	**0.4613**	**1**	**22**	0.162	0.170
9⁄16		**0.5625**	**0.5393**	**0.5199**	**0.5238**	**1**	**12**	0.209	0.219
⅝		**0.6250**	**0.6018**	**0.5824**	**0.5863**	**1**	**5**	0.263	0.274
	11⁄16	**0.6875**	**0.6643**	**0.6449**	**0.6488**	**0**	**59**	0.323	0.335
¾		**0.7500**	**0.7268**	**0.7074**	**0.7113**	**0**	**54**	0.389	0.402
	13⁄16	**0.8125**	**0.7893**	**0.7699**	**0.7738**	**0**	**50**	0.461	0.475
⅞		**0.8750**	**0.8518**	**0.8324**	**0.8363**	**0**	**46**	0.539	0.554
	15⁄16	**0.9375**	**0.9143**	**0.8949**	**0.8988**	**0**	**43**	0.624	0.640
1		**1.0000**	**0.9768**	**0.9574**	**0.9613**	**0**	**40**	0.714	0.732
	1 1⁄16	**1.0625**	**1.0393**	**1.0199**	**1.0238**	**0**	**38**	0.811	0.830
1 ⅛		**1.1250**	**1.1018**	**1.0824**	**1.0863**	**0**	**35**	0.914	0.933
	1 3⁄16	**1.1875**	**1.1643**	**1.1449**	**1.1488**	**0**	**34**	1.023	1.044
1 ¼		**1.2500**	**1.2268**	**1.2074**	**1.2113**	**0**	**32**	1.138	1.160
	1 5⁄16	**1.3125**	**1.2893**	**1.2699**	**1.2738**	**0**	**30**	1.259	1.282
1 ⅜		**1.3750**	**1.3518**	**1.3324**	**1.3363**	**0**	**29**	1.386	1.411
	1 7⁄16	**1.4375**	**1.4143**	**1.3949**	**1.3988**	**0**	**28**	1.52	1.55
1 ½		**1.5000**	**1.4768**	**1.4574**	**1.4613**	**0**	**26**	1.66	1.69

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC or UNF Series.

Table 5h. 32-Thread Series, 32-UN and 32-UNR—Basic Dimensions

Sizes		Basic Major Dia., D	Basic Pitch Dia.,[a] D_2	Minor Diameter		Lead Angel λ at Basic P.D.		Area of Minor Dia. at D - 2h_b	Tensile Stress Area[b]
Primary	Secondary			Ext.Thds.,[c] d_3 (Ref.)	Int.Thds.,[d] D_1				
Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Inches	Deg.	Min.	Sq. In.	Sq. In.
6 (0.138)[e]		**0.1380**	**0.1177**	**0.1008**	**0.1042**	**4**	**50**	0.00745	0.00909
8 (0.164)[e]		**0.1640**	**0.1437**	**0.1268**	**0.1302**	**3**	**58**	0.01196	0.0140
10 (0.190)[e]		**0.1900**	**0.1697**	**0.1528**	**0.1562**	**3**	**21**	0.01750	0.0200
	12 (0.216)[e]	**0.2160**	**0.1957**	**0.1788**	**0.1822**	**2**	**55**	0.0242	0.0270
¼[e]		**0.2500**	**0.2297**	**0.2128**	**0.2162**	**2**	**29**	0.0344	0.0379
5⁄16[e]		**0.3125**	**0.2922**	**0.2753**	**0.2787**	**1**	**57**	0.0581	0.0625
⅜[e]		**0.3750**	**0.3547**	**0.3378**	**0.3412**	**1**	**36**	0.0878	0.0932
7⁄16		**0.4375**	**0.4172**	**0.4003**	**0.4037**	**1**	**22**	0.1237	0.1301
½		**0.5000**	**0.4797**	**0.4628**	**0.4662**	**1**	**11**	0.166	0.173
9⁄16		**0.5625**	**0.5422**	**0.5253**	**0.5287**	**1**	**3**	0.214	0.222
⅝		**0.6250**	**0.6047**	**0.5878**	**0.5912**	**0**	**57**	0.268	0.278
	11⁄16	**0.6875**	**0.6672**	**0.6503**	**0.6537**	**0**	**51**	0.329	0.339
¾		**0.7500**	**0.7297**	**0.7128**	**0.7162**	**0**	**47**	0.395	0.407
	13⁄16	**0.8125**	**0.7922**	**0.7753**	**0.7787**	**0**	**43**	0.468	0.480
⅞		**0.8750**	**0.8547**	**0.8378**	**0.8412**	**0**	**40**	0.547	0.560
	15⁄16	**0.9375**	**0.9172**	**0.9003**	**0.9037**	**0**	**37**	0.632	0.646
1		**1.0000**	**0.9797**	**0.9628**	**0.9662**	**0**	**35**	0.723	0.738

[a] British: Effective Diameter.

[b] See formula, pages 1660 and 1668.

[c] Design form for UNR threads. (See figure on page 1948).

[d] Basic minor diameter.

[e] These are standard sizes of the UNC,UNF, or UNEF Series.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thread Classes.—Thread classes are distinguished from each other by the amounts of tolerance and allowance. Classes identified by a numeral followed by the letters A and B are derived from certain Unified formulas (not shown here) in which the pitch diameter tolerances are based on increments of the basic major (nominal) diameter, the pitch, and the length of engagement. These formulas and the class identification or symbols apply to all of the Unified threads.

Classes 1A, 2A, and 3A apply to external threads only, and Classes 1B, 2B, and 3B apply to internal threads only. The disposition of the tolerances, allowances, and crest clearances for the various classes is illustrated on page 1989.

Classes 2A and 2B: Classes 2A and 2B are the most commonly used for general applications, including production of bolts, screws, nuts, and similar fasteners.

The maximum diameters of Class 2A (external) uncoated threads are less than basic by the amount of the allowance. The allowance minimizes galling and seizing in high-cycle wrench assembly, or it can be used to accommodate plated finishes or other coating. However, for threads with additive finish, the maximum diameters of Class 2A may be exceeded by the amount of the allowance; for example, the 2A maximum diameters apply to an unplated part or to a part before plating whereas the basic diameters (the 2A maximum diameter plus allowance) apply to a part after plating. The minimum diameters of Class 2B (internal) threads, whether or not plated or coated, are basic, affording no allowance or clearance in assembly at maximum metal limits.

Class 2AG: Certain applications require an allowance for rapid assembly to permit application of the proper lubricant or for residual growth due to high-temperature expansion. In these applications, when the thread is coated and the 2A allowance is not permitted to be consumed by such coating, the thread class symbol is qualified by G following the class symbol.

Classes 3A and 3B: Classes 3A and 3B may be used if closer tolerances are desired than those provided by Classes 2A and 2B. The maximum diameters of Class 3A (external) threads and the minimum diameters of Class 3B (internal) threads, whether or not plated or coated, are basic, affording no allowance or clearance for assembly of maximum metal components.

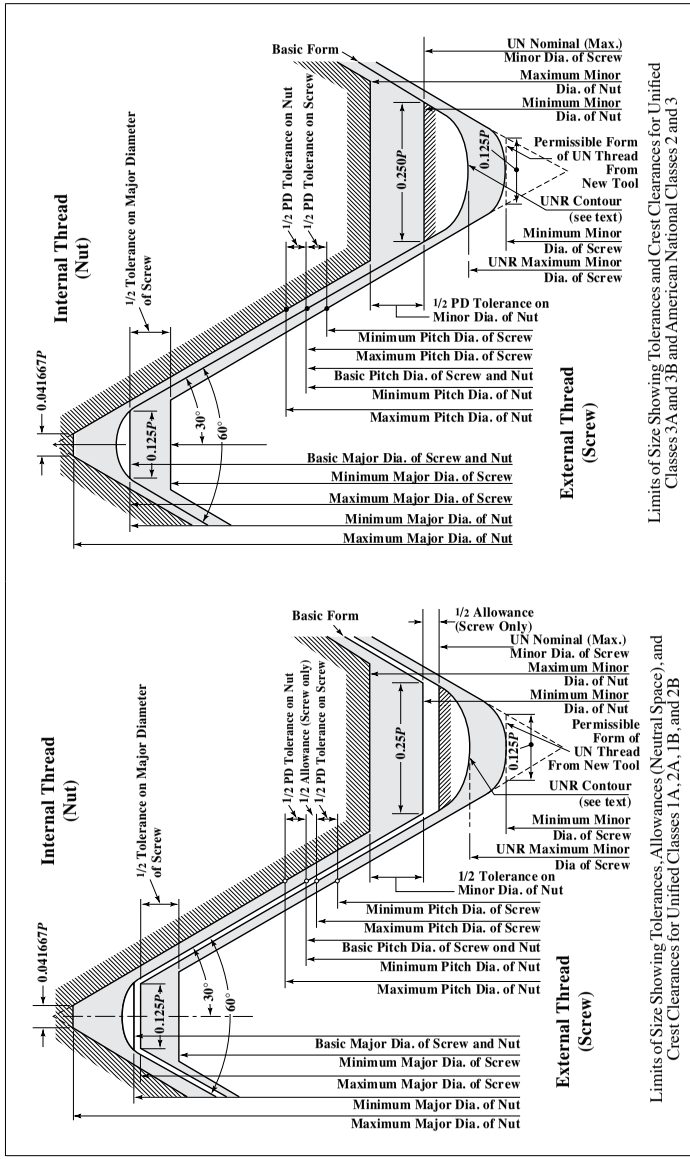
Classes 1A and 1B: Classes 1A and 1B threads replaced American National Class 1. These classes are intended for ordnance and other special uses. They are used on threaded components where quick and easy assembly is necessary and where a liberal allowance is required to permit ready assembly, even with slightly bruised or dirty threads.

Maximum diameters of Class 1A (external) threads are less than basic by the amount of the same allowance as applied to Class 2A. For the intended applications in American practice the allowance is not available for plating or coating. Where the thread is plated or coated, special provisions are necessary. The minimum diameters of Class 1B (internal) threads, whether or not plated or coated, are basic, affording no allowance or clearance for assembly with maximum metal external thread components having maximum diameters which are basic.

Coated 60-Degree Threads.—Although the Standard does not make recommendations for thicknesses of, or specify limits for coatings, it does outline certain principles that will aid mechanical interchangeability if followed whenever conditions permit.

To keep finished threads within the limits of size established in the Standard, external threads should not exceed basic size after plating and internal threads should not be below basic size after plating. This recommendation does not apply to threads coated by certain commonly used processes such as hot-dip galvanizing where it may not be required to maintain these limits.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com


Basic Form
UN Nominal (Max.) Minor Dia. of Screw
Maximum Minor Dia. of Nut
Minimum Minor Dia. of Nut
Permissible Form of UN Thread From New Tool
UNR Contour (see text)
Minimum Minor Dia. of Screw
UNR Maximum Minor Dia. of Screw
1/2 PD Tolerance on Minor Dia. of Nut
Minimum Pitch Dia. of Screw
Maximum Pitch Dia. of Screw
Basic Pitch Dia. of Screw and Nut
Minimum Pitch Dia. of Nut
Maximum Pitch Dia. of Nut
Basic Major Dia. of Screw and Nut
Minimum Major Dia. of Screw
Maximum Major Dia. of Screw
Minimum Major Dia. of Nut
Maximum Major Dia. of Nut
1/2 PD Tolerance on Nut
1/2 PD Tolerance on Screw
1/2 Tolerance on Major Diameter of Screw
0.250P
0.125P
0.041667P
30°
60°
Internal Thread (Nut)
External Thread (Screw)
Limits of Size Showing Tolerances and Crest Clearances for Unified Classes 3A and 3B and American National Classes 2 and 3
Basic Form
1/2 Allowance (Screw Only)
UN Nominal (Max.) Minor Dia. of Screw
Maximum Minor Dia. of Nut
Minimum Minor Dia. of Nut
Permissible Form of UN Thread From New Tool
UNR Contour (see text)
Minimum Minor Dia. of Screw
UNR Maximum Minor Dia of Screw
1/2 Tolerance on Minor Dia. of Nut
Minimum Pitch Dia. of Screw
Maximum Pitch Dia. of Screw
Basic Pitch Dia. of Screw ond Nut
Minimum Pitch Dia. of Nut
Maximum Pitch Dia. of Nut
Basic Major Dia. of Screw and Nut
Minimum Major Dia. of Screw
Maximum Major Dia. of Screw
Minimum Major Dia. of Nut
Maximum Major Dia. of Nut
1/2 PD Tolerance on Nut
1/2 Allowance (Screw only)
1/2 PD Tolerance on Screw
1/2 Tolerance on Major Diameter of Screw
0.25P
0.125P
0.041667P
30°
60°
Internal Thread (Nut)
External Thread (Screw)
Limits of Size Showing Tolerances, Allowances (Neutral Space), and Crest Clearances for Unified Classes 1A, 2A, 1B, and 2B

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Class 2A provides both a tolerance and an allowance. Many thread requirements call for coatings such as those deposited by electro-plating processes and, in general, the 2A allowance provides adequate undercut for such coatings. There may be variations in thickness and symmetry of coating resulting from commercial processes but after plating the threads should be accepted by a basic Class 3A size GO gage and a Class 2A gage as a NOT-GO gage. Class 1A provides an allowance which is maintained for both coated and uncoated product, i.e., it is not available for coating.

Class 3A does not include an allowance so it is suggested that the limits of size before plating be reduced by the amount of the 2A allowance whenever that allowance is adequate.

No provision is made for overcutting internal threads as coatings on such threads are not generally required. Further, it is very difficult to deposit a significant thickness of coating on the flanks of internal threads. Where a specific thickness of coating is required on an internal thread, it is suggested that the thread be overcut so that the thread as coated will be accepted by a GO thread plug gage of basic size.

This Standard ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018) specifies limits of size that pertain whether threads are coated or uncoated. Only in Class 2A threads is an allowance available to accommodate coatings. Thus, in all classes of internal threads and in all Class 1A, 2AG, and 3A external threads, limits of size must be adjusted to provide suitable provision for the desired coating.

For further information concerning dimensional accommodation of coating or plating for 60-degree threads, see Section 7, ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018).

Screw Thread Selection—Combination of Classes.—Whenever possible, selection should be made from Table 2, Standard Series Unified Screw Threads, preference being given to the Coarse- and Fine- thread Series. If threads in the standard series do not meet the requirements of design, reference should be made to the selected combinations in Table 3. The third expedient is to compute the limits of size from the tolerance tables or tolerance increment tables given in the Standard. The fourth and last resort is calculation by the formulas given in the Standard.

The requirements for screw thread fits for specific applications depend on end use and can be met by specifying the proper combinations of thread classes for the components. For example, a Class 2A external thread may be used with a Class 1B, 2B, or 3B internal thread.

Pitch Diameter Tolerances, All Classes.—The pitch diameter tolerances in Table 3 for all classes of the UNC, UNF, 4-UN, 6-UN, and 8-UN series are based on a length of engagement equal to the basic major (nominal) diameter and are applicable for lengths of engagement up to $1\frac{1}{2}$ diameters.

The pitch diameter tolerances used in Table 3 for all classes of the UNEF, 12-UN, 16-UN, 20-UN, 28-UN, and 32-UN series and the UNS series, are based on a length of engagement of 9 pitches and are applicable for lengths of engagement of from 5 to 15 pitches.

Screw Thread Designation.—The basic method of designating a screw thread is used where the standard tolerances or limits of size based on the standard length of engagement are applicable. The designation specifies in sequence the nominal size, number of threads per inch, thread series symbol, thread class symbol, and the gaging system number per ANSI/ASME B1.3. The nominal size is the basic major diameter and is specified as the fractional diameter, screw number, or their decimal equivalent. Where decimal equivalents are used for size callout, they shall be interpreted as being nominal size designations only and shall have no dimensional significance beyond the fractional size or number designation. The symbol LH is placed after the thread class symbol to indicate a left-hand thread:

Examples:

$\frac{1}{4}$-20 UNC-2A (21) or 0.250-20 UNC-2A (21)

10-32 UNF-2A (22) or 0.190-32 UNF-2A (22)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$^{7}/_{16}$-20 UNRF-2A (23) or 0.4375-20 UNRF-2A (23)
2-12 UN-2A (21) or 2.000-12 UN-2A (21)
$^{1}/_{4}$-20 UNC-3A-LH (21) or 0.250-20 UNC-3A-LH (21)

For uncoated standard series threads these designations may optionally be supplemented by the addition of the pitch diameter limits of size.

Examples:
$^{1}/_{4}$-20 UNC-2A (21)
PD 0.2164-0.2127 (Optional for uncoated threads)

Designating Coated Threads.—For coated (or plated) Class 2A external threads, the basic (max) major and basic (max) pitch diameters are given followed by the words AFTER COATING. The major and pitch diameter limits of size before coating are also given followed by the words BEFORE COATING.

Example:	$^{3}/_{4}$-10 UNC-2A (21)		
	[a]Major dia 0.7500 max	}	AFTER COATING
	PD 0.6850 max		
	[b]Major dia 0.7482-0.7353	}	BEFORE COATING
	PD 0.6832-0.6773	}	

[a] Major and PD values are equal to basic and correspond to those in Table 3 for Class 3A.
[b] Major and PD limits are those in Table 3 for Class 2A.

Certain applications require an allowance for rapid assembly, to permit application of a proper lubricant, or for residual growth due to high-temperature expansion. In such applications where the thread is to be coated and the 2A allowance is not permitted to be consumed by such coating, the thread class symbol is qualified by the addition of the letter G (symbol for allowance) following the class symbol, and the maximum major and maximum pitch diameters are reduced below basic size by the amount of the 2A allowance and followed by the words AFTER COATING. This arrangement ensures that the allowance is maintained. The major and pitch diameter limits of size before coating are also given followed by SPL and BEFORE COATING. For information concerning the designating of this and other special coating conditions reference should be made to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018).

Designating UNS Threads.—UNS screw threads that have special combinations of diameter and pitch with tolerance to Unified formulation have the basic form designation set out first followed always by the limits of size.

Designating Multiple Start Threads.—If a screw thread is of multiple start, it is designated by specifying in sequence the nominal size, pitch (in decimals or threads per inch) and lead (in decimals or fractions).

Other Special Designations.—For other special designations including threads with modified limits of size or with special lengths of engagement, reference should be made to American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.1-2003 (R2018).

Hole Sizes for Tapping.—Hole size limits for tapping Classes 1B, 2B, and 3B threads of various lengths of engagement are given in Table 3 on page 2160.

Internal Thread Minor Diameter Tolerances.—Internal thread minor diameter tolerances in Table 3 are based on a length of engagement equal to the nominal diameter. For general applications these tolerances are suitable for lengths of engagement up to $1^{1}/_{2}$ diameters. However, some thread applications have lengths of engagement which are greater than $1^{1}/_{2}$ diameters or less than the nominal diameter. For such applications it may be advantageous to increase or decrease the tolerance, respectively, as explained in the Tapping Section.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American Standard for Unified Miniature Screw Threads

This American Standard (B1.10-1958, R1988) introduces a new series to be known as Unified Miniature Screw Threads and intended for general purpose fastening screws and similar uses in watches, instruments, and miniature mechanisms. Use of this series is recommended on all new products in place of the many improvised and unsystematized sizes now in existence which have never achieved broad acceptance nor recognition by standardization bodies. The series covers a diameter range from 0.30 to 1.40 millimeters (0.0118 to 0.0551 inch) and thus supplements the Unified and American thread series which begins at 0.060 inch (number 0 of the machine screw series). It comprises a total of fourteen sizes which, together with their respective pitches, are those endorsed by the American-British-Canadian Conference of April 1955 as the basis for a Unified standard among the inch-using countries, and coincide with the corresponding range of sizes in ISO (International Organization for Standardization) Recommendation No. 68. Additionally, it utilizes thread forms which are compatible in all significant respects with both the Unified and ISO basic thread profiles. Thus, threads in this series are interchangeable with the corresponding sizes in both the American-British-Canadian and ISO standard.

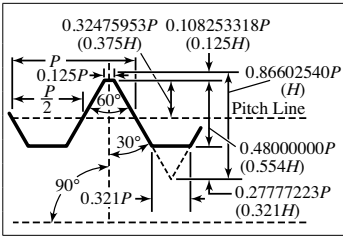
Basic Form of Thread.—The basic profile by which the design forms of the threads covered by this standard are governed is shown in Table 1. The thread angle is 60 degrees and except for basic height and depth of engagement which are $0.52p$, instead of $0.54127p$, the basic profile for this thread standard is identical with the Unified and American basic thread form. The selection of 0.52 as the exact value of the coefficient for the height of this basic form is based on practical manufacturing considerations and a plan to simplify calculations and achieve more precise agreement between metric and inch dimensional tables.

Products made to this standard will be interchangeable with products made to other standards which allow a maximum depth of engagement (or combined addendum height) of $0.54127p$. The resulting difference is negligible (only 0.00025 inch for the coarsest pitch) and is completely offset by practical considerations in tapping, since internal thread heights exceeding $0.52p$ are avoided in these (Unified Miniature) small thread sizes in order to reduce excessive tap breakage.

Design Forms of Threads.—The design (maximum material) forms of the external and internal threads are shown in Table 2. These forms are derived from the basic profile shown in Table 1 by the application of clearances for the crests of the addenda at the roots of the mating dedendum forms. Basic and design form dimensions are given in Table 3.

Nominal Sizes: The thread sizes comprising this series and their respective pitches are shown in the first two columns of Table 5. The fourteen sizes shown in Table 5 have been systematically distributed to provide a uniformly proportioned selection over the entire range. They are separated alternately into two categories: The sizes shown in bold type are selections made in the interest of simplification and are those to which it is recommended that usage be confined wherever the circumstances of design permit. Where these sizes do not meet requirements the intermediate sizes shown in light type are available.

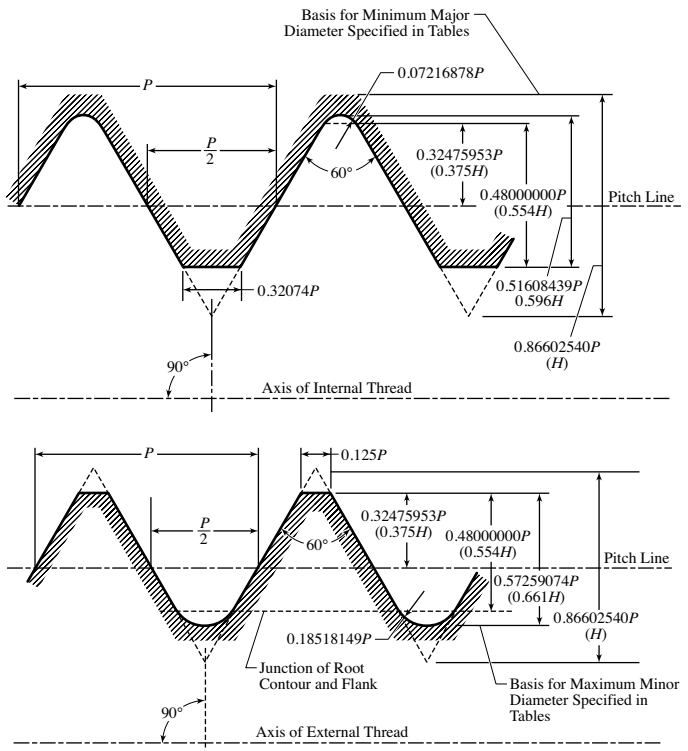
Table 1. Unified Miniature Screw Threads—Basic Thread Form



Formulas for Basic Thread Form Metric units (millimeters) used in formulas		
Thread Element	Symbol	Formula
Angle of thread	2α	60°
Half angle of thread	α	30°
Pitch of thread	p	
No. of threads per inch	n	$25.4/p$
Height of sharp V thread	H	$0.86603p$
Addendum of basic thread	h_{ab}	$0.32476p$
Height of basic thread	h_b	$0.52p$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Unified Miniature Screw Threads—Design Thread Form



Formulas for Design Thread Form (maximum material)[a]

External Thread			Internal Thread		
Thread Element	Symbol	Formula	Thread Element	Symbol	Formula
Addendum	h_{as}	0.32476*p*	Height of engagement	h_e	0.52*p*
Height	h_s	0.60*p*	Height of thread	h_n	0.556*p*
Flat at crest	F_{cs}	0.125*p*	Flat at crest	F_{cn}	0.27456*p*
Radius at root	r_{rs}	0.158*p* (approx)	Radius at root	r_{rn}	0.072*p* (approx)

[a] Metric units (millimeters) are used in all formulas.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Unified Miniature Screw Threads — Basic and Design Form Dimensions

Basic Thread Form					External Thread Design Form			Internal Thread Design Form		
Threads per inch n^a	Pitch p	Height of Sharp V $H = 0.86603p$	Height $h_s = 0.52p$	Addendum $h_{sb} = h_{sa} = 0.32476p$	Height $h_s = 0.60p$	Flat at Crest $F_{cs} = 0.125p$	Radius at Root $r_{rs} = 0.158p$	Height $h_n = 0.556p$	Flat at Crest $F_{cn} = 0.27456p$	Radius at Root $r_{rn} = 0.072p$
Millimeter Dimensions										
…	.080	.0693	.0416	.0260	.048	.0100	.0126	.0445	.0220	.0058
…	.090	.0779	.0468	.0292	.054	.0112	.0142	.0500	.0247	.0065
…	.100	.0866	.0520	.0325	.060	.0125	.0158	.0556	.0275	.0072
…	.125	.1083	.0650	.0406	.075	.0156	.0198	.0695	.0343	.0090
…	.150	.1299	.0780	.0487	.090	.0188	.0237	.0834	.0412	.0108
…	.175	.1516	.0910	.0568	.105	.0219	.0277	.0973	.0480	.0126
…	.200	.1732	.1040	.0650	.120	.0250	.0316	.1112	.0549	.0144
…	.225	.1949	.1170	.0731	.135	.0281	.0356	.1251	.0618	.0162
…	.250	.2165	.1300	.0812	.150	.0312	.0395	.1390	.0686	.0180
…	.300	.2598	.1560	.0974	.180	.0375	.0474	.1668	.0824	.0216
Inch Dimensions										
317½	.003150	.00273	.00164	.00102	.00189	.00039	.00050	.00175	.00086	.00023
282⅔	.003543	.00307	.00184	.00115	.00213	.00044	.00056	.00197	.00097	.00026
254	.003937	.00341	.00205	.00128	.00236	.00049	.00062	.00219	.00108	.00028
203¼	.004921	.00426	.00256	.00160	.00295	.00062	.00078	.00274	.00135	.00035
169⅓	.005906	.00511	.00307	.00192	.00354	.00074	.00093	.00328	.00162	.00043
145⅐	.006890	.00597	.00358	.00224	.00413	.00086	.00109	.00383	.00189	.00050
127	.007874	.00682	.00409	.00256	.00472	.00098	.00124	.00438	.00216	.00057
112⅛	.008858	.00767	.00461	.00288	.00531	.00111	.00140	.00493	.00243	.00064
101⅗	.009843	.00852	.00512	.00320	.00591	.00123	.00156	.00547	.00270	.00071
84⅔	.011811	.01023	.00614	.00384	.00709	.00148	.00187	.00657	.00324	.00085

[a] In Table 5 and Table 6 these values are shown rounded to the nearest whole number.

Table 4. Unified Miniature Screw Threads — Formulas for Basic and Design Dimensions and Tolerances

Formulas for Basic Dimensions	
D = Basic Major Diameter and Nominal Size in millimeters; p = Pitch in millimeters; E = Basic Pitch Diameter in millimeters = $D - 0.64952p$; and K = Basic Minor Diameter in millimeters = $D - 1.04p$	
Formulas for Design Dimensions (Maximum Material)	
External Thread	**Internal Thread**
D_s = Major Diameter = D	D_n = Major Diameter = $D + 0.072p$
E_s = Pitch Diameter = E	E_n = Pitch Diameter = E
K_s = Minor Diameter = $D - 1.20p$	K_n = Minor Diameter = K
Formulas for Tolerances on Design Dimensions[a]	
External Thread (–)	**Internal Thread (+)**
Major Diameter Tol., $0.12p + 0.006$	[b]Major Diameter Tol., $0.168p + 0.008$
Pitch Diameter Tol., $0.08p + 0.008$	Pitch Diameter Tol., $0.08p + 0.008$
[c]Minor Diameter Tol., $0.16p + 0.008$	Minor Diameter Tol., $0.32p + 0.012$

[a] These tolerances are based on lengths of engagement of $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$.

[b] This tolerance establishes the maximum limit of the major diameter of the internal thread. In practice, this limit is applied to the threading tool (tap) and not gaged on the product. Values for this tolerance are, therefore, not given in Table 5.

[c] This tolerance establishes the minimum limit of the minor diameter of the external thread. In practice, this limit is applied to the threading tool and only gaged on the product in confirming new tools. Values for this tolerance are, therefore, not given in Table 5.

Metric units (millimeters) apply in all formulas. Inch tolerances are not derived by direct conversion of the metric values. They are the differences between the rounded off limits of size in inch units.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Unified Miniature Screw Threads—Limits of Size and Tolerances

Size Designation[a]	Pitch	External Threads						Internal Threads						Lead Angle at Basic Pitch Diam.		Sectional Area at Minor Diam. at D—1.28*p*
		Major Diam.		Pitch Diam.		Minor Diam.		Minor Diam.		Pitch Diam.		Major Diam.				
		Max[b]	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max[c]	Min[d]	Min[b]	Max	Min[b]	Max	Min[e]	Max[d]			
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	deg	min	sq mm
0.30 UNM	**0.080**	**0.300**	**0.284**	**0.248**	**0.234**	**0.204**	**0.183**	**0.217**	**0.254**	**0.248**	**0.262**	**0.306**	**0.327**	**5**	**52**	**0.0307**
0.35 UNM	0.090	0.350	0.333	0.292	0.277	0.242	0.220	0.256	0.297	0.292	0.307	0.356	0.380	5	37	0.0433
0.40 UNM	**0.100**	**0.400**	**0.382**	**0.335**	**0.319**	**0.280**	**0.256**	**0.296**	**0.340**	**0.335**	**0.351**	**0.407**	**0.432**	**5**	**26**	**0.0581**
0.45 UNM	0.100	0.450	0.432	0.385	0.369	0.330	0.306	0.346	0.390	0.385	0.401	0.457	0.482	4	44	0.0814
0.50 UNM	**0.125**	**0.500**	**0.479**	**0.419**	**0.401**	**0.350**	**0.322**	**0.370**	**0.422**	**0.419**	**0.437**	**0.509**	**0.538**	**5**	**26**	**0.0908**
0.55 UNM	0.125	0.550	0.529	0.469	0.451	0.400	0.372	0.420	0.472	0.469	0.487	0.559	0.588	4	51	0.1195
0.60 UNM	**0.150**	**0.600**	**0.576**	**0.503**	**0.483**	**0.420**	**0.388**	**0.444**	**0.504**	**0.503**	**0.523**	**0.611**	**0.644**	**5**	**26**	**0.1307**
0.70 UNM	0.175	0.700	0.673	0.586	0.564	0.490	0.454	0.518	0.586	0.586	0.608	0.713	0.750	5	26	0.1780
0.80 UNM	**0.200**	**0.800**	**0.770**	**0.670**	**0.646**	**0.560**	**0.520**	**0.592**	**0.668**	**0.670**	**0.694**	**0.814**	**0.856**	**5**	**26**	**0.232**
0.90 UNM	0.225	0.900	0.867	0.754	0.728	0.630	0.586	0.666	0.750	0.754	0.780	0.916	0.962	5	26	0.294
1.00 UNM	**0.250**	**1.000**	**0.964**	**0.838**	**0.810**	**0.700**	**0.652**	**0.740**	**0.832**	**0.838**	**0.866**	**1.018**	**1.068**	**5**	**26**	**0.363**
1.10 UNM	0.250	1.100	1.064	0.938	0.910	0.800	0.752	0.840	0.932	0.938	0.966	1.118	1.168	4	51	0.478
1.20 UNM	**0.250**	**1.200**	**1.164**	**1.038**	**1.010**	**0.900**	**0.852**	**0.940**	**1.032**	**1.038**	**1.066**	**1.218**	**1.268**	**4**	**23**	**0.608**
1.40 UNM	0.300	1.400	1.358	1.205	1.173	1.040	0.984	1.088	1.196	1.205	1.237	1.422	1.480	4	32	0.811
	Thds. per in.	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	deg	min	sq in
0.30 UNM	**318**	**0.0118**	**0.0112**	**0.0098**	**0.0092**	**0.0080**	**0.0072**	**0.0085**	**0.0100**	**0.0098**	**0.0104**	**0.0120**	**0.0129**	**5**	**52**	**0.0000475**
0.35 UNM	282	0.0138	0.0131	0.0115	0.0109	0.0095	0.0086	0.0101	0.0117	0.0115	0.0121	0.0140	0.0149	5	37	0.0000671
0.40 UNM	**254**	**0.0157**	**0.0150**	**0.0132**	**0.0126**	**0.0110**	**0.0101**	**0.0117**	**0.0134**	**0.0132**	**0.0138**	**0.0160**	**0.0170**	**5**	**26**	**0.0000901**
0.45 UNM	254	0.0177	0.0170	0.0152	0.0145	0.0130	0.0120	0.0136	0.0154	0.0152	0.0158	0.0180	0.0190	4	44	0.0001262
0.50 UNM	**203**	**0.0197**	**0.0189**	**0.0165**	**0.0158**	**0.0138**	**0.0127**	**0.0146**	**0.0166**	**0.0165**	**0.0172**	**0.0200**	**0.0212**	**5**	**26**	**0.0001407**
0.55 UNM	203	0.0217	0.0208	0.0185	0.0177	0.0157	0.0146	0.0165	0.0186	0.0185	0.0192	0.0220	0.0231	4	51	0.0001852
0.60 UNM	**169**	**0.0236**	**0.0227**	**0.0198**	**0.0190**	**0.0165**	**0.0153**	**0.0175**	**0.0198**	**0.0198**	**0.0206**	**0.0240**	**0.0254**	**5**	**26**	**0.000203**
0.70 UNM	145	0.0276	0.0265	0.0231	0.0222	0.0193	0.0179	0.0204	0.0231	0.0231	0.0240	0.0281	0.0295	5	26	0.000276
0.80 UNM	**127**	**0.0315**	**0.0303**	**0.0264**	**0.0254**	**0.0220**	**0.0205**	**0.0233**	**0.0263**	**0.0264**	**0.0273**	**0.0321**	**0.0337**	**5**	**26**	**0.000360**
0.90 UNM	113	0.0354	0.0341	0.0297	0.0287	0.0248	0.0231	0.0262	0.0295	0.0297	0.0307	0.0361	0.0379	5	26	0.000456
1.00 UNM	**102**	**0.0394**	**0.0380**	**0.0330**	**0.0319**	**0.0276**	**0.0257**	**0.0291**	**0.0327**	**0.0330**	**0.0341**	**0.0401**	**0.0420**	**5**	**26**	**0.000563**
1.10 UNM	102	0.0433	0.0419	0.0369	0.0358	0.0315	0.0296	0.0331	0.0367	0.0369	0.0380	0.0440	0.0460	4	51	0.000741
1.20 UNM	**102**	**0.0472**	**0.0458**	**0.0409**	**0.0397**	**0.0354**	**0.0335**	**0.0370**	**0.0406**	**0.0409**	**0.0420**	**0.0480**	**0.0499**	**4**	**23**	**0.000943**
1.40 UNM	85	0.0551	0.0535	0.0474	0.0462	0.0409	0.0387	0.0428	0.0471	0.0474	0.0487	0.0560	0.0583	4	32	0.001257

[a] Sizes shown in bold type are preferred.

[b] This is also the basic dimension.

[c] This limit, in conjunction with root form shown in Table 2, is advocated for use when optical projection methods of gaging are employed. For mechanical gaging the minimum minor diameter of the internal thread is applied.

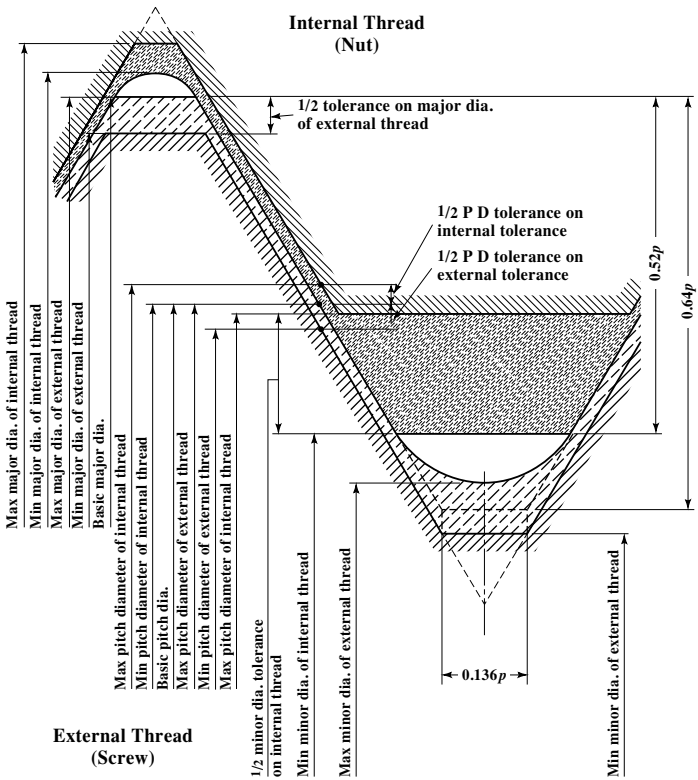
[d] This limit is provided for reference only. In practice, the form of the threading tool is relied upon for this limit.

[e] This limit is provided for reference only, and is not gaged. For gaging, the maximum major diameter of the external thread is applied.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Unified Miniature Screw Threads—Minimum Root Flats for External Threads

Pitch	No. of Threads Per Inch	Thread Height for Min. Flat at Root $0.64p$		Minimum Flat at Root $F_{rs} = 0.136p$	
mm		mm	Inch	mm	Inch
0.080	318	0.0512	0.00202	0.0109	0.00043
0.090	282	0.0576	0.00227	0.0122	0.00048
0.100	254	0.0640	0.00252	0.0136	0.00054
0.125	203	0.0800	0.00315	0.0170	0.00067
0.150	169	0.0960	0.00378	0.0204	0.00080
0.175	145	0.1120	0.00441	0.0238	0.00094
0.200	127	0.1280	0.00504	0.0272	0.00107
0.225	113	0.1440	0.00567	0.0306	0.00120
0.250	102	0.1600	0.00630	0.0340	0.00134
0.300	85	0.1920	0.00756	0.0408	0.00161


Internal Thread
(Nut)
1/2 tolerance on major dia.
of external thread
1/2 P D tolerance on
internal tolerance
1/2 P D tolerance on
external tolerance
0.52p
0.64p
Max major dia. of internal thread
Min major dia. of internal thread
Max major dia. of external thread
Min major dia. of external thread
Basic major dia.
Max pitch diameter of internal thread
Min pitch diameter of internal thread
Basic pitch dia.
Max pitch diameter of external thread
Min pitch diameter of external thread
Max pitch diameter of internal thread
1/2 minor dia. tolerance
on internal thread
Min minor dia. of internal thread
Max minor dia. of external thread
0.136p
Min minor dia. of external thread
External Thread
(Screw)

Limits of Size Showing Tolerances and Crest Clearances for UNM Threads

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Limits of Size: Formulas used to determine limits of size are given in Table 4; the limits of size are given in Table 5. The diagram on page 1996 illustrates the limits of size and Table 6 gives values for the minimum flat at the root of the external thread shown on the diagram.

Classes of Threads: The standard establishes one class of thread with zero allowance on all diameters. When coatings of a measurable thickness are required, they should be included within the maximum material limits of the threads since these limits apply to both coated and uncoated threads.

Hole Sizes for Tapping: Suggested hole sizes are given in the Tapping Section.

Unified Screw Threads of UNJ Basic Profile

British Standard UNJ Threads.—This British Standard BS 4084: 1978 arises from a request originating from within the British aircraft industry and is based upon specifications for Unified screw threads and American military standard MIL-S-8879.

These UNJ threads, having an enlarged root radius, were introduced for applications requiring high fatigue strength where working stress levels are high, in order to minimize size and weight, as in aircraft engines, airframes, missiles, space vehicles and similar designs where size and weight are critical. To meet these requirements the root radius of external Unified threads is controlled between appreciably enlarged limits, the minor diameter of the mating internal threads being appropriately increased to insure the necessary clearance. The requirement for high strength is further met by restricting the tolerances for UNJ threads to the highest classes, Classes 3A and 3B, of Unified screw threads.

The standard, not described further here, contains both a coarse and a fine pitch series of threads. BS 4084: 1978 is technically identical to ISO 3161-1977 except for Appendix A.

ASME Unified Inch Screw Threads, UNJ Form.—The ANSI/ASME B1.15-1995 standard is similar to Military Specification MIL-S-8879, and equivalent to ISO 3161-1977 for thread Classes 3A and 3B. Basic profile dimensions are given in Table 1, page 1998.

The ANSI/ASME B1.15-1995 standard establishes the basic profile for the UNJ thread form, specifies a system of designation, lists the standard series of diameter-pitch combinations for diameters from 0.060 to 6.00 inches, and specifies limiting dimensions and tolerances. It specifies the characteristics of the UNJ inch series of threads having 0.15011*P* to 0.18042*P* designated radius at the root of the external thread, and also having the minor diameter of the external and internal threads increased above the ANSI/ASME B1.1 UN and UNR thread forms to accommodate the external thread maximum root radius.

UNJ threads are similar to UN threads except for a large radius in the root, or minor diameter, of the external thread. The radius eliminates sharp corners in the minor diameter of the bolt to increase the stripping strength. The fillets or radius in sharp corners increases strength at stress points where cracking or failure may occur due to change in temperature, heavy loads, or vibration. Other dimensions are the same as the UN thread.

Because the radius on the external thread increases the minor diameter of the bolt, the internal thread, or nut, is modified accordingly to permit assembly. The minor diameter of the internal thread is enlarged to clear the radius. This is the only change to the internal thread. All other dimensions are the same as standard Unified threads. Different types of tap drill sizes are required to produce UNJ thread. All tooling for external threads, thread rolls, and chasers must be made to produce a radius at the minor diameter. All runout or incomplete threads shall have a radius also.

Thread conforming to the ANSI/ASME B1.1 UN profile and the UNJ profile are not interchangeable because of possible interference between the UNJ external thread minor diameter and the UN internal thread minor diameter. However, the UNJ internal thread will assemble with the UN external thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Basic Profile Dimensions UNJ Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.15-1995*

Threads per inch n	Pitch $P = 1/n$	Pitch Line $0.5P$	Flat at Internal Thread Crest $0.3125P$	Flat at Internal Thread Root and External Thread Crest $0.125P$	Height of Sharp V Thread $H = 0.866025P$	Height of Internal Thread and Depth of Thread Engagement $0.5625H = 0.487139P$	Addendum of External Thread $0.375H = 0.324760P$	Truncation of Internal Thread Crest $0.3125H = 0.270633P$	Truncation of Internal Thread Root and External Thread Crest $0.125H = 0.108253P$	Half Addendum of External Thread (REF. ONLY) $0.1875H = 0.16238P$
80	0.012500	0.006250	0.00391	0.00156	0.010825	0.00609	0.00406	0.00338	0.00135	0.00203
72	0.013889	0.006944	0.00434	0.00174	0.012028	0.00677	0.00451	0.00376	0.00150	0.00226
64	0.015625	0.007813	0.00488	0.00195	0.013532	0.00761	0.00507	0.00423	0.00169	0.00254
56	0.017857	0.008929	0.00558	0.00223	0.015465	0.00870	0.00580	0.00483	0.00193	0.00290
48	0.020833	0.010417	0.00651	0.00260	0.018042	0.01015	0.00677	0.00564	0.00226	0.00338
44	0.022727	0.011364	0.00710	0.00284	0.019682	0.01107	0.00738	0.00615	0.00246	0.00369
40	0.025000	0.012500	0.00781	0.00313	0.021651	0.01218	0.00812	0.00677	0.00271	0.00406
36	0.027778	0.013889	0.00868	0.00347	0.024056	0.01353	0.00902	0.00752	0.00301	0.00451
32	0.031250	0.015625	0.00977	0.00391	0.027063	0.01522	0.01015	0.00846	0.00338	0.00507
28	0.035714	0.017857	0.01116	0.00446	0.030929	0.01740	0.01160	0.00967	0.00387	0.00580
24	0.041667	0.020833	0.01302	0.00521	0.036084	0.02030	0.01353	0.01128	0.00451	0.00677
20	0.050000	0.025000	0.01563	0.00625	0.043301	0.02436	0.01624	0.01353	0.00541	0.00812
18	0.055556	0.027778	0.01736	0.00694	0.048113	0.02706	0.01804	0.01504	0.00601	0.00902
16	0.062500	0.031250	0.01953	0.00781	0.054127	0.03045	0.02030	0.01691	0.00677	0.01015
14	0.071429	0.035714	0.02232	0.00893	0.061859	0.03480	0.02320	0.01933	0.00773	0.01160
12	0.083333	0.041667	0.02604	0.01042	0.072169	0.04059	0.02706	0.02255	0.00902	0.01353
11	0.090909	0.045455	0.02841	0.01136	0.078730	0.04429	0.02952	0.02460	0.00984	0.01476
10	0.100000	0.050000	0.03125	0.01250	0.086603	0.04871	0.03248	0.02706	0.01083	0.01624
9	0.111111	0.055556	0.03472	0.01389	0.096225	0.05413	0.03608	0.03007	0.01203	0.01804
8	0.125000	0.062500	0.03906	0.01563	0.108253	0.06089	0.04060	0.03383	0.01353	0.02030
7	0.142857	0.071429	0.04464	0.01786	0.123718	0.06959	0.04639	0.03866	0.01546	0.02320
6	0.166667	0.083333	0.05208	0.02083	0.144338	0.08119	0.05413	0.04511	0.01804	0.02706
5	0.200000	0.100000	0.06250	0.02500	0.173205	0.09743	0.06495	0.05413	0.02165	0.03248
4.5	0.222222	0.111111	0.06944	0.02778	0.192450	0.10825	0.07217	0.06014	0.02406	0.03608
4	0.250000	0.125000	0.07813	0.03125	0.216506	0.12178	0.08119	0.06766	0.02706	0.04060

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CALCULATING THREAD DIMENSIONS

Introduction

The purpose of the ASME B1.30 standard is to establish uniform and specific practices for calculating and rounding the numeric values used for inch and metric screw thread design data dimensions only. No attempt has been made to establish a policy of rounding actual thread characteristics measured by the manufacturer or user of thread gages. Covered is the Standard Rounding Policy* regarding the last figure or decimal place to be retained by a numeric value and the number of decimal places to be retained by values used in intermediate calculations of thread design data dimensions. Values calculated to this ASME B1.30 Standard for inch and metric screw thread design data dimensions may vary slightly from values shown in existing issues of ASME B1 screw thread standards and are to take precedence in all new or future revisions of ASME B1 standards as applicable except as noted in following paragraph.

Metric Application.—Allowances (fundamental deviations) and tolerances for metric M and MJ screw threads are based upon formulas which appear in applicable standards. Values of allowances for standard tolerance positions and values of tolerances for standard tolerance grades are tabulated in these standards for a selection of pitches. Rounding rules specified in ASME B1.30 have not been applied to these values but have followed practices of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). For pitches which are not included in the tables, standard formulas and the rounding rules specified herein are applicable.

ISO rounding practices, for screw thread tolerances and allowances, use rounding to the nearest values in the R40 series of numbers in accordance with ISO 3 (see page 689). In some cases, the rounded values have been adjusted to produce a smooth progression. Since the ISO rounded values have been standardized internationally for metric screw threads, it would lead to confusion if tolerances and allowances were recalculated using B1.30 rules for use in the United States. The B1.30 rounding rules are, therefore, only applicable to special threads where tabulated values do not exist in ISO standards. Values calculated using the ISO R40 series values may differ from those calculated using B1.30. In such a case the special thread values generated using B1.30 take precedence.

Purpose.—Thread dimensions calculated from published formulas frequently may not yield the exact values published in the standards. The difference in most cases are due to rounding policy.

The ASME B1.30 standard specifies that pitch, P, values shall be rounded to eight decimal places. In Example 1 that follows on page 2001, the pitch of 28 threads per inch, 0.03571429, is correct; using $\frac{1}{28}$ or 0.0357 or 0.0357142856 instead of 0.03571429 will not produce values that conform to values calculated according this standard.

The rounding rules specified by the standard are not uniform, and vary by feature. Pitch is held to eight decimal places, maximum major diameter to four decimal places, and tolerances to six decimal places. In order to maintain the same screw dimensions, everybody has to follow the same rounding practice.

The basic profile of UN and UNF screw threads are shown in Fig. 1. Examples given on the following pages, including the detailed calculations of UNEF and UNS external and internal threads, are intended to provide a basis for better understanding of the formulas, the calculations, and the rounding process.

* It is recognized that ASME B1.30 is not in agreement with other published documents, e.g., ASME SI-9, "Guide for Metrication of Codes and Standards SI (Metric) Units," and IEEE/ASTM SI-10, "Standard for Metric Practice." The rounding practices used in the forenamed documents are designed to produce even distribution of numerical values. The purpose of this document is to define the most practical and commonly used method of rounding numerical thread form values. Application of this method is far more practical in the rounding of thread form values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calculating and Rounding Dimensions

Rounding of Decimal Values.—The following rounding practice represents the method to be used in new or future revisions of ASME B1 thread standards.

Rounding Policy: When the figure next beyond the last figure or place retained is less than 5, the figure in the last place retained is kept unchanged.

Example:

1.012342	1.01234
1.012342	1.0123
1.012342	1.012

When the figure next beyond the last figure or place retained is greater than 5, the figure in the last place retained is increased by 1.

Example:

1.56789	1.5679
1.56789	1.568
1.56789	1.57

When the figure next beyond the last figure or place retained is 5, and:

1) There are no figures, or only zeros, beyond the 5, the last figure should be increased by 1.

Example:

1.01235	1.0124
1.0123500	1.0124
1.012345	1.01235
1.01234500	1.01235

2) If the 5 next beyond the figure in the last place to be retained is followed by any figures other than zero, the figure in the last place retained should be increased by 1.

Example:

1.0123501	1.0124
1.0123599	1.0124
1.01234501	1.01235
1.01234599	1.01235

The final rounded value is obtained from the most precise value available and not from a series of successive rounding. For example, 0.5499 should be rounded to 0.550, 0.55 and 0.5 (not 0.6), since the most precise value available is less than 0.55. Similarly, 0.5501 should be rounded as 0.550, 0.55 and 0.6, since the most precise value available is more than 0.55. In the case of 0.5500 rounding should be 0.550, 0.55 and 0.6, since the most precise value available is 0.5500.

Calculations from Formulas, General Rules.—1) Values for pitch and constants derived from a function of pitch are used out to eight decimal places for inch series. The eight place values are obtained by rounding their truncated ten place values.

Seven decimal place values for metric series constants are derived by rounding their truncated nine place values.

Values used in intermediate calculations are rounded to two places beyond the number of decimal places retained for the final value, see Table 1 and Table 7.

2) Rounding to the final value is the last step in a calculation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 1, Rounding Inch Series:

$n = 28$ threads per inch $\quad P = \frac{1}{n} = \frac{1}{28}$

$P = 0.0357142857$ (calculated and truncated to 10 places)

$P = 0.03571429$ (rounded to 8 places)

Table 1. Number of Decimal Places Used in Calculations

Units	Pitch	Constants	Intermediate	Final
Inch	8	8	6	4
Metric	as designated	7	5	3

3) For inch screw thread dimensions, four decimal places are required for the final values of pitch diameter, major diameter, and minor diameter with the exception of Class 1B and 2B internal thread minor diameters for thread sizes 0.138 and larger.

The final values for the allowances and tolerances applied to thread elements are expressed to four decimal places except for external thread pitch diameter tolerance, Td_2, which is expressed to six decimal places.

Minor Diameter Exceptions for Internal Threads:

Minimum Minor Diameter: All classes are calculated and then rounded off to the nearest 0.001 inch and expressed in three decimal places for sizes 0.138 inch and larger. For Class 3B, a zero is added to yield four decimal places.

Maximum Minor Diameter: All classes are calculated before rounding, then rounded for Classes 1B and 2B to the nearest 0.001 in. for sizes 0.138 in. and larger. Class 3B values are rounded to four decimal places.

4) Metric screw threads are dimensioned in millimeters. The final values of pitch diameter, major diameter, minor diameter, allowance and thread element tolerances are expressed to three decimal places.

5) Values containing multiple trailing zeros out to the required number of decimal places can be expressed by displaying only two of them beyond the last significant digit.

Example: 20 threads per inch has a pitch equal to 0.05000000 and can be expressed as 0.0500.

Examples

Inch Screw Threads.—The formulas in the examples for inch screw threads are based on those listed in ANSI/ASME B1.1, *Unified Inch Screw Threads*. Table 3 and Table 4 are based on a size that when converted from a fraction to a decimal will result in a number that has only four decimal places. Table 5 and Table 6 are based on a size that when converted will result in a number with infinite numbers of digits after the decimal point. Fig. 1 is provided for reference.

Metric Screw Threads.—The formulas for metric screw threads are based on those listed in ANSI/ASME B1.13M, *Metric Screw Threads*. The calculation of size limits for standard diameter/pitch combinations listed in both ISO 261 and ANSI/ASME B1.13M use the tabulated values for allowances and tolerances (in accordance with ISO 965-1). The constant values differ from those used for inch screw threads, in accordance with the policy of rounding of this standard, because metric limits of size are expressed to only three decimal places rather than four.

Thread Form Constants.—For thread form data see Table 2. The number of decimal places and the manner in which they are listed should be consistent. Thread form constants printed in older thread standards are based on a function of thread height (H) or pitch (P). The equivalent of the corresponding function is also listed. There are some constants that would require these values to 8 or 7 decimal places before they would

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

round to equivalent values. For standardization the tabulated listing of thread values based on a function of pitch has been established, with thread height used as a reference only All thread calculations are to be performed using a function of pitch (*P*), rounded to 8 decimal places for inch series and as designated for metric series, not a function of thread height (*H*). Thread height is to be used for reference only. See Table 7.

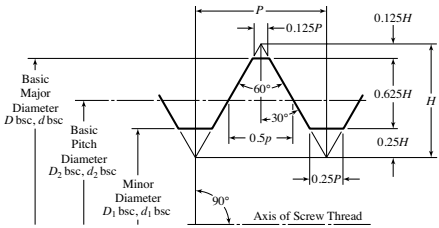


Fig. 1. Basic Profile of UN and UNF Screw Threads

Table 2. Thread Form Data

Constant for Inch Series (8-place)	Reference Values		Constant for Metric Series (7-place)
0.04811252*P*	1/18 *H*	0.0556*H*	0.0481125*P*
0.05412659*P*	1/16 *H*	0.0625*H*	0.0541266*P*
0.08660254*P*	1/10 *H*	0.1000*H*	0.0866025*P*
0.09622504*P*	1/9 *H*	0.1111*H*	0.0962250*P*
0.10825318*P*	1/8 *H*	0.1250*H*	0.1082532*P*
0.12990381*P*	3/20 *H*	0.1500*H*	0.1299038*P*
0.14433757*P*	1/6 *H*	0.1667*H*	0.1443376*P*
0.16237976*P*	3/16 *H*	0.1875*H*	0.1623798*P*
0.21650635*P*	1/4 *H*	0.2500*H*	0.2165064*P*
0.28867513*P*	1/3 *H*	0.3333*H*	0.2886751*P*
0.32475953*P*	3/8 *H*	0.3750*H*	0.3247595*P*
0.36084392*P*	5/12 *H*	0.4167*H*	0.3608439*P*
0.39692831*P*	11/24 *H*	0.4583*H*	0.3969283*P*
0.43301270*P*	1/2 *H*	0.5000*H*	0.4330127*P*
0.48713929*P*	9/16 *H*	0.5625*H*	0.4871393*P*
0.54126588*P*	5/8 *H*	0.6250*H*	0.5412659*P*
0.57735027*P*	2/3 *H*	0.6667*H*	0.5773503*P*
0.59539246*P*	11/16 *H*	0.6875*H*	0.5953925*P*
0.61343466*P*	17/24 *H*	0.7083*H*	0.6134347*P*
0.61602540*P*	…	0.7113*H*	0.6160254*P*
0.64951905*P*	3/4 *H*	0.7500*H*	0.6495191*P*
0.72168783*P*	5/6 *H*	0.8333*H*	0.7216878*P*
0.79385662*P*	11/12 *H*	0.9167*H*	0.7938566*P*
0.86602540*P*	*H*	1.0000*H*	0.8660254*P*
1.08253175*P*	5/4 *H*	1.2500*H*	1.0825318*P*
1.19078493*P*	11/8 *H*	1.3750*H*	1.1907849*P*
1.22686932*P*	17/12 *H*	1.4167*H*	1.2268693*P*

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2A

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Basic major diameter, d_{bsc}	$d_{bsc} = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5 = 0.5000$	d_{bsc} is rounded to four decimal places
Pitch, P	$P = \frac{1}{28} = 0.035714285714 = 0.03571429$	P is rounded to eight decimal places
Maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) = basic major diameter (d_{bsc}) – allowance (es)	$d_{max} = d_{bsc} - es$	es is the basic allowance
Basic major diameter (d_{bsc})	$d_{bsc} = 0.5000$	d_{bsc} is rounded to four decimal places
Allowance (es)	$es = 0.300 \times Td_2$ for Class 2A	Td_2 is the pitch diameter tolerance for Class 2A
External pitch diameter tolerance Td_2	$Td_2 = 0.0015D^{\frac{1}{3}} + 0.0015\sqrt{LE} + 0.015P^{\frac{2}{3}}$ $= 0.0015 \times 0.5^{\frac{1}{3}} + 0.0015\sqrt{9 \times 0.03571429} + 0.015(0.03571429)^{\frac{2}{3}}$ $= 0.001191 + 0.000850 + 0.001627 = 0.003668$	$LE = 9P$ (length of engagement) Td_2 is rounded to six decimal places
Allowance (es)	$es = 0.300 \times 0.003668 = 0.0011004 = 0.0011$	es is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external major diameter (d_{max})	$d_{max} = d_{base} - es = 0.5000 - 0.0011 = 0.4989$	d_{max} is rounded to four decimal places
Minimum external major diameter (d_{min}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – major diameter tolerance (Td)	$d_{min} = d_{max} - Td$	Td is the major diameter tolerance
Major diameter tolerance (Td)	$Td = 0.060\sqrt[3]{P^2} = 0.060 \times \sqrt[3]{0.03571429^2}$ $= 0.060 \times \sqrt[3]{0.001276} = 0.060 \times 0.108463$ $= 0.00650778 = 0.0065$	Td is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2A**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Minimum external major diameter (d_{min})	$d_{min} = d_{max} - Td = 0.4989 - 0.006508$ $= 0.492392 = 0.4924$	d_{min} is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external pitch diameter (d_{2max}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – twice the external thread addendum (h_{as})	$d_{2max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_{as}$	h_{as} = external thread addendum
External thread addendum	$h_{as} = \frac{0.64951905P}{2}$ $2h_{as} = 0.64951905P$ $2h_{as} = 0.64951905 \times 0.03571429 = 0.02319711$ $= 0.023197$	$2h_{as}$ is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external pitch diameter ($d_{2\,max}$)	$d_{2max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_{as} = 0.4989 - 0.23197$ $= 0.475703 = 0.4757$	$d_{2\,max}$ is rounded to four decimal places
Minimum external pitch diameter (d_{2min}) = maximum external pitch diameter (d_{2max}) – external pitch diameter tolerance (Td_2)	$d_{2min} = d_{2max} - Td_2$	Td_2 = external pitch diameter tolerance (see previous Td_2 calculation in this table)
Minimum external pitch diameter ($d_{2\,min}$)	$d_{2min} = d_{2max} - Td_2 = 0.4757 - 0.003668$ $= 0.472032 = 0.4720$	$d_{2\,min}$ is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external UNR minor diameter (d_{3max}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – double height of external UNR thread $2h_s$	$d_{3max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_s$	h_s = external UNR thread height,
External UNR thread height ($2h_s$)	$2h_s = 1.19078493P = 1.19078493 \times 0.03571429$ $= 0.042528$	$2h_s$ rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external UNR minor diameter (d_{3max})	$d_{3max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_s = 0.4989 - 0.042528$ $= 0.456372 = 0.4564$	$d_{3\,max}$ is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2A**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Maximum external UN minor diameter ($d_{1\max}$) = maximum external major diameter ($d_{\max}$) – double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$d_{1max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_s$	For UN threads, $2h_s = 2h_n$
Double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$2h_s = 1.08253175P$ $= 1.08253175 \times 0.03571429 = 0.03866185$ $= 0.038662$	$2h_s$ is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external UN minor diameter (d_{1max})	$d_{1max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_s$ $= 0.4989 - 0.038662 = 0.460238 = 0.4602$	d_{1max} is rounded to four decimal places

Table 4. Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2B

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Basic major diameter, d_{bsc}	$d_{bsc} = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5 = 0.5000$	d_{bsc} is rounded to four decimal places
Pitch, P	$P = \frac{1}{28} = 0.035714285714 = 0.03571429$	P is rounded to eight decimal places
Minimum internal minor diameter (D_{1min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc}) – double height of external UN thread $2h_n$	$D_{1min} = D_{bsc} - 2h_n$	$2h_n$ is the double height of external UN thread
Double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$2h_n = 1.08253175P = 1.08253175 \times 0.03571429$ $= 0.03866185 = 0.038662$	$2h_n$ is rounded to six decimal places
Minimum internal major diameter (D_{1min})	$D_{1min} = D_{bsc} - 2 \times h_n = 0.5000 - 0.038662$ $= 0.461338 = 0.461$	For class 2B the value is rounded to three decimal places to obtain the final values

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2B**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Maximum internal minor diameter (D_{1max}) = minimum internal minor diameter (D_{1min}) + internal minor diameter tolerance TD_1	$D_{1max} = D_{1min} + TD_1$	$D_{1\min}$ is rounded to six decimal places
Internal minor diameter tolerance TD_1	$TD_1 = 0.25P - 0.40P^2$ $= 0.25 \times 0.03571429 - 0.40 \times 0.03571429^2$ $= 0.008929 - 0.000510 = 0.008419 = 0.003127$	TD_1 is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum internal minor diameter (D_{1max})	$D_{1max} = D_{1min} + TD_1 = 0.461338 + 0.008419$ $= 0.469757 = 0.470$	For the Class 2B thread D_{1max} is rounded to three decimal places to obtain final values. Other sizes and classes are expressed in four decimal places
Minimum internal pitch diameter (D_{2min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc}) – twice the external thread addendum (h_b)	$D_{2min} = D_{bsc} - h_b$	h_b = external thread addendum
External thread addendum (h_b)	$h_b = 0.64951905P = 0.64951905 \times 0.03571429$ $= 0.02319711 = 0.023197$	h_b is rounded to six decimal places
Minimum internal pitch diameter (D_{2min})	$D_{2min} = D_{bsc} - h_b = 0.5000 - 0.023197$ $= 0.476803 = 0.4768$	D_{2min} is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum internal pitch diameter ($D_{2\,max}$) = minimum internal pitch diameter ($D_{2\,min}$) + internal pitch diameter tolerance (TD_2)	$D_{2max} = D_{2min} + TD_2$	TD_2 = external pitch diameter tolerance
External pitch diameter tolerance TD_2	$TD_2 = 1.30 \times (Td_2$ for Class 2A$) = 1.30 \times 0.003668$ $= 0.0047684 = 0.0048$	Constant 1.30 is for this Class 2B example, and will be different for Classes 1B and 3B. Td_2 for Class 2A (see Table 3) is rounded to six decimal places. TD_2 is rounded to four places
Maximum internal pitch diameter (D_{2max})	$D_{2max} = D_{2min} + TD_2 = 0.4768 + 0.0048 = 0.4816$	D_{2max} is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{1}{2}$ -28 UNEF-2B**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Minimum internal major diameter (D_{min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc})	$D_{min} = D_{bsc} = 0.5000$	D_{min} is rounded to four decimal places

Table 5. External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $\frac{19}{64}$ -36 UNS-2A

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Basic major diameter, d_{bsc}	$d_{bsc} = \frac{19}{64} = 0.296875 = 0.2969$	d_{bsc} is rounded to four decimal places
Pitch, P	$P = \frac{1}{36} = 0.0277777777778 = 0.02777778$	P is rounded to eight decimal places
Maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) = basic major diameter (d_{bsc}) – allowance (es)	$d_{max} = d_{bsc} - es$	
Allowance (es)	$es = 0.300 \times Td_2$ for Class 2A	Td_2 is Pitch diameter tolerance for Class 2A
External pitch diameter tolerance, Td_2	$Td_2 = 0.0015D^{\frac{1}{3}} + 0.0015\sqrt{LE} + 0.015P^{\frac{2}{3}}$ $= 0.0015 \times 0.2969^{\frac{1}{3}} + 0.0015\sqrt{9 \times 0.02777778} + 0.015(0.02777778)^{\frac{2}{3}}$ $= 0.001000679 + 0.00075 + 0.001375803 = 0.003126482$ $= 0.003127$	$LE = 9P$ (length of engagement) Td_2 is rounded to six decimal places
Allowance (es)	$es = 0.300 \times 0.003127 = 0.0009381 = 0.0009$	es is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external major diameter (d_{max})	$d_{max} = d_{bsc} - es = 0.2969 - 0.0009 = 0.2960$	d_{max} is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $^{19}/_{64}$ -36 UNS-2A**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Minimum external major diameter (d_{min}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – major diameter tolerance (Td)	$d_{min} = d_{max} - Td$	Td is the major diameter tolerance
Major diameter tolerance (Td)	$Td = 0.060\sqrt[3]{P^2} = 0.060 \times \sqrt[3]{0.02777778^2}$ $= 0.060 \times \sqrt[3]{0.000772} = 0.060 \times 0.091736$ $= 0.00550416 = 0.0055$	Td is rounded to four decimal places
Minimum external major diameter (d_{min})	$d_{min} = d_{max} - Td = 0.2960 - 0.0055 = 0.2905$	d_{min} is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external pitch diameter (d_{2max}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – twice the external thread addendum	$d_{2max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_{as}$	h_{as} = external thread addendum
External thread addendum	$h_{as} = \frac{0.64951905P}{2}$ $2h_{as} = 0.64951905P$ $2h_{as} = 0.64951905 \times 0.02777778 = 0.0180421972$ $= 0.018042$	h_{as} is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external pitch diameter (d_{2max})	$d_{2max} = d_{max} - 2h_{as} = 0.2960 - 0.018042$ $= 0.277958 = 0.2780$	d_{2max} is rounded to four decimal places
Minimum external pitch diameter (d_{2min}) = maximum external pitch diameter (d_{2max}) – external pitch diameter tolerance (Td_2)	$d_{2min} = d_{2max} - Td_2$	Td_2 = external pitch diameter tolerance (see previous Td_2 calculation in this table)
Minimum external pitch diameter (d_{2min})	$d_{2min} = d_{2max} - Td_2 = 0.2780 - 0.003127$ $= 0.274873 = 0.2749$	d_{2min} is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **External Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $^{19}/_{64}$ -36 UNS-2A**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Maximum external UNR minor diameter (d_{3max}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – double height of external UNR thread $2h_s$	$d_{3max} = d_{max} - 2h_s$	h_s = external UNR thread height,
External UNR thread height	$2h_s = 1.19078493P = 1.19078493 \times 0.02777778 = 0.033077362 = 0.033077$	$2h_s$ is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external UNR minor diameter (d_{3max})	$d_{3max} = d_{max} - 2h_s = 0.2960 - 0.033077 = 0.262923 = 0.2629$	d_{3max} is rounded to four decimal places
Maximum external UN minor diameter (d_{1max}) = maximum external major diameter (d_{max}) – double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$d_{1max} = d_{max} - 2 \times h_s$	For UN threads, $2h_s = 2h_n$
Double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$2h_s = 1.08253175P = 1.08253175 \times 0.02777778 = 0.030070329 = 0.030070$	For UN threads, $2h_s = 2h_n$ $2h_s$ is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum external UN minor diameter (d_{1max})	$d_{1max} = d_{max} - 2h_s = 0.2960 - 0.030070 = 0.265930 = 0.2659$	Maximum external UN minor diameter is rounded to four decimal places

Table 6. Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $^{19}/_{64}$ -28 UNS-2B

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Minimum internal minor diameter (D_{1min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc}) – double height of external UN thread $2h_n$	$D_{1min} = D_{bsc} - 2h_n$	$2h_n$ is the double height of external UN threads
Basic major diameter (D_{bsc})	$D_{bsc} = \frac{19}{64} = 0.296875 = 0.2969$	This is the final value of basic major diameter (given) and rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. *(Continued)* **Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $^{19}/_{64}$ -28 UNS-2B**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Double height of external UN thread $2h_s$	$2h_n = 1.08253175P = 1.08253175 \times 0.02777778 = 0.030070329 = 0.030070$	P is rounded to eight decimal places
Minimum internal major diameter (D_{1min})	$D_{1min} = D_{bsc} - 2h_n = 0.2969 - 0.030070 = 0.266830 = 0.267$	For class 2B the value is rounded to three decimal places to obtain the final value; other sizes and classes are expressed in a four place decimal.
Maximum internal minor diameter (D_{1max}) = minimum internal minor diameter (D_{1min}) + internal minor diameter tolerance TD_1	$D_{1max} = D_{1min} + TD_1$	D_{1min} is rounded to six decimal places
Internal minor diameter tolerance TD_1	$TD_1 = 0.25P - 0.40P^2 = 0.25 \times 0.02777778 - 0.40 \times 0.02777778^2 = 0.006944 - 0.000309 = 0.006635 = 0.0066$	TD_1 is rounded to four decimal places.
Maximum internal minor diameter (D_{1max})	$D_{1max} = D_{1min} + TD_1 = 0.266830 + 0.006635 = 0.273465 = 0.273$	For Class 2B thread the value is rounded to three decimal places to obtain the final values. Other sizes and classes are expressed to four decimal places
Minimum internal pitch diameter (D_{2min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc}) – twice the external thread addendum (h_b)	$D_{2min} = D_{1max} - h_b$	h_b = external thread addendum
External thread addendum	$h_b = 0.64951905P = 0.64951905 \times 0.02777778 = 0.018042197 = 0.018042$	h_b is rounded to six decimal places
Minimum internal pitch diameter (D_{2min})	$D_{2min} = D_{bsc} - h_b = 0.2969 - 0.018042 = 0.278858 = 0.2789$	$D_{2\,min}$ is rounded to four decimal places

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. *(Continued)* **Internal Inch Screw Thread Calculations for $^{19}/_{64}$-28 UNS-2B**

Characteristic Description	Calculation	Notes
Maximum internal pitch diameter (D_{2max}) = minimum internal pitch diameter (D_{2min}) + internal pitch diameter tolerance (TD_2)	$D_{2max} = D_{2min} + TD_2$	TD_2 = external pitch diameter tolerance
External pitch diameter tolerance TD_2	$TD_2 = 1.30 \times (Td_2 \text{ for Class } 2A)$ $= 1.30 \times 0.003127 = 0.0040651 = 0.0041$	The constant 1.30 is for this Class 2B example, and will be different for Classes 1B and 3B. Td_2 for Class 2A (see calculation, Table 5) is rounded to six decimal places
Maximum internal pitch diameter (D_{2max})	$D_{2max} = D_{2min} + TD_2 = 0.2789 + 0.0041 = 0.2830$	D_{2max} is rounded to four decimal places
Minimum internal major diameter (D_{min}) = basic major diameter (D_{bsc})	$D_{min} = D_{bsc} = 0.2969$	D_{min} is rounded to four decimal places

Table 7. Number of Decimal Places for Intermediate and Final Calculations of Thread Characteristics

Symbol	Dimensions	Final		Symbol	Dimensions	Intermediate		Final	
		Inch	Metric			Inch	Metric	Inch	Metric
d	Major diameter, external thread	4	3	LE	Length of thread engagement	6	N/A	…	…
D	Major diameter, internal thread	4	3	P	Pitch	…	…	8	Note [a]
d_2	Pitch diameter, external thread	4	3	Td	Major diameter tolerance	…	…	4	3
D_2	Pitch diameter, internal thread	4	3	Td_2	Pitch diameter tolerance, external thread	…	…	6	3
d_1	Minor diameter, external thread	4	3	TD_2	Pitch diameter tolerance, internal thread	…	…	4	3
d_3	Minor diameter, rounded root external thread	4	3	TD_1	Minor diameter tolerance, internal thread	…	…	4	3
D_1	Minor diameter, internal threads for sizes 0.138 and larger for Classes 1B and 2B only	3	N/A	$h_b = 2h_{as}$	Twice the external thread addendum	6	N/A	…	…
D_1	Minor diameter, internal threads for sizes smaller than 0.138 for Classes 1B and 2B, and all sizes for Class 3B	4	N/A	$2h_s$	Double height of UNR external thread	6	N/A	…	…
D_1	Minor diameter, internal metric thread	N/A	3	$2h_n$	Double height of internal thread and UN external thread	6	N/A	…	…
es	Allowance at major pitch and minor diameters of external thread		3		Twice the external thread addendum	6	N/A	…	…

[a] Metric pitches are not calculated. They are stated in the screw thread designation and are to be used out to the number of decimal places as stated.
Note: Constants based on a function of P are rounded to an 8-place decimal for inch threads and a 7-place decimal for metric threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

METRIC SCREW THREADS

American National Standard Metric Screw Threads M Profile

American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015) describes a system of metric threads for general fastening purposes in mechanisms and structures. The standard is in basic agreement with ISO screw standards and resolutions, as of the date of publication, and features detailed information for diameter-pitch combinations selected as to preferred standard sizes. This Standard contains general metric standards for a 60-degree symmetrical screw thread with a basic ISO 68 designated profile.

Application Comparison with Inch Threads.—The metric M profile threads of tolerance class 6H/6g (see page 2019) are intended for metric applications where the inch class 2A/2B have been used. At the minimum material limits, the 6H/6g results in a looser fit than the 2A/2B. Tabular data are also provided for a tighter tolerance fit external thread of class 4g6g which is approximately equivalent to the inch class 3A but with an allowance applied. It may be noted that a 4H5H/4h6h fit is approximately equivalent to class 3A/3B fit in the inch system.

Interchangeability with Other System Threads.—Threads produced to this Standard ANSI/ASME B1.13M are fully interchangeable with threads conforming to other National Standards that are based on ISO 68 basic profile and ISO 965/1 tolerance practices.

Threads produced to this Standard should be mechanically interchangeable with those produced to ANSI/ASME B1.18M-1982 (Withdrawn) "Metric Screw Threads for Commercial Mechanical Fasteners—Boundary Profile Defined," of the same size and tolerance class. However, there is a possibility that some parts may be accepted by conventional gages used for threads made to ANSI/ASME B1.13M and rejected by the Double-NOT-GO gages required for threads made to ANSI/ASME B1.18M.

Threads produced in accordance with M profile and MJ profile ANSI/ASME B1.21M-1997 (R2018) design data will assemble with each other. However, external MJ threads will encounter interference on the root radii with internal M thread crests when both threads are at maximum material condition.

Definitions.—The following definitions apply to metric screw threads—M profile.

Allowance: The minimum nominal clearance between a prescribed dimension and its basic dimension. Allowance is not an ISO metric screw thread term but it is numerically equal to the absolute value of the ISO term *fundamental deviation*.

Basic Thread Profile: The cyclical outline in an axial plane of the permanently established boundary between the provinces of the external and internal threads. All deviations are with respect to this boundary. (See Fig. 1 and Fig. 5.)

Bolt Thread (External Thread): The term used in ISO metric thread standards to describe all external threads. All symbols associated with external threads are designated with lower case letters. This Standard uses the term external threads in accordance with United States practice.

Clearance: The difference between the size of the internal thread and the size of the external thread when the latter is smaller.

Crest Diameter: The major diameter of an external thread and the minor diameter of an internal thread.

Design Profiles: The maximum material profiles permitted for external and internal threads for a specified tolerance class. (See Fig. 2 and Fig. 3.)

Deviation: An ISO term for the algebraic difference between a given size (actual, measured, maximum, minimum, etc.) and the corresponding basic size. The term deviation does not necessarily indicate an error.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fit: The relationship existing between two corresponding external and internal threads with respect to the amount of clearance or interference which is present when they are assembled.

Fundamental Deviation: For Standard threads, the deviation (upper or lower) closer to the basic size. It is the upper deviation, *es*, for an external thread and the lower deviation, *EI*, for an internal thread. (See Fig. 5.)

Limiting Profiles: The limiting M profile for internal threads is shown in Fig. 6. The limiting M profile for external threads is shown in Fig. 7.

Lower Deviation: The algebraic difference between the minimum limit of size and the corresponding basic size.

Nut Thread (Internal Thread): A term used in ISO metric thread standards to describe all internal threads. All symbols associated with internal threads are designated with upper case letters. This Standard uses the term *internal thread* in accordance with United States practice.

Tolerance: The total amount of variation permitted for the size of a dimension. It is the difference between the maximum limit of size and the minimum limit of size (i.e., the algebraic difference between the upper deviation and the lower deviation). The tolerance is an absolute value without sign. Tolerance for threads is applied to the design size in the direction of the minimum material. On external threads the tolerance is applied negatively. On internal threads the tolerance is applied positively.

Tolerance Class: The combination of a tolerance position with a tolerance grade. It specifies the allowance (fundamental deviation) and tolerance for the pitch and major diameters of external threads and pitch and minor diameters of internal threads.

Tolerance Grade: A numerical symbol that designates the tolerances of crest diameters and pitch diameters applied to the design profiles.

Tolerance Position: A letter symbol that designates the position of the tolerance zone in relation to the basic size. This position provides the allowance (fundamental deviation).

Upper Deviation: The algebraic difference between the maximum limit of size and the corresponding basic size.

Basic M Profile.—The basic M thread profile also known as ISO 68 basic profile for metric screw threads is shown in Fig. 1 with associated dimensions listed in Table 3.

Design M Profile for Internal Thread.—The design M profile for the internal thread at maximum material condition is the basic ISO 68 profile. It is shown in Fig. 2 with associated thread data listed in Table 3.

Design M Profile for External Thread.—The design M profile for the external thread at the no allowance maximum material condition is the basic ISO 68 profile except where a rounded root is required. For the standard 0.125*P* minimum radius, the ISO 68 profile is modified at the root with a 0.17783*H* truncation blending into two arcs with radii of 0.125*P* tangent to the thread flanks as shown in Fig. 3 with associated thread data in Table 3.

M Crest and Root Form.—The form of crest at the major diameter of the external thread is flat, permitting corner rounding. The external thread is truncated 0.125*H* from a sharp crest. The form of the crest at the minor diameter of the internal thread is flat. It is truncated 0.25*H* from a sharp crest.

The crest and root tolerance zones at the major and minor diameters will permit rounded crest and root forms in both external and internal threads.

The root profile of the external thread must lie within the "section lined" tolerance zone shown in Fig. 4. For the rounded root thread, the root profile must lie within the "section lined" rounded root tolerance zone shown in Fig. 4. The profile must be a continuous, smoothly blended non-reversing curve, no part of which has a radius of less than 0.125*P*, and which is tangential to the thread flank. The profile may comprise tangent flank arcs that are joined by a tangential flat at the root.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The root profile of the internal thread must not be smaller than the basic profile. The maximum major diameter must not be sharp.

General Symbols.—The general symbols used to describe the metric screw thread forms are shown in Table 1.

Table 1. American National Standard Symbols for Metric Threads
ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)

Symbol	Explanation
D	Major Diameter Internal Thread
D_1	Minor Diameter Internal Thread
D_2	Pitch Diameter Internal Thread
d	Major Diameter External Thread
d_1	Minor Diameter External Thread
d_2	Pitch Diameter External Thread
d_3	Rounded Form Minor Diameter External Thread
P	Pitch
r	External Thread Root Radius
T	Tolerance
T_{D1}, T_{D2}	Tolerances for D_1, D_2
T_d, T_{d2}	Tolerances for d, d_2
ES	Upper Deviation, Internal Thread [Equals the Allowance (Fundamental Deviation) Plus the Tolerance]. See Fig. 5.
EI	Lower Deviation, Internal Thread Allowance (Fundamental Deviation). See Fig. 5.
G, H	Letter Designations for Tolerance Positions for Lower Deviation, Internal Thread
g, h	Letter Designations for Tolerance Positions for Upper Deviation, External Thread
es	Upper Deviation, External Thread Allowance (Fundamental Deviation). See Fig. 5. In the ISO system *es* is always negative for an allowance fit or zero for no allowance.
ei	Lower Deviation, External Thread [Equals the Allowance (Fundamental Deviation) Plus the Tolerance]. See Fig. 5. In the ISO system *ei* is always negative for an allowance fit.
H	Height of Fundamental Triangle
LE	Length of Engagement
LH	Left Hand Thread

Standard M Profile Screw Thread Series.—The standard metric screw thread series for general purpose equipment's threaded components design and mechanical fasteners is a *coarse thread* series. Their diameter/pitch combinations are shown in Table 4. These diameter/pitch combinations are the preferred sizes and should be the first choice as applicable. Additional *fine pitch* diameter/pitch combinations are shown in Table 5.

Table 2. American National Standard General Purpose and Mechanical Fastener Coarse Pitch Metric Thread — M Profile Series *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Nom.Size	Pitch	Nom.Size	Pitch	Nom.Size	Pitch	Nom.Size	Pitch
1.6	0.35	6	1	22	2.5[a]	56	5.5
2	0.4	8	1.25	24	3	64	6
2.5	0.45	10	1.5	27	3[a]	72	6[b]
3	0.5	12	1.75	30	3.5	80	6[b]
3.5	0.6	14	2	36	4	90	6[b]
4	0.7	16	2	42	4.5	100	6[b]
5	0.8	20	2.5	48	5	…	…

[a] For high strength structural steel fasteners only.
[b] Designated as part of 6 mm fine pitch series in ISO 261.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Metric Thread—M Profile Data *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Pitch P	Truncation of Internal Thread Root and External Thread Crest $\frac{H}{8}$ 0.1082532P	Addendum of Internal Thread and Truncation of Internal Thread $\frac{H}{4}$ 0.2165064P	Dedendum of Internal Thread and Addendum External Thread $\frac{3}{8}H$ 0.3247595P	Difference[a] $\frac{H}{2}$ 0.4330127P	Height of Internal Thread and Depth of Thread Engagement $\frac{5}{8}H$ 0.5412659P	Difference[b] 0.711325H 0.6160254P	Twice the External Thread Addendum $\frac{3}{4}H$ 0.649519P	Difference[c] $\frac{11}{12}H$ 0.7938566P	Height of Sharp V-Thread H 0.8660254P	Double Height of Internal Thread $\frac{5}{4}H$ 1.0825318P
0.2	0.02165	0.04330	0.06495	0.08660	0.10825	0.12321	0.12990	0.15877	0.17321	0.21651
0.25	0.02706	0.05413	0.08119	0.10825	0.13532	0.15401	0.16238	0.19846	0.21651	0.27063
0.3	0.03248	0.06495	0.09743	0.12990	0.16238	0.18481	0.19486	0.23816	0.25981	0.32476
0.35	0.03789	0.07578	0.11367	0.15155	0.18944	0.21561	0.22733	0.27785	0.30311	0.37889
0.4	0.04330	0.08660	0.12990	0.17321	0.21651	0.24541	0.25981	0.31754	0.34641	0.43301
0.45	0.04871	0.09743	0.14614	0.19486	0.24357	0.27721	0.29228	0.35724	0.38971	0.48714
0.5	0.05413	0.10825	0.16238	0.21651	0.27063	0.30801	0.32476	0.39693	0.43301	0.54127
0.6	0.06495	0.12990	0.19486	0.25981	0.32476	0.36962	0.38971	0.47631	0.51962	0.64952
0.7	0.07578	0.15155	0.22733	0.30311	0.37889	0.43122	0.45466	0.55570	0.60622	0.75777
0.75	0.08119	0.16238	0.24357	0.32476	0.40595	0.46202	0.48714	0.59539	0.64952	0.81190
0.8	0.08660	0.17321	0.25981	0.34641	0.43301	0.49282	0.51962	0.63509	0.69282	0.86603
1	0.10825	0.21651	0.32476	0.43301	0.54127	0.61603	0.64952	0.79386	0.86603	1.08253
1.25	0.13532	0.27063	0.40595	0.54127	0.67658	0.77003	0.81190	0.99232	1.08253	1.35316
1.5	0.16238	0.32476	0.48714	0.64952	0.81190	0.92404	0.97428	1.19078	1.29904	1.62380
1.75	0.18944	0.37889	0.56833	0.75777	0.94722	1.07804	1.13666	1.38925	1.51554	1.89443
2	0.21651	0.43301	0.64952	0.86603	1.08253	1.23205	1.29904	1.58771	1.73205	2.16506
2.5	0.27063	0.54127	0.81190	1.08253	1.35316	1.54006	1.62380	1.98464	2.16506	2.70633
3	0.32476	0.64652	0.97428	1.29904	1.62380	1.84808	1.94856	2.38157	2.59808	3.24760
3.5	0.37889	0.75777	1.13666	1.51554	1.89443	2.15609	2.27332	2.77850	3.03109	3.78886
4	0.43301	0.86603	1.29904	1.73205	2.16506	2.46410	2.59808	3.17543	3.46410	4.33013
4.5	0.48714	0.97428	1.46142	1.94856	2.43570	2.77211	2.92284	3.57235	3.89711	4.87139
5	0.54127	1.08253	1.62380	2.16506	2.70633	3.08013	3.24760	3.96928	4.33013	5.41266
5.5	0.59539	1.19079	1.78618	2.38157	2.97696	3.38814	3.57236	4.36621	4.76314	5.95392
6	0.64952	1.29904	1.94856	2.59808	3.24760	3.69615	3.89711	4.76314	5.19615	6.49519
8	0.86603	1.73205	2.59808	3.46410	4.33013	4.92820	5.19615	6.35085	6.92820	8.66025

[a] Difference between max theoretical pitch diameter and max minor diameter of external thread and between min theoretical pitch diameter and min minor diameter of internal thread.

[b] Difference between min theoretical pitch diameter and min design minor diameter of external thread for 0.125P root radius.

[c] Difference between max major diameter and max theoretical pitch diameter of internal thread.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Minimum Rounded Root Radius — M Profile Series *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Pitch *P*	Min. Root Radius, 0.125*P*	Pitch *P*	Min. Root Radius, 0.125*P*	Pitch *P*	Min. Root Radius, 0.125*P*	Pitch *P*	Min. Root Radius, 0.125*P*
0.2	0.025	0.6	0.075	1.5	0.188	4	0.500
0.25	0.031	0.7	0.088	1.75	0.219	4.5	0.563
0.3	0.038	0.75	0.094	2	0.250	5	0.625
0.35	0.044	0.8	0.100	2.5	0.313	5.5	0.688
0.4	0.050	1	0.125	3	0.375	6	0.750
0.45	0.056	1.25	0.156	3.5	0.438	8	1.000
0.5	0.063	…	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Table 5. American National Standard Fine Pitch Metric Thread — M Profile Series *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Nom. Size	Pitch			Nom. Size	Pitch		Nom. Size	Pitch		Nom. Size	Pitch
8	1		…	27	…	2	56	…	2	105	2
10	0.75	1.0	1.25	30	1.5	2	60	1.5	…	110	2
12	1	1.5	1.25	33	…	2	64	…	2	120	2
14	…		1.5	35	1.5	…	65	1.5	…	130	2
15	1		…	36	…	2	70	1.5	…	140	2
16	…		1.5	39	…	2	72	…	2	150	2
17	1		…	40	1.5	…	75	1.5	…	160	3
18	…		1.5	42	…	2	80	1.5	2	170	3
20	1		1.5	45	1.5	…	85	…	2	180	3
22	…		1.5	48	…	2	90	…	2	190	3
24	…		2	50	1.5	…	95	…	2	200	3
25	1.5		…	55	1.5	…	100	…	2		

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Limits and Fits for Metric Screw Threads—M Profile.—The International (ISO) metric tolerance system is based on a system of limits and fits. The limits of the tolerances on the mating parts together with their allowances (fundamental deviations) determine the fit of the assembly. For simplicity the system is described for cylindrical parts (see *ISO Metric Limits and Fits* starting on page 674) but in this Standard it is applied to screw threads. Holes are equivalent to internal threads and shafts to external threads.

Basic Size: This is the zero line or surface at assembly where the interface of the two mating parts have a common reference.*

Upper Deviation: This is the algebraic difference between the maximum limit of size and the basic size. It is designated by the French term "écart supérieur" (*ES* for internal and *es* for external threads).

Lower Deviation: This is the algebraic difference between the minimum limit of size and the basic size. It is designated by the French term "écart inférieur" (*EI* for internal and *ei* for external threads).

Fundamental Deviations (Allowances): These are the deviations which are closest to the basic size. In the accompanying figure they would be *EI* and *es*.

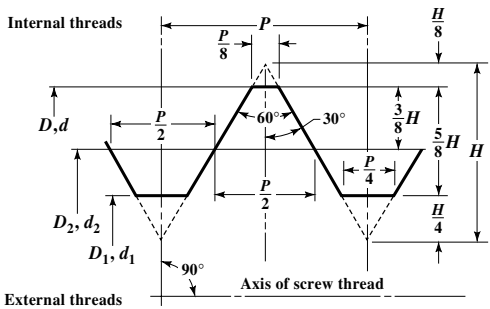
* "Basic," when used to identify a particular dimension in this Standard, such as basic major diameter, refers to the h/H tolerance position (zero fundamental deviation) value.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerance: The tolerance is defined by a series of numerical grades. Each grade provides numerical values for the various nominal sizes corresponding to the standard tolerance for that grade.

In the schematic diagram the tolerance for the external thread is shown as negative. Thus the tolerance plus the fit define the lower deviation (*ei*). The tolerance for the mating internal thread is shown as positive. Thus the tolerance plus the fit defines the upper deviation (*ES*).

Fits: Fits are determined by the fundamental deviations assigned to the mating parts and may be positive or negative. The selected fits can be clearance, transition, or interference. To illustrate the fits schematically, a zero line is drawn to represent the basic size as shown in Fig. 5. By convention, the external thread lies below the zero line and the internal thread lies above it (except for interference fits). This makes the fundamental deviation negative for the external thread and equal to its upper deviation (*es*). The fundamental deviation is positive for the internal thread and equal to its lower deviation (*EI*).



$$H = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times P = 0.866025P$$

$$0.125H = 0.108253P \quad 0.250H = 0.216506P \quad 0.375H = 0.324760P \quad 0.625H = 0.541266P$$

Fig. 1. Basic M Thread Profile (ISO 68 Basic Profile)

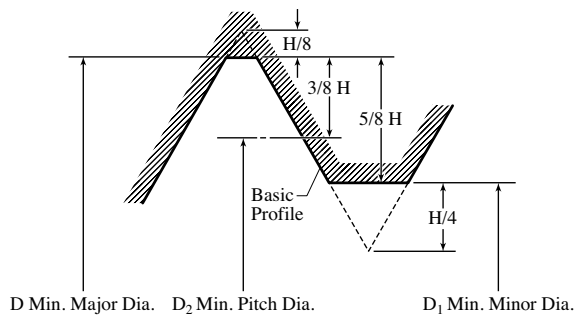


Fig. 2. Internal Thread Design M Profile with No Allowance (Fundamental Deviation) (Maximum Material Condition). For Dimensions see Table 3

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

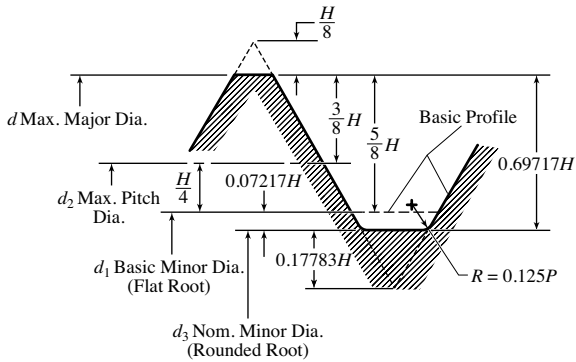


Fig. 3. External Thread Design M Profile with No Allowance (Fundamental Deviation) (Flanks at Maximum Material Condition). For Dimensions see Table 3

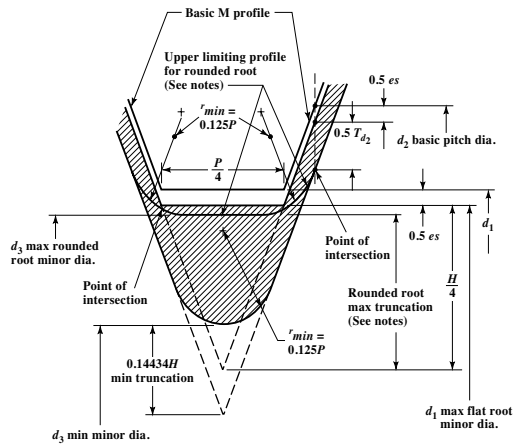


Fig. 4. M Profile, External Thread Root, Upper and Lower Limiting Profiles for $r_{min} = 0.125\,P$ and for Flat Root (Shown for Tolerance Position g)

Notes:

1) "Section lined" portions identify tolerance zone and unshaded portions identify allowance (fundamental deviation).
2) The upper limiting profile for rounded root is not a design profile; rather it indicates the limiting acceptable condition for the rounded root which will pass a GO thread gage.
3) Max truncation $= \frac{H}{4} - r_{min}\left(1 - \cos\left[60° - \text{arc}\,\cos\left(1 - \frac{T_{d2}}{4r_{min}}\right)\right]\right)$

where H = Height of fundamental triangle
r_{min} = Minimum external thread root radius
T_{d2} = Tolerance on pitch diameter of external threasd

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

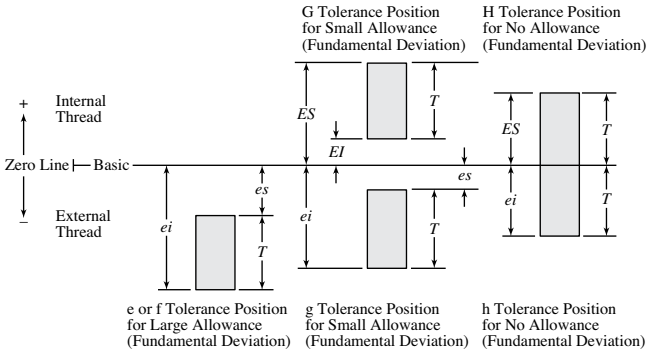


Fig. 5. Metric Tolerance System for Screw Threads

Tolerance Grade: This is indicated by a number. The system provides for a series of tolerance grades for each of the four screw thread parameters: minor diameter, internal thread, D_1; major diameter, external thread, d; pitch diameter, internal thread, D_2; and pitch diameter, external thread, d_2. The tolerance grades for this Standard ANSI/ASME B1.13M were selected from those given in ISO 965/1.

Dimension	Tolerance Grades	Table
D_1	4,5,6,7,8	Table 8
d	4,6,8	Table 9
D_2	4,5,6,7,8	Table 10
d_2	3,4,5,6,7,8,9	Table 11

Note: The underlined tolerance grades are used with normal length of thread engagement.

Tolerance Position: This position is the allowance (fundamental deviation) and is indicated by a letter. A capital letter is used for internal threads and a lower case letter for external threads. The system provides a series of tolerance positions for internal and external threads. The underlined letters are used in this Standard:

Internal threads	G,H	Table 6
External threads	e,f,g,h	Table 6

Designations of Tolerance Grade, Tolerance Position, and Tolerance Class: The tolerance grade is given first followed by the tolerance position, thus: 4g or 5H. To designate the tolerance class the grade and position of the pitch diameter is shown first followed by that for the major diameter in the case of the external thread or that for the minor diameter in the case of the internal thread, thus 4g6g for an external thread and 5H6H for an internal thread. If the two grades and positions are identical, it is not necessary to repeat the symbols, thus 4g, alone, stands for 4g4g and 5H, alone, stands for 5H5H.

Lead and Flank Angle Tolerances: For acceptance of lead and flank angles of product screw threads, see Section 10 of ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015).

Short and Long Lengths of Thread Engagement when Gaged with Normal Length Contacts: For short lengths of thread engagement, LE, reduce the pitch diameter tolerance of the external thread by one tolerance grade number. For long lengths of thread engagement, LE, increase the allowance (fundamental deviation) at the pitch diameter of the external thread. Examples of tolerance classes required for normal, short, and long gage length contacts are given in the following table.

For lengths of thread engagement classified as normal, short, and long, see Table 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Allowance (Fundamental Deviation) for Internal and External Metric Threads *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Pitch *P*	Allowance (Fundamental Deviation)[a]					
	Internal Thread D_2, D_1		External Thread d, d_2			
	G	H[b]	e	f	g[c]	h
	EI	*EI*	*es*	*es*	*es*	*es*
0.2	+0.017	0	…	…	–0.017	0
0.25	+0.018	0	…	…	–0.018	0
0.3	+0.018	0	…	…	–0.018	0
0.35	+0.019	0	…	–0.034	–0.019	0
0.4	+0.019	0	…	–0.034	–0.019	0
0.45	+0.020	0	…	–0.035	–0.020	0
0.5	+0.020	0	–0.050	–0.036	–0.020	0
0.6	+0.021	0	–0.053	–0.036	–0.021	0
0.7	+0.022	0	–0.056	–0.038	–0.022	0
0.75	+0.022	0	–0.056	–0.038	–0.022	0
0.8	+0.024	0	–0.060	–0.038	–0.024	0
1	+0.026	0	–0.060	–0.040	–0.026	0
1.25	+0.028	0	–0.063	–0.042	–0.028	0
1.5	+0.032	0	–0.067	–0.045	–0.032	0
1.75	+0.034	0	–0.071	–0.048	–0.034	0
2	+0.038	0	–0.071	–0.052	–0.038	0
2.5	+0.042	0	–0.080	–0.058	–0.042	0
3	+0.048	0	–0.085	–0.063	–0.048	0
3.5	+0.053	0	–0.090	–0.070	–0.053	0
4	+0.060	0	–0.095	–0.075	–0.060	0
4.5	+0.063	0	–0.100	–0.080	–0.063	0
5	+0.071	0	–0.106	–0.085	–0.071	0
5.5	+0.075	0	–0.112	–0.090	–0.075	0
6	+0.080	0	–0.118	–0.095	–0.080	0
8	+0.100	0	–0.140	–0.118	–0.100	0

All dimensions are in millimeters.

[a] Allowance is the absolute value of fundamental deviation.
[b] Tabulated in this standard for M internal threads.
[c] Tabulated in this standard for M external threads.

Normal LE	Short LE	Long LE
6g	5g6g	6e6g
4g6g	3g6g	4e6g
6h[a]	5h6h	6g6h
4h6h[a]	3h6h	4g6h
6H	5H	6G
4H6H	3H6H	4G6G

[a] Applies to maximum material functional size (GO thread gage) for plated 6g and 4g6g class threads, respectively.

Material Limits for Coated Threads.—Unless otherwise specified, size limits for standard external tolerance classes 6g and 4g6g apply prior to coating. The external thread allowance may thus be used to accommodate the coating thickness on coated parts, provided that the maximum coating thickness is no more than $\frac{1}{4}$ of the allowance. Thus, a 6*g* thread after coating is subject to acceptance using a basic size 6*h* GO thread gage and a 4*g*6*g* thread, a 4*h*6*h* or 6*h* GO thread gage. Minimum material, LO, or NOT-GO gages would be 6g and 4*g*6*g*, respectively. Where the external thread has no allowance or the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

allowance must be maintained after coating, and for standard internal threads, sufficient allowance must be provided prior to coating to ensure that finished product threads do not exceed the maximum material limits specified. For thread classes with tolerance position *H* or *h*, coating allowances in accordance with Table 6 for position *G* or *g*, respectively, should be applied wherever possible.

Table 7. American National Standard Length of Metric Thread Engagement
ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)

Basic Major Diameter d_{bsc}		Pitch	Length of Thread Engagement			
			Short LE	Normal LE		Long LE
Over	Up to and incl.	*P*	Up to and incl.	Over	Up to and incl.	Over
1.5	2.8	0.2	0.5	0.5	1.5	1.5
		0.25	0.6	0.6	1.9	1.9
		0.35	0.8	0.8	2.6	2.6
		0.4	1	1	3	3
		0.45	1.3	1.3	3.8	3.8
2.8	5.6	0.35	1	1	3	3
		0.5	1.5	1.5	4.5	4.5
		0.6	1.7	1.7	5	5
		0.7	2	2	6	6
		0.75	2.2	2.2	6.7	6.7
		0.8	2.5	2.5	7.5	7.5
5.6	11.2	0.75	2.4	2.4	7.1	7.1
		1	3	3	9	9
		1.25	4	4	12	12
		1.5	5	5	15	15
11.2	22.4	1	3.8	3.8	11	11
		1.25	4.5	4.5	13	13
		1.5	5.6	5.6	16	16
		1.75	6	6	18	18
		2	8	8	24	24
		2.5	10	10	30	30
22.4	45	1	4	4	12	12
		1.5	6.3	6.3	19	19
		2	8.5	8.5	25	25
		3	12	12	36	36
		3.5	15	15	45	45
		4	18	18	53	53
		4.5	21	21	63	63
45	90	1.5	7.5	7.5	22	22
		2	9.5	9.5	28	28
		3	15	15	45	45
		4	19	19	56	56
		5	24	24	71	71
		5.5	28	28	85	85
		6	32	32	95	95
90	180	2	12	12	36	36
		3	18	18	53	53
		4	24	24	71	71
		6	36	36	106	106
		8	45	45	132	132
180	355	3	20	20	60	60
		4	26	26	80	80
		6	40	40	118	118
		8	50	50	150	150

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dimensional Effect of Coating.—On a cylindrical surface, the effect of coating is to change the diameter by twice the coating thickness. On a 60-degree thread, however, since the coating thickness is measured perpendicular to the thread surface while the pitch diameter is measured perpendicular to the thread axis, the effect of a uniformly coated flank on the pitch diameter is to change it by four times the thickness of the coating on the flank.

External Thread with No Allowance for Coating: To determine gaging limits before coating for a uniformly coated thread, decrease: 1) maximum pitch diameter by four times maximum coating thickness; 2) minimum pitch diameter by four times minimum coating thickness; 3) maximum major diameter by two times maximum coating thickness; and 4) minimum major diameter by two times minimum coating thickness.

External Thread with Only Nominal or Minimum Thickness Coating: If no coating thickness tolerance is given, it is recommended that a tolerance of plus 50 percent of the nominal or minimum thickness be assumed.

Then, to determine before coating gaging limits for a uniformly coated thread, decrease: 1) maximum pitch diameter by six times coating thickness; 2) minimum pitch diameter by four times coating thickness; 3) maximum major diameter by three times coating thickness; and 4) minimum major diameter by two times coating thickness.

Adjusted Size Limits: It should be noted that the before coating material limit tolerances are less than the tolerance after coating. This is because the coating tolerance consumes some of the product tolerance. In cases there may be insufficient pitch diameter tolerance available in the before coating condition so that additional adjustments and controls will be necessary.

Strength: On small threads (5 mm and smaller) there is a possibility that coating thickness adjustments will cause base material minimum material conditions which may significantly affect strength of externally threaded parts. Limitations on coating thickness or part redesign may then be necessary.

Internal Threads: Standard internal threads provide no allowance for coating thickness.

To determine before coating, gaging limits for a uniformly coated thread, increase: 1) minimum pitch diameter by four times maximum coating thickness, if specified, or by six times minimum or nominal coating thickness when a tolerance is not specified; 2) maximum pitch diameter by four times minimum or nominal coating thickness; 3) minimum minor diameter by two times maximum coating thickness, if specified, or by three times minimum or nominal coating thickness; and 4) maximum minor diameter by two times minimum or nominal coating thickness.

Other Considerations: It is essential to review all possibilities adequately and consider limitations in the threading and coating production processes before finally deciding on the coating process and the allowance required to accommodate the coating. A no-allowance thread after coating must not transgress the basic profile and is, therefore, subject to acceptance using a basic (tolerance position H/h) size GO thread gage.

Formulas for M Profile Screw Thread Limiting Dimensions.—The limiting dimensions for M profile screw threads are calculated from the following formulas.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Internal Threads:

Min major dia. = basic major dia. + *EI* (Table 6)

Min pitch dia. = basic major dia. − 0.6495191*P* (Table 3) + *EI* for D_2 (Table 6)

Max pitch dia. = min pitch dia. + TD_2 (Table 10)

Max major dia. = max pitch dia. + 0.7938566*P* (Table 3)

Min minor dia. = min major dia. − 1.0825318*P* (Table 3)

Max minor dia. = min minor dia. + TD_1 (Table 8)

External Threads:

Max major dia. = basic major dia. − *es* (Table 6) (Note that *es* is an absolute value.)

Min major dia. = max major dia. − *Td* (Table 9)

Max pitch dia. = basic major dia. − 0.6495191*P* (Table 3) − *es* for d_2 (Table 6)

Min pitch dia. = max pitch dia. − Td_2 (Table 11)

Max flat form minor dia. = max pitch dia. − 0.433013*P* (Table 3)

Max rounded root minor dia. = max pitch dia. − 2 × max trunc. (See Fig. 4)

Min rounded root minor dia. = min pitch dia. − 0.616025*P* (Table 3)

Min root radius = 0.125*P*

Table 8. ANSI Standard Minor Diameter Tolerances of Internal Metric Threads TD_1 *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Pitch *P*	Tolerance Grade				
	4	5	6[a]	7	8
0.2	0.038	…	…	…	…
0.25	0.045	0.056	…	…	…
0.3	0.053	0.067	0.085	…	…
0.35	0.063	0.080	0.100	…	…
0.4	0.071	0.090	0.112	…	…
0.45	0.080	0.100	0.125	…	…
0.5	0.090	0.112	0.140	0.180	…
0.6	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	…
0.7	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	…
0.75	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	…
0.8	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315
1	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375
1.25	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425
1.5	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475
1.75	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530
2	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475	0.600
2.5	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560	0.710
3	0.315	0.400	0.500	0.630	0.800
3.5	0.355	0.450	0.560	0.710	0.900
4	0.375	0.475	0.600	0.750	0.950
4.5	0.425	0.530	0.670	0.850	1.060
5	0.450	0.560	0.710	0.900	1.120
5.5	0.475	0.600	0.750	0.950	1.180
6	0.500	0.630	0.800	1.000	1.250
8	0.630	0.800	1.000	1.250	1.600

[a] Tabulated in this standard for M internal threads.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. ANSI Standard Major Diameter Tolerances of External Metric Threads, *Td* *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Pitch	Tolerance Grade			Pitch	Tolerance Grade		
P	4	6[a]	8	*P*	4	6[a]	8
0.2	0.036	0.056	…	1.5	0.150	0.236	0.375
0.25	0.042	0.067	…	1.75	0.170	0.265	0.425
0.3	0.048	0.075	…	2	0.180	0.280	0.450
0.35	0.053	0.085	…	2.5	0.212	0.335	0.530
0.4	0.060	0.095	…	3	0.236	0.375	0.600
0.45	0.063	0.100	…	3.5	0.265	0.425	0.670
0.5	0.067	0.106	…	4	0.300	0.475	0.750
0.6	0.080	0.125	…	4.5	0.315	0.500	0.800
0.7	0.090	0.140	…	5	0.335	0.530	0.850
0.75	0.090	0.140	…	5.5	0.355	0.560	0.900
0.8	0.095	0.150	0.236	6	0.375	0.600	0.950
1	0.112	0.180	0.280	8	0.450	0.710	1.180
1.25	0.132	0.212	0.335	…	…	…	…

[a] Tabulated in this standard for M internal threads.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Table 10. ANSI Standard Pitch-Diameter Tolerances of Internal Metric Thread, TD_2 *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Major Diameter, *D*		Pitch	Tolerance Grade				
Over	Up to and incl.	*P*	4	5	6[a]	7	8
1.5	2.8	0.2	0.042	…	…	…	…
		0.25	0.048	0.060	…	…	…
		0.35	0.053	0.067	0.085	…	…
		0.4	0.056	0.071	0.090	…	…
		0.45	0.060	0.075	0.095	…	…
2.8	5.6	0.35	0.056	0.071	0.090	…	…
		0.5	0.063	0.080	0.100	0.125	…
		0.6	0.071	0.090	0.112	0.140	…
		0.7	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	…
		0.75	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	…
		0.8	0.080	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200
5.6	11.2	0.75	0.085	0.106	0.132	0.170	…
		1	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236
		1.25	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250
		1.5	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280
11.2	22.4	1	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250
		1.25	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280
		1.5	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300
		1.75	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315
		2	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335
		2.5	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355
22.4	45	1	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	…
		1.5	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315
		2	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355
		3	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425
		3.5	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450
		4	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475
		4.5	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500
45	90	1.5	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335
		2	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375
		3	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450
		4	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500
		5	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530
		5.5	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560
		6	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475	0.600

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **ANSI Standard Pitch-Diameter Tolerances of Internal Metric Thread, TD_2** *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Major Diameter, D		Pitch P	Tolerance Grade				
Over	Up to and incl.		4	5	6[a]	7	8
90	180	2	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400
		3	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475
		4	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530
		6	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500	0.630
		8	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560	0.710
180	355	3	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530
		4	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475	0.600
		6	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530	0.670
		8	0.300	0.375	0.475	0.600	0.750

[a] Tabulated in this standard for M threads.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Table 11. ANSI Standard Pitch-Diameter Tolerances of External Metric Threads, Td_2 *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Major Diameter, d		Pitch P	Tolerance Grade						
Over	Up to and incl.		3	4[a]	5	6[a]	7	8	9
1.5	2.8	0.2	0.025	0.032	0.040	0.050	…	…	…
		0.25	0.028	0.036	0.045	0.056	…	…	…
		0.35	0.032	0.040	0.050	0.063	0.080	…	…
		0.4	0.034	0.042	0.053	0.067	0.085	…	…
		0.45	0.036	0.045	0.056	0.071	0.090	…	…
2.8	5.6	0.35	0.034	0.042	0.053	0.067	0.085	…	…
		0.5	0.038	0.048	0.060	0.075	0.095	…	…
		0.6	0.042	0.053	0.067	0.085	0.106	…	…
		0.7	0.045	0.056	0.071	0.090	0.112	…	…
		0.75	0.045	0.056	0.071	0.090	0.112	…	…
		0.8	0.048	0.060	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190
5.6	11.2	0.75	0.050	0.063	0.080	0.100	0.125	…	…
		1	0.056	0.071	0.090	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224
		1.25	0.060	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236
		1.5	0.067	0.085	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265
11.2	22.4	1	0.060	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236
		1.25	0.067	0.085	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265
		1.5	0.071	0.090	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280
		1.75	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300
		2	0.080	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315
		2.5	0.085	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335
22.4	45	1	0.063	0.080	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250
		1.5	0.075	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300
		2	0.085	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335
		3	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400
		3.5	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425
		4	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450
		4.5	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475
45	90	1.5	0.080	0.100	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315
		2	0.090	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355
		3	0.106	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425
		4	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475
		5	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500
		5.5	0.132	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530
		6	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560
90	180	2	0.095	0.118	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375
		3	0.112	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450
		4	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500
		6	0.150	0.190	0.236	0.300	0.375	0.475	0.600
		8	0.170	0.212	0.265	0.335	0.425	0.530	0.670

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **ANSI Standard Pitch-Diameter Tolerances of External Metric Threads, Td_2** *ISO 965/1 ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Major Diameter, *d*		Pitch	Tolerance Grade						
Over	Up to and incl.	*P*	3	4[a]	5	6[a]	7	8	9
180	355	3	0.125	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500
		4	0.140	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560
		6	0.160	0.200	0.250	0.315	0.400	0.500	0.630
		8	0.180	0.224	0.280	0.355	0.450	0.560	0.710

[a] Tabulated in this Standard for M threads.
All dimensions are in millimeters.

Tolerance Grade Comparisons.—The approximate ratios of the tolerance grades shown in Table 8, Table 9, Table 10, and Table 11 in terms of Grade 6 are as follows:

Minor Diameter Tolerance of Internal Thread: Grade 6 is TD_1 *(Table 8):* Grade 4 is 0.63 TD_1 (6); Grade 5 is 0.8 TD_1 (6); Grade 7 is 1.25 TD_1 (6); and Grade 8 is 1.6 TD_1 (6).

Pitch Diameter Tolerance of Internal Thread: Td_2 *(Table 10):* Grade 4 is 0.85 Td_2 (6); Grade 5 is 1.06 Td_2 (6); Grade 6 is 1.32 Td_2 (6); Grade 7 is 1.7 Td_2 (6); and Grade 8 is 2.12 Td_2 (6). It should be noted that these ratios are in terms of the Grade 6 pitch diameter tolerance for the external thread.

Major Diameter Tolerance of External Thread: Td(6) *(Table 9):* Grade 4 is 0.63 Td (6); and Grade 8 is 1.6 Td (6).

Pitch Diameter Tolerance of External Thread: Td_2 *(Table 11):* Grade 3 is 0.5 Td_2 (6); Grade 4 is 0.63 Td_2 (6); Grade 5 is 0.8 Td_2 (6); Grade 7 is 1.25 Td_2 (6); Grade 8 is 1.6 Td_2 (6); and Grade 9 is 2 Td_2 (6).

Standard M Profile Screw Threads, Limits of Size.—The limiting M profile for internal threads is shown in Fig. 6 with associated dimensions for standard sizes in Table 12. The limiting M profiles for external threads are shown in Fig. 7 with associated dimensions for standard sizes in Table 13.

If the required values are not listed in these tables, they may be calculated using the data in Table 3, Table 6, Table 7, Table 8, Table 9, Table 10, and Table 11 together with the preceding formulas. If the required data are not included in any of the tables listed above, reference should be made to Sections 6 and 9.3 of ANSI/ASME B1.13M, which gives design formulas.

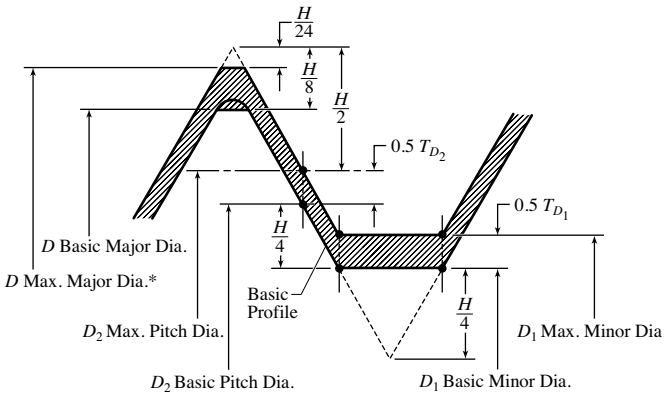


Fig. 6. Internal Thread—Limiting M Profile. Tolerance Position H (See footnote [a] to Table 12)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Note: "Section Lined" portions identify tolerance zone.
*Dimension *D* in Fig. 6 is used in the design of tools, etc. For internal threads it is not normally specified. Generally, major diameter acceptance is based on maximum material condition gaging.

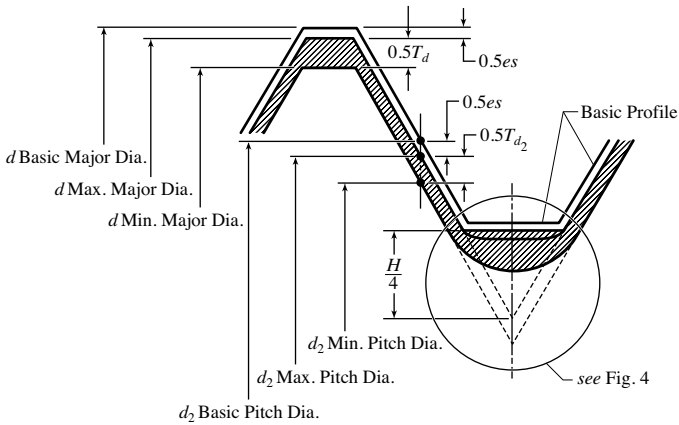


Fig. 7. External Thread—Limiting M Profile. Tolerance Position g

Note: "Section Lined" portions identify tolerance zone and unshaded portions identify allowance (fundamental deviation.)

Table 12. Internal Metric Thread - M Profile Limiting Dimensions,
ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)

Basic Thread Designation	Toler. Class	Minor Diameter D_1		Pitch Diameter D_2			Major Diameter D	
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Tol.	Min.	Max.[a]
M1.6×0.35	6H	1.221	1.321	1.373	1.458	0.085	1.600	1.736
M2×0.4	6H	1.567	1.679	1.740	1.830	0.090	2.000	2.148
M2.5×0.45	6H	2.013	2.138	2.208	2.303	0.095	2.500	2.660
M3×0.5	6H	2.459	2.599	2.675	2.775	0.100	3.000	3.172
M3.5×0.6	6H	2.850	3.010	3.110	3.222	0.112	3.500	3.698
M4×0.7	6H	3.242	3.422	3.545	3.663	0.118	4.000	4.219
M5×0.8	6H	4.134	4.334	4.480	4.605	0.125	5.000	5.240
M6×1	6H	4.917	5.153	5.350	5.500	0.150	6.000	6.294
M8×1.25	6H	6.647	6.912	7.188	7.348	0.160	8.000	8.340
M8×1	6H	6.917	7.153	7.350	7.500	0.150	8.000	8.294
M10×0.75	6H	9.188	9.378	9.513	9.645	0.132	10.000	10.240
M10×1	6H	8.917	9.153	9.350	9.500	0.150	10.000	10.294
M10×1.5	6H	8.376	8.676	9.026	9.206	0.180	10.000	10.397
M10×1.25	6H	8.647	8.912	9.188	9.348	0.160	10.000	10.340
M12×1.75	6H	10.106	10.441	10.863	11.063	0.200	12.000	12.452
M12×1.5	6H	10.376	10.676	11.026	11.216	0.190	12.000	12.407
M12×1.25	6H	10.647	10.912	11.188	11.368	0.180	12.000	12.360
M12×1	6H	10.917	11.153	11.350	11.510	0.160	12.000	12.304
M14×2	6H	11.835	12.210	12.701	12.913	0.212	14.000	14.501
M14×1.5	6H	12.376	12.676	13.026	13.216	0.190	14.000	14.407
M15×1	6H	13.917	14.153	14.350	14.510	0.160	15.000	15.304
M16×2	6H	13.835	14.210	14.701	14.913	0.212	16.000	16.501
M16×1.5	6H	14.376	14.676	15.026	15.216	0.190	16.000	16.407
M17×1	6H	15.917	16.153	16.350	16.510	0.160	17.000	17.304
M18×1.5	6H	16.376	16.676	17.026	17.216	0.190	18.000	18.407
M20×2.5	6H	17.294	17.744	18.376	18.600	0.224	20.000	20.585
M20×1.5	6H	18.376	18.676	19.026	19.216	0.190	20.000	20.407

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **Internal Metric Thread - M Profile Limiting Dimensions,** *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Thread Designation	Toler. Class	Minor Diameter D_1		Pitch Diameter D_2			Major Diameter D	
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Tol.	Min.	Max.[a]
M20 × 1	6H	18.917	19.153	19.350	19.510	0.160	20.000	20.304
M22 × 2.5	6H	19.294	19.744	20.376	20.600	0.224	22.000	22.585
M22 × 1.5	6H	20.376	20.676	21.026	21.216	0.190	22.000	22.407
M24 × 3	6H	20.752	21.252	22.051	22.316	0.265	24.000	24.698
M24 × 2	6H	21.835	22.210	22.701	22.925	0.224	24.000	24.513
M25 × 1.5	6H	23.376	23.676	24.026	24.226	0.200	25.000	25.417
M27 × 3	6H	23.752	24.252	25.051	25.316	0.265	27.000	27.698
M27 × 2	6H	24.835	25.210	25.701	25.925	0.224	27.000	27.513
M30 × 3.5	6H	26.211	26.771	27.727	28.007	0.280	30.000	30.786
M30 × 2	6H	27.835	28.210	28.701	28.925	0.224	30.000	30.513
M30 × 1.5	6H	28.376	28.676	29.026	29.226	0.200	30.000	30.417
M33 × 2	6H	30.835	31.210	31.701	31.925	0.224	33.000	33.513
M35 × 1.5	6H	33.376	33.676	34.026	34.226	0.200	35.000	35.417
M36 × 4	6H	31.670	32.270	33.402	33.702	0.300	36.000	36.877
M36 × 2	6H	33.835	34.210	34.701	34.925	0.224	36.000	36.513
M39 × 2	6H	36.835	37.210	37.701	37.925	0.224	39.000	39.513
M40 × 1.5	6H	38.376	38.676	39.026	39.226	0.200	40.000	40.417
M42 × 4.5	6H	37.129	37.799	39.077	39.392	0.315	42.000	42.964
M42 × 2	6H	39.835	40.210	40.701	40.925	0.224	42.000	42.513
M45 × 1.5	6H	43.376	43.676	44.026	44.226	0.200	45.000	45.417
M48 × 5	6H	42.587	43.297	44.752	45.087	0.335	48.000	49.056
M48 × 2	6H	45.835	46.210	46.701	46.937	0.236	48.000	48.525
M50 × 1.5	6H	48.376	48.676	49.026	49.238	0.212	50.000	50.429
M55 × 1.5	6H	53.376	53.676	54.026	54.238	0.212	55.000	55.429
M56 × 5.5	6H	50.046	50.796	52.428	52.783	0.355	56.000	57.149
M56 × 2	6H	53.835	54.210	54.701	54.937	0.236	56.000	56.525
M60 × 1.5	6H	58.376	58.676	59.026	59.238	0.212	60.000	60.429
M64 × 6	6H	57.505	58.305	60.103	60.478	0.375	64.000	65.241
M64 × 2	6H	61.835	62.210	62.701	62.937	0.236	64.000	64.525
M65 × 1.5	6H	63.376	63.676	64.026	64.238	0.212	65.000	65.429
M70 × 1.5	6H	68.376	68.676	69.026	69.238	0.212	70.000	70.429
M72 × 6	6H	65.505	66.305	68.103	68.478	0.375	72.000	73.241
M72 × 2	6H	69.835	70.210	70.701	70.937	0.236	72.000	72.525
M75 × 1.5	6H	73.376	73.676	74.026	74.238	0.212	75.000	75.429
M80 × 6	6H	73.505	74.305	76.103	76.478	0.375	80.000	81.241
M80 × 2	6H	77.835	78.210	78.701	78.937	0.236	80.000	80.525
M80 × 1.5	6H	78.376	78.676	79.026	79.238	0.212	80.000	80.429
M85 × 2	6H	82.835	83.210	83.701	83.937	0.236	85.000	85.525
M90 × 6	6H	83.505	84.305	86.103	86.478	0.375	90.000	91.241
M90 × 2	6H	87.835	88.210	88.701	88.937	0.236	90.000	90.525
M95 × 2	6H	92.835	93.210	93.701	93.951	0.250	95.000	95.539
M100 × 6	6H	93.505	94.305	96.103	96.503	0.400	100.000	101.266
M100 × 2	6H	97.835	98.210	98.701	98.951	0.250	100.000	100.539
M105 × 2	6H	102.835	103.210	103.701	103.951	0.250	105.000	105.539
M110 × 2	6H	107.835	108.210	108.701	108.951	0.250	110.000	110.539
M120 × 2	6H	117.835	118.210	118.701	118.951	0.250	120.000	120.539
M130 × 2	6H	127.835	128.210	128.701	128.951	0.250	130.000	130.539
M140 × 2	6H	137.835	138.210	138.701	138.951	0.250	140.000	140.539
M150 × 2	6H	147.835	148.210	148.701	148.951	0.250	150.000	150.539
M160 × 3	6H	156.752	157.252	158.051	158.351	0.300	160.000	160.733
M170 × 3	6H	166.752	167.252	168.051	168.351	0.300	170.000	170.733
M180 × 3	6H	176.752	177.252	178.051	178.351	0.300	180.000	180.733
M190 × 3	6H	186.752	187.252	188.051	188.386	0.335	190.000	190.768
M200 × 3	6H	196.752	197.252	198.051	198.386	0.335	200.000	200.768

[a] This reference dimension is used in design of tools, etc., and is not normally specified. Generally, major diameter acceptance is based upon maximum material condition gaging.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. External Metric Thread—M Profile Limiting Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Thread Designation	Tol. Class	Allowance [a] *es*	Major Diameter [b] *d*		Pitch Diameter [b, c] d_2			Minor Dia. [b] d_1	Minor Dia. [d] d_3
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.
M1.6×0.35	6g	0.019	1.581	1.496	1.354	1.291	0.063	1.202	1.075
M1.6×0.35	6h	0.000	1.600	1.515	1.373	1.310	0.063	1.221	1.094
M1.6×0.35	4g6g	0.019	1.581	1.496	1.354	1.314	0.040	1.202	1.098
M2×0.4	6g	0.019	1.981	1.886	1.721	1.654	0.067	1.548	1.408
M2×0.4	6h	0.000	2.000	1.905	1.740	1.673	0.067	1.567	1.427
M2×0.4	4g6g	0.019	1.981	1.886	1.721	1.679	0.042	1.548	1.433
M2.5×0.45	6g	0.020	2.480	2.380	2.188	2.117	0.071	1.993	1.840
M2.5×0.45	6h	0.000	2.500	2.400	2.208	2.137	0.071	2.013	1.860
M2.5×0.45	4g6g	0.020	2.480	2.380	2.188	2.143	0.045	1.993	1.866
M3×0.5	6g	0.020	2.980	2.874	2.655	2.580	0.075	2.438	2.272
M3×0.5	6h	0.000	3.000	2.894	2.675	2.600	0.075	2.458	2.292
M3×0.5	4g6g	0.020	2.980	2.874	2.655	2.607	0.048	2.438	2.299
M3.5×0.6	6g	0.021	3.479	3.354	3.089	3.004	0.085	2.829	2.634
M3.5×0.6	6h	0.000	3.500	3.375	3.110	3.025	0.085	2.850	2.655
M3.5×0.6	4g6g	0.021	3.479	3.354	3.089	3.036	0.053	2.829	2.666
M4×0.7	6g	0.022	3.978	3.838	3.523	3.433	0.090	3.220	3.002
M4×0.7	6h	0.000	4.000	3.860	3.545	3.455	0.090	3.242	3.024
M4×0.7	4g6g	0.022	3.978	3.838	3.523	3.467	0.056	3.220	3.036
M5×0.8	6g	0.024	4.976	4.826	4.456	4.361	0.095	4.110	3.868
M5×0.8	6h	0.000	5.000	4.850	4.480	4.385	0.095	4.134	3.892
M5×0.8	4g6g	0.024	4.976	4.826	4.456	4.396	0.060	4.110	3.903
M6×1	6g	0.026	5.974	5.794	5.324	5.212	0.112	4.891	4.596
M6×1	6h	0.000	6.000	5.820	5.350	5.238	0.112	4.917	4.622
M6×1	4g6g	0.026	5.974	5.794	5.324	5.253	0.071	4.891	4.637
M8×1.25	6g	0.028	7.972	7.760	7.160	7.042	0.118	6.619	6.272
M8×1.25	6h	0.000	8.000	7.788	7.188	7.070	0.118	6.647	6.300
M8×1.25	4g6g	0.028	7.972	7.760	7.160	7.085	0.075	6.619	6.315
M8×1	6g	0.026	7.974	7.794	7.324	7.212	0.112	6.891	6.596
M8×1	6h	0.000	8.000	7.820	7.350	7.238	0.112	6.917	6.622
M8×1	4g6g	0.026	7.974	7.794	7.324	7.253	0.071	6.891	6.637
M10×1.5	6g	0.032	9.968	9.732	8.994	8.862	0.132	8.344	7.938
M10×1.5	6h	0.000	10.000	9.764	9.026	8.894	0.132	8.376	7.970
M10×1.5	4g6g	0.032	9.968	9.732	8.994	8.909	0.085	8.344	7.985
M10×1.25	6g	0.028	9.972	9.760	9.160	9.042	0.118	8.619	8.272
M10×1.25	6h	0.000	10.000	9.788	9.188	9.070	0.118	8.647	8.300
M10×1.25	4g6g	0.028	9.972	9.760	9.160	9.085	0.075	8.619	8.315
M10×1	6g	0.026	9.974	9.794	9.324	9.212	0.112	8.891	8.596
M10×1	6h	0.000	10.000	9.820	9.350	9.238	0.112	8.917	8.622
M10×1	4g6g	0.026	9.974	9.794	9.324	9.253	0.071	8.891	8.637
M10×0.75	6g	0.022	9.978	9.838	9.491	9.391	0.100	9.166	8.929
M10×0.75	6h	0.000	10.000	9.860	9.513	9.413	0.100	9.188	8.951
M10×0.75	4g6g	0.022	9.978	9.838	9.491	9.428	0.063	9.166	8.966
M12×1.75	6g	0.034	11.966	11.701	10.829	10.679	0.150	10.071	9.601
M12×1.75	6h	0.000	12.000	11.735	10.863	10.713	0.150	10.105	9.635
M12×1.75	4g6g	0.034	11.966	11.701	10.829	10.734	0.095	10.071	9.656
M12×1.5	6g	0.032	11.968	11.732	10.994	10.854	0.140	10.344	9.930
M12×1.5	6h	0.000	12.000	11.764	11.026	10.886	0.140	10.376	9.962
M12×1.5	4g6g	0.032	11.968	11.732	10.994	10.904	0.090	10.344	9.980
M12×1.25	6g	0.028	11.972	11.760	11.160	11.028	0.132	10.619	10.258
M12×1.25	6h	0.000	12.000	11.788	11.188	11.056	0.132	10.647	10.286
M12×1.25	4g6g	0.028	11.972	11.760	11.160	11.075	0.085	10.619	10.305
M12×1	6g	0.026	11.974	11.794	11.324	11.206	0.118	10.891	10.590
M12×1	6h	0.000	12.000	11.820	11.350	11.232	0.118	10.917	10.616
M12×1	4g6g	0.026	11.974	11.794	11.324	11.249	0.075	10.891	10.633
M14×2	6g	0.038	13.962	13.682	12.663	12.503	0.160	11.797	11.271
M14×2	6h	0.000	14.000	13.720	12.701	12.541	0.160	11.835	11.309
M14×2	4g6g	0.038	13.962	13.682	12.663	12.563	0.100	11.797	11.331
M14×1.5	6g	0.032	13.968	13.732	12.994	12.854	0.140	12.344	11.930
M14×1.5	6h	0.000	14.000	13.764	13.026	12.886	0.140	12.376	11.962
M14×1.5	4g6g	0.032	13.968	13.732	12.994	12.904	0.090	12.344	11.980
M15×1	6g	0.026	14.974	14.794	14.324	14.206	0.118	13.891	13.590
M15×1	6h	0.000	15.000	14.820	14.350	14.232	0.118	13.917	13.616
M15×1	4g6g	0.026	14.974	14.794	14.324	14.249	0.075	13.891	13.633

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **External Metric Thread — M Profile Limiting Dimensions** *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Thread Designation	Tol. Class	Allowance [a]	Major Diameter [b] d		Pitch Diameter [b, c] d_2			Minor Dia. [b] d_1	Minor Dia. [d] d_3
		es	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.
M16×2	6g	0.038	15.962	15.682	14.663	14.503	0.160	13.797	13.271
M16×2	6h	0.000	16.000	15.720	14.701	14.541	0.160	13.835	13.309
M16×2	4g6g	0.038	15.962	15.682	14.663	14.563	0.100	13.797	13.331
M16×1.5	6g	0.032	15.968	15.732	14.994	14.854	0.140	14.344	13.930
M16×1.5	6h	0.000	16.000	15.764	15.026	14.886	0.140	14.376	13.962
M16×1.5	4g6g	0.032	15.968	15.732	14.994	14.904	0.090	14.344	13.980
M17×1	6g	0.026	16.974	16.794	16.324	16.206	0.118	15.891	15.590
M17×1	6h	0.000	17.000	16.820	16.350	16.232	0.118	15.917	15.616
M17×1	4g6g	0.026	16.974	16.794	16.324	16.249	0.075	15.891	15.633
M18×1.5	6g	0.032	17.968	17.732	16.994	16.854	0.140	16.344	15.930
M18×1.5	6h	0.000	18.000	17.764	17.026	16.886	0.140	16.376	15.962
M18×1.5	4g6g	0.032	17.968	17.732	16.994	16.904	0.090	16.344	15.980
M20×2.5	6g	0.042	19.958	19.623	18.334	18.164	0.170	17.251	16.624
M20×2.5	6h	0.000	20.000	19.665	18.376	18.206	0.170	17.293	16.666
M20×2.5	4g6g	0.042	19.958	19.623	18.334	18.228	0.106	17.251	16.688
M20×1.5	6g	0.032	19.968	19.732	18.994	18.854	0.140	18.344	17.930
M20×1.5	6h	0.000	20.000	19.764	19.026	18.886	0.140	18.376	17.962
M20×1.5	4g6g	0.032	19.968	19.732	18.994	18.904	0.090	18.344	17.980
M20×1	6g	0.026	19.974	19.794	19.324	19.206	0.118	18.891	18.590
M20×1	6h	0.000	20.000	19.820	19.350	19.232	0.118	18.917	18.616
M20×1	4g6g	0.026	19.974	19.794	19.324	19.249	0.075	18.891	18.633
M22×2.5	6g	0.042	21.958	21.623	20.334	20.164	0.170	19.251	18.624
M22×2.5	6h	0.000	22.000	21.665	20.376	20.206	0.170	19.293	18.666
M22×1.5	6g	0.032	21.968	21.732	20.994	20.854	0.140	20.344	19.930
M22×1.5	6h	0.000	22.000	21.764	21.026	20.886	0.140	20.376	19.962
M22×1.5	4g6g	0.032	21.968	21.732	20.994	20.904	0.090	20.344	19.980
M24×3	6g	0.048	23.952	23.577	22.003	21.803	0.200	20.704	19.955
M24×3	6h	0.000	24.000	23.625	22.051	21.851	0.200	20.752	20.003
M24×3	4g6g	0.048	23.952	23.577	22.003	21.878	0.125	20.704	20.030
M24×2	6g	0.038	23.962	23.682	22.663	22.493	0.170	21.797	21.261
M24×2	6h	0.000	24.000	23.720	22.701	22.531	0.170	21.835	21.299
M24×2	4g6g	0.038	23.962	23.682	22.663	22.557	0.106	21.797	21.325
M25×1.5	6g	0.032	24.968	24.732	23.994	23.844	0.150	23.344	22.920
M25×1.5	6h	0.000	25.000	24.764	24.026	23.876	0.150	23.376	22.952
M25×1.5	4g6g	0.032	24.968	24.732	23.994	23.899	0.095	23.344	22.975
M27×3	6g	0.048	26.952	26.577	25.003	24.803	0.200	23.704	22.955
M27×3	6h	0.000	27.000	26.625	25.051	24.851	0.200	23.752	23.003
M27×2	6g	0.038	26.962	26.682	25.663	25.493	0.170	24.797	24.261
M27×2	6h	0.000	27.000	26.720	25.701	25.531	0.170	24.835	24.299
M27×2	4g6g	0.038	26.962	26.682	25.663	25.557	0.106	24.797	24.325
M30×3.5	6g	0.053	29.947	29.522	27.674	27.462	0.212	26.158	25.306
M30×3.5	6h	0.000	30.000	29.575	27.727	27.515	0.212	26.211	25.359
M30×3.5	4g6g	0.053	29.947	29.522	27.674	27.542	0.132	26.158	25.386
M30×2	6g	0.038	29.962	29.682	28.663	28.493	0.170	27.797	27.261
M30×2	6h	0.000	30.000	29.720	28.701	28.531	0.170	27.835	27.299
M30×2	4g6g	0.038	29.962	29.682	28.663	28.557	0.106	27.797	27.325
M30×1.5	6g	0.032	29.968	29.732	28.994	28.844	0.150	28.344	27.920
M30×1.5	6h	0.000	30.000	29.764	29.026	28.876	0.150	28.376	27.952
M30×1.5	4g6g	0.032	29.968	29.732	28.994	28.899	0.095	28.344	27.975
M33×2	6g	0.038	32.962	32.682	31.663	31.493	0.170	30.797	30.261
M33×2	6h	0.000	33.000	32.720	31.701	31.531	0.170	30.835	30.299
M33×2	4g6g	0.038	32.962	32.682	31.663	31.557	0.106	30.797	30.325
M35×1.5	6g	0.032	34.968	34.732	33.994	33.844	0.150	33.344	32.920
M35×1.5	6h	0.000	35.000	34.764	34.026	33.876	0.150	33.376	32.952
M36×4	6g	0.060	35.940	35.465	33.342	33.118	0.224	31.610	30.654
M36×4	6h	0.000	36.000	35.525	33.402	33.178	0.224	31.670	30.714
M36×4	4g6g	0.060	35.940	35.465	33.342	33.202	0.140	31.610	30.738
M36×2	6g	0.038	35.962	35.682	34.663	34.493	0.170	33.797	33.261
M36×2	6h	0.000	36.000	35.720	34.701	34.531	0.170	33.835	33.299
M36×2	4g6g	0.038	35.962	35.682	34.663	34.557	0.106	33.797	33.325
M39×2	6g	0.038	38.962	38.682	37.663	37.493	0.170	36.797	36.261
M39×2	6h	0.000	39.000	38.720	37.701	37.531	0.170	36.835	36.299
M39×2	4g6g	0.038	38.962	38.682	37.663	37.557	0.106	36.797	36.325
M40×1.5	6g	0.032	39.968	39.732	38.994	38.844	0.150	38.344	37.920

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **External Metric Thread — M Profile Limiting Dimensions** *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Thread Designation	Tol. Class	Allowance [a] *es*	Major Diameter [b] *d*		Pitch Diameter [b, c] d_2			Minor Dia. [b] d_1	Minor Dia. [d] d_3
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.
M40×1.5	6h	0.000	40.000	39.764	39.026	38.876	0.150	38.376	37.952
M40×1.5	4g6g	0.032	39.968	39.732	38.994	38.899	0.095	38.344	37.975
M42×4.5	6g	0.063	41.937	41.437	39.014	38.778	0.236	37.065	36.006
M42×4.5	6h	0.000	42.000	41.500	39.077	38.841	0.236	37.128	36.069
M42×4.5	4g6g	0.063	41.937	41.437	39.014	38.864	0.150	37.065	36.092
M42×2	6g	0.038	41.962	41.682	40.663	40.493	0.170	39.797	39.261
M42×2	6h	0.000	42.000	41.720	40.701	40.531	0.170	39.835	39.299
M42×2	4g6g	0.038	41.962	41.682	40.663	40.557	0.106	39.797	39.325
M45×1.5	6g	0.032	44.968	44.732	43.994	43.844	0.150	43.344	42.920
M45×1.5	6h	0.000	45.000	44.764	44.026	43.876	0.150	43.376	42.952
M45×1.5	4g6g	0.032	44.968	44.732	43.994	43.899	0.095	43.344	42.975
M48×5	6g	0.071	47.929	47.399	44.681	44.431	0.250	42.516	41.351
M48×5	6h	0.000	48.000	47.470	44.752	44.502	0.250	42.587	41.422
M48×5	4g6g	0.071	47.929	47.399	44.681	44.521	0.160	42.516	41.441
M48×2	6g	0.038	47.962	47.682	46.663	46.483	0.180	45.797	45.251
M48×2	6h	0.000	48.000	47.720	46.701	46.521	0.180	45.835	45.289
M48×2	4g6g	0.038	47.962	47.682	46.663	46.551	0.112	45.797	45.319
M50×1.5	6g	0.032	49.968	49.732	48.994	48.834	0.160	48.344	47.910
M50×1.5	6h	0.000	50.000	49.764	49.026	48.866	0.160	48.376	47.942
M50×1.5	4g6g	0.032	49.968	49.732	48.994	48.894	0.100	48.344	47.970
M55×1.5	6g	0.032	54.968	54.732	53.994	53.834	0.160	53.344	52.910
M55×1.5	6h	0.000	55.000	54.764	54.026	53.866	0.160	53.376	52.942
M55×1.5	4g6g	0.032	54.968	54.732	53.994	53.894	0.100	53.344	52.970
M56×5.5	6g	0.075	55.925	55.365	52.353	52.088	0.265	49.971	48.700
M56×5.5	6h	0.000	56.000	55.440	52.428	52.163	0.265	50.046	48.775
M56×5.5	4g6g	0.075	55.925	55.365	52.353	52.183	0.170	49.971	48.795
M56×2	6g	0.038	55.962	55.682	54.663	54.483	0.180	53.797	53.251
M56×2	6h	0.000	56.000	55.720	54.701	54.521	0.180	53.835	53.289
M56×2	4g6g	0.038	55.962	55.682	54.663	54.551	0.112	53.797	53.319
M60×1.5	6g	0.032	59.968	59.732	58.994	58.834	0.160	58.344	57.910
M60×1.5	6h	0.000	60.000	59.764	59.026	58.866	0.160	58.376	57.942
M60×1.5	4g6g	0.032	59.968	59.732	58.994	58.894	0.100	58.344	57.970
M64×6	6g	0.080	63.920	63.320	60.023	59.743	0.280	57.425	56.047
M64×6	6h	0.000	64.000	63.400	60.103	59.823	0.280	57.505	56.127
M64×6	4g6g	0.080	63.920	63.320	60.023	59.843	0.180	57.425	56.147
M64×2	6g	0.038	63.962	63.682	62.663	62.483	0.180	61.797	61.251
M64×2	6h	0.000	64.000	63.720	62.701	62.521	0.180	61.835	61.289
M64×2	4g6g	0.038	63.962	63.682	62.663	62.551	0.112	61.797	61.319
M65×1.5	6g	0.032	64.968	64.732	63.994	63.834	0.160	63.344	62.910
M65×1.5	6h	0.000	65.000	64.764	64.026	63.866	0.160	63.376	62.942
M65×1.5	4g6g	0.032	64.968	64.732	63.994	63.894	0.100	63.344	62.970
M70×1.5	6g	0.032	69.968	69.732	68.994	68.834	0.160	68.344	67.910
M70×1.5	6h	0.000	70.000	69.764	69.026	68.866	0.160	68.376	67.942
M70×1.5	4g6g	0.032	69.968	69.732	68.994	68.894	0.100	68.344	67.970
M72×6	6g	0.080	71.920	71.320	68.023	67.743	0.280	65.425	64.047
M72×6	6h	0.000	72.000	71.400	68.103	67.823	0.280	65.505	64.127
M72×6	4g6g	0.080	71.920	71.320	68.023	67.843	0.180	65.425	64.147
M72×2	6g	0.038	71.962	71.682	70.663	70.483	0.180	69.797	69.251
M72×2	6h	0.000	72.000	71.720	70.701	70.521	0.180	69.835	69.289
M72×2	4g6g	0.038	71.962	71.682	70.663	70.551	0.112	69.797	69.319
M75×1.5	6g	0.032	74.968	74.732	73.994	73.834	0.160	73.344	72.910
M75×1.5	6h	0.000	75.000	74.764	74.026	73.866	0.160	73.376	72.942
M75×1.5	4g6g	0.032	74.968	74.732	73.994	73.894	0.100	73.344	72.970
M80×6	6g	0.080	79.920	79.320	76.023	75.743	0.280	73.425	72.047
M80×6	6h	0.000	80.000	79.400	76.103	75.823	0.280	73.505	72.127
M80×6	4g6g	0.080	79.920	79.320	76.023	75.843	0.180	73.425	72.147
M80×2	6g	0.038	79.962	79.682	78.663	78.483	0.180	77.797	77.251
M80×2	6h	0.000	80.000	79.720	78.701	78.521	0.180	77.835	77.289
M80×2	4g6g	0.038	79.962	79.682	78.663	78.551	0.112	77.797	77.319
M80×1.5	6g	0.032	79.968	79.732	78.994	78.834	0.160	78.344	77.910
M80×1.5	6h	0.000	80.000	79.764	79.026	78.866	0.160	78.376	77.942
M80×1.5	4g6g	0.032	79.968	79.732	78.994	78.894	0.100	78.344	77.970
M85×2	6g	0.038	84.962	84.682	83.663	83.483	0.180	82.797	82.251
M85×2	6h	0.000	85.000	84.720	83.701	83.521	0.180	82.835	82.289

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. *(Continued)* **External Metric Thread — M Profile Limiting Dimensions** *ANSI/ASME B1.13M-2005 (R2015)*

Basic Thread Designation	Tol. Class	Allowance [a]	Major Diameter [b] d		Pitch Diameter [b, c] d_2			Minor Dia. [b] d_1	Minor Dia. [d] d_3
		es	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.
M85 × 2	4g6g	0.038	84.962	84.682	83.663	83.551	0.112	82.797	82.319
M90 × 6	6g	0.080	89.920	89.320	86.023	85.743	0.280	83.425	82.047
M90 × 6	6h	0.000	90.000	89.400	86.103	85.823	0.280	83.505	82.127
M90 × 6	4g6g	0.080	89.920	89.320	86.023	85.843	0.180	83.425	82.147
M90 × 2	6g	0.038	89.962	89.682	88.663	88.483	0.180	87.797	87.251
M90 × 2	6h	0.000	90.000	89.720	88.701	88.521	0.180	87.835	87.289
M90 × 2	4g6g	0.038	89.962	89.682	88.663	88.551	0.112	87.797	87.319
M95 × 2	6g	0.038	94.962	94.682	93.663	93.473	0.190	92.797	92.241
M95 × 2	6h	0.000	95.000	94.720	93.701	93.511	0.190	92.835	92.279
M95 × 2	4g6g	0.038	94.962	94.682	93.663	93.545	0.118	92.797	92.313
M100 × 6	6g	0.080	99.920	99.320	96.023	95.723	0.300	93.425	92.027
M100 × 6	6h	0.000	100.000	99.400	96.103	95.803	0.300	93.505	92.107
M100 × 6	4g6g	0.080	99.920	99.320	96.023	95.833	0.190	93.425	92.137
M100 × 2	6g	0.038	99.962	99.682	98.663	98.473	0.190	97.797	97.241
M100 × 2	6h	0.000	100.000	99.720	98.701	98.511	0.190	97.835	97.279
M100 × 2	4g6g	0.038	99.962	99.682	98.663	98.545	0.118	97.797	97.313
M105 × 2	6g	0.038	104.962	104.682	103.663	103.473	0.190	102.797	102.241
M105 × 2	6h	0.000	105.000	104.720	103.701	103.511	0.190	102.835	102.279
M105 × 2	4g6g	0.038	104.962	104.682	103.663	103.545	0.118	102.797	102.313
M110 × 2	6g	0.038	109.962	109.682	108.663	108.473	0.190	107.797	107.241
M110 × 2	6h	0.000	110.000	109.720	108.701	108.511	0.190	107.835	107.279
M110 × 2	4g6g	0.038	109.962	109.682	108.663	108.545	0.118	107.797	107.313
M120 × 2	6g	0.038	119.962	119.682	118.663	118.473	0.190	117.797	117.241
M120 × 2	6h	0.000	120.000	119.720	118.701	118.511	0.190	117.835	117.279
M120 × 2	4g6g	0.038	119.962	119.682	118.663	118.545	0.118	117.797	117.313
M130 × 2	6g	0.038	129.962	129.682	128.663	128.473	0.190	127.797	127.241
M130 × 2	6h	0.000	130.000	129.720	128.701	128.511	0.190	127.835	127.279
M130 × 2	4g6g	0.038	129.962	129.682	128.663	128.545	0.118	127.797	127.313
M140 × 2	6g	0.038	139.962	139.682	138.663	138.473	0.190	137.797	137.241
M140 × 2	6h	0.000	140.000	139.720	138.701	138.511	0.190	137.835	137.279
M140 × 2	4g6g	0.038	139.962	139.682	138.663	138.545	0.118	137.797	137.313
M150 × 2	6g	0.038	149.962	149.682	148.663	148.473	0.190	147.797	147.241
M150 × 2	6h	0.000	150.000	149.720	148.701	148.511	0.190	147.835	147.279
M150 × 2	4g6g	0.038	149.962	149.682	148.663	148.545	0.118	147.797	147.313
M160 × 3	6g	0.048	159.952	159.577	158.003	157.779	0.224	156.704	155.931
M160 × 3	6h	0.000	160.000	159.625	158.051	157.827	0.224	156.752	155.979
M160 × 3	4g6g	0.048	159.952	159.577	158.003	157.863	0.140	156.704	156.015
M170 × 3	6g	0.048	169.952	169.577	168.003	167.779	0.224	166.704	165.931
M170 × 3	6h	0.000	170.000	169.625	168.051	167.827	0.224	166.752	165.979
M170 × 3	4g6g	0.048	169.952	169.577	168.003	167.863	0.140	166.704	166.015
M180 × 3	6g	0.048	179.952	179.577	178.003	177.779	0.224	176.704	175.931
M180 × 3	6h	0.000	180.000	179.625	178.051	177.827	0.224	176.752	175.979
M180 × 3	4g6g	0.048	179.952	179.577	178.003	177.863	0.140	176.704	176.015
M190 × 3	6g	0.048	189.952	189.577	188.003	187.753	0.250	186.704	185.905
M190 × 3	6h	0.000	190.000	189.625	188.051	187.801	0.250	186.752	185.953
M190 × 3	4g6g	0.048	189.952	189.577	188.003	187.843	0.160	186.704	185.995
M200 × 3	6g	0.048	199.952	199.577	198.003	197.753	0.250	196.704	195.905
M200 × 3	6h	0.000	200.000	199.625	198.051	197.801	0.250	196.752	195.953
M200 × 3	4g6g	0.048	199.952	199.577	198.003	197.843	0.160	196.704	195.995

[a] es is an absolute value.

[b] Coated threads with tolerance classes 6g or 4g6g, see *Material Limits for Coated Threads*, 2020.

[c] Functional diameter size includes the effects of all variations in pitch diameter, thread form, and profile. The variations in the individual thread characteristics such as flank angle, lead, taper, and roundness on a given thread, cause the measurements of the pitch diameter and functional diameter to vary from one another on most threads. The pitch diameter and the functional diameter on a given thread are equal to one another only when the thread form is perfect. When required to inspect either the pitch diameter, the functional diameter, or both, for thread acceptance, use the same limits of size for the appropriate thread size and class.

[d] Dimension used in the design of tools, etc.; in dimensioning external threads it is not normally specified. Generally, minor diameter acceptance is based on maximum material condition gaging.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metric Screw Thread Designations.—Metric screw threads are identified by the letter (M) for the thread form profile, followed by the nominal diameter size and the pitch expressed in millimeters, separated by the sign (×) and followed by the tolerance class separated by a dash (–) from the pitch.

The simplified international practice for designating coarse pitch M profile metric screw threads is to leave off the pitch. Thus a M14 × 2 thread is designated just M14. However, to prevent misunderstanding, it is mandatory to use the value for pitch in all designations.

Thread acceptability gaging system requirements of ANSI/ASME B1.3 may be added to the thread size designation as noted in the examples (numbers in parentheses) or as specified in pertinent documentation, such as the drawing or procurement document.

Unless otherwise specified in the designation, the screw thread is right hand.

Examples: External thread of M profile, right hand: M6 × 1 – 4g6g (22)

Internal thread of M profile, right hand: M6 × 1 – 5H6H (21)

Designation of Left Hand Thread: When a left hand thread is specified, the tolerance class designation is followed by a dash and LH.

M6 × 1 – 5H6H – LH (23)

Designation for Identical Tolerance Classes: If the two tolerance class designations for a thread are identical, it is not necessary to repeat the symbols.

M6 × 1 – 6H (21)

Designation Using All Capital Letters: When computer and teletype thread designations use all capital letters, the external or internal thread may need further identification. Thus the tolerance class is followed by the abbreviations EXT or INT in capital letters.

Example: M6 × 1 – 4G6G EXT; M6 × 1 – 6H INT

Designation for Thread Fit: A fit between mating threads is indicated by the internal thread tolerance class followed by the external thread tolerance class and separated by a slash.

Examples: M6 × 1 – 6H/6g; M6 × 1 – 6H/4g6g

Designation for Rounded Root External Thread: The M profile with a minimum root radius of 0.125P on the external thread is desirable for all threads but is mandatory for threaded mechanical fasteners of ISO 898/I property class 8.8 (minimum tensile strength 800 MPa) and stronger. No special designation is required for these threads. Other parts requiring a 0.125P root radius must have that radius specified.

When a special rounded root is required, its external thread designation is suffixed by the minimum root radius value in millimeters and the letter R.

Example: M42 × 4.5 – 6g – 0.63R

Designation of Threads Having Modified Crests: Where the limits of size of the major diameter of an external thread or the minor diameter of an internal thread are modified, the thread designation is suffixed by the letters MOD followed by the modified diameter limits.

Examples:

External thread M profile, major diameter reduced 0.075 mm. M6 × 1 – 4h6h MOD Major dia = 5.745 – 5.925 MOD	Internal thread M profile, minor diameter increased 0.075 mm. M6 × 1 – 4H5H MOD Minor dia = 5.101 – 5.291 MOD

Designation of Special Threads: Special diameter-pitch threads developed in accordance with this Standard ANSI/ASME B1.13M are identified by the letters SPL following the tolerance class. The limits of size for the major diameter, pitch diameter, and minor diameter are specified below this designation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Examples:

External thread	Internal thread
M6.5 × 1 – 4h6h – SPL (22)	M6.5 × 1 – 4H5H – SPL (23)
Major dia = 6.320 – 6.500	Major dia = 6.500 min
Pitch dia = 5.779 – 5.850	Pitch dia = 5.850 – 5.945
Minor dia = 5.163 – 5.386	Minor dia = 5.417 – 5.607

Designation of Multiple Start Threads: When a thread is required with a multiple start, it is designated by specifying sequentially: M for metric thread, nominal diameter size, × L for lead, lead value, dash, P for pitch, pitch value, dash, tolerance class, parenthesis, script number of starts, and the word starts, close parenthesis.

Examples: M16 × L4 – P2 – 4h6h (TWO STARTS)
M14 × L6 – P2 – 6H (THREE STARTS)

Designation of Coated or Plated Threads: In designating coated or plated M threads the tolerance class should be specified as after coating or after plating. If no designation of after coating or after plating is specified, the tolerance class applies before coating or plating in accordance with ISO practice. After plating, the thread must not transgress the maximum material limits for the tolerance position H/h.

Examples: M6 × 1 – 6h AFTER COATING or AFTER PLATING
M6 × 1 – 6g AFTER COATING or AFTER PLATING

Where the tolerance position G/g is insufficient relief for the application to hold the threads within product limits, the coating or plating allowance may be specified as the maximum and minimum limits of size for minor and pitch diameters of internal threads or major and pitch diameters for external threads before coating or plating.

Example: Allowance on external thread M profile based on 0.010 mm minimum coating thickness.

M6 × 1 – 4h6h – AFTER COATING
BEFORE COATING
Major dia = 5.780 – 5.940
Pitch dia = 5.239 – 5.290

Metric Screw Threads — MJ Profile

The MJ screw thread is intended for aerospace metric threaded parts and for other highly stressed applications requiring high temperature or high fatigue strength, or for "no allowance" applications. The MJ profile thread is a hard metric version similar to the UNJ inch standards, ANSI/ASME B1.15 and MIL-S-8879. The MJ profile thread has a 0.15011*P* to 0.180424*P* controlled root radius in the external thread and the internal thread minor diameter truncated to accommodate the external thread maximum root radius.

First issued in 1978, the American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.21M-1997 (R2018) establishes the basic triangular profile for the MJ form of thread; gives a system of designations; lists the standard series of diameter-pitch combinations for diameters from 1.6 to 200 mm; and specifies limiting dimensions and tolerances. Changes included in the 1997 revision are the addition of tolerance class 4G6G and 4G5G/4g6g comparable to ANSI/ASME B1.15 (UNJ thread); the addition of tolerance class 6H/6g comparable to ANSI/ASME B1.13M; and changes in the rounding proceedure as set forth in ANSI/ASME B1.30.

Diameter-Pitch Combinations.—This Standard includes a selected series of diameter-pitch combinations of threads taken from International Standard ISO 261 plus some additional sizes in the constant pitch series. These are given in Table 1. It also includes the standard series of diameter-pitch combinations for aerospace screws, bolts, nuts, and fluid system fittings as shown in Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. ANSI Standard Metric Screw Threads MJ Profile Diameter-Pitch Combinations *ANSI/ASME B1.21M-1997 (R2018)*

Nominal Diameter Choices		Pitch		Nominal Diameter Choices		Pitch	
1st	2nd	Coarse	Fine	1st	2nd	Coarse	Fine
1.6	…	0.35	…	…	52	…	3, 2, 1.5
…	1.8	0.35	…	55	…	…	3, 2, 1.5
2.0	…	0.4	…		56	5.5	3, 2, 1.5
…	2.2	0.45	…	…	58	…	3, 2, 1.5
2.5	…	0.45	…	60		…	3, 2, 1.5
3	…	0.5	…	…	62	…	3, 2, 1.5
3.5	…	0.6	…	…	64	6	3, 2, 1.5
4	…	0.7	…	65	…	…	3, 2, 1.5
…	4.5	0.75	…	…	68	…	3, 2, 1.5
5	…	0.8	…	70	…	…	3, 2, 1.5
6	…	1	0.75	…	72	6	3, 2, 1.5
7	…	1	0.75	75	…	…	3, 2, 1.5
8	…	1.25	1, 0.75	…	76	…	3, 2, 1.5
…	9	1.25	1, 0.75	…	78	…	3[a], 2, 1.5[a]
10	…	1.5	1.25, 1, 0.75	80	…	6	3, 2, 1.5
…	11	1.5	1.25[b], 1, 0.75	…	82	…	3[a], 2, 1.5[a]
12	…	1.75	1.5, 1.25, 1	85	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
14	…	2	1.5, 1.25[c], 1	90	…	6	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	15	…	1.5, 1	95	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
16	…	2	1.5, 1	100	…	6	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	17	…	1.5, 1	105	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
18	…	2.5	2, 1.5, 1	110	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
20	…	2.5	2, 1.5, 1	…	115	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
22	…	2.5	2, 1.5, 1	120	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
24	…	3	2, 1.5, 1	…	125	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	25	…	2, 1.5, 1	130	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	26	…	1.5	…	135	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
27	…	3	2, 1.5, 1	140	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	28	…	2, 1.5, 1	…	145	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
30	…	3.5	3, 2, 1.5, 1	150	…	…	3, 2, 1.5[a]
…	32	…	2, 1.5	…	155	…	3
33	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	160	…	…	3
…	35	…	1.5	…	165	…	3
36	…	4	3, 2, 1.5	170	…	…	3
…	38	…	1.5	…	175	…	3
39	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	180	…	…	3
…	40	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	185	…	3
.	42	4.5	3, 2, 1.5	190	…	…	3
45	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	195	…	3
…	48	5	3, 2, 1.5	200	…	…	3
50	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	…	…	…

[a] Not included in ISO 261.

[b] Only for aircraft control cable fittings.

[c] Only for spark plugs for engines.

All dimensions are in millimeters. Pitches in parentheses ( ) are to be avoided as far as possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. ANSI Standard Metric Screw Threads MJ Profile, Diameter-Pitch Combinations for Aerospace *ANSI/ASME B1.21M-1997 (R2018)*

Aerospace Screws, Bolts and Nuts								Aerospace Fluid System Fittings					
Nom. Size[a]	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch	Nom. Size	Pitch
1.6	0.35	5	0.8	14	1.5	27	2	8	1	20	1.5	36	1.5
2	0.4	6	1	16	1.5	30	2	10	1	22	1.5	39	1.5
2.5	0.45	7	1	18	1.5	33	2	12	1.25	24	1.5	42	2
3	0.5	8	1	20	1.5	36	2	14	1.5	27	1.5	48	2
3.5	0.6	10	1.25	22	1.5	39	2	16	1.5	30	1.5	50	2
4	0.7	12	1.25	24	2	…	…	18	1.5	33	1.5	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

[a] For threads smaller than 1.6 mm nominal size, use miniature screw threads (ANSI B1.10M).

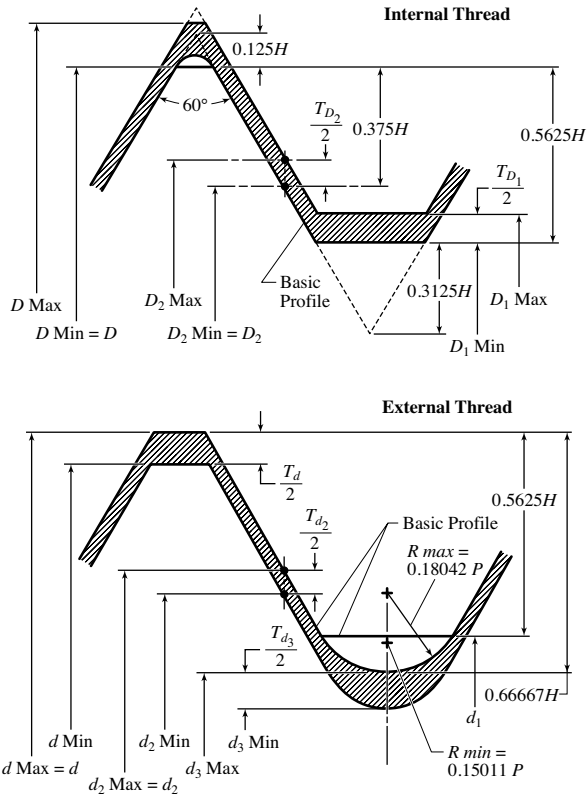


Fig. 1. Internal MJ Thread Basic and Design Profiles (Top) and External MJ Thread Basic and Design Profiles (Bottom) Showing Tolerance Zones

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerances: The thread tolerance system is based on ISO 965/1, *Metric Screw thread System of Tolerance Positions and Grades*. Tolerances are positive for internal threads and negative for external threads, that is, in the direction of minimum material.

For aerospace applications, except for fluid fittings, tolerance classes 4H5H or 4G6G and 4g6g should be used. These classes approximate classes 3B/3A in the inch system. Aerospace fluid fittings use classes 4H5H or 4H6H and 4g6g.

Tolerance classes 4G5G or 4G6G and 4g6g are provided for use when thread allowances are required. These classes provide a slightly tighter fit than the inch classes 2B/2A at minimum material condition.

Additional tolerance classes 6H/6g are included in this Standard to provide appropriate product selection based on general applications. These classes and the selection of standard diameter/pitch combinations are the same as those provided for the M profile metric screw threads in ANSI/ASME B1.13M. Classes 6H/6g result in a slightly looser fit than inch classes 2B/2A at minimum material condition.

Symbols: Standard symbols appearing in Fig. 1 are:

D = Basic major diameter of internal thread

D_2 = Basic pitch diameter of internal thread

D_1 = Basic minor diameter of internal thread

d = Basic major diameter of external thread

d_2 = Basic pitch diameter of external thread

d_1 = Basic minor diameter of internal thread

d_3 = Diameter to bottom of external thread root radius

H = Height of fundamental triangle

P = Pitch

Basic Designations: The aerospace metric screw thread is designated by the letters "MJ" to identify the metric J thread form, followed by the nominal size and pitch in millimeters (separated by the sign "×") and followed by the tolerance class (separated by a dash from the pitch). Unless otherwise specified in the designation, the thread helix is right hand.

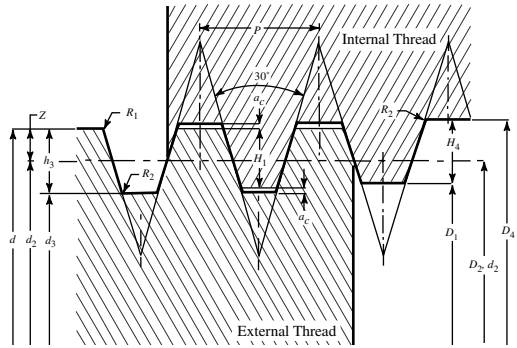
Example: MJ6 × 1 – 4h6h

For further details concerning limiting dimensions, allowances for coating and plating, modified and special threads, etc., reference should be made to the Standard.

Trapezoidal Metric Thread

Comparison of ISO and DIN Standards.—ISO metric trapezoidal screw threads standard, ISO 2904-1977, describes the system of general purpose metric threads for use in mechanisms and structures. The standard is in basic agreement with trapezoidal metric thread DIN 103. The DIN 103 standard applies a particular pitch for a particular diameter of thread, but the ISO standard applies a variety of pitches for a particular diameter. In ISO 2904-1977, the same clearance is applied to both the major diameter and minor diameter, but in DIN 103 the clearance in the minor diameter is two or three times greater than clearance in the major diameter. A comparison of DIN 103 is given in Table 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Metric Trapezoidal Thread, ISO 2904

Terminology: The term "bolt threads" is used for external screw threads, the term "nut threads" for internal screw threads.

Calculation: The values given in the International standards have been calculated by using the following formulas:

$$H_1 = 0.5P \qquad H_4 = H_1 + a_c = 0.5P + a_c \qquad H_3 = H_1 + a_c = 0.5P + a_c$$

$$D_4 = d + 2a_c \qquad Z = 0.25P = H_1/2 \qquad D_1 = d - 2H_1 = d - p$$

$$D_3 = D - 2h_3 \qquad d_2 = D_2 = d - 2Z = d - 0.5P \qquad R_{1max.} = 0.5a_c \quad R_{2max.} = a_c$$

where a_c = clearance on the crest; D = major diameter for nut threads; D_2 = pitch diameter for nut threads; D_1 = minor diameter for nut threads; d = major diameter for bolt threads = nominal diameter; d_2 = pitch diameter for bolt threads; d_3 = minor diameter for bolt threads; h_1 = Height of overlapping; h_4 = height of nut threads; h_3 = height of bolt threads; and, P = pitch.

Table 1. Comparison of ISO Metric Trapezoidal Screw Thread *ISO 2904-1977* **and Trapezoidal Metric Screw Thread** *DIN 103*

	ISO 2904	DIN 103	Comment
Nominal Diameter	D	D_S	
Pitch	p	p	Same
Clearances (Bolt Circle)	a_c	b	Same
Clearances (Nut Circle)	a_c	a	Not same
Height of Overlapping	h_1	h_e	Same
Bolt Circle			
	$h_3 = 0.50P + a_c$	$h_s = 0.50P + a$	Same
	$h_{as} = 0.25p$	$z = 0.25p$	Same
Minor diameter for external thread	$D_3 = d - 2h_3$	$k_s = d - 2h_s$	Same
Pitch diameter for external thread	$D_2 = d - 2h_{as}$	$d_2 = d - 2z$	Same
Nut Circle			
Basic major diameter for nut thread	$D_4 = d + 2a_c$	$d_n = d + a + b$	Not same
Height of internal thread	$h_4 = h_3$	$h_n = h_3 + a$	Not same
Minor diameter of internal thread	$D_1 = D - 2h_1$	$K_n = D_n - 2h_n$	Not same

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. ISO Metric Trapezoidal Screw Thread *ISO 2904-1977*

Nominal Diameter, d			Pitch, P	Pitch Diam. $d_2 = D_2$	Major Diam. D_4	Minor Diameter	
						d_3	D_1
8			1.5	7.250	8.300	6.200	6.500
	9		1.5	8.250	9.300	7.200	7.500
			2	8.000	9.500	6.500	7.000
10			1.5	9.250	10.300	8.200	8.500
			2	9.000	10.500	7.500	8.000
	11		2	10.000	11.500	8.500	9.000
			3	9.500	11.500	7.500	8.000
12			2	11.000	12.500	9.500	10.000
			3	10.500	12.500	8.500	9.000
	14		2	13.000	14.500	11.500	12.000
			3	12.500	14.500	10.500	11.000
16			2	15.000	16.500	13.500	14.000
			3	14.500	16.500	12.500	13.000
	18		2	17.000	18.500	15.500	16.000
			4	16.000	18.500	13.500	14.000
20			2	19.000	20.500	17.500	18.000
			4	18.000	20.500	15.500	16.000
	22		3	20.500	22.500	18.500	19.000
			5	19.500	22.500	16.500	17.000
			8	18.000	23.000	13.000	14.000
24			3	22.500	24.500	20.500	21.000
			5	21.500	24.500	18.500	19.000
			8	20.000	25.000	15.000	16.000
	26		3	24.500	26.500	22.500	23.000
			5	23.500	26.500	20.500	21.000
			8	22.000	27.000	17.000	18.000
28			3	26.500	28.500	24.500	25.000
			5	25.500	28.500	22.500	23.000
			8	24.000	29.000	19.000	20.000
	30		3	28.500	30.500	26.500	27.000
			6	27.000	31.000	23.000	24.000
			10	25.000	31.000	19.000	20.000
32			3	30.500	32.500	28.500	29.000
			6	29.000	33.000	25.000	26.000
			10	27.000	33.000	21.000	22.000
	34		3	32.500	34.500	30.500	31.000
			6	31.000	35.000	27.000	28.000
			10	29.000	35.000	23.000	24.000
36			3	34.500	36.500	32.500	33.000
			6	33.000	37.000	29.000	30.000
			10	31.000	37.000	25.000	26.000
	38		3	36.500	38.500	34.500	35.000
			7	34.500	39.000	30.000	31.000
			10	33.000	39.000	27.000	28.000
40			3	38.500	40.500	36.500	37.000
			7	36.500	41.000	32.000	33.000
			10	35.000	41.000	29.000	30.000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **ISO Metric Trapezoidal Screw Thread** *ISO 2904-1977*

Nominal Diameter, d			Pitch, P	Pitch Diam. $d_2 = D_2$	Major Diam. D_4	Minor Diameter	
						d_3	D_1
	42		3	40.500	42.500	38.500	39.000
			7	38.500	43.000	34.000	35.000
			10	37.000	43.000	31.000	32.000
44			3	42.500	44.500	40.500	41.000
			7	40.500	45.000	36.000	37.000
			12	38.000	45.000	31.000	32.000
	46		3	44.500	46.500	42.500	43.000
			8	42.000	47.000	37.000	38.000
			12	40.000	47.000	33.000	34.000
48			3	46.500	48.500	44.500	45.000
			8	44.000	49.000	39.000	40.000
			12	42.000	49.000	35.000	36.000
	50		3	48.500	50.500	46.500	47.000
			8	46.000	51.000	41.000	42.000
			12	44.000	51.000	37.000	38.000
52			3	50.500	52.500	48.500	49.000
			8	48.000	53.000	43.000	44.000
			12	46.000	53.000	39.000	40.000
	55		3	53.500	55.500	51.500	52.000
			9	50.500	56.000	45.000	46.000
			14	48.000	57.000	39.000	41.000
60			3	58.500	60.500	56.500	57.000
			9	55.500	61.000	50.000	51.000
			14	53.000	62.000	44.000	46.000
	65		4	63.000	65.500	60.500	61.000
			10	60.000	66.000	54.000	55.000
			16	57.000	67.000	47.000	49.000
70			4	68.000	70.500	65.500	66.000
			10	65.000	71.000	59.000	60.000
			16	62.000	72.000	52.000	54.000
	75		4	73.000	75.500	70.500	71.000
			10	70.000	76.000	64.000	65.000
			16	67.000	77.000	57.000	59.000
80			4	78.000	80.500	75.500	76.000
			10	75.000	81.000	69.000	70.000
			16	72.000	82.000	62.000	64.000
	85		4	83.000	85.500	80.500	81.000
			12	79.000	86.000	72.000	73.000
			18	76.000	87.000	65.000	67.000
90			4	88.000	90.500	85.500	86.000
			12	84.000	91.000	77.000	78.000
			18	81.000	92.000	70.000	72.000
	95		4	93.000	95.500	90.500	91.000
	95		12	89.000	96.000	82.000	83.000
			18	86.000	97.000	75.000	77.000
100			4	98.000	100.500	95.500	96.000
			12	94.000	101.000	87.000	88.000
			20	90.000	102.000	78.000	80.000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **ISO Metric Trapezoidal Screw Thread** *ISO 2904-1977*

Nominal Diameter, d			Pitch, P	Pitch Diam. $d_2 = D_2$	Major Diam. D_4	Minor Diameter	
						d_3	D_1
		105	4	103.000	105.500	100.500	101.000
			12	103.000	106.000	92.000	93.000
			20	95.000	107.000	83.000	85.000
	110		4	108.000	110.500	105.500	106.000
			12	104.000	111.000	97.000	98.000
			20	100.000	112.000	88.000	90.000
		115	6	112.000	116.000	108.000	109.000
			14	112.000	117.000	99.000	101.000
			22	104.000	117.000	91.000	93.000
120			6	117.000	121.000	113.000	114.000
			14	113.000	122.000	104.000	106.000
			22	109.000	122.000	96.000	98.000
		125	6	122.000	126.000	118.000	119.000
			14	122.000	127.000	109.000	111.000
			22	114.000	127.000	101.000	103.000
	130		6	127.000	131.000	123.000	124.000
			14	123.000	132.000	114.000	116.000
			22	119.000	132.000	106.000	108.000
		135	6	132.000	136.000	128.000	129.000
			14	132.000	137.000	119.000	121.000
			24	123.000	137.000	109.000	111.000
140			6	137.000	141.000	133.000	134.000
			14	133.000	142.000	124.000	126.000
			24	128.000	142.000	114.000	116.000
		145	6	142.000	146.000	138.000	139.000
			14	142.000	147.000	129.000	131.000
			24	133.000	147.000	119.000	121.000
	150		6	147.000	151.000	143.000	144.000
			16	142.000	152.000	132.000	134.000
			24	138.000	152.000	124.000	126.000
		155	6	152.000	156.000	148.000	149.000
			16	152.000	157.000	137.000	139.000
			24	143.000	157.000	129.000	131.000
160			6	157.000	161.000	153.000	154.000
			16	152.000	162.000	142.000	144.000
			28	146.000	162.000	130.000	132.000
		165	6	162.000	166.000	158.000	159.000
			16	162.000	167.000	147.000	149.000
			28	151.000	167.000	135.000	137.000
	170		6	167.000	171.000	163.000	164.000
			16	162.000	172.000	152.000	154.000
			28	156.000	172.000	140.000	142.000
		175	8	171.000	176.000	166.000	167.000
			16	171.000	177.000	157.000	159.000
			28	161.000	177.000	145.000	147.000
180			8	176.000	181.000	171.000	172.000
			18	171.000	182.000	160.000	162.000
			28	166.000	182.000	150.000	152.000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **ISO Metric Trapezoidal Screw Thread** *ISO 2904-1977*

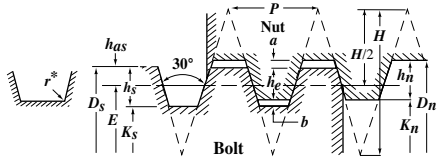
Nominal Diameter, d			Pitch, P	Pitch Diam. $d_2 = D_2$	Major Diam. D_4	Minor Diameter	
						d_3	D_1
		185	8	181.000	186.000	176.000	177.000
			18	181.000	187.000	165.000	167.000
			32	169.000	187.000	151.000	153.000
	190		8	186.000	191.000	181.000	182.000
			18	181.000	192.000	170.000	172.000
			32	174.000	192.000	156.000	158.000
		195	8	191.000	196.000	186.000	187.000
			18	191.000	197.000	175.000	177.000
			32	179.000	197.000	161.000	163.000
200			8	196.000	201.000	191.000	192.000
			18	191.000	202.000	180.000	182.000
			32	184.000	202.000	166.000	168.000
	210		8	206.000	211.000	201.000	202.000
			20	200.000	212.000	188.000	190.000
			36	192.000	212.000	172.000	174.000
220			8	216.000	221.000	211.000	212.000
			20	210.000	222.000	198.000	200.000
			36	202.000	222.000	182.000	184.000
	230		8	226.000	231.000	221.000	222.000
			20	220.000	232.000	208.000	210.000
			36	212.000	232.000	192.000	194.000
240			8	236.000	241.000	231.000	232.000
			22	229.000	242.000	216.000	218.000
			36	222.000	242.000	202.000	204.000
	250		12	244.000	251.000	237.000	238.000
			22	239.000	252.000	226.000	228.000
			40	230.000	252.000	208.000	210.000
260			12	254.000	261.000	247.000	248.000
			22	249.000	262.000	236.000	238.000
			40	240.000	262.000	218.000	220.000
	270		12	264.000	271.000	257.000	258.000
			24	258.000	272.000	244.000	246.000
			40	250.000	272.000	228.000	230.000
280			12	274.000	281.000	267.000	268.000
			24	268.000	282.000	254.000	256.000
			40	260.000	282.000	238.000	240.000
	290		12	284.000	291.000	277.000	278.000
			24	278.000	292.000	264.000	266.000
			44	268.000	292.000	244.000	246.000
300			12	294.000	301.000	287.000	288.000
			24	288.000	302.000	274.000	276.000
			44	278.000	302.000	254.000	256.000

All dimensions in millimeters

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Trapezoidal Metric Thread—Preferred Basic Sizes *DIN 103*

$H = 1.866P$
$h_s = 0.5P + a$
$h_e = 0.5P + a - b$
$h_n = 0.5P + 2a - b$
$h_{as} = 0.25P$



Nom. & Major Diam. of Bolt, D_s	Pitch, P	Pitch Diam., E	Depth of Engage-ment, h_e	Clearance		Bolt		Nut		
				a	b	Minor Diam., K_s	Depth of Thread, h_s	Major Diam., D_n	Minor Diam., K_n	Depth of Thread, h_n
10	3	8.5	1.25	0.25	0.5	6.5	1.75	10.5	7.5	1.50
12	3	10.5	1.25	0.25	0.5	8.5	1.75	12.5	9.5	1.50
14	4	12	1.75	0.25	0.5	9.5	2.25	14.5	10.5	2.00
16	4	14	1.75	0.25	0.5	11.5	2.25	16.5	12.5	2.00
18	4	16	1.75	0.25	0.5	13.5	2.25	18.5	14.5	2.00
20	4	18	1.75	0.25	0.5	15.5	2.25	20.5	16.5	2.00
22	5	19.5	2	0.25	0.75	16.5	2.75	22.5	18	2.00
24	5	21.5	2	0.25	0.75	18.5	2.75	24.5	20	2.25
26	5	23.5	2	0.25	0.75	20.5	2.75	26.5	22	2.25
28	5	25.5	2	0.25	0.75	22.5	2.75	28.5	24	2.25
30	6	27	2.5	0.25	0.75	23.5	3.25	30.5	25	2.75
32	6	29	2.5	0.25	0.75	25.5	3.25	32.5	27	2.75
36	6	33	2.5	0.25	0.75	29.5	3.25	36.5	31	2.75
40	7	36.5	3	0.25	0.75	32.5	3.75	40.5	34	3.25
44	7	40.5	3	0.25	0.75	36.5	3.75	44.5	38	3.25
48	8	44	3.5	0.25	0.75	39.5	4.25	48.5	41	3.75
50	8	46	3.5	0.25	0.75	41.5	4.25	50.5	43	3.75
52	8	48	3.5	0.25	0.75	43.5	4.25	52.5	45	3.75
55	9	50.5	4	0.25	0.75	45.5	4.75	55.5	47	4.25
60	9	55.5	4	0.25	0.75	50.5	4.75	60.5	52	4.25
65	10	60	4.5	0.25	0.75	54.5	5.25	65.5	56	4.75
70	10	65	4.5	0.25	0.75	59.5	5.25	70.5	61	4.75
75	10	70	4.5	0.25	0.75	64.5	5.25	75.5	66	4.75
80	10	75	4.5	0.25	0.75	69.5	5.25	80.5	71	4.75
85	12	79	5.5	0.25	0.75	72.5	6.25	85.5	74	5.75
90	12	84	5.5	0.25	0.75	77.5	6.25	90.5	79	5.75
95	12	89	5.5	0.25	0.75	82.5	6.25	95.5	84	5.75
100	12	94	5.5	0.25	0.75	87.5	6.25	100.5	89	5.75
110	12	104	5.5	0.25	0.75	97.5	6.25	110.5	99	5.75
120	14	113	6	0.5	1.5	105	7.5	121	108	6.5
130	14	123	6	0.5	1.5	115	7.5	131	118	6.5
140	14	133	6	0.5	1.5	125	7.5	141	128	6.5
150	16	142	7	0.5	1.5	133	8.5	151	136	7.5
160	16	152	7	0.5	1.5	143	8.5	161	146	7.5
170	16	162	7	0.5	1.5	153	8.5	171	156	7.5
180	18	171	8	0.5	1.5	161	9.5	181	164	8.5
190	18	181	8	0.5	1.5	171	9.5	191	174	8.5
200	18	191	8	0.5	1.5	181	9.5	201	184	8.5
210	20	200	9	0.5	1.5	189	10.5	211	192	9.5
220	20	210	9	0.5	1.5	199	10.5	221	202	9.5
230	20	220	9	0.5	1.5	209	10.5	231	212	9.5
240	22	229	10	0.5	1.5	217	11.5	241	220	10.5
250	22	239	10	0.5	1.5	227	11.5	251	230	10.5
260	22	249	10	0.5	1.5	237	11.5	261	240	10.5
270	24	258	11	0.5	1.5	245	12.5	271	248	11.5
280	24	268	11	0.5	1.5	255	12.5	281	258	11.5
290	24	278	11	0.5	1.5	265	12.5	291	268	11.5
300	26	287	12	0.5	1.5	273	13.5	301	276	12.5

All dimensions are in millimeters.

*Roots are rounded to a radius, r, equal to 0.25 mm for pitches of from 3 to 12 mm inclusive and 0.5 mm for pitches of from 14 to 26 mm inclusive for power transmission.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ISO Miniature Screw Threads

ISO Miniature Screw Threads, Basic Form *ISO/R 1501:1970*

Pitch P	$H = 0.866025P$	$0.554256H = 0.48P$	$0.375H = 0.324760P$	$0.320744H = 0.320744P$	$0.125H = 0.108253P$
0.08	0.069282	0.038400	0.025981	0.022222	0.008660
0.09	0.077942	0.043200	0.029228	0.024999	0.009743
0.1	0.086603	0.048000	0.032476	0.027777	0.010825
0.125	0.108253	0.060000	0.040595	0.034722	0.013532
0.15	0.129904	0.072000	0.048714	0.041666	0.016238
0.175	0.151554	0.084000	0.056833	0.048610	0.018944
0.2	0.173205	0.096000	0.064952	0.055554	0.021651
0.225	0.194856	0.108000	0.073071	0.062499	0.024357
0.25	0.216506	0.120000	0.081190	0.069443	0.027063
0.3	0.259808	0.144000	0.097428	0.083332	0.032476

ISO Miniature Screw Threads, Basic Dimensions *ISO/R 1501:1970*

Nominal Diameter	Pitch P	Major Diameter D, d	Pitch Diameter D_2, d_2	Minor Diameter D_1, d_1
0.30	0.080	0.300000	0.248039	0.223200
0.35	0.090	0.350000	0.291543	0.263600
0.40	0.100	0.400000	0.335048	0.304000
0.45	0.100	0.450000	0.385048	0.354000
0.50	0.125	0.500000	0.418810	0.380000
0.55	0.125	0.550000	0.468810	0.430000
0.60	0.150	0.600000	0.502572	0.456000
0.70	0.175	0.700000	0.586334	0.532000
0.80	0.200	0.800000	0.670096	0.608000
0.90	0.225	0.900000	0.753858	0.684000
1.00	0.250	1.000000	0.837620	0.760000
1.10	0.250	1.100000	0.937620	0.860000
1.20	0.250	1.200000	1.037620	0.960000
1.40	0.300	1.400000	1.205144	1.112000

D and *d* dimensions refer to the nut (internal) and screw (external) threads, respectively.

British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads

BS 3643:Part 1:1981 (R2004) provides principles and basic data for ISO metric screw threads. It covers single-start, parallel screw threads of from 1 to 300 millimeters in diameter. Part 2 of the Standard gives the specifications for selected limits of size.

Basic Profile.—The ISO basic profile for triangular screw threads is shown in Fig. 1. and basic dimensions of this profile are given in Table 1.

Table 1. British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads
Basic Profile Dimensions *BS 3643:1981 (R2004)*

Pitch P	$H = 0.86603P$	$\frac{5}{8}H = 0.54127P$	$\frac{3}{16}H = 0.32476P$	$H/4 = 0.21651P$	$H/8 = 0.10825P$
0.2	0.173 205	0.108 253	0.064 952	0.043 301	0.021 651
0.25	0.216 506	0.135 316	0.081 190	0.054 127	0.027 063
0.3	0.259 808	0.162 380	0.097 428	0.064 952	0.032 476
0.35	0.303 109	0.189 443	0.113 666	0.075 777	0.037 889
0.4	0.346 410	0.216 506	0.129 904	0.086 603	0.043 301
0.45	0.389 711	0.243 570	0.146 142	0.097 428	0.048 714
0.5	0.433 013	0.270 633	0.162 380	0.108 253	0.054 127
0.6	0.519 615	0.324 760	0.194 856	0.129 904	0.064 952
0.7	0.606 218	0.378 886	0.227 322	0.151 554	0.075 777

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads Basic Profile Dimensions** *BS 3643:1981 (R2004)*

Pitch P	H = 0.86603P	$\frac{5}{8}H$ = 0.54127P	$\frac{3}{8}H$ = 0.32476P	$H/4$ = 0.21651P	$H/8$ = 0.10825P
0.75	0.649 519	0.405 949	0.243 570	0.162 380	0.081 190
0.8	0.692 820	0.433 013	0.259 808	0.173 205	0.086 603
1	0.866 025	0.541 266	0.324 760	0.216 506	0.108 253
1.25	1.082 532	0.676 582	0.405 949	0.270 633	0.135 316
1.5	1.299 038	0.811 899	0.487 139	0.324 760	0.162 380
1.75	1.515 544	0.947 215	0.568 329	0.378 886	0.189 443
2	1.732 051	1.082 532	0.649 519	0.433 013	0.216 506
2.5	2.165 063	1.353 165	0.811 899	0.541 266	0.270 633
3	2.598 076	1.623 798	0.974 279	0.649 519	0.324 760
3.5	3.031 089	1.894 431	1.136 658	0.757 772	0.378 886
4	3.464 102	2.165 063	1.299 038	0.866 025	0.433 013
4.5	3.897 114	2.435 696	1.461 418	0.974 279	0.487 139
5	4.330 127	2.706 329	1.623 798	1.082 532	0.541 266
5.5	4.763 140	2.976 962	1.786 177	1.190 785	0.595 392
6	5.196 152	3.247 595	1.948 557	1.299 038	0.649 519
8[a]	6.928 203	4.330 127	2.598 076	1.732 051	0.866 025

[a] This pitch is not used in any of the ISO metric standard series.
All dimensions are given in millimeters.

Tolerance System.—The tolerance system defines *tolerance classes* in terms of a combination of a *tolerance grade* (figure) and a *tolerance position* (letter). The tolerance position is defined by the distance between the basic size and the nearest end of the tolerance zone, this distance being known as the *fundamental deviation*, EI, in the case of internal threads, and es in the case of external threads. These tolerance positions with respect to the basic size (zero line) are shown in Fig. 2 and fundamental deviations for nut and bolt threads are given in Table 2.

Table 2. Fundamental Deviations for Nut Threads and Bolt Threads

Pitch P	Nut Thread D_2, D_1		Bolt Thread d, d_2				Pitch P	Nut Thread D_2, D_1		Bolt Thread d, d_2			
	Tolerance Position							Tolerance Position					
	G	H	e	f	g	h		G	H	e	f	g	h
	Fundamental Deviation							Fundamental Deviation					
	EI	EI	es	es	es	es		EI	EI	es	es	es	es
mm	µm	µm	µm	µm	µm	µm	mm	µm	µm	µm	µm	µm	µm
0.2	+17	0	…	…	−17	0	1.25	+28	0	−63	−42	−28	0
0.25	+18	0	…	…	−18	0	1.5	+32	0	−67	−45	−32	0
0.3	+18	0	…	…	−18	0	1.75	+34	0	−71	−48	−34	0
0.35	+19	0	…	−34	−19	0	2	+38	0	−71	−52	−38	0
0.4	+19	0	…	−34	−19	0	2.5	+42	0	−80	−58	−42	0
0.45	+20	0	…	−35	−20	0	3	+48	0	−85	−63	−48	0
0.5	+20	0	−50	−36	−20	0	3.5	+53	0	−90	−70	−53	0
0.6	+21	0	−53	−36	−21	0	4	+60	0	−95	−75	−60	0
0.7	+22	0	−56	−38	−22	0	4.5	+63	0	−100	−80	−63	0
0.75	+22	0	−56	−38	−22	0	5	+71	0	−106	−85	−71	0
0.8	+24	0	−60	−38	−24	0	5.5	+75	0	−112	−90	−75	0
1	+26	0	−60	−40	−26	0	6	+80	0	−118	−95	−80	0

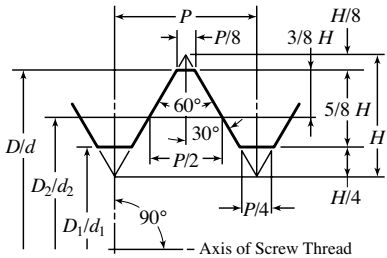
See Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 for meaning of symbols.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerance Grades.—Tolerance grades specified in the Standard for each of the four main screw thread diameters are as follows:

Minor diameter of nut threads (D_1): tolerance grades 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8.
Major diameter of bolt threads (d): tolerance grades 4, 6, and 8.
Pitch diameter of nut threads (D_2): tolerance grades 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8.
Pitch diameter of bolt threads (d_2): tolerance grades 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

Tolerance Positions.—Tolerance positions are G and H for nut threads and e, f, g, and h for bolt threads. The relationship of these tolerance position identifying letters to the amount of fundamental deviation is shown in Table 2.



D = maj. diam. of internal thread
d = maj. diam. of external thread
D_2 = pitch diam. of internal thread
d_2 = pitch diam. of internal thread
D_1 = minor diam. of internal thread
d_1 = minor diam. of external thread
P = Pitch
H = height of fundamental angle

Fig. 1. Basic Profile of ISO Metric Thread

Tolerance Classes.—To reduce the number of gages and tools, the Standard specifies that the tolerance positions and classes shall be chosen from those listed in Table 3 for short, normal, and long lengths of thread engagement. The following rules apply for the choice of tolerance quality: *Fine:* for precision threads when little variation of fit character is needed; *Medium:* for general use; and *Coarse:* for cases where manufacturing difficulties can arise as, for example, when threading hot-rolled bars and long blind holes. If the actual length of thread engagement is unknown, as in the manufacturing of standard bolts, normal is recommended.

Table 3. Tolerance Classes for Nuts and Bolts[a,b,c]

Tolerance Classes for Nuts						
Tolerance Quality	Tolerance Position G			Tolerance Position H		
	Short	Normal	Long	Short	Normal	Long
Fine	…	…	…	4H[b]	5H[b]	6H[b]
Medium	5G[a]	6G[c]	7G[c]	5H[a]	6H[a,d]	7H[a]
Coarse	…	7G[c]	8G[c]	…	7H[b]	8H[b]

Tolerance Classes for Bolts												
Tolelance Quality	Tolerance Position e			Tolerance Position f			Tolerance Position g			Tolerance Position h		
	Short	Normal	Long	Short	Normal	Long	Short	Normal	Long	Short	Normal	Long
Fine	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	3h4h[c]	4h[a]	5h4h[c]
Medium	…	6e[a]	7e6e[c]	…	6f[a]	…	5g6g[c]	6g[a,d]	7g6g[c]	5h6h[c]	6h[b]	7h6h[c]
Coarse	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	8g[b]	9g8g[c]	…	…	…

[a] First choice.
[b] Second choice.
[c] Third choice; these are to be avoided.
[d] For commercial nut and bolt threads.

Note: See Table 4 for short, normal, and long categories. Any of the recommended tolerance classes for nuts can be combined with any of the recommended tolerance classes for bolts with the exception of sizes M1.4 and smaller for which the combination 5H/6h or finer shall be chosen. However, to guarantee a sufficient overlap, the finished components should preferably be made to form the fits H/g, H/h, or G/h.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Lengths of Thread Engagements for Short, Normal, and Long Categories

Basic Major Diameter *d*			Short	Normal		Long	Basic Major Diameter *d*			Short	Normal		Long
			Length of Thread Engagement							Length of Thread Engagement			
Over	Up to and Incl.	Pitch *P*	Up to and Incl.	Over	Up to and Incl.	Over	Over	Up to and Incl.	Pitch *P*	Up to and Incl.	Over	Up to and Incl.	Over
0.99	1.4	0.2	0.5	0.5	1.4	1.4	22.4	45	1	4	4	12	12
		0.25	0.6	0.6	1.7	1.7			1.5	6.3	6.3	19	19
		0.3	0.7	0.7	2	2			2	8.5	8.5	25	25
1.4	2.8	0.2	0.5	0.5	1.5	1.5			3	12	12	36	36
		0.25	0.6	0.6	1.9	1.9			3.5	15	15	45	45
		0.35	0.8	0.8	2.6	2.6			4	18	18	53	53
		0.4	1	1	3	3			4.5	21	21	63	63
		0.45	1.3	1.3	3.8	3.8	45	90	1.5	7.5	7.5	22	22
2.8	5.6	0.35	1	1	3	3			2	9.5	9.5	28	28
		0.5	1.5	1.5	4.5	4.5			3	15	15	45	45
		0.6	1.7	1.7	5	5			4	19	19	56	56
		0.7	2	2	6	6			5	24	24	71	71
		0.75	2.2	2.2	6.7	6.7			5.5	28	28	85	85
		0.8	2.5	2.5	7.5	7.5			6	32	32	95	95
5.6	11.2	0.75	2.4	2.4	7.1	7.1	90	180	2	12	12	36	36
		1	3	3	9	9			3	18	18	53	53
		1.25	4	4	12	12			4	24	24	71	71
		1.5	5	5	15	15			6	36	36	106	106
11.2	22.4	1	3.8	3.8	11	11	180	300	3	20	20	60	60
		1.25	4.5	4.5	13	13			4	26	26	80	80
		1.5	5.6	5.6	16	16			6	40	40	118	118
		1.75	6	6	18	18							
		2	8	8	24	24							
		2.5	10	10	30	30							

All dimensions are given in millimeters

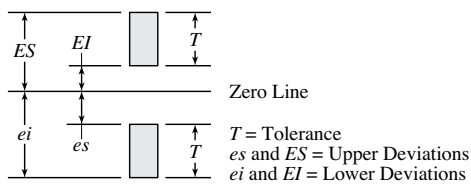


Fig. 2. Tolerance Positions with Respect to Zero Line (Basic Size)

Design Profiles.—The design profiles for ISO metric internal and external screw threads are shown in Fig. 3. These represent the profiles of the threads at their maximum metal condition. It may be noted that the root of each thread is deepened so as to clear the basic flat crest of the other thread. The contact between the thread is thus confined to their sloping flanks. However, for nut threads as well as bolt threads, the actual root contours shall not at any point violate the basic profile.

Designation.—Screw threads complying with the requirements of the Standard shall be designated by the letter M followed by values of the nominal diameter and of the pitch, expressed in millimeters, and separated by the sign ×. *Example:* M6×0.75. The absence of the indication of pitch means that a coarse pitch is specified.

The complete designation of a screw thread consists of a designation for the thread system and size, and a designation for the crest diameter tolerance. Each class designation consists of: a figure indicating the tolerance grade; and a letter indicating the tolerance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

position, capital for nuts, lower case for bolts. If the two class designations for a thread are the same (one for the pitch diameter and one for the crest diameter), it is not necessary to repeat the symbols. As examples, a bolt thread designated M10-6g signifies a thread of 10 mm nominal diameter in the Coarse Thread Series having a tolerance class 6g for both pitch and major diameters. A designation M10 × 1-5g6g signifies a bolt thread of 10 mm nominal diameter having a pitch of 1 mm, a tolerance class 5g for pitch diameter, and a tolerance class 6g for major diameter. A designation M10-6H signifies a nut thread of 10 mm diameter in the Coarse Thread Series having a tolerance class 6H for both pitch and minor diameters.

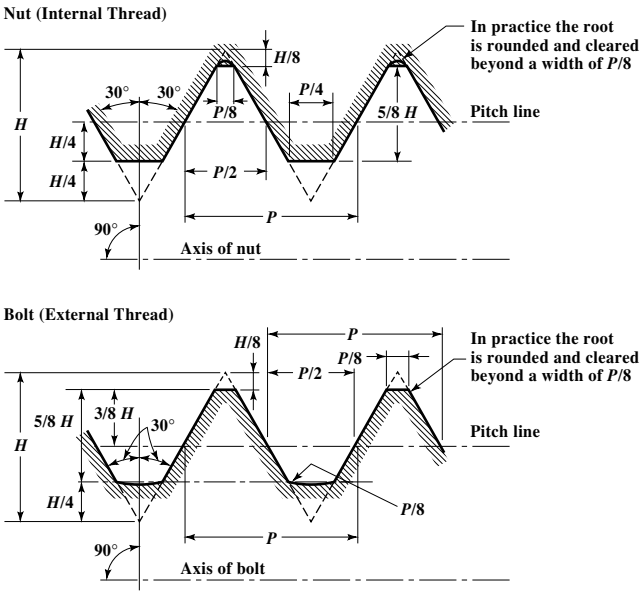


Fig. 3. Maximum Material Profiles for Internal and External Threads

A fit between mating parts is indicated by the nut thread tolerance class followed by the bolt thread tolerance class separated by an oblique stroke. *Examples:* M6-6H/6g and M20 × 2-6H/5g6g. For coated threads, the tolerances apply to the parts before coating, unless otherwise specified. After coating, the actual thread profile shall not at any point exceed the maximum material limits for either tolerance position H or h.

Fundamental Deviation Formulas.—The formulas used to calculate the fundamental deviations in Table 2 are:

$EI_G = +(15 + 11P)$
$EI_H = 0$
$es_e = -(50 + 11P)$ except for threads with $P \leq 0.45$ mm
$es_f = -(30 + 11P)$
$es_g = -(15 + 11P)$
$es_h = 0$

In these formulas, EI and es are expressed in micrometers and P is in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Crest Diameter Tolerance Formulas.—The tolerances for the major diameter of bolt threads (T_d), grade 6, in Table 5, were calculated from the formula:

$$T_d\,(6) = 180\sqrt[3]{P^2} - \frac{3.15}{\sqrt{P}}$$

In this formula, $T_d\,(6)$ is in micrometers and P is in millimeters. For tolerance grades 4 and 8: $T_d\,(4) = 0.63\,T_d\,(6)$ and $T_d\,(8) = 1.6\,T_d\,(6)$, respectively.

The tolerances for the minor diameter of nut threads (T_{D1}), grade 6, in Table 5, were calculated as follows:

For pitches 0.2 to 0.8 mm, $T_{D1}\,(6) = 433P - 190P^{1.22}$.

For pitches 1 mm and coarser, $T_{D1}\,(6) = 230P^{0.7}$.

In these formulas, $T_{D1}\,(6)$ is in micrometers and P is in millimeters. For tolerance grades 4, 5, 7, and 8: $T_{D1}\,(4) = 0.63\,T_{D1}\,(6)$; $T_{D1}\,(5) = 0.8\,T_{D1}\,(6)$; $T_{D1}\,(7) = 1.25\,T_{D1}\,(6)$; and $T_{D1}\,(8) = 1.6\,T_{D1}\,(6)$, respectively.

Table 5. British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads: Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads for Normal Lengths of Engagement *BS 3643: Part 2: 1981*

Nominal Diameter[a]	Pitch		External Threads (Bolts)							Internal Threads (Nuts)[b]					
	Coarse	Fine	Tol. Class	Fund dev.	Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia	Tol. Class	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia	
					Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	Min		Min	Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)
1		0.2	4h	0	1.000	0.036	0.870	0.030	0.717	4H	1.000	0.910	0.040	0.821	0.038
			6g	0.017	0.983	0.056	0.853	0.048	0.682						
	0.25		4h	0	1.000	0.042	0.838	0.034	0.649	4H	1.000	0.883	0.045	0.774	0.045
			6g	0.018	0.982	0.067	0.820	0.053	0.613	5H	1.000	0.894	0.056	0.785	0.056
1.1		0.2	4h	0	1.100	0.036	0.970	0.030	0.817	4H	1.100	1.010	0.040	0.921	0.038
			6g	0.017	1.083	0.056	0.953	0.048	0.782						
	0.25		4h	0	1.100	0.042	0.938	0.034	0.750	4H	1.100	0.983	0.045	0.874	0.045
			6g	0.018	1.082	0.067	0.920	0.053	0.713	5H	1.100	0.994	0.056	0.885	0.056
1.2		0.2	4h	0	1.200	0.036	1.070	0.030	0.917	4H	1.200	1.110	0.040	1.021	0.038
			6g	0.017	1.183	0.056	1.053	0.048	0.882						
	0.25		4h	0	1.200	0.042	1.038	0.034	0.850	4H	1.200	1.083	0.045	0.974	0.045
			6g	0.018	1.182	0.067	1.020	0.053	0.813	5H	1.200	1.094	0.056	0.985	0.056
1.4		0.2	4h	0	1.400	0.036	1.270	0.030	1.117	4H	1.400	1.310	0.040	1.221	0.038
			6g	0.017	1.383	0.056	1.253	0.048	1.082						
	0.3		4h	0	1.400	0.048	1.205	0.036	0.984	4H	1.400	1.253	0.048	1.128	0.053
			6g	0.018	1.382	0.075	1.187	0.056	0.946	5H	1.400	1.265	0.060	1.142	0.067
										6H	1.400	1.280	0.075	1.160	0.085
1.6		0.2	4h	0	1.600	0.036	1.470	0.032	1.315	4H	1.600	1.512	0.042	1.421	0.038
			6g	0.017	1.583	0.056	1.453	0.050	1.280						
	0.35		4h	0	1.600	0.053	1.373	0.040	1.117	4H	1.600	1.426	0.053	1.284	0.063
			6g	0.019	1.581	0.085	1.354	0.063	1.075	5H	1.600	1.440	0.067	1.301	0.080
										6H	1.600	1.458	0.085	1.321	0.100
1.8		0.2	4h	0	1.800	0.036	1.670	0.032	1.515	4H	1.800	1.712	0.042	1.621	0.038
			6g	0.017	1.783	0.056	1.653	0.050	1.480						
	0.35		4h	0	1.800	0.053	1.573	0.040	1.317	4H	1.800	1.626	0.053	1.484	0.063
			6g	0.019	1.781	0.085	1.554	0.063	1.275	5H	1.800	1.640	0.067	1.501	0.080
										6H	1.800	1.658	0.085	1.521	0.100
2		0.25	4h	0	2.000	0.042	1.838	0.036	1.648	4H	2.000	1.886	0.048	1.774	0.045
			6g	0.018	1.982	0.067	1.820	0.056	1.610	5H	2.000	1.898	0.060	1.785	0.056
	0.4		4h	0	2.000	0.060	1.740	0.042	1.452	4H	2.000	1.796	0.056	1.638	0.071
			6g	0.019	1.981	0.095	1.721	0.067	1.408	5H	2.000	1.811	0.071	1.657	0.090
										6H	2.000	1.830	0.090	1.679	0.112
2.2		0.25	4h	0	2.200	0.042	2.038	0.036	1.848	4H	2.200	2.086	0.048	1.974	0.045
			6g	0.018	2.182	0.067	2.020	0.056	1.810	5H	2.200	2.098	0.060	1.985	0.056
	0.45		4h	0	2.200	0.063	1.908	0.045	1.585	4H	2.200	1.968	0.060	1.793	0.080
			6g	0.020	2.180	0.100	1.888	0.071	1.539	5H	2.200	1.983	0.075	1.813	0.100
										6H	2.000	2.003	0.095	1.838	0.125
2.5		0.35	4h	0	2.500	0.053	2.273	0.040	2.017	4H	2.500	2.326	0.053	2.184	0.063
			6g	0.019	2.481	0.085	2.254	0.063	1.975	5H	2.500	2.340	0.067	2.201	0.080
										6H	2.500	2.358	0.085	2.221	0.100
	0.45		4h	0	2.500	0.063	2.208	0.045	1.885	4H	2.500	2.268	0.060	2.093	0.080
			6g	0.020	2.480	0.100	2.188	0.071	1.839	5H	2.500	2.283	0.075	2.113	0.100
										6H	2.500	2.303	0.095	2.138	0.125

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads: Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads for Normal Lengths of Engagement** *BS 3643: Part 2: 1981*

Nominal Diameter[a]	Pitch		External Threads (Bolts)							Internal Threads (Nuts)[b]						
	Coarse	Fine	Tol. Class	Fund dev.	Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia	Tol. Class	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia		
					Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	Min		Min	Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	
3		0.35	4h	0	3.000	0.053	2.773	0.042	2.515	4H	3.000	2.829	0.056	2.684	0.063	
			6g	0.019	2.981	0.085	2.754	0.067	2.471	5H	3.000	2.844	0.071	2.701	0.080	
										6H	3.000	2.863	0.090	2.721	0.100	
	0.5		4h	0	3.000	0.067	2.675	0.048	2.319	5H	3.000	2.755	0.080	2.571	0.112	
			6g	0.020	2.980	0.106	2.655	0.075	2.272	6H	3.000	2.775	0.100	2.599	0.140	
										7H	3.000	2.800	0.125	2.639	0.180	
3.5		0.35	4h	0	3.500	0.053	3.273	0.042	3.015	4H	3.500	3.329	0.056	3.184	0.063	
			6g	0.019	3.481	0.085	3.254	0.067	2.971	5H	3.500	3.344	0.071	3.201	0.080	
										6H	3.500	3.363	0.090	3.221	0.100	
	0.6		4h	0	3.500	0.080	3.110	0.053	2.688	5H	3.500	3.200	0.090	2.975	0.125	
			6g	0.021	3.479	0.125	3.089	0.085	2.635	6H	3.500	3.222	0.112	3.010	0.160	
										7H	3.500	3.250	0.140	3.050	0.200	
4		0.5	4h	0	4.000	0.067	3.675	0.048	3.319	5H	4.000	3.755	0.080	3.571	0.112	
			6g	0.020	3.980	0.106	3.655	0.075	3.272	6H	4.000	3.775	0.100	3.599	0.140	
										7H	4.000	3.800	0.125	3.639	0.180	
	0.7		4h	0	4.000	0.090	3.545	0.056	3.058	5H	4.000	3.640	0.095	3.382	0.140	
			6g	0.022	3.978	0.140	3.523	0.090	3.002	6H	4.000	3.663	0.118	3.422	0.180	
										7H	4.000	3.695	0.150	3.466	0.224	
4.5		0.5	4h	0	4.500	0.067	4.175	0.048	3.819	5H	4.500	4.255	0.080	4.071	0.112	
			6g	0.020	4.480	0.106	4.155	0.075	3.772	6H	4.500	4.275	0.100	4.099	0.140	
										7H	4.500	4.300	0.125	4.139	0.180	
	0.75		4h	0	4.500	0.090	4.013	0.056	3.495	5H	4.500	4.108	0.095	3.838	0.150	
			6g	0.022	4.478	0.140	3.991	0.090	3.439	6H	4.500	4.131	0.118	3.878	0.190	
										7H	4.500	4.163	0.150	3.924	0.236	
5		0.5	4h	0	5.000	0.067	4.675	0.048	4.319	5H	5.000	4.755	0.080	4.571	0.112	
			6g	0.020	4.980	0.106	4.655	0.075	4.272	6H	5.000	4.775	0.100	4.599	0.140	
										7H	5.000	4.800	0.125	4.639	0.180	
	0.8		4h	0	5.000	0.095	4.480	0.060	3.927	5H	5.000	4.580	0.100	4.294	0.160	
			6g	0.024	4.976	0.150	4.456	0.095	3.868	6H	5.000	4.605	0.125	4.334	0.200	
										7H	5.000	4.640	0.160	4.384	0.250	
5.5		0.5	4h	0	5.500	0.067	5.175	0.048	4.819	5H	5.500	5.255	0.080	5.071	0.112	
			6g	0.020	5.480	0.106	5.155	0.075	4.772	6H	5.500	5.275	0.100	5.099	0.140	
										7H	5.500	5.300	0.125	5.139	0.180	
6		0.75	4h	0	6.000	0.090	5.513	0.063	4.988	5H	6.000	5.619	0.106	5.338	0.150	
			6g	0.022	5.978	0.140	5.491	0.100	4.929	6H	6.000	5.645	0.132	5.378	0.190	
										7H	6.000	5.683	0.170	5.424	0.236	
	1		4h	0	6.000	0.112	5.350	0.071	4.663	5H	6.000	5.468	0.118	5.107	0.190	
			6g	0.026	5.974	0.180	5.324	0.112	4.597	6H	6.000	5.500	0.150	5.153	0.236	
			8g	0.026	5.974	0.280	5.324	0.180	4.528	7H	6.000	5.540	0.190	5.217	0.300	
7		0.75	4h	0	7.000	0.090	6.513	0.063	5.988	5H	7.000	6.619	0.106	6.338	0.150	
			6g	0.022	6.978	0.140	6.491	0.100	5.929	6H	7.000	6.645	0.132	6.378	0.190	
										7H	7.000	6.683	0.170	6.424	0.236	
	1		4h	0	7.000	0.112	6.350	0.071	5.663	5H	7.000	6.468	0.118	6.107	0.190	
			6g	0.026	6.974	0.180	6.324	0.112	5.596	6H	7.000	6.500	0.150	6.153	0.236	
			8g	0.026	6.974	0.280	6.324	0.180	5.528	7H	7.000	6.540	0.190	6.217	0.300	
8		1	4h	0	8.000	0.112	7.350	0.071	6.663	5H	8.000	7.468	0.118	7.107	0.190	
			6g	0.026	7.974	0.180	7.324	0.112	6.596	6H	8.000	7.500	0.150	7.153	0.236	
			8g	0.026	7.974	0.280	7.324	0.180	6.528	7H	8.000	7.540	0.190	7.217	0.300	
	1.25		4h	0	8.000	0.132	7.188	0.075	6.343	5H	8.000	7.313	0.125	6.859	0.212	
			6g	0.028	7.972	0.212	7.160	0.118	6.272	6H	8.000	7.348	0.160	6.912	0.265	
			8g	0.028	7.972	0.335	7.160	0.190	6.200	7H	8,000	7.388	0.200	6.982	0.335	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads: Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads for Normal Lengths of Engagement** *BS 3643: Part 2: 1981*

Nominal Diameter[a]	Pitch		External Threads (Bolts)							Internal Threads (Nuts)[b]						
	Coarse	Fine	Tol. Class	Fund dev.	Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia	Tol. Class	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia		
					Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	Min		Min	Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	
9	1.25		4h	0	9.000	0.132	8.188	0.075	7.343	5H	9.000	8.313	0.125	7.859	0.212	
			6g	0.028	8.972	0.212	8.160	0.008	7.272	6H	9.000	8.348	0.160	7.912	0.265	
			8g	0.028	8.972	0.335	8.160	0.190	7.200	7H	9.000	8.388	0.200	7.982	0.335	
10		1.25	4h	0	10.000	0.132	9.188	0.075	8.343	5H	10.000	9.313	0.125	8.859	0.212	
			6g	0.028	9.972	0.212	9.160	0.118	8.272	6H	10.000	9.348	0.160	8.912	0.265	
			8g	0.028	9.972	0.335	9.160	0.190	8.200	7H	10.000	9.388	0.200	8.982	0.335	
	1.5		4h	0	10.000	0.150	9.026	0.085	8.018	5H	10.000	9.166	0.140	8.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	9.968	0.236	8.994	0.132	7.938	6H	10.000	9.206	0.180	8.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	9.968	0.375	8.994	0.212	7.858	7H	10.000	9.250	0.224	8.751	0.375	
11	1.5		4h	0	11.000	0.150	10.026	0.085	9.018	5H	11.000	10.166	0.140	9.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	10.968	0.236	9.994	0.132	8.938	6H	11.000	10.206	0.180	9.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	10.968	0.375	9.994	0.212	8.858	7H	11.000	10.250	0.224	9.751	0.375	
12		1.25	4h	0	12.000	0.132	11.188	0.085	10.333	5H	12.000	11.328	0.140	10.859	0.212	
			6g	0.028	11.972	0.212	11.160	0.132	10.257	6H	12.000	11.398	0.180	10.912	0.265	
			8g	0.028	11.972	0.335	11.160	0.212	10.177	7H	12.000	11.412	0.224	10.985	0.335	
	1.75		4h	0	12.000	0.170	10.863	0.095	9.692	5H	12.000	11.023	0.160	10.371	0.265	
			6g	0.034	11.966	0.265	10.829	0.150	9.602	6H	12.000	11.063	0.200	10.441	0.335	
			8g	0.034	11.966	0.425	10.829	0.236	9.516	7H	12.000	11.113	0.250	10.531	0.425	
14		1.5	4h	0	14.000	0.150	13.026	0.090	12.012	5H	14.000	13.176	0.150	12.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	13.968	0.236	12.994	0.140	11.930	6H	14.000	13.216	0.190	12.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	13.968	0.375	12.994	0.224	11.846	7H	14.000	13.262	0.236	12.751	0.375	
	2		4h	0	14.000	0.180	12.701	0.100	11.369	5H	14.000	12.871	0.170	12.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	13.962	0.280	12.663	0.160	11.271	6H	14.000	12.913	0.212	12.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	13.962	0.450	12.663	0.250	11.181	7H	14.000	12.966	0.265	12.310	0.475	
16		1.5	4h	0	16.000	0.150	15.026	0.090	14.012	5H	16.000	15.176	0.150	14.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	15.968	0.236	14.994	0.140	13.930	6H	16.000	15.216	0.190	14.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	15.968	0.375	14.994	0.224	13.846	7H	16.000	15.262	0.236	14.751	0.375	
	2		4h	0	16.000	0.180	14.701	0.100	13.369	5H	16.000	14.871	0.170	14.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	15.962	0.280	14.663	0.160	13.271	6H	16.000	14.913	0.212	14.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	15.962	0.450	14.663	0.250	13.181	7H	16.000	14.966	0.265	14.310	0.475	
18		1.5	4h	0	18.000	0.150	17.026	0.090	16.012	5H	18.000	17.176	0.150	16.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	17.968	0.236	16.994	0.140	15.930	6H	18.000	17.216	0.190	16.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	17.968	0.375	16.994	0.224	15.846	7H	18.000	17.262	0.236	16.751	0.375	
	2.5		4h	0	18.000	0.212	16.376	0.106	14.730	5H	18.000	16.556	0.180	15.649	0.355	
			6g	0.042	17.958	0.335	16.334	0.170	14.624	6H	18.000	16.600	0.224	15.774	0.450	
			8g	0.042	17.958	0.530	16.334	0.265	14.529	7H	18.000	16.656	0.280	15.854	0.560	
20		1.5	4h	0	20.000	0.150	19.026	0.090	18.012	5H	20.000	19.176	0.150	18.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	19.968	0.236	18.994	0.140	17.930	6H	20.000	19.216	0.190	18.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	19.968	0.375	18.994	0.224	17.846	7H	20.000	19.262	0.236	18.751	0.375	
	2.5		4h	0	20.000	0.212	18.376	0.106	16.730	5H	20.000	18.556	0.180	17.649	0.355	
			6g	0.042	19.958	0.335	18.334	0.170	16.624	6H	20.000	18.600	0.224	17.744	0.450	
			8g	0.042	19.958	0.530	18.334	0.265	16.529	7H	20.000	18.650	0.280	17.854	0.560	
22		1.5	4h	0	22.000	0.150	21.026	0.090	20.012	5H	22.000	21.176	0.150	20.612	0.236	
			6g	0.032	21.968	0.236	20.994	0.140	19.930	6H	22.000	21.216	0.190	20.676	0.300	
			8g	0.032	21.968	0.375	20.994	0.224	19.846	7H	22.000	21.262	0.236	20.751	0.375	
	2.5		4h	0	22.000	0.212	20.376	0.106	18.730	5H	22.000	20.556	0.180	19.649	0.335	
			6g	0.042	21.958	0.335	20.334	0.170	18.624	6H	22.000	20.600	0.224	19.744	0.450	
			8g	0.042	21.958	0.530	20.334	0.265	18.529	7H	22.000	20.656	0.280	19.854	0.560	
24		2	4h	0	24.000	0.180	22.701	0.106	21.363	5H	24.000	22.881	0.180	22.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	23.962	0.280	22.663	0.170	21.261	6H	24.000	22.925	0.224	22.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	23.962	0.450	22.663	0.265	21.166	7H	24.000	22.981	0.280	22.310	0.475	
	3		4h	0	24.000	0.236	22.051	0.125	20.078	5H	24.000	22.263	0.212	21.152	0.400	
			6g	0.048	23.952	0.375	22.003	0.200	19.955	6H	24.000	22.316	0.265	21.252	0.500	
			8g	0.048	23.952	0.600	22.003	0.315	19.840	7H	24.000	22.386	0.335	21.382	0.630	
27		2	4h	0	27.000	0.180	25.701	0.106	24.363	5H	27.000	25.881	0.180	25.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	26.962	0.280	25.663	0.170	24.261	6H	27.000	25.925	0.224	25.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	26.962	0.450	25.663	0.265	24.166	7H	27.000	25.981	0.280	25.310	0.475	
	3		4h	0	27.000	0.236	25.051	0.125	23.078	5H	27.000	25.263	0.212	24.152	0.400	
			6g	0.048	26.952	0.375	25.003	0.200	22.955	6H	27.000	25.316	0.265	24.252	0.500	
			8g	0.048	26.952	0.600	25.003	0.315	22.840	7H	27.000	25.386	0.335	24.382	0.630	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads: Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads for Normal Lengths of Engagement** *BS 3643: Part 2: 1981*

Nominal Diameter[a]	Pitch		External Threads (Bolts)							Internal Threads (Nuts)[b]						
	Coarse	Fine	Tol. Class	Fund dev.	Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia	Tol. Class	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia		
					Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	Min		Min	Max	Tol(−)	Max	Tol(−)	
30		2	4h	0	30.000	0.180	28.701	0.106	27.363	5H	30.000	28.881	0.180	28.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	29.962	0.280	28.663	0.170	27.261	6H	30.000	27.925	0.224	28.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	29.962	0.450	28.663	0.265	27.166	7H	30.000	28.981	0.280	28.310	0.475	
	3.5		4h	0	30.000	0.265	27.727	0.132	25.439	5H	30.000	27.951	0.224	26.661	0.450	
			6g	0.053	29.947	0.425	27.674	0.212	25.305	6H	30.000	28.007	0.280	26.771	0.560	
			8g	0.053	29.947	0.670	27.674	0.335	25.183	7H	30.000	28.082	0.355	26.921	0.710	
33		2	4h	0	33.000	0.180	31.701	0.106	30.363	5H	33.000	31.881	0.180	31.135	0.300	
			6g	0.038	32.962	0.280	31.663	0.170	30.261	6H	33.000	31.925	0.224	31.210	0.375	
			8g	0.038	32.962	0.450	30.663	0.265	30.166	7H	33.000	31.981	0.280	31.310	0.475	
	3.5		4h	0	33.000	0.265	30.727	0.132	28.438	5H	33.000	30.951	0.224	29.661	0.450	
			6g	0.053	32.947	0.425	30.674	0.212	28.305	6H	33.000	31.007	0.280	29.771	0.560	
			8g	0.053	32.947	0.670	30.674	0.335	28.182	7H	33.000	31.082	0.355	29.921	0.710	
36	4		4h	0	36.000	0.300	33.402	0.140	30.798	5H	36.000	33.638	0.236	32.145	0.475	
			6g	0.060	35.940	0.475	33.342	0.224	30.654	6H	36.000	33.702	0.300	32.270	0.600	
			8g	0.060	35.940	0.750	33.342	0.355	30.523	7H	36.000	33.777	0.375	32.420	0.750	
39	4		4h	0	39.000	0.300	36.402	0.140	33.798	5H	39.000	36.638	0.236	35.145	0.475	
			6g	0.060	38.940	0.475	36.342	0.224	33.654	6H	39.000	36.702	0.300	35.270	0.600	
			8g	0.060	38.940	0.750	36.342	0.355	33.523	7H	39.000	36.777	0.375	35.420	0.750	

[a] This table provides coarse- and fine-pitch series data for threads listed in Table 6 for first, second, and third choices. For constant-pitch series and for larger sizes than are shown, refer to the Standard.

[b] The fundamental deviation for internal threads (nuts) is zero for threads in this table.

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Diameter/Pitch Combinations.—Part 1 of BS 3643 provides a choice of diameter/pitch combinations shown here in Table 6. The use of first-choice items is preferred but if necessary, second, then third choice combinations may be selected. If pitches finer than those given in Table 6 are necessary, only the following pitches should be used: 3, 2, 1.5, 1, 0.75, 0.5, 0.35, 0.25, and 0.2 mm. When selecting such pitches it should be noted that there is increasing difficulty in meeting tolerance requirements as the diameter is increased for a given pitch. It is suggested that diameters greater than the following should not be used with the pitches indicated:

Pitch, mm	0.5	0.75	1	1.5	2	3
Maximum Diameter, mm	22	33	80	150	200	300

In cases where it is necessary to use a thread with a pitch larger than 6 mm, in the diameter range of 150 to 300 mm, the 8 mm pitch should be used.

Limits and Tolerances for Finished Uncoated Threads.—Part 2 of BS 3643 specifies the fundamental deviations, tolerances, and limits of size for the tolerance classes 4H, 5H, 6H, and 7H for internal threads (nuts) and 4h, 6g, and 8g for external threads (bolts) for coarse-pitch series within the range of 1 to 68 mm; fine-pitch series within the range of 1 to 33 mm; and constant pitch series within the range of 8 to 300 mm diameter.

The data in Table 5 provide the first, second, and third choice combinations shown in Table 6 except that constant-pitch series threads are omitted. For diameters larger than shown in Table 5, and for constant-pitch series data, refer to the Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. British Standard ISO Metric Screw Threads—Diameter/Pitch Combinations *BS 3643:Part 1:1981 (R2004)*

Nominal Diameter Choices			Coarse Pitch	Fine Pitch	Constant Pitch	Nominal Diameter Choices			Constant Pitch
1st	2nd	3rd				1st	2nd	3rd	
1	…	…	0.25	0.2	…	…	…	70	6, 4, 3, 2, 1.5
…	1.1	…	0.25	0.2	…	72	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2, 1.5
1.2	…	…	0.25	0.2	…	…	…	75	4, 3, 2, 1.5
…	1.4	…	0.3	0.2	…	…	76	…	6, 4, 3, 2, 1.5
1.6	…	…	0.35	0.2	…	…	…	78	2
…	1.8	…	0.35	0.2	…	80	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2, 1.5
2.0	…	…	0.4	0.25	…	…	…	82	2
…	2.2	…	0.45	0.25	…	…	85	…	6, 4, 3, 2
2.5	…	…	0.45	0.35	…	90	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2
3	…	…	0.5	0.35	…	…	95	…	6, 4, 3, 2
…	3.5	…	0.6	0.35	…	100	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2
4	…	…	0.7	0.5	…	…	105	…	6, 4, 3, 2
…	4.5	…	0.75	0.5	…	110	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2
5	…	…	0.8	0.5	…	…	115	…	6, 4, 3, 2
…	…	5.5	…	(0.5)	…	…	120	…	6, 4, 3, 2
6	…	…	1	0.75	…	125	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2
…	7	…	1	0.75	…	…	130	…	6, 4, 3, 2
8	…	…	1.25	1	0.75	…	…	135	6, 4, 3, 2
…	…	9	1.25	…	1, 0.75	140	…	…	6, 4, 3, 2
10	…	…	1.5	1.25	1, 0.75	…	…	145	6, 4, 3, 2
…	…	11	1.5	…	1, 0.75	…	150	…	6, 4, 3, 2
12	…	…	1.75	1.25	1.5, 1	…	…	155	6, 4, 3
…	14	…	2	1.5	1.25[a], 1	160	…	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	15	…	…	1.5, 1	…	…	165	6, 4, 3
16	…	…	2	1.5	1	…	170	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	17	…	…	1.5, 1	…	…	175	6, 4, 3
…	18	…	2.5	1.5	2, 1	180	…	…	6, 4, 3
20	…	…	2.5	1.5	2, 1	…	…	185	6, 4, 3
…	22	…	2.5	1.5	2, 1	…	190	…	6, 4, 3
24	…	…	3	2	1.5, 1	…	…	195	6, 4, 3
…	…	25	…	…	2, 1.5, 1	200	…	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	26	…	…	1.5	…	…	205	6, 4, 3
…	27	…	3	2	1.5, 1	…	210	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	28	…	…	2, 1.5, 1	…	…	215	6, 4, 3
30	…	…	3.5	2	(3), 1.5, 1	220	…	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	32	…	…	2, 1.5	…	…	225	6, 4, 3
…	33	…	3.5	2	(3), 1.5	…	…	230	6, 4, 3
…	…	35[b]	…	…	1.5	…	…	235	6, 4, 3
36	…	…	4	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	240	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	38	…	…	1.5	…	…	245	6, 4, 3
…	39	…	4	…	3, 2, 1.5	250	…	…	6, 4, 3
…	…	40	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	…	255	6, 4
42	45	…	4.5	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	260	…	6, 4
48	…	…	5	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	265	6, 4
…	…	50	…	…	3, 2, 1.5	…	…	270	6, 4
…	52	…	5	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	275	6, 4
…	…	55	…	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	280	…	…	6, 4
56	…	…	5.5	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	285	6, 4
…	…	58	…	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	290	6, 4
…	60	…	5.5	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	295	6, 4
…	…	62	…	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	300	…	6, 4
64	…	…	6	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	…	…
…	…	65	…	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	…	…
…	68	…	6	…	4, 3, 2, 1.5	…	…	…	…

[a] Only for spark plugs for engines.
[b] Only for locking nuts for bearings.
All dimensions are in millimeters. Pitches in parentheses ( ) are to be avoided as far as possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ACME SCREW THREADS

American National Standard Acme Screw Threads

This American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 is a revision of American Standard ANSI/ASME B1.5-1988 and provides for two general applications of Acme threads, namely, General Purpose and Centralizing.

The limits and tolerances in this standard relate to single-start Acme threads, and may be used, if considered suitable, for multi-start Acme threads, which provide fast relative traversing motion when this is necessary. For information on additional allowances for multi-start Acme threads, see later section on page 2056.

General Purpose Acme Threads.—Three classes of General Purpose threads, 2G, 3G, and 4G, are provided in the standard, each having clearance on all diameters for free movement, and may be used in assemblies with the internal thread rigidly fixed and movement of the external thread in a direction perpendicular to its axis limited by its bearing or bearings. It is suggested that external and internal threads of the same class be used together for general purpose assemblies, Class 2G being the preferred choice. If less backlash or end play is desired, Classes 3G and 4G are provided. Class 5G is not recommended for new designs.

Thread Form: The accompanying Fig. 1 shows the thread form of these General Purpose threads, and the formulas accompanying the figure determine their basic dimensions. Table 1 gives the basic dimensions for the most generally used pitches.

Angle of Thread: The angle between the sides of the thread, measured in an axial plane, is 29 degrees. The line bisecting this 29-degree angle shall be perpendicular to the axis of the screw thread.

Thread Series: A series of diameters and associated pitches is recommended in the Standard as preferred. These diameters and pitches have been chosen to meet present needs with the fewest number of items in order to reduce to a minimum the inventory of both tools and gages. This series of diameters and associated pitches is given in Table 3.

Chamfers and Fillets: General Purpose external threads may have the crest corner chamfered to an angle of 45 degrees with the axis to a maximum width of $P/15$, where P is the pitch. This corresponds to a maximum depth of chamfer flat of $0.0945P$.

Basic Diameters: The max major diameter of the external thread is basic and is the nominal major diameter for all classes. The min pitch diameter of the internal thread is basic and is equal to the basic major diameter minus the basic height of the thread, h. The basic minor diameter is the min minor diameter of the internal thread. It is equal to the basic major diameter minus twice the basic thread height, $2h$.

Length of Engagement: The tolerances specified in this standard are applicable to lengths of engagement not exceeding twice the nominal major diameter.

Major and Minor Diameter Allowances: A minimum diametral clearance is provided at the minor diameter of all external threads by establishing the maximum minor diameter 0.020 inch below the basic minor diameter of the nut for pitches of 10 threads per inch and coarser, and 0.010 inch for finer pitches. A minimum diametral clearance at the major diameter is obtained by establishing the minimum major diameter of the internal thread 0.020 inch above the basic major diameter of the screw for pitches of 10 threads per inch and coarser, and 0.010 inch for finer pitches.

Major and Minor Diameter Tolerances: The tolerance on the external thread major diameter is $0.05P$, where P is the pitch, with a minimum of 0.005 inch. The tolerance on the internal thread major diameter is 0.020 inch for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches. The tolerance on the external thread minor diameter is $1.5 \times$ pitch diameter tolerance. The tolerance on the internal thread minor diameter is $0.05P$ with a minimum of 0.005 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI General Purpose Acme Thread Form *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*, **and Stub Acme Screw Thread Form** *ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016)*

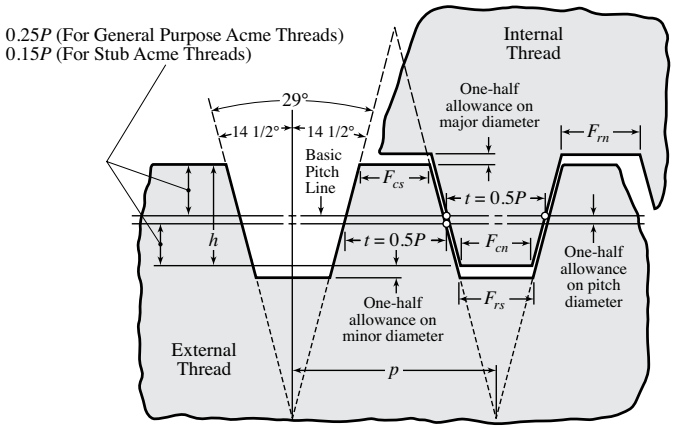


Fig. 1. General Purpose and Stub Acme Thread Forms

Formulas for Basic Dimensions of General Purpose and Stub Acme Screw Threads

General Purpose	Stub Acme Threads
Pitch = $P = 1 \div$ No. threads per inch, n	Pitch = $P = 1 \div$ No. threads per inch, n
Basic thread height $h = 0.5P$	Basic thread height $h = 0.3P$
Basic thread thickness $t = 0.5P$	Basic thread thickness $t = 0.5P$
Basic flat at crest $F_{cn} = 0.3707P$ (internal thread)	Basic flat at crest $F_{cn} = 0.4224P$ (internal thread)
Basic flat at crest $F_{cs} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (pitch dia. allowance on ext. thd.)	Basic flat at crest $F_{cs} = 0.4224P - 0.259 \times$ (pitch dia. allowance on ext. thread)
$F_{rn} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (major dia. allowance on internal thread)	$F_{rn} = 0.4224P - 0.259 \times$ (major dia. allowance on internal thread)
$F_{rs} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (minor dia. allowance on ext. thread – pitch dia. allowance on ext. thread)	$F_{rs} = 0.4224P - 0.259 \times$ (minor dia. allowance on ext. thread – pitch dia. allowance on ext. thread)

Pitch Diameter Allowances and Tolerances: Allowances on the pitch diameter of General Purpose Acme threads are given in Table 4. Pitch diameter tolerances are given in Table 5. The ratios of the pitch diameter tolerances of Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G, General Purpose threads are 3.0, 1.4, and 1, respectively.

An increase of 10 percent in the allowance is recommended for each inch, or fraction thereof, that the length of engagement exceeds two diameters.

Application of Tolerances: The tolerances specified are designed to ensure interchangeability and maintain a high grade of product. The tolerances on diameters of the internal thread are plus, being applied from minimum sizes to above the minimum sizes. The tolerances on diameters of the external thread are minus, being applied from the maximum sizes to below the maximum sizes. The pitch diameter (or thread thickness) tolerances for an external or internal thread of a given class are the same. The thread thickness tolerance is 0.259 times the pitch diameter tolerance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Limiting Dimensions: Limiting dimensions of General Purpose Acme screw threads in the recommended series are given in Table 2b and Table 2c. These limits are based on the formulas in Table 2a.

For combinations of pitch and diameter other than those in the recommended series, the formulas in Table 2a and the data in Table 4 and Table 5 make it possible to readily determine the limiting dimensions required.

A diagram showing the disposition of allowances, tolerances, and crest clearances for General Purpose Acme threads appears on page 2055.

Stress Area of General Purpose Acme Threads: For computing the tensile strength of the thread section, the minimum stress area based on the mean of the minimum pitch diameter d_2 min. and the minimum minor diameter d_1 min. of the external thread is used:

$$\text{Stress Area} = 3.1416\left(\frac{d_2\text{min.} + d_1\text{min.}}{4}\right)^2$$

where d_2 min. and d_1 min. may be computed by Formulas 4 and 6, Table 2a or taken from Table 2b or Table 2c.

Shear Area of General Purpose Acme Threads: For computing the shear area per inch length of engagement of the external thread, the maximum minor diameter of the internal thread D_1 max., and the minimum pitch diameter of the external thread d_2 min., Table 2b or Table 2c, or Formulas 12 and 4, Table 2a, are used:

$$\text{Shear Area} = 3.1416D_1\,\text{max.}\left[0.5 + n\tan 14\tfrac{1}{2}^\circ(d_2\text{min.} - D_1\,\text{max.})\right]$$

Acme Thread Abbreviations.—The following abbreviations are recommended for use on drawings and in specifications, and on tools and gages:

ACME = Acme threads
G = General Purpose
C = Centralizing
P = pitch
L = lead
LH = left hand

Designation of General Purpose Acme Threads.—The examples listed below are given here to show how General Purpose Acme threads are designated on drawings and tools:

1.750-4 ACME-2G indicates a General Purpose Class 2G Acme thread of 1.750-inch major diameter, 4 threads per inch, single thread, right hand. The same thread, but left hand, is designated 1.750-4 ACME-2G-LH.

2.875-0.4*P*-0.8*L*-ACME-3G indicates a General Purpose Class 3G Acme thread of 2.875-inch major diameter, pitch 0.4 inch, lead 0.8 inch, double thread, right hand.

Multiple Start Acme Threads.—The tabulated diameter-pitch data with allowances and tolerances relate to single-start threads. These data, as tabulated, may be and often are used for two-start Class 2G threads but this usage generally requires reduction of the full working tolerances to provide a greater allowance or clearance zone between the mating threads to assure satisfactory assembly.

When the class of thread requires smaller working tolerances than the 2G class or when threads with 3, 4, or more starts are required, some additional allowances or increased tolerances or both may be needed to ensure adequate working tolerances and satisfactory assembly of mating parts.

It is suggested that the allowances shown in Table 4 be used for all external threads and that allowances be applied to internal threads in the following ratios: for two-start threads, 50 percent of the allowances shown in the Class 2G, 3G and 4G columns of Table 4; for three-start threads, 75 percent of these allowances; and for four-start threads, 100 percent of these same values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. American National Standard General Purpose Acme Screw Thread Form—Basic Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Thds. per Inch n	Pitch, $P = 1/n$	Height of Thread (Basic), $h = P/2$	Total Height of Thread, $h_s = P/2 + ½$ allowance[a]	Thread Thickness (Basic), $t = P/2$	Width of Flat	
					Crest of Internal Thread (Basic), $F_{cn} = 0.3707P$	Root of Internal Thread, F_{rn} $0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ allowance[a]
16	0.06250	0.03125	0.0362	0.03125	0.0232	0.0206
14	0.07143	0.03571	0.0407	0.03571	0.0265	0.0239
12	0.08333	0.04167	0.0467	0.04167	0.0309	0.0283
10	0.10000	0.05000	0.0600	0.05000	0.0371	0.0319
8	0.12500	0.06250	0.0725	0.06250	0.0463	0.0411
6	0.16667	0.08333	0.0933	0.08333	0.0618	0.0566
5	0.20000	0.10000	0.1100	0.10000	0.0741	0.0689
4	0.25000	0.12500	0.1350	0.12500	0.0927	0.0875
3	0.33333	0.16667	0.1767	0.16667	0.1236	0.1184
2½	0.40000	0.20000	0.2100	0.20000	0.1483	0.1431
2	0.50000	0.25000	0.2600	0.25000	0.1853	0.1802
1½	0.66667	0.33333	0.3433	0.33333	0.2471	0.2419
1⅓	0.75000	0.37500	0.3850	0.37500	0.2780	0.2728
1	1.00000	0.50000	0.5100	0.50000	0.3707	0.3655

All dimensions are in inches.

[a] Allowance is 0.020 inch for 10 threads per inch and coarser, and 0.010 inch for finer threads.

Table 2a. American National Standard General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Formulas for Determining Diameters *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

D = Basic Major Diameter and Nominal Size, in Inches.

P = Pitch = 1 ÷ Number of Threads per Inch.

E = Basic Pitch Diameter = $D - 0.5P$

K = Basic Minor Diameter = $D - P$

No.	External Threads (Screws)
1	Major Dia., Max. = D
2	Major Dia., Min. = D *minus* $0.05P^a$ but not less than 0.005.
3	Pitch Dia., Max. = E *minus* allowance from Table 4.
4	Pitch Dia., Min. = Pitch Dia., Max. (Formula 3) *minus* tolerance from Table 5.
5	Minor Dia., Max. = K *minus* 0.020 for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches.
6	Minor Dia., Min. = Minor Dia., Max. (Formula 5) *minus* 1.5 × pitch diameter tolerance from Table 5.
	Internal Threads (Nuts)
7	Major Dia., Min. = D *plus* 0.020 for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches.
8	Major Dia., Max. = Major Dia., Min. (Formula 7) *plus* 0.020 for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches.
9	Pitch Dia., Min. = E
10	Pitch Dia., Max. = Pitch Dia., Min. (Formula 9) *plus* tolerance from Table 5.
11	Minor Dia., Min. = K
12	Minor Dia., Max. = Minor Dia., Min. (Formula 11) *plus* $0.05P^a$ but not less than 0.005.

[a] If P is between two recommended pitches listed in Table 3, use the coarser of the two pitches in this formula instead of the actual value of P.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Limiting Dimensions of ANSI General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Diameter, D		¼	5/16	⅜	7/16	½	5/8	¾	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼	1⅜
Threads per Inch[a]		16	14	12	12	10	8	6	6	5	5	5	4
Limiting Diameters		External Threads											
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Major Diameter	Max (D)	0.2500	0.3125	0.3750	0.4375	0.5000	0.6250	0.7500	0.8750	1.0000	1.1250	1.2500	1.3750
	Min	0.2450	0.3075	0.3700	0.4325	0.4950	0.6188	0.7417	0.8667	0.9900	1.1150	1.2400	1.3625
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Minor Diameter	Max	0.1775	0.2311	0.2817	0.3442	0.3800	0.4800	0.5633	0.6883	0.7800	0.9050	1.0300	1.1050
Class 2G, Minor Diameter	Min	0.1618	0.2140	0.2632	0.3253	0.3594	0.4570	0.5372	0.6615	0.7509	0.8753	0.9998	1.0720
Class 3G, Minor Diameter	Min	0.1702	0.2231	0.2730	0.3354	0.3704	0.4693	0.5511	0.6758	0.7664	0.8912	1.0159	1.0896
Class 4G, Minor Diameter	Min	0.1722	0.2254	0.2755	0.3379	0.3731	0.4723	0.5546	0.6794	0.7703	0.8951	1.0199	1.0940
Class 2G, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.2148	0.2728	0.3284	0.3909	0.4443	0.5562	0.6598	0.7842	0.8920	1.0165	1.1411	1.2406
	Min	0.2043	0.2614	0.3161	0.3783	0.4306	0.5408	0.6424	0.7663	0.8726	0.9967	1.1210	1.2188
Class 3G, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.2158	0.2738	0.3296	0.3921	0.4458	0.5578	0.6615	0.7861	0.8940	1.0186	1.1433	1.2430
	Min	0.2109	0.2685	0.3238	0.3862	0.4394	0.5506	0.6534	0.7778	0.8849	1.0094	1.1339	1.2327
Class 4G, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.2168	0.2748	0.3309	0.3934	0.4472	0.5593	0.6632	0.7880	0.8960	1.0208	1.1455	1.2453
	Min	0.2133	0.2710	0.3268	0.3892	0.4426	0.5542	0.6574	0.7820	0.8895	1.0142	1.1388	1.2380
		Internal Threads											
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Major Diameter	Min	0.2600	0.3225	0.3850	0.4475	0.5200	0.6450	0.7700	0.8950	1.0200	1.1450	1.2700	1.3950
	Max	0.2700	0.3325	0.3950	0.4575	0.5400	0.6650	0.7900	0.9150	1.0400	1.1650	1.2900	1.4150
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Minor Diameter	Min	0.1875	0.2411	0.2917	0.3542	0.4000	0.5000	0.5833	0.7083	0.8000	0.9250	1.0500	1.1250
	Max	0.1925	0.2461	0.2967	0.3592	0.4050	0.5062	0.5916	0.7166	0.8100	0.9350	1.0600	1.1375
Class 2G, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.2188	0.2768	0.3333	0.3958	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500
	Max	0.2293	0.2882	0.3456	0.4084	0.4637	0.5779	0.6841	0.8096	0.9194	1.0448	1.1701	1.2720
Class 3G, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.2188	0.2768	0.3333	0.3958	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500
	Max	0.2237	0.2821	0.3391	0.4017	0.4564	0.5697	0.6748	0.8000	0.9091	1.0342	1.1594	1.2603
Class 4G, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.2188	0.2768	0.3333	0.3958	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500
	Max	0.2223	0.2806	0.3374	0.4000	0.4546	0.5676	0.6725	0.7977	0.9065	1.0316	1.1567	1.2573

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. Limiting Dimensions of ANSI General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Diameter, *D*		1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	2¾	3	3½	4	4½	5
Threads per Inch[a]		4	4	4	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2
Limiting Diameters		External Threads										
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Major Diameter	Max (*D*)	1.5000	1.7500	2.0000	2.2500	2.5000	2.7500	3.0000	3.5000	4.0000	4.5000	5.0000
	Min	1.4875	1.7375	1.9875	2.2333	2.4833	2.7333	2.9750	3.4750	3.9750	4.4750	4.9750
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Minor Diameter	Max	1.2300	1.4800	1.7300	1.8967	2.1467	2.3967	2.4800	2.9800	3.4800	3.9800	4.4800
Class 2G, Minor Diameter	Min	1.1965	1.4456	1.6948	1.8572	2.1065	2.3558	2.4326	2.9314	3.4302	3.9291	4.4281
Class 3G, Minor Diameter	Min	1.2144	1.4640	1.7136	1.8783	2.1279	2.3776	2.4579	2.9574	3.4568	3.9563	4.4558
Class 4G, Minor Diameter	Min	1.2189	1.4686	1.7183	1.8835	2.1333	2.3831	2.4642	2.9638	3.4634	3.9631	4.4627
Class 2G, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.3652	1.6145	1.8637	2.0713	2.3207	2.5700	2.7360	3.2350	3.7340	4.2330	4.7319
	Min	1.3429	1.5916	1.8402	2.0450	2.2939	2.5427	2.7044	3.2026	3.7008	4.1991	4.6973
Class 3G, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.3677	1.6171	1.8665	2.0743	2.3238	2.5734	2.7395	3.2388	3.7380	4.2373	4.7364
	Min	1.3573	1.6064	1.8555	2.0620	2.3113	2.5607	2.7248	3.2237	3.7225	4.2215	4.7202
Class 4G, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.3701	1.6198	1.8693	2.0773	2.3270	2.5767	2.7430	3.2425	3.7420	4.2415	4.7409
	Min	1.3627	1.6122	1.8615	2.0685	2.3181	2.5676	2.7325	3.2317	3.7309	4.2302	4.7294
		Internal Threads										
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Major Diameter	Min	1.5200	1.7700	2.0200	2.2700	2.5200	2.7700	3.0200	3.5200	4.0200	4.5200	5.0200
	Max	1.5400	1.7900	2.0400	2.2900	2.5400	2.7900	3.0400	3.5400	4.0400	4.5400	5.0400
Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G Minor Diameter	Min	1.2500	1.5000	1.7500	1.9167	2.1667	2.4167	2.5000	3.0000	3.5000	4.0000	4.5000
	Max	1.2625	1.5125	1.7625	1.9334	2.1834	2.4334	2.5250	3.0250	3.5250	4.0250	4.5250
Class 2G, Pitch Diameter	Min	1.3750	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.3973	1.6479	1.8985	2.1096	2.3601	2.6106	2.7816	3.2824	3.7832	4.2839	4.7846
Class 3G, Pitch Diameter	Min	1.3750	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.3854	1.6357	1.8860	2.0956	2.3458	2.5960	2.7647	3.2651	3.7655	4.2658	4.7662
Class 4G, Pitch Diameter	Min	1.3750	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.3824	1.6326	1.8828	2.0921	2.3422	2.5924	2.7605	3.2608	3.7611	4.2613	4.7615

[a] All dimensions are given in inches. The selection of threads per inch is arbitrary and for the purpose of establishing a standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Thread Data *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Identification		Basic Diameters			Thread Data							
		Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G							Lead Angle λ at Basic Pitch Diameter[a] Classes 2G, 3G,and 4G			
Nominal Sizes (All Classes)	Threads per Inch,[a] n	Major Diameter, D	Pitch Diameter, $D_2 = D - h$	Minor Diameter, $D_1 = D - 2h$	Pitch, P	Thickness at Pitch Line, $t = P/2$	Basic Height of Thread, $h = P/2$	Basic Width of Flat, $F = 0.3707P$	Deg	Min	Shear Area[b] Class 3G	Stress Area[c] Class 3G
1/4	16	0.2500	0.2188	0.1875	0.06250	0.03125	0.03125	0.0232	5	12	0.350	0.0285
5/16	14	0.3125	0.2768	0.2411	0.07143	0.03571	0.03571	0.0265	4	42	0.451	0.0474
3/8	12	0.3750	0.3333	0.2917	0.08333	0.04167	0.04167	0.0309	4	33	0.545	0.0699
7/16	12	0.4375	0.3958	0.3542	0.08333	0.04167	0.04167	0.0309	3	50	0.660	0.1022
1/2	10	0.5000	0.4500	0.4000	0.10000	0.05000	0.05000	0.0371	4	3	0.749	0.1287
5/8	8	0.6250	0.5625	0.5000	0.12500	0.06250	0.06250	0.0463	4	3	0.941	0.2043
3/4	6	0.7500	0.6667	0.5833	0.16667	0.08333	0.08333	0.0618	4	33	1.108	0.2848
7/8	6	0.8750	0.7917	0.7083	0.16667	0.08333	0.08333	0.0618	3	50	1.339	0.4150
1	5	1.0000	0.9000	0.8000	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	4	3	1.519	0.5354
1 1/8	5	1.1250	1.0250	0.9250	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	3	33	1.751	0.709
1 1/4	5	1.2500	1.1500	1.0500	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	3	10	1.983	0.907
1 3/8	4	1.3750	1.2500	1.1250	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	3	39	2.139	1.059
1 1/2	4	1.5000	1.3750	1.2500	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	3	19	2.372	1.298
1 3/4	4	1.7500	1.6250	1.5000	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	2	48	2.837	1.851
2	4	2.0000	1.8750	1.7500	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	2	26	3.301	2.501
2 1/4	3	2.2500	2.0833	1.9167	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	55	3.643	3.049
2 1/2	3	2.5000	2.3333	2.1667	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	36	4.110	3.870
2 3/4	3	2.7500	2.5833	2.4167	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	21	4.577	4.788
3	2	3.0000	2.7500	2.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	3	19	4.786	5.27
3 1/2	2	3.5000	3.2500	3.0000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	48	5.73	7.50
4	2	4.0000	3.7500	3.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	26	6.67	10.12
4 1/2	2	4.5000	4.2500	4.0000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	9	7.60	13.13
5	2	5.0000	4.7500	4.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	1	55	8.54	16.53

[a] All other dimensions are given in inches.

[b] Per inch length of engagement of the external thread in line with the minor diameter crests of the internal thread. Figures given are the minimum shear area based on max D_1 and min d_2.

[c] Figures given are the minimum stress area based on the mean of the minimum minor and pitch diameters of the external thread. See formulas for shear area and stress area on page 2056.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Pitch Diameter Allowances *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Size Range[a]		Allowances on External Threads[b]			Nominal Size Range[a]		Allowances on External Threads[b]		
Above	To and Including	Class 2G[c], $0.008\sqrt{D}$	Class 3G, $0.006\sqrt{D}$	Class 4G, $0.004\sqrt{D}$	Above	To and Including	Class 2G[c], $0.008\sqrt{D}$	Class 3G, $0.006\sqrt{D}$	Class 4G, $0.004\sqrt{D}$
0	3/16	0.0024	0.0018	0.0012	1 7/16	1 9/16	0.0098	0.0073	0.0049
3/16	5/16	0.0040	0.0030	0.0020	1 9/16	1 7/8	0.0105	0.0079	0.0052
5/16	7/16	0.0049	0.0037	0.0024	1 7/8	2 1/8	0.0113	0.0085	0.0057
7/16	9/16	0.0057	0.0042	0.0028	2 1/8	2 3/8	0.0120	0.0090	0.0060
9/16	11/16	0.0063	0.0047	0.0032	2 3/8	2 5/8	0.0126	0.0095	0.0063
11/16	13/16	0.0069	0.0052	0.0035	2 5/8	2 7/8	0.0133	0.0099	0.0066
13/16	15/16	0.0075	0.0056	0.0037	2 7/8	3 1/4	0.0140	0.0105	0.0070
15/16	1 1/16	0.0080	0.0060	0.0040	3 1/4	3 3/4	0.0150	0.0112	0.0075
1 1/16	1 3/16	0.0085	0.0064	0.0042	3 3/4	4 1/4	0.0160	0.0120	0.0080
1 3/16	1 5/16	0.0089	0.0067	0.0045	4 1/4	4 3/4	0.0170	0.0127	0.0085
1 5/16	1 7/16	0.0094	0.0070	0.0047	4 3/4	5 1/2	0.0181	0.0136	0.0091

All dimensions in inches. It is recommended that the sizes given in Table 3 be used whenever possible.

[a] The values in columns for Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G are to be used for any size within the nominal size range shown. These values are calculated from the mean of the range.

[b] An increase of 10 percent in the allowance is recommended for each inch, or fraction thereof, that the length of engagement exceeds two diameters.

[c] Allowances for the 2G Class of thread in this table also apply to American National Standard Stub Acme threads ASME B 1.8-1988.

These values will provide for a 0.25-16 ACME-2G thread size, 0.002, 0.003, and 0.004 inch additional clearance for 2-, 3-, and 4-start threads, respectively. For a 5-2 ACME-3G thread size the additional clearances would be 0.0091, 0.0136, and 0.0181 inch, respectively. GO thread plug gages and taps would be increased by these same values. To maintain the same working tolerances on multi-start threads, the pitch diameter of the NOT GO thread plug gage would also be increased by these same values.

For multi-start threads with more than four starts, it is believed that the 100 percent allowance provided by the above procedures would be adequate as index spacing variables would generally be no greater than on a four-start thread.

In general, for multi-start threads of Classes 2G, 3G, and 4G the percentages would be applied, usually, to allowances for the same class, respectively. However, where exceptionally good control over lead, angle, and spacing variables would produce close to theoretical values in the product, it is conceivable that these percentages could be applied to Class 3G or Class 4G allowances used on Class 2G internally threaded product. Also, these percentages could be applied to Class 4G allowances used on Class 3G internally threaded product. It is not advocated that any change be made in externally threaded products.

Designations for gages or tools for internal threads could cover allowance requirements as follows:

GO and NOT GO thread plug gages for: 2.875-0.4*P*-0.8L-ACME-2G with 50 percent of the 4G internal thread allowance.

Centralizing Acme Threads.—The three classes of Centralizing Acme threads in American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014), designated as 2C, 3C, and 4C, have limited clearance at the major diameters of internal and external threads so that a bearing at the major diameters maintains approximate alignment of the thread axis and prevents wedging on the flanks of the thread. An alternative series having centralizing control on the *minor* diameter is described on page 2072. For any combination of the three classes of threads covered in this standard some end play or backlash will result. Classes 5C and 6C are not recommended for new designs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard General Purpose Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Pitch Diameter Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nom. Dia.,[a] *D*	Class of Thread			Nom. Dia.,[a] *D*	Class of Thread		
	2G[b]	3G	4G		2G[b]	3G	4G
	Diameter Increment				Diameter Increment		
	$0.006\sqrt{D}$	$0.0028\sqrt{D}$	$0.002\sqrt{D}$		$0.006\sqrt{D}$	$0.0028\sqrt{D}$	$0.002\sqrt{D}$
1/4	.00300	.00140	.00100	1 1/2	.00735	.00343	.00245
5/16	.00335	.00157	.00112	1 3/4	.00794	.00370	.00265
3/8	.00367	.00171	.00122	2	.00849	.00396	.00283
7/16	.00397	.00185	.00132	2 1/4	.00900	.00420	.00300
1/2	.00424	.00198	.00141	2 1/2	.00949	.00443	.00316
5/8	.00474	.00221	.00158	2 3/4	.00995	.00464	.00332
3/4	.00520	.00242	.00173	3	.01039	.00485	.00346
7/8	.00561	.00262	.00187	3 1/2	.01122	.00524	.00374
1	.00600	.00280	.00200	4	.01200	.00560	.00400
1 1/8	.00636	.00297	.00212	4 1/2	.01273	.00594	.00424
1 1/4	.00671	.00313	.00224	5	.01342	.00626	.00447
1 3/8	.00704	.00328	.00235	…	…	…	…
Thds. per Inch,[c] *n*	Class of Thread			Thds. per Inch[c], *n*	Class of Thread		
	2G[b]	3G	4G		2G[b]	3G	4G
	Pitch Increment				Pitch Increment		
	$0.030\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.014\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.010\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$		$0.030\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.014\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.010\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$
16	.00750	.00350	.00250	4	.01500	.00700	.00500
14	.00802	.00374	.00267	3	.01732	.00808	.00577
12	.00866	.00404	.00289	2 1/2	.01897	.00885	.00632
10	.00949	.00443	.00316	2	.02121	.00990	.00707
8	.01061	.00495	.00354	1 1/2	.02449	.01143	.00816
6	.01225	.00572	.00408	1 1/3	.02598	.01212	.00866
5	.01342	.00626	.00447	1	.03000	.01400	.01000

For any particular size of thread, the pitch diameter tolerance is obtained by adding the *diameter increment* from the upper half of the table to the *pitch increment* from the lower half of the table. *Example:* A ¼-16 Acme-2G thread has a pitch diameter tolerance of 0.00300 + 0.00750 = 0.0105 inch.

The equivalent tolerance on thread thickness is 0.259 times the pitch diameter tolerance.

[a] For a nominal diameter between any two tabulated nominal diameters, use the diameter increment for the larger of the two tabulated nominal diameters.

[b] Columns for the 2G Class of thread in this table also apply to American National Standard Stub Acme threads, ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016).

[c] All other dimensions are given in inches.

Application: These three classes together with the accompanying specifications are for the purpose of ensuring the interchangeable manufacture of Centralizing Acme threaded parts. Users are free to select the classes best adapted to their particular needs. It is suggested that external and internal threads of the same class be used together for centralizing assemblies, Class 2C providing the maximum end play or backlash. If less backlash or end play is desired, Classes 3C and 4C are provided. The requirement for a centralizing fit is that the sum of the major diameter tolerance plus the major diameter allowance on the internal thread, and the major diameter tolerance on the external thread shall equal or be less than the pitch diameter allowance on the external thread. A Class 2C external thread, which has a larger pitch diameter allowance than either a Class 3C or 4C, can be used interchangeably with a Class 2C, 3C, or 4C internal thread and fulfill this requirement. Similarly, a Class 3C external thread can be used interchangeably with a Class 3C or 4C internal thread, but only a Class 4C internal thread can be used with a Class 4C external thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

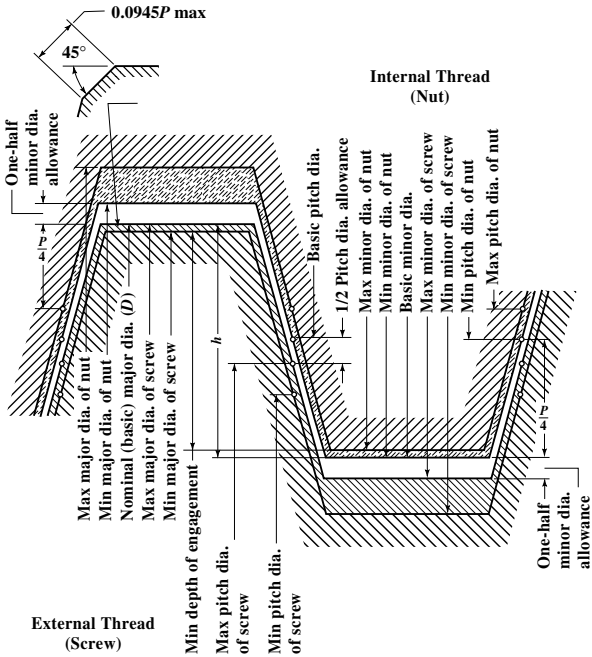


Fig. 2. Disposition of Allowances, Tolerances, and Crest Clearances for General Purpose Single-start Acme Threads (All Classes)

Thread Form: The thread form is the same as the General Purpose Acme Thread and is shown in Fig. 3. The formulas in Table 7 determine the basic dimensions, which are given in Table 6 for the most generally used pitches.

Angle of Thread: The angle between the sides of the thread measured in an axial plane is 29 degrees. The line bisecting this 29-degree angle shall be perpendicular to the axis of the thread.

Chamfers and Fillets: External threads have the crest corners chamfered at an angle of 45 degrees with the axis to a minimum depth of $P/20$ and a maximum depth of $P/15$. These modifications correspond to a minimum width of chamfer flat of $0.0707P$ and a maximum width of $0.0945P$ (see Table 6, columns 6 and 7).

External threads for Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C may have a fillet at the minor diameter not greater than $0.1P$

Thread Series: A series of diameters and pitches is recommended in the Standard as preferred. These diameters and pitches have been chosen to meet present needs with the fewest number of items in order to reduce to a minimum the inventory of both tools and gages. This series of diameters and associated pitches is given in Table 9.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Screw Thread Form — Basic Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Thds per Inch, n	Pitch, P	Height of Thread (Basic), $h = P/2$	Total Height of Thread (All External Threads) $h_s = h + ½$ allowance[a]	Thread Thickness (Basic), $t = P/2$	45-Deg Chamfer Crest of External Threads		Max Fillet Radius, Root of Tapped Hole, $0.06P$	Fillet Radius at Min or Diameter of Screws Max (All) $0.10P$
					Min Depth, $0.05P$	Min Width of Chamfer Flat, $0.0707P$		
16	0.06250	0.03125	0.0362	0.03125	0.0031	0.0044	0.0038	0.0062
14	0.07143	0.03571	0.0407	0.03571	0.0036	0.0050	0.0038	0.0071
12	0.08333	0.04167	0.0467	0.04167	0.0042	0.0059	0.0050	0.0083
10	0.10000	0.05000	0.0600	0.05000	0.0050	0.0071	0.0060	0.0100
8	0.12500	0.06250	0.0725	0.06250	0.0062	0.0088	0.0075	0.0125
6	0.16667	0.08333	0.0933	0.08333	0.0083	0.0119	0.0100	0.0167
5	0.20000	0.10000	0.1100	0.10000	0.0100	0.0141	0.0120	0.0200
4	0.25000	0.12500	0.1350	0.12500	0.0125	0.0177	0.0150	0.0250
3	0.33333	0.16667	0.1767	0.16667	0.0167	0.0236	0.0200	0.0333
2½	0.40000	0.20000	0.2100	0.20000	0.0200	0.0283	0.0240	0.0400
2	0.50000	0.25000	0.2600	0.25000	0.0250	0.0354	0.0300	0.0500
1½	0.66667	0.33333	0.3433	0.33333	0.0330	0.0471	0.0400	0.0667
1⅓	0.75000	0.37500	0.3850	0.37500	0.0380	0.0530	0.0450	0.0750
1	1.00000	0.50000	0.5100	0.50000	0.0500	0.0707	0.0600	0.1000

All dimensions in inches. See Fig. 3.

[a] Allowance is 0.020 inch for 10 or less threads per inch and 0.010 inch for more than 10 threads per inch.

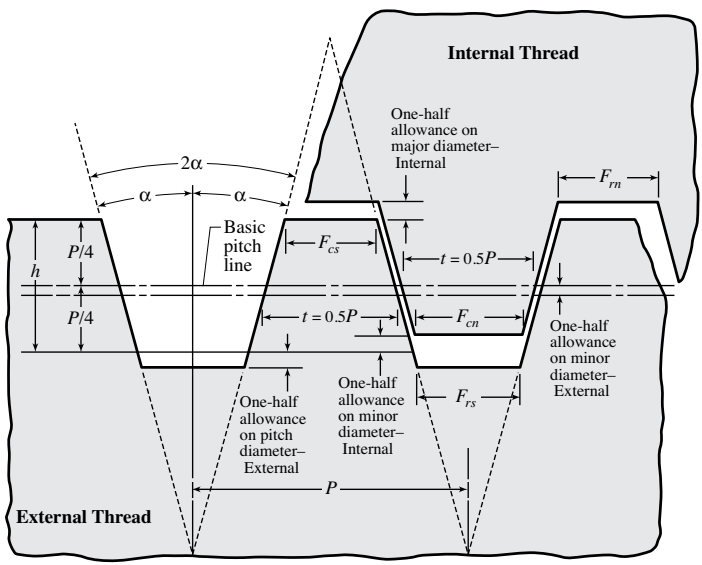


Fig. 3. Centralizing Acme Screw Thread Form

Basic Diameters: The maximum major diameter of the external thread is basic and is the nominal major diameter for all classes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Formulas for Finding Basic Dimensions of Centralizing Acme Screw Threads

Pitch = P = 1 ÷ No. threads per inch, n: Basic thread height $h = 0.5P$
Basic thread thickness $t = 0.5P$
Basic flat at crest $F_{cn} = 0.3707P + 0.259 \times$ (minor. diameter allowance on internal threads) (internal thread)
Basic flat at crest $F_{cs} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (pitch diameter allowance on external thread) (external thread)
$F_{rn} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (major dia. allowance on internal thread)
$F_{rs} = 0.3707P - 0.259 \times$ (minor dia. allowance on external thread—pitch dia. allowance on external thread)

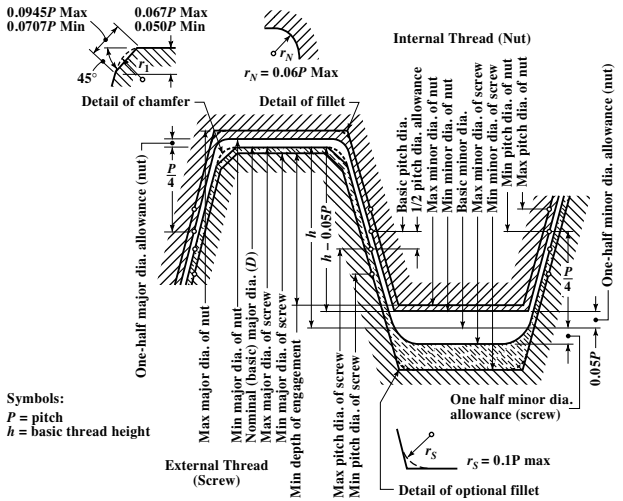


Fig. 4. Disposition of Allowances, Tolerances, and Crest Clearances for Centralizing Single-Start Acme Threads—Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C

The minimum pitch diameter of the internal thread is basic for all classes and is equal to the basic major diameter D minus the basic height of thread, h. The minimum minor diameter of the internal thread for all classes is $0.1P$ above basic.

Length of Engagement: The tolerances specified in this Standard are applicable to lengths of engagement not exceeding twice the nominal major diameter.

Pitch Diameter Allowances: Allowances applied to the pitch diameter of the external thread for all classes are given in Table 10.

Major and Minor Diameter Allowances: A minimum diametral clearance is provided at the minor diameter of all external threads by establishing the maximum minor diameter 0.020 inch below the basic minor diameter for 10 threads per inch and coarser, and 0.010 inch for finer pitches and by establishing the minimum minor diameter of the internal thread $0.1P$ greater than the basic minor diameter.

A minimum diametral clearance at the major diameter is obtained by establishing the minimum major diameter of the internal thread $0.001\sqrt{D}$ above the basic major diameter. These allowances are shown in Table 12.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8a. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Formulas for Determining Diameters *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

D = Nominal Size or Diameter in Inches *P* = Pitch = 1 ÷ Number of Threads per Inch	
No.	Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C External Threads (Screws)
1	Major Dia., Max = *D* (Basic).
2	Major Dia., Min = *D minus* tolerance from Table 12, columns 7, 8, or 10.
3	Pitch Dia., Max = Int. Pitch Dia., Min (Formula 9) *minus* allowance from the appropriate Class 2C, 3C, or 4C column of Table 10.
4	Pitch Dia., Min = Ext. Pitch Dia., Max (Formula 3) *minus* tolerance from Table 11.
5	Minor Dia., Max = *D minus P minus* allowance from Table 12, column 3.
6	Minor Dia., Min = Ext. Minor Dia., Max (Formula 5) *minus* 1.5 × Pitch Dia. tolerance from Table 11.
	Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C Internal Threads (Nuts)
7	Major Dia., Min = *D plus* allowance from Table 12, column 4.
8	Major Dia., Max = Int. Major Dia., Min (Formula 7) *plus* tolerance from Table 12, columns 7, 9, or 11.
9	Pitch Dia., Min = *D minus P*/2 (Basic).
10	Pitch Dia., Max = Int. Pitch Dia., Min (Formula 9) *plus* tolerance from Table 11.
11	Minor Dia., Min = *D minus* 0.9*P*.
12	Minor Dia., Max = Int. Minor Dia., Min (Formula 11) *plus* tolerance from Table 12, column 6.

Major and Minor Diameter Tolerances: The tolerances on the major and minor diameters of the external and internal threads are listed in Table 12 and are based upon the formulas given in the column headings.

An increase of 10 percent in the allowance is recommended for each inch or fraction thereof that the length of engagement exceeds two diameters.

For information on gages for Centralizing Acme threads the Standard ANSI/ASME B1.5 should be consulted.

Pitch Diameter Tolerances: Pitch diameter tolerances for Classes 2C, 3C and 4C for various practicable combinations of diameter and pitch are given in Table 11. The ratios of the pitch diameter tolerances of Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C are 3.0, 1.4, and 1, respectively.

Application of Tolerances: The tolerances specified are such as to insure interchangeability and maintain a high grade of product. The tolerances on the diameters of internal threads are plus, being applied from the minimum sizes to above the minimum sizes. The tolerances on the diameters of external threads are minus, being applied from the maximum sizes to below the maximum sizes. The pitch diameter tolerances for an external or internal thread of a given class are the same.

Limiting Dimensions: Limiting dimensions for Centralizing Acme threads in the preferred series of diameters and pitches are given in Table 8b and Table 8c. These limits are based on the formulas in Table 8a.

For combinations of pitch and diameter other than those in the preferred series the formulas in Table 8b and Table 8c and the data in the tables referred to therein make it possible to readily determine the limiting dimension required.

Designation of Centralizing Acme Threads.—The following examples are given to show how these Acme threads are designated on drawings, in specifications, and on tools and gages:

Example, 1.750-6-ACME-4C: Indicates a Centralizing Class 4C Acme thread of 1.750-inch major diameter, 0.1667-inch pitch, single thread, right-hand.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8b. Limiting Dimensions of American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads, Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Diameter, *D*		½	⅝	¾	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼	1⅜	1½
Threads per Inch[a]		10	8	6	6	5	5	5	4	4
Limiting Diameters		**External Threads**								
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Major Diameter	Max	0.5000	0.6250	0.7500	0.8750	1.0000	1.1250	1.2500	1.3750	1.5000
Class 2C, Major Diameter	Min	0.4975	0.6222	0.7470	0.8717	0.9965	1.1213	1.2461	1.3709	1.4957
Class 3C, Major Diameter	Min	0.4989	0.6238	0.7487	0.8736	0.9985	1.1234	1.2483	1.3732	1.4982
Class 4C, Major Diameter	Min	0.4993	0.6242	0.7491	0.8741	0.9990	1.1239	1.2489	1.3738	1.4988
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Minor Diameter	Max	0.3800	0.4800	0.5633	0.6883	0.7800	0.9050	1.0300	1.1050	1.2300
Class 2C, Minor Diameter	Min	0.3594	0.4570	0.5371	0.6615	0.7509	0.8753	0.9998	1.0719	1.1965
Class 3C, Minor Diameter	Min	0.3704	0.4693	0.5511	0.6758	0.7664	0.8912	1.0159	1.0896	1.2144
Class 4C, Minor Diameter	Min	0.3731	0.4723	0.5546	0.6794	0.7703	0.8951	1.0199	1.0940	1.2188
Class 2C, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.4443	0.5562	0.6598	0.7842	0.8920	1.0165	1.1411	1.2406	1.3652
	Min	0.4306	0.5408	0.6424	0.7663	0.8726	0.9967	1.1210	1.2186	1.3429
Class 3C, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.4458	0.5578	0.6615	0.7861	0.8940	1.0186	1.1433	1.2430	1.3677
	Min	0.4394	0.5506	0.6534	0.7778	0.8849	1.0094	1.1339	1.2327	1.3573
Class 4C, Pitch Diameter	Max	0.4472	0.5593	0.6632	0.7880	0.8960	1.0208	1.1455	1.2453	1.3701
	Min	0.4426	0.5542	0.6574	0.7820	0.8895	1.0142	1.1388	1.2380	1.3627
		Internal Threads								
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Major Diameter	Min	0.5007	0.6258	0.7509	0.8759	1.0010	1.1261	1.2511	1.3762	1.5012
Classes 2C and 3C, Major Diameter	Max	0.5032	0.6286	0.7539	0.8792	1.0045	1.1298	1.2550	1.3803	1.5055
Class 4C, Major Diameter	Max	0.5021	0.6274	0.7526	0.8778	1.0030	0.1282	1.2533	1.3785	1.5036
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Minor Diameter	Min	0.4100	0.5125	0.6000	0.7250	0.8200	0.9450	0.0700	1.1500	1.2750
	Max	0.04150	0.5187	0.6083	0.7333	0.8300	0.9550	1.0800	1.1625	1.2875
Class 2C, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500	1.3750
	Max	0.4637	0.5779	0.6841	0.8096	0.9194	1.0448	1.1701	1.2720	1.3973
Class 3C, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500	1.3750
	Max	0.4564	0.5697	0.6748	0.8000	0.9091	1.0342	1.1594	1.2603	1.3854
Class 4C, Pitch Diameter	Min	0.4500	0.5625	0.6667	0.7917	0.9000	1.0250	1.1500	1.2500	1.3750
	Max	0.4546	0.5676	0.6725	0.7977	0.9065	1.0316	1.1567	1.2573	1.3824

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8c. Limiting Dimensions of American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads, Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Diameter, *D*		1¾	2	2¼	2½	2¾	3	3½	4	4½	5
Threads per Inch[a]		4	4	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2
Limiting Diameters		**External Threads**									
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Major Diameter	Max	1.7500	2.0000	2.2500	2.5000	2.7500	3.0000	3.5000	4.0000	4.5000	5.0000
Class 2C, Major Diameter	Min	1.7454	1.9951	2.2448	2.4945	2.7442	2.9939	3.4935	3.9930	4.4926	4.9922
Class 3C, Major Diameter	Min	1.7480	1.9979	2.2478	2.4976	2.7475	2.9974	3.4972	3.9970	4.4968	4.9966
Class 4C, Major Diameter	Min	1.7487	1.9986	2.2485	2.4984	2.7483	2.9983	3.4981	3.9980	4.4979	4.9978
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Minor Diameter	Max	1.4800	1.7300	1.8967	2.1467	2.3967	2.4800	2.9800	3.4800	3.9800	4.4800
Class 2C, Minor Diameter	Min	1.4456	1.6948	1.8572	2.1065	2.3558	2.4326	2.9314	3.4302	3.9291	4.4281
Class 3C, Minor Diameter	Min	1.4640	1.7136	1.8783	2.1279	2.3776	2.4579	2.9574	3.4568	3.9563	4.4558
Class 4C, Minor Diameter	Min	1.4685	1.7183	1.8835	2.1333	2.3831	2.4642	2.9638	3.4634	3.9631	4.4627
Class 2C, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.6145	1.8637	2.0713	2.3207	2.5700	2.7360	3.2350	3.7340	4.2330	4.7319
	Min	1.5916	1.8402	2.0450	2.2939	2.5427	2.7044	3.2026	3.7008	4.1991	4.6973
Class 3C, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.6171	1.8665	2.0743	2.3238	2.5734	2.7395	3.2388	3.7380	4.2373	4.7364
	Min	1.6064	1.8555	2.0620	2.3113	2.5607	2.7248	3.2237	3.7225	4.2215	4.7202
Class 4C, Pitch Diameter	Max	1.6198	1.8693	2.0773	2.3270	2.5767	2.7430	3.2425	3.7420	4.2415	4.7409
	Min	1.6122	1.8615	2.0685	2.3181	2.5676	2.7325	3.2317	3.7309	4.2302	4.7294
		Internal Threads									
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Major Diameter	Min	1.7513	2.0014	2.2515	2.5016	2.7517	3.0017	3.5019	4.0020	4.5021	5.0022
Classes 2C and 3C, Major Diameter	Max	1.7559	2.0063	2.2567	2.5071	2.7575	3.0078	3.5084	4.0090	4.5095	5.0100
Class 4C, Major Diameter	Max	1.7539	2.0042	2.2545	2.5048	2.7550	3.0052	3.5056	4.0060	4.5063	5.0067
Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C, Minor Diameter	Min	1.5250	1.7750	1.9500	2.2000	2.4500	2.5500	3.0500	3.5500	4.0500	4.5500
	Max	1.5375	1.7875	1.9667	2.2167	2.4667	2.5750	3.0750	3.5750	4.0750	4.5750
Class 2C, Pitch Diameter	Min	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.6479	1.8985	2.1096	2.3601	2.6106	2.7816	3.2824	3.7832	4.2839	4.7846
Class 3C, Pitch Diameter	Min	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.6357	1.8860	2.0956	2.3458	2.5960	2.7647	3.2651	3.7655	4.2658	4.7662
Class 4C Pitch Diameter	Min	1.6250	1.8750	2.0833	2.3333	2.5833	2.7500	3.2500	3.7500	4.2500	4.7500
	Max	1.6326	1.8828	2.0921	2.3422	2.5924	2.7605	3.2608	3.7611	4.2613	4.7615

[a] All other dimensions are in inches. The selection of threads per inch is arbitrary and for the purpose of establishing a standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Thread Data *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Identification		Diameters			Thread Data					
		Centralizing, Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C							Lead Angle λ at Basic Pitch Diameter[a] Centralizing Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C,	
Nominal Sizes (All Classes)	Threads per Inch,[a] n	Basic Major Diameter, D	Pitch Diameter, $D_2 = (D - h)$	Minor Diameter, $D_1 = (D - 2h)$	Pitch, P	Thickness at Pitch Line, $t = P/2$	Basic Height of Thread, $h = P/2$	Basic Width of Flat, $F = 0.3707P$	Deg	Min
1/4	16	0.2500	0.2188	0.1875	0.06250	0.03125	0.03125	0.0232	5	12
5/16	14	0.3125	0.2768	0.2411	0.07143	0.03571	0.03571	0.0265	4	42
3/8	12	0.3750	0.3333	0.2917	0.08333	0.04167	0.04167	0.0309	4	33
7/16	12	0.4375	0.3958	0.3542	0.08333	0.04167	0.04167	0.0309	3	50
1/2	10	0.5000	0.4500	0.4000	0.10000	0.05000	0.05000	0.0371	4	3
5/8	8	0.6250	0.5625	0.5000	0.12500	0.06250	0.06250	0.0463	4	3
3/4	6	0.7500	0.6667	0.5833	0.16667	0.08333	0.08333	0.0618	4	33
7/8	6	0.8750	0.7917	0.7083	0.16667	0.08333	0.08333	0.0618	3	50
1	5	1.0000	0.9000	0.8000	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	4	3
1 1/8	5	1.1250	1.0250	0.9250	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	3	33
1 1/4	5	1.2500	1.1500	1.0500	0.20000	0.10000	0.10000	0.0741	3	10
1 3/8	4	1.3750	1.2500	1.1250	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	3	39
1 1/2	4	1.5000	1.3750	1.2500	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	3	19
1 3/4	4	1.7500	1.6250	1.5000	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	2	48
2	4	2.0000	1.8750	1.7500	0.25000	0.12500	0.12500	0.0927	2	26
2 1/4	3	2.2500	2.0833	1.9167	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	55
2 1/2	3	2.5000	2.3333	2.1667	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	36
2 3/4	3	2.7500	2.5833	2.4167	0.33333	0.16667	0.16667	0.1236	2	21
3	2	3.0000	2.7500	2.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	3	19
3 1/2	2	3.5000	3.2500	3.0000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	48
4	2	4.0000	3.7500	3.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	26
4 1/2	2	4.5000	4.2500	4.0000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	2	9
5	2	5.0000	4.7500	4.5000	0.50000	0.25000	0.25000	0.1853	1	55

[a] All other dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Pitch Diameter Allowances *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nominal Size Range[a]		Allowances on External Threads[b]			Nominal Size Range[a]		Allowances on External Threads[b]		
		Centralizing					Centralizing		
Above	To and Including	Class 2C, $0.008\sqrt{D}$	Class 3C, $0.006\sqrt{D}$	Class 4C, $0.004\sqrt{D}$	Above	To and Including	Class 2C, $0.008\sqrt{D}$	Class 3C, $0.006\sqrt{D}$	Class 4C, $0.004\sqrt{D}$
0	3/16	0.0024	0.0018	0.0012	1 1/16	1 1/16	0.0098	0.0073	0.0049
3/16	5/16	0.0040	0.0030	0.0020	1 1/16	1 1/8	0.0105	0.0079	0.0052
5/16	7/16	0.0049	0.0037	0.0024	1 1/8	2 1/8	0.0113	0.0085	0.0057
7/16	9/16	0.0057	0.0042	0.0028	2 1/8	2 3/8	0.0120	0.0090	0.0060
9/16	11/16	0.0063	0.0047	0.0032	2 3/8	2 5/8	0.0126	0.0095	0.0063
11/16	13/16	0.0069	0.0052	0.0035	2 5/8	2 7/8	0.0133	0.0099	0.0066
13/16	15/16	0.0075	0.0056	0.0037	2 7/8	3 1/4	0.0140	0.0105	0.0070
15/16	1 1/16	0.0080	0.0060	0.0040	3 1/4	3 3/4	0.0150	0.0112	0.0075
1 1/16	1 3/16	0.0085	0.0064	0.0042	3 3/4	4 1/4	0.0160	0.0120	0.0080
1 3/16	1 5/16	0.0089	0.0067	0.0045	4 1/4	4 3/4	0.0170	0.0127	0.0085
1 5/16	1 7/16	0.0094	0.0070	0.0047	4 3/4	5 1/2	0.0181	0.0136	0.0091

All dimensions are given in inches.

It is recommended that the sizes given in Table 9 be used whenever possible.

[a] The values in columns for Classes 2C, 3C, and 4C are to be used for any size within the nominal size range columns. These values are calculated from the mean of the range.

[b] An increase of 10 percent in the allowance is recommended for each inch, or fraction thereof, that the length of engagement exceeds two diameters.

Table 11. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads—Pitch Diameter Tolerances *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Nom. Dia.,[a] D	Class of Thread and Diameter Increment			Nom. Dia.,[a] D	Class of Thread and Diameter Increment		
	2C	3C	4C		2C	3C	4C
	$0.006\sqrt{D}$	$0.0028\sqrt{D}$	$0.002\sqrt{D}$		$0.006\sqrt{D}$	$0.0028\sqrt{D}$	$0.002\sqrt{D}$
1/4	.00300	.00140	.00100	1 1/2	.00735	.00343	.00245
5/16	.00335	.00157	.00112	1 3/4	.00794	.00370	.00265
3/8	.00367	.00171	.00122	2	.00849	.00396	.00283
7/16	.00397	.00185	.00132	2 1/4	.00900	.00420	.00300
1/2	.00424	.00198	.00141	2 1/2	.00949	.00443	.00316
5/8	.00474	.00221	.00158	2 3/4	.00995	.00464	.00332
3/4	.00520	.00242	.00173	3	.01039	.00485	.00346
7/8	.00561	.00262	.00187	3 1/2	.01122	.00524	.00374
1	.00600	.00280	.00200	4	.01200	.00560	.00400
1 1/8	.00636	.00297	.00212	4 1/2	.01273	.00594	.00424
1 1/4	.00671	.00313	.00224	5	.01342	.00626	.00447
1 3/8	.00704	.00328	.00235	…	…	…	…
Thds. per Inch, n	Class of Thread and Pitch Increment			Thds. per Inch, n	Class of Thread and Pitch Increment		
	2C	3C	4C		2C	3C	4C
	$0.030\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.014\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.010\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$		$0.030\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.014\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$	$0.010\sqrt{\frac{1}{n}}$
16	.00750	.00350	.00250	4	.01500	.00700	.00500
14	.00802	.00374	.00267	3	.01732	.00808	.00577
12	.00866	.00404	.00289	2 1/2	.01897	.00885	.00632
10	.00949	.00443	.00316	2	.02121	.00990	.00707
8	.01061	.00495	.00354	1 1/2	.02449	.01143	.00816
6	.01225	.00572	.00408	1 1/3	.02598	.01212	.00866
5	.01342	.00626	.00447	1	.03000	.01400	.01000

All dimensions are given in inches.

For any particular size of thread, the pitch diameter tolerance is obtained by adding the *diameter increment* from the upper half of the table to the *pitch increment* from the lower half of the table. *Example:* A 0.250-16-ACME-2C thread has a pitch diameter tolerance of 0.00300 + 0.00750 = 0.0105 inch.

The equivalent tolerance on thread thickness is 0.259 times the pitch diameter tolerance.

[a] For a nominal diameter between any two tabulated nominal diameters, use the diameter increment for the larger of the two tabulated nominal diameters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. American National Standard Centralizing Acme Single-Start Screw Threads — Tolerances and Allowances for Major and Minor Diameters *ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014)*

Size (Nom.)	Thds[a] per Inch	Allowance From Basic Major and Minor Diameters (All Classes)			Tolerance on Minor Diam.,[b,c] All Internal Threads, (Plus 0.05*P*)	Tolerance on Major Diameter Plus on Internal, Minus on External Threads				
			Internal Thread			Class 2C	Class 3C		Class 4C	
		Minor Diam.,[d] All External Threads (Minus)	Major Diam.,[e] (Plus $0.0010\sqrt{D}$	Minor Diam.,[d] (Plus 0.1*P*)		External and Internal Threads, $0.0035\sqrt{D}$	External Thread, $0.0015\sqrt{D}$	Internal Thread, $0.0035\sqrt{D}$	External Thread, $0.0010\sqrt{D}$	Internal Thread, $0.0020\sqrt{D}$
¼	16	0.010	0.0005	0.0062	0.0050	0.0017	0.0007	0.0017	0.0005	0.0010
5⁄16	14	0.010	0.0006	0.0071	0.0050	0.0020	0.0008	0.0020	0.0006	0.0011
⅜	12	0.010	0.0006	0.0083	0.0050	0.0021	0.0009	0.0021	0.0006	0.0012
7⁄16	12	0.010	0.0007	0.0083	0.0050	0.0023	0.0010	0.0023	0.0007	0.0013
½	10	0.020	0.0007	0.0100	0.0050	0.0025	0.0011	0.0025	0.0007	0.0014
⅝	8	0.020	0.0008	0.0125	0.0062	0.0028	0.0012	0.0028	0.0008	0.0016
¾	6	0.020	0.0009	0.0167	0.0083	0.0030	0.0013	0.0030	0.0009	0.0017
⅞	6	0.020	0.0009	0.0167	0.0083	0.0033	0.0014	0.0033	0.0009	0.0019
1	5	0.020	0.0010	0.0200	0.0100	0.0035	0.0015	0.0035	0.0010	0.0020
1⅛	5	0.020	0.0011	0.0200	0.0100	0.0037	0.0016	0.0037	0.0011	0.0021
1¼	5	0.020	0.0011	0.0200	0.0100	0.0039	0.0017	0.0039	0.0011	0.0022
1⅜	4	0.020	0.0012	0.0250	0.0125	0.0041	0.0018	0.0041	0.0012	0.0023
1½	4	0.020	0.0012	0.0250	0.0125	0.0043	0.0018	0.0043	0.0012	0.0024
1¾	4	0.020	0.0013	0.0250	0.0125	0.0046	0.0020	0.0046	0.0013	0.0026
2	4	0.020	0.0014	0.0250	0.0125	0.0049	0.0021	0.0049	0.0014	0.0028
2¼	3	0.020	0.0015	0.0333	0.0167	0.0052	0.0022	0.0052	0.0015	0.0030
2½	3	0.020	0.0016	0.0333	0.0167	0.0055	0.0024	0.0055	0.0016	0.0032
2¾	3	0.020	0.0017	0.0333	0.0167	0.0058	0.0025	0.0058	0.0017	0.0033
3	2	0.020	0.0017	0.0500	0.0250	0.0061	0.0026	0.0061	0.0017	0.0035
3½	2	0.020	0.0019	0.0500	0.0250	0.0065	0.0028	0.0065	0.0019	0.0037
4	2	0.020	0.0020	0.0500	0.0250	0.0070	0.0030	0.0070	0.0020	0.0040
4½	2	0.020	0.0021	0.0500	0.0250	0.0074	0.0032	0.0074	0.0021	0.0042
5	2	0.020	0.0022	0.0500	0.0250	0.0078	0.0034	0.0078	0.0022	0.0045

[a] All other dimensions are given in inches. Intermediate pitches take the values of the next coarser pitch listed. Values for intermediate diameters should be calculated from the formulas in column headings, but ordinarily may be interpolated.

[b] To avoid a complicated formula and still provide an adequate tolerance, the pitch factor is used as a basis, with the minimum tolerance set at 0.005 in.

[c] Tolerance on minor diameter of all external threads is 1.5 × pitch diameter tolerance.

[d] The minimum clearance at the minor diameter between the internal and external thread is the sum of the values in columns 3 and 5.

[e] The minimum clearance at the major diameter between the internal and external thread is equal to column 4.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example, 1.750-6-ACME-4C-LH: Indicates the same thread left-hand.

Example, 2.875-0.4P-0.8L-ACME-3C (Two Start): Indicates a Centralizing Class 3C Acme thread with 2.875-inch major diameter, 0.4-inch pitch, 0.8-inch lead, double thread, right-hand.

Example, 2.500-0.3333P-0.6667L-ACME-4C (Two Start): Indicates a Centralizing Class 4C Acme thread with 2.500-inch nominal major diameter (basic major diameter 2.500 inches), 0.3333-inch pitch, 0.6667-inch lead, double thread, right-hand. The same thread left-hand would have LH at the end of the designation.

Acme Centralizing Threads—Alternative Series with Minor Diameter Centralizing Control.—When Acme centralizing threads are produced in single units or in very small quantities (and principally in sizes larger than the range of commercial taps and dies) where the manufacturing process employs cutting tools (such as lathe cutting), it may be economically advantageous and therefore desirable to have the centralizing control of the mating threads located at the *minor diameters*.

Particularly under the above-mentioned type of manufacturing, the two advantages cited for minor diameter centralizing control over centralizing control at the major diameters of the mating threads are: 1) Greater ease and faster checking of machined thread dimensions. It is much easier to measure the minor diameter (root) of the external thread and the mating minor diameter (crest or bore) of the internal thread than it is to determine the major diameter (root) of the internal thread and the major diameter (crest or turn) of the external thread; and 2) better manufacturing control of the machined size due to greater ease of checking.

In the event that minor diameter centralizing is necessary, recalculate all thread dimensions, reversing major and minor diameter allowances, tolerances, radii, and chamfer.

American National Standard Stub Acme Threads.—This American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016) provides a Stub Acme screw thread for those unusual applications where, due to mechanical or metallurgical considerations, a coarse-pitch thread of shallow depth is required. The fit of Stub Acme threads corresponds to the Class 2G General Purpose Acme thread in American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.5-1997 (R2014). For a fit having less backlash, the tolerances and allowances for Classes 3G or 4G General Purpose Acme threads may be used.

Thread Form: The thread form and basic formulas for Stub Acme threads are given on page 2054 and the basic dimensions in Table 13.

Allowances and Tolerances: The major and minor diameter allowances for Stub Acme threads are the same as those given for General Purpose Acme threads on page 2054.

Pitch diameter allowances for Stub Acme threads are the same as for Class 2G General Purpose Acme threads and are given in Table 4. Pitch diameter tolerances for Stub Acme threads are the same as for Class 2G General Purpose Acme threads given in Table 5.

Limiting Dimensions: Limiting dimensions of American Standard Stub Acme threads may be determined by using the formulas given in Table 14a, or directly from Table 14b. The diagram below shows the limits of size for Stub Acme threads.

Thread Series: A preferred series of diameters and pitches for General Purpose Acme threads (Table 15) is recommended for Stub Acme threads.

Stub Acme Thread Designations.—The method of designation for Standard Stub Acme threads is illustrated in the following examples: 0.500-20 Stub Acme indicates a $\frac{1}{2}$-inch major diameter, 20 threads per inch, right hand, single thread, Standard Stub Acme thread. The designation 0.500-20 Stub Acme-LH indicates the same thread except that it is left hand.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. American National Standard Stub Acme Screw Thread Form — Basic Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016)*

Thds. per Inch[a] *n*	Pitch, $P = 1/n$	Height of Thread (Basic), $0.3P$	Total Height of Thread, $0.3P + \frac{1}{2}$ allowance[b]	Thread Thickness (Basic), $P/2$	Width of Flat	
					Crest of InternalThread (Basic), $0.4224P$	Root of Internal Thread, $0.4224P - 0.259 \times$ allowance[b]
16	0.06250	0.01875	0.0238	0.03125	0.0264	0.0238
14	0.07143	0.02143	0.0264	0.03571	0.0302	0.0276
12	0.08333	0.02500	0.0300	0.04167	0.0352	0.0326
10	0.10000	0.03000	0.0400	0.05000	0.0422	0.0370
9	0.11111	0.03333	0.0433	0.05556	0.0469	0.0417
8	0.12500	0.03750	0.0475	0.06250	0.0528	0.0476
7	0.14286	0.04285	0.0529	0.07143	0.0603	0.0551
6	0.16667	0.05000	0.0600	0.08333	0.0704	0.0652
5	0.20000	0.06000	0.0700	0.10000	0.0845	0.0793
4	0.25000	0.07500	0.0850	0.12500	0.1056	0.1004
3½	0.28571	0.08571	0.0957	0.14286	0.1207	0.1155
3	0.33333	0.10000	0.1100	0.16667	0.1408	0.1356
2½	0.40000	0.12000	0.1300	0.20000	0.1690	0.1638
2	0.50000	0.15000	0.1600	0.25000	0.2112	0.2060
1½	0.66667	0.20000	0.2100	0.33333	0.2816	0.2764
1⅓	0.75000	0.22500	0.2350	0.37500	0.3168	0.3116
1	1.00000	0.30000	0.3100	0.50000	0.4224	0.4172

[a] All other dimensions in inches. See Fig. 1, page 2055.

[b] Allowance is 0.020 inch for 10 or less threads per inch and 0.010 inch for more than 10 threads per inch.

Table 14a. American National Standard Stub Acme Single-Start Screw Threads — Formulas for Determining Diameters *ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016)*

D = Basic Major Diameter and Nominal Size in Inches

D_2 = Basic Pitch Diameter = $D - 0.3P$

D_1 = Basic Minor Diameter = $D - 0.6P$

No.	External Threads (Screws)
1	Major Dia., Max = D.
2	Major Dia., Min. = D *minus* $0.05P$.
3	Pitch Dia., Max. = D_2 *minus* allowance from the appropriate Class 2G column, Table 4.
4	Pitch Dia., Min. = Pitch Dia., Max. (Formula 3) *minus* Class 2G tolerance from Table 5.
5	Minor Dia., Max. = D_1 *minus* 0.020 for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches.
6	Minor Dia., Min. = Minor Dia., Max. (Formula 5) *minus* Class 2G pitch diameter tolerance from Table 5.
	Internal Threads (Nuts)
7	Major Dia., Min. = D *plus* 0.020 for 10 threads per inch and coarser and 0.010 for finer pitches.
8	Major Dia., Max.= Major Dia., Min. (Formula 7) *plus* Class 2G pitch diameter tolerance from Table 5.
9	Pitch Dia., Min. = $D_2 = D - 0.3P$
10	Pitch Dia., Max. = Pitch Dia., Min. (Formula 9) *plus* Class 2G tolerance from Table 5.
11	Minor Dia., Min. = $D_1 = D - 0.6P$
12	Minor Dia., Max = Minor Dia., Min. (Formula 11) *plus* $0.05P$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

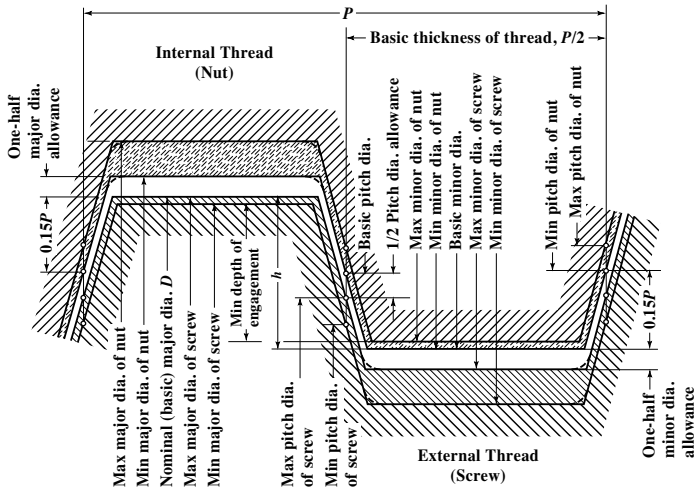
Table 14b. Limiting Dimensions for American National Standard Stub Acme Single-Start Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016)*

Nominal Diameter, *D*		1/4	5/16	3/8	7/16	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1	1 1/8	1 1/4	1 3/8
Threads per Inch[a]		16	14	12	12	10	8	6	6	5	5	5	4
Limiting Diameters		**External Threads**											
Major Dia.	Max (*D*)	0.2500	0.3125	0.3750	0.4375	0.5000	0.6250	0.7500	0.8750	1.0000	1.1250	1.2500	1.3750
	Min	0.2469	0.3089	0.3708	0.4333	0.4950	0.6188	0.7417	0.8667	0.9900	1.1150	1.2400	1.3625
Pitch Dia.	Max	0.2272	0.2871	0.3451	0.4076	0.4643	0.5812	0.6931	0.8175	0.9320	1.0565	1.1811	1.2906
	Min	0.2167	0.2757	0.3328	0.3950	0.4506	0.5658	0.6757	0.7996	0.9126	1.0367	1.1610	1.2686
Minor Dia.	Max	0.2024	0.2597	0.3150	0.3775	0.4200	0.5300	0.6300	0.7550	0.8600	0.9850	1.1100	1.2050
	Min	0.1919	0.2483	0.3027	0.3649	0.4063	0.5146	0.6126	0.7371	0.8406	0.9652	1.0899	1.1830
		Internal Threads											
Major Dia.	Min	0.2600	0.3225	0.3850	0.4475	0.5200	0.6450	0.7700	0.8950	1.0200	1.1450	1.2700	1.3950
	Max	0.2705	0.3339	0.3973	0.4601	0.5337	0.6604	0.7874	0.9129	1.0394	1.1648	1.2901	1.4170
Pitch Dia.	Min	0.2312	0.2911	0.3500	0.4125	0.4700	0.5875	0.7000	0.8250	0.9400	1.0650	1.1900	1.3000
	Max	0.2417	0.3025	0.3623	0.4251	0.4837	0.6029	0.7174	0.8429	0.9594	1.0848	1.2101	1.3220
Minor Dia.	Min	0.2125	0.2696	0.3250	0.3875	0.4400	0.5500	0.6500	0.7750	0.8800	1.0050	1.1300	1.2250
	Max	0.2156	0.2732	0.3292	0.3917	0.4450	0.5562	0.6583	0.7833	0.8900	1.0150	1.1400	1.2375

Nominal Diameter, *D*		1 1/2	1 3/4	2	2 1/4	2 1/2	2 3/4	3	3 1/2	4	4 1/2	5
Threads per Inch[a]		4	4	4	3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2
Limiting Diameters		**External Threads**										
Major Dia.	Max (*D*)	1.5000	1.7500	2.0000	2.2500	2.5000	2.7500	3.0000	3.5000	4.0000	4.5000	5.0000
	Min	1.4875	1.7375	1.9875	2.2333	2.4833	2.7333	2.9750	3.4750	3.9750	4.4750	4.9750
Pitch Dia.	Max	1.4152	1.6645	1.9137	2.1380	2.3874	2.6367	2.8360	3.3350	3.8340	4.3330	4.8319
	Min	1.3929	1.6416	1.8902	2.1117	2.3606	2.6094	2.8044	3.3026	3.8008	4.2991	4.7973
Minor Dia.	Max	1.3300	1.5800	1.8300	2.0300	2.2800	2.5300	2.6800	3.1800	3.6800	4.1800	4.6800
	Min	1.3077	1.5571	1.8065	2.0037	2.2532	2.5027	2.6484	3.1476	3.6468	4.1461	4.6454
		Internal Threads										
Major Dia.	Min	1.5200	1.7700	2.0200	2.2700	2.5200	2.7700	3.0200	3.5200	4.0200	4.5200	5.0200
	Max	1.5423	1.7929	2.0435	2.2963	2.5468	2.7973	3.0516	3.5524	4.0532	4.5539	5.0546
Pitch Dia.	Min	1.4250	1.6750	1.9250	2.1500	2.4000	2.6500	2.8500	3.3500	3.8500	4.3500	4.8500
	Max	1.4473	1.6979	1.9485	2.1763	2.4268	2.6773	2.8816	3.3824	3.8832	4.3839	4.8846
Minor Dia.	Min	1.3500	1.6000	1.8500	2.0500	2.3000	2.5500	2.7000	3.2000	3.7000	4.2000	4.7000
	Max	1.3625	1.6125	1.8625	2.0667	2.3167	2.5667	2.7250	3.2250	3.7250	4.2250	4.7250

[a] All other dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com



Limits of Size, Allowances, Tolerances, and Crest Clearances for American National Standard Stub Acme Threads

Alternate Stub Acme Threads.—Since one Stub Acme thread form may not meet the requirements of all applications, basic data for two of the other commonly used forms are included in the appendix of the American Standard for Stub Acme Threads. These so-called Modified Form 1 and Modified Form 2 threads utilize the same tolerances and allowances as Standard Stub Acme threads and have the same major diameter and basic thread thickness at the pitchline (0.5*P*). The basic height of Form 1 threads, *h*, is 0.375*P*; for Form 2 it is 0.250*P*. The basic width of flat at the crest of the internal thread is 0.4030*P* for Form 1 and 0.4353*P* for Form 2.

The pitch diameter and minor diameter for Form 1 threads will be smaller than similar values for the Standard Stub Acme Form and for Form 2 they will be larger owing to the differences in basic thread height *h*. Therefore, in calculating the dimensions of Form 1 and Form 2 threads using Formulas 1 through 12 in Table 14a, it is only necessary to substitute the following values in applying the formulas: For Form 1, $D_2 = D - 0.375P$, $D_1 = D - 0.75P$; for Form 2, $D_2 = D - 0.25P$, $D_1 = D - 0.5P$.

Thread Designation: These threads are designated in the same manner as Standard Stub Acme threads except for the insertion of either M1 or M2 after "Acme." Thus, 0.500-20 Stub Acme M1 for a Form 1 thread; and 0.500-20 Stub Acme M2 for a Form 2 thread.

Former 60-Degree Stub Thread.—Former American Standard B1.3-1941 included a 60-degree stub thread for use where design or operating conditions could be better satisfied by the use of this thread, or other modified threads, than by Acme threads. Data for 60-Degree Stub thread form are given in the accompanying diagram.

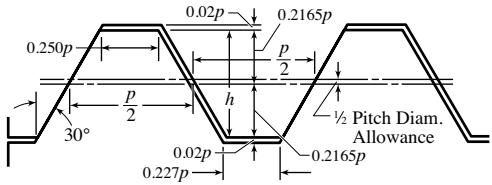
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Stub Acme Screw Thread Data *ANSI/ASME B1.8-1988 (R2016)*

Identification		Basic Diameters			Thread Data					
Nominal Sizes	Threads per Inch,[a] n	Major Diameter, D	Pitch Diameter, $D_2 = D - h$	Minor Diameter, $D_1 = D - 2h$	Pitch, P	Thread Thickness at Pitch Line, $t = P/2$	Basic Thread Height, $h = 0.3P$	Basic Width of Flat, $0.4224P$	Lead Angle at Basic Pitch Diameter	
									Deg	Min
1/4	16	0.2500	0.2312	0.2125	0.06250	0.03125	0.01875	0.0264	4	54
5/16	14	0.3125	0.2911	0.2696	0.07143	0.03572	0.02143	0.0302	4	28
3/8	12	0.3750	0.3500	0.3250	0.08333	0.04167	0.02500	0.0352	4	20
7/16	12	0.4375	0.4125	0.3875	0.08333	0.04167	0.02500	0.0352	3	41
1/2	10	0.5000	0.4700	0.4400	0.10000	0.05000	0.03000	0.0422	3	52
5/8	8	0.6250	0.5875	0.5500	0.12500	0.06250	0.03750	0.0528	3	52
3/4	6	0.7500	0.7000	0.6500	0.16667	0.08333	0.05000	0.0704	4	20
7/8	6	0.8750	0.8250	0.7750	0.16667	0.08333	0.05000	0.0704	3	41
1	5	1.0000	0.9400	0.8800	0.20000	0.10000	0.06000	0.0845	3	52
1 1/8	5	1.1250	1.0650	1.0050	0.20000	0.10000	0.06000	0.0845	3	25
1 1/4	5	1.2500	1.1900	1.1300	0.20000	0.10000	0.06000	0.0845	3	4
1 3/8	4	1.3750	1.3000	1.2250	0.25000	0.12500	0.07500	0.1056	3	30
1 1/2	4	1.5000	1.4250	1.3500	0.25000	0.12500	0.07500	0.1056	3	12
1 3/4	4	1.7500	1.6750	1.6000	0.25000	0.12500	0.07500	0.1056	2	43
2	4	2.0000	1.9250	1.8500	0.25000	0.12500	0.07500	0.1056	2	22
2 1/4	3	2.2500	2.1500	2.0500	0.33333	0.16667	0.10000	0.1408	2	50
2 1/2	3	2.5000	2.4000	2.3000	0.33333	0.16667	0.10000	0.1408	2	32
2 3/4	3	2.7500	2.6500	2.5500	0.33333	0.16667	0.10000	0.1408	2	18
3	2	3.0000	2.8500	2.7000	0.50000	0.25000	0.15000	0.2112	3	12
3 1/2	2	3.5000	3.3500	3.2000	0.50000	0.25000	0.15000	0.2112	2	43
4	2	4.0000	3.8500	3.7000	0.50000	0.25000	0.15000	0.2112	2	22
4 1/2	2	4.5000	4.3500	4.2000	0.50000	0.25000	0.15000	0.2112	2	6
5	2	5.0000	4.8500	4.7000	0.50000	0.25000	0.15000	0.2112	1	53

[a] All other dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



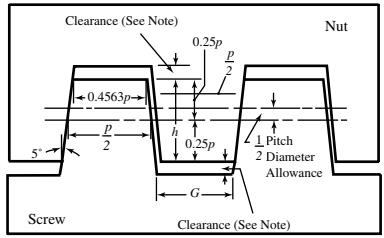
60-Degree Stub Thread

A clearance of at least 0.02 × pitch is added to depth *h* to produce extra depth, thus avoiding interference with threads of mating part at minor or major diameters.

Basic thread thickness at pitch line = 0.5 × pitch *p*; basic depth *h* = 0.433 × pitch; basic width of flat at crest = 0.25 × pitch; width of flat at root of screw thread = 0.227 × pitch; basic pitch diameter = basic major diameter – 0.433 × pitch; basic minor diameter = basic major diameter – 0.866 × pitch.

Square Thread.—The square thread is so named because the section is square, the depth, in the case of a screw, being equal to the width or one-half the pitch. The thread groove in a square-threaded nut is made a little greater than one-half the pitch in order to provide a slight clearance for the screw; hence, the tools used for threading square-threaded taps are a little less in width at the point than one-half the pitch. The pitch of a square thread is usually twice the pitch of an American Standard thread of corresponding diameter. The square thread has been superseded quite largely by the Acme form which has several advantages. See *ACME SCREW THREADS*.

10-Degree Modified Square Thread: The included angle between the sides of the thread is 10 degrees (see accompanying diagram). The angle of 10 degrees results in a thread which is the practical equivalent of a "square thread," and yet is capable of economical production. Multiple thread milling cutters and ground thread taps should not be specified for modified square threads of the larger lead angles without consulting the cutting tool manufacturer.



In the following formulas, *D* = basic major diameter; *E* = basic pitch diameter; *K* = basic minor diameter; *p* = pitch; *h* = basic depth of thread on screw depth when there is no clearance between root of screw and crest of thread on nut; *t* = basic thickness of thread at pitch line; *F* = basic width of flat at crest of screw thread; *G* = basic width of flat at root of screw thread; *C* = clearance between root of screw and crest of thread on nut: $E = D - 0.5p$; $K = D - p$; $h = 0.5p$ (see Note); $t = 0.5p$; $F = 0.4563p$; $G = 0.4563p - (0.17 \times C)$.

Note: A clearance should be added to depth *h* to avoid interference with threads of mating parts at minor or major diameters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BUTTRESS THREADS

Threads of Buttress Form

The buttress form of thread has certain advantages in applications involving exceptionally high stresses along the thread axis in one direction only. The contacting flank of the thread, which takes the thrust, is referred to as the *pressure flank* and is so nearly perpendicular to the thread axis that the radial component of the thrust is reduced to a minimum. Because of the small radial thrust, this form of thread is particularly applicable where tubular members are screwed together, as in the case of breech mechanisms of large guns and airplane propeller hubs.

Fig. 1a shows a common form. The front or load-resisting face is perpendicular to the axis of the screw and the thread angle is 45 degrees. According to one rule, the pitch P = 2 × screw diameter ÷ 15. The thread depth d may equal $\frac{3}{4}$ × pitch, making the flat $f = \frac{1}{8}$ × pitch. Sometimes depth d is reduced to $\frac{2}{3}$ × pitch, making $f = \frac{1}{6}$ × pitch.

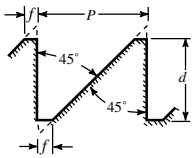


Fig. 1a.

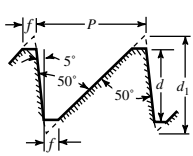


Fig. 1b.

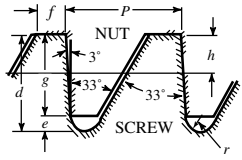


Fig. 1c.

The load-resisting side or flank may be inclined an amount (Fig. 1b) ranging usually from 1 to 5 degrees to avoid cutter interference in milling the thread. With an angle of 5 degrees and an included thread angle of 50 degrees, if the width of the flat f at both crest and root equals $\frac{1}{8}$ × pitch, then the thread depth equals 0.69 × pitch or $\frac{3}{4}\,d_1$.

The saw-tooth form of thread illustrated by Fig. 1c is known in Germany as the "Sägengewinde" and in Italy as the "Fillettatura a dente di Sega." Pitches are standardized from 2 millimeters up to 48 millimeters in the German and Italian specifications. The front face inclines 3 degrees from the perpendicular and the included angle is 33 degrees.

The thread depth d for the screw = 0.86777 × pitch P. The thread depth g for the nut = 0.75 × pitch. Dimension h = 0.341 × P. The width f of flat at the crest of the thread on the screw = 0.26384 × pitch. Radius r at the root = 0.12427 × pitch. The clearance space e = 0.11777 × pitch.

British Standard Buttress Threads BS 1657: 1950.—Specifications for buttress threads in this standard are similar to those in the American Standard (see page 2079) except: 1) A basic depth of thread of 0.4p is used instead of 0.6p; 2) Sizes below 1 inch are not included; 3) Tolerances on major and minor diameters are the same as the pitch diameter tolerances, whereas in the American Standard separate tolerances are provided; however, provision is made for smaller major and minor diameter tolerances when crest surfaces of screws or nuts are used as datum surfaces, or when the resulting reduction in depth of engagement must be limited; and 4) Certain combinations of large diameters with fine pitches are provided that are not encouraged in the American Standard.

American National Standard Buttress Inch Screw Threads

The buttress form of thread has certain advantages in applications involving exceptionally high stresses along the thread axis in one direction only. As the thrust side (load flank) of the standard buttress thread is made very nearly perpendicular to the thread axis, the radial component of the thrust is reduced to a minimum. On account of the small radial thrust, the buttress form of thread is particularly applicable when tubular members

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

are screwed together. Examples of actual applications are the breech assemblies of large guns, airplane propeller hubs, and columns for hydraulic presses.

7°/45° Buttress Thread Form.—In selecting the form of thread recommended as standard, ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017), manufacture by milling, grinding, rolling, or other suitable means, has been taken into consideration. All dimensions are in inches.

Form of Thread: The form of the buttress thread is shown in the accompanying Fig. 2a and Fig. 2b, and has the following characteristics:

a) A load flank angle, measured in an axial plane, of 7 degrees from the normal to the axis.

b) A clearance flank angle, measured in an axial plane, of 45 degrees from the normal to the axis.

c) Equal truncations at the crests of the external and internal threads such that the basic height of thread engagement (assuming no allowance) is equal to 0.6 of the pitch

b) Equal radii, at the roots of the external and internal basic thread forms tangential to the load flank and the clearance flank. (There is, in practice, almost no chance that the thread forms will be achieved strictly as basically specified, that is, as true radii.) When specified, equal flat roots of the external and internal thread may be supplied.

Table 1. American National Standard Diameter—Pitch Combinations for 7°/45° Buttress Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017)*

Preferred Nominal Major Diameters, Inches	Threads per Inch[a]	Preferred Nominal Major Diameters, Inches	Threads per Inch[a]
0.5, 0.625, 0.75	(20, 16, 12)	4.5, 5, 5.5, 6	12, 10, 8, (6, 5, 4), 3
0.875, 1.0	(16, 12, 10)	7, 8, 9, 10	10, 8, 6, (5, 4, 3), 2.5, 2
1.25, 1.375, 1.5	16, (12, 10, 8), 6	11, 12, 14, 16	10, 8, 6, 5, (4, 3, 2.5), 2, 1.5, 1.25
1.75, 2, 2.25, 2.5	16, 12, (10, 8, 6), 5, 4	18, 20, 22, 24	8, 6, 5, 4, (3, 2.5, 2), 1.5, 1.25, 1
2.75, 3, 3.5, 4	16, 12, 10, (8, 6, 5), 4		

[a] Preferred threads per inch are in parentheses.

Table 2. American National Standard Inch Buttress Screw Threads—Basic Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017)*

Thds.[a] per Inch	Pitch, p	Basic Height of Thread, $h = 0.6p$	Height of Sharp-V Thread, $H = 0.89064p$	Crest Truncation, $f = 0.14532p$	Height of Thread, h_s or $h_n = 0.66271p$	Max. Root Truncation,[b] $s = 0.0826p$	Max. Root Radius,[c] $r = 0.0714p$	Width of Flat at Crest, $F = 0.16316p$
20	0.0500	0.0300	0.0445	0.0073	0.0331	0.0041	0.0036	0.0082
16	0.0625	0.0375	0.0557	0.0091	0.0414	0.0052	0.0045	0.0102
12	0.0833	0.0500	0.0742	0.0121	0.0552	0.0069	0.0059	0.0136
10	0.1000	0.0600	0.0891	0.0145	0.0663	0.0083	0.0071	0.0163
8	0.1250	0.0750	0.1113	0.0182	0.0828	0.0103	0.0089	0.0204
6	0.1667	0.1000	0.1484	0.0242	0.1105	0.0138	0.0119	0.0271
5	0.2000	0.1200	0.1781	0.0291	0.1325	0.0165	0.0143	0.0326
4	0.2500	0.1500	0.2227	0.0363	0.1657	0.0207	0.0179	0.0408
3	0.3333	0.2000	0.2969	0.0484	0.2209	0.0275	0.0238	0.0543
2½	0.4000	0.2400	0.3563	0.0581	0.2651	0.0330	0.0286	0.0653
2	0.5000	0.3000	0.4453	0.0727	0.3314	0.0413	0.0357	0.0816
1½	0.6667	0.4000	0.5938	0.0969	0.4418	0.0551	0.0476	0.1088
1¼	0.8000	0.4800	0.7125	0.1163	0.5302	0.0661	0.0572	0.1305
1	1.0000	0.6000	0.8906	0.1453	0.6627	0.0826	0.0714	0.1632

[a] All other dimensions are in inches.
[b] Minimum root truncation is one-half of maximum.
[c] Minimum root radius is one-half of maximum.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Form of American National Standard 7°/45° Buttress Thread with 0.6*p* Basic Height of Thread Engagement

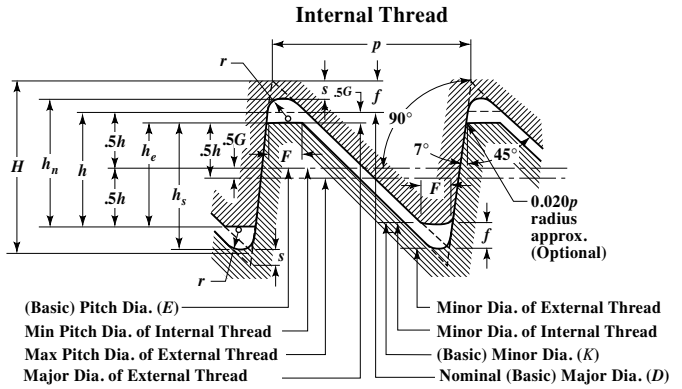


Fig. 2a. Round Root External Thread

Note: Heavy Line Indicates Basic Form

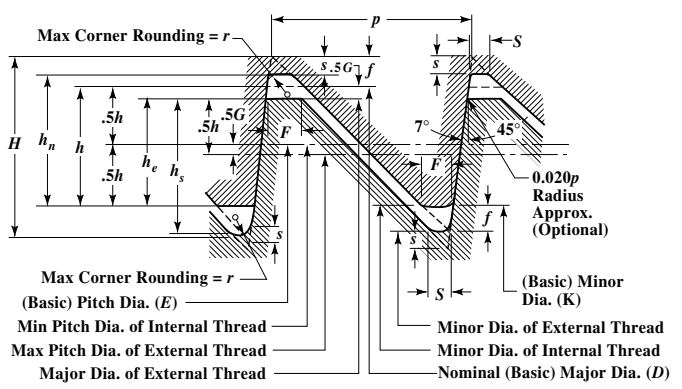


Fig. 2b. Flat Root External Thread

Note: Heavy Line Indicates Basic Form

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. American National Standard Buttress Inch Screw Thread Symbols and Form

Thread Element	Max. Material (Basic)		Min. Material	
Pitch	p			
Height of sharp-V thread	H	$= 0.89064p$		
Basic height of thread engagement	h	$= 0.6p$		
Root radius (theoretical)(see footnote [a])	r	$= 0.07141p$	Min. r	$= 0.0357p$
Root truncation	s	$= 0.0826p$	Min. s	$= 0.5$; Max. $s = 0.0413p$
Root truncation for flat root form	s	$= 0.0826p$	Min. s	$= 0.5$; Max. $s = 0.0413p$
Flat width for flat root form	S	$= 0.0928p$	Min. S	$= 0.0464p$
Allowance	G	(see text)		
Height of thread engagement	h_e	$= h - 0.5G$	Min. h_e	= Max. h_e – [0.5 tol. on major dia. external thread + 0.5 tol. on minor dia. internal thread].
Crest truncation	f	$= 0.14532p$		
Crest width	F	$= 0.16316p$		
Major diameter	D			
Major diameter of internal thread	D_n	$= D + 0.12542p$	Max. D_n	= Max. pitch dia.of internal thread + $0.80803p$
Major diameter of external thread	D_s	$= D - G$	Min. D_s	$= D - G -$ D tol.
Pitch diameter	E			
Pitch diameter of internal thread (see footnote [b])	E_n	$= D - h$	Max. E_n	$= D - h +$ PD tol.
Pitch diameter of external thread (see footnote [c])	E_s	$= D - h - G$	Min. E_s	$= D - h - G -$ PD tol.
Minor diameter	K			
Minor diameter of external thread	K_s	$= D - 1.32542p - G$	Min. K_s	= Min. pitch dia. of external thread – $0.80803p$
Minor diameter of internal thread	K_n	$= D - 2h$	Min. K_n	$= D - 2h +$ K tol.
Height of thread of internal thread	h_n	$= 0.66271p$		
Height of thread of external thread	h_s	$= 0.66271p$		
Pitch diameter increment for lead	ΔEl			
Pitch diameter increment for 45° clearance flank angle	$\Delta E\alpha_1$			
Pitch diameter increment for 7° load flank angle	$\Delta E\alpha_2$			
Length of engagement	L_e			

[a] Unless the flat root form is specified, the rounded root form of the external and internal thread shall be a continuous, smoothly blended curve within the zone defined by $0.07141p$ maximum to $0.0357p$ minimum radius. The resulting curve shall have no reversals or sudden angular variations, and shall be tangent to the flanks of the thread. There is, in practice, almost no chance that the rounded thread form will be achieved strictly as basically specified, that is, as a true radius.

[b] The pitch diameter X tolerances for GO and NOT GO threaded plug gages are applied to the internal product limits for E_n and Max. E_n.

[c] The pitch diameter W tolerances for GO and NOT GO threaded setting plug gages are applied to the external product limits for E_s and Min. E_s.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Buttress Thread Tolerances.—Tolerances from basic size on external threads are applied in a minus direction and on internal threads in a plus direction.

Pitch Diameter Tolerances: The following formula is used for determining the pitch diameter product tolerance for Class 2 (standard grade) external or internal threads:

$$PD \text{ tolerance } = 0.002 \sqrt[3]{D} + 0.00278\sqrt{L_e} + 0.00854\sqrt{p}$$

where D = basic major diameter of external thread (assuming no allowance)

L_e = length of engagement

p = pitch of thread

When the length of engagement is taken as $10p$, the formula reduces to

$$0.002 \sqrt[3]{D} + 0.0173\sqrt{p}$$

It is to be noted that this formula relates specifically to Class 2 (standard grade) PD tolerances. Class 3 (precision grade) PD tolerances are two-thirds of Class 2 PD tolerances. Pitch diameter tolerances based on this latter formula, for various diameter pitch combinations, are given in Table 4.

Functional Size: Deviations in lead and flank angle of product threads increase the functional size of an external thread and decrease the functional size of an internal thread by the cumulative effect of the diameter equivalents of these deviations. The functional size of all buttress product threads shall not exceed the maximum-material limit.

Tolerances on Major Diameter of External Thread and Minor Diameter of Internal Thread: Unless otherwise specified, these tolerances should be the same as the pitch diameter tolerance for the class used.

Tolerances on Minor Diameter of External Thread and Major Diameter of Internal Thread: It will be sufficient in most instances to state only the maximum minor diameter of the external thread and the minimum major diameter of the internal thread without any tolerance. However, the root truncation from a sharp V should not be greater than $0.0826p$ nor less than $0.0413p$.

Lead and Flank Angle Deviations for Class 2: The deviations in lead and flank angles may consume the entire tolerance zone between maximum and minimum material product limits given in Table 4.

Diameter Equivalents for Variations in Lead and Flank Angles for Class 3: The combined diameter equivalents of variations in lead (including helix deviations), and flank angle for Class 3, shall not exceed 50 percent of the Class 2 pitch diameter tolerances given in Table 4.

Tolerances on Taper and Roundness: There are no requirements for taper and roundness for Class 2 buttress screw threads.

The major and minor diameters of Class 3 buttress threads shall not taper nor be out of round to the extent that specified limits for major and minor diameter are exceeded. The taper and out-of-roundness of the pitch diameter for Class 3 buttress threads shall not exceed 50 percent of the pitch-diameter tolerances.

Allowances for Easy Assembly.—An allowance (clearance) should be provided on all external threads to secure easy assembly of parts. The amount of the allowance is deducted from the nominal major, pitch, and minor diameters of the external thread when the maximum material condition of the external thread is to be determined.

The minimum internal thread is basic.

The amount of the allowance is the same for both classes and is equal to the Class 3 pitch-diameter tolerance as calculated by the formulas previously given. The allowances for various diameter-pitch combinations are given in Table 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Buttress Inch Screw Threads Tolerances Class 2 (Standard Grade) and Class 3 (Precision Grade)
ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017)

Thds. per Inch	Pitch,[a] p Inch	Basic Major Diameter, Inch: From 0.5 thru 0.7	Over 0.7 thru 1.0	Over 1.0 thru 1.5	Over 1.5 thru 2.5	Over 2.5 thru 4	Over 4 thru 6	Over 6 thru 10	Over 10 thru 16	Over 16 thru 24	Pitch[b] Increment, $0.0173\sqrt{p}$ Inch
		Tolerance on Major Diameter of External Thread, Pitch Diameter of External and Internal Threads, and Minor Diameter of Internal Thread, Inch									
Class 2, Standard Grade											
20	0.0500	.0056	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.00387
16	0.0625	.0060	.0062	.0065	.0068	.0073	....	....	....	....	.00432
12	0.0833	.0067	.0069	.0071	.0075	.0080	.0084	....	....	....	.00499
10	0.1000	....	.0074	.0076	.0080	.0084	.0089	.0095	.0102	....	.00547
8	0.1250	....	....	.0083	.0086	.0091	.0095	.0101	.0108	.0115	.00612
6	0.1667	....	....	.0092	.0096	.0100	.0105	.0111	.0118	.0125	.00706
5	0.2000	....	....	....	.0103	.0107	.0112	.0117	.0124	.0132	.00774
4	0.2500	....	....	....	.0112	.0116	.0121	.0127	.0134	.0141	.00865
3	0.3333	....	....	....	....	....	.0134	.0140	.0147	.0154	.00999
2.5	0.4000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0149	.0156	.0164	.01094
2.0	0.5000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0162	.0169	.0177	.01223
1.5	0.6667	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0188	.0196	.01413
1.25	0.8000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0202	.0209	.01547
1.0	1.0000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0227	.01730
Diameter Increment,[c] $0.002\sqrt[3]{D}$		.00169	.00189	.00215	.00252	.00296	.00342	.00400	.00470	.00543	
Class 3, Precision Grade											
20	0.0500	.0037	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	
16	0.0625	.0040	.0042	.0043	.0046	.0049	....	....	....	....	
12	0.0833	.0044	.0046	.0048	.0050	.0053	.0056	....	....	....	
10	0.1000	....	.0049	.0051	.0053	.0056	.0059	.0063	.0068	....	
8	0.1250	....	....	.0055	.0058	.0061	.0064	.0067	.0072	.0077	
6	0.1667	....	....	.0061	.0064	.0067	.0070	.0074	.0078	.0083	
5	.02000	....	....	....	.0068	.0071	.0074	.0078	.0083	.0088	
4	0.2500	....	....	....	.0074	.0077	.0080	.0084	.0089	.0094	
3	.03333	....	....	....	....	....	.0089	.0093	.0098	.0103	
2.5	0.4000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0100	.0104	.0109	
2.0	0.5000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0108	.0113	.0118	
1.5	0.6667	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0126	.0130	
1.25	0.8000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0135	.0139	
1.0	1.0000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0152	

[a] For threads with pitches not shown in this table, pitch increment to be used in tolerance formula is to be determined by use of formula PD Tolerance $= 0.002\sqrt[3]{D} + 0.00278\sqrt{L_e} + 0.00854\sqrt{p}$, where: D = basic major diameter of external thread (assuming no allowance), L_e = length of engagement, and p = pitch of thread. This formula relates specifically to Class 2 (standard grade) PD tolerances. Class 3 (precision grade) PD tolerances are two-thirds of Class 2 PD tolerances. See text

[b] When the length of engagement is taken as 10p, the formula reduces to: $0.002\sqrt[3]{D} + 0.0173\sqrt{p}$

[c] Diameter D, used in diameter increment formula, is based on the average of the range.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard External Thread Allowances for Classes 2 and 3 Buttress Inch Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017)*

Threads per Inch	Pitch, *p* Inch	Basic Major Diameter, Inch								
		From 0.5 thru 0.7	Over 0.7 thru 1.0	Over 1.0 thru 1.5	Over 1.5 thru 2.5	Over 2.5 thru 4	Over 4 thru 6	Over 6 thru 10	Over 10 thru 16	Over 16 thru 24
		Allowance on Major, Minor and Pitch Diameters of External Thread, Inch								
20	0.0500	.0037	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....
16	0.0625	.0040	.0042	.0043	.0046	.0049	....	....	....	....
12	0.0833	.0044	.0046	.0048	.0050	.0053	.0056	....	....	....
10	0.1000	....	.0049	.0051	.0053	.0056	.0059	.0063	.0068	....
8	0.1250	....	....	.0055	.0058	.0061	.0064	.0067	.0072	.0077
6	0.1667	....	....	.0061	.0064	.0067	.0070	.0074	.0078	.0083
5	0.2000	....	....	....	.0068	.0071	.0074	.0078	.0083	.0088
4	0.2500	....	....	....	.0074	.0077	.0080	.0084	.0089	.0094
3	0.3333	....	....	....	....	....	.0089	.0093	.0098	.0103
2.5	0.4000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0100	.0104	.0109
2.0	0.5000	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0108	.0113	.0118
1.5	0.6667	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0126	.0130
1.25	0.8000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0135	.0139
1.0	1.0000	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	....	.0152

Example Showing Dimensions for a Typical Buttress Thread.—The dimensions for a 2-inch diameter, 4 threads per inch, Class 2 buttress thread with flank angles of 7 degrees and 45 degrees are

h = basic thread height = 0.1500 (Table 2)

$h_s = h_n$ = height of thread in external and internal threads = 0.1657 (Table 2)

G = pitch-diameter allowance on external thread = 0.0074 (Table 5)

Tolerance on PD of external and internal threads = 0.0112 (Table 4)

Tolerance on major diameter of external thread and minor diameter of internal thread = 0.0112 (Table 4)

Internal Thread:

Basic Major Diameter: $D = 2.0000$

Min. Major Diameter: $D - 2h + 2h_n = 2.0314$ (see Table 2)

Min. Pitch Diameter: $D - h = 1.8500$ (see Table 2)

Max. Pitch Diameter: $D - h + PD$ Tolerance = 1.8612 (see Table 4)

Min. Minor Diameter: $D - 2h = 1.7000$ (see Table 2)

Max. Minor Diameter: $D - 2h$ + Minor Diameter Tolerance = 1.7112 (see Table 4)

External Thread:

Max. Major Diameter: $D - G = 1.9926$ (see Table 5)

Min. Major Diameter: $D - G$ − Major Diameter Tolerance = 1.9814 (see Table 4 and Table 5)

Max. Pitch Diameter: $D - h - G = 1.8426$ (see Table 2 and Table 5)

Min. Pitch Diameter: $D - h - G - PD$ Tolerance = 1.8314 (see Table 4)

Max. Minor Diameter: $D - G - 2h_s = 1.6612$ (see Table 2 and Table 5)

Buttress Thread Designations.—When only the designation, BUTT is used, the thread is "pull" type buttress (external thread pulls) with the clearance flank leading and the 7-degree pressure flank following. When the designation, PUSH-BUTT is used, the thread is a push type buttress (external thread pushes) with the 7-degree load flank leading and the 45-degree clearance flank following. Whenever possible this description should be

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

confirmed by a simplified view showing thread angles on the drawing of the product that has the buttress thread.

Standard Buttress Threads: A buttress thread is considered to be standard when: 1) opposite flank angles are 7-degrees and 45-degrees; 2) basic thread height is 0.6*p*; 3) tolerances and allowances are as shown in Table 4 and Table 5; and 4) length of engagement is 10*p* or less.

Thread Designation Abbreviations: In thread designations on drawings, tools, gages, and in specifications, the following abbreviations and letters are to be used:

BUTT	for buttress thread, pull type	
PUSH-BUTT	for buttress thread, push type	
LH	for left-hand thread	*Note:* Absence of LH indicates that the thread is a right-hand thread.
P	for pitch	
L	for lead	
A	for external thread	*Note:* Absence of A or B after thread class indicates that designation covers both the external and internal threads.
B	for internal thread	
Le	for length of thread engagement	
SPL	for special	
FL	for flat root thread	
E	for pitch diameter	
TPI	for threads per inch	
THD	for thread	

Designation Sequence for Buttress Inch Screw Threads: When designating single-start standard buttress threads the nominal size is given first, the threads per inch next, then PUSH if the internal member is to push, but nothing if it is to pull, then the class of thread (2 or 3), then whether external (A) or internal (B), then LH if left-hand, but nothing if right-hand, and finally FL if a flat root thread, but nothing if a radiused root thread; thus, 2.5-8 BUTT-2A indicates a 2.5 inch, 8 threads per inch buttress thread, Class 2 external, right-hand, internal member to pull, with radiused root of thread. The designation 2.5-8 PUSH-BUTT-2A-LH-FL signifies a 2.5 inch size, 8 threads per inch buttress thread with internal member to push, Class 2 external, left-hand, and flat root.

A multiple-start standard buttress thread is similarly designated but the pitch is given instead of the threads per inch, followed by the lead and the number of starts is indicated in parentheses after the class of thread. Thus, 10-0.25P-0.5L - BUTT-3B (2 start) indicates a 10-inch thread with 4 threads per inch, 0.5 inch lead, buttress form with internal member to pull, Class 3 internal, 2 starts, with radiused root of thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

WHITWORTH THREADS

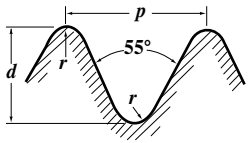
British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and British Standard Fine (BSF) Threads

The BSW is the Coarse Thread series and the BSF is the Fine Thread series of British Standard 84:1956—Parallel Screw Threads of Whitworth Form. The dimensions given in the tables on the following pages for the major, effective, and minor diameters are, respectively, the maximum limits of these diameters for bolts and the minimum limits for nuts. Formulas for the tolerances on these diameters are given in the table below.

Whitworth Standard Thread Form.—This thread form is used for the British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and British Standard Fine (BSF) screw threads. More recently, both threads have been known as parallel screw threads of Whitworth form. With standardization of the Unified thread, the Whitworth thread form is expected to be used only for replacements or spare parts. Tables of British Standard Parallel Screw Threads of Whitworth Form will be found on the following pages; tolerance formulas are given in the table below. The form of the thread is shown by the diagram. If p = pitch, d = depth of thread, r = radius at crest and root, and n = number of threads per inch, then

$$d = \frac{1}{3}p \times \cot 27°30' = 0.640327p = 0.640327 \div n$$

$$r = 0.137329p = 0.137329 \div n$$



It is recommended that stainless steel bolts of nominal size ¾ inch and below should not be made to Close Class limits but rather to Medium or Free Class limits. Nominal sizes above ¾ inch should have maximum and minimum limits 0.001 inch smaller than the values obtained from the table.

Tolerance Classes : Close Class bolts. Applies to screw threads requiring a fine snug fit, and should be used only for special work where refined accuracy of pitch and thread form are particularly required. *Medium Class bolts and nuts*. Applies to the better class of ordinary interchangeable screw threads. *Free Class bolts*. Applies to the majority of bolts of ordinary commercial quality. *Normal Class nuts*. Applies to ordinary commercial quality nuts; this class is intended for use with Medium or Free Class bolts.

Table 1. Tolerance Formulas for BSW and BSF Threads

	Class or Fit	Tolerance in inches[a] (+ for nuts, – for bolts)		
		Major Dia.	Effective Dia.	Minor Dia.
Bolts	Close	$\frac{2}{3}T + 0.01\sqrt{p}$	$^2/_3T$	$\frac{2}{3}T + 0.013\sqrt{p}$
	Medium	$T + 0.01\sqrt{p}$	T	$T + 0.02\sqrt{p}$
	Free	$\frac{3}{2}T + 0.01\sqrt{p}$	$^3/_2T$	$\frac{3}{2}T + 0.02\sqrt{p}$
Nuts	Close	…	$^2/_3T$	$0.2p + 0.004$[b]
	Medium	…	T	}{ $0.2p + 0.005$[c]
	Normal	…	$^3/_2T$	$0.2p + 0.007$[d]

[a] The symbol $T = 0.002\sqrt[3]{D} + 0.003\sqrt{L} + 0.005\sqrt{p}$, where D = major diameter of thread in inches; L = length of engagement in inches; p = pitch in inches. The symbol p signifies pitch.

[b] For 26 threads per inch and finer.

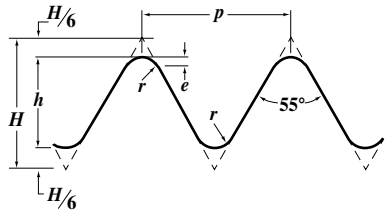
[c] For 24 and 22 threads per inch.

[d] For 20 threads per inch and coarser.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Threads of Whitworth Form—Basic Dimensions

$p = 1 \div n$
$H = 0.960491p$
$H/6 = 0.160082p$
$h = 0.640327p$
$e = 0.0739176p$
$r = 0.137329p$



Threads per Inch	Pitch	Triangular Height	Shortening	Depth of Thread	Depth of Rounding	Radius
n	*p*	*H*	*H*/6	*h*	*e*	*r*
72	0.013889	0.013340	0.002223	0.008894	0.001027	0.001907
60	0.016667	0.016009	0.002668	0.010672	0.001232	0.002289
56	0.017857	0.017151	0.002859	0.011434	0.001320	0.002452
48	0.020833	0.020010	0.003335	0.013340	0.001540	0.002861
40	0.025000	0.024012	0.004002	0.016008	0.0011848	0.003433
36	0.027778	0.026680	0.004447	0.017787	0.002053	0.003815
32	0.031250	0.030015	0.005003	0.020010	0.002310	0.004292
28	0.035714	0.034303	0.005717	0.022869	0.002640	0.004905
26	0.038462	0.036942	0.006157	0.024628	0.002843	0.005282
24	0.041667	0.040020	0.006670	0.026680	0.003080	0.005722
22	0.045455	0.043659	0.007276	0.029106	0.003366	0.006242
20	0.050000	0.048025	0.008004	0.032016	0.003696	0.006866
19	0.052632	0.050553	0.008425	0.033702	0.003890	0.007228
18	0.055556	0.053361	0.008893	0.035574	0.004107	0.007629
16	0.062500	0.060031	0.010005	0.040020	0.004620	0.008583
14	0.071429	0.068607	0.011434	0.045738	0.005280	0.009809
12	0.083333	0.080041	0.013340	0.053361	0.006160	0.011444
11	0.090909	0.087317	0.014553	0.058212	0.006720	0.012484
10	0.100000	0.096049	0.016008	0.064033	0.007392	0.013733
9	0.111111	0.106721	0.017787	0.071147	0.008213	0.015259
8	0.125000	0.120061	0.020010	0.080041	0.009240	0.017166
7	0.142857	0.137213	0.022869	0.091475	0.010560	0.019618
6	0.166667	0.160082	0.026680	0.106721	0.012320	0.022888
5	0.20000	0.192098	0.032016	0.128065	0.014784	0.027466
4.5	0.222222	0.213442	0.035574	0.142295	0.016426	0.030518
4	0.250000	0.240123	0.040020	0.160082	0.018479	0.034332
3.5	0.285714	0.274426	0.045738	0.182951	0.021119	0.039237
3.25	0.307692	0.295536	0.049256	0.197024	0.022744	0.042255
3	0.333333	0.320164	0.053361	0.213442	0.024639	0.045776
2.875	0.347826	0.334084	0.055681	0.222722	0.025710	0.047767
2.75	0.363636	0.349269	0.058212	0.232846	0.026879	0.049938
2.625	0.380952	0.365901	0.060984	0.243934	0.028159	0.052316
2.5	0.400000	0.384196	0.064033	0.256131	0.029567	0.054932

Dimensions are in inches.

Allowances: Only Free Class and Medium Class bolts have an allowance. For nominal sizes of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch down to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, the allowance is 30 percent of the Medium Class bolt effective-diameter tolerance (0.3*T*); for sizes less than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, the allowance for the $\frac{1}{4}$-inch size applies. Allowances are applied minus from the basic bolt dimensions; the tolerances are then applied to the reduced dimensions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. British Standard Whitworth (BSW) and British Standard Fine (BSF) Screw Thread Series—Basic Dimensions *BS 84:1956 (obsolescent)*

Nominal Size, Inches	Threads per Inch	Pitch, Inches	Depth of Thread, Inches	Major Diameter, Inches	Effective Diameter, Inches	Minor Diameter, Inches	Area at Bottom ofThread, Sq. in.	Tap Drill Dia.
Coarse Thread Series (BSW)								
1/8 [a]	40	0.02500	0.0160	0.1250	0.1090	0.9030	0.0068	2.55 mm
3/16	24	0.04167	0.0267	0.1875	0.1608	0.1341	0.0141	3.70 mm
1/4	20	0.05000	0.0320	0.2500	0.2180	0.1860	0.0272	5.10 mm
5/16	18	0.05556	0.0356	0.3125	0.2769	0.2413	0.0457	6.50 mm
3/8	16	0.06250	0.0400	0.3750	0.3350	0.2950	0.0683	7.90 mm
7/16	14	0.07143	0.0457	0.4375	0.3918	0.3461	0.0941	9.30 mm
1/2	12	0.08333	0.0534	0.5000	0.4466	0.3932	0.1214	10.50 mm
9/16 [a]	12	0.08333	0.0534	0.5625	0.5091	0.4557	0.1631	12.10. mm
5/8	11	0.09091	0.0582	0.6250	0.5668	0.5086	0.2032	13.50 mm
11/16 [a]	11	0.09091	0.0582	0.6875	0.6293	0.5711	0.2562	15.00 mm
3/4	10	0.10000	0.0640	0.7500	0.6860	0.6220	0.3039	16.25 mm
7/8	9	0.11111	0.0711	0.8750	0.8039	0.7328	0.4218	19.25 mm
1	8	0.12500	0.0800	1.0000	0.9200	0.8400	0.5542	22.00 mm
1 1/8	7	0.14286	0.0915	1.1250	1.0335	0.9420	0.6969	24.75 mm
1 1/4	7	0.14286	0.0915	1.2500	1.1585	1.0670	0.8942	28.00 mm
1 1/2	6	0.16667	0.1067	1.5000	1.3933	1.2866	1.3000	33.50 mm
1 3/4	5	0.20000	0.1281	1.7500	1.6219	1.4938	1.7530	39.00 mm
2	4.5	0.22222	0.1423	2.0000	1.8577	1.7154	2.3110	44.50 mm
2 1/4	4	0.25000	0.1601	2.2500	2.0899	1.9298	2.9250	
2 1/2	4	0.25000	0.1601	2.5000	2.3399	2.1798	3.7320	
2 3/4	3.5	0.28571	0.1830	2.7500	2.5670	2.3840	4.4640	Tap drill diameters shown in this column are recommended sizes listed in BS 1157:1975 and provide from 77 to 87% of full thread.
3	3.5	0.28571	0.1830	3.0000	2.8170	2.6340	5.4490	
3 1/4 [a]	3.25	0.30769	0.1970	3.2500	3.0530	2.8560	6.4060	
3 1/2	3.25	0.30769	0.1970	3.5000	3.3030	3.1060	7.5770	
3 3/4 [a]	3	0.33333	0.2134	3.7500	3.5366	3.3232	8.6740	
4	3	0.33333	0.2134	4.0000	3.7866	3.5732	10.0300	
4 1/2	2.875	0.34783	0.2227	4.5000	4.2773	4.0546	12.9100	
5	2.75	0.36364	0.2328	5.0000	4.7672	4.5344	16.1500	
5 1/2	2.625	0.38095	0.2439	5.5000	5.2561	5.0122	19.7300	
6	2.5	0.40000	0.2561	6.0000	5.7439	5.4878	23.6500	
Fine Thread Series (BSF)								
3/16 [a, b]	32	0.03125	0.0200	0.1875	0.1675	0.1475	0.0171	4.00 mm
7/32 [a]	28	0.03571	0.0229	0.2188	0.1959	0.1730	0.0235	4.60 mm
1/4	26	0.03846	0.0246	0.2500	0.2254	0.2008	0.0317	5.30 mm
9/32 [a]	26	0.03846	0.0246	0.2812	0.2566	0.2320	0.0423	6.10 mm
5/16	22	0.04545	0.0291	0.3125	0.2834	0.2543	0.0508	6.80 mm
3/8	20	0.05000	0.0320	0.3750	0.3430	0.3110	0.0760	8.30 mm
7/16	18	0.05556	0.0 356	0.4375	0.4019	0.3363	0.1054	9.70 mm
1/2	16	0.06250	0.0400	0.5000	0.4600	0.4200	0.1385	11.10 mm
9/16	16	0.06250	0.0400	0.5625	0.5225	0.4825	0.1828	12.70 mm
5/8	14	0.07143	0.0457	0.6250	0.5793	0.5336	0.2236	14.00 mm
11/16 [a]	14	0.07143	0.0457	0.6875	0.6418	0.5961	0.2791	15.50 mm
3/4	12	0.08333	0.0534	0.7500	0.6966	0.6432	0.3249	16.75 mm
7/8	11	0.09091	0.0582	0.8750	0.8168	0.7586	0.4520	19.75 mm
1	10	0.10000	0.0640	1.0000	0.9360	0.8720	0.5972	22.75 mm
1 1/8	9	0.11111	0.0711	1.1250	1.0539	0.9828	0.7586	25.50 mm
1 1/4	9	0.11111	0.0711	1.2500	1.1789	1.1078	0.9639	28.50 mm
1 3/8 [a]	8	0.12500	0.0800	1.3750	1.2950	1.2150	1.1590	31.50 mm
1 1/2	8	0.12500	0.0800	1.5000	1.4200	1.3400	1.4100	34.50 mm
1 5/8 [a]	8	0.12500	0.0800	1.6250	1.5450	1.4650	1.6860	
1 3/4	7	0.14286	0.0915	1.7500	1.6585	1.5670	1.9280	
2	7	0.14286	0.0915	2.0000	1.9085	1.8170	2.5930	Tap drill sizes listed in this column are recommended sizes shown in BS 1157:1975 and provide from 78 to 88% of full thread.
2 1/4	6	0.16667	0.1067	2.2500	2.1433	2.0366	3.2580	
2 1/2	6	0.16667	0.1067	2.5000	2.3933	2.2866	4.1060	
2 3/4	6	0.16667	0.1067	2.7500	2.6433	2.5366	5.0540	
3	5	0.20000	0.1281	3.0000	2.8719	2.7438	5.9130	
3 1/4	5	0.20000	0.1281	3.2500	3.1219	2.9938	7.0390	
3 1/2	4.5	0.22222	0.1423	3.5000	3.3577	3.2154	8.1200	
3 3/4	4.5	0.22222	0.1423	3.7500	3.6077	3.4654	9.4320	
4	4.5	0.22222	0.1423	4.0000	3.8577	3.7154	10.8400	
4 1/4	4	0.25000	0.1601	4.2500	4.0899	3.9298	12.1300	

[a] To be dispensed with wherever possible.

[b] The use of number 2 BA threads is recommended in place of 3/16-inch BSF thread, see page 2114.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PIPE AND HOSE THREADS

The types of threads used on pipe and pipe fittings may be classed according to their intended use: 1) threads that when assembled with a sealer will produce a pressure-tight joint; 2) threads that when assembled without a sealer will produce a pressure-tight joint; 3) threads that provide free- and loose-fitting mechanical joints without pressure tightness; and 4) threads that produce rigid mechanical joints without pressure tightness.

American National Standard Pipe Threads

American National Standard pipe threads described in the following paragraphs provide taper and straight pipe threads for use in various combinations and with certain modifications to meet these specific needs.

Thread Designation and Notation.—American National Standard Pipe Threads are designated by specifying in sequence the nominal size, number of threads per inch, and the symbols for the thread series and form, as: $\frac{3}{8}$—18 NPT. The symbol designations are as follows: NPT—American National Standard Taper Pipe Thread; NPTR—American National Standard Taper Pipe Thread for Railing Joints; NPSC—American National Standard Straight Pipe Thread for Couplings; NPSM—American National Standard Straight Pipe Thread for Free-fitting Mechanical Joints; NPSL—American National Standard Straight Pipe Thread for Loose-fitting Mechanical Joints with Locknuts; and NPSH—American National Standard Straight Pipe Thread for Hose Couplings.

American National Standard Taper Pipe Threads.—The basic dimensions of the ANSI/ASME Standard taper pipe thread are given in Table 1a.

Form of Thread: The angle between the sides of the thread is 60 degrees when measured in an axial plane, and the line bisecting this angle is perpendicular to the axis. The depth of the truncated thread is based on factors entering into the manufacture of cutting tools and the making of tight joints and is given by the formulas in Table 1a or the data in Table 2 obtained from these formulas. Although the standard shows flat surfaces at the crest and root of the thread, some rounding may occur in commercial practice, and it is intended that the pipe threads of product shall be acceptable when crest and root of the tools or chasers lie within the limits shown in Table 2.

Pitch Diameter Formulas: In the following formulas, which apply to the ANSI Standard taper pipe thread, E_0 = pitch diameter at end of pipe; E_1 = pitch diameter at the large end of the internal thread and at the gaging notch; D = outside diameter of pipe; L_1 = length of hand-tight or normal engagement between external and internal threads; L_2 = basic length of effective external taper thread; and p = pitch = 1 ÷ number of threads per inch.

$$E_0 = D - (0.05D + 1.1)p$$
$$E_1 = E_0 + 0.0625L_1$$

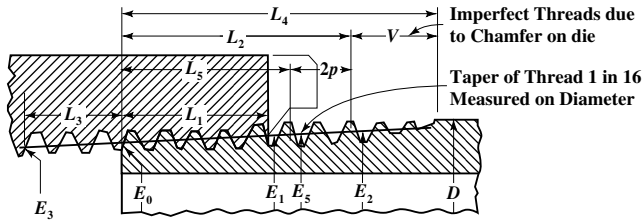
Thread Length: The formula for L_2 determines the length of the effective thread and includes approximately two usable threads that are slightly imperfect at the crest. The normal length of engagement, L_1, between external and internal taper threads, when assembled by hand, is controlled by the use of the gages.

$$L_2 = (0.80D + 6.8)p$$

Taper: The taper of the thread is 1 in 16, or 0.75 inch per foot, measured on the diameter and along the axis. The corresponding half-angle of taper or angle with the center line is 1 degree, 47 minutes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Basic Dimensions, American National Standard Taper Pipe Threads, NPT
ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)



For all dimensions, see corresponding reference letter in table.

Angle between sides of thread is 60 degrees. Taper of thread, on diameter, is ¾ inch per foot. Angle of taper with center line is 1°47′.

The basic maximum thread height, h, of the truncated thread is 0.8 × pitch of thread. The crest and root are truncated a minimum of 0.033 × pitch for all pitches. For maximum depth of truncation, see Table 2.

Nominal Pipe Size	Outside Dia. of Pipe, D	Threads per Inch, n	Pitch of Thread, p	Pitch Diameter at Beginning of External Thread, E_0	Handtight Engagement		Effective Thread, External	
					Length,[a] L_1	Dia.,[b] E_1	Length,[c] L_2	Dia., E_2
					Inch		Inch	
1/16	0.3125	27	0.03704	0.27118	0.160	0.28118	0.2611	0.28750
1/8	0.405	27	0.03704	0.36351	0.1615	0.37360	0.2639	0.38000
1/4	0.540	18	0.05556	0.47739	0.2278	0.49163	0.4018	0.50250
3/8	0.675	18	0.05556	0.61201	0.240	0.62701	0.4078	0.63750
1/2	0.840	14	0.07143	0.75843	0.320	0.77843	0.5337	0.79179
3/4	1.050	14	0.07143	0.96768	0.339	0.98887	0.5457	1.00179
1	1.315	11½	0.08696	1.21363	0.400	1.23863	0.6828	1.25630
1¼	1.660	11½	0.08696	1.55713	0.420	1.58338	0.7068	1.60130
1½	1.900	11½	0.08696	1.79609	0.420	1.82234	0.7235	1.84130
2	2.375	11½	0.08696	2.26902	0.436	2.29627	0.7565	2.31630
2½	2.875	8	0.12500	2.71953	0.682	2.76216	1.1375	2.79062
3	3.500	8	0.12500	3.34062	0.766	3.38850	1.2000	3.41562
3½	4.000	8	0.12500	3.83750	0.821	3.88881	1.2500	3.91562
4	4.500	8	0.12500	4.33438	0.844	4.38712	1.3000	4.41562
5	5.563	8	0.12500	5.39073	0.937	5.44929	1.4063	5.47862
6	6.625	8	0.12500	6.44609	0.958	6.50597	1.5125	6.54062
8	8.625	8	0.12500	8.43359	1.063	8.50003	1.7125	8.54062
10	10.750	8	0.12500	10.54531	1.210	10.62094	1.9250	10.66562
12	12.750	8	0.12500	12.53281	1.360	12.61781	2.1250	12.66562
14 OD	14.000	8	0.12500	13.77500	1.562	13.87262	2.2500	13.91562
16 OD	16.000	8	0.12500	15.76250	1.812	15.87575	2.4500	15.91562
18 OD	18.000	8	0.12500	17.75000	2.000	17.87500	2.6500	17.91562
20 OD	20.000	8	0.12500	19.73750	2.125	19.87031	2.8500	19.91562
24 OD	24.000	8	0.12500	23.71250	2.375	23.86094	3.2500	23.91562

[a] Also length of thin ring gage and length from gaging notch to small end of plug gage.
[b] Also pitch diameter at gaging notch (handtight plane).
[c] Also length of plug gage.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Basic Dimensions, American National Standard Taper Pipe Threads, NPT
ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)

Nominal Pipe Size	Wrench Makeup Length for Internal Thread		Vanish Thread, (3.47 thds.), V	Overall Length External Thread, L_4	Nominal Perfect External Threads[a]		Height of Thread, h	Basic Minor Dia. at Small End of Pipe,[b] K_0
	Length,[c] L_3	Dia., E_3			Length, L_5	Dia., E_5		
1/16	0.1111	0.26424	0.1285	0.3896	0.1870	0.28287	0.02963	0.2415
1/8	0.1111	0.35656	0.1285	0.3924	0.1898	0.37537	0.02963	0.3338
1/4	0.1667	0.46697	0.1928	0.5946	0.2907	0.49556	0.04444	0.4329
3/8	0.1667	0.60160	0.1928	0.6006	0.2967	0.63056	0.04444	0.5675
1/2	0.2143	0.74504	0.2479	0.7815	0.3909	0.78286	0.05714	0.7014
3/4	0.2143	0.95429	0.2479	0.7935	0.4029	0.99286	0.05714	0.9106
1	0.2609	1.19733	0.3017	0.9845	0.5089	1.24543	0.06957	1.1441
1 1/4	0.2609	1.54083	0.3017	1.0085	0.5329	1.59043	0.06957	1.4876
1 1/2	0.2609	1.77978	0.3017	1.0252	0.5496	1.83043	0.06957	1.7266
2	0.2609	2.25272	0.3017	1.0582	0.5826	2.30543	0.06957	2.1995
2 1/2	0.2500[d]	2.70391	0.4338	1.5712	0.8875	2.77500	0.100000	2.6195
3	0.2500[d]	3.32500	0.4338	1.6337	0.9500	3.40000	0.100000	3.2406
3 1/2	0.2500	3.82188	0.4338	1.6837	1.0000	3.90000	0.100000	3.7374
4	0.2500	4.31875	0.4338	1.7337	1.0500	4.40000	0.100000	4.2343
5	0.2500	5.37511	0.4338	1.8400	1.1563	5.46300	0.100000	5.2907
6	0.2500	6.43047	0.4338	1.9462	1.2625	6.52500	0.100000	6.3460
8	0.2500	8.41797	0.4338	2.1462	1.4625	8.52500	0.100000	8.3335
10	0.2500	10.52969	0.4338	2.3587	1.6750	10.65000	0.100000	10.4453
12	0.2500	12.51719	0.4338	2.5587	1.8750	12.65000	0.100000	12.4328
14 OD	0.2500	13.75938	0.4338	2.6837	2.0000	13.90000	0.100000	13.6749
16 OD	0.2500	15.74688	0.4338	2.8837	2.2000	15.90000	0.100000	15.6624
18 OD	0.2500	17.73438	0.4338	3.0837	2.4000	17.90000	0.100000	17.6499
20 OD	0.2500	19.72188	0.4338	3.2837	2.6000	19.90000	0.100000	19.6374
24 OD	0.2500	23.69688	0.4338	3.6837	3.0000	23.90000	0.100000	23.6124

[a] The length L_5 from the end of the pipe determines the plane beyond which the thread form is imperfect at the crest. The next two threads are perfect at the root. At this plane the cone formed by the crests of the thread intersects the cylinder forming the external surface of the pipe. $L_5 = L_2 - 2p$.

[b] Given as information for use in selecting tap drills.

[c] Three threads for 2-inch size and smaller; two threads for larger sizes.

[d] Military Specification MIL-P-7105 gives the wrench makeup as three threads for 3 in. and smaller. The E_3 dimensions are then as follows: Size 2 1/2 in., 2.69609 and size 3 in., 3.31719.

All dimensions given in inches.

Increase in diameter per thread is equal to 0.0625/n.

The basic dimensions of the ANSI Standard Taper Pipe Thread are given in inches to four or five decimal places. While this implies a greater degree of precision than is ordinarily attained, these dimensions are the basis of gage dimensions and are so expressed for the purpose of eliminating errors in computations.

Engagement Between External and Internal Taper Threads.—The normal length of engagement between external and internal taper threads when screwed together handtight is shown as L_1 in Table 1a. This length is controlled by the construction and use of the pipe thread gages. It is recognized that in special applications, such as flanges for high-pressure work, longer thread engagement is used, in which case the pitch diameter E_1 (Table 1a) is maintained and the pitch diameter E_0 at the end of the pipe is proportionately smaller.

Tolerances on Thread Elements.—The maximum allowable variation in the commercial product (manufacturing tolerance) is one turn large or small from the basic dimensions.

The permissible variations in thread elements on steel products and all pipe made of steel, wrought iron, or brass, exclusive of butt-weld pipe, are given in Table 3. This table is

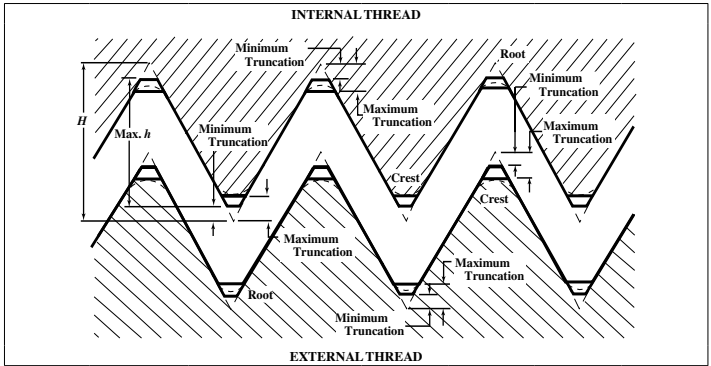
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

a guide for establishing the limits of the thread elements of taps, dies, and thread chasers. These limits may be required on product threads.

On pipe fittings and valves (not steel) for steam pressures 300 pounds and below, it is intended that plug and ring gage practice as set up in the Standard ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018) will provide for a satisfactory check of accumulated variations of taper, lead, and angle in such product. Therefore, no tolerances on thread elements have been established for this class.

For service conditions where a more exact check is required, procedures have been developed by industry to supplement the regulation plug and ring method of gaging.

Table 2. Limits on Crest and Root of American National Standard External and Internal Taper Pipe Threads, NPT *ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)*



Threads per Inch	Height of Sharp V Thread, *H*	Height of Pipe Thread, *h*		Truncation, *f*		Width of Flat, *F*, Equivalent to Truncation	
		Max.	Min.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
27	0.03208	0.02963	0.02496	0.0012	0.0036	0.0014	0.0041
18	0.04811	0.04444	0.03833	0.0018	0.0049	0.0021	0.0057
14	0.06186	0.05714	0.05072	0.0024	0.0056	0.0027	0.0064
11½	0.07531	0.06957	0.06261	0.0029	0.0063	0.0033	0.0073
8	0.10825	0.10000	0.09275	0.0041	0.0078	0.0048	0.0090

All dimensions are in inches and are given to four or five decimal places only to avoid errors in computations, not to indicate required precision.

Table 3. Tolerances on Taper, Lead, and Angle of Pipe Threads of Steel Products and All Pipe of Steel, Wrought Iron, or Brass *ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)* **(Exclusive of Butt-Weld Pipe)**

Nominal Pipe Size	Threads per Inch	Taper on Pitch Line (¾ in/ft)		Lead in Length of Effective Threads	60 Degree Angle of Threads, Degrees
		Max.	Min.		
⅛, ¼	27	+⅛	−1/16	±0.003	± 2½
¼, ⅜	18	+⅛	−1/16	±0.003	±2
½, ¾	14	+⅛	−1/16	±0.003[a]	±2
1, 1¼, 1½, 2	11½	+⅛	−1/16	±0.003[a]	±1½
2½ and larger	8	+⅛	−1/16	±0.003[a]	±1½

[a] The tolerance on lead shall be ±0.003 in. per inch on any size threaded to an effective thread length greater than 1 in.

For tolerances on height of thread, see Table 2.

The limits specified in this table are intended to serve as a guide for establishing limits of the thread elements of taps, dies, and thread chasers. These limits may be required on product threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Internal Threads in Pipe Couplings, NPSC for Pressure-Tight Joints with Lubricant or Sealer *ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)*

Nom. Pipe Size	Thds. per Inch	Minor[a] Dia.	Pitch Diameter[b]		Nom. Pipe Size	Thds. per Inch	Minor[a] Dia.	Pitch Diameter[b]	
		Min.	Min.	Max.			Min.	Min.	Max.
⅛	27	0.340	0.3701	0.3771	1½	11½	1.745	1.8142	1.8305
¼	18	0.442	0.4864	0.4968	2	11½	2.219	2.2881	2.3044
⅜	18	0.577	0.6218	0.6322	2½	8	2.650	2.7504	2.7739
½	14	0.715	0.7717	0.7851	3	8	3.277	3.3768	3.4002
¾	14	0.925	0.9822	0.9956	3½	8	3.777	3.8771	3.9005
1	11½	1.161	1.2305	1.2468	4	8	4.275	4.3754	4.3988
1¼	11½	1.506	1.5752	1.5915	…	…	…	…	…

[a] As the ANSI Standard Pipe Thread form is maintained, the major and minor diameters of the internal thread vary with the pitch diameter. All dimensions are given in inches.

[b] The actual pitch diameter of the straight tapped hole will be slightly smaller than the value given when gaged with a taper plug gage as called for in ANSI/ASME B1.20.1.

Railing Joint Taper Pipe Threads, NPTR.—Railing joints require a rigid mechanical thread joint with external and internal taper threads. The external thread is basically the same as the ANSI Standard Taper Pipe Thread, except that sizes ½ through 2 inches are shortened by 3 threads and sizes 2½ through 4 inches are shortened by 4 threads to permit the use of the larger end of the pipe thread. A recess in the fitting covers the last scratch or imperfect threads on the pipe.

Straight Pipe Threads in Pipe Couplings, NPSC.—Threads in pipe couplings made in accordance with the ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 specifications are straight (parallel) threads of the same thread form as the ANSI Standard Taper Pipe Thread. They are used to form pressuretight joints when assembled with an ANSI Standard external taper pipe thread and made up with lubricant or sealant. These joints are recommended for comparatively low pressures only.

Straight Pipe Threads for Mechanical Joints, NPSM, NPSL, and NPSH.—While external and internal taper pipe threads are recommended for pipe joints in practically every service, there are mechanical joints where straight pipe threads are used to advantage. Three types covered by ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 are:

Loose-fitting Mechanical Joints With Locknuts (External and Internal), NPSL: This thread is designed to produce a pipe thread having the largest diameter that it is possible to cut on standard pipe. The dimensions of these threads are given in Table 5. It will be noted that the maximum major diameter of the external thread is slightly greater than the nominal outside diameter of the pipe. The normal manufacturer's variation in pipe diameter provides for this increase.

Loose-fitting Mechanical Joints for Hose Couplings (External and Internal), NPSH: Hose coupling joints are ordinarily made with straight internal and external loose-fitting threads. There are several standards of hose threads having various diameters and pitches. One of these is based on the ANSI Standard pipe thread and by the use of this thread series, it is possible to join small hose couplings in sizes ½ to 4 inches, inclusive, to ends of standard pipe having ANSI Standard External Pipe Threads, using a gasket to seal the joints. For the hose coupling thread dimensions see *ANSI Standard Hose Coupling Screw Threads* starting on page 2101.

Free-fitting Mechanical Joints for Fixtures (External and Internal), NPSM: Standard iron, steel, and brass pipe are often used for special applications where there are no internal pressures. Where straight thread joints are required for mechanical assemblies, straight pipe threads are often found more suitable or convenient. Dimensions of these threads are given in Table 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. American National Standard Straight Pipe Threads for Mechanical Joints, NPSM and NPSL *ANSI/ASME B1.20.1-2013 (R2018)*

Nominal Pipe Size	Threads per Inch	Allowance	External Thread				Internal Thread			
			Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Minor Diameter		Pitch Diameter	
			Max.[a]	Min.	Max.	Min.	Min.[a]	Max.	Min.[b]	Max.
Free-fitting Mechanical Joints for Fixtures—NPSM										
⅛	27	0.0011	0.397	0.390	0.3725	0.3689	0.358	0.364	0.3736	0.3783
¼	18	0.0013	0.526	0.517	0.4903	0.4859	0.468	0.481	0.4916	0.4974
⅜	18	0.0014	0.662	0.653	0.6256	0.6211	0.603	0.612	0.6270	0.6329
½	14	0.0015	0.823	0.813	0.7769	0.7718	0.747	0.759	0.7784	0.7851
¾	14	0.0016	1.034	1.024	0.9873	0.9820	0.958	0.970	0.9889	0.9958
1	11½	0.0017	1.293	1.281	1.2369	1.2311	1.201	1.211	1.2386	1.2462
1¼	11½	0.0018	1.638	1.626	1.5816	1.5756	1.546	1.555	1.5834	1.5912
1½	11½	0.0018	1.877	1.865	1.8205	1.8144	1.785	1.794	1.8223	1.8302
2	11½	0.0019	2.351	2.339	2.2944	2.2882	2.259	2.268	2.2963	2.3044
2½	8	0.0022	2.841	2.826	2.7600	2.7526	2.708	2.727	2.7622	2.7720
3	8	0.0023	3.467	3.452	3.3862	3.3786	3.334	3.353	3.3885	3.3984
3½	8	0.0023	3.968	3.953	3.8865	3.8788	3.835	3.848	3.8888	3.8988
4	8	0.0023	4.466	4.451	4.3848	4.3771	4.333	4.346	4.3871	4.3971
5	8	0.0024	5.528	5.513	5.4469	5.4390	5.395	5.408	5.4493	5.4598
6	8	0.0024	6.585	6.570	6.5036	6.4955	6.452	6.464	6.5060	6.5165
Loose-fitting Mechanical Joints for Locknut Connections—NPSL										
⅛	27	…	0.409	…	0.3840	0.3805	0.362	…	0.3863	0.3898
¼	18	…	0.541	…	0.5038	0.4986	0.470	…	0.5073	0.5125
⅜	18	…	0.678	…	0.6409	0.6357	0.607	…	0.6444	0.6496
½	14	…	0.844	…	0.7963	0.7896	0.753	…	0.8008	0.8075
¾	14	…	1.054	…	1.0067	1.0000	0.964	…	1.0112	1.0179
1	11½	…	1.318	…	1.2604	1.2523	1.208	…	1.2658	1.2739
1¼	11½	…	1.663	…	1.6051	1.5970	1.553	…	1.6106	1.6187
1½	11½	…	1.902	…	1.8441	1.8360	1.792	…	1.8495	1.8576
2	11½	…	2.376	…	2.3180	2.3099	2.265	…	2.3234	2.3315
2½	8	…	2.877	…	2.7934	2.7817	2.718	…	2.8012	2.8129
3	8	…	3.503	…	3.4198	3.4081	3.344	…	3.4276	3.4393
3½	8	…	4.003	…	3.9201	3.9084	3.845	…	3.9279	3.9396
4	8	…	4.502	…	4.4184	4.4067	4.343	…	4.4262	4.4379
5	8	…	5.564	…	5.4805	5.4688	5.405	…	5.4884	5.5001
6	8	…	6.620	…	6.5372	6.5255	6.462	…	6.5450	6.5567
8	8	…	8.615	…	8.5313	8.5196	8.456	…	8.5391	8.5508
10	8	…	10.735	…	10.6522	10.6405	10.577	…	10.6600	10.6717
12	8	…	12.732	…	12.6491	12.6374	12.574	…	12.6569	12.6686

[a] As the ANSI Standard Straight Pipe Thread form of thread is maintained, the major and the minor diameters of the internal thread and the minor diameter of the external thread vary with the pitch diameter. The major diameter of the external thread is usually determined by the diameter of the pipe. These theoretical diameters result from adding the depth of the truncated thread ($0.666025 \times p$) to the maximum pitch diameters, and it should be understood that commercial pipe will not always have these maximum major diameters.

[b] This is the same as the pitch diameter at end of internal thread, E_1 *Basic*. (See Table 1a.)

All dimensions are given in inches.

Notes for Free-fitting Fixture Threads: The minor diameters of external threads and major diameters of internal threads are those as produced by commercial straight pipe dies and commercial ground straight pipe taps.

The major diameter of the external thread has been calculated on the basis of a truncation of $0.10825p$, and the minor diameter of the internal thread has been calculated on the basis of a truncation of $0.21651p$, to provide no interference at crest and root when product is gaged with gages made in accordance with the Standard.

Notes for Loose-fitting Locknut Threads: The locknut thread is established on the basis of retaining the greatest possible amount of metal thickness between the bottom of the thread and the inside of the pipe. In order that a locknut may fit loosely on the externally threaded part, an allowance equal to the "increase in pitch diameter per turn" is provided, with a tolerance of 1½ turns for both external and internal threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard Dryseal Pipe Threads for Pressure-Tight Joints.—Dryseal pipe threads are based on the US (American) pipe thread; however, they differ in that they are designed to seal pressure-tight joints without the necessity of using sealing compounds. To accomplish this, some modification of thread form and greater accuracy in manufacture is required. The roots of both the external and internal threads are truncated slightly more than the crests, i.e., roots have wider flats than crests so that metal-to-metal contact occurs at the crests and roots coincident with, or prior to, flank contact. Thus, as the threads are assembled by wrenching, the roots of the threads crush the sharper crests of the mating threads. This sealing action at both major and minor diameters tends to prevent spiral leakage and makes the joints pressure-tight without the necessity of using sealing compounds, provided that the threads are in accordance with standard specifications and tolerances and are not damaged by galling in assembly. The control of crest and root truncation is simplified by the use of properly designed threading tools. Also, it is desirable that both external and internal threads have full thread height for the length of hand engagement. Where not functionally objectionable, the use of a compatible lubricant or sealant is permissible to minimize the possibility of galling. This is desirable in assembling Dryseal pipe threads in refrigeration and other systems to effect a pressure-tight seal. The crest and root of Dryseal pipe threads may be slightly rounded, but are acceptable if they lie within the truncation limits given in Table 6.

Table 6. American National Standard Dryseal Pipe Threads—Limits on Crest and Root Truncation *ANSI/ASME B1.20.3-1976 (R2018)*

Threads Per Inch	Height of Sharp V Thread (*H*)	Truncation							
		Minimum				Maximum			
		At Crest		At Root		At Crest		At Root	
		Formula	Inch	Formula	Inch	Formula	Inch	Formula	Inch
27	0.03208	0.047*p*	0.0017	0.094*p*	0.0035	0.094*p*	0.0035	0.140*p*	0.0052
18	0.04811	0.047*p*	0.0026	0.078*p*	0.0043	0.078*p*	0.0043	0.109*p*	0.0061
14	0.06180	0.036*p*	0.0026	0.060*p*	0.0043	0.060*p*	0.0043	0.085*p*	0.0061
11½	0.07531	0.040*p*	0.0035	0.060*p*	0.0052	0.060*p*	0.0052	0.090*p*	0.0078
8	0.10825	0.042*p*	0.0052	0.055*p*	0.0069	0.055*p*	0.0069	0.076*p*	0.0095

All dimensions are given in inches. In the formulas, p = pitch.

Types of Dryseal Pipe Thread.—American National Standard ANSI/ASME B1.20.3-1976 (R2018) covers four types of standard Dryseal pipe threads:

NPTF, Dryseal US (American) Standard Taper Pipe Thread
PTF-SAE SHORT, Dryseal SAE Short Taper Pipe Thread
NPSF, Dryseal US (American) Standard Fuel Internal Straight Pipe Thread
NPSI, Dryseal US (American) Standard Intermediate Internal Straight Pipe Thread

Table 7. Recommended Limitation of Assembly among the Various Types of Dryseal Threads

External Dryseal Thread		For Assembly with Internal Dryseal Thread	
Type	Description	Type	Description
1	NPTF (tapered), ext thd	1	NPTF (tapered), int thd
		2[a,b]	PTF-SAE SHORT (tapered), int thd
		3[a,c]	NPSF (straight), int thd
		4[a,c,d]	NPSI (straight), int thd
2[a,e]	PTF-SAE SHORT (tapered) ext thd	4	NPSI (straight), int thd
		1	NPTF (tapered), int thd

[a] Pressure-tight joints without the use of a sealant can best be ensured where both components are threaded with NPTF (full length threads), since theoretically interference (sealing) occurs at all threads, but there are two less threads engaged than for NPTF assemblies. When straight internal threads are used, there is interference only at one thread depending on ductility of materials.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

[b] PTF-SAE SHORT internal threads are primarily intended for assembly with type 1-NPTF external threads. They are not designed for, and at extreme tolerance limits may not assemble with, type 2- PTF-SAE SHORT external threads.

[c] There is no external straight Dryseal thread.

[d] NPSI internal threads are primarily intended for assembly with type 2-PTF-SAE SHORT external threads but will also assemble with full length type 1 NPTF external threads.

[e] PTF-SAE SHORT external threads are primarily intended for assembly with type 4-NPSI internal threads but can also be used with type 1-NPTF internal threads. They are not designed for, and at extreme tolerance limits may not assemble with, type 2-PTF-SAE SHORT internal threads or type 3-NPSF internal threads.

An assembly with straight internal pipe threads and taper external pipe threads is frequently more advantageous than an all taper thread assembly, particularly in automotive and other allied industries where economy and rapid production are major considerations. Dryseal threads are not used in assemblies in which both components have straight pipe threads.

NPTF Threads: This type applies to both external and internal threads and is suitable for pipe joints in practically every type of service. Of all Dryseal pipe threads, NPTF external and internal threads mated are generally conceded to be superior for strength and seal since they have the longest length of thread and, theoretically, interference (sealing) occurs at every engaged thread root and crest. Use of tapered internal threads, such as NPTF or PTF-SAE SHORT in hard or brittle materials having thin sections will minimize the possibility of fracture.

There are two classes of NTPF threads. Class 1 threads are made to interfere (seal) at root and crest when mated, but inspection of crest and root truncation is not required. Consequently, Class 1 threads are intended for applications where close control of tooling is required for conformance of truncation or where sealing is accomplished by means of a sealant applied to the threads.

Class 2 threads are theoretically identical to those made to Class 1. However, inspection of root and crest truncation is required. Consequently, where a sealant is not used, there is more assurance of a pressure-tight seal for Class 2 threads than for Class 1 threads.

PTF-SAE SHORT Threads: External threads of this type conform in all respects with NPTF threads except that the thread length has been shortened by eliminating one thread from the small (entering) end. These threads are designed for applications where clearance is not sufficient for the full length of the NPTF threads or for economy of material where the full thread length is not necessary.

Internal threads of this type conform in all respects with NPTF threads, except that the thread length has been shortened by eliminating one thread from the large (entry) end. These threads are designed for thin materials where thickness is not sufficient for the full thread length of the NPTF threads or for economy in tapping where the full thread length is not necessary.

Pressure-tight joints without the use of lubricant or sealer can best be ensured where mating components are both threaded with NPTF threads. This should be considered before specifying PTF-SAE SHORT external or internal threads.

NPSF Threads: Threads of this type are straight (cylindrical) instead of tapered and are internal only. They are more economical to produce than tapered internal threads, but when assembled do not offer as strong a guarantee of sealing since root and crest interference will not occur for all threads. NPSF threads are generally used with soft or ductile materials which will tend to adjust at assembly to the taper of external threads, but may be used in hard or brittle materials where the section is thick.

NPSI Threads: Threads of this type are straight (cylindrical) instead of tapered, are internal only and are slightly larger in diameter than NPSF threads but have the same tolerance and thread length. They are more economical to produce than tapered threads and may be used in hard or brittle materials where the section is thick or where there is little expansion at assembly with external taper threads. As with NPSF threads, NPSI threads when assembled do not offer as strong a guarantee of sealing as do tapered internal threads.

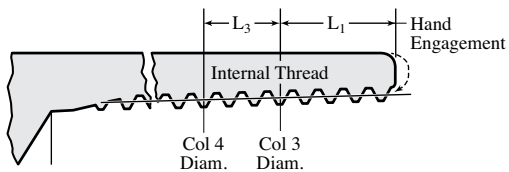
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For more complete specifications for production and acceptance of Dryseal pipe threads, see ANSI/ASME B1.20.3 (Inch) and ANSI/ASME B1.20.4 (Withdrawn) (Metric Translation), and for gaging and inspection, see ANSI/ASME B1.20.5 (Inch) and ANSI/ASME B1.20.6M (Withdrawn) (Metric Translation).

Designation of Dryseal Pipe Threads: The standard Dryseal pipe threads are designated by specifying in sequence nominal size, thread series symbol, and class:

Examples: 1/8-27 NPTF-1; 1/8-27 PTF-SAE SHORT; and 3/8-18 NPTF-1 AFTER PLATING.

Table 8. Suggested Tap Drill Sizes for Internal Dryseal Pipe Threads



Size	Probable Drill Oversize Cut (Mean)	Taper Pipe Thread				Straight Pipe Thread		
		Minor Diameter At Distance		Drill Size[a]		Minor Diameter		
		L_1 From Large End	$L_1 + L_3$ From Large End	Without Reamer	With Reamer	NPSF	NPSI	Drill Size[a]
1/16-27	0.0038	0.2443	0.2374	"C" (0.242)	"A" (0.234)	0.2482	0.2505	"D" (0.246)
1/8-27	0.0044	0.3367	0.3298	"Q" (0.332)	21/64 (0.328)	0.3406	0.3429	"R" (0.339)
1/4-18	0.0047	0.4362	0.4258	7/16 (0.438)	27/64 (0.422)	0.4422	0.4457	7/16 (0.438)
3/8-18	0.0049	0.5708	0.5604	9/16 (0.562)	9/16 (0.563)	0.5776	0.5811	37/64 (0.578)
1/2-14	0.0051	0.7034	0.6901	45/64 (0.703)	11/16 (0.688)	0.7133	0.7180	45/64 (0.703)
3/4-14	0.0060	0.9127	0.8993	29/32 (0.906)	57/64 (0.891)	0.9238	0.9283	59/64 (0.922)
1-11 1/2	0.0080	1.1470	1.1307	1 9/64 (1.141)	1 1/8 (1.125)	1.1600	1.1655	1 5/32 (1.156)
1 1/4-11 1/2	0.0100	1.4905	1.4742	1 31/64 (1.484)	1 15/32 (1.469)	…	…	…
1 1/2-11 1/2	0.0120	1.7295	1.7132	1 23/32 (1.719)	1 45/64 (1.703)	…	…	…
2-11 1/2	0.0160	2.2024	2.1861	2 3/16 (2.188)	2 11/64 (2.172)	…	…	…
2 1/2-8	0.0180	2.6234	2.6000	2 39/64 (2.609)	2 37/64 (2.578)	…	…	…
3-8	0.0200	3.2445	3.2211	3 15/64 (3.234)	3 13/64 (3.203)	…	…	…

[a] Some drill sizes listed may not be standard drills.
All dimensions are given in inches.

Special Dryseal Threads.—Where design limitations, economy of material, permanent installation, or other limiting conditions prevail, consideration may be given to using a special Dryseal thread series.

Dryseal Special Short Taper Pipe Thread, PTF-SPL SHORT: Threads of this series conform in all respects to PTF-SAE SHORT threads except that the full thread length has been further shortened by eliminating one thread at the small end of internal threads or one thread at the large end of external threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dryseal Special Extra Short Taper Pipe Thread, PTF-SPL EXTRA SHORT: Threads of this series conform in all respects to PTF-SAE SHORT threads except that the full thread length has been further shortened by eliminating two threads at the small end of internal threads or two threads at the large end of external threads.

Limitations of Assembly: Table 9 applies where Dryseal Special Short or Extra Short Taper Pipe Threads are to be assembled as special combinations.

Table 9. Assembly Limitations for Special Combinations of Dryseal Threads

Thread	May Assemble with[a]	May Assemble with[b]
PTF SPL SHORT EXTERNAL PTF SPL EXTRA SHORT EXTERNAL	PTF-SAE SHORT INTERNAL NPSF INTERNAL PTF SPL SHORT INTERNAL PTF SPL EXTRA SHORT INTERNAL	NPTF or NPSI INTERNAL
PTF SPL SHORT INTERNAL PTF SPL EXTRA SHORT INTERNAL	PTF-SAE SHORT EXTERNAL	NPTF EXTERNAL

[a] Only when the external thread or the internal thread or both are held closer than the standard tolerance, the external thread toward the minimum and the internal thread toward the maximum pitch diameter to provide a minimum of one turn hand engagement. At extreme tolerance limits the shortened full-thread lengths reduce hand engagement and the threads may not start to assemble.

[b] Only when the internal thread or the external thread or both are held closer than the standard tolerance, the internal thread toward the minimum and the external thread toward the maximum pitch diameter to provide a minimum of two turns for wrench make-up and sealing. At extreme tolerance limits the shortened full-thread lengths reduce wrench make-up and the threads may not seal.

Dryseal Fine Taper Thread Series, F-PTF: The need for finer pitches for nominal pipe sizes has brought into use applications of 27 threads per inch to $\frac{1}{4}$- and $\frac{3}{8}$-inch pipe sizes. There may be other needs that require finer pitches for larger pipe sizes. It is recommended that the existing threads per inch be applied to the next larger pipe size for a fine thread series, thus: $\frac{1}{4}$-27, $\frac{3}{8}$-27, $\frac{1}{2}$-18, $\frac{3}{4}$-18, 1-14, $1\frac{1}{4}$-14, $1\frac{1}{2}$-14, and 2-14. This series applies to external and internal threads of full length and is suitable for applications where threads finer than NPTF are required.

Dryseal Special Diameter-Pitch Combination Series, SPL-PTF: Other applications of diameter-pitch combinations have come into use where taper pipe threads are applied to nominal size thin wall tubing. These combinations are: $\frac{1}{2}$-27, $\frac{5}{8}$-27, $\frac{3}{4}$-27, $\frac{7}{8}$-27, and 1-27. This series applies to external and internal threads of full length and is applicable to thin wall nominal diameter outside tubing.

Designation of Special Dryseal Pipe Threads: The designations used for these special dryseal pipe threads are as follows:

$\frac{1}{8}$-27 PTF-SPL SHORT
$\frac{1}{8}$-27 PTF-SPL EXTRA SHORT
$\frac{1}{2}$-27 SPL PTF, OD 0.500

Note that in the last designation the OD of tubing is given.

British Standard Pipe Threads

British Standard Pipe Threads for Non-Pressure-Tight Joints.—The threads in BS 2779:1973, "Specifications for Pipe Threads where Pressure-tight Joints are not Made on the Threads", are Whitworth form parallel fastening threads that are generally used for fastening purposes such as the mechanical assembly of component parts of fittings, cocks and valves. They are not suitable where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads.

The crests of the basic Whitworth thread form may be truncated to certain limits of size given in the Standard except on internal threads, when they are likely to be assembled with external threads conforming to the requirements of BS 21 "British Standard Pipe Threads for Pressure-tight Joints" (see page 2099).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For external threads two classes of tolerance are provided and for internal, one class. The two classes of tolerance for external threads are Class A and Class B. For economy of manufacture the class B fit should be chosen whenever possible. The class A is reserved for those applications where the closer tolerance is essential. Class A tolerance is an entirely negative value, equivalent to the internal thread tolerance. Class B tolerance is an entirely negative value twice that of class A tolerance. Tables showing limits and dimensions are given in the Standard.

The thread series specified in this Standard shall be designated by the letter "G". A typical reference on a drawing might be "G½", for internal thread; "G½ A", for external thread, class A: and "G ½ B", for external thread, class B. Where no class reference is stated for external threads, that of class B will be assumed. The designation of truncated threads shall have the addition of the letter "T" to the designation, i.e., G ½ T and G ½ BT.

British Standard Pipe Threads (Non-pressure-tight Joints)
Metric and Inch Basic Sizes *BS 2779:1973*

Nominal Size, Inches	Threads per Inch[a]	Depth of Thread	Major Diameter	Pitch Diameter	Minor Diameter	Nominal Size, Inches	Threads per Inch[a]	Depth of Thread	Major Diameter	Pitch Diameter	Minor Diameter
1/16	28	0.581	7.723	7.142	6.561	1¾	11	1.479	53.746	52.267	50.788
		0.0229	*0.3041*	*0.2812*	*0.2583*			*0.0582*	*2.1160*	*2.0578*	*1.9996*
⅛	28	0.581	9.728	9.147	8.566	2	11	1.479	59.614	58.135	56.656
		0.0229	*0.3830*	*0.3601*	*0.3372*			*0.0582*	*2.3470*	*2.2888*	*2.2306*
¼	19	0.856	13.157	12.301	11.445	2¼	11	1.479	65.710	64.231	62.752
		0.0337	*0.5180*	*0.4843*	*0.4506*			*0.0582*	*2.5870*	*2.5288*	*2.4706*
⅜	19	0.856	16.662	15.806	14.950	2½	11	1.479	75.184	73.705	72.226
		0.0337	*0.6560*	*0.6223*	*0.5886*			*0.0582*	*2.9600*	*2.9018*	*2.8436*
½	14	1.162	20.955	19.793	18.631	2¾	11	1.479	81.534	80.055	78.576
		0.0457	*0.8250*	*0.7793*	*0.7336*			*0.0582*	*3.2100*	*3.1518*	*3.0936*
⅝	14	1.162	22.911	21.749	20.587	3	11	1.479	87.884	86.405	84.926
		0.0457	*0.9020*	*0.8563*	*0.8106*			*0.0582*	*3.4600*	*3.4018*	*3.3436*
¾	14	1.162	26.441	25.279	24.117	3½	11	1.479	100.330	98.851	97.372
		0.0457	*1.0410*	*0.9953*	*0.9496*			*0.0582*	*3.9500*	*3.8918*	*3.8336*
⅞	14	1.162	30.201	29.039	27.877	4	11	1.479	113.030	111.551	110.072
		0.0457	*1.1890*	*1.1433*	*1.0976*			*0.0582*	*4.4500*	*4.3918*	*4.3336*
1	11	1.479	33.249	31.770	30.291	4½	11	1.479	125.730	124.251	122.772
		0.0582	*1.3090*	*1.2508*	*1.1926*			*0.0582*	*4.9500*	*4.8918*	*4.8336*
1⅛	11	1.479	37.897	36.418	34.939	5	11	1.479	138.430	136.951	135.472
		0.0582	*1.4920*	*1.4338*	*1.3756*			*0.0582*	*5.4500*	*5.3918*	*5.3336*
1¼	11	1.479	41.910	40.431	38.952	5½	11	1.479	151.130	149.651	148.172
		0.0582	*1.6500*	*1.5918*	*1.5336*			*0.0582*	*5.9500*	*5.8918*	*5.8336*
1½	11	1.479	47.803	46.324	44.845	6	11	1.479	163.830	162.351	160.872
		0.0582	*1.8820*	*1.8238*	*1.7656*			*0.0582*	*6.4500*	*6.3918*	*6.3336*

[a] The thread pitches in millimeters are as follows: 0.907 for 28 threads per inch. 1.337 for 19 threads per inch, 1.814 for 14 threads per inch, and 2.309 for 11 threads per inch.

Each basic metric dimension is given in roman figures (nominal sizes excepted) and each basic inch dimension is shown in italics directly beneath it.

British Standard Pipe Threads for Pressure-Tight Joints.—The threads in BS 21:1973, "Specification for Pipe Threads where Pressure-tight Joints are Made on the Threads", are based on the Whitworth thread form and are specified as:

1) *Jointing threads:* These relate to pipe threads for joints made pressure-tight by the mating of the threads; they include taper external threads for assembly with either taper or parallel internal threads (parallel external pipe threads are not suitable as jointing threads).

4) *Longscrew threads:* These relate to parallel external pipe threads used for longscrews (connectors) specified in BS 1387 where a pressure-tight joint is achieved by the compression of a soft material onto the surface of the external thread by tightening a back nut against a socket.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard External and Internal Pipe Threads (Pressure-tight Joints)
Metric and Inch Dimensions and Limits of Size *BS 21:1973*

Nominal Size	No. of Threads per Inch[a]		Basic Diameters at Gage Plane			Gage Length		Number of Useful Threads on Pipe for Basic Gage Length[b]	Tolerance + and –	
			Major	Pitch	Minor	Basic	Tolerance (+ and –)		Gage Plane to Face of Int. Taper Thread	On Diameter of Parallel Int. Threads
1/16	28	{	7.723	7.142	6.561	(4 3/8)	(1)	(7 1/8)	(1 1/4)	0.071
			0.304	*0.2812*	*0.2583*	4.0	0.9	6.5	1.1	*0.0028*
1/8	28	{	9.728	9.147	8.566	(4 3/8)	(1)	(7 1/8)	(1 1/4)	0.071
			0.383	*0.3601*	*0.3372*	4.0	0.9	6.5	1.1	*0.0028*
1/4	19	{	13.157	12.301	11.445	(4 1/2)	(1)	(7 1/4)	(1 1/4)	0.104
			0.518	*0.4843*	*0.4506*	6.0	1.3	9.7	1.7	*0.0041*
3/8	19	{	16.662	15.806	14.950	(4 3/4)	(1)	(7 1/2)	(1 1/4)	0.104
			0.656	0.6223	0.5886	6.4	1.3	10.1	1.7	0.0041
1/2	14	{	20.955	19.793	18.631	(4 1/2)	(1)	(7 1/4)	(1 1/4)	0.142
			0.825	*0.7793*	*0.7336*	8.2	1.8	13.2	2.3	*0.0056*
3/4	14	{	26.441	25.279	24.117	(5 1/4)	(1)	(8)	(1 1/4)	0.142
			1.041	*0.9953*	*0.9496*	9.5	1.8	14.5	2.3	*0.0056*
1	11	{	33.249	31.770	30.291	(4 1/2)	(1)	(7 1/4)	(1 1/4)	0.180
			1.309	*1.2508*	*1.1926*	10.4	2.3	16.8	2.9	*0.0071*
1 1/4	11	{	41.910	40.431	38.952	(5 1/2)	(1)	(8 1/4)	(1 1/4)	0.180
			1.650	*1.5918*	*1.5336*	12.7	2.3	19.1	2.9	*0.0071*
1 1/2	11	{	47.803	46.324	44.845	(5 1/2)	(1)	(8 1/4)	(1 1/4)	0.180
			1.882	*1.8238*	*1.7656*	12.7	2.3	19.1	2.9	*0.0071*
2	11	{	59.614	58.135	56.656	(6 7/8)	(1)	(10 1/8)	(1 1/4)	0.180
			2.347	*2.2888*	*2.2306*	15.9	2.3	23.4	2.9	*0.0071*
2 1/2	11	{	75.184	73.705	72.226	(7 9/16)	(1 1/2)	(11 9/16)	(1 1/2)	0.216
			2.960	*2.9018*	*2.8436*	17.5	3.5	26.7	3.5	*0.0085*
3	11	{	87.884	86.405	84.926	(8 15/16)	(1 1/2)	(12 15/16)	(1 1/2)	0.216
			3.460	*3.4018*	*3.3436*	20.6	3.5	29.8	3.5	*0.0085*
4	11	{	113.030	111.551	110.072	(11)	(1 1/2)	(15 1/2)	(1 1/2)	0.216
			4.450	*4.3918*	*4.3336*	25.4	3.5	35.8	3.5	*0.0085*
5	11	{	138.430	136.951	135.472	(12 3/8)	(1 1/2)	(17 3/8)	(1 1/2)	0.216
			5.450	*5.3918*	*5.3336*	28.6	3.5	40.1	3.5	*0.0085*
6	11	{	163.830	162.351	160.872	(12 3/8)	(1 1/2)	(17 3/8)	(1 1/2)	0.216
			6.450	*6.3918*	*6.3336*	28.6	3.5	40.1	3.5	*0.0085*

[a] In the Standard BS 21:1973 the thread pitches in millimeters are as follows: 0.907 for 28 threads per inch, 1.337 for 19 threads per inch, 1.814 for 14 threads per inch, and 2.309 for 11 threads per inch.

[b] This is the minimum number of useful threads on the pipe for the basic gage length; for the maximum and minimum gage lengths, the minimum numbers of useful threads are, respectively, greater and less by the amount of tolerance in the column to the left. The design of internally threaded parts shall make allowance for receiving pipe ends of up to the minimum number of useful threads corresponding to the maximum gage length; the minimum number of useful *internal* threads shall be no less than 80 percent of the minimum number of useful external threads for the minimum gage length.

Each basic metric dimension is given in roman figures (nominal sizes excepted) and each basic inch dimension is shown in italics directly beneath it. Figures in ( ) are numbers of turns of thread with metric linear equivalents given beneath. Taper of taper thread is 1 in 16 on diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hose Coupling Screw Threads

ANSI/ASME Standard Hose Coupling Screw Threads.—Threads for hose couplings, valves, and all other fittings used in direct connection with hose intended for domestic, industrial, and general service in sizes $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{8}, \frac{3}{4}, 1, 1\frac{1}{4}, 1\frac{1}{2}, 2, 2\frac{1}{2}, 3, 3\frac{1}{2}$, and 4 inches are covered by ANSI/ASME B1.20.7-1991 (R2018). These threads are designated as follows:

NH — Standard hose coupling threads of full form as produced by cutting or rolling.

NHR — Standard hose coupling threads for garden hose applications where the design utilizes thin walled material which is formed to the desired thread.

NPSH — Standard straight hose coupling thread series in sizes $\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches for joining to American National Standard taper pipe threads using a gasket to seal the joint.

Thread dimensions are given in Table 1 and thread lengths in Table 2.

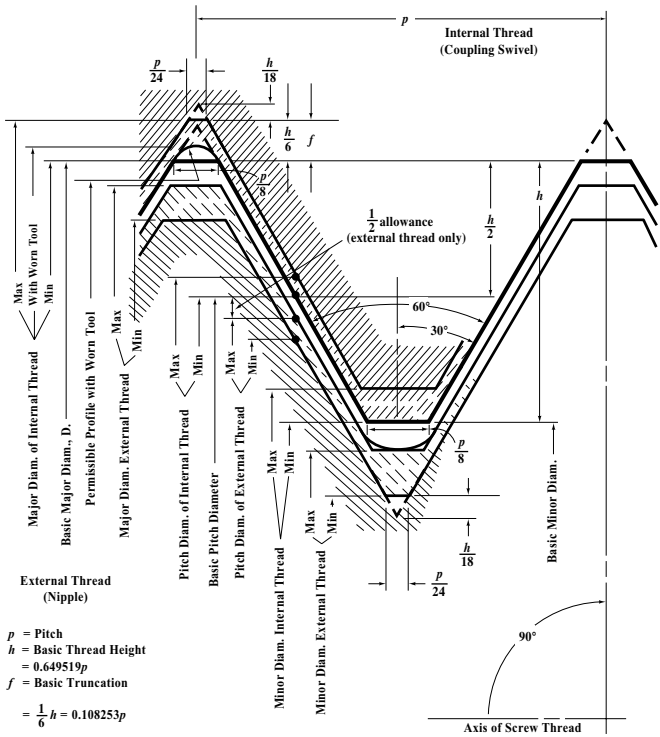


Fig. 1. Thread Form for ANSI Standard Hose Coupling Threads, NPSH, NH, and NHR. Heavy Line Shows Basic Size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. ANSI Standard Hose Coupling Threads for NPSH, NH, and NHR Nipples and Coupling Swivels
ANSI/ASME B1.20.7-1991 (R2018)

Nominal Size of Hose	Threads per Inch	Thread Designation	Pitch	Basic Height of Thread	Nipple (External) Thread					Coupling (Internal) Thread				
					Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia.	Minor Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Major Dia.
					Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
½, ⅝, ¾	11.5	.75-11.5NH	.08696	.05648	1.0625	1.0455	1.0060	0.9975	0.9495	0.9595	0.9765	1.0160	1.0245	1.0725
½, ⅝, ¾	11.5	.75-11.5NHR	.08696	.05648	1.0520	1.0350	1.0100	0.9930	0.9495	0.9720	0.9930	1.0160	1.0280	1.0680
½	14	.5-14NPSH	.07143	.04639	0.8248	0.8108	0.7784	0.7714	0.7320	0.7395	0.7535	0.7859	0.7929	0.8323
¾	14	.75-14NPSH	.07143	.04639	1.0353	1.0213	0.9889	0.9819	0.9425	0.9500	0.9640	0.9964	1.0034	1.0428
1	11.5	1-11.5NPSH	.08696	.05648	1.2951	1.2781	1.2396	1.2301	1.1821	1.1921	1.2091	1.2486	1.2571	1.3051
1¼	11.5	1.25-11.5NPSH	.08696	.05648	1.6399	1.6229	1.5834	1.5749	1.5269	1.5369	1.5539	1.5934	1.6019	1.6499
1½	11.5	1.5-11.5 NPSH	.08696	.05648	1.8788	1.8618	1.8223	1.8138	1.7658	1.7758	1.7928	1.8323	1.8408	1.8888
2	11.5	2-11.5NPSH	.08696	.05648	2.3528	2.3358	2.2963	2.2878	2.2398	2.2498	2.2668	2.3063	2.3148	2.3628
2½	8	2.5-8NPSH	.12500	.08119	2.8434	2.8212	2.7622	2.7511	2.6810	2.6930	2.7152	2.7742	2.7853	2.8554
3	8	3-8NPSH	.12500	.08119	3.4697	3.4475	3.3885	3.3774	3.3073	3.3193	3.3415	3.4005	3.4116	3.4817
3½	8	3.5-8NPSH	.12500	.08119	3.9700	3.9478	3.8888	3.8777	3.8076	3.8196	3.8418	3.9008	3.9119	3.9820
4	8	4-8NPSH	.12500	.08119	4.4683	4.4461	4.3871	4.3760	4.3059	4.3179	4.3401	4.3991	4.4102	4.4803
4	6	4-6NH (SPL)	.16667	.10825	4.9082	4.8722	4.7999	4.7819	4.6916	4.7117	4.7477	4.8200	4.8380	4.9283

All dimensions are given in inches.

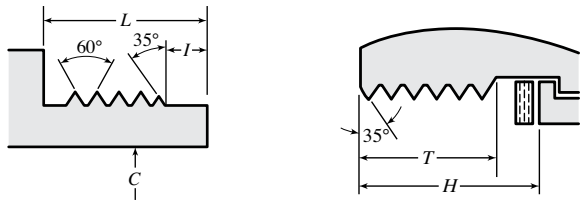
Dimensions given for the maximum minor diameter of the nipple are figured to the intersection of the worn tool arc with a centerline through crest and root. The minimum minor diameter of the nipple shall be that corresponding to a flat at the minor diameter of the minimum nipple equal to $\frac{1}{24}p$, and may be determined by subtracting $0.7939p$ from the minimum pitch diameter of the nipple. (See Fig. 1)

Dimensions given for the minimum major diameter of the coupling correspond to the basic flat, $\frac{1}{8}p$, and the profile at the major diameter produced by a worn tool must not fall below the basic outline. The maximum major diameter of the coupling shall be that corresponding to a flat at the major diameter of the maximum coupling equal to $\frac{1}{24}p$ and may be determined by adding $0.7939p$ to the maximum pitch diameter of the coupling. (See Fig. 1)

NH and NHR threads are used for garden hose applications. NPSH threads are used for steam, air and all other hose connections to be made up with standard pipe threads. NH (SPL) threads are used for marine applications.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. ANSI Standard Hose Coupling Screw Thread Lengths
ANSI/ASME B1.20.7-1991 (R2018)



Nominal Size of Hose	Threads per Inch	I.D. of Nipple, *C*	Approx. O.D. of Ext. Thd.	Length of Nipple, *L*	Length of Pilot, *I*	Depth of Coupl., *H*	Coupl. Thd. Length, *T*	Approx. No. Thds. in Length *T*
1/2, 5/8, 3/4	11.5	25/32	1 1/16	9/16	1/8	17/32	3/8	4 1/4
1/2, 5/8, 3/4	11.5	25/32	1 1/16	9/16	1/8	17/32	3/8	4 1/4
1/2	14	17/32	13/16	1/2	1/8	15/32	5/16	4 1/4
3/4	14	25/32	1 1/32	9/16	1/8	17/32	3/8	5 1/4
1	11.5	1 1/32	1 9/32	9/16	5/32	17/32	3/8	4 1/4
1 1/4	11.5	1 9/32	1 5/8	5/8	5/32	19/32	15/32	5 1/2
1 1/2	11.5	1 17/32	1 7/8	5/8	5/32	19/32	15/32	5 1/2
2	11.5	2 1/32	2 11/32	3/4	3/16	23/32	19/32	6 3/4
2 1/2	8	2 17/32	2 27/32	1	1/4	15/16	11/16	5 1/2
3	8	3 1/32	3 15/32	1 1/8	1/4	1 1/16	13/16	6 1/2
3 1/2	8	3 17/32	3 31/32	1 1/8	1/4	1 1/16	13/16	6 1/2
4	8	4 1/32	4 15/32	1 1/8	1/4	1 1/16	13/16	6 1/2
4	6	4	4 29/32	1 1/8	5/16	1 1/16	3/4	4 1/2

All dimensions are given in inches. For thread designation see Table 1.

American National Fire Hose Connection Screw Thread.—This thread is specified in the National Fire Protection Association's Standard NFPA No. 194-1974. It covers the dimensions for screw thread connections for fire hose couplings, suction hose couplings, relay supply hose couplings, fire pump suctions, discharge valves, fire hydrants, nozzles, adaptors, reducers, caps, plugs, wyes, siamese connections, standpipe connections, and sprinkler connections.

Form of Thread: The basic form of thread is as shown in Fig. 1. It has an included angle of 60 degrees and is truncated top and bottom. The flat at the root and crest of the basic thread form is equal to 1/8 (0.125) times the pitch in inches. The height of the thread is equal to 0.649519 times the pitch. The outer ends of both external and internal threads are terminated by the blunt start or "Higbee Cut" on full thread to avoid crossing and mutilation of thread.

Thread Designation: The thread is designated by specifying in sequence the nominal size of the connection, number of threads per inch followed by the thread symbol NH.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thus, .75-8NH indicates a nominal size connection of 0.75 inch diameter with 8 threads per inch.

Basic Dimensions: The basic dimensions of the thread are as given in Table 1.

Table 1. Basic Dimensions of NH Threads *NFPA 1963-1993 Edition*

Nom. Size	Threads per Inch (tpi)	Thread Designation	Pitch, *p*	Basic Thread Height, *h*	Minimum Internal Thread Dimensions		
					Min. Minor Dia.	Basic Pitch Dia.	Basic Major Dia.
¾	8	0.75-8 NH	0.12500	0.08119	1.2246	1.3058	1.3870
1	8	1-8 NH	0.12500	0.08119	1.2246	1.3058	1.3870
1½	9	1.5-9 NH	0.11111	0.07217	1.8577	1.9298	2.0020
2½	7.5	2.5-7.5 NH	0.13333	0.08660	2.9104	2.9970	3.0836
3	6	3-6 NH	0.16667	0.10825	3.4223	3.5306	3.6389
3½	6	3.5-6 NH	0.16667	0.10825	4.0473	4.1556	4.2639
4	4	4-4 NH	0.25000	0.16238	4.7111	4.8735	5.0359
4½	4	4.5-4 NH	0.25000	0.16238	5.4611	5.6235	5.7859
5	4	5-4 NH	0.25000	0.16238	5.9602	6.1226	6.2850
6	4	6-4 NH	0.25000	0.16238	6.7252	6.8876	7.0500
Nom. Size	Threads per Inch (tpi)	Thread Designation	Pitch, *p*	External Thread Dimensions (Nipple)			
				Allowance	Max.Major Dia.	Max. Pitch Dia.	Max Minor Dia.
¾	8	0.75-8 NH	0.12500	0.0120	1.3750	1.2938	1.2126
1	8	1-8 NH	0.12500	0.0120	1.3750	1.2938	1.2126
1½	9	1.5-9 NH	0.11111	0.0120	1.9900	1.9178	1.8457
2½	7.5	2.5-7.5 NH	0.13333	0.0150	3.0686	2.9820	2.8954
3	6	3-6 NH	0.16667	0.0150	3.6239	3.5156	3.4073
3½	6	3.5-6 NH	0.16667	0.0200	4.2439	4.1356	4.0273
4	4	4-4 NH	0.25000	0.0250	5.0109	4.8485	4.6861
4½	4	4.5-4 NH	0.25000	0.0250	5.7609	5.5985	5.4361
5	4	5-4 NH	0.25000	0.0250	6.2600	6.0976	5.9352
6	4	6-4 NH	0.25000	0.0250	7.0250	6.8626	6.7002

All dimensions are in inches.

Thread Limits of Size: Limits of size for NH external threads are given in Table 2. Limits of size for NH internal threads are given in Table 3.

Tolerances: The pitch-diameter tolerances for mating external and internal threads are the same. Pitch-diameter tolerances include lead and half-angle deviations. Lead deviations consuming one-half of the pitch-diameter tolerance are 0.0032 inch for $\frac{3}{4}$-, 1-, and $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch sizes; 0.0046 inch for $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch size; 0.0052 inch for 3-, and $3\frac{1}{2}$-inch sizes; and 0.0072 inch for 4-, $4\frac{1}{2}$-, 5-, and 6-inch sizes. Half-angle deviations consuming one-half of the pitch-diameter tolerance are 1 degree, 42 minutes for $\frac{3}{4}$- and 1-inch sizes; 1 degree, 54 minutes for $1\frac{1}{2}$-inch size; 2 degrees, 17 minutes for $2\frac{1}{2}$-inch size; 2 degrees, 4 minutes for 3- and $3\frac{1}{2}$-inch size; and 1 degree, 55 minutes for 4-, $4\frac{1}{2}$-, 5-, and 6-inch sizes.

Tolerances for the external threads are:

Major diameter tolerance = 2 × pitch-diameter tolerance

Minor diameter tolerance = pitch-diameter tolerance + 2*h*/9

The minimum minor diameter of the external thread is such as to result in a flat equal to one-third of the *p*/8 basic flat, or *p*/24, at the root when the pitch diameter of the external thread is at its minimum value. The maximum minor diameter is basic, but may be such as results from the use of a worn or rounded threading tool. The maximum minor diameter is shown in Fig. 1 and is the diameter upon which the minor diameter tolerance formula shown above is based.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerances for the internal threads are:

Minor diameter tolerance = 2 × pitch-diameter tolerance

The minimum minor diameter of the internal thread is such as to result in a basic flat, $p/8$, at the crest when the pitch diameter of the thread is at its minimum value.

Major diameter tolerance = pitch-diameter tolerance - $2h/9$

Table 2. Limits of Size and Tolerances for NH External Threads (Nipples)
NFPA 1963, 1993 Edition

Nom. Size	Threads per Inch (tpi)	External Thread (Nipple)						
		Major Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Minor[a] Dia.
		Max.	Min.	Toler.	Max.	Min.	Toler.	Max.
¾	8	1.3750	1.3528	0.0222	1.2938	1.2827	0.0111	1.2126
1	8	1.3750	1.3528	0.0222	1.2938	1.2827	0.0111	1.2126
1½	9	1.9900	1.9678	0.0222	1.9178	1.9067	0.0111	1.8457
2½	7.5	3.0686	3.0366	0.0320	2.9820	2.9660	0.0160	2.8954
3	6	3.6239	3.5879	0.0360	3.5156	3.4976	0.0180	3.4073
3½	6	4.2439	4.2079	0.0360	4.1356	4.1176	0.0180	4.0273
4	4	5.0109	4.9609	0.0500	4.8485	4.8235	0.0250	4.6861
4½	4	5.7609	5.7109	0.0500	5.5985	5.5735	0.0250	5.4361
5	4	6.2600	6.2100	0.0500	6.0976	6.0726	0.0250	5.9352
6	4	7.0250	6.9750	0.0500	6.8626	6.8376	0.0250	6.7002

[a] Dimensions given for the maximum minor diameter of the nipple are figured to the intersection of the worn tool arc with a center line through crest and root. The minimum minor diameter of the nipple shall be that corresponding to a flat at the minor diameter of the minimum nipple equal to $p/24$ and may be determined by subtracting $11h/9$ (or $0.7939p$) from the minimum pitch diameter of the nipple.

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 3. Limits of Size and Tolerances for NH Internal Threads (Couplings)
NFPA 1963, 1993 Edition

Nom. Size	Threads per Inch (tpi)	Internal Thread (Coupling)						
		Minor Diameter			Pitch Diameter			Major[a] Dia.
		Min.	Max.	Toler.	Min.	Max.	Toler.	Min.
¾	8	1.2246	1.2468	0.0222	1.3058	1.3169	0.0111	1.3870
1	8	1.2246	1.2468	0.0222	1.3058	1.3169	0.0111	1.3870
1½	9	1.8577	1.8799	0.0222	1.9298	1.9409	0.0111	2.0020
2½	7.5	2.9104	2.9424	0.0320	2.9970	3.0130	0.0160	3.0836
3	6	3.4223	3.4583	0.0360	3.5306	3.5486	0.0180	3.6389
3½	6	4.0473	4.0833	0.0360	4.1556	4.1736	0.0180	4.2639
4	4	4.7111	4.7611	0.0500	4.8735	4.8985	0.0250	5.0359
4½	4	5.4611	5.5111	0.0500	5.6235	5.6485	0.0250	5.7859
5	4	5.9602	6.0102	0.0500	6.1226	6.1476	0.0250	6.2850
6	4	6.7252	6.7752	0.0500	6.8876	6.9126	0.0250	7.0500

[a] Dimensions for the minimum major diameter of the coupling correspond to the basic flat ($p/8$), and the profile at the major diameter produced by a worn tool must not fall below the basic outline. The maximum major diameter of the coupling shall be that corresponding to a flat at the major diameter of the maximum coupling equal to $p/24$ and may be determined by adding $11h/9$ (or $0.7939p$) to the maximum pitch diameter of the coupling.

All dimensions are in inches.

Gages and Gaging: Full information on gage dimensions and the use of gages in checking the NH thread are given in NFPA Standard No. 1963, 1993 Edition, published by the National Fire Protection Association, Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269.

The information and data taken from this standard are reproduced with the permission of the NFPA.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

OTHER THREADS

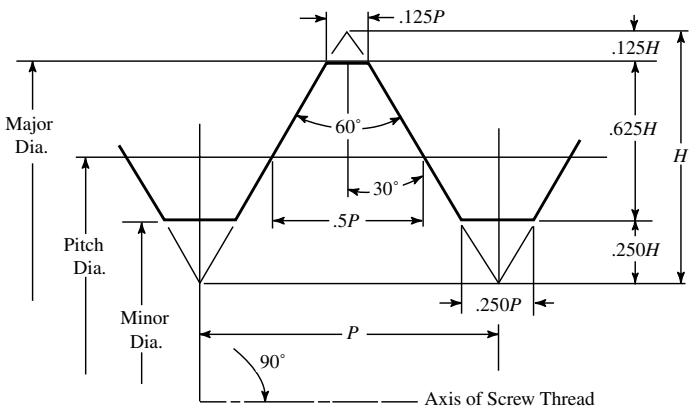
Interference-Fit Threads

Interference-Fit Threads.—Interference-fit threads are threads in which the externally threaded member is larger than the internally threaded member when both members are in the free state and that, when assembled, become the same size and develop a holding torque through elastic compression, plastic movement of material, or both. By custom, these threads are designated Class 5.

The data in Table 1, Table 2, and Table 3, which are based on years of research, testing and field study, represent an American standard for interference-fit threads that overcomes the difficulties experienced with previous interference-fit recommendations such as are given in Federal Screw Thread Handbook H28. These data were adopted as American Standard ASA B1.12-1963. Subsequently, the standard was revised and issued as American National Standard ANSI B1.12-1972. More recent research conducted by the Portsmouth Naval Shipyard has led to the current revision ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018).

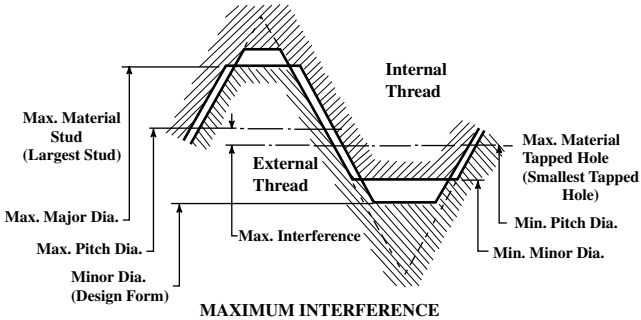
The data in Table 1, Table 2, and Table 3 provide dimensions for external and internal interference-fit (Class 5) threads of modified American National form in the Coarse Thread series, sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches. It is intended that interference-fit threads conforming with this standard will provide adequate torque conditions which fall within the limits shown in Table 3. The minimum torques are intended to be sufficient to ensure that externally threaded members will not loosen in service; the maximum torques establish a ceiling below which seizing, galling, or torsional failure of the externally threaded components is reduced.

Table 1 and Table 2 give external and internal thread dimensions and are based on engagement lengths, external thread lengths, and tapping hole depths specified in Table 3 and in compliance with the design and application data given in the following paragraphs. Table 4 gives the allowances and Table 5 gives the tolerances for pitch, major, and minor diameters for the Coarse Thread Series.



Basic Profile of American National Standard Class 5 Interference Fit Thread

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Note: Plastic flow of interference metal into cavities at major and minor diameters is not illustrated.

Maximum and Minimum Material Limits for Class 5 Interference-Fit Thread

Design and Application Data for Class 5 Interference-Fit Threads.—Following are conditions of usage and inspection on which satisfactory application of products made to dimensions in Table 1, Table 2, and Table 3 are based.

Thread Designations: The following thread designations provide a means of distinguishing the American Standard Class 5 Threads from the tentative Class 5 and alternate Class 5 threads, specified in Federal Screw Thread Handbook H28. They also distinguish between external and internal American Standard Class 5 Threads.

Class 5 External Threads are designated as follows:

NC-5 HF—For driving in hard ferrous material of hardness over 160 BHN.

NC-5 CSF—For driving in copper alloy and soft ferrous material of 160 BHN or less.

NC-5 ONF—For driving in other nonferrous material (nonferrous materials other than copper alloys), any hardness.

Class 5 Internal Threads are designated as follows:

NC-5 IF—Entire ferrous material range.

NC-5 INF—Entire nonferrous material range.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. External Thread Dimensions for Class 5 Interference-Fit Threads
ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)

Nominal Size	Major Diameter, Inches						Pitch Diameter, Inches		Minor Diameter, Inches
	NC-5 HF for driving in ferrous material with hardness greater than 160 BHN L_e = 1¼ Diam.		NC-5 CSF for driving in brass and ferrous material with hardness equal to or less than 160 BHN L_e = 1¼ Diam.		NC-5 ONF for driving in nonferrous except brass (any hardness) L_e = 2½ Diam.				
	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
0.2500-20	0.2470	0.2418	0.2470	0.2418	0.2470	0.2418	0.2230	0.2204	0.1932
0.3125-18	0.3080	0.3020	0.3090	0.3030	0.3090	0.3030	0.2829	0.2799	0.2508
0.3750-16	0.3690	0.3626	0.3710	0.3646	0.3710	0.3646	0.3414	0.3382	0.3053
0.4375-14	0.4305	0.4233	0.4330	0.4258	0.4330	0.4258	0.3991	0.3955	0.3579
0.5000-13	0.4920	0.4846	0.4950	0.4876	0.4950	0.4876	0.4584	0.4547	0.4140
0.5625-12	0.5540	0.5460	0.5575	0.5495	0.5575	0.5495	0.5176	0.5136	0.4695
0.6250-11	0.6140	0.6056	0.6195	0.6111	0.6195	0.6111	0.5758	0.5716	0.5233
0.7500-10	0.7360	0.7270	0.7440	0.7350	0.7440	0.7350	0.6955	0.6910	0.6378
0.8750- 9	0.8600	0.8502	0.8685	0.8587	0.8685	0.8587	0.8144	0.8095	0.7503
1.0000- 8	0.9835	0.9727	0.9935	0.9827	0.9935	0.9827	0.9316	0.9262	0.8594
1.1250- 7	1.1070	1.0952	1.1180	1.1062	1.1180	1.1062	1.0465	1.0406	0.9640
1.2500- 7	1.2320	1.2200	1.2430	1.2312	1.2430	1.2312	1.1715	1.1656	1.0890
1.3750- 6	1.3560	1.3410	1.3680	1.3538	1.3680	1.3538	1.2839	1.2768	1.1877
1.5000- 6	1.4810	1.4670	1.4930	1.4788	1.4930	1.4788	1.4089	1.4018	1.3127

Based on external threaded members being steel ASTM A325 (SAE Grade 5) or better. L_e = length of engagement.

Table 2. Internal Thread Dimensions for Class 5 Interference-Fit Threads
ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)

Nominal Size	NC-5 IF Ferrous Material			NC-5 INF Nonferrous Material			Pitch Diameter		Major Diam.
	Minor Diam.[a]		Tap Drill	Minor Diam.[a]		Tap Drill			
	Min	Max		Min	Max		Min	Max	Min
0.2500-20	0.196	0.206	0.2031	0.196	0.206	0.2031	0.2175	0.2201	0.2532
0.3125-18	0.252	0.263	0.2610	0.252	0.263	0.2610	0.2764	0.2794	0.3161
0.3750-16	0.307	0.318	0.3160	0.307	0.318	0.3160	0.3344	0.3376	0.3790
0.4375-14	0.374	0.381	0.3750	0.360	0.372	0.3680	0.3911	0.3947	0.4421
0.5000-13	0.431	0.440	0.4331	0.417	0.429	0.4219	0.4500	0.4537	0.5050
0.5625-12	0.488	0.497	0.4921	0.472	0.485	0.4844	0.5084	0.5124	0.5679
0.6250-11	0.544	0.554	0.5469	0.527	0.540	0.5313	0.5660	0.5702	0.6309
0.7500-10	0.667	0.678	0.6719	0.642	0.655	0.6496	0.6850	0.6895	0.7565
0.8750- 9	0.777	0.789	0.7812	0.755	0.769	0.7656	0.8028	0.8077	0.8822
1.0000- 8	0.890	0.904	0.8906	0.865	0.880	0.8750	0.9188	0.9242	1.0081
1.1250- 7	1.000	1.015	1.0000	0.970	0.986	0.9844	1.0322	1.0381	1.1343
1.2500- 7	1.125	1.140	1.1250	1.095	1.111	1.1094	1.1572	1.1631	1.2593
1.3750- 6	1.229	1.247	1.2344	1.195	1.213	1.2031	1.2667	1.2738	1.3858
1.5000- 6	1.354	1.372	1.3594	1.320	1.338	1.3281	1.3917	1.3988	1.5108

[a] Fourth decimal place is 0 for all sizes.

All dimensions are in inches, unless otherwise specified.

Externally Threaded Products: Points of externally threaded components should be chamfered or otherwise reduced to a diameter below the minimum minor diameter of the thread. The limits apply to bare or metallic coated parts. The threads should be free from excessive nicks, burrs, chips, grit or other extraneous material before driving.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Torques, Interferences, and Engagement Lengths for Class 5 Interference-Fit Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)*

Nominal Size	Interference on Pitch Diameter		Engagement Lengths, External Thread Lengths and Tapped Hole Depths[a]						Torque at 1-¼*D* Engagement in Ferrous Material	
			In Brass and Ferrous			In Nonferrous Except Brass				
	Max	Min	L_e	T_s	T_h min	L_e	T_s	T_h min	Max, lb-ft	Min, lb-ft
0.2500-20	.0055	.0003	0.312	0.375 + .125 – 0	0.375	0.625	0.688 + .125 – 0	0.688	12	3
0.3125-18	.0065	.0005	0.391	0.469 + .139 – 0	0.469	0.781	0.859 + .139 – 0	0.859	19	6
0.3750-16	.0070	.0006	0.469	0.562 + .156 – 0	0.562	0.938	1.031 + .156 – 0	1.031	35	10
0.4375-14	.0080	.0008	0.547	0.656 + .179 – 0	0.656	1.094	1.203 + .179 – 0	1.203	45	15
0.5000-13	.0084	.0010	0.625	0.750 + .192 – 0	0.750	1.250	1.375 + .192 – 0	1.375	75	20
0.5625-12	.0092	.0012	0.703	0.844 + .208 – 0	0.844	1.406	1.547 + .208 – 0	1.547	90	30
0.6250-11	.0098	.0014	0.781	0.938 + .227 – 0	0.938	1.562	1.719 + .227 – 0	1.719	120	37
0.7500-10	.0105	.0015	0.938	1.125 + .250 – 0	1.125	1.875	2.062 + .250 – 0	2.062	190	60
0.8750- 9	.0016	.0018	1.094	1.312 + .278 – 0	1.312	2.188	2.406 + .278 – 0	2.406	250	90
1.0000- 8	.0128	.0020	1.250	1.500 + .312 – 0	1.500	2.500	2.750 + .312 – 0	2.750	400	125
1.1250- 7	.0143	.0025	1.406	1.688 + .357 – 0	1.688	2.812	3.094 + .357 – 0	3.095	470	155
1.2500- 7	.0143	.0025	1.562	1.875 + .357 – 0	1.875	3.125	3.438 + .357 – 0	3.438	580	210
1.3750- 6	.0172	.0030	1.719	2.062 + .419 – 0	2.062	3.438	3.781 + .419 – 0	3.781	705	250
1.5000- 6	.0172	.0030	1.875	2.250 + .419 – 0	2.250	3.750	4.125 + .419 – 0	4.125	840	325

[a] L_e = Length of engagement. T_s = External thread length of full form thread. T_h = Minimum depth of full form thread in hole.

All dimensions are inches.

Materials for Externally Threaded Products: The length of engagement, depth of thread engagement and pitch diameter in Table 1, Table 2, and Table 3 are designed to produce adequate torque conditions when heat-treated medium-carbon steel products, ASTM A325 (SAE Grade 5) or better, are used. In many applications, case-carburized and non-heat-treated medium-carbon steel products of SAE Grade 4 are satisfactory. SAE Grades 1 and 2 may be usable under certain conditions. This standard is not intended to cover the use of products made of stainless steel, silicon bronze, brass or similar materials. When such materials are used, the tabulated dimensions will probably require adjustment based on pilot experimental work with the materials involved.

Lubrication: For driving in ferrous material, a good lubricant sealer should be used, particularly in the hole. A non-carbonizing type of lubricant (such as a rubber-in-water dispersion) is suggested. The lubricant must be applied to the hole and it may be applied to the male member. In applying it to the hole, care must be taken so that an excess amount of lubricant will not cause the male member to be impeded by hydraulic pressure in a blind hole. Where sealing is involved, the lubricant selected should be insoluble in the medium being sealed.

For driving, in nonferrous material, lubrication may not be needed. The use of medium gear oil for driving in aluminum is recommended. American research has observed that the minor diameter of lubricated tapped holes in nonferrous materials may tend to close in, that is, be reduced in driving; whereas with an unlubricated hole the minor diameter may tend to open up.

Driving Speed: This standard makes no recommendation for driving speed. Some opinion has been advanced that careful selection and control of driving speed is desirable to obtain optimum results with various combinations of surface hardness and roughness. Experience with threads made to this standard may indicate what limitations should be placed on driving speeds.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Allowances for Coarse Thread Series *ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)*

TPI	Difference between Nom. Size and Max Major Diam of NC-5 HF[a]	Difference between Nom. Size and Max Major Diam. of NC-5 CSF or NC-5 ONF[a]	Difference between Basic Minor Diam. and Min Minor Diam. of NC-5 IF[a]	Difference between Basic Minor Diam. and Min Minor Diam.of NC-5 INF	Max PD Inteference or Neg Allowance, Ext Thread[b]	Difference between Max Minor Diam. and Basic Minor Diam., Ext Thread
20	0.0030	0.0030	0.000	0.000	0.0055	0.0072
18	0.0045	0.0035	0.000	0.000	0.0065	0.0080
16	0.0060	0.0040	0.000	0.000	0.0070	0.0090
14	0.0070	0.0045	0.014	0.000	0.0080	0.0103
13	0.0080	0.0050	0.014	0.000	0.0084	0.0111
12	0.0085	0.0050	0.016	0.000	0.0092	0.0120
11	0.0110	0.0055	0.017	0.000	0.0098	0.0131
10	0.0140	0.0060	0.019	0.000	0.0105	0.0144
9	0.0150	0.0065	0.022	0.000	0.0116	0.0160
8	0.0165	0.0065	0.025	0.000	0.0128	0.0180
7	0.0180	0.0070	0.030	0.000	0.0143	0.0206
6	0.0190	0.0070	0.034	0.000	0.0172	0.0241

[a] The allowances in these columns were obtained from industrial research data.
[b] Negative allowance is the difference between the basic pitch diameter and pitch diameter value at maximum material condition.
All dimensions are in inches.
The difference between basic major diameter and internal thread minimum major diameter is 0.075*H* and is tabulated in Table 5.

Table 5. Tolerances for Pitch Diameter, Major Diameter, and Minor Diameter for Coarse Thread Series *ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)*

TPI	PD Tolerance for Ext and Int Threads[a]	Major Diam. Tolerance for Ext Thread[b]	Minor Diam. Tolerance for Int Thread NC-5 IF	Minor Diam. Tolerance for Int Thread NC-5 INF[c]	Tolerance 0.075*H* or 0.065*P* for Tap Major Diam.
20	0.0026	0.0052	0.010	0.010	0.0032
18	0.0030	0.0060	0.011	0.011	0.0036
16	0.0032	0.0064	0.011	0.011	0.0041
14	0.0036	0.0072	0.008	0.012	0.0046
13	0.0037	0.0074	0.008	0.012	0.0050
12	0.0040	0.0080	0.009	0.013	0.0054
11	0.0042	0.0084	0.010	0.013	0.0059
10	0.0045	0.0090	0.011	0.014	0.0065
9	0.0049	0.0098	0.012	0.014	0.0072
8	0.0054	0.0108	0.014	0.015	0.0093
7	0.0059	0.0118	0.015	0.015	0.0093
6	0.0071	0.0142	0.018	0.018	0.0108

[a] National Class 3 pitch diameter tolerance from ASA B1.1-1960.
[b] Twice the NC-3 pitch diameter tolerance.
[c] National Class 3 minor diameter tolerance from ASA B1.1-1960.
All dimensions are in inches.

Relation of Driving Torque to Length of Engagement: Torques increase directly as the length of engagement and this increase is proportionately more rapid as size increases. The standard does not establish recommended breakloose torques.

Surface Roughness: Surface roughnesss is not a required measurement. Roughness between 63 and 125 µin Ra is recommended. Surface roughness greater than 125 µin Ra may encourage galling and tearing of threads. Surfaces with roughness less than 63 µin Ra may hold insufficient lubricant and wring or weld together.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Lead and Angle Variations: The lead variation values tabulated in Table 6 are the maximum variations from specified lead between any two points not farther apart than the length of the standard GO thread gage. Flank angle variation values tabulated in Table 7 are maximum variations from the basic 30° angle between thread flanks and perpendiculars to the thread axis. The application of these data in accordance with ANSI/ASME B1.3, the screw thread gaging system for dimensional acceptability, is given in the Standard. Lead variation does not change the volume of displaced metal, but it exerts a cumulative unilateral stress on the pressure side of the thread flank. Control of the difference between pitch diameter size and functional diameter size to within one-half the pitch diameter tolerance will hold lead and angle variables to within satisfactory limits. Both the variations may produce unacceptable torque and faulty assemblies.

Table 6. Maximum Allowable Variations in Lead and Maximum Equivalent Change in Functional Diameter *ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)*

Nominal Size	External and Internal Threads	
	Allowable Variation in Axial Lead (Plus or Minus)	Max Equivalent Change in Functional Diam. (Plus for Ext, Minus for Int)
0.2500-20	0.0008	0.0013
0.3125-18	0.0009	0.0015
0.3750-16	0.0009	0.0016
0.4375-14	0.0010	0.0018
0.5000-13	0.0011	0.0018
0.5625-12	0.0012	0.0020
0.6250-11	0.0012	0.0021
0.7500-10	0.0013	0.0022
0.8750- 9	0.0014	0.0024
1.0000- 8	0.0016	0.0027
1.1250- 7	0.0017	0.0030
1.2500- 7	0.0017	0.0030
1.3750- 6	0.0020	0.0036
1.5000- 6	0.0020	0.0036

All dimensions are in inches.

Note: The equivalent change in functional diameter applies to total effect of form errors.

Maximum allowable variation in lead is permitted only when all other form variations are zero.

For sizes not tabulated, maximum allowable variation in lead is equal to 0.57735 times one-half the pitch diameter tolerance.

Table 7. Maximum Allowable Variation in 30° Basic Half-Angle of External and Internal Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.12-1987 (R2018)*

TPI	Allowable Variation in Half-Angle of Thread (Plus or Minus)	TPI	Allowable Variation in Half-Angle of Thread (Plus or Minus)	TPI	Allowable Variation in Half-Angle of Thread (Plus or Minus)
32	1° 30′	14	0° 55′	8	0° 45′
28	1° 20′	13	0° 55′	7	0° 45′
27	1° 20′	12	0° 50′	6	0° 40′
24	1° 15′	11½	0° 50′	5	0° 40′
20	1° 10′	11	0° 50′	4½	0° 40′
18	1° 05′	10	0° 50′	4	0° 40′
16	1° 00′	9	0° 50′	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spark Plug Threads

British Standard for Spark Plugs BS 45:1972 (withdrawn).—This revised British Standard refers solely to spark plugs used in automobiles and industrial spark ignition internal combustion engines. The basic thread form is that of the ISO metric (see page 2046). In assigning tolerances to the threads of the spark plug and the tapped holes, full consideration has been given to the desirability of achieving the closest possible measure of interchangeability between British spark plugs and engines, and those made to the standards of other ISO Member Bodies.

Basic Thread Dimensions for Spark Plug and Tapped Hole in Cylinder Head

Nom. Size	Pitch	Thread	Major Dia.		Pitch Dia.		Minor Dia.	
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
14	1.25	Plug	13.937[a]	13.725	13.125	12.993	12.402	12.181
14	1.25	Hole		14.00	13.368	13.188	12.912	12.647
18	1.5	Plug	17.933[a]	17.697	16.959	16.819	16.092	15.845
18	1.5	Hole		18.00	17.216	17.026	16.676	16.376

[a] Not specified

All dimensions are given in millimeters.

The tolerance grades for finished spark plugs and corresponding tapped holes in the cylinder head are: for 14 mm size, 6e for spark plugs and 6H for tapped holes which gives a minimum clearance of 0.063 mm; and for 18 mm size, 6e for spark plugs and 6H for tapped holes which gives a minimum clearance of 0.067 mm.

These minimum clearances are intended to prevent the possibility of seizure, as a result of combustion deposits on the bare threads, when removing the spark plugs and applies to both ferrous and nonferrous materials. These clearances are also intended to enable spark plugs with threads in accordance with this standard to be fitted into existing holes.

SAE Spark-Plug Screw Threads.—The SAE Standard includes the following sizes: $^{7}/_{8}$-inch nominal diameter with 18 threads per inch: 18-millimeter nominal diameter with a 18-millimeter nominal diameter with 1.5-millimeter pitch; 14-millimeter nominal diameter with a 1.25-millimeter pitch; 10-millimeter nominal diameter with a 1.0 millimeter pitch; $^{3}/_{8}$-inch nominal diameter with 24 threads per inch; and $^{1}/_{4}$-inch nominal diameter with 32 threads per inch. During manufacture, in order to keep the wear on the threading tools within permissible limits, the threads in the spark plug GO (ring) gage should be truncated to the maximum minor diameter of the spark plug; and in the tapped hole GO (plug) gage to the minimum major diameter of the tapped hole.

SAE Standard Threads for Spark Plugs

Size[a] Nom. × Pitch	Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Minor Diameter	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Spark Plug Threads, mm (inches)						
M18 × 1.5	17.933	17.803	16.959	16.853	16.053	…
	(0.7060)	(0.7009)	(0.6677)	(0.6635)	(0.6320)	…
M14 × 1.25	13.868	13.741	13.104	12.997	12.339	…
	(0.5460)	(0.5410)	(0.5159)	(0.5117)	(0.4858)	…
M12 × 1.25	11.862	11.735	11.100	10.998	10.211	…
	(0.4670)	(0.4620)	(0.4370)	(0.4330)	(0.4020)	…
M10 × 1.0	9.974	9.794	9.324	9.212	8.747	…
	(0.3927)	(0.3856)	(0.3671)	(0.3627)	(0.3444)	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SAE Standard Threads for Spark Plugs *(Continued)*

Size[a] Nom. × Pitch	Major Diameter		Pitch Diameter		Minor Diameter	
	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
Tapped Hole Threads, mm (inches)						
M18 × 1.5	…	18.039	17.153	17.026	16.426	16.266
	…	(0.7102)	(0.6753)	(0.6703)	(0.6467)	(0.6404)
M14 × 1.25	…	14.034	13.297	13.188	12.692	12.499
	…	(0.5525)	(0.5235)	(0.5192)	(0.4997)	(0.4921)
M12 × 1.25	…	12.000	11.242	11.188	10.559	10.366
	…	(0.4724)	(0.4426)	(0.4405)	(0.4157)	(0.4081)
M10 × 1.0	…	10.000	9.500	9.350	9.153	8.917
	…	(0.3937)	(0.3740)	(0.3681)	(0,3604)	(0.3511)

[a] M14 and M18 are preferred for new applications.

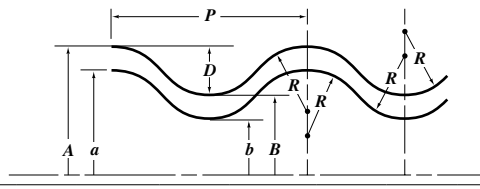
In order to keep the wear on the threading tools within permissible limits, the threads in the spark plug GO (ring) gage shall be truncated to the maximum minor diameter of the spark plug, and in the tapped hole GO (plug) gage to the minimum major diameter of the tapped hole. The plain plug gage for checking the minor diameter of the tapped hole shall be the minimum specified. The thread form is that of the ISO metric (see page 2046).

Reprinted with permission © 1990 Society of Automotive Engineers, Inc.

Lamp Base and Electrical Fixture Threads

Lamp Base and Socket Shell Threads.—The "American Standard" threads for lamp base and socket shells are sponsored by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, the National Electrical Manufacturers' Association and by most of the large manufacturers of products requiring rolled threads on sheet metal shells or parts, such as lamp bases, fuse plugs, attachment plugs, etc. There are five sizes, designated as the "miniature size," the "candelabra size," the "intermediate size," the "medium size" and the "mogul size."

Rolled Threads for Screw Shells of Electric Sockets and Lamp Bases—American Standard



Size	Threads per Inch	Pitch *P*	Depth of Thread *D*	Radius Crest Root *R*	Major Dia. Max. *A*	Major Dia. Min. *a*	Minor Diam. Max. *B*	Minor Diam. Min. *b*
Male or Base Screw Shells Before Assembly								
Miniature	14	0.07143	0.020	0.0210	0.375	0.370	0.335	0.330
Candelabra	10	0.10000	0.025	0.0312	0.465	0.460	0.415	0.410
Intermediate	9	0.11111	0.027	0.0353	0.651	0.645	0.597	0.591
Medium	7	0.14286	0.033	0.0470	1.037	1.031	0.971	0.965
Mogul	4	0.25000	0.050	0.0906	1.555	1.545	1.455	1.445
Socket Screw Shells Before Assembly								
Miniature	14	0.07143	0.020	0.0210	0.3835	0.3775	0.3435	0.3375
Candelabra	10	0.10000	0.025	0.0312	0.476	0.470	0.426	0.420
Intermediate	9	0.11111	0.027	0.0353	0.664	0.657	0.610	0.603
Medium	7	0.14286	0.033	0.0470	1.053	1.045	0.987	0.979
Mogul	4	0.25000	0.050	0.0906	1.577	1.565	1.477	1.465

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Base Screw Shell Gage Tolerances: Threaded ring gages—"Go," Max. thread size to minus 0.0003 inch; "Not Go," Min. thread size to plus 0.0003 inch. Plain ring gages—"Go," Max. thread O.D. to minus 0.0002 inch; "Not Go," Min. thread O.D. to plus 0.0002 inch.

Socket Screw Shell Gages: Threaded plug gages—"Go," Min. thread size to plus 0.0003 inch; "Not Go," Max. thread size to minus 0.0003 inch. Plain plug gages—"Go," Min. minor dia. to plus 0.0002 inch; "Not Go," Max. minor dia. to minus 0.0002 inch.

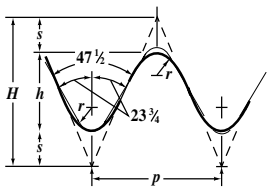
Check Gages for Base Screw Shell Gages: Threaded plugs for checking threaded ring gages—"Go," Max. thread size to minus 0.0003 inch; "Not Go," Min. thread size to plus 0.0003 inch.

Electric Fixture Thread.—The special straight electric fixture thread consists of a straight thread of the same pitches as the American standard pipe thread, and having the regular American or US standard form; it is used for caps, etc. The male thread is smaller, and the female thread larger than those of the special straight-fixture pipe threads. The male thread assembles with a standard taper female thread, while the female thread assembles with a standard taper male thread. This thread is used when it is desired to have the joint "make up" on a shoulder. The gages used are straight-threaded limit gages.

Instrument and Microscope Threads

British Association Standard Thread (BA).—This form of thread is similar to the Whitworth thread in that the root and crest are rounded (see illustration). The angle, however, is only 47 degrees 30 minutes and the radius of the root and crest are proportionately larger. This thread is used in Great Britain and, to some extent, in other European countries for very small screws. Its use in the United States is practically confined to the manufacture of tools for export. This thread system was originated in Switzerland as a standard for watch and clock screws, and it is sometimes referred to as the "Swiss small screw thread standard." See also *Swiss Screw Thread*.

This screw thread system is recommended by the British Standards Institution for use in preference to the BSW and BSF systems for all screws smaller than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch except that the use of the "0" BA thread be discontinued in favor of the $\frac{1}{4}$-in. BSF. It is further recommended that in the selection of sizes, preference be given to even numbered BA sizes. The thread form is shown by the diagram.



British Association Thread

$$H = 1.13634 \times p$$
$$h = 0.60000 \times p$$
$$r = 0.18083 \times p$$
$$s = 0.26817 \times p$$

It is a symmetrical V-thread, of 47½ degree included angle, having its crests and roots rounded with equal radii, such that the basic depth of the thread is 0.6000 of the pitch. Where p = pitch of thread, H = depth of V-thread, h = depth of BA thread, r = radius at root and crest of thread, and s = root and crest truncation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Association (BA) Standard Thread, Basic Dimensions
BS 93:1951 (obsolescent)

Designation Number	Pitch, mm	Depth of Thread, mm	Bolt and Nut			Radius, mm	Threads per Inch (approx.)
			Major Diameter, mm	Effective Diameter, mm	Minor Diameter, mm		
0	1.0000	0.600	6.00	5.400	4.80	0.1808	25.4
1	0.9000	0.540	5.30	4.760	4.22	0.1627	28.2
2	0.8100	0.485	4.70	4.215	3.73	0.1465	31.4
3	0.7300	0.440	4.10	3.660	3.22	0.1320	34.8
4	0.6600	0.395	3.60	3.205	2.81	0.1193	38.5
5	0.5900	0.355	3.20	2.845	2.49	0.1067	43.0
6	0.5300	0.320	2.80	2.480	2.16	0.0958	47.9
7	0.4800	0.290	2.50	2.210	1.92	0.0868	52.9
8	0.4300	0.260	2.20	1.940	1.68	0.0778	59.1
9	0.3900	0.235	1.90	1.665	1.43	0.0705	65.1
10	0.3500	0.210	1.70	1.490	1.28	0.0633	72.6
11	0.3100	0.185	1.50	1.315	1.13	0.0561	82.0
12	0.2800	0.170	1.30	1.130	0.96	0.0506	90.7
13	0.2500	0.150	1.20	1.050	0.90	0.0452	102
14	0.2300	0.140	1.00	0.860	0.72	0.0416	110
15	0.2100	0.125	0.90	0.775	0.65	0.0380	121
16	0.1900	0.115	0.79	0.675	0.56	0.0344	134

Tolerances and Allowances: Two classes of bolts and one for nuts are provided: *Close Class bolts* are intended for precision parts subject to stress, no allowance being provided between maximum bolt and minimum nut sizes. *Normal Class bolts* are intended for general commercial production and general engineering use; for sizes 0 to 10 BA, an allowance of 0.025 mm is provided.

Tolerance Formulas for British Association (BA) Screw Threads

	Class or Fit	Tolerance (+ for nuts, – for bolts)		
		Major Dia.	Effective Dia.	Minor Dia.
Bolts	Close Class 0 to 10 BA incl.	$0.15p$ mm	$0.08p + 0.02$ mm	$0.16p + 0.04$ mm
	Normal Class 0 to 10 BA incl.	$0.20p$ mm	$0.10p + 0.025$ mm	$0.20p + 0.05$ mm
	Normal Class 11 to 16 BA incl.	$0.25p$ mm	$0.10p + 0.025$ mm	$0.20p + 0.05$ mm
Nuts	All Classes		$0.12p + 0.03$ mm	$0.375p$ mm

In these formulas, p = pitch in millimeters.

Instrument Makers' Screw Thread System.—The standard screw system of the Royal Microscopical Society of London, also known as the "Society Thread," is employed for microscope objectives and the nose pieces of the microscope into which these objectives screw. The form of the thread is the standard Whitworth form. The number of threads per inch is 36. There is one size only. The maximum pitch diameter of the objective is 0.7804 inch and the minimum pitch diameter of the nose-piece is 0.7822 inch. The dimensions are as follows:

Male thread	outside dia.	max., 0.7982 inch	min., 0.7952 inch
	root dia.	max., 0.7626 inch	min., 0.7596 inch
Female thread	root of thread	max,. 0.7674 inch	min., 0.7644 inch
	top of thread	max., 0.8030 inch	min., 0.8000 inch

The Royal Photographic Society Standard Screw Thread ranges from 1-inch diameter upward. For screws less than 1 inch, the Microscopical Society Standard is used. The British Association thread is another thread system employed on instruments abroad.

American Microscope Objective Thread (AMO).—The standard, ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016), describes the American microscope objective thread, AMO, the screw thread form used for mounting a microscope objective assembly to the body or lens turret

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of a microscope. This screw thread is also recommended for other microscope optical assembles as well as related applications such as photomicrographic equipment. It is based on, and intended to be interchangeable with, the screw thread produced and adopted many years ago by the Royal Microscopical Society of Great Britain, generally known as the RMS thread. While the standard is almost universally accepted as the basic standard for microscope objective mountings, formal recognition has been extremely limited.

The basic thread possesses the overall British Standard Whitworth form. (See *Whitworth Standard Thread Form* starting on page 2086). However, the actual design thread form implementation is based on the WWII era ASA B1.6-1944 "Truncated Whitworth Form" in which the rounded crests and roots are removed. ASA B1.6-1944 was withdrawn in 1951. However, ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016) is still active for new design.

Design Requirements of Microscope Objective Threads: Due to the inherent longevity of optical equipment and the repeated use to which the objective threads are subjected, the following factors should be considered when designing microscope objective threads:

Adequate clearance to afford protection against binding due to the presence of foreign particles or minor crest damage.

Sufficient depth of thread engagement to assure security in the short lengths of engagement commonly encountered.

Allowances for limited eccentricities so that centralization and squareness of the objective are not influenced by such errors in manufacture.

Deviation from the Truncated Whitworth Thread Form: Although ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016) is based on the withdrawn ASA B1.6-1944 truncated Whitworth standard, the previously described design requirements necessitate a deviation from the truncated Whitworth thread form. Some of the more significant modifications are:

A larger allowance on the pitch diameter of the external thread.

Smaller tolerances on the major diameter of the external thread and minor diameter of the internal thread.

The provision of allowances on the major and minor diameters of the external thread.

Thread Overview: The thread is a single start type. There is only one class of thread based on a basic major diameter of 0.800 in. and a pitch, p, of 0.027778 inch (36 threads per inch). The AMO thread shall be designated on drawings, tools and gages as "0.800-36 AMO." Thread nomenclature, definitions and terminology are based on ANSI B1.7-1965 (R1972), "Nomenclature, Threads, and Letter Symbols for Screw Threads."

It should also be noted that ISO 8038-1:1997 "Screw threads for objectives and related nosepieces" is also based on the 0.800 inch, 36 tpi RMS thread form.

Tolerances and Allowances: Tolerances are given in Table 2. A positive allowance (minimum clearance) of 0.0018 in. is provided for the pitch diamter E, major diameter D, and minor diameter, K

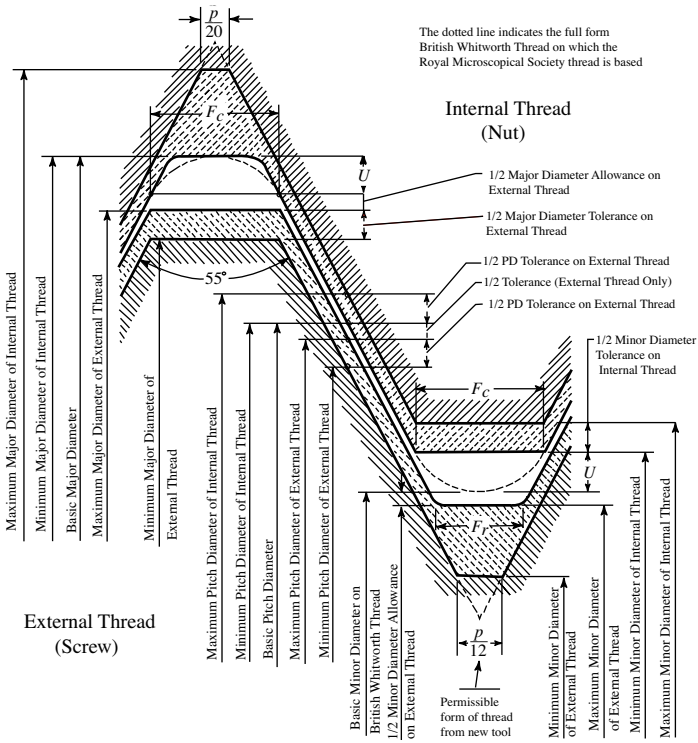
If interchangeability with full-form Whitworth threads is not required, the allowances for the major and minor diameters are not necessary, because the forms at the root and crest are truncated. In these cases, either both limits or only the maximum limit of the major and minor diameters may be increased by the amount of the allowance, 0.0018 inch.

Lengths of Engagement: The tolerances specified in Table 2 are applicable to lengths of engagement ranging from $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch, approximately 15 to 50 percent of the basic diameter. Microscope objective assembles generally have a length of engagement of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch. Lengths exceeding these limits are seldom employed and not covered in this standard.

Gage testing: Recommended ring and plug testing gage dimensions for the 0.800-36 AMO thread size can be found in ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016), Appendix.

Dimensional Terminology: Because the active standard ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016) is based on the withdrawn ASA Truncated Whitworth standard, dimensional nomenclature is described below.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com


The dotted line indicates the full form British Whitworth Thread on which the Royal Microscopical Society thread is based
Internal Thread (Nut)
External Thread (Screw)
p/20
Fc
U
55°
1/2 Major Diameter Allowance on External Thread
1/2 Major Diameter Tolerance on External Thread
1/2 PD Tolerance on External Thread
1/2 Tolerance (External Thread Only)
1/2 PD Tolerance on External Thread
1/2 Minor Diameter Tolerance on Internal Thread
Fr
p/12
Permissible form of thread from new tool
Maximum Major Diameter of Internal Thread
Minimum Major Diameter of Internal Thread
Basic Major Diameter
Maximum Major Diameter of External Thread
Minimum Major Diameter of External Thread
Maximum Pitch Diameter of Internal Thread
Minimum Pitch Diameter of Internal Thread
Basic Pitch Diameter
Maximum Pitch Diameter of External Thread
Minimum Pitch Diameter of External Thread
Basic Minor Diameter on British Whitworth Thread
1/2 Minor Diameter Allowance on External Thread
Minimum Minor Diameter of External Thread
Maximum Minor Diameter of External Thread
Minimum Minor Diameter of Internal Thread
Maximum Minor Diameter of Internal Thread

Tolerances, Allowances and Crest Clearances for Microscope Objective Thread (AMO)
ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016)

Table 1. Definitions, Formulas, Basic and Design Dimensions
ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016)

Symbol	Property	Formula	Dimension
	Basic Thread Form		
α	Half angle of thread	…	27°30′
2α	Included angle of thread	…	55°00′
n	Number of threads per inch	…	36
p	Pitch	$1/n$	0.027778
H	Height of fundamental triangle	$0.960491p$	0.026680
h_b	Height of basic thread	$0.640327p$	0.0178
r	Radius at crest and root of British Standard Whitworth basic thread (not used)	$0.137329p$	0.0038

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Definitions, Formulas, Basic and Design Dimensions**
ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016)

Symbol	Property	Formula	Dimension
	Design Thread Form		
k	Height of truncated Whitworth thread	$h_b - U = 0.566410p$	0.0157
F_c	Width of flat at crest	$0.243624p$	0.0068
F_r	Width of flat at root	$0.166667p$	0.0046
U	Basic truncation of crest from basic Whitworth form	$0.073917p$	0.00205
	Basic and Design Sizes		
D	Major diameter, nominal and basic	…	0.800
D_n	Major diameter of internal thread	D	0.800
D_s	Major diameter of external thread[a]	D - 2U - G	0.7941
E	Pitch (effective) diameter, basic	$D - h_b$	0.7822
E_n	Pitch (effective) diameter of internal thread	$D - h_b$	0.7822
E_s	Pitch (effective) diameter of external thread[b]	$D - h_b$ - G	0.7804
K	Minor diameter, basic	$D - 2h_b$	0.7644
K_n	Minor diameter of internal thread	$D - 2k$	0.7685
K_s	Minor diameter of external thread[a]	$D - 2h_b$ - G	0.7626
G	Allowance at pitch (effective) diameter[a, b]	…	0.0018

[a] An allowance equal to that on the pitch diameter is also provided on the major and minor diameters of the external thread for additional clearance and centralizing.

[b] Allowance (minimum clearance) on pitch (effective) diameter is the same as the British RMS thread.

All dimensions are in inches.

Table 2. Limits of Size and Tolerances—0.800-36 AMO Thread
ANSI/ASME B1.11-1958 (R2016)

Element	Major Diameter, D			Pitch Diameter, E			Minor Diameter, K		
	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.	Tol.	Max.	Min.	Tol.
External thread	0.7941	0.7911	0.0030	0.7804	0.7774	0.0030	0.7626	0.7552[a]	…
Internal thread	0.8092[b]	0.8000	…	0.7852	0.7822	0.0030	0.7715	0.7685	0.0030

[a] Extreme minimum minor diameter produced by a new threading tool having a minimum flat of $p/12 = 0.0023$ inch. This minimum diameter is not controlled by gages but by the form of the threading tool.

[b] Extreme maximum major diameter produced by a new threading tool having a minimum flat of $p/20 = 0.0014$ inch. This maximum diameter is not controlled by gages but by the form of the threading tool.

Tolerances on the internal thread are applied in a plus direction from the basic and design size and tolerances on the external thread are applied in a minus direction from its design (maximum material) size.

All dimensions are in inches.

Lowenherz or Löwenherz Thread.—The Lowenherz thread is intended for the fine screws of instruments and is based on the metric system. It is a symmetrical thread, not a buttress thread. The Löwenherz thread has flats at the top and bottom the same as the US standard buttress form, but the angle is 53 degrees 8 minutes. The depth equals 0.75 × the pitch, and the width of the flats at the top and bottom is equal to 0.125 × the pitch. This screw thread is used for the fine threads of measuring instruments, optical apparatus, etc., especially in Germany.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Löwenherz Thread

Diameter		Pitch, Millimeters	Approximate No. of Threads per Inch	Diameter		Pitch, Millimeters	Approximate No. of Threads per Inch
Millimeters	Inches			Millimeters	Inches		
1.0	0.0394	0.25	101.6	9.0	0.3543	1.30	19.5
1.2	0.0472	0.25	101.6	10.0	0.3937	1.40	18.1
1.4	0.0551	0.30	84.7	12.0	0.4724	1.60	15.9
1.7	0.0669	0.35	72.6	14.0	0.5512	1.80	14.1
2.0	0.0787	0.40	63.5	16.0	0.6299	2.00	12.7
2.3	0.0905	0.40	63.5	18.0	0.7087	2.20	11.5
2.6	0.1024	0.45	56.4	20.0	0.7874	2.40	10.6
3.0	0.1181	0.50	50.8	22.0	0.8661	2.80	9.1
3.5	0.1378	0.60	42.3	24.0	0.9450	2.80	9.1
4.0	0.1575	0.70	36.3	26.0	1.0236	3.20	7.9
4.5	0.1772	0.75	33.9	28.0	1.1024	3.20	7.9
5.0	0.1968	0.80	31.7	30.0	1.1811	3.60	7.1
5.5	0.2165	0.90	28.2	32.0	1.2599	3.60	7.1
6.0	0.2362	1.00	25.4	36.0	1.4173	4.00	6.4
7.0	0.2756	1.10	23.1	40.0	1.5748	4.40	5.7
8.0	0.3150	1.20	21.1	…	…	…	…

Swiss Screw Thread.—This is a thread system originated in Switzerland as a standard for screws used in watch and clock making. The angle between the two sides of the thread is 47 degrees 30 minutes, and the top and bottom of the thread are rounded. This system is used by the British Association as a standard for small screws, and is known as the British Association thread. See *British Association Standard Thread (BA)* on page 2114.

Historical and Miscellaneous Threads

Aero-Thread.—The name "Aero-thread" has been applied to a patented screw thread system that is applicable where the nut or internally threaded part is made from a soft material, such as aluminum or magnesium alloy, for lightness, as in aircraft construction, and where the screw is made from a high-strength steel to provide strength and good wearing qualities. The nut or part containing the internal thread has a 60-degree truncated form of thread. See Fig. 1. The screw, or stud, is provided with a semi-circular thread form, as shown. Between the screw and the nut there is an intermediary part known as a thread lining or insert, made in the form of a helical spring, so that it can be screwed into the nut. The stud is then screwed into the thread formed by the semicircular part of the thread insert. When the screw is provided with a V-form of thread, like the American Standard, frequent loosening and tightening of the screw would cause rapid wear of the softer metal from which the nut is made; furthermore, all the threads might not have an even bearing on the mating threads. By using a thread insert which is screwed into the nut permanently and made from a reasonably hard material, good wearing qualities are obtained. Also, the bearing or load is evenly distributed over the threads of the nut since the insert, being in the form of a spring, can adjust itself to bear on all the thread surfaces.

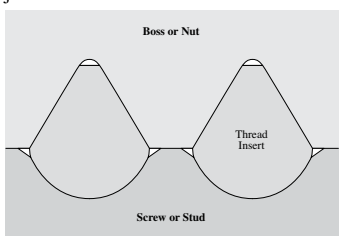


Fig. 1. The Basic Thread Form Used in the Aero-Thread System

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Briggs Pipe Thread.—The Briggs pipe thread (now known as the American Standard) is used for threaded pipe joints and is the standard for this purpose in the United States. It derives its name from Robert Briggs.

Casing Thread.—The standard casing thread of the American Petroleum Institute has an included angle of 60 degrees and a taper of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot. The fourteen casing sizes listed in the 1942 revision have outside diameters ranging from $4\frac{1}{2}$ to 20 inches. All sizes have 8 threads per inch.

Rounded Thread Form: Threads for casing sizes up to $13\frac{3}{8}$ inches, inclusive, have rounded crests and roots, and the depth, measured perpendicular to the axis of the pipe, equals $0.626 \times \text{pitch} - 0.007 = 0.07125$ inch.

Truncated Form: Threads for the 16-and 20-inch casing sizes have flat crests and roots. The depth equals $0.760 \times \text{pitch} = 0.0950$ inch. This truncated form is designated in the A.P.I. Standard as a "sharp thread."

Cordeaux Thread.—The Cordeaux screw thread derives its name from John Henry Cordeaux, an English telegraph inspector who obtained a patent for this thread in 1877. This thread is used for connecting porcelain insulators with their stalks by means of a screw thread on the stalk and a corresponding thread in the insulator. The thread is approximately a Whitworth thread, 6 threads per inch, the diameters most commonly used being $\frac{5}{8}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ inch outside diameter of thread; $\frac{5}{8}$ inch is almost universally used for telegraph purposes, while a limited number of $\frac{3}{4}$-inch sizes are used for large insulators.

Dardelet Thread.—The Dardelet patented self-locking thread is designed to resist vibrations and remain tight without auxiliary locking devices. The locking surfaces are the tapered root of the bolt thread and the tapered crest of the nut thread. The nut is free to turn until seated tightly against a resisting surface, thus causing it to shift from the free position (indicated by dotted lines) to the locking position. The locking is due to a wedging action between the tapered crest of the nut thread and the tapered root or binding surface of the bolt thread. This self-locking thread is also applied to set screws and cap screws. The holes must, of course, be threaded with Dardelet taps. The abutment sides of the Dardelet thread carry the major part of the tensile load. The nut is unlocked simply by turning it backward with a wrench. The Dardelet thread can either be cut or rolled, using standard equipment provided with tools, taps, dies, or rolls made to suit the Dardelet thread profile. The included thread angle is 29 degrees; depth $E = 0.3P$; maximum axial movement = $0.28\,P$. The major internal thread diameter (standard series) equals major external thread diameter plus 0.003 inch except for $\frac{1}{4}$-inch size which is plus 0.002 inch. The width of both external and internal threads at pitch line equals $0.36\,P$.

"Drunken" Thread.—A "drunken" thread, according to prevalent usage of this expression by machinists, etc., is a thread that does not coincide with a true helix or advance uniformly. This irregularity in a taper thread may be due to the fact that in taper turning with the tailstock set over, the work does not turn with a uniform angular velocity, while the cutting tool is advancing along the work longitudinally with a uniform linear velocity. The change in the pitch and the irregularity of the thread is so small as to be imperceptible to the eye, if the taper is slight, but as the tapers increase to, say, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot or more, the errors become more pronounced. To avoid this defect, a taper attachment should be used for taper thread cutting.

Echols Thread.—Chip room is of great importance in machine taps and tapper taps where the cutting speed is high and always in one direction. The tap as well as the nut to be threaded is liable to be injured, if ample space for the chips to pass away from the cutting edges is not provided. A method of decreasing the number of cutting edges, as well as increasing the amount of chip room, is embodied in the "Echols thread," where every alternate tooth is removed. If a tap has an even number of flutes, the removal of every other tooth in the lands will be equivalent to the removal of the teeth of a continuous thread. It is, therefore, necessary that taps provided with this thread be made with an odd number of lands, so that removing the tooth in alternate lands may result in removing every other tooth in each individual land. Machine taps are often provided with the Echols thread.

French Thread (SF).—The French thread has the same form and proportions as the American Standard (formerly US Standard). This French thread is being displaced gradually by the International Metric Thread System.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Harvey Grip Thread.—The characteristic feature of this thread is that one side inclines 44 degrees from a line at right angles to the axis, whereas the other side has an inclination of only 1 degree. This form of thread is sometimes used when there is considerable resistance or pressure in an axial direction and when it is desirable to reduce the radial or bursting pressure on the nut as much as possible. See *BUTTRESS THREADS*.

Lloyd & Lloyd Thread.—The Lloyd & Lloyd screw thread is the same as the regular Whitworth screw thread in which the sides of the thread form an angle of 55 degrees with one another. The top and bottom of the thread are rounded.

Lock-Nut Pipe Thread.—The lock-nut pipe thread is a straight thread of the largest diameter which can be cut on a pipe. Its form is the same as the American or Briggs standard taper pipe thread. In general, "Go" gages only are required. These consist of a straight-threaded plug representing the minimum female lock-nut thread, and a straight-threaded ring representing the maximum male lock-nut thread. This thread is used only to hold parts together, or to retain a collar on the pipe. It is never used where a tight threaded joint is required.

Philadelphia Carriage Bolt Thread.—This is a screw thread for carriage bolts which is somewhat similar to a square thread, but having rounded corners at the top and bottom. The sides of the thread are inclined to an inclusive angle of $3\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. The width of the thread at the top is 0.53 times the pitch.

SAE Standard Screw Thread.—The screw thread standard of the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) is intended for use in the automotive industries of the United States. The SAE Standard includes a Coarse series, a Fine series, an 8-thread series, a 12-thread series, a 16-thread series, an Extra-fine series, and a Special-pitch series. The Coarse and Fine series, and also the 8-, 12- and 16-thread series, are identical to the corresponding American Standard series. The Extra-fine and Special-pitch series are SAE Standards only.

The American Standard thread *form* (or the form previously known as the US Standard) is applied to all SAE Standard screw threads. The Extra-fine series has a total of six pitches ranging from 32 down to 16 threads per inch. The 16 threads per inch in the Extra-fine series applies to all diameters from $1\frac{3}{4}$ up to 6 inches. This Extra-fine series is intended for use on relatively light sections; on parts requiring fine adjustment; where jar and vibration are important factors; when the thickness of a threaded section is relatively small as in tubing, and where assembly is made without the use of wrenches.

The SAE Special pitches include some which are finer than any in the Extra-fine series. The special pitches apply to a range of diameters extending from No. 10 (0.1900 inch) up to 6 inches. Each diameter has a range of pitches varying from five to eight. For example, a $\frac{1}{4}$ - inch diameter has six pitches ranging from 24 to 56 threads per inch, whereas a 6-inch diameter has eight pitches ranging from 4 to 16 threads per inch. These various SAE Standard series are intended to provide adequate screw thread specifications for all uses in the automotive industries.

Sellers Screw Thread.—The Sellers screw thread, later known as the 'United States standard thread," and now as the "American Standard," is the most commonly used screw thread in the United States. It was originated by William Sellers, of Philadelphia, and first proposed by him in a paper read before the Franklin Institute, in April, 1864. In 1868, it was adopted by the United States Navy and has since become the generally accepted standard screw thread in the United States.

Worm Threads.—The included angle of worm threads range from 29° to 60°; for single-threaded worms 29° is common; multiple-threaded type must have larger helix and thread angles to avoid excessive under-cutting in hobbing the worm-wheel teeth. AGMA recommends 40° included thread angle for triple- and quadruple-thread worms, but many speed reducers and transmissions have 60° thread angles. The 29° angle is the same as the Acme thread, but worm thread depth is greater and widths of the flats at the top and bottom are less. If lead angle is larger than 20°, an increase in included thread angle is desirable. Worm gearing reaches maximum efficiency when lead angle is 45°, thus explaining the 60° thread angle. Thread parts of a 29° worm thread are: p = pitch; d = depth of thread = $0.6866p$; t = width, top of thread = $0.335p$; b = width, bottom of thread = $0.310p$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MEASURING SCREW THREADS

Measuring Screw Threads

Pitch and Lead of Screw Threads.—The *pitch* of a screw thread is the distance from the center of one thread to the center of the next thread. This applies no matter whether the screw has a single, double, triple or quadruple thread. The *lead* of a screw thread is the distance the nut will move forward on the screw if it is turned around one full revolution. In a single-threaded screw, the pitch and lead are equal, because the nut would move forward the distance from one thread to the next, if turned around once. In a double-threaded screw, the nut will move forward two threads, or twice the pitch, so that in this case the lead equals twice the pitch. In a triple-threaded screw, the lead equals three times the pitch, and so on.

The word "pitch" is often, although improperly, used to denote the *number of threads per inch*. Screws are spoken of as having a 12-pitch thread, when twelve threads per inch is what is really meant. The number of threads per inch equals 1 divided by the pitch, or expressed as a formula:

$$\text{Number of threads per inch} = \frac{1}{\text{pitch}}$$

The pitch of a screw equals 1 divided by the number of threads per inch, or:

$$\text{Pitch} = \frac{1}{\text{number of threads per inch}}$$

If the number of threads per inch equals 16, the pitch = $\frac{1}{16}$. If the pitch equals 0.05, the number of threads equals $1 \div 0.05 = 20$. If the pitch is $\frac{2}{5}$ inch, the number of threads per inch equals $1 \div \frac{2}{5} = 2\frac{1}{2}$.

Confusion is often caused by the indefinite designation of multiple-thread screws (double, triple, quadruple, etc.). The expression, "four threads per inch, triple," for example, is not to be recommended. It means that the screw is cut with four triple threads or with twelve threads per inch, if the threads are counted by placing a scale alongside the screw. To cut this screw, the lathe would be geared to cut four threads per inch, but they would be cut only to the depth required for twelve threads per inch. The best expression, when a multiple-thread is to be cut, is to say, in this case, "$\frac{1}{4}$ inch lead, $\frac{1}{12}$ inch pitch, triple thread." For single-threaded screws, only the number of threads per inch and the form of the thread are specified. The word "single" is not required.

Measuring Screw Thread Pitch Diameters by Thread Micrometers.—As the pitch or angle diameter of a tap or screw is the most important dimension, it is necessary that the pitch diameter of screw threads be measured, in addition to the outside diameter.

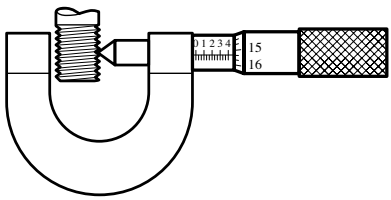


Fig. 1.

One method of measuring in the angle of a thread is by means of a special screw thread micrometer, as shown in the accompanying engraving, Fig. 1. The fixed anvil is W-shaped to engage two thread flanks, and the movable point is cone-shaped so as to enable it to enter the space between two threads, and at the same time be at liberty to revolve. The

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

contact points are on the sides of the thread, as they necessarily must be in order that the pitch diameter may be determined. The cone-shaped point of the measuring screw is slightly rounded so that it will not bear in the bottom of the thread. There is also sufficient clearance at the bottom of the V-shaped anvil to prevent it from bearing on the top of the thread. The movable point is adapted to measuring all pitches, but the fixed anvil is limited in its capacity. To cover the whole range of pitches, from the finest to the coarsest, a number of fixed anvils are therefore required.

To find the theoretical pitch diameter, which is measured by the micrometer, subtract twice the addendum of the thread from the standard outside diameter. The addendum of the thread for the American and other standard threads is given in the section on screw thread systems.

Ball-Point Micrometers.—If standard plug gages are available, it is not necessary to actually measure the pitch diameter, but merely to compare it with the standard gage. In this case, a ball-point micrometer, as shown in Fig. 2, may be employed. Two types of ball-point micrometers are ordinarily used. One is simply a regular plain micrometer with ball points made to slip over both measuring points. (See B, Fig. 2.) This makes a kind of combination plain and ball-point micrometer, the ball points being easily removed. These ball points, however, do not fit solidly on their seats, even if they are split, as shown, and are apt to cause errors in measurements. The best, and, in the long run, the cheapest, method is to use a regular micrometer arranged as shown at *A*. Drill and ream out both the end of the measuring screw or spindle and the anvil, and fit ball points into them as shown. Care should be taken to have the ball point in the spindle run true. The holes in the micrometer spindle and anvil and the shanks on the points are tapered to insure a good fit. The hole *H* in spindle *G* is provided so that the ball point can be easily driven out when a change for a larger or smaller size of ball point is required.

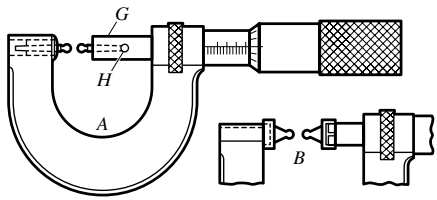


Fig. 2.

A ball-point micrometer may be used for comparing the *angle* of a screw thread, with that of a gage. This can be done by using different sizes of ball points, comparing the size first near the root of the thread, then (using a larger ball point) at about the point of the pitch diameter, and finally near the top of the thread (using in the latter case, of course, a much larger ball point). If the gage and thread measurements are the same at each of the three points referred to, this indicates that the thread angle is correct.

Measuring Screw Threads by Three-Wire Method.—The *effective* or *pitch diameter* of a screw thread may be measured very accurately by means of some form of micrometer and three wires of equal diameter. This method is extensively used in checking the accuracy of threaded plug gages and other precision screw threads. Two of the wires are placed in contact with the thread on one side and the third wire in a position diametrically opposite as illustrated by the diagram, (see table "*Formulas for Checking Pitch Diameters of Screw Threads* on page 2128") and the dimension over the wires is determined by means of a micrometer. An ordinary micrometer is commonly used but some form of "floating micrometer" is preferable, especially for measuring thread gages and other precision work. The floating micrometer is mounted upon a compound slide so that it can move freely in directions parallel or at right angles to the axis of the screw, which is held in a horizontal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

position between adjustable centers. With this arrangement the micrometer is held constantly at right angles to the axis of the screw so that only one wire on each side may be used instead of having two on one side and one on the other, as is necessary when using an ordinary micrometer. The pitch diameter may be determined accurately if the correct micrometer reading for wires of a given size is known.

Classes of Formulas for Three-Wire Measurement.—Various formulas have been established for checking the pitch diameters of screw threads by measurement over wires of known size. These formulas differ with regard to their simplicity or complexity and resulting accuracy. They also differ in that some show what measurement *M* over the wires should be to obtain a given pitch diameter *E*, whereas others show the value of the pitch diameter *E* for a given measurement *M*.

Formulas for Finding Measurement M: In using a formula for finding the value of measurement *M*, the required pitch diameter *E* is inserted in the formula. Then, in cutting or grinding a screw thread, the actual measurement *M* is made to conform to the calculated value of *M*. Formulas for finding measurement *M* may be modified so that the basic major or outside diameter is inserted in the formula instead of the pitch diameter; however, the pitch-diameter type of formula is preferable because the pitch diameter is a more important dimension than the major diameter.

Formulas for Finding Pitch Diameters E: Some formulas are arranged to show the value of the pitch diameter *E* when measurement *M* is known. Thus, the value of *M* is first determined by measurement and then is inserted in the formula for finding the corresponding pitch diameter *E*. This type of formula is useful for determining the pitch diameter of an existing thread gage or other screw thread in connection with inspection work. The formula for finding measurement *M* is more convenient to use in the shop or tool room in cutting or grinding new threads, because the pitch diameter is specified on the drawing and the problem is to find the value of measurement *M* for obtaining that pitch diameter.

General Classes of Screw Thread Profiles.—Thread profiles may be divided into three general classes or types as follows:

Screw Helicoid: Represented by a screw thread having a straight-line profile in the axial plane. Such a screw thread may be cut in a lathe by using a straight-sided single-point tool, provided the top surface lies in the axial plane.

Involute Helicoid: Represented either by a screw thread or a helical gear tooth having an involute profile in a plane perpendicular to the axis. A rolled screw thread, theoretically at least, is an exact involute helicoid.

Intermediate Profiles: An intermediate profile that lies somewhere between the screw helicoid and the involute helicoid will be formed on a screw thread either by milling or grinding with a straight-sided wheel set in alignment with the thread groove. The resulting form will approach closely the involute helicoid form. In milling or grinding a thread, the included cutter or wheel angle may either equal the standard thread angle (which is always measured in the axial plane) or the cutter or wheel angle may be reduced to approximate, at least, the thread angle in the normal plane. In practice, all these variations affect the three-wire measurement.

Accuracy of Formulas for Checking Pitch Diameters by Three-Wire Method.—The exact measurement *M* for a given pitch diameter depends upon the lead angle, the thread angle, and the profile or cross-sectional shape of the thread. As pointed out in the preceding paragraph, the profile depends upon the method of cutting or forming the thread. In a milled or ground thread, the profile is affected not only by the cutter or wheel angle, but also by the diameter of the cutter or wheel; hence, because of these variations, an absolutely exact and reasonably simple general formula for measurement *M* cannot be established; however, if the lead angle is low, as with a standard single-thread screw, and especially if the thread angle is high like a 60-degree thread, simple formulas that are not arranged to compensate for the lead angle are used ordinarily and meet most practical requirements,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

particularly in measuring 60-degree threads. If lead angles are large enough to greatly affect the result, as with most multiple threads (especially Acme or 29-degree worm threads), a formula should be used that compensates for the lead angle sufficiently to obtain the necessary accuracy.

The formulas that follow include 1) a very simple type in which the effect of the lead angle on measurement *M* is entirely ignored. This simple formula usually is applicable to the measurement of 60-degree single-thread screws, except possibly when gage-making accuracy is required; 2) formulas that do include the effect of the lead angle but, nevertheless, are approximations and not always suitable for the higher lead angles when extreme accuracy is required; and 3) formulas for the higher lead angles and the most precise classes of work.

Where approximate formulas are applied consistently in the measurement of both thread plug gages and the thread "setting plugs" for ring gages, interchangeability might be secured, assuming that such approximate formulas were universally employed.

Wire Sizes for Checking Pitch Diameters of Screw Threads.—In checking screw threads by the 3-wire method, the general practice is to use measuring wires of the so-called "best size." The "best-size" wire is one that contacts at the pitch line or midslope of the thread because then the measurement of the pitch diameter is least affected by an error in the thread angle. In the following formula for determining approximately the "best-size" wire or the diameter for pitch-line contact, A = one-half included angle of thread in the axial plane.

$$\text{Best-size wire} = \frac{0.5 \times \text{pitch}}{\cos A} = 0.5 \text{ pitch} \times \sec A$$

For 60-degree threads, this formula reduces to

$$\text{Best-size wire} = 0.57735 \times \text{pitch}$$

Diameters of Wires for Measuring American Standard and British Standard Whitworth Screw Threads

Threads per Inch	Pitch, Inch	Wire Diameters for American Standard Threads			Wire Diameters for Whitworth Standard Threads		
		Max.	Min.	Pitch-Line Contact	Max.	Min.	Pitch-Line Contact
4	0.2500	0.2250	0.1400	0.1443	0.1900	0.1350	0.1409
4½	0.2222	0.2000	0.1244	0.1283	0.1689	0.1200	0.1253
5	0.2000	0.1800	0.1120	0.1155	0.1520	0.1080	0.1127
5½	0.1818	0.1636	0.1018	0.1050	0.1382	0.0982	0.1025
6	0.1667	0.1500	0.0933	0.0962	0.1267	0.0900	0.0939
7	0.1428	0.1283	0.0800	0.0825	0.1086	0.0771	0.0805
8	0.1250	0.1125	0.0700	0.0722	0.0950	0.0675	0.0705
9	0.1111	0.1000	0.0622	0.0641	0.0844	0.0600	0.0626
10	0.1000	0.0900	0.0560	0.0577	0.0760	0.0540	0.0564
11	0.0909	0.0818	0.0509	0.0525	0.0691	0.0491	0.0512
12	0.0833	0.0750	0.0467	0.0481	0.0633	0.0450	0.0470
13	0.0769	0.0692	0.0431	0.0444	0.0585	0.0415	0.0434
14	0.0714	0.0643	0.0400	0.0412	0.0543	0.0386	0.0403
16	0.0625	0.0562	0.0350	0.0361	0.0475	0.0337	0.0352
18	0.0555	0.0500	0.0311	0.0321	0.0422	0.0300	0.0313
20	0.0500	0.0450	0.0280	0.0289	0.0380	0.0270	0.0282
22	0.0454	0.0409	0.0254	0.0262	0.0345	0.0245	0.0256
24	0.0417	0.0375	0.0233	0.0240	0.0317	0.0225	0.0235
28	0.0357	0.0321	0.0200	0.0206	0.0271	0.0193	0.0201
32	0.0312	0.0281	0.0175	0.0180	0.0237	0.0169	0.0176
36	0.0278	0.0250	0.0156	0.0160	0.0211	0.0150	0.0156
40	0.0250	0.0225	0.0140	0.0144	0.0190	0.0135	0.0141

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

These formulas are based upon a thread groove of zero lead angle because ordinary variations in the lead angle have little effect on the wire diameter and it is desirable to use one wire size for a given pitch regardless of the lead angle. A theoretically correct solution for finding the *exact* size for pitch-line contact involves the use of cumbersome indeterminate equations with solution by successive trials. The accompanying table gives the wire sizes for both American Standard (formerly, US Standard) and the Whitworth Standard Threads. The following formulas for determining wire diameters do not give the extreme theoretical limits, but the smallest and largest practicable sizes. The diameters in the table are based upon these approximate formulas.

American Standard	Smallest wire diameter = 0.56 × pitch
	Largest wire diameter = 0.90 × pitch
	Diameter for pitch-line contact = 0.57735 × pitch
Whitworth	Smallest wire diameter = 0.54 × pitch
	Largest wire diameter = 0.76 × pitch
	Diameter for pitch-line contact = 0.56369 × pitch

Measuring Wire Accuracy.—A set of three measuring wires should have the same diameter within 0.0002 (5.08 µm) inch. To measure the pitch diameter of a screw-thread gage to an accuracy of 0.0001 inch (2.54 µm) by means of wires, it is necessary to know the wire diameters to 0.00002 (0.51 µm) inch. If the diameters of the wires are known only to an accuracy of 0.0001 (2.54 µm) inch, an accuracy better than 0.0003 (7.62 µm) inch in the measurement of pitch diameter cannot be expected. The wires should be accurately finished hardened steel cylinders of the maximum possible hardness without being brittle. The hardness should not be less than that corresponding to a Knoop indentation number of 630. A wire of this hardness can be cut with a file only with difficulty. The surface should not be rougher than the equivalent of a deviation of 3 microinches (0.0762 µm) from a true cylindrical surface.

Measuring or Contact Pressure.—In measuring screw threads or screw-thread gages by the 3-wire method, variations in contact pressure will result in different readings. The effect of a variation in contact pressure in measuring threads of fine pitches is indicated by the difference in readings obtained with pressures of 2 and 5 pounds (0.91 and 2.27 kg) in checking a thread plug gage having 24 threads per inch. The reading over the wires with 5 pounds (2.27 kg) pressure was 0.00013 inch (3.302 µm) less than with 2 pounds (0.91 kg) pressure. For pitches finer than 20 threads per inch (0.05 inch or 1.27 mm pitch), a pressure of 16 ounces (0.45 kg) is recommended by the National Bureau of Standards, now National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). For pitches of 20 threads per inch and coarser, a pressure of 2 ½ pounds (1.13 kg) is recommended.

For Acme threads, the wire presses against the sides of the thread with a pressure of approximately twice that of the measuring instrument. To limit the tendency of the wires to wedge in between the sides of an Acme thread, it is recommended that pitch-diameter measurements be made at 1 pound on 8 threads per inch and finer, and at 2 ½ pounds for pitches coarser than 8 threads per inch (0.125 inch or 3.175 mm pitch).

Approximate Three-Wire Formulas That Do Not Compensate for Lead Angle.—A general formula in which the effect of lead angle is ignored is as follows (see accompanying notation used in formulas):

$$M = E - T\cot A + W(1 + \csc A) \tag{1}$$

This formula can be simplified for any given thread angle and pitch. To illustrate, because $T = 0.5P$, $M = E - 0.5P \cot 30° + W(1 + 2)$, for a 60-degree thread, such as the American Standard,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$M = E - 0.866025P + 3W$$

The accompanying table contains these simplified formulas for different standard threads. Two formulas are given for each. The upper one is used when the measurement over wires, M, is known and the corresponding pitch diameter, E, is required; the lower formula gives the measurement M for a specified value of pitch diameter. These formulas are sufficiently accurate for checking practically all standard 60-degree single-thread screws because of the low lead angles, which vary from 1° 11′ to 4° 31′ in the American Standard Coarse-Thread Series.

Bureau of Standards (now NIST) General Formula.—Formula (2), which follows, compensates quite largely for the effect of the lead angle. It is from the National Bureau of Standards Handbook H 28 (1944), now FED-STD-H28. The formula, however, as here given has been arranged for finding the value of M (instead of E).

$$M = E - T\cot A + W\,(1 + \csc A + 0.5\tan^2 B\cos A\cot A) \qquad (2)$$

This expression is also found in ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017). The Bureau of Standards uses Formula (2) in preference to Formula (1) when the value of $0.5W\tan^2 B\cos A\cot A$ exceeds 0.00015, with the larger lead angles. If this test is applied to American Standard 60-degree threads, it will show that Formula (1) is generally applicable; but for 29-degree Acme or worm threads, Formula (2) (or some other that includes the effect of lead angle) should be employed.

Notation Used in Formulas for Checking Pitch Diameters by Three-Wire Method

A = one-half included thread angle in the axial plane

A_n = one-half included thread angle in the normal plane or in plane perpendicular to sides of thread = one-half included angle of cutter when thread is milled ($\tan A_n = \tan A \times \cos B$). (Note: Included angle of milling cutter or grinding wheel may equal the nominal included angle of thread, or may be reduced to whatever normal angle is required to make the thread angle standard in the axial plane. In either case, A_n = one-half cutter angle.)

B = lead angle at pitch diameter = helix angle of thread as measured from a plane perpendicular to the axis, $\tan B = L \div 3.1416E$

D = basic major or outside diameter

E = pitch diameter (basic, maximum, or minimum) for which M is required, or pitch diameter corresponding to measurement M

F = angle required in Formulas (4b), (4d), and (4e)

G = angle required in Formula (4)

H = helix angle at pitch diameter and measured from axis = $90° - B$ or $\tan H = \cot B$

H_b = helix angle at R_b measured from axis

L = lead of thread = pitch $P \times$ number of threads S

M = dimension over wires

P = pitch = 1 ÷ number of threads per inch

R_b = radius required in Formulas (4) and (4e)

S = number of "starts" or threads on a multiple-threaded worm or screw

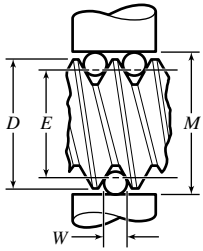
T = 0.5 P = width of thread in axial plane at diameter E

T_a = arc thickness on pitch cylinder in plane perpendicular to axis

W = wire or pin diameter

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Checking Pitch Diameters of Screw Threads



The formulas below do not compensate for the effect of the lead angle upon measurement M, but they are sufficiently accurate for checking standard single-thread screws unless exceptional accuracy is required. See accompanying information on effect of lead angle; also matter relating to measuring wire sizes, accuracy required for such wires, and contact or measuring pressure.

The approximate best wire size for pitch-line contact may be obtained by the formula

$$W = 0.5 \times \text{pitch} \times \sec \frac{1}{2} \text{ included thread angle}$$

For 60-degree threads, $W = 0.57735 \times \text{pitch}$.

Form of Thread	Formulas for determining measurement M corresponding to correct pitch diameter and the pitch diameter E corresponding to a given measurement over wires.[a]
American National Standard Unified	When measurement M is known, $E = M + 0.86603P - 3W$ When pitch diameter E is used in formula, $M = E - 0.86603P + 3W$ The American Standard formerly was known as US Standard.
British Standard Whitworth	When measurement M is known, $E = M + 0.9605P - 3.1657W$ When pitch diameter E is used in formula, $M = E - 0.9605P + 3.1657W$
British Association Standard	When measurement M is known, $E = M + 1.1363P - 3.4829W$ When pitch diameter E is used in formula, $M = E - 1.1363P + 3.4829W$
Lowenherz Thread	When measurement M is known, $E = M + P - 3.2359W$ When pitch diameter E is used in formula, $M = E - P + 3.2359W$
Sharp V-Thread	When measurement M is known, $E = M + 0.86603P - 3W$ When pitch diameter E is used in formula, $M = E - 0.86603P + 3W$
International Standard	Use the formula above for the American National Standard Unified Thread.
Pipe Thread	See accompanying paragraph on *Buckingham Exact Involute Helicoid Formula Applied to Screw Threads*.
Acme and Worm Threads	See Buckingham Formulas page 2132; also *Three-Wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Thread Pitch Diameter*.
Buttress Form of Thread	Different forms of buttress threads are used. See paragraph on *Three-Wire Method Applied to Buttress Threads*.

[a] The wires must be lapped to a uniform diameter and it is very important to insert in the rule or formula the wire diameter as determined by precise means of measurement. Any error will be multiplied. See paragraph on *Wire Sizes for Checking Pitch Diameters of Screw Threads* on page 2125.

Why Small Thread Angle Affects Accuracy of Three-Wire Measurement.—In measuring or checking Acme threads, or any others having a comparatively small thread angle A, it is particularly important to use a formula that compensates largely, if not entirely, for the effect of the lead angle, especially in all gage and precision work. The effect of the lead angle on the position of the wires and upon the resulting measurement M is much greater in a 29-degree thread than in a higher thread angle such, for example, as a 60-degree thread. This effect results from an increase in the cotangent of the thread angle as this angle becomes smaller. The reduction in the width of the thread groove in the normal plane due to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the lead angle causes a wire of given size to rest higher in the groove of a thread having a small thread angle *A* (like a 29-degree thread) than in the groove of a thread with a larger angle (like a 60-degree American Standard).

Acme Threads: Three-wire measurements of high accuracy require the use of Formula (4). For most measurements, however, Formula (2) or (3) gives satisfactory results. The table on page 2135 lists suitable wire sizes for use in Formulas (2) and (4).

Values of Constants Used in Formulas for Measuring Pitch Diameters of Screws by the Three-wire System

No. of Threads per Inch	American Standard Unified and Sharp V-Thread 0.866025*P*	Whitworth Thread 0.9605*P*	No. of Threads per Inch	American Standard Unified and Sharp V-Thread 0.866025*P*	Whitworth Thread 0.9605*P*
2¼	0.38490	0.42689	18	0.04811	0.05336
2⅜	0.36464	0.40442	20	0.04330	0.04803
2½	0.34641	0.38420	22	0.03936	0.04366
2⅝	0.32992	0.36590	24	0.03608	0.04002
2¾	0.31492	0.34927	26	0.03331	0.03694
2⅞	0.30123	0.33409	28	0.03093	0.03430
3	0.28868	0.32017	30	0.02887	0.03202
3¼	0.26647	0.29554	32	0.02706	0.03002
3½	0.24744	0.27443	34	0.02547	0.02825
4	0.21651	0.24013	36	0.02406	0.02668
4½	0.19245	0.21344	38	0.02279	0.02528
5	0.17321	0.19210	40	0.02165	0.02401
5½	0.15746	0.17464	42	0.02062	0.02287
6	0.14434	0.16008	44	0.01968	0.02183
7	0.12372	0.13721	46	0.01883	0.02088
8	0.10825	0.12006	48	0.01804	0.02001
9	0.09623	0.10672	50	0.01732	0.01921
10	0.08660	0.09605	52	0.01665	0.01847
11	0.07873	0.08732	56	0.01546	0.01715
12	0.07217	0.08004	60	0.01443	0.01601
13	0.06662	0.07388	64	0.01353	0.01501
14	0.06186	0.06861	68	0.01274	0.01412
15	0.05774	0.06403	72	0.01203	0.01334
16	0.05413	0.06003	80	0.01083	0.01201

Constants Used for Measuring Pitch Diameters of Metric Screws by the Three-wire System

Pitch in mm	0.866025*P* in Inches	*W* in Inches	Pitch in mm	0.866025*P* in Inches	*W* in Inches	Pitch in mm	0.866025*P* in Inches	*W* in Inches
0.2	0.00682	0.00455	0.75	0.02557	0.01705	3.5	0.11933	0.07956
0.25	0.00852	0.00568	0.8	0.02728	0.01818	4	0.13638	0.09092
0.3	0.01023	0.00682	1	0.03410	0.02273	4.5	0.15343	0.10229
0.35	0.01193	0.00796	1.25	0.04262	0.02841	5	0.17048	0.11365
0.4	0.01364	0.00909	1.5	0.05114	0.03410	5.5	0.18753	0.12502
0.45	0.01534	0.01023	1.75	0.05967	0.03978	6	0.20457	0.13638
0.5	0.01705	0.01137	2	0.06819	0.04546	8	0.30686	0.18184
0.6	0.02046	0.01364	2.5	0.08524	0.05683	…	…	…
0.7	0.02387	0.01591	3	0.10229	0.06819	…	…	…

This table may be used for American National Standard Metric Threads. The formulas for American Standard Unified Threads on page 2128 are used. In the table above, the values of 0.866025*P* and *W* are in inches so that the values for *E* and *M* calculated from the formulas on page 2128 are also in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Dimensions Over Wires of Given Diameter for Checking Screw Threads of American National Form (US Standard) and the V-Form

Dia. of Thread	No. of Threads per Inch	Wire Dia. Used	Dimension over Wires		Dia. of Thread	No. of Threads per Inch	Wire Dia. Used	Dimension over Wires	
			V-Thread	US Thread				V-Thread	US Thread
1/4	18	0.035	0.2588	0.2708	7/8	8	0.090	0.9285	0.9556
1/4	20	0.035	0.2684	0.2792	7/8	9	0.090	0.9525	0.9766
1/4	22	0.035	0.2763	0.2861	7/8	10	0.090	0.9718	0.9935
1/4	24	0.035	0.2828	0.2919	15/16	8	0.090	0.9910	1.0181
5/16	18	0.035	0.3213	0.3333	15/16	9	0.090	1.0150	1.0391
5/16	20	0.035	0.3309	0.3417	1	8	0.090	1.0535	1.0806
5/16	22	0.035	0.3388	0.3486	1	9	0.090	1.0775	1.1016
5/16	24	0.035	0.3453	0.3544	1 1/8	7	0.090	1.1476	1.1785
3/8	16	0.040	0.3867	0.4003	1 1/4	7	0.090	1.2726	1.3035
3/8	18	0.040	0.3988	0.4108	1 3/8	6	0.150	1.5363	1.5724
3/8	20	0.040	0.4084	0.4192	1 1/2	6	0.150	1.6613	1.6974
7/16	14	0.050	0.4638	0.4793	1 5/8	5 1/2	0.150	1.7601	1.7995
7/16	16	0.050	0.4792	0.4928	1 3/4	5	0.150	1.8536	1.8969
1/2	12	0.050	0.5057	0.5237	1 7/8	5	0.150	1.9786	2.0219
1/2	13	0.050	0.5168	0.5334	2	4 1/2	0.150	2.0651	2.1132
1/2	14	0.050	0.5263	0.5418	2 1/4	4 1/2	0.150	2.3151	2.3632
9/16	12	0.050	0.5682	0.5862	2 1/2	4	0.150	2.5170	2.5711
9/16	14	0.050	0.5888	0.6043	2 3/4	4	0.150	2.7670	2.28211
5/8	10	0.070	0.6618	0.6835	3	3 1/2	0.200	3.1051	3.1670
5/8	11	0.070	0.6775	0.6972	3 1/4	3 1/2	0.200	3.3551	3.4170
5/8	12	0.070	0.6907	0.7087	3 1/2	3 1/4	0.250	3.7171	3.7837
11/16	10	0.070	0.7243	0.7460	3 3/4	3	0.250	3.9226	3.9948
11/16	11	0.070	0.7400	0.7597	4	3	0.250	4.1726	4.2448
3/4	10	0.070	0.7868	0.8085	4 1/4	2 7/8	0.250	4.3975	4.4729
3/4	11	0.070	0.8025	0.8222	4 1/2	2 3/4	0.250	4.6202	4.6989
3/4	12	0.070	0.8157	0.8337	4 3/4	2 5/8	0.250	4.8402	4.9227
13/16	9	0.070	0.8300	0.8541	5	2 1/2	0.250	5.0572	5.1438
13/16	10	0.070	0.8493	0.8710	…	…	…	…	…

Buckingham Simplified Formula which Includes Effect of Lead Angle.—The Formula (3) which follows gives very accurate results for the lower lead angles in determining measurement *M*. However, if extreme accuracy is essential, it may be advisable to use the involute helicoid formulas as explained later.

$$M = E + W(1 + \sin A_n) \quad (3) \qquad \text{where} \qquad W = \frac{T \times \cos B}{\cos A_n} \quad (3a)$$

Theoretically correct equations for determining measurement *M* are complex and cumbersome to apply. Formula (3) combines simplicity with a degree of accuracy which meets all but the most exacting requirements, particularly for lead angles below 8 or 10 degrees and the higher thread angles. However, the wire diameter used in Formula (3) must conform to that obtained by Formula (3a) to permit a direct solution or one not involving indeterminate equations and successive trials.

Application of Buckingham Formula: In the application of Formula (3) to screw or worm threads, two general cases are to be considered.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table for Measuring Whitworth Standard Threads by the Three-wire Method

Dia. of Thread	No. of Threads per Inch	Dia. of Wire Used	Dia. Measured over Wires	Dia. of Thread	No. of Threads per Inch	Dia. of Wire Used	Dia. Measured over Wires
1/8	40	0.018	0.1420	2 1/4	4	0.150	2.3247
3/16	24	0.030	0.2158	2 3/8	4	0.150	2.4497
1/4	20	0.035	0.2808	2 1/2	4	0.150	2.5747
5/16	18	0.040	0.3502	2 5/8	4	0.150	2.6997
3/8	16	0.040	0.4015	2 3/4	3 1/2	0.200	2.9257
7/16	14	0.050	0.4815	2 7/8	3 1/2	0.200	3.0507
1/2	12	0.050	0.5249	3	3 1/2	0.200	3.1757
9/16	12	0.050	0.5874	3 1/8	3 1/2	0.200	3.3007
5/8	11	0.070	0.7011	3 1/4	3 1/4	0.200	3.3905
11/16	11	0.070	0.7636	3 3/8	3 1/4	0.200	3.5155
3/4	10	0.070	0.8115	3 1/2	3 1/4	0.200	3.6405
13/16	10	0.070	0.8740	3 5/8	3 1/4	0.200	3.7655
7/8	9	0.070	0.9187	3 3/4	3	0.200	3.8495
15/16	9	0.070	0.9812	3 7/8	3	0.200	3.9745
1	8	0.090	1.0848	4	3	0.200	4.0995
1 1/16	8	0.090	1.1473	4 1/8	3	0.200	4.2245
1 1/8	7	0.090	1.1812	4 1/4	2 7/8	0.250	4.4846
1 3/16	7	0.090	1.2437	4 3/8	2 7/8	0.250	4.6096
1 1/4	7	0.090	1.3062	4 1/2	2 7/8	0.250	4.7346
1 5/16	7	0.090	1.3687	4 5/8	2 7/8	0.250	4.8596
1 3/8	6	0.120	1.4881	4 3/4	2 3/4	0.250	4.9593
1 7/16	6	0.120	1.5506	4 7/8	2 3/4	0.250	5.0843
1 1/2	6	0.120	1.6131	5	2 3/4	0.250	5.2093
1 9/16	6	0.120	1.6756	5 1/8	2 3/4	0.250	5.3343
1 5/8	5	0.120	1.6847	5 1/4	2 5/8	0.250	5.4316
1 11/16	5	0.120	1.7472	5 3/8	2 5/8	0.250	5.5566
1 3/4	5	0.120	1.8097	5 1/2	2 5/8	0.250	5.6816
1 13/16	5	0.120	1.8722	5 5/8	2 5/8	0.250	5.8066
1 7/8	4 1/2	0.150	1.9942	5 3/4	2 1/2	0.250	5.9011
1 15/16	4 1/2	0.150	2.0567	5 7/8	2 1/2	0.250	6.0261
2	4 1/2	0.150	2.1192	6	2 1/2	0.250	6.1511
2 1/8	4 1/2	0.150	2.2442	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are given in inches.

Case 1: The screw thread or worm is to be milled with a cutter having an included angle equal to the nominal or standard thread angle that is assumed to be the angle in the axial plane. For example, a 60-degree cutter is to be used for milling a thread. In this case, the thread angle in the plane of the axis will exceed 60 degrees by an amount increasing with the lead angle. This variation from the standard angle may be of little or no practical importance if the lead angle is small or if the mating nut (or teeth in worm gearing) is formed to suit the thread as milled.

Case 2: The screw thread or worm is to be milled with a cutter reduced to whatever normal angle is equivalent to the standard thread angle in the axial plane. For example, a 29-degree Acme thread is to be milled with a cutter having some angle smaller than 29 degrees (the reduction increasing with the lead angle) to make the thread angle standard in the plane of the axis. Theoretically, the milling cutter angle should always be corrected to suit the normal angle; but if the lead angle is small, such correction may be unnecessary.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If the thread is cut in a lathe to the standard angle as measured in the axial plane, Case 2 applies in determining the pin size W and the overall measurement M.

In solving all problems under Case 1, angle A_n used in Formulas (3) and (3a) equals one-half the included angle of the milling cutter.

When Case 2 applies, angle A_n for milled threads also equals one-half the included angle of the cutter, but the cutter angle is reduced and is determined as follows:

$$\tan A_n = \tan A \times \cos B$$

The included angle of the cutter or the normal included angle of the thread groove = $2A_n$. Examples 1 and 2, which follow, illustrate Cases 1 and 2.

Example 1 (Case 1): Take, for example, an Acme screw thread that is milled with a cutter having an included angle of 29 degrees; consequently, the angle of the thread exceeds 29 degrees in the axial section.

The outside or major diameter is 3 inches; the pitch, $\frac{1}{2}$ inch; the lead, 1 inch; the number of threads or "starts," 2. Find pin size W and measurement M.

Pitch diameter $E = 2.75$; $T = 0.25$; $L = 1.0$; $A_n = 14.50°$ $\tan A_n = 0.258618$; $\sin A_n = 0.25038$; and $\cos A_n = 0.968148$.

$$\tan B = \frac{1.0}{3.1416 \times 2.75} = 0.115749 \qquad B = 6.6025°$$

$$W = \frac{0.25 \times 0.993368}{0.968148} = 0.25651 \text{ inch}$$

$$M = 2.75 + 0.25651 \times (1 + 0.25038) = 3.0707 \text{ inches}$$

Note: This value of M is only 0.0001 inch larger than that obtained by using the very accurate involute helicoid Formula (4) discussed on the following page.

Example 2 (Case 2): A triple-threaded worm has a pitch diameter of 2.481 inches, pitch of 1.5 inches, lead of 4.5 inches, lead angle of 30 degrees, and nominal thread angle of 60 degrees in the axial plane. Milling cutter angle is to be reduced. $T = 0.75$ inch; $\cos B = 0.866025$; and $\tan A = 0.57735$. Again use Formula (3) to see if it is applicable.

$\tan A_n = \tan A \times \cos B = 0.57735 \times 0.866025 = 0.5000$; hence $A_n = 26.565°$, making the included cutter angle 53.13°, thus $\cos A_n = 0.89443$ and $\sin A_n = 0.44721$.

$$W = \frac{0.75 \times 0.866025}{0.89443} = 0.72618 \text{ inch}$$

$$M = 2.481 + 0.72618 \times (1 + 0.44721) = 3.532 \text{ inches}$$

Note: If the value of measurement M is determined by using the following Formula (4) it will be found that $M = 3.515+$ inches; hence the error equals $3.532 - 3.515 = 0.017$ inch approximately, which indicates that Formula (3) is not accurate enough here. The application of this simpler Formula (3) will depend upon the lead angle and thread angle (as previously explained) and upon the class of work.

Buckingham Exact Involute Helicoid Formula Applied to Screw Threads.—When extreme accuracy is required in finding measurement M for obtaining a given pitch diameter, the equations that follow, although somewhat cumbersome to apply, have the merit of providing a direct and very accurate solution; consequently, they are preferable to the indeterminate equations and successive trial solutions heretofore employed when extreme precision is required. These equations are exact for involute helical gears and, consequently, give theoretically correct results when applied to a screw thread of the involute helicoidal form; they also give very close approximations for threads having intermediate profiles.

Helical Gear Equation Applied to Screw Thread Measurement: In applying the helical gear equations to a screw thread, use either the axial or normal thread angle and the lead angle of the helix. To keep the solution on a practical basis, either thread angle A or A_n, as the case may be, is assumed to equal the cutter angle of a milled thread. Actually, the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

profile of a milled thread will have some curvature in both axial and normal sections; hence angles A and A_n represent the angular approximations of these slightly curved profiles. The equations that follow give the values needed to solve the screw thread problem as a helical gear problem.

$$M = \frac{2R_b}{\cos G} + W \tag{4}$$

$$\tan F = \frac{\tan A}{\tan B} = \frac{\tan A_n}{\sin B} \tag{4a}$$

$$R_b = \frac{E}{2}\cos F \tag{4b}$$

$$T_a = \frac{T}{\tan B} \tag{4c}$$

$$\tan H_b = \cos F \times \tan H \tag{4d}$$

$$\text{inv } G = \frac{T_a}{E} + \text{inv } F + \frac{W}{2R_b \cos H_b} - \frac{\pi}{S} \tag{4e}$$

The tables of involute functions starting on page 112 provide values for angles from 14 to 51 degrees, used for gear calculations. The formula for involute functions on page 111 may be used to extend this table as required.

Example: To illustrate the application of Formula (4) and the supplementary formulas, assume that the number of starts $S = 6$; pitch diameter $E = 0.6250$; normal thread angle $A_n = 20°$; lead of thread $L = 0.864$ inch; $T = 0.072$; $W = 0.07013$ inch.

$$\tan B = \frac{L}{\pi E} = \frac{0.864}{1.9635} = 0.44003 \quad B = 23.751°$$

$$\text{Helix angle } H = 90° - 23.751° = 66.249°$$

$$\tan F = \frac{\tan A_n}{\sin B} = \frac{0.36397}{0.40276} = 0.90369 \quad F = 42.104°$$

$$R_b = \frac{E}{2}\cos F = \frac{0.6250}{2} \times 0.74193 = 0.23185$$

$$T_a = \frac{T}{\tan B} = \frac{0.072}{0.44003} = 0.16362$$

$$\tan H_b = \cos F \tan H = 0.74193 \times 2.27257 = 1.68609 \quad H_b = 59.328°$$

The involute function of G is found next by Formula (4e).

$$\text{inv } G = \frac{0.16362}{0.625} + 0.16884 + \frac{0.07013}{2 \times 0.23185 \times 0.51012} - \frac{3.1416}{6} = 0.20351$$

Since 0.20351 is outside the values for involute functions given in the tables on pages 112 through 115 use the formula for involute functions on page 111 to extend these tables as required. It will be found that 44 deg. 21 min. or 44.350 degrees is the angular equivalent of 0.20351; hence, $G = 44.350$ degrees.

$$M = \frac{2R_b}{\cos G} + W = \frac{2 \times 0.23185}{0.71508} + 0.07013 = 0.71859 \text{ inch}$$

Accuracy of Formulas (3) and (4) Compared.—With the involute helicoid Formula (4) any wire size that makes contact with the flanks of the thread may be used; however, in the preceding example, the wire diameter W was obtained by Formula (3a) in order to compare Formula (4) with (3) . If Example (3) is solved by Formula (3) , $M = 0.71912$; hence the difference between the values of M obtained with Formulas (3) and (4) equals 0.71912 - 0.71859 = 0.00053 inch. The included thread angle in this case is 40 degrees. If

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas (3) and (4) are applied to a 29-degree thread, the difference in measurements M or the error resulting from the use of Formulas (3) will be larger. For example, with an Acme thread having a lead angle of about 34 degrees, the difference in values of M obtained by the two formulas equals 0.0008 inch.

Three-Wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Thread Pitch Diameter.—For single- and multiple-start Acme and Stub Acme threads having lead angles of less than 5 degrees, the approximate three-wire formula given on page 2126 and the best wire size taken from the table on page 2135 may be used.

Multiple-start Acme and Stub Acme threads commonly have a lead angle of greater than 5 degrees. For these, a direct determination of the actual pitch diameter is obtained by using the formula: $E = M - (C + c)$ in conjunction with the table on page 2136. To enter the table, the lead angle B of the thread to be measured must be known. It is found by the formula: $\tan B = L \div 3.1416E_1$ where L is the lead of the thread and E_1 is the nominal pitch diameter. The best wire size is now found by taking the value of w_1 as given in the table for lead angle B, with interpolation, and dividing it by the number of threads per inch. The value of $(C + c)_1$ given in the table for lead angle B is also divided by the number of threads per inch to get $(C + c)$. Using the best size wires, the actual measurement over wires M is made and the actual pitch diameter E found by using the formula: $E = M - (C + c)$.

Example: For a 5 tpi, 4-start Acme thread with a 13.952° lead angle, using three 0.10024-inch wires, $M = 1.1498$ inches, hence $E = 1.1498 - 0.1248 = 1.0250$ inches.

Under certain conditions, a wire may contact one thread flank at two points, and it is then advisable to substitute balls of the same diameter as the wires.

Checking Thickness of Acme Screw Threads.—In some instances it may be preferable to check the thread thickness instead of the pitch diameter, especially if there is a thread thickness tolerance.

A direct method, applicable to the larger pitches, is to use a vernier gear-tooth caliper for measuring the thickness in the *normal* plane of the thread. This measurement, for an American Standard General Purpose Acme thread, should be made at a distance below the *basic* outside diameter equal to $p/4$. The thickness at this basic pitch-line depth and in the axial plane should be $p/2 - 0.259 \times$ the pitch diameter allowance from the table on page 2056 with a tolerance of *minus* $0.259 \times$ the pitch diameter tolerance from the table on page 2061. The thickness in the normal plane or plane of measurement is equal to the thickness in the axial plane multiplied by the cosine of the helix angle. The helix angle may be determined from the formula:

$$\text{tangent of helix angle} = \text{lead of thread} \div (3.1416 \times \text{pitch diameter})$$

Three-Wire Method for Checking Thickness of Acme Threads.—The application of the 3-wire method of checking the thickness of an Acme screw thread is included in the Report of the National Screw Thread Commission. In applying the 3-wire method for checking thread thickness, the procedure is the same as in checking pitch diameter (see *Three-Wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Thread Pitch Diameter*), although a different formula is required. Assume that D = basic major diameter of screw; M = measurement over wires; W = diameter of wires; S = tangent of helix angle at pitch line; P = pitch; T = thread thickness at depth equal to $0.25P$.

$$T = 1.12931 \times P + 0.25862 \times (M - D) - W \times (1.29152 + 0.48407S^2)$$

This formula transposed to show the correct measurement M equivalent to a given required thread thickness is as follows:

$$M = D + \frac{W \times (1.29152 + 0.48407S^2) + T - 1.12931 \times P}{0.25862}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wire Sizes for Three-Wire Measurement of Acme Threads with Lead Angles of Less than 5 Degrees

Threads per Inch	Best Size	Max.	Min.	Threads per Inch	Best Size	Max.	Min.
1	0.51645	0.65001	0.48726	5	0.10329	0.13000	0.09745
1⅓	0.38734	0.48751	0.36545	6	0.08608	0.10834	0.08121
1½	0.34430	0.43334	0.32484	8	0.06456	0.08125	0.06091
2	0.25822	0.32501	0.24363	10	0.05164	0.06500	0.04873
2½	0.20658	0.26001	0.19491	12	0.04304	0.05417	0.04061
3	0.17215	0.21667	0.16242	14	0.03689	0.04643	0.03480
4	0.12911	0.16250	0.12182	16	0.03228	0.04063	0.03045

Wire sizes are based upon zero helix angle. Best size = 0.51645 × pitch; maximum size = 0.650013 × pitch; minimum size = 0.487263 × pitch.

Example: An Acme General Purpose thread, Class 2G, has a 5-inch basic major diameter, 0.5-inch pitch, and 1-inch lead (double thread). Assume the wire size is 0.258 inch. Determine measurement M for a thread thickness T at the basic pitch line of 0.2454 inch. (T is the maximum thickness at the basic pitch line and equals $0.5P$, the basic thickness, $-0.259 \times$ allowance from Table 4, page 2061.)

$$M = 5 + \frac{0.258 \times [1.29152 + 0.48407 \times (0.06701)^2] + 0.2454 - 1.12931 \times 0.5}{0.25862}$$

$$= 5.056 \text{inches}$$

Testing Angle of Thread by Three-Wire Method.—The error in the angle of a thread may be determined by using sets of wires of two diameters, the measurement over the two sets of wires being followed by calculations to determine the amount of error, assuming that the angle cannot be tested by comparison with a standard plug gage, known to be correct. The diameter of the small wires for the American Standard thread is usually about 0.6 times the pitch and the diameter of the large wires, about 0.9 times the pitch. The total difference between the measurements over the large and small sets of wires is first determined. If the thread is an American Standard or any other form having an included angle of 60 degrees, the difference between the two measurements should equal three times the difference between the diameters of the wires used. Thus, if the wires are 0.116 and 0.076 inch in diameter, respectively, the difference equals 0.116 − 0.076 = 0.040 inch. Therefore, the difference between the micrometer readings for a standard angle of 60 degrees equals 3 × 0.040 = 0.120 inch for this example. If the angle is incorrect, the amount of error may be determined by the following formula, which applies to any thread regardless of angle:

$$\sin a = \frac{A}{B - A}$$

where A = difference in diameters of the large and small wires used
B = total difference between the measurements over the large and small wires
a = one-half the included thread angle

Example: The diameter of the large wires used for testing the angle of a thread is 0.116 inch and of the small wires 0.076 inch. The measurement over the two sets of wires shows a total difference of 0.122 inch instead of the correct difference, 0.120 inch, for a standard angle of 60 degrees when using the sizes of wires mentioned. The amount of error is determined as follows:

$$\sin a = \frac{0.040}{0.122 - 0.040} = \frac{0.040}{0.082} = 0.4878$$

A table of sines shows that this value (0.4878) is the sine of 29 degrees 12 minutes, approximately. Therefore, the angle of the thread is 58 degrees 24 minutes or 1 degree 36 minutes less than the standard angle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Best Wire Diameters and Constants for Three-wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Threads with Large Lead Angles, 1-inch Axial Pitch

Lead angle, B, deg.	1-start threads		2-start threads		Lead angle, B, deg.	2-start threads		3-start threads	
	w_1	$(C+c)_1$	w_1	$(C+c)_1$		w_1	$(C+c)_1$	w_1	$(C+c)_1$
5.0	0.51450	0.64311	0.51443	0.64290	10.0	0.50864	0.63518	0.50847	0.63463
5.1	0.51442	0.64301	0.51435	0.64279	10.1	0.50849	0.63498	0.50381	0.63442
5.2	0.51435	0.64291	0.51427	0.64268	10.2	0.50834	0.63478	0.50815	0.63420
5.3	0.51427	0.64282	0.51418	0.64256	10.3	0.50818	0.63457	0.50800	0.63399
5.4	0.51419	0.64272	0.51410	0.64245	10.4	0.50802	0.63436	0.50784	0.63378
5.5	0.51411	0.64261	0.51401	0.64233	10.5	0.40786	0.63416	0.50768	0.63356
5.6	0.51403	0.64251	0.51393	0.64221	10.6	0.50771	0.63395	0.50751	0.63333
5.7	0.51395	0.64240	0.51384	0.64209	10.7	0.50755	0.63375	0.50735	0.63311
5.8	0.51386	0.64229	0.51375	0.64196	10.8	0.50739	0.53354	0.50718	0.63288
5.9	0.51377	0.64218	0.51366	0.64184	10.9	0.50723	0.63333	0.50701	0.63265
6.0	0.51368	0.64207	0.51356	0.64171	11.0	0.50707	0.63313	0.50684	0.63242
6.1	0.51359	0.64195	0.51346	0.64157	11.1	0.50691	0.63292	0.50667	0.63219
6.2	0.51350	0.64184	0.51336	0.64144	11.2	0.50674	0.63271	0.50649	0.63195
6.3	0.51340	0.64172	0.41327	0.64131	11.3	0.50658	0.63250	0.50632	0.63172
6.4	0.51330	0.64160	0.51317	0.64117	11.4	0.50641	0.63228	0.50615	0.63149
6.5	0.51320	0.64147	0.51306	0.64103	11.5	0.50623	0.63206	0.50597	0.63126
6.6	0.51310	0.64134	0.51296	0.64089	11.6	0.50606	0.63184	0.50579	0.63102
6.7	0.51300	0.64122	0.51285	0.64075	11.7	0.50589	0.63162	0.50561	0.63078
6.8	0.51290	0.64110	0.51275	0.64061	11.8	0.50571	0.63140	0.50544	0.63055
6.9	0.51280	0.64097	0.51264	0.64046	11.9	0.50553	0.63117	0.50526	0.63031
7.0	0.51270	0.64085	0.51254	0.64032	12.0	0.50535	0.63095	0.50507	0.63006
7.1	0.51259	0.64072	0.51243	0.64017	12.1	0.50517	0.63072	0.50488	0.62981
7.2	0.51249	0.64060	0.51232	0.64002	12.2	0.50500	0.63050	0.50470	0.62956
7.3	0.51238	0.64047	0.51221	0.63987	12.3	0.50482	0.63027	0.50451	0.62931
7.4	0.51227	0.64034	0.51209	0.63972	12.4	0.50464	0.63004	0.50432	0.62906
7.5	0.51217	0.64021	0.51198	0.63957	12.5	0.50445	0.62981	0.50413	0.62881
7.6	0.51206	0.64008	0.51186	0.63941	12.6	0.50427	0.62958	0.50394	0.62856
7.7	0.51196	0.63996	0.51174	0.63925	12.7	0.50408	0.62934	0.50375	0.62830
7.8	0.51186	0.63983	0.51162	0.63909	12.8	0.50389	0.62911	0.50356	0.62805
7.9	0.51175	0.63970	0.51150	0.63892	12.9	0.50371	0.62888	0.50336	0.62779
8.0	0.51164	0.63957	0.51138	0.63876	13.0	0.50352	0.62865		
8.1	0.51153	0.63944	0.51125	0.63859	13.1	0.50333	0.62841		
8.2	0.51142	0.63930	0.51113	0.63843	13.2	0.50313	0.62817		
8.3	0.51130	0.63916	0.51101	0.63827	13.3	0.50293	0.62792		
8.4	0.51118	0.63902	0.51088	0.63810	13.4	0.50274	0.62778		
8.5	0.51105	0.63887	0.51075	0.63793	13.5	0.50254	0.62743		
8.6	0.51093	0.63873	0.51062	0.63775	13.6	0.50234	0.62718		
8.7	0.51081	0.63859	0.51049	0.63758	13.7	0.50215	0.62694	For these 3-start thread values see table on following page.	
8.8	0.51069	0.63845	0.51035	0.63740	13.8	0.50195	0.62670		
8.9	0.51057	0.63831	0.51022	0.63722	13.9	0.50175	0.62645		
9.0	0.51044	0.63817	0.51008	0.63704	14.0	0.50155	0.62621		
9.1	0.51032	0.63802	0.50993	0.63685	14.1	0.50135	0.62596		
9.2	0.51019	0.63788	0.50979	0.63667	14.2	0.50115	0.62571		
9.3	0.51006	0.63774	0.50965	0.63649	14.3	0.50094	0.62546		
9.4	0.50993	0.63759	0.50951	0.63630	14.4	0.50073	0.62520		
9.5	0.50981	0.63744	0.50937	0.63612	14.5	0.50051	0.62494		
9.6	0.50968	0.63730	0.50922	0.63593	14.6	0.50030	0.62468		
9.7	0.50955	0.63715	0.50908	0.63574	14.7	0.50009	0.62442		
9.8	0.50941	0.63700	0.50893	0.63555	14.8	0.49988	0.62417		
9.9	0.50927	0.63685	0.50879	0.63537	14.9	0.49966	0.62391		
10.0	0.50913	0.63670	0.50864	0.63518	15.0	0.49945	0.62365		

All dimensions are in inches.

Values given for w_1 and $(C+c)_1$ in table are for 1-inch pitch axial threads. For other pitches, divide table values by number of threads per inch.

Courtesy of Van Keuren Co.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Best Wire Diameters and Constants for Three-wire Measurement of Acme and Stub Acme Threads with Large Lead Angles—1-inch Axial Pitch

Lead angle, B, deg.	3-start threads		4-start threads		Lead angle, B, deg.	3-start threads		4-start threads	
	w_1	$(C+c)_1$	w_1	$(C+c)_1$		w_1	$(C+c)_1$	w_1	$(C+c)_1$
13.0	0.50316	0.62752	0.50297	0.62694	18.0	0.49154	0.61250	0.49109	0.61109
13.1	0.50295	0.62725	0.50277	0.62667	18.1	0.49127	0.61216	0.49082	0.61073
13.2	0.50275	0.62699	0.50256	0.62639	18.2	0.49101	0.61182	0.49054	0.61037
13.3	0.50255	0.62672	0.50235	0.62611	18.3	0.49074	0.61148	0.49027	0.61001
13.4	0.50235	0.62646	0.50215	0.62583	18.4	0.49047	0.61114	0.48999	0.60964
13.5	0.50214	0.62619	0.50194	0.62555	18.5	0.49020	0.61080	0.48971	0.69928
13.6	0.50194	0.62592	0.50173	0.62526	18.6	0.48992	0.61045	0.48943	0.60981
13.7	0.50173	0.62564	0.50152	0.62498	18.7	0.48965	0.61011	0.48915	0.60854
13.8	0.50152	0.62537	0.50131	0.62469	18.8	0.48938	0.60976	0.48887	0.60817
13.9	0.50131	0.62509	0.50109	0.62440	18.9	0.48910	0.60941	0.48859	0.60780
14.0	0.50110	0.62481	0.50087	0.62411	19.0	0.48882	0.60906	0.48830	0.60742
14.1	0.50089	0.62453	0.50065	0.62381	19.1	0.48854	0.60871	0.48800	0.60704
14.2	0.50068	0.62425	0.50043	0.62351	19.2	0.48825	0.60835	0.48771	0.60666
14.3	0.50046	0.62397	0.50021	0.62321	19.3	0.48797	0.60799	0.48742	0.60628
14.4	0.50024	0.62368	0.49999	0.62291	19.4	0.48769	0.60764	0.48713	0.60590
14.5	0.50003	0.62340	0.49977	0.62262	19.5	0.48741	0.60729	0.48684	0.60552
14.6	0.49981	0.62312	0.49955	0.62232	19.6	0.48712	0.60693	0.48655	0.60514
14.7	0.49959	0.62883	0.49932	0.62202	19.7	0.48638	0.60657	0.48625	0.60475
14.8	0.49936	0.62253	0.49910	0.62172	19.8	0.48655	0.60621	0.48596	0.60437
14.9	0.49914	0.62224	0.49887	0.62141	19.9	0.48626	0.60585	0.48566	0.60398
15.0	0.49891	0.62195	0.49864	0.62110	20.0	0.48597	0.60549	0.48536	0.60359
15.1	0.49869	0.62166	0.49842	0.62080	20.1	…	…	0.48506	0.60320
15.2	0.49846	0.62137	0.49819	0.62049	20.2	…	…	0.48476	0.60281
15.3	0.49824	0.62108	0.49795	0.62017	20.3	…	…	0.48445	0.60241
15.4	0.42801	0.62078	0.49771	0.61985	20.4	…	…	0.48415	0.60202
15.5	0.49778	0.62048	0.49747	0.61953	20.5	…	…	0.48384	0.60162
15.6	0.49754	0.62017	0.49723	0.61921	20.6	…	…	0.48354	0.60123
15.7	0.49731	0.61987	0.49699	0.61889	20.7	…	…	0.48323	0.60083
15.8	0.49707	0.61956	0.49675	0.61857	20.8	…	…	0.48292	0.60042
15.9	0.49683	0.61926	0.49651	0.61825	20.9	…	…	0.48261	0.60002
16.0	0.49659	0.61895	0.49627	0.61793	21.0	…	…	0.48230	0.59961
16.1	0.49635	0.61864	0.49602	0.61760	21.1	…	…	0.48198	0.49920
16.2	0.49611	0.61833	0.49577	0.61727	21.2	…	…	0.481166	0.59879
16.3	0.49586	0.61801	0.49552	0.61694	21.3	…	…	0.48134	0.59838
16.4	0.49562	0.61770	0.49527	0.61661	21.4	…	…	0.48103	0.59797
16.5	0.49537	0.61738	0.49502	0.61628	21.5	…	…	0.48701	0.59756
16.6	0.49512	0.61706	0.49476	0.61594	21.6	…	…	0.48040	0.59715
16.7	0.49488	0.61675	0.49451	0.61560	21.7	…	…	0.48008	0.59674
16.8	0.40463	0.61643	0.49425	0.61526	21.8	…	…	0.47975	0.59632
16.9	0.49438	0.61611	0.49400	0.61492	21.9	…	…	0.47943	0.59590
17.0	0.49414	0.61580	0.49375	0.61458	22.0	…	…	0.47910	0.59548
17.1	0.49389	0.61548	0.49349	0.61424	22.1	…	…	0.47878	0.59507
17.2	0.49363	0.61515	0.49322	0.61389	22.2	…	…	0.47845	0.59465
17.3	0.49337	0.61482	0.49296	0.61354	22.3	…	…	0.47812	0.59422
17.4	0.49311	0.61449	0.49269	0.61319	22.4	…	…	0.47778	0.59379
17.5	0.49285	0.61416	0.49243	0.61284	22.5	…	…	0.47745	0.59336
17.6	0.49259	0.61383	0.49217	0.61250	22.6	…	…	0.47711	0.52993
17.7	0.49233	0.61350	0.49191	0.61215	22.7	…	…	0.47677	0.59250
17.8	0.49206	0.61316	0.49164	0.61180	22.8	…	…	0.47643	0.59207
17.9	0.49180	0.61283	0.49137	0.61144	22.9	…	…	0.47610	0.59164
…	…	…	…	…	23.0	…	…	0.47577	0.59121

All dimensions are in inches.

Values given for w_1 and $(C+c)_1$ in table are for 1-inch pitch axial threads. For other pitches divide table values by number of threads per inch.

Courtesy of Van Keuren Co.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Measuring Taper Screw Threads by Three-Wire Method.—When the 3-wire method is used in measuring a taper screw thread, the measurement is along a line that is not perpendicular to the axis of the screw thread, the inclination from the perpendicular equaling one-half the included angle of the taper. The formula that follows compensates for this inclination resulting from contact of the measuring instrument surfaces, with two wires on one side and one on the other. The taper thread is measured over the wires in the usual manner except that the single wire must be located in the thread at a point where the effective diameter is to be checked (as described more fully later). The formula shows the dimension equivalent to the correct pitch diameter at this given point. The general formula for taper screw threads follows:

$$M = \frac{E - (\cot a)/2N + W(1 + \csc a)}{\sec b}$$

where M = measurement over the 3 wires
E = pitch diameter
a = one-half the angle of the thread
N = number of threads per inch
W = diameter of wires; and
b = one-half the angle of taper.

This formula is not theoretically correct but it is accurate for screw threads having tapers of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot or less. This general formula can be simplified for a given thread angle and taper. The simplified formula following (in which P = pitch) is for an American National Standard pipe thread:

$$M = \frac{E - (0.866025 \times P) + 3 \times W}{1.00049}$$

Standard pitch diameters for pipe threads will be found in the section "American Pipe Threads," which also shows the location, or distance, of this pitch diameter from the end of the pipe. In using the formula for finding dimension M over the wires, the single wire is placed in whatever part of the thread groove locates it at the point where the pitch diameter is to be checked. The wire must be accurately located at this point. The other wires are then placed on each side of the thread that is diametrically opposite the single wire. If the pipe thread is straight or without taper,

$$M = E - (0.866025 \times P) + 3 \times W$$

Application of Formula to Taper Pipe Threads: To illustrate the use of the formula for taper threads, assume that dimension M is required for an American Standard 3-inch pipe thread gage. Table 1a starting on page 2090 shows that the 3-inch size has 8 threads per inch, or a pitch of 0.125 inch, and a pitch diameter at the gaging notch of 3.3885 inches. Assume that the wire diameter is 0.07217 inch: Then when the pitch diameter is correct

$$M = \frac{3.3885 - (0.866025 \times 0.125) + 3 \times 0.07217}{1.00049} = 3.495 \text{ inches}$$

Pitch Diameter Equivalent to a Given Measurement Over the Wires: The formula following may be used to check the pitch diameter at any point along a tapering thread when measurement M over wires of a given diameter is known. In this formula, E = the effective or pitch diameter at the position occupied by the single wire. The formula is not theoretically correct but gives very accurate results when applied to tapers of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch per foot or less.

$$E = 1.00049 \times M + (0.866025 \times P) - 3 \times W$$

Example: Measurement $M = 3.495$ inches at the gaging notch of a 3-inch pipe thread and the wire diameter = 0.07217 inch. Then

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$E = 1.00049 \times 3.495 + (0.866025 \times 0.125) - 3 \times 0.07217 = 3.3885 \text{ inches}$$

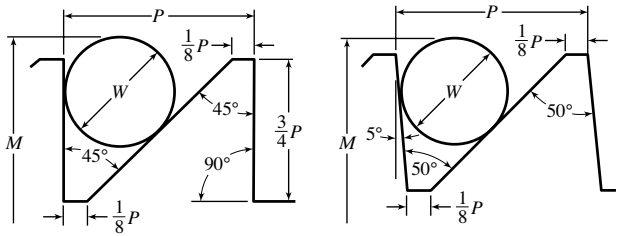
Pitch Diameter at Any Point Along Taper Screw Thread: When the pitch diameter in any position along a tapering thread is known, the pitch diameter at any other position may be determined as follows:

Multiply the distance (measured along the axis) between the location of the known pitch diameter and the location of the required pitch diameter, by the taper per inch or by 0.0625 for American National Standard pipe threads. Add this product to the known diameter, if the required diameter is at a large part of the taper, or subtract if the required diameter is smaller.

Example: The pitch diameter of a 3-inch American National Standard pipe thread is 3.3885 at the gaging notch. Determine the pitch diameter at the small end. The table starting on page 2090 shows that the distance between the gaging notch and the small end of a 3-inch pipe is 0.77 inch. Hence the pitch diameter at the small end = 3.3885 – (0.77 × 0.0625) = 3.3404 inches.

Three-Wire Method Applied to Buttress Threads.—The angles of buttress threads vary somewhat, especially on the front or load-resisting side. Formula (1), which follows, may be applied to any angles required. In this formula, M = measurement over wires when *pitch diameter* E is correct; A = included angle of thread and thread groove; a = angle of front face or load-resisting side, measured from a line perpendicular to screw thread axis; P = pitch of thread; and W = wire diameter.

$$M = E - \left[\frac{P}{\tan a + \tan(A - a)}\right] + W\left[1 + \cos\left(\frac{A}{2} - a\right) \times \csc\frac{A}{2}\right] \quad (1)$$



For given angles A and a, this general formula may be simplified as shown by Formulas (3) and (4). These simplified formulas contain constants with values depending upon angles A and a.

Wire Diameter: The wire diameter for obtaining pitch-line contact at the back of a buttress thread may be determined by the following general Formula (2):

$$W = P\left(\frac{\cos a}{1 + \cos A}\right) \quad (2)$$

45-Degree Buttress Thread: The buttress thread shown by the diagram at the left, has a front or load-resisting side that is perpendicular to the axis of the screw. Measurement M equivalent to a correct pitch diameter E may be determined by Formula (3):

$$M = E - P + (W \times 3.4142) \quad (3)$$

Wire diameter W for pitch-line contact at back of thread = 0.586 × pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

50-Degree Buttress Thread with Front-face Inclination of 5 Degrees: This buttress thread form is illustrated by the diagram at the right. Measurement M equivalent to the correct pitch diameter E may be determined by Formula (4):

$$M = E - (P \times 0.91955) + (W \times 3.2235) \quad (4)$$

Wire diameter W for pitch-line contact at back of thread = 0.606 × pitch. If the width of flat at crest and root = $\frac{1}{8}$ × pitch, depth = 0.69 × pitch.

American National Standard Buttress Threads ANSI/ASME B1.9-1973 (R2017): This buttress screw thread has an included thread angle of 52 degrees and a front face inclination of 7 degrees. Measurements M equivalent to a pitch diameter E may be determined by Formula (5):

$$M = E - 0.89064P + 3.15689W + c \quad (5)$$

The wire angle correction factor c is less than 0.0004 inch for recommended combinations of thread diameters and pitches and may be neglected. Use of wire diameter $W = 0.54147P$ is recommended.

Measurement of Pitch Diameter of Thread Ring Gages.—The application of direct methods of measurement to determine the pitch diameter of thread ring gages presents serious difficulties, particularly in securing proper contact pressure when a high degree of precision is required. The usual practice is to fit the ring gage to a master setting plug. When the thread ring gage is of correct lead, angle, and thread form, within close limits, this method is quite satisfactory and represents standard American practice. It is the only method available for small sizes of threads. For the larger sizes, various more or less satisfactory methods have been devised, but none of these have found wide application.

Screw Thread Gage Classification.—Screw thread gages are classified by their degree of accuracy, that is, by the amount of tolerance afforded the gage manufacturer and the wear allowance, if any.

There are also three classifications according to use: 1) Working gages for controlling production; 2) inspection gages for rejection or acceptance of the finished product; and 3) reference gages for determining the accuracy of the working and inspection gages.

Gaging Unified Screw Threads.—ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017) covers gaging methods for conformance of Unified Screw threads and provides the essential specifications for applicable gages required for unified inch screw threads.

The standard includes the following gages for *Product Internal Thread:*

GO Working Thread Plug Gage for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit.

NOT GO (HI) Thread Plug Gage for inspecting the NOT GO (HI) functional diameter limit.

Thread Snap Gage—GO Segments or Rolls for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit.

Thread Snap Gage—NOT GO (HI) Segments or Rolls for inspecting the NOT GO (HI) functional diameter limit.

Thread Snap Gages—Minimum Material: Pitch Diameter Cone Type and Vee and Thread Groove Diameter Type for inspecting the minimum-material limit pitch diameter.

Thread-Setting Solid Ring Gage for setting internal thread indicating and snap gages.

Plain Plug, Snap, and Indicating Gages for checking the minor diameter of internal threads.

Snap and Indicating Gages for checking the major diameter of internal threads.

Functional Indicating Thread Gage for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit and size and the NOT GO (HI) functional diameter limit and size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Minimum-Material Indicating Thread Gage for inspecting the minimum-material limit and size.

Indicating Runout Thread Gage for inspecting runout of the minor diameter to pitch diameter.

In addition to these gages for product internal threads, the Standard also covers differential gaging and such instruments as pitch micrometers, thread-measuring balls, optical comparator and toolmaker's microscope, profile tracing instrument, surface roughness measuring instrument, and roundness measuring equipment.

The Standard includes the following gages for *Product External Thread:*

GO Working Thread Ring Gage for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit.

NOT GO (LO) Thread Ring Gage for inspecting the NOT GO (LO) functional diameter limit.

Thread Snap Gage—GO Segments or Rolls for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit.

Thread Snap Gage—NOT GO (LO) Segments or Rolls for inspecting the NOT GO (LO) functional diameter limit.

Thread Snap Gages—Cone and Vee Type and Minimum Material Thread Groove Diameter Type for inspecting the minimum-material pitch diameter limit.

Plain Ring and Snap Gages for checking the major diameter.

Snap Gage for checking the minor diameter.

Functional Indicating Thread Gage for inspecting the maximum-material GO functional limit and size and the NOT GO (LO) functional diameter limit and size.

Minimum-Material Indicating Thread Gage for inspecting the minimum-material limit and size.

Indicating Runout Gage for inspecting the runout of the major diameter to the pitch diameter.

W Tolerance Thread-Setting Plug Gage for setting adjustable thread ring gages, checking solid thread ring gages, setting thread snap limit gages, and setting indicating thread gages.

Plain Check Plug Gage for Thread Ring Gage for verifying the minor diameter limits of thread ring gages after the thread rings have been properly set with the applicable thread-setting plug gages.

Indicating Plain Diameter Gage for checking the major diameter.

Indicating Gage for checking the minor diameter.

In addition to these gages for product external threads, the Standard also covers differential gaging and such instruments as thread micrometers, thread-measuring wires, optical comparator and toolmaker's microscope, profile tracing instrument, electromechanical lead tester, helical path attachment used with GO type thread indicating gage, helical path analyzer, surface roughness measuring equipment, and roundness measuring equipment.

The standard lists the following for use of Threaded and Plain Gages for verification of product internal threads:

Tolerance: Unless otherwise specified all thread gages which directly check the product thread shall be X tolerance for all classes.

GO Thread Plug Gages: GO thread plug gages must enter and pass through the full threaded length of the product freely. The GO thread plug gage is a cumulative check of all thread elements except the minor diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

NOT GO (HI) Thread Plug Gages: NOT GO (HI) thread plug gages when applied to the product internal thread may engage only the end threads (which may not be representative of the complete thread). Entering threads on product are incomplete and permit gage to start. Starting threads on NOT GO (HI) plugs are subject to greater wear than the remaining threads. Such wear in combination with the incomplete product threads permits further entry of the gage. NOT GO (HI) functional diameter is acceptable when the NOT GO (HI) thread plug gage applied to the product internal thread does not enter more than three complete turns. The gage should not be forced. Special requirements such as exceptionally thin or ductile material, small number of threads, etc., may necessitate modification of this practice.

GO and NOT GO Plain Plug Gages for Minor Diameter of Product Internal Thread: (Recommended in Class Z tolerance.) GO plain plug gages must completely enter and pass through the length of the product without force. NOT GO cylindrical plug gage must not enter.

The standard lists the following for use of Thread Gages for verification of product external threads:

GO Thread Ring Gages: Adjustable GO thread ring gages must be set to the applicable W tolerance setting plugs to assure they are within specified limits. The product thread must freely enter the GO thread ring gage for the entire length of the threaded portion. The GO thread ring gage is a cumulative check of all thread elements except the major diameter.

NOT GO (LO) Thread Ring Gages: NOT GO (LO) thread ring gages must be set to the applicable W tolerance setting plugs to assure that they are within specified limits. NOT GO (LO) thread ring gages when applied to the product external thread may engage only the end threads (which may not be representative of the complete product thread).

Starting threads on NOT GO (LO) rings are subject to greater wear than the remaining threads. Such wear in combination with the incomplete threads at the end of the product thread permit further entry in the gage. NOT GO (LO) functional diameter is acceptable when the NOT GO (LO) thread ring gage applied to the product external thread does not pass over the thread more than three complete turns. The gage should not be forced. Special requirements such as exceptionally thin or ductile material, small number of threads, etc., may necessitate modification of this practice.

GO and NOT GO Plain Ring and Snap Gages for Checking Major Diameter of Product External Thread: The GO gage must completely receive or pass over the major diameter of the product external thread to ensure that the major diameter does not exceed the maximum-material-limit. The NOT GO gage must not pass over the major diameter of the product external thread to ensure that the major diameter is not less than the minimum-material-limit.

Limitations concerning the use of gages are given in the standard as follows:

Product threads accepted by a gage of one type may be verified by other types. It is possible, however, that parts which are near either rejection limit may be accepted by one type and rejected by another. Also, it is possible for two individual limit gages of the same type to be at the opposite extremes of the gage tolerances permitted, and borderline product threads accepted by one gage could be rejected by another. For these reasons, a product screw thread is considered acceptable when it passes a test by any of the permissible gages in ANSI/ASME B1.3 for the gaging system that are within the tolerances.

Gaging large product external and internal threads equal to above 6.25-inch nominal size with plain and threaded plug and ring gages presents problems for technical and economic reasons. In these instances, verification may be based on use of modified snap or indicating gages or measurement of thread elements. Various types of gages or measuring devices in addition to those defined in the Standard are available and acceptable when

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

properly correlated to this Standard. Producer and user should agree on the method and equipment used.

Thread Forms of Gages.—Thread forms of gages for product internal and external threads are given in Table 1. The Standard ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017) also gives illustrations of the thread forms of truncated thread setting plug gages, the thread forms of full-form thread setting plug gages, the thread forms of solid thread setting ring gages, and an illustration that shows the chip groove and removal of partial thread.

Building Up Worn Plug Gages.—Plug gages which have been worn under size can be built up by chromium plating and then lapped to size. Any amount of metal up to 0.004 or 0.005 inch can be added to a worn gage. Chromium oxide is used in lapping chromium plated gages, or other parts, to size and for polishing. When the chromium plating of a plug gage has worn under size, it may be removed by subjecting it to the action of muriatic acid. The gage is then built up again by chromium plating and lapped to size. When removing the worn plating the gage should be watched carefully and the action of the acid stopped as soon as the plating has been removed in order to avoid the roughening effect of the acid on the steel.

Thread Gage Tolerances.—Gage tolerances of thread plug and ring gages, thread setting plugs, and setting rings for Unified screw threads, designated as W and X tolerances, are given in Table 4. W tolerances represent the highest commercial grade of accuracy and workmanship, and are specified for thread setting gages; X tolerances are larger than W tolerances and are used for product inspection gages. Tolerances for plain gages are given in Table 2.

Determining Size of Gages: The three-wire method of determining pitch diameter size of plug gages is recommended for gages covered by American National Standard B1.2, described in Appendix B of the 1983 issue of that Standard.

Size limit adjustments of thread ring and external thread snap gages are determined by their fit on their respective calibrated setting plugs. Indicating gages and thread gages for product external threads are controlled by reference to appropriate calibrated setting plugs.

Size limit adjustments of internal thread snap gages are determined by their fit on their respective calibrated setting rings. Indicating gages and other adjustable thread gages for product internal threads are controlled by reference to appropriate calibrated setting rings or by direct measuring methods.

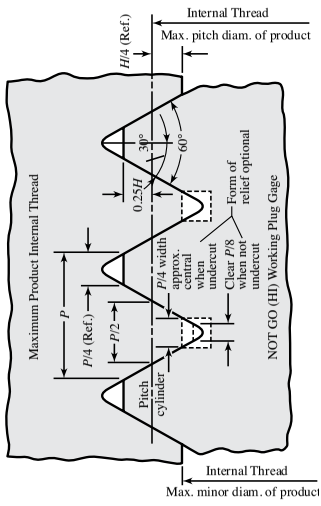
Interpretation of Tolerances: Tolerances on lead, half-angle, and pitch diameter are variations which may be taken independently for each of these elements and may be taken to the extent allowed by respective tabulated dimensional limits. The tabulated tolerance on any one element must not be exceeded, even though variations in the other two elements are smaller than the respective tabulated tolerances.

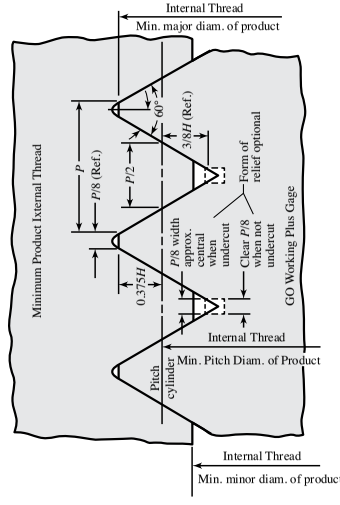
Direction of Tolerance on Gages: At the maximum-material limit (GO), the dimensions of all gages used for final conformance gaging are to be within limits of size of the product thread. At the functional diameter limit, using NOT GO (HI and LO) thread gages, the standard practice is to have the gage tolerance within the limits of size of the product thread.

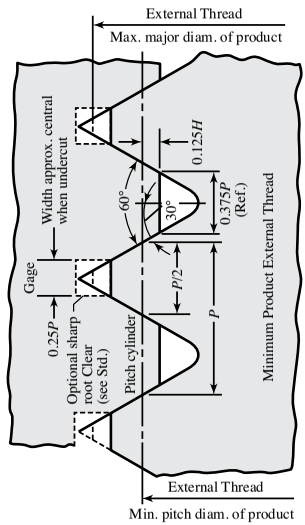
Formulas for Limits of Gages: Formulas for limits of American National Standard Gages for Unified screw threads are given in Table 5. Some constants which are required to determine gage dimensions are tabulated in Table 3.

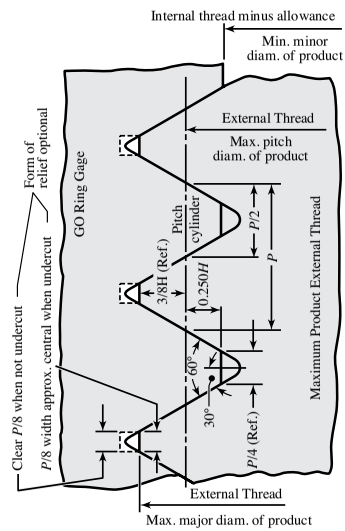
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Thread Forms of Gages for Product Internal and External Threads









Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. American National Standard Tolerances for Plain Cylindrical Gages
ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017)

Size Range		Tolerance Class[a]				
		XX	X	Y	Z	ZZ
Above	To and Including	Tolerance				
0.020	0.825	.00002	.00004	.00007	.00010	.00020
0.825	1.510	.00003	.00006	.00009	.00012	.00024
1.510	2.510	.00004	.00008	.00012	.00016	.00032
2.510	4.510	.00005	.00010	.00015	.00020	.00040
4.510	6.510	.000065	.00013	.00019	.00025	.00050
6.510	9.010	.00008	.00016	.00024	.00032	.00064
9.010	12.010	.00010	.00020	.00030	.00040	.00080

[a] Tolerances apply to actual diameter of plug or ring. Apply tolerances as specified in the Standard. Symbols XX, X, Y, Z, and ZZ are standard gage tolerance classes.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Table 3. Constants for Computing Thread Gage Dimensions
ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017)

Threads per Inch	Pitch, p	$0.060\sqrt[3]{p^2}+0.017p$	$.05p$	$.087p$	Height of Sharp V-Thread, $H=.866025p$	$H/2=.43301p$	$H/4=.216506p$
80	.012500	.0034	.00063	.00109	.010825	.00541	.00271
72	.013889	.0037	.00069	.00122	.012028	.00601	.00301
64	.015625	.0040	.00078	.00136	.013532	.00677	.00338
56	.017857	.0044	.00089	.00155	.015465	.00773	.00387
48	.020833	.0049	.00104	.00181	.018042	.00902	.00451
44	.022727	.0052	.00114	.00198	.019682	.00984	.00492
40	.025000	.0056	.00125	.00218	.021651	.01083	.00541
36	.027778	.0060	.00139	.00242	.024056	.01203	.00601
32	.031250	.0065	.00156	.00272	.027063	.01353	.00677
28	.035714	.0071	.00179	.00311	.030929	.01546	.00773
27	.037037	.0073	.00185	.00322	.032075	.01604	.00802
24	.041667	.0079	.00208	.00361	.036084	.01804	.00902
20	.050000	.0090	.00250	.00435	.043301	.02165	.01083
18	.055556	.0097	.00278	.00483	.048113	.02406	.01203
16	.062500	.0105	.00313	.00544	.054127	.02706	.01353
14	.071429	.0115	.00357	.00621	.061859	.03093	.01546
13	.076923	.0122	.00385	.00669	.066617	.03331	.01665
12	.083333	.0129	.00417	.00725	.072169	.03608	.01804
11½	.086957	.0133	.00435	.00757	.075307	.03765	.01883
11	.090909	.0137	.00451	.00791	.078730	.03936	.01968
10	.100000	.0146	.00500	.00870	.086603	.04330	.02165
9	.111111	.0158	.00556	.00967	.096225	.04811	.02406
8	.125000	.0171	.00625	.01088	.108253	.05413	.02706
7	.142857	.0188	.00714	.01243	.123718	.06186	.03093
6	.166667	.0210	.00833	.01450	.144338	.07217	.03608
5	.200000	.0239	.01000	.01740	.173205	.08660	.04330
4½	.222222	.0258	.01111	.01933	.192450	.09623	.04811
4	.250000	.0281	.01250	.02175	.216506	.10825	.05413

All dimensions are given in inches unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American National Standard Tolerance for GO, HI, and LO Thread Gages for Unified Inch Screw Thread

Thds. per Inch	Tolerance on Lead[a]		Tol. on Thread Half-angle (±), minutes	Tol. on Major and Minor Diams.[b]			Tolerance on Pitch Diameter[b]				
	To & incl. ½ in. Dia.	Above ½ in. Dia.		To & incl. ½ in. Dia.	Above ½ to 4 in. Dia.	Above 4 in. Dia.	To & incl. ½ in. Dia.	Above ½ to 1½ in. Dia.	Above 1½ to 4 in. Dia.	Above 4 to 8 in. Dia.	Above 8 to 12 in.[c] Dia.
W GAGES											
80, 72	.0001	.00015	20	.0003	.0003	…	.0001	.00015	…	…	…
64	.0001	.00015	20	.0003	.0004	…	.0001	.00015	…	…	…
56	.0001	.00015	20	.0003	.0004	…	.0001	.00015	.0002	…	…
48	.0001	.00015	18	.0003	.0004	…	.0001	.00015	.0002	…	…
44, 40	.0001	.00015	15	.0003	.0004	…	.0001	.00015	.0002	…	…
36	.0001	.00015	12	.0003	.0004	…	.0001	.00015	.0002	…	…
32	.0001	.00015	12	.0003	.0005	.0007	.0001	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003
28, 27	.00015	.00015	8	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0001	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003
24, 20	.00015	.00015	8	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0001	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003
18	.00015	.00015	8	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0001	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003
16	.00015	.00015	8	.0006	.0006	.0009	.0001	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
14, 13	.0002	.0002	6	.0006	.0006	.0009	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
12	.0002	.0002	6	.0006	.0006	.0009	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
11½	.0002	.0002	6	.0006	.0006	.0009	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
11	.0002	.0002	6	.0006	.0006	.0009	.00015	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
10	…	.00025	6	…	.0006	.0009	…	.0002	.0025	.0003	.0004
9	…	.00025	6	…	.0007	.0011	…	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
8	…	.00025	5	…	.0007	.0011	…	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
7	…	.0003	5	…	.0007	.0011	…	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
6	…	.0003	5	…	.0008	.0013	…	.0002	.00025	.0003	.0004
5	…	.0003	4	…	.0008	.0013	…	…	.00025	.0003	.0004
4½	…	.0003	4	…	.0008	.0013	…	…	.00025	.0003	.0004
4	…	.0003	4	…	.0009	.0015	…	…	.00025	.0003	.0004
X GAGES											
80, 72	.0002	.0002	30	.0003	.0003	…	.0002	.0002	…	…	…
64	.0002	.0002	30	.0004	.0004	…	.0002	.0002	…	…	…
56, 48	.0002	.0002	30	.0004	.0004	…	.0002	.0002	.0003	…	…
44, 40	.0002	.0002	20	.0004	.0004	…	.0002	.0002	.0003	…	…
36	.0002	.0002	20	.0004	.0004	…	.0002	.0002	.0003	…	…
32, 28	.0003	.0003	15	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0005	.0006
27, 24	.0003	.0003	15	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0005	.0006
20	.0003	.0003	15	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0005	.0006
18	.0003	.0003	10	.0005	.0005	.0007	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0005	.0006
16, 14	.0003	.0003	10	.0006	.0006	.0009	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0006	.0008
13, 12	.0003	.0003	10	.0006	.0006	.0009	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0006	.0008
11½	.0003	.0003	10	.0006	.0006	.0009	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0006	.0008
11, 10	.0003	.0003	10	.0006	.0006	.0009	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0006	.0008
9	.0003	.0003	10	.0007	.0007	.0011	.0003	.0003	.0004	.0006	.0008
8, 7	.0004	.0004	5	.0007	.0007	.0011	.0004	.0004	.0005	.0006	.0008
6	.0004	.0004	5	.0008	.0008	.0013	.0004	.0004	.0005	.0006	.0008
5, 4½	.0004	.0004	5	.0008	.0008	.0013	…	…	.0005	.0006	.0008
4	.0004	.0004	5	.0009	.0009	.0015	…	…	.0005	.0006	.0008

[a] Allowable variation in lead between any two threads not farther apart than the length of the standard gage as shown in ANSI/ASME B47.1. The tolerance on lead establishes the width of a zone, measured parallel to the axis of the thread, within which the actual helical path must lie for the specified length of the thread. Measurements are taken from a fixed reference point, located at the start of the first full thread, to a sufficient number of positions along the entire helix to detect all types of lead variations. The amounts that these positions vary from their basic (theoretical) positions are recorded with due respect to sign. The greatest variation in each direction (±) is selected, and the sum of their values, disregarding sign, must not exceed the tolerance limits specified for W gages.

[b] Tolerances apply to designated size of thread. The application of the tolerances is specified in the Standard.

[c] Above 12 in. the tolerance is directly proportional to the tolerance given in this column below, in the ratio of the diameter to 12 in.

All dimensions are given in inches unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Formulas for Limits of American National Standard Gages for Unified Inch Screw Threads *ANSI/ASME B1.2-1983 (R2017)*

No.	Thread Gages for External Threads
1	GO Pitch Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
2	GO Minor Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of external thread minus *H*/2. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
3	NOT GO (LO) Pitch Diameter (for plus tolerance gage) = Minimum pitch diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
4	NOT GO (LO) Minor Diameter = Minimum pitch diameter of external thread minus *H*/4. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
	Plain Gages for Major Diameter of External Threads
5	GO = Maximum major diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
6	NOT GO = Minimum major diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
	Thread Gages for Internal Threads
7	GO Major Diameter = Minimum major diameter of internal thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
8	GO Pitch Diameter = Minimum pitch diameter of internal thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
9	NOT GO (HI) Major Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of internal thread plus *H*/2. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
10	NOT GO (HI) Pitch Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of internal thread. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
	Plain Gages for Minor Diameter of Internal Threads
11	GO = Minimum minor diameter of internal thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
12	NOT GO = Maximum minor diameter of internal thread. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
	Full Form nd Truncated Setting Plugs
13	GO Major Diameter (Truncated Portion) = Maximum major diameter of external thread (= minimum major diameter of full portion of GO setting plug) minus $\left(0.060\sqrt[3]{p^2} + 0.017p\right)$. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
14	GO Major Diameter (Full Portion) = Maximum major diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
15	GO Pitch Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
16	[a]NOT GO (LO) Major Diameter (Truncated Portion) = Minimum pitch diameter of external thread plus *H*/2. Gage tolerance is *minus*.
17	NOT GO (LO) Major Diameter (Full Portion) = Maximum major diameter of external thread provided major diameter crest width shall not be less than 0.001 in. (0.0009 in. truncation). Apply W tolerance *plus* for maximum size except that for 0.001 in. crest width apply tolerance *minus*. For the 0.001 in. crest width, major diameter is equal to maximum major diameter of external thread plus 0.216506*p* minus the sum of external thread pitch diameter tolerance and 0.0017 in.
18	NOT GO (LO) Pitch Diameter = Minimum pitch diameter of external thread. Gage tolerance is *plus*.
	Solid Thread-setting Rings for Snap and Indicating Gages
19	[b]GO Pitch Diameter = Minimum pitch diameter of internal thread. W gage tolerance is *plus*.
20	GO Minor Diameter = Minimum minor diameter of internal thread. W gage tolerance is *minus*.
21	[b]NOT GO (HI) Pitch Diameter = Maximum pitch diameter of internal thread. W gage tolerance is *minus*.
22	NOT GO (HI) Minor Diameter = Maximum minor diameter of internal thread. W gage tolerance is *minus*.

[a] Truncated portion is required when optional sharp root profile is used.
[b] Tolerances greater than W tolerance for pitch diameter are acceptable when internal indicating or snap gage can accommodate a greater tolerance and when agreed upon by supplier and user.
See data in Screw Thread Systems section for symbols and dimensions of Unified Screw Threads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TAPPING AND THREAD CUTTING

Selection of Taps.—For most applications, a standard tap supplied by the manufacturer can be used, but some jobs may require special taps. A variety of standard taps can be obtained. In addition to specifying the size of the tap it is necessary to be able to select the one most suitable for the application at hand.

The elements of standard taps that are varied are: the number of flutes; the type of flute, whether straight, spiral pointed, or spiral fluted; the chamfer length; the relief of the land, if any; the tool steel used to make the tap; and the surface treatment of the tap.

Details regarding the nomenclature of tap elements are given in the section *TAPS* starting on page 969, along with a listing of the standard sizes available.

Factors to consider in selecting a tap include: the method of tapping, by hand or by machine; the material to be tapped and its heat treatment; the length of thread, or depth of the tapped hole; the required tolerance or class of fit; and the production requirement and the type of machine to be used.

The diameter of the hole must also be considered, although this action is usually only a matter of design and the specification of the tap drill size.

Method of Tapping: The term *hand tap* is used for both hand and machine taps, and almost all taps can be applied by the hand or machine method. While any tap can be used for hand tapping, those having a concentric land without the relief are preferable. In hand tapping the tool is reversed periodically to break the chip, and the heel of the land of a tap with a concentric land (without relief) will cut the chip off cleanly or any portion of it that is attached to the work, whereas a tap with an eccentric or con-eccentric relief may leave a small burr that becomes wedged between the relieved portion of the land and the work. This wedging creates a pressure towards the cutting face of the tap that may cause it to chip; it tends to roughen the threads in the hole, and it increases the overall torque required to turn the tool. When tapping by machine, however, the tap is usually turned only in one direction until the operation is complete, and an eccentric or con-eccentric relief is often an advantage.

Chamfer Length: Three types of hand taps, used both for hand and machine tapping, are available, and they are distinguished from each other by the length of chamfer. *Taper taps* have a chamfer angle that reduces the height about 8–10 teeth; *plug taps* have a chamfer angle with 3–5 threads reduced in height; and *bottoming taps* have a chamfer angle with $1\frac{1}{2}$ threads reduced in height. Since the teeth that are reduced in height do practically all the cutting, the chip load or chip thickness per tooth will be least for a taper tap, greater for a plug tap, and greatest for a bottoming tap.

For most through hole tapping applications it is necessary to use only a plug type tap, which is also most suitable for blind holes where the tap drill hole is deeper than the required thread. If the tap must bottom in a blind hole, the hole is usually threaded first with a plug tap and then finished with a bottoming tap to catch the last threads in the bottom of the hole. Taper taps are used on materials where the chip load per tooth must be kept to a minimum. However, taper taps should not be used on materials that have a strong tendency to work harden, such as the austenitic stainless steels.

Spiral Point Taps: Spiral point taps offer a special advantage when machine tapping through holes in ductile materials because they are designed to handle the long continuous chips that form and would otherwise cause a disposal problem. An angular gash is ground at the point or end of the tap along the face of the chamfered threads or lead teeth of the tap. This gash forms a left-hand helix in the flutes adjacent to the lead teeth which causes the chips to flow ahead of the tap and through the hole. The gash is usually formed to produce a rake angle on the cutting face that increases progressively toward the end of the tool. Since the flutes are used primarily to provide a passage for the cutting fluid, they are usually made narrower and shallower thereby strengthening the tool. For tapping thin

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

workpieces short fluted spiral point taps are recommended. They have a spiral point gash along the cutting teeth; the remainder of the threaded portion of the tap has no flute. Most spiral pointed taps are of plug type; however, spiral point bottoming taps are also made.

Spiral Fluted Taps: Spiral fluted taps have a helical flute; the helix angle of the flute may be between 15 and 52 degrees and the hand of the helix is the same as that of the threads on the tap. The spiral flute and the rake that it forms on the cutting face of the tap combine to induce the chips to flow backward along the helix and out of the hole. Thus, they are ideally suited for tapping blind holes and they are available as plug and bottoming types. A higher spiral angle should be specified for tapping very ductile materials; when tapping harder materials, chipping at the cutting edge may result and the spiral angle must be reduced.

Holes having a pronounced interruption such as a groove or a keyway can be tapped with spiral fluted taps. The land bridges the interruption and allows the tap to cut relatively smoothly.

Serial Taps and Close Tolerance Threads: For tapping holes to close tolerances a set of serial taps is used.

They are usually available in sets of three: the No. 1 tap is undersize and is the first rougher; the No. 2 tap is of intermediate size and is the second rougher; and the No. 3 tap is used for finishing.

The different taps are identified by one, two, and three annular grooves in the shank adjacent to the square. For some applications involving finer pitches only two serial taps are required. Sets are also used to tap hard or tough materials having a high tensile strength, deep blind holes in normal materials, and large coarse threads. A set of more than three taps is sometimes required to produce threads of coarse pitch. Threads to some commercial tolerances, such as American Standard Unified 2B, or ISO Metric 6H, can be produced in one cut using a ground tap; sometimes even closer tolerances can be produced with a single tap. Ground taps are recommended for all close tolerance tapping operations. For much ordinary work, cut taps are satisfactory and more economical than ground taps.

Tap Steels: Most taps are made from high-speed steel. The type of tool steel used is determined by the tap manufacturer and is usually satisfactory when correctly applied except in a few exceptional cases. Typical grades of high-speed steel used to make taps are M-1, M-2, M-3, M-42, etc. Carbon tool steel taps are satisfactory where the operating temperature of the tap is low and where a high resistance to abrasion is not required as in some types of hand tapping.

Surface Treatment: The life of high-speed steel taps can sometimes be increased significantly by treating the surface of the tap. A very common treatment is oxide coating, which forms a thin metallic oxide coating on the tap that has lubricity and is somewhat porous to absorb and retain oil. This coating reduces the friction between the tap and the work and it makes the surface virtually impervious to rust. It does not increase the hardness of the surface but it significantly reduces or prevents entirely galling, or the tendency of the work material to weld or stick to the cutting edge and to other areas on the tap with which it is in contact. For this reason oxide coated taps are recommended for metals that tend to gall and stick such as non-free cutting low carbon steels and soft copper. It is also useful for tapping other steels having higher strength properties.

Nitriding provides a very hard and wear resistant case on high-speed steel. Nitrided taps are especially recommended for tapping plastics; they have also been used successfully on a variety of other materials including high strength high alloy steels. However, some caution must be used in specifying nitrided taps because the nitride case is very brittle and may have a tendency to chip.

Chrome plating has been used to increase the wear resistance of taps but its application has been limited because of the high cost and the danger of hydrogen embrittlement which can cause cracks to form in the tool. A flash plate of about .0001 in. or less in thickness is applied to the tap. Chrome-plated taps have been used successfully to tap a variety of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ferrous and nonferrous materials including plastics, hard rubber, mild steel, and tool steel. Other surface treatments that have been used successfully to a limited extent are vapor blasting and liquid honing.

Rake Angle: For the majority of applications in both ferrous and nonferrous materials the rake angle machined on the tap by the manufacturer is satisfactory. This angle is approximately 5 to 7 degrees. In some instances it may be desirable to alter the rake angle of the tap to obtain beneficial results and Table 1 provides a guide that can be used. In selecting a rake angle from this table, consideration must be given to the size of the tap and the strength of the land. Most standard taps are made with a curved face with the rake angle measured as a chord between the crest and root of the thread. The resulting shape is called a hook angle.

Table 1. Tap Rake Angles for Tapping Different Materials

Material	Rake Angle, Degrees	Material	Rake Angle, Degrees
Cast Iron	0-3	Aluminum	8-20
Malleable Iron	5-8	Brass	2-7
Steel		Naval Brass	5-8
AISI 1100 Series	5-12	Phosphor Bronze	5-12
Low Carbon (up	5-12	Tobin Bronze	5-8
to .25 percent)		Manganese Bronze	5-12
Medium Carbon, Annealed	5-10	Magnesium	10-20
(.30 to .60 percent)		Monel	9-12
Heat-Treated, 225-283 Brinell	0-8	Copper	10-18
(.30 to .60 percent)		Zinc Die Castings	10-15
High Carbon and	0-5	Plastic	
High Speed		Thermoplastic	5-8
Stainless	8-15	Thermosetting	0-3
Titanium	5-10	Hard Rubber	0-3

Cutting Speed.—The cutting speed for machine tapping is treated in detail on page 1140. It suffices to say here that many variables must be considered in selecting this cutting speed and any tabulation may have to be modified greatly. Where cutting speeds are mentioned in the following section, they are intended only to provide a guideline to show the possible range of speeds that could be used.

Tapping Specific Materials.—The work material has a great influence on the ease with which a hole can be tapped. For production work, in many instances, modified taps are recommended; however, for toolroom or short batch work, standard hand taps can be used on most jobs, providing reasonable care is taken when tapping. The following concerns the tapping of metallic materials; information on the tapping of plastics is given on page 604.

Low Carbon Steel (Less than 0.15% C): These steels are very soft and ductile resulting in a tendency for the work material to tear and to weld to the tap. They produce a continuous chip that is difficult to break and spiral pointed taps are recommended for tapping through holes; for blind holes a spiral fluted tap is recommended. To prevent galling and welding, a liberal application of a sulfur base or other suitable cutting fluid is essential and the selection of an oxide coated tap is very helpful.

Low Carbon Steels (0.15 to 0.30% C): The additional carbon in these steels is beneficial as it reduces the tendency to tear and to weld; their machinability is further improved by cold drawing. These steels present no serious problems in tapping provided a suitable cutting fluid is used. An oxide coated tap is recommended, particularly in the lower carbon range.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Medium Carbon Steels (0.30 to 0.60% C): These steels can be tapped without too much difficulty, although a lower cutting speed must be used in machine tapping. The cutting speed is dependent on carbon content and heat treatment. Steels that have a higher carbon content must be tapped more slowly, especially if the heat treatment has produced a pearlitic microstructure. The cutting speed and ease of tapping is significantly improved by heat treating to produce a spheroidized microstructure. A suitable cutting fluid must be used.

High-Carbon Steels (More than 0.6% C): Usually these materials are tapped in the annealed or normalized condition although sometimes tapping is done after hardening and tempering to a hardness below 55 RC (Rockwell C scale). Recommendations for tapping after hardening and tempering are given under *High-Tensile Strength Steels*. In the annealed and normalized condition these steels have a higher strength and are more abrasive than steels with a lower carbon content; thus, they are more difficult to tap. The microstructure resulting from the heat treatment has a significant effect on the ease of tapping and the tap life, a spheroidite structure being better in this respect than a pearlitic structure. The rake angle of the tap should not exceed 5 degrees and for the harder materials a concentric tap is recommended. The cutting speed is considerably lower for these steels and an activated sulfur-chlorinated cutting fluid is recommended.

Alloy Steels: This classification includes a wide variety of steels, each of which may be heat treated to have a wide range of properties. When annealed and normalized they are similar to medium- to high-carbon steels and usually can be tapped without difficulty, although for some alloy steels a lower tapping speed may be required. Standard taps can be used and for machine tapping a con-eccentric relief may be helpful. A suitable cutting fluid must be used.

High-Tensile Strength Steels: Any steel that must be tapped after being heat treated to a hardness range of 40 to 55 RC is included in this classification. Low tap life and excessive tap breakage are characteristics of tapping these materials; those that have a high chromium content are particularly troublesome. Best results are obtained with taps that have concentric lands, a rake angle that is at or near zero degrees, and 6 to 8 chamfered threads on the end to reduce the chip load per tooth. The chamfer relief should be kept to a minimum. The load on the tap should be kept to a minimum by every possible means, including using the largest possible tap drill size; keeping the hole depth to a minimum; avoidance of bottoming holes; and, in the larger sizes, using fine instead of coarse pitches. Oxide coated taps are recommended although a nitrided tap can sometimes be used to reduce tap wear. An active sulfur-chlorinated oil is recommended as a cutting fluid and the tapping speed should not exceed about 10 feet per minute (3.0 m/min).

Stainless Steels: Ferritic and martensitic type stainless steels are somewhat like alloy steels that have a high chromium content, and they can be tapped in a similar manner, although a slightly slower cutting speed may have to be used. Standard rake angle oxide coated taps are recommended and a cutting fluid containing molybdenum disulphide is helpful to reduce the friction in tapping. Austenitic stainless steels are very difficult to tap because of their high resistance to cutting and their great tendency to work harden. A work-hardened layer is formed by a cutting edge of the tap and the depth of this layer depends on the severity of the cut and the sharpness of the tool. The next cutting edge must penetrate below the work-hardened layer, if it is to be able to cut. Therefore, the tap must be kept sharp and each succeeding cutting edge on the tool must penetrate below the work-hardened layer formed by the preceding cutting edge. For this reason, a taper tap should not be used, but rather a plug tap having 3 to 5 chamfered threads. To reduce the rubbing of the lands, an eccentric or con-eccentric relieved land should be used and a 10 to 15 degree rake angle is recommended. A tough continuous chip is formed that is difficult to break. To control this chip, spiral pointed taps are recommended for through holes and low-helix angle spiral fluted taps for blind holes. An oxide coating on the tap is very helpful and a sulfur-chlorinated mineral lard oil is recommended, although heavy duty soluble oils have also been used successfully.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Free Cutting Steels: There are large numbers of free cutting steels, including free cutting stainless steels, which are also called free machining steels. Sulfur, lead, or phosphorus are added to these steels to improve their machinability. Free machining steels are always easier to tap than their counterparts that do not have the free machining additives. Tool life is usually increased and a somewhat higher cutting speed can be used. The type of tap recommended depends on the particular type of free machining steel and the nature of the tapping operation; usually a standard tap can be used.

High-Temperature Alloys: These are cobalt or nickel base nonferrous alloys that cut like austenitic stainless steel, but are often even more difficult to machine. The recommendations given for austenitic stainless steel also apply to tapping these alloys but the rake angle should be 0 to 10 degrees to strengthen the cutting edge. For most applications a nitrided tap or one made from M41, M42, M43, or M44 steel is recommended. The tapping speed is usually in the range of 5–10 ft/min (1.5–3.0 m/min).

Titanium and Titanium Alloys: Titanium and its alloys have a low specific heat and a pronounced tendency to weld on to the tool material; therefore, oxide coated taps are recommended to minimize galling and welding. The rake angle of the tap should be from 6 to 10 degrees. To minimize the contact between the work and the tap an eccentric or con-eccentric relief land should be used. Taps having interrupted threads are sometimes helpful. Pure titanium is comparatively easy to tap but the alloys are very difficult. The cutting speed depends on the composition of the alloy and may vary from 10–40 ft/min (3.0–12.2 m/min). Special cutting oils are recommended for tapping titanium.

Gray Cast Iron: The microstructure of gray cast iron can vary, even within a single casting, and compositions are used that vary in tensile strength from about 20,000–60,000 psi (138–414 MPa) and 160 to 250 BHN. Thus, cast iron is not a single material, although in general it is not difficult to tap. The cutting speed may vary from 90 ft/min (27.4 m/min) for the softer grades to 30 ft/min (9.1 m/min) for the harder grades. The chip is discontinuous and straight fluted taps should be used for all applications. Oxide coated taps are helpful and gray cast iron can usually be tapped dry, although water soluble oils and chemical emulsions are sometimes used.

Malleable Cast Iron: Commercial malleable cast irons are also available having a rather wide range of properties, although within a single casting they tend to be quite uniform. They are relatively easy to tap and standard taps can be used. The cutting speed for ferritic cast irons is 60–90 ft/min (18.3–27.4 m/min), for pearlitic malleable irons 40–50 ft/ min (12.2–15.2 m/min), and for martensitic malleable irons 30–35 ft/min (9.1–10.7 m/min). A soluble oil cutting fluid is recommended except for martensitic malleable iron where a sulfur base oil may work better.

Ductile or Nodular Cast Iron: Several classes of nodular iron are used having a tensile strength varying from 60,000–120,000 psi (414–827 MPa). Moreover, the microstructure in a single casting and in castings produced at different times vary rather widely. The chips are easily controlled but have some tendency to weld to the faces and flanks of cutting tools. For this reason oxide coated taps are recommended. The cutting speed may vary from 15 fpm (4.6 m/min) for the harder martensitic ductile irons to 60 fpm (18.3 m/min) for the softer ferritic grades. A suitable cutting fluid should be used.

Aluminum: Aluminum and aluminum alloys are relatively soft materials that have little resistance to cutting. The danger in tapping these alloys is that the tap will ream the hole instead of cutting threads, or that it will cut a thread eccentric to the hole. For these reasons, extra care must be taken when aligning the tap and starting the thread. For production tapping a spiral pointed tap is recommended for through holes and a spiral fluted tap for blind holes; preferably these taps should have a 10 to 15 degree rake angle. A lead-screw tapping machine is helpful in cutting accurate threads. A heavy duty soluble oil or a light base mineral oil should be used as a cutting fluid.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Copper Alloys: Most copper alloys are not difficult to tap, except beryllium copper and a few other hard alloys. Pure copper is difficult because of its ductility and the ductile continuous chip formed, which can be hard to control. However, with reasonable care and the use of medium heavy duty mineral lard oil it can be tapped successfully. Red brass, yellow brass, and similar alloys containing not more than 35 percent zinc produce a continuous chip. While straight fluted taps can be used for hand tapping these alloys, machine tapping should be done with spiral pointed or spiral fluted taps for through and blind holes respectively. Naval brass, leaded brass, and cast brasses produce a discontinuous chip and a straight fluted tap can be used for machine tapping. These alloys exhibit a tendency to close in on the tap and sometimes an interrupted thread tap is used to reduce the resulting jamming effect. Beryllium copper and the silicon bronzes are the strongest of the copper alloys. Their strength combined with their ability to work harden can cause difficulties in tapping. For these alloys plug type taps should be used and the taps should be kept as sharp as possible. A medium or heavy duty water soluble oil is recommended as a cutting fluid.

Other Tapping Lubricants.—The power required in tapping varies considerably with different lubricants. The following lubricants reduce the resistance to the cut when threading forged nuts and hexagon drawn material: stearine oil, lard oil, sperm oil, rape oil, and 10 percent graphite with 90 percent tallow. A mixture of cutting emulsion (soluble oil) with water reduces resistance to threading action well. A few emulsions are almost as good as animal and vegetable oils, but the emulsion used plays an important part; the majority of emulsions do not give good results. A large volume of lubricant gives somewhat better results than a small quantity, especially in the case of the thinner oils. Kerosene, turpentine, and graphite proved unsuitable for tapping steel. Mineral oils not mixed with animal and vegetable oils, and ordinary lubricating and machine oils, are wholly unsuitable.

For aluminum, kerosene is recommended. For tapping cast iron use a strong solution of emulsion; oil has a tendency to make cast-iron chips clog in the flutes, preventing the lubricant from reaching the tap cutting teeth. For tapping copper, milk is a good lubricant.

Diameter of Tap Drill

Tapping troubles are sometimes caused by tap drills that are too small in diameter. The tap drill should not be smaller than is necessary to give the required strength to the thread as even a very small decrease in the diameter of the drill will increase the torque required and the possibility of broken taps. Tests have shown that any increase in the percentage of full thread over 60 percent does not significantly increase the strength of the thread. Often, a 55 to 60 percent thread is satisfactory, although 75 percent threads are commonly used to provide an extra measure of safety. The present thread specifications do not always allow the use of the smaller thread depths. However, the specification given on a part drawing must be adhered to and may require smaller minor diameters than might otherwise be recommended.

The depth of the thread in the tapped hole is dependent on the length of thread engagement and on the material. In general, when the engagement length is more than one and one-half times the nominal diameter a 50 or 55 percent thread is satisfactory. Soft ductile materials permit a slightly larger tapping hole than brittle materials such as gray cast iron.

It must be remembered that a twist drill is a roughing tool that may be expected to drill slightly oversize and that some variations in the size of the tapping holes are almost inevitable. When a closer control of the hole size is required it must be reamed. Reaming is recommended for the larger thread diameters and for some fine pitch threads.

For threads of Unified form (see *American National and Unified Screw Thread Forms* on page 1940) the selection of tap drills is covered in Table 2, and the hole size limits are given in Table 3. See the section *Factors Influencing Minor Diameter Tolerances of Tapped Holes* on page 2169. Tap drill sizes for American National Form threads based on 75 percent of full thread depth are given in Table 4 and Table 5. For smaller-size threads the use of slightly larger drills, if permissible, will reduce tap breakage. The selection

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of tap drills for these threads also may be based on the hole size limits given in Table 3, page 2160, for Unified threads that take lengths of engagement into account. See *Recommended Hole Sizes before Tapping* on page 2170.

The size of the tap drill hole for any desired percentage of full thread depth can be calculated by the formulas below. In these formulas the Percent Full Thread is expressed as a decimal; e.g., 75 percent is expressed as .75. The tap drill size is the size nearest to the calculated hole size.

For American Unified Thread form:

$$\text{Hole Size} = \text{Basic Major Diameter} - \frac{1.08253 \times \text{Percent Full Thread}}{\text{Number of Threads per Inch}}$$

For ISO Metric threads (all dimensions in millimeters):

Hole Size = Basic Major Diameter – (1.08253 × Pitch × Percent Full Thread)

The constant 1.08253 in the above equation represents 5*H*/8 where *H* is the height of a sharp V-thread (see page 1940). The pitch is taken to be 1.

Hole Sizes for Tapping Unified Miniature Screw Threads are given on page 2168 and Table 6.

Theoretical and Tap Drill or Core Hole Sizes for Cold Form Tapping Unified Threads are given in Table 9, page 2175 and for ISO metric threads are given in Table 10, page 2176.

Reaming Allowance.—Reaming is a secondary operation that slightly enlarges previously drilled or bored hole. Reamed holes are very accurate with a smooth surface finish.

The reaming allowance is amount of material left in the hole after drilling. A properly sharpened drill produces a hole that is about 0.002–0.008 inch (0.050–0.203mm) oversize. For accurate diameters, a common practice is to rough out the hole with a smaller drill, then size the hole with the proper drill, leaving the correct reaming allowance.

Use the following table to determine the drill size used prior to reaming the hole.

Size of Reamer		Reaming Allowance		Size of Reamer		Reaming Allowance	
inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
1/32–1/8	0.79–3.18	0.003–0.005	0.076–0.127	3/8–1/2	9.53–12.70	0.010–0.015	0.254–0.381
1/8–1/4	3.18–6.35	0.004–0.008	0.101–0.203	1/2–3/4	12.70–19.05	0.015–0.03	0.381–0.762
1/4–3/8	6.35–9.53	0.006–0.010	0.152–0.254	3/4–1.00	19.05–25.40	0.03	0.762

Example: A finished bore of 1.000 inches after reaming is required. Select the drill size for predrilling that allows adequate allowance for reaming.

Solution: According to the table above, a 1-inch drilled hole needs to be approximately 0.03 inch undersize to allow sufficient allowance for reaming, thus the hole size prior to reaming should be approximately 1.000 – 0.03 = 0.97 inch.

A 31/32 drill can be expected to produce a slightly oversize hole, say 0.971 to 0.977 inch. The 31/32 drill provides a reaming allowance of 0.0 23 to 0.029 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Threads)

Taps Size Threads per Inch	Drill Size				Percentage of Full Thread	Nut Minor Diameter, min[a] max
	No. or Letter	Fractional Inch	mm	Decimal Inch		
0–80	…	…	1.30	0.0512	54	0.0465
	…	…	1.25	0.0492	68	0.0514
	…	…	1.20	0.0472	79	
1–64	…	1/16	…	0.0625	51	0.0561
	…	…	1.55	0.0610	59	0.0623
	53	…	…	0.0595	66	
	…	…	1.50	0.0590	69	
	…	…	1.45	0.0571	77	
1–72	52	…	…	0.0635	53	0.0580
	…	1/16	…	0.0625	58	0.0635
	…	…	1.55	0.0610	66	
	53	…	…	0.0595	75	
	…	…	1.50	0.0590	77	
2–56	49	…	…	0.0730	56	0.0667
	…	…	1.80	0.0709	65	0.0737
	50	…	…	0.0700	69	
	…	…	1.75	0.0689	74	
2–64	…	…	1.90	0.0748	55	0.0691
	49	…	…	0.0730	64	0.0753
	…	…	1.85	0.0728	65	
	…	…	1.80	0.0709	74	
	50	…	…	0.0700	79	
3–48	…	…	2.15	0.0846	53	0.0764
	…	…	2.10	0.0827	60	0.0845
	45	…	…	0.0820	63	
	46	…	…	0.0810	66	
	47	…	…	0.0785	76	
	…	5/64	…	0.0781	77	
3–56	…	…	2.20	0.0866	53	0.0797
	44	…	…	0.0860	56	0.0865
	…	…	2.15	0.0846	62	
	…	…	2.10	0.0827	70	
	45	…	…	0.0820	73	
	46	…	…	0.0801	77	
	…	…	2.05	0.0807	79	
4–36	43	…	…	0.0890	64	0.0821[b]
	44	…	…	0.0860	72	0.0882[b]
4–40	…	…	2.40	0.0945	54	0.0849
	42	…	…	0.0935	57	0.0939
	…	…	2.35	0.0925	60	
	…	…	2.30	0.0905	66	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Threads)**

Taps Size Threads per Inch	Drill Size				Percentage of Full Thread	Nut Minor Diameter, min[a] max
	No. or Letter	Fractional Inch	mm	Decimal Inch		
4–40	43	…	…	0.0890	71	
	…	…	2.20	0.0866	78	
4–48	…	…	2.45	0.0964	57	0.0894
	41	…	…	0.0960	59	0.0968
	…	…	2.40	0.0945	64	
	…	3/32	…	0.0938	68	
	42	…	…	0.0935	68	
	…	…	2.35	0.0925	72	
	…	…	2.30	0.0905	79	
5–40	…	…	2.70	0.1063	57	0.0979
	37	…	…	0.1040	65	0.1062
	…	…	2.60	0.1024	70	
	38	…	…	0.1015	72	
	39	…	…	0.0995	78	
5–44	…	…	2.75	0.1083	57	0.1004
	36	…	…	0.1065	62	0.1079
	37	…	…	0.1040	71	
	…	…	2.6	0.1024	76	
	38	…	…	0.1015	79	
6–32	33	…	…	0.1130	62	0.1042
	34	…	…	0.1110	67	0.1130
	…	…	2.8	0.1102	68	
	35	…	…	0.1100	69	
	…	7/64	…	0.1094	70	
	…	…	2.75	0.1083	73	
	36	…	…	0.1065	77	
6–40	31	…	…	0.1200	55	0.1109
	…	…	3	0.1181	61	0.1186
	32	…	…	0.1160	68	
	…	…	2.9	0.1142	73	
	33	…	…	0.1130	77	
8–32	…	9/64	…	0.1406	57	0.1302
	28	…	…	0.1405	58	0.1389
	…	…	3.5	0.1378	65	
	29	…	…	0.1360	69	
	…	…	3.4	0.1339	74	
8–36	27	…	…	0.1440	55	0.1339
	…	…	3.6	0.1417	62	0.1416
	…	9/64	…	0.1406	68	
	28	…	…	0.1405	65	
		…	3.5	0.1378	73	
	29	…	…	0.1360	78	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Threads)**

Taps Size Threads per Inch	Drill Size				Percentage of Full Thread	Nut Minor Diameter, min[a] max
	No. or Letter	Fractional Inch	mm	Decimal Inch		
10–24	21	…	…	0.1590	57	0.1449
	22	…	…	0.1570	61	0.1555
	…	5/32	…	0.1563	62	
	23	…	…	0.1540	66	
	24	…	…	0.1520	67	
	25	…	…	0.1496	75	
	26	…	…	0.1470	79	
10–32	19	…	…	0.1660	59	0.1562
	…	…	4.1	0.1614	70	0.1641
	20	…	…	0.1610	71	
	21	…	…	0.1590	76	
12–24	14	…	…	0.1820	63	0.1709
	15	…	…	0.1800	67	0.1708
	16	…	…	0.1770	72	
	17	…	…	0.1730	79	
12–28	…	3/16	…	0.1875	61	0.1773
	13	…	…	0.1850	67	0.1857
	14	…	…	0.1820	73	
	15	…	…	0.1800	78	
1/4–20	4	…	…	0.2090	63	0.1959
	5	…	…	0.2055	69	0.2067
	6	…	…	0.2040	71	
	…	13/64	…	0.2031	72	
	7	…	…	0.2010	75	
	8	…	…	0.1990	79	
1/4–27	2	…	…	0.2210	61	0.2120
	…	…	…	0.2187	65	0.2180[b]
	3	…	…	0.2130	77	
1/4–28	2	…	…	0.2210	63	0.2113
	…	7/32	…	0.2187	67	0.2190
	…	…	5.5	0.2165	72	
	3	…	…	0.2130	80	
1/4–32	…	…	5.7	0.2244	63	0.2162
	2	…	…	0.2210	71	0.2208[b]
	…	7/28	…	0.2187	77	
5/16–18	H	…	…	0.2660	64	0.2524
	…	17/64	…	0.2656	65	0.2630
	G	…	…	0.2610	71	
	F	…	…	0.2570	77	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Threads)**

Taps Size Threads per Inch	Drill Size				Percentage of Full Thread	Nut Minor Diameter, min[a] max
	No. or Letter	Fractional Inch	mm	Decimal Inch		
5/16–24	J	…	…	0.2770	66	0.2674
	…	…	7	0.2756	68	0.2754
	I	…	…	0.2720	75	
5/16–27	…	9/32	…	0.2812	68	0.2718
	J	…	…	0.2770	74	0.2792[b]
5/16–32	…	…	7.3	0.2841	62	0.2787
	…	…	7.2	0.2835	75	0.2833[b]
	…	9/32	…	0.2812	77	
3/8–16	P	…	…	0.3230	64	0.3073
	…	…	8.1	0.3189	69	0.3182
	O	…	…	0.3160	72	
	…	5/16	…	0.3125	77	
3/8–24	R	…	…	0.3390	67	0.3299
	…	…	8.5	0.3345	74	0.3372
	Q	…	…	0.3320	79	
3/8–27	…	11/32	…	0.3437	65	0.3347
	R	…	…	0.3390	75	0.3416[b]
7/16–24	…	…	9.7	0.3818	60	0.3602
	V	…	…	0.3770	65	0.3717
	…	3/8	…	0.3750	67	
	U	…	…	0.3680	75	
7/16–20	X	…	…	0.3970	62	0.3834
	…	…	10	0.3937	67	0.3916
	…	25/64	…	0.3906	72	
	W	…	…	0.3860	79	
7/16–24	Y	…	…	0.4040	62	0.3925
	X	…	…	0.3970	74	0.3985[b]
7/16–27	…	13/32	…	0.4062	65	0.3982
	Y	…	…	0.4040	70	0.4043[b]
1/2–12	…	27/64	…	0.4219	72	0.4098
						0.4223
1/2–13	…	7/16	…	0.4375	62	0.4167
	…	…	11	0.4331	68	0.4284
	…	27/64	…	0.4219	78	
1/2–20	…	29/64	…	0.4531	72	0.4459
	…	[c]	…	0.4492	78	0.4537
1/2–27	…	15/32	…	0.4687	65	0.4618
	[c]	…	…	0.4640	75	0.4672[b]

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Tap Drill Sizes and Percentage of Thread (Unified Threads)**

Taps Size Threads per Inch	Drill Size				Percentage of Full Thread	Nut Minor Diameter, min[a] max
	No. or Letter	Fractional Inch	mm	Decimal Inch		
9/16–12	…	1/2	…	0.5000	58	0.4723
	…	…	12.5	0.4921	65	0.4843
	…	31/64	…	0.4844	72	
9/16–18	…	33/64	…	0.5156	65	0.5024
	…	…	13	0.5118	70	0.5106
9/16–27	…	17/32	…	0.5312	65	0.5234
	…	c	…	0.5265	75	0.5273[b]
5/8–11	…	…	14	0.5512	62	0.5266
	…	35/64	…	0.5469	66	0.5391
	…	17/32	…	0.5312	79	
5/8–18	…	37/64	…	0.5781	65	0.5649
	…	…	14.5	0.5709	75	0.5730
5/8–27	…	19/32	…	0.5937	65	0.5860
	…	c	…	0.5890	75	0.5912
3/4–10	…	…	17	0.6693	62	0.6417
	c	21/32	…	0.6563	72	0.6545[b]
	…	…	16.5	0.6496	77	
3/4–16	…	45/64	…	0.7031	58	0.6823
	…	…	17.5	0.6890	75	0.6908
	…	11/64	…	0.6875	77	
3/4–27	…	23/32	…	0.7187	65	0.7102
	c	…	…	0.7140	75	0.7164[c]
7/8–9	…	25/32	…	0.7813	65	0.7547
	…	49/64	…	0.7656	76	0.7679
7/8–14	…	13/16	…	0.8125	67	0.7977
	…	…	20.5	0.8071	73	0.8068
7/8–18	…	53/64	…	0.8281	65	0.8149
	c	…	…	0.8210	75	0.8223[b]
7/8–27	…	27/32	…	0.8437	65	0.8340
	c	…	…	0.8390	75	0.8406[c]
1–8	…	…	23.0	0.9055	58	0.8647
	…	57/64	…	0.8906	67	0.8797
	…	7/8	…	0.8750	77	
1–12	…	59/64	…	0.9219	72	0.9098
						0.9198

[a] Unified or American Standard Threads.

[b] Not based on Unified or American Thread Standards.

[c] Special drill required for this size as the next size smaller gives too great a percentage of thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
0-80	0.0465	0.0500	0.0479	0.0514	0.0479	0.0514	0.0479	0.0514	0.0465	0.0500	0.0479	0.0514	0.0479	0.0514	0.0479	0.0514
1-64	0.0561	0.0599	0.0585	0.0623	0.0585	0.0623	0.0585	0.0623	0.0561	0.0599	0.0585	0.0623	0.0585	0.0623	0.0585	0.0623
1-72	0.0580	0.0613	0.0596	0.0629	0.0602	0.0635	0.0602	0.0635	0.0580	0.0613	0.0596	0.0629	0.0602	0.0635	0.0602	0.0635
2-56	0.0667	0.0705	0.0686	0.0724	0.0699	0.0737	0.0699	0.0737	0.0667	0.0705	0.0686	0.0724	0.0699	0.0737	0.0699	0.0737
2-64	0.0691	0.0724	0.0707	0.0740	0.0720	0.0753	0.0720	0.0753	0.0691	0.0724	0.0707	0.0740	0.0720	0.0753	0.0720	0.0753
3-48	0.0764	0.0804	0.0785	0.0825	0.0805	0.0845	0.0806	0.0846	0.0764	0.0804	0.0785	0.0825	0.0805	0.0845	0.0806	0.0846
3-56	0.0797	0.0831	0.0814	0.0848	0.0831	0.0865	0.0833	0.0867	0.0797	0.0831	0.0814	0.0848	0.0831	0.0865	0.0833	0.0867
4-40	0.0849	0.0894	0.0871	0.0916	0.0894	0.0939	0.0902	0.0947	0.0849	0.0894	0.0871	0.0916	0.0894	0.0939	0.0902	0.0947
4-48	0.0894	0.0931	0.0912	0.0949	0.0931	0.0968	0.0939	0.0976	0.0894	0.0931	0.0912	0.0949	0.0931	0.0968	0.0939	0.0976
5-40	0.0979	0.1020	0.1000	0.1041	0.1021	0.1062	0.1036	0.1077	0.0979	0.1020	0.1000	0.1041	0.1021	0.1062	0.1036	0.1077
5-44	0.1004	0.1042	0.1023	0.1060	0.1042	0.1079	0.1060	0.1097	0.1004	0.1042	0.1023	0.1060	0.1042	0.1079	0.1060	0.1097
6-32	0.104	0.109	0.106	0.112	0.109	0.114	0.112	0.117	0.1040	0.1091	0.1066	0.1115	0.1091	0.1140	0.1115	0.1164
6-40	0.111	0.115	0.113	0.117	0.115	0.119	0.117	0.121	0.1110	0.1148	0.1128	0.1167	0.1147	0.1186	0.1166	0.1205
8-32	0.130	0.134	0.132	0.137	0.134	0.139	0.137	0.141	0.1300	0.1345	0.1324	0.1367	0.1346	0.1389	0.1367	0.1410
8-36	0.134	0.138	0.136	0.140	0.138	0.142	0.140	0.144	0.1340	0.1377	0.1359	0.1397	0.1378	0.1416	0.1397	0.1435
10-24	0.145	0.150	0.148	0.154	0.150	0.156	0.152	0.159	0.1450	0.1502	0.1475	0.1528	0.1502	0.1555	0.1528	0.1581
10-32	0.156	0.160	0.158	0.162	0.160	0.164	0.162	0.166	0.1560	0.1601	0.1581	0.1621	0.1601	0.1641	0.1621	0.1661
12-24	0.171	0.176	0.174	0.179	0.176	0.181	0.178	0.184	0.1710	0.1758	0.1733	0.1782	0.1758	0.1807	0.1782	0.1831
12-28	0.177	0.182	0.179	0.184	0.182	0.186	0.184	0.188	0.1770	0.1815	0.1794	0.1836	0.1815	0.1857	0.1836	0.1878
12-32	0.182	0.186	0.184	0.188	0.186	0.190	0.188	0.192	0.1820	0.1858	0.1837	0.1877	0.1855	0.1895	0.1873	0.1913
¼-20	0.196	0.202	0.199	0.204	0.202	0.207	0.204	0.210	0.1960	0.2013	0.1986	0.2040	0.2013	0.2067	0.2040	0.2094
¼-28	0.211	0.216	0.213	0.218	0.216	0.220	0.218	0.222	0.2110	0.2152	0.2131	0.2171	0.2150	0.2190	0.2169	0.2209
¼-32	0.216	0.220	0.218	0.222	0.220	0.224	0.222	0.226	0.2160	0.2196	0.2172	0.2212	0.2189	0.2229	0.2206	0.2246
¼-36	0.220	0.224	0.221	0.225	0.224	0.226	0.225	0.228	0.2200	0.2243	0.2199	0.2243	0.2214	0.2258	0.2229	0.2273
5/16-18	0.252	0.259	0.255	0.262	0.259	0.265	0.262	0.268	0.2520	0.2577	0.2551	0.2604	0.2577	0.2630	0.2604	0.2657
5/16-24	0.267	0.272	0.270	0.275	0.272	0.277	0.275	0.280	0.2670	0.2714	0.2694	0.2734	0.2714	0.2754	0.2734	0.2774
5/16-32	0.279	0.283	0.281	0.285	0.283	0.286	0.285	0.289	0.2790	0.2817	0.2792	0.2832	0.2807	0.2847	0.2822	0.2862
5/16-36	0.282	0.286	0.284	0.288	0.285	0.289	0.287	0.291	0.2820	0.2863	0.2824	0.2863	0.2837	0.2877	0.2850	0.2890
⅜-16	0.307	0.314	0.311	0.318	0.314	0.321	0.318	0.325	0.3070	0.3127	0.3101	0.3155	0.3128	0.3182	0.3155	0.3209

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{8}D$		Above $\frac{1}{8}D$ to $\frac{2}{5}D$		Above $\frac{2}{5}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{8}D$		Above $\frac{1}{8}D$ to $\frac{2}{5}D$		Above $\frac{2}{5}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
3/8-24	0.330	0.335	0.333	0.338	0.335	0.340	0.338	0.343	0.3300	0.3336	0.3314	0.3354	0.3332	0.3372	0.3351	0.3391
3/8-32	0.341	0.345	0.343	0.347	0.345	0.349	0.347	0.351	0.3410	0.3441	0.3415	0.3455	0.3429	0.3469	0.3444	0.3484
3/8-36	0.345	0.349	0.346	0.350	0.347	0.352	0.349	0.353	0.3450	0.3488	0.3449	0.3488	0.3461	0.3501	0.3474	0.3514
7/16-14	0.360	0.368	0.364	0.372	0.368	0.376	0.372	0.380	0.3600	0.3660	0.3630	0.3688	0.3659	0.3717	0.3688	0.3746
7/16-20	0.383	0.389	0.386	0.391	0.389	0.395	0.391	0.397	0.3830	0.3875	0.3855	0.3896	0.3875	0.3916	0.3896	0.3937
7/16-28	0.399	0.403	0.401	0.406	0.403	0.407	0.406	0.410	0.3990	0.4020	0.3995	0.4035	0.4011	0.4051	0.4017	0.4067
1/2-13	0.417	0.426	0.421	0.430	0.426	0.434	0.430	0.438	0.4170	0.4225	0.4196	0.4254	0.4226	0.4284	0.4255	0.4313
1/2-12	0.410	0.414	0.414	0.424	0.414	0.428	0.424	0.433	0.4100	0.4161	0.4129	0.4192	0.4160	0.4223	0.4192	0.4255
1/2-20	0.446	0.452	0.449	0.454	0.452	0.457	0.454	0.460	0.4460	0.4498	0.4477	0.4517	0.4497	0.4537	0.4516	0.4556
1/2-28	0.461	0.467	0.463	0.468	0.466	0.470	0.468	0.472	0.4610	0.4645	0.4620	0.4660	0.4636	0.4676	0.4652	0.4692
9/16-12	0.472	0.476	0.476	0.486	0.476	0.490	0.486	0.495	0.4720	0.4783	0.4753	0.4813	0.4783	0.4843	0.4813	0.4873
9/16-18	0.502	0.509	0.505	0.512	0.509	0.515	0.512	0.518	0.5020	0.5065	0.5045	0.5086	0.5065	0.5106	0.5086	0.5127
9/16-24	0.517	0.522	0.520	0.525	0.522	0.527	0.525	0.530	0.5170	0.5209	0.5186	0.5226	0.5204	0.5244	0.5221	0.5261
9/16-28	0.524	0.528	0.526	0.531	0.528	0.532	0.531	0.535	0.5240	0.5270	0.5245	0.5285	0.5261	0.5301	0.5277	0.5317
5/8-11	0.527	0.536	0.532	0.541	0.536	0.546	0.541	0.551	0.5270	0.5328	0.5298	0.5360	0.5329	0.5391	0.5360	0.5422
5/8-12	0.535	0.544	0.540	0.549	0.544	0.553	0.549	0.558	0.5350	0.5406	0.5377	0.5435	0.5405	0.5463	0.5434	0.5492
5/8-18	0.565	0.572	0.568	0.575	0.572	0.578	0.575	0.581	0.5650	0.5690	0.5670	0.5711	0.5690	0.5730	0.5711	0.5752
5/8-24	0.580	0.585	0.583	0.588	0.585	0.590	0.588	0.593	0.5800	0.5834	0.5811	0.5851	0.5829	0.5869	0.5846	0.5886
5/8-28	0.586	0.591	0.588	0.593	0.591	0.595	0.593	0.597	0.5860	0.5895	0.5870	0.5910	0.5886	0.5926	0.5902	0.5942
11/16-12	0.597	0.606	0.602	0.611	0.606	0.615	0.611	0.620	0.5970	0.6029	0.6001	0.6057	0.6029	0.6085	0.6057	0.6113
11/16-24	0.642	0.647	0.645	0.650	0.647	0.652	0.650	0.655	0.6420	0.6459	0.6436	0.6476	0.6454	0.6494	0.6471	0.6511
3/4-10	0.642	0.653	0.647	0.658	0.653	0.663	0.658	0.668	0.6420	0.6481	0.6449	0.6513	0.6481	0.6545	0.6513	0.6577
3/4-12	0.660	0.669	0.665	0.674	0.669	0.678	0.674	0.683	0.6600	0.6652	0.6626	0.6680	0.6653	0.6707	0.6680	0.6734
3/4-16	0.682	0.689	0.686	0.693	0.689	0.696	0.693	0.700	0.6820	0.6866	0.6844	0.6887	0.6865	0.6908	0.6886	0.6929
3/4-20	0.696	0.702	0.699	0.704	0.702	0.707	0.704	0.710	0.6960	0.6998	0.6977	0.7017	0.6997	0.7037	0.7016	0.7056
3/4-28	0.711	0.716	0.713	0.718	0.716	0.720	0.718	0.722	0.7110	0.7145	0.7120	0.7160	0.7136	0.7176	0.7152	0.7192
13/16-12	0.722	0.731	0.727	0.736	0.731	0.740	0.736	0.745	0.7220	0.7276	0.7250	0.7303	0.7276	0.7329	0.7303	0.7356

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
13/16-16	0.745	0.752	0.749	0.756	0.752	0.759	0.756	0.763	0.7450	0.7491	0.7469	0.7512	0.7490	0.7533	0.7511	0.7554
13/16-20	0.758	0.764	0.761	0.766	0.764	0.770	0.766	0.772	0.7580	0.7623	0.7602	0.7642	0.7622	0.7662	0.7641	0.7681
7/8-9	0.755	0.767	0.761	0.773	0.767	0.778	0.773	0.785	0.7550	0.7614	0.7580	0.7647	0.7614	0.7681	0.7647	0.7714
7/8-12	0.785	0.794	0.790	0.799	0.794	0.803	0.799	0.808	0.7850	0.7900	0.7874	0.7926	0.7900	0.7952	0.7926	0.7978
7/8-14	0.798	0.806	0.802	0.810	0.806	0.814	0.810	0.818	0.7980	0.8022	0.8000	0.8045	0.8023	0.8068	0.8045	0.8090
7/8-16	0.807	0.814	0.811	0.818	0.814	0.821	0.818	0.825	0.8070	0.8116	0.8094	0.8137	0.8115	0.8158	0.8136	0.8179
7/8-20	0.821	0.827	0.824	0.829	0.827	0.832	0.829	0.835	0.8210	0.8248	0.8227	0.8267	0.8247	0.8287	0.8266	0.8306
7/8-28	0.836	0.840	0.838	0.843	0.840	0.845	0.843	0.847	0.8360	0.8395	0.8370	0.8410	0.8386	0.8426	0.8402	0.8442
15/16-12	0.847	0.856	0.852	0.861	0.856	0.865	0.861	0.870	0.8470	0.8524	0.8499	0.8550	0.8524	0.8575	0.8550	0.8601
15/16-16	0.870	0.877	0.874	0.881	0.877	0.884	0.881	0.888	0.8700	0.8741	0.8719	0.8762	0.8740	0.8783	0.8761	0.8804
15/16-20	0.883	0.889	0.886	0.891	0.889	0.895	0.891	0.897	0.8830	0.8873	0.8852	0.8892	0.8872	0.8912	0.8891	0.8931
1-8	0.865	0.878	0.871	0.884	0.878	0.890	0.884	0.896	0.8650	0.8722	0.8684	0.8759	0.8722	0.8797	0.8760	0.8835
1-12	0.910	0.919	0.915	0.924	0.919	0.928	0.924	0.933	0.9100	0.9148	0.9123	0.9173	0.9148	0.9198	0.9173	0.9223
1-14	0.923	0.931	0.927	0.934	0.931	0.938	0.934	0.942	0.9230	0.9271	0.9249	0.9293	0.9271	0.9315	0.9293	0.9337
1-16	0.932	0.939	0.936	0.943	0.939	0.946	0.943	0.950	0.9320	0.9366	0.9344	0.9387	0.9365	0.9408	0.9386	0.9429
1-20	0.946	0.952	0.949	0.954	0.952	0.957	0.954	0.960	0.9460	0.9498	0.9477	0.9517	0.9497	0.9537	0.9516	0.9556
1-28	0.961	0.966	0.963	0.968	0.966	0.970	0.968	0.972	0.9610	0.9645	0.9620	0.9660	0.9636	0.9676	0.9652	0.9692
1 1/16-12	0.972	0.981	0.977	0.986	0.981	0.990	0.986	0.995	0.9720	0.9773	0.9748	0.9798	0.9773	0.9823	0.9798	0.9848
1 1/16-16	0.995	1.002	0.999	1.055	1.002	1.009	1.055	1.013	0.9950	0.9991	0.9969	1.0012	0.9990	1.0033	1.0011	1.0054
1 1/16-18	1.002	1.009	1.005	1.012	1.009	1.015	1.012	1.018	1.0020	1.0065	1.0044	1.0085	1.0064	1.0105	1.0085	1.0126
1 1/8-7	0.970	0.984	0.977	0.991	0.984	0.998	0.991	1.005	0.9700	0.9790	0.9747	0.9833	0.9789	0.9875	0.9832	0.9918
1 1/8-8	0.990	1.003	0.996	1.009	1.003	1.015	1.009	1.021	0.9900	0.9972	0.9934	1.0009	0.9972	1.0047	1.0010	1.0085
1 1/8-12	1.035	1.044	1.040	1.049	1.044	1.053	1.049	1.058	1.0350	1.0398	1.0373	1.0423	1.0398	1.0448	1.0423	1.0473
1 1/8-16	1.057	1.064	1.061	1.068	1.064	1.071	1.068	1.075	1.0570	1.0616	1.0594	1.0637	1.0615	1.0658	1.0636	1.0679
1 1/8-18	1.065	1.072	1.068	1.075	1.072	1.078	1.075	1.081	1.0650	1.0690	1.0669	1.0710	1.0689	1.0730	1.0710	1.0751
1 1/8-20	1.071	1.077	1.074	1.079	1.077	1.082	1.079	1.085	1.0710	1.0748	1.0727	1.0767	1.0747	1.0787	1.0766	1.0806
1 1/8-28	1.086	1.091	1.088	1.093	1.091	1.095	1.093	1.097	1.0860	1.0895	1.0870	1.0910	1.0886	1.0926	1.0902	1.0942
1 3/16-12	1.097	1.106	1.102	1.111	1.106	1.115	1.111	1.120	1.0970	1.1023	1.0998	1.1048	1.1023	1.1073	1.1048	1.1098

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
$1\frac{3}{16}$-16	1.120	1.127	1.124	1.131	1.127	1.134	1.131	1.138	1.1200	1.1241	1.1219	1.1262	1.1240	1.1283	1.1261	1.1304
$1\frac{3}{16}$-18	1.127	1.134	1.130	1.137	1.134	1.140	1.137	1.143	1.1270	1.1315	1.1294	1.1335	1.1314	1.1355	1.1335	1.1376
$1\frac{1}{4}$-7	1.095	1.109	1.102	1.116	1.109	1.123	1.116	1.130	1.0950	1.1040	1.0997	1.1083	1.1039	1.1125	1.1082	1.1168
$1\frac{1}{4}$-8	1.115	1.128	1.121	1.134	1.128	1.140	1.134	1.146	1.1150	1.1222	1.1184	1.1259	1.1222	1.1297	1.1260	1.1335
$1\frac{1}{4}$-12	1.160	1.169	1.165	1.174	1.169	1.178	1.174	1.183	1.1600	1.1648	1.1623	1.1673	1.1648	1.1698	1.1673	1.1723
$1\frac{1}{4}$-16	1.182	1.189	1.186	1.193	1.189	1.196	1.193	1.200	1.1820	1.1866	1.1844	1.1887	1.1865	1.1908	1.1886	1.1929
$1\frac{1}{4}$-18	1.190	1.197	1.193	1.200	1.197	1.203	1.200	1.206	1.1900	1.1940	1.1919	1.1960	1.1939	1.1980	1.1960	1.2001
$1\frac{1}{4}$-20	1.196	1.202	1.199	1.204	1.202	1.207	1.204	1.210	1.1960	1.1998	1.1977	1.2017	1.1997	1.2037	1.2016	1.2056
$1\frac{5}{16}$-12	1.222	1.231	1.227	1.236	1.231	1.240	1.236	1.245	1.2220	1.2273	1.2248	1.2298	1.2273	1.2323	1.2298	1.2348
$1\frac{5}{16}$-16	1.245	1.252	1.249	1.256	1.252	1.259	1.256	1.263	1.2450	1.2491	1.2469	1.2512	1.2490	1.2533	1.2511	1.2554
$1\frac{5}{16}$-18	1.252	1.259	1.256	1.262	1.259	1.265	1.262	1.268	1.2520	1.2565	1.2544	1.2585	1.2564	1.2605	1.2585	1.2626
$1\frac{3}{8}$-6	1.195	1.210	1.203	1.221	1.210	1.225	1.221	1.239	1.1950	1.2046	1.1996	1.2096	1.2046	1.2146	1.2096	1.2196
$1\frac{3}{8}$-8	1.240	1.253	1.246	1.259	1.253	1.265	1.259	1.271	1.2400	1.2472	1.2434	1.2509	1.2472	1.2547	1.2510	1.2585
$1\frac{3}{8}$-12	1.285	1.294	1.290	1.299	1.294	1.303	1.299	1.308	1.2850	1.2898	1.2873	1.2923	1.2898	1.2948	1.2923	1.2973
$1\frac{3}{8}$-16	1.307	1.314	1.311	1.318	1.314	1.321	1.318	1.325	1.3070	1.3116	1.3094	1.3137	1.3115	1.3158	1.3136	1.3179
$1\frac{3}{8}$-18	1.315	1.322	1.318	1.325	1.322	1.328	1.325	1.331	1.3150	1.3190	1.3169	1.3210	1.3189	1.3230	1.3210	1.3251
$1\frac{7}{16}$-12	1.347	1.354	1.350	1.361	1.354	1.365	1.361	1.370	1.3470	1.3523	1.3498	1.3548	1.3523	1.3573	1.3548	1.3598
$1\frac{7}{16}$-16	1.370	1.377	1.374	1.381	1.377	1.384	1.381	1.388	1.3700	1.3741	1.3719	1.3762	1.3740	1.3783	1.3761	1.3804
$1\frac{7}{16}$-18	1.377	1.384	1.380	1.387	1.384	1.390	1.387	1.393	1.3770	1.3815	1.3794	1.3835	1.3814	1.3855	1.3835	1.3876
$1\frac{1}{2}$-6	1.320	1.335	1.328	1.346	1.335	1.350	1.346	1.364	1.3200	1.3296	1.3246	1.3346	1.3296	1.3396	1.3346	1.3446
$1\frac{1}{2}$-8	1.365	1.378	1.371	1.384	1.378	1.390	1.384	1.396	1.3650	1.3722	1.3684	1.3759	1.3722	1.3797	1.3760	1.3835
$1\frac{1}{2}$-12	1.410	1.419	1.4155	1.424	1.419	1.428	1.424	1.433	1.4100	1.4148	1.4123	1.4173	1.4148	1.4198	1.4173	1.4223
$1\frac{1}{2}$-16	1.432	1.439	1.436	1.443	1.439	1.446	1.443	1.450	1.4320	1.4366	1.4344	1.4387	1.4365	1.4408	1.4386	1.4429
$1\frac{1}{2}$-18	1.440	1.446	1.443	1.450	1.446	1.452	1.450	1.456	1.4400	1.4440	1.4419	1.4460	1.4439	1.4480	1.4460	1.4501
$1\frac{1}{2}$-20	1.446	1.452	1.449	1.454	1.452	1.457	1.454	1.460	1.4460	1.4498	1.4477	1.4517	1.4497	1.4537	1.4516	1.4556
$1\frac{9}{16}$-16	1.495	1.502	1.499	1.506	1.502	1.509	1.506	1.513	1.4950	1.4991	1.4969	1.5012	1.4990	1.5033	1.5011	1.5054
$1\frac{9}{16}$-18	1.502	1.509	1.505	1.512	1.509	1.515	1.512	1.518	1.5020	1.5065	1.5044	1.5085	1.5064	1.5105	1.5085	1.5126

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
1⅝-8	1.490	1.498	1.494	1.509	1.498	1.515	1.509	1.521	1.4900	1.4972	1.4934	1.5009	1.4972	1.5047	1.5010	1.5085
1⅝-12	1.535	1.544	1.540	1.549	1.544	1.553	1.549	1.558	1.5350	1.5398	1.5373	1.5423	1.5398	1.5448	1.5423	1.5473
1⅝-16	1.557	1.564	1.561	1.568	1.564	1.571	1.568	1.575	1.5570	1.5616	1.5594	1.5637	1.5615	1.5658	1.5636	1.5679
1⅝-18	1.565	1.572	1.568	1.575	1.572	1.578	1.575	1.581	1.5650	1.5690	1.5669	1.5710	1.5689	1.5730	1.5710	1.5751
1¹¹⁄₁₆-16	1.620	1.627	1.624	1.631	1.627	1.634	1.631	1.638	1.6200	1.6241	1.6219	1.6262	1.6240	1.6283	1.6261	1.6304
1¹¹⁄₁₆-18	1.627	1.634	1.630	1.637	1.634	1.640	1.637	1.643	1.6270	1.6315	1.6294	1.6335	1.6314	1.6355	1.6335	1.6376
1¾-5	1.534	1.551	1.543	1.560	1.551	1.568	1.560	1.577	1.5340	1.5455	1.5395	1.5515	1.5455	1.5575	1.5515	1.5635
1¾-8	1.615	1.628	1.621	1.634	1.628	1.640	1.634	1.646	1.6150	1.6222	1.6184	1.6259	1.6222	1.6297	1.6260	1.6335
1¾-12	1.660	1.669	1.665	1.674	1.669	1.678	1.674	1.683	1.6600	1.6648	1.6623	1.6673	1.6648	1.6698	1.6673	1.6723
1¾-16	1.682	1.689	1.686	1.693	1.689	1.696	1.693	1.700	1.6820	1.6866	1.6844	1.6887	1.6865	1.6908	1.6886	1.6929
1¾-20	1.696	1.702	1.699	1.704	1.702	1.707	1.704	1.710	1.6960	1.6998	1.6977	1.7017	1.6997	1.7037	1.7016	1.7056
1¹³⁄₁₆-16	1.745	1.752	1.749	1.756	1.752	1.759	1.756	1.763	1.7450	1.7491	1.7469	1.7512	1.7490	1.7533	1.7511	1.7554
1⅞-8	1.740	1.752	1.746	1.759	1.752	1.765	1.759	1.771	1.7400	1.7472	1.7434	1.7509	1.7472	1.7547	1.7510	1.7585
1⅞-12	1.785	1.794	1.790	1.799	1.794	1.803	1.799	1.808	1.7850	1.7898	1.7873	1.7923	1.7898	1.7948	1.7923	1.7973
1⅞-16	1.807	1.814	1.810	1.818	1.814	1.821	1.818	1.825	1.8070	1.8116	1.8094	1.8137	1.8115	1.8158	1.8136	1.8179
1¹⁵⁄₁₆-16	1.870	1.877	1.874	1.881	1.877	1.884	1.881	1.888	1.8700	1.8741	1.8719	1.8762	1.8740	1.8783	1.8761	1.8804
2-4½	1.759	1.777	1.768	1.786	1.777	1.795	1.786	1.804	1.7590	1.7727	1.7661	1.7794	1.7728	1.7861	1.7794	1.7927
2-8	1.865	1.878	1.871	1.884	1.878	1.890	1.884	1.896	1.8650	1.8722	1.8684	1.8759	1.8722	1.8797	1.8760	1.8835
2-12	1.910	1.919	1.915	1.924	1.919	1.928	1.924	1.933	1.9100	1.9148	1.9123	1.9173	1.9148	1.9198	1.9173	1.9223
2-16	1.932	1.939	1.936	1.943	1.939	1.946	1.943	1.950	1.9320	1.9366	1.9344	1.9387	1.9365	1.9408	1.9386	1.9429
2-20	1.946	1.952	1.949	1.954	1.952	1.957	1.954	1.960	1.9460	1.9498	1.9477	1.9517	1.9497	1.9537	1.9516	1.9556
2¹⁄₁₆-16	1.995	2.002	2.000	2.006	2.002	2.009	2.006	2.012	1.9950	1.9991	1.9969	2.0012	1.9990	2.0033	2.0011	2.0054
2⅛-8	1.990	2.003	1.996	2.009	2.003	2.015	2.009	2.021	1.9900	1.9972	1.9934	2.0009	1.9972	2.0047	2.0010	2.0085
2⅛-12	2.035	2.044	2.040	2.049	2.044	2.053	2.049	2.058	2.0350	2.0398	2.0373	2.0423	2.0398	2.0448	2.0423	2.0473
2⅛-16	2.057	2.064	2.061	2.068	2.064	2.071	2.068	2.075	2.0570	2.0616	2.0594	2.0637	2.0615	2.0658	2.0636	2.0679
2³⁄₁₆-16	2.120	2.127	2.124	2.131	2.127	2.134	2.131	2.138	2.1200	2.1241	2.1219	2.1262	2.1240	2.1283	2.1261	2.1304
2¼-4½	2.009	2.027	2.018	2.036	2.027	2.045	2.036	2.054	2.0090	2.0227	2.0161	2.0294	2.0228	2.0361	2.0294	2.0427

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{8}D$		Above $\frac{1}{8}D$ to $\frac{2}{5}D$		Above $\frac{2}{5}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{8}D$		Above $\frac{1}{8}D$ to $\frac{2}{5}D$		Above $\frac{2}{5}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
2¼-8	2.115	2.128	2.121	2.134	2.128	2.140	2.134	2.146	2.1150	2.1222	2.1184	2.1259	2.1222	2.1297	2.1260	2.1335
2¼-12	2.160	2.169	2.165	2.174	2.169	2.178	2.174	2.182	2.1600	2.1648	2.1623	2.1673	2.1648	2.1698	2.1673	2.1723
2¼-16	2.182	2.189	2.186	2.193	2.189	2.196	2.193	2.200	2.1820	2.1866	2.1844	2.1887	2.1865	2.1908	2.1886	2.1929
2¼-20	2.196	2.202	2.199	2.204	2.202	2.207	2.204	2.210	2.1960	2.1998	2.1977	2.2017	2.1997	2.2037	2.2016	2.2056
2⁵⁄₁₆-16	2.245	2.252	2.249	2.256	2.252	2.259	2.256	2.263	2.2450	2.2491	2.2469	2.2512	2.2490	2.2533	2.2511	2.2554
2⅜-12	2.285	2.294	2.290	2.299	2.294	2.303	2.299	2.308	2.2850	2.2898	2.2873	2.2923	2.2898	2.2948	2.2923	2.2973
2⅜-16	2.307	2.314	2.311	2.318	2.314	2.321	2.318	2.325	2.3070	2.3116	2.3094	2.3137	2.3115	2.3158	2.3136	2.3179
2⁷⁄₁₆-16	2.370	2.377	2.374	2.381	2.377	2.384	2.381	2.388	2.3700	2.3741	2.3719	2.3762	2.3740	2.3783	2.3761	2.3804
2½-4	2.229	2.248	2.238	2.258	2.248	2.267	2.258	2.277	2.2290	2.2444	2.2369	2.2519	2.2444	2.2594	2.2519	2.2669
2½-8	2.365	2.378	2.371	2.384	2.378	2.390	2.384	2.396	2.3650	2.3722	2.3684	2.3759	2.3722	2.3797	2.3760	2.3835
2½-12	2.410	2.419	2.415	2.424	2.419	2.428	2.424	2.433	2.4100	2.4148	2.4123	2.4173	2.4148	2.4198	2.4173	2.4223
2½-16	2.432	2.439	2.436	2.443	2.439	2.446	2.443	2.450	2.4320	2.4366	2.4344	2.4387	2.4365	2.4408	2.4386	2.4429
2½-20	2.446	2.452	2.449	2.454	2.452	2.457	2.454	2.460	2.4460	2.4498	2.4478	2.4517	2.4497	2.4537	2.4516	2.4556
2⅝-12	2.535	2.544	2.540	2.549	2.544	2.553	2.549	2.558	2.5350	2.5398	2.5373	2.5423	2.5398	2.5448	2.5423	2.5473
2⅝-16	2.557	2.564	2.561	2.568	2.564	2.571	2.568	2.575	2.5570	2.5616	2.5594	2.5637	2.5615	2.5658	2.5636	2.5679
2¾-4	2.479	2.498	2.489	2.508	2.498	2.517	2.508	2.527	2.4790	2.4944	2.4869	2.5019	2.4944	2.5094	2.5019	2.5169
2¾-8	2.615	2.628	2.621	2.634	2.628	2.640	2.634	2.644	2.6150	2.6222	2.6184	2.6259	2.6222	2.6297	2.6260	2.6335
2¾-12	2.660	2.669	2.665	2.674	2.669	2.678	2.674	2.683	2.6600	2.6648	2.6623	2.6673	2.6648	2.6698	2.6673	2.6723
2¾-16	2.682	2.689	2.686	2.693	2.689	2.696	2.693	2.700	2.6820	2.6866	2.6844	2.6887	2.6865	2.6908	2.6886	2.6929
2⅞-12	2.785	2.794	2.790	2.809	2.794	2.803	2.809	2.808	2.7850	2.7898	2.7873	2.7923	2.7898	2.7948	2.7923	2.7973
2⅞-16	2.807	2.814	2.811	2.818	2.814	2.821	2.818	2.825	2.8070	2.8116	2.8094	2.8137	2.8115	2.8158	2.8136	2.8179
3-4	2.729	2.748	2.739	2.758	2.748	2.767	2.758	2.777	2.7290	2.7444	2.7369	2.7519	2.7444	2.7594	2.7519	2.7669
3-8	2.865	2.878	2.871	2.884	2.878	2.890	2.884	2.896	2.8650	2.8722	2.8684	2.8759	2.8722	2.8797	2.8760	2.8835
3-12	2.910	2.919	2.915	2.924	2.919	2.928	2.924	2.933	2.9100	2.9148	2.9123	2.9173	2.9148	2.9198	2.9173	2.9223
3-16	2.932	2.939	2.936	2.943	2.939	2.946	2.943	2.950	2.9320	2.9366	2.9344	2.9387	2.9365	2.9408	2.9386	2.9429
3⅛-12	3.035	3.044	3.040	3.049	3.044	3.053	3.049	3.058	3.0350	3.0398	3.0373	3.0423	3.0398	3.0448	3.0423	3.0473
3⅛-16	3.057	3.064	3.061	3.068	3.064	3.071	3.068	3.075	3.0570	3.0616	3.0594	3.0637	3.0615	3.0658	3.0636	3.0679

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
3¼-4	2.979	2.998	2.989	3.008	2.998	3.017	3.008	3.027	2.9790	2.9944	2.9869	3.0019	2.9944	3.0094	3.0019	3.0169
3¼-8	3.115	3.128	3.121	3.134	3.128	3.140	3.134	3.146	3.1150	3.1222	3.1184	3.1259	3.1222	3.1297	3.1260	3.1335
3¼-12	3.160	3.169	3.165	3.174	3.169	3.178	3.174	3.183	3.1600	3.1648	3.1623	3.1673	3.1648	3.1698	3.1673	3.1723
3¼-16	3.182	3.189	3.186	3.193	3.189	3.196	3.193	3.200	3.1820	3.1866	3.1844	3.1887	3.1865	3.1908	3.1886	3.1929
3⅜-12	3.285	3.294	3.290	3.299	3.294	3.303	3.299	3.299	3.2850	3.2898	3.2873	3.2923	3.2898	3.2948	3.2923	3.2973
3⅜-16	3.307	3.314	3.311	3.318	3.314	3.321	3.317	3.325	3.3070	3.3116	3.3094	3.3137	3.3115	3.3158	3.3136	3.3179
3½-4	3.229	3.248	3.239	3.258	3.248	3.267	3.258	3.277	3.2290	3.2444	3.2369	3.2519	3.2444	3.2594	3.2519	3.2669
3½-8	3.365	3.378	3.371	2.384	3.378	3.390	3.384	3.396	3.3650	3.3722	3.3684	3.3759	3.3722	3.3797	3.3760	3.3835
3½-12	3.410	3.419	3.415	3.424	3.419	3.428	3.424	3.433	3.4100	3.4148	3.4123	3.4173	3.4148	3.4198	3.4173	3.4223
3½-16	3.432	3.439	3.436	3.443	3.439	3.446	3.443	3.450	3.4320	3.4366	3.4344	3.4387	3.4365	3.4408	3.4386	3.4429
3⅝-12	3.535	3.544	3.544	3.549	3.544	3.553	3.549	3.553	3.5350	3.5398	3.5373	3.5423	3.5398	3.5448	3.5423	3.5473
3⅝-16	3.557	3.564	3.561	3.568	3.567	3.571	3.568	3.575	3.5570	3.5616	3.5594	3.5637	3.5615	3.5658	3.5636	3.5679
3¾-4	3.479	3.498	3.489	3.508	3.498	3.517	3.508	3.527	3.4790	3.4944	3.4869	3.5019	3.4944	3.5094	3.5019	3.5169
3¾-8	3.615	3.628	3.615	3.634	3.628	3.640	3.634	3.646	3.6150	3.6222	3.6184	3.6259	3.6222	3.6297	3.6260	3.6335
3¾-12	3.660	3.669	3.665	3.674	3.669	3.678	3.674	3.683	3.6600	3.6648	3.6623	3.6673	3.6648	3.6698	3.6673	3.6723
¾-16	3.682	3.689	3.686	3.693	3.689	3.696	3.693	3.700	3.6820	3.6866	3.6844	3.6887	3.6865	3.6908	3.6886	3.6929
3⅞-12	3.785	3.794	3.790	3.799	3.794	3.803	3.799	3.808	3.7850	3.7898	3.7873	3.7923	3.7898	3.7948	3.7923	3.7973
3⅞-16	3.807	3.814	3.811	3.818	3.814	3.821	3.818	3.825	3.8070	3.8116	3.8094	3.8137	3.8115	3.8158	3.8136	3.8179
4-4	3.729	3.748	3.739	3.758	3.748	3.767	3.758	3.777	3.7290	3.7444	3.7369	3.7519	3.7444	3.7594	3.7519	3.7669
4-8	3.865	3.878	3.871	3.884	3.878	3.890	3.884	3.896	3.8650	3.8722	3.8684	3.8759	3.8722	3.8797	3.8760	3.8835
4-12	3.910	3.919	3.915	3.924	3.919	3.928	3.924	3.933	3.9100	3.9148	3.9123	3.9173	3.9148	3.9198	3.9173	3.9223
4-16	3.932	3.939	3.936	3.943	3.939	3.946	3.943	3.950	3.9320	3.9366	3.9344	3.9387	3.9365	3.9408	3.9386	3.9429
4¼-4	3.979	3.998	3.989	4.008	3.998	4.017	4.008	4.027	3.9790	3.9944	3.9869	4.0019	3.9944	4.0094	4.0019	4.0169
4¼-8	4.115	4.128	4.121	4.134	4.128	4.140	4.134	4.146	4.1150	4.1222	4.1184	4.1259	4.1222	4.1297	4.1260	4.1335
4¼-12	4.160	4.169	4.165	4.174	4.169	4.178	4.174	4.183	4.1600	4.1648	4.1623	4.1673	4.1648	4.1698	4.1673	4.1723
4¼-16	4.182	4.189	4.186	4.193	4.189	4.196	4.193	4.200	4.1820	4.1866	4.1844	4.1887	4.1865	4.1908	4.1886	4.1929
4½-4	4.229	4.248	4.239	4.258	4.248	4.267	4.258	4.277	4.2290	4.2444	4.2369	4.2519	4.2444	4.2594	4.2519	4.2669

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping Unified Threads**

Thread Size	Classes 1B and 2B								Class 3B							
	Length of Engagement (D = Nominal Size of Thread)															
	To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$		To and Including $\frac{1}{3}D$		Above $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
	Recommended Hole Size Limits															
	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max	Min[a]	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max[b]	Min	Max
4½-8	4.365	4.378	4.371	4.384	4.378	4.390	4.384	4.396	4.3650	4.3722	4.3684	4.3759	4.3722	4.3797	4.3760	4.3835
4½-12	4.410	4.419	4.419	4.424	4.419	4.428	4.424	4.433	4.4100	4.4148	4.4123	4.4173	4.4148	4.4198	4.4173	4.4223
4½-16	4.432	4.439	4.437	4.444	4.439	4.446	4.444	4.455	4.4320	4.4366	4.4344	4.4387	4.4365	4.4408	4.4386	4.4429
4¾-8	4.615	4.628	4.621	4.646	4.628	4.640	4.646	4.646	4.6150	4.6222	4.6184	4.6259	4.6222	4.6297	4.6260	4.6335
4¾-12	4.660	4.669	4.665	4.674	4.669	4.678	4.674	4.683	4.6600	4.6648	4.6623	4.6673	4.6648	4.6698	4.6673	4.6723
4¾-16	4.682	4.689	4.686	4.693	4.689	4.696	4.693	4.700	4.6820	4.6866	4.6844	4.6887	4.6865	4.6908	4.6886	4.6929
5-8	4.865	4.878	4.871	4.884	4.878	4.890	4.884	4.896	4.8650	4.8722	4.8684	4.8759	4.8722	4.8797	4.8760	4.8835
5-12	4.910	4.919	4.915	4.924	4.919	4.928	4.924	4.933	4.9100	4.9148	4.9123	4.9173	4.9148	4.9198	4.9173	4.9223
5-16	4.932	4.939	4.936	4.943	4.939	4.946	4.943	4.950	4.9320	4.9366	4.9344	4.9387	4.9365	4.9408	4.9386	4.9429
5¼-8	5.115	5.128	5.121	5.134	5.128	5.140	5.134	5.146	5.1150	5.1222	5.1184	5.1259	5.1222	5.1297	5.1260	5.1335
5¼-12	5.160	5.169	5.165	5.174	5.169	5.178	5.174	5.183	5.1600	5.1648	5.1623	5.1673	5.1648	5.1698	5.1673	5.1723
5¼-16	5.182	5.189	5.186	5.193	5.189	5.196	5.193	5.200	5.1820	5.1866	5.1844	5.1887	5.1865	5.1908	5.1886	5.1929
5½-8	5.365	5.378	5.371	5.384	5.378	5.390	5.384	5.396	5.3650	5.3722	5.3684	5.3759	5.3722	5.3797	5.3760	5.3835
5½-12	5.410	5.419	5.415	5.424	5.419	5.428	5.424	5.433	5.4100	5.4148	5.4123	5.4173	5.4148	5.4198	5.4173	5.4223
5½-16	5.432	5.439	5.436	5.442	5.439	5.446	5.442	5.450	5.4320	5.4366	5.4344	5.4387	5.4365	5.4408	5.4386	5.4429
5¾-8	5.615	5.628	5.621	5.634	5.628	5.640	5.634	5.646	5.6150	5.6222	5.6184	5.6259	5.6222	5.6297	5.6260	5.6335
5¾-12	5.660	5.669	5.665	5.674	5.669	5.678	5.674	5.683	5.6600	5.6648	5.6623	5.6673	5.6648	5.6698	5.6673	5.6723
5¾-16	5.682	5.689	5.686	5.693	5.689	5.696	5.693	5.700	5.6820	5.6866	5.6844	5.6887	5.6865	5.6908	5.6886	5.6929
6-8	5.865	5.878	5.871	5.896	5.878	5.890	5.896	5.896	5.8650	5.8722	5.8684	5.8759	5.8722	5.8797	5.8760	5.8835
6-12	5.910	5.919	5.915	5.924	5.919	5.928	5.924	5.933	5.9100	5.9148	5.9123	5.9173	5.9148	5.9198	5.9173	5.9223
6-16	5.932	5.939	5.935	5.943	5.939	5.946	5.943	5.950	5.9320	5.9366	5.9344	5.9387	5.9365	5.9408	5.9386	5.9429

[a] This is the minimum minor diameter specified in the thread tables, page 1951.

[b] This is the maximum minor diameter specified in the thread tables, page 1951.

All dimensions are in inches.

For basis of recommended hole size limits see accompanying text.

As an aid in selecting suitable drills, see the listing of American Standard drill sizes starting on page 933 in the twist drill section. For amount of expected drill oversize, see page 962.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Tap Drill Sizes for Threads of American National Form

Screw Thread		Commercial Tap Drills[a]		Screw Thread		Commercial Tap Drills[a]	
Outside Diam. Pitch	Root Diam.	Size or Number	Decimal Equiv.	Outside Diam. Pitch	Root Diam.	Size or Number	Decimal Equiv.
1/16-64	0.0422	3/64	0.0469	27	0.4519	15/32	0.4687
72	0.0445	3/64	0.0469	9/16-12	0.4542	31/64	0.4844
5/64-60	0.0563	1/16	0.0625	18	0.4903	33/64	0.5156
72	0.0601	52	0.0635	27	0.5144	17/32	0.5312
3/32-48	0.0667	49	0.0730	5/8-11	0.5069	17/32	0.5312
50	0.0678	49	0.0730	12	0.5168	35/64	0.5469
7/64-48	0.0823	43	0.0890	18	0.5528	37/64	0.5781
1/8-32	0.0844	3/32	0.0937	27	0.5769	19/32	0.5937
40	0.0925	38	0.1015	11/16-11	0.5694	19/32	0.5937
9/64-40	0.1081	32	0.1160	16	0.6063	5/8	0.6250
5/32-32	0.1157	1/8	0.1250	3/4-10	0.6201	21/32	0.6562
36	0.1202	30	0.1285	12	0.6418	43/64	0.6719
11/64-32	0.1313	9/64	0.1406	16	0.6688	11/16	0.6875
3/16-24	0.1334	26	0.1470	27	0.7019	23/32	0.7187
32	0.1469	22	0.1570	13/16-10	0.6826	23/32	0.7187
13/64-24	0.1490	20	0.1610	7/8-9	0.7307	49/64	0.7656
7/32-24	0.1646	16	0.1770	12	0.7668	51/64	0.7969
32	0.1782	12	0.1890	14	0.7822	13/16	0.8125
15/64-24	0.1806	10	0.1935	18	0.8028	53/64	0.8281
1/4-20	0.1850	7	0.2010	27	0.8269	27/32	0.8437
24	0.1959	4	0.2090	15/16-9	0.7932	53/64	0.8281
27	0.2019	3	0.2130	1 - 8	0.8376	7/8	0.8750
28	0.2036	3	0.2130	12	0.8918	59/64	0.9219
32	0.2094	7/32	0.2187	14	0.9072	15/16	0.9375
5/16-18	0.2403	F	0.2570	27	0.9519	31/32	0.9687
20	0.2476	17/64	0.2656	1 1/8 - 7	0.9394	63/64	0.9844
24	0.2584	I	0.2720	12	1.0168	1 3/64	1.0469
27	0.2644	J	0.2770	1 1/4 - 7	1.0644	1 7/64	1.1094
32	0.2719	9/32	0.2812	12	1.1418	1 11/64	1.1719
3/8-16	0.2938	5/16	0.3125	1 3/8 - 6	1.1585	1 7/32	1.2187
20	0.3100	21/64	0.3281	12	1.2668	1 19/64	1.2969
24	0.3209	Q	0.3320	1 1/2 - 6	1.2835	1 11/32	1.3437
27	0.3269	R	0.3390	12	1.3918	1 27/64	1.4219
7/16-14	0.3447	U	0.3680	1 5/8 - 5 1/2	1.3888	1 29/64	1.4531
20	0.3726	25/64	0.3906	1 3/4 - 5	1.4902	1 9/16	1.5625
24	0.3834	X	0.3970	1 7/8 - 5	1.6152	1 11/16	1.6875
27	0.3894	Y	0.4040	2 - 4 1/2	1.7113	1 25/32	1.7812
1/2-12	0.3918	27/64	0.4219	2 1/8 - 4 1/2	1.8363	1 29/32	1.9062
13	0.4001	27/64	0.4219	2 1/4 - 4 1/2	1.9613	2 1/32	2.0312
20	0.4351	29/64	0.4531	2 3/8 - 4	2.0502	2 1/8	2.1250
24	0.4459	29/64	0.4531	2 1/2 - 4	2.1752	2 1/4	2.2500

[a] These tap drill diameters allow approximately 75 percent of a full thread to be produced. For small thread sizes in the first column, the use of drills to produce the larger hole sizes shown in Table 3 will reduce defects caused by tap problems and breakage.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Tap Drills and Clearance Drills for Machine Screws with American National Thread Form

Size of Screw		No. of Threads per Inch	Tap Drills		Clearance Hole Drills			
					Close Fit		Free Fit	
No. or Diam.	Decimal Equiv.		Drill Size	Decimal Equiv.	Drill Size	Decimal Equiv.	Drill Size	Decimal Equiv.
0	.060	80	3/64	.0469	52	.0635	50	.0700
1	.073	64 72	53 53	.0595 .0595	48	.0760	46	.0810
2	.086	56 64	50 50	.0700 .0700	43	.0890	41	.0960
3	.099	48 56	47 45	.0785 .0820	37	.1040	35	.1100
4	.112	36[a] 40 48	44 43 42	.0860 .0890 .0935	32	.1160	30	.1285
5	.125	40 44	38 37	.1015 .1040	30	.1285	29	.1360
6	.138	32 40	36 33	.1065 .1130	27	.1440	25	.1495
8	.164	32 36	29 29	.1360 .1360	18	.1695	16	.1770
10	.190	24 32	25 21	.1495 .1590	9	.1960	7	.2010
12	.216	24 28	16 14	.1770 .1820	2	.2210	1	.2280
14	.242	20[a] 24[a]	10 7	.1935 .2010	D	.2460	F	.2570
1/4	.250	20 28	7 3	.2010 .2130	F	.2570	H	.2660
5/16	.3125	18 24	F I	.2570 .2720	P	.3230	Q	.3320
3/8	.375	16 24	5/16 Q	.3125 .3320	W	.3860	X	.3970
7/16	.4375	14 20	U 25/64	.3680 .3906	29/64	.4531	15/32	.4687
1/2	.500	13 20	27/64 29/64	.4219 .4531	33/64	.5156	17/32	.5312

[a] These screws are not in the American Standard but are from the former A.S.M.E. Standard.

Factors Influencing Minor Diameter Tolerances of Tapped Holes.—As stated in the Unified screw thread standard, the principle practical factors that govern minor diameter tolerances of internal threads are tapping difficulties, particularly tap breakage in the small sizes, availability of standard drill sizes in the medium and large sizes, and depth (radial) of engagement. Depth of engagement is related to the stripping strength of the thread assembly, and thus also to the length of engagement. It also has an influence on the tendency toward disengagement of the threads on one side when assembly is eccentric. The amount of possible eccentricity is one-half of the sum of the pitch diameter allowance and tolerances on both mating threads. For a given pitch, or height of thread, this sum increases with the diameter, and accordingly this factor would require a decrease in minor diameter tolerance with increase in diameter. However, such decrease in tolerance would often require the use of special drill sizes; therefore, to facilitate the use of standard drill sizes, for any given pitch the minor diameter tolerance for Unified thread classes 1B and 2B threads of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch diameter and larger is constant, in accordance with a formula given in the American Standard for Unified Screw Threads.

Effect of Length of Engagement of Minor Diameter Tolerances: There may be applications where the lengths of engagement of mating threads is relatively short or the combination of materials used for mating threads is such that the maximum minor diameter tolerance given in the Standard (based on a length of engagement equal to the nominal diameter) may not provide the desired strength of the fastening. Experience has shown that for lengths of engagement less than $\frac{2}{3}D$ (the minimum thickness of standard nuts)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the minor diameter tolerance may be reduced without causing tapping difficulties. In other applications the length of engagement of mating threads may be long because of design considerations or the combination of materials used for mating threads. As the threads engaged increase in number, a shallower depth of engagement may be permitted and still develop stripping strength greater than the external thread breaking strength. Under these conditions the maximum tolerance given in the Standard should be increased to reduce the possibility of tapping difficulties. The following paragraphs indicate how the aforementioned considerations were taken into account in determining the minor diameter limits for various lengths of engagement given in Table 3.

Recommended Hole Sizes before Tapping.—Recommended hole size limits before threading to provide for optimum strength of fastenings and tapping conditions are shown in Table 3 for classes 1B, 2B, and 3B. The hole size limit before threading, and the tolerances between them, are derived from the minimum and maximum minor diameters of the internal thread given in the dimensional tables for Unified threads in the screw thread section using the following rules:

1) For lengths of engagement in the range to and including $\frac{1}{3}D$, where D equals nominal diameter, the minimum hole size will be equal to the minimum minor diameter of the internal thread and the maximum hole size will be larger by one-half the minor diameter tolerance.

2) For the range from $\frac{1}{3}D$ to $\frac{2}{3}D$, the minimum and maximum hole sizes will each be one quarter of the minor diameter tolerance larger than the corresponding limits for the length of engagement to and including $\frac{1}{3}D$.

3) For the range from $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$ the minimum hole size will be larger than the minimum minor diameter of the internal thread by one-half the minor diameter tolerance and the maximum hole size will be equal to the maximum minor diameter.

2) For the range from $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$ the minimum and maximum hole sizes will each be one-quarter of the minor diameter tolerance of the internal thread larger than the corresponding limits for the $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$ length of engagement.

From the foregoing it will be seen that the difference between limits in each range is the same and equal to one-half of the minor diameter tolerance given in the Unified screw thread dimensional tables. This is a general rule, except that the minimum differences for sizes below $\frac{1}{4}$ inch are equal to the minor diameter tolerances calculated on the basis of lengths of engagement to and including $\frac{1}{3}D$. Also, for lengths of engagement greater than $\frac{1}{3}D$ and for sizes $\frac{1}{4}$ inch and larger the values are adjusted so that the difference between limits is never less than 0.004 inch.

For diameter-pitch combinations other than those given in Table 3, the foregoing rules should be applied to the tolerances given in the dimensional tables in the screw thread section or the tolerances derived from the formulas given in the Standard to determine the hole size limits.

Selection of Tap Drills: In selecting standard drills to produce holes within the limits given in Table 3 it should be recognized that drills have a tendency to cut oversize. The material on pages 961 and 962 may be used as a guide to the expected amount of oversize.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Unified Miniature Screw Threads—Recommended Hole Size Limits Before Tapping

Thread Size		Internal Threads		Lengths of Engagement					
		Minor Diameter Limits		To and including $\frac{2}{3}D$		Above $\frac{2}{3}D$ to $1\frac{1}{2}D$		Above $1\frac{1}{2}D$ to $3D$	
				Recommended Hole Size Limits					
	Pitch	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Designation	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm
0.30 UNM	**0.080**	**0.217**	**0.254**	**0.226**	**0.240**	**0.236**	**0.254**	**0.245**	**0.264**
0.35 UNM	0.090	0.256	0.297	0.267	0.282	0.277	0.297	0.287	0.307
0.40 UNM	**0.100**	**0.296**	**0.340**	**0.307**	**0.324**	**0.318**	**0.340**	**0.329**	**0.351**
0.45 UNM	0.100	0.346	0.390	0.357	0.374	0.368	0.390	0.379	0.401
0.50 UNM	**0.125**	**0.370**	**0.422**	**0.383**	**0.402**	**0.396**	**0.422**	**0.409**	**0.435**
0.55 UNM	0.125	0.420	0.472	0.433	0.452	0.446	0.472	0.459	0.485
0.60 UNM	**0.150**	**0.444**	**0.504**	**0.459**	**0.482**	**0.474**	**0.504**	**0.489**	**0.519**
0.70 UNM	0.175	0.518	0.586	0.535	0.560	0.552	0.586	0.569	0.603
0.80 UNM	**0.200**	**0.592**	**0.668**	**0.611**	**0.640**	**0.630**	**0.668**	**0.649**	**0.687**
0.90 UNM	0.225	0.666	0.750	0.687	0.718	0.708	0.750	0.729	0.771
1.00 UNM	**0.250**	**0.740**	**0.832**	**0.763**	**0.798**	**0.786**	**0.832**	**0.809**	**0.855**
1.10 UNM	0.250	0.840	0.932	0.863	0.898	0.886	0.932	0.909	0.955
1.20 UNM	**0.250**	**0.940**	**1.032**	**0.963**	**0.998**	**0.986**	**1.032**	**1.009**	**1.055**
1.40 UNM	0.300	1.088	1.196	1.115	1.156	1.142	1.196	1.169	1.223
Designation	Thds. per in.	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch	inch
0.30 UNM	**318**	**0.0085**	**0.0100**	**0.0089**	**0.0095**	**0.0093**	**0.0100**	**0.0096**	**0.0104**
0.35 UNM	282	0.0101	0.0117	0.0105	0.0111	0.0109	0.0117	0.0113	0.0121
0.40 UNM	**254**	**0.0117**	**0.0134**	**0.0121**	**0.0127**	**0.0125**	**0.0134**	**0.0130**	**0.0138**
0.45 UNM	254	0.0136	0.0154	0.0141	0.0147	0.0145	0.0154	0.0149	0.0158
0.50 UNM	**203**	**0.0146**	**0.0166**	**0.0150**	**0.0158**	**0.0156**	**0.0166**	**0.0161**	**0.0171**
0.55 UNM	203	0.0165	0.0186	0.0170	0.0178	0.0176	0.0186	0.0181	0.0191
0.60 UNM	**169**	**0.0175**	**0.0198**	**0.0181**	**0.0190**	**0.0187**	**0.0198**	**0.0193**	**0.0204**
0.70 UNM	145	0.0204	0.0231	0.0211	0.0221	0.0217	0.0231	0.0224	0.0237
0.80 UNM	**127**	**0.0233**	**0.0263**	**0.0241**	**0.0252**	**0.0248**	**0.0263**	**0.0256**	**0.0270**
0.90 UNM	113	0.0262	0.0295	0.0270	0.0283	0.0279	0.0295	0.0287	0.0304
1.00 UNM	**102**	**0.0291**	**0.0327**	**0.0300**	**0.0314**	**0.0309**	**0.0327**	**0.0319**	**0.0337**
1.10 UNM	102	0.0331	0.0367	0.0340	0.0354	0.0349	0.0367	0.0358	0.0376
1.20 UNM	**102**	**0.0370**	**0.0406**	**0.0379**	**0.0393**	**0.0388**	**0.0406**	**0.0397**	**0.0415**
1.40 UNM	85	0.0428	0.0471	0.0439	0.0455	0.0450	0.0471	0.0460	0.0481

As an aid in selecting suitable drills, see the listing of American Standard drill sizes in the twist drill section. Thread sizes in heavy type are preferred sizes.

Hole Sizes for Tapping Unified Miniature Screw Threads.—Table 6 indicates the hole size limits recommended for tapping. These limits are derived from the internal thread minor diameter limits given in the American Standard for Unified Miniature Screw Threads ASA B1.10-1958 and are disposed so as to provide the optimum conditions for tapping. The maximum limits are based on providing a functionally adequate fastening for the most common applications, where the material of the externally threaded member is of a strength essentially equal to or greater than that of its mating part. In applications where, because of considerations other than the fastening, the screw is made of an appreciably weaker material, the use of smaller hole sizes is usually necessary to extend thread engagement to a greater depth on the external thread. Recommended minimum hole sizes are greater than the minimum limits of the minor diameters to allow for the spin-up developed in tapping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In selecting drills to produce holes within the limits given in Table 6 it should be recognized that drills have a tendency to cut oversize. The material on page 962 may be used as a guide to the expected amount of oversize.

British Standard Tapping Drill Sizes for Screw and Pipe Threads.—British Standard BS 1157:1975 (2004) provides recommendations for tapping drill sizes for use with fluted taps for various ISO metric, Unified, British Standard fine, British Association, and British Standard Whitworth screw threads as well as British Standard parallel and taper pipe threads.

Table 7. British Standard Tapping Drill Sizes for ISO Metric Coarse Pitch Series Threads *BS 1157:1975 (2004)*

Nom. Size and Thread Diam.	Standard Drill Sizes[a]				Nom. Size and Thread Diam.	Standard Drill Sizes[a]			
	Recommended		Alternative			Recommended		Alternative	
	Size	Theoretical Radial Engagement with Ext. Thread (Percent)	Size	Theoretical Radial Engagement with Ext. Thread (Percent)		Size	Theoretical Radial Engagement with Ext. Thread (Percent)	Size	Theoretical Radial Engagement with Ext. Thread (Percent)
M 1	0.75	81.5	0.78	71.7	M 12	10.20	83.7	10.40	74.5[b]
M 1.1	0.85	81.5	0.88	71.7	M 14	12.00	81.5	12.20	73.4[b]
M 1.2	0.95	81.5	0.98	71.7	M 16	14.00	81.5	14.25	71.3[c]
M 1.4	1.10	81.5	1.15	67.9	M 18	15.50	81.5	15.75	73.4[c]
M 1.6	1.25	81.5	1.30	69.9	M 20	17.50	81.5	17.75	73.4[c]
M 1.8	1.45	81.5	1.50	69.9	M 22	19.50	81.5	19.75	73.4[c]
M 2	1.60	81.5	1.65	71.3	M 24	21.00	81.5	21.25	74.7[b]
M 2.2	1.75	81.5	1.80	72.5	M 27	24.00	81.5	24.25	74.7[b]
M 2.5	2.05	81.5	2.10	72.5	M 30	26.50	81.5	26.75	75.7[b]
M 3	2.50	81.5	2.55	73.4	M 33	29.50	81.5	29.75	75.7[b]
M 3.5	2.90	81.5	2.95	74.7	M 36	32.00	81.5	…	…
M 4	3.30	81.5	3.40	69.9[b]	M 39	35.00	81.5	…	…
M 4.5	3.70	86.8	3.80	76.1	M 42	37.50	81.5	…	…
M 5	4.20	81.5	4.30	71.3[b]	M 45	40.50	81.5	…	…
M 6	5.00	81.5	5.10	73.4	M 48	43.00	81.5	…	…
M 7	6.00	81.5	6.10	73.4	M 52	47.00	81.5	…	…
M 8	6.80	78.5	6.90	71.7[b]	M 56	50.50	81.5	…	…
M 9	7.80	78.5	7.90	71.7[b]	M 60	54.50	81.5	…	…
M 10	8.50	81.5	8.60	76.1	M 64	58.00	81.5	…	…
M 11	9.50	81.5	9.60	76.1	M 68	62.00	81.5	…	…

[a] These tapping drill sizes are for fluted taps only.
[b] For tolerance class 6H and 7H threads only.
[c] For tolerance class 7H threads only.
Drill sizes are given in millimeters.

In the accompanying Table 7, recommended and alternative drill sizes are given for producing holes for ISO metric coarse pitch series threads. These coarse pitch threads are suitable for the large majority of general-purpose applications, and the limits and tolerances for internal coarse threads are given in the table starting on page 2053. It should be noted that Table 7 is for fluted taps only since a fluteless tap will require for the same screw thread a different size of twist drill than will a fluted tap. When tapped, holes produced with drills of the recommended sizes provide for a theoretical radial engagement with the external thread of about 81 percent in most cases. Holes produced with drills of the alternative sizes provide for a theoretical radial engagement with the external thread of about 70 to 75 percent. In some cases, as indicated in Table 7, the alternative drill sizes are suitable only for medium (6H) or for free (7H) thread tolerance classes.

When relatively soft material is being tapped, there is a tendency for the metal to be squeezed down towards the root of the tap thread, and in such instances, the minor diameter of the tapped hole may become smaller than the diameter of the drill employed. Users

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

may wish to choose different tapping drill sizes to overcome this problem or for special purposes, and reference can be made to the pages mentioned above to obtain the minor diameter limits for internal pitch series threads.

Reference should be made to this standard BS 1157:1975 (2004) for recommended tapping hole sizes for other types of British Standard screw threads and pipe threads.

Table 8. British Standard Metric Bolt and Screw Clearance Holes *BS 4186:1967*

Nominal Thread Diameter	Clearance Hole Sizes			Nominal Thread Diameter	Clearance Hole Sizes		
	Close Fit Series	Medium Fit Series	Free Fit Series		Close Fit Series	Medium Fit Series	Free Fit Series
1.6	1.7	1.8	2.0	52.0	54.0	56.0	62.0
2.0	2.2	2.4	2.6	56.0	58.0	62.0	66.0
2.5	2.7	2.9	3.1	60.0	62.0	66.0	70.0
3.0	3.2	3.4	3.6	64.0	66.0	70.0	74.0
4.0	4.3	4.5	4.8	68.0	70.0	74.0	78.0
5.0	5.3	5.5	5.8	72.0	74.0	78.0	82.0
6.0	6.4	6.6	7.0	76.0	78.0	82.0	86.0
7.0	7.4	7.6	8.0	80.0	82.0	86.0	91.0
8.0	8.4	9.0	10.0	85.0	87.0	91.0	96.0
10.0	10.5	11.0	12.0	90.0	93.0	96.0	101.0
12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0	95.0	98.0	101.0	107.0
14.0	15.0	16.0	17.0	100.0	104.0	107.0	112.0
16.0	17.0	18.0	19.0	105.0	109.0	112.0	117.0
18.0	19.0	20.0	21.0	110.0	114.0	117.0	122.0
20.0	21.0	22.0	24.0	115.0	119.0	122.0	127.0
22.0	23.0	24.0	26.0	120.0	124.0	127.0	132.0
24.0	25.0	26.0	28.0	125.0	129.0	132.0	137.0
27.0	28.0	30.0	32.0	130.0	134.0	137.0	144.0
30.0	31.0	33.0	35.0	140.0	144.0	147.0	155.0
33.0	34.0	36.0	38.0	150.0	155.0	158.0	165.0
36.0	37.0	39.0	42.0	…	…	…	…
39.0	40.0	42.0	45.0	…	…	…	…
42.0	43.0	45.0	48.0	…	…	…	…
45.0	46.0	48.0	52.0	…	…	…	…
48.0	50.0	52.0	56.0	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are given in millimeters.

British Standard Clearance Holes for Metric Bolts and Screws.—The dimensions of the clearance holes specified in this British Standard BS 4186:1967 have been chosen in such a way as to require the use of the minimum number of drills. The recommendations cover three series of clearance holes, namely close fit (H 12), medium fit (H 13), and free fit (H 14) and are suitable for use with bolts and screws specified in the following metric British Standards: BS 3692, ISO metric precision hexagon bolts, screws, and nuts; BS 4168, Hexagon socket screws and wrench keys; BS 4183, Machine screws and machine screw nuts; and BS 4190, ISO metric black hexagon bolts, screws, and nuts. The sizes are in accordance with those given in ISO Recommendation R273, and the range has been extended up to 150 millimeters diameter in accordance with an addendum to that recommendation. The selection of clearance holes sizes to suit particular design requirements can of course be dependent upon many variable factors. It is however felt that the medium fit series should suit the majority of general purpose applications. In the Standard, limiting dimensions are given in a table which is included for reference purposes only, for use in instances where it may be desirable to specify tolerances.

To avoid any risk of interference with the radius under the head of bolts and screws, it is necessary to countersink slightly all recommended clearance holes in the close and

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

medium fit series. Dimensional details for the radius under the head of fasteners made according to BS 3692 are given on page 1763; those for fasteners to BS 4168 are given on page 1827; those to BS 4183 are given on pages 1801 through 1805.

Cold Form Tapping.—Cold form taps do not have cutting edges or conventional flutes; the threads on the tap form the threads in the hole by displacing the metal in an extrusion or swaging process. The threads thus produced are stronger than conventionally cut threads because the grains in the metal are unbroken and the displaced metal is work hardened. The surface of the thread is burnished and has an excellent finish. Although chip problems are eliminated, cold form tapping does displace the metal surrounding the hole and countersinking or chamfering before tapping is recommended. Cold form tapping is not recommended if the wall thickness of the hole is less than two-thirds of the nominal diameter of the thread. If possible, blind holes should be drilled deep enough to permit a cold form tap having a four thread lead to be used as this will require less torque, produce less burr surrounding the hole, and give a greater tool life.

The operation requires 0 to 50 percent more torque than conventional tapping, and the cold form tap will pick up its own lead when entering the hole; thus, conventional tapping machines and tapping heads can be used. Another advantage is the better tool life obtained. The best results are obtained by using a good lubricating oil instead of a conventional cutting oil.

The method can be applied only to relatively ductile metals, such as low-carbon steel, leaded steels, austenitic stainless steels, wrought aluminum, low-silicon aluminum die-casting alloys, zinc die-casting alloys, magnesium, copper, and ductile copper alloys. A higher than normal tapping speed can be used, sometimes by as much as 100 percent.

Conventional tap drill sizes should not be used for cold form tapping because the metal is displaced to form the thread. The cold formed thread is stronger than the conventionally tapped thread, so the thread height can be reduced to 60 percent without much loss of strength; however, the use of a 65 percent thread is strongly recommended. The following formula is used to calculate the theoretical hole size for cold form tapping:

$$\text{US:}\quad \text{Theoretical hole size} = \text{basic tap O.D.} - \frac{0.0068 \times \text{percent of full thread}}{\text{threads per inch}}$$

$$\text{Metric:}\quad \textbf{Theoretical hole size} = \textbf{basic tap O.D.} - \frac{\textbf{Threads pitch} \times \textbf{percent of full thread}}{\textbf{147.06}}$$

The theoretical hole size and the tap drill sizes for American Unified threads are given in Table 9, and Table 10 lists drills for ISO metric threads. Sharp drills should be used to prevent cold-working the walls of the hole, especially on metals that are prone to work hardening. Such damage may cause the torque to increase, possibly stopping the machine or breaking the tap. On materials that can be die cast, cold form tapping can be done in cored holes provided the correct core pin size is used. The core pins are slightly tapered, so the theoretical hole size should be at the position on the pin that corresponds to one-half of the required engagement length of the thread in the hole. The core pins should be designed to form a chamfer on the hole to accept the vertical extrusion.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Theoretical and Tap Drill or Core Hole Sizes for Cold Form Tapping Unified Threads

Tap Size	Threads Per Inch	Percentage of Full Thread								
		75			65			55		
		Theor. Hole Size	Nearest Drill Size	Dec. Equiv.	Theor. Hole Size	Nearest Drill Size	Dec. Equiv.	Theor. Hole Size	Nearest Drill Size	Dec. Equiv.
0	80	0.0536	1.35 mm	0.0531	0.0545	…	…	0.0554	54	0.055
1	64	0.0650	1.65 mm	0.0650	0.0661	…	…	0.0672	51	0.0670
	72	0.0659	1.65 mm	0.0650	0.0669	1.7 mm	0.0669	0.0679	51	0.0670
2	56	0.0769	1.95 mm	0.0768	0.0781	5/64	0.0781	0.0794	2.0 mm	0.0787
	64	0.0780	5/64	0.0781	0.0791	2.0 mm	0.0787	0.0802	…	…
3	48	0.0884	2.25 mm	0.0886	0.0898	43	0.089	0.0913	2.3 mm	0.0906
	56	0.0889	43	0.089	0.0911	2.3 mm	0.0906	0.0924	2.35 mm	0.0925
4	40	0.0993	2.5 mm	0.0984	0.1010	39	0.0995	0.1028	2.6 mm	0.1024
	48	0.0104	38	0.1015	0.1028	2.6 mm	0.1024	0.1043	37	0.1040
5	40	0.1123	34	0.1110	0.1140	33	0.113	0.1158	32	0.1160
	44	0.1134	33	0.113	0.1150	2.9 mm	0.1142	0.1166	32	…
6	32	0.1221	3.1 mm	0.1220	0.1243	…	…	0.1264	3.2 mm	0.1260
	40	0.1253	1/8	0.1250	0.1270	3.2 mm	0.1260	0.1288	30	0.1285
8	32	0.1481	3.75 mm	0.1476	0.1503	25	0.1495	0.1524	24	0.1520
	36	0.1498	25	0.1495	0.1518	24	0.1520	0.1537	3.9 mm	0.1535
10	24	0.1688	…	…	0.1717	11/64	0.1719	0.1746	17	0.1730
	32	0.1741	17	0.1730	0.1763	…	…	0.1784	4.5 mm	0.1772
12	24	0.1948	10	0.1935	0.1977	5.0 mm	0.1968	0.2006	5.1 mm	0.2008
	28	0.1978	5.0 mm	0.1968	0.2003	8	0.1990	0.2028	…	…
1/4	20	0.2245	5.7 mm	0.2244	0.2280	1	0.2280	0.2315	…	…
	28	0.2318	…	…	0.2343	A	0.2340	0.2368	6.0 mm	0.2362
5/16	18	0.2842	7.2 mm	0.2835	0.2879	7.3 mm	0.2874	0.2917	7.4 mm	0.2913
	24	0.2912	7.4 mm	0.2913	0.2941	M	0.2950	0.2969	19/64	0.2969
3/8	16	0.3431	11/32	0.3437	0.3474	S	0.3480	0.3516	…	…
	24	0.3537	9.0 mm	0.3543	0.3566	…	…	0.3594	23/64	0.3594
7/16	14	0.4011	…	…	0.4059	13/32	0.4062	0.4108	…	…
	20	0.4120	Z	0.413	0.4154	…	…	0.4188	…	…
1/2	13	0.4608	…	…	0.4660	…	…	0.4712	12 mm	0.4724
	20	0.4745	…	…	0.4779	…	…	0.4813	…	…
9/16	12	0.5200	…	…	0.5257	…	…	0.5313	17/32	0.5312
	18	0.5342	13.5 mm	0.5315	0.5380	…	…	0.5417	…	…
5/8	11	0.5787	37/64	0.5781	0.5848	…	…	0.5910	15 mm	0.5906
	18	0.5976	19/32	0.5937	0.6004	…	…	0.6042	…	…
3/4	10	0.6990	…	…	0.7058	45/64	0.7031	0.7126	…	…
	16	0.7181	23/32	0.7187	0.7224	…	…	0.7266	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Tap Drill or Core Hole Sizes for Cold Form Tapping ISO Metric Threads

Nominal Size of Tap	Pitch	Recommended Tap Drill Size
1.6 mm	0.35 mm	1.45 mm
1.8 mm	0.35 mm	1.65 mm
2.0 mm	0.40 mm	1.8 mm
2.2 mm.	0.45 mm	2.0 mm
2.5 mm	0.45 mm	2.3 mm
3.0 mm	0.50 mm	2.8 mm[a]
3.5 mm	0.60 mm	3.2 mm
4.0 mm	0.70 mm	3.7 mm
4.5 mm	0.75 mm	4.2 mm[a]
5.0 mm	0.80 mm	4.6 mm
6.0 mm	1.00 mm	5.6 mm[a]
7.0 mm	1.00 mm	6.5 mm
8.0 mm	1.25 mm	7.4 mm
10.0 mm	1.50 mm	9.3 mm

[a] These diameters are the nearest stocked drill sizes and not the theoretical hole size, and may not produce 60 to 75 percent full thread.

The sizes are calculated to provide 60 to 75 percent of full thread.

Removing a Broken Tap.—Broken taps can be removed by electrodischarge machining (EDM), and this method is recommended when available. When an EDM machine is not available, broken taps may be removed by using a tap extractor, which has fingers that enter the flutes of the tap; the tap is backed out of the hole by turning the extractor with a wrench. Sometimes the injection of a small amount of a proprietary solvent into the hole will be helpful. A solvent can be made by diluting about one part nitric acid with five parts water. The action of the proprietary solvent or the diluted nitric acid on the steel loosens the tap so that it can be removed with pliers or with a tap extractor. The hole should be washed out afterwards so that the acid will not continue to work on the part. Another method is to add, by electric arc welding, additional metal to the shank of the broken tap, above the level of the hole. Care must be taken to prevent depositing metal on the threads in the tapped hole. After the shank has been built up, the head of a bolt or a nut is welded to it and then the tap may be backed out.

Tap Drills for Pipe Taps

Size of Tap	Drills for Briggs Pipe Taps	Drills for Whitworth Pipe Taps	Size of Tap	Drills for Briggs Pipe Taps	Drills for Whitworth Pipe Taps	Size of Tap	Drills for Briggs Pipe Taps	Drills for Whitworth Pipe Taps
1/8	11/32	5/16	1 1/4	1 1/2	1 15/32	3 1/4	…	3 1/2
1/4	7/16	27/64	1 1/2	1 23/32	1 25/32	3 1/2	3 3/4	3 3/4
3/8	19/32	9/16	1 3/4	…	1 15/16	3 3/4	…	4
1/2	23/32	11/16	2	2 3/16	2 5/32	4	4 1/4	4 1/4
5/8	…	25/32	2 1/4	…	2 13/32	4 1/2	4 3/4	4 3/4
3/4	15/16	29/32	2 1/2	2 5/8	2 25/32	5	5 5/16	5 1/4
7/8	…	1 1/16	2 3/4	…	3 1/32	5 1/2	…	5 3/4
1	1 5/32	1 1/8	3	3 1/4	3 9/32	6	6 3/8	6 1/4

All dimensions are in inches.

To secure the best results, the hole should be reamed before tapping with a reamer having a taper of 3/4 inch per foot.

Power for Pipe Taps.—The power required for driving pipe taps is given in the following table, which includes nominal pipe tap sizes from 2 to 8 inches.

The holes to be tapped were reamed with standard pipe tap reamers before tapping. The horsepower recorded was read off just before the tap was reversed. The table gives the net horsepower, deductions being made for the power required to run the machine without a load. The material tapped was cast iron, except in two instances, where cast steel was tapped. It will be seen that nearly double the power is required for tapping cast steel. The

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

power varies, of course, with the conditions. More power than that indicated in the table will be required if the cast iron is of a harder quality or if the taps are not properly relieved. The taps used in these experiments were of the inserted-blade type, the blades being made of high-speed steel.

Power Required for Pipe Taps

Nominal Tap Size		Rev. per Min.	Net Power		Thickness of Metal		Nominal Tap Size		Rev. per Min.	Net Power		Thickness of Metal	
inch	mm		H.P.	kW	inch	mm	inch	mm		H.P.	kW	inch	mm
2	50.80	40	4.24	3.16	1⅛	28.58	3½	88.90	25.6	7.20	5.37	1¾	44.45
2½	63.50	40	5.15	3.84	1⅛	28.58	4	101.60	18	6.60	4.92	2	50.80
[a]2½	63.50	38.5	9.14	6.81	1⅛	28.58	5	127.00	18	7.70	5.74	2	50.80
3	76.20	40	5.75	4.29	1⅛	28.58	6	152.40	17.8	8.80	6.56	2	50.80
[a]3	76.20	38.5	9.70	7.23	1⅛	28.58	8	203.20	14	7.96	5.93	2½	63.50

[a] Tapping cast steel; other tests in cast iron.

High-Speed CNC Tapping.—Tapping speed depends on the type of material being cut, the type of cutting tool, the speed and rigidity of the machine, the rigidity of the part-holding fixture, and the proper use of coolants and cutting fluids. When tapping, each revolution of the tool feeds the tap a distance equal to the thread pitch. Both spindle speed and feed per revolution must be accurately controlled so that changes in spindle speed result in a corresponding change in feed rate. If the feed/rev is not right, a stripped thread or broken tap will result. NC/CNC machines equipped with the *synchronous tapping* feature are able to control the tap feed as a function of spindle speed. These machines can use rigid-type tap holders or automatic tapping attachments and are able to control depth very accurately. Older NC machines that are unable to reliably coordinate spindle speed and feed must use a tension-compression type tapping head that permits some variation of the spindle speed while still letting the tap feed at the required rate.

CNC machines capable of synchronous tapping accurately coordinate feed rate and rotational speed so that the tap advances at the correct rate regardless of the spindle speed. A canned tapping cycle (see *Right Hand Thread (G84)* and *Left Hand Thread (G74)* on page 1369 in the *CNC NUMERICAL CONTROL PROGRAMMING* section) usually controls the operation, and speed and feed are set by the machine operator or part programmer. Synchronized tapping requires reversing the tapping spindle twice for each hole tapped, once after finishing the cut and again at the end of the cycle. Because the rotating mass is fairly large (motor, spindle, chuck or tap holder, and tap), the acceleration and deceleration of the tap are rather slow and a lot of time is lost by this process. The frequent changes in cutting speed during the cut also accelerate tap wear and reduce tap life.

A self-reversing tapping attachment has a forward drive that rotates in the same direction as the machine spindle, a reverse drive that rotates in the opposite direction, and a neutral position in between the two. When a hole is tapped, the spindle feeds at a slightly slower rate than the tap to keep the forward drive engaged until the tap reaches the bottom of the hole. Through holes are tapped by feeding to the desired depth and then retracting the spindle, which engages the tapping-head reverse drive and backs the tap out of the hole—the spindle does not need to be reversed. For tapping blind holes, the spindle is fed to a depth equal to the thread depth minus the self-feed of the tapping attachment. When the spindle is retracted (without reversing), the tap continues to feed forward a short distance (the tapping head self-feed distance) before the reverse drive engages and reverse drives the tap out of the hole. The depth can be controlled to within about $\frac{1}{4}$ revolution of the tap. The tapping cycle normally used for the self-reversing tap attachment is a standard boring cycle with feed return and no dwell. A typical programming cycle is illustrated with a G85 block on page 1369. The inward feed is set to about 95 percent of the normal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tapping feed (i.e., 95 percent of the pitch per revolution). Because the tap is lightweight, tap reversal is almost instantaneous and tapping speed is very fast compared with synchronous tapping.

Tapping speeds are usually given in surface feet per minute (sfm) or the equivalent feet per minute (fpm or ft/min), so a conversion is necessary to get the spindle speed in revolutions per minute. The tapping speed in rpm depends on the diameter of the tap, and is given by the following formula:

$$\text{rpm} = \frac{\text{sfm} \times 12}{d \times 3.14159} = \frac{\text{sfm} \times 3.82}{d}$$

where d is the nominal diameter of the tap in inches. As indicated previously, the feed in in/rev is equal to the thread pitch and is independent of the cutting speed. The feed rate in inches per minute is found by dividing the tapping speed in rpm by the number of threads per inch, or by multiplying the speed in rpm by the pitch or feed per revolution:

$$\text{feed rate (in/min)} = \frac{\text{rpm}}{\text{threads per inch}} = \text{rpm} \times \text{thread pitch} = \text{rpm} \times \text{feed/rev}$$

Example: If the recommended tapping speed for 1020 steel is given as 45 to 60 sfm, find the required spindle speed and feed rate for tapping a 1/4-20 UNF thread in 1020 steel.

Assuming that the machine being used is in good condition and rigid, and the tap is sharp, use the higher rate of 60 sfm and calculate the required spindle speed and feed rate as follows:

$$\text{speed} = \frac{60 \times 3.82}{0.25} = 916.8 \approx 920 \text{ rpm} \qquad \text{feed rate} = \frac{920}{20} = 46 \text{ in/min}$$

Coolant for Tapping.—Proper use of through-the-tap high-pressure coolant/lubricant can result in increased tap life, increased speed and feed, and more accurate threads. In most chip-cutting processes, cutting fluid is used primarily as a coolant, with lubrication being a secondary but important benefit. Tapping, however, requires a cutting fluid with lubricity as the primary property and coolant as a secondary benefit. Consequently, the typical blend of 5 percent coolant concentrate to 95 percent water is too low for best results. An increased percentage of concentrate in the blend helps the fluid to cling to the tap, providing better lubrication at the cutting interface. A method of increasing the tap lubrication qualities without changing the concentration of the primary fluid blend is to use a cutting fluid dispenser controlled by an M code different from that used to control the high-pressure flood coolant (for example, use an M08 code in addition to M07). The secondary coolant-delivery system applies a small amount of an edge-type cutting fluid (about a drop at a time) directly onto the tap-cutting surfaces providing the lubrication needed for cutting. The edge-type fluid applied in this way clings to the tap, increasing the lubrication effect and ensuring that the cutting fluid becomes directly involved in the cutting action at the shear zone.

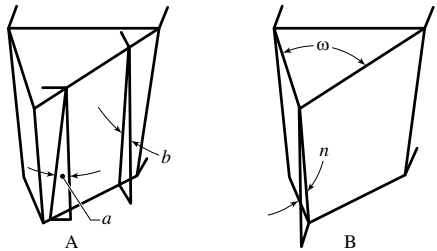
High-pressure coolant fed through the tap is important in many high-volume tapping applications. The coolant is fed directly through the spindle or tool holder to the cutting zone, greatly improving the process of chip evacuation and resulting in better thread quality. High-pressure through-the-tap coolant flushes blind holes before the tap enters and can remove chips from the holes after tapping is finished. The flushing action prevents chip recutting by forcing chips through the flutes and back out of the hole, improving the surface of the thread and increasing tap life. By improving lubrication and reducing heat and friction, the use of high-pressure coolant may result in increased tap life up to five times that of conventional tapping and may permit speed and feed increases that reduce overall cycle time.

Combined Drilling and Tapping.—A special tool that drills and taps in one operation can save a lot of time by reducing setup and eliminating a secondary operation in some

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

applications. A combination drill and tap can be used for through holes if the length of the fluted drill section is greater than the material thickness, but cannot be used for drilling and tapping blind holes because the tip (drill point) must cut completely through the material before the tapping section begins to cut threads. Drilling and tapping depths up to twice the tool diameter are typical. Determine the appropriate speed by starting the tool at the recommended speed for the tap size and material, and adjust the speed higher or lower to suit the application. Feed during tapping is dependent on the thread pitch. NC/CNC programs can use a fast drilling speed and a slower tapping speed to combine both operations into one and minimize cutting time.

Relief Angles for Single-Point Thread Cutting Tools.—The surface finish on threads cut with single-point thread cutting tools is influenced by the relief angles on the tools. The leading and trailing cutting edges that form the sides of the thread, and the cutting edge at the nose of the tool must all be provided with an adequate amount of relief. Moreover, it is recommended that the effective relief angle, a_e, for all of these cutting edges be made equal, although the practice in some shops is to use slightly less relief at the trailing cutting edge. While too much relief may weaken the cutting edge, causing it to chip, an inadequate amount of relief will result in rough threads and in a shortened tool life. Other factors that influence the finish produced on threads include the following: the work material; the cutting speed; the cutting fluid used; the method used to cut the thread; and, the condition of the cutting edge.



Two similar diagrams showing relationships of various relief angles of thread cutting tools

Relief angles on single-point thread cutting tools are often specified on the basis of experience. While this method may give satisfactory results in many instances, better results can usually be obtained by calculating these angles, using the formulas provided further on. When special high helix angle threads are to be cut, the magnitude of the relief angles should always be calculated. These calculations are based on the effective relief angle, a_e: this is the angle between the flank of the tool and the sloping sides of the thread, measured in a direction parallel to the axis of the thread. Recommended values of this angle are 8 to 14 degrees for high-speed steel tools, and 5 to 10 degrees for cemented carbide tools. The larger values are recommended for cutting threads on soft and gummy materials, and the smaller values are for the harder materials, which inherently take a better surface finish. Harder materials also require more support below the cutting edges, which is provided by using a smaller relief angle. These values are recommended for the relief angle below the cutting edge at the nose without any further modification. The angles below the leading and trailing side cutting edges are modified, using the formulas provided. The angles b and b' are the relief angles actually ground on the tool below the leading and trailing side cutting edges respectively; they are measured perpendicular to the side cutting edges. When designing or grinding the thread cutting tool, it is sometimes helpful to know the magnitude of the angle, n, for which a formula is provided. This angle would occur only in the event that the tool were ground to a sharp point. It is the angle of the edge formed by the intersection of the flank surfaces.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\tan\phi = \frac{\text{lead of thread}}{\pi K} \qquad \tan\phi' = \frac{\text{lead of thread}}{\pi D}$$

$$a = a_e + \phi$$
$$a' = a_e - \phi'$$

$$\tan b = \tan a \cos\frac{1}{2}\omega$$

$$\tan b' = \tan a' \cos\frac{1}{2}\omega$$

$$\tan n = \frac{\tan a - \tan a'}{2\tan\frac{1}{2}\omega}$$

where θ = helix angle of thread at minor diameter
θ' = helix angle of thread at major diameter
K = minor diameter of thread
D = major diameter of thread
a = side relief angle parallel to thread axis at leading edge of tool
a' = side relief angle parallel to thread axis at trailing edge of tool
a_e = effective relief angle
b = side relief angle perpendicular to leading edge of tool
b' = side relief angle perpendicular to trailing edge of tool
ω = included angle of thread cutting tool
n = nose angle resulting from intersection of flank surfaces

Example: Calculate the relief angles and the nose angle n for a single-point thread cutting tool that is to be used to cut a 1-inch diameter, 5-threads-per-inch, double Acme thread. The lead of this thread is $2 \times 0.200 = 0.400$ inch. The included angle ω of this thread is 29 degrees, the minor diameter K is 0.780 inch, and the effective relief angle a_e below all cutting edges is to be 10 degrees.

$$\tan\phi = \frac{\text{lead of thread}}{\pi K} = \frac{0.400}{\pi \times 0.780}$$
$$\phi = 9.27°(9°16')$$
$$\tan\phi' = \frac{\text{lead of thread}}{\pi D} = \frac{0.400}{\pi \times 1.000}$$
$$\phi' = 7.26°(7°15')$$
$$a = a_e + \phi = 10° + 9.27° = 19.27°$$
$$a' = a_e - \phi' = 10° - 7.26° = 2.74°$$
$$\tan b = \tan a \cos\frac{1}{2}\omega = \tan 19.27 \cos 14.5$$
$$b = 18.70°(18°42')$$
$$\tan b' = \tan a' \cos\frac{1}{2}\omega = \tan 2.74 \cos 14.5$$
$$b' = 2.65°(2°39')$$
$$\tan n = \frac{\tan a - \tan a'}{2\tan\frac{1}{2}\omega} = \frac{\tan 19.27 - \tan 2.74}{2\tan 14.5}$$
$$n = 30.26°(30°16')$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Lathe Change Gears

Change Gears for Thread Cutting.—To determine the change gears to use for cutting a thread of given pitch, first find what number of threads per inch will be cut when gears of the same size are placed on the lead screw and spindle stud, either by trial or by referring to the index plate; then multiply this number, called the "lathe screw constant," by some trial number to obtain the number of teeth in the gear for the spindle stud, and multiply the threads per inch to be cut by the *same* trial number to obtain the number of teeth in the gear for the lead screw. Expressing this rule as a formula:

$$\frac{\text{Trial number} \times \text{lathe screw constant}}{\text{Trial number} \times \text{threads per inch to be cut}} = \frac{\text{teeth in gear on spindle stud}}{\text{teeth in gear on lead screw}}$$

For example, suppose the available change gears supplied with the lathe have 24, 28, 32, 36 teeth, etc., the number increasing by 4 up to 100, and that 10 threads per inch are to be cut in a lathe having a lathe screw constant of 6; then, if the screw constant is written as the numerator, the number of threads per inch to be cut as the denominator of a fraction, and both numerator and denominator are multiplied by some trial number, say, 4, it is found that gears having 24 and 40 teeth can be used. Thus:

$$\frac{6}{10} = \frac{6 \times 4}{10 \times 4} = \frac{24}{40}$$

The 24-tooth gear goes on the spindle stud and the 40-toothgear on the lead screw.

The lathe screw constant is, of course, equal to the number of threads per inch on the lead screw, provided the spindle stud and spindle are geared in the ratio of 1 to 1, which, however, is not always so.

Compound Gearing.—To find the change gears used in compound gearing, place the screw constant as the numerator and the number of threads per inch to be cut as the denominator of a fraction; resolve both numerator and denominator into two factors each, and multiply each "pair" of factors by the same number, until values are obtained representing suitable numbers of teeth for the change gears. (One factor in the numerator and one in the denominator make a "pair" of factors.)

Example: —$1\frac{3}{4}$ threads per inch are to be cut in a lathe having a screw constant of 8; the available gears have 24, 28, 32, 36, 40 teeth. etc., increasing by 4 up to 100. Following the rule:

$$\frac{8}{1\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{2 \times 4}{1 \times 1\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{(2 \times 36) \times (4 \times 16)}{(1 \times 36) \times (1\frac{3}{4} \times 16)} = \frac{72 \times 64}{36 \times 28}$$

The gears having 72 and 64 teeth are the *driving* gears and those with 36 and 28 teeth are the *driven* gears.

Fractional Threads.—Sometimes the lead of a thread is given as a fraction of an inch instead of stating the number of threads per inch. For example, a thread may be required to be cut, having $\frac{3}{8}$ inch lead. The expression "$\frac{3}{8}$ inch lead" should first be transformed to "number of threads per inch." The number of threads per inch (the thread being single) equals:

$$\frac{1}{\frac{3}{8}} = 1 \div \frac{3}{8} = \frac{8}{3} = 2\frac{2}{3}$$

To find the change gears to cut $2\frac{2}{3}$ threads per inch in a lathe having a screw constant 8 and change gears ranging from 24 to 100 teeth, increasing in increments of 4, proceed as below:

$$\frac{8}{2\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{2 \times 4}{1 \times 2\frac{2}{3}} = \frac{(2 \times 36) \times (4 \times 24)}{(1 \times 36) \times (2\frac{2}{3} \times 24)} = \frac{72 \times 96}{36 \times 64}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Change Gears for Metric Pitches.—When screws are cut in accordance with the metric system, it is the usual practice to give the lead of the thread in millimeters, instead of the number of threads per unit of measurement. To find the change gears for cutting metric threads, when using a lathe having an inch lead screw, first determine the number of threads per inch corresponding to the given lead in millimeters. Suppose a thread of 3 millimeters lead is to be cut in a lathe having an inch lead screw and a screw constant of 6. As there are 25.4 millimeters per inch, the number of threads per inch will equal 25.4 ÷ 3. Place the screw constant as the numerator, and the number of threads per inch to be cut as the denominator:

$$\frac{6}{\frac{25.4}{3}} = 6 \div \frac{25.4}{3} = \frac{6 \times 3}{25.4}$$

The numerator and denominator of this fractional expression of the change gear ratio is next multiplied by some trial number to determine the size of the gears. The first whole number by which 25.4 can be multiplied so as to get a whole number as the result is 5. Thus, $25.4 \times 5 = 127$. Hence, one gear having 127 teeth is always used when cutting metric threads with an inch lead screw. The other gear required has 90 teeth. Thus:

$$\frac{6 \times 3 \times 5}{25.4 \times 5} = \frac{90}{127}$$

Therefore, the following rule can be used to find the change gears for cutting metric pitches with an inch lead screw:

Rule: Place the lathe screw constant multiplied by the lead of the required thread in millimeters multiplied by 5 as the numerator of the fraction and 127 as the denominator. The product of the numbers in the numerator equals the number of teeth for the spindle-stud gear, and 127 is the number of teeth for the lead-screw gear.

If the lathe has a metric pitch lead screw, and a screw having a given number of threads per inch is to be cut, first find the "metric screw constant" of the lathe or the lead of thread in millimeters that would be cut with change gears of equal size on the lead screw and spindle stud; then the method of determining the change gears is simply the reverse of the one already explained for cutting a metric thread with an inch lead screw.

Rule: To find the change gears for cutting inch threads with a metric lead screw, place 127 in the numerator and the threads per inch to be cut, multiplied by the metric screw constant multiplied by 5, in the denominator; 127 is the number of teeth on the spindle-stud gear and the product of the numbers in the denominator equals the number of teeth in the lead-screw gear.

Threads per Inch Obtained with a Given Combination of Gears.—To determine the number of threads per inch that will be obtained with a given combination of gearing, multiply the lathe screw constant by the number of teeth in the *driven* gear (or by the product of the numbers of teeth in both driven gears of compound gearing), and divide the product thus obtained by the number of teeth in the *driving* gear (or by the product of the two driving gears of a compound train). The quotient equals the number of threads per inch.

Change Gears for Fractional Ratios.—When gear ratios cannot be expressed exactly in whole numbers that are within the range of ordinary gearing, the combination of gearing required for the fractional ratio may be determined quite easily, often by the "cancellation method." To illustrate this method, assume that the speeds of two gears are to be in the ratio of 3.423 to 1. The number 3.423 is first changed to $^{3423}/_{1000}$ to clear it of decimals. Then, in order to secure a fraction that can be reduced, 3423 is changed to 3420;

$$\frac{3420}{1000} = \frac{342}{100} = \frac{3 \times 2 \times 57}{2 \times 50} = \frac{3 \times 57}{1 \times 50}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Then, multiplying $\frac{3}{1}$ by some trial number, say, 24, the following gear combination is obtained:

$$\frac{72}{24} \times \frac{57}{50} = \frac{4104}{1200} = \frac{3.42}{1}$$

As the desired ratio is 3.423 to 1, there is an error of 0.003. When the ratios are comparatively simple, the cancellation method is not difficult and is frequently used; but by the logarithmic method to be described, more accurate results are usually possible.

Modifying the Quick-Change Gearbox Output.—On most modern lathes, the gear train connecting the headstock spindle with the lead screw contains a quick-change gearbox. Instead of using different change gears, it is only necessary to position the handles of the gearbox to adjust the speed ratio between the spindle and the lead screw in preparation for cutting a thread. However, a thread sometimes must be cut for which there is no quick-change gearbox setting. It is then necessary to modify the normal, or standard, gear ratio between the spindle and the gearbox by installing modifying change gears to replace the standard gears normally used. Metric and other odd pitch threads can be cut on lathes that have an inch thread lead screw and a quick-change gearbox having only settings for inch threads by using modifying-change gears in the gear train. Likewise, inch threads and other odd pitch threads can be cut on metric lead-screw lathes having a gearbox on which only metric thread settings can be made. Modifying-change gears also can be used for cutting odd pitch threads on lathes having a quick-change gearbox that has both inch and metric thread settings.

The sizes of the modifying-change gears can be calculated by formulas to be given later; they depend on the thread to be cut and on the setting of the quick-change gearbox. Many different sets of gears can be found for each thread to be cut. It is recommended that several calculations be made in order to find the set of gears that is most suitable for installation on the lathe. The modifying-change gear formulas that follow are based on the type of lead screw, i.e., whether the lead screw has inch or metric threads.

Metric Threads on Inch Lead-Screw Lathes: A 127-tooth translating gear must be used in the modifying-change gear train in order to be able to cut metric threads on inch lead-screw lathes. The formula for calculating the modifying change gears is:

$$\frac{5 \times \text{gearbox setting in thds/in} \times \text{pitch in mm to be cut}}{127} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

The numerator and denominator of this formula are multiplied by equal numbers, called trial numbers, to find the gears. If suitable gears cannot be found with one set, then another set of equal trial numbers is used. (Because these numbers are equal, such as 15/15 or 24/24, they are equal to the number one when thought of as a fraction; their inclusion has the effect of multiplying the formula by one, which does not change its value.) It is necessary to select the gearbox setting in threads per inch that must be used to cut the metric thread when using the gears calculated by the formula. One method is to select a quick-change gearbox setting that is close to the actual number of metric threads in a 1-inch length, called the equivalent threads per inch, which can be calculated by the following formula: Equivalent thds/in = 25.4 ÷ pitch in millimeters to be cut.

Example: Select the quick-change gearbox setting and calculate the modifying change gears required to set up a lathe having an inch-thread lead screw in order to cut an M12 × 1.75 metric thread.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\text{Equivalent thds/in} = \frac{25.4}{\text{pitch in mm to be cut}} = \frac{25.4}{1.75} = 1.45\,(\text{use 14 thds/in})$$

$$\frac{5 \times \text{gearbox setting in thds/in} \times \text{pitch in mm to be cut}}{127} = \frac{5 \times 14 \times 1.75}{127}$$

$$= \frac{(24) \times 5 \times 14 \times 1.75}{(24) \times 127} = \frac{(5 \times 14) \times (24 \times 1.75\,1.75)}{24 \times 127}$$

$$\frac{70 \times 42}{24 \times 127} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

Odd Inch Pitch Threads: The calculation of the modifying change gears used for cutting odd pitch threads that are specified by their pitch in inches involves the sizes of the standard gears, which can be found by counting their teeth. Standard gears are those used to enable the lathe to cut the thread for which the gearbox setting is made; they are the gears that are normally used. The threads on worms used with worm gears are among the odd pitch threads that can be cut by this method. As before, it is usually advisable to calculate the actual number of threads per inch of the odd pitch thread and to select a gearbox setting that is close to this value. The following formula is used to calculate the modifying-change gears to cut odd inch pitch threads:

$$\frac{\text{Standard driving gear} \times \text{pitch to be cut in inches} \times \text{gearbox setting in thds/in}}{\text{Standard driven gear}}$$

$$= \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

Example: Select the quick-change gearbox setting and calculate the modifying change gears required to cut a thread having a pitch equal to 0.195 inch. The standard driving and driven gears both have 48 teeth. To find equivalent threads per inch:

$$\frac{\text{Thds}}{\text{in.}} = \frac{1}{\text{pitch}} = \frac{1}{0.195} = 5.13 \quad (\text{use 5 thds/in})$$

$$\frac{\text{Standard driving gear} \times \text{pitch to be cut in inches} \times \text{gearbox setting in thds/in}}{\text{Standard driven gear}}$$

$$= \frac{48 \times 0.195 \times 5}{48} = \frac{(1000) \times 0.195 \times 5}{(1000)} = \frac{195 \times 5}{500 \times 2} = \frac{39 \times 5}{100 \times 2} = \frac{39 \times 5 \times (8)}{50 \times 2 \times 2 \times (8)}$$

$$= \frac{39 \times 40}{50 \times 32} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

It will be noted that in the second step above, 1000/1000 has been substituted for 48/48. This substitution does not change the ratio. The reason for this substitution is that $1000 \times 0.195 = 195$, a whole number. Actually, 200/200 might have been substituted because $200 \times 0.195 = 39$, also a whole number.

The procedure for calculating the modifying gears using the following formulas is the same as illustrated by the two previous examples.

Odd Threads per Inch on Inch Lead-Screw Lathes:

$$\frac{\text{Standard driving gear} \times \text{gearbox setting in thds/in}}{\text{Standard driven gear} \times \text{thds/in to be cut}} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Inch Threads on Metric Lead-Screw Lathes:

$$\frac{127}{5 \times \text{gearbox setting in mm pitch} \times \text{thds/in to be cut}} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

Odd Metric Pitch Threads on Metric Lead-Screw Lathes:

$$\frac{\text{Standard driving gear} \times \text{mm pitch to be cut}}{\text{Standard driven gear} \times \text{gearbox setting in mm pitch}} = \frac{\text{driving gears}}{\text{driven gears}}$$

Finding Accurate Gear Ratios.—Tables included in the 23rd and earlier editions of this Handbook furnished a series of logarithms of gear ratios as a quick means of finding ratios for all gear combinations having 15 to 120 teeth. The ratios thus determined could be factored into sets of 2, 4, 6, or any other even numbers of gears to provide a desired overall ratio.

Although the method of using logarithms of gear ratios provides results of suitable accuracy for many gear-ratio problems, it does not provide a systematic means of evaluating whether other, more accurate ratios are available. In critical applications, especially in the design of mechanisms using reduction gear trains, it may be desirable to find many or all possible ratios to meet a specified accuracy requirement. The methods best suited to such problems use *Continued Fractions* and *Conjugate Fractions* as explained in the *ADDITIONAL* material in the *Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition* and illustrated in the worked-out example provided there for a set of four change gears.

As an example, if an overall reduction of 0.31416 is required, a fraction must be found such that the factors of the numerator and denominator may be used to form a four-gear reduction train in which no gear has more than 120 teeth. By using the method of conjugate fractions, the ratios listed above and their factors are found to be successively closer approximations to the required overall gear ratio.

Ratio	Numerator Factors	Denominator	Error Factors
11/35	11	5×7	+0.00013
16/51	2×2×2×2	3×17	–0.00043
27/86	3×3×3	2×43	–0.00021
38/121	2×19	11×11	–0.00011
49/156	7×7	2×2×3×13	–0.00006
82/261	2×41	3×3×29	+0.00002
224/713	2×2×2×2×2×2×7	23×31	+0.000005
437/1391	19×23	13×107	+0.000002
721/2295	7×103	3×3×3×5×17	+0.000001
1360/4329	2×2×2×2×17	3×3×13×53	+0.0000003
1715/5459	5×7×7×7	53×103	+0.0000001
3927/12500	3×7×11×17	2×2×5×5×5×5×5	0

Lathe Change-Gears.—To calculate the change gears to cut any pitch on a lathe, the "constant" of the machine must be known. For any lathe, the ratio $C{:}L$ = driver:driven gear, in which C = constant of machine and L = threads per inch.

For example, to find the change gears required to cut 1.7345 threads per inch on a lathe having a constant of 4, the formula:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\frac{C}{L} = \frac{4}{1.7345} = 2.306140$$

may be used. The method of conjugate fractions shown on page 5 will find the ratio, 113⁄49 = 2.306122, which is closer than any other having suitable factors. This ratio is in error by only 2.306140 – 2.306122 = 0.000018. Therefore, the driver should have 113 teeth and the driven gear 49 teeth.

Relieving Helical-Fluted Hobs.—Relieving hobs that have been fluted at right angles to the thread is another example of approximating a required change-gear ratio. The usual method is to change the angle of the helical flutes to agree with previously calculated change-gears. The ratio between the hob and the relieving attachment is expressed in the formula:

$$\frac{N}{(C \times \cos^2\alpha)} = \frac{driver}{driven} \text{ gears}$$

and

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{P}{H_c}$$

in which: N = number of flutes in hob; α = helix angle of thread from plane perpendicular to axis; C = constant of relieving attachment; P = axial lead of hob; and H_c = hob pitch circumference, = 3.1416 times pitch diameter.

The constant of the relieving attachment is found on its index plate and is determined by the number of flutes that require equal gears on the change-gear studs. These values will vary with different makes of lathes.

For example, what four change-gears can be used to relieve a helical-fluted worm-gear hob, of 24 diametral pitch, six starts, 13 degrees, 41 minutes helix angle of thread, with eleven helical flutes, assuming a relieving attachment having a constant of 4 is to be used?

$$\frac{N}{(C \times \cos^2\alpha)} = \frac{11}{(4 \times \cos^2 13°41')} = \frac{11}{(4 \times 0.944045)} = 2.913136$$

Using the conjugate fractions method discussed on page 5, the following ratios are found to provide factors that are successively closer approximations to the required change-gear ratio 2.913136.

Numerator/Denominator	*Ratio*	*Error*
67×78/(39×46)	2.913043	–0.000093
30×47/(22×22)	2.913223	+0.000087
80×26/(21×34)	2.913165	+0.000029
27×82/(20×38)	2.913158	+0.000021
55×75/(24×59)	2.913136	+0.0000004
74×92/(57×41)	2.913136	+0.00000005

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

THREAD ROLLING

Screw threads may be formed by rolling either by using some type of thread-rolling machine or by equipping an automatic screw machine or turret lathe with a suitable threading roll. If a thread-rolling machine is used, the unthreaded screw, bolt, or other "blank" is placed (either automatically or by hand) between dies having thread-shaped ridges that sink into the blank, and by displacing the metal, form a thread of the required shape and pitch. The thread-rolling process is applied where bolts, screws, studs, threaded rods, etc., are required in large quantities. Screw threads that are within the range of the rolling process may be produced more rapidly by this method than in any other way. Because of the cold-working action of the dies, the rolled thread is 10 to 20 percent stronger than a cut or ground thread, and the increase may be much higher for fatigue resistance. Other advantages of the rolling process are that no stock is wasted in forming the thread, and the surface of a rolled thread is harder than that of a cut thread, thus increasing wear resistance.

Thread-Rolling Machine of Flat-Die Type.—One type of machine that is used extensively for thread rolling is equipped with a pair of flat or straight dies. One die is stationary and the other has a reciprocating movement when the machine is in use. The ridges on these dies, which form the screw thread, incline at an angle equal to the helix angle of the thread. In making dies for precision thread rolling, the threads may be formed either by milling and grinding after heat treatment, or by grinding "from the solid" after heat treating. A vitrified wheel is used.

In a thread-rolling machine, thread is formed in one passage of the work, which is inserted at one end of the dies, either by hand or automatically, and then rolls between the die faces until it is ejected at the opposite end. The relation between the position of the dies and a screw thread being rolled is such that the top of the thread-shaped ridge of one die, at the point of contact with the screw thread, is directly opposite the bottom of the thread groove in the other die at the point of contact. Some form of mechanism ensures starting the blank at the right time and square with the dies.

Thread-Rolling Machine of Cylindrical-Die Type.—With machines of this type, the blank is threaded while being rolled between two or three cylindrical dies (depending upon the type of machine) that are pressed into the blank at a rate of penetration adjusted to the hardness of the material, or wall thickness in threading operations on tubing or hollow parts. The dies have ground, or ground and lapped, threads and a pitch diameter that is a multiple of the pitch diameter of the thread to be rolled. As the dies are much larger in diameter than the work, a multiple thread is required to obtain the same lead angle as that of the work. The thread may be formed in one die revolution or even less, or several revolutions may be required (as in rolling hard materials) to obtain a gradual rate of penetration equivalent to that obtained with flat or straight dies if extended to a length of possibly 15 or 20 feet (4.6 or 6 m). Provisions for accurately adjusting or matching the thread rolls to bring them into proper alignment with each other are important features of these machines.

Two-Roll Type of Machine: With a two-roll type of machine, the work is rotated between two horizontal power-driven threading rolls and is supported by a hardened rest bar on the lower side. One roll is fed inward by hydraulic pressure to a depth that is governed automatically.

Three-Roll Type of Machine: With this machine, the blank to be threaded is held in a "floating position" while being rolled between three cylindrical dies that, through toggle arms, are moved inward at a predetermined rate of penetration until the required pitch diameter is obtained. The die movement is governed by a cam driven through change gears selected to give the required cycle of squeeze, dwell, and release.

Rate of Production.—Production rates in thread rolling depend upon the type of machine, the size of both machine and work, and whether the parts to be threaded are inserted by hand or automatically. A reciprocating flat die type of machine, applied to ordinary steels, may thread 30 or 40 parts per minute in diameters ranging from about $\frac{5}{8}$ to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$1\frac{1}{8}$ inch (15.875–28.575 mm), and 150 to 175 per minute in machine screw sizes from No. 10 (.190 inch) to No. 6 (.138 inch). In the case of heat-treated alloy steels in the usual hardness range of 26 to 32 RC (Rockwell C scale), the production may be 30 or 40 per minute or less. With a cylindrical die type of machine, which is designed primarily for precision work and hard metals, 10 to 30 parts per minute are common production rates, the amount depending upon the hardness of material and allowable rate of die penetration per work revolution. These production rates are intended as a general guide only. The diameters of rolled threads usually range from the smallest machine screw sizes up to 1 or $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (25.4 or 38.1 mm), depending upon the type and size of machine.

Precision Thread Rolling.—Both flat and cylindrical dies are used in aeronautical and other plants for precision work. With accurate dies and blank diameters held to close limits, it is practicable to produce rolled threads for American Standard Class 3 and Class 4 fits. The blank sizing may be by centerless grinding or by means of a die in conjunction with the heading operations. The blank should be round, and, as a general rule, the diameter tolerance should not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{2}{3}$ the pitch diameter tolerance. The blank diameter should range from the correct size (which is close to the pitch diameter, but should be determined by actual trial), down to the allowable minimum, the tolerance being minus to insure a correct pitch diameter, even though the major diameter may vary slightly. Precision thread rolling has become an important method of threading alloy steel studs and other threaded parts, especially in aeronautical work where precision and high-fatigue resistance are required. Micrometer screws are also an outstanding example of precision thread rolling. This process has also been applied in tap making, although it is the general practice to finish rolled taps by grinding when the Class 3 and Class 4 fits are required.

Steels for Thread Rolling.—Steels vary from soft low-carbon types for ordinary screws and bolts, to nickel, nickel-chromium and molybdenum steels for aircraft studs, bolts, etc., or for any work requiring exceptional strength and fatigue resistance. Typical SAE alloy steels are No. 2330, 3135, 3140, 4027, 4042, 4640 and 6160. The hardness of these steels after heat treatment usually ranges from 26 to 32 RC, with tensile strengths varying from 130,000 to 150,000 psi (896–1034 MPa). While harder materials might be rolled, grinding is more practicable when the hardness exceeds 40 RC. Thread rolling is applicable not only to a wide range of steels but for nonferrous materials, especially if there is difficulty in cutting due to "tearing" the threads.

Diameter of Blank for Thread Rolling.—The diameter of the screw blank or cylindrical part upon which a thread is to be rolled should be less than the outside screw diameter by an amount that will just compensate for the metal that is displaced and raised above the original surface by the rolling process. The increase in diameter is approximately equal to the depth of one thread. While there are rules and formulas for determining blank diameters, it may be necessary to make slight changes in the calculated size in order to secure a well-formed thread. Blank diameter should be verified by trial, especially when rolling accurate screw threads. Some stock offers greater resistance to displacement than other stock, owing to greater hardness or tenacity of the metal. The following figures may prove useful in establishing trial sizes. The blank diameters for screws varying from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ are from 0.002 to 0.0025 inch (50.8–63.5 µm) larger than the pitch diameter, and for screws varying from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch (12.7–25.4 mm) or larger, the blank diameters are from 0.0025 to .003 inch (63.5–76.2 µm) larger than the pitch diameter. Blanks which are slightly less than the pitch diameter are intended for bolts, screws, etc., which are to have a comparatively free fit. Blanks for this class of work may vary from 0.002 to 0.003 inch (50.08–76.2 µm) less than the pitch diameter for screw thread sizes varying from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (6.35–12.7 µm), and from 0.003 to 0.005 inch (76.2–127 µm) less than the pitch diameter for sizes above $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. If the screw threads are smaller than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, the blanks are usually from 0.001 to 0.0015 inch (25.4–38.1 µm) less than the pitch diameter for ordinary grades of work.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thread Rolling in Automatic Screw Machines.—Screw threads are sometimes rolled in automatic screw machines and turret lathes when the thread is behind a shoulder so that it cannot be cut with a die. In such cases, the advantage of rolling the thread is that a second operation is avoided. A circular roll is used for rolling threads in screw machines. The roll may be presented to the work either in a tangential direction or radially, either method producing a satisfactory thread. In the former case, the roll gradually comes into contact with the periphery of the work and completes the thread as it passes across the surface to be threaded. When the roll is held in a radial position, it is simply forced against one side until a complete thread is formed. The method of applying the roll may depend upon the relation between the threading operation and other machining operations. Thread rolling in automatic screw machines is generally applied only to brass and other relatively soft metals, owing to the difficulty of rolling threads in steel. Thread rolls made of chrome-nickel steel containing from 0.15 to 0.20 percent of carbon have given fairly good results, however, when applied to steel. A 3 percent nickel steel containing about 0.12 percent carbon has also proved satisfactory for threading brass.

Factors Governing the Diameter of Thread Rolling.—The threading roll used in screw machines may be about the same diameter as the screw thread, but for sizes smaller than, say, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.05 mm), the roll diameter is some multiple of the thread diameter minus a slight amount to obtain a better rolling action. When the diameters of the thread and roll are practically the same, a single-threaded roll is used to form a single thread on the screw. If the diameter of the roll is made double that of the screw, in order to avoid using a small roll, then the roll must have a double thread. If the thread roll is three times the size of the screw thread, a triple thread is used, and so on. These multiple threads are necessary when the roll diameter is some multiple of the work, in order to obtain corresponding helix angles on the roll and work.

Diameter of Threading Roll.—The pitch diameter of a threading roll having a single thread is slightly less than the pitch diameter of the screw thread to be rolled, and in the case of multiple-thread rolls, the pitch diameter is not an exact multiple of the screw thread pitch diameter but is also reduced somewhat. The amount of reduction recommended by one screw machine manufacturer is given by the formula shown at the end of this paragraph. A description of the terms used in the formula is given as follows: D = pitch diameter of threading roll, d = pitch diameter of screw thread, N = number of single threads or "starts" on the roll (this number is selected with reference to diameter of roll desired), T = single depth of thread:

$$D = N\left(d - \frac{T}{2}\right) - T$$

Example: Find, by using above formula, the pitch diameter of a double-thread roll for rolling a $\frac{1}{2}$-inch American standard screw thread. Pitch diameter $d = 0.4500$ inch and thread depth $T = 0.0499$ inch.

$$D = 2\left(0.4500 - \frac{0.0499}{2}\right) - 0.0499 = 0.8001 \text{ inch}$$

Kind of Thread on Roll and Its Shape.—The thread (or threads) on the roll should be left hand for rolling a right-hand thread, and *vice versa*. The roll should be wide enough to overlap the part to be threaded, provided there are clearance spaces at the ends, which should be formed if possible. The thread on the roll should be sharp on top for rolling an American (National) standard form of thread, so that less pressure will be required to displace the metal when rolling the thread. The bottom of the thread groove on the roll may also be left sharp or it may have a flat. If the bottom is sharp, the roll is sunk only far enough into the blank to form a thread having a flat top, assuming that the thread is the American form. The number of threads on the roll (whether double, triple, quadruple, etc.) is selected, as a rule, so that the diameter of the thread roll will be somewhere between $1\frac{1}{4}$ and $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches (31.75–57.15 mm). In making a thread roll, the ends are beveled at an

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

angle of 45 degrees, to prevent the threads on the ends of the roll from chipping. Precautions should be taken in hardening, because, if the sharp edges are burnt, the roll will be useless. Thread rolls are usually lapped after hardening, by holding them on an arbor in the lathe and using emery and oil on a piece of hard wood. To give good results a thread roll should fit closely in the holder. If the roll is made to fit loosely, it will mar the threads.

Application of Thread Roll.—The shape of the work and the character of the operations necessary to produce it, govern, to a large extent, the method employed in applying the thread roll. Some of the points to consider are as follows:

1) Diameter of the part to be threaded.

2) Location of the part to be threaded.

3) Length of the part to be threaded.

4) Relation that the thread rolling operation bears to the other operations.

5) Shape of the part to be threaded, whether straight, tapered or otherwise.

2) Method of applying the support.

When the diameter to be rolled is much smaller than the diameter of the shoulder preceding it, a cross-slide knurl-holder should be used. If the part to be threaded is not behind a shoulder, a holder on the swing principle should be used. When the work is long (greater in length than two-and-one-half times its diameter) a swing roll-holder should be employed, carrying a support. When the work can be cut off after the thread is rolled, a cross-slide roll-holder should be used. The method of applying the support to the work also governs to some extent the method of applying the thread roll. When no other tool is working at the same time as the thread roll, and when there is freedom from chips, the roll can be held more rigidly by passing it under instead of over the work. When passing the roll over the work, there is a tendency to raise the cross-slide. Where the part to be threaded is tapered, the roll can best be presented to the work by holding it in a cross-slide roll-holder.

Tolerances on Wire for Thread Rolling.—The wire mills will accept a tolerance specification of plus or minus 0.002 inch (50.8 μm) on the diameter. It is particularly important that this tolerance be maintained on stock used for long screws of small diameter. On screws of short length the material will flow, and if the wire is over size little trouble will be experienced, but in the case of screws having a length greater than ten times their diameter, the material will be confined, and "burning" will take place, if the tolerance is greater than that specified. If the wire is slightly under size, the rolled threads will have a ragged appearance due to the fact that the crest is not fully formed. On screws under the No. 10-24 size, a tolerance of plus or minus 0.001 inch should be adhered to in order to ensure good results.

Speeds and Feeds for Thread Rolling.—When the thread roll is made from high-carbon steel and used on brass, a surface speed as high as 200 feet per minute can be used. However, better results are obtained by using a lower speed than this. When the roll is held in a holder attached to the cross-slide, and is presented either tangentially or radially to the work, a considerably higher speed can be used than if it is held in a swing tool. This is due to the lack of rigidity in a holder of the swing type. The feeds to be used when a cross-slide roll-holder is used are given in the upper half of the table "Feeds for Thread Rolling;" the lower half of the table gives the feeds for thread rolling with swing tools. These feeds are applicable for rolling threads without a support, when the root diameter of the blank is not less than five times the double depth of the thread. When the root diameter is less than this, a support should be used. A support should also be used when the width of the roll is more than two-and-one-half times the smallest diameter of the piece to be rolled, irrespective of the pitch of the thread. When the smallest diameter of the piece to be rolled is much less than the root diameter of the thread, the smallest diameter should be taken as the deciding factor for the feed to be used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Feeds for Thread Rolling

Root Diam. of Blank	Number of Threads per Inch													
	72	64	56	48	44	40	36	32	28	24	22	20	18	14
	Cross-slide Holders—Feed per Revolution in Inches													
1/8	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0020	0.0015	0.0010	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
3/16	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0020	0.0015	0.0005	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
1/4	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0020	0.0010	0.0005	0.0005	.....	.....	.....
5/16	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0015	0.0010	0.0010	0.0005	0.0005	.....
3/8	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0020	0.0015	0.0015	0.0010	0.0010	0.0005
7/16	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0025	0.0020	0.0020	0.0015	0.0015	0.0010
1/2	0.0075	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0040	0.0030	0.0025	0.0025	0.0020	0.0020	0.0015
5/8	0.0080	0.0075	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0045	0.0035	0.0030	0.0030	0.0025	0.0025	0.0020
3/4	0.0085	0.0080	0.0075	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0050	0.0040	0.0035	0.0035	0.0030	0.0030	0.0025
7/8	0.0090	0.0085	0.0080	0.0075	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0055	0.0045	0.0040	0.0040	0.0035	0.0035	0.0030
1	0.0095	0.0090	0.0085	0.0080	0.0075	0.0070	0.0065	0.0060	0.0050	0.0045	0.0045	0.0040	0.0040	0.0035
Root Diam.	Swing Holders—Feed per Revolution in Inches													
1/8	0.0025	0.0020	0.0015	0.0010	0.0005	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
3/16	0.0028	0.0025	0.0020	0.0015	0.0008	0.0005	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
1/4	0.0030	0.0030	0.0025	0.0020	0.0010	0.0010	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5/16	0.0035	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0015	0.0015	0.0010	0.0010	0.0010	0.0005	.....	.....	.....	.....
3/8	0.0040	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0020	0.0020	0.0015	0.0015	0.0015	0.0010	0.0005	0.0005	0.0005	.....
7/16	0.0045	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0020	0.0020	0.0020	0.0015	0.0010	0.0010	0.0010	.....
1/2	0.0048	0.0048	0.0045	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0025	0.0025	0.0025	0.0020	0.0015	0.0015	0.0015	0.0005
5/8	0.0050	0.0050	0.0048	0.0043	0.0040	0.0035	0.0030	0.0030	0.0028	0.0025	0.0020	0.0020	0.0018	0.0010
3/4	0.0055	0.0052	0.0050	0.0045	0.0043	0.0040	0.0035	0.0035	0.0030	0.0028	0.0025	0.0022	0.0020	0.0013
7/8	0.0058	0.0055	0.0052	0.0048	0.0045	0.0043	0.0040	0.0038	0.0032	0.0030	0.0028	0.0025	0.0022	0.0015
1	0.0060	0.0058	0.0054	0.0050	0.0048	0.0047	0.0043	0.0040	0.0035	0.0032	0.0030	0.0028	0.0025	0.0018

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

THREAD GRINDING

Thread grinding is employed for precision tool and gage work and also in producing certain classes of threaded parts.

Thread grinding may be utilized 1) because of the accuracy and finish obtained; 2) hardness of material to be threaded; and 3) economy in grinding certain classes of screw threads when using modern machines, wheels, and thread-grinding oils.

In some cases pre-cut threads are finished by grinding; but usually, threads are ground "from the solid," being formed entirely by the grinding process. Examples of work include thread gages and taps of steel and tungsten carbide, hobs, worms, lead screws, adjusting or traversing screws, alloy steel studs, etc. Grinding is applied to external, internal, straight, and tapering threads, and to various thread forms.

Accuracy Obtainable by Thread Grinding.—With single-edge or single-ribbed wheels it is possible to grind threads on gages to a degree of accuracy that requires but very little lapping to produce a so-called "master" thread gage. As far as lead is concerned, some thread grinding machine manufacturers guarantee to hold the lead within 0.0001 inch per inch (or mm per mm) of thread; and while it is not guaranteed that a higher degree of accuracy for lead is obtainable, it is known that threads have been ground to closer tolerances than this on the lead. Pitch diameter accuracies for either Class 3 or Class 4 fits are obtainable according to the grinding method used; with single-edge wheels, the thread angle can be ground to an accuracy of within two or three minutes in half the angle.

Wheels for Thread Grinding.—The wheels used for steel have an aluminous abrasive and, ordinarily, either a resinoid bond or a vitrified bond. The general rule is to use resinoid wheels when extreme tolerances are not required, and it is desirable to form the thread with a minimum number of passes, as in grinding threaded machine parts, such as studs, adjusting screws which are not calibrated, and for some classes of taps. *Resinoid wheels,* as a rule, will hold a fine edge longer than a vitrified wheel but they are more flexible and, consequently, less suitable for accurate work, especially when there is lateral grinding pressure that causes wheel deflection. *Vitrified wheels* are utilized for obtaining extreme accuracy in thread form and lead because they are very rigid and not easily deflected by side pressure in grinding. This rigidity is especially important in grinding pre-cut threads on such work as gages, taps and lead screws. The progressive lead errors in long lead screws, for example, might cause an increasing lateral pressure that would deflect a resinoid wheel. Vitrified wheels are also recommended for internal grinding.

Diamond Wheels: Diamond wheels set in a rubber or plastic bond are also used for thread grinding, especially for grinding threads in carbide materials and in other hardened alloys. Thread grinding is now being done successfully on a commercial basis on both taps and gages made from carbides. Gear hobs made from carbides have also been tested with successful results. Diamond wheels are dressed by means of silicon-carbide grinding wheels which travel past the diamond-wheel thread form at the angle required for the flanks of the thread to be ground. The action of the dressing wheels is, perhaps, best described as a "scrubbing" of the bond which holds the diamond grits. Obviously, the silicon-carbide wheels do not dress the diamonds, but they loosen the bond until the diamonds not wanted drop out.

Thread Grinding with Single-Edge Wheel.—With this type of wheel, the edge is trued to the cross-sectional shape of the thread groove. The wheel, when new, may have a diameter of 18 or 20 inches (45.7 or 50.8 cm) and, when grinding a thread, the wheel is inclined to align it with the thread groove. On some machines, lead variations are obtained by means of change-gears which transmit motion from the work-driving spindle to the lead screw. Other machines are so designed that a lead screw is selected to suit the lead of thread to be ground and transmits motion directly to the work-driving spindle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wheels with Edges for Roughing and Finishing.—The "three-ribbed" type of wheel has a roughing edge or rib which removes about two-thirds of the metal. This is followed by an intermediate rib which leaves about 0.005 inch (127 µm) for the third or finishing rib. The accuracy obtained with this triple-edge type compares with that of a single-edge wheel, which means that it may be used for the greatest accuracy obtainable in thread grinding.

When the accuracy required makes it necessary, this wheel can be inclined to the helix angle of the thread, the same as is the single-edge wheel.

The three-ribbed wheel is recommended not only for precision work but for grinding threads which are too long for the multi-ribbed wheel referred to later. It is also well adapted to tap grinding, because it is possible to dress a portion of the wheel adjacent to the finish rib for the purpose of grinding the outside diameter of the thread, as indicated in Fig. 1. Furthermore, the wheel can be dressed for grinding or relieving both crests and flanks at the same time.

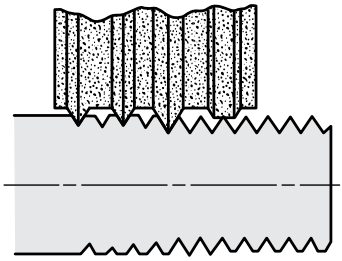


Fig. 1. Wheel with Edges for Roughing and Finishing

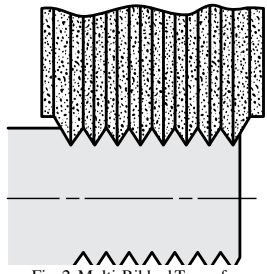


Fig. 2. Multi-Ribbed Type of Thread-Grinding Wheel

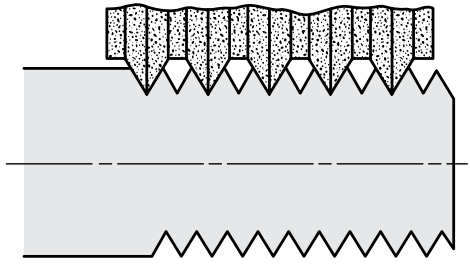


Fig. 3. Alternate-Ribbed Wheel for Grinding the Finer Pitches

Multi-Ribbed Wheels.—This type of wheel is employed when rapid production is more important than extreme accuracy, which means that it is intended primarily for the grinding of duplicate parts in manufacturing. A wheel $1\frac{1}{4}$ to 2 inches (3.175–5.08 cm) wide has formed upon its face a series of annular thread-shaped ridges (see Fig. 2); hence, if the length of the thread is not greater than the wheel width, a thread may be ground in one work revolution plus about one-half revolution for feeding in and withdrawing the wheel. The principle of operation is the same as that of thread milling with a multiple type cutter. This type of wheel is not inclined to the lead angle. To obtain a Class 3 fit, the lead angle should not exceed 4 degrees.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

It is not practicable to use this form of wheel on thread pitches where the root is less than 0.007 inch (177.8 μm) wide, because of difficulties in wheel dressing. When this method can be applied, it is the fastest means known of producing threads in hardened materials. It is not recommended, however, that thread gages, taps, and work of this character be ground with multi-ribbed wheels. The single-ribbed wheel has a definite field for accurate, small-lot production.

It is necessary, in multi-ribbed grinding, to use more horsepower than is required for single-ribbed wheel grinding. Coarse threads, in particular, may require a wheel motor with two or three times more horsepower than would be necessary for grinding with a single-ribbed wheel.

Alternate-Ribbed Wheel for Fine Pitches.—The spacing of ribs on this type of wheel (Fig. 3) equals twice the pitch, so that during the first revolution every other thread groove section is being ground; consequently, about two and one-half work revolutions are required for grinding a complete thread, but the better distribution of cooling oil and resulting increase in work speeds makes this wheel very efficient. This alternate-type of wheel is adapted for grinding threads of fine pitch. Since these wheels cannot be tipped to the helix angle of the thread, they are not recommended for anything closer than Class 3 fits. The "three-ribbed" wheels referred to in a previous paragraph are also made in the alternate type for the finer pitches.

Grinding Threads "from the Solid".—The process of forming threads entirely by grinding, or without preliminary cutting, is applied both in the manufacture of certain classes of threaded parts and also in the production of precision tools, such as taps and thread gages. For example, in airplane engine manufacture, certain parts are heat treated and then the threads are ground "from the solid," thus eliminating distortion. Minute cracks are sometimes found at the roots of threads that were cut and then hardened, or ground from the solid. Steel threads of coarse pitch that are to be surface hardened, may be rough threaded by cutting, then hardened and finally corrected by grinding. Many ground thread taps are produced by grinding from the solid after heat treatment. Hardening high-speed steel taps before the thread is formed will ensure there are no narrow or delicate crests to interfere with the application of the high temperature required for uniform hardness and the best steel structure.

Number of Wheel Passes.—The number of cuts or passes for grinding from the solid depends upon the type of wheel and accuracy required. In general, threads of 12 or 14 per inch and finer may be ground in one pass of a single-edge wheel unless the "unwrapped" thread length is much greater than normal. Unwrapped length = pitch circumference × total number of thread turns, approximately. For example, a thread gage $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches long with 24 threads per inch would have an unwrapped length equal to 30 × pitch circumference. (If more convenient, outside circumference may be used instead of pitch circumference.) Assume that there are 6 or 7 feet of unwrapped length on a screw thread having 12 threads per inch. In this case, one pass might be sufficient for a Class 3 fit, whereas two passes might be recommended for a Class 4 fit. When two passes are required, too deep a roughing cut may break down the narrow edge of the wheel. To prevent this, try a roughing cut depth equal to about two-thirds the total thread depth, thus leaving one-third for the finishing cut.

Wheel and Work Rotation.—When a screw thread, on the side being ground, is moving *upward* or *against* the grinding wheel rotation, less heat is generated and the grinding operation is more efficient than when wheel and work are moving in the same direction on the grinding side; however, to avoid running a machine idle during its return stroke, many screw threads are ground during both the forward and return traversing movements, by reversing the work rotation at the end of the forward stroke. For this reason, thread grinders generally are equipped so that both forward and return work speeds may be changed; they may also be designed to accelerate the return movement when grinding in one direction only.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wheel Speeds.—Wheel speeds should always be limited to the maximum specified on the wheel by the manufacturer. According to the American National Standard Safety Code, resinoid and vitrified wheels are limited to 12,000 surface feet per minute (3657 m/min); however, according to Norton Co., the most efficient speeds are from 9,000 to 10,000 (2743–3048 m/min) for resinoid wheels and 7,500 to 9,500 (2286–2896 m/min) for vitrified wheels. Only tested wheels recommended by the wheel manufacturer should be used. After a suitable surface speed has been established, it should be maintained by increasing the rpm of the wheel, as the latter is reduced in diameter by wear.

Since thread grinding wheels work close to the limit of their stock-removing capacity, some adjustment of the wheel or work speed may be required to get the best results. If the wheel speed is too slow for a given job and excessive heat is generated, try an increase in speed, assuming that such increase is within the safety limits. If the wheel is too soft and the edge wears excessively, again an increase in wheel speed will give the effect of a harder wheel and result in better form-retaining qualities.

Work Speeds.—The work speed usually ranges from 3 to 10 fpm (0.9–3.0 m/min). In grinding with a comparatively heavy feed, and a mininum number of passes, the speed may not exceed $2\frac{1}{2}$ or 3 fpm (0.76–0.9 m/min). If very light feeds are employed, as in grinding hardened high-speed steel, the work speed may be much higher than 3 fpm (0.9 m/min) and should be determined by test. If excessive heat is generated by removing stock too rapidly, a work speed reduction is one remedy. If a wheel is working below its normal capacity, an increase in work speed would prevent dulling of the grains and reduce the tendency to heat or "burn" the work. An increase in work speed and reduction in feed may also be employed to prevent burning while grinding hardened steel.

Truing Grinding Wheels.—Thread grinding wheels are trued to maintain both the required thread form and an efficient grinding surface. Thread grinders ordinarily are equipped with precision truing devices which function automatically. One type automatically dresses the wheel and also compensates for the slight amount removed in dressing, thus automatically maintaining size control of the work. While truing the wheel, a small amount of grinding oil should be used to reduce diamond wear. Light truing cuts are advisable, especially in truing resinoid wheels which may be deflected by excessive truing pressure. A master former for controlling the path followed by the truing diamond may require a modified profile to prevent distortion of the thread form, especially when the lead angles are comparatively large. Such modification usually is not required for 60-degree threads when the pitches for a given diameter are standard because then the resulting lead angles are less than $4\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. In grinding Acme threads or 29-degree worm threads having lead angles greater than 4 or 5 degrees, modified formers may be required to prevent a bulge in the thread profile. The highest point of this bulge is approximately at the pitch line. A bulge of about 0.001 inch (25.4 µm) may be within allowable limits on some commercial worms but precision worms for gear hobbers, etc., require straight flanks in the axial plane.

Crushing Method: Thread grinding wheels are also dressed or formed by the crushing method, which is used in connection with some types of thread grinding machines. When this method is used, the annular ridge or ridges on the wheel are formed by a hardened steel cylindrical dresser or crusher. The crusher has a series of smooth annular ridges which are shaped and spaced like the thread that is to be ground. During the wheel dressing operation, the crusher is positively driven instead of the grinding wheel, and the ridges on the wheel face are formed by the rotating crusher being forced inward.

Wheel Hardness or Grade.—Wheel hardness or grade selection is based upon a compromise between efficient cutting and durability of the grinding edge. Grade selection depends on the bond and the character of the work. The following general recommendations are based upon Norton grading.

Vitrified wheels usually range from J to M, and resinoid wheels from R to U. For heat-treated screws or studs and the Unified Standard Thread, try the following. For 8 to

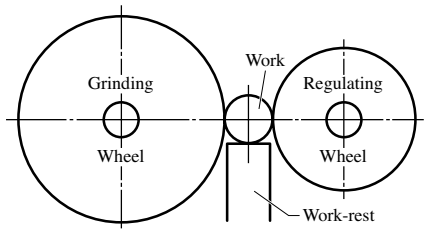
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

12 threads per inch, grade S resinoid wheel; for 14 to 20 threads per inch, grade T resinoid; for 24 threads per inch and finer, grades T or U resinoid. For high-speed steel taps 4 to 12 threads per inch, grade J vitrified or S resinoid; 14 to 20 threads per inch, grade K vitrified or T resinoid; 24 to 36 threads per inch, grade M vitrified or T resinoid.

Grain Size.—A thread grinding wheel usually operates close to its maximum stock-removing capacity, and the narrow edge which forms the root of the thread is the most vulnerable part. In grain selection, the general rule is to use the coarsest grained wheel that will hold its form while grinding a reasonable amount of work. Pitch of thread and quality of finish are two governing factors. Thus, to obtain an exceptionally fine finish, the grain size might be smaller than is needed to retain the edge profile. The usual grain sizes range from 120 to 150. For heat-treated screws and studs with Unified Standard Threads, 100 to 180 is the usual range. For precision screw threads of very fine pitch, the grain size may range from 220 to 320. For high-speed steel taps, the usual range is from 150 to 180 for Unified Standard Threads, and from 80 to 150 for pre-cut Acme threads.

Thread Grinding by Centerless Method.—Screw threads may be ground from the solid by the centerless method. A centerless thread grinder is similar in its operating principle to a centerless grinder designed for general work, in that it has a grinding wheel, a regulating or feed wheel (with speed adjustments), and a work-rest. Adjustments are provided to accommodate work of different sizes and for varying the rates of feed. The grinding wheel is a multi-ribbed type, being a series of annular ridges across the face. These ridges conform in pitch and profile with the thread to be ground. The grinding wheel is inclined to suit the helix or lead angle of the thread. In grinding threads on such work as socket type set screws, the blanks are fed automatically and passed between the grinding and regulating wheels in a continuous stream. To illustrate production possibilities, hardened socket set screws of $\frac{1}{4}$ -20 size may be ground from the solid at the rate of 60 to 70 per minute and with the wheel operating continuously for 8 hours without redressing. The lead errors of centerless ground screw threads may be limited to 0.0005 inch per inch (or mm per mm) or even less by reducing the production rate. The pitch diameter tolerances are within 0.0002 to 0.0003 inch (5.08–7.62 μm) of the basic size. The grain size for the wheel is selected with reference to the pitch of the thread, the following sizes being recommended: For 11 to 13 threads per inch, 150; for 16 threads per inch, 180; for 18 to 20 threads per inch, 220; for 24 to 28 threads per inch, 320; for 40 threads per inch, 400.

Principle of Centerless Grinding.—Centerless grinding is the grinding of cylindrical work without supporting it on centers in the usual way. Two abrasive wheels are mounted so that their peripheries face each other, one of the wheels having its axis so arranged that it can be swung out of parallel with the axis of the other wheel by varying amounts, as required. Between these two abrasive wheels is a work-supporting member equipped with suitable guides. The grinding wheel forces the work downward against the work-rest and also against the regulating wheel. The latter imparts a uniform rotation to the work which has the same peripheral speed as the regulating wheel, the speed of which is adjustable.



Principle of the Centerless Grinding Process

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

THREAD MILLING

Single-Cutter Method.—Usually, when a single point cutter is used, the axis of the cutter is inclined an amount equal to the lead angle of the screw thread, in order to locate the cutter in line with the thread groove at the point where the cutting action takes place. Tangent of lead angle = lead of screw thread ÷ pitch circumference of screw.

The helical thread groove is generated by making as many turns around the workpiece diameter as there are pitches in the length of thread to be cut. For example, a 16-pitch thread, 1 inch long, would require 16 turns of the cutter around the work. The single cutter process is especially applicable to the milling of large screw threads of coarse pitch, and either single or multiple threads.

The cutter should revolve as fast as possible without dulling the cutting edges excessively, in order to mill a smooth thread and prevent the unevenness that would result with a slow-moving cutter because of the tooth spaces. As the cutter rotates, the part on which a thread is to be milled is also revolved, but at a very slow rate (a few inches per minute), since this rotation of the work is practically a feeding movement. The cutter is ordinarily set to the full depth of the thread groove and finishes a single thread in one passage, although deep threads of coarse pitch may require two or even three cuts. For fine pitches and short threads, the multiple-cutter method (described in the next paragraph) usually is preferable, because it is more rapid. The milling of taper screw threads may be done on a single-cutter type of machine by traversing the cutter laterally as it feeds along in a lengthwise direction, the same as when using a taper attachment on a lathe.

Multiple-Cutter Method.—The multiple cutter for thread milling is practically a series of single cutters, although formed of one solid piece of steel, at least so far as the cutter proper is concerned. The rows of teeth do not lie in a helical path, like the teeth of a hob or tap, but they are annular or without lead. If the cutter had helical teeth the same as a gear hob, it would have to be geared to revolve in a certain fixed ratio with the screw being milled, but a cutter having annular teeth may rotate at any desired cutting speed, while the screw blank is rotated slowly to provide a suitable rate of feed. (The multiple thread milling cutters used are frequently called "hobs," but the term hob should be applied only to cutters having a helical row of teeth like a gear-cutting hob.)

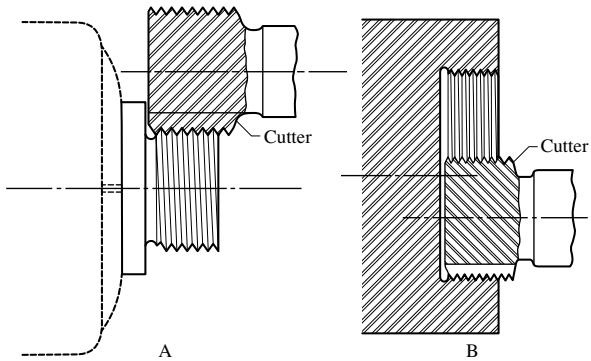
The object in using a multiple cutter instead of a single cutter is to finish a screw thread complete in approximately one revolution of the work, a slight amount of over-travel being allowed to insure milling the thread to the full depth where the end of cut joins the starting point. The cutter, which is at least one and one half or two threads or pitches wider than the thread to be milled, is fed in to the full thread depth and then either the cutter or screw blank is moved in a lengthwise direction a distance equal to the lead of the thread during one revolution of the work.

The multiple cutter is used for milling comparatively short threads and coarse, medium or fine pitches. The accompanying illustration shows typical examples of external and internal work for which the multiple-cutter type of thread milling has proved very efficient, although its usefulness is not confined to shoulder work and "blind" holes.

In using multiple cutters either for internal or external thread milling, the axis of the cutter is set parallel with the axis of the work, instead of inclining the cutter to suit the lead angle of the thread, as when using a single cutter. Theoretically, this is not the correct position for a cutter, since each cutting edge is revolving in a plane at right angles to the screw's axis while milling a thread groove of helical form. However, as a general rule, interference between the cutter and the thread does not result in a decided change in the standard thread form. Usually the deviation is very slight and may be disregarded except when milling threads which incline considerably relative to the axis like a thread of multiple form and large lead angle. Multiple cutters are suitable for external threads having lead angles under $3\frac{1}{2}$ degrees and for internal threads having lead angles under $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. Threads which have steeper sides or smaller included angles than the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American Standard or Whitworth forms have greater limitations on the maximum helix angle and may have to be milled with a single point cutter tilted to the helix angle, assuming that the milling process is preferable to other methods. For instance, in milling an Acme thread which has an included angle between the sides of 29 degrees, there might be considerable interference if a multiple cutter were used, unless the screw thread diameter were large enough in proportion to the pitch to prevent such interference. If an attempt were made to mill a square thread with a multiple cutter, the results would be unsatisfactory owing to the interference.



Examples of External and Internal Thread Milling with a Multiple Thread Milling Cutter

Interference between the cutter and work is more pronounced when milling internal threads, because the cutter does not clear itself so well. It is preferable to use as small a cutter as practicable, either for internal or external work, not only to avoid interference, but to reduce the strain on the driving mechanism. Some thread milling cutters, known as "topping cutters," are made for milling the outside diameter of the thread as well as the angular sides and root, but most are made non-tapping.

Planetary Method.—The planetary method of thread milling is similar in principle to planetary milling. The part to be threaded is held stationary and the thread milling cutter, while revolving about its own axis, is given a planetary movement around the work in order to mill the thread in one planetary revolution. The machine spindle and the cutter which is held by it is moved longitudinally for thread milling, an amount equal to the thread lead during one planetary revolution. This operation is applicable to both internal and external threads. Other advantages: Thread milling is frequently accompanied by milling operations on other adjoining surfaces, and may be performed with conventional and planetary methods. For example, a machine may be used for milling a screw thread and a concentric cylindrical surface simultaneously. When the milling operation begins, the cutter-spindle feeds the cutter in to the right depth and the planetary movement then begins, thus milling the thread and the cylindrical surface. Thin sharp starting edges are eliminated on threads milled by this method and the thread begins with a smooth gradual approach. One design of machine will mill internal and external threads simultaneously. These threads may be of the same hand or one may be right hand and the other left hand. The threads may also be either of the same pitch or of a different pitch, and either straight or tapered.

Classes of Work for Thread Milling Machines.—Thread milling machines are used in preference to lathes or taps and dies for certain threading operations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

There are four general reasons why a thread milling machine may be preferred: 1) Because the pitch of the thread is too coarse for cutting with a die; 2) because the milling process is more efficient than using a single-point tool in a lathe; 3) to secure a smoother and more accurate thread than would be obtained with a tap or die; and 4) because the thread is so located relative to a shoulder or other surface that the milling method is superior, if not the only practicable way.

A thread milling machine having a single cutter is especially adapted for coarse pitches, multiple-threaded screws, or any form or size of thread requiring the removal of a relatively large amount of metal, particularly if the pitch of the thread is large in proportion to the screw diameter, since the torsional strain due to the milling process is relatively small. Thread milling often gives a higher rate of production, and a thread is usually finished by means of a single turn of the multiple thread milling cutter around the thread diameter. The multiple-cutter type of thread milling machine frequently comes into competition with dies and taps, and especially self-opening dies and collapsing taps. The use of a multiple cutter is desirable when a thread must be cut close to a shoulder or to the bottom of a shallow recess, although the usefulness of the multiple cutter is not confined to shoulder work and "blind" holes.

Maximum Pitches of Die-Cut Threads.—Dies of special design could be constructed for practically any pitch, if the screw blank were strong enough to resist the cutting strains and the size and cost of the die were immaterial; but, as a general rule, when the pitch is coarser than four or five threads per inch, the difficulty of cutting threads with dies increases rapidly, although in a few cases some dies are used successfully on screw threads having two or three threads per inch or less. Much depends upon the design of the die, the finish or smoothness required, and the relation between the pitch of the thread and the diameter of the screw. When the screw diameter is relatively small in proportion to the pitch, there may be considerable distortion due to the twisting strains set up when the thread is being cut. If the number of threads per inch is only one or two less than the standard number for a given diameter, a screw blank ordinarily will be strong enough to permit the use of a die.

Changing Pitch of Screw Thread Slightly.—A very slight change in the pitch of a screw thread may be necessary as, for example, when the pitch of a tap is increased a small amount to compensate for shrinkage in hardening. One method of obtaining slight variations in pitch is by means of a taper attachment. This attachment is set at an angle and the work is located at the same angle by adjusting the tailstock center. The result is that the tool follows an angular path relative to the movement of the carriage and, consequently, the pitch of the thread is increased slightly, the amount depending upon the angle to which the work and taper attachment are set. The cosine of this angle, for obtaining a given increase in pitch, equals the standard pitch (which would be obtained with the lathe used in the regular way) divided by the increased pitch necessary to compensate for shrinkage.

If the pitch of a $\frac{3}{4}$-inch American standard screw is to be increased from 0.100 to 0.1005, the cosine of the angle to which the taper attachment and work should be set is found as follows:

$$\text{Cosine of required angle} = \frac{0.100}{0.1005} = 0.9950$$

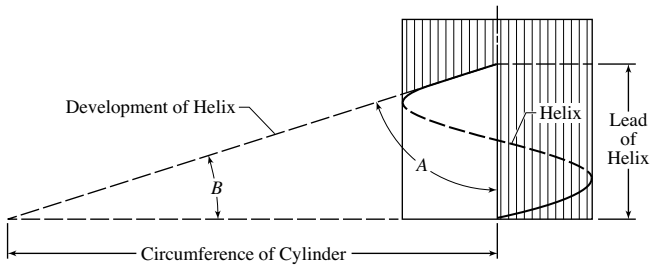
which is the cosine of 5 degrees 45 minutes, nearly.

Helix.—A helix is a curve generated by a point moving about a cylindrical surface (real or imaginary) at a constant rate in the direction of the cylinder's axis. The curvature of a screw thread is one common example of a helical curve.

Lead of Helix: The lead of a helix is the distance that it advances in an axial direction, in one complete turn about the cylindrical surface. To illustrate, the lead of a screw thread equals the distance that a thread advances in one turn; it also equals the distance that a nut would advance in one turn.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Development of Helix: If one turn of a helical curve were unrolled onto a plane surface (as shown by diagram), the helix would become a straight line forming the hypotenuse of a right-angle triangle. The length of one side of this triangle would equal the circumference of the cylinder with which the helix coincides, and the length of the other side of the triangle would equal the lead of the helix.



Helix Angles.—The triangular development of a helix has one angle *A* subtended by the circumference of the cylinder, and another angle *B* subtended by the lead of the helix. The term "helix angle" applies to angle *A*. For example, the helix angle of a helical gear, according to the general usage of the term, is always angle *A*, because this is the angle used in helical gear-designing formulas. Helix angle *A* would also be applied in milling the helical teeth of cutters, reamers, etc. Angle *A* of a gear or cutter tooth is a measure of its inclination relative to the axis of the gear or cutter.

Lead Angle: Angle *B* is applied to screw threads and worm threads and is referred to as the lead angle of the screw thread or worm. This angle *B* is a measure of the inclination of a screw thread from a plane that is perpendicular to the screw thread axis. Angle *B* is called the "lead angle" because it is subtended by the lead of the thread, and to distinguish it from the term "helix angle" as applied to helical gears.

Finding Helix Angle of Helical Gear: A helical gear tooth has an infinite number of helix angles, but the angle at the pitch diameter or mid-working depth is the one required in gear designing and gear cutting. This angle *A*, relative to the axis of the gear, is found as follows:

$$\text{tan helix angle} = \frac{3.1416 \times \text{pitch diameter of gear}}{\text{Lead of gear tooth}}$$

Finding Lead Angle of Screw Thread: The lead or helix angle at the pitch diameter of a screw thread usually is required when, for example, a thread milling cutter must be aligned with the thread. This angle measured from a plane perpendicular to the screw thread axis is found as follows:

$$\text{tan lead angle} = \frac{\text{Lead of screw thread}}{3.1416 \times \text{pitch diameter of screw thread}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GEARS AND GEARING

2204 Definitions of Gear Terms
2208 Sizes and Shape of Gear Teeth
2208 Nomenclature of Gear Teeth
2209 Properties of the Involute Curve
2209 Diametral and Circular Pitch Systems
2209 Pitch Diameters Obtained with Diametral Pitch System
2210 Formulas for Spur Gears
2210 Gear Tooth Parts and Forms
2211 Coarse Pitch Spur Tooth Forms
2214 Tooth Proportions
2215 Fine Pitch Tooth Parts
2215 Other American Spur Gear Standards
2216 Formulas for Tooth Parts
2216 Fellows Stub Tooth
2216 Basic Gear Dimensions
2217 Formulas for Outside and Root Diameters
2218 Gears for Given Center Distance and Ratio
2220 Tooth Thickness Allowance
2220 Circular Pitch for Given Center Distance
2220 Circular Thickness of Tooth
2224 Chordal Addendum
2225 Addendums and Tooth Thicknesses
2225 Enlarged Pinion
2226 Tables for Chordal Thicknesses and Chordal Addenda
2226 Caliper Measurement of Gear Tooth
2227 Involute Gear Milling Cutter
2227 Increasing Pinion Diameter
2228 Circular Pitch in Gears
2229 Finishing Gear Milling Cutters
2230 Increase in Dedendum
2230 Dimensions Required
2231 Tooth Proportions for Pinions
2233 Minimum Number of Teeth
2233 Gear to Mesh with Enlarged Pinion
2233 Standard and Enlarged Center-Distance
2234 Contact Diameter
2235 Contact Ratio
2235 Lowest Point of Single Tooth Contact

GEARS AND GEARING

(Continued)

2235 Maximum Hob Tip Radius
2236 Undercut Limit
2236 Highest Point of Single Tooth Contact
2236 True Involute Form Diameter
2237 Profile Checker Settings
2239 Gear Blanks
2240 Spur and Helical Gear Data
2242 Backlash
2242 Determining Backlash
2243 Helical and Herringbone Gearing
2244 Bevel and Hypoid Gears
2245 Providing Backlash
2245 Excess Depth of Cut
2245 Control of Backlash Allowances
2246 Measurement of Backlash
2247 Control of Backlash
2247 Allowance and Tolerance
2248 Angular Backlash in Gears
2248 Inspection of Gears
2248 Pressure for Fine-Pitch Gears
2249 Internal Gearing
2249 Internal Spur Gears
2249 Methods of Cutting Gears
2249 Formed Cutters for Gears
2249 Arc Thickness of Gear Tooth
2249 Arc Thickness of Pinion Tooth
2249 Relative Sizes of Gear and Pinon
2250 Rules for Internal Gears
2251 British Standard for Spur and Helical Gears
2252 Addendum Modification
2253 ISO TC/600
2254 Standards Nomenclature

HYPOID AND BEVEL GEARING

2255 Hypoid Gears
2256 Bevel Gearing
2258 Applications of Bevel and Hypoid Gears
2258 Design of Bevel Gear Blanks
2259 Mountings for Bevel Gears
2259 Cutting Bevel Gear Teeth
2260 Nomenclature for Bevel Gears
2260 American Standard
2260 Formulas for Dimensions
2264 Numbers of Formed Cutters
2266 Selecting Formed Cutters

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HYPOID AND BEVEL GEARING

(Continued)

2266 Use of Table for Selecting Formed Cutters
2267 Offset of Cutter
2267 Adjusting the Gear Blank
2268 Circular Thickness, Chordal Thickness
2269 Steels Used for Bevel Gear

WORM GEARING

2270 Standard Design for Fine-Pitch
2271 Formulas for Wormgears
2272 Effect of Production Method
2272 Materials for Worm Gearing
2273 Single-Thread Worm Gears
2273 Multi-Thread Worm Gears
2273 Worm-Gear Cutting

HELICAL GEARING

2274 Helical Gear Calculations
2274 Rules and Formulas
2274 Determining Direction of Thrust
2275 Determining Helix Angles
2275 Pitch of Cutter to be Used
2278 Shafts at Right Angles, Center Distance Approximate
2279 Shafts at Right Angles, Center Distance Exact
2282 Shafts at Any Angle, Center Distance Exact
2283 Selecting Cutter for Milling Helical Gears
2284 Milling the Helical Teeth
2285 Fine-Pitch Helical Gears
2286 Center Distance Without Backlash
2287 Change-Gears for Hobbing
2289 Helical Gear Hobbing
2289 Herringbone Gears
2289 General Classes of Problems
2289 Causes of Failures

OTHER GEAR TYPES

2290 Elliptic Gears
2290 Planetary Gearing
2290 Direction of Rotation
2290 Compound Drive
2290 Planetary Bevel Gears
2291 Ratios of Epicyclic Gearing
2294 Ratchet Gearing

OTHER GEAR TYPES

(Continued)

2294 Types of Ratchet Gearing
2295 Shape of Ratchet Wheel Teeth
2295 Pitch of Ratchet Wheel Teeth
2296 Module System Gear Design
2296 German Standard Tooth Form
2297 Tooth Dimensions
2298 Rules for Module System
2299 Equivalent Diametral Pitches, Circular Pitches

CHECKING GEAR SIZES

2300 Checking External Spur Gear Sizes
2301 Measurement Over Wires
2305 Checking Internal Spur Gear
2314 Measurements for Checking Helical Gears Using Wires or Balls
2315 Checking Spur Gear Size by Chordal Measurement Over Two or More Teeth
2317 Formula for Chordal Dimension
2318 Checking Enlarged Pinions by Measuring Over Pins or Wires

GEAR MATERIALS

2319 Classification of Gear Steels
2319 Use of Case-Hardening Steels
2319 Use of "Thru-Hardening" Steels
2319 Heat Treatment for Machining
2320 Making Pinion Harder
2320 Forged and Rolled Carbon Steels
2320 Forged and Rolled Alloy Steels
2321 Steel Castings for Gears
2321 Effect of Alloying Metals
2322 Sintered Materials
2322 Bronze and Brass Gear Castings
2323 Steels for Industrial Gearing
2324 Materials for Worm Gearing
2324 Non-Metallic Gearing
2325 Power-Transmitting Capacity
2325 Safe Working Stresses
2326 Preferred Pitch
2326 Bore Sizes
2326 Keyway Stresses
2327 Preferred Pitches
2327 Invention of Gear Teeth
2328 Calculating Replacement-Gear Dimensions

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

SPLINES AND SERRATIONS

2331 Involute Splines
2331 American National Standard
2332 Terms Applied
2333 Types of Involute Spline
2335 Tooth Proportions
2335 Symbols
2336 Formulas for Basic Dimensions
2337 Basic Dimensions
2337 Tooth Numbers
2337 Types and Classes of Fits
2337 Classes of Tolerances
2339 Fillets and Chamfers
2340 Spline Variations
2340 Effect of Spline Variations
2340 Effective and Actual Dimensions
2341 Space Width and Tooth Thickness Limits
2341 Effective and Actual Dimensions
2342 Combinations of Spline Types
2342 Interchangeability
2343 Drawing Data
2344 Spline Data and Reference Dimensions
2344 Estimating Key and Spline Sizes
2345 Formulas for Torque Capacity
2346 Spline Application Factors
2346 Load Distribution Factors
2347 Fatigue-Life Factors
2347 Wear Life Factors
2347 Allowable Shear Stresses
2348 Crowned Splines for Large Misalignments
2349 Fretting Damage to Splines
2349 Inspection Methods
2350 Inspection with Gages
2350 Measurements with Pins

SPLINES AND SERRATIONS

(Continued)

2351 Metric Module Splines
2353 Comparison of Symbols
2354 Formulas for Dimensions and Tolerances
2355 Tooth Thickness Modification
2355 Machining Tolerances
2355 Tooth Thickness Total Tolerance
2356 Selected Fit Classes Data
2357 Straight Splines
2357 British Standard
2358 Spline Fittings
2359 Standard Spline Fittings
2360 Dimensions of Standard Splines
2361 Polygon-Type Shaft Connections

CAMS AND CAM DESIGN

2363 Classes of Cams
2363 Cam Follower Systems
2364 Displacement Diagrams
2367 Displacement Diagram Synthesis
2369 Cam Profile Determination
2372 Pressure Angle and Radius of Curvature
2373 Cam Size for a Radial Follower
2375 Cam Size for Swinging Roller Follower
2376 Formulas for Calculating Pressure Angles
2378 Radius of Curvature
2380 Cam Forces, Contact Stresses, and Materials
2385 Calculation of Contact Stresses
2386 Layout of Cylinder Cams
2386 Shape of Rolls for Cylinder Cams
2387 Cam Milling
2388 Cutting Uniform Motion Cams

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GEARS AND GEARING

External spur gears are cylindrical gears with straight teeth cut parallel to the axes. Gears transmit drive between parallel shafts. Tooth loads produce no axial thrust. Excellent at moderate speeds but tend to be noisy at high speeds. Shafts rotate in opposite directions.

Internal spur gears provide compact drive arrangements for transmitting motion between parallel shafts rotating in the same direction.

Helical gears are cylindrical gears with teeth cut at an angle to the axes. Provide drive between shafts rotating in opposite directions, with superior load carrying capacity and quietness than spur gears. Tooth loads produce axial thrust.

Crossed helical gears are helical gears that mesh together on non-parallel axes.

Straight bevel gears have teeth that are radial toward the apex and are of conical form. Designed to operate on intersecting axes, bevel gears are used to connect two shafts on intersecting axes. The angle between the shafts equals the angle between the two axes of the meshing teeth. End thrust developed under load tends to separate the gears.

Spiral bevel gears have curved oblique teeth that contact each other smoothly and gradually from one end of a tooth to the other. Meshing is similar to that of straight bevel gears but is smoother and quieter in use. Left hand spiral teeth incline away from the axis in an anti-clockwise direction looking on small end of pinion or face of gear; right-hand teeth incline away from axis in clockwise direction. The hand of spiral of the pinion is always opposite to that of the gear and is used to identify the hand of the gear pair. Used to connect two shafts on intersecting axes as with straight bevel gears. The spiral angle does not affect the smoothness and quietness of operation or the efficiency but does affect the direction of the thrust loads created. A left-hand spiral pinion driving clockwise when viewed from the large end of the pinion creates an axial thrust that tends to move the pinion out of mesh.

Zerol bevel gears have curved teeth lying in the same general direction as straight bevel teeth but should be considered to be spiral bevel gears with zero spiral angle.

Hypoid bevel gears are a cross between spiral bevel gears and worm gears. The axes of hypoid bevel gears are non-intersecting and non-parallel. The distance between the axes is called the offset. The offset permits higher ratios of reduction than is practicable with other bevel gears. Hypoid bevel gears have curved oblique teeth on which contact begins gradually and continues smoothly from one end of the tooth to the other.

Worm gears are used to transmit motion between shafts at right angles, that do not lie in a common plane and sometimes to connect shafts at other angles. Worm gears have line tooth contact and are used for power transmission, but the higher the ratio the lower the efficiency.

Definitions of Gear Terms.—The following terms are commonly applied to the various classes of gears:

Active face width is the dimension of the tooth face width that makes contact with a mating gear.

Addendum is the radial or perpendicular distance between the pitch circle and the top of the tooth.

Arc of action is the arc of the pitch circle through which a tooth travels from the first point of contact with the mating tooth to the point where contact ceases.

Arc of approach is the arc of the pitch circle through which a tooth travels from the first point of contact with the mating tooth to the pitch point.

Arc of recession is the arc of the pitch circle through which a tooth travels from its contact with a mating tooth at the pitch point until contact ceases.

Axial pitch is the distance parallel to the axis between corresponding sides of adjacent teeth.

Axial plane is the plane that contains the two axes in a pair of gears. In a single gear the axial plane is any plane containing the axis and any given point.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Axial thickness is the distance parallel to the axis between two pitch line elements of the same tooth.

Backlash is the shortest distance between the non-driving surfaces of adjacent teeth when the working flanks are in contact.

Base circle is the circle from which the involute tooth curve is generated or developed.

Base helix angle is the angle at the base cylinder of an involute gear that the tooth makes with the gear axis.

Base pitch is the circular pitch taken on the circumference of the base circles, or the distance along the line of action between two successive and corresponding involute tooth profiles. The *normal base pitch* is the base pitch in the normal plane and the *axial base pitch* is the base pitch in the axial plane.

Base tooth thickness is the distance on the base circle in the plane of rotation between involutes of the same pitch.

Bottom land is the surface of the gear between the flanks of adjacent teeth.

Center distance is the shortest distance between the non-intersecting axes of mating gears, or between the parallel axes of spur gears and parallel helical gears, or the crossed axes of crossed helical gears or worm gears.

Central plane is the plane perpendicular to the gear axis in a worm gear, which contains the common perpendicular of the gear and the worm axes. In the usual arrangement with the axes at right angles, it contains the worm axis.

Chordal addendum is the radial distance from the circular thickness chord to the top of the tooth, or the height from the top of the tooth to the chord subtending the circular thickness arc.

Chordal thickness is the length of the chord subtended by the circular thickness arc. The dimension obtained when a gear tooth caliper is used to measure the tooth thickness at the pitch circle.

Circular pitch is the distance on the circumference of the pitch circle, in the plane of rotation, between corresponding points of adjacent teeth. The length of the arc of the pitch circle between the centers or other corresponding points of adjacent teeth.

Circular thickness is the thickness of the tooth on the pitch circle in the plane of rotation, or the length of arc between the two sides of a gear tooth measured on the pitch circle.

Clearance is the radial distance between the top of a tooth and the bottom of a mating tooth space, or the amount by which the dedendum in a given gear exceeds the addendum of its mating gear.

Contact diameter is the smallest diameter on a gear tooth with which the mating gear makes contact.

Contact ratio is the ratio of the arc of action in the plane of rotation to the circular pitch, and is sometimes thought of as the average number of teeth in contact. This ratio is obtained most directly as the ratio of the length of action to the base pitch.

Contact ratio - face is the ratio of the face advance to the circular pitch in helical gears.

Contact ratio - total is the ratio of the sum of the arc of action and the face advance to the circular pitch.

Contact stress is the maximum compressive stress within the contact area between mating gear tooth profiles. Also called the Hertz stress.

Cycloid is the curve formed by the path of a point on a circle as it rolls along a straight line. When such a circle rolls along the outside of another circle the curve is called an *epicycloid*, and when it rolls along the inside of another circle it is called a *hypocycloid*. These curves are used in defining the former American Standard composite Tooth Form.

Dedendum is the radial or perpendicular distance between the pitch circle and the bottom of the tooth space.

Diametral pitch is the ratio of the number of teeth to the number of inches in the pitch diameter in the plane of rotation, or the number of gear teeth to each inch of pitch diameter. Normal diametral pitch is the diametral pitch as calculated in the normal plane, or the diametral pitch divided by the cosine of the helix angle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Efficiency is the torque ratio of a gear set divided by its gear ratio.
Equivalent pitch radius is the radius of curvature of the pitch surface at the pitch point in a plane normal to the pitch line element.
Face advance is the distance on the pitch circle that a gear tooth travels from the time pitch point contact is made at one end of the tooth until pitch point contact is made at the other end.
Fillet radius is the radius of the concave portion of the tooth profile where it joins the bottom of the tooth space.
Fillet stress is the maximum tensile stress in the gear tooth fillet.
Flank of tooth is the surface between the pitch circle and the bottom land, including the gear tooth fillet.
Gear ratio is the ratio between the numbers of teeth in mating gears.
Helical overlap is the effective face width of a helical gear divided by the gear axial pitch.
Helix angle is the angle that a helical gear tooth makes with the gear axis at the pitch circle, unless specified otherwise.
Hertz stress, see *Contact stress*.
Highest point of single tooth contact (HPSTC) is the largest diameter on a spur gear at which a single tooth is in contact with the mating gear.
Interference is the contact between mating teeth at some point other than along the line of action.
Internal diameter is the diameter of a circle that coincides with the tops of the teeth of an internal gear.
Internal gear is a gear with teeth on the inner cylindrical surface.
Involute is the curve generally used as the profile of gear teeth. The curve is the path of a point on a straight line as it rolls along a convex base curve, usually a circle.
Land The top land is the top surface of a gear tooth and the *bottom land* is the surface of the gear between the fillets of adjacent teeth.
Lead is the axial advance of the helix in one complete turn, or the distance along its own axis on one revolution if the gear were free to move axially.
Length of action is the distance on an involute line of action through which the point of contact moves during the action of the tooth profile.
Line of action is the portion of the common tangent to the base cylinders along which contact between mating involute teeth occurs.
Lowest point of single tooth contact (LPSTC) is the smallest diameter on a spur gear at which a single tooth is in contact with its mating gear. Gear set contact stress is determined with a load placed on the pinion at this point.
Module is the ratio of the pitch diameter to the number of teeth, normally the ratio of pitch diameter in mm to the number of teeth. Module in the inch system is the ratio of the pitch diameter in inches to the number of teeth.
Normal plane is a plane normal to the tooth surfaces at a point of contact and perpendicular to the pitch plane.
Number of teeth is the number of teeth contained in a gear.
Outside diameter is the diameter of the circle that contains the tops of the teeth of external gears.
Pitch is the distance between similar, equally-spaced tooth surfaces in a given direction along a given curve or line.
Pitch circle is the circle through the pitch point having its center at the gear axis.
Pitch diameter is the diameter of the pitch circle. The operating pitch diameter is the pitch diameter at which the gear operates.
Pitch plane is the plane parallel to the axial plane and tangent to the pitch surfaces in any pair of gears. In a single gear, the pitch plane may be any plane tangent to the pitch surfaces.
Pitch point is the intersection between the axes of the line of centers and the line of action.
Plane of rotation is any plane perpendicular to a gear axis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pressure angle is the angle between a tooth profile and a radial line at its pitch point. In involute teeth, the pressure angle is often described as the angle between the line of action and the line tangent to the pitch circle. *Standard pressure angles* are established in connection with standard tooth proportions. A given pair of involute profiles will transmit smooth motion at the same velocity ratio when the center distance is changed. Changes in center distance in gear design and gear manufacturing operations may cause changes in pitch diameter, pitch and pressure angle in the same gears under different conditions. Unless otherwise specified, the pressure angle is the *standard pressure angle at the standard pitch diameter*. The *operating pressure angle* is determined by the center distance at which a pair of gears operates. In oblique teeth such as helical and spiral designs, the pressure angle is specified in the transverse, normal or axial planes.

Principle reference planes are pitch plane, axial plane and transverse plane, all intersecting at a point and mutually perpendicular.

Rack: A rack is a gear with teeth spaced along a straight line, suitable for straight line motion. A basic rack is a rack that is adopted as the basis of a system of interchangeable gears. Standard gear tooth dimensions are often illustrated on an outline of a basic rack.

Roll angle is the angle subtended at the center of a base circle from the origin of an involute to the point of tangency of a point on a straight line from any point on the same involute. The radian measure of this angle is the tangent of the pressure angle of the point on the involute.

Root diameter is the diameter of the circle that contains the roots or bottoms of the tooth spaces.

Tangent plane is a plane tangent to the tooth surfaces at a point or line of contact.

Tip relief is an arbitrary modification of a tooth profile where a small amount of material is removed from the involute face of the tooth surface near the tip of the gear tooth.

Tooth face is the surface between the pitch line element and the tooth tip.

Tooth surface is the total tooth area including the flank of the tooth and the tooth face.

Total face width is the dimensional width of a gear blank and may exceed the effective face width as with a double-helical gear where the total face width includes any distance separating the right-hand and left-hand helical gear teeth.

Transverse plane is a plane that is perpendicular to the axial plane and to the pitch plane. In gears with parallel axes, the transverse plane and the plane of rotation coincide.

Trochoid is the curve formed by the path of a point on the extension of a radius of a circle as it rolls along a curve or line. A trochoid is also the curve formed by the path of a point on a perpendicular to a straight line as the straight line rolls along the convex side of a base curve. By the first definition, a trochoid is derived from the *cycloid*; by the second definition it is derived from the *involute*.

True involute form diameter is the smallest diameter on the tooth at which the point of tangency of the involute tooth profile exists. Usually this position is the point of tangency of the involute tooth profile and the fillet curve, and is often referred to as the TIF diameter.

Undercut is a condition in generated gear teeth when any part of the fillet curve lies inside a line drawn at a tangent to the working profile at its lowest point. Undercut may be introduced deliberately to facilitate shaving operations, as in pre-shaving.

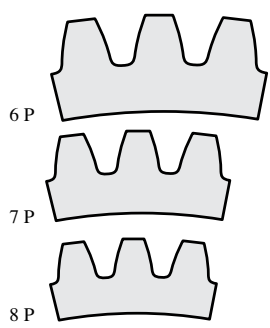
Whole depth is the total depth of a tooth space, equal to the addendum plus the dedendum and equal to the working depth plus clearance.

Working depth is the depth of engagement of two gears, or the sum of their addendums. The standard working distance is the depth to which a tooth extends into the tooth space of a mating gear when the center distance is standard.

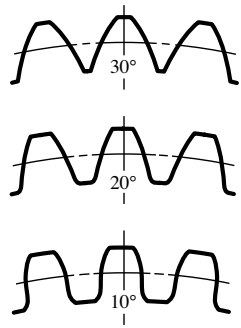
Definitions of gear terms are given in AGMA Standards 112.05, 115.01, and 116.01 entitled "Terms, Definitions, Symbols and Abbreviations," "Reference Information—Basic Gear Geometry," and "Glossary—Terms Used in Gearing," respectively; obtainable from American Gear Manufacturers Association, 500 Montgomery St., Alexandria, VA 22314.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Comparative Sizes and Shape of Gear Teeth

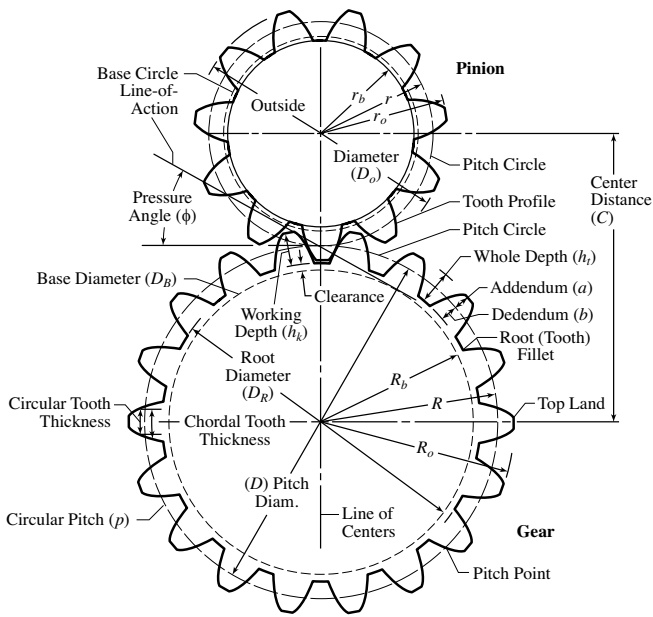


Gear Teeth of Different Diametral Pitch



Shapes of Gear Teeth of Different Pressure Angles

Nomenclature of Gear Teeth



Terms Used in Gear Geometry from Table 1 on page 2210

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Properties of the Involute Curve.—The involute curve is used almost exclusively for gear-tooth profiles, because of the following important properties.

1) The form or shape of an involute curve depends upon the diameter of the base circle from which it is derived. (If a taut line were unwound from the circumference of a circle—the *base circle* of the involute—the end of that line or any point on the unwound portion would describe an involute curve.)

2) If a gear tooth of involute curvature acts against the involute tooth of a mating gear while rotating at a uniform rate, the angular motion of the driven gear will also be uniform, even though the center-to-center distance is varied.

3) The relative rate of motion between driving and driven gears having involute tooth curves is established by the diameters of their base circles.

4) Contact between intermeshing involute teeth on a driving and driven gear is along a straight line that is tangent to the two base circles of these gears. This is the *line of action*.

5) The point where the line of action intersects the common centerline of the mating involute gears establishes the radii of the pitch circles of these gears; hence true pitch circle diameters are affected by a change in the center distance. (Pitch diameters obtained by dividing the number of teeth by the diametral pitch apply when the center distance equals the total number of teeth on both gears divided by twice the diametral pitch.)

6) The pitch diameters of mating involute gears are directly proportional to the diameters of their respective base circles; thus, if the base circle of one mating gear is three times as large as the other, the pitch circle diameters will be in the same ratio.

7) The angle between the line of action and a line perpendicular to the common centerline of mating gears is the *pressure angle*; hence the pressure angle is affected by any change in the center distance.

8) When an involute curve acts against a straight line (as in the case of an involute pinion acting against straight-sided rack teeth), the straight line is tangent to the involute and perpendicular to its line of action.

9) The pressure angle, in the case of an involute pinion acting against straight-sided rack teeth, is the angle between the line of action and the line of the rack's motion. If the involute pinion rotates at a uniform rate, movement of the rack will also be uniform.

Nomenclature:

ϕ = Pressure Angle
a = Addendum a_G = Addendum of Gear a_P = Addendum of Pinion
b = Dedendum
c = Clearance
C = Center Distance
D = Pitch Diameter D_G = Pitch Diameter of Gear D_P = Pitch Diameter of Pinion
D_B = Base Circle Diameter D_O = Outside Diameter D_R = Root Diameter
F = Face Width
h_k = Working Depth of Tooth h_t = Whole Depth of Tooth
m_G = Gear Ratio
N = Number of Teeth N_G = Number of Teeth in Gear N_P = Number of Teeth in Pinion
p = Circular Pitch P = Diametral Pitch

Diametral and Circular Pitch Systems.—Gear tooth system standards are established by specifying the tooth proportions of the basic rack. The diametral pitch system is applied to most of the gearing produced in the United States. If gear teeth are larger than about one diametral pitch, it is common practice to use the circular pitch system. The circular pitch system is also applied to cast gearing and it is commonly used in connection with the design and manufacture of worm gearing.

Pitch Diameters Obtained with Diametral Pitch System.—The diametral pitch system is arranged to provide a series of standard tooth sizes, the principle being similar to the standardization of screw thread pitches. Inasmuch as there must be a whole number of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

teeth on each gear, the increase in pitch diameter per tooth varies according to the pitch. For example, the pitch diameter of a gear having, say, 20 teeth of 4 diametral pitch will be 5 inches; 21 teeth, $5\frac{1}{4}$ inches; and so on, the increase in diameter for each additional tooth being equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch for 4 diametral pitch. Similarly, for 2 diametral pitch the variations for successive numbers of teeth would equal $\frac{1}{2}$ inch, and for 10 diametral pitch the variations would equal $\frac{1}{10}$ inch, etc. Where a given center distance must be maintained and no standard diametral pitch can be used, gears should be designed with reference to the gear set center distance procedure discussed in *Gears for Given Center Distance and Ratio* starting on page 2218.

Table 1. Formulas for Dimensions of Standard Spur Gears

To Find	Formula		To Find	Formula	
Base Circle Diameter	$D_B = D\cos\phi$	(1)	Number of Teeth	$N = P \times D$	(2a)
				$N = \frac{3.1416D}{p}$	(3b)
Circular Pitch	$p = \frac{3.1416D}{N}$	(3a)	Outside Diameter (Full-depth Teeth)	$D_O = \frac{N+2}{P}$	(4a)
	$p = \frac{3.1416}{P}$	(3c)		$D_O = \frac{(N+2)p}{3.1416}$	(5b)
Center Distance	$C = \frac{N_P(m_G+1)}{2P}$	(5a)	Outside Diameter (American Standard Stub Teeth)	$D_O = \frac{N+1.6}{P}$	(6a)
	$C = \frac{D_P + D_G}{2}$	(5c)		$D_O = \frac{(N+1.6)p}{3.1416}$	(6c)
	$C = \frac{N_G + N_P}{2P}$	(6b)	Outside Diameter	$D_O = D + 2a$	(7)
	$C = \frac{(N_G + N_P)p}{6.2832}$	(6d)	Pitch Diameter	$D = \frac{N}{P}$	(9a)
Diametral Pitch	$P = \frac{3.1416}{p}$	(8a)		$D = \frac{Np}{3.1416}$	(9c)
	$P = \frac{N}{D}$	(9b)	Root Diameter[a]	$D_R = D - 2b$	(10)
	$P = \frac{N_P(m_G+1)}{2C}$	(9d)	Whole Depth	$a + b$	(12)
Gear Ratio	$m_G = \frac{N_G}{N_P}$	(11)	Working Depth	$a_G + a_P$	(13)

[a] See also formulas in Table 2 and Table 4 on pages 2210 and 2214.

Table 2. Formulas for Tooth Parts, 20-and 25-degree Involute Full-depth Teeth ANSI Coarse Pitch Spur Gear Tooth Forms *ANSI B6.1-1968 (R1974)*

To Find	Diametral Pitch, P, Known	Circular Pitch, p, Known
Addendum	$a = 1.000 \div P$	$a = 0.3183 \times p$
Dedendum (Preferred)	$b = 1.250 \div P$	$b = 0.3979 \times p$
(Shaved or Ground Teeth)[a]	$b = 1.350 \div P$	$b = 0.4297 \times p$
Working Depth	$h_k = 2.000 \div P$	$h_k = 0.6366 \times p$
Whole Depth (Preferred)	$h_t = 2.250 \div P$	$h_t = 0.7162 \times p$
(Shaved or Ground Teeth)	$h_t = 2.350 \div P$	$h_t = 0.7480 \times p$
Clearance (Preferred)[b]	$c = 0.250 \div P$	$c = 0.0796 \times p$
(Shaved or Ground Teeth)	$c = 0.350 \div P$	$c = 0.1114 \times p$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Formulas for Tooth Parts, 20-and 25-degree Involute Full-depth Teeth ANSI Coarse Pitch Spur Gear Tooth Forms** *ANSI B6.1-1968 (R1974)*

To Find	Diametral Pitch, P, Known	Circular Pitch, p, Known
Fillet Radius (Rack)[c]	$r_f = 0.300 \div P$	$r_f = 0.0955 \times p$
Pitch Diameter	$D = N \div P$	$D = 0.3183 \times N \times p$
Outside Diameter	$D_O = (N + 2) \div P$	$D_O = 0.3183 \times (N + 2)p$
Root Diameter (Preferred)	$D_R = (N - 2.5) \div P$	$D_R = 0.3183 \times (N - 2.5)p$
(Shaved or Ground Teeth)	$D_R = (N - 2.7) \div P$	$D_R = 0.3183 \times (N - 2.7)p$
Circular Thickness—Basic	$t = 1.5708 \div P$	$t = p \div 2$

[a] When gears are preshave cut on a gear shaper the dedendum will usually need to be increased to 1.40/*P* to allow for the higher fillet trochoid produced by the shaper cutter. This is of particular importance on gears of few teeth or if the gear blank configuration requires the use of a small diameter shaper cutter, in which case the dedendum may need to be increased to as much as 1.45/*P*. This should be avoided on highly loaded gears where the consequently reduced *J* factor will increase gear tooth stress excessively.

[b] A minimum clearance of 0.157/*P* may be used for the basic 20-degree and 25-degree pressure angle rack in the case of shallow root sections and use of existing hobs or cutters. However, whenever less than standard clearance is used, the location of the TIF diameter should be determined by the method shown in *True Involute Form Diameter* starting on page 2236. The TIF diameter must be less than the Contact Diameter determined by the method shown on page 2234.

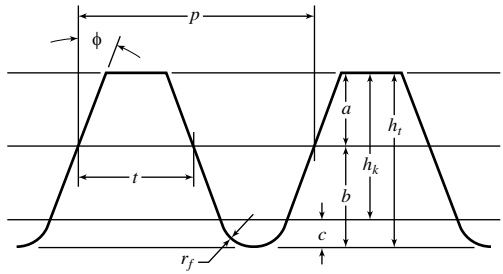
[c] The fillet radius of the basic rack should not exceed 0.235/*P* for a 20-degree pressure angle rack or 0.270/*P* for a 25-degree pressure angle rack for a clearance of 0.157/*P*. The basic rack fillet radius must be *reduced* for teeth with a 25-degree pressure angle having a clearance in excess of 0.250/*P*.

American National Standard Coarse Pitch Spur Gear Tooth Forms.—The American National Standard (ANSI B6.1-1968, R1974) provides tooth proportion information on two involute spur gear forms. These two forms are identical except that one has a pressure angle of 20 degrees and a minimum allowable tooth number of 18 while the other has a pressure angle of 25 degrees and a minimum allowable tooth number of 12. (For pinions with fewer teeth, see tooth proportions for long addendum pinions and their mating short addendum gears in Table 7 through Table 9d starting on page 2225.) A gear tooth standard is established by specifying the tooth proportions of the basic rack. Gears made to this standard will thus be conjugate with the specified rack and with each other. The basic rack forms for the 20-degree and 25-degree standard are shown on the following page; basic formulas for these proportions as a function of the gear diametral pitch and also of the circular pitch are given in Table 2. Tooth parts data are given in Table 3.

In recent years the established standard of almost universal use is the ANSI 20-degree standard spur gear form. It provides a gear with good strength and without fillet undercut in pinions of as few as eighteen teeth. Some more recent applications have required a tooth form of even greater strength and fewer teeth than eighteen. This requirement has stimulated the establishment of the ANSI 25-degree standard. This 25-degree form will give greater tooth strength than the 20-degree standard, will provide pinions of as few as twelve teeth without fillet undercut and will provide a lower contact compressive stress for greater gear set surface durability.

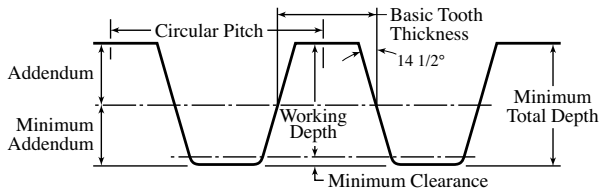
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

American National Standard and Former American Standard Gear Tooth Forms
ANSI B6.1-1968, (R1974) **and** *ASA B6.1-1932*

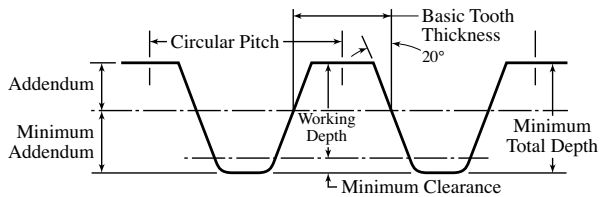


a = addendum
b = dedendum
c = clearance
h_k = working depth
h_t = whole depth
p = circular pitch
r_f = fillet radius of basic rack
t = circular tooth thickness — basic
ϕ = pressure angle

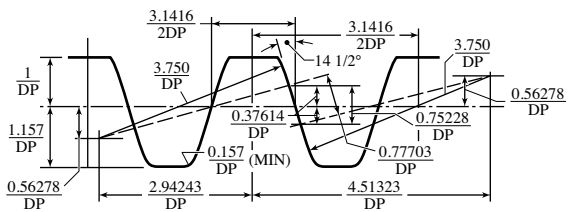
Basic Rack of the 20-Degree and 25-Degree Full-Depth Involute Systems



Basic Rack of the 14½-Degree Full-Depth Involute System



Basic Rack of the 20-Degree Stub Involute System



Approximation of Basic Rack for the 14½-Degree Composite System

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Gear Tooth Parts for American National Standard Coarse Pitch 20- and 25-Degree Pressure Angle Gears

Dia. Pitch	Circ. Pitch	Stand. Addend.[a]	Stand. Dedend.	Spec. Dedend.[b]	Min. Dedend.	Stand. F. Rad.	Min. F. Rad.
P	*p*	*a*	*b*	*b*	*b*	r_f	r_f
0.3142	10.	3.1831	3.9789	4.2972	3.6828	0.9549	0.4997
0.3307	9.5	3.0239	3.7799	4.0823	3.4987	0.9072	0.4748
0.3491	9.	2.8648	3.5810	3.8675	3.3146	0.8594	0.4498
0.3696	8.5	2.7056	3.3820	3.6526	3.1304	0.8117	0.4248
0.3927	8.	2.5465	3.1831	3.4377	2.9463	0.7639	0.3998
0.4189	7.5	2.3873	2.9842	3.2229	2.7621	0.7162	0.3748
0.4488	7.	2.2282	2.7852	3.0080	2.5780	0.6685	0.3498
0.4833	6.5	2.0690	2.5863	2.7932	2.3938	0.6207	0.3248
0.5236	6.	1.9099	2.3873	2.5783	2.2097	0.5730	0.2998
0.5712	5.5	1.7507	2.1884	2.3635	2.0256	0.5252	0.2749
0.6283	5.	1.5915	1.9894	2.1486	1.8414	0.4775	0.2499
0.6981	4.5	1.4324	1.7905	1.9337	1.6573	0.4297	0.2249
0.7854	4.	1.2732	1.5915	1.7189	1.4731	0.3820	0.1999
0.8976	3.5	1.1141	1.3926	1.5040	1.2890	0.3342	0.1749
1.	3.1416	1.0000	1.2500	1.3500	1.1570	0.3000	0.1570
1.25	2.5133	0.8000	1.0000	1.0800	0.9256	0.2400	0.1256
1.5	2.0944	0.6667	0.8333	0.9000	0.7713	0.2000	0.1047
1.75	1.7952	0.5714	0.7143	0.7714	0.6611	0.1714	0.0897
2.	1.5708	0.5000	0.6250	0.6750	0.5785	0.1500	0.0785
2.25	1.3963	0.4444	0.5556	0.6000	0.5142	0.1333	0.0698
2.5	1.2566	0.4000	0.5000	0.5400	0.4628	0.1200	0.0628
2.75	1.1424	0.3636	0.4545	0.4909	0.4207	0.1091	0.0571
3.	1.0472	0.3333	0.4167	0.4500	0.3857	0.1000	0.0523
3.25	0.9666	0.3077	0.3846	0.4154	0.3560	0.0923	0.0483
3.5	0.8976	0.2857	0.3571	0.3857	0.3306	0.0857	0.0449
3.75	0.8378	0.2667	0.3333	0.3600	0.3085	0.0800	0.0419
4.	0.7854	0.2500	0.3125	0.3375	0.2893	0.0750	0.0392
4.5	0.6981	0.2222	0.2778	0.3000	0.2571	0.0667	0.0349
5.	0.6283	0.2000	0.2500	0.2700	0.2314	0.0600	0.0314
5.5	0.5712	0.1818	0.2273	0.2455	0.2104	0.0545	0.0285
6.	0.5236	0.1667	0.2083	0.2250	0.1928	0.0500	0.0262
6.5	0.4833	0.1538	0.1923	0.2077	0.1780	0.0462	0.0242
7.	0.4488	0.1429	0.1786	0.1929	0.1653	0.0429	0.0224
7.5	0.4189	0.1333	0.1667	0.1800	0.1543	0.0400	0.0209
8.	0.3927	0.1250	0.1563	0.1687	0.1446	0.0375	0.0196
8.5	0.3696	0.1176	0.1471	0.1588	0.1361	0.0353	0.0185
9.	0.3491	0.1111	0.1389	0.1500	0.1286	0.0333	0.0174
9.5	0.3307	0.1053	0.1316	0.1421	0.1218	0.0316	0.0165
10.	0.3142	0.1000	0.1250	0.1350	0.1157	0.0300	0.0157
11.	0.2856	0.0909	0.1136	0.1227	0.1052	0.0273	0.0143
12.	0.2618	0.0833	0.1042	0.1125	0.0964	0.0250	0.0131
13.	0.2417	0.0769	0.0962	0.1038	0.0890	0.0231	0.0121
14.	0.2244	0.0714	0.0893	0.0964	0.0826	0.0214	0.0112
15.	0.2094	0.0667	0.0833	0.0900	0.0771	0.0200	0.0105
16.	0.1963	0.0625	0.0781	0.0844	0.0723	0.0188	0.0098
17.	0.1848	0.0588	0.0735	0.0794	0.0681	0.0176	0.0092
18.	0.1745	0.0556	0.0694	0.0750	0.0643	0.0167	0.0087
19.	0.1653	0.0526	0.0658	0.0711	0.0609	0.0158	0.0083
20.	0.1571	0.0500	0.0625	0.0675	0.0579	0.0150	0.0079

[a] When using equal addendums on pinion and gear the minimum number of teeth on the pinion is 18 and the minimum total number of teeth in the pair is 36 for 20-degree full depth involute tooth form and 12 and 24, respectively, for 25-degree full depth tooth form.

[b] The dedendum in this column is used when the gear tooth is shaved. It allows for the higher fillet cut by a protuberance hob.

The working depth is equal to twice the addendum.

The whole depth is equal to the addendum plus the dedendum.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Tooth Proportions for Fine-Pitch Involute Spur and Helical Gears of $14\frac{1}{2}$-, 20-, and 25-Degree Pressure Angle *ANSI B6.7-1977*

Item	Spur	Helical
Addendum, a	$\frac{1.000}{P}$	$\frac{1.000}{P_n}$
Dedendum, b	$\frac{1.200}{P} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$	$\frac{1.200}{P_n} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$
Working Depth, h_k	$\frac{2.000}{P}$	$\frac{2.000}{P_n}$
Whole Depth, h_t	$\frac{2.200}{P} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$	$\frac{2.200}{P_n} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$
Clearance, c (Standard)	$\frac{0.200}{P} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$	$\frac{0.200}{P_n} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$
(Shaved or Ground Teeth)	$\frac{0.350}{P} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$	$\frac{0.350}{P_n} + 0.002\,(\text{min.})$
Tooth Thickness, t At Pitch Diameter	$t = \frac{1.5708}{P}$	$t_n = \frac{1.5708}{P_n}$
Circular Pitch, p	$p = \frac{\pi D}{N}$ or $\frac{\pi d}{n}$ or $\frac{\pi}{P}$	$p_n = \frac{\pi}{P_n}$
Pitch Diameter Pinion, d	$\frac{n}{P}$	$\frac{n}{P_n \cos\psi}$
Gear, D	$\frac{N}{P}$	$\frac{N}{P_n \cos\psi}$
Outside Diameter Pinion, d_o	$\frac{n+2}{P}$	$\frac{1}{P_n}\left(\frac{n}{\cos\psi} + 2\right)$
Gear, D_o	$\frac{N+2}{P}$	$\frac{1}{P_n}\left(\frac{N}{\cos\psi} + 2\right)$
Center Distance, C	$\frac{N+n}{2P}$	$\frac{N+n}{2P_n \cos\psi}$

All dimensions are in inches.
P = Transverse Diametral Pitch
P_n = Normal Diametral Pitch
t_n = Normal Tooth Thickness at Pitch Diameter
p_n = Normal Circular Pitch
ψ = Helix Angle
n = Number of pinion teeth
N = Number of gear teeth

American National Standard Tooth Proportions for Fine-Pitch Involute Spur and Helical Gears.—The proportions of spur gears in this Standard (ANSI B6.7-1977) follow closely ANSI B6.1-1968, R1974, "Tooth Proportions for Coarse-Pitch Involute Spur Gears." The main difference between fine-pitch and coarse-pitch gears is the greater clearance specified for fine-pitch gears. The increased clearance provides for any foreign material that may tend to accumulate at the bottoms of the teeth and also the relatively larger fillet radius resulting from proportionately greater wear on the tips of fine-pitch cutting tools.

Pressure Angle: The standard pressure angle for fine-pitch gears is 20 degrees and is recommended for most applications. For helical gears this pressure angle applies in the *normal* plane. In certain cases, notably sintered or molded gears, or in gearing where greatest strength and wear resistance are desired, a 25-degree pressure angle may be required. However, pressure angles greater than 20 degrees tend to require use of generating tools

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

having very narrow point widths, and higher pressure angles require closer control of center distance when backlash requirements are critical.

In those cases where consideration of angular position or backlash is critical and both pinion and gear contain relatively large numbers of teeth, a $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree pressure angle may be desirable. In general, pressure angles less than 20 degrees require greater amounts of tooth modification to avoid undercutting problems and are limited to larger total numbers of teeth in pinion and gear when operating at a standard center distance. Information Sheet B in the Standard provides tooth proportions for both $14\frac{1}{2}$- and 25-degree pressure angle fine-pitch gears. Table 4 provides tooth proportions for fine-pitch spur and helical gears with $14\frac{1}{2}$-, 20-, and 25-degree pressure angles, and Table 5 provides tooth parts.

Diametral Pitches: Diametral pitches preferred are: 20, 24, 32, 40, 48, 64, 72, 80, 96, and 120.

Table 5. American National Standard Fine Pitch Standard Gear Tooth Parts—$14\frac{1}{2}$-, 20-, and 25-Degree Pressure Angles

Diametral Pitch	Circular Pitch	Circular Thickness	Standard Addend.	Standard Dedend.	Special Dedend.[a]
P	*p*	*t*	*a*	*b*	*b*
20	0.1571	0.0785	0.0500	0.0620	0.0695
24	0.1309	0.0654	0.0417	0.0520	0.0582
32	0.0982	0.0491	0.0313	0.0395	0.0442
40	0.0785	0.0393	0.0250	0.0320	0.0358
48	0.0654	0.0327	0.0208	0.0270	0.0301
64	0.0491	0.0245	0.0156	0.0208	0.0231
72	0.0436	0.0218	0.0139	0.0187	0.0208
80	0.0393	0.0196	0.0125	0.0170	0.0189
96	0.0327	0.0164	0.0104	0.0145	0.0161
120	0.0262	0.0131	0.0083	0.0120	0.0132

[a] Based upon clearance for shaved or ground teeth.

The working depth is equal to twice the addendum. The whole depth is equal to the addendum plus the dedendum. For minimum number of teeth see page 2233.

Other American Spur Gear Standards.—An appended information sheet in the American National Standard ANSI B6.1-1968, R1974 provides tooth proportion information for three spur gear forms with the notice that they are "not recommended for new designs." These forms are therefore considered to be obsolescent but the information is given on their proportions because they have been used widely in the past. These forms are the $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree full depth form, the 20-degree stub involute form and the $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree composite form which were covered in the former American Standard (ASA B6.1-1932). The basic rack for the $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree full depth form is shown on page 2211; basic formulas for these proportions are given in Table 6.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Formulas for Tooth Parts—Former American Standard Spur Gear Tooth Forms *ASA B6.1-1932*

To Find	Diametral Pitch, P Known	Circular Pitch, p Known
14½-Degree Involute Full-depth Teeth		
Addendum	$a = 1.000 \div P$	$a = 0.3183 \times p$
Minimum Dedendum	$b = 1.157 \div P$	$b = 0.3683 \times p$
Working Depth	$h_k = 2.000 \div P$	$h_k = 0.6366 \times p$
Minimum Whole Depth	$h_t = 2.157 \div P$	$h_t = 0.6866 \times p$
Basic Tooth Thickness on Pitch Line	$t = 1.5708 \div P$	$t = 0.500 \times p$
Minimum Clearance	$c = 0.157 \div P$	$c = 0.050 \times p$
20-Degree Involute Stub Teeth		
Addendum	$a = 0.800 \div P$	$a = 0.2546 \times p$
Minimum Dedendum	$b = 1.000 \div P$	$b = 0.3183 \times p$
Working Depth	$h_k = 1.600 \div P$	$h_k = 0.5092 \times p$
Minimum Whole Depth	$h_t = 1.800 \div P$	$h_t = 0.5729 \times p$
Basic Tooth Thickness on Pitch Line	$t = 1.5708 \div P$	$t = 0.500 \times p$
Minimum Clearance	$c = 0.200 \div P$	$c = 0.0637 \times p$

Note: Radius of fillet equals 1⅓ × clearance for 14½-degree full-depth teeth and 1½ × clearance for 20-degree full-depth teeth.

Note: A suitable working tolerance should be considered in connection with all minimum recommendations.

Fellows Stub Tooth.—The system of stub gear teeth introduced by the Fellows Gear Shaper Co. is based upon the use of two diametral pitches. One diametral pitch, say, 8, is used as the basis for obtaining the dimensions for the addendum and dedendum, while another diametral pitch, say, 6, is used for obtaining the dimensions of the thickness of the tooth, the number of teeth, and the pitch diameter. Teeth made according to this system are designated as $^{6}/_{8}$ pitch, $^{12}/_{14}$ pitch, etc., the numerator in this fraction indicating the pitch determining the thickness of the tooth and the number of teeth, and the denominator, the pitch determining the depth of the tooth. The clearance is made greater than in the ordinary gear-tooth system and equals 0.25 ÷ denominator of the diametral pitch. The pressure angle is 20 degrees.

This type of stub gear tooth is now used infrequently. Information on the tooth part dimensions may be found in the 18th and earlier editions of *Machinery's Handbook*.

Basic Gear Dimensions.—The basic dimensions for all involute spur gears may be obtained using the formulas shown in Table 1. This table is used in conjunction with Table 3 to obtain dimensions for coarse pitch gears and Table 5 to obtain dimensions for fine pitch standard spur gears. To obtain the dimensions of gears that are specified at a standard circular pitch, the equivalent diametral pitch is first calculated by using the formula in Table 1. If the required number of teeth in the pinion (N_p) is less than the minimum specified in either Table 3 or Table 5, whichever is applicable, the gears must be proportioned by the long and short addendum method shown on page 2227.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Outside and Root Diameters of Spur Gears that Are Finish-Hobbed, Shaped, or Pre-Shaved

Notation	
D = Pitch Diameter	a = Standard Addendum
D_O = Outside Diameter	b = Standard Minimum Dedendum
D_R = Root Diameter	b_s = Standard Dedendum
P = Diametral Pitch	b_{ps} = Dedendum for Pre-shaving

$14\frac{1}{2}$-, 20-, And 25-degree Involute Full-depth Teeth (19P and coarser)[a]	
$D_O = D + 2a = \frac{N}{P} + \left(2 \times \frac{1}{P}\right)$	
$D_R = D - 2b = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1.157}{P}\right)$	(Hobbed)[b]
$D_R = D - 2b_s = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1.25}{P}\right)$	(Shaped)[c]
$D_R = D - 2b_{ps} = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1.35}{P}\right)$	(Pre-shaved)[d]
$D_R = D - 2b_{ps} = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1.40}{P}\right)$	(Pre-shaved)[e]
20-degree Involute Fine-pitch Full-depth Teeth (20P and finer)	
$D_O = D + 2a = \frac{N}{P} + \left(2 \times \frac{1}{P}\right)$	
$D_R = D - 2b = \frac{N}{P} - 2\left(\frac{1.2}{P} + 0.002\right)$	(Hobbed or Shaped)[f]
$D_R = D - 2b_{ps} = \frac{N}{P} - 2\left(\frac{1.35}{P} + 0.002\right)$	(Pre-shaved)[g]
20-degree Involute Stub Teeth[a]	
$D_O = D + 2a = \frac{N}{P} + \left(2 \times \frac{0.8}{P}\right)$	
$D_R = D - 2b = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1}{P}\right)$	(Hobbed)
$D_R = D - 2b_{ps} = \frac{N}{P} - \left(2 \times \frac{1.35}{P}\right)$	(Pre-shaved)

[a] $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree full-depth and 20-degree stub teeth are not recommended for new designs.

[b] According to ANSI B6.1-1968 a minimum clearance of 0.157/P may be used for the basic 20-degree and 25-degree pressure angle rack in the case of shallow root sections and the use of existing hobs and cutters.

[c] According to ANSI B6.1-1968 the preferred clearance is 0.250/P.

[d] According to ANSI B6.1-1968 the clearance for teeth which are shaved or ground is 0.350/P.

[e] When gears are preshave cut on a gear shaper the dedendum will usually need to be increased to 1.40/P to allow for the higher fillet trochoid produced by the shaper cutter; this is of particular importance on gears of few teeth or if the gear blank configuration requires the use of a small diameter shaper cutter, in which case the dedendum may need to be increased to as much as 1.45/P. This should be avoided on highly loaded gears where the consequently reduced J factor will increase gear tooth stress excessively.

[f] According to ANSI B6.7-1967 the standard clearance is 0.200/P + 0.002 (min.).

[g] According to ANSI B6.7-1967 the clearance for shaved or ground teeth is 0.350/P + 0.002 (min.).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Gears for Given Center Distance and Ratio.—When it is necessary to use a pair of gears of given ratio at a specified center distance C_1, it may be found that no gears of standard diametral pitch will satisfy the center distance requirement. Gears of standard diametral pitch P may need to be redesigned to operate at other than their standard pitch diameter D and standard pressure angle ϕ. The diametral pitch P_1 at which these gears will operate is

$$P_1 = \frac{N_P + N_G}{2C_1} \tag{1}$$

where N_p = number of teeth in pinion

N_G = number of teeth in gear

and their operating pressure angle ϕ_1 is

$$\phi_1 = \arccos\left(\frac{P_1}{P}\cos\phi\right) \tag{2}$$

Thus although the pair of gears are cut to a diametral pitch P and a pressure angle ϕ, they operate as standard gears of diametral pitch P_1 and pressure angle ϕ_1. The pitch P and pressure angle ϕ should be chosen so that ϕ_1 lies between about 18 and 25 degrees.

The operating pitch diameters of the pinion D_{p1} and of the gear D_{G1} are

$$D_{P1} = \frac{N_P}{P_1} \quad \text{(3a)} \qquad \text{and} \qquad D_{G1} = \frac{N_G}{P_1} \quad \text{(3b)}$$

The base diameters of the pinion D_{PB1} and of the gear D_{GB1} are

$$D_{PB1} = D_{P1}\cos\phi_1 \quad \text{(4a)} \qquad \text{and} \qquad D_{GB1} = D_{G1}\cos\phi_1 \quad \text{(4b)}$$

The basic tooth thickness, t_1, at the operating pitch diameter for both pinion and gear is

$$t_1 = \frac{1.5708}{P_1} \tag{5}$$

The root diameters of the pinion D_{PR1} and gear D_{GR1} and the corresponding outside diameters D_{PO1} and D_{GO1} are not standard because each gear is to be cut with a cutter that is not standard for the operating pitch diameters D_{P1} and D_{G1}.

The root diameters are

$$D_{PR_1} = \frac{N_P}{P} - 2b_{P_1} \quad \text{(6a)} \qquad \text{and} \qquad D_{GR_1} = \frac{N_G}{P} - 2b_{G_1} \quad \text{(6b)}$$

where $$b_{P1} = b_c - \left(\frac{t_{P2} - \frac{1.5708}{P}}{2\tan\phi}\right) \tag{7a}$$

and $$b_{G1} = b_c - \frac{t_{G2} - \frac{1.5708}{P}}{2\tan\phi} \tag{7b}$$

where b_c is the hob or cutter addendum for the pinion and gear.

The tooth thicknesses of the pinion t_{P2} and the gear t_{G2} are

$$t_{P2} = \frac{N_P}{P}\left(\frac{1.5708}{N_P} + \text{inv}\phi_1 - \text{inv}\phi\right) \tag{8a}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$t_{G2} = \frac{N_G}{P}\left(\frac{1.5708}{N_G} + \text{inv}\phi_1 - \text{inv}\phi\right) \tag{8b}$$

The outside diameter of the pinion D_{PO} and the gear D_{GO} are

$$D_{PO} = 2 \times C_1 - D_{GR1} - 2\left(b_c - \frac{1}{P}\right) \tag{9a}$$

and

$$D_{GO} = 2 \times C_1 - D_{PR1} - 2\left(b_c - \frac{1}{P}\right) \tag{9b}$$

Example: Design gears of 8 diametral pitch, 20-degree pressure angle, and 28 and 88 teeth to operate at 7.50-inch center distance. The gears are to be cut with a hob of 0.169-inch addendum.

$$P_1 = \frac{28 + 88}{2 \times 7.50} = 7.7333 \tag{1}$$

$$\phi_1 = \arccos\left(\frac{7.7333}{8} \times 0.93969\right) = 24.719° \tag{2}$$

$$D_{P1} = \frac{28}{7.7333} = 3.6207 \text{ in.} \tag{3a}$$

and

$$D_{G1} = \frac{88}{7.7333} = 11.3794 \text{ in.} \tag{3b}$$

$$D_{PB1} = 3.6207 \times 0.90837 = 3.2889 \text{ in.} \tag{4a}$$

and

$$D_{GB1} = 11.3794 \times 0.90837 = 10.3367 \text{ in.} \tag{4b}$$

$$t_1 = \frac{1.5708}{7.7333} = 0.20312 \text{ in.} \tag{5}$$

$$D_{PR1} = \frac{28}{8} - 2 \times 0.1016 = 3.2968 \text{ in.} \tag{6a}$$

and

$$D_{GR1} = \frac{88}{8} - 2 \times (-0.0428) = 11.0856 \text{ in.} \tag{6b}$$

$$b_{P1} = 0.169 - \left(\frac{0.2454 - \frac{1.5708}{8}}{2 \times 0.36397}\right) = 0.1016 \text{ in.} \tag{7a}$$

$$b_{G1} = 0.169 - \left(\frac{0.3505 - \frac{1.5708}{8}}{2 \times 0.36397}\right) = -0.0428 \text{ in.} \tag{7b}$$

$$t_{P2} = \frac{28}{8}\left(\frac{1.5708}{28} + 0.028922 - 0.014904\right) = 0.2454 \text{ in.} \tag{8a}$$

$$t_{G2} = \frac{88}{8}\left(\frac{1.5708}{88} + 0.028922 - 0.014904\right) - 0.3505 \text{ in.} \tag{8b}$$

$$D_{PO1} = 2 \times 7.50 - 11.0856 - 2\left(0.169 - \frac{1}{8}\right) = 3.8264 \text{ in.} \tag{9a}$$

$$D_{GO1} = 2 \times 7.50 - 3.2968 - 2\left(0.169 - \frac{1}{8}\right) = 11.6152 \text{ in.} \tag{9b}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tooth Thickness Allowance for Shaving.—Proper stock allowance is important for good results in shaving operations. If too much stock is left for shaving, the life of the shaving tool is reduced and, in addition, shaving time is increased. The following figures represent the amount of stock to be left on the teeth for removal by shaving under average conditions: For diametral pitches of 2 to 4, a thickness of 0.003 to 0.004 inch (0.0762–0.1016 mm)—one-half on each side of the tooth; for 5 to 6 diametral pitch, 0.0025 to 0.0035 inch (0.0635–0.0889 mm); for 7 to 10 diametral pitch, 0.002 to 0.003 inch (0.0508–0.0762 mm); for 11 to 14 diametral pitch, 0.0015 to 0.0020 inch (0.0381–0.0508 mm); for 16 to 18 diametral pitch, 0.001 to 0.002 inch (0.0254–0.0508 mm); for 20 to 48 diametral pitch, 0.0005 to 0.0015 inch (0.0127–0.0381 mm); and for 52 to 72 diametral pitch, 0.0003 to 0.0007 inch (0.00762–0.01778 mm).

The thickness of the gear teeth may be measured in several ways to determine the amount of stock left on the sides of the teeth to be removed by shaving. If it is necessary to measure the tooth thickness during the preshaving operation while the gear is in the gear shaper or hobbing machine, a gear tooth caliper or pins would be employed. Caliper methods of measuring gear teeth are explained in detail on page 2226 for measurements over single teeth, and on page 2315 for measurements over two or more teeth.

When the preshaved gear can be removed from the machine for checking, the center distance method may be employed. In this method, the preshaved gear is meshed without backlash with a gear of standard tooth thickness and the increase in center distance over standard is noted. The amount of total tooth thickness over standard on the preshaved gear can then be determined by the formula: $t_2 = 2 \tan \phi \times d$, where t_2 = amount that the total thickness of the tooth exceeds the standard thickness, ϕ = pressure angle, and d = amount that the center distance between the two gears exceeds the standard center distance.

Circular Pitch for Given Center Distance and Ratio.—When it is necessary to use a pair of gears of given ratio at a specified center distance, it may be found that no gears of standard diametral pitch will satisfy the center distance requirement. Hence, circular pitch gears may be selected. To find the required circular pitch p, when the center distance C and total number of teeth N in both gears are known, use the following formula:

$$p = \frac{C \times 6.2832}{N}$$

Example: A pair of gears having a ratio of 3 is to be used at a center distance of 10.230 inches. If one gear has 60 teeth and the other 20, what must be their circular pitch?

$$p = \frac{10.230 \times 6.2832}{60 + 20} = 0.8035 \text{ inch}$$

Circular Thickness of Tooth when Outside Diameter is Standard.—For a full-depth or stub tooth gear of standard outside diameter, the tooth thickness on the pitch circle (circular thickness or arc thickness) is found by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{1.5708}{P}$$

where t = circular thickness and P = diametral pitch. In Fellows stub tooth gears the diametral pitch used is the numerator of the pitch fraction (for example, 6 if the pitch is 6⁄8).

Example 1: Find the tooth thickness on the pitch circle of a $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree full-depth tooth of 12 diametral pitch.

$$t = \frac{1.5708}{12} = 0.1309 \text{ inch}$$

Example 2: Find the tooth thickness on the tooth circle of a 20-degree full-depth involute tooth having a diametral pitch of 5.

$$t = \frac{1.5708}{5} = 0.31416, \text{ say } 0.3142 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The tooth thickness on the pitch circle can be determined very accurately by means of measurement over wires which are located in tooth spaces that are diametrically opposite or as nearly diametrically opposite as possible. Where measurement over wires is not feasible, the circular or arc tooth thickness can be used in determining the chordal thickness which is the dimension measured with a gear tooth caliper.

Circular Thickness of Tooth when Outside Diameter has been Enlarged.—When the outside diameter of a small pinion is not standard but is enlarged to avoid undercut and to improve tooth action, the teeth are located farther out radially relative to the standard pitch diameter and consequently the circular tooth thickness at the standard pitch diameter is increased. To find this increased arc thickness the following formula is used, where t = tooth thickness; e = amount outside diameter is increased over standard; ϕ = pressure angle; and p = circular pitch at the standard pitch diameter.

$$t = \frac{p}{2} + e \tan \phi$$

Example: The outside diameter of a pinion having 10 teeth of 5 diametral pitch and a pressure angle of $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees is to be increased by 0.2746 inch. The circular pitch equivalent to 5 diametral pitch is 0.6283 inch. Find the arc tooth thickness at the standard pitch diameter.

$$t = \frac{0.6283}{2} + \left(0.2746 \times \tan 14\frac{1}{2}^\circ\right)$$
$$t = 0.3142 + (0.2746 \times 0.25862) = 0.3852 \text{ inch}$$

Circular Thickness of Tooth when Outside Diameter has been Reduced.—If the outside diameter of a gear is reduced, as is frequently done to maintain the standard center distance when the outside diameter of the mating pinion is increased, the circular thickness of the gear teeth at the standard pitch diameter will be reduced.This decreased circular thickness can be found by the following formula where t = circular thickness at the standard pitch diameter; e = amount outside diameter is reduced under standard; ϕ = pressure angle; and p = circular pitch.

$$t = \frac{p}{2} - e \tan \phi$$

Example: The outside diameter of a gear having a pressure angle of $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees is to be reduced by 0.2746 inch or an amount equal to the increase in diameter of its mating pinion. The circular pitch is 0.6283 inch. Determine the circular tooth thickness at the standard pitch diameter.

$$t = \frac{0.6283}{2} - \left(0.2746 \times \tan 14\frac{1}{2}^\circ\right)$$
$$t = 0.3142 - (0.2746 \times 0.25862) = 0.2432 \text{ inch}$$

Chordal Thickness of Tooth when Outside Diameter is Standard.—To find the chordal or straight line thickness of a gear tooth the following formula can be used where t_c = chordal thickness; D = pitch diameter; and N = number of teeth.

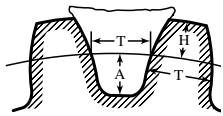
$$t_c = D \sin\left(\frac{90^\circ}{N}\right)$$

Example: A pinion has 15 teeth of 3 diametral pitch; the pitch diameter is equal to $15 \div 3$ or 5 inches. Find the chordal thickness at the standard pitch diameter.

$$t_c = 5 \sin\left(\frac{90^\circ}{15}\right) = 5 \sin 6^\circ = 5 \times 0.10453 = 0.5226 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chordal Thicknesses and Chordal Addenda of Milled, Full-depth Gear Teeth and of Gear Milling Cutters



T = chordal thickness of gear tooth and cutter tooth at pitch line;
H = chordal addendum for full-depth gear tooth;
A = chordal addendum of cutter = (2.157 ÷ diametral pitch) − H
= (0.6866 × circular pitch) − H.

Diametral Pitch	Dimension	Number of Gear Cutter, and Corresponding Number of Teeth							
		No. 1 135 Teeth	No. 2 55 Teeth	No. 3 35 Teeth	No. 4 26 Teeth	No. 5 21 Teeth	No. 6 17 Teeth	No. 7 14 Teeth	No. 8 12 Teeth
1	T	1.5707	1.5706	1.5702	1.5698	1.5694	1.5686	1.5675	1.5663
	H	1.0047	1.0112	1.0176	1.0237	1.0294	1.0362	1.0440	1.0514
1½	T	1.0471	1.0470	1.0468	1.0465	1.0462	1.0457	1.0450	1.0442
	H	0.6698	0.6741	0.6784	0.6824	0.6862	0.6908	0.6960	0.7009
2	T	0.7853	0.7853	0.7851	0.7849	0.7847	0.7843	0.7837	0.7831
	H	0.5023	0.5056	0.5088	0.5118	0.5147	0.5181	0.5220	0.5257
2½	T	0.6283	0.6282	0.6281	0.6279	0.6277	0.6274	0.6270	0.6265
	H	0.4018	0.4044	0.4070	0.4094	0.4117	0.4144	0.4176	0.4205
3	T	0.5235	0.5235	0.5234	0.5232	0.5231	0.5228	0.5225	0.5221
	H	0.3349	0.3370	0.3392	0.3412	0.3431	0.3454	0.3480	0.3504
3½	T	0.4487	0.4487	0.4486	0.4485	0.4484	0.4481	0.4478	0.4475
	H	0.2870	0.2889	0.2907	0.2919	0.2935	0.2954	0.2977	0.3004
4	T	0.3926	0.3926	0.3926	0.3924	0.3923	0.3921	0.3919	0.3915
	H	0.2511	0.2528	0.2544	0.2559	0.2573	0.2590	0.2610	0.2628
5	T	0.3141	0.3141	0.3140	0.3139	0.3138	0.3137	0.3135	0.3132
	H	0.2009	0.2022	0.2035	0.2047	0.2058	0.2072	0.2088	0.2102
6	T	0.2618	0.2617	0.2617	0.2616	0.2615	0.2614	0.2612	0.2610
	H	0.1674	0.1685	0.1696	0.1706	0.1715	0.1727	0.1740	0.1752
7	T	0.2244	0.2243	0.2243	0.2242	0.2242	0.2240	0.2239	0.2237
	H	0.1435	0.1444	0.1453	0.1462	0.1470	0.1480	0.1491	0.1502
8	T	0.1963	0.1963	0.1962	0.1962	0.1961	0.1960	0.1959	0.1958
	H	0.1255	0.1264	0.1272	0.1279	0.1286	0.1295	0.1305	0.1314
9	T	0.1745	0.1745	0.1744	0.1744	0.1743	0.1743	0.1741	0.1740
	H	0.1116	0.1123	0.1130	0.1137	0.1143	0.1151	0.1160	0.1168
10	T	0.1570	0.1570	0.1570	0.1569	0.1569	0.1568	0.1567	0.1566
	H	0.1004	0.1011	0.1017	0.1023	0.1029	0.1036	0.1044	0.1051
11	T	0.1428	0.1428	0.1427	0.1427	0.1426	0.1426	0.1425	0.1424
	H	0.0913	0.0919	0.0925	0.0930	0.0935	0.0942	0.0949	0.0955
12	T	0.1309	0.1309	0.1308	0.1308	0.1308	0.1307	0.1306	0.1305
	H	0.0837	0.0842	0.0848	0.0853	0.0857	0.0863	0.0870	0.0876
14	T	0.1122	0.1122	0.1121	0.1121	0.1121	0.1120	0.1119	0.1118
	H	0.0717	0.0722	0.0726	0.0731	0.0735	0.0740	0.0745	0.0751
16	T	0.0981	0.0981	0.0981	0.0981	0.0980	0.0980	0.0979	0.0979
	H	0.0628	0.0632	0.0636	0.0639	0.0643	0.0647	0.0652	0.0657
18	T	0.0872	0.0872	0.0872	0.0872	0.0872	0.0871	0.0870	0.0870
	H	0.0558	0.0561	0.0565	0.0568	0.0571	0.0575	0.0580	0.0584
20	T	0.0785	0.0785	0.0785	0.0785	0.0784	0.0784	0.0783	0.0783
	H	0.0502	0.0505	0.0508	0.0511	0.0514	0.0518	0.0522	0.0525

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chordal Thicknesses and Chordal Addenda of Milled, Full-depth Gear Teeth and of Gear Milling Cutters *(Continued)*

Circular Pitch	Dimension	Number of Gear Cutter, and Corresponding Number of Teeth							
		No. 1 135 Teeth	No. 2 55 Teeth	No. 3 35 Teeth	No. 4 26 Teeth	No. 5 21 Teeth	No. 6 17 Teeth	No. 7 14 Teeth	No. 8 12 Teeth
1/4	T	0.1250	0.1250	0.1249	0.1249	0.1249	0.1248	0.1247	0.1246
	H	0.0799	0.0804	0.0809	0.0814	0.0819	0.0824	0.0830	0.0836
5/16	T	0.1562	0.1562	0.1562	0.1561	0.1561	0.1560	0.1559	0.1558
	H	0.0999	0.1006	0.1012	0.1018	0.1023	0.1030	0.1038	0.1045
3/8	T	0.1875	0.1875	0.1874	0.1873	0.1873	0.1872	0.1871	0.1870
	H	0.1199	0.1207	0.1214	0.1221	0.1228	0.1236	0.1245	0.1254
7/16	T	0.2187	0.2187	0.2186	0.2186	0.2185	0.2184	0.2183	0.2181
	H	0.1399	0.1408	0.1416	0.1425	0.1433	0.1443	0.1453	0.1464
1/2	T	0.2500	0.2500	0.2499	0.2498	0.2498	0.2496	0.2495	0.2493
	H	0.1599	0.1609	0.1619	0.1629	0.1638	0.1649	0.1661	0.1673
9/16	T	0.2812	0.2812	0.2811	0.2810	0.2810	0.2808	0.2806	0.2804
	H	0.1799	0.1810	0.1821	0.1832	0.1842	0.1855	0.1868	0.1882
5/8	T	0.3125	0.3125	0.3123	0.3123	0.3122	0.3120	0.3118	0.3116
	H	0.1998	0.2012	0.2023	0.2036	0.2047	0.2061	0.2076	0.2091
11/16	T	0.3437	0.3437	0.3436	0.3435	0.3434	0.3432	0.3430	0.3427
	H	0.2198	0.2213	0.2226	0.2239	0.2252	0.2267	0.2283	0.2300
3/4	T	0.3750	0.3750	0.3748	0.3747	0.3747	0.3744	0.3742	0.3740
	H	0.2398	0.2414	0.2428	0.2443	0.2457	0.2473	0.2491	0.2509
13/16	T	0.4062	0.4062	0.4060	0.4059	0.4059	0.4056	0.4054	0.4050
	H	0.2598	0.2615	0.2631	0.2647	0.2661	0.2679	0.2699	0.2718
7/8	T	0.4375	0.4375	0.4373	0.4372	0.4371	0.4368	0.4366	0.4362
	H	0.2798	0.2816	0.2833	0.2850	0.2866	0.2885	0.2906	0.2927
15/16	T	0.4687	0.4687	0.4685	0.4684	0.4683	0.4680	0.4678	0.4674
	H	0.2998	0.3018	0.3035	0.3054	0.3071	0.3092	0.3114	0.3137
1	T	0.5000	0.5000	0.4998	0.4997	0.4996	0.4993	0.4990	0.4986
	H	0.3198	0.3219	0.3238	0.3258	0.3276	0.3298	0.3322	0.3346
1 1/8	T	0.5625	0.5625	0.5623	0.5621	0.5620	0.5617	0.5613	0.5610
	H	0.3597	0.3621	0.3642	0.3665	0.3685	0.3710	0.3737	0.3764
1 1/4	T	0.6250	0.6250	0.6247	0.6246	0.6245	0.6241	0.6237	0.6232
	H	0.3997	0.4023	0.4047	0.4072	0.4095	0.4122	0.4152	0.4182
1 3/8	T	0.6875	0.6875	0.6872	0.6870	0.6869	0.6865	0.6861	0.6856
	H	0.4397	0.4426	0.4452	0.4479	0.4504	0.4534	0.4567	0.4600
1 1/2	T	0.7500	0.7500	0.7497	0.7495	0.7494	0.7489	0.7485	0.7480
	H	0.4797	0.4828	0.4857	0.4887	0.4914	0.4947	0.4983	0.5019
1 3/4	T	0.8750	0.8750	0.8746	0.8744	0.8743	0.8737	0.8732	0.8726
	H	0.5596	0.5633	0.5666	0.5701	0.5733	0.5771	0.5813	0.5855
2	T	1.0000	1.0000	0.9996	0.9994	0.9992	0.9986	0.9980	0.9972
	H	0.6396	0.6438	0.6476	0.6516	0.6552	0.6596	0.6644	0.6692
2 1/4	T	1.1250	1.1250	1.1246	1.1242	1.1240	1.1234	1.1226	1.1220
	H	0.7195	0.7242	0.7285	0.7330	0.7371	0.7420	0.7474	0.7528
2 1/2	T	1.2500	1.2500	1.2494	1.2492	1.2490	1.2482	1.2474	1.2464
	H	0.7995	0.8047	0.8095	0.8145	0.8190	0.8245	0.8305	0.8365
3	T	1.5000	1.5000	1.4994	1.4990	1.4990	1.4978	1.4970	1.4960
	H	0.9594	0.9657	0.9714	0.9774	0.9828	0.9894	0.9966	1.0038

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chordal Thickness of Tooth when Outside Diameter is Special.—When the outside diameter is larger or smaller than standard the chordal thickness at the standard pitch diameter is found by the following formula where t_c = chordal thickness at the standard pitch diameter D; t = circular thickness at the standard pitch diameter of the enlarged pinion or reduced gear being measured.

$$t_c = t - \frac{t^3}{6 \times D^2}$$

Example 1: The outside diameter of a pinion having 10 teeth of 5 diametral pitch has been *enlarged* by 0.2746 inch. This enlargement has increased the circular tooth thickness at the standard pitch diameter (as determined by the formula previously given) to 0.3852 inch. Find the equivalent chordal thickness.

$$t_c = 0.3852 - \frac{0.385^3}{6 \times 2^2} = 0.3852 - 0.0024 = 0.3828 \text{ inch}$$

(The error introduced by rounding the circular thickness to three significant figures before cubing it only affects the fifth decimal place in the result.)

Example 2: A gear having 30 teeth is to mesh with the pinion in Example 1 and is *reduced* so that the circular tooth thickness at the standard pitch diameter is 0.2432 inch. Find the equivalent chordal thickness.

$$t_c = 0.2432 - \frac{0.243^3}{6 \times 6^2} = 0.2432 - 0.00007 = 0.2431 \text{ inch}$$

Chordal Addendum.—In measuring the chordal thickness, the vertical scale of a gear tooth caliper is set to the chordal or "corrected" addendum to locate the caliper jaws at the pitch line (see *Method of setting a gear tooth caliper* on page 2227). The simplified formula which follows may be used in determining the chordal addendum either when the addendum is standard for full-depth or stub teeth or when the addendum is either longer or shorter than standard as in case of an enlarged pinion or a gear which is to mesh with an enlarged pinion and has a reduced addendum to maintain the standard center distance. If a_c = chordal addendum; a = addendum; and t = circular thickness of tooth at pitch diameter D; then,

$$a_c = a + \frac{t^2}{4D}$$

Example 1: The outside diameter of an 8 diametral pitch 14-tooth pinion with 20-degree full-depth teeth is to be increased by using an enlarged addendum of $1.234 \div 8 = 0.1542$ inch (see Table 7 on page 2225). The basic tooth thickness of the enlarged pinion is $1.741 \div 8 = 0.2176$ inch. What is the chordal addendum?

$$\text{Chordal addendum} = 0.1542 + \frac{0.2176^2}{4 \times (14 \div 8)} = 0.1610 \text{ inch}$$

Example 2: The outside diameter of a $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree pinion having 12 teeth of 2 diametral pitch is to be enlarged 0.624 inch to avoid undercut (see Table 8 on page 2225), thus increasing the addendum from 0.5000 to 0.8120 inch and the arc thickness at the pitch line from 0.7854 to 0.9467 inch. Then,

$$\text{Chordal addendum of pinion} = 0.8120 + \frac{0.9467^2}{4 \times (12 \div 2)} = 0.8493 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Addendums and Tooth Thicknesses for Coarse-Pitch Long-Addendum Pinions and their Mating Short-Addendum Gears — 20- and 25-degree Pressure Angles *ANSI B6.1-1968 (R1974)*

Number of Teeth in Pinion	Addendum		Basic Tooth Thickness		Number of Teeth in Gear
	Pinion	Gear	Pinion	Gear	
N_P	a_P	a_G	t_P	t_G	N_G (min)
20-Degree Involute Full Depth Tooth Form (Less than 20 Diametral Pitch)					
10	1.468	.532	1.912	1.230	25
11	1.409	.591	1.868	1.273	24
12	1.351	.649	1.826	1.315	23
13	1.292	.708	1.783	1.358	22
14	1.234	.766	1.741	1.400	21
15	1.175	.825	1.698	1.443	20
16	1.117	.883	1.656	1.486	19
17	1.058	.942	1.613	1.529	18
25-Degree Involute Full Depth Tooth Form (Less than 20 Diametral Pitch)					
10	1.184	.816	1.742	1.399	15
11	1.095	.905	1.659	1.482	14

All values are for 1 diametral pitch. For any other sizes of teeth all linear dimensions should be divided by the diametral pitch. Basic tooth thicknesses do not include an allowance for backlash.

Table 8. Enlarged Pinion and Reduced Gear Dimensions to Avoid Interference Coarse Pitch $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree Involute Full Depth Teeth

Number of Pinion Teeth	Changes in Pinion and Gear Diameters	Circular Tooth Thickness		Min. No. of Teeth in Mating Gear	
		Pinion	Mating Gear	To Avoid Undercut	For Full Involute Action
10	1.3731	1.9259	1.2157	54	27
11	1.3104	1.9097	1.2319	53	27
12	1.2477	1.8935	1.2481	52	28
13	1.1850	1.8773	1.2643	51	28
14	1.1223	1.8611	1.2805	50	28
15	1.0597	1.8449	1.2967	49	28
16	0.9970	1.8286	1.3130	48	28
17	0.9343	1.8124	1.3292	47	28
18	0.8716	1.7962	1.3454	46	28
19	0.8089	1.7800	1.3616	45	28
20	0.7462	1.7638	1.3778	44	28
21	0.6835	1.7476	1.3940	43	28
22	0.6208	1.7314	1.4102	42	27
23	0.5581	1.7151	1.4265	41	27
24	0.4954	1.6989	1.4427	40	27
25	0.4328	1.6827	1.4589	39	26
26	0.3701	1.6665	1.4751	38	26
27	0.3074	1.6503	1.4913	37	26
28	0.2447	1.6341	1.5075	36	25
29	0.1820	1.6179	1.5237	35	25
30	0.1193	1.6017	1.5399	34	24
31	0.0566	1.5854	1.5562	33	24

All dimensions are given in inches and are for 1 diametral pitch. For other pitches divide tabular values by desired diametral pitch.

Add to the standard outside diameter of the pinion the amount given in the second column of the table divided by the desired diametral pitch, and (to maintain standard center distance) subtract the same amount from the outside diameter of the mating gear. Long addendum pinions will mesh with standard gears, but the center distance will be greater than standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example 3: The outside diameter of the mating gear for the pinion in Example 3 is to be reduced 0.624 inch. The gear has 60 teeth and the addendum is reduced from 0.5000 to 0.1881 inch (to maintain the standard center distance), thus reducing the arc thickness to 0.6240 inch. Then,

$$\text{Chordal addendum of gear} = 0.1881 + \frac{0.6240^2}{4 \times (60 \div 2)} = 0.1913 \text{ inch}$$

When a gear addendum is reduced as much as the mating pinion addendum is enlarged, the minimum number of gear teeth required to prevent undercutting depends upon the enlargement of the mating pinion. To illustrate, if a 14½-degree pinion with 13 teeth is enlarged 1.185 inches, then the reduced mating gear should have a minimum of 51 teeth to avoid undercut (see Table 8 on page 2225).

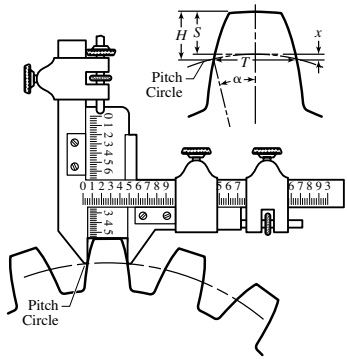
Tables for Chordal Thicknesses and Chordal Addenda of Milled, Full-depth Teeth.—Two convenient tables for checking gears with milled, full-depth teeth are given on pages 2222 and 2223. The first shows chordal thicknesses and chordal addenda for the lowest number of teeth cut by gear cutters Nos. 1 through 8, and for the commonly used diametral pitches. The second gives similar data for commonly used circular pitches. In each case the data shown are accurate for the number of gear teeth indicated, but are approximate for other numbers of teeth within the range of the cutter under which they appear in the table. For the higher diametral pitches and lower circular pitches, the error introduced by using the data for any tooth number within the range of the cutter under which it appears is comparatively small. The chordal thicknesses and chordal addenda for gear cutters Nos. 1 through 8 of the more commonly used diametral and circular pitches can be obtained from the table and formulas on pages 2222 and 2223.

Caliper Measurement of Gear Tooth.—In cutting gear teeth, the general practice is to adjust the cutter or hob until it grazes the outside diameter of the blank; the cutter is then sunk to the total depth of the tooth space plus whatever slight additional amount may be required to provide the necessary play or backlash between the teeth. (For recommendations concerning backlash and excess depth of cut required, see *Backlash* starting on page 2242.) If the outside diameter of the gear blank is correct, the tooth thickness should also be correct after the cutter has been sunk to the depth required for a given pitch and backlash. However, it is advisable to check the tooth thickness by measuring it, and the vernier gear-tooth caliper (see following illustration) is commonly used in measuring the thickness.

The vertical scale of this caliper is set so that when it rests upon the top of the tooth as shown, the lower ends of the caliper jaws will be at the height of the pitch circle; the horizontal scale then shows the chordal thickness of the tooth at this point. If the gear is being cut on a milling machine or with the type of gear-cutting machine employing a formed milling cutter, the tooth thickness is checked by first taking a trial cut for a short distance at one side of the blank; then the gear blank is indexed for the next space and another cut is taken far enough to mill the full outline of the tooth. The tooth thickness is then measured.

Before the gear-tooth caliper can be used, it is necessary to determine the correct chordal thickness and also the chordal addendum (or "corrected addendum" as it is sometimes called). The vertical scale is set to the chordal addendum, thus locating the ends of the jaws at the height of the pitch circle. The rules or formulas to use in determining the chordal thickness and chordal addendum will depend upon the outside diameter of the gear; for example, if the outside diameter of a small pinion is enlarged to avoid undercut and improve the tooth action, this must be taken into account in figuring the chordal thickness and chordal addendum as shown by the accompanying rules. The detail of a gear tooth included with the gear-tooth caliper illustration represents the chordal thickness T, the addendum S, and the chordal addendum H. For the caliper measurements over two or more teeth see *Checking Spur Gear Size by Chordal Measurement Over Two or More Teeth* starting on page 2315.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



Method of setting a gear tooth caliper

Selection of Involute Gear Milling Cutter for a Given Diametral Pitch and Number of Teeth.—When gear teeth are cut by using formed milling cutters, the cutter must be selected to suit both the pitch and the number of teeth, because the shapes of the tooth spaces vary according to the number of teeth. For instance, the tooth spaces of a small pinion are not of the same shape as the spaces of a large gear of equal pitch. Theoretically, there should be a different formed cutter for every tooth number, but such refinement is unnecessary in practice. The involute formed cutters commonly used are made in series of eight cutters for each diametral pitch (see *Series of Involute, Finishing Gear Milling Cutters for Each Pitch*). The shape of each cutter in this series is correct for a certain number of teeth only, but it can be used for other numbers within the limits given. For instance, a No. 6 cutter may be used for gears having from 17 to 20 teeth, but the tooth outline is correct only for 17 teeth or the lowest number in the range, which is also true of the other cutters listed. When this cutter is used for a gear having, say, 19 teeth, too much material is removed from the upper surfaces of the teeth, although the gear meets ordinary requirements. When greater accuracy of tooth shape is desired to ensure smoother or quieter operation, an intermediate series of cutters having half-numbers may be used provided the number of gear teeth is between the number listed for the regular cutters (see *Series of Involute, Finishing Gear Milling Cutters for Each Pitch*).

Involute gear milling cutters are designed to cut a composite tooth form, the center portion being a true involute while the top and bottom portions are cycloidal. This composite form is necessary to prevent tooth interference when milled mating gears are meshed with each other. Because of their composite form, milled gears will not mate satisfactorily enough for high grade work with those of generated, full-involute form. Composite form hobs are available, however, which will produce generated gears that mesh with those cut by gear milling cutters.

Metric Module Gear Cutters: The accompanying table for selecting the cutter number to be used to cut a given number of teeth may be used also to select metric module gear cutters except that the numbers are designated in reverse order. For example, cutter No. 1, in the metric module system, is used for 12–13 teeth, cutter No. 2 for 14–16 teeth, etc.

Increasing Pinion Diameter to Avoid Undercut or Interference.—On coarse-pitch pinions with small numbers of teeth (10 to 17 for 20-degree and 10 and 11 for 25-degree pressure angle involute tooth forms) undercutting of the tooth profile or fillet interference with the tip of the mating gear can be avoided by making certain changes from the standard tooth proportions that are specified in Table 3 on page 2213. These changes consist essentially in increasing the addendum and hence the outside diameter of the pinion and decreasing the addendum and hence the outside diameter of the mating gear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Circular Pitch in Gears—Pitch Diameters, Outside Diameters, and Root Diameters

For any particular circular pitch and number of teeth, use the table as shown in the example to find the pitch diameter, outside diameter, and root diameter. *Example:* Pitch diameter for 57 teeth of 6-inch circular pitch = 10 × pitch diameter given under factor for 5 teeth plus pitch diameter given under factor for 7 teeth. (10 × 9.5493) + 13.3690 = 108.862 inches.

Outside diameter of gear equals pitch diameter plus outside diameter factor from next-to-last column in table = 108.862 + 3.8197 = 112.682 inches.

Root diameter of gear equals pitch diameter minus root diameter factor from last column in table = 108.862 – 4.4194 = 104.443 inches.

Circular Pitch in Inches	Factor for Number of Teeth									Outside Dia. Factor	Root Diameter Factor
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		
	Pitch Diameter Corresponding to Factor for Number of Teeth										
6	1.9099	3.8197	5.7296	7.6394	9.5493	11.4591	13.3690	15.2788	17.1887	3.8197	4.4194
5½	1.7507	3.5014	5.2521	7.0028	8.7535	10.5042	12.2549	14.0056	15.7563	3.5014	4.0511
5	1.5915	3.1831	4.7746	6.3662	7.9577	9.5493	11.1408	12.7324	14.3239	3.1831	3.6828
4½	1.4324	2.8648	4.2972	5.7296	7.1620	8.5943	10.0267	11.4591	12.8915	2.8648	3.3146
4	1.2732	2.5465	3.8197	5.0929	6.3662	7.6394	8.9127	10.1859	11.4591	2.5465	2.9463
3½	1.1141	2.2282	3.3422	4.4563	5.5704	6.6845	7.7986	8.9127	10.0267	2.2282	2.5780
3	0.9549	1.9099	2.8648	3.8197	4.7746	5.7296	6.6845	7.6394	8.5943	1.9099	2.2097
2½	0.7958	1.5915	2.3873	3.1831	3.9789	4.7746	5.5704	6.3662	7.1620	1.5915	1.8414
2	0.6366	1.2732	1.9099	2.5465	3.1831	3.8197	4.4563	5.0929	5.7296	1.2732	1.4731
1⅞	0.5968	1.1937	1.7905	2.3873	2.9841	3.5810	4.1778	4.7746	5.3715	1.1937	1.3811
1¾	0.5570	1.1141	1.6711	2.2282	2.7852	3.3422	3.8993	4.4563	5.0134	1.1141	1.2890
1⅝	0.5173	1.0345	1.5518	2.0690	2.5863	3.1035	3.6208	4.1380	4.6553	1.0345	1.1969
1½	0.4775	0.9549	1.4324	1.9099	2.3873	2.8648	3.3422	3.8197	4.2972	0.9549	1.1049
1⁷⁄₁₆	0.4576	0.9151	1.3727	1.8303	2.2878	2.7454	3.2030	3.6606	4.1181	0.9151	1.0588
1⅜	0.4377	0.8754	1.3130	1.7507	2.1884	2.6261	3.0637	3.5014	3.9391	0.8754	1.0128
1⁵⁄₁₆	0.4178	0.8356	1.2533	1.6711	2.0889	2.5067	2.9245	3.3422	3.7600	0.8356	0.9667
1¼	0.3979	0.7958	1.1937	1.5915	1.9894	2.3873	2.7852	3.1831	3.5810	0.7958	0.9207
1³⁄₁₆	0.3780	0.7560	1.1340	1.5120	1.8900	2.2680	2.6459	3.0239	3.4019	0.7560	0.8747
1⅛	0.3581	0.7162	1.0743	1.4324	1.7905	2.1486	2.5067	2.8648	3.2229	0.7162	0.8286
1¹⁄₁₆	0.3382	0.6764	1.0146	1.3528	1.6910	2.0292	2.3674	2.7056	3.0438	0.6764	0.7826
1	0.3183	0.6366	0.9549	1.2732	1.5915	1.9099	2.2282	2.5465	2.8648	0.6366	0.7366
¹⁵⁄₁₆	0.2984	0.5968	0.8952	1.1937	1.4921	1.7905	2.0889	2.3873	2.6857	0.5968	0.6905
⅞	0.2785	0.5570	0.8356	1.1141	1.3926	1.6711	1.9496	2.2282	2.5067	0.5570	O.6445
¹³⁄₁₆	0.2586	0.5173	0.7759	1.0345	1.2931	1.5518	1.8104	2.0690	2.3276	0.5173	0.5985
¾	0.2387	0.4475	0.7162	0.9549	1.1937	1.4324	1.6711	1.9099	2.1486	0.4775	0.5524
¹¹⁄₁₆	0.2188	0.4377	0.6565	0.8754	1.0942	1.3130	1.5319	1.7507	1.9695	0.4377	0.5064
⅔	0.2122	0.4244	0.6366	0.8488	1.0610	1.2732	1.4854	1.6977	1.9099	0.4244	0.4910
⅝	0.1989	0.3979	0.5968	0.7958	0.9947	1.1937	1.3926	1.5915	1.7905	0.3979	0.4604
⁹⁄₁₆	0.1790	0.3581	0.5371	0.7162	0.8952	1.0743	1.2533	1.4324	1.6114	0.3581	0.4143
½	0.1592	0.3183	0.4775	0.6366	0.7958	0.9549	1.1141	1.2732	1.4324	0.3183	0.3683
⁷⁄₁₆	0.1393	0.2785	0.4178	0.5570	0.6963	0.8356	0.9748	1.1141	1.2533	0.2785	0.3222
⅜	0.1194	0.2387	0.3581	0.4775	0.5968	0.7162	0.8356	0.9549	1.0743	0.2387	0.2762
⅓	0.1061	0.2122	0.3183	0.4244	0.5305	0.6366	0.7427	0.8488	0.9549	0.2122	0.2455
⅝	0.0995	0.1989	0.2984	0.3979	0.4974	0.5968	0.6963	0.7958	0.8952	0.1989	0.2302
¼	0.0796	0.1592	0.2387	0.3183	0.3979	0.4775	0.5570	0.6366	0.7162	0.1592	0.1841
³⁄₁₆	0.0597	0.1194	0.1790	0.2387	0.2984	0.3581	0.4178	0.4775	0.5371	0.1194	0.1381
⅛	0.0398	0.0796	0.1194	0.1592	0.1989	0.2387	0.2785	0.3183	0.3581	0.0796	0.0921
¹⁄₁₆	0.0199	0.0398	0.0597	0.0796	0.0995	0.1194	0.1393	0.1592	0.1790	0.0398	0.0460

These changes in outside diameters of pinion and gear do not change the velocity ratio or the procedures in cutting the teeth on a hobbing machine or generating type of shaper or planer.

Data in Table 7 on page 2225 are taken from ANSI Standard B6.1-1968, reaffirmed 1974, and show for 20-degree and 25-degree full-depth standard tooth forms, respectively, the addendums and tooth thicknesses for long addendum pinions and their mating short addendum gears when the number of teeth in the pinion is as given. Similar data for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

former standard 14½-degree full-depth teeth (20 diametral pitch and coarser) are given in Table 8 on page 2225.

Example: A 14-tooth, 20-degree pressure angle pinion of 6 diametral pitch is to be enlarged. What will be the outside diameters of the pinion and a 60-tooth mating gear? If the mating gear is to have the minimum number of teeth to avoid undercut, what will be its outside diameter?

$$D_o\,(\text{pinion}) = \frac{N_P}{P} + 2a = \frac{14}{6} + 2\left(\frac{1.234}{6}\right) = 2.745 \text{ inches}$$

$$D_o\,(\text{gear}) = \frac{N_G}{P} + 2a = \frac{60}{6} + 2\left(\frac{0.766}{6}\right) = 10.255 \text{ inches}$$

For a mating gear with minimum number of teeth to avoid undercut:

$$D_o\,(\text{gear}) = \frac{N_G}{P} + 2a = \frac{21}{6} + 2\left(\frac{0.766}{6}\right) = 3.755 \text{ inches}$$

Series of Involute, Finishing Gear Milling Cutters for Each Pitch

Number of Cutter	Will cut Gears from	Number of Cutter	Will cut Gears from
1	135 teeth to a rack	5	21 to 25 teeth
2	55 to 134 teeth	6	17 to 20 teeth
3	35 to 54 teeth	7	14 to 16 teeth
4	26 to 34 teeth	8	12 to 13 teeth
The regular cutters listed above are used ordinarily. The cutters listed below (an intermediate series having half numbers) may be used when greater accuracy of tooth shape is essential in cases where the number of teeth is between the numbers for which the regular cutters are intended.			
Number of Cutter	Will cut Gears from	Number of Cutter	Will cut Gears from
1½	80 to 134 teeth	5½	19 to 20 teeth
2½	42 to 54 teeth	6½	15 to 16 teeth
3½	30 to 34 teeth	7½	13 teeth
4½	23 to 25 teeth	…	…

Roughing cutters are made with No. 1 form only. Dimensions of roughing and finishing cutters are given on page 891. Dimensions of cutters for bevel gears are given on page 892.

Enlarged Fine-Pitch Pinions: American Standard ANSI B6.7-1977, Information Sheet A provides a different system for 20-degree pressure angle pinion enlargement than is used for coarse-pitch gears. Pinions with 11 through 23 teeth (9 through 14 teeth for 25-degree pressure angle) are enlarged so that a standard tooth thickness rack with addendum 1.05/*P* will start contact 5° of roll above the base circle radius. The use of 1.05/*P* for the addendum allows for center distance variation and eccentricity of the mating gear outside diameter; the 5° roll angle avoids the fabrication of the involute in the troublesome area near the base circle.

Pinions with less than 11 teeth (9 teeth for 25-degree pressure angle) are enlarged to the extent that the highest point of undercut coincides with the start of contact with the standard rack described previously. The height of undercut considered is that produced by a sharp-cornered 120 pitch hob. Pinions with less than 13 teeth (11 teeth for 25-degree pressure angle) are truncated to provide a top land of 0.275/*P*. Data for enlarged pinions may be found in Table 9a, Table 9b, Table 9c, and Table 9d.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9a. Increase in Dedendum, Δ for 20 -, and 25 -Degree Pressure Angle Fine-Pitch Enlarged Pinions and Reduced Gears *ANSI B6.7-1977*

Diametral Pitch, *P*	Δ	Diametral Pitch, *P*	Δ	Diametral Pitch, *P*	Δ	Diametral Pitch, *P*	Δ	Diametral Pitch, *P*	Δ
20	0.0000	32	0.0007	48	0.0012	72	0.0015	96	0.0016
24	0.0004	40	0.0010	64	0.0015	80	0.0015	120	0.0017

Δ = increase in standard dedendum to provide increased clearance. See footnote to Table 9d.

Table 9b. Dimensions Required when Using Enlarged, Fine-pitch, $14\frac{1}{2}$-Degree Pressure Angle Pinions *ANSI B6.7-1977, Information Sheet B*

Enlarged Pinion			Standard Center-distance System (Long and Short Addendum)				Enlarged Center-distance System		
			Reduced Mating Gear				Enlarged Pinion Mating with St'd. Gear	Two Equal Enlarged Mating Pinions[a]	
No. of Teeth *n*	Outside Diameter	Cir. Tooth Thickness at Standard Pitch Dia.	Decrease in Standard Outside Dia.[b]	Cir. Tooth Thickness at Standard Pitch Dia.	Recommended Minimum No. of Teeth *N*	Contact Ratio, *n* Mating with *N*	Increase over St'd. Center Distance		Contact Ratio of Two Equal Enlarged Mating Pinions
10	13.3731	1.9259	1.3731	1.2157	54	1.831	0.6866	1.3732	1.053
11	14.3104	1.9097	1.3104	1.2319	53	1.847	0.6552	1.3104	1.088
12	15.2477	1.8935	1.2477	1.2481	52	1.860	0.6239	1.2477	1.121
13	16.1850	1.8773	1.1850	1.2643	51	1.873	0.5925	1.1850	1.154
14	17.1223	1.8611	1.1223	1.2805	50	1.885	0.5612	1.2223	1.186
15	18.0597	1.8448	1.0597	1.2967	49	1.896	0.5299	1.0597	1.217
16	18.9970	1.8286	0.9970	1.3130	48	1.906	0.4985	0.9970	1.248
17	19.9343	1.8124	0.9343	1.3292	47	1.914	0.4672	0.9343	1.278
18	20.8716	1.7962	0.8716	1.3454	46	1.922	0.4358	0.8716	1.307
19	21.8089	1.7800	0.8089	1.3616	45	1.929	0.4045	0.8089	1.336
20	22.7462	1.7638	0.7462	1.3778	44	1.936	0.3731	0.7462	1.364
21	23.6835	1.7476	0.6835	1.3940	43	1.942	0.3418	0.6835	1.392
22	24.6208	1.7314	0.6208	1.4102	42	1.948	0.3104	0.6208	1.419
23	25.5581	1.7151	0.5581	1.4265	41	1.952	0.2791	0.5581	1.446
24	26.4954	1.6989	0.4954	1.4427	40	1.956	0.2477	0.4954	1.472
25	27.4328	1.6827	0.4328	1.4589	39	1.960	0.2164	0.4328	1.498
26	28.3701	1.6665	0.3701	1.4751	38	1.963	0.1851	0.3701	1.524
27	29.3074	1.6503	0.3074	1.4913	37	1.965	0.1537	0.3074	1.549
28	30.2447	1.6341	0.2448	1.5075	36	1.967	0.1224	0.2448	1.573
29	31.1820	1.6179	0.1820	1.5237	35	1.969	0.0910	0.1820	1.598
30	32.1193	1.6017	0.1193	1.5399	34	1.970	0.0597	0.1193	1.622
31	33.0566	1.5854	0.0566	1.5562	33	1.971	0.0283	0.0566	1.646

[a] If enlarged mating pinions are of unequal size, the center distance is increased by an amount equal to one-half the sum of their increase over standard outside diameters. Data in this column are not given in the standard.

[b] To maintain standard center distance when using an enlarged pinion, the mating gear diameter must be decreased by the amount of the pinion enlargement.

All dimensions are given in inches and are for 1 diametral pitch. For other pitches divide tabulated dimensions by the diametrical pitch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9c. Tooth Proportions Recommended for Enlarging Fine-Pitch Pinions of 20-Degree Pressure Angle—20 Diametral Pitch and Finer *ANSI B6.7-1977*

Enlarged Pinion Dimensions					Enlarged C.D. System Pinion Mating with Standard Gear		Standard Center Distance (Long and Short Addendums) Reduced Gear Dimensions				
Number of Teeth,[a] n	Outside Diameter, D_{oP}	Addendum, a_P	Basic Tooth Thickness, t_P	Dedendum Based on 20 Pitch,[b] b_P	Contact Ratio Two Equal Pinions	Contact Ratio with a 24-Tooth Gear	Addendum, a_G	Basic Tooth Thickness, t_G	Dedendum Based on 20 Pitch,[b] b_G	Recommended Minimum No. of Teeth, N	Contact Ratio n Mating with N
7	10.0102	1.5051	2.14114	0.4565	0.697	1.003	0.2165	1.00045	2.0235	42	1.079
8	11.0250	1.5125	2.09854	0.5150	0.792	1.075	0.2750	1.04305	1.9650	40	1.162
9	12.0305	1.5152	2.05594	0.5735	0.893	1.152	0.3335	1.08565	1.9065	39	1.251
10	13.0279	1.5140	2.01355	0.6321	0.982	1.211	0.3921	1.12824	1.8479	38	1.312
11	14.0304	1.5152	1.97937	0.6787	1.068	1.268	0.4387	1.16222	1.8013	37	1.371
12	15.0296	1.5148	1.94703	0.7232	1.151	1.322	0.4832	1.19456	1.7568	36	1.427
13	15.9448	1.4724	1.91469	0.7676	1.193	1.353	0.5276	1.22690	1.7124	35	1.457
14	16.8560	1.4280	1.88235	0.8120	1.232	1.381	0.5720	1.25924	1.6680	34	1.483
15	17.7671	1.3836	1.85001	0.8564	1.270	1.408	0.6164	1.29158	1.6236	33	1.507
16	18.6782	1.3391	1.81766	0.9009	1.323	1.434	0.6609	1.32393	1.5791	32	1.528
17	19.5894	1.2947	1.78532	0.9453	1.347	1.458	0.7053	1.35627	1.5347	31	1.546
18	20.5006	1.2503	1.75298	0.9897	1.385	1.482	0.7497	1.38861	1.4903	30	1.561
19	21.4116	1.2058	1.72064	1.0342	1.423	1.505	0.7942	1.42095	1.4458	29	1.574
20	22.3228	1.1614	1.68839	1.0786	1.461	1.527	0.8386	1.45320	1.4014	28	1.584
21	23.2340	1.1170	1.65595	1.1230	1.498	1.548	0.8830	1.48564	1.3570	27	1.592
22	24.1450	1.0725	1.62361	1.1675	1.536	1.568	0.9275	1.51798	1.3125	26	1.598
23	25.0561	1.0281	1.59127	1.2119	1.574	1.588	0.9719	1.55032	1.2681	25	1.601
24	26.0000	1.0000	1.57080	1.2400	1.602	1.602	1.0000	1.57080	1.2400	24	1.602

[a] Caution should be exercised in the use of pinions above the horizontal lines. They should be checked for suitability, particularly in the areas of contact ratio (less than 1.2 is not recommended), center distance, clearance, and tooth strength.

[b] The actual dedendum is calculated by dividing the values in this column by the desired diametral pitch and then adding to the result an amount Δ found in Table 9a. As an example, a 20-degree pressure angle 7-tooth pinion meshing with a 42-tooth gear would have, for 24 diametral pitch, a dedendum of 0.4565 ÷ 24 + 0.0004 = 0.0194. The 42-tooth gear would have a dedendum of 2.0235 ÷ 24 + 0.004 = 0.0847 inch.

All dimensions are given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9d. Tooth Proportions Recommended for Enlarging Fine-Pitch Pinions of 25-Degree Pressure Angle — 20 Diametral Pitch and Finer *ANSI B6.7-1977, Information Sheet B*

Enlarged Pinion Dimensions					Enlarged C.D. System Pinion Mating with Standard Gear		Standard Center Distance (Long and Short Addendums) Reduced Gear Dimensions				
Number of Teeth,[a] n	Outside Diameter, D_{oP}	Addendum, a_P	Basic Tooth Thickness, t_P	Dedendum Based on 20 Pitch, Dedendum Based on 20 Pitch,[b] b_P	Contact Ratio Two Equal Pinions	Contact Ratio with a 15-Tooth Gear	Addendum, a_G	Basic Tooth Thickness, t_G	Dedendum Based on 20 Pitch,[b] b_G	Recommended Minimum No. of Teeth, N	Contact Ratio n Mating with N
6	8.7645	1.3822	2.18362	0.5829	0.696	0.954	0.3429	0.95797	1.8971	24	1.030
7	9.7253	1.3626	2.10029	0.6722	0.800	1.026	0.4322	1.04130	1.8078	23	1.108
8	10.6735	1.3368	2.01701	0.7616	0.904	1.094	0.5216	1.12459	1.7184	22	1.177
9	11.6203	1.3102	1.94110	0.8427	1.003	1.156	0.6029	1.20048	1.6371	20	1.234
10	12.5691	1.2846	1.87345	0.9155	1.095	1.211	0.6755	1.26814	1.5645	19	1.282
11	13.5039	1.2520	1.80579	0.9880	1.183	1.261	0.7480	1.33581	1.4920	18	1.322
12	14.3588	1.1794	1.73813	1.0606	1.231	1.290	0.8206	1.40346	1.4194	17	1.337
13	15.2138	1.1069	1.67047	1.1331	1.279	1.317	0.8931	1.47112	1.3469	16	1.347
14	16.0686	1.0343	1.60281	1.2057	1.328	1.343	0.9657	1.53878	1.2743	15	1.352
15	17.0000	1.0000	1.57030	1.2400	1.358	1.358	1.0000	1.57080	1.2400	15	1.358

[a] Caution should be exercised in the use of pinions above the horizontal lines. They should be checked for suitability, particularly in the areas of contact ratio (less than 1.2 is not recommended), center distance, clearance, and tooth strength.

[b] The actual dedendum is calculated by dividing the values in this column by the desired diametral pitch and then adding to the result an amount Δ found in Table 9a. As an example, a 20-degree pressure angle 7-tooth pinion meshing with a 42-tooth gear would have, for 24 diametral pitch, a dedendum of 0.4565 ÷ 24 + 0.0004 = 0.0194. The 42-tooth gear would have a dedendum of 2.0235 ÷ 24 + 0.004 = 0.0847 inch.

All dimensions are given in inches.

All values are for 1 diametral pitch. For any other sizes of teeth, all linear dimensions should be divided by the diametral pitch.

Note: The tables in the ANSI B6.7-1977 standard also specify Form Diameter, Roll Angle to Form Diameter, and Top Land. These are not shown here. The top land is in no case less than 0.275/*P*. The form diameters and the roll angles to form diameter shown in the Standard are the values which should be met with a standard hob when generating the tooth thicknesses shown in the tables. These form diameters provide more than enough length of involute profile for any mating gear smaller than a rack. However, since these form diameters are based on gear tooth generation using standard hobs, they should impose little or no hardship on manufacture except in cases of the most critical quality levels. In such cases, form diameter specifications and master gear design should be based upon actual mating conditions.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Minimum Number of Teeth to Avoid Undercutting by Hob.—The data in the above tables give tooth proportions for low numbers of teeth to avoid interference between the gear tooth tip and the pinion tooth flank. Consideration must also be given to possible undercutting of the pinion tooth flank by the hob used to cut the pinion. The minimum number of teeth N_{min} of standard proportion that may be cut without undercut is: $N_{min} = 2P \csc^2 \phi \, [a_H - r_t (1 - \sin \phi)]$ where: a_H = cutter addendum; r_t = radius at cutter tip or corners; ϕ = cutter pressure angle; and P = diametral pitch.

Gear to Mesh with Enlarged Pinion.—Data in the fifth column of Table 8 show minimum number of teeth in a mating gear which can be cut with hob or rack type cutter without undercut, when outside diameter of gear has been reduced an amount equal to the pinion enlargement to retain the standard center distance. To calculate N for the gear, insert addendum a of enlarged mating pinion in the formula $N = 2a \times \csc^2 \phi$.

Example: A gear is to mesh with a 24-tooth pinion of 1 diametral pitch which has been enlarged 0.4954 inch, as shown by the table. The pressure angle is $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees. Find minimum number of teeth N for reduced gear.

$$\text{Pinion addendum} = 1 + (0.4954 \div 2) = 1.2477$$

$$\text{Hence,} \qquad N = 2 \times 1.2477 \times 15.95 = 39.8 \,(\text{use } 40)$$

In the case of fine pitch gears with reduced outside diameters, the recommended minimum numbers of teeth given in Table 9b, Table 9c, and Table 9d are somewhat more than the minimum numbers required to prevent undercutting and are based upon studies made by the *American Gear Manufacturers Association*.

Standard Center-Distance System for Enlarged Pinions.—In this system, sometimes referred to as "long and short addendums," the center distance is made standard for the numbers of teeth in pinion and gear. The outside diameter of the gear is decreased by the same amount that the outside of the pinion is enlarged.

The advantages of this system are: 1) No change in center distance or ratio is required; 2) The operating pressure angle remains standard; and 3) A slightly greater contact ratio is obtained than when the center distance is increased.

The disadvantages are 1) The gears as well as the pinion must be changed from standard dimensions; 2) Pinions having fewer than the minimum number of teeth to avoid undercut cannot be satisfactorily meshed together; and 3) In most cases where gear trains include idler gears, the standard center-distance system cannot be used.

Enlarged Center-Distance System for Enlarged Pinions.—If an enlarged pinion is meshed with another enlarged pinion or with a gear of standard outside diameter, the center distance must be increased. For fine-pitch gears, it is usually satisfactory to increase the center distance by an amount equal to one-half of the enlargements (see eighth column of Table 9b). This is an approximation as theoretically there is a slight increase in backlash.

The advantages of this system are: 1) Only the pinions need be changed from the standard dimensions; 2) Pinions having fewer than 18 teeth may engage other pinions in this range; 3) The pinion tooth, which is the weaker member, is made stronger by the enlargement; and 4) The tooth contact stress, which controls gear durability, is lowered by being moved away from the pinion base circle.

The disadvantages are: 1) Center distances must be enlarged over the standard; 2) The operating pressure angle increases slightly with different combinations of pinions and gears, which is usually not important; and 3) The contact ratio is slightly smaller than that obtained with the standard center-distance system.

This consideration is of minor importance as in the worst case the loss is approximately only 6 percent.

Enlarged Pinions Meshing without Backlash: When two enlarged pinions are to mesh without backlash, their center distance will be greater than the standard and less than that for the enlarged center-distance system. This center distance may be calculated by the formulas given in the following section.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Center Distance at Which Modified Mating Spur Gears Will Mesh with No Backlash.— When the tooth thickness of one or both of a pair of mating spur gears has been increased or decreased from the standard value ($\pi \div 2P$), the center distance at which they will mesh tightly (without backlash) may be calculated from the following formulas:

$$\text{inv}\,\phi_1 = \text{inv}\,\phi + \frac{P(t+T) - \pi}{n+N} \qquad C = \frac{n+N}{2P} \qquad C_1 = \frac{\cos\phi}{\cos\phi_1} \times C$$

In these formulas, P = diametral pitch; n = number of teeth in pinion; N = number of teeth in gear; t and T are the actual tooth thicknesses of the pinion and gear, respectively, on their standard pitch circles; inv ϕ = involute function of standard pressure angle of gears; C = standard center distance for the gears; C_1 = center distance at which the gears mesh without backlash; and inv ϕ_1 = involute function of operating pressure angle when gears are meshed tightly at center distance C_1.

Example: Calculate the center distance for no backlash when an enlarged 10-tooth pinion of 100 diametral pitch and 20-degree pressure angle is meshed with a standard 30-tooth gear, the circular tooth thickness of the pinion and gear, respectively, being 0.01873 and 0.015708 inch. From the table of involute functions, page 112, inv 20-degrees = 0.014904. Therefore,

$$\text{inv}\,\phi_1 = \text{inv}\,20° + \frac{100(0.01873 + 0.015708) - \pi}{(10+30)} = 0.014904 + \frac{0.34438 - 0.31416}{4}$$

$$\text{inv}\,\phi_1 = 0.022459 \qquad \text{then, from the involute table} \qquad \phi_1 = 22°49'$$

$$C = \frac{n+N}{2P} = \frac{10+30}{2 \times 100} = 0.2000 \text{ inch}$$

$$C_1 = \frac{\cos 20°}{\cos 22°49'} \times 0.2000 = \frac{0.93969}{0.92175} \times 0.2000 = 0.2039 \text{ inch}$$

Contact Diameter.— For two meshing gears it is important to know the contact diameter of each. A first gear with number of teeth, n, and outside diameter, d_0, meshes at a standard center distance with a second gear with number of teeth, N, and outside diameter, D_0; both gears have a diametral pitch, P, and pressure angle, ϕ, a, A, b, and B are unnamed angles used only in the calculations. The contact diameter, d_c, is found by a three-step calculation that can be done by hand using a trigonometric table and a logarithmic table or a desk calculator. Slide rule calculation is not recommended because it is not accurate enough to give good results. The three-step formulas to find the contact diameter, d_c, of the first gear are:

$$\cos A = \frac{N \cos\phi}{D_0 \times P} \tag{1}$$

$$\tan b = \tan\phi - \frac{N}{n}(\tan A - \tan\phi) \tag{2}$$

$$d_c = \frac{n \cos\phi}{P \cos b} \tag{3}$$

Similarly the three-step formulas to find the contact diameter, D_c, of the second gear are:

$$\cos a = \frac{n \cos\phi}{d_o \times P} \tag{4}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\tan B = \tan \phi - \frac{n}{N}(\tan a - \tan \phi) \tag{5}$$

$$D_c = \frac{N \cos \phi}{P \cos B} \tag{6}$$

Contact Ratio.—The contact ratio of a pair of mating spur gears must be well over 1.0 to assure a smooth transfer of load from one pair of teeth to the next pair as the two gears rotate under load. Because of a reduction in contact ratio due to such factors as tooth deflection, tooth spacing errors, tooth tip breakage, and outside diameter and center distance tolerances, the contact ratio of gears for power transmission as a general rule should not be less than about 1.4. A contact ratio of as low as 1.15 may be used in extreme cases, provided the tolerance effects mentioned above are accounted for in the calculation. The formula for determining the contact ratio, m_f, using the nomenclature in the previous section is:

$$m_f = \frac{N}{6.28318}(\tan A - \tan B) \tag{7a}$$

or

$$m_f = \frac{N}{6.28318}(\tan a - \tan b) \tag{7b}$$

or

$$m_f = \frac{\sqrt{R_0^2 - R_B^2} + \sqrt{r_0^2 - r_B^2} - C \sin \theta}{P \cos \theta} \tag{7c}$$

where R_0 = outside radius of first gear; R_B = base radius of first gear; r_0 = outside radius of second gear; r_B = base radius of second gear; C = center distance; I = pressure angle; and, p = circular pitch.

Both formulas, Equations (7a) and (7b), should give the same answer. It is good practice to use both formulas as a check on the previous calculations.

Lowest Point of Single Tooth Contact.—This diameter on the pinion (sometimes referred to as LPSTC is used to find the maximum contact compressive stress (sometimes called the Hertz Stress) of a pair of mating spur gears. The two-step formulas for determining this pinion diameter, d_L, using the same nomenclature as in the previous sections with c and C as unnamed angles used only in the calculations are:

$$\tan c = \tan a - \frac{6.28318}{n} \tag{8}$$

$$d_L = \frac{n \cos \phi}{P \cos c} \tag{9}$$

In some cases it is necessary to have a plot of the compressive stress over the whole cycle of contact; in this case the LPSTC for the gear is required also. The similar two-step formulas for this gear diameter are:

$$\tan C = \tan A - \frac{6.28318}{N} \tag{10}$$

$$D_L = \frac{N \cos \phi}{P \cos C} \tag{11}$$

Maximum Hob Tip Radius.—The standard gear tooth proportions given by the formulas in Table 2 on page 2210 provide a specified size for the rack fillet radius in the general form of (a constant) × (pitch). For any given standard this constant may vary up to a maximum

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

which it is geometrically impossible to exceed; this maximum constant, r_c (max), is found by the formula:

$$r_c(\max) = \frac{0.785398\cos\phi - b\sin\phi}{1-\sin\phi} \tag{12}$$

where b is the similar constant in the specified formula for the gear dedendum. The hob tip radius of any standard hob to finish cut any standard gear may vary from zero up to this limiting value.

Undercut Limit for Hobbed Involute Gears.—It is well to avoid designing and specifying gears that will have a hobbed trochoidal fillet that undercuts the involute gear tooth profile. This should be avoided because it may cause the involute profile to be cut away up to a point above the required contact diameter with the mating gear so that involute action is lost and the contact ratio reduced to a level that may be too low for proper conjugate action. An undercut fillet will also weaken the beam strength and thus raise the fillet tensile stress of the gear tooth. To assure that the hobbed gear tooth will not have an undercut fillet, the following formula must be satisfied:

$$\frac{b-r_c}{\sin\phi} + r_c \le 0.5n\sin\phi \tag{13}$$

where b is the dedendum constant; r_c is the hob or rack tip radius constant; n is the number of teeth in the gear; and ϕ is the gear and hob pressure angle. If the gear is not standard or the hob does not roll at the gear pitch diameter, this formula can not be applied and the determination of the expected existence of undercut becomes a considerably more complicated procedure.

Highest Point of Single Tooth Contact.—This diameter is used to place the maximum operating load for the determination of the gear tooth fillet stress. The two-step formulas for determining this diameter, d_H, of the pinion using the same nomenclature as in the previous sections with d and D as unnamed angles used only in the calculations are:

$$\tan d = \tan b + \frac{6.28318}{n} \tag{14}$$

$$d_H = \frac{n\cos\phi}{P\cos d} \tag{15}$$

Similarly for the gear:

$$\tan D = \tan B + \frac{6.28318}{N} \tag{16}$$

$$D_H = \frac{N\cos\phi}{P\cos D} \tag{17}$$

True Involute Form Diameter.—The point on the gear tooth at which the fillet and the involute profile are tangent to each other should be determined to assure that it lies at a smaller diameter than the required contact diameter with the mating gear. If the TIF diameter is larger than the contact diameter, then fillet interference will occur with severe damage to the gear tooth profile and rough action of the gear set. This two-step calculation is made by using the following two formulas with e and E as unnamed angles used only in the calculations:

$$\tan e = \tan\phi - \frac{4}{n}\left(\frac{b-r_c}{\sin 2\phi} + \frac{r_c}{2\cos\phi}\right) \tag{18}$$

$$d_{TIF} = \frac{n\cos\phi}{P\cos e} \tag{19}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

As in the previous sections, ϕ is the pressure angle of the gear; n is the number of teeth in the pinion; b is the dedendum constant; r_c is the rack or hob tip radius constant; P is the gear diametral pitch and d_{TIF} is the true involute form diameter.

Similarly, for the mating gear:

$$\tan E = \tan \phi - \frac{4}{N}\left(\frac{b - r_c}{\sin 2\phi} + \frac{r_c}{2\cos \phi}\right) \tag{20}$$

$$D_{TIF} = \frac{N \cos \phi}{P \cos E} \tag{21}$$

where N is number of teeth in this mating gear and D_{TIF} is the true involute form diameter.

Profile Checker Settings.—The actual tooth profile tolerance will need to be determined on high performance gears that operate either at high unit loads or at high pitch-line velocity. This is done on an involute checker, a machine which requires two settings, the gear base radius and the roll angle in degrees to significant points on the involute. From the smallest diameter outward these significant points are: TIF, Contact Diameter, LPSTC, Pitch Diameter, HPSTC, and Outside Diameter.

The base radius is:

$$R_b = \frac{N \cos \phi}{2P} \tag{22}$$

The roll angle, in degrees, at any point is equal to the tangent of the pressure angle at that point multiplied by 57.2958. The following table shows the tangents to be used at each significant diameter.

Significant Point on Tooth Profile	Pinion	Gear	For Computation
TIF	tan e	tan E	(See Formulas (18) & (20))
Contact Dia.	tan b	tan B	(See Formulas (2) & (5))
LPSTC	tan c	tan C	(See Formulas (8) & (10))
Pitch Dia.	tan ϕ	tan ϕ	(ϕ = Pressure angle)
HPSTC	tan d	tan D	(See Formulas (14) & (16))
Outside Dia.	tan a	tan A	(See Formulas (4) & (1))

Example: F ind the significant diameters, contact ratio and hob tip radius for a 10-diametral pitch, 23-tooth, 20-degree pressure angle pinion of 2.5-inch outside diameter if it is to mesh with a 31-tooth gear of 3.3-inch outside diameter.

Thus: $n = 23$

$d_O = 2.5$

$P = 10$

$N = 31$

$D_O = 3.3$

$\phi = 20°$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1) Pinion contact diameter, d_c

$$\cos A = \frac{31 \times 0.93969}{3.3 \times 10} = 0.88274 \qquad A = 28°1'30'' \tag{1}$$

$$\tan b = 0.36397 - \frac{31}{23}(0.53227 - 0.36397) = 0.13713 \qquad b = 7°48'26'' \tag{2}$$

$$d_c = \frac{23 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.99073} = 2.1815 \text{ inches} \tag{3}$$

2) Gear contact diameter, D_c

$$\cos a = \frac{23 \times 0.93963}{2.5 \times 10} = 0.86452 \qquad a = 30°10'20'' \tag{4}$$

$$\tan B = 0.36397 - \frac{23}{31}(0.58136 - 0.36937) = 0.20267 \qquad B = 11°27'26'' \tag{5}$$

$$D_c = \frac{31 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.98000} = 2.9725 \text{ inches} \tag{6}$$

3) Contact ratio, m_f

$$m_f = \frac{31}{6.28318}(0.53227 - 0.20267) = 1.626 \tag{7a}$$

$$m_f = \frac{23}{6.28318}(0.58136 - 0.13713) = 1.626 \tag{7b}$$

4) Pinion LPSTC, d_L

$$\tan c = 0.58136 - \frac{6.28318}{23} = 0.30818 \qquad c = 17°7'41'' \tag{8}$$

$$d_L = \frac{23 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.95565} = 2.2616 \text{ inches} \tag{9}$$

5) Gear LPSTC, D_L

$$\tan C = 0.53227 - \frac{6.28318}{31} = 0.32959 \qquad C = 18°14'30'' \tag{10}$$

$$D_L = \frac{31 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.94974} = 3.0672 \text{ inches} \tag{11}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

6) Maximum permissible hob tip radius, r_c (max). The dedendum factor is 1.25.

$$r_c(\max) = \frac{0.785398 \times 0.93969 - 1.25 \times 0.34202}{1 - 0.34202} = 0.4719 \text{ inch} \tag{12}$$

7) If the hob tip radius r_c is 0.30, determine if the pinion involute is undercut.

$$\frac{1.25 - 0.30}{0.34202} + 0.30 \leq 0.5 \times 23 \times 0.34202 \quad 3.0776 < 3.9332 \tag{13}$$

8) Therefore there is no involute undercut.

9) Pinion HPSTC, d_H

$$\tan d = 0.13713 + \frac{6.28318}{23} = 0.41031 \qquad d = 22°18'32'' \tag{14}$$

$$d_H = \frac{23 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.92515} = 2.3362 \text{ inches} \tag{15}$$

10) Gear HPSTC, D_H

$$\tan D = 0.20267 + \frac{6.28318}{31} = 0.40535 \qquad D = 22°3'55'' \tag{16}$$

$$D_H = \frac{31 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.92676} = 3.1433 \text{ inches} \tag{17}$$

11) Pinion TIF diameter, d_{TIF}

$$\tan e = 0.36397 - \frac{4}{23}\left(\frac{1.25 - 0.30}{0.64279} + \frac{0.30}{2 \times 0.93969}\right) = 0.07917 \qquad e = 4°31'36'' \tag{18}$$

$$d_{TIF} = \frac{23 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.99688} = 2.1681 \text{ inches} \tag{19}$$

12) Gear TIF diameter, D_{TIF}

$$\tan E = 0.36397 - \frac{4}{31}\left(\frac{1.25 - 0.30}{0.64279} + \frac{0.30}{2 \times 0.93969}\right) = 0.15267 \qquad E = 8°40'50'' \tag{20}$$

$$D_{TIF} = \frac{31 \times 0.93969}{10 \times 0.98855} = 2.9468 \text{ inches} \tag{21}$$

Gear Blanks for Fine-Pitch Gears.—The accuracy to which gears can be produced is considerably affected by the design of the gear blank and the accuracy to which the various surfaces of the blank are machined. The following recommendations should not be regarded as inflexible rules, but rather as minimum average requirements for gear-blank quality compatible with the expected quality class of the finished gear.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design of Gear Blanks: The accuracy to which gears can be produced is affected by the design of the blank, so the following points of design should be noted: 1) Gears designed with a hole should have the hole large enough that the blank can be adequately supported during machining of the teeth and yet not so large as to cause distortion; 2) Face widths should be wide enough, in proportion to outside diameters, to avoid springing and to permit obtaining flatness in important surfaces; 3) Short bore lengths should be avoided wherever possible. It is feasible, however, to machine relatively thin blanks in stacks, provided the surfaces are flat and parallel to each other; 4) Where gear blanks with hubs are to be designed, attention should be given to the wall sections of the hubs. Too thin a section will not permit proper clamping of the blank during machining operations and may also affect proper mounting of the gear; and 5) Where pinions or gears integral with their shafts are to be designed, deflection of the shaft can be minimized by having the shaft length and shaft diameter well proportioned to the gear or pinion diameter. The foregoing general principles may also be useful when applied to blanks for coarser pitch gears.

Specifying Spur and Helical Gear Data on Drawings.—The data that may be shown on drawings of spur and helical gears fall into three groups: The first group consists of data basic to the design of the gear; the second group consists of data used in manufacturing and inspection; and the third group consists of engineering reference data. The accompanying table may be used as a checklist for the various data which may be placed on gear drawings and the sequence in which they should appear.

Explanation of Terms Used in Gear Specifications: 1) Number of teeth is the number of teeth in 360 deg of gear circumference. In a sector gear, both the actual number of teeth in the sector and the theoretical number of teeth in 360 deg should be given.

2) Diametral pitch is the ratio of the number of teeth in the gear to the number of inches in the standard pitch diameter. It is used in this standard as a nominal specification of tooth size.

a) Normal diametral pitch is the diametral pitch in the normal plane.
b) Transverse diametral pitch is the diametral pitch in the transverse plane.
c) Module is the ratio of the number of teeth in the gear to the number of mm in the standard pitch diameter.
d) Normal module is the module measured in the normal plane.
e) Transverse module is the module measured in the transverse plane.

3) Pressure angle is the angle between the gear tooth profile and a radial line at the pitch point. It is used in this standard to specify the pressure angle of the basic rack used in defining the gear tooth profile.

a) Normal pressure angle is the pressure angle in the normal plane.
b) Transverse pressure angle is the pressure angle in the transverse plane.

4) Helix angle is the angle between the pitch helix and an element of the pitch cylinder, unless otherwise specified.

a) Hand of helix is the direction in which the teeth twist as they recede from an observer along the axis. A right hand helix twists clockwise and a left hand helix twists counterclockwise.

5) Standard pitch diameter is the diameter of the pitch circle. It equals the number of teeth divided by the transverse diametral pitch.

6) Tooth form may be specified as standard addendum, long addendum, short addendum, modified involute or special. If a modified involute or special tooth form is required, a detailed view should be shown on the drawing. If a special tooth form is specified, roll angles must be supplied (see page 2237).

7) Addendum is the radial distance between the standard pitch circle and the outside circle. The actual value depends on the specification of outside diameter.

8) Whole depth is the total radial depth of the tooth space. The actual value is dependent on the specification of outside diameter and root diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9) Maximum calculated circular thickness on the standard pitch circle is the tooth thickness which will provide the desired minimum backlash when the gear is assembled in mesh with its mate on minimum center distance. Control may best be exerted by testing in tight mesh with a master which integrates all errors in the several teeth in mesh through the arc of action as explained on page 2248. This value is independent of the effect of runout.

a) Maximum calculated *normal* circular thickness is the circular tooth thickness in the normal plane which satisfies requirements explained in (9).

10) Gear testing radius is the distance from its axis of rotation to the standard pitch line of a standard master when in intimate contact under recommended pressure on a variable-center-distance running gage. Maximum testing radius should be calculated to provide the maximum circular tooth thickness specified in (9) when checked as explained on page 2248. This value is affected by the runout of the gear. Tolerance on testing radius must be equal to or greater than the total composite error permitted by the quality class specified in (11).

11) Quality class is specified for convenience when talking or writing about the accuracy of the gear.

12) Maximum total composite error, and 13) Maximum tooth-to-tooth composite error. Actual tolerance values (12 and 13) permitted by the quality class (11) are specified in inches to provide machine operator or inspector with tolerances required to inspect the gear.

14) Testing pressure recommendations are given on page 2248. Incorrect testing pressure will result in incorrect measurement of testing radius.

15) Master specifications by tool or code number may be required to call for the use of a special master gear when tooth thickness deviates excessively from standard.

16) Measurement over two 0.xxxx diameter pins may be specified to assist the manufacturing department in determining size at machine for setup only.

17) Outside diameter is usually shown on the drawing of the gear together with other blank dimensions so that it will not be necessary for machine operators to search gear tooth data for this dimension. Since outside diameter is also frequently used in the manufacture and inspection of the teeth, it may be included in the data block with other tooth specifications if preferred. To permit use of topping hobs for cutting gears on which the tooth thickness has been modified from standard, the outside diameter should be related to the specified gear testing radius (10).

18) Maximum root diameter is specified to assure adequate clearance for the outside diameter of the mating gear. This dimension is usually considered acceptable if the gear is checked with a master and meets specifications (10) through (13).

19) Active profile diameter of a gear is the smallest diameter at which the mating gear tooth profile can make contact. Because of difficulties involved in checking, this specification is not recommended for gears finer than 48 pitch.

20) Surface roughness on active profile surfaces may be specified in microinches to be checked by instrument up to about 32 pitch, or by visual comparison in the finer pitch ranges. It is difficult to determine accurately the surface roughness of fine pitch gears. For many commercial applications surface roughness may be considered acceptable on gears which meet the maximum tooth-to-tooth-error specification (13).

21) Mating gear part number may be shown as a convenient reference. If the gear is used in several applications, all mating gears may be listed but usual practice is to record this information in a reference file.

22) Number of teeth in mating gear, and 23) Minimum operating center distance. This information is often specified to eliminate the necessity of getting prints of the mating gear and assemblies for checking the design specifications, interference, backlash, determination of master gear specification, and acceptance or rejection of gears made out of tolerance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Data for Spur and Helical Gear Drawings

Type of Data	Min. Spur Gear Data	Min. Helical Gear-Data	Add'l Optional Data	Item Number[a]	Data[a]
Basic Specifications	•	•		1	Number of teeth
	•			2	Diametral pitch or module
		•		2a	Normal diametral pitch or module
			•	2b	Transverse diametral pitch or module
	•			3	Pressure angle
		•		3a	Normal pressure angle
			•	3b	Transverse pressure angle
		•		4	Helix angle
		•		4a	Hand of helix
	•	•		5	Standard pitch diameter
	•	•		6	Tooth form
			•	7	Addendum
			•	8	Whole depth
	•			9	Max. calc. circular thickness on std. pitch circle
		•		9a	Max. calc. normal circular thickness on std. pitch circle
Manufacturing and Inspection			•	10	Roll angles
	•	•		11	A.G.M.A. quality class
	•	•		12	Max. total composite error
	•	•		13	Max. tooth-to-tooth composite error
			•	14	Testing pressure (Ounces)
	•	•		15	Master specification
			•	16	Meas. over two .xxxx dia. pins (For setup only)
	•	•		17	Outside diameter (Preferably shown on drawing of gear)
			•	18	Max. root diameter
			•	19	Active profile diameter
			•	20	Surface roughness of active profile
Engineering Reference			•	21	Mating gear part number
			•	22	Number of teeth in mating gear
			•	23	Minimum operating center distance

[a] An item-by-item explanation of the terms used in this table is given beginning on page 2240.

Backlash

In general, backlash in gears is play between mating teeth. For purposes of measurement and calculation, backlash is defined as the amount by which a tooth space exceeds the thickness of an engaging tooth. It does not include the effect of center-distance changes of the mountings and variations in bearings. When not otherwise specified, numerical values of backlash are understood to be given on the pitch circles. The general purpose of backlash is to prevent gears from jamming together and making contact on both sides of their teeth simultaneously. Lack of backlash may cause noise, overloading, overheating of the gears and bearings, and even seizing and failure.

Excessive backlash is objectionable, particularly if the drive is frequently reversing, or if there is an overrunning load as in cam drives. On the other hand, specification of an unnecessarily small amount of backlash allowance will increase the cost of gears, because errors in runout, pitch, profile, and mounting must be held correspondingly smaller. Backlash does not affect involute action and usually is not detrimental to proper gear action.

Determining Proper Amount of Backlash.—In specifying proper backlash and tolerances for a pair of gears, the most important factor is probably the maximum permissible amount of runout in both gear and pinion (or worm). Next are the allowable errors in profile, pitch, tooth thickness, and helix angle. Backlash between a pair of gears will vary as successive teeth make contact because of the effect of composite tooth errors, particularly runout, and errors in the gear center distances and bearings.

Other important considerations are speed and space for lubricant film. Slow-moving gears, in general, require the least backlash. Fast-moving fine-pitch gears are usually

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

lubricated with relatively light oil, but if there is insufficient clearance for an oil film, and particularly if oil trapped at the root of the teeth cannot escape, heat and excessive tooth loading will occur.

Heat is a factor because gears may operate warmer, and, therefore, expand more, than the housings. The heat may result from oil churning or from frictional losses between the teeth, at bearings or oil seals, or from external causes. Moreover, for the same temperature rise, the material of the gears—for example, bronze and aluminum—may expand more than the material of the housings, usually steel or cast iron.

The higher the helix angle or spiral angle, the more transverse backlash is required for a given normal backlash. The transverse backlash is equal to the normal backlash divided by the cosine of the helix angle.

In designs employing normal pressure angles higher than 20 degrees, special consideration must be given to backlash, because more backlash is required on the pitch circles to obtain a given amount of backlash in a direction normal to the tooth profiles.

Errors in boring the gear housings, both in center distance and alignment, are of extreme importance in determining allowance to obtain the backlash desired. The same is true in the mounting of the gears, which is affected by the type and adjustment of bearings, and similar factors. Other influences in backlash specification are heat treatment subsequent to cutting the teeth, lapping operations, need for recutting, and reduction of tooth thickness through normal wear.

Minimum backlash is necessary for timing, indexing, gun-sighting, and certain instrument gear trains. If the operating speed is very low and the necessary precautions are taken in the manufacture of such gear trains, the backlash may be held to extremely small limits. However, the specification of "zero backlash," so commonly stipulated for gears of this nature, usually involves special and expensive techniques, and is difficult to obtain.

Table 1. AGMA Recommended Backlash Range for Coarse-Pitch Spur, Helical, and Herringbone Gearing

Center Distance (Inches)	Normal Diametral Pitches				
	0.5-1.99	2-3.49	3.5-5.99	6-9.99	10-19.99
	Backlash, Normal Plane, Inches[a]				
Up to 5	…	…	…	…	.005-.015
Over 5 to 10	…	…	…	.010-.020	.010-.020
Over 10 to 20	…	…	.020-.030	.015-.025	.010-.020
Over 20 to 30	…	.030-.040	.025-.030	.020-.030	…
Over 30 to 40	.040-.060	.035-.045	.030-.040	.025-.035	…
Over 40 to 50	.050-.070	.040-.055	.035-.050	.030-.040	…
Over 50 to 80	.060-.080	.045-.065	.040-.060	…	…
Over 80 to 100	.070-.095	.050-.080	…	…	…
Over 100 to 120	.080-.110	…	…	…	…

[a] Suggested backlash, on nominal centers, measured after rotating to the point of closest engagement. For helical and herringbone gears, divide above values by the cosine of the helix angle to obtain the transverse backlash.

The above backlash tolerances contain allowance for gear expansion due to differential in the operating temperature of the gearing and their supporting structure. The values may be used where the operating temperatures are up to 70 deg F higher than the ambient temperature.

For most gearing applications the recommended backlash ranges will provide proper running clearance between engaging teeth of mating gears. Deviation below the minimum or above the maximum values shown, which do not affect operational use of the gearing, should not be cause for rejection.

Definite backlash tolerances on coarse-pitch gearing are to be considered binding on the gear manufacturer only when agreed upon in writing.

Some applications may require less backlash than shown in the above table. In such cases the amount and tolerance should be by agreement between manufacturer and purchaser.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Recommended Backlash: In the following tables American Gear Manufacturers Association recommendations for backlash ranges for various kinds of gears are given.* For purposes of measurement and calculation, backlash is defined as the amount by which a tooth space exceeds the thickness of an engaging tooth. When not otherwise specified, numerical values of backlash are understood to be measured at the tightest point of mesh on the pitch circle in a direction normal to the tooth surface when the gears are mounted in their specified position.

Coarse-Pitch Gears: Table 1 gives the recommended backlash range for coarse-pitch spur, helical and herringbone gearing. Because backlash for helical and herringbone gears is more conveniently measured in the normal plane, Table 1 has been prepared to show backlash in the normal plane for coarse-pitch helical and herringbone gearing and in the transverse plane for spur gears. To obtain backlash in the transverse plane for helical and herringbone gears, divide the normal plane backlash in Table 1 by the cosine of the helix angle.

Table 2. AGMA Recommended Backlash Range for Bevel and Hypoid Gears

Diametral Pitch	Normal Backlash, Inch		Diametral Pitch	Normal Backlash, Inch	
	Quality Numbers 7 through 13	Quality Numbers 3 through 6		Quality Numbers 7 through 13	Quality Numbers 3 through 6
1.00 to 1.25	0.020-0.030	0.045-0.065	5.00 to 6.00	0.005-0.007	0.006-0.013
1.25 to 1.50	0.018-0.026	0.035-0.055	6.00 to 8.00	0.004-0.006	0.005-0.010
1.50 to 1.75	0.016-0.022	0.025-0.045	8.00 to 10.00	0.003-0.005	0.004-0.008
1.75 to 2.00	0.014-0.018	0.020-0.040	10.00 to 16.00	0.002-0.004	0.003-0.005
2.00 to 2.50	0.012-0.016	0.020-0.030	16.00 to 20.00	0.001-0.003	0.002-0.004
2.50 to 3.00	0.010-0.013	0.015-0.025	20 to 50	0.000-0.002	0.000-0.002
3.00 to 3.50	0.008-0.011	0.012-0.022	50 to 80	0.000-0.001	0.000-0.001
3.50 to 4.00	0.007-0.009	0.010-0.020	80 and finer	0.000-0.0007	0.000-0.0007
4.00 to 5.00	0.006-0.008	0.008-0.016	…	…	…

Measured at tightest point of mesh

The backlash tolerances given in this table contain allowances for gear expansion due to a differential in the operating temperature of the gearing and their supporting structure. The values may be used where the operating temperature is up to 70 °F higher (39 °C higher) than the ambient temperature. These backlash values will provide proper running clearances for most gear applications.

The following important factors must be considered in establishing backlash tolerances: a) Center distance tolerance; b) Parallelism of gear axes; c) Side runout or wobble; d) Tooth thickness tolerance; e) Pitch line runout tolerance; f) Profile tolerance; g) Pitch tolerance; h) Lead tolerance; i) Types of bearings and subsequent wear; j) Deflection under load; k) Gear tooth wear; l) Pitch line velocity; m) Lubrication requirements; and n) Thermal expansion of gears and housing.

A tight mesh may result in objectionable gear sound, increased power losses, overheating, rupture of the lubricant film, overloaded bearings and premature gear failure. However, it is recognized that there are some gearing applications where a tight mesh (zero backlash) may be required.

Specifying unnecessarily close backlash tolerances will increase the cost of the gearing. It is obvious from the above summary that the desired amount of backlash is difficult to evaluate. It is, therefore, recommended that when a designer, user or purchaser includes a reference to backlash in a gearing specification and drawing, consultation be arranged with the manufacturer.

* Extracted from Gear Classification Manual, AGMA 390.03 with permission of the publisher, the American Gear Manufacturers Association, 1500 King St., Alexandria, VA 22314.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bevel and Hypoid Gears: Table 2 gives similar backlash range values for bevel and hypoid gears. These are values based upon average conditions for general purpose gearing, but may require modification to meet specific needs.

Backlash on bevel and hypoid gears can be controlled to some extent by axial adjustment of the gears during assembly. However, due to the fact that actual adjustment of a bevel or hypoid gear in its mounting will alter the amount of backlash, it is imperative that the amount of backlash cut into the gears during manufacture is not excessive. Bevel and hypoid gears must always be capable of operation without interference when adjusted for zero backlash. This requirement is imposed by the fact that a failure of the axial thrust bearing might permit the gears to operate under this condition. Therefore, bevel and hypoid gears should never be designed to operate with normal backlash in excess of 0.080/P where P is diametral pitch.

Fine-Pitch Gears: Table 3 gives similar backlash range values for fine-pitch spur, helical and herringbone gearing.

Providing Backlash.—In order to obtain the amount of backlash desired, it is necessary to decrease tooth thicknesses. However, because of manufacturing and assembling inaccuracies not only in the gears but also in other parts, the allowances made on tooth thickness almost always must exceed the desired amount of backlash. Since the amounts of these allowances depend on the closeness of control exercised on all manufacturing operations, no general recommendations for them can be given.

It is customary to make half the allowance for backlash on the tooth thickness of each gear of a pair, although there are exceptions. For example, on pinions having very low numbers of teeth it is desirable to provide all the allowance on the mating gear, so as not to weaken the pinion teeth. In worm gearing, ordinary practice is to provide all of the allowance on the worm which is usually made of a material stronger than that of the worm gear.

In some instances the backlash allowance is provided in the cutter, and the cutter is then operated at the standard tooth depth. In still other cases, backlash is obtained by setting the distance between two tools for cutting the two sides of the teeth, as in straight bevel gears, or by taking side cuts, or by changing the center distance between the gears in their mountings. In spur and helical gearing, backlash allowance is usually obtained by sinking the cutter deeper into the blank than the standard depth. The accompanying table gives the excess depth of cut for various pressure angles.

Excess Depth of Cut E to Provide Backlash Allowance

Distribution of Backlash	Pressure Angle ϕ, Degrees				
	14½	17½	20	25	30
Excess Depth of Cut E to Obtain Circular Backlash B[a]					
All on One Gear	1.93B	1.59B	1.37B	1.07B	0.87B
One-half on Each Gear	0.97B	0.79B	0.69B	0.54B	0.43B
Excess Depth of Cut E to Obtain BacklashB_b Normal to Tooth Profile[b]					
All on One Gear	2.00B_b	1.66B_b	1.46B_b	1.18B_b	1.99B_b
One-half on Each Gear	1.00B_b	0.83B_b	0.73B_b	0.59B_b	0.50B_b

[a] Circular backlash is the amount by which the width of a tooth space is greater than the thickness of the engaging tooth on the pitch circles. As described in pages 2242 and 2246 this is what is meant by backlash unless otherwise specified.

[b] Backlash measured normal to the tooth profile by inserting a feeler gage between meshing teeth; to convert to circular backlash, $B = B_b \div \cos \phi$.

Control of Backlash Allowances in Production.—Measurement of the tooth thickness of gears is perhaps the simplest way of controlling backlash allowances in production.

There are several ways in which this may be done including: 1) chordal thickness measurements as described on page 2224; 2) caliper measurements over two or more teeth as described on page 2315; and 3) measurements over wires.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In this last method, first the theoretical measurement over wires when the backlash allowance is zero is determined by the method described on page 2300; then the amount this measurement must be reduced to obtain a desired backlash allowance is taken from the table on page 2314.

It should be understood, as explained in the section *Measurement of Backlash*, that merely making tooth thickness allowances will not guarantee the amount of backlash in the ready-to-run assembly of two or more gears. Manufacturing limitations will introduce such gear errors as runout, pitch error, profile error, and lead error, and gear-housing errors in both center distance and alignment. All of these make the backlash of the assembled gears different from that indicated by tooth thickness measurements on the individual gears.

Measurement of Backlash.—Backlash is commonly measured by holding one gear of a pair stationary and rocking the other back and forth. The movement is registered by a dial indicator having its pointer or finger in a plane of rotation at or near the pitch diameter and in a direction parallel to a tangent to the pitch circle of the moving gear. If the direction of measurement is normal to the teeth, or other than as specified above, it is recommended that readings be converted to the plane of rotation and in a tangent direction at or near the pitch diameter, for purposes of standardization and comparison.

In spur gears, parallel helical gears, and bevel gears, it is immaterial whether the pinion or gear is held stationary for the test. In crossed helical and hypoid gears, readings may vary according to which member is stationary; hence, it is customary to hold the pinion stationary and measure on the gear.

In some instances, backlash is measured by thickness gages or feelers. A similar method utilizes a soft lead wire inserted between the teeth as they pass through mesh. In both methods, it is likewise recommended that readings be converted to the plane of rotation and in a tangent direction at or near the pitch diameter, taking into account the normal pressure angle, and the helix angle or spiral angle of the teeth.

Sometimes backlash in parallel helical or herringbone gears is checked by holding the gear stationary, and moving the pinion axially back and forth, readings being taken on the face or shaft of the pinion, and converted to the plane of rotation by calculation. Another method consists of meshing a pair of gears tightly together on centers and observing the variation from the specified center distance. Such readings should also be converted to the plane of rotation and in a tangent direction at or near the pitch diameter for the reasons previously given.

Measurements of backlash may vary in the same pair of gears, depending on accuracy of manufacturing and assembling. Incorrect tooth profiles will cause a change of backlash at different phases of the tooth action. Eccentricity may cause a substantial difference between maximum and minimum backlash at different positions around the gears. In stating amounts of backlash, it should always be remembered that merely making allowances on tooth thickness does not guarantee the minimum amount of backlash that will exist in assembled gears.

Fine-Pitch Gears: The measurement of backlash of fine-pitch gears, when assembled, cannot be made in the same manner and by the same techniques employed for gears of coarser pitches. In the very fine pitches, it is virtually impossible to use indicating devices for measuring backlash. Sometimes a toolmaker's microscope is used for this purpose to good advantage on very small mechanisms.

Another means of measuring backlash in fine-pitch gears is to attach a beam to one of the shafts and measure the angular displacement in inches when one member is held stationary. The ratio of the length of the beam to the nominal pitch radius of the gear or pinion to which the beam is attached gives the approximate ratio of indicator reading to circular backlash. Because of the limited means of measuring backlash between a pair of fine-pitch gears, gear centers and tooth thickness of the gears when cut must be held to very close limits.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tooth thickness of fine-pitch spur and helical gears can best be checked on a variable-center-distance fixture using a master gear. When checked in this manner, tooth thickness change = 2 × center distance change × tangent of transverse pressure angle, approximately.

Control of Backlash in Assemblies.—Provision is often made for adjusting one gear relative to the other, thereby affording complete control over backlash at initial assembly and throughout the life of the gears. Such practice is most common in bevel gearing. It is fairly common in spur and helical gearing when the application permits slight changes between shaft centers. It is practical in worm gearing only for single thread worms with low lead angles. Otherwise faulty contact results.

Another method of controlling backlash quite common in bevel gears and less common in spur and helical gears is to match the high and low spots of the runout gears of one to one ratio and mark the engaging teeth at the point where the runout of one gear cancels the runout of the mating gear.

Table 3. AGMA Backlash Allowance and Tolerance for Fine-Pitch Spur, Helical and Herringbone Gearing

Backlash Designation	Normal Diametral Pitch Range	Tooth Thinning to Obtain Backlash[a]		Resulting Approximate Backlash (per Mesh) Normal Plane[b] Inch
		Allowance, per Gear, Inch	Tolerance, per Gear, Inch	
A	20 thru 45	.002	0 to .002	.004 to .008
	46 thru 70	.0015	0 to .002	.003 to .007
	71 thru 90	.001	0 to .00175	.002 to .0055
	91 thru 200	.00075	0 to .00075	.0015 to .003
B	20 thru 60	.001	0 to .001	.002 to .004
	61 thru 120	.00075	0 to .00075	.0015 to .003
	121 thru 200	.0005	0 to .0005	.001 to .002
C	20 thru 60	.0005	0 to .0005	.001 to .002
	61 thru 120	.00035	0 to .0004	.0007 to .0015
	121 thru 200	.0002	0 to .0003	.0004 to .001
D	20 thru 60	.00025	0 to .00025	.0005 to .001
	61 thru 120	.0002	0 to .0002	.0004 to .0008
	121 thru 200	.0001	0 to .0001	.0002 to .0004
E	20 thru 60	Zero[c]	0 to .00025	0 to .0005
	61 thru 120		0 to .0002	0 to .0004
	121 thru 200		0 to .0001	0 to .0002

[a] These dimensions are shown primarily for the benefit of the gear manufacturer and represent the amount that the thickness of teeth should be reduced in the pinion and gear below the standard calculated value, to provide for backlash in the mesh. In some cases, particularly with pinions involving small numbers of teeth, it may be desirable to provide for total backlash by thinning the teeth in the gear member only by twice the allowance value shown in column (3). In this case both members will have the tolerance shown in column (4). In some cases, particularly in meshes with a small number of teeth, backlash may be achieved by an increase in basic center at distance. In such cases, neither member is reduced by the allowance shown in column (3).

[b] These dimensions indicate the approximate backlash that will occur in a mesh in which each of the mating pairs of gears have the teeth thinned by the amount referred to in Note 1, and are meshed on theoretical centers.

[c] Backlash in gear sets can also be achieved by increasing the center distance above nominal and using the teeth at standard tooth thickness. Class E backlash designation infers gear sets operating under these conditions.

Backlash in gears is the play between mating tooth surfaces. For purposes of measurement and calculation, backlash is defined as the amount by which a tooth space exceeds the thickness of an engaging tooth. When not otherwise specified, numerical values of backlash are understood to be measured at the tightest point of mesh on the pitch circle in a direction normal to the tooth surface when the gears are mounted in their specified position.

Allowance is the basic amount that a tooth is thinned from basic calculated circular tooth thickness to obtain the required backlash class.

Tolerance is the total permissible variation in the circular thickness of the teeth.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Angular Backlash in Gears.—When the backlash on the pitch circles of a meshing pair of gears is known, the angular backlash or angular play corresponding to this backlash may be computed from the following formulas.

$$\theta_D = \frac{6875B}{D} \text{ minutes} \qquad \theta_d = \frac{6875B}{d} \text{ minutes}$$

In these formulas, B = backlash between gears, in inches; D = pitch diameter of larger gear, in inches; d = pitch diameter of smaller gear, in inches; θ_D = angular backlash or angular movement of larger gear in minutes when smaller gear is held fixed and larger gear rocked back and forth; and θ_d = angular backlash or angular movement of smaller gear, in minutes, when the larger gear is held fixed and the smaller gear rocked back and forth.

Inspection of Gears.—Perhaps the most widely used method of determining relative accuracy in a gear is to rotate the gear through at least one complete revolution in intimate contact with a master gear of known accuracy. The gear to be tested and the master gear are mounted on a variable-center-distance fixture and the resulting radial displacements or changes in center distance during rotation of the gear are measured by a suitable device. Except for the effect of backlash, this so-called "composite check" approximates the action of the gear under operating conditions and gives the combined effect of the following errors: runout; pitch error; tooth-thickness variation; profile error; and lateral runout (sometimes called wobble).

Tooth-to-Tooth Composite Error, illustrated below, is the error that shows up as flicker on the indicator of a variable-center-distance fixture as the gear being tested is rotated from tooth to tooth in intimate contact with the master gear. Such flicker shows the combined or composite effect of circular pitch error, tooth-thickness variation, and profile error.

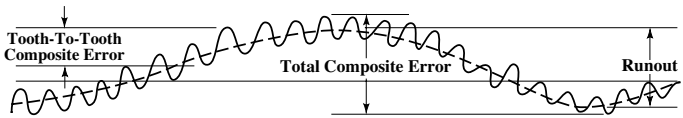


Diagram Showing Nature of Composite Errors

Total Composite Error, shown above, is made up of runout, wobble, and the tooth-to-tooth composite error; it is the total center-distance displacement read on the indicating device of the testing fixture, as shown in the accompanying diagram.

Pressure for Composite Checking of Fine-Pitch Gears.—In using a variable-center-distance fixture, excessive pressure on fine-pitch gears of narrow face width will result in incorrect readings due to deflection of the teeth. Based on tests, the following checking pressures are recommended for gears of 0.100-inch face width: 20 to 29 diametral pitch, 28 ounces; 30 to 39 pitch, 24 ounces; 40 to 49 pitch, 20 ounces; 50 to 59 pitch, 16 ounces; 60 to 79 pitch, 12 ounces; 80 to 99 pitch, 8 ounces; 100 to 149 pitch, 4 ounces; and 150 and finer pitches, 2 ounces, minimum. These recommended checking pressures are based on the use of antifriction mountings for the movable head of the checking fixture and include the pressure of the indicating device. For face widths less than 0.100 inch, the recommended pressures should be reduced proportionately; for larger widths, no increase is necessary although the force may be increased safely in the proper proportion.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Internal Gearing

Internal Spur Gears.—An internal gear may be proportioned like a standard spur gear turned "outside in" or with addendum and dedendum in reverse positions; however, to avoid interference or improve the tooth form and action, the internal diameter of the gear should be increased and the outside diameter of the mating pinion is also made larger than the size based upon standard or conventional tooth proportions. The extent of these enlargements will be illustrated by means of examples given in the following table, *Rules for Internal Gears – 20-degree Full-Depth Teeth*. The 20-degree involute full-depth tooth form is recommended for internal gears; the 20-degree stub tooth and the $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree full-depth tooth are also used.

Methods of Cutting Internal Gears.—Internal spur gears are cut by methods similar in principle to those employed for external spur gears.

They may be cut by one of the following methods: 1) By a generating process, as when using a Fellows gear shaper; 2) by using a formed cutter and milling the teeth; 3) by planing, using a machine of the template or form-copying type (especially applicable to gears of large pitch); and 4) by using a formed tool that reproduces its shape and is given a planing action either on a slotting or a planing type of machine.

Internal gears frequently have a web at one side that limits the amount of clearance space at the ends of the teeth. Such gears may be cut readily on a gear shaper. The most practical method of cutting very large internal gears is on a planer of the form-copying type. A regular spur gear planer is equipped with a special tool holder for locating the tool in the position required for cutting internal teeth.

Formed Cutters for Internal Gears.—When formed cutters are used, a special cutter usually is desirable, because the tooth spaces of an internal gear are not the same shape as the tooth spaces of external gearing having the same pitch and number of teeth. This difference is because an internal gear is a spur gear "turned outside in." According to one rule, the standard No. 1 cutter for external gearing may be used for internal gears of 4 diametral pitch and finer, when there are 60 or more teeth. This No. 1 cutter, as applied to external gearing, is intended for all gears having from 135 teeth to a rack. The finer the pitch and the larger the number of teeth, the better the results obtained with a No. 1 cutter. The standard No. 1 cutter is considered satisfactory for jobbing work, and usually when the number of gears to be cut does not warrant obtaining a special cutter, although the use of the No. 1 cutter is not practicable when the number of teeth in the pinion is large in proportion to the number of teeth in the internal gear.

Arc Thickness of Internal Gear Tooth.—*Rule:* If internal diameter of an internal gear is enlarged as determined by Rules 1 and 2 for Internal Diameters (see *Rules for Internal Gears – 20-degree Full-Depth Teeth*), the arc tooth thickness at the pitch circle equals 1.3888 divided by the diametral pitch, assuming a pressure angle of 20 degrees.

Arc Thickness of Pinion Tooth.—*Rule:* If the pinion for an internal gear is larger than conventional size (see Outside Diameter of Pinion for Internal Gear, under *Rules for Internal Gears – 20-degree Full-Depth Teeth*), then the arc tooth thickness on the pitch circle equals 1.7528 divided by the diametral pitch, assuming a pressure angle of 20 degrees.

Note: For chordal thickness and chordal addendum, see rules and formulas for spur gears.

Relative Sizes of Internal Gear and Pinion.—If a pinion is too large or too near the size of its mating internal gear, serious interference or modification of the tooth shape may occur.

Rule: For internal gears having a 20-degree pressure angle and full-depth teeth, the difference between the numbers of teeth in gear and pinion should not be less than 12. For teeth of stub form, the smallest difference should be 7 or 8 teeth. For a pressure angle of $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, the difference in tooth numbers should not be less than 15.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rules for Internal Gears – 20-degree Full-Depth Teeth

To Find	Rule
Pitch Diameter	*Rule:* To find the pitch diameter of an internal gear, divide the number of internal gear teeth by the diametral pitch. The pitch diameter of the mating pinion also equals the number of pinion teeth divided by the diametral pitch, the same as for external spur gears.
Internal Diameter (Enlarged to Avoid Interference)	*Rule* 1: For internal gears to mesh with pinions having 16 teeth or more, subtract 1.2 from the number of teeth and divide the remainder by the diametral pitch. *Example:* An internal gear has 72 teeth of 6 diametral pitch and the mating pinion has 18 teeth; then $\text{Internal diameter} = \frac{72 - 1.2}{6} = 11.8 \text{ inches}$ *Rule* 2: If circular pitch is used, subtract 1.2 from the number of internal gear teeth, multiply the remainder by the circular pitch, and divide the product by 3.1416.
Internal Diameter (Based upon Spur Gear Reversed)	*Rule:* If the internal gear is to be designed to conform to a spur gear turned outside in, subtract 2 from the number of teeth and divide the remainder by the diametral pitch to find the internal diameter. *Example:* (Same as Example above.) $\text{Internal diameter} = \frac{72 - 2}{6} = 11.666 \text{ inches}$
Outside Diameter of Pinion for Internal Gear	*Note:* If the internal gearing is to be proportioned like standard spur gearing, use the rule or formula previously given for spur gears in determining the outside diameter. The rule and formula following apply to a pinion that is enlarged and intended to mesh with an internal gear enlarged as determined by the preceding Rules 1 and 2 above. *Rule:* For pinions having 16 teeth or more, add 2.5 to the number of pinion teeth and divide by the diametral pitch. *Example* 1: A pinion for driving an internal gear is to have 18 teeth (full depth) of 6 diametral pitch; then $\text{Outside diameter} = \frac{18 + 2.5}{6} = 3.416 \text{ inches}$ By using the rule for external spur gears, the outside diameter = 3.333 inches.
Center Distance	*Rule:* Subtract the number of pinion teeth from the number of internal gear teeth and divide the remainder by two times the diametral pitch.
Tooth Thickness	See paragraphs, *Arc Thickness of Internal Gear Tooth* and *Effect of Diameter of Cutting on Profile and Pressure Angle of Worms*, on previous page.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

British Standard for Spur and Helical Gears

BS 436: Part 1: 1967: Spur and Helical Gears, Basic Rack Form, Pitches and Accuracy for Diametral Pitch Series, now has sections concerned with basic requirements for general tooth form, standard pitches, accuracy and accuracy testing procedures, and the showing of this information on engineering drawings to make sure that the gear manufacturer receives the required data. The latest form of the standard complies with ISO agreements. The standard pitches are in accordance with ISO R54, and the basic rack form and its modifications are in accordance with the ISO R53 "Basic Rack of Cylindrical Gears for General Engineering and for Heavy Engineering Standard".

Five grades of gear accuracy in previous versions are replaced by grades 3 to 12 of the draft ISO Standard. Grades 1 and 2 cover master gears that are not dealt with here. BS 436: Part 1: 1967 is a companion to the following British Standards:

BS 235 "Gears for Traction"
BS 545 "Bevel Gears (Machine Cut)"
BS 721 "Worm Gearing"
BS 821 "Iron Castings for Gears and Gear Blanks (Ordinary, Medium and High Grade)"
BS 978 "Fine Pitch Gears" Part 1, "Involute, Spur and Helical Gears"; Part 2, "Cycloidal Gears" (with addendum 1, PD 3376: "Double Circular Arc Type Gears"; Part 3, "Bevel Gears"
BS 1807 "Gears for Turbines and Similar Drives" Part 1, "Accuracy" Part 2, "Tooth Form and Pitches"
BS 2519 "Glossary of Terms for Toothed Gearing"
BS 3027 "Dimensions for Worm Gear Units"
BS 3696 "Master Gears"

Part 1 of BS 436 applies to external and internal involute spur and helical gears on parallel shafts and having normal diametral pitch of 20 or coarser. The basic rack and tooth form are specified, also first and second preference standard pitches and fundamental tolerances that determine the grades of gear accuracy, and requirements for terminology and notation.

These requirements include: center distance a; reference circle diameter d, for pinion d_1 and wheel d_2; tip diameter d_a for pinion d_{a1} and wheel d_{a2}; center distance modification coefficient γ; face width b for pinion b_1 and wheel b_2; addendum modification coefficient x, for pinion x_1 and wheel x_2; length of arc l; diametral pitch P_t; normal diametral pitch p_n; transverse pitch p_t; number of teeth z, for pinion z_1 and wheel z_2; helix angle at reference cylinder β; pressure angle at reference cylinder α; normal pressure angle at reference cylinder α_n; transverse pressure angle at reference cylinder α_t; and transverse pressure angle, working, α_{tw}.

The basic rack tooth profile has a pressure angle of 20. The Standard permits the total tooth depth to be varied within 2.25 to 2.40, so that the root clearance can be increased within the limits of 0.25 to 0.040 to allow for variations in manufacturing processes; and the root radius can be varied within the limits of 0.25 to 0.39. Tip relief can be varied within the limits shown at the right in the illustration.

Standard normal diametral pitches P_n, BS 436 Part 1:1967, are in accordance with ISO R54. The preferred series, rather than the second choice, should be used where possible. Preferred normal diametral pitches for spur and helical gears (second choices in parentheses) are: 20 (18), 16 (14), 12 (11), 10 (9), 8 (7), 6 (5.5), 5 (4.5), 4 (3.5), 3 (2.75), 2.5 (2.25), 2 (1.75), 1.5, 1.25, and 1.

Information to be Given on Drawings: British Standard BS 308, "Engineering Drawing Practice", specifies data to be included on drawings of spur and helical gears. For all gears the data should include: number of teeth, normal diametral pitch, basic rack tooth form, axial pitch, tooth profile modifications, blank diameter, reference circle diameter, and helix angle at reference cylinder (0 for straight spur gears), tooth thickness at reference

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

cylinder, grade of gear, drawing number of mating gear, working center distance, and backlash.

For single helical gears, the above data should be supplemented with hand and lead of the tooth helix; and for double helical gears, with the hand in relation to a specific part of the face width and the lead of tooth helix.

Inspection instructions should be included, care being taken to avoid conflicting requirements for accuracy of individual elements, and single- and dual-flank testing. Supplementary data covering specific design, manufacturing and inspection requirements or limitations may be needed, together with other dimensions and tolerances, material, heat treatment, hardness, case depth, surface texture, protective finishes, and drawing scale.

Addendum Modification to Involute Spur and Helical Gears.—The British Standards Institute guide PD 6457:1970 contains certain design recommendations aimed at making it possible to use standard cutting tools for some sizes of gears. Essentially, the guide covers addendum modification and includes formulas for both English and metric units.

Addendum Modification is an enlargement or reduction of gear tooth dimensions that results from displacement of the reference plane of the generating rack from its normal position. The displacement is represented by the coefficient X, X1, or X2, where X is the equivalent dimension for gears of unit module or diametral pitch. The addendum modification establishes a datum tooth thickness at the reference circle of the gear but does not necessarily establish the height of either the reference addendum or the working addendum. In any pair of gears, the datum tooth thicknesses are those that always give zero backlash at the meshing center distance. Normal practice requires allowances for backlash for all unmodified gears.

Taking full advantage of the adaptability of the involute system allows various tooth design features to be obtained. Addendum modification has the following applications: avoiding undercut tooth profiles; achieving optimum tooth proportions and control of the proportion of receding to approaching contact; adapting a gear pair to a predetermined center distance without recourse to non-standard pitches; and permitting use of a range of working pressure angles using standard geometry tools.

BS 436, Part 3:1986 "Spur and Helical Gears".—This part provides methods for calculating contact and root bending stresses for metal involute gears, and is somewhat similar to the ANSI/AGMA Standard for calculating stresses in pairs of involute spur or helical gears. Stress factors covered in the British Standard include the following:

Tangential Force is the nominal force for contact and bending stresses.

Zone Factor accounts for the influence of tooth flank curvature at the pitch point on Hertzian stress.

Contact Ratio Factor takes account of the load-sharing influence of the transverse contact ratio and the overlap ratio on the specific loading.

Elasticity Factor takes into account the influence of the modulus of elasticity of the material and of Poisson's ratio on the Hertzian stress.

Basic Endurance Limit for contact makes allowance for the surface hardness.

Material Quality covers the quality of the material used.

Lubricant Influence, Roughness, and Speed The lubricant viscosity, surface roughness and pitch line speed affect the lubricant film thickness, which in turn, affects the Hertzian stresses.

Work Hardening Factor accounts for the increase in surface durability due to the meshing action.

Size Factor covers the possible influences of size on the material quality and its response to manufacturing processes.

Life Factor accounts for the increase in permissible stresses when the number of stress cycles is less than the endurance life.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Application Factor allows for load fluctuations from the mean load or loads in the load histogram caused by sources external to the gearing.

Dynamic Factor allows for load fluctuations arising from contact conditions at the gear mesh.

Load Distribution accounts for the increase in local load due to maldistribution of load across the face of the gear tooth caused by deflections, alignment tolerances and helix modifications.

Minimum Demanded and Actual Safety Factor The minimum demanded safety factor is agreed between the supplier and the purchaser. The actual safety factor is calculated.

Geometry Factors allow for the influence of the tooth form, the effect of the fillet and the helix angle on the nominal bending stress for the application of load at the highest point of single pair tooth contact.

Sensitivity Factor allows for the sensitivity of the gear material to the presence of notches such as the root fillet.

Surface Condition Factor accounts for reduction of the endurance limit due to flaws in the material and the surface roughness of the tooth root fillets.

ISO TC/600.—The ISO TC/600 Standard is similar to BS 436, Part 3:1986, but is far more comprehensive. For general gear design, the ISO Standard provides a complicated method of arriving at a conclusion similar to that reached by the less complex British Standard. Factors additional to the above that are included in the ISO Standard include the following:

Application Factor accounts for dynamic overloads from sources external to the gearing.

Dynamic Factor allows for internally generated dynamic loads caused by vibrations of the pinion and wheel against each other.

Load Distribution makes allowance for the effects of non-uniform distribution of load across the face width, depending on the mesh alignment error of the loaded gear pair and the mesh stiffness.

Transverse Load Distribution Factor takes into account the effect of the load distribution on gear tooth contact stresses.

Gear Tooth Stiffness Constants are defined as the load needed to deform one or several meshing gear teeth having 1 mm face width, by an amount of 1 μm (0.00004 in).

Allowable Contact Stress is the permissible Hertzian pressure on the gear tooth face.

Minimum Demanded and Calculated Safety Factors The minimum demanded safety factor is agreed between the supplier and the customer. The calculated safety factor is the actual safety factor of the gear pair.

Zone Factor accounts for the influence on the Hertzian pressure of the tooth flank curvature at the pitch point.

Elasticity Factor takes account of the influence of the material properties such as the modulus of elasticity and Poisson's ratio.

Contact Ratio Factor accounts for the influence of the transverse contact ratio and the overlap ratio on the specific surface load of the gears.

Helix Angle Factor makes allowance for influence of helix angle on surface durability.

Endurance Limit is the limit of repeated Hertzian stresses that can be permanently endured by a given material.

Life Factor takes account of a higher permissible Hertzian stress if only limited durability is demanded.

Lubrication Film Factor refers to when the film of lubricant between the tooth flanks influences the surface load capacity. Factors include the oil viscosity, pitch line velocity and roughness of the tooth flanks.

Work Hardening Factor takes account of the increase in surface durability due to meshing a steel wheel with a hardened pinion having smooth tooth surfaces.

Coefficient of Friction's mean value depends on the lubricant, surface roughness, lay of surface irregularities, material properties of the tooth flanks, and the force and size of tangential velocities.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bulk Temperature Thermal Flash Factor is dependent on moduli of elasticity and thermal contact coefficients of pinion and wheel materials and geometry of the line of action.

Welding Factor accounts for different tooth materials and heat treatments.

Geometrical Factor is defined as a function of the gear ratio and the dimensionless parameter on the line of action.

Integral Temperature Criterion references the integral temperature of the gears, which depends on the lubricant viscosity and tendency toward scuffing and scoring of the gear materials.

Examination of the above factors shows the similarity in the approach of the British and the ISO Standards to that of the ANSI/AGMA Standards. Slight variations in the methods used to calculate the factors will result in different allowable stress figures. Experimental work using some of the stressing formulas has shown wide variations and designers must continue to rely on experience to arrive at satisfactory results.

Standards Nomenclature

All standards are referenced and identified throughout this book by an alphanumeric prefix which designates the organization that administered the development work on the standard, and followed by a standards number.

All standards are reviewed by the relevant committees at regular time intervals, as specified by the overseeing standards organization, to determine whether the standard should be confirmed (reissued without changes other than correction of typographical errors), updated, or removed from service.

The following is for example use only. ANSI B18.8.2-1984, R1994 is a standard for Taper, Dowel, Straight, Grooved, and Spring Pins. ANSI refers to the American National Standards Institute that is responsible for overseeing the development or approval of the standard, and B18.8.2 is the number of the standard. The first date, 1984, indicates the year in which the standard was issued, and the sequence R1994 indicates that this standard was reviewed and reaffirmed in 1994. The current designation of the standard, ANSI/ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010), indicates that it was revised in 2000; it is ANSI approved; and ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers) was the standards body responsible for development of the standard. This standard is sometimes also designated ASME B18.8.2-2000 (R2010).

ISO (International Organization for Standardization) standards use a slightly different format, for example, ISO 5127-1:1983. The entire ISO reference number consists of a prefix ISO, a serial number, and the year of publication.

Aside from content, ISO standards differ from American National standards in that they are often smaller focused documents, which in turn reference other standards or other parts of the same standard. Unlike the numbering scheme used by ANSI, ISO standards related to a particular topic often do not carry sequential numbers nor are they in consecutive series.

British Standards Institute standards use the following format: BS 1361: 1971 (1986). The first part is the organization prefix BS, followed by the reference number and the date of issue. The number in parenthesis is the date that the standard was most recently reconfirmed. British Standards may also be designated *withdrawn* (no longer to be used) and *obsolescent* (going out of use, but may be used for servicing older equipment).

Organization	Web Address	Organization	Web Address
ISO (International Organization for Standardization)	www.iso.ch	JIS (Japanese Industrial Standards)	www.jisc.org
IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission)	www.iec.ch	ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers)	www.asme.org
ANSI (American National Standards Institute)	www.ansi.org	SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers)	www.sae.org
BSI (British Standards Institute)	www.bsi-inc.org	SME (Society of Manufacturing Engineers)	www.sme.org

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HYPOID AND BEVEL GEARING

Hypoid Gears

Hypoid gears are offset and, in effect, are spiral gears whose axes do not intersect but are staggered by an amount decided by the application. Due to the offset, contact between the teeth of the two gears does not occur along a surface line of the cones as it does with spiral bevels having intersecting axes, but along a curve in space inclined to the surface line. The basic solids of the hypoid gear members are not cones, as in spiral bevels, but are hyperboloids of revolution which cannot be projected into the common plane of ordinary flat gears, thus the name hypoid. The visualization of hypoid gears is based on an imaginary flat gear which is a substitute for the theoretically correct helical surface. If certain rules are observed during the calculations to fix the gear dimensions, the errors that result from the use of an imaginary flat gear as an approximation are negligible.

The staggered axes result in meshing conditions that are beneficial to the strength and running properties of the gear teeth. A uniform sliding action takes place between the teeth, not only in the direction of the tooth profile but also longitudinally, producing ideal conditions for movement of lubricants. With spiral gears, great differences in sliding motion arise over various portions of the tooth surface, creating vibration and noise. Hypoid gears are almost free from the problems of differences in these sliding motions and the teeth also have larger curvature radii in the direction of the profile. Surface pressures are thus reduced so that there is less wear and quieter operation.

The teeth of hypoid gears are 1.5 to 2 times stronger than those of spiral bevel gears of the same dimensions, made from the same material. Certain limits must be imposed on the dimensions of hypoid gear teeth so that their proportions can be calculated in the same way as they are for spiral bevel gears. The offset must not be larger than 1/7th of the ring gear outer diameter, and the tooth ratio must not be much less than 4 to 1. Within these limits, the tooth proportions can be calculated in the same way as for spiral bevel gears and the radius of lengthwise curvature can be assumed in such a way that the normal module is a maximum at the center of the tooth face width to produce stabilized tooth bearings.

If the offset is larger or the ratio is smaller than specified above, a tooth form must be selected that is better adapted to the modified meshing conditions. In particular, the curvature of the tooth length curve must be determined with other points in view. The limits are only guidelines since it is impossible to account for all other factors involved, including the pitch line speed of the gears, lubrication, loads, design of shafts and bearings, and the general conditions of operation.

Of the three different designs of hypoid bevel gears now available, the most widely used, especially in the automobile industry, is the Gleason system. Two other hypoid gear systems have been introduced by Oerlikon (Swiss) and Klingelnberg (German). All three methods use the involute gear form, but they have teeth with differing curvatures, produced by the cutting method. Teeth in the Gleason system are arc shaped and their depth tapers. Both the European systems are designed to combine rolling with the sideways motion of the teeth and use a constant tooth depth. Oerlikon uses an epicycloidal tooth form and Klingelnberg uses a true involute form.

With their circular accurate tooth face curves, Gleason hypoid gears are produced with multi-bladed face milling cutters. The gear blank is rolled relative to the rotating cutter to make one inter-tooth groove; then the cutter is withdrawn and returned to its starting position while the blank is indexed into the position for cutting the next tooth. Both roughing and finishing cutters are kept parallel to the tooth root lines, which are at an angle to the gear pitch line. Depending on this angularity, plus the spiral angle, a correction factor must be calculated for both the leading and trailing faces of the gear tooth.

In operation, the convex faces of the teeth on one gear always bear on the concave faces of the teeth on the mating gear. For correct meshing between the pinion and gear wheel,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the spiral angles should not vary over the full face width. The tooth form generated is a logarithmic spiral and, as a compromise, the cutter radius is made equal to the mean radius of a corresponding logarithmic spiral.

The involute tooth face curves of the Klingelnberg system gears have constant-pitch teeth cut by (usually) a single-start taper hob. The machine is set up to rotate both the cutter and the gear blank at the correct relative speeds. The surface of the hob is set tangential to a circle radius, which is the gear base circle, from which all the parallel involute curves are struck. To keep the hob size within reasonable dimensions, the cone must lie a minimum distance within the teeth and this requirement governs the size of the module.

Both the module and the tooth depth are constant over the full face width and the spiral angle varies. The cutting speed variations, especially with regard to crown wheels, over the cone surface of the hob, make it difficult to produce a uniform surface finish on the teeth, so a finishing cut is usually made with a truncated hob which is tilted to produce the required amount of crowning automatically, for correct tooth marking and finishing. The dependence of the module, spiral angle and other features on the base circle radius, and the need for suitable hob proportions restrict the gear dimensions and the system cannot be used for gears with a low or zero angle. However, gears can be cut with a large root radius giving teeth of high strength. The favorable geometry of the tooth form gives quieter running and tolerance of inaccuracies in assembly.

Teeth of gears made by the Oerlikon system have elongated epicycloidal form, produced with a face-type rotating cutter. Both the cutter and the gear blank rotate continuously, with no indexing. The cutter head has separate groups of cutters for roughing, outside cutting and inside cutting so that tooth roots and flanks are cut simultaneously, but the feed is divided into two stages. As stresses are released during cutting, there is some distortion of the blank and this distortion will usually be worse for a hollow crown wheel than for a solid pinion.

All the heavy cuts are taken during the first stages of machining with the Oerlikon system and the second stage is used to finish the tooth profile accurately, so distortion effects are minimized. As with the Klingelnberg process, the Oerlikon system produces a variation in spiral angle and module over the width of the face, but unlike the Klingelnberg method, the tooth length curve is cycloidal. It is claimed that, under load, the tilting force in an Oerlikon gear set acts at a point 0.4 times the distance from the small diameter end of the gear and not in the mid-tooth position as in other gear systems, so that the radius is obviously smaller and the tilting moment is reduced, resulting in lower loading of the bearings.

Gears cut by the Oerlikon system have tooth markings of different shape than gears cut by other systems, showing that more of the face width of the Oerlikon tooth is involved in the load-bearing pattern. Thus, the surface loading is spread over a greater area and becomes lighter at the points of contact.

Bevel Gearing

Types of Bevel Gears.—Bevel gears are conical gears, that is, gears in the shape of cones, and are used to connect shafts having intersecting axes. Hypoid gears are similar in general form to bevel gears, but operate on axes that are offset. With few exceptions, most bevel gears may be classified as being either of the straight-tooth type or of the curved-tooth type. The latter type includes spiral bevels, Zerol bevels, and hypoid gears. The following is a brief description of the distinguishing characteristics of the different types of bevel gears.

Straight Bevel Gears: The teeth of this most commonly used type of bevel gear are straight but their sides are tapered so that they would intersect the axis at a common point called the pitch cone apex if extended inward. The face cone elements of most straight bevel gears, however, are now made parallel to the root cone elements of the mating gear to obtain uniform clearance along the length of the teeth. The face cone elements of such

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

gears, therefore, would intersect the axis at a point inside the pitch cone. Straight bevel gears are the easiest to calculate and are economical to produce.

Straight bevel gear teeth may be generated for full-length contact or for localized contact. The latter are slightly convex in a lengthwise direction so that some adjustment of the gears during assembly is possible and small displacements due to load deflections can occur without undesirable load concentration on the ends of the teeth. This slight lengthwise rounding of the tooth sides need not be computed in the design but is taken care of automatically in the cutting operation on the newer types of bevel gear generators.

Zerol Bevel Gears: The teeth of Zerol bevel gears are curved but lie in the same general direction as the teeth of straight bevel gears. They may be thought of as spiral bevel gears of zero spiral angle and are manufactured on the same machines as spiral bevel gears. The face cone elements of Zerol bevel gears do not pass through the pitch cone apex but instead are approximately parallel to the root cone elements of the mating gear to provide uniform tooth clearance. The root cone elements also do not pass through the pitch cone apex because of the manner in which these gears are cut. Zerol bevel gears are used in place of straight bevel gears when generating equipment of the spiral type but not the straight type is available, and may be used when hardened bevel gears of high accuracy (produced by grinding) are required.

Spiral Bevel Gears: Spiral bevel gears have curved oblique teeth on which contact begins gradually and continues smoothly from end to end. They mesh with a rolling contact similar to straight bevel gears. As a result of their overlapping tooth action, however, spiral bevel gears will transmit motion more smoothly than straight bevel or Zerol bevel gears, reducing noise and vibration that become especially noticeable at high speeds.

One of the advantages associated with spiral bevel gears is the complete control of the localized tooth contact. By making a slight change in the radii of curvature of the mating tooth surfaces, the amount of surface over which tooth contact takes place can be changed to suit the specific requirements of each job. Localized tooth contact promotes smooth, quiet running spiral bevel gears, and permits some mounting deflections without concentrating the load dangerously near either end of the tooth. Permissible deflections established by experience are given under the heading *Mountings for Bevel Gears*.

Because their tooth surfaces can be ground, spiral bevel gears have a definite advantage in applications requiring hardened gears of high accuracy. The bottoms of the tooth spaces and the tooth profiles may be ground simultaneously, resulting in a smooth blending of the tooth profile, the tooth fillet, and the bottom of the tooth space. This feature is important from a strength standpoint because it eliminates cutter marks and other surface interruptions that frequently result in stress concentrations.

Hypoid Gears: In general appearance, hypoid gears resemble spiral bevel gears, except that the axis of the pinion is offset relative to the gear axis. If there is sufficient offset, the shafts may pass one another thus permitting the use of a compact straddle mounting on the gear and pinion. Whereas a spiral bevel pinion has equal pressure angles and symmetrical profile curvatures on both sides of the teeth, a hypoid pinion properly conjugate to a mating gear having equal pressure angles on both sides of the teeth must have nonsymmetrical profile curvatures for proper tooth action. In addition, to obtain equal arcs of motion for both sides of the teeth, it is necessary to use unequal pressure angles on hypoid pinions. Hypoid gears are usually designed so that the pinion has a larger spiral angle than the gear. The advantage of such a design is that the pinion diameter is increased and is stronger than a corresponding spiral bevel pinion. This diameter increment permits the use of comparatively high ratios without the pinion becoming too small to allow a bore or shank of adequate size. The sliding action along the lengthwise direction of their teeth in hypoid gears is a function of the difference in the spiral angles on the gear and pinion. This sliding effect makes such gears even smoother running than spiral bevel gears. Grinding of hypoid gears can be accomplished on the same machines used for grinding spiral bevel and Zerol bevel gears.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Applications of Bevel and Hypoid Gears.—Bevel and hypoid gears may be used to transmit power between shafts at practically any angle and speed. The particular type of gearing best suited for a specific job, however, depends on the mountings and the operating conditions.

Straight and Zerol Bevel Gears: For peripheral speeds up to 1000 feet per minute (305 m/min), where maximum smoothness and quietness are not the primary consideration, straight and Zerol bevel gears are recommended. For such applications, plain bearings may be used for radial and axial loads, although the use of antifriction bearings is always preferable. Plain bearings permit a more compact and less expensive design, which is one reason why straight and Zerol bevel gears are much used in differentials. This type of bevel gearing is the simplest to calculate and set up for cutting, and is ideal for small lots where fixed charges must be kept to a minimum.

Zerol bevel gears are recommended in place of straight bevel gears where hardened gears of high accuracy are required, because Zerol gears may be ground; and when only spiral-type equipment is available for cutting bevel gears.

Spiral Bevel and Hypoid Gears: Spiral bevel and hypoid gears are recommended for applications where peripheral speeds exceed 1000 feet per minute (305 m/min) or 1000 revolutions per minute. In many instances, they may be used to advantage at lower speeds, particularly where extreme smoothness and quietness are desired. For peripheral speeds above 8000 feet per minute (2438 m/min), ground gears should be used.

For large reduction ratios the use of spiral and hypoid gears will reduce the overall size of the installation because the continuous pitch line contact of these gears makes it practical to obtain smooth performance with a smaller number of teeth in the pinion than is possible with straight or Zerol bevel gears.

Hypoid gears are recommended for industrial applications: when maximum smoothness of operation is desired; for high reduction ratios where compactness of design, smoothness of operation, and maximum pinion strength are important; and for nonintersecting shafts.

Bevel and hypoid gears may be used for both speed-reducing and speed-increasing drives. In speed-increasing drives, however, the ratio should be kept as low as possible and the pinion mounted on antifriction bearings; otherwise bearing friction will cause the drive to lock.

Notes on the Design of Bevel Gear Blanks.—The quality of any finished gear is dependent, to a large degree, on the design and accuracy of the gear blank. A number of factors that affect manufacturing economy as well as performance must be considered.

A gear blank should be designed to avoid localized stresses and serious deflections within itself. Sufficient thickness of metal should be provided under the roots of gear teeth to give them proper support. As a general rule, the amount of metal under the root should equal the whole depth of the tooth; this metal depth should be maintained under the small ends of the teeth as well as under the middle. On webless-type ring gears, the minimum stock between the root line and the bottom of tap drill holes should be one-third the tooth depth. For heavily loaded gears, a preliminary analysis of the direction and magnitude of the forces is helpful in the design of both the gear and its mounting. Rigidity is also necessary for proper chucking when cutting the teeth. For this reason, bores, hubs, and other locating surfaces must be in proper proportion to the diameter and pitch of the gear. Small bores, thin webs, or any condition that necessitates excessive overhang in cutting should be avoided.

Other factors to be considered are the ease of machining and, in gears that are to be hardened, proper design to ensure the best hardening conditions. It is desirable to provide a locating surface of generous size on the backs of gears. This surface should be machined or ground square with the bore and is used both for locating the gear axially in assembly and for holding it when the teeth are cut. The front clamping surface must, of course, be flat and parallel to the back surface. In connection with cutting the teeth on Zerol bevel, spiral

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

bevel, and hypoid gears, clearance must be provided for face-mill type cutters; front and rear hubs should not intersect the extended root line of the gear or they will interfere with the path of the cutter. In addition, there must be enough room in the front of the gear for the clamp nut that holds the gear on the arbor, or in the chuck, while cutting the teeth. The same considerations must be given to straight bevel gears that are to be generated using a circular-type cutter instead of reciprocating tools.

Mountings for Bevel Gears.—Rigid mountings should be provided for bevel gears to keep the displacements of the gears under operating loads within recommended limits. To align gears properly, care should be taken to ensure accurately machined mountings, properly fitted keys, and couplings that run true and square.

As a result of deflection tests on gears and their mountings, and having observed these same units in service, the *Gleason Works* recommends that the following allowable deflections be used for gears from 6 to 15 inches (15.24–38.10 cm) in diameter: neither the pinion nor the gear should lift or depress more than 0.003 inch (0.076 mm) at the center of the face width; the pinion should not yield axially more than 0.003 inch (0.076 mm) in either direction; and the gear should not yield axially more than 0.003 inch (0.076 mm) in either direction on 1 to 1 ratio gears (miter gears), or near miters, or more than 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) away from the pinion on higher ratios.

When deflections exceed these limits, additional problems are involved in obtaining satisfactory gears. It becomes necessary to narrow and shorten the tooth contacts to suit the more flexible mounting. These changes decrease the bearing area, raise the unit tooth pressure, and reduce the number of teeth in contact, resulting in increased noise and the danger of surface failure as well as tooth breakage.

Spiral bevel and hypoid gears in general should be mounted on antifriction bearings in an oil-tight case. Designs for a given set of conditions may use plain bearings for radial and thrust loads; maintaining gears in satisfactory alignment is usually more easily accomplished with ball or roller bearings.

Bearing Spacing and Shaft Stiffness: Bearing spacing and shaft stiffness are extremely important if gear deflections are to be minimized. For both straddle mounted and overhung mounted gears the spread between bearings should never be less than 70 percent of the pitch diameter of the gear. On overhung mounted gears the spread should be at least $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the overhang and, in addition, the shaft diameter should be equal to or preferably greater than the overhang to provide sufficient shaft stiffness. When two spiral bevel or hypoid gears are mounted on the same shaft, the axial thrust should be taken at one place only and near the gear where the greater thrust is developed. Provision should be made for adjusting both the gear and pinion axially in assembly. Details on how this may be accomplished are given in the *Gleason Works* booklet, "Assembling Bevel Gears."

Cutting Bevel Gear Teeth.—A correctly formed bevel gear tooth has the same sectional shape throughout its length, but on a uniformly diminishing scale from the large to the small end. The only way to obtain this correct form is by using a generating type of bevel gear cutting machine. This accounts, in part, for the extensive use of generating type gear cutting equipment in the production of bevel gears.

Bevel gears too large to be cut by generating equipment —100 inches (254 cm) or over in diameter—may be produced by a form-copying type of gear planer. A template or former is used to mechanically guide a single cutting tool in the proper path to cut the profile of the teeth. Since the tooth profile produced by this method is dependent on the contour of the template used, it is possible to produce tooth profiles to suit a variety of requirements.

Although generating methods are to be preferred, there are still some cases where straight bevel gears are produced by milling. Milled gears cannot be produced with the accuracy of generated gears and generally are not suitable for use in high-speed applications or where angular motion must be transmitted with a high degree of accuracy. Milled gears are used chiefly as replacement gears in certain applications, and gears which are

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

subsequently to be finished on generating type equipment are sometimes roughed out by milling. Formulas and methods used for the cutting of bevel gears are given in the latter part of this section.

In producing gears by generating methods, the tooth curvature is generated from a straight-sided cutter or tool having an angle equal to the required pressure angle. This tool represents the side of a crown gear tooth. The teeth of a true involute crown gear, however, have sides which are very slightly curved. If the curvature of the cutting tool conforms to that of the involute crown gear, an involute form of bevel gear tooth will be obtained. The use of a straight-sided tool is more practical and results in a very slight change of tooth shape to what is known as the "octoid" form. Both the octoid and involute forms of bevel gear tooth give theoretically correct action.

Bevel gear teeth, like those for spur gears, differ as to pressure angle and tooth proportions. The whole depth and the addendum at the large end of the tooth may be the same as for a spur gear of equal pitch. Most bevel gears, however, both of the straight tooth and spiral-bevel types, have lengthened pinion addendums and shortened gear addendums as in the case of some spur gears, the amount of departure from equal addendums varying with the ratio of gearing. Long addendums on the pinion are used principally to avoid undercut and to increase tooth strength. In addition, where long and short addendums are used, the tooth thickness of the gear is decreased and that of the pinion increased to provide a better balance of strength. See the Gleason Works System for straight and spiral bevel gears and also the British Standard.

Nomenclature for Bevel Gears.—The accompanying diagram, Fig. 1a, *Bevel Gear Nomenclature*, illustrates various angles and dimensions referred to in describing bevel gears. In connection with the face angles shown in the diagram, it should be noted that the face cones are made parallel to the root cones of the mating gears to provide uniform clearance along the length of the teeth. See also Fig. 1b, page 2262.

American Standard for Bevel Gears.—American Standard ANSI/AGMA 2005-B88, Design Manual for Bevel Gears, replaces AGMA Standards 202.03, 208.03, 209.04, and 330.01, and provides standards for design of straight, zerol, and spiral bevel gears and hypoid gears with information on fabrication, inspection, and mounting. The information covers preliminary design, drawing formats, materials, rating, strength, inspection, lubrication, mountings, and assembly. Blanks for standard taper, uniform depth, duplex taper, and tilted root designs are included so that the material applies to users of Gleason, Klingelnberg, and Oerlikon gear cutting machines.

Formulas for Dimensions of Milled Bevel Gears.—As explained earlier, most bevel gears are produced by generating methods. Even so, there are applications for which it may be desired to cut a pair of mating bevel gears by using rotary formed milling cutters. Examples of such applications include replacement gears for certain types of equipment and gears for use in experimental developments.

The tooth proportions of milled bevel gears differ in some respects from those of generated gears, the principal difference being that for milled bevel gears the tooth thicknesses of pinion and gear are made equal, and the addendum and dedendum of the pinion are respectively the same as those of the gear. The rules and formulas in the accompanying table may be used to calculate the dimensions of milled bevel gears with shafts at a right angle, an acute angle, and an obtuse angle.

In the accompanying diagrams, Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b, and list of notations, the various terms and symbols applied to milled bevel gears are as indicated.

N = number of teeth
P = diametral pitch
p = circular pitch
α = pitch cone angle and edge angle
Σ = angle between shafts

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

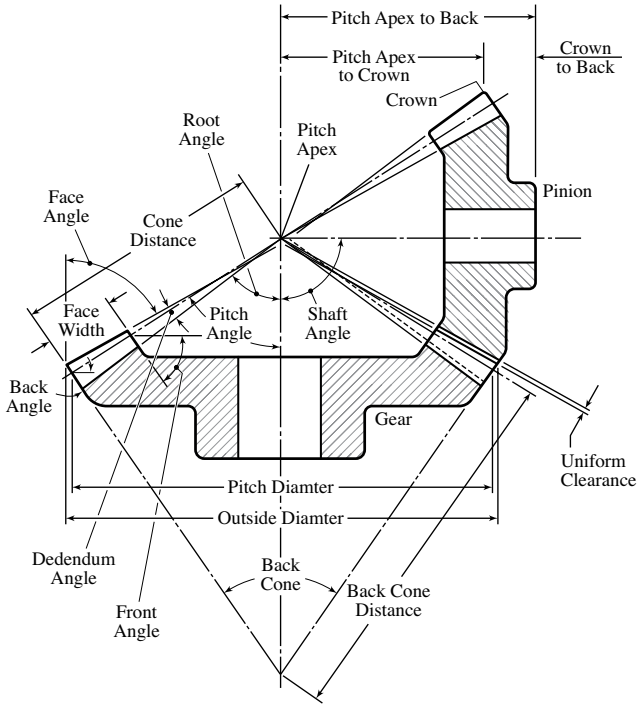


Fig. 1a. Bevel Gear Nomenclature

D = pitch diameter
S = addendum
$S + A$ = dedendum (A = clearance)
W = whole depth of tooth
T = thickness of tooth at pitch line
C = pitch cone radius
F = width of face
s = addendum at small end of tooth
t = thickness of tooth at pitch line at small end
θ = addendum angle
ϕ = dedendum angle
γ = face angle = pitch cone angle + addendum angle
δ = angle of compound rest
ζ = cutting angle
K = angular addendum
O = outside diameter
J = vertex distance
j = vertex distance at small end
N' = number of teeth for which to select cutter

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

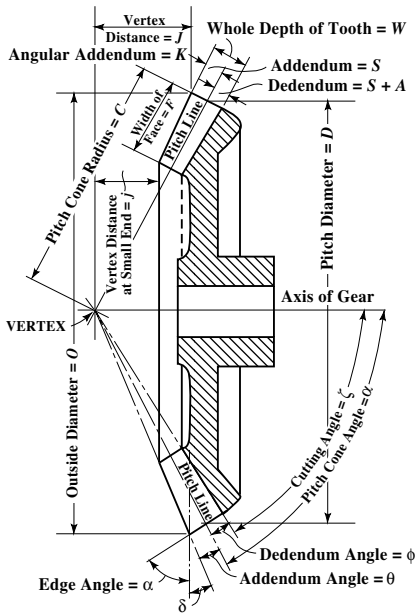


Fig. 1b. Bevel Gear Nomenclature

The formulas for milled bevel gears should be modified to make the clearance at the bottom of the teeth uniform instead of tapering toward the vertex. If this recommendation is followed, then the cutting angle (root angle) should be determined by subtracting the *addendum* angle from the pitch cone angle instead of subtracting the dedendum angle as in the formula given in the table.

Rules and Formulas for Calculating Dimensions of Milled Bevel Gears

To Find	Rule	Formula
Pitch Cone Angle of Pinion	Divide the sine of the shaft angle by the sum of the cosine of the shaft angle and the quotient obtained by dividing the number of teeth in the gear by the number of teeth in the pinion; this gives the tangent. *Note:* For shaft angles greater than 90° the cosine is negative.	$\tan \alpha_P = \frac{\sin \Sigma}{\frac{N_G}{N_P} + \cos \Sigma}$ For 90° shaft angle, $\tan \alpha_P = \frac{N_P}{N_G}$
Pitch Cone Angle of Gear	Subtract the pitch cone angle of the pinion from the shaft angle.	$\alpha_G = \Sigma - \alpha_P$
Pitch Diameter	Divide the number of teeth by the diametral pitch.	$D = N \div P$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rules and Formulas for Calculating Dimensions of Milled Bevel Gears *(Continued)*

To Find		Rule	Formula
These dimensions are the same for both gear and pinion.	Addendum	Divide 1 by the diametral pitch.	$S = 1 \div P$
	Dedendum	Divide 1.157 by the diametral pitch.	$S + A = 1.157 \div P$
	Whole Depth of Tooth	Divide 2.157 by the diametral pitch.	$W = 2.157 \div P$
	Thickness of Tooth at Pitch Line	Divide 1.571 by the diametral pitch.	$T = 1.571 \div P$
	Pitch Cone Radius	Divide the pitch diameter by twice the sine of the pitch cone angle.	$C = \frac{D}{2 \times \sin \alpha}$
	Addendum of Small End of Tooth	Subtract the width of face from the pitch cone radius, divide the remainder by the pitch cone radius and multiply by the addendum.	$s = S \times \frac{C - F}{C}$
	Thickness of Tooth at Pitch Line at Small End	Subtract the width of face from the pitch cone radius, divide the remainder by the pitch cone radius and multiply by the thickness of the tooth at pitch line.	$t = T \times \frac{C - F}{C}$
	Addendum Angle	Divide the addendum by the pitch cone radius to get the tangent.	$\tan \theta = \frac{S}{C}$
	Dedendum Angle	Divide the dedendum by the pitch cone radius to get the tangent.	$\tan \phi = \frac{S + A}{C}$
	Face Width (Max.)	Divide the pitch cone radius by 3 or divide 8 by the diametral pitch, whichever gives the smaller value.	$F = \frac{C}{3}$ or $F = \frac{8}{P}$
	Circular Pitch	Divide 3.1416 by the diametral pitch.	$\rho = 3.1416 \div P$
Face Angle		Add the addendum angle to the pitch cone angle	$\gamma = \alpha + \theta$
Compound Rest Angle for Turning Blank		Subtract both the pitch cone angle and the addendum angle from 90 degrees.	$\delta = 90° - \alpha - \theta$
Cutting Angle		Subtract the dedendum angle from the pitch cone angle.	$\zeta = \alpha - \phi$
Angular Addendum		Multiply the addendum by the cosine of the pitch cone angle.	$K = \mathrm{S} \times \cos \alpha$
Outside Diameter		Add twice the angular addendum to the pitch diameter.	$O = D + 2K$
Vertex or Apex Distance		Multiply one-half the outside diameter by the cotangent of the face angle.	$J = \frac{O}{2} \times \cot \gamma$
Vertex Distance at Small End of Tooth		Subtract the width of face from the pitch cone radius; divide the remainder by the pitch cone radius and multiply by the apex distance.	$j = J \times \frac{C - F}{C}$
Number of Teeth for which to Select Cutter		Divide the number of teeth by the cosine of the pitch cone angle.	$N' = \frac{N}{\cos \alpha}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Numbers of Formed Cutters Used to Mill Teeth in Mating Bevel Gear and Pinion with Shafts at Right Angles

		Number of Teeth in Pinion																
		12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
Number of Teeth in Gear	12	7-7	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	13	6-7	6-6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	14	5-7	6-6	6-6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	15	5-7	5-6	5-6	5-5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	16	4-7	5-7	5-6	5-6	5-5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	17	4-7	4-7	4-6	5-6	5-5	5-5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	18	4-7	4-7	4-6	4-6	4-5	4-5	5-5	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	19	3-7	4-7	4-6	4-6	4-6	4-5	4-5	4-4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	20	3-7	3-7	4-6	4-6	4-6	4-5	4-5	4-4	4-4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	21	3-8	3-7	3-7	3-6	4-6	4-5	4-5	4-5	4-4	4-4	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	22	3-8	3-7	3-7	3-6	3-6	3-5	4-5	4-5	4-4	4-4	4-4	…	…	…	…	…	…
	23	3-8	3-7	3-7	3-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	4-4	4-4	4-4	…	…	…	…	…
	24	3-8	3-7	3-7	3-6	3-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	4-4	4-4	…	…	…	…
	25	2-8	2-7	3-7	3-6	3-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	4-4	3-3	…	…	…
	26	2-8	2-7	3-7	3-6	3-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3	…	…
	27	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	3-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3	…
	28	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	3-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3	3-3
	29	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	3-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3	3-3
	30	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	3-5	3-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3
	31	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3
	32	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3	3-3
	33	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	3-4	3-4	3-4	3-3
	34	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	3-4	3-3
	35	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-3
	36	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-3
	37	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-3
	38	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	39	2-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	40	1-8	2-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	41	1-8	1-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	42	1-8	1-8	2-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	43	1-8	1-8	1-7	2-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	44	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	45	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	46	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	2-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	47	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	2-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	48	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	2-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	49	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	50	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	51	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	2-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	52	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	2-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	53	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	2-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	54	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	55	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	2-4	2-4	2-4	2-4

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Numbers of Formed Cutters Used to Mill Teeth in Mating Bevel Gear and Pinion with Shafts at Right Angles *(Continued)*

		Number of Teeth in Pinion																
		12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
Number of Teeth in Gear	56	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	2-4	2-4	2-4
	57	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	2-4	2-4
	58	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4	2-4
	59	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	60	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	61	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	62	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	63	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	64	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	65	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	66	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	67	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	68	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	69	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	70	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	71	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	72	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	73	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	74	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	75	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	76	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	77	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	78	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	79	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	80	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	81	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	82	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	83	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	84	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	85	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	86	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	87	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	88	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	89	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	90	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	91	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	92	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	93	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	94	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	95	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	96	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	97	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	98	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	99	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4
	100	1-8	1-8	1-7	1-7	1-7	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-6	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-5	1-4	1-4	1-4	1-4

Number of cutter for gear given first, followed by number for pinion. See text, page 2266

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Selecting Formed Cutters for Milling Bevel Gears.—For milling $14\frac{1}{2}$-degree pressure angle bevel gears, the standard cutter series furnished by manufacturers of formed milling cutters is commonly used. There are 8 cutters in the series for each diametral pitch to cover the full range from a 12-tooth pinion to a crown gear. The difference between formed cutters used for milling spur gears and those used for bevel gears is that bevel gear cutters are thinner because they must pass through the narrow tooth space at the small end of the bevel gear; otherwise the shape of the cutter and, hence, the cutter number are the same.

To select the proper number of cutter to be used when a bevel gear is to be milled, it is necessary, first, to compute what is called the "Number of Teeth, N' for which to Select Cutter." This number of teeth can then be used to select the proper number of bevel gear cutter from the spur gear milling cutter table on page 2229. The value of N' may be computed using the last formula in the table on page 2262.

Example 1: What numbers of cutters are required for a pair of bevel gears of 4 diametral pitch and 70 degree shaft angle if the gear has 50 teeth and the pinion 20 teeth?

The pitch cone angle of the pinion is determined by using the first formula in the table on page 2262:

$$\tan \alpha_P = \frac{\sin \Sigma}{\frac{N_G}{N_P} + \cos \Sigma} = \frac{\sin 70°}{\frac{50}{20} + \cos 70°} = 0.33064;\ \alpha_P = 18°18'$$

The pitch cone angle of the gear is determined from the second formula in the table on page 2262:

$$\alpha_G = \Sigma - \alpha_P = 70° - 18°18' = 51°42'$$

The numbers of teeth N′ for which to select the cutters for the gear and pinion may now be determined from the last formula in the table on page 2262:

$$N' \text{ for the pinion } = \frac{N_P}{\cos \alpha_P} = \frac{20}{\cos 18°18'} = 21.1 \approx 21 \text{ teeth}$$

$$N' \text{ for the gear } = \frac{N_G}{\cos \alpha_G} = \frac{50}{\cos 51°42'} = 80.7 \approx 81 \text{ teeth}$$

From the table on page 2229 the numbers of the cutters for pinion and gear are found to be, respectively, 5 and 2.

Example 2: The cutters for a pair of bevel gears are required where the gear has 24 teeth and the pinion 12 teeth. The shaft angle is 90 degrees. As in the first example, the formulas given in the table on page 2262 will be used.

$$\tan \alpha_P = N_P \div N_G = 12 \div 24 = 0.5000 \text{ and } \alpha_P = 26°34'$$

$$\alpha_G = \Sigma - \alpha_P = 90° - 26°34' = 63°26'$$

$$N' \text{ for pinion } = 12 \div \cos 26°34' = 13.4 \approx 13 \text{ teeth}$$

$$N' \text{ for gear } = 24 \div \cos 63°26' = 53.6 \approx 54 \text{ teeth}$$

And from the table on page 2229 the cutters for pinion and gear are found to be, respectively, 8 and 3.

Use of Table for Selecting Formed Cutters for Milling Bevel Gears.—The table beginning on page 2264 gives the numbers of cutters to use for milling various numbers of teeth in the gear and pinion. The table applies only to bevel gears with axes at right angles. Thus, in Example 2 given above, the numbers of the cutters could have been obtained directly by entering the table with the actual numbers of teeth in the gear, 24, and the pinion, 12.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Offset of Cutter for Milling Bevel Gears.—When milling bevel gears with a rotary formed cutter, it is necessary to take two cuts through each tooth space with the gear blank slightly off center, first on one side and then on the other, to obtain a tooth of approximately the correct form. The gear blank is also rotated proportionately to obtain the proper tooth thickness at the large and small ends. The amount that the gear blank or cutter should be offset from the central position can be determined quite accurately by the use of the table *Factors for Obtaining Offset for Milling Bevel Gears* in conjunction with the following rule: Find the factor in the table corresponding to the number of cutter used and to the ratio of the pitch cone radius to the face width; then divide this factor by the diametral pitch and subtract the result from half the thickness of the cutter at the pitch line.

Factors for Obtaining Offset for Milling Bevel Gears

No. of Cutter	Ratio of Pitch Cone Radius to Width of Face $\left(\frac{C}{F}\right)$												
	$\frac{3}{1}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{4}{1}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{5}{1}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{6}{1}$	$\frac{7}{1}$	$\frac{8}{1}$
1	0.254	0.254	0.255	0.256	0.257	0.257	0.257	0.258	0.258	0.259	0.260	0.262	0.264
2	0.266	0.268	0.271	0.272	0.273	0.274	0.274	0.275	0.277	0.279	0.280	0.283	0.284
3	0.266	0.268	0.271	0.273	0.275	0.278	0.280	0.282	0.283	0.286	0.287	0.290	0.292
4	0.275	0.280	0.285	0.287	0.291	0.293	0.296	0.298	0.298	0.302	0.305	0.308	0.311
5	0.280	0.285	0.290	0.293	0.295	0.296	0.298	0.300	0.302	0.307	0.309	0.313	0.315
6	0.311	0.318	0.323	0.328	0.330	0.334	0.337	0.340	0.343	0.348	0.352	0.356	0.362
7	0.289	0.298	0.308	0.316	0.324	0.329	0.334	0.338	0.343	0.350	0.360	0.370	0.376
8	0.275	0.286	0.296	0.309	0.319	0.331	0.338	0.344	0.352	0.361	0.368	0.380	0.386

Note.—For obtaining offset by above table, use formula:

$$\text{Offset} = \frac{T}{2} - \frac{\text{factor from table}}{P}$$

P = diametral pitch of gear to be cut

T = thickness of cutter used, measured at pitch line

To illustrate, what would be the amount of offset for a bevel gear having 24 teeth, 6 diametral pitch, 30-degree pitch cone angle and $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch face or tooth length? In order to obtain a factor from the table, the ratio of the pitch cone radius to the face width must be determined. The pitch cone radius equals the pitch diameter divided by twice the sine of the pitch cone angle = $4 \div (2 \times 0.5) = 4$ inches. As the face width is 1.25, the ratio is $4 \div 1.25$ or about $3\frac{1}{4}$ to 1. The factor in the table for this ratio is 0.280 with a No. 4 cutter, which would be the cutter number for this particular gear. The thickness of the cutter at the pitch line is measured by using a vernier gear tooth caliper. The depth $S + A$ (see Fig. 2; S = addendum; A = clearance) at which to take the measurement equals 1.157 divided by the diametral pitch; thus, $1.157 \div 6 = 0.1928$ inch. The cutter thickness at this depth will vary with different cutters and even with the same cutter as it is ground away, because formed bevel gear cutters are commonly provided with side relief. Assuming that the thickness is 0.1745 inch, and substituting the values in the formula given, we have:

$$\text{Offset} = \frac{0.1745}{2} = \frac{0.280}{6} = 0.0406 \text{ inch}$$

Adjusting the Gear Blank for Milling.—After the offset is determined, the blank is adjusted laterally by this amount, and the tooth spaces are milled around the blank. After having milled one side of each tooth to the proper dimensions, the blank is set over in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

opposite direction the same amount from a position central with the cutter, and is rotated to line up the cutter with a tooth space at the small end. A trial cut is then taken, which will leave the tooth being milled a little too thick, provided the cutter is thin enough—as it should be—to pass through the small end of the tooth space of the finished gear. This trial tooth is made the proper thickness by rotating the blank toward the cutter. To test the amount of offset, measure the tooth thickness (with a vernier caliper) at the large and small ends. The caliper should be set so that the addendum at the small end is in proper proportion to the addendum at the large end; that is, in the ratio $(C-F)/C$ (see Fig. 2).

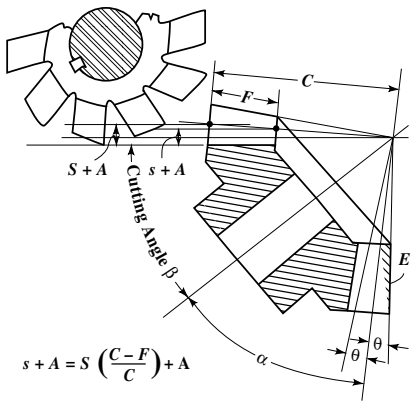


Fig. 2.

In taking these measurements, if the thicknesses at both ends (which should be in this same ratio) are too great, rotate the tooth toward the cutter and take trial cuts until the proper thickness at either the large or small end is obtained. If the large end of the tooth is the right thickness and the small end too thick, the blank was offset too much; inversely, if the small end is correct and the large end too thick, the blank was not set enough off center, and, either way, its position should be changed accordingly. The formula and table previously referred to will enable a properly turned blank to be set accurately enough for general work. The dividing head should be set to the cutting angle β (see Fig. 2), which is found by subtracting the addendum angle θ from the pitch cone angle α. After a bevel gear is cut by the method described, the sides of the teeth at the small end should be filed as indicated by the shade lines at E; that is, by filing off a triangular area from the point of the tooth at the large end to the point at the small end, thence down to the pitch line and back diagonally to a point at the large end.

Circular Thickness, Chordal Thickness, and Chordal Addendum of Milled Bevel Gear Teeth.— In the formulas that follow, T = circular tooth thickness on pitch circle at large end of tooth; t = circular thickness at small end; T_c and t_c = chordal thickness at large and small ends, respectively; S_c and s_c = chordal addendum at large and small ends, respectively; D = pitch diameter at large end; and C, F, P, S, s, and α are as defined on page 2260.

$$T = \frac{1.5708}{P} \qquad T_c = T - \frac{T^3}{6D^2} \qquad S_c = S + \frac{T^2\cos\alpha}{4D}$$

$$t = \frac{T(C-F)}{C} \qquad t_c = t - \frac{t^3}{6(D-2F\sin\alpha)^2} \qquad s_c = s + \frac{t^2\cos\alpha}{4(D-2F\sin\alpha)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Typical Steels Used for Bevel Gear Applications

SAE or AISI No.	Type of Steel	Purchase Specifications: Preliminary Heat Treatment	Purchase Specifications: Brinell Hardness Number	Purchase Specifications: ASTM Grain Size	Remarks
Carburizing Steels					
1024	Manganese	Normalize			Low alloy—oil quench limited to thin sections
2512	Nickel Alloy	Normalize—anneal	163–228	5–8	Aircraft quality
3310 3312X	Nickel-Chromium	Normalize, then heat to 1450°F, cool in furnace. Reheat to 1170°F—cool in air	163–228	5–8	Used for maximum resistance to wear and fatigue
4028	Molybdenum	Normalize	163–217		Low alloy
4615 4620	Nickel-Molybdenum	Normalize—1700°F–1750°F	163–217	5–8	Good machining qualities. Well adapted to direct quench—gives tough core with minimum distortion
4815 4820	Nickel-Molybdenum	Normalize	163–241	5–8	For aircraft and heavily loaded service
5120	Chromium	Normalize	163–217	5–8	
8615 8620 8715 8720	Chromium-Nickel-Molybdenum	Normalize—cool at hammer	163–217	5–8	Used as an alternate for 4620
Oil Hardening and Flame Hardening Steels					
1141	Sulfurized free-cutting carbon steel	Normalize—heat-treated	179–228 255–269	5 or Coarser	Free-cutting steel used for unhardened gears, oil-treated gears, and for gears to be surface hardened where stresses are low
4140 4640	Chromium-MolybdenumNickel-Molybdenum	For oil hardening, normalize—anneal For surface hardening, Normalize, reheat, quench, and draw	179–212 235–269 269–302 302–341		Used for heat-treated, oil-hardened, and surface-hardened gears. Machine qualities of 4640 are superior to 4140, and it is the preferred steel for flame hardening
6145	Chromium-Vanadium	Normalize—reheat, quench, and draw	235–269 269–302 302–341		Fair machining qualities. Used for surface hardened gears when 4640 is not available
8640 8739	Chromium-Nickel-Molybdenum	Same as for 4640			Used as an alternate for 4640
Nitriding Steels					
Nitralloy H & G	Special Alloy	Anneal	163–192		Normal hardness range for cutting is 20–28 RC (Rockwell C scale)

Other steels with qualities equivalent to those listed in the table may also be used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

WORM GEARING

Worm Gearing.—Worm gearing may be divided into two general classes, fine-pitch worm gearing, and coarse-pitch worm gearing. Fine-pitch worm gearing is segregated from coarse-pitch worm gearing for the following reasons:

1) Fine-pitch worms and wormgears are used largely to transmit motion rather than power. Tooth strength except at the coarser end of the fine-pitch range is seldom an important factor; durability and accuracy, as they affect the transmission of uniform angular motion, are of greater importance.

2) Housing constructions and lubricating methods are, in general, quite different for fine-pitch worm gearing.

3) Because fine-pitch worms and wormgears are so small, profile deviations and tooth bearings cannot be measured with the same accuracy as can those of coarse pitches.

4) Equipment generally available for cutting fine-pitch wormgears has restrictions which limit the diameter, the lead range, the degree of accuracy attainable, and the kind of tooth bearing obtainable.

5) Special consideration must be given to top lands in fine-pitch hardened worms and wormgear-cutting tools.

6) Interchangeability and high production are important factors in fine-pitch worm gearing; individual matching of the worm to the gear, as often practiced with coarse-pitch precision worms, is impractical in the case of fine-pitch worm drives.

American Standard Design for Fine-Pitch Worm Gearing (ANSI B6.9-1977).— This standard is intended as a design procedure for fine-pitch worms and wormgears having axes at right angles. It covers cylindrical worms with helical threads, and wormgears hobbed for fully conjugate tooth surfaces. It does not cover helical gears used as wormgears.

Hobs: The hob for producing the gear is a duplicate of the mating worm with regard to tooth profile, number of threads, and lead. The hob differs from the worm principally in that the outside diameter of the hob is larger to allow for resharpening and to provide bottom clearance in the wormgear.

Pitches: Eight standard axial pitches have been established to provide adequate coverage of the pitch range normally required: 0.030, 0.040, 0.050, 0.065, 0.080, 0.100, 0.130, and 0.160 inch.

Axial pitch is used as a basis for this design standard because: 1) Axial pitch establishes lead which is a basic dimension in the production and inspection of worms; 2) the axial pitch of the worm is equal to the circular pitch of the gear in the central plane; and 3) only one set of change gears or one master lead cam is required for a given lead, regardless of lead angle, on commonly-used worm-producing equipment.

Lead Angles: Fifteen standard lead angles have been established to provide adequate coverage: 0.5, 1, 1.5, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9, 11, 14, 17, 21, 25, and 30 degrees.

This series of lead angles has been standardized to: 1) Minimize tooling; 2) permit obtaining geometric similarity between worms of different axial pitch by keeping the same lead angle; and 3) take into account the production distribution found in fine-pitch worm gearing applications.

For example, most fine-pitch worms have either one or two threads. This requires smaller increments at the low end of the lead angle series. For the less frequently used thread numbers, proportionately greater increments at the high end of the lead angle series are sufficient.

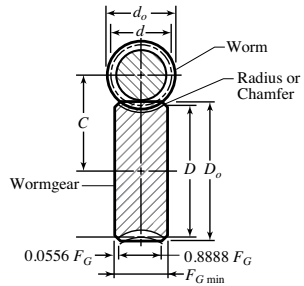
Pressure Angle of Worm: A pressure angle of 20 degrees has been selected as standard for cutters and grinding wheels used to produce worms within the scope of this Standard because it avoids objectionable undercutting regardless of lead angle.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Formulas for Proportions of American Standard Fine-pitch Worms and Wormgears *ANSI B6.9-1977*

LETTER SYMBOLS

P = Circular pitch of wormgear
P = Axial pitch of the worm, P_x, in the central plane
P_x = Axial pitch of worm
P_n = Normal circular pitch of worm and wormgear = $P_x \cos \lambda = P \cos \psi$
λ = Lead angle of worm
ψ = Helix angle of wormgear
n = Number of threads in worm
N = Number of teeth in wormgear
$N = nm_G$
m_G = Ratio of gearing = $N \div n$



Item	Formula	Item	Formula
WORM DIMENSIONS		WORMGEAR DIMENSIONS[a]	
Lead	$l = nP_x$	Pitch Diameter	$D = NP \div \pi = NP_x \div \pi$
Pitch Diameter	$d = l \div (\pi \tan\lambda)$	Outside Diameter	$D_o = 2C - d + 2a$
Outside Diameter	$d_o = d + 2a$	Face Width	$F_{G\min} = 1.125 \times \sqrt{(d_o + 2c)^2 - (d_o - 4a)^2}$
Safe Minimum Length of Threaded Portion of Worm[b]	$F_W = \sqrt{D_o^2 - D^2}$		
DIMENSIONS FOR BOTH WORM AND WORMGEAR			
Addendum	$a = 0.3183P_n$	Tooth thickness	$t_n = 0.5P_n$
Whole Depth	$h_t = 0.7003P_n + 0.002$	Approximate normal pressure angle[c]	$\phi_n = 20$ degrees
Working Depth	$h_k = 0.6366P_n$		
Clearance	$c = h_t - h_k$	Center distance	$C = 0.5\,(d + D)$

All dimensions in inches unless otherwise indicated.

[a] Current practice for fine-pitch worm gearing does not require the use of throated blanks. This results in the much simpler blank shown in the diagram which is quite similar to that for a spur or helical gear. The slight loss in contact resulting from the use of non-throated blanks has little effect on the load-carrying capacity of fine-pitch worm gears. It is sometimes desirable to use topping hobs for producing wormgears in which the size relation between the outside and pitch diameters must be closely controlled. In such cases the blank is made slightly larger than D_o by an amount (usually from 0.010 to 0.020) depending on the pitch. Topped wormgears will appear to have a small throat which is the result of the hobbing operation. For all intents and purposes, the throating is negligible and a blank so made is not to be considered as being a throated blank.

[b] This formula allows a sufficient length for fine-pitch worms.

[c] As stated in the text on page 2270, the actual pressure angle will be slightly greater due to the manufacturing process.

Although the pressure angle of the cutter or grinding wheel used to produce the worm is 20 degrees, the normal pressure angle produced in the worm will actually be slightly greater, and will vary with the worm diameter, lead angle, and diameter of cutter or grinding wheel. A method for calculating the pressure angle change is given under the heading *Effect of Production Method on Worm Profile and Pressure Angle*.

Pitch Diameter Range of Worms: The minimum recommended worm pitch diameter is 0.250 inch and the maximum is 2.000 inches.

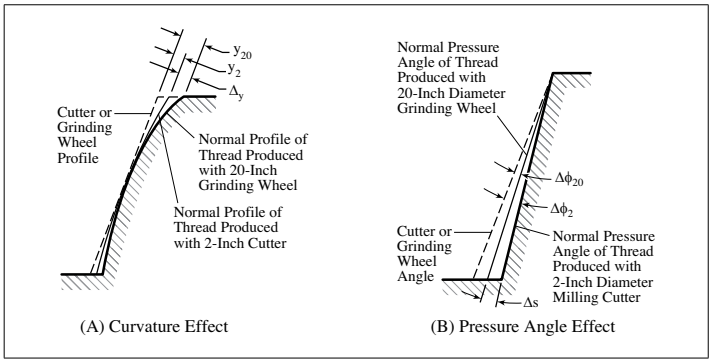
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tooth Form of Worm and Wormgear: The shape of the worm thread in the normal plane is defined as that which is produced by a symmetrical double-conical cutter or grinding wheel having straight elements and an included angle of 40 degrees.

Because worms and wormgears are closely related to their method of manufacture, it is impossible to specify clearly the tooth form of the wormgear without referring to the mating worm. For this reason, worm specifications should include the method of manufacture and the diameter of cutter or grinding wheel used. Similarly, for determining the shape of the generating tool, information about the method of producing the worm threads must be given to the manufacturer if the tools are to be designed correctly.

The worm profile will be a curve that departs from a straight line by varying amounts, depending on the worm diameter, lead angle, and the cutter or grinding wheel diameter. A method for calculating this deviation is given in the Standard. The tooth form of the wormgear is understood to be made fully conjugate to the mating worm thread.

Effect of Diameter of Cutting on Profile and Pressure Angle of Worms


y_{20}
y_2
Δ_y
Cutter or Grinding Wheel Profile
Normal Profile of Thread Produced with 20-Inch Grinding Wheel
Normal Profile of Thread Produced with 2-Inch Cutter
Normal Pressure Angle of Thread Produced with 20-Inch Diameter Grinding Wheel
$\Delta\phi_{20}$
$\Delta\phi_2$
Cutter or Grinding Wheel Angle
Normal Pressure Angle of Thread Produced with 2-Inch Diameter Milling Cutter
Δs
(A) Curvature Effect
(B) Pressure Angle Effect

Effect of Production Method on Worm Profile and Pressure Angle.—In worm gearing, tooth bearing is usually used as the means of judging tooth profile accuracy since direct profile measurements on fine-pitch worms or wormgears is not practical. According to AGMA 370.01, Design Manual for Fine-Pitch Gearing, a minimum of 50 percent initial area of contact is suitable for most fine-pitch worm gearing, although in some cases, such as when the load fluctuates widely, a more restricted initial area of contact may be desirable.

Except where single-pointed lathe tools, end mills, or cutters of special shape are used in the manufacture of worms, the pressure angle and profile produced by the cutter are different from those of the cutter itself. The amounts of these differences depend on several factors, namely, diameter and lead angle of the worm, thickness and depth of the worm thread, and diameter of the cutter or grinding wheel. The accompanying diagram shows the curvature and pressure angle effects produced in the worm by cutters and grinding wheels, and how the amount of variation in worm profile and pressure angle is influenced by the diameter of the cutting tool used.

Materials for Worm Gearing.—Worm gearing, especially for power transmission, should have steel worms and phosphor bronze wormgears. This combination is used extensively. The worms should be hardened and ground to obtain accuracy and a smooth finish.

The phosphor bronze wormgears should contain from 10 to 12 percent of tin. The SAE phosphor gear bronze (No. 65) contains 88–90% copper, 10–12% tin, 0.50% lead, 0.50%

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

zinc (but with a maximum total lead, zinc and nickel content of 1.0 percent), phosphorous 0.10–0.30%, aluminum 0.005%. The SAE nickel phosphor gear bronze (No. 65 + Ni) contains 87% copper, 11% tin, 2% nickel and 0.2% phosphorous.

Single-Thread Worm Gears.—The ratio of the worm speed to the wormgear speed may range from 1.5 or even less up to 100 or more. Worm gearing having high ratios are not very efficient as transmitters of power; nevertheless high as well as low ratios often are required. Since the ratio equals the number of wormgear teeth divided by the number of threads or "starts" on the worm, single-thread worms are used to obtain a high ratio. As a general rule, a ratio of 50 is about the maximum recommended for a single worm and wormgear combination, although ratios up to 100 or higher are possible. When a high ratio is required, it may be preferable to use, in combination, two sets of worm gearing of the multi-thread type in preference to one set of the single-thread type in order to obtain the same total reduction and a higher combined efficiency.

Single-thread worms are comparatively inefficient because of the effect of the low lead angle; consequently, single-thread worms are not used when the primary purpose is to transmit power as efficiently as possible but they may be employed either when a large speed reduction with one set of gearing is necessary, or possibly as a means of adjustment, especially if "mechanical advantage" or self-locking are important factors.

Multi-Thread Worm Gears.—When worm gearing is designed primarily for transmitting power efficiently, the lead angle of the worm should be as high as is consistent with other requirements and preferably between, say, 25 or 30 and 45 degrees. This means that the worm must be multi-threaded. To obtain a given ratio, some number of wormgear teeth divided by some number of worm threads must equal the ratio. Thus, if the ratio is 6, combinations such as the following might be used:

$$\frac{24}{4}, \frac{30}{5}, \frac{36}{6}, \frac{42}{7}$$

The numerators represent numbers of wormgear teeth and the denominators, the number of worm threads or "starts." The number of wormgear teeth may not be an exact multiple of the number of threads on a multi-thread worm in order to obtain a "hunting tooth" action.

Number of Threads or "Starts" on Worm: The number of threads on the worm ordinarily varies from one to six or eight, depending upon the ratio of the gearing. As the ratio is increased, the number of worm threads is reduced, as a general rule. In some cases, however, the higher of two ratios may also have a larger number of threads. For example, a ratio of $6\frac{1}{5}$ would have 5 threads whereas a ratio of $6\frac{5}{6}$ would have 6 threads. Whenever the ratio is fractional, the number of threads on the worm equals the denominator of the fractional part of the ratio.

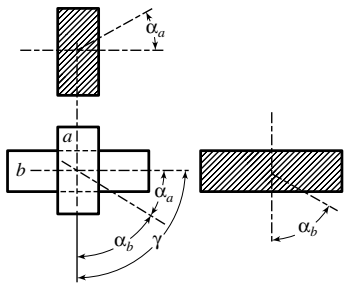
Worm-Gear Cutting.—The machines used for cutting worm-gears include ordinary milling machines, gear-hobbing machines of the type adapted to cutting either spur, spiral, or worm gearing, and special machines designed expressly for cutting worm-gears. The general methods employed are (1) cutting by using a straight hob and a radial feeding movement between hob and gear blank; (2) cutting by feeding a fly cutter tangentially with relation to the worm gear blank; and (3) cutting by feeding a tapering hob tangentially. The fly-cutter method is slow as compared with hobbing but it has two decided advantages: First, a very simple and inexpensive cutter may be used instead of an expensive hob. This is of great importance when the number of worm-gears is not large enough to warrant making a hob. Second, with the fly-cutter method, it is possible to produce worm-gears having more accurate teeth than are obtainable by the use of a straight hob. Taper hobs are especially adapted for cutting worm-gears that are to mesh with worms having large helix angles; they are also preferable for worm-gears having large face widths in proportion to the worm diameter. Worm-gear teeth are generated more accurately with a taper hob than with a straight hob that is given a radial feeding movement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HELICAL GEARING

Basic Rules and Formulas for Helical Gear Calculations.—The rules and formulas in the following table and elsewhere in this article are basic to helical gear calculations. The notation used in the formulas is: P_n = normal diametral pitch of cutter; D = pitch diameter; N = number of teeth; α = helix angle; γ = center angle or angle between shafts; C = center distance; N' = number of teeth for which to select a formed cutter for milled teeth; L = lead of tooth helix; S = addendum; W = whole depth; T_n = normal tooth thickness at pitch line; and O = outside diameter.

Rules and Formulas for Helical Gear Calculations



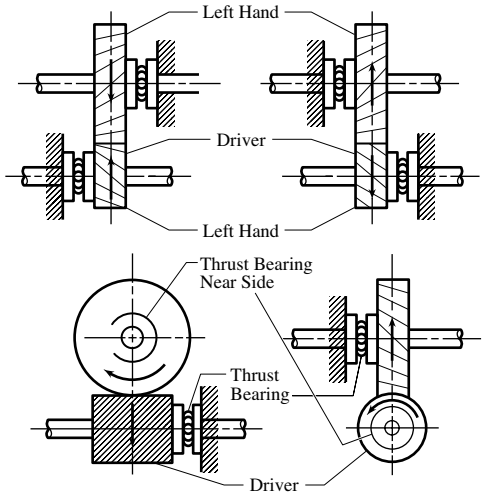
In the formulas, the symbols D, N, L and a are for either the gear or the pinion. Subscripts a and b refer to the pinion or gear, respectively, in a pair of gears a and b.

No.	To Find	Rule	Formula
1	Pitch Diameter	Divide the number of teeth by the product of the normal diameter pitch and the cosine of the helix angle.	$D = \frac{N}{P_n \cos \alpha}$
2	Center Distance	Add together the two pitch diameters and divide by 2.	$C = \frac{D_a + D_b}{2}$
3	Lead of Tooth Helix	Multiply the pitch diameter by 3.1416 by the cotangent of the helix angle.	$L = \pi D \cot \alpha$
4	Addendum	Divide 1 by the normal diametral pitch.	$S = \frac{1}{P_n}$
5	Whole Depth of tooth	Divide 2.157 by the normal diametral pitch.	$W = \frac{2.157}{P_n}$
6	Normal Tooth Thickness at Pitch Line	Divide 1.5708 by the normal diametral pitch.	$T_n = \frac{1.5708}{P_n}$
7	Outside Diameter	Add twice the addendum to the pitch diameter.	$O = D + 2S$

Determining Direction of Thrust.—The first step in helical gear design is to determine the desired direction of the thrust. When the direction of the thrust has been determined and the relative positions of the driver and driven gears are known, then the direction of helix (right- or left-hand) may be found from the accompanying thrust diagrams, *Directions of Rotation and Resulting Thrust for Parallel Shaft and 90 Degree Shaft Angle Helical Gears*. The diagrams show the directions of rotation

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and the resulting thrust for parallel-shaft and 90-degree shaft angle helical gears. The thrust bearings are located so as to take the thrust caused by the tooth loads. The direction of the thrust depends on the direction of the helix, the relative positions of driver and driven gears, and the direction of rotation. The thrust may be changed to the opposite direction by changing any one of the three conditions, namely, by changing the hand of the helix, by reversing the direction of rotation, or by exchanging of driver and driven gear positions.



Directions of Rotation and Resulting Thrust for Parallel Shaft and 90 Degree Shaft Angle Helical Gears

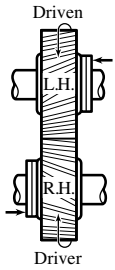
Determining Helix Angles.—The following rules should be observed for helical gears with shafts at any given angle. If each helix angle is less than the shaft angle, then the sum of the helix angles of the two gears will equal the angle between the shafts, and the helix angle is of the same hand for both gears; if the helix angle of one of the gears is larger than the shaft angle, then the difference between the helix angles of the two gears will be equal to the shaft angle, and the gears will be of opposite hand.

Pitch of Cutter to be Used.—The thickness of the cutter at the pitchline for cutting helical gears should equal one-half the *normal* circular pitch. The normal pitch varies with the helix angle, hence, the helix angle must be considered when selecting a cutter. The cutter should be of the same pitch as the *normal* diametral pitch of the gear. This normal pitch is found by dividing the transverse diametral pitch of the gear by the cosine of the helix angle. To illustrate, if the pitch diameter of a helical gear is 6.718 and there are 38 teeth having a helix angle of 45 degrees, the transverse diametral pitch equals 38 divided by 6.718 = 5.656; then the normal diametral pitch equals 5.656 divided by 0.707 = 8. A cutter, then, of 8 diametral pitch is the one to use for this particular gear.

Helical gears should preferably be cut on a generating-type gear cutting machine such as a hobber or shaper. Milling machines are used in some shops when hobbers or shapers are not available or when single, replacement gears are being made. In such instances, the pitch of the formed cutter used in milling a helical gear must not only conform to the normal diametral pitch of the gear, but the cutter number must also be determined. See *Selecting Cutter for Milling Helical Gears* starting on page 2283.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1. Shafts Parallel, Center Distance Approximate.—Given or assumed:



1) Position of gear having right- or left-hand helix, depending upon rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) C_a = approximate center distance

3) P_n = normal diametral pitch

4) N = number of teeth in large gear

5) n = number of teeth in small gear

6) α = angle of helix

To find:

1) D = pitch diameter of large gear = $\dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

2) d = pitch diameter of small gear = $\dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

3) O = outside diameter of large gear = $D + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

4) o = outside diameter of small gear = $d + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

5) T = number of teeth marked on formed milling cutter (large gear) = $\dfrac{N}{\cos^3\alpha}$

6) t = number of teeth marked on formed milling cutter (small gear) = $\dfrac{n}{\cos^3\alpha}$

7) L = lead of helix on large gear = $\pi D \cot\alpha$

8) l = lead of helix on small gear = $\pi d \cot\alpha$

9) C = center distance (if not right, vary α) = $\frac{1}{2}(D + d)$

Example: Given or assumed: 1) See illustration; 2) C_a = 17 inches; 3) P_n = 2; 4) N = 48; 5) n = 20; and 6) α = 20.

To find:

1) $D = \dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha} = \dfrac{48}{2 \times 0.9397} = 25.541$ inches

2) $d = \dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\alpha} = \dfrac{20}{2 \times 0.9397} = 10.642$ inches

3) $O = \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 25.541 + \dfrac{2}{2} = 26.541$ inches

4) $o = d + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 10.642 + \dfrac{2}{2} = 11.642$ inches

5) $T = \dfrac{N}{\cos^3\alpha} = \dfrac{48}{(0.9397)^3} = 57.8$, say 58 teeth

6) $t = \dfrac{n}{\cos^3\alpha} = \dfrac{20}{(0.9397)^3} = 24.1$, say 24 teeth

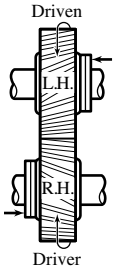
7) $L = \pi D \cot\alpha = 3.1416 \times 25.541 \times 2.747 = 220.42$ inches

8) $l = \pi d \cot\alpha = 3.1416 \times 10.642 \times 2.747 = 91.84$ inches

9) $C = \frac{1}{2}(D + d) = \frac{1}{2}(25.541 + 10.642) = 18.091$ inches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2. Shafts Parallel, Center Distance Exact.—Given or assumed:



1) Position of gear having right- or left-hand helix, depending upon rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) C = exact center distance

3) P_n = normal diametral pitch (pitch of cutter)

4) N = number of teeth in large gear

5) n = number of teeth in small gear

To find:

1) $\cos\alpha = \dfrac{N+n}{2P_n C}$

2) D = pitch diameter of large gear $= \dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

3) d = pitch diameter of small gear $= \dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

4) O = outside diameter of large gear $= D + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

5) o = outside diameter of small gear $= d + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

6) T = number of teeth marked on formed milling cutter (large gear) $= \dfrac{N}{\cos^3\alpha}$

7) t = number of teeth marked on formed milling cutter (small gear) $= \dfrac{n}{\cos^3\alpha}$

8) L = lead of helix (large gear) $= \pi D \cot\alpha$

9) l = lead of helix (small gear) $= \pi d \cot\alpha$

Example: Given or assumed: 1) See illustration; 2) C = 18.75 inches; 3) $P_n = 4$; 4) N = 96; and 5) $n = 48$.

1) $\cos\alpha = \dfrac{N+n}{2P_n C} = \dfrac{96+48}{2\times 4\times 18.75} = 0.96$, or $\alpha = 16°16'$

2) $D = \dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha} = \dfrac{96}{4\times 0.96} = 25$ inches

3) $d = \dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\alpha} = \dfrac{48}{4\times 0.96} = 12.5$ inches

4) $O = D + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 25 + \dfrac{2}{4} = 25.5$ inches

5) $o = d + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 12.5 + \dfrac{2}{4} = 13$ inches

6) $T = \dfrac{N}{\cos^3\alpha} = \dfrac{96}{(0.96)^3} = 108$ teeth

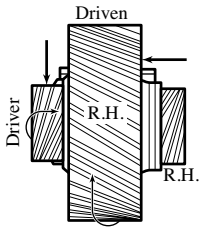
7) $t = \dfrac{n}{\cos^3\alpha} = \dfrac{48}{(0.96)^3} = 54$ teeth

8) $L = \pi D \cot\alpha = 3.1416\times 25\times 3.427 = 269.15$ inches

9) $l = \pi d \cot\alpha = 3.1416\times 12.5\times 3.427 = 134.57$ inches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3. Shafts at Right Angles, Center Distance Approximate.— Sum of helix angles of gear and pinion must equal 90 degrees.



Given or assumed:

1) Position of gear having right- or left-hand helix, depending on rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) C_a = approximate center distance

3) P_n = normal diametral pitch (pitch of cutter)

4) R = ratio of gear to pinion size

5) n = number of teeth in pinion = $\frac{1.41 C_a P_n}{R+1}$ for 45 degrees; and $\frac{2 C_a P_n \cos\alpha \cos\beta}{R\cos\beta + \cos\alpha}$ for any angle

6) N = number of teeth in gear = Rn

7) α = angle of helix of gear

8) β = angle of helix of pinion

To find:

a) When helix angles are 45 degrees,

1) D = pitch diameter of gear = $\frac{N}{0.70711 P_n}$

2) d = pitch diameter of pinion = $\frac{n}{0.70711 P_n}$

3) O = outside diameter of gear = $D + \frac{2}{P_n}$

4) o = outside diameter of pinion = $d + \frac{2}{P_n}$

5) T = number of formed cutter (gear) = $\frac{N}{0.353}$

6) t = number of formed cutter (pinion) = $\frac{n}{0.353}$

7) L = lead of helix of gear = πD

8) l = lead of helix of pinion = πd

9) C = center distance (exact) = $\frac{D+d}{2}$

b) When helix angles are other than 45 degrees

1) $D = \frac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha}$ 2) $d = \frac{n}{P_n \cos\beta}$ 3) $T = \frac{N}{\cos^3\alpha}$

2) $t = \frac{n}{\cos^3\beta}$ 5) $L = \pi D \cot\alpha$ 6) $l = \pi d \cot\beta$

Example: Given or assumed: 1) See illustration; 2) C_a = 3.2 inches; 3) P_n = 10; and 4) R = 1.5.

5) $n = \frac{1.41 C_a P_n}{R+1} = \frac{1.41 \times 3.2 \times 10}{1.5+1}$ = say 18 teeth.

6) $N = nR = 18 \times 1.5 = 27$ teeth; 7) α = 45 degrees; and 8) β = 45 degrees.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To find:

1) $D = \dfrac{N}{0.70711 P_n} = \dfrac{27}{0.70711 \times 10} = 3.818$ inches

2) $d = \dfrac{n}{0.70711 P_n} = \dfrac{18}{0.70711 \times 10} = 2.545$ inches

3) $O = D + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 3.818 + \dfrac{2}{10} = 4.018$ inches

4) $o = d + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 2.545 + \dfrac{2}{10} = 2.745$ inches

5) $T = \dfrac{N}{0.353} = \dfrac{27}{0.353} = 76.5$, say 76 teeth

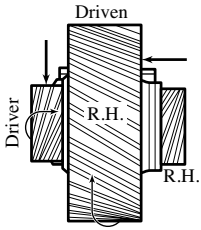
6) $t = \dfrac{n}{0.353} = \dfrac{18}{0.353} = 51$ teeth

7) $L = \pi D = 3.1416 \times 3.818 = 12$ inches

8) $l = \pi d = 3.1416 \times 2.545 = 8$ inches

9) $C = \dfrac{D + d}{2} = \dfrac{3.818 + 2.545}{2} = 3.182$ inches

4A. Shafts at Right Angles, Center Distance Exact.—Gears have same direction of helix. Sum of the helix angles will equal 90 degrees.



Given or assumed:

1) Position of gear having right- or left-hand helix depending on rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) P_n = normal diametral pitch (pitch of cutter)

3) R = ratio of number of teeth in large gear to number of teeth in small gear

4) α_a = approximate helix angle of large gear

5) C = exact center distance

To find:

1) n = number of teeth in small gear nearest = $2CP_n \sin \alpha_a \div 1 + R \tan \alpha_a$

2) N = number of teeth in large gear = Rn

3) α = exact helix angle of large gear, found by trial from $R \sec \alpha + \text{cosec}\, \alpha = 2CP_n \div n$

4) β = exact helix angle of small gear = $90° - \alpha$

5) D = pitch diameter of large gear = $\dfrac{N}{P_n \cos \alpha}$

6) d = pitch diameter of small gear = $\dfrac{n}{P_n \cos \beta}$

7) O = outside diameter of large gear = $D + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

8) o = outside diameter of small gear = $d + \frac{2}{P_n}$

9) N' and n' = numbers of teeth marked on cutters for large and small gears (see page 2283)

10) L = lead of helix on large gear = $\pi D \cot \alpha$

11) l = lead of helix on small gear = $\pi d \cot \beta$

Example: Given or assumed: 1) See illustration; 2) $P_n = 8$; 3) $R = 3$; 4) $\alpha_a = 45$ degrees; and 5) $C = 10$ in.

To find:

1) $n = \frac{2CP_n \sin \alpha_a}{1 + R \tan \alpha_a} = \frac{2 \times 10 \times 8 \times 0.70711}{1 + 3} = 28.25$, say 28 teeth

2) $N = Rn = 3 \times 28 = 84$ teeth

3) $R \sec \alpha + \text{cosec}\, \alpha = \frac{2CP_n}{n} = \frac{2 \times 10 \times 8}{28} = 5.714$, or $\alpha = 46°6'$

4) $\beta = 90° - \alpha = 90° - 46°6' = 43°54'$

5) $D = \frac{N}{P_n \cos \alpha} = \frac{84}{8 \times 0.6934} = 15.143$ inches

6) $d = \frac{n}{P_n \cos \beta} = \frac{28}{8 \times 0.72055} = 4.857$ inches

7) $O = D + \frac{2}{P_n} = 15.143 + 0.25 = 15.393$ inches

8) $o = d + \frac{2}{P_n} = 4.857 + 0.25 = 5.107$ inches

9) $N' = 275$; $n' = 94$ (see page 2283)

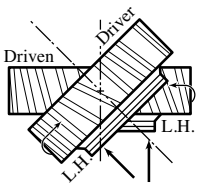
10) $L = \pi D \cot \alpha = 3.1416 \times 15.143 \times 0.96232 = 45.78$ inches

11) $l = \pi d \cot \beta = 3.1416 \times 4.857 \times 1.0392 = 15.857$ inches

4B. Shafts at Right Angles, Any Ratio, Helix Angle for Minimum Center Distance.— Diagram similar to 4A. Gears have same direction of helix. The sum of the helix angles will equal 90 degrees.

For any given ratio of gearing R there is a helix angle α for the larger gear and a helix angle $\beta = 90° - \alpha$ for the smaller gear that will make the center distance C a minimum. Helix angle α is found from the formula $\cot \alpha = R^{1/3}$. As an example, using the data found in Case 4A, helix angles α and β for minimum center distance would be: $\cot \alpha = R^{1/3} = 1.4422$; $\alpha = 34°44'$ and $\beta = 90° - 34°44' = 55°16'$. Using these helix angles, $D = 12.777$; $d = 6.143$; and $C = 9.460$ from the formulas for D and d given under Case 4A.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



5. Shafts at Any Angle, Center Distance Approximate.—The sum of the helix angles of the two gears equals the shaft angle, and the gears are of the same hand, if each angle is less than the shaft angle. The difference between the helix angles equals the shaft angle, and the gears are of opposite hand, if either angle is greater than the shaft angle.

Given or assumed:

1) Hand of helix, depending on rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) C_a = center distance

3) P_n = normal diametral pitch (pitch of cutter)

4) R = ratio of gear to pinion = $\frac{N}{n}$

5) α = angle of helix, gear

6) β = angle of helix, pinion

7) n = number of teeth in pinion nearest $\frac{2C_a P_n \cos\alpha \cos\beta}{R\cos\beta + \cos\alpha}$ for any angle

8) and $\frac{2C_a P_n \cos\alpha}{R+1}$ when both angles are equal

9) N = number of teeth in gear = Rn

To find:

1) D = pitch diameter of gear = $\frac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

2) d = pitch diameter of pinion = $\frac{n}{P_n \cos\beta}$

3) O = outside diameter of gear = $D + \frac{2}{P_n}$

4) o = outside diameter of pinion = $d + \frac{2}{P_n}$

5) T = number of teeth marked on cutter for gear = $\frac{N}{\cos^3\alpha}$

6) t = number of teeth marked on cutter for pinion = $\frac{n}{\cos^3\beta}$

7) L = lead of helix on gear = $\pi D \cot\alpha$

8) l = lead of helix on pinion = $\pi d \cot\beta$

9) C = actual center distance = $\frac{D+d}{2}$

Example: Given or assumed (angle of shafts, 60 degrees):

1) See illustration 2) $C_a = 12$ inches 3) $P_n = 8$

4) R = 4 5) $\alpha = 30$ degrees 6) $\beta = 30$ degrees

5) $n = \frac{2C_a P_n \cos\alpha}{R+1} = \frac{2 \times 12 \times 8 \times 0.86603}{4+1} = 33$ teeth

6) $N = 4 \times 33 = 132$ teeth

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To find:

1) $D = \dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha} = \dfrac{132}{8 \times 0.86603} = 19.052$ inches

2) $d = \dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\beta} = \dfrac{33}{8 \times 0.86603} = 4.763$ inches

3) $O = D + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 19.052 + \dfrac{2}{8} = 19.302$ inches

4) $o = d + \dfrac{2}{P_n} = 4.763 + \dfrac{2}{8} = 5.013$ inches

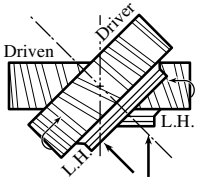
5) $T = \dfrac{N}{\cos^3\alpha} = \dfrac{132}{0.65} = 203$ teeth

6) $t = \dfrac{n}{\cos^3\beta} = \dfrac{33}{0.65} = 51$ teeth

7) $L = \pi D \cot\alpha = \pi \times 19.052 \times 1.732 = 103.66$ inches

8) $l = \pi d \cot\beta = \pi \times 4.763 \times 1.732 = 25.92$ inches

9) $C = \dfrac{D + d}{2} = \dfrac{19.052 + 4.763}{2} = 11.9075$ inches



6. Shafts at Any Angle, Center Distance Exact.—The sum of the helix angles of the two gears equals the shaft angle, and the gears are of the same hand, if each angle is less than the shaft angle. The difference between the helix angles equals the shaft angle, and the gears are of opposite hand, if either angle is greater than the shaft angle.

Given or assumed:

1) Hand of helix, depending on rotation and direction in which thrust is to be received

2) C = center distance

3) P_n = normal diametral pitch (pitch of cutter)

4) α_a = approximate helix angle of gear

5) β_a = approximate helix angle of pinion

6) R = ratio of gear to pinion size = $\dfrac{N}{n}$

7) n = number of pinion teeth nearest $\dfrac{2CP_n \cos\alpha_a \cos\beta_a}{R\cos\beta_a + \cos\alpha_a}$

8) N = number of gear teeth = Rn

To find:

1) α and β, exact helix angles, found by trial from $R\sec\alpha + \sec\beta = \dfrac{2CP_n}{n}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2) D = pitch diameter of gear = $\dfrac{N}{P_n \cos\alpha}$

3) d = pitch diameter of pinion = $\dfrac{n}{P_n \cos\beta}$

4) O = outside diameter of gear = $D + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

5) o = outside diameter of pinion = $d + \dfrac{2}{P_n}$

6) N' = number of teeth marked on formed cutter for gear (see below)

7) n' = number of teeth marked on formed cutter for pinion (see below)

8) L = lead of helix on gear = $\pi D \cot\alpha$

9) l = lead of helix on pinion = $\pi d \cot\beta$

Selecting Cutter for Milling Helical Gears.—The proper milling cutter to use for *spur* gears depends on the pitch of the teeth and also upon the number of teeth as explained on page 2227 but a cutter for milling helical gears is not selected with reference to the actual number of teeth in the gear, as in spur gearing, but rather with reference to a calculated number N' that takes into account the effect on the tooth profile of lead angle, normal diametral pitch, and cutter diameter.

In the helical gearing examples starting on page 2276 the number of teeth N' on which to base the selection of the cutter has been determined using the approximate formula $N' = N \div \cos^3\alpha$ or $N' = N \sec^3\alpha$, where N = the actual number of teeth in the helical gear and α = the helix angle. However, the use of this formula may, where a combination of high helix angle and low tooth number is involved, result in the selection of a higher number of cutter than should actually be used for greatest accuracy. This condition is most likely to occur when the aforementioned formula is used to calculate N' for gears of high helix angle and low number of teeth.

To avoid the possibility of error in choice of cutter number, the following formula, which gives theoretically correct results for all combinations of helix angle and tooth numbers, is to be preferred:

$$N' = N \sec^3\alpha + P_n D_c \tan^2\alpha \qquad (1)$$

where: N' = number of teeth on which to base selection of cutter number from table on page 2229; N = actual number of teeth in helical gear; α = helix angle; P_n = normal diametral pitch of gear and cutter; and D_c = pitch diameter of cutter.

To simplify calculations, Formula (1) may be written as follows:

$$N' = NK + QK' \qquad (2)$$

In this formula, K, K' and Q are constants obtained from the tables on page 2284.

Example: Helix angle = 30 degrees; number of teeth in helical gear = 15; and normal diametral pitch = 20. From the tables on page 2284 K, K', and Q are, respectively, 1.540, 0.333, and 37.80.

$$N' = (15 \times 1.540) + (37.80 \times 0.333) = 23.10 + 12.60$$
$$= 35.70, \text{ say, } 36$$

Hence, from page 2229 select a number 3 cutter. Had the approximate formula been used, then a number 5 cutter would have been selected on the basis of $N' = 23$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Factors for Selecting Cutters for Milling Helical Gears

Helix Angle, α	K	K'	Helix Angle, α	K	K'	Helix Angle, α	K	K'	Helix Angle, α	K	K'
0	1.000	0	16	1.127	0.082	32	1.640	0.390	48	3.336	1.233
1	1.001	0	17	1.145	0.093	33	1.695	0.422	49	3.540	1.323
2	1.002	0.001	18	1.163	0.106	34	1.755	0.455	50	3.767	1.420
3	1.004	0.003	19	1.182	0.119	35	1.819	0.490	51	4.012	1.525
4	1.007	0.005	20	1.204	0.132	36	1.889	0.528	52	4.284	1.638
5	1.011	0.008	21	1.228	0.147	37	1.963	0.568	53	4.586	1.761
6	1.016	0.011	22	1.254	0.163	38	2.044	0.610	54	4.925	1.894
7	1.022	0.015	23	1.282	0.180	39	2.130	0.656	55	5.295	2.039
8	1.030	0.020	24	1.312	0.198	40	2.225	0.704	56	5.710	2.198
9	1.038	0.025	25	1.344	0.217	41	2.326	0.756	57	6.190	2.371
10	1.047	0.031	26	1.377	0.238	42	2.436	0.811	58	6.720	2.561
11	1.057	0.038	27	1.414	0.260	43	2.557	0.870	59	7.321	2.770
12	1.068	0.045	28	1.454	0.283	44	2.687	0.933	60	8.000	3.000
13	1.080	0.053	29	1.495	0.307	45	2.828	1	61	8.780	3.254
14	1.094	0.062	30	1.540	0.333	46	2.983	1.072	62	9.658	3.537
15	1.110	0.072	31	1.588	0.361	47	3.152	1.150	63	10.687	3.852

$K = 1 \div \cos^3 \alpha = \sec^3 \alpha$; $K' = \tan^2 \alpha$

Outside and Pitch Diameters of Standard Involute-form Milling Cutters

Normal Diametral Pitch, P_n	Outside Dia., D_o	Pitch Dia., D_c	$Q = P_n D_c$	Normal Diametral Pitch, P_n	Outside Dia., D_o	Pitch Dia., D_c	$Q = P_n D_c$	Normal Diametral Pitch, P_n	Outside Dia., D_o	Pitch Dia., D_c	$Q = P_n D_c$
1	8.500	6.18	6.18	6	3.125	2.76	16.56	20	2.000	1.89	37.80
1¼	7.750	5.70	7.12	7	2.875	2.54	17.78	24	1.750	1.65	39.60
1½	7.000	5.46	8.19	8	2.875	2.61	20.88	28	1.750	1.67	46.76
1¾	6.500	5.04	8.82	9	2.750	2.50	22.50	32	1.750	1.68	53.76
2	5.750	4.60	9.20	10	2.375	2.14	21.40	36	1.750	1.69	60.84
2½	5.750	4.83	12.08	12	2.250	2.06	24.72	40	1.750	1.70	68.00
3	4.750	3.98	11.94	14	2.125	1.96	27.44	48	1.750	1.70	81.60
4	4.250	3.67	14.68	16	2.125	1.98	31.68	..	…	…	…
5	3.750	3.29	16.45	18	2.000	1.87	33.66	..	…	…	…

Pitch diameters shown in the table are computed from the formula: $D_c = D_o - 2(1.57 \div P_n)$. This same formula may be used to compute the pitch diameter of a non-standard outside diameter cutter when the normal diametral pitch P_n and the outside diameter D_o are known.

Milling the Helical Teeth.—The teeth of a helical gear are proportioned from the normal pitch and not the circular pitch. The whole depth of the tooth can be found by dividing 2.157 by the normal diametral pitch of the gear, which corresponds to the pitch of the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

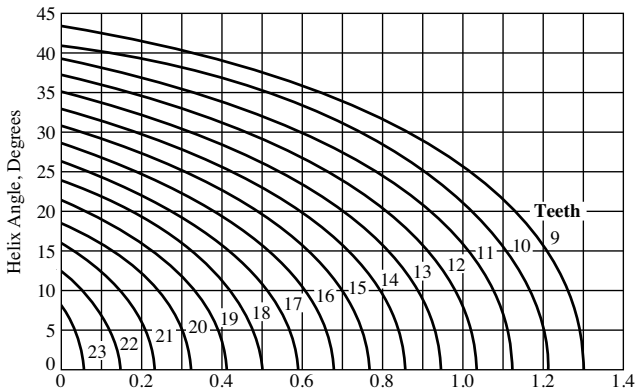
cutter. The thickness of the tooth at the pitch line equals 1.571 divided by the normal diametral pitch. After a tooth space has been milled, the cutter should be prevented from dragging through it when being returned for another cut. This can be done by lowering the blank slightly, or by stopping the machine and turning the cutter to such a position that the teeth will not touch the work. If the gear has teeth coarser than 10 or 12 diametral pitch, it is well to take a roughing and a finishing cut. When pressing a helical gear blank on the arbor, it should be remembered that it is more likely to slip when being milled than a spur gear, because the pressure of the cut, being at an angle, tends to rotate the blank on the arbor.

Angular Position of Table: When cutting a helical gear on a milling machine, the table is set to the helix angle of the gear. If the lead of the helical gear is known, but not the helix angle, the helix angle is determined by multiplying the pitch diameter of the gear by 3.1416 and dividing this product by the lead; the result is the tangent of the lead angle which may be obtained from trigonometric tables or a calculator.

American National Standard Fine-Pitch Teeth for Helical Gears.—This Standard, ANSI B6.7-1977, provides a 20-degree tooth form for both spur and helical gears of 20 diametral pitch and finer. Formulas for tooth parts are given on page 2214.

Enlargement of Helical Pinions, 20-Degree Normal Pressure Angle: Formula (4) and the accompanying graph are based on the use of hobs having sharp corners at their top lands. Pinions cut by shaper cutters may not require as much modification as indicated by (4) or the graph. The number 2.1 appearing in (4) results from the use of a standard tooth thickness rack having an addendum of $1.05/P_n$ which will start contact at a roll angle 5 degrees above the base radius. The roll angle of 5 degrees is also reflected in Formula (4).

To avoid undercutting of the teeth and to provide more favorable contact conditions near the base of the tooth, it is recommended that helical pinions with less than 24 teeth be enlarged in accordance with the following graph and formulas. As with enlarged spur pinions, when an enlarged helical pinion is used it is necessary either to reduce the diameter of the mating gear or to increase the center distance. In the formulas that follow, ϕ_n = normal pressure angle; ϕ_t = transverse pressure angle; ψ = helix angle of pinion; P_n = normal diametral pitch; P_t = transverse diametral pitch; d = pitch diameter of pinion; d_o = outside diameter of enlarged pinion; K_h = enlargement for full depth pinions of 1 normal diametral pitch; and n = number of teeth in pinion.



Enlargement K_h, in Inches, for 1 Diametral Pitch,
20° Pressure Angle Pinions

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

To eliminate the need for making the calculations indicated in Formulas (3) and (4), the accompanying graph may be used to obtain the value of K_h directly for full-depth pinions of 20-degree normal pressure angle.

$$P_t = P_n \cos \psi \quad (1)$$

$$d = n \div P_t \quad (2)$$

$$\tan\psi_t = \tan\phi_n \div \cos \psi \quad (3)$$

$$K_h = 2.1 - \frac{n}{\cos \psi}(\sin \phi_t - \cos \phi_t \tan 5°) \sin \phi_t \quad (4)$$

$$d_o = d + \frac{2 + K_h}{P_n} \quad (5)$$

Example: Find the outside diameter of a helical pinion having 12 teeth, 32 normal diametral pitch, 20-degree pressure angle, and 18-degree helix angle.

$$P_t = P_n \cos \psi = 32 \cos 18° = 32 \times 0.95106 = 30.4339$$

$$d = n \div P_t = 12 \div 30.4339 = 0.3943 \text{ inch}$$

$$K_h = 0.851 \text{ (from graph)}$$

$$d_o = 0.3943 + \frac{2 + 0.851}{32} = 0.4834$$

Center Distance at which Modified Mating Helical Gears Mesh Without Backlash.— If the helical pinion in the previous example on page 2286 had been made to standard dimensions, that is, not enlarged, and was in tight mesh with a standard 24-tooth mating gear, the center distance for tight mesh could be calculated from the formula on page 2214:

$$C = \frac{n + N}{2P_n \cos \psi} = \frac{12 + 24}{2 \times 32 \times \cos 18°} = 0.5914 \text{ inch} \quad (1)$$

However, if the pinion is enlarged as in the example and meshed with the same standard 24-tooth gear, then the center distance for tight mesh will be increased. To calculate the new center distance, the following formulas and calculations are required:

First, calculate the transverse pressure angle ϕ_t using Formula (2):

$$\tan \phi_t = \tan \phi_n \div \cos \psi = \tan 20° \div \cos 18° = 0.38270 \quad (2)$$

and from a calculator the angle ϕ_t is found to be 20° 56′ 30″. In the table on page 112, inv ϕ_t is found to be 0.017196, and the cosine from a calculator as 0.93394.

Using Formula (3), calculate the pressure angle ϕ at which the gears are in tight mesh:

$$\text{inv } \phi = \text{inv } \phi_t + \frac{(t_{nP} + t_{nG}) - \pi}{n + N} \quad (3)$$

In this formula, the value for t_{nP} for 1 diametral pitch is that found in Table 9c on page 2231, for a 12-tooth pinion, in the fourth column: 1.94703. The value of t_{nG} for 1 diametral pitch for a standard gear is always 1.5708.

$$\text{inv } \phi = 0.017196 + \frac{(1.94703 + 1.5708) - \pi}{12 + 24} = 0.027647$$

From the table on page 113, or a calculator, 0.027647 is the involute of 24° 22′ 7″ and the cosine corresponding to this angle is 0.91091.

Finally, using Formula (4), the center distance for tight mesh, C' is found:

$$C' = \frac{C \cos \phi_t}{\cos \phi} = \frac{0.5914 \times 0.93394}{0.91091} = 0.606 \text{ inch} \quad (4)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Change-Gears for Helical Gear Hobbing.—If a gear-hobbing machine is not equipped with a differential, there is a fixed relation between the index and feed gears and it is necessary to compensate for even slight errors in the index gear ratio, to avoid excessive lead errors. This may be done readily (as shown by the example to follow) by modifying the ratio of the feed gears slightly, thus offsetting the index gear error and making very accurate leads possible.

Machine Without Differential: The formulas which follow may be applied in computing the index gear ratio.

R = index-gear ratio

L = lead of gear, inches

F = feed per gear revolution, inch

K = machine constant

T = number of threads on hob

N = number of teeth on gear

P_n = normal diametral pitch

P_{nc} = normal circular pitch

A = helix angle, relative to axis

M = feed gear constant

$$R = \frac{L \div F}{(L \div F) \pm 1} \times \frac{KT}{N} = \frac{L}{L \pm F} \times \frac{KT}{N} = \frac{\text{Driving gear sizes}}{\text{Driven gear sizes}} \quad (1)$$

Use minus (–) sign in Formulas (1) and (2) when gear and hob are the same "hand" and plus (+) sign when they are of opposite hand; when *climb* hobbing is to be used, reverse this rule.

$$R = \frac{KT}{N \pm \dfrac{P_n \times \sin A \times F}{\pi}} = \frac{KT}{N \pm \dfrac{\sin A \times F}{P_{nc}}} \quad (2)$$

$$\text{Ratio of feed gears} = \frac{F}{M} \qquad F = \frac{L(NR - KT)}{NR} \quad (3)$$

$$L = \frac{FNR}{(NR - KT)} = \text{lead obtained with available index and feed gears} \quad (4)$$

Note: If gear and hob are of opposite hand, then in Formulas (3) and (4) change $(NR - KT)$ to $(KT - NR)$. This change is also made if gear and hob are of same hand but *climb* hobbing is used.

Example: A right-hand helical gear with 48 teeth of 10 normal diametral pitch, has a lead of 44.0894 inches. The feed is to be 0.035 inch, with whatever slight adjustment may be necessary to compensate for the error in available index gears. $K = 30$ and $M = 0.075$. A single-thread right-hand hob is to be used.

$$R = \frac{44.0894}{44.0894 - 0.035} \times \frac{30 \times 1}{48} = 0.62549654$$

Using the method of *Conjugate Fractions* beginning on page 5, several suitable ratios close to 0.62549654 were found. One of these, $(34 \times 53)/(43 \times 67) = 0.625477264839$, will be used as the index ratio. Other usable ratios and their decimal values were found to be as follows:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\frac{32\times 38}{27\times 72}=0.6255144 \qquad \frac{27\times 42}{42\times 37}=0.62548263$$
$$\frac{44\times 29}{34\times 60}=0.6254902 \qquad \frac{26\times 97}{96\times 42}=0.62549603$$
$$\frac{20\times 41}{23\times 57}=0.62547674$$

Index ratio error = 0.62549654 – 0.62547726 = 0.00001928.

Now use Formula (3) to find slight change required in rate of feed. This change compensates sufficiently for the error in available index gears.

Change in Feed Rate: Insert in Formula (3) obtainable index ratio.

$$F=\frac{44.0894\times(48\times 0.62547726-30)}{48\times 0.62547726}=0.0336417$$
$$\text{Modified feed gear ratio}=\frac{F}{M}=\frac{0.0336417}{0.075}=0.448556$$
$$\log 0.448556=\bar{1}.651817 \qquad \text{log of reciprocal}=0.348183$$

To find close approximation to modified feed gear ratio, proceed as in finding suitable gears for index ratio, thus obtaining $\frac{106}{71}\times\frac{112}{75}$. Inverting, modified feed gear ratio = $\frac{71}{106}\times\frac{75}{112}=0.448534$.

Modified feed F = obtainable modified feed ratio × M = 0.448534 × 0.075 = 0.03364 inch. If the feed rate is not modified, even a small error in the index gear ratio may result in an excessive lead error.

Checking Accuracy of Lead: The modified feed and obtainable index ratio are inserted in Formula (4). Desired lead = 44.0894 inches. Lead obtained = 44.087196 inches; hence the computed error = 44.0894 – 44.087196 = 0.002204 inch or about 0.00005 inch per inch of lead.

Machine with Differential: If a machine is equipped with a differential, the *lead gears* are computed in order to obtain the required helix angle and lead. The instructions of the hobbing machine manufacturer should be followed in computing the lead gears, because the ratio formula is affected by the location of the differential gears. If these gears are *ahead* of the index gears, the lead gear ratio is not affected by a change in the number of teeth to be cut (see Formula (5)); hence, the same lead gears are used when, for example, a gear and pinion are cut on the same machine. In the formulas which follow, the notation is the same as previously given, with these exceptions: R_d = lead gear ratio for machine with differential; P_a = axial or linear pitch of helical gear = distance from center of one tooth to center of next tooth measured parallel to gear axis = total lead L ÷ number of teeth N.

$$R_d=\frac{P_a\times T}{K}=\frac{L\times T}{N\times K}=\frac{\pi\times \operatorname{cosec} A\times T}{P_n\times K}=\frac{\text{Driven gear sizes}}{\text{Driving gear sizes}} \qquad (5)$$

The number of hob threads T is included in the formula because double-thread hobs are used sometimes, especially for roughing in order to reduce the hobbing time. Lead gears having a ratio sufficiently close to the required ratio may be determined by using the table of gear ratio logarithms as previously described in connection with the non-differential type of machine. When using a machine equipped with a differential, the effect of a lead-gear ratio error upon the lead of the gear is small in comparison with the effect of an index gear error when using a non-differential type of machine. The lead obtained with a given or obtainable lead gear ratio may be determined by the following formula: $L=(R_dNK)\div T$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In this formula, R_d represents the ratio obtained with available gears. If the given lead is 44.0894 inches, as in the preceding example, then the desired ratio as obtained with Formula (5) would be 0.9185292 if $K = 1$. Assume that the lead gears selected by using logs of ratios have a ratio of 0.9184704; then this ratio error of 0.0000588 would result in a computed lead error of only 0.000065 inch per inch.

Formula (5), as mentioned, applies to machines having the differential located *ahead* of the index gears. If the differential is located after the index gears, it is necessary to change lead gears whenever the index gears are changed for hobbing a different number of teeth, as indicated by the following formula which gives the lead gear ratio. In this formula, D = pitch diameter.

$$R_d = \frac{L \times T}{K} = \frac{D \times \pi \times T}{K \times \tan A} = \frac{\text{Driven gear sizes}}{\text{Driving gear sizes}} \quad (6)$$

General Remarks on Helical Gear Hobbing.—In cutting teeth having large angles, it is desirable to have the direction of helix of the hob the same as the direction of helix of the gear, or in other words, the gear and the hob of the same "hand." Then the direction of the cut will come against the movement of the blank. At ordinary angles, however, one hob will cut both right- and left-hand gears. In setting up the hobbing machine for helical gears, care should be taken to see that the vertical feed does not trip until the machine has been stopped or the hob has fed down past the finished gear.

Herringbone Gears

Double helical or herringbone gears are commonly used in parallel-shaft transmissions, especially when a smooth, continuous action (due to the gradual overlapping engagement of the teeth) is essential, as in high-speed drives where the pitch-line velocity may range from about 1000 to 3000 feet per minute (305–914 m/min) in commercial gearing and up to 12,000 feet per minute (3658 m/min) or higher in more specialized installations. These relatively high speeds are encountered in marine reduction gears, in certain speed-reducing and speed-increasing units, and in various other transmissions, particularly in connection with steam turbine and electric motor drives.

General Classes of Helical Gear Problems.—There are two general classes of problems. In one, the problem is to design gears capable of transmitting a given amount of power at a given speed, safely and without excessive wear; hence, the required proportions must be determined. In the second, the proportions and speed are known and the power-transmitting capacity is required. The first is the more difficult and common problem.

Causes of Herringbone Gear Failures.—Where failure occurs in a herringbone gear transmission, it is rarely due to tooth breakage but usually to excessive wear or subsurface failures, such as pitting and spalling; hence, it is common practice to base the design of such gears upon durability, or upon tooth pressures which are within the allowable limits for wear. In this connection, it seems to have been well established by tests of both spur gears and herringbone gears, that there is a critical surface pressure value for teeth having given physical properties and coefficient of friction. According to these tests, pressures above the critical value result in rapid wear and a short gear life, whereas when pressures are below the critical, wear is negligible. The yield point or endurance limit of the material marks the critical loading point, and in practical designing a reasonable factor of safety would, of course, be employed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

OTHER GEAR TYPES

Elliptic Gears

Gears of this type provide simple means of obtaining a quick-return motion but they present a rather cumbersome manufacturing problem and, as a general rule, it is preferable to obtain quick-return motions by some other type of mechanism. When elliptic gears are used, the two gears that mesh with each other must be equal in size, and each gear must revolve about one of the foci of the ellipse forming the pitch line, as indicated by the diagram, in Fig. 1. By the use of elliptic gears so mounted, it is possible to obtain a variable motion of the driven shaft, because the gear on the driving shaft, while revolving one half of a revolution, will engage with only a small portion of the circumference of the driven gear, while during the other half of its revolution, the driving gear will engage with a great deal more than one-half of the total number of teeth in the driven gear; hence, the cutting stroke of a machine tool, for example, may be made to have a slow motion, while the return stroke is at a rapid rate. The ellipse has two points, each of which is called a *focus*, located as indicated at *A* and *B*. The sum of the distance between the foci and the elliptic curve is constant at all points and is equal to the longer or major axis of the ellipse. On account of this peculiarity of the ellipse, two equal ellipses can be made to mesh with each other during a complete revolution about their axes, if one is mounted on a shaft at its focus *A* and the other at its focus *B*.

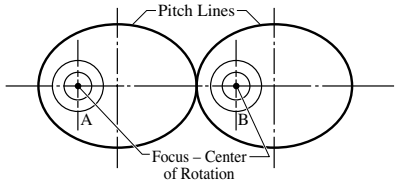


Fig. 1. General Arrangement of Elliptic Gears.

Planetary Gearing

Planetary or epicyclic gearing provides means of obtaining a compact design of transmission, with driving and driven shafts in line, and a large speed reduction when required. Typical arrangements of planetary gearing are shown by the following diagrams which are accompanied by speed ratio formulas. When planetary gears are arranged as shown by Fig. 5, Fig. 6, Fig. 9 and Fig. 12, the speed of the follower relative to the driver is increased, whereas Fig. 7, Fig. 8, Fig. 10, and Fig. 11 illustrate speed-reducing mechanisms.

Direction of Rotation.—In using the following formulas, if the final result is preceded by a minus sign (negative), this indicates that the driver and follower will rotate in opposite directions; otherwise, both will rotate in the same direction.

Compound Drive.—The formulas accompanying Fig. 19 through Fig. 22 are for obtaining the speed ratios when there are *two* driving members rotating at different speeds. For example, in Fig. 19, the central shaft with its attached link is one driver. The internal gear z, instead of being fixed, is also rotated. In Fig. 22, if $z = 24$, $B = 60$ and $S = 3\frac{1}{2}$, with both drivers rotating in the same direction, then $F = 0$, thus indicating, in this case, the point where a larger value of S will reverse follower rotation.

Planetary Bevel Gears.—Two forms of planetary gears of the bevel type are shown in Fig. 23 and Fig. 24. The planet gear in Fig. 23 rotates about a fixed bevel gear at the center of which is the driven shaft. Fig. 24 illustrates the Humpage reduction gear. This is sometimes referred to as cone-pulley back-gearing because of its use within the cone pulleys of certain types of machine tools.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ratios of Planetary or Epicyclic Gearing

D = rotation of *driver* per revolution of follower or driven member

F = rotation of *follower* or driven member per revolution of driver. (In Fig. 1 through Fig. 4, F = rotation of planet type follower about its axis.)

A = size of driving gear (use either number of teeth or pitch diameter). Note: When follower derives its motion both from A and from a secondary driving member, A = size of *initial* driving gear, and formula gives speed relationship between A and follower.

B = size of *driven gear or follower* (use either pitch diameter or number of teeth)

C = size of *fixed gear* (use either pitch diameter or number of teeth)

x = size of *planet gear* as shown by diagram (use either pitch diameter or number of teeth)

y = size of *planet gear* as shown by diagram (use either pitch diameter or number of teeth)

z = size of secondary or *auxiliary driving gear*, when follower derives its motion from two driving members

S = rotation of *secondary driver*, per revolution of *initial driver*. S is negative when secondary and initial drivers rotate in opposite directions. (Formulas in which S is used give speed relationship between follower and the initial driver.)

Note: In all cases, if D is known, $F = 1 \div D$, or, if F is known, $D = 1 \div F$.

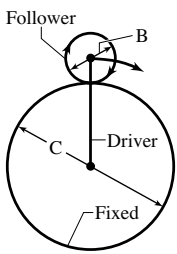


Fig. 1.

$$F = 1 + \frac{C}{B}$$

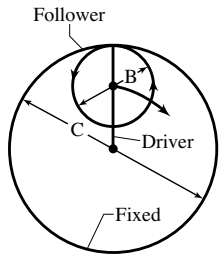


Fig. 2.

$$F = 1 - \frac{C}{B}$$

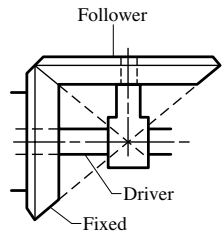


Fig. 3.

$$F = \frac{C}{B}$$

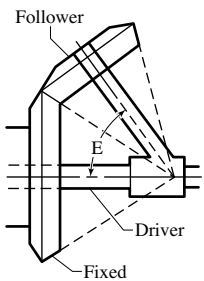


Fig. 4.

$$F = \cos E + \frac{C}{B}$$

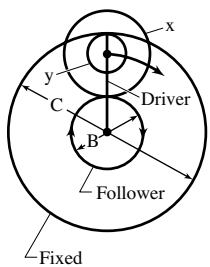


Fig. 5.

$$F = 1 + \frac{x \times C}{y \times B}$$

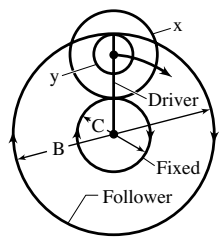


Fig. 6.

$$F = 1 + \frac{y \times C}{x \times B}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ratios of Planetary or Epicyclic Gearing *(Continued)*

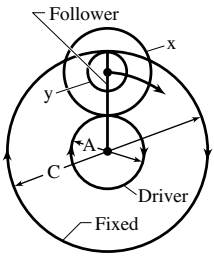


Fig. 7.

$$D = 1 + \frac{x \times C}{y \times A}$$

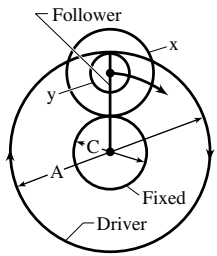


Fig. 8.

$$D = 1 + \frac{y \times C}{x \times A}$$

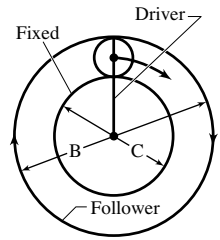


Fig. 9.

$$F = 1 + \frac{C}{B}$$

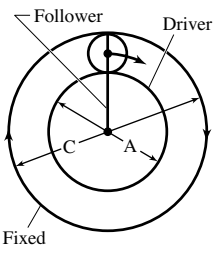


Fig. 10.

$$D = 1 + \frac{C}{A}$$

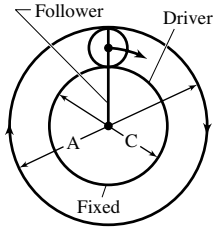


Fig. 11.

$$D = 1 + \frac{C}{A}$$

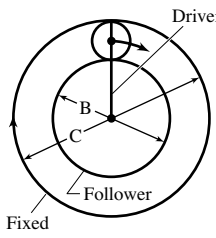


Fig. 12.

$$F = 1 + \frac{C}{B}$$

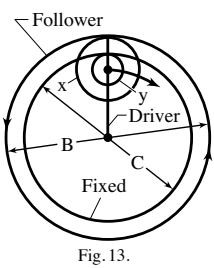


Fig. 13.

$$F = 1 - \left(\frac{C \times x}{y \times B}\right)$$

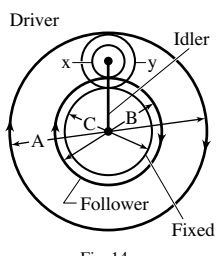


Fig. 14.

$$D = \frac{1 + \frac{C}{A}}{1 - \left(\frac{C \times x}{y \times B}\right)}$$

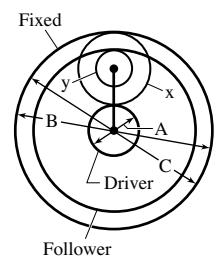


Fig. 15.

$$D = \frac{1 + \frac{C}{A}}{1 - \left(\frac{C \times y}{x \times B}\right)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ratios of Planetary or Epicyclic Gearing *(Continued)*

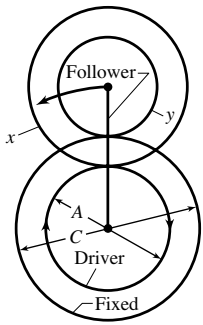


Fig. 16.

$$D = 1 - \left(\frac{C \times x}{y \times A}\right)$$

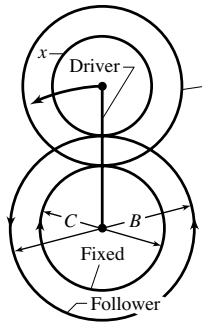


Fig. 17.

$$F = 1 - \left(\frac{C \times x}{y \times B}\right)$$

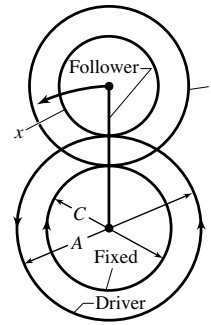


Fig. 18.

$$D = 1 - \left(\frac{C \times x}{y \times A}\right)$$

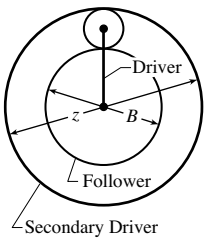


Fig. 19.

$$F = 1 + \frac{z \times (1 - S)}{B}$$

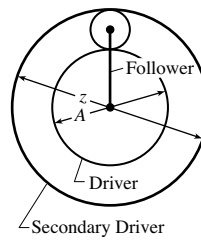


Fig. 20.

$$D = \frac{A + z}{A + (S \times z)}$$

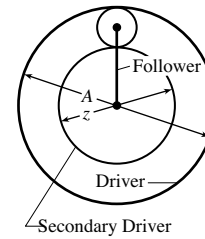


Fig. 21.

$$D = \frac{A + z}{A + (S \times z)}$$

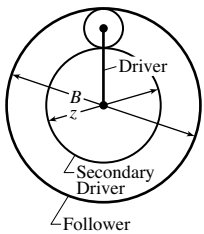


Fig. 22.

$$F = 1 + \frac{z \times (1 - S)}{B}$$

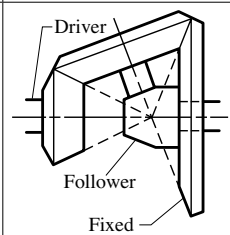


Fig. 23.

$$D = 1 + \frac{C}{A}$$

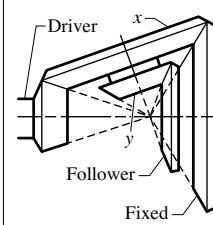


Fig. 24.

$$D = \frac{1 + \frac{C}{A}}{1 - \left(\frac{C \times y}{x \times B}\right)}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ratchet Gearing

Ratchet gearing may be used to transmit intermittent motion, or its only function may be to prevent the ratchet wheel from rotating backward. Ratchet gearing of this latter form is commonly used in connection with hoisting mechanisms of various kinds, to prevent the hoisting drum or shaft from rotating in a reverse direction under the action of the load.

Types of Ratchet Gearing

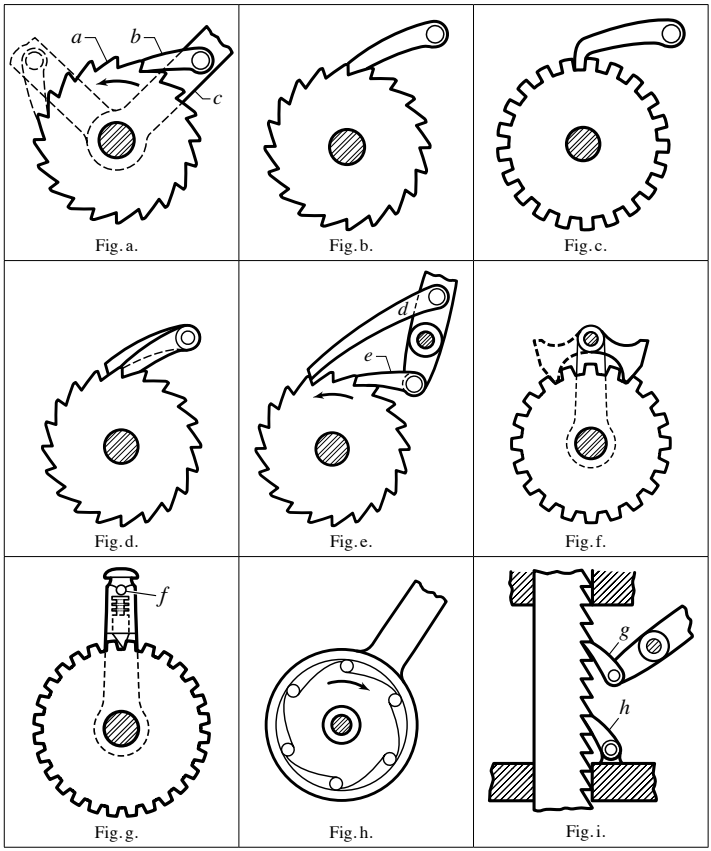


Fig. a. Fig. b. Fig. c.

Fig. d. Fig. e. Fig. f.

Fig. g. Fig. h. Fig. i.

Ratchet gearing in its simplest form consists of a toothed ratchet wheel *a* (see Fig. a), and a pawl or detent *b*, and it may be used to transmit intermittent motion or to prevent relative motion between two parts except in one direction. The pawl *b* is pivoted to lever *c* which, when given an oscillating movement, imparts an intermittent rotary movement to ratchet wheel *a*. Fig. b illustrates another application of the ordinary ratchet and pawl mechanism. In this instance, the pawl is pivoted to a stationary member and its only function is to prevent the ratchet wheel from rotating backward. With the stationary design, illustrated at

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fig. c, the pawl prevents the ratchet wheel from rotating in either direction, so long as it is in engagement with the wheel.

The principle of *multiple-pawl ratchet gearing* is illustrated at Fig. d, which shows the use of two pawls. One of these pawls is longer than the other, by an amount equal to one-half the pitch of the ratchet-wheel teeth, so that the practical effect is that of reducing the pitch one-half. By placing a number of driving pawls side by side and proportioning their lengths according to the pitch of the teeth, a very fine feed can be obtained with a ratchet wheel of comparatively coarse pitch.

This method of obtaining a fine feed from relatively coarse-pitch ratchets may be preferable to the use of single ratchets of fine pitch which, although providing the feed required, may have considerably weaker teeth.

The type of ratchet gearing shown at Fig. e is sometimes employed to impart a rotary movement to the ratchet wheel for both the forward and backward motions of the lever to which the two pawls are attached.

A simple form of *reversing ratchet* is illustrated at Fig. f. The teeth of the wheel are so shaped that either side may be used for driving by simply changing the position of the double-ended pawl, as indicated by the full and dotted lines.

Another form of reversible ratchet gearing for shapers is illustrated at Fig. g. The pawl, in this case, instead of being a pivoted latch, is in the form of a plunger which is free to move in the direction of its axis, but is normally held into engagement with the ratchet wheel by a small spring. When the pawl is lifted and turned one-half revolution, the driving face then engages the opposite sides of the teeth and the ratchet wheel is given an intermittent rotary motion in the opposite direction.

The *frictional type* of ratchet gearing differs from the designs previously referred to, in that there is no positive engagement between the driving and driven members of the ratchet mechanism, the motion being transmitted by frictional resistance. One type of frictional ratchet gearing is illustrated at Fig. h. Rollers or balls are placed between the ratchet wheel and an outer ring which, when turned in one direction, causes the rollers or balls to wedge between the wheel and ring as they move up the inclined edges of the teeth.

Fig. i illustrates one method of utilizing ratchet gearing for moving the driven member in a straight line, as in the case of a lifting jack. The pawl *g* is pivoted to the operating lever of the jack and does the lifting, whereas the pawl *h* holds the load while the lifting pawl *g* is being returned preparatory to another lifting movement.

Shape of Ratchet Wheel Teeth.—When designing ratchet gearing, it is important to so shape the teeth that the pawl will remain in engagement when a load is applied. The faces of the teeth which engage the end of the pawl should be in such relation with the center of the pawl pivot that a line perpendicular to the face of the engaging tooth will pass somewhere between the center of the ratchet wheel and the center of the pivot about which the pawl swings. This is true if the pawl *pushes* the ratchet wheel, or if the ratchet wheel *pushes* the pawl. However, if the pawl *pulls* the ratchet wheel or if the ratchet wheel *pulls* the pawl, the perpendicular from the face of the ratchet teeth should fall outside the pawl pivot center. Ratchet teeth may be either cut by a milling cutter having the correct angle, or hobbed in a gear-hobbing machine by the use of a special hob.

Pitch of Ratchet Wheel Teeth.—The pitch of ratchet wheels used for holding suspended loads may be calculated by the following formula, in which P = circular pitch, in inches (mm), measured at the outside circumference; M = turning moment acting upon the ratchet wheel shaft, in inch-pounds (N-mm); L = length of tooth face (thickness of ratchet gear), in inches (millimeters); S = safe stress (for steel, 2500 pounds per square inch or 17 MPa when subjected to shock, and 4000 pounds per square inch or 28 MPa when not subjected to shock); N = number of teeth in ratchet wheel; F = a factor the value of which is 50 for ratchet gears with 12 teeth or less, 35 for gears having from 12 to 20 teeth, and 20 for gears having over 20 teeth:

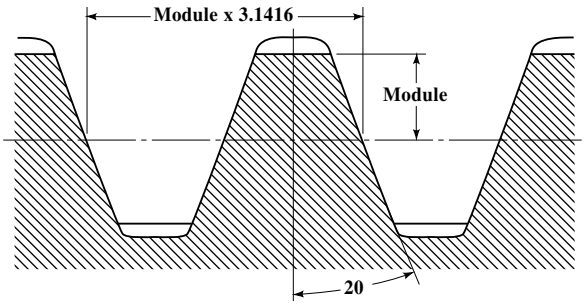
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$P = \sqrt{\frac{FM}{LSN}}$$

This formula has been used in the calculation of ratchet gears for crane design.

Module System Gear Design.—The *module* of a gear is equal to the pitch diameter divided by the number of teeth, whereas *diametral pitch* is equal to the number of teeth divided by the pitch diameter. The module system (see accompanying table and diagram) is in general use in countries that have adopted the metric system; hence, the term module is usually understood to mean the pitch diameter *in millimeters* divided by the number of teeth. The module system, however, may also be based on inch measurements and then it is known as the English module to avoid confusion with the metric module. Module is an actual dimension, whereas diametral pitch is only a ratio. Thus, if the pitch diameter of a gear is 50 millimeters and the number of teeth 25, the module is 2, which means that there are 2 millimeters of pitch diameter for each tooth. The table *Tooth Dimensions Based Upon Module System* shows the relation among module, diametral pitch, and circular pitch.

German Standard Tooth Form for Spur and Bevel Gears *DIN 867*



The flanks or sides are straight (involute system) and the pressure angle is 20 degrees. The shape of the root clearance space and the amount of clearance depend upon the method of cutting and special requirements. The amount of clearance may vary from 0.1 × module to 0.3 × module.

To Find	Module Known	Circular Pitch Known
Addendum	Equals module	0.31823 × Circular pitch
Dedendum	1.157 × module* 1.167 × module**	0.3683 × Circular pitch* 0.3714 × Circular pitch**
Working Depth	2 × module	0.6366 × Circular pitch
Total Depth	2.157 × module* 2.167 × module**	0.6866 × Circular pitch* 0.6898 × Circulate pitch**
Tooth Thickness on Pitch Line	1.5708 × module	0.5 × Circular pitch

Formulas for dedendum and total depth, marked (*) are used when clearance equals 0.157 × module. Formulas marked (**) are used when clearance equals one-sixth module. It is common practice among American cutter manufacturers to make the clearance of metric or module cutters equal to 0.157 × module.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tooth Dimensions Based Upon Module System

Module, *DIN* Standard Series	Equivalent Diametral Pitch	Circular Pitch		Addendum, Millimeters	Dedendum, Millimeters[a]	Whole Depth,[a] Millimeters	Whole Depth,[b] Millimeters
		Millimeters	Inches				
0.3	84.667	0.943	0.0371	0.30	0.35	0.650	0.647
0.4	63.500	1.257	0.0495	0.40	0.467	0.867	0.863
0.5	50.800	1.571	0.0618	0.50	0.583	1.083	1.079
0.6	42.333	1.885	0.0742	0.60	0.700	1.300	1.294
0.7	36.286	2.199	0.0865	0.70	0.817	1.517	1.510
0.8	31.750	2.513	0.0989	0.80	0.933	1.733	1.726
0.9	28.222	2.827	0.1113	0.90	1.050	1.950	1.941
1	25.400	3.142	0.1237	1.00	1.167	2.167	2.157
1.25	20.320	3.927	0.1546	1.25	1.458	2.708	2.697
1.5	16.933	4.712	0.1855	1.50	1.750	3.250	3.236
1.75	14.514	5.498	0.2164	1.75	2.042	3.792	3.774
2	12.700	6.283	0.2474	2.00	2.333	4.333	4.314
2.25	11.289	7.069	0.2783	2.25	2.625	4.875	4.853
2.5	10.160	7.854	0.3092	2.50	2.917	5.417	5.392
2.75	9.236	8.639	0.3401	2.75	3.208	5.958	5.932
3	8.466	9.425	0.3711	3.00	3.500	6.500	6.471
3.25	7.815	10.210	0.4020	3.25	3.791	7.041	7.010
3.5	7.257	10.996	0.4329	3.50	4.083	7.583	7.550
3.75	6.773	11.781	0.4638	3.75	4.375	8.125	8.089
4	6.350	12.566	0.4947	4.00	4.666	8.666	8.628
4.5	5.644	14.137	0.5566	4.50	5.25	9.750	9.707
5	5.080	15.708	0.6184	5.00	5.833	10.833	10.785
5.5	4.618	17.279	0.6803	5.50	6.416	11.916	11.864
6	4.233	18.850	0.7421	6.00	7.000	13.000	12.942
6.5	3.908	20.420	0.8035	6.50	7.583	14.083	14.021
7	3.628	21.991	0.8658	7.	8.166	15.166	15.099
8	3.175	25.132	0.9895	8.	9.333	17.333	17.256
9	2.822	28.274	1.1132	9.	10.499	19.499	19.413
10	2.540	31.416	1.2368	10.	11.666	21.666	21.571
11	2.309	34.558	1.3606	11.	12.833	23.833	23.728
12	2.117	37.699	1.4843	12.	14.000	26.000	25.884
13	1.954	40.841	1.6079	13.	15.166	28.166	28.041
14	1.814	43.982	1.7317	14.	16.332	30.332	30.198
15	1.693	47.124	1.8541	15.	17.499	32.499	32.355
16	1.587	50.266	1.9790	16.	18.666	34.666	34.512
18	1.411	56.549	2.2263	18.	21.000	39.000	38.826
20	1.270	62.832	2.4737	20.	23.332	43.332	43.142
22	1.155	69.115	2.7210	22.	25.665	47.665	47.454
24	1.058	75.398	2.9685	24.	28.000	52.000	51.768
27	0.941	84.823	3.339	27.	31.498	58.498	58.239
30	0.847	94.248	3.711	30.	35.000	65.000	64.713
33	0.770	103.673	4.082	33.	38.498	71.498	71.181
36	0.706	113.097	4.453	36.	41.998	77.998	77.652
39	0.651	122.522	4.824	39.	45.497	84.497	84.123
42	0.605	131.947	5.195	42.	48.997	90.997	90.594
45	0.564	141.372	5.566	45.	52.497	97.497	97.065
50	0.508	157.080	6.184	50.	58.330	108.330	107.855
55	0.462	172.788	6.803	55.	64.163	119.163	118.635
60	0.423	188.496	7.421	60.	69.996	129.996	129.426
65	0.391	204.204	8.040	65.	75.829	140.829	140.205
70	0.363	219.911	8.658	70.	81.662	151.662	150.997
75	0.339	235.619	9.276	75.	87.495	162.495	161.775

[a] Dedendum and total depth when clearance = 0.1666 × module, or one-sixth module.
[b] Total depth equivalent to American standard full-depth teeth. (Clearance = 0.157 × module.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rules for Module System of Gearing

To Find	Rule
Metric Module	*Rule 1:* To find the metric module, divide the pitch diameter in millimeters by the number of teeth. *Example 1:* The pitch diameter of a gear is 200 millimeters and the number of teeth, 40; then $\text{Module} = \frac{200}{40} = 5$ *Rule 2:* Multiply circular pitch in millimeters by 0.3183. *Example 2:* (Same as Example 1. Circular pitch of this gear equals 15.708 millimeters.) $\text{Module} = 15.708 \times 0.3183 = 5$ *Rule 3:* Divide outside diameter in millimeters by the number of teeth plus 2.
English Module	*Note:* The module system is usually applied when gear dimensions are expressed in millimeters, but module may also be based on inch measurements. *Rule:* To find the English module, divide pitch diameter in inches by the number of teeth. *Example:* A gear has 48 teeth and a pitch diameter of 12 inches. $\text{Module} = \frac{12}{48} = \frac{1}{4}$ module or 4 diametral pitch
Metric Module Equivalent to Diametral Pitch	*Rule:* To find the metric module equivalent to a given diametral pitch, divide 25.4 by the diametral pitch. *Example:* Determine metric module equivalent to 10 diametral pitch. $\text{Equivalent module} = \frac{25.4}{10} = 2.54$ *Note:* The nearest standard module is 2.5.
Diametral Pitch Equivalent to Metric Module	*Rule:* To find the diametral pitch equivalent to a given module, divide 25.4 by the module. (25.4 = number of millimeters per inch.) *Example:* The module is 12; determine equivalent diametral pitch. $\text{Equivalent diametral pitch} = \frac{25.4}{12} = 2.117$ *Note:* A diametral pitch of 2 is the nearest *standard* equivalent.
Pitch Diameter	*Rule:* Multiply number of teeth by module. *Example:* The metric module is 8 and the gear has 40 teeth; then $D = 40 \times 8 = 320$ millimeters $= 12.598$ inches
Outside Diameter	*Rule:* Add 2 to the number of teeth and multiply sum by the module. *Example:* A gear has 40 teeth and module is 6. Find outside or blank diameter. $\text{Outside diameter} = (40 + 2) \times 6 = 252$ millimeters

For tooth dimensions, see table *Tooth Dimensions Based Upon Module System*; also formulas in *German Standard Tooth Form for Spur and Bevel Gears DIN 867*.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Equivalent Diametral Pitches, Circular Pitches, and Metric Modules
Commonly Used Pitches and Modules in Bold Type

Diametral Pitch	Circular Pitch, Inches	Module Millimeters	Diametral Pitch	Circular Pitch, Inches	Module Millimeters	Diametral Pitch	Circular Pitch, Inches	Module Millimeters
1/2	6.2832	50.8000	2.2848	**1 3/8**	11.1170	10.0531	5/16	2.5266
0.5080	6.1842	**50**	2.3091	1.3605	**11**	10.1600	0.3092	**2 1/2**
0.5236	**6**	48.5104	**2 1/2**	1.2566	10.1600	**11**	0.2856	2.3091
0.5644	5.5658	**45**	2.5133	**1 1/4**	10.1063	**12**	0.2618	2.1167
0.5712	**5 1/2**	44.4679	2.5400	1.2368	**10**	12.5664	1/4	2.0213
0.6283	**5**	40.4253	**2 3/4**	1.1424	9.2364	12.7000	0.2474	**2**
0.6350	4.9474	**40**	2.7925	**1 1/8**	9.0957	**13**	0.2417	1.9538
0.6981	**4 1/2**	36.3828	2.8222	1.1132	**9**	**14**	0.2244	1.8143
0.7257	4.3290	**35**	**3**	1.0472	8.4667	**15**	0.2094	1.6933
3/4	4.1888	33.8667	3.1416	**1**	8.0851	**16**	0.1963	1.5875
0.7854	**4**	32.3403	3.1750	0.9895	**8**	16.7552	3/16	1.5160
0.8378	**3 3/4**	30.3190	3.3510	**15/16**	7.5797	16.9333	0.1855	**1 1/2**
0.8467	3.7105	**30**	**3 1/2**	0.8976	7.2571	**17**	0.1848	1.4941
0.8976	**3 1/2**	28.2977	3.5904	7/8	7.0744	**18**	0.1745	1.4111
0.9666	**3 1/4**	26.2765	3.6286	0.8658	**7**	**19**	0.1653	1.3368
1	3.1416	25.4000	3.8666	**13/16**	6.5691	**20**	0.1571	1.2700
1.0160	3.0921	**25**	3.9078	0.8040	**6 1/2**	**22**	0.1428	1.1545
1.0472	**3**	24.2552	**4**	0.7854	6.3500	**24**	0.1309	1.0583
1.1424	**2 3/4**	22.2339	4.1888	**3/4**	6.0638	**25**	0.1257	1.0160
1 1/4	2.5133	20.3200	4.2333	0.7421	**6**	25.1328	1/8	1.0106
1.2566	**2 1/2**	20.2127	4.5696	**11/16**	5.5585	25.4000	0.1237	**1**
1.2700	2.4737	**20**	4.6182	0.6803	**5 1/2**	**26**	0.1208	0.9769
1.3963	**2 1/4**	18.1914	**5**	0.6283	5.0800	**28**	0.1122	0.9071
1.4111	2.2263	**18**	5.0265	**5/8**	5.0532	**30**	0.1047	0.8467
1 1/2	2.0944	16.9333	5.0800	0.6184	**5**	**32**	0.0982	0.7937
1.5708	**2**	16.1701	5.5851	**9/16**	4.5478	**34**	0.0924	0.7470
1.5875	1.9790	**16**	5.6443	0.5566	**4 1/2**	**36**	0.0873	0.7056
1.6755	**1 7/8**	15.1595	**6**	0.5236	4.2333	**38**	0.0827	0.6684
1.6933	1.8553	**15**	6.2832	**1/2**	4.0425	**40**	0.0785	0.6350
1 3/4	1.7952	14.5143	6.3500	0.4947	**4**	**42**	0.0748	0.6048
1.7952	**1 3/4**	14.1489	**7**	0.4488	3.6286	**44**	0.0714	0.5773
1.8143	1.7316	**14**	7.1808	**7/16**	3.5372	**46**	0.0683	0.5522
1.9333	**1 5/8**	13.1382	7.2571	0.4329	**3 1/2**	**48**	0.0654	0.5292
1.9538	1.6079	**13**	**8**	0.3927	3.1750	**50**	0.0628	0.5080
2	1.5708	12.7000	8.3776	**3/8**	3.0319	50.2656	1/16	0.5053
2.0944	**1 1/2**	12.1276	8.4667	0.3711	**3**	50.8000	0.0618	1/2
2.1167	1.4842	**12**	**9**	0.3491	2.8222	**56**	0.0561	0.4536
2 1/4	1.3963	11.2889	**10**	0.3142	2.5400	**60**	0.0524	0.4233

The module of a gear is the pitch diameter divided by the number of teeth. The module may be expressed in any units; but when no units are stated, it is understood to be in millimeters. The metric module, therefore, equals the pitch diameter in millimeters divided by the number of teeth. To find the metric module equivalent to a given diametral pitch, divide 25.4 by the diametral pitch. To find the diametral pitch equivalent to a given module, divide 25.4 by the module. (25.4 = number of millimeters per inch.)

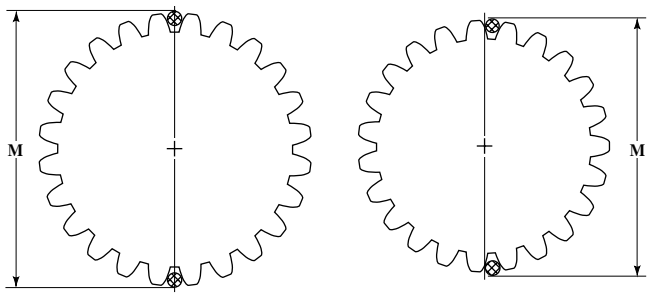
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CHECKING GEAR SIZES

Checking Gear Size by Measurement Over Wires or Pins

The wire or pin method of checking gear sizes is accurate, easily applied, and especially useful in shops with limited inspection equipment. Two cylindrical wires or pins of predetermined diameter are placed in diametrically opposite tooth spaces (see diagram). If the gear has an odd number of teeth, the wires are located as nearly opposite as possible, as shown by the diagram at the right. The overall measurement *M* is checked by using any sufficiently accurate method of measurement. The value of measurement *M* when the pitch diameter is correct can be determined easily and quickly by means of the calculated values in the accompanying tables.

Measurements for Checking External Spur Gears when Wire Diameter Equals 1.728 Divided by Diametral Pitch.—Table 1 and Table 2 give measurements *M*, in inches, for checking the pitch diameters of external spur gears of 1 diametral pitch. For any other diametral pitch, divide the measurement given in the table by whatever diametral pitch is required. The result shows what measurement *M* should be when the pitch diameter is correct *and there is no allowance for backlash*. The procedure for obtaining a given amount of backlash will be explained later. Table 1 through Table 4 inclusive are based on wire sizes conforming to the Van Keuren standard. For external spur gears, the wire size equals 1.728 divided by the diametral pitch. The wire diameters for various diametral pitches will be found in the left-hand section of Table 5.



Even Number of Teeth: Table 1 is for even numbers of teeth. To illustrate the use of the table, assume that a spur gear has 32 teeth of 4 diametral pitch and a pressure angle of 20 degrees. Table 1 shows that the measurement for 1 diametral pitch is 34.4130; hence, for 4 diametral pitch, the measurement equals 34.4130 ÷ 4 = 8.6032 inches. This dimension is the measurement over the wires when the pitch diameter is correct, provided there is no allowance for backlash. The wire diameter here equals 1.728 ÷ 4 = 0.432 inch (Table 5).

Measurement for even numbers of teeth above 170 and not in Table 1 may be determined as shown by the following example: Assume that number of teeth = 240 and pressure angle = $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees; then, for 1 diametral pitch, figure at left of decimal point = given No. of teeth + 2 = 240 + 2 = 242. Figure at right of decimal point lies between decimal values given in table for 200 teeth and 300 teeth and is obtained by interpolation. Thus, 240 – 200 = 40 (change to 0.40); 0.5395 – 0.5321 = 0.0074 = difference between decimal values for 300 and 200 teeth; hence, decimal required = 0.5321 + (0.40 × 0.0074) = 0.53506. Total dimension = 242.53506 divided by the diametral pitch required.

Odd Number of Teeth: Table 2 is for odd numbers of teeth. Measurement for odd numbers above 171 and not in Table 2 may be determined as shown by the following example: Assume that number of teeth = 335 and pressure angle = 20 degrees; then, for 1 diametral

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

pitch, figure at left of decimal point = given No. of teeth + 2 = 335 + 2 = 337. Figure at right of decimal point lies between decimal values given in table for 301 and 401 teeth. Thus, 335 − 301 = 34 (change to 0.34); 0.4565 − 0.4538 = 0.0027; hence, decimal required = 0.4538 + (0.34 × 0.0027) = 0.4547. Total dimension = 337.4547.

Table 1. Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.728}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
6	8.2846	8.2927	8.3032	8.3340	8.3759
8	10.3160	10.3196	10.3271	10.3533	10.3919
10	12.3399	12.3396	12.3445	12.3667	12.4028
12	14.3590	14.3552	14.3578	14.3768	14.4108
14	16.3746	16.3677	16.3683	16.3846	16.4169
16	18.3877	18.3780	18.3768	18.3908	18.4217
18	20.3989	20.3866	20.3840	20.3959	20.4256
20	22.4087	22.3940	22.3900	22.4002	22.4288
22	24.4172	24.4004	24.3952	24.4038	24.4315
24	26.4247	26.4060	26.3997	26.4069	26.4339
26	28.4314	28.4110	28.4036	28.4096	28.4358
28	30.4374	30.4154	30.4071	30.4120	30.4376
30	32.4429	32.4193	32.4102	32.4141	32.4391
32	34.4478	34.4228	34.4130	34.4159	34.4405
34	36.4523	36.4260	36.4155	36.4176	36.4417
36	38.4565	38.4290	38.4178	38.4191	38.4428
38	40.4603	40.4317	40.4198	40.4205	40.4438
40	42.4638	42.4341	42.4217	42.4217	42.4447
42	44.4671	44.4364	44.4234	44.4228	44.4455
44	46.4701	46.4385	46.4250	46.4239	46.4463
46	48.4729	48.4404	48.4265	48.4248	48.4470
48	50.4756	50.4422	50.4279	50.4257	50.4476
50	52.4781	52.4439	52.4292	52.4265	52.4482
52	54.4804	54.4454	54.4304	54.4273	54.4487
54	56.4826	56.4469	56.4315	56.4280	56.4492
56	58.4847	58.4483	58.4325	58.4287	58.4497
58	60.4866	60.4496	60.4335	60.4293	60.4501
60	62.4884	62.4509	62.4344	62.4299	62.4506
62	64.4902	64.4520	64.4352	64.4304	64.4510
64	66.4918	66.4531	66.4361	66.4309	66.4513
66	68.4933	68.4542	68.4369	68.4314	68.4517
68	70.4948	70.4552	70.4376	70.4319	70.4520
70	72.4963	72.4561	72.4383	72.4323	72.4523
72	74.4977	74.4570	74.4390	74.4327	74.4526
74	76.4990	76.4578	76.4396	76.4331	76.4529
76	78.5002	78.4586	78.4402	78.4335	78.4532
78	80.5014	80.4594	80.4408	80.4339	80.4534
80	82.5026	82.4601	82.4413	82.4342	82.4536
82	84.5037	84.4608	84.4418	84.4345	84.4538
84	86.5047	86.4615	86.4423	86.4348	86.4540
86	88.5057	88.4621	88.4428	88.4351	88.4542
88	90.5067	90.4627	90.4433	90.4354	90.4544

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires**

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.728}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
90	92.5076	92.4633	92.4437	92.4357	92.4546
92	94.5085	94.4639	94.4441	94.4359	94.4548
94	96.5094	96.4644	96.4445	96.4362	96.4550
96	98.5102	98.4649	98.4449	98.4364	98.4552
98	100.5110	100.4655	100.4453	100.4367	100.4554
100	102.5118	102.4660	102.4456	102.4369	102.4555
102	104.5125	104.4665	104.4460	104.4370	104.4557
104	106.5132	106.4669	106.4463	106.4372	106.4558
106	108.5139	108.4673	108.4466	108.4374	108.4560
108	110.5146	110.4678	110.4469	110.4376	110.4561
110	112.5152	112.4682	112.4472	112.4378	112.4562
112	114.5159	114.4686	114.4475	114.4380	114.4563
114	116.5165	116.4690	116.4478	116.4382	116.4564
116	118.5171	118.4693	118.4481	118.4384	118.4565
118	120.5177	120.4697	120.4484	120.4385	120.4566
120	122.5182	122.4701	122.4486	122.4387	122.4567
122	124.5188	124.4704	124.4489	124.4388	124.4568
124	126.5193	126.4708	126.4491	126.4390	126.4569
126	128.5198	128.4711	128.4493	128.4391	128.4570
128	130.5203	130.4714	130.4496	130.4393	130.4571
130	132.5208	132.4717	132.4498	132.4394	132.4572
132	134.5213	134.4720	134.4500	134.4395	134.4573
134	136.5217	136.4723	136.4502	136.4397	136.4574
136	138.5221	138.4725	138.4504	138.4398	138.4575
138	140.5226	140.4728	140.4506	140.4399	140.4576
140	142.5230	142.4730	142.4508	142.4400	142.4577
142	144.5234	144.4733	144.4510	144.4401	144.4578
144	146.5238	146.4736	146.4512	146.4402	146.4578
146	148.5242	148.4738	148.4513	148.4403	148.4579
148	150.5246	150.4740	150.4515	150.4404	150.4580
150	152.5250	152.4742	152.4516	152.4405	152.4580
152	154.5254	154.4745	154.4518	154.4406	154.4581
154	156.5257	156.4747	156.4520	156.4407	156.4581
156	158.5261	158.4749	158.4521	158.4408	158.4582
158	160.5264	160.4751	160.4523	160.4409	160.4582
160	162.5267	162.4753	162.4524	162.4410	162.4583
162	164.5270	164.4755	164.4526	164.4411	164.4584
164	166.5273	166.4757	166.4527	166.4411	166.4584
166	168.5276	168.4759	168.4528	168.4412	168.4585
168	170.5279	170.4760	170.4529	170.4413	170.4585
170	172.5282	172.4761	172.4531	172.4414	172.4586
180	182.5297	182.4771	182.4537	182.4418	182.4589
190	192.5310	192.4780	192.4542	192.4421	192.4591
200	202.5321	202.4786	202.4548	202.4424	202.4593
300	302.5395	302.4831	302.4579	302.4443	302.4606
400	402.5434	402.4854	402.4596	402.4453	402.4613
500	502.5458	502.4868	502.4606	502.4458	502.4619

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.728}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
7	9.1116	9.1172	9.1260	9.1536	9.1928
9	11.1829	11.1844	11.1905	11.2142	11.2509
11	13.2317	13.2296	13.2332	13.2536	13.2882
13	15.2677	15.2617	15.2639	15.2814	15.3142
15	17.2957	17.2873	17.2871	17.3021	17.3329
17	19.3182	19.3072	19.3053	19.3181	19.3482
19	21.3368	21.3233	21.3200	21.3310	21.3600
21	23.3524	23.3368	23.3321	23.3415	23.3696
23	25.3658	25.3481	25.3423	25.3502	25.3775
25	27.3774	27.3579	27.3511	27.3576	27.3842
27	29.3876	29.3664	29.3586	29.3640	29.3899
29	31.3966	31.3738	31.3652	31.3695	31.3948
31	33.4047	33.3804	33.3710	33.3743	33.3991
33	35.4119	35.3863	35.3761	35.3786	35.4029
35	37.4185	37.3916	37.3807	37.3824	37.4063
37	39.4245	39.3964	39.3849	39.3858	39.4094
39	41.4299	41.4007	41.3886	41.3889	41.4120
41	43.4348	43.4047	43.3920	43.3917	43.4145
43	45.4394	45.4083	45.3951	45.3942	45.4168
45	47.4437	47.4116	47.3980	47.3965	47.4188
47	49.4477	49.4147	49.4007	49.3986	49.4206
49	51.4514	51.4175	51.4031	51.4006	51.4223
51	53.4547	53.4202	53.4053	53.4024	53.4239
53	55.4579	55.4227	55.4074	55.4041	55.4254
55	57.4609	57.4249	57.4093	57.4056	57.4267
57	59.4637	59.4271	59.4111	59.4071	59.4280
59	61.4664	61.4291	61.4128	61.4084	61.4292
61	63.4689	63.4310	63.4144	63.4097	63.4303
63	65.4712	65.4328	65.4159	65.4109	65.4313
65	67.4734	67.4344	67.4173	67.4120	67.4323
67	69.4755	69.4360	69.4186	69.4130	69.4332
69	71.4775	71.4375	71.4198	71.4140	71.4341
71	73.4795	73.4389	73.4210	73.4150	73.4349
73	75.4813	75.4403	75.4221	75.4159	75.4357
75	77.4830	77.4416	77.4232	77.4167	77.4364
77	79.4847	79.4428	79.4242	79.4175	79.4371
79	81.4863	81.4440	81.4252	81.4183	81.4378
81	83.4877	83.4451	83.4262	83.4190	83.4384
83	85.4892	85.4462	85.4271	85.4196	85.4390
85	87.4906	87.4472	87.4279	87.4203	87.4395
87	89.4919	89.4481	89.4287	89.4209	89.4400
89	91.4932	91.4490	91.4295	91.4215	91.4405
91	93.4944	93.4499	93.4303	93.4221	93.4410
93	95.4956	95.4508	95.4310	95.4227	95.4415

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires**

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.728}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
95	97.4967	97.4516	97.4317	97.4232	97.4420
97	99.4978	99.4524	99.4323	99.4237	99.4424
99	101.4988	101.4532	101.4329	101.4242	101.4428
101	103.4998	103.4540	103.4335	103.4247	103.4432
103	105.5008	105.4546	105.4341	105.4252	105.4436
105	107.5017	107.4553	107.4346	107.4256	107.4440
107	109.5026	109.4559	109.4352	109.4260	109.4443
109	111.5035	111.4566	111.4357	111.4264	111.4447
111	113.5044	113.4572	113.4362	113.4268	113.4450
113	115.5052	115.4578	115.4367	115.4272	115.4453
115	117.5060	117.4584	117.4372	117.4275	117.4456
117	119.5068	119.4589	119.4376	119.4279	119.4459
119	121.5075	121.4594	121.4380	121.4282	121.4462
121	123.5082	123.4599	123.4384	123.4285	123.4465
123	125.5089	125.4604	125.4388	125.4288	125.4468
125	127.5096	127.4609	127.4392	127.4291	127.4471
127	129.5103	129.4614	129.4396	129.4294	129.4473
129	131.5109	131.4619	131.4400	131.4297	131.4476
131	133.5115	133.4623	133.4404	133.4300	133.4478
133	135.5121	135.4628	135.4408	135.4302	135.4480
135	137.5127	137.4632	137.4411	137.4305	137.4483
137	139.5133	139.4636	139.4414	139.4307	139.4485
139	141.5139	141.4640	141.4418	141.4310	141.4487
141	143.5144	143.4644	143.4421	143.4312	143.4489
143	145.5149	145.4648	145.4424	145.4315	145.4491
145	147.5154	147.4651	147.4427	147.4317	147.4493
147	149.5159	149.4655	149.4430	149.4319	149.4495
149	151.5164	151.4658	151.4433	151.4321	151.4497
151	153.5169	153.4661	153.4435	153.4323	153.4498
153	155.5174	155.4665	155.4438	155.4325	155.4500
155	157.5179	157.4668	157.4440	157.4327	157.4502
157	159.5183	159.4671	159.4443	159.4329	159.4504
159	161.5188	161.4674	161.4445	161.4331	161.4505
161	163.5192	163.4677	163.4448	163.4333	163.4507
163	165.5196	165.4680	165.4450	165.4335	165.4508
165	167.5200	167.4683	167.4453	167.4337	167.4510
167	169.5204	169.4686	169.4455	169.4338	169.4511
169	171.5208	171.4688	171.4457	171.4340	171.4513
171	173.5212	173.4691	173.4459	173.4342	173.4514
181	183.5230	183.4704	183.4469	183.4350	183.4520
191	193.5246	193.4715	193.4478	193.4357	193.4526
201	203.5260	203.4725	203.4487	203.4363	203.4532
301	303.5355	303.4790	303.4538	303.4402	303.4565
401	403.5404	403.4823	403.4565	403.4422	403.4582
501	503.5433	503.4843	503.4581	503.4434	503.4592

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Checking Internal Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Between Wires

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.44}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
10	8.8337	8.7383	8.6617	8.5209	8.3966
12	10.8394	10.7404	10.6623	10.5210	10.3973
14	12.8438	12.7419	12.6627	12.5210	12.3978
16	14.8474	14.7431	14.6630	14.5210	14.3982
18	16.8504	16.7441	16.6633	16.5210	16.3985
20	18.8529	18.7449	18.6635	18.5211	18.3987
22	20.8550	20.7456	20.6636	20.5211	20.3989
24	22.8569	22.7462	22.6638	22.5211	22.3991
26	24.8585	24.7467	24.6639	24.5211	24.3992
28	26.8599	26.7471	26.6640	26.5211	26.3993
30	28.8612	28.7475	28.6641	28.5211	28.3994
32	30.8623	30.7478	30.6642	30.5211	30.3995
34	32.8633	32.7481	32.6642	32.5211	32.3995
36	34.8642	34.7483	34.6643	34.5212	34.3996
38	36.8650	36.7486	36.6642	36.5212	36.3996
40	38.8658	38.7488	38.6644	38.5212	38.3997
42	40.8665	40.7490	40.6644	40.5212	40.3997
44	42.8672	42.7492	42.6645	42.5212	42.3998
46	44.8678	44.7493	44.6645	44.5212	44.3998
48	46.8683	46.7495	46.6646	46.5212	46.3999
50	48.8688	48.7496	48.6646	48.5212	48.3999
52	50.8692	50.7497	50.6646	50.5212	50.3999
54	52.8697	52.7499	52.6647	52.5212	52.4000
56	54.8701	54.7500	54.6647	54.5212	54.4000
58	56.8705	56.7501	56.6648	56.5212	56.4001
60	58.8709	58.7502	58.6648	58.5212	58.4001
62	60.8712	60.7503	60.6648	60.5212	60.4001
64	62.8715	62.7504	62.6648	62.5212	62.4001
66	64.8718	64.7505	64.6649	64.5212	64.4001
68	66.8721	66.7505	66.6649	66.5212	66.4001
70	68.8724	68.7506	68.6649	68.5212	68.4001
72	70.8727	70.7507	70.6649	70.5212	70.4002
74	72.8729	72.7507	72.6649	72.5212	72.4002
76	74.8731	74.7508	74.6649	74.5212	74.4002
78	76.8734	76.7509	76.6649	76.5212	76.4002
80	78.8736	78.7509	78.6649	78.5212	78.4002
82	80.8738	80.7510	80.6649	80.5212	80.4002
84	82.8740	82.7510	82.6649	82.5212	82.4002
86	84.8742	84.7511	84.6650	84.5212	84.4002
88	86.8743	86.7511	86.6650	86.5212	86.4003
90	88.8745	88.7512	88.6650	88.5212	88.4003
92	90.8747	90.7512	90.6650	90.5212	90.4003
94	92.8749	92.7513	92.6650	92.5212	92.4003

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Checking Internal Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Between Wires**

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.44}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
96	94.8750	94.7513	94.6650	94.5212	94.4003
98	96.8752	96.7513	96.6650	96.5212	96.4003
100	98.8753	98.7514	98.6650	98.5212	98.4003
102	100.8754	100.7514	100.6650	100.5212	100.4003
104	102.8756	102.7514	102.6650	102.5212	102.4003
106	104.8757	104.7515	104.6650	104.5212	104.4003
108	106.8758	106.7515	106.6650	106.5212	106.4003
110	108.8759	108.7515	108.6651	108.5212	108.4004
112	110.8760	110.7516	110.6651	110.5212	110.4004
114	112.8761	112.7516	112.6651	112.5212	112.4004
116	114.8762	114.7516	114.6651	114.5212	114.4004
118	116.8763	116.7516	116.6651	116.5212	116.4004
120	118.8764	118.7517	118.6651	118.5212	118.4004
122	120.8765	120.7517	120.6651	120.5212	120.4004
124	122.8766	122.7517	122.6651	122.5212	122.4004
126	124.8767	124.7517	124.6651	124.5212	124.4004
128	126.8768	126.7518	126.6651	126.5212	126.4004
130	128.8769	128.7518	128.6652	128.5212	128.4004
132	130.8769	130.7518	130.6652	130.5212	130.4004
134	132.8770	132.7518	132.6652	132.5212	132.4004
136	134.8771	134.7519	134.6652	134.5212	134.4004
138	136.8772	136.7519	136.6652	136.5212	136.4004
140	138.8773	138.7519	138.6652	138.5212	138.4004
142	140.8773	140.7519	140.6652	140.5212	140.4004
144	142.8774	142.7519	142.6652	142.5212	142.4004
146	144.8774	144.7520	144.6652	144.5212	144.4004
148	146.8775	146.7520	146.6652	146.5212	146.4004
150	148.8775	148.7520	148.6652	148.5212	148.4005
152	150.8776	150.7520	150.6652	150.5212	150.4005
154	152.8776	152.7520	152.6652	152.5212	152.4005
156	154.8777	154.7520	154.6652	154.5212	154.4005
158	156.8778	156.7520	156.6652	156.5212	156.4005
160	158.8778	158.7520	158.6652	158.5212	158.4005
162	160.8779	160.7520	160.6652	160.5212	160.4005
164	162.8779	162.7521	162.6652	162.5212	162.4005
166	164.8780	164.7521	164.6652	164.5212	164.4005
168	166.8780	166.7521	166.6652	166.5212	166.4005
170	168.8781	168.7521	168.6652	168.5212	168.4005
180	178.8783	178.7522	178.6652	178.5212	178.4005
190	188.8785	188.7522	188.6652	188.5212	188.4005
200	198.8788	198.7523	198.6652	198.5212	198.4005
300	298.8795	298.7525	298.6654	298.5212	298.4005
400	398.8803	398.7527	398.6654	398.5212	398.4006
500	498.8810	498.7528	498.6654	498.5212	498.4006

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Checking Internal Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Between Wires

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimensions in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.44}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
7	5.6393	5.5537	5.4823	5.3462	5.2232
9	7.6894	7.5976	7.5230	7.3847	7.2618
11	9.7219	9.6256	9.5490	9.4094	9.2867
13	11.7449	11.6451	11.5669	11.4265	11.3040
15	13.7620	13.6594	13.5801	13.4391	13.3167
17	15.7752	15.6703	15.5902	15.4487	15.3265
19	17.7858	17.6790	17.5981	17.4563	17.3343
21	19.7945	19.6860	19.6045	19.4625	19.3405
23	21.8017	21.6918	21.6099	21.4676	21.3457
25	23.8078	23.6967	23.6143	23.4719	23.3501
27	25.8130	25.7009	25.6181	25.4755	25.3538
29	27.8176	27.7045	27.6214	27.4787	27.3571
31	29.8216	29.7076	29.6242	29.4814	29.3599
33	31.8251	31.7104	31.6267	31.4838	31.3623
35	33.8282	33.7128	33.6289	33.4860	33.3645
37	35.8311	35.7150	35.6310	35.4879	35.3665
39	37.8336	37.7169	37.6327	37.4896	37.3682
41	39.8359	39.7187	39.6343	39.4911	39.3698
43	41.8380	41.7203	41.6357	41.4925	41.3712
45	43.8399	43.7217	43.6371	43.4938	43.3725
47	45.8416	45.7231	45.6383	45.4950	45.3737
49	47.8432	47.7243	47.6394	47.4960	47.3748
51	49.8447	49.7254	49.6404	49.4970	49.3758
53	51.8461	51.7265	51.6414	51.4979	51.3768
55	53.8474	53.7274	53.6422	53.4988	53.3776
57	55.8486	55.7283	55.6431	55.4996	55.3784
59	57.8497	57.7292	57.6438	57.5003	57.3792
61	59.8508	59.7300	59.6445	59.5010	59.3799
63	61.8517	61.7307	61.6452	61.5016	61.3806
65	63.8526	63.7314	63.6458	63.5022	63.3812
67	65.8535	65.7320	65.6464	65.5028	65.3818
69	67.8543	67.7327	67.6469	67.5033	67.3823
71	69.8551	69.7332	69.6475	69.5038	69.3828
73	71.8558	71.7338	71.6480	71.5043	71.3833
75	73.8565	73.7343	73.6484	73.5048	73.3838
77	75.8572	75.7348	75.6489	75.5052	75.3842
79	77.8573	77.7352	77.6493	77.5056	77.3846
81	79.8584	79.7357	79.6497	79.5060	79.3850
83	81.8590	81.7361	81.6501	81.5064	81.3854
85	83.8595	83.7365	83.6505	83.5067	83.3858
87	85.8600	85.7369	85.6508	85.5071	85.3861
89	87.8605	87.7373	87.6511	87.5074	87.3864
91	89.8610	89.7376	89.6514	89.5077	89.3867
93	91.8614	91.7379	91.6517	91.5080	91.3870
95	93.8619	93.7383	93.6520	93.5082	93.3873
97	95.8623	95.7386	95.6523	95.5085	95.3876
99	97.8627	97.7389	97.6526	97.5088	97.3879
101	99.8631	99.7391	99.6528	99.5090	99.3881
103	101.8635	101.7394	101.6531	101.5093	101.3883
105	103.8638	103.7397	103.6533	103.5095	103.3886
107	105.8642	105.7399	105.6535	105.5097	105.3888
109	107.8645	107.7402	107.6537	107.5099	107.3890
111	109.8648	109.7404	109.6539	109.5101	109.3893

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Checking Internal Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Between Wires**

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and Van Keuren standard wire sizes. For any other diametral pitch, divide dimensions in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.44}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
113	111.8651	111.7406	111.6541	111.5103	111.3895
115	113.8654	113.7409	113.6543	113.5105	113.3897
117	115.8657	115.7411	115.6545	115.5107	115.3899
119	117.8660	117.7413	117.6547	117.5109	117.3900
121	119.8662	119.7415	119.6548	119.5110	119.3902
123	121.8663	121.7417	121.6550	121.5112	121.3904
125	123.8668	123.7418	123.6552	123.5114	123.3905
127	125.8670	125.7420	125.6554	125.5115	125.3907
129	127.8672	127.7422	127.6556	127.5117	127.3908
131	129.8675	129.7424	129.6557	129.5118	129.3910
133	131.8677	131.7425	131.6559	131.5120	131.3911
135	133.8679	133.7427	133.6560	133.5121	133.3913
137	135.8681	135.7428	135.6561	135.5123	135.3914
139	137.8683	137.7430	137.6563	137.5124	137.3916
141	139.8685	139.7431	139.6564	139.5125	139.3917
143	141.8687	141.7433	141.6565	141.5126	141.3918
145	143.8689	143.7434	143.6566	143.5127	143.3919
147	145.8691	145.7436	145.6568	145.5128	145.3920
149	147.8693	147.7437	147.6569	147.5130	147.3922
151	149.8694	149.7438	149.6570	149.5131	149.3923
153	151.8696	151.7439	151.6571	151.5132	151.3924
155	153.8698	153.7441	153.6572	153.5133	153.3925
157	155.8699	155.7442	155.6573	155.5134	155.3926
159	157.8701	157.7443	157.6574	157.5135	157.3927
161	159.8702	159.7444	159.6575	159.5136	159.3928
163	161.8704	161.7445	161.6576	161.5137	161.3929
165	163.8705	163.7446	163.6577	163.5138	163.3930
167	165.8707	165.7447	165.6578	165.5139	165.3931
169	167.8708	167.7448	167.6579	167.5139	167.3932
171	169.8710	169.7449	169.6580	169.5140	169.3933
181	179.8717	179.7453	179.6584	179.5144	179.3937
191	189.8721	189.7458	189.6588	189.5148	189.3940
201	199.8727	199.7461	199.6591	199.5151	199.3944
301	299.8759	299.7485	299.6612	299.5171	299.3965
401	399.8776	399.7496	399.6623	399.5182	399.3975
501	499.8786	499.7504	499.6629	499.5188	499.3981

Table 5. Van Keuren Wire Diameters for Gears

External Gears Wire Dia. = 1.728 ÷ D.P.				Internal Gears Wire Dia. = 1.44 ÷ D.P.			
D.P.	Dia.	D.P.	Dia.	D.P.	Dia.	D.P.	Dia.
2	0.86400	16	0.10800	2	0.72000	16	0.09000
2½	0.69120	18	0.09600	2½	0.57600	18	0.08000
3	0.57600	20	0.08640	3	0.48000	20	0.07200
4	0.43200	22	0.07855	4	0.36000	22	0.06545
5	0.34560	24	0.07200	5	0.28800	24	0.06000
6	0.28800	28	0.06171	6	0.24000	28	0.05143
7	0.24686	32	0.05400	7	0.20571	32	0.04500
8	0.21600	36	0.04800	8	0.18000	36	0.04000
9	0.19200	40	0.04320	9	0.16000	40	0.03600
10	0.17280	48	0.03600	10	0.14400	48	0.03000
11	0.15709	64	0.02700	11	0.13091	64	0.02250
12	0.14400	72	0.02400	12	0.12000	72	0.02000
14	0.12343	80	0.02160	14	0.10286	80	0.01800

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Measurements for Checking Internal Gears when Wire Diameter Equals 1.44 Divided by Diametral Pitch.—Table 3 and Table 4 give measurements between wires for checking internal gears of 1 diametral pitch. For any other diametral pitch, divide the measurement given in the table by the diametral pitch required. These measurements are based upon the Van Keuren standard wire size, which, for internal spur gears, equals 1.44 divided by the diametral pitch (see Table 5).

Even Number of Teeth: For an even number of teeth above 170 and not in Table 3, proceed as shown by the following example: Assume that the number of teeth = 380 and pressure angle is $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees; then, for 1 diametral pitch, figure at left of decimal point = given number of teeth − 2 = 380 − 2 = 378. Figure at right of decimal point lies between decimal values given in table for 300 and 400 teeth and is obtained by interpolation. Thus, 380 − 300 = 80 (change to 0.80); 0.8803 − 0.8795 = 0.0008; hence, decimal required = 0.8795 + (0.80 × 0.0008) 0.88014. Total dimension = 378.88014.

Odd Number of Teeth: Table 4 is for internal gears having odd numbers of teeth. For tooth numbers above 171 and not in the table, proceed as shown by the following example: Assume that number of teeth = 337 and pressure angle is $14\frac{1}{2}$ degrees; then, for 1 diametral pitch, figure at left of decimal point = given No. of teeth − 2 = 337 − 2 = 335. Figure at right of decimal point lies between decimal values given in table for 301 and 401 teeth and is obtained by interpolation. Thus, 337 − 301 = 36 (change to 0.36); 0.8776 − 0.8759 = 0.0017; hence, decimal required = 0.8759 + (0.36 × 0.0017) = 0.8765. Total dimension = 335.8765.

Measurements for Checking External Spur Gears when Wire Diameter Equals 1.68 Divided by Diametral Pitch.—Table 7 and Table 8 give measurements *M*, in inches, for checking the pitch diameters of external spur gears of 1 diametral pitch. For any other diametral pitch, divide the measurement given in the table by whatever diametral pitch is required. The result shows what measurement *M* should be when the pitch diameter is correct and there is no allowance for backlash. The procedure for checking for a given amount of backlash when the diameter of the measuring wires equals 1.68 divided by the diametral pitch is explained under a subsequent heading. Table 7 and Table 8 are based upon wire sizes equal to 1.68 divided by the diametral pitch. The corresponding wire diameters for various diametral pitches are given in Table 6.

Table 6. Wire Diameters for Spur and Helical Gears Based upon 1.68 Constant

Diametral or Normal Diametral Pitch	Wire Diameter	Diametral or Normal Diametral Pitch	Wire Diameter	Diametral or Normal Diametral Pitch	Wire Diameter	Diametral or Normal Diametral Pitch	Wire Diameter
2	0.840	8	0.210	18	0.09333	40	0.042
$2\frac{1}{2}$	0.672	9	0.18666	20	0.084	48	0.035
3	0.560	10	0.168	22	0.07636	64	0.02625
4	0.420	11	0.15273	24	0.070	72	0.02333
5	0.336	12	0.140	28	0.060	80	0.021
6	0.280	14	0.120	32	0.0525	…	…
7	0.240	16	0.105	36	0.04667	…	…

Pin diameter = 1.68 ÷ diametral pitch for spur gears and 1.68 ÷ normal diametral pitch for helical gears.

To find measurement *M* of an external spur gear using wire sizes equal to 1.68 inches divided by the diametral pitch, the same method is followed in using Table 7 and Table 8 as that outlined for Table 1 and Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and 1.68-inch series wire sizes (a Van Keuren standard). For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.68}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
6	8.1298	8.1442	8.1600	8.2003	8.2504
8	10.1535	10.1647	10.1783	10.2155	10.2633
10	12.1712	12.1796	12.1914	12.2260	12.2722
12	14.1851	14.1910	14.2013	14.2338	14.2785
14	16.1964	16.2001	16.2091	16.2397	16.2833
16	18.2058	18.2076	18.2154	18.2445	18.2871
18	20.2137	20.2138	20.2205	20.2483	20.2902
20	22.2205	22.2190	22.2249	22.2515	22.2927
22	24.2265	24.2235	24.2286	24.2542	24.2949
24	26.2317	26.2275	26.2318	26.2566	26.2967
26	28.2363	28.2309	28.2346	28.2586	28.2982
28	30.2404	30.2339	30.2371	30.2603	30.2996
30	32.2441	32.2367	32.2392	32.2619	32.3008
32	34.2475	34.2391	34.2412	34.2632	34.3017
34	36.2505	36.2413	36.2430	36.2644	36.3026
36	38.2533	38.2433	38.2445	38.2655	38.3035
38	40.2558	40.2451	40.2460	40.2666	40.3044
40	42.2582	42.2468	42.2473	42.2675	42.3051
42	44.2604	44.2483	44.2485	44.2683	44.3057
44	46.2624	46.2497	46.2496	46.2690	46.3063
46	48.2642	48.2510	48.2506	48.2697	48.3068
48	50.2660	50.2522	50.2516	50.2704	50.3073
50	52.2676	52.2534	52.2525	52.2710	52.3078
52	54.2691	54.2545	54.2533	54.2716	54.3082
54	56.2705	56.2555	56.2541	56.2721	56.3086
56	58.2719	58.2564	58.2548	58.2726	58.3089
58	60.2731	60.2572	60.2555	60.2730	60.3093
60	62.2743	62.2580	62.2561	62.2735	62.3096
62	64.2755	64.2587	64.2567	64.2739	64.3099
64	66.2765	66.2594	66.2572	66.2742	66.3102
66	68.2775	68.2601	68.2577	68.2746	68.3104
68	70.2785	70.2608	70.2582	70.2749	70.3107
70	72.2794	72.2615	72.2587	72.2752	72.3109
72	74.2803	74.2620	74.2591	74.2755	74.3111
74	76.2811	76.2625	76.2596	76.2758	76.3113
76	78.2819	78.2631	78.2600	78.2761	78.3115
78	80.2827	80.2636	80.2604	80.2763	80.3117
80	82.2834	82.2641	82.2607	82.2766	82.3119
82	84.2841	84.2646	84.2611	84.2768	84.3121
84	86.2847	86.2650	86.2614	86.2771	86.3123
86	88.2854	88.2655	88.2617	88.2773	88.3124
88	90.2860	90.2659	90.2620	90.2775	90.3126
90	92.2866	92.2662	92.2624	92.2777	92.3127
92	94.2872	94.2666	94.2626	94.2779	94.3129
94	96.2877	96.2670	96.2629	96.2780	96.3130
96	98.2882	98.2673	98.2632	98.2782	98.3131
98	100.2887	100.2677	100.2635	100.2784	100.3132
100	102.2892	102.2680	102.2638	102.2785	102.3134
102	104.2897	104.2683	104.2640	104.2787	104.3135

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. *(Continued)* **Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires**

EVEN NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and 1.68-inch series wire sizes (a Van Keuren standard). For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.68}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
104	106.2901	106.2685	106.2642	106.2788	106.3136
106	108.2905	108.2688	108.2644	108.2789	108.3137
108	110.2910	110.2691	110.2645	110.2791	110.3138
110	112.2914	112.2694	112.2647	112.2792	112.3139
112	114.2918	114.2696	114.2649	114.2793	114.3140
114	116.2921	116.2699	116.2651	116.2794	116.3141
116	118.2925	118.2701	118.2653	118.2795	118.3142
118	120.2929	120.2703	120.2655	120.2797	120.3142
120	122.2932	122.2706	122.2656	122.2798	122.3143
122	124.2936	124.2708	124.2658	124.2799	124.3144
124	126.2939	126.2710	126.2660	126.2800	126.3145
126	128.2941	128.2712	128.2661	128.2801	128.3146
128	130.2945	130.2714	130.2663	130.2802	130.3146
130	132.2948	132.2716	132.2664	132.2803	132.3147
132	134.2951	134.2718	134.2666	134.2804	134.3147
134	136.2954	136.2720	136.2667	136.2805	136.3148
136	138.2957	138.2722	138.2669	138.2806	138.3149
138	140.2960	140.2724	140.2670	140.2807	140.3149
140	142.2962	142.2725	142.2671	142.2808	142.3150
142	144.2965	144.2727	144.2672	144.2808	144.3151
144	146.2967	146.2729	146.2674	146.2809	146.3151
146	148.2970	148.2730	148.2675	148.2810	148.3152
148	150.2972	150.2732	150.2676	150.2811	150.3152
150	152.2974	152.2733	152.2677	152.2812	152.3153
152	154.2977	154.2735	154.2678	154.2812	154.3153
154	156.2979	156.2736	156.2679	156.2813	156.3154
156	158.2981	158.2737	158.2680	158.2813	158.3155
158	160.2983	160.2739	160.2681	160.2814	160.3155
160	162.2985	162.2740	162.2682	162.2815	162.3155
162	164.2987	164.2741	164.2683	164.2815	164.3156
164	166.2989	166.2742	166.2684	166.2816	166.3156
166	168.2990	168.2744	168.2685	168.2816	168.3157
168	170.2992	170.2745	170.2686	170.2817	170.3157
170	172.2994	172.2746	172.2687	172.2818	172.3158
180	182.3003	182.2752	182.2691	182.2820	182.3160
190	192.3011	192.2757	192.2694	192.2823	192.3161
200	202.3018	202.2761	202.2698	202.2825	202.3163
300	302.3063	302.2790	302.2719	302.2839	302.3173
400	402.3087	402.2804	402.2730	402.2845	402.3178
500	502.3101	502.2813	502.2736	502.2850	502.3181

Allowance for Backlash: Table 1, Table 2, Table 7, and Table 8 give measurements over wires when the pitch diameters are correct and there is no allowance for backlash or play between meshing teeth. Backlash is obtained by cutting the teeth somewhat deeper than standard, thus reducing the thickness. Usually, the teeth of both mating gears are reduced in thickness an amount equal to one-half of the total backlash desired. However, if the pinion is small, it is common practice to reduce the gear teeth the full amount of backlash and the pinion is made to standard size. The changes in measurements *M* over wires, for obtaining backlash in external spur gears, are listed in Table 9.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and 1.68-inch series wire sizes (a Van Keuren standard). For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.68}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
5	6.8485	6.8639	6.8800	6.9202	6.9691
7	8.9555	8.9679	8.9822	9.0199	9.0675
9	11.0189	11.0285	11.0410	11.0762	11.1224
11	13.0615	13.0686	13.0795	13.1126	13.1575
13	15.0925	15.0973	15.1068	15.1381	15.1819
15	17.1163	17.1190	17.1273	17.1570	17.1998
17	19.1351	19.1360	19.1432	19.1716	19.2136
19	21.1505	21.1498	21.1561	21.1832	21.2245
21	23.1634	23.1611	23.1665	23.1926	23.2334
23	25.1743	25.1707	25.1754	25.2005	25.2408
25	27.1836	27.1788	27.1828	27.2071	27.2469
27	29.1918	29.1859	29.1892	29.2128	29.2522
29	31.1990	31.1920	31.1948	31.2177	31.2568
31	33.2053	33.1974	33.1997	33.2220	33.2607
33	35.2110	35.2021	35.2041	35.2258	35.2642
35	37.2161	37.2065	37.2079	37.2292	37.2674
37	39.2208	39.2104	39.2115	39.2323	39.2702
39	41.2249	41.2138	41.2147	41.2349	41.2726
41	43.2287	43.2170	43.2174	43.2374	43.2749
43	45.2323	45.2199	45.2200	45.2396	45.2769
45	47.2355	47.2226	47.2224	47.2417	47.2788
47	49.2385	49.2251	49.2246	49.2435	49.2805
49	51.2413	51.2273	51.2266	51.2452	51.2820
51	53.2439	53.2294	53.2284	53.2468	53.2835
53	55.2463	55.2313	55.2302	55.2483	55.2848
55	57.2485	57.2331	57.2318	57.2497	57.2861
57	59.2506	59.2348	59.2333	59.2509	59.2872
59	61.2526	61.2363	61.2347	61.2521	61.2883
61	63.2545	63.2378	63.2360	63.2532	63.2893
63	65.2562	65.2392	65.2372	65.2543	65.2902
65	67.2579	67.2406	67.2383	67.2553	67.2911
67	69.2594	69.2419	69.2394	69.2562	69.2920
69	71.2609	71.2431	71.2405	71.2571	71.2928
71	73.2623	73.2442	73.2414	73.2579	73.2935
73	75.2636	75.2452	75.2423	75.2586	75.2942
75	77.2649	77.2462	77.2432	77.2594	77.2949
77	79.2661	79.2472	79.2440	79.2601	79.2955
79	81.2673	81.2481	81.2448	81.2607	81.2961
81	83.2684	83.2490	83.2456	83.2614	83.2967
83	85.2694	85.2498	85.2463	85.2620	85.2972
85	87.2704	87.2506	87.2470	87.2625	87.2977
87	89.2714	89.2514	89.2476	89.2631	89.2982
89	91.2723	91.2521	91.2482	91.2636	91.2987
91	93.2732	93.2528	93.2489	93.2641	93.2991
93	95.2741	95.2534	95.2494	95.2646	95.2996

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. *(Continued)* **Checking External Spur Gear Sizes by Measurement Over Wires**

ODD NUMBERS OF TEETH

Dimensions in table are for 1 diametral pitch and 1.68-inch series wire sizes (a Van Keuren standard). For any other diametral pitch, divide dimension in table by given pitch.

$$\text{Wire or pin diameter} = \frac{1.68}{\text{Diametral Pitch}}$$

No. of Teeth	Pressure Angle				
	14½°	17½°	20°	25°	30°
95	97.2749	97.2541	97.2500	97.2650	97.3000
97	99.2757	99.2547	99.2506	99.2655	99.3004
99	101.2764	101.2553	101.2511	101.2659	101.3008
101	103.2771	103.2558	103.2516	103.2663	103.3011
103	105.2778	105.2563	105.2520	105.2667	105.3015
105	107.2785	107.2568	107.2525	107.2671	107.3018
107	109.2791	109.2573	109.2529	109.2674	109.3021
109	111.2798	111.2578	111.2533	111.2678	111.3024
111	113.2804	113.2583	113.2537	113.2681	113.3027
113	115.2809	115.2588	115.2541	115.2684	115.3030
115	117.2815	117.2592	117.2544	117.2687	117.3033
117	119.2821	119.2596	119.2548	119.2690	119.3036
119	121.2826	121.2601	121.2552	121.2693	121.3038
121	123.2831	123.2605	123.2555	123.2696	123.3041
123	125.2836	125.2608	125.2558	125.2699	125.3043
125	127.2841	127.2612	127.2562	127.2702	127.3046
127	129.2846	129.2615	129.2565	129.2704	129.3048
129	131.2851	131.2619	131.2568	131.2707	131.3050
131	133.2855	133.2622	133.2571	133.2709	133.3053
133	135.2859	135.2626	135.2574	135.2712	135.3055
135	137.2863	137.2629	137.2577	137.2714	137.3057
137	139.2867	139.3632	139.2579	139.2716	139.3059
139	141.2871	141.2635	141.2582	141.2718	141.3060
141	143.2875	143.2638	143.2584	143.2720	143.3062
143	145.2879	145.2641	145.2587	145.2722	145.3064
145	147.2883	147.2644	147.2589	147.2724	147.3066
147	149.2887	149.2647	149.2591	149.2726	149.3068
149	151.2890	151.2649	151.2594	151.2728	151.3069
151	153.2893	153.2652	153.2596	153.2730	153.3071
153	155.2897	155.2654	155.2598	155.2732	155.3073
155	157.2900	157.2657	157.2600	157.2733	157.3074
157	159.2903	159.2659	159.2602	159.2735	159.3076
159	161.2906	161.2661	161.2604	161.2736	161.3077
161	163.2909	163.2663	163.2606	163.2738	163.3078
163	165.2912	165.2665	165.2608	165.2740	165.3080
165	167.2915	167.2668	167.2610	167.2741	167.3081
167	169.2917	169.2670	169.2611	169.2743	169.3083
169	171.2920	171.2672	171.2613	171.2744	171.3084
171	173.2922	173.2674	173.2615	173.2746	173.3085
181	183.2936	183.2684	183.2623	183.2752	183.3091
191	193.2947	193.2692	193.2630	193.2758	193.3097
201	203.2957	203.2700	203.2636	203.2764	203.3101
301	303.3022	303.2749	303.2678	303.2798	303.3132
401	403.3056	403.2774	403.2699	403.2815	403.3147
501	503.3076	503.2789	503.2711	503.2825	503.3156

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Backlash Allowances for External and Internal Spur Gears

No. of Teeth	14½°		17½°		20°		25°		30°	
	Ext.	Int.	Ext.	Int.	Ext.	Int.	Ext.	Int.	Ext.	Int.
5	.0019	.0024	.0018	.0024	.0017	.0023	.0015	.0021	.0013	.0019
10	.0024	.0029	.0022	.0027	.0020	.0026	.0017	.0022	.0015	.0018
20	.0028	.0032	.0025	.0029	.0023	.0027	.0019	.0022	.0016	.0018
30	.0030	.0034	.0026	.0030	.0024	.0027	.0020	.0022	.0016	.0018
40	.0031	.0035	.0027	.0030	.0025	.0027	.0020	.0022	.0017	.0018
50	.0032	.0036	.0028	.0031	.0025	.0027	.0020	.0022	.0017	.0018
100	.0035	.0037	.0030	.0031	.0026	.0027	.0021	.0022	.0017	.0017
200	.0036	.0038	.0031	.0031	.0027	.0027	.0021	.0022	.0017	.0017

External Gears: For each 0.001 inch reduction in pitch-line tooth thickness, *reduce* measurement over wires obtained from Table 1, Table 2, Table 7, or Table 8 by the amount shown below.

Internal Gears: For each 0.001 inch reduction in pitch-line tooth thickness, *increase* measurement between wires obtained from Table 3 or Table 4 by the amounts shown below.

Backlash on pitch line equals double tooth thickness reduction when teeth of *both* mating gears are reduced. If teeth of *one* gear only are reduced, backlash on pitch line equals amount of reduction.

Example: For a 30-tooth, 10-diametral pitch, 20-degree pressure angle external gear, the measurement over wires from Table 1 is 32.4102 ÷ 10. For a backlash of 0.002, this measurement must be reduced by 2 × 0.0024 to 3.2362 or (3.2410 – 0.0048).

Measurements for Checking Helical Gears Using Wires or Balls.—Helical gears may be checked for size by using one wire, or ball; two wires, or balls; and three wires, depending on the case at hand. Three wires may be used for measurement of either even or odd tooth numbers provided that the face width and helix angle of the gear permit the arrangement of two wires in adjacent tooth spaces on one side of the gear and a third wire on the opposite side. The wires should be held between flat, parallel plates. The measurement between these plates, and perpendicular to the gear axis, will be the same for both even and odd numbers of teeth because the axial displacement of the wires with the odd numbers of teeth does not affect the perpendicular measurement between the plates. The calculation of measurements over three wires is the same as described for measurements over two wires for even numbers of teeth.

Measurements over One Wire or One Ball for Even or Odd Numbers of Teeth: This measurement is calculated by the method for measurement over two wires for even numbers of teeth and the result divided by two to obtain the measurement from over the wire or ball to the center of the gear mounted on an arbor.

Measurement over Two Wires or Two Balls for Even Numbers of Teeth: The measurement over two wires (or two balls kept in the same plane by holding them against a surface parallel to the face of the gear) is calculated as follows: First, calculate the pitch diameter of the helical gear from the formula D = Number of teeth divided by the product of the normal diametral pitch and the cosine of the helix angle, $D = N \div (P_n \times \cos \psi)$. Next, calculate the number of teeth, N_e, there would be in a spur gear for it to have the same tooth curvature as the helical gear has in the normal plane: $N_e = N/\cos^3 \psi$. Next, refer to Table 7 for spur gears with even tooth numbers and find, by interpolation, the *decimal* value of the constant for this number of teeth under the given *normal* pressure angle. Finally, add 2 to this decimal value and divide the sum by the normal diametral pitch P_n. The result of this calculation, added to the pitch diameter D, is the measurement over two wires or balls.

Example: A helical gear has 32 teeth of 6 normal diametral pitch, 20 degree pressure angle, and 23 degree helix angle. Determine the measurement over two wires, M, without allowance for backlash.

$D = 32 \div 6 \times \cos 23° = 5.7939$; $N_e = 32 \div \cos^3 23° = 41.027$; and in Table 7, fourth column, the decimal part of the measurement for 40 teeth is 0.2473 and that for 42 teeth is 0.2485.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The decimal part for 41.027 teeth is, by interpolation, $\frac{(41.027-40)}{(42-40)} \times (0.2485-0.2473) + 0.2473 = 0.2479$; $(0.2479+2) \div 6 = 0.3747$; and $M = 0.3747 + 5.7939 = 6.1686$.

This measurement over wires or balls is based upon the use of $1.68/P_n$ wires or balls. If measurements over $1.728/P_n$ diameter wires or balls are preferred, use Table 1 to find the decimal part described above instead of Table 7.

Measurement Over Two Wires or Two Balls for Odd Numbers of Teeth: The procedure is similar to that for two wire or two ball measurement for even tooth numbers except that a correction is made in the final M value to account for the wires or balls not being diametrically opposite by one-half tooth interval. In addition, care must be taken to ensure that the balls or wires are kept in a plane of the gear's rotation as described previously.

A helical gear has 13 teeth of 8 normal diametral pitch, $14\frac{1}{2}$ degree pressure angle, and 45 degree helix angle. Determine measurement M without allowance for backlash based upon the use of $1.728/P_n$ balls or wires.

As before, $D = 13/8 \times \cos 45° = 2.2981$; $N_e = 13/\cos^3 45° = 36.770$; and in the second column of Table 1 the *decimal* part of the measurement for 36 teeth is 0.4565 and that for 38 teeth is 0.4603. The decimal part for 36.770 teeth is, by interpolation, $\frac{(36.770-36)}{(38-36)} \times (0.4603-0.4565) + 0.4565 = 0.4580$; $(0.4580+2)/8 = 0.3073$; and $M = 0.3073 + 2.2981 = 2.6054$. This measurement is correct for three-wire measurements but, for two balls or wires held in the plane of rotation of the gear, M must be corrected as follows:

$$M \text{ corrected} = (M - \text{Ball Diam.}) \times \cos\left(\frac{90°}{N}\right) + \text{Ball Diam.}$$
$$= \left(2.6054 - \frac{1.728}{8}\right) \times \cos\left(\frac{90°}{13}\right) + \frac{1.728}{8} = 2.5880$$

Checking Spur Gear Size by Chordal Measurement Over Two or More Teeth.—Another method of checking gear sizes, that is generally available, is illustrated by the diagram accompanying Table 10. A vernier caliper is used to measure the distance M over two or more teeth. The diagram illustrates the measurement over two teeth (or with one intervening tooth space), but three or more teeth might be included, depending upon the pitch. The jaws of the caliper are merely held in contact with the sides or profiles of the teeth and perpendicular to the axis of the gear. Measurement M for involute teeth of the correct size is determined as follows.

General Formula for Checking External and Internal Spur Gears by Measurement Over Wires: The following formulas may be used for pressure angles or wire sizes not covered by the tables. In these formulas, M = measurement *over* wires for external gears or measurement *between* wires for internal gears; D = pitch diameter; T = arc tooth thickness on pitch circle; W = wire diameter; N = number of gear teeth; A = pressure angle of gear; a = angle, the cosine of which is required in Formulas (2) and (3).

First determine the involute function of angle a (inv a); then the corresponding angle a is found by referring to the tables of involute functions beginning on page 112,

$$\text{inv } a = \text{inv } A \pm \frac{T}{D} \pm \frac{W}{D\cos A} \mp \frac{\pi}{N} \quad (1)$$

$$\text{For even numbers of teeth, } M = \frac{D\cos A}{\cos a} \pm W \quad (2)$$

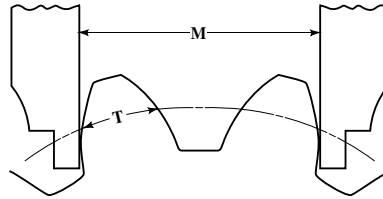
$$\text{For odd numbers of teeth, } M = \left(\frac{D\cos A}{\cos a}\right)\left(\cos\frac{90°}{N}\right) \pm W \quad (3)$$

Note: In Formulas (1), (2), and (3), use the upper sign for *external* and the lower sign for *internal* gears wherever a $\pm$ or $\mp$ appears in the formulas.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Chordal Measurements over Spur Gear Teeth of 1 Diametral Pitch

Find value of *M* under pressure angle and opposite number of teeth; divide *M* by diametral pitch of gear to be measured and then subtract one-half total backlash to obtain a measurement *M* equivalent to given pitch and backlash. The number of teeth to gage or measure over is shown by Table 11.



Number of Gear Teeth	*M* in Inches for 1 D.P.	Number of Gear Teeth	*M* in Inches for 1 D.P.	Number of Gear Teeth	*M* in Inches for 1 D.P.	Number of Gear Teeth	*M* in Inches for 1 D.P.
Pressure Angle, 14½ Degrees							
12	4.6267	37	7.8024	62	14.0197	87	20.2370
13	4.6321	38	10.8493	63	17.0666	88	23.2838
14	4.6374	39	10.8547	64	17.0720	89	23.2892
15	4.6428	40	10.8601	65	17.0773	90	23.2946
16	4.6482	41	10.8654	66	17.0827	91	23.2999
17	4.6536	42	10.8708	67	17.0881	92	23.3053
18	4.6589	43	10.8762	68	17.0934	93	23.3107
19	7.7058	44	10.8815	69	17.0988	94	23.3160
20	7.7112	45	10.8869	70	17.1042	95	23.3214
21	7.7166	46	10.8923	71	17.1095	96	23.3268
22	7.7219	47	10.8976	72	17.1149	97	23.3322
23	7.7273	48	10.9030	73	17.1203	98	23.3375
24	7.7326	49	10.9084	74	17.1256	99	23.3429
25	7.7380	50	10.9137	75	17.1310	100	23.3483
26	7.7434	51	13.9606	76	20.1779	101	26.3952
27	7.7488	52	13.9660	77	20.1833	102	26.4005
28	7.7541	53	13.9714	78	20.1886	103	26.4059
29	7.7595	54	13.9767	79	20.1940	104	26.4113
30	7.7649	55	13.9821	80	20.1994	105	26.4166
31	7.7702	56	13.9875	81	20.2047	106	26.4220
32	7.7756	57	13.9929	82	20.2101	107	26.4274
33	7.7810	58	13.9982	83	20.2155	108	26.4327
34	7.7683	59	14.0036	84	20.2208	109	26.4381
35	7.7917	60	14.0090	85	20.2262	110	26.4435
36	7.7971	61	14.0143	86	20.2316	…	…
Pressure Angle, 20 Degrees							
12	4.5963	30	10.7526	48	16.9090	66	23.0653
13	4.6103	31	10.7666	49	16.9230	67	23.0793
14	4.6243	32	10.7806	50	16.9370	68	23.0933
15	4.6383	33	10.7946	51	16.9510	69	23.1073
16	4.6523	34	10.8086	52	16.9650	70	23.1214
17	4.6663	35	10.8226	53	16.9790	71	23.1354
18	4.6803	36	10.8366	54	16.9930	72	23.1494
19	7.6464	37	13.8028	55	19.9591	73	26.1155
20	7.6604	38	13.8168	56	19.9731	74	26.1295
21	7.6744	39	13.8307	57	19.9872	75	26.1435
22	7.6884	40	13.8447	58	20.0012	76	26.1575
23	7.7024	41	13.8587	59	20.0152	77	26.1715
24	7.7165	42	13.8727	60	20.0292	78	26.1855
25	7.7305	43	13.8867	61	20.0432	79	26.1995
26	7.7445	44	13.9007	62	20.0572	80	26.2135
27	7.7585	45	13.9147	63	20.0712	81	26.2275
28	10.7246	46	16.8810	64	23.0373	…	…
29	10.7386	47	16.8950	65	23.0513	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table for Determining the Chordal Dimension: Table 10 gives the chordal dimensions for one diametral pitch when measuring over the number of teeth indicated in Table 11. To obtain any chordal dimension, it is simply necessary to divide chord *M* in the table (opposite the given number of teeth) by the diametral pitch of the gear to be measured and then subtract from the quotient one-half the total backlash between the mating pair of gears. In cases where a small pinion is used with a large gear and all of the backlash is to be obtained by reducing the gear teeth, the total amount of backlash is subtracted from the chordal dimension of the gear and nothing from the chordal dimension of the pinion. The application of the tables will be illustrated by an example.

Table 11. Number of Teeth Included in Chordal Measurement

Tooth Range for 14½° Pressure Angle	Tooth Range for 20° Pressure Angle	Number of Teeth to Gage Over	Tooth Range for 14½° Pressure Angle	Tooth Range for 20° Pressure Angle	Number of Teeth to Gage Over
12 to 18	12 to 18	2	63 to 75	46 to 54	6
19 to 37	19 to 27	3	76 to 87	55 to 63	7
38 to 50	28 to 36	4	88 to 100	64 to 72	8
51 to 62	37 to 45	5	101 to 110	73 to 81	9

This table shows the number of teeth to be included between the jaws of the vernier caliper in measuring dimension *M* as explained in connection with Table 10.

Example: Determine the chordal dimension for checking the size of a gear having 30 teeth of 5 diametral pitch and a pressure angle of 20 degrees. A total backlash of 0.008 inch is to be obtained by reducing equally the teeth of both mating gears.

Table 10 shows that chordal distance for 30 teeth of one diametral pitch and a pressure angle of 20 degrees is 10.7526 inches; one-half of the backlash equals 0.004 inch; hence,

$$\text{Chordal dimension} = \frac{10.7526}{5} - 0.004 = 2.1465 \text{ inches}$$

Table 11 shows that this is the chordal dimension when the vernier caliper spans four teeth, this being the number of teeth to gage over whenever gears of 20-degree pressure angle have any number of teeth from 28 to 36, inclusive.

If it is considered necessary to leave enough stock on the gear teeth for a shaving or finishing cut, this allowance is simply added to the chordal dimension of the finished teeth to obtain the required measurement over the teeth for the roughing operation. It may be advisable to place this chordal dimension for rough machining on the detail drawing.

Formula for Chordal Dimension *M*.—The required measurement *M* over spur gear teeth may be obtained by the following formula in which R = pitch radius of gear, A = pressure angle, T = tooth thickness along pitch circle, N = number of gear teeth, S = number of tooth *spaces* between caliper jaws, F = a factor depending on the pressure angle = 0.01109 for 14½°; = 0.01973 for 17½°; = 0.0298 for 20°; = 0.04303 for 22½°; = 0.05995 for 25°. This factor F equals twice the involute function of the pressure angle.

$$M = R \times \cos A \times \left(\frac{T}{R} + \frac{6.2832 \times S}{N} + F \right)$$

Example: A spur gear has 30 teeth of 6 diametral pitch and a pressure angle of 14½ degrees. Determine measurement *M* over three teeth, there being two intervening tooth spaces.

The pitch radius = 2½ inches, the arc tooth thickness equivalent to 6 diametral pitch is 0.2618 inch (if no allowance is made for backlash) and factor F for 14½ degrees = 0.01109 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$M = 2.5 \times 0.96815 \times \left(\frac{0.2618}{2.5} + \frac{6.2832 \times 2}{30} + 0.01109 \right) = 1.2941 \text{ inches}$$

Checking Enlarged Pinions by Measuring Over Pins or Wires.—When the teeth of small spur gears or pinions would be undercut if generated by an unmodified straight-sided rack cutter or hob, it is common practice to make the outside diameter larger than standard. The amount of increase in outside diameter varies with the pressure angle and number of teeth, as shown by Table 7 on page 2225. The teeth are always cut to standard depth on a generating type of machine such as a gear hobber or gear shaper; and because the number of teeth and pitch are not changed, the pitch diameter also remains unchanged. The tooth thickness on the pitch circle, however, is increased and wire sizes suitable for standard gears are not large enough to extend above the tops of these enlarged gears or pinions; hence, the Van Keuren wire size recommended for these enlarged pinions equals 1.92 ÷ diametral pitch. Table 12 gives measurements over wires of this size, for checking full-depth involute gears of 1 diametral pitch. For any other pitch, merely divide the measurement given in the table by the diametral pitch. Table 12 applies to pinions that have been enlarged by the same amounts as given in Table 7 and Table 8, starting on page 2225. These enlarged pinions will mesh with standard gears; but if the standard center distance is to be maintained, reduce the gear diameter below the standard size by as much as the pinion diameter is increased.

Table 12. Checking Enlarged Spur Pinions by Measurement Over Wires

Measurements over wires are given in table for 1 diametral pitch. For any other diametral pitch, divide measurement in table by given pitch. Wire size equals 1.92 ÷ diametral pitch.

Number of Teeth	Outside or Major Diameter (Note 1)	Circular Tooth Thickness (Note 2)	Measurement Over Wires	Number of Teeth	Outside or Major Diameter (Note 1)	Circular Tooth Thickness (Note 2)	Measurement Over Wires
14½-degree full-depth involute teeth:				20-degree full-depth involute teeth:			
10	13.3731	1.9259	13.6186	10	12.936	1.912	13.5039
11	14.3104	1.9097	14.4966	11	13.818	1.868	14.3299
12	15.2477	1.8935	15.6290	12	14.702	1.826	15.4086
13	16.1850	1.8773	16.5211	13	15.584	1.783	16.2473
14	17.1223	1.8611	17.6244	14	16.468	1.741	17.2933
15	18.0597	1.8449	18.5260	15	17.350	1.698	18.1383
16	18.9970	1.8286	19.6075	16	18.234	1.656	19.1596
17	19.9343	1.8124	20.5156	17	19.116	1.613	20.0080
18	20.8716	1.7962	21.5806				
19	21.8089	1.7800	22.4934				
20	22.7462	1.7638	23.5451				
21	23.6835	1.7476	24.4611				
22	24.6208	1.7314	25.5018				
23	25.5581	1.7151	26.4201				
24	26.4954	1.6989	27.4515				
25	27.4328	1.6827	28.3718				
26	28.3701	1.6665	29.3952				
27	29.3074	1.6503	30.3168				
28	30.2447	1.6341	31.3333				
29	31.1820	1.6179	32.2558				
30	32.1193	1.6017	33.2661				
31	33.0566	1.5854	34.1889				

Note 1: These enlargements, which are to improve the tooth form and avoid undercut, conform to those given in Table 7 and Table 8, starting on page 2225 where data will be found on the minimum number of teeth in the mating gear.

Note 2: The circular or arc thickness is at the standard pitch diameter. The corresponding chordal thickness may be found as follows: Multiply arc thickness by 90 and then divide product by 3.1416 × pitch radius; find sine of angle thus obtained and multiply it by pitch diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

GEAR MATERIALS

Classification of Gear Steels.—Gear steels may be divided into two general classes—the plain carbon and the alloy steels. Alloy steels are used to some extent in the industrial field, but heat-treated plain carbon steels are far more common. The use of untreated alloy steels for gears is seldom, if ever, justified, and then, only when heat-treating facilities are lacking. The points to be considered in determining whether to use heat-treated plain carbon steels or heat-treated alloy steels are: Does the service condition or design require the superior characteristics of the alloy steels, or, if alloy steels are not required, will the advantages to be derived offset the additional cost? For most applications, plain carbon steels, heat treated to obtain the best of their qualities for the service intended, are satisfactory and quite economical. The advantages obtained from using heat-treated alloy steels in place of heat-treated plain carbon steels are as follows:

1) Increased surface hardness and depth of hardness penetration for the same carbon content and quench.

2) Ability to obtain the same surface hardness with a less drastic quench and, in the case of some of the alloys, a lower quenching temperature, thus giving less distortion.

3) Increased toughness, as indicated by the higher values of yield point, elongation, and reduction of area.

4) Finer grain size, with the resulting higher impact toughness and increased wear resistance.

5) In the case of some of the alloys, better machining qualities or the possibility of machining at higher hardnesses.

Use of Case-Hardening Steels.—Each of the two general classes of gear steels may be further subdivided as follows: 1) Case-hardening steels; 2) full-hardening steels; and 3) steels that are heat treated and drawn to a hardness that will permit machining.

The first two—case-hardening and full-hardening steels—are interchangeable for some kinds of service, and the choice is often a matter of personal opinion. Case-hardening steels with their extremely hard, fine-grained (when properly treated) case and comparatively soft and ductile core are generally used when resistance to wear is desired. Case-hardening alloy steels have a fairly tough core, but not as tough as that of the full-hardening steels. In order to realize the greatest benefits from the core properties, case-hardened steels should be double-quenched. This is particularly true of the alloy steels, because the benefits derived from their use seldom justify the additional expense, unless the core is refined and toughened by a second quench. The penalty that must be paid for the additional refinement is increased distortion, which may be excessive if the shape or design does not lend itself to the case-hardening process.

Use of "Thru-Hardening" Steels.—Thru-hardening steels are used when great strength, high endurance limit, toughness, and resistance to shock are required. These qualities are governed by the kind of steel and treatment used. Fairly high surface hardnesses are obtainable in this group, though not so high as those of the case-hardening steels. For that reason, the resistance to wear is not so great as might be obtained, but when wear resistance combined with great strength and toughness is required, this type of steel is superior to the others. Thru-hardening steels become distorted to some extent when hardened, the amount depending upon the steel and quenching medium used. For that reason, thru-hardening steels are not suitable for high-speed gearing where noise is a factor, or for gearing where accuracy is of paramount importance, except, of course, in cases where grinding of the teeth is practicable. The medium and high-carbon percentages require an oil quench, but a water quench may be necessary for the lower carbon contents, in order to obtain the highest physical properties and hardness. The distortion, however, will be greater with the water quench.

Heat Treatment that Permits Machining.—When the grinding of gear teeth is not practicable and a high degree of accuracy is required, hardened steels may be drawn or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tempered to a hardness that will permit the cutting of the teeth. This treatment gives a highly refined structure, great toughness, and, in spite of the low hardness, excellent wearing qualities. The lower strength is somewhat compensated for by the elimination of the increment loads due to the impacts which are caused by inaccuracies. When steels that have a low degree of hardness penetration from surface to core are treated in this manner, the design cannot be based on the physical properties corresponding to the hardness at the surface. Since the physical properties are determined by the hardness, the drop in hardness from surface to core will give lower physical properties at the root of the tooth, where the stress is greatest. The quenching medium may be either oil, water, or brine, depending on the steel used and hardness penetration desired. The amount of distortion, of course, is immaterial, because the machining is done after heat treating.

Making Pinion Harder than Gear to Equalize Wear.—Beneficial results from a wear standpoint are obtained by making the pinion harder than the gear. The pinion, having a lesser number of teeth than the gear, naturally does more work per tooth, and the differential in hardness between the pinion and the gear (the amount being dependent on the ratio) serves to equalize the rate of wear. The harder pinion teeth correct the errors in the gear teeth to some extent by the initial wear and then seem to burnish the teeth of the gear and increase its ability to withstand wear by the greater hardness due to the cold-working of the surface. In applications where the gear ratio is high and there are no severe shock loads, a case-hardened pinion running with an oil-treated gear, treated to a Brinell Hardness at which the teeth may be cut after treating, is an excellent combination. The pinion, being relatively small, is distorted but little, and distortion in the gear is circumvented by cutting the teeth after treatment.

Forged and Rolled Carbon Steels for Gears.—These compositions cover steel for gears in three groups, according to heat treatment, as follows:

a) case-hardened gears

b) unhardened gears, not heat treated after machining

c) hardened and tempered gears

Forged and rolled carbon gear steels are purchased on the basis of the requirements as to chemical composition specified in Table 1. Class N steel will normally be ordered in ten point carbon ranges within these limits. Requirements as to physical properties have been omitted, but when they are called for the requirements as to carbon shall be omitted. The steels may be made by either or both the open hearth and electric furnace processes.

Table 1. Compositions of Forged and Rolled Carbon Steels for Gears

Heat Treatment	Class	Carbon	Manganese	Phosphorus	Sulfur
Case-hardened	C	0.15–0.25	0.40–0.70	0.045 max	0.055 max
Untreated	N	0.25–0.50	0.50–0.80	0.045 max	0.055 max
Hardened (or untreated)	H	0.40–0.50	0.40–0.70	0.045 max	0.055 max

Forged and Rolled Alloy Steels for Gears.—These compositions cover alloy steel for gears, in two classes according to heat treatment, as follows:

a) case-hardened gears

b) hardened and tempered gears

Forged and rolled alloy gear steels are purchased on the basis of the requirements as to chemical composition specified in Table 2. Requirements as to physical properties have been omitted. The steel shall be made by either or both the open hearth and electric furnace process.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Compositions of Forged and Rolled Alloy Steels for Gears

Steel Specification	Chemical Composition[a]					
	C	Mn	Si	Ni	Cr	Mo
AISI 4130	0.28–0.30	0.40–0.60	0.20–0.35	…	0.80–1.1	0.15–0.25
AISI 4140	0.38–0.43	0.75–1.0	0.20–0.35	…	0.80–1.1	0.15–0.25
AISI 4340	0.38–0.43	0.60–0.80	0.20–0.35	1.65–2.0	0.70–90	0.20–0.30
AISI 4615	0.13–0.18	0.45–0.65	0.20–0.35	1.65–2.0	…	0.20–0.30
AISI 4620	0.17–0.22	0.45–0.65	0.20–0.35	1.65–2.0	…	0.20–0.30
AISI 8615	0.13–0.18	0.70–0.90	0.20–0.35	0.40–0.70	0.40–0.60	0.15–0.25
AISI 8620	0.18–0.23	0.70–0.90	0.20–0.35	0.40–0.70	0.40–0.60	0.15–0.25
AISI 9310	0.08–0.13	0.45–0.65	0.20–0.35	3.0–3.5	1.0–1.4	0.08–0.15
Nitralloy						
Type N[b]	0.20–0.27	0.40–0.70	0.20–0.40	3.2–3.8	1.0–1.3	0.20–0.30
135 Mod.[b]	0.38–0.45	0.40–0.70	0.20–0.40	…	1.4–1.8	0.30–0.45

[a] C = carbon; Mn = manganese; Si = silicon; Ni = nickel; Cr = chromium, and Mo = molybdenum.

[b] Both Nitralloy alloys contain aluminum 0.85–1.2%

Steel Castings for Gears.—It is recommended that steel castings for cut gears be purchased on the basis of chemical analysis and that only two types of analysis be used, one for case-hardened gears and the other for both untreated gears and those which are to be hardened and tempered. The steel is to be made by the open hearth, crucible, or electric furnace processes. The converter process is not recognized. Sufficient risers must be provided to secure soundness and freedom from undue segregation. Risers should not be broken off the unannealed castings by force. Where risers are cut off with a torch, the cut should be at least one-half inch above the surface of the castings, and the remaining metal removed by chipping, grinding, or other noninjurious method.

Steel for use in gears should conform to the requirements for chemical composition indicated in Table 3. All steel castings for gears must be thoroughly normalized or annealed, using such temperature and time as will entirely eliminate the characteristic structure of unannealed castings.

Table 3. Compositions of Cast Steels for Gears

Steel Specification	Chemical Composition[a]			
	C	Mn	Si	
SAE-0022	0.12–0.22	0.50–0.90	0.60 Max.	May be carburized
SAE-0050	0.40–0.50	0.50–0.90	0.80 Max.	Hardenable 210–250

[a] C = carbon; Mn = manganese; Si = silicon.

Effect of Alloying Metals on Gear Steels.—The effect of the various alloying elements on steel are here summarized to assist in deciding on the particular kind of alloy steel to use for specific purposes. The characteristics outlined apply only to heat-treated steels. When the effect of the addition of an alloying element is stated, it is understood that reference is made to alloy steels of a given carbon content, compared with a plain carbon steel of the same carbon content.

Nickel: The addition of nickel tends to increase the hardness and strength, with but little sacrifice of ductility. The hardness penetration is somewhat greater than that of plain carbon steels. Use of nickel as an alloying element lowers the critical points and produces less distortion, due to the lower quenching temperature. The nickel steels of the case-hardening group carburize more slowly, but the grain growth is less.

Chromium: Chromium increases the hardness and strength over that obtained by the use of nickel, though the loss of ductility is greater. Chromium refines the grain and imparts a

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

greater depth of hardness. Chromium steels have a high degree of wear resistance and are easily machined in spite of the fine grain.

Manganese: When present in sufficient amounts to warrant the use of the term alloy, the addition of manganese is very effective. It gives greater strength than nickel and a higher degree of toughness than chromium. Owing to its susceptibility to cold-working, it is likely to flow under severe unit pressures. Up to the present time, it has never been used to any great extent for heat-treated gears, but is now receiving an increasing amount of attention.

Vanadium: Vanadium has a similar effect to that of manganese—increasing the hardness, strength, and toughness. The loss of ductility is somewhat more than that due to manganese, but the hardness penetration is greater than for any of the other alloying elements. Owing to the extremely fine-grained structure, the impact strength is high; but vanadium tends to make machining difficult.

Molybdenum: Molybdenum has the property of increasing the strength without affecting the ductility. For the same hardness, steels containing molybdenum are more ductile than any other alloy steels, and having nearly the same strength, are tougher; in spite of the increased toughness, the presence of molybdenum does not make machining more difficult. In fact, such steels can be machined at a higher hardness than any of the other alloy steels. The impact strength is nearly as great as that of the vanadium steels.

Chrome-Nickel Steels: The combination of the two alloying elements chromium and nickel adds the beneficial qualities of both. The high degree of ductility present in nickel steels is complemented by the high strength, finer grain size, deep hardening, and wear-resistant properties imparted by the addition of chromium. The increased toughness makes these steels more difficult to machine than the plain carbon steels, and they are more difficult to heat treat. The distortion increases with the amount of chromium and nickel.

Chrome-Vanadium Steels: Chrome-vanadium steels have practically the same tensile properties as the chrome-nickel steels, but the hardening power, impact strength, and wear resistance are increased by the finer grain size. They are difficult to machine and become distorted more easily than the other alloy steels.

Chrome-Molybdenum Steels: This group has the same qualities as the straight molybdenum steels, but the hardening depth and wear resistance are increased by the addition of chromium. This steel is very easily heat treated and machined.

Nickel-Molybdenum Steels: Nickel-molybdenum steels have qualities similar to chrome-molybdenum steel. The toughness is said to be greater, but the steel is somewhat more difficult to machine.

Sintered Materials.—For high production of low and moderately loaded gears, significant production cost savings may be effected by the use of a sintered metal powder. With this material, the gear is formed in a die under high pressure and then sintered in a furnace. The primary cost saving comes from the great reduction in labor cost of machining the gear teeth and other gear blank surfaces. The volume of production must be high enough to amortize the cost of the die and the gear blank must be of such a configuration that it may be formed and readily ejected from the die.

Bronze and Brass Gear Castings.—These specifications cover nonferrous metals for spur, bevel, and worm gears, bushings and flanges for composition gears. This material shall be purchased on the basis of chemical composition. The alloys may be made by any approved method.

Spur and Bevel Gears: For spur and bevel gears, hard cast bronze is recommended (ASTM B10-18; SAE No. 62; and the well-known 88-10-2 mixture) with the following limits as to composition: Copper, 86 to 89; tin, 9 to 11; zinc, 1 to 3; lead (max), 0.20; iron (max), 0.06 percent. Good castings made from this bronze should have the following minimum physical characteristics: Ultimate strength, 30,000 pounds per square inch; yield point, 15,000 pounds per square inch; elongation in 2 inches, 14 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Steels for Industrial Gearing

Material Specification	Hardness[a] Case RC	Hardness[a] Core BHN	Typical Heat Treatment, Characteristics, and Uses
Case-Hardening Steels			
AISI 1020 AISI 1116	55-60	160-230	Carburize, harden, temper at 350°F. For gears that must be wear-resistant. Normalized material is easily machined. Core is ductile but has little strength.
AISI 4130 AISI 4140	50-55	270-370	Harden, temper at 900°F, Nitride. For parts requiring greater wear resistance than that of through-hardened steels but unable to tolerate the distortion of carburizing. Case is shallow, core is tough.
AISI 4615 AISI 4620	} 55-60	170-260	Carburize, harden, temper at 350°F. For gears requiring high fatigue resistance and strength.
AISI 8615 AISI 8620	} 55-60	200-300	The 86xx series has better machinability. The 20 point steels are used for coarser teeth.
AISI 9310	58-63	250-350	Carburize, harden, temper at 300°F. Primarily for aerospace gears that are highly loaded and operate at high pitch line velocity and for other gears requiring high reliability under extreme operating conditions. This material is not used at high temperatures.
Nitralloy N and Type 135 Mod. (15-N)	90-94	300-370	Harden, temper at 1200°F, Nitride. For gears requiring high strength and wear resistance that cannot tolerate the distortion of the carburizing process or that operate at high temperatures. Gear teeth are usually finished before nitriding. Care must be exercised in running nitrided gears together to avoid crazing of case-hardened surfaces.
Through-Hardening Steels			
AISI 1045 AISI 1140	24-40	…	Harden and temper to required hardness. Oil quench for lower hardness and water quench for higher hardness. For gears of medium and large size requiring moderate strength and wear resistance. Gears that must have consistent, solid sections to withstand quenching.
AISI 4140AISI 4340	24-40	…	Harden (oil quench), temper to required hardness. For gears requiring high strength and wear resistance, and high shock loading resistance. Use 41xx series for moderate sections and 43xx series for heavy sections. Gears must have consistent, solid sections to withstand quenching.

[a] Hardness value scales are: RC for Rockwell C scale, BHN for Brinell Hardness Numbers.

Worm Gears: For bronze worm gears, two alternative analyses of phosphor bronze are recommended, SAE No. 65 and No. 63.

SAE No. 65 (called phosphor gear bronze) has the following composition: Copper, 88 to 90; tin, 10 to 12; phosphorus, 0.1 to 0.3; lead, zinc, and impurities (max) 0.5 percent.

Good castings made of this alloy should have the following minimum physical characteristics: Ultimate strength, 35,000 pounds per square inch; yield point, 20,000 pounds per square inch; elongation in 2 inches, 10 percent.

The composition of SAE No. 63 (called leaded gun metal) follows: copper, 86 to 89; tin, 9 to 11; lead, 1 to 2.5; phosphorus (max), 0.25; zinc and impurities (max), 0.50 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Good castings made of this alloy should have the following minimum physical characteristics: Ultimate strength, 30,000 pounds per square inch; yield point, 12,000 pounds per square inch; elongation in 2 inches, 10 percent.

These alloys, especially No. 65, are adapted to chilling for hardness and refinement of grain. No. 65 is to be preferred for use with worms of great hardness and fine accuracy. No. 63 is to be preferred for use with unhardened worms.

Gear Bushings: For bronze bushings for gears, SAE No. 64 is recommended of the following analysis: copper, 78.5 to 81.5; tin, 9 to 11; lead, 9 to 11; phosphorus, 0.05 to 0.25; zinc (max), 0.75; other impurities (max), 0.25 percent. Good castings of this alloy should have the following minimum physical characteristics: Ultimate strength, 25,000 pounds per square inch; yield point, 12,000 pounds per square inch; elongation in 2 inches, 8 percent.

Flanges for Composition Pinions: For brass flanges for composition pinions ASTM B30-32T, and SAE No. 40 are recommended. This is a good cast red brass of sufficient strength and hardness to take its share of load and wear when the design is such that the flanges mesh with the mating gear. The composition is as follows: copper, 83 to 86; tin, 4.5 to 5.5; lead, 4.5 to 5.5; zinc, 4.5 to 5.5; iron (max) 0.35; antimony (max), 0.25 percent; aluminum, none. Good castings made from this alloy should have the following minimum physical characteristics: ultimate strength, 27,000 pounds per square inch; yield point, 12,000 pounds per square inch; elongation in 2 inches, 16 percent.

Materials for Worm Gearing.—The Hamilton Gear & Machine Co. conducted an extensive series of tests on a variety of materials that might be used for worm gears, to ascertain which material is the most suitable. According to these tests chill-cast nickel-phosphor-bronze ranks first in resistance to wear and deformation. This bronze is composed of approximately 87.5 percent copper, 11 percent tin, 1.5 percent nickel, with from 0.1 to 0.2 percent phosphorus. The worms used in these tests were made from SAE-2315, $3\frac{1}{2}$ percent nickel steel, case-hardened, ground, and polished. The Shore scleroscope hardness of the worms was between 80 and 90. This nickel alloy steel was adopted after numerous tests of a variety of steels, because it provided the necessary strength, together with the degree of hardness required.

The material that showed up second best in these tests was a No. 65 SAE bronze. Navy bronze (88-10-2) containing 2 percent zinc, with no phosphorus, and not chilled, performed satisfactorily at speeds of 600 revolutions per minute, but was not sufficiently strong at lower speeds. Red brass (85-5-5) proved slightly better at from 1500 to 1800 revolutions per minute, but would bend at lower speeds, before it would show actual wear.

Non-Metallic Gearing.—Non-metallic or composition gearing is used primarily where quietness of operation at high speed is the first consideration. Non-metallic materials are also applied very generally to timing gears and numerous other classes of gearing. Rawhide was used originally for non-metallic gears, but other materials have been introduced that have important advantages. These later materials are sold by different firms under various trade names, such as Micarta, Textolite, Formica, Dilecto, Spauldite, Phenolite, Fibroc, Fabroil, Synthane, Celoron, etc. Most of these gear materials consist of layers of canvas or other material that is impregnated with plastics and forced together under hydraulic pressure, which, in conjunction with the application of heat, forms a dense rigid mass.

Although phenol resin gears in general are resilient, they are self-supporting and require no side plates or shrouds unless subjected to a heavy starting torque. The phenol resinoid element protects these gears from vermin and rodents.

The non-metallic gear materials referred to are generally assumed to have the power-transmitting capacity of cast iron. Although the tensile strength may be considerably less than that of cast iron, the resiliency of these materials enables them to withstand

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

impact and abrasion to a degree that might result in excessive wear of cast-iron teeth. Thus, composition gearing of impregnated canvas has often proved to be more durable than cast iron.

Application of Non-Metallic Gears.—The most effective field of use for these non-metallic materials is for high-speed duty. At low speeds, when the starting torque may be high, or when the load may fluctuate widely, or when high shock loads may be encountered, these non-metallic materials do not always prove satisfactory. In general, non-metallic materials should not be used for pitch-line velocities below 600 feet per minute (3.05 m/s).

Tooth Form: The best tooth form for non-metallic materials is the 20-degree stub-tooth system. When only a single pair of gears is involved and the center distance can be varied, the best results will be obtained by making the non-metallic driving pinion of all-addendum form, and the driven metal gear with standard tooth proportions. Such a drive will carry from 50 to 75 percent greater loads than one of standard tooth proportions.

Material for Mating Gear: For durability under load, the use of hardened steel (over 400 BHN or Brinell Hardness Number) for the mating metal gear appears to give the best results. A good second choice for the material of the mating member is cast iron. The use of brass, bronze, or soft steel (under 400 BHN) as a material for the mating member of phenolic laminated gears leads to excessive abrasive wear.

Power-Transmitting Capacity of Non-Metallic Gears.—The characteristics of gears made of phenolic laminated materials are so different from those of metal gears that they should be considered in a class by themselves. Because of the low modulus of elasticity, most of the effects of small errors in tooth form and spacing are absorbed at the tooth surfaces by the elastic deformation, and have but little effect on the strength of the gears.

If S = safe working stress for a given velocity lb/in^2 (MPa)

S_s = allowable static stress lb/in^2 (MPa)

V = pitch-line velocity in feet per minute (meter/s)

then, the recommended practice of the American Gear Manufacturers' Association,

$$S = S_s \times \left(\frac{150}{200 + V} + 0.25\right) \text{ US Units} \qquad \boldsymbol{S = S_s \times \left(\frac{0.76}{1.016 + V} + 0.25\right) \text{ SI Units}}$$

The value of S_s for phenolic laminated materials is given as 6000 lb/in^2 (41.36 MPa). The accompanying table gives the safe working stresses S for different pitch-line velocities. When the value of S is known, the horsepower capacity is determined by substituting the value of S for S_s in the appropriate equations in the section on power-transmitting capacity of plastics gears starting on page 606.

Safe Working Stresses for Non-Metallic Gears

Pitch-Line Velocity, V		Safe Working Stress, S		Pitch-Line Velocity, V		Safe Working Stress, S		Pitch-Line Velocity, V		Safe Working Stress, S	
fpm	m/s	lb/in^2	MPa	fpm	m/s	lb/in^2	MPa	fpm	m/s	lb/in^2	MPa
600	3.05	2625	18.10	1800	9.14	1950	13.44	4000	20.32	1714	11.82
700	3.56	2500	17.24	2000	10.16	1909	13.16	4500	22.86	1691	11.66
800	4.06	2400	16.54	2200	11.18	1875	12.93	5000	25.40	1673	11.53
900	4.57	2318	15.98	2400	12.19	1846	12.73	5500	27.94	1653	11.40
1000	5.08	2250	15.51	2600	13.20	1821	12.56	6000	30.48	1645	11.34
1200	6.10	2143	14.78	2800	14.22	1800	12.41	6500	33.02	1634	11.27
1400	7.11	2063	14.22	3000	15.24	1781	12.28	7000	35.56	1622	11.18
1600	8.13	2000	13.79	3500	17.78	1743	12.02	7500	38.10	1617	11.15

The tensile strength of the phenolic laminated materials used for gears is slightly less than that of cast iron. These materials are far softer than any metal, and the modulus of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

elasticity is about one-thirtieth that of steel. In other words, if the tooth load on a steel gear that causes a deformation of 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) were applied to the tooth of a similar gear made of phenolic laminated material, the tooth of the non-metallic gear would be deformed about $^1/_{32}$ inch (0.794 mm). Under these conditions, several things will happen. With all gears, regardless of the theoretical duration of contact, one tooth only will carry the load until the load is sufficient to deform the tooth the amount of the error that may be present. On metal gears, when the tooth has been deformed the amount of the error, the stresses set up in the materials may approach or exceed the elastic limit of the material. Hence, for standard tooth forms and those generated from standard basic racks, it is dangerous to calculate their strength as very much greater than that which can safely be carried on a single tooth. On gears made of phenolic laminated materials, on the other hand, the teeth will be deformed the amount of this normal error without setting up any appreciable stresses in the material, so that the load is actually supported by several teeth.

All materials have their own peculiar and distinct characteristics, so that under certain specific conditions, each material has a field of its own where it is superior to any other. Such fields may overlap to some extent, and only in such overlapping fields are different materials directly competitive. For example, steel is more or less ductile, has a high tensile strength, and a high modulus of elasticity. Cast iron, on the other hand, is not ductile, has a low tensile strength, but a high compressive strength, and a low modulus of elasticity. Hence, when stiffness and high tensile strength are essential, steel is far superior to cast iron. On the other hand, when these two characteristics are unimportant, but high compressive strength and a moderate amount of elasticity are essential, cast iron is superior to steel.

Preferred Pitch for Non-Metallic Gears.—The pitch of the gear or pinion should bear a reasonable relation either to the power or speed or to the applied torque, as shown by the accompanying table. The upper half of this table is based upon horsepower (kw) transmitted at a given pitch-line velocity. The lower half gives the torque in pounds-feet (N-m) or the torque at a 1-foot (meter) radius. This torque T for any given horsepower (kw) and speed can be obtained from the following formulas:

$$T = \frac{5252 \times \text{hp}}{\text{rpm}} \text{ pound-feet} \qquad T = \frac{9550 \times \text{kw}}{\text{rpm}} \text{ N-m}$$

Bore Sizes for Non-Metallic Gears.—For plain phenolic laminated pinions, that is, pinions without metal end plates, a drive fit of 0.001 inch per inch (or mm/mm) of shaft diameter should be used. For shafts above 2.5 inches (63.5 mm) in diameter, the fit should be constant at 0.0025 to 0.003 inch (0.064–0.076 mm). When metal reinforcing end plates are used, the drive fit should conform to the same standards as used for metal.

The root diameter of a pinion of phenolic laminated type should be such that the minimum distance from the edge of the keyway to the root diameter will be at least equal to the depth of tooth.

Keyway Stresses for Non-Metallic Gears.—The keyway stress should not exceed 3000 psi (20.68 MPa) on a plain phenolic laminated gear or pinion. The keyway stress is calculated by the formulas:

$$S = \frac{33000 \times \text{hp}}{V \times A} \text{ psi} \qquad S = \frac{1000 \times \text{kw}}{V \times A} \text{ MPa}$$

where S = unit stress in pounds per square inch (newton per square meter)

hp = horsepower transmitted

kw = kilowatt power transmitted

V = peripheral speed of shaft in feet per minute (meter/sec)

A = square inch (square meter) area of keyway in pinion (length × height)

If the keyway stress formula is expressed in terms of shaft radius r (inch or meter) and revolutions per minute, it will read:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Preferred Pitches for Non-Metallic Gears
Applicable both to rawhide and the phenolic laminated types of materials

Diametral Pitch for Given Horsepower and Pitch Line Velocities			
Horsepower Transmitted	Pitch Line Velocity up to 1000 Feet per Minute	Pitch Line Velocity from 1000 to 2000 Feet per Minute	Pitch Line Velocity over 2000 Feet per Minute
1/4-1	8-10	10-12	12-16
1-2	7-8	8-10	10-12
2-3	6-7	7-8	8-10
3-7½	5-6	6-7	7-8
7½-10	4-5	5-6	6-7
10-15	3-4	4-5	5-6
15-25	2½-3	3-4	4-5
25-60	2-2½	2½-3	3-4
60-100	1¾-2	2-2½	2½-3
100-150	1½-1¾	1¾-2	2-2½

Torque in Pounds-Feet for Given Diametral Pitch					
Diametral Pitch	Torque in Pounds-feet		Diametral Pitch	Torque in Pounds-feet	
	Minimum	Maximum		Minimum	Maximum
16	1	2	4	50	100
12	2	4	3	100	200
10	4	8	2½	200	450
8	8	15	2	450	900
6	15	30	1½	900	1800
5	30	50	1	1800	3500

$$S = \frac{63{,}000 \times \text{hp}}{\text{rpm} \times r \times A} \text{ psi} \qquad S = \frac{9{,}550 \times \text{kw}}{\text{rpm} \times r \times A} \text{ N-m}$$

When the design is such that the keyway stresses exceed 3000 psi (20.68 MPa), metal reinforcing end plates may be used. Such end plates should not extend beyond the root diameter of the teeth. The distance from the outer edge of the retaining bolt to the root diameter of the teeth shall not be less than a full tooth depth. The use of drive keys should be avoided, but if required, metal end plates should be used on the pinion to take the wedging action of the key.

For phenolic laminated pinions, the face of the mating gear should be the same or slightly greater than the pinion face.

Invention of Gear Teeth.—The invention of gear teeth represents a gradual evolution from gearing of primitive form. The earliest evidence we have of an investigation of the problem of *uniform motion* from toothed gearing and the successful solution of that problem dates from the time of Olaf Roemer, the celebrated Danish astronomer, who, in the year 1674, proposed the epicycloidal form to obtain uniform motion. Evidently Robert Willis, professor at the University of Cambridge, was the first to make a practical application of the epicycloidal curve so as to provide for an interchangeable series of gears. Willis gives credit to Charles Étienne Louis Camus for conceiving the idea of interchangeable gears, but claims for himself its first application. The involute tooth was suggested as a theory by early scientists and mathematicians, but it remained for Willis to present it in a practical form. Perhaps the earliest conception of the application of this form of teeth to gears was by Philippe de Lahire, a Frenchman, who considered it, in theory, equally suitable with the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

epicycloidal for tooth outlines. This was about 1695 and not long after Roemer had first demonstrated the epicycloidal form. The applicability of the involute had been further elucidated by Leonard Euler, a Swiss mathematician, born at Basel, 1707, who is credited by Willis with being the first to suggest it. Willis devised the Willis odontograph for laying out involute teeth.

A pressure angle of 14½ degrees was selected for three different reasons. First, because the sine of 14½ degrees is nearly ¼, making it convenient in calculation; second, because this angle coincided closely with the pressure angle resulting from the usual construction of epicycloidal gear teeth; third, because the angle of the straight-sided involute rack is the same as the 29-degree worm thread.

Calculating Replacement-Gear Dimensions from Simple Measurements.—The following Table 1a, Table 1b, and Table 1c provide formulas with which to calculate the dimensions needed to produce replacement spur, bevel, and helical gears when only the number of teeth, the outside diameter, and the tooth depth of the gear to be replaced are known.

For helical gears, exact helix angles can be obtained by the following procedure.

1) Using a common protractor, measure the approximate helix angle A at the approximate pitch line.

2) Place sample or its mating gear on the arbor of a gear hobbing machine.

3) Calculate the index and lead gears differentially for the angle obtained by the measurements, and set up the machine as though a gear is to be cut.

4) Attach a dial indicator on an adjustable arm to the vertical swivel head, with the indicator plunger in a plane perpendicular to the gear axis and in contact with the tooth face. Contact may be anywhere between the top and the root of the tooth.

5) With the power shut off, engage the starting lever and traverse the indicator plunger axially by means of the handwheel.

6) If angle A is correct, the indicator plunger will not move as it traverses the face width of the gear. If it does move from 0, note the amount. Divide the amount of movement by the width of the gear to obtain the tangent of the angle by which to correct angle A, plus or minus, depending on the direction of indicator movement.

Table 1a. Formulas for Calculating Spur Gear Dimensions

Tooth Form and Pressure Angle	Diametral Pitch P	Pitch Diameter D	Circular Pitch P_c	Outside Diameter O	Addendum J	Dedendum K	Whole Tooth Depth W	Clearance $K - J$	Tooth Thickness on Pitch Circle
American Standard 14½-and 20-degree full depth	$\frac{N+2}{O}$	$\frac{N}{P}$	$\frac{3.1416}{P}$	$\frac{N+2}{P}$	$\frac{1}{P}$	$\frac{1.157}{P}$	$\frac{2.157}{P}$	$\frac{0.157}{P}$	$\frac{1.5708}{P}$
American Standard 20-degree stub	$\frac{N+1.6}{O}$	$\frac{N}{P}$	$\frac{3.1416}{P}$	$\frac{N+1.6}{P}$	$\frac{0.8}{P}$	$\frac{1}{P}$	$\frac{1.8}{P}$	$\frac{0.2}{P}$	$\frac{1.5708}{P}$
Fellows 20-degree stub	See Note[a]	$\frac{N}{P_N}$	$\frac{3.1416}{P_N}$	$\frac{N}{P_N}+\frac{2}{P_D}$	$\frac{1}{P_D}$	$\frac{1.25}{P_D}$	$\frac{2.25}{P_D}$	$\frac{0.25}{P_D}$	$\frac{1.5708}{P_N}$

[a] In the Fellows stub-tooth system, P_N = diametral pitch in numerator of stub-tooth designation and is used to determine circular pitch and number of teeth, and P_D = diametral pitch in the denominator of stub-tooth designation and is used to determine tooth depth.

N = number of teeth.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Formulas for Calculating Dimensions of Milled Bevel Gears—90 degree Shafts[a]

Tooth Form and Pressure Angle	Tangent of Pitch Cone Angle of Gear, tan A	Tangent of Pitch Cone Angle of Pinion, tan a	Diametral Pitch[b] of Both Gear and Pinion, P	Outside Diameter of Gear, O, or Pinion, o	Pitch-Cone Radius[b] or Cone Distance, E	Tangent of Addendum Angle[b]	Tangent of Dedendum Angle[b]	Cosine of Pitch-Cone Angle[c] of Gear, cos A
American Standard $14\frac{1}{2}$- and 20-degree full depth	$\frac{N_G}{N_P}$	$\frac{N_P}{N_G}$	$\frac{N_G + 2\cos A}{O}$ or $\frac{N_P + 2\cos a}{o}$	$\frac{N_G + 2\cos A}{P}$ or $\frac{N_P + 2\cos a}{P}$	$\frac{D}{2\sin A}$ or $\frac{d}{2\sin a}$	$\frac{2\sin A}{N_a}$ or $\frac{2\sin a}{N_P}$	$\frac{2.314\sin A}{N_G}$ or $\frac{2.314\sin a}{N_P}$	$\frac{(P\times O)-N_G}{2}$
American Standard 20-degree stub	$\frac{N_G}{N_P}$	$\frac{N_P}{N_G}$	$\frac{N_G + 1.6\cos A}{O}$ or $\frac{N_P + 1.6\cos a}{o}$	$\frac{N_G + 1.6\cos A}{P}$ or $\frac{N_P + 1.6\cos a}{P}$	$\frac{D}{2\sin A}$ or $\frac{d}{2\sin a}$	$\frac{1.6\sin A}{N_G}$ or $\frac{1.6\sin a}{N_P}$	$\frac{2\sin A}{N_G}$ or $\frac{2\sin a}{N_P}$	$\frac{(P\times O)-N_G}{1.6}$
Fellows 20-degree stub	$\frac{N_G}{N_P}$	$\frac{N_P}{N_G}$	…	$\frac{N_G}{P_N}+\frac{2\cos A}{P_D}$ or $\frac{N_P}{P_N}+\frac{2\cos a}{P_D}$	$\frac{D}{2\sin A}$ or $\frac{d}{2\sin a}$	$\frac{2P_N\sin A}{N_G\times P_D}$ or $\frac{2P_N\sin a}{N_P\times P_D}$	$\frac{2.5P_N\sin A}{N_G\times P_D}$ or $\frac{2.5P_N\sin a}{N_P\times P_D}$	$\frac{P_D[(O\times P_N)-N_G]}{2P_N}$

[a] These formulas do not apply to Gleason System Gearing.
[b] These values are the same for both gear and pinion.
[c] The same formulas apply to the pinion, substituting N_P for N_G and o for O.

N_G = number of teeth in gear; N_P = number of teeth in pinion; O = outside diameter of gear; o = outside diameter of pinion; D = pitch diameter of gear = $N_G \div P$; d = pitch diameter of pinion = $N_P \div P$; P_c = circular pitch; J = addendum; K = dedendum; W = whole depth.

See footnote in Table 1a for meaning of P_N and P_D. The tooth thickness on the pitch circle is found by means of the formulas in the last column under spur gears.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1c. Formulas for Calculating Dimensions of Helical Gears

Tooth Form and Pressure Angle	Normal Diametral Pitch, P_N	Diametral Pitch, P	Outside Diameter of Blank, O	Pitch Diameter, D	Cosine of Helix Angle, A	Addendum	Dedendum	Whole Depth
American Standard $14\frac{1}{2}$- and 20-degree full depth	$\frac{N + 2\cos A}{O \times \cos A}$ or $\frac{P}{\cos A}$	$P_N \cos A$ or $\frac{N + 2\cos A}{O}$	$\frac{N + 2\cos A}{P_N \cos A}$ or $\frac{N + 2\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{N}{P_N \cos A}$ or $\frac{N}{P}$	$\frac{P}{P_N}$ or $\frac{N}{O \times P_N - 2}$	$\frac{1}{P_N}$ or $\frac{\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{1.157}{P_N}$ or $\frac{1.157\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{2.157}{P_N}$ or $\frac{2.157\cos A}{P}$
American Standard 20-degree stub	$\frac{N + 1.6\cos A}{O \times \cos A}$ or $\frac{P}{\cos A}$	$P_n \cos A$ or $\frac{N + 1.6\cos A}{O}$	$\frac{N + 1.6\cos A}{P_N \cos A}$ or $\frac{N + 1.6\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{N}{P_N \cos A}$ or $\frac{N}{P}$	$\frac{P}{P_N}$ or $\frac{N}{O \times P_N - 1.6}$	$\frac{0.8}{P_N}$ or $\frac{0.8\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{1}{P_N}$ or $\frac{\cos A}{P}$	$\frac{1.8}{P_N}$ or $\frac{1.8\cos A}{P}$
Fellows 20-degree stub	…	…	$\frac{N}{(P_N)_N \cos A} + \frac{2}{(P_N)_D}$	$\frac{N}{(P_N)_N \cos A}$	$\frac{N}{(P_N)_N\left(O - \frac{2}{(P_N)_D}\right)}$	$\frac{1}{(P_N)_D}$	$\frac{1.25}{(P_N)_D}$	$\frac{2.25}{(P_N)_D}$

P_N = normal diametral pitch = normal diametral pitch of cutter or hob used to cut teeth

P = diametral pitch

O = outside diameter of blank

D = pitch diameter

A = helix angle

N = number of teeth

$(P_N)_N$ = normal diametral pitch in numerator of stub-tooth designation, which determines thickness of tooth and number of teeth

$(P_N)_D$ = normal diametral pitch in denominator of stub-tooth designation, which determines the addendum, dedendum, and whole depth

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

SPLINES AND SERRATIONS

A splined shaft is one having a series of parallel keys formed integrally with the shaft and mating with corresponding grooves cut in a hub or fitting; this arrangement is in contrast to a shaft having a series of keys or feathers fitted into slots cut into the shaft. The latter construction weakens the shaft to a considerable degree because of the slots cut into it and consequently, reduces its torque-transmitting capacity.

Splined shafts are most generally used in three types of applications: 1) for coupling shafts when relatively heavy torques are to be transmitted without slippage; 2) for transmitting power to slidably-mounted or permanently-fixed gears, pulleys, and other rotating members; and 3) for attaching parts that may require removal for indexing or change in angular position.

Splines having straight-sided teeth have been used in many applications (see SAE Parallel Side Splines for Soft Broached Holes in Fittings); however, the use of splines with teeth of involute profile has steadily increased since 1) involute spline couplings have greater torque-transmitting capacity than any other type; 2) they can be produced by the same techniques and equipment as is used to cut gears; and 3) they have a self-centering action under load even when there is backlash between mating members.

Involute Splines

American National Standard Involute Splines*.—These splines or multiple keys are similar in form to internal and external involute gears. The general practice is to form the external splines either by hobbing, rolling, or on a gear shaper, and internal splines either by broaching or on a gear shaper. The internal spline is held to basic dimensions and the external spline is varied to control the fit. Involute splines have maximum strength at the base, can be accurately spaced and are self-centering, thus equalizing the bearing and stresses, and they can be measured and fitted accurately.

In American National Standard ANSI B92.1-1996, many features of the 1960 and 1970 standards are retained, plus the addition of three tolerance classes, for a total of four. The term "involute serration," formerly applied to involute splines with 45-degree pressure angle, has been deleted and the standard now includes involute splines with 30-, 37.5-, and 45-degree pressure angles. Tables for these splines have been rearranged accordingly. The term "serration" will no longer apply to splines covered by this Standard.

The Standard has only one fit class for all side fit splines: the former Class 2 fit. Class 1 fit has been deleted because of its infrequent use. The major diameter of the flat root side fit spline has been changed and a tolerance applied to include the range of the 1950 and the 1960 standards. The interchangeability limitations with splines made to previous standards are given later in the section entitled "Interchangeability."

There have been no tolerance nor fit changes to the major diameter fit section.

The Standard recognizes the fact that proper assembly between mating splines is dependent only on the spline being within effective specifications from the tip of the tooth to the form diameter. Therefore, on side fit splines, the internal spline major diameter now is shown as a maximum dimension and the external spline minor diameter is shown as a minimum dimension. The minimum internal major diameter and the maximum external minor diameter must clear the specified form diameter and thus do not need any additional control.

The spline specification tables now include a greater number of tolerance level selections. These tolerance classes were added for greater selection to suit end product needs. The selections differ only in the tolerance as applied to space width and tooth thickness.

* See American National Standard ANSI B92.2M-1980 (R1989), Metric Module Involute Splines; also see page 2351.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The tolerance class used in ASA B5.15-1960 is the basis and is now designated as tolerance Class 5. The newer tolerance classes are based on the following formulas:

$$\text{Tolerance Class 4} = \text{Tolerance Class 5} \times 0.71$$

$$\text{Tolerance Class 6} = \text{Tolerance Class 5} \times 1.40$$

$$\text{Tolerance Class 7} = \text{Tolerance Class 5} \times 2.00$$

All dimensions listed in this standard are for the finished part. Therefore, any compensation that must be made for operations that take place during processing, such as heat treatment, must be taken into account when selecting the tolerance level for manufacturing.

The standard has the same internal minimum effective space width and external maximum effective tooth thickness for all tolerance classes and has two types of fit. For tooth side fits, the minimum effective space width and the maximum effective tooth thickness are of equal value. This basic concept makes it possible to have interchangeable assembly between mating splines where they are made to this standard regardless of the tolerance class of the individual members. A tolerance class "mix" of mating members is thus allowed, which often is an advantage where one member is considerably less difficult to produce than its mate, and the "average" tolerance applied to the two units is such that it satisfies the design need. For instance, assigning a Class 5 tolerance to one member and Class 7 to its mate will provide an assembly tolerance in the Class 6 range. The maximum effective tooth thickness is less than the minimum effective space width for major diameter fits to allow for eccentricity variations.

In the event the fit as provided in this standard does not satisfy a particular design need and a specific amount of effective clearance or press fit is desired, the change should be made only to the external spline by a reduction or an increase in effective tooth thickness and a like change in actual tooth thickness. The minimum effective space width, in this standard, is always basic. The basic minimum effective space width should always be retained when special designs are derived from the concept of this standard.

Terms Applied to Involute Splines.—The following definitions of involute spline terms, here listed in alphabetical order, are given in the American National Standard. Some of these terms are illustrated in the diagram in Table 6.

Active Spline Length (L_a) is the length of spline that contacts the mating spline. On sliding splines, it exceeds the length of engagement.

Actual Space Width (s) is the circular width on the pitch circle of any single space considering an infinitely thin increment of axial spline length.

Actual Tooth Thickness (t) is the circular thickness on the pitch circle of any single tooth considering an infinitely thin increment of axial spline length.

Alignment Variation is the variation of the effective spline axis with respect to the reference axis (see Fig. 1c).

Base Circle is the circle from which involute spline tooth profiles are constructed.

Base Diameter (D_b) is the diameter of the base circle.

Basic Space Width is the basic space width for 30-degree pressure angle splines: half the circular pitch. The basic space width for 37.5- and 45-degree pressure angle splines, however, is greater than half the circular pitch. The teeth are proportioned so that the external tooth, at its base, has about the same thickness as the internal tooth at the form diameter. This proportioning results in greater minor diameters than those of comparable involute splines of 30-degree pressure angle.

Circular Pitch (p) is the distance along the pitch circle between corresponding points of adjacent spline teeth.

Depth of Engagement is the radial distance from the minor circle of the internal spline to the major circle of the external spline, minus corner clearance and/or chamfer depth.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Diametral Pitch (P) is the number of spline teeth per inch of pitch diameter. The diametral pitch determines the circular pitch and the basic space width or tooth thickness. In conjunction with the number of teeth, it also determines the pitch diameter. (See also Pitch.)

Effective Clearance (c_v) is the effective space width of the internal spline minus the effective tooth thickness of the mating external spline.

Effective Space Width (S_v) of an internal spline is equal to the circular tooth thickness on the pitch circle of an imaginary perfect external spline that would fit the internal spline without looseness or interference considering engagement of the entire axial length of the spline. The minimum effective space width of the internal spline is always basic, as shown in Table 3. Fit variations may be obtained by adjusting the tooth thickness of the external spline.

Three Types of Involute Spline Variations

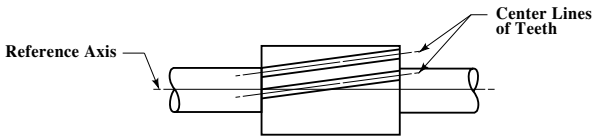


Fig. 1a. Lead Variation

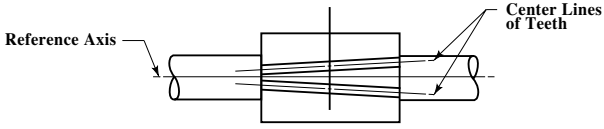


Fig. 1b. Parallelism Variation

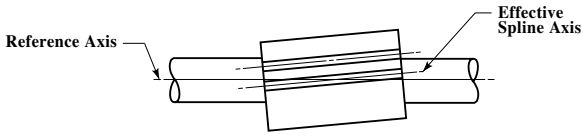


Fig. 1c. Alignment Variation

Effective Tooth Thickness (t_v) of an external spline is equal to the circular space width on the pitch circle of an imaginary perfect internal spline that would fit the external spline without looseness or interference, considering engagement of the entire axial length of the spline.

Effective Variation is the accumulated effect of the spline variations on the fit with the mating part.

External Spline is a spline formed on the outer surface of a cylinder.

Fillet is the concave portion of the tooth profile that joins the sides to the bottom of the space.

Fillet Root Splines are those in which a single fillet in the general form of an arc joins the sides of adjacent teeth.

Flat Root Splines are those in which fillets join the arcs of major or minor circles to the tooth sides.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Form Circle is the circle which defines the deepest points of involute form control of the tooth profile. This circle along with the tooth tip circle (or start of chamfer circle) determines the limits of tooth profile requiring control. It is located near the major circle on the internal spline and near the minor circle on the external spline.

Form Clearance (c_F) is the radial depth of involute profile beyond the depth of engagement with the mating part. It allows for looseness between mating splines and for eccentricities between the minor circle (internal), the major circle (external), and their respective pitch circles.

Form Diameter (D_{Fe}, D_{Fi}) is the diameter of the form circle.

Internal Spline is a spline formed on the inner surface of a cylinder.

Involute Spline is one having teeth with involute profiles.

Lead Variation is the variation of the direction of the spline tooth from its intended direction parallel to the reference axis, also including parallelism and alignment variations (see Fig. 1a). *Note:* Straight (nonhelical) splines have an infinite lead.

Length of Engagement (L_g) is the axial length of contact between mating splines.

Machining Tolerance (m) is the permissible variation in actual space width or actual tooth thickness.

Major Circle is the circle formed by the outermost surface of the spline. It is the outside circle (tooth tip circle) of the external spline or the root circle of the internal spline.

Major Diameter (D_o, D_{ri}) is the diameter of the major circle.

Minor Circle is the circle formed by the innermost surface of the spline. It is the root circle of the external spline or the inside circle (tooth tip circle) of the internal spline.

Minor Diameter (D_{re}, D_i) is the diameter of the minor circle.

Nominal Clearance is the actual space width of an internal spline minus the actual tooth thickness of the mating external spline. It does not define the fit between mating members, because of the effect of variations.

Out of Roundness is the variation of the spline from a true circular configuration.

Parallelism Variation is the variation of parallelism of a single spline tooth with respect to any other single spline tooth (see Fig. 1b).

Pitch (P/P_s) is a combination number of a one-to-two ratio indicating the spline proportions; the upper or first number is the diametral pitch, the lower or second number is the stub pitch and denotes, as that fractional part of an inch, the basic radial length of engagement, both above and below the pitch circle.

Pitch Circle is the reference circle from which all transverse spline tooth dimensions are constructed.

Pitch Diameter (D) is the diameter of the pitch circle.

Pitch Point is the intersection of the spline tooth profile with the pitch circle.

Pressure Angle (ϕ) is the angle between a line tangent to an involute and a radial line through the point of tangency. Unless otherwise specified, it is the standard pressure angle.

Profile Variation is any variation from the specified tooth profile normal to the flank.

Spline is a machine element consisting of integral keys (spline teeth) or keyways (spaces) equally spaced around a circle or portion thereof.

Standard (Main) Pressure Angle (ϕ_D) is the pressure angle at the specified pitch diameter.

Stub Pitch (P_s) is a number used to denote the radial distance from the pitch circle to the major circle of the external spline and from the pitch circle to the minor circle of the internal spline. The stub pitch for splines in this standard is twice the diametral pitch.

Total Index Variation is the greatest difference in any two teeth (adjacent or otherwise) between the actual and the perfect spacing of the tooth profiles.

Total Tolerance ($m + \lambda$) is the machining tolerance plus the variation allowance.

Variation Allowance (λ) is the permissible effective variation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tooth Proportions.—There are 17 pitches: 2.5/5, 3/6, 4/8, 5/10, 6/12, 8/16, 10/20, 12/24, 16/32, 20/40, 24/48, 32/64, 40/80, 48/96, 64/128, 80/160, and 128/256. The numerator in this fractional designation is known as the diametral pitch and controls the pitch diameter; the denominator, which is always double the numerator, is known as the stub pitch and controls the tooth depth. For convenience in calculation, only the numerator is used in the formulas given and is designated as *P*. Diametral pitch, as in gears, means the number of teeth per inch of pitch diameter.

Table 1 shows the symbols and Table 2 the formulas for basic tooth dimensions of involute spline teeth of various pitches. Basic dimensions are given in Table 3.

Table 1. American National Standard Involute Spline Symbols
ANSI B92.1-1996

c_v	effective clearance	M_i	measurement between pins, internal spline
c_F	form clearance	N	number of teeth
D	pitch diameter	P	diametral pitch
D_b	base diameter	P_s	stub pitch
D_{ci}	pin contact diameter, internal spline	P/P_s	spline pitch
D_{ce}	pin contact diameter, external spline	p	circular pitch
D_{Fe}	form diameter, external spline	r_f	fillet radius
D_{Fi}	form diameter, internal spline	s	actual space width, circular
D_i	minor diameter, internal spline	s_v	effective space width, circular
D_o	major diameter, external spline	t	actual tooth thickness, circular
D_{re}	minor diameter, external spline (root)	t_v	effective tooth thickness, circular
D_{ri}	major diameter, internal spline (root)	λ	variation allowance
d_e	diameter of measuring pin for external spline	ε	involute roll angle
d_i	diameter of measuring pin for internal spline	ϕ	pressure angle
K_e	change factor for external spline	ϕ_D	standard pressure angle
K_i	change factor for internal spline	ϕ_{ci}	pressure angle at pin contact diameter, internal spline
L	spline length	ϕ_{ce}	pressure angle at pin contact diameter, external spline
L_a	active spline length	ϕ_i	pressure angle at pin center, internal spline
L_g	length of engagement	ϕ_e	pressure angle at pin center, external spline
m	machining tolerance	ϕ_F	pressure angle at form diameter
M_e	measurement over pins, external spline		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Formulas for Involute Spline Basic Dimensions *ANSI B92.1-1996*

Term	Symbol	30 deg ϕ_D			37.5 deg ϕ_D	45 deg ϕ_D
		Flat Root Side Fit	Flat Root Major Dia Fit	Fillet Root Side Fit	Fillet Root Side Fit	Fillet Root Side Fit
		2.5/5–32/64 Pitch	3/6–16/32 Pitch	2.5/5–48/96 Pitch	2.5/5–48/96 Pitch	10/20–128/256 Pitch
Stub Pitch	P_s	$2P$	$2P$	$2P$	$2P$	$2P$
Pitch Diameter	D	N/P	N/P	N/P	N/P	N/P
Base Diameter	D_b	$D\cos\phi_D$	$D\cos\phi_D$	$D\cos\phi_D$	$D\cos\phi_D$	$D\cos\phi_D$
Circular Pitch	p	π/P	π/P	π/P	π/P	π/P
Minimum Effective Space Width	s_v	$\pi/(2P)$	$\pi/(2P)$	$\pi/(2P)$	$(0.5\pi+0.1)/P$	$(0.5\pi+0.2)/P$
Major Diameter, Internal	D_{ri}	$(N+1.35)/P$	$(N+1)/P$	$(N+1.8)/P$	$(N+1.6)/P$	$(N+1.4)/P$
Major Diameter, External	D_o	$(N+1)/P$	$(N+1)/P$	$(N+1)/P$	$(N+1)/P$	$(N+1)/P$
Minor Diameter, Internal	D_i	$(N-1)/P$	$(N-1)/P$	$(N-1)/P$	$(N-0.8)/P$	$(N-0.6)/P$
Minor Dia. Ext. 2.5/5 thru 12/24 pitch	D_{re}	$(N-1.35)/P$		$(N-1.8)/P$	$(N-1.3)/P$	…
Minor Dia. Ext. 16/32 pitch and finer				$(N-2)/P$		
Minor Dia. Ext. 10/20 pitch and finer				…		$(N-1)/P$
Form Diameter, Internal	D_{Fi}	$(N+1)/P-2cF$	$(N+0.8)/P-0.004+2cF$	$(N+1)/P+2cF$	$(N+1)/P+2cF$	$(N+1)/P+2cF$
Form Diameter, External	D_{Fe}	$(N-1)/P-2cF$	$(N-1)/P-2cF$	$(N-1)/P-2cF$	$(N-0.8)/P-2cF$	$(N-0.6)/P-2cF$
Form Clearance (Radial)	c_F	0.001 D, with max of 0.010, min of 0.002				

$\pi = 3.1415927$

Note: All spline specification table dimensions in the standard are derived from these basic formulas by application of tolerances.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Basic Dimensions for Involute Splines *ANSI B92.1-1996*

Pitch, P/P_s	Circular Pitch, p	Min Effective Space Width (BASIC), S_v min			Pitch, P/P_s	Circular Pitch, p	Min Effective Space Width (BASIC), S_v min		
		30 deg ϕ	37.5 deg ϕ	45 deg ϕ			30 deg ϕ	37.5 deg ϕ	45 deg ϕ
2.5/5	1.2566	0.6283	0.6683	…	20/40	0.1571	0.0785	0.0835	0.0885
3/6	1.0472	0.5236	0.5569	…	24/48	0.1309	0.0654	0.0696	0.0738
4/8	0.7854	0.3927	0.4177	…	32/64	0.0982	0.0491	0.0522	0.0553
5/10	0.6283	0.3142	0.3342	…	40/80	0.0785	0.0393	0.0418	0.0443
6/12	0.5236	0.2618	0.2785	…	48/96	0.0654	0.0327	0.0348	0.0369
8/16	0.3927	0.1963	0.2088	…	64/128	0.0491	…	…	0.0277
10/20	0.3142	0.1571	0.1671	0.1771	80/160	0.0393	…	…	0.0221
12/24	0.2618	0.1309	0.1392	0.1476	128/256	0.0246	…	…	0.0138
16/32	0.1963	0.0982	0.1044	0.1107	…	…	…	…	…

Tooth Numbers.—The American National Standard covers involute splines having tooth numbers ranging from 6 to 60 with a 30- or 37.5-degree pressure angle and from 6 to 100 with a 45-degree pressure angle. In selecting the number of teeth for a given spline application, it is well to keep in mind that there are no advantages to be gained by using odd numbers of teeth and that the diameters of splines with odd tooth numbers, particularly internal splines, are troublesome to measure with pins since no two tooth spaces are diametrically opposite each other.

Types and Classes of Involute Spline Fits.—Two types of fits are covered by the American National Standard for involute splines: the side fit and the major diameter fit. Dimensional data for flat root side fit, flat root major diameter fit, and fillet root side fit splines are tabulated in this standard for 30-degree pressure angle splines, but for only the fillet root side fit for 37.5- and 45-degree pressure angle splines.

Side Fit: In the side fit, the mating members contact only on the sides of the teeth; major and minor diameters are clearance dimensions. The tooth sides act as drivers and centralize the mating splines.

Major Diameter Fit: Mating parts for this fit contact at the major diameter for centralizing. The sides of the teeth act as drivers. The minor diameters are clearance dimensions.

The major diameter fit provides a minimum effective clearance that will allow for contact and location at the major diameter with a minimum amount of location or centralizing effect by the sides of the teeth. The major diameter fit has only one space width and tooth thickness tolerance which is the same as side fit Class 5.

A fillet root may be specified for an external spline, even though it is otherwise designed to the flat root side fit or major diameter fit standard. An internal spline with a fillet root can be used only for the side fit.

Classes of Tolerances.—This standard includes four classes of tolerances on space width and tooth thickness. This has been done to provide a range of tolerances for selection to suit a design need. The classes are variations of the former single tolerance which is now Class 5 and are based on the formulas shown in the footnote of Table 4. All tolerance classes have the same minimum effective space width and maximum effective tooth thickness limits so that a mix of classes between mating parts is possible.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Maximum Tolerances for Space Width and Tooth Thickness of Tolerance Class 5 Splines *ANSI B92.1-1996*
(Values shown in ten thousandths; 20 = 0.0020)

No. of Teeth	Pitch, P/P_s							
	2.5/5 and 3/6	4/8 and 5/10	6/12 and 8/16	10/20 and 12/24	16/32 and 20/40	24/48 thru 48/96	64/128 and 80/160	128/256
N	Machining Tolerance, *m*							
10	15.8	14.5	12.5	12.0	11.7	11.7	9.6	9.5
20	17.6	16.0	14.0	13.0	12.4	12.4	10.2	10.0
30	18.4	17.5	15.5	14.0	13.1	13.1	10.8	10.5
40	21.8	19.0	17.0	15.0	13.8	13.8	11.4	—
50	23.0	20.5	18.5	16.0	14.5	14.5	—	—
60	24.8	22.0	20.0	17.0	15.2	15.2	—	—
70	—	—	—	18.0	15.9	15.9	—	—
80	—	—	—	19.0	16.6	16.6	—	—
90	—	—	—	20.0	17.3	17.3	—	—
100	—	—	—	21.0	18.0	18.0	—	—
N	Variation Allowance, λ							
10	23.5	20.3	17.0	15.7	14.2	12.2	11.0	9.8
20	27.0	22.6	19.0	17.4	15.4	13.4	12.0	10.6
30	30.5	24.9	21.0	19.1	16.6	14.6	13.0	11.4
40	34.0	27.2	23.0	21.6	17.8	15.8	14.0	—
50	37.5	29.5	25.0	22.5	19.0	17.0	—	—
60	41.0	31.8	27.0	24.2	20.2	18.2	—	—
70	—	—	—	25.9	21.4	19.4	—	—
80	—	—	—	27.6	22.6	20.6	—	—
90	—	—	—	29.3	23.8	21.8	—	—
100	—	—	—	31.0	25.0	23.0	—	—
N	Total Index Variation							
10	20	17	15	15	14	12	11	10
20	24	20	18	17	15	13	12	11
30	28	22	20	19	16	15	14	13
40	32	25	22	20	18	16	15	—
50	36	27	25	22	19	17	—	—
60	40	30	27	24	20	18	—	—
70	—	—	—	26	21	20	—	—
80	—	—	—	28	22	21	—	—
90	—	—	—	29	24	23	—	—
100	—	—	—	31	25	24	—	—
N	Profile Variation							
All	+7 −10	+6 −8	+5 −7	+4 −6	+3 −5	+2 −4	+2 −4	+2 −4

Lead Variation												
L_g, in.	0.3	0.5	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Variation	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13

For other tolerance classes: Class 4 = 0.71 × Tabulated value
Class 5 = As tabulated in table
Class 6 = 1.40 × Tabulated value
Class 7 = 2.00 × Tabulated value

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fillets and Chamfers.—Spline teeth may have either a flat root or a rounded fillet root.

Flat Root Splines: are suitable for most applications. The fillet that joins the sides to the bottom of the tooth space, if generated, has a varying radius of curvature. Specification of this fillet is usually not required. It is controlled by the form diameter, which is the diameter at the deepest point of the desired true involute form (sometimes designated as TIF).

When flat root splines are used for heavily loaded couplings that are not suitable for fillet root spline application, it may be desirable to minimize the stress concentration in the flat root type by specifying an approximate radius for the fillet.

Because internal splines are stronger than external splines due to their broad bases and high pressure angles at the major diameter, broaches for flat root internal splines are normally made with the involute profile extending to the major diameter.

Fillet Root Splines: are recommended for heavy loads because the larger fillets provided reduce the stress concentrations. The curvature along any generated fillet varies and cannot be specified by a radius of any given value.

External splines may be produced by generating with a pinion-type shaper cutter or with a hob, or by cutting with no generating motion using a tool formed to the contour of a tooth space. External splines are also made by cold forming and are usually of the fillet root design. Internal splines are usually produced by broaching, by form cutting, or by generating with a shaper cutter. Even when full-tip radius tools are used, each of these cutting methods produces a fillet contour with individual characteristics. Generated spline fillets are curves related to the prolate epicycloid for external splines and the prolate hypocycloid for internal splines. These fillets have a minimum radius of curvature at the point where the fillet is tangent to the external spline minor diameter circle or the internal spline major diameter circle and a rapidly increasing radius of curvature up to the point where the fillet comes tangent to the involute profile.

Chamfers and Corner Clearance: In major diameter fits, it is always necessary to provide corner clearance at the major diameter of the spline coupling. This clearance is usually effected by providing a chamfer on the top corners of the external member. This method may not be possible or feasible because of the following:

a) If the external member is roll formed by plastic deformation, a chamfer cannot be provided by the process.

b) A semitopping cutter may not be available.

c) When cutting external splines with small numbers of teeth, a semitopping cutter may reduce the width of the top land to a prohibitive point.

In such conditions, the corner clearance can be provided on the internal spline, as shown in Fig. 2.

When this option is used, the form diameter may fall in the protuberance area.

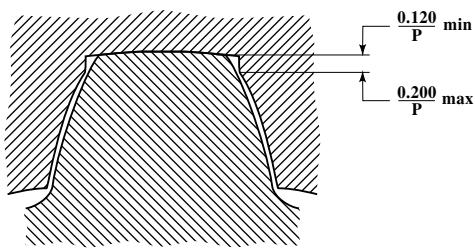


Fig. 2. Internal Corner Clearance

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Spline Variations.—The maximum allowable variations for involute splines are listed in Table 4.

Profile Variation: The reference profile, from which variations occur, passes through the point used to determine the actual space width or tooth thickness. This is either the pitch point or the contact point of the standard measuring pins.

Profile variation is positive in the direction of the space and negative in the direction of the tooth. Profile variations may occur at any point on the profile for establishing effective fits and are shown in Table 4.

Lead Variations: The lead tolerance for the total spline length applies also to any portion thereof unless otherwise specified.

Out of Roundness: This condition may appear merely as a result of index and profile variations given in Table 4 and requires no further allowance. However, heat treatment and deflection of thin sections may cause out of roundness, which increases index and profile variations. Tolerances for such conditions depend on many variables and are therefore not tabulated. Additional tooth and/or space width tolerance must allow for such conditions.

Eccentricity: Eccentricity of major and minor diameters in relation to the effective diameter of side fit splines should not cause contact beyond the form diameters of the mating splines, even under conditions of maximum effective clearance. This standard does not establish specific tolerances.

Eccentricity of major diameters in relation to the effective diameters of major diameter fit splines should be absorbed within the maximum material limits established by the tolerances on major diameter and effective space width or effective tooth thickness.

If the alignment of mating splines is affected by eccentricity of locating surfaces relative to each other and/or the splines, it may be necessary to decrease the effective and actual tooth thickness of the external splines in order to maintain the desired fit condition. This standard does not include allowances for eccentric location.

Effect of Spline Variations.—Spline variations can be classified as index variations, profile variations, or lead variations.

Index Variations: These variations cause the clearance to vary from one set of mating tooth sides to another. Because the fit depends on the areas with minimum clearance, index variations reduce the effective clearance.

Profile Variations: Positive profile variations affect the fit by reducing effective clearance. Negative profile variations do not affect the fit but reduce the contact area.

Lead Variations: These variations will cause clearance variations and therefore reduce the effective clearance.

Variation Allowance: The effect of individual spline variations on the fit (effective variation) is less than their total, because areas of more than minimum clearance can be altered without changing the fit. The variation allowance is 60 percent of the sum of twice the positive profile variation, the total index variation and the lead variation for the length of engagement. The variation allowances in Table 4 are based on a lead variation for an assumed length of engagement equal to one-half the pitch diameter. Adjustment may be required for a greater length of engagement.

Effective and Actual Dimensions.—Although each space of an internal spline may have the same width as each tooth of a perfect mating external spline, the two may not fit because of variations of index and profile in the internal spline. To allow the perfect external spline to fit in any position, all spaces of the internal spline must then be widened by the amount of interference. The resulting width of these tooth spaces is the *actual* space width of the internal spline. The *effective* space width is the tooth thickness of the perfect mating external spline. The same reasoning applied to an external spline that has variations of index and profile when mated with a perfect internal spline leads to the concept of effective

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

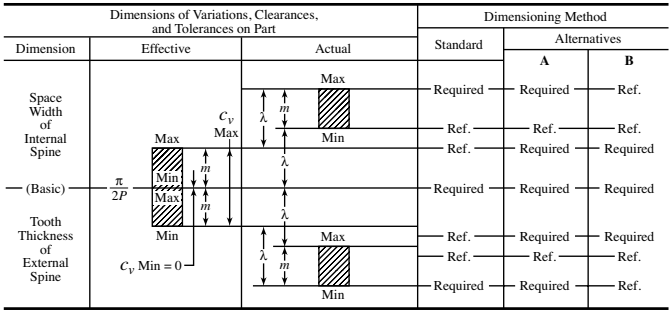
tooth thickness, which exceeds the actual tooth thickness by the amount of the effective variation.

The effective space width of the internal spline minus the effective tooth thickness of the external spline is the effective clearance and defines the fit of the mating parts. (This statement is strictly true only if high points of mating parts come into contact.) Positive effective clearance represents looseness or backlash. Negative effective clearance represents tightness or interference.

Space Width and Tooth Thickness Limits.—The variation of actual space width and actual tooth thickness within the machining tolerance causes corresponding variations of effective dimensions, so that there are four limit dimensions for each component part.

These variations are shown diagrammatically in Table 5.

Table 5. Specification Guide for Space Width and Tooth Thickness
ANSI B92.1-1996



The minimum effective space width is always basic. The maximum effective tooth thickness is the same as the minimum effective space width except for the major diameter fit. The major diameter fit maximum effective tooth thickness is less than the minimum effective space width by an amount that allows for eccentricity between the effective spline and the major diameter. The permissible variation of the effective clearance is divided between the internal and external splines to arrive at the maximum effective space width and the minimum effective tooth thickness. Limits for the actual space width and actual tooth thickness are constructed from suitable variation allowances.

Use of Effective and Actual Dimensions.—Each of the four dimensions for space width and tooth thickness shown in Table 5 has a definite function.

Minimum Effective Space Width and Maximum Effective Tooth Thickness: These dimensions control the minimum effective clearance, and must always be specified.

Minimum Actual Space Width and Maximum Actual Tooth Thickness: These dimensions cannot be used for acceptance or rejection of parts. If the actual space width is less than the minimum without causing the effective space width to be undersized, or if the actual tooth thickness is more than the maximum without causing the effective tooth thickness to be oversized, the effective variation is less than anticipated; such parts are desirable and not defective. The specification of these dimensions as processing reference dimensions is optional. They are also used to analyze undersize effective space width or oversize effective tooth thickness conditions to determine whether or not these conditions are caused by excessive effective variation.

Maximum Actual Space Width and Minimum Actual Tooth Thickness: These dimensions control machining tolerance and limit the effective variation. The spread between these

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

dimensions, reduced by the effective variation of the internal and external spline, is the maximum effective clearance. Where the effective variation obtained in machining is appreciably less than the variation allowance, these dimensions must be adjusted in order to maintain the desired fit.

Maximum Effective Space Width and Minimum Effective Tooth Thickness: These dimensions define the maximum effective clearance but they do not limit the effective variation. They may be used, in addition to the maximum actual space width and minimum actual tooth thickness, to prevent the increase of maximum effective clearance due to reduction of effective variations. The notation "inspection optional" may be added where maximum effective clearance is an assembly requirement, but does not need absolute control. It will indicate, without necessarily adding inspection time and equipment, that the actual space width of the internal spline must be held below the maximum, or the actual tooth thickness of the external spline above the minimum, if machining methods result in less than the allowable variations. Where effective variation needs no control or is controlled by laboratory inspection, these limits may be substituted for maximum actual space width and minimum actual tooth thickness.

Combinations of Involute Spline Types.—Flat root side fit internal splines may be used with fillet root external splines where the larger radius is desired on the external spline for control of stress concentrations. This combination of fits may also be permitted as a design option by specifying, for the minimum root diameter of the external, the value of the minimum root diameter of the fillet root external spline and noting this as "optional root."

A design option may also be permitted to provide either flat root internal or fillet root internal by specifying, for the maximum major diameter, the value of the maximum major diameter of the fillet root internal spline and noting this as "optional root."

Interchangeability.—Splines made to this standard may interchange with splines made to older standards. Exceptions are listed below.

External Splines: These external splines will mate with older internal splines as follows:

Year	Major Dia. Fit	Flat Root Side Fit	Fillet Root Side Fit
1946	Yes	No (A)[a]	No (A)
1950[b]	Yes (B)	Yes (B)	Yes (C)
1950[c]	Yes (B)	No (A)	Yes (C)
1957 SAE	Yes	No (A)	Yes (C)
1960	Yes	No (A)	Yes (C)

[a] For exceptions A, B, C, see the paragraph on *Exceptions* that follows.

[b] Full dedendum.

[c] Short dedendum.

Internal Splines: These will mate with older external splines as follows:

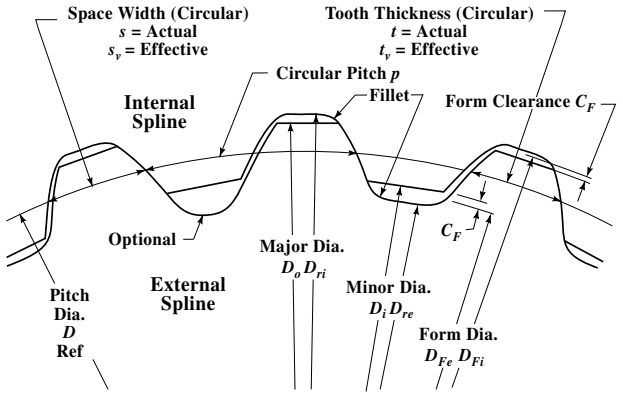
Year	Major Dia. Fit	Flat Root Side Fit	Fillet Root Side Fit
1946	No (D)[a]	No (E)	No (D)
1950	Yes (F)	Yes	Yes (C)
1957 SAE	Yes (G)	Yes	Yes
1960	Yes (G)	Yes	Yes

[a] For exceptions C, D, E, F, G, see the paragraph on *Exceptions* that follows.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Spline Terms, Symbols, and Drawing Data, 30-Degree Pressure Angle, Flat Root Side Fit *ANSI B92.1-1996*

30-Deg Pressure Angle



The fit shown is used in restricted areas (as with tubular parts with wall thickness too small to permit use of fillet roots, and to allow hobbing closer to shoulders, etc.) and for economy (when hobbing, shaping, etc., and using shorter broaches for the internal member).

Press fits are not tabulated because their design depends on the degree of tightness desired and must allow for such factors as the shape of the blank, wall thickness, material, hardness, thermal expansion, etc. Close tolerances or selective size grouping may be required to limit fit variations.

Drawing Data

Internal Involute Spline Data		External Involute Spline Data	
Flat Root Side Fit		Flat Root Side Fit	
Number of Teeth	xx	Number of Teeth	xx
Pitch	xx/xx	Pitch	xx/xx
Pressure Angle	30°	Pressure Angle	30°
Base Diameter	x.xxxxxx Ref	Base Diameter	x.xxxxxx Ref
Pitch Diameter	x.xxxxxx Ref	Pitch Diameter	x.xxxxxx Ref
Major Diameter	x.xxx max	Major Diameter	x.xxx/x.xxx
Form Diameter	x.xxx	Form Diameter	x.xxx
Minor Diameter	x.xxx/x.xxx	Minor Diameter	x.xxx min
Circular Space Width		Circular Tooth Thickness	
Max Actual	x.xxxx	Max Effective	x.xxxx
Min Effective	x.xxxx	Min Actual	x.xxxx
The following information may be added as required:		The following information may be added as required:	
Max Measurement Between Pins	x.xxx Ref	Min Measurement Over Pins	x.xxxx Ref
Pin Diameter	x.xxxx	Pin Diameter	x.xxxx

The above drawing data are required for the spline specifications. The standard system is shown; for alternate systems, see Table 5. Number of x's indicates number of decimal places normally used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Exceptions:

a) The external major diameter, unless chamfered or reduced, may interfere with the internal form diameter on flat root side fit splines. Internal splines made to the 1957 and 1960 standards had the same dimensions as shown for the major diameter fit splines in this standard.

b) For 15 teeth or less, the minor diameter of the internal spline, unless chamfered, will interfere with the form diameter of the external spline.

c) For 9 teeth or less, the minor diameter of the internal spline, unless chamfered, will interfere with form diameter of the external spline.

d) The internal minor diameter, unless chamfered, will interfere with the external form diameter.

e) The internal minor diameter, unless chamfered, will interfere with the external form diameter.

f) For 10 teeth or less, the minimum chamfer on the major diameter of the external spline may not clear the internal form diameter.

g) Depending upon the pitch of the spline, the minimum chamfer on the major diameter may not clear the internal form diameter.

Drawing Data.—It is important that uniform specifications be used to show complete information on detail drawings of splines. Much misunderstanding will be avoided by following the suggested arrangement of dimensions and data as given in Table 6. The number of x's indicates the number of decimal places normally used. With this tabulated type of spline specifications, it is usually not necessary to show a graphic illustration of the spline teeth.

Spline Data and Reference Dimensions.—Spline data are used for engineering and manufacturing purposes. Pitch and pressure angle are not subject to individual inspection.

As used in this standard, *reference* is an added notation or modifier to a dimension, specification, or note when that dimension, specification, or note is:

1) Repeated for drawing clarification.

2) Needed to define a nonfeature datum or basis from which a form or feature is generated.

3) Needed to define a nonfeature dimension from which other specifications or dimensions are developed.

4) Needed to define a nonfeature dimension at which toleranced sizes of a feature are specified.

5) Needed to define a nonfeature dimension from which control tolerances or sizes are developed or added as useful information.

Any dimension, specification, or note that is noted "REF" should not be used as a criterion for part acceptance or rejection.

Estimating Key and Spline Sizes and Lengths.—Fig. 3 may be used to estimate the size of American Standard involute splines required to transmit a given torque. It also may be used to find the outside diameter of shafts used with single keys. After the size of the shaft is found, the proportions of the key can be determined from Table 1 on page 2551.

Curve A is for flexible splines with teeth hardened to 55 to 65 RC (Rockwell C scale). For these splines, lengths are generally made equal to or somewhat greater than the pitch diameter for diameters below $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches; on larger diameters, the length is generally one-third to two-thirds the pitch diameter. Curve A also applies for a single key used as a fixed coupling, the length of the key being one to one and one-quarter times the shaft diameter. The stress in the shaft, neglecting stress concentration at the keyway, is about 7500 pounds per square inch. See also *Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength* starting on page 301.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

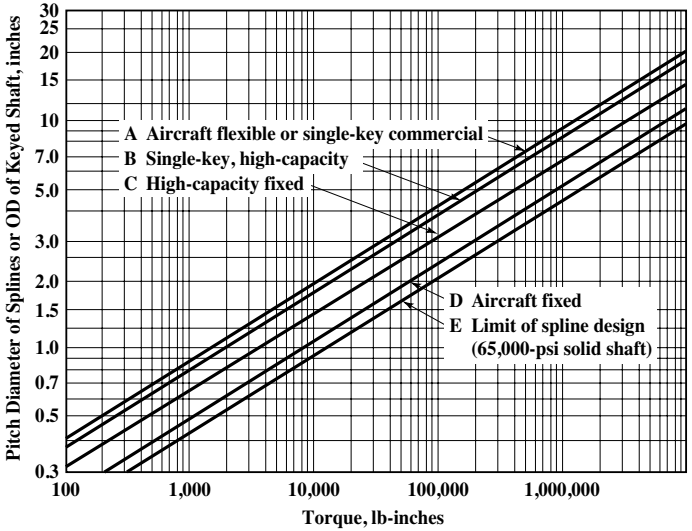


Fig. 3. Chart for Estimating Involute Spline Size Based on Diameter-Torque Relationships

Curve B represents high-capacity single keys used as fixed couplings for stresses of 9500 pounds per square inch, neglecting stress concentration. Key-length is one to one and one-quarter times shaft diameter and both shaft and key are of moderately hard heat-treated steel. This type of connection is commonly used to key commercial flexible couplings to motor or generator shafts.

Curve C is for multiple-key fixed splines with lengths of three-quarters to one and one-quarter times pitch diameter and shaft hardness of 200–300 BHN.

Curve D is for high-capacity splines with lengths one-half to one times the pitch diameter. Hardnesses up to 58 RC (Rockwell C scale) are common and in aircraft applications the shaft is generally hollow to reduce weight.

Curve E represents a solid shaft with 65,000 pounds per square inch shear stress. For hollow shafts with inside diameter equal to three-quarters of the outside diameter the shear stress would be 95,000 pounds per square inch.

Length of Splines: Fixed splines with lengths of one-third the pitch diameter will have the same shear strength as the shaft, assuming uniform loading of the teeth; however, errors in spacing of teeth result in only half the teeth being fully loaded. Therefore, for balanced strength of teeth and shaft the length should be two-thirds the pitch diameter. If weight is not important, however, this may be increased to equal the pitch diameter. In the case of flexible splines, long lengths do not contribute to load carrying capacity when there is misalignment to be accommodated. Maximum effective length for flexible splines may be approximated from Fig. 4.

Formulas for Torque Capacity of Involute Splines.—The formulas for torque capacity of 30-degree involute splines given in the following paragraphs are derived largely from an article "When Splines Need Stress Control" by D. W. Dudley, *Product Engineering*, Dec. 23, 1957.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

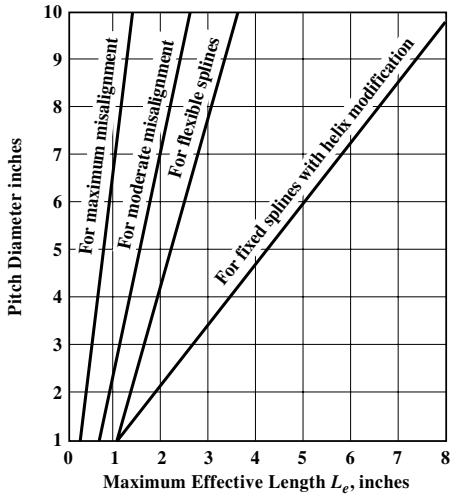


Fig. 4. Maximum Effective Length for Fixed and Flexible Splines

In the formulas that follow the symbols used are as defined on page 2335 with the following additions: D_h = inside diameter of hollow shaft, inches; K_a = application factor from Table 7; K_m = load distribution factor from Table 8; K_f = fatigue life factor from Table 9; K_w = wear life factor from Table 10; L_e = maximum effective length from Fig. 4, to be used in stress formulas even though the actual length may be greater; T = transmitted torque, pound-inches. For fixed splines without helix modification, the effective length L_e should never exceed $5000\,D^{3.5} \div T$.

Table 7. Spline Application Factors, K_a

Power Source	Type of Load			
	Uniform (Generator, Fan)	Light Shock (Oscillating Pumps, etc.)	Intermittent Shock (Actuating Pumps, etc.)	Heavy Shock (Punches, Shears, etc.)
	Application Factor, K_a			
Uniform (Turbine, Motor)	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8
Light Shock (Hydraulic Motor)	1.2	1.3	1.8	2.1
Medium Shock (Internal Combustion Engine)	2.0	2.2	2.4	2.8

Table 8. Load Distribution Factors, K_m, for Misalignment of Flexible Splines

Misalignment, inches per inch	Load Distribution Factor, K_m [a]			
	½-in. Face Width	1-in. Face Width	2-in. Face Width	4-in. Face Width
0.001	1	1	1	1½
0.002	1	1	1½	2
0.004	1	1½	2	2½
0.008	1½	2	2½	3

[a] For fixed splines, $K_m = 1$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Fatigue-Life Factors, K_f, for Splines

No. of Torque Cycles[a]	Fatigue-Life Factor, K_f	
	Unidirectional	Fully-reversed
1,000	1.8	1.8
10,000	1.0	1.0
100,000	0.5	0.4
1,000,000	0.4	0.3
10,000,000	0.3	0.2

[a] A torque cycle consists of one start and one stop, not the number of revolutions.

Table 10. Wear Life Factors, K_w, for Flexible Splines

Number of Revolutions of Spline	Life Factor, K_w	Number of Revolutions of Spline	Life Factor, K_w
10,000	4.0	100,000,000	1.0
100,000	2.8	1,000,000,000	0.7
1,000,000	2.0	10,000,000,000	0.5
10,000,000	1.4	…	…

Wear life factors, unlike fatigue life factors given in Table 9, are based on the total number of revolutions of the spline, since each revolution of a flexible spline results in a complete cycle of rocking motion which contributes to spline wear.

Definitions: A *fixed* spline is one which is either shrink fitted or loosely fitted but piloted with rings at each end to prevent rocking of the spline which results in small axial movements that cause wear. A *flexible* spline permits some rocking motion such as occurs when the shafts are not perfectly aligned. This flexing or rocking motion causes axial movement and consequently wear of the teeth. Straight-toothed flexible splines can accommodate only small angular misalignments (less than 1 deg.) before wear becomes a serious problem. For greater amounts of misalignment (up to about 5 deg.), crowned splines are preferable to reduce wear and end-loading of the teeth.

Shear Stress Under Roots of External Teeth: For a transmitted torque T, the torsional shear stress induced in the shaft under the root diameter of an external spline is:

$$S_s = \frac{16TK_a}{\pi D_{re}^3 K_f} \quad \text{for a solid shaft} \tag{1}$$

$$S_s = \frac{16TD_{re}K_a}{\pi (D_{re}^4 - D_h^4) K_f} \quad \text{for a hollow shaft} \tag{2}$$

The computed stress should not exceed the values in Table 11.

Table 11. Allowable Shear, Compressive, and Tensile Stresses for Splines

Material	Hardness		Max. Allowable Stress			
			Shear Stress, psi	Compressive Stress, psi		Tensile Stress, psi
	Brinell	Rockwell C		Straight	Crowned	
Steel	160-200	—	20,000	1,500	6,000	22,000
	230-260	—	30,000	2,000	8,000	32,000
	302-351	33-38	40,000	3,000	12,000	45,000
Surface-hardened Steel	—	48-53	40,000	4,000	16,000	45,000
Case-hardened Steel	—	58-63	50,000	5,000	20,000	55,000
Through-hardened Steel (Aircraft Quality)	—	42-46	45,000	—	—	50,000

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shear Stress at the Pitch Diameter of Teeth: The shear stress at the pitch line of the teeth for a transmitted torque T is:

$$S_s = \frac{4TK_aK_m}{DNL_etK_f} \tag{3}$$

The factor of 4 in (3) assumes that only half the teeth will carry the load because of spacing errors. For poor manufacturing accuracies, change the factor to 6.

The computed stress should not exceed the values in Table 11.

Compressive Stresses on Sides of Spline Teeth: Allowable compressive stresses on splines are very much lower than for gear teeth since non-uniform load distribution and misalignment result in unequal load sharing and end loading of the teeth.

$$\text{For flexible splines, } S_c = \frac{2TK_mK_a}{DNL_ehK_w} \tag{4}$$

$$\text{For fixed splines, } S_c = \frac{2TK_mK_a}{9DNL_ehK_f} \tag{5}$$

In these formulas, h is the depth of engagement of the teeth, which for flat root splines is $0.9/P$ and for fillet root splines is $1/P$, approximately.

The stresses computed from Formulas (4) and (5) should not exceed the values in Table 11.

Bursting Stresses on Splines: Internal splines may burst due to three kinds of tensile stress: 1) tensile stress due to the radial component of the transmitted load; 2) centrifugal tensile stress; and 3) tensile stress due to the tangential force at the pitch line causing bending of the teeth.

$$\text{Radial load tensile stress, } S_1 = \frac{T\tan\phi}{\pi Dt_wL} \tag{6}$$

where t_w = wall thickness of internal spline = outside diameter of spline sleeve minus spline major diameter, all divided by 2. L = full length of spline.

$$\text{Centrifugal tensile stress, } S_2 = \frac{1.656\times(\text{rpm})^2(D_{oi}^2 + 0.212D_{ri}^2)}{1{,}000{,}000} \tag{7}$$

where D_{oi} = outside diameter of spline sleeve.

$$\text{Beam loading tensile stress, } S_3 = \frac{4T}{D^2L_eY} \tag{8}$$

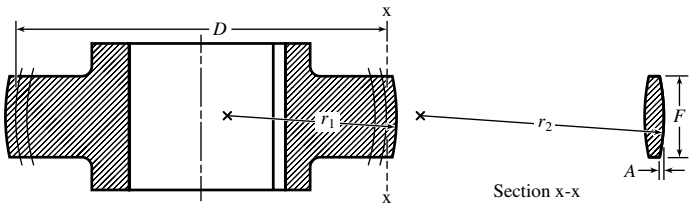
In Equation (8), Y is the Lewis form factor obtained from a tooth layout. For internal splines of 30-deg. pressure angle a value of $Y = 1.5$ is a satisfactory estimate. The factor 4 in (8) assumes that only half the teeth are carrying the load.

The total tensile stress tending to burst the rim of the external member is: $S_t = [K_aK_m(S_1 + S_3) + S_2]/K_f$; and should be less than those in Table 11.

Crowned Splines for Large Misalignments.—As mentioned on page 2347, crowned splines can accommodate misalignments of up to about 5 degrees. Crowned splines have considerably less capacity than straight splines of the same size if both are operating with precise alignment. However, when large misalignments exist, the crowned spline has greater capacity.

American Standard tooth forms may be used for crowned external members so that they may be mated with straight internal members of Standard form.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com



The accompanying diagram of a crowned spline shows the radius of the crown r_1; the radius of curvature of the crowned tooth, r_2; the pitch diameter of the spline, D; the face width, F; and the relief or crown height A at the ends of the teeth. The crown height A should always be made somewhat greater than one-half the face width multiplied by the tangent of the misalignment angle. For a crown height A, the approximate radius of curvature r_2 is $F^2 \div 8A$, and $r_1 = r_2 \tan \phi$, where ϕ is the pressure angle of the spline.

For a torque T, the compressive stress on the teeth is:

$$S_c = 2290\sqrt{2T \div DNhr_2}$$

and should be less than the value in Table 11.

Fretting Damage to Splines and Other Machine Elements.—Fretting is wear that occurs when cyclic loading, such as vibration, causes two surfaces in intimate contact to undergo small oscillatory motions with respect to each other. During fretting, high points or asperities of the mating surfaces adhere to each other and small particles are pulled out, leaving minute, shallow pits and a powdery debris. In steel parts exposed to air, the metallic debris oxidizes rapidly and forms a red, rustlike powder or sludge; hence, the coined designation "fretting corrosion."

Fretting is mechanical in origin and has been observed in most materials, including those that do not oxidize, such as gold, platinum, and nonmetallics; hence, the corrosion accompanying fretting of steel parts is a secondary factor.

Fretting can occur in the operation of machinery subject to motion or vibration or both. It can destroy close fits; the debris may clog moving parts; and fatigue failure may be accelerated because stress levels to initiate fatigue in fretted parts are much lower than for undamaged material. Sites for fretting damage include interference fits; splined, bolted, keyed, pinned, and riveted joints; between wires in wire rope; flexible shafts and tubes; between leaves in leaf springs; friction clamps; small amplitude-of-oscillation bearings; and electrical contacts.

Vibration or cyclic loadings are the main causes of fretting. If these factors cannot be eliminated, greater clamping force may reduce movement but, if not effective, may actually worsen the damage. Lubrication may delay the onset of damage; hard plating or surface hardening methods may be effective, not by reducing fretting, but by increasing the fatigue strength of the material. Plating soft materials having inherent lubricity onto contacting surfaces is effective until the plating wears through.

Involute Spline Inspection Methods.—Spline gages are used for routine inspection of production parts.

Analytical inspection, which is the measurement of individual dimensions and variations, may be required:

a) To supplement inspection by gages, for example, where NOT GO composite gages are used in place of NOT GO sector gages and variations must be controlled.

b) To evaluate parts rejected by gages.

c) For prototype parts or short runs where spline gages are not used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

d) To supplement inspection by gages where each individual variation must be restrained from assuming too great a portion of the tolerance between the minimum material actual and the maximum material effective dimensions.

Inspection with Gages.—A variety of gages is used in the inspection of involute splines.

Types of Gages: A composite spline gage has a full complement of teeth. A sector spline gage has two diametrically opposite groups of teeth. A sector plug gage with only two teeth per sector is also known as a "paddle gage." A sector ring gage with only two teeth per sector is also known as a "snap ring gage." A progressive gage is a gage consisting of two or more adjacent sections with different inspection functions. Progressive GO gages are physical combinations of GO gage members that check consecutively first one feature or one group of features, then their relationship to other features. GO and NOT GO gages may also be combined physically to form a progressive gage.

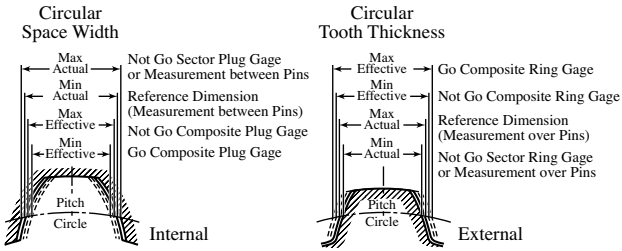


Fig. 5. Space Width and Tooth-Thickness Inspection

GO and NOT GO Gages: GO gages are used to inspect maximum material conditions (maximum external, minimum internal dimensions). They may be used to inspect an individual dimension or the relationship between two or more functional dimensions. They control the minimum looseness or maximum interference.

NOT GO gages are used to inspect minimum material conditions (minimum external, maximum internal dimensions), thereby controlling the maximum looseness or minimum interference. Unless otherwise agreed upon, a product is acceptable only if the NOT GO gage does not enter or go on the part. A NOT GO gage can be used to inspect only one dimension. An attempt at simultaneous NOT GO inspection of more than one dimension could result in failure of such a gage to enter or go on (acceptance of part), even though all but one of the dimensions were outside product limits. In the event all dimensions are outside the limits, their relationship could be such as to allow acceptance.

Effective and Actual Dimensions: The effective space width and tooth thickness are inspected by means of an accurate mating member in the form of a composite spline gage.

The actual space width and tooth thickness are inspected with sector plug and ring gages, or by measurements with pins.

Measurements with Pins.—The actual space width of internal splines, and the actual tooth thickness of external splines, may be measured with pins. These measurements do not determine the fit between mating parts, but may be used as part of the analytic inspection of splines to evaluate the effective space width or effective tooth thickness by approximation.

Formulas for 2-Pin Measurement Between Pins: For measurement *between* pins of internal splines using the symbols given on page 2335:

1) Find involute of pressure angle at pin center:

$$\text{inv}\,\phi_i = \frac{s}{D} + \text{inv}\phi_d - \frac{d_i}{D_b}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2) Find the value of ϕ_i in degrees, in the involute function tables beginning on page 112. Find sec ϕ_i = 1/cosine ϕ_i in the trig tables, pages 108 through 110, using interpolation to obtain higher accuracy.

3) Compute measurement, M_i, between pins:

For even numbers of teeth: $M_i = D_b \sec \phi_i - d_i$
For odd numbers of teeth: $M_i = (D_b \cos 90°/N) \sec \phi_i - d_i$

where: d_i = 1.7280/P for 30° and 37.5° standard pressure angle (ϕ_D) splines
d_i = 1.9200/P for 45° pressure angle splines

Example: Find the measurement between pins for *maximum* actual space width of an internal spline of 30° pressure angle, tolerance class 4, $^3/_6$ diametral pitch, and 20 teeth.

Solution: The maximum actual space width to be substituted for s in Step 1 above is obtained as follows: In Table 5, page 2341, the maximum actual space width is the sum of the minimum effective space width (second column) and $\lambda + m$ (third column). The minimum effective space width s_y from Table 2, page 2336, is $\pi/2P = \pi/(2 \times 3)$. The values of λ and m from Table 4, page 2338, are, for a class 4 fit, 3⁄6 diametral pitch, 20-tooth spline: $\lambda = 0.0027 \times 0.71 = 0.00192$; and $m = 0.00176 \times 0.71 = 0.00125$, so that $s = 0.52360 + 0.00192 + 0.00125 = 0.52677$.

Other values required for Step 1 are:

$D = N \div P = 20 \div 3 = 6.66666$
inv ϕ_D = inv 30° = 0.053751 from a calculator
d_i = 1.7280/3 = 0.57600
$D_b = D \cos \phi_D = 6.66666 \times 0.86603 = 5.77353$

The computation is made as follows:

1) inv $\phi_i = 0.52677/6.66666 + 0.053751 - 0.57600/5.77353 = 0.03300$

2) From a calculator, $\phi_i = 25°46.18'$ and sec $\phi_i = 1.11044$

3) $M_i = 5.77353 \times 1.11044 - 0.57600 = 5.8352$ inches

Formulas for 2-Pin Measurement Over Pins: For measurement *over* pins of external splines:

1) Find involute of pressure angle at pin center:

$$\text{inv}\,\phi_e = \frac{t}{D} + \text{inv}\,\phi_D + \frac{d_e}{D_b} - \frac{\pi}{N}$$

2) Find the value of ϕ_e and sec ϕ_e from the involute function tables beginning on page 112.

3) Compute measurement, M_e, over pins:

For even numbers of teeth: $M_e = D_b \sec \phi_e + d_e$
For odd numbers of teeth: $M_e = (D_b \cos 90°/N) \sec \phi_e + d_e$

where: d_e = 1.9200/P for all external splines

American National Standard Metric Module Splines.—ANSI B92.2M-1980 (R1989) is the American National Standards Institute version of the International Standards Organization involute spline standard. It is not a "soft metric" conversion of any previous, inch-based, standard,* and splines made to this hard metric version are not intended for use with components made to the B92.1 or other, previous standards. The ISO 4156 Standard

* A "soft" conversion is one in which dimensions in inches, when multiplied by 25.4 will, after being appropriately rounded off, provide equivalent dimensions in millimeters. In a "hard" system the tools of production, such as hobs, do not bear a usable relation to the tools in another system; i.e., a 10 diametral pitch hob calculates to be equal to a 2.54 module hob in the metric module system, a hob that does not exist in the metric standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

from which this one is derived is the result of a cooperative effort between the ANSI B92 committee and other members of the ISO/TC 14-2 involute spline committee.

Many of the features of the standard, ANSI B92.1-1996, have been retained such as: 30-, 37.5-, and 45-degree pressure angles; flat root and fillet root side fits; the four tolerance classes 4, 5, 6, and 7; tables for a single class of fit; and the effective fit concept.

Among the major differences are: use of modules of from 0.25 through 10 mm in place of diametral pitch; dimensions in millimeters instead of inches; the "basic rack"; removal of the major diameter fit; and use of ISO symbols in place of those used previously. Also, provision is made for calculating three defined clearance fits.

The Standard recognizes that proper assembly between mating splines is dependent only on the spline being within effective specifications from the tip of the tooth to the form diameter. Therefore, the internal spline major diameter is shown as a maximum dimension and the external spline minor diameter is shown as a minimum dimension. The minimum internal major diameter and the maximum external minor diameter must clear the specified form diameter and thus require no additional control. All dimensions are for the finished part; any compensation that must be made for operations that take place during processing, such as heat treatment, must be considered when selecting the tolerance level for manufacturing.

The Standard provides the same internal minimum effective space width and external maximum effective tooth thickness for all tolerance classes. This basic concept makes possible interchangeable assembly between mating splines regardless of the tolerance class of the individual members, and permits a tolerance class "mix" of mating members. This arrangement is often an advantage when one member is considerably less difficult to produce than its mate, and the "average" tolerance applied to the two units is such that it satisfies the design need. For example, by specifying Class 5 tolerance for one member and Class 7 for its mate, an assembly tolerance in the Class 6 range is provided.

If a fit given in this Standard does not satisfy a particular design need, and a specific clearance or press fit is desired, the change shall be made only to the external spline by a reduction of, or an increase in, the effective tooth thickness and a like change in the actual tooth thickness. The minimum effective space width is always basic and this basic width should always be retained when special designs are derived from the concept of this Standard.

Spline Terms and Definitions: The spline terms and definitions given for American National Standard ANSI B92.1-1996 described in the preceding section may be used in regard to ANSI B92.2M-1980 (R1989). The 1980 Standard utilizes ISO symbols in place of those used in the 1970 Standard; these differences are shown in Table 12.

Dimensions and Tolerances: Dimensions and tolerances of splines made to the 1980 Standard may be calculated using the formulas given in Table 13. These formulas are for metric module splines in the range of from 0.25 to 10 mm metric module of side-fit design and having pressure angles of 30-, 37.5-, and 45-degrees. The standard modules in the system are: 0.25; 0.5; 0.75; 1; 1.25; 1.5; 1.75; 2; 2.5; 3; 4; 5; 6; 8; and 10. The range of from 0.5 to 10 module applies to all splines except 45-degree fillet root splines; for these, the range of from 0.25 to 2.5 module applies.

Fit Classes: Four classes of side fit splines are provided: spline fit class H/h having a minimum effective clearance, $c_v = es = 0$; classes H/f, H/e, and H/d having tooth thickness modifications, *es*, of f, e, and d, respectively, to provide progressively greater effective clearance c_v. The tooth thickness modifications h, f, e, and d in Table 14 are fundamental deviations selected from ISO R286, "ISO System of Limits and Fits." They are applied to the external spline by shifting the tooth thickness total tolerance below the basic tooth thickness by the amount of the tooth thickness modification to provide a prescribed minimum effective clearance c_v.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Comparison of Symbols Used in *ANSI B92.2M-1980 (R1989)* and Those in *ANSI B92.1-1996*

Symbol			Symbol		
B92.2M	B92.1	Meaning of Symbol	B92.2M	B92.1	Meaning of Symbol
c	…	theoretical clearance	m	…	module
c_v	c_v	effective clearance	…	P	diametral pitch
c_F	c_F	form clearance	…	P_s	stub pitch = $2P$
D	D	pitch diameter	P_b	…	base pitch
DB	D_b	base diameter	p	p	circular pitch
d_{ce}	D_{ce}	pin contact diameter, external spline	π	π	3.141592654
d_{ci}	D_{ci}	pin contact diameter, internal spline	rfe	r_f	fillet rad., ext. spline
DEE	D_o	major diam., ext. spline	rfi	r_f	fillet rad., int. spline
DEI	D_{ri}	major diam., int. spline	E_{bsc}	s_v min	basic circular space width
DFE	D_{Fe}	form diam., ext. spline	E_{max}	s	max. actual circular space width
DFI	D_{Fi}	form diam., int. spline	E_{min}	s	min. actual circular space width
DIE	D_{re}	minor diam., ext. spline	EV	s_v	effective circular space width
DII	D_i	minor diam., int. spline	S_{bsc}	t_v max	basic circular tooth thickness
DRE	d_e	pin diam., ext. spline	S_{max}	t	max. actual circular tooth thick.
DRI	d_i	pin diam., int. spline	S_{min}	t	min. actual circular tooth thick.
h_s	…	see Fig. 6a, Fig. 6b, Fig. 6c, and Fig. 6d	SV	t_v	effective circular tooth thick.
λ	λ	effective variation	α	ϕ	pressure angle
INV α	…	involute α=tan α – arc α	α_D	ϕ_D	standard pressure angle
KE	K_e	change factor, ext. spline	α_{ci}	ϕ_{ci}	press. angle at pin contact diameter, internal spline
KI	K_i	change factor, int. spline	α_{ce}	ϕ_{ce}	press. angle at pin contact diameter, external spline
g	L	spline length	α_i	ϕ_i	press. angle at pin center, internal spline
g_w	…	active spline length	α_e	ϕ_e	press. angle at pin center, external spline
$g\gamma$	…	length of engagement	α_{Fe}	ϕ_F	press. angle at form diameter, external spline
T	m	machining tolerance	α_{Fi}	ϕ_F	press. angle at form diameter, internal spline
MRE	M_e	meas. over 2 pins, ext. spline	es	…	ext. spline cir. tooth thick. modification for required fit class = c_v min (Table 14)
MRI	M_i	meas. bet. 2 pins, int. spline	h, f, e, or d	…	tooth thick, size modifiers (called fundamental deviation in ISO R286), Table 14
Z	N	number of teeth	H	…	space width size modifier (called fundamental deviation in ISO R286), Table 14

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Formulas for Dimensions and Tolerances for All Fit Classes — Metric Module Involute Splines

Term	Symbol	Formula			
		30-Degree Flat Root 0.5 to 10 module	30-Degree Fillet Root 0.5 to 10 module	37.5-Degree Fillet Root 0.5 to 10 module	45-Degree Fillet Root 0.25 to 2.5 module
Pitch Diameter	D	mZ			
Base Diameter	DB	$mZ\cos\alpha_D$			
Circular Pitch	p	πm			
Base Pitch	p_b	$\pi m\cos\alpha_D$			
Tooth Thick Mod	es	According to selected fit class, H/h, H/f, H/e, or H/d (see Table 14)			
Min Maj. Diam. Int	DEI min	$m(Z+1.5)$	$m(Z+1.8)$	$m(Z+1.4)$	$m(Z+1.2)$
Max Maj Diam. Int.	DEI max	DEI min $+ (T+\lambda)/\tan\alpha_D$ (see Footnote [a])			
Form Diam, Int.	DFI	$m(Z+1)+2c_F$	$m(Z+1)+2c_F$	$m(Z+0.9)+2c_F$	$m(Z+0.8)+2c_F$
Min Minor Diam, Int	DII min	$DFE + 2c_F$ (see Footnote [b])			
Max Minor Diam, Int	DII max	DII min $+ (0.2m^{0.667} - 0.01m^{-0.5})$ (see Footnote [c])			
Cir Space Width,					
Basic	E_{bsc}	$0.5\pi m$			
Min Effective	EV min	$0.5\pi m$			
Max Actual	E max	EV min $+ (T+\lambda)$ for classes 4, 5, 6, and 7 (see Table 15 for $T+\lambda$)			
Min Actual	E min	EV min $+\lambda$ (see text on page 2355 for λ)			
Max Effective	EV max	E max $-\lambda$ (see text on page 2355 for λ)			
Max Major Diam, Ext [d]	DEE max	$m(Z+1) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z+1) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z+0.9) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z+0.8) - es/\tan\alpha_D$
Min Major Diam. Ext	DEE min	DEE max $- (0.2m^{0.667} - 0.01m^{-0.5})$ (see Footnote [c])			
Form Diam, External	DFE	$2\times\sqrt{(0.5DB)^2+\left[0.5D\sin\alpha_D - \dfrac{h_s+(0.5es\ /\ \tan\alpha_D)}{\sin\alpha_D}\right]^2}$			
Max Minor Diam, Ext [d]	DIE max	$m(Z-1.5) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z-1.8) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z-1.4) - es/\tan\alpha_D$	$m(Z-1.2) - es/\tan\alpha_D$
Min Minor Diam, Ext	DIE min	DIE max $- (T+\lambda)/\tan\alpha_D$ (see Footnote [a])			
Cir Tooth Thick,					
Basic	S_{bsc}	$0.5\pi m$			
Max Effective	SV max	$S_{bsc} - es$			
Min Actual	S min	SV max $- (T+\lambda)$ for classes 4, 5, 6, and 7 (see Table 15 for $T+\lambda$)			
Max Actual	S max	SV max $-\lambda$ (see text on page 2355 for λ)			
Min Effective	SV min	S min $+\lambda$ (see text on page 2355 for λ)			
Total Tolerance on Circular Space Width or Tooth Thickness	$(T+\lambda)$	See formulas in Table 15			
Machining Tolerance on Circular Space Width or Tooth Thickness	T	$T = (T+\lambda)$ from Table 15; λ from text on page 2355.			
Effective Variation Allowed on Circular Space Width or Tooth Thickness	λ	See text on page 2355.			
Form Clearance	c_F	$0.1m$			
Rack Dimension	h_s	$0.6m$ (see Fig. 6a)	$0.6m$ (see Fig. 6b)	$0.55m$ (see Fig. 6c)	$0.5m$ (see Fig. 6d)

[a] Use $(T+\lambda)$ for class 7 from Table 15

[b] For all types of fit, always use the DFE value corresponding to the H/h fit.

[c] Values of $(0.2m^{0.667} - 0.01m^{-0.5})$ are as follows: for 10 module, 0.93; for 8 module, 0.80; for 6 module, 0.66; for 5 module, 0.58; for 4 module, 0.50; for 3 module, 0.41; for 2.5 module, 0.36; for 2 module, 0.31; for 1.75 module, 0.28; for 1.5 module, 0.25; for 1.25 module, 0.22; for 1 module, 0.19; for 0.75 module, 0.15; for 0.5 module, 0.11; and for 0.25 module, 0.06.

[d] See Table 17 for values of $es/\tan\alpha_D$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Tooth Thickness Modification *es* for Selected Spline Fit Classes

Pitch Diameter in mm, *D*	External Splines[a] Selected Fit Class d	e	f	h	Pitch Diameter in mm, *D*	External Splines[a] Selected Fit Class d	e	f	h
	Tooth thickness modification (reduction) relative to basic tooth thickness at pitch diameter, *es*, in mm					Tooth thickness modification (reduction) relative to basic tooth thickness at pitch diameter, *es*, in mm			
≤ 3	0.020	0.014	0.006	0	> 120 to 180	0.145	0.085	0.043	0
> 3 to 6	0.030	0.020	0.010	0	> 180 to 250	0.170	0.100	0.050	0
> 6 to 10	**0.040**	0.025	0.013	0	> 250 to 315	0.190	0.110	0.056	0
> 10 to 18	0.050	0.032	0.016	0	> 315 to 400	0.210	**0.125**	**0.062**	0
> 18 to 30	0.065	0.040	0.020	0	> 400 to 500	0.230	0.135	**0.068**	0
> 30 to 50	0.080	0.050	0.025	0	> 500 to 630	0.260	0.145	**0.076**	0
> 50 to 80	0.100	0.060	0.030	0	> 630 to 800	0.290	0.160	**0.080**	0
> 80 to 120	0.120	**0.072**	0.036	0	> 800 to 1000	0.320	**0.170**	**0.086**	0

[a] Internal splines are fit class H and have space width modification from basic space width equal to zero; thus, an H/h fit class has effective clearance $c_v = 0$.

Note: The values listed in this table are taken from ISO R286 and have been computed on the basis of the geometrical mean of the size ranges shown. Values in **boldface** type do not comply with any documented rule for rounding but are those used by ISO R286; they are used in this table to comply with established international practice.

Basic Rack Profiles: The basic rack profile for the standard pressure angle splines are shown in Fig. 6a, Fig. 6b, Fig. 6c, and Fig. 6d. The dimensions shown are for maximum material condition and for fit class H/h.

Spline Machining Tolerances and Variations.—The total tolerance ($T + \lambda$), Table 15, is the sum of Effective Variation, λ, and a Machining Tolerance, T.

Table 15. Space Width and Tooth Thickness Total Tolerance, ($T + \lambda$), in Millimeters

Spline Tolerance Class	Formula for Total Tolerance, ($T + \lambda$)	Spline Tolerance Class	Formula for Total Tolerance, ($T + \lambda$)	In these formulas, i* and i** are tolerance units based upon pitch diameter and tooth thickness, respectively:
4	10i* + 40i**	6	25i* + 100i**	$i^* = 0.001(0.45\sqrt[3]{D} + 0.001D)$ for $D \le 500$ mm $= 0.001(0.004D + 2.1)$ for $D > 500$ mm
5	16i* + 64i**	7	40i* + 160i**	$i^{**} = 0.001\left(0.45\sqrt[3]{S_{bsc}} + 0.001S_{bsc}\right)$

Effective Variation: The effective variation, λ, is the combined effect that total index variation, positive profile variation, and tooth alignment variation has on the effective fit of mating involute splines. The effect of the individual variations is less than the sum of the allowable variations because areas of more than minimum clearance can have profile, tooth alignment, or index variations without changing the fit. It is also unlikely that these variations would occur in their maximum amounts simultaneously on the same spline. For this reason, total index variation, total profile variation, and tooth alignment variation are used to calculate the combined effect by the following formula:

$$\lambda = 0.6\sqrt{(F_p)^2 + (f_f)^2 + (F_\beta)^2} \text{ millimeters}$$

The above variation is based upon a length of engagement equal to one-half the pitch diameter of the spline; adjustment of λ may be required for a greater length of engagement. Formulas for values of F_p, f_f, and F_β used in the above formula are given in Table 16.

Machining Tolerance: A value for machining tolerance may be obtained by subtracting the effective variation, λ, from the total tolerance ($T + \lambda$). Design requirements or specific processes used in spline manufacture may require a different amount of machining tolerance in relation to the total tolerance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 16. Formulas for F_p, f_f, and F_β used to calculate λ

Spline Tolerance Class	Total Index Variation, in mm, F_p	Total Profile Variation, in mm, f_f	Total Lead Variation, in mm, F_β
4	$0.001\left(2.5\sqrt{mZ\frac{\pi}{2}}+6.3\right)$	0.001 [1.6m(1 + 0.0125Z) + 10]	$0.001\left(0.8\sqrt{g}+4\right)$
5	$0.001\left(3.55\sqrt{mZ\frac{\pi}{2}}+9\right)$	0.001 [2.5m(1 + 0.0125Z) + 16]	$0.001\left(1.0\sqrt{g}+5\right)$
6	$0.001\left(5\sqrt{mZ\frac{\pi}{2}}+12.5\right)$	0.001 [4m(1 + 0.0125Z) + 25]	$0.001\left(1.25\sqrt{g}+6.3\right)$
7	$0.001\left(7.1\sqrt{mZ\frac{\pi}{2}}+18\right)$	0.001 [6.3m(1 + 0.0125Z) + 40]	$0.001\left(2\sqrt{g}+10\right)$

g = length of spline in millimeters.

Table 17. Reduction, $es/\tan\alpha_D$, of External Spline Major and Minor Diameters Required for Selected Fit Classes

Pitch Diameter D in mm	Standard Pressure Angle, in Degrees									
	30	37.5	45	30	37.5	45	30	37.5	45	All
	Classes of Fit									
	d			e			f			h
	$es/\tan\alpha_D$ in millimeters									
≤3	0.035	0.026	0.020	0.024	0.018	0.014	0.010	0.008	0.006	0
>3 to 6	0.052	0.039	0.030	0.035	0.026	0.020	0.017	0.013	0.010	0
> 6 to 10	0.069	0.052	0.040	0.043	0.033	0.025	0.023	0.017	0.013	0
> 10 to 18	0.087	0.065	0.050	0.055	0.042	0.032	0.028	0.021	0.016	0
> 18 to 30	0.113	0.085	0.065	0.069	0.052	0.040	0.035	0.026	0.020	0
> 30 to 50	0.139	0.104	0.080	0.087	0.065	0.050	0.043	0.033	0.025	0
> 50 to 80	0.173	0.130	0.100	0.104	0.078	0.060	0.052	0.039	0.030	0
> 80 to 120	0.208	0.156	0.120	0.125	0.094	0.072	0.062	0.047	0.036	0
> 120 to 180	0.251	0.189	0.145	0.147	0.111	0.085	0.074	0.056	0.043	0
> 180 to 250	0.294	0.222	0.170	0.173	0.130	0.100	0.087	0.065	0.050	0
> 250 to 315	0.329	0.248	0.190	0.191	0.143	0.110	0.097	0.073	0.056	0
> 315 to 400	0.364	0.274	0.210	0.217	0.163	0.125	0.107	0.081	0.062	0
> 400 to 500	0.398	0.300	0.230	0.234	0.176	0.135	0.118	0.089	0.068	0
> 500 to 630	0.450	0.339	0.260	0.251	0.189	0.145	0.132	0.099	0.076	0
> 630 to 800	0.502	0.378	0.290	0.277	0.209	0.160	0.139	0.104	0.080	0
> 800 to 1000	0.554	0.417	0.320	0.294	0.222	0.170	0.149	0.112	0.086	0

These values are used with the applicable formulas in Table 13.

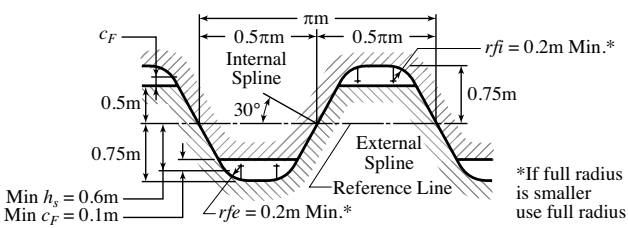


Fig. 6a. Profile of Basic Rack for 30° Flat Root Spline

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

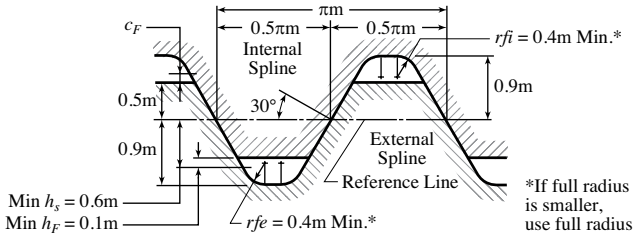


Fig. 6b. Profile of Basic Rack for 30° Fillet Root Spline

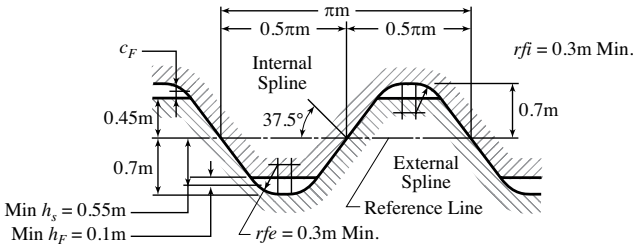


Fig. 6c. Profile of Basic Rack for 37.5° Fillet Root Spline

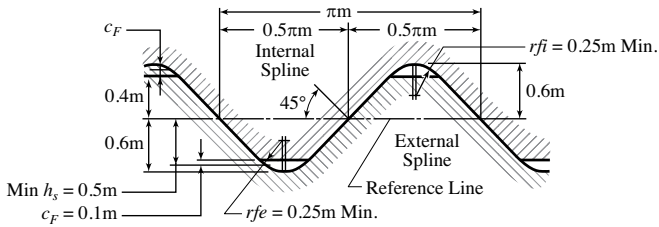


Fig. 6d. Profile of Basic Rack for 45° Fillet Root Spline

British Standard Straight Splines.—British Standard BS 2059:1953, "Straight-sided Splines and Serrations," was introduced because of the widespread development and use of splines, and because of the increasing use of involute splines it was necessary to provide a separate standard for straight-sided splines. BS 2059 was prepared on the hole basis, the hole being the constant member, and provided for different fits to be obtained by varying the size of the splined or serrated shaft. Part 1 of the standard deals with 6 splines only, irrespective of the shaft diameter, with two depths termed shallow and deep. The splines are bottom fitting with top clearance.

The standard contains three different grades of fit, based on the principle of variations in the diameter of the shaft at the root of the splines, in conjunction with variations in the widths of the splines themselves. Fit 1 represents the condition of closest fit and is designed for minimum backlash. Fit 2 has a positive allowance and is designed for ease

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of assembly, and Fit 3 has a larger positive allowance for applications that can accept such clearances. All these splines allow for clearance on the sides of the splines (the widths), but in Fit 1, the minor diameters of the hole and the shaft may be of identical size.

Assembly of a splined shaft and hole requires consideration of the designed profile of each member, and this consideration should concentrate on the maximum diameter of the shafts and the widths of external splines, in association with the minimum diameter of the hole and the widths of the internal splineways. In other words, both internal and external splines are in the maximum metal condition. The accuracy of spacing of the splines will affect the quality of the resultant fit. If angular positioning is inaccurate, or the splines are not parallel with the axis, there will be interference between the hole and the shaft.

Part 2 of the Standard deals with straight-sided 90 serrations having nominal diameters from 0.25 to 6.0 inches. Provision is again made for three grades of fits, the basic constant being the serrated hole size. Variations in the fits of these serrations is obtained by varying the sizes of the serrations on the shaft, and the fits are related to flank bearing, the depth of engagement being constant for each size and allowing positive clearance at crest and root.

Fit 1 is an interference fit intended for permanent or semi-permanent assemblies. Heating to expand the internally-serrated member is needed for assembly. Fit 2 is a transition fit intended for assemblies that require accurate location of the serrated members, but must allow disassembly. In maximum metal conditions, heating of the outside member may be needed for assembly. Fit. 3 is a clearance or sliding fit, intended for general applications.

Maximum and minimum dimensions for the various features are shown in the Standard for each class of fit. Maximum metal conditions presupposes that there are no errors of form such as spacing, alignment, or roundness of hole or shaft. Any compensation needed for such errors may require reduction of a shaft diameter or enlargement of a serrated bore, but the measured effective size must fall within the specified limits.

British Standard BS 3550:1963, "Involute Splines", is complementary to BS 2059, and the basic dimensions of all the sizes of splines are the same as those in the ANSI B92.1-1996, for major diameter fit and side fit. The British Standard uses the same terms and symbols and provides data and guidance for design of straight involute splines of 30 pressure angle, with tables of limiting dimensions. The standard also deals with manufacturing errors and their effect on the fit between mating spline elements. The range of splines covered is:

Side fit, flat root, 2.5/5.0 to 32/64 pitch, 6 to 60 splines.

Major diameter, flat root, 3.0/6.0 to 16/32 pitch, 6 to 60 splines.

Side fit, fillet root, 2.5/5.0 to 48/96 pitch, 6 to 60 splines.

British Standard BS 6186, Part 1:1981, "Involute Splines, Metric Module, Side Fit" is identical with sections 1 and 2 of ISO 4156 and with ANSI B92.2M-1980 (R1989) "Straight Cylindrical Involute Splines, Metric Module, Side Fit – Generalities, Dimensions and Inspection".

SAE Standard Spline Fittings.—The SAE spline fittings (Table 18 through Table 21 inclusive) have become an established standard for many applications in the agricultural, automotive, machine tool, and other industries. The dimensions given, in inches, apply only to soft broached holes. Dimensions are illustrated in Fig. 7a, Fig. 7b, and Fig. 7c. The tolerances given may be readily maintained by usual broaching methods. The tolerances selected for the large and small diameters may depend upon whether the fit between the mating part, as finally made, is on the large or the small diameter. The other diameter, which is designed for clearance, may have a larger manufactured tolerance. If the final fit between the parts is on the sides of the spline only, larger tolerances are permissible for both the large and small diameters. The spline should not be more than 0.006 inch per foot out of parallel with respect to the shaft axis. No allowance is made for corner radii to obtain clearance. Radii at the corners of the spline should not exceed 0.015 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

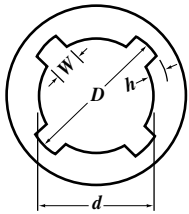


Fig. 7a. 4-Spline Fitting

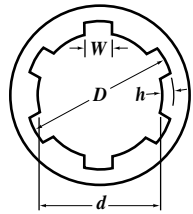


Fig. 7b. 6-Spline Fitting

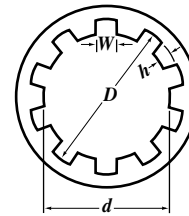


Fig. 7c. 10-Spline Fitting

Table 18. SAE Standard 4-Spline Fittings

Nom. Diam	For All Fits				4A—Permanent Fit					4B—To Slide, No Load				
	D		*W*		*d*		*h*			*d*		*h*		
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]
¾	0.749	0.750	0.179	0.181	0.636	0.637	0.055	0.056	78	0.561	0.562	0.093	0.094	123
⅞	0.874	0.875	0.209	0.211	0.743	0.744	0.065	0.066	107	0.655	0.656	0.108	0.109	167
1	0.999	1.000	0.239	0.241	0.849	0.850	0.074	0.075	139	0.749	0.750	0.124	0.125	219
1⅛	1.124	1.125	0.269	0.271	0.955	0.956	0.083	0.084	175	0.843	0.844	0.140	0.141	277
1¼	1.249	1.250	0.299	0.301	1.061	1.062	0.093	0.094	217	0.936	0.937	0.155	0.156	341
1⅜	1.374	1.375	0.329	0.331	1.168	1.169	0.102	0.103	262	1.030	1.031	0.171	0.172	414
1½	1.499	1.500	0.359	0.361	1.274	1.275	0.111	0.112	311	1.124	1.125	0.186	0.187	491
1⅝	1.624	1.625	0.389	0.391	1.380	1.381	0.121	0.122	367	1.218	1.219	0.202	0.203	577
1¾	1.749	1.750	0.420	0.422	1.486	1.487	0.130	0.131	424	1.311	1.312	0.218	0.219	670
2	1.998	2.000	0.479	0.482	1.698	1.700	0.148	0.150	555	1.498	1.500	0.248	0.250	875
2¼	2.248	2.250	0.539	0.542	1.910	1.912	0.167	0.169	703	1.685	1.687	0.279	0.281	1106
2½	2.498	2.500	0.599	0.602	2.123	2.125	0.185	0.187	865	1.873	1.875	0.310	0.312	1365
3	2.998	3.000	0.720	0.723	2.548	2.550	0.223	0.225	1249	2.248	2.250	0.373	0.375	1969

[a] See note at end of Table 21.

Table 19. SAE Standard 6-Spline Fittings

Nom. Diam.	For All Fits				6A—Permanent Fit			6B—To Slide, No Load			6C—To Slide Under Load		
	D		*W*		*d*			*d*			*d*		
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]
¾	0.749	0.750	0.186	0.188	0.674	0.675	80	0.637	0.638	117	0.599	0.600	152
⅞	0.874	0.875	0.217	0.219	0.787	0.788	109	0.743	0.744	159	0.699	0.700	207
1	0.999	1.000	0.248	0.250	0.899	0.900	143	0.849	0.850	208	0.799	0.800	270
1⅛	1.124	1.125	0.279	0.281	1.012	1.013	180	0.955	0.956	263	0.899	0.900	342
1¼	1.249	1.250	0.311	0.313	1.124	1.125	223	1.062	1.063	325	0.999	1.000	421
1⅜	1.374	1.375	0.342	0.344	1.237	1.238	269	1.168	1.169	393	1.099	1.100	510
1½	1.499	1.500	0.373	0.375	1.349	1.350	321	1.274	1.275	468	1.199	1.200	608
1⅝	1.624	1.625	0.404	0.406	1.462	1.463	376	1.380	1.381	550	1.299	1.300	713
1¾	1.749	1.750	0.436	0.438	1.574	1.575	436	1.487	1.488	637	1.399	1.400	827
2	1.998	2.000	0.497	0.500	1.798	1.800	570	1.698	1.700	833	1.598	1.600	1080
2¼	2.248	2.250	0.560	0.563	2.023	2.025	721	1.911	1.913	1052	1.798	1.800	1367
2½	2.498	2.500	0.622	0.625	2.248	2.250	891	2.123	2.125	1300	1.998	2.000	1688
3	2.998	3.000	0.747	0.750	2.698	2.700	1283	2.548	2.550	1873	2.398	2.400	2430

[a] See note at end of Table 21.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 20. SAE Standard 10-Spline Fittings

Nom. Diam.	For All Fits				10A—Permanent Fit			10B—To Slide, No Load			10C—To Slide Under Load		
	D		*W*		*d*			*d*			*d*		
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]
¾	0.749	0.750	0.115	0.117	0.682	0.683	120	0.644	0.645	183	0.607	0.608	241
⅞	0.874	0.875	0.135	0.137	0.795	0.796	165	0.752	0.753	248	0.708	0.709	329
1	0.999	1.000	0.154	0.156	0.909	0.910	215	0.859	0.860	326	0.809	0.810	430
1⅛	1.124	1.125	0.174	0.176	1.023	1.024	271	0.967	0.968	412	0.910	0.911	545
1¼	1.249	1.250	0.193	0.195	1.137	1.138	336	1.074	1.075	508	1.012	1.013	672
1⅜	1.374	1.375	0.213	0.215	1.250	1.251	406	1.182	1.183	614	1.113	1.114	813
1½	1.499	1.500	0.232	0.234	1.364	1.365	483	1.289	1.290	732	1.214	1.215	967
1⅝	1.624	1.625	0.252	0.254	1.478	1.479	566	1.397	1.398	860	1.315	1.316	1135
1¾	1.749	1.750	0.271	0.273	1.592	1.593	658	1.504	1.505	997	1.417	1.418	1316
2	1.998	2.000	0.309	0.312	1.818	1.820	860	1.718	1.720	1302	1.618	1.620	1720
2¼	2.248	2.250	0.348	0.351	2.046	2.048	1088	1.933	1.935	1647	1.821	1.823	2176
2½	2.498	2.500	0.387	0.390	2.273	2.275	1343	2.148	2.150	2034	2.023	2.025	2688
3	2.998	3.000	0.465	0.468	2.728	2.730	1934	2.578	2.580	2929	2.428	2.430	3869
3½	3.497	3.500	0.543	0.546	3.182	3.185	2632	3.007	3.010	3987	2.832	2.835	5266
4	3.997	4.000	0.621	0.624	3.637	3.640	3438	3.437	3.440	5208	3.237	3.240	6878
4½	4.497	4.500	0.699	0.702	4.092	4.095	4351	3.867	3.870	6591	3.642	3.645	8705
5	4.997	5.000	0.777	0.780	4.547	4.550	5371	4.297	4.300	8137	4.047	4.050	10746
5½	5.497	5.500	0.855	0.858	5.002	5.005	6500	4.727	4.730	9846	4.452	4.455	13003
6	5.997	6.000	0.933	0.936	5.457	5.460	7735	5.157	5.160	11718	4.857	4.860	15475

[a] See note at end of Table 21.

Table 21. SAE Standard 16-Spline Fittings

Nom. Diam.	For All Fits				16A—Permanent Fit			16B—To Slide, No Load			16C—To Slide Under Load		
	D		*W*		*d*			*d*			*d*		
	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]	Min.	Max.	*T*[a]
2	1.997	2.000	0.193	0.196	1.817	1.820	1375	1.717	1.720	2083	1.617	1.620	2751
2½	2.497	2.500	0.242	0.245	2.273	2.275	2149	2.147	2.150	3255	2.022	2.025	4299
3	2.997	3.000	0.291	0.294	2.727	2.730	3094	2.577	2.580	4687	2.427	2.430	6190
3½	3.497	3.500	0.340	0.343	3.182	3.185	4212	3.007	3.010	6378	2.832	2.835	8426
4	3.997	4.000	0.389	0.392	3.637	3.640	5501	3.437	3.440	8333	3.237	3.240	11005
4½	4.497	4.500	0.438	0.441	4.092	4.095	6962	3.867	3.870	10546	3.642	3.645	13928
5	4.997	5.000	0.487	0.490	4.547	4.550	8595	4.297	4.300	13020	4.047	4.050	17195
5½	5.497	5.500	0.536	0.539	5.002	5.005	10395	4.727	4.730	15754	4.452	4.455	20806
6	5.997	6.000	0.585	0.588	5.457	5.460	12377	5.157	5.160	18749	4.857	4.860	24760

[a] *Torque Capacity of Spline Fittings:* The torque capacities of the different spline fittings are given in the columns headed "*T*." The torque capacity, per inch of bearing length at 1000 pounds pressure per square inch on the sides of the spline, may be determined by the following formula, in which T = torque capacity in inch-pounds per inch of length, N = number of splines, R = mean radius or radial distance from center of hole to center of spline, h = depth of spline: $T = 1000\,NRh$

Table 22. Formulas for Determining Dimensions of SAE Standard Splines

No. of Splines	*W* For All Fits	A Permanent Fit		B To Slide Without Load		C To Slide Under Load	
		h	*d*	*h*	*d*	*h*	*d*
Four	0.241*D*[a]	0.075*D*	0.850*D*	0.125*D*	0.750*D*	…	…
Six	0.250*D*	0.050*D*	0.900*D*	0.075*D*	0.850*D*	0.100*D*	0.800*D*
Ten	0.156*D*	0.045*D*	0.910*D*	0.070*D*	0.860*D*	0.095*D*	0.810*D*
Sixteen	0.098*D*	0.045*D*	0.910*D*	0.070*D*	0.860*D*	0.095*D*	0.810*D*

[a] Four splines for fits *A* and *B* only.

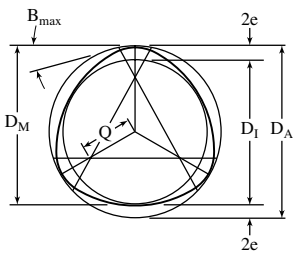
The formulas in the table above give the maximum dimensions for *W*, *h*, and *d*, as listed in Table 18 through Table 21 inclusive.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

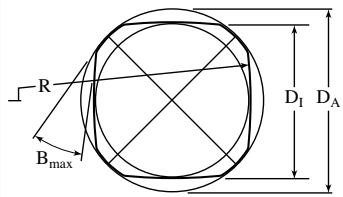
Polygon-Type Shaft Connections.—Involute-form and straight-sided splines are used for both fixed and sliding connections between machine members such as shafts and gears. Polygon-type connections, so called because they resemble regular polygons but with curved sides, may be used similarly. German DIN Standards 32711 and 32712 include data for three- and four-sided metric polygon connections. Data for 11 of the sizes shown in those Standards, but converted to inch dimensions by Stoffel Polygon Systems, are given in the accompanying table.

Dimensions of Three- and Four-Sided Polygon-Type Shaft Connections

Drawing for 3-sided Designs



Drawing for 4-sided Designs



Three-Sided Designs					Four-Sided Designs				
Nominal Sizes			Design Data		Nominal Sizes			Design Data	
D_A (in.)	D_I (in.)	e (in.)	Area (in.^{2})	Z_P (in.^{3})	D_A (in.)	D_I (in.)	e (in.)	Area (in.^{2})	Z_P (in.^{3})
0.530	0.470	0.015	0.194	0.020	0.500	0.415	0.075	0.155	0.014
0.665	0.585	0.020	0.302	0.039	0.625	0.525	0.075	0.250	0.028
0.800	0.700	0.025	0.434	0.067	0.750	0.625	0.125	0.350	0.048
0.930	0.820	0.027	0.594	0.108	0.875	0.725	0.150	0.470	0.075
1.080	0.920	0.040	0.765	0.153	1.000	0.850	0.150	0.650	0.12
1.205	1.045	0.040	0.977	0.224	1.125	0.950	0.200	0.810	0.17
1.330	1.170	0.040	1.208	0.314	1.250	1.040	0.200	0.980	0.22
1.485	1.265	0.055	1.450	0.397	1.375	1.135	0.225	1.17	0.29
1.610	1.390	0.055	1.732	0.527	1.500	1.260	0.225	1.43	0.39
1.870	1.630	0.060	2.378	0.850	1.750	1.480	0.250	1.94	0.64
2.140	1.860	0.070	3.090	1.260	2.000	1.700	0.250	2.60	0.92

Dimensions Q and R shown on the diagrams are approximate and used only for drafting purposes: $Q \approx 7.5e$; $R \approx D_I/2 + 16e$.

Dimension $D_M = D_I + 2e$. Pressure angle B_{max} is approximately $344e/D_M$ degrees for three sides, and $299e/D_M$ degrees for four sides.

Tolerances: ISO H7 tolerances apply to bore dimensions. For shafts, g6 tolerances apply for sliding fits; k7 tolerances for tight fits.

Choosing Between Three- and Four-Sided Designs: Three-sided designs are best for applications in which no relative movement between mating components is allowed while torque is transmitted. If a hub is to slide on a shaft while under torque, four-sided designs, which have larger pressure angles B_{max} than those of three-sided designs, are better suited to sliding even though the axial force needed to move the sliding member is approximately 50 percent greater than for comparable involute spline connections.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Strength of Polygon Connections: In the formulas that follow,

H_w = hub width, inches H_t = hub wall thickness, inches

M_b = bending moment, lb-inch

M_t = torque, lb-inch

Z = section modulus, bending, in^3

$= 0.098 D_M{}^4/D_A$ for three sides $= 0.15 D_I{}^3$ for four sides

Z_P = polar section modulus, torsion, in^3

$= 0.196 D_M{}^4/D_A$ for three sides $= 0.196 D_I{}^3$ for four sides

D_A and D_M. See table footnotes.

S_b = bending stress, allowable, lb/in^2

S_s = shearing stress, allowable, lb/in^2

S_t = tensile stress, allowable, lb/in^2

For shafts,

$$M_t\,(\text{maximum}) = S_s Z_p$$

$$M_b\,(\text{maximum}) = S_b Z$$

For bores,

$$H_t\,(\text{minimum}) = K\sqrt{\frac{M_t}{S_t H_w}}$$

in which $K = 1.44$ for three sides except that if D_M is greater than 1.375 inches, then $K = 1.2$; $K = 0.7$ for four sides.

Failure may occur in the hub of a polygon connection if the hoop stresses in the hub exceed the allowable tensile stress for the material used. The radial force tending to expand the rim and cause tensile stresses is calculated from

$$\text{Radial Force, lb} = \frac{2M_t}{D_I n \tan(B_{max} + 11.3)}$$

This radial force acting at n points may be used to calculate the tensile stress in the hub wall using formulas from strength of materials.

Manufacturing: Polygon shaft profiles may be produced using conventional machining processes such as hobbing, shaping, contour milling, copy turning, and numerically controlled milling and grinding. Bores are produced using broaches, spark erosion, gear shapers with generating cutters of appropriate form, and, in some instances, internal grinders of special design. Regardless of the production methods used, points on both of the mating profiles may be calculated from the following equations:

$$X = \left(\frac{D_I}{2} + e\right)\cos\alpha - e\cos(n\alpha)\cos\alpha - ne\sin(n\alpha)\sin\alpha$$

$$Y = \left(\frac{D_I}{2} + e\right)\sin\alpha - e\cos(n\alpha)\sin\alpha + ne\sin(n\alpha)\cos\alpha$$

In these equations, α is the angle of rotation of the workpiece from any selected reference position; n is the number of polygon sides, either 3 or 4; D_I is the diameter of the inscribed circle shown on the diagram in the table; and e is the dimension shown on the diagram in the table and may be used as a setting on special polygon grinding machines. The value of e determines the shape of the profile. A value of 0, for example, results in a circular shaft having a diameter of D_I. The values of e in the table were selected arbitrarily to provide suitable proportions for the sizes shown.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

CAMS AND CAM DESIGN

Classes of Cams.—Cams may, in general, be divided into two classes: uniform motion cams and accelerated motion cams. The uniform motion cam moves the follower at the same rate of speed from the beginning to the end of the stroke; but as the movement is started from zero to the full speed of the uniform motion and stops in the same abrupt way, there is a distinct shock at the beginning and end of the stroke, if the movement is at all rapid. In machinery working at a high rate of speed, therefore, it is important that cams are so constructed that sudden shocks are avoided when starting the motion or when reversing the direction of motion of the follower.

The uniformly accelerated motion cam is suitable for moderate speeds, but it has the disadvantage of sudden changes in acceleration at the beginning, middle and end of the stroke. A cycloidal motion curve cam produces no abrupt changes in acceleration and is often used in high-speed machinery because it results in low noise, vibration and wear. The cycloidal motion displacement curve is so called because it can be generated from a cycloid which is the locus of a point of a circle rolling on a straight line.*

Cam Follower Systems.—The three most used cam and follower systems are radial and offset translating roller follower, Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b; and the swinging roller follower, Fig. 1c. When the cam rotates, it imparts a translating motion to the roller followers in Fig. 1a and Fig. 1b and a swinging motion to the roller follower in Fig. 1c. The motion of the follower is, of course, dependent on the shape of the cam; and the following section on displacement diagrams explains how a favorable motion is obtained so that the cam can rotate at high speed without shock.

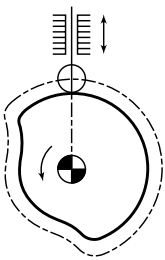


Fig. 1a. Radial Translating Roller Follower

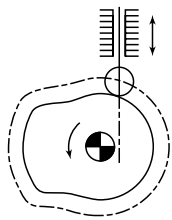


Fig. 1b. Offset Translating Roller Follower

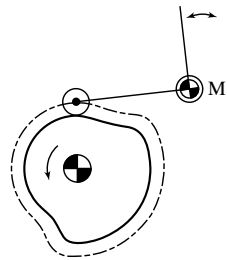


Fig. 1c. Swinging Roller Follower

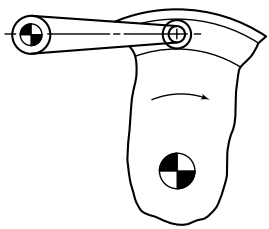


Fig. 2a. Closed-Track Cam

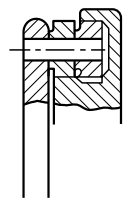


Fig. 2b. Closed-Track Cam With Two Rollers

The arrangements in Fig. 1a, Fig. 1b, and Fig. 1c show open-track cams. In Fig. 2a and Fig. 2b the roller is forced to move in a closed track. Open-track cams build smaller than

* Jensen, P. W., *Cam Design and Manufacture*, Industrial Press Inc.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

closed-track cams but, in general, springs are necessary to keep the roller in contact with the cam at all times. Closed-track cams do not require a spring and have the advantage of positive drive throughout the rise and return cycle. The positive drive is sometimes required as in the case where a broken spring would cause serious damage to a machine.

Displacement Diagrams.—Design of a cam begins with the displacement diagram. A simple displacement diagram is shown in Fig. 3. One cycle means one whole revolution of the cam; i.e., one cycle represents 360°. The horizontal distances T_1, T_2, T_3, T_4 are expressed in units of time (seconds); or radians or degrees. The vertical distance, h, represents the maximum "rise" or stroke of the follower.

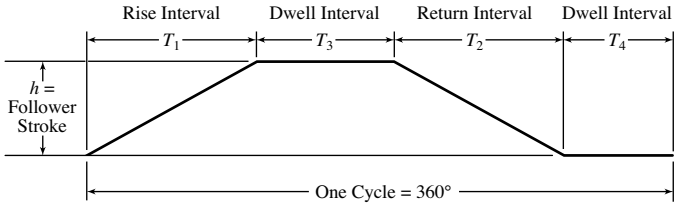


Fig. 3. A Simple Displacement Diagram

The displacement diagram of Fig. 3 is not a very favorable one because the motion from rest (the horizontal lines) to constant velocity takes place instantaneously and this means that accelerations become infinitely large at these transition points.

Types of Cam Displacement Curves: A variety of cam curves are available for moving the follower. In the following sections only the rise portions of the total time-displacement diagram are studied. The return portions can be analyzed in a similar manner. Complex cams are frequently employed which may involve a number of rise-dwell-return intervals in which the rise and return aspects are quite different. To analyze the action of a cam it is necessary to study its time-displacement and associated velocity and acceleration curves. The latter are based on the first and second time-derivatives of the equation describing the time-displacement curve:

$$y = \text{displacement} = f(t) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = f(\phi)$$

$$v = \frac{dy}{dt} = \text{velocity} = \omega\frac{dy}{d\phi}$$

$$a = \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = \text{acceleration} = \omega^2\frac{d^2y}{d\phi^2}$$

Meaning of Symbols and Equivalent Relations

y = displacement of follower, inch (m)
h = maximum displacement of follower, inch (m)
t = time for cam to rotate through angle ϕ, sec, $= \phi/\omega$, sec
T = time for cam to rotate through angle β, sec, $= \beta/\omega$, or $\beta/6N$, sec
ϕ = cam angle rotation for follower displacement y, degrees
β = cam angle rotation for total rise h, degrees
v = velocity of follower, in/sec (m/s)
a = follower acceleration, in/sec^2 (m/s^2)
$t/T = \phi/\beta$
N = cam speed, rpm
ω = angular velocity of cam, degrees/sec $= \beta/T = \phi/t = d\phi/dt = 6N$
ω_R = angular velocity of cam, radians/sec $= \pi\omega/180$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

W = effective weight, lbs (kg)
g = gravitational constant = 386 in/sec^2 (9.81 m/s^2)
$f(t)$ = means a function of t
$f(\phi)$ = means a function of ϕ
R_{min} = minimum radius to the cam pitch curve, inch (m)
R_{max} = maximum radius to the cam pitch curve, inch (m)
r_f = radius of cam follower roller, inch (m)
ρ = radius of curvature of cam pitch curve (path of center of roller follower), inch (m)
R_c = radius of curvature of actual cam surface, in., (m) = $\rho - r_f$ for convex surface; = $\rho + r_f$ for concave surface.

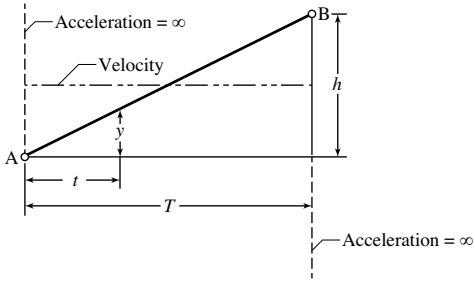


Fig. 4. Cam Displacement, Velocity, and Acceleration Curves for Constant Velocity Motion

Four displacement curves are of the greatest utility in cam design.

1. Constant-Velocity Motion: (Fig. 4)

$$y = h\frac{t}{T} \quad \text{or} \quad y = \frac{h\phi}{\beta} \qquad (1a)$$

$$v = \frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{h}{T} \quad \text{or} \quad v = \frac{h\omega}{\beta} \qquad (1b)$$

$$a = \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = 0^* \qquad (1c)$$

} $0 < t < T$

* Except at $t = 0$ and $t = T$ where the acceleration is theoretically infinite.

This motion and its disadvantages were mentioned previously. While in the unaltered form shown it is rarely used except in very crude devices, nevertheless, the advantage of uniform velocity is an important one and by modifying the start and finish of the follower stroke this form of cam motion can be utilized. Such modification is explained in the section *Displacement Diagram Synthesis* on page 2367.

2. Parabolic Motion: (Fig. 5)

For $0 \le t \le T/2$ and $0 \le \phi \le \beta/2$

$$y = 2h(t/T)^2 = 2h(\phi/\beta)^2 \qquad (2a)$$
$$v = 4ht/T^2 = 4h\omega\phi/\beta^2 \qquad (2b)$$
$$a = 4h/T^2 = 4h(\omega/\beta)^2 \qquad (2c)$$

For $T/2 \le t \le T$ and $\beta/2 \le \phi \le \beta$

$$y = h[1 - 2(1 - t/T)^2] = h[1 - 2(1 - \phi/\beta)^2] \qquad (2d)$$
$$v = 4h/T(1 - t/T) = (4h\omega/\beta)(1 - \phi/\beta) \qquad (2e)$$
$$a = -4h/T^2 = -4h(\omega/\beta)^2 \qquad (2f)$$

Examination of the above formulas shows that the velocity is zero when $t = 0$ and $y = 0$; and when $t = T$ and $y = h$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

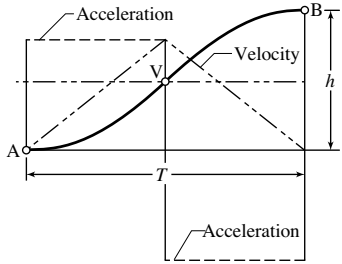


Fig. 5. Cam Displacement, Velocity, and Acceleration Curves for Parabolic Motion

The most important advantage of this curve is that for a given angle of rotation and rise it produces the smallest possible acceleration. However, because of the sudden changes in acceleration at the beginning, middle, and end of the stroke, shocks are produced. If the follower system were perfectly rigid with no backlash or flexibility, this would be of little significance. But such systems are mechanically impossible to build and a certain amount of impact is caused at each of these changeover points.

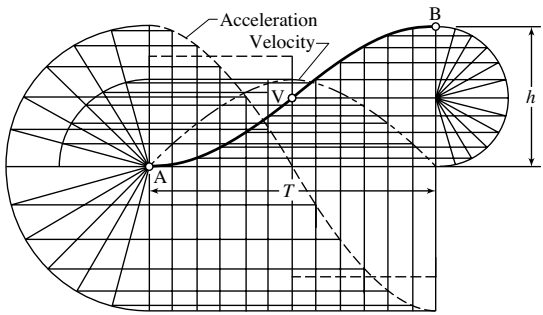


Fig. 6. Cam Displacement, Velocity, and Acceleration Curves for Simple Harmonic Motion

3. Simple Harmonic Motion: (Fig. 6)

$$y = \frac{h}{2}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{180°t}{T}\right)\right] \quad \text{or} \quad y = \frac{h}{2}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \tag{3a}$$

$$v = \frac{h}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi}{T} \sin\left(\frac{180°t}{T}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad v = \frac{h}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi\omega}{\beta} \sin\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right) \tag{3b}$$

$$a = \frac{h}{2} \cdot \frac{\pi^2}{T^2} \cos\left(\frac{180°t}{T}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{h}{2} \cdot \left(\frac{\pi\omega}{\beta}\right)^2 \cos\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right) \tag{3c}$$

} $0 \le t \le T$

Smoothness in velocity and acceleration during the stroke is the advantage inherent in this curve. However, the instantaneous changes in acceleration at the beginning and end of the stroke tend to cause vibration, noise, and wear. As can be seen from Fig. 6, the maximum acceleration values occur at the ends of the stroke. Thus, if inertia loads are to be overcome by the follower, the resulting forces cause stresses in the members. These forces are in many cases much larger than the externally applied loads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4. Cycloidal Motion: (Fig. 7)

$$y = h\left[\frac{t}{T} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°t}{T}\right)\right] \quad \text{or} \quad y = h\left[\frac{\phi}{\beta} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \tag{4a}$$

$$v = \frac{h}{T}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°t}{T}\right)\right] \quad \text{or} \quad v = \frac{h\omega}{\beta}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \tag{4b}$$

$$a = \frac{2\pi h}{T^2}\sin\left(\frac{360°t}{T}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad a = \frac{2\pi h\omega^2}{\beta^2}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right) \tag{4c}$$

} $0 \le i \le T$

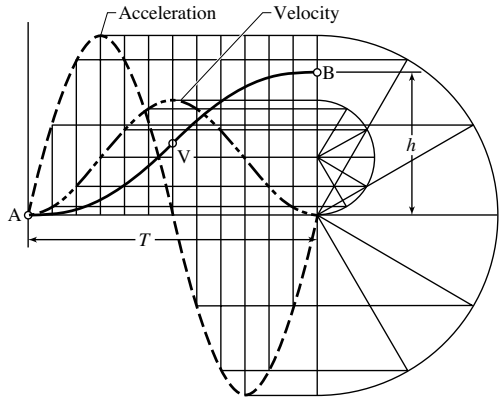


Fig. 7. Cam Displacement, Velocity, and Acceleration Curves for Cycloidal Motion

This time-displacement curve has excellent acceleration characteristics; there are no abrupt changes in its associated acceleration curve. The maximum value of the acceleration of the follower for a given rise and time is somewhat higher than that of the simple harmonic motion curve. In spite of this, the cycloidal curve is used often as a basis for designing cams for high-speed machinery because it results in low levels of noise, vibration, and wear.

Displacement Diagram Synthesis.—The straight-line graph shown in Fig. 3 has the important advantage of uniform velocity. This is so desirable that many cams based on this graph are used. To avoid impact at the beginning and end of the stroke, a modification is introduced at these points. There are many different types of modifications possible, ranging from a simple circular arc to much more complicated curves. One of the better curves used for this purpose is the parabolic curve given by Equation (2a). As seen from the derived time graphs, this curve causes the follower to begin a stroke with zero velocity but having a finite and constant acceleration. We must accept the necessity of acceleration, but effort should be made to hold it to a minimum.

Matching of Constant Velocity and Parabolic Motion Curves: By matching a parabolic cam curve to the beginning and end of a straight-line cam displacement diagram it is possible to reduce the acceleration from infinity to a finite constant value to avoid impact loads. As illustrated in Fig. 8, it can be shown that for any parabola the vertex of which is at O, the tangent to the curve at the point P intersects the line OQ at its midpoint. This means that the tangent at P represents the velocity of the follower at time X_0 as shown in Fig. 8. Since the tangent also represents the velocity of the follower over the constant velocity portion of the stroke, the transition from rest to the maximum velocity is accomplished with smoothness.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

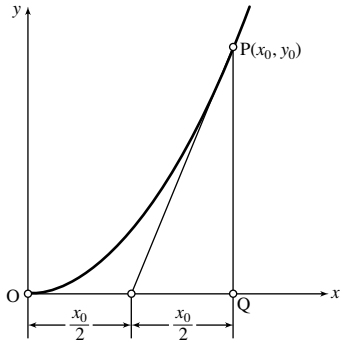


Fig. 8. The Tangent at *P* Bisects *OQ* When Curve is a Parabola

Example: A cam follower is to rise 1/4 in. with constant acceleration; 1 1/4 in. with constant velocity, over an angle of 50 degrees; and then 1/2 in. with constant deceleration.

In Fig. 9 the three rise distances are laid out, $y_1 = 1/4$ in., $y_2 = 1\,1/4$ in., $y_3 = 1/2$ in., and horizontals drawn. Next, an arbitrary horizontal distance ϕ_2 proportional to 50 degrees is measured off and points *A* and *B* are located. The line *AB* is extended to M_1 and M_2. By remembering that a tangent to a parabola, Fig. 8, will cut the abscissa axis at point $(X_0/2, 0)$ where X_0 is the abscissa of the point of tangency, the two values $\phi_1 = 20°$ and $\phi_3 = 40°$ will be found. Analytically,

$$\frac{M_1E}{\phi_2} = \frac{y_1}{y_2} \qquad \frac{\frac{1}{2}\phi_1}{50°} = \frac{0.25}{1.25} \qquad \therefore \phi_1 = 20°$$

$$\frac{FM_2}{\phi_2} = \frac{y_3}{y_2} \qquad \frac{\frac{1}{2}\phi_3}{50°} = \frac{0.50}{1.25} \qquad \therefore \phi_3 = 40°$$

In Fig. 9, the portions of the parabola have been drawn in; the details of this operation are as follows:

Assume that accuracy to the nearest thousandth of one inch is desired, and it is decided to plot values for every 5 degrees of cam rotation.

The formula for the acceleration portion of the parabolic curve is:

$$y = \frac{2h}{T^2}t^2 = 2h\left(\frac{\phi}{\beta}\right)^2 \tag{5}$$

Two different parabolas are involved in this example; one for accelerating the follower during a cam rotation of 20 degrees, the other for decelerating it in 40 degrees, these two being tangent, to opposite ends of the same line *AB*.

In Fig. 9 only the first half of a complete acceleration-deceleration parabolic curve is used to blend with the left end of the straight line *AB*. Therefore, in using the Formula (5) substitute $2y_1$ for *h* and $2\phi_1$ for β so that

$$y = \frac{2h\phi^2}{\beta^2} = \frac{(2)(2y_1)}{(2\phi_1)^2}\phi^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For the right end of the straight line *AB*, the calculations are similar but, in using Formula (5), calculated *y* values are *subtracted* from the *total* rise of the cam ($y_1 + y_2 + y_3$) to obtain the follower displacement.

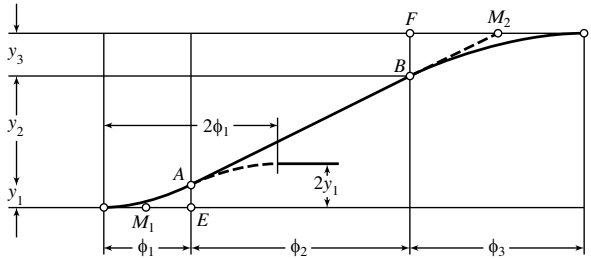


Fig. 9. Matching a Parabola at Each End of Straight Line Displacement Curve *AB* to Provide More Acceptable Acceleration and Deceleration

Table 1 shows the computations and resulting values for the cam displacement diagram described. The calculations are shown in detail so that if equations are programmed for a digital computer, the results can be verified easily. Obviously, the intermediate points are not needed to draw the straight line, but when the cam profile is later to be drawn or cut, these values will be needed since they are to be measured on radial lines.

The matching procedure when using cycloidal motion is exactly the same as for parabolic motion, because parabolic and cycloidal motion have the same maximum velocity for equal rise (or return) and lift angle (or return angle).

Cam Profile Determination.—In the cam constructions that follow an artificial device called an *inversion* is used. This represents a mental concept which is very helpful in performing the graphical work. The construction of a cam profile requires the drawing of many positions of the cam with the follower in each case in its related location. However, instead of revolving the cam, it is assumed that the follower rotates around the *fixed* cam. It requires the drawing of many follower positions, but since this is done more or less diagrammatically, it is relatively simple.

As part of the inversion process, the direction of rotation is important. In order to preserve the correct sequence of events, the artificial rotation of the follower must be the reverse of the cam's prescribed rotation. Thus, in Fig. 10 the cam rotation is counterclockwise, whereas the artificial rotation of the follower is clockwise.

Radial Translating Roller Follower: The time-displacement diagram for a cam with a radial translating roller follower is shown in Fig. 10(a). This diagram is read from left to right as follows: For 100 degrees of cam shaft rotation the follower rises *h* inches (*AB*), dwells in its upper position for 20 degrees (*BC*), returns over 180 degrees (*CD*), and finally dwells in its lowest position for 60 degrees (*DE*). Then the entire cycle is repeated.

Fig. 10(b) shows the cam construction layout with the cam pitch curve as a dot and dash line. To locate a point on this curve, take a point on the displacement curve, as 6′ at the 60-degree position, and project this horizontally to point 6″ on the 0-degree position of the cam construction diagram. Using the center of cam rotation, an arc is struck from point 6″ to intercept the 60-degree position radial line which gives point 6‴ on the cam pitch curve. It will be seen that the smaller circle in the cam construction layout has a radius R_{min} equal to the smallest distance from the center of cam rotation to the pitch curve and, similarly, the larger circle has a radius R_{max} equal to the largest distance to the pitch curve. Thus, the difference in radii of these two circles is equal to the maximum rise *h* of the follower.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Development of Modified Constant Velocity Cam with Parabolic Matching

Rise Angle	ϕ Degrees	Computation	Follower Displacement y	Explanation
	0	0	0	$\beta = 40°$ $h = 0.500$
	5	0.000625×5^2	0.016	$y = \frac{(2)(0.500)}{(40)^2}\phi^2$
$\phi_1 = 20°$	10	0.000625×10^2	0.063	$= 0.000625\phi^2$
	15	0.000625×15^2	0.141	
	20	0.000625×20^2	0.250	
	25		0.375	
	30		0.500	
	35		0.625	
	40		0.750	
$\phi_2 = 50°$	45		0.875	1.250 in. divided into
	50		1.000	10 uniform divisions
	55		1.125	
	60		1.250	
	65		1.375	
	70		1.500	
	75	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 35^2)$	1.617	
	80	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 30^2)$	1.719	$\beta = 80°$ $h = 1.000$
	85	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 25^2)$	1.805	$y = 2 - \frac{(2)(1.000)}{(80°)^2}(110° - \phi)^2$
$\phi_3 = 40°$	90	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 20^2)$	1.875	$= 2 - 0.0003125(110° - \phi)^2$
	95	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 15^2)$	1.930	
	100	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 10^2)$	1.969	See footnote [a]
	105	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 5^2)$	1.992	
	110	$2.000 - (0.0003125 \times 0^2)$	2.000	

[a] Since the deceleration portion of a parabolic cam is the same shape as the acceleration portion, but inverted, Formula (5) may be used to calculate the y values by substituting $2y_3$ for h and for β and the result subtracted from the total rise ($y_1 + y_2 + y_3$) to obtain the follower displacement.

The cam pitch curve is also the actual profile or working surface when a knife-edged follower is used. To get the profile or working surface for a cam with a roller follower, a series of arcs with centers on the pitch curve and radii equal to the radius of the roller are drawn and the inner envelope drawn tangent to these arcs is the cam working surface or profile shown as a solid line in Fig. 10(b).

Cam Grinding: The cams used on gas and gasoline motors, for operating the inlet and exhaust valves, are finished to the correct form by grinding. This grinding may be done in a regular cylindrical grinding machine by using a suitable cam grinding attachment. The general method of grinding cams is by so mounting the cam or camshaft that, while rotating, it will be moved toward and from the grinding wheel by a master cam, the movement causing the cam to be ground to the required form or contour. The master cam is in engagement with a roller which transmits motion to the work-holding fixture. It is evident that cam grinding first involves the generation of master cams, since these must be made to suit each different form of cam that is ground. In modern CNC cam grinding machines, downloaded master cam data replaces the "hard" master cam required on older manual machines.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

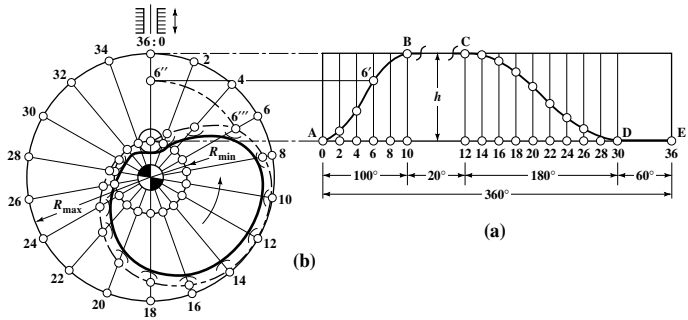


Fig. 10. (a) Time-Displacement Diagram for Cam to be Laid Out;
(b) Construction of Contour of Cam with Radial Translating Roller Follower

Offset Translating Roller Follower: Given the time-displacement diagram Fig. 11(a) and an offset follower. The construction of the cam in this case is very similar to the foregoing case and is shown in Fig. 11(b). In this construction it will be noted that the angular position lines are not drawn radially from the cam shaft center but tangent to a circle having a radius equal to the amount of offset of the center line of the cam follower from the center of the cam shaft. For counterclockwise rotation of the cam, points 6′, 6″, and 6‴ are located in succession as indicated.

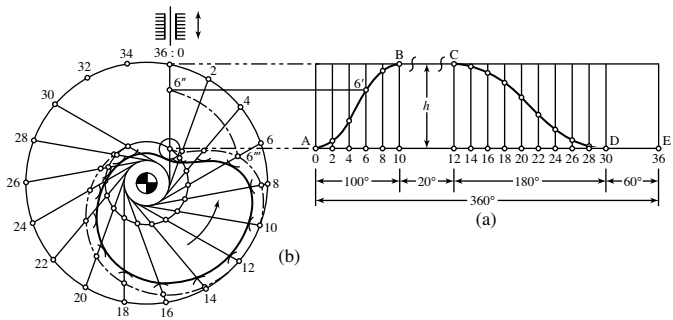


Fig. 11. (a) Time-Displacement Diagram for Cam to be Laid Out;
(b) Construction of Contour of Cam with Offset Translating Roller Follower

Swinging Roller Follower: Given the time-displacement diagram Fig. 12(a) and the length of the swinging follower arm L_f, it is required that the displacement of the follower center along the circular arc that it describes be equal to the corresponding displacements in the time-displacement diagram. If ϕ_0 is known, the displacement h of Fig. 12(a) would be found from the formula $h = \pi\phi_0 L_f/180°$; otherwise the maximum rise h of the follower is stepped off on the arc drawn with M as a center and starting at a point on the R_{min} circle. Point M is the actual position of the pivot center of the swinging follower with respect to the cam shaft center. It is again required that the rotation of the cam be counterclockwise and therefore M is considered to have been rotated clockwise around the cam shaft center, whereby the points 2, 4, 6, etc., are obtained as shown in Fig. 12(b). Around each of the pivot points, 2, 4, 6, etc., circular arcs whose radii equal L_f are drawn between the R_{min}

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and R_{max} circles giving the points 2′, 4′, 6′, etc. The R_{min} circle with center at the cam shaft center is drawn through the lowest position of the center of the roller follower and the R_{max} circle through the highest position as shown. The different points on the pitch curve are now located. Point 6‴, for instance, is found by stepping off the y_6 ordinate of the displacement diagram on arc 6′ starting at the R_{min} circle.

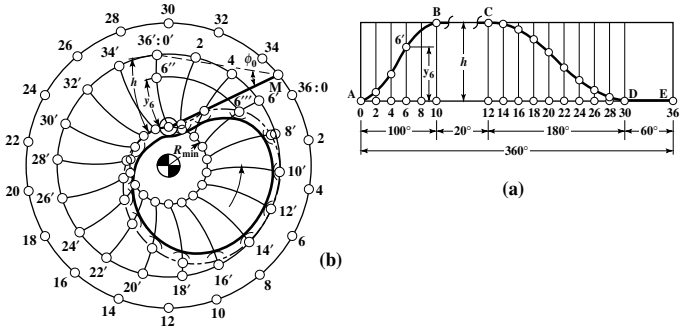


Fig. 12. (a) Time-Displacement Diagram for Cam to be Laid Out;
(b) Construction of Contour of Cam with Swinging Roller Follower

Pressure Angle and Radius of Curvature.—The pressure angle at any point on the profile of a cam may be defined as the angle between the direction where the follower wants to go at that point and where the cam wants to push it. It is the angle between the tangent to the path of follower motion and the line perpendicular to the tangent of the cam profile at the point of cam-roller contact.

The size of the pressure angle is important because:

1) Increasing the pressure angle increases the side thrust and this increases the forces exerted on cam and follower.

2) Reducing the pressure angle increases the cam size and often this is not desirable because:

a) The size of the cam determines, to a certain extent, the size of the machine.

b) Larger cams require more precise cutting points in manufacturing and, therefore, an increase in cost.

c) Larger cams have higher circumferential speed and small deviations from the theoretical path of the follower cause additional acceleration, the size of which increases with the square of the cam size.

d) Larger cams mean more revolving weight and in high-speed machines this leads to increased vibrations in the machine.

e) The inertia of a large cam may interfere with quick starting and stopping.

The maximum pressure angle α_m should, in general, be kept at or below 30 degrees for translating-type followers and at or below 45 degrees for swinging-type followers.These values are on the conservative side and in many cases may be increased considerably, but beyond these limits trouble could develop and an analysis is necessary.

In the following, graphical methods are described by which a cam mechanism can be designed with translating or swinging roller followers having specified maximum pressure angles for rise and return. These methods are applicable to any kind of time-displacement diagram.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

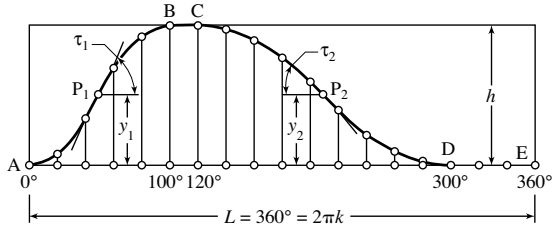


Fig. 13. Displacement Diagram

Determination of Cam Size for a Radial or an Offset Translating Follower.—Fig. 13 shows a time-displacement diagram. The maximum displacement is preferably made to scale, but the length of the abscissa, L, can be chosen arbitrarily. The distance L from 0 to 360 degrees is measured and is set equal to $2\pi k$ from which

$$k = \frac{L}{2\pi}$$

k is calculated and laid out as length E to M in Fig. 14.

In Fig. 13 the two points P_1 and P_2 having the maximum angles of slope τ_1 and τ_2 are located by inspection. In this example, y_1 and y_2 are of equal length.

Angles τ_1 and τ_2 are laid out as shown in Fig. 14, and the points of intersection with a perpendicular to EM at M determine Q_1 and Q_2. The measured distances

$$MQ_1 = k \tan \tau_1 \quad \text{and} \quad MQ_2 = k \tan \tau_2$$

are laid out in Fig. 15, which is constructed as follows:

Draw a vertical line $R_u R_o$ of length h equal to the stroke of the roller follower, R_u being the lowest position and R_o the highest position of the center of the roller follower. From R_u lay out $R_u R_{y1} = y_1$ and $R_u R_{y2} = y_2$; these are equal lengths in this example. Next, if the rotation of the cam is counterclockwise, lay out $k \tan \tau_1$, to the left, $k \tan \tau_2$ to the right from points R_{y1} and R_{y2}, respectively, R_{y1} and R_{y2} being the same point in this case.

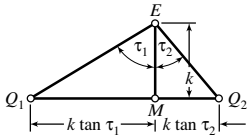


Fig. 14. Construction to Find $k \tan \tau_1$ and $k \tan \tau_2$

The specified maximum pressure angle α_1 is laid out at E_1 as shown, and a ray (line) $E_1 F_1$ is determined. Any point on this ray chosen as the cam shaft center will proportion the cam so that the pressure angle at a point on the cam profile corresponding to point P_1, of the displacement diagram will be exactly α_1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

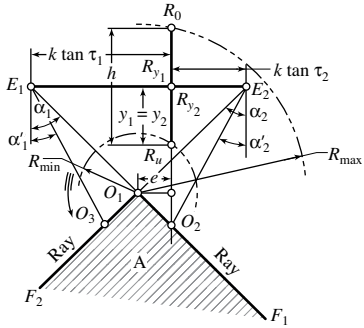


Fig. 15. Finding Proportions of Cam; Offset Translating Follower

The angle α_2 is laid out at E_2 as shown, and another ray E_2F_2 is determined. Similarly, any point on this ray chosen as the cam shaft center will proportion the cam so that the pressure angle at a point on the cam profile corresponding to point P_2 of the displacement diagram will be exactly α_2.

Any point chosen within the cross-hatched area A as the cam center will yield a cam whose pressure angles at points corresponding to P_1 and P_2 will not exceed the specified values α_1 and α_2 respectively. If O_1 is chosen as the cam shaft center, the pressure angles on the cam profile corresponding to points P_1 and P_2 are exactly α_1 and α_2, respectively. Selection of point O_1 also yields the smallest possible cam for the given requirements and requires an offset follower in which e is the offset distance.

If O_2 is chosen as the cam shaft center, a radial translating follower is obtained (zero offset). In that case, the pressure angle α_1 for the rise is unchanged, whereas the pressure angle for the return is changed from α_2 to α'_2. That is, the pressure angle on the return stroke is reduced at the point P_2. If point O_3 had been selected, then α_2 would remain unchanged but α_1 would be decreased and the offset e increased.

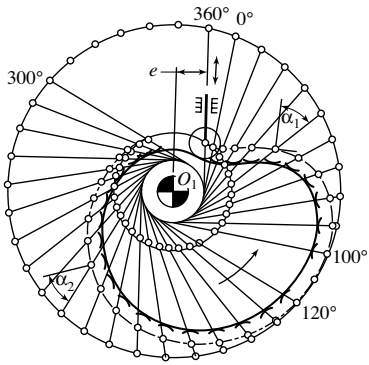


Fig. 16. Construction of Cam Contour; Offset Translating Follower

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fig. 16 shows the shape of the cam when O_1 from Fig. 15 is chosen as the cam shaft center, and it is seen that the pressure angle at a point on the cam profile corresponding to point P_1 is α_1 and at a point corresponding to point P_2 is α_2.

In the foregoing, a cam mechanism has been so proportioned that the pressure angles α_1 and α_2 at points on the cam corresponding to points P_1 and P_2 were obtained. Even though P_1 and P_2 are the points of greatest slope on the displacement diagram, the pressure angles produced at some other points on the actual cam may be slightly greater.

However, if the pressure angles α_1 and α_2 are not to be exceeded at any point—i.e., they are to be maximum pressure angles—then P_1 and P_2 must be selected to be at the locations where these maximum pressure angles occur. If these locations are not known, then the graphical procedure described must be repeated, letting P_1 take various positions on the curve for rise (*AB*) and P_2 various positions on the return curve (*CD*) and then setting R_{min} equal to the largest of the values determined from the various positions.

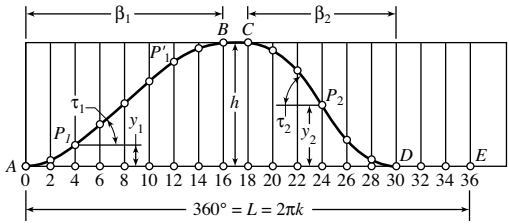


Fig. 17. Displacement Diagram

Determination of Cam Size for Swinging Roller Follower.—The proportioning of a cam with swinging roller follower having specific pressure angles at selected points follows the same procedure as that for a translating follower.

Example: Given the diagram for the roller displacement along its circular arc, Fig. 17 with $h = 1.95$ in., the periods of rise and fall, respectively, $\beta_1 = 160°$ and $\beta_2 = 120°$, the length of the swinging follower arm $L_f = 3.52$ in., rotation of the cam away from pivot point *M*, and pressure angles $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = 45°$ (corresponding to the points P_1 and P_2 in the displacement diagram). Find the cam proportions.

Solution: Distances $k \tan \tau_1$ and $k \tan \tau_2$ are determined as in the previous example, Fig. 14. In Fig. 18, R_{y1} is determined by making the distance $R_u R_{y1} = y_1$ along the arc $R_u R_o$ and R_{y2} by making $R_u R_{y2} = y_2$. The arc $R_u R_o = h$ and R_u indicates the lowest position of the center of the swinging roller follower and R_o the highest position.

Because the cam (i.e., the surface of the cam as it passes under the follower roller) rotates away from pivot point *M*, $k \tan \tau_1$ is laid out away from *M*, that is, from R_{y1} to E_1 and $k \tan \tau_2$ is laid out toward *M* from R_{y2} to E_2. Angle α_1 at E_1 determines one ray and α_2 at E_2 another ray, which together subtend an area *A* having the property that if the cam shaft center is chosen inside this area, the pressure angles at the points of the cam corresponding to P_1 and P_2 in the displacement diagram will not exceed the given values α_1 and α_2, respectively. If the cam shaft center is chosen on the ray drawn from E_1 at an angle $\alpha_1 = 45°$, the pressure angle α_1 on the cam profile corresponding to point P_1 will be exactly 45°, and if chosen on the ray from E_2, the pressure angle α_2 corresponding to P_2 will be exactly 45°. If another point, O_2 for example, is chosen as the cam shaft center, the pressure angle corresponding to P_1 will be α'_1 and that corresponding to P_2 will be α_2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

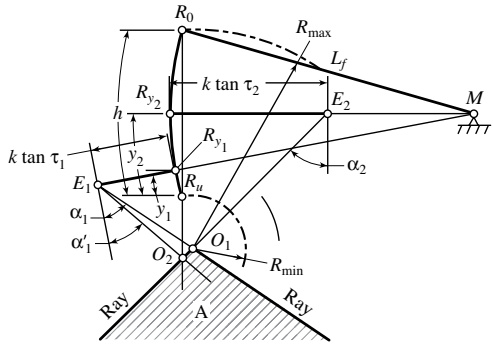


Fig. 18. Finding Proportions of Cam; Swinging Roller Follower (CCW Rotation)

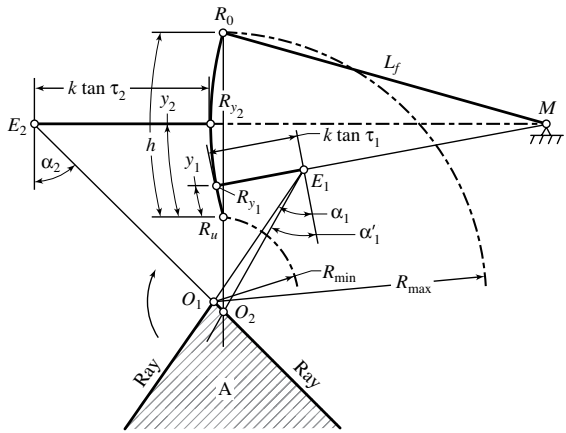


Fig. 19. Finding Proportions of Cam; Swinging Roller Follower (CW Rotation)

Fig. 19 shows the construction for rotation toward pivot point *M* (clockwise rotation of the cam in this case). The layout of the cam curve is made in a manner similar to that shown previously in Fig. 12.

In this example, the cam mechanism was so proportioned that the pressure angles at certain points (corresponding to P_1 and P_2) do not exceed certain specified values (namely α_1 and α_2).

To make sure that the pressure angle at *no point* along the cam profile exceeds the specified value, the previous procedure should be repeated for a series of points along the profile.

Formulas for Calculating Pressure Angles.—The graphical methods described previously are useful because they permit layout and measurement of pressure angles and radii of curvature of *any* cam profile. For cams of complicated profiles, and especially if

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the profile cannot be represented by a simple formula, the graphical method may be the only practical solution. However, for some of the standard cam profiles utilizing *radial* translating roller followers, the following formulas may be used to determine key cam dimensions before laying out the cam. These formulas enable the designer to specify the maximum pressure angle (usually 30° or less) and, using the specified value, to calculate the minimum cam size that will satisfy the requirement.

The following symbols are in addition to those starting on page 2364.

α_{max} = specified maximum pressure angle, degrees
$R_{\alpha max}$ = radius from cam center to point on pitch curve where α_{max} is located, inches (m)
ϕ_p = rise angle, in degrees, corresponding to α_{max} and $R_{\alpha max}$
α = pressure angle at any selected point, degrees
R_α = radius from cam center to pitch curve at α, inches (m)
ϕ = rise angle, in degrees, corresponding to α and R_α

For Uniform Velocity Motion

$$\alpha = \arctan\left[\frac{180°h}{\pi\beta R_\alpha}\right] \text{ at radius } R_\alpha \text{ to the pitch curve} \tag{6a}$$

$$\alpha_{max} = \arctan\left[\frac{180°h}{\pi\beta R_{min}}\right] \text{ at radius } R_{min} \text{ of the pitch curve } (\phi = 0°). \tag{6b}$$

If α_{max} is specified, the minimum radius to the lowest point on the pitch curve, R_{min}, is:

$$R_{min} = \frac{180°h}{\pi\beta \tan\alpha_{max}} \text{ which corresponds to } \phi = 0°. \tag{6c}$$

For Parabolic Motion

$$\alpha = \arctan\left[\frac{720°h\phi}{\pi\beta^2 R_\alpha}\right] \text{ at radius } R_\alpha \text{ to the pitch curve at angle } \phi, \text{ where } 0 \le \phi \le \beta/2 \tag{7a}$$

and $\alpha = \arctan\left[\dfrac{720°h\,(1-\phi/\beta)}{\pi\beta R_\alpha}\right]$ at radius R_α to pitch curve at angle ϕ, where $\beta/2 \le \phi \le \beta$.

$$\alpha_{max} = \arctan\left[\frac{360°h}{\pi\beta R_\alpha}\right] \text{ which occurs at } \phi = \beta/2 \text{ and } R_\alpha = R_{min} + h/2 \tag{7b}$$

If α_{max} is specified, then the minimum radius to the lowest point of the pitch curve is:

$$R_{min} = \left[\frac{360°h}{\pi\beta \tan\alpha_{max}} - \frac{h}{2}\right] \text{ which corresponds to } \phi = 0°. \tag{7c}$$

For Simple Harmonic Motion

$$\alpha = \arctan\left[\frac{90°h}{\beta R_\alpha}\sin\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \text{ at radius } R_\alpha \text{ to the pitch curve at angle } \phi \tag{8a}$$

$$\phi_p = \left(\frac{\beta}{180°}\right)\left[\operatorname{arccot}\left(\frac{\beta}{180°}\tan\alpha_{max}\right)\right] = \phi, \text{ where pressure angle } \alpha_{max} \text{ occurs} \tag{8b}$$

$$R_{\alpha max} = \frac{h\left[\sin\left(180°\dfrac{\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right]^2}{2\cos\left(\dfrac{180°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)} \text{ at point where } \alpha = \alpha_{max} \text{ and } \phi = \phi_{max} \tag{8c}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$R_{min} = R_{\alpha max} - \frac{h}{2}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{180°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right] \quad (8d)$$

For Cycloidal Motion

$$\alpha = \arctan\left[\frac{180°}{\pi\beta R_\alpha}\left(1 - \cos\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \text{ at radius } R_\alpha \text{ to the pitch curve at angle } \phi \quad (9a)$$

$$\phi_p = \frac{\beta}{180°}\left[\text{arccot}\left(\frac{\beta \tan \alpha_{max}}{360°}\right)\right] = \text{ value of } \phi \text{ where pressure angle } \alpha_{max} \text{ occurs} \quad (9b)$$

$$R_{\alpha max} = \frac{h}{2\pi}\frac{\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right]^2}{\sin\left(360°\frac{\phi_p}{\beta}\right)} \text{ at point where } \alpha = \alpha_{max} \text{ and } \phi = \phi_p \quad (9c)$$

$$R_{min} = R_{\alpha max} - h\left[\frac{\phi_p}{\beta} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right] \quad (9d)$$

Radius of Curvature.—The minimum radius of curvature of a cam should be kept as large as possible (1) to prevent undercutting of the convex portion of the cam and (2) to prevent too high surface stresses. Fig. 20(a), (b) and (c) illustrate how undercutting occurs.

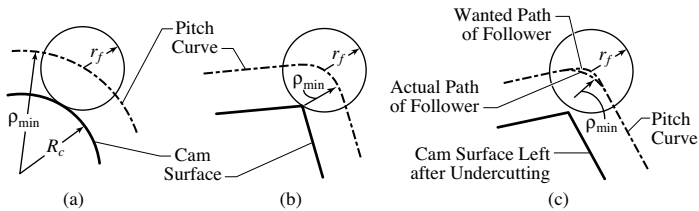


Fig. 20. (a) No Undercutting; (b) Sharp Corner on Cam; (c) Undercutting

In Fig. 20(a) the radius of curvature of the path of the follower is ρ_{min} and the cam will at that point have a radius of curvature $R_c = \rho_{min} - r_f$.

In Fig. 20(b) $\rho_{min} = r_f$ and $R_c = 0$. Therefore, the actual cam will have a sharp corner which in most cases will result in too high surface stresses.

In Fig. 20(c) is shown the case where $\rho_{min} < r_f$. This case is not possible because undercutting will occur and the actual motion of the roller follower will deviate from the desired one as shown.

Undercutting cannot occur at the *concave* portion of the cam profile (working surface), but caution should be exerted in not making the radius of curvature equal to the radius of the roller follower. This condition would occur if there is a cusp on the displacement diagram which, of course, should always be avoided. To enable milling or grinding of *concave* portions of a cam profile, the radius of curvature of concave portions of the cam, $R_c = \rho_{min} + r_f$, must be larger than the radius of the cutter to be used.

The radius of curvature is used in calculating surface stresses (see following section), and may be determined by measurement on the cam layout or, in the case of radial translating followers, may be calculated using the formulas that follow. Although these formulas are exact for radial followers, they may be used for offset and swinging followers to obtain an approximation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Based upon polar coordinates, the radius of curvature is:

$$\rho = \frac{\left[r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r^2 + 2\left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2 - r\left(\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2}\right)} \quad (10)$$

*Positive values (+) indicate convex curve; negative values (–), concave.

In Equation (10), $r = (R_{min} + y)$, where R_{min} is the smallest radius to the pitch curve (see Fig. 12) and y is the displacement of the follower from its lowest position given in terms of ϕ, the angle of cam rotation. The following formulas for r, $dr/d\phi$, and $d^2r/d\phi^2$ may be substituted into Equation (10) to calculate the radius of curvature at any point of the cam pitch curve; however, to determine the possibility of undercutting of the convex portion of the cam, it is the minimum radius of curvature on the convex portion, ρ_{min}, that is needed. The minimum radius of curvature occurs, generally, at the point of maximum *negative* acceleration.

Parabolic motion:

$$r = R_{min} + h - 2h\left(1 - \frac{\phi}{\beta}\right)^2 \quad (11a)$$

$$\frac{dr}{d\phi} = \frac{720°h}{\pi\beta}\left(1 - \frac{\phi}{\beta}\right) \quad (11b)$$

$$\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2} = \frac{-4(180°)^2h}{\pi^2\beta^2} \quad (11c)$$

$$\frac{\beta}{2} \le \phi \le \beta$$

These equations are for the deceleration portion of the curve as explained in the footnote to Table 1.

The minimum radius of curvature can occur at either $\phi = \beta/2$ or at $\phi = \beta$, depending on the magnitudes of h, R_{min}, and β. Therefore, to determine which is the case, make two calculations using Formula (10), one for $\phi = \beta/2$, and the other for $\phi = \beta$.

Simple harmonic motion:

$$r = R_{min} + \frac{h}{2}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \quad (12a)$$

$$\frac{dr}{d\phi} = \frac{180°h}{2\beta}\sin\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right) \quad (12b)$$

$$\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2} = \frac{(180°)^2h}{2\beta^2}\cos\left(\frac{180°\phi}{\beta}\right) \quad (12c)$$

$$0 \le \phi \le \beta$$

The minimum radius of curvature can occur at either $\phi = \beta/2$ or at $\phi = \beta$, depending on the magnitudes of h, R_{min}, and β. Therefore, to determine which is the case, make two calculations using Formula (10), one for $\phi = \beta/2$, and the other for $\phi = \beta$.

Cycloidal motion:

$$r = R_{min} + h\left[\frac{\phi}{\beta} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \quad (13a)$$

$$\frac{dr}{d\phi} = \frac{180°h}{\pi\beta}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] \quad (13b)$$

$$\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2} = \frac{2(180°)^2h}{\pi\beta^2}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right) \quad (13c)$$

$$0 \le \phi \le \beta$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\rho_{min} = \frac{\left[(R_{min} + 0.91h)^2 + \left(\frac{180°h}{\pi\beta}\right)^2\right]^{3/2}}{(R_{min} + 0.91h)^2 + 2\left(\frac{180°h}{\pi\beta}\right)^2 + (R_{min} + 0.91h)\left[2(180°)^2\frac{h}{\pi\beta^2}\right]} \quad (13d)$$

(ρ_{min} occurs near $\phi = 0.75\beta$)

Example: Given $h = 1$ inch (m), $R_{min} = 2.9$ inch (m), and $\beta = 60°$. Find ρ_{min} for parabolic motion, simple harmonic motion, and cycloidal motion.

Solution: $\rho_{min} = 2.02$ inch (m) for parabolic motion, from Equation (10)

$\rho_{min} = 1.8$ inch (m) for simple harmonic motion, from Equation (10)

$\rho_{min} = 1.6$ inch (m) for cycloidal motion, from Equation (13d)

The value of ρ_{min} on *any* cam may also be obtained by measurement on the layout of the cam using a compass.

Cam Forces, Contact Stresses, and Materials.—After a cam and follower configuration has been determined, the forces acting on the cam may be calculated or otherwise determined. Next, the stresses at the cam surface are calculated and suitable materials to withstand the stress are selected. If the calculated maximum stress is too great, it will be necessary to change the cam design.

Such changes may include: 1) increasing the cam size to decrease pressure angle and increase the radius of curvature; 2) changing to an offset or swinging follower to reduce the pressure angle; 3) reducing the cam rotation speed to reduce inertia forces; 4) increasing the cam rise angle, β, during which the rise, h, occurs; 5) increasing the thickness of the cam, provided that deflections of the follower are small enough to maintain uniform loading across the width of the cam; and 6) using a more suitable cam curve or modifying the cam curve at critical points.

Although parabolic motion seems to be the best with respect to minimizing the calculated maximum acceleration and, therefore, also the maximum acceleration forces, nevertheless, in the case of high speed cams, cycloidal motion yields the lower maximum acceleration forces. Thus, it can be shown that owing to the sudden change in acceleration (called *jerk* or *pulse*) in the case of parabolic motion, the actual forces acting on the cam are doubled and sometimes even tripled at high speed, whereas with cycloidal motion, owing to the gradually changing acceleration, the actual dynamic forces are only slightly higher than the theoretical. Therefore, the calculated force due to acceleration should be multiplied by at least a factor of 2 for parabolic and 1.05 for cycloidal motion to provide an allowance for the load-increasing effects of elasticity and backlash.

The main factors influencing cam forces are: 1) displacement and cam speed (forces due to acceleration); 2) dynamic forces due to backlash and flexibility; 3) linkage dimensions which affect weight and weight distribution; 4) pressure angle and friction forces; and 5) spring forces.

The main factors influencing stresses in cams are: 1) radius of curvature for cam and roller; and 2) materials.

Acceleration Forces: The formula for the force acting on a translating body given an acceleration a is:

$$R = \frac{Wa}{g} = \frac{Wa}{386} \quad (14)$$

In this formula, $g = 386$ inches/second squared, a = acceleration of W in inches/second squared; R = resultant of all the external forces (except friction) acting on the weight W. For cam analysis purposes, W, in pounds, consists of the weight of the follower, a portion

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

of the weight of the return spring (1/3), and the weight of the members of the external mechanism against which the follower pushes, for example, the weight of a piston:

$$W = W_f + \frac{1}{3}W_s + W_e \tag{15}$$

where W = equivalent single weight; W_f = follower weight; W_s = spring weight; and W_e = external weight, all in pounds.

Spring Forces: The return spring, K_s, shown in Fig. 21a must be strong enough to hold the follower against the cam at all times. At high cam speeds the main force attempting to separate the follower from the cam surface is the acceleration force R at the point of maximum *negative* acceleration. Thus, at that point the spring must exert a force F_s,

$$F_s = R - W_f - F_e - F_f \tag{16}$$

where F_e = external force resisting motion of follower, and F_f = friction force from follower guide bushings and other sources.

When the follower is at its lowest position ($R_{\min}$ in Fig. 21a), it is usual practice to have the spring provide some estimated preload to account for "set" that takes place in a spring after repeated use and to prevent roller sliding at the start of movement.

The required spring constant K_s, in pounds per inch of spring deflection, is:

$$K_s = \frac{F_s - \text{preload}}{y_a} \tag{17}$$

where y_a = rise of cam from $R_{\min}$ to height at which maximum negative acceleration takes place.

The force, F_y, that the spring exerts at any height y above $R_{\min}$ is:

$$F_y = yK_s + \text{preload} \tag{18}$$

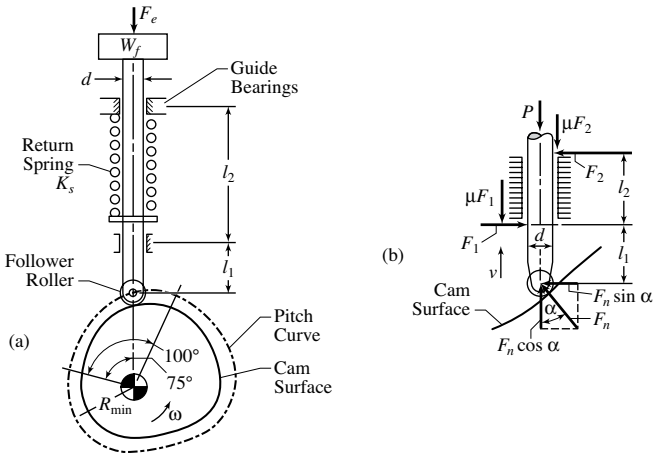


Fig. 21. (a) Radial Translating Follower and Cam System; (b) Force Acting on a Translating Follower

Pressure Angle and Friction Forces: As shown in Fig. 21b, the pressure angle of the cam causes a sideways component $F_n \sin \alpha$ which produces friction forces μF_1 and μF_2 in the guide bushing. If the follower rod is too flexible, bending of the follower will increase

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

these friction forces. The effect of the friction forces and the pressure angle are taken into account in the formula,

$$F_n = \frac{P}{\cos\alpha - \frac{\mu \sin\alpha}{l_2}(2l_1 + l_2 - \mu d)} \tag{19a}$$

where μ = coefficient of friction in bushing; l_1, l_2, and d are as shown in Fig. 21; and P = the sum of all the forces acting down against the upward motion of the follower (acceleration force + spring force + follower weight + external force)

$$P = \frac{W \times a}{386} + (yK_s + \text{preload}) + W_f + F_e \tag{19b}$$

Cam Torque: The follower pressing against the cam causes resisting torques during the rise period and assisting torques during the return period. The maximum value of the resisting torque determines the cam drive requirements. Instantaneous torque values may be calculated from

$$T_o = \frac{30vF_n\cos\alpha}{\pi N} = (R_{\min} + y)F_n \sin\alpha \tag{20}$$

in which T_o = instantaneous torque in pound-inches.

Example of Force Analysis: A radial translating follower system is shown in Fig. 21a. The follower is moved with cycloidal motion over a distance of 1 in. and an angle of lift $\beta = 100°$. Cam speed $N = 900$ rpm. The weight of the follower mass, W_f, is 2 pounds. Both the spring weight W_s and the external weight W_e are negligible. The follower stem diameter is 0.75 in., $l_1 = 1.5$ in., $l_2 = 4$ in., coefficient of friction $\mu = 0.05$, external force $F_e = 10$ lbs, and the pressure angle is not to exceed 30°.

(a) What is the smallest radius $R_{\min}$ to the pitch curve?

From Formula (9b) the rise angle ϕ_p to where the maximum pressure angle $\alpha_{\max}$ exists is:

$$\phi_p = \frac{\beta}{180°}\left[\text{arccot}\left(\frac{\beta \tan\alpha_{\max}}{360°}\right)\right] = \frac{100°}{180°}\left[\text{arccot}\left(\frac{100° \times \tan 30°}{360°}\right)\right]$$

$$= 44.94° = 45°$$

From Formula (9c) the radius, $R_{\alpha\,\max}$, at which the angle of rise is ϕ_p is:

$$R_{\alpha\max} = \frac{h}{2\pi}\frac{\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right]^2}{\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\frac{\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360° \times 45°}{100°}\right)\right]^2}{\sin\left[\frac{360° \times 45°}{100°}\right]} = 1.96 \text{ in.}$$

From Formula (9d), $R_{\min}$ is given by

$$R_{\min} = R_{\alpha\max} - h\left[\frac{\phi_p}{\beta} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi_p}{\beta}\right)\right]$$

$$= 1.96 - 1 \times \left[\frac{45°}{100°} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360° \times 45°}{100°}\right)\right] = 1.560 \text{ in.}$$

The same results could have been obtained graphically. If this $R_{\min}$ is too small, i.e., if the cam bore and hub require a larger cam, then $R_{\min}$ can be increased, in which case the maximum pressure angle will be less than 30°.

(b) If the return spring K_s is specified to provide a preload of 36 lbs when the follower is at $R_{\min}$, what is the spring constant required to hold the follower on the cam throughout the cycle?

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The follower tends to leave the cam at the point of maximum *negative* acceleration. Fig. 7 shows this to be at $\phi = \frac{3}{4}\beta = 75°$.

From Formula (4c),

$$a = \frac{2\pi h\omega^2}{\beta^2}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right) = \frac{2\pi \times 1 \times (6 \times 900)^2}{(100°)^2}\sin\left(\frac{360° \times 75°}{100°}\right) = -18{,}300 \text{ in/sec}^2$$

From Formulas (14) and (15),

$$R = \frac{Wa}{386} = \frac{\left(W_f + \frac{1}{3}W_s + W_e\right)a}{386} = \frac{(2+0+0)(-18{,}300)}{386} = 95 \text{ lbs (upward)}$$

Using Formula (16) to determine the spring force F_s to hold the follower on the cam,

$$F_s = R - W_f - F_e - F_f$$

as stated on page 2380, the value of R in the above formula should be multiplied by 1.05 for cycloidal motion to provide a factor of safety for dynamic pulses. Thus,

$$F_s = 1.05R - W_f - F_e - F_f = 1.05 \times 95 - 2 - 10 - 0 = 88 \text{ lbs (downward)}$$

The spring constant from Formula (17) is:

$$K_s = \frac{F_s - \text{preload}}{y_a} = \frac{88 - 36}{y_a}$$

and, from Formula (4a), y_a is:

$$y_a = h\left[\frac{\phi}{\beta} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] = 1 \times \left[\frac{75°}{100°} - \frac{1}{2\pi}\sin\left(\frac{360° \times 75°}{100°}\right)\right] = 0.909 \text{ in}$$

so that $K_s = (88 - 36)/0.909 = 57$ lb/in.

(c) At the point where the pressure angle α_{max} is 30° ($\phi = 45°$) the rise of the follower is 1.96 – 1.56 = 0.40 in. What is the normal force, F_n, on the cam? From Formulas (19a) and (19b)

$$F_n = \frac{Wa/386 + yK_s + \text{preload} + W_f + F_e}{\cos\alpha - \frac{\mu\sin\alpha}{l_2}(2l_1 + l_2 - \mu d)}$$

using $\phi = 45°$, $h = 1$ in., $\beta = 100°$, and $\omega = 6 \times 900$ in Formula (4c) gives $a = 5660$ in/sec^2. So that, with $W = 2$ lbs, $y = 0.4$, $K_s = 57$, preload = 36 lbs, $W_f = 2$ lbs, $F_e = 10$ lbs, $\alpha = 30°$, $\mu = 0.05$, $l_1 = 1.5$, $l_2 = 4$, and $d = 0.75$,

$$F_n = \frac{\frac{(2 \times 5660)}{386 + 0.4 \times 57 + 36 + 2}}{\cos 30° - \frac{0.05 \times \sin 30°}{4}(2 \times 1.5 + 4 - 0.05 \times 0.75)} = 110 \text{ lbs}$$

Note: If the coefficient of friction had been assumed to be 0, then $F_n = 104$; on the other hand, if the follower is too flexible, so that sidewise bending occurs causing jamming in the bushing, the coefficient of friction may increase to, say, 0.5, in which case the calculated $F_n = 200$ lbs.

(d) Assume that in the manufacture of this cam an error or "bump" resulting from a chattermark or as a result of poor blending occurred, and that this "bump" rose to a height of 0.001 in. in a 1° rise of the cam in the vicinity of $\phi = 45°$. What effect would this bump have on the acceleration force R?

One formula that may be used to calculate the change in acceleration caused by such a cam error is:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\Delta a = \pm 2e\left(\frac{6N}{\Delta\phi}\right)^2 \tag{21}$$

where Δa = change in acceleration,

e = error in inches,

$\Delta\phi$ = width of error in degrees. The plus (+) sign is used for a "bump" and the minus (−) sign for a dent or hollow in the surface

For $e = 0.001, \Delta\phi = 1°$, and $N = 900$ rpm,

$$\Delta a = +2 \times 0.001\left(\frac{6 \times 900}{1°}\right)^2 = 58320 \text{ in/sec}^2$$

which is 10 times the acceleration calculated for a perfect cam and would cause sufficient force F_n to damage the cam surface. On high speed cams, therefore, accuracy is of considerable importance.

(e) What is the cam torque at $\phi = 45°$?

From Formula (20),

$$T_o = (R_{\min} + y)F_n \sin\alpha$$
$$= (1.56 + 0.4) \times 110 \times \sin 30° = 108 \text{ in.-lbs.}$$

(f) What is the radius of curvature at $\phi = 45°$?

From Formula (10),

$$\rho = \frac{\left[r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2\right]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r^2 + 2\left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2 - r\left(\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2}\right)}$$
$$r = R_{\min} + y = 1.56 + 0.4 = 1.96$$

From Formula (13b),

$$\frac{dr}{d\phi} = \frac{180°h}{\pi\beta}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right)\right] = \frac{180° \times 1}{\pi \times 100°}\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{360° \times 45°}{100°}\right)\right]$$
$$= 1.12$$

From Formula (13c),

$$\frac{d^2r}{d\phi^2} = \frac{2(180°)^2h}{\pi\beta^2}\sin\left(\frac{360°\phi}{\beta}\right) = \frac{2 \times (180°)^2 \times 1}{\pi \times (100°)^2}\sin\left(\frac{360° \times 45°}{100°}\right)$$
$$= 0.64$$
$$\rho = \frac{[(1.96)^2 + (1.12)^2]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{(1.96)^2 + 2(1.12)^2 - 1.96 \times 0.64} = 2.26 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calculation of Contact Stresses.—When a roller follower is loaded against a cam, the compressive stress developed at the surface of contact may be calculated from

$$S_c = 2290\sqrt{\frac{F_n}{b}\left(\frac{1}{r_f} \pm \frac{1}{R_c}\right)} \qquad (22)$$

for a steel roller against a steel cam. For a steel roller on a cast iron cam, use 1850 instead of 2290 in Equation (22).

S_c = maximum calculated compressive stress, psi
F_n = normal load, lb
b = width of cam, inch
R_c = radius of curvature of cam surface, inch
r_f = radius of roller follower, inch

The plus sign in (21) is used in calculating the maximum compressive stress when the roller is in contact with the convex portion of the cam profile and the minus sign is used when the roller is in contact with the concave portion. When the roller is in contact with the straight (flat) portion of the cam profile, $R_c = \infty$ and $1/R_c = 0$. In practice, the greatest compressive stress is most apt to occur when the roller is in contact with that part of the cam profile which is convex and has the smallest radius of curvature.

Example: Given the previous cam example, the radius of the roller $r_f = 0.25$ in., the convex radius of the cam $R_c = (2.26 - 0.25)$ in., the width of contact $b = 0.3$ in., and the normal load $F_n = 110$ lbs. Find the maximum surface compressive stress. From (21),

$$S_c = 2290\sqrt{\frac{110}{0.3}\left(\frac{1}{0.25} + \frac{1}{2.01}\right)} = 93{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

This calculated stress should be less than the allowable stress for the material selected from Table 2.

Cam Materials: In considering materials for cams it is difficult to select any single material as being the best for every application. Often the choice is based on custom or the machinability of the material rather than its strength. However, the failure of a cam or roller is commonly due to fatigue, so that an important factor to be considered is the limiting wear load, which depends on the surface endurance limits of the materials used and the relative hardnesses of the mating surfaces.

Table 2. Cam Materials

Cam Materials for Use with Roller of Hardened Steel	Maximum Allowable Compressive Stress, psi
Gray-iron casting, ASTM A48-48, Class 20, 160–190 BHN, phosphate-coated	58,000
Gray-iron casting, ASTM A339-51T, Grade 20, 140–160 BHN	51,000
Nodular-iron casting, ASTM A339-51T, Grade 80-60-03, 207–241 BHN	72,000
Gray-iron casting, ASTM A48-48, Class 30, 200–220 BHN	65,000
Gray-iron casting, ASTM A48-48, Class 35, 225–225 BHN	78,000
Gray-iron casting, ASTM A48-48, Class 30, heat-treated (Austempered), 225–300 BHN	90,000
SAE 1020 steel, 130–150 BHN	82,000
SAE 4150 steel, heat-treated to 270–300 BHN, phosphate-coated	20,000
SAE 4150 steel, heat-treated to 270–300 BHN	188,000
SAE 1020 steel, carburized to 0.045 in. depth of case, 50–58 RC	226,000
SAE 1340 steel, induction hardened to 45–55 RC	198,000
SAE 4340 steel, induction hardened to 50–55 RC	226,000

Based on United Shoe Machinery Corp. data by Guy J. Talbourdet.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In Table 2 are given maximum permissible compressive stresses (surface endurance limits) for various cam materials when in contact with a roller of hardened steel. The stress values shown are based on 100,000,000 cycles or repetitions of stress for pure rolling. Where the repetitions of stress are considerably greater than 100,000,000, where there is appreciable misalignment, or where there is sliding, more conservative stress figures must be used.

Layout of Cylinder Cams.—In Fig. 22 is shown the development of a uniformly accelerated motion cam curve laid out on the surface of a cylindrical cam. This development is necessary for finding the projection on the cylindrical surface, as shown at *KL*. To construct the developed curve, first divide the base circle of the cylinder into, say, twelve equal parts. Set off these parts along line *ag*. Only one-half of the layout has been shown, as the other half is constructed in the same manner, except that the curve is here falling instead of rising. Divide line *aH* into the same number of divisions as the half circle, the divisions being in the proportion 1:3:5:5:3:1. Draw horizontal lines from these division points and vertical lines from *a*, *b*, *c*, etc. The intersections between the two sets of lines are points on the developed cam curve. These points are transferred to the cylindrical surface at the left by projection in the usual manner.

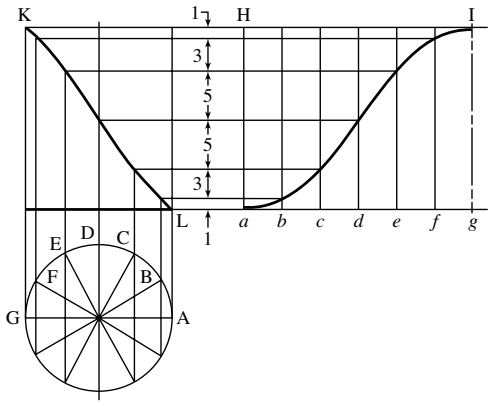


Fig. 22. Development of Cylindrical Cam

Shape of Rolls for Cylinder Cams.—The rolls for cylindrical cams working in a groove in the cam should be conical rather than cylindrical in shape, in order that they may rotate freely and without excessive friction. Fig. 23(a) shows a straight roll and groove, the action of which is faulty because of the varying surface speed at the top and bottom of the groove. Fig. 23(b) shows a roll with curved surface. For heavy work, however, the small bearing area is quickly worn down and the roll presses a groove into the side of the cam as well, thus destroying the accuracy of the movement and creating backlash. Fig. 23(c) shows the conical shape which permits a true rolling action in the groove. The amount of taper depends on the angle of spiral of the cam groove. As this angle, as a rule, is not constant for the whole movement, the roll and groove should be designed to meet the requirements on that section of the cam where the heaviest duty is performed. Frequently the cam groove is of a nearly even spiral angle for a considerable length. The method for determining the angle of the roll and groove to work correctly during the important part of the cycle is as follows:

In Fig. 23(d), *b* is the circumferential distance on the surface of the cam that includes the section of the groove for which correct rolling action is required. The throw of the cam for this circumferential movement is *a*. Line *OU* is the development of the movement of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the cam roll during the given part of the cycle, and *c* is the movement corresponding to *b*, but on a circle the diameter of which is equal to that of the cam at the bottom of the groove. With the same throw *a* as before, the line *OV* will be the development of the cam at the bottom of the groove. *OU* then is the length of the helix traveled by the top of the roll, while *OV* is the travel at the bottom of the groove. If, then, the top width and bottom width of the groove be made proportional to *OU* and *OV*, the groove will be properly proportioned.

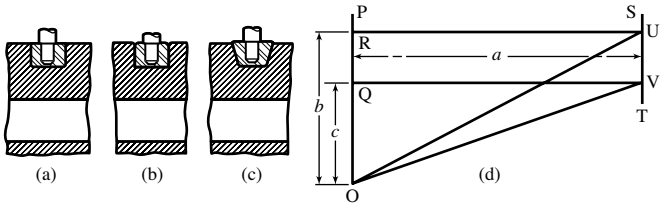


Fig. 23. Shape of Rolls for Cylinder Cams

Cam Milling.—Plate cams having a constant rise, such as are used on automatic screw machines, can be cut in a universal milling machine, with the spiral head set at an angle α, as shown by the illustration.

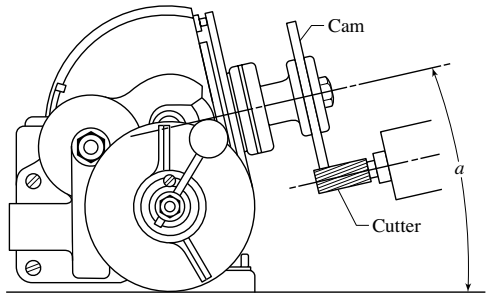


Fig. 24.

When the spiral head is set vertical, the "lead" of the cam (or its rise for one complete revolution) is the same as the lead for which the machine is geared; but when the spiral head and cutter are inclined, any lead or rise of the cam can be obtained, provided it is less than the lead for which the machine is geared, that is, less than the forward feed of the table for one turn of the spiral-head spindle. The cam lead, then, can be varied within certain limits by simply changing the inclination α of the spiral head and cutter. The following formula is for determining this angle of inclination, for a given rise of cam and with the machine geared for a lead, *L*, selected from the tables beginning on page 3528,

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{360^\circ \times r}{\phi \times L}$$

where α = angle to which index head and milling attachment are set from horizontal as shown in the accompanying diagram

r = rise of cam in given part of circumference

L = spiral lead for which milling machine is geared

ϕ = angle in which rise is required, expressed in degrees

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

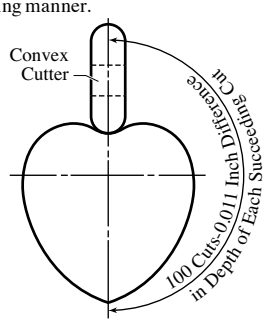
For example, suppose a cam is to be milled having a rise of 0.125 inch in 300 degrees and that the machine is geared for the smallest possible lead, or 0.670 inch; then:

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{360^\circ \times 0.125}{300^\circ \times 0.670} = 0.2239$$

which is the sine of 12° 56′. Therefore, to secure a rise of 0.125 inch with the machine geared for 0.670 inch lead, the spiral head is elevated to an angle of 12° 56′ and the vertical milling attachment is also swiveled around to locate the cutter in line with the spiral-head spindle, so that the edge of the finished cam will be parallel to its axis of rotation. In the example given, the lead used was 0.670. A larger lead, say 0.930, could have been selected from the table on page 3. In that case, $\alpha = 9^\circ 17'$.

When there are several lobes on a cam, having different leads, the machine can be geared for a lead somewhat in excess of the greatest lead on the cam, and then all the lobes can be milled without changing the spiral head gearing, by simply varying the angle of the spiral head and cutter to suit the different cam leads. Whenever possible, it is advisable to mill on the under side of the cam, as there is less interference from chips; moreover, it is easier to see any lines that may be laid out on the cam face. To set the cam for a new cut, it is first turned back by operating the handle of the table feed screw, after which the index crank is disengaged from the plate and turned the required amount.

Simple Method for Cutting Uniform Motion Cams.—Some cams are laid out with dividers, machined and filed to the line; but for a cam that must advance a certain number of thousandths per revolution of spindle this method is not accurate. Cams are easily and accurately cut in the following manner.



Let it be required to make the heart cam shown in the illustration. The throw of this cam is 1.1 inch. Now, by setting the index on the milling machine to cut 200 teeth and also dividing 1.1 inch by 100, we find that we have 0.011 inch to recede from or advance towards the cam center for each cut across the cam. Placing the cam securely on an arbor, and the latter between the centers of the milling machine, and using a convex cutter set the proper distance from the center of the arbor, make the first cut across the cam. Then, by lowering the milling machine knee 0.011 inch and turning the index pin the proper number of holes on the index plate, take the next cut and so on.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PLAIN BEARINGS

2393 Introduction
2393 Classes of Plain Bearings
2393 Types of Journal Bearings
2396 Hydrostatic Bearings
2396 Guide Bearings
2396 Modes of Bearing Operation
2398 Methods of Retaining and Sealing
2400 Hardness and Surface Finish
2401 Machining Bores
2401 Methods of Lubrication
2402 Lubricant Selection
2404 Greases and Solid Lubricants
2405 Journal or Sleeve Bearings
2405 Grooving and Oil Feeding
2405 Heat Radiating Capacity
2407 Journal Bearing Design Notation
2408 Journal Bearing Lubrication
2409 Sleeve Bearing Pressures
2414 Use of Lubrication Analysis
2417 Thrust Bearings
2418 Design Notation
2419 Flat Plate Design
2424 Step Design
2426 Tapered Land Design
2431 Tilting Pad Thrust Bearing Design
2435 Plain Bearing Materials
2435 Properties
2436 Bearing and Bushing Alloys
2437 Babbitt or White Metal Alloys
2438 Cadmium Base
2438 Copper-Lead
2438 Leaded Bronze and Tin-Bronze
2439 Aluminum
2439 Silver
2439 Cast Iron
2440 Porous Metals
2440 Plastics Bearings
2441 Wood
2441 Carbon-Graphite
2442 Sintered Copper- and Iron-Base

BALL, ROLLER, AND NEEDLE BEARINGS

2444 Rolling Contact Bearings
2444 Types of Anti-Friction Bearings
2445 Ball Bearings
2447 Roller Bearings
2448 Ball and Roller Thrust Bearings
2449 Needle Bearings
2451 Plastics Bearings

BALL, ROLLER, AND NEEDLE BEARINGS

(Continued)

2452 Flanged Housing Bearings
2452 Conventional Bearing Materials
2452 Cage Materials
2452 Method of Bearing Designation
2453 Bearing Tolerances
2453 Ball and Roller Bearings
2453 Thrust Bearings
2453 Needle Roller Bearings
2461 Shaft and Housing Fits
2466 Design and Installation
2466 Needle Roller Bearing Fitting
2469 Bearing Mounting Practice
2469 For Precision and Quiet
2470 Alignment Tolerances
2470 Squareness and Alignment
2471 Soft Metal and Resilient Housings
2472 Quiet or Vibration-Free
2472 General Mounting Precautions
2472 Seating Fits for Bearings
2472 Clamping and Retaining Methods
2477 Bearing Closures and Fits
2477 Design Considerations
2477 Friction Losses
2478 Ball and Roller Bearings
2479 Method of Lubrication
2480 Type of Mounting
2480 Radial and Axial Clearance
2481 Handling Precautions
2482 Failures and Deficiencies
2482 Load Ratings and Fatigue Life
2482 Ball and Roller Bearing Life
2483 Ball Bearing Types Covered
2483 Limitations for Ball Bearings
2484 Ball Bearing Rating Life
2488 Roller Bearing Types Covered
2489 Roller Bearing Rating Life
2493 Life Adjustment Factors
2494 Ball Bearing Static Load Rating
2497 Equivalent Load

LUBRICATION

2499 Lubrication Theory
2502 Lubricants
2503 Lubricating Oil
2506 Composition of Oil
2506 Oil Additives
2506 Mineral-Based Oil
2508 Synthetic-Based Oils
2509 Temperature Effects

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

LUBRICATION

(Continued)

2510 Lubricating Grease
2512 Lubricant Application
2512 Selecting a Suitable Lubricant
2514 Oil and Grease
2515 Delivery Methods
2517 Contamination Control
2518 ISO Cleanliness Code
2519 Water Contamination
2520 Filtration Systems

COUPLINGS, CLUTCHES, BRAKES

2522 Connecting Shafts
2522 Safety Flange Couplings
2523 Interference Fits
2523 Double-Cone Clamping Couplings
2524 Flexible Couplings
2524 Universal Joint
2525 Knuckle Joints
2525 Friction Clutches
2527 Formulas for Cone Clutches
2529 Magnetic Clutches
2529 Slipping Clutch/Couplings
2529 Wrapped-Spring Clutches
2530 Positive Clutches
2531 Cutting Clutch Teeth
2534 Friction Brakes
2534 Formulas for Band Brakes
2536 Coefficient of Friction
2537 Formulas for Block Brakes
2537 Friction Wheels

KEYS AND KEYSEATS

2539 Metric Keys and Keyways
2539 Preferred Lengths and Tolerances
2540 Key Dimensions and Tolerances
2542 Keyway Dimensions, Tolerances
2544 Tolerances Greater than Basic
2545 Preferred Lengths and Tolerances
2548 Material Requirements
2548 Metric Woodruff Keys, Keyways
2549 Tolerances and Designation
2550 Advantages of Woodruff Keys
2551 Inch Keys and Keyseats
2551 Key Size Versus Shaft Diameter
2554 Plain and Gib Head Keys
2555 Fits for Parallel and Taper Keys
2556 Key Chamfer

KEYS AND KEYSEATS

(Continued)

2556 Tolerances for Electric Motors
2556 Set Screws for Use Over Keys
2557 Woodruff Keys and Keyseats
2559 Keyseat Dimensions
2561 Chamfered and Filleted Keyseats
2561 Depths for Milling Keyseats
2561 Other Key Types
2561 Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength
2561 Cotters

FLEXIBLE BELTS AND SHEAVES

2563 Calculations for Belts and Pulleys
2563 Diameters and Drive Ratios
2563 Wrap Angles, Center Distances
2563 Center Distances and Belt Lengths
2564 Pulley Diameters and Speeds
2565 Belt Length in Three Pulleys
2566 Power Transmitted by Belts
2566 Measuring the Effective Length
2566 Flat Belting
2567 Flat Belt Pulleys
2568 V-Belts
2568 Narrow V-Belts
2569 Standard Effective Lengths
2570 Sheave and Groove Dimensions
2572 Sheave Outside Diameters
2574 Classical V-Belts
2575 Standard Datum Length
2576 Sheave and Groove Dimensions
2581 Double V-Belts
2582 Sheave and Groove Dimensions
2586 Allowable Tight Side Tension
2589 Light Duty V-Belts
2589 Belt Cross Sections
2589 Belt Size Designation
2592 V-Ribbed Belts
2592 Nominal Dimensions
2593 Sheave and Groove Dimensions
2595 Standard Effective Lengths
2597 Variable Speed Belts
2599 Sheave and Groove Dimensions
2604 60-Degree V-Belts
2604 SAE Standard
2604 Belt Storage and Handling
2606 Service Factors
2607 Synchronous Belts
2608 Service Factors
2609 Tooth and Section Dimensions
2609 Pulley and Flange Dimensions
2610 Pitch Lengths and Tolerances

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

FLEXIBLE BELTS AND SHEAVES
(Continued)

2611 Widths and Tolerances
2612 Pulley Diameters
2613 Pulley Tolerances
2614 Teeth in Mesh Factor
2615 Torque Rating
2615 Belt Width Factor
2615 Gravity Idler

TRANSMISSION CHAINS

2616 Types of Chains
2616 Standard Roller Chains
2616 Types of Roller Chains
2617 Roller Chain Nomenclature
2618 Transmission Roller Chain
2618 Standard Dimensions, Loads
2619 Roller Chain Numbers
2619 Types of Sprockets
2620 Attachments
2621 Sprocket Classes
2621 Keys, Keyways, and Set Screws
2621 Sprocket Diameters
2624 Profile Dimension
2625 Proportions of Sprockets
2626 Chain and Sprocket Selection
2626 Power Ratings for Roller Chain
2631 Maximum Bore and Hub
2631 Sprocket Center Distance
2632 Center Distance of Chain Length
2632 Idler Sprockets
2632 Length of Driving Chain
2633 Tooth Form for Roller Chain
2634 Standard Hob Design
2635 Cutting Sprocket Tooth Form
2635 Standard Space Cutters
2636 Space Cutter Sizes
2636 Sprocket Materials
2637 Roller Chain Drive Ratings
2637 Service Factors
2638 Lubrication
2638 Installation and Alignment
2639 Design Procedure

BALL AND ACME LEADSCREWS

2640 Leadscrew Overview
2640 Ball Screws
2640 Acme Screws
2641 Leadscrew Design
2642 Ball Screw Selection
2643 Screws, Power Transmission

ELECTRIC MOTORS

2644 Classes of NEMA Standards
2644 Mounting Dimensions
2644 Integral-Horsepower
2645 Locked-Rotor Torque
2646 Torque and Current Definitions
2646 Direction of Motor Rotation
2647 Variability of Speed
2647 Pull-Up Torque
2647 Types of Motors
2647 Types of Direct-Current
2647 Series-Wound Direct-Current
2648 Shunt-Wound Direct-Current
2648 Adjustable-Voltage Shunt-Wound Motor Drive
2649 Compound-Wound
2649 Polyphase AC
2649 Squirrel-Cage Induction
2650 Multiple-Speed Induction
2650 Wound-Rotor Induction
2650 High-Frequency Induction
2650 Synchronous
2651 Single-Phase Alternating-Current
2652 Factors Governing Motor Selection
2652 Speed, Horsepower, Torque and Inertia
2653 Space Limitations
2654 Temperatures
2654 Injurious Conditions
2655 Applications of DC Motors
2656 Polyphase AC Motors
2657 Maintenance and Inspection

ADHESIVES AND SEALANTS

2659 Bonding Adhesives
2659 Two-Component No-Mix Adhesives
2660 Two-Component Mix Adhesives
2661 One-Component No-Mix Adhesives
2662 Retaining Compounds
2663 Threadlocking
2663 Sealants
2664 Tapered Pipe-Thread Sealing
2665 Anaerobic Pipe Sealants

O-RINGS

2666 Overview
2666 Standards and Designations
2668 Size Selection
2679 Clearance Gap
2680 Backup Rings

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-RINGS

(Continued)

2680 Groove Width and Slope
2680 Stretch, Cramping, and Cross Section
2681 Squeeze
2681 Gland Fill
2681 Axial Face Seal Glands
2684 Dovetail Grooves
2688 Lubrication
2688 Gland Surface Quality
2688 Installation
2688 O-Rings Used as Drive Belts
2690 O-Ring Materials

ROLLED STEEL, WIRE, SHEET METAL, WIRE ROPE

2691 Rolled Steel Sections
2691 Angles Bent to Circular Shape
2691 Hot-Rolled Structural Steel
2692 Steel Wide-Flange
2696 Steel S Sections
2697 Steel Channels
2698 Steel Angles with Equal Legs
2699 Angles with Unequal Legs
2701 Aluminum Structural Shapes
2702 Wire and Sheet Metal Gages
2702 Wire Gages
2702 Gages for Rods
2702 Wall Thicknesses of Tubing
2705 Properties of Perforated Materials
2706 Sheet Metal Gages
2708 Flat Metal Products
2708 Preferred Metric Thicknesses
2710 Drill Sizes
2710 Wire Drawing
2710 Shaped Wire
2711 Wire Rope
2712 Properties
2714 Sizes and Strengths
2719 Safe Loads, Factors of Safety

SHAFT ALIGNMENT

2720 Introduction
2720 Angular Misalignment
2720 Offset Misalignment
2721 Alignment with Dial Indicators
2721 Instruments and Methods
2721 Runout Check
2723 Soft Legs
2724 Mounting Dial Indicators

SHAFT ALIGNMENT

(Continued)

2725 Preparations
2726 Alignment Procedures
2727 Rim and Face Alignment
2731 Dial Indicator Arrangements
2747 Method for Motors with Extra Feet

FLUID POWER

2749 Introduction
2749 Properties of Liquids and Gases
2751 Pressure
2752 Viscosity
2753 Fluid Circuits
2755 Pressure and Flow
2756 Pressure Regulation
2757 Flow Measurement
2760 Flow Control
2760 Coefficient of Velocity, C_v
2762 Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings
2762 Metal Pipe
2767 Plastic Pipe
2771 Pipe Fittings
2771 Metal Tube
2773 Plastic Tube
2776 Tube Fittings
2777 Flow and Energy Loss
2777 Flow Rates
2779 Energy Loss in Pipes
2784 Losses for Subsonic Flow
2787 Fluid Power Valves
2788 Valve Types
2789 Energy Loss in Valves
2789 Valve Selection and Sizing
2790 Fluid Power Actuators
2790 Linear Actuators
2791 Intensifiers and Hydraulic Presses
2792 Rotary Actuators
2793 Shock Absorbers and Dampers
2794 Hydraulics
2797 Head
2799 Discharge from Tanks
2800 Pumps
2810 Pneumatics
2810 Gas Consumption
2810 Fans and Blowers
2813 Compressors
2820 Gas Conditioning and Stabilization
2821 Nozzles
2823 Vacuum

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PLAIN BEARINGS

Introduction

On the following pages are given data and procedures for designing full-film or hydrodynamically lubricated bearings of the journal and thrust types. However, before proceeding to these design methods, it is useful to first review those bearing aspects concerning the types of bearings available; lubricants and lubrication methods; hardness and surface finish; machining methods; seals; retainers; and typical length-to-diameter ratios for various applications.

The following paragraphs preceding the design sections provide guidance in these matters and suggest modifications in allowable loads when other than full-film operating conditions exist in a bearing.

Classes of Plain Bearings.—Bearings that provide sliding contact between mating surfaces fall into three general classes: *radial bearings* that support rotating shafts or journals; *thrust bearings* that support axial loads on rotating members; and *guide* or *slipper bearings* that guide moving parts in a straight line. Radial sliding bearings, more commonly called sleeve bearings, may be of several types, the most usual being the plain full journal bearing, which has 360-degree contact with its mating journal, and the partial journal bearing, which has less than 180-degree contact. This latter type is used when the load direction is constant and has the advantages of simplicity, ease of lubrication, and reduced frictional loss.

The relative motions between the parts of plain bearings may take place: 1) as pure sliding without the benefit of a liquid or gaseous lubricating medium between the moving surfaces such as with the dry operation of nylon or Teflon; 2) with hydrodynamic lubrication in which a wedge or film buildup of lubricating medium is produced, with either whole or partial separation of the bearing surfaces; 3) with hydrostatic lubrication in which a lubricating medium is introduced under pressure between the mating surfaces causing a force opposite to the applied load and a lifting or separation of these surfaces; and 4) with a hybrid form or combination of hydrodynamic and hydrostatic lubrication.

Listed below are some of the advantages and disadvantages of sliding contact (plain) bearings as compared with rolling contact (antifriction) bearings.

Advantages: 1) require less space; 2) are quieter in operation; 3) are lower in cost, particularly in high-volume production; 4) have greater rigidity; and 5) their life is generally not limited by fatigue.

Disadvantages: 1) have higher frictional properties resulting in higher power consumption; 2) are more susceptible to damage from foreign material in lubrication system; 3) have more stringent lubrication requirements; and 4) are more susceptible to damage from interrupted lubrication supply.

Types of Journal Bearings.—Many types of journal bearing configurations have been developed; some of these are shown in Fig. 1.

Circumferential-groove bearings, Fig. 1(a), have an oil groove extending circumferentially around the bearing. The oil is maintained under pressure in the groove. The groove divides the bearing into two shorter bearings that tend to run at a slightly greater eccentricity. However, the advantage in terms of stability is slight, and this design is most commonly used in reciprocating-load main and connecting-rod bearings because of the uniformity of oil distribution.

Short cylindrical bearings are a better solution than the circumferential-groove bearing for high-speed, low-load service. Often the bearing can be shortened enough to increase the unit loading to a substantial value, causing the shaft to ride at a position of substantial eccentricity in the bearing. Experience has shown that instability rarely results when the shaft eccentricity is greater that 0.6. Very short bearings are not often used for this type of application, because they do not provide a high temporary rotating-load capacity in the event some unbalance should be created in the rotor during service.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

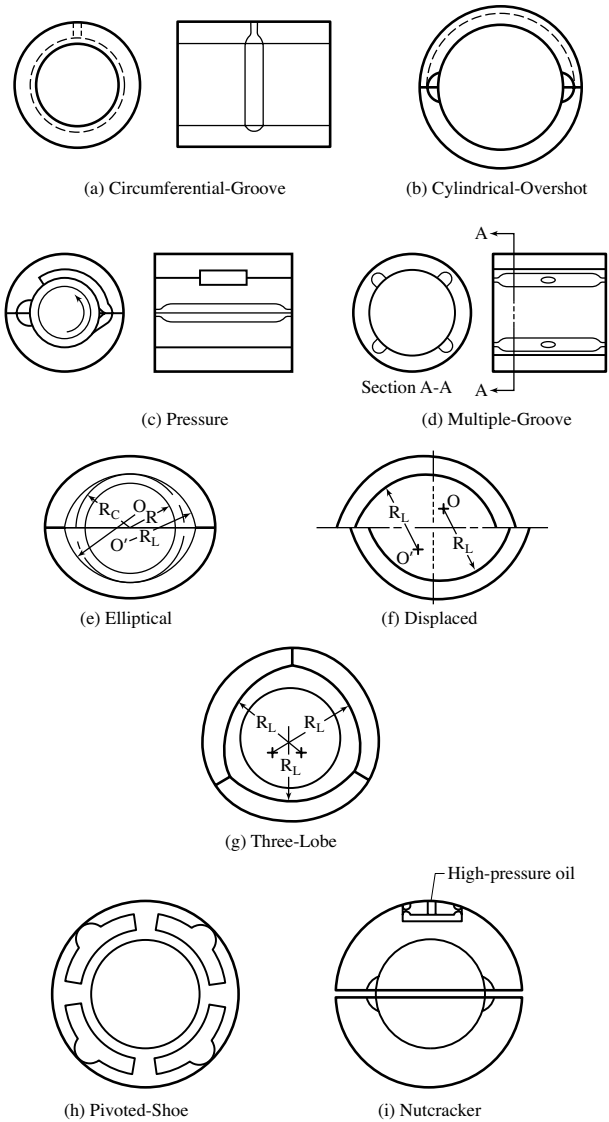


Fig. 1. Typical Shapes of Several Types of Pressure-Fed Bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cylindrical-overshot bearings, Fig. 1(b), are used where surface speeds of 10,000 fpm or more exist, and where additional oil flow is desired to maintain a reasonable bearing temperature. This bearing has a wide circumferential groove extending from one axial oil groove to the other over the upper half of the bearing. Oil is usually admitted to the trailing-edge oil groove. An inlet orifice is used to control the oil flow. Cooler operation results from the elimination of shearing action over a large section of the upper half of the bearing and, to a great extent, from the additional flow of cool oil over the top half of the bearing.

Pressure bearings, Fig. 1(c), employ a groove over the top half of the bearing. The groove terminates at a sharp dam about 45 degrees beyond the vertical in the direction of shaft rotation. Oil is pumped into this groove by shear action from the rotation of the shaft and is then stopped by the dam. In high-speed operation, this situation creates a high oil pressure over the upper half of the bearing. The pressure created in the oil groove and surrounding upper half of the bearing increases the load on the lower half of the bearing. This self-generated load increases the shaft eccentricity. If the eccentricity is increased to 0.6 or greater, stable operation under high-speed, low-load conditions can result. The central oil groove can be extended around the lower half of the bearing, further increasing the effective loading. This design has one primary disadvantage: Dirt in the oil will tend to abrade the sharp edge of the dam and impair ability to create high pressures.

Multiple-groove bearings, Fig. 1(d), are sometimes used to provide increased oil flow. The interruptions in the oil film also appear to give this bearing some merit as a stable design.

Elliptical bearings, Fig. 1(e), are not truly elliptical, but are formed from two sections of a cylinder. This two-piece bearing has a large clearance in the direction of the split and a smaller clearance in the load direction at right angles to the split. At light loads, the shaft runs eccentric to both halves of the bearing, and hence, the elliptical bearing has a higher oil flow than the corresponding cylindrical bearing. Thus, the elliptical bearing will run cooler and will be more stable than a cylindrical bearing.

Elliptical-overshot bearings (not shown) are elliptical bearings in which the upper half is relieved by a wide oil groove connecting the axial oil grooves. They are analogous to cylindrical-overshot bearings.

Displaced elliptical bearings, Fig. 1(f), shift the centers of the two bearing arcs in both a horizontal and a vertical direction. This design has greater stiffness than a cylindrical bearing, in both horizontal and vertical directions, with substantially higher oil flow. It has not been extensively used, but offers the prospect of high stability and cool operation.

Three-lobe bearings, Fig. 1(g), are made up in cross section of three circular arcs. They are most effective as antioil whip bearings when the centers of curvature of each of the three lobes lie well outside the clearance circle that the shaft center can describe within the bearing. Three axial oil-feed grooves are used. It is a more difficult design to manufacture, because it is almost necessary to make it in three parts instead of two. The bore is machined with shims between each of the three parts. The shims are removed after machining is completed.

Pivoted-shoe bearings, Fig. 1(h), are one of the most stable bearings. The bearing surface is divided into three or more segments, each of which is pivoted at the center. In operation, each shoe tilts to form a wedge-shaped oil film, thus creating a force tending to push the shaft toward the center of the bearing. For single-direction rotation, the shoes are sometimes pivoted near one end and forced toward the shaft by springs.

Nutcracker bearings, Fig. 1(i), consist of two cylindrical half-bearings. The upper half-bearing is free to move in a vertical direction and is forced toward the shaft by a hydraulic cylinder. External oil pressure may be used to create load on the upper half of the bearing through the hydraulic cylinder. Or the high-pressure oil may be obtained from the lower half of the bearing by tapping a hole into the high-pressure oil film, thus creating a self-loading bearing. Either type can increase bearing eccentricity to the point where stable operation can be achieved.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hydrostatic Bearings.—Hydrostatic bearings are used when operating conditions require full film lubrication that cannot be developed hydrodynamically. The hydrostatically lubricated bearing, either thrust or radial, is supplied with lubricant under pressure from an external source. Some advantages of the hydrostatic bearing over bearings of other types are: low friction; high load capacity; high reliability; high stiffness; and long life.

Hydrostatic bearings are used successfully in many applications including machine tools, rolling mills, and other heavily loaded slow-moving machinery. However, specialized techniques, including a thorough understanding of hydraulic components external to the bearing package is required. The designer is cautioned against use of this type of bearing without a full knowledge of all aspects of the problem. Determination of the operating performance of hydrostatic bearings is a specialized area of the lubrication field and is described in specialized reference books.

Guide Bearings.—This type of bearing is generally used as a positioning device or as a guide to linear motion such as in machine tools. Fig. 2 shows several examples of guideway bearing designs. It is normal for this type of bearing to operate in the boundary lubrication region with either dry, dry film such as molybdenum disulfide (MoS_2) or tetrafluorethylene (TFE), grease, oil, or gaseous lubrication. Hydrostatic lubrication is often used to improve performance, reduce wear, and increase stability. This type of design uses pumps to supply air or gas under pressure to pockets designed to produce a bearing film and maintain complete separation of the sliding surfaces.

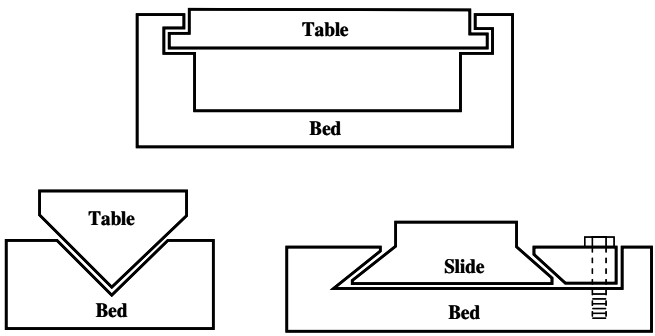


Fig. 2. Types of Guide Bearings

Design.—The design of a sliding bearing is generally accomplished in one of two ways: 1) a bearing operating under similar conditions is used as a model or basis from which the new bearing is designed; and 2) in the absence of any previous experience with similar bearings in similar environments, certain assumptions concerning operating conditions and requirements are made and a tentative design prepared based on general design parameters or rules of thumb. Detailed lubrication analysis is then performed to establish design and operating details and requirements.

Modes of Bearing Operation.—The load-carrying ability of a sliding bearing depends upon the kind of fluid film that is formed between its moving surfaces. The formation of this film is dependent, in part, on the design of the bearing and, in part, on the speed of rotation. The bearing has three modes or regions of operation designated as *full-film, mixed-film,* and *boundary* lubrication with effects on bearing friction, as shown in Fig. 3.

In terms of physical bearing operation these three modes may be further described as follows:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

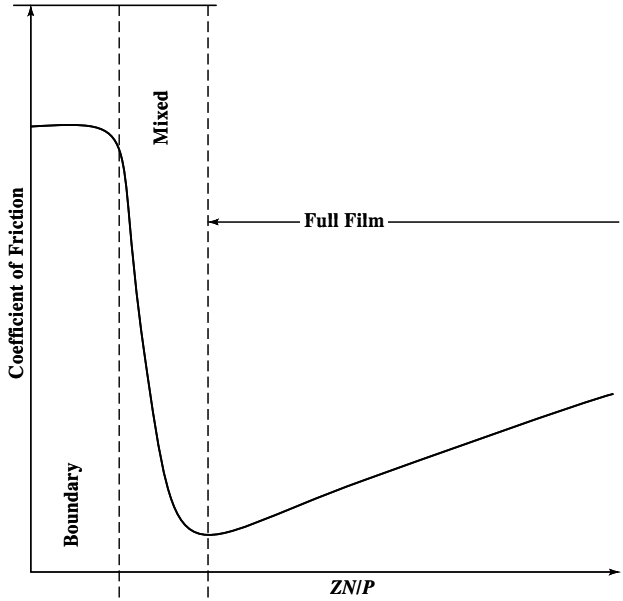


Fig. 3. Three Modes of Bearing Operation.

1) Full-film, or hydrodynamic, lubrication produces a complete physical separation of the sliding surfaces resulting in low friction and long wear-free service life.

To promote full-film lubrication in hydrodynamic operation, the following parameters should be satisfied: a) Lubricant selected has the correct viscosity for the proposed operation; b) proper lubricant flow rates are maintained; c) proper design methods and considerations have been utilized; d) and surface velocity in excess of 25 fpm (7.62 m/min) is maintained.

When full-film lubrication is achieved, a coefficient of friction between 0.001 and 0.005 can be expected.

2) Mixed-film lubrication is a mode of operation between the full-film and boundary modes. With this mode, there is a partial separation of the sliding surfaces by the lubricant film; however, as in boundary lubrication, limitations on surface speed and wear will result. With this type of lubrication, a surface velocity in excess of 10 fpm (3.05 m/min) is required with resulting coefficients of friction of 0.02 to 0.08.

3) Boundary lubrication takes place when the sliding surfaces are rubbing together with only an extremely thin film of lubricant present. This type of operation is acceptable only in applications with oscillating or slow rotary motion. In complete boundary lubrication, the oscillatory or rotary motion is usually less than 10 feet per minute with resulting coefficients of friction of 0.08 to 0.14. These bearings are usually grease lubricated or periodically oil lubricated.

In starting up and accelerating to its operating point, a journal bearing passes through all three modes of operation. At rest, the journal and bearing are in contact, and thus when starting, the operation is in the boundary lubrication region. As the shaft begins to rotate more rapidly and the hydrodynamic film starts to build up, bearing operation enters

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the region of mixed-film lubrication. When design speeds and loads are reached, the hydrodynamic action in a properly designed bearing will promote full-film lubrication.

Methods of Retaining Bearings.—Several methods are available to ensure that a bearing remains in place within a housing. Which method to use depends upon the particular application but requires first that the unit lends itself to convenient assembly and disassembly; additionally, the bearing wall should be of uniform thickness to avoid introduction of weak points in the construction that may lead to elastic or thermal distortion.

Press or Shrink Fit: One common and satisfactory technique for retaining the bearing is to press or shrink the bearing in the housing with an interference fit. This method permits the use of bearings having uniform wall thickness over the entire bearing length.

Standard bushings with finished inside and outside diameters are available in sizes up to approximately 5 inches (127 mm) inside diameter. Stock bushings are commonly provided 0.002 to 0.003 inch (50.8–76.2 μm) over nominal on outside diameter sizes of 3 inches (76.2 mm) or less. For diameters greater than 3 inches, outside diameters are 0.003 to 0.005 inch (76.2–127 μm) over nominal. Because these tolerances are built into standard bushings, the amount of press fit is controlled by the housing-bore size.

As a result of a press or shrink fit, the bore of the bearing material "closes in" by some amount. In general, this diameter decrease is approximately 70 to 100 percent of the amount of the interference fit. Any attempt to accurately predict the amount of reduction, in an effort to avoid final clearance machining, should be avoided.

Shrink fits may be accomplished by chilling the bearing in a mixture of dry ice and alcohol, or in liquid air. These methods are easier than heating the housing and are preferred. Dry ice in alcohol has a temperature of –110°F (–79°C) and liquid air boils at –310°F (–190°C).

When a bearing is pressed into the housing, the driving force should be uniformly applied to the end of the bearing to avoid upsetting or peening of the bearing. Of equal importance, the mating surfaces must be clean, smoothly finished, and free of machining imperfections.

Keying Methods: A variety of methods can be used to fix the position of the bearing with respect to its housing by "keying" the two together. Possible keying methods are shown in Fig. 4a through Fig. 4f including: a) set screws; b) Woodruff keys; c) bolted bearing flanges; d) threaded bearings; e) dowel pins; and f) housing caps.

Factors to be considered when selecting one of these methods are as follows:

1) Maintaining uniform wall thickness of the bearing material, if possible, especially in the load-carrying region of the bearing.

2) Providing as much contact area as possible between bearing and housing. Mating surfaces should be clean, smooth, and free from imperfections to facilitate heat transfer.

3) Preventing any local deformation of the bearing that might result from the keying method. Machining after keying is recommended.

4) Considering the possibility of bearing distortion resulting from the effect of temperature changes on the particular keying method.

Methods of Sealing.—In applications where lubricants or process fluids are utilized in operation, provision must be made normally to prevent leakage to other areas. This provision is made by the use of static and dynamic type sealing devices. In general, three terms are used to describe the devices used for sealing:

Seal: A means of preventing migration of fluids, gases, or particles across a joint or opening in a container.

Packing: A dynamic seal, used where some form of relative motion occurs between rigid members of an assembly.

Gaskets: A static seal, used where there is no relative motion between joined parts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Methods of Bearing Retention

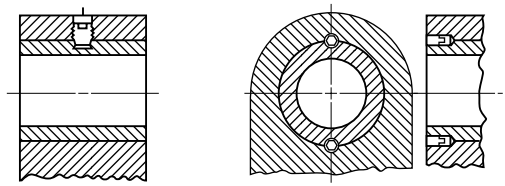


Fig. 4a. Set Screws

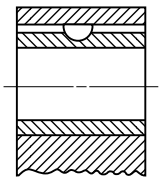


Fig. 4b. Woodruff Key

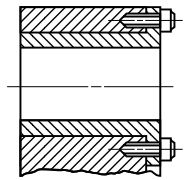


Fig. 4c. Bolts through Flange

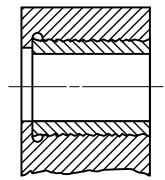


Fig. 4d. Bearing Screwed into Housing

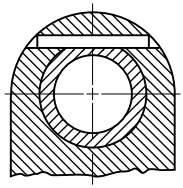


Fig. 4e. Dowel Pin

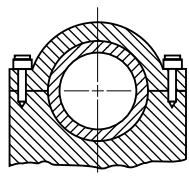


Fig. 4f. Housing Cap

Two major functions must be achieved by all sealing applications: prevent escape of fluid; and prevent migration of foreign matter from the outside.

The first determination in selecting the proper seal is whether the application is static or dynamic. To meet the requirements of a static application there must be no relative motion between the joining parts or between the seal and the mating part. If there is any relative motion, the application must be considered dynamic, and the seal selected accordingly.

Dynamic sealing requires control of fluids leaking between parts with relative motion. Two primary methods are used to this end: positive contact or rubbing seals; and controlled clearance noncontact seals.

Positive Contact or Rubbing Seals: These seals are used where positive containment of liquids or gases is required, or where the seal area is continuously flooded. If properly selected and applied, contact seals can provide zero leakage for most fluids. However, because they are sensitive to temperature, pressure, and speed, improper application can result in early failure. These seals are applicable to rotating and reciprocating shafts. In many assemblies, positive-contact seals are available as off-the-shelf items. In other instances, they are custom-designed to the special demands of a particular application. Custom design is offered by many seal manufacturers and, for extreme cases, probably offers the best solution to the sealing problem.

Controlled Clearance Noncontact Seals: Representative of the controlled-clearance seals, which includes all seals in which there is no rubbing contact between the rotating

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

and stationary members, are throttling bushings and labyrinths. Both types operate by fluid-throttling action in narrow annular or radial passages.

Clearance seals are frictionless and very insensitive to temperature and speed. They are chiefly effective as devices for limiting leakage rather than stopping it completely. Although they are employed as primary seals in many applications, the clearance seal also finds use as auxiliary protection in contact-seal applications. These seals are usually designed into the equipment by the designer himself, and they can take on many different forms.

Advantages of this seal are that friction is kept to an absolute minimum and there is no wear or distortion during the life of the equipment. However, there are two significant disadvantages: The seal has limited use when leakage rates are critical; and it becomes quite costly as the configuration becomes elaborate.

Static Seals: Static seals such as gaskets, "O" rings, and molded packings cover very broad ranges of both design and materials.

Some of the typical types are as follows: 1) Molded packings: a) lip type, and b) squeeze-molded; 2) simple compression packings; 3) diaphragm seals; 4) nonmetallic gaskets; 5) "O" rings; and 6) metallic gaskets and "O" rings.

Data on "O" rings are found starting on page 2666.

Detailed design information for specific products should be obtained directly from manufacturers.

Hardness and Surface Finish.—Even in well-lubricated full-film sleeve bearings, momentary contact between journal and bearing may occur under such conditions as starting, stopping, or overloading. In mixed-film and boundary-film lubricated sleeve bearings, continuous metal-to-metal contact occurs. Hence, to allow for any necessary wearing-in, the journal is usually made harder than the bearing material. This arrangement allows the effects of scoring or wearing to take place on the bearing, which is more easily replaced, rather than on the more expensive shaft. As a general rule, recommended Brinell Hardness* of the journal is at least 100 points harder than the bearing material.

The softer cast bronzes used for bearings are those with high lead content and very little tin. Such bronzes give adequate service in boundary- and mixed-film applications where full advantage is taken of their excellent "bearing" characteristics.

High-tin, low-lead content cast bronzes are the harder bronzes and these have high ultimate load-carrying capacity: higher journal hardnesses are required with these bearing bronzes. Aluminum bronze, for example, requires a journal hardness in the range of 550 to 600 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number).

In general, harder bearing materials require better alignment and more reliable lubrication to minimize local heat generation if and when the journal touches the shaft. Also, abrasives that find their way into the bearing are a problem for the harder bearing materials and greater care should be taken to exclude them.

Surface Finish: Whether bearing operation is complete boundary, mixed film, or fluid film, surface finishes of the journal and bearing must receive careful attention. In applications where operation is hydrodynamic or full-film, peak surface variations should be less than the expected minimum film thickness; otherwise, peaks on the journal surface will contact peaks on the bearing surface, with resulting high friction and temperature rise. Ranges of surface roughness obtained by various finishing methods are: boring, broaching, and reaming, 32 to 64 μin (0.813–1.626 μm), rms; grinding, 16 to 64 μin (0.406–1.626 μm), rms; and fine grinding, 4 to 16 μin (0.102–0.406 μm), rms.

In general, the better surface finishes are required for full-film bearings operating at high eccentricity ratios because full-film lubrication must be maintained with small clearances, and metal-to-metal contact must be avoided. Also, the harder the material, the better the surface finish required. For boundary- and mixed-film applications, surface finish requirements may be somewhat relaxed because bearing wear-in will in time smooth the surfaces.

* Brinell Hardness Number (BHN) also may be identified with the letters HB, HBS for hardness measured with a steel indenter, and HBW for hardness measured with a carbide indenter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fig. 5 is a general guide to the ranges required for bearing and journal surface finishes. Selecting a particular surface finish in each range can be simplified by observing the general rule that smoother finishes are required for the harder materials, for high loads, and for high speeds.

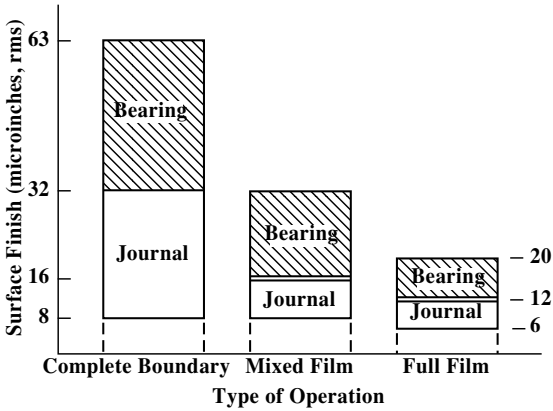


Fig. 5. Recommended Ranges of Surface Finish for the Three Types of Sleeve Bearing Operations.

Machining Bores.—The methods most commonly used in finishing journal bearing bores are boring, broaching, reaming, and burnishing.

Broaching is a rapid finishing method providing good size and alignment control when adequate piloting is possible. Soft babbitt materials are particularly compatible with the broaching method. A third finishing method, reaming, facilitates good size and alignment control when piloting is utilized. Reaming can be accomplished both manually or by machine, the machine method being preferred. Burnishing is a fast sizing operation that gives good alignment control, but does not give as good size control as the cutting methods. It is not recommended for soft materials such as babbitt. Burnishing has an ironing effect that gives added seating of the bushing outside diameter in the housing bore; consequently, it is often used for this purpose, especially on a $^{1}/_{32}$-inch (0.794 mm) wall bushing, even if a further sizing operation is to be used subsequently.

Boring of journal bearings provides the best concentricity, alignment, and size control and is the finishing method of choice when close tolerances and clearances are desirable.

Methods of Lubrication.—There are numerous ways to supply lubricant to bearings. The more common of these are described in the following.

Pressure lubrication, in which an abundance of oil is fed to the bearing from a central groove, single or multiple holes, or axial grooves, is effective and efficient. The moving oil assists in flushing dirt from the bearing and helps keep the bearing cool. In fact, it removes heat faster than other lubricating methods and, therefore, permits thinner oil films and unimpaired load capacities. The oil-supply pressure needed for bushings carrying the basic load is directly proportional to the shaft speed, but for most installations, 50 psi (345 kPa) will be adequate.

Splash fed applies to a variety of intermittently lubricated bushings. It includes everything from bearings spattered with oil from the action of other moving parts to bearings regularly dipped in oil. Like oil bath lubrication, splash feeding is practical when the housing can be made oiltight and when the moving parts do not churn the oil. The fluctuating

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

nature of the load and the intermittent oil supply in splash fed applications requires the designer to use experience and judgment when determining the probable load capacity of bearings lubricated in this way.

Oil bath lubrication, in which the bushing is submerged in oil, is the most reliable of all methods except pressure lubrication. It is practical if the housing can be made oil tight, and if the shaft speed is not so great as to cause excessive churning of the oil.

Oil ring lubrication, in which oil is supplied to the bearing by a ring in contact with the shaft, will, within reasonable limits, bring enough oil to the bearing to maintain hydrodynamic lubrication. If the shaft speed is too low, little oil will follow the ring to the bearing; and, if the speed is too high, the ring speed will not keep pace with the shaft. Also, a ring revolving at high speed will lose oil by centrifugal force. For best results, the peripheral speed of the shaft should be between 200 and 2000 fpm (61 and 610 m/min). Safe load to achieve hydrodynamic lubrication should be one-half of that for pressure fed bearings. Unless the load is light, hydrodynamic lubrication is doubtful. The safe load, then, to achieve hydrodynamic lubrication, should be one-quarter of that of pressure fed bearings.

Wick or waste pack lubrication delivers oil to a bushing by the capillary action of a wick or waste pack; the amount delivered is proportional to the size of the wick or pack.

Lubricants: The value of an oil as a lubricant depends mainly on its film-forming capacity, that is, its capability to maintain a film of oil between the bearing surfaces. The film-forming capacity depends to a large extent on the viscosity of the oil, but this should not be understood to mean that oil of the highest viscosity is always the most suitable lubricant. For practical reasons, an oil of the lowest viscosity that will retain an unbroken oil film between the bearing surfaces is the most suitable for purposes of lubrication. A higher viscosity than that necessary to maintain the oil film results in a waste of power due to the expenditure of energy necessary to overcome the internal friction of the oil itself.

Fig. 6 provides representative values of viscosity in centipoises for SAE mineral oils. Table 56a on page 2873 is provided as a means of converting viscosities of other units to centipoises.

Grease packed in a cavity surrounding the bushing is less adequate than an oil system, but it has the advantage of being more or less permanent. Although hydrodynamic lubrication is possible under certain very favorable circumstances, boundary lubrication is the usual state.

Lubricant Selection.—In selecting lubricants for journal bearing operation, several factors must be considered: 1) type of operation (full, mixed, or boundary film) anticipated; 2) surface speed; 3) and bearing loading.

Fig. 7 combines these factors and facilitates general selection of the proper lubricant viscosity range.

As an example of using these curves, consider a lightly loaded bearing operating at 2000 rpm. At the bottom of the figure, locate 2000 rpm and move vertically to intersect the light-load full-film lubrication curve, which indicates an SAE 5 oil.

As a general rule-of-thumb, heavier oils are recommended for high loads and lighter oils for high speeds.

In addition, other than using conventional lubrication oils, journal bearings may be lubricated with greases or solid lubricants. Some of the reasons for use of these lubricants are to:

1) Lengthen the period between relubrication:
2) Avoid contaminating surrounding equipment or material with “leaking” lubricating oil;
3) Provide effective lubrication under extreme temperature ranges;
4) Provide effective lubrication in the presence of contaminating atmospheres; and
5) Prevent intimate metal-to-metal contact under conditions of high unit pressure which might destroy boundary lubricating films.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

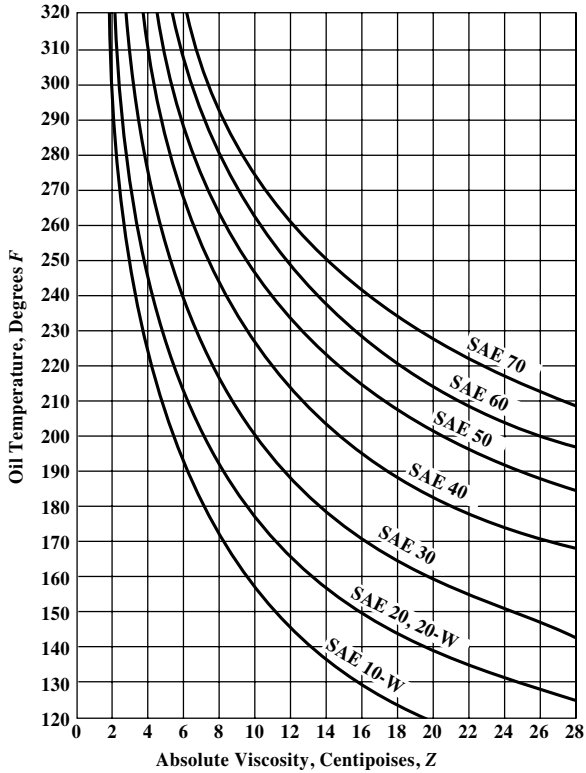


Fig. 6. Viscosity versus Temperature — SAE Oils.

Greases: Where full-film lubrication is not possible or is impractical for slow-speed fairly high-load applications, greases are widely used as bearing lubricants. Although full-film lubrication with grease is possible, it is not normally considered since an elaborate pumping system is required to continuously supply a prescribed amount of grease to the bearing. Bearings supplied with grease are usually lubricated periodically. Grease lubrication, therefore, implies that the bearing will operate under conditions of complete boundary lubrication and should be designed accordingly.

Lubricating greases are essentially a combination of a mineral lubricating oil and a thickening agent, which is usually a metallic soap. When suitably mixed, they make excellent bearing lubricants. There are many different types of greases which, in general, may be classified according to the soap base used. Information on commonly used greases is shown in Table 1.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

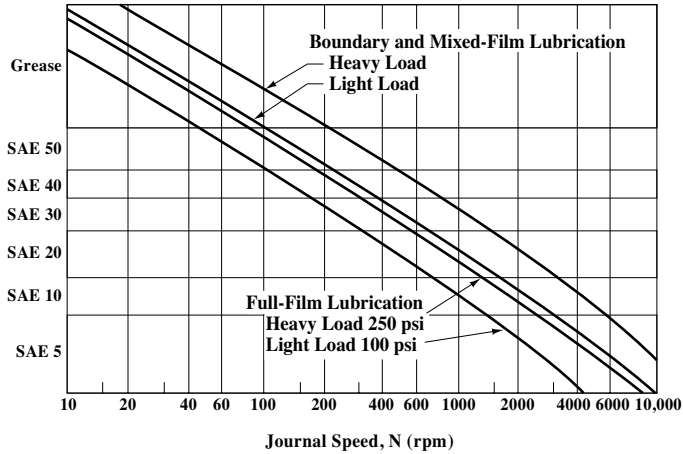


Fig. 7. Lubricant Selection Guide

Table 1. Commonly Used Greases and Solid Lubricants

Type	Operating Temperature		Load	Comments
	°F	°C		
Greases				
Calcium or lime soap	160	71	Moderate	…
Sodium soap	300	149	Wide	For wide speed range
Aluminum soap	180	82	Moderate	…
Lithium soap	300	149	Moderate	Good low temperature
Barium soap	350	177	Wide	…
Solid Lubricants				
Graphite	1000	538	Wide	…
Molybdenum disulfide	−100 to 750	−73 to 399	Wide	…

Synthetic greases are composed of normal types of soaps but use synthetic hydrocarbons instead of normal mineral oils. They are available in a range of consistencies in both water-soluble and insoluble types. Synthetic greases can accommodate a wide range of variation in operating temperature; however, recommendations on special-purpose greases should be obtained from the lubricant manufacturer.

Application of grease is accomplished by one of several techniques depending upon grease consistency. These classifications are shown in Table 2 along with typical methods of application. Grooves for grease are generally greater in width, up to 1.5 times, than for oil.

Coefficients of friction for grease-lubricated bearings range from 0.08 to 0.16, depending upon consistency of the grease, frequency of lubrication, and type of grease. An average value of 0.12 may be used for design purposes.

Solid Lubricants: The need for effective high-temperature lubricants led to the development of several solid lubricants. Essentially, solid lubricants may be described as low-shear-strength solid materials. Their function within a bronze bearing is to act as an intermediary material between sliding surfaces. Since these solids have very low shear

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. NLGI Consistency Numbers

NLGI[a] Consistency No.	Consistency of Grease	Typical Method of Application
0	Semifluid	Brush or gun
1	Very soft	Pin-type cup or gun
2	Soft	Pressure gun or centralized pressure system
3	Light cup grease	Pressure gun or centralized pressure system
4	Medium cup grease	Pressure gun or centralized pressure system
5	Heavy cup grease	Pressure gun or hand
6	Block grease	Hand, cut to fit

[a] NLGI is National Lubricating Grease Institute

strength, they shear more readily than the bearing material and thereby allow relative motion. So long as solid lubricant remains between the moving surfaces, effective lubrication is provided and friction and wear are reduced to acceptable levels.

Solid lubricants provide the most effective boundary films in terms of reduced friction, wear, and transfer of metal from one sliding component to the other. However, there is a significant deterioration in these desirable properties as the operating temperature of the boundary film approaches the melting point of the solid film. At this temperature the friction may increase by a factor of 5 to 10 and the rate of metal transfer may increase by as much as 1000. What occurs is that the molecules of the lubricant lose their orientation to the surface that exists when the lubricant is solid. As the temperature further increases, additional deterioration sets in with the friction increasing by some additional small amount but the transfer of metal accelerates by an additional factor of 20 or more. The final effect of too high temperature is the same as metal-to-metal contact without benefit of lubricant. These changes, which are due to the physical state of the lubricant, are reversed when cooling takes place.

The effects just described also partially explain why fatty acid lubricants are superior to paraffin base lubricants. The fatty acid lubricants react chemically with the metallic surfaces to form a metallic soap that has a higher melting point than the lubricant itself, the result being that the breakdown temperature of the film, now in the form of a metallic soap is raised so that it acts more like a solid film lubricant than a fluid film lubricant.

Journal or Sleeve Bearings

Although this type of bearing may take many shapes and forms, there are always three basic components: journal or shaft, bushing or bearing, and lubricant. Fig. 1 shows these components with the nomenclature generally used to describe a journal bearing: W = applied load, N = revolution, e = eccentricity of journal center to bearing center, θ = attitude angle, which is the angle between the applied load and the point of minimum film thickness, d = diameter of the shaft, c_d = bearing clearance, $d + c_d$ = diameter of the bearing and h_o = minimum film thickness.

Grooving and Oil Feeding.—Grooving in a journal bearing has two purposes:

1) to establish and maintain an efficient film of lubricant between the bearing moving surfaces and

2) to provide adequate bearing cooling

The obvious and only practical location for introducing lubricant to the bearing is in a region of low pressure. A typical pressure profile of a bearing is shown by Fig. 2. The arrow W shows the applied load. Typical grooving configurations used for journal bearings are shown in Fig. 3a through Fig. 3e.

Heat Radiating Capacity.—In a self-contained lubrication system for a journal bearing, the heat generated by bearing friction must be removed to prevent continued temperature

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

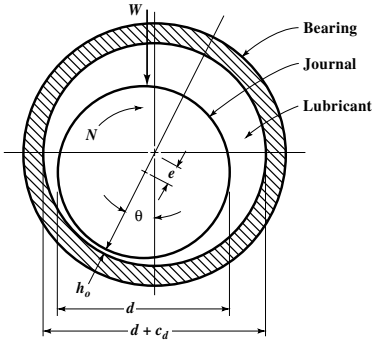


Fig. 1. Basic Components of a Journal Bearing.

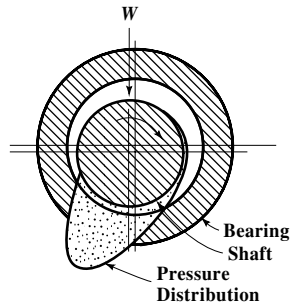


Fig. 2. Typical Pressure Profile of Journal Bearing.

Types of Journal Bearing Oil Grooving

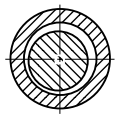


Fig. 3a. Single Inlet Hole

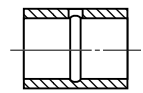


Fig. 3b. Circular Groove

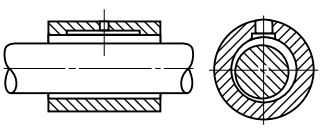


Fig. 3c. Straight Axial Groove

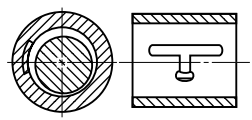


Fig. 3d. Straight Axial Groove with Feeder Groove

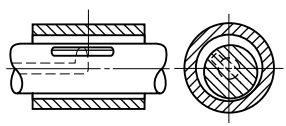


Fig. 3e. Straight Axial Groove in Shaft

rise to an unsatisfactory level. The heat-radiating capacity H_R of the bearing in foot-pounds per minute may be calculated from the formula $H_R = Ld\,Ct_R$ in which C is a constant determined by O. Lasche, and t_R is temperature rise in degrees Fahrenheit.

Values for the product Ct_R may be found from the curves in Fig. 4 for various values of bearing temperature rise t_R and for three operating conditions. In this equation, L = total length of the bearing in inches and d = bearing diameter in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

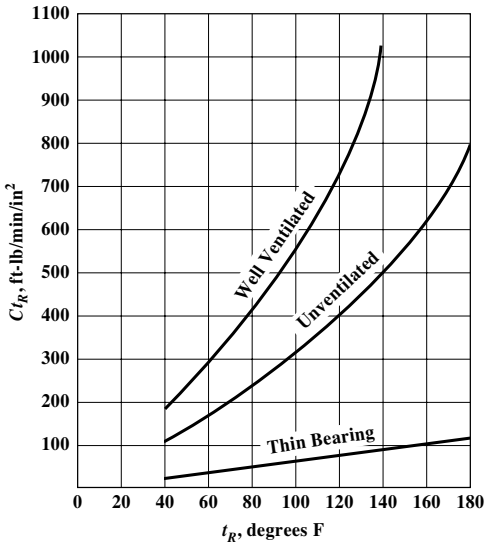


Fig. 4. Heat-Radiating Capacity Factor, Ct_R, versus Bearing Temperature Rise, t_R—Journal Bearings.

Journal Bearing Design Notation.—The symbols used in the following step-by-step procedure for lubrication analysis and design of a plain sleeve or journal bearing are as follows:

c = specific heat of lubricant, Btu/lb/degree F
c_d = diametral clearance, inches
C_n = capacity number bearing
d = journal diameter, inches
e = eccentricity, inches
h_o = minimum film thickness, inch
K = constants
l = bearing length as defined in Fig. 5, inches
L = actual length of bearing, inches
m = clearance modulus
N = rpm
p_b = unit load, psi
p_s = oil supply pressure, psi
P_f = friction horsepower
P' = bearing pressure parameter
q = flow factor
Q_1 = hydrodynamic flow, gpm
Q_2 = pressure flow, gpm
Q = total flow, gpm
Q_{new} = new total flow, gpm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Q_R = total flow required, gpm
r = journal radius, inches
Δt = actual temperature rise of oil in bearing, °F
Δt_a = assumed temperature rise of oil in bearing, °F
Δt_{new} = new assumed temperature rise of oil in bearing, °F
t_b = bearing operating temperature, °F
t_{in} = oil inlet temperature, °F
T_f = friction torque, inch-pounds/inch
T' = torque parameter
W = load, pounds
X = factor
Z = viscosity, centipoises
ϵ = eccentricity ratio — ratio of eccentricity to radial clearance
α = oil density, lbs/inch^3

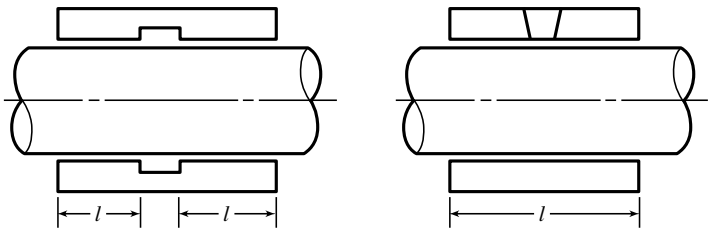


Fig. 5. Length, *l*, of Bearing for Circular Groove Type (left) and Single Inlet Hole Type (right).

Journal Bearing Lubrication Analysis.—The following procedure leads to a complete lubrication analysis which forms the basis for the bearing design.

1) *Diameter of bearing d:* This is usually determined by considering strength and/or deflection requirements for the shaft using principles of strength of materials.

2) *Length of bearing L:* This is determined by an assumed *l*/*d* ratio in which *l* may or may not be equal to the overall length, *L* (see Step 6). Bearing pressure and the possibility of edge loading due to shaft deflection and misalignment are factors to be considered. In general, shaft misalignment resulting from location tolerances and/or shaft deflections should be maintained below 0.0003 inch per inch of length.

3) *Bearing pressure p_b:* The unit load in pound per square inch is calculated from the formula:

$$p_b = \frac{W}{Kld}$$

where K = 1 for single oil hole
K = 2 for central groove
W = load, pounds
l = bearing length as defined in Fig. 5, inches
d = journal diameter, inches

Typical unit loads in service are shown in Table 3. These pressures can be used as a safe guide in selection. However, if space limitations impose a higher limit of loading, the complete lubrication analysis and evaluation of material properties will determine acceptability.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Allowable Sleeve Bearing Pressures for Various Classes of Bearings

Types of Bearing or Kind of Service	Pressure [a] psi (MPa)	Types of Bearing or Kind of Service	Pressure [a] psi (MPa)
Electric Motor & Generator Bearings (General)	100–200 (0.69–1.38)	Diesel Engine Rod	1000–2000 (6.89–13.79)
Turbine & Reduction Gears	100–250 (0.69–1.72)	Wrist Pins	1800–2000 (12.41–13.79)
Heavy Line Shafting	100–150 (0.69–1.03)	Automotive, Main Bearings	500–700 (3.45–4.83)
Locomotive Axles	300–350 (2.07–2.41)	Automotive, Rod Bearings	1500–2500 (10.34–17.24)
Light Line Shafting	15–35 (0.103–0.241)	Centrifugal Pumps	80–100 (0.55–0.689)
Diesel Engine, Main	800–1500 (5.52–10.34)	Aircraft Rod Bearings	700–3000 (4.83–20.68)

[a] These pressures in psi (MPa) of area equal to length times diameter are intended as a general guide only. The allowable unit pressure depends upon operating conditions, especially in regard to lubrication, design of bearings, workmanship, velocity, and nature of load.

4) *Diametral clearance c_d:* This is selected on a trial basis from Fig. 6 which shows suggested diametral clearance ranges for various shaft sizes and for two speed ranges. These are *hot* or *operating* clearances so that thermal expansion of journal and bearing to these temperatures must be taken into consideration in establishing machining dimensions. The optimum operating clearance should be determined on the basis of a complete lubrication analysis (see paragraph following Step 23).

5) *Clearance modulus m:* This is calculated from the formula: $m = \frac{c_d}{d}$

6) *Length to diameter ratio l/d:* This is usually between 1 and 2; however, with the modern trend toward higher speeds and more compact units, lower ratios down to 0.3 are used. In shorter bearings there is a consequent reduction in load carrying capacity due to excessive end or side leakage of lubricant. In longer bearings there may be a tendency towards edge loading. Length l for a single oil feed hole is taken as the total length of the bearing as shown in Fig. 5. For a central oil groove length, l is taken as one-half the total length.

Typical l/d ratio's use for various types of applications are given in Table 4.

7) *Assumed operating temperature t_b:* A temperature rise of the lubricant as it passes through the bearing is assumed and the consequent operating temperature in degrees F is calculated from the formula:

$$t_b = t_{in} + \Delta t_a$$

where t_{in} = inlet temperature of oil in °F

Δt_a = assumed temperature rise of oil in bearing in °F. An initial assumption of 20°F is usually made.

8) *Viscosity of lubricant Z:* The viscosity in centipoises at the assumed bearing operating temperature is found from the curve in Fig. 6 which shows the viscosity of SAE grade oils versus temperature.

9) *Bearing pressure parameter P′:* This value is required to find the eccentricity ratio and is calculated from the formula:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

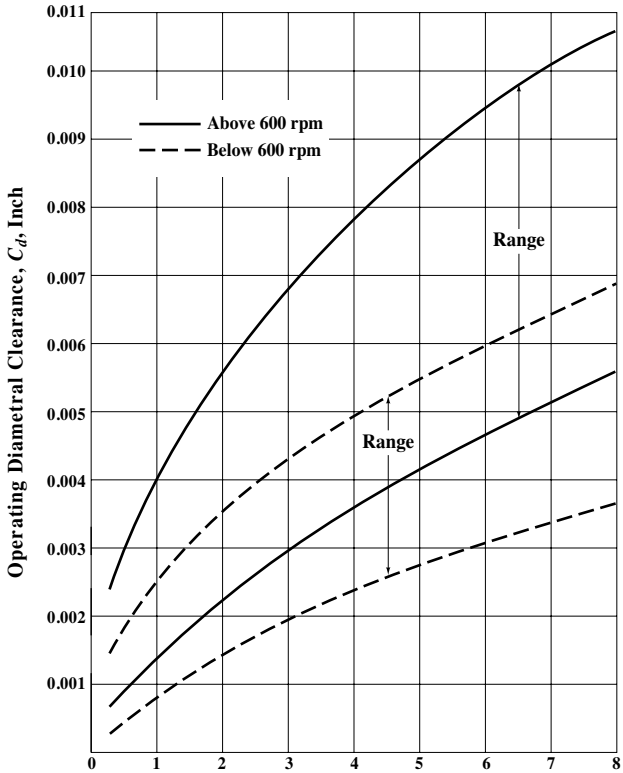


Fig. 6. Operating Diametral Clearance C_d versus Journal Diameter d.

Table 4. Representative *l*/*d* Ratios

Type of Service	*l*/*d*	Type of Service	*l*/*d*
Gasoline and diesel engine		Light shafting	2.5 to 3.5
main bearings and crankpins	0.3 to 1.0	Heavy shafting	2.0 to 3.0
Generators and motors	1.2 to 2.5	Steam engine	
Turbogenerators	0.8 to 1.5	Main bearings	1.5 to 2.5
Machine tools	2.0 to 3.0	Crank and wrist pins	1.0 to 1.3

$$P' = \frac{6.9(1000m)^2 p_b}{ZN}$$

where N = rpm

10) *Eccentricity ratio* ε*:* Using P' and l/d, the value of $1/(1-\varepsilon)$ is determined from Fig. 7 and from this, ε can be determined.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

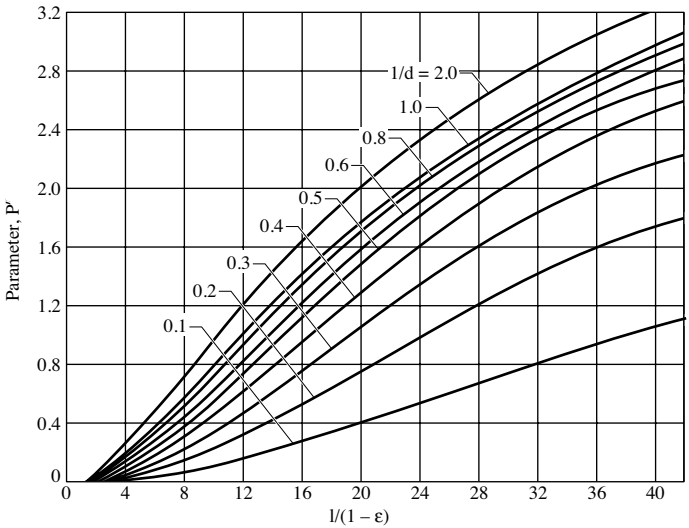


Fig. 7. Bearing Parameter P', versus Eccentricity Ratio $1/(1-\varepsilon)$ — Journal Bearings.

11) *Torque parameter T′:* This value is obtained from Fig. 8 or Fig. 9 using $1/(1-\varepsilon)$ and l/d.

12) *Friction torque T:* This value is calculated from the formula:

$$T = \frac{T'r^2ZN}{6900(1000m)}$$

where $r =$ journal radius, inches

13) *Friction horsepower P_f:* This value is calculated from the formula:

$$P_f = \frac{KTNl}{63{,}000}$$

where $K =$ 1 for single oil hole, 2 for central groove.

14) *Factor X:* This factor is used in the calculation of the lubricant flow and can either be obtained from Table 5 or calculated from the formula:

$$X = \frac{0.1837}{\alpha c}$$

where $\alpha =$ oil density in pounds per cubic inch

$c =$ specific heat of lubricant in Btu/lb/°F

15) *Total flow of lubricant required Q_R:* This is calculated from the formula:

$$Q_R = \frac{X(P_f)}{\Delta t_a}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

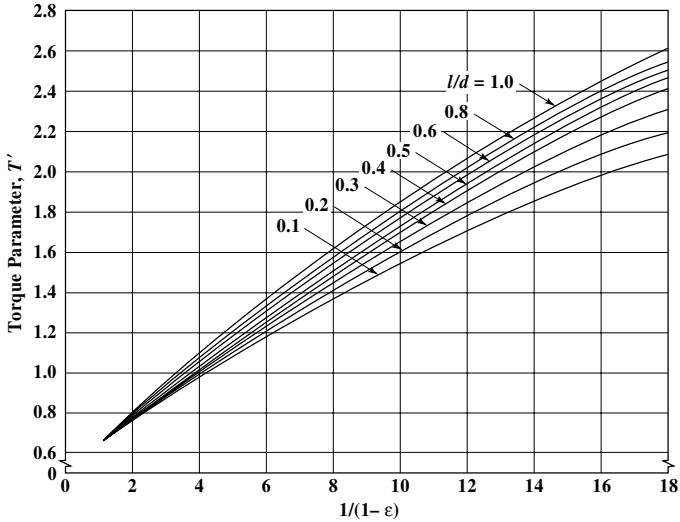


Fig. 8. Torque Parameter, T', versus Eccentricity Ratio, $1/(1-\varepsilon)$ — Journal Bearings.

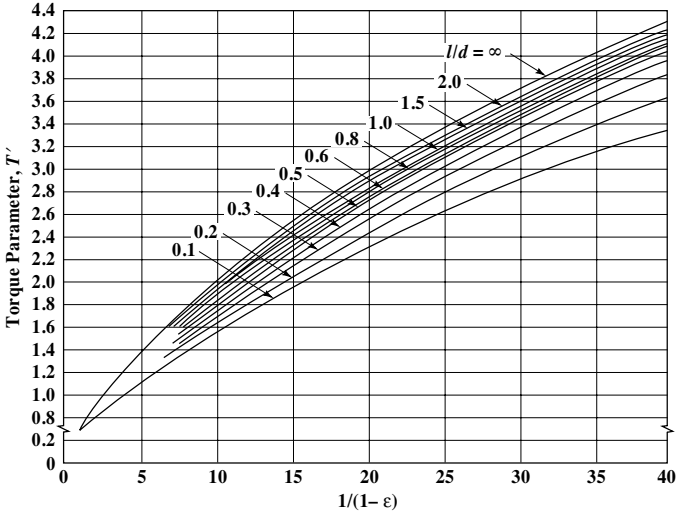


Fig. 9. Torque Parameter, T', versus Eccentricity Ratio, $1/(1-\varepsilon)$ — Journal Bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *X* Factor versus Temperature of Mineral Oils

Temperature	*X* Factor
100	12.9
150	12.4
200	12.1
250	11.8
300	11.5

16) *Bearing capacity number C_n:* This value is needed to obtain the flow factor and is calculated from the formula:

$$C_n = \left(\frac{l}{d}\right)^2 / 60P'$$

17) *Flow factor q:* This value is obtained from the curve in Fig. 10.

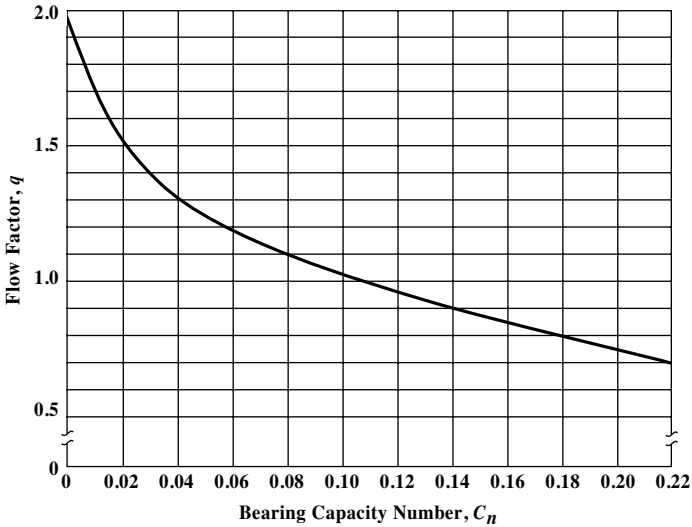


Fig. 10. Flow Factor, q, versus Bearing Capacity Number, C_n—Journal Bearings.

18) *Hydrodynamic flow of lubricant Q_1:* This flow in gallons per minute is calculated from the formula:

$$Q_1 = \frac{Nlc_d qd}{294}$$

19) *Pressure flow of lubricant Q_2:* This flow in gallons per minute is calculated from the formula:

$$Q_2 = \frac{Kp_s c_d^3 d(1 + 1.5\varepsilon^2)}{Zl}$$

where $K = 1.64 \times 10^5$ for single oil hole
$K = 2.35 \times 10^5$ for central groove
$p_s =$ oil supply pressure

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

20) *Total flow of lubricant Q:* This value is obtained by adding the hydrodynamic flow and the pressure flow.

$$Q = Q_1 + Q_2$$

21) *Bearing temperature rise Δt:* This temperature rise in degrees F is obtained from the formula:

$$\Delta t = \frac{X(P_f)}{Q}$$

22) *Comparison of actual and assumed temperature rises:* At this point if Δt_a and Δt differ by more than 5°F, Steps 7 through 22 are repeated using a Δt_{new} halfway between the former Δt_a and Δt.

23) *Minimum film thickness h_o:* When Step 22 has been satisfied, the minimum film thickness in inches is calculated from the formula: $h_o = \frac{1}{2}C_d(1-\varepsilon)$.

A new diametral clearance c_d is now assumed and Steps 5 through 23 are repeated. When this repetition has been done for a sufficient number of values for c_d, the full lubrication study is plotted as shown in Fig. 11. From this chart a working range of diametral clearance can be determined that optimizes film thickness, differential temperature, friction horsepower and oil flow.

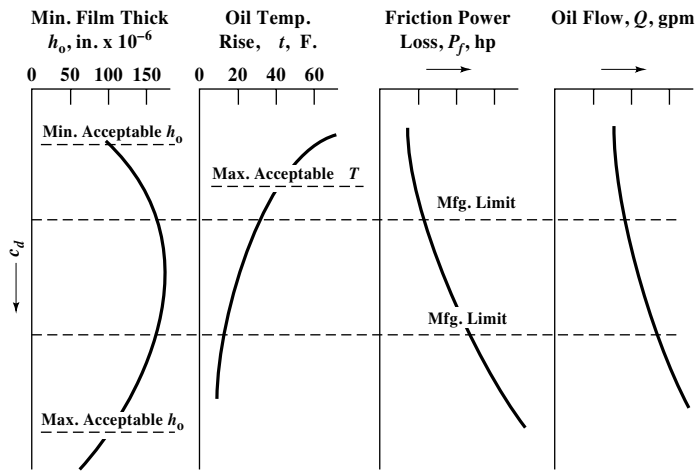


Fig. 11. Example of Lubrication Analysis Curves for Journal Bearing.

Use of Lubrication Analysis.—Once the lubrication analysis has been completed and plotted as shown in Fig. 11, the following steps lead to the optimum bearing design, taking into consideration both basic operating requirements and requirements peculiar to the application.

1) Examine the curve (Fig. 11) for minimum film thickness and determine the acceptable range of diametral clearance, c_d, based on

a) a minimum of 200×10^{-6} inches for small bearings under 1 inch diameter

b) a minimum of 500×10^{-6} inches for bearings from 1 to 4 inches diameter

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

c) a minimum of 750×10^{-6} inches for larger bearings.

More conservative designs would increase these requirements

2) Determine the minimum acceptable c_d based on a maximum Δt of 40°F from the oil temperature rise curve (Fig. 11).

3) If there are no requirements for maintaining low friction horsepower and oil flow, the possible limits of diametral clearance are now defined.

4) The required manufacturing tolerances can now be placed within this band to optimize h_o as shown by Fig. 11.

5) If oil flow and power loss are a consideration, the manufacturing tolerances may then be shifted within the range permitted by the requirements for h_o and Δt.

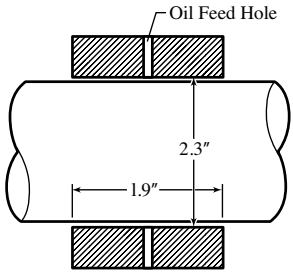


Fig. 12. Full Journal Bearing Example Design.

Example: A full journal bearing, Fig. 12, 2.3 inches in diameter and 1.9 inches long, is to carry a load of 6000 pounds at 4800 rpm, using SAE 30 oil supplied at 200°F through a single oil hole at 30 psi. Determine the operating characteristics of this bearing as a function of diametral clearance.

1) *Diameter of bearing*, given as 2.3 inches.

2) *Length of bearing*, given as 1.9 inches.

3) *Bearing pressure:*

$$p_b = \frac{6000}{1 \times 1.9 \times 2.3} = 1372 \text{ lbs. per sq. in.}$$

4) *Diametral clearance:* Assume c_d is equal to 0.003 inch from Fig. 6 on page 2410 for first calculation.

5) *Clearance modulus:* $m = \dfrac{0.003}{2.3} = 0.0013$ inch

6) *Length-to-diameter ratio:*

$$\frac{l}{d} = \frac{1.9}{2.3} = 0.83$$

7) *Assumed operating temperature:* If the temperature rise Δt_a is assumed to be 20°F,

$$t_b = 200 + 20 = 220°\text{F}$$

8) *Viscosity of lubricant:* From Fig. 6 on page 2403, Z = 7.7 centipoises

9) *Bearing-pressure parameter:*

$$P' = \frac{6.9 \times 1.3^2 \times 1372}{7.7 \times 4800} = 0.43$$

10) *Eccentricity ratio:* From Fig. 7, $\dfrac{1}{1-\varepsilon} = 6.8$ and $\varepsilon = 0.85$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

11) *Torque parameter:* From Fig. 8, $T' = 1.46$

12) *Friction torque:*

$$T_f = \frac{1.46 \times 1.15^2 \times 7.7 \times 4800}{6900 \times 1.3} = 7.96 \text{ inch-pounds per inch}$$

13) *Friction horsepower:*

$$P_f = \frac{1 \times 7.96 \times 4800 \times 1.9}{63{,}000} = 1.15 \text{ horsepower}$$

14) *Factor X:* From Table 5, $X = 12$, approximately

15) *Total flow of lubricant required:*

$$Q_R = \frac{12 \times 1.15}{20} = 0.69 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

16) *Bearing-capacity number:*

$$C_n = \frac{0.83^2}{60 \times 0.43} = 0.027$$

17) *Flow factor:* From Fig. 10, $q = 1.43$

18) *Actual hydrodynamic flow of lubricant:*

$$Q_1 = \frac{4800 \times 1.9 \times 0.003 \times 1.43 \times 2.3}{294} = 0.306 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

19) *Actual pressure flow of lubricant:*

$$Q_2 = \frac{1.64 \times 10^5 \times 30 \times 0.003^3 \times 2.3 \times (1 + 1.5 \times 0.85^2)}{7.7 \times 1.9} = 0.044 \text{ gallon per min}$$

20) *Actual total flow of lubricant:*

$$Q = 0.306 + 0.044 = 0.350 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

21) *Actual bearing-temperature rise:*

$$\Delta t = \frac{12 \times 1.15}{0.350} = 39.4°\text{F}$$

22) *Comparison of actual and assumed temperature rises:* Because Δt_a and Δt differ by more than 5°F, a new Δt_a, midway between these two, of 30°F is assumed and Steps 7 through 22 are repeated.

7a) *Assumed operating temperature:*

$$t_b = 200 + 30 = 230°\text{F}$$

8a) *Viscosity of lubricant:* From Fig. 6, $Z = 6.8$ centipoises

9a) *Bearing-pressure parameter:*

$$P' = \frac{6.9 \times 1.3^2 \times 1372}{6.8 \times 4800} = 0.49$$

10a) *Eccentricity ratio:* From Fig. 7,

$$\frac{1}{1 - \varepsilon} = 7.4$$

and $\varepsilon = 0.86$

11a) *Torque parameter:* From Fig. 8, $T' = 1.53$

12a) *Friction torque:*

$$T_f = \frac{1.53 \times 1.15^2 \times 6.8 \times 4800}{6900 \times 1.3} = 7.36 \text{ inch-pounds per inch}$$

13a) *Friction horsepower:*

$$P_f = \frac{1 \times 7.36 \times 4800 \times 1.9}{63{,}000} = 1.07 \text{ horsepower}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

14a) *Factor X*: From Table 5, $X = 11.9$ approximately
15a) *Total flow of lubricant required:*

$$Q_R = \frac{11.9 \times 1.07}{30} = 0.42 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

16a) *Bearing-capacity number:*

$$C_n = \frac{0.83^2}{60 \times 0.49} = 0.023$$

17a) *Flow factor:* From Fig. 10, $q = 1.48$
18a) *Actual hydrodynamic flow of lubricant:*

$$Q_1 = \frac{4800 \times 1.9 \times 0.003 \times 1.48 \times 2.3}{294} = 0.317 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

19a) *Pressure flow:*

$$Q_2 = \frac{1.64 \times 10^5 \times 30 \times 0.003^3 \times 2.3 \times (1 + 1.5 \times 0.86^2)}{6.8 \times 1.9} = 0.050 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

20a) *Actual flow of lubricant:*

$$Q_{\text{new}} = 0.317 + 0.050 = 0.367 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

21a) *Actual bearing-temperature rise:*

$$\Delta t = \frac{11.9 \times 1.06}{0.367} = 34.4°\text{F}$$

22a) *Comparison of actual and assumed temperature rises:* Now Δt and Δt_a are within 5°F.
23) *Minimum film thickness:*

$$h_o = \frac{0.003}{2}(1 - 0.86) = 0.00021 \text{ inch}$$

This analysis may now be repeated for other values of c_d determined from Fig. 6 and a complete lubrication analysis performed and plotted as shown in Fig. 11. An operating range for c_d can then be determined to optimize minimum clearance, friction horsepower loss, lubricant flow, and temperature rise.

Thrust Bearings

As the name implies, thrust bearings are used either to absorb axial shaft loads or to position shafts axially. Brief descriptions of the normal designs for these bearings follow with approximate design methods for each. The generally accepted load ranges for these types of bearings are given in Table 1 and the schematic configurations are shown in Fig. 1.

The parallel or flat plate thrust bearing is probably the most frequently used type. It is the simplest and lowest in cost of those considered; however, it is also the least capable of absorbing load, as can be seen from Table 1. It is most generally used as a positioning device where loads are either light or occasional.

The step bearing, like the parallel plate, is also a relatively simple design. This type of bearing will accept the normal range of thrust loads and lends itself to low-cost, high-volume production. However, this type of bearing becomes sensitive to alignment as its size increases.

The tapered land thrust bearing, as shown in Table 1, is capable of high load capacity. Where the step bearing is generally used for small sizes, the tapered land type can be used in larger sizes. However, it is more costly to manufacture and does require good alignment as size is increased.

The tilting pad or Kingsbury thrust bearing (as it is commonly referred to) is also capable of high thrust capacity. Because of its construction it is more costly, but it has the inherent advantage of being able to absorb significant amounts of misalignment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

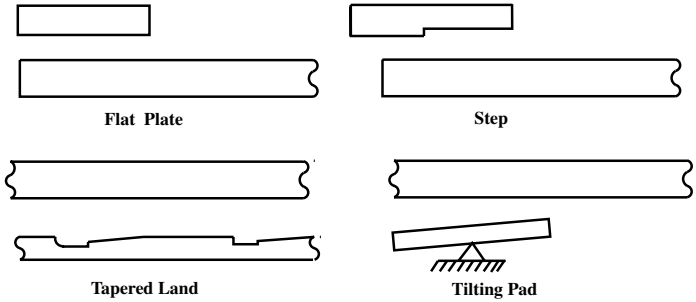


Fig. 1. Types of Thrust Bearings.

Table 1. Thrust Bearing Loads*

Type	Normal Unit Loads, lb/in^2	Maximum Unit Loads, lb/in^2
Parallel surface	<75	<150
Step	200	500
Tapered land	200	500
Tilting pad	200	500

Thrust Bearing Design Notation.—The symbols used in the design procedures that follow for flat plate, step, tapered land, and tilting pad thrust bearings are as follows:

a = radial width of pad, inches
b = circumferential length of pad at pitch line, inches
b_2 = pad step length
B = circumference of pitch circle, inches
c = specific heat of oil, Btu/gal/°F
D = diameter, inches
e = depth of step, inch
f = coefficient of friction
g = depth of 45° chamfer, inches
h = film thickness, inch
i = number of pads
J = power loss coefficient
K = film thickness factor
K_g = fraction of circumference occupied by the pads; usually 0.8
l = length of chamfer, inches
M = horsepower per square inch
N = revolutions per minute
O = operating number
p = bearing unit load, psi
p_s = oil-supply pressure, psi
P_f = friction horsepower
Q = total flow, gpm

* Reproduced with permission from Wilcock and Booser, *Bearing Design and Applications*, McGraw-Hill Book Co., Copyright © 1957.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Q_c = required flow per chamfer, gpm
$Q^o{}_c$ = uncorrected required flow per chamfer, gpm
Q_F = film flow, gpm
s = oil-groove width
Δt = temperature rise, °F
U = velocity, feet per minute
V = effective width-to-length ratio for one pad
W = applied load, pounds
Y_G = oil-flow factor
Y_L = leakage factor
Y_S = shape factor
Z = viscosity, centipoises
α = dimensionless film-thickness factor
Δ = taper
ξ = kinetic energy correction factor

Note: In the following, subscript 1 denotes inside diameter and subscript 2 denotes outside diameter. Subscript *i* denotes inlet and subscript *o* denotes outlet.

Flat Plate Thrust Bearing Design.—The following steps define the performance of a flat plate thrust bearing, one section of which is shown in Fig. 2. Although each bearing section is wedge shaped, as shown below right, for the purposes of design calculation, it is considered to be a rectangle with a length *b* equal to the circumferential length along the pitch line of the section being considered, and a width *a* equal to the difference in the external and internal radii.

General Parameters: a) From Table 1, the maximum unit load is between 75 and 100 pounds per square inch; and b) the outside diameter is usually between 1.5 and 2.5 times the inside diameter.

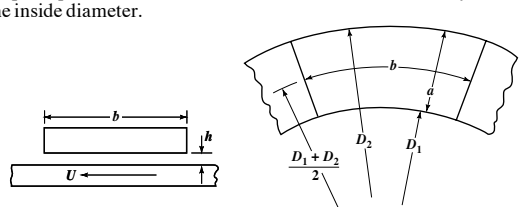


Fig. 2. Basic Elements of Flat Plate Thrust Bearing.*

1) *Inside diameter,* D_1. Determined by shaft size and clearance.

2) *Outside diameter,* D_2. Calculated by the formula

$$D_2 = \left(\frac{4W}{\pi K_g p} + D_1^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

where W = applied load, pounds
K_g = fraction of circumference occupied by pads; usually 0.8
p = bearing unit load, psi

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) *Radial pad width, a*. Equal to one-half the difference between the inside and outside diameters.

$$a = \frac{D_2 - D_1}{2}$$

4) *Pitch line circumference, B*. Found from the pitch diameter.

$$B = \pi(D_2 - a)$$

5) *Number of pads, i*. Assume an oil groove width, *s*. If the length of pad is assumed to be optimum, i.e., equal to its width,

$$i_{app} = \frac{B}{a + s}$$

Take *i* as nearest even number.

6) *Length of pad, b*. If number of pads and oil groove width are known,

$$b = \frac{B - (i \times s)}{i}$$

7) *Actual unit load, p*. Calculated in pounds per square inch based on pad dimensions.

$$p = \frac{W}{iab}$$

8) *Pitch line velocity, U*. Found in feet per minute from

$$U = \frac{BN}{12}$$

where $N =$ rpm

9) *Friction power loss, Pf*. Friction power loss is difficult to calculate for this type of bearing because there is no theoretical method of determining the operating film thickness. However, a good approximation can be made using Fig. 3. From this curve, the value of *M*, horsepower loss per square inch of bearing surface, can be obtained. The total power loss, P_f, is then calculated from

$$P_f = iabM$$

10) *Oil flow required, Q*. May be estimated in gallons per minute for a given temperature rise from

$$Q = \frac{42.4P_f}{c\Delta t}$$

where $c =$ specific heat of oil in Btu/gal/°F

$\Delta t =$ temperature rise of the oil in °F

Note: A Δt of 50°F is an acceptable maximum.

Because there is no theoretical method of predicting the minimum film thickness in this type of bearing, only an approximation, based on experience, of the film flow can be made. For this reason and based on practical experience, it is desirable to have a minimum of one-half of the desired oil flow pass through the chamfer.

11) *Film flow, Q_F*. Calculated in gallons per minute from

$$Q_F = \frac{(1.5)(10^5)iVh^3p_s}{Z_2}$$

where $V =$ effective width-to-length ratio for one pad, *a*/*b*

$Z_2 =$ oil viscosity at outlet temperature

$h =$ film thickness

Note: Because *h* cannot be calculated, use $h = 0.002$ inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

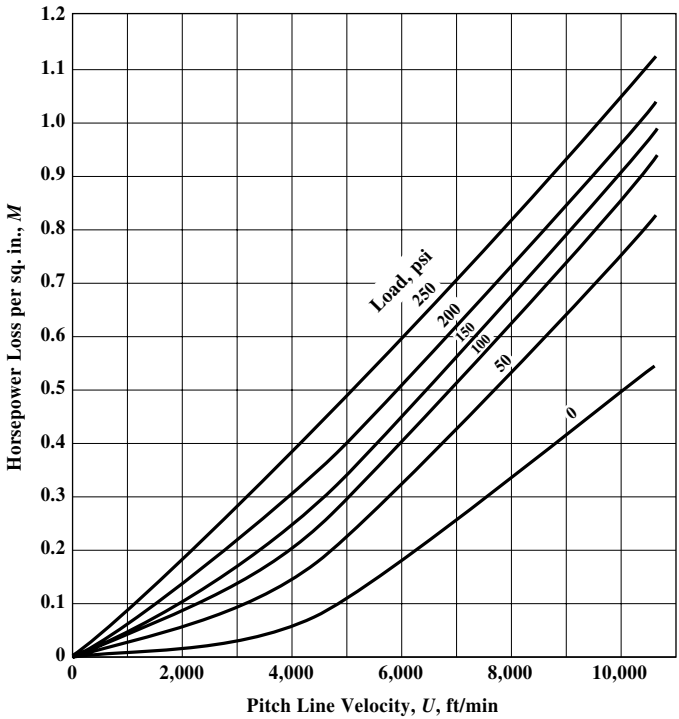


Fig. 3. Friction Power Loss, M, versus Peripheral Speed, U—Thrust Bearings.[a]

[a]See footnote on page 2418

12) *Required flow per chamfer,* Q_c. Readily found from the formula

$$Q_c = \frac{Q}{i}$$

13) *Kinetic energy correction factor,* ξ. Found by assuming a chamfer length l and entering Fig. 4 with a value $Z_2 l$ and Q_c.

14) *Uncorrected required flow per chamfer,* $Q^0{}_c$. Found from the formula

$$Q_c^0 = \frac{Q_c}{\xi}$$

15) *Depth of chamfer,* g. Found from the formula

$$g = \sqrt[4]{\frac{Q_c^0 l Z_2}{4.7410^4 p_s}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

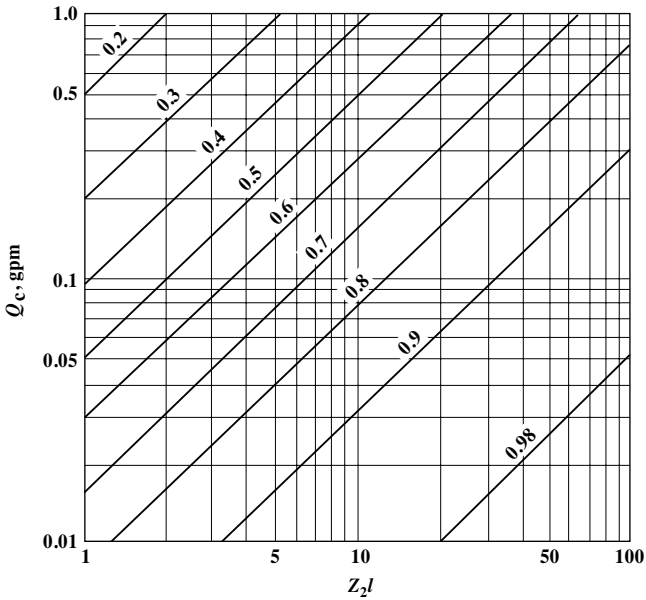


Fig. 4. Kinetic Energy Correction Factor, ξ—Thrust Bearings.[a]

[a]See footnote on page 2418

Example: Design a flat plate thrust bearing to carry 900 pounds load at 4000 rpm using an SAE 10 oil with a specific heat of 3.5 Btu/gal/°F at 120°F and 30-psi inlet conditions. The shaft is $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches in diameter and the temperature rise is not to exceed 40°F. Fig. 5 shows the final design of this bearing.

1) *Inside diameter.* Assumed to be 3 inches to clear shaft.

2) *Outside diameter.* Assuming a unit bearing load of 75 pounds per square inch from Table 1,

$$D_2 = \sqrt{\frac{4 \times 900}{\pi \times 0.8 \times 75} + 3^2} = 5.30 \text{ inches}$$

Use $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

3) *Radial pad width.*

$$a = \frac{5.5 - 3}{2} = 1.25 \text{ inches}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference.*

$$B = \pi \times 4.25 = 13.35 \text{ inches}$$

5) *Number of pads.* Assume an oil groove width of $\frac{3}{16}$ inch. If length of pad is assumed to be equal to width of pad, then

$$i_{app} = \frac{13.3}{1.25 + 0.1875} = 9+$$

If the number of pads, i, is taken as 10, then

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

6) *Length of pad.* $b = \dfrac{13.35 - (10 \times 0.1875)}{10} = 1.14$ inches

7) *Actual unit load.*

$$p = \frac{900}{10 \times 1.25 \times 1.14} = 63 \text{ psi}$$

8) *Pitch-line velocity.*

$$U = \frac{13.35 \times 4000}{12} = 4{,}430 \text{ ft per min.}$$

9) *Friction power loss.* From Fig. 3, $M = 0.19$

$$P_f = 10 \times 1.25 \times 1.14 \times 0.19 = 2.7 \text{ horsepower}$$

10) *Oil flow required.*

$$Q = \frac{42.4 \times 2.7}{3.5 \times 40} = 0.82 \text{ gallon per minute}$$

(Assuming a temperature rise of 40°F—the maximum allowable according to the given condition—then the assumed operating temperature will be 120°F + 40°F = 160°F and the oil viscosity Z_2 is found from Fig. 6 to be 9.6 centipoises.)

11) *Film flow.*

$$Q_F = \frac{1.5 \times 10^5 \times 10 \times 1 \times 0.002^3 \times 30}{9.6} = 0.038 \text{ gpm}$$

Because 0.038 gpm is a very small part of the required flow of 0.82 gpm, the bulk of the flow must be carried through the chamfers.

12) *Required flow per chamfer.* Assume that all the oil flow is to be carried through the chamfers.

$$Q_c = \frac{0.82}{10} = 0.082 \text{ gpm}$$

13) *Kinetic energy correction factor.* If l, the length of chamfer is made $^1/_8$ inch, then $Z_2 l = 9.6 \times {}^1/_8 = 1.2$. Entering Fig. 4 with this value and $Q_c = 0.082$,

$$\xi = 0.44$$

14) *Uncorrected required oil flow per chamfer.*

$$Q_c^0 = \frac{0.082}{0.44} = 0.186 \text{ gpm}$$

15) *Depth of chamfer.*

$$g = \sqrt[4]{\frac{0.186 \times 0.125 \times 9.6}{4.74 \times 10^4 \times 30}}$$

$$g = 0.02 \text{ inch}$$

A schematic drawing of this bearing is shown in Fig. 5.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

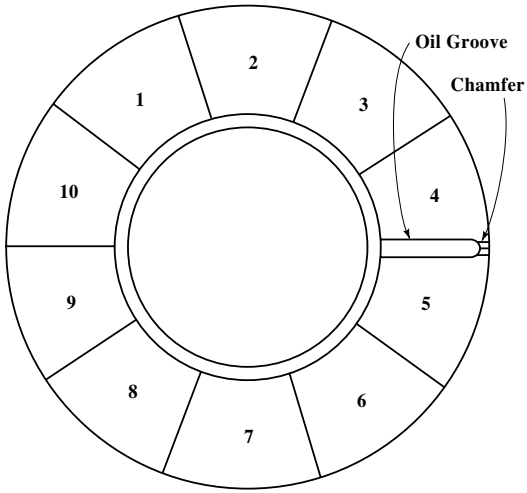


Fig. 5. Flat Plate Thrust Bearing Example Design.*

Step Thrust Bearing Design.—The following steps define the performance of a step thrust bearing, one section of which is shown in Fig. 6.

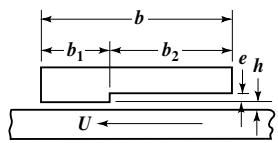


Fig. 6. Basic Elements of Step Thrust Bearing.*

Although each bearing section is wedge shaped, as shown at the right in Fig. 6, for the purposes of design calculation it is considered to be a rectangle with a length b equal to the circumferential length along the pitch line of the section being considered, and a width a equal to the difference in the external and internal radii.

General Parameters: For optimum proportions, $a = b, b_2 = 1.2b_1$, and $e = 0.7h$.

1) *Internal diameter,* D_1. An internal diameter is assumed that is sufficient to clear the shaft.

2) *External diameter,* D_2. A unit bearing pressure is assumed from Table 1 and the external diameter is then found from the formula

$$D_2 = \sqrt{\frac{4W}{\pi K_g p} + D_1^2}$$

3) *Radial pad width,* a. Equal to the difference between the external and internal radii.

$$a = \frac{D_2 - D_1}{2}$$

* See footnote on page 2418

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4) *Pitch-line circumference, B.* Found from the formula

$$B = \frac{\pi(D_1 + D_2)}{2}$$

5) *Number of pads, i.* Assume an oil groove width, s (0.062 inch may be taken as a minimum), and find the approximate number of pads, assuming the pad length is equal to a. Note that if a chamfer is found necessary to increase the oil flow (see Step 13), the oil groove width should be greater than the chamfer width.

$$i_{app} = \frac{B}{a + s}$$

Then i is taken as the nearest even number.

6) *Length of pad, b.* Readily determined from the number of pads and groove width.

$$b = \frac{B}{i} - s$$

7) *Pitch-line velocity, U.* Found in feet per minute from the formula $U = \frac{BN}{12}$

8) *Film thickness, h.* Found in inches from the formula

$$h = \sqrt{\frac{2.0910^{-9} i a^3 UZ}{W}}$$

9) *Depth of step, e.* According to the general parameter

$$e = 0.7h$$

10) *Friction power loss, P_f.* Found from the formula

$$P_f = \frac{7.3510^{-13} i a^2 U^2 Z}{h}$$

11) *Pad step length, b_2.* This distance, on the pitch line, from the leading edge of the pad to the step in inches is determined by the general parameters

$$b_2 = \frac{1.2b}{2.2}$$

12) *Hydrodynamic oil flow, Q.* Found in gallons per minute from the formula

$$Q = 6.6510^{-4} iahU$$

13) *Temperature rise, Δt.* Found in degrees F from the formula

$$\Delta t = \frac{42.4P_f}{cQ}$$

If the flow is insufficient, as indicated by too high a temperature rise, chamfers can be added to provide adequate flow as in Steps 12–15 of the flat plate thrust bearing design.

Example: Design a step thrust bearing for positioning a $^7/_8$-inch diameter shaft operating with a 25-pound thrust load and a speed of 5000 rpm. The lubricating oil has a viscosity of 25 centipoises at the operating temperature of 160°F and has a specific heat of 3.4 Btu per gal per °F.

1) *Internal diameter.* Assumed to be 1 inch to clear the shaft.

2) *External diameter.* Because the example is a positioning bearing with low total load, unit load will be negligible and the external diameter is not established by using the formula given in Step 2 of the procedure, but a convenient size is taken to give the desired overall bearing proportions.

$$D_2 = 3 \text{ inches}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3) *Radial pad width*.

$$a = \frac{3 - 1}{2} = 1 \text{ inch}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference*.

$$B = \frac{\pi(3 + 1)}{2} = 6.28 \text{ inches}$$

5) *Number of pads*. Assuming a minimum groove width of 0.062 inch,

$$i_{app} = \frac{6.28}{1 + 0.062} = 5.9$$

Take $i = 6$.

6) *Length of pad*.

$$b = \frac{6.28}{6} - 0.062 = 0.985$$

7) *Pitch-line velocity*.

$$U = \frac{6.28 \times 5{,}000}{12} = 2{,}620 \text{ fpm}$$

8) *Film thickness*.

$$h = \sqrt{\frac{2.0910^{-9} \times 6 \times 1^3 \times 2{,}620 \times 25}{25}} = 0.0057 \text{ inch}$$

9) *Depth of step*.

$$e = 0.7 \times 0.0057 = 0.004 \text{ inch}$$

10) *Power loss*.

$$P_f = \frac{7.3510^{-13} \times 6 \times 1^2 \times 2{,}620^2 \times 25}{0.0057} = 0.133 \text{ hp}$$

11) *Pad step length*.

$$b_2 = \frac{1.2 \times 0.985}{2.2} = 0.537 \text{ inch}$$

12) *Total hydrodynamic oil flow*.

$$Q = 6.6510^{-4} \times 6 \times 1 \times 0.0057 \times 2{,}620 = 0.060 \text{ gpm}$$

13) *Temperature rise*.

$$\Delta t = \frac{42.4 \times 0.133}{3.4 \times 0.060} = 28°\text{F}$$

Tapered Land Thrust Bearing Design.—The following steps define the performance of a tapered land thrust bearing, one section of which is shown in Fig. 7. Although each bearing section is wedge shaped, as shown in Fig. 7, right, for the purposes of design calculation, it is considered to be a rectangle with a length b equal to the circumferential length along the pitch line of the section being considered and a width a equal to the difference in the external and internal radii.

General Parameters: Usually, the taper extends to only 80 percent of the pad length with the remainder being flat, thus: $b_2 = 0.8b$ and $b_1 = 0.2b$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

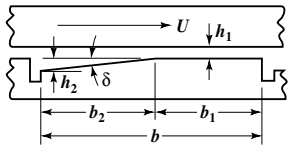


Fig. 7. Basic Elements of Tapered Land Thrust Bearing.*

1) *Inside diameter, D_1.* Determined by shaft size and clearance.
2) *Outside diameter, D_2.* Calculated by the formula

$$D_2 = \left(\frac{4W}{\pi K_g P_a} + D_1^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

where $K_g =$ 0.8 or 0.9 and $W =$ applied load, pounds
$P_a =$ assumed unit load from Table 1, page 2418

3) *Radial pad width, a.* Equal to one-half the difference between the inside and outside diameters.

$$a = \frac{D_2 - D_1}{2}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference, B.* Found from the mean diameter:

$$B = \frac{\pi(D_1 + D_2)}{2}$$

5) *Number of pads, i.* Assume an oil groove width, s, and find the approximate number of pads, assuming the pad length is equal to a.

$$i_{\text{app}} = \frac{B}{a + s}$$

Then i is taken as the nearest even number.
6) *Length of pad, b.* Readily determined because the number of pads and groove width are known.

$$b = \frac{B - is}{i}$$

7) *Taper values, δ_1 and δ_2.* Can be taken from Table 2.
8) *Actual bearing unit load, p.* Calculated in pounds per square inch from the formula

$$p = \frac{W}{iab}$$

9) *Pitch-line velocity, U.* Found in feet per minute at the pitch circle from the formula

$$U = \frac{BN}{12}$$

where $N =$ rpm

10) *Oil leakage factor, Y_L.* Found either from Fig. 8 which shows curves for Y_L as functions of the pad width a and length of land b or from the formula

$$Y_L = \frac{b}{1 + \pi^2 b^2 / 12a^2}$$

11) *Film thickness factor, K.* Calculated using the formula

$$K = \frac{5.75 \times 10^6 p}{UY_L Z}$$

* See footnote on page 2418

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

12) *Minimum film thickness, h*. Using the value of K just determined and the selected taper values δ_1 and δ_2, h is found from Fig. 9. In general, h should be 0.001 inch for small bearings and 0.002 inch for larger and high-speed bearings.

13) *Friction power loss, P_f*. Using the film thickness h, the coefficient J can be obtained from Fig. 10. The friction loss in horsepower is then calculated from the formula

$$P_f = 8.7910^{-13} iabJU^2Z$$

14) *Required oil flow, Q*. May be estimated in gallons per minute for a given temperature rise Δt from the formula

$$Q = \frac{42.4P_f}{c\Delta t}$$

where c = specific heat of the oil in Btu/gal/°F

Note: A Δt of 50°F is an acceptable maximum.

15) *Shape factor, Y_s*. Needed to compute the actual oil flow and calculated from

$$Y_S = \frac{8ab}{D_2^2 - D_1^2}$$

16) *Oil flow factor, Y_G*. Found from Fig. 11 using Y_s and D_1/D_2.

17) *Actual oil film flow, Q_F*. The amount of oil in gallons per minute that the bearing film will pass is calculated from the formula

$$Q_F = \frac{8.910^{-4} i\delta_2 D_2^3 NY_G Y_S^2}{D_2 - D_1}$$

18) If the flow is insufficient, the tapers can be increased or chamfers calculated to provide adequate flow, as in Steps 12–15 of the flat plate thrust bearing design procedure.

Example: Design a tapered land thrust bearing for 70,000 pounds at 3600 rpm. The shaft diameter is 6.5 inches. The oil inlet temperature is 110°F at 20 psi.

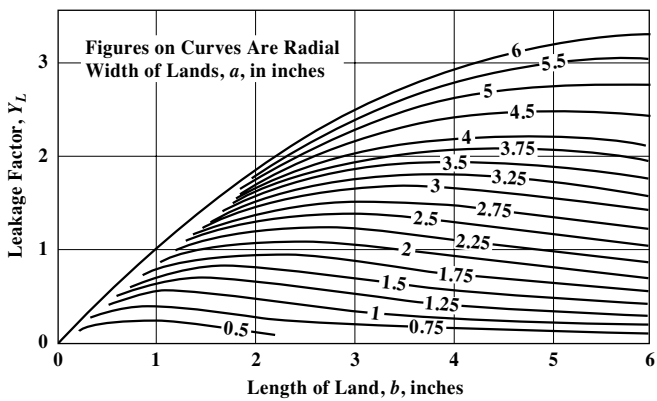


Fig. 8. Leakage Factor, Y_L, versus Pad Dimensions a and b—Tapered Land Thrust Bearings.*

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

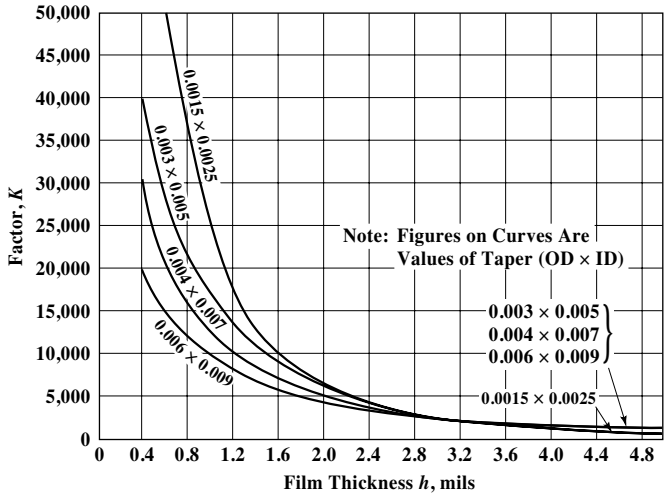


Fig. 9. Thickness, h, versus Factor K—Tapered Land Thrust Bearings.*

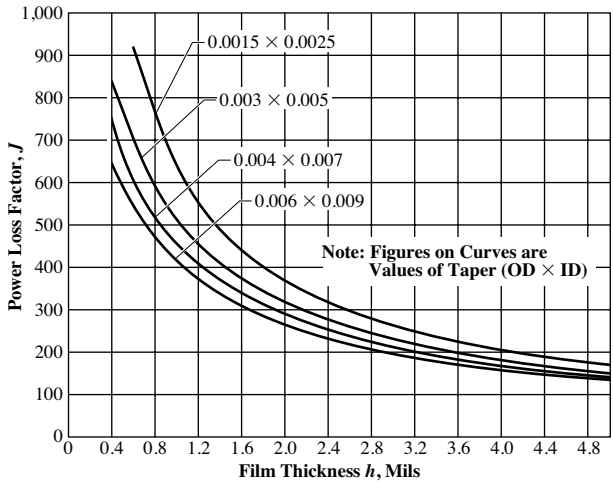


Fig. 10. Power-Loss Coefficient, J, versus Film Thickness, h—Tapered Land Thrust Bearings.*

A maximum temperature rise of 50°F is acceptable and results in a viscosity of 18 centipoises. Use values of $K_g = 0.9$ and $c = 3.5$ Btu/gal/°F.

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

1) *Internal diameter.* Assume $D_1 = 7$ inches to clear shaft.
2) *External diameter.* Assume a unit bearing load p_a of 400 pounds per square inch from Table 1, then

$$D_2 = \sqrt{\frac{4 \times 70{,}000}{3.14 \times 0.9 \times 400} + 7^2} = 17.2 \text{ inches}$$

Round off to 17 inches
3) *Radial pad width.*

$$a = \frac{17 - 7}{2} = 5 \text{ inches}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference.*

$$B = \frac{3.14(17 + 7)}{2} = 37.7 \text{ inches}$$

5) *Number of pads.* Assume groove width of 0.5 inch, then

$$i_{app} = \frac{37.7}{5 + 0.5} = 6.85$$

Take $i = 6$.
6) *Length of pad.*

$$b = \frac{37.7 - 6 \times 0.5}{6} = 5.78 \text{ inches}$$

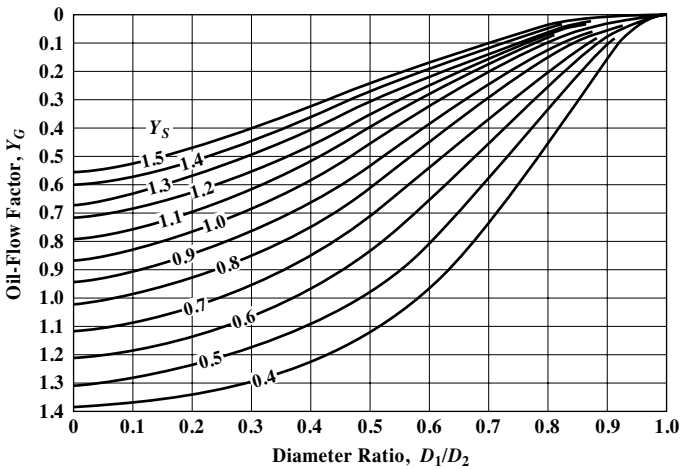


Fig. 11. Oil-Flow Factor, Y_G, versus Diameter Ratio D_1/D_2—Tapered Land Bearings.*

7) *Taper values.* Interpolate in Table 2 to obtain

$$\delta_1 = 0.008 \text{ inch} \quad \text{and} \quad \delta_2 = 0.005 \text{ inch}$$

8) *Actual bearing unit load.*

$$p = \frac{70{,}000}{6 \times 5 \times 5.78} = 404 \text{ psi}$$

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9) *Pitch-line velocity.*

$$U = \frac{37.7 \times 3600}{12} = 11{,}300 \text{ ft per min}$$

10) *Oil leakage factor.*

From Fig. 8, $Y_L = 2.75$

11) *Film-thickness factor.*

$$K = \frac{5.75 \times 10^6 \times 404}{11{,}300 \times 2.75 \times 18} = 4150$$

12) *Minimum film thickness.*

From Fig. 9, $h = 2.2$ mils

13) *Friction power loss.* From Fig. 10, $J = 260$, then

$$P_f = 8.79 \times 10^{-13} \times 6 \times 5 \times 5.78 \times 260 \times 11{,}300^2 \times 18 = 91 \text{ hp}$$

14) *Required oil flow.*

$$Q = \frac{42.4 \times 91}{3.5 \times 50} = 22.0 \text{ gpm}$$

See footnote on page 2418.

15) *Shape factor.*

$$Y_S = \frac{8 \times 5 \times 5.78}{17^2 - 7^2} = 0.963$$

16) *Oil-flow factor.*

From Fig. 11, $Y_G = 0.61$

where $D_1/D_2 = 0.41$

17) *Actual oil film flow.*

$$Q_F = \frac{8.9 \times 10^{-4} \times 6 \times 0.005 \times 17^3 \times 3600 \times 0.61 \times 0.963^2}{17 - 7} = 26.7 \text{ gpm}$$

Because calculated film flow exceeds required oil flow, chamfers are not necessary. However, if film flow were less than required, suitable chamfers would be needed.

Table 2. Taper Values for Tapered Land Thrust Bearings

Pad Dimensions, Inches	Taper, Inch	
$a \times b$	$\delta_1 = h_2 - h_1$ (at ID)	$\delta_2 = h_2 - h_1$ (at OD)
$\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}$	0.0025	0.0015
1×1	0.005	0.003
3×3	0.007	0.004
7×7	0.009	0.006

Tilting Pad Thrust Bearing Design.—The following steps define the performance of a tilting pad thrust bearing, one section of which is shown in Fig. 12. Although each bearing section is wedge shaped, as shown at the right below, for the purposes of design calculation, it is considered to be a rectangle with a length b equal to the circumferential length along the pitch line of the section being considered and a width a equal to the difference in the external and internal radii, as shown at left in Fig. 12. The location of the pivot shown in Fig. 12 is optimum. If shaft rotation in both directions is required, however, the pivot must be at the midpoint, which results in little or no detrimental effect on the performance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

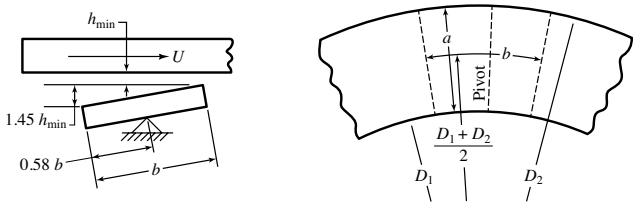


Fig. 12. Basic Elements of Tilting Pad Thrust Bearing.*

1) *Inside diameter, D_1.* Determined by shaft size and clearance.

2) *Outside diameter, D_2.* Calculated from the formula

$$D_2 = \left(\frac{4W}{\pi K_g p} + D_1^2\right)^{1/2}$$

where W = applied load, pounds
K_g = 0.8
p = unit load from Table 1

3) *Radial pad width, a.* Equal to one-half the difference between the inside and outside diameters:

$$a = \frac{D_2 - D_1}{2}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference, B.* Found from the mean diameter:

$$B = \pi\left(\frac{D_1 + D_2}{2}\right)$$

5) *Number of pads, i.* The number of pads may be estimated from the formula

$$i = \frac{BK_g}{a}$$

Select the nearest even number.

6) *Length of pad, b.* Found from the formula

$$b \cong \frac{BK_g}{i}$$

7) *Pitch-line velocity, U.* Calculated in feet per minute from the formula

$$U = \frac{BN}{12}$$

8) *Bearing unit load, p.* Calculated from the formula

$$p = \frac{W}{iab}$$

9) *Operating number, O.* Calculated from the formula

$$O = \frac{1.4510^{-7} Z_2 U}{5pb}$$

where Z_2 = viscosity of oil at outlet temperature (inlet temperature plus assumed temperature rise through the bearing).

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

10) *Minimum film thickness, h_{min}.* By using the operating number, the value of α = dimensionless film thickness is found from Fig. 13. Then the actual minimum film thickness is calculated from the formula:

$$h_{min} = \alpha b$$

In general, this value should be 0.001 inch for small bearings and 0.002 inch for larger and high-speed bearings.

11) *Coefficient of friction, f.* Found from Fig. 14.

12) *Friction power loss, P_f.* This horsepower loss now is calculated by the formula

$$P_f = \frac{fWU}{33{,}000}$$

13) *Actual oil flow, Q.* This flow over the pad in gallons per minute is calculated from the formula

$$Q = 0.0591\alpha iabU$$

14) *Temperature rise, Δt.* Found from the formula

$$\Delta t = 0.0217\frac{fp}{\alpha c}$$

where c = specific heat of oil in Btu/gal/°F

If the flow is insufficient, as indicated by too high a temperature rise, chamfers can be added to provide adequate flow, as in Steps 12–15 of the flat plate thrust bearing design.

Example: Design a tilting pad thrust bearing for 70,000 pounds thrust at 3600 rpm. The shaft diameter is 6.5 inches and a maximum OD of 15 inches is available. The oil inlet temperature is 110°F and the supply pressure is 20 pounds per square inch. A maximum temperature rise of 50°F is acceptable and results in a viscosity of 18 centipoises. Use a value of 3.5 Btu/gal/°F for c.

1) *Inside diameter.* Assume $D_1 = 7$ inches to clear shaft.

2) *Outside diameter.* Given maximum $D_2 = 15$ inches.

3) *Radial pad width.*

$$a = \frac{15 - 7}{2} = 4 \text{ inches}$$

4) *Pitch-line circumference.*

$$B = \pi\left(\frac{7 + 15}{2}\right) = 34.6 \text{ inches}$$

5) *Number of pads.*

$$i = \frac{34.6 \times 0.8}{4} = 6.9$$

Select 6 pads: $i = 6$.

6) *Length of pad.*

$$b = \frac{34.6 \times 0.8}{6} = 4.61 \text{ inches}$$

Make $b = 4.75$ inches.

7) *Pitch-line velocity.*

$$U = \frac{34.6 \times 3600}{12} = 10{,}400 \text{ ft/min}$$

8) *Bearing unit load.*

$$p = \frac{70{,}000}{6 \times 4 \times 4.75} = 614 \text{ psi}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

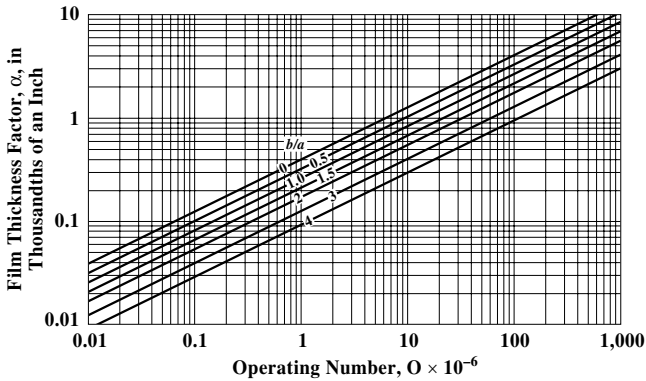


Fig. 13. Dimensionless Minimum Film Thickness, α, versus Operating Number, *O*—Tilting Pad Thrust Bearings.*

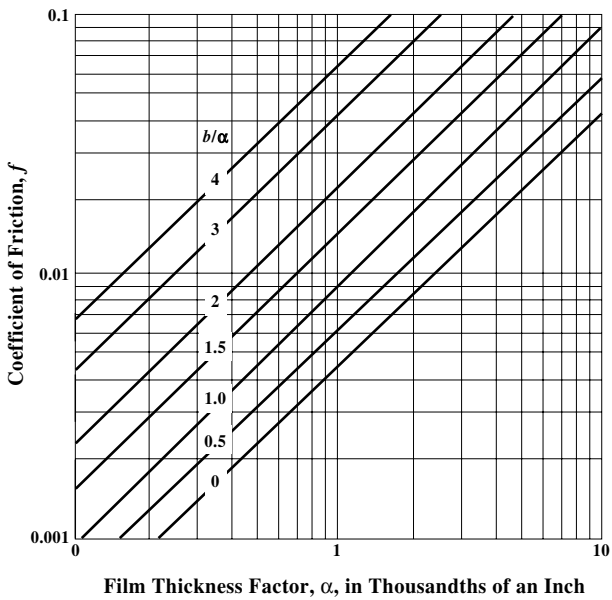


Fig. 14. Coefficient of Friction *f* versus Dimensionless Film Thickness α for Tilting Pad Thrust Bearings with Optimum Pivot Location.*

* See footnote on page 2418.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9) *Operating number.*

$$O = \frac{1.4510^{-7} \times 18 \times 10{,}400}{5 \times 614 \times 4.75} = 1.86 \times 10^{-6}$$

10) *Minimum film thickness.* From Fig. 13, $\alpha = 0.30 \times 10^{-3}$.

$$h_{min} = 0.00030 \times 4.75 = 0.0014 \text{ inch}$$

11) *Coefficient of friction.* From Fig. 14, $f = 0.0036$.

12) *Friction power loss.*

$$P_f = \frac{0.0036 \times 70{,}000 \times 10{,}400}{33{,}000} = 79.4 \text{ hp}$$

13) *Oil flow.*

$$Q = 0.0591 \times 6 \times 0.30 \times 10^{-3} \times 4 \times 4.75 \times 10{,}400 = 21.02 \text{ gpm}$$

14) *Temperature rise.*

$$\Delta t = \frac{0.0217 \times 0.0036 \times 614}{0.30 \times 10^{-3} \times 3.5} = 45.7°\text{F}$$

Because this temperature is less than the 50°F, which is considered as the acceptable maximum, the design is satisfactory.

Plain Bearing Materials

Materials used for sliding bearings cover a wide range of metals and nonmetals. To make the optimum selection requires a complete analysis of the specific application. The important general categories are: Babbitts, alkali-hardened lead, cadmium alloys, copper lead, aluminum bronze, silver, sintered metals, plastics, wood, rubber, and carbon graphite.

Properties of Bearing Materials.—For a material to be used as a plain bearing, it must possess certain physical and chemical properties that permit it to operate properly. If a material does not possess all of these characteristics to some degree, it will not function long as a bearing. It should be noted, however, that few, if any, materials are outstanding in all these characteristics. Therefore, the selection of the optimum bearing material for a given application is at best a compromise to secure the most desirable combination of properties required for that particular usage.

The seven properties generally acknowledged to be the most significant are: 1) Fatigue resistance; 2) embeddability; 3) compatibility; 4) conformability; 5) thermal conductivity; 6) corrosion resistance; and 7) load capacity.

These properties are described as follows:

1) *Fatigue resistance* is the ability of the bearing lining material to withstand repeated applications of stress and strain without cracking, flaking, or being destroyed by some other means.

2) *Embeddability* is the ability of the bearing lining material to absorb or embed within itself any of the larger of the small dirt particles present in a lubrication system. Poor embeddability permits particles circulating around the bearing to score both the bearing surface and the journal or shaft. Good embeddability will permit these particles to be trapped and forced into the bearing surface and out of the way where they can do no harm.

3) *Compatibility or antiscoring tendencies* permit the shaft and bearing to "get along" with each other. It is the ability to resist galling or seizing under conditions of metal-to-metal contact such as at startup. This characteristic is most truly a bearing property, because contact between the bearing and shaft in good designs occurs only at startup.

4) *Conformability* is defined as malleability or as the ability of the bearing material to creep or flow slightly under load, as in the initial stages of running, to permit the shaft and bearing contours to conform with each other or to compensate for nonuniform loading caused by misalignment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Bearing and Bushing Alloys—Composition, Forms, Characteristics, and Applications *SAE General Information*

SAE No. and Alloy Grouping		Nominal Composition, Percent	Form of Use (1), Characteristics (2), and Applications (3)
Sn-Base Alloys	11	Sn, 87.5; Sb, 6.75; Cu, 5.75	(1) Cast on steel, bronze, or brass backs, or directly in the bearing housing. (2) Soft, corrosion-resistant with moderate fatigue resistance. (3) Main and connecting-rod bearings; motor bushings. Operates with either hard or soft journal.
	12	Sn, 89; Sb, 7.5; Cu, 3.5	
Pb-Base Alloys	13	Pb, 84; Sb, 10; Sn, 6	(1) SAE 13 and 14 are cast on steel, bronze, or brass, or in the bearing housing; SAE 15 is cast on steel; and SAE 16 is cast into and on a porous sintered matrix, usually copper-nickel bonded to steel. (2) Soft, moderately fatigue-resistant, corrosion-resistant. (3) Main and connecting-rod bearings. Operates with hard or soft journal with good finish.
	14	Pb, 75; Sb, 15; Sn, 10	
	15	Pb, 83; Sb, 15; Sn, 14; As, 1	
	16	Pb, 92; Sb, 3.5; Sn, 4.5	
Pb-Sn Overlays	19	Pb, 90; Sn, 10	(1) Electrodeposited as a thin layer on copper-lead or silver bearings faces. (2) Soft, corrosion-resistant. Bearings so coated run satisfactorily against soft shafts throughout the life of the coating. (3) Heavy-duty, high-speed main and connecting-rod bearings.
	190	Pb, 93; Sn, 7	
Cu-Pb Alloys	49	Cu, 76; Pb, 24	(1) Cast or sintered on steel back with the exception of SAE 481, which is cast on steel back only. (2) Moderately hard. Somewhat subject to oil corrosion. Some oils minimize this; protection with overlay may be desirable. Fatigue resistance good to fairly good. Listed in order of decreasing hardness and fatigue resistance. (3) Main and connecting-rod bearings. The higher lead alloys can be used unplated against a soft shaft, although an overlay is helpful. The lower lead alloys may be used against a hard shaft, or with an overlay against a soft one.
	48	Cu, 70; Pb, 30	
	480	Cu, 65; Pb, 35	
	481	Cu, 60; Pb, 40	
Cu-Pb-Sn Alloys	482	Cu, 67; Pb, 28; Sn, 5	(1) Steel-backed and lined with a structure combining sintered copper alloy matrix with corrosion-resistant lead alloy. (2) Moderately hard. Corrosion resistance improved over copper-leads of equal lead content without tin. Fatigue resistance fairly good. Listed in order of decreasing hardness and fatigue resistance. (3) Main and connecting-rod bearings. Generally used without overlay. SAE 484 and 485 may be used with hard or soft shaft, and a hardened or cast shaft is recommended for SAE 482.
	484	Cu, 55; Pb, 42; Sn, 3	
	485	Cu, 46; Pb, 51; Sn, 3	
Al-Base Alloys	770	Al, 91.75; Sn, 6.25; Cu, 1; Ni, 1	(1) SAE 770 cast in permanent molds; work-hardened to improve physical properties. SAE 780 and 782 usually bonded to steel back but is procurable in strip form without steel backing. SAE 781 usually bonded to steel back but can be produced as castings or wrought strip without steel back. (2) Hard, extremely fatigue-resistant, resistant to oil corrosion. (3) Main and connecting-rod bearings. Generally used with suitable overlay. SAE 781 and 782 also used for bushings and thrust bearings with or without overlay.
	780	Al, 91; Sn, 6; Si, 1.5; Cu, 1; Ni, 0.5	
	781	Al, 95; Si, 4; Cd, 1	
	782	Al, 95; Cu, 1; Ni, 1; Cd, 3	
Other Cu-Base Alloys	795	Cu, 90; Zn, 9.5; Sn, 0.5	(1) Wrought solid bronze, (2) Hard, strong, good fatigue resistance, (3) Intermediate-load oscillating motion such as tie-rods and brake shafts.
	791	Cu, 88; Zn, 4; Sn, 4; Pb, 4	(1) SAE 791, wrought solid bronze; SAE 793, cast on steel back; SAE 798, sintered on steel back. (2) General-purpose bearing material, good shock and load capacity. Resistant to high temperatures. Hard shaft desirable. Less score-resistant than higher lead alloys. (3) Medium to high loads. Transmission bushings and thrust washers. SAE 791 also used for piston pin and 793 and 798 for chassis bushings.
	793	Cu, 84; Pb, 8; Sn, 4; Zn, 4	
	798	Cu, 84; Pb, 8; Sn, 4; Zn, 4	
Other Cu-Base Alloys	792	Cu, 80; Sn, 10; Pb, 10	(1) SAE 792, cast on steel back, SAE 797, sintered on steel back. (2) Has maximum shock and load-carrying capacity of conventional cast bearing alloys; hard, both fatigue- and corrosion-resistant. Hard shaft desirable. (3) Heavy loads with oscillating or rotating motion. Used for piston pins, steering knuckles, differential axles, thrust washers, and wear plates.
	797	Cu, 80; Sn, 10; Pb, 10	
	794	Cu, 73.5; Pb, 23; Sn, 3.5	(1) SAE 794, cast on steel back; SAE 799, sintered on steel back. (2) Higher lead content gives improved surface action for higher speeds but results in somewhat less corrosion resistance. (3) Intermediate load application for both oscillating and rotating shafts, that is, rocker-arm bushings, transmissions, and farm implements.
	799	Cu, 73.5; Pb, 23; Sn, 3.5	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5) *High thermal conductivity* is required to absorb and carry away the heat generated in the bearing. This conductivity is most important, not in removing frictional heat generated in the oil film, but in preventing seizures due to hot spots caused by local asperity breakthroughs or foreign particles.

6) *Corrosion resistance* is required to resist attack by organic acids that are sometimes formed in oils at operating conditions.

7) *Load capacity or strength* is the ability of the material to withstand the hydrodynamic pressures exerted upon it during operation.

Babbitt or White Metal Alloys.—Many different bearing metal compositions are referred to as babbitt metals. The exact composition of the original babbitt metal is not known; however, the ingredients were probably tin, copper, and antimony in approximately the following percentages: 89.3, 3.6, and 7.1. Tin- and lead-base babbitts are probably the best known of all bearing materials. With their excellent embeddability and compatibility characteristics under boundary lubrication, babbitt bearings are used in a wide range of applications including household appliances, automobile and diesel engines, railroad cars, electric motors, generators, steam and gas turbines, and industrial and marine gear units.

Table 2. White Metal Bearing Alloys—Composition and Properties
ASTM B23-00 (R2014)

ASTM Alloy[a] Number	Nominal Composition, Percent				Compressive Yield Point,[b] psi		Ultimate Compressive Strength,[c] psi		Brinell Hardness Number[d]		Melting Point °F	Proper Pouring Temperature, °F
	Sn	Sb	Pb	Cu	68 °F	212 °F	68 °F	212 °F	68 °F	212 °F		
1	91.0	4.5	…	4.5	4400	2650	12,850	6950	17.0	8.0	433	825
2	89.0	7.5	…	3.5	6100	3000	14,900	8700	24.5	12.0	466	795
3	83.33	8.33	…	8.33	6600	3150	17,600	9900	27.0	14.5	464	915
4	75.0	12.0	10.0	3.0	5550	2150	16,150	6900	24.5	12.0	363	710
5	65.0	15.0	18.0	2.0	5050	2150	15,050	6750	22.5	10.0	358	690
6	20.0	15.0	63.5	1.5	3800	2050	14,550	8050	21.0	10.5	358	655
7[e]	10.0	15.0	bal.	…	3550	1600	15,650	6150	22.5	10.5	464	640
8[e]	5.0	15.0	bal.	…	3400	1750	15,600	6150	20.0	9.5	459	645
10	2.0	15.0	83.0	…	3350	1850	15,450	5750	17.5	9.0	468	630
11	…	15.0	85.0	…	3050	1400	12,800	5100	15.0	7.0	471	630
12	…	10.0	90.0	…	2800	1250	12,900	5100	14.5	6.5	473	625
15[f]	1.0	16.0	bal.	0.5	…	…	…	…	21.0	13.0	479	662
16	10.0	12.5	77.0	0.5	…	…	…	…	27.5	13.6	471	620
19	5.0	9.0	86.0	…	…	…	15,600	6100	17.7	8.0	462	620

[a] Data for ASTM alloys 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, and 15 appear in the Appendix of ASTM B23-00 (R2014); the data for alloys 4, 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, 16, and 19 are given in ASTM B23-49. All values are for reference purposes only.

[b] The values for yield point were taken from stress-strain curves at the deformation of 0.125 percent reduction of gage.

[c] The ultimate strength values were taken as the unit load necessary to produce a deformation of 25 percent of the length of the specimen.

[d] These values are the average Brinell Hardness Number of three impressions on each alloy using a 10-mm ball and a 500-kg load applied for 30 seconds.

[e] Also nominal arsenic, 0.45 percent.

[f] Also nominal arsenic, 1 percent.

The compression test specimens were cylinders 1.5 inches in length and 0.5 inch in diameter, machined from chill castings 2 inches in length and 0.75 inch in diameter. The Brinell Hardness tests were made on the bottom face of parallel machined specimens cast in a 2-inch diameter by 0.625-inch deep steel mold at room temperature.

Both the Society of Automotive Engineers and American Society for Testing and Materials have classified white metal bearing alloys. Table 1 and Table 2 give compositions and properties or characteristics for the two classifications.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In small bushings for fractional-horsepower motors and in automotive engine bearings, babbitt is generally used as a thin coating over a flat steel strip. After forming oil distribution grooves and drilling required holes, the strip is cut to size, rolled, and shaped into finished bearing. These bearings are available for shaft diameters from 0.5 to 5 inches (12.7–127 mm). Strip bearings are turned out by the millions yearly in highly automated factories and offer an excellent combination of low cost with good bearing properties.

For larger bearings in heavy-duty equipment, a thicker babbitt is cast on a rigid backing of steel or cast iron. Chemical and electrolytic cleaning of the bearing shell, thorough rinsing, tinning, and then centrifugal casting of the babbitt are desirable for sound bonding of the babbitt to the bearing shell. After machining, the babbitt layer is usually $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (12.7–6.35 mm) thick.

Compared to other bearing materials, babbitts generally have lower load-carrying capacity and fatigue strength, are a little higher in cost, and require a more complicated design. Also, their strength decreases rapidly with increasing temperature. These shortcomings can be avoided by using an intermediate layer of high-strength, fatigue-resistant material that is placed between a steel backing and a thin babbitt surface layer. Such composite bearings frequently eliminate any need for using alternate materials having poorer bearing characteristics.

Tin babbitt is composed of 80 to 90 percent tin to which is added about 3 to 8 percent copper and 4 to 14 percent antimony. An increase in copper or antimony produces increased hardness and tensile strength and decreased ductility. However, if the percentages of these alloys are increased above those shown in Table 2, the resulting alloy will have decreased fatigue resistance. These alloys have very little tendency to cause wear to their journals because of their ability to embed dirt. They resist the corrosive effects of acids, are not prone to oil-film failure, and are easily bonded and cast. Two drawbacks are encountered from use of these alloys because they have low fatigue resistance and their hardness and strength drop appreciably at low temperatures.

Lead babbitt compositions generally range from 10 to 15 percent antimony and up to 10 percent tin in combination with the lead. Like tin-base babbitts, these alloys have little tendency to cause wear to their journals, embed dirt well, resist the corrosive effects of acids, are not prone to oil-film failure and are easily bonded and cast. Their chief disadvantages when compared with tin-base alloys are a rather lower strength and a susceptibility to corrosion.

Cadmium Base.—Cadmium alloy bearings have a greater resistance to fatigue than babbitt bearings, but their use is very limited due to their poor corrosion resistance. These alloys contain 1 to 15 percent nickel, or 0.4 to 0.75 percent copper, and 0.5 to 2.0 percent silver. Their prime attribute is their high-temperature capability. The load-carrying capacity and relative basic bearing properties are shown in Table 3.

Copper-Lead.—Copper-lead bearings are a binary mixture of copper and lead containing from 20 to 40 percent lead. Lead is practically insoluble in copper, so a cast microstructure consists of lead pockets in a copper matrix. A steel backing is commonly used with this material and high volume is achieved either by continuous casting or by powder metallurgy techniques. This material is very often used with an overplate such as lead-tin and lead-tin-copper to increase basic bearing properties. Table 3 provides comparisons of material properties.

The combination of good fatigue strength, high-load capacity, and high-temperature performance has resulted in extensive use of this material for heavy-duty main and connecting-rod bearings as well as moderate-load and speed applications in turbines and electric motors.

Leaded Bronze and Tin-Bronze.—Leaded and tin-bronzes contain up to 25 percent lead or approximately 10 percent tin, respectively. Cast leaded bronze bearings offer good compatibility, excellent casting, and easy machining characteristics, low cost, good structural properties and high-load capacity, usefulness as a single material that requires

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Properties of Bearing Alloys and Bearing Characteristics Ratings

Material	Recommended Shaft Hardness (Brinell Hardness Number)	Load-Carrying Capacity, psi[a]	Maximum Operating Temp., °F[b]	Compatibility[c]	Conformability and Embeddability[c]	Corrosion Resistance[c]	Fatigue Strength[c]
Tin-Base Babbitt	150 or less	800–1500	300	1	1	1	5
Lead-Base Babbitt	150 or less	800–1200	300	1	1	3	5
Cadmium Base	200–250	1200–2000	500	1	2	5	4
Copper-Lead	300	1500–2500	350	2	2	5	3
Tin-Bronze	300–400	4000+	500+	3	5	2	1
Lead-Bronze	300	3000–4500	450–500	3	4	4	2
Aluminum	300	4000+	225–300	5	3	1	2
Silver-Overplate	300	4000+	500	2	3	1	1
Trimetal-Overplate	230 or less	2000–4000+	225–300	1	2	2	3

[a] 1 psi = 6.8947 kPa

[b] Temp. in °C = (°F – 32)/1.8.

[c] *Note:* 1 is best; 5 is worst.

neither a separate overlay nor a steel backing. Bronzes are available in standard bar stock, sand or permanent molds, investment, centrifugal or continuous casting. Leaded bronzes have better compatibility than tin-bronzes because the spheroids of lead smear over the bearing surface under conditions of inadequate lubrication. These alloys are generally a first choice at intermediate loads and speeds. Table 3 provides comparisons of basic bearing properties of these materials.

Aluminum.—Aluminum bearings are either cast solid aluminum, aluminum with a steel backing, or aluminum with a suitable overlay. The aluminum is usually alloyed with small amounts of tin, silicon, cadmium, nickel, or copper, as shown in Table 1. An aluminum bearing alloy with 20 to 30 percent tin alloy and up to 3 percent copper has shown promise as a substitute for bronzes in some industrial applications.

These bearings are best suited for operation with hard journals. Owing to the high thermal expansion of the metal (resulting in diametral contraction when it is confined as a bearing in a rigid housing), large clearances are required, which tend to make the bearing noisy, especially on starting. Overlays of lead-tin, lead, or lead-tin-copper may be applied to aluminum bearings to facilitate their use with soft shafts.

Aluminum alloys are available with properties specifically designed for bearing applications, such as high load-carrying capacity, fatigue strength, and thermal conductivity, in addition to excellent corrosion resistance and low cost.

Silver.—Silver bearings were developed for and have an excellent record in heavy-duty applications such as aircraft master rod and diesel engine main bearings. Silver has a higher fatigue rating than any of the other bearing materials; the steel backing used with this material may show evidence of fatigue before the silver. The advent of overlays, or more commonly called overplates, made it possible for silver to be used as a bearing material. Silver by itself does not possess any of the desirable bearing qualities except high fatigue resistance and high thermal conductivity. The overlays such as lead, lead-tin, or lead-indium improve the embeddability and antiscoring properties of silver. The relative basic properties of this material, when used as an overplate, are shown in Table 3.

Cast Iron.—Cast iron is an inexpensive bearing material capable of operation at light loads and low speeds, i.e., up to 130 ft/min (40 m/min) and 150 lb/in^2 (1.03 MPa). These bearings must be well lubricated and have a rather large clearance so as to avoid scoring from particles torn from the cast iron that ride between bearing and journal. A journal hardness of between 150–250 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) has been found to be best when using cast-iron bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Porous Metals.—Porous metal self-lubricating bearings are usually made by sintering metals such as plain or leaded bronze, iron, and stainless steel. The sintering produces a spongelike structure capable of absorbing fairly large quantities of oil, usually 10–35 percent of the total volume. These bearings are used where lubrication supply is difficult, inadequate, or infrequent. This type of bearing should be flooded from time to time to resaturate the material. Another use of these porous materials is to meter a small quantity of oil to the bearings such as in drip feed systems. The general design operating characteristics of this class of materials are shown in Table 4.

Table 4. Application Limits — Sintered Metal and Nonmetallic Bearings

Bearing Material	Load Capacity		Maximum Temperature		Surface Speed, V_{max} (max. fpm)	PV Limit P = psi load V = surface ft/min
	psi	kPa	°F	°C		
Acetal	1000	6895	180	82	1000	3000
Graphite (dry)	600	4137	750	399	2500	15,000
Graphite (lubricated)	600	4137	750	399	2500	150,000
Nylon, Polycarbonate	1000	6895	200	93	1000	3000
Nylon composite	…	…	400	204	…	16,000
Phenolics	6000	41369	200	93	2500	15,000
Porous bronze	4500	31026	160	71	1500	50,000
Porous iron	8000	55158	160	71	800	50,000
Porous metals	4000–8000	27579–55158	150	66	1500	50,000
Virgin Teflon (TFE)	500	3447	500	260	50	1000
Reinforced Teflon	2500	17237	500	260	1000	10,000–15,000
TFE fabric	60,000	413685	500	260	150	25,000
Rubber	50	345	150	66	4000	15,000
Maple & Lignum Vitae	2000	13790	150	66	2000	15,000

1 fpm = 0.3048 m/min; 1 psi = 6.8947 kPa

Table 5a, Table 5b, and Table 5c give the chemical compositions, permissible loads, interference fits, and running clearances of bronze-base and iron-base metal-powder sintered bearings that are specified in the ASTM specifications for oil-impregnated metal-powder sintered bearings (ASTM B438-17 and B439-19).

Plastics Bearings.—Plastics are finding increased use as bearing materials because of their resistance to corrosion, quiet operation, ability to be molded into many configurations, and their excellent compatibility, which minimizes or eliminates the need for lubrication. Many plastics are capable of operating as bearings, especially phenolic, tetrafluoroethylene (TFE), and polyamide (nylon) resins. The general application limits for these materials are shown in Table 4.

Laminated Phenolics: These composite materials consist of cotton fabric, asbestos, or other fillers bonded with phenolic resin. They have excellent compatibility with various fluids as well as strength and shock resistance. However, precautions must be taken to maintain adequate bearing cooling because the thermal conductivity of these materials is low.

Nylon: This material has the widest use for small, lightly loaded applications. It has low frictional properties and requires no lubrication.

Teflon: This material, with its exceptional low coefficient of friction, self-lubricating characteristics, resistance to attack by almost any chemicals, and its wide temperature range, is one of the most interesting of the plastics for bearing use. High cost combined

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

with low load capacity cause Teflon to be selected mostly in modified form, where other less expensive materials have proved inadequate for design requirements.

Bearings made of laminated phenolics, nylon, or Teflon are all unaffected by acids and alkalies except if highly concentrated and therefore can be used with lubricants containing dilute acids or alkalies. Water is used to lubricate most phenolic laminate bearings but oil, grease, and emulsions of grease and water are also used. Water and oil are used as lubricants for nylon and Teflon bearings. Almost all types of plastic bearings absorb water and oil to some extent. In some the dimensional change caused by the absorption may be as much as three percent in one direction. This means that bearings have to be treated before use so that proper clearances will be kept. This may be done by boiling in water, for water lubricated bearings. Boiling in water makes bearings swell the maximum amount. Clearances for phenolic bearings are kept at about 0.001 inch per inch (or mm per mm) of diameter on treated bearings. Partially lubricated or dry nylon bearings are given a clearance of 0.004 to 0.006 inch (101.6–152.4 μm) for a one-inch (25.4 mm) diameter bearing.

Rubber: Rubber bearings give excellent performance on propeller shafts and rudders of ships, hydraulic turbines, pumps, sand and gravel washers, dredges and other industrial equipment that handle water or slurries. The resilience of rubber helps to isolate vibration and provide quiet operation, allows running with relatively large clearances and helps to compensate for misalignment. In these bearings a fluted rubber structure is supported by a metal shell. The flutes or scallops in the rubber form a series of grooves through which lubricant or, as generally used, water and foreign material such as sand may pass through the bearing.

Wood.—Bearings made from such woods as lignum vitae, rock maple, or oak offer self-lubricating properties, low cost, and clean operation. However, they have frequently been displaced in recent years by various plastics, rubber and sintered-metal bearings. General applications are shown in Table 4.

Carbon-Graphite.—Bearings of molded and machined carbon-graphite are used where regular maintenance and lubrication cannot be given. They are dimensionally stable over a wide range of temperatures, may be lubricated if desired, and are not affected by chemicals. These bearings may be used up to temperatures of 700 to 750°F (371–399°C) in air or 1200°F (649°C) in a non-oxidizing atmosphere, and generally are operated at a maximum load of 20 pounds per square inch. In some instances a metal or metal alloy is added to the carbon-graphite composition to improve such properties as compressive strength and density. The temperature limitation depends upon the melting point of the metal or alloy and the maximum load is generally 350 psi (2.4 MPa) when used with no lubrication or 600 psi (4.2 MPa) when used with lubrication.

Normal running clearances for both types of carbon-graphite bearings used with steel shafts and operating at a temperature of less than 200°F (93°C) are as follows: 0.001 inch (0.0254 mm) for bearings of 0.187 to 0.500-inch (4.75–12.7 mm) inside diameter, 0.002 inch (0.0508 mm) for bearings of 0.501 to 1.000-inch (12.73–25.4 mm) inside diameter, 0.003 inch (0.0762 mm) for bearings of 1.001 to 1.250-inch (25.43–31.75 mm) inside diameter, 0.004 inch (0.1016 mm) for bearings of 1.251 to 1.500-inch (31.77–38.1 mm) diameter, and 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) for bearings of 1.501 to 2.000-inch (38.13–50.8 mm) inside diameter. Speeds depend upon too many variables to list specifically so it can only be stated here that high loads require a low number of rpm and low loads permit a high number of rpm. Smooth journals are necessary in these bearings as rough ones tend to abrade the bearings quickly. Cast iron and hard chromium-plate steel shafts of 400 BHN (Brinell Hardness Number) and over, and phosphor-bronze shafts over 135 BHN are recommended.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. Copper- and Iron-Base Sintered Bearings (Oil Impregnated)
ASTM B438-17, ASTM B439-18, and Appendices

Chemical Requirements								
Alloying Elements[a]	Percentage Composition							
	Copper-Base Bearings				Iron-Base Bearings			
	Grade 1		Grade 2		Grades			
	Class A	Class B	Class A	Class B	1	2	3	4
Cu	87.5-99.5	87.5-90.5	87.5-90.5	87.5-90.5	…	…	7.0-11.0	18.0-22.0
Sn	9.5-10.5	9.5-10.5	9.5-10.5	9.5-10.5	…	…	…	…
Graphite	0.1 max.	1.75 max.	0.1 max.	1.75 max.	…	…	…	…
Pb	…	…	2.0-4.0	2.0-4.0	…	…	…	…
Fe	1.0 max.	1.0 max.	1.0 max.	1.0 max.	96.25 min.	95.9 min.	Balance[b]	Balance[b]
Comb. C[c]	…	…	…	…	0.25 max.	0.25-0.60	…	…
Si, max.	…	…	…	…	0.3	0.3	…	…
Al, max.	…	…	…	…	0.2	0.2	…	…
Others	0.5 max.	0.5 max.	1.0 max.	1.0 max.	3.0 max.	3.0 max.	3.0 max.	3.0 max.

[a] Abbreviations used for the alloying elements are as follows: Cu, copper; Fe, iron; Sn, tin; Pb, lead; Zn, zinc; Ni, nickel; Sb, antimony; Si, silicon; Al, aluminum; and C, carbon.

[b] Total of iron plus copper shall be 97 percent, minimum.

[c] Combined carbon (on basis of iron only) may be a metallographic estimate of the carbon in the iron.

Permissible Loads						
Copper-Base Bearings				Iron-Base Bearings		
	Grades 1 & 2				Grades 1 & 2	Grades 3 & 4
	Type 1	Type 2	Types 3 & 4			
Shaft Velocity, fpm	Max. Load, psi			Shaft Velocity, fpm	Max. Load, psi	
Slow and intermittent	3200	4000	4000	Slow and intermittent	3600	8000
25	2000	2000	2000	25	1800	3000
50 to 100	500	500	550	50 to 100	450	700
Over 100 to 150	365	325	365	Over 100 to 150	300	400
Over 150 to 200	280	250	280	Over 150 to 200	225	300
Over 200		[a]	[a]	[a]	Over 200	[a]

[a] For shaft velocities over 200 fpm, the permissible loads may be calculated as follows: $P = 50{,}000/V$; where P = safe load, psi of projected area; and V = shaft velocity, fpm. With a shaft velocity of less than 50 fpm and a permissible load greater than 1,000 psi, an extreme pressure lubricant should be used; with heat dissipation and removal techniques, higher PV ratings can be obtained.

Clearances						
Press-Fit Clearances			Running Clearances[a]			
Copper- and Iron-Base			Copper-Base		Iron-Base	
Bearing OD	Min.	Max.	Shaft Size	Min. Clearance	Shaft Size	Min. Clearance
Up to 0.760	0.001	0.003	Up to 0.250	0.0003	Up to 0.760	0.0008
0.761-1.510	0.0015	0.004	0.250-0.760	0.0005	0.761-1.510	0.0013
1.511-2.510	0.002	0.005	0.760-1.510	0.0010	1.511-2.510	0.0018
2.511-3.010	0.002	0.006	1.510-2.510	0.0015	Over 2.510	0.0023
Over 3.010	0.002	0.007	Over 2.510	0.0020		

[a] Only minimum recommended clearances are listed. It is assumed that ground steel shafting will be used and that all bearings will be oil-impregnated.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5b. Copper- and Iron-Base Sintered Bearings (Oil Impregnated)
ASTM B438-17, ASTM B439-18, and Appendices

Commercial Dimensional Tolerances[a,b]							
Diameter Tolerance		Length Tolerance		Diameter Tolerance		Length Tolerance	
Copper Base				Iron Base			
Inside or Outside Diameter	Total Diameter Tolerances	Length	Total Length Tolerances	Inside or Outside Diameter	Total Diameter Tolerances	Length	Total Length Tolerances
Up to 1	0.001	Up to 1.5	0.01	Up to 0.760	–0.001	Up to 1.495	0.01
1 to 1.5	0.0015	1.5 to 3	0.01	0.761-1.510	–0.0015	1.496-1.990	0.02
1.5 to 2	0.002	3 to 4.5	0.02	1.511-2.510	–0.002	1.991-2.990	0.02
2 to 2.5	0.0025	…	…	2.511-3.010	–0.003	2.991-4.985	0.03
2.5 to 3	0.003	…	…	3.011-4.010	–0.005	…	…
…	…	…	…	4.011-5.010	–0.005	…	…
…	…	…	…	5.011-6.010	–0.006	…	…

Concentricity Tolerance[a,b,c]					
Iron Base			Copper Base		
Outside Diameter	Max. Wall Thickness	Concentricity Tolerance	Outside Diameter	Length	Concentricity Tolerance
Up to 1.510	Up to 0.355	0.003	Up to 1	0 to 1	0.000
				1 to 2	0.004
				2 to 3	0.005
1.511 to 2.010	Up to 0.505	0.004	1 to 2	0 to 1	0.004
				1 to 2	0.005
2.011 to 4.010	Up to 1.010	0.005		2 to 3	0.006
			2 to 3	0 to 1	0.005
4.011 to 5.010	Up to 1.510	0.006		1 to 2	0.006
5.011 to 6.010	Up to 2.010	0.007		2 to 3	0.007

[a] For copper-base bearings with 4-to-1 maximum-length-diameter ratio and a 24-to-1 maximum-length-to-wall-thickness ratio; bearings with greater ratios are not covered here.

[b] For iron-base bearings with a 3-to-1 maximum-length-to-inside diameter ratio and a 20-to-1 maximum-length-to-wall-thickness ratio; bearings with greater ratios are not covered here.

[c] Total indicator reading.

Table 5c. Copper- and Iron-Base Sintered Bearings (Oil Impregnated)
ASTM B438-17, ASTM B439-18, and Appendices

Diameter Range	Flange and Thrust Bearings, Diameter, and Thickness Tolerances				Parallellism[a] on Faces, max.			
	Flange Diameter Tolerance		Flange Thickness Tolerance		Copper Base		Iron Base	
	Standard	Special	Standard	Special	Standard	Special	Standard	Special
0 to 1½	±0.005	±0.0025	±0.005	±0.0025	0.003	0.002	0.005	0.003
Over 1½ to 3	±0.010	±0.005	±0.010	±0.007	0.004	0.003	0.007	0.005
Over 3 to 6	±0.025	±0.010	±0.015	±0.010	0.005	0.004	0.010	0.007

[a] Standard and special tolerances are specified for diameters, thicknesses, and parallelism. Special tolerances should not be specified unless required because they require additional or secondary operations and, therefore, are costlier. Thrust bearings (¼ inch thickness, max.) have a standard thickness tolerance of ±0.005 inch and a special thickness tolerance of ±0.0025 inch for all diameters.

All dimensions in inches except where otherwise noted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BALL, ROLLER, AND NEEDLE BEARINGS

Rolling Contact Bearings

Rolling contact bearings substitute a rolling element, ball or roller, for a hydrodynamic or hydrostatic fluid film to carry an impressed load without wear and with reduced friction. Because of their greatly reduced starting friction, when compared to the conventional journal bearing, they have acquired the common designation of "anti-friction" bearings. Although normally made with hardened rolling elements and races, and usually utilizing a separator to space the rolling elements and reduce friction, many variations are in use throughout the mechanical and electrical industries. The most common anti-friction bearing application is that of the deep-groove ball bearing with ribbon-type separator and sealed-grease lubrication used to support a shaft with radial and thrust loads in rotating equipment. This shielded or sealed bearing has become a standard and commonplace item ordered from a supplier's catalog in much the same manner as nuts and bolts. Because of the simple design approach and the elimination of a separate lubrication system or device, this bearing is found in as many installations as the wick-fed or impregnated porous plain bushing.

Currently, a number of manufacturers produce a complete range of ball and roller bearings in a fully interchangeable series with standard dimensions, tolerances and fits as specified in Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (AFBMA) Standards. Except for deep-groove ball bearings, performance standards are not so well defined and sizing and selection must be done in close conformance with the specific manufacturer's catalog requirements. In general, desired functional features should be carefully gone over with the vendor's representatives.

Rolling-contact bearings are made to high standards of accuracy and with close metallurgical control. Balls and rollers are normally held to diametral tolerances of .0001 inch (2.54 μm) or less within one bearing and are often used as gage blocks in routine toolroom operations. This accuracy is essential to the performance and durability of rolling-contact bearings and in limiting runout, providing proper radial and axial clearances, and ensuring smoothness of operation.

Because of their low friction, both starting and running, rolling-contact bearings are utilized to reduce the complexity of many systems that normally function with journal bearings. Aside from this advantage and that of precise radial and axial location of rotating elements, however, they also are desirable because of their reduced lubrication requirements and their ability to function during brief interruptions in normal lubrication.

In applying rolling-contact bearings it is well to appreciate that their life is limited by the fatigue life of the material from which they are made and is modified by the lubricant used. In rolling-contact fatigue, precise relationships among life, load, and design characteristics are not predictable, but a statistical function described as the "probability of survival" is used to relate them according to equations recommended by the AFBMA. Deviations from these formulas result when certain extremes in applications such as speed, deflection, temperature, lubrication, and internal geometry must be dealt with.

Types of Anti-Friction Bearings.—The general types are usually determined by the shape of the rolling element, but many variations have been developed that apply conventional elements in unique ways. Thus it is well to know that special bearings can be procured with races adapted to specific applications, although this is not practical for other than high volume configurations or where the requirements cannot be met in a more economical manner. "Special" races are appreciably more expensive. Quite often, in such situations, races are made to incorporate other functions of the mechanism, or are "submerged" in the surrounding structure, with the rolling elements supported by a shaft or housing that has been hardened and finished in a suitable manner. Typical anti-friction bearing types are shown in Table 1a through Table 1g.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1a. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

BALL BEARINGS, SINGLE ROW, RADIAL CONTACT			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
BC	Non-filling slot assembly	BH	Non-separable counter-bore assembly
BL	Filling slot assembly	BM	Separable assembly
BALL BEARINGS, SINGLE ROW, ANGULAR CONTACT[a]			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
BN	Non-separable Nominal contact angle: from above 10° to and including 22°	BAS	Separable inner ring Nominal contact angle: from above 22° to and including 32°
BNS	Separable outer ring Nominal contact angle: from above 10° to and including 22°	BT	Non-separable Nominal contact angle: from above 32° to and including 45°
BNT	Separable inner ring Nominal contact angle: from above 10° to and including 22°	BY	Two-piece outer ring
BA	Non-separable Nominal contact angle: from above 22° to and including 32°	BZ	Two-piece inner ring
BALL BEARINGS, SINGLE ROW, RADIAL CONTACT, SPHERICAL OUTSIDE SURFACE			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
BCA	Non-filling slot assembly	BLA	Filling slot assembly

[a] A line through the ball contact points forms an acute angle with a perpendicular to the bearing axis.

Types of Ball Bearings.—Most types of ball bearings originate from three basic designs: the single-row radial, the single-row angular contact, and the double-row angular contact.

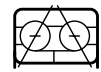
Single-row Radial, Non-filling Slot: This is probably the most widely used ball bearing and is employed in many modified forms. It is also known as the "Conrad" type or "Deep-groove" type. It is a symmetrical unit capable of taking combined radial and thrust loads in which the thrust component is relatively high, but is not intended for pure thrust loads, however. Because this type is not self-aligning, accurate alignment between shaft and housing bore is required.

Single-row Radial, Filling Slot: This type is designed primarily to carry radial loads. Bearings of this type are assembled with as many balls as can be introduced by eccentric displacement of the rings, as in the non-filling slot type, and then several more balls are inserted through the loading slot, aided by a slight spreading of the rings and heat expansion of the outer ring, if necessary. This type of bearing will take a certain degree of thrust when in combination with a radial load but is not recommended where thrust loads exceed 60 percent of the radial load.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1b. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

BALL BEARINGS, DOUBLE ROW, RADIAL CONTACT			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
BF	Filling slot assembly	BHA	Non-separable two-piece outer ring
BK	Non-filling slot assembly		

BALL BEARINGS, DOUBLE ROW, ANGULAR CONTACT [a]			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
BD	Filling slot assembly Vertex of contact angles inside bearing	BG	Non-filling slot assembly Vertex of contact angles outside bearing
BE	Filling slot assembly Vertex of contact angles outside bearing	BAA	Non-separable Vertex of contact angles inside bearing Two-piece outer ring
BJ	Non-filling slot assembly Vertex of contact angles inside bearing	BVV	Separable Vertex of contact angles outside bearing Two-piece inner ring 

BALL BEARINGS, DOUBLE ROW, SELF-ALIGNING [a]			
	Symbol	Description	
	BS	Raceway of outer ring spherical	

[a] A line through the ball contact points forms an acute angle with a perpendicular to the bearing axis.

Single-row Angular-contact: This type is designed for combined radial and thrust loads where the thrust component may be large and axial deflection must be confined within very close limits. A high shoulder on one side of the outer ring is provided to take the thrust, while the shoulder on the other side is only high enough to make the bearing non-separable. Except where used for a pure thrust load in one direction, this type is applied either in pairs (duplex) or one at each end of the shaft, opposed.

Double-row Bearings: These are, in effect, two single-row angular-contact bearings built as a unit with the internal fit between balls and raceway fixed at the time of bearing assembly. This fit is therefore not dependent upon mounting methods for internal rigidity. These bearings usually have a known amount of internal preload built in for maximum resistance to deflection under combined loads with thrust from either direction. Thus, with balls and races under compression before an external load is applied, due to this internal preload, the bearings are very effective for radial loads where bearing deflection must be minimized.

Other Types: Modifications of these basic types provide arrangements for self-sealing, location by snap ring, shielding, etc., but the fundamentals of mounting are not changed. A special type is the self-aligning ball bearing which can be used to compensate for an appreciable degree of misalignment between shaft and housing due to shaft deflections,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

mounting inaccuracies, or other causes commonly encountered. With a single row of balls, alignment is provided by a spherical outer surface on the outer ring; with a double row of balls, alignment is provided by a spherical raceway on the outer ring. Bearings in the wide series have a considerable amount of thrust capacity.

Table 1c. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

CYLINDRICAL ROLLER BEARING, SINGLE ROW, NON-LOCATING TYPE			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
RU	Inner ring without ribs Double-ribbed outer ring Inner ring separable	RNS	Double-ribbed inner ring Outer ring without ribs Outer ring separable Spherical outside surface
RUP	Inner ring without ribs Double-ribbed outer ring with one loose rib Both rings separable	RAB	Inner ring without ribs Single-ribbed outer ring Both rings separable
RUA	Inner ring without ribs Double-ribbed outer ring Inner ring separable Spherical outside surface	RM	Inner ring without ribs Rollers located by cage, end-rings or internal snap rings recesses in outer ring Inner ring separable
RN	Double-ribbed inner ring Outer ring without ribs Outer ring separable	RNU	Inner ring without ribs Outer ring without ribs Both rings separable
CYLINDRICAL ROLLER BEARINGS, SINGLE ROW, ONE-DIRECTION-LOCATING TYPE			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
RR	Single-ribbed inner-ring Outer ring with two internal snap rings Inner ring separable	RF	Double-ribbed inner ring Single-ribbed outer ring Outer ring separable
RJ	Single-ribbedinner ring Double-ribbed outer ring Inner ring separable	RS	Single-ribbed inner ring Outer ring with one rib and one internal snap ring Inner ring separable
RJP	Single-ribbed inner ring Double-ribbed outer ring with one loose rib Both rings separable	RAA	Single-ribbed inner ring Single-ribbed outer ring Both rings separable

Types of Roller Bearings.—Types of roller bearings are distinguished by the design of rollers and raceways to handle axial, combined axial and thrust, or thrust loads.

Cylindrical Roller: These bearings have solid or helically wound hollow cylindrical rollers. The free ring may have a restraining flange to provide some restraint to endwise movement in one direction or may be without a flange so that the bearing rings may be displaced axially with respect to each other. Either rolls or roller path on the races may be slightly crowned to prevent edge loading under slight shaft misalignment. Low friction makes this type suitable for relatively high speeds.

Barrel Roller: These bearings have rollers that are barrel-shaped and symmetrical. They are furnished in both single- and double-row mountings. As with cylindrical roller bearings, the single-row mounting type has a low thrust capacity, but angular mounting of rolls in the double-row type permits its use for combined axial and thrust loads.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1d. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

CYLINDRICAL ROLLER BEARINGS, SINGLE ROW, TWO-DIRECTION-LOCATING TYPE			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
RK	Double-ribbed inner ring Outer ring with two internal snap rings Non-separable	RY	Double-ribbed inner ring Outer ring with one rib and one internal snap ring Non-separable
RC	Double-ribbed inner ring Double-ribbed outer ring Non-separable	RCS	Double-ribbed inner ring Double-ribbed outer ring Non-separable Spherical outside surface
RG	Inner ring, with one rib and one snap ring Double-ribbed outer ring Non-separable		
RP	Double-ribbed inner ring Double-ribbed outer ring with one loose rib Outer ring separable	RT	Double-ribbed inner ring with one loose rib Double-ribbed outer ring Inner ring separable
CYLINDRICAL ROLLER BEARINGS			
Double Row Non-Locating Type		Double Row Two-Direction-Locating Type	
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
RA	Inner ring without ribs Three integral ribs on outer ring Inner ring separable	RB	Three integral ribs on inner ring Outer ring without ribs, with two internal snap rings Non-separable
RD	Three integral ribs on inner ring Outer ring without ribs Outer ring separable	Multi-Row Non-Locating Type	
		Symbol	Description
RE	Inner ring without ribs Outer rings without ribs, with two internal snap rings Inner ring separable	RV	Inner ring without ribs Double-ribbed outer ring (loose ribs) Both rings separable

Spherical Roller: These bearings are usually furnished in a double-row, self-aligning mounting. Both rows of rollers have a common spherical outer raceway. The rollers are barrel-shaped with one end smaller than the other to provide a small thrust to keep the rollers in contact with the center guide flange. This type of roller bearing has a high radial and thrust load carrying capacity with the ability to maintain this capacity under some degree of misalignment of shaft and bearing housing.

Tapered Roller: In this type, straight tapered rollers are held in accurate alignment by means of a guide flange on the inner ring. The basic characteristic of these bearings is that the apexes of the tapered working surfaces of both rollers and races, if extended, would coincide on the bearing axis. These bearings are separable. They have a high radial and thrust carrying capacity.

Types of Ball and Roller Thrust Bearings.— Are designed to take thrust loads alone or in combination with radial loads.

One-direction Ball Thrust: These bearings consist of a shaft ring and a flat or spherical housing ring with a single row of balls between. They are capable of carrying pure thrust loads in one direction only. They cannot carry any radial load.

Two-direction Ball Thrust: These bearings consist of a shaft ring with a ball groove in either side, two sets of balls, and two housing rings so arranged that thrust loads in either direction can be supported. No radial loads can be carried.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1e. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

SELF-ALIGNING ROLLER BEARINGS, DOUBLE ROW			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
SD	Three integral ribs on inner ring Raceway of outer ring spherical	SL	Raceway of outer ring spherical Rollers guided by the cage Two integral ribs on inner ring
SE	Raceway of outer ring spherical Rollers guided by separate center guide ring in outer ring	SELF-ALIGNING ROLLER BEARINGS SINGLE ROW	
		Symbol	Description
SW	Raceway of inner ring spherical	SR	Inner ring with ribs Raceway of outer ring spherical Radial contact
SC	Raceway of outer ring spherical Rollers guided by separate axially floating guide ring on inner ring	SA	Raceway of outer ring spherical Angular contact
		SB	Raceway of inner ring spherical Angular contact
THRUST BALL BEARINGS			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
TA TB[a]	Single direction, grooved raceways, flat seats	TDA	Double direction, washers with grooved raceways, flat seats
TBF[a]	Single direction, flat washers, flat seats		
THRUST ROLLER BEARINGS			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
TS	Single direction, aligning flat seats, spherical rollers	TPC[a]	Single direction, flat seats, flat races, outside band, cylindrical rollers
TP	Single direction, flat seats, cylindrical rollers	TR[a]	Single direction, flat races, aligning seat with aligning washer, cylindrical rollers

[a] Inch dimensioned only.

Spherical Roller Thrust: This type is similar in design to the radial spherical roller bearing except that it has a much larger contact angle. The rollers are barrel shaped with one end smaller than the other. This type of bearing has a very high thrust load carrying capacity and can also carry radial loads.

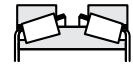
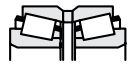
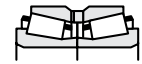
Tapered Roller Thrust: In this type the rollers are tapered and several different arrangements of housing and shaft are used.

Roller Thrust: In this type the rollers are straight and several different arrangements of housing and shaft are used.

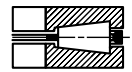
Types of Needle Bearings.—Needle bearings are characterized by their relatively small size rollers, usually not above $^1/_4$ inch (6.35 mm) in diameter, and a relatively high ratio of length to diameter, usually ranging from about 3 to 1 and 10 to 1. Another feature that

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1f. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

TAPERED ROLLER BEARINGS — INCH			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
TS	Single row	TDI	Two row, double-cone single cups 
TDO	Two row, double-cup single-cone adjustable 	TNA	Two row, double-cup single cone nonadjustable 
TQD, TQI	Four row, cup adjusted		

TAPERED ROLLER BEARINGS — METRIC			
Symbol	Description	Symbol	Description
TS	Single row, straight bore	TSF	Single row, straight bore, flanged cup
TDO	Double row, straight bore, two single cones, one double cup with lubrication hole and groove	2TS	Double row, straight bore, two single cones, two single cups

THRUST TAPERED ROLLER BARINGS			
Symbol	Description		
TT	Thrust bearings 		

is characteristic of several types of needle bearings is the absence of a cage or separator for retaining the individual rollers. Needle bearings may be divided into three classes: loose-roller, outer race and retained roller, and non-separable units.

Loose-roller: This type of bearing has no integral races or retaining members, the needles being located directly between the shaft and the outer bearing bore. Usually both shaft and outer bore bearing surfaces are hardened and retaining members that have smooth unbroken surfaces are provided to prevent endwise movement. Compactness and high radial load capacity are features of this type.

Outer Race and Retained Roller: There are two types of outer race and retained roller bearings. In the Drawn Shell type, the needle rollers are enclosed by a hardened shell that acts as a retaining member and as a hardened outer race. The needles roll directly on the shaft, the bearing surface of which should be hardened. The capacity for given roller length and shaft diameter is about two-thirds that of the loose roller type. It is mounted in the housing with a press fit.

In the *Machined Race* type, the outer race consists of a heavy machined member. Various modifications of this type provide heavy ends or faces for end location of the needle rollers, or open end construction with end washers for roller retention, or a cage that maintains alignment of the rollers and is itself held in place by retaining rings. An auxiliary outer member with spherical seat that holds the outer race may be provided for

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1g. Types of Rolling Element Bearings and Their Symbols

NEEDLE ROLLER BEARINGS, DRAWN CUP			
Symbol[a]	Description	Symbol[a]	Description
NIB NB	Needle roller bearing, full complement, drawn cup, without inner ring	NIYM NYM	Needle roller bearing, full complement, rollers retained by lubricant, drawn cup, closed end, without inner ring
NIBM NBM	Needle roller bearing, full complement, drawn cup, closed end, without inner ring	NIH NH	Needle roller bearing, with cage, drawn cup, without inner ring
NIY NY	Needle roller bearing, full complement, rollers retained by lubricant, drawn cup, without inner ring	NIHM NHM	Needle roller bearing, with cage, drawn cup, closed end, without inner ring
NEEDLE ROLLER BEARINGS		NEEDLE ROLLER AND CAGE ASSEMBLIES	
Symbol[a]	Description	Symbol[a]	Description
NIA NA	Needle roller bearing, with cage, machined ring lubrication hole and groove in OD, without inner ring	NIM NM	Needle roller and cage assembly
NEEDLE ROLLER BEARING INNER RINGS			
Symbol[a]	Description	Machined Ring Needle Roller Bearings Type NIA may be used with inch dimensioned inner rings, Type NIR, and Type NA may be used with metric dimensional inner rings, Type NR.	
NIR NR	Needle roller bearing inner ring, lubrication hole and groove in bore		

[a] Symbols with I, as NIB, are inch-dimensioned, and those without the I, as NB, are metric dimensioned.

self-alignment. This type is applicable where split housings occur or where a press fit of the bearing into the housing is not possible.

Non-separable: This type consists of a non-separable unit of outer race, rollers and inner race. These bearings are used where high static or oscillating motion loads are expected as in certain aircraft components and where both outer and inner races are necessary.

Special or Unconventional Types.—Rolling contact bearings have been developed for many highly specialized applications. They may be constructed of non-corrosive materials, non-magnetic materials, plastics, ceramics, and even wood. Although the materials are chosen to adapt more conventional configurations to difficult applications or environments, even greater ingenuity has been applied in utilizing rolling contact for solving particular problems. Thus, linear or recirculating bearings are available to provide low friction, accurate location, and simplified lubrication features to such applications as machine ways, axial motion devices, jack screws, steering linkages, collets, and chucks. This type of bearing utilizes the "full-complement" style of loading the rolling elements between "races" or ways without a cage and with each element advancing by the action of "races" in the loaded areas and by contact with the adjacent element in the unloaded areas. The "races" may not be cylindrical or bodies of revolution but plane surfaces, with suitable interruptions to free the rolling elements so that they can follow a return trough or slot back to the entry-point at the start of the "race" contact area. Combinations of radial and thrust bearings are available for the user with special requirements.

Plastics Bearings.—A more recent development has been the use of acetal resin rollers and balls in applications where abrasive, corrosive and difficult-to-lubricate conditions exist. Although these bearings do not have the load carrying capacity nor the low friction factor of their hard steel counterparts, they do offer freedom from indentation, wear, and corrosion, while at the same time providing significant weight savings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Of additional value are: 1) their resistance to indentation from shock loads or oscillation; and 2) their self-lubricating properties.

Usually these bearings are not available from stock, but must be designed and produced in accordance with the data made available by the plastics processor.

Pillow Block and Flanged Housing Bearings.—Of great interest in the shop and particularly adaptable to "line-shafting" applications are a series of ball and roller bearings supplied with their own housings, adapters, and seals. Often called pre-mounted bearings, they come with a wide variety of flange mountings permitting location on faces parallel to or perpendicular to the shaft axis.

Inner races can be mounted directly on ground shafts, or can be adapter-mounted to "drill-rod" or to commercial shafting. For installations sensitive to imbalance and vibration, the use of accurately ground shaft seats is recommended.

Most pillow block designs incorporate self-aligning types of bearings so they do not require the precision mountings utilized with more normal bearing installations.

Conventional Bearing Materials.—Most rolling contact bearings are made with all load carrying members of full hard steel, either through- or case-hardened. For greater reliability this material is controlled and selected for cleanliness and alloying practices in conformity with rigid specifications in order to reduce anomalies and inclusions that could limit the useful fatigue life. Magnaflux inspection is employed to ensure that elements are free from both material defects and cracks. Likewise, a light etch is employed between rough and finish grinding to allow detection of burns due to heavy stock removal and associated decarburization in finished pieces.

Cage Materials.—Standard bearings are normally made with cages of free-machining brass or low carbon sulfurized steel. In high-speed applications or where lubrication may be intermittent or marginal, special materials may be employed. Iron-silicon-bronze, laminated phenolics, silver-plating, over-lays, solid-film baked-on coatings, carbon-graphite inserts, and, in extreme cases, sintered or even impregnated materials are used in separators.

Commercial bearings usually rely on stamped steel with or without a phosphate treatment; some low cost varieties are found with snap-in plastic or metallic cages.

So long as lubrication is adequate and speeds are both reasonable and steady, the materials and design of the cage are of secondary importance when compared with those of the rolling elements and their contacts with the races. In spite of this tolerance, a good portion of all rolling bearing failures encountered can be traced to cage failures resulting from inadequate lubrication. It can never be overemphasized that *no bearing can be designed to run continuously without lubrication!*

Standard Method of Bearing Designation.—The Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association has adopted a standard identification code that provides a specific designation for each different ball, roller, and needle bearing. Thus, for any given bearing, a uniform designation is provided for manufacturer and user alike, so that the confusion of different company designations can be avoided.

In this identification code there is a "basic number" for each bearing that consists of three elements: a one- to four-digit number to indicate the size of the bore in numbers of millimeters (metric series); a two- or three-letter symbol to indicate the type of bearing; and a two-digit number to identify the dimension series to which the bearing belongs.

In addition to this "basic number" other numbers and letters are added to designate type of tolerance, cage, lubrication, fit up, ring modification, addition of shields, seals, mounting accessories, etc. Thus, a complete designating symbol might be *50BC02JPXE0A10*, for example. The basic number is *50BC02* and the remainder is the supplementary number. For a radial bearing, this latter consists of up to four letters to indicate modification of design, one or two digits to indicate internal fit and tolerances, a letter to indicate lubricants and preservatives, and up to three digits to indicate special requirements.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For a thrust bearing the supplementary number would consist of two letters to indicate modifications of design, one digit to indicate tolerances, one letter to indicate lubricants and preservatives, and up to three digits to indicate special requirements.

For a needle bearing the supplementary number would consist of up to three letters indicating cage material or integral seal information or whether the outer ring has a crowned outside surface and one letter to indicate lubricants or preservatives.

Dimension Series: Annular ball, cylindrical roller, and self-aligning roller bearings are made in a series of different outside diameters for every given bore diameter and in a series of different widths for every given outside diameter. Thus, each of these bearings belongs to a dimension series that is designated by a two-digit number such as or, 23, 93, etc. The first digit (8, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 9) indicates the *width series* and the second digit (7, 8, 9, 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4) the *diameter series* to which the bearing belongs. Similar types of identification codes are used for ball and roller thrust bearings and needle roller bearings.

Bearing Tolerances

Ball and Roller Bearings.—In order to provide standards of precision for proper application of ball or roller bearings in all types of equipment, five classes of tolerances have been established by the Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association for ball bearings, three for cylindrical roller bearings and one for spherical roller bearings. These tolerances are given in Table 2, Table 3, Table 4, Table 5, and Table 6. They are designated as ABEC-1, ABEC-3, ABEC-5, ABEC-7 and ABEC-9 for ball bearings, the ABEC-9 being the most precise, RBEC-1, RBEC-3, and RBEC-5 for roller bearings. In general, bearings to specifications closer than ABEC-1 or RBEC-1 are required because of the need for very precise fits on shaft or housing, to reduce eccentricity or runout of shaft or supported part, or to permit operation at very high speeds. All five classes include tolerances for bore, outside diameter, ring width, and radial runouts of inner and outer rings. ABEC-5, ABEC-7 and ABEC-9 provide added tolerances for parallelism of sides, side runout and groove parallelism with sides.

Thrust Bearings.—Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association and American National Standard tolerance limits for metric single direction thrust ball and roller bearings are given in Table 8. Tolerance limits for single direction thrust ball bearings, inch dimensioned are given in Table 7, and for cylindrical thrust roller bearings, inch dimensioned in Table 9.

Only one class of tolerance limits is established for metric thrust bearings.

Radial Needle Roller Bearings.—Tolerance limits for needle roller bearings, drawn cup, without inner ring, inch types NIB, NIBM, NIY, NIYM, NIH, and NIHM are given in Table 10 and for metric types NB, NBM, NY, NYM, NH and NHM in Table 11. Standard tolerance limits for needle roller bearings, with cage, machined ring, without inner ring, inch type NIA are given in Table 12 and for needle roller bearings inner rings, inch type NIR in Table 13.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. ABEC-1 and RBEC-1 Tolerance Limits for Metric Ball and Roller Bearings *ANSI/ABMA 20-1987*

Basic Inner Ring Bore Diameter, d		V_{dp},[a] max			Δ_{dmp}[b]		K_{ia}[c]
mm		Diameter Series					
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1	2, 3, 4	High	Low	max
2.5	10	10	8	6	0	–8	10
10	18	10	8	6	0	–8	10
18	30	13	10	8	0	–10	13
30	50	15	12	9	0	–12	15
50	80	19	19	11	0	–15	20
80	120	25	25	15	0	–20	25
120	180	31	31	19	0	–25	30
180	250	38	38	23	0	–30	40
250	315	44	44	26	0	–35	50
315	400	50	50	30	0	–40	60

[a] Bore diameter variation in a single radial plane.

[b] Single plane mean bore diameter deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[c] Radial runout of assembled bearing inner ring.

Basic Outer Ring Outside Outerside Diameter, D		V_{Dp},[a] max				Δ_{Dmp}[b]		K_{ea}[c]
		Open Bearings			Capped Bearings[d]			
mm		Diameter Series						
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1	2, 3, 4	2, 3, 4	High	Low	max
6	18	10	8	6	10	0	–8	15
18	30	12	9	7	12	0	–9	15
30	50	14	11	8	16	0	–11	20
50	80	16	13	10	20	0	–13	25
80	120	19	19	11	26	0	–15	35
120	150	23	23	14	30	0	–18	40
150	180	31	31	19	38	0	–25	45
180	250	38	38	23	…	0	–30	50
250	315	44	44	26	…	0	–35	60
315	400	50	50	50	…	0	–40	70

[a] Outside diameter variation in a single radial plane. Applies before mounting and after removal of internal or external snap ring.

[b] Single plane mean outside diameter deviation from basic.

[c] Radial runout of assembled bearing outer ring.

[d] No values have been established for diameters series 7, 8, 9, 0, and 1.

Width Tolerances									
d		Δ_{Bs}[a]			d		Δ_{Bs}[a]		
mm		All	Normal	Modified[b]	mm		All	Normal	Modified[b]
Over	Incl.	High	Low		Over	Incl.	High	Low	
2.5	10	0	–120	–250	80	120	0	–200	–380
10	18	0	–120	–250	120	180	0	–250	–500
18	30	0	–120	–250	180	250	0	–300	–500
30	50	0	–120	–250	250	315	0	–350	–500
50	80	0	–150	–380	315	400	0	–400	–630

[a] Single inner ring width deviation from basic. Δ_{Cs} (single outer ring width deviation from basic) is identical to Δ_{Bs} of inner ring of same bearing.

[b] Refers to the rings of single bearings made for paired or stack mounting.

All units are micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. For sizes beyond range of this table, see Standard. This table does not cover tapered roller bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. ABEC-3 AND RBEC-3 Tolerance Limits for Metric Ball and Roller Bearings *ANSI/ABMA 20-1987*

Basic Inner Ring Bore Diameter, d		V_{dp},[a] max			Δ_{dmp}[b]		K_{ia}[c]
mm		Diameter Series					
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1	2, 3, 4	High	Low	max
2.5	10	9	7	5	0	–7	6
10	18	9	7	5	0	–7	7
18	30	10	8	6	0	–8	8
30	50	13	10	8	0	–10	10
50	80	15	15	9	0	–12	10
80	120	19	19	11	0	–15	13
120	180	23	23	14	0	–18	18
180	250	28	28	17	0	–22	20
250	315	31	31	19	0	–25	25
315	400	38	38	23	0	–30	30

[a] Bore diameter variation in a single radial plane.

[b] Single plane mean bore diameter deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[c] Radial runout of assembled bearing inner ring.

Basic Outer Ring Outside Outerside Diameter, D		V_{Dp},[a] max				Δ_{Dmp}[b]		K_{ea}[c]
		Open Bearings			Capped Bearings[d]			
mm		Diameter Series						
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1	2, 3, 4	2, 3, 4	High	Low	max
6	18	9	7	5	9	0	–7	8
18	30	10	8	6	10	0	–8	9
30	50	11	9	7	13	0	–9	10
50	80	14	11	8	16	0	–11	13
80	120	16	16	10	20	0	–13	18
120	150	19	19	11	25	0	–15	20
150	180	23	23	14	30	0	–18	23
180	250	25	25	15	…	0	–20	25
250	315	31	31	19	…	0	–25	30
315	400	35	35	21	…	0	–28	35

[a] Outside diameter variation in a single radial plane. Applies before mounting and after removal of internal or external snap ring.

[b] Single plane mean outside diameter deviation from basic.

[c] Radial runout of assembled bearing outer ring.

[d] No values have been established for diameter series 7, 8, 9, 0, and 1.

Width Tolerances									
d		Δ_{Bs}[a]			d		Δ_{Bs}[a]		
mm		All	Normal	Modified[b]	mm		All	Normal	Modified[b]
Over	Incl.	High	Low		Over	Incl.	High	Low	
2.5	10	0	–120	–250	80	120	0	–200	–380
10	18	0	–120	–250	120	180	0	–250	–500
18	30	0	–120	–250	180	250	0	–300	–500
30	50	0	–120	–250	250	315	0	–350	–500
50	80	0	–150	–380	315	400	0	–400	–630

[a] Single inner ring width deviation from basic. Δ_{Cs} (single outer ring width deviation from basic) is identical to Δ_{Bs} of inner ring of same bearing.

[b] Refers to the rings of single bearings made for paired or stack mounting.

All units are micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. For sizes beyond range of this table, see Standard. This table does not cover tapered roller bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ABEC-5 and RBEC-5 Tolerance Limits for Metric Ball and Roller Bearings *ANSI/ABMA 20-1987*

INNER RING												
Inner Ring Bore Basic Dia., d mm		V_{dp},[a] max Diameter Series		Δ_{dmp}[b]		Radial Runout K_{ia}	Ref. Face Runout with Bore S_d	Axial Runout S_{ia}[c]	Width			
									Δ_{Bs}[d]			V_{Bs}[e]
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	High	Low	max	max	max	All	Normal	Modified[f]	max
2.5	10	5	4	0	–5	4	7	7	0	–40	–250	5
10	18	5	4	0	–5	4	7	7	0	–80	–250	5
18	30	6	5	0	–6	4	8	8	0	–120	–250	5
30	50	8	6	0	–8	5	8	8	0	–120	–250	5
50	80	9	7	0	–9	5	8	8	0	–150	–250	6
80	120	10	8	0	–10	6	9	9	0	–200	–380	7
120	180	13	10	0	–13	8	10	10	0	–250	–380	8
180	250	15	12	0	–15	10	11	13	0	–300	–500	10

[a] Bore (V_{dp}) and outside diameter (V_{Dp}) variation in a single radial plane.

[b] Single plane mean bore (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[c] Axial runout of assembled bearing with inner ring S_{ia}. Applies to groove-type ball bearings only.

[d] Single bore (Δ_{Bs}) and outer ring (Δ_{Cs}) width variation.

[e] Inner (V_{Bs}) and outer (V_{Cs}) ring width deviation from basic.

[f] Applies to the rings of single bearings made for paired or stack mounting.

OUTER RING											
Basic Outer Ring Outside Dia., D mm		V_{Dp},[a,b] max Diameter Series		Δ_{Dmp}[c]		Radial Runout K_{ea}	Outside Cylindrical Surface Runout S_D[d]	Axial Runout S_{ea}[e]	Width		
									Δ_{Cs}[f]		V_{Cs}[g]
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	High	Low	max	max	max	High	Low	max
6	18	5	4	0	–5	5	8	8	Identical to Δ_{Bs} of inner ring of same bearing		5
18	30	6	5	0	–6	6	8	8			5
30	50	7	5	0	–7	7	8	8			5
50	80	9	7	0	–9	8	8	10			6
80	120	10	8	0	–10	10	9	11			8
120	150	11	8	0	–11	11	10	13			8
150	180	13	10	0	–13	13	10	14			8
180	250	15	11	0	–15	15	11	15			10

[a] Bore (V_{dp}) and outside diameter (V_{Dp}) variation in a single radial plane.

[b] No values have been established for capped bearings.

[c] Single plane mean bore (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[d] Outside cylindrical surface runout with outer ring reference face S_D

[e] Axial runout of assembled bearing with outer ring S_{ea}.

[f] Single bore (Δ_{Bs}) and outer ring (Δ_{Cs}) width variation.

[g] Inner (V_{Bs}) and outer (V_{Cs}) ring width deviation from basic.

All units are micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. For sizes beyond range of this table, see Standard. This table does not cover instrument bearings and tapered roller bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. ABEC-7 Tolerance Limits for Metric Ball and Roller Bearings *ANSI/ABMA 20-1987*

INNER RING														
Inner Ring Bore Basic Diameter, d mm		V_{dp},[a] max Diameter Series		Δ_{dmp}[b]		Δ_{ds}[c]		Radial Runout K_{ia}	Ref. Face Runout with Bore S_d	Axial Runout S_{ia}[d]	Width			
											Δ_{Bs}[e]			V_{Bs}[f]
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	High	Low	High	Low	max	max	max	All	Normal	Modified[g]	max
2.5	10	4	3	0	−4	0	−4	2.5	3	3	0	−40	−250	2.5
10	18	4	3	0	−4	0	−4	2.5	3	3	0	−80	−250	2.5
18	30	5	4	0	−5	0	−5	3	4	4	0	−120	−250	2.5
30	50	6	5	0	−6	0	−6	4	4	4	0	−120	−250	3
50	80	7	5	0	−7	0	−7	4	5	5	0	−150	−250	4
80	120	8	6	0	−8	0	−8	5	5	5	0	−200	−380	4
120	180	10	8	0	−10	0	−10	6	6	7	0	−250	−380	5
180	250	12	9	0	−12	0	−12	8	7	8	0	−300	−500	6

[a] Bore (V_{dp}) and outside diameter (V_{Dp}) variation in a single radial plane.

[b] Single plane mean bore (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[c] Single bore (Δ_{ds}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Ds}) deviations from basic. These deviations apply to diameter series 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 only.

[d] Axial run out of assembled bearing with inner ring S_{ia}. Applies to groove-type ball bearings only.

[e] Single bore (Δ_{Bs}) and outer ring (Δ_{Cs}) width deviation from basic.

[f] Inner (V_{Bs}) and outer (V_{Cs}) ring width variation.

[g] Applies to the rings of single bearings made for paired or stack mounting.

OUTER RING													
Basic Outer Ring Outside Dia., D mm		V_{Dp},[a,b] max Diameter Series		Δ_{Dmp}[b]		Δ_{Ds}[c]		Radial Runout K_{ea}	Surface Runout S_D[d]	Axial Runout S_{ea}[f]	Width		
											Δ_{Cs}[g]		V_{Cs}[h]
Over	Incl.	7, 8, 9	0, 1, 2, 3, 4	High	Low	High	Low	max	max	max	High	Low	max
6	18	4	3	0	−4	0	−4	3	4	5	Identical to Δ_{Bs} of inner ring of same bearing		2.5
18	30	5	4	0	−5	0	−5	4	4	5			2.5
30	50	6	5	0	−6	0	−6	5	4	5			2.5
50	80	7	5	0	−7	0	−7	5	4	5			3
80	120	8	6	0	−8	0	−8	6	5	6			4
120	150	9	7	0	−9	0	−9	7	5	7			5
150	180	10	8	0	−10	0	−10	8	5	8			5
180	250	11	8	0	−11	0	−11	19	7	10			7

[a] Bore (V_{dp}) and outside diameter (V_{Dp}) variation in a single radial plane.

[b] No values have been established for capped bearings.

[c] Single plane mean bore (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers only to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[d] Single bore (Δ_{ds}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Ds}) deviations from basic. These deviations apply to diameter series 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4 only.

[e] Outside cylindrical surface runout outer ring reference face S_D

[f] Axial run out of assembled bearing with outer ring S_{ia}. Applies to groove-type ball bearings only.

[g] Single bore (Δ_{Bs}) and outer ring (Δ_{Cs}) width deviation from basic.

[h] Inner (V_{Bs}) and outer (V_{Cs}) ring width variation.

All units are micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. For sizes beyond range of this table, see Standard. This table does not cover instrument bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. ABEC-9 Tolerance Limits for Metric Ball and Roller Bearing *ANSI/ABMA 20-1987*

INNER RING												
Inner Ring Bore Basic Dia., d mm		V_{dp},[a] max	Δ_{dmp}[b]		Δ_{ds}[c]		Radial Runout K_{ia}	Ref. Face Runout with Bore S_d	Axial Runout of Assembled Bearing with Inner Ring S_{ia}[d]	Width		
										Δ_{Bs}[e]		V_{Bs}[f]
Over	Incl.	max	High	Low	High	Low	max	max	max	High	Low	max
2.5	10	2.5	0	–2.5	0	–2.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	0	–40	1.5
10	18	2.5	0	–2.5	0	–2.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	0	–80	1.5
18	30	2.5	0	–2.5	0	–2.5	2.5	1.5	2.5	0	–120	1.5
30	50	2.5	0	–2.5	0	–2.5	2.5	1.5	2.5	0	–120	1.5
50	80	4	0	–4	0	–4	2.5	1.5	2.5	0	–150	1.5
50	80	4	0	–4	0	–4	2.5	1.5	2.5	0	–150	1.5
80	120	5	0	–5	0	–5	2.5	2.5	2.5	0	–200	2.5
120	150	7	0	–7	0	–7	2.5	2.5	2.5	0	–250	2.5
150	180	7	0	–7	0	–7	5	4	5	0	–300	4
180	250	8	0	–8	0	–8	5	5	5	0	–350	5

[a] Bore (V_{dp}) and outside diameter (V_{Dp}) variation in a single radial plane.

[b] Single plane mean bore (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) deviation from basic. (For a basically tapered bore, Δ_{dmp} refers to the theoretical small end of the bore.)

[c] Single bore diameter (Δ_{ds}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Ds}) deviation from basic.

[d] Applies to groove-type ball bearings only.

[e] Single bore (Δ_{Bs}) and outer ring (Δ_{Cs}) width variation from basic.

[f] Inner (V_{Bs}) and outer (V_{Cs}) ring width variation.

OUTER RING												
Basic Outside Diameter, D mm		V_{Dp}[a]	Δ_{Dmp}[b]		Δ_{Ds}[c]		Radial Runout K_{ea}	Outside Cylindrical Surface Runout with Outer Ring S_D	Axial Runout of Assembled Bearing with Outer Ring S_{ea}	Width		
										Δ_{Cs}[e]		V_{Cs}[f]
Over	Incl.	max	High	Low	High	Low	max	max	max	High	Low	max
6	18	2.5	0	–2.5	0	–2.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	Identical to Δ_{Bs} of inner ring of same bearing		1.5
18	30	4	0	–4	0	–4	2.5	1.5	2.5			1.5
30	50	4	0	–4	0	–4	2.5	1.5	2.5			1.5
50	80	4	0	–4	0	–4	4	1.5	4			1.5
80	120	5	0	–5	0	–5	5	2.5	5			1.5
120	150	5	0	–5	0	–5	5	2.5	5			1.5
150	180	7	0	–7	0	–7	5	2.5	5			2.5
180	250	8	0	–8	0	–8	7	4	7			4
250	315	8	0	–8	0	–8	7	5	7			5

[a] No values have been established for capped bearings.

All units are micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. For sizes beyond range of this table, see Standard. This table does not cover instrument bearings.

Table 7. Tolerance Limits for Single Direction Ball Thrust Bearings — Inch Design *ANSI/ABMA 24.2-1989 (R1999)*

Bore Diameter[a] d, Inches		Single Plane Mean Bore Dia. Variation, d, Inch		Outside Diameter D, Inches		Single Plane Mean O.D. Variation, D, Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	High	Low
0	6.7500	+0.005	0	0	5.3125	+0	–0.002
6.7500	20.0000	+0.010	0	5.3125	17.3750	+0	–0.003
…	…	…	…	17.3750	39.3701	+0	–0.004

[a] Bore tolerance limits: For bore diameters 0 to 1.8125 inches, inclusive, +0.005, –0.005; over 1.8125 to 12.000 inches, inclusive, +0.010,–0.010; over 12.000 to 20.000, inclusive, +0.0150, –0.0150.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Metric Single Direction Thrust Ball (Type TA) and Roller Type (Type TS) Bearings *ANSI/ABMA 24.1-1989 (R1999)*

Bore Dia. of Shaft Washer, d		Δd_{mp}[a]		S_i, S_e[b]	$\Delta T_{s\,min}$[c]			Outside Dia. of Housing Washer, D		ΔD_{mp}[a]	
mm								mm			
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Max	Max	Type TA	Type TS	Over	Incl.	High	Low
18	30	0	−10	10	20	−250	…	10	18	0	−11
30	**50**	**0**	**−12**	10	**20**	−250	−300	18	30	0	−13
50	**80**	**0**	**−15**	10	**20**	−300	−400	30	50	0	−16
80	**120**	**0**	**−20**	15	**25**	−300	−400	**50**	**80**	**0**	**−19**
120	**180**	**0**	**−25**	15	**25**	−400	−500	**80**	**120**	**0**	**−22**
180	**250**	**0**	**−30**	20	**30**	−400	−500	**120**	**180**	**0**	**−25**
250	**315**	**0**	**−35**	25	**40**	−400	−700	**180**	**250**	**0**	**−30**
315	**400**	**0**	**−40**	30	**40**	-500	−700	**250**	**315**	**0**	**−35**
400	**500**	**0**	**−45**	30	**50**	−500	−900	**315**	**400**	**0**	**−40**
500	**630**	**0**	**−50**	35	**60**	−600	−1200	**400**	**500**	**0**	**−45**

[a] Single plane mean bore diameter deviation of central shaft washer (Δ_{dmp}) and outside diameter (Δ_{Dmp}) variation.

[b] Raceway parallelism with the face, housing-mounted (S_e) and bore-mounted (S_i) race or washer.

[c] Deviation of the actual bearing height.

All dimensions in micrometers, unless otherwise indicated. Tolerances are for normal tolerance class only. For sizes beyond the range of this table and for other tolerance class values, see Standard. All entries apply to type TA bearings; boldface entries also apply to type TS bearings.

Table 9. Tolerance Limits for Cylindrical Roller Thrust Bearings — Inch Design *ANSI/ABMA 24.2-1989 (R1999)*

Basic Bore Dia., d		Δd_{mp}[a]		ΔT_s[b]		Basic Outside dia., D		ΔD_{mp}[c]	
Over	Incl.	Low	High	High	Low	Over	Incl.	High	Low
EXTRA LIGHT SERIES — TYPE TP									
0	0.9375	+.0040	+.0060	+.0050	−.0050	0	4.7188	+0	−.0030
0.9375	1.9375	+.0050	+.0070	+.0050	−.0050	4.7188	5.2188	+0	−.0030
1.9375	3.0000	+.0060	+.0080	+.0050	−.0050	…	…	…	…
3.0000	3.5000	+.0080	+.0100	−.0100	−.0100	…	…	…	…

[a] Single plane mean bore diameter deviation.

[b] Deviation of the actual bearing height, single direction bearing.

[c] Single plane mean outside diameter deviation.

Basic Bore Diameter, d		Δd_{mp}[a]		Basic Outside Diameter, D		Outside Dia., D Tolerance Limits		Basic Bore Diameter, d		ΔT_s	
Over	Inc.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	High	Low
LIGHT SERIES — TYPE TP											
0	1.1870	+0	−.0005	0	2.8750	+.0005	−0	0	2.0000	+0	−.006
1.1870	1.3750	+0	−.0006	2.8750	3.3750	+.0007	−0	2.0000	3.0000	+0	−.008
1.3750	1.5620	+0	−.0007	3.3750	3.7500	+.0009	−0	3.0000	6.0000	+0	−.010
1.5620	1.7500	+0	−.0008	3.7500	4.1250	+.0011	−0	6.0000	10.0000	+0	−.015
1.7500	1.9370	+0	−.0009	4.1250	4.7180	+.0013	−0	10.0000	18.0000	+0	−.020
1.9370	2.1250	+0	−.0010	4.7180	5.2180	+.0015	−0	18.0000	30.0000	+0	−.025
2.1250	2.5000	+0	−.0011	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2.2500	3.0000	+0	−.0012	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
3.0000	3.5000	+0	−.0013	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
HEAVY SERIES — TYPE TP											
2.0000	3.0000	+0	−.0010	5.0000	10.0000	+.0015	−0	0	2.000	+0	−.006
3.0000	3.5000	+0	−.0012	10.0000	18.0000	+.0020	−0	2.000	3.000	+0	−.008
3.5000	9.0000	+0	−.0015	18.0000	26.0000	+.0025	−0	3.000	6.000	+0	−.010
9.0000	12.0000	+0	−.0018	26.0000	34.0000	+.0030	−0	6.000	10.000	+0	−.015
12.0000	18.0000	+0	−.0020	34.0000	44.0000	+.0040	−0	10.000	18.000	+0	−.020
18.0000	22.0000	+0	−.0025	…	…	…	…	18.000	30.000	+0	−.025
22.0000	30.0000	+0	−.003	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
TYPE TPC											
0	2.0156	+.010	−0	2.5000	4.0000	+.005	−.005	0	2.0156	+0	−.008
2.0156	3.0156	+.010	−.020	4.0000	6.0000	+.006	−.006	2.0156	3.0156	+0	−.010
3.0156	6.0156	+.015	−.020	6.0000	10.0000	+.010	−.010	3.0156	6.0156	+0	−.015
6.0156	10.1560	+.015	−.050	10.0000	18.0000	+.012	−.012	6.0156	10.1560	+0	−.020

All dimensions are in inches. For Type TR bearings, see Standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup, Without Inner Ring — Inch Types NIB, NIBM, NIY, NIYM, NIH, and NIHM *ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)*

Ring Gage Bore Diameter[a]			Basic Bore Diameter under Needle Rollers, F_w		Allowable Deviation from F_w[a]		Allowable Deviation from Width, B	
Basic Outside Diameter, D Inch		Deviation from D Inch	Inch		Inch		Inch	
Over	Incl.		Over	Incl.	Low	High	High	Low
0.1875	0.9375	+0.0005						
0.9375	4.0000	–0.0005						
For fitting and mounting practice see Table 19.			0.1875	0.6875	+0.0015	+0.0024	+0	–0.0100
			0.6875	1.2500	+0.0005	+0.0014	+0	–0.0100
			1.2500	1.3750	+0.0005	+0.0015	+0	–0.0100
			1.3750	1.6250	+0.0005	+0.0016	+0	–0.0100
			1.6250	1.8750	+0.0005	+0.0017	+0	–0.0100
			1.8750	2.0000	+0.0006	+0.0018	+0	–0.0100
			2.0000	2.5000	+0.0006	+0.0020	+0	–0.0100
			2.5000	3.5000	+0.0010	+0.0024	+0	–0.0100

[a] The bore diameter under needle rollers can be measured only when bearing is pressed into a ring gage, which rounds and sizes the bearing.

Table 11. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup, Without Inner Ring — Metric Types NB, NBM, NY, NYM, NH, and NHM *ANSI/ABMA 18.1-1982 (R1999)*

Ring Gage Bore Diameter[a]			Basic Bore Diameter under Needle Rollers, F_w		Allowable Deviation from F_w[a]		Allowable Deviation from Width, B	
Basic Outside Diameter, D		Deviation from D	mm		Micrometers		Micrometers	
mm								
Over	Incl.	Micrometers	Over	Incl.	Low	High	High	Low
6	10	–16	3	6	+10	+28	+0	–250
10	18	–20	6	10	+13	+31	+0	–250
30	50	–28	18	30	+20	+41	+0	–250
50	80	–33	30	50	+25	+50	+0	–250
…	…	…	50	70	+30	+60	+0	–250

[a] The bore diameter under needle rollers can be measured only when bearing is pressed into a ring gage, which rounds and sizes the bearing.

For fitting and mounting practice, see Table 19.

Table 12. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Needle Roller Bearings, With Cage, Machined Ring, Without Inner Ring — Inch Type NIA *ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)*

Basic Outside Diameter, D		Allowable Deviation From D of Single Mean Diameter, D_{mp}		Basic Bore Diameter under Needle Rollers, F_w		Allowable Deviation from F_w		Allowable Deviation from Width, B	
Inch		Inch		Inch		Inch		Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Low	High	High	Low
0.7500	2.0000	+0	–0.0005	0.3150	0.7087	+0.0008	+0.0017	+0	–0.0050
2.0000	3.2500	+0	–0.0006	0.7087	1.1811	+0.0009	+0.0018	+0	–0.0050
3.2500	4.7500	+0	–0.0008	1.1811	1.6535	+0.0010	+0.0019	+0	–0.0050
4.7500	7.2500	+0	–0.0010	1.6535	1.9685	+0.0010	+0.0020	+0	–0.0050
				1.9685	2.7559	+0.0011	+0.0021	+0	–0.0050
7.2500	10.2500	+0	–0.0012	2.7559	3.1496	+0.0011	+0.0023	+0	–0.0050
10.2500	11.1250	+0	–0.0014	3.1496	4.0157	+0.0012	+0.0024	+0	–0.0050
…	…	…	…	4.0157	4.7244	+0.0012	+0.0026	+0	–0.0050
…	…	…	…	4.7244	6.2992	+0.0013	+0.0027	+0	–0.0050
…	…	…	…	6.2992	7.0866	+0.0013	+0.0029	+0	–0.0050
…	…	…	…	7.0866	7.8740	+0.0014	+0.0030	+0	–0.0050
…	…	…	…	7.8740	9.2520	+0.0014	+0.0032	+0	–0.0050

For fitting and mounting practice, see Table 20.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Needle Roller Bearing Inner Rings—Inch Type NIR *ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)*

Basic Outside Diameter, F		Allowable Deviation From F of Single Mean Diameter, F_{mp}		Basic Bore Diameter d		Allowable Deviation from d of Single Mean Diameter, d_{mp}		Allowable Deviation from Width, B	
Inch		Inch		Inch		Inch		Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	High	Low	High	Low
0.3937	0.7087	–0.0005	–0.0009	0.3125	0.7500	+0	–0.0004	+0.0100	+0.0050
0.7087	1.0236	–0.0007	–0.0012	0.7500	2.0000	+0	–0.0005	+0.0100	+0.0050
1.0236	1.1811	–0.0009	–0.0014	2.0000	3.2500	+0	–0.0006	+0.0100	+0.0050
1.1811	1.3780	–0.0009	–0.0015	3.2500	4.2500	+0	–0.0008	+0.0100	+0.0050
1.3780	1.9685	–0.0010	–0.0016	4.2500	4.7500	+0	–0.0008	+0.0150	+0.0100
1.9685	3.1496	–0.0011	–0.0018	4.7500	7.0000	+0	–0.0010	+0.0150	+0.0100
3.1496	3.9370	–0.0013	–0.0022	7.0000	8.0000	+0	–0.0012	+0.0150	+0.0100
3.9370	4.7244	–0.0015	–0.0024	…	…	…	…	…	…
4.7244	5.5118	–0.0015	–0.0025	…	…	…	…	…	…
5.5118	7.0866	–0.0017	–0.0027	…	…	…	…	…	…
7.0866	8.2677	–0.0019	–0.0031	…	…	…	…	…	…
8.2677	9.2520	–0.0020	–0.0032	…	…	…	…	…	…

For fitting and mounting practice, see Table 21.

Metric Radial Ball and Roller Bearing Shaft and Housing Fits.—To select the proper fits, it is necessary to consider the type and extent of the load, bearing type, and certain other design and performance requirements.

The required shaft and housing fits are indicated in Table 14 and Table 15. The terms "Light," "Normal," and "Heavy" loads refer to radial loads that are generally within the following limits, with some overlap (C being the Basic Load Rating computed in accordance with AFBMA-ANSI Standards):

Bearing Type	Radial Load		
	Light	Normal	Heavy
Ball	Up to 0.075C	From 0.075C to 0.15C	Over 0.15C
Cylindrical Roller	Up to 0.075C	From 0.075C to 0.2C	Over 0.15C
Spherical Roller	Up to 0.075C	From 0.070C to 0.25C	Over 0.15C

Shaft Fits: Table 14 indicates the initial approach to shaft fit selection. Note that for most normal applications where the shaft rotates and the radial load direction is constant, an interference fit should be used. Also, the heavier the load, the greater is the required interference. For stationary shaft conditions and constant radial load direction, the inner ring may be moderately loose on the shaft.

For pure thrust (axial) loading, heavy interference fits are not necessary; only a moderately loose to tight fit is needed.

The upper part of Table 16 shows how the shaft diameters for various ANSI shaft limit classifications deviate from the basic bore diameters.

Table 17 gives metric values for the shaft diameter and housing bore tolerance limits given in Table 16.

The lower parts of Table 16 and Table 17 show how housing bores for various ANSI hole limit classifications deviate from the basic shaft outside diameters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Selection of Shaft Tolerance Classifications for Metric Radial Ball and Roller Bearings of ABEC-1 and RBEC-1 Tolerance Classes *ANSI/ABMA 7-1995 (R2001)*

Operating Conditions			Ball Bearings		Cylindrical Roller Bearings		Spherical Roller Bearings		Tolerance Symbol[a]
			mm	Inch	mm	Inch	mm	Inch	
Inner ring stationary in relation to the direction of the load.	All loads	Inner ring has to be easily displaceable	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	g6
		Inner ring does not have to be easily displaceable	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	All diameters	h6
	Radial load:		Nominal Shaft Diameter						
Direction of load indeterminate or the inner ring rotating in relation to the direction of the load.	LIGHT		≤18 >18	≤0.71 >0.71	 ≤40 (40)-140 (140)–320 (320)–500 >500	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–5.51 (5.51)–12.6 (126)–19.7 >19.7	 ≤40 (40)–100 (100)–320 (320)–500 >500	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–3.94 (3.94)–12.6 (126)–19.7 >19.7	h5 j6[b] k6[b] m6[b] n6 p6
	NORMAL		≤18 >18	≤0.71 >0.71	 ≤40 (40)–100 (100)–140 (140)–320 (320)–500 >500	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–3.94 (3.94)–5.51 (5.51)–12.6 (12.6)–19.7 >19.7	 ≤40 (40)–65 (65)–100 (100)–140 (140)–280 (280)–500 >500	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–2.56 (2.56)–3.94 (3.94)–5.51 (5.51)–11.0 (11.0)–19.7 >19.7	j5 k5 m5 m6 n6 p6 r6 r7
	HEAVY		(18)–100 >100	(0.71)–3.94 >3.94	 ≤40 (40)-65 (65)–140 (140)–200 (200)–500 >500	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–2.56 (2.56)–5.51 (5.51)–7.87 (7.87)–19.7 >19.7	 ≤40 (40)–65 (65)–100 (100)–140 (140)–200 >200	 ≤1.57 (1.57)–2.56 (2.56)–3.94 (3.94)–5.51 (5.51)–7.87 >7.87	k5 m5 m6[b] n6[b] p6[b] r6[b] r7[b]
Pure Thrust Load			All diams.	All diams.	Consult Bearing Manufacturer				j6

[a] For solid steel shafts. For hollow or nonferrous shafts, tighter fits may be needed.

[b] When greater accuracy is required, use j5, k5, and m5 instead of j6, k6, and m6, respectively.

Numerical values are given in Table 16 and Table 17.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Selection of Housing Tolerance Classifications for Metric Radial Ball and Roller Bearings of ABEC-1 and RBEC-1 Tolerance Classes

Design and Operating Conditions				Tolerance Classification[a]
Rotational Conditions	Loading	Outer Ring Axial Displacement Limitations	Other Conditions	
Outer ring stationary in relation to load direction	Light Normal and Heavy	Outer ring must be easily axially displaceable	Heat input through shaft	G7
			Housing split axially	H7[b]
			Housing not split axially	H6[b]
	Shock with temporary complete unloading	Transitional Range[c]		J6[b]
Load direction is indeterminate	Light and normal			
	Normal and Heavy			
	Heavy Shock			
			Split housing not recommended	K6[b]
Outer ring rotating in relation to load direction	Light			M6[b]
	Normal and Heavy	Outer ring need not be axially displaceable		N6[b]
	Heavy		Thin wall housing not split	P6[b]

[a] For cast iron or steel housings. For housings of nonferrous alloys tighter fits may be needed.
[b] Where wider tolerances are permissible, use tolerance classifications P7, N7, M7, K7, J7, and H7, in place of P6, N6, M6, K6, J6, and H6, respectively.
[c] The tolerance zones are such that the outer ring may be either tight or loose in the housing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 16. AFBMA and American National Standard Shaft Diameter and Housing Bore Tolerance Limits *ANSI/ABMA 7-1995 (R2001)*

Allowable Deviations of Shaft Diameter from Basic Bore Diameter, Inch															
Inches		mm													
Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.												
Base Bore Diameter				g6	h6	h5	j5	j6	k5	k6	m5	m6	n6	p6	r6	r7
0.2362	0.3937	6	10	−.0002 −.0006	0 −.0004	0 −.0002	+.0002 −.0001	+.0003 −.0001	+.0003 0		+.0005 +.0002					
0.3937	0.7087	10	18	−.0002 −.0007	0 −.0004	0 −.0003	+.0002 −.0001	+.0003 −.0001	+.0004 0		+.0006 +.0003					
0.7087	1.1811	18	30	−.0003 −.0008	0 −.0005		+.0002 −.0002	+.0004 −.0002	+.0004 +.0001		+.0007 +.0003					
1.1811	1.9685	30	50	−.0004 −.0010	0 −.0006		+.0002 −.0002	+.0004 −.0002	+.0005 +.0001	+.0007 +.0001	+.0008 +.0004	+.0010 +.0004				
1.9685	3.1496	50	80	−.0004 −.0011	0 −.0007		+.0002 −.0003	+.0005 −.0003	+.0006 +.0001	+.0008 +.0001	+.0009 +.0004	+.0012 +.0004	+.0018 +.0009			
3.1496	4.7244	80	120	−.0005 −.0013	0 −.0009		+.0002 −.0004	+.0005 −.0004	+.0007 +.0001	+.0010 +.0001	+.0011 +.0005	+.0014 +.0005	+.0019 +.0010	+.0023 +.0015		
Allowable Deviations of Housing Bore from Basic Outside Diameter of Shaft, Inch																
Basic Outside Diameter				G7	H7	H6	J7	J6	K6	K7	M6	M7	N6	N7	P6	P7
0.7087	1.1811	18	30	+.0003 +.0011	0 +.0008	0 +.0005	−.0004 +.0005	−.0002 +.0003	−.0004 +.0001	−.0006 +.0002	−.0007 +.0002	−.0008 0	−.0009 −.0004	−.0011 −.0003	−.0012 −.0007	−.0014 −.0006
1.1811	1.9685	30	50	+.0004 +.0013	0 +.0010	0 +.0006	−.0004 +.0006	−.0002 +.0004	−.0005 +.0001	−.0007 +.0003	−.0008 −.0002	−.0010 0	−.0011 −.0005	−.0013 −.0003	−.0015 −.0008	−.0017 −.0007
1.9685	3.1496	50	80	+.0004 +.0016	0 +.0012	0 +.0007	−.0005 +.0007	−.0002 +.0005	−.0006 +.0002	−.0008 +.0004	−.0009 −.0002	−.0012 0	−.0013 −.0006	−.0015 −.0004	−.0018 −.0010	−.0020 −.0008
3.1496	4.7244	80	120	+.0005 +.0019	0 +.0014	0 +.0009	−.0005 +.0009	−.0002 +.0006	−.0007 +.0002	−.0010 +.0004	−.0011 −.0002	−.0014 0	−.0015 −.0006	−.0018 −.0004	−.0020 −.0012	−.0023 −.0009
4.7244	7.0866	120	180	+.0006 +.0021	0 +.0016	0 +.0010	−.0006 +.0010	−.0003 +.0007	−.0008 +.0002	−.0011 +.0005	−.0013 −.0003	−.0016 0	−.0018 −.0008	−.0020 −.0005	−.0024 −.0014	−.0027 −.0011
7.0866	9.8425	180	250	+.0006 +.0024	0 +.0018	0 +.0011	−.0006 +.0012	−.0003 +.0009	−.0009 +.0002	−.0013 +.0005	−.0015 −.0003	−.0018 0	−.0020 −.0009	−.0024 −.0006	−.0028 −.0016	−.0031 −.0013

Based on ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print) Preferred Limits and Fits for Cylindrical Parts. Symbols g6, h6, etc., are shaft and G7, H7, etc., hole limits designations. For larger diameters and metric values see AFBMA Standard 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. AFBMA and American National Standard Shaft Diameter and Housing Bore Tolerance Limits *ANSI/ABMA 7-1995 (R2001)*

Allowable Deviations of Shaft Diameter from Basic Bore Diameter, mm															
Inches		mm													
Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.												
Base Bore Diameter				g6	h6	h5	j5	j6	k5	k6	m5	m6	n6	p6	r6	r7
0.2362	0.3937	6	10	−.005 −.014	0 −.009	0 −.006	+.004 −.002	+.007 −.002	+.007 −.001		+.012 +.006					
0.3937	0.7087	10	18	−.006 −.017	0 −.011	0 −.008	+.005 −.003	+.008 −.003	+.009 +.001		+.015 +.007					
0.7087	1.1811	18	30	−.007 −.020	0 −.013		+.005 −.004	+.009 −.004	+.011 +.002		+.017 +.008					
1.1811	1.9685	30	50	−.009 −.025	0 −.016		+.006 −.005	+.011 −.005	+.013 +.002	+.018 +.002	+.020 +.009	+.025 +.009				
1.9685	3.1496	50	80	−.010 −.029	0 −.019		+.006 −.007	+.012 −.007	+.015 +.002	+.021 +.002	+.024 +.011	+.030 +.011	+.039 +.020			
3.1496	4.7244	80	120	−.012 −.034	0 −.022		+.006 −.009	+.013 −.009	+.018 +.003	+.025 +.003	+.028 +.013	+.035 +.013	+.045 +.023	+.059 +.037		
Allowable Deviations of Housing Bore from Basic Outside Diameter of Shaft, mm															
Basic Outside Diameter				G7	H7	H6	J7	J6	K6	K7	M6	M7	N6	N7	P6	P7
.7086	1.1811	18	30	+.007 +.028	0 +.021	0 +.013	−.009 +.012	−.005 +.008	−.011 +.002	−.015 +.006	−.017 −.004	−.021 0	−.024 −.011	−.028 −.007	−.031 −.018	−.035 −.014
1.1811	1.9685	30	50	+.009 +.034	0 +.025	0 +.016	−.011 +.014	−.006 +.010	−.013 +.003	−.018 +.007	−.020 −.004	−.025 0	−.028 −.012	−.033 −.008	−.037 −.021	−.042 −.017
1.9685	3.1496	50	80	+.010 +.040	0 +.030	0 +.019	−.012 +.018	−.006 +.013	−.015 +.004	−.021 +.009	−.024 −.005	−.030 0	−.033 −.014	−.039 −.009	−.045 −.026	−.051 −.021
3.1496	4.7244	80	120	+.012 +.047	0 +.035	0 +.022	−.013 +.022	−.006 +.016	−.018 +.004	−.025 +.010	−.028 −.006	−.035 0	−.038 −.016	−.045 −.010	−.052 −.030	−.059 −.024
4.7244	7.0866	120	180	+.014 +.054	0 +.040	0 +.025	−.014 +.026	−.007 +.018	−.021 +.004	−.028 +.012	−.033 −.008	−.040 0	−.045 −.020	−.052 −.012	−.061 −.036	−.068 −.028
7.0866	9.8425	180	250	+.015 +.061	0 +.046	0 +.029	−.016 +.030	−.007 +.022	−.024 +.005	−.033 +.013	−.037 −.008	−.046 0	−.051 −.022	−.060 −.014	−.070 −.041	−.079 −.033

Based on ANSI/ASME B4.1-1967 (2009; out of print) Preferred Limits and Fits for Cylindrical Parts. Symbols g6, h6, etc., are shaft and G7, H7, etc., hole limits designations. For larger diameters and metric values see AFBMA Standard 7.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design and Installation Considerations.—Interference fitting will reduce bearing radial internal clearance, so it is recommended that prospective users consult bearing manufacturers to make certain that the required bearings are correctly specified to satisfy all mounting, environmental and other operating conditions and requirements. This check is particularly necessary where heat sources in associated parts may further diminish bearing clearances in operation.

Standard values of radial internal clearances of radial bearings are listed in AFBMA-ANSI Standard 20.

Allowance for Axial Displacement.—Consideration should be given to axial displacement of bearing components owing to thermal expansion or contraction of associated parts. Displacement may be accommodated either by the internal construction of the bearing or by allowing one of the bearing rings to be axially displaceable. For unusual applications consult bearing manufacturers.

Needle Roller Bearing Fitting and Mounting Practice.—The tolerance limits required for shaft and housing seat diameters for needle roller bearings with inner and outer rings as well as limits for raceway diameters where inner or outer rings or both are omitted and rollers operate directly upon these surfaces are given in Table 18 through Table 21, inclusive. Unusual design and operating conditions may require a departure from these practices. In such cases, bearing manufacturers should be consulted.

Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup: These bearings without inner ring, Types NIB, NB, NIBM, NBM, NIY, NY, NIYM, NYM, NIH, NH, NIHM, NHM, and Inner Rings, Type NIR depend on the housings into which they are pressed for their size and shape. Therefore, the housings must not only have the proper bore dimensions but also must have sufficient strength. Table 18 and Table 19, show the bore tolerance limits for rigid housings such as those made from cast iron or steel of heavy radial section equal to or greater than the ring gage section given in AFBMA Standard 4, 1984. The bearing manufacturers should be consulted for recommendations if the housings must be of lower strength materials such as aluminum or even of steel of thin radial section. The shape of the housing bores should be such that when the mean bore diameter of a housing is measured in each of several radial planes, the maximum difference between these mean diameters should not exceed 0.0005 inch (0.013 mm) or one-half the housing bore tolerance limit, if smaller. Also, the radial deviation from circular form should not exceed 0.00025 inch (0.006 mm). The housing bore surface finish should not exceed 125 micro-inches (3.2 micrometers) arithmetical average.

Table 18. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Shaft Raceway and Housing Bore Diameters — Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup, Without Inner Ring, Inch Types NIB, NIBM, NIY, NIYM, NIH, and NIHM *ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)*

Basic Bore Diameter under Needle Rollers, F_w		Shaft Raceway Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from F_w		Basic Outside Diameter, D		Housing Bore Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from D	
Inch		Inch		Inch		Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Low	High
OUTER RING STATIONARY RELATIVE TO LOAD							
0.1875	1.8750	+0	–0.0005	0.3750	4.0000	–0.0005	+0.0005
1.8750	3.5000	+0	–0.0006	…	…	…	…
OUTER RING ROTATING RELATIVE TO LOAD							
0.1875	1.8750	–0.0005	–0.0010	0.3750	4.0000	–0.0010	+0
1.8750	3.5000	–0.0005	–0.0011	…	…	…	…

[a] See text for additional requirements.

For bearing tolerances, see Table 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Shaft Raceway and Housing Bore Diameters—Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup, Without Inner Ring, Metric Types NB, NBM, NY, NYM, NH, and NHM
ANSI/ABMA 18.1-1982 (R1999)

Basic Bore Diameter Under Needle Rollers, F_w				Shaft Raceway Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from F_w		Basic Outside Diameter, D				Housing Bore Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from D	
OUTER RING STATIONARY RELATIVE TO LOAD											
mm		Inch		ANSI h6, Inch		mm		Inch		ANSI N7, Inch	
Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.	Low	High
3	6	0.1181	0.2362	+0	–0.0003	6	10	0.2362	0.3937	–0.0007	–0.0002
6	10	0.2362	0.3937	+0	–0.0004	10	18	0.3937	0.7087	–0.0009	–0.0002
10	18	0.3937	0.7087	+0	–0.0004	18	30	0.7087	1.1811	–0.0011	–0.0003
18	30	0.7087	1.1811	+0	–0.0005	30	50	1.1811	1.9685	–0.0013	–0.0003
30	50	1.1811	1.9685	+0	–0.0006	50	80	1.9685	3.1496	–0.0015	–0.0004
50	80	1.9685	3.1496	+0	–0.0007	…	…	…	…	…	…
OUTER RING ROTATING RELATIVE TO LOAD											
mm		Inch		ANSI f6, Inch		mm		Inch		ANSI R7, Inch	
Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Over	Incl.	Low	High
3	6	0.1181	0.2362	–0.0004	–0.0007	6	10	0.2362	0.3937	–0.0011	–0.0005
6	10	0.2362	0.3937	–0.0005	–0.0009	10	18	0.3937	0.7087	–0.0013	–0.0006
10	18	0.3937	0.7087	–0.0006	–0.0011	18	30	0.7087	1.1811	–0.0016	–0.0008
18	30	0.7087	1.1811	–0.0008	–0.0013	30	50	1.1811	1.9685	–0.0020	–0.0010
30	50	1.1811	1.9685	–0.0010	–0.0016	50	65	1.9685	2.5591	–0.0024	–0.0012
50	80	1.9685	3.1496	–0.0012	–0.0019	65	80	2.5591	3.1496	–0.0024	–0.0013

For bearing tolerances, see Table 11.

Table 20. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Shaft Raceway and Housing Bore Diameters—Needle Roller Bearings, With Cage, Machined Ring, Without Inner Ring, Inch Type NIA
ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)

Basic Bore Diameter under Needle Rollers, F_w		Shaft Raceway Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from F_w		Basic Outside Diameter, D		Housing Bore Diameter[a] Allowable Deviation from D	
OUTER RING STATIONARY RELATIVE TO LOAD							
Inch		ANSI h6, Inch		Inch		ANSI H7, Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Low	High
0.2362	0.3937	+0	–0.0004	0.3937	0.7087	+0	+0.0007
0.3937	0.7087	+0	–0.0004	0.7087	1.1811	+0	+0.0008
0.7087	1.1811	+0	–0.0005	1.1811	1.9685	+0	+0.0010
1.1811	1.9685	+0	–0.0006	1.9685	3.1496	+0	+0.0012
1.9685	3.1496	+0	–0.0007	3.1496	4.7244	+0	+0.0014
3.1496	4.7244	+0	–0.0009	4.7244	7.0866	+0	+0.0016
4.7244	7.0866	+0	–0.0010	7.0866	9.8425	+0	+0.0018
7.0866	9.8425	+0	–0.0011	9.8425	12.4016	+0	+0.0020
OUTER RING ROTATING RELATIVE TO LOAD							
Inch		ANSI f6, Inch		Inch		ANSI N7, Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	Over	Incl.	Low	High
0.2362	0.3937	–0.0005	–0.0009	0.3937	0.7087	–0.0009	–0.0002
0.3937	0.7087	–0.0006	–0.0011	0.7087	1.1811	–0.0011	–0.0003
0.7087	1.1811	–0.0008	–0.0013	1.1811	1.9685	–0.0013	–0.0003
1.1811	1.9685	–0.0010	–0.0016	1.9685	3.1496	–0.0015	–0.0004
1.9685	3.1496	–0.0012	–0.0019	3.1496	4.7244	–0.0018	–0.0004
3.1496	4.7244	–0.0014	–0.0023	4.7244	7.0866	–0.0020	–0.0005
4.7244	7.0866	–0.0016	–0.0027	7.0866	9.8425	–0.0024	–0.0006
7.0866	9.8425	–0.0020	–0.0031	9.8425	11.2205	–0.0026	–0.0006

[a] See text for additional requirements.
For bearing tolerances, see Table 12.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. AFBMA and American National Standard Tolerance Limits for Shaft Diameters—Needle Roller Bearing Inner Rings, Inch Type NIR (Used with Bearing Type NIA) *ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999)*

Basic Bore, *d*		Shaft Diameter[a]			
		Shaft Rotating Relative to Load, Outer Ring Stationary Relative to Load Allowable Deviation from *d*		Shaft Stationary Relative to Load, Outer Ring Rotating Relative to LoadAllowable Deviation from *d*	
Inch		ANSI m5, Inch		ANSI g6, Inch	
Over	Incl.	High	Low	High	Low
0.2362	0.3937	+0.0005	+0.0002	–0.0002	–0.0006
0.3937	0.7087	+0.0006	+0.0003	–0.0002	–0.0007
0.7087	1.1811	+0.0007	+0.0003	–0.0003	–0.0008
1.1811	1.9685	+0.0008	+0.0004	–0.0004	–0.0010
1.9685	3.1496	+0.0009	+0.0004	–0.0004	–0.0011
3.1496	4.7244	+0.0011	+0.0005	–0.0005	–0.0013
4.7244	7.0866	+0.0013	+0.0006	–0.0006	–0.0015
7.0866	9.8425	+0.0015	+0.0007	–0.0006	–0.0017

[a] See text for additional requirements.

For inner ring tolerance limits, see Table 13.

Most needle roller bearings do not use inner rings, but operate directly on the surfaces of shafts. When shafts are used as inner raceways, they should be made of bearing quality steel hardened to 58 RC (Rockwell C scale) minimum. Table 15 and Table 19 show the shaft raceway tolerance limits and Table 21 shows the shaft seat tolerance limits when inner rings are used. However, whether the shaft surfaces are used as inner raceways or as seats for inner rings, the mean outside diameter of the shaft surface in each of several radial planes should be determined. The difference between these mean diameters should not exceed 0.0003 inch (0.008 mm) or one-half the diameter tolerance limit, if smaller. The radial deviation from circular form should not exceed 0.0001 inch (0.0025 mm), for diameters up to and including 1 in. (25.4 mm). Above one inch the allowable deviation is 0.0001 times the shaft diameter. The surface finish should not exceed 16 micro-inches (0.4 micrometer) arithmetical average. The housing bore and shaft diameter tolerance limits depend upon whether the load rotates relative to the shaft or the housing.

Needle Roller Bearing With Cage, Machined Ring, Without Inner Ring: The following covers needle roller bearings Type NIA and inner rings Type NIR. The shape of the housing bores should be such that when the mean bore diameter of a housing is measured in each of several radial planes, the maximum difference between these mean diameters does not exceed 0.0005 inch (0.013 mm) or one-half the housing bore tolerance limit, if smaller. Also, the radial deviation from circular form should not exceed 0.00025 inch (0.006 mm). The housing bore surface finish should not exceed 125 micro-inches (3.2 micrometers) arithmetical average. Table 21 shows the housing bore tolerance limits.

When shafts are used as inner raceways their requirements are the same as those given above for Needle Roller Bearings, Drawn Cup. Table 20 shows the shaft raceway tolerance limits and Table 21 shows the shaft seat tolerance limits when inner rings are used.

Needle Roller and Cage Assemblies, Types NIM and NM: For information concerning boundary dimensions, tolerance limits, and fitting and mounting practice, reference should be made to ANSI/ABMA 18.1-1982 (R1999) and ANSI/ABMA 18.2-1982 (R1999).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bearing Mounting Practice

Because of their inherent design and material rigidity, rolling contact bearings must be mounted with careful control of their alignment and runout. Medium-speed or slower (400,000 *DN* values or less where *D* is the bearing bore in millimeters and *N* is the bearing speed in revolutions per minute), and medium to light load (*C*/*P* values of 7 or greater where *C* is the bearing specific dynamic capacity in pounds and *P* is the average bearing load in pounds) applications can endure misalignments equivalent to those acceptable for high-capacity, precision journal bearings utilizing hard bearing materials such as silver, copper-lead, or aluminum. In no case, however, should the maximum shaft deflection exceed .001 inch per inch (or mm per mm) for well-crowned roller bearings, and .003 inch per inch (or mm per mm) for deep-groove ball-bearings. Except for self-aligning ball-bearings and spherical or barrel roller bearings, all other types require shaft alignments with deflections no greater than .0002 inch per inch (or mm per mm). With preloaded ball bearings, this same limit is recommended as a maximum. Close-clearance tapered bearings or thrust bearings of most types require the same shaft alignment also.

Of major importance for all bearings requiring good reliability is the location of the races on the shaft and in the housing.

Assembly methods must insure: 1) that the faces are square before the cavity is closed; 2) that the cover face is square to the shoulder and pulled in evenly; and 3) that it will be located by a face parallel to it when finally seated against the housing.

These requirements are shown in the accompanying Table 22. In applications not controlled by automatic tooling with closely controlled fixtures and bolt torquing mechanisms, races should be checked for squareness by sweeping with a dial indicator mounted as shown below. For commercial applications with moderate life and reliability requirements, outer race runouts should be held to .0005 inch per inch (or mm per mm) of radius and inner race runout to .0004 inch per inch (or mm per mm) of radius. In preloaded and precision applications, these tolerances must be cut in half. In regard to the question of alignment, it must be recognized that rolling-contact bearings, being made of fully-hardened steel, do not wear in as may certain journal bearings when carefully applied and initially operated. Likewise, rolling contact bearings absorb relatively little deflection when loaded to *C*/*P* values of 6 or less. At such stress levels the rolling element-race deformation is generally not over .0002 inch (5.08 µm). Consequently, proper mounting and control of shaft deflections are imperative for reliable bearing performance. Aside from inadequate lubrication, these factors are the most frequent causes of premature bearing failures.

Mountings for Precision and Quiet-Running Applications.— In applications of rolling-element bearings where vibration or smoothness of operation is critical, special precautions must be taken to eliminate those conditions which can serve to initiate radial and axial motions. These exciting forces can result in shaft excursions which are in resonance with shaft or housing components over a range of frequencies from well below shaft speed to as much as 100 times above it. The more sensitive the configuration, the greater is the need for precision bearings and mountings to be used.

Precision bearings are normally made to much closer tolerances than standard and therefore benefit from better finishing techniques. Special inspection operations are required, however, to provide races and rolling elements with smoothness and runouts compatible with the needs of the application. Similarly, shafts and housings must be carefully controlled.

Among the important elements to be controlled are shaft, race, and housing roundness; squareness of faces, diameters, shoulders, and rolling paths. Though not readily appreciated, grinding chatter, lobular and compensating out-of-roundness, waviness, and flats of less than 0.0005 inch (0.013 mm) deviation from the average or mean diameter can cause significant roughness. To detect these and insure the selection of good pieces, three-point electronic indicator inspection must be made. For ultra-precise or quiet applications,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

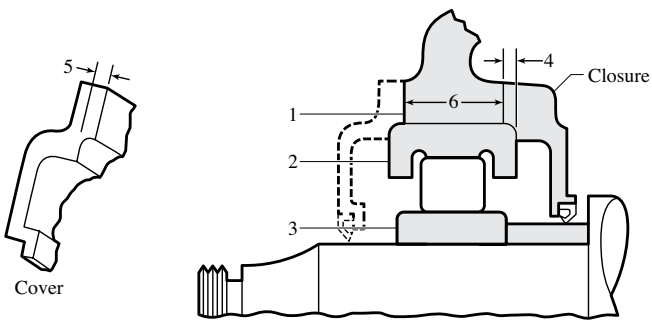
pieces are often checked on a "Talyrond" or a similar continuous recording instrument capable of measuring to within a few millionths of an inch. Though this may seem extreme, it has been found that shaft deformities will be reflected through inner races shrunk onto them. Similarly, tight-fit outer races pick up significant deviations in housings. In many instrument and in missile guidance applications, such deviations and deformities may have to be limited to less than 0.00002 inch (0.508 µm).

In most of these precision applications, bearings are used with rolling elements controlled to less than 5 millionths of an inch deviation from roundness and within the same range for diameter.

Special attention is required both in housing design and in assembly of the bearing to shaft and housing. Housing response to axial excursions forced by bearing wobble (which in itself is a result of out-of-square mounting) has been found to be a major source of small electric and other rotating equipment noise and howl. Stiffer, more massive housings and careful alignment of bearing races can make significant improvements in applications where noise or vibration has been found to be objectionable.

Table 22. Commercial Application Alignment Tolerances

Feature	Location	Tolerance
Housing Face Runout	1	Square to shaft center within .0004 inch/inch of radius full indicator reading.
Outer Race Face Runout	2	Square to shaft center within .0004 inch/inch of radius full indicator reading and complementary to the housing runout (not opposed).
Inner Race Face Runout	3	Square to shaft center within .0003 inch/inch of radius full indicator reading.
Cover and Closure Mounting Face Parallelism	4 and 5	Parallel within .001.
Housing Mounting Face Parallelism	6	Parallel within .001



Squareness and Alignment.—In addition to the limits for roundness and wall variation of the races and their supports, squareness of end faces and shoulders must be closely controlled. Tolerances of .0001 inch (2.54 µm) full indicator reading per inch of diameter are normally required for end faces and shoulders, with appropriately selected limits for fillet eccentricities. The latter must also fall within specified limits for radii tolerances to prevent interference and the resulting cocking of the race. Reference should be made to the bearing dimension tables which list corner radii for typical bearings. Shoulders must also be of a sufficient height to insure proper support for the races, since they are of hardened steel and are less capable of absorbing shock loads and abuse. The general subject of squareness and alignment is of primary importance to the life of rolling element bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The following recommendations for shaft and housing design are given by the New Departure Division of General Motors Corporation:*

"As a rule, there is little trouble experienced with inaccuracies in shafts. Bearings seats and locating shoulders are turned and ground to size with the shaft held on centers and, with ordinary care, there is small chance for serious out-of-roundness or taper. Shaft shoulders should present sufficient surface in contact with the bearing face to assure positive and accurate location.

"Where an undercut must be made for wheel runout in grinding a bearing seat, care should be exercised that no sharp corners are left, for it is at such points that fatigue is most likely to result in shaft breakage. It is best to undercut as little as possible and to have the undercut end in a fillet instead of a sharp corner.

"Where clamping nuts are to be used, it is important to cut the threads as true and square as possible in order to insure even pressure at all points on the bearing inner ring faces when the nuts are set up tight. It is also important not to cut threads so far into the bearing seat as to leave part of the inner ring unsupported or carried on the threads. Excessive deflection is usually the result of improperly designed or undersized machine parts. With a weak shaft, it is possible to seriously affect bearing operation through misalignment due to shaft deflection. Where shafts are comparatively long, the diameter between bearings must be great enough to properly resist bending. In general, the use of more than two bearings on a single shaft should be avoided, owing to the difficulty of securing accurate alignment. With bearings mounted close to each other, this can result in extremely heavy bearing loads.

"Design is as important as careful machining in construction of accurate bearing housings. There should be plenty of metal in the wall sections and large, thin areas should be avoided as much as possible, since they are likely to permit deflection of the boring tool when the housing is being finish-machined.

"Wherever possible, it is best to design a housing so that the radial load placed on the bearing is transmitted as directly as possible to the wall or rib supporting the housing. Diaphragm walls connecting an offset housing to the main wall or side of a machine are apt to deflect unless made thick and well braced.

"When two bearings are to be mounted opposed, but in separate housings, the housings should be so reinforced with fins or webs as to prevent deflection due to the axial load under which the bearings are opposed.

"Where housings are deep and considerable overhang of the boring tool is required, there is a tendency to produce out-of-roundness and taper, unless the tool is very rigid and light finishing cuts are taken. In a too roughly bored housing there is a possibility for the ridges of metal to peen down under load, thus eventually resulting in too loose a fit for the bearing outer ring."

Soft Metal and Resilient Housings.—In applications relying on bearing housings made of soft materials (aluminum, magnesium, light sheet metal, etc.) or those which lose their fit because of differential thermal expansion, outer race mounting must be approached in a cautious manner. Of first importance is the determination of the possible consequences of race loosening and turning. In conjunction with this, the type of loading must be considered for it may serve to magnify the effect of race loosening. It must be remembered that generally, balancing processes do not insure zero unbalance at operating speeds, but rather an "acceptable" maximum. This force exerted by the rotating element on the outer race can initiate a precession which will aggravate the race loosening problem by causing further attrition through wear, pounding, and abrasion. Since this force is generally of an order greater than the friction forces in effect between the outer race, housing, and closures (retaining nuts also), no foolproof method can be recommended for securing

* *New Departure Handbook*. Vol. II — 1951.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

outer races in housings which deform significantly under load or after appreciable service wear. Though many such "fixes" are offered, the only sure solution is to press the race into a housing of sufficient stiffness with the heaviest fit consistent with the installed and operating clearances. In many cases, inserts, or liners of cast iron or steel, are provided to maintain the desired fit and increase useful life of both bearing and housing.

Quiet or Vibration-Free Mountings.—In seeming contradiction is the approach to bearing mountings in which all shaft or rotating element excursions must be isolated from the frame, housing, or supporting structure. Here bearing outer races are often supported on elastomeric or metallic springs. Fundamentally, this is an isolation problem and must be approached with caution to insure solution of the primary bearing objective — location and restraint of the rotating body, as well as the reduction or elimination of the dynamic problem. Again, the danger of skidding rolling elements must be considered and reference to the resident engineers or sales engineers of the numerous bearing companies is recommended, as this problem generally develops requirements for special, or non-catalog-type bearings.

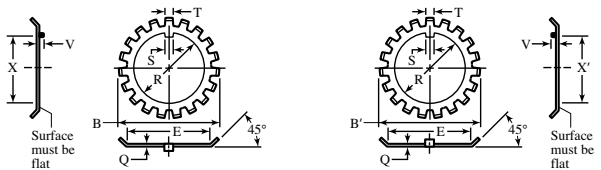
General Mounting Precautions.—Since the last operations involving the bearing application — mounting and closing — have such important effects on bearing performance, durability, and reliability, it must be cautioned that more bearings are abused or "killed" in this early stage of their life than wear out or "die" under conditions for which they were designed. Hammer and chisel "mechanics" invariably handle bearings as though no blow could be too hard, no dirt too abrasive, and no misalignment of any consequence. Proper tools, fixtures, and techniques are a must for rolling bearing application, and it is the responsibility of the design engineer to provide for this in his design, advisory notes, mounting instructions, and service manuals. Nicks, dents, scores, scratches, corrosion staining, and dirt must be avoided if reliability, long life, and smooth running are to be expected of rolling bearings. All manufacturers have pertinent service instructions available for the bearing user. These should be followed for best performance. In a later section, methods for inspecting bearings and descriptions of most common bearing deficiencies will be given.

Seating Fits for Bearings.—Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (AFBMA) standard shaft and housing bearing seat tolerances are given in Table 13 through Table 18, inclusive.

Clamping and Retaining Methods.—Various methods of clamping bearings to prevent axial movement on the shaft are employed, one of the most common being a nut screwed on the end of the shaft and held in place by a tongued lock washer (see Table 23). The shaft thread for the clamping nut (see Table 24) should be cut in accurate relation to bearing seats and shoulders if bearing stresses are to be avoided. The threads used are of American National Form, Class 3; special diameters and data for these are given in Table 25 and Table 26. Where somewhat closer than average accuracy is required, the washers and locknut faces may be obtained ground for closer alignment with the threads. For a high degree of accuracy the shaft threads are ground and a more precise clamping means is employed. Where a bearing inner ring is to be clamped, it is important to provide a sufficiently high shoulder on the shaft to locate the bearing positively and accurately. If the difference between bearing bore and maximum shaft diameter gives a low shoulder which would enter the corner of the radius of the bearing, a shoulder ring that extends above the shoulder and well into the shaft corner is employed. A shoulder ring with snap wire fitting into a groove in the shaft is sometimes used where no locating shaft shoulder is present. A snap ring fitting into a groove is frequently employed to prevent endwise movement of the bearing away from the locating shoulder where tight clamping is not required. Such a retaining ring should not be used where a slot in the shaft surface might lead to fatigue failure. Snap rings are also used to locate the outer bearing ring in the housing. Dimensions of snap rings used for this latter purpose are given in AFBMA and ANSI standards.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. AFBMA Standard Lockwashers (Series W-00) for Ball Bearings and Cylindrical and Spherical Roller Bearings and (Series TW-100) for Tapered Roller Bearings. Inch Design



W-00 through W-16 W-100 through W-116

Type W No.	Q	Type TW No.	Q	Tangs No.	Tangs Width[a] T	Key Project.[a] V	Key Width S Min.	Key Width S Max.	Key X Min.	Key X Max.	Key X′ Min.	Key X′ Max.	Bore R Min.	Bore R Max.	Diameter E	Diameter Tol.	Dia. Over Tangs. Max. B	Dia. Over Tangs. Max. B
W-00	.032	TW-100	.032	9	.120	.031	.110	.120	.334	.359	.334	.359	.406	.421	0.625	+.015	0.875	0.891
W-01	.032	TW-101	.032	9	.120	.031	.110	.120	.412	.437	.412	.437	.484	.499	0.719	+.015	1.016	1.031
W-02	.032	TW-102	.048	11	.120	.031	.110	.120	.529	.554	.513	.538	.601	.616	0.813	+.015	1.156	1.156
W-03	.032	TW-103	.048	11	.120	.031	.110	.120	.607	.632	.591	.616	.679	.694	0.938	+.015	1.328	1.344
W-04	.032	TW-104	.048	11	.166	.031	.156	.176	.729	.754	.713	.738	.801	.816	1.125	+.015	1.531	1.563
W-05	.040	TW-105	.052	13	.166	.047	.156	.176	.909	.939	.897	.927	.989	1.009	1.281	+.015	1.719	1.703
W-06	.040	TW-106	.052	13	.166	.047	.156	.176	1.093	1.128	1.081	1.116	1.193	1.213	1.500	+.015	1.922	1.953
		TW-065	.052	15	.166	…	.156	.176	…	…	1.221	1.256	1.333	1.353	1.813	+.015	…	2.234
W-07	.040	TW-107	.052	15	.166	.047	.156	.176	1.296	1.331	1.284	1.319	1.396	1.416	1.813	+.015	2.250	2.250
W-08	.048	TW-108	.062	15	.234	.047	.250	.290	1.475	1.510	1.461	1.496	1.583	1.603	2.000	+.030	2.469	2.484
W-09	.048	TW-109	.062	17	.234	.062	.250	.290	1.684	1.724	1.670	1.710	1.792	1.817	2.281	+.030	2.734	2.719
W-10	.048	TW-110	.062	17	.234	.062	.250	.290	1.884	1.924	1.870	1.910	1.992	2.017	2.438	+.030	2.922	2.922
W-11	.053	TW-111	.062	17	.234	.062	.250	.290	2.069	2.109	2.060	2.100	2.182	2.207	2.656	±.030	3.109	3.094
W-12	.053	TW-112	.072	17	.234	.062	.250	.290	2.267	2.307	2.248	2.288	2.400	2.425	2.844	+.030	3.344	3.328
W-13	.053	TW-113	.072	19	.234	.062	.250	.290	2.455	2.495	2.436	2.476	2.588	2.613	3.063	+.030	3.578	3.563
W-14	.053	TW-114	.072	19	.234	.094	.250	.290	2.658	2.698	2.639	2.679	2.791	2.816	3.313	+.030	3.828	3.813
W-15	.062	TW-115	.085	19	.328	.094	.250	.290	2.831	2.876	2.808	2.853	2.973	3.003	3.563	+.030	4.109	4.047
W-16	.062	TW-116	.085	19	.328	.094	.313	.353	3.035	3.080	3.012	3.057	3.177	3.207	3.844	+.030	4.375	4.391

[a] *Tolerances:* On width, *T*, –.010 inch for Types W-00 to W-03 and TW-100 to TW-103; –.020 inch for W-04 to W-07 and TW-104 to TW-107; –.030 inch for all others shown. On Projection *V*, +.031 inch for all sizes up through W-13 and TW-113; +.062 inch for all others shown.

All dimensions in inches. For dimensions in millimeters, multiply inch values by 25.4 and round result to two decimal places.

Data for sizes larger than shown are given in ANSI/AFBMA Standard 8.2-1991.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

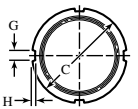
Table 24. AFBMA Standard Locknuts (Series N-00) for Ball Bearings and Cylindrical and Spherical Roller Bearings and (Series TN-00) for Tapered Roller Bearings. Inch Design

Runout and Parallelism of Faces Measured on a Tight Fiting Threaded Arbor.

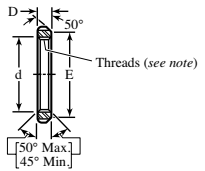
N-00 to N-06 = .002 Max.
N-07 to AN-15 = .004 Max.
TN-065 to TAN-15 = .002 Max.

Surface Finish Note

TN-065 to TN-11, 100 μin., Max.
TN-12 to TN-15, 120 μin., Max.



N-00 through AN-15
TN-065 through TAN-15



BB & RB Nut No.	TRB Nut No.	Thds. per Inch	Thread Minor Dia.		Thread Pitch Dia.		Thd. Major Dia. *d*	Outside Dia. *C*	Face Dia. *E*		Slot dimension			Thickness *D*	
											Width *G*		Height *H*		
			Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Max.
N-00	—	32	0.3572	0.3606	0.3707	0.3733	0.391	0.755	.605	.625	.120	.130	.073	.209	.229
N-01	—	32	0.4352	0.4386	0.4487	0.4513	0.469	0.880	.699	.719	.120	.130	.073	.303	.323
N-02	—	32	0.5522	0.5556	0.5657	0.5687	0.586	1.005	.793	.813	.120	.130	.104	.303	.323
N-03	—	32	0.6302	0.6336	0.6437	0.6467	0.664	1.130	.918	.938	.120	.130	.104	.334	.354
N-04	—	32	0.7472	0.7506	0.7607	0.7641	0.781	1.380	1.105	1.125	.178	.198	.104	.365	.385
N-05	—	32	0.9352	0.9386	0.9487	0.9521	0.969	1.568	1.261	1.281	.178	.198	.104	.396	.416
N-06	—	18	1.1129	1.1189	1.1369	1.1409	1.173	1.755	1.480	1.500	.178	.198	.104	.396	.416
	TN-065	18	1.2524	1.2584	1.2764	1.2804	1.312	2.068	1.793	1.813	.178	.198	.104	.428	.448
N-07	TN-07	18	1.3159	1.3219	1.3399	1.3439	1.376	2.068	1.793	1.813	.178	.198	.104	.428	.448
N-08	TN-08	18	1.5029	1.5089	1.5269	1.5314	1.563	2.255	1.980	2.000	.240	.260	.104	.428	.448
N-09	TN-09	18	1.7069	1.7129	1.7309	1.7354	1.767	2.536	2.261	2.281	.240	.260	.104	.428	.448
N-10	TN-10	18	1.9069	1.9129	1.9309	1.9354	1.967	2.693	2.418	2.438	.240	.260	.104	.490	.510
N-11	TN-11	18	2.0969	2.1029	2.1209	2.1260	2.157	2.974	2.636	2.656	.240	.260	.135	.490	.510
N-12	TN-12	18	2.2999	2.3059	2.3239	2.3290	2.360	3.161	2.824	2.844	.240	.260	.135	.521	.541
N-13	TN-13	18	2.4879	2.4949	2.5119	2.5170	2.548	3.380	3.043	3.063	.240	.260	.135	.553	.573
N-14	TN-14	18	2.6909	2.6969	2.7149	2.7200	2.751	3.630	3.283	3.313	.240	.260	.135	.553	.573
AN-15	TAN-15	12	2.8428	2.8518	2.8789	2.8843	2.933	3.880	3.533	3.563	.360	.385	.135	.584	.604

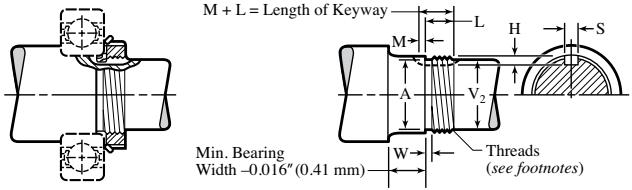
All dimensions in inches. For dimensions in millimeters, multiply inch values, except thread diameters, by 25.4 and round result to two decimal places.

Threads are American National form, Class 3.

Typical steels for locknuts are: AISI, C1015, C1018, C1020, C1025, C1035, C1117, C1118, C1212, C1213, and C1215. Minimum hardness, tensile strength, yield strength and elongation are given in ANSI/ABMA 8.2-1991 which also lists larger sizes of locknuts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 25. AFBMA Standard for Shafts for Locknuts (series N-00) for Ball Bearings and Cylindrical and Spherical Roller Bearings. Inch Design



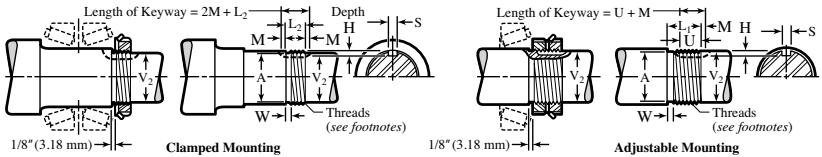
Locknut Number	Bearing Bore	V_2	Threads[a]					Relief		Keyway		
			No. per inch	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.	Minor Dia.	Length L	Dia. A	Width W	Depth H	Width S	M
		Max.		Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.
N-00	0.3937	0.312	32	0.391	0.3707	0.3527	0.297	0.3421	0.078	0.062	0.125	0.094
N-01	0.4724	0.406	32	0.469	0.4487	0.4307	0.391	0.4201	0.078	0.062	0.125	0.094
N-02	0.5906	0.500	32	0.586	0.5657	0.5477	0.391	0.5371	0.078	0.078	0.125	0.094
N-03	0.6693	0.562	32	0.664	0.6437	0.6257	0.422	0.6151	0.078	0.078	0.125	0.094
N-04	0.7874	0.719	32	0.781	0.7607	0.7427	0.453	0.7321	0.078	0.078	0.188	0.094
N-05	0.9843	0.875	32	0.969	0.9487	0.9307	0.484	0.9201	0.078	0.094	0.188	0.125
N-06	1.1811	1.062	18	1.173	1.1369	1.1048	0.484	1.0942	0.109	0.094	0.188	0.125
N-07	1.3780	1.250	18	1.376	1.3399	1.3078	0.516	1.2972	0.109	0.094	0.188	0.125
N-08	1.5748	1.469	18	1.563	1.5269	1.4948	0.547	1.4842	0.109	0.094	0.312	0.125
N-09	1.7717	1.688	18	1.767	1.7309	1.6988	0.547	1.6882	0.141	0.094	0.312	0.156
N-10	1.9685	1.875	18	1.967	1.9309	1.8988	0.609	1.8882	0.141	0.094	0.312	0.156
N-11	2.1654	2.062	18	2.157	2.1209	2.0888	0.609	2.0782	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156
N-12	2.3622	2.250	18	2.360	2.3239	2.2918	0.641	2.2812	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156
N-13	2.5591	2.438	18	2.548	2.5119	2.4798	0.672	2.4692	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156
N-14	2.7559	2.625	18	2.751	2.7149	2.6828	0.672	2.6722	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.250
AN-15	2.9528	2.781	12	2.933	2.8789	2.8308	0.703	2.8095	0.172	0.125	0.312	0.250
AN-16	3.1496	3.000	12	3.137	3.0829	3.0348	0.703	3.0135	0.172	0.125	0.375	0.250

[a] Threads are American National form Class 3.

All dimensions in inches. For dimensions in millimeters, multiply inch values, except thread diameters, by 25.4 and round result to two decimal places. See footnote to Table 26 for material other than sttel. For sizes larger than shown, see ANSI/ABMA 8.2-1991.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 26. AFBMA Standard for Shafts for Tapered Roller Bearing Locknuts. Inch Design



Locknut Number	Bearing Bore	V_2	Threads[a]						Relief		Keyway			
			No. per inch	Major Dia.	Pitch Dia.	Minor Dia.	Length L_1	Length L_2	Dia. A	Width W	Depth H	Width S	M	U
		Max.		Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Max.	Min.	Min.	Min.
N-00	0.3937	0.312	32	0.391	0.3707	0.3527	0.609	0.391	0.3421	0.078	0.094	0.125	0.094	0.469
N-01	0.4724	0.406	32	0.469	0.4487	0.4307	0.797	0.484	0.4201	0.078	0.094	0.125	0.094	0.562
N-02	0.5906	0.500	32	0.586	0.5657	0.5477	0.828	0.516	0.5371	0.078	0.094	0.125	0.094	0.594
N-03	0.6693	0.562	32	0.664	0.6437	0.6257	0.891	0.547	0.6151	0.078	0.078	0.125	0.094	0.625
N-04	0.7874	0.703	32	0.781	0.7607	0.7427	0.922	0.547	0.7321	0.078	0.094	0.188	0.094	0.625
N-05	0.9843	0.875	32	0.969	0.9487	0.9307	1.016	0.609	0.9201	0.078	0.125	0.188	0.125	0.719
N-06	1.1811	1.062	18	1.173	1.1369	1.1048	1.016	0.609	1.0942	0.109	0.125	0.188	0.125	0.719
TN-065	1.3750	1.188	18	1.312	1.2764	1.2443	1.078	0.641	1.2337	0.109	0.125	0.188	0.125	0.750
TN-07	1.3780	1.250	18	1.376	1.3399	1.3078	1.078	0.641	1.2972	0.109	0.125	0.188	0.125	0.750
TN-08	1.5748	1.438	18	1.563	1.5269	1.4948	1.078	0.641	1.4842	0.109	0.125	0.312	0.125	0.750
TN-09	1.7717	1.656	18	1.767	1.7309	1.6988	1.078	0.641	1.6882	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156	0.781
TN-10	1.9685	1.859	18	1.967	1.9309	1.8988	1.203	0.703	1.882	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156	0.844
TN-11	2.1654	2.047	18	2.157	2.1209	2.0888	1.203	0.703	2.0782	0.141	0.125	0.312	0.156	0.844
TN-12	2.3622	2.250	18	2.360	2.3239	2.2918	1.297	0.766	2.2812	0.141	0.156	0.312	0.156	0.906
TN-13	2.5591	2.422	18	2.548	2.5119	2.4798	1.359	0.797	2.4692	0.141	0.156	0.312	0.156	0.938
TN-14	2.7559	2.625	18	2.751	2.7149	2.6828	1.359	0.797	2.6722	0.141	0.156	0.312	0.250	1.000
TAN-15	2.9528	2.781	12	2.933	2.8789	2.8308	1.422	0.828	2.8095	0.172	0.188	0.312	0.250	1.031
TAN-16	3.1496	3.000	12	3.137	3.0829	3.0348	1.422	0.828	3.0135	0.172	0.188	0.375	0.250	1.031

[a] Threads are American National form Class 3.

All dimensions in inches. For dimensions in millimeters, multiply inch values, except thread diameters, by 25.4 and round results to two decimal places. These data apply to steel. When either the nut or the shaft is made of stainless steel, aluminum, or other material having a tendency to seize, it is recommended that the maximum thread diameter of the shaft, both major and pitch, be reduced by 20 percent of the pitch diameter tolerance listed in the Standard. For sizes larger than shown, see ANSI/ABMA 8.2-1991.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bearing Closures.—Shields, seals, labyrinths, and slingers are employed to retain the lubricant in the bearing and to prevent the entry of dirt, moisture, or other harmful substances. The type selected for a given application depends upon the lubricant, shaft, speed, and the atmospheric conditions in which the unit is to operate. The shields or seals may be located in the bearing itself. Shields differ from seals in that they are attached to one bearing race but there is a definite clearance between the shield and the other, usually the inner, race. When a shielded bearing is placed in a housing in which the grease space has been filled, the bearing in running will tend to expel excess grease past the shields or to accept grease from the housing when the amount in the bearing itself is low.

Seals of leather, rubber, cork, felt, or plastic composition may be used. Since they must bear against the rotating member, excessive pressure should be avoided and some lubricant must be allowed to flow into the area of contact in order to prevent seizing and burning of the seal and scoring of the rotating member. Some seals are made up in the form of cartridges which can be pressed into the end of the bearing housing.

Leather seals may be used over a wide range of speeds. Although lubricant is best retained with a leather cupped inward toward the bearing, this arrangement is not suitable at high speeds due to danger of burning the leather. At high speeds where abrasive dust is present, the seal should be arranged with the leather cupped outward to lead some lubricant into the contact area. Only light pressure of leather against the shaft should be maintained.

Bearing Fits.—The slipping or creeping of a bearing ring on a rotating shaft or in a rotating housing occurs when the fit of the ring on the shaft or in the housing is loose. Such slipping or creeping action may cause rapid wear of both shaft and bearing ring when the surfaces are dry and highly loaded. To prevent this action the bearing is customarily mounted with the rotating ring a press fit and the stationary ring a push fit, the tightness or looseness depending upon the service intended. Thus, where shock or vibratory loads are to be encountered, fits should be made somewhat tighter than for ordinary service. The stationary ring, if correctly fitted, is allowed to creep very slowly so that prolonged stressing of one part of the raceway is avoided.

To facilitate the assembly of a bearing on a shaft it may become necessary to expand the inner ring by heating. This should be done in clean oil or in a temperature-controlled furnace at a temperature of between 200 and 250°F (93 to 121°C). The utmost care must be used to make sure that the temperature does not exceed 250°F as overheating will tend to reduce the hardness of the rings. Prelubricated bearings should not be mounted by this method.

Design Considerations

Friction Losses in Rolling Element Bearings.—The static and kinematic torques of rolling element bearings are generally small and in many applications are not significant. Bearing torque is a measure of the frictional resistance of the bearing to rotation and is the sum of three components: the torque due to the applied load; the torque due to viscous forces in lubricated rolling element bearings; and the torque due to roller end motions, for example, thrust loads against flanges. The friction or torque data may be used to calculate power absorption or heat generation within the bearing and can be utilized in efficiency or system-cooling studies.

Empirical equations have been developed for each of the torque components. These equations are influenced by such factors as bearing load, lubrication environment, and bearing design parameters. These design parameters include sliding friction from contact between the rolling elements and separator surfaces or between adjacent rolling elements; rolling friction from material deformations during the passage of the rolling elements over the race path; skidding or sliding of the Hertzian contact; and windage friction as a function of speed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Starting or breakaway torques are also of interest in some situations. Breakaway torques tend to be between 1.5 and 1.8 times the running or kinetic torques.

When evaluating the torque requirements of a system under design, it should be noted that other components of the bearing package, such as seals and closures, can increase the overall system torque significantly. Seal torques have been shown to vary from a fraction of the bearing torque to several times that torque. In addition, the torque values given can vary significantly when load, speed of rotation, temperature, or lubrication are outside normal ranges.

For small instrument bearings friction torque has implications more critical than for larger types of bearings. These bearings have three operating friction torques to consider: starting torque, normal running torque, and peak running torque. These torque levels may vary between manufacturers and among lots from a given manufacturer.

Instrument bearings are even more critically dependent on design features — radial play, retainer type, and race conformity — than larger bearings. Typical starting torque values for small bearings are given in the accompanying table, extracted from the New Departure General Catalog.

Finally, if accurate control of friction torque is critical to a particular application, tests of the selected bearings should be conducted to evaluate performance.

Starting Torque — ABEC7

Bearing Bore (in.)	Max. Starting Torque (g cm)	Thrust Load (g)	Minimum Radial Play Range (inches)	
			High Carbon Chrome Steel and All Miniatures	Stainless Steel Except Miniatures
0.125	0.10	75	0.0003–0.0005	—
	0.14	75	0.0002–0.0004	0.0004–0.0006
	0.18	75	0.0001–0.0003	0.0003–0.0005
	0.22	75	0.0001–0.0003	0.0001–0.0003
0.1875–0.312	0.40	400	0.0005–0.0008	—
	0.45	400	0.0004–0.0006	0.0005–0.0008
	0.50	400	0.0003–0.0005	0.0003–0.0005
	0.63	400	0.0001–0.0003	0.0002–0.0004
0.375	0.50	400	0.0005–0.0008	0.0008–0.0011
	0.63	400	0.0004–0.0006	0.0005–0.0008
	0.75	400	0.0003–0.0005	0.0004–0.0006
	0.95	400	0.0002–0.0004	0.0003–0.0005

Selection of Ball and Roller Bearings.—As compared with sleeve bearings, ball and roller bearings offer the following advantages: 1) starting friction is low; 2) less axial space is required; 3) relatively accurate shaft alignment can be maintained; 4) both radial and axial loads can be carried by certain types; 5) angle of load application is not restricted; 6) replacement is relatively easy; 7) comparatively heavy overloads can be carried momentarily; 8) lubrication is simple; and 9) design and application can be made with the assistance of bearing supplier engineers.

In selecting a ball or roller bearing for a specific application five choices must be made: 1) the bearing series; 2) the type of bearing; 3) the size of bearing; 4) the method of lubrication; and 5) the type of mounting.

Naturally these considerations are modified or affected by the anticipated operating conditions, expected life, cost, and overhaul philosophy.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

It is well to review the possible history of the bearing and its function in the machine it will be applied to, thus: 1) Will it be expected to endure removal and reapplication? 2) Must it be free from maintenance attention during its useful life? 3) Can wear of the housing or shaft be tolerated during the overhaul period? 4) Must it be adjustable to take up wear, or to change shaft location? 5) How accurately can the load spectrum be estimated? and 6) Will it be relatively free from abuse in operation?

Though many cautions could be pointed out, it should always be remembered that inadequate design approaches limit the utilization of rolling element bearings, reduce customer satisfaction, and reduce reliability. Time spent in this stage of design is the most rewarding effort of the bearing engineer, who, here again, can depend on the bearing manufacturers' field organization for assistance.

Type: Where loads are low, ball bearings are usually less expensive than roller bearings in terms of unit-carrying capacity. Where loads are high, the reverse is usually true.

For a purely radial load, almost any type of radial bearing can be used, the actual choice being determined by other factors. To support a combination of thrust and radial loads, several types of bearings may be considered. If the thrust load component is large, it may be most economical to provide a separate thrust bearing. When a separate thrust bearing cannot be used due to high speed, lack of space, or other factors, the following types may be considered: angular contact ball bearing, deep groove ball bearing without filling slot, tapered roller bearing with steep contact angle, and self-aligning bearing of the wide type. If movement or deflection in an axial direction must be held to a minimum, then a separate thrust bearing or a preloaded bearing capable of taking considerable thrust load is required. To minimize deflection due to a moment in an axial plane, a rigid bearing such as a double row angular contact type with outwardly converging load lines is required. In such cases, the resulting stresses must be taken into consideration in determining the proper size of the bearing.

For shock loads or heavy loads of short duration, roller bearings are usually preferred.

Special bearing designs may be required where accelerations are usually high as in planetary or crank motions.

Where the problem of excessive shaft deflection or misalignment between shaft and housing is present, a self-aligning type of bearing may be a satisfactory solution.

It should be kept in mind that a great deal of difficulty can be avoided if standard types of bearings are used in preference to special designs, wherever possible.

Size: The size of bearing required for a given application is determined by the loads that are to be carried and, in some cases, by the amount of rigidity that is necessary to limit deflection to some specified amount.

The forces to which a bearing will be subjected can be calculated by the laws of engineering mechanics from the known loads, power, operating pressure, etc. Where loads are irregular, varying, or of unknown magnitude, it may be difficult to determine the actual forces. In such cases, empirical determination of such forces, based on extensive experience in bearing design, may be needed to attack the problem successfully. Where such experience is lacking, the bearing manufacturer should be consulted or the services of a bearing expert obtained.

If a ball or roller bearing is to be subjected to a combination of radial and thrust loads, an *equivalent radial load* is computed in the case of radial or angular type bearings and an *equivalent thrust load* is computed in the case of thrust bearings.

Method of Lubrication.—If speeds are high, relubrication difficult, the shaft angle other than horizontal, the application environment incompatible with normal lubrication, leakage cannot be tolerated; if other elements of the mechanism establish the lubrication requirements, bearing selection must be made with these criteria as controlling influences. Modern bearing types cover a wide selection of lubrication means. Though the most

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

popular type is the "cartridge" type of sealed grease ball bearing, many applications have requirements which dictate against them. Often, operating environments may subject bearings to temperatures too high for seals utilized in the more popular designs. If minute leakage or the accumulation of traces of dirt at seal lips cannot be tolerated by the application (as in baking industry machinery), then the selections of bearings must be made with other sealing and lubrication systems in mind.

High shaft speeds generally dictate bearing selection based on the need for cooling, the suppression of churning or aeration of conventional lubricants, and most important of all, the inherent speed limitations of certain bearing types. An example of the latter is the effect of cage design and of the roller-end thrust-flange contact on the lubrication requirements in commercial taper roller bearings, which limit the speed they can endure and the thrust load they can carry. Reference to the manufacturers' catalog and application-design manuals is recommended before making bearing selections.

See *Selecting a Suitable Lubricant* on page 2512 for more information on this topic.

Type of Mounting.—Many bearing installations are complicated because the best adapted type was not selected. Similarly, performance, reliability, and maintenance operations are restricted because the mounting was not thoroughly considered. There is no universally adaptable bearing for all needs. Careful reviews of the machine requirements should be made before designs are implemented. In many cases complicated machining, redundant shaft and housings, and use of an oversize bearing can be eliminated if the proper bearing in a well-thought-out mounting is chosen.

Advantage should be taken of the many race variations available in "standard" series of bearings. Puller grooves, tapered sleeves, ranged outer races, split races, fully demountable rolling-element and cage assemblies, flexible mountings, hydraulic removal features, relubrication holes and grooves, and many other innovations are available beyond the obvious advantages which are inherent in the basic bearing types.

Radial and Axial Clearance.—In designing the bearing mounting, a major consideration is to provide running clearances consistent with the requirements of the application. Race fits must be expected to absorb some of the original bearing clearance so that allowance should be made for approximately 80 percent of the actual interference showing up in the diameter of the race. This will increase for heavy, stiff housings or for extra light series races shrunk onto solid shafts, while light metal housings (aluminum, magnesium, or sheet metal) and tubular shafts with wall sections less than the race wall thickness will cause a lesser change in the race diameter.

Where the application will impose heat losses through housing or shaft, or where a temperature differential may be expected, allowances must be made in the proper direction to insure proper operating clearance. Some compromises are required in applications where the indicated modification cannot be fully accommodated without endangering the bearing performance at lower speeds, during starting, or under lower temperature conditions than anticipated. Some leeway can be relied on with ball bearings since they can run with moderate preloads (0.0005 inch or 12.7 μm, max.) without affecting bearing life or temperature rise. Roller bearings, however, have a lesser tolerance for preloading, and must be carefully controlled to avoid overheating and resulting self-destruction.

In all critical applications axial and radial clearances should be checked with feeler gages or dial indicators to insure mounted clearances within tolerances established by the design engineer. Since chips, scores, race misalignment, shaft or housing denting, housing distortion, end cover (closure) off-squareness, and mismatch of rotor and housing axial dimensions can rob the bearing of clearance, careful checks of running clearance is recommended.

For precision applications, taper-sleeve mountings, opposed ball or tapered-roller bearings with adjustable or shimmed closures are employed to provide careful control of radial and/or axial clearances. This practice requires skill and experience as well as the initial assistance of the bearing manufacturer's field engineer.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tapered bore bearings are often used in applications such as these, again requiring careful and well worked-out assembly procedures. They can be assembled on either tapered shafts or on adapter sleeves. Advancement of the inner race over the tapered shaft can be done either by controlled heating (to expand the race as required) or by the use of a hydraulic jack. The adapter sleeve is supplied with a lock-nut which is used to advance the race on the tapered sleeve. With the heavier fits normally required to effect the clearance changes compatible with such mountings, hydraulic removal devices are normally recommended.

For the conventional application, with standard fits, clearances provided in the standard bearing are suitable for normal operation. To insure that the design conditions are "normal," a careful review of the application requirements, environments, operating speed range, anticipated abuses, and design parameters must be made.

General Bearing Handling Precautions.—To insure that rolling element bearings are capable of achieving their design life and that they perform without objectionable noise, temperature rise, or shaft excursions, the following precautions are recommended:

1) Use the best bearing available for the application, consistent with the value of the application. Remember, the cost of the best bearing is generally small compared to the replacement costs of the rotating components that can be destroyed if a bearing fails or malfunctions.

2) If questions arise in designing the bearing application, seek out the assistance of the bearing manufacturer's representative.

3) Handle bearings with care, keeping them in the sealed, original container until ready to use.

4) Follow the manufacturer's instructions in handling and assembling the bearings.

5) Work with clean tools, clean dry hands, and in clean surroundings.

6) Do not wash or wipe bearings prior to installation unless special instructions or requirements have been established to do so.

7) Place unwrapped bearings on clean paper and keep them similarly covered until applied, if they cannot be kept in the original container.

8) Don't use wooden mallets, brittle or chipped tools, or dirty fixtures and tools in mounting bearings.

9) Don't spin uncleaned bearings, nor spin *any* bearing with an air blast.

10) Use care not to scratch or nick bearings.

11) Don't strike or press on race flanges.

12) Use adapters for mounting which provide uniform steady pressure rather than hammering on a drift or sleeve.

13) Insure that races are started onto shafts and into housings evenly so as to prevent cocking.

14) Inspect shafts and housings before mounting bearing to insure that proper fits will be maintained.

15) When removing bearings, clean housings, covers, and shafts before exposing the bearings. All dirt can be considered an abrasive, dangerous to the reuse of any rolling bearing.

16) Treat used bearings, which may be reused, as new ones.

17) Protect dismantled bearings from dirt and moisture.

18) Use clean, lint-free rags if bearings are wiped.

19) Wrap bearings in clean, oil-proof paper when not in use.

20) Use clean filtered, water-free Stoddard's solvent or flushing oil to clean bearings.

21) In heating bearings for mounting onto shafts, follow manufacturer's instructions.

22) In assembling bearings onto shafts *never* strike the outer race, or press on it to force the inner race. Apply the pressure on the inner race only. In dismantling follow the same precautions.

23) Do not press, strike, or otherwise force the seal or shield on factory-sealed bearings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Bearing Failures, Deficiencies, and Their Origins.—The general classifications of failures and deficiencies requiring bearing removal are:

1) Overheating due to a) Inadequate or insufficient lubrication; b) Excessive lubrication; c) Grease liquefaction or aeration; d) Oil foaming; e) Abrasive or corrosive action due to contaminants in bearing; f) Distortion of housing due to warping, or out-of-round; g) Seal rubbing or failure; h) Inadequate or blocked scavenge oil passages; i) Inadequate bearing-clearance or bearing-preload; j) Race turning; k) Cage wear; and l) Shaft expansion-loss of bearing or seal clearance.

2) Vibration due to a) Dirt or chips in bearing; b) Fatigued race or rolling elements; c) Race turning; d) Rotor unbalance; e) Out-of-round shaft; f) Race misalignment; g) Housing resonance; h) Cage wear; i) Flats on races or rolling elements; j) Excessive clearance; k) Corrosion; l) False-brinelling or indentation of races; m) Electrical discharge (similar to corrosion effects); n) Mixed rolling element diameters; and o) Out-of-square rolling paths in races.

3) Turning on shaft due to a) Growth of race due to overheating; b) Fretting wear; c) Improper initial fit; d) Excessive shaft deflection; e) Initially coarse shaft finish; and f) Seal rub on inner race.

4) Binding of the shaft due to a) Lubricant breakdown; b) Contamination by abrasive or corrosive matter; c) Housing distortion or out-of-round pinching bearing; d) Uneven shimming of housing with loss of clearance; e) Tight rubbing seals; f) Preloaded bearings; g) Cocked races; h) Loss of clearance due to excessive tightening of adapter; i) Thermal expansion of shaft or housing; and j) Cage failure.

5) Noisy bearing due to a) Lubrication breakdown, inadequate lubrication, stiff grease; b) Contamination; c) Pinched bearing; d) Seal rubbing; e) Loss of clearance and preloading; f) Bearing slipping on shaft or in housing; g) Flatted roller or ball; h) Brinelling due to assembly abuse, handling, or shock loads; i) Variation in size of rolling elements; j) Out-of-round or lobular shaft; k) Housing bore waviness; and l) Chips or scores under bearing race seat.

6) Displaced shaft due to a) Bearing wear; b) Improper housing or closure assembly; c) Overheated and shifted bearing; d) Inadequate shaft or housing shoulder; e) Lubrication and cage failure permitting rolling elements to bunch; f) Loosened retainer nut or adapter; g) Excessive heat application in assembling inner race, causing growth and shifting on shaft; and h) Housing pounding out.

7) Lubricant leakage due to a) Overfilling of lubricant; b) Grease churning due to use of too soft a consistency; c) Grease deterioration due to excessive operating temperature; d) Operating life longer than grease life (grease breakdown, aeration, and purging); e) Seal wear; f) Wrong shaft attitude (bearing seals designed for horizontal mounting only); g) Seal failure; h) Clogged breather; i) Oil foaming due to churning or air flow through housing; j) Gasket (O-ring) failure or misapplication; k) Porous housing or closure; and l) Lubricator set at wrong flow rate.

Load Ratings and Fatigue Life

Ball and Roller Bearing Life.—The performance of ball and roller bearings is a function of many variables. These include the bearing design, the characteristics of the material from which the bearings are made, the way in which they are manufactured, as well as many variables associated with their application. The only sure way to establish the satisfactory operation of a bearing selected for a specific application is by actual performance in the application. As this is often impractical, another basis is required to estimate the suitability of a particular bearing for a given application. Two factors are taken into consideration: the bearing fatigue life, and its ability to withstand static loading.

Life Criterion: Even if a ball or roller bearing is properly mounted, adequately lubricated, protected from foreign matter and not subjected to extreme operating conditions, it

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

can ultimately fatigue. Under ideal conditions, the repeated stresses developed in the contact areas between the balls or rollers and the raceways eventually can result in the fatigue of the material which manifests itself with the spalling of the load-carrying surfaces. In most applications the fatigue life is the maximum useful life of a bearing.

Static Load Criterion: A static load is a load acting on a non-rotating bearing. Permanent deformations appear in balls or rollers and raceways under a static load of moderate magnitude and increase gradually with increasing load. The permissible static load is, therefore, dependent upon the permissible magnitude of permanent deformation. It has been found that for ball and roller bearings suitably manufactured from hardened alloy steel, deformations occurring under maximum contact stress of 4,000 megapascals (580,000 pounds per square inch) acting at the center of contact (in the case of roller bearings, of a uniformly loaded roller) do not greatly impair smoothness or friction. Depending on requirements for smoothness of operation, friction, or sound level, higher or lower static load limits may be tolerated.

Ball Bearing Types Covered.—AFBMA and American National Standard ANSI/ABMA 9-1990 sets forth the method of determining ball bearing Rating Life and Static Load Rating and covers the following types:

1) *Radial, deep groove and angular contact ball bearings* whose inner ring raceways have a cross-sectional radius not larger than 52 percent of the ball diameter and whose outer ring raceways have a cross-sectional radius not larger than 53 percent of the ball diameter.

2) *Radial, self-aligning ball bearings* whose inner ring raceways have cross-sectional radii not larger than 53 percent of the ball diameter.

3) *Thrust ball bearings* whose washer raceways have cross-sectional radii not larger than 54 percent of the ball diameter.

4) *Double row, radial and angular contact ball bearings* and double direction thrust ball bearings are presumed to be symmetrical.

Limitations for Ball Bearings.—The following limitations apply:

1) *Truncated contact area*. This standard* may not be safely applied to ball bearings subjected to loading which causes the contact area of the ball with the raceway to be truncated by the raceway shoulder. This limitation depends strongly on details of bearing design which are not standardized.

2) *Material*. This standard applies only to ball bearings fabricated from hardened good quality steel.

3) *Types*. The f_c factors specified in the basic load rating formulas are valid only for those ball bearing types specified above.

4) *Lubrication*. The Rating Life calculated according to this standard is based on the assumption that the bearing is adequately lubricated. The determination of adequate lubrication depends upon the bearing application.

5) *Ring support and alignment*. The Rating Life calculated according to this standard assumes that the bearing inner and outer rings are rigidly supported and the inner and outer ring axes are properly aligned.

6) *Internal clearance*. The radial ball bearing Rating Life calculated according to this standard is based on the assumption that only a nominal interior clearance occurs in the mounted bearing at operating speed, load and temperature.

7) *High-speed effects*. The Rating Life calculated according to this standard does not account for high-speed effects such as ball centrifugal forces and gyroscopic moments. These effects tend to diminish fatigue life. Analytical evaluation of these effects frequently requires the use of high-speed digital computation devices and hence is not covered in the standard.

* All references to "standard" are to AFBMA and American National Standard "Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings" ANSI/ABMA 9-1990.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

8) *Groove radii*. If groove radii are smaller than those specified in the bearing types covered, the ability of a bearing to resist fatigue is not improved: however, it is diminished by the use of larger radii.

Ball Bearing Rating Life.—According to the Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association standards the Rating Life L_{10} of a group of apparently identical ball bearings is the life in millions of revolutions that 90 percent of the group will complete or exceed. For a single bearing, L_{10} also refers to the life associated with 90 percent reliability.

Radial and Angular Contact Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the Rating Life L_{10} in millions of revolutions, for a radial or angular contact ball bearing application is given by the formula:

$$L_{10} = \left(\frac{C}{P}\right)^3 \tag{1}$$

where $C =$ basic load rating, newtons (pounds). See Formulas (2), (3a) and (3b)
$P =$ equivalent radial load, newtons (pounds). See Formula (4)

Table 27. Values of *fc* for Radial and Angular Contact Ball Bearings

$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	Single Row Radial Contact; Single and Double Row Angular Contact, Groove Type[a]		Double Row Radial Contact Groove Type		Self-Aligning	
	Values of f_c					
	Metric[b]	Inch[c]	Metric[b]	Inch[c]	Metric[b]	Inch[c]
0.05	46.7	3550	44.2	3360	17.3	1310
0.06	49.1	3730	46.5	3530	18.6	1420
0.07	51.1	3880	48.4	3680	19.9	1510
0.08	52.8	4020	50.0	3810	21.1	1600
0.09	54.3	4130	51.4	3900	22.3	1690
0.10	55.5	4220	52.6	4000	23.4	1770
0.12	57.5	4370	54.5	4140	25.6	1940
0.14	58.8	4470	55.7	4230	27.7	2100
0.16	59.6	4530	56.5	4290	29.7	2260
0.18	59.9	4550	56.8	4310	31.7	2410
0.20	59.9	4550	56.8	4310	33.5	2550
0.22	59.6	4530	56.5	4290	35.2	2680
0.24	59.0	4480	55.9	4250	36.8	2790
0.26	58.2	4420	55.1	4190	38.2	2910
0.28	57.1	4340	54.1	4110	39.4	3000
0.30	56.0	4250	53.0	4030	40.3	3060
0.32	54.6	4160	51.8	3950	40.9	3110
0.34	53.2	4050	50.4	3840	41.2	3130
0.36	51.7	3930	48.9	3730	41.3	3140
0.38	50.0	3800	47.4	3610	41.0	3110
0.40	48.4	3670	45.8	3480	40.4	3070

[a] A. When calculating the basic load rating for a unit consisting of two similar, single row, radial contact ball bearings, in a duplex mounting, the pair is considered as one, double row, radial contact ball bearing.

B. When calculating the basic load rating for a unit consisting of two, similar, single row, angular contact ball bearings in a duplex mounting, "face-to-face" or "back-to-back," the pair is considered as one, double row, angular contact ball bearing.

C. When calculating the basic load rating for a unit consisting of two or more similar, single angular contact ball bearings mounted "in tandem," properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, the rating of the combination is the number of bearings to the 0.7 power times the rating of a single row ball bearing. If the unit may be treated as a number of individually interchangeable single row bearings, this footnote "C" does not apply.

[b] **Use to obtain *C* in newtons when *D* is given in mm.**

[c] Use to obtain *C* in pounds when *D* is given in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 28. Values of *X* and *Y* for Computing Equivalent Radial Load *P* of Radial and Angular Contact Ball Bearings

Contact Angle, α	Table Entering Factors[a]			Single Row Bearings[b]		Double Row Bearings			
				$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} \le e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$	
RADIAL CONTACT GROOVE BEARINGS									
		F_a/iZD^2							
	F_a/C_o	Metric Units	Inch Units	e	X	Y	X	Y	X	Y
0°	0.014	0.172	25	0.19	0.56	2.30	1	0	0.56	2.30
	0.028	0.345	50	0.22		1.99				1.99
	0.056	0.689	100	0.26		1.71				1.71
	0.084	1.03	150	0.28		1.56				1.55
	0.11	1.38	200	0.30		1.45				1.45
	0.17	2.07	300	0.34		1.31				1.31
	0.28	3.45	500	0.38		1.15				1.15
	0.42	5.17	750	0.42		1.04				1.04
	0.56	6.89	1000	0.44		1.00				1.00
ANGULAR CONTACT GROOVE BEARINGS										
		F_a/ZD^2								
	iF_a/C_o	Metric Units	Inch Units	e	X	Y	X	Y	X	Y
5°	0.014	0.172	25	0.23	For this type use the X, Y, and e values applicable to single row radial contact bearings		1	2.78	0.78	3.74
	0.028	0.345	50	0.26				2.40		3.23
	0.056	0.689	100	0.30				2.07		2.78
	0.085	1.03	150	0.34				1.87		2.52
	0.11	1.38	200	0.36				1.75		2.36
	0.17	2.07	300	0.40				1.58		2.13
	0.28	3.45	500	0.45				1.39		1.87
	0.42	5.17	750	0.50				1.26		1.69
	0.56	6.89	1000	0.52				1.21		1.63
10°	0.014	0.172	25	0.29	0.46	1.88	1	2.18	0.75	3.06
	0.029	0.345	50	0.32		1.71		1.98		2.78
	0.057	0.689	100	0.36		1.52		1.76		2.47
	0.086	1.03	150	0.38		1.41		1.63		2.20
	0.11	1.38	200	0.40		1.34		1.55		2.18
	0.17	2.07	300	0.44		1.23		1.42		2.00
	0.29	3.45	500	0.49		1.10		1.27		1.79
	0.43	5.17	750	0.54		1.01		1.17		1.64
	0.57	6.89	1000	0.54		1.00		1.16		1.63
15°	0.015	0.172	25	0.38	0.44	1.47	1	1.65	0.72	2.39
	0.029	0.345	50	0.40		1.40		1.57		2.28
	0.058	0.689	100	0.43		1.30		1.46		2.11
	0.087	1.03	150	0.46		1.23		1.38		2.00
	0.12	1.38	200	0.47		1.19		1.34		1.93
	0.17	2.07	300	0.50		1.12		1.26		1.82
	0.29	3.45	500	0.55		1.02		1.14		1.66
	0.44	5.17	750	0.56		1.00		1.12		1.63
	0.58	6.89	1000	0.56		1.00		1.12		1.63
20°	…	…	…	0.57	0.43	1.00	1	1.09	0.70	1.63
25°	…	…	…	0.68	0.41	0.87	1	0.92	0.67	1.41
30°	…	…	…	0.80	0.39	0.76	1	0.78	0.63	1.24
35°	…	…	…	0.95	0.37	0.66	1	0.66	0.60	1.07
40°	…	…	…	1.14	0.35	0.57	1	0.55	0.57	0.98
Self-aligning Ball Bearings				1.5 tan α	0.40	0.4 cot α	1	0.42 cot α	0.65	0.65 cot α

[a] Symbol definitions are given on the following page.

[b] For single row bearings when $F_a/F_r \le e$, use $X = 1$, $Y = 0$. Two similar, single row, angular contact ball bearings mounted face-to-face or back-to-back are considered as one double row, angular contact bearing.

Values of *X*, *Y*, and *e* for a load or contact angle other than shown are obtained by linear interpolation.Values of *X*, *Y*, and *e* do not apply to filling slot bearings for applications in which ball-raceway contact areas project substantially into the filling slot under load. *Symbol Definitions:* F_a is the applied axial load in newtons (pounds); C_o is the static load rating in newtons (pounds) of

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the bearing under consideration and is found by Formula (20); i is the number of rows of balls in the bearing; Z is the number of balls per row in a radial or angular contact bearing or the number of balls in a single row, single direction thrust bearing; D is the ball diameter in millimeters (inches); and F_r is the applied radial load in newtons (pounds).

For radial and angular contact ball bearings with balls not larger than 25.4 mm (1 inch) in diameter, C is found by the formula:

$$C = f_c (i \cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.8} \tag{2}$$

and with balls larger than 25.4 mm (1 inch) in diameter C is found by the formula:

$$\boldsymbol{C = 3.647 f_c (i \cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \quad \text{(metric)}} \tag{3a}$$

$$C = f_c (i \cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \text{(inch)} \tag{3b}$$

where f_c = a factor which depends on the geometry of the bearing components, the accuracy to which the various bearing parts are made and the material. Values of f_c, are given in Table 27
i = number of rows of balls in the bearing
α = nominal contact angle, degrees
Z = number of balls per row in a radial or angular contact bearing
D = ball diameter, mm (inches)

The magnitude of the equivalent radial load, P, in newtons (pounds) for radial and angular contact ball bearings, under combined constant radial and constant thrust loads is given by the formula:

$$P = XF_r + YF_a \tag{4}$$

where F_r = the applied radial load in newtons (pounds)
F_a = the applied axial load in newtons (pounds)
X = radial load factor as given in Table 30
Y = axial load factor as given in Table 30

Thrust Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the Rating Life L_{10} in millions of revolutions for a thrust ball bearing application is given by the formula:

$$L_{10} = \left(\frac{C_a}{P_a}\right)^3 \tag{5}$$

where C_a = the basic load rating, newtons (pounds). See Formulas (6) to (10)
P_a = equivalent thrust load, newtons (pounds). See Formula (11)

For single row, single and double direction, thrust ball bearing with balls not larger than 25.4 mm (1 inch) in diameter, C_a is found by the formulas:

$$\text{for } \alpha = 90 \text{ degrees}, \quad C_a = f_c Z^{2/3} D^{1.8} \tag{6}$$

$$\text{for } \alpha \neq 90 \text{ degrees}, \quad C_a = f_c (\cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.8} \tan \alpha \tag{7}$$

and with balls larger than 25.4 mm (1 inch) in diameter, C_a is found by the formulas:

$$\boldsymbol{\text{for } \alpha = 90 \text{ degrees}, \quad C_a = 3.647 f_c Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \text{ (metric)}} \tag{8a}$$

$$C_a = f_c Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \text{(inch)} \tag{8b}$$

$$\boldsymbol{\text{for } \alpha \neq 90 \text{ degrees}, \quad C_a = 3.647 f_c (\cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \tan \alpha \quad \text{(metric)}} \tag{9a}$$

$$C_a = f_c (\cos \alpha)^{0.7} Z^{2/3} D^{1.4} \tan \alpha \text{ (inch)} \tag{9b}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where f_c = a factor which depends on the geometry of the bearing components, the accuracy to which the various bearing parts are made, and the material. Values of f_c are given in Table 29

Z = number of balls per row in a single row, single direction thrust ball bearing

D = ball diameter, mm (inches)

α = nominal contact angle, degrees

Table 29. Values of f_c for Thrust Ball Bearings

$\frac{D}{d_m}$	$\alpha = 90°$		$D\cos\alpha$	$\alpha = 45°$		$\alpha = 60°$		$\alpha = 75°$	
	Metric[a]	Inch[b]		Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]
0.01	36.7	2790	0.01	42.1	3200	39.2	2970	37.3	2840
0.02	45.2	3430	0.02	51.7	3930	48.1	3650	45.9	3490
0.03	51.1	3880	0.03	58.2	4430	54.2	4120	51.7	3930
0.04	55.7	4230	0.04	63.3	4810	58.9	4470	56.1	4260
0.05	59.5	4520	0.05	67.3	5110	62.6	4760	59.7	4540
0.06	62.9	4780	0.06	70.7	5360	65.8	4990	62.7	4760
0.07	65.8	5000	0.07	73.5	5580	68.4	5190	65.2	4950
0.08	68.5	5210	0.08	75.9	5770	70.7	5360	67.3	5120
0.09	71.0	5390	0.09	78.0	5920	72.6	5510	69.2	5250
0.10	73.3	5570	0.10	79.7	6050	74.2	5630	70.7	5370
0.12	77.4	5880	0.12	82.3	6260	76.6	5830	…	…
0.14	81.1	6160	0.14	84.1	6390	78.3	5950	…	…
0.16	84.4	6410	0.16	85.1	6470	79.2	6020	…	…
0.18	87.4	6640	0.18	85.5	6500	79.6	6050	…	…
0.20	90.2	6854	0.20	85.4	6490	79.5	6040	…	…
0.22	92.8	7060	0.22	84.9	6450	…	…	…	…
0.24	95.3	7240	0.24	84.0	6380	…	…	…	…
0.26	97.6	7410	0.26	82.8	6290	…	…	…	…
0.28	99.8	7600	0.28	81.3	6180	…	…	…	…
0.30	101.9	7750	0.30	79.6	6040	…	…	…	…
0.32	103.9	7900	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.34	105.8	8050	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

[a] **Use to obtain C_a in newtons when D is given in mm.**

[b] Use to obtain C_a in pounds when D is given in inches.

For thrust ball bearings with two or more rows of similar balls carrying loads in the same direction, the basic load rating, C_a, in newtons (pounds) is found by the formula:

$$C_a = (Z_1 + Z_2 + \ldots + Z_n)\left[\left(\frac{Z_1}{C_{a1}}\right)^{10/3} + \left(\frac{Z_2}{C_{a2}}\right)^{10/3} + \ldots + \left(\frac{Z_n}{C_{an}}\right)^{10/3}\right]^{-0.3} \quad (10)$$

where $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots, Z_n$ = number of balls in respective rows of a single-direction multi-row thrust ball bearing

$C_{a1}, C_{a2}, \ldots, C_{an}$ = basic load rating per row of a single-direction, multi-row thrust ball bearing, each calculated as a single-row bearing with $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots, Z_n$ balls, respectively

The magnitude of the equivalent thrust load, P_a, in newtons (pounds) for thrust ball bearings with $\alpha \neq 90$ degrees under combined constant thrust and constant radial loads is found by the formula:

$$P_a = XF_r + YF_a \quad (11)$$

where F_r = the applied radial load in newtons (pounds)

F_a = the applied axial load in newtons (pounds)

X = radial load factor as given in Table 30

Y = axial load factor as given in Table 30

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 30. Values of *X* and *Y* for Computing Equivalent Thrust Load P_a for Thrust Ball Bearings

Contact Angle α	e	Single Direction Bearings		Double Direction Bearings			
		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} \le e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$	
		X	Y	X	Y	X	Y
45°	1.25	0.66	1	1.18	0.59	0.66	1
60°	2.17	0.92	1	1.90	0.54	0.92	1
75°	4.67	1.66	1	3.89	0.52	1.66	1

For $\alpha = 90°$, $F_r = 0$ and $Y = 1$.

Roller Bearing Types Covered.—This standard* applies to *cylindrical, tapered and self-aligning radial and thrust roller bearings* and to *needle roller bearings*. These bearings are presumed to be within the size ranges shown in the AFBMA dimensional standards, of good quality and produced in accordance with good manufacturing practice.

Roller bearings vary considerably in design and execution. Since small differences in relative shape of contacting surfaces may account for distinct differences in load-carrying ability, this standard does not attempt to cover all design variations, rather it applies to basic roller bearing designs.

The following limitations apply:

1) *Truncated contact area*. This standard may not be safely applied to roller bearings subjected to application conditions which cause the contact area of the roller with the raceway to be severely truncated by the edge of the raceway or roller.

2) *Stress concentrations*. A cylindrical, tapered or self-aligning roller bearing must be expected to have a basic load rating less than that obtained using a value of f_c taken from Table 31 and Table 32 if, under load, a stress concentration is present in some part of the roller-raceway contact. Such stress concentrations occur in the center of nominal point contacts, at the contact extremities for line contacts and at inadequately blended junctions of a rolling surface profile. Stress concentrations can also occur if the rollers are not accurately guided such as in bearings without cages and bearings not having rigid integral flanges. Values of f_c given in Table 31 and Table 32 are based upon bearings manufactured to achieve optimized contact. For no bearing type or execution will the factor f_c be greater than that obtained in Table 31 and Table 32.

3) *Material*. This standard applies only to roller bearings fabricated from hardened, good quality steel.

4) *Lubrication*. Rating Life calculated according to this standard is based on the assumption that the bearing is adequately lubricated. Determination of adequate lubrication depends upon the bearing application.

5) *Ring support and alignment*. Rating Life calculated according to this standard assumes that the bearing inner and outer rings are rigidly supported, and that the inner and outer ring axes are properly aligned.

6) *Internal clearance*. Radial roller bearing Rating Life calculated according to this standard is based on the assumption that only a nominal internal clearance occurs in the mounted bearing at operating speed, load, and temperature.

7) *High-speed effects*. The Rating Life calculated according to this standard does not account for high speed effects such as roller centrifugal forces and gyroscopic moments: These effects tend to diminish fatigue life. Analytical evaluation of these effects frequently requires the use of high-speed digital computation devices and hence, cannot be included.

* All references to "standard" are to AFBMA and American National Standard "Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings" ANSI/AFBMA Std 11-1990.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 31. Values of f_c for Radial Roller Bearings

$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	f_c		$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	f_c		$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	f_c	
	Metric[a]	Inch[b]		Metric[a]	Inch[b]		Metric[a]	Inch[b]
0.01	52.1	4680	0.18	88.8	7980	0.35	79.5	7140
0.02	60.8	5460	0.19	88.8	7980	0.36	78.6	7060
0.03	66.5	5970	0.20	88.7	7970	0.37	77.6	6970
0.04	70.7	6350	0.21	88.5	7950	0.38	76.7	6890
0.05	74.1	6660	0.22	88.2	7920	0.39	75.7	6800
0.06	76.9	6910	0.23	87.9	7890	0.40	74.6	6700
0.07	79.2	7120	0.24	87.5	7850	0.41	73.6	6610
0.08	81.2	7290	0.25	87.0	7810	0.42	72.5	6510
0.09	82.8	7440	0.26	86.4	7760	0.43	71.4	6420
0.10	84.2	7570	0.27	85.8	7710	0.44	70.3	6320
0.11	85.4	7670	0.28	85.2	7650	0.45	69.2	6220
0.12	86.4	7760	0.29	84.5	7590	0.46	68.1	6120
0.13	87.1	7830	0.30	83.8	7520	0.47	67.0	6010
0.14	87.7	7880	0.31	83.0	7450	0.48	65.8	5910
0.15	88.2	7920	0.32	82.2	7380	0.49	64.6	5810
0.16	88.5	7950	0.33	81.3	7300	0.50	63.5	5700
0.17	88.7	7970	0.34	80.4	7230	…	…	…

[a] For $\alpha = 0°$, $F_a = 0$ and $X = 1$.

[b] Use to obtain C in pounds when l_{eff} and D are given in inches.

Table 32. Values of f_c for Thrust Roller Bearings

$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	$45° < \alpha < 60°$		$60° < \alpha < 75°$		$75° \le \alpha < 90°$		$\frac{D}{d_m}$	$\alpha = 90°$	
	f_c							f_c	
	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]		Metric[a]	Inch[b]
0.01	109.7	9840	107.1	9610	105.6	9470	0.01	105.4	9500
0.02	127.8	11460	124.7	11180	123.0	11030	0.02	122.9	11000
0.03	139.5	12510	136.2	12220	134.3	12050	0.03	134.5	12100
0.04	148.3	13300	144.7	12980	142.8	12810	0.04	143.4	12800
0.05	155.2	13920	151.5	13590	149.4	13400	0.05	150.7	13200
0.06	160.9	14430	157.0	14080	154.9	13890	0.06	156.9	14100
0.07	165.6	14850	161.6	14490	159.4	14300	0.07	162.4	14500
0.08	169.5	15200	165.5	14840	163.2	14640	0.08	167.2	15100
0.09	172.8	15500	168.7	15130	166.4	14930	0.09	171.7	15400
0.10	175.5	15740	171.4	15370	169.0	15160	0.10	175.7	15900
0.12	179.7	16120	175.4	15730	173.0	15520	0.12	183.0	16300
0.14	182.3	16350	177.9	15960	175.5	15740	0.14	189.4	17000
0.16	183.7	16480	179.3	16080	…	…	0.16	195.1	17500
0.18	184.1	16510	179.7	16120	…	…	0.18	200.3	18000
0.20	183.7	16480	179.3	16080	…	…	0.20	205.0	18500
0.22	182.6	16380	…	…	…	…	0.22	209.4	18800
0.24	180.9	16230	…	…	…	…	0.24	213.5	19100
0.26	178.7	16030	…	…	…	…	0.26	217.3	19600
0.28	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.28	220.9	19900
0.30	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.30	224.3	20100

[a] **Use to obtain C_a in newtons when l_{eff} and D are given in mm.**

[b] Use to obtain C_a in pounds when l_{eff} and D are given in inches.

Roller Bearing Rating Life.—The Rating Life L_{10} of a group of apparently identical roller bearings is the life in millions of revolutions that 90 percent of the group will complete or exceed. For a single bearing, L_{10} also refers to the life associated with 90 percent reliability.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Radial Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the Rating Life, L_{10}, in millions of revolutions, for a radial roller bearing application is given by the formula:

$$L_{10} = \left(\frac{C}{P}\right)^{10/3} \tag{12}$$

where C = the basic load rating in newtons (pounds), see Formula (13); and, P = equivalent radial load in newtons (pounds), see Formula (14).

For radial roller bearings, C is found by the formula:

$$C = f_c\,(il_{eff}\cos\alpha)^{7/9} Z^{3/4} D^{29/27} \tag{13}$$

where f_c = a factor which depends on the geometry of the bearing components, the accuracy to which the various bearing parts are made, and the material. Maximum values of f_c are given in Table 31

i = number of rows of rollers in the bearing

l_{eff} = effective length, mm (inches) α = nominal contact angle, degrees

Z = number of rollers per row in a radial roller bearing

D = roller diameter, mm (inches) (mean diameter for a tapered roller, major diameter for a spherical roller)

When rollers are longer than $2.5D$, a reduction in the f_c value must be anticipated. In this case, the bearing manufacturer may be expected to establish load ratings accordingly.

In applications where rollers operate directly on a shaft surface or a housing surface, such a surface must be equivalent in all respects to the raceway it replaces to achieve the basic load rating of the bearing.

When calculating the basic load rating for a unit consisting of two or more similar single-row bearings mounted "in tandem," properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, the rating of the combination is the number of bearings to the 7/9 power times the rating of a single-row bearing. If, for some technical reason, the unit may be treated as a number of individually interchangeable single-row bearings, this consideration does not apply.

The magnitude of the equivalent radial load, P, in newtons (pounds), for radial roller bearings, under combined constant radial and constant thrust loads is given by the formula:

$$P = XF_r + YF_a \tag{14}$$

where F_r = the applied radial load in newtons (pounds)

F_a = the applied axial load in newtons (pounds)

X = radial load factor as given in Table 33

Y = axial load factor as given in Table 33

Table 33. Values of *X* and *Y* for Computing Equivalent Radial Load *P* for Radial Roller Bearing

Bearing Type	$\frac{F_a}{F_r} \le e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$	
	X	*Y*	*X*	*Y*
Self-Aligning and Tapered Roller Bearings[a] $\alpha \neq 0°$	Single Row Bearings			
	1	0	0.4	0.4 cot α
	Double Row Bearings[a]			
	1	0.45 cot α	0.67	0.67 cot α

[a] For $\alpha = 0°$, $F_a = 0$ and $X = 1$.
$e = 1.5 \tan\alpha$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Typical Bearing Life for Various Design Applications

Uses	Design life in hours	Uses	Design life in hours
Agricultural equipment	3000–6000	Gearing units	
Aircraft equipment	500–2000	Automotive	600–5000
Automotive		Multipurpose	8000–15000
Race car	500–800	Machine tools	20000
Light motorcycle	600–1200	Rail Vehicles	15000–25000
Heavy motorcycle	1000–2000	Heavy rolling mill	> 50000
Light cars	1000–2000	Machines	
Heavy cars	1500–2500	Beater mills	20000–30000
Light trucks	1500–2500	Briquette presses	20000–30000
Heavy trucks	2000–2500	Grinding spindles	1000–2000
Buses	2000–5000	Machine tools	10000–30000
Electrical		Mining machinery	4000–15000
Household appliances	1000–2000	Paper machines	50000–80000
Motors ≤ ½ hp	1000–2000	Rolling mills	
Motors ≤ 3 hp	8000–10000	Small cold mills	5000–6000
Motors, medium	10000–15000	Large multipurpose mills	8000–10000
Motors, large	20000–30000	Rail vehicle axle	
Elevator cables sheaves	40000–60000	Mining cars	5000
Mine ventilation fans	40000–50000	Motor rail cars	16000–20000
Propeller thrust bearings	15000–25000	Open-pit mining cars	20000–25000
Propeller shaft bearings	> 80000	Streetcars	20000–25000
Gear drives		Passenger cars	26000
Boat gearing units	3000–5000	Freight cars	35000
Gear drives	> 50000	Locomotive outer bearings	20000–25000
Ship gear drives	20000–30000	Locomotive inner bearings	30000–40000
Machinery for 8 hour service which are not always fully utilized	14000–20000	Machinery for short or intermittent operation where service interruption is of minor importance	4000–8000
Machinery for 8 hour service which are fully utilized	20000–30000	Machinery for intermittent service where reliable operation is of great importance	8000–14000
Machinery for continuous 24 hour service	50000–60000	Instruments and apparatus in frequent use	0–500

Roller bearings are generally designed to achieve optimized contact; however, they usually support loads other than the loading at which optimized contact is maintained. The 10/3 exponent in Rating Life Formulas (12) and (15) was selected to yield satisfactory Rating Life estimates for a broad spectrum from light to heavy loading. When loading exceeds that which develops optimized contact, e.g., loading greater than $C/4$ to $C/2$ or $C_a/4$ to $C_a/2$, the user should consult the bearing manufacturer to establish the adequacy of the Rating Life formulas for the particular application.

Thrust Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the Rating Life, L_{10}, in millions of revolutions for a thrust roller bearing application is given by the formula:

$$L_{10} = \left(\frac{C_a}{P_a}\right)^{10/3} \tag{15}$$

where C_a = basic load rating, newtons (pounds). See Formulas (16) to (18)
P_a = equivalent thrust load, newtons (pounds). See Formula (19)

For single row, single and double direction, thrust roller bearings, the magnitude of the basic load rating, C_a, in newtons (pounds), is found by the formulas:

$$\text{for } \alpha = 90°, \quad C_a = f_c l_{eff}^{7/9} Z^{3/4} D^{29/27} \tag{16}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\text{for } \alpha \neq 90°, \quad C_a = f_c (l_{eff} \cos\alpha)^{7/9} Z^{3/4} D^{29/27} \tan\alpha \tag{17}$$

where f_c = a factor which depends on the geometry of the bearing components, the accuracy to which the various parts are made, and the material. Values of f_c are given in Table 32

l_{eff} = effective length, mm (inches)

Z = number of rollers in a single row, single direction, thrust roller bearing

D = roller diameter, mm (inches) (mean diameter for a tapered roller, major diameter for a spherical roller)

α = nominal contact angle, degrees

For thrust roller bearings with two or more rows of rollers carrying loads in the same direction the magnitude of C_a is found by the formula:

$$C_a = (Z_1 l_{eff1} + Z_2 l_{eff2} + \ldots + Z_n l_{effn}) \left\{ \left[\frac{Z_1 l_{eff1}}{C_{a1}} \right]^{9/2} + \left[\frac{Z_2 l_{eff2}}{C_{a2}} \right]^{9/2} + \ldots + \left[\frac{Z_n l_{effn}}{C_{an}} \right]^{9/2} \right\}^{-2/9} \tag{18}$$

where $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots, Z_n$ = the number of rollers in respective rows of a single direction, multi-row bearing

$C_{a1}, C_{a2}, \ldots, C_{an}$ = the basic load rating per row of a single direction, multi-row, thrust roller bearing, each calculated as a single row bearing with $Z_1, Z_2, \ldots, Z_n$ rollers respectively

$l_{eff1}, l_{eff2}, \ldots, l_{effn}$ = effective length, mm (inches), or rollers in the respective rows

In applications where rollers operate directly on a surface supplied by the user, such a surface must be equivalent in all respects to the washer raceway it replaces to achieve the basic load rating of the bearing.

In case the bearing is so designed that several rollers are located on a common axis, these rollers are considered as one roller of a length equal to the total effective length of contact of the several rollers. Rollers as defined above, or portions thereof which contact the same washer-raceway area, belong to one row.

When the ratio of the individual roller effective length to the pitch diameter (at which this roller operates) is too large, a reduction of the f_c value must be anticipated due to excessive slip in the roller-raceway contact.

When calculating the basic load rating for a unit consisting of two or more similar single row bearings mounted "in tandem," properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, the rating of the combination is defined by Formula (18). If, for some technical reason, the unit may be treated as a number of individually interchangeable single-row bearings, this consideration does not apply.

The magnitude of the equivalent thrust load, P_a, in pounds, for thrust roller bearings with α not equal to 90 degrees under combined constant thrust and constant radial loads is given by the formula:

$$P_a = XF_r + YF_a \tag{19}$$

where F_r = applied radial load, newtons (pounds)

F_a = applied axial load, newtons (pounds)

X = radial load factor as given in Table 34

Y = axial load factor as given in Table 34

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 34. Values of *X* and *Y* for Computing Equivalent Thrust Load P_a for Thrust Roller Bearings

Bearing Type	Single Direction Bearings		Double Direction Bearings			
	$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} \le e$		$\frac{F_a}{F_r} > e$	
	X	*Y*	*X*	*Y*	*X*	*Y*
Self-Aligning Tapered Thrust Roller Bearings[a] $\alpha \neq 0$	$\tan\alpha$	1	$1.5\tan\alpha$	0.67	$\tan\alpha$	1

[a] For $\alpha = 90°$, $F_r = 0$ and $Y = 1$.

$e = 1.5\tan\alpha$

Life Adjustment Factors.—In certain applications of ball or roller bearings it is desirable to specify life for a reliability other than 90 percent. In other cases the bearings may be fabricated from special bearing steels such as vacuum-degassed and vacuum-melted steels, and improved processing techniques. Finally, application conditions may indicate other than normal lubrication, load distribution, or temperature. For such conditions a series of life adjustment factors may be applied to the fatigue life formula. This is fully explained in AFBMA and American National Standard "Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings"ANSI/AFBMA Std 9-1990 and AFBMA and American National Standard "Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings"ANSI/AFBMA Std 11-1990. In addition to consulting these standards it may be advantageous to also obtain information from the bearing manufacturer.

Life Adjustment Factor for Reliability: For certain applications, it is desirable to specify life for a reliability greater than 90 percent which is the basis of the Rating Life.

To determine the bearing life of ball or roller bearings for reliability greater than 90 percent, the Rating Life must be adjusted by a factor a_1 such that $L_n = a_1 L_{10}$. For a reliability of 95 percent, designated as L_5, the life adjustment factor a_1 is 0.62; for 96 percent, L_4, a_1 is 0.53; for 97 percent, L_3, a_1 is 0.44; for 98 percent, L_2, a_1 is 0.33; and for 99 percent, L_1, a_1 is 0.21.

Life Adjustment Factor for Material: For certain types of ball or roller bearings which incorporate improved materials and processing, the Rating Life can be adjusted by a factor a_2 such that $L_{10}' = a_2 L_{10}$. Factor a_2 depends upon steel analysis, metallurgical processes, forming methods, heat treatment, and manufacturing methods in general. Ball and roller bearings fabricated from consumable vacuum remelted steels and certain other special analysis steels, have demonstrated extraordinarily long endurance. These steels are of exceptionally high quality, and bearings fabricated from these are usually considered special manufacture. Generally, a_2 values for such steels can be obtained from the bearing manufacturer. However, all of the specified limitations and qualifications for the application of the Rating Life formulas still apply.

Life Adjustment Factor for Application Condition: Application conditions which affect ball or roller bearing life include: 1) lubrication; 2) load distribution (including effects of clearance, misalignment, housing and shaft stiffness, type of loading, and thermal gradients); and 3) temperature.

Items 2 and 3 require special analytical and experimental techniques, therefore the user should consult the bearing manufacturer for evaluations and recommendations.

Operating conditions where the factor a_3 might be less than 1 include: a) exceptionally low values of Nd_m (rpm times pitch diameter, in mm); e.g., $Nd_m < 10{,}000$; b) lubricant viscosity at less than 70 SSU for ball bearings and 100 SSU for roller bearings at operating temperature; and c) excessively high operating temperatures.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When a_3 is less than 1 it may not be assumed that the deficiency in lubrication can be overcome by using an improved steel. When this factor is applied, $L_{10}' = a_3 L_{10}$.

In most ball and roller bearing applications, lubrication is required to separate the rolling surfaces, i.e., rollers and raceways, to reduce the retainer-roller and retainer-land friction and sometimes to act as a coolant to remove heat generated by the bearing.

Factor Combinations: A fatigue life formula embodying the foregoing life adjustment factors is $L_{10}' = a_1 a_2 a_3 L_{10}$. Indiscriminate application of the life adjustment factors in this formula may lead to serious overestimation of bearing endurance, since fatigue life is only one criterion for bearing selection. Care must be exercised to select bearings which are of sufficient size for the application.

Ball Bearing Static Load Rating.—For ball bearings suitably manufactured from hardened alloy steels, the static radial load rating is that uniformly distributed static radial bearing load which produces a maximum contact stress of 4,000 megapascals (580,000 pounds per square inch). In the case of a single row, angular contact ball bearing, the static radial load rating refers to the radial component of that load which causes a purely radial displacement of the bearing rings in relation to each other. The static axial load rating is that uniformly distributed static centric axial load which produces a maximum contact stress of 4,000 megapascals (580,000 pounds per square inch).

Radial and Angular Contact Groove Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the static load rating C_o in newtons (pounds) for radial ball bearings is found by the formula:

$$C_o = f_o i Z D^2 \cos\alpha \tag{20}$$

where f_o = a factor for different kinds of ball bearings given in Table 35
i = number of rows of balls in bearing
Z = number of balls per row
D = ball diameter, mm (inches)
α = nominal contact angle, degrees

This formula applies to bearings with a cross sectional raceway groove radius not larger than 0.52D in radial and angular contact groove ball bearing inner rings and 0.53D in radial and angular contact groove ball bearing outer rings and self-aligning ball bearing inner rings.

The load-carrying ability of a ball bearing is not necessarily increased by the use of a smaller groove radius but is reduced by the use of a larger radius than those indicated above.

Radial or Angular Contact Ball Bearing Combinations: The basic static load rating for two similar single row radial or angular contact ball bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex mounting) in "back-to-back" or "face-to-face" arrangement is two times the rating of one single row bearing.

The basic static radial load rating for two or more single row radial or angular contact ball bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex or stack mounting) in "tandem" arrangement, properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, is the number of bearings times the rating of one single row bearing.

Thrust Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the static load rating C_{oa} for thrust ball bearings is found by the formula:

$$C_{oa} = f_o Z D^2 \cos\alpha \tag{21}$$

where f_o = a factor given in Table 35
Z = number of balls carrying the load in one direction
D = ball diameter, mm (inches)
α = nominal contact angle, degrees

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

This formula applies to thrust ball bearings with a cross sectional raceway radius not larger than 0.54*D*. The load-carrying ability of a bearing is not necessarily increased by use of a smaller radius, but is reduced by use of a larger radius.

Roller Bearing Static Load Rating: For roller bearings suitably manufactured from hardened alloy steels, the static radial load rating is that uniformly distributed static radial bearing load which produces a maximum contact stress of 4,000 megapascals (580,000 pounds per square inch) acting at the center of contact of the most heavily loaded rolling element. The static axial load rating is that uniformly distributed static centric axial load which produces a maximum contact stress of 4,000 megapascals (580,000 pounds per square inch) acting at the center of contact of each rolling element.

Table 35. f_o for Calculating Static Load Rating for Ball Bearings

$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	Radial and Angular Contact Groove Type		Radial Self-Aligning		Thrust	
	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]
0.00	12.7	1850	1.3	187	51.9	7730
0.01	13.0	1880	1.3	191	52.6	7620
0.02	13.2	1920	1.3	195	51.7	7500
0.03	13.5	1960	1.4	198	50.9	7380
0.04	13.7	1990	1.4	202	50.2	7280
0.05	14.0	2030	1.4	206	49.6	7190
0.06	14.3	2070	1.5	210	48.9	7090
0.07	14.5	2100	1.5	214	48.3	7000
0.08	14.7	2140	1.5	218	47.6	6900
0.09	14.5	2110	1.5	222	46.9	6800
0.10	14.3	2080	1.6	226	46.4	6730
0.11	14.1	2050	1.6	231	45.9	6660
0.12	13.9	2020	1.6	235	45.5	6590
0.13	13.6	1980	1.7	239	44.7	6480
0.14	13.4	1950	1.7	243	44.0	6380
0.15	13.2	1920	1.7	247	43.3	6280
0.16	13.0	1890	1.7	252	42.6	6180
0.17	12.7	1850	1.8	256	41.9	6070
0.18	12.5	1820	1.8	261	41.2	5970
0.19	12.3	1790	1.8	265	40.4	5860
0.20	12.1	1760	1.9	269	39.7	5760
0.21	11.9	1730	1.9	274	39.0	5650
0.22	11.6	1690	1.9	278	38.3	5550
0.23	11.4	1660	2.0	283	37.5	5440
0.24	11.2	1630	2.0	288	37.0	5360
0.25	11.0	1600	2.0	293	36.4	5280
0.26	10.8	1570	2.1	297	35.8	5190
0.27	10.6	1540	2.1	302	35.0	5080
0.28	10.4	1510	2.1	307	34.4	4980
0.29	10.3	1490	2.1	311	33.7	4890
0.30	10.1	1460	2.2	316	33.2	4810
0.31	9.9	1440	2.2	321	32.7	4740
0.32	9.7	1410	2.3	326	32.0	4640
0.33	9.5	1380	2.3	331	31.2	4530
0.34	9.3	1350	2.3	336	30.5	4420
0.35	9.1	1320	2.4	341	30.0	4350
0.36	8.9	1290	2.4	346	29.5	4270
0.37	8.7	1260	2.4	351	28.8	4170
0.38	8.5	1240	2.5	356	28.0	4060
0.39	8.3	1210	2.5	361	27.2	3950
0.40	8.1	1180	2.5	367	26.8	3880
0.41	8.0	1160	2.6	372	26.2	3800
0.42	7.8	1130	2.6	377	25.7	3720
0.43	7.6	1100	2.6	383	25.1	3640
0.44	7.4	1080	2.7	388	24.6	3560
0.45	7.2	1050	2.7	393	24.0	3480

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 35. *(Continued)* f_o **for Calculating Static Load Rating for Ball Bearings**

$\frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}$	Radial and Angular Contact Groove Type		Radial Self-Aligning		Thrust	
	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]	Metric[a]	Inch[b]
0.46	7.1	1030	2.8	399	23.5	3400
0.47	6.9	1000	2.8	404	22.9	3320
0.48	6.7	977	2.8	410	22.4	3240
0.49	6.6	952	2.9	415	21.8	3160
0.50	6.4	927	2.9	421	21.2	3080

[a] **Use to obtain C_o or C_{oa} in newtons when D is given in mm.**
[b] Use to obtain C_o or C_{oa} in pounds when D is given in inches.

Note: Based on modulus of elasticity = 2.07×10^5 megapascals (30×10^6 pounds per square inch) and Poisson's ratio = 0.3.

Radial Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the static load rating C_o in newtons (pounds) for radial roller bearings is found by the formulas:

$$C_o = 44\left(1 - \frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}\right) iZl_{eff}D\cos\alpha \quad \text{(metric)} \tag{22a}$$

$$C_o = 6430\left(1 - \frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}\right) iZl_{eff}D\cos\alpha \quad \text{(inch)} \tag{22b}$$

where D = roller diameter, mm (inches); mean diameter for a tapered roller and major diameter for a spherical roller
d_m = mean pitch diameter of the roller complement, mm (inches)
i = number of rows of rollers in bearing
Z = number of rollers per row
l_{eff} = effective length, mm (inches); overall roller length minus roller chamfers or minus grinding undercuts at the ring where contact is shortest
α = nominal contact angle, degrees

Radial Roller Bearing Combinations: The static load rating for two similar single row roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit is two times the rating of one single row bearing.

The static radial load rating for two or more similar single row roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex or stack mounting) in "tandem" arrangement, properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, is the number of bearings times the rating of one single row bearing.

Thrust Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the static load rating C_{oa} in newtons (pounds) for thrust roller bearings is found by the formulas:

$$C_{oa} = 220\left(1 - \frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}\right) Zl_{eff}D\sin\alpha \quad \text{(metric)} \tag{23a}$$

$$C_{oa} = 32150\left(1 - \frac{D\cos\alpha}{d_m}\right) Zl_{eff}D\sin\alpha \quad \text{(inch)} \tag{23b}$$

where the symbol definitions are the same as for Formulas (22a) and (22b).

Thrust Roller Bearing Combination: The static axial load rating for two or more similar single direction thrust roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex or stack mounting) in "tandem" arrangement, properly manufactured and mounted for equal load distribution, is the number of bearings times the rating of one single direction bearing. The accuracy of this formula decreases in the case of single direction bearings when $F_r > 0.44\,F_a \cot\alpha$, where F_r is the applied radial load in newtons (pounds) and F_a is the applied axial load in newtons (pounds).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Ball Bearing Static Equivalent Load.—For ball bearings the static equivalent radial load is that calculated static radial load which produces a maximum contact stress equal in magnitude to the maximum contact stress in the actual condition of loading. The static equivalent axial load is that calculated static centric axial load which produces a maximum contact stress equal in magnitude to the maximum contact stress in the actual condition of loading.

Radial and Angular Contact Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the static equivalent radial load P_o in newtons (pounds) for radial and angular contact ball bearings under combined thrust and radial loads is the greater of:

$$P_o = X_o F_r + Y_o F_a \tag{24}$$

$$P_o = F_r \tag{25}$$

where X_o = radial load factor given in Table 36
Y_o = axial load factor given in Table 36
F_r = applied radial load, newtons (pounds)
F_a = applied axial load, newtons (pounds)

Table 36. Values of X_o and Y_o for Computing Static Equivalent Radial Load P_o of Ball Bearings

Contact Angle	Single Row Bearings[a]		Double Row Bearings	
	X_o	Y_o[b]	X_o	Y_o[b]
RADIAL CONTACT GROOVE BEARINGS[c,a]				
$\alpha = 0°$	0.6	0.5	0.6	0.5
ANGULAR CONTACT GROOVE BEARINGS				
$\alpha = 15°$	0.5	0.47	1	0.94
$\alpha = 20°$	0.5	0.42	1	0.84
$\alpha = 25°$	0.5	0.38	1	0.76
$\alpha = 30°$	0.5	0.33	1	0.66
$\alpha = 35°$	0.5	0.29	1	0.58
$\alpha = 40°$	0.5	0.26	1	0.52
SELF-ALIGNING BEARINGS				
…	0.5	0.22 cot α	1	0.44 cot α

[a] P_o is always $\geq F_r$.
[b] Values of Y_o for intermediate contact angles are obtained by linear interpolation.
[c] Permissible maximum value of F_a/C_o (where F_a is applied axial load and C_o is static radial load rating) depends on the bearing design (groove depth and internal clearance).

Thrust Ball Bearings: The magnitude of the static equivalent axial load P_{oa} in newtons (pounds) for thrust ball bearings with contact angle $\alpha \neq 90°$ under combined radial and thrust loads is found by the formula:

$$P_{oa} = F_a + 2.3 F_r \tan \alpha \tag{26}$$

where the symbol definitions are the same as for Formulas (24) and (25). This formula is valid for all load directions in the case of double direction ball bearings. For single direction ball bearings, it is valid where $F_r/F_a \leq 0.44 \cot \alpha$ and gives a satisfactory but less conservative value of P_{oa} for F_r/F_a up to $0.67 \cot \alpha$.

Thrust ball bearings with $\alpha = 90°$ can support axial loads only. The static equivalent load for this type of bearing is $P_{oa} = F_a$.

Roller Bearing Static Equivalent Load.—The static equivalent radial load for roller bearings is that calculated, static radial load which produces a maximum contact stress acting at the center of contact of a uniformly loaded rolling element equal in magnitude to the maximum contact stress in the actual condition of loading. The static equivalent axial

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

load is that calculated, static centric axial load which produces a maximum contact stress acting at the center of contact of a uniformly loaded rolling element equal in magnitude to the maximum contact stress in the actual condition of loading.

Radial Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the static equivalent radial load P_o in newtons (pounds) for radial roller bearings under combined radial and thrust loads is the greater of:

$$P_o = X_o F_r + Y_o F_a \tag{27}$$

$$P_o = F_r \tag{28}$$

where X_o = radial factor given in Table 37
Y_o = axial factor given in Table 37
F_r = applied radial load, newtons (pounds)
F_a = applied axial load, newtons (pounds)

Table 37. Values of X_o and Y_o for Computing Static Equivalent Radial Load P_o for Self-Aligning and Tapered Roller Bearings

Bearing Type	Single Row[a]		Double Row	
	X_o	Y_o	X_o	Y_o
Self-Aligning and Tapered $\alpha \neq 0$	0.5	0.22 cot α	1	0.44 cot α

[a] P_o is always $\geq F_r$.

The static equivalent radial load for radial roller bearings with $\alpha = 0°$ and subjected to radial load only is $P_{or} = F_r$.

Note: The ability of radial roller bearings with $\alpha = 0°$ to support axial loads varies considerably with bearing design and execution. The bearing user should therefore consult the bearing manufacturer for recommendations regarding the evaluation of equivalent load in cases where bearings with $\alpha = 0°$ are subjected to axial load.

Radial Roller Bearing Combinations: When calculating the static equivalent radial load for two similar single row angular contact roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex mounting) in "back-to-back" or "face-to-face" arrangement, use the X_o and Y_o values for a double row bearing and the F_r and F_a values for the total loads on the arrangement.

When calculating the static equivalent radial load for two or more similar single row angular contact roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex or stack mounting) in "tandem" arrangement, use the X_o and Y_o values for a single row bearing and the F_r and F_a values for the total loads on the arrangement.

Thrust Roller Bearings: The magnitude of the static equivalent axial load P_{oa} in newtons (pounds) for thrust roller bearings with contact angle $\alpha \neq 90°$, under combined radial and thrust loads is found by the formula:

$$P_{oa} = F_a + 2.3 F_r \tan \alpha \tag{29}$$

where F_a = applied axial load, newtons (pounds)
F_r = applied radial load, newtons (pounds)
α = nominal contact angle, degrees

The accuracy of this formula decreases for single direction thrust roller bearings when $F_r > 0.44 F_a \cot \alpha$.

Thrust Roller Bearing Combinations: When calculating the static equivalent axial load for two or more thrust roller bearings mounted side by side on the same shaft such that they operate as a unit (duplex or stack mounting) in "tandem" arrangement, use the F_r and F_a values for the total loads acting on the arrangement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

LUBRICATION

Lubrication Theory

Whenever a solid surface moves over another, it must overcome a resistive, opposing force known as *solid friction*. The first stage of solid friction, known as *static friction*, is the frictional resistance that must be overcome to initiate movement of a body at rest. The second stage of frictional resistance, known as *kinetic friction*, is the resistive force of a body in motion as it slides or rolls over another solid body. It is usually smaller in magnitude than static friction. Although friction varies according to applied load and solid surface roughness, it is unaffected by speed of motion and apparent contact surface area.

When viewed under a microscope a solid surface will appear rough with many *asperities* (peaks and valleys). When two solid surfaces interact without a lubricating medium, full metal-to-metal contact takes place in which the asperity peaks of one solid interferes with asperity peaks of the other solid. When any movement is initiated the asperities collide causing a rapid increase in heat and the metal peaks to adhere and weld to one another. If the force of motion is great enough the peaks will plow through each other's surface and the welded areas will shear causing surface degradation, or wear. In extreme cases, the resistance of the welded solid surfaces could be greater than the motive force causing mechanical seizure to take place.

Some mechanical systems designs, such as brakes, are designed to take advantage of friction. For other systems, such as bearings, this metal-to-metal contact state and level of wear is usually undesirable. To combat this level of solid friction, heat, wear, and consumed power, a suitable lubricating fluid or fluid film must be introduced as an intermediary between the two solid surfaces. Although lubricants themselves are not frictionless, the molecular resistive force of a gas or fluid in motion known as *fluid friction* is significantly less than *solid friction*. The level of fluid friction is dependent on the lubricant's *Viscosity* (see page 2504.)

Film Thickness Ratio, λ.—For all bearings, the working lubricant film thickness has a direct relationship to bearing life. The "working" or specific film thickness ratio lambda λ is defined by dividing the nominal film thickness by the surface roughness, as depicted in Fig. 1.

$$\lambda = \frac{T}{R} \tag{1}$$

where λ = specific film thickness
T = nominal film thickness
R = surface roughness

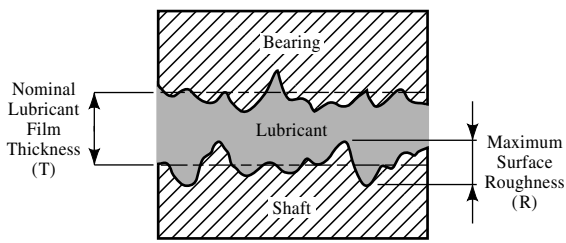


Fig. 1. Determining the Working Film Thickness Ratio Lambda

The Lubrication Film.—Whenever a plain journal style bearing operates with a fluid film, the coefficient of friction μ or extent of friction reduction will depend on which one of three lubricant film conditions exists between the facing surfaces.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Full Film Hydrodynamic Lubrication (HDL): HDL is the desired lubrication condition for plain style bearings in which both surfaces are fully separated by a working or specific film thickness lambda, λ of more than 2 at the point of pressure distribution loading shown in Fig. 2. A fluid wedge is created in which the asperities will not collide. Both surfaces are said to be "metal-contact" free at all times.

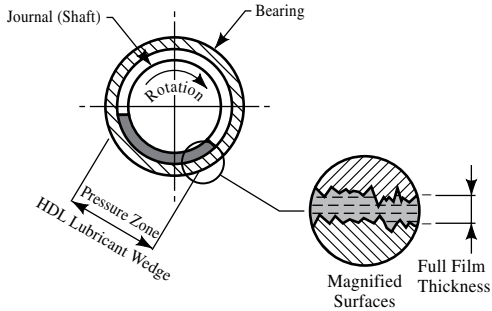


Fig. 2. HDL Hydrodynamic Lubrication of a Journal Bearing

As the shaft speed accelerates, rotation of the journal acts as a pump, forcing lubricant into the pressure distribution area. Providing the lubricant is of a high enough viscosity, the wedge-shaped lubricant channel will create a load-carrying pressure sufficient to completely separate the two surfaces and support the moving journal. Full film thickness will vary between 5 and 200 microns depending on speed, load, and viscosity. As the speed increases so does the lubricating action and ability to carry heavier loads. Inversely, slow speeds do not allow the lubricant wedge to form, causing breakdown of the hydrodynamic action and an undesirable *Boundary Layer Lubrication* state to prevail.

Boundary Layer Lubrication (BL): When a journal shaft is at rest in the bearing, any full film lubricant wedge has collapsed leaving a residual film of lubricant in its place, insufficient to prevent metal-to-metal contact from occurring. Upon subsequent start up, the bearing surfaces partially collide and ride on the thin lubricant film (start up conditions promote heavy wear). When lubricant supply is inadequate, or heavy loads coupled with low shaft speeds is the only design possible, the boundary layer lubrication must rely heavily on the composition of the lubricant to provide specific anti-wear and extreme pressure sacrificial additives, designed to retard premature wear. These surface-active additives act to form a thin surface laminate that prevents metal adhesion. Boundary layer lubrication also occurs when a lubricant of too low a viscosity is chosen.

Mixed Film Lubrication (MF): Mixed film lubrication state is generally encountered under shock load conditions when a minimum thickness hydrodynamic film momentarily breaks down or "thins out" into a boundary layer condition under severe shock load. Mixed film condition is also encountered as a shaft accelerates toward full speed and the film thickness transforms from boundary to full hydrodynamic condition. Choosing too light a viscosity lubricant can lead to momentary or full time mixed film condition. Mixed film condition is encountered when the specific film thickness lambda λ is between 1 and 2.

Lubricating Film Transition: Boundary layer condition is encountered when the specific film thickness lambda λ ratio is less than 1, mixed-film when the lambda λ ratio is between 1 and 2, and hydrodynamic when the lambda λ ratio is more than 2. Once the lambda λ ratio surpasses 4, relative bearing life is increased four-fold as depicted in Fig. 3.

Lambda λ < 1 Boundary Layer Film Lubrication	1 < Lambda λ < 2 Mixed Film Lubrication	2 < Lambda λ < 4 Hydrodynamic Lubrication

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

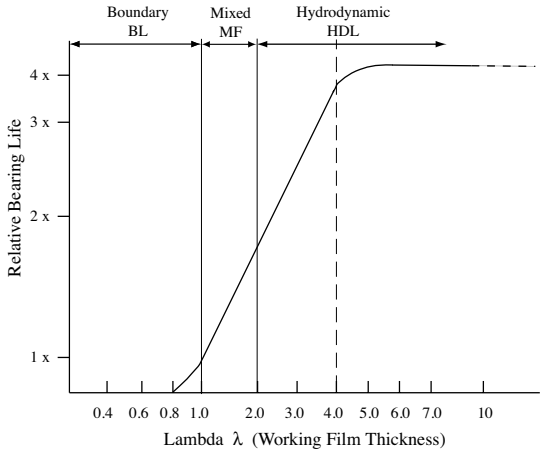


Fig. 3. The Relationship between Film Thickness Ratio Lambda λ and Bearing Life

To achieve long life while supporting heavy loads, a plain bearing must successfully manage the relationship between load, speed, and lubricant viscosity. If the load and speed change, the lubricant viscosity must be able to compensate for the change. This relationship is shown in the Stribeck or *ZNP* curve illustrated in Fig. 4. Choosing the correct lubricant viscosity allows the bearing to run in the favored hydrodynamic range producing a low coefficient of friction ranging from 0.002 to 0.005.

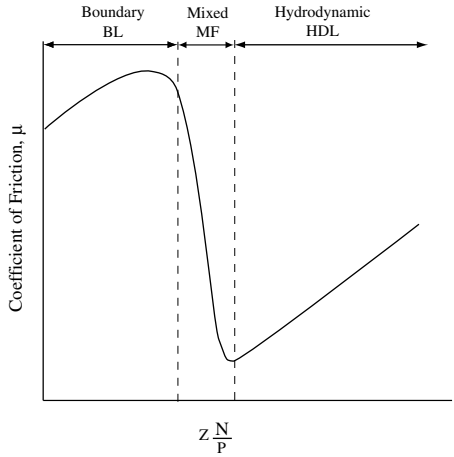


Fig. 4. Stribeck *(ZNP)* Curve

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rolling element bearings (point contact) and the rolling section of mating gear teeth (line contact) also favor full hydrodynamic lubrication film. They differ from sliding elements in that rolling elements require considerably less lubrication than their sliding counterparts and that the load is concentrated over a much smaller footprint on a non-conforming surface—small diameter ball or roller "rolling" over or within a much larger diameter raceway. As the ball or roller "rolls" through the load zone, the point of contact experiences a rapid pressure rise causing momentary micro distortion of both the rolling element and race. This area of deformation is named the *Hertzian Contact Area* (Fig. 5) and is analogous to the contact patch of a properly inflated tire on a moving vehicle. As the loaded section of rolling element moves out of the Hertzian contact area the deformed surface elastically returns to its original shape. The lubricant trapped in the Hertzian contact area benefits greatly from a phenomenon in which a lubricant under pressure will experience a dramatic rise in viscosity and act as a solid lubricant, allowing small amounts of lubricant to provide full film separation under extreme loading conditions. Under these conditions the hydrodynamic film is termed *elastohydrodynamic lubrication* (EHDL), and is unique to point/line contact situations typically found with rolling element bearings and mating gear teeth.

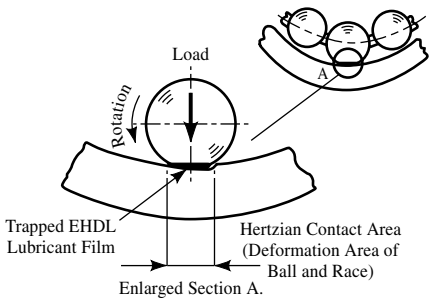


Fig. 5. Hertzian Contact Area Found in Rolling Element Bearing Surfaces

The wheels of industry run literally on a microfilm of lubricant; practical examples of typical oil film thicknesses expressed in machine dynamic clearance are stated in the following Table 1.

Table 1. Typical Oil Film Thicknesses Expressed as Machine Dynamic Clearances

Machine Component	Typical Clearance in Microns
Plain Journal Bearings	0.5–100
Rolling Element Bearings	0.1–3
Gears	0.1–1
Hydraulic Spool to Sleeve	1–4
Engine Piston Ring to Cylinder	0.3–7
Engine Rod Bearing (Plain)	0.5–20
Engine Main Bearing (Plain)	0.5–80
Pump Piston to Bore	5–40

1 micron = 0.00003937 inch; 25.4 microns = 0.001 inch.

Lubricants

A lubricant's primary function is to reduce friction; in doing so it reduces wear and energy consumption. Secondary functions are to reduce temperature, impact shock, corrosion, and contamination.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A lubricant can be in liquid (oil), solid (grease), or gaseous (oil mist) form and can be formulated from animal, vegetable, hydrocarbon, or synthetic base oil stocks. Adding to each lubricant formulation numerous chemical thickeners, solids, and chemical additives, gives every single manufactured lubricant its own unique signature blend. Selection of lubricant style and type is arguably the most influential factor in assuring long bearing life.

In the 1970's, Dr. Ernest Rabinowicz of MIT performed a landmark study on the effects of lubrication on the Gross National Product (GNP) of the United States. The study concluded that at that time, US manufacturing companies spent over $600 billion US annually to repair damage caused by friction-induced mechanical wear; more importantly, the study determined that over 70 percent of bearing loss of usefulness (failure) is directly attributable to surface degradation, a totally preventable condition. In his study, Rabinowicz determined there are four major contributors to surface degradation:

Corrosive Wear: All metallic-bearing surfaces will corrode if left unprotected from contact with water and corrosive acids. Water is introduced into lubricated environments from outside sources penetrating the sealed reservoir or bearing (washout, product contamination), or through condensation, causing ferrous metals to rust. Corrosive acids are produced when the lubricant becomes oxidized and suffers loss or breakdown of its corrosion inhibitor additive packages. Specifying and using a lubricant with rust inhibitors and corrosion-inhibitor additives, and replacing the lubricant in a timely manner when additives are depleted from the oil, will prevent corrosion.

Mechanical Wear by Adhesion: Adhesive wear occurs when a lubricant film separating two sliding surfaces fails to completely separate the two surfaces. Metal to metal contact occurs causing metal fragment transfer from one surface to the other. This transfer is commonly referred to as seizing, galling, scuffing, or scoring of surfaces. Correct lubricant viscosity and application frequency will significantly reduce or eliminate adhesive wear.

Mechanical Wear by Abrasion : Abrasive wear, sometimes referred to as *cutting wear*, is the result of hard particles (wear particles or introduced contaminant particles) bridging two moving surfaces, scraping and cutting either one surface (two body abrasion) or both bearing surfaces (three body abrasion). Controlling abrasive wear requires reduction of adhesive wear combined with contamination control of lubricant transfer, application, and filtration processes.

Mechanical Wear by Fatigue: Fatigue wear results when bridged wear particles cause small surface stress raisers (surface rippling) that eventually expand and break away from the parent metal as a spall (flake or splinter). Repeated cyclic stress at the damaged area accelerates the fatigue wear process. Correct lubricant viscosity choice and contamination control are essential to retard fatigue wear.

In all four types of wear, the primary solution for wear retardation lies in the correct choice of lubricant. Lubricants are categorized into two specific families—oil, and grease. The choice to use either oil or grease will depend upon temperature range, speed of rotation, environment, budget, machine design, bearing and seal design, which operating conditions.

Lubricating Oil.—For the majority of industrial applications requiring the separation of moving surfaces, the lubricant of choice continues to be petroleum based oil, also widely known as mineral oil. Although any liquid will provide a degree of lubrication, hydrocarbon-based petroleum oils provide excellent surface wetting capabilities, water resistance, thermal stability, and sufficient fluid viscosity or "stiffness" to provide full film protection under load—all at an inexpensive price. By adding chemicals, metals, solids, and fillers, mineral base oil stock can be formulated into an infinite number of tailored lubricating products, including grease. These modified mineral oils can be formulated for virtually any industrial application and widen the lubricant's specification and capabilities even further. The fundamental defining property for all lubricating oils is *viscosity*, and is the starting point for choosing one specific lubricant over another.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Viscosity: The viscosity of a fluid is measured as its resistance to flow and shear; resistance caused by fluid friction is set up along the molecular shear planes of the lubricant as depicted in Fig. 6. Thin or light lubricants, such as machine and spindle oils shear at a faster rate than thick lubricants such as gear oils, and are said to be less viscous. Although lower viscosity oil is desirable for reducing energy (less drag), it likely would not be "stiff" or viscous enough to withstand the demands of a heavily loaded gearbox.

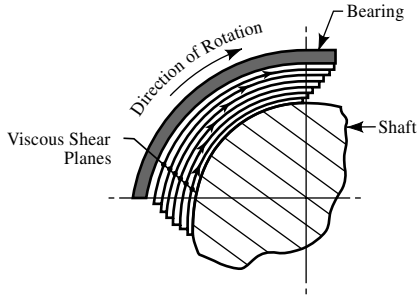


Fig. 6. Viscosity Shear Planes

Kinematic Viscosity: Oil viscosity is measured by a variety of classifications. The two generally accepted industrial standards are: Saybolt Universal Seconds or SUS (imperial measure), and ISO VG-centisokes-cSt (metric measure). These two standards rate oil by their *kinematic viscosity* values. The ratings, based on a fluid temperature of 100 °F (40 °C) and 212 °F (100 °C), relate the time taken for a fluid to flow through a viscosimeter capillary apparatus and directly measure oil's resistance to flow and shear by the forces of gravity. Other common viscosity classifications and comparison equivalents are shown in Table 2.

$$cSt = \frac{g/\text{cc}}{\eta(cP)} \text{ at } 60\ ^\circ\text{F} \tag{2}$$

where h = absolute or dynamic viscosity in centipoise
g/cc = lubricant density (specific gravity)
cSt = kinematic viscosity in centistokes

To convert cSt to SUS at 100 °F (40 °C), multiply by 4.632
To convert cSt to SUS at 210 °F (100 °C), multiply by 4.664

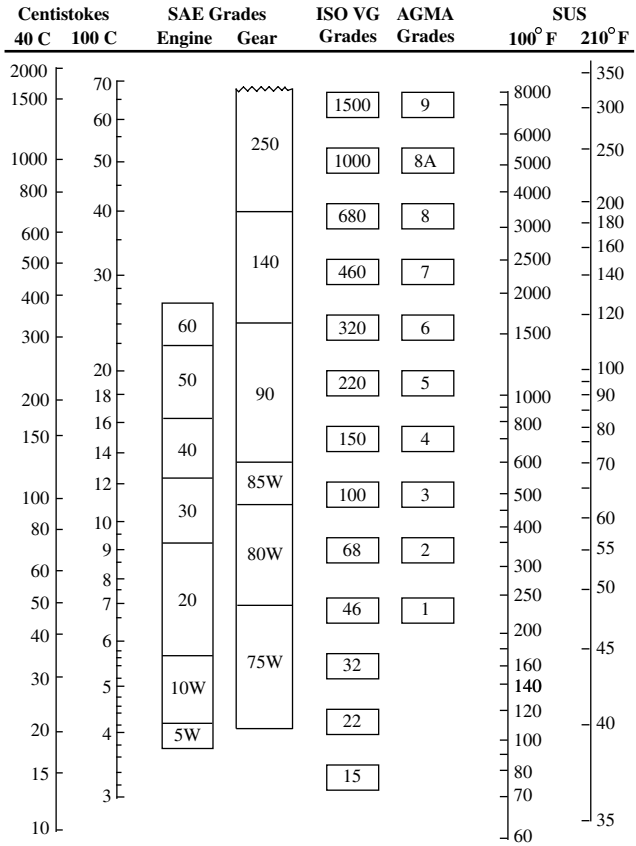
Absolute Viscosity: The *absolute* or *dynamic* viscosity is measured in poise (metric) or centipoise (cP) and reyn (imperial), where one reyn is equivalent to 68,950 poise. One-poise is equivalent to a one-dyne force required to move a plane surface (shear plane) of unit area a distance of one centimeter with unit speed (one centimeter per second) over a second plane at a unit distance (one centimeter) from it. *Absolute viscosity* is calculated by multiplying the kinematic viscosity value by the density of the lubricant measured at the test temperature, and is the measure of oil's resistance to flow and shear caused by internal friction. Absolute viscosity is the viscosity measured through oil analysis.

$$\eta(cP) = g/cc \text{ at } 60\ ^\circ\text{F} \times cSt \tag{3}$$

where h = absolute or dynamic viscosity in centipoise
g/cc = lubricant density (specific gravity)
cSt = kinematic viscosity in centistokes

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Viscosity Comparison Chart



Viscosities based on 95VI single grades relate horizontally.
SAE grades specified at 100 °C.
SAE W grades are also specified at low temperatures.
ISO and AGMA Grades specified at 40 °C.

SAE - Society of Automotive Engineers (Automotive lubricants)
AGMA - American Gear Manufacturers Assn. (Gear lubricants)
ISO - International Standards Organization
SUS - Saybolt Universal Seconds

Viscosity Index (VI): Viscosity is dependent on temperature. As oil heats up it becomes thinner or less viscous. Inversely, as oil cools down it becomes thicker or more viscous. This phenomenon dictates that all oils will change their physical properties once they have achieved their working environment temperature. Therefore, before a lubricant viscosity choice can be made, its expected working environment temperature must be known. To engineer for this phenomenon, oil is given a *Viscosity Index*, or *VI* rating, which defines the measure of a lubricant's viscosity change due to temperature change. Higher VI ratings are more desirable, reflecting narrower viscosity change over a standard temperature range. To determine a specific oil's VI rating, its kinematic viscosity is measured

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

at 100 °F (40 °C) and 212 °F (100 °C), then its results are compared with two or more series of oils. VI values once ranged between 0 and 100, but recent developments in lubricant technology and additives have allowed this index to raise its upper limit and include a Very High Viscosity Index (VHVI) group. Lubricants are generally classified in four basic VI groups depicted in Table 3.

Table 3. Viscosity Index Rating

VI rating	Viscosity Index Group
< 35	Low (LVI)
35–80	Medium (MVI)
80–110	High (HVI)
> 110	Very High (VHVI)

Composition of Oil.—Oil is composed of either a mineral (hydrocarbon based) or synthetic oil base stock to which is added a variety of organic and inorganic compounds that are dissolved or suspended as solids in the formulated oil. Depending on the end use condition the oil formulation is designed for, the additive package can make up from 1% up to 30% of the formulated oil volume.

Mineral-Based Oil.—Mineral oils are refined from crude oil stocks. Depending on where the crude stock is found in the world, the oil can be paraffinic or napthenic based.

Paraffinic based stocks are generally found in the midcontinental United States, England's North Sea, and the Middle East. They contain a 60/30/10 mix of paraffin/napthene/wax resulting in a very high VI rating up to 105. Because wax is present, they are known to have a *wax pour point* in which the oil's flow is severely constricted or stopped by wax crystallization at lower temperatures. This type of base oil stock is preferred when blending high quality crankcase oils, hydraulic fluids. turbine oils, gear oils, and bearing oils.

Napthenic based oil stocks are generally found in South America and the coastal regions of the United States. They contain a 25/75/trace mix of paraffin/napthene/wax, resulting in a less stable VI rating up to 70. Because only a trace of wax is present they are known as *viscosity pour point oils* in which oil flow is restricted by increases in the lubricant's viscosity at low temperatures. Napthenic oils have lower pour points, higher flash points, and better additive solvency than paraffinic oils. This type of base stock is preferred when blending locomotive oils, refrigerant, and compressor oils.

Oil Additives.—When contact is likely between two bearing surfaces the lubricant should be designed to mitigate the friction through the addition of engineered additives to the base oil. Every manufactured lubricant on the market has its own unique formulation. In effect, it is an engineered liquid, custom built to perform a specific a job in a specific environment. All additives are sacrificial and therefore careful attention to additive package levels through the use of oil analysis will tell the user exactly when to change the oil to prevent damage to the bearing or contact parts. Typically oil additives as shown in Table 4 are used to enhance the existing base oil, add additional properties to the oil, and suppress any undesirable properties the base oil may have.

Table 4. Oil Additives

Enhancement Additives	New Property Additives	Suppressant Additives
Anti-oxidant	EP	
Corrosion inhibitor	Anti-wear	Pour point depressant
Demulsifier	Detergent	viscosity improver
Anti-foam	Dispersant	

The additive package formulation will depend on the end use. Table 5 references what oil type generally carries what additive package in its formulation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Additive Package by Oil Type Guide

Additive	Bearing Oil	Gear Oil	Turbine Oil	Hydraulic Oil	Compressor Oil	Crankcase Oil	Grease
Anti-oxidant	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Corrosion Inhibitor	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Demulsifier	●	●	●	●	●		
Anti-foam	●	●	●	●	●	●	
Extreme Pressure EP		●					●
Anti-wear	●	●		●	●	●	●
Detergent					●	●	
Dispersant					●	●	
Pour Point		● some		● some	● some	● some	
Viscosity Improver						●	

Anti-oxidants: Oxygen attacks the base oil, especially at higher temperatures, leading to the formation of sludge, tars, varnish, and corrosive acids. Anti-oxidant additives can improve the oxidation stability of the oil by more than 10 times; lubricants designed for higher operating temperatures will contain higher levels of antioxidants.

Corrosion Inhibitor or Antirust Agents : Used to form a protective shield against water on ferrous metals, and copper, tin, and lead-based bearing metals. They also act to neutralize any corrosive acids that may attack the bearing materials.

Demulsifying Agents: Stop water from emulsifying with the oil.

Antifoaming Agents: When oil is moved quickly, these agents, usually silicon-based compounds, act to retard the formation of air bubbles at the lubricant's surface; air bubbles contain oxygen that will attack the base oil and cause cavitation in pumps.

Extreme Pressure (EP) Additives: Additives such as sulphur, phosphorous, and chlorine are employed to "soften" bearing surfaces, allowing them to break away as small asperities without adhesive "tearing" when metal-to-metal contact is unavoidable. These additives can be detrimental to yellow metal bearing material.

Anti-wear Agents: Solids such as molybdenum disulphide (moly), graphite, and PTFE, are employed to assist as additional sliding agents when metal-to-metal contact occurs under heavy loads. See Table 6.

Detergents are organic metallic soaps of barium, calcium, and magnesium, acting as chemical cleaners to keep surfaces free from deposits and neutralize harmful combustion acids.

Dispersants work in conjunction with detergents to chemically suspend the dirt particles in the oil and allow them to be extracted by the lubrication system filters.

Pour Point Depressants prevent the formation of wax crystals in paraffinic-based mineral oil at low temperatures allowing it to be more fluid at colder temperatures.

Viscosity Improvers : Sometimes a base oil of inferior quality will require thickeners to assist in achieving the specified viscosity levels over a varied temperature range. Viscosity improvers are also used to prevent the oil from thinning at higher temperatures allowing the manufacturer to build multi-grade lubricants that operate over wider temperature ranges. Viscosity improvers use long chain organic molecules such as polymethacrylates and ethylene propylene copolymers to retard the viscosity shearing and improve an oil's viscosity performance.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Properties of Common Lubricant Solids Additives

Solid Additive	Color	Load Capability	Thermal Stability	Average Particle Size	Moisture Sensitivity
Molybdenum Disulphide	Gray-Black	> 100,000 (psi)	< 750° F	< 1–6 micron	Detrimental
Graphite	Gray-Black	< 50,000 (psi)	< 1200° F	2–10 micron	Necessary
Polytetrafluoroethylene PTFE	White	< 6,000 (psi)	< 500° F	< 1 micron	No Effect

1 micron = 0.00003937 inch; 1 psi = 6.8947 kPa; Temp. in °C = (°F – 32)/1.8

Solids additives shown in Table 6, can be added to both mineral and synthetic base oil stocks. In certain high temperature and high-pressure conditions, solids can be mixed with a mineral spirits carrier and applied directly to the bearing surfaces as a dry solid lubricant. The volatile carrier flashes off with the heat and leaves a dry solid film on the bearing surface.

Synthetic-Based Oils.—Originally developed to cope with extreme high temperature situations encountered in early jet engines, synthetic based oil differs from mineral based oil in that its base stock is man-made. Using a polymerization similar to that used in plastics manufacturing, synthetic based oils are scientifically designed with identifiable molecular structures, resulting in fluids with highly predictable properties.

Synthetic lubricants deliver many advantages; their stability under severe high and low temperature operating conditions enables equipment to operate in extreme conditions with a high degree of reliability. Although there are many different synthetic base stocks, industry is primarily served by the following five common synthetic lubricant types.

Poly-Alph-Olefins (PAOs): PAOs, Table 7, are often described as man-made mineral oils (synthesized hydrocarbons) and were amongst the first developed synthetic lubricants for popular use in automotive crankcase oils. They are formulated in a similar molecular structure to that of pure paraffin through the synthesis of ethylene gas molecules into a polymerized uniform structure. They have a wide range of uses that include crankcase oil, gear oil, compressor oil, and turbine oils.

Table 7. Poly-Alph-Olefins (PAOs)

Positive Features	Negative Features
Low pour point (down to –90 °F or –68 °C) High viscosity index, VI > 140 High viscosity range Good mineral oil compatibility Good seal compatibility Excellent corrosion stability	Cost (4–8 × mineral oil cost) Poor additive solubility Poor biodegradability

Poly-alkylene Glycols (PAGs): PAGs, Table 8, are also known as organic chemical Ucon fluids that possess excellent lubricity and a unique property that causes decomposed or oxidized products to volatilize (clean burn) or become soluble, resulting in no sludge, varnish, or damaging particles to be formed at high temperatures. PAG's are polymers of alkylene oxides and are used for compressor oils, hydraulic oils (water glygols), and severe duty gear oils.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Polyalkylene Glycols (PAGs)

Positive Features	Negative Features
Low pour point (to –60 °F or –51 °C) High viscosity index, VI > 150 High viscosity range Fair seal compatibility Excellent biodegradability Do not produce sludge or varnish	Cost (4–8 × mineral oil cost) Poor mineral oil compatibility Poor PAO and synthetic ester based oil compatibility

Di-Basic Acid Esters (Di-Esters): Due to their high shear VI stability under extreme temperature, di-esters, Table 9, have become very popular in the aerospace industry. Formulated from the reaction between alcohol and acid-laden oxygen, di-esters originally saw primary use in jet engine oils, but are now used mainly in high temperature compressor oils.

Table 9. Di-Basic Acid Esters (Di-esters)

Positive Features	Negative Features
Low pour point (to –80 °F or –62 °C) High viscosity index, VI > 150 High viscosity range Good mineral oil compatibility Good additive solvency	Cost (4–8 × mineral oil cost) Poor hydrolytic stability Poor seal compatibility Fair mineral oil compatibility Poor corrosion stability

Polyol-Esters: Due to their increased thermal stability over di-esters, polyol-esters, Table 10, have now taken over as the preferred oils for gas turbines, jet engines, and 2-cycle oil applications.

Table 10. Polyol-Esters

Positive Features	Negative Features
Low pour point (to –95 °F or –71 °C) High viscosity index, VI >160 High viscosity range Good oxidation stability Good mineral oil compatibility Good anti-wear properties Good additive solvency	Cost (10–15 × mineral oil cost) Poor hydrolytic stability Poor seal compatibility Fair mineral oil compatibility Poor corrosion stability

Silicones: Silicone lubricants, Table 11, are semi-inorganic compounds formulated to provide the stability of inorganic products, yet retain the versatility of organic products. Although they have poor lubricity, silicone lubricants find favor in lightly loaded instrument bearings and oils and situations requiring high temperature change and compatibility with plastics. Additives are added to the base stocks to enhance lubricant performance, just as with mineral oils.

Table 11. Silicone

Positive Features	Negative Features
Low pour point (to –95 °F or –71 °C) High viscosity index, VI > 250 Very high Viscosity range Very high flash point Good seal compatibility	High Cost (30–100 × mineral oil cost) Poor lubricity Poor seal compatibility Poor mineral oil compatibility Poor biodegradability Poor additive solvency

Temperature Effects on Oil.—Changes in temperature effect an oil's viscosity and its ability to maintain a load carrying hydrodynamic film as depicted in Fig. 7. With the exception of silicone-based fluids, which unfortunately have poor lubricating qualities, most oils suffer a dramatic drop in viscosity once the temperature surpasses 100 °F (38 °C).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

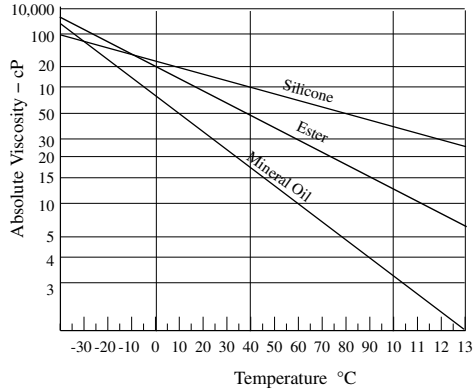


Fig. 7. Temperature Effect on Viscosity for Different Oils

Temperature affects not only the viscosity of the oil, it affects the condition and life expectancy of the oil as shown in Fig. 8. For every 17° F (10° C) increase in temperature, oxidation rates double and effective oil life is halved. Operating temperature is the leading indicator in determining oil change out frequencies

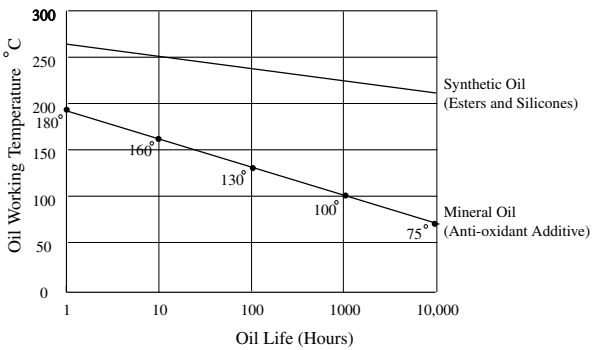


Fig. 8. Expected Oil Life at Varying Operating Temperatures.

Oxidation is the leading cause of lubricant failure. Fig. 9 shows typical upper and lower working limits for various lubricating oils.

Lubricating Grease.—In situations where the containment and continued application of lubricating oil is not practical, lubricating grease is widely used—most specifically in rolling element bearings requiring only periodic lubrication, and slow-speed, high-load boundary lubrication applications. Easier to retain than oil, grease offers lower lubricant losses and good sealing qualities. When utilized in an automatic delivery system, grease can provide full film lubrication.

Grease is a blended mix of the lubricating oil (mineral or synthetic—usually di-ester or silicone based), oil additive package, and fatty acids mixed with metallic alkaline soap

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

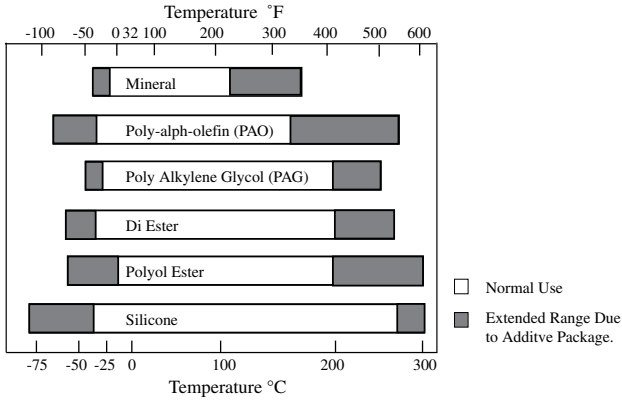


Fig. 9. Temperature Limit Guidelines for Oil.

to form the thickening agent. Varying the oil, additive package, and soap blend produces many unique types of grease formulated for a variety of operating conditions. Greases are classified according to their soap base as depicted in Table 12.

Grease works in a similar way to a sponge; as the temperature of the grease rises, the oil bleeds from the soap filler and performs the lubricating function to the balls, raceways, and sliding surfaces. Inversely, once the grease cools down, the oil is soaked back up into the soap filler, which essentially acts as a semi-fluid container for the lubricating oil. An important step in selecting the correct grease is determining if the base oil viscosity is suitable for the application. For example, grease designed for heavily loaded, high temperature applications will probably use a heavy viscosity oil base, whereas general-purpose grease is more likely to use a medium viscosity oil base.

Table 12. Grease Types and Their Properties

Type	Appearance	Pump-ability	Heat Resistance	Temperature Range	Water Resistance	Compatibility with other greases
Calcium (Lime Soap)	Buttery	Fair	Fair	230 °F (110 °C)	Excellent	Excellent
Sodium (Soda Soap)	Fibrous	Fair	Very Good	250 °F (120 °C)	Poor	Good
Calcium Complex	Stringy	Fair	Good	350 °F (175 °C)	Very Good	Fair
Lithium	Buttery	Excellent	Good	350 °F (175 °C)	Excellent	Excellent
Aluminum Complex	Stringy	Good	Excellent	350 °F (175 °C)	Excellent	Poor
Lithium Complex	Buttery	Excellent	Excellent	375 °F (190 °C)	Very Good	Excellent
Barium	Fibrous	Very Good	Excellent	380 °F (193 °C)	Excellent	Fair
Bentonite (non-soap)	Buttery	Good	Excellent	500 °F (260 °C)	Good	Poor
Urea	Buttery	Good	Excellent	> 500 °F (260 °C)	Excellent	Excellent

Grease properties may change according to the additive package used

At sustained high temperatures, grease will soften substantially and could leak or drop from the bearing unless rated specifically for high temperature applications. High temperatures rapidly oxidize the lubricant causing the soap to harden; higher temperatures require more frequent application of grease. Lower temperatures can be just as detrimental because the grease "stiffens" considerably as temperatures near –20 °F (–30 °C). At this temperature the rolling elements no longer rotate and they drag across the raceway. Under heavier loads this effect causes "smearing" of the bearing surfaces leading to premature bearing failure. Grease temperature guidelines by type are shown in Fig. 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

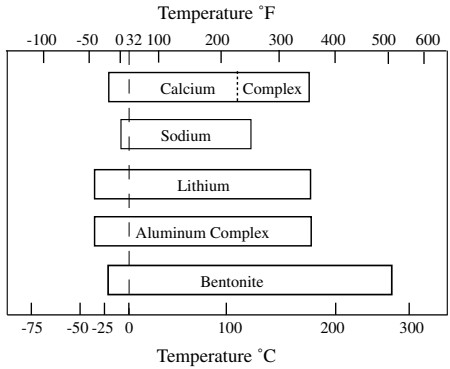


Fig. 10. Temperature Limit Guidelines for Grease

Grease Classification: The National Lubricating Grease Institute—NLGI, classifies grease according to a rating standard that measures the consistency of the grease. Using a penetrometer apparatus under laboratory conditions, a conical weight is dropped from a known height into the grease sample, and its depth of penetration is measured after a 5 second time period. The Table 13 rating chart shows that stiffer greases are rated with a higher NLGI code than more fluid grease with higher levels of penetration. Grease consistency largely depends on the type and amount of soap thickener blended in the grease and the oil viscosity — NOT the base oil viscosity alone. Rolling element bearings will use grease in the NLGI 1 to 3 range. Centralized grease lubricating systems favor 0 to 2 NLGI rated grease.

Table 13. NLGI Grease Consistency Rating Chart

NLGI Rating	Description	Penetration Range (0.1mm@77° F)
6	Brick Hard	85–115
5	Very Stiff	130–160
4	Stiff	175–205
3	Medium	220–250
2	Medium Soft	265–295
1	Soft	310–340
0	Very Soft	355–385
00	Semi Fluid	400–430
000	Semi Fluid	445–475

Grease Additives: As with oil, grease will also contain solids additives such as graphite, molybdenum disulphide, and PTFE for use in extreme pressure and heavy wear conditions.

Lubricant Application

Selecting a Suitable Lubricant.—Selecting a suitable lubricant will depend on a number of factors such as type of operation (full film, boundary layer), temperature, speed, load, working environment, and machine design. Machine maintenance requirements and maintenance schedules are not always taken into account in the equipment engineering design process of the lubrication system(s). Careful assessment of the conditions and consultation with a lubricant manufacturer/provider must take place to determine the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

optimal lubricant choice for each specific application. Table 14 offers general guidelines for lubricant choice when operating conditions are known, and Fig. 11 offers lubricant viscosity guideline choices based on bearing speed in rpm. Once the initial lubricant choice is made, its viscosity must be checked against the specific operating temperature to ensure that the lubricant is suitable for speed, load, and temperature conditions.

Table 14. General Guidelines for Choosing a Preferred Lubricant Type

Condition	Oil	Grease	Solid
Clearances Designed for Oil	●		●
Clearances Designed for Grease		●	●
High Speed, Low Load	●		
Low Speed, High Load		●	
Low Speed, Oscillating Load		●	●
High Temperature	●	●[a]	
Full Film Applications	●	●	
Boundary Layer Applications		●	●
Contaminated Working Environment		●	
Product Cannot Tolerate Leaks		●	●
Closed Gearbox	●		
Isolated Bearings		●	

[a] Automated delivery system.

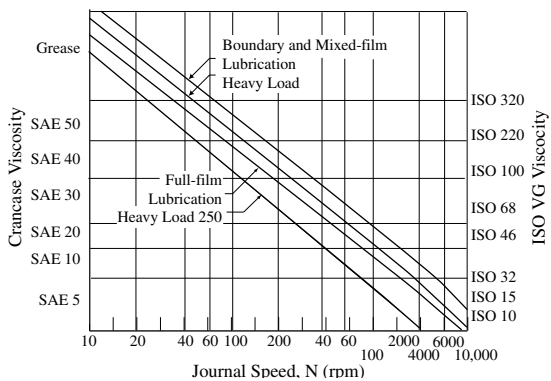


Fig. 11. Lubricant Viscosity Selection Guide based on Bearing Speed in rpm

Lubricant additives deliver different working characteristics to the lubricant. Knowing and documenting a machine or system's lubricant application requirements will facilitate a consolidation of lubricant requirements and assist in determining the optimal lubricant additive package. Table 15 reviews typical lubricated components, and assigns priority guideline ratings against a number of important lubricant functional attributes. This information is a starting point when working with the lubricant manufacturer to enable consolidation of lubricant needs and choose lubricants with suitable additives.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 15. Priority Guideline Ratings of Lubricant Functional Attributes for Different Lubricated Components

Lubricant Attribute	Sliding Bearing	Rolling Bearing	Wire Rope, Chain, Open Gears	Closed Gears
Friction Reduction	1	2	1	2
Boundary Lubrication	1	2	2	3
Cooling Ability	2	2	0	3
Temperature Range	1	2	1	2
Corrosion Protection	1	2	2	1
Seal Out Contaminants	0	2	1	0

0 = Low Priority, 3 = High Priority

Oil Application.—Oil lubrication can be broken down into two major categories: terminating (total loss), and recirculating oil systems.

Terminating Oil Systems: Terminating oil systems are semi-automated and automated systems that dispense oil at a known rate to the bearing(s) and do not recover the oil. This system can be generally observed in use for lubricating plain bearings, gibs, and slide ways found in small to medium-sized machine tools. Reservoir oil is replenished with new oil on an "as used" basis.

Recirculating Oil Systems: Recirculating oil systems pump oil through the bearing(s) on a semi-continuous or continuous cycle, using the oil to cool the bearing as it lubricates. Depending on the system design the oil can be filtered prior to the pump suction inlet, on the pump discharge, and again on the gravity return to the oil storage reservoir.

Recirculating systems are used on every kind of small to very large equipment as long as the oil can be contained; reservoirs retain their original charge of oil, which is changed on a condition or time basis.

A simple method used by lubrication delivery system manufacturers for determining the bearing oil requirements under normal load and speed conditions uses a volumetric requirement over a specified time period (See Table 16), designated by:

$$V = A \times R \tag{4}$$

where V = oil volume in cubic centimeters, (cc)
A = bearing contact surface area, (cm^2)
R = film thickness replenishment, (mm)

Table 16. Lubrication Film Replenishment Rate Guidelines for Oil and Grease

Lubricant Delivery Method	*R* - Film Thickness	Time
Automatic Terminating Oil	0.025 mm (0.001 inch)	1 hour
Automatic Recirculating Oil	0.025 mm (0.001 inch)	1 minute

Other closed system oiling methods exist: Gearbox splash systems employ a simple recirculative pickup/transfer of oil by a submerged gear tooth from an oil reservoir bath. Constant level oilers maintain a constant level of oil in a specially designed oil bath bearing housing. Using air over oil technology, oil can be misted and "rifled" into the bearing allowing very high speeds of over 20,000 rpm at light loads.

When replenishing oil reservoirs always use new clean oil of the exact same specification, from the same manufacturer. Mixing different oils of similar specification can cause additive packages to react with one another causing detriment to the bearings. If changing to a new oil specification or manufacturer consult with the new manufacturer for the correct change-out procedure.

Grease Application.—Because grease is easy to retain in a bearing housing over a long period of time and because it acts as a seal against contaminants, most rolling element bearings are grease lubricated. For most applications a NLGI 1 or 2 rating grease is used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The method of grease lubrication will depend on the greased bearing design; bearings can be hand-packed, manually-lubricated with a terminating style grease gun, or automatically greased.

Open rolling bearings are received with a rust inhibiting compound from new and must be pre-packed on assembly—**DO NOT remove bearings from their packaging until ready to use,** and **DO NOT spin dry bearings as this will significantly degrade the life of the bearing.** Shielded or sealed bearings usually arrive pre-packed from the manufacturer—always specify your preferred grease to your bearing supplier when ordering. The initial amount of grease is determined by adjusting the volume according to the known speed and load. For operating temperatures above 180°F (80°C) the bearing is packed to 25 percent of the full pack volume. For temperatures below 180°F (80°C), the guideline for pack volume is shown in Table 17 and is based on the bearing surface speed in operation calculated as:

$$dn \text{ or } Dn = SD \times RPM \tag{5}$$

where dn = bearing surface speed factor, metric, mm
Dn = bearing surface speed factor, US customary, in.
SD = shaft diameter of the bearing bore, mm or in.
RPM = velocity, rotations per minute at full speed

Table 17. Bearing Packing Guidelines

dn (mm)		*Dn* (in.)		% Full Pack
From	To	From	To	
0	50,000	0	2,000	100
50,000	100,000	2,000	4,000	75
100,000	150,000	4,000	6,000	50
150,000	200,000	6,000	8,000	33
200,000+		8,000+		25

For vibration applications, do not fill more than 60% of full pack

When hand packing, work the grease with fingers around all the rolling elements; the bearing can be dismantled to make this operation easier. The grease should fill the immediate bearing area. Before renewing grease in an existing bearing, the bearing must be removed and washed in kerosene or any suitable degreasing product. Once clean, the bearing is lightly coated in mineral oil, being careful not to spin the bearing at this point. Once filled with the appropriate amount of grease in the bearing area, the bearing can be hand spun to fling off grease excess, which is wiped away with a lint-free clean cloth. Free spacing in the housing should be filled from 30 to 50 percent. Overfilling bearings with grease is the leading cause of bearing lubrication-related failures. Over greasing causes the lubricant to "churn," which in turn "spikes" the bearing internal temperature, significantly reducing the bearing life using considerably more energy to overcome fluid friction. Bearings designed to be lubricated by a grease handgun or automated delivery system will have a grease port built into the bearing housing and raceway. Grease lubrication intervals will depend on temperature and speed. Fig. 12 provides guidelines for renewing grease based on speed.

Bearings running at high temperature extremes will require more frequent application based on the temperature, load, speed, and type of grease used. When replenishing grease always use new clean grease of the exact same specification, from the same manufacturer. Mixing different greases can lead to compatibility problems causing detriment to the bearings. If changing to a new grease specification or manufacturer, consult with the new manufacturer for the correct change out procedure.

Lubrication Delivery Methods and Systems.—Numerous methods and systems are used to deliver oil and grease to bearing points. Automated centralized systems work on the premise of delivering a very small amount of lubrication on an almost continual basis,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

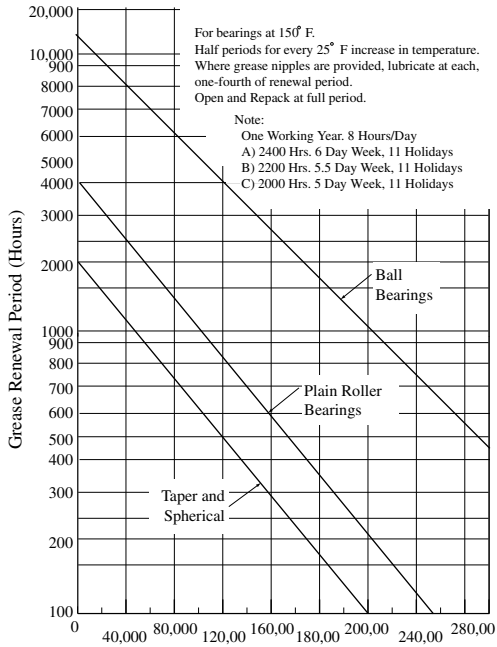


Fig. 12. Grease Renewal Period based on Running Time and Speed

providing optimal full film lubrication to the bearing. Although more expensive initially, automated centralized systems are credited with significant savings by extending bearing life up to three times longer than manually lubricated bearings. They also reduce downtime in changing out bearings, reduce lubricant consumption, and reduce energy consumption. Table 18 compares the different types of methods and delivery systems and some of their features, and can be used as a guide in determining a suitable lubrication delivery approach.

Table 18. Lubrication Method and System Comparison Guide

Feature	Hand Pack	Manual Gun	Single Point	Centralized Total Loss	Centralized Recirculating	Self Contained Splash/Bath	Gravity Fed
Oil		●	●	●	●	●	●
Grease	●	●	●	●			
Continuous Delivery			●		●	●	●
Cyclic Delivery		●		●			
Automatic Control			●	●	●		●
Manual Control	●	●		●			●
Positive Displacement		●	●	●	●		
Line Monitor Protection				●	●		
# Lube Points		Unlimited	Unlimited	20 Min.	200 Max.		20 Max.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Manual gun delivery systems are commonly known as grease guns and oil guns. These hand-dispensing devices are capable of delivering lubricant at pressures exceeding 15,000 psi (103 MPa), and must be used with extreme caution if the bearing seal is not to be compromised—especially when lubricating from a remote located grease nipple. Bearings manually lubricated with grease and oil guns are lubricated with significantly more lubricant and less frequent applications than automatic centralized lubricated bearings. Manual lubrication results in a high degree of bearing fluid friction and a significant lower life expectancy.

Single point lubricators are self-contained automatic dispensing units that house a lubricant reservoir and can dispense oil or grease to a single bearing or a small number of bearings through a manifold system. Earlier versions of the grease units employed a spring-loaded follower plate that dispensed against a bearing back pressure through a controllable bleed valve; while oil units used gravity (also known as gravity units) to allow oil to drip through a bleed valve at a controlled rate onto a brush or wick device touching the moving shaft or part. Both unit types are refillable and are still available. Modern-day versions are mostly one-time-use units that employ programmable controlled battery operated positive displacement pumps, or electrochemical gas expandable bellows to move the lubricant to the bearing.

Centralized total loss systems employ a pump that can be automatically or manually activated to pump oil (solid or mist) or grease to a series of metering valves mounted at the lubrication point, or in a manifold device piped to the bearing point. These systems are capable of delivering a metered amount of lubricant on a cyclic basis to many hundreds of lubricant points simultaneously. Because the lubricant is not reclaimed at the bearing point, the pump reservoir must be filled with lubricant on a regular basis. This lubrication system is the most common type of found on industrial equipment.

Centralized oil recirculating systems are designed to continually pump a metered amount of oil through each bearing point. The oil is channeled back to the reservoir through a filter system and pumped out again through the distribution system.

Self contained bath and splash installations are "pick-up" type systems that employ oil in a reservoir filled to an engineered level that covers the lowest submersed gear teeth. As the gear moves it picks up the oil and transfers lubricant as each gear engages and disengages. Higher rpm speed causes the lubricant to be splashed high into the gearbox cavity so that is is distributed to all the internal devices.

Contamination Control

Before an oil lubricant gets to perform its lubrication function at the bearing point, it must often go through a torturous handling process where the oil must be transferred multiple times before it eventually resides in the final application reservoir. The lubricant is shipped from the refinery to the blending station, to the manufacturer's bulk storage tank, to the supplier's storage tank, to the barrel or pail, to the user's storage facility, to the maintenance department, and finally to the machine's reservoir. If the transfer equipment and storage tanks/devices are not dedicated to this exact lubricant type and scrupulously clean, and the oil is not filtered at every transfer point, the virgin oil will be contaminated when placed in the equipment reservoir.

In a study performed by the National Research Council of Canada on bearing failure in primary industries it was found that 82 percent of wear-induced failure was particle-induced failure from dirty lubricants, with the greatest wear caused by particles whose size equaled the oil film thickness. Perhaps the greatest contamination enemy for bearings is the ever present silt and its abrasive properties. Fig. 13 shows the Macpherson curve, which depicts the contaminant effect on roller bearing life based on contaminant micron size.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

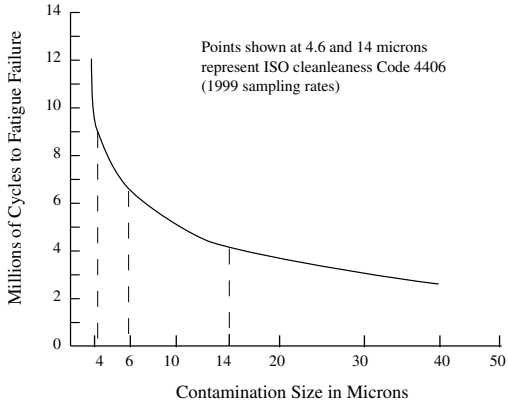


Fig. 13. Macpherson Contamination Effect Curve

The graph in Fig. 13 clearly shows the relationship between bearing life extension and contaminant size. By focusing on controlling contaminates less than 10 microns in size with quality filtration methods, expected bearing life is more than tripled.

ISO Cleanliness Code.—When performing a solids lubricant analysis and cleanliness testing, the ISO Cleanliness Code ISO4406 (1999) is used as a guide. The number of 4-micron, 6-micron, and 14-micron diameter particles in a 1-ml lubricant sample are counted and compared to a particle concentration range (see Table 19), then assigned a cleanliness code number for each particle count size.

Table 19. ISO Cleanliness Code 4406 (1999)

Particles per ml			Particles per ml		
More Than	Up to and Including	Range Number (R)	More Than	Up to and Including	Range Number (R)
80,000	160,000	24	20	40	12
40,000	80,000	23	10	20	11
20,000	40,000	22	5	10	10
10,000	20,000	21	2.5	5	9
5,000	10,000	20	1.3	2.6	8
2,500	5,000	19	0.64	1.28	7
1,300	2,600	18	0.32	0.64	6
640	1,280	17	0.16	0.32	5
320	640	16	0.08	0.16	4
160	320	15	0.04	0.08	3
80	160	14	0.02	0.04	2
40	80	13	0.01	0.02	1

Example: An ISO code of 21/19/17 would represent findings of between 10,000 to 20,000 4-micron sized particles per ml, between 2,500 and 5,000 6-micron sized particles per ml, and between 640 and 1,280 14-micron sized particles per ml; this sample would be considered very dirty.

Typical cleanliness targets for rolling element bearings would start at 16/14/12 or better, 17/15/12 or better for journal style bearings, 17/14/12 or better for industrial gearboxes, and 15/12 or better for hydraulic fluids.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A study conducted by the British Hydromechanics Research Association (BHRA) looked at the relationship between hydraulic fluid cleanliness and mean time between failure (MTBF) of over 100 hydraulic systems in a variety of industries over a three year period. The results are seen in Fig. 14 and show that systems that were successful in filtering out and excluding contaminants over 5 microns in size lasted tens of thousand of hours longer between system breakdowns.

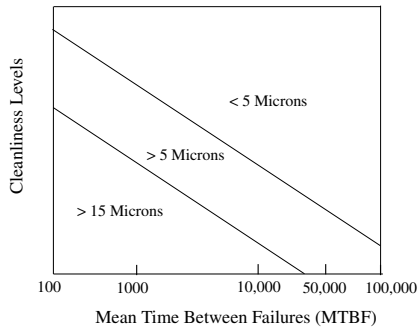


Fig. 14. MTBF vs. Cleanliness Levels

Solid particle ingression into a closed lubrication/hydraulic system can come from a variety of sources that include new oil, service and manufacturing debris, improper seals, vents/breathers, filter breakdown, and internal wear generation. For the most part, ingress prevention is all about filtration. Introducing filtered clean new oil into a system will significantly retard the wear process and avoid clogging up breathers and in-line filter systems.

Water Contamination .—Water contamination is the other major lubricant contaminant that will significantly degrade the oil's life (Fig. 15). Lubrication fluid typically saturates at 0.04% or 400 ppm, whereas hydraulic fluid (excluding water glycol fluids) saturates at an even lower 0.03% or 300 ppm. Typical water sources are found in the fluid storage areas when lubricants are stored outdoors and subjected to the elements, or stored in continually changing temperatures causing condensation and rust that can be transferred into the equipment's lubrication system.

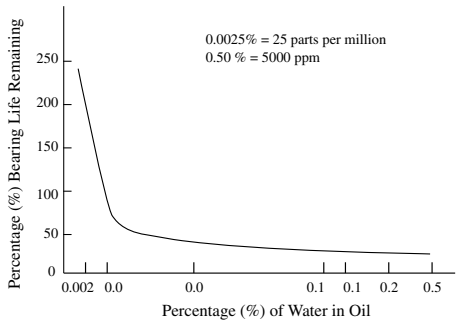


Fig. 15. Effect of Water in Oil on Bearing Life

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

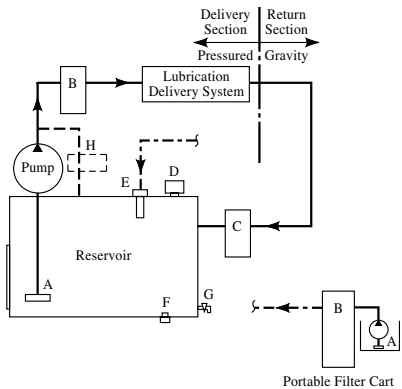
Filtration Systems.—Although contamination cannot be completely eliminated, with diligence and the use of effective filtration techniques and methods the effects of contamination can be seriously mitigated.

Working on the understanding that fluid cleanliness is the basis for contamination control, primary filtration commences on the virgin stock oils prior to the lubricant being placed in the working reservoir or lubrication / hydraulic system.

Once the lubricant is in a working system it will immediately begin to attract contaminants already in the system, from the air, outside sources, manufacturing materials, and wear materials that must be filtered out as the lubricant moves through the system. Table 20 shows a typical pressure flow lubrication delivery, hydraulic system complete with a minimum filter media package. The function of these filters is to reduce operating costs and increase component life; therefore they must be properly sized for the system and be of the highest quality.

There are two basic types of filter design, surface filters and depth filters. Surface filters are the most common and use a screening material to trap debris. Depth filters are deep cleaning filtering devices that use multiple layers of dense materials to "polish" the lubricant. Depth filters are usually set up in parallel with the basic filter system and allow a small percentage of the lubricant flow to bypass the pump and be depth cleaned.

Table 20. Typical Minimum Filtration Requirements for a Closed Loop Lubrication Hydraulic System



	Location	Type	Degree	Material	Purpose
A	Pump Suction	Surface	Medium	Gauze, Paper	Pump Protection
B	Pump Delivery Header	Surface	Fine	Felt, Paper, Cellulose, Sintered Metal	Primary System Protection
C	Return Line	Surface	Medium	Felt, Paper, Cellulose	Wear Products Protection
D	Reservoir Vent	Surface	Course / Medium	Wire, Wool, Paper, Oil Bath Desiccant	Remove Airborne Contaminant and Condensation
E	Reservoir Fill Port	Surface	Course	Gauze, Paper	Prevent Course Solids Ingress
F	Drain Plug	Surface	Fine	Magnet	Capture Ferrite Wear Metals And Debris
G	Drain Valve	n/a	n/a	n/a	Water Removal
H	Delivery Bypass Filter	Depth	Very Fine	Carbon, Cellulose, Diamataceous Earth, Felt	Lubricant Deep Cleaning And Polishing

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A diagram and tabulation of the filtration requirements of a closed loop hydraulic system are shown in Table 20. Fluid in the reservoir is sucked up by the pump through the suction filter (A) and pumped into the delivery header line under pressure. If a depth filter option is used, a small percentage, up to 15 percent, of the oil flow is diverted for deep cleaning through a depth filter (H) and sent back to the reservoir for recycling. The lubricant is then forced through the primary pressure filter and allowed to perform its work at the bearing point or hydraulic device before it eventually channels into the system return line under gravity to pass through a low pressure return line filter that takes out any wear materials gathered along the way. Once through the return filter the oil makes its way back into the reservoir. The reservoir is protected against airborne contaminants and condensation by the vent filter, and is protected against ingress of course solids by the fill neck screen filter. Because water is heavier than oil it will settle to the bottom of the tank where most of it can be drained off by opening the drain valve. Metallic debris also settle to the bottom and are captured by the magnetic drain plug at the bottom of the reservoir. As the lubricant oxidizes and breaks down, sludge will form on the bottom of the reservoir, which must be cleaned out periodically manually by removing the reservoir clean-out hatch.

Filter Efficiency: Most surface filters are sold in either one-time-use, or cleanable-reusable forms. Depth filters are all one-time-use filters. All filters are performance rated according to the media's particle removal efficiency, known as the filter's filtration ratio, or *beta ratio*. Not all filters are made equal, and they are tested for dirt holding capacity, pressure differential capability, and filter efficiency, using an ISO 4572 Multipass Test Procedure in which fluid is circulated through a mock lube system in a controlled manner. Differential pressure across the test filter element is recorded as contamination is added into the lubricant upstream of the filter. Laser particle sensors determine contamination levels both upstream and downstream of the filter element and the beta ratio is determined using the following formula:

$$B_x = \frac{\#\ \text{Upstream Particulate}}{\#\ \text{Downstream Particulate}} \tag{6}$$

where $B =$ filter filtration ratio

$x =$ specific particle size

Example: If 100,000 particles, 10 microns and larger, are counted upstream of the test filter, and 1000 particles are counted after or downstream of the test filter element, the beta ratio would equal:

$$B_{10} = \frac{100{,}000}{1000}$$

Efficiency is determined using the following equation:

$$\text{Efficiency}_x = \left(1 - \frac{1}{B_x}\right) \times 100$$

$$\text{Efficiency}_{10} = \left(1 - \frac{1}{100}\right) \times 100 = 99\% \tag{7}$$

The higher the beta ratio, the better the capture efficiency of the filter, see Table 21.

Table 21. Filter Efficiency

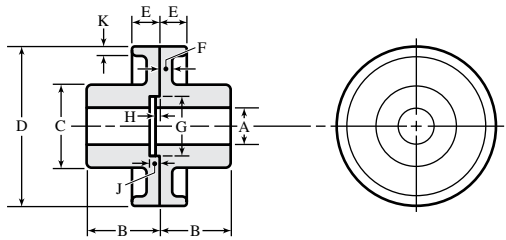
Beta Ratio at a Specific Particle Size	Filter Efficiency at Same Specific Particle Size	Beta Ratio at a Specific Particle Size	Filter Efficiency at Same Specific Particle Size	Beta Ratio at a Specific Particle Size	Filter Efficiency at Same Specific Particle Size
1.01	1%	5	80%	100	99%
1.1	9%	10	90%	200	99.5%
1.5	33%	20	95%	1000	99.9%
2	50%	75	98.7%	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

COUPLINGS, CLUTCHES, BRAKES

Connecting Shafts.—For couplings to transmit up to about 150 horsepower, simple flange-type couplings of appropriate size, as shown in the table, are commonly used. The design shown is known as a safety flange coupling because the bolt heads and nuts are shrouded by the flange, but such couplings today are normally shielded by a sheet metal or other cover.

Safety Flange Couplings



										Bolts	
A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*	*J*	*K*	No.	Dia.
1	1 3/4	2 1/4	4	11/16	5/16	1 1/2	1/4	9/32	1/4	5	3/8
1 1/4	2 3/16	2 3/4	5	13/16	3/8	1 7/8	1/4	9/32	1/4	5	7/16
1 1/2	2 5/8	3 3/8	6	15/16	7/16	2 1/4	1/4	9/32	1/4	5	1/2
1 3/4	3 1/16	4	7	1 1/16	1/2	2 5/8	1/4	9/32	1/4	5	9/16
2	3 1/2	4 1/2	8	1 3/16	9/16	3	1/4	9/32	5/16	5	5/8
2 1/4	3 15/16	5 1/8	9	1 5/16	5/8	3 3/8	1/4	9/32	5/16	5	11/16
2 1/2	4 3/8	5 5/8	10	1 7/16	11/16	3 3/4	1/4	9/32	5/16	5	3/4
2 3/4	4 13/16	6 1/4	11	1 9/16	3/4	4 1/8	1/4	9/32	5/16	5	13/16
3	5 1/4	6 3/4	12	1 11/16	13/16	4 1/2	1/4	9/32	3/8	5	7/8
3 1/4	5 11/16	7 3/8	13	1 13/16	7/8	4 7/8	1/4	9/32	3/8	5	15/16
3 1/2	6 1/8	8	14	1 15/16	15/16	5 1/4	1/4	9/32	3/8	5	1
3 3/4	6 9/16	8 1/2	15	2 1/16	1	5 5/8	1/4	9/32	3/8	5	1 1/16
4	7	9	16	2 1/4	1 1/8	6	1/4	9/32	7/16	5	1 1/8
4 1/2	7 7/8	10 1/4	18	2 1/2	1 1/4	6 3/4	1/4	9/32	7/16	5	1 1/4
5	8 3/4	11 1/4	20	2 3/4	1 3/8	7 1/2	1/4	9/32	7/16	5	1 3/8
5 1/2	8 3/4	11 1/4	20	2 3/4	1 3/8	7 1/2	1/4	9/32	7/16	5	1 3/8
6	10 1/2	12 3/8	22	2 15/16	1 1/2	8 1/4	5/16	11/32	1/2	5	1 7/16
6 1/2	11 3/8	13 1/2	24	3 1/8	1 5/8	9	5/16	11/32	1/2	5	1 1/2
7	12 1/4	14 5/8	26	3 1/4	1 3/4	9 3/4	5/16	11/32	9/16	6	1 1/2
7 1/2	13 1/8	15 3/4	28	3 7/16	1 7/8	10 1/2	5/16	11/32	9/16	6	1 9/16
8	14	16 7/8	28	3 1/2	2	10 7/8	5/16	11/32	5/8	7	1 1/2
8 1/2	14 7/8	18	30	3 11/16	2 1/8	11 1/4	5/16	11/32	5/8	7	1 9/16
9	15 3/4	19 1/8	31	3 3/4	2 1/4	11 5/8	5/16	11/32	11/16	8	1 1/2
9 1/2	16 5/8	20 1/4	32	3 15/16	2 3/8	12	5/16	11/32	11/16	8	1 9/16
10	17 1/2	21 3/8	34	4 1/8	2 1/2	12 3/4	5/16	11/32	3/4	8	1 5/8
10 1/2	18 3/8	22 1/2	35	4 1/4	2 5/8	13 1/8	5/16	11/32	3/4	10	1 5/8
11	19 1/4	23 5/8	36	4 7/16	2 3/4	13 1/2	5/16	11/32	7/8	10	1 11/16
11 1/2	20 1/8	24 3/4	37	4 5/8	2 7/8	13 7/8	5/16	11/32	7/8	10	1 3/4
12	21	25 7/8	38	4 13/16	3	14 1/4	5/16	11/32	1	10	1 13/16

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

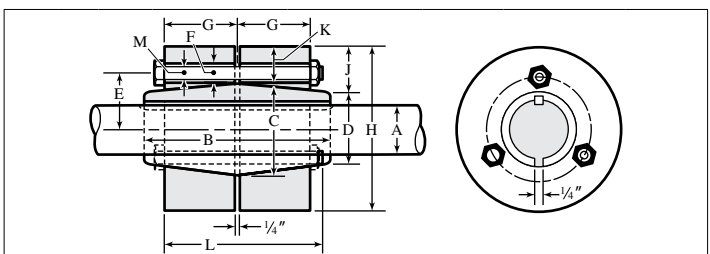
For small sizes and low power applications, a setscrew may provide the connection between the hub and the shaft, but higher power usually requires a key and perhaps two setscrews, one of them above the key. A flat on the shaft and some means of locking the setscrew(s) in position are advisable. In the AGMA Class I and II fits, the shaft tolerances are –0.0005 inch from $^1/_2$ to $1^1/_2$ inches diameter and –0.001 inch on larger diameters up to 7 inches.

Class I coupling bore tolerances are + 0.001 inch up to $1^1/_2$ inches diameter, then + 0.0015 inch to 7 inches diameter. Class II coupling bore tolerances are + 0.002 inch on sizes up to 3 inches diameter, + 0.003 inch on sizes from $3^1/_4$ through $3^3/_4$ inches diameter, and + 0.004 inch on larger diameters up to 7 inches.

Interference Fits.—Components of couplings transmitting over 150 horsepower often are made with an interference fit on the shafts, which may reduce fretting corrosion. These couplings may or may not use keys, depending on the degree of interference. Keys may range in size from $^1/_8$ inch wide by $^1/_{16}$ inch high for $^1/_2$-inch diameter shafts to $1^3/_4$ inches wide by $^7/_8$ inch high for 7-inch diameter shafts. Couplings transmitting high torque or operating at high speeds or both may use two keys. Keys must be a good fit in their keyways to ensure good transmission of torque and prevent failure. AGMA standards provide recommendations for square parallel, rectangular section, and plain tapered keys, for shafts of $^5/_{16}$ through 7 inches diameter, in three classes designated commercial, precision, and fitted. These standards also cover keyway offset, lead, parallelism, finish and radii, and face keys and splines. (See also ANSI and other Standards in *KEYS AND KEYSEATS* starting on page 2539 of this Handbook.)

Double-Cone Clamping Couplings.—As shown in the table, double-cone clamping couplings are made in a range of sizes for shafts from $1^7/_{16}$ to 6 inches in diameter, and are easily assembled to shafts. These couplings provide an interference fit, but they usually cost more and have larger overall dimensions than regular flanged couplings.

Double-cone Clamping Couplings



A	*B*	*C*	*D*	*E*	*F*	*G*	*H*	*J*	*K*	*L*	*M*	No. of Bolts	No. of Keys
$1^7/_{16}$	$5^1/_4$	$2^3/_4$	$2^1/_8$	$1^5/_8$	$^5/_8$	$2^1/_8$	$4^3/_4$	$1^1/_8$	1	5	$^1/_2$	3	1
$1^{15}/_{16}$	7	$3^1/_2$	$2^7/_8$	$2^1/_8$	$^5/_8$	$2^3/_4$	$6^1/_4$	$1^1/_8$	$1^3/_8$	$6^1/_4$	$^1/_2$	3	1
$2^7/_{16}$	$8^3/_4$	$4^5/_{16}$	$3^5/_8$	3	$^3/_4$	$3^1/_2$	$7^{13}/_{16}$	$1^7/_8$	$1^3/_4$	$7^1/_8$	$^5/_8$	3	1
3	$10^1/_2$	$5^1/_2$	$4^1/_{32}$	$3^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	$4^3/_{16}$	9	$2^1/_4$	2	$9^1/_2$	$^5/_8$	3	1
$3^1/_2$	$12^1/_4$	7	$5^3/_8$	$4^3/_8$	$^7/_8$	$5^1/_{16}$	$11^1/_4$	$2^5/_8$	$2^1/_8$	$11^1/_4$	$^3/_4$	4	1
4	14	7	$5^1/_2$	$4^3/_4$	$^7/_8$	$5^1/_2$	12	$3^3/_4$	$2^1/_2$	12	$^3/_4$	4	1
$4^1/_2$	$15^1/_2$	8	$6^7/_8$	$5^1/_4$	$^7/_8$	$6^3/_4$	$13^1/_2$	$3^3/_4$	$2^3/_4$	$14^1/_2$	$^3/_4$	4	1
5	17	9	$7^1/_4$	$5^3/_4$	$^7/_8$	7	15	$3^3/_4$	3	$15^1/_4$	$^3/_4$	4	1
$5^1/_2$	$17^1/_2$	$9^1/_2$	$7^3/_4$	$6^1/_4$	1	7	$15^1/_2$	$3^3/_4$	3	$15^1/_4$	$^7/_8$	4	1
6	18	10	$8^1/_4$	$6^3/_4$	1	7	16	$3^3/_4$	3	$15^1/_4$	$^7/_8$	4	2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

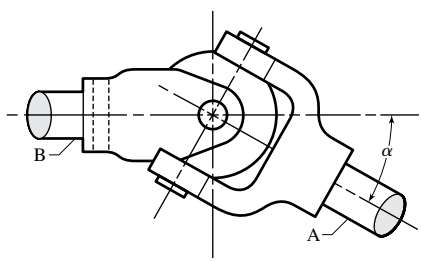
Flexible Couplings.—Shafts that are out of alignment laterally or angularly can be connected by any of several designs of flexible couplings. Such couplings also permit some degree of axial movement in one or both shafts. Some couplings use disks or diaphragms to transmit the torque. Another simple form of flexible coupling consists of two flanges connected by links or endless belts made of leather or other strong, pliable material. Alternatively, the flanges may have projections that engage spacers of molded rubber or other flexible materials that accommodate uneven motion between the shafts. More highly developed flexible couplings use toothed flanges engaged by correspondingly toothed elements, permitting relative movement. These couplings require lubrication unless one or more of the elements is made of a self-lubricating material. Other couplings use diaphragms or bellows that can flex to accommodate relative movement between the shafts.

The Universal Joint.—This form of coupling, originally known as a Cardan or Hooke's coupling, is used for connecting two shafts the axes of which are not in line with each other, but which merely intersect at a point. There are many different designs of universal joints or couplings, which are based on the principle embodied in the original design. One well-known type is shown by the accompanying diagram.

As a rule, a universal joint does not work well if the angle α (see illustration) is more than 45 degrees, and the angle should preferably be limited to about 20 degrees or 25 degrees, excepting when the speed of rotation is slow and little power is transmitted.

Variation in Angular Velocity of Driven Shaft: Owing to the angularity between two shafts connected by a universal joint, there is a variation in the angular velocity of one shaft during a single revolution, and because of this, the use of universal couplings is sometimes prohibited. Thus, the angular velocity of the driven shaft will not be the same at all points of the revolution as the angular velocity of the driving shaft. In other words, if the driving shaft moves with a uniform motion, then the driven shaft will have a variable motion and, therefore, the universal joint should not be used when absolute uniformity of motion is essential for the driven shaft.

Determining Maximum and Minimum Velocities: If shaft A (see diagram) runs at a constant speed, shaft B revolves at maximum speed when shaft A occupies the position shown in the illustration, and the minimum speed of shaft B occurs when the fork of the driving shaft A has turned 90 degrees from the position illustrated. The maximum speed of the driven shaft may be obtained by multiplying the speed of the driving shaft by the secant of angle α. The minimum speed of the driven shaft equals the speed of the driver multiplied by cosine α. Thus, if the driver rotates at a constant speed of 100 revolutions per minute and the shaft angle is 25 degrees, the maximum speed of the driven shaft is at a rate equal to $1.1034 \times 100 = 110.34$ rpm. The minimum speed rate equals $0.9063 \times 100 = 90.63$; hence, the extreme variation equals $110.34 - 90.63 = 19.71$ rpm.



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Use of Intermediate Shaft between Two Universal Joints.—The lack of uniformity in the speed of the driven shaft resulting from the use of a universal coupling, as previously explained, is objectionable for some forms of mechanisms. This variation may be avoided if the two shafts are connected with an intermediate shaft and two universal joints, provided the latter are properly arranged or located. Two conditions are necessary to obtain a constant speed ratio between the driving and driven shafts. First, the shafts must make the same angle with the intermediate shaft; second, the universal joint forks (assuming that the fork design is employed) on the intermediate shaft must be placed relatively so that when the plane of the fork at the left end coincides with the center lines of the intermediate shaft and the shaft attached to the left-hand coupling, the plane of the right-hand fork must also coincide with the center lines of the intermediate shaft and the shaft attached to the right-hand coupling; therefore the driving and the driven shafts may be placed in a variety of positions. One of the most common arrangements is with the driving and driven shafts parallel. The forks on the intermediate shafts should then be placed in the same plane.

This intermediate connecting shaft is frequently made telescoping, and then the driving and driven shafts can be moved independently of each other within certain limits in longitudinal and lateral directions. The telescoping intermediate shaft consists of a rod which enters a sleeve and is provided with a suitable spline, to prevent rotation between the rod and sleeve and permit a sliding movement. This arrangement is applied to various machine tools.

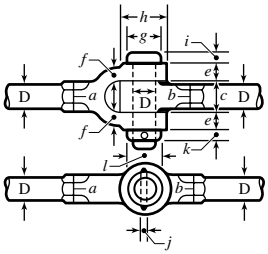
Knuckle Joints.—Movement at the joint between two rods may be provided by knuckle joints, for which typical proportions are seen in the table *Proportions of Knuckle Joints* on page 2526.

Friction Clutches.—Clutches which transmit motion from the driving to the driven member by the friction between the engaging surfaces are built in many different designs, although practically all of them can be classified under four general types, namely, conical clutches; radially expanding clutches; contracting-band clutches; and friction disk clutches in single and multiple types. There are many modifications of these general classes, some of which combine the features of different types. The proportions of various sizes of cone clutches are given in the table "Cast-iron Friction Clutches."

The multicone friction clutch is a further development of the cone clutch. Instead of having a single cone-shaped surface, there is a series of concentric conical rings which engage annular grooves formed by corresponding rings on the opposite clutch member. The internal-expanding type is provided with shoes which are forced outward against an enclosing drum by the action of levers connecting with a collar free to slide along the shaft. The engaging shoes are commonly lined with wood or other material to increase the coefficient of friction. Disk clutches are based on the principle of multiple-plane friction, and use alternating plates or disks so arranged that one set engages with an outside cylindrical case and the other set with the shaft. When these plates are pressed together by spring pressure, or by other means, motion is transmitted from the driving to the driven members connected to the clutch. Some disk clutches have a few rather heavy or thick plates and others a relatively large number of thinner plates. Clutches of the latter type are common in automobile transmissions. One set of disks may be of soft steel and the other set of phosphor-bronze, or some other combination may be employed. For instance, disks are sometimes provided with cork inserts, or one set or series of disks may be faced with a special friction material such as asbestos-wire fabric, as in "dry plate" clutches, the disks of which are not lubricated like the disks of a clutch having, for example, the steel and phosphor-bronze combination. It is common practice to hold the driving and driven members of friction clutches in engagement by means of spring pressure, although pneumatic or hydraulic pressure may be employed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Proportions of Knuckle Joints



For sizes not given below:

$a = 1.2D$	$h = 2D$
$b = 1.1D$	$i = 0.5D$
$c = 1.2D$	$j = 0.25D$
$e = 0.75D$	$k = 0.5D$
$f = 0.6D$	$l = 1.5D$
$g = 1.5D$	

D	*a*	*b*	*c*	*e*	*f*	*g*	*h*	*i*	*j*	*k*	*l*
½	⅝	9⁄16	⅝	⅜	5⁄16	¾	1	¼	⅛	¼	¾
¾	⅞	¾	⅞	9⁄16	7⁄16	1⅛	1½	⅜	3⁄16	⅜	1⅛
1	1¼	1⅛	1¼	¾	⅝	1½	2	½	¼	½	1½
1¼	1½	1⅜	1½	15⁄16	¾	1⅞	2½	⅝	5⁄16	⅝	1⅞
1½	1¾	1⅝	1¾	1⅛	⅞	2¼	3	¾	⅜	¾	2¼
1¾	2⅛	2	2⅛	1 5⁄16	1 1⁄16	2⅝	3½	⅞	7⁄16	⅞	2⅝
2	2⅜	2¼	2⅜	1½	1 3⁄16	3	4	1	½	1	3
2¼	2¾	2½	2¾	1 11⁄16	1⅜	3⅜	4½	1⅛	9⁄16	1⅛	3⅜
2½	3	2¾	3	1⅞	1½	3¾	5	1¼	⅝	1¼	3¾
2¾	3¼	3	3¼	2 1⁄16	1⅝	4⅛	5½	1⅜	11⁄16	1⅜	4⅛
3	3⅝	3¼	3⅝	2¼	1 13⁄16	4½	6	1½	¾	1½	4½
3¼	4	3⅝	4	2 7⁄16	2	4⅞	6½	1⅝	13⁄16	1⅝	4⅞
3½	4¼	3⅞	4¼	2⅝	2⅛	5¼	7	1¾	⅞	1¾	5¼
3¾	4½	4⅛	4½	2 13⁄16	2¼	5⅝	7½	1⅞	15⁄16	1⅞	5⅝
4	4¾	4⅜	4¾	3	2⅜	6	8	2	1	2	6
4¼	5⅛	4¾	5⅛	3 3⁄16	2 9⁄16	6⅜	8½	2⅛	1 1⁄16	2⅛	6⅜
4½	5½	5	5½	3⅜	2¾	6¾	9	2¼	1⅛	2¼	6¾
4¾	5¾	5¼	5¾	3 9⁄16	2⅞	7⅛	9½	2⅜	1 3⁄16	2⅜	7⅛
5	6	5½	6	3¾	3	7½	10	2½	1¼	2½	7½

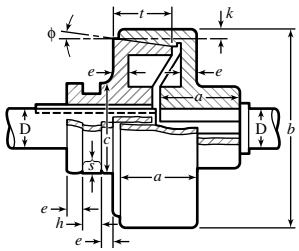
Power Transmitting Capacity of Friction Clutches.—When selecting a clutch for a given class of service, it is advisable to consider any overloads that may be encountered and base the power transmitting capacity of the clutch upon such overloads. When the load varies or is subject to frequent release or engagement, the clutch capacity should be greater than the actual amount of power transmitted. If the power is derived from a gas or gasoline engine, the horsepower rating of the clutch should be 75 or 100 percent greater than that of the engine.

Power Transmitted by Disk Clutches.—The approximate amount of power that a disk clutch will transmit may be determined from the following formula, in which HP = horsepower transmitted by the clutch; μ = coefficient of friction; r = mean radius of engaging surfaces; F = axial force in pounds (spring pressure) holding disks in contact; N = number of frictional surfaces; S = speed of shaft in revolutions per minute:

$$HP = \frac{\mu rFNS}{63{,}000}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cast-iron Friction Clutches



For sizes not given below:

$a = 2\,D$
$b = 4$ to $8\,D$
$c = 2\frac{1}{4}\,D$
$t = 1\frac{1}{2}\,D$
$e = \frac{3}{8}\,D$
$h = \frac{1}{2}\,D$
$s = \frac{5}{16}\,D$, nearly
$k = \frac{1}{4}\,D$

Note: The angle ϕ of the cone may be from 4 to 10 degrees

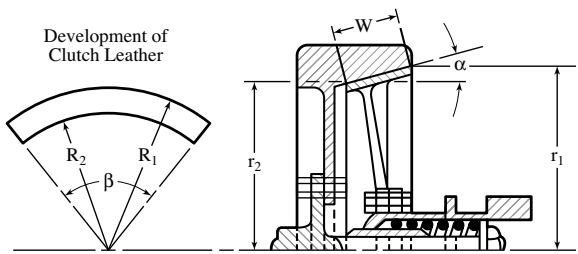
D	*a*	*b*	*c*	*t*	*e*	*h*	*s*	*k*
1	2	4-8	2¼	1½	⅜	½	5/16	¼
1¼	2½	5-10	2⅞	1⅞	½	⅝	⅜	5/16
1½	3	6-12	3⅜	2¼	⅝	¾	½	⅜
1¾	3½	7-14	4	2⅝	⅝	⅞	⅝	7/16
2	4	8-16	4½	3	¾	1	⅝	½
2¼	4½	9-18	5	3⅜	⅞	1⅛	⅝	9/16
2½	5	10-20	5⅝	3¾	1	1¼	¾	⅝
2¾	5½	11-22	6¼	4⅛	1	1⅜	⅞	11/16
3	6	12-24	6¾	4½	1⅛	1½	⅞	¾
3¼	6½	13-26	7⅜	4⅞	1¼	1⅝	1	13/16
3½	7	14-28	7⅞	5¼	1⅜	1¾	1	⅞
3¾	7½	15-30	8½	5⅝	1⅜	1⅞	1¼	15/16
4	8	16-32	9	6	1½	2	1¼	1
4¼	8½	17-34	9½	6⅜	1⅝	2⅛	1⅜	1 1/16
4½	9	18-36	10¼	6¾	1¾	2¼	1⅜	1⅛
4¾	9½	19-38	10¾	7⅛	1¾	2⅜	1½	1 3/16
5	10	20-40	11¼	7½	1⅞	2½	1½	1¼
5¼	10½	21-42	11¾	7⅞	2	2⅝	1⅝	1 5/16
5½	11	22-44	12⅜	8¼	2	2¾	1¾	1⅜
5¾	11½	23-46	13	8⅝	2¼	2⅞	1¾	1 7/16
6	12	24-48	13½	9	2¼	3	1⅞	1½

Frictional Coefficients for Clutch Calculations.—While the frictional coefficients used by designers of clutches differ somewhat and depend upon variable factors, the following values may be used in clutch calculations: For greasy leather on cast iron about 0.20 or 0.25, leather on metal that is quite oily 0.15; metal and cork on oily metal 0.32; the same on dry metal 0.35; metal on dry metal 0.15; disk clutches having lubricated surfaces 0.10.

Formulas for Cone Clutches.—In cone clutch design, different formulas have been developed for determining the horsepower transmitted. These formulas, at first sight, do not seem to agree, there being a variation due to the fact that in some of the formulas the friction clutch surfaces are assumed to engage without slip, whereas, in others, some allowance is made for slip. The following formulas include both of these conditions:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

HP = horsepower transmitted
N = revolutions per minute
r = mean radius of friction cone, in inches
r_1 = large radius of friction cone, in inches
r_2 = small radius of friction cone, in inches
R_1 = outside radius of leather band, in inches
R_2 = inside radius of leather band, in inches
V = velocity of a point at distance r from the center, in feet per minute
F = tangential force acting at radius r, in pounds
P_n = total normal force between cone surfaces, in pounds
P_s = spring force, in pounds
α = angle of clutch surface with axis of shaft = 7 to 13 degrees
β = included angle of clutch leather, when developed, in degrees
f = coefficient of friction = 0.20 to 0.25 for greasy leather on iron
p = allowable pressure per square inch of leather band = 7 to 8 pounds
W = width of clutch leather, in inches



$$R_1 = \frac{r_1}{\sin\alpha} \qquad R_2 = \frac{r_2}{\sin\alpha}$$

$$\beta = \sin\alpha \times 360 \qquad r = \frac{r_1 + r_2}{2}$$

$$V = \frac{2\pi rN}{12}$$

$$F = \frac{HP \times 33{,}000}{V} \qquad W = \frac{P_n}{2\pi rp} \qquad HP = \frac{P_n\, frN}{63{,}025}$$

For engagement with some slip:

$$P_n = \frac{P_s}{\sin\alpha} \qquad P_s = \frac{HP \times 63{,}025 \sin\alpha}{frN}$$

For engagement without slip:

$$P_n = \frac{P_s}{\sin\alpha + f\cos\alpha} \qquad P_s = \frac{HP \times 63{,}025(\sin\alpha + f\cos\alpha)}{frN}$$

Angle of Cone.—If the angle of the conical surface of the cone type of clutch is too small, it may be difficult to release the clutch on account of the wedging effect, whereas, if the angle is too large, excessive spring force will be required to prevent slipping. The minimum angle for a leather-faced cone is about 8 or 9 degrees and the maximum angle about 13 degrees. An angle of $12\frac{1}{2}$ degrees appears to be the most common and is generally

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

considered good practice. These angles are given with relation to the clutch axis and are one-half the included angle.

Magnetic Clutches.—Many disk and other clutches are operated electromagnetically with the magnetic force used only to move the friction disk(s) and the clutch disk(s) into or out of engagement against spring or other pressure. On the other hand, in a magnetic particle clutch, transmission of power is accomplished by magnetizing a quantity of metal particles enclosed between the driving and the driven components, forming a bond between them. Such clutches can be controlled to provide either a rigid coupling or uniform slip, useful in wire drawing and manufacture of cables.

Another type of magnetic clutch uses eddy currents induced in the input member which interact with the field in the output rotor. Torque transmitted is proportional to the coil current, so precise control of torque is provided. A third type of magnetic clutch relies on the hysteresis loss between magnetic fields generated by a coil in an input drum and a close-fitting cup on the output shaft, to transmit torque. Torque transmitted with this type of clutch also is proportional to coil current, so close control is possible.

Permanent-magnet types of clutches also are available, in which the engagement force is exerted by permanent magnets when the electrical supply to the disengagement coils is cut off. These types of clutches have capacities up to five times the torque-to-weight ratio of spring-operated clutches. In addition, if the controls are so arranged as to permit the coil polarity to be reversed instead of being cut off, the combined permanent magnet and electromagnetic forces can transmit even greater torque.

Centrifugal and Free-wheeling Clutches.—Centrifugal clutches have driving members that expand outward to engage a surrounding drum when speed is sufficient to generate centrifugal force. Free-wheeling clutches are made in many different designs and use balls, cams or sprags, ratchets, and fluids to transmit motion from one member to the other. These types of clutches are designed to transmit torque in only one direction and to take up the drive with various degrees of gradualness up to instantaneously.

Slipping Clutch/Couplings.—Where high shock loads are likely to be experienced, a slipping clutch or coupling or both should be used. The most common design uses a clutch plate that is clamped between the driving and driven plates by spring pressure that can be adjusted. When excessive load causes the driven member to slow, the clutch plate surfaces slip, allowing reduction of the torque transmitted. When the overload is removed, the drive is taken up automatically. Switches can be provided to cut off current supply to the driving motor when the driven shaft slows to a preset limit or to signal a warning or both. The slip or overload torque is calculated by taking 150 percent of the normal running torque.

Wrapped-Spring Clutches.—For certain applications, a simple steel spring sized so that its internal diameter is a snug fit on both driving and driven shafts will transmit adequate torque in one direction. The tightness of grip of the spring on the shafts increases as the torque transmitted increases. Disengagement can be effected by slight rotation of the spring, through a projecting tang, using electrical or mechanical means, to wind up the spring to a larger internal diameter, allowing one of the shafts to run free within the spring.

Normal running torque T_r in lb-ft = (required horsepower × 5250) ÷ rpm. For heavy shock load applications, multiply by a 200 percent or greater overload factor. (See Motors, factors governing selection.)

The clutch starting torque T_c, in lb-ft, required to accelerate a given inertia in a specific time is calculated from the formula:

$$T_c = \frac{WR^2 \times \Delta N}{308t}$$

where WR^2 = total inertia encountered by clutch in lb-ft^2 (W = weight and R = radius of gyration of rotating part)

ΔN = final rpm – initial rpm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

308 = constant (see *Factors Governing Motor Selection* on page 2652)
t = time to required speed in seconds

Example 1: If the inertia is 80 lb-ft^2, and the speed of the driven shaft is to be increased from 0 to 1500 rpm in 3 seconds, the clutch starting torque in lb-ft is

$$T_c = \frac{80 \times 1500}{308 \times 3} = 130 \text{ lb-ft}$$

The heat E, in BTU, generated in one engagement of a clutch can be calculated from the formula:

$$E = \frac{T_c \times WR^2 \times (N_1^2 - N_2^2)}{(T_c - T_1) \times 4.7 \times 10^6}$$

where WR^2 = total inertia encountered by clutch in lb-ft^2
N_1 = final rpm N_2 = initial rpm
T_c = clutch torque in lb-ft T_1 = torque load in lb-ft

Example 2: Calculate the heat generated for each engagement under the conditions cited for Example 1.

$$E = \frac{130 \times 80 \times (1500)^2}{(130 - 10) \times 4.7 \times 10^6} = 41.5 \text{ BTU}$$

The preferred location for a clutch is on the high- rather than on the low-speed shaft because a smaller-capacity unit, of lower cost and with more rapid dissipation of heat, can be used. However, the heat generated may also be more because of the greater slippage at higher speeds, and the clutch may have a shorter life. For light-duty applications, such as to a machine tool, where cutting occurs after the spindle has reached operating speed, the calculated torque should be multiplied by a safety factor of 1.5 to arrive at the capacity of the clutch to be used. Heavy-duty applications such as frequent starting of a heavily loaded vibratory-finishing barrel require a safety factor of 3 or more.

Positive Clutches.—When the driving and driven members of a clutch are connected by the engagement of interlocking teeth or projecting lugs, the clutch is said to be "positive" to distinguish it from the type in which the power is transmitted by frictional contact. The positive clutch is employed when a sudden starting action is not objectionable and when the inertia of the driven parts is relatively small. The various forms of positive clutches differ merely in the angle or shape of the engaging surfaces. The least positive form is one having planes of engagement which incline backward, with respect to the direction of motion. The tendency of such a clutch is to disengage under load, in which case it must be held in position by axial pressure.

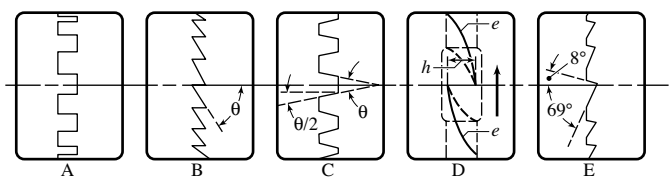


Fig. 1. Types of Clutch Teeth

This pressure may be regulated to perform normal duty, permitting the clutch to slip and disengage when over-loaded. Positive clutches, with the engaging planes parallel to the axis of rotation, are held together to obviate the tendency to jar out of engagement, but they provide no safety feature against over-load. So-called "under-cut" clutches engage more tightly the heavier the load, and are designed to be disengaged only when free from

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

load. The teeth of positive clutches are made in a variety of forms, a few of the more common styles being shown in Fig. 1. Clutch *A* is a straight-toothed type, and *B* has angular or saw-shaped teeth. The driving member of the former can be rotated in either direction; the latter is adapted to the transmission of motion in one direction only, but is more readily engaged. The angle θ of the cutter for a saw-tooth clutch *B* is ordinarily 60 degrees. Clutch *C* is similar to *A*, except that the sides of the teeth are inclined to facilitate engagement and disengagement. Teeth of this shape are sometimes used when a clutch is required to run in either direction without backlash. Angle θ is varied to suit requirements and should not exceed 16 or 18 degrees. The straight-tooth clutch *A* is also modified to make the teeth engage more readily, by rounding the corners of the teeth at the top and bottom. Clutch *D* (commonly called a "spiral-jaw" clutch) differs from *B* in that the surfaces *e* are helicoidal. The driving member of this clutch can transmit motion in only one direction.

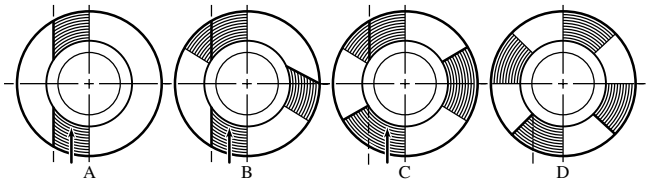


Fig. 2. Diagrammatic View Showing Method of Cutting Clutch Teeth

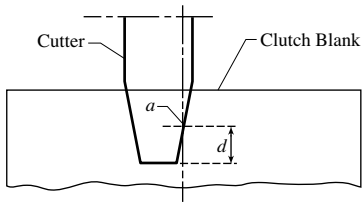


Fig. 3.

Clutches of this type are known as right- and left-hand, the former driving when turning to the right, as indicated by the arrow in the illustration. Clutch *E* is the form used on the back-shaft of the Brown & Sharpe automatic screw machines. The faces of the teeth are radial and incline at an angle of 8 degrees with the axis, so that the clutch can readily be disengaged. This type of clutch is easily operated, with little jar or noise. The 2-inch (50.8 mm) diameter size has 10 teeth. Height of working face, $^1/_8$ inch (3.175 mm).

Cutting Clutch Teeth.—A common method of cutting a straight-tooth clutch is indicated by the diagrams *A*, *B* and *C*, Fig. 2, which show the first, second and third cuts required for forming the three teeth. The work is held in the chuck of a dividing-head, the latter being set at right angles to the table. A plain milling cutter may be used (unless the corners of the teeth are rounded), the side of the cutter being set to exactly coincide with the centerline. When the number of teeth in the clutch is odd, the cut can be taken clear across the blank as shown, thus finishing the sides of two teeth with one passage of the cutter. When the number of teeth is even, as at *D*, it is necessary to mill all the teeth on one side and then set the cutter for finishing the opposite side. Therefore, clutches of this type commonly have an odd number of teeth. The maximum width of the cutter depends upon the width of the space at the narrow ends of the teeth. If the cutter must be quite narrow in order to pass the narrow ends, some stock may be left in the tooth spaces, which must be removed by a separate cut. If the tooth is of the modified form shown at *C*, Fig. 1, the cutter should be set as

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

indicated in Fig. 3; that is, so that a point a on the cutter at a radial distance *d* equal to one-half the depth of the clutch teeth lies in a radial plane. When it is important to eliminate all backlash, point *a* is sometimes located at a radial distance *d* equal to six-tenths of the depth of the tooth, in order to leave clearance spaces at the bottoms of the teeth; the two clutch members will then fit together tightly. Clutches of this type must be held in mesh.

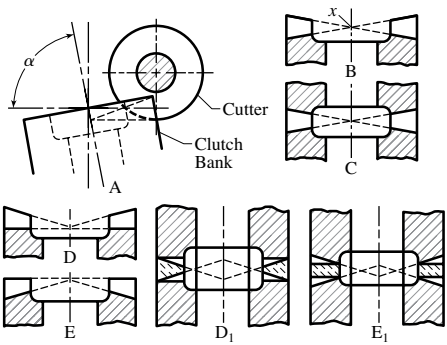
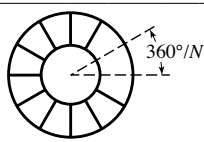


Fig. 4.

Angle of Dividing-Head for Milling V-Shaped Teeth with Single-Angle Cutter



$$\cos\alpha = \frac{\tan(360°/N) \times \cot\theta}{2}$$

α is the angle shown in Fig. 4 and is the angle shown by the graduations on the dividing head. θ is the included angle of a single cutter, see Fig. 1.

No. of Teeth, *N*	Angle of Single-angle Cutter, θ						No. of Teeth, *N*	Angle of Single-angle Cutter, θ					
	60°		70°		80°			60°		70°		80°	
	Dividing Head Angle, α							Dividing Head Angle, α					
5	27°	19.2'	55°	56.3'	74°	15.4'	18	83°	58.1'	86°	12.1'	88°	9.67'
6	60		71	37.6	81	13	19	84	18.8	86	25.1	88	15.9
7	68	46.7	76	48.5	83	39.2	20	84	37.1	86	36.6	88	21.5
8	73	13.3	79	30.9	84	56.5	21	84	53.5	86	46.9	88	26.5
9	75	58.9	81	13	85	45.4	22	85	8.26	86	56.2	88	31
10	77	53.6	82	24.1	86	19.6	23	85	21.6	87	4.63	88	35.1
11	79	18.5	83	17	86	45.1	24	85	33.8	87	12.3	88	38.8
12	80	24.4	83	58.1	87	4.94	25	85	45	87	19.3	88	42.2
13	81	17.1	84	31.1	87	20.9	26	85	55.2	87	25.7	88	45.3
14	82	.536	84	58.3	87	34	27	86	4.61	87	31.7	88	48.2
15	82	36.9	85	21.2	87	45	28	86	13.3	87	37.2	88	50.8
16	83	7.95	85	40.6	87	54.4	29	86	21.4	87	42.3	88	53.3
17	83	34.7	85	57.4	88	2.56	30	86	28.9	87	47	88	55.6

Cutting Saw-Tooth Clutches: When milling clutches having angular teeth as shown at *B*, Fig. 1, the axis of the clutch blank should be inclined a certain angle α as shown at *A* in Fig. 4. If the teeth were milled with the blank vertical, the tops of the teeth would incline towards the center as at *D*, whereas, if the blank were set to such an angle that the tops of the teeth were square with the axis, the bottoms would incline upwards as at *E*. In either

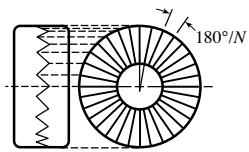
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

case, the two clutch members would not mesh completely: the engagement of the teeth cut as shown at D and E would be as indicated at D_1 and E_1 respectively. As will be seen, when the outer points of the teeth at D_1 are at the bottom of the grooves in the opposite member, the inner ends are not together, the contact area being represented by the dotted lines. At E_1 the inner ends of the teeth strike first and spaces are left between the teeth around the outside of the clutch. To overcome this objectionable feature, the clutch teeth should be cut as indicated at B, or so that the bottoms and tops of the teeth have the same inclination, converging at a central point x. The teeth of both members will then engage across the entire width as shown at C. The angle α required for cutting a clutch as at B can be determined by the following formula in which α equals the required angle, N = number of teeth, θ = cutter angle, and $360°/N$ = angle between teeth:

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{\tan(360°/N) \times \cot\theta}{2}$$

The angles α for various numbers of teeth and for 60-, 70- or 80-degree single-angle cutters are given in the table on page 2532. The following table is for double-angle cutters used to cut V-shaped teeth.

Angle of Dividing-Head for Milling V-Shaped Teeth with Double-Angle Cutter



$$\cos\alpha = \frac{\tan(180°/N) \times \cot(\theta/2)}{2}$$

This is the angle (α, Fig. 4) shown by graduations on the dividing-head. θ is the included angle of a double-angle cutter, see Fig. 1.

No. of Teeth, N	Included Angle of Cutter, θ				No. of Teeth, N	Included Angle of Cutter, θ			
	60°		90°			60°		90°	
	Dividing Head Angle, α					Dividing Head Angle, α			
10	73°	39.4'	80°	39'	31	84°	56.9'	87°	5.13'
11	75	16.1	81	33.5	32	85	6.42	87	10.6
12	76	34.9	82	18	33	85	15.4	87	15.8
13	77	40.5	82	55.3	34	85	23.8	87	20.7
14	78	36	83	26.8	35	85	31.8	87	25.2
15	79	23.6	83	54	36	85	39.3	87	29.6
16	80	4.83	84	17.5	37	85	46.4	87	33.7
17	80	41	84	38.2	38	85	53.1	87	37.5
18	81	13	84	56.5	39	85	59.5	87	41.2
19	81	41.5	85	12.8	40	86	5.51	87	44.7
20	82	6.97	85	27.5	41	86	11.3	87	48
21	82	30	85	40.7	42	86	16.7	87	51.2
22	82	50.8	85	52.6	43	86	22	87	54.2
23	83	9.82	86	3.56	44	86	26.9	87	57
24	83	27.2	86	13.5	45	86	31.7	87	59.8
25	83	43.1	86	22.7	46	86	36.2	88	2.4
26	83	57.8	26	31.2	47	86	40.6	88	4.91
27	84	11.4	86	39	48	86	44.8	88	7.32
28	84	24	86	46.2	49	86	48.8	88	9.63
29	84	35.7	86	53	50	86	52.6	88	11.8
30	84	46.7	86	59.3	51	86	56.3	88	14

The angles given in the table above are applicable to the milling of V-shaped grooves in brackets, etc., which must have toothed surfaces to prevent the two members from turning relative to each other, except when unclamped for angular adjustment

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Friction Brakes

Formulas for Band Brakes.—In any band brake, such as shown in Fig. 1, in the tabulation of formulas, where the brake wheel rotates in a clockwise direction, the tension in that part of the band marked x equals $P\frac{1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}$

The tension in that part marked y equals $P\frac{e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}$.

P = tangential force in pounds at rim of brake wheel
e = base of natural logarithm = 2.71828
μ = coefficient of friction between the brake band and the brake wheel
θ = angle of contact of the brake band with the brake wheel expressed in radians

$$1 \text{ radian} = \frac{180 \text{ deg}}{\pi \text{ radians}} = 57.296\frac{\text{deg}}{\text{radian}}$$

See also *Conversion Tables of Angular Measure* starting on page 103.

For simplicity in the formulas presented, the tensions at x and y (Fig. 1) are denoted by T_1 and T_2 respectively, for clockwise rotation. When the direction of the rotation is reversed, the tension in x equals T_2, and the tension in y equals T_1, which is the reverse of the tension in the clockwise direction.

The value of the expression $e^{\mu\theta}$ in these formulas may be most easily found by using a hand-held calculator of the scientific type; that is, one capable of raising 2.71828 to the power $\mu\theta$. The following example outlines the steps in the calculations.

Table of Values of $e^{\mu\theta}$

Proportion of Contact to Whole Circumference, $\frac{\theta}{2\pi}$	Steel Band on Cast Iron, $\mu = 0.18$	Leather Belt on Wood: Slightly Greasy; $\mu = 0.47$	Leather Belt on Cast Iron: Very Greasy; $\mu = 0.12$	Leather Belt on Cast Iron: Slightly Greasy; $\mu = 0.28$	Leather Belt on Cast Iron: Damp; $\mu = 0.38$
0.1	1.12	1.34	1.08	1.19	1.27
0.2	1.25	1.81	1.16	1.42	1.61
0.3	1.40	2.43	1.25	1.69	2.05
0.4	1.57	3.26	1.35	2.02	2.60
0.425	1.62	3.51	1.38	2.11	2.76
0.45	1.66	3.78	1.40	2.21	2.93
0.475	1.71	4.07	1.43	2.31	3.11
0.5	1.76	4.38	1.46	2.41	3.30
0.525	1.81	4.71	1.49	2.52	3.50
0.55	1.86	5.07	1.51	2.63	3.72
0.6	1.97	5.88	1.57	2.81	4.19
0.7	2.21	7.90	1.66	3.43	5.32
0.8	2.47	10.60	1.83	4.09	6.75
0.9	2.77	14.30	1.97	4.87	8.57
1.0	3.10	19.20	2.12	5.81	10.90

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Formulas for Simple and Differential Band Brakes

F = force in pounds at end of brake handle; P = tangential force in pounds at rim of brake wheel; e = base of natural logarithm = 2.71828; μ = coefficient of friction between the brake band and the brake wheel; θ = angle of contact of the brake band with the brake wheel, expressed in radians (1 radian = 57.296 degrees).

$$T_1 = P\frac{1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1} \qquad T_2 = P\frac{e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}$$

Simple Band Brake

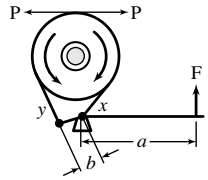


Fig. 1.

For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{bT_2}{a} = \frac{Pb}{a}\left(\frac{e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{bT_1}{a} = \frac{Pb}{a}\left(\frac{1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

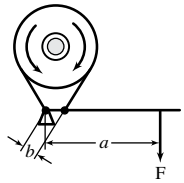


Fig. 2.

For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{bT_1}{a} = \frac{Pb}{a}\left(\frac{1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{bT_2}{a} = \frac{Pb}{a}\left(\frac{e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

Differential Band Brake

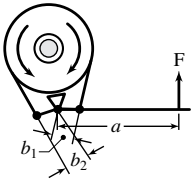


Fig. 3.

For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{b_2T_2 - b_1T_1}{a} = \frac{P}{a}\left(\frac{b_2e^{\mu\theta} - b_1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{b_2T_1 - b_1T_2}{a} = \frac{P}{a}\left(\frac{b_2 - b_1e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

In this case, if b_2 is equal to, or less than, $b_1e^{\mu\theta}$, the force F will be 0 or negative and the band brake works automatically.

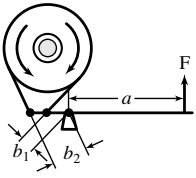


Fig. 4.

For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{b_2T_2 + b_1T_1}{a} = \frac{P}{a}\left(\frac{b_2e^{\mu\theta} + b_1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{b_1T_2 + b_2T_1}{a} = \frac{P}{a}\left(\frac{b_1e^{\mu\theta} + b_2}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

If $b_2 = b_1$, both of the above formulas reduce to $F = \frac{Pb_1}{a}\left(\frac{e^{\mu\theta}+1}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$.

In this case, the same force F is required for rotation in either direction.

Example: In a band brake of the type in Fig. 1, dimension $a = 24$ inches, and $b = 4$ inches; force $P = 100$ pounds; coefficient $\mu = 0.2$, and angle of contact = 240 degrees, or

$$\theta = \frac{240}{180} \times \pi = 4.18$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The rotation is clockwise. Find force F required.

$$F = \frac{Pb}{a}\left(\frac{e^{\mu\theta}}{e^{\mu\theta}-1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{100\times 4}{24}\left(\frac{2.71828^{0.2\times 4.18}}{2.71828^{0.2\times 4.18}-1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{400}{24}\times\frac{2.71828^{0836}}{2.71828^{0836}-1} = 16.66\times\frac{2.31}{2.31-1} = 29.4$$

If a hand-held calculator is not used, determining the value of $e^{\mu\theta}$ is rather tedious, and the table on page 2534 will save calculations.

Coefficient of Friction in Brakes.—The coefficients of friction that may be assumed for friction brake calculations are as follows: Iron on iron, 0.25 to 0.3; leather on iron, 0.3; cork on iron, 0.35. Values somewhat lower than these should be assumed when the velocities exceed 400 feet per minute at the beginning of the braking operation.

For brakes where wooden brake blocks are used on iron drums, poplar has proved the best brake block material. The best material for the brake drum is wrought iron. Poplar gives a high coefficient of friction, and is little affected by oil. The average coefficient of friction for poplar brake blocks and wrought-iron drums is 0.6; for poplar on cast iron, 0.35; for oak on wrought iron, 0.5; for oak on cast iron, 0.3; for beech on wrought iron, 0.5; for beech on cast iron, 0.3; for elm on wrought iron, 0.6; and for elm on cast iron, 0.35. The objection to elm is that the friction decreases rapidly if the friction surfaces are oily. The coefficient of friction for elm and wrought iron, if oily, is less than 0.4.

Calculating Horsepower from Dynamometer Tests.—When a dynamometer is arranged for measuring the horsepower transmitted by a shaft, as indicated by the diagrammatic view in Fig. 5, the horsepower may be obtained by the formula:

$$HP = \frac{2\pi LPN}{33000}$$

in which HP = horsepower transmitted; N = number of revolutions per minute; L = distance (as shown in illustration) from center of pulley to point of action of weight P, in feet; P = weight hung on brake arm or read on scale.

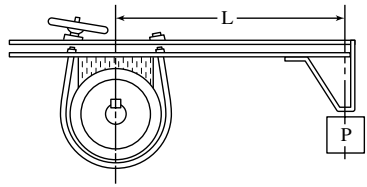


Fig. 5.

By adopting a length of brake arm equal to 5 feet 3 inches, the formula may be reduced to the simple form:

$$HP = \frac{NP}{1000}$$

If a length of brake arm equal to 2 feet 7½ inches is adopted as a standard, the formula takes the form:

$$HP = \frac{NP}{2000}$$

The *transmission* type of dynamometer measures the power by transmitting it through the mechanism of the dynamometer from the apparatus in which it is generated, or to the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

apparatus in which it is to be utilized. Dynamometers known as *indicators* operate by simultaneously measuring the pressure and volume of a confined fluid. This type may be used for the measurement of the power generated by steam or gas engines or absorbed by refrigerating machinery, air compressors, or pumps. An electrical dynamometer is for measuring the power of an electric current, based on the mutual action of currents flowing in two coils. It consists principally of one fixed and one movable coil, which, in the normal position, are at right angles to each other. Both coils are connected in series, and, when a current traverses the coils, the fields produced are at right angles; hence, the coils tend to take up a parallel position. The movable coil with an attached pointer will be deflected, the deflection measuring directly the electric current.

Formulas for Block Brakes

F = force in pounds at end of brake handle;
P = tangential force in pounds at rim of brake wheel;
μ = coefficient of friction between the brake block and brake wheel.

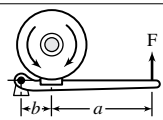


Fig. 1.

Block brake.
For rotation in either direction:

$$F = P\frac{b}{a+b} \times \frac{1}{\mu} = \frac{Pb}{a+b}\left(\frac{1}{\mu}\right)$$

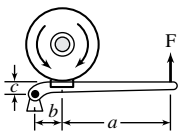


Fig. 2.

Block brake.
For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{\frac{Pb}{\mu} - Pc}{a+b} = \frac{Pb}{a+b}\left(\frac{1}{\mu} - \frac{c}{b}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{\frac{Pb}{\mu} + Pc}{a+b} = \frac{Pb}{a+b}\left(\frac{1}{\mu} + \frac{c}{b}\right)$$

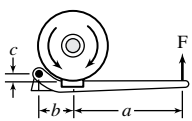


Fig. 3.

Block brake.
For clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{\frac{Pb}{\mu} + Pc}{a+b} = \frac{Pb}{a+b}\left(\frac{1}{\mu} + \frac{c}{b}\right)$$

For counter clockwise rotation:

$$F = \frac{\frac{Pb}{\mu} - Pc}{a+b} = \frac{Pb}{a+b}\left(\frac{1}{\mu} - \frac{c}{b}\right)$$

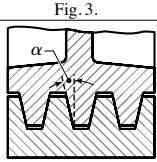


Fig. 4.

The brake wheel and friction block of the block brake are often grooved as shown in Fig. 4. In this case, substitute for μ in the above equations the value $\frac{\mu}{\sin\alpha + \mu\cos\alpha}$ where α is one-half the angle included by the faces of the grooves.

Friction Wheels for Power Transmission

When a rotating member is driven intermittently and the rate of driving does not need to be positive, friction wheels are frequently used, especially when the amount of power to be transmitted is comparatively small. The driven wheels in a pair of friction disks should always be made of a harder material than the driving wheels, so that if the driven

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

wheel should be held stationary by the load, while the driving wheel revolves under its own pressure, a flat spot may not be rapidly worn on the driven wheel. The driven wheels, therefore, are usually made of iron, while the driving wheels are made of or covered with, rubber, paper, leather, wood or fiber. The safe working force per inch of face width of contact for various materials are as follows: Straw fiber, 150; leather fiber, 240; tarred fiber, 240; leather, 150; wood, 100 to 150; paper, 150. Coefficients of friction for different combinations of materials are given in the following table. Smaller values should be used for exceptionally high speeds, or when the transmission must be started while under load.

Horsepower of Friction Wheels.—Let D = diameter of friction wheel in inches; N = number of revolutions per minute; W = width of face in inches; f = coefficient of friction; P = force in pounds, per inch width of face. Then:

$$HP = \frac{3.1416 \times D \times N \times P \times W \times f}{33{,}000 \times 12}$$

Assume

$$\frac{3.1416 \times P \times f}{33{,}000 \times 12} = C$$

then,

for $P = 100$ and $f = 0.20, C = 0.00016$
for $P = 150$ and $f = 0.20, C = 0.00024$
for $P = 200$ and $f = 0.20, C = 0.00032$

Working Values of Coefficient of Friction

Materials	Coefficient of Friction	Materials	Coefficient of Friction
Straw fiber and cast iron	0.26	Tarred fiber and aluminum	0.18
Straw fiber and aluminum	0.27	Leather and cast iron	0.14
Leather fiber and cast iron	0.31	Leather and aluminum	0.22
Leather fiber and aluminum	0.30	Leather and type metal	0.25
Tarred fiber and cast iron	0.15	Wood and metal	0.25
Paper and cast iron	0.20		

The horsepower transmitted is then:

$$HP = D \times N \times W \times C$$

Example: Find the horsepower transmitted by a pair of friction wheels; the diameter of the driving wheel is 10 inches, and it revolves at 200 revolutions per minute. The width of the wheel is 2 inches. The force per inch width of face is 150 pounds, and the coefficient of friction 0.20.

$$HP = 10 \times 200 \times 2 \times 0.00024 = 0.96 \text{ horsepower}$$

Horsepower Which May Be Transmitted by Means of a Clean Paper Friction Wheel of One-inch Face When Run Under a Force of 150 Pounds (Rockwood Mfg. Co.)

Dia. of Friction Wheel	Revolutions per Minute										
	25	50	75	100	150	200	300	400	600	800	1000
4	0.023	0.047	0.071	0.095	0.142	0.190	0.285	0.380	0.571	0.76	0.95
6	0.035	0.071	0.107	0.142	0.214	0.285	0.428	0.571	0.856	1.14	1.42
8	0.047	0.095	0.142	0.190	0.285	0.380	0.571	0.761	1.142	1.52	1.90
10	0.059	0.119	0.178	0.238	0.357	0.476	0.714	0.952	1.428	1.90	2.38
14	0.083	0.166	0.249	0.333	0.499	0.666	0.999	1.332	1.999	2.66	3.33
16	0.095	0.190	0.285	0.380	0.571	0.761	1.142	1.523	2.284	3.04	3.80
18	0.107	0.214	0.321	0.428	0.642	0.856	1.285	1.713	2.570	3.42	4.28
24	0.142	0.285	0.428	0.571	0.856	1.142	1.713	2.284	3.427	4.56	5.71
30	0.178	0.357	0.535	0.714	1.071	1.428	2.142	2.856	4.284	5.71	7.14
36	0.214	0.428	0.642	0.856	1.285	1.713	2.570	3.427	5.140	6.85	8.56
42	0.249	0.499	0.749	0.999	1.499	1.999	2.998	3.998	5.997	7.99	9.99
48	0.285	0.571	0.856	1.142	1.713	2.284	3.427	4.569	6.854	9.13	11.42
50	0.297	0.595	0.892	1.190	1.785	2.380	3.570	4.760	7.140	9.52	11.90

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

KEYS AND KEYSEATS

Metric Square and Rectangular Keys and Keyways

The ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M (Withdrawn) standard covers requirements for square and rectangular parallel keys and keyways intended for both alignment of shafts and hubs, and transmitting torque between shafts and hubs. Keys covered by this standard have a relatively tight width tolerance. The deviations are less than the basic size. Keys with greater width tolerance and with deviations greater than the basic size are covered by ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M (Withdrawn). All dimensions in this standard are in millimeters (mm).

Comparison with ISO R773-1969 and 2491-1974.—This standard is based on ISO Standards R773-1969, *Rectangular or Square Parallel Keys* and their corresponding keyways, and 2491-1974, *Thin Parallel Keys* and their corresponding keyways (dimensions in millimeters). Product manufactured to this standard will meet the ISO standards. Because of tighter width tolerances in this standard, products manufactured to the ISO standard may not meet the requirements of this standard.

This standard differs from ISO in that it: a) does not restrict the corners of a key to be chamfered but allows either a chamfer or a radius on the key; and b) specifies a key material hardness rather than a tensile property.

Tolerances.—Many of the tolerances shown in Table 1 and Table 2 are from ANSI/ASME B4.2 (ISO 286-1 and ISO 286-2). As a result, in addition to plus-minus tolerances which are common in the United States, some are expressed as plus-plus or minus-minus deviations from the basic size. For further interpretation of these tolerances refer to ANSI/ASME B4.2 or ISO 286.

Designation.—Keys conforming to this standard shall be designated by the following data, preferably in the sequence as follows: a) ASME document number; b) product name; c) nominal size, width (b) × height (h) × length; d) form; and e) hardness (if other than non-hardened).

Example: ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M (Withdrawn) square key 3 × 3 × 15 form B.
ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M (Withdrawn) rectangular key 10 × 6 × 20 form C hardened

Preferred Lengths and Tolerances.—Preferred lengths and tolerances of square and rectangular keys are shown below. Tolerances are JS16. To minimize problems due to lack of straightness, key length should be less than 10 times the key width.

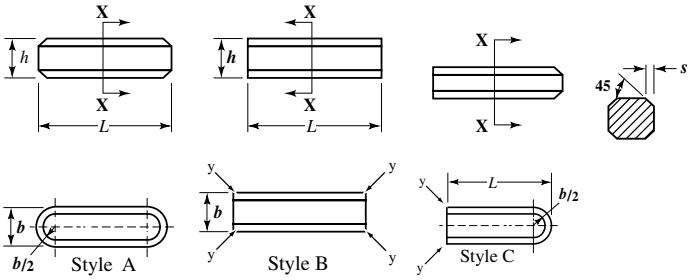
Length	± Tolerances	Length	± Tolerances
6	0.38	90, 100, 110	1.10
8, 10	0.45	125, 140, 150, 180	1.25
12, 14, 16, 18	0.56	200, 220, 250	1.45
20, 22, 25, 28	0.65	280	1.60
32, 36, 40, 45, 50	0.80	320, 360, 400	1.80
56, 63, 70, 80	0.95		

Material Requirements.—Standard steel keys shall have a Vickers hardness of 183 HV minimum. Hardened keys shall be alloy steel through hardened to a Vickers hardness of 390 to 510 HV. When other materials and properties are required, these shall be as agreed upon by the supplier and customer.

Dimensions and Tolerances.—Dimensions and tolerances for square and rectangular parallel keys are shown in Table 1. Recommended dimensions and tolerances for keyways are shown in Table 2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Figures for Table 1 and Table 3



y = sharp edges removed not to exceed s_{max}

Table 1. Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys *ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn)*

Width, *b*		Thickness, *h*		Chamfer or Radius, *s*		Range of Lengths	
Basic Size (mm)	Tolerance, h8	Basic Size	Tolerance, Square, h8 Rectangular, h11	Minimum	Maximum	From	To[a]
Square Keys							
2	0 –0.014	2	0 –0.014	0.16	0.25	6	20
3		3				6	36
4	0 –0.018	4	0 –0.018			8	45
5		5		0.25	0.40	10	56
6		6				14	70
Rectangular Keys							
5	0 –0.018	3	0 –0.060	0.25	0.40	10	56
6		4	0 –0.075			14	70
8	0 –0.022	5				18	90
		7	0 –0.090				
10		6	0 –0.075	0.40	0.60	22	110
		8	0 –0.090				
12	0 –0.027	6	0 –0.075		0.60	28	110
		8	0 –0.090				
14		6	0 –0.075			36	160
		9	0 –0.090				
16		7				45	180
		10					
18		7				50	200
		11	0 –0.110				

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

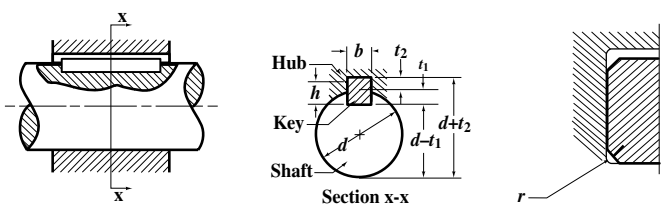
Table 1. *(Continued)* **Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys** *ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn)*

Width, *b*		Thickness, *h*		Chamfer or Radius, *s*		Range of Lengths	
Basic Size (mm)	Tolerance, h8	Basic Size	Tolerance, Square, h8 Rectangular, h11	Minimum	Maximum	From	To[a]
Rectangular Keys							
20	0 –0.033	8	0 –0.090	0.60	0.80	56	220
		12	0 –0.110			63	260
22		6	0 –0.075			70	280
		14	0 –0.110			80	320
25		9	0 –0.090			90	360
		14	0 –0.110			100	400
28		10	0 –0.090				
		16	0 –0.110				
32	0 –0.039	11					
		18					
36		12		1.00	1.20		
		20					
40		22					
45		25					
50		28					
56	0 –0.046	32	0 –0.160				
63		32		1.60	2.00		
70		36					
80		40					
90	0 –0.054	45		2.50	3.00		
100		50					

[a] See *Preferred Lengths and Tolerances* starting on page 2539 for preferred maximum length of key.

All dimensions in this standard are in millimeters (mm).

Figures for Table 2 and Table 4



Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Keyway Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys *ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn)*

Key size $b \times h$ (mm)	Keyway															
	Width.										Depth				Radius, r	
	Basic Size	Tolerance[a] and Resulting Fits[b]										Shaft, t_1		Hub, t_2		
		Normal Fit				Close Fit		Free Fit								
		Shaft		Hub		Shaft and Hub		Shaft		Hub						
		N9	Fit	JS9	Fit	P9	Fit	H9	Fit	D10	Fit	Basic Size	Tolerance	Basic Size	Tolerance	Min.	Max.
2 × 2	2	–0.004	0.010L	+0.0125	0.0265L	–0.006	0.008L	+0.025	0.039L	+0.060	0.074L	1.2		1			
3 × 3	3	–0.029	0.029T	–0.0125	0.0125T	–0.031	0.031T	0	0T	+0.020	0.020L	1.8		1.4		0.08	0.16
4 × 4	4											2.5		1.8			
5 × 3	5											1.8	+0.1 0	1.4	+0.1 0		
5 × 5	6	0 –0.030	0.018L 0.030T	+0.0150 –0.0150	0.033L 0.015T	–0.012 –0.042	0.006L 0.042T	+0.030 0	0.048L 0T	+0.078 +0.030	0.096L 0.030L	3		2.8			
6 × 4	6											2.5		1.8		0.16	0.25
6 × 6	6											3.5		2.8			
8 × 5	8											3		2.8			
8 × 7	8											4	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.1 0		
10 × 6	10	0 –0.036	0.022L 0.036T	+0.0180 –0.0180	0.040L 0.018T	–0.015 –0.051	0.007L 0.051T	+0.036 0	0.058L 0T	+0.098 +0.040	0.120L 0.040L	3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0		
10 × 8	10											5	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2 0		
12 × 6	12											3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0		
12 × 8	12											5	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2	0.25	0.4
14 × 6	14	0 –0.043	0.027L 0.043T	+0.0215 –0.0215	0.0485L 0.0215T	–0.018 –0.061	0.009L 0.061T	+0.043 0	0.070L 0T	+0.120 +0.050	0.147L 0.050L	3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0		
14 × 9	14											5.5		3.8			
16 × 7	16											4	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2 0		
16 × 10	16											6		4.3			
18 × 7	18											4		3.3			
18 × 11	18											7		4.4			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Keyway Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys** *ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn)*

Key size $b \times h$ (mm)	Keyway															
	Width.										Depth				Radius, r	
	Basic Size	Tolerance[a] and Resulting Fits[b]										Shaft, t_1		Hub, t_2		
		Normal Fit				Close Fit		Free Fit								
		Shaft		Hub		Shaft and Hub		Shaft		Hub						
		N9	Fit	JS9	Fit	P9	Fit	H9	Fit	D10	Fit	Basic Size	Toler-ance	Basic Size	Toler-ance	Min.	Max.
20 × 8	20											5		3.3			
20 × 12	20											7.5		4.9			
22 × 9	22											5.5		3.8			
22 × 14	22	0	0.033L	+0.026	0.059L	–0.022	0.011L	+0.052	0.085L	+0.149	0.182L	9		5.4			
25 × 9	25	–0.052	0.052T	–0.026	0.026T	–0.074	0.074T	0	0T	+0.065	0.065L	5.5		3.8			
25 × 14	25											9	+0.2	5.4	+0.2	0.4	0.06
28 × 10	28											6	0	4.3	0		
28 × 16	28											10		6.4			
32 × 11	32											7[c]		4.4			
32 × 18	32											11[c]		7.4			
36 × 12	36											7.5[c]		4.9			
36 × 20	36	0	0.039L	+0.031	0.070L	–0.026	0.013L	+0.062	0.101L	+0.180	0.219L	12		8.4			
40 × 22	40	–0.062	0.062T	–0.031	0.031T	–0.088	0.088T	0	0T	+0.080	0.080L	13		9.4		0.7	1.0
45 × 25	45											15		10.4			
50 × 28	50											17		11.4			
56 × 32	56											20		12.4			
63 × 32	63	0	0.046L	+0.037	0.083L	–0.032	0.014L	+0.074	0.120L	+0.220	0.266L	20	+0.3	12.4	+0.3	1.2	1.6
70 × 36	70	–0.074	0.074T	–0.037	0.037T	–0.106	0.106T	0	0T	+0.100	0.100L	22	0	14.4	0		
80 × 40	80											25		15.4			
90 × 45	90	0	0.054L	+0.0435	0.0975L	–0.037	0.017L	+0.087	0.139L	+0 260	0.314L	28		17.4		2.0	2.5
100 × 50	100	–0.087	0.87T	–0.0435	0.0435T	–0.1254	0.1254T	0	0T	+0.120	0.120L	31		19.5			

[a] Some of the tolerances are expressed as plus-plus. See *Tolerances* on page 2539 for more information.

[b] Resulting fits: L indicates a clearance between the key and keyway; T indicates an interference between the key and keyway.

[c] This value differs from that given in ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn), which is believed to be inaccurate.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metric Square And Rectangular Keys and Keyways: Width Tolerances and Deviations Greater than Basic Size

This ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M standard covers requirements for square and rectangular parallel keys and keyways intended for both alignment of shafts and hubs, and transmitting torque between shafts and hubs. Keys covered by this standard have a relatively loose width tolerance. All width tolerances are positive. Keys with minus width tolerances and a smaller tolerance range are covered by ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn). Dimensions and tolerances for square and rectangular keys are shown in Table 3. Recommended dimensions and tolerances for keyways are shown in Table 4. All dimensions in this standard are in millimeters.

Table 3. Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys *ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M-2003*

Width Tolerances and Deviations Greater than Basic Size

Width, *b*		Thickness, *h*		Chamfer or Radius, *s*		Range of Lengths	
Basic Size	Tolerance	Basic Size	Tolerance	Min.	Max.	From	To[a]
Square Keys							
2	+0.040 −0.000	2	+0.040 −0.000	0.16	0.25	6	20
3		3					36
4	+0.045 −0.000	4	+0.045 −0.000			8	45
5		5		0.25	0.40	10	56
6		6				14	70
Rectangular Keys							
5	+0.045 −0.000	3	+0.160 −0.000	0.25	0.40	10	56
6		4	+0.175 −0.000			14	70
8	+0.050 −0.000	5				18	90
		7	+0.190 −0.000				
10		6	+0.175 −0.000	0.40	0.60	22	110
		8	+0.19 −0.000				
12	+0.075 −0.000	6	+0.175 −0.000	0.40	0.60	28	140
		8	+0.190 −0.000				
14		6	+0.175 −0.000			36	160
		9	+0.190 −0.000				
16		7				45	180
		10					
18		7				50	200
		11	+0.210 −0.000				
20	+0.050 −0.033	8	+0.190 −0.000	0.60	0.80	56	
		12	+0.210 −0.000			63	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. *(Continued)* **Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys** *ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M-2003*

Width Tolerances and Deviations Greater than Basic Size

Width, *b*		Thickness, *h*		Chamfer or Radius, *s*		Range of Lengths	
Basic Size	Tolerance	Basic Size	Tolerance	Min.	Max.	From	To[a]
22	+0.050 –0.033	6	+0.175 –0.000	0.60	0.80	70	280
		14	+0.210 –0.000			80	320
25		9	+0.210 –0.000			90	360
		14	+0.190 –0.000			100	400
28		10	+0.210 –0.000				
		16	+0.280 –0.000				
32	+0.090 –0.000	11					
		18					
36		12		1.00	1.20		
		20					
40		22					
45		25					
50		28					
56	+0.125 –0.000	32	+0.310 –0.000	1.60	2.00		
63		32					
70		36					
80		40		2.50	3.00		
90	+0.135 –0.000	45					
100		50					

[a] See *Preferred Lengths and Tolerances* on page 2545 for preferred maximum length of key except basic width of 2 mm.

Comparison with ISO R773-1969 and 2491-1974.—This standard has greater tolerances than ISO Standards R773-1969 and 2491-1974. Product manufactured to this standard is not interchangeable dimensionally with product manufactured to the ISO standards nor is product manufactured to the ISO standards dimensionally interchangeable with product manufactured to this standard. ISO standards do not include hardened keys.

Preferred Lengths and Tolerances.—Preferred lengths and tolerances of square and rectangular keys are shown below. Tolerances are JS 16 from ANSI/ASME B4.2. To minimize problems due to lack of straightness, key length should be less than 10 times the key width.

Length	±Tolerances	Length	±Tolerances
6	0.375	90, 100, 110	1.10
8, 10	0.45	125, 140, 160, 180	1.25
12, 14, 16, 18	0.55	200, 220, 250	1.45
20, 22, 25, 28	0.65	280	1.60
32, 36, 45, 50	0.80	320, 360, 400	1.80
56, 63, 70, 80	0.95		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Keyway Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys *ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M-2003 (R2008)*
Width Tolerances and Deviations Greater than Basic Size

	Keyway Width											Keyway Depth				
		Tolerance and Resulting Fit[a]										Shaft, t_1		Hub, t_2		Radius, r
		Normal Fit				Close Fit		Free Fit								
		Shaft		Hub		Shaft and Hub		Shaft		Hub						
Key Size, $b \times h$	Nominal	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Nominal	Tolerance	Nominal	Tolerance	Max.
2×2	2	+0.040	0.040L	+0.050	0.050L	+0.034	0.034L	+0.066	0.066L	+0.086	0.086L	1.2		1		
3×3	3	+0.010	0.030T	+0.025	0.015T	–0.008	0.032T	+0.040	0T	+0.060	0.020L	1.8		1.4		0.16
4×4	4											2.5		1.8		
5×3	5											1.8	+0.1	1.4	+0.1	
5×5	5	+0.045	0.045L	+0.060	0.060L	+0.035	0.035L	+0.075	0.075L	+0.105	0.105L	3	0	2.8	0	
6×4	6	+0.015	0.030T	+0.015	0.015T	–0.005	0.040T	+0.045	0T	+0.075	0.030L	2.5		1.8		
6×6	6											3.5		2.8		0.25
8×5	8											3		2.8		
8×7	8	+0.055	0.055L	+0.075	0.075L	+0.040	0.040L	+0.090	0.090L	+0.130	0.130L	4	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2 0	
10×6	10	+0.015	0.035T	+0.035	0.015T	0.000	0.050T	+0.050	0T	+0.090	0.040L	3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0	
10×8	10											5	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2 0	
12×6	12											3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0	0.6
12×8	12	+0.080	0.080L	+0.095	0.095L	+0.055	0.055L	+0.135	0.135L	+0.185	0.185L	5	+0.2 0	3.3	+0.2 0	
14×6	14	–0.030	0.045T	+0.055	0.020T	–0.015	0.060T	+0.075	0T	+0.125	0.050L	3.5	+0.1 0	2.8	+0.1 0	
14×9	14											5.5	+0.2 0	3.8	+0.2 0	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. *(Continued)* **Keyway Dimensions and Tolerances for Metric Square and Rectangular Parallel Keys** *ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M-2003 (2008)*

Width Tolerances and Deviations Greater than Basic Size

Key Size, $b \times h$	Keyway Width												Keyway Depth				Radius, r
	Nominal	Tolerance and Resulting Fit[a]											Shaft, t_1		Hub, t_2		
		Normal Fit				Close Fit		Free Fit									
		Shaft		Hub		Shaft and Hub		Shaft		Hub							
	Nominal	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit	Tolerance	Fit		Nominal	Tolerance	Nominal	Tolerance	Max.
16 × 7	16												4		3.3		
16 × 10	16	+0.080	0.080L	+0.095	0.095L	+0.055	0.055L	+0.135	0.135L	+0.185	0.185L		6		4.3		
18 × 7	18	−0.030	0.045T	+0.055	0.020T	−0.015	0.060T	+0.075	0T	+0.125	0.050L		4		3.3		
18 × 11	18												7		4.4		
20 × 8	20												5		3.3		
20 × 12	10												7.5		4.9		
22 × 9	10												5.5		3.8		
22 × 14	22	+0.085	0.085L	+0.110	0.110L	+0.050	0.050L	+0.135	0.150L	+0.200	0.200L		9		5.4		0.6
25 × 9	25	−0.035	0.050T	+0.060	0 025T	−0.010	0.075T	+0.085	0T	+0.110	0.065L		5.5		3.8		
25 × 14	25												9		5.4		
28 × 10	28												6	+0.2 0	4.3	+0.2 0	
28 × 16	28												10		6.4		
32 × 11	32												7[b]		4.4		
32 × 18	32												11[b]		7.4		
36 × 12	36												7.5[b]		4.9		
56 × 32	56	+0.110	0.110L	+0.170	0.170L	+0.090	0.090L	+0.200	0.225L	+0.300	0.300L		20		12.4		1.6
63 × 32	63	−0.050	0.075T	+0.090	0.035T	−0.020	0.105T	+0.125	0T	+0.225	0.100L						
70 × 36	70												22		14.4		
80 × 40	80												25		15.4		
90 × 45	90	+0.130	0.130L	+0.180	0.180L	+0.095	0.095L	+0.225	0.225L	+0.340	0.340L		28		17.4		2.5
100 × 50	100	−0.050	0.085T	+0.090	0.045T	−0.015	0.120T	+0.135	0T	+0.255	0.120L		31		19.5		

[a] In columns labeled "Fit," L indicates the maximum clearance between the key and keyway; the T indicates the maximum interference between the key and keyway.

[b] This value differs from that given in *ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M*, which is believed to be inaccurate.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tolerances.—Many of the tolerances shown in Table 3 and Table 4 are from ANSI/ASME B4.2 (ISO 286-1 and ISO 286-2). As a result, in addition to plus-minus tolerances which are common in the United States, some are expressed as plus-plus deviations from the basic size.

Designation.—Keys conforming to this standard shall be designed by the following data, preferably in the sequence shown: a) ASME document number; b) product name; c) nominal size, width (b) × height (h) × length; d) style; and e) hardness (if other than non-hardened).

Optionally, a part identification number (PIN) per ANSI/ASME B18.24 may be used.

Material Requirements.—Same as for ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn). See page 2539.

Metric Keyway Sizes According to Shaft Diameter
Based on BS 4235:Part 1:1972 (1986)

Nominal Shaft Diameter, d		Key Size, $b \times h$	Nominal Keyway Width, b	Nominal Shaft Diameter, d		Key Size, $b \times h$	Nominal Keyway Width, b
Over	Up to and Incl.			Over	Up to and Incl.		
Keyways for Square Parallel Keys				*(Cont'd)* Keyways for Rectangular Parallel Keys			
6	8	2 × 2	2	85	95	25 × 14	25
8	10	3 × 3	3	95	110	28 × 16	28
10	12	4 × 4	4	110	130	32 × 18	32
12	17	5 × 5	5	130	150	36 × 20	36
17	22	6 × 6	6	150	170	40 × 22	40
Keyways for Rectangular Parallel Keys				170	200	45 × 25	45
22	30	8 × 7	8	200	230	50 × 28	50
30	38	10 × 8	10	230	260	56 × 32	56
38	44	12 × 8	12	260	290	63 × 32	63
44	50	14 × 9	14	290	330	70 × 36	70
50	58	16 × 10	16	330	380	80 × 40	80
58	65	18 × 11	18	380	440	90 × 45	90
65	75	20 × 12	20	440	500	100 × 50	100
75	85	22 × 14	22	…	…	…	…

Note: This table is NOT part of ANSI/ASME B18.25.1M-1996 (Withdrawn) or ANSI/ASME B18.25.3M-2003, and is included for reference only. The selection of the proper size and type of key must rest with the design authority.

Metric Woodruff Keys and Keyways

This ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M standard covers requirements for metric Woodruff keys and keyways intended for both alignment of shafts and hubs, and transmitting torque between shafts and hubs. All dimensions in this standard are in millimeters (mm). Dimensions and tolerances for Woodruff keys are shown in Table 5. Recommended dimensions and tolerances for keyways are shown in Table 6. For inch series Woodruff keys and keyseats, see *ANSI/ASME Standard Woodruff Keys and Keyseats* starting on page 2556.

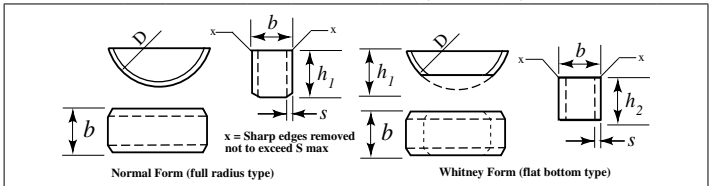
Comparison with ISO 3912-1977.—This standard is based on ISO 3912-1977, *Woodruff Keys and Keyways*. However, to improve manufacturability, tolerances are decreased for the keyway width. The resulting fit is approximately the same. Keys manufactured to this standard are functionally interchangeable with keys manufactured to the ISO standard. Because of tighter width tolerances in this standard, products manufactured to the ISO standard may not meet the requirements of this standard.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M (Withdrawn) also differs from ISO 3912 in that it: a) does not restrict the corners of a key to be chamfered but allows either a chamfer or a radius on the key; b) specifies a key material hardness rather than a tensile property; and c) specifies h12 rather than h11 for the tolerance of the height of the keys.

Tolerances.—Many of the tolerances shown in Table 5 and Table 6 are from ANSI/ASME B4.2, Preferred Metric Limits and Fits (ISO 286-1 and ISO 286-2). As a result in addition to plus-minus tolerances which are common in the United States some are expressed as plus-plus deviations from the basic size.

Table 5. Dimensions for Metric Woodruff Keys
ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M-1996 (Withdrawn)



Key Size $b \times h \times D$	Width b	Width Tolerance	Height h_1	Height Tolerance h12	Height h_2 [a]	Height Tolerance h12	Diameter, D	Diameter Tolerance h12	Chamfer or Radius, s Min.	Chamfer or Radius, s Max.
1×1.4×4	1		1.4		1.1		4			
1.5×2.6×7	1.5		2.6	0 −0.10	2.1	0 −0.10	7	0 −0.120		
2×2.6×7	2		2.6		2.1		7			
2×3.7×10	2		3.7		3.0		10		0.16	0.25
2.5×3.7×10	2.5		3.7	0 −0.12	3.0		10	0 −0.150		
3×5×13	3		5.0		4.0		13			
3×6.5×16	3		6.5		5.2		16			
4×6.5×16	4		6.5		5.2		16	0 −0.180		
4×7.5×19	4	0 −0.025	7.5		6.0	0 −0.12	19			
5×6.5×16	5		6.5	0 −0.15	5.2		16	0 −0.210		
5×7.5×19	5		7.5		6.0		19	0 −0.180		
5×9×22	5		9.0		7.2		22		0.25	0.40
6×9×22	6		9.0		7.2	0 −0.15	22			
6×10×25	6		10.0		8.0		25	0 −0.210		
8×11×28	8		11.0	0 −0.18	8.8		28			
10×13×32	10		13.0		10.4	0 −0.18	32	0 −0.250	0.40	0.60

[a] Height h_2 is based on 0.80 times height h_1.

Designation.—Keys conforming to this standard shall be designated by the following data, preferably in the sequence as follows: a) ASME document number; b) product name; c) nominal size, width (b) × height (h) × length; d) form; and e) hardness (if other than non-hardened).

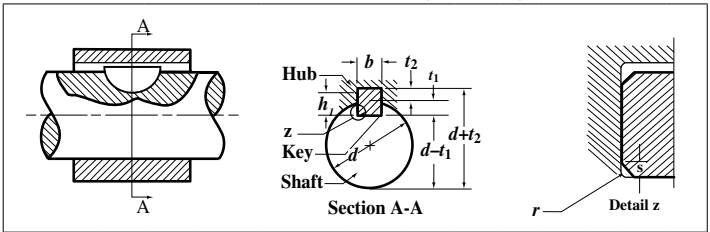
Example: ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M (Withdrawn), Woodruff Key 6 × 10 × 25 normal hardened; ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M (Withdrawn), Woodruff Key 3×5×13 Whitney.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Material Requirements.— Same as for ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M-1996 (Withdrawn). See page 2539.

Advantages of Woodruff Keys.— In the Woodruff key system, half-circular disks of steel are used as keys, the half-circular side of the key being inserted into the keyseat. Part of the key projects and enters into a keyway in the part to be keyed to the shaft in the ordinary way. The advantage of this type of key is that the keyway is easily milled by simply sinking a milling cutter, of the same diameter as the diameter of the stock from which the keys are made, into the shaft. The keys are also very cheaply made, as they are simply cut off from round bar stock and milled apart in the center. Examples of Woodruff keyseat cutters are shown on page 895.

Table 6. Keyway Dimensions for Metric Woodruff Keys
ANSI/ASME B18.25.2M-1996 (Withdrawn)



Key Size[a] $b \times h_1 \times D$	Width: Basic Size	Width: Tolerance[b] Normal Fit: Shaft N9	Width: Tolerance[b] Normal Fit: Hub S9	Width: Tolerance[b] Close Fit: Shaft & Hub P9	Width: Tolerance[b] Free Fit: Shaft H9	Width: Tolerance[b] Free Fit: Hub D10	Depth: Shaft, t_1 Basic Size	Depth: Shaft, t_1 Tolerance	Depth: Hub, t_2 Basic Size	Depth: Hub, t_2 Tolerance	Radius, R Max.	Radius, R Min.
1×1.4×4	1						1.0		0.6			
1.5×2.6×7	1.5						2.0		0.8			
2×2.6×7	2						1.8	+0.1 0	1.0			
2×3.7×10	2	–0.004 –0.029	+0.0125 –0.0125	–0.006 –0.031	+0.025 0	+0.60 +0.20	2.9		1.0		0.16	0.08
2.5×3.7×10	2.5						2.7		1.2			
3×5×13	3						3.8		1.4			
3×6.5×16	3						5.3		1.4	+0.1 0		
4×6.5×16	4						5.0	+0.2 0	1.8			
4×7.5×19	4						6.0		1.8			
5×6.5×16	5						4.5		2.3			
5×7.5×19	5	–0.030 0	+0.015 –0.015	–0.012 –0.042	+0.030 0	+0.078 +0.030	5.5		2.3		0.25	0.16
5×9×22	5						7.0		2.3			
6×9×22	6						6.5		2.8			
6×10×25							7.5	+0.3 0	2.8			
8×11×28	8	0 –0.036	+0.018 –0.018	–0.015 –0.051	+0.036 0	+0.098 +0.040	8.0		3.3	+0.2 0	0.4	0.25
10×13×32	10						10.0		3.3			

[a] The nominal key diameter is the minimum keyway diameter.
[b] Some of the tolerances are expressed as plus-plus or minus-minus. See *Tolerances* on page 2549 for more informations.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ANSI Standard Inch Series Keys and Keyseats.—American National Standard, B17.1 Keys and Keyseats, based on current industry practice, was approved in 1967, and reaffirmed in 2013. This standard establishes a uniform relationship between shaft sizes and key sizes for parallel and taper keys as shown in Table 1. Other data in this standard are given in Table 2 and Table 3 through Table 7. The sizes and tolerances shown are for single key applications only.

The following definitions are given in the standard. *Note:* Inch dimensions converted to metric dimensions (enclosed in parentheses) are not included in the standard.

Key: A demountable machinery part which, when assembled into keyseats, provides a positive means for transmitting torque between the shaft and hub.

Keyseat: An axially located rectangular groove in a shaft or hub.

This standard recognizes that there are two classes of stock for parallel keys used by industry. One is a close, plus toleranced key stock and the other is a broad, negative toleranced bar stock. Based on the use of two types of stock, two classes of fit are shown:

Class 1: A clearance or metal-to-metal side fit obtained by using bar stock keys and keyseat tolerances as given in Table 4. This is a relatively free fit and applies only to parallel keys.

Class 2: A side fit, with possible interference or clearance, obtained by using key stock and keyseat tolerances as given in Table 4. This is a relatively tight fit.

Class 3: This is an interference side fit and is not tabulated in Table 4 since the degree of interference has not been standardized. However, it is suggested that the top and bottom fit range given under Class 2 in Table 4, for parallel keys be used.

Table 1. Key Size Versus Shaft Diameter *ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)*

Nominal Shaft Diameter		Nominal Key Size			Normal Keyseat Depth	
			Height, *H*		*H*/2	
Over	To (Incl.)	Width, *W*	Square	Rectangular	Square	Rectangular
5/16	7/16	3/32	3/32	…	3/64	…
7/16	9/16	1/8	1/8	3/32	1/16	3/64
9/16	7/8	3/16	3/16	1/8	3/32	1/16
7/8	1 1/4	1/4	1/4	3/16	1/8	3/32
1 1/4	1 3/8	5/16	5/16	1/4	5/32	1/8
1 3/8	1 3/4	3/8	3/8	1/4	3/16	1/8
1 3/4	2 1/4	1/2	1/2	3/8	1/4	3/16
2 1/4	2 3/4	5/8	5/8	7/16	5/16	7/32
2 3/4	3 1/4	3/4	3/4	1/2	3/8	1/4
3 1/4	3 3/4	7/8	7/8	5/8	7/16	5/16
3 3/4	4 1/2	1	1	3/4	1/2	3/8
4 1/2	5 1/2	1 1/4	1 1/4	7/8	5/8	7/16
5 1/2	6 1/2	1 1/2	1 1/2	1	3/4	1/2
Square Keys preferred for shaft diameters above this line; rectangular keys, below						
6 1/2	7 1/2	1 3/4	1 3/4	1 1/2[a]	7/8	3/4
7 1/2	9	2	2	1 1/2	1	3/4
9	11	2 1/2	2 1/2	1 3/4	1 1/4	7/8

[a] Some key standards show 1¼ inches; preferred height is 1½ inches.

All dimensions are given in inches. For larger shaft sizes, see *ANSI/ASME Standard Woodruff Keys and Keyseats*.

Key Size versus Shaft Diameter: Shaft diameters are listed in Table 1 for identification of various key sizes and are not intended to establish shaft dimensions, tolerances or selections. For a stepped shaft, the size of a key is determined by the diameter of the shaft at the point of location of the key. Up through $6\frac{1}{2}$-inch (165.1 mm) diameter shafts square keys are preferred; rectangular keys are preferred for larger shafts.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If special considerations dictate the use of a keyseat in the hub shallower than the preferred nominal depth shown, it is recommended that the tabulated preferred nominal standard keyseat always be used in the shaft.

Keyseat Alignment Tolerances: A tolerance of 0.010 inch (0.254 mm), max is provided for offset (due to parallel displacement of keyseat centerline from centerline of shaft or bore) of keyseats in shaft and bore. The following tolerances for maximum lead (due to angular displacement of keyseat centerline from centerline of shaft or bore and measured at right angles to the shaft or bore centerline) of keyseats in shaft and bore are specified: 0.002 inch (0.0508 mm) for keyseat length up to and including 4 inches (101.6 mm); 0.0005 inch per inch of length (0.0127 mm per mm) for keyseat lengths above 4 inches to and including 10 inches (254 mm); and 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) for keyseat lengths above 10 inches. For the effect of keyways on shaft strength, see *Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength* on page 301.

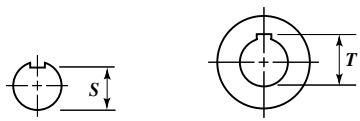


Table 2. Depth Control Values *S* and *T* for Shaft and Hub
ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)

Nominal Shaft Diameter	Shafts, Parallel and Taper		Hubs, Parallel		Hubs, Taper	
	Square	Rectangular	Square	Rectangular	Square	Rectangular
	S	*S*	*T*	*T*	*T*	*T*
1/2	0.430	0.445	0.560	0.544	0.535	0.519
9/16	0.493	0.509	0.623	0.607	0.598	0.582
5/8	0.517	0.548	0.709	0.678	0.684	0.653
11/16	0.581	0.612	0.773	0.742	0.748	0.717
3/4	0.644	0.676	0.837	0.806	0.812	0.781
13/16	0.708	0.739	0.900	0.869	0.875	0.844
7/8	0.771	0.802	0.964	0.932	0.939	0.907
15/16	0.796	0.827	1.051	1.019	1.026	0.994
1	0.859	0.890	1.114	1.083	1.089	1.058
1 1/16	0.923	0.954	1.178	1.146	1.153	1.121
1 1/8	0.986	1.017	1.241	1.210	1.216	1.185
1 3/16	1.049	1.080	1.304	1.273	1.279	1.248
1 1/4	1.112	1.144	1.367	1.336	1.342	1.311
1 5/16	1.137	1.169	1.455	1.424	1.430	1.399
1 3/8	1.201	1.232	1.518	1.487	1.493	1.462
1 7/16	1.225	1.288	1.605	1.543	1.580	1.518
1 1/2	1.289	1.351	1.669	1.606	1.644	1.581
1 9/16	1.352	1.415	1.732	1.670	1.707	1.645
1 5/8	1.416	1.478	1.796	1.733	1.771	1.708
1 11/16	1.479	1.541	1.859	1.796	1.834	1.771
1 3/4	1.542	1.605	1.922	1.860	1.897	1.835
1 13/16	1.527	1.590	2.032	1.970	2.007	1.945
1 7/8	1.591	1.654	2.096	2.034	2.071	2.009
1 15/16	1.655	1.717	2.160	2.097	2.135	2.072
2	1.718	1.781	2.223	2.161	2.198	2.136
2 1/16	1.782	1.844	2.287	2.224	2.262	2.199
2 1/8	1.845	1.908	2.350	2.288	2.325	2.263
2 3/16	1.909	1.971	2.414	2.351	2.389	2.326
2 1/4	1.972	2.034	2.477	2.414	2.452	2.389
2 5/16	1.957	2.051	2.587	2.493	2.562	2.468
2 3/8	2.021	2.114	2.651	2.557	2.626	2.532
2 7/16	2.084	2.178	2.714	2.621	2.689	2.596
2 1/2	2.148	2.242	2.778	2.684	2.753	2.659

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. *(Continued)* **Depth Control Values *S* and *T* for Shaft and Hub**
ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)

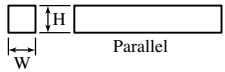
Nominal Shaft Diameter	Shafts, Parallel and Taper		Hubs, Parallel		Hubs, Taper	
	Square	Rectangular	Square	Rectangular	Square	Rectangular
	S	*S*	*T*	*T*	*T*	*T*
2 9/16	2.211	2.305	2.841	2.748	2.816	2.723
2 5/8	2.275	2.369	2.905	2.811	2.880	2.786
2 11/16	2.338	2.432	2.968	2.874	2.943	2.849
2 3/4	2.402	2.495	3.032	2.938	3.007	2.913
2 13/16	2.387	2.512	3.142	3.017	3.117	2.992
2 7/8	2.450	2.575	3.205	3.080	3.180	3.055
2 15/16	2.514	2.639	3.269	3.144	3.244	3.119
3	2.577	2.702	3.332	3.207	3.307	3.182
3 1/16	2.641	2.766	3.396	3.271	3.371	3.246
3 1/8	2.704	2.829	3.459	3.334	3.434	3.309
3 3/16	2.768	2.893	3.523	3.398	3.498	3.373
3 1/4	2.831	2.956	3.586	3.461	3.561	3.436
3 5/16	2.816	2.941	3.696	3.571	3.671	3.546
3 3/8	2.880	3.005	3.760	3.635	3.735	3.610
3 7/16	2.943	3.068	3.823	3.698	3.798	3.673
3 1/2	3.007	3.132	3.887	3.762	3.862	3.737
3 9/16	3.070	3.195	3.950	3.825	3.925	3.800
3 5/8	3.134	3.259	4.014	3.889	3.989	3.864
3 11/16	3.197	3.322	4.077	3.952	4.052	3.927
3 3/4	3.261	3.386	4.141	4.016	4.116	3.991
3 13/16	3.246	3.371	4.251	4.126	4.226	4.101
3 7/8	3.309	3.434	4.314	4.189	4.289	4.164
3 15/16	3.373	3.498	4.378	4.253	4.353	4.228
4	3.436	3.561	4.441	4.316	4.416	4.291
4 1/16	3.627	3.752	4.632	4.507	4.607	4.482
4 1/4	3.690	3.815	4.695	4.570	4.670	4.545
4 3/8	3.817	3.942	4.822	4.697	4.797	4.672
4 7/16	3.880	4.005	4.885	4.760	4.860	4.735
4 1/2	3.944	4.069	4.949	4.824	4.924	4.799
4 3/4	4.041	4.229	5.296	5.109	5.271	5.084
4 7/8	4.169	4.356	5.424	5.236	5.399	5.211
4 15/16	4.232	4.422	5.487	5.300	5.462	5.275
5	4.296	4.483	5.551	5.363	5.526	5.338
5 1/16	4.486	4.674	5.741	5.554	5.716	5.529
5 1/4	4.550	4.737	5.805	5.617	5.780	5.592
5 1/16	4.740	4.927	5.995	5.807	5.970	5.782
5 1/2	4.803	4.991	6.058	5.871	6.033	5.846
5 3/4	4.900	5.150	6.405	6.155	6.380	6.130
5 15/16	5.091	5.341	6.596	6.346	6.571	6.321
6	5.155	5.405	6.660	6.410	6.635	6.385
6 1/4	5.409	5.659	6.914	6.664	6.889	6.639
6 1/2	5.662	5.912	7.167	6.917	7.142	6.892
6 3/4	5.760	[a]5.885	7.515	[a]7.390	7.490	[a]7.365
7	6.014	[a]6.139	7.769	[a]7.644	7.744	[a]7.619
7 1/4	6.268	[a]6.393	8.023	[a]7.898	7.998	[a]7.873
7 1/2	6.521	[a]6.646	8.276	[a]8.151	8.251	[a]8.126
7 3/4	6.619	6.869	8.624	8.374	8.599	8.349
8	6.873	7.123	8.878	8.628	8.853	8.603
9	7.887	8.137	9.892	9.642	9.867	9.617
10	8.591	8.966	11.096	10.721	11.071	10.696
11	9.606	9.981	12.111	11.736	12.086	11.711
12	10.309	10.809	13.314	12.814	13.289	12.789
13	11.325	11.825	14.330	13.830	14.305	13.805
14	12.028	12.528	15.533	15.033	15.508	15.008
15	13.043	13.543	16.548	16.048	16.523	16.023

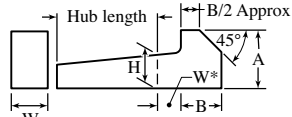
[a] 1¾ × 1½ inch key.

All dimensions are given in inches. See Table 4 for tolerances.

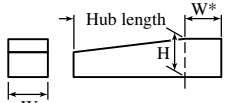
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

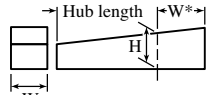
Table 3. ANSI Standard Plain and Gib Head Keys *ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)*





Plain and gib head taper keys have a 1/8″ taper in 12″





Key			Nominal Key Size Width *W* Over	Nominal Key Size Width *W* To (Incl.)	Tolerance Width, *W*		Tolerance Height, *H*	
Parallel	Square	Keystock	…	1¼	+0.001	–0.000	+0.001	–0.000
			1¼	3	+0.002	–0.000	+0.002	–0.000
			3	3½	+0.003	–0.000	+0.003	–0.000
		Bar Stock	…	¾	+0.000	–0.002	+0.000	–0.002
			¾	1½	+0.000	–0.003	+0.000	–0.003
			1½	2½	+0.000	–0.004	+0.000	–0.004
			2½	3½	+0.000	–0.006	+0.000	–0.006
	Rectangular	Keystock	…	1¼	+0.001	–0.000	+0.005	–0.005
			1¼	3	+0.002	–0.000	+0.005	–0.005
			3	7	+0.003	–0.000	+0.005	–0.005
		Bar Stock	…	¾	+0.000	–0.003	+0.000	–0.003
			¾	1½	+0.000	–0.004	+0.000	–0.004
			1½	3	+0.000	–0.005	+0.000	–0.005
			3	4	+0.000	–0.006	+0.000	–0.006
			4	6	+0.000	–0.008	+0.000	–0.008
			6	7	+0.000	–0.013	+0.000	–0.013
Taper	Plain or Gib Head Square or Rectangular		…	1¼	+0.001	–0.000	+0.005	–0.000
			1¼	3	+0.002	–0.000	+0.005	–0.000
			3	7	+0.003	–0.000	+0.005	–0.000

Gib Head Nominal Dimensions

Nominal Key Size Width, *W*	Square *H*	Square *A*	Square *B*	Rectangular *H*	Rectangular *A*	Rectangular *B*	Nominal Key Size Width, *W*	Square *H*	Square *A*	Square *B*	Rectangular *H*	Rectangular *A*	Rectangular *B*
⅛	⅛	¼	¼	3/32	3/16	⅛	1	1	1⅝	1⅛	¾	1¼	⅞
3/16	3/16	5/16	5/16	⅛	¼	¼	1¼	1¼	2	1 7/16	⅞	1⅜	1
¼	¼	7/16	⅜	3/16	5/16	5/16	1½	1½	2⅜	1¾	1	1⅝	1⅛
5/16	5/16	½	7/16	¼	7/16	⅜	1¾	1¾	2¾	2	1½	2⅜	1¾
⅜	⅜	⅝	½	¼	7/16	⅜	2	2	3½	2¼	1½	2⅜	1¾
½	½	⅞	⅝	⅜	⅝	½	2½	2½	4	3	1¾	2¾	2
⅝	⅝	1	¾	7/16	¾	9/16	3	3	5	3½	2	3½	2¼
¾	¾	1¼	⅞	½	⅞	⅝	3½	3½	6	4	2½	4	3
⅞	⅞	1⅜	1	⅝	1	¾	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are given in inches.

*For locating position of dimension *H*. Tolerance does not apply.

For larger sizes the following relationships are suggested as guides for establishing *A* and *B*: $A = 1.8H$ and $B = 1.2H$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. ASME Standard Fits for Parallel and Taper Keys
ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)

Type of Key	Key Width		Side Fit			Top and Bottom Fit			
			Width Tolerance			Depth Tolerance			
	Over	To (Incl.)	Key	Key-Seat	Fit Range[a]	Key	Shaft Key-Seat	Hub Key-Seat	Fit Range[a]
Class 1 Fit for Parallel Keys									
Square	…	½	+0.000	+0.002	0.004 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.032 CL
			–0.002	–0.000	0.000	–0.002	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	½	¾	+0.000	+0.003	0.005 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.032 CL
			–0.002	–0.000	0.000	–0.002	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	¾	1	+0.000	+0.003	0.006 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.033 CL
			–0.003	–0.000	0.000	–0.003	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	1	1½	+0.000	+0.004	0.007 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.033 CL
			–0.003	–0.000	0.000	–0.003	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	1½	2½	+0.000	+0.004	0.008 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.034 CL
			–0.004	–0.000	0.000	–0.004	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	2½	3½	+0.000	+0.004	0.010 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.036 CL
			–0.006	–0.000	0.000	–0.006	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
Rectangular	…	½	+0.000	+0.002	0.005 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.033 CL
			–0.003	–0.000	0.000	–0.003	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	½	¾	+0.000	+0.003	0.006 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.033 CL
			–0.003	–0.000	0.000	–0.003	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	¾	1	+0.000	+0.003	0.007 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.034 CL
			–0.004	–0.000	0.000	–0.004	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	1	1½	+0.000	+0.004	0.008 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.034 CL
			–0.004	–0.000	0.000	–0.004	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	1½	3	+0.000	+0.004	0.009 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.035 CL
			–0.005	–0.000	0.000	–0.005	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	3	4	+0.000	+0.004	0.010 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.036 CL
			–0.006	–0.000	0.000	–0.006	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	4	6	+0.000	+0.004	0.012 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.038 CL
			–0.008	–0.000	0.000	–0.008	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
	6	7	+0.000	+0.004	0.017 CL	+0.000	+0.000	+0.010	0.043 CL
			–0.013	–0.000	0.000	–0.013	–0.015	–0.000	0.005 CL
Class 2 Fit for Parallel and Taper Keys									
Parallel Square	…	1¼	+0.001	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.001	+0.000	+0.010	0.030 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.001 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.004 CL
	1¼	3	+0.002	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.002	+0.000	+0.010	0.030 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.002 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.003 CL
	3	3½	+0.003	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.003	+0.000	+0.010	0.030 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.003 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.002 CL
Parallel Rectangular	…	1¼	+0.001	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.035 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.001 INT	–0.005	–0.015	–0.000	0.000 CL
	1¼	3	+0.002	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.035 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.002 INT	–0.005	–0.015	–0.000	0.000 CL
	3	7	+0.003	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.035 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.003 INT	–0.005	–0.015	–0.000	0.000 CL
Taper	…	1¼	+0.001	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.005 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.001 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.025 INT
	1¼	3	+0.002	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.005 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.002 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.025 INT
	3	[b]	+0.003	+0.002	0.002 CL	+0.005	+0.000	+0.010	0.005 CL
			–0.000	–0.000	0.003 INT	–0.000	–0.015	–0.000	0.025 INT

[a] Limits of variation. CL = Clearance; INT = Interference.
[b] To (Incl.) 3½-inch Square and 7-inch Rectangular key widths.
All dimensions are given in inches. See also text on page 2539.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Suggested Keyseat Fillet Radius and Key Chamfer
ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)

Keyseat Depth, *H*/2		Fillet Radius	45 deg. Chamfer	Keyseat Depth, *H*/2		Fillet Radius	45 deg. Chamfer
Over	To (Incl.)			Over	To (Incl.)		
1/8	1/4	1/32	3/64	7/8	1 1/4	3/16	7/32
1/4	1/2	1/16	5/64	1 1/4	1 3/4	1/4	9/32
1/2	7/8	1/8	5/32	1 3/4	2 1/2	3/8	13/32

All dimensions are given in inches.

Table 6. Standard Keyseat Tolerances for Electric Motor and Generator Shaft Extensions *ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)*

Keyseat Width		Width Tolerance	Depth Tolerance
Over	To (Incl.)		
…	1/4	+0.001 –0.001	+0.000 –0.015
1/4	3/4	+0.000 –0.002	+0.000 –0.015
3/4	1 1/4	+0.000 –0.003	+0.000 –0.015

All dimensions are given in inches.

Table 7. Set Screws for Use Over Keys *ANSI/ASME B17.1-1967 (R2013)*

Nom. Shaft Dia.		Nom. Key Width	Set Screw Dia.	Nom. Shaft Dia.		Nom. Key Width	Set Screw Dia.
Over	To (Incl.)			Over	To (Incl.)		
5/16	7/16	3/32	No. 10	2 1/4	2 3/4	5/8	1/2
7/16	9/16	1/8	No. 10	2 3/4	3 1/4	3/4	5/8
9/16	7/8	3/16	1/4	3 1/4	3 3/4	7/8	3/4
7/8	1 1/4	1/4	5/16	3 3/4	4 1/2	1	3/4
1 1/4	1 3/8	5/16	3/8	4 1/2	5 1/2	1 1/4	7/8
1 3/8	1 3/4	3/8	3/8	5 1/2	6 1/2	1 1/2	1
1 3/4	2 1/4	1/2	1/2	…	…	…	…

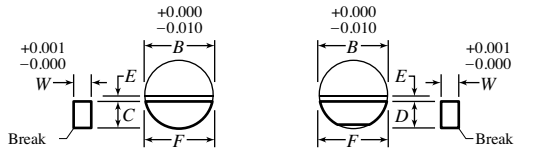
All dimensions are given in inches.

These set screw diameter selections are offered as a guide but their use should be dependent upon design considerations.

ANSI/ASME Standard Woodruff Keys and Keyseats.—American National Standard B17.2 was approved in 1967, and reaffirmed in 2013. Data from this standard are shown in Table 8, Table 9, and Table 10.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. ANSI Standard Woodruff Keys *ANSI/ASME B17.2-1967 (R2013)*



Full Radius Type **Flat Bottom Type**

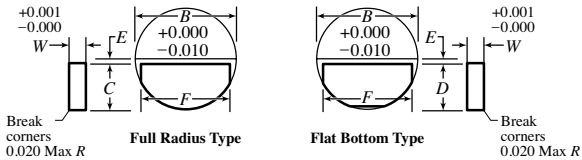
Key No.	Nominal Key Size $W \times B$	Actual Length F +0.000 −0.010	Height of Key				Distance Below Center E
			C		D		
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
202	1/16 × 1/4	0.248	0.109	0.104	0.109	0.104	1/64
202.5	1/16 × 5/16	0.311	0.140	0.135	0.140	0.135	1/64
302.5	3/32 × 5/16	0.311	0.140	0.135	0.140	0.135	1/64
203	1/16 × 3/8	0.374	0.172	0.167	0.172	0.167	1/64
303	3/32 × 3/8	0.374	0.172	0.167	0.172	0.167	1/64
403	1/8 × 3/8	0.374	0.172	0.167	0.172	0.167	1/64
204	1/16 × 1/2	0.491	0.203	0.198	0.194	0.188	3/64
304	3/32 × 1/2	0.491	0.203	0.198	0.194	0.188	3/64
404	1/8 × 1/2	0.491	0.203	0.198	0.194	0.188	3/64
305	3/32 × 5/8	0.612	0.250	0.245	0.240	0.234	1/16
405	1/8 × 5/8	0.612	0.250	0.245	0.240	0.234	1/16
505	5/32 × 5/8	0.612	0.250	0.245	0.240	0.234	1/16
605	3/16 × 5/8	0.612	0.250	0.245	0.240	0.234	1/16
406	1/8 × 3/4	0.740	0.313	0.308	0.303	0.297	1/16
506	5/32 × 3/4	0.740	0.313	0.308	0.303	0.297	1/16
606	3/16 × 3/4	0.740	0.313	0.308	0.303	0.297	1/16
806	1/4 × 3/4	0.740	0.313	0.308	0.303	0.297	1/16
507	5/32 × 7/8	0.866	0.375	0.370	0.365	0.359	1/16
607	3/16 × 7/8	0.866	0.375	0.370	0.365	0.359	1/16
707	7/32 × 7/8	0.866	0.375	0.370	0.365	0.359	1/16
807	1/4 × 7/8	0.866	0.375	0.370	0.365	0.359	1/16
608	3/16 × 1	0.992	0.438	0.433	0.428	0.422	1/16
708	7/32 × 1	0.992	0.438	0.433	0.428	0.422	1/16
808	1/4 × 1	0.992	0.438	0.433	0.428	0.422	1/16
1008	5/16 × 1	0.992	0.438	0.433	0.428	0.422	1/16
1208	3/8 × 1	0.992	0.438	0.433	0.428	0.422	1/16
609	3/16 × 1 1/8	1.114	0.484	0.479	0.475	0.469	5/64
709	7/32 × 1 1/8	1.114	0.484	0.479	0.475	0.469	5/64
809	1/4 × 1 1/8	1.114	0.484	0.479	0.475	0.469	5/64
1009	5/16 × 1 1/8	1.114	0.484	0.479	0.475	0.469	5/64
610	3/16 × 1 1/4	1.240	0.547	0.542	0.537	0.531	5/64
710	7/32 × 1 1/4	1.240	0.547	0.542	0.537	0.531	5/64
810	1/4 × 1 1/4	1.240	0.547	0.542	0.537	0.531	5/64
1010	5/16 × 1 1/4	1.240	0.547	0.542	0.537	0.531	5/64
1210	3/8 × 1 1/4	1.240	0.547	0.542	0.537	0.531	5/64
811	1/4 × 1 3/8	1.362	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	3/32
1011	5/16 × 1 3/8	1.362	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	3/32
1211	3/8 × 1 3/8	1.362	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	3/32
812	1/4 × 1 1/2	1.484	0.641	0.636	0.631	0.625	7/64
1012	5/16 × 1 1/2	1.484	0.641	0.636	0.631	0.625	7/64
1212	3/8 × 1 1/2	1.484	0.641	0.636	0.631	0.625	7/64

All dimensions are given in inches.

The key numbers indicate normal key dimensions. The last two digits give the nominal diameter B in eighths of an inch and the digits preceding the last two give the nominal width W in thirty-seconds of an inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. ANSI Standard Woodruff Keys *ANSI/ASME B17.2-1967 (R2013)*



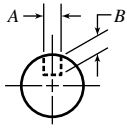
Key No.	Nominal Key Size $W \times B$	Actual Length F +0.000 −0.010	Height of Key				Distance Below Center E
			C		D		
			Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	
617-1	$\frac{3}{16} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.380	0.406	0.401	0.396	0.390	$\frac{21}{32}$
817-1	$\frac{1}{4} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.380	0.406	0.401	0.396	0.390	$\frac{21}{32}$
1017-1	$\frac{5}{16} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.380	0.406	0.401	0.396	0.390	$\frac{21}{32}$
1217-1	$\frac{3}{8} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.380	0.406	0.401	0.396	0.390	$\frac{21}{32}$
617	$\frac{3}{16} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.723	0.531	0.526	0.521	0.515	$\frac{17}{32}$
817	$\frac{1}{4} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.723	0.531	0.526	0.521	0.515	$\frac{17}{32}$
1017	$\frac{5}{16} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.723	0.531	0.526	0.521	0.515	$\frac{17}{32}$
1217	$\frac{3}{8} \times 2\frac{1}{8}$	1.723	0.531	0.526	0.521	0.515	$\frac{17}{32}$
822-1	$\frac{1}{4} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.000	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	$\frac{25}{32}$
1022-1	$\frac{5}{16} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.000	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	$\frac{25}{32}$
1222-1	$\frac{3}{8} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.000	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	$\frac{25}{32}$
1422-1	$\frac{7}{16} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.000	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	$\frac{25}{32}$
1622-1	$\frac{1}{2} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.000	0.594	0.589	0.584	0.578	$\frac{25}{32}$
822	$\frac{1}{4} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.317	0.750	0.745	0.740	0.734	$\frac{5}{8}$
1022	$\frac{5}{16} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.317	0.750	0.745	0.740	0.734	$\frac{5}{8}$
1222	$\frac{3}{8} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.317	0.750	0.745	0.740	0.734	$\frac{5}{8}$
1422	$\frac{7}{16} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.317	0.750	0.745	0.740	0.734	$\frac{5}{8}$
1622	$\frac{1}{2} \times 2\frac{3}{4}$	2.317	0.750	0.745	0.740	0.734	$\frac{5}{8}$
1228	$\frac{3}{8} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
1428	$\frac{7}{16} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
1628	$\frac{1}{2} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
1828	$\frac{9}{16} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
2028	$\frac{5}{8} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
2228	$\frac{11}{16} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$
2428	$\frac{3}{4} \times 3\frac{1}{2}$	2.880	0.938	0.933	0.928	0.922	$\frac{13}{16}$

All dimensions are given in inches.

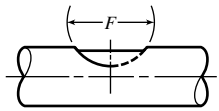
The key numbers indicate nominal key dimensions. The last two digits give the nominal diameter B in eighths of an inch and the digits preceding the last two give the nominal width W in thirty-seconds of an inch.

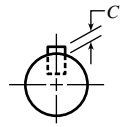
The key numbers with the –1 designation, while representing the nominal key size have a shorter length F and due to a greater distance below center E are less in height than the keys of the same number without the –1 designation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

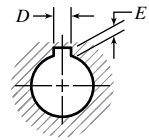


Keyseat—Shaft





Key Above Shaft



Keyseat—Hub

Table 10. ANSI Keyseat Dimensions for Woodruff Keys

ANSI/ASME B17.2-1967 (R2013)

Key No.	Nominal Size Key	Keyseat—Shaft					Key Above Shaft	Keyseat—Hub	
		Width A^a		Depth B	Diameter F		Height C	Width D	Depth E
		Min.	Max.	+0.005 −0.000	Min.	Max.	+0.005 −0.005	+0.002 −0.000	+0.005 −0.000
202	1/16 × 1/4	0.0615	0.0630	0.0728	0.250	0.268	0.0312	0.0635	0.0372
202.5	1/16 × 5/16	0.0615	0.0630	0.1038	0.312	0.330	0.0312	0.0635	0.0372
302.5	3/32 × 5/16	0.0928	0.0943	0.0882	0.312	0.330	0.0469	0.0948	0.0529
203	1/16 × 3/8	0.0615	0.0630	0.1358	0.375	0.393	0.0312	0.0635	0.0372
303	3/32 × 3/8	0.0928	0.0943	0.1202	0.375	0.393	0.0469	0.0948	0.0529
403	1/8 × 3/8	0.1240	0.1255	0.1045	0.375	0.393	0.0625	0.1260	0.0685
204	1/16 × 1/2	0.0615	0.0630	0.1668	0.500	0.518	0.0312	0.0635	0.0372
304	3/32 × 1/2	0.0928	0.0943	0.1511	0.500	0.518	0.0469	0.0948	0.0529
404	1/8 × 1/2	0.1240	0.1255	0.1355	0.500	0.518	0.0625	0.1260	0.0685
305	3/32 × 5/8	0.0928	0.0943	0.1981	0.625	0.643	0.0469	0.0948	0.0529
405	1/8 × 5/8	0.1240	0.1255	0.1825	0.625	0.643	0.0625	0.1260	0.0685
505	5/32 × 5/8	0.1553	0.1568	0.1669	0.625	0.643	0.0781	0.1573	0.0841
605	3/16 × 5/8	0.1863	0.1880	0.1513	0.625	0.643	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
406	1/8 × 3/4	0.1240	0.1255	0.2455	0.750	0.768	0.0625	0.1260	0.0685
506	5/32 × 3/4	0.1553	0.1568	0.2299	0.750	0.768	0.0781	0.1573	0.0841
606	3/16 × 3/4	0.1863	0.1880	0.2143	0.750	0.768	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
806	1/4 × 3/4	0.2487	0.2505	0.1830	0.750	0.768	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
507	5/32 × 7/8	0.1553	0.1568	0.2919	0.875	0.895	0.0781	0.1573	0.0841
607	3/16 × 7/8	0.1863	0.1880	0.2763	0.875	0.895	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
707	7/32 × 7/8	0.2175	0.2193	0.2607	0.875	0.895	0.1093	0.2198	0.1153
807	1/4 × 7/8	0.2487	0.2505	0.2450	0.875	0.895	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
608	3/16 × 1	0.1863	0.1880	0.3393	1.000	1.020	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
708	7/32 × 1	0.2175	0.2193	0.3237	1.000	1.020	0.1093	0.2198	0.1153
808	1/4 × 1	0.2487	0.2505	0.3080	1.000	1.020	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1008	5/16 × 1	0.3111	0.3130	0.2768	1.000	1.020	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1208	3/8 × 1	0.3735	0.3755	0.2455	1.000	1.020	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
609	3/16 × 1 1/8	0.1863	0.1880	0.3853	1.125	1.145	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
709	7/32 × 1 1/8	0.2175	0.2193	0.3697	1.125	1.145	0.1093	0.2198	0.1153
809	1/4 × 1 1/8	0.2487	0.2505	0.3540	1.125	1.145	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1009	5/16 × 1 1/8	0.3111	0.3130	0.3228	1.125	1.145	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
610	3/16 × 1 1/4	0.1863	0.1880	0.4483	1.250	1.273	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
710	7/32 × 1 1/4	0.2175	0.2193	0.4327	1.250	1.273	0.1093	0.2198	0.1153
810	1/4 × 1 1/4	0.2487	0.2505	0.4170	1.250	1.273	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1010	5/16 × 1 1/4	0.3111	0.3130	0.3858	1.250	1.273	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1210	3/8 × 1 1/4	0.3735	0.3755	0.3545	1.250	1.273	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
811	1/4 × 1 3/8	0.2487	0.2505	0.4640	1.375	1.398	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1011	5/16 × 1 3/8	0.3111	0.3130	0.4328	1.375	1.398	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **ANSI Keyseat Dimensions for Woodruff Keys**
ANSI/ASME B17.2-1967 (R2013)

Key No.	Nominal Size Key	Keyseat—Shaft					Key Above Shaft	Keyseat—Hub	
		Width A^a		Depth B	Diameter F		Height C	Width D	Depth E
		Min.	Max.	+0.005 −0.000	Min.	Max.	+0.005 −0.005	+0.002 −0.000	+0.005 −0.000
1211	3/8 × 1 3/8	0.3735	0.3755	0.4015	1.375	1.398	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
812	1/4 × 1 1/2	0.2487	0.2505	0.5110	1.500	1.523	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1012	5/16 × 1 1/2	0.3111	0.3130	0.4798	1.500	1.523	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1212	3/8 × 1 1/2	0.3735	0.3755	0.4485	1.500	1.523	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
617-1	3/16 × 2 1/8	0.1863	0.1880	0.3073	2.125	2.160	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
817-1	1/4 × 2 1/8	0.2487	0.2505	0.2760	2.125	2.160	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1017-1	5/16 × 2 1/8	0.3111	0.3130	0.2448	2.125	2.160	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1217-1	3/8 × 2 1/8	0.3735	0.3755	0.2135	2.125	2.160	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
617	3/16 × 2 1/8	0.1863	0.1880	0.4323	2.125	2.160	0.0937	0.1885	0.0997
817	1/4 × 2 1/8	0.2487	0.2505	0.4010	2.125	2.160	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1017	5/16 × 2 1/8	0.3111	0.3130	0.3698	2.125	2.160	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1217	3/8 × 2 1/8	0.3735	0.3755	0.3385	2.125	2.160	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
822-1	1/4 × 2 3/4	0.2487	0.2505	0.4640	2.750	2.785	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1022-1	5/16 × 2 3/4	0.3111	0.3130	0.4328	2.750	2.785	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1222-1	3/8 × 2 3/4	0.3735	0.3755	0.4015	2.750	2.785	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
1422-1	7/16 × 2 3/4	0.4360	0.4380	0.3703	2.750	2.785	0.2187	0.4385	0.2247
1622-1	1/2 × 2 3/4	0.4985	0.5005	0.3390	2.750	2.785	0.2500	0.5010	0.2560
822	1/4 × 2 3/4	0.2487	0.2505	0.6200	2.750	2.785	0.1250	0.2510	0.1310
1022	5/16 × 2 3/4	0.3111	0.3130	0.5888	2.750	2.785	0.1562	0.3135	0.1622
1222	3/8 × 2 3/4	0.3735	0.3755	0.5575	2.750	2.785	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
1422	7/16 × 2 3/4	0.4360	0.4380	0.5263	2.750	2.785	0.2187	0.4385	0.2247
1622	1/2 × 2 3/4	0.4985	0.5005	0.4950	2.750	2.785	0.2500	0.5010	0.2560
1228	3/8 × 3 1/2	0.3735	0.3755	0.7455	3.500	3.535	0.1875	0.3760	0.1935
1428	7/16 × 3 1/2	0.4360	0.4380	0.7143	3.500	3.535	0.2187	0.4385	0.2247
1628	1/2 × 3 1/2	0.4985	0.5005	0.6830	3.500	3.535	0.2500	0.5010	0.2560
1828	9/16 × 3 1/2	0.5610	0.5630	0.6518	3.500	3.535	0.2812	0.5635	0.2872
2028	5/8 × 3 1/2	0.6235	0.6255	0.6205	3.500	3.535	0.3125	0.6260	0.3185
2228	11/16 × 3 1/2	0.6860	0.6880	0.5893	3.500	3.535	0.3437	0.6885	0.3497
2428	3/4 × 3 1/2	0.7485	0.7505	0.5580	3.500	3.535	0.3750	0.7510	0.3810

[a] These Width A values were set with the maximum keyseat (shaft) width as that figure which will receive a key with the greatest amount of looseness consistent with assuring the key's sticking in the keyseat (shaft). Minimum keyseat width is that figure permitting the largest shaft distortion acceptable when assembling maximum key in minimum keyseat. Dimensions *A*, *B*, *C*, *D* are taken at side intersection.

All dimensions are given in inches.

The following definitions are given in this standard:

Woodruff Key: A demountable machinery part which, when assembled into key-seats, provides a positive means for transmitting torque between the shaft and hub.

Woodruff Key Number: An identification number by which the size of key may be readily determined.

Woodruff Keyseat—Shaft: The circular pocket in which the key is retained.

Woodruff Keyseat—Hub: An axially located rectangular groove in a hub. (This has been referred to as a keyway.)

Woodruff Keyseat Milling Cutter: An arbor type or shank type milling cutter normally used for milling Woodruff keyseats in shafts (see page 895).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chamfered Keys and Filleted Keyseats.—In general practice, chamfered keys and filleted keyseats are not used. However, it is recognized that fillets in keyseats decrease stress concentration at corners. When used, fillet radii should be as large as possible without causing excessive bearing stresses due to reduced contact area between the key and its mating parts. Keys must be chamfered or rounded to clear fillet radii. Values in Table 5 assume general conditions and should be used only as a guide when critical stresses are encountered.

Depths for Milling Keyseats.—Table 11 on page 2562 has been compiled to facilitate the accurate milling of keyseats. This table gives the distance M (see illustration accompanying table) between the top of the shaft and a line passing through the upper corners or edges of the keyseat. Dimension M is calculated by the formula: $M = \frac{1}{2}(S - \sqrt{S^2 - E^2})$

where S is diameter of shaft, and E is width of keyseat. A simple approximate formula that gives M to within 0.001 inch is $M = E^2 \div 4S$.

Keyseating Machines.—The machines which are designed especially for cutting keyseats or keyways in the hubs of pulleys, gears, etc., are generally known as keyseaters. Machines of this class usually have a base or frame which contains the mechanism for imparting a reciprocating motion to a cutter bar, which moves vertically for cutting a keyseat in the work. There are several types of machines which are used for internal keyseating operations in addition to the machines designed especially for this work. Broaching machines as well as slotters are commonly used, and keyseating is also done to some extent in shapers and planers.

Other Key Types.—The *sunk key* is the most common type and is of rectangular section that engages a groove or slot formed both in the shaft and hub of the gear or pulley. The width of an ordinary sunk key ordinarily is equal to about one-fourth of the shaft diameter and the thickness, when a flat key is preferred to the square form, is usually about one-sixth of the shaft diameter; these proportions are varied somewhat by different manufacturers.

The *flat key* is a rectangular shape which bears upon a flat surface formed on one side of the shaft. The *draw* or *gib key* is a sunk key which has a head by means of which it can be removed. The *round tapered key* is simply a taper pin which is driven into a hole that is partly in the shaft and partly in the hub; this form is used for light work. The name *feather* or *spline* is applied to a key which is fixed to either a shaft or hub, as when a gear must be driven by a shaft, but at the same time be free to slide in a lengthwise direction.

The taper of American Standard square and flat keys is 1.8 inch per foot.

The *saddle key* does not enter a slot in the shaft. It has parallel sides and is curved on its under side to fit the shaft. It is slightly tapered on top so that, when it is driven tightly in place, the shaft is held by frictional resistance. This key should be fitted so that it bears lightly on the sides and heavily between the shaft and hub throughout its entire length. As the drive with this type of key is not positive, it is only used where there is little power to transmit. It is an inexpensive method of keying, as the shaft does is not machined.

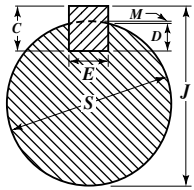
Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength.—See *SHAFTS* starting on page 295 and *Effect of Keyways on Shaft Strength* starting on page 301.

British Standard Keys and Keyways.—See *Keys and Keyways* in the *ADDITIONAL* material in the *Machinery's Handbook 31 Digital Edition*.

Cotters.—A cotter is a form of key that is used to connect rods, etc., that are subjected either to tension or compression or both, the cotter being subjected to shearing stresses at two transverse cross sections. When taper cotters are used for drawing and holding parts together, if the cotter is held in place by the friction between the bearing surfaces, the taper should not be too great. Ordinarily a taper varying from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch per foot is used for plain cotters. When a set screw or other device is used to prevent the cotter from backing out of its slot, the taper may vary from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 inches per foot.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Finding Depth of Keyseat and Distance from Top of Key to Bottom of Shaft



For milling keyseats, the total depth to feed cutter in from outside of shaft to bottom of keyseat is $M + D$, where D is depth of keyseat.

For checking an assembled key and shaft, caliper measurement J between top of key and bottom of shaft is used.

$$J = S - (M + D) + C$$

where C is depth of key. For Woodruff keys, dimensions C and D can be found in Table 8 through Table 10. Assuming shaft diameter S is normal size, the tolerance on dimension J for Woodruff keys in keyslots are + 0.000, –0.010 inch.

Dia. of Shaft, S Inches	Width of Keyseat, E														
	1/16	3/32	1/8	5/32	3/16	7/32	1/4	5/16	3/8	7/16	1/2	9/16	5/8	11/16	3/4
	Dimension M, Inch														
0.3125	.0032	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.3437	.0029	.0065	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.3750	.0026	.0060	.0107	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.4060	.0024	.0055	.0099	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.4375	.0022	.0051	.0091	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.4687	.0021	.0047	.0085	.0134	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.5000	.0020	.0044	.0079	.0125	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.5625	…	.0039	.0070	.0111	.0161	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.6250	…	.0035	.0063	.0099	.0144	.0198	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.6875	…	.0032	.0057	.0090	.0130	.0179	.0235	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.7500	…	.0029	.0052	.0082	.0119	.0163	.0214	.0341	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.8125	…	.0027	.0048	.0076	.0110	.0150	.0197	.0312	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.8750	…	.0025	.0045	.0070	.0102	.0139	.0182	.0288	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
0.9375	…	…	.0042	.0066	.0095	.0129	.0170	.0263	.0391	…	…	…	…	…	…
1.0000	…	…	.0039	.0061	.0089	.0121	.0159	.0250	.0365	…	…	…	…	…	…
1.0625	…	…	.0037	.0058	.0083	.0114	.0149	.0235	.0342	…	…	…	…	…	…
1.1250	…	…	.0035	.0055	.0079	.0107	.0141	.0221	.0322	.0443	…	…	…	…	…
1.1875	…	…	.0033	.0052	.0074	.0102	.0133	.0209	.0304	.0418	…	…	…	…	…
1.2500	…	…	.0031	.0049	.0071	.0097	.0126	.0198	.0288	.0395	…	…	…	…	…
1.3750	…	…	…	.0045	.0064	.0088	.0115	.0180	.0261	.0357	.0471	…	…	…	…
1.5000	…	…	…	.0041	.0059	.0080	.0105	.0165	.0238	.0326	.0429	…	…	…	…
1.6250	…	…	…	.0038	.0054	.0074	.0097	.0152	.0219	.0300	.0394	.0502	…	…	…
1.7500	…	…	…	…	.0050	.0069	.0090	.0141	.0203	.0278	.0365	.0464	…	…	…
1.8750	…	…	…	…	.0047	.0064	.0084	.0131	.0189	.0259	.0340	.0432	.0536	…	…
2.0000	…	…	…	…	.0044	.0060	.0078	.0123	.0177	.0242	.0318	.0404	.0501	…	…
2.1250	…	…	…	…	…	.0056	.0074	.0116	.0167	.0228	.0298	.0379	.0470	.0572	.0684
2.2500	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0070	.0109	.0157	.0215	.0281	.0357	.0443	.0538	.0643
2.3750	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0103	.0149	.0203	.0266	.0338	.0419	.0509	.0608
2.5000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0141	.0193	.0253	.0321	.0397	.0482	.0576
2.6250	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0135	.0184	.0240	.0305	.0377	.0457	.0547
2.7500	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0175	.0229	.0291	.0360	.0437	.0521
2.8750	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0168	.0219	.0278	.0344	.0417	.0498
3.0000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	.0210	.0266	.0329	.0399	.0476

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

FLEXIBLE BELTS AND SHEAVES

Flexible belt drives are used in industrial power transmission applications, especially when the speeds of the driver and driven shafts must be different or when shafts must be widely separated. The trend toward higher speed prime movers and the need to achieve a slower, useful driven speed are additional factors favoring the use of belts. Belts have numerous advantages over other means of power transmission; these advantages include overall economy, cleanliness, no need for lubrication, lower maintenance costs, easy installation, dampening of shock loads, and the abilities to be used for clutching and variable speed power transmission between widely spaced shafts.

Calculations for Belts and Pulleys

Belt speed plays an important role in the amount of load a friction drive system can transmit. Higher speeds will require higher preloads (increased belt tension) to compensate for the higher centrifugal force. In positive drive (toothed belt) systems, higher speeds generate dynamic forces caused by unavoidable tolerance errors that may result in increased tooth or pin stresses and shorter belt life.

Pulley Diameters and Drive Ratios.—Minimum pulley diameters determined by belt manufacturers are based on the minimum radius that a belt can wrap around a pulley without stressing the load-carrying members. For positive drive systems, minimum pulley diameters are also determined by the minimum number of teeth that must be engaged with the sprocket to guarantee the operating load.

Diameters of driving and driven pulleys determine the velocity ratio of the input relative to the output shaft and are derived from the following formulas: for all belt systems, velocity ratio $V = D_{pi}/D_{po}$, and for positive (toothed) drive systems, velocity ratio $V = N_i/N_o$, where D_{pi} is the pitch diameter of the driving pulley, D_{po} is the pitch diameter of the driven pulley, N_i is the number of teeth on the driving pulley, and N_o is the number of teeth on the driven pulley. For most drive systems, a velocity ratio of 8:1 is the largest that should be attempted with a single reduction drive, and 6:1 is a reasonable maximum.

Wrap Angles and Center-to-Center Distances.—The radial distance for which the belt is in contact with the pulley surface, or the number of teeth in engagement for positive drive belts, is called the wrap angle. Belt and sprocket combinations should be chosen to ensure a wrap angle of about 120° around the smaller pulley. The wrap angle should not be less than 90°, especially with positive drive belts, because if too few teeth are in engagement, the belt may jump a tooth or pin and timing or synchronization may be lost.

For flat belts, the minimum allowable center-to-center distance (CD) for any belt-and-sprocket combination should be chosen to ensure a minimum wrap angle around the smaller pulley. For high-velocity systems, a good rule of thumb is a minimum CD equal to the sum of the pitch diameter of the larger sprocket and one-half the pitch diameter of the smaller sprocket. This formula ensures a minimum wrap angle of approximately 120°, which is generally sufficient for friction drives and will ensure that positive drive belts do not jump teeth.

Pulley Center Distances and Belt Lengths.—Maximum center distances of pulleys should be about 15 to 20 times the pitch diameter of the smaller pulley. Greater spacing requires tight control of the belt tension because a small amount of stretch will cause a large drop in tension. Constant belt tension can be obtained by application of an adjustable tensioning pulley applied to the slack side of the belt. Friction drive systems using flat belts require much more tension than positive drive belt systems.

Belt length can be calculated from: $L = 2C + \pi(D_2 + D_1)/2 + (D_2 - D_1)^2/4C$ for friction drives, and length $L = 2C + \pi(D_2 + D_1)/2 + (D_2 + D_1)^2/4C$ for crossed belt friction belt drives, where C is the center distance, D_1 is the pitch diameter of the small pulley, and D_2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

is the pitch diameter of the large pulley. For serrated belt drives, the length determined by use of these equations should be divided by the serration pitch. The belt length must then be adjusted to provide a whole number of serrations.

Pulley Diameters and Speeds.—If D = diameter of driving pulley, d = diameter of driven pulley, S = speed of driving pulley, and s = speed of driven pulley:

$$D = \frac{d \times s}{S}, \quad d = \frac{D \times S}{s}, \quad S = \frac{d \times s}{D}, \quad \text{and} \quad s = \frac{D \times S}{d}$$

Example 1: If diameter of the driving pulley D is 24 inches, its speed is 100 rpm, and the driven pulley runs at 600 rpm, diameter of the driven pulley, $d = 24 \times 100/600 = 4$ inches.

Example 2: If the diameter of the driving pulley D is 60 cm, its speed is 100 rpm, and the driven pulley is to run at 600 rpm, the diameter of the driven pulley, $d = 60 \times 100/600 = 10$ cm.

Example 3: If the diameter of the driven pulley d is 36 inches, its required speed is to be 150 rpm, and the speed of the driving pulley is to be 600 rpm, the diameter of the driving pulley $D = 36 \times 150/600 = 9$ inches.

Example 4: If diameter of driven pulley d is 4 inches, its required speed is 800 rpm, and diameter of driving pulley D is 26 inches, speed of driving pulley = $4 \times 800/26 = 123$ rpm.

Example 5: If diameter of driven pulley d is 10 cm, its required speed is 800 rpm, and diameter of driving pulley D is 25 cm, speed of the driving pulley = $10 \times 800/25 = 320$ rpm.

Example 6: If the diameter of the driving pulley D is 15 inches and its speed is 180 rpm, and the diameter of the driven pulley d is 9 inches, then the speed of the driven pulley = $15 \times 180/9 = 300$ rpm.

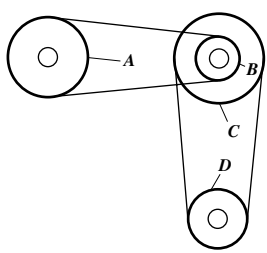
Pulley Diameters in Compound Drive.—If speeds of driving and driven pulleys, A, B, C, and D (see illustration) are known, the first step in finding their diameters is to form a fraction with the driving pulley speed as the numerator and the driven pulley speed as the, denominator, and then reduce this fraction to its lowest terms. Resolve the numerator and the denominator into two pairs of factors (a pair being one factor in the numerator and one in the denominator) and, if necessary, multiply each pair by a trial number that will give pulleys of suitable diameters.

Example 7: If speed of pulley A is 260 rpm and the required speed of pulley D is 720 rpm, find the diameters of the four pulleys. Reduced to its lowest terms, the fraction 260/720 = 13/36, which represents the required speed ratio. Resolve this ratio 13/36 into two factors:

$$\frac{13}{36} = \frac{1 \times 13}{2 \times 18}$$

Multiply by trial numbers 12 and 1 to get:

$$\frac{(1 \times 12) \times (13 \times 1)}{(2 \times 12) \times (18 \times 1)} = \frac{12 \times 13}{24 \times 18}$$



Compound Drive with Four Pulleys

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The values 12 and 13 in the numerator represent the diameters of the *driven* pulleys, *B* and *D*, and the values 24 and 18 in the denominator represent the diameters of the *driving* pulleys, *A* and *C*, as shown in the illustration.

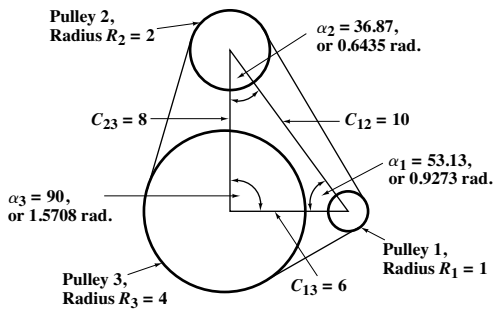
Speed of Driven Pulley in Compound Drive.—If diameters of pulleys *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D* (see illustration above), and speed of pulley *A* are known, the speed of the driven pulley *D* is found from:

$$\frac{\text{driving pulley diameter}}{\text{driven pulley diameter}} \times \frac{\text{driving pulley diameter}}{\text{driven pulley diameter}} \times \text{speed of first driving pulley}$$

Example 8: If the diameters of driving pulleys *A* and *C* are 18 and 24 inches, diameters of driven pulleys *B* and *D* are 12 and 13 inches, and the speed of driving pulley *A* is 260 rpm, speed of driven pulley

$$D = \frac{18 \times 24}{12 \times 13} \times 260 = 720 \text{ rpm}$$

Length of Belt Traversing Three Pulleys.—The length *L* of a belt traversing three pulleys, as shown in the diagram below, and touching them on one side only, can be found by the following formula.



Flat Belt Traversing Three Pulleys

Referring to the diagram, R_1, R_2, and R_3 are the radii of the three pulleys; C_{12}, C_{13}, and C_{23} are the center distances; and α_1, α_2, and α_3 are the angles, in radians, of the triangle formed by the center distances. Then:

$$L = C_{12} + C_{13} + C_{23} + \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{(R_2 - R_1)^2}{C_{12}} + \frac{(R_3 - R_1)^2}{C_{13}} + \frac{(R_3 - R_2)^2}{C_{23}}\right] + \pi(R_1 + R_2 + R_3) - (\alpha_1 R_1 + \alpha_2 R_2 + \alpha_3 R_3)$$

Example 9: Assume $R_1 = 1, R_2 = 2, R_3 = 4, C_{12} = 10, C_{13} = 6, C_{23} = 8, \alpha_1 = 53.13$ degrees or 0.9273 radian, $\alpha_2 = 36.87$ degrees or 0.6435 radian, and $\alpha_3 = 90$ degrees or 1.5708 radians. Then:

$$L = 10 + 6 + 8 + \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{(2-1)^2}{10} + \frac{(4-1)^2}{6} + \frac{(4-2)^2}{8}\right] + \pi(1 + 2 + 4) + (0.9273 \times 1 + 0.6435 \times 2 + 1.5708 \times 4)$$
$$= 24 + 1.05 + 21.9911 - 8.4975 = 38.5436$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Power Transmitted by Belts.—With belt drives, the force that produces work acts on the rim of a pulley or sheave and causes it to rotate. Since a belt on a drive must be tight enough to prevent slip, there is a belt pull on both sides of a driven wheel. When a drive is stationary or operating with no power transmitted, the pulls on both sides of the driven wheel are equal. When the drive is transmitting power, however, the pulls are not the same. There is a tight side tension T_T and a slack side tension, T_S. The difference between these two pulls ($T_T - T_S$) is called *effective pull* or *net pull*. This effective pull is applied at the rim of the pulley and is the force that produces work.

Net pull equals horsepower (HP) × 33,000 ÷ belt speed (fpm). Belt speed in fpm can be set by changing the pulley, sprocket, or sheave diameter. The shaft speeds remain the same. Belt speed is directly related to pulley diameter. Double the diameter and the total belt pull is cut in half, reducing the load on the shafts and bearings.

A belt experiences three types of tension as it rotates around a pulley: working tension (tight side – slack side), bending tension, and centrifugal tension.

The *tension ratio* (R) equals tight side divided by slack side tension (measured in pounds). The larger R is, the closer a V-belt is to slipping—the belt is too loose. (Synchronous belts do not slip, because they depend on the tooth grip principle.)

In addition to working tension (tight side – slack side), two other tensions are developed in a belt when it is operating on a drive. *Bending tension* T_B occurs when the belt bends around the pulley. One part of the belt is in tension and the other is in compression, so compressive stresses also occur. The amount of tension depends on the belt's construction and the pulley diameter. *Centrifugal tension* (T_C) occurs as the belt rotates around the drive and is calculated by $T_C = MV^2$, where T_C is centrifugal tension in pounds, M is a constant dependent on the belt's weight, and V is the belt velocity in feet per minute. Neither the bending nor centrifugal tensions are imposed on the pulley, shaft, or bearing—only on the belt.

Combining these three types of tension results in *peak tension,* which is important in determining the degree of performance or belt life: $T_{\text{peak}} = T_T + T_B + T_C$.

Measuring the Effective Length.—The effective length of a V-belt is determined by placing the belt on a measuring device having two equal diameter sheaves with standard groove dimensions. The shaft of one of the sheaves is fixed. A specified measuring tension is applied to the housing for the shaft of the other sheave, moving it along a graduated scale. The belt is rotated around the sheaves at least two revolutions of the belt to seat it properly in the sheave grooves and to divide the total tension equally between the two strands of the belt.

The effective length of the belt is obtained by adding the effective (outside) circumference of one of the measuring sheaves to twice the center distance. Synchronous belts are measured in a similar manner.

The following sections cover common belts used in industrial applications for power transmission and specified in Rubber Manufacturers Association (RMA), Mechanical Power Transmission Association (MPTA), and The Rubber Association of Canada (RAC) standards. The information presented does not apply to automotive or agricultural drives, for which other standards exist. The belts covered in this section are Narrow, Classical, Double, and Light-Duty V-Belts, V-Ribbed Belts, Variable-Speed Belts, 60 deg V-Belts, and Synchronous (Timing) Belts.

Flat Belting

Flat belting was originally made from leather because it was the most durable material available and could easily be cut and joined to make a driving belt suitable for use with cylindrical or domed pulleys. This type of belting was popular because it could be used to transmit high torques over long distances and it was employed in factories to drive many

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

small machines from a large common power source such as a steam engine. As electric motors became smaller, more efficient, and more powerful, and new types of belts and chains were made possible by modern materials and manufacturing processes, flat belts fell out of favor. Flat belts are still used for some drive purposes, but leather has been replaced by other natural and synthetic materials such as urethanes, which can be reinforced by high-strength polyamide or steel fabrics to provide properties such as resistance to stretching. The high modulus of elasticity in these flat belts eliminates the need for periodic retensioning that is usually necessary with V-belts.

Driving belts can be given a coating of an elastomer with a high coefficient of friction, to enable belts to grip pulleys without the degree of tension common with earlier materials. Urethanes are commonly used for driving belts where high resistance to abrasion is required, and also resist attack by chemical solvents of most kinds. Flat belts having good resistance to high temperatures are also available. Typical properties of polyurethane belts include tensile strength up to 40,000 psi (276 MPa), depending on reinforcement type and Shore hardness of 85 to 95. Most polyurethane belts are installed under tension. The amount of tension varies with the belt cross section, being greater for belts of small section. Belt tension can be measured by marking lines 10 inches, or 100 mm, apart on an installed belt, then applying tension until the separation increases by the desired percentage. For 2 percent tension, lines on the tensioned belt would be 10.2 inches, or 102 mm, apart. Mechanical failure may result when belt tensioning is excessive, and 2 to 2.5 percent elongation should be regarded as the limit.

Flat belts offer high load capacities and are capable of transmitting power over long distances, maintaining relative rotational direction, can operate without lubricants, and are generally inexpensive to maintain or replace when worn. Flat belt systems will operate with little maintenance and only periodic adjustment. Because they transmit motion by friction, flat belts have the ability to slip under excessive loads, providing a fail-safe action to guard against malfunctions. This advantage is offset by the problem that friction drives can both slip and creep so that they do not offer exact, consistent velocity ratios nor precision timing between input and output shafts. Flat belts can be made to any desired length, being joined by reliable chemical bonding processes.

Increasing centrifugal force has less effect on the load-carrying capacity of flat belts at high speeds than it has on V-belts, for instance. The low thickness of a flat belt, compared with a V-belt, places its center of gravity near the pulley surface. Flat belts therefore may be run at surface speeds of up to 16,000 or even 20,000 ft/min (81.28 to 101.6 m/s), although ideal speeds are in the range of 3,000 to 10,000 ft/min (15.25 to 50.8 m/s). Elastomeric drive surfaces on flat belts have eliminated the need for belt dressings that were often needed to keep leather belts in place. These surface coatings can also contain antistatic materials. Belt pulley wear and noise are low with flat belts, shock and vibration are damped, and efficiency is generally greater than 98 percent, compared to 96 percent for V-belts.

Driving belt load capacities can be calculated from torque $T = F(d/2)$ and horsepower $HP = T \times rpm/396{,}000$, where T is the torque in in-lb, F is the force transmitted in lb, and d is the pulley diameter in inches. Pulley width is usually about 10 percent larger than the belt, and for good tracking, pulleys are often crowned by 0.012–0.10 inch (0.305–2.54 mm) for diameters in the range of 1.5–80 inches (3.8–203 cm).

Before a belt specification is written, the system should be checked for excessive startup and shut-down loads, which sometimes are more than 10 percent above operating conditions. In overcoming such loads, the belt will transmit considerably more force than during normal operation. Large starting and stopping forces will also shorten belt life unless they are taken into account during the design stage.

Flat Belt Pulleys.—Flat belt pulleys are usually made of cast iron, fabricated steel, paper, fiber, or various kinds of wood. They may be solid or split and in either case the hub may be split for clamping to the shaft.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pulley face widths are nominally the same as the widths of the belts they are to carry. The pulley face should be approximately one inch more than the belt width for belts under 12 inches (30.5 cm) wide, 2 inches (5.1 cm) more for belts from 12 to 24 inches (30.5–61 cm) wide, and 3 inches (7.6 cm) more for belts over 24 inches (61 cm) in width.

Belts may be made to center themselves by the use of crowned pulleys. The usual amount of crowning is $^1/_8$ inch per foot (10.4 mm per meter) of pulley width. Thus, the difference in maximum and minimum radii of a crowned 6-inch (152.4 mm) wide pulley would be $^1/_{16}$ inch (1.59 mm). Crowned pulleys have a rim section either with a convex curve or a flat V form. Flanges on the sides of flat belt pulleys are in general undesirable as the belt tends to crawl against them. Too much crown is undesirable because of the tendency to "break the belt's back." This is particularly true for riding idlers close to driving pulleys where the curvature of the belt changes rapidly from one pulley to the other. Here, the idler should under no circumstances be crowned and the adjacent pulley should have very little crown. Pulleys carrying shifting belts are not crowned.

Open belt drives connecting pulleys on short centers with one pulley considerably larger than the other may be unsatisfactory due to the small angle of wrap on the smaller pulley. This angle may be increased by the use of idler pulleys on one or both sides of the belt.

V-Belts

Narrow V-Belts ANSI/RMA IP-22.—Narrow V-belts serve the same applications as multiple, classical V-belts, but allow for a lighter, more compact drive. Three basic cross sections—3V and 3VX, 5V and 5VX, and 8V—are provided, as shown in Fig. 1. The 3VX and 5VX are molded, notched V-belts that have greater power capacity than conventional belts. Narrow V-belts are specified by cross section and effective length and have top widths ranging from $^3/_8$ to 1 inch (9.525–25.4 mm).

Narrow V-belts usually provide substantial weight and space savings over classical belts. Some narrow belts can transmit up to three times the horsepower of conventional belts in the same drive space, or the same horsepower in one-third to one-half the space. These belts are designed to operate in multiples and are also available in the joined configuration.

Belt Cross Sections: Nominal dimensions of the three cross sections are given in Fig. 1.

Belt Size Designation: Narrow V-belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number. The first figure of this number followed by the letter V denotes the belt cross section. An X following the V indicates a notched cross section. The remaining figures show the effective belt length in tenths of an inch. For example, the number 5VX1400 designates a notched V-belt with a 5V cross section and an effective length of 140.0 in. Standard effective lengths of narrow V-belts are shown in Table 1.

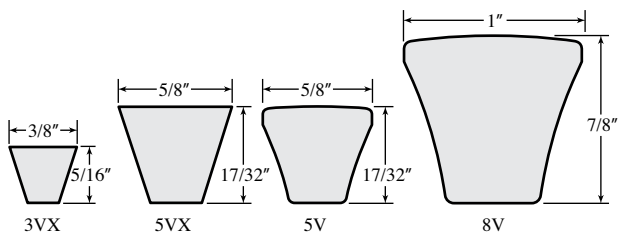


Fig. 1. Nominal Narrow V-Belt Dimensions

Sheave Dimensions: Groove angles and dimensions for sheaves and face widths of sheaves for multiple belt drives are given in Table 2a and Table 2b, along with various tolerance values. Standard sheave outside diameters are given in Table 3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

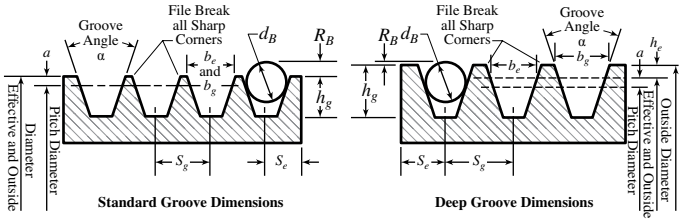
Table 1. Narrow V-Belt Standard Effective Lengths *ANSI/RMA IP-22 (1983)*

Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Outside Length			Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Matching Limits for One Set	Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Outside Length			Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Matching Limits for One Set
	Cross Section						Cross Section				
	3V	5V	8V				3V	5V	8V		
250	25.0	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1060	106.0	106.0	106.0	±0.6	0.30
265	26.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1120	112.0	112.0	112.0	±0.6	0.30
280	28.0	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1180	118.0	118.0	118.0	±0.6	0.30
300	30.0	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1250	125.0	125.0	125.0	±0.6	0.30
315	31.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1320	132.0	132.0	132.0	±0.6	0.30
335	33.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1400	140.0	140.0	140.0	±0.6	0.30
355	35.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1500	…	150.0	150.0	±0.8	0.30
375	37.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1600	…	160.0	160.0	±0.8	0.45
400	40.0	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1700	…	170.0	170.0	±0.8	0.45
425	42.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1800	…	180.0	180.0	±0.8	0.45
450	45.0	…	…	±0.3	0.15	1900	…	190.0	190.0	±0.8	0.45
475	47.5	…	…	±0.3	0.15	2000	…	200.0	200.0	±0.8	0.45
500	50.0	50.0	…	±0.3	0.15	2120	…	212.0	212.0	±0.8	0.45
530	53.0	53.0	…	±0.4	0.15	2240	…	224.0	224.0	±0.8	0.45
560	56.0	56.0	…	±0.4	0.15	2360	…	236.0	236.0	±0.8	0.45
600	60.0	60.0	…	±0.4	0.15	2500	…	250.0	250.0	±0.8	0.45
630	63.0	63.0	…	±0.4	0.15	2650	…	265.0	265.0	±0.8	0.60
670	67.0	67.0	…	±0.4	0.30	2800	…	280.0	280.0	±0.8	0.60
710	71.0	71.0	…	±0.4	0.30	3000	…	300.0	300.0	±0.8	0.60
750	75.0	75.0	…	±0.4	0.30	3150	…	315.0	315.0	±1.0	0.60
800	80.0	80.0	…	±0.4	0.30	3350	…	335.0	335.0	±1.0	0.60
850	85.0	85.0	…	±0.5	0.30	3550	…	355.0	355.0	±1.0	0.60
900	90.0	90.0	…	±0.5	0.30	3750	…	…	375.0	±1.0	0.60
950	95.0	95.0	…	±0.5	0.30	4000	…	…	400.0	±1.0	0.75
1000	100.0	100.0	100.0	±0.5	0.30	4250	…	…	425.0	±1.2	0.75

[a] To specify belt size, use the Standard Length Designation prefixed by the cross section, for example, 5 V850.
All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Narrow V-Belt Standard Sheave and Groove Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-22 (1983)*



Face Width of Standard and Deep Groove Sheaves = $s_g\,(N_g - \mathrm{I}) + 2S_e$, where N_g = Number of Grooves

Cross Section	Standard Groove Outside Diameter	Standard Groove Dimensions								Design Factors	
		Groove Angle, α, ±0.25 deg	b_g ±0.005	b_e (Ref)	h_g (Min)	R_B (Min)	d_B ±0.0005	S_g[a] ±0.015	S_e	Min Recommended OD	$2a$
3V	Up through 3.49	36	0.350	0.350	0.340	0.181	0.3438	0.406	0.344 (+0.099, −0.031)	2.65	0.050
	Over 3.49 up to and including 6.00	38				0.183					
	Over 6.00 up to and including 12.00	40				0.186					
	Over 12.00	42				0.188					
5V	Up through 9.99	38	0.600	0.600	0.590	0.329	0.5938	0.688	0.500 +0.125, −0.047)	7.10	0.100
	Over 9.99 up to and including 16.00	40				0.332					
	Over 16.00	42				0.336					
8V	Up through 15.99	38	1.000	1.000	0.990	0.575	1.0000	1.125	0.750 (+0.250, −0.062)	12.50	0.200
	Over 15.99 up to and including 22.40	40				0.580					
	Over 22.40	42				0.585					

[a] See footnote [b] following Table 2b.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Narrow V-Belt Standard Sheave and Groove Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-22 (1983)*

		Deep Groove Dimensions[a]								Design Factors		
Cross Section	Deep Groove Outside Diameter	Groove Angle, α, ±0.25 deg	b_g ±0.005	b_e (Ref)	h_g (Min)	R_B (Min)	d_B ±0.0005	S_g[b] ±0.015	S_e	Min Recommended OD	$2a$	$2h_e$
3V	Up through 3.71	36	0.421	0.350	0.449	0.070	0.3438	0.500	0.375 (+0.094, −0.031)	2.87	0.050	0.218
	Over 3.71 up to and including 6.22	38	0.425			0.073						
	Over 6.22 up to and including 12.22	40	0.429			0.076						
	Over 12.22	42	0.434			0.078						
5V	Up through 10.31	38	0.710	0.600	0.750	0.168	0.5938	0.812	0.562 (+0.125, −0.047)	7.42	0.100	0.320
	Over 10.31 up to and including 16.32	40	0.716			0.172						
	Over 16.32	42	0.723			0.175						
8V	Up through 16.51	38	1.180	1.000	1.252	0.312	1.0000	1.312	0.844 (+0.250, −0.062)	13.02	0.200	0.524
	Over 16.51 up to and including 22.92	40	1.191			0.316						
	Over 22.92	42	1.201			0.321						

[a] Deep groove sheaves are intended for drives with belt offset such as quarter-turn or vertical shaft drives. They may also be necessary where oscillations in the center distance may occur. Joined belts will not operate in deep groove sheaves.

[b] Summation of the deviations from S_g for all grooves in any one sheave should not exceed ±0.031 in. The variations in pitch diameter between the grooves in any one sheave must be within the following limits: Up through 19.9 in. outside diameter and up through 6 grooves—0.010 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). 20.0 in. and over on outside diameter and up through 10 grooves—0.015 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). This variation can be obtained by measuring the distance across two measuring balls or rods placed in the grooves diametrically opposite each other. Comparing this "diameter over balls or rods" measurement between grooves will give the variation in pitch diameter.

Other Sheave Tolerances		
Outside Diameter	Radial Runout[a]	Axial Runout[a]
Up through 8.0 in. outside diameter ±0.020 in.	Up through 10.0 in. outside diameter 0.010 in.	Up through 5.0 in. outside diameter 0.005 in.
For each additional inch of outside diameter add ±0.0025 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.0005 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.001 in.

[a] Total indicator reading.

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Standard Sheave Outside Diameters *ANSI/RMA IP-22, 1983*

3V			5V			8V		
Nom	Min	Max	Nom	Min	Max	Nom	Min	Max
2.65	2.638	2.680	7.10	7.087	7.200	12.50	12.402	12.600
2.80	2.795	2.840	7.50	7.480	7.600	13.20	13.189	13.400
3.00	2.953	3.000	8.00	7.874	8.000	14.00	13.976	14.200
3.15	3.150	3.200	8.50	8.346	8.480	15.00	14.764	15.000
3.35	3.346	3.400	9.00	8.819	8.960	16.00	15.748	16.000
3.55	3.543	3.600	9.25	9.291	9.440	17.00	16.732	17.000
3.65	3.642	3.700	9.75	9.567	9.720	18.00	17.717	18.000
4.00	3.937	4.000	10.00	9.843	10.000	19.00	18.701	19.000
4.12	4.055	4.120	10.30	10.157	10.320	20.00	19.685	20.000
4.50	4.409	4.480	10.60	10.433	10.600	21.20	20.866	21.200
4.75	4.646	4.720	10.90	10.709	10.880	22.40	22.047	22.400
5.00	4.921	5.000	11.20	11.024	11.200	23.60	23.622	24.000
5.30	5.197	5.280	11.80	11.811	12.000	24.80	24.803	25.200
5.60	5.512	5.600	12.50	12.402	12.600	30.00	29.528	30.000
6.00	5.906	6.000	13.20	13.189	13.400	31.50	31.496	32.000
6.30	6.299	6.400	14.00	13.976	14.200	35.50	35.433	36.000
6.50	6.496	6.600	15.00	14.764	15.000	40.00	39.370	40.000
6.90	6.890	7.000	16.00	15.748	16.000	44.50	44.094	44.800
8.00	7.874	8.000	18.70	18.701	19.000	50.00	49.213	50.000
10.00	9.843	10.000	20.00	19.685	20.000	52.00	51.969	52.800
10.60	10.433	10.600	21.20	20.866	21.200	63.00	62.992	64.000
12.50	12.402	12.600	23.60	23.622	24.000	71.00	70.866	72.000
14.00	13.976	14.200	25.00	24.803	25.200	79.00	78.740	80.000
16.00	15.748	16.000	28.00	27.953	28.400	99.00	98.425	100.000
19.00	18.701	19.000	31.50	31.496	32.000	…	…	…
20.00	19.685	20.000	37.50	37.402	38.000	…	…	…
25.00	24.803	25.200	40.00	39.370	40.000	…	…	…
31.50	31.496	32.000	44.50	44.094	44.800	…	…	…
33.50	33.465	34.000	50.00	49.213	50.000	…	…	…
…	…	…	63.00	62.992	64.000	…	…	…
…	…	…	71.00	70.866	72.000	…	…	…

All dimensions in inches. The nominal diameters were selected from R40 and R80 preferred numbers (see page 687).

Minimum Sheave Size: The recommended minimum sheave size depends on the rpm of the faster shaft. Minimum sheave diameters for each belt cross section are listed in Table 3.

Cross Section Selection: The chart (Fig. 2, on page 2573) is a guide to the V-belt cross section to use for any combination of design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft. When the intersection of the design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft falls near a line between two areas on the chart, it is advisable to investigate the possibilities in both areas. Special circumstances (such as space limitations) may lead to a choice of belt cross section different from that indicated in the chart.

Horsepower Ratings: The horsepower ratings of narrow V-belts can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{HP} = d_p r\left[K_1 - \frac{K_2}{d_p - K_3(d_p r)^2 - K_4 \log(d_p r)}\right] + K_{SR} r$$

where d_p = the pitch diameter of the small sheave, in.; r = rpm of the faster shaft divided by 1000; K_{SR}, speed ratio correction factor (Table 4), and K_1, K_2, K_3, and K_4, cross section parameters, are listed in the accompanying Table 5. This formula gives the basic horsepower rating, corrected for the speed ratio. To obtain the horsepower per belt for an arc of contact other than 180° and for belts shorter or longer than average length, multiply the horsepower obtained from this formula by the length correction factor (Table 7) and the arc of contact correction factor (Table 6).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

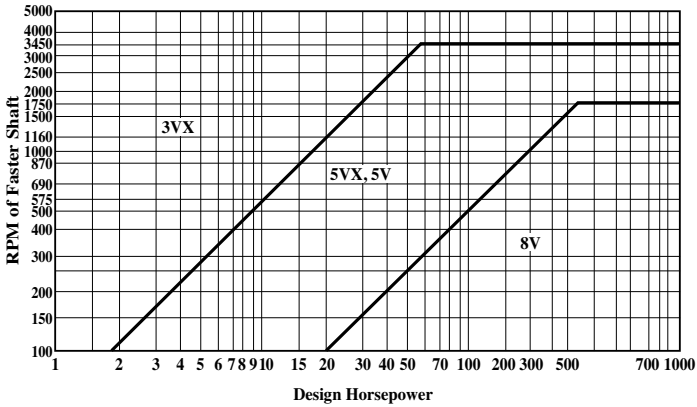


Fig. 2. Selection of Narrow V-Belt Cross Section

Table 4. Speed Ratio Correction Factors

	K_{SR} Cross Section			K_{SR} Cross Section	
Speed Ratio[a] Range	3VX	5VX	Speed Ratio[a] Range	5V	8V
1.00–1.01	0.0000	0.0000	1.00–1.01	0.0000	0.0000
1.02–1.03	0.0157	0.0801	1.02–1.05	0.0963	0.4690
1.04–1.06	0.0315	0.1600	1.06–1.11	0.2623	1.2780
1.07–1.09	0.0471	0.2398	1.12–1.18	0.4572	2.2276
1.10–1.13	0.0629	0.3201	1.19–1.26	0.6223	3.0321
1.14–1.18	0.0786	0.4001	1.27–1.38	0.7542	3.6747
1.19–1.25	0.0944	0.4804	1.39–1.57	0.8833	4.3038
1.26–1.35	0.1101	0.5603	1.58–1.94	0.9941	4.8438
1.36–1.57	0.1259	0.6405	1.95–3.38	1.0830	5.2767
Over 1.57	0.1416	0.7202	Over 3.38	1.1471	5.5892

[a] D_p/d_p, where D_p (d_p) is the pitch diameter of the large (small) sheave.

Table 5. Cross Section Correction Factors

Cross Section	K_1	K_2	K_3	K_4
3VX	1.1691	1.5295	1.5229×10^{-4}	0.15960
5VX	3.3038	7.7810	3.6432×10^{-4}	0.43343
5V	3.3140	10.123	5.8758×10^{-4}	0.46527
8V	8.6628	49.323	1.5804×10^{-3}	1.1669

Arc of Contact: Arc of contact on the small sheave may be determined by the formulas.

Exact formula:

$$\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 2\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{D_e - d_e}{2C}\right)$$

Approximate formula:

$$\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 180 - \frac{(D_e - d_e)60}{C}$$

where: D_e = effective diameter of large sheave, inch or mm
d_e = effective diameter of small sheave, inch or mm
C = center distance, inch or mm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Arc of Contact Correction Factors

$\frac{D_e - d_e}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, on Small Sheave (deg)	Correction Factor	$\frac{D_e - d_e}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, on Small Sheave (deg)	Correction Factor
0.00	180	1.00	0.80	133	0.87
0.10	174	0.99	0.90	127	0.85
0.20	169	0.97	1.00	120	0.82
0.30	163	0.96	1.10	113	0.80
0.40	157	0.94	1.20	106	0.77
0.50	151	0.93	1.30	99	0.73
0.60	145	0.91	1.40	91	0.70
0.70	139	0.89	1.50	83	0.65

Table 7. Length Correction Factors

Standard Length Designation	Cross Section			Standard Length Designation	Cross Section		
	3V	5V	8V		3V	5V	8V
250	0.83			1180	1.12	0.99	0.89
265	0.84			1250	1.13	1.00	0.90
280	0.85			1320	1.14	1.01	0.91
300	0.86			1400	1.15	1.02	0.92
315	0.87			1500		1.03	0.93
335	0.88			1600		1.04	0.94
355	0.89			1700		1.05	0.94
375	0.90			1800		1.06	0.95
400	0.92			1900		1.07	0.96
425	0.93			2000		1.08	0.97
450	0.94			2120		1.09	0.98
475	0.95			2240		1.09	0.98
500	0.96	0.85		2360		1.10	0.99
530	0.97	0.86		2500		1.11	1.00
560	0.98	0.87		2650		1.12	1.01
600	0.99	0.88		2800		1.13	1.02
630	1.00	0.89		3000		1.14	1.03
670	1.01	0.90		3150		1.15	1.03
710	1.02	0.91		3350		1.16	1.04
750	1.03	0.92		3550		1.17	1.05
800	1.04	0.93		3750			1.06
850	1.06	0.94		4000			1.07
900	1.07	0.95		4250			1.08
950	1.08	0.96		4500			1.09
1000	1.09	0.96	0.87	4750			1.09
1060	1.10	0.97	0.88	5000			1.10
1120	1.11	0.98	0.88	…			…

Number of Belts: The number of belts required for an application is obtained by dividing the design horsepower by the corrected horsepower rating for one belt.

Classical V-Belts ANSI/RMA IP-20.—Classical V-belts are most commonly used in heavy-duty applications and include these standard cross sections: A, AX, B, BX, C, CX, D, and DX (Fig. 3, page 2578). Top widths range from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. and are specified by cross section and nominal length. Classical belts can be teamed in multiples of two or more. These multiple drives can transmit up to several hundred horsepower continuously and absorb reasonable shock loads.

Belt Cross Sections: Nominal dimensions of the four cross sections are given in Fig. 3.

Belt Size Designation: Classical V-belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number consisting of a letter-numeral combination. The letter identifies the cross section; the numeral identifies the length as shown in Table 8. For example, A60 indicates an A cross section and a standard length designation of 60. An X following the section letter designation indicates a molded notch cross section, for example, AX60.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Classical V-Belt Standard Datum Length *ANSI/RMA IP-20, 1988*

Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Datum Lengths				Permissible Deviations from Std. Datum Length	Matching Limits for One Set
	Cross Section					
	A, AX	B, BX	C, CX	D		
26	27.3	…	…	…	+0.6, −0.6	0.15
31	32.3	…	…	…	+0.6, −0.6	0.15
35	36.3	36.8	…	…	+0.6, −0.6	0.15
38	39.3	39.8	…	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
42	43.3	43.8	…	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
46	47.3	47.8	…	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
51	52.3	52.8	53.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
55	56.3	56.8	…	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
60	61.3	61.8	62.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.15
68	69.3	69.8	70.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.30
75	75.3	76.8	77.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.30
80	81.3	…	…	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.30
81	…	82.8	83.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.30
85	86.3	86.8	87.9	…	+0.7, −0.7	0.30
90	91.3	91.8	92.9	…	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
96	97.3	…	98.9	…	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
97	…	98.8	…	…	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
105	106.3	106.8	107.9	…	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
112	113.3	113.8	114.9	…	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
120	121.3	121.8	122.9	123.3	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
128	129.3	129.8	130.9	131.3	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
144	…	145.8	146.9	147.3	+0.8, −0.8	0.30
158	…	159.8	160.9	161.3	+1.0, −1.0	0.45
173	…	174.8	175.9	176.3	+1.0, −1.0	0.45
180	…	181.8	182.9	183.3	+1.0, −1.0	0.45
195	…	196.8	197.9	198.3	+1.1, −1.1	0.45
210	…	211.8	212.9	213.3	+1.1, −1.1	0.45
240	…	240.3	240.9	240.8	+1.3, −1.3	0.45
270	…	270.3	270.9	270.8	+1.6, −1.6	0.60
300	…	300.3	300.0	300.8	+1.6, −1.6	0.60
330	…	…	330.9	330.8	+2.0, −2.0	0.60
360	…	…	380.9	360.8	+2.0, −2.0	0.60
540	…	…	…	540.8	+3.3, −3.3	0.90
390	…	…	390.9	390.8	+2.0, −2.0	0.75
420	…	…	420.9	420.8	+3.3, −3.3	0.75
480	…	…	…	480.8	+3.3, −3.3	0.75
600	…	…	…	600.8	+3.3, −3.3	0.90
660	…	…	…	660.8	+3.3, −3.3	0.90

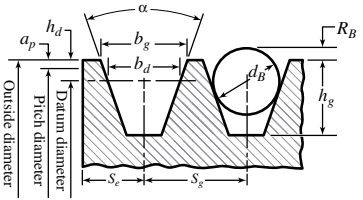
[a] To specify belt size use the Standard Length Designation prefixed by the letter indicating the cross section, e.g., B90.

All dimensions in inches.

Sheave Dimensions: Groove angles and dimensions for sheaves and the face widths of sheaves for multiple belt drives are given in Table 9, along with various tolerance values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Classical V-Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-20, 1988*



Face width of standard and deep groove sheaves = $S_g(N_g - 1) + 2S_e$, where N_g = number of grooves

Standard Groove Dimensions														Design Factors	
Cross Section		Datum[a] Diameter Range	α Groove Angle ±0.33°	b_d Ref	b_g		h_g Min	$2h_d$	R_B Min	d_B ±0.0005	S_g[b] ±0.025	S_e		Min Recom. Datum Diameter	$2a_p$
A, AX		Through 5.4	34	0.418	0.494	±0.005	0.460	0.250	0.148	0.4375 (7/16)	0.625	0.375	+0.090 −0.062	A 3.0	0
		Over 5.4	38		0.504				0.149					AX 2.2	
B, BX		Through 7.0	34	0.530	0.637	±0.006	0.550	0.350	0.189	0.5625 (9/16)	0.750	0.500	+0.120 −0.065	B 5.4	0
		Over 7.0	38		0.650				0.190					BX 4.0	
Combination	A, AX Belt	Through 7.4[c]	34	0.508[d]	0.612	±0.006	0.612	0.634[e]	0.230	0.5625 (9/16)	0.750	0.500	+0.120 −0.065	A 3.6[c]	0.37
		Over 7.4	38		0.625			0.602[e]	0.226					AX 2.8	
	B, BX Belt	Through 7.4[c]	34		0.612	±0.006		0.333[e]	0.230					B 5.7[c]	−0.01
		Over 7.4	38		0.625			0.334[e]	0.226					BX 4.3	
C, CX		Through 7.99	34	0.757	0.879	±0.007	0.750	0.400	0.274	0.7812 (25/32)	1.000	0.688	+0.160 −0.070	C 9.0 CX 6.8	0
		Over 7.99 to and incl. 12.0	36		0.887				0.276						
		Over 12.0	38		0.895				0.277						
D		Through 12.99	34	1.076	1.259	±0.008	1.020	0.600	0.410	1.1250 (1 1/8)	1.438	0.875	+0.220 −0.080	13.0	0
		Over 12.99 to and incl. 17.0	36		1.271				0.410						
		Over 17.0	38		1.283				0.411						

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Classical V-Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions** *ANSI/RMA IP-20, 1988*

Deep Groove Dimensions[f]												Design Factors	
Cross-Section	Datum[a] Dia. Range	α Groove Angle ± 0.33°	b_g Ref	b_g		h_g Min	$2h_d$ Ref	R_B Min	d_B ± 0.0005	S_g[b] ± 0.025	S_e		Min Rec. Datum Diameter	$2a_p$
B, BX	Through 7.0	34	0.530	0.747	± 0.006	0.730	0.710	0.007	0.5625	0.875	0.562	+ 0.120	B 5.4	0.36
	Over 7.0	38		0.774				0.008	(9/16)			− 0.065	BX 4.0	
C, CX	Through 7.99	34	0.757	1.066		1.055	1.010	− 0.035	0.7812 (25/32)	1.250	0.812	+ 0.160	C 9.0	0.61
	Over 7.99 to and incl. 12.0	36		1.085	± 0.007			− 0.032				− 0.070	CX 6.8	
	Over 12.0	38		1.105				−0.031						
D	Through 12.99	34	1.076	1.513		1.435	1.430	−0.010	1.1250 (1 1/8)	1.750	1.062	+0.220	13.0	0.83
	Over 12.99 to and incl. 17.0	36		1.514	±0.008			−0.009				−0.080		
	Over 17.0	38		1.569				−0.008						

[a] The A/AX, B/BX combination groove should be used when deep grooves are required for A or AX belts.

[b] Summation of the deviations from S_g for all grooves in any one sheave should not exceed ±0.050 in. The variation in datum diameter between the grooves in any one sheave must be within the following limits: Through 19.9 in. outside diameter and through 6 grooves: 0.010 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). 20.0 in. and over on outside diameter and through 10 grooves: 0.015 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). This variation can be obtained by measuring the distance across two measuring balls or rods placed diametrically opposite each other in a groove. Comparing this "diameter over balls or rods" measurement between grooves will give the variation in datum diameter.

[c] Diameters shown for combination grooves are outside diameters. A specific datum diameter does not exist for either A or B belts in combination grooves.

[d] The b_d value shown for combination grooves is the "constant width" point, but does not represent a datum width for either A or B belts ($2h_d = 0.340$ ref).

[e] $2h_d$ values for combination grooves are calculated based on b_d for A and B grooves.

[f] Deep groove sheaves are intended for drives with belt offset such as quarter-turn or vertical shaft drives. Joined belts will not operate in deep groove sheaves. Also, A and AX joined belts will not operate in A/AX and B/BX combination grooves.

Other Sheave Tolerances		
Outside Diameter	Radial Runout[a]	Axial Runout[a]
Through 8.0 in. outside diameter ±0.020 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add ±0.005 in.	Through 10.0 in. outside diameter 0.010 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.0005 in.	Through 5.0 in. outside diameter 0.005 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.001 in.

[a] Total indicator readings.

A, AX & B, BX Combin. All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Minimum Sheave Size: The recommended minimum sheave size depends on the rpm of the faster shaft. Minimum sheave diameters for each belt cross section are listed in Table 9.

Cross Section Selection: Use the chart (Fig. 4) as a guide to the Classical V-belt cross section for any combination of design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft. When the intersection of the design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft falls near a line between two areas on the chart, the possibilities in both areas should be investigated. Special circumstances (such as space limitations) may lead to a choice of belt cross section different from that indicated in the chart.

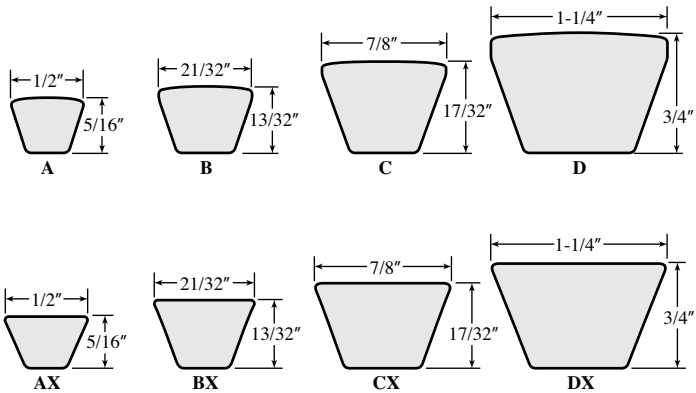


Fig. 3. Classical V-Belt Cross Sections

Horsepower Ratings: The horsepower rating formulas for classical V-belts are:

$$\textbf{A}: HP = d_p r\left[1.004 - \frac{1.652}{d_p} - 1.547\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\,2126\log(d_p r)\right] + 1.652r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$\textbf{AX}: HP = d_p r\left[1.462 - \frac{2.239}{d_p} - 2.198\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\,4238\log(d_p r)\right] + 2.239r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$\textbf{B}: HP = d_p r\left[1.769 - \frac{4.372}{d_p} - 3.081\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\,3658\log(d_p r)\right] + 4.372r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$\textbf{BX: } HP = d_p r\left[2.051 - \frac{3.532}{d_p} - 3.097\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\ 5735\log(d_p r)\right] + 3.532r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$\textbf{C: } HP = d_p r\left[3.325 - \frac{12.07}{d_p} - 5.828\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\ 6886\log(d_p r)\right] + 12.07r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$\textbf{CX: } HP = d_p r\left[3.272 - \frac{6.655}{d_p} - 5.298\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2 - .0\ 8637\log(d_p r)\right] + 6.655r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$\textbf{D: } HP = d_p r\left[7.160 - \frac{43.21}{d_p} - 1.384\times10^{-3}(d_p r)^2 - .1\ 454\log(d_p r)\right] + 43.21r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

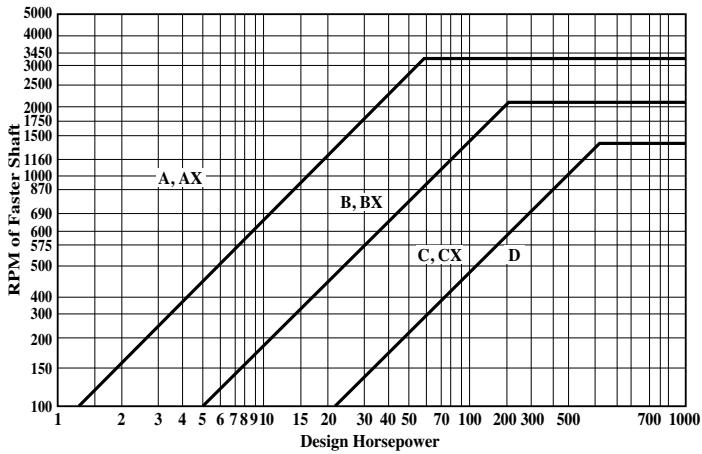


Fig. 4. Selection of Classic V-Belt Cross Sections

In these equations, d_p = pitch diameter of small sheave, in.; r = rpm of the faster shaft divided by 1000; K_{SR} = speed ratio factor given in the accompanying Table 10. These formulas give the basic horsepower rating, corrected for the speed ratio. To obtain the horsepower per belt for an arc of contact other than 180 degrees and for belts shorter or longer than average length, multiply the horsepower obtained from these formulas by the length correction factor (Table 11) and the arc of contact correction factor (Table 12).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Speed Ratio Correction Factors

Speed Ratio[a] Range	K_{SR}	Speed Ratio[a] Range	K_{SR}
1.00–1.01	1.0000	1.15–1.20	1.0586
1.02–1.04	1.0112	1.21–1.27	1.0711
1.05–1.07	1.0226	1.28–1.39	1.0840
1.08–1.10	1.0344	1.40–1.64	1.0972
1.11–1.14	1.0463	Over 1.64	1.1106

[a] D_p/d_p, where D_p (d_p) is the pitch diameter of the large (small) sheave.

Table 11. Length Correction Factors

Std. Length Designation	Cross Section			
	A, AX	B, BX	C, CX	D
26	0.78	…	…	…
31	0.82	…	…	…
35	0.85	0.80	…	…
38	0.87	0.82	…	…
42	0.89	0.84	…	…
46	0.91	0.86	…	…
51	0.93	0.88	0.80	…
55	0.95	0.89	…	…
60	0.97	0.91	0.83	…
68	1.00	0.94	0.85	…
75	1.02	0.96	0.87	…
80	1.04	…	…	…
81	…	0.98	0.89	…
85	1.05	0.99	0.90	…
90	1.07	1.00	0.91	…
96	1.08	…	0.92	…
97	…	1.02	…	…
105	1.10	1.03	0.94	…
112	1.12	1.05	0.95	…
120	1.13	1.06	0.96	0.88
128	1.15	1.08	0.98	0.89
144	…	1.10	1.00	0.91
158	…	1.12	1.02	0.93
173	…	1.14	1.04	0.94
180	…	1.15	1.05	0.95
195	…	1.17	1.08	0.96
210	…	1.18	1.07	0.98
240	…	1.22	1.10	1.00
270	…	1.24	1.13	1.02
300	…	1.27	1.15	1.04
330	…	…	1.17	1.06
360	…	…	1.18	1.07
390	…	…	1.20	1.09
420	…	…	1.21	1.10
480	…	…	…	1.13
540	…	…	…	1.15
600	…	…	…	1.17
660	…	…	…	1.18

Number of Belts: The number of belts required for an application is obtained by dividing the design horsepower by the corrected horsepower rating for one belt.

Arc of Contact: Arc of contact on the small sheave may be determined by the formulas.

Exact formula: $\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 2\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{D_d - d_d}{2C}\right)$

Approximate formula: $\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 180 - \left(\frac{(D_d - d_d)60}{C}\right)$

where D_d = datum diameter of large sheave or flat pulley, inch or mm; d_d = datum diameter of small sheave, inch or mm; and, C = distance, inch or mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Arc of Contact Correction Factors

$\frac{D_d - d_d}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, Small Sheave (deg)	Correction Factor		$\frac{D_d - d_d}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ Small Sheave (deg)	Correction Factor	
		V-V	V-Flat[a]			V-V	V-Flat[a]
0.00	180	1.00	0.75	0.80	133	0.87	0.85
0.10	174	0.99	0.76	0.90	127	0.85	0.85
0.20	169	0.97	0.78	1.00	120	0.82	0.82
0.30	163	0.96	0.79	1.10	113	0.80	0.80
0.40	157	0.94	0.80	1.20	106	0.77	0.77
0.50	151	0.93	0.81	1.30	99	0.73	0.73
0.60	145	0.91	0.83	1.40	91	0.70	0.70
0.70	139	0.89	0.84	1.50	83	0.65	0.65

[a] A V-flat drive is one using a small sheave and a large diameter flat pulley.

Double V-Belts ANSI/RMA IP-21.—Double V-belts or hexagonal belts are used when power input or takeoff is required on both sides of the belt. Designed for use on "serpentine" drives, which consist of sheaves rotating in opposite directions, the belts are available in AA, BB, CC, and DD cross sections and operate in standard classical sheaves. They are specified by cross section and nominal length.

Belt Cross Sections: Nominal dimensions of the four cross sections are given in Fig. 5.

Belt Size Designation: Double V-belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number, consisting of a letter-numeral combination. The letters identify the cross section; the numbers identify length as shown in Column 1 of Table 13. For example, AA51 indicates an AA cross section and a standard length designation of 51.

Table 13. Double V-Belt Standard Effective Lengths *ANSI/RMA IP-21, 1984*

Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Length, Cross Section				Permissible Deviation from Standard Effective Length	Matching Limits for One Set
	AA	BB	CC	DD		
51	53.1	53.9	…	…	±0.7	0.15
55	…	57.9	…	…	±0.7	0.15
60	62.1	62.9	…	…	±0.7	0.15
68	70.1	70.9	…	…	±0.7	0.30
75	77.1	77.9	…	…	±0.7	0.30
80	82.1	…	…	…	±0.7	0.30
81	…	83.9	85.2	…	±0.7	0.30
85	87.1	87.9	89.2	…	±0.7	0.30
90	92.1	92.9	94.2	…	±0.8	0.30
96	98.1	…	100.2	…	±0.8	0.30
97	…	99.9	…	…	±0.8	0.30
105	107.1	107.9	109.2	…	±0.8	0.30
112	114.1	114.9	116.2	…	±0.8	0.30
120	122.1	122.9	124.2	125.2	±0.8	0.30
128	130.1	130.9	132.2	133.2	±0.8	0.30
144	…	146.9	148.2	149.2	±0.8	0.30
158	…	160.9	162.2	163.2	±1.0	0.45
173	…	175.9	177.2	178.2	±1.0	0.45
180	…	182.9	184.2	185.2	±1.0	0.45
195	…	197.9	199.2	200.2	±1.1	0.45
210	…	212.9	214.2	215.2	±1.1	0.45
240	…	241.4	242.2	242.7	±1.3	0.45
270	…	271.4	272.2	272.7	±1.6	0.60
300	…	301.4	302.2	302.7	±1.6	0.60
330	…	…	332.2	332.7	±2.0	0.60
360	…	…	362.2	362.7	±2.0	0.60

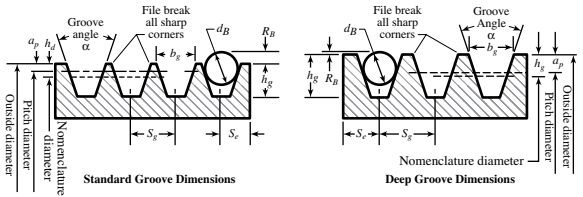
[a] To specify belt size use the Standard Length Designation prefixed by the letters indicating cross section; for example, BB90.

All dimensions in inches.

Sheave Dimensions: Groove angles and dimensions for sheaves and face widths of sheaves for multiple belt drives are given in Table 14, along with various tolerance values.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. Double V-Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-21, 1984*



Face width of standard and deep groove sheaves = $s_g\,(N_g - 1) + 2S_e$, where N_g = number of grooves

Standard Groove Dimensions											Drive Design Factors	
Cross Section	Outside Diameter Range	Groove Angle, α ±0.33°	b_g	h_g (Min.)	$2h_d$	R_B (Min.)	d_B ±0.0005	S_g[a] ±0.025	S_e		Min. Recomm. Outside Dia.	$2a^b_p$
AA	Up through 5.65	34	0.494 ±0.005	0.460	0.250	0.148	0.4375 (7/16)	0.625	0.375	+0.090 –0.062	3.25	0.0
	Over 5.65	38	0.504			0.149						
BB	Up through 7.35	34	0.637 ±0.006	0.550	0.350	0.189	0.5625 (9/16)	0.750	0.500	+0.120 –0.065	5.75	0.0
	Over 7.35	38	0.650			0.190						
AA-BB	Up through 7.35	34	0.612 ±0.006	0.612	A = 0.750 B = 0.350	0.230	0.5625 (9/16)	0.750	0.500	+0.120 –0.065	A = 3.620 B = 5.680	A = 0.370 B = –0.070
	Over 7.35	38	0.625			0.226						
CC	Up through 8.39	34	0.879 0.887 0.895 } ±0.007	0.750	0.400	0.274 0.276 0.277	0.7812 (25/32)	1.000	0.688	+0.160 –0.070	9.4	0.0
	Over 8.39 up to and including 12.40	36										
	Over 12.40	38										
DD	Up through 13.59	34	1.259 1.271 1.283 } ±0.008	1.020	0.600	0.410 0.410 0.411	1.1250 (1 1/8)	1.438	0.875	+0.220 –0.080	13.6	0.0
	Over 13.59 up to and including 17.60	36										
	Over 17.60	38										

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14. *(Continued)* **Double V-Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions** *ANSI/RMA IP-21, 1984*

Deep Groove Dimensions[c]											Drive Design Factors	
Cross Section	Outside Diameter Range	Groove Angle, α ±0.33°	b_g		h_g (Min.)	$2h_d$	R_B (Min.)	d_B ±0.0005	S_g[a] ±0.025	S_r		Minimum Recommended Outside Diameter	$2a_p$
AA	Up through 5.96	34	0.589	±0.005	0.615	0.560	–0.009	0.4375	0.750	0.438	+0.090	3.56	0.310
	Over 5.96	38	0.611				–0.008	(7/16)			–0.062		
BB	Up through 7.71	34	0.747	±0.006	0.730	0.710	+0.007	0.5625	0.875	0.562	+0.120	6.11	0.360
	Over 7.71	38	0.774				+0.008	(9/16)			–0.065		
CC	Up through 9.00	34											
	Over 9.00 up to and including 13.01	36	1.066 1.085 1.105	} ±0.007	1.055	1.010	–0.035 –0.032 –0.031	0.7812 (25/32)	1.250	0.812	+0.160 –0.070	10.01	0.610
	Over 13.01	38											
DD	Up through 14.42	34											
	Over 14.42 up to and including 18.43	36	1.513 1.541 1.569	} ±0.008	1.435	1.430	–0.010 –0.009 –0.008	1.1250 (1 1/8)	1.750	1.062	+0.220 –0.080	14.43	0.830
	Over 18.43	38											

[a] Summation of the deviations from S_g for all grooves in any one sheave shall not exceed ±0.050 in. The variation in pitch diameter between the grooves in any one sheave must be within the following limits: Up through 19.9 in. outside diameter and up through 6 grooves: 0.010 in. (add 0.005 in. for each additional groove). 20.0 in. and over on outside diameter and up through 10 grooves: 0.015 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). This variation can be obtained easily by measuring the distance across two measuring balls or rods placed diametrically opposite each other in a groove. Comparing this "diameter over balls or rods" measurement between grooves will give the variation in pitch diameter.

[b] The a_p values shown for the A/B combination sheaves are the geometrically derived values. These values may be different from those shown in manufacturer's catalogs.

[c] Deep groove sheaves are intended for drives with belt offset such as quarter-turn or vertical shaft drives.

Other Sheave Tolerances		
Outside Diameter	Radial Runout[a]	Axial Runout[a]
Up through 4.0 in. outside diameter ±0.020 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add ±0.005 in.	Up through 10.0 in. outside diameter ±0.010 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.0005 in.	Up through 5.0 in. outside diameter 0.005 in. For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.001 in.

[a] Total indicator reading.

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Cross Section Selection: Use the chart (Fig. 6) as a guide to the double V-belt cross section for any combination of design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft. When the intersection of the design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft falls near a line between two areas on the chart, it is best to investigate the possibilities in both areas. Special circumstances (such as space limitations) may lead to a choice of belt cross section different from that indicated in the chart.

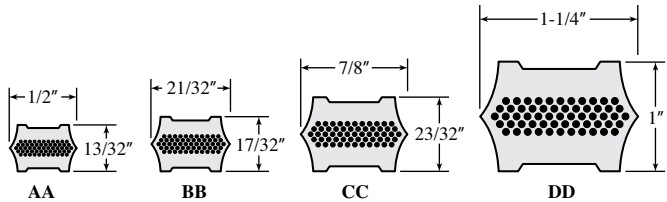


Fig. 5. Double-V Belt Cross Section

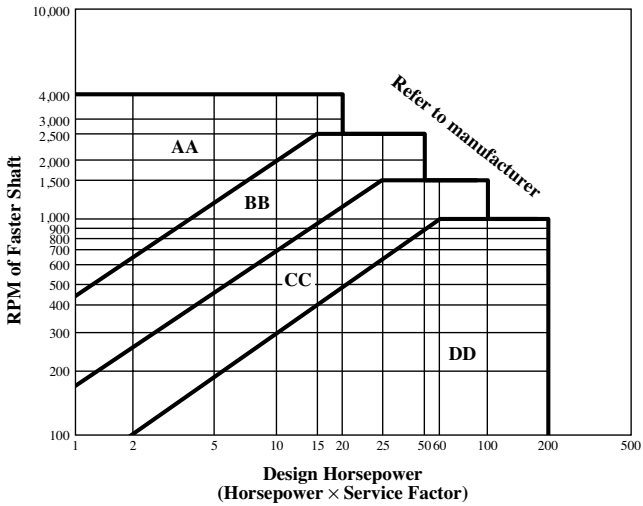


Fig. 6. Selection of Double V-Belt Cross Section

Effective Diameter Determination: Fig. 6 shows the relationship of effective diameter, outside diameter, and nomenclature diameter. Nomenclature diameter is used when ordering sheaves for double V-belt drives. The effective diameter is determined as follows:

$$\text{Effective diameter} = \text{Nomenclature diameter} \quad 2h_d - 2a_p$$

The values of $2h_d$ and $2a_p$ are given in Table 14.

Double V-belt Length Determination: The effective belt length of a specific drive may be determined by making a scaled layout of the drive. Draw the sheaves in terms of their

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

effective diameters and in the position when a new belt is applied and first brought to driving tension. Next, measure the tangents and calculate the effective arc length (AL_e) of each sheave (see Table 15 for a glossary of terms):

$$AL_e = \frac{d_e\theta}{115}$$

The effective length of the belt will then be the sum of the tangents and the connecting arc lengths. Manufacturers may be consulted for mathematical calculation of effective belt length for specific drive applications.

Table 15. Glossary of Terms for Double V-belt Calculations

AL_e =	Length, arc, effective, in.	R =	Ratio, tight side to slack side tension
$2a_p$ =	Diameter, differential, pitch to outside, in.	$R/(R-1)$ =	Factor, tension ratio
d =	Diameter, pitch, in. (same as effective diameter)	r =	Angular velocity, faster shaft, rpm/1000
d_e =	Diameter, effective, in.	S =	Speed, belt, fpm/1000
$2h_d$ =	Diameter differential, nomenclature to outside, in.	T_e =	Tension, effective pull, lbf
K_f =	Factor, length-flex correction	T_r =	Tension, allowable tight side, lbf
L_e =	Length, effective, in.	T_S =	Tension, slack side, lbf
n =	Sheaves, number on drive	T_T =	Tension, tight side, lbf
P_d =	Power, design, horsepower (transmitted horsepower × service factor)	θ =	Angle, arc of belt contact, deg

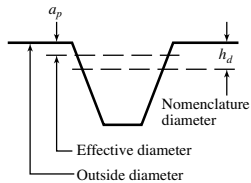


Fig. 7. Effective, Outside, and Nomenclature Sheave Diameters

Number of Belts Determination: The number of belts required may be determined on the basis of allowable tight side tension rating (T_r) at the most severe sheave. The allowable tight side tensions per belt are given in Table 16 through Table 19, and must be multiplied by the length-flex correction factors (K_f) listed in Table 20. To select the allowable tight side tension from the tables for a given sheave, the belt speed and effective diameter of the sheave in question are required.

Double V-Belt Drive Design Method: The fourteen drive design steps are as follows:

1) Number the sheaves starting from the driver in the opposite direction to belt rotation; include the idlers.

2) Select the proper service factor for each loaded driven unit.

3) Multiply the horsepower requirement for each loaded driven sheave by the corresponding service factor. This is the design horsepower at each sheave.

4) Calculate driver design horsepower. This hp is equal to the sum of all the driven design horsepower.

5) Calculate belt speed (S) in thousands of feet per minute: $S = rd/3.820$.

6) Calculate effective tension (T_e) for each loaded sheave: $T_e = 33P_d/S$.

7) Determine minimum $R/(R-1)$ for each loaded sheave from Table 21 using the arc of contact determined from the drive layout.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

8) In most drives, slippage will occur first at the driver sheave. Assume this to be true and calculate T_T and T_S for the driver: $T_T = T_e\,[R/(R-1)]$ and $T_s = T_T - T_e$. Use $R/(R-1)$ from Step 7 and T_e from Step 6 for the driver sheave.

9) Starting with the first driven sheave, determine T_T and T_S for each segment of the drive. The T_T for the driver becomes T_S for that sheave and is equal to $T_T - T_e$. Proceed around the drive in like manner.

10) Calculate actual $R/(R-1)$ for each sheave using: $R/(R-1) = T_T/T_e = T_T/(T_T - T_S)$. The T_T and T_S values are for those determined in Step 9. If these values are equal to or greater than those determined in Step 7, the assumption that slippage will first occur at the driver is correct and the next two steps are not necessary. If the value is less, the assumption was not correct, so proceed with Step 11.

11) Take the sheave where the actual value $R/(R-1)$ (Step 10) is less than the minimum, as determined in Step 7, and calculate a new T_T and T_S for this sheave using the minimum $R/(R-1)$ as determined in Step 7: $T_T = T_e\,[R/(R-1)]$ and $T_S = T_T - T_e$.

12) Start with this sheave and recalculate the tension in each segment of the drive as in Step 9.

13) The length-flex factor (K_f) is taken from Table 20. Before using this table, calculate the value of L_e/n. Be sure to use the appropriate belt cross section column when selecting the correction factor.

14) Beginning with the driver sheave, determine the number of belts (N_b) needed to satisfy the conditions at each loaded sheave using: $N_b = T_T/T_r K_f$. Note: T_T is tight side tension as determined in Step 9 or 11 and 12. T_r is allowable tight side tension as shown in Table 18-Table 21. K_f is the length-flex correction factor from Table 20. The sheave that requires the largest number of belts is the number of belts required for the drive. Any fraction of a belt should be treated as a whole belt.

Table 16. Allowable Tight Side Tension for an AA Section

Belt Speed (fpm)	Sheave Effective Diameter (in.)							
	3.0	3.5	4.0	4.5	5.0	5.5	6.0	6.5
200	30	46	57	66	73	79	83	88
400	23	38	49	58	65	71	76	80
600	18	33	44	53	60	66	71	75
800	14	30	41	50	57	63	67	72
1000	12	27	38	47	54	60	65	69
1200	9	24	36	45	52	57	62	66
1400	7	22	34	42	49	55	60	64
1600	5	20	32	40	47	53	58	62
1800	3	18	30	38	46	51	56	60
2000	1	16	28	37	44	50	54	58
2200	…	15	26	35	42	48	53	57
2400	…	13	24	33	40	46	51	55
2600	…	11	23	31	39	44	49	53
2800	…	9	21	30	37	43	47	51
3000	…	8	19	28	35	41	46	50
3200	…	6	17	26	33	39	44	48
3400	…	4	16	24	31	37	42	46
3600	…	2	14	23	30	35	40	44
3800	…	1	12	21	28	34	38	43
4000	…	…	10	19	26	32	37	41
4200	…	…	8	17	24	30	35	39
4400	…	…	6	15	22	28	33	37
4600	…	…	4	13	20	26	31	35
4800	…	…	2	11	18	24	29	33
5000	…	…	…	9	16	22	27	31
5200	…	…	…	7	14	20	24	28
5400	…	…	…	4	12	17	22	26
5600	…	…	…	2	9	15	20	24
5800	…	…	…	…	7	13	18	22

The allowable tight side tension must be evaluated for each sheave in the system (see Step 14). Values must be corrected by K_f from Table 20.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17. Allowable Tight Side Tension for a BB Section

Belt Speed (fpm)	Sheave Effective Diameter (in.)								
	5.0	5.5	6.0	6.5	7.0	7.5	8.0	8.5	9.0
200	81	93	103	111	119	125	130	135	140
400	69	81	91	99	107	113	118	123	128
600	61	74	84	92	99	106	111	116	121
800	56	68	78	87	94	101	106	111	115
1000	52	64	74	83	90	96	102	107	111
1200	48	60	71	79	86	93	98	103	107
1400	45	57	67	76	83	89	95	100	104
1600	42	54	64	73	80	86	92	97	101
1800	39	51	61	70	77	84	89	94	98
2000	36	49	59	67	74	81	86	91	96
2200	34	46	56	64	72	78	84	89	93
2400	31	43	53	62	69	75	81	86	90
2600	29	41	51	59	67	73	78	83	88
2800	26	38	48	57	64	70	76	81	85
3000	23	35	45	54	61	68	73	78	82
3200	21	33	43	51	59	65	70	75	80
3400	18	30	40	49	56	62	68	73	77
3600	15	27	37	46	53	59	65	70	74
3800	12	24	35	43	50	57	62	67	71
4000	9	22	32	40	47	54	59	64	69
4200	7	19	29	37	45	51	56	61	66
4400	4	16	26	34	42	48	53	58	63
4600	1	13	23	31	39	45	50	55	60
4800	…	10	20	28	35	42	47	52	57
5000	…	6	16	25	32	39	44	49	53
5200	…	3	13	22	29	35	41	46	50
5400	…	…	10	18	26	32	38	42	47
5600	…	…	6	15	22	29	34	39	43
5800	…	…	3	11	19	25	31	36	40

The allowable tight side tension must be evaluated for each sheave in the system (see Step 14). Values must be corrected by K_f from Table 20.

Table 18. Allowable Tight Side Tension for a CC Section

Belt Speed (fpm)	Sheave Effective Diameter (in.)								
	7.0	8.0	9.0	10.0	11.0	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0
200	121	158	186	207	228	244	257	268	278
400	99	135	164	187	206	221	234	246	256
600	85	122	151	173	192	208	221	232	242
800	75	112	141	164	182	198	211	222	232
1000	67	104	133	155	174	190	203	214	224
1200	60	97	126	149	167	183	196	207	217
1400	54	91	120	142	161	177	190	201	211
1600	48	85	114	137	155	171	184	196	205
1800	43	80	108	131	150	166	179	190	200
2000	38	75	103	126	145	160	174	185	195
2200	33	70	98	121	140	155	169	180	190
2400	28	65	93	116	135	150	164	175	185
2600	23	60	88	111	130	145	159	170	180
2800	18	55	83	106	125	140	154	165	175
3000	13	50	78	101	120	135	149	160	170
3200	8	45	73	96	115	130	144	155	165
3400	3	39	68	91	110	125	138	150	160
3600	…	34	63	86	104	120	133	145	154
3800	…	29	58	80	99	115	128	139	149
4000	…	24	52	75	94	109	123	134	144
4200	…	18	47	70	88	104	117	128	138
4400	…	12	41	64	83	98	112	123	133
4600	…	7	35	58	77	93	106	117	127
4800	…	1	29	52	71	87	100	111	121
5000	…	…	23	46	65	81	94	105	115
5200	…	…	17	40	59	75	88	99	109
5400	…	…	11	34	53	68	81	93	103
5600	…	…	5	27	46	62	75	86	96
5800	…	…	…	21	40	55	68	80	90

The allowable tight side tension must be evaluated for each sheave in the system (see Step 14). Values must be corrected by K_f from Table 20.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. Allowable Tight Side Tension for a DD Section

Belt Speed (fpm)	Sheave Effective Diameter (in.)								
	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0	16.0	17.0	18.0	19.0	20.0
200	243	293	336	373	405	434	459	482	503
400	195	245	288	325	358	386	412	434	455
600	167	217	259	297	329	358	383	406	426
800	146	196	239	276	308	337	362	385	405
1000	129	179	222	259	291	320	345	368	389
1200	114	164	207	244	277	305	331	353	374
1400	101	151	194	231	263	292	318	340	361
1600	89	139	182	219	251	280	305	328	349
1800	78	128	170	207	240	269	294	317	337
2000	67	117	159	196	229	258	283	306	326
2200	56	106	149	186	218	247	272	295	316
2400	45	95	138	175	208	236	262	284	305
2600	35	85	128	165	197	226	251	274	294
2800	24	74	117	154	187	215	241	263	284
3000	14	64	106	144	176	205	230	253	273
3200	3	53	96	133	165	194	219	242	263
3400	…	42	85	122	155	183	209	231	252
3600	…	31	74	111	144	172	198	220	241
3800	…	20	63	100	132	161	186	209	230
4000	…	9	51	89	121	150	175	198	218
4200	…	…	40	77	109	138	163	186	207
4400	…	…	28	65	97	126	152	174	195
4600	…	…	16	53	85	114	139	162	183
4800	…	…	3	40	73	102	127	150	170
5000	…	…	…	28	60	89	114	137	158
5200	…	…	…	15	47	76	101	124	145
5400	…	…	…	1	34	62	88	111	131
5600	…	…	…	…	20	49	74	97	118
5800	…	…	…	…	6	35	60	83	104

The allowable tight side tension must be evaluated for each sheave in the system (see Step 14). Values must be corrected by K_f from Table 20.

Table 20. Length-Flex Correction Factors K_f

$\frac{L_e}{n}$	Belt Cross Section				$\frac{L_e}{n}$	Belt Cross Section			
	AA	BB	CC	DD		AA	BB	CC	DD
10	0.64	0.58	…	…	70	…	1.03	0.95	0.91
15	0.74	0.68	…	…	80	…	1.06	0.98	0.94
20	0.82	0.74	0.68	…	90	…	1.09	1.00	0.96
25	0.87	0.79	0.73	0.70	100	…	1.11	1.03	0.99
30	0.92	0.84	0.77	0.74	110	…	…	1.05	1.00
35	0.96	0.87	0.80	0.77	120	…	…	1.06	1.02
40	0.99	0.90	0.83	0.80	130	…	…	1.08	1.04
45	1.02	0.93	0.86	0.82	140	…	…	1.10	1.05
50	1.05	0.95	0.88	0.84	150	…	…	1.11	1.07
60	…	0.99	0.92	0.88	…	…	…	…	…

Tension Ratings: The tension rating formulas are:

$$\text{AA} \quad T_r = 118.5 - \frac{318.2}{d} - 0.8380S^2 - 25.76\log S$$

$$\text{BB} \quad T_r = 186.3 - \frac{665.1}{d} - 1.269S^2 - 39.02\log S$$

$$\text{CC} \quad T_r = 363.9 - \frac{2060}{d} - 2.400S^2 - 73.77\log S$$

$$\text{DD} \quad T_r = 783.1 - \frac{7790}{d} - 5.078S^2 - 156.1\log S$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where T_r = allowable tight side tension for a double-V belt drive, lbf (not corrected for tension ratio or length-flex correction factor)

d = pitch diameter of small sheave, inch

S = belt speed, fpm/1000

Table 21. Tension Ratio/Arc of Contact Factors

Arc of Contact, θ (deg.)	Design $\frac{R}{R-1}$	Arc of Contact, θ (deg.)	Design $\frac{R}{R-1}$
300	1.07	170	1.28
290	1.08	160	1.31
280	1.09	150	1.35
270	1.10	140	1.40
260	1.11	130	1.46
250	1.12	120	1.52
240	1.13	110	1.60
230	1.15	100	1.69
220	1.16	90	1.81
210	1.18	80	1.96
200	1.20	70	2.15
190	1.22	60	2.41
180	1.25	50	2.77

Minimum Sheave Size: The recommended minimum sheave size depends on the rpm of the faster shaft. Minimum groove diameters for each belt cross section are listed in Table 14.

Light Duty V-Belts ANSI/RMA IP-23.—Light duty V-belts are typically used with fractional horsepower motors or small engines, and are designed primarily for fractional horsepower service. These belts are intended and specifically designed for use with small diameter sheaves and drives of loads and service requirements that are within the capacity of a single belt.

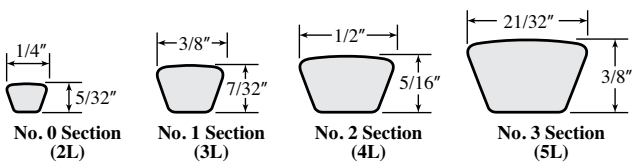


Fig. 8. Light Duty V-Belt Cross Sections

The four belt cross sections and sheave groove sizes are 2L, 3L, 4L, and 5L. The 2L is generally used only by OEMs and is not covered in the RMA standards.

Belt Cross Sections.—Nominal dimensions of the four cross sections are given in Fig. 8.

Belt Size Designation.—V-belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number, consisting of a letter-numeral combination. The first number and letter identify the cross section; the remaining numbers identify length as shown in Table 22. For example, a 3L520 belt has a 3L cross section and a length of 52.0 in.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 22. Light Duty V-Belt Standard Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-23, 1968*

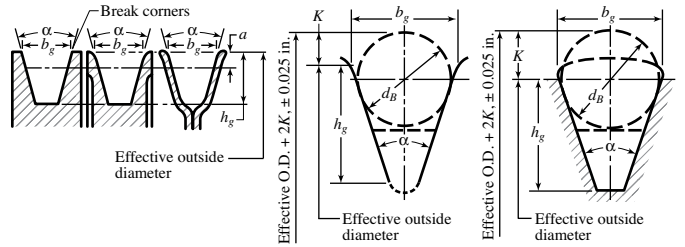
Standard Effective Outside Length (in.)				Permissible Deviation From Standard Effective Length (in.)	Standard Effective Outside Length (in.)				Permissible Deviation From Standard Effective Length (in.)
Cross Section					Cross Section				
2L	3L	4L	5L		2L	3L	4L	5L	
8	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	53	53	+0.25, –0.62
9	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	54	54	54	+0.25, –0.62
10	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	55	55	+0.25, –0.62
11	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	56	56	56	+0.25, –0.62
12	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	57	57	+0.25, –0.62
13	…	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	58	58	58	+0.25, –0.62
14	14	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	59	59	+0.25, –0.62
15	15	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	60	60	60	+0.25, –0.62
16	16	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	61	61	+0.31, –0.69
17	17	…	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	62	62	+0.31, –0.69
18	18	18	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	63	63	+0.31, –0.69
19	19	19	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	64	64	+0.31, –0.69
20	20	20	…	+0.12, –0.38	…	…	65	65	+0.31, –0.69
…	21	21	…	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	66	66	+0.31, –0.69
…	22	22	…	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	67	67	+0.31, –0.69
…	23	23	…	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	68	68	+0.31, –0.69
…	24	24	…	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	69	69	+0.31, –0.69
…	25	25	25	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	70	70	+0.31, –0.69
…	26	26	26	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	71	71	+0.31, –0.69
…	27	27	27	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	72	72	+0.31, –0.69
…	28	28	28	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	73	73	+0.31, –0.69
…	29	29	29	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	74	74	+0.31, –0.69
…	30	30	30	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	75	75	+0.31, –0.69
…	31	31	31	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	76	76	+0.31, –0.69
…	32	32	32	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	77	77	+0.31, –0.69
…	33	33	33	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	78	78	+0.31, –0.69
…	34	34	34	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	79	79	+0.31, –0.69
…	35	35	35	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	80	80	+0.62, –0.88
…	36	36	36	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	82	82	+0.62, –0.88
…	37	37	37	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	84	84	+0.62, –0.88
…	38	38	38	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	86	86	+0.62, –0.88
…	39	39	39	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	88	88	+0.62, –0.88
…	40	40	40	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	90	90	+0.62, –0.88
…	41	41	41	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	92	92	+0.62, –0.88
…	42	42	42	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	94	94	+0.62, –0.88
…	43	43	43	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	96	96	+0.62, –0.88
…	44	44	44	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	98	98	+0.62, –0.88
…	45	45	45	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	100	100	+0.62, –0.88
…	46	46	46	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…
…	47	47	47	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…
…	48	48	48	+0.25, –0.62					
…	49	49	49	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…
…	50	50	50	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…
…	…	51	51	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…
…	52	52	52	+0.25, –0.62	…	…	…	…	…

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sheave Dimensions: Groove angles and dimensions for sheaves and various sheave tolerances are given in Table 23.

Table 23. Light Duty V-Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions
ANSI/RMA IP-23, 1968



Belt Section	Effective Outside Diameter: Min. Recomm.	Effective Outside Diameter: Range	α Groove Angle ±0°20′ (deg)	d_B Ball Diameter ±0.0005	2K	b_g (Ref)	h_g (min)	2a[a]
2L	0.8	Less than 1.50	32	0.2188	0.176	0.240	0.250	0.04
		1.50 to 1.99	34		0.182			
		2.00 to 2.50	36		0.188			
		Over 2.50	38		0.194			
3L	1.5	Less than 2.20	32	0.3125	0.177	0.364	0.406	0.06
		2.20 to 3.19	34		0.191			
		3.20 to 4.20	36		0.203			
		Over 4.20	38		0.215			
4L	2.5	Less than 2.65	30	0.4375	0.299	0.490	0.490	0.10
		2.65 to 3.24	32		0.316			
		3.25 to 5.65	34		0.331			
		Over 5.65	38		0.358			
5L	3.5	Less than 3.95	30	0.5625	0.385	0.630	0.580	0.16
		3.95 to 4.94	32		0.406			
		4.95 to 7.35	34		0.426			
		Over 7.35	38		0.461			

[a] The diameter used in calculating speed ratio and belt speed is obtained by subtracting the 2*a* value from the Effective Outside Diameter of the sheave.

Other Sheave Tolerances					
Outside Diameters		Outside Diameter Eccentricity[a]		Groove Side Wobble & Runout[a]	
For outside diameters:		For outside diameters:		For outside diameters:	
Under 6.0 in.	±0.015 in.	10.0 in. and under	0.010 in.	20.0 in. and under	0.0015 in. per inch of outside diameter.
6.0 to 12.0 in.	±0.020 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter, add 0.0005 in.			
Over 12.0 in.	±0.040 in.			For each additional inch of outside diameter, add 0.0005 in.	

[a] Total indicator reading.

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Horsepower Ratings: The horsepower ratings for light duty V-belts can be calculated from the following formulas:

$$3L \quad HP = r\left(\frac{0.2164d^{0.91}}{r^{0.09}} - 0.2324 - 0.0001396r^2d^3\right)$$

$$4L \quad HP = r\left(\frac{0.4666d^{0.91}}{r^{0.09}} - 0.7231 - 0.0002286r^2d^3\right)$$

$$5L \quad HP = r\left(\frac{0.7748d^{0.91}}{r^{0.09}} - 1.727 - 0.0003641r^2d^3\right)$$

where $d = d_0 - 2a$; d_0 = effective outside diameter of small sheave, in.; r = rpm of the faster shaft divided by 1000. The corrected horsepower rating is obtained by dividing the horsepower rating by the combined correction factor (Table 24), which accounts for drive geometry and service factor requirements.

Table 24. Combined Correction Factors

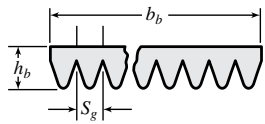
Type of Driven Unit	Speed Ratio	
	Less than 1.5	1.5 and Over
Fans and blowers	1.0	0.9
Domestic laundry machines	1.1	1.0
Centrifugal pumps	1.1	1.0
Generators	1.2	1.1
Rotary compressors	1.2	1.1
Machine tools	1.3	1.2
Reciprocating pumps	1.4	1.3
Reciprocating compressors	1.4	1.3
Woodworking machines	1.4	1.3

V-Ribbed Belts ANSI/RMA IP-26.—V-ribbed belts are a cross between flat belts and V-belts. The belt is basically flat with V-shaped ribs projecting from the bottom, which guide the belt and provide greater stability than that found in a flat belt. The ribs operate in grooved sheaves.

V-ribbed belts do not have the wedging action of a V-belt and thus operate at higher tensions. This design provides excellent performance in high-speed and serpentine applications, and in drives that utilize small diameter sheaves. The V-ribbed belt comes in five cross sections: H, J, K, L, and M, specified by effective length, cross section and number of ribs.

Belt Cross Sections: Nominal dimensions of the five cross sections are given in Table 25.

Table 25. Nominal Dimensions of V-Ribbed Belt Cross Sections
ANSI/RMA IP-26, 1977



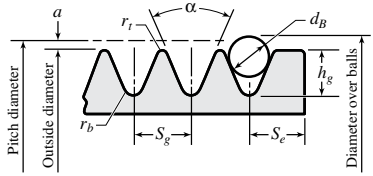
$b_b = N_r \times S_g$, where N_r = number of ribs and S_g is sheave groove spacing

Cross Section	h_b	S_g	Standard Number of Ribs
H	0.12	0.063	…
J	0.16	0.092	4, 6, 10, 16, 20
K	0.24	0.140	…
L	0.38	0.185	6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20
M	0.66	0.370	6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 26. V-Ribbed Belt Sheave and Groove Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-26, 1977*



Face width = $S_g (N_g - 1) + 2S_e$, where N_g is number of grooves

Cross Section	Minimum Recommended Outside Diameter	α Groove Angle ±0.25 (deg)	S_g[a]	r_t +0.005, −0.000	$2a$	r_b	h_g (min)	d_B ±0.0005	S_e
H	0.50	40	0.063 ±0.001	0.005	0.020	0.013 +0.000 −0.005	0.041	0.0469	0.080 +0.020 −0.010
J	0.80	40	0.092 ±0.001	0.008	0.030	0.015 +0.000 −0.005	0.071	0.0625	0.125 +0.030 −0.015
K	1.50	40	0.140 ±0.002	0.010	0.038	0.020 +0.000 −0.005	0.122	0.1093	0.125 +0.050 −0.000
L	3.00	40	0.185 ±0.002	0.015	0.058	0.015 +0.000 −0.005	0.183	0.1406	0.375 +0.075 −0.030
M	7.00	40	0.370 ±0.003	0.030	0.116	0.030 +0.000 −0.010	0.377	0.2812	0.500 +0.100 −0.040

[a] Summation of the deviations from S_g for all grooves in any one sheave shall not exceed ±0.010 in.

Other Sheave Tolerances[a]				
Outside Diameter		Radial Runout[b]		Axial Runout[b]
Outside Diameter:		Outside Diameter:		0.001 in. per inch of outside diameter
Up through 2.9 in.	±0.010 in.	Up through 2.9 in.	0.005 in.	
Over 2.9 in. to and including 8.0 in.	±0.020 in.	Over 2.9 in. to and including 10.0 in.	0.010 in.	
For each additional inch of outside diameter over 8.0 in., add ±0.0025 in.		For each additional inch of outside diameter over 10.0 in., add 0.0005 in.		

[a] Variations in pitch diameter between the grooves in any one sheave must be within the following limits: Up through 2.9 in. outside diameter and up through 6 grooves, 0.002 in. (add 0.001 in. for each additional groove); over 2.9 in. to and including 19.9 in. and up through 10 grooves, 0.005 in. (add 0.0002 in. for each additional groove); over 19.9 in. and up through 10 grooves, 0.010 in. (add 0.0005 in. for each additional groove). This variation can be obtained by measuring the distance across two measuring balls or rods placed in the grooves diametrically opposite each other. Comparing this "diameter-over-balls or -rods" measurement between grooves will give the variation in pitch diameter.

[b] Total indicator reading.

All dimensions in inches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Belt Size Designation: Belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number, which consists of belt effective length to the nearest tenth of an inch, a letter designating cross section, and the number of ribs. For example, 540L6 signifies a 54.0 in. effective length, L belt, 6 ribs wide.

Sheave Dimensions: Groove angles and dimensions for sheaves and face widths of sheaves for multiple belt drives are given in Table 26, along with various tolerance values.

Cross Section Selection: Use the chart (Fig. 9) as a guide to the V-ribbed belt cross section for any combination of design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft. When the intersection of the design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft falls near a line between two areas on the chart, the possibilities in both areas should be explored. Special circumstances (such as space limitations) may lead to a choice of belt cross section different from that indicated in the chart. H and K cross sections are not included because of their specialized use. Belt manufacturers should be contacted for specific data.

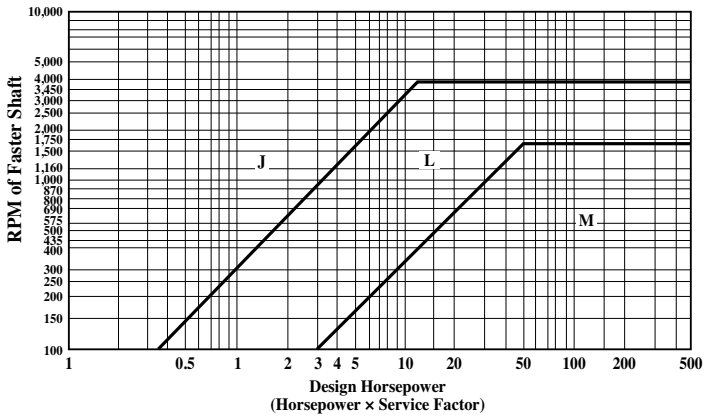


Fig. 9. Selection of V-Ribbed Belt Cross Section

Horsepower Ratings: The horsepower rating formulas are:

$$\textbf{J:HP} = d_p r\left[\frac{0.1240}{(d_p r)^{0.09}} - \frac{0.08663}{d_p} - 0.2318\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2\right] + .0\ 08663r\left[1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right]$$

$$\textbf{L:HP} = d_p r\left[\frac{0.5761}{(d_p r)^{0.09}} - \frac{0.8987}{d_p} - 1.018\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2\right] + .0\ 8987r\left[1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right]$$

$$\textbf{M:HP} = d_p r\left[\frac{1.975}{(d_p r)^{0.09}} - \frac{6.597}{d_p} - 3.922\times10^{-4}(d_p r)^2\right] + .6\ 597r\left[1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right]$$

In these equations, d_p = pitch diameter of the small sheave, in.; r = rpm of the faster shaft divided by 1000; K_{SR} = speed ratio factor given in the accompanying Table 30. These formulas give the maximum horsepower per rib recommended, corrected for the speed ratio. To obtain the horsepower per rib for an arc of contact other than 180 degrees, and for belts longer or shorter than the average length, multiply the horsepower obtained from these formulas by the length correction factor (Table 28) and the arc of contact correction factor (Table 29).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 27. V-Ribbed Belt Standard Effective Lengths *ANSI/RMA IP-26, 1977*

J Cross Section			L Cross Section			M Cross Section		
Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Length	Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Length	Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Standard Length Designation[a]	Standard Effective Length	Permissible Deviation from Standard Length
180	18.0	+0.2, −0.2	500	50.0	+0.2, −0.4	900	90.0	+0.4, −0.7
190	19.0	+0.2, −0.2	540	54.0	+0.2, −0.4	940	94.0	+0.4, −0.8
200	20.0	+0.2, −0.2	560	56.0	+0.2, −0.4	990	99.0	+0.4, −0.8
220	22.0	+0.2, −0.2	615	61.5	+0.2, −0.5	1060	106.0	+0.4, −0.8
240	24.0	+0.2, −0.2	635	63.5	+0.2, −0.5	1115	111.5	+0.4, −0.9
260	26.0	+0.2, −0.2	655	65.5	+0.2, −0.5	1150	115.0	+0.4, −0.9
280	28.0	+0.2, −0.2	675	67.5	+0.3, −0.6	1185	118.5	+0.4, −0.9
300	30.0	+0.2, −0.3	695	69.5	+0.3, −0.6	1230	123.0	+0.4, −1.0
320	32.0	+0.2, −0.3	725	72.5	+0.3, −0.6	1310	131.0	+0.5, −1.1
340	34.0	+0.2, −0.3	765	76.5	+0.3, −0.6	1390	139.0	+0.5, −1.1
360	36.0	+0.2, −0.3	780	78.0	+0.3, −0.6	1470	147.0	+0.6, −1.2
380	38.0	+0.2, −0.3	795	79.5	+0.3, −0.6	1610	161.0	+0.6, −1.2
400	40.0	+0.2, −0.4	815	81.5	+0.3, −0.7	1650	165.0	+0.6, −1.3
430	43.0	+0.2, −0.4	840	84.0	+0.3, −0.7	1760	176.0	+0.7, −1.4
460	46.0	+0.2, −0.4	865	86.5	+0.3, −0.7	1830	183.0	+0.7, −1.4
490	49.0	+0.2, −0.4	915	91.5	+0.4, −0.7	1980	198.0	+0.8, −1.6
520	52.0	+0.2, −0.4	975	97.5	+0.4, −0.8	2130	213.0	+0.8, −1.6
550	55.0	+0.2, −0.4	990	99.0	+0.4, −0.8	2410	241.0	+0.9, −1.6
580	58.0	+0.2, −0.5	1065	106.5	+0.4, −0.8	2560	256.0	+1.0, −1.8
610	61.0	+0.2, −0.5	1120	112.0	+0.4, −0.9	2710	271.0	+1.1, −2.2
650	65.0	+0.2, −0.5	1150	115.0	+0.4, −0.9	3010	301.0	+1.2, −2.4

[a] To specify belt size, use the standard length designation, followed by the letter indicating belt cross section and the number of ribs desired. For example: 865L10.
All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 28. Length Correction Factors

Std. Length Designation	Cross Section			Std. Length Designation	Cross Section		
	J	L	M		J	L	M
180	0.83	…	…	1230	…	1.08	0.94
200	0.85	…	…	1310	…	1.10	0.96
240	0.89	…	…	1470	…	1.12	0.098
280	0.92	…	…	1610	…	1.14	1.00
320	0.95	…	…	1830	…	1.17	1.03
360	0.98	…	…	1980	…	1.19	1.05
400	1.00	…	…	2130	…	1.21	1.06
440	1.02	…	…	2410	…	1.24	1.09
500	1.05	0.89	…	2710	…	…	1.12
550	1.07	0.91	…	3010	…	…	1.14
610	1.09	0.93	…	3310	…	…	1.16
690	1.12	0.96	…	3610	…	…	1.18
780	1.16	0.98	…	3910	…	…	1.20
910	1.18	1.02	0.88	4210	…	…	1.22
940	1.19	1.02	0.89	4810	…	…	1.25
990	1.20	1.04	0.90	5410	…	…	1.28
1060	…	1.05	0.91	6000	…	…	1.30
1150	…	1.07	0.93	…	…	…	…

Table 29. Arc of Contact Correction Factors

$\frac{D_o - d_o}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, on Small Sheave, (deg)	Correction Factor
0.00	180	1.00
0.10	174	0.98
0.20	169	0.97
0.30	163	0.95
0.40	157	0.94
0.50	151	0.92
0.60	145	0.90
0.70	139	0.88
0.80	133	0.85
0.90	127	0.83
1.00	120	0.80
1.10	113	0.77
1.20	106	0.74
1.30	99	0.71
1.40	91	0.67
1.50	83	0.63

Number of Ribs: The number of ribs required for an application is obtained by dividing the design horsepower by the corrected horsepower rating for one rib.

Arc of contact on the small sheave may be determined by the following formulas:

Exact Formula: $\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 2\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{D_o - d_o}{2C}\right)$

Approximate Formula: $\text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 180 - \frac{(D_o - d_o)60}{C}$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

D_o = effective outside diameter of large sheave, inch; d_o = effective outside diameter of small sheave, inch; and, C = center distance, inch.

Table 30. Speed Ratio Correction Factors

Speed Ratio[a]	K_{SR}
1.00 to and incl. 1.10	1.0000
Over 1.01 to and incl. 1.04	1.0136
Over 1.04 to and incl. 1.08	1.0276
Over 1.08 to and incl. 1.12	1.0419
Over 1.12 to and incl. 1.18	1.0567
Over 1.18 to and incl. 1.24	1.0719
Over 1.24 to and incl. 1.34	1.0875
Over 1.34 to and incl. 1.51	1.1036
Over 1.51 to and incl. 1.99	1.1202
Over 1.99	1.1373

[a] D_p/d_p, where D_p (d_p) is the pitch diameter of the large (small) sheave.

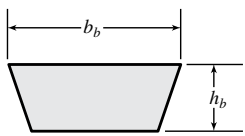
Variable Speed Belts ANSI/ RMA IP-25.—For drives that require more speed variation than can be obtained with conventional industrial V-belts, standard-line variable-speed drives are available. These drives use special wide, thin belts. Package units of standard-line variable-speed belts and sheaves, combined with the motor and output gearbox, are available in ranges from approximately $^1/_2$ through 100 horsepower.

The speed ranges of variable-speed drives can be much greater than those drives using classical V-belts. Speed ranges up to 10:1 can be obtained on lower horsepower units.

This section covers 12 variable speed belt cross sections and sheave groove sizes designed 1422V, 1922V, 2322V, 1926V, 2926V, 3226V, 2530V, 3230V, 4430V, 4036V, 4436V, and 4836V. The industry supplies many other sizes that are not listed in this section.

Belt Cross Sections and Lengths: Nominal dimensions of the 12 cross sections are given in Table 31, and lengths in Table 32.

Table 31. Normal Variable-Speed Belt Dimensions *ANSI/RMA IP-25, 1982*



Cross Section	b_b	h_b	h_b/b_b	Cross Section	b_b	h_b	h_b/b_b
1422V	0.88	0.31	0.35	2530V	1.56	0.59	0.38
1922V	1.19	0.38	0.32	3230V	2.00	0.62	0.31
2322V	1.44	0.44	0.31	4430V	2.75	0.69	0.25
1926V	1.19	0.44	0.37	4036V	2.50	0.69	0.28
2926V	1.81	0.50	0.28	4436V	2.75	0.72	0.26
3226V	2.0	0.53	0.27	4836V	3.00	0.75	0.25

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 32. Variable-Speed V-Belt Standard Belt Lengths *ANSI/RMA IP-25, 1982*

Standard Pitch Length Designation	Standard Effective Lengths — Cross Section												Permissible Deviations from Standard Length
	1422V	1922V	2322V	1926V	2926V	3226V	2530V	3230V	4430V	4036V	4436V	4836V	
315	32.1	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.7
335	34.1	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.7
355	36.1	36.2	…	36.3	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.7
375	38.1	38.2	…	38.3	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.7
400	40.6	40.7	40.8	40.8	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.7
425	43.1	43.2	43.3	43.3	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.8
450	45.6	45.7	45.8	45.8	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.8
475	48.1	48.2	48.3	48.3	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	±0.8
500	50.6	50.7	50.8	50.8	…	…	50.9	…	…	…	…	…	±0.8
530	53.6	53.7	53.8	53.8	53.9	…	53.9	…	…	…	…	…	±0.8
560	56.6	56.7	56.8	56.8	56.9	56.9	56.9	57.1	57.3	57.3	57.3	57.4	±0.9
600	60.6	60.7	60.8	60.8	60.9	60.9	60.9	61.1	61.3	61.3	61.3	61.4	±0.9
630	63.6	63.7	63.8	63.8	63.9	63.9	63.9	64.1	64.3	64.3	64.3	64.4	±0.9
670	67.6	67.7	67.8	67.8	67.9	67.9	67.9	68.1	68.3	68.3	68.3	68.4	±0.9
710	71.6	71.7	71.8	71.8	71.9	71.9	71.9	72.1	72.3	72.3	72.3	72.4	±0.9
750	75.6	75.7	75.8	75.8	75.9	75.9	75.9	76.1	76.3	76.3	76.3	76.4	±1.0
800	…	80.7	80.8	80.8	80.9	80.9	80.9	81.1	81.3	81.3	81.3	81.4	±1.0
850	…	85.7	85.8	85.8	85.9	85.9	85.9	86.1	86.3	86.3	86.3	86.4	±1.1
900	…	90.7	90.8	90.8	90.9	90.9	90.9	91.1	91.3	91.3	91.3	91.4	±1.1
950	…	95.7	95.8	95.8	95.9	95.9	95.9	96.1	96.3	96.3	96.3	96.4	±1.1
1000	…	100.7	100.8	100.8	100.9	100.9	100.9	101.1	101.3	101.3	101.3	101.4	±1.2
1060	…	106.7	106.8	106.8	106.9	106.9	106.9	107.1	107.3	107.3	107.3	107.4	±1.2
1120	…	112.7	112.8	112.8	112.9	112.9	112.9	113.1	113.3	113.3	113.3	113.4	±1.2
1180	…	118.7	118.8	118.8	118.9	118.9	118.9	119.1	119.3	119.3	119.3	119.4	±1.3
1250	…	…	…	…	125.9	125.9	125.9	126.1	126.3	126.3	126.3	126.4	±1.3
1320	…	…	…	…	…	132.9	…	133.1	133.3	133.3	133.3	133.4	±1.3

All dimensions in inches.

The lengths given in this table are not necessarily available from all manufacturers. Availability should be investigated prior to design commitment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 33. Variable-Speed Sheave and Groove Dimensions

	Standard Groove Dimensions									Drive Design Factors			
	Variable					Companion							
Cross Section	α Groove Angle ±0.67 (deg)	b_g[a] Closed +0.000 −0.030	b_{go} Open Max	h_{gv} Min	S_g ±0.03	α Groove Angle ±0.33 (deg)	b_g ±0.010	h_g Min	S_g ±0.03	Min. Recomm. Pitch Diameter	$2a$	$2av$ Max	CL Min
1422V	22	0.875	1.63	2.33	1.82	22	0.875	0.500	1.82	2.0	0.20	3.88	0.08
1922V	22	1.188	2.23	3.14	2.42	22	1.188	0.562	2.42	3.0	0.22	5.36	0.08
2322V	22	1.438	2.71	3.78	2.89	22	1.438	0.625	2.89	3.5	0.25	6.52	0.08
1926V	26	1.188	2.17	2.65	2.36	26	1.188	0.625	2.36	3.0	0.25	4.26	0.08
2926V	26	1.812	3.39	4.00	3.58	26	1.812	0.750	3.58	3.5	0.30	6.84	0.08
3226V	26	2.000	3.75	4.41	3.96	26	2.000	0.781	3.96	4.0	0.30	7.60	0.08
2530V	30	1.562	2.81	3.01	2.98	30	1.562	0.844	2.98	4.0	0.30	4.64	0.10
3230V	30	2.000	3.67	3.83	3.85	30	2.000	0.875	3.85	4.5	0.35	6.22	0.10
4430V	30	2.750	5.13	5.23	5.38	30	2.750	0.938	5.38	5.0	0.40	8.88	0.10
4036V	36	2.500	4.55	3.95	4.80	36	2.500	0.938	4.80	4.5	0.40	6.32	0.10
4436V	36	2.750	5.03	4.33	5.30	36	2.750	0.969	5.30	5.0	0.40	7.02	0.10
4836V	36	3.000	5.51	4.72	5.76	36	3.000	1.000	5.76	6.0	0.45	7.74	0.10

[a] The effective width (b_e), a reference dimension, is the same as the ideal top width of closed variable-speed sheave (b_g) and the ideal top width of the companion sheave (b_g).

Other Sheave Tolerances		
Outside Diameter	Radial Runout[a]	Axial Runout[a]
Up through 4.0 in. outside diameter ±0.020 in.	Up through 10.0 in. outside diameter 0.010 in.	Up through 5.0 in. outside diameter 0.005 in.
For each additional inch of outside diameter add ±0.005 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.0005 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.001 in.

[a] Total indicator reading.

Surface Finish			
Machined Surface Area	Max Surface Roughness Height, R_a (AA) (μ in.)	Machined Surface Area	Max Surface Roughness Height, R_a (AA) (μ in.)
V-Sheave groove sidewalls	125	Straight bores with 0.002 in. or less total tolerance	125
Rim edges and ID, hub ends and OD	500	Taper and straight bores with total tolerance over 0.002 in.	250

All dimensions in inches, except where noted.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Belt Size Designation: Variable-speed belt sizes are identified by a standard belt number. The first two digits denote the belt top width in sixteenths of an inch; the third and fourth digits indicate the angle of the groove in which the belt is designed to operate. Letter V (for variable) follows the first four digits. The digits after the V indicate pitch length to the nearest 0.1 in. For example, 1422V450 is a belt of $^{7}/_{8}$ in. ($^{14}/_{16}$ in.) nominal top width designed to operate in a sheave of 22 degree groove angle and having a pitch length of 45.0 in.

Sheave Groove Data: A variable speed sheave is an assembly of movable parts, designed to permit one or both flanges of the sheave to be moved axially causing a radial movement of the variable speed belt in the sheave groove. This radial movement permits stepless speed variation within the physical limits of the sheave and the belt. A companion sheave may be a solid sheave having a constant diameter and groove profile or another variable sheave. Variable speed sheave designs should conform to the dimensions in Table 33 and Fig. 10. The included angle of the sheaves, top width, and clearance are boundary dimensions. Groove angles and dimensions of companion sheaves should conform to Table 33 and Fig. 11. Various tolerance values are also given in Table 33.

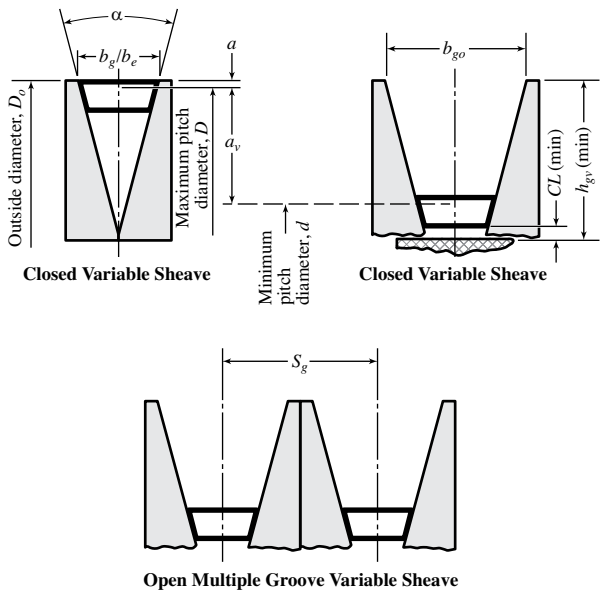


Fig. 10. Variable Sheaves

Variable-Speed Drive Design: Variable-speed belts are designed to operate in sheaves that are an assembly of movable parts. The sheave design permits one or both flanges of the sheave to be moved axially, causing a radial movement of the variable-speed belt in the sheave groove. The result is a stepless speed variation within the physical limits of the sheave and the variable-speed belt. Therefore, besides transmitting power, variable-speed belt drives provide speed variation.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

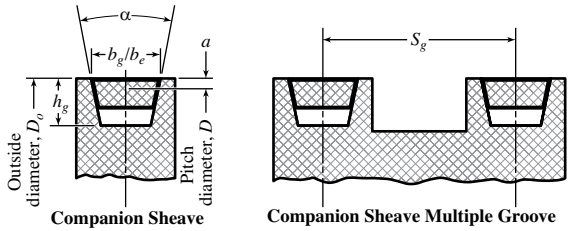


Fig. 11. Companion Sheaves

The factors that determine the amount of pitch diameter change on variable-speed sheaves are belt top width, belt thickness, and sheave angle. This pitch diameter change, combined with the selected operating pitch diameters for a sheave, determines the possible speed variation.

The range of output speeds from a variable-speed sheave drive is established by the companion sheave and is a function of the ratio of the pitch diameter of the companion sheave to the maximum and minimum pitch diameters of the variable sheave. Speed variation is usually obtained by varying the center distance between the two sheaves. This type of drive seldom exceeds a speed variation of 3:1.

For a single variable-speed sheave drive, the speed variation

$$\text{Speed variation} = \frac{\text{PD Max}}{\text{PD Min}} (\text{of variable sheave})$$

For a dual variable-speed sheave drive, which is frequently referred to as a compound drive because both sheaves are variable, the speed variation is

$$\text{Speed variation} = \frac{DR(DN)}{dr(dn)}$$

where DR = max driver PD
DN = max driven PD
dr = min driver PD
dn = min driven PD

With this design, the center distance is generally fixed and speed variation is usually accomplished by mechanically altering the pitch diameter of one sheave. In this type of drive, the other sheave is spring loaded to make an opposite change in the pitch diameter and to provide the correct belt tension. Speed variations of up to 10:1 are common on this type of drive.

Speed Ratio Adjustment: All speed ratio changes must be made while the drives are running. Attempting to make adjustments while the unit is stopped creates unnecessary and possibly destructive forces on both the belt and sheaves. In stationary control drives, the belt tension should be released to allow the flanges to adjust without belt force interference.

Cross Section Selection: Selection of a variable speed belt cross section is based on the drive design horsepower and speed variation. Table 33 shows the maximum pitch diameter variation ($2av$) that each cross section can attain.

Horsepower Ratings: The general horsepower formulas for variable-speed belts are:

$$1422V \text{ HP} = d_p r\left[0.4907(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{0.8378}{d_p} - 0.000337(d_p r)^2\right] + 0.8378r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$1922V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[0.8502(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{1.453}{d_p} - 0.000538(d_p r)^2\right] + 1.453r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$2322V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[1.189(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{2.356}{d_p} - 0.000777(d_p r)^2\right] + 2.356r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$1926V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[1.046(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{1.833}{d_p} - 0.000589(d_p r)^2\right] + 1.833r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$2926V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[1.769(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{4.189}{d_p} - 0.001059(d_p r)^2\right] + 4.189r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$3226V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[2.073(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{5.236}{d_p} - 0.001217(d_p r)^2\right] + 5.236r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$2530V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[2.395(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{6.912}{d_p} - 0.001148(d_p r)^2\right] + 6.912r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$3230V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[2.806(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{7.854}{d_p} - 0.001520(d_p r)^2\right] + 7.854r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$4430V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[3.454(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{7.854}{d_p} - 0.002196(d_p r)^2\right] + 9.818r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$4036V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[3.566(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{9.687}{d_p} - 0.002060(d_p r)^2\right] + 9.687r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$4436V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[4.041(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{11.519}{d_p} - 0.002297(d_p r)^2\right] + 11.519r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

$$4836V\ \ HP = d_p r\left[4.564(d_p r)^{-0.09} - \frac{13.614}{d_p} - 0.002634(d_p r)^2\right] + 13.614r\left(1 - \frac{1}{K_{SR}}\right)$$

In these equations, d_p = pitch diameter of small sheave, in.; r = rpm of faster shaft divided by 1000; K_{SR} = speed ratio factor given in the accompanying Table 34. These formulas give the basic horsepower rating, corrected for the speed ratio. To obtain the horsepower for arcs of contact other than 180 degrees and for belts longer or shorter than average length, multiply the horsepower obtained from these formulas by the arc of contact correction factor (Table 36) and the length correction factor (Table 35).

Table 34. Speed Ratio Correction Factors

Speed Ratio[a]	K_{SR}	Speed Ratio[a]	K_{SR}
1.00-1.01	1.0000	1.19-1.24	1.0719
1.02-1.04	1.0136	1.25-1.34	1.0875
1.05-1.08	1.0276	1.35-1.51	1.1036
1.09-1.12	1.0419	1.52-1.99	1.1202
1.13-1.18	1.0567	2.0 and over	1.1373

[a] D_p/d_p, where D_p (d_p) is the pitch diameter of the large (small) sheave.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 35. Length Correction Factors

Standard Pitch Length Designation	Cross Section											
	1422V	1922V	2322V	1926V	2926V	3226V	2530V	3230V	4430V	4036V	4436V	4836V
315	0.93	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
335	0.94	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
355	0.95	0.90	…	0.90	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
375	0.96	0.91	…	0.91	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
400	0.97	0.92	0.90	0.92	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
425	0.98	0.93	0.91	0.93	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
450	0.99	0.94	0.92	0.94	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
475	1.00	0.95	0.93	0.95	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
500	1.01	0.95	0.94	0.95	…	…	0.90	…	…	…	…	…
530	1.02	0.96	0.95	0.96	0.92	…	0.92	…	…	…	…	…
560	1.03	0.97	0.96	0.97	0.93	0.92	0.93	0.91	0.90	0.91	0.91	0.92
600	1.04	0.98	0.97	0.98	0.94	0.93	0.94	0.93	0.92	0.93	0.92	0.93
630	1.05	0.99	0.98	0.99	0.95	0.94	0.95	0.94	0.93	0.94	0.93	0.94
670	1.06	1.00	0.99	1.00	0.97	0.95	0.96	0.95	0.94	0.95	0.95	0.95
710	1.07	1.01	1.00	1.01	0.98	0.96	0.98	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96	0.96
750	1.08	1.02	1.01	1.02	0.99	0.98	0.99	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.97	0.98
800	…	1.03	1.02	1.03	1.00	0.99	1.00	0.99	0.99	0.99	0.99	0.99
850	…	1.04	1.03	1.04	1.01	1.00	1.01	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
900	…	1.05	1.04	1.05	1.02	1.01	1.02	1.01	1.01	1.01	1.01	1.01
950	…	1.06	1.05	1.06	1.03	1.02	1.04	1.02	1.03	1.02	1.02	1.02
1000	…	1.07	1.06	1.07	1.04	1.03	1.05	1.03	1.04	1.03	1.04	1.03
1060	…	1.08	1.07	1.07	1.06	1.04	1.06	1.05	1.06	1.05	1.05	1.04
1120	…	1.09	1.08	1.08	1.07	1.06	1.07	1.06	1.07	1.06	1.06	1.06
1180	…	1.09	1.09	1.09	1.08	1.07	1.08	1.07	1.08	1.07	1.07	1.07
1250	…	…	…	…	1.09	1.08	1.10	1.08	1.10	1.08	1.09	1.08
1320	…	…	…	…	…	1.09	…	1.09	1.11	1.09	1.10	1.09

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Rim Speed: The material and design selected for sheaves must be capable of withstanding the high rim speeds that may occur in variable-speed drives. The rim speed is calculated as follows: Rim speed (fpm) = (π/12) (D_o) (rpm).

Arc of Contact: Arc of contact on the small sheave may be determined by the formulas:

$$\textit{Exact Formula:}\ \text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 2\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{D-d}{2C}\right)$$

$$\textit{Approximate Formula:}\ \text{Arc of Contact (deg)} = 180 - \frac{(D-d)60}{C}$$

where D = Pitch diameter of large sheave or flat pulley, inch or mm
d = Pitch diameter of small sheave, inch or mm
C = Center distance, inch or mm

Table 36. Arc of Contact Correction Factors

$\frac{D-d}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, on Small Sheave, (deg)	Correction Factor	$\frac{D-d}{C}$	Arc of Contact, θ, on Small Sheave, (deg)	Correction Factor
0.00	180	1.00	0.80	0.80	0.87
0.10	174	0.99	0.90	0.90	0.85
0.20	169	0.97	1.00	1.00	0.82
0.30	163	0.96	1.10	1.10	0.80
0.40	157	0.94	1.20	1.20	0.77
0.50	151	0.93	1.30	1.30	0.73
0.60	145	0.91	1.40	1.40	0.70
0.70	139	0.89	1.50	1.50	0.65

60-Degree V-Belts.— 60-degree V-belts are ideal for compact drives. Their 60-degree angle and ribbed top are specifically designed for long life on small diameter sheaves. These belts offer extremely smooth operation at high speeds (in excess of 10,000 rpm) and can be used on drives with high speed ratios. They are available in 3M, 5M, 7M, and 11M (3, 5, 7, 11 mm) cross sections (top widths) and are commonly found in the joined configuration, which provides extra stability and improved performance. They are specified by cross section and nominal length; for example, a 5M315 designation indicates a belt having a 5 mm cross section and an effective length of 315 mm.

Industry standards have not yet been published for 60-degree V-belts. Belt manufacturers should be contacted for specific applications, specifications, and additional information.

SAE Standard V-Belts.—The data for V-belts and pulleys shown in Table 37 cover nine sizes, three of which — 0.250, 0.315, and 0.440 — were added in 1977 to conform to existing practice. This standard was reaffirmed in 1987.

V-belts are produced in a variety of constructions in a basic trapezoidal shape and are to be dimensioned in such a way that they are functional in pulleys dimensioned as described in the standard. Standard belt lengths are in increments of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) up to and including 80 inches (203.2 cm). Standard lengths above 80 inches up to and including 100 inches (254 cm) are in increments of 1 inch (2.54 cm), without fractions. Standard belt length tolerances are based on the center distance and are as follows: For belt lengths of 50 inches (127 cm) or less, ± 0.12 inch; over 50 to 60 inches (127–152.4 cm), inclusive, ± 0.16 inch; over 60 to 80 inches (152.4–203.2 cm), inclusive, ± 0.19 inch; and over 80 to 100 inches (203.2–254 cm), inclusive, ± 0.22 inch.

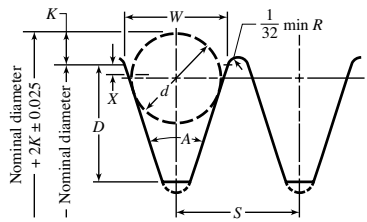
Belt Storage and Handling.—To achieve maximum belt performance, proper belt storage procedures should always be practiced. If belts are not stored properly, their performance can be adversely affected. Four key rules are:

1) Do not store belts on floors unless they are protected by appropriate packaging.

2) Do not store belts near windows where the belts may be exposed to direct sunlight or moisture.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 37. SAE V-Belt and Pulley Dimensions



SAE Size	Recommended Min. Eff Dia[a]	A Groove Angle (deg) ±0.5	W Eff. Groove Width	D Groove Depth Min	d Ball or Rod Dia (±0.0005)	2K 2 × Ball Extension	2X[b]	S Groove[c] Spacing (±0.015)
0.250	2.25	36	0.248	0.276	0.2188	0.164	0.04	0.315
0.315	2.25	36	0.315	0.354	0.2812	0.222	0.05	0.413
0.380	2.40	36	0.380	0.433	0.3125	0.154	0.06	0.541
0.440	2.75	36	0.441	0.512	0.3750	0.231	0.07	0.591
0.500	3.00	36	0.500	0.551	0.4375	0.314	0.08	0.661
11/16	3.00	34	0.597	0.551	0.500	0.258	0.00	0.778
	Over 4.00	36				0.280		
	Over 6.00	38				0.302		
3/4	3.00	34	0.660	0.630	0.5625	0.328	0.02	0.841
	Over 4.00	36				0.352		
	Over 6.00	38				0.374		
7/8	3.50	34	0.785	0.709	0.6875	0.472	0.04	0.966
	Over 4.50	36				0.496		
	Over 6.00	38				0.520		
1	4.00	34	0.910	0.827	0.8125	0.616	0.06	1.091
	Over 6.00	36				0.642		
	Over 8.00	38				0.666		

All dimensions in inches.

[a] Pulley effective diameters below those recommended should be used with caution, because power transmission and belt life may be reduced.

[b] The *X* dimension is radial; 2*X* is to be subtracted from the effective diameter to obtain "pitch diameter" for speed ratio calculations.

[c] These values are intended for adjacent grooves of the same effective width (*W*). Choice of pulley manufacture or belt design parameter may justify variance from these values. The *S* dimension should be the same on all multiple groove pulleys in a drive using matched belts. © 1990, SAE, Inc.

3) Do not store belts near electrical devices that may generate ozone (transformers, electric motors, etc.).

4) Do not store belts in areas where solvents or chemicals are present in the atmosphere.

Belts should be stored in a cool, dry environment. When stacked on shelves, the stacks should be short enough to avoid excess weight on the bottom belts, which may cause distortion. When stored in containers, the container size and contents should be sufficiently limited to avoid distortion.

V-Belts: A common method is to hang the belts on pegs or pin racks. Very long belts stored this way should use sufficiently large pins or crescent-shaped "saddles" to prevent their weight from causing distortion.

Joined V-belts, Synchronous Belts, V-Ribbed Belts: Like V-belts, these belts may be stored on pins or saddles with precautions taken to avoid distortion. However, belts of this

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 38. Service Factors for V-Belts

Driving Unit	*AC Motors:* Normal Torque, Squirrel Cage, Synchronous and Split Phase. *DC Motors:* Shunt Wound. *Engines:* Multiple Cylinder Internal Combustion.		
Types of Driven Machines	Intermittent Service (3-5 hours daily or seasonal)	Normal Service (8-10 hours daily)	Continuous Service (16-24 hours daily)
Agitators for liquids; Blowers and exhausters; Centrifugal pumps & compressors; Fans up to 10 horsepower; Light duty conveyors	1.1	1.2	1.3
Belt conveyors for sand, grain, etc.; Dough mixers; Fans over 10 horsepower; Generators; Line shafts; Laundry machinery; Machine tools; Punches, presses, shears; Printing machinery; Positive displacement rotary pumps; Revolving and vibrating screens	1.2	1.3	1.4
Brick machinery; Bucket elevators; Exciters; Piston compressors; Conveyors (drag, pan, screw); Hammer mills; Paper mill beaters; Piston pumps; Positive displacement blowers; Pulverizers; Saw mill and woodworking machinery; Textile machinery	1.4	1.5	1.6
Crushers (gyratory, jaw, roll); Mills (ball, rod, tube); Hoists; Rubber calendars, extruders, mills	1.5	1.6	1.8

Driving Unit	*AC Motors:* High Torque, High Slip, Repulsion-Induction, Single Phase, Series Wound, Slip Ring. *DC Motors:* Series Wound, Compound Wound. *Engines:* Single Cylinder Internal Combustion. *Line Shafts, Clutches*		
Types of Driven Machines	Intermittent Service (3-5 hours daily or seasonal)	Normal Service (8-10 hours daily)	Continuous Service (16-24 hours daily)
Agitators for liquids; Blowers and exhausters; Centrifugal pumps & compressors; Fans up to 10 horsepower; Light duty conveyors	1.1	1.2	1.3
Belt conveyors for sand, grain, etc.; Dough mixers; Fans over 10 horsepower; Generators; Line shafts; Laundry machinery; Machine tools; Punches, presses, shears; Printing machinery; Positive displacement rotary pumps; Revolving and vibrating screens	1.2	1.3	1.4
Brick machinery; Bucket elevators; Exciters; Piston compressors; Conveyors (drag, pan, screw); Hammer mills; Paper mill beaters; Piston pumps; Positive displacement blowers; Pulverizers; Saw mill and woodworking machinery; Textile machinery	1.4	1.5	1.6
Crushers (gyratory, jaw, roll); Mills (ball, rod, tube); Hoists; Rubber calendars, extruders, mills	1.5	1.6	1.8

The machines listed above are representative samples only. Select the group listed above whose load characteristics most closely approximate those of the machine being considered.

type up to approximately 120 inch (3.05 m) are normally shipped in a "nested" configuration and should be stored in the same manner. Nests are formed by laying a belt on its side on a flat surface and placing as many belts inside the first belt as possible without undue force. When the nests are tight and are stacked with each rotated 180° from the one below, they may be stacked without damage.

Belts of this type over 120 in. may be "rolled up" and tied for shipment. These rolls may be stacked for easy storage. Care should be taken to avoid small bend radii which could damage the belts.

Variable Speed Belts: Variable speed belts are more sensitive to distortion than most other belts, and should not be hung from pins or racks but stored on shelves in the sleeves in which they are shipped.

Service Factors: Service factors for V-belts are listed in Table 38.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Synchronous Belts

Synchronous Belts ANSI/RMA IP-24.—Synchronous belts are also known as timing or positive-drive belts. These belts have evenly spaced teeth on their surfaces, which mesh with teeth on pulleys or sprockets to produce a positive, no-slip transmission of power. Such designs should not be confused with molded notched V-belts, which transmit power by means of the wedging action of the V-shape. Synchronous belts are used where driven shaft speeds must be synchronized to the rotation of the driver shaft and to eliminate the noise and maintenance problems of chain drives.

Standard Timing Belts: Conventional trapezoidal, or rectangular tooth, timing belts come in six cross sections, which relate to the pitch of the belt. Pitch is the distance from center to center of the teeth. The six basic cross sections or pitches are MXL (mini extra light), XL (extra light), L (light), H (heavy), XH (extra heavy), and XXH (double extra heavy) (Fig. 12). Belts are specified by pitch length, cross section (pitch), and width.

Double-sided timing belts have identical teeth on both sides of the belt and are used where synchronization is required from each belt face. They are available in XL, L, and H cross sections.

Size Designations: Synchronous belt sizes are identified by a standard number. The first digits specify the belt length to 0.1 inch (2.54 mm) followed by the belt section (pitch) designation. The digits following the belt section designation represent the nominal belt width times 100. For example, an L section belt 30.000 inches pitch length and 0.75 inch in width would be specified as a 300L075 synchronous belt.

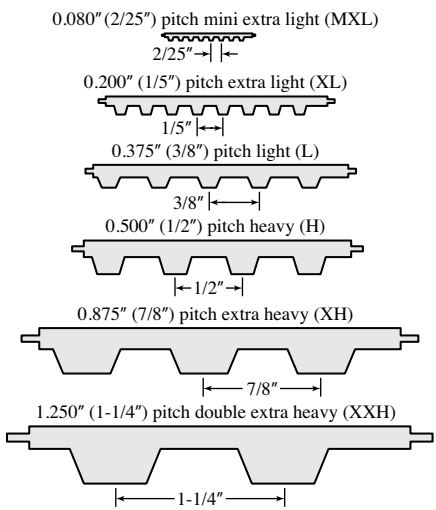


Fig. 12. Standard Synchronous Belt Sections

The RMA nomenclature for double-sided belts is the same as for single-sided belts with the addition of the prefix "D" in front of the belt section. However, some manufacturers use their own designation system for double-sided belts.

Standard Sections: Belt sections are specified in terms of pitch. Table 40 gives the Standard Belt Sections and their corresponding pitches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 39. Service Factors for Synchronous Belt Drives

Driving Units	*AC Motors:* Normal Torque, Squirrel Cage, Synchronous and Split Phase. *DC Motors:* Shunt Wound. *Engines:* Multiple Cylinder Internal Combustion.		
Types of Driven Machines	Intermittent Service (3-5 hours daily or seasonal)	Normal Service (8-10 hours daily)	Continuous Service (16-24 hours daily)
Display, Dispensing, Projection, Medical equipment; Instrumentation; Measuring devices	1.0	1.2	1.4
Appliances, sweepers, sewing machines; Office equipment; Wood lathes, band saws	1.2	1.4	1.6
Conveyors: belt, light package, oven, screens, drums, conical	1.3	1.5	1.7
Agitators for liquids; Dough mixers; Drill presses, lathes; Screw machines, jointers; Circular saws, planes; Laundry, paper, printing machinery	1.4	1.6	1.8
Agitators for semiliquids; Brick machinery (except pug mills); Conveyor belt: ore, coal, sand; Line shafts; Machine tools: grinder, shaper, boring mill, milling machines; Pumps: centrifugal, gear, rotary	1.5	1.7	1.9
Conveyor: apron, pan, bucket, elevator; Extractors, washers; Fans, blowers; centrifugal, induced draft exhausters; Generators & exciters; Hoists, elevators; Rubber calenders, mills, extruders; Saw mill, Textile machinery inc. looms, spinning frames, twisters	1.6	1.8	2.0
Centrifuges; Conveyors: flight, screw; Hammer mills; Paper pulpers	1.7	1.9	2.1
Brick & clay pug mills; Fans, blowers, propeller mine fans, positive blowers	1.8	2.0	2.2

Driving Units	*AC Motors:* High Torque, High Slip, Repulsion-Induction, Single Phase Series Wound and Slip Ring. *DC Motors:* Series Wound and Compound Wound. *Engines:* Single Cylinder Internal Combustion. *Line Shafts*. *Clutches*.		
Types of Driven Machines	Intermittent Service (3-5 hours daily or seasonal)	Normal Service (8-10 hours daily)	Continuous Service (16-24 hours daily)
Display, dispensing, projection, medical equipment; Instrumentation; Measuring devices	1.2	1.4	1.6
Appliances, sweepers, sewing machines; Office equipment; Wood lathes, band saws	1.4	1.6	1.8
Conveyors: belt, light package, oven, screens, drums, conical	1.5	1.7	1.9
Agitators for liquids; Dough mixers; Drill presses, lathes; Screw machines, jointers; Circular saws, planes; Laundry, paper, printing machinery	1.6	1.8	2.0
Agitators for semiliquids; Brick machinery (except pug mills); Conveyor belt: ore, coal, sand; Line shafts; Machine tools: grinder, shaper, boring mill, milling machines; Pumps: centrifugal, gear, rotary	1.7	1.9	2.1
Conveyor: apron, pan, bucket, elevator; Extractors, washers; Fans, blowers; centrifugal, induced draft exhausters; Generators & exciters; Hoists, elevators; Rubber calenders, mills, extruders; Saw mill, Textile machinery inc. looms, spinning frames, twisters	1.8	2.0	2.2
Centrifuges; Conveyors: flight, screw; Hammer mills; Paper pulpers	1.9	2.1	2.3
Brick & clay pug mills; Fans, blowers, propeller mine fans, positive blowers	2.0	2.2	2.4

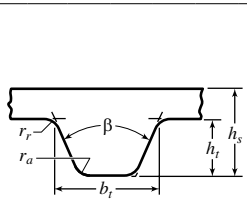
Synchronous belts will not slip, and therefore must be belted for the highest loadings anticipated in the system. A minimum service factor of 2.0 is recommended for equipment subject to chocking.

Pitch Lengths: Standard belt pitch lengths, belt length designations, and numbers of teeth are shown in Table 42. Belt length tolerances are also given in this table; these tolerances apply to all belt sections and represent the total manufacturing tolerance on belt length.

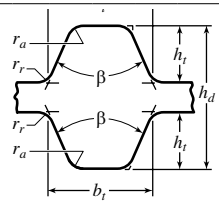
Nominal Tooth Dimensions: Table 40 shows the nominal tooth dimensions for each of the standard belt sections. Tooth dimensions for single- and double-sided belts are identical.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 40. Synchronous Belt Nominal Tooth and Section Dimensions
ANSI/RMA IP-24, 1983



Single-Sided Belts



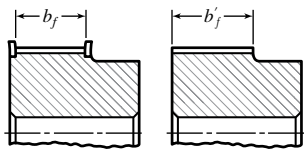
Double-Sided Belts

Belt Section (Pitch)	Tooth Angle β (deg)	h_t	b_t	r_a	r_r	h_s	h_d
MXL (0.080)	40	0.020	0.045	0.005	0.005	0.045	…
XL (0.200)	50	0.050	0.101	0.015	0.015	0.090	…
L (0.375)	40	0.075	0.183	0.020	0.020	0.14	…
H (0.500)	40	0.090	0.241	0.040	0.040	0.16	…
XH (0.875)	40	0.250	0.495	0.047	0.062	0.44	…

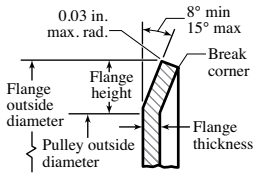
Belt Section (Pitch)	Tooth Angle β (deg)	h_t	b_t	r_a	r_r	h_s	h_d
XXH (1.250)	40	0.375	0.750	0.060	0.090	0.62	…
DXL (0.200)	50	0.050	0.101	0.015	0.015	…	0.120
DL (0.375)	40	0.075	0.183	0.020	0.020	…	0.180
DH (0.500)	40	0.090	0.241	0.040	0.040	…	0.234

All dimensions in inches.

Table 41. Synchronous Belt Standard Pulley and Flange Dimensions
ANSI/RMA IP-24, 1983



Flanged Pulley **Unflanged Pulley**



Flange Dimensions

Belt Section	Standard Nominal Pulley Width	Standard Pulley Width Designation	Minimum Pulley Width		Flange	
			Flanged b_f	Unflanged b'_f	Thickness (min)	Height[a] (min)
MXL	0.25	025	0.28	0.35	0.023	0.020
XL	0.38	037	0.41	0.48	0.029	0.040
L	0.50	050	0.55	0.67	0.050	0.065
	0.75	075	0.80	0.92		
	1.00	100	1.05	1.17		
H	1.00	100	1.05	1.23	0.050	0.080
	1.50	150	1.55	1.73		
	2.00	200	2.08	2.26		
	3.00	300	3.11	3.29		
XH	2.00	200	2.23	2.46	0.098	0.190
	3.00	300	3.30	3.50		
	4.00	400	4.36	4.59		
XXH	2.00	200	2.23	2.52	0.127	0.245
	3.00	300	3.30	3.59		
	4.00	400	4.36	4.65		
	5.00	500	5.42	5.72		

[a] Flange outside diameter equals pulley outside diameter plus twice flange height.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 42. Synchronous Belt Standard Pitch Lengths and Tolerances *ANSI/RMA IP-24, 1983*

Belt Length Designation	Pitch Length	Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Number of Teeth for Standard Lengths						Belt Length Designation	Pitch Length	Permissible Deviation from Standard Length	Number of Teeth for Standard Lengths					
			MXL (0.080)	XL (0.200)	L (0.375)	H (0.500)	XH (0.875)	XXH (1.250)				MXL (0.080)	XL (0.200)	L (0.375)	H (0.500)	XH (0.875)	XXH (1.250)
36	3.600	±0.016	45						230	23.000	±0.024	…	115	…	…		
40	4.000	±0.016	50						240	24.000	±0.024	…	120	64	48		
44	4.400	±0.016	55						250	25.000	±0.024	…	125	…	…		
48	4.800	±0.016	60						255	25.500	±0.024	…	…	68	…		
56	5.600	±0.016	70						260	26.000	±0.024	…	130	…	…		
60	6.000	±0.016	75	30					270	27.000	±0.024	…	…	72	54		
64	6.400	±0.016	80	…					285	28.500	±0.024	…	…	76	…		
70	7.000	±0.016	…	35					300	30.000	±0.024	…	…	80	60		
72	7.200	±0.016	90	…					322	32.250	±0.026	…	…	86	…		
80	8.000	±0.016	100	40					330	33.000	±0.026	…	…	…	66		
88	8.800	±0.016	110	…					345	34.500	±0.026			92	…		
90	9.000	±0.016	…	45					360	36.000	±0.026			…	72		
100	10.000	±0.016	125	50					367	36.750	±0.026			98	…		
110	11.000	±0.018	…	55					390	39.000	±0.026			104	78		
112	11.200	±0.018	140	…					420	42.000	±0.030			112	84		
120	12.000	±0.018	…	60	…				450	45.000	±0.030			120	90	…	
124	12.375	±0.018	…	…	33				480	48.000	±0.030			128	96	…	
124	12.400	±0.018	155	…	…				507	50.750	±0.032			…	…	58	
130	13.000	±0.018	…	65	…				510	51.000	±0.032			136	102	…	
140	14.000	±0.018	175	70	…				540	54.000	±0.032			144	108	…	
150	15.000	±0.018	…	75	40				560	56.000	±0.032			…	…	64	
160	16.000	±0.020	200	80	…				570	57.000	±0.032			…	114	…	
170	17.000	±0.020	…	85	…				600	60.000	±0.032			160	120	…	
180	18.000	±0.020	225	90	…				630	63.000	±0.034			…	126	72	
187	18.750	±0.020	…	…	50				660	66.000	±0.034			…	132	…	
190	19.000	±0.020	…	95	…				700	70.000	±0.034				140	80	56
200	20.000	±0.020	250	100	…				750	75.000	±0.036				150	…	…
210	21.000	±0.024	…	105	56				770	77.000	±0.036				…	88	…
220	22.000	±0.024	…	110	…				800	80.000	±0.036				160	…	64
225	22.500	±0.024	…	…	60				840	84.000	±0.038				…	96	…

All dimensions in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

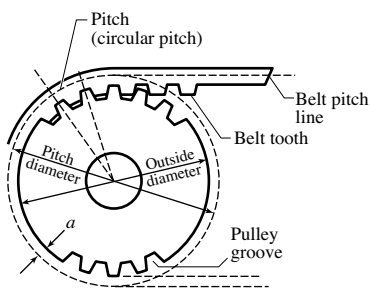
Table 43. Synchronous Belt Standard Widths and Tolerances
ANSI/RMA IP-24, 1983

Belt Section	Standard Belt Widths		Tolerances on Width for Belt Pitch Lengths		
	Designation	Dimensions	Up to and including 33 in.	Over 33 in. up to and including 66 in.	Over 66 in.
MXL (0.080)	012 019 025	0.12 0.19 0.25	+0.02 −0.03	…	…
XL (0.200)	025 037	0.25 0.38	+0.02 −0.03	…	…
L (0.375)	050 075 100	0.50 0.75 1.00	+0.03 −0.03	+0.03 −0.05	…
H (0.500)	075 100 150	0.75 1.00 1.50	+0.03 −0.03	+0.03 −0.05	+0.03 −0.05
	200	2.00	+0.03 −0.05	+0.05 −0.05	+0.05 −0.06
	300	3.00	+0.05 −0.06	+0.06 −0.06	+0.06 −0.08
XH (0.875)	200 300 400	2.00 3.00 4.00	…	+0.19 −0.19	+0.19 −0.19
XXH (1.250)	200 300 400 500	2.00 3.00 4.00 5.00	…	…	+0.19 −0.19

Widths: Standard belt widths, width designations, and width tolerances are shown in Table 43.

Length Determination: The pitch length of a synchronous belt is determined by placing the belt on a measuring fixture having two pulleys of equal diameter, a method of applying force, and a means of measuring the center distance between the two pulleys. The position of one of the two pulleys is fixed and the other is movable along a graduated scale.

Synchronous Belt Pulley Diameters: Table 44 lists the standard pulley diameters by belt section (pitch). Fig. 13 defines the pitch, pitch diameter, outside diameter and pitch line differential.



a = Pitch line differential

Fig. 13. Synchronous Belt Pulley Dimensions

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 44. Synchronous Belt Standard Pulley Diameters *ANSI/RMA IP-24, 1983*

Number of Grooves	Belt Section											
	MXL (0.080)		XL (0.200)		L (0.375)		H (0.500)		XH (0.875)		XXH (1.250)	
	Diameters		Diameters		Diameters		Diameters		Diameters		Diameters	
	Pitch	Outside	Pitch	Outside	Pitch	Outside	Pitch	Outside	Pitch	Outside	Pitch	Outside
10	0.255	0.235	0.637	0.617	1.194[a]	1.164	…	…	…	…	…	…
12	0.306	0.286	0.764	0.744	1.432[a]	1.402	…	…	…	…	…	…
14	0.357	0.337	0.891	0.871	1.671	1.641	2.228[a]	2.174	…	…	…	…
16	0.407	0.387	1.019	0.999	1.910	1.880	2.546	2.492	…	…	…	…
18	0.458	0.438	1.146	1.126	2.149	2.119	2.865	2.811	5.013	4.903	7.162	7.042
20	0.509	0.489	1.273	1.253	2.387	2.357	3.183	3.129	5.570	5.460	7.958	7.838
22	0.560	0.540	1.401	1.381	2.626	2.596	3.501	3.447	6.127	6.017	8.754	8.634
24	0.611	0.591	1.528	1.508	2.865	2.835	3.820	3.766	6.685	6.575	9.549	9.429
26	0.662	0.642	…	…	3.104	3.074	4.138	4.084	7.242	7.132	10.345	10.225
28	0.713	0.693	1.783	1.763	3.342	3.312	4.456	4.402	7.799	7.689	…	…
30	0.764	0.744	1.910	1.890	3.581	3.551	4.775	4.721	8.356	8.246	11.937	11.817
32	0.815	0.795	2.037	2.017	3.820	3.790	5.093	5.039	8.913	8.803	…	…
34	0.866	0.846	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	13.528	13.408
36	0.917	0.897	2.292	2.272	4.297	4.267	5.730	5.676	…	…	…	…
40	1.019	0.999	2.546	2.526	4.775	4.745	6.366	6.312	11.141	11.031	15.915	15.795
42	1.070	1.050	2.674	2.654	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
44	1.120	1.100	2.801	2.781	5.252	5.222	7.003	6.949	…	…	…	…
48	1.222	1.202	3.056	3.036	5.730	5.700	7.639	7.585	13.369	13.259	19.099	18.979
60	1.528	1.508	3.820	3.800	7.162	7.132	9.549	9.495	16.711	16.601	23.873	23.753
72	1.833	1.813	4.584	4.564	8.594	8.564	11.459	11.405	20.054	19.944	28.648	28.528
84	…	…	…	…	10.027	9.997	13.369	13.315	23.396	23.286	…	…
90	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	35.810	35.690
96	…	…	…	…	…	…	15.279	15.225	26.738	26.628	…	…
120	…	…	…	…	…	…	19.099	19.045	33.423	33.313	…	…

All dimensions in inches.

* Usually not available in all widths — consult supplier.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Widths: Standard pulley widths for each belt section are shown in Table 41. The nominal pulley width is specified in terms of the maximum standard belt width the pulley will accommodate. The minimum pulley width, whether flanged or unflanged, is also shown in Table 41, along with flange dimensions and various pulley tolerances.

Pulley Size Designation: Synchronous belt pulleys are designated by the number of grooves, the belt section, and a number representing 100 times the nominal width. For example, a 30 groove L section pulley with a nominal width of 0.75 in. would be designated by 30L075. Pulley tolerances are shown in Table 45.

Table 45. Pulley Tolerances (All Sections)

Outside Diameter Range	Outside Diameter Tolerance	Pitch to Pitch Tolerance	
		Adjacent Grooves	Accumulative Over 90 Degrees
Up thru 1.000	+0.002 −0.000	±0.001	±0.003
Over 1.000 to and including 2.000	+0.003 −0.000	±0.001	±0.004
Over 2.000 to and including 4.000	+0.004 −0.000	±0.001	±0.005
Over 4.000 to and including 7.000	+0.005 −0.000	±0.001	±0.005
Over 7.000 to and including 12.000	+0.006 −0.000	±0.001	±0.006
Over 12.000 to and including 20.000	+0.007 −0.000	±0.001	±0.007
Over 20.000	+0.008 −0.000	±0.001	±0.008

Radial Runout[a]	Axial Runout[a]
For outside diameters 8.0 in. and under 0.005 in.	For outside diameters 1.0 in. and under 0.001 in.
For each additional inch of outside diameter add 0.0005 in.	For each additional inch of outside diameter up through 10.0 in., add 0.001 in.
	For each additional inch of outside diameter over 10.0 in., add 0.0005 in.

[a] Total indicator reading.

All dimensions in inches.

Cross Section Selection: The chart (Fig. 14) may be used as a guide to the selection of a synchronous belt for any combination of design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft. When the intersection of the design horsepower and speed of the faster shaft falls near a line between two areas on the chart, the possibilities in both areas should be explored. Special circumstances (such as space limitations) may result in selection of a belt cross section different from that indicated in the chart. Belt manufacturers should be contacted for specific data.

Torque Ratings: It is customary to use torque load requirements rather than horsepower load when designing drives using the small pitch MXL section belts. These belts operate on small diameters resulting in relatively low belt speeds, so torque is essentially constant for all rpm. The torque rating formulas for MXL sections are:

$$Q_r = d[1.13 - 1.38\times10^{-3}d^2] \text{ for belt width } = 0.12 \text{ in.}$$
$$Q_r = d[1.88 - 2.30\times10^{-3}d^2] \text{ for belt width } = 0.19 \text{ in.}$$
$$Q_r = d[2.63 - 3.21\times10^{-3}d^2] \text{ for belt width } = 0.25 \text{ in.}$$

where Q_r = the maximum torque rating (lbf-in.) for a belt of specified width having six or more teeth in mesh and a pulley surface speed of 6500 fpm or less. Torque ratings for drives with less than six teeth in mesh must be corrected as shown in Table 46. d = pitch diameter of smaller pulley, inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

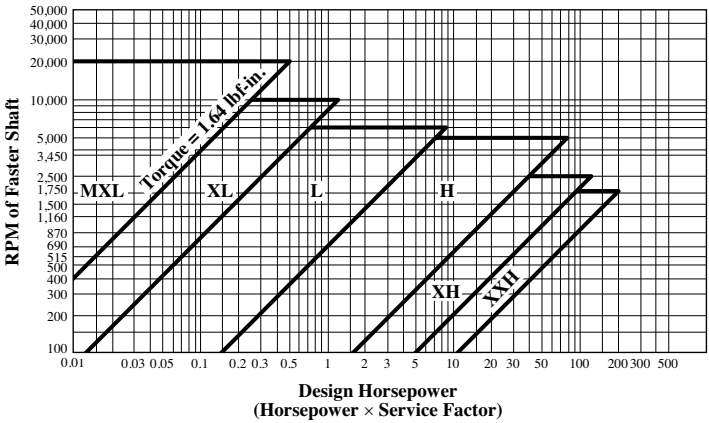


Fig. 14. Selection of Synchronous Belt Cross Section

Table 46. Teeth in Mesh Factor

Teeth in Mesh	Factor K_z	Teeth in Mesh	Factor K_z
6 or more	1.00	3	0.40
5	0.80	2	0.20
4	0.60		

Horsepower Rating Formulas: The horsepower rating formulas for synchronous belts, other than the MLX section, are determined from the following formulas, where the number in parentheses is the belt width in inches.

$$\text{XL}(0.38)\ \text{HP} = dr[0.0916 - 7.07\times10^{-5}(dr)^2]$$

$$\text{L}(1.00)\ \text{HP} = dr[0.436 - 3.01\times10^{-4}(dr)^2]$$

$$\text{H}(3.00)\ \text{HP} = dr[3.73 - 1.41\times10^{-3}(dr)^2]$$

$$\text{XH}(4.00)\ \text{HP} = dr[7.21 - 4.68\times10^{-3}(dr)^2]$$

$$\text{XXH}(5.00)\ \text{HP} = dr[11.4 - 7.81\times10^{-3}(dr)^2]$$

where HP = the maximum horsepower rating recommended for the specified standard belt width having six or more teeth in mesh and a pulley surface speed of 6500 fpm or less. Horsepower ratings for drives with less than six teeth in mesh must be corrected as shown in Table 46. d = pitch diameter of smaller pulley, inch; r = rpm of faster shaft divided by 1000. Total horsepower ratings are the same for double-sided as for single-sided belts. Contact manufacturers for percentage of horsepower available for each side of the belt.

Finding the Required Belt Width: The belt width should not exceed the small pulley diameter or excessive side thrust will result.

Torque Rating Method (MXL Section): Divide the design torque by the teeth in mesh factor to obtain the corrected design torque. Compare the corrected design torque with the torque rating given in Table 47 for the pulley diameter being considered. Select the narrowest belt width that has a torque rating equal to or greater than the corrected design torque.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 47. Torque Rating for MXL Section (0.080 in. Pitch)

Belt Width, (in.)	Rated Torque (lbf-in.) for Small Pulley (Number of Grooves and Pitch Diameter, in.)									
	10MXL 0.255	12MXL 0.306	14MXL 0.357	16MXL 0.407	18MXL 0.458	20MXL 0.509	22MXL 0.560	24MXL 0.611	28MXL 0.713	30MXL 0.764
0.12	0.29	0.35	0.40	0.46	0.52	0.57	0.63	0.69	0.81	0.86
0.19	0.48	0.58	0.67	0.77	0.86	0.96	1.05	1.15	1.34	1.44
0.25	0.67	0.80	0.94	1.07	1.20	1.34	1.47	1.61	1.87	2.01

Horsepower Rating Method (XL, L, H, XH, and XXH Sections): Multiply the horsepower rating for the widest standard belt of the selected section by the teeth in mesh factor to obtain the corrected horsepower rating. Divide the design horsepower by the corrected horsepower rating to obtain the required belt width factor. Compare the required belt width factor with those shown in Table 48. Select the narrowest belt width that has a width factor equal to or greater than the required belt width factor.

Table 48. Belt Width Factor

Belt Section	Belt Width (in.)											
	0.12	0.19	0.25	0.38	0.50	0.75	1.00	1.50	2.00	3.00	4.00	5.00
MXL (0.080)	0.43	0.73	1.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
XL (0.200)	…	…	0.62	1.00	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
L (0.375)	…	…	…	…	0.45	0.72	1.00	…	…	…	…	…
H (0.500)	…	…	…	…	…	0.21	0.29	0.45	0.63	1.00	…	…
XH (0.875)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.45	0.72	1.00	…
XXH (1.250)	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	0.35	0.56	0.78	1.00

Drive Selection: Information on design and selection of synchronous belt drives is available in engineering manuals published by belt manufacturers. Manufacturers should be consulted on such matters as preferred stock sizes, desirable speeds, center distances, etc.

Minimum Pulley Size: The recommended minimum pulley size depends on the rpm of the faster shaft. Minimum sheave diameters for each belt cross section are listed in Table 44.

Selection of Flanged Pulleys: To determine when to use flanged pulleys, consider the following conditions:

1) On all two-pulley drives, the minimum flanging requirements are two flanges on one pulley, or one flange on each pulley on opposite sides.

2) On drives where the center distance is more than eight times the diameter of the small pulley, both pulleys should be flanged on both sides.

3) On vertical shaft drives, one pulley should be flanged on both sides and other pulleys in the system should be flanged on the bottom side only.

4) On drives with more than two pulleys, the minimum flanging requirements are two flanges on every other pulley, or one flange on every pulley, alternating sides around the system.

Service Factors: Service factors for synchronous belts in Table 39.

Gravity Idler.—The gravity type of idler used in conjunction with many belt drives, consists of a weighted idler pulley, so pivoted from a long arm that the idler runs near the small pulley against the loose side of the belt, in such a way as to increase the arc of contact of the belt on this pulley. These idlers are of special value on difficult drives where there is a large difference in the diameter of the driver and driven pulleys.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

TRANSMISSION CHAINS

Types of Chains

In addition to the standard roller and inverted tooth types, a wide variety of drive chains of different construction is available. Such chains are manufactured to various degrees of precision ranging from unfinished castings or forgings to chains having certain machined parts. Practically all of these chains as well as standard roller chains can be equipped with attachments to fit them for conveyor use. A few such types are briefly described in the following paragraphs. Detailed information about them can be obtained from the manufacturers.

Types of Chains.—*Detachable Chains:* The links of this type of chain, which are identical, are easily detachable. Each has a hook-shaped end in which the bar of the adjacent link articulates. These chains are available in malleable iron or pressed steel. The chief advantage is the ease with which any link can be removed.

Cast Roller Chains: Cast roller chains are constructed, wholly or partly, of cast metal parts and are available in various styles. In general the rollers and side bars are accurately made castings without machine finish. The links are usually connected by means of forged pins secured by nuts or cotters. Such chains are used for slow speeds and moderate loads, or where the precision of standard roller chains is not required.

Pintle Chains: Unlike the roller chain, the pintle chain is composed of hollow-cored cylinders cast or forged integrally with two offset side bars and each link identical. The links are joined by pins inserted in holes in the ends of the side bars and through the cored holes in the adjacent links. Lugs prevent turning of the pins in the side bars ensuring articulation of the chain between the pin and the cored cylinder, allowing for greater force and power transmission.

Standard Roller Transmission Chains

A roller chain is made up of two kinds of links: roller links and pin links alternately spaced throughout the length of the chain as shown in Table 1.

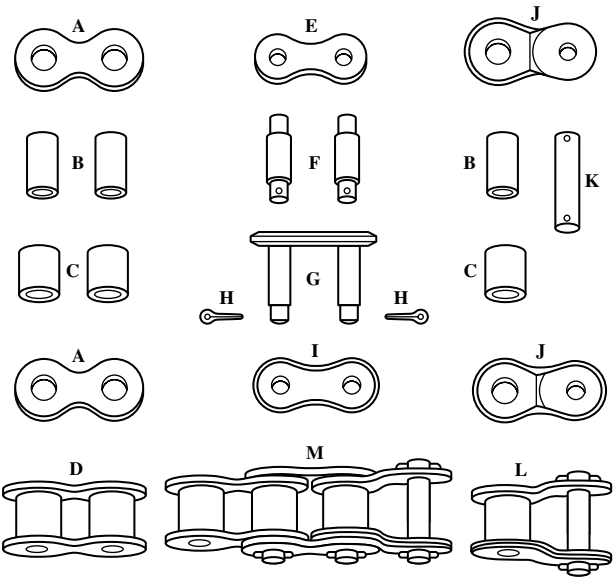
Roller chains are manufactured in several types, each designed for the particular service required. All roller chains are so constructed that the rollers are evenly spaced throughout the chain. The outstanding advantage of this type of chain is the ability of the rollers to rotate when contacting the teeth of the sprocket. Two arrangements of roller chains are in common use: the single-strand type and the multiple-strand type. In the latter type, two or more chains are joined side by side by means of common pins which maintain the alignment of the rollers in the different strands.

Types of Roller Chains.—*Standard roller chains* are manufactured to the specifications in the American National Standard for precision power transmission roller chains, attachments, and sprockets ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016) and, where indicated, the data in the subsequent tables have been taken from this standard. These roller chains and sprockets are commonly used for the transmission of power in industrial machinery, machine tools, motor trucks, motorcycles, tractors, and similar applications. In tabulating the dimensional information in ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016), customary inch-pound units were used. Metric (SI) units are given in separate tabulations in the ANSI/ASME standard.

Nonstandard roller chains, developed individually by various manufacturers prior to the adoption of the ANSI/ASME standard, are similar in form and construction to standard roller chains but do not conform dimensionally to standard chains. Some sizes are maintained from the originating manufacturers for replacement on existing equipment. They are not recommended for new installations, since their manufacture may be discontinued wihout ongoing support.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Nomenclature for Roller Chain Parts
ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)



Roller Link D. — An inside link consisting of two inside plates, two bushings, and two rollers.
Pin Link G and E. — An outside link consisting of two pin-link plates assembled with two pins.
Inside Plate A. — One of the plates forming the tension members of a roller link.
Pin Link Plate E. — One of the plates forming the tension members of a pin link.
Pin F. — A stud articulating within a bushing of an inside link and secured at its ends by the pin-link plates.
Bushing B. — A cylindrical bearing in which the pin turns.
Roller C. — A ring or thimble which turns over a bushing.
Assembled Pins G. — Two pins assembled with one pin-link plate.
Connecting-Link G and I. — A pin link having one side plate detachable.
Connecting-Link Plate I. — The detachable pin-link plate belonging to a connecting link. It is retained by cotter pins or by a one-piece spring clip (not shown).
Connecting Link Assembly M. — A unit designed to connect two roller links.
Offset Link L. — A link consisting of two offset plates assembled with a bushing and roller at one end and an offset link pin at the other.
Offset Plate J. — One of the plates forming the tension members of the offset link.
Offset Link Pin K. — A pin used in offset links.

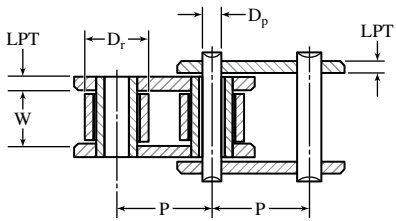
Standard double-pitch roller chains are like standard roller chains, except that their link plates have twice the pitch of the corresponding standard-pitch chain. Their design conforms to specifications in the ANSI/ASME standard for double-pitch power transmission roller chains and sprockets ANSI/ASME B29.100-2011 (R2016). They are especially useful for low speeds, moderate loads, or long center distances.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Transmission Roller Chain

Standard Roller Chain Nomenclature, Dimensions and Loads.—Standard nomenclature for roller chain parts are given in Table 1. Dimensions for Standard Series and Heavy Series roller chain are given in Table 2.

Table 2. Roller Chain Dimensions *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*



Pitch *P*	Max. Roller Diameter D_r	Standard Series					Heavy Series
		Standard Chain No.	Width *W*	Pin Diameter D_p	Thickness of Link Plates *LPT*	Measuring Load,[a] lb	Thickness of Link Plates *LPT*
0.250	[b]0.130	25	0.125	0.0905	0.030	18	…
0.375	[b]0.200	35	0.188	0.141	0.050	18	…
0.500	0.312	40	0.312	0.156	0.060	31	…
0.500	0.306	41	0.250	0.141	0.050	18	…
0.625	0.400	50	0.375	0.200	0.080	49	…
0.750	0.469	60	0.500	0.234	0.094	70	0.125
1.000	0.625	80	0.625	0.312	0.125	125	0.156
1.250	0.750	100	0.750	0.375	0.158	195	0.187
1.500	0.875	120	1.000	0.437	0.187	281	0.219
1.750	1.000	140	1.000	0.500	0.219	383	0.250
2.000	1.125	160	1.250	0.562	0.250	500	0.281
2.250	1.406	180	1.406	0.687	0.281	633	0.312
2.500	1.562	200	1.500	0.781	0.312	781	0.375
3.000	1.875	240	1.875	0.937	0.375	1000	0.500

[a] For single-strand chain.

[b] Bushing diameter. This size chain has no rollers.

All dimensions are in inches.

Roller Diameters D_r are approximately $^5/_8$ *P*.

The width W is defined as the distance between the link plates. It is approximately $^5/_8$ of the chain pitch.

Pin Diameters Dp are approximately $^5/_{16}$ *P* or $^1/_2$ of the roller diameter.

Thickness LPT of Inside and Outside Link Plates for the Standard Series is approximately $^1/_8$ *P*.

Thickness of Link Plates for the Heavy Series of any pitch is approximately that of the next larger pitch Standard Series chain.

Maximum Height of Roller Link Plates = 0.95 *P*.

Maximum Height of Pin Link Plates = 0.82 *P*.

Maximum Pin Diameter = nominal pin diameter + 0.0005 inch.

Minimum Hole in Bushing = nominal pin diameter + 0.0015 inch.

Maximum Width of Roller Link = nominal width of chain + (2.12 × nominal link plate thickness.)

Minimum Distance between Pin Link Plates = maximum width of roller link + 0.002 inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Chain Pitch: Distance in inches between centers of adjacent joint members. Other dimensions are proportional to the pitch.

Tolerances for Chain Length: New chains, under standard measuring load, must not be underlength. Overlength tolerance is $0.001/(\text{pitch in inches})^2 + 0.015$ inch per foot. Length measurements are to be taken over a length of at least 12 inches.

Measuring Load: The load in pounds under which a chain should be measured for length. It is equal to 1 percent of the ultimate tensile strength, with a minimum of 18 pounds and a maximum of 1000 pounds for both single and multiple-strand chain.

Minimum Ultimate Tensile Strength: For single-strand chain, equal to or greater than $12{,}500 \times (\text{pitch in inches})^2$ pounds. The minimum tensile strength or breaking strength of a multiple-strand chain is equal to that of a single-strand chain multiplied by the number of strands. Minimum ultimate tensile strength is indicative only of the tensile strength quality of the chain, not the maximum load that can be applied.

Standard Roller Chain Numbers.—The right-hand figure in the chain number is zero for roller chains of the usual proportions, 1 for a lightweight chain, and 5 for a rollerless bushing chain. The numbers to the left of the right-hand figure denote the number of $^1/_8$ inches in the pitch. The letter *H* following the chain number denotes the heavy series; thus the number 80*H* denotes a 1-inch pitch heavy chain. The hyphenated number 2 suffixed to the chain number denotes a double strand, 3 a triple strand, 4 a quadruple strand chain and so on.

Heavy Series: These chains, made in $^3/_4$-inch and larger pitches, have thicker link plates than those of the regular standard. Their value is only in the acceptance of higher loads at lower speeds.

Light-weight Machinery Chain: This chain is designated as No. 41. It is $^1/_2$ inch pitch; $^1/_4$ inch wide; has 0.306-inch diameter rollers and a 0.141-inch pin diameter. The minimum ultimate tensile strength is 1500 pounds.

Multiple-strand Chain: This is essentially an assembly of two or more single-strand chains placed side by side with pins that extend through the entire width to maintain alignment of the different strands.

Types of Sprockets.—Four different designs or types of roller-chain sprockets are shown by the sectional views, Fig. 1. Type *A* is a plain plate; type *B* has a hub on one side only; type *C*, a hub on both sides; and type *D*, a detachable hub. Also used are shear pin and slip clutch sprockets designed to prevent damage to the drive or to other equipment caused by overloads or stalling.

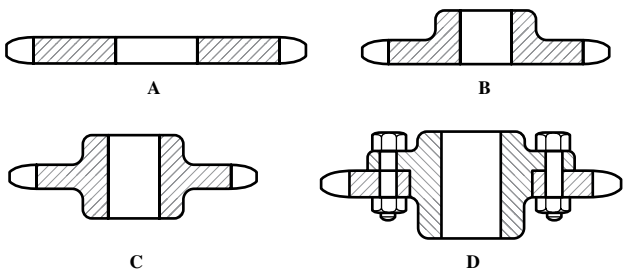


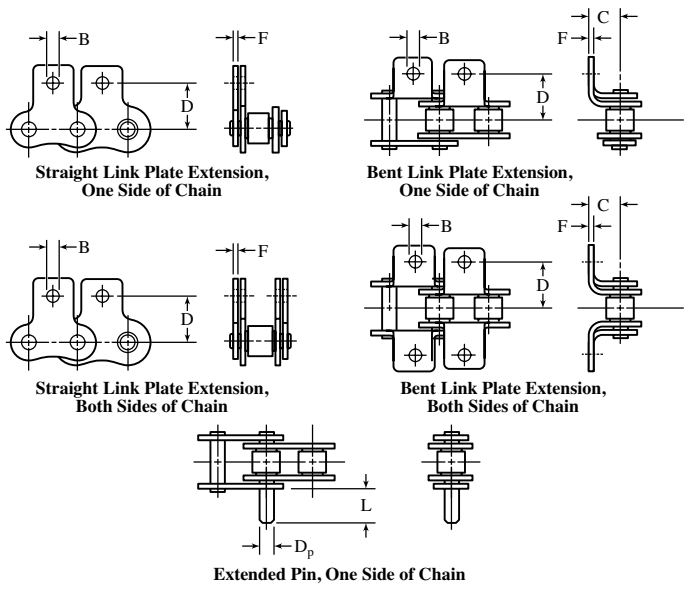
Fig. 1. Types of Sprockets

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Attachments.—Modifications to standard chain components to adapt the chain for use in conveying, elevating, and timing operations are known as "attachments." The components commonly modified are: 1) the link plates, which are provided with extended lugs which may be straight or bent ; and 2) the chain pins, which are extended in length so as to project substantially beyond the outer surface of the pin link plates.

Hole diameters, thicknesses, hole locations and offset dimensions for straight link and bent link plate extensions and lengths and diameters of extended pins are given in Table 3.

Table 3. Straight and Bent Link Plate Extensions and Extended Pin Dimensions
ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)



Straight Link Plate Extension, One Side of Chain

Bent Link Plate Extension, One Side of Chain

Straight Link Plate Extension, Both Sides of Chain

Bent Link Plate Extension, Both Sides of Chain

Extended Pin, One Side of Chain

Chain No.	Straight Link Plate Extension			Bent Link Plate Extension				Extended Pin	
	B min.	*D*	*F*	*B* min.	*C*	*D*	*F*	D_p Nominal	*L*
35	0.102	0.375	0.050	0.102	0.250	0.375	0.050	0.141	0.375
40	0.131	0.500	0.060	0.131	0.312	0.500	0.060	0.156	0.375
50	0.200	0.625	0.080	0.200	0.406	0.625	0.080	0.200	0.469
60	0.200	0.719	0.094	0.200	0.469	0.750	0.094	0.234	0.562
80	0.261	0.969	0.125	0.261	0.625	1.000	0.125	0.312	0.750
100	0.323	1.250	0.156	0.323	0.781	1.250	0.156	0.375	0.938
120	0.386	1.438	0.188	0.386	0.906	1.500	0.188	0.437	1.125
140	0.448	1.750	0.219	0.448	1.125	1.750	0.219	0.500	1.312
160	0.516	2.000	0.250	0.516	1.250	2.000	0.250	0.562	1.500
200	0.641	2.500	0.312	0.641	1.688	2.500	0.312	0.781	1.875

All dimensions are in inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sprocket Classes.—The American National Standard ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016) provides for two classes of sprockets designated as Commercial and Precision. The selection of either is a matter of drive application judgment. The usual moderate to slow speed commercial drive is adequately served by Commercial sprockets. Where extreme high speed in combination with high load is involved, or where the drive involves fixed centers, critical timing, or register problems, or close clearance with outside interference, then the use of Precision sprockets may be more appropriate.

As a general guide, drives requiring Type A or Type B lubrication (see page 2638) would be served by Commercial sprockets. Drives requiring Type C lubrication may require Precision sprockets; the manufacturer should be consulted.

Keys, Keyways, and Set Screws.—To secure sprockets to the shaft, both keys and set screws should be used. The key is used to prevent rotation of the sprocket on the shaft. Keys should be fitted carefully in the shaft and sprocket keyways to eliminate all backlash, especially on the fluctuating loads. A set screw should be located over a flat key to secure it against longitudinal displacement.

Where a set screw is to be used with a parallel key, the following sizes are recommended by the American Chain Association. For a sprocket bore and shaft diameter in the range of:

$\frac{1}{2}$ through $\frac{7}{8}$ inch, a $\frac{1}{4}$-inch set screw

$\frac{15}{16}$ through $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches, a $\frac{3}{8}$-inch set screw

$1\frac{13}{16}$ through $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches, a $\frac{1}{2}$-inch set screw

$2\frac{5}{16}$ through $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches, a $\frac{5}{8}$-inch set screw

$3\frac{3}{8}$ through $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches, a $\frac{3}{4}$-inch set screw

$4\frac{3}{4}$ through $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches, a $\frac{7}{8}$-inch set screw

$5\frac{3}{4}$ through $7\frac{3}{8}$ inches, a 1-inch set screw

$7\frac{1}{2}$ through $12\frac{1}{2}$ inches, a $1\frac{1}{4}$-inch set screw

Sprocket Diameters.—The various diameters of roller chain sprockets are shown in Fig. 2. These are defined as follows.

Pitch Diameter: The pitch diameter is the diameter of the pitch circle that passes through the centers of the link pins as the chain is wrapped on the sprocket.

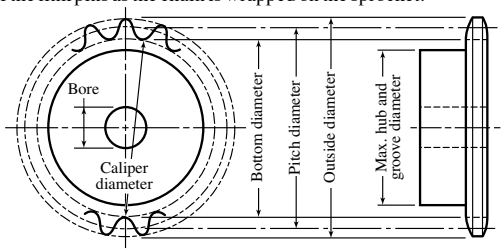


Fig. 2. Sprocket Diameters

Because the chain pitch is measured on a straight line between the centers of adjacent pins, the chain pitch lines form a series of chords of the sprocket pitch circle. Sprocket pitch diameters for one-inch pitch and for 9 to 108 teeth are given in Table 4. For lower (5 to 8) or higher (109 to 200) numbers of teeth use the following formula in which P = pitch, N = number of teeth: Pitch Diameter = $P \div \sin(180° \div N)$.

Bottom Diameter: The bottom diameter is the diameter of a circle tangent to the curve (called the seating curve) at the bottom of the tooth gap. It equals the pitch diameter minus the diameter of the roller.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Roller Chain Sprocket Diameters *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

These diameters and caliper factors apply only to chain of 1-inch pitch. For any other pitch, multiply the values given below by the pitch.

Caliper Dia. (even teeth) = Pitch Diameter – Roller Dia.

Caliper Dia. (odd teeth) = Caliper factor × Pitch – Roller Dia.

See Table 5 for tolerances on Caliper Diameters.

No. Teeth[a]	Pitch Diameter	Outside Diameter		Caliper Factor	No. Teeth[a]	Pitch Diameter	Outside Diameter		Caliper Factor
		Turned	Topping Hob Cut				Turned	Topping Hob Cut	
9	2.9238	3.348	3.364	2.8794	59	18.7892	19.363	19.361	18.7825
10	3.2361	3.678	3.676		60	19.1073	19.681	19.680	
11	3.5495	4.006	3.990	3.5133	61	19.4255	20.000	19.998	19.4190
12	3.8637	4.332	4.352		62	19.7437	20.318	20.316	
13	4.1786	4.657	4.666	4.1481	63	20.0618	20.637	20.634	20.0556
14	4.4940	4.981	4.982		64	20.3800	20.956	20.952	
15	4.8097	5.304	5.298	4.7834	65	20.6982	21.274	21.270	20.6921
16	5.1258	5.627	5.614		66	21.0164	21.593	21.588	
17	5.4422	5.949	5.930	5.4190	67	21.3346	21.911	21.907	21.3287
18	5.7588	6.271	6.292		68	21.6528	22.230	22.225	
19	6.0755	6.593	6.609	6.0548	69	21.9710	22.548	22.543	21.9653
20	6.3924	6.914	6.926		70	22.2892	22.867	22.861	
21	6.7095	7.235	7.243	6.6907	71	22.6074	23.185	23.179	22.6018
22	7.0267	7.555	7.560		72	22.9256	23.504	23.498	
23	7.3439	7.876	7.877	7.3268	73	23.2438	23.822	23.816	23.2384
24	7.6613	8.196	8.195		74	23.5620	24.141	24.134	
25	7.9787	8.516	8.512	7.9630	75	23.8802	24.459	24.452	23.8750
26	8.2962	8.836	8.829		76	24.1984	24.778	24.770	
27	8.6138	9.156	9.147	8.5992	77	24.5166	25.096	25.089	24.5116
28	8.9314	9.475	9.465		78	24.8349	25.415	25.407	
29	9.2491	9.795	9.782	9.2355	79	25.1531	25.733	25.725	25.1481
30	9.5668	10.114	10.100		80	25.4713	26.052	26.043	
31	9.8845	10.434	10.418	9.8718	81	25.7896	26.370	26.362	25.7847
32	10.2023	10.753	10.736		82	26.1078	26.689	26.680	
33	10.5201	11.073	11.053	10.5082	83	26.4260	27.007	26.998	26.4213
34	10.8379	11.392	11.371		84	26.7443	27.326	27.316	
35	11.1558	11.711	11.728	11.1446	85	27.0625	27.644	27.635	27.0579
36	11.4737	12.030	12.046		86	27.3807	27.962	27.953	
37	11.7916	12.349	12.364	11.7810	87	27.6990	28.281	28.271	27.6945
38	12.1095	12.668	12.682		88	28.0172	28.599	28.589	
39	12.4275	12.987	13.000	12.4174	89	28.3354	28.918	28.907	28.3310
40	12.7455	13.306	13.318		90	28.6537	29.236	29.226	
41	13.0635	13.625	13.636	13.0539	91	28.9719	29.555	29.544	28.9676
42	13.3815	13.944	13.954		92	29.2902	29.873	29.862	
43	13.6995	14.263	14.272	13.6904	93	29.6081	30.192	30.180	29.6042
44	14.0175	14.582	14.590		94	29.9267	30.510	30.499	
45	14.3355	14.901	14.908	14.3269	95	30.2449	30.828	30.817	30.2408
46	14.6536	15.219	15.226		96	30.5632	31.147	31.135	
47	14.9717	15.538	15.544	14.9634	97	30.8815	31.465	31.454	30.8774
48	15.2898	15.857	15.862		98	31.1997	31.784	31.772	
49	15.6079	16.176	16.180	15.5999	99	31.5180	32.102	32.090	31.5140
50	15.9260	16.495	16.498		100	31.8362	32.421	32.408	
51	16.2441	16.813	16.816	16.2364	101	32.1545	32.739	32.727	32.1506
52	16.5622	17.132	17.134		102	32.4727	33.057	33.045	
53	16.8803	17.451	17.452	16.8729	103	32.7910	33.376	33.363	32.7872
54	17.1984	17.769	17.770		104	33.1093	33.694	33.681	
55	17.5165	18.088	18.089	17.5094	105	33.4275	34.013	34.000	33.4238
56	17.8347	18.407	18.407		106	33.7458	34.331	34.318	
57	18.1528	18.725	18.725	18.1459	107	34.0641	34.649	34.636	34.0604
58	18.4710	19.044	19.043		108	34.3823	34.968	34.954	

[a] For 5-8 and 109-200 teeth see text, pages 2621, 2623.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Caliper Diameter: The caliper diameter is the same as the bottom diameter for a sprocket with an even number of teeth. For a sprocket with an odd number of teeth, it is defined as the distance from the bottom of one tooth gap to that of the nearest opposite tooth gap. The caliper diameter for an even tooth sprocket is equal to pitch diameter-roller diameter. The caliper diameter for an odd tooth sprocket is equal to caliper factor-roller diameter. Here, the caliper factor = $PD\cos(90° \div N)$, where PD = pitch diameter and N = number of teeth. Caliper factors for 1-in. pitch and sprockets having 9–108 teeth are given in Table 4. For other tooth numbers use above formula. Caliper diameter tolerances are minus only and are equal to $0.002P\sqrt{N} + 0.006$ inch for the Commercial sprockets and $0.001P\sqrt{N} + 0.003$ inch for Precision sprockets. Tolerances are given in Table 5.

Table 5. Minus Tolerances on the Caliper Diameters of Precision Sprockets
ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)

	Number of Teeth				
Pitch	Up to 15	16-24	25-35	36-48	49-63
0.250	0.004	0.004	0.004	0.005	0.005
0.375	0.004	0.004	0.004	0.005	0.005
0.500	0.004	0.005	0.0055	0.006	0.0065
0.625	0.005	0.0055	0.006	0.007	0.008
0.750	0.005	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.009
1.000	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.009	0.010
1.250	0.007	0.008	0.009	0.010	0.012
1.500	0.007	0.009	0.0105	0.012	0.013
1.750	0.008	0.010	0.012	0.013	0.015
2.000	0.009	0.011	0.013	0.015	0.017
2.250	0.010	0.012	0.014	0.016	0.018
2.500	0.010	0.013	0.015	0.018	0.020
3.000	0.012	0.015	0.018	0.021	0.024
	Number of Teeth				
Pitch	64-80	81-99	100-120	121-143	144 up
0.250	0.005	0.005	0.006	0.006	0.006
0.375	0.006	0.006	0.006	0.007	0.007
0.500	0.007	0.0075	0.008	0.0085	0.009
0.625	0.009	0.009	0.009	0.010	0.011
0.750	0.010	0.010	0.011	0.012	0.013
1.000	0.011	0.012	0.013	0.014	0.015
1.250	0.013	0.014	0.016	0.017	0.018
1.500	0.015	0.016	0.018	0.019	0.021
1.750	0.017	0.019	0.020	0.022	0.024
2.000	0.019	0.021	0.023	0.025	0.027
2.250	0.021	0.023	0.025	0.028	0.030
2.500	0.023	0.025	0.028	0.030	0.033
3.000	0.027	0.030	0.033	0.036	0.039

Minus tolerances for Commercial sprockets are twice those shown in this table.

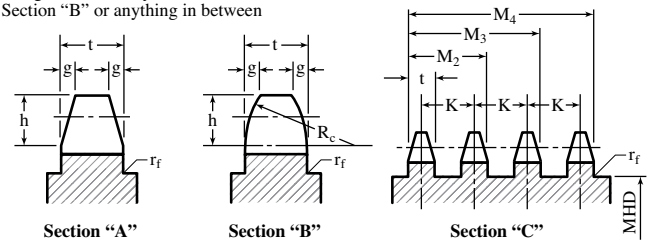
Outside Diameter: OD is the diameter over the tips of teeth. Sprocket ODs for 1-in. pitch and 9–108 teeth are given in Table 4. For other tooth numbers the OD may be determined by the following formulas in which O = approximate OD; P = pitch of chain; N = number of sprocket teeth: $O = P[0.6 + \cot(180° \div N)]$, for turned sprocket; O = pitch diameter − roller diameter + 2 × whole depth of topping hob cut, for topping hob cut sprocket.*

*This dimension was added in 1984 as a desirable goal for the future. It should in no way obsolete existing tools or sprockets. The whole depth WD is found from the formula: $WD = \frac{1}{2}D_r + P[0.3 - \frac{1}{2}\tan(90 \text{ deg} \div N_a)]$, where N_a is the intermediate number of teeth for the topping hob. For teeth range 5, $N_a = 5$; 6, 6; 7-8, 7.47; 9-11, 9.9; 12-17, 14.07; 18-34, 23.54; 35 and over, 56.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Roller Chain Sprocket Flange Thickness and Tooth Section Profile Dimension *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

Flange chamfer may be either as in Section "A" or Section "B" or anything in between



Section "A" **Section "B"** **Section "C"**

Sprocket Flange Thickness										
		Maximum Sprocket Flange Thickness, *t*			Minus Tolerance on *t*		Tolerance on *M*		Max. Variation of *t* on Each Flange	
Std. Chain No.	Width of Chain, *W*	Single	Double & Triple	Quad. & Over	Commercial	Precision	Commercial Plus or Minus	Precision Minus Only	Commercial	Precision
25	0.125	0.110	0.106	0.096	0.021	0.007	0.007	0.007	0.021	0.004
35	0.188	0.169	0.163	0.150	0.027	0.008	0.008	0.008	0.027	0.004
41	0.250	0.226	…	…	0.032	0.009	…	…	0.032	0.004
40	0.312	0.284	0.275	0.256	0.035	0.009	0.009	0.009	0.035	0.004
50	0.375	0.343	0.332	0.310	0.036	0.010	0.010	0.010	0.036	0.005
60	0.500	0.459	0.444	0.418	0.036	0.011	0.011	0.011	0.036	0.006
80	0.625	0.575	0.556	0.526	0.040	0.012	0.012	0.012	0.040	0.006
100	0.750	0.692	0.669	0.633	0.046	0.014	0.014	0.014	0.046	0.007
120	1.000	0.924	0.894	0.848	0.057	0.016	0.016	0.016	0.057	0.008
140	1.000	0.924	0.894	0.848	0.057	0.016	0.016	0.016	0.057	0.008
160	1.250	1.156	1.119	1.063	0.062	0.018	0.018	0.018	0.062	0.009
180	1.406	1.302	1.259	1.198	0.068	0.020	0.020	0.020	0.068	0.010
200	1.500	1.389	1.344	1.278	0.072	0.021	0.021	0.021	0.072	0.010
240	1.875	1.738	1.682	1.602	0.087	0.025	0.025	0.025	0.087	0.012

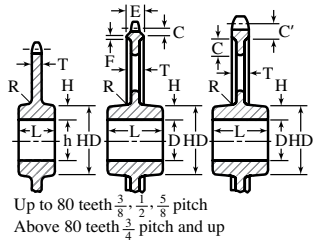
Sprocket Tooth Section Profile Dimensions						
					Transverse Pitch *K*	
Std. Chain No.	Chain Pitch *P*	Depth of Chamfer *h*	Width of Chamfer *g*	Minimum Radius R_e	Standard Series	Heavy Series
25	0.250	0.125	0.031	0.265	0.252	…
35	0.375	0.188	0.047	0.398	0.399	…
41	0.500	0.250	0.062	0.531	…	…
40	0.500	0.250	0.062	0.531	0.566	…
50	0.625	0.312	0.078	0.664	0.713	…
60	0.750	0.375	0.094	0.796	0.897	1.028
80	1.000	0.500	0.125	1.062	1.153	1.283
100	1.250	0.625	0.156	1.327	1.408	1.539
120	1.500	0.750	0.188	1.593	1.789	1.924
140	1.750	0.875	0.219	1.858	1.924	2.055
160	2.000	1.000	0.250	2.124	2.305	2.437
180	2.250	1.125	0.281	2.392	2.592	2.723
200	2.500	1.250	0.312	2.654	2.817	3.083
240	3.000	1.500	0.375	3.187	3.458	3.985

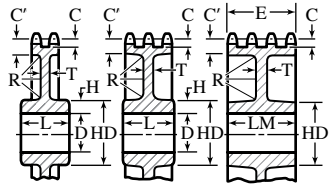
All dimensions are in inches. r_f max = 0.04*P* for max. hub diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Proportions of Sprockets.—Typical proportions of single-strand and multiple-strand cast roller chain sprockets, as provided by the American Chain Association, are shown in Table 7. Typical proportions of roller chain bar-steel sprockets, also provided by this association, are shown in Table 8.

Table 7. Typical Proportions of Single-Strand and Multiple-Strand Cast Roller Chain Sprockets





Single-Strand Multiple-Strand

Sprocket Web Thickness, T, for Various Pitches P

Single-Strand								Multiple-Strand							
P	T	P	T	P	T	P	T	P	T	P	T	P	T	P	T
3/8	.312	3/4	.437	1 1/2	.625	2 1/4	1.000	3/8	.375	3/4	.500	1 1/2	.750	2 1/4	1.125
1/2	.375	1	.500	1 3/4	.750	2 1/2	1.125	1/2	.406	1	.562	1 3/4	.875	2 1/2	1.250
5/8	.406	1 1/4	.562	2	.875	3	1.250	5/8	.437	1 1/4	.625	2	1.000	3	1.500

Formulas for Dimensions of Single and Multiple Sprockets

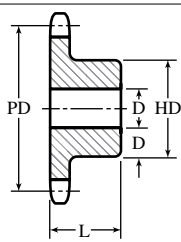
$H = 0.375 + \frac{D}{6} + 0.01\,PD$

$L = 4H$ for semi-steel castings
$C = 0.5P$
$C' = 0.9P$

$E = 0.625P + 0.93W$
$F = 0.150 + 0.25P$
$G = 2T$
$R = 0.4P$ for single-strand sprockets
$R = 0.5T$ for multiple-strand sprockets

All dimensions in inches. Where P = chain pitch and W = nominal chain width.

Table 8. Typical Proportions of Roller Chain Bar-steel Sprockets



$H = Z + D/6 + 0.01PD$

For PD up to 2 inches, $Z = 0.125$ inch; for 2-4 inches, $Z = 0.187$ inch; for 4-6 inches, 0.25 inch; and for over 6 inches, 0.375 inch.

Hub length $L = 3.3H$, normally, with a minimum of $2.6H$.

Hub diameter $HD = D + 2H$, but not more than the maximum hub diameter MHD given by the formula:

$$MHD = P\left(\cot\frac{180^\circ}{N} - 1\right) - 0.030$$

where

P = Chain pitch, in inches; N = Number of sprocket teeth

When sprocket wheels are designed with spokes, the usual assumptions made in order to determine suitable proportions are as follows: 1) that the maximum torque load acting on a sprocket is the chain tensile strength times the sprocket pitch radius; 2) that the torque load is equally divided between the arms by the rim; and 3) that each arm acts as a cantilever beam.

The arms are generally elliptical in cross section, the major axis twice the minor axis.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Selection of Chain and Sprockets.—The smallest applicable pitch of roller chain is desirable for quiet operation and high speed. The horsepower capacity varies with the chain pitch as shown in Table 9 for $^1/_4$, $^3/_8$, and $^1/_2$ in pitch designs. However, short pitch with high working load can often be obtained by the use of multiple-strand chain.

The small sprocket selected must be large enough to accommodate the shaft. Table 10 gives maximum bore and hub diameters consistent with commercial practice for sprockets with up to 25 teeth.

After selecting the small sprocket, the number of teeth in the larger sprocket is determined by the desired ratio of the shaft speed. Overemphasis on the exactness in the speed ratio may result in a cumbersome and expensive installation. In most cases, satisfactory operation can be obtained with a minor change in speed of one or both shafts.

Table 9. Horsepower Ratings for Roller Chain, *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

To properly use this table the following factors must be taken into consideration:
1) Service factors
2) Multiple Strand Factors
3) Lubrication

Service Factors: See Table 15.

Multiple Strand Factors: For two strands, the multiple strand factor is 1.7; for three strands, it is 2.5; and for four strands, it is 3.3.

Lubrication:

Required type of lubrication is indicated at the bottom of each roller chain size section of the table. For a description of each type of lubrication, see page 2638.
Type A — Manual or Drip Lubrication
Type B — Bath or Disc Lubrication
Type C — Oil Stream Lubrication

To find the required horsepower table rating, use the following formula:

$$\text{Required hp Table Rating} = \frac{\text{hp to be Transmitted} \times \text{Service Factor}}{\text{Multiple} - \text{Strand Factor}}$$

¼-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 25	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		50	100	300	500	700	900	1200	1500	1800	2100	2500	3000	3500
		Horsepower Rating												
	11	0.03	0.06	0.19	0.30	0.42	0.53	0.70	0.87	1.03	1.20	1.42	1.69	1.69
	12	0.04	0.07	0.20	0.33	0.46	0.58	0.76	0.95	1.13	1.31	1.55	1.84	1.92
	13	0.04	0.08	0.22	0.36	0.49	0.63	0.83	1.03	1.22	1.42	1.67	1.99	2.17
	14	0.04	0.08	0.24	0.38	0.53	0.68	0.89	1.10	1.32	1.52	1.80	2.15	2.42
	15	0.05	0.09	0.25	0.41	0.57	0.72	0.95	1.18	1.41	1.63	1.93	2.30	2.67
	16	0.05	0.09	0.27	0.44	0.61	0.77	1.02	1.26	1.50	1.74	2.06	2.45	2.85
	17	0.05	0.10	0.29	0.47	0.64	0.82	1.08	1.34	1.60	1.85	2.19	2.61	3.02
	18	0.05	0.11	0.30	0.49	0.68	0.87	1.15	1.42	1.69	1.96	2.32	2.76	3.20
	19	0.06	0.11	0.32	0.52	0.72	0.92	1.21	1.50	1.78	2.07	2.45	2.91	3.38
	20	0.06	0.12	0.34	0.55	0.76	0.97	1.27	1.58	1.88	2.18	2.58	3.07	3.56
	21	0.06	0.12	0.35	0.58	0.80	1.01	1.34	1.66	1.97	2.29	2.70	3.22	3.74
	22	0.07	0.13	0.37	0.60	0.83	1.06	1.40	1.73	2.07	2.40	2.83	3.37	3.91
	23	0.07	0.13	0.39	0.63	0.87	1.11	1.46	1.81	2.16	2.51	2.96	3.53	4.09
	24	0.07	0.14	0.40	0.66	0.91	1.16	1.53	1.89	2.25	2.61	3.09	3.68	4.27
	25	0.08	0.15	0.42	0.69	0.95	1.21	1.59	1.97	2.35	2.72	3.22	3.84	4.45
	26	0.08	0.15	0.44	0.71	0.99	1.26	1.65	2.05	2.44	2.83	3.35	3.99	4.62
	28	0.08	0.16	0.47	0.77	1.06	1.35	1.78	2.21	2.63	3.05	3.61	4.30	4.98
	30	0.09	0.18	0.50	0.82	1.14	1.45	1.91	2.37	2.82	3.27	3.86	4.60	5.34
	32	0.10	0.19	0.54	0.88	1.21	1.55	2.04	2.52	3.01	3.49	4.12	4.91	5.69
	35	0.11	0.21	0.59	0.96	1.33	1.69	2.23	2.76	3.29	3.81	4.51	5.37	6.23
	40	0.12	0.23	0.67	1.10	1.52	1.93	2.55	3.15	3.76	4.36	5.15	6.14	7.11
	45	0.14	0.26	0.76	1.24	1.71	2.17	2.86	3.55	4.23	4.90	5.79	6.90	8.00
		Type A			Type B									Type C

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Horsepower Ratings for Roller Chain,** *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		50	100	240	500	700	900	1200	1500	1800	2100	2500	3000	3500
		Horsepower Rating												
¾-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 35	11	0.11	0.22	0.50	1.02	1.41	1.80	2.37	2.93	3.49	4.05	3.86	2.94	2.33
	12	0.12	0.24	0.55	1.11	1.54	1.96	2.58	3.20	3.81	4.42	4.40	3.35	2.66
	13	0.13	0.26	0.60	1.21	1.67	2.12	2.80	3.47	4.13	4.79	4.96	3.77	3.00
	14	0.14	0.28	0.64	1.30	1.80	2.29	3.01	3.73	4.45	5.15	5.55	4.22	3.35
	15	0.15	0.30	0.69	1.39	1.92	2.45	3.23	4.00	4.76	5.52	6.15	4.68	3.71
	16	0.16	0.32	0.73	1.49	2.05	2.61	3.44	4.26	5.08	5.89	6.77	5.15	4.09
	17	0.17	0.34	0.78	1.58	2.18	2.77	3.66	4.53	5.40	6.26	7.40	5.64	4.48
	18	0.18	0.36	0.83	1.67	2.31	2.94	3.87	4.80	5.72	6.63	7.83	6.15	4.88
	19	0.19	0.38	0.87	1.76	2.44	3.10	4.09	5.06	6.03	7.00	8.27	6.67	5.29
	20	0.20	0.40	0.92	1.86	2.56	3.26	4.30	5.33	6.35	7.36	8.71	7.20	5.72
	21	0.21	0.42	0.96	1.95	2.69	3.43	4.52	5.60	6.67	7.73	9.14	7.75	6.15
	22	0.22	0.44	1.01	2.04	2.82	3.59	4.73	5.86	6.99	8.10	9.58	8.31	6.59
	23	0.23	0.46	1.06	2.14	2.95	3.75	4.95	6.13	7.30	8.47	10.01	8.88	7.05
	24	0.24	0.48	1.10	2.23	3.08	3.92	5.16	6.40	7.62	8.84	10.45	9.47	7.51
	25	0.25	0.50	1.15	2.32	3.21	4.08	5.38	6.66	7.94	9.20	10.88	10.07	7.99
	26	0.26	0.51	1.19	2.41	3.33	4.24	5.59	6.93	8.26	9.57	11.32	10.68	8.47
	28	0.29	0.55	1.28	2.60	3.59	4.57	6.02	7.46	8.89	10.31	12.19	11.93	9.47
	30	0.31	0.59	1.38	2.79	3.85	4.90	6.45	8.00	9.53	11.05	13.06	13.23	10.50
	32	0.33	0.63	1.47	2.97	4.10	5.22	6.88	8.53	10.16	11.78	13.93	14.58	11.57
	35	0.36	0.69	1.61	3.25	4.49	5.71	7.53	9.33	11.11	12.89	15.23	16.67	13.23
	40	0.41	0.79	1.84	3.71	5.13	6.53	8.61	10.66	12.70	14.73	17.41	20.37	16.17
	45	0.46	0.89	2.07	4.18	5.77	7.35	9.68	11.99	14.29	16.57	19.59	23.33	15.56
		Type A		Type B							Type C			

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		50	100	200	300	500	700	900	1000	1200	1400	1600	1800	2100
		Horsepower Rating												
½-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 40	11	0.27	0.52	1.00	1.48	2.42	3.34	4.25	4.70	5.60	6.49	5.57	4.66	3.70
	12	0.29	0.56	1.09	1.61	2.64	3.64	4.64	5.13	6.11	7.09	6.34	5.31	4.22
	13	0.31	0.61	1.19	1.75	2.86	3.95	5.02	5.56	6.62	7.68	7.15	5.99	4.76
	14	0.34	0.66	1.28	1.88	3.08	4.25	5.41	5.98	7.13	8.27	7.99	6.70	5.31
	15	0.36	0.70	1.37	2.02	3.30	4.55	5.80	6.41	7.64	8.86	8.86	7.43	5.89
	16	0.39	0.75	1.46	2.15	3.52	4.86	6.18	6.84	8.15	9.45	9.76	8.18	6.49
	17	0.41	0.80	1.55	2.29	3.74	5.16	6.57	7.27	8.66	10.04	10.69	8.96	7.11
	18	0.43	0.84	1.64	2.42	3.96	5.46	6.95	7.69	9.17	10.63	11.65	9.76	7.75
	19	0.46	0.89	1.73	2.56	4.18	5.77	7.34	8.12	9.68	11.22	12.64	10.59	8.40
	20	0.48	0.94	1.82	2.69	4.39	6.07	7.73	8.55	10.18	11.81	13.42	11.44	9.07
	21	0.51	0.98	1.91	2.83	4.61	6.37	8.11	8.98	10.69	12.40	14.10	12.30	9.76
	22	0.53	1.03	2.01	2.96	4.83	6.68	8.50	9.40	11.20	12.99	14.77	13.19	10.47
	23	0.55	1.08	2.10	3.10	5.05	6.98	8.89	9.83	11.71	13.58	15.44	14.10	11.19
	24	0.58	1.12	2.19	3.23	5.27	7.28	9.27	10.26	12.22	14.17	16.11	15.03	11.93
	25	0.60	1.17	2.28	3.36	5.49	7.59	9.66	10.69	12.73	14.76	16.78	15.98	12.68
	26	0.63	1.22	2.37	3.50	5.71	7.89	10.04	11.11	13.24	15.35	17.45	16.95	13.45
	28	0.67	1.31	2.55	3.77	6.15	8.50	10.82	11.97	14.26	16.53	18.79	18.94	15.03
	30	0.72	1.41	2.74	4.04	6.59	9.11	11.59	12.82	15.28	17.71	20.14	21.01	16.67
	32	0.77	1.50	2.92	4.31	7.03	9.71	12.36	13.68	16.30	18.89	21.48	23.14	18.37
	35	0.84	1.64	3.19	4.71	7.69	10.62	13.52	14.96	17.82	20.67	23.49	26.30	21.01
	40	0.96	1.87	3.65	5.38	8.79	12.14	15.45	17.10	20.37	23.62	26.85	30.06	25.67
	45	1.08	2.11	4.10	6.06	9.89	13.66	17.39	19.24	22.92	26.57	30.20	33.82	30.63
		Type A		Type B								Type C		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Horsepower Ratings for Roller Chain,** *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		10	25	50	100	180	200	300	500	700	900	1000	1200	1400
		Horsepower Rating												
½-inch Pitch Light Weight Machinery Roller Chain — No. 41	11	0.03	0.07	0.15	0.28	0.50	0.55	0.81	1.33	1.84	2.34	2.25	1.71	1.36
	12	0.03	0.08	0.16	0.31	0.54	0.60	0.89	1.45	2.00	2.55	2.57	1.95	1.55
	13	0.04	0.09	0.17	0.34	0.59	0.70	1.04	1.69	2.34	2.97	3.23	2.20	1.75
	14	0.04	0.10	0.19	0.36	0.63	0.57	0.83	1.31	1.77	2.22	2.44	2.46	1.95
	15	0.04	0.10	0.20	0.39	0.68	0.75	1.11	1.81	2.50	3.19	3.53	2.73	2.17
	16	0.05	0.11	0.21	0.41	0.73	0.80	1.18	1.93	2.67	3.40	3.76	3.01	2.39
	17	0.05	0.12	0.23	0.44	0.77	0.85	1.26	2.05	2.84	3.61	4.00	3.29	2.61
	18	0.05	0.12	0.24	0.46	0.82	0.90	1.33	2.18	3.00	3.82	4.23	3.59	2.85
	19	0.05	0.13	0.25	0.49	0.86	0.95	1.41	2.30	3.17	4.04	4.47	3.89	3.09
	20	0.06	0.14	0.27	0.52	0.91	1.00	1.48	2.42	3.34	4.25	4.70	4.20	3.33
	21	0.06	0.14	0.28	0.54	0.95	1.05	1.55	2.54	3.51	4.46	4.94	4.52	3.59
	22	0.06	0.15	0.29	0.57	1.00	1.10	1.63	2.66	3.67	4.67	5.17	4.85	3.85
	23	0.07	0.16	0.30	0.59	1.04	1.15	1.70	2.78	3.84	4.89	5.41	5.18	4.11
	24	0.07	0.16	0.32	0.62	1.09	1.20	1.78	2.90	4.01	5.10	5.64	5.52	4.38
	25	0.07	0.17	0.33	0.64	1.13	1.25	1.85	3.02	4.17	5.31	5.88	5.87	4.66
	26	0.07	0.18	0.34	0.67	1.18	1.30	1.92	3.14	4.34	5.52	6.11	6.23	4.94
	28	0.08	0.19	0.37	0.72	1.27	1.40	2.07	3.38	4.67	5.95	6.58	6.96	5.52
	30	0.08	0.20	0.40	0.77	1.36	1.50	2.22	3.63	5.01	6.37	7.05	7.72	6.13
	32	0.09	0.22	0.42	0.82	1.45	1.60	2.37	3.87	5.34	6.80	7.52	8.50	6.75
	35	0.10	0.24	0.46	0.90	1.59	1.76	2.59	4.23	5.84	7.44	8.23	9.80	7.72
	40	0.11	0.27	0.53	1.03	1.81	2.01	2.96	4.83	6.68	8.50	9.40	11.20	9.43
	45	0.13	0.31	0.60	1.16	2.04	2.26	3.33	5.44	7.51	9.56	10.58	12.60	11.25
		Type A				Type B								

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		25	50	100	140	200	300	500	700	900	1200	1500	1800	2100
		Horsepower Rating												
⅝-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 50	11	0.27	0.52	1.00	1.39	1.95	2.88	4.70	6.50	8.27	10.24	7.33	5.58	4.42
	12	0.29	0.56	1.09	1.51	2.13	3.14	5.13	7.09	9.02	11.67	8.35	6.35	5.04
	13	0.31	0.61	1.19	1.64	2.31	3.40	5.56	7.68	9.77	12.88	9.42	7.16	5.69
	14	0.34	0.66	1.28	1.76	2.48	3.67	5.99	8.27	10.53	13.87	10.52	8.01	6.35
	15	0.36	0.70	1.37	1.89	2.66	3.93	6.41	8.86	11.28	14.86	11.67	8.88	7.05
	16	0.39	0.75	1.46	2.02	2.84	4.19	6.84	9.45	12.03	15.85	12.86	9.78	7.76
	17	0.41	0.80	1.55	2.14	3.02	4.45	7.27	10.04	12.78	16.85	14.08	10.71	8.50
	18	0.43	0.84	1.64	2.27	3.19	4.71	7.70	10.63	13.53	17.84	15.34	11.67	9.26
	19	0.46	0.89	1.73	2.39	3.37	4.98	8.12	11.22	14.28	18.83	16.64	12.66	10.05
	20	0.48	0.94	1.82	2.52	3.55	5.24	8.55	11.81	15.04	19.82	17.97	13.67	10.85
	21	0.51	0.98	1.92	2.65	3.73	5.50	8.98	12.40	15.79	20.81	19.34	14.71	11.67
	22	0.53	1.03	2.01	2.77	3.90	5.76	9.41	12.99	16.54	21.80	20.73	15.77	12.52
	23	0.55	1.08	2.10	2.90	4.08	6.02	9.83	13.58	17.29	22.79	22.16	16.89	13.38
	24	0.58	1.13	2.19	3.02	4.26	6.28	10.26	14.18	18.04	23.78	23.62	17.97	14.26
	25	0.60	1.17	2.28	3.15	4.44	6.55	10.69	14.77	18.79	24.77	25.11	19.11	15.16
	26	0.63	1.22	2.37	3.28	4.61	6.81	11.12	15.36	19.55	25.76	26.64	20.26	16.08
	28	0.67	1.31	2.55	3.53	4.97	7.33	11.97	16.54	21.05	27.75	29.77	22.65	17.97
	30	0.72	1.41	2.74	3.78	5.32	7.86	12.83	17.72	22.55	29.73	33.01	25.11	19.93
	32	0.77	1.50	2.92	4.03	5.68	8.38	13.68	18.90	24.06	31.71	36.37	27.67	21.96
	35	0.84	1.64	3.19	4.41	6.21	9.16	14.97	20.67	26.31	34.68	41.60	31.65	25.11
	40	0.96	1.88	3.65	5.04	7.10	10.47	17.10	23.63	30.07	39.64	49.11	38.67	30.68
	45	1.08	2.11	4.10	5.67	7.98	11.78	19.24	26.58	33.83	44.59	55.24	46.14	36.61
		Type A			Type B						Type C			

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Horsepower Ratings for Roller Chain,** *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		25	50	100	120	200	300	400	500	600	800	1000	1200	1400
		Horsepower Rating												
¾-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 60	11	0.46	0.89	1.72	2.05	3.35	4.95	6.52	8.08	9.63	12.69	15.58	11.85	9.41
	12	0.50	0.97	1.88	2.24	3.66	5.40	7.12	8.82	10.51	13.85	17.15	13.53	10.72
	13	0.54	1.05	2.04	2.43	3.96	5.85	7.71	9.55	11.38	15.00	18.58	15.23	12.08
	14	0.58	1.13	2.19	2.61	4.27	6.30	8.30	10.29	12.26	16.15	20.01	17.02	13.51
	15	0.62	1.21	2.35	2.80	4.57	6.75	8.90	11.02	13.13	17.31	21.44	18.87	14.98
	16	0.66	1.29	2.51	2.99	4.88	7.20	9.49	11.76	14.01	18.46	22.87	20.79	16.50
	17	0.70	1.37	2.66	3.17	5.18	7.65	10.08	12.49	14.88	19.62	24.30	22.77	18.07
	18	0.75	1.45	2.82	3.36	5.49	8.10	10.68	13.23	15.76	20.77	25.73	24.81	19.69
	19	0.79	1.53	2.98	3.55	5.79	8.55	11.27	13.96	16.63	21.92	27.16	26.91	21.35
	20	0.83	1.61	3.13	3.73	6.10	9.00	11.86	14.70	17.51	23.08	28.59	29.06	23.06
	21	0.87	1.69	3.29	3.92	6.40	9.45	12.46	15.43	18.38	24.23	30.02	31.26	24.81
	22	0.91	1.77	3.45	4.11	6.71	9.90	13.05	16.17	19.26	25.39	31.45	33.52	26.60
	23	0.95	1.85	3.61	4.29	7.01	10.35	13.64	16.90	20.13	26.54	32.88	35.84	28.44
	24	0.99	1.93	3.76	4.48	7.32	10.80	14.24	17.64	21.01	27.69	34.31	38.20	30.31
	25	1.04	2.01	3.92	4.67	7.62	11.25	14.83	18.37	21.89	28.85	35.74	40.61	32.23
	26	1.08	2.09	4.08	4.85	7.93	11.70	15.42	19.11	22.76	30.00	37.17	43.07	34.18
	28	1.16	2.26	4.39	5.23	8.54	12.60	16.61	20.58	24.51	32.31	40.03	47.68	38.20
	30	1.24	2.42	4.70	5.60	9.15	13.50	17.79	22.05	26.26	34.62	42.89	51.09	42.36
	32	1.33	2.58	5.02	5.98	9.76	14.40	18.98	23.52	28.01	36.92	45.75	54.50	46.67
	35	1.45	2.82	5.49	6.54	10.67	15.75	20.76	25.72	30.64	40.39	50.03	59.60	53.38
	40	1.66	3.22	6.27	7.47	12.20	18.00	23.73	29.39	35.02	46.16	57.18	68.12	65.22
	45	1.86	3.63	7.05	8.40	13.72	20.25	26.69	33.07	39.39	51.92	64.33	76.63	77.83
		Type A			Type B							Type C		
	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		25	50	75	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1000
		Horsepower Ratings												
1-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 80	11	1.06	2.07	3.05	4.03	7.83	11.56	15.23	18.87	22.48	26.07	27.41	22.97	19.61
	12	1.16	2.26	3.33	4.39	8.54	12.61	16.62	20.59	24.53	28.44	31.23	26.17	22.35
	13	1.26	2.45	3.61	4.76	9.26	13.66	18.00	22.31	26.57	30.81	35.02	29.51	25.20
	14	1.35	2.63	3.89	5.12	9.97	14.71	19.39	24.02	28.62	33.18	37.72	32.98	28.16
	15	1.45	2.82	4.16	5.49	10.68	15.76	20.77	25.74	30.66	35.55	40.41	36.58	31.23
	16	1.55	3.01	4.44	5.86	11.39	16.81	22.16	27.45	32.70	37.92	43.11	40.30	34.41
	17	1.64	3.20	4.72	6.22	12.10	17.86	23.54	29.17	34.75	40.29	45.80	44.13	37.68
	18	1.74	3.39	5.00	6.59	12.81	18.91	24.93	30.88	36.79	42.66	48.49	48.08	41.05
	19	1.84	3.57	5.28	6.95	13.53	19.96	26.31	32.60	38.84	45.03	51.19	52.15	44.52
	20	1.93	3.76	5.55	7.32	14.24	21.01	27.70	34.32	40.88	47.40	53.88	56.32	48.08
	21	2.03	3.95	5.83	7.69	14.95	22.07	29.08	36.03	42.92	49.77	56.58	60.59	51.73
	22	2.13	4.14	6.11	8.05	15.66	23.12	30.47	37.75	44.97	52.14	59.27	64.97	55.47
	23	2.22	4.33	6.39	8.42	16.37	24.17	31.85	39.46	47.01	54.51	61.97	69.38	59.30
	24	2.32	4.52	6.66	8.78	17.09	25.22	33.24	41.18	49.06	56.88	64.66	72.40	63.21
	25	2.42	4.70	6.94	9.15	17.80	26.27	34.62	42.89	51.10	59.25	67.35	75.42	67.20
	26	2.51	4.89	7.22	9.52	18.51	27.32	36.01	44.61	53.14	61.62	70.05	78.43	71.27
	28	2.71	5.27	7.77	10.25	19.93	29.42	38.78	48.04	57.23	66.36	75.44	84.47	79.65
	30	2.90	5.64	8.33	10.98	21.36	31.52	41.55	51.47	61.32	71.10	80.82	90.50	88.33
	32	3.09	6.02	8.89	11.71	22.78	33.62	44.32	54.91	65.41	75.84	86.21	96.53	97.31
	35	3.38	6.58	9.72	12.81	24.92	36.78	48.47	60.05	71.54	82.95	94.29	105.58	111.31
	40	3.87	7.53	11.11	14.64	28.48	42.03	55.40	68.63	81.76	94.80	107.77	120.67	133.51
	45	4.35	8.47	12.49	16.47	32.04	47.28	62.32	77.21	91.98	106.65	121.24	135.75	150.20
		Type A			Type B							Type C		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. *(Continued)* **Horsepower Ratings for Roller Chain,** *ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)*

	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		10	25	50	100	150	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
		Horsepower Rating												
1¼-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 100	11	0.85	2.04	3.96	7.71	11.38	15.00	22.14	29.18	36.15	43.06	40.03	32.77	24.76
	12	0.92	2.22	4.32	8.41	12.41	16.36	24.15	31.83	39.44	46.98	45.61	37.33	31.29
	13	1.00	2.41	4.68	9.11	13.45	17.73	26.16	34.48	42.72	50.89	51.43	42.10	35.28
	14	1.08	2.59	5.04	9.81	14.48	19.09	28.18	37.14	46.01	54.81	57.48	47.05	39.43
	15	1.15	2.78	5.41	10.51	15.52	20.45	30.19	39.79	49.30	58.72	63.75	52.18	43.73
	16	1.23	2.96	5.77	11.22	16.55	21.82	32.20	42.44	52.58	62.64	70.23	57.48	48.17
	17	1.31	3.15	6.13	11.92	17.59	23.18	34.21	45.10	55.87	66.55	76.91	62.95	52.76
	18	1.38	3.33	6.49	12.62	18.62	24.55	36.23	47.75	59.15	70.47	81.71	68.59	57.48
	19	1.46	3.52	6.85	13.32	19.66	25.91	38.24	50.40	62.44	74.38	86.25	74.38	62.34
	20	1.54	3.70	7.21	14.02	20.69	27.27	40.25	53.05	65.73	78.30	90.79	80.33	67.32
	21	1.61	3.89	7.57	14.72	21.73	28.64	42.26	55.71	69.01	82.21	95.33	86.43	72.43
	22	1.69	4.08	7.93	15.42	22.76	30.00	44.28	58.36	72.30	86.13	99.87	92.68	77.67
	23	1.77	4.26	8.29	16.12	23.79	31.36	46.29	61.01	75.59	90.04	104.41	99.07	83.02
	24	1.84	4.45	8.65	16.82	24.83	32.73	48.30	63.66	78.87	93.96	108.95	105.60	88.50
	25	1.92	4.63	9.01	17.52	25.86	34.09	50.31	66.32	82.16	97.87	113.48	112.27	94.09
	26	2.00	4.82	9.37	18.23	26.90	35.45	52.33	68.97	85.45	101.79	118.02	119.07	99.79
	28	2.15	5.19	10.09	19.63	28.97	38.18	56.35	74.27	92.02	109.62	127.10	133.07	111.52
	30	2.31	5.56	10.81	21.03	31.04	40.91	60.38	79.58	98.59	117.45	136.18	147.58	123.68
	32	2.46	5.93	11.53	22.43	33.11	43.64	64.40	84.88	105.16	125.28	145.26	162.58	136.25
	35	2.69	6.48	12.61	24.53	36.21	47.73	70.44	92.84	115.02	137.02	158.88	180.61	155.85
	40	3.07	7.41	14.41	28.04	41.38	54.54	80.50	106.11	131.45	156.60	181.58	206.41	190.42
	45	3.46	8.34	16.22	31.54	46.55	61.36	90.56	119.37	147.89	176.17	204.27	232.21	227.21
		Type A			Type B						Type C			
	No. of Teeth Small Spkt.	Revolutions per Minute — Small Sprocket[a]												
		10	25	50	100	150	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
		Horsepower Rating												
1½-inch Pitch Standard Single-Strand Roller Chain — No. 120	11	1.43	3.44	6.69	13.02	19.22	25.33	37.38	49.27	61.04	58.37	46.32	37.91	31.77
	12	1.56	3.75	7.30	14.20	20.96	27.63	40.78	53.75	66.59	66.51	52.78	43.20	36.20
	13	1.69	4.07	7.91	15.39	22.71	29.93	44.18	58.23	72.14	74.99	59.51	48.71	40.82
	14	1.82	4.38	8.52	16.57	24.46	32.24	47.58	62.71	77.69	83.81	66.51	54.44	45.62
	15	1.95	4.69	9.13	17.76	26.20	34.54	50.98	67.19	83.24	92.95	73.76	60.37	50.59
	16	2.08	5.00	9.74	18.94	27.95	36.84	54.37	71.67	88.79	102.39	81.26	66.51	55.74
	17	2.21	5.32	10.34	20.12	29.70	39.14	57.77	76.15	94.34	112.14	88.99	72.84	61.04
	18	2.34	5.63	10.95	21.31	31.45	41.45	61.17	80.63	99.89	119.00	96.96	79.36	66.51
	19	2.47	5.94	11.56	22.49	33.19	43.75	64.57	85.11	105.44	125.61	105.15	86.06	72.13
	20	2.60	6.26	12.17	23.67	34.94	46.05	67.97	89.59	110.99	132.22	113.56	92.95	77.89
	21	2.73	6.57	12.78	24.86	36.69	48.36	71.37	94.07	116.54	138.83	122.18	100.00	83.81
	22	2.86	6.88	13.39	26.04	38.43	50.66	74.76	98.55	122.09	145.44	131.01	107.23	89.87
	23	2.99	7.19	14.00	27.22	40.18	52.96	78.16	103.02	127.64	152.05	140.04	114.62	96.06
	24	3.11	7.51	14.60	28.41	41.93	55.26	81.56	107.50	133.19	158.66	149.28	122.18	102.39
	25	3.24	7.82	15.21	29.59	43.67	57.57	84.96	111.98	138.74	165.27	158.70	129.90	108.86
	26	3.37	8.13	15.82	30.78	45.42	59.87	88.36	116.46	144.29	171.88	168.32	137.77	115.46
	28	3.63	8.76	17.04	33.14	48.92	64.47	95.15	125.42	155.38	185.11	188.11	153.97	129.03
	30	3.89	9.38	18.25	35.51	52.41	69.08	101.95	134.38	166.48	198.33	208.62	170.75	143.10
	32	4.15	10.01	19.47	37.88	55.90	73.68	108.75	143.34	177.58	211.55	229.83	188.11	157.65
	35	4.54	10.95	21.30	41.43	61.14	80.59	118.94	156.78	194.23	231.38	262.89	215.17	180.33
	40	5.19	12.51	24.34	47.35	69.88	92.11	135.94	179.17	221.98	264.44	306.61	262.89	220.32
	45	5.84	14.08	27.38	53.27	78.61	103.62	152.93	201.57	249.72	297.49	344.94	313.69	213.33
		Type A			Type B						Type C			

[a] For lower or higher rpm, larger chain sizes, and rpm above 3500, see B29.1-2011 (R2016).

For use of table see page 2626.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Recommended Roller Chain Sprocket Maximum Bore and Hub Diameters

Roller Chain Pitch										
	⅜		½		⅝		¾		1	
No. of Teeth	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.
11	19/32	55/64	25/32	1 11/64	31/32	1 15/32	1 1/4	1 49/64	1 5/8	2 3/8
12	5/8	63/64	7/8	1 21/64	1 5/32	1 43/64	1 9/32	2 1/64	1 25/32	2 45/64
13	3/4	1 7/64	1	1 1/2	1 9/32	1 7/8	1 1/2	2 1/4	2	3 1/64
14	27/32	1 15/64	1 5/32	1 21/32	1 5/16	2 5/64	1 3/4	2 1/2	2 9/32	3 11/32
15	7/8	1 23/64	1 1/4	1 13/16	1 17/32	2 9/32	1 25/32	2 3/4	2 13/32	3 43/64
16	31/32	1 15/32	1 9/32	1 63/64	1 11/16	2 31/64	1 31/32	2 63/64	2 23/32	3 63/64
17	1 3/32	1 19/32	1 3/8	2 9/64	1 25/32	2 11/16	2 7/32	3 7/32	2 13/16	4 5/16
18	1 7/32	1 23/32	1 17/32	2 19/64	1 7/8	2 57/64	2 9/32	3 15/32	3 1/8	4 41/64
19	1 1/4	1 27/32	1 11/16	2 29/64	2 1/16	3 5/64	2 7/16	3 45/64	3 5/16	4 61/64
20	1 9/32	1 61/64	1 25/32	2 5/8	2 1/4	3 9/32	2 11/16	3 61/64	3 1/2	5 9/32
21	1 5/16	2 5/64	1 25/32	2 25/32	2 9/32	3 31/64	2 13/16	4 3/16	3 3/4	5 19/32
22	1 7/16	2 13/16	1 15/16	2 15/16	2 7/16	3 11/16	2 15/16	4 7/16	3 7/8	5 59/64
23	1 9/16	2 5/16	2 3/32	3 3/32	2 5/8	3 57/64	3 1/8	4 43/64	4 3/16	6 1/64
24	1 11/16	2 7/16	2 1/4	3 17/64	2 13/16	4 5/64	3 1/4	4 29/32	4 9/16	6 9/16
25	1 3/4	2 9/16	2 9/32	3 27/64	2 27/32	4 9/32	3 3/8	5 5/32	4 11/16	6 7/8
Roller Chain Pitch										
	1¼		1½		1¾		2		2½	
No. of Teeth	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.	Max. Bore	Max. Hub Dia.
11	1 31/32	2 31/32	2 5/16	3 37/64	2 13/16	4 11/64	3 9/32	4 25/32	3 15/16	5 63/64
12	2 9/32	3 3/8	2 3/4	4 1/16	3 1/4	4 3/4	3 5/8	5 27/64	4 23/32	6 51/64
13	2 17/32	3 25/32	3 1/16	4 35/64	3 9/16	5 5/16	4 1/16	6 5/64	5 3/32	7 39/64
14	2 11/16	4 3/16	3 5/16	5 1/32	3 7/8	5 7/8	4 11/16	6 23/32	5 23/32	8 27/64
15	3 3/32	4 19/32	3 3/4	5 33/64	4 7/16	6 29/64	4 7/8	7 3/8	6 1/4	9 7/32
16	3 9/32	5	4	6	4 11/16	7 1/64	5 1/2	8 1/64	7	10 1/32
17	3 21/32	5 13/32	4 15/32	6 31/64	5 1/16	7 37/64	5 11/16	8 21/32	7 7/16	10 27/32
18	3 25/32	5 51/64	4 21/32	6 31/32	5 5/8	8 9/64	6 1/4	9 5/16	8 1/8	11 41/64
19	4 3/16	6 13/64	4 15/16	7 29/64	5 11/16	8 45/64	6 7/8	9 61/64	9	12 7/16
20	4 19/32	6 39/64	5 7/16	7 15/16	6 1/4	9 17/64	7	10 19/32	9 3/4	13 1/4
21	4 11/16	7	5 11/16	8 27/64	6 13/16	9 53/64	7 3/4	11 15/64	10	14 3/64
22	4 7/8	7 13/32	5 7/8	8 57/64	7 1/4	10 25/64	8 3/8	11 7/8	10 7/8	14 27/32
23	5 5/16	7 13/16	6 3/8	9 3/8	7 7/16	10 15/16	9	12 33/64	11 5/8	15 21/32
24	5 11/16	8 13/64	6 13/16	9 55/64	8	11 1/2	9 5/8	13 5/32	13	16 29/64
25	5 23/32	8 39/64	7 1/4	10 11/32	8 9/16	12 1/16	10 1/4	13 51/64	13 1/2	17 1/4

All dimensions in inches.
For standard key dimensions see pages 2539 through 2552.
Source: American Chain Association.

Center Distance between Sprockets.—The center-to-center distance between sprockets, as a general rule, should not be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the diameter of the larger sprocket and not less than 30 times the pitch nor more than about 50 times the pitch, although much depends upon the speed and other conditions. A center distance equivalent to 80 pitches may be considered an approved maximum. Very long center distances result in catenary tension in the chain. If roller-chain drives are designed correctly, the center-to-center distance for some transmissions may be so short that the sprocket teeth nearly touch each other, assuming that the load is not too great and the number of teeth is not too

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

small. To avoid interference of the sprocket teeth, the center distance must, of course, be somewhat greater than one-half the sum of the outside diameters of the sprockets. The chain should extend around at least 120 degrees of the pinion circumference, and this minimum amount of contact is obtained for all center distances provided the ratio is less than $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. Other things being equal, a fairly long chain is recommended in preference to the shortest one allowed by the sprocket diameters, because the rate of chain elongation due to natural wear is inversely proportional to the length, and also because the greater elasticity of the longer strand tends to absorb irregularities of motion and to decrease the effect of shocks.

If possible, the center distance should be adjustable in order to take care of slack due to elongation from wear and this range of adjustment should be at least one and one-half pitches. A little slack is desirable as it allows the chain links to take the best position on the sprocket teeth and reduces the wear on the bearings. Too much sag or an excessive distance between the sprockets may cause the chain to whip up and down — a condition detrimental to smooth running and very destructive to the chain. The sprockets should run in a vertical plane, the sprocket axes being approximately horizontal, unless an idler is used on the slack side to keep the chain in position. The most satisfactory results are obtained when the slack side of the chain is on the bottom.

Center Distance for a Given Chain Length.—When the distance between the driving and driven sprockets can be varied to suit the length of the chain, this center distance for a tight chain may be determined by the following formula, in which c = center-to-center distance in inches; L = chain length in pitches; P = pitch of chain; N = number of teeth in large sprocket; n = number of teeth in small sprocket.

$$c = \frac{P}{8}\left(2L - N - n + \sqrt{(2L - N - n)^2 - 0.810(N - n)^2}\right)$$

This formula is approximate, but the error is less than the variation in the length of the best chains. The length L in pitches should be an even number for a roller chain, so that the use of an offset connecting link will not be necessary.

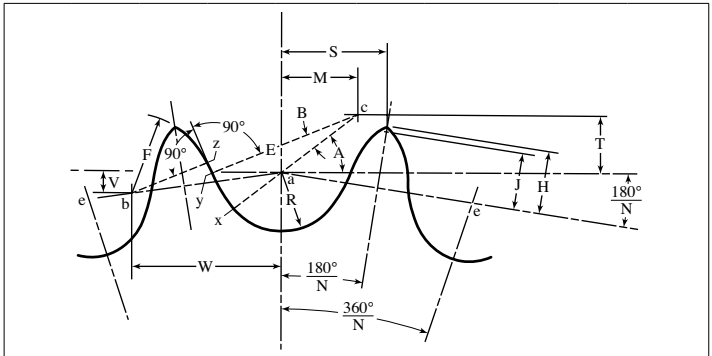
Idler Sprockets.—When sprockets have a fixed center distance or are non-adjustable, it may be advisable to use an idler sprocket for taking up the slack. The idler should preferably be placed against the slack side between the two strands of the chain. When a sprocket is applied to the tight side of the chain to reduce vibration, it should be on the lower side and so located that the chain will run in a straight line between the two main sprockets. A sprocket will wear excessively if the number of teeth is too small and the speed too high, because there is impact between the teeth and rollers even though the idler carries practically no load.

Length of Driving Chain.—The total length of a block chain should be given in multiples of the pitch, whereas for a roller chain, the length should be in multiples of twice the pitch, because the ends must be connected with an outside and inside link. The length of a chain can be calculated accurately enough for ordinary practice by the use of the following formula, in which L = chain length in pitches; C = center distance in pitches; N = number of teeth in large sprocket; n = number of teeth in small sprocket:

$$L = 2C + \frac{N}{2} + \frac{n}{2} + \left(\frac{N - n}{2\pi}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{C}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. ANSI Sprocket Tooth Form for Roller Chain
ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016)



Seating Curve Data—Inches

P	D_r	Min. *R*	Min. D_s	D_s Tol.[a]	*P*	D_r	Min. *R*	Min. D_s	D_s Tol.[a]
0.250	0.130	0.0670	0.134	0.0055	1.250	0.750	0.3785	0.757	0.0070
0.375	0.200	0.1020	0.204	0.0055	1.500	0.875	0.4410	0.882	0.0075
0.500	0.306	0.1585	0.317	0.0060	1.750	1.000	0.5040	1.008	0.0080
0.500	0.312	0.1585	0.317	0.0060	2.000	1.125	0.5670	1.134	0.0085
0.625	0.400	0.2025	0.405	0.0060	2.250	1.406	0.7080	1.416	0.0090
0.750	0.469	0.2370	0.474	0.0065	2.500	1.562	0.7870	1.573	0.0095
1.000	0.625	0.3155	0.631	0.0070	3.000	1.875	0.9435	1.887	0.0105

[a] Plus tolerance only.

P = pitch (ae)

N = number of teeth D_r = nominal roller diameter

D_s = seating curve diameter = $1.005\,D_r + 0.003$ (in inches)

$R = {}^1\!/_2\,D_s$ (D_s has only plus tolerance)

$A = 35° + (60° \div N)$ $B = 18° - (56° \div N)$ $ac = 0.8D_r$

$M = 0.8\,D_r \cos(35° + (60° \div N))$

$T = 0.8\,D_r \sin(35° + (60° \div N))$

$E = 1.3025\,D_r + 0.0015$ (in inches)

Chord $xy = (2.605\,D_r + 0.003)\sin(9° - (28° \div N))$ (in inches)

$yz = D_r\,[1.4\sin(17° - (64° \div N)) - 0.8\sin(18° - (56° \div N))]$

Length of a line between a and $b = 1.4\,D_r$

$W = 1.4\,D_r \cos(180° \div N)$ $V = 1.4\,D_r \sin(180° \div N)$

$F = D_r\,[0.8\cos(18° - (56° \div N)) + 1.4\cos(17° - (64° \div N)) - 1.3025] - 0.0015$ inch

$H = \sqrt{F^2 - (1.4D_r - 0.5P)^2}$

$S = 0.5\,P\cos(180° \div N) + H\sin(180° \div N)$

Approximate O.D. of sprocket when J is $0.3\;P = P\,[0.6 + \cot(180° \div N)]$

O.D. of sprocket when tooth is pointed $+ P\cot(180° \div N) + \cos(180° \div N)\,(D_s - D_r) + 2H$

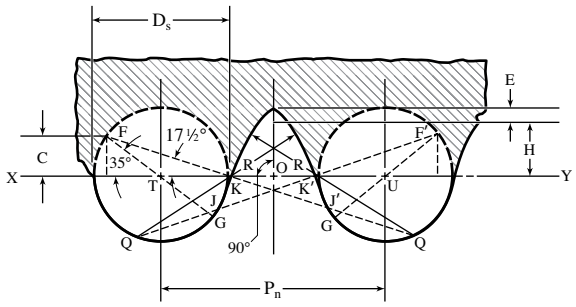
Pressure angle for new chain = $xab = 35° - (120° \div N)$

Minimum pressure angle = $xab - B = 17° - (64° \div N)$;

Average pressure angle = $26° - (92° \div N)$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Standard Hob Design for Roller Chain Sprockets



Section Normal to Hob Teeth

Data for Laying Out Hob Outlines — Inches

P	P_n	*H*	*E*	O.D.	*W*	Bore	Keyway	No. Gashes
¼	0.2527	0.0675	0.0075	2⅝	2½	1.250	¼ × ⅛	13
⅜	0.379	0.101	0.012	3⅛	2½	1.250	¼ × ⅛	13
½	0.506	0.135	0.015	3⅜	2½	1.250	¼ × ⅛	12
⅝	0.632	0.170	0.018	3⅝	2½	1.250	11/4 × ⅛	12
¾	0.759	0.202	0.023	3¾	2⅞	1.250	¼ × ⅛	11
1	1.011	0.270	0.030	4⅜	3¾	1.250	¼ × ⅛	11
1¼	1.264	0.337	0.038	4¾	4½	1.250	¼ × ⅛	10
1½	1.517	0.405	0.045	5⅜	5¼	1.250	¼ × ⅛	10
1¾	1.770	0.472	0.053	6⅜	6	1.500	⅜ × 3/16	9
2	2.022	0.540	0.060	6⅞	6¾	1.500	⅜ × 3/16	9
2¼	2.275	0.607	0.068	8	8½	1.750	⅜ × 3/16	8
2½	2.528	0.675	0.075	8⅝	9⅜	1.750	⅜ × 3/16	8
3	3.033	0.810	0.090	9¾	11¼	2.000	½ × ⅜	8

Hobs designed for a given roller diameter (D_r) and chain pitch (P) will cut any number of teeth.

P = Pitch of Chain

P_n = Normal Pitch of Hob = $1.011P$ inches

D_s = Minimum Diameter of Seating Curve = $1.005D_r + 0.003$ inches

F = Radius Center for Arc GK; $TO = OU = P_n \div 2$

$H = 0.27P$ $E = 0.03P$ = Radius of Fillet Circle

Q is located on line passing through F and J. Point J is intersection of line XY with circle of diameter D_s. R is found by trial and the arc of this radius is tangent to arc K_G at K and to fillet radius.

OD = Outside Diameter = $1.7(\text{Bore} + D_r + 0.7P)$ approx.

D_h = Pitch Diameter = $OD - D_s$; M = Helix Angle; $\sin M = P_n \div \pi D_h$

L = Lead = $P_n \div \cos M$; W = Width = Not less than $2 \times$ Bore, or $6D_r$, or $3.2P$

To the length obtained by this formula, add enough to make a whole number (and for a roller chain, an even number) of pitches. If a roller chain has an odd number of pitches, it will be necessary to use an offset connecting link.

Another formula for obtaining chain length in which D = distance between centers of shafts; R = pitch radius of large sprocket; r = pitch radius of small sprocket: N = number of teeth in large sprocket; n = number of teeth in small sprocket; P = pitch of chain and sprockets; and l = required chain length in inches, is:

$$l = \frac{180° + 2\alpha}{360°}NP + \frac{180° - 2\alpha}{360°}nP + 2D\cos\alpha \text{ where } \sin\alpha = \frac{R - r}{D}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

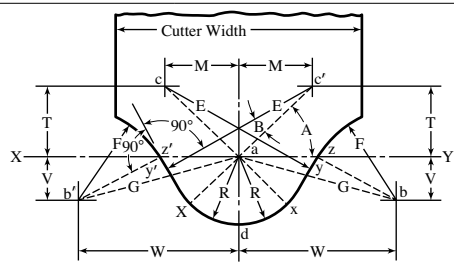
Cutting Standard Sprocket Tooth Form.—The proportions and seating curve data for the standard sprocket tooth form for roller chain are given in Table 11. Either formed or generating types of sprocket cutters may be employed.

Hobs: Only one hob will be required to cut any number of teeth for a given pitch and roller diameter. All hobs should be marked with pitch and roller diameter to be cut. Formulas and data for standard hob design are given in Table 12.

Space Cutters: Five cutters of this type will be required to cut from 7 teeth up for any given roller diameter. The ranges are, respectively, 7–8, 9–11, 12–17, 18–34, and 35 teeth and over. If less than 7 teeth is necessary, special cutters conforming to the required number of teeth should be used.

The regular cutters are based upon an intermediate number of teeth N_a, equal to $2N_1N_2 \div (N_1 + N_2)$ in which N_1 = minimum number of teeth and N_2 = maximum number of teeth for which cutter is intended; but the topping curve radius F (see diagram in Table 13) is designed to produce adequate tooth height on a sprocket of N_2 teeth. The values of N_a for the several cutters are, respectively, 7.47, 9.9, 14.07, 23.54, and 56. Formulas and construction data for space cutter layout are given in Table 13 and recommended cutter sizes are given in Table 14.

Table 13. Standard Space Cutters for Roller-Chain Sprockets



Data for Laying Out Space Cutter				
Range of Teeth	*M*	*T*	*W*	*V*
7–8	$0.5848D_r$	$0.5459D_r$	$1.2790D_r$	$0.5694D_r$
9–11	$0.6032D_r$	$0.5255D_r$	$1.3302D_r$	$0.4365D_r$
12–17	$0.6194D_r$	$0.5063D_r$	$1.3694D_r$	$0.2911D_r$
18–34	$0.6343D_r$	$0.4875D_r$	$1.3947D_r$	$0.1220D_r$
35 up	$0.6466D_r$	$0.4710D_r$	$1.4000D_r$	0
Range of Teeth	*F*	Chord *xy*	*yz*	Angle *Yab*
7–8	$0.8686D_r - 0.0015$	$0.2384D_r + 0.0003$	$0.0618D_r$	24°
9–11	$0.8554D_r - 0.0015$	$0.2800D_r + 0.0003$	$0.0853D_r$	18° 10′
12–17	$0.8364D_r - 0.0015$	$0.3181D_r + 0.0004$	$0.1269D_r$	12°
18–34	$0.8073D_r - 0.0015$	$0.3540D_r + 0.0004$	$0.1922D_r$	5°
35 up	$0.7857D_r - 0.0015$	$0.3850D_r + 0.0004$	$0.2235D_r$	0°

E (same for all ranges) = $1.3025D_r + 0.0015$; G (same for all ranges) = $1.4D_r$

See Table 14 for recommended cutter sizes.

Angle *Yab* is equal to $180° \div N$ when the cutter is made for a specific number of teeth. For the design of cutters covering a range of teeth, angle *Yab* was determined by layout to ensure chain roller clearance and to avoid pointed teeth on the larger sprockets of each range. It has values as given below for cutters covering the range of teeth shown. The following formulas are for cutters covering the standard ranges of teeth where N_a equals intermediate values given on page 2635.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$W = 1.4D_r\cos(Yab) \qquad V = 1.4D_r\sin(Yab)$$

$$yz = D_r\left[1.4\sin\left(17° + \frac{116°}{N_a} - Yab\right) - 0.8\sin\left(18° - \frac{56°}{N_a}\right)\right]$$

$$F = D_r\left[0.8\cos\left(18° - \frac{56°}{N_a}\right) + 1.4\cos\left(17° + \frac{116°}{N_a} - Yab\right) - 1.3025\right] - 0.0015 \text{ in.}$$

For other points, use the value of N_a for N in the standard formulas in Table 11.

Table 14. Recommended Space Cutter Sizes for Roller-Chain Sprockets

		Number of Teeth					
		6	7-8	9-11	12-17	18-34	35 up
Pitch	Roller Dia.	Cutter Diameter (Minimum)					
0.250	0.130	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75
0.375	0.200	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75	2.75
0.500	0.312	3.00	3.00	3.12	3.12	3.12	3.12
0.625	0.400	3.12	3.12	3.25	3.25	3.25	3.25
0.725	0.469	3.25	3.25	3.38	3.38	3.38	3.38
1.000	0.625	3.88	4.00	4.12	4.12	4.25	4.25
1.250	0.750	4.25	4.38	4.50	4.50	4.62	4.62
1.500	0.875	4.38	4.50	4.62	4.62	4.75	4.75
1.750	1.000	5.00	5.12	5.25	5.38	5.50	5.50
2.000	1.125	5.38	5.50	5.62	5.75	5.88	5.88
2.250	1.406	5.88	6.00	6.25	6.38	6.50	6.50
2.500	1.563	6.38	6.62	6.75	6.88	7.00	7.12
3.000	1.875	7.50	7.75	7.88	8.00	8.00	8.25
Pitch	Roller Dia.	Cutter Width (Minimum)					
0.250	0.130	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.28	0.28
0.375	0.200	0.47	0.47	0.47	0.44	0.44	0.41
0.500	0.312	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.72	0.69
0.625	0.400	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.75	0.72	0.69
0.750	0.469	0.91	0.91	0.91	0.88	0.84	0.81
1.000	0.625	1.50	1.50	1.47	1.47	1.41	1.34
1.250	0.750	1.81	1.81	1.78	1.75	1.69	1.62
1.500	0.875	1.81	1.81	1.78	1.75	1.69	1.62
1.750	1.000	2.09	2.09	2.06	2.03	1.97	1.88
2.000	1.125	2.41	2.41	2.38	2.31	2.25	2.16
2.250	1.406	2.69	2.69	2.66	2.59	2.47	2.41
2.500	1.563	3.00	3.00	2.94	2.91	2.75	2.69
3.000	1.875	3.59	3.59	3.53	3.47	3.34	3.22

Where the same roller diameter is commonly used with chains of two different pitches it is recommended that stock cutters be made wide enough to cut sprockets for both chains.

Marking of Cutters.—All cutters are to be marked, giving pitch, roller diameter and range of teeth to be cut.

Bores for Sprocket Cutters (recommended practice) are approximately as calculated from the formula:

$$\text{Bore} = 0.7\sqrt{(\text{Width of Cutter} + \text{Roller Diameter} + 0.7\text{ Pitch})}$$

and are equal to 1 inch for ¼- through ¾-inch pitches; 1¼ inches for 1- through 1½-inch for 1¾- through 2¼-inch pitches; 1¾ inches for 2½-inch pitch; and 2 inches for 3-inch pitch.

Minimum Outside Diameters of Space Cutters for 35 teeth and over (recommended practice) are approximately as calculated from the formula:

$$\text{Outside Diameter} = 1.2(\text{Bore} + \text{Roller Diameter} + 0.7\text{ Pitch}) + 1\text{ in.}$$

Shaper Cutters: Only one will be required to cut any number of teeth for a given pitch and roller diameter. The manufacturer should be referred to for information concerning the cutter form design to be used.

Sprocket Manufacture.—Cast sprockets have cut teeth, and the rim, hub face, and bore are machined. The smaller sprockets are generally cut from steel bar stock, and are finished all over. Sprockets are often made from forgings or forged bars. The extent of finishing depends on the particular specifications that are applicable. Many sprockets are made by welding a steel hub to a steel plate. This process produces a one-piece sprocket of desired proportions and one that can be heat treated.

Sprocket Materials.—For large sprockets, cast iron is commonly used, especially in drives with large speed ratios, since the teeth of the larger sprocket are subjected to fewer chain engagements in a given time. For severe service, cast steel or steel plate is preferred.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The smaller sprockets of a drive are usually made of steel. With this material the body of the sprocket can be heat treated to produce toughness for shock resistance, and the tooth surfaces can be hardened to resist wear.

Stainless steel or bronze may be used for corrosion resistance, and Formica, nylon or other suitable plastic materials for special applications.

Roller Chain Drive Ratings.—In 1961, under auspices of The American Sprocket Chain Manufacturers Association (now called American Chain Association), a joint research program was begun to study pin-bushing interaction at high speeds and to gain further data on the phenomenon of chain joint galling among other research areas. These studies have shown that a separating film of lubricant is formed in chain joints in a manner similar to that found in journal bearings. These developments appear in ANSI/ASME B29.1-2011 (R2016), and are contained in Table 9. The ratings shown in Table 9 are below the galling range.

The horsepower ratings in Table 9 apply to lubricated, single-pitch, single-strand roller chains, both ANSI Standard and Heavy series. To obtain ratings of multiple-strand chains, a multiple-strand factor is applied.

The ratings in Table 9 are based upon: 1) a service factor of 1; 2) a chain length of approximately 100 pitches; 3) use of recommended lubrication methods; and 4) a drive arrangement where two aligned sprockets are mounted on parallel shafts in a horizontal plane.

Under these conditions, approximately 15,000 hours of service life at full load operation may be expected.

Table 15. Roller Chain Drive Service Factors

Type of Driven Load	Type of Input Power		
	Internal Combustion Engine with Hydraulic Drive	Electric Motor or Turbine	Internal Combustion Engine with Mechanical Drive
Smooth	1.0	1.0	1.2
Moderate Shock	1.2	1.3	1.4
Heavy Shock	1.4	1.5	1.7

Substantial increases in rated speed loads can be utilized, as when a service life of less than 15,000 hours is satisfactory, or when full load operation is encountered only during a portion of the required service life. Chain manufacturers should be consulted for assistance with any special application requirements.

The horsepower ratings shown in Table 9 relate to the speed of the smaller sprocket and drive selections are made on this basis, whether the drive is speed reducing or speed increasing. Drives with more than two sprockets, idlers, composite duty cycles, or other unusual conditions often require special consideration. Where quietness or extra smooth operation are of special importance, small-pitch chain operating over large diameter sprockets will minimize noise and vibration.

When making drive selection, consideration is given to the loads imposed on the chain by the type of input power and the type of equipment to be driven. Service factors are used to compensate for these loads and the *required* horsepower rating of the chain is determined by the following formula:

$$\text{Required hp Table Rating} = \frac{\text{hp to be Transmitted} \times \text{Service Factor}}{\text{Multiple} - \text{Strand Factor}}$$

Service Factors: The service factors in Table 15 are for normal chain loading. For unusual or extremely severe operating conditions not shown in this table, it is desirable to use larger service factors.

Multiple-Strand Factors: The horsepower ratings for multiple-strand chains equal single-strand ratings multiplied by these factors:for two strands, a factor of 1.7; for three strands, 2.5; and and for four strands, 3.3.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Lubrication.—It has been shown that a separating wedge of fluid lubricant is formed in operating chain joints much like that formed in journal bearings. Therefore, fluid lubricant must be applied to ensure an oil supply to the joints and minimize metal-to-metal contact. If supplied in sufficient volume, lubrication also provides effective cooling and impact damping at higher speeds. For this reason, it is important that lubrication recommendations be followed. *The ratings in* Table 9 *apply only to drives lubricated in the manner specified in this table*.

Chain drives should be protected against dirt and moisture and the oil supply kept free of contamination. Periodic oil change is desirable. A good grade of non-detergent petroleum base oil is recommended. Heavy oils and greases are generally too stiff to enter and fill the chain joints. The following lubricant viscosities are recommended: For temperatures of 20° to 40°F, use SAE 20 lubricant; for 40° to 100°, use SAE 30; for 100° to 120°, use SAE 40; and for 120° to 140°, use SAE 50.

There are three basic types of lubrication for roller chain drives. The recommended type shown in Table 9 as Type A, Type B, or Type C is influenced by the chain speed and the amount of power transmitted. These are *minimum* lubrication requirements and the use of a better type (for example, Type C instead of Type B) is acceptable and may be beneficial. Chain life can vary appreciably depending upon the way the drive is lubricated. The better the chain lubrication, the longer the chain life. For this reason, it is important that the lubrication recommendations be followed when using the ratings given in Table 9. The types of lubrication are as follows:

Type A — Manual or Drip Lubrication: In manual lubrication, oil is applied copiously with a brush or spout can at least once every 8 hours of operation. Volume and frequency should be sufficient to prevent overheating of the chain or discoloration of the chain joints. In drip lubrication, oil drops from a drip lubricator are directed between the link plate edges. The volume and frequency should be sufficient to prevent discoloration of the lubricant in the chain joints. Precautions must be taken against misdirection of the drops by windage.

Type B — Bath or Disc Lubrication: In bath lubrication, the lower strand of the chain runs through a sump of oil in the drive housing. The oil level should reach the pitch line of the chain at its lowest point while operating. In disc lubrication, the chain operates above the oil level. The disc picks up oil from the sump and deposits it onto the chain, usually by means of a trough. The diameter of the disc should be such as to produce rim speeds of between 600 and 8000 feet per minute.

Type C — Oil Stream Lubrication: The lubricant is usually supplied by a circulating pump capable of supplying each chain drive with a continuous stream of oil. The oil should be applied inside the chain loop evenly across the chain width, and directed at the slack strand.

The chain manufacturer should be consulted when it appears desirable to use a type of lubricant other than that recommended.

Installation and Alignment.—Sprockets should have the tooth form, thickness, profile, and diameters conforming to ANSI/ASME B29.1. For maximum service life small sprockets operating at moderate to high speeds, or near the rated horsepower, should have hardened teeth. Normally, large sprockets should not exceed 120 teeth.

In general a center distance of 30 to 50 chain pitches is most desirable. The distance between sprocket centers should provide at least a 120 degree chain wrap on the smaller sprocket. Drives may be installed with either adjustable or fixed center distances. Adjustable centers simplify the control of chain slack. Sufficient housing clearance must always be provided for the chain slack to obtain full chain life.

Accurate alignment of shafts and sprocket tooth faces provides uniform distribution of the load across the entire chain width and contributes substantially to optimum drive life.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Shafting, bearings, and foundations should be suitable to maintain the initial alignment. Periodic maintenance should include an inspection of alignment.

Example of Roller Chain Drive Design Procedure.—The selection of a roller chain and sprockets for a specific design requirement is best accomplished by a systematic step-by-step procedure such as is used in the following example.

Example: Select a roller chain drive to transmit 10 horsepower from a countershaft to the main shaft of a wire drawing machine. The countershaft is $1^{15}/_{16}$-inches diameter and operates at 1000 rpm. The main shaft is also $1^{15}/_{16}$-inches diameter and must operate between 378 and 382 rpm. Shaft centers, once established, are fixed and by initial calculations must be approximately $22^{1}/_{2}$ inches. The load on the main shaft is uneven and presents "peaks," which place it in the heavy shock load category. The input power is supplied by an electric motor. The driving head is fully enclosed and all parts are lubricated from a central system.

Step 1. Service Factor: From Table 15 the service factor for heavy shock load and an electric motor drive is 1.5.

Step 2. Design Horsepower: The horsepower upon which the chain selection is based (design horsepower) is equal to the specified horsepower multiplied by the service factor, $10 \times 1.5 = 15$ hp.

Step 3. Chain Pitch and Small Sprocket Size for Single-Strand Drive: In Table 9 under 1000 rpm, a $^{5}/_{8}$-inch pitch chain with a 24-tooth sprocket or a $^{3}/_{4}$-inch pitch chain with a 15-tooth sprocket are possible choices.

Step 4. Check of Chain Pitch and Sprocket Selection: From Table 10 it is seen that only the 24-tooth sprocket in Step 3 can be bored to fit the $1^{15}/_{16}$-inch diameter main shaft. In Table 9 a $^{5}/_{8}$-pitch chain at a small sprocket speed of 1000 rpm is rated at 15.5 hp for a 24-tooth sprocket.

Step 5. Selection of Large Sprocket: Since the driver is to operate at 1000 rpm and the driven at a minimum of 378 rpm, the speed ratio 1000⁄378 = 2.646. Therefore, the large sprocket should have $24 \times 2.646 = 63.5$ (use 63) teeth.

This combination of 24 and 63 teeth will produce a main drive shaft speed of 381 rpm which is within the limitation of 378 to 382 rpm established in the original specification.

Step 6. Computation of Chain Length: Since the 24- and 63-tooth sprockets are to be placed on $22^{1}/_{2}$-inch centers, the chain length is determined from the formula:

$$L = 2C + \frac{N}{2} + \frac{n}{2} + \left(\frac{N-n}{2\pi}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{C}$$

where L = chain length in pitches; C = shaft center distance in pitches; N = number of teeth in large sprocket; and n = number of teeth in small sprocket.

$$L = 2 \times 36 + \frac{63+24}{2} + \left(\frac{63-24}{6.28}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{36} = 116.57 \text{ pitches}$$

Step 7. Correction of Center Distance: Since the chain is to couple at a whole number of pitches, 116 pitches will be used and the center distance recomputed based on this figure using the formula on page 2632 where c is the center distance in inches and P is the pitch.

$$c = \frac{P}{8}\left(2L - N - n + \sqrt{(2L-N-n)^2 - 0.810(N-n)^2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{5}{64}\left(2 \times 116 - 63 - 24 + \sqrt{(2 \times 116 - 63 - 24)^2 - 0.810(63-24)^2}\right)$$

$$= \frac{5}{64}(145 + 140.69) = 22.32 \text{ inches, say } 22\frac{3}{8} \text{ inches}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

BALL AND ACME LEADSCREWS

Leadscrew Overview

Leadscrew assemblies convert rotary motion into linear travel and are well suited to precise control using electric motors. Acme leadscrews, much like machine screws, are threaded to allow a mating nut to be pushed or pulled along the axis of the screw as the shaft is rotated. Ball screws are threaded to allow ball bearings to support the attached nut. The nut has raceways that allow the ball bearings to recirculate as the nut travels down the axis of the shaft. Both provide efficient and accurate linear positioning for motion control applications. Each has strengths and weaknesses that makes each type of technology more suitable for different types of applications.

Ball Screws.—Ball screws generally require lower-torque motors than similarly sized Acme screws due to their higher efficiency in concerting energy into linear movement. This efficiency is generally above 90 percent compared to 40 percent for Acme screws with plastic nuts and 25 percent for acme screws with bronze-nuts. Ball screws can handle higher loading with high travel rates and lower backlash, though both technologies offer various anti-backlash nut assemblies. Ball screw life is more easily predicted using ball bearing load data. Compared to acme screws, ball screw assemblies exhibit a lower degradation in postitional accuracy over time due to wear on the contact surfaces. Ball screws are more expensive and can be noisier than acme screws. Ball screws may back drive the shaft in vertical orientations.

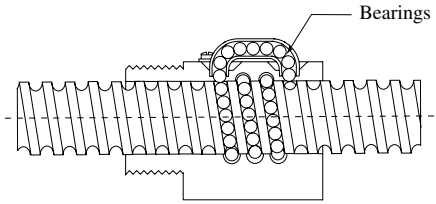


Fig. 1a. Ball Screw Cross Section

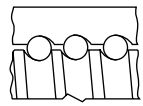


Fig. 1b. Ball Screw Detail

Acme Screws.—Acme screws with plastic nuts generally have an initial lower cost and lower noise levels compared to ball screws. Bronze-nut acme screws offer the lowest leadscrew cost as well as the lowest leadscrew performance characteristics. Due to their low efficiency, bronze-nut acme screws may not back drive in some applications where a ball screw would. Loading and travel rates are lower than ball screws. Also, compared to ball screws, lubrication requirements are higher and predicting travel life of acme screws is more difficult due to higher variations in friction and heat build up.

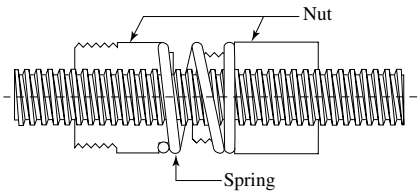


Fig. 2a. Acme Leadscrew with Anti-backlash Nut.

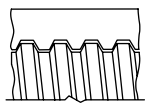


Fig. 2b. Acme Screw Detail

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

General Leadscrew Design Considerations.—The following design criteria should be considered when selecting leadscrews.

Load: The load is the weight "as seen by the screw." For vertical applications such as lifting or jacking the load equals the weight of the load being moved. For horizontal applications the "load seen" equals the weight of the load times the coefficient of friction of the supporting media. Another way to determine the load in an actual application is to attach a scale to the load and pull it. Base the load on the moving force required, not on the higher starting (breakaway) force.

Tension and Compression Load: For reduced screw thread sizes, design for tension loads whenever possible. Compression load designs must factor in column strength to prevent buckling.

Back-drive: When a ball screw or acme nut is forced to move linearly along the shaft by an applied force, or gravity in vertical orientation, it forces or back-drives the shaft making it rotate. With their higher efficiency and lower initial start up (breakway) friction value, ball screw assemblies in vertical orientations may back-drive their shafts.

Driving Torque: The driving torque (T_d) is the amount of force required to rotate the screw and move a load.

$$T_d = \frac{P \times L}{2\pi e}$$

where T_d = driving torque (lb-in)

P = load (lbs)

L = lead of screw (in/revolution)

e = ball bearing screw efficiency (approximately 0.90 for ball screws, 0.40 for acme screws with plastic nuts, and 0.25 for acme screws with bronze nuts.)

Accuracy: Several factors affect accuracy. One factor is the lead deviation in inches per foot. Typical values can range from 0.005 in/ft to 0.001 in/ft. Backlash may also be a consideration in applications that require precise positioning in both directions and in CNC applications. A final consideration is accuracy versus time degradation due to screw wear and ball bearing fatigue. This is especially important in systems that require precise positioning but do not have closed-loop feedback controls. Ball screws have an advantage in long term accuracy since the useful life of ball screws is determined by metal fatigue rather than the ordinary wear characteristics of a conventional screw. Due to rolling contact, very little dimensional change occurs over the life of a ball bearing screw, thus eliminating the need for frequent compensating adjustments.

Lead: The distance the nut travels with one rotation of the screw.

Speed: When rapid travel is required, design for screws with a high lead to reduce shaft speed to avoid rotational and vibrational side effects.

Life: The recommended operating loads for ball screw assemblies are based on a predicted life of one million inches of travel, providing the assembly is lubricated. However, it is possible to operate at greater loads if a reduced life is acceptable. The load should not exceed the maximum static load shown in manufacturer design tables.

Backlash: Backlash, end play, positional inaccuracy, or lost motion between the nut and the screw can be eliminated by utilizing a preloaded nut assembly. Backlash can also be reduced, at increased cost, in ball screws by changing the conformity ratio (ball track radius/ball diameter) as well as using ogival (gothic) ball tracks. Fig. 3 illustrates the contact points between a preloaded ball screw assembly and the shaft.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

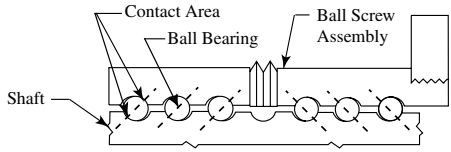


Fig. 3. Contact Points in a Preloaded Anti-Backlash Ball Screw Assembly

End Supports: End support type, free or fixed, and the number of end supports for a leadscrew shaft can have a significant impact on the speed and load capacity of the assembly.

Environment: Temperature extremes, dirty, dusty conditions, corrosive compounds, and metal chips can cause serious problems with lead-screw assemblies. For applications in such conditions the use of wipers, boots, or both should be considered. Stainless steel or plated assemblies should be considered for corrosive applications. Corrosive environments can also attack lubricants and thus indirectly damage the assemblies.

Wipers: Brush type wipers maximize ball screw performance by helping to spread lubricant over the length of the screw and preventing internal ball nut contamination from foreign materials. Bellows and telescopic wipers are recommended for severely "dirty" environments.

Lubrication: Ball screws must be lubricated and kept clean. Failure to lubricate can substantially reduce bearing life. Oil and grease can be used but grease is not recommended for low temperature or high speed applications.

PV Value: Speed and load limits for acme leadscrew assemblies using plastic nuts are generally limited by heat build-up. The factor which affects heat generation in an application is the product of the pressure (lbs/in^2) on the nut, and the surface velocity at the thread major diameter. This product is called the *PV* value.

CNC Considerations: CNC machine tools require the elimination of backlash and the minimization of elastic deflection to achieve high system stiffness, response, and repeatability of positioning.

Ball Screw Selection.—Many types and styles of ball screws and ball screw assemblies are offered by manufacturers. Consult the vendor's specific data sheets for precise design criteria. The selection of the correct ball screw and nut for a particular application involves four factors, all of which are interrelated. These are: the equivalent load measured in pounds, the required life measured in linear inches of travel, travel speed measured in inches per minute, and the length between bearings measured in inches.

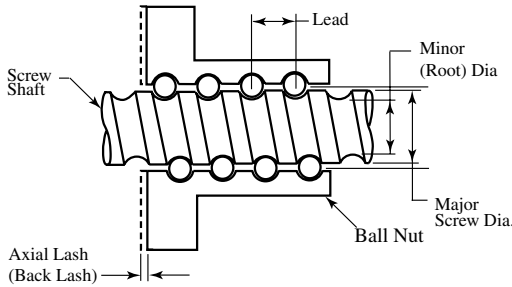


Fig. 4. Ball Screw Detail

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design Overview: To design a ball screw assembly many interrelated factors such as load, bearing length, life, and speed must be considered. Changing one parameter will influence others and generally an iterative approach to balancing these requirements is required. An example is the choice of a fine lead versus coarse lead. A fine line lead provides better positioning sensitivity and lower drive torque, but also requires a higher rotary speed to achieve the same linear rate of speed. A coarse lead results in lower rotary speed, but requires a higher drive torque that may require a larger motor and related drive components. Table 1 identifies some of these design interrelationships.

Table 1. Ball Screw Design Factor Interrelationships

Increase In	Affects	How	Increase In	Affects	How
Screw Length	Critical speed	Decreases	End Mounting Rigidity	Critical speed	Increases
	Compression load	Decreases		Compression load	Increases
Screw Diameter	Critical speed	Increases		System stiffness	Increases
	Inertia	Increases	Load	Life	Decreases
	Compression load	Increases	Preload	Positioning accuracy	Increases
	Stiffness	Increases		System stiffness	Increases
	Spring Rate	Increases		Drag torque	Increases
	Load capacity	Increases	Angular Velocity	Critical speed	Decreases
Lead	Drive torque	Increases	Nut length	Load capacity	Increases
	Angular velocity	Decreases		Stiffness	Increases
	Load capacity	Increases	Ball diameter	Life	Increases
	Positioning accuracy	Decreases		Stiffness	Increases
	Ball diameter	Increases		Load capacity	Increases

Screws, Power Transmission.—The square form of thread has a somewhat higher efficiency than threads with sloping sides, although when the angle of the thread form is comparatively small, as in the case of an Acme thread, there is little increase in frictional losses. The Acme thread has superseded the square form on many classes of equipment requiring lead screws or other power transmitting screws, because the former has practical advantages in regard to cutting and also in compensating for wear between the screw and nut. Multiple thread screws are much more efficient than single-thread screws, as the efficiency is affected by the helix angle of the thread.

Force Required to Turn Screw: In determining the force which must be applied at the end of a given lever-arm in order to turn a screw (or nut surrounding it), there are two conditions to be considered:

1) When rotation is such that the load *resists* the movement of the screw, as in raising a load with a screw jack, $F = L \times \frac{l + 2r\pi\mu}{2r\pi - \mu l} \times \frac{r}{R}$.

2) When rotation is such that the load *assists* the movement of the screw, as in lowering a load, $F = L \times \frac{2r\pi\mu - l}{2r\pi + \mu l} \times \frac{r}{R}$.

In these formulas, F = force applied at end of lever-arm; L = load moved by screw; R = length of lever-arm; l = lead of screw thread; r = mean or pitch radius of screw; μ = coefficient of friction. If lead l is large in proportion to the diameter so that the helix angle is large, F will have a negative value, indicating that the screw will turn due to the load alone. The efficiency between a screw and nut increases quite rapidly for helix angles up to 10 or 15 degrees (measured from a plane perpendicular to the screw axis). The efficiency remains nearly constant for angles between about 25 and 65 degrees, and the angle of maximum efficiency is between 40 and 50 degrees. A screw will not be self-locking if the efficiency exceeds 50 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ELECTRIC MOTORS

Classes of NEMA Standards.—National Electrical Manufacturers Association Standards (NEMA), available from NEMA at 1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900, Arlington, VA 22209, www.nema.org, are of two classes: 1) *NEMA Standard*, which relates to a product commercially standardized and subject to repetitive manufacture, which standard has been approved by at least 90 percent of the members of the Subdivision eligible to vote thereon; and 2) *Suggested Standard for Future Design*, which may not have been regularly applied to a commercial product, but which suggests a sound engineering approach to future development and has been approved by at least two-thirds of the members of the Subdivision eligible to vote thereon.

Authorized Engineering Information consists of explanatory data and other engineering information of an informative character not falling within the classification of NEMA Standard or Suggested Standard for Future Design.

Mounting Dimensions and Frame Sizes for Electric Motors.—Dimensions for foot-mounted electric motors as standardized in the United States by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) include the spacing of bolt holes in the feet of the motor, the distance from the bottom of the feet to the centerline of the motor shaft, the size of the conduit, the length and diameter of shaft, and other dimensions likely to be required by designers or manufacturers of motor-driven equipment. The Standard provides dimensions for face-mounted and flange-mounted motors by means of standard motor frame numbers.

Standard dimensions also are given where the motor is to be mounted upon a belt-tightening base or upon rails.

The NEMA standards also prescribe lettering for dimension drawings, mounting and terminal housing locations and dimensions, symbols and terminal connections, and provision for grounding of field wiring. In addition, the standards give recommended knockout and clearance hole dimensions; tolerances on shaft extension diameters and keyseats; methods of measuring shaft run-out and eccentricity, also face runout of mounting surfaces; and tolerances of face-mounted and flanged-mounted motors.

Design Letters of Polyphase Integral-Horsepower Motors.—Designs A, B, C, and D motors are squirrel-cage motors designed to withstand full voltage starting and developing locked-rotor torque and breakdown torque, drawing locked-rotor current, and having a slip as specified below:

Design A: Locked-rotor torque as shown in Table 2, breakdown torque as shown in Table 3, locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in Table 1, and a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent. Motors with 10 or more poles may have a slightly greater slip.

Table 1. NEMA Standard Locked-Rotor Current of 3-Phase 60-Hertz Integral-Horsepower Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors Rated at 230 Volts

Horse-power	Locked-rotor Current, Amps.	Design Letters	Horse-power	Locked-rotor Current, Amps.	Design Letters	Horse-power	Locked-rotor Current, Amps.	Design Letters
½	20	B, D	7½	127	B, C, D	50	725	B, C, D
¾	25	B, D	10	162	B, C, D	60	870	B, C, D
1	30	B, D	15	232	B, C, D	75	1085	B, C, D
1½	40	B, D	20	290	B, C, D	100	1450	B, C, D
2	50	B, D	25	365	B, C, D	125	1815	B, C, D
3	64	B, C, D	30	435	B, C, D	150	2170	B, C, D
5	92	B, C, D	40	580	B, C, D	200	2900	B, C

Note: The locked-rotor current of a motor is the steady-state current taken from the line with the rotor locked and with rated voltage and frequency applied to the motor.

For motors designed for voltages other than 230 volts, the locked-rotor current is inversely proportional to the voltages. For motors larger than 200 hp, see NEMA Standard MG 1-12.34.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. NEMA Standard Locked-Rotor Torque of Single-Speed Polyphase 60- and 50-Hertz Squirrel-Cage Integral-Horsepower Motors with Continuous Ratings

HP	Designs A and B							Design C		
	Synchronous Speed, rpm									
	60 hertz	3600	1800	1200	900	720	600	514	1800	1200	900
	50 hertz	3000	1500	1000	750	…	…	…	1500	1000	750
	Percent of Full-load Torque[a]										
½		…	…	…	140	140	115	110	…	…	…
¾		…	…	175	135	135	115	110	…	…	…
1		…	275	170	135	135	115	110	…	…	…
1½		175	250	165	130	130	115	110	…	…	…
2		170	235	160	130	125	115	110	…	…	…
3		160	215	155	130	125	115	110	…	250	225
5		150	185	150	130	125	115	110	250	250	225
7½		140	175	150	125	120	115	110	250	225	200
10		135	165	150	125	120	115	110	250	225	200
15		130	160	140	125	120	115	110	225	200	200
20		130	150	135	125	120	115	110	200 for all sizes above 15 hp.		
25		130	150	135	125	120	115	110			
30		130	150	135	125	120	115	110			
40		125	140	135	125	120	115	110			
50		120	140	135	125	120	115	110			
60		120	140	135	125	120	115	110			
75		105	140	135	125	120	115	110	For Design D motors, see footnote.		
100		105	125	125	125	120	115	110			
125		100	110	125	120	115	115	110			
150		100	110	120	120	115	115	…			
200		100	100	120	120	115	…	…			

[a] These values represent the upper limit of application for these motors.

Note: The locked-rotor torque of a motor is the minimum torque which it will develop at rest for all angular positions of the rotor, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency.

The locked-rotor torque of Design D, 60- and 50-hertz 4-, 6-, and 8-pole single-speed, polyphase squirrel-cage motors rated 150 hp and smaller, with rated voltage and frequency applied is 275 percent of full-load torque, which represents the upper limit of application for these motors.

For motors larger than 200 hp, see NEMA Standard MG 1-12.37.

Table 3. NEMA Standard Breakdown Torque of Single-Speed Polyphase Squirrel-Cage, Integral-Horsepower Motors with Continuous Ratings

Horsepower	Synchronous Speed, rpm						
	60 hertz	3600	1800	1200	900	720	600	514
	50 hertz	3000	1500	1000	750	…	…	…
	Percent of Full Load Torque							
	Designs A and B[a]							
½		…	…	…	225	200	200	200
¾		…	…	275	220	200	200	200
1		…	300	265	215	200	200	200
1½		250	280	250	210	200	200	200
2		240	270	240	210	200	200	200
3		230	250	230	205	200	200	200
5		215	225	215	205	200	200	200
7½		200	215	205	200	200	200	200
10-125, incl.		200	200	200	200	200	200	200
150		200	200	200	200	200	200	…
200		200	200	200	200	200	…	…
	Design C							
3		…	…	225	200	…	…	…
5		…	200	200	200	…	…	…
7½-200, incl.		…	190	190	190	…	…	…

[a] Design A values are in excess of those shown.

These values represent the upper limit of the range of application for these motors. For above 200 hp, see NEMA Standard MG1-12.38.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Design B: Locked-rotor torque as shown in Table 2, breakdown torque as shown in Table 3, locked-rotor current not exceeding that in Table 1, and a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent. Motors with 10 or more poles may have a slightly greater slip.

Design C: Locked-rotor torque for special high-torque applications up to values shown in Table 2, breakdown torque up to values shown in Table 3, locked-rotor current not exceeding values shown in Table 1 and a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

Design D: Locked-rotor torque as indicated in Table 2, locked-rotor current not greater than that shown in Table 1 and a slip at rated load of 5 percent or more.

Torque and Current Definitions.—The definitions which follow have been adopted as standard by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Locked-Rotor or Static Torque: The locked-rotor torque of a motor is the minimum torque which it will develop at rest for all angular positions of the rotor, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency.

Breakdown Torque: The breakdown torque of a motor is the maximum torque which the motor will develop, with rated voltage applied at rated frequency, without an abrupt drop in speed (see Table 4).

Full-Load Torque: The full-load torque of a motor is the torque necessary to produce its rated horsepower at full load speed. In pounds at 1-foot radius, it is equal to the horsepower times 5252 divided by the full-load speed.

Pull-Out Torque: The pull-out torque of a synchronous motor is the maximum sustained torque which the motor will develop at synchronous speed with rated voltage applied at rated frequency and with normal excitation.

Pull-In Torque: The pull-in torque of a synchronous motor is the maximum constant torque under which the motor will pull its connected inertia load into synchronism at rated voltage and frequency, when its field excitation is applied.

Pull-Up Torque: The pull-up torque of an alternating current motor is the minimum torque developed by the motor during the period of acceleration from rest to the speed at which breakdown torque occurs. For motors which do not have a definite breakdown torque, the pull-up torque is the minimum torque developed up to rated speed.

Locked Rotor Current: The locked rotor current of a motor is the steady-state current taken from the line with the rotor locked and with rated voltage (and rated frequency in the case of alternating-current motors) applied to the motor.

Table 4. NEMA Standard Breakdown Torque of Polyphase Wound-Rotor Motors with Continuous Ratings — 60- and 50-Hertz

Horsepower	Speed, rpm			Horsepower	Speed, rpm		
	1800	1200	900		1800	1200	900
	Percent of Full-load Torque				Percent of Full-load Torque		
1	…	…	250	7½	275	250	225
1½	…	…	250	10	275	250	225
2	275	275	250	15	250	225	225
3	275	275	250	20-200, incl.	225	225	225
5	275	275	250	…	…	…	…
These values represent the upper limit of the range of application for these motors.							

Standard Direction of Motor Rotation.—The standard direction of rotation for all nonreversing direct-current motors, all alternating-current single-phase motors, all synchronous motors, and all universal motors, is counterclockwise when facing that end of the motor opposite the drive.

This rule does not apply to two- and three-phase induction motors, as in most applications the phase sequence of the power lines is rarely known.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Motor Types According to Variability of Speed.—Five types of motors classified according to variability of speed are:

Constant-speed Motors: In this type of motor the normal operating speed is constant or practically constant; for example, a synchronous motor, an induction motor with small slip, or a direct-current shunt-wound motor.

Varying-speed Motor: In this type of motor, the speed varies with the load, ordinarily decreasing when the load increases; such as a series-wound or repulsion motor.

Adjustable-speed Motor: In this type of motor, the speed can be varied gradually over a considerable range, but when once adjusted remains practically unaffected by the load; such as a direct-current shunt-wound motor with field resistance control designed for a considerable range of speed adjustment.

The base speed of an adjustable-speed motor is the lowest rated speed obtained at rated load and rated voltage at the temperature rise specified in the rating.

Adjustable Varying-speed Motor: This type of motor is one in which the speed can be adjusted gradually, but when once adjusted for a given load will vary in considerable degree with the change in load; such as a direct-current compound-wound motor adjusted by field control or a wound-rotor induction motor with rheostatic speed control.

Multispeed Motor: This type of motor is one which can be operated at any one of two or more definite speeds, each being practically independent of the load; such as a direct-current motor with two armature windings or an induction motor with windings capable of various pole groupings. In the case of multispeed permanent-split capacitor and shaded pole motors, the speeds are dependent upon the load.

Pull-Up Torque.—NEMA Standard pull up torques for single-speed, polyphase, squirrel-cage integral-horsepower motors, Designs A and B, with continuous ratings and with rated voltage and frequency applied are as follows: When the locked-rotor torque given in Table 2 is 110 percent or less, the pull-up torque is 90 percent of the locked-rotor torque; when the locked-rotor torque is greater than 110 percent but less than 145 percent, the pull-up torque is 100 percent of full-load torque; and when the locked-rotor torque is 145 percent or more, the pull-up torque is 70 percent of the locked-rotor torque.

For Design C motors, with rated voltage and frequency applied, the pull-up torque is not less than 70 percent of the locked-rotor torque as given in Table 2.

Types and Characteristics of Electric Motors

Types of Direct-Current Motors.—Direct-current motors may be grouped into three general classes: series-wound; shunt-wound; and compound-wound.

In the *series-wound motor* the field windings, which are fixed in the stator frame, and the armature windings, which are placed around the rotor, are connected in series so that all current passing through the armature also passes through the field. In the *shunt-wound motor*, both armature and field are connected across the main power supply so that the armature and field currents are separate. In the *compound-wound motor*, both series and shunt field windings are provided and these may be connected so that the currents in both are flowing in the same direction, called *cumulative compounding*, or so that the currents in each are flowing in opposite directions, called *differential compounding*.

Characteristics of Series-Wound Direct-Current Motors.—In the series-wound motor, any increase in load results in more current passing through the armature and the field windings. As the field is strengthened by this increased current, the motor speed decreases. Conversely, as the load is decreased the field is weakened and the speed increases and at very light loads may become excessive. For this reason, series-wound direct-current motors are usually directly connected or geared to the load to prevent "runaway." (A series-wound motor, designated as series-shunt wound, is sometimes provided with a light shunt field winding to prevent dangerously high speeds at light loads.) The increase in armature current with increasing load produces increased torque, so that the series-wound motor is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

particularly suited to heavy starting duty and where severe overloads may be expected. Its speed may be adjusted by means of a variable resistance placed in series with the motor, but due to variation with load, the speed cannot be held at any constant value. This variation of speed with load becomes greater as the speed is reduced. Series-wound motors are used where the load is practically constant and can easily be controlled by hand. They are usually limited to traction and lifting service.

Shunt-Wound Direct-Current Motors.—In the shunt-wound motor, the strength of the field is not affected appreciably by change in the load, so that a fairly constant speed (about 10 to 12 percent drop from no load to full load speed) is obtainable. This type of motor may be used for the operation of machines requiring an approximately constant speed and imposing low starting torque and light overload on the motor.

The shunt-wound motor becomes an adjustable-speed motor by means of field control or by armature control. If a variable resistance is placed in the field circuit, the amount of current in the field windings and hence the speed of rotation can be controlled. As the speed increases, the torque decreases proportionately, resulting in nearly constant horsepower. A speed range of 6 to 1 is possible using field control, but 4 to 1 is more common. Speed regulation is somewhat greater than in the constant-speed shunt-wound motors, ranging from about 15 to 22 percent. If a variable resistance is placed in the armature circuit, the voltage applied to the armature can be reduced and hence the speed of rotation can be reduced over a range of about 2 to 1. With armature control, speed regulation becomes poorer as speed is decreased, and is about 100 percent for a 2 to 1 speed range. Since the current through the field remains unchanged, the torque remains constant.

Machine Tool Applications: The adjustable-speed shunt-wound motors are useful on larger machines of the boring mill, lathe, and planer type and are particularly adapted to spindle drives because constant horsepower characteristics permit heavy cuts at low speed and light or finishing cuts at high speed. They have long been used for planer drives because they can provide an adjustable low speed for the cutting stroke and a high speed for the return stroke. Their application has been limited, however, to plants in which direct-current power is available.

Adjustable-Voltage Shunt-Wound Motor Drive.—More extensive use of the shunt-wound motor has been made possible by a combination drive that includes a means of converting alternating current to direct current. This conversion may be effected by a self-contained unit consisting of a separately excited direct-current generator driven by a constant speed alternating-current motor connected to the regular alternating-current line, or by an electronic rectifier with suitable controls connected to the regular alternating-current supply lines. The latter has the advantage of causing no vibration when mounted directly on the machine tool, an important factor in certain types of grinders.

In this type of adjustable-speed, shunt-wound motor drive, speed control is effected by varying the voltage applied to the armature while supplying constant voltage to the field. In addition to providing for the adjustment of the voltage supplied by the conversion unit to the armature of the shunt-wound motor, the amount of current passing through the motor field may also be controlled. In fact, a single control may be provided to vary the motor speed from minimum to base speed (speed of the motor at full load with rated voltage on armature and field) by varying the voltage applied to the armature and from base speed to maximum speed by varying the current flowing through the field. When so controlled, the motor operates at constant torque up to base speed and at constant horsepower above base speed.

Speed Range: Speed ranges of at least 20 to 1 below base speed and 4 or 5 to 1 above base speed (a total range of 100 to 1, or more) are obtainable as compared with about 2 to 1 below normal speed and 3 or 4 to 1 above normal speed for the conventional type of control. Speed regulation may be as great as 25 percent at high speeds. Special electronic controls, when used with this type shunt motor drive, make possible maintenance of motor

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

speeds with as little variation as $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 percent of full load speed from full load to no load over a line voltage variation of ± 10 percent and over any normal variation in motor temperature and ambient temperature.

Applications: These direct-current, adjustable-voltage drives, as they are sometimes called, have been applied successfully to such machine tools as planers, milling machines, boring mills and lathes, as well as to other industrial machines where wide, stepless speed control, uniform speed under all operating conditions, constant torque acceleration and adaptability to automatic operation are required.

Compound-Wound Motors.—In the compound-wound motor, the speed variation due to load changes is much less than in the series-wound motor, but greater than in the shunt-wound motor (ranging up to 25 percent from full load to no load). It has a greater starting torque than the shunt-wound motor, is able to withstand heavier overloads, but has a narrower adjustable speed range. Standard motors of this type have a cumulative-compound winding, the differential-compound winding being limited to special applications. They are used where the starting load is very heavy or where the load changes suddenly and violently as with reciprocating pumps, printing presses and punch presses.

Types of Polyphase Alternating-Current Motors.—The most widely used polyphase motors are of the induction type. The *"squirrel cage" induction motor* consists of a wound stator which is connected to an external source of alternating-current power and a laminated steel core rotor with a number of heavy aluminum or copper conductors set into the core around its periphery and parallel to its axis. These conductors are connected together at each end of the rotor by a heavy ring, which provides closed paths for the currents induced in the rotor to circulate. The rotor bars form, in effect, a "squirrel cage" from which the motor takes its name.

Wound-rotor Type of Induction Motor: This type has, in addition to a squirrel cage, a series of coils set into the rotor which are connected through slip-rings to external variable resistors. By varying the resistance of the wound-rotor circuits, the amount of current flowing in these circuits and hence the speed of the motor can be controlled. Since the rotor of an induction motor is not connected to the power supply, the motor is said to operate by transfer action and is analogous to a transformer with a short-circuited secondary that is free to rotate. Induction motors are built with a wide range of speed and torque characteristics which are discussed under "Operating Characteristics of Squirrel-cage Induction Motors."

Synchronous Motor: The other type of polyphase alternating-current motor used industrially is the *synchronous motor*. In contrast to the induction motor, the rotor of the synchronous motor is connected to a direct-current supply which provides a field that rotates in step with the alternating-current field in the stator. After having been brought up to synchronous speed, which is governed by the frequency of the power supply and the number of poles in the rotor, the synchronous motor operates at this constant speed throughout its entire load range.

Operating Characteristics of Squirrel-Cage Induction Motors.—In general, squirrel-cage induction motors are simple in design and construction and offer rugged service. They are essentially constant-speed motors, their speed changing very little with load and not being subject to adjustment. They are used for a wide range of industrial applications calling for integral horsepower ratings. According to the NEMA (National Electrical Manufacturers Association) Standards, there are four classes of squirrel-cage induction motors designated respectively as *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D*.

Design A motors are not commonly used since Design *B* has similar characteristics with the advantage of lower starting current.

Design B motors may be designated as a general purpose type suitable for the majority of polyphase alternating-current applications such as blowers, compressors, drill presses, grinders, hammer mills, lathes, planers, polishers, saws, screw machines, shakers,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

stokers, etc. The starting torque at 1800 rpm is 250 to 275 percent of full load torque for 3 hp (2.24 kW) and below; for 5–75 hp (3.73–56 kW) ratings the starting torque ranges from 185 to 150 percent of full load torque. They have low starting current requirements, usually no more than 5 to 6 times full load current and can be started at full voltage. Their slip (difference between synchronous speed and actual speed at rated load) is relatively low.

Design C motors have high starting torque (up to 250 percent of full load torque) but low starting current. They can be started at full voltage. Slip at rated load is relatively low. They are used for compressors requiring a loaded start, heavy conveyors, reciprocating pumps and other applications requiring high starting torque.

Design D motors have high slip at rated load, that is, the motor speed drops off appreciably as the load increases, permitting use of the stored energy of a flywheel. They provide heavy starting torque, up to 275 percent of full load torque, are quiet in operation and have relatively low starting current. Applications are for impact, shock and other high peak loads or flywheel drives such as trains, elevators, hoists, punch and drawing presses, shears, etc.

Design F motors are no longer standard. They had low starting torque, about 125 percent of full-load torque, and low starting current. They were used to drive machines which required infrequent starting at no load or at very light load.

Multiple-Speed Induction Motors.—This type has a number of windings in the stator so arranged and connected that the number of effective poles and hence the speed can be changed. These motors are for the same types of starting conditions as the conventional squirrel-cage induction motors and are available in designs that provide constant horsepower at all rated speeds and in designs that provide constant torque at all rated speeds.

Typical speed combinations obtainable in these motors are 600, 900, 1200 and 1800 rpm; 450, 600, 900 and 1200 rpm; and 600, 720, 900 and 1200 rpm.

Where a gradual change in speed is called for, a wound rotor may be provided in addition to the multiple stator windings.

Wound-Rotor Induction Motors.—These motors are designed for applications where extremely low starting current with high starting torque are called for, such as in blowers, conveyors, compressors, fans and pumps. They may be employed for adjustable-varying speed service where the speed range does not extend below 50 percent of synchronous speed, as for steel plate-forming rolls, printing presses, cranes, blowers, stokers, lathes and milling machines of certain types. The speed regulation of a wound rotor induction motor ranges from 5 to 10 percent at maximum speed and from 18 to 30 percent at low speed. They are also employed for reversing service as in cranes, gates, hoists and elevators.

High-Frequency Induction Motors.—This type is used in conjunction with frequency changers when very high speeds are desired, as on grinders, drills, routers, portable tools or woodworking machinery. These motors have an advantage over the series-wound or universal type of high speed motor in that they operate at a relatively constant speed over the entire load range. A motor-generator set, a two-unit frequency converter or a single unit inductor frequency converter may be used to supply three-phase power at the frequency required. The single unit frequency converter may be obtained for delivering any one of a number of frequencies ranging from 360 to 2160 cycles and it is self-driven and self-excited from the general polyphase power supply.

Synchronous Motors.—These are widely used in electric timing devices; to drive machines that must operate in synchronism; and also to operate compressors, rolling mills, crushers which are started without load, paper mill screens, shredders, vacuum pumps and motor-generator sets. Synchronous motors have an inherently high power factor and are often employed to make corrections for the low power factor of other types of motors on the same system.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Types of Single-Phase Alternating-Current Motors.—Most of the single-phase alternating-current motors are basically induction motors distinguished by different arrangements for starting. (A single-phase induction motor with only a squirrel-cage rotor has no starting torque.) In the *capacitor-start* single-phase motor, an auxiliary winding in the stator is connected in series with a capacitor and a centrifugal switch. During the starting and accelerating period the motor operates as a two-phase induction motor. At about two-thirds full-load speed, the auxiliary circuit is disconnected by the switch and the motor then runs as a single-phase induction motor. In the *capacitor-start, capacitor-run* motor, the auxiliary circuit is arranged to provide high effective capacity for high starting torque and to remain connected to the line but with reduced capacity during the running period. In the *single-value capacitor* or *capacitor split-phase* motor, a relatively small continuously-rated capacitor is permanently connected in one of the two stator windings and the motor both starts and runs like a two-phase motor.

In the *repulsion-start* single-phase motor, a drum-wound rotor circuit is connected to a commutator with a pair of short-circuited brushes set so that the magnetic axis of the rotor winding is inclined to the magnetic axis of the stator winding. The current flowing in this rotor circuit reacts with the field to produce starting and accelerating torques. At about two-thirds full load speed the brushes are lifted, the commutator is short circuited and the motor runs as a single-phase squirrel-cage motor. The *repulsion* motor employs a repulsion winding on the rotor for both starting and running. The *repulsion-induction* motor has an outer winding on the rotor acting as a repulsion winding and an inner squirrel-cage winding. As the motor comes up to speed, the induced rotor current partially shifts from the repulsion winding to the squirrel-cage winding and the motor runs partly as an induction motor.

In the *split-phase* motor, an auxiliary winding in the stator is used for starting with either a resistance connected in series with the auxiliary winding (*resistance-start*) or a reactor in series with the main winding (*reactor-start*).

The *series-wound* single-phase motor has a rotor winding in series with the stator winding as in the series-wound direct-current motor. Since this motor may also be operated on direct current, it is called a *universal* motor.

Characteristics of Single-Phase Alternating-Current Motors.—Single-phase motors are used in sizes up to about $7\frac{1}{2}$ horsepower (5.6 kW) for heavy starting duty chiefly in home and commercial appliances for which polyphase power is not available. The *capacitor-start* motor is available in normal starting torque designs for such applications as centrifugal pumps, fans, and blowers and in high-starting torque designs for reciprocating compressors, pumps, loaded conveyors, or belts. The *capacitor-start, capacitor-run* motor is exceptionally quiet in operation when loaded to at least 50 percent of capacity. It is available in low-torque designs for fans and centrifugal pumps and in high-torque designs for applications similar to those of the capacitor-start motor.

The *capacitor split-phase* motor requires the least maintenance of all single-phase motors, but has very low starting torque. Its high maximum torque makes it potentially useful in floor sanders or in grinders where momentary overloads due to excessive cutting pressure are experienced. It is also used for slow-speed direct connected fans.

The *repulsion-start, induction-run* motor has higher starting torque than the capacitor motors, although for the same current, the capacitor motors have equivalent pull-up and maximum torque. Electrical and mechanical noise and the extra maintenance sometimes required are disadvantages. These motors are used for compressors, conveyors and stokers starting under full load. The *repulsion-induction* motor has relatively high starting torque and low starting current. It also has a smooth speed-torque curve with no break and a greater ability to withstand long accelerating periods than capacitor type motors. It is particularly suitable for severe starting and accelerating duty and for high inertia loads such as laundry extractors. Brush noise is, however, continuous.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The *repulsion* motor has no limiting synchronous speed and the speed changes with the load. At certain loads, slight changes in load cause wide changes in speed. A brush shifting arrangement may be provided to adjust the speed which may have a range of 4 to 1 if full rated constant torque is applied but a decreasing range as the torque falls below this value. This type of motor may be reversed by shifting the brushes beyond the neutral point. These motors are suitable for machines requiring constant-torque and adjustable speed.

The *split-phase* and *universal* motors are limited to about $^1/_3$ hp (0.25 kW) ratings and are used chiefly for small appliance and office machine applications.

Motors with Built-in Speed Reducers.—Electric motors having built-in speed-changing units are compact and the design of these motorized speed reducers tends to improve the appearance of the machines which they drive. There are several types of these speed reducers; they may be classified according to whether they are equipped with worm gearing, a regular gear train with parallel shafts, or planetary gearing.

The claims made for the worm gearing type of reduction unit are that the drive is quiet in operation and well adapted for use where the slow-speed shaft must be at right angles to the motor shaft and where a high speed ratio is essential.

For very low speeds, the double reduction worm gearing units are suitable. In these units two sets of worm gearing form the gear train, and both the slow-speed shaft and the armature shaft are parallel. The intermediate worm gear shaft can be built to extend from the housing, if required, so as to make two countershaft speeds available on the same unit.

In the parallel-shaft type of speed reducer, the slow-speed shaft is parallel with the armature shaft. The slow-speed shaft is rotated by a pinion on the armature shaft, this pinion meshing with a larger gear on the slow-speed shaft.

Geared motors having built-in speed-changing units are available with constant-mesh change gears for varying the speed ratio.

Planetary gearing permits a large speed reduction with few parts; hence, it is well adapted for geared-head motor units where economy and compactness are essential. The slow-speed shaft is in line with the armature shaft.

Factors Governing Motor Selection

Speed, Horsepower, Torque and Inertia Requirements.—Where more than one speed or a range of speeds are called for, one of the following types of motors may be selected, depending upon other requirements: For direct-current, the standard shunt-wound motor with field control has a 2 to 1 range in some designs; the adjustable speed motor may have a range of from 3 to 1 up to 6 to 1; the shunt motor with adjustable voltage supply has a range up to 20 to 1 or more below base speed and 4 or 5 to 1 above base speed, making a total range of up to 100 to 1 or more. For polyphase alternating current, multi-speed squirrel-cage induction motors have 2, 3 or 4 fixed speeds; the wound-rotor motor has a 2 to 1 range. The two-speed wound-rotor motor has a 4 to 1 range. The brush-shifting shunt motor has a 4 to 1 range. The brush-shifting series motor has a 3 to 1 range; and the squirrel-cage motor with a variable-frequency supply has a very wide range. For single-phase alternating current, the brush-shifting repulsion motor has a $2^1/_2$ to 1 range; the capacitor motor with tapped winding has a 2 to 1 range and the multi-speed capacitor motor has 2 or 3 fixed speeds. Speed regulation (variation in speed from no load to full load) is greatest with motors having series field windings and entirely absent with synchronous motors.

Horsepower: Where the load to be carried by the motor is not constant but follows a definite cycle, a horsepower-time curve enables the peak horsepower to be determined as well as the root-mean-square-average horsepower, which indicates the proper motor rating from a heating standpoint. Where the load is maintained at a constant value for a period of from 15 minutes to 2 hours depending on the size, the horsepower rating required will usually not be less than this constant value. When selecting the size of an induction motor, it should be kept in mind that this type of motor operates at maximum efficiency when it is

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

loaded to full capacity. Where operation is to be at several speeds, the horsepower requirement for each speed should be considered.

Torque: Starting torque requirements may vary from 10 percent of full load to 250 percent of full load torque depending upon the type of machine being driven. Starting torque may vary for a given machine because of frequency of start, temperature, type and amount of lubricant, etc., and such variables should be taken into account. The motor torque supplied to the machine must be well above that required by the driven machine at all points up to full speed. The greater the excess torque, the more rapid the acceleration. The approximate time required for acceleration from rest to full speed is given by the formula:

$$\text{Time} = \frac{N \times WR^2}{T_a \times 308} \text{ seconds}$$

where N = full load speed in rpm

T_a = torque = average foot-pounds available for acceleration.

WR^2 = inertia of rotating part in pounds feet squared (W = weight and R = radius of gyration of rotating part).

308 = combined constant converting minutes into seconds, weight into mass and radius into circumference.

If the time required for acceleration is greater than 20 seconds, special motors or starters may be required to avoid overheating.

The running torque T_r is found by the formula:

$$T_r = \frac{5250 \times \text{HP}}{N} \text{ foot pounds}$$

where HP = horsepower being supplied to the driven machine

N = running speed in rpm

5250 = combined constant converting horsepower to foot-pounds per minute and work per revolution into torque.

The peak horsepower determines the maximum torque required by the driven machine and the motor must have a maximum running torque in excess of this value.

Inertia: The inertia or flywheel effect of the rotating parts of a driven machine will, if large, appreciably affect the accelerating time and, hence, the amount of heating in the motor. If synchronous motors are used, the inertia (WR^2) of both the motor rotor and the rotating parts of the machine must be known since the pull-in torque (torque required to bring the driven machine up to synchronous speed) varies approximately as the square root of the total inertia of motor and load.

Space Limitations in Motor Selection.—If the motor is to become an integral part of the machine which it drives and space is at a premium, a partial motor may be called for. A complete motor is one made up of a stator, a rotor, a shaft, and two end shields with bearings. A *partial motor* is without one or more of these elements. One common type is furnished without drive-end end shield and bearing and is directly connected to the end or side of the machine which it drives, such as the headstock of a lathe. A so-called *shaftless type of motor* is supplied without shaft, end shields or bearings and is intended for built-in application in such units as multiple drilling machines, precision grinders, deep well pumps, compressors and hoists where the rotor is actually made a part of the driven machine. Where a partial motor is used, however, proper ventilation, mounting, alignment and bearings must be arranged for by the designer of the machine to which it is applied.

Sometimes it is possible to use a motor having a smaller frame size and wound with Class *B* insulation, permitting it to be subjected to a higher temperature rise than the larger-frame Class *A* insulated motor having the same horsepower rating.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Temperatures.—The applicability of a given motor is limited not only by its load starting and carrying ability, but also by the temperature which it reaches under load. Motors are given temperature ratings which are based upon the type of insulation (Class A or Class B are the most common) used in their construction and their type of frame (open, semienclosed, or enclosed).

Insulating Materials: Class A materials are: cotton, silk, paper, and similar organic materials when either impregnated or immersed in a liquid dielectric; molded and laminated materials with cellulose filler, phenolic resins, and other resins of similar properties; films and sheets of cellulose acetate and other cellulose derivatives of similar properties; and varnishes (enamel) as applied to conductors.

Class B insulating materials are: materials or combinations of materials such as mica, glass fiber, asbestos, etc., with suitable bonding substances. Other materials shown capable of operation at Class B temperatures may be included.

Ambient Temperature and Allowable Temperature Rise: Normal ambient temperature is taken to be 40°C (104°F). For open general-purpose motors with Class A insulation, the normal temperature rise on which the performance guarantees are based is 40°C (104°F).

Motors with Class A insulation having protected, semiprotected, drip-proof, or splash-proof, or drip-proof protected enclosures have a 50°C (122°F) rise rating.

Motors with Class A insulation and having totally enclosed, fan-cooled, explosion-proof, waterproof, dust-tight, submersible, or dust-explosion-proof enclosures have a 55°C (131°F) rise rating.

Motors with Class B insulation are permissible for total temperatures up to 110°C (230°F) for open motors and 115°C (239°F) for enclosed motors.

Motors Exposed to Injurious Conditions.—Where motors are to be used in locations imposing unusual operating conditions, the manufacturer should be consulted, especially where any of the following conditions apply: exposure to chemical fumes; operation in damp places; operation at speeds in excess of specified overspeed; exposure to combustible or explosive dust; exposure to gritty or conducting dust; exposure to lint; exposure to steam; operation in poorly ventilated rooms; operation in pits, or where entirely enclosed in boxes; exposure to inflammable or explosive gases; exposure to temperatures below 10°C (50°F); exposure to oil vapor; exposure to salt air; exposure to abnormal shock or vibration from external sources; where the departure from rated voltage is excessive; and or where the alternating-current supply voltage is unbalanced.

Improved insulating materials and processes and greater mechanical protection against falling materials and liquids make it possible to use general-purpose motors in many locations where special-purpose motors were previously considered necessary. *Splash-proof motors* having well-protected ventilated openings and specially treated windings are used where they are to be subjected to falling and splashing water or are to be washed down as with a hose. Where climatic conditions are not severe, this type of motor is also successfully used in unprotected outdoor installations.

If the surrounding atmosphere carries abnormal quantities of metallic, abrasive, or non-explosive dust or acid or alkali fumes, a *totally enclosed fan-cooled motor* may be called for. In this type, the motor proper is completely enclosed but air is blown through an outer shell that completely or partially surrounds the inner case. If the dust in the atmosphere tends to pack or solidify and close the air passages of open splash-proof or totally enclosed fan-cooled motors, *totally enclosed (nonventilated) motors* are used. This type, which is limited to low horsepower ratings, is also used for outdoor service in mild or severe climates.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Characteristics and Applications of D.C. Motors, 1–300 Horsepower

Type	Starting Duty	Maximum Momentary Running Torque	Speed Regulation	Speed Control[a]	Applications
Shunt-wound, constant-speed	Medium starting torque. Varies with voltage supplied to armature, and is limited by starting resistor to 125 to 200% full-load torque	125 to 200%. Limited by commutation	8 to 12%	Basic speed to 200% basic speed by field control	Drives where starting requirements are not severe. Use constant-speed or adjustable-speed, depending on speed required. Centrifugal pumps, fans, blowers, conveyors, elevators, wood- and metalworking machines
Shunt-wound, adjustable speed			10 to 20%, increases with weak fields	Basic speed to 60% basic speed (lower for some ratings) by field control	
Shunt-wound, adjustable voltage control			Up to 25%. Less than 5% obtainable with special rotating regulator	Basic speed to 2% basic speed and basic speed to 200% basic speed	Drives where wide, stepless speed control, uniform speed, constant-torque acceleration and adaptability to automatic operation are required. Planers, milling machines, boring machines, lathes, etc.
Compound wound, constant-speed	Heavy starting torque, Limited by starting resistor to 130 to 260% of full-load torque	130 to 260%. Limited by commutation	Standard compounding 25%. Depends on amount of series winding	Basic speed to 125% basic speed by field control	Drives requiring high starting torque and fairly constant speed. Pulsating loads. Shears, bending rolls, pumps, conveyors, crushers, etc.
Series-wound, varying-speed	Very heavy starting torque. Limited to 300 to 350% full-load torque	300 to 350%. Limited by commutation	Very high. Infinite no-load speed	From zero to maximum speed, depending on control and load	Drives where very high starting torque is required and speed can be regulated. Cranes, hoists, gates, bridges, car dumpers, etc.

[a] Minimum speed below basic speed by armature control limited by heating.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Characteristics and Applications of Polyphase AC Motors

Polyphase Type	Ratings hp	Speed Regulation	Speed Control	Starting Torque	Breakdown Torque	Applications
General-purpose squirrel cage, normal stg current, normal stg torque. Design B	0.5 to 200	Less than 5%	None, except multispeed types, designed for two to four fixed speeds	100 to 250% of full-load	200 to 300% of full-load	Constant-speed service where starting torque is not excessive. Fans, blowers, rotary compressors, centrifugal pumps, woodworking machines, machine tools, line shafts
Full-voltage starting, high stg torque, normal stg current, squirrel-cage, Design C	3 to 150	Less than 5%	None except multispeed types, designed for two to four fixed speeds	200 to 250% of full-load	190 to 225% of full-load	Constant-speed service where fairly high starting torque is required at infrequent intervals with starting current of about 500% full-load. Reciprocating pumps and compressors, conveyors, crushers, pulverizers, agitators, etc.
Full-voltage starting, high stgtorque, high-slip squirrel cage, Design D	0.5 to 150	Drops about 7 to 12% from no load to full load	None, except multispeed types, designed for two to four fixed speeds	275% of full-load depending on speed and rotor resistance	275% of full-load Will usually not stall until loaded to its maximum torque, which occurs at standstill	Constant-speed service and high-starting torque if starting not too frequent, and for taking high-peak loads with or without flywheels. Punch presses, die stamping, shears, bulldozers, bailers, hoists, cranes, elevators, etc.
Wound-rotor, external-resistance starting	0.5 to several thousand	With rotor rings short-circuited drops about 3% for large to 5% for small sizes	Speed can be reduced to 50% of normal by rotor resistance. Speed varies inversely as the load	Up to 300% depending on external resistance in rotor circuit and how distributed	200% when rotor slip rings are short circulated	Where high-starting torque with low-starting current or where limited speed control is required. Fans, centrifugal and plunger pumps, compressors, conveyors, hoists, cranes, ball mills, gate hoists, etc.
Synchronous	25 to several thousand	Constant	None, except special motors designed for two fixed speeds	40% for slow speed to 160% for medium speed 80% p-f designs. Special high-torque designs	Pull-out torque of unity-p-f motors 170%; 80%-p-f motors 225%. Special designs up to 300%	For constant-speed service, direct connection to slow-speed machines and where power-factor correction is required.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

In addition to these special-purpose motors, there are two types of *explosion-proof motors* designed for hazardous locations. One type is for operation in hazardous dust locations (Class II, Group *G* of the National Electrical Code) and the other is for atmospheres containing explosive vapors and fumes classified as Class I, Group *D* (gasoline, naphtha, alcohols, acetone, lacquer-solvent vapors, natural gas).

Electric Motor Maintenance

Electric Motor Inspection Schedule.—Frequency and thoroughness of inspection depend upon such factors as 1) importance of the motor in the production scheme; 2) percentage of days the motor operates; 3) nature of service; and 4) winding conditions.

The following schedules, recommended by the General Electric Company, and covering both AC and DC motors are based on average conditions in so far as duty and dirt are concerned.

Weekly Inspection.—1) *Surroundings*. Check to see if the windings are exposed to any dripping water, acid or alcoholic fumes; also, check for any unusual amount of dust, chips, or lint on or about the motor. See if any boards, covers, canvas, etc., have been misplaced that might interfere with the motor ventilation or jam moving parts.

2) *Lubrication of sleeve-bearing motors*. In sleeve-bearing motors check oil level, if a gage is used, and fill to the specified line. If the journal diameter is less than 2 inches, the motor should be stopped before checking the oil level. For special lubricating systems, such as wool-packed, forced lubrication, flood and disk lubrication, follow instruction book. Oil should be added to bearing housing only when motor is at rest. A check should be made to see if oil is creeping along the shaft toward windings where it may harm the insulation.

3) *Mechanical condition*. Note any unusual noise that may be caused by metal-to-metal contact or any odor as from scorching insulation varnish.

4) *Ball or roller bearings*. Feel ball- or roller-bearing housings for evidence of vibration, and listen for any unusual noise. Inspect for creepage of grease on inside of motor.

5) *Commutators and brushes*. Check brushes and commutator for sparking. If the motor is on cyclic duty it should be observed through several cycles. Note color and surface condition of the commutator. A stable copper oxide-carbon film (as distinguished from a pure copper surface) on the commutator is an essential requirement for good commutation. Such a film may vary in color all the way from copper to straw, chocolate to black. It should be clean and smooth and have a high polish. All brushes should be checked for wear and pigtail connections for looseness. The commutator surface may be cleaned by using a piece of dry canvas or other hard, nonlinting material that is wound around and securely fastened to a wooden stick, and held against the rotating commutator.

6) *Rotors and armatures*. The air gap on sleeve-bearing motors should be checked, especially if they have been recently overhauled. After installing new bearings, make sure that the average reading is within 10 percent, and reading should be less than 0.020 inch (0.51 mm). Check air passages through punchings and make sure they are free of foreign matter.

7) *Windings*. If necessary clean windings by suction or mild blowing. After making sure that the motor is dead, wipe off windings with dry cloth, note evidence of moisture, and see if any water has accumulated in the bottom of frame. Check if any oil or grease has worked its way up to the rotor or armature windings. Clean with carbon tetrachloride in a well-ventilated room.

8) *General*. This is a good time to check the belt, gears, flexible couplings, chain, and sprockets for excessive wear or improper location. The motor starting should be checked to make sure that it comes up to proper speed each time power is applied.

Monthly or Bimonthly Inspection.—1) *Windings*. Check shunt, series, and commutating field windings for tightness. Try to move field spools on the poles, as drying out may have caused some play. If this condition exists, a service shop should be consulted. Check motor cable connections for tightness.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2) *Brushes*. Check brushes in holders for fit and free play. Check the brush-spring pressure. Tighten brush studs in holders to take up slack from drying out of washers, making sure that studs are not displaced, particularly on DC motors. Replace brushes that are worn down almost to the brush rivet, examine brush faces for chipped toes or heels, and for heat cracks. Damaged brushes should be replaced immediately.

3) *Commutators*. Examine commutator surface for high bars and high mica, or evidence of scratches or roughness. See that the risers are clean and have not been damaged.

4) *Ball or roller bearings*. On hard-driven, 24-hour service ball- or roller-bearing motors, purge out old grease through drain hole and apply new grease. Check to make sure grease or oil is not leaking out of the bearing housing. If any leakage is present, correct the condition before continuing to operate.

5) *Sleeve bearings*. Check sleeve bearings for wear, including end-play bearing surfaces. Clean out oil wells if there is evidence of dirt or sludge. Flush with lighter oil before refilling.

6) *Enclosed gears*. For motors with enclosed gears, open drain plug and check oil flow for presence of metal scale, sand, or water. If condition of oil is bad, drain, flush, and refill as directed. Rock rotor to see if slack or backlash is increasing.

7) *Loads*. Check loads for changed conditions, bad adjustment, poor handling, or control.

8) *Couplings and other drive details*. Note if belt-tightening adjustment is all used up. Shorten belt if this condition exists. See if belt runs steadily and close to inside (motor edge) of pulley. Chain should be checked for evidence of wear and stretch. Clean inside of chain housing. Check chain-lubricating system. Note inclination of slanting base to make sure it does not cause oil rings to rub on housing.

Annual or Biannual Inspection.—1) *Windings*. Check insulation resistance by using either a megohmmeter or a voltmeter having a resistance of about 100 ohms per volt. Check insulation surfaces for dry cracks and other evidence of need for coatings of insulating material. Clean surfaces and ventilating passages thoroughly if inspection shows accumulation of dust. Check for mold or water standing in frame to determine if windings need to be dried out, varnished, and baked.

2) *Air gap and bearings*. Check air gap to make sure that average reading is within 10 percent, provided reading should be less than 0.020 inch (0.51 mm). All bearings, ball, roller, and sleeve should be thoroughly checked and defective ones replaced. Waste-packed and wick-oiled bearings should have waste or wicks renewed, if they have become glazed or filled with metal or dirt, making sure that new waste bears well against shaft.

3) *Rotors (squirrel-cage)*. Check squirrel-cage rotors for broken or loose bars and evidence of local heating. If fan blades are not cast in place, check for loose blades. Look for marks on rotor surface indicating foreign matter in air gap or a worn bearing.

4) *Rotors (wound)*. Clean wound rotors thoroughly around collector rings, washers, and connections. Tighten connections if necessary. If rings are rough, spotted, or eccentric, refer to service shop for refinishing. See that all top sticks or wedges are tight. If any are loose, refer to service shop.

5) *Armatures*. Clean all armature air passages thoroughly if any are obstructed. Look for oil or grease creeping along shaft, checking back to bearing. Check commutator for surface condition, high bars, high mica, or eccentricity. If necessary, remachine the commutator to secure a smooth fresh surface.

6) *Loads*. Read load on motor with instruments at no load, full load, or through an entire cycle, as a check on the mechanical condition of the driven machine.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ADHESIVES AND SEALANTS

By strict definition, an adhesive is any substance that fastens or bonds materials to be joined (adherends) by means of surface attachment. The bond durability depends on the strength of the adhesive to the substrate (adhesion) and the strength within the adhesive (cohesion). Besides bonding a joint, an adhesive may serve as a seal against foreign matter. When an adhesive performs both bonding and sealing functions, it is usually referred to as an *adhesive sealant*. Joining materials with adhesives offers significant benefits compared with mechanical methods of uniting two materials.

Among these benefits are that an adhesive distributes a load over an area rather than concentrating it at a point, resulting in a more even distribution of stresses. The adhesive bonded joint is therefore more resistant to flexural and vibrational stresses than, for example, a bolted, riveted, or welded joint. Another benefit is that an adhesive forms a seal as well as a bond. This seal prevents the corrosion that may occur with dissimilar metals, such as aluminum and magnesium, or mechanically fastened joints, by providing a dielectric insulation between the substrates. An adhesive also joins irregularly shaped surfaces more easily than does a mechanical fastener. Other benefits include negligible weight addition and virtually no change to part dimensions or geometry.

Most adhesives are available in liquids, gels, pastes, and tape forms. The growing variety of adhesives available can make the selection of the proper adhesive or sealant a challenging experience. In addition to the technical requirements of the adhesive, time and costs are also important considerations. Proper choice of an adhesive is based on knowledge of the suitability of the adhesive or sealant for the particular substrates. Appropriate surface preparation, curing parameters, and matching the strength and durability characteristics of the adhesive to its intended use are essential. The performance of an adhesive-bonded joint depends on a wide range of these factors, many of them quite complex. Adhesive suppliers can usually offer essential expertise in the area of appropriate selection.

Adhesives can be classified as structural or nonstructural. In general, an adhesive can be considered structural when it is capable of supporting heavy loads; nonstructural when it cannot support such loads. Many adhesives and sealants, under various brand names, may be available for a particular bonding application. It is always advisable to check the adhesive manufacturers' information before making an adhesive sealant selection. Also, testing under end-use conditions is always suggested to help ensure bonded or sealed joints meet or exceed expected performance requirements.

Though not meant to be all-inclusive, the following information correlates the features of some successful adhesive compositions available in the marketplace.

Bonding Adhesives

Reactive-type bonding adhesives are applied as liquids and react (cure) to solids under appropriate conditions. The cured adhesive is either a thermosetting or thermoplastic polymer. These adhesives are supplied as two-component no-mix, two-component mix, and one-component no-mix types, which are discussed in the following paragraphs.

Two-Component No-Mix Adhesives

Types of Adhesives.—*Anaerobic (Urethane Methacrylate Ester) Structural Adhesives:* Anaerobic structural adhesives are mixtures of acrylic esters that remain liquid when exposed to air but harden when confined between metal substrates. These adhesives can be used for large numbers of industrial purposes where high reliability of bond joints is required. Benefits include: no mixing is required (no pot-life or waste problems), flexible/durable bonds are made that withstand thermal cycling, have excellent resistance to solvents and severe environments, and rapid cure at room temperatures (eliminating

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

expensive ovens). The adhesives are easily dispensed with automatic equipment. An activator is usually required to be present on one surface to initiate the cure for these adhesives. Applications for these adhesives include bonding of metals, magnets (ferrites), glass, thermosetting plastics, ceramics, and stone.

Acrylic Adhesives: Acrylic adhesives are composed of a polyurethane polymer backbone with acrylate end groups. They can be formulated to cure through heat or the use of an activator applied to the substrate surface, but many industrial acrylic adhesives are cured by light. Light-cured adhesives are used in applications where the bond geometry allows light to reach the adhesive and the production rate is high enough to justify the capital expense of a light source. Benefits include: no mixing is required (no pot-life or waste problems); formulations cure (solidify) with activator, heat, or light; the adhesive will bond to a variety of substrates, including metal and most thermoplastics; and tough and durable bonds are produced with a typical resistance to the effects of temperatures up to 180°C. Typical applications include automobile body parts (steel stiffeners), assemblies subjected to paint-baking cycles, speaker magnets to pole plates, and bonding of motor magnets, sheet steel, and many other structural applications. Other applications include bonding glass, sheet metal, magnets (ferrite), thermosetting and thermoplastic plastics, wood, ceramics, and stone.

Two-Component Mix Adhesives

Types of Adhesives.—*Epoxy Adhesives:* Two-component epoxy adhesives are well-established adhesives that offer many benefits in manufacturing. The reactive components of these adhesives are separated prior to use, so they usually have a good shelf life without refrigeration. Polymerization begins upon mixing, and a thermoset polymer is formed. Epoxy adhesives cure to form thermosetting polymers made up of a base side with the polymer resin and a second part containing the catalyst. The main benefit of these systems is that the depth of cure is unlimited. As a result, large volume can be filled for work such as potting, without the cure being limited by the need for access to an external influence such as moisture or light to activate the curing process.

For consistent adhesive performance, it is important that the mix ratio remain constant to eliminate variations in adhesive performance. Epoxies can be handled automatically, but the equipment involves initial and maintenance costs. Alternatively, adhesive components can be mixed by hand. However, this approach involves labor costs and the potential for human error. The major disadvantage of epoxies is that they tend to be very rigid and consequently have low peel strength. This lack of peel strength is less of a problem when bonding metal to metal than it is when bonding flexible substrates such as plastics.

Applications of epoxy adhesives include bonding, potting, and coating of metals, bonding of glass, rigid plastics, ceramics, wood, and stone.

Polyurethane Adhesives: Like epoxies, polyurethane adhesives are available as two-part systems or as one-component frozen premixes. They are also available as one-part moisture-cured systems. Polyurethane adhesives can provide a wide variety of physical properties. Their flexibility is greater than that of most epoxies. Coupled with the high cohesive strength, this flexibility provides a tough polymer able to achieve better peel strength and lower flexural modulus than most epoxy systems. This superior peel resistance allows use of polyurethanes in applications that require high flexibility. Polyurethanes bond very well to a variety of substrates, though a primer may be needed to prepare the substrate surface. These primers are moisture-reactive and require several hours to react sufficiently for the parts to be used. Such a time requirement may cause a production bottleneck if the bond-strength requirements are such that a primer is needed.

Applications for polyurethane adhesives include bonding of metals, glass, rubber, thermosetting and thermoplastic plastics, and wood.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

One-Component No-Mix Adhesives

Types of Adhesives.—*Light-Curable Adhesives:* Light-curing systems use a unique curing mechanism. The adhesives contain photoinitiators that absorb light energy and dissociate to form radicals. These radicals then initiate the polymerization of the polymers, oligomers, and monomers in the adhesive. The photoinitiator acts as a chemical solar cell, converting the light energy into chemical energy for the curing process. Typically, these systems are formulated for use with ultraviolet light sources. However, newer products have been formulated for use with visible light sources.

One of the biggest benefits that light-curing adhesives offer to the manufacturer is the elimination of the work time to work-in-progress trade-off, which is embodied in most adhesive systems. With light-curing systems, the user can take as much time as needed to position the part without fear of the adhesive curing. Upon exposure to the appropriate light source, the adhesive then can be fully cured in less than 1 minute, minimizing the costs associated with work in progress. Adhesives that utilize light as the curing mechanism are often one-part systems with good shelf life, which makes them even more attractive for manufacturing use.

Applications for light-curable adhesives include bonding of glass, and glass to metal, tacking of wires, surface coating, thin-film encapsulation, clear substrate bonding, and potting of components,

Cyanoacrylate Adhesives (Instant Adhesives): Cyanoacrylates or instant adhesives are often called Superglue™. Cyanoacrylates are one-part adhesives that cure rapidly, as a result of the presence of surface moisture, to form high-strength bonds, when confined between two substrates. Cyanoacrylates have excellent adhesion to many substrates, including most plastics and they achieve fixture strength in seconds and full strength within 24 hours. These qualities make cyanoacrylates suitable for use in automated production environments. They are available in viscosities ranging from water-thin liquids to thixotropic gels.

Because cyanoacrylates are a relatively mature adhesive family, a wide variety of specialty formulations is now available to help the user address difficult assembly problems. One of the best examples is the availability of polyolefin primers, which allow users to obtain high bond strengths on difficult-to-bond plastics such as polyethylene and polypropylene. One common drawback of cyanoacrylates is that they form a very rigid polymer matrix, resulting in very low peel strengths. To address this problem, formulations have been developed that are rubber-toughened. Although the rubber toughening improves the peel strength of the system to some extent, peel strength remains a weak point for this system, and, therefore, cyanoacrylates are poor candidates for joint designs that require high peel resistance. In manufacturing environments with low relative humidity, the cure of the cyanoacrylate can be significantly retarded.

This problem can be addressed in one of two ways. One approach is to use accelerators that deposit active species on the surface to initiate the cure of the product. The other approach is to use specialty cyanoacrylate formulations that have been engineered to be surface-insensitive. These formulations can cure rapidly even on dry or slightly acidic surfaces.

Applications for cyanoacrylate adhesives include bonding of thermoplastic and thermosetting plastics, rubber, metals, wood, and leather, also strain relief of wires.

Hot-Melt Adhesives: Hot-melt adhesives are widely used in assembly applications. In general, hot-melt adhesives permit fixturing speeds that are much faster than can be achieved with water- or solvent-based adhesives. Usually supplied in solid form, hot-melt adhesives liquify when exposed to elevated temperatures. After application, they cool quickly, solidifying and forming a bond between two mating substrates. Hot-melt adhesives have been used successfully for a wide variety of adherends and can greatly reduce both the need for clamping and the length of time for curing. Some drawbacks

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

with hot-melt adhesives are their tendency to string during dispensing and relatively low-temperature resistance.

Applications for hot-melt adhesives are bonding of fabrics, wood, paper, plastics, and cardboard.

Rubber-Based Solvent Cements: Rubber-based solvent cements are adhesives made by combining one or more rubbers or elastomers in a solvent. These solutions are further modified with additives to improve the tack or stickiness, the degree of peel strength, flexibility, and the viscosity or body. Rubber-based adhesives are used in a wide variety of applications such as contact adhesive for plastics laminates like counter tops, cabinets, desks, and tables. Solvent-based rubber cements have also been the mainstay of the shoe and leather industry for many years.

Applications for rubber-based solvent cements include bonding of plastics laminates, wood, paper, carpeting, fabrics, and leather.

Moisture-Cured Polyurethane Adhesives: Like heat-curing systems, moisture-cured polyurethanes have the advantage of a very simple curing process. These adhesives start to cure when moisture from the atmosphere diffuses into the adhesive and initiates the polymerization process. In general, these systems will cure when the relative humidity is above 25 percent, and the rate of cure will increase as the relative humidity increases.

The dependence of these systems on the permeation of moisture through the polymer is the source of their most significant process limitations. As a result of this dependence, depth of cure is limited to between 0.25 and 0.5 in. (6.35 and 12.7 mm). Typical cure times are in the range of 12 to 72 hours. The biggest use for these systems is for windshield bonding in automobile bodies.

Applications for moisture-cured polyurethane adhesives include bonding of metals, glass, rubber, thermosetting and thermoplastic plastics, and wood.

Retaining Compounds

The term *retaining compounds* is used to describe adhesives used in circumferential assemblies joined by inserting one part into the other. In general, retaining compounds are anaerobic adhesives composed of mixtures of acrylic esters that remain liquid when exposed to air but harden when confined between cylindrical machine components. A typical example is a bearing held in an electric motor housing with a retaining compound. The first retaining compounds were launched in 1963, and the reaction among users of bearings was very strong because these retaining compounds enabled buyers of new bearings to salvage worn housings and minimize their scrap rate.

The use of retaining compounds has many benefits, including elimination of bulk needed for high friction forces, ability to produce more accurate assemblies and to augment or replace press fits, increased strength in heavy press fits, and reduction of machining costs. Use of these compounds also helps in dissipating heat through assembly, and eliminating distortion when installing drill bushings, fretting corrosion and backlash in keys and splines, and bearing seizure during operation.

The major advantages of retaining compounds for structural assemblies are that they require less severe machining tolerances and no securing of parts. Components are assembled quickly and cleanly, and they transmit high forces and torques, including dynamic forces. Retaining compounds also seal, insulate, and prevent micromovements so that neither fretting corrosion nor stress corrosion occurs. The adhesive joint can be taken apart easily after heating above 450°F (230°C) for a specified time.

Applications for retaining compounds include mounting of bearings in housings or on shafts, avoiding distortion of precision tooling and machines, mounting of rotors on shafts, inserting drill jig bushings, retaining cylinder linings, holding oil filter tubes in castings, retaining engine-core plugs, restoring accuracy to worn machine tools, and eliminating keys and set screws.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Threadlocking

The term *threadlocker* is used to describe adhesives used in threaded assemblies for locking the threaded fasteners by filling the spaces between the nut and bolt threads with a hard, dense material that prevents loosening. In general, thread-lockers are anaerobic adhesives comprising mixtures of acrylic esters that remain liquid when exposed to air but harden when confined between threaded components. A typical example is a mounting bolt on a motor or a pump. Threadlocker strengths range from very low strength (removable) to high strength (permanent).

It is important that the total length of the thread is coated and that there is no restriction to the curing of the threadlocker material. (Certain oils or cleaning systems can impede or even completely prevent the adhesive from curing by anaerobic reaction.) The liquid threadlocker may be applied by hand or with special dispensing devices. Proper coating (wetting) of a thread is dependent on the size of the thread, the viscosity of the adhesive, and the geometry of the parts. With blind-hole threads, it is essential that the adhesive be applied all the way to the bottom of the threaded hole. The quantity must be such that after assembly, the displaced adhesive fills the whole length of the thread.

Some threadlocking products cured by anaerobic reaction have a positive influence on the coefficient of friction in the thread. The values are comparable with those of oiled bolts. Prestress and installation torque therefore can be defined exactly. This property allows threadlocking products cured by anaerobic reaction to be integrated into automated production lines using existing assembly equipment. The use of thread-lockers has many benefits including ability to lock and seal all popular bolt and nut sizes with all industrial finishes, and to replace mechanical locking devices. The adhesive can seal against most industrial fluids and will lubricate threads so that the proper clamp load is obtained. The materials also provide vibration-resistant joints that require handtool dismantling for servicing, prevent rusting of threads, and cure (solidify) without cracking or shrinking.

The range of applications includes such uses as locking and sealing nuts on hydraulic pistons, screws on vacuum cleaner bell housings, track bolts on bulldozers, hydraulic-line fittings, screws on typewriters, oil-pressure switch assembly, screws on carburetors, rocker nuts, machinery driving keys, and on construction equipment.

Sealants

The primary role of a sealant composition is the prevention of leakage from or access by dust, fluids, and other materials to assembly structures. Acceptable leak rates can range from a slight drip to bubbletight to molecular diffusion through the base materials. Equipment users in the industrial market want trouble-free operation, but it is not always practical to specify zero leak rates. Factors influencing acceptable leak rates are toxicity, product or environmental contamination, combustibility, economics, and personnel considerations. All types of fluid seals perform the same basic function: they seal the process fluid (gas, liquid, or vapor) and keep it where it belongs. A general term for these assembly approaches is gasketing. Many products are being manufactured that are capable of sealing a variety of substrates.

Types of Sealants.—*Anaerobic Formed-in-Place Gasketing Materials:* Mechanical assemblies that require the joining of metal-to-metal flange surfaces have long been designed with prefabricated, precut materials required to seal the imperfect surfaces of the assembly. Numerous gasket materials that have been used to seal these assemblies include paper, cork, asbestos, wood, metals, dressings, and even plastics. Fluid seals are divided into static and dynamic systems, depending on whether or not the parts move in relationship to each other. Flanges are classed as static systems, although they may be moved relative to each other by vibration, temperature, and/or pressure changes, shocks, and impacts.

The term *anaerobic formed-in-place gasketing* is used to describe sealants that are used in flanged assemblies to compensate for surface imperfections of metal-to-metal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

components by filling the space between the substrates with a flexible, nonrunning material. In general, anaerobic formed-in-place gaskets are sealants made up of mixtures of acrylic esters that remain liquid when exposed to air but harden when confined between components. A typical example is sealing two halves of a split crankcase.

The use of anaerobic formed-in-place gaskets has many benefits, including the ability to seal all surface imperfections, allow true metal-to-metal contact, eliminate compression set and fastener loosening, and add structural strength to assemblies. These gaskets also help improve torque transmission between bolted flange joints, eliminate bolt retorquing needed with conventional gaskets, permit use of smaller fasteners and lighter flanges, and provide for easy disassembly and cleaning.

Applications in which formed-in-place gasketing can be used to produce leakproof joints include pipe flanges, split crankcases, pumps, compressors, power takeoff covers, and axle covers. These types of gaskets may also be used for repairing damaged conventional gaskets and for coating soft gaskets.

Silicone Rubber Formed-in-Place Gasketing: Another type of formed-in-place gasket uses room-temperature vulcanizing (RTV) silicone rubbers. These materials are one-component sealants that cure on exposure to atmospheric moisture. They have excellent properties for vehicle use such as flexibility, low volatility, good adhesion, and high resistance to most automotive fluids. The materials will also withstand temperatures up to 600°F (320°C) for intermittent operation.

RTV silicones are best suited for fairly thick section (gap) gasketing applications where flange flexing is greatest. In the form of a very thin film, for a rigid metal-to-metal seal, the cured elastomer may abrade and eventually fail under continual flange movement. The RTV silicone rubber does not unitize the assembly, and it requires relatively clean, oil-free surfaces for sufficient adhesion and leakproof seals.

Because of the silicone's basic polymeric structure, RTV silicone elastomers have several inherent characteristics that make them useful in a wide variety of applications. These properties include outstanding thermal stability at temperatures from 400 to 600°F (204 to 320°C), and good low-temperature flexibility at −85 to −165°F (−65 to −115°C). The material forms an instant seal, as is required of all liquid gaskets, and will fill large gaps up to 0.250 in. (6.35 mm) for stamped metal parts and flanges. The rubber also has good stability in ultraviolet light and excellent weathering resistance.

Applications for formed-in-place RTV silicones in the automotive field are valve, camshaft and rocker covers, manual transmission (gearbox) flanges, oil pans, sealing panels, rear axle housings, timing chain covers, and window plates. The materials are also used on oven doors and flues.

Tapered Pipe-Thread Sealing

Thread sealants are used to prevent leakage of gases and liquids from pipe joints. All joints of this type are considered to be dynamic because of vibration, changing pressures, or changing temperatures.

Several types of sealants are used on pipe threads including noncuring pipe dopes, which are one of the oldest methods of sealing the spiral leak paths of threaded joints. In general, pipe dopes are pastes made from oils and various fillers. They lubricate joints and jam threads but provide no locking advantage. They also squeeze out under pressure, and have poor solvent resistance. Noncuring pipe dopes are not suitable for use on straight threads.

Another alternative is solvent-drying pipe dopes, which are an older method of sealing tapered threaded joints. These types of sealant offer the advantages of providing lubrication and orifice jamming and they also extrude less easily than noncuring pipe dopes. One disadvantage is that they shrink during cure as the solvents evaporate and fittings must be retorqued to minimize voids. These materials generally lock the threaded joint together by friction. A third type of sealer is the trapped elastomer supplied in the form of a thin

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

tape incorporating polytetrafluorethylene (PTFE). This tape gives a good initial seal and resists chemical attack, and is one of the only materials used for sealing systems that will seal against oxygen gas.

Some other advantages of PTFE are that it acts as a lubricant, allows for high torquing, and has a good resistance to various solvents. Some disadvantages are that it may not provide a true seal between the two threaded surfaces, and it lubricates in the off direction, so it may allow fittings to loosen. In dynamic joints, tape may allow creep, resulting in leakage over time. The lubrication effect may allow overtightening, which can add stress or lead to breakage. Tape also may be banned in some hydraulic systems due to shredding, which may cause clogging of key orifices.

Anaerobic Pipe Sealants.—The term *anaerobic pipe sealants* is used to describe anaerobic sealants used in tapered threaded assemblies for sealing and locking threaded joints. Sealing and locking are accomplished by filling the space between the threads with the sealant. In general, these pipe sealants are anaerobic adhesives consisting of mixtures of acrylic esters that remain liquid when exposed to air but harden when confined between threaded components to form an insoluble tough plastics. The strength of anaerobic pipe sealants is between that of elastomers and yielding metal.

Clamp loads need be only tight enough to prevent separation in use. Because they develop strength by curing after they are in place, these sealants are generally forgiving of tolerances, tool marks, and slight misalignment. These sealants are formulated for use on metal substrates. If the materials are used on plastics, an activator or primer should be used to prepare the surfaces.

Among the advantages of these anaerobic sealers are that they lubricate during assembly, they seal regardless of assembly torque, and they make seals that correspond with the burst rating of the pipe. They also provide controlled disassembly torque, do not cure outside the joint, and are easily dispensed on the production line. These sealants also have the lowest cost per sealed fitting. Among the disadvantages are that the materials are not suitable for oxygen service, for use with strong oxidizing agents, or for use at temperatures above 200°C (392°F). The sealants also are typically not suitable for diameters over M80 or 80 mm (approximately 3 inches).

The many influences faced by pipe joints during service should be known and understood at the design stage, when sealants are selected. Sealants must be chosen for reliability and long-term quality. Tapered pipe threads must remain leak-free under the severest vibration and chemical attack, also under heat and pressure surges.

Applications of aerobic sealants are found in industrial plant fluid power systems, the textile industry, chemical processing, utilities and power generation facilities, petroleum refining, and in marine, automotive, and industrial equipment. The materials are also used in the pulp and paper industries, in gas compression and distribution, and in waste-treatment facilities.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-RINGS

Overview

An O-ring is a one-piece molded seal that distorts when squeezed between two parts to fill a gap. Most O-rings are toroidal (a round donut shape with a hole in the middle) and made from highly resilient materials, such as thermoplastic elastomers. Some O-rings are made from materials that permanently deform in use, such as PTFE (polytetrafluoroethylene).

To create the sealing geometry, an O-ring is contained in a cylindrical or planar groove cut into one part. An O-ring gland is composed of the groove in one part and a sealing surface in the other part. If the two parts fit together with no gap, the groove and gland depths are the same. From a sealing standpoint, it usually does not matter which part in the cylindrical or planar joint carries the gland or groove. Ease of manufacture and/or assembly normally drives that decision. When properly installed in a gland, an O-ring is slightly deformed, so that the naturally round cross section is squeezed diametrically out of round prior to application of pressure. This compression ensures that under static conditions, the O-ring is in forceful contact (or "interferes with") the sealing surfaces of both parts enclosing it. The resiliency of the material ensures adequate sealing force at zero applied pressure and allows some dimensional variation within the gland.

When pressure is applied, it tends to force the O-ring across the gland, causing the O-ring to further deform and increase the sealing force, as in Fig. 1(a). As additional pressure is applied, the O-ring deforms into a D shape and can flow into the clearance gap between the two parts, as in Fig. 1(b). When the applied pressure changes direction (sometimes referred to as *cycling*), the O-ring can be forced back and forth within the gland. In such cases, a stiffer or abrasion-resistant O-ring, backup rings, or a second O-ring seal (one for each direction) may be needed. (Other seal types also are available that are better suited to pressure-reversal applications.) In gaseous applications, the permeability of the O-ring material must be considered in estimating leakage rates and avoiding explosive decompression failure of the O-ring, particularly at high pressures.

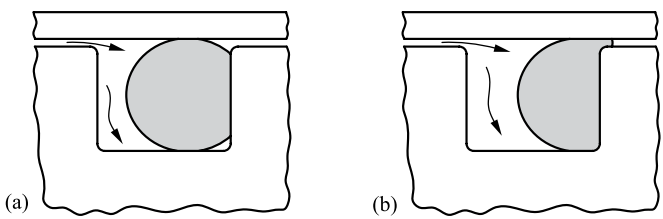


Fig. 1. Effect of Fluid Pressure on the Cross Section of an O-Ring in a Gland

O-Ring Standards and Designations.— O-ring size is based on two parameters: inner diameter and cross-sectional diameter. However, to completely characterize an O-ring, both the size and the material must be specified. Manufacturers often use different designations to identify O-ring compounds.

Table 1 provides some prevailing standards for general-purpose inch and metric O-rings and gland designs. Note that previous O-ring metric standards BS 1806, DIN 3771, and JIS B 2401 have been superseded by the ISO standards shown in this table.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Commonly Referenced O-Ring Standards

Application	Units	Standard	Title
O-ring dimensions and tolerances	inch	SAE AS568	Aerospace Size Standard for O-rings
	mm	ISO 3601-1	Fluid power systems – O-rings – Part 1: Inside diameters, cross-sections, tolerances and designation codes
General use piston or rod gland design, static and dynamic applications	inch	SAE AS4716	Gland Design, O-ring and Other Seals
	mm	ISO 3601-2	Fluid power systems – O-rings – Part 2: Housing dimensions for general applications
Static face seal (axial) gland design	inch	SAE AS6235	Face Seal Gland Design, Static, O-ring and Other Seals for Aerospace Hydraulic and Pneumatic Applications
	mm	ISO 3601-2	Fluid power systems – O-rings – Part 2: Housing dimensions for general applications
Backup rings	inch	SAE *(various)*	*(Backup rings are contained in seperate SAE standards based on material and style.)*
	mm	ISO 3601-4	Fluid power systems – O-rings – Part 4: Anti-extrusion rings (backup rings)

Inch-System O-Rings: The inch-basis SAE standard O-ring sizes are assigned three-digit size codes. A dash precedes the size code. The first digit refers to cross-sectional diameter, and the next two digits refer to inner diameter; however, the numbers that make up the size code are not derivative of the actual inch measurements. For example, for an SAE standard O-ring with designation -230-8307, the O-ring size code is -230, which specifies a cross-sectional diameter of 0.139 in. and inner diameter of 2.484 in. The complete designation number indicates that the O-ring is made from the vendor-specific material designated by material code 8307.

Metric General-Purpose O-Rings: According to ISO specifications, O-rings for general use are functionally equivalent to those found in SAE AS568 when used in the same glands. Size codes for these use the same three-digit numbers set by the SAE standard. But the ISO size code is completed by an added tolerance class designation (A or B). Tolerance class A O-rings, which are equivalent to those in the SAE (inch) standard, are suitable for aerospace or general applications requiring tight tolerances. Even in applications where tolerance needs are not as tight, class A O-rings are most often used. Tolerance class B O-rings, which are less tight and considered appropriate for general applications, are not as common in industry.

To give an ISO example of an SAE equivalent O-ring: for a part with nominal inside diameter of 63.09 mm and nominal cross-sectional diameter of 3.53 mm, the ISO size code is -230A, and the full designation is -230A-63.09x3.53-N. The final letter N is the grade. Grade indicates the inspection standards required per ISO 3601-3: Grade N = general purpose, S = special, and CS = critical service.

It is important to note that, as with SAE designations, ISO standard designations do not identify the material. A manufacturer-specific compound identifier must be appended or called out separately.

Metric Aerospace O-Rings: Another group of O-rings in the ISO standard is intended specifically for aerospace applications. These are designed for use in metric glands. This is advantageous when close fits are required or when working with metric bores and pistons. Codes for aerospace sizes differ from those for general applications; they are preceded by the letter A followed by a dash. The size code then begins with a cross section size identifier, designated from A to E; the next four digits give the inside diameter in tenths of a millimeter. There is only one tolerance class in this group, so a tolerance class identifier is not included, but the inspection standard per ISO 3601-3 is added to the end of the code. For example, a critical service aerospace O-ring with a 3.55 mm cross section and a 63 mm inside diameter has a size code of C0630 and the full designation is A-C0630-63.00x3.55-CS. In this case, the grade code is CS. This series of O-ring sizes are not covered here, but size codes and dimensional information can be found in ISO standards and supplier catalogs.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-Ring Size Selection.—O-ring sizing involves determining the best inside and cross-sectional diameter for an application. Choice of inner diameter usually is determined by the basic needs of the assembly being sealed: the groove for the seal must fit in one of the assembled parts, leave enough material on the part to provide sufficient stiffness, and allow for installation. Deciding which part will bear the groove and choosing the O-ring is heavily influenced by cost and assembly considerations.

There are more variables involved in determining cross-sectional diameter that can substantially impact sealing effectiveness. Smaller cross section O-rings have the advantages of lighter weight, compact footprint, better resistance to explosive decompression, lower friction in dynamic sealing applications, and better physical performance for many materials. Disadvantages of smaller cross sections include higher likeliness of leaks due to surface defects in the gland, less stability in reciprocating applications, higher vulnerability to compression set, higher percentage swell (expansion due to fluid exposure or heat), and the need for tighter gland tolerances.

When working with an assembly containing thin or fragile parts, compression force of the O-ring also must be taken into account. Compression force depends on O-ring material properties, cross section, length (mean circumference), and amount of squeeze induced in the O-ring cross section by the gland.

SAE and ISO standards indicate appropriate sizes for various applications. A greater range of sizes are suitable for static applications than for dynamic applications. There also are differences in size ranges for internal pressure (pushing out from the O-ring's center) and external pressure (pushing inward from outside the O-ring) axial face seal applications. Fig. 2, Fig. 3, and the tables on the following pages show size ranges and relevant gland dimensions for SAE and ISO standard size codes.

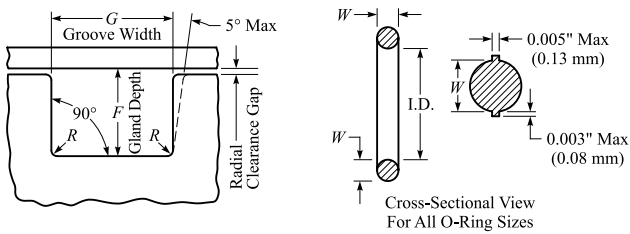


Fig. 2. Gland and O-Ring Details

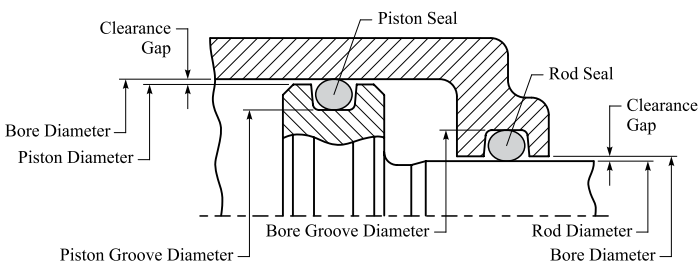


Fig. 3. Piston and Rod Gland Details

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Inch O-Ring Sizes and Gland Data by Size Range

(Based on SAE AS4716C-2017, AS6235A-2015, and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring			Groove Inside Corner Radii	Piston Seal & Rod Seal							Axial Face Seal				
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	± Tol.		Recommended Range of O-Ring Sizes		Groove Eccentricity	Size Sub-Range for Groove Width	Groove Width *G*			Recommended Range of O-Ring Sizes		Groove Width *G*	Groove Depth *F*	Installed Axial Squeeze (No Swell, No Radii, Straight Sides)
								No Backup	1 Backup Ring	2 Backup Rings	Internal Pressure	External Pressure			
	Nominal		Min/Max	Static	Dynamic	Max		Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max			Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max
-0XX	0.070	0.003	0.005	004 to 028	004 to 012	0.002	004 to 009	0.098	0.154	0.210	008 to 028	006 to 028	0.098	0.056	10%
			0.015					0.103	0.164	0.220					
			0.005				010 to 028	0.094	0.150	0.207			0.103	0.060	23%
			0.015					0.099	0.160	0.217					
-1XX	0.103	0.003	0.005	104 to 149	104 to 116	0.002		0.141	0.183	0.245	108 to 149	106 to 149 (exc. 108)	0.141	0.086	10%
			0.015										0.151	0.090	
			0.005					0.151	0.193	0.255		0.108	0.141	0.086	19%
			0.015										0.146	0.090	
-2XX	0.139	0.004	0.010	210 to 247	210 to 222	0.003		0.188	0.235	0.304	210 to 247		0.188	0.117	10%
			0.025					0.198	0.245	0.314			0.198	0.121	18%
-3XX	0.210	0.005	0.020	325 to 349	325 to 349	0.004		0.281	0.334	0.424	325 to 349		0.281	0.178	10%
			0.035					0.291	0.344	0.434			0.291	0.184	17%
-4XX	0.275	0.006	0.020	425 to 460	425 to 460	0.005		0.375	0.475	0.579	425 to 460		0.375	0.234	10%
			0.035					0.385	0.485	0.589			0.385	0.242	17%

Note: Blank table cells indicate O-ring sizes that are not recommended for the given application.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Metric (mm) O-Ring Sizes and Gland Data by Size Range
(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring			Groove Inside Corner Radii	Piston Seal & Rod Seal						Axial Face Seal					
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	± Tol.		Recommended Range of O-Ring Sizes		Groove Eccentricity	Groove Width *G*			Recommended Range of O-Ring Sizes		Groove Width *G*		Groove Depth *F*	Installed Axial Squeeze (No Swell, No Radii, Straight Sides)
							No Backup	1 Backup Ring	2 Backup Rings	Internal Pressure	External Pressure	Liquid	Gas & Vac.		
	Nominal		Min/Max	Static	Dynamic	Max	Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max			Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max
-0XXA	1.780	0.080	0.2	004 to 050	006 to 012	If Groove or Rod Dia. > 50: E = 0.050 Else: 0.025	2.8	4.2	5.6	011 to 050	004 to 050	3.2	2.9	1.3	18%
			0.4	004 to 027			3.05	4.45	5.85			3.4	3.1	1.4	30%
-1XXA	2.620	0.090	0.2	104 to 178	104 to 116		3.8	5.2	6.6	112 to 178	102 to 178	4	3.6	2	17%
			0.4	102 to 134			4.05	5.45	6.85			4.2	3.8	2.1	26%
-2XXA	3.530	0.100	0.4	201 to 284	210 to 222		5	6.4	7.8	212 to 284	201 to 284	5.3	4.8	2.7	18%
			0.8	201 to 231	210 to 221 (Gas) 210 to 222 (Liq.)		5.25	6.65	8.05			5.5	5	2.8	26%
-3XXA	5.330	0.130	0.4	309 to 395	309 to 349		7.2	9	10.9	318 to 395	309 to 395	7.6	7	4.2	17%
			0.8	309 to 349	325 to 331 (Gas) 325 to 336 (Liq.)		7.45	9.25	11.15			7.8	7.2	4.3	23%
-4XXA	6.990	0.150	0.4	425 to 475	425 to 460		9.5	12.3	15.1	425 to 475		9	8.5	5.7	15%
			0.8	425 to 429			9.75	12.55	15.35			9.2	8.7	5.8	20%

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. Inch Axial Face Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on SAE AS6235A-2015 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Axial Face Seal Groove					
				Internal Pressure			External Pressure		
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter		Groove Outer Diameter	Cramping [a]	Gland Fill (No Swell, Straight Sides, No Radii)	Groove Inner Diameter	Stretch	Gland Fill (No Swell, Straight Sides, No Radii)
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.	Max/Min		Min/Max	Min/Max		Min/Max
-006	0.070	0.114	0.005				0.107	4.1%	46%
							0.112		72%
-008		0.176		0.328	0.2%	60%	0.173	5.0%	48%
				0.323		86%	0.178		71%
-028		1.364	0.013	1.504	–0.7%	56%	1.364	0.8%	54%
				1.499		79%	1.369		76%
-106	0.103	0.174	0.005				0.169	4.9%	47%
							0.174		67%
-108		0.237		0.452	–0.9%	64%	0.235	4.9%	49%
				0.447		83%	0.240		67%
-149		2.800	0.022	3.006	–0.4%	57%	2.800	0.5%	55%
				3.001		75%	2.805		72%
-210	0.139	0.734	0.010	1.019	–0.9%	62%	0.734	2.3%	54%
				1.014		78%	0.739		70%
-247		4.609	0.030	4.887	–0.4%	59%	4.609	0.4%	57%
				4.877		74%	4.619		73%
-325	0.210	1.475	0.015	1.899	–1.0%	63%	1.475	1.6%	58%
				1.894		77%	1.480		70%
-349		4.475	0.030	4.895	–0.5%	61%	4.475	0.6%	59%
				4.885		74%	4.485		72%
-425	0.275	4.475	0.033	5.025	–0.6%	61%	4.475	0.7%	58%
				5.015		73%	4.485		70%
-460		15.475	0.070	16.025	–0.2%	60%	15.475	0.2%	59%
				16.015		72%	15.485		71%

Note: Blank table cells indicate O-ring sizes that are not recommended for the given application.

[a] Positive values indicate no cramping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Metric (mm) Axial Face Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Axial Face Seal Groove							
				Internal Pressure				External Pressure			
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter		Groove Outer Diameter	Cramping	Gland Fill Min/Max (No Swell, Straight Sides, No Radii)		Groove Inner Diameter	Stretch	Gland Fill Min/Max (No Swell, Straight Sides, No Radii)	
						Liquid	Gas & Vac			Liquid	Gas & Vac
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.	Min/Max		Min/Max	Min/Max	Min/Max		Min/Max	Min/Max
-004A	1.78	1.78	0.13					1.78	1.1%	31%	36%
								1.80		49%	58%
-011A		7.65		11.20	–3.1%	56%	59%	7.70	0.9%	40%	45%
				11.24		79%	84%	7.72		58%	66%
-050A		133.07	0.94	136.62	–0.3%	48%	52%	134.37	1.0%	46%	51%
				136.66		67%	73%	134.39		65%	71%
-102A	2.62	1.24	0.13					1.25	2.4%	38%	45%
								1.27		56%	67%
-112A		12.37		17.60	–2.5%	63%	67%	12.48	1.1%	50%	57%
				17.64		81%	87%	12.50		67%	76%
-178A		247.32	1.40	252.55	–0.2%	57%	63%	248.82	0.6%	56%	62%
				252.59		73%	81%	248.84		72%	80%
-201A	3.53	4.34	0.13					4.37	1.2%	46%	54%
								4.39		61%	71%
-212A		21.82	0.25	28.88	–2.1%	64%	69%	22.03	1.1%	54%	61%
				28.92		79%	85%	22.05		68%	77%
-284A		456.06	2.16	463.12	–0.1%	60%	66%	457.56	0.3%	59%	65%
				463.16		73%	80%	457.58		72%	80%
-318A	5.33	24.77	0.25	35.43	–2.3%	68%	72%	25.00	1.0%	57%	63%
				35.47		80%	85%	25.02		69%	76%
-395A		658.88	3.05	669.54	–0.1%	63%	68%	660.38	0.2%	63%	68%
				669.58		74%	80%	660.40		73%	80%
-425A	6.99	113.67	0.84	127.63	–0.7%	70%	73%	114.78	1.0%	66%	71%
				127.67		80%	84%	114.80		77%	82%
-475A		658.88	3.05	672.84	–0.1%	69%	73%	660.38	0.2%	68%	72%
				672.88		79%	83%	660.40		78%	83%

Note: Blank table cells indicate O-ring sizes that are not recommended for the given application.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Inch Piston Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on SAE AS4716C-2017 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Piston Gland						Installed O-Ring	
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter		Pneumatic & Hydraulic Application	Bore Diameter	Piston Groove Diameter	Piston Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Stretch	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.		Min/Max	Max/Min	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max	Min/Max
-004	0.070	0.070	0.005	Static & Dynamic	0.190	0.076	0.188	0.002	0.061	0%	4% *
					0.191	0.075	0.187	0.004	0.055	17%	25%
-012		0.364	0.005		0.485	0.375	0.483	0.002	0.059	1%	9%
					0.486	0.374	0.482	0.004	0.053	4%	27%
-028		1.364	0.013	Static	1.491	1.381	1.489	0.002	0.061	0%	8%
					1.493	1.379	1.488	0.005	0.053	2%	28%
-104	0.103	0.112	0.005	Static & Dynamic	0.297	0.128	0.295	0.002	0.089	9%	5%
					0.298	0.127	0.294	0.004	0.082	20%	20%
-116		0.737	0.009		0.925	0.751	0.923	0.002	0.093	0%	5%
					0.927	0.749	0.922	0.004	0.085	3%	20%
-149		2.800	0.022	Static	2.993	2.819	2.990	0.003	0.094	0%	5%
					2.995	2.817	2.988	0.007	0.084	1%	21%
-210	0.139	0.734	0.010	Static & Dynamic	0.991	0.750	0.989	0.002	0.127	1%	4%
					0.993	0.748	0.988	0.005	0.118	4%	17%
-222		1.484	0.015		1.741	1.499	1.739	0.002	0.127	0%	4%
					1.743	1.497	1.738	0.005	0.118	2%	17%
-247		4.609	0.030	Static	4.868	4.626	4.864	0.004	0.129	0%	4%
					4.870	4.624	4.862	0.008	0.117	1%	19%
-325	0.210	1.475	0.015	Static & Dynamic	1.867	1.495	1.864	0.003	0.193	0%	4%
					1.869	1.493	1.863	0.006	0.182	2%	15%
-349		4.475	0.030		4.868	4.496	4.864	0.004	0.194	0%	4%
					4.870	4.494	4.862	0.008	0.181	1%	16%
-425	0.275	4.475	0.033	Static & Dynamic	4.974	4.497	4.970	0.004	0.249	0%	7%
					4.977	4.494	4.968	0.009	0.233	1%	17%
-460		15.475	0.070		15.974	15.497	15.970	0.004	0.250	0%	7%
					15.978	15.494	15.967	0.011	0.233	1%	17%

* This minimum squeeze is less than the recommended minimum of 0.005 inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Metric (mm) Dynamic Piston Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Piston Gland						Installed O-Ring	
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter		Dynamic Application	Bore Diameter	Piston Groove Diameter	Piston Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Installed Stretch	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.		Min/Max	Max/Min	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max	Min/Max
-006A	1.78	2.90	0.13	Pneumatic	5.650	3.050	5.640	0.010	1.346	0%	16%
					5.668	3.042	5.628	0.040	1.277	10%	31%
				Hydraulic	5.740	3.050	5.730	0.010	1.391	0%	13%
					5.758	3.042	5.718	0.040	1.322	10%	29%
-012A	1.78	9.25	0.13	Pneumatic	12.270	9.500	12.254	0.016	1.446	1%	12%
					12.297	9.491	12.236	0.061	1.356	4%	26%
				Hydraulic	12.220	9.540	12.204	0.016	1.401	2%	15%
					12.247	9.531	12.186	0.061	1.311	5%	29%
-104A	2.62	2.84	0.13	Pneumatic	7.280	2.990	7.267	0.013	2.197	0%	7%
					7.302	2.984	7.252	0.050	2.119	10%	21%
				Hydraulic	7.080	2.990	7.067	0.013	2.097	0%	12%
					7.102	2.984	7.052	0.050	2.019	10%	25%
-116A	2.62	18.72	0.23	Pneumatic	23.440	19.170	23.420	0.020	2.218	1%	10%
					23.473	19.137	23.399	0.074	2.102	4%	22%
				Hydraulic	23.330	19.270	23.310	0.020	2.113	2%	14%
					23.363	19.237	23.289	0.074	1.997	4%	25%
-210A	3.53	18.64	0.25	Pneumatic	25.170	19.320	25.150	0.020	3.017	2%	9%
					25.203	19.268	25.129	0.074	2.892	5%	19%
				Hydraulic	24.970	19.320	24.950	0.020	2.917	2%	12%
					25.003	19.268	24.929	0.074	2.792	5%	22%
-222A	3.53	37.69	0.38	Pneumatic	44.730	38.990	44.695	0.035	2.978	2%	10%
					44.769	38.928	44.680	0.089	2.833	5%	20%
				Hydraulic	44.530	38.990	44.505	0.025	2.878	2%	13%
					44.569	38.928	44.480	0.089	2.733	5%	23%
-309A	5.33	10.46	0.13	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	19.500	10.840	19.480	0.020	4.418	2%	12%
					19.533	10.797	19.459	0.074	4.297	5%	20%
-349A	5.33	113.67	0.76		125.420	116.940	125.377	0.043	4.413	2%	13%
					125.483	116.853	125.337	0.146	4.174	4%	22%
-425A	6.99	113.67	0.84	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	128.500	117.020	128.457	0.043	5.913	2%	11%
					128.563	116.933	128.417	0.146	5.674	4%	19%
-460A	6.99	393.07	1.78		414.450	403.150	414.382	0.068	5.915	2%	11%
					414.547	402.995	414.319	0.228	5.560	3%	21%

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Metric (mm) Static Piston Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Piston Gland						Installed O-Ring	
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter		Static Application	Bore Diameter	Piston Groove Diameter	Piston Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Installed Stretch	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.		Min/Max	Max/Min	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max	Min/Max
-004A	1.78	1.78	0.13	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	4.520	1.930	4.510	0.010	1.327	1%	14%
					4.538	1.924	4.498	0.040	1.284	17%	30%
-050A	1.78	133.07	0.94		139.290	136.940	139.247	0.043	1.329	2%	20%
					139.353	136.840	139.207	0.146	1.134	4%	38%
-102A	2.62	1.24	0.13	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	5.380	1.380	5.370	0.010	2.032	0%	9%
					5.398	1.374	5.358	0.040	1.989	24%	26%
-178A	2.62	247.32	1.40		257.690	254.010	257.634	0.056	2.040	2%	18%
					257.771	253.880	257.582	0.189	1.786	3%	33%
-201A	3.53	4.34	0.13	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	9.910	4.530	9.897	0.013	2.741	1%	16%
					9.932	4.500	9.882	0.050	2.676	8%	26%
-284A	3.53	456.06	2.16		472.780	467.780	472.712	0.068	2.740	2%	18%
					472.877	467.625	472.649	0.228	2.435	3%	32%
-309A	5.33	10.46	0.13	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	19.000	10.830	18.980	0.020	4.160	2%	17%
					19.033	10.787	18.959	0.074	4.065	5%	24%
-395A	5.33	658.88	3.05		683.370	675.650	683.290	0.080	4.165	2%	18%
					683.495	675.450	683.210	0.285	3.780	3%	30%
-425A	6.99	113.67	0.84	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	127.800	117.020	127.757	0.043	5.538	2%	17%
					127.863	116.933	127.717	0.146	5.349	4%	24%
-475A	6.99	658.88	3.05		686.510	675.650	686.430	0.080	5.735	2%	14%
					686.635	675.450	686.350	0.285	5.350	3%	24%

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 9. Inch Rod Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on SAE AS4716C-2017 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Rod Lead-In Chamfer Depth 15°–30°	Rod Gland						Installed O-Ring		
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter			Pneumatic & Hydraulic Application	Bore Diameter	Bore Groove Diameter	Rod Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Installed Stretch	Cramping [a]	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.	Minimum		Min/Max	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max		Min/Max
-004	0.070	0.070	0.005	0.018	Static & Dynamic	0.078	0.190	0.076	0.002	0.061	0%	−4.0%	4% *
						0.079	0.191	0.075	0.004	0.055	17%		25%
-012						0.375	0.484	0.373	0.002	0.060	1%	−1.6%	9%
						0.376	0.485	0.372	0.004	0.053	4%		27%
-028		1.364	0.013	0.018	Static	1.375	1.483	1.373	0.002	0.061	0%	0.0%	8%
						1.376	1.485	1.371	0.005	0.053	2%		28%
-104	0.103	0.112	0.005	0.021	Static & Dynamic	0.125	0.295	0.123	0.002	0.090	4%	−3.6%	10%
						0.126	0.296	0.122	0.004	0.084	15%		21%
-116		0.112	0.005			0.750	0.923	0.748	0.002	0.093	0%	−0.3%	5%
						0.751	0.925	0.746	0.005	0.085	3%		20%
-149		2.800	0.022	0.021	Static	2.814	2.985	2.811	0.003	0.093	0%	0.3%	5%
						2.816	2.987	2.809	0.007	0.084	1%		21%
-210	0.139	0.734	0.010	0.023	Static & Dynamic	0.750	0.989	0.748	0.002	0.127	0%	−0.3%	4%
						0.751	0.991	0.746	0.005	0.118	3%		17%
-222		0.734	0.010			1.500	1.740	1.498	0.002	0.127	0%	0.2%	4%
						1.501	1.742	1.496	0.005	0.118	2%		17%
-247		4.609	0.030	0.023	Static	4.626	4.864	4.622	0.004	0.129	0%	0.4%	4%
						4.628	4.866	4.620	0.008	0.117	1%		19%
-325	0.210	1.475	0.015	0.029	Static & Dynamic	1.500	1.870	1.498	0.002	0.193	0%	0.1%	4%
						1.502	1.872	1.496	0.006	0.182	3%		15%
-349		4.475	0.030			4.500	4.869	4.497	0.003	0.194	0%	0.3%	5%
						4.502	4.871	4.495	0.007	0.182	1%		16%
-425	0.275	4.475	0.033	0.043	Static & Dynamic	4.501	4.974	4.497	0.004	0.249	0%	−0.1%	7%
						4.503	4.977	4.494	0.009	0.233	1%		17%
-460		15.475	0.070			15.501	15.974	15.497	0.004	0.250	0%	0.2%	7%
						15.504	15.978	15.494	0.010	0.233	1%		17%

* This minimum squeeze is less than the recommended minimum of 0.005 inches.

[a] Positive values indicate no cramping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Metric (mm) Dynamic Rod Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range
(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Rod Lead-In Chamfer Depth 15°–20°	Rod Gland						Installed O-Ring		
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter			Dynamic Application	Bore Diameter	Bore Groove Diameter	Rod Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Installed Stretch	Cramping [a]	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.	Minimum		Min/Max	Max/Min	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max		Min/Max
-006A	1.78	2.90	0.13	0.3	Pneumatic	3.160	5.930	3.150	0.010	1.429	4%	–3.9%	9%
						3.178	5.900	3.138	0.040	1.349	14%		26%
					Hydraulic	3.160	5.850	3.150	0.010	1.404	4%	–4.7%	10%
						3.178	5.880	3.138	0.040	1.324	14%		27%
-012A		9.25	0.13	0.3	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	9.500	12.353	9.487	0.013	1.478	1%	–1.3%	10%
						9.522	12.310	9.472	0.050	1.382	4%		25%
-104A	2.62	2.84	0.13	0.4	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	3.030	7.196	3.020	0.010	2.127	1%	–7.4%	10%
						3.048	7.160	3.008	0.040	2.044	11%		24%
-116A		18.72	0.23	0.4		19.300	23.552	19.280	0.020	2.196	2%	0.0%	11%
						19.333	23.500	19.259	0.074	2.071	4%		22%
-210A	3.53	18.64	0.25	0.5	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	19.300	25.052	19.280	0.020	2.946	2%	–0.8%	11%
						19.333	25.000	19.259	0.074	2.821	5%		21%
-221A		36.09	0.30	0.5		36.800	42.562	36.775	0.025	2.963	1%	–0.2%	12%
						36.839	42.500	36.750	0.089	2.818	3%		22%
-222A		37.69	0.38	0.5	Hydraulic	38.500	44.162	38.475	0.025	2.913	1%	0.0%	13%
						38.539	44.100	38.450	0.089	2.768	3%		23%
-325A	5.33	37.47	0.38	0.8	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	38.500	47.462	38.475	0.025	4.563	2%	–0.1%	10%
						38.539	47.400	38.450	0.089	4.418	4%		18%
-331A		56.52	0.46	0.8		57.550	66.454	57.520	0.030	4.560	1%	0.0%	10%
						57.596	66.380	57.490	0.106	4.367	3%		19%
-336A		72.39	0.51	0.8	Hydraulic	73.610	82.277	73.580	0.030	4.442	1%	0.0%	13%
						73.656	82.190	73.550	0.106	4.242	2%		22%

[a] Positive values indicate no cramping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Metric (mm) Static Rod Seal Data, Recommended Sizes in Each Range

(Based on ISO 3601-2-2016 and 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring				Rod Lead-In Chamfer Depth 15°–20°	Rod Gland						Installed O-Ring		
Size Code	Cross-Section Diameter	Inner Diameter			Static Application	Bore Diameter	Bore Groove Diameter	Rod Diameter	Diametrical Clearance	Gland Depth Including Eccentricity & Side Load	Stretch	Cramping [a]	Squeeze Including Eccentricity & Side Load
	Nominal	Nominal	± Tol.	Minimum		Min/Max	Max/Min	Max/Min	Min/Max	Max/Min	Min/Max		Min/Max
-004A	1.78	1.78	0.13	0.3	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	1.950	4.590	1.944	0.006	1.343	1%	–9.1%	13%
						1.964	4.560	1.934	0.030	1.298	18%		27%
-027A		133.07	0.94	0.3		33.700	36.162	33.675	0.025	1.301	1%	0.0%	22%
						33.739	36.100	33.650	0.089	1.181	3%		36%
-102A	2.62	1.24	0.13	0.4	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	1.400	5.260	1.394	0.006	1.953	1%	–14.7%	12%
						1.414	5.230	1.384	0.030	1.908	26%		29%
-134A		247.32	1.40	0.4		48.200	51.974	48.175	0.025	1.956	1%	0.0%	21%
						48.239	51.900	48.150	0.089	1.831	3%		32%
-201A	3.53	4.34	0.13	0.5	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	4.560	10.233	4.550	0.010	2.868	2%	–7.6%	12%
						4.578	10.190	4.538	0.040	2.806	8%		22%
-231A		456.06	2.16	0.5		67.500	72.614	67.470	0.030	2.640	1%	0.0%	21%
						67.546	72.540	67.440	0.106	2.497	3%		31%
-309A	5.33	10.46	0.13	0.8	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	10.800	19.552	10.784	0.016	4.424	2%	–5.7%	12%
						10.827	19.500	10.766	0.061	4.337	4%		19%
-349A		658.88	3.05	0.8		115.500	123.310	115.464	0.036	4.003	1%	0.0%	22%
						115.554	123.210	115.429	0.125	3.828	2%		29%
-425A	6.99	113.674	0.84	1.0	Pneumatic & Hydraulic	115.700	126.500	115.664	0.036	5.498	1%	0.0%	18%
						115.754	126.400	115.629	0.125	5.323	3%		25%
-429A		658.88	3.05	1.0		128.500	139.110	128.457	0.043	5.419	1%	0.0%	19%
						128.563	139.010	128.417	0.146	5.224	2%		26%

[a] Positive values indicate no cramping.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

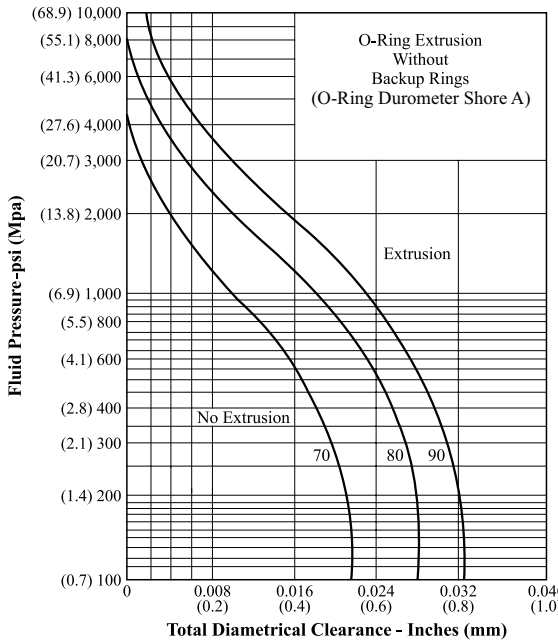


Fig. 4. Extrusion Potential of O-Rings as a Function of Hardness and Clearance Gap

Clearance Gap.—When there is relative motion between two parts enclosing an O-ring, there must be a clearance gap between them (see Fig. 2 and Fig. 3). This broadly applies to piston and rod seals. Axial face seal applications also may have a clearance gap, but generally they do not.

For a piston gland (see Fig. 3), the radial clearance gap is the distance between the piston surface and the bore wall. For rod glands (again, see Fig. 3), the gap is the distance between the rod surface and the bore wall. The radial clearance gap on one side is at its maximum value when the piston or rod is side-loaded and touches the bore (zero clearance gap) on the other side. This gap often is expressed in terms of diametral clearance, which is twice the nominal radial clearance; diametral clearance is the same, regardless of piston or rod position.

If the radial clearance gap between the sealing surface and the gland edge is too large, or if the fluid pressure exceeds the deformation limits of the O-ring, it will extrude into the gap, reducing the effective life of the seal. This is especially problematic for soft silicone O-rings, where a 50 percent reduction in the standard clearance gap may be recommended. To prevent O-ring extrusion, reduce the clearance gap by modifying the gland dimensions, lower the system operating pressure, or install backup rings. A harder O-ring material may be used but could result in higher drag, increase the tendency of the seal to leak at low pressures, and necessitate additional dimensional changes.

Fig. 4 indicates effective diametral clearance values that may be used, depending on fluid pressure and O-ring hardness. If conditions of use fall to the right of the curve,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

extrusion of the O-ring into the surrounding clearance gap is likely to occur, reducing the life of the O-ring. If conditions of use fall to the left of the curve, no extrusion should occur, in which case the O-ring can be expected to perform adequately. As the graph indicates, high-pressure applications require smaller clearances and harder O-rings for effective sealing.

As an example, in an O-ring application with a 0.004 in. (0.1 mm) diametral clearance and 2500 psi (17.24 MPa) pressure, extrusion will occur with a 70 Shore A durometer O-ring but not with an 80 Shore A durometer O-ring. Published gland dimensions normally apply to standard (70 Shore A) hardness O-rings and may need to be adjusted for use with harder materials.

Backup Rings.—Also referred to as *anti-extrusion rings*, backup rings are strongly recommended to prevent O-ring extrusion and nibbling in applications with pressures above 1500 psi (10.3 MPa), where pressure reversals are common, or where large clearance gaps are necessary. (*Nibbling* occurs when the O-ring extrudes into the clearance gap and then is pinched as the clearance gap opens and closes dynamically.) Backup rings are installed in the gland on one or both sides of the O-ring as shown in Fig. 5.

Backup rings may be made of leather, hard rubber, synthetic polymers such as phenolic or PTFE, various metals, or other hard materials. Two backup rings are required if pressure reversals will occur. (If space permits only one backup ring in an application with constant pressure direction, it should be placed so the O-ring is pushed into it when pressure is applied.)

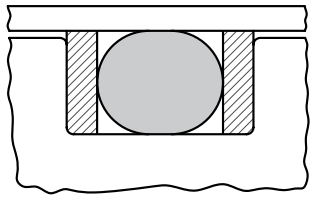


Fig. 5. Preferred High-Pressure Configuration Including Backup Rings

Groove Width and Slope.—Groove widths are standardized to create a gland that approaches 85 percent filled when the O-ring is installed, assuming no swell, straight (perpendicular) walls, and no radii or edge breaks. If one or more backup rings are used, groove width must be increased as needed. If nonstandard gland dimensions are used in a customized application, gland fill must be evaluated to ensure groove width is sufficient. Groove widths for many O-ring sizes are shown in Table 2 and Table 3.

Perpendicular groove walls are best for preventing extrusion or nibbling, but sloped walls often facilitate machining and may be specified as a cost-saving measure. Groove walls sloped outward up to 5 degrees from perpendicular generally are acceptable in low-pressure applications (less than 1500 psi or 10.34 MPa).

O-Ring Stretch, Cramping, and Cross Section Reduction.—*Stretch* occurs when the inner diameter of an installed and squeezed O-ring is smaller than that of the housing groove or rod. When an elastomeric O-ring is stretched, its cross-sectional area decreases. *Cramping*, also called *cramming*, occurs when the outer diameter of an installed and squeezed O-ring is larger than that of the housing groove or bore.

Interference caused by stretch or cramping provides some zero-pressure sealing force, stabilizes the O-ring, and works to hold it in place. Stretch and cramping allowance often is traded against the economic value of using standard stock and tooling sizes. Excess stretch or cramping can be successful; it can be found in the gland dimensional standards for some O-ring sizes. (Relevant stretch and cramping equations can be found for each gland type beginning on page 2682.)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-Ring Squeeze.—The installed squeeze of an O-ring has a great effect on its sealing ability and effective life. Squeeze is the difference, often expressed as a percent, between the stretched O-ring cross-sectional diameter and the gland depth *F* (see Fig. 2). Any stretch applied to the O-ring by a radial gland will reduce the O-ring's cross-sectional diameter and affect squeeze. High squeeze values are used with very soft O-rings or with high pressures, while low squeeze values should be favored in dynamic applications where friction (heat and drag) is a concern. Sealing against vacuum also usually requires higher squeeze, with values between 10 and 30 percent not unusual.

Target squeeze will depend on O-ring size, material, and application parameters. For most elastomers and applications, the O-ring gland should ensure a minimum squeeze of 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) regardless of O-ring size to overcome the elastomers' tendency to permanently deform a very small amount. Standard general squeeze target ranges can be found in the sections specific to each gland type. O-rings with smaller cross sections tolerate higher squeeze better than larger cross section O-rings, but compression set or rupture can become a problem for most materials if squeeze is above 30 percent. (Relevant squeeze equations can be found for each gland type on page 2682.)

For inch-system static seals, many vendors recommend gland dimensions that adhere to the SAE AS5857 standard. This standard targets greater squeeze values than the general-use standards and applies to low-temperature, low-swell, and vacuum applications. It falls to the designer to decide if the greater squeeze values are necessary for a given application. Many O-ring suppliers have developed nonstandard glands; designers also may customize gland dimensions to optimize a particular application.

Gland Fill.—When installed, an O-ring compresses slightly and distorts into free space within the gland. Additional expansion or swelling also may occur due to contact of the O-ring with fluid or heat. The gland must be large enough to accommodate maximum expansion of the O-ring, to prevent it from extruding into the clearance gap or rupturing the assembly. In a dynamic application, any extruded O-ring material will quickly wear and fray, severely limiting seal life.

When designing a gland for a squeeze value that is higher than standard, gland fill must be carefully evaluated. Groove width can be increased to accommodate the squeezed volume of the O-ring, plus 15 percent to accommodate swell. This corresponds to an 85 percent gland fill target, assuming straight groove sides, no O-ring swell, and no internal or external radii. When significant swell is expected, further examination of gland fill must be undertaken. (Relevant gland fill equations can be found for each gland type below.)

Axial Face Seal Glands.—When an O-ring is compressed between two flat parts, this forms an axial face seal. This type of gland is always static, and it normally has no clearance gap between parts. A groove is cut into the face of one of the parts to house the O-ring, with gland fill considered when customizing gland dimensions. Groove diameter will depend on which direction the pressure or vacuum is coming from. If a face seal is expected to experience reversals in the direction of pressure, an O-ring is not the best solution; a flat gasket or other type of seal should be investigated.

Internal Pressure Axial Face Seals: If the pressure differential tends to expand the O-ring away from the center, this is considered internal pressure. When the gland is closed, the O-ring deforms as discussed below, with the outer diameter interfering (called *cramping* or *cramming*) in this case. Once squeezed, the O-ring will be in good contact with the outer wall of the gland, and the internal pressure should not cause O-ring movement. For SAE and ISO standard glands, the groove outer diameter maximum is often set equal to the O-ring nominal outer diameter; then the groove is adjusted to fulfill squeeze and gland fill targets. Using nominal dimensions, the SAE system allows up to 1 percent cramping, while the ISO system allows up to 5 percent cramping (reduces to 3 percent for inner diameters > 250 mm). Larger cramping values can work in some situations.

External Pressure Axial Face Seals: If the pressure differential tends to collapse the O-ring inward toward the center, this is considered external pressure. The inner diameter of the face groove should be specified to stretch the squeezed O-ring. SAE and ISO

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

standard glands set the inner diameter minimum as equal to the O-ring nominal inner diameter. The SAE system allows up to 5 percent stretch, while the ISO system allows up to 8 percent stretch of the squeezed O-ring inner diameter. Larger stretch values can work in some applications.

Axial Face Gland Calculations: When working with standard gland dimensions, the designer usually begins with a preferred cross section and inner diameter. Standards and catalogs can then be used to determine appropriate groove dimensions. These dimensions can be customized if desired, but the resulting O-ring stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill must be evaluated to check for potential problems. Standard gland dimensions include some violations of standard recommended squeeze ranges. In the standards, target squeeze ranges are as follows:

SAE Sizes -0XX: 10–25% SAE Sizes -1XX and -2XX: 10–20%

SAE Sizes -3XX: 10–18% SAE Sizes -4XX: 10–17%

ISO Sizes -0XXA: 21–36% ISO Sizes -1XXA: 19–30% ISO Sizes -2XXA: 17–26%

ISO Sizes -3XXA: 15–23% ISO Sizes -4XXA: 13–20%

In axial face glands, most O-ring stretch/cramping occurs after it is squeezed and widens to interfere with (deform against) the groove wall. When an axial face gland is closed, the O-ring cross section is squeezed into an oval shape with length L. Assuming that the nominal mean diameter of the O-ring does not move, the squeezed O-ring inner diameter reduces and the outer diameter expands. This causes the O-ring to stretch and/or cramp in the gland, putting it in good contact with the groove walls and preventing movement of the O-ring. The following equations, which apply to Fig. 2, can be used to calculate stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill for many elastomeric O-rings:

Definition of variables:

ID = O-ring inner diameter

W = O-ring cross section diameter

AF = gland depth

WR = reduced O-ring cross section in axial gland

IDG = face groove inner diameter

ODG = face groove outer diameter

AG = groove width

L = length of axially squeezed O-ring cross section

$ASID$ = axially squeezed O-ring inner diameter

$ASOD$ = axially squeezed O-ring outer diameter

$GVol$ = groove volume

$OVol$ = O-ring volume

$Fill\%$ = gland fill percent

$AStretch\%$ = inner diameter stretch (external pressure)

$Sq\%$ = axial O-ring squeeze percentage

$ACramp\%$ = outer diameter cramping (internal pressure)

For Axial Glands:

$$WR_{min} = W_{min} \qquad WR_{max} = W_{max}$$

$$L_{max} = \frac{\pi}{4AF_{min}}\left(W_{nom}^2 - AF_{min}^2\right) + AF_{min} \qquad L_{min} = \frac{\pi}{4AF_{max}}\left(W_{nom}^2 - AF_{max}^2\right) + AF_{max}$$

$$ASID_{max} = ID_{nom} + W_{nom} - L_{min} \qquad ASID_{min} = ID_{nom} + W_{nom} - L_{max}$$

$$ASOD_{max} = ID_{nom} + W_{nom} + L_{max} \qquad ASOD_{min} = ID_{nom} + W_{nom} + L_{min}$$

$$AStretch\%_{max} = ((IDG_{max} - ASID_{min})/ASID_{min}) \times 100\% \qquad AStretch\%_{min} = ((IDG_{min} - ASID_{max})/ASID_{max}) \times 100\%$$

$$ACramp\%_{max} = ((ODG_{min} - ASOD_{max})/ASOD_{max}) \times 100\% \qquad ACramp\%_{min} = ((ODG_{max} - ASOD_{min})/ASOD_{min}) \times 100\%$$

$$AF_{max} = AF_{max} \text{ (given)} \qquad AF_{min} = AF_{min} \text{ (given)}$$

$$Sq\%_{max} = ((WR_{max} - AF_{min})/W_{max}) \times 100\% \qquad Sq\%_{min} = ((WR_{min} - AF_{max})/W_{min}) \times 100\%$$

$$OVol_{max} = \left(\frac{\pi^2}{4}\right) \times \left(ID_{max} + W_{max}\right) \times \left(W_{max}^2\right) \qquad OVol_{min} = \left(\frac{\pi^2}{4}\right) \times \left(ID_{min} + W_{min}\right) \times \left(W_{min}^2\right)$$

$$Vol_{max} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(ODG_{max}^2 - IDG_{min}^2\right) \times AF_{max} \qquad GVol_{min} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(ODG_{min}^2 - IDG_{max}^2\right) \times AF_{min}$$

$$Fill\%_{max} = (OVol_{max} / GVol_{min}) \times 100\% \qquad Fill\%_{min} = (OVol_{min} / GVol_{max}) \times 100\%$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Example: Calculate stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill for a -116 size O-ring (-116A in metric, shown in parentheses) in a standard axial face gland with external liquid pressure.

Given: Use gland standard SAE AS6235A-2015 (ISO 3601-2-2016):

$ID_{max} = 0.746$	$ID_{min} = 0.728$	($ID_{max} = 18.95$)	($ID_{min} = 18.49$)
$W_{max} = 0.106$	$W_{min} = 0.1$	($W_{max} = 2.71$)	($W_{min} = 2.53$)
$WR_{min} = W_{min} = 0.1$	$WR_{max} = W_{max} = 0.106$	($WR_{min} = W_{min} = 2.53$)	($WR_{max} = W_{max} = 2.71$)
$IDG_{max} = 0.742$	$IDG_{min} = 0.737$	($IDG_{max} = 18.9$)	($IDG_{min} = 18.84$)
$AF_{max} = 0.09$	$AF_{min} = 0.086$	($AF_{max} = 2.1$)	($AF_{min} = 2$)
$AG_{min} = 0.141$	$AG_{max} = 0.151$	($AG_{min} = 4$)	($AG_{max} = 4.2$)

Calculate:

$L_{max} = 0.115$	$L_{min} = 0.112$	($L_{max} = 3.125$)	($L_{min} = 3.018$)
$SID_{max} = 0.728$	$SID_{min} = 0.725$	($SID_{max} = 18.322$)	($SID_{min} = 18.215$)
$Stretch\%_{max} = 2.4\%$	$Stretch\%_{min} = 1.2\%$	($Stretch\%_{max} = 3.8\%$)	($Stretch\%_{min} = 2.9\%$)
$ODG_{max} = 1.044$	$ODG_{min} = 1.019$	($ODG_{max} = 27.3$)	($ODG_{min} = 26.85$)
$Sq\%_{max} = 19\%$	$Sq\%_{min} = 10\%$	($Sq\%_{max} = 26\%$)	($Sq\%_{min} = 17\%$)
$OVol_{max} = 0.024$	$OVol_{min} = 0.02$	($OVol_{max} = 392.5$)	($OVol_{min} = 331.98$)
$GVol_{max} = 0.039$	$GVol_{min} = 0.033$	($GVol_{max} = 643.31$)	($GVol_{min} = 571.15$)
$Fill\%_{max} = 72\%$	$Fill\%_{min} = 53\%$	($Fill\%_{max} = 69\%$)	($Fill\%_{min} = 52\%$)

Validate for the -116 SAE O-Ring:

$Stretch\%_{max} = 2.4\%$	$Stretch\%_{min} = 1.2\%$	Well within SAE limit of 5%.
$Sq\%_{min} = 10\%$	$Sq\%_{max} = 19\%$	Meets SAE recommendation of 10–20% for this cross section.
$Fill\%_{max} = 72\%$	$Fill\%_{min} = 53\%$	Within SAE target maximum of 85%.

Validate for the -116A ISO O-Ring:

($Stretch\%_{max} = 3.8\%$)	($Stretch\%_{min} = 2.9\%$)	Well within ISO limit of 8%.
($Sq\%_{min} = 17\%$)	($Sq\%_{max} = 26\%$)	ISO recommends 19–30% for this cross section. This slight lower limit violation invites caution in critical applications but is not uncommon.
($Fill\%_{max} = 69\%$)	($Fill\%_{min} = 52\%$)	Within ISO target maximum of 85%.

PTFE O-Rings in Axial Face Seals: Axial face seals can work with very stiff O-ring materials. Solid PTFE seals are often chosen because they are highly chemically inert and less costly than perfluorinated elastomer seals with similar chemical resistance. Glands for solid PTFE O-rings often target a squeeze of 10 to 20 percent for O-rings with cross-sectional diameters up to 0.210 in. (5.33 mm), and 10 to 15 percent for cross sections 0.210 to 0.275 in. (5.33 to 6.99 mm).

It is common practice to dimension the groove so that the groove's mean diameter (inner diameter plus one cross-sectional diameter) is equal to the O-ring's free-state mean diameter. Deliberate contact with the inner or outer groove walls also can be targeted as with elastomeric O-rings, but stretch and cramping should be zero or nearly zero. A groove with a full-radius floor is best to support the O-ring and control deformation. The groove width is normally 10 percent greater than the O-ring cross-sectional diameter. If a clearance gap is present, it must not exceed 0.005 in. (0.13 mm).

PTFE O-rings and their glands are extremely vulnerable to nicks, scratches, and particle contamination. These seals must be handled with care and installed in a clean environment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

If stretch is required, a PTFE O-ring can be heated up to 212 °F (100 °C) with boiling water or a dry heat source. If the gland is reopened after the O-ring is squeezed, the O-ring should be replaced, as PTFE will not rebound from compression and may not seal a second time.

Axial Face Gland Dimensions: Axial face seal grooves should have edge breaks or radii on the external edges to protect the O-ring from sharp edges during installation. Recommended edge breaks are 0.005–0.01 in. or 0.13–0.25 mm. Flatness must be tightly controlled for both mating parts, with 0.0004 in. per 4 in. (0.01 mm per 100 mm) a good target. Parallelism of the groove floor to the mating face also should be tightly controlled. A target parallelism of 0.0008 in. (0.02 mm) is normally sufficient. Ideally, groove walls should be vertical but may slope from vertical by up to 5 degrees to aid manufacturing. Table 2, Table 3, Table 4, and Table 5 contain a sampling of gland data for standard size ranges for axial face sealing. Many O-ring suppliers recommend axial gland dimensions according to the SAE AS5857 standard, which recommends greater squeeze and is suitable for low-temperature, low-swell, and vacuum applications.

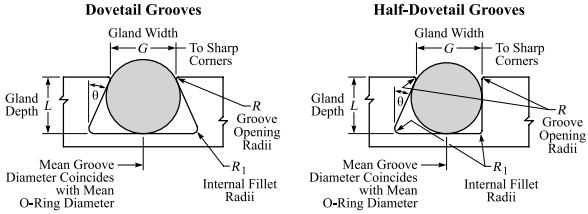


Fig. 6. Dovetail and Half-Dovetail Grooves

Dovetail Grooves.—It is sometimes necessary to retain an O-ring in a static face groove more securely than by using the O-ring stretch alone. In these cases, if sticky O-ring grease is not a practical solution, a dovetail or half-dovetail groove (see Fig. 6) can be used. This is an expensive option, and it requires tight tolerances. Entry radii are critical for preventing installation damage and extrusion.

A half-dovetail groove is appropriate in cases where the applied pressure does not change direction. Be sure to orient a half-dovetail so that the pressure differential forces the O-ring against the vertical side of the groove. Full dovetail grooves can be used in applications with pressure reversals. The nominal mean diameter of these grooves should be the same as the nominal mean diameter of the O-ring (see Fig. 6 and Table 12).

Dovetail and half-dovetail grooves are not recommended for O-ring cross sections smaller than 0.139 in. (3.53 mm). These groove shapes also should not be used with rigid O-rings, because installation would cause permanent deformation. These glands can easily fail due to O-ring swell, and can cause problems in vacuum applications where the groove can release the trapped volume of air contained in its corner(s).

Radial (Piston or Rod) Glands.—Piston and rod seals can be static or dynamic, pneumatic or hydraulic. Different gland dimensions and O-ring size ranges may be required for different applications. Radial O-ring grooves for piston or rod seals should have edge breaks on the external edges to protect the O-ring during installation. Recommended edge breaks are 0.005–0.01 in. or 0.1–0.3 mm. Rod seals also will require a lead-in chamfer on the rod to facilitate assembly; piston seals will need an equivalent lead-in to the housing bore. Pneumatic radial seals are typically limited to pressures less than 150 psi (1 MPa), while hydraulic seals can perform at much higher pressures.

Rod Glands: Rod gland designs tend to begin with a known rod diameter. Rod glands contain the O-ring in a groove cut into the housing bore, and the groove diameter should be sized to cramp the O-ring outer diameter. The O-ring is often simultaneously stretched by the rod. Here the groove maximum outer diameter often is set equal to the nominal O-ring diameter as a starting point. Alternatively, using the minimum O-ring outside diameter and the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Dovetail and Half-Dovetail Groove Dimensions for Static Face Seals
(Zero Clearance Gap in Gland, 70 Shore A O-Rings)

O-Ring			Groove Details			Dovetail Groove			Half-Dovetail Groove		
Size Code	Units	Cross-Section Nominal	Wall Angle θ ± 1°	Internal Radii	Opening Radii	Squeeze	Depth *L*	Width *G*	Squeeze	Depth *L*	Width *G*
-0XX	inch	0.070	24%	0.016	0.005	27%	0.050–0.052	0.055–0.059	23%	0.053–0.055	0.064–0.066
-0XXA	mm	1.78		0.40	0.13		1.27–1.32	1.40–1.50		1.35–1.40	1.63–1.68
-1XX	inch	0.103	24%	0.016	0.010	21%	0.081–0.083	0.083–0.087	19%	0.083–0.085	0.095–0.097
-1XXA	mm	2.62		0.40	0.25		2.06–2.11	2.11–2.21		2.11–2.16	2.41–2.46
-2XX	inch	0.139	24%	0.031	0.010	20%	0.111–0.113	0.113–0.117	18%	0.113–0.115	0.124–0.128
-2XXA	mm	3.53		0.80	0.25		2.87–2.92	2.87–2.97		2.87–2.92	3.15–3.25
-3XX	inch	0.210	24%	0.031	0.015	18%	0.171–0.173	0.171–0.175	17%	0.173–0.176	0.190–0.193
-3XXA	mm	5.33		0.80	0.40		4.52–4.57	4.01–4.11		4.40–4.47	4.83–4.90
-4XX	inch	0.275	24%	0.063	0.015	16%	0.231–0.234	0.231–0.235	15%	0.234–0.238	0.255–0.257
-4XXA	mm	6.99		1.60	0.40		5.89–5.94	5.54–5.64		5.95–6.05	6.48–6.53

Note: Sizes -0XX to -1XXA are not recommended for these grooves.
Note: Sizes -2XX to -2XXA should be used with caution in these grooves.

maximum housing diameter, target a maximum cramping of 1 percent of nominal O-ring dimensions at nominal squeeze in the SAE system or 5 percent in the ISO system for O-rings with an inner diameter less than 250 mm. Larger diameter metric O-rings are allowed only 3 percent cramping. Stretch on the rod is normally limited to 5 percent. It is sometimes acceptable to violate these limits, and standards commonly include such cases for smaller sizes.

Piston Glands: To design a piston gland, it is best to start with a known housing bore diameter. Piston glands have a groove cut into the outer diameter of a piston, where the O-ring is stretched slightly around the groove diameter and squeezed radially between the groove floor and housing bore. One exception to this is a pneumatic "floating" piston gland, discussed later. In most piston seal applications, limit maximum installed stretch of most elastomeric O-rings to 5 percent for long seal life. This can be exceeded for some small sizes, and standard gland dimensions include such exceptions.

Radial Gland Calculations: Designers usually begin a radial seal design with a preferred cross section and inner diameter selected to work with a given rod or bore. Standards and catalogs can then be used to determine appropriate gland dimensions. In the standards, target squeeze ranges are as follows:

SAE Sizes -0XX: 5–30%	SAE Sizes -1XX: 5–21%	SAE Sizes -2XX: 4–20%
SAE Sizes -3XX: 4–17%	SAE Sizes -4XX: 7–17%	
ISO Sizes -0XXA: 14–35% (static)	10–24% (pneumatic reciprocating)	13–27% (hydraulic reciprocating)
ISO Sizes -1XXA: 13–30% (static)	8–22% (pneumatic reciprocating)	12–24% (hydraulic reciprocating)
ISO Sizes -2XXA: 13–30% (static)	7–20% (pneumatic reciprocating)	11–22% (hydraulic reciprocating)
ISO Sizes -3XXA: 12–28% (static)	7–18% (pneumatic reciprocating)	11–20% (hydraulic reciprocating)
ISO Sizes -4XXA: 10–25% (static)	6–17% (pneumatic reciprocating)	9–19% (hydraulic reciprocating)

Radial gland depth used to calculate squeeze should take into account any clearance gap and groove eccentricity *E*. The radial clearance gap maximum and minimum are seen when the piston or rod is side-loaded and touching the wall of the bore. While SAE standards include these factors in squeeze range calculations and recommendations, ISO standards do not. Calculation by either method is valid, as long as it is compared with recommended ranges calculated the same way. (Calculated squeeze values given in tables here take clearance gap and eccentricity into account; as a result, some squeeze values shown may be outside ISO recommended ranges.)

Gland data for appropriate size ranges are given in Table 2, Table 3, and Table 6 to Table 11. These dimensions can be customized if desired, but the resulting O-ring stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill must be evaluated to check for potential problems. Precise calculation methods for a radially stretched O-ring cross section are included in the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

standards. As an approximation, Poisson's ratio (μ) with a value of 0.5 (for rubber) can be used as shown below. The following equations, which apply to Fig. 2 and Fig. 3, can be used to calculate stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill for many elastomeric O-rings:

Definition of variables:

ID = O-ring inner diameter
W = O-ring cross section diameter
G = groove width
F = gland depth including clearance gap and groove eccentricity
PISTON = outer diameter of the piston
PG = diameter of a piston groove
ROD = outer diameter of a rod
BORE = inner diameter of the housing bore
BG = diameter of a bore groove for a rod gland
Stretch% = percent O-ring stretch once installed in the groove
Sq% = O-ring squeeze percentage
ACramp% = outer diameter cramping
GVol = groove volume
OVol = O-ring volume
Fill% = gland fill percent
WR = reduced cross section of a stretched O-ring
μ = Poisson's ratio = 0.5 (rubber)
AR% = approx. cross section reduction of stretched O-ring
E = groove eccentricity

Note: ISO standards omit the second two terms (clearance gap and eccentricity) in calculating *F*, affecting *Squeeze%*.

Piston Seal:

$Stretch\%_{min} = ((PG_{min} - ID_{max})/ID_{max}) \times 100\%$ $Stretch\%_{max} = ((PG_{max} - ID_{min})/ID_{min}) \times 100\%$

$F_{max} = ((BORE_{max} - PG_{min})/2) + ((BORE_{max} - PISTON_{min})/2) + (E_{max}/2)$

$F_{min} = ((BORE_{min} - PG_{max})/2) - ((BORE_{min} - PISTON_{min})/2) - (E_{max}/2)$

$GVol_{max} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(BORE_{max}^2 - PG_{min}^2\right) \times G_{max}$ $GVol_{min} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(BORE_{min}^2 - PG_{max}^2\right) \times G_{min}$

Rod Seal:

$Stretch\%_{min} = ((ROD_{min} - ID_{max})/ID_{max}) \times 100\%$ $Stretch\%_{max} = ((ROD_{max} - ID_{min})/ID_{min}) \times 100\%$

$F_{max} = ((BG_{max} - ROD_{min})/2) + ((BORE_{max} - ROD_{min})/2) + (E_{max}/2)$

$F_{min} = ((BG_{min} - ROD_{max})/2) - ((BORE_{max} - ROD_{max})/2) - (E_{max}/2)$

$GVol_{max} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(BG_{max}^2 - ROD_{min}^2\right) \times G_{max}$ $GVol_{min} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \times \left(BG_{min}^2 - ROD_{max}^2\right) \times G_{min}$

All Radial Seals:

$AR\%_{min} = (Stretch\%_{min} \times \mu)$ $AR\%_{max} = (Stretch\%_{max} \times \mu)$

$WR_{max} = W_{max} - ((AR\%_{min}/100) \times W_{max})$ $WR_{min} = W_{min} - ((AR\%_{max}/100) \times W_{min})$

$Sq\%_{min} = ((WR_{min} - F_{max})/W_{min}) \times 100\%$ $Sq\%_{max} = ((WR_{max} - F_{min})/W_{max}) \times 100\%$

$OVol_{max} = \left(\frac{\pi^2}{4}\right) \times \left(ID_{max} + W_{max}\right) \times \left(W_{max}^2\right)$ $OVol_{min} = \left(\frac{\pi^2}{4}\right) \times \left(ID_{min} + W_{min}\right) \times \left(W_{min}^2\right)$

$Fill\%_{max} = (OVol_{max} / GVol_{min}) \times 100\%$ $Fill\%_{min} = (OVol_{min} / GVol_{max}) \times 100\%$

As an example, calculate stretch/cramping, squeeze, and gland fill for an SAE size -116 O-ring (-116A in ISO, shown in parentheses below) in a standard pneumatic reciprocating piston gland:

Given: Use gland standard SAE AS4716C-2017 (ISO 3601-2-2016):

$ID_{max} = 0.746$	$ID_{min} = 0.728$	$(ID_{max} = 18.95)$	$(ID_{min} = 18.49)$
$W_{max} = 0.106$	$W_{min} = 0.1$	$(W_{max} = 2.71)$	$(W_{min} = 2.53)$
$G_{min} = 0.141$	$G_{max} = 0.151$	$(G_{min} = 4)$	$(G_{max} = 4.2)$
$PG_{max} = 0.751$	$PG_{min} = 0.749$	$(PG_{max} = 19.17)$	$(PG_{min} = 19.137)$
$BORE_{max} = 0.927$	$BORE_{min} = 0.925$	$(BORE_{max} = 23.473)$	$(BORE_{min} = 23.44)$
$PISTON_{max} = 0.923$	$PISTON_{min} = 0.922$	$(PISTON_{max} = 23.42)$	$(PISTON_{min} = 23.399)$
$E_{max} = 0.002$		$(E_{max} = 0.025)$	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Calculate:

$F_{max} = 0.093$	$F_{min} = 0.085$	$(F_{max} = 2.218)$	$(F_{min} = 2.102)$
$Stretch\%_{max} = 3.2\%$	$Stretch\%_{min} = 0.4\%$	$(Stretch\%_{max} = 3.7\%)$	$(Stretch\%_{min} = 1\%)$
$AR\%_{max} = 1.6\%$	$AR\%_{min} = 0.2\%$	$(AR\%_{max} = 1.8\%)$	$(AR\%_{min} = 0.5\%)$
$WR_{max} = 0.106$	$WR_{min} = 0.098$	$(WR_{max} = 2.697)$	$(WR_{min} = 2.483)$
$Sq\%_{min} = 6\%$	$Sq\%_{max} = 20\%$	$(Sq\%_{min} = 11\%)$	$(Sq\%_{max} = 22\%)$
$GVol_{max} = 0.035$	$GVol_{min} = 0.032$	$(GVol_{max} = 587.69)$	$(GVol_{min} = 543.02)$
$Fill\%_{max} = 73\%$	$Fill\%_{min} = 58\%$	$(Fill\%_{max} = 72.3\%)$	$(Fill\%_{min} = 56.5\%)$

Validate for the -116 SAE O-Ring:

$Stretch\%_{max} = 3.2\%$	$Stretch\%_{min} = 0.4\%$	Well within SAE limit of 5%.
$Sq\%_{min} = 6\%$	$Sq\%_{max} = 20\%$	Meets SAE recommendation of 5–21% for this cross section.
$Fill\%_{max} = 73\%$	$Fill\%_{min} = 58\%$	Within SAE target maximum of 85%.

Validate for the -116A ISO O-Ring:

$(Stretch\%_{max} = 3.7\%)$	$(Stretch\%_{min} = 1\%)$	Well within ISO limit of 5%.
$(Sq\%_{min} = 11\%)$	$(Sq\%_{max} = 22\%)$	Meets ISO recommendation of 8–22% for this cross section.
$(Fill)\%_{max} = 72.3\%$	$(Fill)\%_{min} = 56.5\%$	Within ISO target maximum of 85%.

Floating Piston Glands: In pneumatic reciprocating applications, where friction (manifesting as drag and/or heat) is a critical consideration, a "floating" piston gland design can be beneficial because it applies zero stretch to the O-ring. The gland is located on the piston and is overly deep to avoid contact with the O-ring and allow some radial flotation. Groove width is reduced by about 20 percent to help prevent axial movement in the absence of stretch. All compression of the O-ring happens at the outer diameter, where it interferes slightly (called "cramping") with the housing bore. The amount of recommended cramping increases with O-ring cross section. Some recommended cramping values for floating piston glands are as follows:

Here, floating piston gland cramping = O-ring nominal outside diameter – housing bore diameter minimum

Sizes -006 to -012: Cramping = 0.033–0.040 in. (0.8–1.0 mm)
Sizes -104 to -116: Cramping = 0.036–0.060 in. (0.9–1.5 mm)
Sizes -201 to -222: Cramping = 0.059–0.080 in. (1.5–2.0 mm)
Sizes -309 to -349: Cramping = 0.082–0.122 in. (2.1–3.1 mm)
Sizes -425 to -460: Cramping = 0.138–0.173 in. (3.5–4.4 mm)

Floating piston glands are suitable for low-pressure hydraulics below 200 psi (1.38 MPa) that allow for some leakage. Pneumatic piston glands also can be designed to float, but floating pneumatic rod glands have drag problems due to rod-induced stretch and therefore are not recommended. Each time the direction of pressure changes and the O-ring moves from one side of the groove to the other, fluid or gas can travel under and around the seal until the O-ring is again in contact with a groove wall. Lubrication is needed for pneumatic applications.

Rotary Motion Radial Seals: Lip seals and other engineered seals generally work best in rotary applications, but O-rings made of wear-resistant, hard material may be used with caution. Rotary O-ring applications are configured with the groove in the housing bore to prevent centrifugal expansion of the O-ring. The shaft should rotate inside the O-ring, and squeeze must be kept very low. Groove diameter normally is sized 5 percent smaller than the O-ring outer diameter to prevent rotation of the O-ring and cramp it against the shaft. The shaft must be supported with bearings, with the O-ring simply acting as a seal. This application requires reliable lubrication and heat management.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-Ring Lubrication.—Dynamic seals typically rely on system fluid to lubricate the seal as it rubs against the facing part. Installation instructions for O-rings in dynamic applications often suggest coating the O-ring in either the process fluid if applicable, or an acceptable seal lubricant. Lubrication issues can arise when sealing a dry, volatile, or crystallizing fluid. In pneumatic applications, lubrication is provided either by using lubricated air or with periodic lubrication of the seals. Reciprocating seals maintain lubrication film thickness best at high piston velocities.

Gland Surface Quality.—All gland surfaces should be free of burrs, nicks, and scratches; the chosen machining method should not leave tool marks that cut across the gland. To seal properly, the gland and O-ring surfaces must be clean of debris. Surface quality and cleanliness matter most with small cross section O-rings and/or stiff materials. In a static seal, an O-ring made from softer material can be used to compensate for a rough gland. It should be noted that the two systems of measurement recommend nonequivalent maximum surface roughness average (Ra) for various cases, as follows:

Face seals, sealing surfaces:	SAE: 16 µin.	ISO: 1.6 µm
Face seals, contact wall of groove:	SAE: 32 µin.	ISO: 1.6 µm
Face seals, non-contact wall of groove:	SAE: 63 µin.	ISO: 1.6 µm
Piston and rod seals, sealing surfaces:	SAE: Liquids: 32 µin. (Gases: 16 µin.)	ISO: Dynamic: 0.4 µm (Static: 1.6 µm)
Piston and rod seals, groove walls:	SAE: Dynamic: 32 µin. (Static: 63 µin.)	ISO: 1.6 µm

Surface finishes of less than 5 µin. (0.13 µm) Ra are too smooth to ensure long seal life because they wipe too cleanly, causing the O-ring to wear against the housing in the absence of a lubricating film. The best quality surfaces are honed, burnished, or hard chromium-plated. Soft and stringy metals, such as aluminum, brass, bronze, Monel, or free machining stainless steel, should not be used in contact with moving seals.

O-Ring Installation.—During installation, O-rings must not traverse across sharp edges or external threads. All edges encountered by the O-ring must have chamfers or radii. In radial glands, a generous lead-in chamfer of 15 to 20 degrees with a rounded edge is necessary to prevent damage, although an installation mandrel still may be needed in some cases. Never twist or roll an O-ring, and pay special attention during installation of O-rings with a large ratio of inner diameter to cross-sectional diameter. Avoid stretching the inner diameter of an elastomeric O-ring more than 50 percent, and certainly not more than 100 percent during installation. Rigid O-rings normally should not be stretched, though some materials may allow gentle expansion through applied heat for installation purposes.

The preferred bore materials are steel and cast iron, and pistons should be softer than the bore to avoid scratching them. The bore sections should be thick enough to resist expansion and contraction under pressure so that the radial clearance gap remains constant, reducing the chance of damage to the O-ring by extrusion and nibbling. Some compatibility problems may occur when O-rings are used with plastics parts because certain compounding ingredients may attack the plastics, causing crazing of the plastics surface.

O-Rings Used as Drive Belts.—O-rings are frequently used as driving belts in round bottom or V-grooves with light tension for low-power drive elements. Special compounds are available with high resistance to stress relaxation and fatigue for these applications. Best service is obtained in drive belt applications when the initial belt tension is between 80 and 200 psi and the initial installed stretch is between 8 and 25 percent of the circumferential length. Most of the compounds used for drive belts operate best between 10 and 15 percent stretch, although polyurethane has good service life when stretched as much as 20 to 25 percent.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Typical O-Ring Compounds

Nitrile	General-purpose compound for use with most petroleum oils, greases, gasoline, alcohols and glycols, LP gases, propane and butane fuels. Also for food service to resist vegetable and animal fats. Effective temperature range is about –40° to 250°F (–40 to 121°C). Excellent compression set, tear and abrasion resistance, but poor resistance to ozone, sunlight and weather. Higher-temperature nitrile compounds with similar properties are also available.
Hydrogenated Nitrile	Similar to general-purpose nitrile compounds with improved high-temperature performance, resistance to aging, and petroleum product compatibility.
Polychloroprene (Neoprene)	General-purpose compound with low compression set and good resistance to elevated temperatures. Good resistance to sunlight, ozone, and weathering, and fair oil resistance. Frequently used for refrigerator gases such as Freon. Effective temperature range is about –40° to 250°F (–40 to 121°C).
Ethylene Propylene	General-purpose compound with excellent resistance to polar fluids such as water, steam, ketones, and phosphate esters, and brake fluids, but not resistant to petroleum oils and solvents. Excellent resistance to ozone and flexing. Recommended for belt-drive applications. Continuous duty service in temperatures up to 250°F (121°C).
Silicone	Widest temperature range (–150° to 500°F or –101 to 260°C) and best low-temperature flexibility of all elastomeric compounds. Not recommended for dynamic applications, due to low strength, or for use with most petroleum oils. Shrinkage characteristics similar to organic rubber, allowing existing molds to be used.
Polyurethane	Toughest of the elastomers used for O-rings, characterized by high tensile strength, excellent abrasion resistance, and tear strength. Compression set and heat resistance are inferior to nitrile. Suitable for hydraulic applications that anticipate abrasive contaminants and shock loads. Temperature service range of –65° to 212°F (–54 to 100°C).
Fluorosilicone	Wide temperature range (–80° to 450°F or –62 to 232°C) for continuous duty and excellent resistance to petroleum oils and fuels. Recommended for static applications only, due to limited strength and low abrasion resistance.
Polyacrylate	Heat resistance better than nitrile compounds, but inferior low temperature, compression set, and water resistance. Often used in power steering and transmission applications due to excellent resistance to oil, automatic transmission fluids, oxidation, and flex cracking. Temperature service range of –20° to 300°F (–29 to 149°C).
Fluorocarbon (Viton)	General-purpose compound suitable for applications requiring resistance to aromatic or halogenated solvents or to high temperatures (–20° to 500°F or –29 to 260°C with limited service to 600°F or 316°C). Outstanding resistance to blended aromatic fuels, straight aromatics, and halogenated hydrocarbons and other petroleum products. Good resistance to strong acids (temperature range in acids (–20° to 250°F or –29 to 121°C), but not effective for use with very hot water, steam, and brake fluids.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

O-Ring Materials.—Thousands of O-ring compounds have been formulated for specific applications. Some of the most common types of compounds and their typical applications are given in Table 13. The Shore A durometer is the standard instrument used for measuring the hardness of elastomeric compounds. The softest O-rings are 50 and 60 Shore A and stretch more easily, exhibit lower breakout friction, seal better on rough surfaces, and need less clamping pressure than harder rings. For a given squeeze, the higher the durometer hardness of a ring, the greater the associated friction because a greater compressive force is exerted by hard rings than soft rings.

The most widely used rings are medium-hard O-rings with 70 Shore A hardness, which have the best wear resistance and frictional properties for running seals. Applications that involve oscillating or rotary motion frequently use 80 Shore A materials. Rings with a hardness above 85 Shore A often leak more because of less effective wiping action. These harder rings have a greater resistance to extrusion, but for small sizes may break easily during installation. O-ring hardness varies inversely with temperature, but when used for continuous service at high temperatures, the hardness may eventually increase after an initial softening of the compound.

O-ring compounds have thermal coefficients of expansion in the range of 7 to 20 times that of metal components, so shrinkage or expansion with temperature change can pose problems of leakage past the seal at low temperatures and excessive pressures at high temperatures when a ring is installed in a tight-fitting groove. Likewise, when an O-ring is immersed in a fluid, the compound usually absorbs some of the fluid and consequently increases in volume. Manufacturer's data give volumetric increase data for compounds completely immersed in various fluids. For confined rings (those with only a portion of the ring exposed to fluid), the size increase may be considerably lower than for rings completely immersed in fluid. Certain fluids can also cause ring shrinkage during "idle" periods, i.e., when the seal has a chance to dry out. If this shrinkage is more than 3 to 4 percent, the seal may leak.

Excessive swelling due to fluid contact and high temperatures softens all compounds approximately 20 to 30 Shore A points from room temperature values and designs should anticipate the expected operating conditions. At low temperatures, swelling may be beneficial because fluid absorption may make the seal more flexible. However, the combination of low temperature and low pressure makes a seal particularly difficult to maintain. A soft compound should be used to provide a resilient seal at low temperatures. Below −65°F, only compounds formulated with silicone are useful; other compounds are simply too stiff, especially for use with air and other gases.

Compression set is another material property and a very important sealing factor. It is a measure of the shape memory of the material, that is, the ability to regain shape after being deformed. Compression set is a ratio, expressed as a percentage, of the unrecovered to original thickness of an O-ring compressed for a specified period of time between two heated plates and then released. O-rings with excessive compressive set will fail to maintain a good seal because, over time, the ring will be unable to exert the necessary compressive force (squeeze) on the enclosing walls. Swelling of the ring due to fluid contact tends to increase the squeeze and may partially compensate for the loss due to compression set. Generally, compression set varies by compound and ring cross-sectional diameter, and increases with the operating temperature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ROLLED STEEL, WIRE, SHEET METAL, WIRE ROPE

Rolled Steel Sections

Lengths of Angles Bent to Circular Shape.—To calculate the length of an angle-iron used either inside or outside of a tank or smokestack, the following table of constants may be used: Assume, for example, that a stand-pipe, 20 feet inside diameter, is provided with a 3 by 3 by $\frac{3}{8}$ inch angle-iron on the inside at the top. The circumference of a circle 20 feet in diameter is 754 inches. From the table of constants, find the constant for a 3 by 3 by $\frac{3}{8}$ inch angle-iron, which is 4.319. The length of the angle then is 754 – 4.319 = 749.681 inches. Should the angle be on the outside, add the constant instead of subtracting it; thus, 754 + 4.319 = 758.319 inches.

Size of Angle	Const.	Size of Angle	Const.	Size of Angle	Const.
¼ × 2 × 2	2.879	5/16 × 3 × 3	4.123	½ × 5 × 5	6.804
5/16 × 2 × 2	3.076	⅜ × 3 × 3	4.319	⅜ × 6 × 6	7.461
⅜ × 2 × 2	3.272	½ × 3 × 3	4.711	½ × 6 × 6	7.854
¼ × 2½ × 2½	3.403	⅜ × 3½ × 3½	4.843	¾ × 6 × 6	8.639
5/16 × 2½ × 2½	3.600	½ × 3½ × 3½	5.235	½ × 8 × 8	9.949
⅜ × 2½ × 2½	3.796	⅜ × 4 × 4	5.366	¾ × 8 × 8	10.734
½ × 2½ × 2½	4.188	½ × 4 × 4	5.758	1 × 8 × 8	11.520
¼ × 3 × 3	3.926	⅜ × 5 × 5	6.414	…	…

Standard Designations of Rolled Steel Shapes.—Through a joint effort, the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) and the American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) have changed most of the designations for their hot-rolled structural steel shapes. The present designations, standard for steel producing and fabricating industries, should be used when designing, detailing, and ordering steel. The accompanying Table 1 compares the present designations with the previous descriptions.

Table 1. Hot-Rolled Structural Steel Shape Designations (AISI and AISC)

Present Designation	Type of Shape	Previous Designation
W 24 × 76	W shape	24 WF 76
W 14 × 26	W shape	14 B 26
S 24 × 100	S shape	24 I 100
M 8 × 18.5	M shape	8 M 18.5
M 10 × 9	M shape	10 JR 9.0
M 8 × 34.3	M shape	8 × 8 M 34.3
C 12 × 20.7	American Standard Channel	12 [20.7
MC 12 × 45	Miscellaneous Channel	12 × 4 [45.0
MC 12 × 10.6	Miscellaneous Channel	12 JR [10.6
HP 14 × 73	HP shape	14 BP 73
L 6 × 6 × ¾	Equal Leg Angle	∠ 6 × 6 × ¾
L 6 × 4 × ⅝	Unequal Leg Angle	∠ 6 × 4 × ⅝
WT 12 × 38	Structural Tee cut from W shape	ST 12 WF 38
WT 7 × 13	Structural Tee cut from W shape	ST 7 B 13
St 12 × 50	Structural Tee cut from S shape	ST 12 I 50
MT 4 × 9.25	Structural Tee cut from M shape	ST 4 M 9.25
MT 5 × 4.5	Structural Tee cut from M shape	ST 5 JR 4.5
MT 4 × 17.15	Structural Tee cut from M shape	ST 4 M 17.15
PL ½ × 18	Plate	PL 18 × ½
Bar 1	Square Bar	Bar 1
Bar 1 ¼ ∅	Round Bar	Bar 1¼∅
Bar 2½ × ½	Flat Bar	Bar 2½ × ½
Pipe 4 Std.	Pipe	Pipe 4 Std.
Pipe 4 X-Strong	Pipe	Pipe 4 X-Strong
Pipe 4 XX-Strong	Pipe	Pipe 4 XX-Strong
TS 4 × 4 × .375	Structural Tubing: Square	Tube 4 × 4 × .375
TS 5 × 3 × .375	Structural Tubing: Rectangular	Tube 5 × 3 × .375
TS 3 OD × .250	Structural Tubing: Circular	Tube 3 OD × .250

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

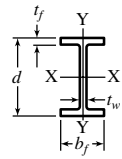
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2a. Steel Wide-Flange Sections

Wide-flange sections are designated, in order, by a section letter, nominal depth of the member in inches, and the nominal weight in pounds per foot; thus:

W 18 × 64

indicates a wide-flange section having a nominal depth of 18 inches, and a nominal weight per foot of 64 pounds. Actual geometry for each section can be obtained from the values below.



			Flange		Web	Axis X-X			Axis Y-Y		
Designation	Area, *A* inch^2	Depth, *d* inch	Width, b_f inch	Thickness, t_f inch	Thickness, t_w inch	*I* inch^4	*S* inch^3	*r* inch	*I* inch^4	*S* inch^3	*r* inch
[a]W 27 × 178	52.3	27.81	14.085	1.190	0.725	6990	502	11.6	555	78.8	3.26
× 161	47.4	27.59	14.020	1.080	0.660	6280	455	11.5	497	70.9	3.24
× 146	42.9	27.38	13.965	0.975	0.605	5630	411	11.4	443	63.5	3.21
× 114	33.5	27.29	10.070	0.930	0.570	4090	299	11.0	159	31.5	2.18
× 102	30.0	27.09	10.015	0.830	0.515	3620	267	11.0	139	27.8	2.15
× 94	27.7	26.92	9.990	0.745	0.490	3270	243	10.9	124	24.8	2.12
× 84	24.8	26.71	9.960	0.640	0.460	2850	213	10.7	106	21.2	2.07
W 24 × 162	47.7	25.00	12.955	1.220	0.705	5170	414	10.4	443	68.4	3.05
× 146	43.0	24.74	12.900	1.090	0.650	4580	371	10.3	391	60.5	3.01
× 131	38.5	24.48	12.855	0.960	0.605	4020	329	10.2	340	53.0	2.97
× 117	34.4	24.26	12.800	0.850	0.550	3540	291	10.1	297	46.5	2.94
× 104	30.6	24.06	12.750	0.750	0.500	3100	258	10.1	259	40.7	2.91
× 94	27.7	24.31	9.065	0.875	0.515	2700	222	9.87	109	24.0	1.98
× 84	24.7	24.10	9.020	0.770	0.470	2370	196	9.79	94.4	20.9	1.95
× 76	22.4	23.92	8.990	0.680	0.440	2100	176	9.69	82.5	18.4	1.92
× 68	20.1	23.73	8.965	0.585	0.415	1830	154	9.55	70.4	15.7	1.87
× 62	18.2	23.74	7.040	0.590	0.430	1550	131	9.23	34.5	9.80	1.38
× 55	16.2	23.57	7.005	0.505	0.395	1350	114	9.11	29.1	8.30	1.34
W 21 × 147	43.2	22.06	12.510	1.150	0.720	3630	329	9.17	376	60.1	2.95
× 132	38.8	21.83	12.440	1.035	0.650	3220	295	9.12	333	53.5	2.93
× 122	35.9	21.68	12.390	0.960	0.600	2960	273	9.09	305	49.2	2.92
× 111	32.7	21.51	12.340	0.875	0.550	2670	249	9.05	274	44.5	2.90
× 101	29.8	21.36	12.290	0.800	0.500	2420	227	9.02	248	40.3	2.89
× 93	27.3	21.62	8.420	0.930	0.580	2070	192	8.70	92.9	22.1	1.84
× 83	24.3	21.43	8.355	0.835	0.515	1830	171	8.67	81.4	19.5	1.83
× 73	21.5	21.24	8.295	0.740	0.455	1600	151	8.64	70.6	17.0	1.81
× 68	20.0	21.13	8.270	0.685	0.430	1480	140	8.60	64.7	15.7	1.80
× 62	18.3	20.99	8.240	0.615	0.400	1330	127	8.54	57.5	13.9	1.77
× 57	16.7	21.06	6.555	0.650	0.405	1170	111	8.36	30.6	9.35	1.35
× 50	14.7	20.83	6.530	0.535	0.380	984	94.5	8.18	24.9	7.64	1.30
× 44	13.0	20.66	6.500	0.450	0.350	843	81.6	8.06	20.7	6.36	1.26
W 18 × 119	35.1	18.97	11.265	1.060	0.655	2190	231	7.90	253	44.9	2.69
× 106	31.1	18.73	11.200	0.940	0.590	1910	204	7.84	220	39.4	2.66
× 97	28.5	18.59	11.145	0.870	0.535	1750	188	7.82	201	36.1	2.65
× 86	25.3	18.39	11.090	0.770	0.480	1530	166	7.77	175	31.6	2.63
× 76	22.3	18.21	11.035	0.680	0.425	1330	146	7.73	152	27.6	2.61
× 71	20.8	18.47	7.635	0.810	0.495	1170	127	7.50	60.3	15.8	1.70
× 65	19.1	18.35	7.590	0.750	0.450	1070	117	7.49	54.8	14.4	1.69
× 60	17.6	18.24	7.555	0.695	0.415	984	108	7.47	50.1	13.3	1.69
× 55	16.2	18.11	7.530	0.630	0.390	890	98.3	7.41	44.9	11.9	1.67
× 50	14.7	17.99	7.495	0.570	0.355	800	88.9	7.38	40.1	10.7	1.65
× 46	13.5	18.06	6.060	0.605	0.360	712	78.8	7.25	22.5	7.43	1.29
× 40	11.8	17.90	6.015	0.525	0.315	612	68.4	7.21	19.1	6.35	1.27
× 35	10.3	17.70	6.000	0.425	0.300	510	57.6	7.04	15.3	5.12	1.22

[a] Consult the AISC Manual, noted above, for W steel shapes having nominal depths greater than 27 inches.

Symbols: I = moment of inertia; *S* = section modulus; *r* = radius of gyration.

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

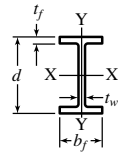
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2b. Steel Wide-Flange Sections

Wide-flange sections are designated, in order, by a section letter, nominal depth of the member in inches, and the nominal weight in pounds per foot. Thus:

W 16 × 78

indicates a wide-flange section having a nominal depth of 16 inches, and a nominal weight per foot of 78 pounds. Actual geometry for each section can be obtained from the values below.



Designation	Area, A inch^2	Depth, d inch	Flange Width, b_f inch	Flange Thickness, t_f inch	Web Thickness, t_w inch	Axis X-X I inch^4	Axis X-X S inch^3	Axis X-X r inch	Axis Y-Y I inch^4	Axis Y-Y S inch^3	Axis Y-Y r inch
W 16 × 100	29.4	16.97	10.425	0.985	0.585	1490	175	7.10	186	35.7	2.51
× 89	26.2	16.75	10.365	0.875	0.525	1300	155	7.05	163	31.4	2.49
× 77	22.6	16.52	10.295	0.760	0.455	1110	134	7.00	138	26.9	2.47
× 67	19.7	16.33	10.235	0.665	0.395	954	117	6.96	119	23.2	2.46
× 57	16.8	16.43	7.120	0.715	0.430	758	92.2	6.72	43.1	12.1	1.60
× 50	14.7	16.26	7.070	0.630	0.380	659	81.0	6.68	37.2	10.5	1.59
× 45	13.3	16.13	7.035	0.565	0.345	586	72.7	6.65	32.8	9.34	1.57
× 40	11.8	16.01	6.995	0.505	0.305	518	64.7	6.63	28.9	8.25	1.57
× 36	10.6	15.86	6.985	0.430	0.295	448	56.5	6.51	24.5	7.00	1.52
× 31	9.12	15.88	5.525	0.440	0.275	375	47.2	6.41	12.4	4.49	1.17
× 26	7.68	15.69	5.500	0.345	0.250	301	38.4	6.26	9.59	3.49	1.12
W 14 × 730	215.0	22.42	17.890	4.910	3.070	14300	1280	8.17	4720	527	4.69
× 665	196.0	21.64	17.650	4.520	2.830	12400	1150	7.98	4170	472	4.62
× 605	178.0	20.92	17.415	4.160	2.595	10800	1040	7.80	3680	423	4.55
× 550	162.0	20.24	17.200	3.820	2.380	9430	931	7.63	3250	378	4.49
× 500	147.0	19.60	17.010	3.500	2.190	8210	838	7.48	2880	339	4.43
× 455	134.0	19.02	16.835	3.210	2.015	7190	756	7.33	2560	304	4.38
× 426	125.0	18.67	16.695	3.035	1.875	6600	707	7.26	2360	283	4.34
× 398	117.0	18.29	16.590	2.845	1.770	6000	656	7.16	2170	262	4.31
× 370	109.0	17.92	16.475	2.660	1.655	5440	607	7.07	1990	241	4.27
× 342	101.0	17.54	16.360	2.470	1.540	4900	559	6.98	1810	221	4.24
× 311	91.4	17.12	16.230	2.260	1.410	4330	506	6.88	1610	199	4.20
× 283	83.3	16.74	16.110	2.070	1.290	3840	459	6.79	1440	179	4.17
× 257	75.6	16.38	15.995	1.890	1.175	3400	415	6.71	1290	161	4.13
× 233	68.5	16.04	15.890	1.720	1.070	3010	375	6.63	1150	145	4.10
× 211	62.0	15.72	15.800	1.560	0.980	2660	338	6.55	1030	130	4.07
× 193	56.8	15.48	15.710	1.440	0.890	2400	310	6.50	931	119	4.05
× 176	51.8	15.22	15.650	1.310	0.830	2140	281	6.43	838	107	4.02
× 159	46.7	14.98	15.565	1.190	0.745	1900	254	6.38	748	96.2	4.00
× 145	42.7	14.78	15.500	1.090	0.680	1710	232	6.33	677	87.3	3.98

Symbols: I = moment of inertia; S = section modulus; r = radius of gyration.

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

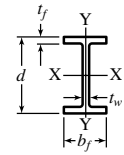
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2c. Steel Wide-Flange Sections

Wide-flange sections are designated, in order, by a section letter, nominal depth of the member in inches, and the nominal weight in pounds per foot. Thus:

W 14 × 38

indicates a wide-flange section having a nominal depth of 14 inches, and a nominal weight per foot of 38 pounds. Actual geometry for each section can be obtained from the values below.



Designation	Area, A inch^2	Depth, d inch	Flange Width, b_f inch	Flange Thickness, t_f inch	Web Thickness, t_w inch	Axis X-X I inch^4	Axis X-X S inch^3	Axis X-X r inch	Axis Y-Y I inch^4	Axis Y-Y S inch^3	Axis Y-Y r inch
W 14 × 132	38.8	14.66	14.725	1.030	0.645	1530	209	6.28	548	74.5	3.76
× 120	35.3	14.48	14.670	0.940	0.590	1380	190	6.24	495	67.5	3.74
× 109	32.0	14.32	14.605	0.860	0.525	1240	173	6.22	447	61.2	3.73
× 99	29.1	14.16	14.565	0.780	0.485	1110	157	6.17	402	55.2	3.71
× 90	26.5	14.02	14.520	0.710	0.440	999	143	6.14	362	49.9	3.70
× 82	24.1	14.31	10.130	0.855	0.510	882	123	6.05	148	29.3	2.48
× 74	21.8	14.17	10.070	0.785	0.450	796	112	6.04	134	26.6	2.48
× 68	20.0	14.04	10.035	0.720	0.415	723	103	6.01	121	24.2	2.46
× 61	17.9	13.89	9.995	0.645	0.375	640	92.2	5.98	107	21.5	2.45
× 53	15.6	13.92	8.060	0.660	0.370	541	77.8	5.89	57.7	14.3	1.92
× 48	14.1	13.79	8.030	0.595	0.340	485	70.3	5.85	51.4	12.8	1.91
× 43	12.6	13.66	7.995	0.530	0.305	428	62.7	5.82	45.2	11.3	1.89
× 38	11.2	14.10	6.770	0.515	0.310	385	54.6	5.87	26.7	7.88	1.55
× 34	10.0	13.98	6.745	0.455	0.285	340	48.6	5.83	23.3	6.91	1.53
× 30	8.85	13.84	6.730	0.385	0.270	291	42.0	5.73	19.6	5.82	1.49
× 26	7.69	13.91	5.025	0.420	0.255	245	35.3	5.65	8.91	3.54	1.08
× 22	6.49	13.74	5.000	0.335	0.230	199	29.0	5.54	7.00	2.80	1.04
W 12 × 336	98.8	16.82	13.385	2.955	1.775	4060	483	6.41	1190	177	3.47
× 305	89.6	16.32	13.235	2.705	1.625	3550	435	6.29	1050	159	3.42
× 279	81.9	15.85	13.140	2.470	1.530	3110	393	6.16	937	143	3.38
× 252	74.1	15.41	13.005	2.250	1.395	2720	353	6.06	828	127	3.34
× 230	67.7	15.05	12.895	2.070	1.285	2420	321	5.97	742	115	3.31
× 210	61.8	14.71	12.790	1.900	1.180	2140	292	5.89	664	104	3.28
× 190	55.8	14.38	12.670	1.735	1.060	1890	263	5.82	589	93.0	3.25
× 170	50.0	14.03	12.570	1.560	0.960	1650	235	5.74	517	82.3	3.22
× 152	44.7	13.71	12.480	1.400	0.870	1430	209	5.66	454	72.8	3.19
× 136	39.9	13.41	12.400	1.250	0.790	1240	186	5.58	398	64.2	3.16
× 120	35.3	13.12	12.320	1.105	0.710	1070	163	5.51	345	56.0	3.13
× 106	31.2	12.89	12.220	0.990	0.610	933	145	5.47	301	49.3	3.11
× 96	28.2	12.71	12.160	0.900	0.550	833	131	5.44	270	44.4	3.09
× 87	25.6	12.53	12.125	0.810	0.515	740	118	5.38	241	39.7	3.07
× 79	23.2	12.38	12.080	0.735	0.470	662	107	5.34	216	35.8	3.05
× 72	21.1	12.25	12.040	0.670	0.430	597	97.4	5.31	195	32.4	3.04
× 65	19.1	12.12	12.000	0.605	0.390	533	87.9	5.28	174	29.1	3.02
× 58	17.0	12.19	10.010	0.640	0.360	475	78.0	5.28	107	21.4	2.51
× 53	15.6	12.06	9.995	0.575	0.345	425	70.6	5.23	95.8	19.2	2.48
× 50	14.7	12.19	8.080	0.640	0.370	394	64.7	5.18	56.3	13.9	1.96
× 45	13.2	12.06	8.045	0.575	0.335	350	58.1	5.15	50.0	12.4	1.94
× 40	11.8	11.94	8.005	0.515	0.295	310	51.9	5.13	44.1	11.0	1.93
× 35	10.3	12.50	6.560	0.520	0.300	285	45.6	5.25	24.5	7.47	1.54
× 30	8.79	12.34	6.520	0.440	0.260	238	38.6	5.21	20.3	6.24	1.52
× 26	7.65	12.22	6.490	0.380	0.230	204	33.4	5.17	17.3	5.34	1.51
× 22	6.48	12.31	4.030	0.425	0.260	156	25.4	4.91	4.66	2.31	0.847
× 19	5.57	12.16	4.005	0.350	0.235	130	21.3	4.82	3.76	1.88	0.822
× 16	4.71	11.99	3.990	0.265	0.220	103	17.1	4.67	2.82	1.41	0.773
× 14	4.16	11.91	3.970	0.225	0.200	88.6	14.9	4.62	2.36	1.19	0.753

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

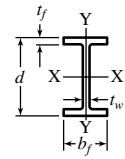
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2d. Steel Wide-Flange Sections

Wide-flange sections are designated, in order, by a section letter, nominal depth of the member in inches, and the nominal weight in pounds per foot; thus:

W 8 × 67

indicates a wide-flange section having a nominal depth of 8 inches, and a nominal weight per foot of 67 pounds. Actual geometry for each section can be obtained from the values below.



Designation	Area, A inch^2	Depth, d inch	Flange: Width, b_f inch	Flange: Thickness, t_f inch	Web Thickness, t_w inch	Axis X-X: I inch^4	Axis X-X: S inch^3	Axis X-X: r inch	Axis Y-Y: I inch^4	Axis Y-Y: S inch^3	Axis Y-Y: r inch
W 10 × 112	32.9	11.36	10.415	1.250	0.755	716	126	4.66	236	45.3	2.68
× 100	29.4	11.10	10.340	1.120	0.680	623	112	4.60	207	40.0	2.65
× 88	25.9	10.84	10.265	0.990	0.605	534	98.5	4.54	179	34.8	2.63
× 77	22.6	10.60	10.190	0.870	0.530	455	85.9	4.49	154	30.1	2.60
× 68	20.0	10.40	10.130	0.770	0.470	394	75.7	4.44	134	26.4	2.59
× 60	17.6	10.22	10.080	0.680	0.420	341	66.7	4.39	116	23.0	2.57
× 54	15.8	10.09	10.030	0.615	0.370	303	60.0	4.37	103	20.6	2.56
× 49	14.4	9.98	10.000	0.560	0.340	272	54.6	4.35	93.4	18.7	2.54
× 45	13.3	10.10	8.020	0.620	0.350	248	49.1	4.32	53.4	13.3	2.01
× 39	11.5	9.92	7.985	0.530	0.315	209	42.1	4.27	45.0	11.3	1.98
× 33	9.71	9.73	7.960	0.435	0.290	170	35.0	4.19	36.6	9.20	1.94
× 30	8.84	10.47	5.810	0.510	0.300	170	32.4	4.38	16.7	5.75	1.37
× 26	7.61	10.33	5.770	0.440	0.260	144	27.9	4.35	14.1	4.89	1.36
× 22	6.49	10.17	5.750	0.360	0.240	118	23.2	4.27	11.4	3.97	1.33
× 19	5.62	10.24	4.020	0.395	0.250	96.3	18.8	4.14	4.29	2.14	0.874
× 17	4.99	10.11	4.010	0.330	0.240	81.9	16.2	4.05	3.56	1.78	0.844
× 15	4.41	9.99	4.000	0.270	0.230	68.9	13.8	3.95	2.89	1.45	0.810
× 12	3.54	9.87	3.960	0.210	0.190	53.8	10.9	3.90	2.18	1.10	0.785
W 8 × 67	19.7	9.00	8.280	0.935	0.570	272	60.4	3.72	88.6	21.4	2.12
× 58	17.1	8.75	8.220	0.810	0.510	228	52.0	3.65	75.1	18.3	2.10
× 48	14.1	8.50	8.110	0.685	0.400	184	43.3	3.61	60.9	15.0	2.08
× 40	11.7	8.25	8.070	0.560	0.360	146	35.5	3.53	49.1	12.2	2.04
× 35	10.3	8.12	8.020	0.495	0.310	127	31.2	3.51	42.6	10.6	2.03
× 31	9.13	8.00	7.995	0.435	0.285	110	27.5	3.47	37.1	9.27	2.02
× 28	8.25	8.06	6.535	0.465	0.285	98.0	24.3	3.45	21.7	6.63	1.62
× 24	7.08	7.93	6.495	0.400	0.245	82.8	20.9	3.42	18.3	5.63	1.61
× 21	6.16	8.28	5.270	0.400	0.250	75.3	18.2	3.49	9.77	3.71	1.26
× 18	5.26	8.14	5.250	0.330	0.230	61.9	15.2	3.43	7.97	3.04	1.23
× 15	4.44	8.11	4.015	0.315	0.245	48.0	11.8	3.29	3.41	1.70	0.876
× 13	3.84	7.99	4.000	0.255	0.230	39.6	9.91	3.21	2.73	1.37	0.843
× 10	2.96	7.89	3.940	0.205	0.170	30.8	7.81	3.22	2.09	1.06	0.841
W 6 × 25	7.34	6.38	6.080	0.455	0.320	53.4	16.7	2.70	17.1	5.61	1.52
× 20	5.87	6.20	6.020	0.365	0.260	41.4	13.4	2.66	13.3	4.41	1.50
× 16	4.74	6.28	4.030	0.405	0.260	32.1	10.2	2.60	4.43	2.20	0.966
× 15	4.43	5.99	5.990	0.260	0.230	29.1	9.72	2.56	9.32	3.11	1.46
× 12	3.55	6.03	4.000	0.280	0.230	22.1	7.31	2.49	2.99	1.50	0.918
× 9	2.68	5.90	3.940	0.215	0.170	16.4	5.56	2.47	2.19	1.11	0.905
W 5 × 19	5.54	5.15	5.030	0.430	0.270	26.2	10.2	2.17	9.13	3.63	1.28
× 16	4.68	5.01	5.000	0.360	0.240	21.3	8.51	2.13	7.51	3.00	1.27
W 4 × 13	3.83	4.16	4.060	0.345	0.280	11.3	5.46	1.72	3.86	1.90	1.00

Symbols: I = moment of inertia; S = section modulus; r = radius of gyration.

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

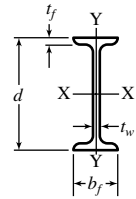
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. Steel S Sections

"S" is the section symbol for "I" beams. S shapes are designated, in order, by their section letter, actual depth in inches, and nominal weight in pounds per foot. Thus:

S 5 × 14.75

indicates an S shape (or I beam) having a depth of 5 inches and a nominal weight of 14.75 pounds per foot.



Designation	Area A inch^2	Depth, d inch	Flange		Web	Axis-X-X			Axis Y-Y		
			Width, b_f inch	Thickness, t_f inch	Thickness, t_w inch	I inch^4	S inch^3	r inch	I inch^4	S inch^3	r inch
S 24 × 121	35.6	24.50	8.050	1.090	0.800	3160	258	9.43	83.3	20.7	1.53
× 106	31.2	24.50	7.870	1.090	0.620	2940	240	9.71	77.1	19.6	1.57
×100	29.3	24.00	7.245	0.870	0.745	2390	199	9.02	47.7	13.2	1.27
× 90	26.5	24.00	7.125	0.870	0.625	2250	187	9.21	44.9	12.6	1.30
× 80	23.5	24.00	7.000	0.870	0.500	2100	175	9.47	42.2	12.1	1.34
S 20 × 96	28.2	20.30	7.200	0.920	0.800	1670	165	7.71	50.2	13.9	1.33
× 86	25.3	20.30	7.060	0.920	0.660	1580	155	7.89	46.8	13.3	1.36
× 75	22.0	20.00	6.385	0.795	0.635	1280	128	7.62	29.8	9.32	1.16
× 66	19.4	20.00	6.255	0.795	0.505	1190	119	7.83	27.7	8.85	1.19
S 18 × 70	20.6	18.00	6.251	0.691	0.711	926	103	6.71	24.1	7.72	1.08
× 54.7	16.1	18.00	6.001	0.691	0.461	804	89.4	7.07	20.8	6.94	1.14
S 15 × 50	14.7	15.00	5.640	0.622	0.550	486	64.8	5.75	15.7	5.57	1.03
× 42.9	12.6	15.00	5.501	0.622	0.411	447	59.6	5.95	14.4	5.23	1.07
S 12 × 50	14.7	12.00	5.477	0.659	0.687	305	50.8	4.55	15.7	5.74	1.03
× 40.8	12.0	12.00	5.252	0.659	0.462	272	45.4	4.77	13.6	5.16	1.06
× 35	10.3	12.00	5.078	0.544	0.428	229	38.2	4.72	9.87	3.89	0.980
× 31.8	9.35	12.00	5.000	0.544	0.350	218	36.4	4.83	9.36	3.74	1.00
S 10 × 35	10.3	10.00	4.944	0.491	0.594	147	29.4	3.78	8.36	3.38	0.901
× 25.4	7.46	10.00	4.661	0.491	0.311	124	24.7	4.07	6.79	2.91	0.954
S 8 × 23	6.77	8.00	4.171	0.426	0.441	64.9	16.2	3.10	4.31	2.07	0.798
× 18.4	5.41	8.00	4.001	0.426	0.271	57.6	14.4	3.26	3.73	1.86	0.831
S 7 × 20	5.88	7.00	3.860	0.392	0.450	42.4	12.1	2.69	3.17	1.64	0.734
× 15.3	4.50	7.00	3.662	0.392	0.252	36.7	10.5	2.86	2.64	1.44	0.766
S 6 × 17.25	5.07	6.00	3.565	0.359	0.465	26.3	8.77	2.28	2.31	1.30	0.675
× 12.5	3.67	6.00	3.332	0.359	0.232	22.1	7.37	2.45	1.82	1.09	0.705
S 5 × 14.75	4.34	5.00	3.284	0.326	0.494	15.2	6.09	1.87	1.67	1.01	0.620
× 10	2.94	5.00	3.004	0.326	0.214	12.3	4.92	2.05	1.22	0.809	0.643
S 4 × 9.5	2.79	4.00	2.796	0.293	0.326	6.79	3.39	1.56	0.903	0.646	0.569
× 7.7	2.26	4.00	2.663	0.293	0.193	6.08	3.04	1.64	0.764	0.574	0.581
S 3 × 7.5	2.21	3.00	2.509	0.260	0.349	2.93	1.95	1.15	0.586	0.468	0.516
× 5.7	1.67	3.00	2.330	0.260	0.170	2.52	1.68	1.23	0.455	0.390	0.522

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

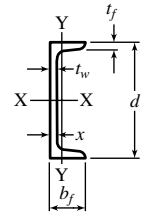
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4. American Standard Steel Channels

American Standard Channels are designated, in order, by a section letter, actual depth in inches, and nominal weight per foot in pounds. Thus:

C 7 × 14.75

indicates an American Standard Channel with a depth of 7 inches and a nominal weight of 14.75 pounds per foot.



Designation	Area, A inch^2	Depth, d inch	Flange		Web	Axis X-X			Axis Y-Y			x inch
			Width, b_f inch	Thickness, t_f inch	Thickness, t_w inch	I inch^4	S inch^3	r inch	I inch^4	S inch^3	r inch	
C 15 × 50	14.7	15.00	3.716	0.650	0.716	404	53.8	5.24	11.0	3.78	0.867	0.798
× 40	11.8	15.00	3.520	0.650	0.520	349	46.5	5.44	9.23	3.37	0.886	0.777
× 33.9	9.96	15.00	3.400	0.650	0.400	315	42.0	5.62	8.13	3.11	0904	0.787
C 12 × 30	8.82	12.00	3.170	0.501	0.510	162	27.0	4.29	5.14	2.06	0.763	0.674
× 25	7.35	12.00	3.047	0.501	0.387	144	24.1	4.43	4.47	1.88	0.780	0.674
× 20.7	6.09	12.00	2.942	0.501	0.282	129	21.5	4.61	3.88	1.73	0.799	0.698
C 10 × 30	8.82	10.00	3.033	0.436	0.673	103	20.7	3.42	3.94	1.65	0.669	0.649
× 25	7.35	10.00	2.886	0.436	0.526	91.2	18.2	3.52	3.36	1.48	0.676	0.617
× 20	5.88	10.00	2.739	0.436	0.379	78.9	15.8	3.66	2.81	1.32	0.692	0.606
× 15.3	4.49	10.00	2.600	0.436	0.240	67.4	13.5	3.87	2.28	1.16	0.713	0.634
C 9 × 20	5.88	9.00	2.648	0.413	0.448	60.9	13.5	3.22	2.42	1.17	0.642	0.583
× 15	4.41	9.00	2.485	0.413	0.285	51.0	11.3	3.40	1.93	1.01	0.661	0.586
× 13.4	3.94	9.00	2.433	0.413	0.233	47.9	10.6	3.48	1.76	0.962	0.669	0.601
C 8 × 18.75	5.51	8.00	2.527	0.390	0.487	44.0	11.0	2.82	1.98	1.01	0.599	0.565
× 13.75	4.04	8.00	2.343	0.390	0.303	36.1	9.03	2.99	1.53	0.854	0.615	0.553
× 11.5	3.38	8.00	2.260	0.390	0.220	32.6	8.14	3.11	1.32	0.781	0.625	0.571
C 7 × 14.75	4.33	7.00	2.299	0.366	0.419	27.2	7.78	2.51	1.38	0.779	0.564	0.532
× 12.25	3.60	7.00	2.194	0.366	0.314	24.2	6.93	2.60	1.17	0.703	0.571	0.525
× 9.8	2.87	7.00	2.090	0.366	0.210	21.3	6.08	2.72	0.968	0.625	0.581	0.540
C 6 × 13	3.83	6.00	2.157	0.343	0.437	17.4	5.80	2.13	1.05	0.642	0.525	0.514
× 10.5	3.09	6.00	2.034	0.343	0.314	15.2	5.06	2.22	0.866	0.564	0.529	0.499
× 8.2	2.40	6.00	1.920	0.343	0.200	13.1	4.38	2.34	0.693	0.492	0.537	0.511
C 5 × 9	2.64	5.00	1.885	0.320	0.325	8.90	3.56	1.83	0.632	0.450	0.489	0.478
× 6.7	1.97	5.00	1.750	0.320	0.190	7.49	3.00	1.95	0.479	0.378	0.493	0.484
C 4 × 7.25	2.13	4.00	1.721	0.296	0.321	4.59	2.29	1.47	0.433	0.343	0.450	0.459
× 5.4	1.59	4.00	1.584	0.296	0.184	3.85	1.93	1.56	0.319	0.283	0.449	0.457
C 3 × 6	1.76	3.00	1.596	0.273	0.356	2.07	1.38	1.08	0.305	0.268	0.416	0.455
× 5	1.47	3.00	1.498	0.273	0.258	1.85	1.24	1.12	0.247	0.233	0.410	0.438
× 4.1	1.21	3.00	1.410	0.273	0.170	1.66	1.10	1.17	0.197	0.202	0.404	0.436

Symbols: I = moment of inertia; S = section modulus; r = radius of gyration; x = distance from center of gravity of section to outer face of structural shape.

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

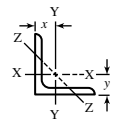
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Steel Angles with Equal Legs

These angles are commonly designated by section symbol, width of each leg, and thickness, thus:

L 3 × 3 × 1/4

indicates a 3 × 3-inch angle of ¼-inch thickness.



Size inch	Thickness inch	Weight per Foot lb.	Area inch²	Axis X-X & Y-Y			Z-Z
				I inch⁴	*r* inch	*x* or *y* inch	*r* inch
8 × 8	1⅛	56.9	16.7	98.0	2.42	2.41	1.56
	1	51.0	15.0	89.0	2.44	2.37	1.56
	⅞	45.0	13.2	79.6	2.45	2.32	1.57
	¾	38.9	11.4	69.7	2.47	2.28	1.58
	⅝	32.7	9.61	59.4	2.49	2.23	1.58
	9/16	29.6	8.68	54.1	2.50	2.21	1.59
	½	26.4	7.75	48.6	2.50	2.19	1.59
6 × 6	1	37.4	11.00	35.5	1.80	1.86	1.17
	⅞	33.1	9.73	31.9	1.81	1.82	1.17
	¾	28.7	8.44	28.2	1.83	1.78	1.17
	⅝	24.2	7.11	24.2	1.84	1.73	1.18
	9/16	21.9	6.43	22.1	1.85	1.71	1.18
	½	19.6	5.75	19.9	1.86	1.68	1.18
	7/16	17.2	5.06	17.7	1.87	1.66	1.19
	⅜	14.9	4.36	15.4	1.88	1.64	1.19
	5/16	12.4	3.65	13.0	1.89	1.62	1.20
5 × 5	⅞	27.2	7.98	17.8	1.49	1.57	.973
	¾	23.6	6.94	15.7	1.51	1.52	.975
	⅝	20.0	5.86	13.6	1.52	1.48	.978
	½	16.2	4.75	11.3	1.54	1.43	.983
	7/16	14.3	4.18	10.0	1.55	1.41	.986
	⅜	12.3	3.61	8.74	1.56	1.39	.990
	5/16	10.3	3.03	7.42	1.57	1.37	.994
4 × 4	¾	18.5	5.44	7.67	1.19	1.27	.778
	⅝	15.7	4.61	6.66	1.20	1.23	.779
	½	12.8	3.75	5.56	1.22	1.18	.782
	7/16	11.3	3.31	4.97	1.23	1.16	.785
	⅜	9.8	2.86	4.36	1.23	1.14	.788
	5/16	8.2	2.40	3.71	1.24	1.12	.791
	¼	6.6	1.94	3.04	1.25	1.09	.795
3½ × 3½	½	11.1	3.25	3.64	1.06	1.06	.683
	7/16	9.8	2.87	3.26	1.07	1.04	.684
	⅜	8.5	2.48	2.87	1.07	1.01	.687
	5/16	7.2	2.09	2.45	1.08	.990	.690
	¼	5.8	1.69	2.01	1.09	.968	.694
3 × 3	½	9.4	2.75	2.22	.898	.932	.584
	7/16	8.3	2.43	1.99	.905	.910	.585
	⅜	7.2	2.11	1.76	.913	.888	.587
	5/16	6.1	1.78	1.51	.922	.865	.589
	¼	4.9	1.44	1.24	.930	.842	.592
	3/16	3.71	1.09	.962	.939	.820	.596
2½ × 2½	½	7.7	2.25	1.23	.739	.806	.487
	⅜	5.9	1.73	.984	.753	.762	.487
	5/16	5.0	1.46	.849	.761	.740	.489
	¼	4.1	1.19	.703	.769	.717	.491
	3/16	3.07	.902	.547	.778	.694	.495
2 × 2	⅜	4.7	1.36	.479	.594	.636	.389
	5/16	3.92	1.15	.416	.601	.614	.390
	¼	3.19	.938	.348	.609	.592	.391
	3/16	2.44	.715	.272	.617	.569	.394
	⅛	1.65	.484	.190	.626	.546	.398

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

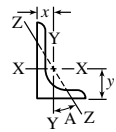
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Steel Angles with Unequal Legs

These angles are commonly designated by section symbol, width of each leg, and thickness, thus:

L 7 × 4 × ½

indicates a 7 × 4-inch angle of ½-inch thickness.



Size inch	Thickness inch	Weight per Ft. lb.	Area inch²	Axis X-X				Axis Y-Y			Axis Z-Z		
				I inch⁴	*S* inch³	*r* inch	*y* inch	*I* inch⁴	*S* inch³	*r* inch	*x* inch	*r* inch	Tan *A*
9 × 4	⅝	26.3	7.73	64.9	11.5	2.90	3.36	8.32	2.65	1.04	.858	.847	.216
	9/16	23.8	7.00	59.1	10.4	2.91	3.33	7.63	2.41	1.04	.834	.850	.218
	½	21.3	6.25	53.2	9.34	2.92	3.31	6.92	2.17	1.05	.810	.854	.220
8 × 6	1	44.2	13.0	80.8	15.1	2.49	2.65	38.8	8.92	1.73	1.65	1.28	.543
	⅞	39.1	11.5	72.3	13.4	2.51	2.61	34.9	7.94	1.74	1.61	1.28	.547
	¾	33.8	9.94	63.4	11.7	2.53	2.56	30.7	6.92	1.76	1.56	1.29	.551
	⅝	28.5	8.36	54.1	9.87	2.54	2.52	26.3	5.88	1.77	1.52	1.29	.554
	9/16	25.7	7.56	49.3	8.95	2.55	2.50	24.0	5.34	1.78	1.50	1.30	.556
	½	23.0	6.75	44.3	8.02	2.56	2.47	21.7	4.79	1.79	1.47	1.30	.558
	7/16	20.2	5.93	39.2	7.07	2.57	2.45	19.3	4.23	1.80	1.45	1.31	.560
8 × 4	1	37.4	11.0	69.6	14.1	2.52	3.05	11.6	3.94	1.03	1.05	.846	.247
	¾	28.7	8.44	54.9	10.9	2.55	2.95	9.36	3.07	1.05	.953	.852	.258
	9/16	21.9	6.43	42.8	8.35	2.58	2.88	7.43	2.38	1.07	.882	.861	.265
	½	19.6	5.75	38.5	7.49	2.59	2.86	6.74	2.15	1.08	.859	.865	.267
7 × 4	¾	26.2	7.69	37.8	8.42	2.22	2.51	9.05	3.03	1.09	1.01	.860	.324
	⅝	22.1	6.48	32.4	7.14	2.24	2.46	7.84	2.58	1.10	.963	.865	.329
	½	17.9	5.25	26.7	5.81	2.25	2.42	6.53	2.12	1.11	.917	.872	.335
	⅜	13.6	3.98	20.6	4.44	2.27	2.37	5.10	1.63	1.13	.870	.880	.340
6 × 4	⅞	27.2	7.98	27.7	7.15	1.86	2.12	9.75	3.39	1.11	1.12	.857	.421
	¾	23.6	6.94	24.5	6.25	1.88	2.08	8.68	2.97	1.12	1.08	.860	.428
	⅝	20.0	5.86	21.1	5.31	1.90	2.03	7.52	2.54	1.13	1.03	.864	.435
	9/16	18.1	5.31	19.3	4.83	1.90	2.01	6.91	2.31	1.14	1.01	.866	.438
	½	16.2	4.75	17.4	4.33	1.91	1.99	6.27	2.08	1.15	.987	.870	.440
	7/16	14.3	4.18	15.5	3.83	1.92	1.96	5.60	1.85	1.16	.964	.873	.443
	⅜	12.3	3.61	13.5	3.32	1.93	1.94	4.90	1.60	1.17	.941	.877	.446
	5/16	10.3	3.03	11.4	2.79	1.94	1.92	4.18	1.35	1.17	.918	.882	.448
6 × 3½	½	15.3	4.50	16.6	4.24	1.92	2.08	4.25	1.59	.972	.833	.759	.344
	⅜	11.7	3.42	12.9	3.24	1.94	2.04	3.34	1.23	.988	.787	.676	.350
	5/16	9.8	2.87	10.9	2.73	1.95	2.01	2.85	1.04	.996	.763	.772	.352
5 × 3½	¾	19.8	5.81	13.9	4.28	1.55	1.75	5.55	2.22	.977	.996	.748	.464
	⅝	16.8	4.92	12.0	3.65	1.56	1.70	4.83	1.90	.991	.951	.751	.472
	½	13.6	4.00	9.99	2.99	1.58	1.66	4.05	1.56	1.01	.906	.755	.479
	7/16	12.0	3.53	8.90	2.64	1.59	1.63	3.63	1.39	1.01	.883	.758	.482
	⅜	10.4	3.05	7.78	2.29	1.60	1.61	3.18	1.21	1.02	.861	.762	.486
	5/16	8.7	2.56	6.60	1.94	1.61	1.59	2.72	1.02	1.03	.838	.766	.489
	¼	7.0	2.06	5.39	1.57	1.62	1.56	2.23	.830	1.04	.814	.770	.492
5 × 3	⅝	15.7	4.61	11.4	3.55	1.57	1.80	3.06	1.39	.815	.796	.644	.349
	½	12.8	3.75	9.45	2.91	1.59	1.75	2.58	1.15	.829	.750	.648	.357

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. *(Continued)* **Steel Angles with Unequal Legs**

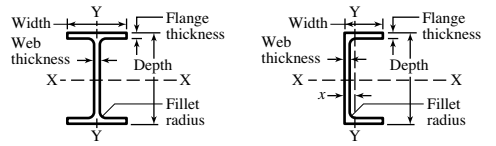
Size inch	Thick-ness inch	Weight per Ft. lb.	Area inch^2	Axis X-X				Axis Y-Y			Axis Z-Z		
				I inch^4	*S* inch^3	*r* inch	*y* inch	*I* inch^4	*S* inch^3	*r* inch	*x* inch	*r* inch	Tan *A*
5 × 3	7/16	11.3	3.31	8.43	2.58	1.60	1.73	2.32	1.02	.837	.727	.651	.361
	3/8	9.8	2.86	7.37	2.24	1.61	1.70	2.04	.888	.845	.704	.654	.364
	5/16	8.2	2.40	6.26	1.89	1.61	1.68	1.75	.753	.853	.681	.658	.368
	1/4	6.6	1.94	5.11	1.53	1.62	1.66	1.44	.614	.861	.657	.663	.371
4 × 3½	5/8	14.7	4.30	6.37	2.35	1.22	1.29	4.52	1.84	1.03	1.04	.719	.745
	1/2	11.9	3.50	5.32	1.94	1.23	1.25	3.79	1.52	1.04	1.00	.722	.750
	7/16	10.6	3.09	4.76	1.72	1.24	1.23	3.40	1.35	1.05	.978	.724	.753
	3/8	9.1	2.67	4.18	1.49	1.25	1.21	2.95	1.17	1.06	.955	.727	.755
	5/16	7.7	2.25	3.56	1.26	1.26	1.18	2.55	.994	1.07	.932	.730	.757
	1/4	6.2	1.81	2.91	1.03	1.27	1.16	2.09	.808	1.07	.909	.734	.759
4 × 3	5/8	13.6	3.98	6.03	2.30	1.23	1.37	2.87	1.35	.849	.871	.637	.534
	1/2	11.1	3.25	5.05	1.89	1.25	1.33	2.42	1.12	.864	.827	.639	.543
	7/16	9.8	2.87	4.52	1.68	1.25	1.30	2.18	.992	.871	.804	.641	.547
	3/8	8.5	2.48	3.96	1.46	1.26	1.28	1.92	.866	.879	.782	.644	.551
	5/16	7.2	2.09	3.38	1.23	1.27	1.26	1.65	.734	.887	.759	.647	.554
	1/4	5.8	1.69	2.77	1.00	1.28	1.24	1.36	.599	.896	.736	.651	.558
3½ × 3	1/2	10.2	3.00	3.45	1.45	1.07	1.13	2.33	1.10	.881	.875	.621	.714
	7/16	9.1	2.65	3.10	1.29	1.08	1.10	2.09	.975	.889	.853	.622	.718
	3/8	7.9	2.30	2.72	1.13	1.09	1.08	1.85	.851	.897	.830	.625	.721
	5/16	6.6	1.93	2.33	.954	1.10	1.06	1.58	.722	.905	.808	.627	.724
	1/4	5.4	1.56	1.91	.776	1.11	1.04	1.30	.589	.914	.785	.631	.727
3½ × 2½	1/2	9.4	2.75	3.24	1.41	1.09	1.20	1.36	.760	.704	.705	.534	.486
	7/16	8.3	2.43	2.91	1.26	1.09	1.18	1.23	.677	.711	.682	.535	.491
	3/8	7.2	2.11	2.56	1.09	1.10	1.16	1.09	.592	.719	.660	.537	.496
	5/16	6.1	1.78	2.19	.927	1.11	1.14	.939	.504	.727	.637	.540	.501
	1/4	4.9	1.44	1.80	.755	1.12	1.11	.777	.412	.735	.614	.544	.506
3 × 2½	1/2	8.5	2.50	2.08	1.04	.913	1.00	1.30	.744	.722	.750	.520	.667
	7/16	7.6	2.21	1.88	.928	.920	.978	1.18	.664	.729	.728	.521	.672
	3/8	6.6	1.92	1.66	.810	.928	.956	1.04	.581	.736	.706	.522	.676
	5/16	5.6	1.62	1.42	.688	.937	.933	.898	.494	.744	.683	.525	.680
	1/4	4.5	1.31	1.17	.561	.945	.911	.743	.404	.753	.661	.528	.684
	3/16	3.39	.996	.907	.430	.954	.888	.577	.310	.761	.638	.533	.688
3 × 2	1/2	7.7	2.25	1.92	1.00	.924	1.08	.672	.474	.546	.583	.428	.414
	7/16	6.8	2.00	1.73	.894	.932	1.06	.609	.424	.553	.561	.429	.421
	3/8	5.9	1.73	1.53	.781	.940	1.04	.543	.371	.559	.539	.430	.428
	5/16	5.0	1.46	1.32	.664	.948	1.02	.740	.317	.567	.516	.432	.435
	1/4	4.1	1.19	1.09	.542	.957	.993	.392	.260	.574	.493	.435	.440
	3/16	3.07	.902	.842	.415	.966	.970	.307	.200	.583	.470	.439	.446
2½ × 2	3/8	5.3	1.55	.912	.547	.768	.831	.514	.363	.577	.581	.420	.614
	5/16	4.5	1.31	.788	.466	.776	.809	.446	.310	.584	.559	.422	.620
	1/4	3.62	1.06	.654	.381	.784	.787	.372	.254	.592	.537	.424	.626
	3/16	2.75	.809	.509	.293	.793	.764	.291	.196	.600	.514	.427	.631

Symbols: I = moment of inertia; *S* = section modulus; *r* = radius of gyration; *x* = distance from center of gravity of section to outer face of structural shape.

Data taken from the "Manual of Steel Construction," 8th Edition, 1980, with permission of the American Institute of Steel Construction.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Aluminum Association Standard Structural Shapes



Depth	Width	Weight per Foot	Area	Flange Thickness	Web Thickness	Fillet Radius	Axis *X-X*			Axis *Y-Y*			
							I	*S*	*r*	*I*	*S*	*r*	*x*
inch	inch	lb.	inch^2	inch	inch	inch	inch^4	inch^3	inch	inch^4	inch^3	inch	inch
I-BEAMS													
3.00	2.50	1.637	1.392	0.20	0.13	0.25	2.24	1.49	1.27	0.52	0.42	0.61	…
3.00	2.50	2.030	1.726	0.26	0.15	0.25	2.71	1.81	1.25	0.68	0.54	0.63	…
4.00	3.00	2.311	1.965	0.23	0.15	0.25	5.62	2.81	1.69	1.04	0.69	0.73	…
4.00	3.00	2.793	2.375	0.29	0.17	0.25	6.71	3.36	1.68	1.31	0.87	0.74	…
5.00	3.50	3.700	3.146	0.32	0.19	0.30	13.94	5.58	2.11	2.29	1.31	0.85	…
6.00	4.00	4.030	3.427	0.29	0.19	0.30	21.99	7.33	2.53	3.10	1.55	0.95	…
6.00	4.00	4.692	3.990	0.35	0.21	0.30	25.50	8.50	2.53	3.74	1.87	0.97	…
7.00	4.50	5.800	4.932	0.38	0.23	0.30	42.89	12.25	2.95	5.78	2.57	1.08	…
8.00	5.00	6.181	5.256	0.35	0.23	0.30	59.69	14.92	3.37	7.30	2.92	1.18	…
8.00	5.00	7.023	5.972	0.41	0.25	0.30	67.78	16.94	3.37	8.55	3.42	1.20	…
9.00	5.50	8.361	7.110	0.44	0.27	0.30	102.02	22.67	3.79	12.22	4.44	1.31	…
10.00	6.00	8.646	7.352	0.41	0.25	0.40	132.09	26.42	4.24	14.78	4.93	1.42	…
10.00	6.00	10.286	8.747	0.50	0.29	0.40	155.79	31.16	4.22	18.03	6.01	1.44	…
12.00	7.00	11.672	9.925	0.47	0.29	0.40	255.57	42.60	5.07	26.90	7.69	1.65	…
12.00	7.00	14.292	12.153	0.62	0.31	0.40	317.33	52.89	5.11	35.48	10.14	1.71	…
CHANNELS													
2.00	1.00	0.577	0.491	0.13	0.13	0.10	0.288	0.288	0.766	0.045	0.064	0.303	0.298
2.00	1.25	1.071	0.911	0.26	0.17	0.15	0.546	0.546	0.774	0.139	0.178	0.391	0.471
3.00	1.50	1.135	0.965	0.20	0.13	0.25	1.41	0.94	1.21	0.22	0.22	0.47	0.49
3.00	1.75	1.597	1.358	0.26	0.17	0.25	1.97	1.31	1.20	0.42	0.37	0.55	0.62
4.00	2.00	1.738	1.478	0.23	0.15	0.25	3.91	1.95	1.63	0.60	0.45	0.64	0.65
4.00	2.25	2.331	1.982	0.29	0.19	0.25	5.21	2.60	1.62	1.02	0.69	0.72	0.78
5.00	2.25	2.212	1.881	0.26	0.15	0.30	7.88	3.15	2.05	0.98	0.64	0.72	0.73
5.00	2.75	3.089	2.627	0.32	0.19	0.30	11.14	4.45	2.06	2.05	1.14	0.88	0.95
6.00	2.50	2.834	2.410	0.29	0.17	0.30	14.35	4.78	2.44	1.53	0.90	0.80	0.79
6.00	3.25	4.030	3.427	0.35	0.21	0.30	21.04	7.01	2.48	3.76	1.76	1.05	1.12
7.00	2.75	3.205	2.725	0.29	0.17	0.30	22.09	6.31	2.85	2.10	1.10	0.88	0.84
7.00	3.50	4.715	4.009	0.38	0.21	0.30	33.79	9.65	2.90	5.13	2.23	1.13	1.20
8.00	3.00	4.147	3.526	0.35	0.19	0.30	37.40	9.35	3.26	3.25	1.57	0.96	0.93
8.00	3.75	5.789	4.923	0.41	0.25	0.35	52.69	13.17	3.27	7.13	2.82	1.20	1.22
9.00	3.25	4.983	4.237	0.35	0.23	0.35	54.41	12.09	3.58	4.40	1.89	1.02	0.93
9.00	4.00	6.970	5.927	0.44	0.29	0.35	78.31	17.40	3.63	9.61	3.49	1.27	1.25
10.00	3.50	6.136	5.218	0.41	0.25	0.35	83.22	16.64	3.99	6.33	2.56	1.10	1.02
10.00	4.25	8.360	7.109	0.50	0.31	0.40	116.15	23.23	4.04	13.02	4.47	1.35	1.34
12.00	4.00	8.274	7.036	0.47	0.29	0.40	159.76	26.63	4.77	11.03	3.86	1.25	1.14
12.00	5.00	11.822	10.053	0.62	0.35	0.45	239.69	39.95	4.88	25.74	7.60	1.60	1.61

Structural sections are available in 6061-T6 aluminum alloy. Data supplied by The Aluminum Association.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wire and Sheet Metal Gages

The thicknesses of sheet metals and the diameters of wires conform to various gaging systems. These gage sizes are indicated by numbers, and the following tables give the decimal equivalents of the different gage numbers. Much confusion has resulted from the use of gage numbers, and in ordering materials it is preferable to give the exact dimensions in decimal fractions of an inch. While the dimensions thus specified should conform to the gage ordinarily used for a given class of material, any error in the specification due, for example, to the use of a table having "rounded off" or approximate equivalents, will be apparent to the manufacturer at the time the order is placed. Furthermore, the decimal method of indicating wire diameters and sheet metal thicknesses has the advantage of being self-explanatory, whereas arbitrary gage numbers are not. The decimal system of indicating gage sizes is now being used quite generally, and gage numbers are gradually being discarded. Unfortunately, there is considerable variation in the use of different gages. For example, a gage ordinarily used for copper, brass and other nonferrous materials, may at times be used for steel, and vice versa. The gages specified in the following are the ones ordinarily employed for the materials mentioned, but there are some minor exceptions and variations in the different industries.

Wire Gages.—The wire gage system used by practically all of the steel producers in the United States is known by the name Steel Wire Gage or, to distinguish it from the Standard Wire Gage (S.W.G.) used in Great Britain, it is called the United States Steel Wire Gage. It is the same as the Washburn and Moen, American Steel and Wire Company, and Roebling wire gages. The name has the official sanction of the Bureau of Standards at Washington but is not legally effective. The only wire gage which has been recognized in Acts of Congress is the Birmingham Gage (also known as Stub's Iron Wire). The Birmingham Gage is, however, nearly obsolete in both the United States and Great Britain, where it originated. Copper and aluminum wires are specified in decimal fractions. They were formerly universally specified in the United States by the American or Brown & Sharpe Wire Gage. Music spring steel wire, one of the highest quality wires of several types used for mechanical springs, is specified by the piano or music wire gage.

In Great Britain one wire gage has been legalized. This is called the Standard Wire Gage (S.W.G.), formerly called Imperial Wire Gage.

Gages for Rods.—Steel wire rod sizes are designated by fractional or decimal parts of an inch and by the gage numbers of the United States Steel Wire Gage. Copper and aluminum rods are specified by decimal fractions and fractions. Drill rod may be specified in decimal fractions but in the carbon and alloy tool steel grades may also be specified in the Stub's Steel Wire Gage and in the high-speed steel drill rod grade may be specified by the Morse Twist Drill Gage (Manufacturers' Standard Gage for Twist Drills). For gage numbers with corresponding decimal equivalents see the tables of American Standard Straight Shank Twist Drills, for example, page 933, and Table 5a on page 2710.

Gages for Wall Thicknesses of Tubing.—At one time the Birmingham or Stub's Iron Wire Gage was used to specify the wall thickness of the following classes of tubing: seamless brass, seamless copper, seamless steel, and aluminum. The Brown & Sharpe Wire Gage was used for brazed brass and brazed copper tubing. Wall thicknesses are now specified by decimal parts of an inch but the wall thickness of steel pressure tubes and steel mechanical tubing may be specified by the Birmingham or Stub's Iron Wire Gage. In Great Britain the Standard Wire Gage (S.W.G.) is used to specify the wall thickness of some kinds of steel tubes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Wire Gages in Approximate Decimals of an Inch

No. of Wire Gage	American Wire or Brown & Sharpe Gage	Steel Wire Gage (US)[a]	British Standard Wire Gage (Imperial Wire Gage)	Music or Piano Wire Gage	Birmingham or Stub's Iron Wire Gage	Stub's Steel Wire Gage	No. of Wire Gage	Stub's Steel Wire Gage
7/0	…	0.4900	0.5000	…	…	…	51	0.066
6/0	0.5800	0.4615	0.4640	0.004	…	…	52	0.063
5/0	0.5165	0.4305	0.4320	0.005	0.5000	…	53	0.058
4/0	0.4600	0.3938	0.4000	0.006	0.4540	…	54	0.055
3/0	0.4096	0.3625	0.3720	0.007	0.4250	…	55	0.050
2/0	0.3648	0.3310	0.3480	0.008	0.3800	…	56	0.045
1/0	0.3249	0.3065	0.3240	0.009	0.3400	…	57	0.042
1	0.2893	0.2830	0.3000	0.010	0.3000	0.227	58	0.041
2	0.2576	0.2625	0.2760	0.011	0.2840	0.219	59	0.040
3	0.2294	0.2437	0.2520	0.012	0.2590	0.212	60	0.039
4	0.2043	0.2253	0.2320	0.013	0.2380	0.207	61	0.038
5	0.1819	0.2070	0.2120	0.014	0.2200	0.204	62	0.037
6	0.1620	0.1920	0.1920	0.016	0.2030	0.201	63	0.036
7	0.1443	0.1770	0.1760	0.018	0.1800	0.199	64	0.035
8	0.1285	0.1620	0.1600	0.020	0.1650	0.197	65	0.033
9	0.1144	0.1483	0.1440	0.022	0.1480	0.194	66	0.032
10	0.1019	0.1350	0.1280	0.024	0.1340	0.191	67	0.031
11	0.0907	0.1205	0.1160	0.026	0.1200	0.188	68	0.030
12	0.0808	0.1055	0.1040	0.029	0.1090	0.185	69	0.029
13	0.0720	0.0915	0.0920	0.031	0.0950	0.182	70	0.027
14	0.0641	0.0800	0.0800	0.033	0.0830	0.180	71	0.026
15	0.0571	0.0720	0.0720	0.035	0.0720	0.178	72	0.024
16	0.0508	0.0625	0.0640	0.037	0.0650	0.175	73	0.023
17	0.0453	0.0540	0.0560	0.039	0.0580	0.172	74	0.022
18	0.0403	0.0475	0.0480	0.041	0.0490	0.168	75	0.020
19	0.0359	0.0410	0.0400	0.043	0.0420	0.164	76	0.018
20	0.0320	0.0348	0.0360	0.045	0.0350	0.161	77	0.016
21	0.0285	0.0318	0.0320	0.047	0.0320	0.157	78	0.015
22	0.0253	0.0286	0.0280	0.049	0.0280	0.155	79	0.014
23	0.0226	0.0258	0.0240	0.051	0.0250	0.153	80	0.013
24	0.0201	0.0230	0.0220	0.055	0.0220	0.151	…	…
25	0.0179	0.0204	0.0200	0.059	0.0200	0.148	…	…
26	0.0159	0.0181	0.0180	0.063	0.0180	0.146	…	…
27	0.0142	0.0173	0.0164	0.067	0.0160	0.143	…	…
28	0.0126	0.0162	0.0149	0.071	0.0140	0.139	…	…
29	0.0113	0.0150	0.0136	0.075	0.0130	0.134	…	…
30	0.0100	0.0140	0.0124	0.080	0.0120	0.127	…	…
31	0.00893	0.0132	0.0116	0.085	0.0100	0.120	…	…
32	0.00795	0.0128	0.0108	0.090	0.0090	0.115	…	…
33	0.00708	0.0118	0.0100	0.095	0.0080	0.112	…	…
34	0.00630	0.0104	0.0092	0.100	0.0070	0.110	…	…
35	0.00561	0.0095	0.0084	0.106	0.0050	0.108	…	…
36	0.00500	0.0090	0.0076	0.112	0.0040	0.106	…	…
37	0.00445	0.0085	0.0068	0.118	…	0.103	…	…
38	0.00396	0.0080	0.0060	0.124	…	0.101	…	…
39	0.00353	0.0075	0.0052	0.130	…	0.099	…	…
40	0.00314	0.0070	0.0048	0.138	…	0.097	…	…
41	0.00280	0.0066	0.0044	0.146	…	0.095	…	…
42	0.00249	0.0062	0.0040	0.154	…	0.092	…	…
43	0.00222	0.0060	0.0036	0.162	…	0.088	…	…
44	0.00198	0.0058	0.0032	0.170	…	0.085	…	…
45	0.00176	0.0055	0.0028	0.180	…	0.081	…	…
46	0.00157	0.0052	0.0024	…	…	0.079	…	…
47	0.00140	0.0050	0.0020	…	…	0.077	…	…
48	0.00124	0.0048	0.0016	…	…	0.075	…	…
49	0.00111	0.0046	0.0012	…	…	0.072	…	…
50	0.00099	0.0044	0.0010	…	…	0.069	…	…

[a] Also known as Washburn and Moen, American Steel and Wire Co. and Roebling wire gages. A greater selection of sizes is available and is specified by what are known as split gage numbers. They can be recognized by ½ fractions which follow the gage number; i.e., 4½. The decimal equivalents of split gage numbers are in the Steel Products Manual entitled: *Wire and Rods, Carbon Steel* published by the American Iron and Steel Institute, Washington, DC.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wire Gauge, Diameter, and Area of Solid Copper Wire[a]

Gauge	Diameter (in.)	Area (in²)	Gauge	Diameter (in.)	Area (in²)
0000	0.460000	0.1661901110	22	0.025350	0.0005047141
000	0.409600	0.1317678350	23	0.022570	0.0004000853
00	0.364800	0.1045199453	24	0.020100	0.0003173084
0	0.324900	0.0829065680	25	0.017900	0.0002516492
1	0.289300	0.0657334432	26	0.015940	0.0001995566
2	0.257600	0.0521172188	27	0.014200	0.0001583676
3	0.229400	0.0413310408	28	0.012640	0.0001254826
4	0.204300	0.0327813057	29	0.011260	0.0000995787
5	0.181900	0.0259869262	30	0.010030	0.0000790117
6	0.162000	0.0206119720	31	0.008928	0.0000626034
7	0.144300	0.0163539316	32	0.007950	0.0000496391
8	0.128500	0.0129686799	33	0.007080	0.0000393691
9	0.114400	0.0102787798	34	0.006305	0.0000312219
10	0.101900	0.0081552613	35	0.005615	0.0000247622
11	0.090740	0.0064667648	36	0.005000	0.0000196349
12	0.080810	0.0051288468	37	0.004453	0.0000155738
13	0.071960	0.0040669780	38	0.003965	0.0000123474
14	0.064080	0.0032250357	39	0.003531	0.0000097923
15	0.057070	0.0025580278	40	0.003145	0.0000077684
16	0.050820	0.0020284244	41	0.002800	0.0000061575
17	0.045260	0.0016088613	42	0.002490	0.0000048695
18	0.040300	0.0012755562	43	0.002220	0.0000038708
19	0.035890	0.0010116643	44	0.001970	0.0000030480
20	0.031960	0.0008022377	45	0.001760	0.0000024328
21	0.028460	0.0006361497	46	0.001570	0.0000019359

[a] Gauge is American Wire Gauge (AWG). For a given gauge, $d = 0.005 \times 92^{\frac{36 - \text{Gauge}}{39}}$

Hypodermic Needle Dimensions

Needle Nominal Outside Diameter				Needle Nominal Inside Diameter		
Gauge[a]	mm	in.	Tolerance (in.)	mm	in.	Tolerance (in.)
6	5.156	0.2030		4.394	0.1730	
7	4.572	0.1800		3.810	0.1500	±0.0030
8	4.191	0.1650		3.429	0.1350	
9	3.759	0.1480		2.997	0.1180	
10	3.404	0.1340	±0.0010	2.692	0.1060	
11	3.048	0.1200		2.388	0.0940	
12	2.769	0.1090		2.159	0.0850	±0.0020
13	2.413	0.0950		1.803	0.0710	
14	2.108	0.0830		1.600	0.0630	
15	1.829	0.0720		1.372	0.0540	
16	1.651	0.0650		1.194	0.0470	
17	1.473	0.0580	±0.0005	1.067	0.0420	±0.0015
18	1.270	0.0500		0.838	0.0330	
19	1.067	0.0420		0.686	0.0270	
20	0.902	0.0355		0.584	0.0230	
21	0.813	0.0320		0.495	0.0195	
22	0.711	0.0280		0.394	0.0155	
22s	0.711	0.0280		0.140	0.0055	
23	0.635	0.0250		0.318	0.0125	
24	0.559	0.0220		0.292	0.0115	
25	0.508	0.0200		0.241	0.0095	
25s	0.508	0.0200		0.140	0.0055	
26	0.457	0.0180	+0.0005 −0.0000	0.241	0.0095	+0.0015 −0.0000
26s	0.467	0.0184		0.114	0.0045	
27	0.406	0.0160		0.191	0.0075	
28	0.356	0.0140		0.165	0.0065	
29	0.330	0.0130		0.165	0.0065	
30	0.305	0.0120		0.140	0.0055	
31	0.254	0.0100		0.114	0.0045	
32	0.229	0.0090		0.089	0.0035	
33	0.203	0.0080		0.089	0.0035	

[a] Gauge is Birmingham Wire Gauge (same as Stub's Iron Wire Gauge)

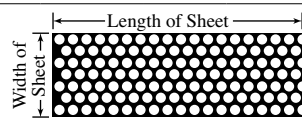
Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Strength and Stiffness of Perforated Metals.—It is common practice to use perforated metals in equipment enclosures to provide cooling by the flow of air or fluids. If the perforated material is to serve also as a structural member, then calculations of stiffness and strength must be made that take into account the effect of the perforations on the strength of the panels.

The accompanying table provides equivalent or effective values of the yield strength S^*; modulus of elasticity E^*; and Poisson's ratio ν^* of perforated metals in terms of the values for solid material. The S^*/S and E^*/E ratios, given in the accompanying table for the standard round hole staggered pattern, can be used to determine the safety margins or deflections for perforated metal use as compared to the unperforated metal for any geometry or loading condition.

Perforated material has different strengths depending on the direction of loading; therefore, values of S^*/S in the table are given for the width (strongest) and length (weakest) directions. Also, the effective elastic constants are for plane stress conditions and apply to the in-plane loading of thin perforated sheets; the bending stiffness is greater. However, since most loading conditions involve a combination of bending and stretching, it is more convenient to use the same effective elastic constants for these combined loading conditions. The plane stress effective elastic constants given in the table can be conservatively used for all loading conditions.

Mechanical Properties of Materials Perforated with Round Holes in IPA Standard Staggered Hole Pattern



Standard 60° Staggered Pattern

IPA No.	Perforation Diam. (in.)	Center Distance (in.)	Open Area (%)	S^*/S Width (in.)	S^*/S Length (in.)	E^*/E	ν^*
100	0.020	(625)	20	0.530	0.465	0.565	0.32
106	1/16	1/8	23	0.500	0.435	0.529	0.33
107	5/64	7/64	46	0.286	0.225	0.246	0.38
108	5/64	1/8	36	0.375	0.310	0.362	0.35
109	3/32	5/32	32	0.400	0.334	0.395	0.34
110	3/32	3/16	23	0.500	0.435	0.529	0.33
112	1/10	5/32	36	0.360	0.296	0.342	0.35
113	1/8	3/16	40	0.333	0.270	0.310	0.36
114	1/8	7/32	29	0.428	0.363	0.436	0.33
115	1/8	1/4	23	0.500	0.435	0.529	0.33
116	5/32	7/32	46	0.288	0.225	0.249	0.38
117	5/32	1/4	36	0.375	0.310	0.362	0.35
118	3/16	1/4	51	0.250	0.192	0.205	0.42
119	3/16	5/16	33	0.400	0.334	0.395	0.34
120	1/4	5/16	58	0.200	0.147	0.146	0.47
121	1/4	3/8	40	0.333	0.270	0.310	0.36
122	1/4	7/16	30	0.428	0.363	0.436	0.33
123	1/4	1/2	23	0.500	0.435	0.529	0.33
124	3/8	1/2	51	0.250	0.192	0.205	0.42
125	3/8	9/16	40	0.333	0.270	0.310	0.36
126	3/8	5/8	33	0.400	0.334	0.395	0.34
127	7/16	5/8	45	0.300	0.239	0.265	0.38
128	1/2	11/16	47	0.273	0.214	0.230	0.39
129	9/16	3/4	51	0.250	0.192	0.205	0.42

Value in parentheses specifies holes per square inch instead of center distance. S^*/S = ratio of yield strength of perforated to unperforated material; E^*/E = ratio of modulus of elasticity of perforated to unperforated material; ν^* = Poisson's ratio for given percentage of open area.

IPA is Industrial Perforators Association.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Sheet Metal Gages.—Thicknesses of steel sheets given in Table 2 are based upon a weight of 41.82 pounds per square foot per inch of thickness, which is known as the Manufacturers' Standard Gage for Sheet Steel. This gage differs from the older United States Standard Gage for iron and steel sheets and plates, established by Congress in 1893, based upon a weight of 40 pounds per square foot per inch of thickness which is the weight of wrought-iron plate.

Table 2. Sheet Metal Gages in Approximate Decimals of an Inch

Gage No.	Steel Gage [a]	B.G.[b].	Galvanized Sheet	Zinc Gage	Gage No.	Steel Gage [a]	B.G.[b]	Galvanized Sheet	Zinc Gage
15/0	…	1.000	…	…	20	0.0359	0.0392	0.0396	0.070
14/0	…	0.9583	…	…	21	0.0329	0.0349	0.0366	0.080
13/0	…	0.9167	…	…	22	0.0299	0.03125	0.0336	0.090
12/0	…	0.8750	…	…	23	0.0269	0.02782	0.0306	0.100
11/0	…	0.8333	…	…	24	0.0239	0.02476	0.0276	0.125
10/0	…	0.7917	…	…	25	0.0209	0.02204	0.0247	…
9/0	…	0.7500	…	…	26	0.0179	0.01961	0.0217	…
8/0	…	0.7083	…	…	27	0.0164	0.01745	0.0202	…
7/0	…	0.6666	…	…	28	0.0149	0.01562	0.0187	…
6/0	…	0.6250	…	…	29	0.0135	0.01390	0.0172	…
5/0	…	0.5883	…	…	30	0.0120	0.01230	0.0157	…
4/0	…	0.5416	…	…	31	0.0105	0.01100	0.0142	…
3/0	…	0.5000	…	…	32	0.0097	0.00980	0.0134	…
2/0	…	0.4452	…	…	33	0.0090	0.00870	…	…
1/0	…	0.3964	…	…	34	0.0082	0.00770	…	…
1	…	0.3532	…	…	35	0.0075	0.00690	…	…
2	…	0.3147	…	…	36	0.0067	0.00610	…	…
3	0.2391	0.2804	…	0.006	37	0.0064	0.00540	…	…
4	0.2242	0.2500	…	0.008	38	0.0060	0.00480	…	…
5	0.2092	0.2225	…	0.010	39	…	0.00430	…	…
6	0.1943	0.1981	…	0.012	40	…	0.00386	…	…
7	0.1793	0.1764	…	0.014	41	…	0.00343	…	…
8	0.1644	0.1570	0.1681	0.016	42	…	0.00306	…	…
9	0.1495	0.1398	0.1532	0.018	43	…	0.00272	…	…
10	0.1345	0.1250	0.1382	0.020	44	…	0.00242	…	…
11	0.1196	0.1113	0.1233	0.024	45	…	0.00215	…	…
12	0.1046	0.0991	0.1084	0.028	46	…	0.00192	…	…
13	.0897	0.0882	0.0934	0.032	47	…	0.00170	…	…
14	0.0747	0.0785	0.0785	0.036	48	…	0.00152	…	…
15	0.0673	0.0699	0.0710	0.040	49	…	0.00135	…	…
16	0.0598	0.0625	0.0635	0.045	50	…	0.00120	…	…
17	0.0538	0.0556	0.0575	0.050	51	…	0.00107	…	…
18	.0478	0.0495	0.0516	0.055	52	…	0.00095	…	…
19	0.0418	0.0440	0.0456	0.060	…	…	…	…	…

[a] Manufacturers' Standard Gage for Sheet Steel

[b] B.G. is the Birmingham Gage for sheets and hoops.

The United States Standard Gage (not shown above) for iron and steel sheets and plates was established by Congress in 1893 and was primarily a *weight* gage rather than a thickness gage. The equivalent thicknesses were derived from the weight of wrought iron. The weight per cubic foot was taken at 480 pounds, thus making the weight of a plate 12 inches square and 1 inch thick, 40 pounds. In converting weight to equivalent thickness, gage tables formerly published contained thicknesses equivalent to the basic weights just mentioned. For example, a No. 3 US gage represents a wrought-iron plate having a weight of 10 pounds per square foot; hence, if the weight per square foot per inch thick is 40 pounds, the plate thickness for a No. 3 gage = 10 ÷ 40 = 0.25 inch, which was the original thickness equivalent for this gage number. Because this and the other thickness equivalents were derived from the weight of wrought iron, they are not correct for steel.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Zinc sheets are usually ordered by specifying decimal thickness although a zinc gage exists and is shown in Table 2.

Most sheet metal products in Great Britain are specified by the British Standard Wire Gage (Imperial Wire Gage). Black iron and steel sheet and hooping, and galvanized flat and corrugated steel sheet, however, are specified by the Birmingham Gage (B.G.), which was legalized in 1914, and are also shown in Table 2. This Birmingham Gage should not be confused with the Birmingham or Stub's Iron Wire Gage mentioned previously.

Thicknesses of aluminum, copper, and copper-base alloys were formerly designated by the American or Brown & Sharpe Wire Gage but now are specified in decimals or fractions of an inch. American National Standard B32.1-1952 (Withdrawn) entitled Preferred Thicknesses for Uncoated Thin Flat Metals (see accompanying Table 3) gives thicknesses that are based on the 20- and 40-series of preferred numbers in American National Standard Preferred Numbers — ANSI Z17.1 (see Handbook page 687) and are applicable to uncoated, thin, flat metals and alloys. Each number of the 20-series is approximately 12 percent greater than the next smaller one, and each number of the 40-series is approximately 6 percent greater than the next smaller one.

Table 3. Preferred Thicknesses for Uncoated Metals and Alloys — Under 0.250 Inch in Thickness *ANSI/ASME B32.1-1952 (Withdrawn)*

Preferred Thickness, Inches							
Based on 20-Series	Based on 40-Series	Based on 20-Series	Based on 40-Series	Based on 20-Series	Based on 40-Series	Based on 20-Series	Based on 40-Series
…	0.236	0.100	0.100	…	0.042	0.018	0.018
0.224	0.224	…	0.095	0.040	0.040	…	0.017
…	0.212	0.090	0.090	…	0.038	0.016	0.016
0.200	0.200	…	0.085	0.036	0.036	…	0.015
…	0.190	0.080	0.080	…	0.034	0.014	0.014
0.180	0.180	…	0.075	0.032	0.032	…	0.013
…	0.170	0.071	0.071	…	0.030	0.012	0.012
0.160	0.160	…	0.067	0.028	0.028	0.011	0.011
…	0.150	0.063	0.063	…	0.026	0.010	0.010
0.140	0.140	…	0.060	0.025	0.025	0.009	0.009
…	0.132	0.056	0.056	…	0.024	0.008	0.008
0.125	0.125	…	0.053	0.022	0.022	0.007	0.007
…	0.118	0.050	0.050	…	0.021	0.006	0.006
0.112	0.112	…	0.048	0.020	0.020	0.005	0.005
…	0.106	0.045	0.045	…	0.019	0.004	0.004

The American National Standard ANSI/ASME B32.1-1952 (Withdrawn) lists preferred thicknesses that are based on the 20- and 40-series of preferred numbers and states that those based on the 40-series should provide adequate coverage. However, where intermediate thicknesses are required, the Standard recommends that thicknesses be based on the 80-series of preferred numbers (see Handbook page 687).

Thicknesses for copper and copper-base alloy flat products below $^1/_4$ inch thick are specified by the 20-series of American National Standard Preferred Numbers given in ANSI/ASME B32.1. Although the table in ANSI/ASME B32.1 gives only the 20- and 40-series of numbers, it states that when intermediate thicknesses are required they should be selected from thicknesses based on the 80-series of numbers (see Handbook page 687).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Metric Sizes for Flat Metal Products.—American National Standard B32.100-2016 establishes a preferred series of metric thicknesses, widths, and lengths for flat metal products of rectangular cross section; the thickness and width values are also applicable to base metals that may be coated in later operations. The standard also establishes a preferred series of metric sizes for round and hexagonal metal products.

The First Choice of sizes of this standard are derived from Renard's R5 series of preferred numbers (see *American National Standard for Preferred Numbers* on page 687, also ANSI/ASME B4.2 or ISO 497) in which each preferred number is approximately 60 percent larger than the preceding number in the series. The Second Choice series are derived from the R10 series in which each number is approximately 25 percent larger than the preceding, and Third Choice sizes are generally from the R20 series in which each number is approximately 12.5 percent larger than the preceding number.

Table 4a gives preferred metric diameters from 1 to 500 millimeters for round metal products; Table 4b lists the preferred thicknesses; Table 4c lists the preferred widths. Wherever possible, sizes should be selected from the First Choice series shown in the tables. Second and Third Choice series are also shown. For preferred metric diameters less than 1 millimeter, preferred across flat metric sizes of square and hexagon metal products, preferred across flat metric sizes of rectangular metal products, and preferred metric lengths of metal products, reference should be made to the B32.100-2016 Standard.

Table 4a. American National Standard Preferred Metric Diameters of Round Metal Product *ANSI/ASME B32.100-2016*

Basic Size, mm			Basic Size, mm		
First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice	First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice
1	…	…	25	…	…
…	…	1.1	…	…	26, 28
…	1.2	…	…	30	…
	…	1.4	…	…	32, 35, 36, 38
1.6	…	…	40	…	…
…	…	1.8	…	…	42, 45, 48
…	2	…	…	50	…
…	…	2.2, 2.4	…	…	55, 56
2.5	…	…	60	…	…
…	…	2.6, 2.8	…	…	63, 65, 70, 75
…	3	…	…	80	…
…	…	3.2, 3.5, 3.8	…	…	85, 90, 95
4	…	…	100	…	…
…	…	4.5, 4.8	…	…	105, 110
…	5	…	…	120	…
…	…	5.5	…	…	125, 130, 140, 150
6	…	…	160	…	…
…	…	6.5, 7, 7.5	…	…	170, 180, 190
…	8	…	…	200	…
…	…	8.5, 9, 9.5	…	…	220, 240
10	…	…	250	…	…
…	…	11	…	…	260, 280
…	12	…	…	300	…
…	…	13, 14, 15	…	…	320, 340, 350, 360, 380
16	…	…	400	…	…
…	…	17, 18, 19	…	…	420, 440, 450, 480
…	20	…	…	500	…
…	…	21, 22, 23, 24	…	…	…

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 4b. Preferred Metric Thicknesses (mm) for All Flat Metal Products *ANSI/ASME B32.100-2016*

First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice	First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice	First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice
…	0.050	…	1.6	…	…	25	…	…
0.060	…	…	…	…	1.7	…	…	28
…	0.080	…	…	…	1.8	…	30	…
0.10	…	…	…	2	…	…	…	32
…	…	0.11	…	…	2.2	…	…	35
…	0.12	…	…	…	2.3	…	…	38
…	…	0.14	2.5	…	…	40	…	…
0.16	…	…	…	…	2.6	…		45
…	…	0.18	…	…	2.8	…	50	…
…	0.20	…	…	3	…	…	…	55
…	…	0.22	…	…	3.2	60	…	…
0.25	…	…	…	…	3.5	…	…	70
…	…	0.28	…	…	3.8	…	80	…
…	0.30	…	4	…	…	…	…	90
…	…	0.35	…	…	4.5	…	…	…
0.40	…	…	…	5	…	100	…	…
…	…	0.45	…	…	5.5	…	…	110
…	0.50	…	6	…	…	…	120	…
…	…	0.55	…	…	7	…	…	130
0.60	…	…	…	8	…	…	…	140
…	…	0.65	…	…	9	…	…	150
…	…	0.70	10	…	…	160	…	…
…	…	0.75	…	…	11	…	…	180
…	0.80	…	…	12	…	…	200	…
…	…	0.90	…	…	14	250	…	…
1.0	…	…	…	…	15	…	300	…
…	…	1.1	16	…	…	…	…	…
…	1.2	…	…	…	18	…	…	…
…	…	1.4	…	20	…	…	…	…
…	…	1.5	…	…	22	…	…	…

Table 4c. Preferred Metric Widths (mm) for All Flat Metal Products *ANSI/ASME B32.100-2016*

First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice	First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice	First Choice	Second Choice	Third Choice
…	2	…	60	…	…	400	…	…
2.5	…	…	…	…	70	…	500	…
…	3	…	…	80		600	…	…
4	…	…	…	…	90	…	…	700
…	5	…	100	…		…	800	…
6	…	…	…	…	110	…	…	900
…	8	…	…	120		1000	…	…
10	…	…	…	…	130	…	1200	…
…	12	…	…	140		…	…	1500
16	…	…	…	…	150	1600	…	…
…	20	…	160	…	…		2000	…
25	30	…	…	…	180	2500	…	…
…	…	35	…	200	…	…	3000	…
40	…	…	…	…	225	…	…	3500
…	…	45	250	…	…	4000	…	…
…	50	…	…	…	280	…	5000	…
…	…	55	…	300	…	…	…	…

All dimensions are in millimeters.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5a. Decimal Equivalent of Numbered Drill Sizes

Drill Number	Decimal		Drill Number	Decimal		Drill Number	Decimal		Drill Number	Decimal	
	Inch	mm		Inch	mm		Inch	mm		Inch	mm
1	0.2280	5.791	26	0.1470	3.734	51	0.0670	1.702	76	0.0200	0.508
2	0.2210	5.613	27	0.1440	3.658	52	0.0635	1.613	77	0.0180	0.457
3	0.2130	5.410	28	0.1405	3.569	53	0.0595	1.511	78	0.0160	0.406
4	0.2090	5.309	29	0.1360	3.454	54	0.0550	1.397	79	0.0145	0.368
5	0.2055	5.220	30	0.1285	3.264	55	0.0520	1.321	80	0.0135	0.343
6	0.2040	5.182	31	0.1200	3.048	56	0.0465	1.181	81	0.0130	0.330
7	0.2010	5.105	32	0.1160	2.946	57	0.0430	1.092	82	0.0125	0.318
8	0.1990	5.054	33	0.1130	2.870	58	0.0420	1.067	83	0.0120	0.305
9	0.1960	4.978	34	0.1110	2.819	59	0.0410	1.041	84	0.0115	0.292
10	0.1935	4.915	35	0.1100	2.794	60	0.0400	1.016	85	0.0110	0.280
11	0.1910	4.851	36	0.1065	2.705	61	0.0390	0.991	86	0.0105	0.267
12	0.1890	4.800	37	0.1040	2.642	62	0.0380	0.965	87	0.0100	0.254
13	0.1850	4.700	38	0.1015	2.578	63	0.0370	0.940	88	0.0095	0.241
14	0.1820	4.623	39	0.0995	2.527	64	0.0360	0.914	89	0.0091	0.231
15	0.1800	4.572	40	0.0980	2.489	65	0.0350	0.889	90	0.0087	0.221
16	0.1770	4.496	41	0.0960	2.438	66	0.0330	0.838	91	0.0083	0.211
17	0.1730	4.394	42	0.0935	2.375	67	0.0320	0.813	92	0.0079	0.200
18	0.1695	4.305	43	0.0890	2.261	68	0.0310	0.787	93	0.0075	0.190
19	0.1660	4.216	44	0.0860	2.184	69	0.0292	0.742	94	0.0071	0.180
20	0.1610	4.089	45	0.0820	2.083	70	0.0280	0.711	95	0.0067	0.170
21	0.1590	4.039	46	0.0810	2.057	71	0.0260	0.660	96	0.0063	0.160
22	0.1570	3.988	47	0.0785	1.994	72	0.0250	0.635	97	0.0059	0.150
23	0.1540	3.912	48	0.0760	1.930	73	0.0240	0.610	…	…	…
24	0.1520	3.861	49	0.0730	1.854	74	0.0225	0.572	…	…	…
25	0.1495	3.797	50	0.0700	1.778	75	0.0210	0.533	…	…	…

Table 5b. Decimal Equivalent of Letter Drill Sizes

Drill Size	Decimal		Drill Size	Decimal		Drill Size	Decimal		Drill Size	Decimal		Drill Size	Decimal	
	Inch	mm		Inch	mm		Inch	mm		Inch	mm		Inch	mm
A	0.234	5.944	G	0.261	6.629	M	0.295	7.493	S	0.348	8.839	Y	0.404	10.262
B	0.238	6.045	H	0.266	6.756	N	0.302	7.671	T	0.358	9.093	Z	0.413	10.490
C	0.242	6.147	I	0.272	6.909	O	0.316	8.026	U	0.368	9.347	…	…	…
D	0.246	6.248	J	0.277	7.036	P	0.323	8.204	V	0.377	9.576	…	…	…
E	0.250	6.350	K	0.281	7.137	Q	0.332	8.433	W	0.386	9.804	…	…	…
F	0.257	6.528	L	0.290	7.366	R	0.339	8.611	X	0.397	10.084	…	…	…

Wire Drawing History.—Wire drawing is the process used for producing wire by drawing a wire or rod of larger diameter through a plate or die provided with a hole which reduces the size to the desired dimension. Previous to wire drawing, wire was made by hammering or beating metal into thin sheets or plates, which were cut into continuous strips. These strips were then afterwards rounded by hammering. There is evidence that wire was produced by a simple hammering process as early as 2000 B.C., and perhaps earlier. The history of the art does not clearly indicate when simple hammering was superseded by the method of drawing through a die, but records are available to show that wire drawing on a commercial scale was practiced in France in 1270, in Germany in 1350, and in England in 1466. The first wire-drawing mill in America was built in 1775, in Norwich, Conn., by Nathaniel Niles, who was granted a loan of $1500 by the court for this purpose.

Shaped Wire.—Shaped wire is any wire not round in section; it may be square, rectangular, hexagonal, triangular, half-round, oval, etc. Some sections of shaped wire may be either rolled or drawn. Shaped wire is a specialty, subject to agreement between purchaser and manufacturer as to size, finish, temper, and weight of coils and packages.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Strength and Properties of Wire Rope

Wire Rope Construction.—Essentially, a wire rope is made up of a number of strands laid helically about a metallic or non-metallic core. Each strand consists of a number of wires also laid helically about a metallic or non-metallic center. Various types of wire rope have been developed to meet a wide range of uses and operating conditions. These types are distinguished by the kind of core; the number of strands; the number, sizes, and arrangement of the wires in each strand; and the way in which the wires and strands are wound or laid about each other. The following descriptive material is based largely on information supplied by the Bethlehem Steel Co.

Rope Wire Materials: Materials used in the manufacture of rope wire are, in order of increasing strength: iron, phosphor bronze, traction steel, plow steel, improved plow steel, and bridge rope steel. Iron wire rope is largely used for low-strength applications such as elevator ropes not used for hoisting, and for stationary guy ropes.

Phosphor bronze wire rope is used occasionally for elevator governor-cable rope and for certain marine applications as life lines, clearing lines, wheel ropes and rigging.

Traction steel wire rope is used primarily as hoist rope for passenger and freight elevators of the traction drive type, an application for which it was specifically designed.

Ropes made of galvanized wire or wire coated with zinc by the electro-deposition process are used in certain applications where additional protection against rusting is required. As will be noted from the tables of wire-rope sizes and strengths, the breaking strength of galvanized wire rope is 10 percent less than that of ungalvanized (bright) wire rope. Bethanized (zinc-coated) wire rope can be furnished to bright wire rope strength when so specified.

Galvanized carbon steel, tinned carbon steel, and stainless steel are used for small cords and strands ranging in diameter from $^{1}/_{64}$ to $^{3}/_{8}$ inch and larger.

Marline clad wire rope has each strand wrapped with a layer of tarred marline. The cladding provides hand protection for workers and wear protection for the rope.

Rope Cores: Wire-rope cores are made of fiber, cotton, asbestos, polyvinyl plastic, a small wire rope (independent wire-rope core), a multiple-wire strand (wire-strand core) or a cold-drawn wire-wound spring.

Fiber (manila or sisal) is the type of core most widely used when loads are not too great. It supports the strands in their relative positions and acts as a cushion to prevent nicking of the wires lying next to the core.

Cotton is used for small ropes such as sash cord and aircraft cord.

Asbestos cores can be furnished for certain special operations where the rope is used in oven operations.

Polyvinyl plastics cores are offered for use where exposure to moisture, acids, or caustics is excessive.

Wire-strand core often referred to as WSC, consists of a multiple-wire strand that may be the same as one of the strands of the rope. It is smoother and more solid than the independent wire rope core and provides a better support for the rope strands.

The *independent wire rope core*, often referred to as IWRC, is a small 6×7 wire rope with a wire-strand core and is used to provide greater resistance to crushing and distortion of the wire rope. For certain applications it has the advantage over a wire-strand core in that it stretches at a rate closer to that of the rope itself.

Wire ropes with wire-strand cores are, in general, less flexible than wire ropes with independent wire-rope or non-metallic cores.

Ropes with metallic cores are rated $7^{1}/_{2}$ percent stronger than those with non-metallic cores.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Wire-Rope Lay: The lay of a wire rope is the direction of the helical path in which the strands are laid and, similarly, the lay of a strand is the direction of the helical path in which the wires are laid. If the wires in the strand or the strands in the rope form a helix similar to the threads of a right-hand screw, i.e., they wind around to the right, the lay is called right hand and, conversely, if they wind around to the left, the lay is called left hand. In the *regular lay*, the wires in the strands are laid in the opposite direction to the lay of the strands in the rope. In right-regular lay, the strands are laid to the right and the wires to the left. In left-regular lay, the strands are laid to the left, the wires to the right. In *Lang lay*, the wires and strands are laid in the same direction, i.e., in right Lang lay, both the wires and strands are laid to the right and in left Lang they are laid to the left.

Alternate lay ropes having alternate right and left laid strands are used to resist distortion and prevent clamp slippage, but because other advantages are missing, have limited use.

The regular lay wire rope is most widely used and right regular lay rope is customarily furnished. Regular lay rope has less tendency to spin or untwist when placed under load and is generally selected where long ropes are employed and the loads handled are frequently removed. Lang lay ropes have greater flexibility than regular lay ropes and are more resistant to abrasion and fatigue.

In preformed wire ropes the wires and strands are preshaped into a helical form so that when laid to form the rope they tend to remain in place. In a non-preformed rope, broken wires tend to "wicker out" or protrude from the rope and strands that are not seized tend to spring apart. Preforming also tends to remove locked-in stresses, lengthen service life, and make the rope easier to handle and to spool.

Strand Construction: Various arrangements of wire are used in the construction of wire rope strands. In the simplest arrangement six wires are grouped around a central wire thus making seven wires, all of the same size. Other types of construction known as "filler-wire," Warrington, Seale, etc. make use of wires of different sizes. Their respective patterns of arrangement are shown diagrammatically in the table of wire weights and strengths.

Specifying Wire Rope.—In specifying wire rope the following information will be required: length, diameter, number of strands, number of wires in each strand, type of rope construction, grade of steel used in rope, whether preformed or not preformed, type of center, and type of lay. The manufacturer should be consulted in selecting the best type of wire rope for a new application.

Properties of Wire Rope.—Important properties of wire rope are strength, wear resistance, flexibility, and resistance to crushing and distortion.

Strength: The strength of wire rope depends upon its size, kind of material of which the wires are made and their number, the type of core, and whether the wire is galvanized or not. Strengths of various types and sizes of wire ropes are given in the accompanying tables together with appropriate factors to apply for ropes with steel cores and for galvanized wire ropes.

Wear Resistance: When wire rope must pass back and forth over surfaces that subject it to unusual wear or abrasion, it must be specially constructed to give satisfactory service.

Such construction may make use of 1) relatively large outer wires; 2) Lang lay in which wires in each strand are laid in the same direction as the strand; and 3) flattened strands.

The object in each type is to provide a greater outside surface area to take the wear or abrasion. From the standpoint of material, improved plow steel has not only the highest tensile strength but also the greatest resistance to abrasion in regularly stocked wire rope.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flexibility: Wire rope that undergoes repeated and severe bending, such as in passing around small sheaves and drums, must have a high degree of flexibility to prevent premature breakage and failure due to fatigue. Greater flexibility in wire rope is obtained by 1) using small wires in larger numbers; 2) using Lang lay; and 3) preforming, that is, the wires and strands of the rope are shaped during manufacture to fit the position they will assume in the finished rope.

Resistance to Crushing and Distortion: Where wire rope is to be subjected to transverse loads that may crush or distort it, care should be taken to select a type of construction that will stand up under such treatment.

Wire rope designed for such conditions may have 1) large outer wires to spread the load per wire over a greater area; and 2) an independent wire core or a high-carbon cold-drawn wound spring core.

Standard Classes of Wire Rope.—Wire rope is commonly designated by two figures, the first indicating the number of strands and the second, the number of wires per strand, as: 6 × 7, a six-strand rope having seven wires per strand, or 8 × 19, an eight-strand rope having 19 wires per strand. When such numbers are used as designations of standard wire rope classes, the second figure in the designation may be purely nominal in that the number of wires per strand for various ropes in the class may be slightly less or slightly more than the nominal as will be seen from the following brief descriptions. (For ropes with a wire strand core, a second group of two numbers may be used to indicate the construction of the wire core, as 1 × 21, 1 × 43, and so on.)

6 × 7 Class (Standard Coarse Laid Rope): Wire ropes in this class are for use where resistance to wear, as in dragging over the ground or across rollers, is an important requirement. Heavy hauling, rope transmissions, and well drilling are common applications. These wire ropes are furnished in right regular lay and occasionally in Lang lay. The cores may be of fiber, independent wire rope, or wire strand. Since this class is a relatively stiff type of construction, these ropes should be used with large sheaves and drums. Because of the small number of wires, a larger factor of safety may be called for.

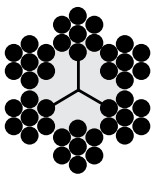


Fig. 1a.
6 × 7 with Fiber Core

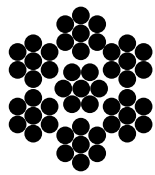


Fig. 1b.
6 × 7 with 1 × 7 WSC

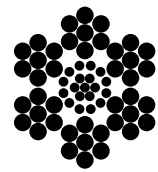


Fig. 1c.
6 × 7 with 1 × 19 WSC

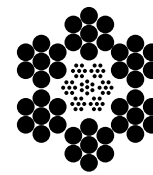


Fig. 1d.
6 × 7 with IWRC

As shown in Fig. 1a through Fig. 1d, this class includes a 6 × 7 construction with fiber core: a 6 × 7 construction with 1 × 7 wire strand core (sometimes called 7 × 7); a 6 × 7 construction with 1 × 19 wire strand core; and a 6 × 7 construction with independent wire rope core. Table 1 provides strength and weight data for this class.

Two special types of wire rope in this class are: aircraft cord, a 6 × 6 or 7 × 7 Bethanized wire rope of high tensile strength and sash cord, a 6 × 7 iron rope used for a variety of purposes where strength is not an important factor.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Weights and Strengths of 6 × 7 (Standard Coarse Laid) Wire Ropes, Preformed and Not Preformed

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.			Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		
		Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel
1/4	0.094	2.64	2.30	2.00	3/4	0.84	22.7	19.8	17.2
5/16	0.15	4.10	3.56	3.10	7/8	1.15	30.7	26.7	23.2
3/8	0.21	5.86	5.10	4.43	1	1.50	39.7	34.5	30.0
7/16	0.29	7.93	6.90	6.00	1 1/8	1.90	49.8	43.3	37.7
1/2	0.38	10.3	8.96	7.79	1 1/4	2.34	61.0	53.0	46.1
9/16	0.48	13.0	11.3	9.82	1 3/8	2.84	73.1	63.6	55.3
5/8	0.59	15.9	13.9	12.0	1 1/2	3.38	86.2	75.0	65.2

For ropes with steel cores, add 7 1/2 percent to above strengths.

For galvanized ropes, deduct 10 percent from above strengths.

Source: Rope diagrams, Bethlehem Steel Co. All data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

6 × 19 Class (Standard Hoisting Rope): This rope is the most popular and widely used class. Ropes in this class are furnished in regular or Lang lay and may be obtained preformed or not preformed. Cores may be of fiber, independent wire rope, or wire strand. As can be seen from Table 2 and Fig. 2a through Fig. 2h, there are four common types: 6 × 25 filler wire construction with fiber core (not illustrated), independent wire core, or wire strand core (1 × 25 or 1 × 43); 6 × 19 Warrington construction with fiber core; 6 × 21 filler wire construction with fiber core; and 6 × 19, 6 × 21, and 6 × 17 Seale construction with fiber core.

Table 2. Weights and Strengths of 6 × 19 (Standard Hoisting) Wire Ropes, Preformed and Not Preformed

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.			Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		
		Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel
1/4	0.10	2.74	2.39	2.07	1 1/4	2.50	64.6	56.2	48.8
5/16	0.16	4.26	3.71	3.22	1 3/8	3.03	77.7	67.5	58.8
3/8	0.23	6.10	5.31	4.62	1 1/2	3.60	92.0	80.0	69.6
7/16	0.31	8.27	7.19	6.25	1 5/8	4.23	107	93.4	81.2
1/2	0.40	10.7	9.35	8.13	1 3/4	4.90	124	108	93.6
9/16	0.51	13.5	11.8	10.2	1 7/8	5.63	141	123	107
5/8	0.63	16.7	14.5	12.6	2	6.40	160	139	121
3/4	0.90	23.8	20.7	18.0	2 1/8	7.23	179	156	…
7/8	1.23	32.2	28.0	24.3	2 1/4	8.10	200	174	…
1	1.60	41.8	36.4	31.6	2 1/2	10.00	244	212	…
1 1/8	2.03	52.6	45.7	39.8	2 3/4	12.10	292	254	…

The 6 × 25 filler wire with fiber core not illustrated.

For ropes with steel cores, add 7 1/2 percent to above strengths.

For galvanized ropes, deduct 10 percent from above strengths.

Source: Rope diagrams, Bethlehem Steel Co. All data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

6 × 37 Class (Extra Flexible Hoisting Rope): For a given size of rope, the component wires are of smaller diameter than those in the two classes previously described and hence have less resistance to abrasion. Ropes in this class are furnished in regular and Lang lay with fiber core or independent wire rope core, preformed or not preformed.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

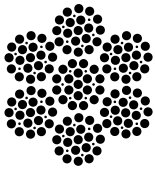


Fig. 2a.
6×25 Filler Wire
with WSC (1×25)

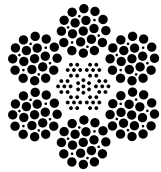


Fig. 2b.
6×25 Filler Wire
with IWRC

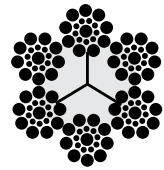


Fig. 2c.
6×19 Seale
with Fiber Core

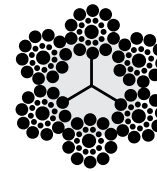


Fig. 2d.
6×21 Seale
with Fiber Core

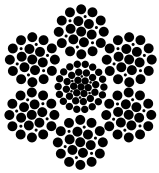


Fig. 2e.
6×25 Filler Wire
with WSC (1×43)

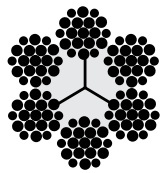


Fig. 2f.
6×19 Warrington
with Fiber Core

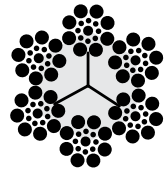


Fig. 2g.
6×17 Seale
with Fiber Core

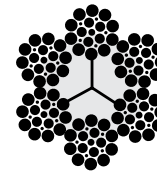


Fig. 2h.
6×21 Filler Wire
with Fiber Core

Table 3. Weights and Strengths of 6×37 (Extra Flexible Hoisting) Wire Ropes, Preformed and Not Preformed

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.	
		Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel
1/4	0.10	2.59	2.25	1 1/2	3.49	87.9	76.4
5/16	0.16	4.03	3.50	1 5/8	4.09	103	89.3
3/8	0.22	5.77	5.02	1 3/4	4.75	119	103
7/16	0.30	7.82	6.80	1 7/8	5.45	136	118
1/2	0.39	10.2	8.85	2	6.20	154	134
9/16	0.49	12.9	11.2	2 1/8	7.00	173	150
5/8	0.61	15.8	13.7	2 1/4	7.85	193	168
3/4	0.87	22.6	19.6	2 1/2	9.69	236	205
7/8	1.19	30.6	26.6	2 3/4	11.72	284	247
1	1.55	39.8	34.6	3	14.0	335	291
1 1/8	1.96	50.1	43.5	3 1/4	16.4	390	339
1 1/4	2.42	61.5	53.5	3 1/2	19.0	449	390
1 3/8	2.93	74.1	64.5	…	…	…	…

For ropes with steel cores, add 7 1/2 percent to above strengths.

For galvanized ropes, deduct 10 percent from above strengths.

Source: Rope diagrams, Bethlehem Steel Co. All data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

As shown in Table 3 and Fig. 3a through Fig. 3h, there are four common types: 6×29 filler wire construction with fiber core and 6×36 filler wire construction with independent wire rope core, a special rope for construction equipment; 6×35 (two operations) construction with fiber core and 6×41 Warrington Seale construction with fiber core, a standard crane rope in this class of rope construction; 6×41 filler wire construction with fiber core or

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

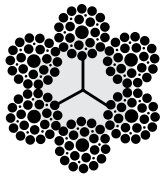


Fig. 3a. 6×29 Filler Wire with Fiber Core

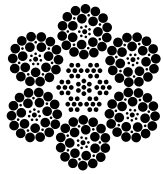


Fig. 3b. 6×36 Filler Wire with IWRC

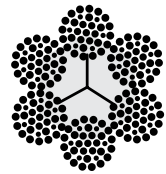


Fig. 3c. 6×35 with Fiber Core

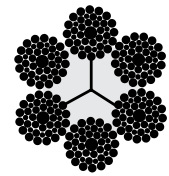


Fig. 3d. 6×41 Warrington-Seale with Fiber Core

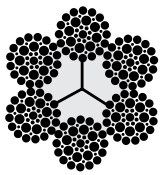


Fig. 3e. 6×41 Filler Wire with Fiber Core

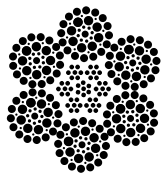


Fig. 3f. 6×41 Filler Wire with IWRC

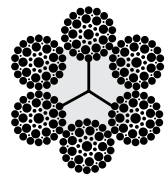


Fig. 3g. 6×46 Filler Wire with Fiber Core

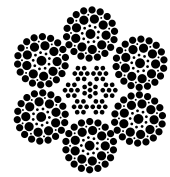


Fig. 3h. 6×46 Filler Wire with IWRC

independent wire core, a special large shovel rope usually furnished in Lang lay; and 6 × 46 filler wire construction with fiber core or independent wire rope core, a special large shovel and dredge rope.

8 × 19 Class (Special Flexible Hoisting Rope): This rope is stable and smooth-running, and is especially suitable, because of its flexibility, for high speed operation with reverse bends. Ropes in this class are available in regular lay with fiber core.

As shown in Table 4 and Fig. 4a through Fig. 4d, there are four common types: 8 × 25 filler wire construction, the most flexible but the least wear resistant rope of the four types; Warrington type in 8 × 19 construction, less flexible than the 8 × 25; 8 × 21 filler wire construction, less flexible than the Warrington; and Seale type in 8 × 19 construction, which has the greatest wear resistance of the four types but is also the least flexible.

Table 4. Weights and Strengths of 8 × 19 (Special Flexible Hoisting) Wire Ropes, Preformed and Not Preformed

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.	
		Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel
1/4	0.09	2.35	2.04	3/4	0.82	20.5	17.8
5/16	0.14	3.65	3.18	7/8	1.11	27.7	24.1
3/8	0.20	5.24	4.55	1	1.45	36.0	31.3
7/16	0.28	7.09	6.17	1 1/8	1.84	45.3	39.4
1/2	0.36	9.23	8.02	1 1/4	2.27	55.7	48.4
9/16	0.46	11.6	10.1	1 3/8	2.74	67.1	58.3
5/8	0.57	14.3	12.4	1 1/2	3.26	79.4	69.1

For ropes with steel cores, add 7 1/2 percent to above strengths.
For galvanized ropes, deduct 10 percent from above strengths.
Source: Rope diagrams, Bethlehem Steel Co. All data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

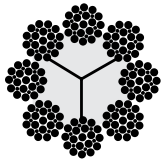


Fig. 4a.
8 × 25 Filler Wire
with Fiber Core

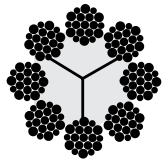


Fig. 4b.
8 × 19 Warrington
with Fiber Core

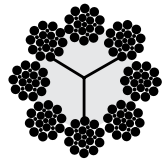


Fig. 4c.
8 × 21 Filler Wire
with Fiber Core

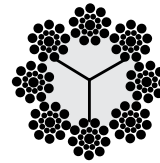


Fig. 4d.
8 × 19 Seale
with Fiber Core

Also in this class, but not shown in Table 4, are elevator ropes made of traction steel and iron.

18 × 7 Non-rotating Wire Rope: This rope is specially designed for use where a minimum of rotating or spinning is called for, especially in the lifting or lowering of free loads with a single-part line. It has an inner layer composed of 6 strands of 7 wires each laid in left Lang lay over a fiber core and an outer layer of 12 strands of 7 wires each laid in right regular lay. The combination of opposing lays tends to prevent rotation when the rope is stretched. However, to avoid any tendency to rotate or spin, loads should be kept to at least one-eighth and preferably one-tenth of the breaking strength of the rope. Weights and strengths are shown in Table 5.

Table 5. Weights and Strengths of Standard 18 × 7 Nonrotating Wire Rope, Preformed and Not Preformed

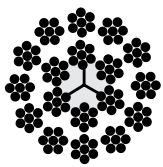


Fig. 5.
18 × 7 Non-Rotating Rope

Recommended Sheave and Drum Diameters

Single layer on drum	36 rope diameters
Multiple layers on drum	48 rope diameters
Mine service	60 rope diameters

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.	
		Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Plow Steel
3/16	0.061	1.42	1.24	7/8	1.32	29.5	25.7
1/4	0.108	2.51	2.18	1	1.73	38.3	33.3
5/16	0.169	3.90	3.39	1 1/8	2.19	48.2	41.9
3/8	0.24	5.59	4.86	1 1/4	2.70	59.2	51.5
7/16	0.33	7.58	6.59	1 3/8	3.27	71.3	62.0
1/2	0.43	9.85	8.57	1 1/2	3.89	84.4	73.4
9/16	0.55	12.4	10.8	1 5/8	4.57	98.4	85.6
5/8	0.68	15.3	13.3	1 3/4	5.30	114	98.8
3/4	0.97	21.8	19.0	…	…	…	…

For galvanized ropes, deduct 10 percent from above strengths.

Source: Rope diagrams, sheave and drum diameters, and data for 3/16, 1/4 and 5/16-inch sizes, Bethlehem Steel Co. All other data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

Flattened Strand Wire Rope: The wires forming the strands of this type of rope are wound around triangular centers so that a flattened outer surface is provided with a greater area than in the regular round rope to withstand severe conditions of abrasion. The triangular shape of the strands also provides superior resistance to crushing. Flattened strand wire

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

rope is usually furnished in Lang lay and may be obtained with fiber core or independent wire rope core. The three types shown in Table 6 and Fig. 6a through Fig. 6c are flexible and are designed for hoisting work.

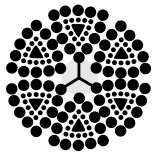


Fig. 6a.
6×25 with Fiber Core

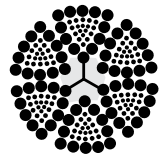


Fig. 6b.
6×30 with Fiber Core

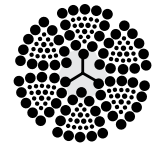


Fig. 6c.
6×27 with Fiber Core

Table 6. Weights and Strengths of Flattened Strand Wire Rope, Preformed and Not Preformed

Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		Dia., Inches	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.	
		Impr. Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel			Impr. Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel
3/8[a]	0.25	6.71	…	1 3/8	3.40	85.5	…
1/2[a]	0.45	11.8	8.94	1 1/2	4.05	101	…
9/16[a]	0.57	14.9	11.2	1 5/8	4.75	118	…
5/8	0.70	18.3	13.9	1 3/4	5.51	136	…
3/4	1.01	26.2	19.8	2	7.20	176	…
7/8	1.39	35.4	26.8	2 1/4	9.10	220	…
1	1.80	46.0	34.8	2 1/2	11.2	269	…
1 1/8	2.28	57.9	43.8	2 3/4	13.6	321	…
1 1/4	2.81	71.0	53.7	…	…	…	…

[a] These sizes in Type B only.

Type H is not in US Simplified Practice Recommendation.

Source: Rope diagrams, Bethlehem Steel Co. All other data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

Flat Wire Rope: This type of wire rope is made up of a number of four-strand rope units placed side by side and stitched together with soft steel sewing wire. These four-strand units are alternately right and left lay to resist warping, curling, or rotating in service. Weights and strengths are shown in Table 7.

Simplified Practice Recommendations.—Because the total number of wire rope types is large, manufacturers and users have agreed upon and adopted a US Simplified Practice Recommendation to provide a simplified listing of those kinds and sizes of wire rope which are most commonly used and stocked. These, then, are the types and sizes which are most generally available. Other types and sizes for special or limited uses also may be found in individual manufacturer's catalogs.

Sizes and Strengths of Wire Rope.—The data shown in Table 1 through Table 7 have been taken from US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50 but do not include those wire ropes shown in that Simplified Practice Recommendation which are intended primarily for marine use.

Wire Rope Diameter: The diameter of a wire rope is the diameter of the circle that will just enclose it, hence when measuring the diameter with calipers, care must be taken to obtain the largest outside dimension, taken across the opposite strands, rather than the smallest dimension across opposite "valleys" or "flats." It is standard practice for the nominal diameter to be the minimum with all tolerances taken on the plus side. Limits

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

for diameter as well as for minimum breaking strength and maximum pitch are given in Federal Specification for Wire Rope, RR-R—571a.

Wire Rope Strengths: The strength figures shown in the accompanying tables have been obtained by a mathematical derivation based on actual breakage tests of wire rope and represent from 80 to 95 percent of the total strengths of the individual wires, depending upon the type of rope construction.

Table 7. Weights and Strengths of Standard Flat Wire Rope, Not Preformed

Flat Wire Rope					This rope consists of a number of 4-strand rope units placed side by side and stitched together with soft steel sewing wire.				
Width and Thickness, Inches	No. of Ropes	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.		Width and Thickness, Inches	No. of Ropes	Approx. Weight per Ft., Pounds	Breaking Strength, Tons of 2000 Lbs.	
			Plow Steel	Mild Plow-Steel				Plow Steel	Mild Plow Steel
¼ × 1½	7	0.69	16.8	14.6	½ × 4	9	3.16	81.8	71.2
¼ × 2	9	0.88	21.7	18.8	½ × 4½	10	3.82	90.9	79.1
¼ × 2½	11	1.15	26.5	23.0	½ × 5	12	4.16	109	94.9
¼ × 3	13	1.34	31.3	27.2	½ × 5½	13	4.50	118	103
					½ × 6	14	4.85	127	111
5⁄16 × 1½	5	0.77	18.5	16.0	½ × 7	16	5.85	145	126
5⁄16 × 2	7	1.05	25.8	22.4					
5⁄16 × 2½	9	1.33	33.2	28.8	5⁄8 × 3½	6	3.40	85.8	74.6
5⁄16 × 3	11	1.61	40.5	35.3	5⁄8 × 4	7	3.95	100	87.1
5⁄16 × 3½	13	1.89	47.9	41.7	5⁄8 × 4½	8	4.50	114	99.5
5⁄16 × 4	15	2.17	55.3	48.1	5⁄8 × 5	9	5.04	129	112
					5⁄8 × 5½	10	5.59	143	124
3⁄8 × 2	6	1.25	31.4	27.3	5⁄8 × 6	11	6.14	157	137
3⁄8 × 2½	8	1.64	41.8	36.4	5⁄8 × 7	13	7.23	186	162
3⁄8 × 3	9	1.84	47.1	40.9	5⁄8 × 8	15	8.32	214	186
3⁄8 × 3½	11	2.23	57.5	50.0					
3⁄8 × 4	12	2.44	62.7	54.6	¾ × 5	8	6.50	165	143
3⁄8 × 4½	14	2.83	73.2	63.7	¾ × 6	9	7.31	185	161
3⁄8 × 5	15	3.03	78.4	68.2	¾ × 7	10	8.13	206	179
3⁄8 × 5½	17	3.42	88.9	77.3	¾ × 8	11	9.70	227	197
3⁄8 × 6	18	3.63	94.1	81.9					
					7⁄8 × 5	7	7.50	190	165
½ × 2½	6	2.13	54.5	47.4	7⁄8 × 6	8	8.56	217	188
½ × 3	7	2.47	63.6	55.4	7⁄8 × 7	9	9.63	244	212
½ × 3½	8	2.82	72.7	63.3	7⁄8 × 8	10	10.7	271	236

Source: Rope diagram, Bethlehem Steel Co.; all data, US Simplified Practice Recommendation 198-50.

Safe Working Loads and Factors of Safety.—The maximum load for which a wire rope is to be used should take into account such associated factors as friction, load caused by bending around each sheave, acceleration and deceleration, and, if a long length of rope is to be used for hoisting, the weight of the rope at its maximum extension. The condition of the rope — whether new or old, worn or corroded — and type of attachments should also be considered.

Factors of safety for standing rope usually range from 3 to 4; for operating rope, from 5 to 12. Where there is the element of hazard to life or property, higher values are used.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SHAFT ALIGNMENT

Introduction

Shaft alignment is the positioning of the rotational centers of two or more shafts so that the shafts are co-linear when the machines are operating. The purpose of shaft alignment is to increase the operating life span of rotating machinery and to achieve high motor efficiency. It is not easy to detect misalignment when machines are running, but secondary effects of misalignment can be observed, such as excessive radial and axial vibration; high temperature in casings, bearings, or lubricant; loose, broken or missing coupling bolts or foundation bolts; cracks in shafts; and excessive amounts of lubricant leakage.

There are no universally accepted specifications for shaft alignment, however, there are defined limits for shaft-to-shaft alignment of coupled machines. The limits are defined in terms of two measures of misalignment, *angularity* and *offset*.

Angular Misalignment.—Angular misalignment is the difference in the slope of one shaft, as compared to slope of the other shaft. The units are expressed as rise/run. Rise is measured in mils (1 mil = 0.001 inch), and the run (distance along shaft) is measured in inches. The process of correcting this type of alignment problem is sometimes called *gap* or *face alignment*.

Fig. 1. Shafts in Angular Misaligned Position

Offset Misalignment.—Offset misalignment is the distance between the shaft centers of rotation measured at the plane of power transmission or coupling center. The units of measurement are mils.

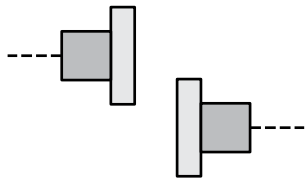


Fig. 2. Shafts in Offset Misaligned Position

There are four alignment parameters to be measured and corrected; vertical angularity, vertical offset, horizontal angularity, and horizontal offset. Values in Table 1 may be used as a general guide for acceptable limits of misalignment. Proper shaft alignment is especially critical when shafts are running at high speeds, thus the allowable limits of misalignment decrease as shaft speeds increase.

Table 1. Misalignment Tolerance Guide

	Offset Misalignment (Mils)		Angular Misalignment (mils/inch)	
RPM	Excellent	Acceptable	Excellent	Acceptable
600	±2.00	±4.00	0.80	1.25
900	±1.50	±3.00	0.70	1.00
1200	±1.25	±2.00	0.50	0.80
1800	±1.0	±1.50	0.30	0.50
3600	±0.50	±0.75	0.20	0.30
≥4000	±0.50	±0.75	0.10	0.25

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

When the shafts of two machines require alignment, the process generally calls for one of the machines to be permanently mounted and the other one to be movable. The fixed unit is usually the driven machinery, such as the pump in a pump-motor pair. The second machine (usually the motor) is moved into approximate alignment (by eye and straight edge, for example) in preparation for measurements that will determine the magnitude and direction of moves required to put it in final alignment with the fixed machine. It is the movable machine whose shaft will be aligned with the shaft of the fixed machinery. The position of the movable machine is adjusted vertically by adding and/or removing shims from under its feet, and horizontally by making small lateral moves as required until satisfactory final alignment is obtained.

Shaft Alignment with Dial Indicators

The material that follows describes the process of shaft alignment when dial indicators are used to measure the alignment data.

Instruments and Methods.—Numbers of instruments are available for making shaft measurements and calculating moves, but the most important requirement for any shaft alignment system is repeatability of the readings. Dial indicators and lasers are two choice measuring systems.

Dial indicators provide accurate and reliable measurement of shaft alignment. They are the most useful because they can be used to measure bearing alignment, shaft runout, and soft foot directly. Measurement accuracy down to 0.001 inch (1 mil) or 0.025 mm may be achieved if care is taken in mounting and reading the indicators correctly, and controlling or accounting for such variables as indicator sag, axial endplay in the shaft, and vibration from outside sources. The data obtained from properly installed dial indicators are converted by equations described later in this section into the vertical and horizontal movements required to bring the movable unit into alignment with the fixed unit.

Laser measurement systems are another popular choice for shaft alignment work, although the cost of such systems is much greater than dial indicators. Accuracy of 0.0001 inch (0.0025 mm) or greater is possible, and setup and operation is generally faster and simpler than with dial indicators. Many laser systems can perform some or all of the calculations required to obtain the horizontal and vertical moves. Lasers may not be safe for use in explosive environments.

Runout Check.—A runout test of either or both couplings is important only if there is a runout problem. Seldom will the runout of a pump or motor coupling be enough to detect with the eye alone. Standard practice is to position a rim and face indicator setup on the uncoupled couplings (one at a time) and roll said couplings through several 360° turns while monitoring the indicators. The indicator bracket should be firmly attached to a static object close to the pump or motor coupling being checked. Usually a magnetic base designed to hold indicators is used for this purpose if the two couplings involved are more than five or six inches apart. For an ordinary pump and motor, however, it is frequently convenient to mount the indicator jig to the motor to check the runout on the pump and then vice-versa for the motor.

Fig. 3 shows a profile view on the left and a motor- or pump-eye view (right) of a typical runout check setup involving the use of indicators attached to a magnetic base. Assume the rim indicator to have been adjusted to zero, the coupling being checked is rotated several full turns. Repeated turns deliver repeated readings of a maximum minus of –0.XXX inch at one extreme, and a maximum plus of 0.XXX inch at the other extreme. Assuming there is no paint or rust, etc. involved, at least three possibilities exist.

1) the coupling was bored off-center

2) the shaft is bent

3) a combination of the above two conditions

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

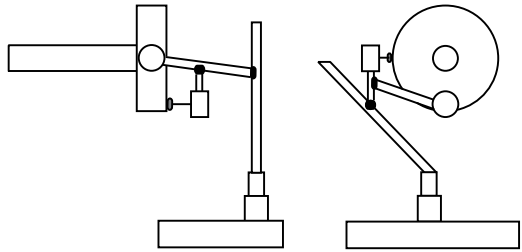


Fig. 3. Indicators Set Up for a Runout Check
In field applications, mount the face dial as near as possible to the rim indicator.
The face indicator is drawn at the 6 o'clock position in both views for clarity.

Concerning Item 3) in the previous list, it is possible (however unlikely) for a coupling that was bored off center and would have shown up as coupling runout with a rim indicator test except that a slight bend in the shaft has canceled out what would normally have been evident due to the off-center bored coupling. This odd situation can cause vibration even when a standard test proves there is no misalignment. Coupling runout can also be caused by too large a coupling bore, with the slack being taken up by set screws.

Interpreting the Indicators: The actual amount of runout registered by the rim indicator is *half of the difference between the plus and minus reading extremes*.

Example: A rim indicator is mounted as shown in Fig. 3 and set on zero. Then, several full turns of the shaft reveals a maximum minus of −0.006 inch and a maximum plus of +0.012 inch on the indicator. The total variation is 0.018 inch and half of 0.018 is 0.009. Thus, the result of Items 1), 2), or 3) is 0.009 inch of eccentricity, or 0.018 inch TIR (total indicator reading) of coupling runout. *Note:* Much less coupling runout than is described above is usually expected.

If the face indicator shows zero at all points around a coupling while the rim indicator moves between +0.XXX inch and −0.XXX inch, it is probable that the coupling was bored off-center. If the rim indicator shows practically zero movement while the face indicator moves between −0.XXX inch and +0.XXX inch, the cause could be Item 2) or 3) above, or the coupling was bored essentially centered, but at an angle other than perpendicular to the face of the coupling, as is shown in Fig. 4.

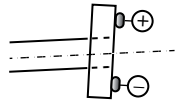


Fig. 4. Coupling Bore Centered but Not Perpendicular to Coupling Face
Face Indicator Shown, Rim Indicator Not Shown

In Fig. 4, both the indicators shown will alternate from plus to minus and back again as the coupling being checked is rotated. Even if the shaft centerline goes through the center of the coupling, it will do so at an angle other than perpendicular to the face of the coupling. The result is serious coupling runout on the face indicator and less serious runout on the rim indicator.

Face runout can easily show up when there is none. If a machine has sleeve bearings and if the shaft is not axially restrained by a thrust bearing during the runout test, severe face runout will likely be indicated when little, if any, exists.

Note: Unacceptable runout of either or both couplings should be of little concern in the alignment process. The extended centerlines of the two shafts can be aligned even when

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

there is serious coupling runout. A runout check is mainly to have recorded information if excessive vibration occurs.

Soft Legs.—One of the most often overlooked precautions relevant to motor alignment is the firming up of the soft legs. For the motor in Fig. 5, one leg (D) is $\frac{1}{2}$ inch short. In alignment jargon, the short leg is said to be *soft*. It is also clear that if a $\frac{1}{2}$ inch shim were placed under the short leg, all four motor feet would firmly support the motor. On the other hand, if the motor were tightened down without the use of proper shims, its support would be very spongy and would produce non-repeatable indicator readings.

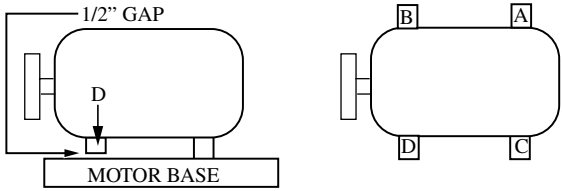


Fig. 5. Profile (a) and Overhead (b) Views of Motor with Soft Foot

On an ordinary electric motor any of the four motor feet may be either raised or lowered via the placement or removal of shims, as applicable, to render the motor equally supported by all four feet. Geometry may allow a certain freedom of choice, so it is practical to be very selective about which motor foot or feet will receive additional shims during the firming up of the motor.

When a soft leg involves only a few thousandths of an inch, it is much less obvious than in Fig. 5. By using what is known to some mechanics as the rock-a-bye method, it is possible to detect a slight amount of instability in the motor supports. With the bolts inserted, but only partly threaded in, alternately apply heel-of-the-hands pressure on or above two motor feet at a diagonal. If no rock-a-bye is evident when heel-of-the-hands pressure is alternately applied above feet A and D, switch to B and C. If rock-a-bye is found, remove applicable shims if possible or add shims under one or both of the unstable feet.

For the $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7 mm) gap shown in Fig. 5, downward heel-of-the-hands pressure at points A and D would yield more movement than the indicators could handle. On more subtle soft feet, it takes an experienced feel to detect only a few mils of rock-a-bye at a motor foot. When feel becomes too little to be certain, it is time to apply indicators.

On units where 0.010 inch (0.254 mm) or more of movement is evident, a tapered wedge gauge can be inserted under the motor foot as the motor is gently rocked. When the motor will no longer rock, the approximate thickness of the wedge gauge under the motor foot will be the amount of shim material to insert under that foot. If a single foot requires more shim thickness than is desirable, put half the thickness under the soft foot and the other half under the opposite diagonal foot; then, a second slight amount of shim placed under one of the two feet should remove any unwanted slack. During the rock-a-bye test, trial and error shimming will eliminate any obvious soft feet in a few tries. The careful step-by-step elimination of unwanted slack in the support feet of a motor or other movable unit should result in a very stable movable unit.

On larger motors, leverage proportional to resistance should be used, involving anything from a small pry-bar to hydraulics. When the rock-a-bye method gets so involved, it is advisable to have dial indicators mounted at the applicable motor feet and/or at the motor coupling, with the indicator button on top of the pump coupling or comparable static object, to register any movement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A heavy duty version of the rock-a-bye method is to have all the hold-down bolts tight and then loosen them one at a time while monitoring the indicators.

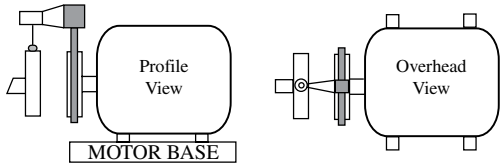


Fig. 6. Rim Indicator Mounted to Test for Soft Feet

Fig. 6 shows a profile view (left) and overhead view (right) of the motor previously shown. In this figure, the indicator illustrated is mounted exactly as the rim indicator will later be mounted for checking alignment, and any soft leg activity will register the same as in the line-up process. Once a motor gets a clean bill of health from this soft foot check, it is safe to proceed with the normal procedures of motor alignment. Mount the indicators in the most convenient manner that will apply to the problem at hand and select the proper formula as discussed in the material that follows. Be sure all the bolts are tight before making the first (vertical) indicator reading

Other Mounting Issues: Any combination of the mounting conditions illustrated in Fig. 7 will produce soft motor feet, even if the motor feet are machined properly. The motor, base, or shims will need alterations to circumvent the illustrated problems. Depending on the magnitude of the angle in a problem of this sort, wedge-shaped shims or machine work on the motor or the base may be required.

Sometimes on relatively unimportant equipment, it is permissible to simply fold shims in various thicknesses to take up the slack. This method should not be used as common practice; but as an emergency measure, it is very effective.

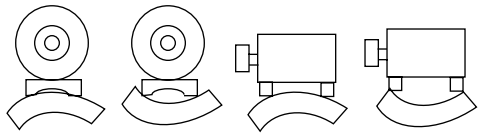


Fig. 7. Mounting Conditions That Produce Soft Motor Feet.

Mounting Dial Indicators, Perpendicular versus Otherwise.—When indicators are mounted to get a rim reading on a coupling, the indicator stem should be set to aim straight through the center of the shaft, and at a perpendicular to the axis of the shaft. This center shot at a perpendicular does not have to be absolutely perfect, but it should be close enough so that a closer than casual visual inspection can find no flaw. This is close enough for practical purposes.

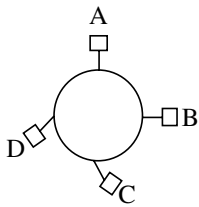


Fig. 8. Indicator Stem Orientation, Correct at A and B, Incorrect at C and D

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

In Fig. 8 observe the rim indicator settings at positions A, B, C, and D. Indicators at positions A and B are set correctly, indicators at C and D are not. A slight tilt in the mounting of the indicators will make too little difference to matter, but any tilt over a few degrees should be avoided.

Just as important, the face indicator should be set perpendicular to the coupling face with the centerline of the indicator stem parallel to the axis of the fixed unit coupling shaft.

Fig. 9a shows a setup with rim and face indicators set at odd angles that will cause incorrect readings. Note the difference between the arrangement of Fig. 9a, and the correct one shown in Fig. 9b.

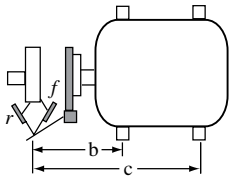


Fig. 9a. Incorrect Positioning of Dial Indicators

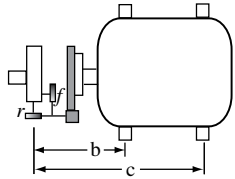


Fig. 9b. Correct Positioning of Dial Indicators

Preparations.—Before starting an alignment process several important factors need to be considered, among them the following. Is temperature rise in the coupled machinery a consideration? What is the indicator sag of the dial indicators in use? Is coupling runout a consideration? Are there improperly supported or "soft feet" in the movable machine? Are the motor feet, jack bolts, and shims clean? Can the movable unit be moved laterally far enough to permit alignment, or is movement restricted by bolts ("bolt bound") or nearby obstructions? Is the driving unit powered off and locked out?

Thermal Effects: Metals increase in length as temperature increases, and decrease in length as temperature decreases. Rotating equipment at rest slowly attains the temperature of the surrounding environment, the *ambient* or room temperature. In service, machinery such as electric motors and fuel-burning engines generate heat and increase in temperature during operation; other machinery such as pumps may warm or cool during operation.

If initial alignment adjustments are made when machines are at *ambient* or room temperature, thermal movement will occur in various parts of the machines as they reach operating temperature. The various dimensions will not increase or decrease uniformly. In a motor-pump combination, for example, the motor shaft height above the base may increase while the pump shaft height may decrease.

The amount of thermal expansion can be estimated by the formula $\Delta e = \alpha H \Delta T$:

where Δe = change in height of shaft

H = vertical height or distance between shaft centerline and shims

α = expansion coefficient of material in µin/in-°F (for stainless steel 7.4, mild steel 6.3, cast iron 5.9, bronze 10, and aluminum 12.6). *Note:* 1 µin/in-°F = 1.8 µm/m-°C

ΔT = the difference between operating temperature and ambient (initial measurement) temperature

Example 1(a): A pump is to be installed and aligned with a motor. The cast iron pump delivers fresh water at 34 °F and is at present at 75 °F. The pump shaft centerline is 12 inches above the baseline of the pump. The carbon steel motor is also at 75 °F and is expected to rise to 140 °F when in operation. The motor shaft centerline is 12 inches above the base of the motor. At operating temperature, compare the expected thermal growth of the pump and motor shaft centerlines.

For the pump, the change in shaft height:

$$\Delta e = \alpha H \Delta T = 0.0000059 \times 12 \times (34 - 75) = -0.002903 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For the motor, the change in shaft height is:

$$\Delta e = \alpha H \Delta T = 0.0000063 \times 12 \times (140 - 75) = 0.004914 \text{ inch}$$

These calculations indicate that the pump and motor shafts, if they were in alignment at ambient temperature, would be misaligned at operating temperature by approximately 0.0078 inch difference in elevation.

Indicator Bracket Sag: Indicator sag, indicator bracket sag, or jig sag are all terms commonly used to describe the effect on indicator readings of the weight of the dial indicator(s) in combination with the length, weight, and orientation of the indicator bracket. Dial indicators are designed to be used in the vertical position and indicator bracket sag is especially significant in measurements that are made when the dial indicator is inverted in the vertical plane. Consider a rim indicator and bracket mounted on a shaft with the indicator zeroed at the 12 o'clock position; when the shaft and fixture are rotated to put the dial indicator in the 6 o'clock position, the reading will indicate a non-zero negative value, which is the indicator fixture sag factor.

Indicator bracket sag is dependent on the mounting arrangement of the indicators, and is difficult to measure accurately on equipment that is being aligned because the effect of shaft misalignment will combine with the indicator bracket sag to produce incorrect results.

To measure indicator fixture sag, set up the indicator and mounting components on the machinery to be aligned exactly as if doing alignment, and tighten everything down. Then, remove the bracket and indicator from the machine and remount in exactly the same manner on a rigid fixture, such as a piece of pipe supported by V-blocks. Zero the indicator at the 12 o'clock (reference) position, then without changing the setup carefully rotate the fixture and read the indicator at the 6 o'clock (reading) position. At the reading position, the indicator displays the total indicator reading (TIR) and this value is the *total sag factor*. The actual sag in the indicator bracket is equal to one half of the total indicator reading.

When the indicator bracket sag has been determined, it can be accounted for in measurements taken during the alignment procedure. One procedure is to add the indicator bracket sag factor to the indicator value when the indicator is "zeroed" at the reference position, so that the sag factor is accounted for throughout subsequent calculations. For example, if an indicator is zeroed at the 12 o'clock position and reads 0.006 inch at the 6 o'clock position, set the indicator to positive 0.006 at the 12 o'clock reference position to account for the sag factor in further measurements. If the reference position used for checking indicator sag is the 6 o'clock position (indicator zeroed at 6 o'clock position), the positive reading found at the 12 o'clock position is the sag factor that must be subtracted from indicator value when the indicator is zeroed at the 6 o'clock (reference) position.

Alignment Procedures for Machinery.—The *face and rim method* and the *reverse dial indicator method* are the techniques most commonly used for aligning machinery shafts. The usual shaft alignment procedure is to establish one machine as fixed, and the other as the movable machine. The driven machinery is usually the fixed unit. The shaft of the movable unit is positioned, as required, to align with the shaft of the fixed unit. Most aligning specialists recommend vertical alignment first, and then horizontal alignment. It is important to verify in advance that the movable unit has sufficient horizontal clearance and freedom of movement to obtain the required horizontal position before starting on the vertical alignment.

Vertical Moves: Vertical adjustments are accomplished by adding or removing shims from under the machine feet. Use as few shims as possible. Too many shims under a foot may cause it to act like a soft foot by creating a spring effect; usually a maximum of four shims are allowed. Shims should be measured by micrometer before placing. If possible, apply a single shim that is the total thickness required under the foot. Insert the shims all the way until the shim slot bottoms out on the bolt, then pull the shim back about a quarter inch before tightening the bolts. If alignment is not possible with four shims, then use fewer,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

amounting to the required thickness. Tighten bolts to their prescribed torque each time after placing shims to avoid any movement when working on the other side of the machine.

Never loosen all hold-down bolts at the same time. A maximum of two bolts are allowed to be loosened at a time. Loosening all hold-down bolts will lose the entire alignment. Loosen the bolts from either the left or right side of the machine. Then, raise that side just enough to make the shim change. Raising the machine too high can bend the foot. Once the machine is lifted, remove all shims and add or subtract the number of shims required to make the necessary vertical move. Be very cautious at this point not to get confused among a lot of loose shims.

Horizontal Moves: It is preferable to utilize a base plate with jackbolts for horizontal moves. If jack bolts are not available, a small hydraulic jack, pipe clamps, or pony clamps can be used. The most accurate method for measuring the horizontal move is to place dial indicators around the machine at convenient locations, such as at machine feet. The indicators can be located anywhere convenient as long as the dimensions used in the alignment calculations reflect the actual position at which measurements are made. When the indicators are mounted, adjust the dials to zero, and move the unit the distance and direction indicated by the calculations. Once the horizontal move has been completed, a final set of readings should be taken to verify both vertical and horizontal alignment.

Safety: Shaft alignment should not be performed when machines are running. Before shaft alignment, all sources of power to the machine should be off and verified. Energy sources must be locked out by electrical controls; steam valves, gas main valve, and fuel oil valve must be shut down before shaft alignment.

Rim and Face Alignment Procedure.—Fig. 10 and Fig. 11 show dial indicator arrangements for rim and face alignment that are typical of those used in the remainder of this section. Fig. 10 illustrates a chain indicator jig, but it could be of any type. The arrangement in Fig. 11 represents an equivalent setup. In each figure, two dial indicators are shown, one for the rim reading and the other for the face reading. Darkened squares, triangles or circles are simply to indicate attachment points.

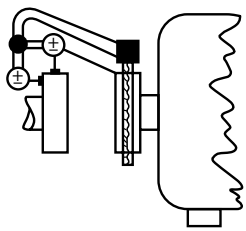


Fig. 10.

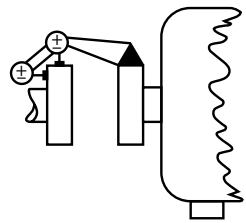


Fig. 11.

Starting on page 2731, a number of different indicator arrangements are illustrated in Fig. 1a through Fig. 16a. Each arrangement is associated with a specific equation and a chart that facilitates understanding the dial and face readings and the corresponding tasks of determining where shims need to be added or removed and what horizontal moves are required. To use this system, the mechanic needs to set up the rim and face indicators in the most convenient manner, then turn to the figure of the matching indicator arrangement and use the formulas provided.

Example Aligning a Motor with a Pump by the Rim and Face Method: A 10-horsepower (7.5 kW) electric motor needs to be precision aligned to a specific pump. Both the pump and motor are to be mounted on a base that when finished will look similar to Fig. 12. Not shown are the intake and discharge piping, electrical fixtures, and other incidentals including shims under the motor feet.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The shims are omitted to visually explain why the motor will usually have a little less distance from the motor shaft centerline to the base than the pump has. This set up is desirable because with the motor shaft a little lower than the pump shaft, the motor can be shimmed up until both shafts share a common elevation. If the motor shaft is higher than the pump shaft, it can be very difficult to alter the position of the pump because of the rigidly connected piping.

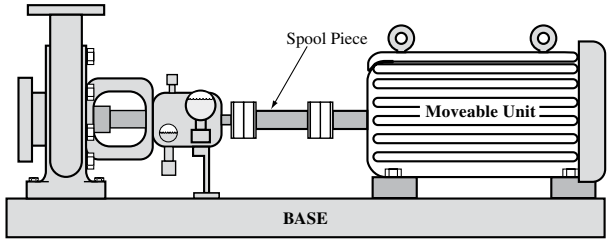


Fig. 12. Pump and Motor are to be Aligned

The motor in Fig. 12 is in its approximate finished position about 8 inches (203.2 mm) from the pump. The spool piece shown in Fig. 12 is to be bolted between the motor and pump couplings after alignment is complete. The spool piece (not shown in Fig. 13) is 8 inches long and there is an $8\frac{1}{8}$ inch (206.4 mm) space between pump and motor couplings.

Fig. 13 shows a viable mounting of dial indicators in the process of procuring readings from the zero setting at 12 o'clock (broken lines) to the 6 o'clock position (solid lines). Some calibrated eyeballing, a scale measure and some straight edging are used to align the motor initially to the pump.

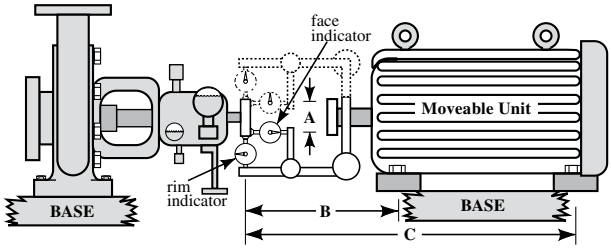


Fig. 13. Alignment Setup for Pump and Motor

There are many ways to mount and adjust dial indicators to measure the remaining misalignment between the two units. Several are correct and only a few are optimum. The mounting of the pair of dial indicators between the motor and pump shown in Fig. 13 is as good as any and commonly used. Many other arrangements are shown starting on page 2731.

Although there seem to be four dial indicators in Fig. 13, there are only two. The two indicators with broken lines are drawn at the initial 12 o'clock position where they are zeroed with about half the indicator stems exposed, (both indicator pointers are shown at 12 o'clock). Then the motor and pump shafts are both turned 180° to the 6 o'clock position (those indicators are drawn with solid lines, and the pointers are shown set to the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions in Fig. 13). In real life alignments, the pointers might be aimed anywhere on the dial face, but the dial face will rotate 360°, so the zero can be manually adjusted to align with the pointer no matter which direction the needle points.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Solution for Vertical Alignment: Once a motor has been aligned with straight edges and such, it is probably close enough to use dial indicators. The dials most often used have a stem range of just over 0.200 inch (roughly $^{7}/_{32}$ inch). These dial indicators (usually two) are positioned with the buttons of the indicators against the rim and face of the pump coupling respectively, as shown in Fig. 13. The seasoned millwright/mechanic will adjust the indicator jig/bracket in such manner that the stem on each of the indicators has freedom to travel inward or outward about 0.100 inch. This adjustment is made at the 12 o'clock position, shown by broken lines in Fig. 13.

A good arrangement is for the rim indicator in Fig. 13 to register a minus *r* reading at the 6 o'clock position and the face indicator to register a plus *f* reading (see bottom right of Fig. 1b on page 2732). Readings on both indicators show that the motor needs to be raised, involving the simple task of determining how much shim material to add under each foot. For the indicator arrangement in Fig. 13, the required shim thickness can be determined by using the equations below.

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A} \qquad \text{and} \qquad R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

where F = ±change in shim thickness needed under the front feet
R = ±change in shim thickness needed under the rear feet
r = plus or minus rim indicator reading
f = plus or minus face indicator reading
A = diameter of face indicator path on coupling
B = distance from rim indicator path to front feet
C = distance from rim indicator path to rear feet

The equations use the gathered data to calculate the correct shim placement. With either equation, a positive solution indicates that shims equal to the calculated value are added, and a negative solution indicates that shims equal to the calculated value are removed.

The rim and face indicator setup depicted in Fig. 13 is one of the sixteen arrangements described in the material that follows. Each of these formats has its own similar but unique formula; just plug the variables into the formulas that matches the current indicator format and calculate the shims required.

Solution for Horizontal Alignment: Fig. 14 shows a top view of the motor in Fig. 13, with indicators in the reading positions for horizontal alignment. The rim and face indicators are zeroed at the position 180° opposed to that shown in Fig. 14.

The directions corresponding to horizontal movement of the motor in Fig. 14 are indicated by east and west arrows. Magnetic-mount dial indicators (not shown) may be set up to monitor the horizontal movements. The dimensions *B* and *C* represent the distances from the rim indicator path to the locations of the monitoring indicators or jackbolts.

If jackbolts (or monitor indicators) are positioned on the west side as indicated in Fig. 14, the *B* and *C* dimensions are used in the equations. If jackbolts (or monitor indicators) are positioned at a different location on the east side (for example, jackbolts shown by dashed lines in Fig. 14), the east-side set of dimensions, *B′* and *C′*, are used in the equations.

The equations are the same as previously used in the vertical alignment procedure. Per the indicator arrangement in Fig. 14, a positive solution demands a move eastward, and a negative solution requires a westward move.

F = ±east-west movement needed at the front monitoring location
R = ±east-west movement needed at the rear monitoring location
r = plus or minus rim indicator reading
f = plus or minus face indicator reading
A = diameter of face indicator path
B = distance from rim indicator path to front monitoring location
C = distance from rim indicator path to rear monitoring location

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

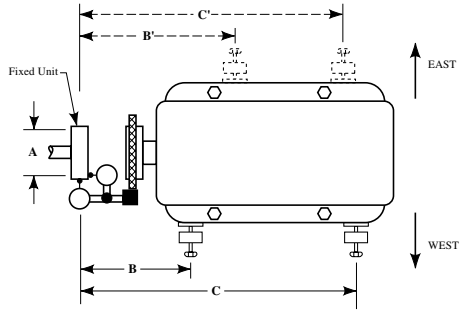


Fig. 14. Top View of Motor from Fig. 13

Side to Side Adjustment Using Jackbolts: Avoid using jackbolts that are longer than necessary. Make sure internal and external threads are clean and lubricated enough to be functional. Then, if heavy resistance is encountered when adjusting jackbolts, it indicates a mechanically-bound condition, not a rusty jackbolt thread. Before advancing jackbolts on one side of the movable unit, back off the jackbolts on the opposite side about $1\frac{1}{2}$ turns to provide enough space to make the movement without creating a mechanical bind.

Jackbolts should not be left in a "bind" against the movable unit to assist in keeping the movable unit in alignment. After alignment is complete, the jackbolts should be removed and stored for future use. This action will prevent jackbolt corrosion, and leave the jackbolt nuts vacant to receive a tap and lubrication, prior to being used again.

On movable units outfitted with jackbolts, one complete (360°) turn of a jackbolt will advance the thread an amount equal to the pitch of the screw thread. For inch-threaded screws, pitch equals 1 divided by the number of threads per inch (1 ÷ TPI). The axial travel per head flat is the pitch divided by the number of flats on the bolt head.

Example: A jackbolt has a $\frac{1}{2}$-13 thread. Find the axial travel per revolution and per flat for square-head and hex-head bolts. The thread has 13 threads per inch.

$$\text{advance per revolution (full turn) of bolt} = \frac{1}{\text{TPI}} = \frac{1}{13} = 0.0769 \text{ inch}$$

$$\text{advance per flat (1/4 turn) of square} - \text{head bolt} = \frac{1}{\text{TPI} \times 4} = \frac{1}{(13 \times 4)} = 0.0192 \text{ inch}$$

$$\text{advance per flat (1/6 turn) of hex} - \text{head bolt} = \frac{1}{\text{TPI} \times 6} = \frac{1}{(13 \times 6)} = 0.0128 \text{ inch}$$

Example: A motor needs to be moved 0.064 inch east at the front jackbolt and 0.091 east at the rear. The square-head jackbolts are $\frac{5}{8}$-11. How many turns of the front and rear jackbolts are need to bring the unit into approximate alignment?

$$\text{one full turn of jackbolt} = \frac{1}{11} = 0.0909 \text{ inch}$$

$$\text{full turns at front jackbolt} = \frac{0.064}{0.0909} = 0.7040 \approx \frac{3}{4} \text{ turn or 3 flats}$$

$$\text{full turns at rear jackbolt} = \frac{0.091}{0.0909} = 1.0011 \text{ turn} \approx 1 \text{ turn or 4 flats}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Practical Rim and Face Dial Indicator Arrangements for Shaft Alignment

This phase of millwright/machinist work is usually referred to as motor-to-pump alignment. The true objective is to correctly align the axis of one shaft to the axis of another by any of a rather wide range of dial indicator mountings, depending on a myriad of varying situations. These motor to pump scenarios can be duplicated on almost any shaft that is axially in close proximity to another shaft that has to share a common axis. Addressed here is standard rim and face pump alignment.

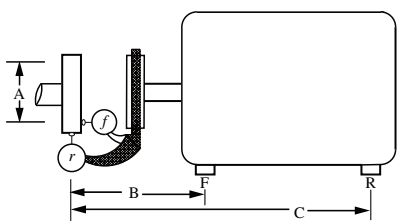
There are sixteen indicator arrangements to select from in this rim and face section. Units are aligned as closely as possible with a straight edge before using the dial indicators. At the first indicator reading, a neat sketch of the scenario is made, along with a carefully measured dimensioning schedule such as that shown in Fig. 1a. Based on indicator readings, select the applicable block from the second illustration, Fig. 1b, that matches the current plus or minus (±) indicator reading. The dashed lines in Fig. 1b represent the centerline of the movable unit shaft. The two heavy round dots on the dashed lines (to the right of the couplings) represent points directly above or below the movable unit shim locations, and indicate that the movable unit must be raised or lowered at that location. The diagrams will help clarify the results of the shim calculations made using the appropriate formulas. Be certain to use minus signs any time they are called for in the formulas.

Note: In all the rim and face formats that follow, the axial location of the rim indicator always dictates the beginning point of the dimensions that are used in the various formulas. Also, the *dial indicator arrangements in* Fig. 1a *through* Fig. 16a *are shown in the reading position*, after having been zeroed at the position 180° opposite that shown and then rotated into the position shown.

1st Arrangement.—Fig. 1a illustrates the most universally accepted method of mounting dial indicators for shaft alignment, and it is also the same arrangement that was used in the preceding example, illustrated by Fig. 13 and Fig. 14.

When a reading of the rim and face indicators has been made, find the diagram in Fig. 1b that corresponds to the signs (positive or negative) of the readings obtained (positive rim value and negative face value, for example). The appropriate diagram will provide a visual clue to the meaning of the indicator readings, and indicate the direction that the motor feet must be moved to obtain alignment of the movable shaft with the fixed shaft.

Finally, use the equations adjacent to Fig. 1a to calculate the exact thickness of shims that need to be added or removed at each foot.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 1a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 1

In the rim and face format in Fig. 1a, *r* and *f* represent the values of the rim and face indicators in their reading positions. The F and R below the motor are the front and rear feet, corresponding to the *F* and *R* values in the formulas that represent the needed plus or minus (±) shim packs. The formulas adjacent to Fig. 1a, are used to calculate the necessary addition or subtraction of shims required on the front or rear feet.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

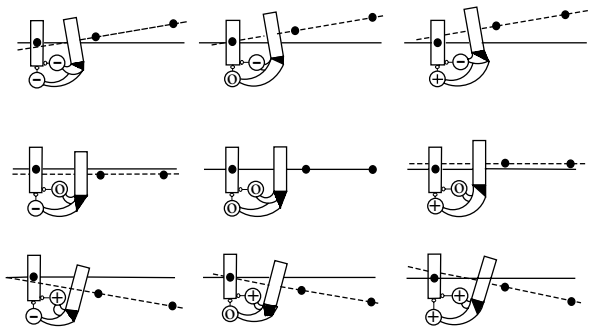


Fig. 1b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 1

Indicators are shown in the reading position. Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example 1(a), Vertical Alignment: Calculate the necessary shims for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4$ inches, $B = 6.5$ inches, and $C = 18$ inches. The two indicator dials read r = minus (–) 0.014 inch and f = plus (+) 0.021 inch respectively.

Solution: The lower left block in Fig. 1b corresponds to a negative rim reading and a positive face reading. The figure indicates that both the front and rear feet will require shims, and that the rear feet will require more shims than the front feet. Shims on front and rear feet will be as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A} = \frac{-0.014}{-2} + \frac{0.021 \times 6.5}{4} = 0.007 + 0.034125 = 0.041 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A} = \frac{-0.014}{-2} + \frac{0.021 \times 18}{4} = 0.007 + 0.0945 = 0.102 \text{ inch}$$

The calculations indicate that 0.041 inch of shims is required under both front feet, and 0.102 inch of shims is required under both rear feet.

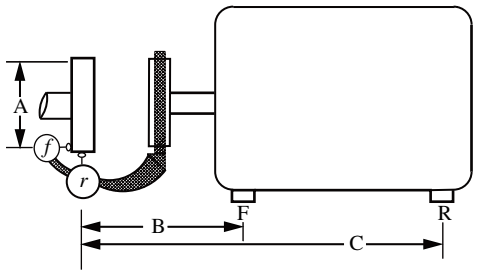
Example 1(b), Horizontal Alignment: Fig. 1a. shows the indicators in the reading position for horizontal alignment, if the figure is thought of as a view looking down at the motor from the top. Assuming the same data obtained in the previous example, the two indicator dials read r = minus (–) 0.014 inch and f = plus (+) 0.021 inch respectively. Calculate the necessary horizontal movement required to align the motor to the pump.

Solution: The equations adjacent to Fig. 1a apply, as in the previous example. The dimensions B and C in Fig. 1a are the respective distances from the rim indicator path on the coupling to the locations at the front and rear of the motor, not necessarily the feet, where the horizontal adjustments will be made. These locations could be the front and rear jackbolts, or they could be magnetic base monitoring indicators placed conveniently near the front and rear feet, as discussed previously with respect to Fig. 14.

The diagram in the lower left corner of Fig. 1b indicates the direction of the move when the figure is viewed as if looking at the motor from the top. If B and C are 6.5 and 18 inches, respectively, then the equations indicate that the front and rear of the motor must be moved in the same direction, +0.041 inch and +0.102 inch respectively, to attain alignment.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

2nd Arrangement.—Rim and face indicators are placed as shown in Fig. 2a. This arrangement is commonly used when the space between couplings is limited.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 2a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 2

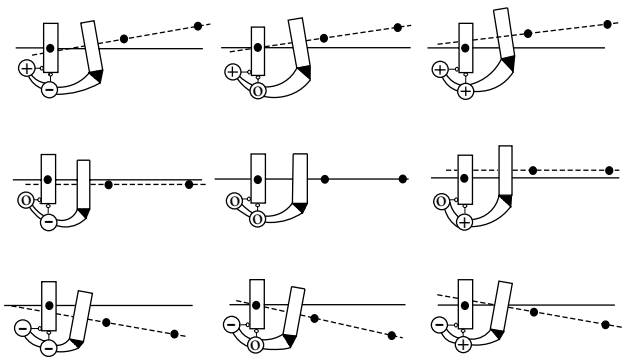


Fig. 2b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 2

Indicators are shown in the reading position. Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. The generic graph gives a picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.75$ inches, $B = 7.75$ inches, and $C = 17.25$ inches. The two indicator dials read $r =$ plus (+) 0.004 inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.022 inch respectively.

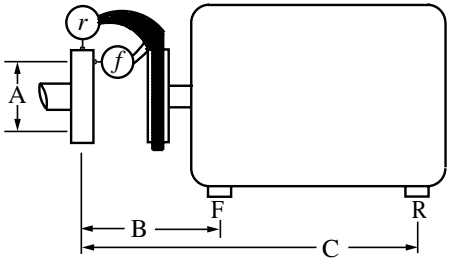
Solution: The lower right block in Fig. 2b corresponds to a positive rim reading and a negative face. The diagram indicates that shims will be required under both the front and rear feet. Calculations confirm this, as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{-2} + \frac{-0.022 \times 7.75}{-4.75}$$
$$= -0.002 + 0.036$$
$$= 0.034 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{-2} + \frac{-0.022 \times 17.25}{-4.75}$$
$$= -0.002 + 0.07989$$
$$= 0.078 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

3rd Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 3a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 3a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 3

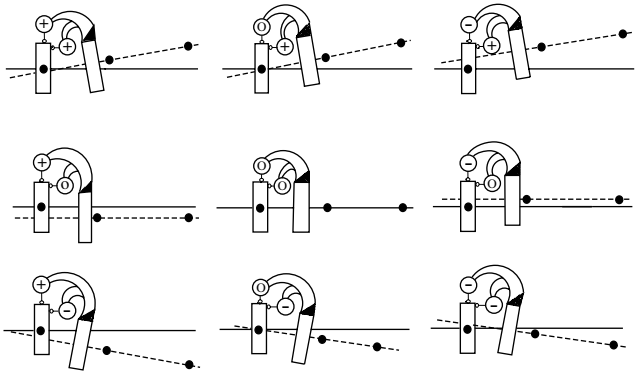


Fig. 3b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 3

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.25$ inches, $B = 8.875$ inches, and $C = 28.75$ inches. The two indicators read r = plus (+)0.042 inch and f = minus (−) 0.036 inch respectively.

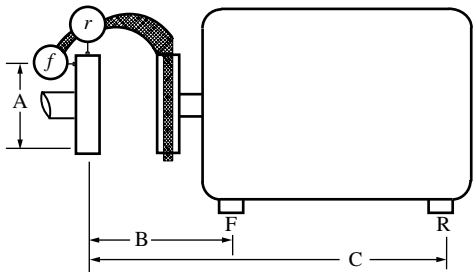
Solution: Only the lower left block in Fig. 3b corresponds to a negative face reading and a positive rim reading. The diagram indicates that shims will be required under both front and rear feet. The required shim thickness for front and rear feet is calculated as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.042}{2} + \frac{-0.036 \times 8.875}{-4.25}$$
$$= 0.021 + 0.075$$
$$= 0.096 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.042}{2} + \frac{-0.036 \times 28.75}{-4.25}$$
$$= 0.021 + 0.244$$
$$= 0.265 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

4th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 4a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 4a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 4

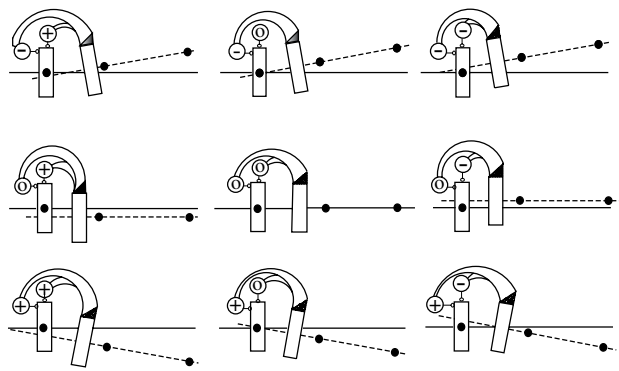


Fig. 4b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 4
Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 3.5$ inches, $B = 8.25$ inches, and $C = 19.25$ inches. The two indicators read $r =$ minus (–) 0.011 inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.019 inch respectively.

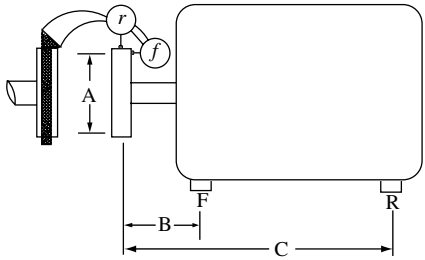
Solution: According to the top left block in Fig. 4b, the negative rim and negative face values indicate that the motor needs to have shims removed from beneath both the front and rear feet. The calculations that follow confirm that 0.05 inch needs to be removed from beneath the front feet, and 0.11 inch from below the rear feet. This adjusting may be difficult if the motor is sitting on its base without shims.

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.011}{2} + \frac{-0.019 \times 8.25}{3.5}$$
$$= -0.0055 + (-0.04479)$$
$$= -0.050 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.011}{2} + \frac{-0.019 \times 19.25}{3.5}$$
$$= -0.0055 + (-0.1045)$$
$$= -0.110 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

5th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 5a. In the figure, notice that the origin of the dimensions *B* and *C* is the line of the rim indicator.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 5a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 5

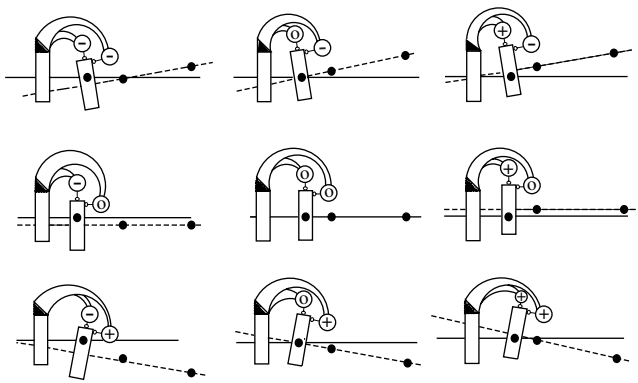


Fig. 5b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 5

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.0$ inches, $B = 5.50$ inches, and $C = 17$ inches. The two indicator dials read $r =$ plus (+) 0.042 inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.036 inch respectively.

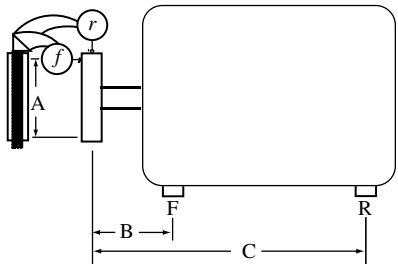
Solution: The top right block in Fig. 5b corresponds to the positive rim value and a negative face value of the indicators, and indicates that both ends of the motor need to be moved down. This requirement is confirmed by the negative shim numbers that provide the exact distance as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.042}{-2} + \frac{-0.036 \times 5.50}{4.0}$$
$$= -0.021 + (-0.0495)$$
$$= -0.0705 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.042}{-2} + \frac{-0.036 \times 17.0}{4.0}$$
$$= -0.021 + (-0.153)$$
$$= -0.174 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

6th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 6a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 6a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 6

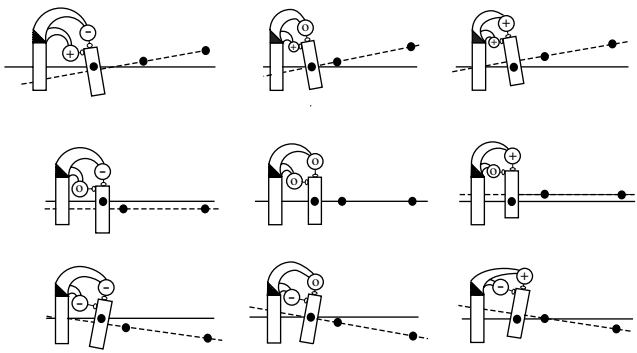


Fig. 6b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 6
Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.75$ inches, $B = 6.25$ inches, and $C = 31.75$ inches. The two indicator dials: r = minus (–) 0.024 inch and f = plus (+) 0.005 inch respectively.

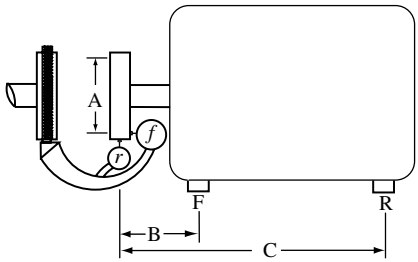
Solution: The top left block in Fig. 6b describes the situation of negative rim and positive face values. The generic graph suggests that both the front and rear feet need some shims to be removed, but the calculations below require that some positive movement of the front feet is required. If in doubt, follow the numbers; the graphs are not drawn to scale. The formulas call for 0.005 inch added under the front feet and the rear feet to be lowered by 0.021 inch:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.024}{-2} + \frac{0.005 \times 6.25}{-4.75}$$
$$= 0.012 - 0.006578$$
$$= 0.005 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.024}{-2} + \frac{0.005 \times 31.75}{-4.75}$$
$$= 0.012 + (-0.03342)$$
$$= -0.021 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

7th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 7a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 7a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 7

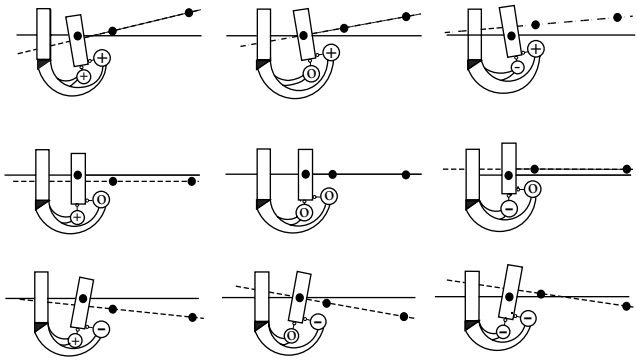


Fig. 7b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 7

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are A =12.375 inches, B =14.875 inches, and C = 47.75 inches. The two indicator dials: r = minus (–) 0.002 inch and f = plus (+) 0.001 inch respectively.

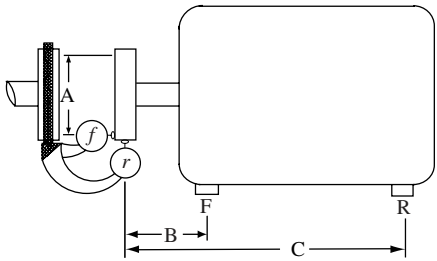
Solution: This motor is almost in alignment. The upper right block of Fig. 7b corresponds to the negative rim and positive face condition. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be lowered, depending on the magnitude of the variables. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit needs to be lowered at both front and rear shim points. Shims on front and rear feet will be as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{0.001 \times 14.875}{-12.375}$$
$$= -0.001 + (-0.001)$$
$$= -0.002 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{0.001 \times 47.75}{-12.375}$$
$$= -0.001 + (-0.003858)$$
$$= -0.005 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

8th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 8a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 8a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 8

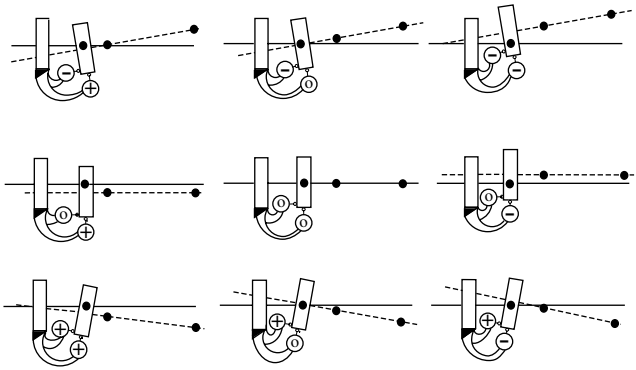


Fig. 8b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 8

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are A =12.375 inches, B =14.875 inches, and C = 47.75 inches. The two indicator dials: r = minus (–) 0.042 inch and f = minus (–) 0.002 inch respectively.

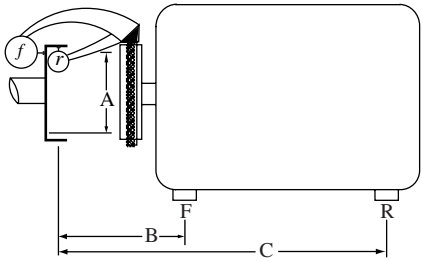
Solution: In Fig. 8b, the top right block conforms to negative rim and negative face values. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be lowered. The formula dictates exactly how much the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points. Shims removed on front and rear feet will be as follows:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.042}{2} + \frac{-0.002 \times 14.875}{12.375}$$
$$= -0.021 + (-0.002)$$
$$= -0.023 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.042}{2} + \frac{-0.002 \times 47.75}{12.375}$$
$$= -0.021 + (-0.0077)$$
$$= -0.029 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

9th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 9a. The driven unit here could be any of several devices including the "catch" drum for a centrifugal clutch.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 9a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 9

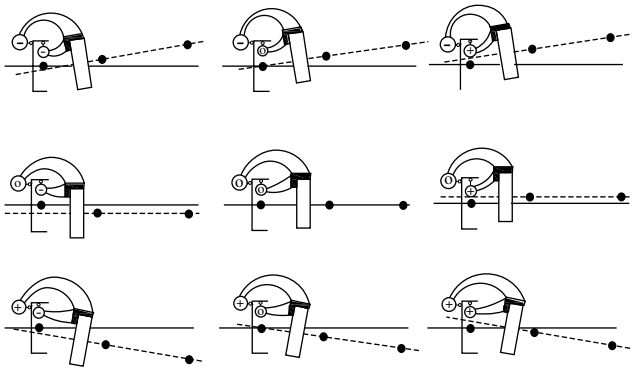


Fig. 9b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 9

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are A =10.375 inches, B = 22.0 inches, and C = 48.0 inches. The two indicator dials read r = 0.00 inch and f = plus (+) 0.017 inch respectively.

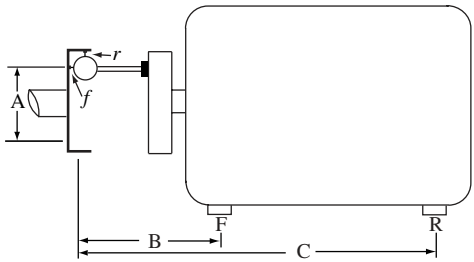
Solution: In Fig. 9b, the center block of the bottom row represents zero rim and positive face values. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be moved up by adding shims, depending on the magnitude of the variables. The formula solution below dictates that the front feet be moved up 0.036 inch and the rear feet be moved up 0.079 inch:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A} = \frac{0.00}{-2} + \frac{0.017 \times 22}{10.375} = -0.00 + 0.036 = 0.036 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A} = \frac{0.00}{-2} + \frac{0.017 \times 48}{10.375} = -0.00 + 0.079 = 0.079 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

10th Arrangement.—Fig. 10a illustrates an arrangement used for taking two separate readings with one dial indicator.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 10a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 10

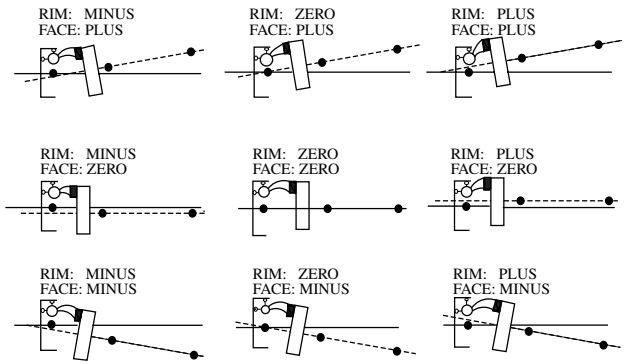


Fig. 10b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 10

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 5.50$ inches, $B = 14.0$ inches, and $C = 35.0$ inches. The indicator readings are $r =$ plus (+) 0.030 inch and $f =$ plus (+) 0.022 inch, respectively.

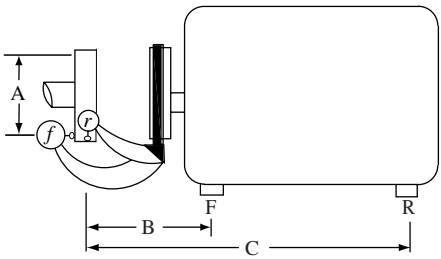
Solution: In Fig. 10b locate the block illustrating the positive rim and positive face condition. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be lowered. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.030}{-2} + \frac{0.022 \times 14}{-5.5}$$
$$= -0.015 + (-0.056)$$
$$= -0.071 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.030}{-2} + \frac{0.022 \times 35}{-5.5}$$
$$= -0.015 + (-0.140)$$
$$= -0.155 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

11th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 11a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 11a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 11

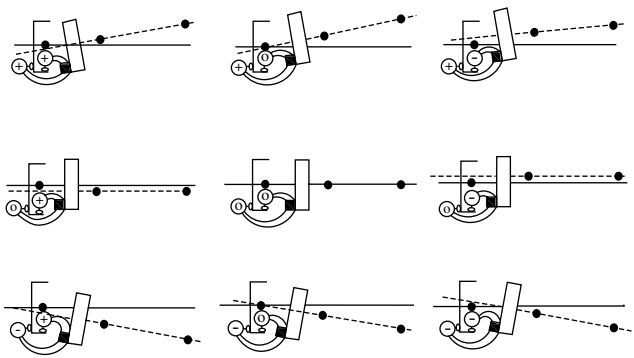


Fig. 11b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 11
Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the necessary shims for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 6.50$ inches, $B = 16.625$ inches, and $C = 42.0$ inches. The two indicator dials read $r = 0.000$ inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.026 inch respectively.

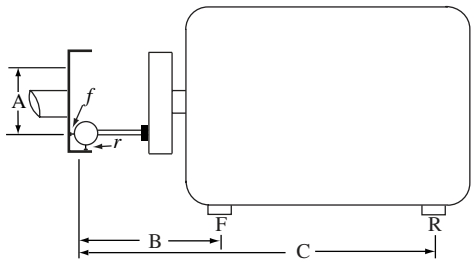
Solution: The center block in the last row of Fig. 11b describes the zero rim and negative face value condition. The motor is too low because of angularity (face reading), but the elevation is correct at the axial position of the rim indicator reading. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be moved up. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit is raised at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.00}{2} + \frac{-0.026 \times 16.625}{-6.50}$$
$$= 0.00 + 0.0665$$
$$= 0.0665 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{0.00}{2} + \frac{-0.026 \times 42}{-6.50}$$
$$= 0.00 + 0.168$$
$$= 0.168 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

12th Arrangement.—The set up in Fig. 12a could be one indicator with two stems, or one indicator taking separate face and rim readings at the same location.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 12a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 12

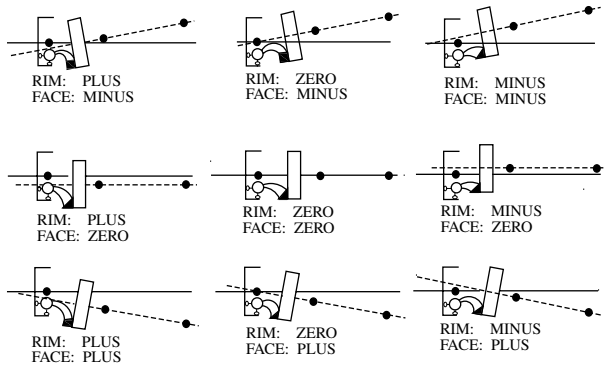


Fig. 12b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 12

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 23.0$ inches, $B = 41.0$ inches, and $C = 96.0$ inches. The two indicator readings are $r =$ plus (+)0.004 inch and $f =$ minus (−)0.003 inch, respectively.

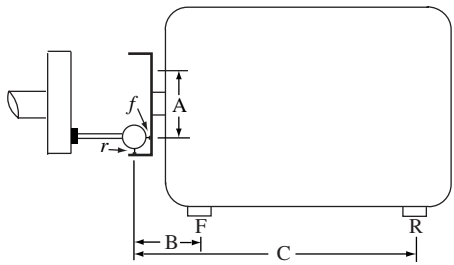
Solution: For practical purposes, this unit is already within tolerance by most standards. However, the block in the upper left corner of Fig. 12b illustrates the positive rim and negative face condition. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be lowered. Removal of 0.003 inch of shim at the front and 0.011 inch at the rear feet will reduce misalignment to less than a mil on the next reading.

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{2} + \frac{-0.003 \times 41}{23.0}$$
$$= 0.002 + (-0.005)$$
$$= -0.003 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{2} + \frac{-0.003 \times 96}{23.0}$$
$$= 0.002 + (-0.013)$$
$$= -0.011 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

13th Arrangement.—In Fig. 13a, the indicator jig is mounted on the static unit and two separate readings are taken from surfaces of the inside of a centrifugal clutch drum on the movable unit.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 13a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 13

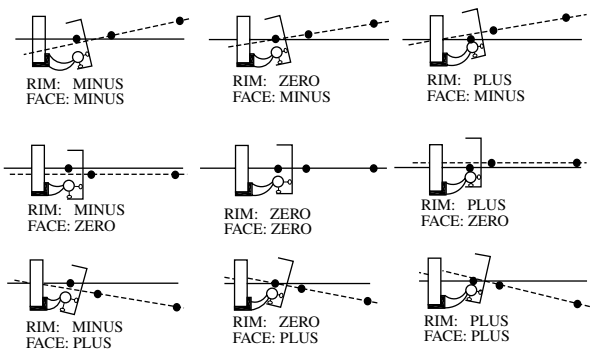


Fig. 13b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 13

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 23.0$ inches, $B = 20.0$ inches, and $C = 75.0$ inches. The indicator readings are $r =$ plus (+) 0.004 inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.003 inch, respectively.

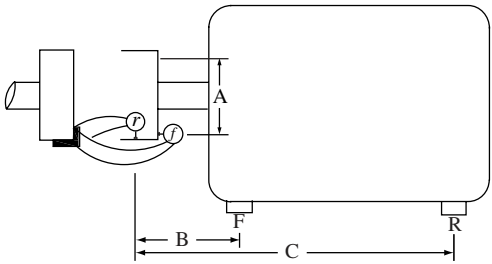
Solution: The positive rim and negative face condition is illustrated in the top right block of Fig. 13b. The graph suggests that both the front and rear motor feet needs to be lowered. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{-2} + \frac{-0.003 \times 20}{23.0}$$
$$= -0.002 + (-0.0026)$$
$$= -0.005 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$
$$= \frac{0.004}{-2} + \frac{-0.003 \times 75}{23.0}$$
$$= -0.002 + (-0.00978)$$
$$= -0.012 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

14th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 14a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 14a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 14

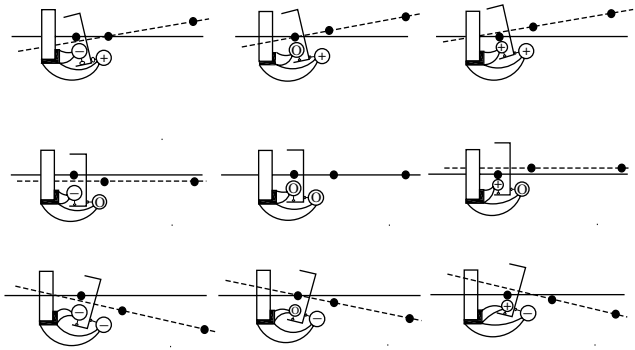


Fig. 14b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 14

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.625$ inches, $B = 10.75$ inches, and $C = 32.5$ inches. The two indicator dials read r = minus (–) 0.014 inch and f = plus (+) 0.036 inch respectively.

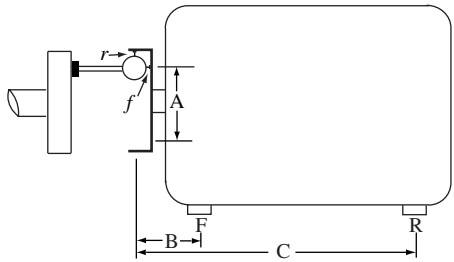
Solution: In Fig. 14b, the negative rim and positive face condition is shown in the top left block. The graph suggests that both the front and rear motor feet should be lowered, depending on the magnitude of the variables. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.014}{-2} + \frac{0.036 \times 10.75}{-4.625}$$
$$= 0.007 + (-0.0837)$$
$$= -0.077 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.014}{-2} + \frac{0.036 \times 32.5}{-4.625}$$
$$= 0.007 + (-0.25297)$$
$$= -0.246 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

15th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 15a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$

Fig. 15a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 15

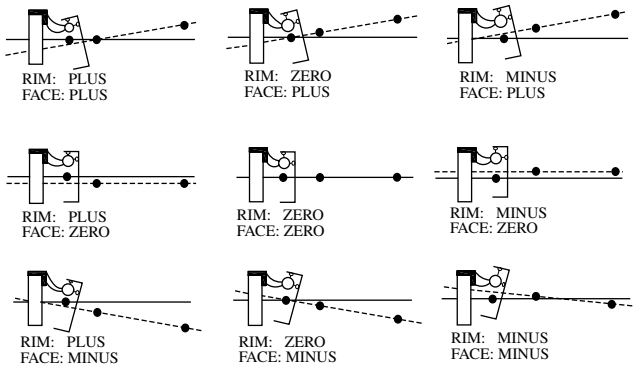


Fig. 15b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 15

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the generic graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 6.0$ inches, $B = 38.0$ inches, and $C = 84.0$ inches. The two indicator dials reads $r =$ minus (–) 0.002 inch and $f =$ plus (+) 0.003 inch respectively.

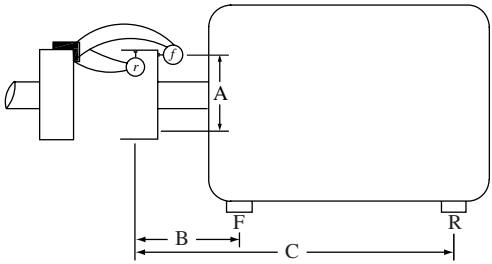
Solution: The negative rim and positive face condition is found in the top right corner of Fig. 15b. The graph suggests that both the front and rear motor feet need to be lowered. The formula solution dictates exactly how much the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{0.003 \times 38.0}{-6.0}$$
$$= -0.001 + (-0.019)$$
$$= -0.020 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{-A}$$
$$= \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{0.003 \times 84.0}{-6.0}$$
$$= -0.001 + (-0.042)$$
$$= -0.043 \text{ inch}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

16th Arrangement.—Place rim and face indicators as shown in Fig. 16a.



$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A}$$

Fig. 16a. Dial Indicator Arrangement 16

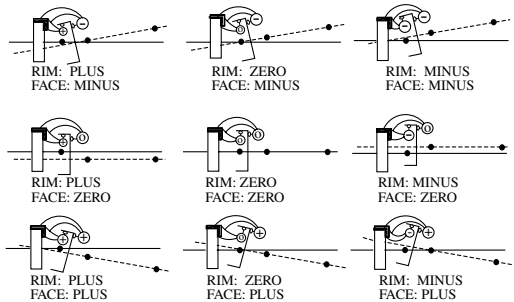


Fig. 16b. Interpreting Dial Indicator Readings for Indicator Arrangement 16

Solid lines represent the desired location for the dashed lines (movable unit). The plus, minus, and zero readings on the indicators are represented by one of these nine scenarios. Depending on the magnitude of the variables, the graph gives a mental picture of what the formulas should yield.

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 16.0$ inches, $B = 26.0$ inches, and $C = 54.0$ inches. The two indicator dials read $r =$ minus (–) 0.002 inch and $f =$ minus (–) 0.006 inch respectively.

Solution: The rim and face numbers indicate that the whole movable machine is one mil high (from the rim indicator, $^{r}/_{2} = {}^{0.002}/_{2} = 0.001$), and the angularity from the face indicator say that for every 16 inches of axial length from the rim indicator there is an upward incline toward the rear of 0.006 inch. In Fig. 16b, locate the block with negative rim and negative face values. The graph suggests both the front and rear motor feet be lowered. The formula solution dictates that the movable unit is to be lowered at both front and rear shim points:

$$F = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times B}{A} = \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{-0.006 \times 26}{16} = -0.001 + (-0.00975) = -0.011 \text{ inch}$$

$$R = \frac{\pm r}{2} + \frac{\pm f \times C}{A} = \frac{-0.002}{2} + \frac{-0.006 \times 54.0}{16} = -0.001 + (-0.02025) = -0.021 \text{ inch}$$

Rim and Face Method Extended to Motors with Extra Feet.—Fig. 17 illustrates an alignment problem that is complicated by the fact that the motor has ten feet. The indicator

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

arrangement used matches the arrangement illustrated in Fig. 14a. In this problem the solution is obtained by using the same equations as were used to obtain the solution of Fig. 14a, adapted slightly to deal with the additional feet.

Shim calculations for motor to pump alignment when the motor has more than four feet are performed in the same manner as the examples previously used. However, care must be used in determining the dimensions used in the equations. As in all the previous examples, the horizontal dimensions are measured from the location of the rim indicator. Distances to motor feet to the right of the rim indicator are assigned positive values, and distances measured to feet that are to the left of the rim indicator are assigned negative values in the formulas. The revised equations for this arrangement are shown beside Fig. 17. In the equations, S_F is the shim requirement at foot F, S_{F1} is the shim requirement at foot F1, etc.

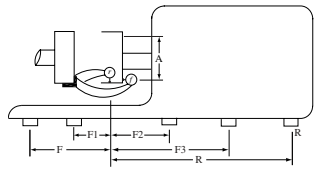


Fig. 17. Shaft Alignment When More than Four Feet are Involved
Dimensions are measured from the path of the rim indicator. Dimensions to locations left of the rim indicator enter the equations as minus (–) values, and dimension to the right of the rim indicator enter the equations as positive (+) quantities.

$$S_F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times (-F)}{-A}$$

$$S_{F1} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times (-F1)}{-A}$$

$$S_{F2} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times F2}{-A}$$

$$S_{F3} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times F3}{-A}$$

$$S_R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times R}{-A}$$

Example: Calculate the shims necessary for a pump and motor alignment where dimensions are $A = 4.5$ inches, $F = 22.0$ inches, $F1 = 10.0$ inches, $F2 = 8.0$ inches, $F3 = 24.0$ inches, and $R = 46.0$ inches. The two indicator dials read r = minus (–)0.054 inch and f = plus (+)0.032 inch, respectively.

Solution, Vertical Alignment:

$$S_F = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times (-F)}{-A} = \frac{-0.054}{-2} + \frac{0.032 \times (-22)}{-4.5} = 0.027 + 0.156 = 0.183 \text{ inch}$$

$$S_{F1} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times (-F1)}{-A} = \frac{-0.054}{-2} + \frac{0.032 \times (-10)}{-4.5} = 0.027 + 0.071 = 0.098 \text{ inch}$$

$$S_{F2} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times F2}{-A} = \frac{-0.054}{-2} + \frac{0.032 \times 8}{-4.5} = 0.027 + (-0.156) = -0.030 \text{ inch}$$

$$S_{F3} = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times F3}{-A} = \frac{-0.054}{-2} + \frac{0.032 \times 24}{-4.5} = 0.027 + (-0.171) = -0.144 \text{ inch}$$

$$S_R = \frac{\pm r}{-2} + \frac{\pm f \times R}{-A} = \frac{-0.054}{-2} + \frac{0.032 \times 46}{-4.5} = 0.027 + (-0.327) = -0.300 \text{ inch}$$

The calculations show that more shims are required under the two pairs of front feet, F and $F1$, and need to be reduced for the other three pairs of rear feet. The top left figure in Fig. 14b (negative rim and positive face indicator readings) confirms that the numerical solution appears reasonable.

Solution, Horizontal Alignment: The horizontal alignment solution follows the same procedure as the vertical solution above, and will use the same equations if the indicator set up shown in Fig. 17 is used.

The dimensions F, $F1$, $F2$, $F3$, and R are the distances from the rim indictor path to the respective locations where the move occurs, whether it be the location of the hold-down bolts, or another location where a monitoring dial indicator is mounted. See *Solution for Horizontal Alignment* on page 2729 for additional information on this subject.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

FLUID POWER

Introduction

A fluid is a substance which deforms continuously when subjected to a shear stress. Fluid power systems convert mechanical or potential energy into fluid energy, and usually perform work with the fluid energy. The fluid used can be either a liquid or a gas. When liquids are used, it is a hydraulic system, and when a gas is used it is a pneumatic system.

Properties of Liquids and Gases.—One of the main differences between liquids and gases has to do with compressibility. Compressibility is a measure of the relative volume change of a substance with a change in pressure. Liquids are only slightly compressible, and are usually considered to be incompressible for the purposes of fluid power calculations. Gases, on the other hand, are very compressible under normal conditions.

Specific weight is the weight of a fluid per unit of volume. Mass density of a fluid is the mass contained within a unit of volume. When a fluid is pressurized, its density and specific weight increase, and when a fluid is heated, its density and specific weight decrease. Liquids are affected very little by these factors, while gases are very much affected. Specific gravity is the ratio between specific weight or density at actual versus standard conditions. Specific gravity changes with specific weight or density. Standard conditions are taken to be 4°C for water, and 0°C for air. Other fluids may have different standard conditions. Standard symbols and equations for these properties are shown below. Table 1, Table 2 and Table 3 contain the properties of some common fluids.

Fluid Property Symbols and Equations

Specific weight: lbf/ft^3, N/m^3	$\gamma = \rho g = \frac{w}{V}$
Density	$\rho = \frac{m}{V}$
slugs/ft^3, kg/m^3	ρ
lbm/ft^3	$\rho_{lbm} = \rho g_c$
Gravitational Constant: lbm-ft/lbf-s^2	$g_c = 32.2$
Specific Gravity: dimensionless	$SG = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma_c} = \frac{\rho}{\rho_c}$
The control specific weight γ_c for liquids is water, and for gases is air.	

The density of dry air at 32 degrees F and atmospheric pressure (29.92 inches of mercury or 14.70 pounds per square inch) is 0.08073 pound per cubic foot.

The density of air at any other temperature or pressure is

$$\rho = \frac{1.325 \times B}{T}$$

in which ρ = density in pounds per cubic foot; B = height of barometric pressure in inches of mercury; T = absolute temperature in degrees Rankine. (When using pounds as a unit care must be exercised to differentiate between pounds mass and pounds force. See *Acceleration of Gravity g Used in Mechanics Formulas* on page 157.

The absolute zero from which all temperatures must be counted when dealing with the weight and volume of gases is assumed to be −459.7 degrees F. Hence, to obtain the absolute temperature T used in the preceding formula, add the value 459.7 to the temperature observed on a regular Fahrenheit thermometer.

In obtaining the value of B, 1 inch of mercury at 32 degrees F may be taken as equal to a pressure of 0.491 pound per square inch.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. Density of Air at Different Pressures and Temperatures

Temp. of Air, °F	Gage Pressure, Pounds														
	0	5	10	20	30	40	50	60	80	100	120	150	200	250	300
	Density in Pounds per Cubic Foot														
–20	0.0900	0.1205	0.1515	0.2125	0.274	0.336	0.397	0.458	0.580	0.702	0.825	1.010	1.318	1.625	1.930
–10	0.0882	0.1184	0.1485	0.2090	0.268	0.328	0.388	0.448	0.567	0.687	0.807	0.989	1.288	1.588	1.890
0	0.0864	0.1160	0.1455	0.2040	0.263	0.321	0.380	0.438	0.555	0.672	0.790	0.968	1.260	1.553	1.850
10	0.0846	0.1136	0.1425	0.1995	0.257	0.314	0.372	0.429	0.543	0.658	0.774	0.947	1.233	1.520	1.810
20	0.0828	0.1112	0.1395	0.1955	0.252	0.307	0.364	0.420	0.533	0.645	0.757	0.927	1.208	1.489	1.770
30	0.0811	0.1088	0.1366	0.1916	0.246	0.301	0.357	0.412	0.522	0.632	0.742	0.908	1.184	1.460	1.735
40	0.0795	0.1067	0.1338	0.1876	0.241	0.295	0.350	0.404	0.511	0.619	0.727	0.890	1.161	1.431	1.701
50	0.0780	0.1045	0.1310	0.1839	0.237	0.290	0.343	0.396	0.501	0.607	0.713	0.873	1.139	1.403	1.668
60	0.0764	0.1025	0.1283	0.1803	0.232	0.284	0.336	0.388	0.493	0.596	0.700	0.856	1.116	1.376	1.636
80	0.0736	0.0988	0.1239	0.1738	0.224	0.274	0.324	0.374	0.473	0.572	0.673	0.824	1.074	1.325	1.573
100	0.0710	0.0954	0.1197	0.1676	0.215	0.264	0.312	0.360	0.455	0.551	0.648	0.794	1.035	1.276	1.517
120	0.0680	0.0921	0.1155	0.1618	0.208	0.255	0.302	0.348	0.440	0.533	0.626	0.767	1.001	1.234	1.465
140	0.0663	0.0889	0.1115	0.1565	0.201	0.246	0.291	0.336	0.426	0.516	0.606	0.742	0.968	1.194	1.416
150	0.0652	0.0874	0.1096	0.1541	0.198	0.242	0.286	0.331	0.419	0.508	0.596	0.730	0.953	1.175	1.392
175	0.0626	0.0840	0.1054	0.1482	0.191	0.233	0.275	0.318	0.403	0.488	0.573	0.701	0.914	1.128	1.337
200	0.0603	0.0809	0.1014	0.1427	0.184	0.225	0.265	0.305	0.388	0.470	0.552	0.674	0.879	1.084	1.287
225	0.0581	0.0779	0.0976	0.1373	0.177	0.216	0.255	0.295	0.374	0.452	0.531	0.649	0.846	1.043	1.240
250	0.0560	0.0751	0.0941	0.1323	0.170	0.208	0.247	0.284	0.360	0.436	0.513	0.627	0.817	1.007	1.197
275	0.0541	0.0726	0.0910	0.1278	0.164	0.201	0.238	0.274	0.348	0.421	0.494	0.605	0.789	0.972	1.155
300	0.0523	0.0707	0.0881	0.1237	0.159	0.194	0.230	0.265	0.336	0.407	0.478	0.585	0.762	0.940	1.118
350	0.0491	0.0658	0.0825	0.1160	0.149	0.183	0.216	0.249	0.316	0.382	0.449	0.549	0.715	0.883	1.048
400	0.0463	0.0621	0.0779	0.1090	0.140	0.172	0.203	0.235	0.297	0.360	0.423	0.517	0.674	0.831	0.987
450	0.0437	0.0586	0.0735	0.1033	0.133	0.163	0.192	0.222	0.281	0.340	0.399	0.488	0.637	0.786	0.934
500	0.0414	0.0555	0.0696	0.978	0.126	0.154	0.182	0.210	0.266	0.322	0.379	0.463	0.604	0.746	0.885
550	0.0394	0.0528	0.0661	0.930	0.120	0.146	0.173	0.200	0.253	0.306	0.359	0.440	0.573	0.749	0.841
600	0.0376	0.0504	0.0631	0.885	0.114	0.139	0.165	0.190	0.241	0.292	0.343	0.419	0.547	0.675	0.801

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 2. Mass Density and Specific Weight of Water at Selected Temperatures

Temperature		Mass Density		Specific Weight	
°F	°C	slug/ft^3	kg/m^3	lbf/ft^3	N/m^3
32	0	1.94	999.835	62.42	9810
50	10	1.94	999.835	62.41	9800
60	15.6	1.938	998.804	62.37	9800
70	21.1	1.936	997.773	62.31	9790
80	26.7	1.934	996.743	62.23	9780
100	37.8	1.927	993.135	62.02	9740
120	48.9	1.918	988.497	61.74	9700
140	60	1.908	983.343	61.37	9640
160	71.1	1.896	977.158	60.98	9580
180	82.2	1.883	970.458	60.55	9510
200	93.3	1.869	963.243	60.12	9440
212	100	1.86	958.605	59.83	9400

Table 3. Properties of Common Fluids at Atmospheric Pressure

	Temperature		Density		Specific Weight		
Fluid	°F	°C	slug/ft^3	kg/m^3	lbf/ft^3	N/m^3	Specific Gravity
Air	68	20	2.33×10^{-3}	1.205	0.075	11.8	1
Nitrogen	68	20	2.26×10^{-3}	1.165	…	…	0.9669
Water	68	20	1.936	998.2	62.4	9.81×10^3	1
Seawater	68	20	1.987	1024	63.9	10.03×10^3	1.025

Pressure.—Pressure, p, is defined as the average force per unit area, A, exerted by a fluid.

$$p = \frac{F}{A}$$

The pressure at a point in a static fluid is the same in all directions, and the same at all points in that fluid. The pressure exerted by a fluid on a solid surface is always perpendicular to that surface. Pressure measured relative to atmospheric pressure is called gauge pressure.

Pressure measured relative to a perfect vacuum is called absolute pressure. The relationship between absolute pressure and gauge pressure is given in the following equation:

$$P_a = P_g + P_{atm}$$

where $P_a = 14.696$ psi (US); and, $\mathbf{P_a = 101.325\ kPa\ (SI)}$.

The change in pressure in a non-moving liquid due to a change in elevation is dependent on the specific weight of the fluid and can be calculated using the following equations. Elevation is always taken to be positive in the upward direction relative to the reference plane. The pressure caused by elevation is independent of the shape and size of the container and its free surface.

$p = \gamma h$ where γ is specific weight (lbf/ft^3 or N/m^3), h is elevation (ft or m), and p is pressure (lbf/ft^2 or N/m^2)

$p = \dfrac{\gamma h}{144}$ where γ is specific weight (lbf/ft^3), h is elevation (ft), and p is pressure (psi)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For ideal gases, the relationship between pressure, temperature, and specific volume can be found in the following equations. Specific volume is the volume occupied by a unit mass of a fluid.

$$PV = 1545.3nT \quad \text{For fps units}$$

$$PV = 8314nT \quad \text{For SI units}$$

in which P = absolute pressure in pounds per square foot or Pa (N/m^2)

V = volume in cubic feet or cubic meter

T = absolute temperature in degrees R or degrees K

n = number of pound moles or kg moles. A mole is the mass of substance, in appropriate units, divided by its molecular weight. The equations above are general forms that apply to any gas that behaves the ideal gas law.

Viscosity.—Viscosity is a liquid property that indicates its resistance to flow. It is a measure of a fluid's resistance to a shearing force. High viscosity fluids require a greater force to shear at a given rate than low viscosity fluids. This is the most important property of fluids when designing and analyzing fluid power systems. An ideal fluid has zero viscosity, and gases have nearly zero viscosity. For most fluids, viscosity varies significantly with temperature. It is relatively unaffected by changes in pressure, unless they are extreme. Newtonian fluids are those whose viscosity is independent of velocity gradient.

Viscosity index is the change in viscosity relative to change in temperature. Absolute, or dynamic, viscosity relates shearing stress in a fluid to the velocity gradient. Kinematic viscosity is the ratio of a fluid's absolute viscosity to its mass density. Absolute viscosity is often measured in centipoise (cP), and kinematic viscosity in centistokes (cSt).

Equations and conversion factors for absolute and kinematic viscosity are given below. The absolute and kinematic viscosity of various fluids can be found in Table 4.

$$\textit{Absolute viscosity: } \mu = \frac{F\,dy}{A\,dv} \text{ lbf-s/ft}^2 \text{ or N-s/m}^2 \text{ (Pa-s)}$$

Units may be expressed in centipoise, cP

$$\text{cP} = 2.09 \times 10^{-5} \text{ lbf-s/ft}^2$$

$$\text{cP} = 1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ Pa-s}$$

$$\textit{Kinematic viscosity: } \upsilon = \frac{\mu}{\rho} \text{ ft}^2\text{/s or m}^2\text{/s}$$

Units may be expressed in centistokes, cSt

$$\text{cSt} = 1.07 \times 10^{-5} \text{ ft}^2\text{/s}$$

$$\text{cSt} = 1 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2\text{/s}$$

Table 4. Viscosity of Common Fluids at Atmospheric Pressure

	Absolute Viscosity			Kinematic Viscosity		
Fluid	lbf-s/ft^2	Pa-s	cP	ft^2/s	m^2/s	cSt
Air	3.75×10^{-7}	1.80×10^{-5}	0.018	1.64×10^{-4}	1.52×10^{-5}	15.24
Nitrogen	3.75×10^{-7}	1.80×10^{-5}	0.018	1.64×10^{-4}	1.52×10^{-5}	15.24
Water	2.09×10^{-5}	1.00×10^{-3}	1	1.07×10^{-5}	1.00×10^{-6}	1
Seawater	2.26×10^{-5}	1.08×10^{-3}	1.08	1.13×10^{-5}	1.05×10^{-6}	1.15
Mercury	3.34×10^{-5}	1.60×10^{-3}	1.6	1.27×10^{-6}	1.18×10^{-7}	0.118

Properties based on temperature 68°F or 20°C.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fluid Circuits

Fluid circuits contain compressed and flowing fluid, either liquid or gas, and convey it to perform work. They usually employ a valve to stop and/or control the direction of flow.

Standard Fluid Circuit Components.—Fluid circuits typically include fluid preparation components, valves, actuators, and connecting lines. Pneumatic circuits also normally include provisions for gas to be exhausted to the atmosphere, through a silencer, to a reclassifying filter, or to an exhaust manifold where it can be ducted elsewhere. Quick exhausting of gas is essential for fast pneumatic circuit response. Hydraulic circuits are generally closed, that is, recirculating fluid rather than discharging it.

Fluid Circuit Types.—There are two main fluid circuit types, which are classified in terms of how the valve functions.

Open and Closed Center Circuits: Open center circuits permit nearly unrestricted flow through the valve and back to the source when the valve is de-energized. Closed center circuits block flow through the valve when the valve is de-energized. This type of circuit is recommended when you have multiple circuits on a single supply.

Flow Control Circuits: To control the speed of an actuator in a pneumatic circuit, use flow controls. Flow controls always generate some heat in hydraulic circuits, so with hydraulics they should be avoided where possible and other methods used. There are three types of flow control circuits: meter-in, meter-out, and bleed-off (or bypass). Pneumatic and some hydraulic systems use meter-in and meter-out circuits, while many hydraulic circuits use bleed-off types.

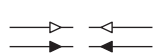
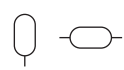
Meter-in circuits have a flow control valve before an actuator. Meter-in control can be used for actuator speed control. For hydraulic systems, a regulated bypass circuit is recommended rather than a restrictive flow control to reduce generated heat.

Meter-out circuits are best for pneumatic actuator speed control, and are required for applications with large negative loads on actuators. For example when lowering a heavy weight, a meter-out circuit is best. Flow control is placed after the actuator to restrict flow coming out. Because the positive side of the actuator sees full system pressure and flow, the mechanical system is very stable under loading. Care must be taken to avoid overloading actuators when using meter-out circuits.

Fluid Component Symbols and Circuit Diagrams.—Fluid power circuits are documented through the use of circuit diagrams or schematics. The components in a circuit are represented symbolically and connected with lines representing pipe or tubing. The symbols are used to identify and represent the function of the components. Symbols for fluid power components have been standardized by ANSI Y32.10 and ISO 1219. Some common symbols can be found in Table 5.

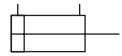
Directional control valve symbols show the valve's positions, methods of actuation, flow paths, and ports. The valve positions are represented by boxes. The methods of left and right valve actuation are represented by symbols on each end of the valve symbol. The flow path for each position is shown within its respective position box. Ports are marked on the position box that corresponds to the de-energized state of the valve.

Table 5. Selected ANSI Fluid Component Symbols

Solid Line Main Line Conductor, Physical Outline, or Shaft	Dashed Line Pilot Line for Control	Dotted Line Exhaust or Drain Line	Center Line Enclosure Outline
 Circle Device, Connector, or Component	 Triangle Indicates Flow Direction[a]: (See footnote [a])	 Square Reservoir (Closed, Open)	 Oval Accumulator or Receiver

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. *(Continued)* **Selected ANSI Fluid Component Symbols**

Diamond Fluid Conditioner (Filter, Strainer)	Arrow Through Symbol at 45° Indicates Component Can Be Adjusted	 Pump, Fixed Capacity (One direction of flow)	 Pump, Variable Capacity (Two directions of flow)
 Single Acting Air Cylinder	 Single Acting Spring Return Air Cylinder	 Double Acting Air Cylinder	 Double Acting Rotary Actuator
 Pressure Regulator, Adjustable and Relieving	 Pressure Gauge	 Temperature Gauge	 Cooler
 Check Valve	 Shut-off Valve	 Flow Control Valve, Adjustable	 Pressure Control Valve
 Pressure Relief Valve	 Directional Valve Two Port, Two Position (2/2) Two Way, Normally Open	 Directional Valve Three Port, Two Position (3/2) Two Way, Normally Closed	 Directional Valve Five Port, Two Position (5/2) Four Way, Normally Open
 Directional Valve Five Port, Three Position (5/3) Four Way, Normally Closed	 Directional Valve Two Position, Three Way, Normally Open, With Manual Actuation and Spring Return	 Directional Valve Two Position, Three Way, Normally Open, With Single Solenoid and Spring Return	 Directional Valve Two Position, Three Way, Normally Open, With Double Solenoids and Manual Overrides

[a] A pneumatic direction symbol is shown as an outline; a hydraulic symbol is filled.

Fluid Circuit Analysis Considerations.—When designing or analyzing a fluid circuit, one must consider fluid type, flow rate, velocity, pressure, and temperature. Fluid type and temperature will determine how it behaves as it is manipulated. Excessive velocities can lead to noise, vibration, and stresses. Pressure and flow rate will determine what size and type of pipe, tube, and components can be used. Also important to consider is the structural integrity of the system, including the weight of components, connections, and fluid. Every component in a fluid circuit, with the exceptions of pumps and compressors, will cause energy to be lost from the fluid. Friction, gravity, directional change, and restriction are all causes of lost energy. A careful analysis of energy added and lost from a fluid circuit must be completed as part of the design process.

Safety Notes.—When designing fluid circuits, safety should be of paramount importance. The logic of all circuits should be checked for proper performance during startup, shutdown, pressure loss, emergency stops, and other foreseeable events. Before selecting any control element, it is important to first know the safety category for the function being controlled by the fluid circuit. The manufacturer can assist in selecting components with the proper safety functions and ratings. It is important to note that any compressed gas other than air is an asphyxiation hazard. Air quality monitoring devices should be used when the volume of available gas has the potential to create an unsafe environment in the event of a leak. Some fluids can be incompatible with materials used in the circuit. Check material compatibility of seals, tubing, and other components. Check the temperature ratings of any components against the expected temperature of the fluid application.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pressure and Flow

Fluids are often delivered at a much higher pressure than needed. This pressure can be measured through a variety of means and brought down to a set level using a pressure regulator. When delivery pressure fluctuates, the installation of a regulator set at a lower pressure can stabilize pressure downstream for the fluid power components in the circuit.

Pressure Generation.—Pressure is raised in fluids in a variety of ways, the most common being pumps, compressors, and diffusers. Diffusers are sometimes contained within pumps, and are commonly part of HVAC systems.

Compressors, Fans, Blowers, and Pumps: Liquids have their pressures increased by pumps, while gases have their pressures increased by compressors, fans, and blowers. Compressors and some types of fans and blowers are similar to pumps, but the compression of gases is subject to the laws of thermodynamics. More information about gas compressors, fans, and blowers can be found in the section *Pneumatics* starting on page 2810.

Diffusers: Diffusers use a gradual enlargement of a pipe to convert velocity energy into pressure. Diffusers are used both to raise pressure and to decrease velocity of a fluid. They are used in pipelines to reduce the energy loss when the pipe goes through an enlargement. More on the energy loss of sudden versus gradual enlargement can be found later in this text. The pressure increase generated by a diffuser can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\Delta p = p_o - p_i = \gamma\left[\frac{(v_i^2 - v_o^2)}{2g} - h_l\right]$$

where p_o and v_o are pressure and velocity at the outlet, p_i and v_i are pressure and velocity at the inlet, and h_l is the energy loss through the diffuser.

Pressure Measurement.—Pressure is measured in the United States in terms of pounds per square inch (psi). Where pressures are quite low, inches of water gauge (inH_2O, or in.w.g.) is used. In SI units, pressure is measured in pascals (Pa), kilopascals (kPa), and Megapascals (MPa). Other units of pressure are bars and mmH_2O. Pressure is usually expressed relative to atmospheric pressure (gauge pressure), as opposed to absolute pressure. Negative gauge pressure is a vacuum. Some common pressure unit conversions are given in the following table.

Pressure Conversions

US	SI
1 inH_2O = 0.036 psi	1 mmH_2O = 9.81 Pa
1 psi = 6895 Pa	1 Pa = 0.000145 Psi
1 psi = 144 psf	1 Pa = 1 N/m2
1 atm = 14.7 psi	1 bar = 100,000 Pa
1 atm = 1.01 bar	1 bar = 0.99 atm
1 inHg = 0.49 psi	1 mmHg = 133 Pa

Manometers: Manometers are devices which expose a static column of relatively dense fluid (mercury and oils are commonly used) to a differential pressure. These are used for liquid pressure measurement. In many cases, one end is exposed to a pressurized fluid while the other is left open to atmospheric pressure. The change in elevation of the column of fluid can be used to calculate the pressure of the fluid being measured by using the relationship between pressure and elevation.

Commercial manometers are calibrated and can be purchased in a variety of ranges. Piezometer tubes are types of manometers used for relatively low pressures. They consist of a vertical glass tube inserted into the wall of a pipe or pressure vessel. Its end is open to

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

atmosphere or some known pressure reservoir. The height of the liquid in the tube is read against a calibrated scale and is related to pressure in the pipe or vessel.

Barometers: Barometers are used to measure atmospheric pressure. They operate on the same principle as manometers, where the change in height of a column of gauge fluid (commonly mercury) is used to calculate a change in pressure. Commercial barometers are calibrated and generally measure in the range between 25.5 and 32.5 inches (650–825 mm) of mercury. Corresponding pressures in pound per square inch and pound per square foot are given in Table 6.

Table 6. Relation Between Barometric Pressure, and Pressures in Pounds per Square Inch and Square Foot

Barometer, Inches	Pressure in Psi[a]	Pressure in Psf[a]	Barometer, Inches	Pressure in Psi[a]	Pressure in Psf[a]	Barometer, Inches	Pressure in Psi[a]	Pressure in Psf[a]
28.00	13.75	1980	29.25	14.36	2068	30.50	14.98	2156
28.25	13.87	1997	29.50	14.48	2086	30.75	15.10	2174
28.50	13.99	2015	29.75	14.61	2103	31.00	15.22	2192
28.75	14.12	2033	30.00	14.73	2121	31.25	15.34	2210
29.00	14.24	2050	30.25	14.85	2139	…	…	…

[a] Psi is pound per square inch; Psf is pound per square foot

Pressure Gauges: The most common method of measuring pressure in a fluid power circuit is by using a pressure gauge. There are gauges for liquids and gauges for gases. There are a variety of methods of construction of pressure gauges, including elastic diaphragm, dead weight, magnetic, and Bourdon tube gauges. Commercial gauges are normally calibrated to read zero at standard atmospheric pressure and temperature. Pressure gauges are available in a variety of ranges and units.

Some are capable of reading vacuum, or negative gauge pressure. Liquid filled gauges provide more stable readouts when vibration or pulsation is present in the system. The use of a snubber is recommended when fluid pressure pulsates.

Pressure Transducers: These are used when the display needs to be decoupled from the measurement device. Transducers convert pressures to electrical signals which can be transmitted to remote displays. Pressure transducers can be linear differential transformers, piezoelectric, quartz resonators, or solid state devices.

Pressure Regulation.—Fluids are often delivered at pressures higher than needed. Pressure regulators are used where pressure needs to be lowered and controlled. There are regulators for liquids and others for gases. A pressure regulator is a device generally comprised of three elements; a pressure reducing or restrictive element, a sensing element, and a force generator (usually a spring). In operation, the force generator opens the valve. Pressure introduced into the inlet port then flows through the valve and applies pressure to the sensing device (usually a diaphragm or piston). The pressure acts on the sensing element to produce a force which opposes the opening force and closes the valve. Regulators may be manually or electronically adjusted, and may include a pressure gauge or sensor.

In some cases, pressure may fluctuate due to variable supply and/or demand. This may be undesirable where work is being performed. A pressure reservoir with a regulator after it is a desirable source for most fluid circuits because the combination can buffer pressure variations and supply multiple circuits.

When choosing a pressure regulator, there are many factors to consider. The allowable ranges of inlet and outlet pressures must be known when sizing a regulator. The maximum flow rate and any porting requirements are also factors. It is also important to consider the chemical properties of the fluid before determining the best materials for your application. There are a wide range of materials available to suit all applications. A non-relieving

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

regulator is preferred for use with hazardous, explosive, or expensive gases since a relieving regulator will vent excess pressure to atmosphere.

The temperature range that the regulator will see is also a factor. Extreme operating temperatures may affect flow capacity and/or the spring rate.

Flow Measurement.—There are many ways to measure the flow of liquid or gas. Measurement can be in terms of velocity, volume flow rate, or mass flow rate. When selecting a flow meter, one must consider the viscosity and chemical compatibility of the fluid being measured, the desired output units, the range of flow values being measured, the desired accuracy, and the maximum pressure encountered by the unit. The ratio of the maximum to the minimum flow rate a meter can measure within the expected accuracy is called "turndown."

When designing a pipe system, it is often beneficial to run a bypass system of pipes with valves to allow service of a flow meter without interrupting system flow. Flow meters should be placed in straight sections of pipe for best measurement results. The length of straight pipe before and after each meter will depend on its type, the pipe diameter, and the type of nearest fitting or bend.

Pitot Tubes: Some pitot tubes are available to measure liquids and others are made for gases. These devices measure fluid flow velocity directly as a function of the height of a stationary column of fluid pushed out of the flow stream into a narrow tube. Most of the fluid flows past the device, but a small amount is captured in the static tube. Pitot tubes can be permanently installed in a pipe or duct, or used as a portable device for insertion as needed. The location of the capture tip of the pitot tube is critical, since flow velocity in a pipe varies across its cross section. Pitot-static tubes have ports perpendicular to the fluid flow direction to measure the static pressure of the fluid. Velocity is then calculated using the following equation:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{2(p_t - p_s)}{\rho}}$$

where v is fluid velocity at the collection point; p_s is static pressure; and p_t is the stagnation pressure measured as a function of displacement of the fluid in the tube.

Cup Anemometer: Air velocity is often measured with one of these devices. They consist of several cups arranged about a shaft that is free to spin. As air flows perpendicularly to the cups, the device rotates at a speed dependent on the air flow velocity.

Hot Wire Anemometer: These devices employ a thin wire inserted into a gas stream. The wire is heated by current passing through it, and the gas flowing by tends to dissipate this heat. Some hot wire anemometers apply a fixed current, and thus the change in resistance of the wire (related to temperature change) is related to flow velocity. Others vary the current to maintain a fixed temperature, and thus the current required is related to flow velocity. Hot wire anemometers tend to break when used with liquids, so hot film probes are used in liquid applications.

Venturi Meters: These flow-through meters measure the pressure drop across a restriction and relate that to volume flow rate. The restriction is called a "throat" and has a gradual contraction followed by a gradual expansion. Venturi meters are more expensive than orifice meters, but cause less pressure loss in the system. Overall pressure loss is generally 5 to 20 percent of the measured differential pressure. Many venturi meters are available for measuring liquids, and others are meant for gases. They are suitable for contaminated fluids and slurries. The lengths of straight pipe required upstream and downstream of a Venturi meter for accurate flow measurement are given in ISO 5167-1. Flow rate Q through a venturi is calculated using the following equation:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$Q = C\left(\sqrt{\frac{2\Delta p}{\rho}}\right)\frac{A_1}{\sqrt{\left(\frac{A_1}{A_2}\right)^2 - 1}}$$

where Δp is the measured differential pressure, A_1 is the area at the upstream pressure tap, and A_2 is the area at the throat. Coefficient C is generally 1 for ideal fluids, and 0.90 to 0.98 for viscous fluids.

Orifice Plates and Meters: These are the most widely used method of flow measurement in industry. Similar to venturi meters, these flow- through devices measure pressure drop across a restriction. The restriction is generally a hole in a plate placed across the flow path. This causes sudden contraction and expansion. The placement of the pressure measurement point is critical and dependent on the shape of the orifice. These meters generally create a larger energy loss than venturi meters due to the turbulence created by sudden changes in diameter, but are very cost-effective. The relevant standard covering orifice plates is ISO 5167. Flow through an orifice meter can be calculated using the following equation.

$$Q = C_f A_o \sqrt{\frac{2\Delta p}{\rho}}$$

where A_o is the area of the orifice. The coefficient C_f is generally between 0.6 and 0.9, and depends on the Reynolds number as well as pipe and orifice diameter. Tabulations of coefficient C_f can be found in various reference sources.

Flow Nozzle Meters: Similar to venturi and orifice meters, these flow-through devices measure pressure drop caused by flow restriction. Flow nozzles have a smooth elliptical inlet leading to a throat section with a sharp outlet. The geometry of these nozzles has been highly standardized by ASME and ISO. The nozzle tends to have a well-rounded intake, and therefore creates a much lower energy loss than an orifice meter. This higher efficiency means greater flow capacity when compared to most other differential meters of the same size. Energy loss does tend to be higher than with venturi tubes. Nozzle meters are available in standard and long radius configurations, with different discharge coefficients. Flow is calculated similarly to orifice and venturi meters, using Bernoulli's equation and the appropriate coefficient.

Variable Area Flow Meters: These devices are extremely common in industry, and are available for measuring liquids or gases. There are tube and vane types. Tube meters have a weighted float that is suspended in the flowing fluid. The clearance space between the float and the tube forms an annular passage or orifice. Since the tube is tapered, the area of this orifice is larger when the float is near the top than it is when the float is near the bottom. Volumetric flow is measured based on the height the float is carried to. As a result, these meters must be installed vertically. Vane type meters use a vane to obstruct a bend in the pipe. It is normally closed, and fluid flow swings it open. Both tube and vane meters are for use with clean fluids at moderate pressures. Some types allow the float or vane to be viewed against a calibrated scale. In those cases, the fluid must be clear enough to see the float. Other types of variable area flow meters are suitable for high pressures and opaque fluids, and use sensors to detect the position of the float or vane and display the result remotely. Due to the restriction caused by the float or vane in the fluid stream, some energy is lost by fluid flowing through these meters.

Elbow Meters: These meters are simply a bend in a pipe through which the fluid flows. These meters are sometimes the only choice where space constraints do not allow the other types of meters. Pressure differential is measured between a point on the outside radius and a point on the inside radius. Because the fluid is moving faster along the outside radius, it will be generate higher pressure.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Turbine Flow Meters: These meters allow fluid flowing through to turn a turbine rotor. The speed at which the rotor turns is indicative of the fluid velocity. The speed of the rotor is mechanically or electronically monitored. Because the turbine obstructs the fluid stream to some extent, some energy is lost due to restriction. These meters can be used for liquids or gases. Care must be taken when using these meters in a fluid that is non-lubricating, since the bearings that support the rotor may prematurely wear. Turbine flowmeters are less accurate at low flow rates due to drag, and should be operated above 5 percent of rated flow. Use in dirty fluids should generally be avoided to reduce the possibility of wear and damage. Two-phase flow and abrupt transitions from gas to liquid should be avoided because this can damage the mechanism.

Vortex Shedding Flow Meters: These are flow-through meters used for both liquids and gases. Placement of a blunt obstruction, called a *bluff body*, in the fluid stream causes vortices to be shed at a frequency dependent on the flow velocity. The shedding frequency is independent of fluid properties such as density, viscosity, conductivity, etc., however the flow must be turbulent for vortex shedding to occur. Sensors electronically monitor the shedding vortices. The obstruction need not be very large, and varies between manufacturers. Therefore, the energy lost by the fluid varies greatly from device to device. The advantage of this type of meter is that it is suitable for a wide range of fluids and gases. However, if a fluid includes substances likely to stick to or coat the bluff body, the meter's characteristics will change and accuracy will be compromised. The minimum measured flow rate should be at least twice the minimum rate detectable by the meter. The maximum flow capacity of the meter should be at least five times the anticipated maximum flow rate. The energy loss through a vortex meter is about half that of an orifice plate. The installed cost of vortex meters is competitive with that of orifice meters in sizes under six inches.

Magnetic Flow Meters: For use with conducting fluids only, magnetic flow meters use electrodes to detect the voltage generated in a fluid as it moves between two electromagnetic coils. The voltage generated is dependent on fluid velocity. Since there is nothing obstructing flow, these flow-through meters cause less energy loss than obstructing types. Another advantage of these meters is their suitability for a wide variety of fluids because their function is not affected by temperature, viscosity, or specific gravity.

Ultrasonic Flow Meters: These flow-through devices are attached to the outside of a pipe or tube, and therefore do not restrict flow or cause energy loss in the fluid. There are meters for gases and for fluids. Ultrasonic signals are transmitted through the pipe and fluid. The time it takes the signal to reach the receiver depends on the flow rate of the fluid. Some ultrasonic flow meters measure across the pipe, while others measure axially. A special type of ultrasonic flow meter, called a "Doppler" meter, is used for fluids with particulate content which may obstruct traversing ultrasonic signals. These meters measure the time it takes for signals to be reflected back from the fluid.

Positive Displacement Flow Meters: These are not flow-through devices, but instead allow fluid to fill a volumetrically calibrated chamber before the fluid is released. These meters can utilize a wide variety of mechanisms to capture and release volumes of fluid, one of the most common being diaphragm types typical to home gas meters. Other designs incorporate gears, pistons, and nutating disks (wobble plates). These meters are most often used for liquids, but can be used for gases as well.

Coriolis Mass Flow Meters: These flow-through devices measure mass flow rate directly, as opposed to measuring volume flow rate or velocity. By routing fluid through looping geometry, Coriolis force is generated and measured with sensors. Measurement results depend on the vibration of the tubes, so changes in tube rigidity due to temperature and pressure changes will affect calibration of the meter. These factors can be compensated for, but pitting, cracking, coating, erosion, or corrosion of the tubes cannot. Some energy is lost as the looping geometry causes changes in direction and velocity. These devices can be outfitted to monitor density of the fluid.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Thermal Mass Flow Meters: These devices are used almost exclusively for gas flow applications. Resistance temperature detectors (RTD) exhibit a linear change in resistance with respect to temperature. To measure mass flow rate, two RTD probes are used. One probe measures the fluid temperature, while the second probe is maintained at a higher temperature. As fluid flows by the heated probe, it dissipates the heat. The energy required to maintain the heated probe temperature is proportional to mass flow rate of the fluid. Some fluid energy is lost due to the obstruction of the probes in the fluid stream.

Flow Control.—Flow control is accomplished with manual or automatic valves, for both liquids and gases. Monitoring and control are often combined into a single device, in which flow is measured and the results are used to control a proportional valve to regulate flow. There are many types of flow controllers available, including manual needle valves and fully automated flow controllers. When density and viscosity is known and constant, and temperature is known, mass flow control can be performed. Mass flow controllers are usually used with gases, but some are available for liquids. Commercial flow control devices range in accuracy and flow capacity, and often contain proprietary control software and flow measurement technology.

Coefficient of Velocity, C_v.—C_v is defined as the flow rate in US gallons per minute (gpm) of water at 60°F with a pressure drop across the device of 1 psi. This is directly applicable to hydraulic components, but C_v is also applied to pneumatic devices as an indication of their flow capacity. This value is normally used when matching valves to actuators, or sizing other fluid power devices.

Flow capacity of valves in a circuit must be equal to or greater than flow required by the devices they supply. For actuators, higher C_v values can also indicate faster movement capability.

C_v is typically used in the United States and calculated using English units. The SI system has its own flow coefficient, K_v, which is calculated using metric units. These two values are not equivalent. K_v is defined as the flow rate in cubic meters per hour (m^3/h) of water at a temperature of 16°C, with a pressure drop across the valve of 1 bar.

C_v is commonly used by manufacturers for both English and metric products, and is normally provided in catalogs. The equations used to calculate C_v and K_v are listed below. The equations for liquids are simpler than those for gases, because gases are compressible.

Conversion: $C_v = 1.157K_v \qquad K_v = 0.864C_v$

C_v and K_v Equations for Liquids

for *Non-choked Turbulent Flow* when $\Delta p < F_L^2(p_i - F_F P_v)$

$$C_v = Q\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{\Delta p}} \qquad K_v = Q\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{\Delta p}}$$

for *Choked Turbulent Flow* when $\Delta p \geq F_L^2(p_i - F_F P_v)$

$$C_v = \frac{Q}{F_L}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{p_i - F_F P_v}} \qquad K_v = \frac{Q}{F_L}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{p_i - F_F P_v}}$$

for *Laminar or Transitional Flow*

$$C_v = \frac{Q}{F_R}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{\Delta p}} \qquad K_v = \frac{Q}{F_R}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG}}{\Delta p}}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

C_v and K_v Equations for Gases

for *Non-choked Turbulent Flow* when $x < F_\gamma x_T$

$$C_v = \frac{Q}{1360 p_i Y}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG} p_i T_i Z}{\Delta p}} \qquad K_v = \frac{Q}{482 p_i Y}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG} p_i T_i Z}{\Delta p}}$$

for *Choked Turbulent Flow* when $x \geq F_\gamma x_T$

$$C_v = \frac{Q}{907 p_i}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG} p_i T_i Z}{F_\gamma \Delta p}} \qquad K_v = \frac{Q}{321.5 p_i}\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{SG} p_i T_i Z}{F_\gamma \Delta p}}$$

for *Laminar or Transitional Flow*

$$C_v = \frac{Q}{N_1 F_R}\sqrt{\frac{M T_i}{\Delta p (p_i + p_o)}} \qquad K_v = \frac{Q}{N_2 F_R}\sqrt{\frac{M T_i}{\Delta p (p_i + p_o)}}$$

$N_1 = 1730$ for $T_s = 0°\mathrm{C}$
$N_1 = 1840$ for $T_s = 15°\mathrm{C}$

$N_2 = 4920$ for $T_s = 0°\mathrm{C}$
$N_2 = 5200$ for $T_s = 15°\mathrm{C}$

The following definitions apply to equations for C_v and K_v given above:

Q = flow in gpm for liquids, and flow in SCFM for gasses

SG = specific gravity

$\Delta p = p_i - p_o$ is the pressure differential between upstream and downstream, p_i is inlet absolute pressure (psia or bar), and p_o is outlet absolute pressure (psia or bar)

F_F = liquid critical pressure ratio factor (ranges between 0.68 to 0.96)

F_L = liquid pressure recovery factor. F_L depends on valve geometry and ranges between 0.6 for ball valves and 0.9 for globe valves

P_v = absolute vapor pressure of the liquid at inlet temperature

$x = \dfrac{\Delta p}{p_i}$ is the ratio of the pressure differential to the inlet absolute pressure

F_γ = specific heat ratio factor. $F_\gamma = 1$ for air, otherwise $F_\gamma = \dfrac{\gamma}{1.4}$

x_T = choked flow pressure differential ratio factor, experimentally determined, that varies from 0.3 to 0.9 depending on valve geometry

Y = expansion factor for gases. $Y = 1 - \dfrac{x}{3 F_\gamma x_T}$ for normal flow, and ranges from $Y = 1$ to $Y = 0.667$ at choked flow

Z = compressibility factor (assume $Z = 1$ for ideal gasses)

F_R = Reynolds number factor that depends on valve characteristics, and is limited to $F_R \leq 1$

M = molecular mass of fluid in kg/kg-mol or lb/lb-mol

T_i = absolute inlet temperature for the gas, °C

T_s = absolute reference temperature for the gas, °C

For additional information on flow equations see International Electrotechnical Commission standard IEC 60534.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings

Design of pipe systems must be undertaken with great care. Safety, performance, reliability, and cost are all significantly affected by selection of appropriate pipe sizes, materials, and connection methods. For many applications, the design must comply with codes and standards. Organizations such as ISO, ASTM, NSF, NFPA, AWWA, AFSA, and IAPMO should be consulted when working with pipe. Tubing systems are also covered by standards in cases of sanitary, food, medical, and high pressure applications.

Metal Pipe.—Metal pipe is ideal for applications where structural strength is needed. Metal pipe is also resistant to high temperatures and is non-combustible. Extremely low temperatures should be avoided. Metal pipe systems may need proper grounding to prevent shocks and accelerated corrosion. A wide range of materials is available.

Materials: Steel is the most commonly used metal pipe material for general use. Steel pipe is highly resistant to shock and vibration from water hammer or external sources. To carry a given pressure, steel pipe can be made with a thinner wall than pipes made from other materials, and as a result the pipe will have a larger flow capacity. Carbon steel pipes are susceptible to corrosion and oxidation, so additional allowance should be made when calculating flow capacity. Galvanized steel can inhibit atmospheric corrosion to some extent, but the coating can break down when exposed to constant moisture. Stainless steel pipes cost more, but are resistant to corrosion and oxidation. Stainless steel is also compatible with a wide variety of chemicals.

Ductile iron pipe is commonly used for water and sewer applications. It combines the physical strength of mild steel with the long life of gray cast iron. It has superseded cast iron pipe in the water handling industry. In addition to the benefits of long life, corrosion resistance, high structural strength, and tight joints, ductile iron is also readily machinable. Although somewhat corrosion resistant when in contact with water, these pipes are often internally lined or coated to inhibit corrosion further.

Copper pipe is commonly used in household and industrial supply lines for both liquids and gases. It costs more than steel pipe, but is much easier to join. It is extremely thermally conductive, which makes it a top choice for heat exchangers and other thermal applications. Copper resists corrosion, is unaffected by UV radiation, and inhibits the growth of bacteria. It will corrode in the presence of high or low pH liquids.

Connecting pipes and fittings of different metals is not recommended because galvanic corrosion to occur. Protective coatings should be employed where necessary to prevent contamination or failure of the joint.

Schedules and Classes: Schedule number designations for steel pipe, previously called "Iron Pipe Sizes (IPS)" are an indicator of wall thickness. Schedules range from 10 to 160, with higher numbers designating thicker walls. Schedules 40 and 80 are the most commonly used. From the IPS system, designations like STD, XS or XHY (extra heavy or strong), and XXS or XXHY (double extra strong or heavy) are still used. For a given pipe size, all schedules have the same outside diameter.

Higher schedule pipes of the same diameter have smaller flow areas. The nominal pipe size (NPS) is given, along with the schedule or IPS designation to indicate the full dimensional characteristics of the pipe.

Ductile iron pipe ranges in size from 3 to 64 inches and in pressure classes from 150 psi to 350 psi, although custom sizes and pressure ratings can be obtained.

Copper pipe is classified as copper tube. Information on copper tube can be found in the section *Metal Tube* starting on page 2771. Copper pipe is suitable for water and steam service at pressures up to 250 psi (1750 kPa) and temperatures up to 406°F (208°C).

Sizes: Nominal sizes for commercial steel pipe are generally given in inches. Actual diameter of the pipe can be different from the nominal designation, so refer to Table 7 for actual dimensions of common pipe sizes up to 6 inches in diameter. This is the Nominal

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pipe Size (NPS) system. ISO has designated metric equivalent pipes for customary US pipe sizes. As with US pipe, metric pipe dimensions often differ from the nominal size designations.

Sizes of ductile iron pipe follow the Ductile Iron Pipe Sizes (DIPS) standard. These sizes and dimensions can be found in Table 8. Flanged pipes are normally furnished with a maximum length of 19' - 6". The minimum length varies with pipe size. The minimum class thickness for ductile iron flanged pipe to be threaded is Special Thickness Class 53 for sizes up through 54 and pressure class 350 for 60 and 64 sizes. Greater pipe wall thicknesses are available.

Pressure Ratings: When working with ductile iron pipe applications, the designer should choose the appropriate class of pipe to carry the anticipated working pressure.

When working with other types of metal pipe, wall thickness must be selected or calculated based on working pressure. ANSI/ASME Standard B31.1-1998: "Power Piping" details a method of calculating the minimum wall thickness for pipes. The maximum working pressure for a pipe is often provided by the manufacturer, and can be calculated using US standard units in the following equation:

$$p_{\max} = \frac{2S(0.875t - A)}{D - 2Y(0.875t - A)}$$

where S is the allowable tensile stress in psi, t is the wall thickness in inches, D is the outer diameter in inches, A is an allowance for corrosion and threading, and Y is a temperature factor given in Table 9. A factor of safety should be used when selecting allowable stress.

Allowance A is added to compensate for corrosion, erosion, threads, and bends, which thin the walls of the pipe. Allowance $A = 0.05$ for threaded steel up to 3/8" OD and for unthreaded steel up to ½ OD. $A = 0.065$ for unthreaded steel larger than 3/8" OD. For threaded steel larger than 3/8" OD, A is equal to the thread depth.

Wall thickness based on pressure requirement can be calculated using the following equation and Table 9. This is for straight pipe, and wall thickness tolerances should be taken into account.

$$t = \frac{pD_o}{2(S + pY)} + A$$

where D_o is the outside diameter of the pipe, p is internal pressure, Y is the temperature coefficient given in Table 9, A is the allowance discussed above, and S is the maximum allowable stress in the material. S should be modified to account for welds and joints according to the standards, and a factor of safety should be used.

The temperature at which material properties are given must be considered. Many hydraulic systems run at a temperature of approximately 100°F (38°C). A factor of safety of 3 to 4 should be used when calculating pressure ratings. If the tube is carrying liquid, the pressure rating must be derated to account for the pressure spikes that occur during valve closures. Derating for pressure spikes (water hammer) is often 20 percent. Derating to account for fittings is usually also done, with 25 percent additional reduction a typical value.

Connections: There are many types of connections for metal pipe, the most common of which are threaded, flanged, welded, and soldered.

Threaded connections on pipes normally use tapered threads per the standard for either American National Pipe Thread (NPT) or British Standard Pipe Thread (BSP). Metric pipe uses ISO standard pipe threads. These threads are detailed in *PIPE AND HOSE THREADS* starting on page 2089. Sealing is accomplished through thread interlocking and the use of a sealing compound or PTFE tape. The compound or tape lubricates the threads and ensures that spiral leak paths through the threads are blocked. Tape must be used in just the right amount to be effective. Too much tape can cause the joint to fail. Tape should not be used on bull plugs on heat exchangers. Tape is available in several

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. Dimensions of Steel Pipe, Common Sizes, US Customary Units

Nominal Pipe Size inch	Pipe O.D. inch	Wall Thickness inch	Pipe I.D. inch	Weight per Foot lbf	Iron Pipe Size (IPS)	Schedule	Gallon Capacity Per Linear Foot
½	0.8400	0.1090	0.6220	0.8500	STD	40	0.0158
		0.1470	0.5460	1.0900	XHY	80	0.0122
		0.1880	0.4640	1.3100	…	160	0.0088
		0.2940	0.2520	1.7200	XXHY	…	0.0026
¾	1.0500	0.1130	0.8240	1.1300	STD	40	0.0277
		0.1540	0.7420	1.4800	XHY	80	0.0225
		0.2190	0.6120	1.9500	…	160	0.0153
		0.3080	0.4340	2.4400	XXHY	…	0.0077
1	1.3150	0.1330	1.0490	1.6800	STD	40	0.0449
		0.1790	0.9570	2.1700	XHY	80	0.0374
		0.2500	0.8150	2.8500	…	160	0.0271
		0.3580	0.5990	3.6600	XXHY	…	0.0146
1 ¼	1.6600	0.1400	1.3800	2.2700	STD	40	0.0777
		0.1910	1.2780	3.0000	XHY	80	0.0666
		0.2500	1.1600	3.7700	…	160	0.0549
		0.3820	0.8960	5.2200	…	…	0.0328
1 ½	1.9000	0.1450	1.6100	2.7200	STD	40	0.1058
		0.2000	1.5000	3.6300	XHY	80	0.0918
		0.2810	1.3380	4.8600	…	160	0.0730
		0.4000	1.1000	6.4100	…	…	0.0494
2	2.3750	0.1090	2.1570	2.6400		10	0.1898
		0.1540	2.0670	3.6600	STD	40	0.1743
		0.2180	1.9390	5.0300	XHY	80	0.1534
		0.2500	1.8750	5.6800	…	…	0.1434
		0.2810	1.8130	6.2900	…	…	0.1344
		0.3440	1.6870	7.4700	…	160	0.1161
		0.4360	1.5030	9.0400	XXHY		0.0922
2 ½	2.8750	0.1200	2.6350	3.5300	…	10	0.2833
		0.2030	2.4690	5.8000	STD.	40	0.2487
		0.2160	2.4430	6.1400	…	…	0.2435
		0.2500	2.3750	7.0200	…	…	0.2301
		0.2760	2.3230	7.6700	XHY	80	0.2202
		0.3750	2.1250	10.0200	…	160	0.1842
		0.5520	1.7710	13.7100	XXXHY	…	0.1280
3	3.5000	0.1200	3.2600	4.3400	…	…	0.4336
		0.1560	3.1880	5.5800	…	…	0.4147
		0.1720	3.1560	6.1200	…	…	0.4064
		0.1880	3.1240	6.6600	…	…	0.3984
		0.2160	3.0680	7.5800	STD.	40	0.3840
		0.2500	3.0000	8.6900	…	…	0.3672
		0.2810	2.9380	9.6700	…	…	0.3521
		0.3000	2.9000	10.2600	XHY	80	0.3431
		0.4380	2.6240	14.3400	…	160	0.2811
		0.6000	2.3000	18.6000	XXHY	…	0.2158
3 ½	4.0000	0.1200	3.7600	4.9800	…	10	0.5768
		0.2260	3.5480	9.1200	STD.	140	0.5136
		0.2500	3.5000	10.0200	…	…	0.4998
		0.2810	3.4380	11.1700	…	…	0.4821
		0.3180	3.3640	12.5200	XHY	80	0.4617
		0.6360	2.728	22.8700	XXHY	…	0.3085

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 7. *(Continued)* **Dimensions of Steel Pipe, Common Sizes, US Customary Units**

Nominal Pipe Size inch	Pipe O.D. inch	Wall Thickness inch	Pipe I.D. inch	Weight per Foot lbf	Iron Pipe Size (IPS)	Schedule	Gallon Capacity Per Linear Foot
		0.1200	4.2600	5.6200	…	10	0.7404
		0.1560	4.1880	7.2400	…	…	0.7156
		0.1880	4.1240	8.6700	…	…	0.6942
		0.2030	4.0940	9.3200	…	…	0.6838
		0.2190	4.0620	10.0200	…	…	0.6725
		0.2370	4.0260	10.8000	STD.	40	0.6613
4	4.5000	0.2500	4.0000	11.3600	…	…	0.6528
		0.2810	3.9380	12.6700	…	60	0.6326
		0.3120	3.8760	13.9700	…	…	0.6126
		0.3370	3.8260	15.0000	XHY	80	0.5972
		0.4380	3.6240	19.0200	…	120	0.5361
		0.5310	3.4380	22.5300	…	160	0.4822
		0.6740	3.1520	27.5700	XXHY	…	0.4054
		0.1880	5.1870	10.8000	…	…	1.0979
		0.2190	5.1250	12.5100	…	…	1.0716
		0.2580	5.0470	14.6300	STD.	40	1.0391
		0.2810	5.0010	15.8700	…	…	1.0204
		0.3120	4.9390	17.5100	…	…	0.9965
5	5.5630	0.3440	4.8750	19.1900	…	…	0.9696
		0.3750	4.8130	20.8000	XHY	80	0.9449
		0.5000	4.5630	27.0600	…	120	0.8495
		0.6250	4.3130	32.9900	…	160	0.7590
		0.7500	4.0630	38.5900	XXHY	…	0.6734
		0.1090	6.4070	7.5900	…	5	1.6748
		0.1340	6.3570	9.3000	…	10	1.6488
		0.1560	6.3130	10.7900	…	…	1.6260
		0.1880	6.2490	12.9400	…	…	1.5937
		0.2030	6.2190	13.9400	…	…	1.5780
		0.2190	6.1870	15.0000	…	…	1.5620
		0.2500	6.1250	17.0400	…	…	1.5306
		0.2800	6.0650	18.9900	STD.	40	1.5008
		0.3120	6.0010	21.0600	…	…	1.4688
6	6.6250	0.3440	5.9370	23.1000	…	…	1.4391
		0.3750	5.8750	25.0500	…	…	1.4082
		0.4320	5.7610	28.6000	XHY	80	1.3541
		0.5000	5.6250	32.7400	…	…	1.2909
		0.5620	5.5010	36.4300	…	120	1.2346
		0.6250	5.3750	40.0900	…	…	1.1787
		0.7190	5.1870	45.3900	…	160	1.0977
		0.8640	4.8970	53.2100	XXHY	…	0.9784
		1.0000	4.6250	60.1300	…	…	0.8727
		1.1250	4.3750	66.1400	…	…	0.7809

thicknesses. Thicker tape should be used on higher pressure or larger size installations. Always follow the manufacturer's recommendations when using liquid thread compounds, and always verify chemical compatibility with the process fluid.

Threaded connections are specified by the nominal pipe size and the type of thread (NPT, BSP or other).

Threaded pipe connections require the rotation of one of the pipes in the joint. When this is not practical, a threaded union may be used. Unions are comprised of two halves that form a flange connection.

Flanged connections are commonly used on large piping systems. For process and utilities, the two most common flange standards are ANSI B16.5 and BS 1560. Wellhead flanges are specified by API 6A. Flanges of different standards are not normally joined. There are three commonly used types of flange facings: Ring Type Joint (RTJ), Raised

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8. Ductile Iron Pipe Specifications

Nom. Size	Outside Diameter inches	Pressure Class, psi					Special Thickness Class						
		150	200	250	300	350	50	51	52	53	54	55	56
		Nominal Wall Thickness, inch					Nominal Wall Thickness, inch						
3	3.96	…	…	…	…	0.25	…	0.25	0.28	0.31	0.34	0.37	0.40
4	4.80	…	…	…	…	0.25	…	0.26	0.29	0.32	0.35	0.38	0.41
6	6.90	…	…	…	…	0.25	0.25	0.28	0.31	0.34	0.37	0.40	0.43
8	9.05	…	…	…	…	0.25	0.27	0.30	0.33	0.36	0.39	0.42	0.45
10	11.10	…	…	…	…	0.26	0.29	0.32	0.35	0.38	0.41	0.44	0.47
12	13.20	…	…	…	…	0.28	0.31	0.34	0.37	0.40	0.43	0.46	0.49
14	15.30	…	…	0.28	0.30	0.31	0.33	0.36	0.39	0.42	0.45	0.48	0.51
16	17.40	…	…	0.30	0.32	0.34	0.34	0.37	0.40	0.43	0.46	0.49	0.52
18	19.50	…	…	0.31	0.34	0.36	0.35	0.38	0.41	0.44	0.47	0.50	0.53
20	21.60	…	…	0.33	0.36	0.38	0.36	0.39	0.42	0.45	0.48	0.51	0.54
24	25.80	…	0.33	0.37	0.40	0.43	0.38	0.41	0.44	0.47	0.50	0.53	0.56
30	32.00	0.34	0.38	0.42	0.45	0.49	0.39	0.43	0.47	0.51	0.55	0.59	0.63
36	38.30	0.38	0.42	0.47	0.51	0.56	0.43	0.48	0.53	0.58	0.63	0.68	0.73
42	44.50	0.41	0.47	0.52	0.57	0.63	0.47	0.53	0.59	0.65	0.71	0.77	0.83
48	50.80	0.46	0.52	0.58	0.64	0.70	0.51	0.58	0.65	0.72	0.79	0.86	0.93
54	57.56	0.51	0.58	0.65	0.72	0.79	0.57	0.65	0.73	0.81	0.89	0.97	1.05
60	61.61	0.54	0.61	0.68	0.76	0.83	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
64	65.67	0.56	0.64	0.72	0.80	0.87	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

Casting Tolerances: Sizes 3 to 8, 0.05 inch; sizes 10 to 12, 0.06 inch; sizes 14 to 42, 0.07 inch; size 43, 0.08 inch; sizes 54 to 64, 0.09 inch.

Table 9. Temperature Coefficient, *Y*

Material	Temperature							
	≤ 900 °F ≤ 482 °C	950 °F 510 °C	1000 °F 538 °C	1050°F 566 °C	1100 °F 593 °C	1150 °F 621 °C	1200 °F 649 °C	1250+°F 677+ °C
Cast Iron	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Nonferrous	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Ferritic Steel	0.4 [a]	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7
Austenitic Steel	0.4 [a]	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7
Nickel Alloys: N06617, N08800, N08810, N08825	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.7

[a] If $D_o \div t < 6$, calculate $Y = \dfrac{D_i}{D_i + D_o}$.

Face (RF), and Flat Face (FF). RTJ facings use ring type metal gaskets and are for the most severe duties, such as with high pressure gas piping. Raised face flanges have a nonmetallic gasket that fits within the bolts of the flange.

The face has a series of grooves into which the gasket flows upon compression. A flat face flange also uses a series of grooves, but the nonmetallic gasket fits over the entire face of the flange. Flat face flanges are used for the lowest pressure duties. The way in which the flange is attached to the pipe determines the flange type. Weld-Neck (WN) flanges are butt-welded to the pipe, and are used on high pressure and hazardous applications. Socket Weld (SW) flanges are fillet welded onto the pipe and are also suitable for high pressures, but are limited to pipe sizes of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch or less. Slip-On Weld (SO) flanges are used for low pressure, low hazard applications. The pipe is welded both to the hub and the bore of the flange. This weld configuration makes it impractical to radiographically inspect the welds. Composite lap joint flanges are used to save material expense on alloy pipe systems, where a backing flange of an inexpensive material is added to a hub welded to the pipe. Swivel ring flanges, like composite lap joint flanges, use a hub welded to the

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

pipe. A swivel ring fits over the hub for the purpose of bolting the joint together. The swivel ring flange facilitates flange alignment. There are a number of compact flange designs that include tapered sections or proprietary designs. Always comply with the manufacturer's specifications when using this type of flange connection.

Flanges are specified using the nominal pipe size, type and facing, pressure class, material, schedule, and applicable standard. Since surface condition is critical to flange sealing, all surfaces must be carefully inspected before use, and all scratches, rust, and burrs removed. Gasket selection must be done with consideration of temperature, internal pressure, cycling conditions, vibration, material compatibility, erosive/corrosive potential of the media, and potential to leach substances into the fluid. Gaskets may be ring-type, spiral wound, or sheet. They must be inspected carefully before use for damage, and should never be trimmed or re-used. Bolts must be of the proper material and grade for the joint, and tightened gradually according to standard procedure. Lubricant of the proper type should be used if recommended, and a torque wrench should be employed upon final tightening to ensure proper compression.

Welded and soldered pipe connections should be made according to applicable standards and safety precautions. Steel pipe is often welded, while copper pipe is typically joined by soldering. In soldered pipe joints, capillary fittings are used.

Expansion with Temperature: Metal pipe expands and contracts with temperature by an amount dependent on both temperature change and material. This must be considered when designing pipe systems where temperature will change between installation and operation, or when the fluids pumped will be above or below installation temperature. Use the factors in the following table to calculate length increase or decrease for each pipe run.

Linear Expansion and Contraction Factors per 100 Feet of Pipe

Temperature Change, °F	Pipe Material				
	Steel	Copper	PVC	FRP	PP & PVDF
0	0	0	0	0	0
20	0.15	0.25	0.62	0.26	2.00
40	0.30	0.45	1.30	0.52	4.00
60	0.46	0.65	2.20	0.78	6.00
80	0.61	0.87	2.80	1.05	8.00
100	0.77	1.10	3.50	1.31	10.00
120	0.92	1.35	4.25	1.57	12.00
140	1.08	1.57	4.80	1.83	14.00
160	1.24	1.77	5.50	2.09	16.00
180	1.40	2.00	6.30	2.35	18.00
200	1.57	2.25	7.12	2.62	20.00

Multiply length of pipe by the table factor and divide by 100 for the increase or decrease in length.

Plastic Pipe.—Plastic pipe is lighter and less expensive than metal pipe, and can be more chemically inert. It is generally non-conductive and thermally insulative. Due to its smooth inner surfaces, it can offer better flow characteristics than metal pipe. However, plastic pipe can be affected by ultraviolet radiation and extreme temperatures. The most common plastic pipe is suitable for nonflammable liquids up to 150 psi (1000 kPa) and temperatures up to 140°F (60°C). Plastic pipe expands with temperature much more than metal pipe.

Materials: Many types of plastics are available as plastic pipe. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS), and polyethylene (PE) are the most common in the United States. Crosslinked polyethylene (PEX) is common in Europe and gaining popularity in the United States.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

PVC and chlorinated PVC (CPVC) are related, but CPVC can withstand a wider range of temperatures. PVC is limited to 140°F while CPVC can be used up to 190°F. PVC has inherently superior fire retarding properties due to its chlorine content. The ignition temperature of PVC is as high as 455°C. PVC and CPVC are highly resistant to oxidation and are very durable. PVC is resistant to acids, bases, and most inorganic chemicals. PVC swells or dissolves in aromatic hydrocarbons, ketones, and cyclic ethers. These plastics crack when frozen, and CPVC requires more mechanical support than PVC.

ABS pipes are used mainly in applications where rigidity and impact strength are needed. ABS can be tailored to a wide range of needs by altering its chemical composition. It is suitable for water transport and has good resistance to a wide range of diluted inorganic acids, organic acids, salts, animal fats and oils. ABS is not resistant to organic solvents, alcohol, gasoline, acetic acid or vegetable oils. ABS is resistant to temperatures up to 70°C, but its pressure capacity must be derated with elevated temperature. ABS is non-toxic and is used for food and beverage applications.

PE pipes can be joined through heat fusion, and are common in municipal water applications. They are extremely slippery when wet. PE Water Service lines are typically $^1/_2$ to 3 nominal diameter pipe or tubing in accordance with AWWA C901, ASTM D2239, ASTM D3035, or ASTM D2737. PE water distribution lines are typically 4 to 12 nominal diameter pipe in accordance with AWWA C906, ASTM D3035, or ASTM F714. Install PE pressure pipe in accordance with ASTM D2774. PE pipe may be cold bent. The allowable bend ratio is determined by the pipe diameter (*D*) and the Standard Dimension Ratio (*SDR*) in accordance with Table 10.

Table 10. Cold Bend Radius, Polyethylene Pipe

Standard Dimension Ratio, *SDR*	Minimum Bend Radius to Centerline of Pipe
7 through 9	20 × Pipe Outside Diameter
11 through 13.5	25 × Pipe Outside Diameter
17 through 21	27 × Pipe Outside Diameter
Fitting in Bend	100 × Pipe Outside Diameter

PEX is gaining popularity for residential water service because it is flexible, does not corrode, is easy to work and connect, and is resistant to scale and chlorine. It is made from crosslinked HDPE and subject to ASTM F876. It can be bent according to table, as well as used with compression tube fittings. Standard PEX does admit some oxygen, so an added oxygen barrier may be needed in some applications. PEX can be used at temperatures from below freezing to almost boiling.

Table 11. Bend Radius, PEX Pipe or Tube

PEX Size, inch	Outside Diameter, inch	Minimum Bend Radius, inch
$^3/_8$	0.500	4
$^1/_2$	0.625	5
$^5/_8$	0.750	6
$^3/_4$	0.875	7
1	1.125	9

Schedules: Schedule number designations for plastic pipe are an indicator of wall thickness. Schedules 40 and 80 are the most commonly used, and 120 is also widely available. For a given nominal pipe size, all schedules have the same outside diameter. Therefore, higher schedule pipes of the same diameter have smaller flow areas. The nominal pipe size

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(NPS) is given, along with the schedule or IPS designation to indicate the full dimensional characteristics of the pipe.

Sizes: Plastic pipe size designations are often tied to the outside diameter, as they are for steel pipe according to the NPS system. PVC has its own ASTM pipe sizing standard, while CPVC is available in either ASTM standard sizing or CPVC-CTS (Copper Tube Standard). Dimensions for schedule 40, 80, and 120 PVC pipe are given in Table 12. Alternative sizing methods are the Standard Inside Dimension Ratio (SIDR) method and the Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR) method. The SDR method uses OD and wall thickness, and SIDR uses ID and wall thickness. The SIDR method is useful when designing flow-critical applications. The SDR method is useful when pressure rating is of primary concern. PEX is most commonly sized as tube, which is covered in the section *Plastic Tube* starting on page 2773.

Table 12. PVC Pipe Dimensions, Schedule 40, 80, and 120, Sizes Up To 12″

PVC Pipe Size, inch	Outside Diameter, inch	Inside Diameter, inch		
		SCH 40	SCH 80	SCH 120
⅛	0.405	0.249	0.195	…
¼	0.54	0.344	0.282	…
⅜	0.675	0.473	0.403	…
½	0.84	0.602	0.526	0.48
¾	1.05	0.804	0.722	0.69
1	1.315	1.029	0.936	0.891
1¼	1.66	1.36	1.255	1.204
1½	1.9	1.59	1.476	1.423
2	2.375	2.047	1.913	1.845
2½	2.875	2.445	2.29	2.239
3	3.5	3.042	2.864	2.758
3½	4	3.521	3.326	…
4	4.5	3.998	3.786	3.574
5	5.563	5.016	4.768	…
6	6.625	6.031	5.709	5.434
8	8.625	7.942	7.565	7.189
10	10.75	9.976	9.493	…
12	12.75	11.889	11.294	…

Pressure Ratings: Pressure rating of plastic pipe is highly dependent on material, as well as wall thickness. Most commercially available plastic pipe will be rated by the manufacturer. PEX pressure ratings are 160 psi at 74°F and 100 psi at 180°F.

Pressure ratings for polyethylene pipes depend on the material formulation. Pressure ratings of standard sizes of PVC pipe are given in Table 13. Pressure ratings must be derated with elevated temperature. Derating factors for PVC pipe are given in Table 14. Further derating must be done to account for water hammer, and this is often 20 percent.

Connections: Some plastic pipe is threaded for use with threaded fittings. Threading normally follows the NPT standard. If the pipe is not threaded, a variety of other connection methods may be used. PVC pipe is usually bonded into socket fittings using solvent cement. PE pipe can be joined using heat fusion and electrofusion. In some cases, tube fittings may be used to connect plastic pipe.

Expansion with Temperature: Plastic pipe expands and contracts with temperature by an amount dependent on both temperature change and material. This must be considered

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13. Pressure Ratings of Schedule 40, 80, 120 PVC Pipe Up To 12″ at 73.4°F

Pipe Size	Maximum Water Pressure (psig)		
	SCH 40	SCH 80	SCH 120
1/8	810	1230	…
1/4	780	1130	…
3/8	620	920	…
1/2	600	850	1010
3/4	480	690	770
1	450	630	720
1 1/4	370	520	600
1 1/2	330	470	540
2	280	400	470
2 1/2	300	420	470
3	260	370	440
3 1/2	240	350	…
4	220	320	430
5	190	290	…
6	180	280	370
8	160	250	380
10	140	230	…
12	130	230	…

Table 14. Pressure Derating Factors for PVC Pipe

Temperature	°F	73.4	80	90	100	110	120	130	140
	°C	23	26.7	32.2	37.8	43.3	48.9	54.4	60
Derating Factor		1	0.88	0.75	0.62	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.22

when designing pipe systems where temperature will change between installation and operation, or when the fluids pumped will be above or below installation temperature. Plastics expand much more than metals, so this may become a factor in selecting one over the other. Use the factors in Table 15 to calculate length increase or decrease for each pipe run. To use the tabulated factors, use the equation $\Delta L = \alpha L_0 \Delta T$ where L_0 is the length at the installation temperature, and ΔT is the difference between the installation temperature and the temperature in question.

Table 15. Coefficient of Linear Expansion (α) for Common Pipe Materials

Material	Coefficient of Linear Expansion	
	10^{-6} in/in °F	10^{-6} m/m °C
Carbon Steel	6.5	11.7
Copper	9.3	16.8
Stainless Steel	9.9	17.8
ABS	35	63
HDPE	67	120
PE	83	150
CPVC	44	79

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

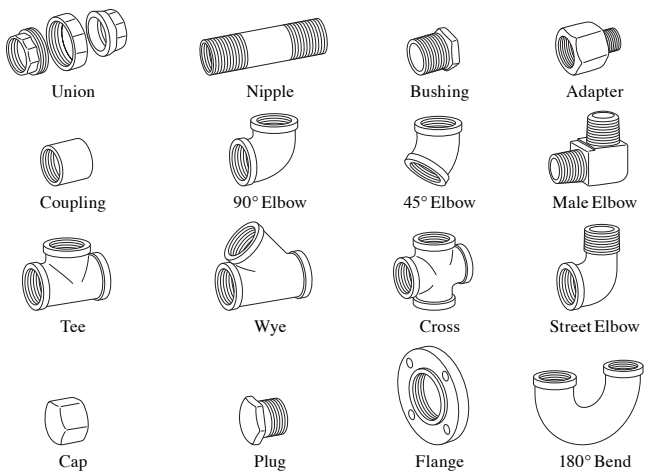
Pipe Fittings.—Pipe fittings are used to connect pipes together either permanently or non-permanently. Pipe systems should be designed to minimize the number of fittings because they cause pressure loss, require pressure derating, and are a potential source of leaks.

Materials: Pipe fittings are available in a variety of materials, and should be selected for compatibility with the pipe material and the substance being transported. Dissimilar metals should be avoided to prevent galvanic corrosion. Plastic fittings are also available for use with plastic pipe.

Types: Pipe fittings may be threaded, slip, or interference type connections. Interference connections, like compression or stab fittings, are used with plastic pipe and with metal and plastic tubing. PEX pipe is typically connected using either a copper crimp ring or expansion fittings with outer expansion rings. In the crimping method, a copper crimp ring is put over the pipe near the end, a copper fitting is inserted into the pipe end, and a crimping tool is used to crimp the ring over the pipe and fitting. In the expansion fitting method, an expansion tool is used to open the diameter of the pipe, into which an expansion fitting is inserted. The pipe shrinks over the fitting as it cools, and then a plastic expansion ring is pressed over the pipe and fitting. Compression fittings can be used as an alternative; that method is discussed in the section *Tube Fittings* on page 2776.

The most common types of pipe fittings are illustrated in Table 16. These examples are by no means exhaustive of the types and shapes available.

Table 16. Common Pipe Fittings



Pressure Considerations: Pipe fittings have pressure ratings that must be considered during the selection process. Low pressure pipe fittings are generally rated to 150 psi. Medium pressure fittings are commonly found rated to 300 psi. High pressure fittings are rated as high as 3,000 psi, and extreme pressure fittings can be found rated to 6,000 psi or even higher. Pressure rating depends on schedule, size, material, and connection type.

Metal Tube.—Metal tube is generally smaller and thinner than metal pipe. The same considerations in terms of material properties, mechanical stresses, and environmental factors apply to both tube and pipe.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Material: Steel tubing is usually made from carbon steel (plain or galvanized) or stainless steels (304 or 316). It is used in a variety of applications to carry liquids or gases. Stainless steel is known for its corrosion resistance when exposed to a variety of materials.

Copper tubing is typically offered as either soft annealed or hard drawn. Annealed tubing is easy to bend, while drawn tubing is stiff. Drawn tubing has a higher pressure rating than annealed. Flare fittings may be installed on annealed temper tube, but not on drawn temper; both types can be soldered or brazed. Copper tube types and applications are given in Table 17.

Table 17. Copper Tubing Types and Applications

Tube Type	Standard	Applications	Commercially Available Sizes
K	ASTM B88	Domestic Water Fire Protection Solar Fuel/Fuel Oil HVAC Compressed Air Natural Gas, LP Gas Vacuum	• Straight Lengths: 1/4 inch to 12 inch • Coils: 1/4 inch to 2 inch
L	ASTM B88	Domestic Water Fire Protection Solar Fuel/Fuel Oil Natural Gas, LP Gas HVAC Compressed Air Vacuum	• Straight Lengths: 1/4 inch to 12 inch • Coils: 1/4 inch to 2 inch
M	ASTM B88	Domestic Water Fire Protection Solar Fuel/Fuel Oil HVAC Vacuum	• Straight Lengths: 1/4 inch to 12 inch
DWV	ASTM B306	Drain, Waste, Vent HVAC Solar	• Straight Lengths: 1 1/4 inch to 8 inch
ACR	ASTM B280	Air Conditioning Refrigeration Natural Gas, LP Gas Compressed Air	• Straight Lengths: 3/8 inch to 4 1/8 inch • Coils: 1/8 inch to 1 5/8 inch
OXY/MED	ASTM B819	Medical Gas Compressed Medical Air Vacuum	• Straight Lengths: 1/4 inch to 8 inch

Sizes: Steel tubing is highly standardized, with designations of outside diameter and wall thickness. Imperial and metric sizes are available. A selection of Imperial sizes and pressure ratings of stainless steel tubing is given in Table 18.

The system of Copper Tube Sizes (CTS) depends on type. Types K, L, M, DVW (Drain Waste Vent), and OXY/MED all have an outside diameter 1/8" larger than the nominal size designation. Type ACR (Air Conditioning & Refrigeration) tubing outside diameter is equal to the nominal size designation. Dimensions of copper tube are found in Table 19.

Pressure Ratings: Pressure ratings for stainless steel tubes were given in Table 18. Allowable maximum pressure for metal tubes can be calculated as it was for metal pipes.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 18. Stainless Steel Tube Specifications, Selected Sizes

Tube OD (in.)	Wall Thickness (in.)	Working Pressure (psig)
1/16	0.014	8100
	0.020	12000
1/8	0.028	8500
	0.035	10900
1/4	0.035	5100
	0.049	7500
	0.065	10200
3/8	0.035	3300
	0.049	4800
	0.065	6500
1/2	0.035	2600
	0.049	3700
	0.065	5100
	0.083	6700
5/8	0.049	2900
	0.065	4000
3/4	0.049	2400
	0.065	3300
1	0.083	3100
1 1/4	0.095	2800
	0.12	3600
1 1/2	0.12	3000
	0.134	3400
2	0.134	2500
	0.188	3600

Alternatively, the maximum working pressure of metal tubing can be calculated using the Barlow formula for thin-walled cylinders as given in the following equation. This formula is typically used for steel tubing connected with flare fittings.

$$p_{max} = \frac{2St}{D}$$

where S is the ultimate tensile strength, t is wall thickness, and D is outer diameter. A factor of safety between 1.5 and 10 should be applied.

If the tube is carrying liquid, the pressure rating must be derated to account for the pressure spikes that occur during valve closures. The amount of reduction of working pressure is called the "water hammer factor" and is typically 20 percent. The types of fittings being used must be carefully considered when working with elevated pressures, and further derating of the system may be required. For pressure ratings of copper tube, consult the "Copper Tube Handbook," available from the Copper Development Association, Inc.

Plastic Tube.—Plastic tube is often selected for its flexibility, clarity, or non-conductivity. When selecting from the wide variety of available tubing materials, one must consider the operating temperature range in the application, the media being transported, the environment in which the tubing will be located, the pressures involved, whether there will be vacuum, whether there are any standards or certifications needed, whether standard tubing tolerances will be acceptable, and whether the tubing must be transparent. Temperature must be considered not only for extremes, but also for slight variations from 73°F (22°C) because most plastic tubing expands and softens even with slight changes in temperature.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19. Copper Tube and Pipe Dimensions

Nominal Size	Actual Outer Diameter, inch	Type					
		K	L	M	DWV	ACR	
		Actual Inner Diameter, inch				Actual Outer Diameter, inch	Actual I.D., inch (Temper)
1/8	…	…	…	…	…	0.125	0.065 (A)
3/16	…	…	…	…	…	0.187	0.128 (A)
1/4	0.375	0.305	0.315	…	…	0.250	0.190 (A)
5/16	…	…	…	…	…	0.312	0.248 (A)
3/8	0.500	0.402	0.430	0.450	…	0.375	0.311 (A), 0.315 (D)
1/2	0.625	0.527	0.545	0.569	…	0.500	0.436 (A), 0.430 (D)
5/8	0.750	0.652	0.666		…	0.625	0.555 (A), 0.545 (D)
3/4	0.875	0.745	0.785	0.811	…	0.750	0.680 (A), 0.666 (A, D)
7/8	…	…	…	…	…	0.875	0.785 (A, D)
1	1.125	0.995	1.025	1.055	…	…	…
1 1/8	…	…	…	…	…	1.125	1.025 (A, D)
1 1/4	1.375	1.245	1.265	1.291	1.295	…	…
1 3/8	…	…	…	…	…	1.375	1.265 (A, D)
1 1/2	1.625	1.481	1.505	1.527	1.541	…	…
1 5/8	…	…	…	…	…	1.625	1.505 (A,D)
2	2.125	1.959	1.985	2.009	2.041	…	…
2 1/8	…	…	…	…	…	2.125	1.985 (D)
2 1/2	2.625	2.435	2.465	2.495	…	…	…
2 5/8	…	…	…	…	…	2.625	2.465 (D)
3	3.125	2.907	2.945	2.981	3.030	…	…
3 1/8	…	…	…	…	…	3.125	2.945 (D)
3 1/2	3.625	3.385	3.425	3.459	…	…	…
3 5/8	…	…	…	…	…	3.625	3.425 (D)
4	4.125	3.857	3.905	3.935	4.009	…	…
4 1/8	…	…	…	…	…	4.125	3.905 (D)
5	5.125	4.805	4.875	4.907	4.981	…	…
6	6.125	5.741	5.845	5.881	5.959	…	…
8	8.125	7.583	7.725	7.785	7.907	…	…
10	10.125	9.449	9.625	9.701	…	…	…
12	12.125	11.315	11.565	11.617	…	…	…

Materials: Some of the more popular tubing materials are polyvinyl chloride (PVC), low density polyethylene (LDPE), high density polyethylene (HDPE), polypropylene (PP), nylon (PA 6, 6/6, 11, 12), silicone, polyurethane, fluoropolymers (PTFE, FEP, PFA, PVDF, ETFE), and polyetheretherketone (PEEK). PEX tube is also common in Europe for water applications.

PVC can be rigid or flexible, and can be transparent. Exposure to water can cause clouding of clear PVC over time. Flexibility will depend on the amount of plasticizer present, so a variety of durometers are available. Flexible PVC is rated for fairly low pressures, unless reinforced with braiding.

LDPE is low cost, light weight, relatively transparent, and flexible. It is suitable for air, water, and some chemicals. Caution should be used when barbed fittings are employed

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

because LDPE has poor environmental crack resistance, which can be accentuated when solvents are present.

HDPE is similar to LDPE in terms of material compatibility. It is fairly opaque, and is more dense and rigid than LDPE.

Polypropylene has high impact resistance combined with good stiffness and excellent chemical resistance. PP is often mixed with polyethylene or rubber to improve its impact and low temperature properties. PP is more heat resistant than PE, with an operating range up to 60°C.

Nylons can be used at elevated temperatures. They cost more than PE and PP, but exhibit superior abrasion resistance and stiffness. Types 11 and 12 are more flexible than type 6, and have better chemical resistance to acids and bases.

Silicone tubing is suitable for elevated temperatures and can be sterilized using heat. It is extremely soft and flexible, and is non-toxic. There are different ways to cure silicone tubing, so material properties may vary.

Polyurethane tubing is flexible and can be relatively transparent. This type of tubing has good abrasion resistance and tensile strength. It is flexible at low temperatures and holds its properties over time. There are two types of polyurethane: esters and ethers. Esters have good chemical and oil resistance. Ethers have good water compatibility and are suitable for outdoor applications. Both can be made FDA compliant.

Fluoropolymers are chemically inert and often chosen for harsh applications or high purity applications. They are also suitable for high temperatures in the 300–500 °F (148–260 °C) range. Rigidity varies with composition, but they are generally stiff but bendable. FEP is flexible and transparent.

PEEK is fairly rigid but bendable, has excellent mechanical stability and chemical compatibility, and can be used to 100 °C. It is often used where stainless steel tubing has material compatibility issues.

PEX tubing is of the same material and properties as PEX piping, discussed in the section *Plastic Pipe* starting on page 2767. It comes in a variety of colors, or a natural hazy clear state.

There are many more materials than those listed. In addition, there are many brand-name and proprietary formulations.

Sizes: Most plastic tubing is sized according to OD, ID, and wall thickness. A wide variety of sizes are available for each material. PEX tubing is sized according to the Copper Tube Size standard for outer diameter. Standard PEX dimensions are given in Table 20.

Table 20. Standard PEX Dimensions

Nominal PEX Size inch	Outside Diameter inch	Inside Diameter inch	Wall Thickness, inch
3/8	0.500	0.350	0.070
1/2	0.625	0.475	0.070
5/8	0.750	0.574	0.083
3/4	0.875	0.677	0.097
1	1.125	0.863	0.125

All dimensions are in inches.

Pressure Ratings: Care must be taken when using plastic tubing because pressure ratings are generally much lower than with metal tubing. In addition, if vacuum is to be used in the system, the tubing must be vacuum rated to ensure that it does not collapse.

Pressure rating will depend on material, diameter, and wall thickness. Consult the manufacturer's pressure rating when specifying plastic tubing.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Tube Fittings.—Tube fittings are used to connect tubing to tubing, or tubing to pipes or other objects. Tube fittings are generally non- permanent connections, although they may permanently deform the end of the tube.

Materials: Fitting materials should be chosen for compatibility with the tubing and the fluid being transported. Combining dissimilar metals should be avoided to prevent galvanic corrosion. Metal fittings and plastic fittings are widely available. Some plastic fittings have metal ferrules, and some metal fittings can have elastomeric seals. It is critical to check material compatibility with all components of a fitting. Plastic fittings are used with plastic tubing that is softer than the fitting material. Steel fittings are used with steel or plastic tubing. Brass fittings are used with copper, aluminum, and plastic tubing.

Types: There are many types of tube fittings, including proprietary and name-brand fittings. The most common general types are barbed, compression, flare, and push-in.

Barbed fittings are used with soft plastic tubing which can expand enough to fit over the barb end but have elastic memory enough to seal over the barb or barbs. A clamp should be employed to hold the tube on if pressures are moderate. Pressure in the system should not exceed 150 psi when using barbed connections. To specify a barbed fitting connection, one must know the tube inner diameter, process pressure, material compatibility, and whether the tubing is suitable for use with barbed fittings.

Compression fittings are used on metal tubing and stiff plastic tubing. Metal and plastic compression fittings are available. They are suitable for high pressures when constructed out of high strength material and combined with a high pressure rated tube. There are numerous designs available, but all include at least one ferrule, a nut, and a fitting body. When the nut is tightened, the ferrule swages the tube to form a pressure tight seal. The tube does not need to rotate during tightening. Compression fittings can be re-used if care is taken not to damage the ferrule or tube end. To specify a compression fitting, one must know the tube outer diameter, wall thickness, process pressure, and material compatibility requirements. To ensure proper sealing, the tube should be clean and cut square without burrs. The tube material must always be softer than the fitting material. Plastic compression fittings are used with softer plastic tubing, and stainless compression fittings are generally used with stainless tubing. Brass fittings can be used with firmer plastic, aluminum, and copper tubing. Carbon steel compression fittings are used with carbon steel tubing.

Flare fittings are typically used with metal tubing which is forced over a flared seat and secured with a nut to create a leak-tight seal. They are similar to compression fittings but have a sleeve instead of a ferrule. A flaring tool is used on the end of the tubing to create the proper flare for the fitting being used. These fittings are suitable for high pressures, even greater than with compression fittings. The most common flare fitting standards in use today are the 45° SAE fitting, and the 37° JIC fitting. The 37° style generally has a higher pressure rating for a given size tubing. The 45° style is generally used for low pressure refrigeration applications, while the 37° style is used for high pressure hydraulic applications. SAE and JIC fittings are incompatible due to the different flare angles. Flare fittings can be reused if care is taken not to damage the flared end of the tubing. Stainless steel fittings are used with flareable seamless stainless tubing. Brass fittings are used with flareable seamless copper. Carbon steel fittings are used with flareable welded and seamless carbon steel tubing. Aluminum fittings are used with seamless aluminum tubing.

Push-in fittings are popular for pneumatic connections, but are also made for liquid applications. These fittings have an internal gripping ring and usually an o-ring. The tube must be cut square and be burr-free. A leak-free seal is created when the end of the tube is pushed into the fitting. To release the tubing, the end of the fitting must be compressed axially to release the gripping mechanism. These fittings normally have elastomeric, plastic, and stainless steel components, regardless of the body material, so material compatibility can become an issue. These fittings can be selected to accept plastic or metal tubing, and pressure ratings vary. Pressure capability of push-in fittings is generally less than compression fittings but greater than or equivalent to barbed fittings.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Many other fittings and couplings are available. Couplings attach to the ends of two tubes and have a leak-free means of connecting the halves of the coupling together. Couplings are available with and without shut-off valves to prevent spillage when disconnected.

Flow and Energy Loss in Pipe, Tube, and Fittings

Fluids experience energy loss due to friction when flowing through pipes and fittings. The energy lost is dependent on the length and diameter of the pipe/tube, the surface conditions, and the number and shape of any bends or restrictions.

Flow Rates.—The principal of continuity for constant flow dictates that the volumetric flow rate (or mass flow rate) remains the same along a pipe, even if the pipe expands, contracts, or is restricted. This means that velocity changes with flow area. One can calculate the velocity before or after a change in flow area if the velocity on the other side of the change is known.

$$Q_i = A_i v_i = Q_o = A_o v_o$$

where A is the cross sectional flow area, Q is volumetric flow rate, and v is velocity.

The behavior of a fluid, and its energy losses through pipe and fittings, is dependent upon whether it follows a laminar, transitional, or turbulent flow regime. To determine what flow regime is present, the dimensionless Reynolds number is calculated with the following equations. If the Reynolds number is less than 2000, the flow is laminar. If the Reynolds number is greater than 4000, flow is turbulent. Between those values lies the transitional flow regime. Note that the Reynolds number is dependent on fluid viscosity.

$$R_e = \frac{\rho v D}{\mu}$$

where D is the flow diameter, ρ is the density, v is the mean velocity, μ is the absolute viscosity of the fluid.

$$R_e = \frac{vD}{\upsilon} = \frac{QD}{A\upsilon}$$

where Q is the volumetric flow rate, A is the cross sectional area of flow, and υ is the kinematic viscosity.

For general liquid piping applications, the US Army Corps of Engineers manual "Liquid Process Piping" recommends a flow velocity of 7 ± 3 ft/s (2.1 ±0.9 m/s) with a maximum velocity of 7 ft/s at discharge points including pump suction lines and drains.

All formulas for calculating the mean velocity of flow through a pipe or tube are approximate. The following is a formula for low viscosity liquids that will yield results within 5 to 10 percent of actual if applied to carefully laid pipe in fair condition:

$$v = C\sqrt{\frac{hd}{L + 54d}}$$

where C is taken from Table 21, h is total head in feet, d is the inside diameter of a round pipe in feet, and L is the total length of the pipe in feet. Length, where pressure drop due to bends and fittings is a factor, is equivalent length. See *Energy Loss in Fittings and Valves* on page 2783, and *Energy Loss in Fittings and Valves* on page 2783 for more on this topic.

For air, the following velocity equation can be used to estimate flow:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{25,000\ dp}{L}} \qquad p = \frac{Lv^2}{25,000\ d}$$

where v = velocity of air in feet per second
p = loss of pressure due to flow through the pipes in ounces per square inch
d = inside diameter of pipe in inches
L = length of pipe in feet

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. Values of Coefficient *C*

Dia. of Pipe			Dia. of Pipe			Dia. of Pipe		
Feet	Inches	*C*	Feet	Inches	*C*	Feet	Inches	*C*
0.1	1.2	23	0.8	9.6	46	3.5	42	64
0.2	2.4	30	0.9	10.8	47	4.0	48	66
0.3	3.6	34	1.0	12.0	48	5.0	60	68
0.4	4.8	37	1.5	18.0	53	6.0	72	70
0.5	6.0	39	2.0	24.0	57	7.0	84	72
0.6	7.2	42	2.5	30.0	60	8.0	96	74
0.7	8.4	44	3.0	36.0	62	10.0	120	77

The quantity of air discharged in cubic feet per second is the product of the velocity as obtained from the preceding formula and the area of the pipe in square feet. The horsepower required to drive air through a pipe equals the volume of air in cubic feet per second multiplied by the pressure in pounds per square foot, and this product divided by 550.

Volume of Air Transmitted Through Pipes, in CFM

Velocity of Air in Feet per Second	Actual Inside Diameter of Pipe, Inches									
	1	2	3	4	6	8	10	12	16	24
1	0.33	1.31	2.95	5.2	11.8	20.9	32.7	47.1	83.8	188
2	0.65	2.62	5.89	10.5	23.6	41.9	65.4	94.2	167.5	377
3	0.98	3.93	8.84	15.7	35.3	62.8	98.2	141.4	251.3	565
4	1.31	5.24	11.78	20.9	47.1	83.8	131.0	188.0	335.0	754
5	1.64	6.55	14.7	26.2	59.0	104.0	163.0	235.0	419.0	942
6	1.96	7.85	17.7	31.4	70.7	125.0	196.0	283.0	502.0	1131
7	2.29	9.16	20.6	36.6	82.4	146.0	229.0	330.0	586.0	1319
8	2.62	10.50	23.5	41.9	94.0	167.0	262.0	377.0	670.0	1508
9	2.95	11.78	26.5	47.0	106.0	188.0	294.0	424.0	754.0	1696
10	3.27	13.1	29.4	52.0	118.0	209.0	327.0	471.0	838.0	1885
12	3.93	15.7	35.3	63.0	141.0	251.0	393.0	565.0	1005.0	2262
15	4.91	19.6	44.2	78.0	177.0	314.0	491.0	707.0	1256.0	2827
18	5.89	23.5	53.0	94.0	212.0	377.0	589.0	848.0	1508.0	3393
20	6.55	26.2	59.0	105.0	235.0	419.0	654.0	942.0	1675.0	3770
24	7.86	31.4	71.0	125.0	283.0	502.0	785.0	1131.0	2010.0	4524
25	8.18	32.7	73.0	131.0	294.0	523.0	818.0	1178.0	2094.0	4712
28	9.16	36.6	82.0	146.0	330.0	586.0	916.0	1319.0	2346.0	5278
30	9.80	39.3	88.0	157.0	353.0	628.0	982.0	1414.0	2513.0	5655

Flow of Compressed Air in Pipes.—When there is a comparatively small difference of pressure at the two ends of a pipe, the volume of flow in cubic feet per minute is found by the formula:

$$V = 58\sqrt[4]{\frac{pd^5}{WL}}$$

where V = volume of air in cubic feet per minute
p = difference in pressure at the two ends of the pipe in pounds per square inch
d = inside diameter of pipe in inches

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$W =$ weight in pounds of one cubic foot of entering air

$L =$ length of pipe in feet

Flow in Branched (Parallel) Pipes.—Pipe systems commonly have parallel sections to allow some fluid to bypass a component. The principle of continuity dictates that in a steady flow situation, total flow into a branched system is equal to total flow exiting the branched system. The following are the governing equations for branching pipe systems.

$$Q_i = A_1 v_1 + A_2 v_2$$

where Q_i is the total flow rate entering the branching system. A_1 and v_1 are the cross sectional area and flow velocity of the first branch, and subscript 2 refers to the second branch.

Head loss is equal in all branches and equal to the total head loss across the network:

$$h_L = h_{L1} = h_{L2}$$

Energy Loss in Pipes.—As fluid moves through straight pipe and tube, some energy is lost to friction. The relationship between pressures and velocities at two ends of a pipe is governed by Bernoulli's equation:

$$\frac{p_1}{\gamma_1} + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} + z_1 = \frac{p_2}{\gamma_2} + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + z_2$$

where p is pressure, v is velocity, z is elevation, and g is acceleration due to gravity.

For inviscid, incompressible liquid flow moving through a pipe, Bernoulli's equation simplifies because the specific weight of the fluid is assumed to be the same at both points of interest.

Darcy-Weisbach Equation and the Moody Diagram: This equation can be used to calculate friction loss in Newtonian liquids for all flow regimes. It requires the use of a friction factor, which is dimensionless and can be determined using the equation for laminar flow, the Colebrook equation for turbulent flow, or graphically through the use of the Moody diagram (Fig. 1). The Darcy-Weisbach equation is:

$$h_L = \frac{fLv^2}{2gD}$$

where h_L is head loss in units of length, L is pipe length, v is average fluid velocity, D is inside diameter of the pipe, and f is the friction factor.

The friction factor for laminar flow is $f = \frac{64}{R_e}$. The Colebrook equation for turbulent flow is $\frac{1}{\sqrt{f}} = -2\log_{10}\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{3.7D} + \frac{2.51}{R_e\sqrt{f}}\right)$ where ε is the pipe roughness, and D is the inside diameter. This applies when the pipe is completely full of fluid. Calculators are available online for this factor, or it can be solved numerically.

Moody's diagram was generated experimentally. A chart of surface roughness of common pipe and tube materials can be found in Table 22 for use with the turbulent flow equation and Moody diagram.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 22. Surface Roughness of Common Pipe and Tube

Material	Surface Roughness		Material	Surface Roughness	
	ft × 10−6	m × 10−6		ft × 10−6	m × 10−6
Glass	0.0003	0.0001	Ductile Iron (Coated)	400	120
Plastic	0.0003–0.0023	0.0001–0.0007	Concrete (Smooth)	400	120
Drawn Metal Tubing	5	2	Galvanized Iron	500	150
Carbon Steel	150	46	Ductile Iron (Uncoated)	800	240
Wrought Iron	150	46	Cast Iron	850	260
Rubber Tubing	230	70	Riveted Steel	6000	1800

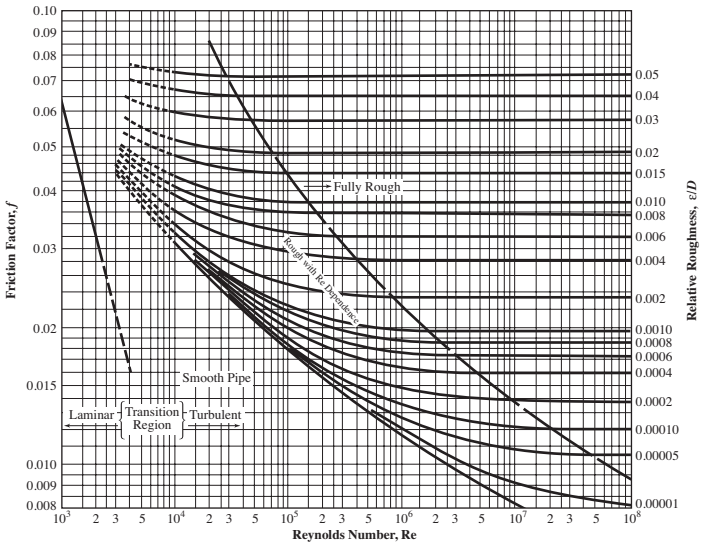


Fig. 1. Moody Diagram

Hazen-Williams Equation for Water Flow: For the special case of 60°F water in pipes between 2 inch and 6 feet in diameter, at velocities less than 10 ft/s, the Hazen- Williams formula or nomograph (Fig. 2) can be used. The coefficient values of common pipes can be found in Table 23. The nomograph is read by aligning a straightedge with the known values and reading the unknowns at the intersection points. The Hazen-Williams formula for US units is:

$$v = 1.32 C_h R^{0.63} \left(\frac{h_L}{L}\right)^{0.54}$$

where v is average velocity (ft/s), R is hydraulic radius (ft), L is length of pipe (ft), h_L is head loss (ft), and C_h is the Hazen-Williams coefficient (see Table 23). The Hazen-Williams formula for SI units, with R, h, and L in meters, and v in m/s is:

$$v = 0.85 C_h R^{0.63} \left(\frac{h_L}{L}\right)^{0.54}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

A solution of the Hazen-Williams equations may be found by use of the nomograph in Fig. 2, based on the Hazen-Williams formula and using $C_h = 100$. For larger or smaller values of C_h, the discharge or velocity obtained from the nomograph is multiplied by the ratio of the given value of C_h to 100. If the discharge or velocity is given, it should be multiplied by the ratio of 100 to the known value of C_h before the nomograph is used.

Example: By using Fig. 2, determine the discharge, in cubic feet per second (cfs), from a 12-inch pipe for which $C_h = 120$ when the loss of head is 5 feet per 1000 feet.

Solution: The discharge corresponding to the given diameter and loss of head for a value of $C_h = 100$ is found first. A straightedge passing through 12 on the diameter line and 5 on the loss-of-head line will intersect the discharge line at 2.5 cfs. Therefore, the discharge is $2.5 \times 120 = 3.0$ cfs.

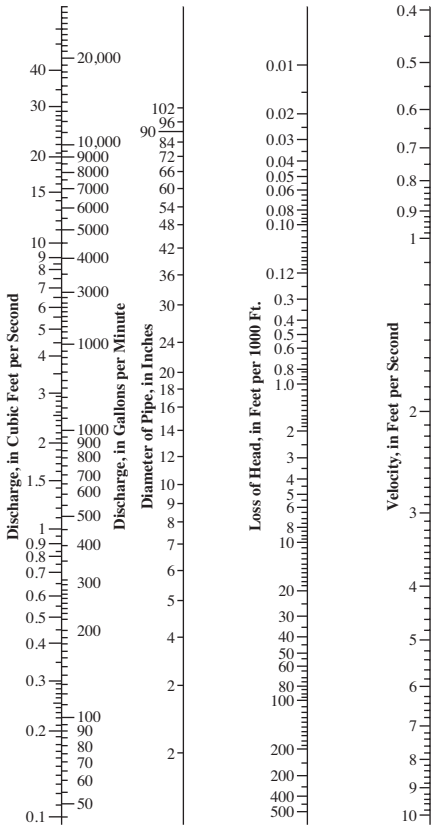

Discharge, in Cubic Feet per Second
Discharge, in Gallons per Minute
Diameter of Pipe, in Inches
Loss of Head, in Feet per 1000 Ft.
Velocity, in Feet per Second

Fig. 2. Nomograph for Hazen-Williams equations in which $C_h = 100$.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23. Hazen-Williams Coefficient, Selected Values

Pipe Type	C_h	Pipe Type	C_h
Corrugated Metal	60	Copper	130–140
ABS Plastic	130	Drawn metal	130–140
Aluminum	130–150	Ductile iron pipe	140
Brass	130–140	Ductile iron, cement lined	120
Cast iron	100	Fiberglass	150
new unlined	130	Galvanized iron	120
10 years old	107–113	Glass	130
20 years old	89–100	Lead	130–140
40 years old	64–83	Plastic	130–150
asphalt coated	100	Polyethylene	140
bituminous lined	140	PVC, CPVC	150
cement lined	140	Steel new unlined	140–150
sea-coated	120		
Concrete	100–140		
lined, steel forms	140		
lined, wooden forms	120		

Energy Loss for Gas Flow: Bernoulli's equation can be applied to examine pressure loss for gas flow through pipes. Gas flowing through pipes can be considered incompressible and treated like a liquid if the pressure ratio is small enough. Pressure ratio is calculated using the following equation. Engineering judgment should be used when applying this equation. In different industries, different values are used to make the decision how to treat gas flow.

$$PR\% = 100\left(\frac{p_1 - p_2}{p_1}\right)$$

where p is pressure at the point of interest and $PR\%$ is the pressure ratio.

Pressure drop for gas flow in pipes can be calculated most easily if certain assumptions are made. One can assume flow is isothermal, the gas is perfect, the pipe is straight and horizontal, the friction factor is constant, and flow is steady. This simplifies the pressure drop equation to the following form:

$$p_i^2 - p_o^2 = Z_m RT\left(\frac{\dot{m}}{A}\right)^2\left(f\frac{L}{D}\right)$$

where p_i and p_o are the inlet and outlet pressures, Z_m is the mean compressibility factor, R is the gas constant, T is temperature, A is pipe cross sectional area, f is the friction factor, L is pipe length, D is inner diameter, and $\dot{m}$ is mass flow rate.

Alternative methods of calculation include the Weymouth and Panhandle formula, and the Renouard equation for natural gas flow.

Energy Loss in Pipe and Tube Bends.—The energy lost by fluid in a pipe bend is caused by both friction and momentum changes as the direction of flow changes. This loss depends on the bend angle, the curvature ratio (bend mean radius divided by pipe diameter, R/D), the roughness of the pipe, and the angle of bend. To compute the energy lost by liquids in bends, use the following equations and Table 24.

$$h_l = K_b\frac{V^2}{2g} \qquad K_b = f\frac{L_e}{D}$$

where the head loss, h_l, is expressed in units of length; V is the average velocity in the pipe; and K_b is the bend loss coefficient; f is the friction factor given in the Moody diagram, (Fig. 1); and L_e/D is given in Table 24. K_b increases with relative roughness (or screwed connections) and bend angle, but decreases with the curvature ratio.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 24. Bend Equivalent Length Ratio, L_e/D

Bend Type	Bend Angle	R/D	L_e/D	Bend Type	Bend Angle	R/D	L_e/D
Radius Bend	90°	1	20	Miter Bend	30°	…	8
		2	12		45°	…	15
		3	12		60°	…	25
		4	14		90°	…	60
		6	17	Close Return Bend	180°	…	50
		8	24				
		10	30				
		12	34				
		16	42				

R/D is the bend mean radius divided by pipe diameter

The loss of head due to a bend in the pipe is most frequently given as the equivalent length of straight pipe, which would cause the same loss in head as the bend. Experiments show that a right-angle bend should have a radius of about three times the diameter of the pipe. Assuming this curvature, then, if d is the diameter of the pipe in inches, and L is the length of straight pipe in feet that causes the same loss of head as the bend in the pipe, the following formula gives the equivalent length of straight pipe that should be added to simulate a right-angle bend:

$$L = 4d \div 3$$

Energy Loss in Fittings and Valves.—There are two standard ways to calculate the energy lost in fittings and valves: the resistance coefficient method, and the equivalent length method. The method chosen will depend on what information is provided with the fitting to be analyzed.

Resistance Coefficient Method: Resistance coefficients are commonly reported by the manufacturers of liquid fittings and valves. The following equations and Table 25 (or manufacturer's data) can be used to calculate friction loss in terms of resistance coefficient. There are methods that use up to 3 different resistance coefficients to improve the accuracy of the calculation.

$$h_l = K_F\left(\frac{v^2}{2g}\right) \qquad K_F = f\frac{L_e}{D}$$

where v is average velocity, h_l is head loss in units of length, K_F is the resistance coefficient for the fitting or valve, f is the friction factor given in the Moody diagram, Fig. 1, and L_e/D is the equivalent length ratio given in Table 25.

Table 25. Equivalent Length Ratio (L_e/D) for Liquid Fittings and Valves

Fitting or Valve Type	L_e/D	Fitting or Valve Type	L_e/D
Elbow	30	Swing Check Valve	100
Street Elbow	50	Ball Check Valve	150
Long Radius Elbow	20	Foot Valve (hinged)	75
45° Elbow	16	Ball Valve	3
Close Return Bend	50	Gate Valve	8
Tee (Flow thru Run)	20	Gate Valve, 1/2 Closed	160
Tee (Flow thru Branch)	60	Butterfly Valve (< 8″)	45
		Globe Valve	340

Valves fully open unless otherwise specified.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Equivalent Length Method: Pressure loss can be calculated for systems based on the equivalent length of straight pipe representing all pipe, fittings, and valves in the circuit. Equivalent lengths of some common fittings and valves for liquids can be found in Table 26.

Table 26. Equivalent Length in Feet of Selected Pipe Fittings and Valves for Liquid

Nominal Pipe Size (in.)	Elbows						Standard Tee	
	90° Std.	45° Std.	90° Long Radius	90° Street	45° Street	Square Corner	Flow thru Run	Flow thru Branch
¼	0.9	0.5	0.6	1.5	0.8	1.7	0.6	1.8
½	1.6	0.8	1.0	2.6	1.3	3.0	1.0	4.0
¾	2.1	1.1	1.4	3.4	1.8	3.9	1.4	5.1
1	2.6	1.4	1.7	4.4	2.3	5.0	1.7	6.0
1¼	3.5	1.8	2.3	5.8	3.0	6.5	2.3	6.9
1½	4.0	2.1	2.7	6.7	3.5	7.6	2.7	8.1
2	5.5	2.8	4.3	8.6	4.5	9.8	4.3	12.0
2½	6.2	3.3	5.1	10.3	5.4	11.7	5.1	14.3
3	7.7	4.1	6.3	12.8	6.6	14.6	6.3	16.3
4	10.1	5.4	8.3	16.8	8.7	19.1	8.3	22.1
6	15.2	8.1	12.5	25.3	13.1	28.8	12.5	32.2
8	20.0	10.6	16.5	33.3	17.3	37.9	16.5	39.9
10	25.1	13.4	20.7	41.8	21.7	47.6	20.7	50.1
12	29.8	15.9	24.7	49.7	25.9	56.7	24.7	59.7

Energy loss, in terms of pressure, for gas flow through fittings is often found using tabulated values of pressure drops for fittings of different sizes. The equivalent length method can also be used, with pressure loss calculated in terms of the total equivalent length of all pipe and fittings. Table 27 includes some equivalent lengths of selected pneumatic fittings and valves.

Table 27. Selected Pneumatic Fittings and Valves, Equivalent Lengths

Pipe Size, inch	Elbow	Long Radius Elbow	Close Return Bend	Gate Valve	Globe Valve
½	0.84	0.41	1.30	0.31	2.50
¾	1.20	0.57	1.80	0.44	3.50
1	1.60	0.77	2.30	0.57	4.70
1½	2.60	1.30	3.90	0.98	7.80
2	3.60	1.70	5.30	1.30	10.60
3	5.70	3.00	8.50	2.10	17.10
4	7.90	3.90	11.80	3.00	23.70

Entrance, Exit, Enlargement, and Contraction Losses for Subsonic Flow.— Any change in diameter of a pipe will cause energy losses in the fluid.

Sudden Enlargement: Sudden enlargement of a pipe or tube causes minor losses due to turbulence. The friction loss, in terms of head, due to sudden enlargement can be approximated using the following equations:

$$h_l = \frac{(v_i - v_o)^2}{2g} = K\left(\frac{v_i^2}{2g}\right)$$

$$K = \left[1 - \left(\frac{A_i}{A_o}\right)\right]^2$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where head loss h_l is measured in units of length; v_i is velocity entering the enlargement; v_o is velocity leaving the enlargement; K is the loss coefficient for sudden enlargement; A_i and A_o are the areas before and after the enlargement. The equation for K is only valid if velocity at the inlet is less than 4 ft/sec (1.2 m/s). For faster flow rates, a graph of experimentally determined K values must be used.

Gradual Enlargement: Gradual enlargement causes less energy loss than sudden enlargement because it causes less turbulence. Diffusers are gradual enlargement devices. Velocity decreases while pressure increases. Gradual enlargements generally have a conical section that joins two different pipe diameters. The divergence angle is the included angle in the cone. The following two equations give approximations of head loss in a gradual enlargement. K_L is the Gibson loss coefficient (see Fig. 3). K_D is the resistance coefficient (see Fig. 4). Both depend on the ratio of areas and the angle of divergence. The formulas to calculate this loss ignore the effects of friction inside the conical section. If the enlargement is very gradual, the effects of friction can become significant. Therefore, an included angle of 6° or more is recommended in the conical section to mitigate the effects of friction. For area ratios up to 6:1 with angles of divergence of 40° or more, head loss may be less with a sudden expansion than with a gradual one. These two effects are clearest on the graph of K_L (Fig. 3).

$$h_l = K_D \frac{v_i^2}{2g} \qquad h_l = K_L \frac{(v_i^2 - v_o^2)}{2g}$$

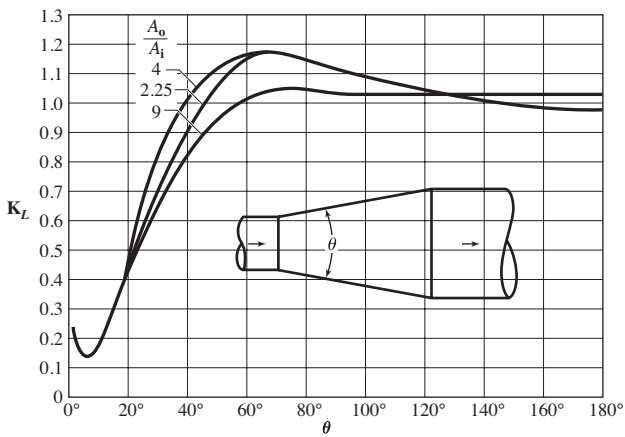


Fig. 3. Head Loss Coefficient K_L, Conical Diffuser

Sudden Contraction: Sudden contraction causes energy loss due to turbulence. This head loss can be calculated by using the following equation and Fig. 5. Because loss varies with the square of velocity, small changes in flow can greatly affect energy loss.

$$h_l = K_C \frac{v_o^2}{2g}$$

where v_o is the velocity at the outlet and K_C is the loss coefficient. D_i/D_o is the ratio of the inlet diameter to the outlet diameter.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

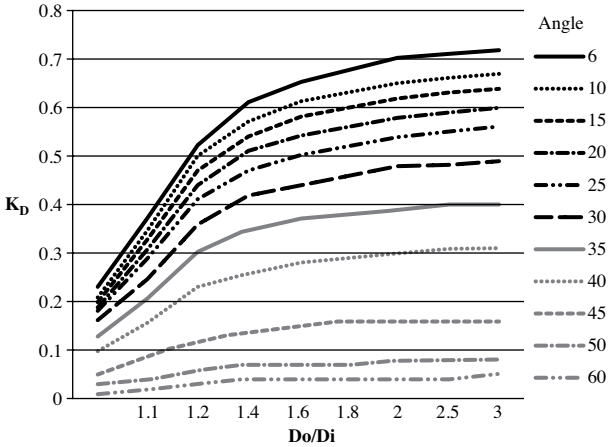


Fig. 4. Head Loss Coefficient K_D, Conical Diffuser

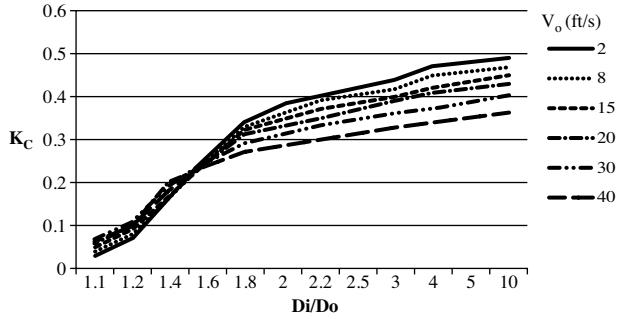


Fig. 5. Head Loss Coefficient K_C, Sudden Contraction

Gradual Contraction: Gradual contraction, like gradual enlargement, reduces losses by reducing turbulence. Like with gradual enlargement, if the angle is shallow enough, friction losses become significant. Included angles greater than 15° avoid this effect. Good performance can be achieved with included angles as high as 60°. To approximate head loss due to gradual contraction, use the following equation and Fig. 6.

$$h_l = K_G \frac{v_o^2}{2g}$$

where v_o is the velocity at the outlet and K_G is the loss coefficient. D_i/D_o is the ratio of the inlet diameter to the outlet diameter. By rounding the exposed edge of the contraction, one can reduce the head loss even further.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

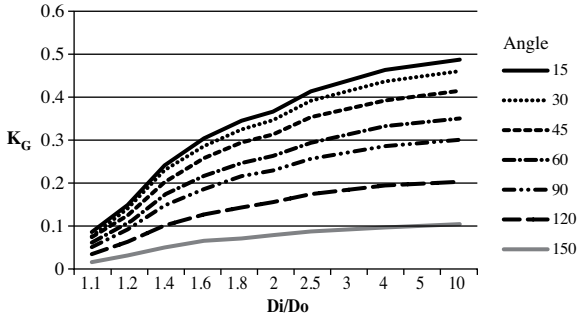


Fig. 6. Head Loss Coefficient K_G, Conical Gradual Contraction

Exit Loss: Discharge into to a static volume of fluid causes minor losses as the fluid loses its kinetic energy as its velocity drops to zero. This is called exit loss, and is calculated in terms of head using the following equation:

$$h_l = \frac{v_i^2}{2g}$$

where v_i is the velocity in the pipe before entering the reservoir.

Entrance Loss: Entrance into a pipe from a static volume of fluid causes energy loss due to contraction turbulence. This is called entrance loss, and it is reduced by breaking the corners of the inlet with chamfers, or preferably, radii. Entrance head loss is calculated using the following equation and Table 28.

$$h_l = K_E \frac{v_o^2}{2g}$$

where v_o is the velocity in the pipe exiting the reservoir, and K_E is the resistance coefficient for entrance.

Table 28. Entrance Head Loss Coefficient, K_E

Condition	K_E	Condition	K_E
Rounded Inlet, R/D_o:		Square-edged Inlet	0.5
0.02	0.28	Chamfered Inlet	0.25
0.04	0.24	Inward Projecting Pipe	1
0.06	0.15		
0.1	0.09		
>0.15	0.04		

Fluid Power Valves

There are many types of pneumatic and hydraulic valves. Valves can be normally open or normally closed. Normally open valves allow flow when the valve is not energized. Normally closed valves block flow when not energized. Valves may be actuated manually or automatically. Automatic valves typically change state using solenoids, often assisted by energy from either internal or external pilot pressure. An external pilot supply should be used to control valve when the supply pressure to the valve is insufficient to shift the valve or when the medium being controlled by the valve would damage the shifting

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

mechanism. Automatic valves can be equipped with manual overrides which permit the operator to actuate the valve manually.

Valve Types.—There are many valves types commercially available. The most common types are check valves, foot valves, ball valves, gate valves, globe valves, butterfly valves, relief valves, and directional control valves.

Check Valves and Foot Valves: Check valves are constructed to allow flow in one direction and stop flow in the other direction. This type of valve is essential in pipe and tube systems where backflow could cause damage or flooding. The two most common types of check valves are ball type and swing type. Ball check valves create a higher energy loss due to restriction around the ball. Check valves have a "minimum cracking pressure" that is the pressure required to open the valve and allow flow. This may be expressed as a minimum pressure or a minimum flow velocity, depending on the application.

Foot valves are commonly used on the intake lines of pumps that draw fluid from an open reservoir. They are comprised of a check valve outfitted with a low-loss strainer to keep out debris. The strainer should be cleaned regularly to prevent suction line restriction.

Restriction Valves: There are several types of valves that are used to reduce flow or to stop flow entirely. Ball valves contain a sphere with a hole through it inside the valve body. When the sphere is turned, the through-hole can be aligned to allow full flow or to obstruct flow partially or completely. These valves are fully actuated with one quarter turn, and are typically used for on/off control rather than throttling. Gate valves have a blade or gate that is cranked into or out of the flow path to allow full flow, partial flow, or no flow. Globe valves are true throttling valves, and can be used even in high flow applications. Due to their design, they cause a significantly higher pressure drop than other types of valves, even when fully open. Butterfly valves consist of a disk that can be turned to fully or partially block flow. When fully open, the disk is still in the flow path, but is turned to present its edge to the flow.

Relief Valves: Pressure relief valves are used to protect the fluid circuit and its components from dangerously high pressures. A pressure relief valve opens to relieve pressure at a predetermined set point. These valves can be selected such that they close again when the system pressure has returned to a safe level. Since pressure relief valves are safety devices, their design and use is covered by various codes. The information and calculations required to properly size pressure relief valves is quite extensive and beyond the scope of this text. Most major pressure relief valve manufacturers also offer sizing software. In liquid pumping systems, the relief valve should discharge to the suction reservoir in a way that prevents gases from entering the suction line to the pump.

Directional Control: Directional control valves are used to change the direction of flow. They can also be used to stop and start flow. Directional control valves are functionally described in terms of the number of ports, the number of positions (usually 2 or 3), the number of paths (passing and non-passing) the fluid can take through the valve, and the valve's de-energized state. The number of paths the fluid can take through the valve is said to be the number of "ways." Three way valves have one output and four way valves have two outputs. Generally, three way valves operate single acting linear actuators and four way valves operate double acting linear actuators. Some of the most commonly used directional control valves are:

- Two port, two position (2/2) two way valves have one inlet and one outlet port. They perform a basic on/off function.
- Three port, two position (3/2) two way valves have one inlet, one outlet, and one exhaust port. These valves switch flow between inlet and exhaust, and are commonly used to pressurize and exhaust a single actuator supply line.
- Five port, two position (5/2) four way valves are typically used to control pressure and exhaust to two output lines. This is ideal for controlling double acting cylinders. 5/2 valves are also available with four ports. Five ported valves have separate exhaust

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

ports for each supply port. Flow controls can be installed on each exhaust port and thus the speed of an actuator can be controlled in each direction.

- Five port, three position (5/3) four way valves also can control pressure and exhaust to two output lines. These valves often have the center position normally closed when the valve is de-energized. This valve is also excellent for control of double acting cylinders. The closed position makes it possible to 'jog' actuators.

Directional control valves can be either manually controlled or automatically controlled. Manual control valves are outfitted with buttons, levers, or knobs. Automatic control valves are electrically operated solenoids. Solenoid valves are most commonly actuated using spools or poppets. These valves can be single or double acting. Single acting valves normally have spring returns. Double acting valves use fluid pressure on either side of the valve to actuate back and forth.

Automatic control valves can be either direct acting or pilot operated. Direct acting solenoid valves open and close the valve. They are used in systems with low flow capacities or low pressure differentials across the valve. The sealing surface that opens and closes the main valve orifice is connected to the solenoid plunger. Direct acting valves can operate with a zero pressure differential, or up to the maximum rated pressure differential (MOPD) regardless of fluid pressure. Pressure drop across the valve is not required to hold the valve open.

Pilot operated valves use system fluid pressure to open and close the valve. In a normally closed valve, the sealing surface is opened when the pilot is energized. When a normally open valve is energized, fluid pressure builds up behind the sealing surface, forcing it to close the valve. Pneumatic solenoid valves are generally pilot operated. When vacuum or air with insufficient pressure is the medium, separate pilot lines must be provided with sufficient positive pressure to actuate the valve.

Energy Loss in Valves.—Energy is lost in all valves due to restriction, friction, and changes in direction of flow. The type of valve and its specific geometry will determine the amount of energy lost. Manufacturers will generally provide equivalent length of straight pipe values or resistance coefficients for their valves. Equivalent length is added to the pipe circuit when calculating pressure drop through the system. Resistance coefficient K is used in previous equations for friction loss. Some values for equivalent lengths are given in Table 26 and Table 27.

Valve Selection and Sizing.—Valves should be selected by first considering their function and selecting a type. Compatibility with the fluid must be carefully evaluated, since most valves include seals and mechanical components of different materials. The temperature and pressure range of the system should be taken into account. The cleanliness of the fluid matters when selecting valves with small or sensitive internal components. A fluid filter (with its own pressure drop) may be required. Pressure drop across the valve should be examined at the operating flow rate to determine if it meets the valve's minimum pressure differential requirement in the case of pilot operated valves.

Valves are usually sized based on Coefficient of Velocity (C_v). These values are normally listed in manufacturer's catalogs. C_v and its calculation is covered in *Coefficient of Velocity, Cv* on page 2760. Using C_v to size valves is industry standard practice, but be aware that it is only an approximation. Energy loss in the circuit due to pipe and tubing runs, fittings, and other components will cause deviation of system performance form ideal. Valve switching response time can also be a factor to consider when selecting a valve. To select the proper size valve for an actuator to perform a specific task, first calculate the C_v of the actuator, and then select a valve that has a corresponding or greater C_v.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Fluid Power Actuators

Linear Actuators.—When a gas, typically air, is used in a linear actuator, it is called a gas cylinder or air cylinder. When a liquid is used, it is typically called a hydraulic ram or cylinder. These are essentially the same in form and function. Linear actuators can be either single or double acting.

Single Acting Cylinders: Single acting actuators with spring return use a spring to push the actuator to its free state when fluid pressure is removed. The free state of a single acting cylinder is usually fully retracted. A fluid pressure differential is used to extend the cylinder. Single acting cylinders use half the fluid of double acting cylinders. Single acting cylinders can be actuated with three way valves.

Double Acting Cylinders: These cylinders require pressure differentials on both the extend and retract strokes. When pressure equalizes across the cylinder, the state of the actuator becomes indeterminate. Double acting cylinders are most commonly actuated using four way valves. Double acting cylinders use twice the fluid of single acting cylinders, which matters most in pneumatic applications where that air is exhausted and lost.

Selection of Linear Actuators: Linear actuators are available with a variety of options. In addition to single and double acting versions, some cylinders are available with a magnet embedded in the piston to enable position sensing. For applications with side loading, a double rod cylinder or external bearing may be needed. When a cylinder is guiding a load that should not rotate, anti- rotation options such as a non-round rod or integral guide rods are commonly used. For heavy loads or high speeds, internal or external end cushions are usually offered to soften the impacts and allow the cylinder to withstand higher kinetic energy movements.

Force Exerted by Linear Actuators: The force exerted by a linear actuator is calculated using the following equation:

$$F = \eta pA$$

where $\eta_{\text{hydraulic}} = 0.9$ and $\eta_{\text{pneumatic}} = 1$, and A is the effective area of the cylinder. Effective area on the retract stroke is the piston area minus the rod area.

It is good practice to oversize the load-carrying capacity of an actuator by 25 percent to ensure smooth operation and account for losses in the system. For high speed operation, oversizing by 50 percent is not uncommon. For a spring return cylinder, the force on the retraction stroke will be equal to the spring force rather than a function of air pressure. For applications where rapid retraction speed is critical, double acting cylinders may be the best choice.

Speed of Linear Actuators: The speed achieved by an unloaded linear actuator depends on the effective area of the cylinder and the flow rate of the fluid. Actuation velocity can be calculated for an unloaded cylinder using the following equation:

$$v = \frac{231Q}{A}$$

where v is velocity in inches per minute, Q is flow rate in gallons per minute, and A is piston active area in square inches. Active area is reduced by the area of the rod when a rod is present on the acting side of the cylinder.

Most manufacturers provide graphs of actuator speed versus loading for their products. Fluid supply can be characterized by Coefficient of Velocity (C_v) factor. Valves and circuits with a higher C_v will be capable of moving an actuator faster because they can provide more air flow.

If the C_v of a valve and other system components is known, it can be used to determine the time required to extend or retract a cylinder. It is common to oversize the speed of an actuator by 25 percent in critical applications to account for losses.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Kinetic Energy and Linear Actuators: Kinetic energy is generated when a load is moved. When a moving load is stopped, the kinetic energy is absorbed by the mechanism that stops it. Actuators can have either internal or external stops. External stops can generally withstand greater impacts than internal stops. Manufacturers normally publish the kinetic energy limits of their actuators.

Safe Loading of Linear Actuators: Rod failure and piston wear is of concern when linear actuators are used in compression or are subjected to side loading. Side loading can be a result of external forces, eccentrically mounted loads, or mounting and operating a cylinder at some angle rather than vertical. It is critical to align connections to a cylinder such that side loading due to misalignment or eccentric loading is minimized. Compliant connections are often used to eliminate overcontraint and resultant loading. When rod bending or buckling is a risk, the use of external bearings or double rod cylinders can help reduce the risk. For horizontal cylinder installations, center trunnion mounting can help reduce the side loading on the cylinder. Another way to reduce premature failure due to side loading is to limit the extension stroke of a cylinder so that it cannot fully extend.

The potential for buckling must be evaluated for any cylinder in compression. To increase the buckling strength of a cylinder, increase the piston rod diameter. Critical buckling load is calculated as shown in the following equation.

Equivalent length is used to calculate critical buckling load rather than actual rod length. The equivalent length is dependent on the end conditions of the cylinder. The length L used to calculate equivalent length is assumed to be the distance at maximum extension between the exposed end of the piston rod and the nearest point of fixation.

$$F_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{L_e^2} \qquad I = \frac{\pi r^2}{4}$$

where F_{cr} is the critical buckling load, E is the modulus of elasticity for the rod material, and L_e is given in Table 29.

Table 29. Equivalent Length, Linear Actuator

Actuator and Load Fixations	Equivalent Length L_e
Actuator Rigidly Mounted, Load Free	$2L$
Actuator and Load Pin Connected	L
Actuator Rigidly Mounted, Load Pinned	$0.7L$
Actuator and Load Rigidly Mounted	$0.5L$

Intensifiers and Hydraulic Presses.—Intensifiers use the energy in a relatively large volume (work cylinder) of moderate pressure fluid to displace a smaller piston (ram). The two pistons are usually mechanically linked, so their stroke is the same. Intensifiers will hold a fixed pressure without additional input energy. The intensifier ratio, output pressure, and stroke are found using the following equations.

$$R_I = \frac{p_o}{p_i} \qquad p_o = \frac{p_i A_i}{A_o} \qquad S_1 = \frac{V_w + V_C}{A_r} + l$$

$$V_C = 0.1\, V_{oil} \frac{p_r}{1000} \qquad S_2 = \frac{V_o + V_C}{A_r} + X + l$$

where R_I = the intensifier ratio

p_o and p_i = output and input pressures

A_o and A_i = the two different piston areas

S_1 = the stroke of a single pressure intensifier

V_w = the volume of the work cylinder

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$V_C =$ $0.1 V_{oil} \frac{p_r}{1000}$ is the compressibility allowance, where p_r is the pressure in the high pressure circuit, and V_{oil} is the total volume of oil in the high pressure circuit

$l =$ any pretravel of the work cylinder required

$A_r =$ the area of the ram

$S_2 =$ the stroke of a dual pressure intensifier

$V_o =$ the oil volume required to move the work cylinder through the high pressure portion of the stroke

$X =$ the stroke required to close the high pressure seal on the intensifier (often assumed to be 2 inches)

Intensifiers can be either pneumatically driven or fully hydraulic. Fully hydraulic intensifiers are more efficient than air driven ones. They operate on the same principle, with liquid used on both sides of the actuator. Commercial hydraulic intensifiers are generally powered by electric motors or diesel engines. Hydraulic intensifiers can be either single or dual pressure. A single pressure intensifier is used when the work cylinder requires a high pressure for the entire stroke. A dual pressure intensifier is recommended if the high pressure is required only during the last portion of the work cylinder stroke. For best economy, select the smallest driving cylinder bore size for a given intensifier ratio. Minimize pressure losses by keeping lines short and by sizing lines and fittings as large as practical. Size the lines so that fluid velocity does not exceed 7 ft/sec. Self-bleeding boosters be used wherever possible to ensure that air does not build up in the system and cause "spongy" operation.

Hydraulic presses, like intensifiers, use two pistons of different diameters. They operate on a shared fluid volume. When a force is applied to the small cylinder to create pressure, that pressure is reflected in the large cylinder. When the large cylinder is exposed to high pressure, it can exert a lot more force than was applied to the small cylinder. The mechanical advantage of the press is the ratio of output to input force. Hydraulic presses are subject to the following equations:

$$p_1 = p_2 = \frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{F_2}{A_2} \qquad F_1 s_1 = F_2 s_2 \qquad R = \frac{F_1}{F_2} = \frac{A_1}{A_2} = \frac{s_1}{s_2}$$

where F is force, p is pressure, and A is area, s is stroke, and R is the gear ratio of the press. Note that the stroke of the smaller diameter cylinder will be greater than that of the larger diameter cylinder.

Rotary Actuators.—These actuators use fluid pressure to induce rotary motion, and tend to be double acting. Rotary actuators can have either internal or external stops. External stops can generally withstand greater impacts than internal stops. Stops on rotary actuators are often adjustable. Rotary actuators can be hydraulic, pneumatic, or a combination of both.

Types: Rotary actuators come in two main types: vane and rack and pinion. Vane type actuators offer the smallest package and zero backlash, but are usually capable of only up to 270° of rotation. They employ a rotary vane mechanism to turn the actuator under fluid pressure. Rack and pinion actuators use one or more linear actuators to move racks back and forth, thereby turning a pinion shaft. They can be outfitted to have multiple stopping positions, and are capable of 360° rotation. Many packaging options are available for both vane and rack and pinion types, with many mounting and output shaft options.

Sizing Rotary Actuators: When sizing rotary actuators, one must know the accuracy and actuation time required, the required angle of rotation, any resisting torque, and the moment of inertia of any mass loading about the center of rotation. Torque values for both directions of rotation as a function of input pressure are normally provided by

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

manufacturers. Manufacturers sometimes publish the C_v of their actuators, or it can be calculated using the rotary swept volume. Kinetic energy is of particular concern with rotary actuators. Manufacturers normally publish the kinetic energy limits of their actuators. Although cushions are normally provided as part of rotary actuators, it is recommended to use proportional valves to decelerate rotating loads where loading is significant. Kinetic energy is calculated using the following equation:

$$KE = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$$

where ω is the angular velocity (peak) in radians/sec, and I is the mass moment of inertia of the load carried on the rotary actuator shaft.

Shock Absorbers and Hydraulic Dampers.—These devices are special types of linear actuators that are used to control applied loads. Pneumatic and hydraulic types are commercially available. All have frequency limitations that should be examined when sizing them for an application.

Pneumatic Shock Absorbers and Gas Springs: Pneumatic shock absorbers and gas springs use the compressibility of gas (usually nitrogen) to resist an applied force. Shock absorbers are used to decelerate an applied load over a distance, and are generally quite small. Gas springs are used mostly to counterbalance loads and often have very long strokes. Some gas springs have intermediate holding positions.

Shock absorbers are normally used when no return assistance is required and no restriction of velocity is required. There are some available with an orifice in the piston that provides velocity control. Shock absorbers often have a spring to provide a return function and assist in decelerating loads. They also usually have a mechanical stop, such as an adjustable nut, to prevent overcompression.

Shock absorbers are sized according to impact speed, stroke, and energy absorbing capacity. The energy absorbed will be the sum of the kinetic energy of the moving load and any external thrust provided by a driving mechanism. Vertical applications will also need to resist the weight of the applied load. Kinetic and thrust energies are calculated using the following equations:

$$E_{total} = KE + E_t$$

$KE = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ = Kinetic energy of a linear impact, where m is mass and v is velocity.

$E_t = Fs$ = Thrust energy of a linear impact, where F is applied force and s is the shock absorber stroke.

$KE = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$ = Kinetic energy of a rotary impact, where I is moment of inertia and is angular velocity.

$E_t = \frac{Ts}{R}$ = Thrust energy of a rotary impact, where T is applied torque and R is radius from the moment center and impact point.

$KE = mgh$ = Kinetic energy of a falling weight impact, where m is mass and h is height.

$E_t = mgs$ = Thrust energy of a falling weight impact.

Gas springs are used when return assistance or load support (counterbalance) is required throughout the range of motion. If the gas spring is the quick return type, the force increases as the piston moves. If an orifice is present in the piston through which the gas can escape, they can limit velocity and provide a more constant force over the full stroke.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Gas springs can be either push or pull (tension or traction) type, depending on where the gas chamber is relative to the piston rod. Gas springs usually have a reservoir of oil near the rod outlet of the cylinder that is used to lubricate the rod seal. They are designed to be stored and installed with the rod pointing down, at an angle of 60° or less from vertical to ensure that the seal is lubricated. The oil also serves to dampen the end of stroke. When they cannot be installed rod down, special gas springs with provisions for lubrication are required. Due to their long, narrow form factor, side loading should be avoided.

Sizing gas springs is done with consideration of the required stroke, compressed length, diameter, compressed force, and extended force. Extended force is normally given at a point short of full extension because they should never be fully extended in operation to minimize the chances of buckling. Hysteresis is the difference between the actual and rated output force of a spring caused by friction. *K* factor, or progression, is the spring rate of a gas spring, and is calculated based on the following equation:

$$K = \frac{F_2}{F_1}$$ where F_2 is force at the compressed position, and F_1 is the uncompressed force.

Progression occurs because as the rod enters the chamber during compression, it reduces the available volume for the gas to occupy. This causes a pressure increase.

Hydraulic Dampers (Hydraulic Shock Absorbers): These devices are used to safely control the speed of applied loads. Dampers consist of a piston in a pressure tube containing a hydraulic fluid. When force is applied to the piston rod to move the piston, the damping fluid must pass through orifices in the piston. As a result, the damping force is dependent on the piston speed. As the fluid is forced through the orifices, kinetic energy is converted into thermal energy. Using valving on the orifices, it is possible to regulate the damping forces in each direction independently. Hydraulic dampers are usually self-contained, sealed units. They can be single or double acting. In some designs, the damping speed is adjustable over a range by turning the rod while fully extended. Hydraulic dampers are sized according to diameter, stroke length, and required damping characteristics. When extreme speeds and forces are required, cavitation/foaming of the oil can introduce gas bubbles into the chamber and cause a drop in damping capacity.

Hydraulics

Hydraulic Fluids.—Hydraulic systems use liquids as their medium. Water is a common hydraulic medium in general cases. When actuators are involved, petroleum based oils are the most common type of hydraulic fluid, but silicones, synthetics, and water based fluids are also common. Hydraulic fluids can be broken down in these major categories: hydraulic fluids based on mineral oils and related hydrocarbons (ISO 11158), environmentally acceptable hydraulic fluids (ISO 15380), fire- resistant, water-free hydraulic fluids (ISO 12922), and fire-resistant, water-containing hydraulic fluids (ISO 12922).

When selecting a hydraulic fluid, one must consider viscosity, viscosity index, lubricity, compressibility, flammability, foaming resistance, resistance to rust/oxidation, resistance to bacterial growth, pour point, flash point, chemical compatibility with system seals/components, cleanliness, cost, and environmental impact. The manufacturer of the hydraulic components should be consulted as well.

Viscosity at the required temperatures is the most important selection factor. Many petroleum products are graded according to the ISO Viscosity Classification System, approved by the international standards organization (ISO). Each ISO viscosity grade number corresponds to the mid-point of a viscosity range expressed in centistokes (cSt) at 40°C. A chart of viscosity related to the various systems of grading fluids is given in Fig. 7.

Fluid Conditioning and Stabilization.—To provide useful work, fluid must have energy added in the form of pressure. Pumps are usually used to pressurize fluid, unless gravity can perform the needed energy. Strainers and filters are needed to keep contaminants out

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

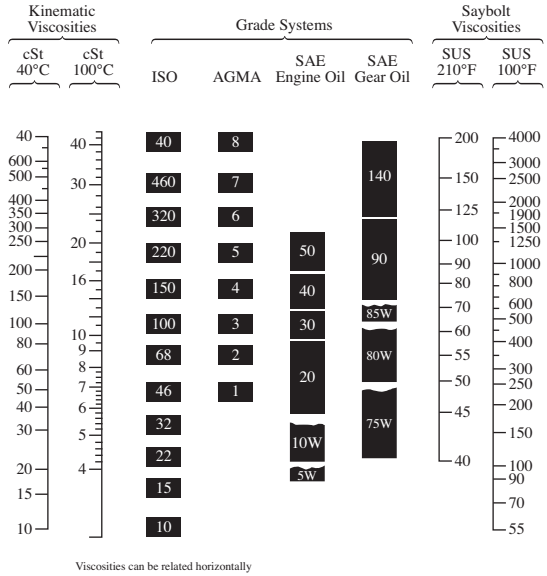


Fig. 7. Hydraulic Fluid Viscosity Chart

The viscosity/temperature relationships are based on 95 VI oils and are usable only for mono grade engine oils, gear oils and other 95 VI oils. Crankcase oils and gear oils are based on 100°C viscosity. The "W" grades are classified mono grade engine oils, gear oils and other 95 VI oils. ISO oils and AGMA grades are based on 40°C viscosity.

of sensitive components, and accumulators are used to stabilize the fluid pressure and act as reservoirs. In some cases, cooling must be provided, either passively or actively.

Strainers and Filters: Despite being closed systems, hydraulic circuits can become contaminated with particles due to component wear and incoming fluid contaminants. Filters are generally installed after a pump. Installation in the suction line, while more protective, would cause pressure loss in the suction line and jeopardize pump efficiency. An additional coarse strainer that creates very little pressure drop is often placed in the suction line to protect the pump. The pressure drop induced by a commercial filter is normally provided by the manufacturer.

Hydraulic filters must be capable of handling the pressures and temperatures encountered in the system.

Chemical compatibility of the filter membrane, body, and seals must also be considered. The filter must be rated for the maximum system flow rate and must be able to handle the viscosity of fluid used in the system. The allowable particle size that can pass through the filter will determine the membrane type. Hydraulic filters are available as in-line, in-tank, and other configurations. Regular maintenance will be required, so filters must be chosen and installed to facilitate membrane replacement.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Liquid Pulsation (Water Hammer): Valves and reciprocating pumps are often the culprits when water hammer occurs. Water hammer is a pressure spike in a fluid circuit caused by a sudden stoppage of flow. A valve closing can cause a shock wave in the liquid, resulting in noise. Reciprocating pumps cause acceleration and deceleration of the fluid that result in pressure variations. Hydraulic water hammer can be severe enough to burst pipes. Pulsation dampeners are recommended when water hammer is likely. An equation for the pressure rise that can occur due to water hammer follows:

$$\Delta p = \frac{Q}{20d^2}\sqrt{\mathrm{SG}b}$$

where p is pressure in psi, Q is flow rate in GPM, SG is specific gravity, b is bulk modulus in psi, and d is pipe inside diameter, in inches, upstream of the point of interest.

Accumulators and pulsation dampeners are used to store pressurized hydraulic fluid, which contains potential energy. This fluid and its energy can then be released to smooth out intermittent system cycles, dampen pulsations, absorb shocks, and compensate for leaks in the system.

Accumulators: Pressurization against an accumulation of fluid can be accomplished through weight loading, spring loading, or compressed gas loading. Hydro-pneumatic, or gas loaded, accumulators are the most common. The three most common of this class are piston, bladder, and diaphragm accumulators. In these, a piston, bladder, or diaphragm separates the fluid from the compressed gas.

When a hydro-pneumatic accumulator has a closed volume of gas, the change in volume of hydraulic fluid is equal to the change in volume of the gas. The equation for polytropic processes can then be used to calculate accumulator volume or pressure, depending on which values are known. The polytropic exponent, n, depends on the type of process. For slow gas expansion and compression processes which occur almost isothermally, the polytropic exponent can be assumed to be $n = 1$. For rapid processes, the adiabatic exponent can be taken as $n = 1.4$ for Nitrogen and air. For pressures above 3000 psi the real gas behavior deviates considerably from the ideal one, which reduces the effective fluid volume. In such cases the adiabatic exponent used is greater than 1.4.

The equation for polytropic processes is:

$$p_0 V_0^n = p_1 V_1^n = p_2 V_2^n = \text{Constant}$$

where p_0 is the gas precharge pressure, p_1 is the minimum working pressure, and p_2 is the maximum working pressure. V_0, V_1, and V_2 are the gas volumes in each of the states.

For low pressure applications of less than 150 psi, absolute gas pressures must always be used in the equation for required gas volume. These equations are assuming ideal gas behavior. Correction factors must be used to take into account real gas behavior. Those correction factors can range from 1 to 2 depending on the pressures involved.

$$V_0 = \frac{\Delta V}{\left(\frac{p_0}{p_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{n}} - \left(\frac{p_0}{p_2}\right)^{\frac{1}{n}}}$$

where V_0 is the precharge volume of gas, and $\Delta V = V_1 - V_2$

Precharge pressure for energy storage is generally about 90 percent of system minimum working pressure. For shock absorption, precharge is usually 60 to 90 percent of median working pressure; for pulsation dampening, precharge is usually 60 to 80 percent of median working pressure. A small amount of fluid should remain inside the accumulator at minimum working pressure to prevent the mechanical components from rubbing or impacting. Therefore the precharge pressure should be slightly lower than the minimum working system pressure.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pulsation Dampeners & Snubbers: Pulsating flow can wreak havoc with hydraulic devices in a circuit. A pulsation dampener is a type of accumulator that absorbs these pressure variations and stabilizes the downstream flow velocity. They absorb only the portion of fluid accelerated above the mean flow rate, store the excess fluid momentarily, and then discharge it during the portion of the cycle where flow rate drops below mean. These devices are less effective at higher frequencies. For best results, dampeners are placed as close as possible to a pump or source of pulsation. Snubbers are generally placed before gauges. Suction stabilizing dampeners are placed soon after the supply reservoir to protect a pump from acceleration head variations.

The diaphragm and bladder types of pulsation dampener are extremely common. The diaphragm or bladder is pressurized on one side with a gas (nitrogen is common) to about 70 to 80 percent of system peak pressure. A pulsation dampener can be as simple as a section of elastic tubing in a circuit that can expand and contract as pressure builds and subsides. Sometimes pulsations can be dampened by placing a restriction in the line to limit fluid flow. This method is less preferred because dangerous levels of pressure may occur behind the restriction.

Gauge snubbers vary in their method of dampening. Less expensive ones often restrict flow using a porous disc, while more expensive snubbers use a piston mechanism to dampen pulsations.

The most common application for a pulsation dampener involves a reciprocating piston pump system. Since the dampener must absorb and store the volume of fluid above the mean discharge volume of the pump, this excess fluid volume is the sizing criterion. A simplex pump (one piston) displaces a volume of fluid above mean equal to about 60 percent of total displacement. A duplex pump (two pistons) displaces a fluid volume above mean equal to about 30 percent of total displacement. A triplex pump displaces a fluid volume above mean equal to about 4 percent of total displacement. Piston displacement is calculated by multiplying face area by stroke. The following equation is used to calculate the volume of gas required for the pulsation dampener.

$$V_g = \frac{V_p}{p_g X C_p}$$

where V_g is the volume of gas required, V_p is the piston displacement volume, p_g is the gas precharge percent (as a decimal), X is the level of dampening desired (as a decimal), and C_p is the pump constant. The level of dampening is the residual peak to peak pulsations, such that lower values correspond to more damping.

The precharge percentage of system pressure is typically 70 to 80 percent, as mentioned earlier, so as a decimal this would be expressed as 0.7 to 0.8. The level of dampening desired is expressed as the percentage of residual peak to peak pulsations. So, for 5 percent residual pulsations, this would be expressed in decimal form as 0.05. Conservative values for the pump constant are 1.5 (Simplex), 2 (Duplex), and 7 (Triplex).

Snubbers, on the other hand, are sized primarily based on the pressure range they are going to experience in operation. The pressure spikes must be quantified when selecting a snubber.

Head.—The energy added to a liquid by a pump or by gravity is often quantified in terms of head. Head has units of length, usually feet or meters. Pressure can be calculated from head, and vice-versa, through use of the following equations:

$p = 0.434 \times h \times \text{SG}$ where h is head in feet, p is pressure in psi

$p = 0.0981 \times h \times \text{SG}$ Where h is head in meters, p is pressure in bar

$h = 2.31p \times \text{SG}$ where h is head in feet, p is pressure in psi

$h = 10.197p \div \text{SG}$ where h is head in meters, p is pressure in bar

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For water at 70°F (20°C), head and pressure equivalents can be found in Table 30 and Table 31.

Table 30. Pressure in Pounds per Square Inch for Different Heads of Water

Head, ft	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	…	0.43	0.87	1.30	1.73	2.16	2.60	3.03	3.46	3.90
10	4.33	4.76	5.20	5.63	6.06	6.49	6.93	7.36	7.79	8.23
20	8.66	9.09	9.53	9.96	10.39	10.82	11.26	11.69	12.12	12.56
30	12.99	13.42	13.86	14.29	14.72	15.15	15.59	16.02	16.45	16.89
40	17.32	17.75	18.19	18.62	19.05	19.48	19.92	20.35	20.78	21.22
50	21.65	22.08	22.52	22.95	23.38	23.81	24.25	24.68	25.11	25.55
60	25.98	26.41	26.85	27.28	27.71	28.14	28.58	29.01	29.44	29.88
70	30.31	30.74	31.18	31.61	32.04	32.47	32.91	33.34	33.77	34.21
80	34.64	35.07	35.51	35.94	36.37	36.80	37.24	37.67	38.10	38.54
90	38.97	39.40	39.84	40.27	40.70	41.13	41.57	42.00	42.43	42.87

Table 31. Heads of Water in Feet Corresponding to Certain Pressures in Pounds per Square Inch

Pressure, lb/in^2	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	…	2.3	4.6	6.9	9.2	11.5	13.9	16.2	18.5	20.8
10	23.1	25.4	27.7	30.0	32.3	34.6	36.9	39.3	41.6	43.9
20	46.2	48.5	50.8	53.1	55.4	57.7	60.0	62.4	64.7	67.0
30	69.3	71.6	73.9	76.2	78.5	80.8	83.1	85.4	87.8	90.1
40	92.4	94.7	97.0	99.3	101.6	103.9	106.2	108.5	110.8	113.2
50	115.5	117.8	120.1	122.4	124.7	127.0	129.3	131.6	133.9	136.3
60	138.6	140.9	143.2	145.5	147.8	150.1	152.4	154.7	157.0	159.3
70	161.7	164.0	166.3	168.6	170.9	173.2	175.5	177.8	180.1	182.4
80	184.8	187.1	189.4	191.7	194.0	196.3	198.6	200.9	203.2	205.5
90	207.9	210.2	212.5	214.8	217.1	219.4	221.7	224.0	226.3	228.6

Bernoulli's equation is commonly used in the design of hydraulic systems. In terms of head, it takes the following form. This equation assumes steady flow, so additional terms are used in cases of pulsating flow as with reciprocating pumps.

$$h_1 = h_2 + h_L \qquad \text{or} \qquad z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} + \frac{p_1}{\gamma} = z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + \frac{p_2}{\gamma} + h_L$$

where h_L is minor loss of head due to viscous and turbulent shear stresses and other factors. The terms of this equation are explored further in this section.

Elevation Head: This is the vertical distance between the point of concern and the free surface of the fluid. This head is considered positive if the free surface is above the point of concern, and negative if the point of concern is above the free surface. No equation is required. When applied to a suction line, when the pump is above the fluid free surface (negative head) this is often referred to as "suction lift." Elevation head is often represented by the letter z or as h_z.

Pressure Head: The equivalent head imparted by the pressure applied to the fluid at its free surface. This is calculated using the following equation:

$h_p = \dfrac{p}{\gamma}$ where p is applied absolute pressure and γ is specific weight.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Static Head: This term is used to include static effects like elevation and pressure head, while excluding dynamic effects like friction and velocity head.

Dynamic or Velocity Head: The head imparted by the specific kinetic energy of the fluid. This value is proportional to the square of the fluid's velocity. Velocity head is calculated using the following equation:

$$h_v = \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

Acceleration Head: This head is critical when evaluating the suction side of reciprocating positive displacement pumps and other pumps with pulsating flow. It is also important to consider during startup of a kinetic pump. Acceleration head is subtracted from the *NPSHA*, which is covered in the section *NPSHR and NPSHA* starting on page 2804.

Acceleration head is the head required to accelerate the fluid in the line. It must be considered when evaluating cavitation risk at the inlet and peak loads on the pump components at discharge. It is calculated using the following equation and Table 32.

$$h_a = \frac{LVNC}{gk}$$

where h_a is acceleration head in feet, L is the length of the suction line in feet, V is the average liquid velocity in the suction line (ft/sec), N is the speed of the pump in RPM, g is the gravitational constant, and C and k are given in Table 32.

Table 32. Acceleration Head Constants

Pump Type	Constant C	Fluid Type	Constant k
Single Acting Simplex	0.4	Non-Compressible (degassed)	1.4
Single Acting Duplex	0.2	Most Liquids	1.5
Double Acting Duplex	0.115	Compressible	2.5
Triplex	0.066		
Quintuplex	0.04		
Septuplex	0.028		

Friction Head: The head required to overcome friction effects in the line due to surface roughness and restrictions. Restrictions can include fittings, valves, and other devices. Velocity of the fluid is directly proportional to friction head. Friction head is calculated as the sum of all energy losses incurred in the pipe system and fittings. These equations were given in section *Energy Loss in Pipes* on page 2779, and following pages.

Vapor Pressure Head: This head term (h_{vp}) is used on the suction line to evaluate the potential for cavitation. It is the head equal to the vapor pressure of the liquid being used, and is calculated using the equation for pressure head. The vapor pressure is equal to the saturation pressure at a given temperature. The vapor pressure head of water at 68°F (20°C) is 0.84 ft (2.338 kPa). When the pressure of a liquid drops below its vapor pressure, it boils.

Discharge from Tanks.—To calculate the velocity of discharge of liquid from a tank the following equations can be used:

For a non-pressurized tank,

$$v_o = C_V\sqrt{2gh}$$

where v_o is velocity through the discharge orifice, h is the height of the free surface of liquid in the tank above the orifice, and C_V is coefficient of velocity for the discharge orifice (see Table 33).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

For a tank at gauge pressure p,

$$v_o = C_V\sqrt{2g\left[\left(\frac{p}{\gamma}\right)+h\right]}$$

The time required to drain a tank can be calculated using the following equation if the tank has a constant cross-sectional area and is not replenished. Strategies to reduce turbulence as a fluid exiting a tank into a mouthpiece or discharge tube include employing a re-entrant mouthpiece that protrudes into the tank, or using a convergent-divergent mouthpiece.

$$t = \frac{2A_t(\sqrt{z_1}-\sqrt{z_2})}{C_d A_o\sqrt{2g}}$$

where t is time in seconds, A_t is the cross-sectional area of the tank, A_o is the cross-sectional area of the discharge orifice, z_1 and z_2 are the initial and final liquid heights in the tank, and C_d is the coefficient of discharge for the type of orifice used (see Table 33).

Table 33. Discharge and Velocity Coefficients

Orifice Type	C_d	C_V
Sharp Edged	0.62	0.98
Round Edged	0.98	0.98
Short Tube (Fluids separates from walls)	0.61	0.61
Sharp Tube (No fluid separation)	0.82	0.82
Sharp Tube with Rounded Entrance	0.97	0.98
Re-entrant Tube, $L < 0.5d$	0.54	0.99
Re-entrant Tube, $2 \le L \le 3$	0.72	0.72
Smooth, Well-Tapered Nozzle	0.98	0.99

Pumps.—Pumps are used to move fluid. More generally, pumps add pressure energy to fluid through a variety of means. Pumps fall into two general classifications: positive displacement pumps and kinetic (dynamic) pumps. Some pumps are meant to be submerged completely in the fluid being pumped, while others are not.

Positive Displacement Pumps: Positive displacement pumps move a fixed amount of fluid during each discharge stroke or revolution. Flow rate is directly related to the speed of the moving parts of the pump, and for many of these pumps flow pulsates as the cavity or cavities discharge and refill. These pumps are suitable for low to moderate flow rates, for moving highly viscous fluids, and generating very high pressures. Because of the high pressure capability of these pumps, they tend to be sturdily built and the use of a pressure relief valve is recommended in fluid circuits employing these pumps. Positive displacement pumps can be further broken down into reciprocating and rotary types. The most common types of reciprocating pumps are: bladder, diaphragm, peristaltic, and piston or plunger pumps. Commonly encountered rotary types are: gear, lobe, vane, screw, and progressive cavity pumps. Metering pumps are positive displacement pumps that have a precisely controlled discharge volume. This volume is normally adjustable through stroke adjustment.

Bladder pumps deliver pulsing flow, usually by inflating and deflating a bladder arranged axially along a pumping chamber. Diaphragm pumps deliver pulsing flow from a single cavity, but can be arranged in multiples to provide smoother flow. Peristaltic pumps deliver pulsing flow, and have the advantage of completely containing the fluid within a section of tubing that runs through the pump mechanism. The pump uses a series of rollers to progressively pinch the tube and move the fluid ahead of the pinch point.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Piston pumps and plunger pumps deliver pulsing flow. Axial piston pumps are designed with multiple pistons arranged axially to the motor. A tilted swashplate turns and actuates the pistons in sequence. More pistons in the pump produce smoother flow. Radial piston pumps have pistons arranged radially around a central cam that actuates them in sequence. Reciprocating piston and plunger pumps used for fluid transfer are typically either single acting or double acting, which means the piston delivers fluid on one or both directions of movement. These are driven with a crank arrangement or other reciprocating mechanism. A simplex pump has one cylinder, and a duplex pump has two cylinders. Arrangements with more cylinders are possible.

Gear pumps deliver pulsing flow at high pressures and fairly high flow capacities. They rely on close clearances to capture the fluid. This means that the fluid being moved must be free of particulate matter. These pumps perform best with viscous fluids. Lobe pumps deliver pulsing flow. They are similar to gear pumps, but the lobes in mesh do not contact one another. These pumps are often used to move fluid with large particulate inclusions. The lobes are often non-metallic, and are suitable for handling delicate items in a fluid stream. Vane pumps deliver pulsing flow at moderately high pressures. They are comprised of a rotating set of vanes that capture and release fluid inside a round housing.

Screw pumps deliver smooth flow at moderately high pressures. They are commonly found in single, double, and triple screw configurations. Single screw pumps are sometimes called progressing-cavity pumps. Direct acting pumps are driven by a fluid with a differential pressure, and generally use a piston. They can use air, steam, or a liquid as the driver. These pumps are suitable for high pressure, low flow applications. They have the disadvantage of consuming high volumes of drive fluid.

Kinetic Pumps: Kinetic pumps generate momentum in a fluid, which is then transformed into pressure. These pumps do not have a fixed discharge volume, and therefore do not impart a pulsation to the fluid being moved. The most common type of kinetic pump is the centrifugal pump. Other types of kinetic pumps include air lifts, hydraulic rams, turbine pumps, and jet pumps

Centrifugal pumps use a one or more spinning impellers to accelerate a fluid radially from the inlet. The fluid is then slowed by a spiral volute, converting the velocity energy into pressure energy. Centrifugal pumps can be radial, axial, and mixed flow types. The pump specific speed determines which would be the best type for a given application. Some centrifugal pumps are configured to handle fluids with solids. In those cases, a grinder can be integrated into the pump. Centrifugal pumps are used mainly in high flow applications with moderate heads. Multistage versions are suitable for high head applications. The size of a centrifugal pump is designated by the discharge port size, inlet port size, impeller diameter, and number of stages. Therefore, a 1 x 2 x 5 pump would be a single stage pump with a 1 inch discharge, a 2 inch inlet, and a 5 inch impeller. If the pump case is supported at the centerline of the shaft, it is said to be "centerline mounted". This mounting configuration is ideal for high temperature applications because shaft alignment with the driver is maintained as the case expands due to heat. Foot mounted pumps are supported under the case, and frame mounted pumps are supported under the bearing housing.

Air lift pumps use a stream of air bubbles injected into the submerged base of a pipe to entrain the fluid. The fluid rises with the air bubbles. These pumps are used when only light suction is needed.

Hydraulic ram pumps operate cyclically to deliver pulsing flow. A hydraulic ram is typically comprised of a spring or weight loaded normally open valve, and a check valve. Flowing water with kinetic energy creates pressure against the normally open valve until it closes. This elevated pressure sends fluid through the check valve to a higher elevation. The check valve then prevents the fluid from reversing. Once pressure is relieved, the normally open valve opens once more and the cycle begins again.

Turbine pumps are comprised of a series of progressive impellers. Each stage, or impeller, increases the energy of the fluid. Jet pumps are commonly used in home water well

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

systems. These pumps are comprised of a centrifugal pump located above, with a jet assembly down in the well. The centrifugal pump pressurizes the water, which is then passed through a nozzle. The jet created by the nozzle entrains additional water and lifts it up toward the pump inlet. In the suction line there is also a diffuser, which slows the water and converts velocity to pressure energy.

The Effect of Viscosity on Pumps: Viscosity affects positive displacement pumps, resulting in higher friction head values for a given flow rate. When centrifugal pumps handle fluids more viscous than water, the pumping efficiency decreases and the flow for a given head also decreases. Centrifugal pump performance is typically rated at values achieved when pumping cool water. For computing centrifugal pump performance, some correction factors for viscous fluids can be found in Fig. 8. To use the chart, enter at capacity, go straight up to the head curve, over horizontally to the viscosity curve, and then straight up to the correction factor curve.The correction factors are applied according to the following equations:

$Q_v = C_Q Q_{water}$ where Q_v is the corrected viscous capacity, C_Q is the capacity correction factor, and Q_{water} is the flow rate achieved while pumping cool water.

$h_v = C_h h_{water}$ where h_v is the corrected viscous head, C_h is the head correction factor, and h_{water} is the head achieved while pumping cool water.

$\eta_v = C_h \eta_{water}$ where η_v is the corrected viscous efficiency, C_h is the efficiency correction factor, and η_{water} is the efficiency achieved while pumping cool water.

$P_v = \dfrac{P_{water}}{C_\eta}$ where P_v is the corrected viscous pumping power, and P_{water} is the power achieved while pumping cool water.

Pump Capacity: Flow rate through a pump is known as capacity. For positive displacement pumps, flow rate is simply related to cavity volume and cycle rate. For centrifugal pumps, a change in impeller diameter or speed results in a capacity change according to the affinity laws discussed later in *Affinity and Similarity* on page 2808.

Centrifugal pumps are intended to be used at or near rated capacity. When operated below this capacity, the pump experiences higher axial thrust loads, elevated temperatures, and there is a potential for gases to become trapped in the pump case. Another effect, called *recirculation*, can also occur in which flow reversals occur at the inlet or discharge tips of the impeller. This can result in pressure pulsations which can damage the pump. In cases where demand is likely to fall below pump capacity, a parallel pump arrangement can be considered, or a bypass installed in the discharge line of the pump to allow the pump to operate at higher flow than demanded.

Total Suction Head: This is the sum of all the heads imparted on the fluid in the suction line supplying a pump. It includes static and dynamic heads, unless otherwise specified. The general equation for total suction head is: $h_{t(s)} = h_z + h_p + h_v - h_f$ where h_z is static head, h_p is pressure head, h_v is velocity head, and h_f is friction head. All are taken with respect to the suction line. Acceleration head can also be subtracted when dealing with reciprocating pumps.

Total Discharge Head: This is the sum of all the heads imparted on the fluid in the discharge line exiting a pump. The general equation for total discharge head is: $h_{t(d)} = h_z + h_p + h_v + h_f$. Here the terms are taken with respect to the discharge line. Acceleration head can also be added for reciprocating pumps.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

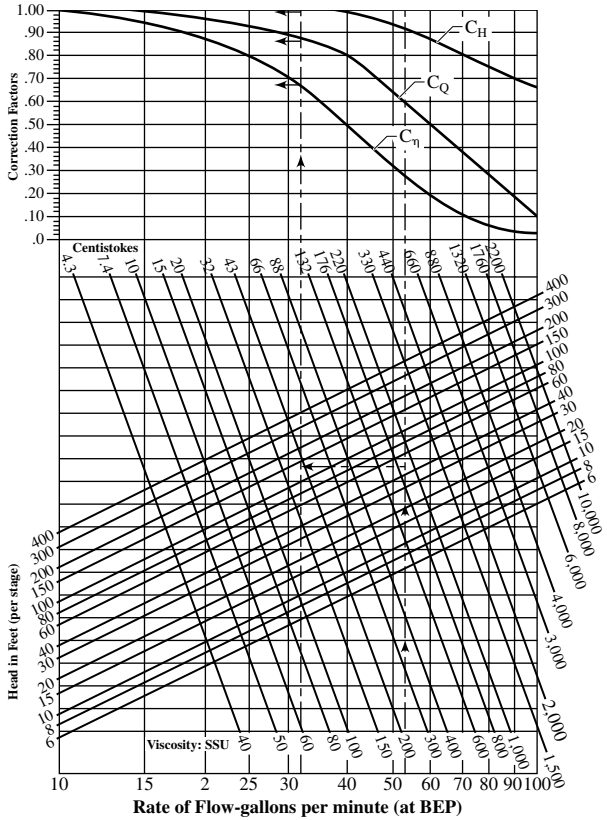


Fig. 8. Centrifugal Pump Viscosity Correction Factors

SSU are Saybolt Universal Seconds. ASTM D2161 covers conversion of kinematic viscosity to SSU at a given temperature. BEP is *Best Efficiency Point*.

System Head or Total Dynamic Head (TDH): This is equal to the difference between total discharge head and total suction head: $h_t = h_{t(d)} - h_{t(s)}$

For centrifugal pumps, a change in impeller diameter or speed results in a change in head according to the affinity laws discussed in *Affinity and Similarity* on page 2808.

Using the following equation, head can be calculated from impeller and fluid speeds for radial and mixed-flow pumps where the incoming fluid velocity is nearly zero.

$$h_t = \frac{\eta_i v_i v_f}{g}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

where η_i is impeller efficiency (typically 0.85 – 0.95), v is tangential impeller velocity at a given radius, and v_f is the tangential velocity of the fluid.

NPSHR and NPSHA: Net Positive Suction Head Required is the minimum fluid energy required at the pump inlet for normal operation. *NPSHR* is measured when the pump total head is reduced by 3 percent due to cavitation. *NPSHR* depends on flow rate as well as the characteristics of the pump and suction line. This value is normally provided by pump manufacturers for one or more flow rates. To some extent, *NPSHR* depends on the characteristics of the valves used on the pump inlet and discharge ports. If *NPSHR* for one flow rate is known, it can be calculated for another flow rate using the equation:

$$\frac{NPSHR_2}{NPSHR_1} = \left(\frac{Q_2}{Q_1}\right)^2$$

Net Positive Suction Head Available is the actual fluid energy at the pump inlet, which can be calculated for the suction line as the difference between total suction head and the vapor pressure head using the following equation. For reciprocating pumps, acceleration head (h_a) must be accounted for as well.

$$NPSHA = h_z + h_p + h_v - h_f - h_{vp} - h_a$$

where all terms are taken with respect to the suction line.

Cavitation: Cavitation occurs when the pressure of the fluid in the inlet of a pump drops below its vapor pressure for a given temperature. A fluid whose pressure drops below its vapor pressure boils, or vaporizes, degrading pumping performance. The symptoms of cavitation include noise, vibration, and pitting of pump surfaces. In extreme cases, structural damage can occur. If $NPSHA < NPSHR$, the fluid will cavitate excessively and the pump will not run as expected. An additional margin is recommended, with recommendations ranging from 10 to 200 percent depending on application. If the liquid has been exposed to gas other than its own vapor, additional margin of *NPSHR* over *NPSHA* is needed to prevent cavitation. If *NPSHR* is not yet known, the designer must aim for a *NPSHA* as high as reasonably possible, and certainly above zero.

Cavitation can be caused by a variety of conditions, including: high pump speeds, high fluid temperatures, low suction head, and fluids with high vapor pressures. When working at high altitudes, the effect of altitude on vapor pressure must be taken into account when calculating suction head. If *NPSHA* is zero or negative, the suction head is by definition below the fluid's vapor pressure. To increase *NPSHA* and prevent cavitation, the inlet pressure can be increased through a variety of methods: pressurizing the fluid source or using a booster pump, raising the fluid source, reducing the flow rate, cooling the fluid, shortening and/or widening the suction line, and reducing suction line losses due to friction or turns. Additional strategies include adding a suction line stabilizer (pulsation dampener) to the suction line, or adding a section of highly flexible hose to the suction line to allow some dampening.

Hydraulic (Pump) Power: Hydraulic power, or pump power, is a function of mass flow rate and total dynamic head (added head). This is the energy imparted to the fluid per unit time by the pump. Typical units for power are horsepower or kilowatts. The equations for hydraulic power are given below. These equations assume the density of water is 62.4 lbm/ft^3 (1000 kg/m^3).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Hydraulic Kilowatt

In the equations that follow, Q is in l/s; $\dot{m}$ is in kg/s; and $\dot{V}$ is in m^3/s.

$$KW = 9.81\frac{h_t Q(\mathrm{SG})}{1000} = 9.81\frac{h_t \dot{m}}{1000} = 9.81 h_t \dot{V}(\mathrm{SG}) \quad \text{where } h_t \text{ is in meters}$$

$$KW = \frac{\Delta p Q}{1000} = \frac{\Delta p \dot{m}}{1000(\mathrm{SG})} = \Delta p \dot{V} \quad \text{where } \Delta p \text{ is in kPa}$$

$$KW = \frac{WQ(\mathrm{SG})}{1000} = \frac{W\dot{m}}{1000} = W\dot{V}(\mathrm{SG}) \quad \text{where } W \text{ is in J/kg}$$

Hydraulic Horsepower

In the equations that follow, Q is in gal/min; $\dot{m}$ is in lbm/s; and $\dot{V}$ is in ft^3/s.

$$HP = \frac{h_t Q(\mathrm{SG})}{3956} = \frac{h_t \dot{m} g}{550 g_c} = \frac{h_t \dot{V}(\mathrm{SG})}{8.814} \quad \text{where } h_t \text{ is in feet}$$

$$HP = \frac{\Delta p Q}{1714} = \frac{\Delta p \dot{m} g}{238.3(\mathrm{SG}) g_c} = \frac{\Delta p \dot{V}}{3.819} \quad \text{where } \Delta p \text{ is in psi}$$

$$HP = \frac{\Delta p Q}{246800} = \frac{\Delta p \dot{m} g}{34320(\mathrm{SG}) g_c} = \frac{\Delta p \dot{V}}{550} \quad \text{where } \Delta p \text{ is in psf}$$

$$HP = \frac{WQ(\mathrm{SG})}{3956} = \frac{W\dot{m}}{550} = \frac{W\dot{V}(\mathrm{SG})}{8.814} \quad \text{where } W \text{ is in ft-lbf/lbm}$$

For centrifugal pumps, a change in impeller diameter or speed results in a change in power according to the affinity laws discussed in *Affinity and Similarity* on page 2808. Required power for centrifugal pumps is directly proportional to the specific gravity of the liquid being pumped. It is influenced also by viscosity.

Pump Efficiency: Pump efficiency is the ratio of the actual power delivered by the pump driver (usually a motor) and the power the pump ideally delivers to the fluid. Losses occur in the system due to friction between the fluid and the pump, as well as friction and/or slip within the pump mechanism. Since hydraulic power is a function of mass flow rate, efficiencies of pumps are often given in terms of flow rate, speed, or specific speed. Drive power to a pump is often called "brake horsepower" (bhp). Pump efficiency is defined by the following equation:

$$\eta_p = \frac{P_{hydraulic}}{P_{brake}}$$

where $P_{hydraulic}$ is the power delivered to the fluid, and P_{brake} is the drive power to the pump.

For positive displacement pumps, volumetric efficiency is often used to measure performance. This is the ratio of volumetric flow rate input to displacement per unit time delivered by the pump. Torsional efficiency is also commonly used for positive displacement pumps. This is the ratio of actual to ideal torque required to drive the pump. Overall efficiency of a positive displacement pump is the ratio of actual energy delivered, to the input power to the pump.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Volumetric efficiency is calculated using the following equation:

$$\eta_V = 1 - \left(\Delta p \beta \frac{C}{D}\right) + L_V$$

where β is the compressibility factor of the fluid, C/D is the pumping chamber clearance to displacement ratio, and L_V is the fluid loss to slippage back through the pump valves before they can seal. $\Delta p = p_d - p_s$ where p_d is pressure at discharge and p_s is pressure at suction.

Centrifugal pumps are intended for use near their best efficiency. When operated below peak efficiency, a phenomenon called "recirculation" can occur, which causes flow reversal at the inlet or discharge tips of the impeller. This can be very detrimental to performance and damaging to the pump.

Specific Speed: Centrifugal pumps are characterized in terms of specific speed. Specific speed is the speed of an ideal pump needed to raise a unit of volume through a unit of head in a unit of time. It assumes the ideal pump is geometrically similar to the pump being evaluated. Specific speed is used to determine the geometry (type of impeller) needed for a given set of input and output requirements. It is calculated using the following equations where n is rotation in RPM:

$$\eta_s = \frac{n\sqrt{Q}}{h_t^{0.75}} \text{ where } Q \text{ is in gal/min, and } h_t \text{ is total dynamic head in feet.}$$

$$\eta_s = \frac{n\sqrt{\dot{V}}}{h_t^{0.75}} \text{ where } \dot{V} \text{ is in m}^3\text{/sec, and h}_\text{t} \text{ is in meters.}$$

Low specific speeds produce the largest heads. In US units, specific speeds range from approximately 500 to 1500 RPM for radial vane pumps, 1500–4000 for Francis vane, 4000–9000 for mixed flow impeller designs, and above 9000 for axial flow impellers. When specific speed is low for a given style, efficiency suffers, and a multi-stage pump should be used. Once specific speed has been calculated from a given head, drive speed, and flow rate, the appropriate type of impeller can be selected. In addition, pump efficiency, *NPSHR*, maximum speed, and suction lift can be determined using specific speed. It is good practice to select a centrifugal pump that has the highest specific speed, since that will yield the smallest pump.

Critical Speed: Critical speed is related to static deflection of the shaft in the horizontal position. When operated within about 20 percent of critical speed, the pump will vibrate excessively and damage can occur. The wet critical speed must be well above the operating speed of the pump in order to ensure smooth running. Centrifugal pumps have a "dry" critical speed and a "wet" critical speed. Wet critical speed is normally higher (smaller deflections experienced) than dry critical speed. As the pump shaft support components (bearings or bushings) wear, the wet critical speed drops. When a pump is operated away from its best efficiency, higher deflections are likely, causing critical speed to drop. Dry critical speed can be determined using the following equations:

$$n_c = \frac{187.7}{\sqrt{y}}$$

where y is shaft deflection in inches, and n_c is critical speed in RPM. Shaft deflection is typically limited to 0.006 inches in commercial pumps. This leads of a critical speed value of 2423 RPM.

$$n_c = \frac{946}{\sqrt{y}}$$

where y is shaft deflection in mm. A maximum shaft deflection of 0.15mm leads to a critical speed of 2442 RPM.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pump Shaft Loading: Piston pumps carry the entire piston compression force on their drive rod. The axial load on the rod is easily calculated as force = pressure/area. Buckling of the load bearing members and/or piston rod may also need consideration. Many pumps are rated based on the maximum discharge plunger load that can be carried when the suction pressure is zero. If the piston is massive, or pump speeds high, the force to accelerate the piston must be taken into account.

For radially driven pumps, the torque on the motor shaft driving a pump depends upon the type of pump being driven. Pumps which produce pulsating flow must accelerate the fluid during each cycle, and therefore experience variable shaft torque. Centrifugal pumps experience a steady torque on the shaft, which can be calculated either from brake power and speed or from the change in momentum of the fluid being pumped. Torque can be calculated using the following equations:

$$T = \frac{63025P}{n}$$

where T is torque in in-lbf, P is brake horsepower, and n is rotation in RPM.

$$T = \frac{9549P}{n}$$

where T is torque in N-m, P is brake power in kW, and n is rotation in RPM.

$$T = \frac{\dot{m}}{g_c}(v_{t(d)}r - v_{t(i)}r_i)$$

where T is torque, $\dot{m}$ is mass flow rate, $v_{t(d)}$ and $v_{t(i)}$ are tangential velocity at the discharge and inlet, r is the radius of the impeller, and r_i is the radius at the inlet. When the inlet is central to the impeller, the tangential velocity at the inlet is zero.

If a pump is driven using a belt or chain, overhung loads on both the motor and the pump shafts should be calculated. Additional bearing support or larger shafts may be required.

In centrifugal pumps and some rotary positive displacement pumps, axial thrust is generated that must be accommodated by the pump drive shaft. In some multi-stage centrifugal pumps, mounting the impellers in opposing directions can balance the thrust load and reduce axial load transferred to the drive shaft. In other cases, a hydraulic balancing device is used. This type of device is piped to the suction line or reservoir and exerts an opposing force to the thrust generated by the impellers.

For axially driven reciprocating pumps, the axial loading on the drive shaft must be considered, as well as radial loading, moment loading, and torque. Axial and radial/moment loading on the motor shaft can be calculated using simple trigonometric relationships. Torque required to axially drive the motor will depend on how the pump is being driven. In some cases, a lead screw or equivalent mechanism is used and the lead screw equation for torque is applicable.

Pump Curves: Pump performance can be shown graphically by plotting various performance parameters as a function of flow rate. These graphs are usually supplied by pump manufacturers and usually include efficiency, power requirement, dynamic head, and *NPSHR*. These values are given as a function of the pump alone, and normally are measured in a way that minimizes the influence of suction/discharge line effects. Pump curves are also normally generated using water as the fluid. Since hydraulic power is a function of the fluid's specific gravity, care must be taken when planning to pump a fluid with a different specific gravity. In those cases, the pump's power rating should be multiplied by the specific gravity of the planned fluid.

The performance of a centrifugal pump is generally based on capacity (gal/min or m^3/h), added fluid head (ft or m), input power (bhp of kW), efficiency (%), and speed (rpm). It is common to plot centrifugal pump curves for a range of impeller diameters together for a fixed speed. This allows selection of the diameter when looking at operating points.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

System Head Curves: System performance curves display the influence of suction and discharge line configurations. On a system head curve, head requirements of the system are plotted versus capacity. The curve represents a total static head plus friction losses. When system head is variable, as with changing reservoir levels or when there is switching between lines through valving, multiple system head curves will be represented on the graph.

Operating Point: The operating point is the intersection of the pump curve and the system curve on a graph that sets head against flow rate. From this graph, the flow rate and head of the pump/system combination can be easily determined. An example of the operating point on a graph can be seen in Fig. 9. A pump/system combination will have multiple viable operating points if there are multiple pump curves given for different speeds and/or geometries. The designer should choose the operating point with the highest pump efficiency. Another case where multiple operating points are seen is in systems where the system head varies and multiple system head curves are present. The designer should ensure that the pump can meet the system requirements at all operating points. When dealing with centrifugal pumps, the pump curve chosen for the operating point will in turn determine the speed and/or impeller. It is good practice to select a centrifugal pump with the largest impeller diameter that will meet the application needs while operating at or near its maximum rated speed.

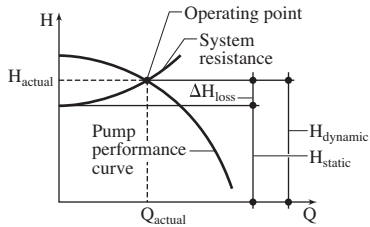


Fig. 9. Operating Point of a Pump

The operating point of a pump in a system can be changed by throttling the discharge line. The suction line should never be throttled because it could lead to cavitation. When a pump is throttled, the operating point moves along the pump curve as the flow rate is reduced. Operating point can also be changed through the use of a variable speed drive. Changing the viscosity of the fluid being pumped also moves the operating point in the direction of less flow for a given head.

Combining Pumps in Series or Parallel: When one pump discharges into the suction line of another pump, this is a series system. Pumps in series are capable of producing higher discharge heads than single pumps. A slight increase in flow rate will also be seen when pumps are combined in series. To generate a pump curve for pumps in series, the head of each pump is added at each flow rate to create a new curve. This curve is then graphed together with the system curve to find a new operating point. Multistage pumps contain multiple impellers in one pump body to achieve a similar effect as a series of pumps.

A system of pumps in parallel experiences an increase primarily in flow capacity, with only a slight increase in head. Parallel pump systems have the advantage of increased reliability, and the ability to efficiently adjust to variations in demand. When demand varies, flow rate moves away from the operating point, resulting in decreased efficiency.

When two or more parallel pumps are used, they can be engaged and disengaged to keep the system flow rate near demand.

Affinity and Similarity: Comparing centrifugal pumps can be done if one assumes the efficiencies of the two pumps are the same. This becomes less true as the difference in

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

size between pumps grows. Note that as the specific speed increases, the accuracy of the affinity equations decreases. To estimate the efficiency of a very different size pump, the following equation can be used.

$$\left(\frac{D_L}{D_S}\right)^n = \frac{1-\eta_S}{1-\eta_L}$$

where subscript L denotes the larger pump, and S denotes the smaller pump. D is impeller diameter and n is speed.

The affinity equations (assuming equal efficiencies) which allow comparison between pumps are as follows:

- When the impeller diameter is constant while the speed changes:

$$\frac{n_2}{n_1} = \frac{Q_2}{Q_1} \qquad \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^2 = \frac{h_2}{h_1} = \left(\frac{Q_2}{Q_1}\right)^2 \qquad \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^3 = \frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{Q_2}{Q_1}\right)^3$$

- When the speed is constant and the impeller size changes:

$$\frac{D_2}{D_1} = \frac{Q_2}{Q_1} \qquad \left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^2 = \frac{h_2}{h_1} \qquad \left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^3 = \frac{P_2}{P_1}$$

- When flow is assumed to be turbulent and the percentage of wide open flow is assumed to be the same, similarity can be used as follows:

$$\frac{Q_2}{Q_1} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}\left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^3 \qquad \frac{h_2}{h_1} = \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^2\left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^2 \qquad \frac{P_2}{P_1} = \frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1}\left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^3\left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^5$$

Startup Conditions: Priming is necessary for all types of pumps to begin operation. During priming, the inlet chamber is flooded with fluid, and gas is purged from the pump mechanism. Submersible pumps are generally self-priming, as are some types of non-submersible pumps.

The torque requirements of centrifugal pumps at startup are greatly different from running torque requirements. Full-load torque is required for starting against full discharge pressure. To reduce the startup torque required, the designer can pipe the discharge back to the suction line, and close it off from any head inherent in the running discharge line. This equalizes discharge and suction pressure and eliminates the load on the pump during startup. Using valves, this loop can be closed off and the pump discharge connected to the discharge pipe system once the pump gets up to running speed.

Piping Considerations: To ensure peak performance of hydraulic systems, some points to consider are:

- Make piping runs as short and direct as possible.
- Design for minimum fluid velocities and accelerations.
- Use long radius bends rather than elbows to redirect piping where possible.
- Design pipe systems to preclude the collection of vapor bubbles, except where venting is provided.
- Include pulsation dampeners and suction stabilizers where acceleration head is high or the fluid needs degassing. A suction stabilizer is a device placed on the suction line of a pump that both absorbs pulsations and separates free gases from the liquid being pumped.
- Always ensure that $NPSHA >> NPSHR$.
- Include strainers only when absolutely necessary, and ensure regular maintenance is conducted.
- Provide a relief valve that is adequately sized.
- Pipe a bypass line around the pump with valves so that the pump may be started with low load. This must be done slowly to avoid shock to the system.
- In systems with high static discharge heads, install a check valve at the pump discharge to prevent static pressure from loading the pump during startup.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Pneumatics

Pneumatic systems use compressed and flowing gas, usually air, to perform work. Many pneumatic components, such as valves, actuators, and compressors share similarities with components used with liquids. In many cases, pneumatic components and calculations can be found in earlier sections.

Gas Consumption Calculation and Measurement.—It is common practice to exhaust air used in pneumatic circuits to atmosphere through silencers, or to an exhaust manifold and/or filter. Since that air is lost, and compression of air costs money, air consumption should be evaluated and limited as much as possible when designing a pneumatic circuit. Silencers are essential to limit noise produced by exhausting air.

In US units, the volumetric flow rate of gases is normally expressed in cubic feet per minute (cfm). Velocity in US units is normally expressed in feet per minute. SI units for gas volumetric flow are cubic meters per second and meters per second for velocity. Liters per second is used for volumetric flows in low ranges.

Gas Consumption: Compressors and devices using compressed air are often rated in terms of free air delivery (f.a.d.), which is the quantity of air used per unit time assuming the air is at standard atmospheric pressure and temperature. These values are 14.7 psia (0.101 MPa) and 60°F (15°C). When conditions differ from standard, the following equation can be used:

$$Q_a = \frac{Q_s p_s T_a}{(p_{atm} + p_a) T_s}$$

where Q_a is actual volumetric flow rate, Q_s is flow rate at standard conditions, p_s is standard absolute atmospheric pressure, p_{atm} is actual absolute atmospheric pressure, p_a is actual gauge pressure, T_a and T_s are actual and standard absolute temperature (°R or K).

This equation is often used in another form to calculate the flow of free air required to supply a given compressed air flow. When the free air is at standard temperature, this takes the form of the following equation:

$$Q_s = \frac{Q_a(p_{atm} + p_a)}{p_s}$$

where Q_s is the free air flow at standard temperature, Q_a is the compressed air flow, p_a is actual gage pressure, and p_s is the absolute standard pressure. The ratio of absolute pressure to absolute standard pressure is known as the *compression ratio*. In US units, the free flow is normally given in units of SCFM and compressed air flow is in units of CFM.

Fans and Blowers.—Fans and blowers add energy to air. When static pressure is very low, fans are typically used. Blowers are appropriate when static pressure is higher.

Types of Fans and Blowers: Axial propeller fans have a number of blades arranged around a spinning shaft. They move air axially through themselves with very low pressure and velocity increase. Axial fans are normally used to move large quantities of air against static pressures below 0.4 psig (3kPa). A diffuser can be added after a fan to increase static pressure output. Axial propeller fans are the least expensive of the fan types, but are not as efficient as centrifugal fans. Vane-axial blowers are similar to propeller fans, but have highly optimized casing geometry that creates much higher pressures than propeller fans.

Centrifugal fans and blowers use a rotating impeller to accelerate air radially outward from a central intake. Significant velocity energy is added, which is then converted to pressure energy when the air is slowed using a volute. The inlet and volute geometry is usually organized so that air enters and exits the centrifugal device axially. Scroll casings are arranged such that the air exiting the device is radial. Centrifugal fans are appropriate up to a static pressure of approximately 2 psi (15 kPa). Forward-curved centrifugal fans

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

(squirrel cage fans) are the most common type, but with an efficiency of approximately 75 percent they are the least efficient of all the centrifugal designs. Backward-curved centrifugal fans are less likely to overload than forward-curved fans, and their increased efficiency over forward-curved centrifugals makes up for their increased cost. Radial blade fans are commonly found in industrial cooling applications where a large volume of air is required at moderate pressure. Centrifugal blowers look more like centrifugal pumps than fans. The impeller is typically gear-driven. The two most common types of centrifugal blowers are pressure blowers and volume blowers. Pressure blowers are designed to draw or push air at high pressures, rated in static pressure water gauge (SPWG). Volume blowers are designed to draw or push larger volumes of air, rated in cubic feet of air per minute (CFM), at lower static pressures than pressure blowers.

Cross-flow fans and blowers have air enter and exit the impeller tangentially. The pressure produced by these impellers is low. Mixed-flow fans and blowers use impellers that impart both axial and radial momentum to a gas. These impellers can be housed in either axial or scroll-type casings to output either axial or radial flow. Positive displacement blowers are essentially positive displacement pumps used for moving air. Positive displacement pumps are described earlier in this text.

Fan and Blower Calculations: When selecting a fan or blower, one must consider the cleanliness and type of gas being moved, the pressure differential or velocity needed, the volumetric flow rate required, the energy loss in the ductwork or system, the noise produced, and the cost.

Fan capacity is a measure of the maximum volumetric flow rate of the fan or blower. Total pressure of a fan or blower is the difference between the inlet and outlet pressures, and it is also the sum of static pressure and velocity pressure. Static and velocity pressures are often measured in inches of water (in. w.g.). Fan static, velocity, and total pressures at standard conditions can be calculated using the following equations:

$$p_{s(\text{in. w. g.})} = \frac{p_{psig}}{0.0361}$$

$$p_{v(\text{in. w.g.})} = \left(\frac{v_{fpm}}{4005}\right)^2$$

$$p_t = p_s + p_v = \frac{p}{\gamma} + \frac{\rho v^2}{2}$$

where p_s is static pressure, and the specific weight of water is assumed to be 0.0361 lbf/in^3; p_v is velocity pressure; v_{fpm} is velocity in fpm; and p_t is total pressure.

When a fan is connected to ductwork, the pressure drop through the duct and fittings should be taken into account using the following equations, by using the Moody diagram given in Fig. 1, or by using friction loss graphs like those published by ASHRAE. The Darcy-Weisbach equation (see *Darcy-Weisbach Equation and the Moody Diagram* on page 2779) should be used for "non-standard" duct type such as flex duct.

$$p_{f(\text{in. w.g.})} = \frac{(3.9\times10^{-9})v_{fpm}^{2.43}L_{ft}}{Q_{CFM}^{0.61}}$$

where p_f is friction pressure of air moving through ducts. This assumes clean, galvanized, circular ducts with a specific roughness of 0.0005 ft.

$$p_{f(\text{in. w.g.})} = K\left(\frac{v_{fpm}}{4005}\right)^2$$

where p_f is friction pressure of air moving through fittings. The loss coefficient K can be found in Table 34.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 34. Loss Coefficients, Air Duct Fittings

Fitting Type	Geometry		*K* (upstream)	*K* (downstream)
Sudden Expansion	$\frac{A_{upstream}}{A_{downstream}}$ =	0.2	0.64	
		0.4	0.36	
		0.6	0.16	
		0.8	0.04	
Sudden Contraction	$\frac{A_{downstream}}{A_{upstream}}$ =	0.2		0.32
		0.4		0.25
		0.6		0.16
		0.8		0.06
Gradual Contraction	Included Angle	40°	0.012	
		80°	0.032	
		120°	0.07	
90° Elbow	*r*/*d* =	1.25	0.55	
		1.5	0.39	
		1.75	0.32	
		2	0.27	
		2.25	0.26	
		2.5	0.22	
		2.75	0.26	
45° Elbow	*r*/*d* =	1.25	0.275	
		1.5	0.195	
		1.75	0.16	
		2	0.135	
		2.25	0.13	
		2.5	0.11	
		2.75	0.13	
Straight Miter	Two Piece		1.2	
	Three Piece		0.34	

Compressibility factor is the ratio of total pressure that would be developed with an incompressible fluid to the total pressure developed with a compressible gas. When fan total pressure is less than 12 in.w.g., the compressibility factor can be assumed to be equal to 1 (incompressible flow). Power output is the product of capacity, total pressure, and compressibility factor. Total efficiency is the ratio of power output to power input. Static efficiency is the product of total efficiency and the ratio of static pressure to total pressure. These values can be calculated using the following equations. Fan efficiency grades have been established to classify fan performance.

$$P_o = K_p Q p_t$$

where P_o is output power imparted to the gas, K_p is compressibility factor, and p_t is fan total pressure.

$$\eta_t = \frac{P_o}{P_B}$$

where P_B is power supplied to the driver.

$$\eta_t = \frac{Q_{CFM} p_{t(\text{in. w.g.})}}{6356 P_B} \qquad \eta_s = \frac{Q_{CFM} p_{s\ (\text{in w.g.})}}{6356 P_B}$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The fan laws of similarity and affinity rely on the fact that two geometrically similar impellers of different sizes are homologous. These laws can be used to compare similar fans, and are expressed in the following equations. It is essential to make sure that the fans under consideration have the same efficiency. When one fan is compared at different speeds:

$$\frac{Q_2}{Q_1} = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \qquad \frac{p_2}{p_1} = \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^2 \qquad \frac{P_{o2}}{P_{o1}} = \frac{P_{B2}}{P_{B1}} = \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)^3$$

When two similar fans are compared:

$$\frac{Q_2}{Q_1} = \left(\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)\left(\frac{D_2}{D_1}\right)^3 \qquad \frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{p_2 Q_2}{p_1 Q_1}\right)$$

Sizing of fans and blowers is similar in process to that of pumps, where graphs are commonly used. The performance graph is usually a constant-speed plot with capacity on the X axis and a variety of performance factors on the Y axis. As part of the selection process, a graph of the system is also generated, with capacity as the X axis and head (energy loss in the system) on the Y axis. As with pumps, the operating point of a fan is found at the intersection of the performance graph and the system graph. When multiple system curves are applicable, as with variable duct geometry or variable static pressure, there will be multiple operating points. When multiple performance curves are available, as with adjustable impeller vane angle, damper control, or variable speed, there will be multiple operating points. A slightly undersized fan is preferable to an oversized fan because of lower cost and increased stability.

Operating a fan or blower at much lower than rated capacity can result in pulsations and instability due to a variety of factors. This should be avoided. To ensure stable fan and blower operation, the engineer should select an operating point where the slope of the pressure/capacity performance curve has opposite sign as the system curve. This is usually the case, except at or above design capacity. Pulsation can be avoided by selecting an operating point to the right of the surge point. If this is not possible, speed control, impeller geometry control, inlet dampers, exhaust dampers, and bleed lines may be employed. Changing a fan's speed cannot be used to stabilize a fan operating in an unstable condition. According to affinity, if an operating point for a fan is in an unstable region to the left of the peak, it will remain in an unstable region at any speed.

Multiple fans may be called for in some applications to avoid pressure buildup in a space or to fit a space constraint. When demand or system conditions are highly variable, multiple fans may serve the need better than a single fan. Because operating point is based on capacity, if capacity varies the operating point will move along the performance curve and may depart from reasonable efficiency for the fan or blower. In these cases, one fan is sized for one operating point, and additional fans are called into service as needed to provide additional capacity. Fans or blowers in parallel and series follow the same additive rules as pumps. Instability can occur in parallel fan systems when the combined performance curve intersects the system curve at a point where the individual operating points are widely separated. In that condition, the fans may suddenly exchange loading and shock the mechanism and/or ductwork. To avoid this, fans in parallel must be carefully matched to the system.

Compressors.—When significant air pressure must be generated, in excess of 10 psig (68.9 kPa), a compressor is employed. The most common pressures range from 60 to 110 psig (413.7–758.4 kPa). There are many standards covering compressors, including those by ANSI, ASME, API, SAE, and CAGI.

Compression of Air: The formula for the relationship between pressure, temperature, and volume of air just given indicates that when the pressure remains constant the volume is directly proportional to the absolute temperature. If the temperature remains constant,

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

the volume is inversely proportional to the absolute pressure. Theoretically, air (as well as other gases) can be expanded or compressed according to different laws.

Adiabatic Expansion or Compression takes place when the air is expanded or compressed without transmission of heat to or from it, as, for example, if the air could be expanded or compressed in a cylinder of an absolutely nonconducting material.

Let: P_1 = initial absolute pressure in pounds per square foot
V_1 = initial volume in cubic feet
T_1 = initial absolute temperature in degrees R
P_2 = absolute pressure in pounds per square foot, after compression
V_2 = volume in cubic feet, after compression
T_2 = absolute temperature in degrees R, after compression

Then:

$$\frac{V_2}{V_1} = \left(\frac{P_1}{P_2}\right)^{0.71} \qquad \frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^{1.41} \qquad \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{V_1}{V_2}\right)^{0.41}$$

$$\frac{V_2}{V_1} = \left(\frac{T_1}{T_2}\right)^{2.46} \qquad \frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{T_2}{T_1}\right)^{3.46} \qquad \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{0.29}$$

These formulas are also applicable if all pressures are in pounds per square inch; if all volumes are in cubic inches; or if any other consistent set of units is used for pressure or volume.

Example 1: A volume of 165 cubic feet of air, at a pressure of 15 pounds per square inch, is compressed adiabatically to a pressure of 80 pounds per square inch. What will be the volume at this pressure?

$$V_2 = V_1\left(\frac{P_1}{P_2}\right)^{0.71} = 165\left(\frac{15}{80}\right)^{0.71} = 50 \text{ cubic feet, approx.}$$

Isothermal Expansion or Compression takes place when a gas is expanded or compressed with an addition or transmission of sufficient heat to maintain a constant temperature.

Let: P_1 = initial absolute pressure in pounds per square foot
V_1 = initial volume in cubic feet
P_2 = absolute pressure in pounds per square foot, after compression
V_2 = volume in cubic feet, after compression
R = 53.3
T = temperature in degrees Rankine maintained during isothermal expansion or contraction

Then:

$$P_1 \times V_1 = P_2 \times V_2 = RT$$

Example 2: The same volume of air as in Example 1 is compressed isothermally from 15 to 80 pounds per square inch. What will be the volume after compression?

$$V_2 = \frac{P_1 \times V_1}{P_2} = \frac{15 \times 165}{80} = 31 \text{ cubic feet}$$

Work Required in Compression of Air: The total work required for compression and expulsion of air, adiabatically compressed, is:

$$\text{Total work in foot-pounds} = 2.44 P_1 V_1 \left[\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{0.29} - 1\right]$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

P_1 = initial absolute pressure in pounds per square foot; P_2 = absolute pressure in pounds per square foot, after compression; and, V_1 = initial volume in cubic feet.

The total work required for isothermal compression is:

$$\text{Total work in foot-pounds} = P_1 V_1 \log_e \frac{V_1}{V_2}$$

in which P_1, P_2, and V_1 denote the same quantities as in the previous equation, and V_2 = volume of air in cubic feet, after compression.

The work required to compress air isothermally, that is, when the heat of compression is removed as rapidly as produced, is considerably less than the work required for compressing air adiabatically, or when all the heat is retained. In practice, neither of these two theoretical extremes is obtainable, but the power required for air compression is about the median between the powers that would be required for each. The accompanying table gives the average number of foot-pounds of work required to compress air.

Horsepower Required to Compress Air: In the accompanying tables is given the horsepower required to compress one cubic foot of free air per minute (isothermally and adiabatically) from atmospheric pressure (14.7 pounds per square inch) to various gage pressures, for one-, two-, and three-stage compression. The formula for calculating the horsepower required to compress, adiabatically, a given volume of free air to a given pressure is:

$$\text{HP} = \frac{144NPVn}{33{,}000(n-1)}\left[\left(\frac{P_2}{P}\right)^{\frac{n-1}{Nn}} - 1\right]$$

where N = number of stages in which compression is accomplished
P = atmospheric pressure in pounds per square inch
P_2 = absolute terminal pressure in pounds per square inch
V = volume of air, in cubic feet, compressed per minute, at atmospheric pressure
n = exponent of the compression curve = 1.41 for adiabatic compression

For different methods of compression and for one cubic foot of air per minute, this formula may be simplified as follows:

For one-stage compression: $\text{HP} = 0.015P(R^{0.29} - 1)$
For two-stage compression: $\text{HP} = 0.030\,P(R^{0.145} - 1)$
For three-stage compression: $\text{HP} = 0.045\,P(R^{0.0975} - 1)$
For four-stage compression: $\text{HP} = 0.060\,P(R^{0.0725} - 1)$

In these latter formulas $R = \frac{P_2}{P}$ = number of atmospheres to be compressed

The formula for calculating the horsepower required to compress isothermally a given volume of free air to a given pressure is:

$$\text{HP} = \frac{144PV}{33000}\left(\log_e \frac{P_2}{P}\right)$$

Natural logarithms are obtained by multiplying common logarithms by 2.30259 or by using a handheld calculator.

The work and power required for air compression can be found in Table 35 to Table 38.

Stress and heat are what limits the maximum compression of any single stage of a compressor. The volumetric efficiency drops as pressure rise increases, further limiting the maximum compression of a single stage. Multi-stage compressors are used when a single stage cannot develop enough pressure. Multi-stage axial compressors use a series of axial fans to deliver very large flow rates. Perfect intercooling is impractical, so it is important to note that for every 10°F temperature increase, the horsepower requirement increases nearly 1%.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 35. Foot-pounds of Work Required in Compression of Air Initial Pressure = 1 atmosphere = 14.7 Pounds per Square Inch

Gage Pressure, lb/in²	Isothermal Compression	Adiabatic Compression	Actual Compression	Gage Pressure, lb/in²	Isothermal Compression	Adiabatic Compression	Actual Compression
	Foot-pounds Required per Cubic Foot of Air at Initial Pressure				Foot-pounds Required per Cubic Foot of Air at Initial Pressure		
5	619.6	649.5	637.5	55	3393.7	4188.9	3870.8
10	1098.2	1192.0	1154.6	60	3440.4	4422.8	4029.8
15	1488.3	1661.2	1592.0	65	3577.6	4645.4	4218.2
20	1817.7	2074.0	1971.4	70	3706.3	4859.6	4398.1
25	2102.6	2451.6	2312.0	75	3828.0	5063.9	4569.5
30	2353.6	2794.0	2617.8	80	3942.9	5259.7	4732.9
35	2578.0	3111.0	2897.8	85	4051.5	5450.0	4890.1
40	2780.8	3405.5	3155.6	90	4155.7	5633.1	5042.1
45	2966.0	3681.7	3395.4	95	4254.3	5819.3	5187.3
50	3136.2	3942.3	3619.8	100	4348.1	5981.2	5327.9

Table 36. Horsepower Required to Compress Air, Single-Stage Compression

Horsepower required to compress one cubic foot of free air per minute (isothermally and adiabatically) from atmospheric pressure (14.7 pounds per square inch) to various gage pressures.
Single-Stage Compression, initial temperature of air, 60°F, jacket cooling not considered.

Gage Pressure, Pounds	Absolute Pressure, Pounds	Number of Atmospheres	Isothermal Compression		Adiabatic Compression			
			Mean Effective Pressure[a]	Horsepower	Mean Effective Pressure,[a] Theoretical	Mean Eff. Pressure plus 15% Friction	Horsepower, Theoretical	Horsepower plus 15% Friction
5	19.7	1.34	4.13	0.018	4.46	5.12	0.019	0.022
10	24.7	1.68	7.57	0.033	8.21	9.44	0.036	0.041
15	29.7	2.02	11.02	0.048	11.46	13.17	0.050	0.057
20	34.7	2.36	12.62	0.055	14.30	16.44	0.062	0.071
25	39.7	2.70	14.68	0.064	16.94	19.47	0.074	0.085
30	44.7	3.04	16.30	0.071	19.32	22.21	0.084	0.096
35	49.7	3.38	17.90	0.078	21.50	24.72	0.094	0.108
40	54.7	3.72	19.28	0.084	25.53	27.05	0.103	0.118
45	59.7	4.06	20.65	0.090	25.40	29.21	0.111	0.127
50	64.7	4.40	21.80	0.095	27.23	31.31	0.119	0.136
55	69.7	4.74	22.95	0.100	28.90	33.23	0.126	0.145
60	74.7	5.08	23.90	0.104	30.53	35.10	0.133	0.153
65	79.7	5.42	24.80	0.108	32.10	36.91	0.140	0.161
70	84.7	5.76	25.70	0.112	33.57	38.59	0.146	0.168
75	89.7	6.10	26.62	0.116	35.00	40.25	0.153	0.175
80	94.7	6.44	27.52	0.120	36.36	41.80	0.159	0.182
85	99.7	6.78	28.21	0.123	37.63	43.27	0.164	0.189
90	104.7	7.12	28.93	0.126	38.89	44.71	0.169	0.195
95	109.7	7.46	29.60	0.129	40.11	46.12	0.175	0.201
100	114.7	7.80	30.30	0.132	41.28	47.46	0.180	0.207
110	124.7	8.48	31.42	0.137	43.56	50.09	0.190	0.218
120	134.7	9.16	32.60	0.142	45.69	52.53	0.199	0.229
130	144.7	9.84	33.75	0.147	47.72	54.87	0.208	0.239
140	154.7	10.52	34.67	0.151	49.64	57.08	0.216	0.249
150	164.7	11.20	35.59	0.155	51.47	59.18	0.224	0.258
160	174.7	11.88	36.30	0.158	53.70	61.80	0.234	0.269
170	184.7	12.56	37.20	0.162	55.60	64.00	0.242	0.278
180	194.7	13.24	38.10	0.166	57.20	65.80	0.249	0.286
190	204.7	13.92	38.80	0.169	58.80	67.70	0.256	0.294
200	214.7	14.60	39.50	0.172	60.40	69.50	0.263	0.303

[a] Mean Effective Pressure (MEP) is defined as that single pressure rise, above atmospheric, which would require the same horsepower as the actual varying pressures during compression.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 37. Horsepower Required to Compress Air, Two-Stage Compression

Horsepower required to compress one cubic foot of free air per minute (isothermally and adiabatically) from atmospheric pressure (14.7 pounds per square inch) to various gage pressures.
Two-Stage Compression, initial temperature of air, 60°F, jacket cooling not considered.

Gage Pressure, Pounds	Absolute Pressure, Pounds	Number of Atmospheres	Correct Ratio of Cylinder Volumes	Intercooler Gage Pressure	Isothermal Compression		Adiabatic Compression				Percentage of Saving over One-stage Compression
					Mean Effective Pressure[a]	Horsepower	Mean Eff. Pressure[a] Theoretical	Mean Eff. Pressure plus 15 per cent Friction	Horsepower, Theoretical	HP plus 15 per cent Friction	
50	64.7	4.40	2.10	16.2	21.80	0.095	24.30	27.90	0.106	0.123	10.9
60	74.7	5.08	2.25	18.4	23.90	0.104	27.20	31.30	0.118	0.136	11.3
70	84.7	5.76	2.40	20.6	25.70	0.112	29.31	33.71	0.128	0.147	12.3
80	94.7	6.44	2.54	22.7	27.52	0.120	31.44	36.15	0.137	0.158	13.8
90	104.7	7.12	2.67	24.5	28.93	0.126	33.37	38.36	0.145	0.167	14.2
100	114.7	7.80	2.79	26.3	30.30	0.132	35.20	40.48	0.153	0.176	15.0
110	124.7	8.48	2.91	28.1	31.42	0.137	36.82	42.34	0.161	0.185	15.2
120	134.7	9.16	3.03	29.8	32.60	0.142	38.44	44.20	0.168	0.193	15.6
130	144.7	9.84	3.14	31.5	33.75	0.147	39.86	45.83	0.174	0.200	16.3
140	154.7	10.52	3.24	32.9	34.67	0.151	41.28	47.47	0.180	0.207	16.7
150	164.7	11.20	3.35	34.5	35.59	0.155	42.60	48.99	0.186	0.214	16.9
160	174.7	11.88	3.45	36.1	36.30	0.158	43.82	50.39	0.191	0.219	18.4
170	184.7	12.56	3.54	37.3	37.20	0.162	44.93	51.66	0.196	0.225	19.0
180	194.7	13.24	3.64	38.8	38.10	0.166	46.05	52.95	0.201	0.231	19.3
190	204.7	13.92	3.73	40.1	38.80	0.169	47.16	54.22	0.206	0.236	19.5
200	214.7	14.60	3.82	41.4	39.50	0.172	48.18	55.39	0.210	0.241	20.1
210	224.7	15.28	3.91	42.8	40.10	0.174	49.35	56.70	0.216	0.247	…
220	234.7	15.96	3.99	44.0	40.70	0.177	50.30	57.70	0.220	0.252	…
230	244.7	16.64	4.08	45.3	41.30	0.180	51.30	59.10	0.224	0.257	…
240	254.7	17.32	4.17	46.6	41.90	0.183	52.25	60.10	0.228	0.262	…
250	264.7	18.00	4.24	47.6	42.70	0.186	52.84	60.76	0.230	0.264	…
260	274.7	18.68	4.32	48.8	43.00	0.188	53.85	62.05	0.235	0.270	…
270	284.7	19.36	4.40	50.0	43.50	0.190	54.60	62.90	0.238	0.274	…
280	294.7	20.04	4.48	51.1	44.00	0.192	55.50	63.85	0.242	0.278	…
290	304.7	20.72	4.55	52.2	44.50	0.194	56.20	64.75	0.246	0.282	…
300	314.7	21.40	4.63	53.4	45.80	0.197	56.70	65.20	0.247	0.283	…
350	364.7	24.80	4.98	58.5	47.30	0.206	60.15	69.16	0.262	0.301	…
400	414.7	28.20	5.31	63.3	49.20	0.214	63.19	72.65	0.276	0.317	…
450	464.7	31.60	5.61	67.8	51.20	0.223	65.93	75.81	0.287	0.329	…
500	514.7	35.01	5.91	72.1	52.70	0.229	68.46	78.72	0.298	0.342	…

[a] Mean Effective Pressure (MEP) is defined as that single pressure rise, above atmospheric, which would require the same horsepower as the actual varying pressures during compression.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 38. Horsepower Required to Compress Air, Three-stage Compression

Horsepower required for compressing one cubic foot of free air per minute (isothermally and adiabatically) from atmospheric pressure (14.7 pounds per square inch) to various gage pressures.
Three-stage Compression, initial temperature of air, 60°F, jacket-cooling not considered.

Gage Pressure, Pounds	Absolute Pressure, Pounds	Number of Atmospheres	Correct Ratio of Cylinder Volumes	Intercooler Gage Pressure, First and Second Stages	Isothermal Compression		Adiabatic Compression				Percentage of Saving over Two-stage Compression
					Mean Effective Pressure[a]	Horsepower	Mean Eff. Pressure,[a] Theoretical	Mean Eff. Pressure plus 15 per cent Friction	Horsepower Theoretical	HP plus 15 per cent Friction	
100	114.7	7.8	1.98	14.4-42.9	30.30	0.132	33.30	38.30	0.145	0.167	5.23
150	164.7	11.2	2.24	18.2-59.0	35.59	0.155	40.30	46.50	0.175	0.202	5.92
200	214.7	14.6	2.44	21.2-73.0	39.50	0.172	45.20	52.00	0.196	0.226	6.67
250	264.7	18.0	2.62	23.8-86.1	42.70	0.186	49.20	56.60	0.214	0.246	6.96
300	314.7	21.4	2.78	26.1-98.7	45.30	0.197	52.70	60.70	0.229	0.264	7.28
350	364.7	24.8	2.92	28.2-110.5	47.30	0.206	55.45	63.80	0.242	0.277	7.64
400	414.7	28.2	3.04	30.0-121.0	49.20	0.214	58.25	66.90	0.253	0.292	8.33
450	464.7	31.6	3.16	31.8-132.3	51.20	0.223	60.40	69.40	0.263	0.302	8.36
500	514.7	35.0	3.27	33.4-142.4	52.70	0.229	62.30	71.70	0.273	0.314	8.38
550	564.7	38.4	3.38	35.0-153.1	53.75	0.234	65.00	74.75	0.283	0.326	8.80
600	614.7	41.8	3.47	36.3-162.3	54.85	0.239	66.85	76.90	0.291	0.334	8.86
650	664.7	45.2	3.56	37.6-171.5	56.00	0.244	67.90	78.15	0.296	0.340	9.02
700	714.7	48.6	3.65	38.9-180.8	57.15	0.249	69.40	79.85	0.303	0.348	9.18
750	764.7	52.0	3.73	40.1-189.8	58.10	0.253	70.75	81.40	0.309	0.355	…
800	814.7	55.4	3.82	41.4-199.5	59.00	0.257	72.45	83.25	0.315	0.362	…
850	864.7	58.8	3.89	42.5-207.8	60.20	0.262	73.75	84.90	0.321	0.369	…
900	914.7	62.2	3.95	43.4-214.6	60.80	0.265	74.80	86.00	0.326	0.375	…
950	964.7	65.6	4.03	44.6-224.5	61.72	0.269	76.10	87.50	0.331	0.381	…
1000	1014.7	69.0	4.11	45.7-233.3	62.40	0.272	77.20	88.80	0.336	0.383	…
1050	1064.7	72.4	4.15	46.3-238.3	63.10	0.275	78.10	90.10	0.340	0.391	…
1100	1114.7	75.8	4.23	47.5-248.3	63.80	0.278	79.10	91.10	0.344	0.396	…
1150	1164.7	79.2	4.30	48.5-256.8	64.40	0.281	80.15	92.20	0.349	0.401	…
1200	1214.7	82.6	4.33	49.0-261.3	65.00	0.283	81.00	93.15	0.353	0.405	…
1250	1264.7	86.0	4.42	50.3-272.3	65.60	0.286	82.00	94.30	0.357	0.411	…
1300	1314.7	89.4	4.48	51.3-280.8	66.30	0.289	82.90	95.30	0.362	0.416	…
1350	1364.7	92.8	4.53	52.0-287.3	66.70	0.291	84.00	96.60	0.366	0.421	…
1400	1414.7	96.2	4.58	52.6-293.5	67.00	0.292	84.60	97.30	0.368	0.423	…
1450	1464.7	99.6	4.64	53.5-301.5	67.70	0.295	85.30	98.20	0.371	0.426	…
1500	1514.7	103.0	4.69	54.3-309.3	68.30	0.298	85.80	98.80	0.374	0.430	…
1550	1564.7	106.4	4.74	55.0-317.3	68.80	0.300	86.80	99.85	0.378	0.434	…
1600	1614.7	109.8	4.79	55.8-323.3	69.10	0.302	87.60	100.80	0.382	0.438	…

[a] Mean Effective Pressure (MEP) is defined as that single pressure rise, above atmospheric, which would require the same horsepower as the actual varying pressures during compression.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Compressor Types: Compressors can be centrifugal, multi-stage centrifugal, multi-stage axial, or positive displacement. Centrifugal compressors are similar to centrifugal blowers. Positive displacement compressors are essentially positive displacement pumps, used to deliver high pressures at moderate flow rates. These compressors can employ a variety of mechanisms, like pistons, lobes, screws, and vanes. Small positive displacement compressors are often sold to homes and businesses.

Positive displacement compressors compress a fixed amount of gas within a closed chamber by decreasing its volume. Volumetric efficiency is affected by leakage and mechanical losses. Positive displacement compressors tend to be selected for low to moderate flow applications with high compression requirements. Compressor types in this category include: reciprocating piston, rotary vane, rolling piston, rotary twin screw, and orbiting scroll compressors. Screw compressors are commonly used in the range between 100 and 150 psig. Reciprocating compressors can be either single acting or double acting, and are commonly used for pressures in excess of 200 psig. These types of compressors deliver a pulsating flow of gas, unlike other types of compressors. Multi-stage positive displacement compressors with intercooling are common at pressures exceeding 80 psig.

Many state laws and general good practice requires the use of an appropriately sized relief valve ahead of the first stop valve in positive displacement compressors. This relief valve should be set to release at 125 percent of the maximum discharge pressure of the compressor, or at the maximum working pressure of the compressor, whichever is lower.

Dynamic compressors impart momentum to the gas by means of a spinning rotor. This momentum energy is converted to pressure energy when the gas is slowed again. This is a constant flow process. Dynamic compressors are subject to the fan laws, and the specific speed is used to select the geometry. Dynamic compressors tend to be selected for moderate to high flow applications with low to moderate compression requirements. Multi-stage dynamic compressors can provide high flow and high compression.

Compressor Sizing: When sizing a compressor for a given application, one must analyze the piping system to the point of use to account for any pressure drops between it and the compressor. Any pressure loss must be added to the compressor range to make sure the desired pressure is delivered at the point of use. If the pressure drop is significant (exceeding 10 percent) the change in specific weight of the gas should be taken into account.

The maximum capacity of a compressor should exceed the maximum mean air consumption of the system.

Because the maximum capacity of an air compressor will exceed the minimum air consumption in the system, the compressor must modulate its capacity during normal work. This will cause variation of system pressure, or pressure pulsation. As a result, a receiver should be installed after the compressor to stabilize system pressure.

Like with fans and pumps, compressors are usually sized by graphing the characteristic curve. Discharge pressure, head, or pressure ratio is graphed against inlet flow rate. For dynamic compressors, the graph includes values at various speeds and efficiencies. The system curve(s) is then plotted over the characteristic curve(s) and the intersection is the operating point. Multiple operating points may be encountered. Each stage of compression will have its own characteristic curve, and in an ideal case each stage will operate at a high efficiency.

For dynamic compressors, inlet pressure variation has a direct effect on horsepower. To correctly size the compressor drive, the full range of inlet pressures must be considered as well as discharge pressures. Dynamic compressors are subject to a minimum flow rate called the surge limit. Surge is seen to the left of the characteristic curve(s). The demand limits of the application must be considered and operation below the surge limit prevented.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Gas Conditioning and Stabilization.—In order to provide consistent, clean, dry gas supply; dryers, filters, oilers, receivers, silencers, and exhaust cleaners are used to condition and stabilize pressurized gas.

Filters: Compressed gas used to perform work normally needs to be very clean to avoid fouling the devices in the system. Filters of various types are employed to clean compressed air. Most manufacturers offer a range of high efficiency coalescing compressed air filters for the removal of water and oil aerosols, solid particulates and micro-organisms, and dust filters for the removal of dry particulate and micro-organisms from industrial compressed air systems. Filters are selected and sized based on what contaminant is to be removed, output cleanliness level, pressure capacity, flow capacity, pressure drop, and mounting method. Filters require regular preventative maintenance.

Dryers: Compressed air supplies for pneumatic systems normally have moisture removed to prevent fouling and corrosion of the system components. For this purpose, compressed air dryers are employed. Dryer type and size is selected according to required air quality, pressure, dew point, and delivery volume. There are several types of commercial dryers available: refrigerated, desiccant, membrane, and deliquescent.

A refrigerated dryer uses a compressor, heat exchanger, and refrigerant to pull liquid out of the gas. Normally a coalescing prefilter is installed immediately upstream of a refrigerated dryer to remove lubricating oil and other contaminants that have the potential to foul the dryer's heat exchangers.

A desiccant dryer passes compressed air through a pressure vessel filled with a media such as activated alumina, silica gel, molecular sieve or other desiccant material which pulls water out of the gas. Normally the desiccant can be regenerated.

A membrane dryer requires no electricity to operate. Water vapor permeates a membrane of hollow fibers and is swept out with redirected dry air to exhaust, while the bulk of the dry air is passed back into the pressurized system.

Normally a coalescing prefilter is installed immediately upstream of a membrane dryer to remove lubricating oil and other contaminants that have potential to foul the dryer's membrane.

A deliquescent dryer typically consists of a pressure vessel filled with a hygroscopic media that absorbs water vapor. The media gradually dissolves, or deliquesces. The vessel must be regularly drained and new media must be added.

Lubricators: In some cases a small amount of oil or other lubricant is added to the compressed air supply to lubricate components like actuators. Manufacturers will specify whether their components are "oil-free" or not.

Lubricators are often combined with filters and regulators to form filter-regulator-lubricator (FRL) units. Lubricators usually introduce a fine mist of lubricant into the air stream with particles in the micron range.

Receivers: Most compressed gas systems have gas introduced in a pulsating supply. Receivers are essentially pressure vessels that act as reservoirs for the compressed gas. These reservoirs act to stabilize the system pressure by absorbing pressure pulsations. They also stabilize the system at times of fluctuating demand by supplying excess gas when demand peaks, and storing it when demand drops. Receivers are most effective when placed close to the pressure source in the system. A pressure regulator is placed after the receiver to provide constant pressure to the downstream components. Secondary receivers are often placed near high demand to further stabilize the system pressure. Receivers may have valves at the bottom where collected condensate may be drained.

Silencers and Exhaust Cleaners: When air is the gas employed, it is usually exhausted to atmosphere after it is used to perform work. When compressed air is released, significant noise can be produced. Silencers or mufflers are used to minimize this effect. The most common silencers are sintered metal, and they are very effective. Silencers are chosen based on port size, pressure, flow requirement, construction, material, and noise

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

reduction level. Exhaust cleaners may be required in some cases where contaminants are present. The proper cleaning system will depend on the contaminant type and level, flow rate, pressure, and construction.

Nozzles.—These devices include a restriction through which a gas passes from a region of higher pressure to a region of lower pressure, typically atmospheric. Nozzles are used to accelerate and direct a gas to perform some function. Analysis of nozzles is greatly simplified if one assumes that there is zero heat transfer during discharge, or the discharge is adiabatic. Real nozzles are not adiabatic, but this assumption is generally safe to make. Flow rate of gas through a nozzle is calculated using the following equation:

$$\dot{m} = \rho v_n A_n$$

where A_n is the cross sectional area of the nozzle, v_n is velocity through the nozzle, and $\dot{m}$ is the mass flow rate. In the following equations, v_n and p_n are nozzle outlet velocity and exit pressure (p_n = atmospheric normally), v_t and p_t are source (tank) velocity and pressure, γ is specific weight, and k is the adiabatic exponent given in Table 39. Pressures are absolute.

Table 39. Adiabatic Gas Exponent and Critical Pressure Ratio

Gas	k	Critical Pressure Ratio	Gas	k	Critical Pressure Ratio
Air	1.4	0.528	Nitrogen	1.41	0.527
Ammonia	1.32	0.542	Oxygen	1.4	0.528
Carbon Dioxide	1.3	0.546	Propane	1.15	0.574

Flow rate through a converging nozzle reaches a maximum at a critical pressure ratio. At this ratio, the nozzle velocity is equal to the speed of sound for that gas at those conditions. For subsonic flow, an increase in nozzle cross sectional area causes flow velocity to decrease. For supersonic flow, an increase in nozzle area causes flow velocity to increase. To calculate the critical pressure ratio use the following equation:

$$\left(\frac{p'_n}{p_t}\right)_c = \left(\frac{2}{k+1}\right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}}$$

If a converging nozzle's pressure ratio (p_n/p_t) is greater than the critical pressure ratio, use the following equation to calculate flow.

$$W = A_n \sqrt{\frac{p_t \gamma_t 2gk}{k+1}\left(\frac{2}{k+1}\right)^{\frac{2}{k-1}}}$$

where W is the weight flow rate.

If a converging nozzle is not operating above the critical pressure ratio, then velocity is equal to sonic velocity and the following equations are used:

Pressure at the nozzle throat is equal to the critical pressure:

$$p_n = p'_n = p_t\left(\frac{2}{k+1}\right)^{\frac{k}{k+1}}$$

$$\dot{m} = A_n \sqrt{k p_i \rho_i}\left(\frac{2}{k+1}\right)^{\frac{k+1}{2(k-1)}}$$

where subscript i indicates inlet conditions, $\dot{m}$ is the mass flow in kg/s, A is nozzle area in m^2, and p is pressure in Pa.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Flow rate faster than the speed of sound is possible with a converging-diverging nozzle. Analysis of this type of nozzle is beyond the scope of this text.

Velocity of Escaping Compressed Air: For a large container with a small orifice or hole from which the air escapes, the velocity of escape (theoretical) may be calculated from the formula:

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2g \cdot \frac{k}{k-1} \cdot 53.3(459.7 + F)\left[1 - \left(\frac{p_2}{p_1}\right)^{\frac{k-1}{k}}\right]}$$

In this formula, v_2 = velocity of escaping air in feet per second; g = acceleration due to gravity, 32.16 feet per second squared; k = 1.41 for adiabatic expansion or compression of air; F = temperature, degrees F; p_2 = atmospheric pressure = 14.7 pounds per square inch; and p_1 = pressure of air in container, pounds per square inch. In applying the preceding formula, when the ratio p_2/p_1 approximately equals 0.53, under normal temperature conditions at sea level, the escape velocity v_2 will be equal to the velocity of sound. Increasing the pressure p_1 will not increase the velocity of escaping air beyond this limiting velocity unless a special converging diverging nozzle design is used rather than an orifice.

The accompanying Table 40 provides velocity of escaping air for various values of p_1. These values were calculated from the preceding formula simplified by substituting the appropriate constants:

$$v_2 = 108.58\sqrt{(459.7 + F)\left[1 - \left(\frac{14.7}{p_1}\right)^{0.29}\right]}$$

Table 40. Velocity of Escaping Air at 70-Degrees F

Pressure Above Atmospheric Pressure			Theoretical Velocity, Feet per Second	Pressure Above Atmospheric Pressure			Theoretical Velocity, Feet per Second
Atmospheres	Inches Mercury	lbs per sq. in.		Atmospheres	Inches Mercury	lbs per sq. in.	
0.010	0.30	0.147	134	0.408	12.24	6.00	769
0.068	2.04	1.00	344	0.500	15.00	7.35	833
0.100	3.00	1.47	413	0.544	16.33	8.00	861
0.136	4.08	2.00	477	0.612	18.37	9.00	900
0.204	6.12	3.00	573	0.680	20.41	10.0	935
0.272	8.16	4.00	650	0.816	24.49	12.0	997
0.340	10.20	5.00	714	0.884	26.53	13.0	1025

The theoretical velocities in Table 40 must be reduced by multiplying by a "coefficient of discharge," which varies with the orifice and the pressure. The coefficients in Table 41 are used for orifices in thin plates and short tubes.

Table 41. Coefficients of Discharge

	Pressures in Atmospheres Above Atmospheric Pressure			
Type of Orifice	0.01	0.1	0.5	1
Orifice in thin plate	0.65	0.64	0.57	0.54
Orifice in short tube	0.83	0.82	0.71	0.67

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Vacuum

Vacuum is any pressure lower than atmospheric. It can be measured in psi or Pa as a negative gauge pressure, or as a positive absolute pressure.Other common units for vacuum are inches of mercury (inHg), millimeters of mercury (mmHg), millibar, and torr. A perfect vacuum has zero absolute pressure, or −14.7 psi (−29.92 inHg). Flow in low to medium vacuum (down to 10^{-4} torr) is characterized as viscous flow, while in high (below 10^{-4} torr) and ultra-high vacuum (below 10^{-8} torr) it is characterized as molecular flow.

Tubing and Fittings for Vacuum Applications.—Tubing and fittings used for vacuum applications must be rated for vacuum use to prevent collapse. When working with vacuum, the resistance to flow created by tubing and fittings is discussed in terms of conductance. Conductance can be calculated as follows:

$$C = \frac{Q}{\Delta p}$$

where C is conductance in l/sec, p is pressure in torr, and Q is flow rate in torr–l/sec. For dry air at 20°C in the molecular flow region of vacuum, estimate conductance of long tubes as follows:

$$C = 75\frac{D^3}{L}$$

where L is tube length in inches, D is tube inner diameter in inches, and C is in l/sec.

Effective pumping speed at the end of a tube with conductance C can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\frac{1}{S_{eff}} = \frac{1}{C} + \frac{1}{S}$$

where S is the pumping speed of the pump by itself, and C is conductance of the tube.

The conductance of tubes in series and parallel can be combined according to the following equations.

Conductance changes with pressure, so effective pumping speed is best calculated piecemeal at incremental pressures.

$C_p = C_1 + C_2$ where C_p is the conductance of tubes 1 and 2 in parallel.

$\frac{1}{C_s} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}$ where C_s is the conductance of tubes 1 and 2 in series.

Vacuum Pumps and Generators.—Vacuum pumps are essentially compressors in reverse. Where deep or continuous vacuum is required on a large evacuation volume, it is common to use a fast evacuation pump to remove the gas, and then a deep vacuum pump is used to reach the desired vacuum level. Vacuum deeper than −14.7psi (−29.92 inHg) is not possible.

Vacuum generators usually use a venturi to generate vacuum when compressed air is supplied. Single and multi- stage units are widely available to generate vacuum as deep as −25 inHg (−85 kPa). Suction flow for vacuum generators is moderate, with values of 7 SCFM (200 l/min) commercially available. Vacuum generators consume compressed air, so these tend to be more costly to run than vacuum pumps. Vacuum generators are sometimes combined into devices called "vacuum ejectors" which provide a puff of positive air pressure when the vacuum is halted. This provides a positive release function when picking and placing components using vacuum.

Types of Vacuum Pumps: Vacuum pumps can employ pistons, vanes, and lobes like compressors or pumps. There are also turbomolecular pumps, diffuser pumps, chemical reaction pumps, gettering pumps, ion pumps, and cryogenic pumps. Vacuum pumps tend to fall into two main categories: transfer pumps and capture pumps.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Coarse vacuum pumps used for rapid evacuation are commonly rotary vane-type positive displacement pumps. These pumps are usually flooded with oil, which lubricates, cools, and seals the pump. The oil is discharged with the gas. To achieve deep vacuum, vane pumps in series are sometimes used, as are screw pumps. Where the presence of oil is objectionable, multi-stage oil-free pumps are employed, but are not as efficient as oil sealed pumps.

Turbomolecular pumps in general use rotors to accelerate gas molecules, similar to centrifugal pumps. Drag pumps are an example of this type of vacuum pump.

Diffuser, or jet pumps are the most commonly used type of vacuum pump for high vacuum applications. In these pumps, a high velocity jet of fluid is used to transfer momentum to gas in a channel. This type of pump can sustain a vacuum level up to 1 torr, but must be used in combination with an evacuation pump. Multi-stage diffuser pumps are available.

Cryogenic pumps cool gases until they condense into a liquid or solid. In practice, a cooled pump is used, rather than cooling an entire reservoir or chamber. Helium is often used as the refrigerant, and cooling to temperatures of 10 Kelvin are possible.

Gettering pumps use specially treated surfaces, called "gettering" surfaces. In vacuum, these surfaces are capable of holding greater amounts of gas than would occupy a section of free space of the same cross sectional area. Ion pumps use electron bombardment to ionize inert gases that would not normally be affected by gettering surfaces.

Selection Factors: The type of pump or generator required by an application depends on whether the system must provide rapid evacuation, long term maintenance of vacuum, high suction flow rate, and/or deep vacuum. Diffuser pumps cannot be exposed to gas at atmospheric pressure once they are at operating temperature. To prevent the risk of damage, a system of valves must be engineered to prevent this condition. Filters should always be used with vacuum generators to protect them from contamination.

Sizing Vacuum Pumps and Generators: Vacuum pump performance is rated in terms of throughput, pumping speed, and vacuum pressure capability. They are rated for either intermittent or continuous duty. Throughput is the product of volumetric flow rate and pressure. Pumping speed has units of volume/time and is the mean volume flow through the cross section of the inlet port of a vacuum pump.

Determination of the pumping speed is described in ISO 21360-1. Vacuum pump performance curves are plots of pumping speed as a function of inlet pressure. The lowest pressure that can be achieved by a vacuum pump can be calculated using the following equation:

$$p_{\min} = p_0 e^{\left(\frac{-S_{eff}t}{V}\right)} + \frac{Q_o}{S_{eff}} + \frac{Q_D}{S_{eff}} + \frac{Q_K}{S_{eff}}$$

where $p_{\min}$ is the deepest vacuum achievable, p_o is the initial pressure, t is time, S_{eff} is the effective pumping speed, and V is the evacuation volume. Q_o, Q_D, and Q_K are outgassing, diffusion, and permeation flow rates.

The time required to reach a certain pressure depends on the pumping speed, the volume being evacuated, and the initial pressure. It can be calculated using the following equation. Effective pumping speed changes as the pressure decreases, so the following equations are best applied piecemeal using pumping speed values at increments as the pressure varies.

$$t = \frac{V}{S_{eff}} \ln\left(\frac{p_0}{p_1}\right)$$

where t is pumpdown time, V is volume, S_{eff} is effective pumping speed, p_0 is initial pressure (absolute), and p_1 is final pressure.

Minimum achievable pressure is affected by ambient air pressure according to the following relationship:

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

$$p'_{\min} = p_{atm}\frac{p_r}{29.92}$$

where $p'_{\min}$ is the adjusted achievable vacuum (psi), p_{atm} is atmospheric pressure (psi), and p_r is the rated achievable vacuum (inHg). Most vacuum pumps are rated at sea level atmospheric pressure.

Vacuum generators are sized according to the level of vacuum required and the required suction flow rate.

Vacuum level generated is often expressed as a percentage of input pressure. Input tube diameter and air pressure must be known. A variety of options are available, including ejection, vacuum monitoring, and valving. Multi-stage generators are used to create deeper vacuum than single stage units. Some vacuum generators are optimized for high flow, while others for deep vacuum. Deep vacuum is desirable when picking up a heavy object with a leak-free seal. High suction flow is desirable when picking up objects where a leak-free seal is not possible.

Vacuum Accessories: Many accessories are used with vacuum pumps and generators to filter, regulate, control, exploit, measure, and stabilize vacuum. It is important to note that vacuum rated greases must be used when grease is exposed to vacuum.

Filters: Filters are critical when using vacuum, because contaminants can be sucked into the vacuum lines and damage the pump, generator, valve, or other components. Selection is based on body type, tube diameter, and maximum particle size that can pass through the filter. Fine filters are typically used with vacuum systems. They must be regularly replaced or cleaned to prevent clogging.

Regulators: Like pressure regulators, these devices are essential for limiting and stabilizing vacuum pressure in a circuit. They may be manually or automatically controlled. These devices are outfitted with a gauge or digital readout. Vacuum regulators are sized with respect to range and accuracy of measurement, maximum flow rate, and port size.

Valves: Many pressure valves can be used to control vacuum. However, if the valve uses air pressure to cause switching, an external pilot line with positive pressure must be provided.

Grippers: There are a wide variety of grippers available for the purpose of picking up objects with vacuum. Their primary purpose is to provide a leak-free seal to maximize the effect of the vacuum system. Compliant grippers include suction cups, bellows, and vacuum pads of all shapes and sizes. Miniature valves are often used in applications with multiple grippers to restrict flow if no part is present.

Measurement: Vacuum gauges and switches are used to measure the level of vacuum. They may be analog or digital, and measure in absolute or gauge pressure.

Level Compensators: These compliant devices are used when multiple grippers are employed in picking up a part. They provide some degree of shock and vibration dampening. Level compensators are available in a wide variety of sizes and stroke lengths.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

2827 Greek Alphabet
2827 Abbreviations
2827 Scientific and Engineering
2829 Mathematical Signs and Commonly Used Abbreviations
2830 Letter Symbols for Mechanics

MEASURING UNITS

2831 Metric Systems of Measurement
2831 International System of Units (SI)
2832 SI Base Units
2832 Definitions of Base Units
2832 SI Derived Units
2833 Special Names and Symbols
2833 Derived Units with Special Names
2834 Units Outside SI
2834 SI Prefixes
2834 US Customary Unit System
2835 Fundamental Constants

US SYSTEM AND METRIC SYSTEM CONVERSIONS

2836 Units of Length
2836 Linear Conversion Factors
2837 Angular Conversion Factors
2837 Feet and Inches to Inches
2837 Inches to Feet and Yards
2838 Fractional Inches to Decimal Feet
2839 Feet to Inches
2839 Fractional and Decimal Inches ↔ Millimeters
2840 Feet to Millimeters
2841 Inches and Fractional Inches ↔ Millimeters
2843 Decimal Inches to Millimeters
2845 Millimeters to Inches
2847 Microinches ↔ Micrometers
2849 Feet ↔ Meters
2849 Miles ↔ Kilometers
2850 Units of Area
2850 Conversion Factors
2851 Square Inches ↔ Square Centimeters
2851 Square Feet ↔ Square Meters
2852 Square Yards ↔ Square Meters
2852 Acres ↔ Hectares
2853 Units of Volume
2853 Conversion Factors
2854 Cubic Inches ↔ Cubic Centimeters
2855 Cubic Feet ↔ Cubic Meters
2855 Cubic Feet ↔ Liters

US SYSTEM AND METRIC SYSTEM CONVERSIONS

(Continued)

2856 UK (Imperial) Gallons ↔ Liters
2856 US Gallons ↔ Liters
2857 US Fluid Ounces ↔ Milliliters
2857 Units of Volumetric Flow Rate
2857 Pitot Tube
2858 Units of Mass and Weight
2858 Conversion Factors
2858 Pounds ↔ Kilograms
2859 Ounces ↔ Grams
2859 Density Conversion Factors
2860 Pound/Cu Inch ↔ Gram/Cu Cm
2860 Pound/Cu Inch ↔ Kg/Cu Meter
2861 Units of Pressure and Stress
2861 Conversion Factors
2861 Pound/Sq Inch ↔ Kg/Sq Cm
2862 Pound/Sq Foot ↔ Km/Sq Meter
2862 Pound/Sq Inch ↔ Kilopascal
2863 Conversion Factors Table
2863 Units of Force
2863 Conversion Factors
2864 Pound ↔ Newton
2864 Units of Moment and Torque
2864 Conversion Factors
2864 Pound-Inch ↔ Newton-Meter
2865 Poundal
2865 Units of Energy, Power, and Heat
2865 Conversion Factor Tables
2866 Btu ↔ Foot-Pounds
2866 Btu ↔ Kilojoule
2867 Horsepower ↔ Kilowatt
2867 Foot-Pounds ↔ Joules
2868 Power Conversion
2868 Energy and Work Conversion
2869 Thermal Conductance Conversion
2869 Conduction
2869 Fuel Oil, Coal, and Gas
2870 Units of Temperature
2870 Conversion Formulas
2870 Absolute Zero
2870 Thermal Energy Units
2871 Temperature Conversion Table
2873 Units of Velocity and Acceleration
2873 Velocity Conversion Factors
2873 Acceleration Conversion Factors
2873 Units of Viscosity
2874 Units of Inertia and Momentum
2874 Miscellaneous Measuring Units
2874 Ohm's Law
2875 Windchill Temperature
2875 Phonetic Alphabet
2875 Daylight Savings Time
2875 Bel

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Greek Letters and Standard Abbreviations

The Greek letters are frequently used in mathematical expressions and formulas. The Greek alphabet is given below.

A	α	Alpha	H	η	Eta	N	ν	Nu	T	τ	Tau
B	β	Beta	Θ	θ ϑ	Theta	Ξ	ξ	Xi	Υ	υ	Upsilon
Γ	γ	Gamma	I	ι	Iota	O	ο	Omicron	Φ	ϕ	Phi
Δ	δ	Delta	K	κ	Kappa	Π	π	Pi	X	χ	Chi
E	ε	Epsilon	Λ	λ	Lambda	R	ρ	Rho	Ψ	ψ	Psi
Z	ζ	Zeta	M	μ	Mu	Σ	σ ς	Sigma	Ω	ω	Omega

Abbreviations for Scientific and Engineering Terms

ANSI/ASME Y14.38-2007 (R2013)

Absolute	abs	Decibel	dB
Alternating current	ac	Degree	deg or °
Ampere	amp	Degree Centigrade	°C
Ampere-hour	amp hr	Degree Fahrenheit	°F
Angstrom unit	Å	Degree Kelvin	K
Antilogarithm	antilog	Diameter	dia
Arithmetical average	aa	Direct current	dc
Atmosphere	atm	Dozen	doz
Atomic weight	at wt	Dram	dr
Avoirdupois	avdp	Efficiency	eff
Barometer	baro	Electric	elec
Board-foot (foot board measure)	fbm	Electromotive force	emf
Boiler pressure	bopress	Elevation	el
Boiling point	bp	Engine	eng
Brinell Hardness Number	BHN or HB	Engineer	engr
British thermal unit	Btu or B	Engineering	engrg
Bushel	bu	Equation	eq
Calorie	cal	External	ext
Candle	cd	Fluid	fl
Center to center	c to c	Foot	ft
Centimeter	cm	Foot-candle	fc
Centimeter-gram-second (system)	cgs	Foot-lambert	fL or fl
Chemical	chem	Foot per minute	fpm
Chemically pure	cp	Foot per second	fps
Circular	circ	Foot-pound	ft-lb
Circular mil	cmil	Foot-pound-second (system)	fps
Coefficient	coef	Free on board	fob
Cologarithm	colog	Freezing point	fp
Concentrate	conc	Frequency	freq
Conductivity	cndct	Fusion point	fnpt
Constant	const	Gallon	gal
Cord	cd	Gallon per minute	gpm
Cosecant	csc	Gallon per second	gps
Cosine	cos	Grain	gr
Cost, insurance, and freight	cif	Gram	g
Cotangent	ctn	Greatest common divisor	gcd
Counter electromotive force	cemf	High pressure	hp
Cubic	cu	Horsepower	hp
Cubic centimeter	cm^3 or cc	Horsepower-hour	hp-hr
Cubic foot	ft^3 or cu ft	Hour	h or hr
Cubic feet per second	ft^3 or cfs	Hyperbolic cosine	cosh
Cubic inch	in^3 or cu in	Hyperbolic sine	sinh
Cubic meter	m^3 or cu m	Hyperbolic tangent	tanh
Cubic millimeter	mm^3 or cumm	Inch	in
Cubic yard	yd^3 or cu yd	Inch per second	in/s or ips
Current density	cd	Inch-pound	in-lb
Cylinder	cyl		

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Abbreviations for Scientific and Engineering Terms
ANSI/ASME Y14.38-2007 (R2013) (Continued)

Indicated horsepower-hour	iph	Pound-force foot	$lb_f \cdot ft$ or lb-ft
Intermediate pressure	ip	Pound-force inch	$lb_f \cdot in$ or lb-in
Internal	intl	Pound-force per square foot	lb_f/ft^2 or psf
Kilovolt-ampere hour	KVA-h or kVah	Pound-force per square inch	lb_f/in^2 or psi
Kilowatt-hour meter	kwhm	Pound per horsepower	lb/hp or php
Latitude	lat	Power factor	pf
Least common multiple	lcm	Quart	qt
Liquid	liq	Reactive volt-ampere meter	rva
Logarithm (common)	log	Revolution per minute	r/min or rpm
Logarithm (natural)	ln	Revolution per second	r/s or rps
Low pressure	lp	Root mean square	rms
Lumen per watt	lm/W or lpw	Round	rnd
Magnetomotive force	mmf	Secant	sec
Mathematics (ical)	math	Second	s or sec
Maximum	max	Sine	sin
Mean effective pressure	mep	Specific gravity	sp gr
Melting point	mp	Specific heat	sp ht
Meter	m	Square	sq
Meter-kilogram-second (system)	mks	Square centimeter	cm^2 or sq cm
Microfarad	μF	Square foot	ft^2 or sq ft
Mile	mi	Square inch	in^2 or sq in
Mile per hour	mi/h or mph	Square kilometer	km^2 or sq km
Milliampere	mA	Square root of mean square	rms
Minimum	min	Standard	std
Molecular weight	mol wt	Tangent	tan
Molecule	mo	Temperature	temp
National Electrical Code	NEC	Tensile strength	ts
Ounce	oz	Versed sine	vers
Ounce-inch	oz-in	Volt	V
Pennyweight	dwt	Watt	W
Pint	pt	Watt-hour	Wh
Potential	pot	Week	wk
Potential difference	pd	Weight	wt
Pound	lb	Yard	yd

Alternative abbreviations conforming to the practice of the International Electrotechnical Commission.

Ampere	A	Kilovolt-ampere	kVA	Microfarad	μF		
Ampere-hour	Ah	Kilowatt	kW	Microwatt	μW	Volt	V
Coulomb	C			Milliampere	mA	Volt-ampere	VA
Farad	F	Kilowatt-hour	kWh	Millifarad	mF	Volt-coulomb	VC
Henry	H	Megawatt	MW	Millihenry	mH	Watt	W
Joule	J	Megaohm	MΩ	Millivolt	mV	Watthour	Wh
Kilovolt	kV	Microampere	μA	Ohm	Ω		

Only the most commonly used terms have been included. These forms are recommended for those whose familiarity with the terms used makes possible a maximum of abbreviations. For others, less contracted combinations made up from this list may be used. For example, the list gives the abbreviation of the term "feet per second" as "fps." To some, however, ft per sec will be more easily understood.

Abbreviations should be used sparingly and only where their meaning will be clear. If there is any doubt, then spell out the term or unit of measurement.

The following points are good practice when preparing engineering documentation. Terms denoting units of measurement should be abbreviated in text only when preceded by the amounts indicated in numerals: "several inches," "one inch," "12 in." A sentence should not begin with a numeral followed by an abbreviation. The use of conventional signs for abbreviations in text should be avoided: use "lb," not "#" or "in," not ″.

Symbols for the chemical elements are listed in the table on page 368.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Mathematical Signs and Commonly Used Abbreviations

+	Plus (sign of addition)	π	Pi (3.1416)
+	Positive	Σ	Sigma (sign of summation)
−	Minus (sign of subtraction)	ω	Omega
−	Negative	g	Acceleration due to gravity (32.16 ft/s² or 9.81 m/s²)
± (∓)	Plus or minus (minus or plus)	i (or j)	Imaginary quantity $(\sqrt{-1})$
×	Multiplied by (multiplication sign)	sin	Sine
·	Multiplied by (multiplication sign)	cos	Cosine
÷	Divided by (division sign)	tan	Tangent
/	Divided by (division sign)	cot	Cotangent
:	Is to (in proportion)	sec	Secant
=	Equals	csc	Cosecant
≠	Is not equal to	vers	Versed sine
≡	Is identical to	covers	Coversed sine
≅ or ≈	Approximately equals	$\sin^{-1} a$ arcsin a or asin a	Angle the sine of which is a
>	Greater than	$(\sin a)^{-1}$	Reciprocal of sin a $(1 \div \sin a)$
<	Less than	$\sin^n x$	nth power of sin x
≥	Greater than or equal to	sinh x	Hyperbolic sine of x
≤	Less than or equal to	cosh x	Hyperbolic cosine of x
→	Approaches as a limit; implies	Δ	Delta (increment of)
∝	Varies directly as	δ	Delta (variation of)
∴	Therefore	d	Differential (in calculus)
::	Equals (in proportion)	∂	Partial differentiation (in calculus)
$\sqrt{a}$	Square root of a	∫	Integral (in calculus)
$\sqrt[3]{a}$	Cube root of a	$\int_b^a$	Integral between the limits a and b
$\sqrt[4]{a}$	4th root of a	$n!$	Factorial, $n(n-1)...(2)(1)$; 0! = 1; 1! = 1 *Ex:* $5! = 5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 120$
$\sqrt[n]{a}$	nth root of a (also $a^{1/n}$)	∠	Angle
a^2	a squared (2nd power of a)	∟	Right angle
a^3	a cubed (3rd power of a)	⊥	Perpendicular to
a^4	4th power of a	Δ	Triangle
a^n	nth power of a	○	Circle
a^{-n}	$1 \div a^n$	▱	Parallelogram
$\frac{1}{n}$	Reciprocal value of n	°	Degree (circular arc or temperature)
log	Logarithm	′	Minutes or feet
$\log_e$	Natural or Napierian logarithm	″	Seconds or inches
ln	Natural or Napierian logarithm	a'	a prime
e	Base of natural logarithms (2.71828)	a''	a double prime
lim	Limit value (of an expression)	a_1	a sub one
∞	Infinity	a_2	a sub two
α	Alpha	a_n	a sub n
β	Beta	( )	Parentheses
γ	Gamma	[ ]	Brackets
θ	Theta	{ }	Braces
ϕ	Phi	$\lvert K \rvert$	Absolute value of K, size of K irrespective of sign
μ	Mu (coefficient of friction)		

commonly used to denote angles

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Letter Symbols for Mechanics and Time-Related Phenomena
ANSI/ASME Y10.3M-1984

Acceleration, angular	α (alpha)	Height	*h*
Acceleration, due to gravity	*g*	Inertia, moment of	*I* or *J*
Acceleration, linear	*a*	Inertia, polar (area) moment of[a]	*J*
Amplitude[a]	*A*	Inertia, product (area) moment of[a]	I_{xy}
Angle	α (alpha) β (beta) γ (gamma) θ (theta) ϕ (phi) ψ (psi)	Length	*L* or *l*
		Load per unit distance[a]	*q* or *w*
		Load, total[a]	*P* or W
		Mass	*m*
		Moment of force, including bending moment	*M*
		Neutral axis, distance to extreme fiber from[a]	*c*
Angle, solid	Ω (omega)	Period	*T*
Angular frequency	ω (omega)	Poisson's ratio	μ (mu) or ν (nu)
Angular momentum	*L*	Power	*P*
Angular velocity	ω (omega)	Pressure, normal force per unit area	*p*
Arc length	*s*	Radius	*r*
Area	*A*	Revolutions per unit of time	*n*
Axes, through any point[a]	*X-X*, *Y-Y*, or *Z-Z*	Second moment of area (second axial moment of area)	I_a
Bulk modulus	*K*	Second polar moment of area	I_P or *J*
Breadth (width)	*b*	Section modulus	*Z*
Coefficient of expansion, linear[a]	α (alpha)	Shear force in beam section[a]	*V*
Coefficient of friction	μ (mu)	Spring constant (load per unit deflection)[a]	*k*
Concentrated load (same as force)	*F*	Statical moment of any area about a given axis[a]	*Q*
Deflection of beam, max[a]	δ (delta)	Strain, normal	ε (epsilon)
Density	ρ (rho)	Strain, shear	γ (gamma)
Depth	*d*, δ (delta), or *t*	Stress, concentration factor[a]	*K*
Diameter	*D* or *d*	Stress, normal	σ (sigma)
Displacement[a]	*u*, *v*, *w*	Stress, shear	τ (tau)
Distance, linear[a]	*s*	Temperature, absolute[b]	*T*, or θ (theta)
Eccentricity of application of load[a]	*e*	Temperature[b]	*t*, or θ (theta)
Efficiency[a]	η (eta)	Thickness	*d*, δ (delta), or *t*
Elasticity, modulus of	*E*	Time	*t*
Elasticity, modulus of, in shear	*G*	Torque	*T*
Elongation, total[a]	δ (delta)	Velocity, linear	*v*
Energy, kinetic	E_k, *K*, *T*	Volume	*V*
Energy, potential	E_P, *V*, or Φ (phi)	Wavelength	λ (lambda)
Factor of safety[a]	*N* or *n*	Weight	*W*
Force or load, concentrated	*F*	Weight per unit volume	γ (gamma)
Frequency	*f*	Work	*W*
Gyration, radius of[a]	*k*		

[a] Not specified in Standard

[b] Specified in ANSI Y10.4-1982 (R1988)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

MEASURING UNITS

Metric Systems of Measurement

A metric system of measurement was first established in France in the years following the French Revolution, and various systems of metric units have been developed since that time. All metric unit systems are based, at least in part, on the International Metric Standards, which are the meter and kilogram, or decimal multiples or submultiples of these standards.

In 1795, a metric system called the centimeter-gram-second (cgs) system was proposed, and it was adopted in France in 1799. In 1873, the British Association for the Advancement of Science recommended the use of the cgs system, and since then it has been widely used in all branches of science throughout the world. From the base units in the cgs system are derived the following:

Unit of velocity = 1 centimeter per second

Acceleration due to gravity (at Paris) = 981 centimeters per second per second

Unit of force = 1 dyne = $^1/_{981}$ gram

Unit of work = 1 erg = 1 dyne-centimeter

Unit of power = 1 watt = 10,000,000 ergs per second

Another metric system, called the MKS (meter-kilogram-second) system of units, was proposed by Professor G. Giorgi in 1902. In 1935, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) accepted his recommendation that this system of units of mechanics be linked with the electromagnetic units by the adoption of a fourth base unit. In 1950, the IEC adopted the ampere, the unit of electric current, as the fourth unit, and the MKSA system thus came into being.

A gravitational system of metric units, known as the technical system, is based on the meter, the kilogram as a force, and the second. It has been widely used in engineering. Because the standard of force is defined as the weight of the mass of the standard kilogram, the fundamental unit of force varies due to the difference in gravitational pull at different locations around the earth. By international agreement, a standard value for acceleration due to gravity was chosen (9.81 meters per second squared) that for all practical measurements is approximately the same as the local value at the point of measurement.

International System of Units (SI).—The Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures (CGPM) is the body responsible for all international matters concerning the metric system, which was originally based on the four MKSA units for: length (*meter*), time (*second*), mass (*kilogram*), and electric current (*ampere*). In 1954, a unit for temperature (*kelvin*) and another for luminous intensity (*candela*) were added.

Over the years, these standards have been refined and redefined. In 1960, the CGPM formally renamed the metric system the *Système International d'Unites* (abbreviated SI in all languages). In 1971, the 14th CGPM adopted a seventh base unit, the *mole*, for the amount of substance in a physical sample. In 2011, CGPM stated its intention of defining all seven base units with "the explicit-constant formulation," where all units would be defined indirectly through their relation to a fundamental physical constant, as had been done for the speed of light. For several more years, only three of the seven *base units*—the meter, candela, and second—were as yet defined in terms of fundamental physical constants. But in May 2019, the other four base units—the mole, ampere, kelvin, and kilogram—were redefined, no longer based on physical objects, but on universal physical constants.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. SI Base Units

Quantity	Name	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Electric Current	ampere	A
Luminous Intensity	candela	cd
Thermodynamic Temperature	kelvin	K
Amount of Substance	mole	mol

Definitions of Base Units

Meter (m): The base unit of length, equal to the path length traveled by light in a vacuum during a time interval of 3.3356410×10^{-9} s (derived from the precise measurement of light's speed, $c = 299{,}792{,}458$ m/s). This value was adopted in 1983, based on the newly defined value for the speed of light, made possible by the technology developed at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).

Kilogram (kg): The base unit of mass, related to the most precise measurement to date of the Planck constant h, which is the energy carried by a photon to its frequency, and measured as $6.6260702 \times 10^{-34}$ kg m^2/s^2. It is with respect to this invariant of nature that the precise standard for the kilogram is given.

Second (s): The duration of 9.1926318×10^9 periods of the radiation, corresponding to the transition between the two hyperfine levels of the ground state of the cesium-133 atom, is the element used for the atomic clock due to its stability.

Ampere (A): The base unit of electric current, measured as current flow per unit of time. One ampere (*amp*) is equal to one coulomb per second. One elementary electric charge (e) is equal to 1.60218×10^{-19} coulomb (that is, $1\ \text{C} = 6.241 \times 10^{18}$ e).

Candela (cd): The base unit for photometry, which is the science of measuring light perceived by the human eye. The candela (cd) is the luminous intensity, in a given direction, of a source that emits monochromatic radiation of frequency 540×10^{12} hertz. The human eye is most sensitive to this frequency (greenish-yellow light). One cd has a radiant intensity of 1/683 watt per steradian.

Kelvin (K): The base unit of thermodynamic temperature, defined by taking the fixed numerical value of the Boltzmann constant k to be 1.380649×10^{-23} J·K^{-1}.

Mole (mol): The base unit for the amount of a chemical substance consisting of exactly $6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ constitutive particles. This number is the Avogadro constant $N_A = 6.02214076 \times 10^{23}$ mol^{-1}. (Previously, 1 mole was linked to the number of atoms in 12.1 g of the carbon-12 isotope.)

From the base units, come the SI derived units, as shown in Table 2.

Table 2. SI Derived Units

Quantity	Name	Symbol
Area	square meter	m^2
Volume	cubic meter	m^3
Speed, Velocity	meter per second	m/s
Acceleration	meter per second squared	m/s^2
Wave Number	reciprocal meter	m^{-1}
Mass Density	kilogram per cubic meter	kg/m^3
Specific Volume	cubic meter per kilogram	m^3/kg
Current Density	ampere per square meter	A/m^3
Magnetic Field Strength	ampere per meter	A/m
Amount-of-Substance Concentration	mole per cubic meter	mol/m^3
Luminance	candle per square meter	cd/m^2
Mass Fraction	kilogram per kilogram	kg/kg

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 3. SI Derived Units with Special Names and Symbols

Quantity	Name and Derived Units	Symbol
Plane Angle	radian, m/m	rad
Solid Angle	steradian, m^2/m^2	sr
Frequency	hertz, s^{-1}	Hz
Force	newton, $kg{\cdot}m{\cdot}s^{-2}$	N
Pressure, Stress	pascal, $kg{\cdot}m^{-1}{\cdot}s^{-2}$	Pa
Energy, Work, Heat	joule, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-2}$	J
Power, Radiant Flux	watt, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-3}$	W
Quantity of Electric Charge	coulomb, A·s	C
Electric Potential Difference	volt, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-3}{\cdot}A^{-1}$	V
Capacitance	farad, $s^4{\cdot}A^2{\cdot}m^{-2}{\cdot}kg^{-1}$	F
Electric Resistance	ohm, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-3}{\cdot}A^{-2}$	Ω
Electric Conductance	siemens, $kg^{-1}{\cdot}m^{-2}{\cdot}s^3{\cdot}A^2$	S
Magnetic Flux	weber, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-2}{\cdot}A^{-1}$	Wb
Magnetic Flux Density	tesla, $kg{\cdot}s^{-2}{\cdot}A^{-1}$	T
Inductance	henry, $kg{\cdot}m^2{\cdot}s^{-2}{\cdot}A^{-2}$	H
Celsius Temperature	degree Celsius, K – 273.15	°C
Luminous Flux	lumen, cd·sr	lm
Illuminance	lux, $cd{\cdot}sr{\cdot}m^{-2}$	lx
Activity of Radionuclide	becquerel, s^{-1}	Bq
Absorbed Dose	gray, $J{\cdot}kg^{-1}$	Gy
Dose Equivalent	sievert, $m^2{\cdot}s^{-2}$	Sv
Catalytic Activity	katal, $mol{\cdot}s^{-1}$	kat

Table 4. SI Derived Units that Include SI Derived Units with Special Names

Quantity	Name	Symbol
Dynamic Viscosity	pascal-second	Pa·s
Moment of Force	newton-meter	N·m
Angular Velocity	radian per second	rad/s
Angular Acceleration	radian per second squared	rad/s^2
Heat Flux Density, Irradiance	watt per square meter	W/m^2
Heat Capacity, Entropy	joule per kelvin	J/K
Specific Heat Capacity, Specific Entropy	joule per kilogram-kelvin	J/kg·K
Specific Energy	joule per kilogram	J/kg
Energy Density	joule per cubic meter	J/m^3
Thermal Conductivity	watt per meter-kelvin	W/m·K
Electric Field Strength	volt per meter	V/m
Electric Charge Density	coulomb per cubic meter	C/m^3
Electric Flux Density	coulomb per square meter	C/m^2
Permittivity	farad per meter	F/m
Permeability	henry per meter	H/m
Molar Energy	joule per mole	J/mol
Molar Entropy, Molar Heat Capacity	joule per mole-kelvin	J/mol·K
Exposure (X-rays and γ rays)	coulomb per kilogram	C/kg
Absorbed Dose Rate	gray per second	Gy/s
Radian Intensity	watt per steradian	W/sr
Radiance	watt per square meter-steradian	$W/m^2{\cdot}sr$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Units Outside SI, Accepted for Use with SI

Name	Symbol	Value in SI Units
minute	min	1 min = 60 s
hour	h	1 h = 60 min = 3600 s
day	d	1 d = 24 h = 1440 min = 86400 s
liter	L	1 L = 1 $dm^3 = 10^{-3}$ m
metric ton	t	1 t = 10^3 kg =2205 lb
bel	B	1 B = 10 dB
degree (angle)	°	1° = π/180 rad
minute (angle)	′	1′ = (1/60)° = (π/10800) rad
second (angle)	″	1″ = (1/60)′ = (π/6480000) rad
electron volt	eV	1 eV = 1.60218 × 10^{-19} J
unified atomic mass unit	Da or u	1 u = 1.66054 × 10^{-27} kg
astronomical unit	au	1 au = 1.49598 × 10^{11} m
nautical mile	nmi	1 nmi = 1852 m
knot	kn	1 kn = 1 nmi·h^{-1} = 0.514444 m·s^{-1}
are	a	1 a = 100 m^2
hectare	ha	1 ha = 100 a = 10^4 m^2
bar	bar	1 bar = 10^2 kPa = 10^5 Pa
ångström	Å	1 Å = 0.1 nm = 10^{-10} m
curie	Ci	1 Ci = 3.7 × 10^{10} Bq
roentgen	R	1 R = 2.58 × 10^{-4} C·kg^{-1}
rad	rad	1 rad = 10^{-2} Gy
rem	rem	1 rem = 10^2 Sv

Table 6. SI Prefixes

Factor	Name	Symbol	Factor	Name	Symbol
10^1	deca	da	10^{-1}	deci	d
10^2	hecto	h	10^{-2}	centi	c
10^3	kilo	k	10^{-3}	milli	m
10^6	mega	M	10^{-6}	micro	μ
10^9	giga	G	10^{-9}	nano	n
10^{12}	tera	T	10^{-12}	pico	p
10^{15}	peta	P	10^{-15}	femto	f
10^{18}	exa	E	10^{-18}	atto	a

Standard of Length and the US Customary Unit System

Among all units of measure, the history of standard of length traces a clear path from the less scientific approach of physical object standards used in past centuries to the today's precise standards, based on physical constants on an atomic level.

The primary Imperial yard was set by the British Weights and Measures Act of 1824. But it was partially destroyed in a fire in 1834, and replaced by a new standard, made of an alloy of copper, tin, and zinc. Between 1845 and 1855, forty copies of the Imperial yard were cast. Bronze yard No. 11 went to the United States, an exact copy of the British Imperial yard, in both form and material.

By an Act of Congress, in 1866, the US legally recognized the meter as a standard of length equal to 39/39.37 = 0.9144 yard; for commercial purposes, 1 meter = 39.37 inches.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

The Treaty of the Meter was signed in 1875, and the International Bureau of Weights and Measures (BIPM) in Severs, France, created 30 prototype line standards of platinum iridium. In 1889, United States received Nos. 27 and 21 prototype meters from BIPM. No. 27 was used as a standard for the U.S. metric system from 1889 to 1960, but then a new standard was adopted, based not on an object whose dimensions could change over time but on a physical constant related the number of wavelengths krypton-86 emits during a specific energy level transition. In 1983 the meter was again redefined, described now in terms of the speed of light. In 2019, the standard was once more updated, based on an even more precise measurement of the speed of light. Prototype meter No. 27 is now kept in the NIST museum.

According to U.S. 1988 Law on Metrification, the country would phase out the imperial and US customary unit, replacing them with their metric equivalents. As of 2018, the use of the metric system in trade and commerce was mandatory in all countries except the United States, Myanmar, and Liberia.

The meter has gone through several restandardizations. In 1983, the modern base unit was set as that length equal to the path length traveled by light in a vacuum during a time interval of 3.3356410×10^{-9} second. The new meter represents the most advanced ideas of physical measurement, much like the second is based on the Cs 133 atomic clock.

Each new meter represented the most advanced ideas of standards, so it seemed that greater stability, as well as higher accuracy, would be secured by accepting the international meter as a fundamental standard of length. The director of national standard laboratory of the United States entered into agreement effective July 1, 1959, whereby the equivalent of 1 yard = 0.9144 meter and 1 avoirdupois pound = 0.45359237 kilogram, where adapted. In the United States, the SI metric system of units is predominantly used in the fields of physics, chemistry, and other sciences; however, U.S. customary units are still widely used in industry and by the general public.

Fundamental Constants

Name	Symbol	USCS units	SI units
Avogadro's number	N_A		6.022×10^{23} mol^{-1}
Boltzman constant	k	5.65×10^{-24} ft•lb$_f$/°R	1.38065×10^{-23} J/K
Faraday Constant	F		96,485 C/mol
Gravitational constant	g	32.174 lb$_m$-ft/lb$_f$-sec^2	9.80667 m/sec^2
Gravitational constant	G	5.65×10^{-24} ft•lb$_f$/°R	6.672×10^{-11} N•m^2/kg^2
Specific gas constant	R	53.3 ft•lb$_f$/lb$_m$•°R	287 J/kg•K
Universal gas constant	R	1545 ft•lb$_f$/lbmol•°R	8314 J/kmol•K
Volume (molal ideal gas)	V	359 ft^3/lbmol	22.41 m^3/kmol
Pressure, atmospheric	P	14.696 lb$_f$/in^2	101,330 Pa (N/m^2)
Temperature, standard	T	32°F	0°C
Density			
Air at 32°F (0°C)		0.0805 lb$_m$/ft^3	1.29 kg/m^3
Air at 70°F (20°C), 1 atm		0.0749 lb$_m$/ft^3	1.20 kg/m^3
Sea water		64 lb$_m$/ft^3	1025 kg/m^3
Fresh water		62.4 lb$_m$/ft^3	1000 kg/m^3
Mercury		849 lb$_m$/ft^3	13600 kg/m^3
Earth		345 lb$_m$/ft^3	5520 kg/m^3

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

US SYSTEM AND METRIC SYSTEM CONVERSIONS

Units of Length

Table 1. Linear Measure Conversion Factors

Metric	US Customary
1 *kilometer (km)* = **1000** meters **100,000** centimeters **1,000,000** millimeters 0.539956 nautical mile 0.621371 mile 1093.61 yards 3280.83 feet 39,370.08 inches	1 *mile (mi)* = 0.868976 nautical mile **1760** yards **5280** feet **63,360** inches **1.609344** kilometers **1609.344** meters **160,934.4** centimeters **1,609,344** millimeters
1 *meter (m)* = **10** decimeters **100** centimeters **1000** millimeters 1.09361 yards 3.28084 feet 39.37008 inches	1 *yard (yd)* = **3** feet **36** inches **0.9144** meter **91.44** centimeter **914.4** millimeter
1 *decimeter (dm)* = **10** centimeters	1 *foot (international) (ft)* = **12** inches = $\frac{1}{3}$ yard **0.3048** meter **30.48** centimeter **304.8** millimeters
1 *centimeter (cm)* = **0.01** meter **10** millimeters 0.0328 foot 0.3937 inch	1 *survey foot* = 1.000002 international feet $^{12}/_{39.37}$ = 0.3048006096012 meter
1 *millimeter (mm)* = **0.001** meter **0.1** centimeter **1000** microns 0.03937 inch	1 *inch (in)* = **1000** mils **1,000,000** micro-inches **2.54** centimeters **25.4** millimeters **25,400** microns
1 *micrometer* or *micron (μm)* = **0.000001** meter = one millionth meter **0.0001** centimeter **0.001** millimeter 0.00003937 inch 39.37 micro-inches	1 *mil* = **0.001** inch **1000** micro-inches **0.0254** millimeters
	1 *micro-inch (μin)* = **0.000001** inch = one millionth inch **0.0254** micrometer (micron)

Note: Figures in **Bold** indicate exact conversion values

Surveyors Measure	Nautical Measure
1 *mile* = **8** furlongs = **80** chains	1 *league* = 3 nautical miles
1 *furlong* = **10** chains = **220** yards	1 *nautical mile* = 1.1508 statute miles **6076.11549** feet 1.8516 kilometers
1 *chain* = **4** rods = **22** yards = **66** feet = **100** links	1 *fathom* = **2** yards = **6** feet
1 *rod* = **5.5** yards = **16.5** feet = **25** links 5.0292 meters	1 *knot* = nautical unit of speed = 1 nautical mile per hour 1.1508 statute miles per hour 1.8516 kilometers per hour
1 *link* = 7.92 inches	
1 *span* = 9 inches	
1 *hand* = 4 inches	

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 1. *(Continued)* **Linear Measure Conversion Factors**

One degree at the equator = 60 nautical miles 69.047 statute miles 111.098 kilometers	360 *degrees at the equator =* circumference at equator 21,600 nautical miles 24,856.8 statute miles 39,995.4 kilometers
One minute at the equator = 1 nautical mile 1.1508 statute miles 1.8516 kilometers	

Table 2. Circular and Angular Measure Conversion Factors

Circumference of circle = 360 degrees = 2π radian = 6.283185 radian	1 *degree (°)* = 60 minutes = 3600 seconds = π/180 radian = 0.017453 radian
1 *quadrant* = 90 degrees = π/2 radians = 1.570796 radians	1 *minute (′)* = 60 seconds = 0.016667 degree = 0.000291 radian
1 *radian* = 57.2957795 degrees	π = 3.141592654

Table 3. Feet and Inches to Inches Conversion

Inches →	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Feet ↓	Inches											
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
1	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
2	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35
3	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
4	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
5	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71
6	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83
7	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
8	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107
9	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119
10	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	128	129	130	131
20	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251
30	360	361	362	363	364	365	366	367	368	369	370	371
40	480	481	482	483	484	485	486	487	488	489	490	491
50	600	601	602	603	604	605	606	607	608	609	610	611
60	720	721	722	723	724	725	726	727	728	729	730	731
70	840	841	842	843	844	845	846	847	848	849	850	851
80	960	961	962	963	964	965	966	967	968	969	970	971
90	1080	1081	1082	1083	1084	1085	1086	1087	1088	1089	1090	1091
100	1200	1201	1202	1203	1204	1205	1206	1207	1208	1209	1210	1211

Example: A tape measure reads 17 feet 8 inches. How many inches is this? *Solution:* Read down the first column of Table 3 to find 10 ft 0 inch = 120 inches. Next, find the intersection of the 7 ft row and the 8 inch column to get 92 inches. Add both results to get 120 inches + 92 inches = 212 inches.

Table 4. Inches to Feet and Yards Conversion

inch	feet	yard	inch	feet	yard	inch	feet	yard	inch	feet	yard	inch	feet	yard
100	8.3333	2.7778	10	0.8333	0.2778	1	0.0833	0.0278	0.1	0.0083	0.0028	0.01	0.0008	0.0003
200	16.6667	5.5556	20	1.6667	0.5556	2	0.1667	0.0556	0.2	0.0167	0.0056	0.02	0.0017	0.0006
300	25	8.3333	30	2.5	0.8333	3	0.25	0.0833	0.3	0.025	0.0083	0.03	0.0025	0.0008
400	33.3333	11.1111	40	3.3333	1.1111	4	0.3333	0.1111	0.4	0.0333	0.0111	0.04	0.0033	0.0011
500	41.6667	13.8889	50	4.1667	1.3889	5	0.4167	0.1389	0.5	0.0417	0.0139	0.05	0.0042	0.0014
600	50	16.6667	60	5	1.6667	6	0.5	0.1667	0.6	0.05	0.0167	0.06	0.005	0.0017
700	58.3333	19.4444	70	5.8333	1.9444	7	0.5833	0.1944	0.7	0.0583	0.0194	0.07	0.0058	0.0019
800	66.6667	22.2222	80	6.6667	2.2222	8	0.6667	0.2222	0.8	0.0667	0.0222	0.08	0.0067	0.0022
900	75	25.0000	90	7.5	2.5000	9	0.75	0.2500	0.9	0.075	0.0250	0.09	0.0075	0.0025
1000	83.3333	27.7778	100	8.3333	2.7778	10	0.8333	0.2778	1	0.0833	0.0278	0.1	0.0083	0.0028

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 5. Fractional Inches to Decimal Feet for 0 to 1 Foot

→ Inches ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	Feet											
0	0.0000	0.0833	0.1667	0.2500	0.3333	0.4167	0.5000	0.5833	0.6667	0.7500	0.8333	0.9167
1/64	0.0013	0.0846	0.1680	0.2513	0.3346	0.4180	0.5013	0.5846	0.6680	0.7513	0.8346	0.9180
1/32	0.0026	0.0859	0.1693	0.2526	0.3359	0.4193	0.5026	0.5859	0.6693	0.7526	0.8359	0.9193
3/64	0.0039	0.0872	0.1706	0.2539	0.3372	0.4206	0.5039	0.5872	0.6706	0.7539	0.8372	0.9206
1/16	0.0052	0.0885	0.1719	0.2552	0.3385	0.4219	0.5052	0.5885	0.6719	0.7552	0.8385	0.9219
5/64	0.0065	0.0898	0.1732	0.2565	0.3398	0.4232	0.5065	0.5898	0.6732	0.7565	0.8398	0.9232
3/32	0.0078	0.0911	0.1745	0.2578	0.3411	0.4245	0.5078	0.5911	0.6745	0.7578	0.8411	0.9245
7/64	0.0091	0.0924	0.1758	0.2591	0.3424	0.4258	0.5091	0.5924	0.6758	0.7591	0.8424	0.9258
1/8	0.0104	0.0938	0.1771	0.2604	0.3438	0.4271	0.5104	0.5938	0.6771	0.7604	0.8438	0.9271
9/64	0.0117	0.0951	0.1784	0.2617	0.3451	0.4284	0.5117	0.5951	0.6784	0.7617	0.8451	0.9284
5/32	0.0130	0.0964	0.1797	0.2630	0.3464	0.4297	0.5130	0.5964	0.6797	0.7630	0.8464	0.9297
11/64	0.0143	0.0977	0.1810	0.2643	0.3477	0.4310	0.5143	0.5977	0.6810	0.7643	0.8477	0.9310
3/16	0.0156	0.0990	0.1823	0.2656	0.3490	0.4323	0.5156	0.5990	0.6823	0.7656	0.8490	0.9323
13/64	0.0169	0.1003	0.1836	0.2669	0.3503	0.4336	0.5169	0.6003	0.6836	0.7669	0.8503	0.9336
7/32	0.0182	0.1016	0.1849	0.2682	0.3516	0.4349	0.5182	0.6016	0.6849	0.7682	0.8516	0.9349
15/64	0.0195	0.1029	0.1862	0.2695	0.3529	0.4362	0.5195	0.6029	0.6862	0.7695	0.8529	0.9362
1/4	0.0208	0.1042	0.1875	0.2708	0.3542	0.4375	0.5208	0.6042	0.6875	0.7708	0.8542	0.9375
17/64	0.0221	0.1055	0.1888	0.2721	0.3555	0.4388	0.5221	0.6055	0.6888	0.7721	0.8555	0.9388
9/32	0.0234	0.1068	0.1901	0.2734	0.3568	0.4401	0.5234	0.6068	0.6901	0.7734	0.8568	0.9401
19/64	0.0247	0.1081	0.1914	0.2747	0.3581	0.4414	0.5247	0.6081	0.6914	0.7747	0.8581	0.9414
5/16	0.0260	0.1094	0.1927	0.2760	0.3594	0.4427	0.5260	0.6094	0.6927	0.7760	0.8594	0.9427
21/64	0.0273	0.1107	0.1940	0.2773	0.3607	0.4440	0.5273	0.6107	0.6940	0.7773	0.8607	0.9440
11/32	0.0286	0.1120	0.1953	0.2786	0.3620	0.4453	0.5286	0.6120	0.6953	0.7786	0.8620	0.9453
23/64	0.0299	0.1133	0.1966	0.2799	0.3633	0.4466	0.5299	0.6133	0.6966	0.7799	0.8633	0.9466
3/8	0.0313	0.1146	0.1979	0.2813	0.3646	0.4479	0.5313	0.6146	0.6979	0.7813	0.8646	0.9479
25/64	0.0326	0.1159	0.1992	0.2826	0.3659	0.4492	0.5326	0.6159	0.6992	0.7826	0.8659	0.9492
13/32	0.0339	0.1172	0.2005	0.2839	0.3672	0.4505	0.5339	0.6172	0.7005	0.7839	0.8672	0.9505
27/64	0.0352	0.1185	0.2018	0.2852	0.3685	0.4518	0.5352	0.6185	0.7018	0.7852	0.8685	0.9518
7/16	0.0365	0.1198	0.2031	0.2865	0.3698	0.4531	0.5365	0.6198	0.7031	0.7865	0.8698	0.9531
29/64	0.0378	0.1211	0.2044	0.2878	0.3711	0.4544	0.5378	0.6211	0.7044	0.7878	0.8711	0.9544
15/32	0.0391	0.1224	0.2057	0.2891	0.3724	0.4557	0.5391	0.6224	0.7057	0.7891	0.8724	0.9557
31/64	0.0404	0.1237	0.2070	0.2904	0.3737	0.4570	0.5404	0.6237	0.7070	0.7904	0.8737	0.9570
1/2	0.0417	0.1250	0.2083	0.2917	0.3750	0.4583	0.5417	0.6250	0.7083	0.7917	0.8750	0.9583
33/64	0.0430	0.1263	0.2096	0.2930	0.3763	0.4596	0.5430	0.6263	0.7096	0.7930	0.8763	0.9596
17/32	0.0443	0.1276	0.2109	0.2943	0.3776	0.4609	0.5443	0.6276	0.7109	0.7943	0.8776	0.9609
35/64	0.0456	0.1289	0.2122	0.2956	0.3789	0.4622	0.5456	0.6289	0.7122	0.7956	0.8789	0.9622
9/16	0.0469	0.1302	0.2135	0.2969	0.3802	0.4635	0.5469	0.6302	0.7135	0.7969	0.8802	0.9635
37/64	0.0482	0.1315	0.2148	0.2982	0.3815	0.4648	0.5482	0.6315	0.7148	0.7982	0.8815	0.9648
19/32	0.0495	0.1328	0.2161	0.2995	0.3828	0.4661	0.5495	0.6328	0.7161	0.7995	0.8828	0.9661
39/64	0.0508	0.1341	0.2174	0.3008	0.3841	0.4674	0.5508	0.6341	0.7174	0.8008	0.8841	0.9674
5/8	0.0521	0.1354	0.2188	0.3021	0.3854	0.4688	0.5521	0.6354	0.7188	0.8021	0.8854	0.9688
41/64	0.0534	0.1367	0.2201	0.3034	0.3867	0.4701	0.5534	0.6367	0.7201	0.8034	0.8867	0.9701
21/32	0.0547	0.1380	0.2214	0.3047	0.3880	0.4714	0.5547	0.6380	0.7214	0.8047	0.8880	0.9714
43/64	0.0560	0.1393	0.2227	0.3060	0.3893	0.4727	0.5560	0.6393	0.7227	0.8060	0.8893	0.9727
11/16	0.0573	0.1406	0.2240	0.3073	0.3906	0.4740	0.5573	0.6406	0.7240	0.8073	0.8906	0.9740
45/64	0.0586	0.1419	0.2253	0.3086	0.3919	0.4753	0.5586	0.6419	0.7253	0.8086	0.8919	0.9753
23/32	0.0599	0.1432	0.2266	0.3099	0.3932	0.4766	0.5599	0.6432	0.7266	0.8099	0.8932	0.9766
47/64	0.0612	0.1445	0.2279	0.3112	0.3945	0.4779	0.5612	0.6445	0.7279	0.8112	0.8945	0.9779
3/4	0.0625	0.1458	0.2292	0.3125	0.3958	0.4792	0.5625	0.6458	0.7292	0.8125	0.8958	0.9792
49/64	0.0638	0.1471	0.2305	0.3138	0.3971	0.4805	0.5638	0.6471	0.7305	0.8138	0.8971	0.9805
25/32	0.0651	0.1484	0.2318	0.3151	0.3984	0.4818	0.5651	0.6484	0.7318	0.8151	0.8984	0.9818
51/64	0.0664	0.1497	0.2331	0.3164	0.3997	0.4831	0.5664	0.6497	0.7331	0.8164	0.8997	0.9831
13/16	0.0677	0.1510	0.2344	0.3177	0.4010	0.4844	0.5677	0.6510	0.7344	0.8177	0.9010	0.9844
53/64	0.0690	0.1523	0.2357	0.3190	0.4023	0.4857	0.5690	0.6523	0.7357	0.8190	0.9023	0.9857
27/32	0.0703	0.1536	0.2370	0.3203	0.4036	0.4870	0.5703	0.6536	0.7370	0.8203	0.9036	0.9870
55/64	0.0716	0.1549	0.2383	0.3216	0.4049	0.4883	0.5716	0.6549	0.7383	0.8216	0.9049	0.9883
7/8	0.0729	0.1563	0.2396	0.3229	0.4063	0.4896	0.5729	0.6563	0.7396	0.8229	0.9063	0.9896
57/64	0.0742	0.1576	0.2409	0.3242	0.4076	0.4909	0.5742	0.6576	0.7409	0.8242	0.9076	0.9909
29/32	0.0755	0.1589	0.2422	0.3255	0.4089	0.4922	0.5755	0.6589	0.7422	0.8255	0.9089	0.9922
59/64	0.0768	0.1602	0.2435	0.3268	0.4102	0.4935	0.5768	0.6602	0.7435	0.8268	0.9102	0.9935
15/16	0.0781	0.1615	0.2448	0.3281	0.4115	0.4948	0.5781	0.6615	0.7448	0.8281	0.9115	0.9948
61/64	0.0794	0.1628	0.2461	0.3294	0.4128	0.4961	0.5794	0.6628	0.7461	0.8294	0.9128	0.9961
31/32	0.0807	0.1641	0.2474	0.3307	0.4141	0.4974	0.5807	0.6641	0.7474	0.8307	0.9141	0.9974
63/64	0.0820	0.1654	0.2487	0.3320	0.4154	0.4987	0.5820	0.6654	0.7487	0.8320	0.9154	0.9987
1	0.0833	0.1667	0.2500	0.3333	0.4167	0.5000	0.5833	0.6667	0.7500	0.8333	0.9167	1.0000

Example: Convert 78¾ inches to feet. *Solution:* From Table 4, find 70 inches = 5.8333 feet and add to that 8¾ inches = 0.7292 feet found in Table 5 at the intersection of the ¾ inch row and the 8 inch column. Thus, 78¾ inches = 5.8333 + 0.7292 = 6.5625 feet.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 6. Feet to Inches Conversion

feet	inch	feet	inch	feet	inch	feet	inch	feet	inch	feet	inch	feet	inch
100	1200	10	120	1	12	0.1	1.2	0.01	0.12	0.001	0.012	0.0001	0.0012
200	2400	20	240	2	24	0.2	2.4	0.02	0.24	0.002	0.024	0.0002	0.0024
300	3600	30	360	3	36	0.3	3.6	0.03	0.36	0.003	0.036	0.0003	0.0036
400	4800	40	480	4	48	0.4	4.8	0.04	0.48	0.004	0.048	0.0004	0.0048
500	6000	50	600	5	60	0.5	6	0.05	0.6	0.005	0.06	0.0005	0.006
600	7200	60	720	6	72	0.6	7.2	0.06	0.72	0.006	0.072	0.0006	0.0072
700	8400	70	840	7	84	0.7	8.4	0.07	0.84	0.007	0.084	0.0007	0.0084
800	9600	80	960	8	96	0.8	9.6	0.08	0.96	0.008	0.096	0.0008	0.0096
900	10800	90	1080	9	108	0.9	10.8	0.09	1.08	0.009	0.108	0.0009	0.0108
1000	12000	100	1200	10	120	1	12	0.1	1.2	0.01	0.12	0.001	0.012

Table 7. Fractional and Decimal Inches to Millimeters, Exact[a] Values

Fractional Inch	Decimal Inches	Millimeters	Fractional Inches	Decimal Inches	Millimeters
1/64	0.015625	0.396875		0.511811024	13
1/32	0.03125	0.79375	33/64	0.515625	13.096875
	0.039370079	1	17/32	0.53125	13.49375
3/64	0.046875	1.190625	35/64	0.546875	13.890625
1/16	0.0625	1.5875		0.551181102	14
5/64	0.078125	1.984375	9/16	0.5625	14.2875
	0.078740157	2	37/64	0.578125	14.684375
1/12	0.08$\overline{33}$[b]	2.11$\overline{66}$	7/12	0.58$\overline{33}$	14.81$\overline{66}$
3/32	0.09375	2.38125		0.590551181	15
7/64	0.109375	2.778125	19/32	0.59375	15.08125
	0.118110236	3	39/64	0.609375	15.478125
1/8	0.125	3.175	5/8	0.625	15.875
9/64	0.140625	3.571875		0.62992126	16
5/32	0.15625	3.96875	41/64	0.640625	16.271875
	0.157480315	4	21/32	0.65625	16.66875
1/6	0.1$\overline{66}$	4.2$\overline{33}$	2/3	0.$\overline{66}$	16.9$\overline{33}$
11/64	0.171875	4.365625		0.669291339	17
3/16	0.1875	4.7625	43/64	0.671875	17.065625
	0.196850394	5	11/16	0.6875	17.4625
13/64	0.203125	5.159375	45/64	0.703125	17.859375
7/32	0.21875	5.55625		0.708661417	18
15/64	0.234375	5.953125	23/32	0.71875	18.25625
	0.236220472	6	47/64	0.734375	18.653125
1/4	0.25	6.35		0.748031496	19
17/64	0.265625	6.746875	3/4	0.75	19.05
	0.275590551	7	49/64	0.765625	19.446875
9/32	0.28125	7.14375	25/32	0.78125	19.84375
19/64	0.296875	7.540625		0.787401575	20
5/16	0.3125	7.9375	51/64	0.796875	20.240625
	0.31496063	8	13/16	0.8125	20.6375
21/64	0.328125	8.334375		0.826771654	21
1/3	0.$\overline{33}$	8.4$\overline{66}$	53/64	0.828125	21.034375
11/32	0.34375	8.73125	27/32	0.84375	21.43125
	0.354330709	9	55/64	0.859375	21.828125
23/64	0.359375	9.128125		0.866141732	22
3/8	0.375	9.525	7/8	0.875	22.225
25/64	0.390625	9.921875	57/64	0.890625	22.621875
	0.393700787	10		0.905511811	23
13/32	0.40625	10.31875	29/32	0.90625	23.01875
5/12	0.41$\overline{66}$	10.58$\overline{33}$	11/12	0.91$\overline{66}$	23.28$\overline{33}$
27/64	0.421875	10.715625	59/64	0.921875	23.415625
	0.433070866	11	15/16	0.9375	23.8125
7/16	0.4375	11.1125		0.94488189	24
29/64	0.453125	11.509375	61/64	0.953125	24.209375
15/32	0.46875	11.90625	31/32	0.96875	24.60625
	0.472440945	12		0.984251969	25
31/64	0.484375	12.303125	63/64	0.984375	25.003125
1/2	0.5	12.7			

[a] Reading left to right from all "Fractional" and "Decimal Inches" columns to "Millimeters" columns: conversion values are exact. Reading right to left from the "Millimeters" columns: whole number millimeters conversions to "Decimal Inches" are rounded to 9 decimal places.

[b] A bar over a group of digits indicates they repeat indefinitely; for example, $0.08\overline{33} = 0.08333...$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 8a. Inches to Millimeters Conversion

inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
10	254.00000	1	25.40000	0.1	2.54000	.01	0.25400	0.001	0.02540	0.0001	0.00254
20	508.00000	2	50.80000	0.2	5.08000	.02	0.50800	0.002	0.05080	0.0002	0.00508
30	762.00000	3	76.20000	0.3	7.62000	.03	0.76200	0.003	0.07620	0.0003	0.00762
40	1,016.00000	4	101.60000	0.4	10.16000	.04	1.01600	0.004	0.10160	0.0004	0.01016
50	1,270.00000	5	127.00000	0.5	12.70000	.05	1.27000	0.005	0.12700	0.0005	0.01270
60	1,524.00000	6	152.40000	0.6	15.24000	.06	1.52400	0.006	0.15240	0.0006	0.01524
70	1,778.00000	7	177.80000	0.7	17.78000	.07	1.77800	0.007	0.17780	0.0007	0.01778
80	2,032.00000	8	203.20000	0.8	20.32000	.08	2.03200	0.008	0.20320	0.0008	0.02032
90	2,286.00000	9	228.60000	0.9	22.86000	.09	2.2860	0.009	0.22860	0.0009	0.02286
100	2,540.00000	10	254.00000	1.0	25.40000	.10	2.54000	0.010	0.25400	0.0010	0.02540

All values in this table are exact. For inches to centimeters, shift decimal point in mm column one place to left and read centimeters; thus, for example, 40 in. = 1016 mm = 101.6 cm.

Table 8b. Millimeters to Inches Conversion

mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch
100	3.93701	10	0.39370	1	0.03937	0.1	0.00394	0.01	.000039	0.001	0.00004
200	7.87402	20	0.78740	2	0.07874	0.2	0.00787	0.02	.00079	0.002	0.00008
300	11.81102	30	1.18110	3	0.11811	0.3	0.01181	0.03	.00118	0.003	0.00012
400	15.74803	40	1.57480	4	0.15748	0.4	0.01575	0.04	.00157	0.004	0.00016
500	19.68504	50	1.96850	5	0.19685	0.5	0.01969	0.05	.00197	0.005	0.00020
600	23.62205	60	2.36220	6	0.23622	0.6	0.02362	0.06	.00236	0.006	0.00024
700	27.55906	70	2.75591	7	0.27559	0.7	0.02756	0.07	.00276	0.007	0.00028
800	31.49606	80	3.14961	8	0.31496	0.8	0.03150	0.08	.00315	0.008	0.00031
900	35.43307	90	3.54331	9	0.35433	0.9	0.03543	0.09	.00354	0.009	0.00035
1,000	39.37008	100	3.93701	10	0.39370	1.0	0.03937	0.10	.00394	0.010	0.00039

Based on 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters, exactly. For centimeters to inches, shift decimal point of centimeter value one place to right and enter mm column; thus, for example, 70 cm = 700 mm = 27.55906 inches.

Table 9. Feet to Millimeters Conversion

feet	mm	feet	mm	feet	mm	feet	mm	feet	mm
100	30,480	10	3,048	1	304.8	0.1	30.48	0.01	3.048
200	60,960	20	6,096	2	609.6	0.2	60.96	0.02	6.096
300	91,440	30	9,144	3	914.4	0.3	91.44	0.03	9.144
400	121,920	40	12,192	4	1,219.2	0.4	121.92	0.04	12.192
500	152,400	50	15,240	5	1,524.0	0.5	152.40	0.05	15.240
600	182,880	60	18,288	6	1,828.8	0.6	182.88	0.06	18.288
700	213,360	70	21,336	7	2,133.6	0.7	213.36	0.07	21.336
800	243,840	80	24,384	8	2,438.4	0.8	243.84	0.08	24.384
900	274,320	90	27,432	9	2,743.2	0.9	274.32	0.09	27.432
1,000	304,800	100	30,480	10	3,048.0	1.0	304.80	0.10	30.480

Based on 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters, exactly. All values in this table are exact.

Example 1: Convert 293 feet, $5\frac{47}{64}$ inches to mm.

200 ft		=	60,960.0	mm
90 ft		=	27,432.0	mm
3 ft		=	914.4	mm
5	inch	=	127.0	mm
$\frac{47}{64}$	inch	=	18.653	mm
293 ft	$5\frac{47}{64}$ inch	=	89,452.053	mm

Example 2: Convert 71.86 feet to mm.

70.0	feet	=	21,336.0	mm
1.0	feet	=	304.8	mm
0.80	feet	=	243.84	mm
0.06	feet	=	18.288	mm
71.86	feet	=	21,902.928	mm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. Mixed Fractional Inches to Millimeters Conversion for 0 to 41 Inches in $\frac{1}{64}$-Inch Increments

→ Inches↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	20	30	40
	Millimeters													
0	0	25.4	50.8	76.2	101.6	127.0	152.4	177.8	203.2	228.6	254.0	508.0	762.0	1016.0
1/64	0.396875	25.796875	51.196875	76.596875	101.996875	127.396875	152.796875	178.196875	203.596875	228.996875	254.396875	508.396875	762.396875	1016.396875
1/32	0.79375	26.19375	51.59375	76.99375	102.39375	127.79375	153.19375	178.59375	203.99375	229.39375	254.79375	508.79375	762.79375	1016.79375
3/64	1.190625	26.590625	51.990625	77.390625	102.790625	128.190625	153.590625	178.990625	204.390625	229.790625	255.190625	509.190625	763.190625	1017.190625
1/16	1.5875	26.9875	52.3875	77.7875	103.1875	128.5875	153.9875	179.3875	204.7875	230.1875	255.5875	509.5875	763.5875	1017.5875
5/64	1.984375	27.384375	52.784375	78.184375	103.584375	128.984375	154.384375	179.784375	205.184375	230.584375	255.984375	509.984375	763.984375	1017.984375
3/32	2.38125	27.78125	53.18125	78.58125	103.98125	129.38125	154.78125	180.18125	205.58125	230.98125	256.38125	510.38125	764.38125	1018.38125
7/64	2.778125	28.178125	53.578125	78.978125	104.378125	129.778125	155.178125	180.578125	205.978125	231.378125	256.778125	510.778125	764.778125	1018.778125
1/8	3.175	28.575	53.975	79.375	104.775	130.175	155.575	180.975	206.375	231.775	257.175	511.175	765.175	1019.175
9/64	3.571875	28.971875	54.371875	79.771875	105.171875	130.571875	155.971875	181.371875	206.771875	232.171875	257.571875	511.571875	765.571875	1019.571875
5/32	3.96875	29.36875	54.76875	80.16875	105.56875	130.96875	156.36875	181.76875	207.16875	232.56875	257.96875	511.96875	765.96875	1019.96875
11/64	4.365625	29.765625	55.165625	80.565625	105.965625	131.365625	156.765625	182.165625	207.565625	232.965625	258.365625	512.365625	766.365625	1020.365625
3/16	4.7625	30.1625	55.5625	80.9625	106.3625	131.7625	157.1625	182.5625	207.9625	233.3625	258.7625	512.7625	766.7625	1020.7625
13/64	5.159375	30.559375	55.959375	81.359375	106.759375	132.159375	157.559375	182.959375	208.359375	233.759375	259.159375	513.159375	767.159375	1021.159375
7/32	5.55625	30.95625	56.35625	81.75625	107.15625	132.55625	157.95625	183.35625	208.75625	234.15625	259.55625	513.55625	767.55625	1021.55625
15/64	5.953125	31.353125	56.753125	82.153125	107.553125	132.953125	158.353125	183.753125	209.153125	234.553125	259.953125	513.953125	767.953125	1021.953125
1/4	6.35	31.75	57.15	82.55	107.95	133.35	158.75	184.15	209.55	234.95	260.35	514.35	768.35	1022.35
17/64	6.746875	32.146875	57.546875	82.946875	108.346875	133.746875	159.146875	184.546875	209.946875	235.346875	260.746875	514.746875	768.746875	1022.746875
9/32	7.14375	32.54375	57.94375	83.34375	108.74375	134.14375	159.54375	184.94375	210.34375	235.74375	261.14375	515.14375	769.14375	1023.14375
19/64	7.540625	32.940625	58.340625	83.740625	109.140625	134.540625	159.940625	185.340625	210.740625	236.140625	261.540625	515.540625	769.540625	1023.540625
5/16	7.9375	33.3375	58.7375	84.1375	109.5375	134.9375	160.3375	185.7375	211.1375	236.5375	261.9375	515.9375	769.9375	1023.9375
21/64	8.334375	33.734375	59.134375	84.534375	109.934375	135.334375	160.734375	186.134375	211.534375	236.934375	262.334375	516.334375	770.334375	1024.334375
11/32	8.73125	34.13125	59.53125	84.93125	110.33125	135.73125	161.13125	186.53125	211.93125	237.33125	262.73125	516.73125	770.73125	1024.73125
23/64	9.128125	34.528125	59.928125	85.328125	110.728125	136.128125	161.528125	186.928125	212.328125	237.728125	263.128125	517.128125	771.128125	1025.128125
3/8	9.525	34.925	60.325	85.725	111.125	136.525	161.925	187.325	212.725	238.125	263.525	517.525	771.525	1025.525
25/64	9.921875	35.321875	60.721875	86.121875	111.521875	136.921875	162.321875	187.721875	213.121875	238.521875	263.921875	517.921875	771.921875	1025.921875
13/32	10.31875	35.71875	61.11875	86.51875	111.91875	137.31875	162.71875	188.11875	213.51875	238.91875	264.31875	518.31875	772.31875	1026.31875
27/64	10.715625	36.115625	61.515625	86.915625	112.315625	137.715625	163.115625	188.515625	213.915625	239.315625	264.715625	518.715625	772.715625	1026.715625
7/16	11.1125	36.5125	61.9125	87.3125	112.7125	138.1125	163.5125	188.9125	214.3125	239.7125	265.1125	519.1125	773.1125	1027.1125
29/64	11.509375	36.909375	62.309375	87.709375	113.109375	138.509375	163.909375	189.309375	214.709375	240.109375	265.509375	519.509375	773.509375	1027.509375
15/32	11.90625	37.30625	62.70625	88.10625	113.50625	138.90625	164.30625	189.70625	215.10625	240.50625	265.90625	519.90625	773.90625	1027.90625
31/64	12.303125	37.703125	63.103125	88.503125	113.903125	139.303125	164.703125	190.103125	215.503125	240.903125	266.303125	520.303125	774.303125	1028.303125
1/2	12.7	38.1	63.5	88.9	114.3	139.7	165.1	190.5	215.9	241.3	266.7	520.7	774.7	1028.7

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 10. *(Continued)* **Mixed Fractional Inches to Millimeters Conversion for 0 to 41 Inches in $\frac{1}{64}$-Inch Increments**

→	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	20	30	40
Inches↓	Millimeters													
33/64	13.096875	38.496875	63.896875	89.296875	114.696875	140.096875	165.496875	190.896875	216.296875	241.696875	267.096875	521.096875	775.096875	1029.096875
17/32	13.49375	38.89375	64.29375	89.69375	115.09375	140.49375	165.89375	191.29375	216.69375	242.09375	267.49375	521.49375	775.49375	1029.49375
35/64	13.890625	39.290625	64.690625	90.090625	115.490625	140.890625	166.290625	191.690625	217.090625	242.490625	267.890625	521.890625	775.890625	1029.890625
9/16	14.2875	39.6875	65.0875	90.4875	115.8875	141.2875	166.6875	192.0875	217.4875	242.8875	268.2875	522.2875	776.2875	1030.2875
37/64	14.684375	40.084375	65.484375	90.884375	116.284375	141.684375	167.084375	192.484375	217.884375	243.284375	268.684375	522.684375	776.684375	1030.684375
19/32	15.08125	40.48125	65.88125	91.28125	116.68125	142.08125	167.48125	192.88125	218.28125	243.68125	269.08125	523.08125	777.08125	1031.08125
39/64	15.478125	40.878125	66.278125	91.678125	117.078125	142.478125	167.878125	193.278125	218.678125	244.078125	269.478125	523.478125	777.478125	1031.478125
5/8	15.875	41.275	66.675	92.075	117.475	142.875	168.275	193.675	219.075	244.475	269.875	523.875	777.875	1031.875
41/64	16.271875	41.671875	67.071875	92.471875	117.871875	143.271875	168.671875	194.071875	219.471875	244.871875	270.271875	524.271875	778.271875	1032.271875
21/32	16.66875	42.06875	67.46875	92.86875	118.26875	143.66875	169.06875	194.46875	219.86875	245.26875	270.66875	524.66875	778.66875	1032.66875
43/64	17.065625	42.465625	67.865625	93.265625	118.665625	144.065625	169.465625	194.865625	220.265625	245.665625	271.065625	525.065625	779.065625	1033.065625
11/16	17.4625	42.8625	68.2625	93.6625	119.0625	144.4625	169.8625	195.2625	220.6625	246.0625	271.4625	525.4625	779.4625	1033.4625
45/64	17.859375	43.259375	68.659375	94.059375	119.459375	144.859375	170.259375	195.659375	221.059375	246.459375	271.859375	525.859375	779.859375	1033.859375
23/32	18.25625	43.65625	69.05625	94.45625	119.85625	145.25625	170.65625	196.05625	221.45625	246.85625	272.25625	526.25625	780.25625	1034.25625
47/64	18.653125	44.053125	69.453125	94.853125	120.253125	145.653125	171.053125	196.453125	221.853125	247.253125	272.653125	526.653125	780.653125	1034.653125
3/4	19.05	44.45	69.85	95.25	120.65	146.05	171.45	196.85	222.25	247.65	273.05	527.05	781.05	1035.05
49/64	19.446875	44.846875	70.246875	95.646875	121.046875	146.446875	171.846875	197.246875	222.646875	248.046875	273.446875	527.446875	781.446875	1035.446875
25/32	19.84375	45.24375	70.64375	96.04375	121.44375	146.84375	172.24375	197.64375	223.04375	248.44375	273.84375	527.84375	781.84375	1035.84375
51/64	20.240625	45.640625	71.040625	96.440625	121.840625	147.240625	172.640625	198.040625	223.440625	248.840625	274.240625	528.240625	782.240625	1036.240625
13/16	20.6375	46.0375	71.4375	96.8375	122.2375	147.6375	173.0375	198.4375	223.8375	249.2375	274.6375	528.6375	782.6375	1036.6375
53/64	21.034375	46.434375	71.834375	97.234375	122.634375	148.034375	173.434375	198.834375	224.234375	249.634375	275.034375	529.034375	783.034375	1037.034375
27/32	21.43125	46.83125	72.23125	97.63125	123.03125	148.43125	173.83125	199.23125	224.63125	250.03125	275.43125	529.43125	783.43125	1037.43125
55/64	21.828125	47.228125	72.628125	98.028125	123.428125	148.828125	174.228125	199.628125	225.028125	250.428125	275.828125	529.828125	783.828125	1037.828125
7/8	22.225	47.625	73.025	98.425	123.825	149.225	174.625	200.025	225.425	250.825	276.225	530.225	784.225	1038.225
57/64	22.621875	48.021875	73.421875	98.821875	124.221875	149.621875	175.021875	200.421875	225.821875	251.221875	276.621875	530.621875	784.621875	1038.621875
29/32	23.01875	48.41875	73.81875	99.21875	124.61875	150.01875	175.41875	200.81875	226.21875	251.61875	277.01875	531.01875	785.01875	1039.01875
59/64	23.415625	48.815625	74.215625	99.615625	125.015625	150.415625	175.815625	201.215625	226.615625	252.015625	277.415625	531.415625	785.415625	1039.415625
15/16	23.8125	49.2125	74.6125	100.0125	125.4125	150.8125	176.2125	201.6125	227.0125	252.4125	277.8125	531.8125	785.8125	1039.8125
61/64	24.209375	49.609375	75.009375	100.409375	125.809375	151.209375	176.609375	202.009375	227.409375	252.809375	278.209375	532.209375	786.209375	1040.209375
31/32	24.60625	50.00625	75.40625	100.80625	126.20625	151.60625	177.00625	202.40625	227.80625	253.20625	278.60625	532.60625	786.60625	1040.60625
63/64	25.003125	50.403125	75.803125	101.203125	126.603125	152.003125	177.403125	202.803125	228.203125	253.603125	279.003125	533.003125	787.003125	1041.003125
1	25.4	50.8	76.2	101.6	127	152.4	177.8	203.2	228.6	254	279.4	533.4	787.4	1041.4

Based on 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters, exactly. All values in this table are exact. *Example:* Convert $21\frac{23}{64}$ inches to millimeters. *Solution:* From the first page of this table, find 20 inches = 508.0 millimeters and add to that $1\frac{23}{64}$ inches = 34.528125 millimeters found at the intersection of the 1-inch column and the row containing $\frac{23}{64}$ inch. Thus, $21\frac{23}{64}$ inches = 508.0 + 34.528125 = 542.528125 mm, exactly.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. Decimals of an Inch to Millimeters Conversion

→ Inches ↓	0.000	0.001	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.009
	Millimeters									
0.000	…	0.0254	0.0508	0.0762	0.1016	0.1270	0.1524	0.1778	0.2032	0.2286
0.010	0.2540	0.2794	0.3048	0.3302	0.3556	0.3810	0.4064	0.4318	0.4572	0.4826
0.020	0.5080	0.5334	0.5588	0.5842	0.6096	0.6350	0.6604	0.6858	0.7112	0.7366
0.030	0.7620	0.7874	0.8128	0.8382	0.8636	0.8890	0.9144	0.9398	0.9652	0.9906
0.040	1.0160	1.0414	1.0668	1.0922	1.1176	1.1430	1.1684	1.1938	1.2192	1.2446
0.050	1.2700	1.2954	1.3208	1.3462	1.3716	1.3970	1.4224	1.4478	1.4732	1.4986
0.060	1.5240	1.5494	1.5748	1.6002	1.6256	1.6510	1.6764	1.7018	1.7272	1.7526
0.070	1.7780	1.8034	1.8288	1.8542	1.8796	1.9050	1.9304	1.9558	1.9812	2.0066
0.080	2.0320	2.0574	2.0828	2.1082	2.1336	2.1590	2.1844	2.2098	2.2352	2.2606
0.090	2.2860	2.3114	2.3368	2.3622	2.3876	2.4130	2.4384	2.4638	2.4892	2.5146
0.100	2.5400	2.5654	2.5908	2.6162	2.6416	2.6670	2.6924	2.7178	2.7432	2.7686
0.110	2.7940	2.8194	2.8448	2.8702	2.8956	2.9210	2.9464	2.9718	2.9972	3.0226
0.120	3.0480	3.0734	3.0988	3.1242	3.1496	3.1750	3.2004	3.2258	3.2512	3.2766
0.130	3.3020	3.3274	3.3528	3.3782	3.4036	3.4290	3.4544	3.4798	3.5052	3.5306
0.140	3.5560	3.5814	3.6068	3.6322	3.6576	3.6830	3.7084	3.7338	3.7592	3.7846
0.150	3.8100	3.8354	3.8608	3.8862	3.9116	3.9370	3.9624	3.9878	4.0132	4.0386
0.160	4.0640	4.0894	4.1148	4.1402	4.1656	4.1910	4.2164	4.2418	4.2672	4.2926
0.170	4.3180	4.3434	4.3688	4.3942	4.4196	4.4450	4.4704	4.4958	4.5212	4.5466
0.180	4.5720	4.5974	4.6228	4.6482	4.6736	4.6990	4.7244	4.7498	4.7752	4.8006
0.190	4.8260	4.8514	4.8768	4.9022	4.9276	4.9530	4.9784	5.0038	5.0292	5.0546
0.200	5.0800	5.1054	5.1308	5.1562	5.1816	5.2070	5.2324	5.2578	5.2832	5.3086
0.210	5.3340	5.3594	5.3848	5.4102	5.4356	5.4610	5.4864	5.5118	5.5372	5.5626
0.220	5.5880	5.6134	5.6388	5.6642	5.6896	5.7150	5.7404	5.7658	5.7912	5.8166
0.230	5.8420	5.8674	5.8928	5.9182	5.9436	5.9690	5.9944	6.0198	6.0452	6.0706
0.240	6.0960	6.1214	6.1468	6.1722	6.1976	6.2230	6.2484	6.2738	6.2992	6.3246
0.250	6.3500	6.3754	6.4008	6.4262	6.4516	6.4770	6.5024	6.5278	6.5532	6.5786
0.260	6.6040	6.6294	6.6548	6.6802	6.7056	6.7310	6.7564	6.7818	6.8072	6.8326
0.270	6.8580	6.8834	6.9088	6.9342	6.9596	6.9850	7.0104	7.0358	7.0612	7.0866
0.280	7.1120	7.1374	7.1628	7.1882	7.2136	7.2390	7.2644	7.2898	7.3152	7.3406
0.290	7.3660	7.3914	7.4168	7.4422	7.4676	7.4930	7.5184	7.5438	7.5692	7.5946
0.300	7.6200	7.6454	7.6708	7.6962	7.7216	7.7470	7.7724	7.7978	7.8232	7.8486
0.310	7.8740	7.8994	7.9248	7.9502	7.9756	8.0010	8.0264	8.0518	8.0772	8.1026
0.320	8.1280	8.1534	8.1788	8.2042	8.2296	8.2550	8.2804	8.3058	8.3312	8.3566
0.330	8.3820	8.4074	8.4328	8.4582	8.4836	8.5090	8.5344	8.5598	8.5852	8.6106
0.340	8.6360	8.6614	8.6868	8.7122	8.7376	8.7630	8.7884	8.8138	8.8392	8.8646
0.350	8.8900	8.9154	8.9408	8.9662	8.9916	9.0170	9.0424	9.0678	9.0932	9.1186
0.360	9.1440	9.1694	9.1948	9.2202	9.2456	9.2710	9.2964	9.3218	9.3472	9.3726
0.370	9.3980	9.4234	9.4488	9.4742	9.4996	9.5250	9.5504	9.5758	9.6012	9.6266
0.380	9.6520	9.6774	9.7028	9.7282	9.7536	9.7790	9.8044	9.8298	9.8552	9.8806
0.390	9.9060	9.9314	9.9568	9.9822	10.0076	10.0330	10.0584	10.0838	10.1092	10.1346
0.400	10.1600	10.1854	10.2108	10.2362	10.2616	10.2870	10.3124	10.3378	10.3632	10.3886
0.410	10.4140	10.4394	10.4648	10.4902	10.5156	10.5410	10.5664	10.5918	10.6172	10.6426
0.420	10.6680	10.6934	10.7188	10.7442	10.7696	10.7950	10.8204	10.8458	10.8712	10.8966
0.430	10.9220	10.9474	10.9728	10.9982	11.0236	11.0490	11.0744	11.0998	11.1252	11.1506
0.440	11.1760	11.2014	11.2268	11.2522	11.2776	11.3030	11.3284	11.3538	11.3792	11.4046
0.450	11.4300	11.4554	11.4808	11.5062	11.5316	11.5570	11.5824	11.6078	11.6332	11.6586
0.460	11.6840	11.7094	11.7348	11.7602	11.7856	11.8110	11.8364	11.8618	11.8872	11.9126
0.470	11.9380	11.9634	11.9888	12.0142	12.0396	12.0650	12.0904	12.1158	12.1412	12.1666
0.480	12.1920	12.2174	12.2428	12.2682	12.2936	12.3190	12.3444	12.3698	12.3952	12.4206
0.490	12.4460	12.4714	12.4968	12.5222	12.5476	12.5730	12.5984	12.6238	12.6492	12.6746
0.500	12.7000	12.7254	12.7508	12.7762	12.8016	12.8270	12.8524	12.8778	12.9032	12.9286

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 11. *(Continued)* **Decimals of an Inch to Millimeters Conversion**

→ Inches ↓	0.000	0.001	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.005	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.009
	Millimeters									
0.510	12.9540	12.9794	13.0048	13.0302	13.0556	13.0810	13.1064	13.1318	13.1572	13.1826
0.520	13.2080	13.2334	13.2588	13.2842	13.3096	13.3350	13.3604	13.3858	13.4112	13.4366
0.530	13.4620	13.4874	13.5128	13.5382	13.5636	13.5890	13.6144	13.6398	13.6652	13.6906
0.540	13.7160	13.7414	13.7668	13.7922	13.8176	13.8430	13.8684	13.8938	13.9192	13.9446
0.550	13.9700	13.9954	14.0208	14.0462	14.0716	14.0970	14.1224	14.1478	14.1732	14.1986
0.560	14.2240	14.2494	14.2748	14.3002	14.3256	14.3510	14.3764	14.4018	14.4272	14.4526
0.570	14.4780	14.5034	14.5288	14.5542	14.5796	14.6050	14.6304	14.6558	14.6812	14.7066
0.580	14.7320	14.7574	14.7828	14.8082	14.8336	14.8590	14.8844	14.9098	14.9352	14.9606
0.590	14.9860	15.0114	15.0368	15.0622	15.0876	15.1130	15.1384	15.1638	15.1892	15.2146
0.600	15.2400	15.2654	15.2908	15.3162	15.3416	15.3670	15.3924	15.4178	15.4432	15.4686
0.610	15.4940	15.5194	15.5448	15.5702	15.5956	15.6210	15.6464	15.6718	15.6972	15.7226
0.620	15.7480	15.7734	15.7988	15.8242	15.8496	15.8750	15.9004	15.9258	15.9512	15.9766
0.630	16.0020	16.0274	16.0528	16.0782	16.1036	16.1290	16.1544	16.1798	16.2052	16.2306
0.640	16.2560	16.2814	16.3068	16.3322	16.3576	16.3830	16.4084	16.4338	16.4592	16.4846
0.650	16.5100	16.5354	16.5608	16.5862	16.6116	16.6370	16.6624	16.6878	16.7132	16.7386
0.660	16.7640	16.7894	16.8148	16.8402	16.8656	16.8910	16.9164	16.9418	16.9672	16.9926
0.670	17.0180	17.0434	17.0688	17.0942	17.1196	17.1450	17.1704	17.1958	17.2212	17.2466
0.680	17.2720	17.2974	17.3228	17.3482	17.3736	17.3990	17.4244	17.4498	17.4752	17.5006
0.690	17.5260	17.5514	17.5768	17.6022	17.6276	17.6530	17.6784	17.7038	17.7292	17.7546
0.700	17.7800	17.8054	17.8308	17.8562	17.8816	17.9070	17.9324	17.9578	17.9832	18.0086
0.710	18.0340	18.0594	18.0848	18.1102	18.1356	18.1610	18.1864	18.2118	18.2372	18.2626
0.720	18.2880	18.3134	18.3388	18.3642	18.3896	18.4150	18.4404	18.4658	18.4912	18.5166
0.730	18.5420	18.5674	18.5928	18.6182	18.6436	18.6690	18.6944	18.7198	18.7452	18.7706
0.740	18.7960	18.8214	18.8468	18.8722	18.8976	18.9230	18.9484	18.9738	18.9992	19.0246
0.750	19.0500	19.0754	19.1008	19.1262	19.1516	19.1770	19.2024	19.2278	19.2532	19.2786
0.760	19.3040	19.3294	19.3548	19.3802	19.4056	19.4310	19.4564	19.4818	19.5072	19.5326
0.770	19.5580	19.5834	19.6088	19.6342	19.6596	19.6850	19.7104	19.7358	19.7612	19.7866
0.780	19.8120	19.8374	19.8628	19.8882	19.9136	19.9390	19.9644	19.9898	20.0152	20.0406
0.790	20.0660	20.0914	20.1168	20.1422	20.1676	20.1930	20.2184	20.2438	20.2692	20.2946
0.800	20.3200	20.3454	20.3708	20.3962	20.4216	20.4470	20.4724	20.4978	20.5232	20.5486
0.810	20.5740	20.5994	20.6248	20.6502	20.6756	20.7010	20.7264	20.7518	20.7772	20.8026
0.820	20.8280	20.8534	20.8788	20.9042	20.9296	20.9550	20.9804	21.0058	21.0312	21.0566
0.830	21.0820	21.1074	21.1328	21.1582	21.1836	21.2090	21.2344	21.2598	21.2852	21.3106
0.840	21.3360	21.3614	21.3868	21.4122	21.4376	21.4630	21.4884	21.5138	21.5392	21.5646
0.850	21.5900	21.6154	21.6408	21.6662	21.6916	21.7170	21.7424	21.7678	21.7932	21.8186
0.860	21.8440	21.8694	21.8948	21.9202	21.9456	21.9710	21.9964	22.0218	22.0472	22.0726
0.870	22.0980	22.1234	22.1488	22.1742	22.1996	22.2250	22.2504	22.2758	22.3012	22.3266
0.880	22.3520	22.3774	22.4028	22.4282	22.4536	22.4790	22.5044	22.5298	22.5552	22.5806
0.890	22.6060	22.6314	22.6568	22.6822	22.7076	22.7330	22.7584	22.7838	22.8092	22.8346
0.900	22.8600	22.8854	22.9108	22.9362	22.9616	22.9870	23.0124	23.0378	23.0632	23.0886
0.910	23.1140	23.1394	23.1648	23.1902	23.2156	23.2410	23.2664	23.2918	23.3172	23.3426
0.920	23.3680	23.3934	23.4188	23.4442	23.4696	23.4950	23.5204	23.5458	23.5712	23.5966
0.930	23.6220	23.6474	23.6728	23.6982	23.7236	23.7490	23.7744	23.7998	23.8252	23.8506
0.940	23.8760	23.9014	23.9268	23.9522	23.9776	24.0030	24.0284	24.0538	24.0792	24.1046
0.950	24.1300	24.1554	24.1808	24.2062	24.2316	24.2570	24.2824	24.3078	24.3332	24.3586
0.960	24.3840	24.4094	24.4348	24.4602	24.4856	24.5110	24.5364	24.5618	24.5872	24.6126
0.970	24.6380	24.6634	24.6888	24.7142	24.7396	24.7650	24.7904	24.8158	24.8412	24.8666
0.980	24.8920	24.9174	24.9428	24.9682	24.9936	25.0190	25.0444	25.0698	25.0952	25.1206
0.990	25.1460	25.1714	25.1968	25.2222	25.2476	25.2730	25.2984	25.3238	25.3492	25.3746
1.000	25.4000	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

Based on 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters, exactly. All values in this table are exact. Use Table 8a to obtain whole inch and other decimal equivalents to add to decimal equivalents above. *Example:* Convert 10.9983 in. to mm. *Solution:* 10.9983 in. = 254.0 + 25.3492 + 0.00762 = 279.35682 mm.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. Millimeters to Inches Conversion

→ Millimeters ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Inches									
0	…	0.03937	0.07874	0.11811	0.15748	0.19685	0.23622	0.27559	0.31496	0.35433
10	0.39370	0.43307	0.47244	0.51181	0.55118	0.59055	0.62992	0.66929	0.70866	0.74803
20	0.78740	0.82677	0.86614	0.90551	0.94488	0.98425	1.02362	1.06299	1.10236	1.14173
30	1.18110	1.22047	1.25984	1.29921	1.33858	1.37795	1.41732	1.45669	1.49606	1.53543
40	1.57480	1.61417	1.65354	1.69291	1.73228	1.77165	1.81102	1.85039	1.88976	1.92913
50	1.96850	2.00787	2.04724	2.08661	2.12598	2.16535	2.20472	2.24409	2.28346	2.32283
60	2.36220	2.40157	2.44094	2.48031	2.51969	2.55906	2.59843	2.63780	2.67717	2.71654
70	2.75591	2.79528	2.83465	2.87402	2.91339	2.95276	2.99213	3.03150	3.07087	3.11024
80	3.14961	3.18898	3.22835	3.26772	3.30709	3.34646	3.38583	3.42520	3.46457	3.50394
90	3.54331	3.58268	3.62205	3.66142	3.70079	3.74016	3.77953	3.81890	3.85827	3.89764
100	3.93701	3.97638	4.01575	4.05512	4.09449	4.13386	4.17323	4.21260	4.25197	4.29134
110	4.33071	4.37008	4.40945	4.44882	4.48819	4.52756	4.56693	4.60630	4.64567	4.68504
120	4.72441	4.76378	4.80315	4.84252	4.88189	4.92126	4.96063	5.00000	5.03937	5.07874
130	5.11811	5.15748	5.19685	5.23622	5.27559	5.31496	5.35433	5.39370	5.43307	5.47244
140	5.51181	5.55118	5.59055	5.62992	5.66929	5.70866	5.74803	5.78740	5.82677	5.86614
150	5.90551	5.94488	5.98425	6.02362	6.06299	6.10236	6.14173	6.18110	6.22047	6.25984
160	6.29921	6.33858	6.37795	6.41732	6.45669	6.49606	6.53543	6.57480	6.61417	6.65354
170	6.69291	6.73228	6.77165	6.81102	6.85039	6.88976	6.92913	6.96850	7.00787	7.04724
180	7.08661	7.12598	7.16535	7.20472	7.24409	7.28346	7.32283	7.36220	7.40157	7.44094
190	7.48031	7.51969	7.55906	7.59843	7.63780	7.67717	7.71654	7.75591	7.79528	7.83465
200	7.87402	7.91339	7.95276	7.99213	8.03150	8.07087	8.11024	8.14961	8.18898	8.22835
210	8.26772	8.30709	8.34646	8.38583	8.42520	8.46457	8.50394	8.54331	8.58268	8.62205
220	8.66142	8.70079	8.74016	8.77953	8.81890	8.85827	8.89764	8.93701	8.97638	9.01575
230	9.05512	9.09449	9.13386	9.17323	9.21260	9.25197	9.29134	9.33071	9.37008	9.40945
240	9.44882	9.48819	9.52756	9.56693	9.60630	9.64567	9.68504	9.72441	9.76378	9.80315
250	9.84252	9.88189	9.92126	9.96063	10.0000	10.0394	10.0787	10.1181	10.1575	10.1969
260	10.2362	10.2756	10.3150	10.3543	10.3937	10.4331	10.4724	10.5118	10.5512	10.5906
270	10.6299	10.6693	10.7087	10.7480	10.7874	10.8268	10.8661	10.9055	10.9449	10.9843
280	11.0236	11.0630	11.1024	11.1417	11.1811	11.2205	11.2598	11.2992	11.3386	11.3780
290	11.4173	11.4567	11.4961	11.5354	11.5748	11.6142	11.6535	11.6929	11.7323	11.7717
300	11.8110	11.8504	11.8898	11.9291	11.9685	12.0079	12.0472	12.0866	12.1260	12.1654
310	12.2047	12.2441	12.2835	12.3228	12.3622	12.4016	12.4409	12.4803	12.5197	12.5591
320	12.5984	12.6378	12.6772	12.7165	12.7559	12.7953	12.8346	12.8740	12.9134	12.9528
330	12.9921	13.0315	13.0709	13.1102	13.1496	13.1890	13.2283	13.2677	13.3071	13.3465
340	13.3858	13.4252	13.4646	13.5039	13.5433	13.5827	13.6220	13.6614	13.7008	13.7402
350	13.7795	13.8189	13.8583	13.8976	13.9370	13.9764	14.0157	14.0551	14.0945	14.1339
360	14.1732	14.2126	14.2520	14.2913	14.3307	14.3701	14.4094	14.4488	14.4882	14.5276
370	14.5669	14.6063	14.6457	14.6850	14.7244	14.7638	14.8031	14.8425	14.8819	14.9213
380	14.9606	15.0000	15.0394	15.0787	15.1181	15.1575	15.1969	15.2362	15.2756	15.3150
390	15.3543	15.3937	15.4331	15.4724	15.5118	15.5512	15.5906	15.6299	15.6693	15.7087
400	15.7480	15.7874	15.8268	15.8661	15.9055	15.9449	15.9843	16.0236	16.0630	16.1024
410	16.1417	16.1811	16.2205	16.2598	16.2992	16.3386	16.3780	16.4173	16.4567	16.4961
420	16.5354	16.5748	16.6142	16.6535	16.6929	16.7323	16.7717	16.8110	16.8504	16.8898
430	16.9291	16.9685	17.0079	17.0472	17.0866	17.1260	17.1654	17.2047	17.2441	17.2835
440	17.3228	17.3622	17.4016	17.4409	17.4803	17.5197	17.5591	17.5984	17.6378	17.6772
450	17.7165	17.7559	17.7953	17.8346	17.8740	17.9134	17.9528	17.9921	18.0315	18.0709
460	18.1102	18.1496	18.1890	18.2283	18.2677	18.3071	18.3465	18.3858	18.4252	18.4646
470	18.5039	18.5433	18.5827	18.6220	18.6614	18.7008	18.7402	18.7795	18.8189	18.8583
480	18.8976	18.9370	18.9764	19.0157	19.0551	19.0945	19.1339	19.1732	19.2126	19.2520
490	19.2913	19.3307	19.3701	19.4094	19.4488	19.4882	19.5276	19.5669	19.6063	19.6457

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 12. *(Continued)* **Millimeters to Inches Conversion**

→ Millimeters ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Inches									
500	19.6850	19.7244	19.7638	19.8031	19.8425	19.8819	19.9213	19.9606	20.0000	20.0394
510	20.0787	20.1181	20.1575	20.1969	20.2362	20.2756	20.3150	20.3543	20.3937	20.4331
520	20.4724	20.5118	20.5512	20.5906	20.6299	20.6693	20.7087	20.7480	20.7874	20.8268
530	20.8661	20.9055	20.9449	20.9843	21.0236	21.0630	21.1024	21.1417	21.1811	21.2205
540	21.2598	21.2992	21.3386	21.3780	21.4173	21.4567	21.4961	21.5354	21.5748	21.6142
550	21.6535	21.6929	21.7323	21.7717	21.8110	21.8504	21.8898	21.9291	21.9685	22.0079
560	22.0472	22.0866	22.1260	22.1654	22.2047	22.2441	22.2835	22.3228	22.3622	22.4016
570	22.4409	22.4803	22.5197	22.5591	22.5984	22.6378	22.6772	22.7165	22.7559	22.7953
580	22.8346	22.8740	22.9134	22.9528	22.9921	23.0315	23.0709	23.1102	23.1496	23.1890
590	23.2283	23.2677	23.3071	23.3465	23.3858	23.4252	23.4646	23.5039	23.5433	23.5827
600	23.6220	23.6614	23.7008	23.7402	23.7795	23.8189	23.8583	23.8976	23.9370	23.9764
610	24.0157	24.0551	24.0945	24.1339	24.1732	24.2126	24.2520	24.2913	24.3307	24.3701
620	24.4094	24.4488	24.4882	24.5276	24.5669	24.6063	24.6457	24.6850	24.7244	24.7638
630	24.8031	24.8425	24.8819	24.9213	24.9606	25.0000	25.0394	25.0787	25.1181	25.1575
640	25.1969	25.2362	25.2756	25.3150	25.3543	25.3937	25.4331	25.4724	25.5118	25.5512
650	25.5906	25.6299	25.6693	25.7087	25.7480	25.7874	25.8268	25.8661	25.9055	25.9449
660	25.9843	26.0236	26.0630	26.1024	26.1417	26.1811	26.2205	26.2598	26.2992	26.3386
670	26.3780	26.4173	26.4567	26.4961	26.5354	26.5748	26.6142	26.6535	26.6929	26.7323
680	26.7717	26.8110	26.8504	26.8898	26.9291	26.9685	27.0079	27.0472	27.0866	27.1260
690	27.1654	27.2047	27.2441	27.2835	27.3228	27.3622	27.4016	27.4409	27.4803	27.5197
700	27.5591	27.5984	27.6378	27.6772	27.7165	27.7559	27.7953	27.8346	27.8740	27.9134
710	27.9528	27.9921	28.0315	28.0709	28.1102	28.1496	28.1890	28.2283	28.2677	28.3071
720	28.3465	28.3858	28.4252	28.4646	28.5039	28.5433	28.5827	28.6220	28.6614	28.7008
730	28.7402	28.7795	28.8189	28.8583	28.8976	28.9370	28.9764	29.0157	29.0551	29.0945
740	29.1339	29.1732	29.2126	29.2520	29.2913	29.3307	29.3701	29.4094	29.4488	29.4882
750	29.5276	29.5669	29.6063	29.6457	29.6850	29.7244	29.7638	29.8031	29.8425	29.8819
760	29.9213	29.9606	30.0000	30.0394	30.0787	30.1181	30.1575	30.1969	30.2362	30.2756
770	30.3150	30.3543	30.3937	30.4331	30.4724	30.5118	30.5512	30.5906	30.6299	30.6693
780	30.7087	30.7480	30.7874	30.8268	30.8661	30.9055	30.949	30.9843	31.0236	31.0630
790	31.1024	31.1417	31.1811	31.2205	31.2598	31.2992	31.3386	31.3780	31.4173	31.4567
800	31.4961	31.5354	31.5748	31.6142	31.6535	31.6929	31.7323	31.7717	31.8110	31.8504
810	31.8898	31.9291	31.9685	32.0079	32.0472	32.0866	32.1260	32.1654	32.2047	32.2441
820	32.2835	32.3228	32.3622	32.4016	32.4409	32.4803	32.5197	32.5591	32.5984	32.6378
830	32.6772	32.7165	32.7559	32.7953	32.8346	32.8740	32.9134	32.9528	32.9921	33.0315
840	33.0709	33.1102	33.1496	33.1890	33.2283	33.2677	33.3071	33.3465	33.3858	33.4252
850	33.4646	33.5039	33.5433	33.5827	33.6220	33.6614	33.7008	33.7402	33.7795	33.8189
860	33.8583	33.8976	33.9370	33.9764	34.0157	34.0551	34.0945	34.1339	34.1732	34.2126
870	34.2520	34.2913	34.3307	34.3701	34.4094	34.4488	34.4882	34.5276	34.5669	34.6063
880	34.6457	34.6850	34.7244	34.7638	34.8031	34.8425	34.8819	34.9213	34.9606	35.0000
890	35.0394	35.0787	35.1181	35.1575	35.1969	35.2362	35.2756	35.3150	35.3543	35.3937
900	35.4331	35.4724	35.5118	35.5512	35.5906	35.6299	35.6693	35.7087	35.7480	35.7874
910	35.8268	35.8661	35.9055	35.9449	35.9843	36.0236	36.0630	36.1024	36.1417	36.1811
920	36.2205	36.2598	36.2992	36.3386	36.3780	36.4173	36.4567	36.4961	36.5354	36.5748
930	36.6142	36.6535	36.6929	36.7323	36.7717	36.8110	36.8504	36.8898	36.9291	36.9685
940	37.0079	37.0472	37.0866	37.1260	37.1654	37.2047	37.2441	37.2835	37.3228	37.3622
950	37.4016	37.409	37.4803	37.5197	37.5591	37.5984	37.6378	37.6772	37.7165	37.7559
960	37.7953	37.8346	37.8740	37.9134	37.9528	37.9921	38.0315	38.0709	38.1102	38.1496
970	38.1800	38.2283	38.2677	38.3071	38.3465	38.3858	38.4252	38.4646	38.5039	38.5433
980	38.5827	38.6220	38.6614	38.7008	38.7402	38.7795	38.8189	38.8583	38.8976	38.9370
990	38.9764	39.0157	39.0551	39.0945	39.1339	39.1732	39.2126	39.2520	39.2913	39.3307
1000	39.3701	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

Based on 1 inch = 25.4 millimeters, exactly.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13a. Microinches to Micrometers (Microns) Conversion

→ Microinches ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Micrometers (microns)									
0	0	0.0254	0.0508	0.0762	0.1016	0.127	0.1524	0.1778	0.2032	0.2286
10	0.254	0.2794	0.3048	0.3302	0.3556	0.381	0.4064	0.4318	0.4572	0.4826
20	0.508	0.5334	0.5588	0.5842	0.6096	0.635	0.6604	0.6858	0.7112	0.7366
30	0.762	0.7874	0.8128	0.8382	0.8636	0.889	0.9144	0.9398	0.9652	0.9906
40	1.016	1.0414	1.0668	1.0922	1.1176	1.143	1.1684	1.1938	1.2192	1.2446
50	1.27	1.2954	1.3208	1.3462	1.3716	1.397	1.4224	1.4478	1.4732	1.4986
60	1.524	1.5494	1.5748	1.6002	1.6256	1.651	1.6764	1.7018	1.7272	1.7526
70	1.778	1.8034	1.8288	1.8542	1.8796	1.905	1.9304	1.9558	1.9812	2.0066
80	2.032	2.0574	2.0828	2.1082	2.1336	2.159	2.1844	2.2098	2.2352	2.2606
90	2.286	2.3114	2.3368	2.3622	2.3876	2.413	2.4384	2.4638	2.4892	2.5146
100	2.54	2.5654	2.5908	2.6162	2.6416	2.667	2.6924	2.7178	2.7432	2.7686
110	2.794	2.8194	2.8448	2.8702	2.8956	2.921	2.9464	2.9718	2.9972	3.0226
120	3.048	3.0734	3.0988	3.1242	3.1496	3.175	3.2004	3.2258	3.2512	3.2766
130	3.302	3.3274	3.3528	3.3782	3.4036	3.429	3.4544	3.4798	3.5052	3.5306
140	3.556	3.5814	3.6068	3.6322	3.6576	3.683	3.7084	3.7338	3.7592	3.7846
150	3.81	3.8354	3.8608	3.8862	3.9116	3.937	3.9624	3.9878	4.0132	4.0386
160	4.064	4.0894	4.1148	4.1402	4.1656	4.191	4.2164	4.2418	4.2672	4.2926
170	4.318	4.3434	4.3688	4.3942	4.4196	4.445	4.4704	4.4958	4.5212	4.5466
180	4.572	4.5974	4.6228	4.6482	4.6736	4.699	4.7244	4.7498	4.7752	4.8006
190	4.826	4.8514	4.8768	4.9022	4.9276	4.953	4.9784	5.0038	5.0292	5.0546
200	5.08	5.1054	5.1308	5.1562	5.1816	5.207	5.2324	5.2578	5.2832	5.3086
210	5.334	5.3594	5.3848	5.4102	5.4356	5.461	5.4864	5.5118	5.5372	5.5626
220	5.588	5.6134	5.6388	5.6642	5.6896	5.715	5.7404	5.7658	5.7912	5.8166
230	5.842	5.8674	5.8928	5.9182	5.9436	5.969	5.9944	6.0198	6.0452	6.0706
240	6.096	6.1214	6.1468	6.1722	6.1976	6.223	6.2484	6.2738	6.2992	6.3246
250	6.35	6.3754	6.4008	6.4262	6.4516	6.477	6.5024	6.5278	6.5532	6.5786
260	6.604	6.6294	6.6548	6.6802	6.7056	6.731	6.7564	6.7818	6.8072	6.8326
270	6.858	6.8834	6.9088	6.9342	6.9596	6.985	7.0104	7.0358	7.0612	7.0866
280	7.112	7.1374	7.1628	7.1882	7.2136	7.239	7.2644	7.2898	7.3152	7.3406
290	7.366	7.3914	7.4168	7.4422	7.4676	7.493	7.5184	7.5438	7.5692	7.5946
300	7.62	7.6454	7.6708	7.6962	7.7216	7.747	7.7724	7.7978	7.8232	7.8486
310	7.874	7.8994	7.9248	7.9502	7.9756	8.001	8.0264	8.0518	8.0772	8.1026
320	8.128	8.1534	8.1788	8.2042	8.2296	8.255	8.2804	8.3058	8.3312	8.3566
330	8.382	8.4074	8.4328	8.4582	8.4836	8.509	8.5344	8.5598	8.5852	8.6106
340	8.636	8.6614	8.6868	8.7122	8.7376	8.763	8.7884	8.8138	8.8392	8.8646
350	8.89	8.9154	8.9408	8.9662	8.9916	9.017	9.0424	9.0678	9.0932	9.1186
360	9.144	9.1694	9.1948	9.2202	9.2456	9.271	9.2964	9.3218	9.3472	9.3726
370	9.398	9.4234	9.4488	9.4742	9.4996	9.525	9.5504	9.5758	9.6012	9.6266
380	9.652	9.6774	9.7028	9.7282	9.7536	9.779	9.8044	9.8298	9.8552	9.8806
390	9.906	9.9314	9.9568	9.9822	10.0076	10.033	10.0584	10.0838	10.1092	10.1346
400	10.16	10.1854	10.2108	10.2362	10.2616	10.287	10.3124	10.3378	10.3632	10.3886
410	10.414	10.4394	10.4648	10.4902	10.5156	10.541	10.5664	10.5918	10.6172	10.6426
420	10.668	10.6934	10.7188	10.7442	10.7696	10.795	10.8204	10.8458	10.8712	10.8966
430	10.922	10.9474	10.9728	10.9982	11.0236	11.049	11.0744	11.0998	11.1252	11.1506
440	11.176	11.2014	11.2268	11.2522	11.2776	11.303	11.3284	11.3538	11.3792	11.4046
450	11.43	11.4554	11.4808	11.5062	11.5316	11.557	11.5824	11.6078	11.6332	11.6586
460	11.684	11.7094	11.7348	11.7602	11.7856	11.811	11.8364	11.8618	11.8872	11.9126
470	11.938	11.9634	11.9888	12.0142	12.0396	12.065	12.0904	12.1158	12.1412	12.1666
480	12.192	12.2174	12.2428	12.2682	12.2936	12.319	12.3444	12.3698	12.3952	12.4206
490	12.446	12.4714	12.4968	12.5222	12.5476	12.573	12.5984	12.6238	12.6492	12.6746
500	12.7	12.7254	12.7508	12.7762	12.8016	12.827	12.8524	12.8778	12.9032	12.9286

Use the small table below to convert microinches to micrometers for ranges higher than given in the main table above. Appropriate quantities chosen from both tables are simply added to obtain the higher converted value:

µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm
600	15.24	800	20.32	1000	25.4	1500	38.1	2100	53.34	2700	68.58
700	17.78	900	22.86	1200	30.48	1800	45.72	2400	60.96	3000	76.2

Both tables based on 1 microinch = 0.0254 micrometer, exactly. All values in both parts of this table are exact; figures to the right of the last place figures are all zeros.

Example: Convert 1375 µin. to µm:

From lower portion of Table 13a:	1200 µin.	=	30.48 µm
From upper portion of Table 13a:	175 µin.	=	4.445 µm
	1375 µin.	=	34.925 µm

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 13b. Micrometers (Microns) to Microinches Conversion

→ Microns ↓	0	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.05	0.06	0.07	0.08	0.09
	Microinches									
0.00	0.0000	0.3937	0.7874	1.1811	1.5748	1.9685	2.3622	2.7559	3.1496	3.5433
0.10	3.9370	4.3307	4.7244	5.1181	5.5118	5.9055	6.2992	6.6929	7.0866	7.4803
0.20	7.8740	8.2677	8.6614	9.0551	9.4488	9.8425	10.2362	10.6299	11.0236	11.4173
0.30	11.8110	12.2047	12.5984	12.9921	13.3858	13.7795	14.1732	14.5669	14.9606	15.3543
0.40	15.7480	16.1417	16.5354	16.9291	17.3228	17.7165	18.1102	18.5039	18.8976	19.2913
0.50	19.6850	20.0787	20.4724	20.8661	21.2598	21.6535	22.0472	22.4409	22.8346	23.2283
0.60	23.6220	24.0157	24.4094	24.8031	25.1969	25.5906	25.9843	26.3780	26.7717	27.1654
0.70	27.5591	27.9528	28.3465	28.7402	29.1339	29.5276	29.9213	30.3150	30.7087	31.1024
0.80	31.4961	31.8898	32.2835	32.6772	33.0709	33.4646	33.8583	34.2520	34.6457	35.0394
0.90	35.4331	35.8268	36.2205	36.6142	37.0079	37.4016	37.7953	38.1890	38.5827	38.9764
1.00	39.3701	39.7638	40.1575	40.5512	40.9449	41.3386	41.7323	42.1260	42.5197	42.9134
1.10	43.3071	43.7008	44.0945	44.4882	44.8819	45.2756	45.6693	46.0630	46.4567	46.8504
1.20	47.2441	47.6378	48.0315	48.4252	48.8189	49.2126	49.6063	50.0000	50.3937	50.7874
1.30	51.1811	51.5748	51.9685	52.3622	52.7559	53.1496	53.5433	53.9370	54.3307	54.7244
1.40	55.1181	55.5118	55.9055	56.2992	56.6929	57.0866	57.4803	57.8740	58.2677	58.6614
1.50	59.0551	59.4488	59.8425	60.2362	60.6299	61.0236	61.4173	61.8110	62.2047	62.5984
1.60	62.9921	63.3858	63.7795	64.1732	64.5669	64.9606	65.3543	65.7480	66.1417	66.5354
1.70	66.9291	67.3228	67.7165	68.1102	68.5039	68.8976	69.2913	69.6850	70.0787	70.4724
1.80	70.8661	71.2598	71.6535	72.0472	72.4409	72.8346	73.2283	73.6220	74.0157	74.4094
1.90	74.8031	75.1969	75.5906	75.9843	76.3780	76.7717	77.1654	77.5591	77.9528	78.3465
2.00	78.7402	79.1339	79.5276	79.9213	80.3150	80.7087	81.1024	81.4961	81.8898	82.2835
2.10	82.6772	83.0709	83.4646	83.8583	84.2520	84.6457	85.0394	85.4331	85.8268	86.2205
2.20	86.6142	87.0079	87.4016	87.7953	88.1890	88.5827	88.9764	89.3701	89.7638	90.1575
2.30	90.5512	90.9449	91.3386	91.7323	92.1260	92.5197	92.9134	93.3071	93.7008	94.0945
2.40	94.4882	94.8819	95.2756	95.6693	96.0630	96.4567	96.8504	97.2441	97.6378	98.0315
2.50	98.4252	98.8189	99.2126	99.6063	100.0000	100.3937	100.7874	101.1811	101.5748	101.9685
2.60	102.3622	102.7559	103.1496	103.5433	103.9370	104.3307	104.7244	105.1181	105.5118	105.9055
2.70	106.2992	106.6929	107.0866	107.4803	107.8740	108.2677	108.6614	109.0551	109.4488	109.8425
2.80	110.2362	110.6299	111.0236	111.4173	111.8110	112.2047	112.5984	112.9921	113.3858	113.7795
2.90	114.1732	114.5669	114.9606	115.3543	115.7480	116.1417	116.5354	116.9291	117.3228	117.7165
3.00	118.1102	118.5039	118.8976	119.2913	119.6850	120.0787	120.4724	120.8661	121.2598	121.6535
3.10	122.0472	122.4409	122.8346	123.2283	123.6220	124.0157	124.4094	124.8031	125.1969	125.5906
3.20	125.9843	126.3780	126.7717	127.1654	127.5591	127.9528	128.3465	128.7402	129.1339	129.5276
3.30	129.9213	130.3150	130.7087	131.1024	131.4961	131.8898	132.2835	132.6772	133.0709	133.4646
3.40	133.8583	134.2520	134.6457	135.0394	135.4331	135.8268	136.2205	136.6142	137.0079	137.4016
3.50	137.7953	138.1890	138.5827	138.9764	139.3701	139.7638	140.1575	140.5512	140.9449	141.3386
3.60	141.7323	142.1260	142.5197	142.9134	143.3071	143.7008	144.0945	144.4882	144.8819	145.2756
3.70	145.6693	146.0630	146.4567	146.8504	147.2441	147.6378	148.0315	148.4252	148.8189	149.2126
3.80	149.6063	150.0000	150.3937	150.7874	151.1811	151.5748	151.9685	152.3622	152.7559	153.1496
3.90	153.5433	153.9370	154.3307	154.7244	155.1181	155.5118	155.9055	156.2992	156.6929	157.0866
4.00	157.4803	157.8740	158.2677	158.6614	159.0551	159.4488	159.8425	160.2362	160.6299	161.0236
4.10	161.4173	161.8110	162.2047	162.5984	162.9921	163.3858	163.7795	164.1732	164.5669	164.9606
4.20	165.3543	165.7480	166.1417	166.5354	166.9291	167.3228	167.7165	168.1102	168.5039	168.8976
4.30	169.2913	169.6850	170.0787	170.4724	170.8661	171.2598	171.6535	172.0472	172.4409	172.8346
4.40	173.2283	173.6220	174.0157	174.4094	174.8031	175.1969	175.5906	175.9843	176.3780	176.7717
4.50	177.1654	177.5591	177.9528	178.3465	178.7402	179.1339	179.5276	179.9213	180.3150	180.7087
4.60	181.1024	181.4961	181.8898	182.2835	182.6772	183.0709	183.4646	183.8583	184.2520	184.6457
4.70	185.0394	185.4331	185.8268	186.2205	186.6142	187.0079	187.4016	187.7953	188.1890	188.5827
4.80	188.9764	189.3701	189.7638	190.1575	190.5512	190.9449	191.3386	191.7323	192.1260	192.5197
4.90	192.9134	193.3071	193.7008	194.0945	194.4882	194.8819	195.2756	195.6693	196.0630	196.4567
5.00	196.8504	197.2441	197.6378	198.0315	198.4252	198.8189	199.2126	199.6063	200.0000	200.3937

The table given below can be used with the preceding main table to obtain higher converted values, simply by adding appropriate quantities chosen from each table:

µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.	µm	µin.
10	393.7008	20	787.4016	30	1181.1024	40	1574.8032	50	1968.5039
15	590.5512	25	984.2520	35	1378.9528	45	1771.6535	55	2165.3543

Both portions of Table 13b are based on 1 microinch = 0.0254 micrometer, exactly.

Example: Convert 23.55 µm to µin.:

From above table:	20.00 µm	=	787.4016 µin
From main table:	3.55 µm	=	139.7638 µin
	23.55 µm	=	927.1654 µin

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 14a. Feet to Meters Conversion

feet	meters	feet	meters	feet	meters	feet	meters	feet	meters
100	30.48	10	3.048	1	0.3048	0.1	0.03048	0.01	0.003048
200	60.96	20	6.096	2	0.6096	0.2	0.06096	0.02	0.006096
300	91.44	30	9.144	3	0.9144	0.3	0.09144	0.03	0.009144
400	121.92	40	12.192	4	1.2192	0.4	0.12192	0.04	0.012192
500	152.4	50	15.24	5	1.524	0.5	0.1524	0.05	0.01524
600	182.88	60	18.288	6	1.8288	0.6	0.18288	0.06	0.018288
700	213.36	70	21.336	7	2.1336	0.7	0.21336	0.07	0.021336
800	243.84	80	24.384	8	2.4384	0.8	0.24384	0.08	0.024384
900	274.32	90	27.432	9	2.7432	0.9	0.27432	0.09	0.027432
1,000	304.8	100	30.48	10	3.048	1.0	0.3048	0.10	0.03048

1 ft = 0.3048 m, exactly

Table 14b. Meters to Feet Conversion

meters	feet	meters	feet	meters	feet	meters	feet	meters	feet
100	328.084	10	32.808	1	3.281	0.1	0.328	0.01	0.033
200	656.168	20	65.617	2	6.562	0.2	0.656	0.02	0.066
300	984.252	30	98.425	3	9.843	0.3	0.984	0.03	0.098
400	1,312.336	40	131.234	4	13.123	0.4	1.312	0.04	0.131
500	1,640.420	50	164.042	5	16.404	0.5	1.640	0.05	0.164
600	1,968.504	60	196.850	6	19.685	0.6	1.969	0.06	0.197
700	2,296.588	70	229.659	7	22.966	0.7	2.297	0.07	0.230
800	2,624.672	80	262.467	8	26.247	0.8	2.625	0.08	0.262
900	2,952.756	90	295.276	9	29.528	0.9	2.953	0.09	0.295
1,000	3,280.840	100	328.084	10	32.808	1.0	3.281	0.10	0.328

1 m = 3.280840 ft

Table 15a. Miles to Kilometers Conversion

miles	km	miles	km	miles	km	miles	km	miles	km
1,000	1,609.34	100	160.93	10	16.09	1	1.61	0.1	0.16
2,000	3,218.69	200	321.87	20	32.19	2	3.22	0.2	0.32
3,000	4,828.03	300	482.80	30	48.28	3	4.83	0.3	0.48
4,000	6,437.38	400	643.74	40	64.37	4	6.44	0.4	0.64
5,000	8,046.72	500	804.67	50	80.47	5	8.05	0.5	0.80
6,000	9,656.06	600	965.61	60	96.56	6	9.66	0.6	0.97
7,000	11,265.41	700	1,126.54	70	112.65	7	11.27	0.7	1.13
8,000	12,874.75	800	1,287.48	80	128.75	8	12.87	0.8	1.29
9,000	14,484.10	900	1,448.41	90	144.84	9	14.48	0.9	1.45
10,000	16,093.44	1,000	1,609.34	100	160.93	10	16.09	1.0	1.61

1 mile = 1.609344 km, exactly

Table 15b. Kilometers to Miles Conversion

km	miles	km	miles	km	miles	km	miles	km	miles
1,000	621.37	100	62.14	10	6.21	1	0.62	0.1	0.06
2,000	1,242.74	200	124.27	20	12.43	2	1.24	0.2	0.12
3,000	1,864.11	300	186.41	30	18.64	3	1.86	0.3	0.19
4,000	2,485.48	400	248.55	40	24.85	4	2.49	0.4	0.25
5,000	3,106.86	500	310.69	50	31.07	5	3.11	0.5	0.31
6,000	3,728.23	600	372.82	60	37.28	6	3.73	0.6	0.37
7,000	4,349.60	700	434.96	70	43.50	7	4.35	0.7	0.43
8,000	4,970.97	800	497.10	80	49.71	8	4.97	0.8	0.50
9,000	5,592.34	900	559.23	90	55.92	9	5.59	0.9	0.56
10,000	6,213.71	1,000	621.37	100	62.14	10	6.21	1.0	0.62

1 km = 0.6213712 mile

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Area

Table 16. Square Measure and Conversion Factors

Metric System

1 *square kilometer* (km^2) =
100 hectares
1,000,000 square meters
0.3861 square mile
247.1 acres

1 *hectare* (*ha*) =
0.01 square kilometer
100 ares
10,000 square meters
2.471 acres
107,639 square feet

1 *are* (*a*) =
0.0001 square kilometer
100 square meters
0.0247 acre
1076.4 square feet

1 *square meter* (m^2) =
0.000001 square kilometer
100 square decimeters
10000 square centimeters
1,000,000 square millimeters
10.764 square feet
1.196 square yards

1 *square decimeter* (dm^2) =
100 square centimeters

1 *square centimeter* (cm^2) =
0.0001 square meter
100 square millimeters
0.001076 square foot
0.155 square inch

1 *square millimeter* (mm^2) =
0.01 square centimeter
1,000,000 square microns
0.00155 square inch

1 *square micrometer (micron)* (μm^2) =
$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{-12}}$ square meter
0.000001 square millimeter
1×10^{-9} square inch
1549.997 square micro-inch

US System

1 *square mile* (mi^2) =
640 acres
6400 square chains
2.5899 square kilometers

1 *acre* =
10 square chains
4840 square yards
43,560 square feet
a square, 208.71 feet on a side
0.4046856 hectare
40.47 ares
4046.856 square meters

1 *square chain* =
16 square rods
484 square yards
4356 square feet

1 *square rod* =
30.25 square yards
272.25 square feet
625 square links

1 *square yard* (yd^2) =
9 square feet
1296 square inches
0.83612736 square meter
8361.2736 square centimeter
836,127.36 square millimeter

1 *square foot* (ft^2) =
0.111111 square yard
144 square inches
0.09290304 square meter
929.0304 square centimeters
92,903.04 square millimeters

1 *square inch* (in^2) =
0.0007716 square yard
0.006944 square foot
0.00064516 square meter
6.4516 square centimeters
645.16 square millimeters

1 *square mil* (mil^2) =
0.000001 square inch
0.00064516 square millimeter

1 *square micro-inch* (μin^2) =
$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{-12}}$ square inch
0.00064516 square micrometer (micron)

Note: Figures in **Bold** indicate exact conversion values

Measure Used for Diameters and Areas of Electric Wires

1 *circular inch* =
area of 1-inch diameter circle
$\pi/4$ square inch
0.7854 square inch
5.067 square centimeters
1,000,000 circular mils

1 *circular mil* =
area of 0.001-inch diameter circle
$\pi/4$ square mil

1 *square inch* =
1.2732 circular inches
1,273,239 circular mils

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 17a. Square Inches to Square Centimeters Conversion

$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2
100	645.16	10	64.516	1	6.4516	0.1	0.64516	0.01	0.064516
200	1,290.32	20	129.032	2	12.9032	0.2	1.29032	0.02	0.129032
300	1,935.48	30	193.548	3	19.3548	0.3	1.93548	0.03	0.135489
400	2,580.64	40	258.064	4	25.8064	0.4	2.58064	0.04	0.258064
500	3,225.80	50	322.58	5	32.258	0.5	3.2258	0.05	0.32258
600	30,870.96	60	387.096	6	38.7096	0.6	3.87096	0.06	0.387096
700	4,516.12	70	451.612	7	45.1612	0.7	4.51612	0.07	0.451612
800	5,161.28	80	516.128	8	51.6128	0.8	5.16128	0.08	0.516128
900	5,806.44	90	580.644	9	58.0644	0.9	5.80644	0.09	0.580644
1,000	6,451.60	100	645.16	10	64.516	1.0	6.4516	0.10	0.64516

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 $inch^2$ = 6.4516 cm^2, exactly.

Table 17b. Square Centimeters to Square Inches Conversion

cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$	cm^2	$inch^2$
100	15.500	10	1.550	1	0.155	0.1	0.016	0.01	0.002
200	31.000	20	3.100	2	0.310	0.2	0.031	0.02	0.003
300	46.500	30	4.650	3	0.465	0.3	0.047	0.03	0.005
400	62.000	40	6.200	4	0.620	0.4	0.062	0.04	0.006
500	77.500	50	7.750	5	0.75	0.5	0.078	0.05	0.008
600	93.000	60	9.300	6	0.930	0.6	0.093	0.06	0.009
700	108.500	70	10.850	7	1.085	0.7	0.109	0.07	0.011
800	124.000	80	12.400	8	1.240	0.8	0.124	0.08	0.012
900	139.500	90	13.950	9	1.395	0.9	0.140	0.09	0.014
1,000	155.000	100	15.500	10	1.550	1.0	0.155	0.10	0.016

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 cm^2 = 0.1550003 $inch^2$.

Table 18a. Square Feet to Square Meters Conversion

ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2
1,000	92.903	100	9.290	10	0.929	1	0.093	0.1	0.009
2,000	185.806	200	18.581	20	1.858	2	0.186	0.2	0.019
3,000	278.709	300	27.871	30	2.787	3	0.279	0.3	0.028
4,000	371.612	400	37.161	40	3.716	4	0.372	0.4	0.037
5,000	464.515	500	46.452	50	4.645	5	0.465	0.5	0.046
6,000	557.418	600	55.742	60	5.574	6	0.557	0.6	0.056
7,000	650.321	700	65.032	70	6.503	7	0.650	0.7	0.065
8,000	743.224	800	74.322	80	7.432	8	0.743	0.8	0.074
9,000	836.127	900	83.613	90	8.361	9	0.836	0.9	0.084
10,000	929.030	1,000	92.903	100	9.290	10	0.929	1.0	0.093

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 ft^2 = 0.09290304 m^2, exactly.

Table 18b. Square Meters to Square Feet Conversion

m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2	m^2	ft^2
100	1,076.39	10	107.64	1	10.76	0.1	1.08	0.01	0.11
200	2,152.78	20	215.28	2	21.53	0.2	2.15	0.02	0.22
300	3,229.17	30	322.92	3	32.29	0.3	3.23	0.03	0.32
400	4,305.56	40	430.56	4	43.06	0.4	4.31	0.04	0.43
500	5,381.96	50	538.20	5	53.82	0.5	5.38	0.05	0.54
600	6,458.35	60	645.83	6	64.58	0.6	6.46	0.06	0.65
700	7,534.74	70	753.47	7	75.35	0.7	7.53	0.07	0.75
800	8,611.13	80	861.11	8	86.11	0.8	8.61	0.08	0.86
900	9,687.52	90	968.75	9	96.88	0.9	9.69	0.09	0.97
1,000	10,763.91	100	1,076.39	10	107.64	1.0	10.76	0.10	1.08

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 m^2 = 10.76391 ft^2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 19a. Square Yards to Square Meters Conversion

yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2
1000	836.12736	100	83.612736	10	8.3612736	1	0.83612736	0.1	0.083612736
2000	1672.25472	200	167.225472	20	16.7225472	2	1.67225472	0.2	0.167225472
3000	2508.38208	300	250.838208	30	25.0838208	3	2.50838208	0.3	0.250838208
4000	3344.50944	400	334.450944	40	33.4450944	4	3.34450944	0.4	0.334450944
5000	4180.6368	500	418.06368	50	41.806368	5	4.1806368	0.5	0.41806368
6000	5016.76416	600	501.676416	60	50.1676416	6	5.01676416	0.6	0.501676416
7000	5852.89152	700	585.289152	70	58.5289152	7	5.85289152	0.7	0.585289152
8000	6689.01888	800	668.901888	80	66.8901888	8	6.68901888	0.8	0.668901888
9000	7525.14624	900	752.514624	90	75.2514624	9	7.52514624	0.9	0.752514624
10000	8361.2736	1000	836.12736	100	83.612736	10	8.3612736	1	0.83612736

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 yd^2 = 0.83612736 m^2, exactly

Table 19b. Square Meters to Square Yards Conversion

m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2	m^2	yd^2
1000	1195.990046	100	119.5990046	10	11.95990046	1	1.195990046	0.1	0.119599005
2000	2391.980093	200	239.1980093	20	23.91980093	2	2.391980093	0.2	0.239198009
3000	3587.970139	300	358.7970139	30	35.87970139	3	3.587970139	0.3	0.358797014
4000	4783.960185	400	478.3960185	40	47.83960185	4	4.783960185	0.4	0.478396019
5000	5979.950232	500	597.9950232	50	59.79950232	5	5.979950232	0.5	0.597995023
6000	7175.940278	600	717.5940278	60	71.75940278	6	7.175940278	0.6	0.717594028
7000	8371.930324	700	837.1930324	70	83.71930324	7	8.371930324	0.7	0.837193032
8000	9567.92037	800	956.792037	80	95.6792037	8	9.56792037	0.8	0.956792037
9000	10763.91042	900	1076.391042	90	107.6391042	9	10.76391042	0.9	1.076391042
10000	11959.90046	1000	1195.990046	100	119.5990046	10	11.95990046	1	1.195990046

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly; 1 m^2 = 1.195990046 yd^2.

Table 20a. Acres to Hectares Conversion

→ acres ↓	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
	hectares									
0	…	4.047	8.094	12.141	16.187	20.234	24.281	28.328	32.375	36.422
100	40.469	44.515	48.562	52.609	56.656	60.703	64.750	68.797	72.843	76.890
200	80.937	84.984	89.031	93.078	97.125	101.171	105.218	109.265	113.312	117.359
300	121.406	125.453	129.499	133.546	137.593	141.640	145.687	149.734	153.781	157.827
400	161.874	165.921	169.968	174.015	178.062	182.109	186.155	190.202	194.249	198.296
500	202.343	206.390	240.437	214.483	218.530	222.577	226.624	230.671	234.718	238.765
600	242.811	246.858	250.905	254.952	258.999	263.046	267.092	271.139	275.186	279.233
700	283.280	287.327	291.374	295.420	299.467	303.514	307.561	311.608	315.655	319.702
800	323.748	327.795	331.842	335.889	339.936	343.983	348.030	352.076	356.123	360.170
900	364.217	368.264	372.311	376.358	380.404	384.451	388.498	392.545	396.592	400.639
1000	404.686	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

1 acre = 0.4046856 hectare

Table 20b. Hectares to Acres Conversion

→ hectares ↓	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
	acres									
0	…	24.71	49.42	74.13	98.84	123.55	148.26	172.97	197.68	222.39
100	247.11	271.82	296.53	321.24	345.95	370.66	395.37	420.08	444.79	469.50
200	494.21	518.92	543.63	568.34	593.05	617.76	642.47	667.18	691.90	716.61
300	741.32	766.03	790.74	815.45	840.16	864.87	889.58	914.29	939.00	963.71
400	988.42	1013.13	1037.84	1062.55	1087.26	1111.97	1136.68	1161.40	1186.11	1210.82
500	1235.53	1260.24	1284.95	1309.66	1334.37	1359.08	1383.79	1408.50	1433.21	1457.92
600	1482.63	1507.34	1532.05	1556.76	1581.47	1606.19	1630.90	1655.61	1680.32	1705.03
700	1729.74	1754.45	1779.16	1803.87	1828.58	1853.29	1878.00	1902.71	1927.42	1952.13
800	1976.84	2001.55	2026.26	2050.97	2075.69	2100.40	2125.11	2149.82	2174.53	2199.24
900	2223.95	2248.66	2273.37	2298.08	2322.79	2347.50	2372.21	2396.92	2421.63	2446.34
1000	2471.05	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

1 hectare = 2.471054 acres

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Volume

Table 21. Cubic Measure and Conversion Factors

Metric System

1 *cubic meter* (m^3) =
1000 cubic decimeters (liters)
1,000,000 cubic centimeters
1.30795 cubic yards
35.314667 cubic feet
61,023.74 cubic inches
264.17205 US gallons
219.96925 British Imperial gallons

1 *liter (l) or* 1 *cubic decimeter* (dm^3) =
1 liter = volume of 1 kg water at 39.2°F
0.001 cubic meter
1000 cubic centimeters
10 deciliters
0.03531466 cubic foot
61.023744 cubic inches
0.2642 US gallon
0.21997 British Imperial gallon
1.0566882 US quarts
33.814 US fluid ounces

1 *cubic centimeter* (cm^3) =
0.001 liter
1000 cubic millimeters
0.061024 cubic inch

1 *cubic millimeter* = **0.001** cubic centimeters

1 *hectoliter (hl)* = **100** liters

1 *deciliter (dl)* = **10** centiliters

1 *centiliter (cl)* = **10** milliliters

US System

1 *cubic yard* (yd^3) =
27 cubic feet
201.97403 US gallons
46,656 cubic inch
0.7646 cubic meter

1 *cubic foot* (ft^3) =
1728 cubic inches
7.4805 US gallons
6.23 British Imperial gallons
0.02831685 cubic meter
28.31685 liters

1 *cubic inch* (in^3) =
0.55411256 US fluid ounce
16.387064 cubic centimeters

Shipping Measure

For measuring internal capacity of a vessel:
1 *register ton* = 100 cubic feet
For measurement of cargo:
1 *shipping ton* =
Approximately 40 cubic feet of merchandise is considered a shipping ton, unless that bulk would weigh more than 2000 pounds, in which case the freight charge may be based upon weight
40 *cubic feet* =
32.143 US bushels
31.16 Imperial bushels

British (Imperial) Liquid and Dry Measure

1 *British Imperial gallon* =
0.1605 cubic foot
277.42 cubic inches
1.2009 US gallon
160 Imperial fluid ounces
4 Imperial quarts
8 Imperial pints
4.54609 liters

1 *quart* =
2 Imperial pints
8 Imperial gills
40 Imperial fluid ounces
69.354 cubic inches
1.1365225 liters

1 *pint* =
4 Imperial gills
20 Imperial fluid ounces
34.678 cubic inches
568.26125 milliliters

1 *gill* =
5 Imperial fluid ounces
8.669 cubic inches
142.07 milliliters

US Liquid Measure

1 *US gallon* =
0.13368 cubic foot
231 cubic inches
128 US fluid ounces
4 US quarts
8 US pints
0.8327 British Imperial gallon
3.785411784 liters

1 *quart* =
2 US pints
8 US gills
32 US fluid ounces
57.75 cubic inches
0.9463529 liters

1 *pint* =
4 US gills
16 US fluid ounces
28.875 cubic inches
473.176 milliliters

1 *gill* =
1/2 cup = **4** US fluid ounces
7.21875 cubic inches
118.29 milliliters

Note: Figures in **Bold** indicate exact conversion values

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 21. *(Continued)* **Cubic Measure and Conversion Factors**

British (Imperial) Liquid and Dry Measure

1 *British Imperial fluid ounce* =
1.733871 cubic inch
$\frac{1}{160}$ British Imperial gallon
28.41306 milliliters

1 *British Imperial bushel* =
8 Imperial gallons = 1.284 cubic feet
2219.36 cubic inches

US Dry Measure

1 *bushel (US or Winchester struck bushel)* =
1.2445 cubic feet
2150.42 cubic inches
a cylinder 18.5 inches dia., 8 inches deep
a cylinder 47.0 cm dia., 20.3 cm deep

1 *bushel* = **4** pecks = **32** quarts = **64** pints

1 *peck* = **8** quarts = **16** pints

1 *dry quart* = **2** pints =
67.200625 cubic inches
1.101221 liters

1 *heaped bushel* = $1\frac{1}{4}$ struck bushel

1 *cubic foot* = 0.8036 struck bushel

Barrel Measure

1 *drum* =
55 US gallon
7.3524 cubic feet
208.19765 liters

1 *petroleum barrel (bo)* =
42 US gallons
5.614583 cubic feet
158.98729 liters

Apothecaries' Fluid Measure

1 *US fluid ounce* =
1.8046875 cubic inches
$\frac{1}{128}$ US gallon
8 drachms
0.02957353 liter
29.57353 milliliters

1 *fluid drachm* = **60** minims

Old Liquid Measure

1 *barrel (bbl)* = $31\frac{1}{2}$ gallons

1 *hogshead* = 2 barrels = 63 gallons

1 *pipe* or *butt* = 2 hogsheads = 4 barrels = 126 gallons

1 *tierce* = 42 gallons

1 *puncheon* = 2 tierces = 84 gallons

1 *tun* = 2 pipes = 3 puncheons

Other Cubic Measure

The following are used for wood and masonry:

1 *cord of wood* = 4 × 4 × 8 feet = 128 cubic feet

1 *perch of masonry* =
$16\frac{1}{2} \times 1\frac{1}{2} \times 1$ foot = $24\frac{3}{4}$ cubic feet

Note: Figures in **Bold** indicate exact conversion values

Table 22a. Cubic Inches to Cubic Centimeters Conversion

inch³	cm³	inch³	cm³	inch³	cm³	inch³	cm³	inch³	cm³
100	1,638.71	10	163.87	1	16.39	0.1	1.64	0.01	0.16
200	3,277.41	20	327.74	2	32.77	0.2	3.28	0.02	0.33
300	4,916.12	30	491.61	3	49.16	0.3	4.92	0.03	0.49
400	6,554.82	40	655.48	4	65.55	0.4	6.55	0.04	0.66
500	8,193.53	50	819.35	5	81.94	0.5	8.19	0.05	0.82
600	9,832.24	60	983.22	6	98.32	0.6	9.83	0.06	0.98
700	11,470.94	70	1,147.09	7	114.71	0.7	11.47	0.07	1.15
800	13,109.65	80	1,310.96	8	131.10	0.8	13.11	0.08	1.31
900	14,748.35	90	1,474.84	9	147.48	0.9	14.75	0.09	1.47
1,000	16,387.06	100	1,638.71	10	163.87	1.0	16.39	0.10	1.64

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly. 1 inch³ = 16.387064 cm³, exactly

Table 22b. Cubic Centimeters to Cubic Inches Conversion

cm³	inch³	cm³	in³	cm³	inch³	cm³	in³	cm³	in³
1,000	61.024	100	6.102	10	0.610	1	0.061	0.1	0.006
2,000	122.048	200	12.205	20	1.220	2	0.122	0.2	0.012
3,000	183.071	300	18.307	30	1,831	3	0.183	0.3	0.018
4,000	244.095	400	24.410	40	2.441	4	0.244	0.4	0.024
5,000	305.119	500	30.512	50	3.051	5	0.305	0.5	0.031
6,000	366.143	600	36.614	60	3.661	6	0.366	0.6	0.037
7,000	427.166	700	42.717	70	4.272	7	0.427	0.7	0.043
8,000	488.190	800	48.819	80	4.882	8	0.488	0.8	0.049
9,000	549.214	900	54.921	90	5.492	9	0.549	0.9	0.055
10,000	610.238	1,000	61.024	100	6.102	10	0.610	1.0	0.061

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly. 1 cm³ = 0.06102376 inch³

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 23a. Cubic Feet to Cubic Meters Conversion

ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3
1,000	28.317	100	2.832	10	0.283	1	0.028	0.1	0.003
2,000	56.634	200	5.663	20	0.566	2	0.057	0.2	0.006
3,000	84.951	300	8.495	30	0.850	3	0.085	0.3	0.008
4,000	113.267	400	11.327	40	1.133	4	0.113	0.4	0.011
5,000	141.584	500	14.158	50	1.416	5	0.142	0.5	0.014
6,000	169.901	600	16.990	60	1.699	6	0.170	0.6	0.017
7,000	198.218	700	19.822	70	1.982	7	0.198	0.7	0.020
8,000	226.535	800	22.653	80	2.265	8	0.227	0.8	0.023
9,000	254.852	900	25.485	90	2.549	9	0.255	0.9	0.025
10,000	283.168	1,000	28.317	100	2.832	10	0.283	1.0	0.028

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly. 1 $ft^3 = 0.02831685\ m^3$

Table 23b. Cubic Meters to Cubic Feet Conversion

m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3	m^3	ft^3
100	3,531.47	10	353.15	1	35.31	0.1	3.53	0.01	0.35
200	7,062.93	20	706.29	2	70.63	0.2	7.06	0.02	0.71
300	10,594.40	30	1,059.44	3	105.94	0.3	10.59	0.03	1.06
400	14,125.86	40	4,412.59	4	141.26	0.4	14.13	0.04	1.41
500	17,657.33	50	1,756.73	5	176.57	0.5	17.66	0.05	1.77
600	21,188.80	60	2,118.88	6	211.89	0.6	21.19	0.06	2.12
700	24,720.26	70	2,472.03	7	247.20	0.7	24.72	0.07	2.47
800	28,251.73	80	2,825.17	8	282.52	0.8	28.25	0.08	2.83
900	31,783.19	90	3,178.32	9	317.83	0.9	31.78	0.09	3.18
1,000	35,314.66	100	3,531.47	10	353.15	1.0	35.311	0.10	3.53

Based on 1 inch = 2.54 centimeters, exactly. 1 $m^3 = 35.31466\ ft^3$

Table 24a. Cubic Feet to Liters Conversion

ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters
100	2,831.68	10	283.17	1	28.32	0.1	2.83	0.01	0.28
200	5,663.37	20	566.34	2	56.63	0.2	5.66	0.02	0.57
300	8,495.06	30	849.51	3	84.95	0.3	8.50	0.03	0.85
400	11,326.74	40	1,132.67	4	113.27	0.4	11.33	0.04	1.13
500	14,158.42	50	1,415.84	5	141.58	0.5	14.16	0.05	1.42
600	16,990.11	60	1,699.01	6	169.90	0.6	16.99	0.06	1.70
700	19,821.80	70	1,982.18	7	198.22	0.7	19.82	0.07	1.98
800	22,653.48	80	2,263.35	8	226.53	0.8	22.65	0.08	2.27
900	25,485.16	90	2,548.52	9	254.85	0.9	25.49	0.09	2.55
1,000	28,316.85	100	2,831.68	10	283.17	1.0	28.32	0.10	2.83

1 $ft^3 = 28.31685$ liters

Table 24b. Liters to Cubic Feet Conversion

liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3	liters	ft^3
1,000	35.315	100	3.531	10	0.353	1	0.035	0.1	0.004
2,000	70.629	200	7.063	20	0.706	2	0.071	0.2	0.007
3,000	105.944	300	10.594	30	1.059	3	0.106	0.3	0.011
4,000	141.259	400	14.126	40	1.413	4	0.141	0.4	0.014
5,000	176.573	500	17.657	50	1.766	5	0.177	0.5	0.018
6,000	211.888	600	21.189	60	2.119	6	0.212	0.6	0.021
7,000	247.203	700	24.720	70	2.472	7	0.247	0.7	0.025
8,000	282.517	800	28.252	80	2.825	8	0.283	0.8	0.028
9,000	317.832	900	31.783	90	3.178	9	0.318	0.9	0.032
10,000	353.147	1,000	35.315	100	3.531	10	0.353	1.0	0.035

1 liter = 0.03531466 ft^3

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 25a. UK (Imperial) Gallons to Liters Conversion

Imp. gals	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	liters									
0	…	4.546	9.092	13.638	18.184	22.730	27.277	31.823	36.369	40.915
10	45.461	50.007	54.553	59.099	63.645	68.191	72.737	77.284	81.830	86.376
20	90.922	95.468	100.014	104.560	109.106	113.652	118.198	122.744	127.291	131.837
30	136.383	140.929	145.475	150.021	154.567	159.113	163.659	168.205	172.751	177.298
40	181.844	186.390	190.936	195.482	200.028	204.574	209.120	213.666	218.212	222.759
50	227.305	231.851	236.397	240.943	245.489	250.035	254.581	259.127	263.673	268.219
60	272.766	277.312	281.858	286.404	290.950	295.496	300.042	304.588	309.134	313.680
70	318.226	322.773	327.319	331.865	336.411	340.957	345.503	350.049	354.595	359.141
80	363.687	368.233	372.780	377.326	381.872	386.418	390.964	395.510	400.056	404.602
90	409.148	413.694	418.240	422.787	427.333	431.879	436.425	440.971	445.517	450.063
100	454.609	459.155	463.701	468.247	472.794	477.340	481.886	486.432	490.978	495.524

1 UK gallon = 4.546092 liters

Table 25b. Liters to UK (Imperial) Gallons Conversion

liters	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Imperial gallons									
0	…	0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.739	3.959	4.179
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.699	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778
50	10.998	11.218	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.538	12.758	12.978
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777
100	21.997	22.217	22.437	22.657	22.877	23.097	23.317	23.537	23.757	23.977

1 liter = 0.2199692 UK gallons

Table 26a. US Gallons to Liters Conversion

gals	liters	gals	liters	gals	liters	gals	liters	gals	liters
1,000	3,785.41	100	378.54	10	37.85	1	3.79	0.1	0.38
2,000	7,570.82	200	757.08	20	75.71	2	7.57	0.2	0.76
3,000	11,356.24	300	1,135.62	30	113.56	3	11.36	0.3	1.14
4,000	15,141.65	400	1,514.16	40	151.42	4	15.14	0.4	1.51
5,000	18,927.06	500	1,892.71	50	189.27	5	18.93	0.5	1.89
6,000	22,712.47	600	2,271.25	60	227.12	6	22.71	0.6	2.27
7,000	26,497.88	700	2,649.79	70	264.98	7	26.50	0.7	2.65
8,000	30,283.30	800	3,028.33	80	302.83	8	30.28	0.8	3.03
9,000	34,068.71	900	3,406.87	90	340.69	9	34.07	0.9	3.41
10,000	37,854.12	1,000	3,785.41	100	378.54	10	37.85	1.0	3.79

1 US gallon = 3.785412 liters

Table 26b. Liters to US Gallons Conversion

liters	gals	liters	gals	liters	gals	liters	gals	liters	gals
1,000	264.17	100	26.42	10	2.64	1	0.26	0.1	0.03
2,000	528.34	200	52.83	20	5.28	2	0.53	0.2	0.05
3,000	792.52	300	79.25	30	7.93	3	0.79	0.3	0.08
4,000	1,056.69	400	105.67	40	10.57	4	1.06	0.4	0.11
5,000	1,320.86	500	132.09	50	13.21	5	1.32	0.5	0.13
6,000	1,585.03	600	158.50	60	15.85	6	1.59	0.6	0.16
7,000	1,849.20	700	184.92	70	18.49	7	1.85	0.7	0.18
8,000	2,113.38	800	211.34	80	21.13	8	2.11	0.8	0.21
9,000	2,377.55	900	237.75	90	23.78	9	2.38	0.9	0.24
10,000	2,641.72	1,000	264.17	100	26.42	10	2.64	1.0	0.26

1 liter = 0.2641720 US gallon

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 27a. US Fluid Ounces to Milliliters Conversion

oz	mL	oz	mL	oz	mL	oz	mL	oz	mL
100	2957.353	10	295.7353	1	29.57353	0.1	2.957353	0.01	0.2957353
200	5914.706	20	591.4706	2	59.14706	0.2	5.914706	0.02	0.5914706
300	8872.059	30	887.2059	3	88.72059	0.3	8.872059	0.03	0.8872059
400	11829.412	40	1182.9412	4	118.29412	0.4	11.829412	0.04	1.1829412
500	14786.765	50	1478.6765	5	147.86765	0.5	14.786765	0.05	1.4786765
600	17744.118	60	1774.4118	6	177.44118	0.6	17.744118	0.06	1.7744118
700	20701.471	70	2070.1471	7	207.01471	0.7	20.701471	0.07	2.0701471
800	23658.824	80	2365.8824	8	236.58824	0.8	23.658824	0.08	2.3658824
900	26616.177	90	2661.6177	9	266.16177	0.9	26.616177	0.09	2.6616177
1000	29573.53	100	2957.353	10	295.7353	1	29.57353	0.1	2.957353

1 US fluid ounce = 29.57353 milliliters

Table 27b. Milliliters to US Fluid Ounces Conversion

mL	oz	mL	oz	mL	oz	mL	oz	mL	oz
100	3.3814	10	0.33814	1	0.033814	0.1	0.0033814	0.01	0.00033814
200	6.7628	20	0.67628	2	0.067628	0.2	0.0067628	0.02	0.00067628
300	10.1442	30	1.01442	3	0.101442	0.3	0.0101442	0.03	0.00101442
400	13.5256	40	1.35256	4	0.135256	0.4	0.0135256	0.04	0.00135256
500	16.907	50	1.6907	5	0.16907	0.5	0.016907	0.05	0.0016907
600	20.2884	60	2.02884	6	0.202884	0.6	0.0202884	0.06	0.00202884
700	23.6698	70	2.36698	7	0.236698	0.7	0.0236698	0.07	0.00236698
800	27.0512	80	2.70512	8	0.270512	0.8	0.0270512	0.08	0.00270512
900	30.4326	90	3.04326	9	0.304326	0.9	0.0304326	0.09	0.00304326
1000	33.814	100	3.3814	10	0.33814	1	0.033814	0.1	0.0033814

1 milliliter = 0.003814 US fluid ounce

Units of Volumetric Flow Rate

Table 28a. Volume Flow per Second Conversion

To Convert ↓	Multiply By Factor To Obtain →	cm^3/sec	$meter^3$/sec	$foot^3$/sec	liter/sec	gallon/sec (US)	gallon/sec (UK)
cm^3/sec		1	**1×10^{-6}**	3.531×10^{-5}	**0.001**	2.642×10^{-4}	2.19969×10^{-4}
$meter^3$/sec		**1×10^{6}**	1	35.31466	**1,000**	264.172	219.9692
$foot^3$/sec		28,316.846	0.028316	1	28.3168	7.480519	6.22883
liter/sec		**1000**	**0.001**	0.0353146	1	0.264172	0.21996
gallon/sec (US)		3,785.412	3.7854×10^{-3}	0.133368	3.785412	1	0.8326739
gallon/sec (UK)		4,546.092	4.546×10^{-3}	0.1605432	4.546092	1.2009504	1

Table 28b. Volume Flow per Minute Conversion

To Convert ↓	Multiply By Factor To Obtain →	$foot^3$/min	liter/min	gallon/min (US)	gallon/min (UK)
$foot^3$/min		1	28.316846	7.480519	6.2288327
liter/min		0.035314	1	0.264172	0.2199692
gallon/min (US)		0.133680	3.785412	1	0.832673
gallon/min (UK)		0.1605437	4.546092	1.20095	1

Pitot Tube.—A pitot tube is a small, transparent, open tube bent at a right angle. It is a hollow tube that is placed longitudinally in the direction of fluid flow, allowing the flow to enter one end at the fluid's velocity of approach. When the fluids enter the pitot tube, it comes to a stop, and all of the velocity head is converted to pressure head. The difference between the total and static energies is the kinetic energy of the fluid. The velocity of the fluid can be calculated by using the Bernoulli equation.

$$\frac{p_1}{\rho} + \frac{v_1^2}{2} = \frac{p_2}{\rho} \qquad \mathbf{v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2(p_2 - p_1)}{\rho}}\ (SI)} \qquad v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2(p_2 - p_1)g_c}{\rho}}\ (US)$$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Mass and Weight

Table 29. Mass and Weight Conversion Factors

Metric System

1 *metric ton (t)* =
1000 kilograms
2204.6223 pounds
0.9842 gross or long ton (of 2240 pounds)
0.9072 net or short ton (of 2000 pounds)

1 *kilogram (kg)* =
1000 grams = **10** hectograms
2.2046 pounds
35.274 ounces avoirdupois

1 *hectogram (hg)* = **10** dekagrams

1 *dekagram (dag)* = **10** grams

1 *gram (g)* =
10 decigrams
0.0022046 pound
0.03215 ounce Troy
0.03527 ounce avoirdupois
15.432 grains

1 *decigram (dg)* = **10** centigrams

1 *centigram (cg)* = **10** milligrams

Avoirdupois or Commercial Weight

1 *gross or long ton* =
2240 pounds
1.016 metric ton
1016 kilograms

1 *net or short ton* = **2000** pounds

1 *pound* = **16** ounces
7000 grains
0.45359237 kilogram
453.6 grams

1 *ounce* =
$\mathbf{^1/_{16}}$ pound
16 drachms
437.5 grains
28.3495 grams
0.2780139 newton

1 *grain Avoirdupois* =
1 grain apothecaries' weight =
1 grain Troy weight
0.064799 gram

Troy Weight

Used for Weighing Gold and Silver

1 *pound Troy* =
12 ounces Troy = 5760 grains
$\mathbf{^{144}/_{175}}$ avoirdupois pound

1 *ounce Troy* =
20 pennyweights = 480 grains
31.103 grams

1 *pennyweight* = 24 grains

1 *grain Troy* =
1 grain avoirdupois
1 grain apothecaries' weight
0.0648 gram

1 *carat (used in weighing diamonds)* =
3.086 grains
200 milligrams = $\mathbf{^1/_5}$ gram

1 *gold karat* = $\mathbf{^1/_{24}}$ proportion pure gold

Apothecaries' Weight

1 *pound* = 12 ounces = 5760 grains

1 *ounce* =
8 drachms = 480 grains
31.103 grams

1 *drachm* = 3 scruples = 60 grains

1 *scruple* = 20 grains

Old Weight Measures

Measures for weight seldom used in the United States:

1 *gross or long ton* = 20 hundred-weights

1 *hundred-weight* = 4 quarters = 112 pounds

1 *quarter* = 28 pounds

1 *stone* = 14 pounds

1 *quintal* = 100 pounds

Note: Figures in **Bold** indicate exact conversion values

Table 30a. Pounds to Kilograms Conversion

lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg
1,000	453.59	100	45.36	10	4.54	1	0.45	0.1	0.05
2,000	907.18	200	90.72	20	9.07	2	0.91	0.2	0.09
3,000	1,360.78	300	136.08	30	13.61	3	1.36	0.3	0.14
4,000	1,814.37	400	181.44	40	18.14	4	1.81	0.4	0.18
5,000	2,267.96	500	226.80	50	22.68	5	2.27	0.5	0.23
6,000	2,721.55	600	272.16	60	27.22	6	2.72	0.6	0.27
7,000	3,175.15	700	317.51	70	31.75	7	3.18	0.7	0.32
8,000	3,628.74	800	362.87	80	36.29	8	3.63	0.8	0.36
9,000	4,082.33	900	408.23	90	40.82	9	4.08	0.9	0.41
10,000	4,535.92	1,000	453.59	100	45.36	10	4.54	1.0	0.45

1 pound = 0.4535924 kilogram

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 30b. Kilograms to Pounds Conversion

kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb
1,000	2,204.62	100	220.46	10	22.05	1	2.20	0.1	0.22
2,000	4,409.24	200	440.92	20	44.09	2	4.41	0.2	0.44
3,000	6,613.87	300	661.39	30	66.14	3	6.61	0.3	0.66
4,000	8,818.49	400	881.85	40	88.18	4	8.82	0.4	0.88
5,000	11,023.11	500	1,102.31	50	110.23	5	11.02	0.5	1.10
6,000	13,227.73	600	1,322.77	60	132.28	6	13.23	0.6	1.32
7,000	15,432.35	700	1,543.24	70	154.32	7	15.43	0.7	1.54
8,000	17,636.98	800	1,763.70	80	176.37	8	17.64	0.8	1.76
9,000	19,841.60	900	1,984.16	90	198.42	9	19.84	0.9	1.98
10,000	22,046.22	1,000	2,204.62	100	220.46	10	22.05	1.0	2.20

1 kilogram = 2.204622 pounds

Table 31a. Ounces to Grams Conversion

oz	g	oz	g	oz	g	oz	g	oz	g
10	283.50	1	28.35	0.1	2.83	0.01	0.28	0.001	0.03
20	566.99	2	56.70	0.2	5.67	0.02	0.57	0.002	0.06
30	850.49	3	85.05	0.3	8.50	0.03	0.85	0.003	0.09
40	1,133.98	4	113.40	0.4	11.34	0.04	1.13	0.004	0.11
50	1,417.48	5	141.75	0.5	14.17	0.05	1.42	0.005	0.14
60	1,700.97	6	170.10	0.6	17.01	0.06	1.70	0.006	0.17
70	1,984.47	7	198.45	0.7	19.84	0.07	1.98	0.007	0.20
80	2,267.96	8	226.80	0.8	22.68	0.08	2.27	0.008	0.23
90	2,551.46	9	255.15	0.9	25.51	0.09	2.55	0.009	0.26
100	2,834.95	10	283.50	1.0	28.35	0.10	2.83	0.010	0.28

1 ounce = 28.34952 grams

Table 31b. Grams to Ounces Conversion

g	oz	g	oz	g	oz	g	oz	g	oz
100	3.527	10	0.353	1	0.035	0.1	0.004	0.01	0.000
200	7.055	20	0.705	2	0.071	0.2	0.007	0.02	0.001
300	10.582	30	1.058	3	0.106	0.3	0.011	0.03	0.001
400	14.110	40	1.411	4	0.141	0.4	0.014	0.04	0.001
500	17.637	50	1.764	5	0.176	0.5	0.018	0.05	0.002
600	21.164	60	2.116	6	0.212	0.6	0.021	0.06	0.002
700	24.692	70	2.469	7	0.247	0.7	0.025	0.07	0.002
800	28.219	80	2.822	8	0.282	0.8	0.028	0.08	0.003
900	31.747	90	3.175	9	0.317	0.9	0.032	0.09	0.003
1,000	35.274	100	3.527	10	0.353	1.0	0.035	0.10	0.004

1 gram = 0.03527397 ounce

Table 32. Density Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	gram/mL	gram/cm³	kg/m³	lb/inch³	lb/feet³	lb/gallon (US)	ton/yard³
grams/mL	1	1	**1000**	0.036128	62.43	8.345	0.8428
grams/cm³	1	1	**1000**	0.036128	62.43	8.345	0.8428
kilogram/m³	**0.001**	**0.001**	1	3.6128×10^{-5}	0.06243	0.008345	8.428×10^{-4}
lb/inch³	27.67788	27.67788	27677.83	1	1728.0	230.9718	23.32687
lb/feet³	0.01602	0.01602	16.02	5.787×10^{-4}	1	0.1337	0.01349
lb/gallon (US)	0.11983	0.11983	119.83	0.004329	7.481126	1	0.10099
ton/yard³	1.18652	1.18652	1186.52	0.042869	74.07451	9.9015	1

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 33a. Pounds per Cubic Inch to Grams per Cubic Centimeter Conversion

lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³
100	2,767.99	10	276.80	1	27.68	0.1	2.77	0.01	0.28
200	5,535.98	20	553.60	2	55.36	0.2	5.54	0.02	0.55
300	8,303.97	30	830.40	3	83.04	0.3	8.30	0.03	0.83
400	11,071.96	40	1,107.20	4	110.72	0.4	11.07	0.04	1.11
500	13,839.95	50	1,384.00	5	138.40	0.5	13.84	0.05	1.38
600	16,607.94	60	1,660.79	6	166.08	0.6	16.61	0.06	1.66
700	19,375.93	70	1,937.59	7	193.76	0.7	19.38	0.07	1.94
800	22,143.92	80	2,214.39	8	221.44	0.8	22.14	0.08	2.21
900	24,911.91	90	2,491.19	9	249.12	0.9	24.91	0.09	2.49
1,000	27,679.90	100	2,767.99	10	276.80	1.0	27.68	0.10	2.77

$1\ \text{lb/in}^3 = 27.67990\ \text{g/cm}^3$

Table 33b. Grams per Cubic Centimeter to Pounds per Cubic Inch Conversion

g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³	g/cm³	lb/in³
1,000	36.127	100	3.613	10	0.361	1	0.036	0.1	0.004
2,000	72.255	200	7.225	20	0.723	2	0.072	0.2	0.007
3,000	108.382	300	10.838	30	1.084	3	0.108	0.3	0.011
4,000	144.509	400	14.451	40	1.445	4	0.145	0.4	0.014
5,000	180.636	500	18.064	50	1.806	5	0.181	0.5	0.018
6,000	216.764	600	21.676	60	2.168	6	0.217	0.6	0.022
7,000	252.891	700	25.289	70	2.529	7	0.253	0.7	0.025
8,000	289.018	800	28.902	80	2.890	8	0.289	0.8	0.029
9,000	325.146	900	32.515	90	3.251	9	0.325	0.9	0.033
10,000	361.273	1,000	36.127	100	3.613	10	0.361	1.0	0.036

$1\ \text{g/cm}^3 = 0.03612730\ \text{lb/in}^3$

Table 34a. Pounds per Cubic Foot to Kilograms per Cubic Meter Conversion

lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³
100	1,601.85	10	160.18	1	16.02	0.1	1.60	0.01	0.16
200	3,203.69	20	320.37	2	32.04	0.2	3.20	0.02	0.32
300	4,805.54	30	480.55	3	48.06	0.3	4.81	0.03	0.48
400	6,407.38	40	640.74	4	64.07	0.4	6.41	0.04	0.64
500	8,009.23	50	800.92	5	80.09	0.5	8.01	0.05	0.80
600	9,611.08	60	961.11	6	96.11	0.6	9.61	0.06	0.96
700	11,212.92	70	1,121.29	7	112.13	0.7	11.21	0.07	1.12
800	12,814.77	80	1,281.48	8	128.15	0.8	12.81	0.08	1.28
900	14,416.61	90	1,441.66	9	144.17	0.9	14.42	0.09	1.44
1,000	16,018.46	100	1,601.85	10	160.18	1.0	16.02	0.10	1.60

$1\ \text{lb/ft}^3 = 16.01846\ \text{kg/m}^3$

Table 34b. Kilograms per Cubic Meter to Pounds per Cubic Foot Conversion

kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³	kg/m³	lb/ft³
1,000	62.428	100	6.243	10	0.624	1	0.062	0.1	0.006
2,000	124.856	200	12.486	20	1.249	2	0.125	0.2	0.012
3,000	187.284	300	18.728	30	1.873	3	0.187	0.3	0.019
4,000	249.712	400	24.971	40	2.497	4	0.250	0.4	0.025
5,000	312.140	500	31.214	50	3.121	5	0.312	0.5	0.031
6,000	374.568	600	37.457	60	3.746	6	0.375	0.6	0.037
7,000	436.996	700	43.700	70	4.370	7	0.437	0.7	0.044
8,000	499.424	800	49.942	80	4.994	8	0.499	0.8	0.050
9,000	561.852	900	56.185	90	5.619	9	0.562	0.9	0.056
10,000	624.280	1,000	62.428	100	6.243	10	0.624	1.0	0.062

$1\ \text{kg/m}^3 = 0.06242797\ \text{lb/ft}^3$

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Pressure and Stress

Table 35. Pressure and Stress Conversion Factors

1 *kilogram per sq. millimeter* (kg_f/mm^2) =
1422.32 pounds per square inch

1 *kilogram per sq. centimeter* (kg_f/cm^2) =
14.223 pounds per square inch

1 *bar* =
1,000,000 dynes per square centimeter
1000 millibars
100 kilopascals
750.06168 torr
1.0197162 kg force per cm^2
14.50377 pounds per square inch
29.529983 inches of mercury at 0°C
10,197.162 mm water at 4°C
33.455256 feet of water at 4°C

1 *millibar* =
100,000 dynes per square centimeter
100 pascal

1 *torr* =
760 millimeters mercury
$\mathbf{^1/_{760}}$ atmosphere
133.224 pascal
1.333224 millibar

1 *pound per square inch* =
144 pounds per square foot
0.068 atmosphere
2.042 inches of mercury at 62°F
27.7 inches of water at 62°F
2.31 feet of water at 62°F
0.0703 kilogram per square centimeter
6.894757 kilopascals
6894.757 pascal

1 *atmosphere* =
30 inches of mercury at 62°F
14.7 pounds per square inch
2116.3 pounds per square foot
33.95 feet of water at 62°F

1 *foot of water at 62°F* =
62.355 pounds per square foot
0.433 pound per square inch

1 *inch of mercury at 62°F* =
1.132 foot of water
13.58 inches of water
0.491 pound per square inch

1 *inch of water* =
0.0735559 inch mercury at 0°C
1.8683205 torr
0.5780367 ounce force per square inch
0.0024583 atmosphere

Table 36a. Pounds per Square Inch to Kilograms per Square Centimeter Conversion

lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2
1,000	70.307	100	7.031	10	0.703	1	0.070	0.1	0.007
2,000	140.614	200	14.061	20	1.406	2	0.141	0.2	0.014
3,000	210.921	300	21.092	30	2.109	3	0.211	0.3	0.021
4,000	281.228	400	28.123	40	2.812	4	0.281	0.4	0.028
5,000	351.535	500	35.153	50	3.515	5	0.352	0.5	0.035
6,000	421.842	600	42.184	60	4.218	6	0.422	0.6	0.042
7,000	492.149	700	49.215	70	4.921	7	0.492	0.7	0.049
8,000	562.456	800	56.246	80	5.625	8	0.562	0.8	0.056
9,000	632.763	900	63.276	90	6.328	9	0.633	0.9	0.063
10,000	703.070	1,000	70.307	100	7.031	10	0.703	1.0	0.070

1 lb/in^2 = 0.07030697 kg/cm^2

Table 36b. Kilograms per Square Centimeter to Pounds per Square Inch Conversion

kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2	lb/in^2
100	1,422.33	10	142.23	1	14.22	0.1	1.42	0.01	0.14
200	2,844.67	20	284.47	2	28.45	0.2	2.84	0.02	0.28
300	4,267.00	30	426.70	3	42.67	0.3	4.27	0.03	0.43
400	5,689.34	40	568.93	4	56.89	0.4	5.69	0.04	0.57
500	7,111.67	50	711.17	5	71.12	0.5	7.11	0.05	0.71
600	8,534.00	60	853.40	6	85.34	0.6	8.53	0.06	0.85
700	9,956.34	70	995.63	7	99.56	0.7	9.96	0.07	1.00
800	11,378.67	80	1,137.87	8	113.79	0.8	11.38	0.08	1.14
900	12,801.01	90	1,280.10	9	128.01	0.9	12.80	0.09	1.28
1,000	14,223.34	100	1,422.33	10	142.23	1.0	14.22	0.10	1.42

1 kg/cm^2 = 14.22334 lb/in^2

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 37a. Pounds per Square Foot to Kilograms per Square Meter Conversion

lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²
1,000	4,882.43	100	488.24	10	48.82	1	4.88	0.1	0.49
2,000	9,764.86	200	976.49	20	97.65	2	9.76	0.2	0.98
3,000	14,647.29	300	1,464.73	30	146.47	3	14.65	0.3	1.46
4,000	19,529.72	400	1,952.97	40	195.30	4	19.53	0.4	1.95
5,000	24,412.14	500	2,441.21	50	244.12	5	24.41	0.5	2.44
6,000	29,294.57	600	2,929.46	60	292.95	6	29.29	0.6	2.93
7,000	34,177.00	700	3,417.70	70	341.77	7	34.18	0.7	3.42
8,000	39,059.43	800	3,905.94	80	390.59	8	39.06	0.8	3.91
9,000	43,941.86	900	4,394.19	90	439.42	9	43.94	0.9	4.39
10,000	48,824.28	1,000	4,882.43	100	488.24	10	48.82	1.0	4.88

$1\ \text{lb/ft}^2 = 4.882429\ \text{kg/m}^2$

Table 37b. Kilograms per Square Meter to Pounds per Square Foot Conversion

kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²	kg/m²	lb/ft²
1,000	204.82	100	20.48	10	2.05	1	0.20	0.1	0.02
2,000	409.63	200	40.96	20	4.10	2	0.41	0.2	0.04
3,000	614.45	300	61.44	30	6.14	3	0.61	0.3	0.06
4,000	819.26	400	81.93	40	8.19	4	0.82	0.4	0.08
5,000	1,024.08	500	102.41	50	10.24	5	1.02	0.5	0.10
6,000	1,228.90	600	122.89	60	12.29	6	1.23	0.6	0.12
7,000	1,433.71	700	143.37	70	14.34	7	1.43	0.7	0.14
8,000	1,638.53	800	163.85	80	16.39	8	1.64	0.8	0.16
9,000	1,843.34	900	184.33	90	18.43	9	1.84	0.9	0.18
10,000	2,048.16	1,000	204.82	100	20.48	10	2.05	1.0	0.20

$1\ \text{kg/m}^2 = 0.2048161\ \text{lb/ft}^2$

Table 38a. Pounds Per Square Inch to Kilopascals Conversion

→	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
lb/in² ↓	kilopascals									
0	…	6.895	13.790	20.684	27.579	34.474	41.369	48.263	55.158	62.053
10	68.948	75.842	82.737	89.632	96.527	103.421	110.316	117.211	124.106	131.000
20	137.895	144.790	151.685	158.579	165.474	172.369	179.264	186.158	193.053	199.948
30	206.843	213.737	220.632	227.527	234.422	241.316	248.211	255.106	262.001	268.896
40	275.790	282.685	289.580	296.475	303.369	310.264	317.159	324.054	330.948	337.843
50	344.738	351.633	358.527	365.422	372.317	379.212	386.106	393.001	399.896	406.791
60	413.685	420.580	427.475	434.370	441.264	448.159	455.054	461.949	468.843	475.738
70	482.633	489.528	496.423	503.317	510.212	517.107	524.002	530.896	537.791	544.686
80	551.581	558.475	565.370	572.265	579.160	586.054	592.949	599.844	606.739	613.633
90	620.528	627.423	634.318	641.212	648.107	655.002	661.897	668.791	675.686	682.581
100	689.476	696.370	703.265	710.160	717.055	723.949	730.844	737.739	744.634	751.529

$1\ \text{lb/in}^2 = 6.894757$ kPa. *Note:* 1 kilopascal = 1 kilonewton/meter^2.

Table 38b. Kilopascals to Pounds Per Square Inch Conversion

→	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
kPa ↓	lb/in²									
0	…	0.145	0.290	0.435	0.580	0.725	0.870	1.015	1.160	1.305
10	1.450	1.595	1.740	1.885	2.031	2.176	2.321	2.466	2.611	2.756
20	2.901	3.046	3.191	3.336	3.481	3.626	3.771	3.916	4.061	4.206
30	4.351	4.496	4.641	4.786	4.931	5.076	5.221	5.366	5.511	5.656
40	5.802	5.947	6.092	6.237	6.382	6.527	6.672	6.817	6.962	7.107
50	7.252	7.397	7.542	7.687	7.832	7.977	8.122	8.267	8.412	8.557
60	8.702	8.847	8.992	9.137	9.282	9.427	9.572	9.718	9.863	10.008
70	10.153	10.298	10.443	10.588	10.733	10.878	11.023	11.168	11.313	11.458
80	11.603	11.748	11.893	12.038	12.183	12.328	12.473	12.618	12.763	12.908
90	13.053	13.198	13.343	13.489	13.634	13.779	13.924	14.069	14.214	14.359
100	14.504	14.649	14.794	14.939	15.084	15.229	15.374	15.519	15.664	15.809

1 kPa = 0.1450377 lb/in^2. *Note:* 1 kilopascal = 1 kilonewton/meter^2.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 39. Pressure and Stress Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	atmosphere	pascal (N/m²)	dyne/cm²	bar	kg/cm²	kg/m²	psi (lb/inch²)	pound/ft²	inch of water	inch of mercury	millimeter of mercury	ton/ft² (short)
atmosphere	1	101325	1.0133×10^{6}	1.01325	1.03319076	10,331.9076	14.6959488	2,116.216	407.1893	29.9212	760	0.9597354
pascal (N/m²)	9.8692×10^{-6}	1	**10**	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{-5}}$	1.01968×10^{-5}	0.101968	0.00014504	0.02088	0.004019	0.0002953	0.0075	9.472×10^{-6}
dyne/cm²	9.8692×10^{-7}	**0.1**	1	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{-6}}$	1.01968×10^{-6}	0.0101968	1.4504×10^{-5}	0.002088	0.000402	2.95×10^{-5}	0.00075	9.472×10^{-7}
bar	0.98692327	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{5}}$	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{6}}$	1	1.01968	10194.8	14.5037256	2088.5434	401.8646	29.5299	750.06168	0.9471852
kilogram/cm²	0.96784111	98,069.982	980,699.83	0.9807	1	**10000**	14.2232691	2048.6123	394.0945	28.9653	735.58536	0.9289043
kilogram/meter²	9.6787×10^{-5}	9.80699	98.06998	9.807×10^{-5}	**0.0001**	1	0.001422	0.204823	0.039409	0.002896	0.0735585	9.289×10^{-5}
psi (lb/inch²)	0.06804596	6,894.7572	68,947.573	0.068947	0.07029148	703.0446	1	**144**	27.70768	2.03602	51.71493	0.0653061
pound/ft²	4.7254×10^{-4}	47.88025	478.80258	0.000478	0.00048813	4.88225	0.006944	1	0.19241	0.014139	0.3591314	0.0004535
inch of water	0.00245586	248.8400	2488.4003	0.002488	0.00253690	25.3737	0.036091	5.19713	1	0.073482	1.866453	0.002356
inch of mercury	0.03342112	3386.3949	33,863.949	0.033863	0.03452401	345.3039	0.491153	70.72632	13.6087	1	**25.4**	0.0320754
mm of mercury	0.00131579	133.32236	1333.22368	0.001333	0.00135921	13.594615	0.019336	2.784495	0.53577	0.03937	1	0.0012628
ton/ft² (short)	0.94508279	95760.514	957605.14	0.957605	0.9764854	9764.854	13.88888	2000	384.8277	28.27801	718.2616	1

Units of Force

Table 40. Force Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	dyne	gram force	joule/cm	newton	kg_f	lb_f	kip	poundal	ounce force
dyne	1	0.00101968	**0.001**	**0.00001**	1.01968×10^{-6}	2.24809×10^{-6}	2.2481×10^{-9}	7.233013×10^{-5}	3.59694×10^{-5}
gram force	980.7	1	0.9807	0.009807	**0.001**	0.0022047	2.2047×10^{-6}	0.0709341	0.03527521
joule/cm	**1000**	1.0196798	1	**0.01**	0.00101968	0.002248	2.2481×10^{-6}	0.0723301	0.03596942
newton	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{5}}$	101.96798	**100**	1	0.101967982	0.2248089	2.2481×10^{-4}	7.23301	3.596942
kg force	9.807×10^{5}	**1000**	980.7	9.807	1	2.2047	0.0022047	70.934129	35.2752102
lb_f	4.4482×10^{5}	453.57627	444.822	4.44822	0.45357626	1	**0.001**	32.174038	16
kip	4.4482×10^{8}	4.5357×10^{5}	4.4482×10^{5}	4448.2224	453.5762688	**1000**	1	32174.038	16000
poundal	13825.50	14.097586	13.8255	0.1382555	0.014097586	0.0310809	3.1081×10^{-5}	1	0.497296
ounce force	27801.39	28.348519	27.8013	0.278013	0.02834852	0.06250	6.25×10^{-5}	2.010877	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 41a. Pounds Force to Newtons Conversion

$lb_f \rightarrow$ ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	newtons									
0	…	4.448	8.896	13.345	17.793	22.241	26.689	31.138	35.586	40.034
10	44.482	48.930	53.379	57.827	62.275	66.723	71.172	75.620	80.068	84.516
20	88.964	93.413	97.861	102.309	106.757	111.206	115.654	120.102	124.550	128.998
30	133.447	137.895	142.343	146.791	151.240	155.688	160.136	164.584	169.032	173.481
40	177.929	182.377	186.825	191.274	195.722	200.170	204.618	209.066	213.515	217.963
50	222.411	226.859	231.308	235.756	240.204	244.652	249.100	253.549	257.997	262.445
60	266.893	271.342	275.790	280.238	284.686	289.134	293.583	298.031	302.479	306.927
70	311.376	315.824	320.272	324.720	329.168	333.617	338.065	342.513	346.961	351.410
80	355.858	360.306	364.754	369.202	373.651	378.099	382.547	386.995	391.444	395.892
90	400.340	404.788	409.236	413.685	418.133	422.581	427.029	431.478	435.926	440.374
100	444.822	449.270	453.719	458.167	462.615	467.063	471.512	475.960	480.408	484.856

1 pound force = 4.448222 newtons

Table 41b. Newtons to Pounds Force Conversion

N→ ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	pounds force									
0	…	0.22481	0.44962	0.67443	0.89924	1.12404	1.34885	1.57366	1.79847	2.02328
10	2.24809	2.47290	2.69771	2.92252	3.14732	3.37213	3.59694	3.82175	4.04656	4.27137
20	4.49618	4.72099	4.94580	5.17060	5.39541	5.62022	5.84503	6.06984	6.29465	6.51946
30	6.74427	6.96908	7.19388	7.41869	7.64350	7.86831	8.09312	8.31793	8.54274	8.76755
40	8.99236	9.21716	9.44197	9.66678	9.89159	10.1164	10.3412	10.5660	10.7908	11.0156
50	11.2404	11.4653	11.6901	11.9149	12.1397	12.3645	12.5893	12.8141	13.0389	13.2637
60	13.4885	13.7133	13.9382	14.1630	14.3878	14.6126	14.8374	15.0622	15.2870	15.5118
70	15.7366	15.9614	16.1862	16.4110	16.6359	16.8607	17.0855	17.3103	17.5351	17.7599
80	17.9847	18.2095	18.4343	18.6591	18.8839	19.1088	19.3336	19.5584	19.7832	20.0080
90	20.2328	20.4576	20.6824	20.9072	21.1320	21.3568	21.5817	21.8065	22.0313	22.2561
100	22.4809	22.7057	22.9305	23.1553	23.3801	23.6049	23.8297	24.0546	24.2794	24.5042

1 newton = 0.2248089 pound force

Units of Moment and Torque

Table 42. Bending Moment or Torque Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓	Multiply By Factor →	dyne-centimeter	kilogram-meter	newton-millimeter	newton-meter	ounce-inch	pound-foot
dyne-centimeter		1	**1×10^{-7}**	**0.0001**	**1×10^{-7}**	1.416×10^{-5}	7.375×10^{-8}
kilogram-meter		9.80665×10^{7}	1	9806.65	9.80665	1388.78818707	7.233271722
newton-millimeter		**10,000**	0.000101968	1	**0.001**	0.14161193	0.000737562
newton-meter		**1×10^{7}**	0.101967982	**1000**	1	141.61192894	0.737562121
ounce-inch		70615.52	0.000720052	7.061552	0.007061552	1	0.005208333
pound-feet		13,558,180	0.138250025	1355.818	1.355818	192	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Table 43a. Pound-Inches to Newton-Meters Conversion

lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m
100	11.298	10	1.130	1	0.113	0.1	0.011	0.01	0.001
200	22.597	20	2.260	2	0.226	0.2	0.023	0.02	0.002
300	33.895	30	3.390	3	0.339	0.3	0.034	0.03	0.003
400	45.194	40	4.519	4	0.452	0.4	0.045	0.04	0.005
500	56.492	50	5.649	5	0.565	0.5	0.056	0.05	0.006
600	67.791	60	6.779	6	0.678	0.6	0.068	0.06	0.007
700	79.089	70	7.909	7	0.791	0.7	0.079	0.07	0.008
800	90.388	80	9.039	8	0.904	0.8	0.090	0.08	0.009
900	101.686	90	10.169	9	1.017	0.9	0.102	0.09	0.010
1000	112.985	100	11.298	10	1.130	1.0	0.113	0.10	0.011

1 pound-inch = 0.1129848 newton-meter

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 43b. Newton-Meters to Pound-Inches Conversion

N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in	N•m	lb_f-in
100	885.07	10	88.51	1	8.85	0.1	0.89	0.01	0.09
200	1770.15	20	177.01	2	17.70	0.2	1.77	0.02	0.18
300	2655.22	30	265.52	3	26.55	0.3	2.66	0.03	0.27
400	3540.30	40	354.03	4	35.40	0.4	3.54	0.04	0.35
500	4425.37	50	442.54	5	44.25	0.5	4.43	0.05	0.44
600	5310.45	60	531.04	6	53.10	0.6	5.31	0.06	0.53
700	6195.52	40	619.55	7	61.96	0.7	6.20	0.07	0.62
800	7080.60	80	708.06	8	70.81	0.8	7.08	0.08	0.71
900	7965.67	90	796.57	9	79.66	0.9	7.97	0.09	0.80
1000	8850.75	100	885.07	10	88.51	1.0	8.85	0.10	0.89

1 newton-meter = 8.850748 pound-inches

Poundal.—The expression "poundal" is sometimes used in connection with calculations in mechanics. Many mechanical handbooks, however, do not define it, because of its limited use. A poundal is a unit of force and is defined as that force which, acting on a mass of one pound for one second, produces a velocity of one foot per second. A foot-poundal is a unit of energy equal to the energy resulting when a force of one poundal acts through a distance of one foot. In order to reduce foot-poundals to foot-pounds, multiply the number of foot-poundals by 0.03108. Dividing the number of foot-poundals by 32.16 (acceleration due to gravity) will also give foot-pounds.

Units of Energy, Power, and Heat

Table 44a. Energy Conversion Factors

1 *horsepower-hour* =
0.746 kilowatt-hour
1,980,000 foot-pounds
2545 Btu (British thermal units)
2.64 pounds of water evaporated at 212°F
17 pounds of water raised from 62° to 212°F

1 *kilowatt-hour* =
1000 watt-hours
1.34 horsepower-hour
2,655,200 foot-pounds
3,600,000 joules
3415 Btu
3.54 pounds of water evaporated at 212°F
22.8 pounds of water raised from 62° to 212°F

Table 44b. Power Conversion Factors

1 *horsepower* =
746 watts
0.746 kilowatt
33,000 foot-pounds/minute
550 foot-pounds/second
2545 Btu/hour
42.4 Btu/minute
0.71 Btu/second
2.64 pounds of water evaporated per hour at 212°F

1 *kilowatt* =
1000 watts
1.34 horsepower
2,654,200 foot-pounds/hour
44,200 foot-pounds/minute
737 foot-pounds/second
3415 Btu/hour
57 Btu/minute
0.95 Btu/second
3.54 pounds of water evaporated per hour at 212°F

1 *watt* =
1 joule/second
0.00134 horsepower
0.001 kilowatt
3.42 Btu/hour
44.22 foot-pounds/minute
0.74 foot-pounds/second
0.0035 pound of water evaporated per hour at 212°F

Table 44c. Heat Conversion Factors

1 *Btu (British thermal unit)* =
1052 watt-seconds
778 foot-pounds
0.252 kilogram-calorie
0.000292 kilowatt-hour
0.000393, horsepower-hour
0.00104 pound of water evaporated at 212°F
1 *kilogram calorie* = 3.968 Btu

1 *foot-pound* =
1.36 joules
0.000000377 kilowatt-hour
0.00129 Btu
0.0000005 horsepower-hour
1 *kilogram-meter* =
7.233 foot-pounds

1 *joule* =
1 watt-second
0.00000078 kilowatt-hour
0.00095 Btu
0.74 foot-pound
1 *therm* =
100,000 Btu (US)
29.3 kilowatt-hour
105.5 megajoule

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 45a. British Thermal Units to Foot-Pounds

Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb
100	77,826	10	7,783	1	778	0.1	78	0.01	8
200	155,652	20	15,565	2	1,557	0.2	156	0.02	16
300	233,478	30	23,348	3	2,335	0.3	233	0.03	23
400	311,304	40	31,130	4	3,113	0.4	311	0.04	31
500	389,130	50	38,913	5	3,891	0.5	389	0.05	39
600	466,956	60	46,696	6	4,670	0.6	467	0.06	47
700	544,782	70	54,478	7	5,448	0.7	545	0.07	54
800	622,608	80	62,261	8	6,226	0.8	623	0.08	62
900	700,434	90	70,043	9	7,004	0.9	700	0.09	70
1,000	778,260	100	77,826	10	7,783	1.0	778	0.10	78

1 Btu = 778.26 ft-lb, conversion factor defined by International Steam Table Conference, 1929.

Table 45b. Foot-Pounds to British Thermal Units

ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu	ft-lb	Btu
10,000	12.849	1,000	1.285	100	0.128	10	0.013	1	0.001
20,000	25.698	2,000	2.570	200	0.257	20	0.026	2	0.003
30,000	38.548	3,000	3.855	300	0.385	30	0.039	3	0.004
40,000	51.397	4,000	5.140	400	0.514	40	0.051	4	0.005
50,000	64.246	5,000	6.425	500	0.642	50	0.064	5	0.006
60,000	77.095	6,000	7.710	600	0.771	60	0.077	6	0.008
70,000	89.944	7,000	8.994	700	0.899	70	0.090	7	0.009
80,000	102.794	8,000	10.279	800	1.028	80	0.103	8	0.010
90,000	115.643	9,000	11.564	900	1.156	90	0.116	9	0.012
100,000	128.492	10,000	12.849	1,000	1.285	100	0.128	10	0.013

1 ft-lb = 0.00128492 Btu, conversion factor defined by International Steam Table Conference, 1929.

Table 46a. British Thermal Units to Kilojoules

Btu→ ↓	0	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
	kilojoules									
0	…	105.51	211.01	316.52	422.02	527.53	633.03	738.54	844.04	949.55
1000	1055.06	1160.56	1266.07	1371.57	1477.08	1582.58	1688.09	1793.60	1899.10	2004.61
2000	2110.11	2215.62	2321.12	2426.63	2532.13	2637.64	2743.15	2848.65	2954.16	3059.66
3000	3165.17	3270.67	3376.18	3481.68	3587.19	3692.70	3798.20	3903.71	4009.21	4114.72
4000	4220.22	4325.73	4431.24	4536.74	4642.25	4747.75	4853.26	4958.76	5064.27	5169.77
5000	5275.28	5380.79	5486.29	5591.80	5697.30	5802.81	5908.31	6013.82	6119.32	6224.83
6000	6330.34	6435.84	6541.35	6646.85	6752.36	6857.86	6963.37	7068.88	7174.38	7279.89
7000	7385.39	7490.90	7596.40	7701.91	7807.41	7912.92	8018.43	8123.93	8229.44	8334.94
8000	8440.45	8545.95	8651.46	8756.96	8862.47	8967.98	9073.48	9178.99	9284.49	9390.00
9000	9495.50	9601.01	9706.52	9812.02	9917.53	10023.0	10128.5	10234.0	10339.5	10445.1
10,000	10550.6	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

1 Btu = 1055.056 joules

Table 46b. Kilojoules to British Thermal Units

kJ→ ↓	0	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
	British Thermal Units									
0	…	94.78	189.56	284.35	379.13	473.91	568.69	663.47	758.25	853.04
1000	947.82	1042.60	1137.38	1232.16	1326.94	1421.73	1516.51	1611.29	1706.07	1800.85
2000	1895.63	1990.42	2085.20	2179.98	2274.76	2369.54	2464.32	2559.11	2653.89	2748.67
3000	2843.45	2938.23	3033.01	3127.80	3222.58	3317.36	3412.14	3506.92	3601.70	3696.49
4000	3791.27	3886.05	3980.83	4075.61	4170.39	4265.18	4359.96	4454.74	4549.52	4644.30
5000	4739.08	4833.87	4928.65	5023.43	5118.21	5212.99	5307.78	5402.56	5497.34	5592.12
6000	5686.90	5781.68	5876.47	5971.25	6066.03	6160.81	6255.59	6350.37	6445.16	6539.94
7000	6634.72	6729.50	6824.28	6919.06	7013.85	7108.63	7203.41	7298.19	7392.97	7487.75
8000	7582.54	7677.32	7772.10	7866.88	7961.66	8056.44	8151.23	8246.01	8340.79	8435.57
9000	8530.35	8625.13	8719.92	8814.70	8909.48	9004.26	9099.04	9193.82	9288.61	9383.39
10,000	9478.17	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…

1 joule = 0.0009478170 Btu

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 47a. Horsepower to Kilowatts Conversion

hp	kW	hp	kW	hp	kW	hp	kW	hp	kW
1,000	745.7	100	74.6	10	7.5	1	0.7	0.1	0.07
2,000	1,491.4	200	149.1	20	14.9	2	1.5	0.2	0.15
3,000	2,237.1	300	223.7	30	22.4	3	2.2	0.3	0.22
4,000	2,982.8	400	298.3	40	29.8	4	3.0	0.4	0.30
5,000	3,728.5	500	372.8	50	37.3	5	3.7	0.5	0.37
6,000	4,474.2	600	447.4	60	44.7	6	4.5	0.6	0.45
7,000	5,219.9	700	522.0	70	52.2	7	5.2	0.7	0.52
8,000	5,965.6	800	596.6	80	59.7	8	6.0	0.8	0.60
9,000	6,711.3	900	671.1	90	67.1	9	6.7	0.9	0.67
10,000	7,457.0	1,000	745.7	100	74.6	10	7.5	1.0	0.75

1 hp = 0.7456999 kW, based on 1 horsepower = 550 foot-pounds per second.

Table 47b. Kilowatts to Horsepower Conversion

kW	hp	kW	hp	kW	hp	kW	hp	kW	hp
1,000	1,341.0	100	134.1	10	13.4	1	1.3	0.1	0.13
2,000	2,682.0	200	268.2	20	26.8	2	2.7	0.2	0.27
3,000	4,023.1	300	402.3	30	40.2	3	4.0	0.3	0.40
4,000	5,364.1	400	536.4	40	53.6	4	5.4	0.4	0.54
5,000	6,705.1	500	670.5	50	67.1	5	6.7	0.5	0.67
7,000	9,387.2	700	938.7	70	93.9	7	9.4	0.7	0.94
8,000	10,728.2	800	1,072.8	80	107.3	8	10.7	0.8	1.07
9,000	12,069.2	900	1,206.9	90	120.7	9	12.1	0.9	1.21
10,000	13,410.2	1,000	1,341.0	100	134.1	10	13.4	1.0	1.34

1 kW = 1.341022 hp, based on 1 horsepower = 550 foot-pounds per second.

Table 48a. Foot-Pounds to Joules Conversion

ft-lb→ ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	joules									
0	…	1.356	2.712	4.067	5.423	6.779	8.135	9.491	10.847	12.202
10	13.558	14.914	16.270	17.626	18.981	20.337	21.693	23.049	24.405	25.761
20	27.116	28.472	29.828	31.184	32.540	33.895	35.251	36.607	37.963	39.319
30	40.675	42.030	43.386	44.742	46.098	47.454	48.809	50.165	51.521	52.877
40	54.233	55.589	56.944	58.300	59.656	61.012	62.368	63.723	65.079	66.435
50	67.791	69.147	70.503	71.858	73.214	74.570	75.926	77.282	78.637	79.993
60	81.349	82.705	84.061	85.417	86.772	88.128	89.484	90.840	92.196	93.551
70	94.907	96.263	97.619	98.975	100.331	101.686	103.042	104.398	105.754	107.110
80	108.465	109.821	111.177	112.533	113.889	115.245	116.600	117.956	119.312	120.668
90	122.024	123.379	124.735	126.091	127.447	128.803	130.159	131.514	132.870	134.226
100	135.582	136.938	138.293	139.649	141.005	142.361	143.717	145.073	146.428	147.784

1 foot-pound = 1.355818 joules

Table 48b. Joules to Foot-Pounds Conversion

J→ ↓	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	foot-pounds									
0	…	0.7376	1.4751	2.2127	2.9502	3.6878	4.4254	5.1629	5.9005	6.6381
10	7.3756	8.1132	8.8507	9.5883	10.3259	11.0634	11.8010	12.5386	13.2761	14.0137
20	14.7512	15.4888	16.2264	16.9639	17.7015	18.4391	19.1766	19.4142	20.6517	21.3893
30	22.1269	22.8644	23.6020	24.3395	25.0771	25.8147	26.5522	27.2898	28.0274	28.7649
40	29.5025	30.2400	30.9776	31.7152	32.4527	33.1903	33.9279	34.6654	35.4030	36.1405
50	36.8781	37.6157	38.3532	39.0908	39.8284	40.5659	41.3035	42.0410	42.7786	43.5162
60	44.2537	44.9913	45.7289	46.4664	47.2040	47.9415	48.6791	49.4167	50.1542	50.8918
70	51.6293	52.3669	53.1045	53.8420	54.5796	55.3172	56.0547	56.7923	57.5298	58.2674
80	59.0050	59.7425	60.4801	61.2177	61.9552	62.6928	63.4303	64.1679	64.9055	65.6430
90	66.3806	67.1182	67.8557	68.5933	69.3308	70.0684	70.8060	71.5435	72.2811	73.0186
100	73.7562	74.4938	75.2313	75.9689	76.7065	77.4440	78.1816	78.9191	79.6567	80.3943

1 joule = 0.7375621 foot-pound

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 49. Power Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	horsepower	watts	kilowatts	hp (metric)	kg_f-m/s	ft-lb_f/s	ft-lb_f/min	calories/sec	Btu/sec	Btu/hr
horsepower	1	745.699	0.745699	1.0138681	76.04	**550**	**33000**	178.1	0.7068	2544.48
watts	0.00134024	1	**0.001**	0.0013596	0.1019714	0.7375630	44.253727	0.2388363	0.0009478	3.4122
kilowatts	1.34102365	**1000**	1	1.3596196	101.9713158	737.563011	44253.727270	238.836025	0.9478344	3412.20
hp (metric)	0.9863215	735.499	0.735499	1	**75**	542.476857	32548.61114	175.663869	0.6971321	2509.6754
kg_f-m/s	0.01315097	9.8066	0.0098067	0.0133334	1	7.2330352	433.982114	2.3421883	0.0092951	33.4623
ft-lb_f/s	0.00181818	1.35581	0.0013558	0.0018434	0.1382545	1	**60**	0.3238181	0.0012851	4.6263
ft-lb_f/min	3.0303×10^{-5}	0.02259	2.2596×10^{-5}	3.07233×10^{-5}	0.0023042	0.0166667	1	0.0053969	2.1418×10^{-5}	0.077105
calories/sec	0.00561482	4.18696	0.0041869	0.0056927	0.4269512	3.0881527	185.288916	1	0.0039686	14.2868
Btu/sec	1.41482739	1055.035	1.0550353	1.4344484	107.5834748	778.155065	46689.3039	**252**	1	**3600**
Btu/hr	0.0003930	0.29306	0.0002931	0.0003985	0.0298843	0.2161542	12.969251	0.069994	0.0002778	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Table 50. Energy and Work Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	joules	ft-lb_f	ft-poundal	Btu	kg-m	calories	watt-hour	erg	therm	hp-hours	hp-hours (m)
joules	1	0.73756	23.7303	0.0009478	0.101972	0.2388458	0.00027778	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{7}}$	9.478×10^{-9}	3.725×10^{-7}	3.7764×10^{-7}
ft-lb_f	1.355818	1	32.1740	0.00128506	0.138255	0.3238316	0.00037661	1.356×10^{7}	1.285×10^{-8}	5.0505×10^{-7}	5.1201×10^{-7}
ft-poundal	0.04214	0.03108	1	3.994×10^{-5}	0.0042971	0.010065	1.1705×10^{-5}	4.214×10^{5}	3.994×10^{-10}	1.5697×10^{-8}	1.5914×10^{-8}
Btu	1055.055	778.1692	25036.8174	1	107.5875	252	0.29307071	1.055×10^{10}	1×10^{-5}	0.0003930	0.0003984
kg-m	9.80665	7.233013	232.714987	0.00929524	1	2.342278	0.00272416	9.807×10^{7}	9.294×10^{-8}	3.653×10^{-6}	3.703×10^{-6}
calories	4.1868	3.088025	99.35427	0.00396832	0.42691934	1	0.001163	4.187×10^{7}	3.968×10^{-8}	1.5596×10^{-6}	1.5811×10^{-6}
watt-hour	**3600**	2655.2237	85429.168	3.4121416	367.09783	859.845227	1	3.6×10^{10}	3.412×10^{-5}	0.001341	0.0013595
erg	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{-7}}$	7.375×10^{-8}	2.373×10^{-6}	9.478×10^{-11}	1.0197×10^{-8}	2.3884×10^{-8}	2.778×10^{-11}	1	9.478×10^{-16}	3.725×10^{-14}	3.776×10^{-14}
therm	1.055×10^{8}	7.781×10^{7}	2.503×10^{7}	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{5}}$	1.0758×10^{7}	2.5196×10^{7}	29307.222	1.055×10^{15}	1	39.3020	39.843655
hp-hours	2.6845×10^{6}	1.9799×10^{6}	6.3704×10^{7}	2544.4150	2.7374×10^{5}	6.4118×10^{5}	745.6944	2.685×10^{13}	0.025444	1	1.0137839
hp-hours (m)	2.648×10^{6}	1.953×10^{6}	6.2837×10^{7}	2509.8197	2.70×10^{5}	6.3246×10^{5}	735.555	2.648×10^{13}	0.025098	0.9864034	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 51. Thermal Conductance Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓	Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	Btu-ft/(h-ft²-°F)	Btu-in/(h-ft²-°F)	Btu-in/(sec-ft²-°F)	cal/(cm-s-°C)	kcal/(cm-s-°C)	kcal/(m-h-°C)	erg/(cm-s-°C)	joules/(m-h-°C)	watt/(ft-°C)	watt/(m-°K)
Btu-ft/(h-ft²-°F)		1	**12**	0.00333333	0.00413385	4.13386×10^{-6}	1.488188976	173076.378	6230.0055	0.5274738	1.73056
Btu-in/(h-ft²-°F)		0.083333	1	0.000277778	0.00034448	3.44448×10^{-7}	0.124015748	14423.0315	519.25573	0.04395615	0.14421
Btu-in/(sec-ft²-°F)		**300**	**3600**	1	1.24001574	0.001240157	446.4566929	5.1925×10^{7}	1.8693×10^{6}	158.24214	519.167
cal/(cm-s-°C)		241.9047	2902.8571	0.806349	1	**0.001**	**360**	4.1868×10^{7}	1.507×10^{6}	127.598424	418.63
kcal/(cm-s-°C)		2.419×10^{5}	2.902×10^{6}	806.3492	**1000**	1	**360000**	4.1868×10^{10}	1.507×10^{9}	1.276×10^{5}	4.1863×10^{5}
kcal/(m-h-°C)		0.671957	8.063349	0.00223985	0.00277778	2.77778×10^{-6}	1	116300	4186.8	0.35444	1.16286
erg/(cm- s-°C)		5.7778×10^{-6}	6.933×10^{-5}	1.92593×10^{-8}	2.3884×10^{-8}	2.3884×10^{-11}	8.5984×10^{-6}	1	0.036	3.0476×10^{-6}	1×10^{-5}
joules/(m-h-°C)		1.6051×10^{-4}	0.00192616	5.35045×10^{-7}	6.6354×10^{-7}	6.6354×10^{-10}	0.000238874	27.781095	1	8.4666×10^{-5}	2.7777×10^{-4}
watt/(ft-°C)		1.895828	22.75	0.006319429	0.00783708	7.83709×10^{-6}	2.821351461	328123.1749	11811.024	1	3.28
watt/(m-°K)		0.5778486	6.934183	0.001926162	0.002388744	2.38874×10^{-6}	0.859947925	$\mathbf{1 \times 10^{5}}$	**3600**	0.304878	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Conduction.—Whenever the molecules of a working substance, whether liquid, solid, or vapor, are restrained so that no appreciable relative translatory motion occurs among them, the kinetic energies of the various molecules will be largely due to vibration. If a temperature difference exists in the working substance, some adjacent molecules will necessarily be at different temperatures, hence will possess different degrees of vibratory motion. In this case the molecule which is vibrating most rapidly will transfer some of its motion to the slower-moving molecule next to it, the one then undergoing a decrease in temperature and the other an increase. In this way, thermal energy will be transferred by the mechanism of conduction from the region of higher to the region of lower temperature. The process will continue spontaneously until the entire system has reached a uniform equilibrium temperature.

In contrast to radiation, conduction only occurs when a working substance is present and when the molecules of that working substance retain practically fixed positions with respect to one another. Thus, conductive heat flow would always occur through solids, but would take place in liquids and vapors only if special conditions prevented or greatly reduced the normal translatory motion of the molecules within these materials.

Fuel Oil, Coal, and Gas.—One gallon of fuel oil equals 13.1 pounds of coal, equals 160 cubic feet of natural gas. One barrel of fuel oil equals 0.278 ton of coal, equals 6806 cubic feet of natural gas. One pound of fuel oil equals 1.75 pounds of coal, equals 21.3 cubic feet of natural gas. One pound of coal equals 0.763 gallon of oil, equals 12.2 cubic feet of natural gas. One ton of coal equals 3.6 barrels of oil, equals 24,500 cubic feet of natural gas. The heating value of the average mid-continent fuel oil having a Baume gravity of 26.9 is 19,376 British thermal units per pound of oil, and 143,950 British thermal units per gallon of oil. The specific gravity and the heat value may be expressed approximately by means of a simple formula, as follows: BTU per pound = 18,650 + 40 × (Degrees Baume – 10).

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc.
ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Temperature

There are two thermometer scales in general use: the Fahrenheit (°F), which is used in the United States and in other countries still using the English system of units, and the Celsius (°C) or Centigrade used throughout the rest of the world.

In the Fahrenheit thermometer, the freezing point of water is marked at 32 degrees on the scale and the boiling point, at atmospheric pressure, at 212 degrees. The distance between these two points is divided into 180 degrees. On the Celsius scale, the freezing point of water is at 0 degree and the boiling point at 100 degrees. The following formulas may be used for converting temperatures given on any one of the scales to the other scale:

$$°F = \frac{9}{5}°C + 32 \qquad C = \frac{5}{9}(°F - 32)$$

Tables on the pages that follow can be used to convert degrees Celsius into degrees Fahrenheit or vice versa, and to convert the absolute temperatures of Kelvin and Rankine scales. In the event that the conversions are not covered in the tables, use those applicable portions of the formulas given above and in Table 52 for converting.

Table 52. Temperature Conversion Fomulas

To Convert	To	Use Formula	To Convert	To	Use Formula
Celsius, t_C	K, t_K	$t_K = t_C + 273.15$	Kelvin, t_K	°C, t_C	$t_C = t_K - 273.15$
	°F, t_F	$t_F = 1.8t_C + 32$		°F, t_F	$t_F = 1.8t_K - 459.67$
	°R, t_R	$t_R = 9(t_C + 273.15)/5$		°R, t_R	$t_R = 9/5 \times t_K$
Fahrenheit, t_F	K, t_K	$t_K = (t_F + 459.67)/1.8$	Rankine, t_R	K, t_K	$t_K = 5/9 \times t_R$
	°C, t_C	$t_C = (t_F - 32)/1.8$		°C, t_C	$t_C = 5/9 \times t_R - 273.15$
	°R, t_R	$t_R = t_F + 459.67$		°F, t_F	$t_F = t_R - 459.67$

Kelvin temperatures are expressed by K without use of the degree symbol (°).

Absolute Temperature and Absolute Zero.—A point has been determined on the thermometer scale, by theoretical considerations, that is called the *absolute zero* and beyond which a further decrease in temperature is inconceivable. This point is located at –273.15 degrees Celsius or –459.67 degrees F. A temperature reckoned from this point, instead of from the zero on the ordinary thermometers, is called absolute temperature. The absolute temperature scale corresponding to Celsius is the Kelvin scale; the absolute scale corresponding to Fahrenheit is the Rankine. 0 K and 0 °R are both absolute zero. Conversions from Celsius and Fahrenheit are obtained as follows:

$$K = °C + 273.15 \qquad °R = °F + 459.67$$

Measures of the Quantity of Thermal Energy.—The unit of quantity of thermal energy used in the United States is the British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat or thermal energy required to raise the temperature of one pound of pure water one degree F. (American National Standard abbreviation, Btu; conventional British symbol, B.Th.U.) The French thermal unit, or *kilogram calorie,* is the quantity of heat or thermal energy required to raise the temperature of one kilogram of pure water one degree C. One kilogram calorie = 3.968 British thermal units = 1000 gram calories. The number of foot-pounds of mechanical energy equivalent to one British thermal unit is called the *mechanical equivalent of heat* and equals 778 foot-pounds.

In the modern metric or SI system of units, the unit for thermal energy is the *joule* (J); a commonly used multiple being the kilojoule (kJ), or 1000 joules. See page 2831 for an explanation of the SI System. One kilojoule = 0.9478 Btu. Also in the SI System, the *watt* (W), equal to joule per second (J/s), is used for power, where 1 watt = 3.412 Btu per hour.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 53. °C → °F and °R Temperature Conversion °F → °C and K

K	°C		°F	°R	K	°C		°F	°R	K	°C		°F	°R
0.0	−273.2	**−459.7**	…	…	261.5	−11.7	**11**	51.8	511.5	293.7	20.6	**69**	156.2	615.9
5.4	−267.8	**−450**	…	…	262.0	−11.1	**12**	53.6	513.3	294.3	21.1	**70**	158.0	617.7
10.9	−262.2	**−440**	…	…	262.6	−10.6	**13**	55.4	515.1	294.8	21.7	**71**	159.8	619.5
16.5	−256.7	**−430**	…	…	263.2	−10.0	**14**	57.2	516.9	295.4	22.2	**72**	161.6	621.3
22.0	−251.1	**−420**	…	…	263.7	−9.4	**15**	59.0	518.7	295.9	22.8	**73**	163.4	623.1
27.6	−245.6	**−410**	…	…	264.3	−8.9	**16**	60.8	520.5	296.5	23.3	**74**	165.2	624.9
33.2	−240.0	**−400**	…	…	264.8	−8.3	**17**	62.6	522.3	297.0	23.9	**75**	167.0	626.7
38.7	−234.4	**−390**	…	…	265.4	−7.8	**18**	64.4	524.1	297.6	24.4	**76**	168.8	628.5
44.3	−228.9	**−380**	…	…	265.9	−7.2	**19**	66.2	525.9	298.2	25.0	**77**	170.6	630.3
49.8	−223.3	**−370**	…	…	266.5	−6.7	**20**	68.0	527.7	298.7	25.6	**78**	172.4	632.1
55.4	−217.8	**−360**	…	…	267.0	−6.1	**21**	69.8	529.5	299.3	26.1	**79**	174.2	633.9
60.9	−212.2	**−350**	…	…	267.6	−5.6	**22**	71.6	531.3	299.8	26.7	**80**	176.0	635.7
66.5	−206.7	**−340**	…	…	268.2	−5.0	**23**	73.4	533.1	300.4	27.2	**81**	177.8	637.5
72.0	−201.1	**−330**	…	…	268.7	−4.4	**24**	75.2	534.9	300.9	27.8	**82**	179.6	639.3
77.6	−195.6	**−320**	…	…	269.3	−3.9	**25**	77.0	536.7	301.5	28.3	**83**	181.4	641.1
83.2	−190.0	**−310**	…	…	269.8	−3.3	**26**	78.8	538.5	302.0	28.9	**84**	183.2	642.9
88.7	−184.4	**−300**	…	…	270.4	−2.8	**27**	80.6	540.3	302.6	29.4	**85**	185.0	644.7
94.3	−178.9	**−290**	…	…	270.9	−2.2	**28**	82.4	542.1	303.2	30.0	**86**	186.8	646.5
99.8	−173.3	**−280**	…	…	271.5	−1.7	**29**	84.2	543.9	303.7	30.6	**87**	188.6	648.3
103.6	−169.5	**−273.2**	−459.7	0.0	272.0	−1.1	**30**	86.0	545.7	304.3	31.1	**88**	190.4	650.1
105.4	−167.8	**−270**	−454.0	5.7	272.6	−0.6	**31**	87.8	547.5	304.8	31.7	**89**	192.2	651.9
110.9	−162.2	**−260**	−436.0	23.7	273.2	0.0	**32**	89.6	549.3	305.4	32.2	**90**	194.0	653.7
116.5	−156.7	**−250**	−418.0	41.7	273.7	0.6	**33**	91.4	551.1	305.9	32.8	**91**	195.8	655.5
122.0	−151.1	**−240**	−400.0	59.7	274.3	1.1	**34**	93.2	552.9	306.5	33.3	**92**	197.6	657.3
127.6	−145.6	**−230**	−382.0	77.7	274.8	1.7	**35**	95.0	554.7	307.0	33.9	**93**	199.4	659.1
133.2	−140.0	**−220**	−364.0	95.7	275.4	2.2	**36**	96.8	556.5	307.6	34.4	**94**	201.2	660.9
138.7	−134.4	**−210**	−346.0	113.7	275.9	2.8	**37**	98.6	558.3	308.2	35.0	**95**	203.0	662.7
144.3	−128.9	**−200**	−328.0	131.7	276.5	3.3	**38**	100.4	560.1	308.7	35.6	**96**	204.8	664.5
149.8	−123.3	**−190**	−310.0	149.7	277.0	3.9	**39**	102.2	561.9	309.3	36.1	**97**	206.6	666.3
155.4	−117.8	**−180**	−292.0	167.7	277.6	4.4	**40**	104.0	563.7	309.8	36.7	**98**	208.4	668.1
160.9	−112.2	**−170**	−274.0	185.7	278.2	5.0	**41**	105.8	565.5	310.4	37.2	**99**	210.2	669.9
166.5	−106.7	**−160**	−256.0	203.7	278.7	5.6	**42**	107.6	567.3	310.9	37.8	**100**	212.0	671.7
172.0	−101.1	**−150**	−238.0	221.7	279.3	6.1	**43**	109.4	569.1	311.5	38.3	**101**	213.8	673.5
177.6	−95.6	**−140**	−220.0	239.7	279.8	6.7	**44**	111.2	570.9	312.0	38.9	**102**	215.6	675.3
183.2	−90.0	**−130**	−202.0	257.7	280.4	7.2	**45**	113.0	572.7	312.6	39.4	**103**	217.4	677.1
188.7	−84.4	**−120**	−184.0	275.7	280.9	7.8	**46**	114.8	574.5	313.2	40.0	**104**	219.2	678.9
194.3	−78.9	**−110**	−166.0	293.7	281.5	8.3	**47**	116.6	576.3	313.7	40.6	**105**	221.0	680.7
199.8	−73.3	**−100**	−148.0	311.7	282.0	8.9	**48**	118.4	578.1	314.3	41.1	**106**	222.8	682.5
205.4	−67.8	**−90**	−130.0	329.7	282.6	9.4	**49**	120.2	579.9	314.8	41.7	**107**	224.6	684.3
210.9	−62.2	**−80**	−112.0	347.7	283.2	10.0	**50**	122.0	581.7	315.4	42.2	**108**	226.4	686.1
216.5	−56.7	**−70**	−94.0	365.7	283.7	10.6	**51**	123.8	583.5	315.9	42.8	**109**	228.2	687.9
222.0	−51.1	**−60**	−76.0	383.7	284.3	11.1	**52**	125.6	585.3	316.5	43.3	**110**	230.0	689.7
227.6	−45.6	**−50**	−58.0	401.7	284.8	11.7	**53**	127.4	587.1	317.0	43.9	**111**	231.8	691.5
233.2	−40.0	**−40**	−40.0	419.7	285.4	12.2	**54**	129.2	588.9	317.6	44.4	**112**	233.6	693.3
238.7	−34.4	**−30**	−22.0	437.7	285.9	12.8	**55**	131.0	590.7	318.2	45.0	**113**	235.4	695.1
244.3	−28.9	**−20**	−4.0	455.7	286.5	13.3	**56**	132.8	592.5	318.7	45.6	**114**	237.2	696.9
249.8	−23.3	**−10**	14.0	473.7	287.0	13.9	**57**	134.6	594.3	319.3	46.1	**115**	239.0	698.7
255.4	−17.8	**0**	32.0	491.7	287.6	14.4	**58**	136.4	596.1	319.8	46.7	**116**	240.8	700.5
255.9	−17.2	**1**	33.8	493.5	288.2	15.0	**59**	138.2	597.9	320.4	47.2	**117**	242.6	702.3
256.5	−16.7	**2**	35.6	495.3	288.7	15.6	**60**	140.0	599.7	320.9	47.8	**118**	244.4	704.1
257.0	−16.1	**3**	37.4	497.1	289.3	16.1	**61**	141.8	601.5	321.5	48.3	**119**	246.2	705.9
257.6	−15.6	**4**	39.2	498.9	289.8	16.7	**62**	143.6	603.3	322.0	48.9	**120**	248.0	707.7
258.2	−15.0	**5**	41.0	500.7	290.4	17.2	**63**	145.4	605.1	322.6	49.4	**121**	249.8	709.5
258.7	−14.4	**6**	42.8	502.5	290.9	17.8	**64**	147.2	606.9	323.2	50.0	**122**	251.6	711.3
259.3	−13.9	**7**	44.6	504.3	291.5	18.3	**65**	149.0	608.7	323.7	50.6	**123**	253.4	713.1
259.8	−13.3	**8**	46.4	506.1	292.0	18.9	**66**	150.8	610.5	324.3	51.1	**124**	255.2	714.9
260.4	−12.8	**9**	48.2	507.9	292.6	19.4	**67**	152.6	612.3	324.8	51.7	**125**	257.0	716.7
260.9	−12.2	**10**	50.0	509.7	293.2	20.0	**68**	154.4	614.1	325.4	52.2	**126**	258.8	718.5

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Table 53. *(Continued)* **°C → °F and °R Temperature Conversion °F → °C and K**

K	°C		°F	°R	K	°C		°F	°R	K	°C		°F	°R
325.9	52.8	**127**	260.6	720.3	357.6	84.4	**184**	363.2	822.9	741.5	468.3	**875**	1607.0	2066.7
326.5	53.3	**128**	262.4	722.1	358.2	85.0	**185**	365.0	824.7	755.4	482.2	**900**	1652.0	2111.7
327.0	53.9	**129**	264.2	723.9	358.7	85.6	**186**	366.8	826.5	769.3	496.1	**925**	1697.0	2156.7
327.6	54.4	**130**	266.0	725.7	359.3	86.1	**187**	368.6	828.3	783.2	510.0	**950**	1742.0	2201.7
328.2	55.0	**131**	267.8	727.5	359.8	86.7	**188**	370.4	830.1	797.0	523.9	**975**	1787.0	2246.7
328.7	55.6	**132**	269.6	729.3	360.4	87.2	**189**	372.2	831.9	810.9	537.8	**1000**	1832.0	2291.7
329.3	56.1	**133**	271.4	731.1	360.9	87.8	**190**	374.0	833.7	838.7	565.6	**1050**	1922.0	2381.7
329.8	56.7	**134**	273.2	732.9	361.5	88.3	**191**	375.8	835.5	866.5	593.3	**1100**	2012.0	2471.7
330.4	57.2	**135**	275.0	734.7	362.0	88.9	**192**	377.6	837.3	894.3	621.1	**1150**	2102.0	2561.7
330.9	57.8	**136**	276.8	736.5	362.6	89.4	**193**	379.4	839.1	922.0	648.9	**1200**	2192.0	2651.7
331.5	58.3	**137**	278.6	738.3	363.2	90.0	**194**	381.2	840.9	949.8	676.7	**1250**	2282.0	2741.7
332.0	58.9	**138**	280.4	740.1	363.7	90.6	**195**	383.0	842.7	977.6	704.4	**1300**	2372.0	2831.7
332.6	59.4	**139**	282.2	741.9	364.3	91.1	**196**	384.8	844.5	1005.4	732.2	**1350**	2462.0	2921.7
333.2	60.0	**140**	284.0	743.7	364.8	91.7	**197**	386.6	846.3	1033.2	760.0	**1400**	2552.0	3011.7
333.7	60.6	**141**	285.8	745.5	365.4	92.2	**198**	388.4	848.1	1060.9	787.8	**1450**	2642.0	3101.7
334.3	61.1	**142**	287.6	747.3	365.9	92.8	**199**	390.2	849.9	1088.7	815.6	**1500**	2732.0	3191.7
334.8	61.7	**143**	289.4	749.1	366.5	93.3	**200**	392.0	851.7	1116.5	843.3	**1550**	2822.0	3281.7
335.4	62.2	**144**	291.2	750.9	367.0	93.9	**201**	393.8	853.5	1144.3	871.1	**1600**	2912.0	3371.7
335.9	62.8	**145**	293.0	752.7	367.6	94.4	**202**	395.6	855.3	1172.0	898.9	**1650**	3002.0	3461.7
336.5	63.3	**146**	294.8	754.5	368.2	95.0	**203**	397.4	857.1	1199.8	926.7	**1700**	3092.0	3551.7
337.0	63.9	**147**	296.6	756.3	368.7	95.6	**204**	399.2	858.9	1227.6	954.4	**1750**	3182.0	3641.7
337.6	64.4	**148**	298.4	758.1	369.3	96.1	**205**	401.0	860.7	1255.4	982.2	**1800**	3272.0	3731.7
338.2	65.0	**149**	300.2	759.9	369.8	96.7	**206**	402.8	862.5	1283.2	1010.0	**1850**	3362.0	3821.7
338.7	65.6	**150**	302.0	761.7	370.4	97.2	**207**	404.6	864.3	1310.9	1037.8	**1900**	3452.0	3911.7
339.3	66.1	**151**	303.8	763.5	370.9	97.8	**208**	406.4	866.1	1338.7	1065.6	**1950**	3542.0	4001.7
339.8	66.7	**152**	305.6	765.3	371.5	98.3	**209**	408.2	867.9	1366.5	1093.3	**2000**	3632.0	4091.7
340.4	67.2	**153**	307.4	767.1	372.0	98.9	**210**	410.0	869.7	1394.3	1121.1	**2050**	3722.0	4181.7
340.9	67.8	**154**	309.2	768.9	372.6	99.4	**211**	411.8	871.5	1422.0	1148.9	**2100**	3812.0	4271.7
341.5	68.3	**155**	311.0	770.7	373.2	100.0	**212**	413.6	873.3	1449.8	1176.7	**2150**	3902.0	4361.7
342.0	68.9	**156**	312.8	772.5	377.6	104.4	**220**	428.0	887.7	1477.6	1204.4	**2200**	3992.0	4451.7
342.6	69.4	**157**	314.6	774.3	383.2	110.0	**230**	446.0	905.7	1505.4	1232.2	**2250**	4082.0	4541.7
343.2	70.0	**158**	316.4	776.1	388.7	115.6	**240**	464.0	923.7	1533.2	1260.0	**2300**	4172.0	4631.7
343.7	70.6	**159**	318.2	777.9	394.3	121.1	**250**	482.0	941.7	1560.9	1287.8	**2350**	4262.0	4721.7
344.3	71.1	**160**	320.0	779.7	408.2	135.0	**275**	527.0	986.7	1588.7	1315.6	**2400**	4352.0	4811.7
344.8	71.7	**161**	321.8	781.5	422.0	148.9	**300**	572.0	1031.7	1616.5	1343.3	**2450**	4442.0	4901.7
345.4	72.2	**162**	323.6	783.3	435.9	162.8	**325**	617.0	1076.7	1644.3	1371.1	**2500**	4532.0	4991.7
345.9	72.8	**163**	325.4	785.1	449.8	176.7	**350**	662.0	1121.7	1672.0	1398.9	**2550**	4622.0	5081.7
346.5	73.3	**164**	327.2	786.9	463.7	190.6	**375**	707.0	1166.7	1699.8	1426.7	**2600**	4712.0	5171.7
347.0	73.9	**165**	329.0	788.7	477.6	204.4	**400**	752.0	1211.7	1727.6	1454.4	**2650**	4802.0	5261.7
347.6	74.4	**166**	330.8	790.5	491.5	218.3	**425**	797.0	1256.7	1755.4	1482.2	**2700**	4892.0	5351.7
348.2	75.0	**167**	332.6	792.3	505.4	232.2	**450**	842.0	1301.7	1783.2	1510.0	**2750**	4982.0	5441.7
348.7	75.6	**168**	334.4	794.1	519.3	246.1	**475**	887.0	1346.7	1810.9	1537.8	**2800**	5072.0	5531.7
349.3	76.1	**169**	336.2	795.9	533.2	260.0	**500**	932.0	1391.7	1838.7	1565.6	**2850**	5162.0	5621.7
349.8	76.7	**170**	338.0	797.7	547.0	273.9	**525**	977.0	1436.7	1866.5	1593.3	**2900**	5252.0	5711.7
350.4	77.2	**171**	339.8	799.5	560.9	287.8	**550**	1022.0	1481.7	1894.3	1621.1	**2950**	5342.0	5801.7
350.9	77.8	**172**	341.6	801.3	574.8	301.7	**575**	1067.0	1526.7	1922.0	1648.9	**3000**	5432.0	5891.7
351.5	78.3	**173**	343.4	803.1	588.7	315.6	**600**	1112.0	1571.7	2033.2	1760.0	**3200**	5792.0	6251.7
352.0	78.9	**174**	345.2	804.9	602.6	329.4	**625**	1157.0	1616.7	2144.3	1871.1	**3400**	6152.0	6611.7
352.6	79.4	**175**	347.0	806.7	616.5	343.3	**650**	1202.0	1661.7	2255.4	1982.2	**3600**	6512.0	6971.7
353.2	80.0	**176**	348.8	808.5	630.4	357.2	**675**	1247.0	1706.7	2366.5	2093.3	**3800**	6872.0	7331.7
353.7	80.6	**177**	350.6	810.3	644.3	371.1	**700**	1292.0	1751.7	2477.6	2204.4	**4000**	7232.0	7691.7
354.3	81.1	**178**	352.4	812.1	658.2	385.0	**725**	1337.0	1796.7	2588.7	2315.6	**4200**	7592.0	8051.7
354.8	81.7	**179**	354.2	813.9	672.0	398.9	**750**	1382.0	1841.7	2699.8	2426.7	**4400**	7952.0	8411.7
355.4	82.2	**180**	356.0	815.7	685.9	412.8	**775**	1427.0	1886.7	2810.9	2537.8	**4600**	8312.0	8771.7
355.9	82.8	**181**	357.8	817.5	699.8	426.7	**800**	1472.0	1931.7	2922.0	2648.9	**4800**	8672.0	9131.7
356.5	83.3	**182**	359.6	819.3	713.7	440.6	**825**	1517.0	1976.7	3033.2	2760.0	**5000**	9032.0	9491.7
357.0	83.9	**183**	361.4	821.1	727.6	454.4	**850**	1562.0	2021.7	…	…	…	…	…

Table converts °C → °F and °R, or °F → °C and K. Find "convert from" temperature in **bold** column and read result from °F and °R or °C and K columns. *Example 1:* 183 °C = 361.4 °F and 821.1 °R. *Example 2:* 183 °F = 83.9 °C and 357.0 K.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Velocity and Acceleration

Table 54. Velocity Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By Factor To Obtain →	cm/sec	m/sec	km/hr	ft/sec	ft/min	ft/hr	knot[a]	mile/hr
cm/sec	1	**0.01**	**0.036**	0.032808	1.9685	118.110236	0.01944	0.02237
m/sec	**100**	1	**3.6**	3.2808	196.8504	11811.0236	1.94384	2.236936
km/hr	27.77778	0.27778	1	0.911344	54.6806	3280.8399	0.53995	0.621371
ft/sec	30.48	0.3048	1.09728	1	**60**	**3600**	0.59248	0.681818
ft/min	0.5080	0.00508	0.018288	0.016667	1	**60**	9.8×10^{-3}	0.011364
ft/hr	0.008467	8.47×10^{-5}	3.05×10^{-4}	2.78×10^{-4}	0.01666	1	1.6×10^{-4}	1.89×10^{-4}
knot	51.444	0.51444	1.852	1.687808	101.2686	6076.11549	1	1.15167
mile/hr	44.704	0.447040	1.609344	1.466667	**88**	**5280**	0.8689	1

[a] Knot means nautical miles per hour

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Table 55. Acceleration Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By Factor To Obtain →	cm/sec^2	m/sec^2	km/hr^2	feet/sec^2	ft/hr^2	knot/sec	miles/hr^2
cm/sec^2	1	**0.01**	129.6	0.0328	4.252×10^5	0.0194384	80.529
m/sec^2	**100**	1	12960	3.280	4.252×10^7	1.943844	8052.970
km/hr^2	0.007716	7.72×10^{-5}	1	2.532×10^{-4}	3280.84	0.0001499	0.6213
ft/sec^2	30.48	0.3048	3950.20	1	1.296×10^7	0.592483	2454.545
ft/hr^2	2.35×10^{-6}	2.35×10^{-5}	3.048×10^{-4}	7.716×10^{-8}	1	4.571×10^{-8}	1.893×10^{-4}
knot/sec	51.44444	0.514444	6667.2	1.687809	2.187×10^7	1	4142.8060
mile/hr^2	0.0124	0.000124	1.609	4.074×10^{-4}	**5280**	0.00024138	1

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Units of Viscosity

Table 56a. Oil Viscosity Conversion Factors

To Convert ↓ / Multiply By This Factor To Obtain →	Poise (*P*)	Centi-poise (*Z*)	Reyn (μ)	Stoke (*S*)	Centistoke (*ν*)
Poise (*P*) $\frac{\text{dyne-s}}{\text{cm}^2} = \frac{\text{gram mass}}{\text{cm-s}}$	1	100	1.45×10^{-5}	$\frac{1}{\rho}$	$\frac{100}{\rho}$
Centipoise (*Z*) $\frac{\text{dyne-s}}{100\ \text{cm}^2} = \frac{\text{gram mass}}{100\ \text{cm-s}}$	0.01	1	1.45×10^{-7}	$\frac{0.01}{\rho}$	$\frac{1}{\rho}$
Reyn (μ) $\frac{\text{lb force-s}}{\text{in}^2}$	6.9×10^4	6.9×10^6	1	$\frac{6.9 \times 10^4}{\rho}$	$\frac{6.9 \times 10^6}{\rho}$
Stoke (*S*) $\frac{\text{cm}^2}{\text{s}}$	ρ	100ρ	$1.45 \times 10^{-5}\,\rho$	1	100
Centistoke (*ν*) $\frac{\text{cm}^2}{100\text{s}}$	0.01ρ	ρ	$1.45 \times 10^{-7}\,\rho$	0.01	1

Table 56b. Additional Viscosity Conversion Factors

Multiply	By	To Obtain	Multiply	By	To Obtain
centipoise	**0.001**	pascal-second (Pa-s)	pascal-second	**1000**	centipoise
centistoke	**0.000001**	meter^2/second (m^2/s)	pascal-second	**10**	poise
stoke	**0.0001**	meter^2/second (m^2/s)	poise	**0.1**	pascal-second (Pa-s)

ρ = Specific gravity of the oil.

Figures in **bold face** indicate the conversion is exact

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Units of Moment of Inertia and Momentum

Table 57. Moment of Inertia Conversion Factors

Multiply	By	To Obtain
Moment of Inertia and Section Modulus		
moment of inertia [kg•m^2]	23.73036	pound-foot^2
moment of inertia [kg•m^2]	3417.171	pound-inch^2
moment of inertia [lb•ft^2]	0.04214011	kilogram-meter^2 (kg•m^2)
moment of inertia [lb•inch^2]	0.0002926397	kilogram-meter^2 (kg•m^2)
moment of section [foot^4]	0.008630975	meter^4 (m^4)
moment of section [inch^4]	41.62314	centimeter^4
moment of section [meter^4]	115.8618	foot^4
moment of section [centimeter^4]	0.02402510	inch^4
section modulus [foot^3]	0.02831685	meter^3 (m^3)
section modulus [inch^3]	0.00001638706	meter^3 (m^3)
section modulus [meter^3]	35.31466	foot^3
section modulus [meter^3]	61,023.76	inch^3

Table 58. Momentum Conversion Factors

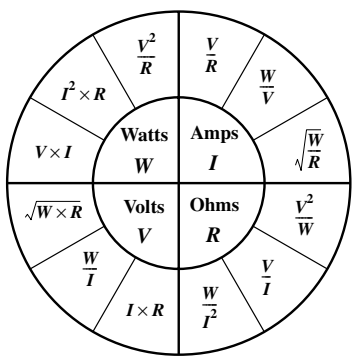
Multiply	By	To Obtain
Momentum		
kilogram-meter/second	7.233011	pound-foot/second
kilogram-meter/second	86.79614	pound-inch/second
pound-foot/second	0.1382550	kilogram-meter/second (kg•m/s)
pound-inch/second	0.01152125	kilogram-meter/second (kg•m/s)

Miscellaneous Measuring Units

1 *great gross* = 12 gross = 144 dozen
1 *gross* = 12 dozen = 144 units
1 *dozen* = 12 units

1 *quire* = 24 sheets
1 *ream* = 20 quires = 480 sheets
1 *ream printing paper* = 500 sheets
1 *score* = 20 units

Ohm's Law.—The following figure represents basic electrical relationships. This chart has been formatted in such a way that each variable has been related to the other three variables. This figure is simply for reference.



Circular Model of Electrical Relations

Key to variables:
V = Voltage (Volts)
R = Resistance (Ohms)
I = Current (Amps)
W = Power (Watts)

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

Windchill Temperature.—Windchill temperature is a measure of the combined cooling effect of wind and temperature. The formula below is used for calculating windchill by the National Weather Service (NWS) in the United States:

$$\text{Windchill Temperature } °\text{F} = 35.74 + 0.6215T - 35.75(V^{0.16}) + 0.4275T(V^{0.16})$$

where $T =$ air temperature in °F

$V =$ wind speed in miles per hour (mph) measured at NWS standard height, 33 feet

The formula calculates the chilling effect of wind on the human body at 5 feet above the ground and assumes no influence caused by sunlight (that is, as if the temperature and wind speed measurements were made at night in clear sky conditions). Windchill temperature is only defined for temperatures at or below 50 degrees F and wind speeds above 3 mph. Bright sunshine may increase the windchill temperature by 10 to 18 degrees F.

Wind Velocity to Pressure

V	*P*	*V*	*P*	*V*	*P*
5	0.1	35	4.9	65	16.9
10	0.4	40	6.4	70	19.6
15	0.9	45	8.1	75	22.5
20	1.6	50	10.0	80	25.6
25	2.5	55	12.1	100	40.0
30	3.6	60	14.4		

The formula is $P = 0.004V^2$ where V = wind velocity, mph; P = pressure, lbs/sq ft.

Phonetic Alphabet

A	Alfa	J	Juliett	S	Sierra	1	One
B	Bravo	K	Kilo	T	Tango	2	Two
C	Charlie	L	Lima	U	Uniform	3	Three
D	Delta	M	Mike	V	Victor	4	Four
E	Echo	N	November	W	Whiskey	5	Five
F	Foxtrot	O	Oscar	X	X-Ray	6	Six
G	Golf	P	Papa	Y	Yankee	7	Seven
H	Hotel	Q	Quebec	Z	Zulu	8	Eight
I	India	R	Romeo	0	Zero	9	Nine

Daylight Savings Time.—The Congress of the United States of America extended Daylight Savings Time (DST) by about a month, effective from 2007. Before 2007, DST began at 2:00 AM on the first Sunday in April and ended at 2:00 AM on the last Sunday in October.

Beginning 2007, DST begins at 2:00 AM on the second Sunday in March and ends at 2:00 AM on the first Sunday in November.

Bel.—The *bel* is the fundamental division of a logarithmic scale for expressing the ratio of two amounts of power. The number of bels denoting such a ratio is the logarithm to the base 10 of this ratio. Thus, if P_1 and P_2 are two amounts of power, and N the number of bels denoting their ratio, then $N = \log \frac{P_1}{P_2}$ bels.

The *decibel* is one-tenth of a bel and is commonly abbreviated as db. This unit is used extensively in the measurement of sound volume in telephone and radio transmission and reception, and in noise measurements of various kinds.

Copyright 2020, Industrial Press, Inc. ebooks.industrialpress.com

INDEX

A

Abbreviations
  mathematical signs and 2829
  scientific and engineering terms 2827–2830
  symbols for mechanics 2830
  welding 1621
ABMA (American Boiler Manufacturers Association) 288
Abrasive
  belt
    applications 1333
    cutting-off difficulties 1336
    grinding 1333, 1334
    rotative speeds 1337
    selection 1333, 1334
  contact wheel selecting 1335
  cubic boron nitride (CBN) 869, 1281, 1298, 1307
  cutting 1333–1335
  diamond 1280
  grains and materials 1280
  grinding 1280
  honing 1336–1338
  lapping 1338–1341
  polishing 1636
  stones for honing 1337
Abrasive flow machining (AFM) 1345
Abrasive water jet machining (AWJM) 1344
ABS (American Bureau of Shipping) 1620
Absolute
  system of measurement 157
  temperature 2870
  viscosity 2504
  zero 381, 2749, 2870
Acceleration 157, 182–185
  angular 183–183
    torque, relation to 187
  constant 182
    linear motion with 182–183
    rotary motion with 184–185
  of gravity g 157
  linear, of point on rotating body 184
  resulting from unbalanced forces 186–188
Acme leadscrews 2640
Acme threads
  abbreviations 2055, 2056
  angle of thread 2054
Acme threads (*continued*)
  ANSI/ASME Standard 2054–2077
  centralizing 2061–2072
  checking 2136
  diameter allowances 2054
  diameter tolerances 2054
  drill sizes for 1009
  form 2054
  general purpose 2054–2061
  length of engagement 2054
  multiple start 2055, 2056
  stub 2072–2075
    60-degree 2075
    alternative 2075
  thread profile form 2054–2063
  tolerances application 2066
  types of 2054, 2063, 2066
  wire sizes for checking 2136
Acoustic emission testing (AE) 1630
Active face width 2204
Acute-angle triangles, solution 76, 100, 101
Addendum 2204
  chordal 2223, 2224
  modification 2252
    involute spur and helical gears 2252
Addition
  fractions and mixed numbers 6–7
  matrix 124
Additive manufacturing (AM)
  metal 1555
    ASTM and ISO Standards 1555, 1565
      design standards 1565
      materials and processes 1565
      test methods 1565
    binder jetting (BJ) 1555, 1559
    comparing AM with conventional processes 1561
    directed energy deposition (DED) 1555, 1560, 1561
      hybrid processes 1561
      powder-fed DED 1560
      wire-fed DED 1561
    material extrusion 1555
    material jetting 1555
    powder bed fusion (PBF) 1555, 1556
      electron beam melting (EBM) 1558
      selective laser melting (SLM) 1556
    sheet lamination 1555

Additive manufacturing (AM) (*continued*)
metal
unique capabilities of metal AM 1563
assemblies and part integration 1564
complex fins and blades 1564
internal channels 1564
internal structures and topological optimization 1564
reasons to choose AM 1564
vat photopolymerization 1555
workflow 1555
plastics 611–615
binder jetting (BJ) 614–615
considerations for tooling and parts 615–617
developing prototypes 601, 611
fused deposition modeling (FDM) 614
material jetting (MJ) 615
multijet fusion (MJF) 615
selective laser sintering (SLS) 613–614
stereolithography (SLA) 612
Additives
lubricant properties 2508
oil 2506
plastics 557
Adhesives
acrylic 2660
bonding 2659
moisture-cured polyurethane 2662
one-component 2661
retaining compounds 2662
rubber cements 2662
sealants 2663
threadlocking 2663
two-component 2659
types 2659, 2660
Adjoint of a matrix 126
Adjustable-bed press 1464
Adjusting gear blanks for milling 2267
Aerospace screws, bolts and nuts 2035
Aero-thread 2119
AFM (abrasive flow machining) 1345
Aging of metal 458
AGMA (American Gear Manufacturers Association) 2207, 2243
Air 381
absolute pressure 2816–2817
adiabatic expansion and compression 2815
density 2750
expansion and compression
horsepower to compress 2815–2817
isothermal 2814
work to compress 2816
flow in pipes 2777
gage pressure 2816–2817
power or work to compress 2815, 2818
Air (*continued*)
volume transmitted through pipes 2777
weight of 378
work to compress 2814
Air bending 1417
Airdry wood, weight per cubic foot 384
Airy points 753
AISC (American Institute of Steel Construction) 285, 287, 1620
AISI (American Iron and Steel Institute) 395, 397
AISI-SAE
alloy steels 401–402
carbon steels 399–400
Algebra 24–37
algebraic operations 27
arithmetic sequence 39
formulas 40
combining like terms 24
composition and resolution of force systems 163–171
all forces in same plane 164–167
forces not in same plane 168–171
definitions 24
coefficient 24
constant 24
equation 24
exponent 24
expression 24
inequality 24
inverse operation 24
like terms 24
monomial 24
operation 24
term 24
variable 24
equation solving 31–34
by completing the square 34
cubic equation 34
second-degree (quadratic) equation 32–33
system of linear equations 31
using the quadratic formula 34
evaluating algebraic expressions 24
functions 35
graphs of functions 35
sketches of basic functions 35
geometric sequence 39
formulas 41
logarithms 36–39
common 37
meaning of 36
natural 37–38
properties of 36
solving an equation using 38
using calculators to solve 38

Algebra (*continued*)
polynomials 28–30
binomial 28
factoring 29–30
greatest common factor (GCF) 29
reverse FOIL 29–30
special products 30
monomial 28
operations on polynomials 28–30
combining (adding and subtracting) 28
FOIL multiplication 28–29
multiplying (expanding) 28–29
raising to an exponent 29
quadratic polynomials 28
trinomial 28
properties of exponents 27
properties of radicals 27
rearrangement and transposition of terms in formulas 26
solving an equation for an unknown 25
by adding or subtracting 25
by multiplying or dividing 25
Alignment of shafts 2720–2748
Alligation 381
Allowances and tolerances
allowance defined 640, 646
allowance for forced fits 642
application 641
bending sheet metal 1421, 1422, 1428
formulas 1417, 1421, 1422
cylindrical fits, ANSI/ASME Standard for 646
fits 640–646
metric ISO, British Standard for 674–683
preferred series 647
tolerance analysis and assignment 684–686
tolerance defined 640, 646
unilateral and bilateral tolerances 640
See also Tolerances and allowances
Alloys
aluminum 527–535
antimony 541
bearing 2436
binary 396
brazing 1568–1574
cast iron 1480–1481
cast steels 1482
copper 511–526
copper-beryllium 525, 526
copper-silicon 525
of low melting point used as filler 1462
magnesium 542–544
nickel 545–546
nonferrous 510
numbering systems for 395
Alloys (*continued*)
quaternary 396
soldering 1566
ternary 396
titanium 545, 547
Alloy steels 394
AISI-SAE designations 397–398
carburizing grades 410–411
casting 1483–1485
compositions 401–402, 1485
directly hardenable grades 411–412
drilling and reaming 1129–1132
effects of alloying elements 2322
electrodes (welding)
current to use with 1599
elongation 1485
forged and rolled 2320
gears 2320
hardness of heat-treated 421–426
heat treatments 488
mechanical properties 421–426, 1485
milling 1113–1116
numbering system 395, 397
strength of heat-treated 421–426
tensile strength 1485
turning 1095–1098
Alphabet, phonetic 2875
Alternating current motors 2648–2651
Alternating stress 209–210
Aluminum
alloys 527–535
anodizing 1639
characteristics 540
chemical composition 531, 534–535
electrical conductivity 540
elongation 531–539
high corrosion resistance 540
mechanical properties 540
temper 531–539
ultimate tensile strength 531–539
workability 540
yield strength 531–539
Association 528, 531
bearing material 2439
bending 1422
cast composition 531
characteristics of 527
clad alloys 539, 540
coefficient of expansion 373
density 373
designations 531
elongation 388
heat treatability of wrought 539
machining 1256
melting point 373
soldering 1567
specific heat 373

Aluminum (*continued*)
structural shapes 2701
temper designation 528–531
tensile strength 388
thermal conductivity 373
welding 1602
wrought 539
yield strength 388
Aluminum Association 395
AM. *See* Additive manufacturing
American Boiler Manufacturers Association (ABMA) 288
American Brass Company 525
American Bureau of Shipping (ABS) 1620
American Foundry Society (AFS, formerly American Foundrymen's Association) 458
American Gear Manufacturers Association (AGMA) 2207, 2243
American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) 285, 287, 1620
American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) 395, 397
American microscope objective. *See* AMO
American National Standards Institute (ANSI) vii, 395, 1620
See also ANSI/ASME Standards
American Petroleum Institute (API) 1620, 2120
American Society for Metals (now ASM International) 396, 420, 422, 426
American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) vii, 395, 458, 505, 542–544, 1480
American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) vii, 395, 1620
See also ANSI/ASME Standards
American Steel and Wire Company 2703
American Welding Society (AWS), 395, 1569–1571, 1592, 1597, 1600, 1618, 1620–1621
See also Welding
AMO (American microscope objective) thread 2115–2118
design dimensions 2117
design requirements 2116
formulas 2117
gage testing 2116
lengths of engagement 2116
limit of size 2118
Swiss screw thread 2119
symbols 2117
tolerances and allowances 2116, 2118
Analytic geometry 42–59
Angle
compound 120–122
cutting tool 833
degrees into radians 103, 107
to find, given taper per foot 697, 698, 700
functions of 95–110

Angle (*continued*)
helix 2199
involute functions of 111–115
lead 2199
length of arc of given radius 79, 83–85
length of chord 79, 83–85
between lines tangent to two circles 700
measuring by disc method 697
minutes, seconds into decimal degrees 104
minutes, seconds into radian 103
radian into degrees 103, 104, 107
sine-bar for measuring 693
structural 2698–2700
bent to circular shape, lengths of 2691
moment of inertia 2698–2700
radius of gyration 2698–2700
section modulus 2698–2700
weight per foot 2698–2700
taper per foot corresponding to 698
thread, tolerances on gages 2146
tolerance, single point tool 850
between two lines 46
useful relationships among 107
Angular
acceleration 184
torque, relation to 187
backlash in gears 2248
velocity 182–185
of rotating bodies 183
Annealing 405, 458
constant temperature, transformation 480
temperatures
carbon steel 480
stainless 491–492
tungsten 496
Annuities (calculation of) 146–147
Annulus (circular ring) 79
Anode 1469
Anodizing 1640
hard 1644
ANSI (American National Standards Institute) vii, 395, 1620
ANSI/ASME Standards
abbreviations 2827–2830
Acme threads 2054–2072
bolts, nuts, screws, washers
inch 1670–1712
metric 1713–1717
boring tools 964, 968
carbide 964–965
buttress inch screw thread 2078–2084
cap screws
inch hex 1674
inch slotted head 1812–1813
inch socket head 1814
metric 1713–1716
socket head 1726

ANSI/ASME Standards (*continued*)
chain, transmission 2616–2621
clearance fits 664, 665–666, 669–670
core drills 953
cutting tools 839–855
cylindrical fits 640
diamond wheels 1304–1310
dowel pins, hardened and ground 1881–1883
drawing and drafting practices 620
symbols
between 623, 624
comparison to ISO 623, 624
controlled radius 623, 624
diameter 623, 624
parallelism 623, 624
part tolerance 623, 624, 662
perpendicularity 623, 624
position 623, 624
roundness 623, 624
runout 623, 624
section lining 622
statistical tolerance 623, 624
total runout 623, 624
welding 1618
drill drivers 952, 955
collet type 952
drive screws 1848
drive studs 1891
electric socket and lamp base threads 2113
engineering drawings 621
fine-pitch
helical gears 2283–2286
standard gear tooth parts 2215
worm gearing 2270–2273
fire hose connection threads 2103
fits 648
hole basis 665–668
shaft basis 669–670, 671–672
flat metal products
inch sizes 2706, 2707
metric sizes 2708–2709
gagemakers tolerances 673
gages 2139–2147
for self-holding tapers 1021
for Unified screw threads 2140–2147
usage, recommended 673
gear tooth forms 2210
geometric characteristic symbols 623, 624
geometric dimensioning and tolerancing 625
grinding wheels 1282–1290, 1298, 1307
safety 1311–1313
grooved pins 1890
hexagon socket head shoulder screws 1818
hexagon spline socket set screws 1821
hose coupling screw threads 2102–2105
interference fits 664, 667–668, 2106–2111

ANSI/ASME Standards (*continued*)
involute splines 2331, 2335
metric module 2351–2356
key drive 1018–1019
keys and keyseats 2539
keys and keyways 894
knurls and knurling 1056–1060
letter symbols for mechanics 2830
limits and fits 646–672
lock washers 1697–1701
machine screws 1775–1784
binding head 1783
fillister head 1781
flat, countersunk head 1776–1778
hexagon washer head 1778
metric 1791–1797
oval head 1781–1783
pan head 1780
round head 1784
slotted hexagon 1779
truss head 1779
manufacturers' standard gage for sheet steel 2706
metric
cap screws 1713–1716
clearance fits 665–666, 669–670
hex flange nuts 1733
hex flange screws 1721
interference fits 667–672
nuts 1731, 1737
nut thread series 1735
nut tops 1733
retaining rings 1897–1905
screws, bolts, nuts, and washers 1713–1717, 1725
screw threads, MJ profile 2034–2037
screw threads, M profile 2012–2033
slotted hex nuts 1733
square neck bolts 1721, 1722
transition fits 667–668, 671–672
microscope threads 2113
milling cutters 872–900
miniature threads 1992–1996
M profile thread
designations 2033
design profile 2016
limits of size 2026
tolerances of internal threads 2023
nuts 1670–1674
pins 1878–1896
pipe thread 2089–2097, 2098
plain washers 1694–1697, 1740
preferred
basic sizes 688
fits 664
metric limits and fits 651

ANSI/ASME Standards (*continued*)
preferred
metric sizes 660, 688
thicknesses, thin, flat metals 2706
reamers 915–930
retaining rings 1897–1905
rivets 1866–1873
screws and bolts
hexagon socket 1731
hex structural bolts 1723, 1728
metric 1713–1720, 1717
metric hex bolts 1724
metric neck bolts 1721
square neck bolts 1722
screw threads 1940, 1947–1991, 2012–2053, 2054–2072, 2079, 2110
metric MJ profile 2034–2037
screw thread symbols 2054–2063, 2066, 2075, 2107
metric 2014
section lining symbols 622
self-tapping thread inserts 1848
self-threading screws
inch 1833–1843
metric head types 1850
serrations, involute 2331
set-screws
heads and points 1819–1822
socket type 1820, 1825
shoulder screws 1818
slotted headless set screws 1819
spindles and drives for portable tools 1037–1040
splines, involute
metric module 2351–2356
spline socket set screws 1820, 1825
spring pin 1895
spur gear tooth forms 2210
square head set screws 1822
straight pins 1886
surface finish 822
surface texture 808–821
symbols 673
concentricity 623, 624
for section lining 622
tang drives 1016–1017
tapers 1013–1025
thread dimension 2108
threads for electric sockets 2113
thumb screws 1925–1933
T-nuts, T-bolts, T-slots 1858–1860
tolerances 648
allowances for cylindrical fits 640
gagemakers 673
symbols 623, 624
tooth proportions 2214
transition fits 664, 667–668

ANSI/ASME Standards (*continued*)
twist drills 931–955
Unified threads 1940, 1947–1997
washers
inch 1694–1701
metric 1736, 1739
wing nuts and screws 1925–1933
Woodruff keys 2557–2560
wood screws 1935
worm gearing, fine pitch 2270–2273
wrench openings 1688
Antifriction bearings 2444, 2498
API (American Petroleum Institute) 1620, 2120
Apothecaries measure
fluid 2854
weight 2858
Arbors
circular saw 1037
diameters for spring-winding 349
dimensions of centers 915
keys and keyways for 894
milling cutters 890
shell reamer 927
standard milling machine 1027–1031
Arc
checking radius of 703–704
cutting 1604
electric, cutting of metals 1604, 1605
length of given angle and radius 79, 83–85
plasma welding 1600
welding 1575–1599
Area
circle/circular 49, 78
ring 79
ring sector 49, 79
sector 49–50, 78
segments 49, 79, 84–85
cross sections 241–250
arc 245
circular 244C-sections 247–248
elliptical 245
I-sections 245–246
L-sections 249–250
polygon 243–244
rectangular 242
square 241
triangular 243
T-sections 248–249
X-sections 250
Z-sections 250
cycloid 79
donut 49
ellipse 52–54, 81
elliptical section 52, 53
enclosed by cycloidal curve 73

Area (*continued*)
fillet 80
finding by Simpson's rule 72–73
geometrical figures 75–86
hexagon 77
hyperbola 81
irregular outline 72–73
octagon 77
parabola 80
segment of 80
parallelogram 75
plane figures 75–86
plane surface of irregular outline 72–73
polygon 78, 81–83
rectangle 75
spandrel 80
square 75
surface of revolution 71, 72
trapezium 77
trapezoid 77
triangle 76
units 2850
units and conversion of 2850–2852
volume 71–74, 88–93
Argon, welding gas 1579, 1587, 1600
Arithmetic
progressions 39–42
ASA Code for Design of Transmission Shafting 299
ASM International (formerly American Society for Metals) 396, 420, 422, 426
ASME (American Society of Mechanical Engineers) vii, 395, 1620
See also specific standards, materials, and applications
ASME Standard surface finish 822
Asperities 2499
ASTM. *See* American Society for Testing and Materials
ASTM plastics 558
Atmospheric pressure 369, 2751, 2752, 2755, 2861
See also application to specific processes
Atomic
symbol 368
weight 368
Austempering 458, 475
Austenite 462, 466
Automatic screw machines 1234–1239
knurling on 1234
Avoirdupois or commercial weight 2858
AWJM (abrasive water jet machining) 1344
AWS. *See* American Welding Society; Welding
Axis nomenclature 1386–1390

B

Babbitt metals 2436, 2437
properties of 2438
SAE general information 2436
Backlash 2205
allowance in checking gears by the pin method 2314
bevel gears 2244
calculation 2242
control of, in assemblies 2247
control of allowances in production 2245
determining proper amount of 2242
excess depth of cut 2245
fine-pitch gears 2246
gearing 2242–2248
hypoid gears 2244
recommended for gears 2244
Balancing
calculations 198–203
counterbalancing masses
located in single plane 199–201
located in two or more planes 201–202
dynamic 198
lathe fixtures 202–203
machines 198
rotating parts 198–203
running 198
static 198
Ball bearings. *See* Bearings
Ball screw assemblies 2640
Balls, standard 2498
package markings 2490
Band brakes 2534
coefficient of friction 2536
simple and differential 2535
B & S automatic screw machines 1234
Band saw
blade selection 1241–1242
blade types 1242
break-in 1245, 1246
speed and feed rate 1243
speed for cutting materials 1244–1245
speeds and feeds, metal cutting 1243–1245
tooth forms 1242
Barometer reading and equivalent pressure 2756
Barrel
effect 1470
liquid capacity 2854
volume 93
Base
circle 2205, 2332
diameter 2332
helix angle 2205
oils for metal cutting 1249

Base (*continued*)
pitch 2205
spur gear, diameter 2210
tooth thickness 2205
Basic
endurance limit 2252
gear dimensions 2216
rack profiles 2355
size 640
space width 2332
Baumé's hydrometer
conversion 378
Beams 256–267, 268–272, 2691–2697
channel 2697, 2701
curved 274–276
deflections in 256–276
designing for 273–276
fixed
at both ends 264–265, 279
at one end 261–263, 268–269, 279
I-beams 2691–2696, 2701
rectangular solid 268–272
round solid 268–272
stresses in 216, 256–280
combined 219–222
fatigue 280
produced by shocks 278–279
supported
at both ends 256–260, 268–269, 270, 272, 273
at one end 262–263
Bearing capacity, soil and rocks 381
Bearings 2393–2443, 2444–2498
ball bearings 2444–2459, 2463, 2469
ABEC tolerances 2454–2459
alignment and squareness 2470
allowance for axial displacement in 2461
angular contact 2446
cage materials 2452
clamping and retaining methods 2472
clearances, running 2479
closures 2472, 2477
deficiencies 2482
design and installation 2461
designation 2452, 2464
double row bearing 2446
equivalent thrust load 2488
failures 2482
fatigue life 2482
fits 2472, 2477
flanged housing 2452
friction losses 2477
handling precautions 2481
housing bore tolerances 2464–2465
housings, soft metal 2471

Bearings (*continued*)
ball bearings
life 2482
adjustment factors 2493
criterion 2482
limitations 2483
load ratings 2482
locknuts and shafts for 2474–2475
lock washers for 2473
lubrication method 2479
materials for 2452
mounting 2469
precautions 2472
types 2480
pillow block 2452
plastics 2451
quiet or vibration-free mountings 2472
radial, deep groove and angular contact 2483
radial and angular contact 2484, 2485
radial and axial clearance 2480
rating life 2484, 2491
reliability 2493
seating fits 2472
selection 2478
shaft
bore limits 2464–2465
housing fits 2461–2463
tolerance, classifications, metric 2462–2463
tolerance, limits, metric 2463–2464
single-row radial, filling slot 2445
single-row radial, non-filling slot 2445
soft metal and resilient housings 2471
special or unconventional types of 2451
squareness and alignment 2470
starting torque 2478
static
equivalent load 2496, 2497
load criterion 2483
load ratings 2494
symbols 2445, 2446
thrust 2449, 2487
thrust load 2488
tolerances 2453, 2459
types 2445, 2483
grease packing guidelines 2515
guide 2396, 2435
hydrostatic 2396
journal 2404
allowable pressure 2409
bearing pressure 2408
capacity number 2413
classes 2409
clearance modulus 2409
diameter of bearing 2408
diametral clearance 2409

Bearings (*continued*)
journal
eccentricity ratio 2410, 2411
factor 2411
film thickness 2414
flow factor 2413
flow of lubricant 2411
friction horsepower 2411
friction torque 2411
hydrodynamic flow of lubricant 2413
length of bearing 2408
length to diameter ratio 2409
lubrication analysis 2414
operating temperature 2409
pressure 2409
pressure flow of lubricant 2413
temperature of mineral oils 2411
temperature rise 2414
torque parameter 2411
total flow of lubricant 2414
viscosity of lubricant 2409
keying 2398
laminated phenolic 2440
life adjustment factors 2493
lubricants and lubrication
grease 2402
journal bearings 2405, 2408, 2414
plain bearings 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405
materials, plain 2435
aluminum 2436, 2439
babbitt metals 2436
bronze 2438
cadmium alloys 2438
carbon-graphite 2439
cast iron 2439
compatibility 2435
conformability 2435
copper-lead 2436, 2438
corrosion resistance 2437
embeddability 2435
fatigue resistance 2435
graphitic 2441
laminated phenolics 2440
load capacity 2437
nylon 2440
plastics laminates 2440
porous 2440
properties 2435
rubber 2441
SAE compositions 2436
silver 2439
strength 2437
teflon (TFE) 2440
thermal conductivity 2437
tin-bronze 2436

Bearings (*continued*)
materials, plain
white metal 2436, 2437
wood 2441
needle 2449
loose roller 2450
symbols 2449
types of 2449
needle roller
designations of 2464
fitting and mounting practice 2466
roller and cage assemblies 2466
shaft and housing tolerances 2467–2468
tolerances 2459–2461
pillow block 2452
plain 2393–2443
allowable pressures 2408
boundary lubrication 2397
circumferential-groove 2393
classes of 2393
clearances 2408
controlled clearance noncontact seals 2399
cylindrical-overshot 2395
cylindrical-undershot 2395
design 2396
design notation 2407
displaced elliptical 2395
elliptical-overshot 2395
full film lubrication 2397
full film operational mode 2397
greases 2404
grooving feeding 2405
hardness and surface finish 2400
heat radiating capacity 2404
hydrostatic 2396
journal 2405
journal bearing oil grooving 2405
journal bearing types 2406
journal or sleeve 2393
keying methods 2398
length-to-diameter ratio 2408
lubricants 2402
lubrication analysis 2408
lubrication methods 2401
machining 2400, 2401
materials 2435
mixed-film lubrication mode 2397
modes of operation 2396, 2398
multiple-groove 2395
nutcracker 2395
oil bath lubrication 2402
oil feeding 2405
oil grooves 2404, 2408
oil ring lubrication 2402
operating temperatures 2409
pivot-shoe 2395

Bearings (*continued*)
plain
positive contact 2399
press or shrink fit 2398
pressure 2395
pressure lubrication 2401
pressure profile 2406
retaining methods 2398
rubbing seals 2399
sealing methods 2398
sleeve 2405
solid lubricants 2404
splash lubrication 2401
static seals 2400
surface finish and hardness 2400
three-lobe 2395
types 2393–2396
viscosity temperature chart 2403
waste pack lubrication 2402
porous 2440
retention
dowel pin 2399
housing cap 2399
set screws 2398
Woodruff key 2399
roller 2444–2498
ABEC and RBEC tolerances 2464
alignment and squareness 2470
allowance for axial displacement 2461
barrel roller 2447
barrel type 2451
bearing closures 2477
cage materials 2452
clamping and retaining methods 2472
closures 2477
cylindrical type 2447, 2451
deficiencies 2482
design and installation considerations 2461
designation of 2452, 2464
failures 2482
fatigue life 2482
fits 2472, 2477
flanged housing 2452
friction losses in 2477
handling precautions 2481
high-speed effects 2488
housing bore tolerances 2464–2465
housings, soft metal and resilient 2471
internal clearance 2488
life 2482
adjustment factors 2493
criterion 2482
load ratings 2482
location and seating 2469–2477
locknuts and shafts 2474–2476
lock washers 2473

Bearings (*continued*)
lubrication 2479, 2488
materials for 2452, 2488
method of designation 2463, 2464
mounting 2469
precautions 2472
type 2480
needle type 2466–2468
pillow block 2452
plastics 2451
quiet or vibration-free mountings 2472
radial 2490, 2498
radial and axial clearance 2480
radial load 2490
rating life 2489, 2491
reliability 2493
seating fits for 2472
selection 2478, 2479
self-aligning 2449
shaft and housing fits for 2472, 2477
metric radial 2461–2463
soft metal and resilient housings 2471
special or unconventional types of 2451
spherical roller 2448
squareness and alignment 2470
static equivalent loads 2497–2498
static load criterion 2483
stress concentrations 2488
symbols 2445
tapered 2448
thrust 2448, 2449, 2459, 2491
tolerances for 2453, 2454–2461
torque, starting 2478
types of 2447, 2488
roller thrust 2449
sleeve 2404
spacing and shaft stiffness 2259
tapered
land thrust bearing 2417, 2426, 2431
roller bearings 2448
roller thrust bearings 2448
thrust bearing 2417, 2449
ball 2449
symbols 2447
design notation 2418
flat plate design 2417, 2419, 2424
depth of chamber 2421
film flow 2420
flow per chamber 2421
friction power loss 2420
kinetic energy correction 2421
length of pad 2420
number of pad 2420
pitch line velocity 2420
radial pad width 2420
required oil flow 2420
flat plate type 2423

Bearings (*continued*)
thrust bearing
friction power loss 2421
leakage factor 2428
load 2418
parallel flat plate 2417
plain 2417
rated life 2487
roller 2448, 2449, 2491
symbols 2448, 2449
static equivalent load 2497, 2498
step design 2417, 2423–2426, 2424
depth of step 2425
film thickness 2425
friction power loss 2425
hydrodynamic oil flow 2425
length of pad 2425
number of pads 2425
pad step length 2425
pitch line circumference 2425
pitch line velocity 2425
radial pad width 2424
temperature rise 2425
tapered land design 2417, 2426, 2431
film thickness 2427
friction power loss 2428
length of pad 2427
number of pads 2427
oil film flow 2428
oil flow factor 2428
oil leakage factor 2427
pitch line circumference 2427
pitch line velocity 2427
radial pad width 2427
shape factor 2428
taper values 2427
tilting pad design 2417, 2431
bearing unit load 2432
dimensionless film thickness 2434
film thickness 2433
friction coefficient 2433
length of pad 2432
number of pads 2432
operating number 2432, 2434
pitch line velocity 2432
radial pad width 2432
temperature rise 2433
tolerances 2459
tolerances 2453
metric ball and roller 2454–2461
needle roller 2453
thrust bearing 2453, 2459
Bel 2875
Belleville disc springs or washers 345, 350
See also Spring: disc
Belts and pulleys 2563–2615
flat belts 2566
length formula 2563
rules for diameters and speeds of pulleys 2563
speed limitations 2566
speed in compound drive 2565
synchronous belts 2607–2615, 2611
cross section 2613
designation 2607, 2613
horsepower rating 2614, 2615
length determination 2611
pitch lengths 2610
pulley
diameter 2611, 2612
and flange dimension 2609
size 2612, 2615
tolerances 2613
section dimension 2609
service factors 2607
storage and handling 2604
timing 2607
tolerances 2610
tooth dimensions 2608, 2609
torque ratings 2613, 2614
width, finding 2614
width factor 2615
widths and tolerances 2611
variable speed belts 2597–2602
arc of contact 2604
cross section selection 2601
degree 2602, 2604
designation 2600
dimension 2597
drive design 2600
groove dimension 2599
horsepower rating 2601, 2602
length correction 2603
lengths 2598
sheave dimension 2599
sheave groove data 2600
speed ratio 2601
V-belts 2568–2606
60 degree 2604
speed ratio correction 2602
belt lengths and center distances 2573
classical V-belts 2574
arc of contact correction 2581
cross section correction factors 2573
datum length 2575
groove dimension 2576
horsepower ratings 2578
length correction 2580
sheave dimensions 2575, 2576–2577
speed ratio correction 2580

Belts and pulleys (*continued*)
V-belts
double V-belts 2581–2589
arc of contact 2589
design method 2585
effective diameter 2584
effective length 2581
groove dimension 2582
length determination 2584
length-flex correction 2588
number of belts 2585
sheave dimension 2581, 2582
tension ratings 2588–2589
tight side tension 2586
effective length 2566
horsepower ratings 2563
light duty V-belts 2589–2592
arc of contact 2589
designation 2589
dimensions 2590
groove dimension 2591
horsepower rating 2592
sheave dimension 2591
narrow V-belts 2568, 2573
arc of contact correction 2574
cross section selection 2572
groove dimension 2570–2571
horsepower ratings 2572
length correction factors 2574
number of belts 2574
sheave, dimensions 2568, 2570–2572
speed ratio correction factors 2573
ratio 2563
SAE belts and belting 2604
belt dimensions 2605
pulley dimensions 2605
service factors 2606
sheaves 2566, 2568, 2570–2572
60-degree 2604
storage and handling 2605–2606
V-ribbed belts 2592–2597
arc of contact correction 2596
cross sections 2592
designation 2594
dimensions 2592
effective length 2595
grooved dimension 2593
horsepower rating 2594
length correction 2596
sheave dimension 2593, 2594
speed ratio correction 2597
Bending
formulas for beams 256–272
formulas for shafts 295–302
pipe and tube 1458–1462
press 1459
roll 1461
Bending (*continued*)
pipe and tube
rotary draw 1460
use of filling material 1461
roll 1461
rotary draw 1460
sheet metal 1417
allowances 1421, 1422, 1428
aluminum 1421
angle other than 90° 1421
brass 1421, 1422
bronze 1421, 1422
force 1422
formulas 1417, 1421, 1422
radius, inside bend 1417
steel 1421
three-roll 1423
two-roll 1423
stress in beams 256–276
structural angles 2698–2700
Bending load, wood 382
Bending moments units conversion 2864
Beryllium and copper alloys 526
Bevel gearing 2256–2268
ANSI/AGMA Standard 2260
applications of 2258
bearing spacing 2259
blanks 2258
bronze and brass gears 2322
chordal addendum 2268
chordal thickness 2267, 2268
circular pitch 2263
circular thickness 2268
cutting angle 2263
cutting teeth 2259
design 2258
dimensions 2262
face angle 2263
formed cutters for 2264–2266
German Standard tooth form 2296
hypoid gears 2257
materials for 2269
milled 2260, 2267
milling cutters for 892
milling setup 2267
mountings 2259
nomenclature 2260
offset of cutter 2267
pitch cone 2262
pitch diameter 2262
planetary 2290
replacement gear dimensions 2329
selecting formed cutters for 2266
shaft stiffness 2259
spiral 2257
straight 2204, 2256, 2258
thickness of tooth 2263

Bevel gearing (*continued*)
types of 2256
typical steels used for 2269
Zerol 2204, 2257, 2258
BHN. *See* Brinell Hardness Number
BHRA (British Hydromechanics Research Association) 2518
Bilateral and unilateral tolerances 640
Binder jetting (BJ) 614–615, 1555, 1559
Binding head miniature screw 1788
Birmingham wire gage 2703
Birnie's equation 291
BJ (binder jetting) 614–615, 1555, 1559
Blank diameters, drawing dies 1426, 1427
Blanking and punching 1409
blanking pressure 1413
clearance 1410
stripper force, elastic stripper 1413
Blanks, sintered carbide 847
Block and spacer torque test 1750
Block brakes 2537
Blow, force of 190–191
Blow molding 584–585
Boilers, strength of flat stayed surfaces 288
Boiling temperature, various substances 369
Bolt hole circles
adapting equations for geometry 710
chordal distance 82
coordinates for 708–720
Type "A" 708, 712, 714
Type "B" 709, 716, 718
Bolts and nuts
angularity and eccentricity 1767
ANSI/ASME, inch dimensions
cap or acorn nuts 1681
countersunk bolts 1686
flat jam nuts 1678
hex
flat nuts 1678
nuts 1677
slotted nuts 1678, 1680
thick slotted nuts 1679–1680
jam nuts 1677
ribbed neck bolts 1685
round head bolts 1683–1684
round head fin neck bolts 1684
slotted countersunk bolts 1687
square
neck bolts 1683, 1686
nuts 1670–1671, 1680
step bolts 1686
T-bolts 1859
T-nuts 1860
Unified 1670, 1677, 1680
wing nuts 1925–1929
ANSI/ASME, metric dimensions
diameters 1716
heavy hex bolts 1672–1674

Bolts and nuts (*continued*)
ANSI/ASME, metric dimensions
heavy hex flange screws 1720
heavy hex nuts 1737
hex jam nuts 1737
hex nuts 1733
prevailing torque hex
flange nuts 1736
nuts 1738
reduced diameter bolts 1717
slotted hex nuts 1733
thread series 1735
ANSI/ASME Standard 1672
bolt designation 1671, 1724, 1725, 1736, 1758, 1767, 1768, 1776, 1790, 1812, 1823, 1826, 1834, 1850, 1928, 1931
British Standard 1808
fine thread 1832, 2088–2114
hexagon bolts, screws, and nuts 1766
hexagon slotted and castle nuts 1760
metric hexagon 1762
precision hexagon nuts 1760
slotted and castle nuts 1760
Unified 1810
Whitworth 1759–1761, 1804, 1811, 1832
chamfering 1767
combination 1768
counterbore sizes 964
countersinking 1767
deflection 1653
designation 1768
diameter-length combinations 1726
drill sizes 1744
elongation and tightening tension 1662
elongation measurements 1658
finish 1766
friction coefficients 1656, 1662
grade markings for steel 1666
head markings
inch 1666, 1667
metric 1724, 1736
heavy hex bolts 1672–1674, 1702, 1723,
hexagon bolts, screws, and nuts 1766
hexagon sockets 1731
hex structural 1723, 1728
identification symbols 1725
length of thread 1767
load allowable on bolts 1667
loaded joints 1654
marking 1768
materials properties 1724
metric hex bolts 1724
metric hex cap screws 1727
metric hex flange nuts 1733
metric hex lag screws 1726
metric round head bolts 1725

Bolts and nuts (*continued*)
metric screw 1725
nominal lengths 1766
preload 1653
adjustments 1656, 1658
applications 1655
loaded joints 1654
shear 1654
proof strength 1653
relaxation of preloads 1657
round head neck bolts 1684
socket head cap screws 1726, 1731
spacing for wrench clearances 1687
spline sockets 1731
square 1671, 1672
steel nuts 1768
strength grade designations 1666, 1667, 1724, 1725, 1736, 1767, 1768
tightening 1653
torque 1653
torque prevailing types 1735
torque required to tighten 1653
Unified Standard 1672, 1673
washer facing 1767
working strength of bolts 1667
wrench and socket clearances 1687
wrench clearances for nuts 1688
wrench openings 1688
yield strength 1653
Bonding, adhesives 2659
Bonding plastics 595–596
Boring 1154
carbide tools for 964–965
cutting force 1154
cutting time for 1143
deflection (y) of boring bar 1155
insert holder 845–847
moduli of elasticity (E) of boring bar materials 1155
moment of inertia (I) of a boring bar cross-sectional area 1155
wood 385
Boring-bar, cutters, carbide 964–965
Boring machine, origin 968
Boring tools
carbide sizes 964
carbide style 964
carbide-tipped round 966
sintered carbide 964
solid carbide 968
Boron nitride
cubic (CBN) abrasive 1081, 1281, 1298, 1307
cutting tool materials 1081
speeds and feeds for 1101, 1107
Bottom bending 1417
Boundary layer film lubrication 2500
Box wrench clearances 1693
Brakes
band 2534
block type 2537
coefficient of friction 2534
Brass and bronze
alloys 511
cast 512–515
speeds and feeds for drilling and reaming 1140
wrought 516–524
bending 1421, 1422
speeds and feeds for turning 1105
strength data 510
Brass files 1054
Brazing 1568–1574
blowpipe 1573
dip 1573
filler metals for 1568, 1572
fluxes for 1572
furnace 1573
heating for 1573
induction 1573
methods 1573
resistance 1573
supplying heat blowpipe 1573
supplying heat torch 1573
symbols 1573, 1574
vacuum furnace 1573
work 1573
Breakaway torque 1755
Breaking load, bolts and screws 1669
Bricks strength 391
Briggs (now ANSI/ASME) Standard pipe thread 2090–2091, 2120, 2121
drills for 2176
Brinell Hardness Number (BHN) 502
aluminum alloys 531–539
Rockwell conversion tables 505–508
steels 142, 421–426, 462
test 502
See also specific materials and processes
British Association
basic dimensions 2115
instrument makers' threads 2115
standard screw threads 2119
tolerance formulas 2115
tolerances and allowances 2115
British Hydromechanics Research Association (BHRA) 2518
British Standard
button head screws 1826
buttress threads 2078
cap screws 1827
cheese head screw 1809

British Standard (*continued*)
clearance holes for metric bolts and screws 2173
combined drills and countersinks 951
core drills 957–958
countersunk head screws 1804, 1809, 1811
deviations for holes 682
deviations for shafts 680
dowel pins, metric 1879–1880
drills, metric 955, 957–961, 958
drills and countersinks 955
fasteners, mechanical properties 1766, 1826
fine threads (BSF)
basic dimensions 2088
tolerance formulas 2086
fits 678
hexagon and thin nuts 1764
hexagon bolts and screws 1758, 1763
hexagon head screws 1808, 1809
hexagon nuts 1760
hexagon slotted and castle nuts 1760, 1765
hexagon socket countersunk 1826
hexagon socket screws, metric 1826, 1828, 1831
button head 1830
cap 1827
set 1829, 1831
imperial wire gauge 2703
interference fits 1769
ISO metric
grade markings 1766
limits and fits 674–683
nuts 1764
tapping drill sizes for 2172
threads 2035, 2053
ISO profile dimensions 2044
limits and fits 679
limits of tolerance for shafts 677
machine screws 1798–1811
cheese head 1806
countersunk head 1802
material 1799
metric series 1801, 1807
and nuts 1798, 1799, 1804, 1808
slotted countersunk head 1801
metric
basic sizes, preferred 689
bolts, clearance holes 2173
bright metal washers 1773
dowel pins 1879–1880
drills 955–961
gauge and letter sizes 956
hexagon socket screws 1826, 1831
and inch pipe threads 2099, 2100
limits and fits 674–683
machine screws and nuts 1798

British Standard (*continued*)
metric
metal washers 1772
series 1799
series plain washers 1772–1774
series spring washers 1770–1772
spring washers 1771, 1772
Morse taper 958
mushroom head screw 1809
nuts 1759–1762, 1764–1765, 1798–1808
pan head screw 1809
pipe threads
jointing threads 2099
longscrew threads 2099
non-pressure-tight joints 2098
pressure-tight joints 2099
precision metric nuts 1765
preferred metric basic sizes 689
preferred numbers 689
preferred sizes 689
recessed head screws 1808
rivets 1868–1874, 1877
RMS thread 2115
round head screw 1809
screws 1758, 1798, 1811, 1826–1832
thread dimensions 2100, 2115
thread profiles 1997, 2086
slotted head screws 1808
socket head 1827
spark plug threads 2112
spur and helical gears 2251
straight splines 2357
studs 1758, 1769
tolerance for holes and shafts 675, 677
twist drills 957–960
Unified
machine screws and nuts 1810
screws and nuts 1810
thread system, UNJ profile 1997
washers, plain, metric 1772–1773
Whitworth and fine machine screws 1799
Whitworth threads (BSW) 2086–2088
basic dimensions 2087–2088
formulas 2087–2088
instrument threads 2115
machine screws 1811
measuring 2117, 2125, 2126, 2131
pipe threads 2098, 2099
set-screws 1811, 1832
thread form 2086
tolerance formulas 2086
British thermal units (Btu) 2870
converted into foot-pounds 2866
power and heat equivalents 2865

Broaches
chipbreakers 1048
clearance angles for teeth 1048
depth of cut per tooth 1047
depth of teeth 1048
face angle or rake 1048
land width 1048
pitch of teeth 1045–1048
radius of tooth fillet 1048
shear angle 1048–1049
surface 1046
total length of 1048
types 1044–1045
Broaching 1044–1050
cutting oils for 1249
cutting speeds for 1142
difficulties 1050
pressure 1046
types of machines 1048–1049
Broken tap, removal of 2176
Bronze bearing material 2438
Bronze bending 1421, 1422
Brown & Sharpe
automatic screw machines 1234–1239
taper 884, 1013, 1022–1023
taper reamers for sockets 929
wire gage 2703
Brush finishing, power 1632–1635
Btu. *See* British thermal units
Buckling, columns 281–283
Buffing and polishing 1633
Buffing wheels 1636
Bulk modulus of various material 391
Burs and files, rotary 1054
Bushings gear 2324
Butt joint, riveted 1861–1864
Button head screw 1826
Buttress threads 2078–2084
allowances and tolerances 2084
ANSI/ASME Standard inch type 2078–2084
basic dimensions 2078, 2079
British Standard 2078
designations 2084
diameter equivalents 2082
diameter-pitch combinations 2078–2079
dimensions 2084
formula 2084
height of thread engagement 2079
lead and flank angles 2082
pitch-diameter tolerances 2082
symbols and formulas 2079
thread form 2079
tolerances 2082, 2083, 2084
wire method of measuring 2139–2140

C

Cables, wire, breaking strength 2714–2719
CAD/CAM 1390–1396
drawing exchange standards 1396
drawing projections 1392–1393
axonometric projection 1393
isometric drawings 1392
parallel projections 1392
perspective drawings 1392
drawing tips and traps 1393–1395
create blocks of frequently used objects 1393–1394
define a default drawing configuration 1395
scaling text on drawing sheets 1395
use appropriate detail 1395
use of text attributes to request drawing information automatically 1394–1395
types of drawings 1390–1392
solid images 1392
surface images 1391
wireframes 1391
Cadmium
bearing alloys 2438
plating 1641
vacuum coating 1647
Cage materials, anti-friction bearings 2452
Calculus 130–135
derivatives 130–131
derivative formulas 130–131
derivative rules 131
integrals (antiderivatives) 131–134
integration rules 132
Newton's method for solving equations 132–133
series 133
table of derivatives and integrals 133–134
series representation of a function 135
Caliper
gear tooth 2226
measurement of gear teeth 2226
vernier 690
construction requirements 784
Calorie, kilogram 2865, 2870
Cams and cam design 1238–1239
accelerating forces 2380
acceleration, velocity, and displacement formulas 2365
classes of cams 2363
constant velocity with parabolic matching 2370
contact stresses 2385
cylinder cam shape 2386

Cams and cam design (*continued*)
displacement
constant velocity 2365
curves 2364
cycloidal 2367
diagrams 2364
harmonic 2366
parabolic 2365
synthesis of 2367
follower systems 2363
forces 2380, 2381
friction forces 2381
harmonic motion 2379
layout of cylinder cams 2386
materials 2380, 2385
compressive stress 2385
milling 2387
offset translating follower 2373
pressure angle 2372, 2381
formula 2376
harmonic motion 2377
parabolic motion 2377
uniform velocity motion 2377
profile determination 2369, 2371, 2372
radius of curvature 2378
cycloidal motion 2379
parabolic motion 2379
rise for threading 1237
size determination 2372–2376
stresses, contact 2380, 2384, 2385
swinging roller follower 2371, 2375
symbols 2364
torque 2382
translating roller follower 2371
Cams and tool design 1238
Capitalized cost 151
Cap screws 1674, 1812–1816
button head 1817
drill and counterbore sizes for 1815
finished, hexagonal 1674
flat head 1816
hexagonal 1674
hexagon socket head 1826
hexagon socket type 1814–1817
metric 1714
round head 1813
slotted fillister head 1813
slotted flat head 1812, 1813
slotted head 1812
designation 1812
length of thread 1812
spline socket type 1814–1817
Carat 2858
Carbide blank
designations 847, 848
sizes 847, 848
Carbides and carbonitrides 860–865
Carbide tools 854, 860
application of cutting fluids to 1251
boring 964–965
coated 1079–1080
cutting 847
grinding 1065–1067
insert holders 835–859
insert type 835, 839–847
materials for 860–865, 1078–1080
nose angle 852, 853
nose radius 849, 853
rectangular shank 850
sharpening 1065
side cutting edge angle 851
single point 847
sintered 847
square shank 850
standard blanks for 847
style A 850
style B 851
style C 852
style E 853
style EL 853
style ER 853
tips for boring tools 964–965
Carbonaceous mixtures 481
Carbon-graphite bearings 2441
Carbonitrides and carbides 860–865
Carbonitriding 465
Carbon steel 393–394
AISI-SAE designations 397–398
chemical compositions 399–400
classification 407–410
cold drawn 419–420
electrodes 1599
forged and rolled 2320
free cutting 409
gears 2320
heat treatments 487
mechanical properties 421–426
milling 1113–1116
numbering system 395, 397
structure of 462
tool steel as a cutting tool material 1078
turning 1095–1098
Carburizing 458, 464, 481
gas 483
liquid 483
solid materials 481
steels for 410–411
temperatures
alloy steel 488
carbon steel 487
vacuum 483
Cartesian coordinate system 1351
Case hardening 458, 481
steel 481

Cash flow 146–148
Casing thread 2120
Cast copper alloys 511–515
Casting of metals 1488–1496
  defects in casting 1495–1496
  expendable-mold casting 1488
  fluid flow 1490–1491
    Bernoulli's theorem 1490
    flow characteristics 1491
    gating design 1490
    sprue design 1491
  fluidity of molten metal 1491–1492
    inclusions 1491
    solidification pattern of the alloy 1491
    superheat 1491
    surface tension 1491
    test for fluidity 1492
    viscosity 1491
  heating and pouring the metal 1489–1490
  heat transfer 1492
  nonexpendable-mold casting 1488
  permanent mold casting 1488
  solidification and cooling of metals 1492–1495
    shrinkage 1494
    solidification of alloys 1493–1494
    solidification of pure metal 1493
    solidification time 1494
Casting processes
  accuracy 1506
  centrifugal 195
  ductile iron 1481–1482
  extrusion 1519–1521
  investment casting 1504–1506
  investment removal 1506
  weights and sizes 1506
Castings
  alloy steel 1483–1486
  bronze and brass 510
    for gears 2322
  centrifugal 195
  dimensions 1505
  ductile (nodular) iron 1481–1482
  investment 1504–1506
  malleable iron 429, 1481
  milling cutters 1506
  nodular cast iron 1481
  steel, for gears 2269, 2321
  surface texture of 819
  tolerances 1505
Cast iron
  alloy 1480–1481
  bearings 2439
  chilled 1480
  coefficient of expansion 374
  cutting, flame 1605
  density 374
Cast iron (*continued*)
  ductile 1481–1482
  gray 1480
  malleable 1481
  melting points 374
  nodular 1481
  specific heat 374
  speeds and feeds for
    drilling, reaming, and threading 1136–1137
    milling 1120–1121
    turning 1101–1102
  strength 429
  thermal conductivity 374
  white 1480
Castle and slotted nuts 1671, 1759, 1760
Cast metals, power constant 1145
Cast roller chains 2616
Cast steel 1482–1486
  austenitic manganese 1484–1485
  chemical composition 1484
  corrosion-resistant alloys 1485
  elongation 1484
  mechanical properties 1483
  strength 429, 1483
  tensile strength 1484
  yield point 1484
Cathode 1470
Cement, strength of 391
Cementation 458
Cemented carbide tools 860–865
  coated 866
  drilling with 1129–1132
  grinding 1065–1068
  materials for 1078–1080
  milling with 1112–1121
  turning with 1095–1108
Cementite 462
Cements, pipe joints 2663
Center
  distance, gear set 2216, 2218, 2286
  drills reamers and machine countersinks 915
  of oscillation 238
  of percussion 238–239
Center distance, gearing 2205
Centering tools, length of point 954
Centerless grinding 1323–1325
  troubleshooting 1324–1325
Center of gravity 228–234, 238
  circle ring, part of 230
  circle sector 230
  circle segment 229
  circular arc 229
  cone 232
    frustum of 232
  cylinder 231
    portion of 231

Center of gravity (*continued*)
ellipse segment 230
ellipsoid, segment of 233
fillet 230
of four-sided figure, any 229
parabola, area of 231
paraboloid 233
parallelogram, perimeter or area of 228
pyramid 232
frustum of 232
spandrel 230
sphere, half of hollow 233
spherical
sector 233
segment 233
surface 230
trapezoid, area of 229
triangle 228
of two bodies 232
wedge 233
Centers, for arbors and reamers 915
Centimeter-gram-second system of measurement 2831
Centimeter-inch conversion tables 2840
Centipoise (cP) 2504, 2873
Centistokes (cSt) 2504, 2873
Centralizing Acme threads 2061, 2072
alternative series 2072, 2075
basic dimensions 2063–2064
designation 2066
diameter
allowance 2065
formulas for determining 2063, 2065
major and minor allowances and tolerances 2065
pitch allowances 2065
pitch tolerance 2066
single start screw thread 2065
thread data 2064
thread form 2063
Centrifugal
casting 195
clutches 2529
force 194–197
calculation 195, 196–197
Ceramic
coefficient of expansion 386, 867
compressive properties 386, 387
cutting tool materials 865–868, 1080
density 386, 867
dielectric strength 386
fracture toughness 867
hardness 386, 867
mechanical properties 386
modulus of elasticity 867
modulus of rigidity 867
Poisson's ratio 867
Ceramic (*continued*)
properties 867
tensile strength 386
thermal conductivity 386, 867
whisker reinforced 868
Cermets 860
Cgs system of measurement 2831
Chain
cast roller 2616
detachable 2616
pintle 2616
saw files 1054
Chamfering insert holder 845–847
Chamfers and corner clearance, gearing 2339
Change gears
compound 2181
finding ratios 2185
helical gear hobbing 2287
lathe 2181
odd inch pitch threads 2184
output, quick change 2183
relieving helical-fluted hobs 2185–2186
thread cutting, lathe 2181
fractional ratios 2182
fractional threads 2181
metric pitches 2181
modifying the gearbox output 2182
threads per inch with given combination 2181, 2182
trains, for fractional ratios 2182
Channels
aluminum 2701
moment of inertia 2697, 2701
radius of gyration 2697, 2701
section modulus 2697, 2701
steel 2697
structural 2697, 2701
weight per foot 2697, 2701
Checking
Acme threads by three-wire method 2135
enlarged spur pinion 2318
gears 2309
gear size 2300–2318
measurements over pins or wires 2318
radius of arc 703
rake angles
indicator drop method 904, 905
indicator drops on milling cutter face 905
relief angles
indicator drop method 904
indicator drops on end teeth 904
indicator drops on side teeth 904
screw thread dimensions 2130
shaft conditions 705
spur gear by wires 2301–2308

Checking (*continued*)
spur gear size 2301–2308
Whitworth threads 2130
Cheese head screws 1804, 1806, 1809
Chemical composition 1749
Chemical compositions
alloy steels 401–402, 1485
aluminum alloys 534–535
carbon steels 399–400, 1484
cast steels 2321
copper 525
copper alloys 512–524
forged and rolled alloy steels 2321
forged and rolled carbon steels 2320
HSLA steels 418
magnesium alloys 543
molybdenum 496
nickel alloys 546
shock-resisting tool steels 452
stainless steels 403–404
tool steels 438
treatment of metals 1637
vapor deposition (CVD) 863
Chemical elements 368
atomic number 368
atomic weight 368
melting temperature 368
symbol 368
Chemical surface treatment of metals 1638–1640
See also specific materials and processes
Chemical vapor deposition (CVD) 863
Chilled cast iron 1480
Chipbreakers 838
angular shoulder type 838
grinding 1067–1068
groove type 838
light cuts 839
parallel shoulder type 838
Chip flow angle 1203
Chip thickness 1196, 1261
Chord
length for given number of divisions 711
length given angle and radius 79, 83, 84–85
Chordal addendum 2205, 2224
milled, full-depth gear teeth 2222
milled bevel gear teeth 2268
Chordal distance of bolt circle 82, 711
Chordal thickness 2205
gear teeth 2221, 2223, 2267
milled, full-depth gear teeth 2222, 2223
milled bevel gear teeth 2268
Chords and diameters of circles 5
Chrome 1641
Chromium
gearing material 2321
plating 1609
tool steels 447
Chucking reamers 909
expansion 919
rose 910
Chucks
drill, tapers and threads for 1026
hexagonal, for portable tools 1040
spindle, for portable tool grinders 1037
Circle 49–51
center 49
chords for dividing circumference of 711
general equation 49
geometry of 64–65
lengths of chords for dividing 711
moments of inertia 244
radius 49
radius of gyration 244
section modulus 244
segments 79, 83–85
squares of equivalent areas 86
Circular
arc
center of gravity 229
moments of inertia 245
radius of gyration 245
section modulus 245
disk, radius of gyration 236
gear teeth 2214
measure 2837
mil gage for wires 2850
pitch 2205, 2332
given center distance and ratio 2220
pitch gears, diameters of 2227
pitch in gears 2227
ring
moments of inertia 245
radius of gyration 245
section modulus 245
sector area 50, 79
saws, arbors for 1037
sector, area 49–50, 78
sector segment 711
segment
area 79, 83
formulas 83
table of dimensions 84–85
thickness 2205
milled bevel gear teeth 2268
outside diameter
has been enlarged 2221
has been reduced 2221
Circumference
chords for dividing 711
Clad aluminum alloys 540
Classical belts and pulleys
V-belts 2574
datum length 2575
groove dimension 2576

Classical belts and pulleys (*continued*)
V-belts
horsepower rating 2578
length correction 2580
sheave dimension 2575, 2576
Classification of carbon steels 407–410
Clavarino's equation 291
Clearance 2205
angles
boring tools 964–965
milling cutters 900
reamers, tooth rest position 911
box wrenches 1693
drill sizes, machine screw 2169
holes 640, 647, 650, 665
hex-head bolt and nut 964
inch machine screws 2169
metric
bolts and screws 2173
machine screws 1797
socket head cap screws 1744
square neck bolts 1743
tapping screws 1853
for wrench 1687
Clearance holes 1741
inch fasteners 1741
metric fasteners 1742
substitute drills for 1742
Clevis pins 1878
Clutches 2526–2533
angle of cone 2528
angle of dividing head for milling 2532, 2533
centrifugal and free-wheeling 2529
cone 2527
cutting teeth 2531, 2532
cutting with angular cutters 2531, 2533
disk 2526
double-angle cutter 2533
friction 2525, 2527
magnetic 2528, 2529
positive 2530
power capacity of 2526
saw tooth 2532
single-angle cutter 2532
slipping 2529
wrapped spring 2529
CNC 1350–1386
back boring 1370
canned cycles 1366
Cartesian coordinate system 1351
computer based programming 1353
contouring 1371
coordinate geometry 1351
depth of thread 1374
features 1354
fixed cycles 1366

CNC (*continued*)
G address 1356
G codes 1356
holes 1366
indexable threading insert 1374
lathes 1359, 1374
manual data input (MDI) 1355, 1379
manual programming 1353
M codes 1358
multiple repetitive cycles 1372
multi-start threads 1377
N Address 1356
O address 1356
offsets 1364
parametric programming 1378
peck depth 1368
programming
ABS 1384
absolute 1359
arc radius 1362
block number N 1356
branching 1384
circular interpolation 1362
comments and messages 1355
computer based 1353
cutter radius compensation 1365
cutter radius offset 1365
defining a plane 1362
equidistant toolpath 1365
F-address 1360
feed rate override 1361
FIX 1383
fixed cycles 1366
FUP 1383
G00 1361
G01 1362
G02, G03 1362
G17, G18, G19 1362
G20, G21 1359
G32, G76 multi-start threads 1377
G32, G76 threading 1376
G33, G34 threading 1376
G41, G42 1361, 1365
G43, G44 1364
G50 1360
G54–G59 1364
G65 prep command 1379
G70, G76 1372
G71, G73 rules 1374
G73 1373
G73 fixed cycle 1368
G74 fixed cycle 1369
G76
one cycle 1376
two cycle 1376
G76 fixed cycle 1369
G80 fixed cycle cancellation 1371

CNC (*continued*)
programming
G81 fixed cycle 1367
G82 fixed cycle 1367
G83 fixed cycle 1368
G84 fixed cycle 1368
G85 fixed cycle 1369
G86 fixed cycle 1369
G87 fixed cycle 1370
G88 fixed cycle 1370
G89 fixed cycle 1371
G90, G91 1359
G93 1360
G94, G95 1360
G96, G97 1359
spindle speed 1374
helical interpolation 1363
IJK vector 1362
incremental 1359
inverse time feed rate 1360
lathes 1359, 1374
linear interpolation 1362
long-hand threading 1376
looping 1384
M03, M04 1359
M98, call subprogram 1377
M99, end subprogram 1377
machining holes 1366
macros 1354, 1377, 1378–1386
ABS 1384
arithmetic functions 1382
basic skill requirements 1378
Boolean functions 1384
branching 1384
common applications 1379
common features 1379
defined variables 1379
determining if active 1379
examples of 1385
functions 1380, 1382
functions and constants 1380
G65 arguments 1380
G65 call command 1380
G65 prep command 1379
logical functions 1380, 1384
looping 1384
MDI (manual data input) 1355, 1379
miscellaneous functions 1384
rounding functions 1383
SQRT 1384
trigonometric functions 1382
variables 1380, 1381
symbol 1379
manual 1353
milling offsets 1364
modal, G-codes 1356
modal, M-codes 1358

CNC (*continued*)
programming
modal command 1362
parametric 1378
preparatory commands, G 1356
preset method 1364
program number O 1356
radius 1362
rapid motion 1361
repetitive commands 1372
ROUND 1383
S-address 1359
shop floor 1354
spindle function 1359
spindle override 1360
spindle rotation 1359
SQRT 1384
subroutines 1377
T-address 1361
techniques 1377
thread cutting 1374
threading commands 1376
tool function 1361
tool length offset 1364
tool nose radius compensation 1361
lathes 1365
touch-off method 1364
units of measurement 1359
work offset 1364
program structure 1355
rectangular coordinate system 1351
shop floor programming 1354
single point threading 1374
spindle speed 1360
subprograms (subroutines) 1377
thread calculations 1374
thread cutting 1374–1377
threading
commands 1376
infeed 1375
compound 1375
radial 1375
operations 1376
thread milling 1363
turning and boring 1372
Cobalt alloys 1080
Cobaltchrom steel 493
elongation 389
hardness 389
tensile strength 389
yield strength 389
Coefficient of
expansion
aluminum 373
cast iron 374
ceramics 386
common materials 372

Coefficient of (*continued*)
expansion
copper alloys 373
ductile iron 374
plastics 387
thermoplastics 372
titanium alloys 374
various substances 372
friction 172, 173, 2538
rolling resistance 174
steel on various materials 173
various materials combinations 173
various materials on metal 2527
heat radiation 372
heat transmission 372
Cofactors of a matrix 125–126
Coining 1417
Cold-form tapping 2174–2176
Cold-work, tool steels
air hardening 450
chemical composition 451
heat treatment 451
oil hardening 449
Collets 1034–1036
Colloidal suspension 1470
Coloring metals 1638–1640
Columns 281–287
American Institute of Steel Construction 285, 286–287
American Railway Engineering Association formulas 281
eccentrically loaded 282, 283
Euler formula 282–285
J.B. Johnson formula 282, 284–285
machine elements subjected to compressive loads 282–284
allowable working loads for columns 283
Euler and Johnson formulas 282–285
factor of safety for machine columns 284
Rankine or Gordon formula 281, 282, 283
steel pipe, allowable concentric loads 286–287
straight-line formula 281
Combination 13
drill and tap 2178
involute spline types 2342
shank, helix single end mills 882
Combination die 1454
Combined drills and countersinks 950
Combined stress 218–222
normal and shear stresses 219
normal stresses at right angles 219
superposition of stresses 218
von Mises effective tensile stress 218
See also specific materials and processes
Compensation, insert radius, NC 857–859
Composite, checking of gears 2248
Compound angles 120–122
Compound die 1454
Compression
in columns 281–287
springs 309–324, 329–330, 331
Compression bending 1461
Compressive properties
ceramics 386
definitions 208
strength
ceramics 386
common non-metals 391
iron 429
magnesium alloys 544
steel 429
wood 383
Computer-aided (or -assisted) design and manufacturing. *See* CAD/CAM
Concave arbor-type milling cutters 890
Concrete strength 391
Conductance, thermal 2869
Conductivity, electrical
of metals 1474
of plastics 576
Cone
center of gravity 232
clutches 2527
frustum
center of gravity 232
polar moments of inertia 255
radius of gyration 237
of volume 90
polar moments of inertia 255
radius of gyration 237
volume 90
Coned springs 350
Congruent, defined 94
Conical pendulum 180
Constants, fundamental 2835
Constructional steels 1291, 1292
Contact
diameter, gears 2205, 2234
ratio 2205, 2235
face 2205
gearing 2235
total 2205
stress 2205
cams 2385
Contamination of lubricants 2517
Contents of tanks 73–74
Conversion 2831–2875
acceleration 2873
acres to hectares 2850
angular measure 103, 107
bending moments 2864

Conversion (*continued*)
Celsius to Fahrenheit temperatures 2870
centimeter to inch 2840
cutting speed and diameter to rpm 1085, 1314
cutting speed formulas 1084, 2178
density units 2859
energy units 2868
Fahrenheit and Celsius temperatures 2870
flow units 2857
foot-pounds into Btu 2866
force units 2863
fractional inch to millimeter 2839
hardness 505–508
horsepower into kilowatts 2866
millimeter to fractional inch 2839
moment and torque units 2864
moment of inertia units 2874
newton-meters into pound-inches 2864
pound-inches into newton-meters 2864
pounds-force into newtons 2864
power and heat 103, 104, 107, 2865
power units 2868
pressure units 2863
section modulus units 2874
thermal conductance 2869
torque units 2864
UK gallons into liters 2853
US gallons into liters 2853
velocity units 2873
viscosity 2873
work units 2868
Convex arbor-type milling cutters 890
Coolants for
lapping 1341
machining
aluminum 1256
magnesium 1257–1258
tool sharpening 1067–1068
zinc alloys 1258
tapping 2178
Coordinate system, converting 46–47
Copolymers 557
Coppers and copper-base alloys
classification 511
coefficient of expansion 373
coloring 1638
composition 512–524
copper-silicon alloys 525
copper-zinc-tin alloys 525
strength 391
density 373
elongation 388, 512–524
hardness 388
lead bearings 2436–2439
machinability 512–524
melting points 373
Coppers and copper-base alloys (*continued*)
passivation 1638, 1640
plating 1642
powdered metal alloys 390
specific heat 373
speeds
for drilling and reaming 1140
for turning and milling 1105
tensile strength 388, 512–524
thermal conductivity 373
UNS number 511–524
wire 2704
yield strength 388, 512–524
Copper- and iron-base sintered bearings 2442–2443
Copper-base powdered alloys
density 390
elongation 390
hardness 390
rupture strength 390
ultimate strength 390
yield strength 390
Copper Development Association 395
Cordeaux thread 2120
Core drills 953
Corner-rounding milling cutters 875, 890
Corrosion 548
corrosion types and methods of prevention 548
chemical corrosion 548
dry and high-temperature corrosion 548
electrochemical corrosion 548
anodic protection 549
cathodic protection 549
wet and damp/atmospheric corrosion 549
galvanic corrosion 549
galvanic compatibility 549
protective area ratios for galvanic couples 552
uniform (general) corrosion 548
effects of corrosion 553
corrosion fatigue 554
crevice corrosion 553
hydrogen embrittlement 554
intergranular corrosion 553
microbiologically influenced corrosion (mic) 553
pitting corrosion 553
selective leaching (dealloying) 553
stress corrosion cracking 553
tribocorrosion 554
Corrosion-resisting alloys 413–415, 510, 526
Cosecant 95–96
Cosine, law of 96

Cost
cutting grinding 1218
feeds and speeds 1221
function 1211
minimum 1210, 1212, 1264
optimum 1212
regrinding 1219
tools with inserts 1219
Cotangent 95–96
Cotter pins, standard sizes 1878, 1891, 1894
Cotters 2561
Coulomb or Tesca shear theory (plastics) 580
Counterbores
cutters and guides 963
pilot 963
solid 963
three piece 963
Counterboring 962
Countersinks 915, 968
combined with drills 949
machine 915
Countersunk head
cap screws 1812
rivets 1866, 1868, 1874
British Standard 1874
screws 1776–1778, 1781–1782, 1804–1816
British Standard 1804–1811
Couples of forces 162–163
Couplings
connecting shafts 2522
double-cone 2523
fire-hose 2103–2105
flexible 2524
hose 2102–2103
interference fits 2523
knuckle joint 2526
safety flange 2522
shaft 302
single keys used as fixed 2344, 2345
slipping 2529
universal 2524
cP (centipoise) 2504, 2873
Crane motors 2655–2656
Crater-resistant carbide tools 1079
Creep 208, 211, 309, 570–571
rupture 208, 571
Critical
slenderness ratio 282
speeds 204–205
formulas for 204–205
of rotating bodies and shafts 204–205, 302
temperatures, heat treatment 458, 467, 470
Critical points of
decalescance 470, 471
recalescance 470
Crossed helical gears 2204
Cross recesses
for machine screws 1784
for self-tapping screws 1836
Cross section lining, ANSI Standard for drawings 622
Crowned involute splines 2348
Crushing strength, wood 382
Cryogenic treatment, steel 502
cSt (centistokes) 2504
Cube of wire diameters 347
Cubes, volume 88
Cubic
boron nitride (CBN) 1081, 1101, 1103, 1107, 1280–1281, 1298, 1307
grinding wheels 1298, 1307
conversions 2853
equations 34
measure 2853
Cumulative fatigue damage 210
Cupola malleable iron 1481
Curved beams 274–276
stress correction factor 274–275
Curved tooth files 1053
Cutoff 1408
Cutoff or roughness sampling length 818
Cutter
bevel gear, formed types 2264–2265
box-tool 1235
compensation, NC 857–859
helical gear, formed type 2283
internal gear 2249
Cutting
abrasive 1041–1043
bevel gear teeth 2259
blades 870
clutch teeth 2531
costs grinding 1218
electric arc 1604, 1605
fluids 1246–1251
application of to carbides 1251
aqueous solutions 1247
broaching 1249
carbides 1251
chlorinated oils 1247, 1248, 1249
magnesium 1249, 1251
mineral oil 1249
selection 1247–1249
soluble oils and compounds 1247
sulfurized oils 1247, 1249–1250
various alloys 1247–1249
gas torch cutting 1604, 1605
metals oxidizing flame 1604
roller chain sprocket teeth 2635
time for turning, boring and facing 1143
time per piece 1217

Cutting fluids
for different materials 1248
for different operations 1248
for steel 1248
See also Cutting: fluids
Cutting forces 1203
Cutting plane irons 870
Cutting speed
conversion to RPM 2
economic 1213
files and burs 1055
optimum 1215
tool lives 1225
Cutting speeds and feeds 1077–1142
automatic screw machine 1235–1236
bandsaw 1243–1245
broaching 1142
chip thickness 1091–1093
cutting speed calculations 1104
cutting tool materials 430–456
diamond tools 1080, 1081
drilling, reaming, and threading
copper alloys 1140
ferrous cast metals 1136–1137
glass 1133
light metals 1138
plain carbon and alloy steels 1129–1132
stainless steels 1135
tool steels 1134
drilling and turning titanium and titanium alloys 1106
equivalent
chip thickness (ECT) 1091–1093
rpm for given cutting speed 1085–1089
rpm for given drill sizes and speed 1085
formulas for 1084, 1104
honing 1336–1338
metal cutting saws 1143
milling 1108–1121
feeds for high-speed steel cutters 1122
ferrous cast metals 1120–1121
plain carbon and alloy steels 1113–1116
stainless steels 1118–1119
titanium and titanium alloys 1106
planing 1143
reamers 1139
rpm for different speeds and diameters 1086–1089
shaping 1143
tapping 1140–1142
thread chasing 1140–1142
tool
inserts 857–859
life 1082, 1103–1104, 1108, 1111, 1127
steels 1099, 1117–1118, 1134
Cutting speeds and feeds (*continued*)
turning
copper alloys 1105
ferrous cast metals 1101–1102
light metals 1106
stainless steels 1100
superalloys 1107
titanium and titanium alloys 1106
tool steels 1099
unusual materials 1143
twist drills 1139
work materials 1077
Cutting, surface, or peripheral speed 1360
Cutting tools 832–845
angles 832–859
angular milling 877, 883, 896, 899, 910
application codes, ISO 866
boring bar 964–966
carbide grade selection 860–870, 1079–1080
carbonitrides (cermets) 860–865, 1080
carbon tool steels 1078
cast nonferrous alloy 1080
cemented carbides 860–865, 1078–1080
ceramics 865–867, 1080
chipbreaker 835
chucking reamers 910
clearance angles 901, 906
coated carbides 1079
coatings 863, 1079
crater-resistant carbides 1079
cubic boron nitride (CBN) 1081, 1298, 1307
CVD diamond 1081
diamond 868, 1080
polycrystalline 868, 1080
fluting, for reamers 909–910
grades 1079–1080, 1127
grinding 898–905, 899
checking rake and relief angle 904
high-speed steel 1078
indexable insert holder 834
indexable inserts 834, 857–859
machining data 869
materials 854, 860, 1077–1081
carbide ceramics 867
metals 861
oxide ceramics 867
silicon nitride base 868
superhard 868
milling 871–906
hand of flute helix 874
side 874
staggered tooth 874
point configuration 841
radial relief, eccentric type 901
relief and rake angles 901–905
rose chucking reamers 910
sharpening 1062–1063

Cutting tools (*continued*)
single-point 832–847
specifications, ISO 866
spline 899
titanium carbides 866, 1079
tool bit 834
tooth rest positions 906
troubleshooting checklist 1083
T-slot cutters 875
tungsten carbide 854, 860, 1079
combined with other elements 863
wheels for sharpening milling cutters 898–899
Woodruff keyseat cutters 895
CVD (chemical vapor deposition) 863
Cyanide hardening (cyaniding) 459, 465, 482
Cycloid 2205
area 79
curves, area enclosed by 73
Cylinder 290–294
center of gravity 231
collapsing pressure 293–294
hollow
polar moment of inertia 253
radius of gyration 237
volume 90
polar moment of inertia 253
portion of
center of gravity 231
volume 89, 90
radius of gyration 236
strength of 290–294
volume 89
working pressure versus radius ratio 291
Cylindrical
coordinates 48
tank, contents 73–74
Cylindrical grinding 1315–1323
automation in 1318–1319
basic process data 1318
high-speed 1318
machines 1315
operating data 1317
selection of grinding wheels 1283, 1297, 1298, 1307, 1316
traverse and plunge grinding 1315
troubles 1319–1322
workholding 1316
Cylindrical roller bearings, symbols 2447

D

Damascus steel 396
Dampers (hydraulic shock absorbers) 2794
Dardelet thread 2120
Daylight savings time (DST) 2875
Decalescence point in steel hardening 470, 471
Decibel 2875
Decimal
fractions 8
See also Conversion
DED. Directed energy deposition 1555, 1560, 1561
Dedendum 2205
Definitions
gear terms 2204–2207, 2252–2254
spline terms 2332–2334, 2347
surfaces of solid materials 808
surface texture 810
See also specific materials and processes
Deflection
beams 256–276
calculation 218
flat plates 288–290
shafts
linear 298
torsional 297–298
springs
compression and extension 321–324
torsion 339–342
Degrees, expressed in radians 103, 107
Density 377
air 2750
aluminum 373
cast iron 374
ceramics 386
copper alloys 373
copper-base powdered alloys 390
ideal 2835
iron-base powdered alloys 390
nickel alloys 374
plastics 387
plastics materials 387
powdered metals 390
stainless steels 374
titanium alloys 374
tungsten-base powdered alloys 390
units conversion 2859
wood 384
See also specific materials
Department of Commerce and Labor 293
Deposition rates, welding 1581
Depreciation 149–150
double declining balance method 149
property class and factors 150
statutory depreciation system 149
straight line method 149
sum of the years digit method 149
Depth of cut 1082
Depth of engagement 2332
Derivatives 130–131
of functions 133–134

Design rules
for blanking and punching 1404
parts produced by bending 1405
parts produced by drawing 1406
See also specific materials and processes
Detachable chains 2616
Developing prototypes 601, 611
Diameter factor 1267
Diameters for finished shafting 299
Diametral pitch
definition 2205
equivalent
circular pitch and tooth proportions 2213, 2214
metric modules and circular pitch 2299
knurls (ANSI/ASME) Standard 1056–1060
system 2209
Diamond
built-up edge 870
concentration 1065–1066
cratering 870
dust for lapping 1340
grinding wheels 1293–1310
laps and lapping 1340
tool materials 868, 1080, 1081
truing 1299–1303
wheels 1065–1067, 1304–1311
composition 1307
designation symbols 1304–1308
diamond concentration 1065–1067
feeds and speeds 1310–1311
grades, grit sizes 1065, 1066
modifications 1307
operating guidelines for 1310
operations and handling 1310
selection of 1309
shapes of standard 1304–1308
speeds and feeds 1310–1311
terminology 1304
thread grinding 2192
work speeds 1311
Di-basic acid esters 2509
Dies
classification of 1454
combination 1454
compound 1454
effect of clearance 1411
multiple-station 1454
opening profile 1412
progressive 1455
sheet metal
bending allowances 1428
blank diameters for drawing 1426
diameter reductions in drawing 1427
stripper force 1413
single-station 1454
Dies (*continued*)
steel rule 1455–1458, 1457
cutting edges 1456
dimensions 1456
heat treatment 1458
stamping 1455–1458
threading, maximum pitches 2199
transfer 1455
See also Dies and taps
Die casting
files 1054
machining zinc alloy 1258
Dielectric strength
ceramics 386
plastics 387
Die-maker's reamers 930
Dies and taps
combination drill and tap 2178
maximum pitches 2199
tap drill size 1009, 2168
Acme threads 1009
formula 2154
metric 2172
pipe 2177
Unified 2160–2167
See also Dies
Differential pulley 178
Diffusion bonding 1435, 1437
Dimensions and tolerancing 2542
geometric 625
See also application to specific processes
Dip brazing 1573
Directed energy deposition (DED) 1555, 1560, 1561
Disc spring 345, 350–364
contact surfaces
with contact surfaces 351, 357
without contact surfaces 354–357
fatigue life 358–361
forces and stresses 354–361
group classification 350–351
materials 351–352
nomenclature 350
stacking 352–354
Disk
circular, radius of gyration 236
clutches 2526
method of measuring tapers 697
springs 344
Displacement in ball and roller bearings 2461
Distance across bolt circle 702
Distance between two points 43
Dividing
fractions and mixed numbers 8
head, angular position 896
Dolly bars for riveting 1866
Double-angle milling cutters 877

Double-cone clamping couplings 2523
Double V-belts. *See* Belts and pulleys: V-belts: double V-belts
Dovetail slides, measuring 697
Dowel pins 1878–1884
  designation 1881–1883
  ductility 1881
  hardened and ground 1881–1883
  hardened ground production 1881–1883
  lengths and sizes 1881
  metric 1878–1880
  shear strength 1881–1883
  unhardened ground 1883–1884
Drafting practices, ANSI, ASME, and ISO 620
Draw-in bolt ends 1030
Drawing
  45-degree angle 67
  60-degree angle 67
  applying surface texture symbols 817
  bisect angle 67
  circle around square 69
  circle around triangle 68
  circular arc 68
  data for gear blanks 2239
  data for gears 2242
  data for involute splines 2342
  data for splines 2344
  data for spur and helical gear 2242
  dies, blanks 1426, 1249
  divide line into equal parts 66
  drafting practices 620
  ellipse 54, 69
  equilateral triangle 67
  helix 70
  hexagon around circle 69
  hyperbola 70
  involute 70
  ISO 1302 822
  metric dimensions on 819
  parabola 70
  parallel lines 67
  perpendicular lines 66
  scales of metric drawings 820
  sheet metal 1424
    cylinders 1425
    cylindrical cup with flange 1425
    cylindrical cup without flange 1425
    deep 1424, 1425
    diameters of shell blanks 1426
    force for first operation 1429
    force for subsequent operations 1429
    number of draws 1425
    rectangular flanged shells 1430
    rectangular parts 1429
  sheet sizes 620
  specifying spur and helical gear data on 2240
Drawing (*continued*)
  square around circle 69
  standard
    line conventions 620, 621
    surface texture symbols 816, 817
  symbols
    geometric 623, 624
    ISO 623, 624
    lines 621
    materials 622
    section lining 622
  tangent to circle 68
  tempering, steel 476
  triangle around circle 68
Dressing grinding wheels 1299–1303
Drilling
  accuracy of drilled holes 961
  automatic screw machine feeds and speeds 1235
  cutting speeds for 1234
    ferrous cast metals 1136–1137
    light metals 1138
    superalloys 1107
    titanium and titanium alloys 1106
    tool steels 1134
  difficulties 1133
  feed factors 1152
  holes, accuracy of 961
  holes in glass 1133
  machine, shaftless motor type 2653
  thrust, torque, and power 1151–1153
  time required 3
Drills
  accuracy of drilled holes 961
  angle of cutting point 1062–1064
  ANSI/ASME Standards 931
  chucks, tapers 1026
  cobalt high-speed steel 962
  combined drills and countersinks 949–951
  commercial microdrills 1189, 1190
  core, taper shank 951
  counterbores 931
  and countersinks, bell types 950
  and countersinks, plain types 950
  cutting speeds and equivalent rpm 1085
  definitions of terms 931
  diameter factors, thrust 1152
  diameter factors, torque 1152
  diameters of tap 2160–2167
  drivers 955
  grinding 1062–1065
  jobbers length 933–939
  length of point 954
  letter sizes and gauge 956
  metric, British Standard 951–961
  nomenclature 931
  screw machine drills 933–944

Drills (*continued*)
sharpening 1063–1065
sizes for tapping 2168
for Acme threads 1009
specifications 1888
steels for 961, 962
straight shank 931
straight-shank drill sizes
core drills 953
letter 937–938
metric 933–943
number 933–937
straight-shank taper-length drill sizes
fractional 934–943
letter 937–938
metric 934–943
number 934–937
screw machine length 944
tangs for 943
tap and clearance hole sizes 2169
for taper pin reamers 1887, 1890
taper-shank core drills 950–953
taper-shank drill sizes 945–950
terms 931–932
twist 931–954
twisted
jobber series 959
parallel series 960
types 931, 932
Drives
nose key 1018–1019
screws 1833, 1848
square, for portable tools 1038
studs 1894
taper 1017–1018
Drunken thread 2120
Dry measure 2854
Dryseal pipe threads 2095–2097, 2098
assembly limitations 2098
designations 2097, 2098
diameter pitch combinations 2098
fine taper 2098
limitation of assembly 2095
limits on crest and root 2095
pressure-tight joints 2095
taps for 1005
types 2095
DST (Daylight Savings Time) 2875
Ductile iron 429, 1482
cast iron 1481–1482
Ductility 1403
Duranickel, machining 1258
Durometer tests 506
Dynamic balance 198
Dynamic factor 2253
Dynamic stresses 279
Dynamic viscosity 2504
Dynamometers 2535
Dyne 2504, 2831

E

Earth, composition of crust 381
EBM (electron beam machining) 1350, 1558
Eccentricity 2340
Echols thread 2120
Economic impact of lubrication 2502
Economic tool life 1213
See also Tool life
ECT (equivalent chip thickness) 1091–1093
Eddy current testing (ET) 1629
EDG (electrical discharge grinding) 1470
EDM (electrical discharge machining) 1345, 1469
capacitor 1470
craters 1470
dielectric 1470
discharge channel 1470
dither 1470
duty cycle 1470, 1473
electrical controls 1474
electrode 1470
materials 1475
uses 1476
electro-forming 1470
electronic controls 1472
Farad 1470
flushing 1472
gap current 1470
gap voltage 1470
heat-affected zone 1473
ion 1470
ionization 1470
low-wear 1470
machine settings 1473
materials 1475
metal removal rates 1474
negative electrode 1470
no-wear 1470
overcut 1471
plasma 1471
plunge (sinker) method
electrode materials 1474
machine settings 1472
making electrodes 1477
metal removal rates 1474
positive electrode 1471
power parameters 1471
process 1471
quench 1471
recast layer 1471, 1474
secondary discharge 1471

EDM (electrical discharge machining) (*continued*)
spark frequency 1473
spark in and out 1471
square wave 1471
stroke 1471
UV axis 1471
white layer 1471
wire 1479
drilling holes 1479
EDM 1471
electrode 1479
guide 1471
speed 1471
wire method 1469
workpiece materials 1474
Effective
dimensions, splines 2332, 2340
length of bolt 1657
Efficiency 2206
influence of friction on 172–173
of lubrication filters 2521
machine tool 1147–1153
riveted joints 1862–1866
See also specific processes
Elastic
limit 207
plastics 565
properties of material 391
region 207
tightening fasteners in 1655–1660
See also specific materials
Elasticity, modulus of 207
constant, of nickel alloys 308–309
in shear (torsion) 208
spring materials 345, 352
various materials 207–208
Electric
arc, cutting metals 1604, 1605
fixture threads 2114
motor keys and keyseats 2556
socket and lamp base threads 2113
Electrical discharge grinding (EDG) 1470
Electrical discharge machining. *See* EDM
Electrical fixture threads 2113
lamp base 2113
socket shell threads 2113
Electrical network 129
Electrical relationships 2874
Electrodes
diameter, sheet metal 1593
making 1477
machining graphite 1477
material 1475
brass 1476
copper 1476
copper-tungsten 1476
graphite 1476
Electrodes (*continued*)
material
steel 1476
zinc 1476
material selection 1477
used for various materials 1476
wear 1477
Electrodes, in welding
current to use with 1581, 1599
deposition rates 1577, 1581
diameter to use 1577, 1585, 1594
selecting GTAW tungsten type 1597
standard types 1592, 1595
wire, feed rates 1581
Electrohydraulic forming 1441
Electromagnetic forming 1440
Electron beam diffusion bonding 1438
Electron beam machining (EBM) 1350, 1558
Electropolishing 1644
Elements, chemical 368
Ellipse 51–54
area 81
drawing 54, 69
eccentricity 51
foci 51
general equation 51
major axis 51
minor axis 51
moment of inertia 245
radius of gyration 245
section modulus 245
segment, center of gravity 230
Ellipsoid
polar moment of inertia 254
radius of gyration 238
segment, center of gravity 230
volume 91
Elliptic gears
Gears and gearing elliptic 2290
Elongation
aluminum 388
aluminum alloys 531–539
carbon and alloy steels 421–426, 1484
carbon steel rounds, squares, and hexagons 419–420
cobalt alloys 389
copper alloys 388, 512–524
copper-base powdered alloys 390
copper-beryllium alloys 526
copper-silicon alloys 525
high-strength, low-alloy steels 418
iron-base powdered alloys 390
magnesium alloys 544
measurement of bolts 1658
nickel alloys 389, 546
plastics 387

Elongation (*continued*)
powdered metals 390
ranges 1404
stainless steel 389, 427–428
steels 388, 1483
titanium alloys 547
tungsten-base powdered alloys 390
Emery
grades 1637
grain numbers for polishing 1637
End mills
angles for milling teeth in 896
ANSI/ASME Standard 879–889
combination shanks 881, 882
high-speed steel 882
plain and ball end 885
straight shanks 883, 884
taper shanks 884
terminology of 878
Weldon shanks 879–882, 885–888
Endurance limit 209, 2252
for spring materials 314–315
Energy 188–191, 1470
kinetic 188–190
potential 189
units conversion 2868
Engagement, length of thread 1668
Engineering economics 143–153
cash flow and equivalence 146–148
annuities 146–147
cash flow diagrams 147, 148
present value and discount 146
sinking funds 147
depreciation 149–150
double declining balance method 149
statutory depreciation system 149–150
straight line depreciation 149
sum of the years digits 149
evaluating alternatives 150–153
benefit-cost ratio 153
capitalized cost 151
equivalent uniform annual cost 152–153
net present value 150–151
payback period 153
rate of return 153
interest 143–146
compound interest 144
determining principal, rate, or time 144–145
nominal versus effective interest rates 145–146
simple interest 143–144
variables 143
Engine lathe, change gears 2181
Enlarged pinions
center-distance system for 2233
in helical gearing 2283–2286
in spur gearing 2225, 2233
Epicyclic gearing 2290–2293
bevel gear type 2291–2293
ratios 2291–2293
Epicycloidal curves, areas 73
Equations
cubic 34
quadratic 32–33
simultaneous 127–129
solution of
quadratic with one unknown 32
Equilateral or equiangular triangle 94
Equivalent chip thickness (ECT) 1091–1093
Equivalent pitch ratio 2206
Equivalent uniform annual cost 152–153
Erg 2831
ET (eddy current testing) 1629
Etching and etching fluids 1637
Euler formula for columns 282–285
Evaluating alternative investments 150–153
benefit cost ratio 153
capitalized cost 151
equivalent uniform annual cost 152–153
net present value 150–151
payback period 153
rate of return 153
Evaluation length 811
Evaporation, latent heat of 369
Everdur copper-silicon alloy 525
Expansion
chucking reamers 919
fits 643
hand reamers 921
Explosive forming 1439
Exponent 4, 12
properties of 11, 27
External spline 2333, 2342
External spur gear 2204
Extrusion
applications 1520–1521
of metals 1519–1521
processes 1519, 1520
of tubes 1521

F

Fabric, bonding 2661
Facing cutting time for 1143
Facing insert holder 845–847
Factorial 13, 111

Factors
of numbers 13–23
prime number 13–23
Factors, safety 211–212
machine columns 284–285
shafts 296, 301
tubes subject to external pressure 294
wire rope 2717–2718
F-address, CNC programming 1360
Failure
fatigue, modes of 210–211
fatigue, springs 314
of riveted joints 1862
of springs 348
Fasteners
compressible washers
designation 1711
dimensional characteristics 1711
dimensions 1711, 1712
finish 1711
lot number 1711
materials 1711
performance 1711
symbols 1711
workmanship 1711
hardened steel beveled washers 1709
designation 1709
dimensional characteristics 1710
dimensional conformance 1710
dimensions 1709
finish 1709
materials 1709
mechanical properties 1709
slope 1710
symbols 1710
taper 1710
workmanship 1709
hardened steel flat washers
designation 1709
dimensional characteristics 1709
finish 1709
materials 1709
symbols 1709
tolerances 1708
workmanship 1709
hardened steel washers 1708
circular clipped washers 1708
flat washers 1708
heavy hex bolts 1672–1674, 1702, 1723
heavy hex nuts 1705
corner fill 1706
countersink 1706
designation 1707
dimensional characteristics 1707
dimensional conformance 1707
grade symbols 1707
materials 1707
Fasteners (*continued*)
heavy hex nuts
nut thickness 1707
overtapping 1707
proof load 1706
source symbols 1707
thickness 1706
thread gaging 1707
threads 1707
tops and bearing surfaces of nuts 1706
true position of tapped hole 1706
width across flats 1705, 1706, 1707
workmanship 1707
plastics 600–606
structural bolts
bearing surface 1704
body diameter 1702, 1703, 1704
bolt length 1704
designation 1702
dimensional characteristics 1705
finish 1702
grade symbols 1702
head height 1702, 1703
head taper 1704
identification symbols 1705
length 1702
material 1705
materials 1702
thread length 1703, 1704
threads 1702
true position of head 1704
width across corners 1703
workmanship 1702
structural steel 1702
Fasteners detecting counterfeit 1667
Fatigue 209–211
combined with creep 211
contact 211
corrosion 211
cumulative damage 210
failure, modes of 210–211
influence of stress on 209–211
life factor involute splines 2347
low/high-cycle 210–211
properties 209
S-N diagrams 209, 210
springs 314, 348
surface 211
thermal 211
Fatigue life, disc springs 358–361
FCAW. *See* Welding: flux-cored arc welding
FDM (fused deposition modeling) 614
Federal Aviation Administration 1620
Feed rates
centering tools 1235
for drilling 1235
hollow mills 1235

Feed rates (*continued*)
for milling 1108
number of teeth 1231
for turning 1095–1108
See also specific processes
Feeds and speeds 1077–1142, 1234–1235, 1243–1246
grinding 1261
total costs 1221
See also Speeds and feeds; *specific processes*
Feet
and inches into inches 2837
into meters 2849
per minute into rpm 2178, 1084–1088
Fellows stub tooth gears 2216
Ferrite 462
Ferrous cast metals, speeds for
drilling, reaming, and threading 1136–1137
milling 1120–1121
turning 1101–1102
Fibers 557
vulcanized, strength of 391
See also specific materials
Files 1632
chain saw 1054
characteristics 1052
classes 1052
American pattern 1052
curved tooth 1052
machinist's 1052
mill or saw 1052
rasp 1052
Swiss pattern 1052
coarseness of cut
bastard 1052
coarse 1052
second 1052
smooth 1052
cross section 1052
curved tooth class 1053, 1054
cut
double cut 1052
double cut finishing 1052
rasp 1052
single cut 1052
cutting speeds 1055
definitions of terms 1051
flat 1053
machinist's class 1053
flat 1053
general purpose 1053
half round 1053
hand 1053
knife 1053
pillar 1053
round 1053
square 1053

Files (*continued*)
machinist's class
three square 1053
warding 1053
wood 1053
mill or saw class 1052
blunt hand saw 1053
blunt mill 1052
blunt triangular 1053
cantsaw 1052
crosscut 1052
double ender 1052
mill 1052
taper saw 1052
triangular saw 1052
web saw 1053
pillar 1053
rasps 1054
rifflers 1054
rotary 1054
round 1053
shear tooth 1054
special purpose 1054
aluminum rasp 1054
brass file 1054
chain saw 1054
die casting 1054
foundry 1054
lead float 1054
long-angle lathe 1054
shear tooth 1054
square 1053
Swiss pattern class 1054
blunt machine 1054
die sinker 1054
die sinker rifflers 1054
needle 1054
silversmiths' rifflers 1054
teeth, cut of 1052
warding 1053
wood 1053
Filler metals for brazing 1568
Fillet
area 80
center of gravity 230
radius 2206
Fillister head machine screws 1781
Fillister head miniature screws 1785, 1789
Film
lubricating transition 2500
thickness ratio 2499
Filter, lubrication 2520
efficiency 2521
filtration ratio, B 2521
Fine blanking 1414
tool dimensions 1415
V-projections in tools 1415

Finishing, power brush 1632–1635
Fire hose connection screw threads 2103–2105
ANSI/ASME Standard 2103
thread designation 2103
thread form 2103
Fits 647
actual 647
basic shaft fits 651
bilateral hole fits 651
British Standard
limits and fits 679
minimum and maximum clearances 678
tolerance limits
holes 677
shafts 677
clearance fits 665–666, 669–670
cylindrical
allowances and tolerances for 640
ANSI/ASME Standard 646–672
British Standard 674
definitions 640
expansion 643
forced 641, 658
metric ISO, British 674–683
metric radial, ball and roller bearing shaft and housing 2461
preferred series 647
shrinkage 643, 658
transition 652, 657
drive 651
expansion 643
force 650, 651, 658
allowance 642
pressure in assembling 642
hole basis
British Standard 675
figure 663
hole system 647
interference 647, 664
and limits
graphical representation 650–652
tolerances designation 661
locational 650
clearance 650, 655
interferance 660
interference 650
transition 650, 657
metric clearance fits 665–666, 669–670
metric interference fits 667–668
metric transition fits 667–668
running 650, 653
shaft basis
British Standard 675
figure 663
shaft system 647
shrinkage 643, 650, 651, 658
allowance 643, 644, 645
Fits (*continued*)
sliding 650, 653
transition 647, 664
Flame
cutting of metals 1604–1605
cutting torch 1604
hardening 484
spraying process 1648
Flanged duct connections 1447
Flanged housing bearings 2452
Flank of tooth 2206
Flat
belts rivets 1868
head cap screws 1812, 1816
head machine screws 1776–1778, 1808
metal products, preferred thicknesses 2708
plate
circular 290
square and rectangular 288–289
strengths 288–290
thin, radius of gyration 235
stayed surfaces 288
Flat head miniature screw 1787
Flexible
belts 2563
couplings 2524
Flexural modulus, plastics 387
Floor and bench stand grinding 1332
Flow, units conversion 2857
Flow of air in pipes 2777
Fluidized bed furnace 458, 467
Fluid maintenance 1254
biocide treatment 1254
personal protective clothing 1254
system service 1254
Fluid power 2749
accumulators 2796
circuits 2753
analysis considerations 2754
component symbols and diagrams 2753
flow control 2753
open and closed center 2753
standard circuit components 2753
types 2753
coefficient of velocity, Cv 2760
Darcy-Weisbach equation, Moody diagram 2779
discharge from tanks 2799
energy loss
entrance, exit, enlarge, contract 2784
entrance loss 2787
exit loss 2787
gradual contraction 2786
gradual enlargement 2785
sudden contraction 2785
sudden enlargement 2784

Fluid power (*continued*)
energy loss
in fittings and valves 2783
equivalent length method 2784
resistance coefficient method 2783
in pipe and tube bends 2782
in pipes 2779
in valves 2789
filters 2820
flow
in branched (parallel) pipes 2779
of compressed air in pipes 2778
control 2760
measurement 2757
Coriolis mass flow meters 2759
cup anemometer 2757
elbow meters 2758
flow nozzle meters 2758
hot wire anemometer 2757
magnetic flow meters 2759
orifice plates and meters 2758
pitot tubes 2757
positive displacement flow meters 2759
thermal mass flow meters 2760
turbine flow meters 2759
ultrasonic flow meters 2759
variable area flow meters 2758
venturi meters 2757
vortex shedding flow meters 2759
pressure drop in pipe, tube, fittings 2777
rates 2777
fluid
conditioning and stabilization 2794
power valves 2787
fluid power actuators 2790
linear actuators
double acting cylinders 2790
force exerted by 2790
kinetic energy 2791
safe loading 2791
selection of 2790
single acting cylinders 2790
speed of 2790
rotary actuators 2792
Hazen-Williams equation, water flow 2780
head 2797
acceleration head 2799
Bernoulli's equation 2798
dynamic or velocity head 2799
elevation head 2798
friction head 2799
pressure head 2798
static head 2799
vapor pressure head 2799

Fluid power (*continued*)
hydraulics 2794
dampers (hydraulic shock absorbers) 2794
fluids 2794
horsepower 2805
kilowatt 2805
intensifiers and hydraulic presses 2791
linear actuators 2790
liquid pulsation (water hammer) 2796
Moody diagram, Darcy-Weisbach equation 2779
pipe, tubing, and fittings 2762
metal pipe 2762
connections 2763
expansion with temperature 2767
materials 2762
pressure ratings 2763
schedules and classes 2762
sizes 2762
metal tube 2771
materials 2772
pressure ratings 2772
sizes 2772
pipe fittings 2771
materials 2771
pressure considerations 2771
types 2771
plastic pipe 2767
connections 2769
expansion with temperature 2769
materials 2767
pressure ratings 2769
schedules 2768
sizes 2769
plastic tube 2773
materials 2774
pressure ratings 2775
sizes 2775
tube fittings 2776
materials 2776
types 2776
pneumatics 2810
compressors 2813
adiabatic expansion or compression 2814
compression of air 2813
horsepower required to compress air 2815
isothermal expansion/compression 2814
sizing 2819
types 2819
work required in compression of air 2814
fans and blowers 2810
calculations 2811

Fluid power (*continued*)
pneumatics
gas
conditioning and stabilization 2820
consumption 2810
dryers 2820
lubricators 2820
nozzles 2821
receivers 2820
silencers and exhaust cleaners 2820
velocity of escaping compressed air 2822
shock absorbers and gas springs 2793
types of fans and blowers 2810
pressure 2751
drop for gas flow 2782
and flow 2755
generation 2755
compressors, fans, blowers, pumps 2755
diffusers 2755
head 2798
measurement 2755
barometers 2756
gauges 2756
manometers 2755
transducers 2756
regulation 2756
properties
liquids and gases 2749
property symbols and equations 2749
pulsation dampeners & snubbers 2797
pumps 2800
affinity and similarity 2808
capacity 2802
cavitation 2804
combining in series or parallel 2808
critical speed 2806
effect of viscosity 2802
efficiency 2805
hydraulic power 2804
kinetic 2801
net positive suction head 2804
NPSHR and NPSHA 2804
operating point 2808
piping considerations 2809
positive displacement 2800
pump curves 2807
shaft loading 2807
specific speed 2806
startup conditions 2809
system head curves 2808
system head or total dynamic head (TDH) 2803
total discharge head 2802
total suction head 2802
vacuum 2823

Fluid power (*continued*)
rotary actuators 2792
sizing 2792
types 2792
shock absorbers and hydraulic dampers 2793
strainers and filters 2795
vacuum 2823
accessories 2825
pumps and generators 2823
filters 2825
grippers 2825
level compensators 2825
measurement 2825
regulators 2825
selection factors 2824
sizing 2824
valves 2825
tubing and fittings 2823
valves
check and foot valves 2788
directional control 2788
relief 2788
restriction valves 2788
selection and sizing 2789
viscosity 2752
Fluting cutters, reamers 909–910
Flux-cored arc welding (FCAW). *See* Welding: flux-cored arc welding
Fluxes
brazing 1572
soldering 1566
FOIL 28–30
Foot-pound
into British thermal units 2866
equivalents 2865
Force 156, 206
acceleration resulting from 186–188
addition and subtraction of 160
algebraic composition and resolution of 163–171
algebraic solution
forces in same plane 164–166
forces not in same plane 168–171
of blow 190–191
centrifugal 194–197
calculating 195
colinear 163
components of 160, 163
composition 160, 163
concurrent 163–164
coplanar 163
and couples, work performed by 189
couples of 162–163
differential pulley 178
disc springs 354–357
friction 186
Geneva wheel 178

Force (*continued*)
graphical representation 160–164
of gravity 186
on inclined planes 175
wedges 176
moment of 156, 162
noncoplanar 163
normal component 186
parallel 161
parallelogram of 161
polygon of 161–162
pound 157, 158
relationship to time 206
resolution of 160, 163
into rectangular components 168
resultant 160, 163
any number of concurrent forces 168
locating when components are known 171
non-intersecting forces 166
non-parallel, non-intersecting forces 170
parallel forces not in same plane 169
single force and couple 165
system of parallel forces 165
three or more concurrent forces 164
two concurrent forces 164
screw 178
sheet metal work 1412
systems 160
toggle joint 179
units conversion 2863
wheels and pulleys 177–178
work performed by 189
Formed cutters for internal gears 2249
Formica machining 1259
Forming
electrohydraulic 1441
electromagnetic 1440
explosive 1439
radial 1441
rubber pad 1434
stretch 1431
stretch-draw 1431
stretch-wrap 1431
superplastic 1435
Forming tools
feeds per revolution 1234
Formulas
area 75–80
column
American Railway Engineering Association 281
Euler 282–285
Johnson 282, 284–285
Rankine or Gordon 281, 283
straight-line 281
Formulas (*continued*)
contour milling 907
critical speeds 204–205
cutting speed 1084
derivative 133–134
dimensions of milled bevel gears 2260, 2262
dimensions of SAE Standard splines 2360
dimensions of spur gears 2210
distance across bolt circle 702
for helical gears 2274, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2282, 2285
integral 133–134
internal gears 2250
linear motion with constant acceleration 182–183
for module system gears 2296, 2298
pendulum 180–181
proportions of ANSI fine-pitch worms and wormgears 2270
rotary motion with constant acceleration 184
tooth parts, coarse pitch spur gear 2210
torque capacity of involute splines 2345
triangle
oblique 76, 100–101
right 76, 98–99, 102
trigonometric 96–97
volume 88–93
work and power 193–194
Fractional threads 2181
Fractions 5–7
and mixed numbers 7–8
See also Conversion
Free
body diagram 186–187
cutting brass 373, 515, 520, 524
cutting steels 409
wheeling clutches 2529
Freezing mixtures 373
French
thermal unit 2870
thread 2120
Fretting damage 2349
Friction 172–174, 186, 2499
brakes 2534–2537
clutches 2525, 2527
coefficient in gears 2253
coefficients 173, 2527, 2534–2538
bolts 1656
hexagon head bolt and nut 1662–1663
nuts 1656
rolling resistance 174
steel on various materials 173
torque 1662–1663
various materials combinations 173
various materials on metal 2527
fluid 2499
influence on efficiency 172–173

Friction (*continued*)
kinetic 2499
laws of 172
rolling 174
solid 2499
static 2499
wheels, horsepower 2538
wheels, power transmission 2536–2537
Friction loss
in bearings 2477
elbow
45 degree 2784
90 degree 2784
standard tee
flow thru branch 2784
flow thru run 2784
Fuels, equivalent 2869
Full film lubrication 2500
Functions
derivatives 133–134
integrals 133–134
involute 111–115
sevolute 111
trigonometric 95–97
versed cosine 111
versed sine 111
See also CNC: programming: macros
Fundamental constants 2835
Furnace brazing 1573
Furnaces, steel heat-treating 458, 466, 467, 498
Fused deposition modeling (FDM) 614
Fusion, latent heat of 369

G

G-address, G-codes, CNC programming 1356–1358
Gage blocks 721–724
calibration and verification of 722
care of 721
precision 723
federal specifications for 723
inch sizes 723
metric sizes 724
sets
inch sizes 723
metric sizes 724
wringing 722, 723
Gagemakers tolerances 673
Gages
ANSI/ASME Unified thread
classification 2140
constants for computing dimensions 2145
form 2142, 2145
Gages (*continued*)
ANSI/ASME Unified thread
formulas for limits 2147
tolerances for plain gages 2145
hypodermic needle 2704
rods 2702
sheet metal 2706–2708
sheet zinc 2706, 2707
thickness and diameter sizes, galvanized sheet 2706, 2707
thread form 2143
tolerances 2143
tubing 2702
usage, recommended 673
wire 347, 2702, 2704
zinc 2706, 2707
Gage tolerances 2145, 2146
Gaging methods and measuring instruments 690
Gallons
into cubic inches 2853
cylindrical tanks 73–74
in tank at given level 73–74
US into liters 2853, 2856
Galvanized steel, welding 1576
Gap-frame press 1464
Gas
carburizing 483
illuminating, specific gravity 378
metal arc welding (GMAW) 1576–1584
specific gravity 378
specific heat 370
tungsten arc welding (GTAW) 1595–1600
GCF (greatest common factor) 29
Gear cutters, formed
involute 2223, 2249, 2284
milling cutters for
chain sprockets 892, 893
14.5-degree pressure angles 891, 892
number for bevel gears 2264–2265
Gear cutting
excess depth to obtain backlash 2245
formed cutter selection 2227, 2264–2265, 2283
internal gears 2249
Gearing materials
effect of alloying metals 2321
chrome-molybdenum 2322
chrome-nickel 2322
chrome-vanadium 2322
chromium 2321
manganese 2322
molybdenum 2322
nickel 2321
nickel-modybdenum 2322
vanadium 2322

Gearing materials (*continued*)
forged and rolled
alloy steels 2320
carbon steels 2320
non-metallic 2324
applications 2325
bore sizes 2326
diametral pitch for given power 2326
diametral pitch for given torque 2327
keyway stresses 2326
mating gear 2325
power-transmitting capacity 2325
preferred pitch 2326
safe working stress 2325
tooth form 2325
sintered materials 2322
steel castings 2321
Gears and gearing 2274–2318
active face width 2204
active spline length 2332
actual safety factor 2253
actual space width 2332
actual tooth thickness 2332
AGMA Standards 2243, 2247
angular backlash 2242–2248
arc
of action 2204
of approach 2204
of recession 2204
thickness of internal gear tooth 2249
thickness of pinion tooth 2249
axial
pitch 2204
plane 2204
thickness 2205
backlash 2242–2248, 2314
angular 2248
recommended 2244
bearing spacing and shaft stiffness 2259
bevel gears 2256–2268
blanks
design of 2240
for fine pitch gears 2239
bottom land 2205
bronze and brass castings for 2322
bulk temperature thermal flash factor 2254
bushings for gears 2324
calculated safety factors 2253
calculating
dimensions of milled bevel gears 2262
replacement gear dimensions 2328
spur gear proportions 2210
case-hardening steels for 2319
change gears, for lathe 2181

Gears and gearing (*continued*)
checking
gear sizes 2300–2318
pressures 2248
spur gear sizes 2310–2313
chordal measurement of teeth 2315, 2316, 2317
circular pitch system 2209
coefficient of friction 2253
contact ratio factor 2235, 2252, 2253
crossed helical 2204
deburring tooth profile 1632
design of bevel gear blanks 2258
diametral pitch
definition 2205
preferred 2215
system 2209
drawing
data for spur and helical gears 2242
information to be given on 2251
efficiency 2206
elasticity factor 2252, 2253
endurance limit 2253
enlarged pinion
fine-pitch 2229
meshing without backlash 2233
reduced dimensions to avoid interference 2225
epicyclic 2290–2293
equivalent pitch radius 2206
external spur gears 2204
dimensions for checking over wires 2301–2304
face advance 2206
Fellows stub tooth 2216
fillet
radius 2206
stress 2206
finishing gear milling cutters 2229
flank of tooth 2206
forged and rolled
alloy steels for gears 2320
carbon steels for gears 2320
formed cutters for bevel gears 2266
formulas
given center distance and ratio 2216, 2218
for helical gears 2274, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2282, 2285
to mesh with enlarged pinion 2233
for module system gears 2296, 2298
for spur gears 2210, 2211, 2214, 2216, 2217
gear ratio, definition 2206
geometrical factor 2253, 2254
given center distance and ratio 2218
harder pinion 2320

Gears and gearing (*continued*)
heat treatment to permit machining 2319
helical 2204, 2274–2289
herringbone 2289
highest point of single tooth contact (HPSTC) 2206, 2236
hypoid bevel gears 2204, 2257
increasing pinion diameter to avoid undercut or interference 2227
inspection of gears 2248
integral temperature criterion 2254
interference 2206
internal diameter 2206
internal gears 2206, 2249
spur 2204, 2249, 2250
dimensions between wires 2305–2308
invention 2327
involute curve 2209
land 2206
lead 2206
length of action 2206
life factor 2252, 2253
line of action 2206
load distribution 2253
lowest point of single tooth contact (LPSTC) 2206, 2234, 2235
lubricant influence 2253
roughness, and speed 2252
lubrication film factor 2253
material quality 2252
materials for 2319–2325
bevel gears 2269
maximum hob tip radius 2235
measuring
gear size over wires 2300–2318
teeth 2226
methods of cutting internal gears 2249
metric module gear cutters 2227
module, definition 2206
module system 2296–2298
mountings for bevel gears 2259
nomenclature of gear teeth 2208
non-metallic 2324
normal plane 2206
number of teeth 2206
to avoid undercutting 2233
outside diameter 2206
pinions flanges composition 2324
pin method of checking size 2300–2318
pitch diameter 2209
obtained with diametral pitch system 2209
pitch point 2206
plane of rotation 2206
planetary 2290

Gears and gearing (*continued*)
pressure angle 2207, 2214
profile checker settings 2237
rack 2207
ratchet gearing 2294–2295
ratio, defined 2206
relative sizes of internal gear and pinion 2249
replacement gear dimensions 2328
roll angle 2207
root diameter 2207
selection of involute gear milling cutter 2227
shapers, root diameters of gears cut on 2217
size, checking 2300–2318
size factor 2252
specifications 2242
spur gear 2208–2241
external 2204
internal 2204, 2249, 2250
standard normal diametral pitches 2251
steels for 2319, 2321
straight bevel 2204
surface condition factor 2253
tangential force 2252
tangent plane 2207
teeth invention 2327
terms used in gear specifications 2240
thru-hardening steels for 2319
tip relief 2207
tooth caliper, vernier 2226
tooth face 2207
tooth profile
deburring 1632
producing a radius 1632
tooth proportions
comparative sizes and shape of 2208
for enlarging fine-pitch pinions 2231, 2232
fine-pitch involute spur and helical gears 2214
tooth stiffness constants 2253
tooth surface 2207
tooth thickness allowance for shaving 2220
tooth-to-tooth composite error 2248
total composite error 2248
total face width 2207
transverse load distribution factor 2253
transverse plane 2207
trochoid curve 2207
true involute form diameter 2207, 2236
undercut 2207
limit for hobbed involute gears 2236
Van Keuren wire diameter 2308
wear equalizing 2320
welding factor 2254
whole depth 2207
wire diameter 2308
work hardening factor 2252, 2253

Gears and gearing (*continued*)
working depth 2207
worm gears 2204, 2270–2273
Zerol bevel 2204
zone factor 2252, 2253
Gears, metric thread on inch lead screw 2183
General Accounting Office 395
General purpose Acme threads 2054–2061
data 2056
designation 2055, 2056
form 2054, 2056, 2063
formulas for diameters 2056
limiting dimensions 2055, 2056–2057, 2063
pitch diameter allowances 2056
thread form 2056, 2063
Generator shaft keys and keyseats 2556
Geneva wheel 178
Geometric
constructions 66–70
progression 39, 41
propositions 61–65
symbols 623–626
ASME 623
ISO 624
symbols for drawings 623, 624
Geometric dimensioning and tolerancing 625
datum feature 627
material removal required or prohibited 816
mean line 810
relation of surface roughness to tolerances 813
Geometry 42–93
analytic geometry 42–59
circle 49–51
additional formulas 49–51
ellipse 51–54
additional formulas 52–54
equation forms of a line 44–48
changing coordinate systems 46–47
cylindrical coordinates 48
distance between a point and a line 46
parallel lines 45
perpendicular lines 46
point-point form 45
point-slope form 44, 45
slope-intercept form 44, 45
spherical coordinates 47
standard form 45
four-arc oval approximating an ellipse 54
hyperbola 58–59
lines and line segments 43–44
distance between two points 43
external division of a line segment 44

Geometry (*continued*)
analytic geometry
internal division of a line segment 43–44
midpoint of a line segment 43
parabola 57–58
rectangular coordinate system 42
slope of a line 42–43
spheres 55–57
area and volume 71–74
approximate method for finding the area of a surface of revolution 72
area of irregular plane figure 72–73
areas enclosed by cycloidal curves 73
contents of cylindrical tanks at different levels 73–74
Pappus-Guldinus rules 71
prismoidal formula 71
complex numbers 59–60
forms of a complex number 59–60
exponential form of a complex number 60
operations on complex numbers 59–60
polar form of a complex number 60
standard (rectangular) form of a complex number 59–60
trigonometric form of a complex number 60
imaginary number 59
dimensions of plane figures 75–87
acute triangle 76
circle 78
circular ring (annulus) 79
cycloid 79
diagonals of squares and hexagons 87
ellipse 81
hyperbola 81
obtuse triangle 76
parabola 80
parallelogram 75
polygons 78, 81–82
rectangle 75
regular hexagon 77
regular octagon 77
regular polygon 78
right triangle 76
sector of circle 78
sector of circular ring 79
segment of circle 79, 83–85
segment of parabola 80
spandrel or fillet 80
square 75
trapezium 77
trapezoid 77
pure geometry 61

Geometry (*continued*)
volumes of solids 88–93
barrel 93
cone 90
cube 88
cylinder 89
cylinder portion 1 89
ellipsoid 91
frustum of cone 90
frustum of pyramid 89
hollow cylinder 90
hollow sphere 92
paraboloid 92
paraboloidal segment 93
ratio of volumes 93
rectangular prism 88
right prism 88
right pyramid 88
segment of cylinder 90
sphere 91
spherical sector 91
spherical segment 91
spherical wedge 92
spherical zone 92
torus 93
wedge 89
German Standard 2296
Gib-head keys 2554
Glands. *See* O-rings
Gleason system, Zerol bevel gears 2257
Glue, plastics 596
GMAW (gas metal arc welding). *See* Welding: GMAW
GO and NOT GO gages 2350
Gold, plating 1644
Goodman diagram 209–210
Gordon or Rankine formula for columns 281, 283
Grade markings on bolts and nuts
ASTM and SAE 1666
inch 1666
metric 1766
Grams
into ounces, avoirdupois 2858, 2859
per cubic centimeter into pounds per cubic inch 2860
Granite, strength 391
Granite parallel, high-precision 752
Granite rock types and properties 725
Graphical solution of force systems 160–163
Graphite materials for bearings 2441
Gravitational system of measurement 157
Gravity
acceleration due to 157
center of, in various geometrical figures 228–234
force of 186

Gravity (*continued*)
specific 377
gases 378
liquids 378
various substances 378
Gray cast iron 1480
Grease 2499, 2510–2515
additives 2512
application 2514
classification 2512
consistency rating 2512
National Lubricating Grease Institute 2512
properties 2511
Greatest common factor (GCF) 29
Greek symbols and alphabet 2827
Green wood, weight per cubic feet 384
Grindability data 1269, 1270, 1271, 1292, 1293
Grindability of tool steels 1292–1296
Grinders, spindles for portable 1039
Grinding 1280
abrasive belt grinding 1333
abrasives 1280–1282
basic rules 1261
carbide materials, diamond wheel 1276
carbide tools 1065–1068
cast iron 1273
centerless 1323–1325
centerless grinding troubles 1324–1325
ceramic materials, diamond wheel 1276
chipbreakers 1067–1068
cost 1279
cutting forces 1267
cutting time formula 1217
cutting torque 1267
cylindrical 1315–1323
cylindrical grinding troubles 1319–1322
data selection including wheel life 1268
diamond wheel 1065–1067, 1276, 1277, 1304–1311
ECT, grinding 1262
equivalent diameter factor 1267
feeds and speeds 1261
finishing 1269
floor and bench stand 1332
fluids 1247
grindability groups 1269
grinding rules and data selection 1261
heat resistant alloys 1275
inconel 1275
internal centerless 1323
milling cutters 898
minimum cost conditions 1264
mounted wheels and points 1041
offhand grinding 1332
optimization planning 1279
optimum grinding data for roughing 1264
planing tools 839

Grinding (*continued*)
plunge 1315
portable grinding 1332
power 1267
procedure to determine data 1271
ratio 1261
relative grindability 1270
rene 1275
rpm, various speeds and diameters 1314
screw threads 2192–2195
side feed, roughing and finishing 1269
silicon carbide wheels 1065–1067
spark-out time 1266
specific metal removal rates 1266
spindles for portable tools 1037
stainless steels 1272
surface 1325–1331
surface finish, Ra 1265
surface grinding troubles 1330
swing-frame 1332
terms and definitions 1270
tools
carbide 1065–1067
twist drills 1062–1065
tool steels 1273–1275
traverse 1315
unhardened steels 1272
user calibration of recommendations 1277
vertical and angle spindles 1037
wheel life
cost 1279
grinding data relationship 1263
grinding ratio 1261
life versus cost 1279
relationships and optimum grinding data 1263
wheels 1280–1303, 1311–1313
abrasive materials for 1280–1281
angles for eccentric type radial relief angles on milling cutters 903, 904
bond properties 1281, 1330
CBN 1281, 1298, 1307
cubic boron nitride 1280, 1298
cutting fluids 1268
diamond 868
truing of 1299–1303
dressing and truing of 1299–1303
eccentric type 903
faces, shapes of 1291
finishing 1269
grades 1281
handling 1311
inspection 1311
markings, standard 1282–1283
mounted wheels and points
metric 1043
mounting and safety 1311, 1312

Grinding (*continued*)
wheels
radial relief angle 903
roughing 1269
safe operating speeds 1268, 1312–1313
selection of 1268, 1283–1303
sequence of markings 1282
shapes and sizes, standard 1283–1291
metric 1289–1290
side feed 1269
silicate bonding process 1330
single-point truing diamonds 1303
storage 1311
structure 1281–1282
truing
diamond feeds 1302
diamond sizes 1302
dressing of 1299–1303
vitrified 1330
wheel markings 1282
wheel safety 1311–1313
handling 1311
inspection 1311
machine conditions 1311
mounting 1311
portable grinders 1313
safe operating speeds 1312–1313
speed conversion table 1314
speeds, maximum 1313
storage 1311
work speed
and depth of cut selection 1262
in rough and finish grinding 1266
Grinding wheels. *See* Grinding
Grooved drive studs
dimensions 1894
hole sizes 1894
Grooved pins 1890
designation 1891
hole sizes 1891
lengths and sizes 1890
materials 1891, 1893
properties 1893
requirements 1891
standard sizes 1893
type 1892
Grooves. *See* O-rings
Grooving and oil feeding of bearings 2404
Grooving insert holder 845–847
GTAW (gas tungsten arc welding). *See* Welding: GTAW
Guerin process 1434
Guide bearings 2396, 2435
Guldinus or Pappus-Guldinus rules 71
Gutta percha, turning 1144

Gyration, radius of 235–238
bar, small diameter 235
circular disk, thin 236
circular ring, thin flat 236
cone 237
frustum 237
cylinder
hollow 237
thin hollow 237
ellipsoid 238
paraboloid 238
parallelepiped 236
parallelogram 235
plate, thin flat 235
prism, rectangular 237
ring 235
sphere 238
hollow 238
spherical shell, thin 238

H

Half circle
moments of inertia 244
radius of gyration 244
section modulus 244
Hand
expansion reamers 921
of flute helix 874
of milling cutter 872
reamers 908
Hardening 469, 470
alloy steels 411–412
steel 458, 467, 470
flame 484
induction 484
temperatures
stainless steel 491–492
tool steels 470
test methods 463
tool steels 432
Hard facing 1606
austenitic high-chromium irons 1607
austenitic manganese steels 1606
cobalt-base alloys 1607
copper-base alloys 1608
high-speed steels 1606
materials 1606
nickel-chromium-boron alloys 1608
Hardmetals 860–870
carbonitride based 863
coated 866
ISO classifications 866
titanium carbide 862
Hardmetals (*continued*)
tooling for wood and nonmetals 870
tungsten carbide 861–863
Hardness 462
aluminum alloys 531–539
bearings 2400
ceramics 386
cobalt alloys 389
copper alloys 388
copper-base powdered alloys 390
heat-treated steels 419–420
iron-base powdered alloys 390
magnesium alloys 544
nickel alloys 389
number
Brinell 507
Rockwell 507
steel 1483
plastics 387
powdered metal alloys 390
relation to tensile strength 506
scales
comparison 504, 505–508
Rockwell 503
stainless steel 389
steel 388
carbon and alloy 421–426
tool steels 444, 445, 447, 452, 455
testing 502
Brinell 502
conversion errors, causes 506
conversion tables 505
durometer 506, 2688
Hultgren ball 502, 506
Keep's test 504
Mohs hardness scale 506
monotron 504
Rockwell 503, 505
scleroscope 503, 506
Turner's sclerometer 506
Vickers 503, 506
tungsten-base powdered alloys 390
Hardness number conversion 1757
Hard rubber, machining 1259
Harmonic 181
Harvey grip thread 2121
HDL, hydrodynamic lubrication 2500
Heat
absolute temperature and zero 2870
coefficients of radiation 372
coefficients of transmission 372
Fahrenheit-Celsius conversion 2870
freezing mixtures 373
ignition temperatures 373
latent 369
loss from uncovered steam pipes 370
mechanical equivalent 2870

Heat (*continued*)
power equivalents 2865
quantity measurement 2870
radiating capacity of bearings 2404, 2405
radiation coefficient 372
scales 2870
specific 369, 370
temperature scales 2870
thermal energy 2870
Heat treating furnace
fluidized bed furnace 468
oven or box 467
pit type 467
pot type 467
retort 467
vacuum furnace 468
Heat treatment 458–502
alloy steel 488
carburizing temperatures 488
normalizing temperatures 488
tempering temperatures 488
carbon steels 487
molybdenum high-speed steels 497
stainless steel 491–492
quenching medium 491–492
tempering temperatures 491–492
stainless steel temperatures 491–492
steel 404, 458–467, 470
annealing 405, 458, 462, 479
annealing temperatures 480
baths quenching 475
carburizing temperatures 481, 487
case hardening 481
cleaning work after case hardening 483
colors for tempering 477
cooling period 501
cooling subzero, to improve properties 501
cyanide hardening 482
decalescence point 458, 467
defects in hardening 472
flame hardening 484
furnaces 458, 466, 467
hardening, defects in 472
hardening baths 472
hardening temperatures 458, 467, 470, 488
induction hardening 484–486
interrupted quenching 475
lead bath temperatures 472
liquid baths 471
nitriding 498
normalizing 405, 479, 481
temperatures 487
oil quenching 472
pack-hardening 482
pressure-spraying quenching 473
Heat treatment (*continued*)
steel
protective coatings for molybdenum steels 497
quenching 495
temperatures 488
quenching baths 472
recalescence point 458, 467
scale formation 472
spheroidizing 479, 481
stabilizing dimensions 500, 501
strength and hardness of AISI steels 421–426
stress relieving 405
subzero treatments 501
surface hardening 486
tanks for quenching baths 474
tempering 461, 476
temperatures 487
tempering period 501
time aging 500
water quenching 473
Hectares into acres 2850
Helical
end mills 884
gear, helix angle 2200
wire screw thread inserts 1848
Helical coil insert 1746
block and spacer torque test 1750
breakaway torque 1755
coatings 1746
configuration 1746
dimensions 1746
maximum locking torque 1755
properties 1746
self-locking torque 1755
torque test 1755
torque test spacer 1756
Helical coil screw thread inserts 1745–1757
chemical composition 1749
compatibility 1745
dimensions 1745
hardness 1757
helical coil insert 1746
insert length data 1749–1754
inspection 1749
length selection 1756, 1757
material selection 1756
tapped hole 1745
taps 1757
threaded hole data 1747–1748
tolerance classes 1745
types 1745
Helical gearing 2204, 2274–2289
addendum 2274
modifications 2252
backlash 2243

Helical gearing (*continued*)
British Standard 2251
calculations 2274
center distance 2274
for enlarged 2286
exact 2277
change gears 2287
checking gear size 2309, 2314
cutter for milling 2283
data on drawings 2242
direction of thrust 2274
enlarged fine-pitch pinions 2283–2286, 2285
feed rate change 2288
fine pitch teeth 2285
formulas 2274, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2282, 2285
helical overlap 2206
helix angles 2275, 2280
herringbone type 2289
hobbing 2287, 2289
involute form milling cutter 2284
lead accuracy 2288
lead of tooth 2274
machine
with differential 2288
without differential 2287
measurements using wires or balls 2314
milling the helical teeth 2284
minimum center distance 2280, 2282
normal tooth thickness 2214
pitch diameter 2274
pitch of cutter 2275
replacement gear dimensions 2330
shafts
parallel 2276, 2277
at right angles 2278, 2279
shafts at right angle 2281
specifications 2240
spur gear replacement by helical gears 2328, 2330
thrust 2274
tooth proportions 2214
tooth thickness measurement 2314
troubleshooting 2289
wire diameter 2309
Helical milling
development of helix 2199
helix angle 2200
lead of ahelix 2199
Helical overlap 2206
Helix 2199
angle 2200, 2206, 2275, 2280
angle factor 2253
angles, screw threads 1978–1987
constructing 70
end mills with Weldon shanks 880
Helix (*continued*)
lead angle 2200
measurement of angle 2199
Herringbone gearing 2289
failures 2289
Hertzian contact area 2500
Hertz stress 2206
Hexagon
area 77
diagonals 87
moment of inertia 243
radius of gyration 243
section modulus 243
High-energy-rate metal forming 1439
Highest point of single tooth contact (HPSTC) 2206, 2236
High-speed steels 443–445, 1078
annealing rehardening 495
cobalt 961, 962
cobaltcrom 493
cooling period 501
cutters 901
as cutting tool materials 1078
drawing 495
hardening molybdenum 496
heat treatment 493
annealing 496
cutting efficiency 494
equipment 498
hardening temperatures 494
preheating tungsten 493
quenching
molybdenum 497
tungsten 494, 495
subzero treatment 502
tempering molybdenum 497
time for through hardening 494
molybdenum 443–444, 448, 496–498
hardening 496
quenching and straightening 495
tempering 495
tool 445
tungsten 445, 448, 493, 496
tungsten annealing 496
High-strength, low-alloy steels. *See* HSLA steels
Hobs
change gears for relieving 2185
roller chain sprocket 2634, 2635
tip radius, maximum 2235
worm gear 2270
Hob tip radius, maximum 2235
Hoisting chain and wire rope 2711
Holders for NC, insert 841–859
Hold-on or dolly bars for riveting 1866
Hole circles
adapting equations for geometry 710
coordinates for 708–720

Hole circles (*continued*)
Type "A" 708, 712, 714
Type "B" 709, 716, 718
Holes
accuracy of drilled 961
difficulties in reaming 917
in glass, drilling 1133
for riveted joints 1861
sizes for self-tapping screws 1841
for tapping 2160–2167
Hole sizes, tapping 2170, 2171
Hollow
circle
moments of inertia 244
radius of gyration 244
section modulus 244
cylinder, radius of gyration 237
mills, feeds and speeds 1235
sphere, radius of gyration 238
Homopolymers 557
Honing process 1336–1338
adjustments 1337–1338
carbide tools 1067, 1068
rotative speeds 1336–1338
stock removal, rate of 1336
tolerances 1338
Hooke's law 559, 564
Horsepower 156
air compression 2818
calculating by dynamometer 2536
chain transmission 2626–2630
to compress air 2815–2817
converted into kilowatts 2865, 2866
disk clutches 2526
drilling different materials 1151
dynamometer test 2535–2537
electric motor 2652
ratings 2645
equivalents 2865, 2866
formulas 193–194
friction wheels 2536–2538
gearing 2324–2325
hour equivalents 2865
machining 1145–1153
nonmetallic gears 2324–2325
planing and shaping 1145–1149
roller chains 2626–2630
set-screw transmitting capacity 1831
shafting 295–297
spade drilling 1151–1152
torque equivalent 295–297
V-belt drives 2566
Hose connection screw threads 2101–2105
ANSI/ASME Standards 2101
basic dimension 2104
tolerances 2104
Hot-working, tool steels for 446
HPSTC (highest point of single tooth contact) 2206, 2236
HSLA steels 397–398
application 417
chemical compositions 418
composition 417
elongation 418
formability 418
properties 417
tensile strength 418
toughness 418
weldability 418
yield strength 418
Hunting tooth ratio 2273
Hydrant screw thread 2103–2105
Hydraulic shock absorbers (dampers) 2794
Hydrodynamic film lubrication 2500
Hydroforming process 1434
Hydrometer, Baumé's, and specific gravity 378
Hyperbola 58–59
area 81
construction 70
eccentricity 58
foci 58
general equation 58
major and minor axis 58
Hypocycloidal curves, areas 73
Hypoid gears 2204, 2255, 2257, 2258
applications of 2258
Hypotenuse 95
Hysteresis 309

I

I-beam
aluminum 2701
standard structural steel 2696
structural
moment of inertia 2692–2696
section modulus 2692–2696
steel 2692
weight per foot 2692–2696
Ignition temperature 373
Impact force 190, 191
Impact strength, Izod
carbon and alloy steels 421–422
plastics 387
Impulse 191–193
angular, and momentum 192
Inch
into centimeter and millimeter 2840
decimals of, into millimeters 2843–2844
millimeters into decimals of 2839, 2845–2846
Inclinable-frame press 1464

Inclined plane 176, 186
  forces on 175–176
  motion on 186–187
Inconel metals 546
Indexable
  carbide inserts 839
  insert holder
    boring 845–847
    chamfering 845–847
    end cutting edge angle 844
    facing 845–847
    grooving 845–847
    identification system 840, 842
    insert shape 844
    lead angle 844
    NC 841–859
    planing 845–847
    plunge angle 845
    rake angle 844
    selection 844
    shank sizes 842
    shape 845
    tracing 845–847
    turning and backfacing 845–847
    turning and facing 845–847
Indexing
  head angular position for
    milling end mills and angular cutters 896–899
  reamer teeth for irregular spacing 909
Indicator drop method 904
Induction
  annealing 486
  brazing 1573
  hardening 465, 484–486
    equipment 484
    gear teeth 486
  normalizing 486
Inertia 251
  electric motor 2653
  moment of 239–262
    in built-up sections 240
    formulas for 241–251
    mass 251
    polar 251, 252–255
Injection molding 587–588
  mold design 588–592
  plastics 594–595
Insert configuration 1749
Insert length
  data 1749–1754
  selection 1756, 1757
Inserts
  hard metal materials 860–870
  holders for NC 841–859
  indexable 839–859
  radius compensation, NC 857–859
Inserts (*continued*)
  screw thread 1848
  self-tapping screw 1848
  throw away carbide 860
Inspection methods 690
Instrument maker's thread system 2113
Insurance Services Office 1620
Integrals 130–134
Integration 131–132
  of functions 133
  rules 132
Interest 143–146
  compound 144
  determining principal, rate, or time 144–145
  nominal versus effective 145
  simple 143–144
Interference 2206
Interference fit threads 2106–2111
  allowances 2110
  British Standard 1769
  change in diameter 2111
  coarse threads 2110
  design and application data 2107
  designation symbols 2107
  dimensions 2108
  driving speed 2109
  driving torque and length of engagement relation 2110
  engagement lengths 2109
  interferences 2107, 2109
  lead and angle variations 2111
  lubrication 2109
  materials for 2109
  profile 2106
  spur gearing 2225, 2227
  surface roughness 2110
  thread dimensions 2108
  tolerances for pitch diameter 2110
  torques 2109
  variation in axial lead 2111
Interferometer 730, 765
Internal diameter 2206
Internal gears 2206
  spur 2204, 2249
Interpolation 122
Interrupted quenching 474, 475
Inverse
  and direct proportions combined 10
  of a matrix 126–127
  proportion 10
Investment casting 1504–1506
  design 1506
  making procedure 1504
  materials 1505
  milling cutters 1506
Investment casting alloys
  elongation 388–389

Investment casting alloys (*continued*)
hardness 388–389
tensile strength 388–389
yield strength 388–389
Involute 2206
constructing 70
curve, properties 2209, 2210–2211
functions 111–115
gear cutters, formed type 2227, 2249
serrations 2331
true form diameter in gears 2207
Involute splines 2206, 2331–2352, 2334
ANSI Standard 2331
application factor 2346
basic dimension 2337
basic rack profile 2356
bursting stress 2348
chamfers and fillets 2339, 2356
circular pitch 2332, 2337
classes of tolerances 2337
combinations 2342
compressive stress at side teeth 2348
compressive stresses allowable 2347
crowning for misalignment 2348
diametral pitch 2333
dimensions, effective and actual 2352, 2354
drawing data 2342, 2344
effective
and actual dimensions 2340, 2341, 2350
clearance 2333
space width 2333
tooth thickness 2333
variation 2333, 2355
effect of spline variations 2340
fatigue life factor 2347
fillet 2333
chamfers 2339, 2356
root splines 2333, 2339
fit classes 2337, 2352, 2356
flat root splines 2333, 2339
form circle 2334
form clearance 2334
form diameter 2334
formulas 2356
2-pin measurement 2350
basic dimension 2336, 2352, 2354
fretting damage 2349
inspection
with gages 2350
methods 2349
types of gages 2350
interchangeability 2342
internal splines 2334, 2342
lead variations 2334, 2340
length of engagement 2334
length of splines 2345

Involute splines (*continued*)
load distribution factors 2346
machining tolerance 2334, 2355
major circle 2334
major diameter fit 2334, 2337
manufacturing 2362
maximum
actual space width 2341
actual tooth thickness 2341
effective space width 2342
effective tooth thickness 2341
metric module 2351–2356
milling cutter 899
minimum
actual space width 2341
actual tooth thickness 2341
effective space width 2341
effective tooth thickness 2342
minor circle 2334
minor diameter 2334
misalignment 2346
parallelism variation 2334
pin measurement of 2350
pitch 2334
circle 2334
diameter 2334
point 2334
pressure angle 2334
rack profiles 2355
reference dimensions 2342, 2344, 2356
shear stress
allowable 2347
at pitch diameter of teeth 2348
under roots of external teeth 2347
side fit 2337
sizes and lengths, estimating 2344, 2345
space width and tooth thickness limits 2341, 2352
stub pitch 2334
symbols 2334, 2335, 2342, 2352
tensile stresses allowable 2347
terms and definition 2332, 2352
tolerances 2337, 2352, 2355
tolerances and variations 2355
tooth
numbers 2334, 2337
proportions 2334
thickness limits 2341, 2354
thickness modification 2354
torque capacity formulas 2345
total index variation 2334
total tolerance 2334
types and classes of fits 2337
variations 2340, 2355
allowance 2334, 2340
eccentricity 2340
effect of 2355

Involute splines (*continued*)
variations
effect of profile 2340
lead 2340
types of 2332, 2355
wear life factors, flexible splines 2347
width and tooth thickness 2355
IR (infrared/thermal testing) 1630
Iron
castings 1480–1482
coloring 1639
copper-base sintered bearings 2442, 2443
Iron and steel castings 1480–1486
cast iron 1480–1481
ductile 1481–1482
malleable iron 1481
steel 1482
alloy 1484–1486
carbon 1482–1483
Iron-base powdered alloys 390
density 390
elongation 390
hardness 390
rupture strength 390
ultimate strength 390
yield strength 390
I-section
moment of inertia 245, 246
radius of gyration 245, 246
section modulus 245, 246
Isosceles triangle 62, 94
ISO standards
cleanliness code for lubrication 2518
drawing symbols 624
geometric dimensioning and tolerancing 625
metric
grade markings on bolts 1766
hexagon bolts, screws and nuts 1762
limits and fits, British Standard 674
thread 2035, 2053
thread system, miniature screw threads 2044
surface finish 822
profiles 825
surface parameter symbols 823
washers, compared with ANSI/ASME 1739
ISO surface finish 822–828
Isothermal
expansion, compression of air 2814
quenching 476
ISO VG, viscosity 2504
Izod impact strength
carbon and alloy steels 421–422
plastics 387

J

Jacobs tapers 1026
Jam nuts, standard 1671, 1677, 1678
metric 1737
Jarno taper 1013, 1024
Jig, boring, lengths of chords 720
Jobbers reamers 922
drills 933–939
Johnson, J.B., column formula 282, 284–285
Joining plastics 595–596
Joints
riveted 1861
toggle 179
universal 2524
Journal bearing. *See* Bearings: journal

K

Karat 2858
Keep's hardness test 504
Kelvin, degrees 2870
Key and spline sizes and lengths 2344
Keying bearings 2398
Keys and bits, hexagon and spline 1824
Keys, keyseats, and keyways 2539
alignment tolerances 2552
ANSI/ASME Standard 2539
chamfered keys 2556, 2561
cotters 2560, 2561
depth control values 2552
depth of keyseat 2561
depths for milling keyseats 2561
designation 2539, 2548
dimension of square and rectangular parallel keys 2540
dimensions and tolerances 2542, 2546
estimating key sizes 2344
filleted keyseats 2556, 2561
fitting 2555
gib-head keys 2554
keyseat milling cutters, Woodruff 895
keyseats, depth of 2552, 2561
keyways
dimension 2542
effect on shaft strength 301
strength considerations for shafts 301
tolerances 2542
lengths and tolerances 2539, 2540, 2545
material 2539, 2548
milling cutters and arbors 894
parallel and taper 2552, 2555
parallel keys dimensions 2544
parallel keys tolerances 2544

Keys, keyseats, and keyways (*continued*)
plain 2554
rectangular parallel keys 2548
set screws for keys 2556
shaft diameter 2551
size versus shaft diameter 2548, 2551, 2561
square and parallel keys 2540
square and rectangular type 2539–2543
tolerances 2539, 2548, 2554, 2556
transmission chain 2621
Woodruff keys and keyseats 2548, 2556
Keyways. *See* Keys, keyseats, and keyways
Kilogram calorie 2870
Kilogram conversions 2849, 2858–2862
Kilopascals into pounds per square inch 2862
Kilowatt
into horsepower 2866
hour equivalents 2865
power required for machining 1145
Kinematics and kinetics 156
Kinematic viscosity 2504
Kinetic energy 188–189, 190
Kingsbury thrust bearing 2417
Kirchoff current law 129
Kirchoff voltage law 129
K-Monel, machining 1258
Knees. *See* Right-angle plate
Knee tools, speeds and feeds 1235
Knoop hardness numbers 504
Knuckle joints 2525
proportions 2526
Knurls and knurling 1056–1060
automatic screw machines 1234–1239
concave 1060
diagonal teeth 1056
diametral pitch knurls 1056–1060
dies, marking 1060
flat tools 1058
formulas 1058
lathe knurls 1056
revolutions required for top knurling 1234
sizes, preferred 1056
speeds and feeds 1235
straight teeth 1056
tools 1057
tracking correction 1056
work diameter tolerances 1059–1060

L

Lag screws and threads 1675–1676
metric 1718
Lamé's formula for internal pressure 291
Land gear tooth drill 931
Laps and lapping 1338–1342
abrasives 1341
carbide tools 1067, 1068
charging laps 1339
cutting properties 1340
cutting qualities 1341
flat surfaces 1339
grading abrasives for 1339
grading diamond dust for 1340
lubricants 1341
materials for 1338–1339
pressures 1342
rotary diamond 1340
tests 1342
wear 1341
wet and dry 1342
Laser beam machining (LBM) 1345
Latent heat 369
Lathe
change gears 2181
fixtures, balancing 202–203
screw constant 2181
Law of cosines 96
Law of sines 96
Lay symbols 819
LBM (laser beam machining) 1345
LCD (least common denominator) 6
LCP (liquid-crystalline polymers) 557
Lead
angle of cutting tools 832
inserts 857
angle of screw thread 2199
tables for 1978–1987, 2056, 2064, 2075, 2136
of screw thread 2122, 2199
side cutting edge 837
Lead and lead alloys
element 368
lead bath 472
tempering in 478
melting temperatures 368, 478
solder 1567
Leaded-bronze bearings 2436–2439
Lead screws 2640
Leak testing (LT) 1630
Least common denominator (LCD) 6
Length
of action 2206
differences due to temperature 375
of engagement 2169
engagement of screw thread 1668
of rivets for forming heads 1866
units and conversion of 2836–2849
Lengths and tolerances 2539, 2540
Letter symbols for mechanics 2830
Levers 174

Light-duty belts and pulleys
V-belts 2585–2592
Light metals
drilling, reaming, and threading 1138
milling 1112
turning 1106
Limestone
cutting speed for 1144
strength 391
Limit
D or DU on taps 976
elastic 207
endurance 209
H- and L-limits 971
proportional 207
Limits and fits
actual size 647
allowance 646
ANSI/ASME Standard 646–660
ANSI/ASME Standard preferred metric 660–670
basic size 646, 647, 660, 675
British Standard for holes and shafts 675–683
cylindrical fits, ANSI Standard 646–672
definitions 651
design size 646
deviations for holes 682
deviations for shafts 680
dimension 646
gagemakers tolerance 673
gages, plain 641, 673
gages, thread 2143
graphical representation 651, 652
indicating on drawings 640
maximum material condition 647
metric screw threads 2016
minimum material condition 647
screw thread gages 2143
size, nominal 646
symbols 662
tolerance 646, 661
bilateral 647
unilateral 647
tolerance limit 647
tolerances 647, 675
Woodruff keys 2557–2558
Line
of action 2206
angle between two 46
conventions for drawings 620
distance between point and line 46
distance between two points 43
geometry of 63
parallel 45
drawing 67
perpendicular 45, 46
drawing 66
Linear
coefficient of expansion 372, 375, 376
metals 372, 373, 374
pipe material
copper 2767
FRP 2767
PP & PVDF 2767
PVC 2767
steel 2767
plastics 372
deflection of shafting 298
Linear motion 2640
Liquid
baths, heating steel in 471
depth to volume conversion 73–74
specific gravity 377
Liquid-crystalline polymers (LCP) 557
Liquid pulsation (water hammer) 2796
Liters
into cubic feet 2855
into US gallons 2853
Lloyd & Lloyd screw thread 2121
Lloyd's Register of North America 1620
Load
rating, static, bearings 2494
ratings and fatigue life, bearings 2482, 2498
Lobing 706
Locking torque 1755
Lock-nut pipe thread 2121
Locknuts, ball and roller bearing 2474
shafts for 2475–2476
Lock washers
ANSI/ASME Standard 1698–1701
ball and roller bearing 2473
British Standard, metric
plain 1772–1774
spring 1770–1772
spring type 1698–1699
tooth lock 1700
tooth type 1698, 1700–1701
Lock wire procedure 1669
Long-angle lathe file 1054
Long-hand threading, CNC 1376
Löwenherz thread 2118
Lowest point of single tooth contact (LPSTC) 2206, 2234, 2235
L-section
moment of inertia 249
radius of gyration 249
section modulus 249
LT (leak testing) 1630
Lubricants 2502
bearings 2402
cutting 1246–1251
electric motors 2657
grease 2402, 2510
operating temperature 2404

Lubricants (*continued*)
press work 1442
blanking operations 1442
drawing operations 1442
effects on 1442
removal from formed parts 1443
properties of additives 2508
temperature versus viscosity 2403
Lubrication 2401–2404, 2499–2521
absolute viscosity 2504
additive properties 2508
analysis 2414
journal bearings 2408
application 2512
comparison of methods 2516
bearings, grease packing 2515
blanking 1442
boundary layer film 2500
chain 2638
cleanliness codes 2518
contamination 2517
contamination with water 2519
delivery methods 2515
drawing 1442
economic impact 2502
efficiency filtration 2521
films 2499
film thickness 2414
ratio 2499
film transition 2500
filter efficiency 2521
filter filtration ratio 2521
filtration 2520
grease 2403, 2510–2515
Hertzian contact area 2500
hydrodynamic 2500
hydrodynamic flow 2413
ISO cleanliness 2518
kinematic viscosity 2504
method 2479
mixed film 2500
motors 2657
oil 2503
oil bath 2402
oil film thickness values 2502
oxidation 2509
plain bearings 2401
pressure flow 2413
press work, mechanical and hydraulic 1467
recirculative oil systems 2514
replenishment rates 2514
roller chain 2638
selection 2512
selection for bearings 2402
surface degredation 2502

Lubrication (*continued*)
systems 2515
lost lubricant 1468
re-circulating 1468
temperature effects 2505
terminating oil systems 2514
theory 2499
total flow 2414
viscosity 2403, 2504
viscosity index (VI) 2505
viscosity selection 2512
waste pack 2402
wear 2503
Lumber, sizes of sawn 385

M

Machinability
copper alloys 512–524
of wood 384
Machine
countersinks 915
cutting time formula 1217
elements, subjected to compressive loads 282
nuts coating 1799
screw coating 1799
screw nuts 1808
settings costs 1216
settings economy 1216
tool efficiency 1149
Machinery foundations 381
Machine screws
ANSI/ASME Standard 1775–1798
binding head 1783
body diameter 1776
British Metric 1798, 1811
British Standard 1807–1808
British Unified 1808–1810
BSW and BSF 1798, 1804, 1811
cheese head screw 1804, 1806, 1809
clearance holes, metric 1797
countersunk head 1777, 1792–1793, 1803, 1809
cross recesses 1784
designation 1776, 1790
diameter of body 1790
diameter of unthreaded shank 1800
end of screws 1803
fillister head 1781
flange head metric 1795
flat head 1776–1778, 1792
header points for metric 1781–1782, 1798
header points for threading 1782, 1783
hexagon head screw 1779, 1809
hexagon nuts 1775

Machine screws (*continued*)
hexagon washer head 1778
hex and hex flange 1795
lengths of thread 1790, 1799, 1800
metric, ANSI/ASME Standard 1790–1798
metric countersunk 1791, 1793
metric recessed countersunk head 1791
metric thread lengths 1791
mushroom head screw 1809
nuts for 1775
oval head 1781–1783, 1793
pan head screw 1780, 1794, 1805, 1809
radius under the head 1800
recessed flat head 1792
recessed pan head 1794
round head screw 1784, 1809
slotted
countersunk head 1777, 1802
and crosses 1792, 1794
pan head 1805
recessed 1793
square nuts 1775
tap and clearance drills 2160–2167, 2169, 2173
thread 1791, 1799
truss head 1779
washerhead 1778
washers for 1694–1699, 1772–1774
Machine screw taps 969
Machine tools
lathe, change gears for fractional ratios 2182
motor types 2655–2656
Machining
aluminum 1256
bearings 2400
copper alloys 1259
economy
chip thickness 1226, 1228
depth of cut 1226, 1228
high-speed 1225
high-speed milling 1232
Formica 1259
hard rubber 1259
magnesium 1257–1258
micarta 1260
monel and nickel alloys 1258–1259
nonferrous metals 1256–1259
plastics 601–606
power, estimating 1145–1152
unit horsepower for 1145–1146, 1150
power constants 1145–1146
power factors
chisel-edge 1152
drill diameters 1152
feeds 1146, 1153
machine tool efficiency 1149
metal removal rates 1296
Machining (*continued*)
power factors
tool wear 1147
work materials 1151
processes, ANSI/ASME Standard tolerance grade relationships 648, 649, 674
tolerances and variations 2355
ultrasonic 1260
zinc alloy die castings 1258
See also Speeds and feeds; *specific processes*
Machining holes, CNC 1366–1374
Macromilling 1172
MAF (magnetic abrasive finishing) 1345
Magnesium alloys 542–544
applications 542
bearing strength 544
coloring 1640
compositions 543
compressive strength 544
cutting fluids for 1251, 1257–1258
designations 542
elongation 544
extruded bars 543
machining 1257–1258
plate 543
pressure die casting 543
properties 544
sand and permanent mold 543
shear strength 544
sheet 543
soldering of 1568
tensile strength 544
yield strength 544
Magnesium coating 1642
Magnetic abrasive finishing (MAF) 1345
Magnetic clutches 2528, 2529
Magnetic flux leakage (MFL) 1630
Magnetic particle testing (MT) 1628
Malleable
iron castings 1481
strength 1481
Manganese
bronze castings 512
gearing material 2322
steel 401–402
Manganese-bronze castings 514
Manual data input (MDI), CNC 1355, 1379
Manufacturers' standard gage for sheet steel 2706
Marble turning 1144
Martempering 476
Martensite 466
Mass 156, 157, 158, 159
units and conversion of 2858–2860
Material 2539, 2548, 2550
disc spring 351–352
mechanical properties of 206–208

Material (*continued*)
strength 1756
See also specific materials and processes
Material jetting (MJ) 615
Mathematical signs and abbreviations 2829
Matrix 123–129
addition 124
adjoint 126
cofactors 125
column 123
determinant 125–127
diagonal 123
identity 123
inverse 126–127
minors 125–126
multiplication 124
null 123
rank 126
row 123
simultaneous equations 127–129
singular 126
square 123, 125
subtraction 124
zero 123
Maximum
bending load, wood 383
temperature, plastics 387
M-codes, CNC 1358–1359
MDI (Manual Data Input), CNC 1355, 1379
Measurement of backlash 2246
Measuring
angles with sine-bar 693
buttress thread 2139
compound angles 120–122
dovetail slides 697
gear size 2300–2318
instruments and gaging methods 690
with light-wave interference bands 764
with micrometer 692, 693, 2122
over pins
bolt circle 702
gear size 2300–2318
splines 2350
pitch diameter
thread ring gages 2140
three-wire method 2129
radius or arc, over rolls 702, 703
tapers 696
center distance 701
diameter 702
threads
American standard 2128–2129
buttress 2139–2140
tapered 2138
taper screw 2138
using micrometer 2122
using screw thread gage 2139

Measuring (*continued*)
threads
using three-wire method 2123, 2139
Whitworth 2130
with vernier 690, 691
V-shaped groove, over pins 702, 703
Measuring screw threads
Acme thread 2128
Acme thread thickness 2134
ball point micrometer 2123
Buckingham involute helicoid formula 2132
buttress thread 2128, 2139
contact pressure, measurement 2126
formula, three-wire method 2127
formula for checking pitch diameter 2128
formula to taper pipe threads 2138
helical gear formula 2132
Lowenherz 2128
pipe thread 2128
pitch diameter equivalent 2138
profiles 2124
three-wire method 2126
Acme threads 2134, 2136
buttress thread 2139
checking thickness of Acme thread 2134
stub Acme threads 2134, 2136
testing angle of thread 2135
wire diameters and constants 2136
wire sizes 2135
V-thread 2128
Whitworth 2117, 2130
wire accuracy 2126
wire diameter 2139
wire sizes for checking pitch diameters 2125
worm thread 2128
Mechanical Contractors Association of America 1620
Mechanical equivalent of heat 2870
Mechanical press 1462
Mechanical properties
aluminum alloys 539
bolts, inch sizes 1666–1667
bolts, metric sizes 1713
ceramics 386
copper 525
magnesium 542–544
nickel 545–546
plastics 387, 578
powdered metal alloys 390
spring wire 392
stainless steels 427–428
steel 429
titanium 545, 547
tool steels 430
various materials 206–208
wood 382, 383

Mechanics of materials 156–181
acceleration of gravity *g* 157
couples 162, 163
dynamics 156
force 160–164
on inclined planes 175
force systems
algebraic solution of 160, 163–171
graphical solution of 160–164
friction 172–174
mechanisms 174–181
metric SI units 156–160
pound force 157
scalar and vector quantities 160
statics 156
units 157
vectors 160
Mechanisms 174–181
differential pulley 178
inclined plane 175–176
levers 174
pendulums 180–181
pulleys 177–178
screw 178
toggle joints 179
wedge 176
wheels 177
Melting points
alloys of copper and zinc 1569
alloys of lead and tin 1567
aluminum 373
brazing alloys 1569–1571
cast iron 374
chemical elements 368
copper alloys 373, 374
solder 1567
stainless steels 374
titanium alloys 374
Metal
aluminum alloys 373
balls, standard 2498
bonded grinding wheels 1065–1066, 1281
coatings
conversion coatings 1638
surface coatings 1640–1647
coloring 1638–1640
drawing 1424
etching 1637–1640
identification 396, 506
numbering systems for 395–396, 397–404
plasma welding 1600–1602
removal rate 1149
slitting saws 876
spraying process 1648
temperature effect on strength 392
Metal (*continued*)
working
basic theory 1401
fluids
application 1253
occupational exposure 1252–1255
working fluids 1252, 1253
Metal casting and molding processes 1496
centrifugal casting 1510–1512
centrifuge casting 1512
semicentrifugal casting 1512
true centrifugal casting 1511
ceramic mold casting 1503
design considerations for casting 1514–1517
fluid flow 1514
fluid life 1514
heat transfer considerations 1515
joint design consideration 1516
location and design of a gating system 1517
location of parting line 1516
pouring temperature 1514
slag/dross formation 1514
solidification shrinkage 1514
die casting 1509
advantages 1509
cold-chamber process 1510
disadvantages 1509
hot-chamber process 1509
expendable-pattern casting 1502
extrusion of metals 1519
basic process 1519
hard mold casting 1506
plaster mold casting 1503
precision investment casting 1504
accuracy of investment castings 1506
casting dimensions and tolerances 1505
casting milling cutters by investment method 1506
casting operations 1505
casting weights and sizes 1506
design for investment casting 1506
general procedure 1504
investment materials 1505
investment removal 1506
master mold for dispensable patterns 1504
materials that may be cast 1504
shrinkage allowances for patterns 1505
pressure casting 1508
sand casting 1497
advantages 1497
cores 1499
disadvantages 1497
features of sand molds 1498
patterns 1498
rammed graphite molding 1501

Metal casting and molding processes (*continued*)
sand casting
sand casting operation 1500
sand molding techniques 1499
sands 1497
types of sand molds 1497
shell molding 1501
advantages 1501
disadvantages 1501
slush casting 1508
squeeze casting 1513
using computer modeling to optimize casting processes 1518
vacuum casting 1507
Metallography 489
Metallurgy, powder 1522
design 1548
manufacturing processes 1534
materials 1544
standards 1553
Metal washers
bright 1772
metric series 1772, 1773
Meters into feet 2849
Metric
basic sizes, British Standard preferred 689
bolts and screws, British Standard clearance holes for 2173
box wrench 1693
conversion factors 2840
dimensions on drawings 819
dowel pins, British Standard 1879–1880
drawings, scales 820
fasteners
ANSI/ASME hex nuts 1733
ANSI/ASME nut thread series 1735
bolts and screws
bolt designation 1725
bolt thread lengths 1725
cap screws 1727, 1730, 1731, 1744
clearance holes 1743
countersink 1744
diameter-length combinations 1726, 1728
drill and counterbore sizes 1744
drilled head dimensions 1731
hex flange screws 1727
hex screws 1727
hex structural bolts 1723, 1728
identification symbols 1725
neck bolts 1728, 1743
socket head cap screws 1729
socket head neck screws 1743
thread length 1725, 1726
nuts 1733, 1735
ANSI/ASME standard 1733
bearing surfaces 1733

Metric (*continued*)
fasteners
materials 1724
mechanical properties 1724
gears 2296
heavy hex bolts 1672–1674, 1702, 1723
hex bolts 1724
inch vernier, dual 691, 692
ISO limits and fits, British Standard 674
micrometer, reading 692, 693
module, gear cutter 2227
gear teeth 2296–2299
round head square neck bolts 1721, 1722
screw threads
aerospace screws, bolts and nuts 2035
basic profile 1942, 2017
crest diameter tolerance 2049
designation 2047, 2048
design profiles 2047
diameter pitch combinations 2034, 2035, 2053
dimensional effect of coating 2022
fits 2017
fundamental deviation 2019, 2048
length of engagement 2019, 2047, 2049–2052
limiting dimensions formula 2022
limits and fits 2016
limits and tolerance 2049–2052
M crest 2013
minor diameter tolerances 2019
MJ profile
designations 2037
symbols 2037
M profile 2013
designations 2019
external thread 2013
internal thread 2013
root form 2013
tolerances of external threads 2024, 2026, 2027
tolerances of pitch-diameter 2024
tolerance system 2019
series British ISO
hexagon bolts, nuts, and screws 1762
machine screws and nuts 1798–1807
metal washers 1772–1774
spring washers 1770–1772
sizes, preferred for flat metal products 2708
socket head shoulder screws 1719
systems of measurement 2831
threads, British (ISO) 2035, 2044, 2053
threads, SI 2086
twist drills, ANSI/ASME 931–955
vernier, reading 691
washers, plain, ANSI/ASME 1739
wrench, clearances 1693

Metric system 156, 157
base units 158
force systems calculations 162, 167
mechanics calculations 158–160
mechanism formulas 174–175, 177, 181
strength of materials calculations 206–207, 216, 218, 222, 224–226, 227, 235, 239–240, 256, 269, 273–274, 276–277, 279, 280, 282, 289, 290–291, 292–293, 296–298, 300, 301, 302
See also Metric; Système International d'Unites (SI); *specific applications*
Metrology
gage blocks 721–724
parallel bars 749–756
right-angle plate 756–764
surface plates 724–731
MFL (magnetic flux leakage) 1630
Micarta, machining 1260
Microfabrication processes and parameters 1186
Microinch 2836
into micrometers (microns) 2847–2848
Micromachining 1156
abrasive wear 1164, 1166, 1170
attrition wear 1164, 1191
brittle materials 1173, 1174
chip load 1158, 1159, 1167, 1172, 1184, 1185, 1192, 1193, 1194, 1195
chipping 1160, 1164, 1165, 1166, 1167, 1168, 1175
coatings for microtools 1161
commercial microdrills 1189, 1190
commercial micromills 1186, 1188
compared with macromachining 1156, 1157, 1162, 1166, 1168, 1170, 1175, 1192
crater wear 1166, 1167, 1185
cumulative tool life 1170
cutting fluid 1166, 1174, 1175, 1176, 1177, 1182, 1185, 1189, 1194
cutting speed 1193
CVD 1161
depth of cut 1156, 1158, 1159, 1167, 1168, 1170, 1174, 1175, 1185, 1186, 1192, 1193, 1194, 1197
diamond machinable materials 1191
ductile-regime machining 1172, 1173, 1174
theory 1173
elastic modulus 1174
flood cooling 1175, 1176, 1185, 1186
goniometer 1177
grain size 1156, 1160, 1167, 1170, 1172, 1192
laser displacement sensor 1162, 1163
lateral tool offset calculation 1162
machine tool requirements 1156
macrofacing 1185, 1186
Micromachining (*continued*)
mechanical edge finder 1162, 1163
microcutting tools 1157, 1158, 1160
microdrill 1156, 1157, 1158, 1162, 1163, 1164, 1165, 1176, 1189, 1190, 1194
microdrilling 1156, 1160, 1161, 1162, 1168, 1175, 1176, 1186, 1189, 1192, 1193, 1194
microdrilling/milling parameters 1193
microdroplet 1177, 1178, 1182, 1183, 1184
microfabrication 1156, 1186
microfacing 1159
microhardness 1174, 1192
micromilling 1156, 1157, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1166, 1168, 1172, 1175, 1184, 1185, 1186, 1187, 1192, 1193, 1194
micromill selection 1194
micromist 1174, 1176, 1177, 1178, 1184, 1185, 1186, 1187, 1189, 1190, 1192
micromist lubrication
contact angle 1177, 1179, 1180, 1181, 1182, 1183
contact angle measurement 1179, 1182
droplet measurement techniques 1178
drop size measurement 1177
sessile drop technique 1177, 1179
slide technique 1178, 1179
dynamics of microdroplets 1182
force balancing of microdroplets 1183
wetting 1177, 1178, 1180, 1182, 1183
microtool 1156–1194
offset 1164
microturning 1156, 1160, 1186, 1191, 1192
microturning parameters 1192
miniaturization 1156, 1191
minimum quantity lubrication (MQL) 1176, 1184, 1185
mirror finish 1174
negative rake 1174, 1191
normalized diameter 1180, 1182
pecking cycle 1189, 1190
pendant drop technique 1177
physical vapor deposition (PVD) 863, 1161
plug gage 1157, 1162
propelling microdroplets 1182
properties of selected lubricants 1179
p-type silicon wafers 1174
selection of cutting fluid 1177
sensor requirement 1162
single crystalline diamond tools 1158, 1174, 1191
speeds and feeds 1192, 1194, 1195
spindle runout 1156, 1157, 1160, 1189, 1193
spindle speed, macro versus micro machining 1157
stiffness of microtools 1158
surface finish 1158, 1168, 1172, 1174, 1175, 1192, 1193

Micromachining (*continued*)
surface microhardness 1174
Taylor equation 1167, 1170
tool
damage 1164, 1165, 1166, 1169
edge radius 1158, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1166, 1174, 1175, 1192
flank wear 1166, 1167, 1168, 1170, 1171, 1185, 1186
geometry 1160, 1174, 1186
materials 1160
offset 1161, 1162, 1163, 1164, 1165
offset and positioning 1161
offset calculation 1162, 1164
required included angle 1161
sharpness 1158
stiffness 1157, 1158
tool life 1166, 1167, 1168, 1169, 1170, 1171, 1175, 1176, 1184, 1185, 1187, 1192, 1194
torsional stiffness 1157, 1158
turning parameter selection 1193
vertical tool offset 1163, 1164, 1165
calculation 1164
work hardening of titanium alloy 1192
workpiece materials 1170
Micrometer
accuracy 770, 781
additional depth measuring rods 781
adjusting nut 769
adjustments 767
anvil 772, 775
barrel and thimble 769, 776
base 781
calibration
anvil/spindle flatness tolerances 791
depth micrometer 793
flatness 793
linearity 793
extension rod 799
inside micrometer 796
caliper type 796, 798
caliper type, recommended test points 797
tubular type 798
tubular type, length 798
interpreting optical flat fringe patterns 791
manufacturers tolerance tables
inch 782
metric 782
micrometer head 794
linearity 794
monochromatic light source 790
outside micrometer 789
flatness test 790
linearity 792
parallelism 791
Micrometer (*continued*)
calibration
reference standards 787
thread (pitch) micrometer 795
interchangeable anvil sets 795
linearity (fixed pitch) 795
carbide measuring faces 769
classification 766
construction requirements 766
design 767, 774, 776, 777
finish 767, 773
flexure 768
frame 768
graduations 767, 770
identification 767
inch reading 770
inside 776
jaws 776
materials 766
measuring faces 767, 769, 777, 778
screw spindle 769
measuring (length) rods 779
measuring rods 781
measuring rods and spacing collars 778
measuring surfaces 775
metric reading 770
into microinches 2847–2848
micrometer head 777, 780
micrometer head, adjustments, measuring faces 779
micrometer screw 776
micrometer screw – barrel and thimble 778
preliminary operations 787
ratchet or friction stop 769
reading 692, 693
reference setting standard 770
calibration process 787
resolution 767
screw spindle 767, 768
screw thread 2122
size and range 767, 772
spindle 776
spindle and anvil 772
spindle lock 769
tolerance tables 807
type I
caliper, outside 766, 767
class 1
style A 771
style B 771
style C 772
style D, tubing upright anvil 772
class 2
fixed anvil, finished frame 772
style A, solid anvil 773
style B, paper gage (disk) 773
style C, solid ball anvil tubing 774
style D, thread (pitch) 774

Micrometer (*continued*)
type II
caliper, inside 766
class 1, inside 776
class 2, inside, rod and sleeve 777
class 3
style A, inside, tubular, interchangeable head 778
style B, inside, tubular fixed head 779
type III
gage, depth 766
micrometer depth gage 780
type IV
micrometer heads 766
types, classes, and styles 766
Micromist lubrication
benefits 1176
contact angle measurement 1179, 1182
cutting fluids in micromachining 1175
drop size calculation 1179
drop size measurement 1177
sessile drop technique 1177, 1179
slide technique 1178, 1179
dynamics of microdroplets 1182
force balancing microdroplets on tool 1183
in macrofacing 4140 Steel 1185
in micromilling 316L SS 1184
propelling microdroplets toward tool 1182
properties of selected lubricants 1179
safety 1176
selection of cutting fluid 1177
Microscope screw thread 2114, 2115–2118
Mil 2836
Miles into kilometers 2849
Military plating specifications 1640–1647
Miller index nomenclature 1173
Miller indices 1172, 1173
Millimeters
hundreds of, into inches 2840
into inches 2839, 2840, 2845–2846
thousandths of an inch, into 2843–2844
Milling
angular 877, 883
cam 2387
chip geometry 1226
cost 1225
cutters, hollow 1235
depth of cut 1124–1126
economy 1232
feeds for
cemented carbide cutters 1112–1121
high-speed steel cutters 1122
in inches per tooth for cemented carbide cutters 1112–1121
horsepower for 1143–1153
lead angle 1124, 1126

Milling (*continued*)
machine tool shanks 1032
speed adjustment factors 1124, 1125, 1126
speeds and feeds
aluminum alloys 1112
automatic screw machine 1235
copper alloys 1105, 1123
ferrous cast metals 1120–1121
light metals 1112
metal slitting (saws) 876, 1111
plain carbon and alloy steels 1113–1116
stainless steels 1118–1119
titanium and titanium alloys 1106
tool steels 1117–1118
thread 2197–2198
Milling cutters 871–906
ANSI/ASME standard 872–895
arbor keys and keyways 894
arbor type 890
bevel gear 892
casting 1506
clearance angles 871, 900
commercial micromills 1186, 1188
concave and convex 890
corner rounding 875, 890
double angle 877
eccentric type radial relief 901
end mills 879–889
medium helix 888
stub length 888
terminology 878
with Weldon shanks 888
gear 891–892
grinding or sharpening 898–906
hand of
cut 872, 873
cutter 872
flute helix 874
rotation 873
helical gear 2284
high-speed steel 882
indicator drop methods of checking relief and rake angles 901
keys and keyways 894
keyseat 895
metal slitting (saws) 876
mounting method 872
multiple flute 884
number of teeth 871
peripheral teeth 902
pitch diameter 2284
plain and ball end 885
radial relief angle 902
rake angles 871, 901
relief on cutting edges 872
relieved corner rounding cutters 875
roller chain sprocket 892–893

Milling cutters (*continued*)
selection of 871
setting angles for milling teeth in 896–899
sharpening wheels 899
shell mills 878
single angle 877, 883, 884
sintered carbide 901
speeds and feeds for sharpening 900
spline shaft 899
spur gear 891
taper shanks 875, 884
teeth, clearance angles 900
terminology 876
tool material 901
T-slot 875
Weldon shanks 875, 887, 889
Woodruff keyseats 895
Milling machine
centering plugs 1030
cutters for 14.5-degree pressure angle gears 891–892
draw-in bolt ends 1030
spindle noses 1027–1028, 1031
tapers for 1027
tool shanks 1029
V-flange, NC 1032
Mill or saw files 1052
Mineral oil 2506
Miner's law of linear damage 210
Miniature end mills 883, 884
Miniature screws 1785
binding head 1785, 1788
fillister head 1785, 1789
flat head 1785, 1787
pan head 1785, 1786, 1789
Miniature screw threads 1992–1996
basic thread form 1992
design thread form 1992, 1993
formulas 1992
hole sizes 2171
root flats 1996
tapping 2171
tolerances and size 1996
Minimum quantity lubrication (MQL) 1176, 1184, 1185
Minors of a matrix 125–126
Minutes into decimals of a degree 103, 104, 107
Miscellaneous threads, aero-thread 2119
Mixed film lubrication 2500
Mixed numbers 6–8
Mixtures, rule of 381
MJ (material jetting) 615
MJF (multijet fusion) 615
Modal G-codes, CNC 1356
Module 2206
splines, metric 2351–2356
system gearing 2296–2299
diametral pitch 2298
formulas 2296, 2298
rules 2298
Modulus of
elasticity, *E* (Young's modulus) 207
iron and steel 429
nickel-based alloys 308–309
nonferrous metals 510
perforated metal 2705
plastics 387, 559, 561, 564, 565
in shear, *G* 208
spring materials 345, 346
for various materials 207, 391
polar section 216, 251, 252
rupture
powdered metal alloys 390
wood 382, 383
secant 565
shear, *G* (rigidity) 208
in angular deflection formula 218
nonferrous metals 510
spring materials 346
for various materials 208, 580
Mold dispensable patterns 1504
Molds, steels for permanent 452
Molecular weight 381
Mole or mol 381
Molybdenum
gearing material 2322
high-speed steels
chemical composition 496
tool steels 443, 445, 447, 448
steels, SAE 397
Moment and torque
in combined stresses 218
in simple stresses 216
unit conversion 2864–2865
Moment of a force 156, 162
Moments of inertia 239–255
angles, steel 2698–2700
built-up sections 240
channels, aluminum 2701
channels, steel 2697
circle 244
circular ring 245
of complex areas 255
cross sections 241–250
ellipse 245
formulas for various sections 241–250
half circle 244
hollow circle 244
I-beams, aluminum 2701
I-beams, steel 2692–2696
I or S shapes, steel 2696

Moments of inertia (*continued*)
I-section 245
L-section 249
octagon 244
pipe 2536–2537
plane areas 239
polar 239–255
cone, frustum of 255
cylinder, hollow 253
ellipsoid 254
paraboloid 254
prism 253
pyramid 253
solid ring 254
sphere 253
spherical sector and segment 254
torus 254
rectangles 242
structural channels 2697, 2701
trapezoid 243
triangle 243
T-section 248
units conversion 2874
wide flange, steel 2692–2695
Z-section 250
Momentum 191–193
Monel metals, machining 1258
properties 546
Monotron for hardness testing 504
Morse
reamers for sockets 928
stub taper shanks 1014
tapers 1013–1024
taper shank twist drill 958
Mortising wood 385
Motion
accelerated 184, 186, 187
constant acceleration 182, 184–185
constant velocity 182
force and work 186, 189
general formulas 182, 184
on inclined plane 176, 186
Newton's laws of 158, 159, 182, 186
rotary, formulas 184–185
uniformly accelerated 182
Motors, electric 2644
adjustable speed motors 2647
adjustable-voltage, shunt-wound 2648
alternating current 2648–2651
armature rotors 2658
ball or roller bearings 2657
brushes 2657
characteristics 2647–2656
classes of standards 2644
commutators 2657
compound-wound 2648, 2649
constant-speed motors 2647
Motors, electric (*continued*)
current definitions 2644
DC motors 2655–2656
design letters 2644
direction of rotation 2646
frame sizes, standard 2644
high-frequency induction 2650
horsepower requirements 2652
induction motor 2649
injurious operating conditions 2654
inspection schedule 2657, 2658
insulating materials 2654
locked rotor current and torque ratings 2645, 2646
lubrication, proper 2657
maintaining and repairing 2657, 2658
maintenance 2657
mechanical condition 2657
monthly inspection 2657
mounting dimensions, standard 2644
multiple-speed induction 2650
multispeed motor 2647
NEMA 2644–2645
standards for 2644–2645
polyphase AC motor 2649
polyphase wound-rotor 2645
pull-up torque 2645, 2647
rotation, standard direction 2646
rotors and armatures 2657
selection 2652, 2653
shunt-wound 2648
single-phase motors characteristics 2651
space limitations 2653
speed reducer type 2652
speed requirements 2652
squirrel cage induction 2648, 2649
squirrel cage rotors 2658
synchronous motor 2649
temperature effects 2654
torque and inertia requirements 2652
torque definitions 2646
type, DC and AC 2647
types and characteristics for different applications 2655–2656
variable speed 2646, 2647
weekly inspection 2657
windings 2657
wound rotor induction 2650
wound rotor type 2649
Mounted wheels and points 1041–1043
Mounting bearings 2469
M profile tap limits 995
MQL (minimum quantity lubrication) 1176, 1184, 1185
MT (magnetic particle testing) 1628
Multijet fusion (MJF) 615
Multiplication of matrix 124

Multiplying fractions and mixed numbers 7
Music wire 305
arbor diameters 349
at elevated temperatures 315–316
gages 2702
modulus of elasticity 346
working stresses 311, 312, 314, 315

N

N-address, CNC 1356
Nails and spikes, standard 1934
Napthenic oil 2506
National Electrical Manufacturers Association 1620
National Tube Co. 294
Nautical measure 2836
NDT. *See* Nondestructive testing
Neat resins 556
NEMA Standards for electric motors 2644–2645
Net positive suction head required for pumps (NPSHR) 2804
Net present value 150–151
Neutral axis
sheet metal 1417
Neutron radiography (NRT) 1630
Newtons into pounds force 2864
Newton's laws of motion 158, 159, 182, 186
Nickel alloys 545–546
applications 546
chemical composition 546
chromium steels, SAE strength 429
coefficient of expansion 374
density 374
elongation 389, 546
gearing material 2321, 2322
hardness 389
machining 1258–1259
melting points 374
plating 1643, 1645
specific heat 374
tensile strength 389, 546
thermal conductivity 374
yield strength 389
Nitinol, machining 1258
Nitralloy steels 482
Nitriding 464, 482
high-speed steel tools 498
ion nitriding 482
Nitrogen, liquid temperature 643
Nodular cast iron 1481
Nomenclature
bevel gears 2260
gear teeth 2208
spur gears 2209
Nominal clearance 2334
Nominal versus effective interest rates 145–146
Nondestructive testing (NDT) 1627–1631
nondestructive testing methods 1627–1630
acoustic emission testing (AE) 1630
eddy current testing (ET) 1629
leak testing (LT) 1630
magnetic flux leakage (MFL) 1630
magnetic particle testing (MT) 1628
neutron radiography (NRT) 1630
penetrant testing (PT) 1629
radiographic testing (RT) 1627
thermal/infrared testing (IR) 1630
ultrasonic testing (UT) 1627
visual testing (VT) 1629
nondestructive testing symbol application 1630
areas of revolution 1631
combination of symbols 1631
direction of radiation 1631
location of testing symbol 1631
plane areas 1631
testing symbol elements 1630
tests made all around the joint 1631
Nonferrous casting metals 1486–1488
aluminum (Al) 1486
aluminum-copper (Al-Cu) cast alloys 1487
aluminum-magnesium (Al-Mg) cast alloys 1487
aluminum-silicon (Al-Si) cast alloys 1487
aluminum-silicon-copper (Al-Si-Cu) cast alloys 1487
aluminum-tin (Al-Sn) cast alloys 1487
aluminum-zinc (Al-Zn) cast alloys 1487
copper (Cu) 1487
beryllium-copper (Be-Cu) alloys 1488
brass 1487
bronze 1487
copper-nickel (Cu-Ni) alloys 1487
copper-nickel-silver (Cu-Ni-Zn) alloys 1487
magnesium (Mg) 1488
magnesium alloys 1488
Nonferrous metals 510
machining 1256–1259
modulus of elasticity 510
modulus of shear 510
shear strength 510
strength 391, 510
tensile strength 510
yield strength 510
See also Nonferrous casting metals

Nontraditional machining and cutting 1342
electro-thermal processes 1345
electrical discharge machining (EDM) 1345
electron beam machining (EBM) 1350
laser beam machining (LBM) 1345
laser cutting assist gas 1346
laser cutting heat effects 1347
laser cutting performance characteristics 1348
laser cutting reflective materials 1346
laser hole cutting and drilling 1348
plasma arc machining (PAM) 1348
plasma cutting assist gas 1350
plasma cutting performance characteristics 1349
examples of cutting speeds for metals 1343
mechanical erosion processes 1344
abrasive flow machining (AFM) 1345
magnetic abrasive finishing (MAF) 1345
ultrasonic machining (USM) 1345
water jet machining (WJM) 1344
abrasive water jet machining (AWJM) 1344
pure water jet machining 1345
water jet cut quality 1344
typical characteristics of nontraditional methods 1343
Normalizing temperatures, alloy steel 405, 487, 488
Norton Company 1283, 1291–1297
Nose radius 837
carbide tools 849
single-point tool 849
NPSHR (net positive suction head required for pumps) 2804
NT (neutron radiography) 1630
Numbering systems
for aluminum alloys 531
wrought 534
for metals and alloys 395, 397, 398
for steel 395, 396, 397–404
See also specific materials and industry standards
Number of nails and spikes in a pound 1934
Number of teeth 2206
Numbers
associative law 3
commutative law 3
distributive law 3
identity law 3
inverse law 3
preferred series 651, 689
prime 13–23
progressions 39–41
real 3–10
Numerical control
axis nomenclature 1386–1390
cutter compensation 857
insert holders for 857
insert radius compensation 857
part tolerance symbols
compared to ISO 623, 624
tapping 2177
tool
compensation 857
nose radius compensation 857–859
total indicator reading (TIR) 1390
V-flange tool shanks 1032
Nuts
acorn 1681
ANSI/ASME, inch dimensions
flat jam 1678
hex 1671
hex flat 1678
hex slotted 1678, 1680
hex thick slotted 1679, 1680
jam 1677
machine screw 1775
square 1671, 1680
T-type 1860
Unified 1677, 1680
ANSI/ASME, metric dimensions
heavy hex 1737
hex, styles 2 and 3 1733
hex jam 1737
metric hex flange nuts 1733, 1735
prevailing torque, hex 1736, 1738
slotted hex 1733, 1735
British Standard 1808
ISO metric 1762–1765
metric 1798, 1802, 1804, 1809
Unified 1810
Whitworth 1759, 1760, 1811, 1832
crown, low and high (SAE) 1681
friction coefficients 1656
high, SAE 1682
slotted, hex high (SAE) 1682
wing nuts 1925–1928
wrench clearances 1687
wrench openings 1687
Nut taps 992
Nylon
bearings 2440
properties 387

O

O-address, CNC programming 1356
Obtuse-angle triangles, solution 76, 100, 101

Octagon
area 77
moments of inertia 244
radius of gyration 244
section modulus 244
Offhand grinding 1332
Offsets, CNC milling 1364
Ohm's law 2874
Oil feeding and grooving of bearings 2404
Oilless bearings 2442–2443
Oils 2499
additives 2506
application 2514
coating 1644
and compounds, machining 1246–1259
emulsifying or soluble 1247
mineral 1249–1250
sulfurized and chlorinated 1249–1250
film thickness in machine parts 2502
film thickness values 2502
lubricating 2503
mineral 2506
synthetic 2508
temperature effects 2509
tempering 476
Open-end press 1464
Open end wrench clearances 1688
Orbit 1471
O-rings 2666–2680
axial face seal glands 2681–2683
calculations 2682
dimensions 2684
external pressure 2681
internal pressure 2681
PTFE O-rings 2683
backup rings 2680
clearance gap 2679–2680
compounds 2689
dovetail grooves 2684
as drive belts 2688
fluorocarbon 2689
gland fill 2681
gland surface quality 2688
groove width and slope 2680
installation 2688
lubrication 2688
materials 2690
nitrile 2689
overview 2666
radial (piston or rod) glands 2684–2688
floating piston glands 2687
piston glands 2685
radial gland calculations 2685
rod glands 2684
rotary motion radial seals 2687
silicone 2689
sizes, tables of 2668–2678
O-rings (*continued*)
size selection 2668
squeeze 2681
standards and designations 2666
inch-system O-rings 2667
metric aerospace O-rings 2667
metric general-purpose O-rings 2667
stretch, cramping, and cross section reduction 2680
Oscillation, center and radius of 238
Ounces, avoirdupois, into grams 2858, 2859
Out of roundness 706
Oval head machine screws 1781–1783
Oxidation effects on oil 2509
Oxygen gas in welding 1581, 1605

P

Pack hardening 482
PAG 2508
Palladium, plating 1645
PAM (plasma arc machining) 1348
Pan head machine screws 1780
Pan head miniature screw 1786, 1789
PAO 2508
Paper, bonding 2661
Pappus-Guldinus rules 71
Parabola 57–58
area 80
center of gravity 231
constructing 70
directrix 57–58
focus 57–58
general equation 57
latus rectum 57–58
segment area 80
vertex 57–58
Paraboloid
center of gravity 233
polar moment of inertia 254
radius of gyration 238
segment volume 93
volume 92
Parallel bars 749–756
airy points 753
calibration
flatness (straightness) 753
height and width, matched sets 755
precision 753
Type I, solid 749
Type II, ribbed 750
Type III, box parallel 751
Type IV, adjustable parallel 752
Parallel lines 45
drawing 67

Parallelogram
area 75
center of gravity 228
of forces 161
geometry of 63
radius of gyration 235
Parison 584–585
Paraffinic oil 2506
Parting 1409
Passivation
copper 1638, 1640
stainless steel 1645
Patterns for castings
dispensable 1504
master mold 1504
shrinkage allowances 1505
PAW (plasma arc welding). *See* Welding: PAW
Payback period 153
PBF (powder bed fusion) 1555, 1556
Pearlite 462, 466
Pearlitic malleable iron 1481
Pendulums 180–181
calculations 180
conical 180
formulas for 180–181
physical 180
simple and compound 180
torsional 180
types of 180
Penetrant testing (PT) 1629
Penetration 1406
Percentage 10–11
Percussion, center of 238–239
Perforated metals, strength and stiffness of 2705
Peripheral speed, CNC spindle 1360
Permanickel, machining 1258
Permutations 13
Perpendicular lines 46
drawing 67
Petroleum oils, application 2869
Phenolic plastics 2440
Philadelphia carriage bolt thread 2121
Phonetic alphabet 2875
Phosphor-bronze, worm gearing 2324
Physical vapor deposition (PVD) 863, 1161
Pi 1, 94
Piano wire. *See* Music wire
Piles, weight of 379
Pillow block bearings 2452
Pinion, spur gear, enlarged to avoid interference 2225
Pin method for checking
gear sizes 2300
allowance for backlash 2314
for involute splines 2350
wire diameters 2300, 2309
Pin method for checking (*continued*)
spur gear sizes 2310–2313
V-shaped grooves 702
Pins
clevis 1878
cotter 1878, 1891, 1894
dowel 1878–1884
grooved 1890, 1894
metric dowel 1878, 1880
spring 1895–1896
straight 1883–1887
strength of taper 227
taper 1887–1890
Pintle chains 2616
Pipe and pipe fittings
British threads 2099
columns 285, 286–287
dryseal 2095–2097, 2098
measuring by wire method 2138
taper 2089
threads 2095–2097, 2098
friction loss in 2784
heat loss from uncovered steam 370
internal thread in pipe couplings 2093
loads, table of 286–287
reamers, taper 929
sealing joints 1862
taps, dimensions
Briggs and Whitworth 2176
internal dryseal 2097
power for driving 2176
threads
ANSI/ASME Standard 2089–2097
British Standard 2098–2100
designation and notation 2089
plastic 581
welding 1611
fill passes 1612
flux-cored electrode 1613
fusion 1614
position 1611
flat 1611
horizontal 1611, 1613
overhead 1611
vertical up and down 1613
procedure 1615
carbon steel 1615–1617
MIG 1615–1617
root 1615–1617
thick walled 1615–1617
root passes 1612
thin wall 1613
Pipe and tube bending 1458
Pitch 2206
broach teeth 1044–1047
circle 2206
circular, of gears 2209

Pitch (*continued*)
diameters, gears
circular pitch 2227
helical 2274
pin method of checking 2300
spur 2210, 2227
worms 2270
diameters, roller chain sprockets 2622, 2623
diameters, thread
checking 2122
metric, M profile 2024–2026
for tensile stress area 1660
unified 1947–1987
wire sizes for measuring 2124
gear 2210
plane 2206
rivets 1861, 1865–1866
screw threads, measuring 2122
worm gearing 2270
worms 2270
Pitot tube 2857
Plain bearing. *See* Bearings: plain
Plain milling cutters 873
Plain washers
inch 1694–1697
metric 1739
types 1739
Plane figures, areas and dimensions 75–86
Plane of rotation 2206
Planetary gearing 2290–2293
bevel gears 2290
compound drive 2290
direction of rotations 2290
Planetary thread milling 2198
Planing
estimating cutting speeds 1143
power required 1145–1294
speeds and feeds 1143
time 1143
tool grinding 839
wood 385
Planing insert holder 845–847
Plasma arc machining (PAM) 1348
Plasma arc welding. *See* Welding: PAW
Plastic deformation 1406
Plasticizers 557
Plastic region 207
Plastics 555–617
additive manufacturing 611–615
binder jetting (BJ) 614–615
considerations for tooling and parts 615–617
fused deposition modeling (FDM) 614
material jetting (MJ) 615
multijet fusion (MJF) 615
selective laser sintering (SLS) 613–614
stereolithography (SLA) 612

Plastics (*continued*)
aging at elevated temperature 574
amorphous 556
anisotropy 560–561
application properties 558–563
assembly 595–601
with fasteners 599–600
ASTM tests 558
beams 590–593
bearings 2451
anti-friction 2451
laminated, plain bearings 2440
sleeve 2440
bending stress 608
blow molding 584–585
bonding 595–596
brittleness 560
bulk modulus B 568–569
cellular 557–558
characteristics 555
chemical bonding 596
chemical resistance of 579
closed cell 557–558
coefficient of expansion 387
coefficient of friction 561
compressive strength 569
copolymers 557
creep 562–563, 570–571
crystalline 556–557
decorating 610
density 387, 559
design
analysis 578–582
for assembly 595–601
for injection molding 582, 588–592
stress 580
developing prototypes 601, 611
drilling speeds and feeds 604
effects of temperature 572–576
elasticity 559, 564–565
electrical properties 576–577
arc resistance 577
conductivity 576
dielectric constant 577
dielectric strength 576–577
permittivity 577
surface resistivity 576
volume resistivity 576
elongation 387
environmental effects 577–578
fasteners 600–601
fibers 557
fillets 594
finishing 610
flammability 575
flexural modulus 387
flow properties 594–395

Plastics (*continued*)
gearing 606–609
accuracy 609
backlash 609
service factors 608
tooth form factors 608
hardness 387, 560
haze 559
heat dissipation factor 577
heterogeneous 560
homogeneous 560
homopolymers 557
Hooke's law 559, 564
impact resistance 594
inhomogeneous 560
injection molding 587–588, 594–595
mold design 588–592
isotropy 560–561
Izod impact 387, 421–422
Izod test 560
liquid-crystalline polymers (LCP) 557
load-bearing 592–594
machining 601–606
cutting off 602
drilling 602–603, 604
milling 605
molded 604
sawing 604
tapping 604
thermoset cast 604
threading 604
turning 602, 605, 606
manufacturing 583–611
additive 611–615
material 555, 556
elastomers 556
rubbers 556
thermoplastics 556–557
thermosets 556
maximum temperature 387
mechanical fasteners 595
mechanical properties 578
effect of temperature on 575–576
time-related 570–572
milling 605
mixtures 556
modulus of elasticity 559, 564
mold flow 594–595
non-Newtonian 595
normal strain 564
notch sensitivity 560
open cell 558
parison 584–585
physical properties 558–563
pipe threads 581
plasticity 559–560
polishing 609–610

Plastics (*continued*)
polyurethanes (PUR) 586
press fits 581
processing thermosets 586
proportional limit 565
prototypes 601, 611
radii 594
reinforced 587
relaxation 571–572
resins 556
sawing, speeds and numbers of teeth 604
secant modulus 565
semi-crystalline 556–557
shear modulus *G* 568
shear stress 566–567
sheet thermoforming 584
shrinkage 559
snap-fit 595–596
specific gravity 387, 559
sprue 587
stiffness 582
strain 563–569
normal 564
shear 566–568
true 569
stress 563–569
normal 564
shear 566–568
thermal 582
true 569
stresses and deflections 592–594
stress relaxation 571–572
stress-strain curve 564–565, 569, 575
structural analysis 578–582
failure criteria 580
pressure vessels 580
safety factors 580
structures 556–557
temperature index 574
tensile impact 572
tensile modulus 387
thermal properties 572–575
thermal stresses 582
thermoplastics 556–557
thermosets 556
toughness 560
transparency 559
ultimate strength 565
undercuts 594
Vicat softening point 574
viscoelastic 561–562
wall thickness 589–592
water absorption 559
welding 598–600
dielectric 599
electromagnetic 599
hot gas 599

Plastics (*continued*)
welding
induction 599
spin 599
vibration 598–599
yield point 559, 565
yield strength 565
Plates
flat, strength and deflection of 288–290
thin flat, radius of gyration 235
Plating 1640–1647
chromium 1609
magnesium anodic treatment 1642
magnesium coating 1642
phosphate coating 1645, 1646
surface coatings 1640
zinc 1647
Plow steel rope, strength of 2714–2719
Plunge angle 845
Plunger (Sinker) method. *See* EDM
Pneumatics 2810
Poise 2504, 2873
Poisson's ratio 208
flat plates 288
perforated metal 2705
plastics 565–566
for various materials 208, 290, 391
Polar moment of inertia 239–240, 251–255
cone 255
frustum 255
cylinder, hollow 253
ellipsoid 254
formulas 253–255
masses 239
paraboloid 254
plane areas 239
prism 253
pyramid 253
solid ring 254
spherical sector 254
spherical segment 254
torus 254
Polar section modulus 251–252
Polishers, spindles for portable 1039
Polishing and buffing 1633
abrasives 1633, 1636
operations 1636
speeds 1636
wheels, material 1633
See also specific materials and processes
Polyalkylene glycols 2508
Poly-alph-olefins 2508
Polygon
area 78, 81–83
of forces 161
formulas and table 81
length of side 81
Polygon (*continued*)
radius of circumscribed circle 81
radius of inscribed circle 78, 81
Polygon shafts 2361
connections 2361
dimensions of 2361
manufacturing 2362
strength of connections 2362
three- and four-sided designs 2361
Polyol-esters 2509
Polyphase motors 2646, 2649
Polyurethane 586, 2689
Porous bearings 2440
Portable grinding 1332
safety 1313
Portable tools
hexagonal chucks for 1040
spindles and drives for 1037–1040
Positive clutches 2530, 2573
Potential energy 188, 189
Poundal 2865
Pounds
force 157, 158
force into newtons 2864
mass 158
metric conversion 2860–2862
Powder bed fusion (PBF) 1555, 1556
Powdered metal alloys
copper base 390
density 390
elongation 390
hardness 390
iron base 390
tungsten base 390
Powdered metal bearings 2440
Powder metallurgy 1522
characteristics of metal powders 1523
friction and flow characteristics of particles 1526
angle of repose 1526
powder flow 1527
packing, density, and porosity 1527
bulk density 1528
packing factor 1528
porosity 1528
true density 1528
particle shape and internal structure 1525
aspect ratio 1525
shape factor 1526
sphericity 1526
particle size measurement and distribution 1523
Fraunhofer diffraction 1524
Laser diffraction method 1523
Mie theory 1524
screening method 1523

Powder metallurgy (*continued*)
design 1548
chamfers and bevels 1549
countersinks 1549
fillet and radii 1549
flanges 1550
flatness 1549
holes 1549
hubs 1550
parts 1551
assemblies 1551
bearings 1552
cams 1551
sizes and shapes 1548
taper and draft 1549
wall thickness 1549
economics of 1552
manufacturing processes 1534
blending and mixing powders 1534
compaction of metallic powder 1534, 1535
force for pressing 1537
isostatic pressing 1539, 1540
cold 1539
hot 1540
liquid phase sintering 1539
powder injection molding 1541
powder rolling, extrusion, forging 1542, 1543
sintering 1534, 1537–1539
materials 1544
advanced 1546
beryllium 1547
refractory metals 1547
superalloys 1546
titanium 1547
tool steels 1546
conventional 1544
ferrous 1544
nonferrous 1545
self-lubricating bearings 1545
soft magnetic 1545
metal additive manufacturing 1555
ASTM and ISO Standards 1555, 1565
design standards 1565
materials and processes 1565
test methods 1565
binder jetting (BJ) 1555, 1559
comparing AM with conventional processes 1561
directed energy deposition (DED) 1555, 1560, 1561
hybrid processes 1561
powder-fed DED 1560
wire-fed DED 1561
material extrusion 1555

Powder metallurgy (*continued*)
metal additive manufacturing
material jetting 1555
powder bed fusion (PBF) 1555, 1556
electron beam melting (EBM) 1558
selective laser melting (SLM) 1556
sheet lamination 1555
unique capabilities of metal AM 1563
assemblies and part integration 1564
complex fins and blades 1564
internal channels 1564
internal structures and topological optimization 1564
reasons to choose AM 1564
vat photopolymerization 1555
workflow 1555
powder characteristics 1523
basic chemical composition 1523
friction and flow 1526, 1527
mesh count 1523
packing, density, porosity 1527
bulk density 1528
packing factor 1528
porosity 1528
particle shape and structure 1525
aspect ratio 1525
shape factor 1526
sphericity 1526
particle size and distribution 1523
laser diffraction 1523
screening method 1523
production of metallic powder 1529
atomization 1529
centrifugal 1531
gas 1530
rotating disk process 1531
rotating electrode process 1531
water 1529
chemical processes 1532
electrolytic deposition 1533
hybrid atomization 1533
mechanical processes 1531
alloying 1532
comminution process 1531
standards 1553
ASTM 1554
ISO 1553
MPIF 1554

Power
calculating by dynamometer 2536
cutting tool 1147
for driving pipe taps 2177
feed factors 1146
general formulas 193
heat equivalents 2865
in mechanics 156
motor 1147

Power (*continued*)
required for machining 1145–1153
roots of numbers 11–12
transmission
belting 2566
capacity 2325, 2526
chain 2626–2630
disc clutch 2526
friction wheels 2536–2538
units conversion 2868
Power brush
brush finishing 1632–1635
brush uses 1632
deburring 1632
producing a radius on tooth profile of gears 1632
Power constant
alloy steels 1147
high-temperature alloys 1146
nonferrous metals 1146
plain carbon steels 1147
stainless steel 1146
tool steels 1146
wrought steels 1147
Power transmission
roller chain 2616–2639
Precipitation
hardening 459
heat-treatment 539
Precision
bolts and screws, British 1759–1760, 1766
gage blocks 723
investment casting 1504
Preferred
basic sizes, ANSI/ASME Standard 688
hole basis metric fits, ANSI/ASME Standard 664, 668
metric sizes
ANSI/ASME Standard 660, 688, 2708
British Standard 689
numbers, ANSI/ASME Standard 687
numbers, British Standard 689
roughness average values (Ra) 818
roughness values and roughness grades 826
series for tolerances and allowances 647
series maximum waviness height values 819
shaft basis metric fits, ANSI/ASME Standard 663, 669–670, 671–672
thicknesses for
flat metal products, metric 2708
uncoated metals and alloys 2706
Preload measurements 1657
Preload relaxation 1657
Preparatory command, CNC 1356
Present value and discount 146
Press
adjustable-bed 1464
bending 1459
gap-frame 1464
hydraulic 1465
inclinable-frame 1464
lubrication 1442
mechanical 1462
mechanical versus hydraulic
advantages, disadvantages 1466
open-end 1464
selection 1468
sheet metal working 1462
solid-frame 1464
straight side 1465
Pressure
angle 2207
angle, cams 2372
collapsing, of cylinders and tubes 293–294
composite checking of fine-pitch gears 2248
definition and units for 159–160
effect on wood property 383
external, tubes subjected to 294
heads of water in feet to psi 2798
Lamé's formula for internal 291
spherical shells, strength to resist internal 291
tight joints 2093
unit conversion 2861, 2756, 2862
Pressure and flow 2755
Prime numbers and factors 13–23
Principle reference planes 2207
Prism 71
polar moment of inertia 253
volume 88
Prismoidal formula for volume 71
Processing thermosets 586
Production rate 1211
Profile checking, gearing 2237
Progression
arithmetical 39–40
geometrical 39, 41
Progressive die 1455
Prony brake dynamometer 2536–2537
Properties
of materials
aluminum alloys 527
copper alloys 510
copper-zinc-tin alloys 391
magnesium alloys 542–544
metals 391
nickel alloys 545–546
nonferrous alloys 510
plastics 387
powdered metal alloys 390
specific gravity 378
spring wire 392
standard steels 393–395, 419–428

Properties (*continued*)
of materials
titanium alloys 545, 547
tool steels 430–434, 438
wood 384–385
mechanical 206–209, 391
compressive 208
definitions 206
effect of temperature on 575–576
fatigue 209
modulus of elasticity values 207
perforated metal 2705
Poisson's ratio values 208
shear 208
strength 391, 392, 419–420
thermal 369–370, 392
yield point values 207
thermal 572–575
Properties of pi 1, 94
Proportion 9–10
inverse 10
Proportional limit 207
plastics 565
Protractor, reading vernier scale on 690
Providing backlash 2245
PT (penetrant testing) 1629
PTFE plastics 2440, 2664
Pulleys and belts
arc of contact correction factors 2574
and belt drives 177, 178
center distances, V-belt 2566
center to center distance 2563
cross section correction factors 2573
diameter and speeds 2564
diameter in compound drives 2564
differential 178
flat belt 2563, 2566
length correction factors 2574
length of belt traversing three pulleys 2565
lengths of open and crossed belts 2563
lengths of V-belt 2569
rules for calculating diameters and speeds 2563
sheave size 2572
speed in compound drive 2565
speed ratio correction factors 2573
speeds, rpm into feet per minute 2178
V-belt 2563
and wheels, in mechanics 177, 178
wrap angles 2563
Pulley taps 992
Pull-up torque 2645
Punching and blanking 1409
deformation force 1412
deformation work 1412
force of press 1412
PUR (polyurethanes) 586
PVD (physical vapor deposition) 863, 1161
Pyramid
center of gravity 232
frustum 232
polar moment of inertia 253
volume 88
frustum 89

Q

Quadratic equations 32–34
Quenching 404–405
baths 474
tanks for 474
high-speed steel 495
induction heating 486
interrupted 474, 475
media 463
self 486
tungsten 495
air cooling 495
salt bath 495

R

Rack 2207
gear 2211
spline, metric 2356
Radial forming 1441
Radian per second conversion from rpm 184
Radians equivalent to degrees 103–104, 107
Radiographic testing (RT) 1627
Radius
of arc, checking 702–704
of curvature 2378
of gyration 235–238
angles, steel 2698–2700
bar, small diameter 235
channels, aluminum 2701
channels, steel 2697
circle 244
hollow 244
circular disk, thin 236
circular ring 245
thin flat 236
cone 237
frustum 237
cross sections, various shapes 241–250
cylinder 236
hollow 237
thin hollow 237
ellipse 245
ellipsoid 238

Radius (*continued*)
of gyration
flat plate, thin 235
half circle 244
hexagon 243
hollow circle 244
hollow cylinder 237
thin 237
hollow sphere 238
I-beams 2692–2695
aluminum 2701
I-section 245
L-section 249
octagon 244
paraboloid 238
parallelepiped 236
parallelogram 235
prism, rectangular 237
rectangle 242
ring 235
S- or W-shape, steel 2696
sphere 238
hollow 238
spherical shell, thin 238
structural angles 2698–2700
thin flat plate 235
thin hollow cylinder 237
thin spherical shell 238
trapezoid 243
triangle 243
T-section 248
wide flange, steel 2692–2695
Z-section 250
of oscillation 238
Rails
size to carry given load 277–278
strength of 278
Rake angles 836
checking milling cutter 901
single-point cutting tools
lead angles 836
turning tool 833
Ram tube bending 1461
Rankine, temperature 2870
Rankine or Gordon formula for columns 281, 283
Rank of a matrix 126
Rasps 1054
aluminum 1054
Ratchet gearing 2294–2295
frictional 2295
multiple pawl 2295
pitch of wheel teeth 2295
reversing 2295
shape of wheel teeth 2295
types 2294
Rate of return (interest) 153
Ratio 9
benefit-cost 153
compound 9
contact, in gearing 2230–2234, 2235
epicyclic gearing 2290–2293
fractional, change gears for 2182
geometrical 39–43
mean proportional 9
Poisson's 208
slenderness, columns 281
of volumes 93
Real numbers and their operations 3–10
fractions 5–7
adding and subtracting fractions and mixed numbers 6–7
decimal numbers 8–9
adding or subtracting decimal numbers 8
dividing decimal numbers 9
multiplying decimal numbers 8
dividing fractions and mixed numbers 8
factor 5
improper fraction 5
least common denominator (lcd) 6
mixed number 5
multiple 5
multiplying fractions and mixed numbers 7
percentage 10–11
proper fraction 5
raising a fraction to higher terms 6
ratio and proportion 9–10
inverse proportion 10
problems involving direct and inverse proportions 10
reciprocal 6
reducible fraction 5
unit fraction 5
powers and roots 11–12
combinations 13
factorial notation 13
permutations 13
powers 11–12
prime factorization of numbers 13
properties of exponents 11
roots 11–12
scientific notation 12–13
division in scientific notation 12–13
engineering notation 12
multiplication in scientific notation 12
real numbers 3–5
integers (signed numbers) 3–4
absolute value 4
addition and subtraction 4
multiplication and division 4
operations on signed numbers 4
real number line 4

Real numbers and their operations (*continued*)
real numbers
order of operations 4–5
properties of real numbers 3
equivalence properties 3
operational properties 3
Ream, paper 2874
Reamers 908–930
ANSI/ASME Standard 908–930
arbors for shell 927
Brown & Sharpe taper socket 929
bull center 928
center 928
center and countersink 915
centers for 915
chucking 910, 913, 918, 923, 924
straight flutes 923, 924
definition 911
die-maker's 930
drills for taper pin 1888–1890
driving slots and lugs 922
expansion chucking 919
expansion hand 921
finishing 928
fluting cutters 909–910
dimension 910
fluting to obtain negative rake 908
formed 910
hand 909, 920, 921
squared shank 921
straight and helical flutes 920, 921
helical flutes 927
jobbers 922
letter sizes 924
machine countersinks 916
Morse taper socket 928
negative front rake 908
pipe 929
rose chucking 910, 925
straight and helical flutes 925
shell 922, 926
straight and helical flutes 918, 926
straight flutes 922, 923
straight shank 916
stub screw machine 924, 927
taper, milling teeth 896
taper pin 930
taper pin reamers, drills for 1887, 1890
taper pipe 929
taper shank 918
terms applying to 911
threaded end 909
dimension 909
tooth-rest position for grinding clearance 911
wire gage sizes 923
Reaming
automatic screw machines 1235
cutting speeds for
copper alloys 1140
ferrous cast metals 1136–1137
light metals 1138
stainless steels 1135
tool steels 1134
difficulties 917
bellmouth holes 917
oversize holes 917
poor finish 918
taper pin 1889
Recalescence point in steel hardening 458, 467
Recessing tools, speeds 1235
Reciprocals of numbers 6
Rectangle
area 75
moment of inertia 242
radius of gyration 242
section modulus 242
Rectangular
cylindrical coordinates 48
spherical coordinates, relationship 48
Rectangular keys 2539
Refrigeration of steel 501
Reinforced plastics 587
Relative density 377
Relief and rake angles
indicator drop method of checking 901
for single-point cutting tools 2179, 835
Relief angles
for single-point cutting tools 835
turning tool 833
Replacement-gear dimensions 2328
Resinoid bonded wheels 1065–1066, 1281
thread grinding 2192
Resins 556
Resistance brazing 1573
Retaining rings 1897
ANSI/ASME Standard 1897–1905
centrifugal capacity 1921
compressed in bore 1903
diameter tolerances 1915, 1916
dimensions in inches 1914, 1917
expanded over shaft 1901
external dimensions 1918, 1921
external series 1897–1898
external spiral 1908, 1912
failure of 1915, 1922
groove bottom radii 1898
groove design and machining 1919–1920, 1923
groove diameter 1898
groove diameter tolerances 1916
groove failure 1922
groove width 1898

Retaining rings (*continued*)
groove width tolerances 1916
industrial 1920
internal 1921
internal spiral 1906, 1910
load capacity 1913
material 1913
metric performance data 1901
ring free diameter 1898
rotation between parts 1922
seated in groove 1901, 1903, 1905, 1906
selection 1897
self-locking dimensions 1920
self-locking external and internal 1921
self-locking inch series 1921
self-locking types 1920
spiral 1908
standards 1921–1924
tapered 1897–1898
thickness 1909, 1913
thickness tolerances 1909, 1913, 1915, 1916
thrust load capacities 1919
thrust load safety factors 1918
width capacity 1915
Retarded motion 182
Retention knobs, V-flange tool shanks 1032
Reyn 2504, 2873
Rhodium plating 1646
Right-angle plate 756–764
calibration and maintenance 761
flatness calibration 762
parallelism calibration 762
squareness calibration 763
grades 756
types 759
Type I
Class 1, plain 759
Class 2, slotted 759
Class 3, measuring plane 759
Type II, inside right-angle 759
Type III, universal 760
Type IV, machinist's adjustable 760
Type VI, toolmaker's non-adjustable 761
Type V, toolmaker's adjustable 761
Right-angle triangles, solution 76, 98, 99, 102
Rigid body parameters 228–255
center of gravity 228–234, 238
center of oscillation 238
center of percussion 238–239
moment of inertia 239–255
radius of gyration 235–238
radius of oscillation 238
Rigidity
modulus of (shear) 208
spring materials 344–346
Ring
area and volume 71
radius of gyration 235
solid
polar moment of inertia 254
stresses in loaded 226–227
Rivet
allowable stresses 1863
ANSI/ASME Standard 1866–1873
belt 1868
British Standard 1874, 1877
cold forged 1874
hot forged 1874
lengths 1874
snap head 1874
universal head 1874
button head 1866, 1868
cone head 1866
cooper's 1868
countersunk 1866, 1874
diameters for given plate thicknesses 1861
dimension countersunk head 1877
dimension snap head 1877
excess length to form head 1866
flat head 1868, 1874
hold-on or dolly bar sets 1866
large rivets, standard 1866
material 1862
mushroom head 1874
pan head 1866, 1868
pitch 1861, 1865–1866
sets, dimensions of impressions in 1866
shearing strength 1865–1866
small rivets, standard 1866–1868
spacing 1861
steel 1862
strength 1862
tinner's 1868
truss 1868
types 1861
Riveted joints 1861–1866
allowable stresses 1862
double and triple 1865
efficiency 1862–1863
failure 1862
holes for 1861
joint failure 1862
joint strength 1862–1863
rivet length for forming heads 1866
rivet materials 1862
strength 1863
types of riveted joints 1861
working strength 1862
Rockwell hardness
conversion to Brinell Hardness 505–508
number 507
scales 503
See also specific materials and processes

Rod gages 2702
Roebling wire gage 2702
Rolled threads, electric socket and lamp base 2113
Roller bearing. *See* Bearings: roller
Roller chain, double pitch 2617
Rolling
  contact bearings 2444–2498
  friction resistance 174
Rolling screw threads 2187–2190
  in automatic screw machines 2189
  cylindrical die machines 2187
  diameter of blank 2188
  diameter of threading roll 2189
  flat die machines 2187
  shapes and kind of thread 2189
  speeds, and feeds 2190
  steels for 2188
Roll pipe and tube bending 1461
Root diameter gearing 2207
Roots
  finding square and cube 11
  and powers of numbers 11
Rope, wire 2711
  definitions of terms 2711
  safe loads for 2714–2719
  strength and properties 2714–2719
Rose chucking reamers 910
  fractional sizes 925
Rotary draw bending 1460
Rotary file or burs 1054
Rotary motion formulas 184–185
Rotating parts, balancing 198–203
Roughness
  control of 808
  cutoff 818
  height values 810, 811
  parameters
    rules for determining 826
    rules for measurement of 826
  roughness average (Ra) 812, 818
  symbols indicating degree of 808–810, 811
  values, grades, surface finish 826
  See also specific materials and applications
Round head machine screws 1784
Royal Microscopical Society thread 2115, 2116, 2118
Rpm
  conversion to radian per second 184
  for various cutting speeds and diameters
    inch units 1086–1089
    metric units 1088–1089
  for various grinding speeds and diameters 1314
RT (radiographic testing) 1627
Rubber
  bearings 2441
  bonded grinding wheels 1281
  bonding 2660
  turning 1143
Rubber pad forming process 1434
Running balance 198
Rupture strength
  copper-base powdered alloys 390
  iron-base powdered alloys 390
  tungsten-base powdered alloys 390

S

SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers) 395, 458
SAE Standards
  babbitt metals 2438
  bearing metals 2438
  crown or acorn nuts 1681
  high nuts 1682
  V-belts 2604
  Woodruff keyseat cutters 895
SAE steels
  basic numbering system 396
  compositions 393, 394, 399–400, 401–402
  heat treatments for 487–489
Safe loads for wire rope 2714–2719
Safety
  factors of 211–212
    plastics parts 580
  flange couplings 2522
  in hardening 431, 438–439, 444, 445, 447
  occupational exposure to fluids 1252–1255
  for wire rope 2717–2718
Salt baths for heat treating 471
Sanders, spindles for portable 1039
Sanding wood 385
Sandstone and limestone, strength 391
Saws
  band 1241–1246
  circular, arbors for 1037
  metal-cutting, speeds 1143
  metal-slitting 876
  sharpening files 1052
  slitting 876
Saw tooth clutches 2532
Saybolt Universal Seconds (SUS) 2504
Scalar and vector quantities, of force systems 160
Scleroscope 503
Screw machines
  automatic 1234–1239
  automatic box-tools 1235
  drilling speeds and feeds 1235

Screw machines (*continued*)
drills 937, 944
knurling 1234, 1235
reaming speeds and feeds 1235
speeds and feeds 1235–1236
stock required for given production 1239
threading cams 1234
Screws
angularity and eccentricity 1767
ANSI/ASME head recesses 1836
and bolts 1670
breaking load 1669
British Standard
BSF 1811
inch 1758–1761, 1798, 1826–1832
metric 1766, 1798–1807, 1826–1831
Unified 1808, 1810
Whitworth 1758, 1760, 1811, 1832
cap 1674, 1812
cap, metric 1714
drive 1833, 1848
force for turning 178
form 1767
grade markings for steel 1666
head recesses 1836
heavy hex 1672–1674
hex cap 1671
inserts 1848
jig and fixture
button head 1830
heavy hex 1674
hex 1671
lag screw 1675–1676
metric 1718
length of engagement 1668
length of thread 1767
mechanical principle of 178
metric
British Standard 1807
cap 1714
diameters 1716
flange 1720, 1721
formed 1715
heavy hex 1716
ISO 1763
reduced body diameter 1717
socket head shoulder 1719
socket 1826
miniature 1785
self-threading 1833–1857
set 1819–1832
shoulder 1719, 1818
sockets for 1821
sockets metric series 1828
strength of 1667
stress areas 1660, 1668
tap drills 2168
Screws (*continued*)
tap marking symbols 973
thumb 1929, 1932–1933
Unified Standard 1670, 1810
wing 1929
wood 1935
worm threads 2270–2273
Screw thread inserts
chemical composition 1749
compatibility 1745
dimensions 1745
hardness 1757
helical coil 1745
helical coil insert 1746
insert length data 1749–1754
inspection 1749
length selection 1756, 1757
material strength 1756
tapped hole 1745
taps 1757
threaded hole data 1747–1748
tolerance classes 1745
types 1745
Screw thread insert taps 1757
Screw threads and thread systems
Sealants 2663
anaerobic pipe 2665
gasket materials 2664
pipe joining 2663
silicone rubber gasketing 2664
tapered pipe threading 2664
types 2663
See also specific applications
Sealing bearings 2398
Seasoning steel, subzero 502
Secant 96
Secant modulus (plastics) 565
Section lining, standard for drawings 622
Section modulus
angles 2698–2700
circle 244
circular ring 245
ellipse 245
formulas for various sections 241–250
half circle 244
hexagon 243
hollow circle 244
I-beams 2692–2696
I-section 245
L-section 249
octagon 244
polar 251, 252
rectangle 242
structural shapes
angles, steel 2700
channels, aluminum 2701

Section modulus (*continued*)
structural shapes
I-beams or S-shapes
aluminum 2701
steel 2696
wide flange, steel 2692–2695
steel 2697
for torsion 279
trapezoid 243
triangle 243
T-section 248
units conversion 2874
Z-section 250
Segment, circular 79, 83–85
area 49, 79, 84–85
height for given angle and radius 79, 83–85
Selective laser melting (SLM) 1556
Selective laser sintering (SLS) 613–614
Self-aligning bearings 2446
Self-locking torque 1755
Self-threading screws 1833–1857
countersink heads 1833
cross recesses 1836
designations 1834
drilled hole sizes 1842
drill size 1844
drive type 1833, 1834
extruded hole sizes 1842
fillister head 1834
head cross recesses 1836
hex head 1834
hex washer head 1834
hole sizes 1841, 1844
inch, metric 1848
metallic drive 1834
metals
brass sheet metal 1844
monel steel 1844
stainless steel 1844
steel 1844
metric 1848–1857
clearance holes 1853
cutting tapping 1850
designations 1849, 1850
drilled hole sizes 1854, 1856
extruded hole sizes 1853
head types 1848–1849
heat treatment 1852
hole sizes for steel 1853–1857
hole sizes for tapping 1853
material 1852
punched hole size for steel 1854, 1856
recommended lengths 1851
tapping 1853
thread and point types 1849
thread cutting types 1848–1852
tapping 1850

Self-threading screws (*continued*)
metric
thread forming 1850
tapping 1854, 1855
types 1848–1851
thread tapping
in asbestos 1855
in cast metals 1856, 1857
in plastics 1855, 1857
in plywoods 1855
in sheet metal 1856
pan head 1834
round head 1833
self-tapping inserts 1848
sheet metal hole sizes 1844
slotted pan head 1834
steel thread cutting 1845
thread and point
dimensions 1837–1840
types 1835–1836
thread cutting 1840
sheet metals 1844
tapping 1836
types 1833, 1836, 1838
thread forming 1837, 1838–1842, 1841, 1842
types 1835–1836
torsional strength requirements 1848
truss head 1834
types of 1833
Sellers screw thread 2121
Sensitivity factor, gear material 2253
Series, infinite 111, 133
Set screws
British Standard
metric 1826–1832
Whitworth 1832
cone point 1819–1830
cup point 1819–1830
dog point 1819–1830
flat point 1819–1830
headless 1819
hexagon and spline 1820
hexagon socket 1826, 1829, 1831
hexagon socket type 1831
holding power 1831
oval point 1819
spline socket type 1825
square head type 1822, 1823, 1832
Sevolute functions 111
Shaft alignment 2720–2748
dial indicators 2721–2730
indicator formats 2731–2748
procedure 2726
rim and face method 2721, 2727, 2731–2748
soft legs 2723
tolerance guide 2720

Shaft conditions
checking 705
out of roundness 708
number of lobes 708
V-block angles 708
out-of-roundness, lobing 706
Shafts 295–303
allowances and tolerances for fits 640
British Standard for fits 674–683
brittle materials, formulas for 301–302
checking for various conditions of 705–708
critical speeds of rotating 302
deflection, linear 298
deflection, torsional 297–298
effect of keyways on strength 301
factor of safety 296, 301
hollow 303
horsepower transmitted by 295–297, 298
linear deflection 298
maximum allowable working stress 301
moment of inertia, polar 251, 252
polygon type connections 2361
steel, diameters of 299
strength 295–297
torsional
deflection 297–298
strength 295–297
hollow versus solid 303
transmission, design of 299–301
Shanks taper 1013–1024
Shapes
of grinding wheels 1283–1291
of mounted wheels and points 1041–1043
Shaping, speeds and feeds 1143
Shaping wood 385
Sharpening
carbide tools 1065, 1066, 1067
circular saws 1052
diamond wheels for 1066
drills 1063, 1064, 1065
milling cutters 895, 896, 899, 900
Sharp V-thread 1940
Shaving
blanked workpiece 1416
punched workpiece 1416
Shear
formulas for 216–217
modulus
of elasticity 208
of rigidity 208
of spring materials 345–346
of various materials 208, 391
properties 208
spring design 346
stress 206, 217
in beams 219–222
combined with tension or compression 218
Shearing 1406
clearance 1408
cutoff and parting 1408
forces 1406
fracture 1406
parting 1409
rotary cutters 1407
straight inclined blades 1407
straight parallel blades 1406
Shear spinning 1433
Shear strength 567–568
cast iron 429
magnesium alloys 544
nonferrous metals 510
rivets 1865–1866
steels 429
wood 383
wrought iron 429
See also specific materials
Shear tooth files 1054
Sheaves
for V-belt drives 2568
for wire rope 349, 2712
Sheet lamination 1555
Sheet metal 1401–1466
bending 1417
allowances 1421, 1422, 1428
formula 1421, 1422
formulas 1417, 1421, 1422
radius 1417
maximum 1417
minimum 1417
springback 1421
blanking and punching 1409
clearances 1405, 1410
cutoff 1408
deep drawing 1424
designing parts for production 1404
die opening profile 1412
drawing 1424
edging process 1443
fine blanking 1414
forming 1441
ironing force 1430
ironing process 1430
joining and edging 1443
joining process 1443
joints 1444
joint types
angle frame 1447
button punch snap lock 1445
clinch bar slip and angle 1447
clinch type flanged connections 1447
corner standing seam 1445
double flanges and cleats 1447
double seam 1445
flange 1445

Sheet metal (*continued*)
joint types
flange and flange corner 1444
flanged duct connections 1447
flanged end and angle 1447
flat drive slip 1446
flat S slip 1446
flush lap 1444
formed flanges 1447
groove seam 1445
hem 1446
hemmed S slip 1446
pittsburg 1445
plain lap 1444
raw and flange corner 1444
slide corner 1445
standing drive slip 1446
standing seam 1444
neutral axis 1417
parting 1408
punching 1409
screws 1833
shaving 1416
shearing
inclined blades 1407
rotary cutters 1407
springback 1421
stock allowances 1418–1420
stress 1401
stripper force 1413
theory of metalworking 1401
and wire gages 2706–2708
work and force 1412
Sheet sizes for drawings 620
Sheet steel
bending 1421, 1422
Sheet thermoforming 584
Shell
blanks, diameters 1426
mills 878
reamers 926
strength of 288–294
Shielded metal arc welding (SMAW) 1591–1594
characteristic of electrodes 1592
Shielding gases 1579
Shipping measure 2853
Shock-resisting
tool steels 452
chemical composition 452
heat treatment 452
Shocks
in beams, stresses produced by 278–279
from bodies in motion 280
in springs, stresses produced by 279
Shore's scleroscope 503, 505–508
Shoulder screws 1719, 1818
Shrinkage fits 643, 650, 651, 658
allowances 643, 644, 645
SI. *See* Metric system
Side cutting edge 837
Side milling cutters 874
Signed numbers (integers). *See* Real numbers and their operations
Signs and abbreviations
mathematical 2829
scientific and engineering 2827–2830
Silicon carbide grinding wheels 1065–1066
Silicone 2509
Silver
bearing material 2439
brazing filler alloys 1569, 1571
plating 1646
Simple stresses 216–218
Simpson's rule 72–73
Simultaneous equations 127–129
Sine, law of 96
Sine-bar
checking angle 694
checking taper per foot 695
checking templets 695
measuring angle of templet 694
setting 10-inch to an angle 695
setting to a given angle 694
types of 693
use of 693
Single-angle milling cutters 877, 883, 884
Single-point cutting tools 832–855, 964–965
angle tolerances 855
carbide tips and inserts for 847–855
chipbreakers 838–839
definitions and terms 832–835
end cutting edge angles 837
indexable inserts 839–841
insert toolholders 839–859
lead angles 837
nose radius 837, 854
numerical control tool compensation 857–859
planing tools 839
rake angles 836
relief angles 835
relief angles for thread cutting 2179
side cutting edge angle 837
tip overhang 848, 849
tool contour 832
tool holders, indexable inserts 839–847
Single-station dies 1454
Single tooth contact 2206
Singularity of a matrix 126
Sinker (plunge) method. *See* EDM
Sinking funds 147
Sintered
carbide tools
ANSI Standard 847–855
tool materials 1078–1080
gear materials 2322

Sintered metal bearings 2440
SI (*Système International d'Unites*)
  in mechanics calculations 156–160
  metric 158–160
  in strength of materials calculations 206–207, 216, 218, 222, 224–226, 227, 235, 239–240, 256, 269, 273–274, 276–277, 279, 280, 282, 289, 290–291, 292–293, 296–298, 300, 301, 302
  units of 2831–2834
  See also Metric system; *specific applications*
Sixty (60)-degree stub threads 2075
Size factor cover 2253
Sizes of sawn lumber 385
SLA (stereolithography) 612
Slate cutting speed for 1143
Sleeve bearings 2404
Sleeves, Morse taper 1022
Slenderness ratio, columns 281, 282
Slides, measuring 697, 702
Slipping clutches, couplings 2529
Slitting saws, metal 876
SLM (selective laser melting) 1556
Slots for T-bolts, ANSI/ASME Standard 1858
SLS (selective laser sintering) 613–614
Slug 157
SMAW (shielded metal arc welding) 1591–1594
S-N diagrams 209, 210
Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) 395, 458
Socket
  ANSI/ASME hexagon and spline 1821
  head, screw type
    British Standard metric 1826
    cap 1814–1817, 1827
    drill and counterbore sizes for 1815
    keys and bits for 1824
    set 1831
    shoulder 1818
      metric socket head 1719
  reamers, Morse taper 928
  taper shank 1013–1024
  threads for electric 2113
  wrench clearances 1689, 1691
Solders and soldering 1566, 1568
  alloys for 1567
  aluminum 1567
  fluxes 1566
  forms 1566
  magnesium 1568
  methods 1566–1568
  stainless steel 1568
  ultrasonic fluxless 1568
Solid-frame press 1464
Solidification temperature 643
Solids, volumes and dimensions 88–93
Soluble oils for machining operations 1247
Solution heat treatment 459
Sorbite 476
Space cutters, roller chain sprockets 2635, 2636
Spacing holes on jig borer 711
Spandrel
  area 80
  center of gravity 230
Spark-out time 1266
Spark plug
  threads 2112
    dimensions 2112
    hole in cylinder head 2112
Spatter, in welding 1600
Specific gravity 377
  gases 378
  liquids 378
  plastics 387
  of various metals 377
Specific heat 369, 370
  aluminum 373
  copper alloys 373
  gases 370
Speed reducers, motors, built-in 2652
Speeds
  calculating cutting speeds 1084–1088
  critical, of rotating shafts 302
  pulleys, rules for calculating 2563
  rpm for different diameters and cutting speeds 1084–1088
  See also Feeds and speeds; *specific processes*
Speeds and feeds, machining 1077–1142
  abrasive belt grinding 1333
  bandsawing 1243–1246
  CBN grinding wheels 1298
  cutting 604, 1082, 1084, 1139, 1234–1246
  drilling 1235
    diameters and rpm 1085
  end milling 1108
  face milling 1108
  form-turning 1235, 1251
  general 1139, 1234–1235
  grinding wheels
    maximum peripheral speeds 1313
    truing and dressing 1301–1302
    wheel and work speeds 2194
  grinding with diamond wheels 1310–1311
  honing 1333–1338
  milling 1090
  nonferrous metals 1256–1259
  reaming 1139, 1235
  reaming and threading 1090
  rotary files and burs 1055
  sawing
    band 1243–1246
    circular 1143
  shaping 1143

Speeds and feeds, machining (*continued*)
slit and slot milling 1108, 1111–1126
superalloys 1107
surface grinding 1329–1331
tables, how to use 1090–1093
tapping and thread cutting 1129–1142, 1235, 2149, 2150
thread rolling 2190, 2191
titanium and alloys 1106
tool life 1082–1093
adjusting 1103–1104, 1108, 1111, 1127
tool steels
drilling reaming, and threading 1134
milling 1117–1118
turning 1099
turning 1090, 1094–1107
carbon and alloy steels 1095–1098
copper alloys 1105
ferrous cast metals 1101–1102
hard-to-machine materials 1107
light metals 1106
speeds and feeds 1094–1107, 1235
stainless steels 1100
superalloys 1107
titanium 1106
tool steels 1099
Sphere
hollow
center of gravity 233
radius of gyration 238
polar moment of inertia 253
radius of gyration 238
surface area 91
volume 91
Spherical
coordinates 47
and rectangular coordinates, relationship 48
sector
center of gravity 233
polar moment of inertia 254
volume 91
segment
center of gravity 233
polar moment of inertia 254
volume 91
shell, thin 238
shells, strength to resist internal pressure 291–293
surface center of gravity 230
wedge volume 92
zone volume 92
Spheroidal graphite iron 429, 1481
Spheroidize annealing 405
Spheroidizing 458, 479, 481
Spikes and nails, standard 1934
Spindle
noses 1027–1031, 1032
for portable tools 1037–1040
Spinning 1432
conventional 1432
shear 1433
tube 1433
Spiral bevel gears 2204, 2257, 2258
tooth contact 2257
Spline keys and bits 1824
Splines
application factors 2346
comparison of symbols 2352
data and reference dimensions 2344
dimensions, formula 2360
fatigue-life factors for 2347
fittings 2358–2360
fittings, torque capacity 2360
formulas for SAE Standard 2360
involute 2331–2356
See also Involute splines
involute, socket keys and bits 1824
for large misalignments 2348
machining tolerances and variations 2355
milling cutter 899
SAE Standard splined fittings 2359, 2360
terms, symbols, and drawing data 2342
variations 2340
Spraying process, flame, metal 1648
Spray transfer, welding 1578
Spring 304–349
arbor diameters for 349
Belleville 344, 350–364
clock 344
compression, formulas for 317, 318
coned 350–364
conical compression 344
constant force 344
copper-base spring alloys 307–308
deflections for
compression 321–324
extension 321–324
torsion 339–342
design data 315–349
disc 350–364
contact surfaces 351, 354
forces and stresses 354
group classes 350
materials 351
nomenclature 350
stacking 352
stress 354
elevated temperature stresses 314, 315
endurance limit for spring materials 314, 315
extension 320–329
extension spring design 327–329
failure in 348
force, disc 354
heat treatment of 344–346
helical, shock stresses produced in 279

Spring (*continued*)
helical compression spring design 316–320
high-carbon spring steels 305
index 315
materials 305–309
miscellaneous 344
moduli of elasticity 344
motor 344
music wire arbor diameters 349
nickel-base spring alloys 307–309
pins 1895–1896
shock stresses produced in helical 279
spiral 344
stainless spring steels 306–307
steels for 305–307
stresses 315, 316
produced by shocks 279
tolerances
compression and extension 328–331
for torsion 337–344
torsion
bars 343
design 331–337
modulus 344–346
volute 343, 344
wire
diameters for 305
maximum working temperature 308
tensile strength 392
Springback, sheet metal 1421
Spring pins
coiled type 1896
designation 1895
lengths and sizes 1895
materials 1895
slotted type 1895
Spring washers
double coil rectangular section 1771
single coil square section 1772
Sprockets
chain transmission 2616
idler 2632
Spur gearing 2208
addendum modifications 2252
AGMA tolerances for fine pitch gears 2247
angular backlash 2248
ANSI Standard tooth forms 2210, 2214
to avoid undercutting by hob 2233
backlash 2242–2248, 2314
range 2243
basic dimensions 2216
blanks for fine pitch gears 2239
British Standard 2251
bronze and brass gears 2322
caliper measurement of tooth 2226
center distance 2234
variable 2216, 2218, 2220

Spur gearing (*continued*)
center distance for enlarged pinion 2233
checking gear size 2300
chordal
addendum 2223, 2224, 2226
measurement 2317
thickness 2221, 2223, 2224, 2226
circular
pitch system 2209, 2227
thickness 2221
given outside diameter 2220
composite error inspection 2248
contact
diameter 2234
lowest point of single tooth 2234–2238
ratio 2234, 2235
data on drawings 2242
diameters for hobbing, preshaving, and shaping 2217
diametral pitch shown full size 2208
diametral pitch system 2208, 2209
dimensions and formulas 2210
drawing data 2242
enlarged pinions 2225, 2283–2286
external 2204
Fellows stub tooth systems 2216
fine-pitch 2214, 2239
finishing gear milling cutters 2229
formulas for basic dimensions 2336
full-depth, teeth 2210, 2221
gear milling cutters, series of
metric module 2227
gear tooth parts 2211–2216
checking 2300
German Standard tooth form 2296
hob tip radius, maximum 2235
interference, avoiding 2225, 2227
internal 2204, 2249
internal arc thickness 2249
internal gear and pinion sizes 2249
internal gears rule 2250
involute curve properties 2209
lowest point of single tooth contact 2235
measurement of tooth with caliper 2226
measurement over pins 2300
measurement over wires 2310–2313
mesh with enlarged pinion 2233
milling cutters 2227
metric module 2227
minimum number of teeth 2233
module system 2296–2299
nonmetallic 2324
outside and root diameters 2217, 2227
pinion arc thickness 2249
pitch diameters, tabulated 2227
profile checker settings 2237
reduced gear 2225

Spur gearing (*continued*)
replacement gear dimensions 2328
root and outside diameters 2217, 2227
specifications 2240
tooth
contact of highest point 2236
dimensions 2211–2216
forms 2210
measurements over wires 2310–2313
proportions 2214
thickness measurement 2220
true involute form (TIF) diameter 2236
undercut, limit for hobbed gears 2236
Square
area 75
circles of area equal to 86
diagonals 87
prism volume 88
recesses, for self-tapping screws 1836
Square and rectangular parallel keys 2540
Square keys 2539
Square roots of numbers 11
Square rectangular keys and keyways 2539
Square thread 2077
Squirrel cage induction motors 2645
S-shapes, structural steel 2696
moment of inertia 2696
radius of gyration 2696
section modulus 2696
weight per foot 2696
Stabilizing gages 500
Stacking disc springs 352–354
Stainless steels 394–395, 412–415
application 415, 416
characteristics and applications 412
chemical compositions 403–404
coefficient of expansion 374
compositions 403–404, 415, 416
cutting, flame 1604, 1605
density 374
electrodes (welding) current to use with 1599
electropolishing 1644
elongation 389, 427–428
hardness 389
heat treatments 491–492
mechanical properties 427–428
melting points 374
passivation 1645
properties 415, 416
soldering 1568
ultrasonic 1568
specific heat 374
speeds
for drilling, reaming, and threading 1135
for milling 1118–1119
for turning 1100
Stainless steels (*continued*)
strength 429
tensile strength 389, 427–428
thermal conductivity 374
yield strength 389, 427–428
Stamping
blank diameters 1426
fine blanking 1414
steel rule dies 1455–1458
Standard
nomenclature 2254
organizations vii-ix, 1620, 2254
powder metallurgy 1553
wire gage (SWG) 2703
See also standards organizations and subjects
Static
balancing 198
equivalent load, bearings 2494
load rating, bearings 2494
Statics 156
Statistical analysis of manufacturing data 136–142
applying statistics 139–142
comparing products with respect to average performance 139–140
minimum number of test or data points 139
statistics theory in brief 136–139
normal distribution curve 137
probability 136–137
statistical analysis 137–139
absolute error of the sample mean 138
coefficient of variation 138
confidence interval for the population mean 138–139
critical value of *t*-distribution 138
degrees of freedom 137
population mean 138
relative error of the sample mean 138
sample mean 137
sample standard deviation 137
statistical distribution curves 137
Statistics
absolute error of the sample mean 138
analysis 137–139
applications 139–142
coefficient of variation 138
confidence interval 138–139
degrees of freedom 137
distribution curves 137
example, manufacturing 141, 142
normal distribution curves 137
population mean 138
probability 136–137
relative error of the sample mean 138
sample mean 137

Statistics (*continued*)
sample standard deviation 137
Student's distribution 138, 140
t-distribution 138, 140
Stayed surfaces, flat 288
Steel
alloys
compositions of SAE 401–402
general properties 421–426
Bessemer 407, 409
carbon steel structure 462
carburizing 408, 410–411, 481–483, 487, 489
case hardening 481
cast for gears 2321
castings 1482
Brinell Hardness Number 1483
elongation 1483
tensile strength 1483
yield point 1483
chromium
compositions 415–416
nickel austenitic 415–416
classification 393–395, 398
cobaltcrom 493
cobalt high-speed 961, 962
coloring 1639
color of heated 477
columns, pipe 286, 287
corrosion-resisting 406, 413–416
Damascus 396
deep-drawing 406
elongation 388
free-cutting 406, 407, 411
stainless 412
gearing, hardness 2322
gearing, industrial 2322
hardening 458, 467
hardness 388
of heat-treated 421–426
and tensile strength relationships 506
heat treatment 404–405, 458–467, 493–502
of high-speed steel 493
high-speed 435
hypereutectoid 465
hypoeutectoid 465
induction hardening 484
killed 407–408
molybdenum
compositions 412, 415
high-speed 443–444
nickel, SAE compositions 412
nickel chromium, SAE compositions 412, 415
SAE compositions 401–402
nitriding 482
numbering systems for 395, 396, 397
pipe
columns, allowable concentric loads 286–287

Steel (*continued*)
rimmed 406, 407, 408
rivets 1862
rolled sections, shape designations 2691
SAE specification numbers 395, 397–398
sheet, standard gage 2706–2707
silicon-manganese, SAE compositions 398, 401–402
stainless 394–395, 412–415
strength 429
and hardness data 421–426, 429
of heat-treated 429
structural shapes 2691–2700
subzero treatment 499–502
taps 2149
tensile strength 388
tool 430–455, 456
tungsten
compositions 445
high-speed 445
twist drill 961, 962
yield strength 388
Steel Founders Society of America 395
Steel rule dies 1455–1458, 1457
cutting edges 1456
dimensions 1456
heat treatment 1458
Steel-threading screws
cast metals 1845, 1847
depth of penetration 1847
drill sizes 1847
hole sizes 1847
plastics 1845, 1847
Steel wool 1055
Stellite alloy 1080
Step bearings 2417, 2423–2425
Stereolithography (SLA) 612
STI tapped holes 1745
STI threaded hole data 1747–1748
Stock, amount required for screw machine production 1239
Stoke 2873
Straight
bevel gears 2204
line column formula 281
pins 1883–1887, 1886
designation 1887
materials 1887
Straight pipe threads
free fitting mechanical joints 2093
hose couplings 2093
locknuts 2093
mechanical joints 2093, 2094
Straight splines, British Standard 2357
Strain 206–209
analysis 208–209
lateral 208
longitudinal 208
ratio of 208

Strain-hardening exponent 1403
Strength
  hollow versus solid shafts 303
  of polygon connections 2362
  riveted joints 1862
  of screws and bolts 1667
  struts or columns 281–287
  tensile 207
  ultimate 207
  wire rope 2712–2719
  yield perforated metal 2705
Strength of materials 206–227
  angles, lengths of bent 2691
  beams 268–272
    shock stresses in 279
  channels, elements of 2697, 2701
  columns 281–287
    AISC formula 285
    AREA formula 281
    Euler formula 282–285
    Johnson formula 282, 284–285
    Rankine or Gordon formula 281, 283
  combined stresses 219–222
  compression 208
  critical speeds of shafts 302
  curved beams 275
  cylinders 290–294
  definitions 206–207
  deflection of beams 256–267, 273
  Euler column formula 282–285
  factors of safety 211
  ferrous metals 392, 429
  flat plates 288–290
  heat-treated steels 421–426
  influence of temperature 391
  Izod impact 387, 421–422
  Johnson column formula 282, 284–285
  keyways in shafts 301
  linear deflection in shafts 298
  mechanical properties 206–207
  metals, properties of 391
  modulus of elasticity 207
  modulus of shear 208
  moments of inertia 241–250
    built-up sections 240
    polar 251–252, 253–255
  perforated metals 2705
  pipe columns 286, 287
  plates, shells, and cylinders 288–294
  polar
    moment of inertia 251–252, 253–255
    section modulus 251–252
  rails 277
  Rankine or Gordon column formula 281, 283
  rings, stresses and deflections 226, 227
  section moduli tables 241–250, 252
Strength of materials (*continued*)
  shafts 295–303
    brittle material formula for 301
    critical speeds of 302
    effect of keyways on strength of 301
    horsepower transmitted by 295–297, 298
    torsional strength of 295–297
  shear 206, 208
  shells, spherical 291–293
  shocks, stresses produced by 279
  simple stresses 216–218
  springs, shock stresses in 279
  steels 421–426, 429
  straight-line column formula 281
  stress 159, 206
    areas of screw threads 1668
    concentration factors
      grooved shaft in torsion 216
      shaft with transverse hole in bending 216
    relieving 405
    working 212
  struts or columns 281–287
  taper pins, strength of 227
  temperature effects 392
  tensile stress 206
  torsional strength of shafting 295–297
  tubes 293–294
  working stresses 212
  Young's modulus 207
Stress 159–160
  alternating 209, 210
  analysis 208–209
  area of thread 1660, 2063
  in beams 216–281, 256–278
  in bolts when tightening 1655, 1663, 1664, 1665
  combined 218, 219–222
  concentration factors 212–216
    grooved shaft in torsion 216
    shaft with transverse hole in bending 216
  contact, in cams 2384, 2385
  cyclic 209
  disc springs 354
  in involute splines 2347
  in loaded ring 226, 227
  produced by shocks 279
  relieving 405
  in shafting 299–301
  shear 217
    in beams 219–222
  simple 216–218
  in splines
    allowable contact stress 2253
    allowable shear 2347

Stress (*continued*)
spline teeth compressive 2348
in springs 279, 315, 316
strain curves 206, 207
superposition of 218
tensile 206, 207, 210, 218
three-dimensional, or triaxial 222–225
true 1402
units and conversion of 2861–2863
working 212
See also specific materials and applications
Stress-strain 1402
curve 206–208, 1403
nominal 1402
relationship 1402
true 1402
Stretch-draw forming 1431
Stribeck curve 2500
Structural shapes
aluminum 2701
steel 2691–2700
angles, properties of 2698–2700
channels, properties of 2697
I- or S-shapes, properties of 2696
standard designations 2691
strength 429
wide flange, properties of 2692–2695
Structure of carbon steel 465
Stub Acme screw threads 2054, 2065–2072
29- and 60-degree 2198
alternative 2072, 2075
ANSI/ASME Standard 2065–2075
basic dimensions 2055
designations 2072
formula for determining diameters 2072
limiting dimensions 2056
shear area 2056
stress area 2056
thread data 2075
thread form 2054, 2072
wire sizes for checking 2136
Stub screw machine reamers 924
Stub's iron and steel wire gage 2703
Stub tooth gearing 2211, 2216
Fellows 2216
former American Standard 2211, 2216
outside and root diameters 2210, 2217
Studs
British 1758, 1769
drive 1891
Studs and pins
designation 1891
hole sizes 1891
material 1891
standard sizes 1891
Subtracting
decimal numbers 8
fractions and mixed numbers
common fractions 6–7
mixed numbers 7
integers 4
matrices 124
polynomials 28
Subzero treatment of steel 499–502
carburized parts 501
Superhard tool materials (CBN) 1081, 1107, 1281, 1298, 1307
Superplastic forming 1435, 1436
Surface
coatings for metals 1640–1647
finish and hardness of bearings 2400
grinding 1325–1331
advantages 1325
common faults and causes 1330–1331
principal systems 1326
process data for 1329
selection of grinding wheels for 1280–1291, 1325, 1328, 1329
wheel recommendations 1328–1329
of revolution, area 72
roughness
measurements 815
produced by common production methods 813, 814
relationship to tolerances 813, 815
speeds, diameters and rpm
CNC spindle 1360
cutting speeds formula 2178, 1084–1088
grinding wheels 1312, 1314
pulleys and sheaves 1084, 2178, 1086–1089
Surface finish standards, list of ISO 823
Surface finish text height 822
Surface parameter symbols, ISO 823
Surface plates 724–731
calibration 727
autocollimator 729
interferometer 730
repeat-o-meter 728
granite properties 725
materials and grades 724
Surface texture 809
applying symbols 816
castings 819
comparing measured values to specified limits 825
control and production 808
cutoff for roughness measurements 815
definition of terms 808, 810
drawing practices for symbols 815, 816, 817
error of form 808

Surface texture (*continued*)
finish 1265
differences between ISO and ANSI/ASME 822
flaws 808
graphical centerline 810
instruments of measurements 814
lay 808, 819
symbols 819, 820
measurement 813
area averaging methods 815
instruments 814
non-contact 814
probe microscope 814
skidded instruments 815
skidless instruments 814
profile 810
measured 810
modified 810
nominal 810
real 810
total 810
variation 2334, 2340
root mean square 813
roughness 818
average (Ra) 812, 818
evaluation length 813
parameters 812
production method 814
profile 810
sampling length 811
spacing 810
topography 811
roughness average (Ra) 812
roughness sampling length 818
sampling length 811
spatial resolution 811
standard roughness sampling lengths 818
symbols 625, 815, 816, 817, 819
lay 819, 820
material removal 816
proportions of 816
system height resolution 811
topography 811
measured 811
modified 811
traversing length 811
use of symbols 816
valley 811
waviness 811, 819
evaluation length 811, 813
height 813, 819
long-wavelength cutoff 811
parameters 813
profile 811
sampling length 811
short-wavelength cutoff 811
spacing 811
topography 811
Surveyor's measure 2836
SUS (Saybolt Universal Seconds) 2504
Swing frame grinding 1332
Swiss pattern files 1054
Symbols
abbreviations 2827–2830, 2829
applying surface texture 816
arc and gas welding 1618–1626
arrow 1618
basic weld 1619
bearing
ball bearings 2445, 2446
cylindrical roller bearings 2447
needle bearings 2449
roller bearings 2445
self-aligning bearings 2446
tapered roller bearings 2448
thrust ball bearings 2447
thrust tapered roller bearings 2448
between 623, 624
brazing 1573, 1574
buttress threads 2079
cams and cam design 2364
chemical elements 368
concentricity 623, 624
contour and finish 1619
controlled radius 623, 624
diameter 623, 624
diamond wheel marking 1304–1307
dimensions 1619
drawing practices for surface texture 815, 816, 817
engineering drawings 621
gagemakers tolerance 673
geometric control 626
geometric drafting symbols 623, 624
Greek 2827
grinding wheel markings 1282–1283
hole basis 664
involute splines 2334, 2335, 2342
lines for drawings 621
mechanics 2830
metric module involute splines 2352
parallelism 623, 624
perpendicularity 623, 624
reference line 1618
roundness 623, 624
runout 623, 624
screw thread, for tap marking 973
section lining 622
shaft basis 664
standard geometric section lining 622
statistical tolerance 623, 624
surface profile 623, 624
surface texture 816, 817, 819
tolerances 662
total runout 623, 624
welding 1618

Synchronous belts. *See* Belts and pulleys: synchronous belts
Synthetic oils 2508
Système International d'Unites. *See* SI; Metric system; *specific applications*
System of measurement
absolute 157
gravitational 157
See also measurements systems and specific applications

T

Tangent 96
Tangential force 2253
Tanks
contents at given level 73–74, 84
cylindrical, capacity in gallons 73–74
quenching bath 474
Tantung alloy 1080
Tap drill selection. *See* Taps and tapping: tap drills
Taper
ANSI/ASME Standard 1013–1021, 1025
applications of standard 1024
British Standard 1014
Brown & Sharpe 1013, 1022–1023
collets 1034–1036
gages for self-holding 1021
for given angle 700
Jacobs 1026
Jarno 1013, 1024
machine tool spindle 1013, 1024
measurement methods 696
measuring with
V-block and sine-bar 696
method of dimensioning 696
milling machine spindles, arbors and spindle noses 1027–1031
Morse 1013–1024
stub taper shanks 1014
per foot and corresponding angles 698
pin reamers 930
pins 1887, 1890
designation 1888
diameter 1888
drilling spefications 1888
drills for 1887, 1890
hole sizes 1887
materials 1887
small ends 1888
strength 227
reamers
Brown & Sharpe 929
Morse 928
rules for figuring 700
self-holding and self-releasing 1013–1021
steep machine 1025
Taper pipe threads 2089–2091
angle of thread 2092
basic dimensions 2090
external 2092
form 2089
internal 2092
lead 2092
pitch diameter formula 2089
railing joint 2093
taper 2089
taps 1005
thread length 2089
tolerances on taper 2092
Tapped holes 1745
Taps 977–982
blank number 991
cut thread 1001
definitions 977–982
dimensions
cut thread 983, 984, 985, 989, 990
extension taps 989
fine pitch taps 990
fractional size 987
ground thread 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 989, 990
machine screw 987
metric size taps 988
neck and shortened thread length 986
screw thread inserts 987, 988
straight pipe 992, 993
taper pipe 992, 993
tolerances 985
D or DU limits 976
fractional sizes 995, 1002
ground thread 971, 976, 1006, 1007
ground thread limits 995, 998, 999
limits and tolerances 975, 976
locational tolerance 994
machine screw sizes 991, 998, 1006
marking 971
metric
sizes 991, 995, 999
thread 976
thread in inches 1007
M profile thread limits 995
number of flutes 991
oversize 972
pulley 971
runout tolerance 994
screw thread insert 1757
spiral point 991
straight flutes 991
straight pipe 1004
styles 969
taper pipe 1005
tap thread H- and L-limits 971
terms 977

Taps (*continued*)
thread forms 969
thread limits 974
thread tolerances 974
tolerances
straight pipe 994
taper pipe 994
types of 969
undersize 972
UNS thread 971
Taps and tapping 2148–2178
automatic screw machine 1235
clearance holes
ISO metric bolts and screws 2173
CNC machine 2177
cold form tapping 2174–2176
coolant 2178
cutting oils 1250
cutting speeds 1129–1142, 2150, 1235
hole size before tapping 2170
Unified miniature thread 2160–2171
length of engagement and tolerances 2169
lubrication 1250
methods of tapping 2148
nitriding of 2149
numerically controlled 2177
pipe
power for driving 2177
tap drills for 2176
pipe threads
drill sizes 2176
power required 2177
pitch increased to compensate for shrinkage 2198
rake angles for various materials 2150
removing a broken tap 2176
serial taps and close tolerances 2149
speeds 2149, 2150
spiral
fluted 2149
pointed 2148
square threads 1010, 1012
steel 2149
surface treatment of 2149
tap drills
Acme threads 1009
American National threads 2168
machine screws 2169
diameter of tap drill 2153
ISO metric threads 2172
coarse pitch 2172
cold form 2176
pipe
Briggs (NPT) 2176
Whitworth 2176
Unified thread system
cold form 2175
miniature 2171
Taps and tapping (*continued*)
tapping specific materials 2150
alloy steel 2151
aluminum 2152
carbon steel 2150
copper alloys 2153
free cutting steel 2152
gray cast iron 2152
high-temperature alloys 2152
high-tensile strength steels 2151
malleable cast iron 2152
nodular cast iron 2152
stainless steel 2151
titanium and titanium alloys 2152
taps
Acme 1009, 1010
drill hole size 1009, 1010, 1012
adjustable 1009, 1010
markings
standard 973
square thread 1010
thread series designations 973
tolerances on minor diameter 2169
Unified thread form 1940
Taylor tool life equation 1091, 1167, 1168, 1170, 1198, 1199, 1200, 1213, 1220
T-bolts and T-slots, ANSI/ASME Standard 1858–1859
TDH (total dynamic or system head) 2803
Teflon (TFE) bearings 2440
Temperature
absolute 2870
boiling points, various substances 369
of carbon dioxide, solid 646
changes in length due to 375
critical, heat treating of steel 459, 462, 466
effect on working stresses, of springs 314, 315–316
effects on drawing dimensions 625
effects on oil 2505, 2509
Fahrenheit and Celsius 2870
of freezing mixtures 373
ignition 373
of various materials 373
influence on strength of metals 392
judging by color, steel 477
of lead bath alloys 478
of nitrogen, solid 646
required to develop tightening stress in bolt 1658, 1660
Temper designations, aluminum alloys 528–539
Tempering 404–405, 423–426, 458, 460, 461, 464, 465, 468, 476–479, 501–502
double 461, 479
in lead bath 478
in oil 478

Tempering (*continued*)
in salt baths 478
in sand 479
steel 404–405, 478–479
temperature 477
carbon steel tools 477
Tensile
alloy steel 1485
modulus. *See* Modulus of: elasticity
strength 207, 208, 209, 210
aluminum alloys 388, 531–539
ceramics 386
cobalt alloys 389
copper alloys 388, 512–524
copper-beryllium alloys 526
copper-silicon alloys 525
copper-zinc-tin alloys 525
Everdur 525
magnesium alloys 544
nickel alloys 389, 546
nonferrous metals 510
spring materials 305–308
spring wire 392
stainless steel 389, 427–428
steel 388, 419–428, 1483
alloy 1485
carbon 1484
heat-treated 421–426
high-strength, low-alloy 418
relation to hardness 506
titanium alloys 547
wood 383
stress 206, 207, 210, 218
test 210
Tesca or Coulomb shear theory (plastics) 580
Test instrument (TI) 762
See also specific applications
Therm 2865, 2868
Thermal
conductance 371
conductance units conversion 2869
conductivity 371
aluminum 373
cast iron 374
ceramics 386
copper alloys 373
nickel alloys 374
stainless steels 374
titanium alloys 374
cracking of cutting tools 1251
energy 2870
expansion coefficients 372, 375
stresses 375
plastics 582
Thermal/infrared testing (IR) 1630
Thermometer scales 2870
Thicknesses, preferred
metal products 2708
uncoated metals and alloys 2706
Thin flat plate 235
Thin spherical shell
radius of gyration 238
Thread cutting, CNC 1374–1377
Threading cam, screw machine 1234, 1238
cutting speeds, threading dies 1234
Thread locking 2663
Threads and threading 1940, 1991, 2012, 2016, 2023, 2026, 2033–2076, 2075
Acme thread 2054–2077
pitch diameter allowance 2056, 2061
aerospace screws, bolts and nuts 2035
Aero-thread 2119
allowance and tolerance 2084
American microscope objective (AMO) 2115–2118
American National form 1940
angle, wire method of testing 2135
ANSI/ASME Standard
Acme thread 2054–2072
buttress thread 2079–2084
form or profile 1940
MJ profile thread 2033–2036
M profile thread 2012–2033
allowances 2017–2020
basic profile 1942, 2017
coarse pitch 2014, 2017
coated threads 2021, 2022
crest and root form 2013–2018
data 2015
designations 2033
design profile, M series 2013, 2016, 2017
external thread design 2018
external thread root 2018
fine pitch 2016
lengths of engagement 2019–2024
limiting dimensions 2027
limits and fits 2016
limits of size 2022
major diameter tolerances 2024
minor diameter tolerances 2023, 2033
pitch diameter tolerances 2024
profile data 2015
profile series 2016
symbols 2014
thread series 2014, 2018
tolerance grades 2017–2022
Unified thread system 1947–1998
allowances 1951–1977
basic dimensions 1978–1987
coarse thread series 1950–1978
coated 1991
definitions 1942–1946
designations 1990, 1991
design profile 1948

Threads and threading (*continued*)
Unified thread system
dimensions 1951–1977
external and internal thread forms 1940, 1994
fine and extra fine series 1950–1983
hole sizes for tapping 1991
internal and external profile 1948
limits 1951–1977, 1988
miniature, design dimensions 1994
miniature screw thread 1992–1996
pitch diameter tolerances 1990
standard series, tables of 1951–1977
thread classes 1979–1983
thread form, data and formulas 1940, 1947, 1948–1950, 1949
thread series 1948
uniform 4-, 6-, 8-, 12-, 16-, 20-, 28-, and 32-pitch series 1950–1987
Briggs pipe thread 2120
British Standard
buttress threads 2078
ISO metric 2035, 2053
ISO profile 2044
pipe 2098–2100
RMS thread 2115
UNJ profile 1997
Whitworth 2086–2088
casing thread 2120
change gears for lathe 2181
for fractional output 2182
modifying the quick change gearbox output 2182
changing pitch slightly 2199
chasing, cutting speeds for 1129–1142
checking by three-wire method, tables 2130, 2135
classes of tolerance 1979–2062, 2079
CNC 1374–1377
cutting calculations 1374–1375
lathes, cutting threads 1374
long-hand threading 1376
multi-start threads 1377
threading commands 1376
threading cycle 1376–1377
threading operations 1376
thread milling 1363
Cordeaux thread 2120
crest diameter tolerance 2049
cutting 2179
square 1010
cutting, change gears 2181
fractional ratios 2182
Dardelet thread 2120
definitions 1942–1946
design and application data 2107
designation of Unified threads 1951–1991
designation symbols for 973
design dimensions and tolerances 1994

Threads and threading (*continued*)
deviation formulas 2048
diameter pitch combinations 1950, 2035, 2053
diameters of wires for measuring 2124
dies, maximum pitches 2199
dimensional effect of coating 2022
drunken thread 2120
dryseal pipe 2095
Echols thread 2120
electrical fixture threads 2113
electric socket and lamp base 2113
external thread tolerances 2027
formulas for three-wire measurement 2123, 2124
French thread 2120
fundamental deviation 2019
gages for screw threads 2140
classification 2140
standard tolerances 2146
for unified screw threads 2140
grinding 2192–2195
centerless method 2196
Harvey grip thread 2121
helix angle 1944, 1978–1987
hole size for tapping 1991
hose coupling 2105
indexable threading insert, CNC 1374
instrument makers' 2113
interference fit 1944, 2106–2111
internal threads in pipe couplings 2093
International Metric thread system 1941
ISO metric 1942, 2035, 2053
designation 2047, 2048
design profile 2047
fundamental deviation formulas 2048
lengths of thread engagements 2047
lead angle 2200
length of thread engagement 1944, 2047, 2049–2052
limiting dimensions formula 2022
limits
Class 1A and 1B 1952–1977
Class 2A and 2B 1951–1977
Class 3A and 3B 1951–1977
limits and tolerance 2049–2052
Lloyd & Lloyd screw thread 2121
lock nut pipe thread 2121
Löwenherz 2118
maximum material condition 1944
measuring screw threads 2122–2147
three-wire method 2123–2140
contact pressure 2126
formulas 2127, 2128, 2130, 2132, 2138, 2139
formulas, accuracy 2133
Whitworth, best wire sizes 2125, 2126
Whitworth, formulas 2117

Threads and threading (*continued*)
metric screw threads
ANSI/ASME Standard
MJ profile 2033–2036
MJ profile, designations 2037
MJ profile, diameter-pitch combinations 2034
MJ profile, symbols 2037
M profile 2012–2033
M profile, allowance 2012
M profile, comparison with inch threads 2012
British Standard ISO metric 2044–2053
ISO metric 1942
British Standard 2044–2053
miniature 2044
trapezoidal 2037–2043
micrometers for measuring pitch diameters 2122
microscope objective thread 2114
milling 2197–2198
changing pitch of thread slightly 2198
classes of work 2198
multiple cutter method 2197
planetary method 2198
single cutter method 2197, 2198
miniature
ISO metric 2044
Unified 1992–1996
minor diameter tolerances 1991
modified square thread 10-degree 2077
molded in 596
M profile limits of size 2026
multiple, designation 1991
multi-start threads, CNC 1377
National standard form or profile 1940
Philadelphia carriage bolt thread 2121
pipe
ANSI/ASME Standard 2089–2097, 2098
dryseal 2095–2097, 2098
taper 2089–2091
pitch 1945
changing slightly 2199
diameter 1945
maximum when die cut 2198
pressure-tight joints 2093
rolled lamp base threads 2113
SAE Standard screw thread 2121
saw-tooth 2078
screw thread, definition 1946
self-forming screws 1833–1836, 1841
self-tapping screws 1836
Sellers screw thread 2121
sharp V-type thread 1940
single point threading, CNC 1374
spark plug threads 2112

Threads and threading (*continued*)
square thread 2077
ten-degree modified 2077
stress area 1660, 1668, 1946, 2063
Acme thread 2056, 2060
Unified fine thread 1978
stub Acme screw threads 2054, 2065–2072
stub thread 60-degree 2075
tap drill sizes 2160–2167, 2168
taper, measurement by wire method 2139
thread calculations 1374–1375
thread cutting, CNC 1374–1377
thread forms 1940
thread grinding
accuracy obtainable 2192
multi-ribbed wheels 2193
number of wheel passes 2193, 2194
ribbed wheel for fine pitches 2194
roughing and finishing wheels 2193
single-edge wheel 2192
from the solid 2194
wheels 2192
grain size 2196
hardness of grade 2195
speeds 2195
truing 2195
types for 2192
and work rotation 2194
work speeds 2195
thread milling, CNC 1363
thread rolling 2187–2191
advantages of process 2190
automatic screw machines 2189
blank diameter 2188
dies, cylindrical 2187
dies, flat 2187
machines used 2189
precision thread rolling 2188
production rates 2187
speeds and feeds 2190
steels 2188
thread selection 1990
tolerances
of external threads 2024
grade dimensions 2026
of pitch diameter 2024
tolerance system 2019, 2045
tools
relief angles, single-point 2179, 2180
tools for square threads 1010
trapezoidal metric thread 2037, 2039–2043
formulas 2038
US Standard 1940
watch 1992–1996
Whitworth 2116
truncated 2116, 2118
wire sizes for checking pitch diameters 2124, 2125

Three-dimensional stress 222–226
Three-wire measurement
gears 2300–2318
screw threads 2123–2140
Thrust bearing. *See* Bearings
Thumb screws
dimensions 1932
flat-head type 1929, 1932–1933
lengths 1932
materials 1929
points 1933
cone point 1933
cup point 1933
dog point 1933
flat point 1933
oval point 1933
threads 1933
types 1929
TI (test instrument) 762
See also specific applications
TIF (true involute form) 2236
Tin-lead alloys for soldering 1567
Tin lead plating 1642
Tin plating 1647
TIR (total indicator reading) 1390
Titanium and titanium alloys
coefficient of expansion 374
density 374
melting points 374
properties 545, 547
specific heat 374
speeds and feeds 1106, 1142, 1245
thermal conductivity 374
Titanium Metals Corp. 547
Titanium carbides as cutting tool materials 1079
T-nuts, ANSI/ASME Standard 1860
Toggle joint 179
Tolerance analysis and assignment 684
tolerance analysis calculation methods 684
Monte Carlo simulation 686
root sum of squares (rss) 685
statistical 685
worst-case 684–485
tolerance assignment 686
cost minimization 686
even assignment 686
proportional scaling 686
total cost minimization 686
weight factors 686
tolerance stack-up chain 684
Tolerances 859, 2045
ANSI/ASME Standard 648
application of tolerances 641
bilateral and unilateral 640
symbols 623, 624, 662
ball and roller bearing 2453, 2463
Tolerances (*continued*)
British Standard 675
British Standard ISO threads 2045
buttress threads 2079, 2082, 2083
clearance fit 661
compression spring 328–331
core drill, metric 958
cut thread 1002
cylindrical fits 640
designation of limits and fits 661
dimensions on drawings 640
drilled holes 961
extension spring 328–331
fundamental deviations 675
gagemakers 673
gages, direction of tolerances on 641
gear, composite tooth to tooth 2248
gear, composite total 2248
grades relative to machining processes 649, 674
hole basis 661
honing 1338
interference fit 661
involute splines, inch 2331
involute splines, metric 2352, 2355
ISO metric threads 2045
crest diameter tolerance 2049
finished uncoated threads 2049, 2052
tolerance classes 2046
tolerance grades 2046
tolerance positions 2046, 2047
tolerances classes 2046
keys and keyways 2554
knurling 1060
limits and fits 675
machine screw taps 996, 997
nut threads 2045
obtainable by various operations 648, 649, 674
preferred series of 647
relationship to surface roughness 813, 815
screw thread inserts 1006, 1007
shaft basis 661
symbols 623, 624
tapped holes 2169
taps 969, 996, 997, 1002
thread gage 2143
torsion springs 337–344
transition fits 661
twist drill, metric 958
Unified screw tap threads 997, 1002
Unified thread gages 2146
unilateral and bilateral 640
See also Allowances and tolerances
Tolerancing and dimensions 2542
Tolerancing and geometric dimensioning 625
Ton
long and short 2858
metric 2858

Tool
change schedule 1217, 1218
compensation, NC 857–859
contour, cutting tools 832
cost, cutting 1218
cost per batch 1218
cost per edge 1219
grade, cutting 1127
grinding, angles 832–838
holders 841–847
letter symbols 843
indexable inserts 839–859, 866
knurling 1056–1060
life 1082, 1197, 1205, 1217
adjusting 1103–1104, 1108, 1111, 1127
adjusting factors
drilling 1127
end milling 1127
face milling 1127
reaming 1127
colding relation 1200
cutting speed 1210
drilling 1209
economic 1213
economy 1213
envelope 1202
factors for turning
carbides 1103
CBN 1103
ceramics 1103
cermets 1103
polycrystalline diamond 1103
feed speed 1210
global optimization 1214
grinding 1209
milling 1209
optimization models 1213
optimum 1215
surface finish 1207
Taylor's equation 1198–1200
turning 1209
materials 860–870, 1077–1081
nose radius compensation, NC 857–859
shanks, ANSI/ASME Standard for milling machines 1029
sharpening
carbide tools 1065
grinding wheels for 1065–1068
twist drills 1062–1065
single-point 832, 964–965
steels 430–455, 456
air hardening 451
alloying elements effects 434, 435
applications 440
chemical compositions 438
chromium types 447
classification of 435

Tool (*continued*)
steels
cold work 449, 451
cutting speed for 1099, 1117–1118, 1134
decarburization limits 456
dimensional tolerances 456
faults and failures, common 433–437
grindability of 433, 1292–1296
hardening 432
hardness 433
high-carbon, high-chromium 449
high-speed 443
hot work 446, 448
machinability 432
machining allowances 456
mechanical properties 430
mill production forms 455–456
mold 450, 452
molybdenum types 443–445, 444, 448
numbering system 395, 397
oil hardening 451
properties of 430–434
shock resisting 450, 452
special purpose 450–454
speeds, drilling, reaming, and threading 1134
speeds, milling 1117–1118
speeds, turning 1099
tolerances on dimensions 456
toughness 433, 438
tungsten types 445
water hardening 454–455
wear resistance 433
troubleshooting checklist 1083
wear 1061–1063, 1196
Tooling cost equivalent 1218
Tooling cost time 1218
Tool life 1196–1215
Tooth rest position
milling cutter grinding 906
reamer grinding 911
Torches, metal cutting 1604
Torque 156
angular acceleration, relation to 187
calculating, for tightening bolts 178
capacity
formulas involute spline 2345
spline fittings 2360
clamping force 1661
coefficient 1662–1663
electric motor 2646, 2653
pull-up 2645
starting, small bearings 2478
tension relation 1664
tightening, for bolts 1653–1665
torsion springs 331, 333
unit conversion 2864

Torque test 1755
Torque test spacer 1756
Torsion
and bending of shafts, combined formulas 216, 222, 299–301
deflection of shafts, formula 297–298
formulas for shafts 295–297
modulus 216, 344–346
springs, design 337
strength of shafts 295–297
Torus
polar moment of inertia 254
volume 93
Total dynamic (TDH) or system head 2803
Total indicator reading (TIR), CNC 1390
Toughness
HSLA steels 418
tool steels 438–439
Transfer die 1455
Transmission chains 2616
cast roller chains 2616
detachable chains 2616
nonstandard 2616
pintle chains 2616
roller chains 2616, 2618
attachments 2620
bar steel sprockets 2625
bent link plate 2620
bore and hub diameters 2631
bottom diameter 2623
center distances and chain links 2631
cutters for sprockets 2636
cutting sprocket tooth forms 2635
design procedure 2639
dimensions 2618
drive ratings 2637
hob design 2634
horsepower ratings 2626–2630
idler sprockets 2632
installation and alignment 2638
keys, keyways and set-screws 2621
length of driving chain 2632
lubrication 2638
multiple-strand cast sprockets 2625
nomenclature 2617
nonstandard 2616
numbering system 2619
parts 2617
pin dimensions 2620
pitch 2619
selection 2626
single-strand cast sprockets 2625
straight link plate 2620
tolerances 2619, 2623
tooth form 2633
tooth section profile dimension 2624
types 2616
ultimate tensile strength 2619
Transmission chains (*continued*)
roller chain sprockets 2619
caliper diameter 2623
classes 2621
diameters 2621, 2622
flange thickness 2624
manufacture 2636
materials 2636
proportions 2625
types 2616
Transmission shafting design 299–301
Transpose of a matrix 125–126
Trapezium area 77
Trapezoid
area 77
center of gravity 229
moment of inertia 243
radius of gyration 243
section modulus 243
Trapezoidal screw threads 2037–2043
data 2039–2043
formulas 2038
Trap rock, strength 391
Triangle
acute 76, 94, 100, 101
area 76
center of gravity 228
equilateral or equiangular 94
geometry of 61–63
isosceles 94
moment of inertia 243
oblique-angle 94, 100–101, 102
obtuse 76, 94, 100, 101
radius of gyration 243
right-angle 76, 94, 98, 99, 102
section modulus 243
solution 94–102
oblique-angle 100–101, 102
right-angle 98, 99, 102
Triaxial stress 222–225
Tribology 2499
See also Lubrication
Trigonometric. *See* Trigonometry
Trigonometry 94–122
compound angles 120–122
interpolation 122
conversion tables of angular measure 103–104
degree and radian angle measure 94
formulas 96–97
functions
of angles 95–97
involute functions 111
sevolute functions 111
using calculator to find 111
versed cosine 111
versed sine 111

Trigonometry (*continued*)
functions of angles 95–97
law of cosines 96
law of sines 96
right triangle ratios 95
trigonometric identities 96–97
cofunction identities 97
double-angle formulas 97
half-angle formulas 97
negative-angle identities 97
product-to-sum formulas 97
Pythagorean identities 97
reciprocal identities 97
sum and difference of angles formulas 97
sum and difference of functions formulas 97
identities 96–97
rapid solution of right and oblique triangles 102
solution and examples of oblique triangles 100–101
solution of right triangles 98, 99, 102
spherical trigonometry 116–119
oblique spherical trigonometry 118–119
right-angle spherical trigonometry 116–117
terminology 94
trigonometric functions 105–106
inverse trigonometric functions 106
using a calculator to find trigonometric function values 111
trigonometric ratios of essential angles 94–95
trigonometry tables 106–110
Trochoid curve 2207
Troostite 476
Troubleshooting
broaching 1050
drilling 1133
machining difficulties 1084
reaming 917
tools 434–437
Troy weight for gold and silver 2858
True involute form (TIF) 2236
True stress-strain 1402
Truing and dressing grinding wheels 1299–1303
T-section
moment of inertia 248
radius of gyration 248
section modulus 248
T-slots and T-bolts, ANSI/ASME Standard 1858–1859
T-slot cutters, standard 875
Tube
collapsing pressure 293–294
gages 2702
maximum allowable pressures 294
strength of 293–294
subjected to external pressure, safety 294
thickness and working pressure 293–294
wall thickness gages 2691, 2702
Tube spinning 1433
Tungsten
carbide tools grinding 1065–1067
carbide tools materials 1079
electrodes, welding 1595–1600
powdered alloys
density 390
elongation 390
hardness 390
rupture strength 390
ultimate strength 390
yield strength 390
steels 445
compositions 439, 445
high-speed, heat-treatment of 493
tool steels 445
Turner's sclerometer 506
Turning
cutting speeds for
copper alloys 1105
ferrous cast metals 1101–1102
hard-to-machine materials 1107
light metals 1106
plain carbon and alloy steels 1095–1098
stainless steels 1100
superalloys 1107
titanium and titanium alloys 1106
tool steels 1099
unusual materials 1143
cutting time for 1143
and facing, insert holder 845–847
insert holder 845–847
speed adjustment factors
depth of cut 1103
feed 1103
lead angle 1103
speeds and feeds 1094–1107, 1235
Twist drill 931, 935–961
equivalent of gage or letter size 933–937
grinding (sharpening) 1062–1064
length of point on 954
parallel shank jobber 959
parallel shank long series 960
tolerances, metric 958
types 931
Type metal 541

U

UK gallons to liters 2853, 2856
Ultimate strength
  common materials 391
  compressive 208
  copper-base powdered alloys 390
  iron and steel 429
  iron-base powdered alloys 390
  nonferrous metals 510
  plastics 565
  shear 208
  tungsten-base powdered alloys 390
Ultrasonic fluxless soldering 1568
Ultrasonic machining (USM) 1345
Ultrasonic testing (UT) 1627
Uncoated metals and alloys, preferred thicknesses, metric 2706
Undercut, in spur gearing 2225
Unified numbering system for metals. *See* UNS number
Unified thread system
  cold form tap drill sizes 2175
  screw thread forms 1940, 1942, 1946, 1947
    British UNJ 1997
    diameter-pitch combinations 1950
    hole sizes for tapping 1991, 2160–2167
    miniature screw thread 1992–1996
    standard series 1948, 1951–1977
      coarse thread 1978
      constant pitch 1980–1987
      extra-fine thread 1979, 1980
      fine thread 1978, 1979
    thread classes 1988–1990
    thread designation 1990–1991
    thread formulas 1949
  threaded fasteners
    bolts, screws, and nuts 1670–1680, 1681, 1682, 1683, 1684, 1685, 1686, 1687, 1758, 1775, 1798, 1808, 1809, 1810, 1812, 1813, 1814, 1816, 1817, 1818, 1819, 1822, 1825, 1833, 1848, 1928, 1933
    tensile stress area 1660, 1661, 1668
    tensile stress due to tightening 1656
Uniform motion 182
Units of measure and conversion factors
  angular and circular 2837
  apothecaries' fluid 2854
  area 2850
  barrel 2854
  dry 2854
  electric wires 2850
Units of measure and conversion factors (*continued*)
  energy 2868
  flow 2857
  fluid 2853, 2854
  force 2863
  heat 2865
  inertia and momentum 2874
  length 2836
  mass and weight 2858
    apothecaries' weight 2858
    avoirdupois or commercial 2858
    Troy weight 2858
  miscellaneous 2874
  nautical 2836
  power 2868
  pressure and stress 2861
  shipping 2853
  surveyors 2836
  temperature 2870
  thermal conductance 2869
  velocity and acceleration 2873
  viscosity 2873
  volume 2853, 2854
  work 2868
Unit systems
  cgs 157, 2831
  MKS 157, 2831
  MKSA 2831
Unit under test (UUT) 753
Universal joints 2524
  angular velocity of driven shaft 2524
  intermediate shaft 2525
  maximum and minimum velocities 2524
UNS number 395
  carbon steel 399–400
  coppers and copper alloys 511–524
  plain carbon, alloy and tool steel 395, 397, 401–402
  series of different metal 395
  stainless steel 395, 403–404
Upsetting, cold 407
US Air Force 1620
US Army Corps of Engineers 2777
US Board of Supervising Inspectors 288
US Department of Commerce and Labor, formula for pressure in tubes 293
US Department of Defense 395
US gallons into liters 2856
US Government Printing Office 1620
USM (ultrasonic machining) 1345
US Naval Facilities Engineering Command 1620
US standard screw threads 1940
US standard sheet metal gage 2706
UT (ultrasonic testing) 1627
UUT (unit under test) 753

V

Vacuum 2823
Vacuum furnace brazing 1573
Vanadium, gearing material 2322
Van Keuren gear measuring tables 2300, 2301–2313
Variable speed belts. *See* Belts and pulleys: variable speed belts
Vat photopolymerization 1555
V-belts. *See* Belts and pulleys: V-belts
V-block 703, 705, 706, 707, 708, 732–748
  calibration 743
    description 743
    flatness of working surfaces 748
    parallelism of V to base 745
    preliminary operations 744
    procedure 744
    sides square to each other 744
    V-groove centrality 747
  clamps 734
  classification 733
  design 734
  federal specification coverage 733
  material 733
  metric products 741
  screws 734
  tolerance 734
  type, style, and grade 733
  type I
    single V groove 733
    style 2 735
    style 3 735
    style 4, magnetic 736
    style 5, ribbed without clamps 736
    style 6, plain, without clamps 738
  type II
    double V-groove 733, 738
  type III
    quadruple V-groove 733, 739
  type III, quadruple V-groove
    style 2, 740
  type IV
    combination top-end V 733, 741
  yokes 734
Vector and scalar quantities 160
Velocity 156, 182–185
  angular 182, 184
    rpm to radian per second conversion 184
  converting to rpm 1084–1088
  linear 182
    of points on rotating bodies 184
  unit conversion 2873
Vernier calipers
  construction requirements 784
Vernier scale
  dual metric-inch 691, 692
  reading 690
  reading a metric 691
  reading on a protractor 690
Versed sine and versed cosine 111
V-flange tool shanks and retention knobs 1032–1033
VI (viscosity index) 2505
Vickers hardness 503
  See also specific materials and processes
Viscosity
  absolute 2504
  conversion table for lubricating oils 2873
  index (VI) 2505
  kinematic 2504
  lubrication 2504
  temperature chart for SAE oils 2403
  unit conversion 2873
Visual testing (VT) 1629
Vitrified bonded wheels 1065–1066, 1281
  coolants for 1249
  thread grinding 2192
Volume
  barrel 93
  cone 90
    frustum of 90
  cube 88
  cylinder 89
    hollow 90
    portion of 89, 90
    segment of 90
  ellipsoid 91
  geometrical figures 88–93
  measures 2853
  paraboloid 92
  paraboloidal segment 93
  prism
    rectangular prism 88
    square prism 88
  prismoidal formula 71
  pyramid 88
    frustum of 89
  solid of revolution 71
  of solids 88–93
  specific gravity 377–379
  sphere 91
    hollow 92
  spherical
    sector 91
    segment 91
    wedge 92
    zone 92
  torus 93
  units and conversion of 2853, 2857
  wedge 89
V-shaped groove, checking by pins 702, 703

VT (visual testing) 1629
V-thread 1940
Vulcanized fiber, strength 391

W

Wahl spring curvature correction factor 314
Washburn & Moen wire gage 2703
Washers
  Belleville or disc spring 344, 350
  British Standard metric 1772–1774
    metric spring 1770–1772
  designations 1773
  lock 1697
  metric 1736, 1739
    designations 1739
    materials 1739
  plain 1694–1699, 1736, 1739
  preferred sizes 1694–1697
  spring lock type 1698–1701
  tooth lock type 1698–1701
Watch screw threads 1992–1996
Water contamination of oil 2519
Water hammer (liquid pulsation) 2796
Water jet machining (WJM) 1344
Watt
  conversion 2867–2869
  equivalent 2865
Waviness 808
  height values 813
Wax in oil 2506
Wear life factor involute spline 2347
Wear resistance, cutting tool 1061–1062
Wedge 176
  center of gravity 233
  mechanical principle of 176
  spherical, volume 92
  volume 89
Weight 158
  air 378, 381, 2749
  angles, structural steel 2698–2700
  avoirdupois or commercial 2858
  channels, structural 2697, 2701
  earth 381
  hollow shafts 303
  I-beams 2692–2696
  metric measures 2858
  mol 381
  molecular 381
  nails and spikes 1934
  of natural piles 379
  per feet of wood 383
  soil 381
  specific gravity 377–379
  steel S-sections 2696
Weight (*continued*)
  troy, for gold and silver 2858
  water 377
  wide flange, steel 2692–2695
  wood 383, 384
Weldability, HSLA steels 418
Welding 1575–1621
  aluminum 1602
  arc cutting of metals 1605
  basic symbols 1619
  codes, rules, regulations, specifications 1620
  controls 1580
  current ranges diameter, sheet metal 1594
  current selection 1598
  cutting metals
    with electric arc 1605
    with oxidizing flame 1604
  definitions and symbols 1618–1626
  designations 1621
  dies 1627
  dimensions 1619
  electrode 1575, 1577, 1581, 1598
    AWS E60XX 1592
    AWS E70XX 1594
    carbon steels 1577
    characteristics 1593
    composition 1598
    current ranges 1598
    diameters 1593
    sizes 1577
    stainless steels 1577
    thoriated 1599
    zirconiated 1599
  electron beam welding 1610
  filler metals 1600
  fill passes 1612, 1616, 1617
  flux-cored arc welding (FCAW) 1584–1591
    alloy steels 1584
    all-position electrodes 1587–1588
    carbon steels 1584, 1586
    contact tip recess 1587
    deposition rates 1589
    electrodes 1584, 1585, 1590
      diameter 1589
    gas-shielded 1584, 1586
    material condition 1585
    porosity and worm tracks 1587
    selection 1585
    settings 1585
    shielding gases 1591
    stainless steeels 1584
    weld requirements 1585
  fluxes 1575
  gas-shielded, all-position 1584
  GMAW (gas metal arc)
    electrode diameters 1576
    metal thickness 1581–1582

Welding (*continued*)
GMAW (gas metal arc)
optimum settings 1583
shielding gases 1578, 1579
alloy steels 1578
aluminum 1579
carbon steels 1578
stainless steels 1579
spray transfer 1581–1582, 1583
welding sheet steel 1577
GTAW (gas tungsten arc) 1595–1600
aluminum 1599
current 1595
EWP electrode 1599
filler metals 1600
selecting tungsten electrode 1598
shielding gases 1600
hard-facing 1606
heat input and weld distortion 1576
letter designations for processes 1621
materials used in welding 1618
nondestructive testing (NDT) 1627–1631
NDT methods 1627–1630
acoustic emission testing (AE) 1630
eddy current testing (ET) 1629
leak testing (LT) 1630
magnetic flux leakage (MFL) 1630
magnetic particle testing (MT) 1628
neutron radiography (NRT) 1630
penetrant testing (PT) 1629
radiographic testing (RT) 1627
thermal/infrared testing (IR) 1630
ultrasonic testing (UT) 1627
visual testing (VT) 1629
nondestructive testing symbol application 1630–1631
areas of revolution 1631
combination of symbols 1631
direction of radiation 1631
location of testing symbol 1631
plane areas 1631
testing symbol elements 1630
tests made all around the joint 1631
PAW (plasma arc) 1600
of aluminum 1602
applications 1601
cutting 1603, 1604
equipment 1601
fusion 1602
gases for 1600
surface coating 1603, 1604
surfacing 1603
pipe welding 1611, 1615
plasma arc welding
gases 1600
shielding gases 1601
argon 1601
helium 1601
hydrogen 1601

Welding (*continued*)
plastics 598
process letter designation 1621
process names 1575
shielding gas 1600
SMAW (shielded metal arc) 1591–1594
characteristic of electrodes 1592
specifications 1620
supplementary symbols 1619, 1620
symbols 1618–1621
application of 1622–1626
arrow side 1624
bead-type back 1623
bevel groove 1622
built-up surface 1623
electron beam 1622, 1626
fillet 1622, 1623
intermittent fillet 1624
letter designations 1620
melt-thru weld 1626
plug groove 1622
process 1620
resistance-seam 1622
single pass back 1623
square groove 1622
U-groove 1625
V-groove 1624
tungsten electrode compositions 1598
Weldon shanks
dimensions of 879–889
end mills 879, 880, 882
Wheel life in grinding. *See* Grinding: wheel life
Wheels
abrasive cutting 1041–1043
buffing 1636
diamond 1065–1067, 1304–1311
dressing 1299–1302
Geneva 178
grinding 1280
diamond 1304–1311
mechanical principles of 177
polishing 1633, 1636
and pulleys in mechanics 177, 178
silicon carbide 1065–1066
White cast iron 1480
White metal bearing alloys 2436, 2437
Whitworth
bolts, screws, nuts, washers, and studs 1758, 1759, 1760, 1798, 1799, 1811, 1832
screw thread forms 1940, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2098, 2099, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2120, 2121
drills for pipe taps 2176
measuring 2117, 2125, 2126, 2129, 2131
truncated thread form 2116
wire size for measuring threads 2125

Wide-flange shapes, steel 2692–2695
moment of inertia 2692–2695
radius of gyration 2692–2695
section modulus 2692–2695
weight per foot 2692–2695
Windchill temperature 2875
Windlass 177, 178
Wind velocity to pressure 2875
Wing nuts and screws
nuts
dimensions 1925–1928
finish 1929
materials 1929
standard 1925–1928
types 1925
screws 1925–1933
dimensions 1929
lengths 1932
materials 1929
points 1933
cone point 1933
cup point 1933
dog point 1933
flat point 1933
oval point 1933
threads 1933
types 1929
Wire
checking screw threads 2123
Acme threads 2128, 2136
buttress threads 2139
contact pressure 2126
formulas for large lead angles 2126, 2136
taper screws 2138
circular mill measurement 2850
copper 2704
diameters, raised to powers 347
EDM 1469, 1478
music 347, 2702
arbor diameters 349
gages 2702
modulus of elasticity 346
working stresses 311, 312, 314, 315
at elevated temperatures 315–316
nails and spikes 1934
preferred thicknesses 2707
rod gages 2702
rope 2711
sheet metal gages 2706–2708
size for checking gears 2300
for external spur gears 2300
for helical gears 2314
for internal gears 2309
for spur and helical gears 2309
spring, tensile strength 392
tubing, wall thickness gages 2702
wire gages 2702
Wire rope
breaking strengths 2712
classes 2712–2716
construction 2711
definitions of terms 2711–2712
factors of safety 2717–2718
installation 2718
plow steel, strength of 2714–2719
properties 2712
safe loads for 2717–2718
simplified practice recommendations 2716
sizes 2714–2719
specification 2712
strength 2714–2719
weight 2714–2719
WJM (water jet machining) 1344
Wood
bearings 2441
bonding 2659
boring 385
compression perpendicular to grain 382
compression strength 383
crushing strength 382, 383
density 384
dimensions of sawn lumber 384
hard metal tooling for 870
ignition temperatures 373
machinability 384
maximum bending load 382–383
mechanical properties of 383
effect of pressure treatment 383
modulus of rupture 382, 383
mortising 385
planing 385
sanding 385
screws 1935
shaping 385
shear strength 383
parallel to grain 383
tensile strength 383
tooling for wood and nonmetals 870
Woodruff keys and keyseats
ANSI/ASME 2556
cutters 895
key 2560
dimensions 2557, 2558
number 2560
keyseat
dimensions 2559, 2560
hub 2560
milling cutter 2560
shaft 2560
Woodruff keys and keyways 2548
designation 2549
dimensions
keys 2549
keyways 2550

Woodruff keys and keyways (*continued*)
materials 2550
tolerances 2549
Woodworking cutters 870
Work 156, 189
formulas 189
formulas for work and power 193
maximum load in bending
wood 382
relation to energy 189
sheet metal forming 1412
units conversion 2868
Working stress 207, 212, 219
of bolts 1667
at elevated temperature 315–316
factors of saftey 211
shafts 301
springs 301, 315, 316
Worm gearing 2270–2273
addendum 2270
ANSI Standard, fine-pitch 2270–2272
effect on profile and pressure angle
of cutting diameter 2272
of production method 2272
fine-pitch 2270–2273
formulas for dimensions 2270
hobs for 2270
lead angles 2270
material 2272, 2324
number of threads or "starts" 2273
multi-thread worms 2273
single-thread worms 2273
outside diameter 2270
pitch diameters, range 2271
pitches, standard 2270
pressure angles 2270
proportions 2270
ratio of teeth to thread starts 2273
tooth form of worm and wormgear 2272
Wrapped spring clutches 2529
Wrench
clearances
for box wrenches, metric 1693
for hex wrenches 1689, 1691
for open end wrenches 1688
for spacing of bolts 1687
openings 1688
torque
cap screws 1654
steel bolts 1654
studs 1654
Wrinkling, sheet metal 1424
Wrought
copper alloys 516–524
copper-beryllium 526
Wrought (*continued*)
iron
strength 429
temperature effect on 391
thickness gage for sheet 2706, 2707

Y

Yield point 207
heat-treated steels 421–426
iron and steel 429
plastics 565
steel 1483
for various materials 207
Yield strength 207
aluminum alloys 388, 531–539
carbon steel 1484
cobalt alloys 389
compressive 208
copper alloys 388, 512–524
Cu-base powdered alloys 390
Cu-beryllium alloys 526
Cu-silicon alloys 525
Everdur 525
iron-base powdered alloys 390
magnesium alloys 544
nickel alloys 389, 546
nonferrous metals 510
perforated metal 2705
plastics 565
shear 208
spring wire 392
stainless steel 389, 427–428
steel 388, 419–428
high-strength, low-alloy 418
titanium alloys 547
tungsten-base powdered alloys 390
Young's modulus. *See* Modulus of: elasticity

Z

Zero, absolute 2870
Zerol bevel gears 2204, 2257
Zinc plating 1647
ZNP curve 2500
Z-section
moment of inertia 250
radius of gyration 250
section modulus 250